THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA.

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

BY KISARI MOHAN GANGULI

Published and Distributed chiefly *gratis*

BY

PROTAP CHANDRA ROY

ADI PARVA.

CALCUTTA:

BHARATA PRESS.

No. 367, Upper Chitpore Road.

1884.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Introduction.

	PAGE.
Sauti's arrival at the woods of Naimisha . .	1
The desire of the Rishis to hear the Mahābhārata .	2
Invocation to Isāna	ib
The order of creation . . .	3
Vyasa's desire to publish the Bhārata . .	4
The Grand-sire comes to him . . .	5
Ganesa undertakes to write the Bhārata . .	6
Sauti's praise of the Bhārata . . .	ib
Dhritarāshtra's lamentations . . .	10
Sanjaya's consolations to Dhritarāshtra . .	17
Sauti's eulogies on the study of the Bhārata .	19
The history of Samantapanchaka . .	21
Explanation of terms indicating the divisions of an army	22

Parva Sangraha.

Summary of the contents of the Eighteen main Parvas	23

Pausya Parva.

Curse on Janamejaya . . .	45
Measures adopted by him to evade it . .	ib
Story of the sage Dhaumya . . .	ib
Story of Aruni	46
Story of Upamanyu	ib
Story of Veda	51
Story of Utanka	ib
Story of Paushya	53
Utanka's arrival at Janamejaya's court . .	59
His incitement of Janamejaya against Takshaka .	60

Pauloma Parva.

The Rishis wait for Saunaka . . .	60
Genealogy of the Bhārgava race . .	61
Story of Pulomā	62
Story of the birth of Chyavana . .	64
Bhrigu's curse on Agni . . .	ib

PAGE.

Hymn to Agni by Brahmā . . . 66
History of Ruru 68
Story of the Dunduva 70

Astika Parva.

Story of Jaratkāru 73
Birth of Astika 76
History of Kadru and Vinatā . . . 77
Churning of the Ocean . . . 78
The wager between Kadru and Vinatā . . 84
Kadru's curse on the snakes . . . ib
Kadru and Vinatā go to see Uchchaisravas, and see the Ocean 85
Birth of Gadura 87
Hymn to Gadura 88
Wrath of the Sun, and the appointment of Aruna as his charioteer 90
Hymn to Indra by Kadru . . . 92
Gadura's inquiry as to the cause of his bondage . 95
Gadura devises means to bring the *Amrita* . 96
Of Kasyapa and Gadura . . . 97
Story of the Elephant and the Tortoise . . 98
Bad omens are seen by the gods and their preparation for battle 102
Battle of the gods with Gadura . . 107
Gadura takes away the *Amrita* . . 109
Of Gadura and Vishnu . . . ib
The mutual grant of boons . . . 110
Conversation of Indra with Gadura and Gadura's obtaining the name of Suparna . . ib
Indra steals the *Amrita* from the snakes . 112
The cleaving of their tongues . . . ib
Enumeration of the names of the chief serpents . 113
Asceticism of Sesha 114
Sesha obtains boons from Brahmā . . 115
Consultation of the snakes on the subject of their mother's curse 116

PAGE.

The snakes bring up Jaratkāru . . 120
Parikshit's hunt 121
The curse on Parikshit . . . 124
Conversation between Sringin and Samika . 125
Despatch by Samika of a disciple to Parikshit . 126
Speech of Gaurmukha in the court of Parikshita . ib
Parikshit takes counsel of his ministers . . 127
Conference of Kāsyapa and Takshaka . . 128
Kāsyapa desists on receiving money from Takshaka, from going to Parikshit's court . . 129
Death of the king in consequence of Takshaka's bite 131
Installation of Janamejaya as king . . ib
History of Jaratkāru . . . 132
His marriage 136
Birth of Astika 140
Janamejaya's vow to celebrate the snake sacrifice . 146
Preparations for the sacrifice . . . 147
Falling of the snakes into the sacrificial fire . 148
Astika's arrival at the sacrifice . . 152
Staying of the sacrifice . . . 159

Adivansavatarana Parva.

Short history of the Pāndava and Kuru princes . 164
Story of king Uparichara . . . 171
Description of the *Indraddhaja* festival . . 172
Origin of Girikā and the king's marriage with her 174
Story of Adrikā 175
Story of Satyavati 176
The meeting of Parāsara with Satyavati . . ib
Birth of Dwaipāyana . . . 177
History of Animāndavya . . . 178
Histories of Karna, Vāsudeva, Sātyaki, Kritavarman, etc ib
The revival of the Kshatriya order from the Brahmanas 181
The over-burdened Earth goes to Brahmā . 183
The gods are enjoined to be incarnate . . 184

Sambhava Parva.

PAGE.

Brief account of the origin of gods and all creatures on earth . . . 185
Birth of Bhrigu, and the genealogy of Adharma (unrighteousness) 191
Genesis of the animals, etc . . . 192
Previous history of Jarāsandha, and others . 194
Origin of Drona, Kripa, Dhritarāshtra, Yudhishthira, and others 197
History of Draupadi, Kunti, and Mādri . . 201
Story of Dushmanta 205
He sees Sakuntalā 212
Birth of Sakuntalā 213
Espousal by Dushmanta of Sakuntalā . . 217
Sakuntalā gives birth to a son . . . 219
She goes to her husband's home . . 220
No recognition of her by Dushanta . . ib
Her disappearance and the aerial voice . . 226
Dushmanta recovers his lost wife and son . 227
Installation of Bharata in the kingdom . . ib
Account of the race of Prajāpati . . 228
Story of Pururavas 229
Story of Nahusha 230
Story of Yayāti . . . . ib
Destruction of Kacha by the Dānavas . . 234
Sukra brings back Kacha into life . . ib
He is killed and revived a second time . . 235
Curse on wine by Sukra . . . 237
Sharmishthā throws Devayāni into a well . 241
Her rescue therefrom by Yayāti . . 242
Sarmisthā becomes the maid-servant of Devayāni . 246
Yayāti again sees Devayāni . . . 247
Yayāti's marriage with Devayāni . . 250
Yayāti marries Sharmishthā in secret . . 252
Sharmishthā gives birth to three sons . . ib
Devayāni sees Sharmistha's sons, and becomes jealous ib
Yayàti is cursed by Sukra . . . 254

PAGE

Puru takes upon himself the decrepitude of his father 257
Yayāti takes back his decrepitude, and installs Puru on the throne 259
Descendants of the cursed Yadu and others . 260
Ascension of Yayāti to heaven . . 261
His fall therefrom 264
Yayāti sees Ashtaka and others . . ib
He re-ascendeth to heaven . . . 277
Short history of the Paurava race . . 278
Story of Mahābhisa 288
Story of Pratipa 290
Birth of Shāntanu 291
Marriage of Shāntanu with Gangā . . 293
History of the incarnation of the Vasus . . 294
Story of Shāntanu 298
Installation of Bhisma as the heir-apparent . 301
Shāntanu sees Satyavati and is enamoured of her ib
Devavrata asks of Dāsaraja his daughter on behalf of his father 303
Devavrata receives the appellation of Bhisma . 305
Shāntanu begets offspring on Satyavati and goes to heaven ib
Vichitravirya obtains the kingdom . . 306
Bhisma carries away the daughters of the king of Kāshi from their *Sayāmvara* . . 307
Bhisma's encounter with the invited monarchs . 308
Death of Vichitravirya . . . 311
Conversation between Bhisma and Satayavati . ib
Story of Jamadagni 313
Story of Utathya . . . . ib
Story of Dirghatamas . . . 314
Satyavati relates to Bhisma the birth of Vyasa . 317
Origin of Dhritarāshtra and others . . 321
History of Gāndhāri 328
History of Prithā 329
Origin of Karna 330
Sayamvara of Kunti 332
Marriage of Pāndu and Mādri . . . 334

PAGE.

Pāndu's retreat into the forest . . . 336
Marriage of Vidura 337
Gāndhāri brings forth a hundred sons . . 339
The names of the hundred sons . . 342
Jayadratha marries Duhshalā . . . ib
How Pāndu slew a Brāhmana in the shape of a deer 343
The curse on Pandu 345
Pandu's lamentations . . . 346
His retirement into the woods with his wives . 348
Pāndu enjoins upon Kunti to beget offspring by others 351
The story of Vyushitāswa . . . 353
Origin of the institution of marriage . . 356
Births of Yudhishthira and the rest . . 359
Death of Pāndu 367
Mādri sacrifices herself on the funeral pyre of Pāndu 369
Yudhishthira and his brothers come to Hastināpore ib
Funeral obsequies of Pāndu . . . 372
Sports of the Kurus and the Pāndus . . 374
Bhima is poisoned by Duryodhana . . 376
Bhima goes to the region of the Nāgas . . ib
His return from the region of the Nāgās . 379
Origin of Kripa and Kripi . . . 381
History of Drona 382
Drona becomes the preceptor of the Kurus and the Pāndus 391
The princes begin to learn the use of arms . 392
Arjuna's exceptional proficiency . . ib
Story of Ekalavya 393
Drona tries his pupils . . . 396
Arjuna obtains the weapon called *Brahma-shira* . 398
Trial of the princes 399
Duryodhana installs Karna on the throne of Anga 406
Invasion of Pānchāla by the Kauravas . . 408
Arjuna takes Drupada captive and delivers him into the hands of his preceptor . . . 412
Drona sets Daupada free . . . ib
Installation of Yudhishthira as the heir-apparent . 413
Counsels of Kanika the politician . . 416

Jatugriha Parva.

PAGE.

Intrigues of Duryodhana and Sakuni . . 425
The exile of the Pāndavas to Vāranāvata . 430
Duryodhana takes counsel with Purochana . ib
Vidura's speech unto Yudhishthira . 433
The arrival of the Pandavas at Vāranavata . 434
Burning of the house of lac . . . 438
Flight of the Pāndavas to the forest . . ib

Hidimva-badha Parva.

Hidimvā is inspired with desire on seeing Bhima . 447
Bhima encounters Hidimva and slays him . 451
Bhima goes to kill Hidimvā and is dissuaded by Yudhishthira 454
Hidimvā takes Bhima with her . . 456
Birth of Ghatotkacha . . . ib

Vaka-badha Parva.

The Pāndavas dwell in Ekachakrā . . 459
Life of the Pāndavas at Ekachakra . . ib
Bhima and Kunti hear the wail of the Brāhmana and his wife 460
Speech of the Brāhmana . . . 461
Speech of his wife 462
Speech of his daughter . . . 465
Converse of Kunti with the Brāhmana . . 467
Bhima's vow to slay the Rākshasa Vaka . . 470
Bhima goes to Vaka with his food . . 472
He fights with and slays Vaka . . . 473
Return of Bhima dragging the body of Vaka to the town-gate 474
Concourse of the citizens in the morning to see the body of the Rākshasa . . . ib
Arrival of the Brāhmanas of the town at the house where the Pandavas dwelt . . . 475
Story of Bharadwāja 576
Drona obtains all the weapons of Rāma . . 477
Drupada celebrates a sacrifice to obtain a son . 481

PAGE.
A son arises from the sacrificial fire . . 482
Origin of Drupadi . . . . ib
Dhrishtadyumna learns the use of arms . . 483
The Pāndavas set out for Pānchala . . 484
Their meeting with Vyasa . . . ib
On the way they meet with the Gandharva Angāraparna on the banks of the Ganges . . 486
Fight with the Gandharva . . . 487
The Gandharva's defeat . . . 488
The Gandharva exchanges gifts with Arjuna . 489
Story of Tapati 492
King Samvarana sees Tapati . . . 493
Disappearance of Tapati . . . 494
Tapati's reappearance . . . 495
Tapati relates her history . . . 496
She again disappears 497
Marriage of Samvarana and Tapati . . 498
Story of Vasishtha 500
Story of Viswāmitra 501
Viswāmitra attempts to carry away by force Vasishtha's cow named Nandini . . 502
Viswāmitra's discomfiture at the hands the *mlechcha* host sprung from the different parts of the cow's body 503
His ascetic austerities . . . 504
Shaktri curses king Kalmāshapāda to be possessed with a Rākshasha 505
A certain Brāhmana asks the king for meat . 506
The king gives him human flesh to eat . . 507
The king cursed by the Brāhmana . . . ib
The Rāksasha-possessed king devours Vasishtha's sons ib
The Rishi resolves to kill himself . . 508
Speech of Adrishyanti . . . 509
Vashishta with his daughter-in-law sees Kalmāshpāda 510
Kalmāshapāda is freed from the curse . . ib
Birth of Parāshara 512
His intention of destroying all the worlds . ib
Story of Kārtavirya . . . . ib

PAGE.

The persecution of the Bhrigu race . . 513
History of Aurva 514
Origin of the *vadava* fire . . . 517
Parāshara celebrates the Rākshasa sacrifice . 518
Pulastya and others stop it . . . 519
Vashishta begets a son upon king Kalmāshapāda's wife 521
The Pāndavas take leave of Angāraparna . ib
They appoint Dhaumya as their priest . . 522

Sawayamvara Parva.

The Pāndavas see Vyasa on their way to Panchāla . 522
Arriving at Panchala they dwell in the house of a potter 524
Description of Draupadi's *Swayamvara* . . ib
Enumeration of the princes that came to the *Swayamvara* 527
Krishna recognises the disguised Pāndavas . 529
The discomfiture of the kings in stringing the bow 530
Karna is declared ineligible to bend the bow . ib
The kings desist from stringing the bow . ib
Arjuna goes towards the bow . . . ib
The Brāhmanas dissuade him . . . 531
Arjuna strings the bow and hits the mark . 532
The wrath of the invited kings . . 533
The kings attempt to slay Drupada . . 534
Arjuna and Bhima prepare for fight . . ib
Krishna's recognition of them . . . ib
Arjuna fights with Karna and defeats him . 536
Bhima fights with Shālya and overthrows him . 537
The kings wonder at this . . . ib
Krishna induces the monarchs to abandon the fight 538
Arjuna and Bhima depart with Draupadi . ib
Kunti's anxiety . . . . ib
Conversation of Kunti with Yudhishthira . 539
Yudhishthira asks Arjuna to marry Draupadi . ib
Arjuna's reply . . . . ib
Rāma and Krishna visit the Pāndavas . . 540
Dhrishtadyumna comes secretly to the abode of the potter 541
The Pāndavas talk on different subjects after having taken their meals . . . . ib

Vaivahika Parva.

PAGE.

Dhrishtadyumna having heard the talk of the Pāndavas informs Drupada of it on his return . . 543
Drupada sends a priest to the Pāndavas . . 544
Speech of Yudhishthira . . . 545
Arrival of Drupada's messenger there . . ib
The Pāndavas go to the house of Drupada . 546
Drupada interrogates the Pāndavas with the view of ascertaining their identity . . . 547
Yudhishthira's reply 548
Drupada's joy there-at . . . ib
His vow to restore the Pāndavas . . ib
Drupada expresses his intention of marrying his daughter to Arjuna 549
Drupada's conversation with Yudhishthira . ib
Arrival of Vyasa 550
Story of Jatilā 551
Kunti's expression of opinion . . . ib
Speech of Vyasa thereon . . . ib
Account of the sacrifice of the gods at the Naimisha forest 552
The gods see a golden lotus . . . 553
Indra sees a female . . . . ib
Indra interrogates the female . . . ib
He sees a young man at play with a young lady . ib
Indra and the young man interchange questions and answers . . . . ib
Indra sees the former Indras . . . 554
Vyasa's speech . . . . ib
Account of the origin of Valarāma and Keshava from a couple of Nārāyana's hairs . . 555
Prior history of the Pāndavas and Draupadi . ib
Gifted with divine vision Draupada sees the Pāndavas in their native forms . . . 556
Former history of Draupadi . . . 557
Speech of Vyasa to Drupada . . . ib
Preparations for the nuptials . . . 558
The hymeneal assembly . . . ib

PAGE

Consecutive marriages of the five . . 558
Kunti blesses Draupadi . . . 559
Krishna sends dower 560

Vidurāgamana Parva.

Duryodhana hears of the marriage of the Pāndavas 561
Vidura acquaints Dhritarāshtra with it . . 562
Conference of Duryodhana and Dhritarāshtra . 563
Karna's speech 565
Bhisma's speech 567
Drona's speech 568
Karna's reply 570
Speech of Vidura' . . . . ib
Speech of Dhritarāshtra . . . 573
Vidura's departure for Panchāla . . ib
He sees the Pāndavas . . . 574
Speech of Vidura to Drupada . . . ib

Rajyalava Parva.

Drupada's reply 575
Speech of Vāsudeva . . . . ib
Return of the Pāndavas to Hastinā with the consent of Krishna 576
Speech of the citizens on seeing the Pāndavas . ib
The Pāndavas take half of the kingdom and enter Khāndavaprastha . . . 577
The building of the city—its description . ib
Krishna and Valarāma return to Dwārakā . 579
Arrival of Nārada at the house of the Pāndavas . ib
Story of Sunda and Upāsunda . . . 581
The Pāndavas bind themselves with a rule in respect of Draupadi 590

Arjunavanavasa Parva.

The lives of the Pāndavas at Khāndavaprastha . 591
Arjuna violates the rule for rescuing the kine of a Brāhmana 592
Arjuna's voluntary exile . . . 593

PAGE.

Marriage of Arjuna with Ulupi . . 595
Arjuna obtains Chitrāngadā . . . 598
He rescues some Apsarās from a curse at the Pancha-tirtha 599
Arjuna sees Krishna at Prabhāsha . . 602
They both go to the Raivataka mountain for purposes of pleasure . . . . ib
Arjuna goes to Dwārakā with Krishna, and puts up at the house of the latter . . . 603

Subhadrāharana Parva.

The festival called Vrishnandhaka on the Raivataka mountain 603
Arjuna sees Subhadrā there . . . 604
He forcibly carries away Subhadrā . . 606
The Vrishnis prepare to fight with Arjuna and finally desist ib

Haranāharana Parva.

Arjuna returns with Subhadrā to Khāndavaprastha 608
Draupadi's speech to Arjuna . . . 609
Krishna and Valarāma and others come to Khāndava-prastha with dowers . . . ib
The festivities at Indraprashta on the arrival of the Vrishnis and Andhakas . . . 610
Birth of Abhimanyu . . . 612
He learns the art of arms . . . ib
The five sons of Draupadi . . . 613

Khandava-daha Parva

The administration of Yudhishthira . . . 614
Krishna and Arjuna goes to sport in the woods . 615
Sports of the females . . . ib
Arrival of Agni in the guise of a Brahmana . 616
His suit with Krishna and Arjuna . . 617
Anecdote of Swetaki . . . ib
Varuna furnishes Krishna and Arjuna with cars, the discus, and the bow Gāndiva . . 624
Escape of Aswasena from the burning Khāndava . 628

PAGE

Fight of Indra and Arjuna . . . 631
Fight of Krishna and Arjuna with the celestials . ib
Defeat of the gods . . . . ib
Indra desists from fight . . . ib
Conflagration of Khandava . . . 632
Flight of the Asura Maya . . . 634
Approach of Agni towards Maya to consume him . ib
Arjuna protects Maya . . . ib
Story of the Rishi Mandapāla . . . 635
Austerities of Mandapāla . . . ib
Why he was deprived of the merit of his devotions ib
Speech of the gods to Mandapāla . . ib
He assumes the form of a bird . . 636
His hymn to Agni . . . . ib
Bestowal of a boon on him by Agni . . 637
History of his four sons . . . 638
Grant of boons by Indra to Arjuna and Krishna . 646

FINIS.

ओं नमो नरेन्द्राय ।

यस्य विश्वं विभातीदं बालक्रीडनकं प्रभा ।
दुराराध्यं दुरावापं दुःसाध्यं तं विधिं नुमः ॥

स्वस्तिश्रीसमस्तकीर्त्तिकुमुदषण्डपूर्णचन्द्र प्रतिभटकुलकक्षमहानलायमान-प्रतापज्वालावलीढ़समस्तसपत्नवधूमुखपत्रभङ्ग-वाग्-देवताविलासैकगेह-पद्मावतीप्रसादपरिलंहिताप्रतिममहाराजपद-सौभाग्यसम्पत्-काश्मीरमहामहीपति-श्रीश्रीपादसरसीरुह-राजपरेषु ।

विनयस्य यथा योगात् सद्गुणः शोभते तराम् ।
तथा ते पुरसान्निध्यात् वसुधा बहुधाञ्चिता ॥
६ भवान् हि राजा बहुभाग्यजुष्टः
प्रावोधि साक्षादिव राजधर्मः ।
यत्र क्षमौदार्य्यमहोप्रतेजो-
दण्डं परं किन्तु भजन्त्यसाम्यम् ॥
स एव राजा स च राजधर्मो
यस्मिन् स्थिते नित्यसुखी हि लोकः ।
यत्र प्रजाः पुत्रसमास्तथैव
त्वं वात्र राजन् सुभगं प्रमाणम् ॥
धिक् कीर्णयं तं खलु राजरूपं
स्नेहः क्षमा हृच्च दया च यत्र ।
प्रजा स्वरक्तैर्व्विदधाति यस्य
धिग्जीविकां पीड़ितपीड्यमाना ॥
किं ब्रूमो बलवान् विधिर्व्वयमहो दैन्यं समासादिता
राजन् कर्म्म गतं यशः परिहृतं सत्यं परं कर्षितम् ॥
हाहा चन्द्रदिवाकरौ मलिनिमग्रस्तौ न विज्ञायते
कः पत्यास्तमसा पुनः प्रकलितं सर्व्वं सदा भारते ॥

राजन् किं वत दुर्घटं प्रलपतः काजस्य सर्व्वप्रभोः
पङ्गुं वो गिरिलङ्घने क्षमतरं कर्त्तुं समर्थः सदा ।
जम्बूकं किल धिक्कृतं मृगपतेः शक्तं तथा शासने
भेकं वा गजराजताड़नविधौ हाहा हतो भारतः ॥
यत्रायं प्रथितो महान् हिमगिरी राजा स्वयं भूभृतां
यत्रेयं सरितांवरा भगवती भागीरथी पुण्यदा ।
यत्र त्वं नृपतिर्म्महामहिमधृक् राज्ञां वरोधिष्ठिल-
स्तस्मिन् किं वत भारते सुविदिते धर्म्मः परं क्षीयते ॥
धिग्जातिम्महतीं गुणान् सुविपुलान् धिक् सम्पदं पुष्कलाम्
धिङ्मानं पदगौरवं धिगधिकं विद्यां विशिष्टां शुभाम् ।
धिक् कीर्त्तिं विततां तथा त्वभिनवां हाहा विना मानुषं
सर्व्वं व्यर्थतरं भवेत् किमधिकं पश्यत्विमं भारतम् ॥
जातिर्याति रसातलं गुणगणस्तस्याप्यधो गच्छति
धिग्विद्या पदवैभवं बहुमतं मानं परं हंहितम् ।
सर्व्वञ्च प्रलयं प्रयात्यनुदिनं जाने न वा भारते
पापं किं प्रसृतं महत् सुविषमं राजंस्तया पाल्यताम् ॥
तवैवानुग्रहबलैरामिमुख्यसमेधितैः ।
कार्य्यं संवर्द्धितं चेदं त्वमेव रक्ष साम्प्रतम् ॥
प्रांशुलभ्ये फले मोहादुद्बाहुर्व्वामनो यथा ।
कार्य्येस्मिन् दुर्घटे राजंस्तथा मम दुराग्रहः ॥
अथवा शक्तिरेवास्मिन् कृपा तव सुपुष्कला ।
दुस्तरे सरितां नाथे पोतः सुघटितो यथा ॥

कलिकाता

ज्ञातव्यभारतकार्य्यालय।

विनयावनतोनुगतः किङ्करः

श्रीप्रतापचन्द्रराय: ।

PREFACE.

Several persons of note and personages even in high rank, sympathising with the objects of the "Datavya Bharat Karyalya," have from time to time recommended to me that the Mahabharata, if translated into English, would, to quote the sentiments of the Right Honorable the Marquis of Hartington, as conveyed to me in Mr. Rost's letter of the 6th of October, 1882, and published at the time in nearly all the Indian newspapers, "supply a want long felt and be a real boon to the ever-increasing band of students of Indian history and archæology." These recommendations exactly falling in with the views entertained by me from some time past, have been taken into earnest consideration. The ancient literature of India is our glorious inheritance. In his letter to me Prof. Max Müller remarks, "I expect the time will come when every educated native will be as proud of his Mahabharata and Ramayana as Germans are of their Nibelunge, and Greeks,even modern Greeks, of their Homer." The vanity is excusable, if it were only vanity, that persuades a Hindu to seek the means of placing this splendid inheritance of his before the eyes of foreign nations, of foreigners particularly who from their culture are capable of appreciating and understanding it. But such an endeavour, if successful, may not satisfy vanity alone. It is really fraught with results of the utmost importance to the cause of historical and philological research, in fact, to the cause of Knowledge in all her principal departments.

Apart from all these, there is another consideration the importance of which it is difficult to exaggerate. Providence in its inscrutable wisdom has linked the destiny of this country with that of an island in the remote west which, though unable to boast of a bright past, has, nevertheless, a splendid present, and, if signs are to be trusted, a more glorious future still. England, however, by her wise administration of this her richest and most extensive dependency, has already ceased to be regarded in the light of a conquering power bent only upon self-aggrandisement at the expense of the children of the soil. Untrue to the traditions of Empire and the instincts of their

own better nature, individual Englishmen might now and then advocate the policy of repression ; but, thank God, force has long ago ceased to be regarded as an efficacious instrument in the Government of two hundred million of human beings. In her gracious Proclamation, constituting the Charter of our liberties, the Queen-Empress of India enunciates the noblest principles of government, and confesses to her determination of founding her rule upon the love and gratitude of the people. Occasional lapses on the part of those in authority under her might produce temporary irritation, but the two races are daily approaching each other with fraternal feelings as best befit the children of the same mother. Instead of looking upon the conquered people as outer barbarians, those in authority over them always manifest a sincere desire to enter into their feelings and understand their aspirations by personal converse and, what is certainly more efficacious in this line, by a study of their national literature. Professor Monier Williams in his preface to Dr. H. H. Milman's metrical translation of *Nalo-pakhyana* remarks, " Now that our Indian Empire has passed its first great climacteric, and vast changes are being effected in its constitution, the value of Sanskrit to all preparing for the Civil Service * * * cannot be insisted on too forcibly. Its relations to the spoken languages is not its only attraction. The study of Latin bears closely on Italian, and yet if the empire of Italy belonged to this country, we should not attach more importance to proficiency in Latin than we do at present, because, in fact, the people who now speak Italian have little community of character with the Romans who once spoke Latin. Their tastes, customs, habits of thought, laws, institutions, religion, and literature are all different. But in India the lapse of centuries causes little disturbance in the habits and character of the people, however numerous and violent the political revolutions." And again, " How is it, then, that knowing all this, Englishmen, with [two hundred million of] Indian fellow-subjects, have hitherto paid less attention to the study of this language, than other nations who have no material interests in the East ?"

Since the time, however, that the Professor wrote, some-

thing has been done towards encouraging the study of Sanskrit by the Civil Servants of India. It is a matter of regret, however, that the little that is acquired under compulsion while in course of training for the first test or the Departmental examinations, is rarely improved from a love of knowledge in after life. The cause, however, is not far to seek. The study of Sanskrit is attended with difficulties that are nearly insuperable in the case of the over-worked Indian official. Unless blessed with linguistic faculties of an exceptional nature, the little leisure that the Indian official might command, even if wholly devoted to the acquirement of Sanskrit, can scarcely produce desirable results. Viewed also in the light of a mean to an end, the end, viz, of understanding the wishes and aspirations of the Indian races for purposes of better government, the study of Sanskrit may be dispensed with if all that is contained in the great Sanskrit works of antiquity becomes obtainable by Englishmen through the medium of translation. Any effort, therefore, that is made towards unlocking Manu and Yajnyavalkya, Vyasa and Valmiki, to Englishmen at home or in India, can not but be regarded as a valuable contribution to the cause of good government.

With regard to the Mahabharata in particular, on which, as remarked by Oriental scholars, Aryan poets and prose-writers of succeeding ages have drawn as on a national bank of unlimited resources, I am fully persuaded that the usefulness of such a translation and its gratuitous distribution in India and Europe (America also has been included at the suggestion of my friends) would recommend itself to the patriotism of my countrymen without the need of any eloquent elaboration. It is impossible to suppose that the liberality of my countrymen could have been exhausted by supporting the "Bharat Karyalya" for a period of seven years only. The English translation will cost, at a rough estimate, Rs. 100,000. After my experience of the liberality of my countrymen, this sum, apprently large though it be, seems to me to be a trifle. I purpose therefore to publish an English translation of the Mahabharata in monthly parts of 10 forms each, octavo, demy, the first part of which is issued herewith.

The present edition shall consist of 1250 copies. 250 copies are intended for distribution in India free of all charges, among the gentry, the aristocracy, and reigning chiefs ; 300 among Indian officials of the higher ranks ; 250 for distribution out of India, chiefly among the *sàvants* of Europe and America. 200 copies must be reserved (as experience has taught me) for making up losses caused to recipients by negligence and in transit. The remaining 250 copies shall be charged for at Rs 50 and Rs 65 per copy inclusive of postal costs, Rs 50 being payable by persons in India and Rs 65 by those in Europe and America. It is needless to say that the selection of recipients shall, in regard to the present publication, rest entirely with the Karyalaya. Any person desirous of taking a copy, but whose name may not be entered in the free list, may, if he likes, have his name registered in the list of those to whom the aforesaid 250 copies are to be supplied for Rs 50 or 65 a copy. In case, however, of sheer inability on the part of these, copies may even be supplied, as long as available, at Rs 12 or Rs 25 according as the address is Indian or foreign. It is needles, however, to say that this last class of recipients must necessarily be very limited.

Since the foundation of the "Datavya Bharat Karyalya," not a single copy of any of its publications has ever been parted with for price. The present departure, therefore, from the Karyalya's uniform practice, in regard to at least 250 copies of the projected publication, requires a word of explanation. During the last seven years I have found a few gentlemen evincing some reluctance in accepting in gift the publications of the " Bharata Karyalya, " although this latter is no institution belonging to any private individual but is rather a national concern supported by a nation's patriotism. Many of the persons evincing such delicacy are too important to be overlooked in the distribution of our publications. It is to meet their case especially that 250 copies of the proposed translation are reserved. These gentlemen might easily accept copies now, on payment, which, as stated above, is Rs 50 in India and Rs 65 out of India. So far as the " Bharata Karyalya, " however, is concerned, gentlemen taking copies on payment of the above

sums, without being looked upon as purchasers, will be regarded as donors to the Karyal ya.

Although in the collection of funds necessary for the accomplishment of the present scheme, my chief reliance is upon my own countrymen, yet in an undertaking of this nature the Bharat Karyalya can not very well refuse outside support, if only to make an insurance against failure. The Editor of the *Sind Gazette,* in reviewing the Karyalya's prospectus issued in March last, remarked "there are many "Natives and Europeans of culture who will view the scheme "in the highly favorable light in which it presents itself "to men so unlike as the Marquis of Hartington and Pro-"fessor Max Muller, both of whom have given it their warm "support. The translation will cost the Bharat Karyalya some "Rs 100,000, and this is a large sum for even so influental and "wealthy a body to expend on such an object. But so brilliant "an instance of intellectual charity is certain to attract out-"side support, and, at the same time, it ought to have the "effect of swelling the member-roll of the Society." While thanking the European Editor most sincerely for his kind words in reference to my scheme, I would observe that if that scheme is rightly appreciated in Europe and America, I should not be justified in not accepting any offer of aid that is voluntarily made, or even in not seeking (actively, if need be) contributions to ensure success. Literature, in respect of its demand or usefulness either, is, more than anything else in the world, a cosmopolitan concern. The productions of genius are the common inheritance of the world. Homer lived as much for Greeks, ancient or modern, as for Englishmen or Frenchmen, Germans or Italians. Valmiki and Vyasa lived as much for Hindus as for every race of men capable of understanding them.

A SHORT HISTORY OF THE DATAVYA BHARAT KARYALYA, ITS ORIGIN AND OPERATIONS.

Impressed from my very youth with the desire of rendering the great religious works of India easily accessible to my countrymen from a hope that such a step, if accomplished, would, to a certain extent, counteract the growing scepticism and irreligion of the age, I nursed the wish for years in secret, my resources having been quite disproportionate to the grandeur of the scheme. The occupation to which I betook myself was that of a Book-seller and general Agent. After some years of unremitting toil, I achieved a success in my business which, in the face of the keen competition of the times, I could consider as in every respect fair. I secured a competence upon which, if I liked, I could retire. But without doing anything of the kind, I resolved to carry out, of course to the extent of my means, the scheme I had always nursed regarding the great Sanskrit works of antiquity. I soon brought out an edition in Bengali of the Mahabharata, the great epic of Vyasa, a perfect storehouse of religious instruction imparted not by dry precepts but enforced by the history of living men, princes and warriors, sages and hermits, in fact, of every specimen of humanity that can interest man in general. My edition consisted of 3,000 copies, and it took me a little more than seven years to complete it. The price I fixed for a copy, taking all circumstances into consideration, was Rs 42. although a little while before certain dishonest recipients of Babu Kaliprasanna Singha's edition of the same work (Babu Kaliprasanna Singha having distributed his edition *gratis*) had sold their copies for Rs 60 to 70 per copy in the open market.

A little after my edition had been brought out, I was afflicted by a domestic calamity with the details of which I need not acquaint the reader. Suffice it to say that for some time I was like one demented. On the advice of friends and physicians, I tried the effect of a temporary separation from old sights and scenes. But mine was no disorder of the nerves that a change of climate or scene could do me any good, Mine was "a mind diseased, a rooted sorrow to be plucked from

the memory," and I stood in need of "some sweet oblivious antidote to cleanse the stuffed bosom of that perilous stuff which weighs upon the heart." My purposeless wanderings could be of no avail. At length I mustered determination enough to forget my sorrows. The desire that I had all along cherished of doing something in my humble way towards counteracting the progress of irreligion by a circulation amongst my countrymen of the great religious works of ancient India, and which had been only temporarily suspended during my affliction, returned to me with renewed vigor. Besides, during my purposeless wanderings through the Mofussil, I met with various persons in humble stations of life to whom I was well known by my previous publication of the Mahabharata, many of whom gave me to understand that my edition of the Mahabharata though cheap in all conscience, was still out of the reach of persons of their class. They regretted that no cheaper edition could be brought out to satisfy their thirst. Pondering upon all these circumstances, I retraced my way homewards. Coming back to my office, I took stock and found that after the sales already effected, about one thousand copies, more or less complete, of the Mahabharata I had brought out, remained in my hands unsold. I had nobody to provide for in the world. My only daughter had been disposed of in marriage and she was happy with her husband possessing a decent independence. By that time I had also secured, from the profits of my concern, a sum that could secure me a competence for the rest of my days. Now was the the time, I thought, for making an attempt towards even a partial accomplishment of the desire I had all along cherished. The thousand copies of the Mahabharata that I had in my hands I began to distribute *gratis* amongst my countrymen.

My ill-digested project, however, soon became a failure. I was not very discriminate in the selection of recipients. My simplicity was taken advantage of by a number of persons whom I should not have trusted. These obtaining copies from me *gratis* began to sell them for price in the market. Experience made me wise, but the wisdom came too late. The copies I had in my hands had all been exhausted.

It was at this time that I began to mature some plan whereby the desire I cherished could be carried out without designing persons being able to take any undue advantage. After much deliberation, I succeeded in forming a plan which when submitted to my friends was fully approved of by them. The details of this plan will appear from the sequel.

My plan being matured, I resolved to bring out a second edition of the Mahabharata, the whole intended for gratuitous distribution, subject, of course, to proper restrictions. I selected the Mahabharata in particular, for more reasons than one. The editions of the Mahabharata brought out under the auspices of the Maharaja of Burdwan and the late Babu Kali Prasanna Singha, and distributed *gratis*, had comprised a few thousand copies utterly inadequate to satisfy the public demand. The manner also in which these copies had been distributed precluded the possibility of the great body of Mofussil readers being benefitted to any considerable extent. It would seem, besides, that such gratuitous distribution by the Maharaja of Burdwan and Babu Kali Prasanna Singha by its very insufficiency had tended more to tantalize the public than allay its thirst for the ancient literature of India.

In view, therefore, of this thirst for the ancient literature of our Father-land,—a thirst that could not but inspire feelings of pride in every patriotic bosom, feelings also that were particularly gratifying to me on account of the anxiety I had entertained at the sight of the growing irreligiousness of a portion of my countrymen, I resolved to establish a permanent Institution for the gratuitous distribution of the great religious works of ancient India. In this connection, as offering a ground of utility that would recommend itself more generally, I may again quote Professor Max Muller. " Printing " says he, "is now the only means of saving your Sanskrit literature from inevitable destruction. Many books which existed one or two centuries ago, are now lost, and so it will be with the rest, unless you establish Native Printing Presses, and print your old texts." The fruit then of my resolution has been the " Datavya Bharata Karyalya. " I felt, from the beginning, that such an institution, to be successful, would require large funds. The sum

I could devote to the purpose would be quite inadequate. But I was persuaded that of all countries in the world, India is pre-eminently the land of charity. The modes in which her charity exhibits itself might not be in accordance with the dictates of the political economy that is now in vogue in the West. But of the measure of that charity and of its disinterested character, there could be no question. I was persuaded that an appeal to my countrymen giving away their thousands at the beck of officials for the accomplishment of schemes of doubtful utility, could not fail to be responded to. Such an appeal was made, and with what success is already before the public. "I am particularly glad to see," again remarks the Professor quoted above, "that you do all that you are doing with the help of your own countrymen. That is the right way to go to work." For the success achieved small credit is due to me. The credit belongs almost wholly to my countrymen.

The "Datavya Bharat Karyalya" has, within the course of the last seven years, printed and gratuitously distributed two editions of the Mahabharata in Bengalee translation, each edition comprising nearly 3,000 copies. The fourth edition of the Mahabharata (the third of the series for gratuitous distribution) has been commenced and will take some time before it is completed. One edition of the Harivansa comprising 3,000 copies has been exhausted. The Ramayana also has been taken in hand and is nearly completed, the text of Valmiki publishing along with the translation. Roughly estimated, the "Bharat Karyalya" has distributed up to date nearly Nine thousand copies of the Mahabharata and the Harivansa taken together, and that number would swell to Eighteen thousand, when the fourth edition of the Mahabharata and the first edition of the Ramayana (both diglot) will be complete. A single copy of the Mahabharata consists of about 1,033 forms, octavo, demy; a single copy of the Harivansa, 112 forms; and a single copy of the Ramayana, 578 forms. The Arithmetical result, therefore, of the operations of the "Bharat Karyalya" has been that 1,37,83,500 separate printed forms have been already gratuitously distributed and in course of distribution.

Leaving aside the arithmetical results of the Karyalya's operations, it might be fairly presumed that the genuine demand for 18,000 copies of the sacred books of India represents a degree of interest taken by the people in the history of their past that is certainly not discouraging to patriotic hearts. So far as I myself am concerned, I would consider myself amply repaid if my exertions have contributed in the least towards withdrawing any portion of my countrymen and country-women from a perusal of the sensational literature of the present day in which, under the pretence of improvement, the plots and situations of fifth-rate French novels are introduced, vitiating the manly Aryan taste, and leaving no substantial instruction behind. If the publications of the Bharat Karyalya have succeeded in withdrawing to some extent readers of this class of literature from the unhealthy excitement for which alone it is sought, and turning them to contemplate the purity of Aryan society, the immutable truths of Aryan philosophy, the chivalry of Aryan princes and warriors, the masculine morality that guides the conduct of men even in the most trying situations, the bright examples of loyalty, constancy, and love, which the Aryan poet describes with a swelling heart, the end of those publications has at least been partially achieved. May I indulge the hope that my countrymen, even as they now are, be preserved from foreign influences in their manners, and may I also indulge the hope that my countrymen continue to look upon Vyasa and Valmiki with feelings of proper pride!

PROTAP CHUNDRA ROY.

Datarya Bharata Karyalya.

TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE.

The object of a translator should ever be to hold the mirror up to his author. That being so, his chief duty is to represent, so far as practicable, the manner in which his author's ideas have been expressed, retaining, if possible, at the sacrifice of idiom and taste, all the peculiarities of his author's imagery and of language as well. In regard to translations from the Sanskrit, nothing is easier than to dish up Hindu ideas so as to make them agreeable to English taste. But the endeavor of the present translator has been to give in the following pages as literal a rendering as possible of the great work of Vyasa. To the purely English reader there is much in the following pages that will strike as ridiculous. Those unacquainted with any language but their own are generally very exclusive in matters of taste. Having no knowledge of models other than what they meet with in their own tongue, the standard they have formed of purity and taste in composition must necessarily be a narrow one. The translator, however, would ill-discharge his duty if for the sake of avoiding ridicule he sacrificed fidelity to the original. He must represent his author as he *is*, not as he *should be* to please the narrow taste of those entirely unacquainted with him. Mr. Pickford, in the preface to his English translation of the *Maha Vira Charita*, ably defends a close adherence to the original even at the sacrifice of idiom and taste against the claims of what has been called "free translation" which means dressing the author in an outlandish garb to please those to whom he is introduced.

In the preface to his classical translation of Bhartrihari's *Niti Satakam* and *Vairagya-Satakam*, Mr. C. H. Tawney says, "I am sensible that, in the present attempt, I have retained much local coloring For instance, the idea of worshipping the feet of a god or great man, though it frequently occurs in Indian literature, will undoubtedly move the laughter of Englishmen unacquainted with Sanskrit, especially if they happen to belong to that class of readers who rivet their attention on the accidental and remain blind to the essential.

But a certain measure of fidelity to the original, even at the risk of making oneself ridiculous is better than the studied dishonesty which characterises so many translations of oriental poets." We fully subscribe to the above, although, it must be observed, the censure conveyed to the class of translators last indicated is rather undeserved, there being nothing like a " studied dishonesty " in their efforts which proceed only from a mistaken view of their duties and as such betray only an error of the head but not of the heart.

THE MAHABHARATA.

ADI PARVA.

SECTION 1.

Om! Having bowed down to Narayana and Nara, the most exalted male being, and also to the goddess Saraswati, must the word *success* be uttered.

Ugra-srava, the son of Lomaharshana, surnamed Sauti, well versed in the Puranas, bending with humility one day approached the great sages of rigid vows, sitting at their ease who had attended the twelve years' sacrifice of Saunaka, surnamed Kulapati, in the forest of Naimisha. Those ascetics, wishing to hear his wonderful narrations, presently began to address him who had thus arrived at that recluse abode of the inhabitants of the forest of Naimisha. Having been entertained with due respect by those holy men, he saluted those Munis (sages) with joined palms, even all of them, and inquired of the progress of their asceticism. Then all the ascetics, being again seated, the son of Lomaharshana humbly occupied the seat that was assigned to him. Seeing that he was comfortably seated and recovered from fatigue, one of the Rishis, beginning the conversation, asked him, "Whence comest thou, O lotus-leaf-eyed Sauti, and where hast thou spent the time? Tell me, who ask thee, in full?"

Accomplished in speech, Sauti, thus questioned, gave, in the midst of that spacious assemblage of contemplative Munis, a full and proper answer, in words consonant with their mode of life.

Sauti said:—"Having heard the diverse sacred and wonderful stories composed in his Mahabharata by Krishna-Dwaipayana, and which were recited in full by Vaisampayana at the Snake-sacrifice of the high-souled royal sage Janamejaya and in the presence also of that chief of princes, the son of Parikshita; having wandered about, visiting many sacred waters and holy shrines, I journeyed to the country venerated by the Dwijas (twice-born) and called Samantapanchaka, where formerly were

fought the battles between the children of *Kuru* and *Pandu*, and all the chiefs of the land ranged on either side. Thence, being anxious to see you, I am come into your presence. Ye reverend sages, all of whom are to me as Brahma ; ye greatly blessed, who shine in this place of sacrifice with the splendour of the solar fire ; ye who have performed ablutions and are pure ; ye who have concluded the silent meditations and have fed the holy fire ; and ye who are sitting without care ; what, O ye Dwijas, (twice-born) shall I repeat ? Shall I recount the sacred stories collected in the Puranas containing precepts of religious duty and of worldly profit, or the acts of illustrious saints and sovereigns of mankind ? "

The Rishis replied :—"The Purana, first promulgated by the great Rishi Dwaipayana, and which after having been heard both by the gods and the Brahmarshis was highly esteemed, which is the most eminent narrative that exists diversified both in diction and division, possessing subtile meanings logically combined, and embellished from the Vedas, is a sacred work. Composed in elegant language, it includeth the subjects of other books. It is elucidated by other Sastras, and comprehendeth the sense of the four Vedas. We are desirous of hearing that history, also called *Bharata*, the holy composition of the wonderful Vyasa, which dispelleth the fear of evil, just as it was cheerfully recited by the Rishi Vaishampayana, under the direction of Dwaipayana himself, at the snake-sacrifice of Raja Janamejay ?"

Sauti then said :—" Having bowed down to the primordial male being Isana, to whom multitudes make offerings, and who is adored by the multitude ; who is the true incorruptible one, Brahma, perceptible, imperceptible, eternal ; who is both a non-existing and an existing–non-existing being ; which is the universe and also distinct from the existing and non-existing universe ; who is the creator of high and low ; the ancient, exalted, inexhaustible one ; who is Vishnu, the beneficent and beneficence itself, worthy of all preference, pure and immaculate ; who is Hari, the ruler of the faculties, the guide of all things moveable and immoveable ; I will declare the sacred thoughts of the illustrious sage Vyasa, of marvellous deeds and worshipped here by all. Some bards have already published this history,

some are now teaching it, and others, in like manner, will hereafter promulgate it upon the earth. It is a great source of knowledge, established throughout the three regions of the world. It is possessed by the twice-born both in *detailed* and *compendious* forms. It is the delight of the learned for being embellished with elegant expressions, conversations human and divine, and a variety of poetical measures.

"In this world, when it was destitute of brightness and light, and enveloped all around in total darkness, there came into being, as the primal cause of creation. a *mighty egg*, the one inexhaustible seed of all created beings. It is called Mahadivya, and was formed at the beginning of the Yuga, in which, we are told, was the true light Brahma, the eternal one, the wonderful and inconceivable being present alike in all places; the invisible and subtile cause, whose nature partaketh of entity and nonentity. From this egg came the lord Pitamaha, Brahma, the one only Prajapati; with Suraguru and Sthanu; so Manu, Ka, and Parameshti; also Pracheta and Daksha, and the seven sons of Daksha. Then also appeared the twenty-one Prajapatis, and the man of inconceivable nature whom all the Rishis know; so the *Viswa-devas*, the *Adityas*, the *Vasus*, and the twin *Aswinas*; the Yakshas, the Sadhyas, the Pisachas, the Guhyakas, and the Pitris. After these were produced the wise and most holy *Brahmarshis*, and the numerous *Rajarshis* distinguished by every noble quality. So the waters, the heavens, the earth, the air, the sky, the points of the heavens, the years, the seasons, the months, the fortnights, called Pakshas, with day and night in due succession. And thus were produced all things which are known to mankind.

"And what is seen in the universe, whether animate or inanimate, of created things, will, at the end of the world, and after the expiration of the Yuga, be again confounded. And, at the commencement of other Yugas, all things will be renovated; and, like the various fruits of the earth, succeed each other in the due order of their seasons. Thus continueth perpetually to revolve in the world, without beginning and without end, this wheel which causeth the destruction of all things.

"The generation of Devas, as a brief example, was thirty-

three thousand thirty-three hundred and thirty-three. The sons of *Div* were Brihadbhanu, Chakshush, Atma, Vibhavasu, Savita, Richika, Arka, Bhanu, Ashabaha, and Ravi. Of these *Vivaswans* of old, Mahya was the youngest whose son was Deva-brata. The latter had for his son, Su-brata, who, we learn, had three sons,—Dasa-jyoti, Sata-jyoti, and Sahasra-jyoti, each of them producing numerous offspring. The illustrious Dasa-jyoti had ten thousand, Sata-jyoti ten times that number, and Sahasra-jyoti ten times the number of Sata-jyoti's offsprings. From these are descended the family of the *Kurus*, of the *Yadus*, and of *Bharata* ; the family of *Yayati* and of *Ikshwaku* ; also of all the Rajarshis. Numerous also were the generations produced, and very abundant were the creatures and their places of abode,—the mystery which is threefold,—the Vedas, Yoga, and Vijnana,—Dharma, Artha, and Kama,—also various books upon the subject of Dharma, Artha, and Kama,—also rules for the conduct of mankind,—also histories and discourses, with various *srutis* : all of which having been seen by the Rishi Vyasa are here in due order mentioned as a specimen of the book.

"The Rishi Vyasa published this mass of knowledge in both a *detailed* and an *abridged* form. It is the wish of the learned in the world to possess the detail and the abridgment. Some read the *Bharata* beginning with the initial *mantra* (invocation) others with the story of Astika, others with Uparichara, while some Brahmanas study the whole. Men of learning display their various knowledge of the institutes in commenting on the composition. Some are skilful in explaining it, while others in remembering its contents.

"The son of Satyavati having, by penance and meditation, analysed the eternal Veda, afterwards composed this holy history. And when that learned Brahmarshi of strict vows, the noble Dwaipayana Vyasa, offspring of Parasara, had finished this greatest of narrations, he began to consider how he might teach it to his disciples. And the possessor of the six attributes, Brahma, the world's preceptor, acquainted with the anxiety of the Rishi Dwaipayana, came in person to the place where the latter was, for gratifying the saint, and benefitting the people. And when Vyasa, surrounded by all the tribes of

Munis, saw him, he was surprised ; and standing with joined palms, he bowed and he ordered a seat to be brought. And Vyasa having gone round him who is called Hiranyagarbha seated on that distinguished seat, stood near it ; and being commanded by Brahma Parameshti, he sat down near the seat, full of affectction and smiling in joy. Then the greatly glorious Vyasa, addressing Brahma Parameshti, said, ' O divine Brahma ,by me a poem hath been composed which is greatly respected. The mystery of the Veda, and what other subjects have been explained by me ; the various ritual of the Vedas and of the Upanishads with the Angas ; the compilation of the Puranas and history formed by me and named after the three divisions of time, past, present, and future ; the determination of the nature of decay, death, fear, disease, existence, and non-existence ; a description of creeds and of the various modes of life ; rules for the four castes, and the import of all the Puranas ; an account of asceticism and of the duties of a religious student ; the dimensions of the sun and moon, the planets, constellations, and stars, together with that of the four ages ; the Rik, Sama, and Yajur Vedas ; also the Adhyatma ; the sciences called Nyaya, Orthoepy, and treatment of disease ; charity and Pasupata ; birth, celestial and human, for particular purposes ; also a description of places of pilgrimage and other holy places ; of rivers, mountains, forests, and the ocean ; of heavenly cities and the *kalpas* ; the art of war ; the different kinds of nations and language ; and what is the nature of the manners of the people ; and the all-pervading spirit ; all these have been represented. But, after all, no writer of this work is to be found on earth. '

" Brahma said: ' I esteem thee, for thy knowledge of divine mysteries, before the whole body of celebrated Munis distinguished for the sanctity of their lives. I know thou hast revealed the divine word, even from its first utterance, in the language of truth. Thou hast called thy present work a *poem*, wherefore it shall be a poem. There shall be no poets whose works may equal the descriptions of this poem, even as the three other modes, called Asramas, are ever unequal in merit to the domestic Asrama. Let Ganesa be thought of, O Muni, for the purpose of writing the poem. ' "

Sauti said, " Brahma having thus spoken to Vyasa, retired to his own abode. Then Vyasa began to call to his remembrance Ganesa. And Ganesa, obviator of obstacles, ready to fulfil the desires of his votaries, was no sooner thought of, than he repaired to the place where Vyasa was seated. And when he had been saluted, and was seated, Vyasa addressed him thus :—' O guide of the *ganas !* be thou the writer of the *Bharata* which I have formed in my imagination, and which I am about to repeat. '

" Ganesa, upon hearing this address, thus answered :—' I will become the writer of thy work, provided my pen do not for a moment cease writing. ' And Vyasa said unto that divinity, ' Wherever there be any thing thou dost not comprehend, cease to continue writing. ' Ganesa having signified his assent, by repeating the word Om ! proceeded to write ; and Vyasa began ; and, by way of diversion, he knit the knots of composition exceeding close ; by doing which, he dictated this work according to his engagement.

"I am (continued Sauti) acquainted with eight thousand eight hundred verses, and so is *Suka*, and, perhaps, *Sanjaya*. From the mysteriousness of their meaning, O Muni, no one is able, to this day, to penetrate those closely knit difficult slokas. Even the omniscient Ganesa took a moment to consider ; while Vyasa, however, continued to compose other verses in great abundance.

" The wisdom of this work, like unto an instrument for applying collyrium, hath opened the eyes of the inquisitive world, blinded by the darkness of ignorance. As the sun dispelleth the darkness so doth the *Bharata* by its discourses on religion, profit, pleasure and final release, dispell the ignorance of men. As the full moon by its mild light expandeth the buds of the water-lily, so this Puran, by exposing the light of the Sruti hath expanded the human intellect. By the lamp of history, which destroyeth the darkness of ignorance, the whole mansion of the womb of nature is properly and completely illuminated.

"This work is a tree, of which the chapter of contents is the seed; the divisions called *Pauloma* and *Astika* are the root ; the part called *Sambhava* is the trunk ; the books called *Sabha* and *Aranya* are the roosting perches ; the book called *Arani* is the knitting knots ; the books called *Virata* and *Udyoga*

the pith ; the book named *Bhishma*, the main branch ; the book called *Drona*, the leaves ; the book called *Karna*, the fair flowers ; the book named *Salya*, their sweet smell ; the books entitled *Stri* and *Aishika*, the refreshing shade ; the book called *Santi*, the mighty fruit ; the book called *Aswamedha*, the immortal sap ; the book denominated *Asramavasika*, the spot where it groweth ; and the book called *Mausala*, is an epitome of the Vedas and held in great respect by the virtuous Brahmans. The tree of the Bharata, inexhaustible to mankind as the clouds, shall be as a source of livelihood to all distinguished poets."

Sauti continued, "I will now speak of the undying flowery and fruitful productions of this tree, possessed of pure and pleasant taste, and not to be destroyed even by the immortals. Formerly, the spirited and virtuous Krishna Dwaipayana, by the injunctions of Vishma, the wise son of Ganga and of his own mother, became the father of three boys, who were like the three fires, by the two wives of *Vichitra-virya* ; and having thus raised up Dhritarashtra, Pandu and Vidura, he returned to his recluse abode to prosecute his religious exercises.

"It was not till after these were born, grown up, and departed on the supreme journey, that the great Rishi Vyasa published the Bharata in this the region of mankind ; when being solicited by *Janamejaya* and thousands of Brahmans, he instructed his disciple *Vaisampayana*, who was seated near him ; and he, sitting together with the Sadasyas, recited the Bharata, during the intervals of the ceremonies of the sacrifice, being repeatedly urged to proceed.

"Vyasa hath fully represented the greatness of the house of *Kuru*, the virtuous principles of Gandhari, the wisdom of Vidura, and the constancy of *Kunti*. The noble Rishi hath also described the divinity of Vasudeva, the rectitude of the sons of Pandu, and the evil practices of the sons and partisans of Dhrita-rashtra.

"Vyasa executed the compilation of the Bharata, exclusive of the episodes, originally in twenty-four thousand verses ; and so much only is called by the learned as the *Bharata*. Afterwards he composed an epitome in one hundred and fifty verses, consisting of the introduction with the chapter of con-

tents. This he first taught to his son Suka ; and afterwards he gave it to others of his disciples who were possessed of the same qualifications. After that he executed another compilation, consisting of six hundred thousand verses. Of these, thirty hundred thousand are known in the world of the Devas; fifteen hundred thousand in the world of the Pitris ; fourteen hundred thousand among the Gandharvas, and one hundred thousand in the regions of mankind. Narada recited them to the Devas, Devala to the Pitris, and Suka published them to the Gandharvas, Yakshas, and Rakshasas ; and in this world they were recited by Vaisampayana, one of the disciples of Vyasa, a man of just principles and the first among all those acquainted with the Vedas. Know that I, Sauti, have also repeated one hundred thousand verses.

"*Durjodhana* is a great tree formed of passion, *Karna* is its trunk; *Sakuni* is its branches ; *Dusshasana*, its full-grown fruit and flowers; and the weak-minded Raja *Dhrita-rashtra*, its roots.

" *Yudhish-thira* is a vast tree, formed of religion and virtue; *Arjuna* is its trunk ; *Bhima-sena*, its branches ; the two sons of Madri are its full grown fruit and flowers ; and its roots are Krishna, Brahma, and the Brahmanas.

"Pandu, after having subdued many countries by his wisdom and prowess, took up his abode with the Munis in a certain forest as a sportsman, where he brought upon himself a very severe misfortune for having killed a stag coupling with its mate, which served as a warning for the conduct of the princes of his house as long as they lived. Their mothers, that the ordinances of the law might be fulfilled, admitted as substitutes to their embraces the gods Dharma, Vayu, Sakra, and the divinities the twin Aswinas. And when their offsprings were grown up, under the care of their two mothers, in the society of ascetics, in the midst of sacred groves and holy recluse abodes of religious men, they were conducted by Rishis into the presence of Dhrita-rashtra and his sons, following as students in the habit of Brahmacharis, having their hair tied in knots on their heads. 'These our pupils,' said they, 'are as your sons, your brothers, and your friends ; they are Pandavas.' Saying this, the Munis disappeared.'

"When the Kauravas saw them introduced as the sons of Pandu, the distinguished class of citizens shouted exceedingly for joy. Some, however, said, they were not the sons of Pandu; others said, they were; while a few asked how they could be *his* offspring, seeing he had been so long dead. Still on all sides voices were heard crying, 'They are on all accounts welcome! Through divine Providence we behold the family of Pandu! Let their welcome be proclaimed!' As these acclamations ceased, the plaudits of invisible spirits, causing every point of the heavens to resound, were tremendous. There were showers of sweet-scented flowers, and the sound of shells and kettle-drums. Such were the wonders that happened on the arrival of the young princes. The joyful noise of all the citizens, in expression of their satisfaction on the occasion, was so great that it reached the very heavens in magnifying plaudits.

"Having studied the whole of the Vedas and sundry other *shastras*, the Pandavas resided there, respected by all and without apprehension from any one.

"The principal men were pleased with the purity of Yudishthira, the fortitude of Bhima-sena, the courage of Arjuna, the submissive attention of Kunti to her superiors, and the humility of the twins Nakula and Sahadeva; and all the people rejoiced because of their heroic virtues.

"After a while, Arjuna obtained the virgin Kirshnā at the *swayamvara*, in the midst of a concourse of Rajas, by performing a very difficult feat of archery. And from this time he became very much respected in this world among all bowmen; and in fields of battle also, like the sun, he was hard to be beheld by foe-men. And having vanquished all the neighbouring princes and every considerable tribe, he accomplished all that was necessary for the Raja (his eldest brother) to perform the great sacrifice called *Rajasuya*.

"Yudhishthira, after having, through the wise counsels of Vāsudeva and by the valor of Bhima-sena and Arjuna, slain Jarasandha (the king of Magadha) and the proud Chaidya acquired the right to perform the grand sacrifice of Rajasuya abounding in provisions and offerings and fraught with transcendent merits. And Duryodhana came to this sacrifice; and

when he beheld the vast wealth of the Pandavas scattered all around ; the offerings ; the precious stones, gold, and jewels ; the wealth in cows, elephants, and horses ; the curious textures, garments, and mantles ; the precious shawls and furs, with carpets made of the skin of the *Ranku ;* he was filled with envy and became exceedingly displeased. And when he beheld the hall of assembly elegantly constructed by Maya (the Asura architect) after the fashion of a celestial court, he was inflamed with rage. And having started in confusion at certain architectural deceptions within this building, he was derided by Bhimasena in the presence of Vāsudeva, like one of mean descent.

"And it was represented to Dhrita-rashtra that his son, while partaking of various objects of enjoyment and diverse precious things, was becoming meagre, wan, and pale. And Dhrita-rashtra, sometime after, out of affection for his son, gave his consent to their playing (with the Pandavas) at dice. And Vāsudeva coming to know of this, became exceeding wrath. And being dissatisfied, he did nothing to prevent the disputes, but overlooked the gaming and sundry other horrid unjustifiable transactions arising therefrom ; and in spite of Vidura, Bhishma, Drona, and Kripa the son of Sharadwan, he made the Kshetrias kill each other in the terrific war that ensued.

"And Dhrita-rashtra hearing the ill news of the success of the Pandavas and recollecting the resolutions of Duryodhana, Karna, and Sakuni, pondered for a while and addressed Sanjaya the following speech :—

'Attend, O Sanjaya, to all I am about to say, and it will not become thee to treat me with contempt. Thou art well versed in the *shastras*, intelligent, and endued with wisdom. My inclinations were never for war, nor did I delight in the destruction of my race. I made no distinction between my own children and the children of Pandu. My own sons were prone to wilfulness and despised me because I am old. Blind as I am, because of my miserable plight and through paternal affection, I bore it all. I was foolish after the thoughtless Duryodhana ever growing in folly. Having been a spectator of the riches of the mighty sons of Pandu, my son was derided for his awkwardness while ascending the hall. Unable

to bear it all and unable himself to overcome the sons of Pandu in the field, and though a soldier, unwilling yet to obtain good fortune by his own exertions, with the help of the king of Gandhara, he concerted an unfair game at dice.

'Hear, O Sanjaya, all that happened thereupon and came to my knowledge. And when thou hast heard all I say recollecting everything as it fell out, thou shalt then know me for one with a prophetic eye. When I heard that Arjuna, having bent the bow, had pierced the curious mark and brought it to the ground, and bore away in triumph the maiden Krishnā, in the sight of the assembled princes, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Subhadra of the race of Madhu had, after forcible seizure, been married by Arjuna in the city of Dwaraka, and that the two heroes of the race of Vrishni (Krishna and Balarama, the brothers of Subhadra) without resenting it had entered Indraprastha as friends, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Arjuna, by his celestial arrows preventing the down-pour by Indra the king of the gods, had gratified Agni by making over to him the forest of Khandava, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the five Pandavas with their mother Kunti had escaped from the house of lac, and that Vidura was engaged in the accomplishment of their designs, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Arjuna, after having pierced the mark in the arena had won Draupadi, and that the brave Panchalas had joined the Pandavas, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Jarasandha, the foremost of the royal line of Magadha and blazing in the midst of the Kshetrias, had been slain by Bhima with his bare arms alone, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that in their general campaign the sons of Pandu had conquered the chiefs of the land and performed the grand sacrifice of the Rajasuya, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Draupadi, her voice choked with tears and heart full of agony, in the season of impurity and with but one raiment on, had been dragged into court and though she had protectors had been treated as if she had none, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the wicked wretch

Dushsahana, in striving to strip her of that single garment, had only drawn from her person a large heap of cloth without being able to arrive at its end, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Yudhishthira, beaten by Saubala at the game of dice and deprived of his kingdom as the consequence thereof, had still been attended upon by his brothers of incomparable prowess, then O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the virtuous Pandavas weeping with affliction had followed their elder brother to the wilderness and exerted themselves variously for the mitigation of his discomforts, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success.

'When I heard that Yudhishthira had been followed into the wilderness by *Snatakas* and noble-minded Brahmanas who live upon alms, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Arjuna, having in combat pleased the god of gods, *Tryambaka* (the three-eyed) in the disguise of a hunter, obtained the great weapon *Pasupata*, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the just and renowned Arjuna, having been to the celestial regions, had there obtained celestial weapons, from Indra himself then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that afterwards Arjuna had vanquished the Kalakeyas and the Paulomas proud with the boon they had obtained and which had rendered them invulnerable even to the celestials, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Arjuna, the chastiser of enemies, having gone to the regions of Indra for the destruction of the Asuras, had returned thence successful, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Bhima and the other sons of Pritha (Kunti) accompanied by Vaisravana had arrived at that country which is inaccessible to man, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that my sons, guided by the counsels of Karna, while on their journey of Ghosayatra, had been taken prisoners by the Gandharvas and were set free by Arjuna, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Dharma (the god of justice) having come under the form of a Yaksha had proposed certain questions to Yudhishthira, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that my sons had failed to discover the Pandavas under their

disguise while residing with Draupadi in the dominions of Virata, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the principal men of my side had all been vanquished by the noble Arjuna with a single chariot while residing in the dominions of Virata, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the king of Matsya had offered his virtuous daughter Uttara to Arjuna and that Arjuna had accepted her for his son, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Yudhishthira, beaten at dice, deprived of wealth, exiled and separated from his connections, had assembled yet an army of seven *Akshauhinis*, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Vāsudeva of the race Madhu, who covered this whole earth by one foot, was heartily engaged in the welfare of the Pandavas, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard Narada declare that Krishna and Arjuna were Nara and Narayana and he (Narada) had seen them together in the regions of Brahma, then, O Sanjya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Krishna for the welfare of mankind, anxious to bring about peace, had repaired to the Kurus, and went away without having been able to effect his purpose, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Karna and Duryodhana resolved upon imprisoning Krishna but that Krishna displayed in himself the whole universe, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that upon the departure of Krishna, Pritha (Kunti) standing full of sorrow near his chariot received consolation from him, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Vāsudeva and Bhisma the son of Santanu were the counsellors of the Pandavas and Drona the son of Bharadwaja pronounced blessings on them, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When Karna said unto Bhisma—I will not fight when thou art fighting—and quitting the army went away, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Vāsudeva and Arjuna and the bow *gandiva* of immeasurable prowess, three beings of dreadful energy, had come together, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that upon Arjuna having been seized with compunction on his

chariot and ready to sink, Krishna showed him all the worlds within his body, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Bhisma, the desolator of foes, killing ten-thousand charioteers every day in the field of battle, had not slain any amongst the (Pandavas) of note, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Bhisma the righteous son of Ganga had himself indicated the means of his death in the field of battle, and that the same were accomplished by the Pandavas with joyfulness, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Arjuna having placed Sikhandi before himself in his chariot, had wounded Bhisma of infinite courage and invincible in battle, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that ancient hero Bhisma, having reduced the numbers of the race of *shomaka* to a few, overcome with various wounds was lying on a bed of arrows, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that upon Bhisma's lying on the ground distressed for water, Arjuna, being requested, had pierced the ground and allayed his thirst, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When Vayu together with Indra and Surya united as allies for the success of the sons of Kunti, and the beasts of prey (by their inauspicious presence) were putting us in fear, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When the wonderful warrior Drona, displaying various modes of fight in the field, did not slay any of the superior Pandavas, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the *Maharatha Sansaptakas* of our army appointed for the overthrow of Arjuna were all slain by Arjuna himself, then, O Sajnaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that our disposition of forces, impenetrable by others, and defended by Bharadwaja himself well-armed, had been singly forced and entered by the brave son of Subhadra, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that our *Maharathas*, unable to overcome Arjuna, bore the face of joy after having jointly surrounded and slain the boy Abhimanyu, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the blind Kauravas were shouting for joy after having slain Abhimanyu and that thereupon Arjuna in anger made his celebrated speech referring to Saindhava, then

Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Arjuna had vowed the death of Saindhava and fulfilled his vow in the presence of his enemies, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that upon the horses of Arjuna being fatigued, Vāsudeva releasing them made them drink water and bringing them back and re-harnessing them continued to guide them as before, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that while his horses were fatigued, Arjuna staying on his chariot checked all his assailants, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Yuyudhana of the race of Vrishni, after having thrown into confusion the army of Drona rendered unbearable in prowess owing to the presence of elephants, retired to where Krishna and Arjuna were, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Karna even though he had got Bhima within his power allowed him to escape after only addressing him in contemptuous terms and dragging him with the end of his bow, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Drona, Kritavarma, Kripa, Karna, the son of Drona, and the valiant king of Madra (Salya) suffered Saindhava to be slain, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the celestial *Sakti* given by Indra (to Karna) was by Madhava's machinations caused to be hurled upon the Rakshasa Ghatotkacha of frightful countenance, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that in the encounter between Karna and Ghatotkacha, that *Sakti* was hurled against Ghatotkacha by Karna, the same which was certainly to have slain Arjuna in battle, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Dhristadyumna, transgressing the laws of battle, slew Drona while alone in his chariot and resolved on death, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Nakula, the son of Madri, having in the presence of the whole army engaged in single combat with the son of Drona and showing himself equal to him drove his chariot in circles around, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When upon the death of Drona, his son misused the weapon called *Narayana* but failed to achieve the destruction of the Pandavas, then,

O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Bhima-sena drank the blood of his brother Dushshana in the field of battle without anybody being able to prevent him, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the infinitely brave Karna, invincible in battle, was slain by Arjuna in that war of brothers mysterious to even the gods, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Yudishthira the just overcame the heroic son of Drona, Dushshana, and the fierce Kritavarma, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the brave king of Madra who ever dared Krishna in battle was slain by Yudhishthira, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the wicked Sauvala of magic power, the root of the gaming and the feud, was slain in battle by Sahadeva the son of Pandu, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Duryodhana, spent with fatigue, having gone to a lake and made a refuge for himself within its waters, was lying there alone, his strength gone and without a chariot, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the Pandavas having gone to that lake accompanied by Vāsudeva and standing on its beach began to address contemptuously my son who was incapable of putting up with affronts, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that while displaying in circles a variety of curious modes (of attack and defence) in an encounter with clubs, *he* was unfairly slain according to the counsels of Krishna, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the son of Drona and others by slaying the Panchalas and the sons of Draupadi in their sleep, perpetrated a horrible and infamous deed, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that Aswatthama while being pursued by Bhima-sena had discharged the first of weapons called *Aishika*, by which the embryo in the womb (of Uttara) was wounded then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success. When I heard that the weapon *Brahmashira* (discharged by Aswatthama) was repelled by Arjuna with another weapon over which he had pronounced the word "*Sasti*," and that Aswatthama had to give up the jewel-like excrescence on his head, then, O Sanjaya,

I had no hope of success. When I heard that upon the embryo in the womb of Virata's daughter being wounded by Aswatthama with a mighty weapon, Dwaipayana and Krishna denounced curses on him, then, O Sanjaya, I had no hope of success.

'Alas! Gandhari, destitute of children, grand-children, parents, brothers, and kindred, is to be pitied. Difficult is the task that hath been performed by the Pandavas: by them hath a kingdom been recovered without a rival.

'Alas! I have heard that the war hath left only ten alive: three of our side, and of the Pandavas, seven; in that dreadful conflict eighteen *Akshauhinis* of Kshetrias have been slain! All around me is utter darkness, and a fit of swoon assaileth me: consciousness leaves me, O Suta, and my mind is distracted.'"

Sauti said, "Dhrita-rashtra, bewailing his fate in these words, was overcome with extreme anguish and for a time deprived of sense; but being revived, he addressed Sanjaya in the following words:——

'After what hath come to pass, O Sanjaya, I wish to abandon life without delay; I do not see the least advantage in cherishing it any longer.'"

Sauti said,—"the wise son of Gavalgana, (Sanjaya) then addressed the distressed lord of Earth while thus talking and bewailing, sighing like a serpent and repeatedly fainting, in these words of deep import:—

'Thou hast heard, O Raja, of the greatly powerful men of vast exertions, spoken of by Vyasa and the wise Narada; men born of great royal families, resplendent with worthy qualities, versed in the science of celestial arms, and in glory emblems of Indra; men who having conquered the world by justice and performed sacrifices with fit offerings (to the Brahmans), obtained renown in this world and at last succumbed to the sway of time. Such were Saivya; the valiant Mahratha; Srinjaya, great amongst conquerors; Suhotra; Ranti-Deva, and Kakshivanta great in glory; Valhika, Damana, Saryati, Ajita, and Nala; Viswamitra the destroyer of foes; Amvarisha, great in strength; Marutta, Manu, Ikshaku, Gaya, and Bharata; Rama the son of Dasaratha;

Sasavindu, and Bhagiratha; Kritavirya the greatly fortunate, and Janamejaya too; and Yayati of good deeds who performed sacrifices being assisted therein by the celestials themselves, and by whose sacrificial altars and stakes this earth with her habited and uninhabited regions hath been marked all over. These twenty-four Rajas were formerly spoken of by the celestial Rishi Narada unto Saivya when much afflicted for the loss of his children. Besides these, other Rajas had gone before, still more powerful than they, mighty charioteers, noble in mind, and resplendent with every worthy quality. These were Puru, Kuru, Yadu, Sura, and Viswagaswa of great glory; Anuha, Yuvanaswa, Kakutstha, Vikrami, and Raghu; Vijaya, Vitihotra, Anga, Bhava, Sweta, and Vrihadguru; Usinara, Sata-ratha, Kanka, Duliduha, and Druma; Dambhodbhava, Para, Vena, Sagara, Sankrita, and Nimi; Ajeya, Parasu, Pundra, Sambhu, and the holy Deva-Vridha; Devahwuya, Supritima, Supritika, and Vrihad-ratha; Mahotsaha, Vinitatma, Sukratu, and Nala the king of the Nishadhas; Satyabrata, Santa-bhaya, Sumitra, and the chief Subala; Jānujangha, Anaranya, Arka, Priyabhritya, Shuchi-brata, Balabandhu, Niramardda, Ketusringa, and Brihadbala; Dhrishtaketu, Brihatketu, Driptaketu, and Niramaya; Abikshit, Chapala, Dhurta, Kritabandhu, and Dridhe-shudi; Mahapurana-sambhavya, Pratyanga, Parahā, and Sruti. These, O Chief, and other Rajas, we hear enumerated by hundreds and by thousands, and still others by millions, princes of great power and wisdom, quitting very abundant enjoyments, met death as thy sons have done! Their heavenly deeds, valor, and generosity, their magnanimity, faith, truth, purity, simplicity and mercy, are published to the world in the records of former times by sacred bards of great learning. Though endued with every noble virtue, these have yielded up their lives. Thy sons were malevolent, inflamed with passion, avaricious, and very evil-dispositioned. Thou art versed in the *Shastras*, O Bhārata, and art intelligent and wise; they never sink under misfortunes whose understandings are guided by the *Shastras*. Thou art acquainted, O prince, with the lenity and severity of fate: this anxiety therefore for the safety of

thy children is unbecoming. Moreover, it behoveth thee not to grieve for that which is to be: for who can avert, by his wisdom, the decrees of fate? No one can leave the way marked out for him by Providence. Existence and non-existence, pleasure and pain, all have Time for their root. Time createth all things and Time destroyeth all creatures. It is Time that burneth creatures and it is Time that extinguisheth the fire. All states, the good and the evil, in the three worlds, are caused by Time. Time cutteth short all things and createth them anew. Time alone is awake when all things are asleep: indeed, Time is incapable of being overcome. Time passeth over all things without being retarded. Knowing as thou dost that all things past and future and all that exist at the present moment, are the offsprings of Time, it behoveth thee not to abandon thy reason.'"

Sauti said:—"The son of Gavalgani, having in this manner administered comfort to the royal Dhrita-rashtra overwhelmed with grief for his sons, then restored his mind to peace. Taking these facts for his subject, Dwaipayana composed a holy *Upanishad* that has been published to the world by learned and sacred bards in the Puranas composed by them.

"The study of the Bharata is an act of piety. He that readeth even one foot, believing, hath his sins entirely purged away. Herein Devas, Devarshis, and immaculate Brahmarshis of good deeds, have been spoken of; and likewise Yakhas and great Uragas (Nagas). Herein also hath been described the eternal Vāsudeva possessing the six attributes. He is the true and just, the pure and holy, the eternal Brahma, the supreme soul, the true and constant light, whose divine deeds wise and learned men recount; from whom hath proceeded the non-existent and existent-nonexistent universe with principles of generation and progression, and birth, death, and re-birth. That also hath been treated of which is called Adhyatma (the superintending spirit of nature) that partaketh the attributes of the five elements. That also hath been described who is *purusha* being above such epithets as 'undisplayed' and the like; also that which the first of *yotis* exempt from the common destiny and endued with the power of meditation

and *Tapa* behold dewelling in their hearts as a reflected image in the mirror.

"The man of faith, devoted to piety, and constant in the exercise of virtue, on reading this section is freed from sin. The believer that constantly heareth recited this section of the Bharata, called the Introduction, from the beginning, falleth not into difficulties. The man repeating any part of the introduction in the two twilights is during such act freed from the sins amassed during the day or the night. This section, the body of the Bharata, is truth and nectar. As butter is among curds, Brahmana among bipeds, the Aranyaka among the Vedas, and nectar among medicines ; as the sea is eminent among receptacles of water, and the cow among quadrupeds ; as are these (among the things mentioned) so is the Bharata said to be among histories.

"He that causeth it, even a single foot thereof, to be recited to Brahmans during a Sradha, his offerings of food and drink to the manes of his ancestors become inexhaustible.

"By the aid of history and the Puranas, the Veda may be expounded ; but the Veda is afraid of one of little information lest he should injure it. The learned man who recites to others *this* Veda of Vyasa reapeth advantage. It may without doubt destroy even the sin of killing the embryo and the like. He that readeth this holy chapter at every change of the moon, readeth the whole of the Bharata, I ween. The man who with reverence daily listeneth to this sacred work acquireth long life and renown and ascendeth to heaven.

"In former days, having placed the five Vedas on one side and the Bharata on the other, these were weighed in the balance by the celestials assembled for that purpose. And as the latter weighed heavier than the four Vedas with their mysteries, from that period it hath been called in the world Mahabharata (the *great* Bharata) ; for it being esteemed superior both in substance and gravity of import is denominated Mahabharata from such substance and gravity of import. He that knoweth its meaning is saved from all his sins.

"*Tapa* is innocent, study is harmless, the ordinances of the Vedas prescribed for all the tribes are harmless, the acquisi-

tion of wealth by exertion is harmless; but when these are abused in their practice it is then that they become sources of evil.

SECTION II.

The Rishis said:—"O son of Suta, we wish to hear a full and circumstantial account of the place mentioned by you as Samanta-panchaka."

Sauti said:—"Listen, O ye Brahmans, to the sacred descriptions I utter. O Ye best of men, ye deserve to hear of the place known as Samanta-panchaka. In the interval between the Treta and the Dwapara yugas, Rama (the son of Jamadagni) great among all who have borne arms, urged by impatience of wrongs, repeatedly smote the noble race of Kshetrias. And when that fiery meteor, by his own valor, annihilated the entire tribe of the Kshetrias, he formed at Samanta-panchaka five lakes of blood. We are told that his reason being overpowered by anger he offered oblations of blood to the manes of his ancestors, standing in the midst of the sanguine waters of those lakes. It was then that his forefathers of whom Richika was the first having arrived there addressed him thus:—'O Rama, O blessed Rama, O offspring of Bhrigu, we have been gratified with the reverence thou hast shown for thy ancestors and with thy valor, O mighty one! Blessings be upon thee, O thou illustrious one, ask the boon that thou mayst desire.'

"Rama said:—'If, fathers, ye are favorably disposed towards me, the boon I ask is that I may be absolved from the sins begotten of my having annihilated the Kshetrias in anger, and that the lakes I have formed may become famous in the world as holy shrines.' The Pitris then said, 'So shall it be. But be thou pacified.' And Rama was pacified accordingly. The region that lieth near unto those lakes of gory water, from that time hath been celebrated as Samanta-panchaka the holy. The wise have declared that every country should be distinguished by a name significant of some circumstance which may have rendered it famous. In the interval between

the Dwapara and the Kali yugas there happened at Samanta-panchaka the encounter between the armies of the Kauravas and the Pandavas. In that holy region, without ruggedness of any kind, were assembled Eighteen Akshauhinis of soldiers eager for battle. And, O Brahmanas, having come thereto, they were all slain on the spot Thus the name of that region, O Brahmans, hath been explained, and the country described to you as a sacred and delightful one. I have mentioned the whole of what relateth to it as the region is celebrated throughout the three worlds."

The Rishis said :—" We have a desire to know, O son of Suta, what is implied by the term *Akshauhini* that hath been used by thee. Tell us in full what is the number of horse and foot, chariots and elephants, which compose an Akshauhini, for thou art fully informed."

Sauti said :—" One chariot, one elephant, five foot soldiers, and three horse, form one *Patti ;* three pattis make one *Sena-mukha ;* three sena-mukhas are called a *Gulma ;* three gulmas, a *Gana ;* three ganas, a *Vahini ;* three vahinis together are called a *Pritana ;* three pritanas form a *Chamu ;* three chamus, one *Anikini ;* and an Anikini taken ten times forms, as it is styled by those who know, an *Akshauhini.* O Ye best of Brahmans, arithmeticians have calculated that the number of chariots in an Akshauhini is twenty one thousand eight hundred and seventy. The measure of elephants must be fixed at the same number. O Ye pure, you must know that the number of foot soldiers is one hundred and nine thousand three hundred and fifty. The number of horse is sixty-five thousand six hundred and ten. These, O Brahmans, as fully explained by me, are the numbers of an Akshauhini as said by those acquainted with the principles of numbers. O best of Brahmans, according to this calculation were composed the eighteen Akshauhinis of the Kaurava and the Pandava army. Time, whose acts are wonderful, assembled them on that spot and having made the Kauravas the cause, destroyed them all. Bhisma acquainted with choice weapons, fought for ten days. Drona protected the Kaurava Vahinis for five days. Karna the desolator of hostile armies fought

for two days; and Salya for half a day. After that lasted for half a day the encounter with clubs between Duryodhana and Bhima. At the close of that day, Aswatthama, Kritavarma and Kripa destroyed the army of Yudhishthira in the night while sleeping without suspicion of danger.

"O Saunaka, this best of narrations called Bharata which has begun to be repeated at thy sacrifice, was formerly repeated at the sacrifice of Janamejaya by an intelligent disciple of Vyasa. It is divided into several sections: in the beginning are Paushya, Pauloma, and Astikaparvas, describing in full the valor and renown of kings. It is a work whose descriptions, diction, and sense are varied and wonderful. It contains an account of various manners and rites. It is accepted by the wise as the state called *Vairagya* is by men desirous of final release. As Self among things to be known, as life among things that are dear, so is this history that furnisheth the means of arriving at the knowledge of Brahma the first among all the shastras. There is not a story current in this world but doth depend upon this history even as the body upon the food that it taketh. As masters of good lineage are ever attended upon by servants desirous of preferment, so is the Bharata cherished by all poets. As the words constituting the several branches of knowledge appertaining to the world and the Veda display only vowels and consonants, so this excellent history displayeth only the highest wisdom.

"Listen, O ye ascetics, to the outlines of the several divisions (*parvas*) of this history called Bharata, endued with great wisdom, of sections and feet that are wonderful and various, of subtile meanings and logical connection, and embellished with the substance of the Vedas.

"The first parva is called *Anukramanika*; the second, *Sangraha*; then *Pausya*; then *Pauloma*; then *Astika*; then *Adivansavatarana*. Then comes the *Samvava* of wonderful and thrilling incidents. Then comes *Yatugriha-daha* (setting fire to the house of lac) and then *Hidimba-badha* (death of Hidimba) parvas; then comes *Baka-badha* (death of Baka) and then *Chaitra-ratha*. The next is called *Swyamvara* (election of husband by Panchali), in which Arjuna by the

excrcise of Kshetria virtues won Draupadi for wife. Then comes *Vaivahika* (marriage). Then come *Viduragamana* (advent of Vidura), *Rajya-lava* (acquirement of kingdom), *Arjuna-banabasha* (exile of Arjuna) and *Subhadra-harana* (the ravishment of Subhadra). After these, come *Harana-harika*, *Khandava-daha* (the burning of the Khandava forest), and *Maya-darshana* (the meeting with Maya the Asura architect). Then come *Sabhá, Mantra, Jarasandha, Digbijaya* (general compaign). After Digbijaya come *Raja-syuika, Arghaviharana* (robbing of the Arghya) and *Shisupala-badha* (death of Shishupala). After these, *Dyuta* (gambling), *Anudyuta* (subsequent to gambling). *Aranyaka,* and *Kirmira-badhá* (destruction of Kirmira). Then, *Arjunavigamana* (the travels of Arjuna), and *Kāiráti.* In the last hath been described the battle between Arjuna and Mahadeva in the guise of a hunter. After this *Indra-lokavigāmana* (the journey to the regions of Indra) ; then that mine of religion and virtue and highly pathetic *Nalopākhyána* (the story of Nala). After this last, *Tirtha-yattra* or the pilgrimage of the wise prince of the Kurus, the death of *Jatasura,* and the battle of the *Yakshas.* Then the battle with the *Nibata-kabachas, Ajagara,* and *Markandyea-Samasya* (the meeting with Markundeya). Then the meeting of *Draupadi* and *Satyavama, Ghoshayathra, Mriga-swapna* (dream of the deer). Then the story of *Brihadaranayka* and then *Aindra-drumna.* Then *Draupadi-harana* (the abduction of Draupadi), and *Jayadratha-bimoksana* (the realease of Jayadratha.) Then the story of *Savitri* illustrating the great merit of connubial chastity. After this last, the story of *Rama.* The parva that comes next is called *Kundala-harana* (the theft of the ear-rings.) That which comes next is *Aranya* and then *Vairata.* Then the entry of the Pandavas, and the fulfilment of their promise (of living unknown for one year.) Then the destruction of the *Kichakas,* then the attempt to take the kine (of Virata by the Kauravas). The next is called the marriage of Avimanyu with the daughter of Virata. The next you must know is the most wonderful parva called Udyoga. The next must be known by the name of *Sanjayayana* (the arrival of Sanjaya). Then comes *Prajagara* (the

sleeplessness of Dhrita-rashtra owing to his anxiety.) Then *Sanat-sujata* in which are the mysteries of spiritual philosophy. Then *Yana-sandhi*, and then the arrival of Krishna. Then the story of *Matuli*, and then of *Galava*. Then the stories of *Savitri*, *Vama-deva*, and *Vainya*. Then the story of *Yamadagniya* and *Shodasha-rajika*. Then the arrival of Krishna at the court, and then *Bidulaputra-shashana*. Then the muster of troops and the story of *Sheta*. Then must you know comes the quarrel of the high-souled Karna. Then the march to the field of the troops of both sides. The next hath been called numbering the *Rathis* and *Atirathas*. Then comes the arrival of the messenger *Uluka* which kindled the wrath (of the Pandavas). The next that comes you must know is the story of *Amba*. Then comes the thrilling story of the installation of Bhisma as Commander-in-chief. The next is called the creation of the insular region *Jambu* ; then *Bhumi* ; then the account about the formation of islands. Then comes *Bhagabat-gita* ; and then the death of Bhisma. Then the installation of Drona ; then the destruction of the *Sansaptakas*. Then the death of Abhimanyu ; and then the vow of Arjuna (to slay Jayadratha.) Then the death of Jayadratha, and then of Ghatot-kácha. Then must you know comes the story of the death of Drona of surprising interest. The next that comes is called the discharge of the weapon called *Narayana*. Then must you know is Karna, and then Salya. Then comes the immersion into the lake, and then the encounter (between Bhima and Duryodhana) with clubs. Then comes *Swaraswata*, and then descriptions of holy shrines, and then genealogies. Then comes *Sauptiká* describing incidents disgraceful (to the honor of the Kurus.) Then comes the *Aishika* of harrowing incidents. Then comes *Jalapradana* (oblations of water to the manes of the deceased), and then the wailings of the women. The next must be known as *Shraddha* describing the funeral rites performed for the slain Kauravas. Then comes the destruction of the Rakshasha Chárváka who had assumed the disguise of a Brahmana (for deceiving Yudhish-thira.) Then the coronation of the wise Yudhish-thira. The next is called the *Grihaprabibhaga*. Then comes *Santi*, then *Rajadharma-anushasana*, then

Apaddharma, then *Moksha-dharma*. Those that follow are called respectively *Suka-prashna-avigamana*, *Brhama-prashna-anushasana*, the origin of *Durvasa*, the disputations with *Maya*. The next is to be known as *Anushasanika*. Then the ascension of Bhisma to heaven. Then the horse-sacrifice, which when read purgeth all sins away. The next must be known as the *Anugita* in which are words of spiritual philosophy. Those that follow are called *Asramvasa*, *Puttra-darshana* (meeting with the spirits of the deceased sons), and the arrival of Narada. The next is called *Mausala* which abounds with terrible and cruel incidents. Then come *Mahaprasthanika* and ascension to heaven. Then comes the *Purana* which is called *Khila-Harivansa*. In this last are contained *Visnu-parva*, Vishnu's frolics and feats as a child, the destruction of *Kansa*, and lastly, the very wonderful *Bhavishya-parva* (in which are prophesies regarding the future.)"

The high-souled Vyasa had composed these hundred *parvas* of which the above is only an abridgment : having distributed them into eighteen, the son of Suta recited them consecutively in the forest of Naimisha as follows :—

"In the *Adi* parva are contained *Pausya*, *Pauloma Astika*, *Adivansavatara*, *Sambhava*, the burning of the house of lac, the slaying of Hidimva, the destruction of the Asura *Vaka*, *Chitraratha*, the *Swayamvara* of Draupadi, her marriage after the overthrow of rivals in war, the arrival of Vidura, the restoration, Arjuna's exile, the abduction of Subhadra, the gift and receipt of the marriage dower, the burning of the Khandava forest, and the meeting with (the Asura-architect) Maya. The Pausya parva treats of the greatness of Utanka, and the Pauloma, of the sons of Bhrigu. The Astika describes the birth of Garuda and of the race of the Nagas (Snakes), the churning of the ocean, the incidents relating to the birth of the celestial steed Uchchaisrava, and finally, the dynasty of Bharata, as described in the Snake-sacrifice of king Janamejaya. The *Sambhava* parva narrates the births of various kings and heroes, and that of the sage, Krishna-Dwaipayana ; the partial incarnations of deities, the generation of Daityas and Danavas and Yakshas of great prowess, and of serpents, Gandharvas,

birds, and of all other creatures; and lastly, of the life and adventures of king Bharata—the progenitor of the line that goes by his name—the son born of Sakuntala by Dushshanta in the asylum of the ascetic Kanwa. This parva also describes the greatness of *Bhagirathi*, and the births of the Vasus in the house of Santanu and their ascension to heaven. In this parva is also narrated the birth of Bhisma uniting in himself portions of the energies of the other Vasus, his renunciation of royalty and adoption of the Brahmacharya mode of life, his adherence to his vows, his protection of Chitrangada, and after the death of Chitrangada, his protection of his younger brother, Vichitravirya, and his placing the latter on the throne; the birth of Dharma among men in consequence of the curse of Animandyavya; the births of Dhrita-rashtra and Pandu through the potency of Vyasa's blessing; and also the birth of the Pandavas; the plottings of Duryodhana to send the sons of Pandu to Varanavata, and the other dark counsels of the sons of Dhrita-rastra in regard to the Pandavas; then the advice administered to Yudhish-thira on his way by that well-wisher of the Pandavas—Vidura—in the *mlechchà* language—the digging of the hole, the burning of Purochana and the sleeping woman of the fowler caste, with her five sons, in the house of lac; the meeting of the Pandavas in the dreadful forest with Hidimbā, and the slaying of her brother Hidimba by Bhima of great prowess. The birth of Ghatot-kacha; the meeting of the Pandavas with Vyasa, and in accordance with his advice their stay in disguise in the city of Ekachchatra, in the house of a Brahmana; the destruction of the Asura Vaka, and the amazement of the populace at the sight; the extraordinary births of Krishnā and Dhrista-dyumna; the departure of the Pandavas to Panchala in obedience to the injunction of Vyasa, and moved equally by the desire of winning the hand of Draupadi on learning the tidings of the Swayamvara from the lips of a Brahmana; the victory of Arjuna over a Gandharva, called Angara-parna, on the banks of the Bhagirathi, his contraction of friendship with his adversary, and his hearing from the Gandharva the history of Tapati, Vasistha and Aurva. This

parva treats of the journey of the Pandavas towards Panchala, the acquisition of Draupadi in the midst of all the Rajahs, by Arjuna, after having successfully pierced the mark ; and in the ensuing fight, the defeat of Salya, Karna, and all the other crowned heads, at the hands of Bhima and Arjuna of great prowess ; the ascertainment by Balarama and Krishna at sight of these matchless exploits, that the heroes were the Pandavas, and the arrival of the two brothers at the house of the potter where the Pandavas were staying ; the dejection of Drupada on learning that Draupadi was to be wedded to five husbands ; the wonderful story of the five Indras related in consequence ; the extraordinary and divinely-ordained wedding of Draupadi ; the sending of Vidura by the sons of Dhrita-rashtra as envoy to the Pandavas ; the arrival of Vidura and his sight of Krishna ; the abode of the Pandavas in Khandava-prastha, and then their rule over one half of the kingdom ; the fixing of turns by the sons of Pandu, in obedience to the injunctions of Narada, for connubial companionship with Krishnā. In like manner hath the history of Sunda and Upasunda been recited in this. This parva then treats of the departure of Arjuna for the forest according to the vow, he having seen Draupadi and Yudhish-thira sitting together as he entered the chamber to take out arms for delivering the kine of a certain Brahmana. This parva then describes Arjuna's meeting on the way with Ulupi, the daughter of a Naga (serpent) ; it then relates his visits to several sacred spots ; the birth of Vabruvahana ; the deliverance by Arjuna of the five celestial damsels who had been turned into alligators by the imprecation of a Brahmana ; the meeting of Madhava and Arjuna on the holy spot called Pravhasa ; the ravishment of Subhadra by Arjuna, incited thereto by her brother Krishna, in the wonderful car moving on land, water, and in mid air, according to the wish of the rider ; the departure to Indra-prastha, with the dower ; the birth in the womb of Subhadra of that prodigy of prowess Abhimanyu ; Yajnaseni's giving birth to children ; then follows the pleasure-trip of Krisna and Arjuna to the banks of the Jumna and the acquisition by them of the discus and the

celebrated bow Gandiva ; the burning of the forest of Khandava ; the rescue of Maya by Arjuna, and the escape of the serpent,—and the begetting of a son by that best of Rishis, Mandapala, in the womb of the bird *Sarngi*. This parva is divided by Vyasa into two hundred and twenty seven chapters. These two hundred and twenty seven chapters contain eight thousand eight hundred and eighty four slokas.

"The second is the extensive parva called *Sabha* or the assembly, full of matter. The subjects of this parva are the establishment of the grand hall by the Pandavas ; their review of their retainers ; the description of the courts of the *lokapalas* by Narada well acquainted with the celestial regions ; the preparations for the Rajasuya sacrifice ; the destruction of Jarasandha ; the deliverance by Vāsudeva of the princes confined in the mountain pass ; the compaign of universal conquest by the Pandavas ; the arrival of the princes at the Rajasuya sacrifice with tribute ; the destruction of Shishupala on the occasion of the sacrifice, in connection with the offering of *arghya;* Bhima-sena's ridicule of Duryodhana in the assembly ; Duryodhana's sorrow and envy at the sight of the magnificent scale on which the arrangements had been made ; the indignation of Duryodhana in consequence, and the preparations for the game of dice ; the defeat of Yudhish-thira at play by the wily Sakuni ; the deliverance by Dhrita-rashtra of his afflicted daughter-in-law Draupadi sunk in the ocean of distress caused by the gambling, as of a boat tossed about by the tempestuous waves. The endeavors of Duryodhana to engage Yudhish-thira again in the game ; and the exile of the defeated Yudhish-thira with his brothers. These constitute what has been called by the great Vyasa the *Sabha* parva. This parva is divided into seventy eight sections, and consists, O best of Brahmanas, of two thousand five hundred and eleven slokas.

"Then must you know is the third parva called *Aranyaka* (relating to the forest). This parva treats of the wending of the Pandavas to the forest and the citizens' following the wise Yudhish-thira ; Yudhish-thira's adoration of the god of day, according to the injunctions of Dhaumya, to be gifted with the power of maintaining the dependant Brahmanas with food

and drink; the creation of food through the grace of the Sun; the expulsion by Dhrita-rashtra of Vidura who always spoke for his master's good; Vidura's coming to the Pandavas and his return to Dhrita-rashtra at the solicitation of the latter; the wicked Druyodhana's plottings to destroy the forest-ranging Pandavas, being incited thereto by Karna; the appearance of Vyasa and his dissuasion of Duryodhana bent upon going to the forest; the history of Surabhi; the arrival of Maitreya; his laying down to Dhrita-rashtra the course of action; and his curse on Duryodhana; Bhima's slaying of Kirmira in battle; the coming of the Panchalas and the princes of the Vrishni race to Yudhish-thira on hearing of his defeat at unfair gambling by Sakuni; Dhananjay's allaying the wrath of Krishna; Draupadi's lamentations before Madhava; Krishna's cheering her; the fall of Sauva also has been here described by the Rishi; also Krishna's bringing Subhadra with her son to Dwaraka; and Dhrista-dyumna's bringing the sons of Draupadi to Panchala; the entrance of the sons of Pandu into the romantic Dwaita wood; conversation of Bhima, Yudhish-thira, and Draupadi; the coming of Vyasa to the Pandavas and his endowing Yudhish-thira with the power of *Pratismriti*; then, after the departure of Vyasa, the removal of the Pandavas to the forest of Kamyaka; the wanderings of Arjuna of immeasurable prowess in search of weapons; his battle with Mahadeva in the guise of a hunter; his meeting with the *lok-palas* and receipt of weapons from them; his journey to the regions of Indra for arms and the consequent anxiety of Dhrita-rashtra; the wailings and lamentations of Yudhish-thira on the occasion of his meeting with the worshipful great sage *Brihad-aswa.* Here occurs the holy and highly-pathetic story of Nala illustrating the patience of Damayanti and the character of Nala. Then the acquirement by Yudhish-thira of the mysteries of dice from the same great sage; then the arrival of the Rishi *Lomasha* from the heavens to where the Pandavas were, and the receipt by these high-souled dwellers in the woods of the intelligence brought by the Rishi of their brother Arjuna staying in the heavens; then the pilgrimage of the Pandavas to various sacred spots in accordance with the message of Arjuna, and their

attainment of great merit and virtue consequent on such pilgrimage : then the pilgrimage of the great sage Narada to the shrine *Pulasta* ; also the pilgrimage of the high-souled Pandavas. Here is the deprivation of Karna of his ear-rings by Indra. Here also is recited the sacrificial magnificence of Gaya; then the story of Agastya in which the Rishi ate up the Asura Vatapi, and his connubial connection with Lopā-mudrā from the desire of offspring. Then the story of Rishya-sringa who adopted the Brahmacharya mode of life from his very boyhood ; then the history of Rama of great prowess the son of Yamadagni in which has been narrated the death of Karta-virya and the Haihayas ; then the meeting between the Pandavas and the Vishnis in the sacred spot called *Pravhasa* ; then the story of *Su-kanya* in which Chyavana, the son of Bhrigu, made the twins, Aswinas, drink, at the sacrifice of king Saryati, the *Soma* juice (from which they had been excluded by the other gods), and in which, besides, is shown how Chyavana himself acquired perpetual youth (as a boon from the grateful Aswinas). Then hath been described the history of king Mandhata ; then the story of prince *Jantu* ; and how king Somaka by offering up his only son (Jantu) in sacrifice obtained a hundred others ; then the excellent history of the hawk and the pigeon ; then the examination of king Shivi by Indra, Agni, and Dharma ; then the story of Ashtāvakra, in which is the disputation, at the sacrifice of Janaka, between that Rishi and the first of logicians, Vandi, the son of Varuna ; the defeat of Vandi by the great Ashtāvakra, and the release by the Rishi of his father from the depths of the ocean. Then the story of Yava-krita, and then that of the great Raivya ; then the departure (of the Pandavas) for Gandha-madana and their abode in the asylum called Narayana ; then Bhima-sena's journey to Gandha-madana at the request of Draupadi (in search of the sweet-scented flower). Bhima's meeting on his way, in a grove of bannanas, with Hanumana, the son of Pavana, of great prowess ; Bhima's bath in the tank and the destruction of the flowers therein for obtaining the sweet-scented flower (he was in search of) ; his consequent battle with the mighty Rakshasas and the Yakshas of great prowess including Maniman, the destruction

of the Asura Jata by Bhima ; the meeting (of the Pandavas) with the royal sage *Vrisha-parva* ; their departure for the asylum of Arshti-shena and abode therein ; the incitement of Bhima (to acts of vengeance) by Draupadi. Then is narrated the ascent of the hills of Kylasa by Bhima-sena, his terrific battle with the mighty Yakshas headed by Maniman ; then the meeting of the Pandavas with Vaisravana (Kuvera), and the meeting with Arjuna after he had obtained for the purposes of Yudhish-thira many celestial weapons ; then Arjuna's terrible encounter with the Nivata-Kavachas dwelling in Hiranya-parva, and also with the Paulomas, and the Kalakeyas; their destruction at the hands of Arjuna ; the commencement of the display of the celestial weapons by Arjuna before Yudhish-thira ; the prevention of the same by Narada ; the descent of the Pandavas from Gandha-madana ; the seizure of Bhima in the forest by a mighty serpent huge as the mountain ; his release from the coils of the snake, upon Yudhish-thira's answering certain questions ; the return of the Pandavas to the Kamyaka woods. Here is described the reappearance of Vāsudeva to see the mighty sons of Pandu ; the arrival of Markandeya, and various recitals ; the history of Prithu the son of Vena recited by the great Rishi ; the stories of Swaraswati and the Rishi *Tarkhya*. After these, is the story of Matsya ; other old stories recited by Markandeya ; the stories of Indradyumna and Dhundhu-mara ; then the history of the chaste wife ; the history of Angira, the meeting and conversation of Draupadi and Satyabhama ; the return of the Pandavas to the forest of Dwaita ; then the procession to see the calves and the captivity of Duryodhana ; and when the wretch was being carried off, his rescue by Arjuna ; here is Yudhish-thira's dream of the deer ; then the re-entry of the Pandavas into the Kamyaka forest ; here also is the long story of Vrihi-draunika. Here also is recited the story of Durvasa ; then the abduction by Jayadratha of Draupadi from the asylum ; the pursuit of the ravisher by Bhima swift as the air and the ill shaving of Jayadratha's crown at Bhima's hands. Here is the long history of Rama in which is shown how Rama by his prowess slew Ravana in battle. Here also is narrated the story of Savitri ;

then Karna's deprivation by Indra of his ear-rings; then the presentation to Karna by the gratified Indra of a *Sakti* (missile weapon) which had the virtue of killing one only person against whom it might be hurled; then the story called *Aranya* in which Dharma (the god of justice) gave advice to his son (Yudhish-thira); in which, besides, is recited how the Pandavas after having obtained a boon went towards the west. These are all included in the third Parva called Aranyaka, consisting of two hundred and sixty-nine sections. The number of *slokas* is eleven thousand six hundred and sixty four.

"The extensive Parva that comes next is called *Vairata*. The Pandavas arriving at the dominions of Virata saw in a cemetery on the outskirts of the city a large *shami* tree whereon they kept their weapons. Here hath been recited their entry into the city and abo le there in disguise. Then the slaying by Bhima of the wicked Kichaka who senseless with lust, had sought Draupadi for his embraces; the appointment by prince Duryodhana of clever spies, and their despatch to all sides for tracing the Pandavas: the failure of these to discover the mighty sons of Pandu; the first seizure of Virata's kine by the *Trigartas* and the terrific battle that ensued; the capture of Virata by the enemy and his rescue by Bhima-sena; the release also of the kine by the Pandava (Bhima); the seizure of Virata's kine again by the Kurus; the defeat in battle of all the Kurus by the single-handed Arjuna; the release of the king's kine; the bestowal by Virata of his daughter Uttara for Arjuna's acceptance in behalf of his son by Subhadra—Abhimanyu the destroyer of foes. These are the contents of the extensive fourth Parva—the *Vairata*. The great Rishi Vyasa has composed in this sixty seven sections. The number of slokas is two thousand fifty.

"Listen then to (the contents of) the fifth Parva which must be known as *Udyoga*. While the Pandavas, desirous of victory, were residing in the place called Upaplavya, Duryodhana and Arjuna both went at the same time to Vāsudeva, and said 'you should render us assistance in this war.' The high-souled Krishna, upon these words being uttered, replied 'O ye first of men, a counsellor in myself who will not fight

and one Akshauhini of troops, which of these shall I give to which of you ?' Blind to his own interests, the foolish Duryodhana asked for the troops ; while Arjuna solicited Krishna as an unfighting counsellor. (Then is described how) when the king of Madra was coming for the assistance of the Pandavas, Duryodhana, having decieved him on the way by presents and hospitality, induced him to grant a boon and then solicited his assistance in battle ; how Salya, having passed his word to Duryodhana, went to the Pandavas and consoled them by reciting the history of Indra's victory (over *Vitra*). Then comes the despatch by the Pandavas of their *Purohita* (priest) to the Kauravas. Then is described how king Dhrita-rashtra of great prowess, having heard the words of the purohita of the Pandavas and the story of Indra's victory, decided upon sending *his* purohita and ultimately despatched Sanjaya as envoy to the Paudavas from desire of peace. Here hath been described the sleeplessness of Dhrita-rashtra from anxiety upon hearing all about the Pandavas and their friends, Vāsudeva and others. It was on this occasion that Vidura addressed to the wise king Dhrita-rashtra various counsels that were full of wisdom. It was here also that Sanat-sujata recited to the anxious and sorrowing monarch the excellent truths of spiritual philosophy. On the next morning Sanjaya spoke, in the court of the King, of the identity of the lord Vāsudeva and Arjuna. It was then that the illustrious Krishna, moved by kindness and desirous of peace, went himself to the Kaurava capital, Hastinapore, for bringing about peace. Then comes the rejection by prince Duryodhana of the embassy of Krishna who had come to solicit peace for the benefit of both parties. Here hath been recited the story of *Damvodvava ;* then the story of the high-souled Matuli's search for a husband for his daughter ; then the history of the great sage *Galava ;* then the story of the training and discipline of the son of Bidula. Then the exhibition by Krishna, before the assembled Rajas, of his *Yoga* powers upon learning the evil counsels of Duryodhana and Karna ; then Krishna's taking Karna on his chariot and tender to him of advice, and Karna's, rejection of the same from pride Then the return of Krishna

the chastiser of enemies from Hastinapore to Upaplavya, and his narration to the Pandavas of all that had happened. It was then that those oppressors of foes, the Pandavas, having heard all and consulted properly with each other, made every preparation for war. Then comes the march from Hastinapore, for battle, of foot soldiers, horse, charioteers, and elephants. Then the tale of troops by both parties. Then the despatch by prince Duryodhana of *Uluka* as envoy to the Pandavas on the day previous to the battle. Then the tale of charioteers of different classes. Then the story of *Amba*. These all have been described in the fifth Parva called *Udyoga* of the Bharata, abounding with incidents appertaining to war and peace. O ye ascetics, the great Vyasa hath composed one hundred and eighty six sections in this Parva. The number of slokas also composed in this by the great Rishi is six thousand six hundred and ninety eight.

" Then is recited the *Bhisma* Parva abounding with wonderful incidents. In this hath been narrated by Sanjaya the formation of the region known as *Jambu*. Here hath been described the great depression of Yudhish-thira's army, and also the fierce fight for ten successive days. In this the high-souled Vāsudeva by reasons based on the philosophy of final release drove away Arjuna's compunction springing from the latter's regard for his kindred (whom he was on the eve of slaying.) In this the magnanimous Krishna, attentive to the welfare of Yudhish-thira, seeing the loss inflicted (on the Pandava army,) descending swiftly from his chariot, himself ran, with dauntless breast, his driving whip in hand, to effect the death of Bhisma. In this, Krishna also smote with piercing words Arjuna the bearer of the *Gandiva* and the foremost in battle among all wielders of weapons. In this, the foremost of bowmen, Arjuna, placing *Shikandi* before him and piercing Bhisma with his sharpest arrows felled him from his chariot. In this, Bhisma lay stretched on his bed of arrows. This extensive Parva is known as the sixth in the Bharata. In this have been composed one hundred and seventeen sections. The number of slokas is five thousand eight hundred and eighty four as told by Vyasa cognisant of the Vedas.

"Then is recited the wonderful Parva called *Drona*, full of incidents. First comes the installation in the command of the army of the great instructor in arms, Drona: then the vow made by that great master of weapons of seizing the wise Yudhish-thira in battle to please Duryodhana; then the retreat of Arjuna from the field before the Sansaptakas; then the overthrow of Bhagadatta like to a second Indra in the field, with his elephant Supritika, by Arjuna; then the death of the hero Abhimanyu in his teens, alone and unsupported, at the hands of many Maharathas including Jayadratha; then after the death of Abhimanyu, the destruction by Arjuna in battle of seven Akshauhinis of troops and then of Jayadratha; then the entry, by Bhima of mighty arms and by that foremost of charioteers Sātyaki, into the Kaurava ranks impenetrable to even the gods, in search after Arjuna in obedience to the orders of Yudhish-thira, and the destruction of the remnant of the Sansaptakas. In the Drona Parva, is the death of Alamvusha, of Srutayus, of Jalasandha, of Shoma-datti, of Virata, of the great charioteer Drupada, of Ghatotkacha, and others; in this Parva, Aswatthama, excited beyond measure at the fall of his father in battle, discharged the terrible weapon *Narayana*. Then the glory of *Rudra* in connection with the burning (of the three cities). Then the arrival of Vyasa and recital by him of the glory of Krishna and Arjuna. This is the great seventh Parva of the Bharata in which all the heroic chiefs and princes mentioned were sent to their last account. The number of sections in this is one hundred and seventy. The number of slokas as composed in the Drona Parva by Rishi Vyasa the son of Parasara and the possessor of true knowledge, after much meditation, is eight thousand nine hundred and nine.

"Then comes the most wonderful Parva called *Karna*. In this is narrated the appointment of the wise king of Madra as (Karna's) charioteer. Then the history of the fall of the Asura *Tripura*. Then the application to each other by Karna and Salya of harsh words on their setting out for the field. Then the story of the swan and the crow recited in insulting allusion; then the death of Pandya at the hands of the high-souled Aswatthama; then the death of Danda-sena; then

that of Danda ; then Yudhish-thira's imminent risk in single combat with Karna in the presence of all the warriors ; then the wrath of Yudhish-thira and Arjuna to each other ; then Krishna's pacification of Arjuna. In this Parva, Bhima in fulfilment of his vow, having ripped open Dushshasana's breast in battle drank his heart's blood. Then Arjuna slew the great Karna in single combat. Readers of the Bharata call this the eighth Parva. The number of sections in this is sixty nine and the number of slokas is four thousand nine hundred and sixty four.

"Then hath been recited the wonderful Parva called *Salya*. After all the great warriors had been slain, the king of Madra became the leader of the (Kaurava) army. The encounters, one after another, of charioteers have been here described. Then comes the fall of the great Salya at the hands of Yudhish-thira the just. Here also is the death of Sakuni in battle at the hands of Sahadeva. Upon only a small remnant of the troops remaining alive after the immense slaughter, Duryodhana went to the lake and creating for himself room within its waters lay stretched there for some time. Then is narrated the receipt of this intelligence by Bhima from the fowlers ; then is narrated how, moved by the insulting speeches of Yudhish-thira, Duryodhana ever unable to bear affronts came out of the waters. Then comes the encounter with clubs between Duryodhana and Bhima ; then the arrival, at the time of such encounter, of Balarama ; then is described the sacredness of the Swaraswati ; then the progress of the encounter with clubs ; then the fracture of Duryodhana's thighs in battle by Bhima with a terrific hurl of his mace. These all have been described in the wonderful ninth Parva. In this the number of sections is fifty nine and the number of slokas composed by the great Vysa—the spreader of the fame of the Kauravas—is three thousand two hundred and twenty.

"Then shall I describe the Parva called *Sauptika* of frightful incidents. On the Pandavas having gone away, the mighty charioteers, Kritavarma, Kripa, and the son of Drona, came to the field of battle in the evening and there saw king Duryodhana lying on the ground, his thighs broken, and himself

covered with blood. Then the great charioteer, the son of Drona, of terrible wrath, vowed, 'without killing all the Panchalas including Dhrishta-dyumna, and the Pandavas also with all their allies, I will not take off my armour.' Having spoken these words, the three warriors leaving Duryodhana's side entered the great forest just as the sun was setting. While sitting under a large banian tree in the night, they saw an owl killing numerous crows one after another. At sight of this, Aswatthama, his heart full of rage at the thought of his father's fate, resolved to slay the slumbering Panchalas. And wending to the gate of the camp, he there saw a Rakshasa of frightful visage and head reaching to the very heavens, guarding the entrance. And seeing that Rakshasa obstructing all his weapons, the son of Drona speedily pacified by worship the three-eyed Rudra. And then accompanied by Kritavarma and Kripa slew all the sons of Draupadi, all the Panchalas with Dhrishta-dyumna and others, together with their relatives, slumbering unsuspectingly in the night. All perished on that fatal night except the five Pandavas and the great warrior Satyaki. These escaped owing to Krishna's counsels. Then the charioteer of Dhrishta-dyumna brought to the Pandavas intelligence of the slaughter of the slumbering Panchalas by the son of Drona. Then Draupadi distressed at the death of her sons and brothers and father sat before her lords resolved to kill herself by fasting. Then Bhima of terrible prowess, moved by the words of Draupadi, resolved to please her; and speedily taking up his mace followed in wrath the son of his preceptor in arms. The son of Drona from fear of Bhima-sena and impelled by the fates and moved also by anger discharged a celestial weapon saying 'this is for the destruction of all the Pandavas'; then Krishna saying 'this shall not be' neutralised Aswat-thama's speech. Then Arjuna neutralised that weapon by one of his own. Seeing the wicked Aswat-thama's destructive intentions, Dwaipayana (and Krishna) denounced curses on him which the latter returned. The Pandavas then deprived the mighty charioteer Aswat-thama of the jewel on his head and became exceedingly glad, and boastful of their success made a present of it to the sorrowing Draupadi.

This the tenth Parva, called *Sauptika*, is recited. The great Vyasa hath composed in this eighteen sections. The number of slokas also composed in this by the great reciter of sacred truths is eight hundred and seventy. In this Parva have been put together by the great Rishi the two Parvas called *Sauptika* and *Aishika*.

"After this hath been recited the highly pathetic Parva called *Stri*. Dhrita-rashtra of prophetic eye, afflicted at the death of his children, and moved by enmity towards Bhima, broke into pieces a statue of hard iron deftly placed before him by Krishna (as a substitute for Bhima). Then Vidura, removing the distressed Dhrita-rashtra's affection for worldly things by reasons pointing to final release, consoled that wise monarch. Then hath been described the wending of the distressed Dhrita-rashtra accompanied by the ladies of his house to the field of battle of the Kauravas. Here follow the pathetic wailings of the wives of the slain heroes. Then the wrath of Gandhari and Dhrita-rashtra and their loss of consciousness. Then the Kshetria ladies saw those heroes,—their unreturning sons, brothers, and fathers,—lying dead on the field. Then the pacification by Krishna of the wrath of Gandhari distressed at the death of her sons and grandsons. Then the cremation of the bodies of the deceased Rajahs with due rites by that monarch (Yudhish-thira) of great wisdom and the foremost also of all virtuous men. Then upon the presentation of water to the manes of the deceased princes having commenced, the story of Kunti's acknowledgment of Karna as her son born in secret. These have all been described by the great Rishi Vyasa in the highly pathetic eleventh Parva. Its perusal moveth every feeling heart with sorrow and even draweth tears from the eye. The number of sections composed is twenty seven. The number of slokas is seven hundred and seventy five.

"Twelfth in number cometh the *Santi* Parva, which increaseth the understanding and in which is related the despondency of Yudhish-thira on his having slain his fathers, brothers, sons, maternal uncles and matrimonial relations. In this Parva is described how from his bed of arrows Bhisma exposed various systems of duties worth the study of kings desirous of know-

ledge ; this Parva exposeth the duties relative to emergencies, with full indications of time and reasons. By understanding these, a person attaineth to consummate knowledge. The mysteries also of final emancipation have been expatiated upon. This is the twelfth Parva the favorite of the wise. It consists of three hundred and thirty-nine sections, and contains fourteen thousand seven hundred and thirty two slokas.

"Next in order is the excellent *Anushashana* Parva. In it is described how Yudhish-thira the king of the Kurus was reconciled to himself on hearing the exposition of duties by Bhisma, the son of Bhagirathi. This Parva treats of rules in detail and of *Dharma* and *Artha* ; then the rules of charity and its merits ; then the qualifications of donees, and the supreme rule regarding gifts. This Parva also describes the ceremonials of individual duty, the rules of conduct, and the matchless merit of truth. This Parva showeth the great merit of Brahmanas and kine, and unraveleth the mysteries of duties in relation to time and place. These are embodied in the excellent Parva called *Anushashana* of varied incidents. In this hath been described the ascension of Bhisma to Heaven. This is the thirteenth Parva which hath laid down accurately the various duties of men. The number of sections in this is one hundered and forty-six. The number of slokas is eight thousand.

"Then comes the fourteenth Parva called *Aswamedhika.* In this is the excellent story of Samvarta and Marutta. Then is described the discovery (by the Pandavas) of golden treasuries ; and then the birth of Parikshita who was revived by Krishna after having been burnt by the (celestial) weapon (of Aswat-thama). The battles of Arjuna the son of Pandu, while following the sacrificial horse let loose, with various princes who in wrath seized it. Then is shewn the great risk of Arjuna in his encounter with Vavru-vahana the son of Chitrangada (by Arjuna) the appointed daughter (of the chief of Manipura). Then the story of the mungoose during the performance of the horse sacrifice. This is the most wonderful Parva called Aswamedhika. The number of sections is one hundred and three. The number of slokas composed in this by Vyasa of true knowledge is three thousand three hundred and twenty.

"Then comes the fifteenth Parva called *Asramavasika*. In this Dhrita-rashtra, abdicating the kingdom, and accompanied by Gandhari and Vidura, went to the woods. Seeing this, the virtuous Pritha also, ever engaged in cherishing her superiors, leaving the court of her sons, followed the old couple. In this is described the wonderful meeting through the kindness of Vyasa of the King (Dhrita-rashtra) with the spirits of his slain children, grand-children, and other princes, returned from the other world. Then the monarch abandoning his sorrows acquired with his wife the highest fruit of his meritorious actions. In this Parva, Vidura after having leaned on virtue all his life attaineth to the most meritorious state.

"The learned son of Gavalgana, Sanjaya also, of passions under full control, and the foremost of ministers, attained, in this Parva, to the blessed state. In this, Yudhish-thira the just met Narada and heard from him about the extinction of the race of the Vrishnis. This is the very wonderful Parva called Asramavasika. The number of sections in this is forty two, and the number of slokas composed by Vyasa cognisant of truth is one thousand five hundred and six.

"After this, you know, comes the *Maushala* of painful incidents. In this, those lion-hearted heroes (of the race of Vrishni) with the scars of many a field on their bodies, oppressed with the curse of a Brahmana, while deprived of reason with drink, impelled by the fates, slew each other on the shores of the salt sea with the *Eraka* grass which (in their hands) became (invested with the fatal attributes of the) thunder. In this, both Balarama and Keshava (Krishna) after causing the extermination of their race, their hour having come, themselves did not rise superior to the sway of all-destroying Time. In this, Arjuna the foremost among men, going to Dwaravati (Dwaraka) and seeing the city destitute of the Vrishnis was much affected and became exceedingly sorry. Then after the funeral of his maternal uncle Vasudeva the foremost among the Yadus (Vrishnis), he saw the heroes of the Yadu race lying stretched in death on the spot where they had been drinking. He then caused the cremation of the bodies of the illustrious Krishna and Balarama and of the principal

members of the Vrishni race. Then as he was journeying from Dwaraka with the women and the children, the old and the decrepit,—remnants of the Yadu race—he was met on the way by a heavy calamity. He witnessed also the disgrace of his bow Gandiva and the unpropitiousness of his celestial weapons. Seeing all this, Arjuna became despondent and pursuant to Vyasa's advice went to Yudhish-thira and solicited permission to adopt the *Sanyasa* mode of life. This is the sixteenth Parva called Maushala. The number of sections is eight and the number of slokas composed by Vyasa cognisant of truth is three hundred and twenty.

"The next is *Mahaprasthanika* the seventeenth Parva.

"In this those foremost among men the Pandavas abdicating their kingdom went with Draupadi on their great journey called Mahaprasthan. In this they met with Agni having arrived at the sea of red waters. In this, asked by Agni himself, Arjuna having worshipped him duly, returned to him the excellent celestial bow called Gandiva. In this, leaving his brothers who dropped one after another and Draupadi also, Yudhish-thira went on his journey without once looking back on them. This the seventeenth Parva is called Mahaprasthanika. The number of sections in this is three. The number of slokas also composed by Vyasa cognisant of truth is three hundred and twenty.

"The Parva that comes after this you must know is the extraordinary one called *Sarga* of celestial incidents. Then seeing the celestial car come to take him, Yudhish-thira moved by kindness towards the dog that accompanied him, refused to ascend it without his companion. Observing the illustrious Yudhish-thira's steady adherence to virtue, Dharma (the god of justice) abandoning his canine form showed himself to the king. Then Yudhish-thira ascending to heaven felt much pain. The celestial messenger showed him hell by an act of deception. Then Yudhish-thira the soul of justice heard the heart-rending lamentations of his brothers abiding in that region under the discipline of Yama. Then Dharma and Indra showed Yudhish-thira (the region appointed for sinners). Then Yudhish-thira after leaving his human body by a plunge in the celestial Ganges

attained to that region which his acts merited, and began to live in joy respected by Indra and all the gods. This is the eighteenth Parva as narrated by the illustrious Vyasa. The number of sections is five, and the number of slokas composed, O ascetics, by the great Rishi in this is two hundred and nine.

"The above are the contents of the Eighteen Parvas. In the appendix (*Khila*) are the *Harivansa* and the *Vavishya*. The number of slokas contained in the *Harivansa* is twelve thousand."

These are the contents of the section called *Parva-sangraha*. Sauti continued :—Eighteen Akshauhinis of troops came together for battle. The encounter that ensued was terrible and lasted for eighteen days. He who knows the four Vedas with all the *Angas* and Upanishadas, but does not know this history (Bharata), cannot be regarded as wise. Vyasa of immeasurable intelligence has spoken of the Mahabharata as a treatise on *Artha*, on *Dharma*, and on *Kama*. Those who have listened to this history can never bear to listen to others, as, indeed, they who have listened to the sweet voice of the male *Kokila* can never hear the dissonance of the crow's cawing. As the formation of the three worlds proceedeth from the five elements, so do the inspirations of all poets proceed from this excellent composition. O ye Brahmanas, as the four kinds of creatures (viviparous, oviparous, born of filth, and vegetables) are dependent on space for their existence, so the Puranas depend upon this history. As all the senses depend for their exercise upon the various modifications of the mind, so do all acts (ceremonials) and moral qualities depend upon this treatise. There is not a story current in the world but doth depend on this history, even as the body upon the food it taketh. All poets cherish the Bharata even as servants desirous of preferment always attend upon masters of good lineage. Even as the blessed domestic Asrama can never be surpassed by the three other Asramas (modes of life) so no poets can surpass this poem.

"Ye ascetics, shake ye off all inaction. Let your hearts be fixed on virtue, for virtue is the one only friend of him that has gone to the other world. Even the most intelligent by cherishing wealth and wives can never make *these* their own ; nor are *these* possessions that are lasting. The Bharata uttered

by the lips of Dwaipayana is without a parallel; it is virtue itself and sacred. It destroyeth sin and produceth good. He that listeneth to it while it is being recited hath no need of a bath in the sacred waters of Pushkara. A Brahmana, whatever sins he may commit during the day through his senses, is freed from them all by reading the Bharata in the evening. Whatever sins he may commit also in the night by deeds, words, or mind, he is freed from them all by reading the Bharata in the first twilight (morning). He that giveth a hundred kine with horns plaited with gold to a Brahman cognisant of the Vedas and all branches of learning, and he that daily listeneth to the sacred narrations of the Bharata, acquireth equal merit. As the wide ocean is easily passable by men having ships, so is this extensive history of great excellence and deep import with the help of this chapter called *Parva-sangraha.*"

Thus endeth the section called *Parva-sangraha* of the Adi Parva of the blessed Mahabharata.

SECTION III.

(Pausya Parva).

Sauti said, "Janamejaya the son of Parikshita was with his brothers attending his long sacrifice on the plains of Kurukshetra. His brothers were three, Sruta-sena, Ugra-sena, and Bhima-sena. And as they were sitting at the sacrifice, there arrived at the spot an offspring of Saramā (the celestial bitch.) And belaboured by the brothers of Janamejaya, he ran away to his mother, crying in pain. And his mother seeing him crying exceedingly asked him, "Why criest thou so? Who hath beaten thee?" And being thus questioned, he said unto his mother, 'I have been belaboured by the brothers of Janamejaya.' And his mother replied, 'apparently then, thou hast committed some fault for which hast thou been beaten!' He answered, 'I have not committed any fault. I have not touched the sacrificial butter with my tongue, nor have I even cast a look upon it.' His mother Saramā hearing this and much distressed at the affliction of her son went to the place where Janamejaya with his brothers was at his long-extending sacrifice. And she

addressed Janamejaya in anger, saying, 'this my son hath committed no fault: he hath not looked upon your sacrificial butter, nor hath he touched it with his tongue. Wherefore hath he been beat?' They gave not her a word in reply; whereupon she said, 'as ye have beat my son who hath committed no fault, therefore shall evil come upon ye when ye least expect it.'

"Janamejaya, thus addressed by the celestial bitch Saramā, became exceedingly alarmed and dejected. And after the sacrifice was concluded, he returned to Hastinapura, and began to take great pains in searching for a *Purohita* who could by procuring absolution for his sin, neutralise the effect of the curse.

"One day Janamejaya the son of Parikshita while ahunting, observed in a particular part of his dominions a hermitage where dwelt a certain Rishi of name Sruta-srava. He had a son named Soma-srava deeply engaged in ascetic devotions. Being desirous of appointing that son of the Rishi as his *Purohita*, Janamejaya the son of Parikshita saluted the Rishi and addressed him saying, 'O possessor of the six attributes, let this thy son be my purohita.' The Rishi thus addressed, answered Janamejaya, 'O Janamejaya, this my son, deep in ascetic devotions, accomplished in the study of the Vedas, and endued with the full force of my asceticism, is born of the womb of a she-snake that had drunk my vital fluid. He is able to absolve thee from all offences save those committed against Mahadeva. But he hath one particular habit, viz., he would grant to any Brahmana whatever might be demanded of him. 'If thou canst put up with it, then take thou him:' Janamejaya thus addressed replied to the Rishi 'it shall be even so.' And accepting him for his *Purohita*, he returned to his capital; and he then addressed his brothers saying, 'this is the person I have chosen for my spiritual master: whatsoever he may say must be complied with by you without examination.' And his brothers did as they were directed. And giving these directions to his brothers, the king marched towards *Takshyashila* and brought that country under his authority.

"About this time there was a Rishi of name Ayodha-Dhaumya. And Ayoda-Dhaumya had three disciples, Upamanyu, Aruni, and Veda. And the Rishi bade one of these disciples,

Aruni of Panchala go and stop up a breach in the water-course of a certain field. And Aruni of Panchala, thus ordered by his preceptor, repaired to the spot. And having gone there he saw that he could not stop up the breach in the water-course by ordinary means. And he was distressed because he could not do his preceptor's bidding. But at length he saw a way and said 'well, I will do it in this way.' He then went down into the breach and lay down himself there. And the water was thus confined.

"And sometime after, the preceptor Ayoda-Dhaumya asked his other disciples where Aruni of Panchala was. And they answered, Sir, he hath been sent by yourself saying—Go, stop up the breach in the water-course of the field :—' Thus reminded, Dhaumya, addressing his pupils, said, 'then let us all go to the place where he is.'

'And having arrived there, he shouted, 'Ho Aruni of Panchala, where art thou ? Come hither, my child.' And Aruni hearing the voice of his preceptor speedily came out of the water-course and stood before his preceptor. And addressing the latter, Aruni said, 'here I am in the breach of the water-course. Not having been able to devise any other means I entered it myself for the purpose of preventing the water running out. It is only upon hearing thy voice that having left it and allowed the waters to escape I have stood before thee. I salute thee, Master ; tell me what I have to do.'

"The preceptor, thus addressed replied 'because in getting up from the ditch thou hast opened the water-course, therefore hence-forth shalt thou be called Uddālaka as a mark of thy preceptor's favor. And because my words have been obeyed by thee, thou shalt obtain good fortune. And all the Vedas shall shine in thee and all the *Dharma-shastras* also.' And Aruni, thus addressed by his preceptor, went to the country after his heart.

"The name of another of Ayoda-Dhaumya's disciples was Upamanyu. And Dhaumya appointed him saying, "go, my child, Upamanyu, look after the kine." And according to his preceptor's orders, he went to tend the kine. And having watched them all day, he returned in the evening to his preceptor's house and standing before him he saluted him respect-

fully. And his preceptor seeing him, in good condition of body asked him, 'Upamanyu, my child, upon what dost thou support thyself? Thou art exceeding plump.' And he answered his preceptor, 'Sir, I support myself by begging.' And his preceptor said 'what is obtained in alms should not be used by thee without offering it to me.' And Upamanyu, thus told, went away. And having obtained alms, he offered the same to his preceptor. And his preceptor took from him even the whole. And Aruni, thus treated, went away to attend the cattle. And having watched them all day, he returned in the evening to his preceptor's abode. And he stood before his preceptor and saluted him with respect. And his preceptor perceiving that he still continued to be of good condition of body said unto him, 'Upamanyu, my child, I take from thee even the whole of what thou obtainest in alms, without keeping anything for thee. How then dost thou, at present, contrive to support thyself?' And Upamanyu said unto his preceptor, 'Sir, having made over to you all that I obtain in alms, I go abegging a second time for supporting myself.' And his preceptor then replied, 'This is not the way in which thou shouldst obey thy preceptor. By this thou art diminishing the support of others that live by begging. Truly, having supported thyself so, thou hast proved thyself covetous.' And Upamanyu, having signified his assent to all that his preceptor said, went away to attend the cattle. And having watched them all day, he returned to his preceptor's house. And he stood before his preceptor and saluted him respectfully. And his preceptor observing that he was still fat, said again unto him, 'Upamanyu, my child, I take from thee all thou obtainest in alms and thou dost not go abegging a second time, and yet art thou in healthy condition. How dost thou support thyself?' And Upamanyu, thus questioned, answered, 'Sir, I now live upon the milk of these cows.' And his preceptor thereupon told him, 'it is not lawful for thee to appropriate the milk without having first obtained my consent.' And Upamanyu having assented to the justice of these observations, went away to tend the kine. And when he returned to his preceptor's abode, he stood before him and saluted him as usual. And his preceptor seeing that he

was still fat, said, 'Upamanyu, my child, thou eatest no longer of alms, nor dost thou go abegging a second time, nor even drinkest of the milk; yet art thou fat. By what means dost thou contrive to live now?' And Upamanyu replied, 'Sir, I now sip the froth that these calves throw out while sucking their mothers' teats.' And the preceptor said, 'these generous calves, I suppose, out of compassion for thee throw out large quantities of froth. Wouldst thou stand in the way of their full meals by acting as thou hast done? Know then that it is unlawful for thee to drink the froth.' And Upamanyu, having signified his assent to this, went as before to tend the cows. And restrained by his preceptor, he feedeth not on alms, nor hath he anything else to eat; he drinketh not of the milk, nor tasteth he of the froth!

"And Upamanyu, one day, oppressed by hunger, when in a forest ate of the leaves of the *Arka* (Asclepias gigantea). And his eyes being affected by the pungent, acrimonious, crude, and saline qualities of the leaves which he had eaten, he became blind. And as he was crawling about, he fell into a pit. And upon his not returning that day when the sun was sinking down behind the summit of the western mountain, the preceptor observed to his disciples that Upamanyu was not yet come. And they told him that he had gone out with the cattle.

"The preceptor then said, 'Upamanyu being restrained by me from the use of everything, is, of course, displeased, and, therefore, doth not come home until it be late. Let us then go in search of him.' And having said this, he went with his disciples into the forest and began to shout saying, 'Ho, Upamanyu, where art thou?' And Upamanyu hearing his preceptor's voice answered in a loud tone, 'here I am at the bottom of a well.' And his preceptor asked him how he happened to be there. And Upamanyu replied, 'having eaten of the leaves of the *Arka* plant I became blind, and so have I fallen into this well.' And his preceptor thereupon told him, 'glorify the twin Aswinas, the joint physicians of the gods, and they will restore thee thy sight.' And Upamanyu thus directed by his preceptor began to glorify the twin Aswinas, in the following words of the Rig Veda:—

'Ye have existed before the creation ! Ye first-born beings, ye are displayed in this wondrous universe of five elements ! I desire to obtain ye by help of the knowledge derived from hearing and of meditation, for ye are Infinite ! Ye are the course itself of Nature and the intelligent Soul that pervades that course ! Ye are birds of beauteous feathers perching on the body that is like to a tree ! Ye are without the three common attributes of every soul ! Ye are incomparable ! Ye, through its spirit in every created thing, overspread the universe !

'Ye are golden Eagles ! Ye are the essence in which all things disappear ! Ye are free from error and know no deterioration ! Ye are of beauteous beaks that wound not unjustly and are victorious in every encounter ! Ye certainly prevail over Time ! Having created the Sun, ye weave the wondrous cloth of the year by means of the white thread of the day and the black thread of the night ! And with the cloth so woven ye have established two courses of action appertaining respectively to the Devas and the Pitris. The bird of Life seized by Time which represents the strength of the Infinite soul, ye set free for delivering her unto great happiness ! They that are in deep ignorance, as long as they are under the delusion of their senses, suppose ye who are independent of the attributes of matter to be gifted with form ! Three hundred and sixty cows represented by three hundred and sixty days produce one calf between them which is the year. That calf is the creator and destroyer of all. Seekers of truth following different routes, draw the milk of true knowledge with its help. Ye Aswinas, ye are the creators of that calf !

'The year is but the nave of a wheel to which is attached seven hundred and twenty spokes representing as many days and nights. The circumference of this wheel represented by twelve months is without end. This wheel is full of delusion and knows no deterioration. It affects all creatures whether of this or of the other world. Ye Aswinas, this wheel of time is set in motion by ye !

'The wheel of Time as represented by the year has a nave

represented by the six seasons. The number of spokes attached to that nave is twelve as represented by the twelve signs of the Zodiac. This wheel of Time manifests the fruits of the acts of all beings. The presiding deities of Time abide in that wheel. Subject as I am to its distressful influence, ye Aswinas, liberate me from that wheel of Time. Ye Aswinas, ye are this universe of five elements! Ye are the objects that are enjoyed in this and in the other world! Make me independent of the influence of the five elements! And though ye are the Supreme Brahma, yet ye move over the Earth in forms enjoying the delights that the senses can afford.

'In the beginning, ye created the ten points of the universe! Then have ye placed the Sun and the Sky above! The Rishis, according to the course of the same Sun, perform their sacrifices, and the gods and men, according to what hath been appointed for them, perform their sacrifices also enjoying the fruits of those acts!

'Mixing the three colors ye have produced all the objects of sight! It is from *these* objects that the universe hath sprung, whereon the gods and men are engaged in their respective occupations, and, indeed, all creatures endued with life!

'Ye Aswinas, I adore ye! I also adore the Sky which is your handiwork! Ye are the ordainers of the fruits of all acts from which even the gods are not free! Ye are yourselves free from the fruits of your acts!

'Ye are the parents of all! As males and females it is ye that swallow the food which subsequently develops into the life-creating fluid and blood! The new-born infant sucks the teat of its mother. Indeed, it is ye that take the shape of the infant! Ye Aswinas, grant me my sight to protect my life!'

"The twin Aswinas, thus invoked, appeared and said, 'We are satisfied. Here is a cake for thee. Take and eat it.' And Upamanyu, thus addressed, replied, 'your words, O Aswinas, have never proved untrue. But without first offering this cake to my preceptor I dare not take it.' And the Aswinas thereupon told him, 'formerly, thy preceptor had invoked us. We thereupon gave him a cake like this; and he took it without offering it to his master. Do thou that which thy

preceptor did.' Thus addressed, Upamanyu again said unto them, 'O Aswinas, I crave your pardon. Without offering it to my preceptor I dare not apply this cake.' The Aswinas then said, 'O we are pleased with this devotion of thine to thy preceptor. Thy master's teeth are of black iron. Thine shall be of gold. Thou shalt be restored to sight and shalt have good fortune.'

"Thus spoken to by the Aswinas he recovered his sight, and having gone to his preceptor's presence he saluted him and told him all. And his preceptor was well pleased with him and said unto him, 'Thou shalt obtain prosperity even as the Aswinas have said. All the Vedas shall shine in thee and all the Dharma-shastras.' And this was the trial of Upamanyu.

"Then the other disciple of Ayoda-Dhaumya was called Veda. His preceptor once addressed him, saying, 'Veda, my child, tarry sometime in my house and serve thy preceptor. It shall be to thy profit.' And Veda having signified his assent tarried long in the family of his preceptor mindful of serving him. Like an ox under the burthens of his master, he bore heat and cold, hunger and thirst, at all times uncomplainingly. And it was long before his preceptor was satisfied. And as a consequence of that satisfaction, Veda obtained good fortune and universal knowledge. And this was the trial of Veda.

"And Veda, having received permission from his preceptor, and leaving the latter's residence after the completion of his studies, entered the domestic mode of life. And while living in his own house, he got three pupils. And he never told them to perform any work or to obey implicitly his own behests; for having experienced himself much woe while abiding in the family of his preceptor, he liked not to treat them with severity.

"After a certain time, Janamejaya and Paushya, both of the order of Kshetrias, arriving at his residence appointed the Brahmana, Veda, as their spiritual guide (Upadhyaya). And one day while about to depart upon some business relative to a sacrifice, he employed one of his disciples, Utanka, to take charge of his household. 'Utanka,' said he, 'whatsoever should have to be done in my house, let it be done by thee

without neglect.' And having given these orders to Utanka, he went on his journey.

"So Utanka always mindful of the injunction of his preceptor took up his abode in the latter's house. And while Utanka was residing there, the females of his preceptor's house having assembled addressed him and said, 'O Utanka, thy mistress is in that season when connubial connection might be fruitful. Thy preceptor is absent; then stand thou in his place and do the needful.' And Utanka, thus addressed, said unto those women, 'It is not proper for me to do this at the bidding of women. I have not been enjoined by my preceptor to do aught that is improper.'

"After a while, his preceptor returned from his journey. And his preceptor having learnt all that had happened, became well pleased and, addressing Utanka, said, 'Utanka, my child, what favor shall I bestow on thee? I have been served by thee duly; therefore hath our friendship for each other increased. I therefore grant thee leave to depart. Go thou, and let all thy wishes be accomplished.'

"Utanka, thus addressed, replied, saying, 'Let me do something that you wish, for it hath been said,—He who bestoweth instruction contrary to usage, and he who receiveth it contrary to usage, one of the two dieth, and enmity springeth up between the two.—I, therefore, who have received thy leave to depart, am desirous of bringing thee some gratuity due to a preceptor.' His master upon hearing this replied, 'Utanka, my child, wait a while.' Sometime after, Utanka again addressed his preceptor, saying, 'Command me to bring that for gratuity which you desire.' And his preceptor then said, 'my dear Utanka, thou hast often told me of your desire to bring something by way of acknowledgment for the instruction thou hast received. Go then in and ask thy mistress what thou art to bring for gratuity. And bring thou that which she directs.' And thus directed by his preceptor, Utanka addressed his preceptress, saying, 'Madam, I have obtained my master's leave to go home, and I am desirous of bringing something agreeable to thee as gratuity for the instruction I have received, in order that I may not depart his debtor. Therefore, please to command me what

I am to bring as gratuity.' Thus addressed, his preceptress replied, 'Go unto King Paushya and beg of him the pair of ear-rings worn by his Queen, and bring them hither. Four days hence is a sacred day when I wish to appear before the Brahmanas (who may dine at my house) decked with these ear-rings. Then accomplish this, O Utanka! If thou shouldst succeed, good fortune shall attend thee; if not, what good canst thou expect?'

"Utanka, thus commanded, took his departure. And as he was passing along the road he saw a bull of extraordinary size and a man of uncommon stature mounted thereon. And that man addressed Utanka and said, 'Eat thou of the dung of this bull.' Utanka, however, was unwilling to comply. The man said again, 'O Utanka, eat of it without scrutiny. Thy master ate of it before.' And Utanka signified his assent and ate of the dung and drank of the urine of that bull, and rose respectfully, and washing his hands and mouth went to where King Paushya was.

"Arrived at the place, Utanka saw Paushya seated (on his throne). And approaching him Utanka saluted the monarch by pronouncing blessings and said, 'I am come a petitioner to thee.' And King Paushya, having returned Utanka's salutations, said, 'Sir, what shall I do for thee?' And Utanka said, 'I am come to beg of thee a pair of ear-rings as gratuity for my preceptor. It behoveth thee to give me the ear-rings worn by thy Rani.'

"King Paushya replied, 'Go Utanka into the female apartments where the Rani is and demand them of her.' And Utanka went into the women's apartments. But as he could not discover the Rani, he again addressed the Raja, saying, 'it is not proper that I should be treated by thee with deceit. Thy Rani is not in the private apartments, for I could not find her.' The Raja, thus addressed, considered for a while and replied, 'Recollect, Sir, with attention whether thou beest not in a state of defilement in consequence of contact with the impurities of a repast. My Rani is a chaste wife and cannot be seen by any one who is impure owing to contact with the leavings of a repast. Nor doth she herself appear in sight of any one who is defiled.'

"Utanka, thus informed, reflected for a while and then said, 'Yes, it must be so. Having been in a hurry I performed my ablutions (after meal) in a standing posture.' Raja Paushya then said, 'Here is a transgression. Purification is not properly effected by one in a standing posture, nor by one while he is going along.' And Utanka having agreed to this, sat down with his face towards the East, and washed his face, hands, and feet thoroughly. And he then, without noise, sipped thrice of water free from scum and froth, and not warm, and just sufficient to reach his stomach and wiped his face twice. And he then touched with water the apertures of his organs (eyes, ears, &c. &c.) And having done all this, he once more entered the apartments of the women. And this time he saw the Rani. And as the Rani perceived him, she saluted him respectfully and said, 'Welcome, Sir, command me what I am to do.' And Utanka said unto her, 'it behoveth thee to give me those ear-rings of thine. I beg them as a present for my preceptor.' And the Rani having been highly pleased with Utanka's conduct and, considering that Utanka as an object of charity could not be passed over, took off her ear-rings and gave them to him. And she said, 'these ear-rings are very much sought after by Takshaka, King of the Serpents. Therefore shouldst thou carry them with the greatest care.'

And Utanka being told this, said unto the Rani, 'Lady, be under no apprehension. Takshaka, Chief of the Serpents, is not able to overcome me.' And having said this, and taking leave of the Rani, he went back into the presence of Paushya, and said, 'Paushya, I am gratified.' Then Paushya said to Utanka, 'A fit object of charity can only be had at long intervals. Thou art a qualified guest, therefore do I desire to perform a *sraddha*. Tarry thou a little. And Utanka replied, 'Yea, I will tarry, and beg that the clean provisions that are ready may be soon brought in.' And the Raja having signified his assent, he entertained Utanka duly. And Utanka seeing that the food placed before him had hair in it, and also that it was cold, thought it unclean. And he said unto Paushya, 'Thou givest me food that is unclean, therefore shalt thou lose thy sight.' And Paushya in answer said 'And because

dost thou impute uncleanness to food that is clean, therefore shalt thou be without issue.' And Utanka thereupon rejoined, 'It behoveth thee not, after having offered me unclean food, to curse me in return. Satisfy thyself by occular proof.'

"And Paushya seeing the food alleged to be unclean satisfied himself of its uncleanliness. And Paushya having ascertained that the food was truly unclean, being cold and mixed with hair, prepared as it was by a woman with unbraided hair, began to pacify the Rishi Utanka, saying 'Sir, the food placed before thee *is* cold, and doth contain hair, having been prepared without sufficient care. Therefore I pray thee pardon me. Let me not become blind.' And Utanka answered, 'what I say must come to pass. Having become blind, thou mayst, however, recover thy sight before long. Grant that *thy* curse also doth not take effect on me.' And Paushya said unto him, 'I am unable to revoke *my* curse. For my wrath even now hath not been appeased. But thou knowest not this. For a Brahmana's heart is soft as new-churned butter, even though his words bear a sharp-edged razor. It is otherwise in respect of *these* with the Kshetriya. His words are soft as new-churned butter, but his heart is as a sharp-edged tool. Such being the case, I am unable, because of the hardness of my heart, to neutralise my curse. Then go thou thy ways.' To this Utanka made answer, 'I showed thee the uncleanness of the food offered to me, and I was even now pacified by thee. Besides, saidst thou at first that because I imputed uncleanness to food that was clean I should be without issue. But the food being truly unclean, thy curse cannot affect me. Of this I am sure.' And Utanka having said this departed with the ear-rings.

"On the road Utanka perceived coming towards him a naked idle beggar sometimes coming in view and sometimes disappearing. And Utanka, having occasion, put the ear-rings on the ground and went for water. In the meantime the beggar came quickly to the spot and taking up the ear-rings ran away. And Utanka having completed his ablutions in water and purified himself and having also reverently bowed down to the gods and his spiritual masters pursued the thief with the utmost speed. And having with great difficulty over-

taken him, he seized him with force. But at that instant the person seized, quitting the form of a beggar and assuming his real form, viz, that of Takshaka, speedily entered a large hole open in the ground. And having got in, Takshaka proceeded to his own abode, the region of the serpents.

"Now, Utanka, recollecting the words of the Rani, pursued the Serpent, and began to dig open the hole with a stick but was unable to make much progress. And Indra beholding his distress sent his thunder-bolt (Vajra) to his assistance. Then the thunder-bolt entering that stick enlarged that hole. And Utanka began to enter the hole after the thunder-bolt. And having entered it he beheld the region of the Serpents infinite in extent, filled with hundreds of palaces and elegant mansions with turrets and domes and gateways, abounding with wonderful places for various games and entertainments. And Utanka then glorified the serpents by the following slokas:—

Ye Serpents, subjects of King Airavata, splendid in battle and showering weapons on the field like lightning-charged clouds driven by the winds! Handsome and of various forms and decked with many-colored ear-rings, ye children of Airavata, ye shine like the Sun in the firmament! On the northern banks of the Ganges are many habitations of serpents. There I constantly adore the great serpents. Who except Airavata would desire to move in the burning rays of the Sun? When Dhrita-rashtra (Airavata's brother) goes out, twenty-eight thousand and eight serpents follow him as his attendants. Ye who move near him and ye who stay at a distance from him, I adore all ye that have Airavata for your elder brother.

'I adore thee also, to obtain the ear-rings, O Takshaka, who formerly dwelt in Kurukshetra and the forest of Khandava! Takshaka and Aswasena, ye are constant companions who dwell in Kurukshetra on the banks of the Ikshumati! I also adore the illustrious Srutasena, the younger brother of Takshaka, who resided at the holy place called Mahadyuman with a view to obtain the Chiefship of the Serpents.'

"The Brahmana Rishi Utanka having saluted the chief serpents in this manner, obtained not, however, the ear-rings. And he thereupon became very thoughtful. And when he

saw that he obtained not the ear-rings even though he had adored the serpents, he then looked about him and beheld two women over a loom weaving a piece of cloth with a fine shuttle ; and in the loom were black and white threads. And he likewise saw a wheel, with twelve spokes, turned by six boys. And he also saw a man with a handsome horse. And he began to address them the following *mantras* :—

'This wheel whose circumference is marked by twenty four divisions representing as many lunar changes is furnished with three hundred spokes ! It is set in continual motion by six boys (the seasons) ! These damsels representing universal nature are weaving without intermission a cloth with threads black and white, and thereby ushering into existence the manifold worlds and the beings that inhabit them ! Thou wielder of the thunder, the protector of the universe, the slayer of Vritra and Namuchi, thou illustrious one who wearest the black cloth and displayeth truth and untruth in the universe, thou who ownest for thy carrier, the horse received from the depths of the ocean, and which is but another form of Agni (the god of fire), I bow to thee, thou supreme Lord, thou Lord of the three worlds, O Purandara !'

"Then the man with the horse said unto Utanka, 'I am gratified by this thy adoration. What good shall I do to thee ?' And Utanka replied, 'even let the serpents be brought under my control.' Then the man rejoined, 'Blow into this horse.' And Utanka blew into that horse. And from the horse thus blown into, there issued, from every aperture of his body, flames of fire with smoke, by which the region of the Nagas was about to be consumed. And Takshaka, surprised beyond measure and terrified by the heat of the fire, hastily came out of his abode taking the ear-rings with him, and said unto Utanka, 'Pray, Sir, take back the ear-rings.' And Utanka took them back.

"But Utanka having recovered his ear-rings thought, 'O this is that sacred day of my preceptress. I am at a distance. How can I, therefore, show my regard for her ?' And when Utanka was anxious about this, the man addressed him and said, 'Ride this horse, Utanka, and he will in a moment carry thee to thy master's abode.' And Utanka having signi-

fied his assent, mounted the horse and presently reached his preceptor's house.

"And his preceptress that morning after having bathed was dressing her hair sitting, thinking of uttering a curse on Utanka if he should not return within time. But in the meantime Utanka entered his preceptor's abode and paid his respects to his preceptress and presented her the ear-rings. 'Utanka,' said she, 'thou hast arrived at the proper time at the proper place. Welcome, my child! Thou art innocent and therefore I do not curse thee! Good fortune is even before thee. Let thy wishes be crowned with success!'

"Then Utanka waited on his preceptor. And his preceptor said, 'Thou art welcome! What hath occasioned thy long absence?' And Utanka replied to his preceptor, 'Sir, in the execution of this my business obstruction was offered by Takshaka the King of serpents. Therefore had I to go to the region of the Nagas. There I saw two damsels sitting over a loom, weaving a fabric with black and white threads. Pray, what is that? There likewise I beheld a wheel with twelve spokes ceaselessly turned by six boys. What too doth that import? Who also is the man that I saw? And what the horse of extraordinary size likewise beheld by me? And when I was on the road I also saw a bull with a man mounted thereon, by whom I was endearingly accosted thus—Utanka, eat of the dung of this bull, which was also eaten by thy master.—So I ate of the dung of that bull according to his words. Who also is he? Therefore, enlightened by thee, I desire to hear all about them.'

"And his preceptor thus addressed said unto him, 'The two damsels thou hast seen are *Dhata* and *Vidhata*; the black and white threads denote night and day; the wheel of twelve spokes turned by the six boys signifieth the year comprising six seasons. The man is Parjanya, the deity of rain; and the horse is Agni, the god of fire. The bull that thou hast seen on the road is Airavata, the king of elephants; the man mounted thereon is Indra; and the dung of the bull which was eaten by thee was *Amrita*. It was certainly for this (last) that thou hast not met with death in the region of the Nagas; and Indra

who is my friend having been mercifully inclined showed thee favor. It is for this that thou returnset safe, taking the earrings with thee. Then, O thou amiable one, I give thee leave to depart. Thou shalt obtain good fortune.'

"And Utanka, having obtained his master's leave, moved by anger and resolved to revenge himself on Takshaka, proceeded towards Hastinapura. That excellent Brahmana soon reached Hastinapura. And Utanka then waited upon King Janamejaya who had sometime before returned victorious from Takshashila. And Utanka saw the victorious monarch surrounded on all sides by his ministers. And he pronounced benedictions on him in proper form. And Utanka addressed the monarch at the proper moment in speech of correct accent and melodious sounds, saying, 'O thou best of monarchs! How is it that thou spendest thy time like a child when there is another matter that urgently demandeth thy attention?'"

Sauti said:—"The monarch Janamejaya, thus addressed, saluting that excellent Brahmana replied unto him, 'In cherishing these my subjects I do discharge the duties of my noble tribe. Say, what is that business to be done by me and which hath brought thee hither.'

"That foremost of Brahmanas and distinguished beyond all for good deeds, thus addressed by the excellent monarch of large heart, replied unto him, 'O King! the business is thy own that demandeth thy attention; therefore do it please. O thou King of kings! thy father was deprived of life by Takshaka: therefore do thou avenge thy father's death on that vile serpent. The time hath come, I ween, for the act of vengeance ordained by the fates. Go then and avenge the death of thy magnanimous father who, unoffending being bitten by that vile serpent, was reduced to the five elements even like a tree stricken by thunder. The wicked Takshaka, vilest of the serpent race, intoxicated with power committed an unnecessary act when he bit the King, thy god-like father, the protector of the race of royal saints. Wicked in his deeds, he even caused Kasyapa (the prince of physicians) to turn back when he was coming for the relief of thy father. It behoveth thee to burn the wicked wretch in the blazing fire

of a *Snake-sacrifice.* O King! give instant orders for the sacrifice. It is thus that thou canst avenge the death of thy father. And a very great favour shall have also been shown to me. For by that malignant wretch, O virtuous Prince, my business also was on one occasion obstructed while proceeding on account of my preceptor.' "

Sauti continued :—"The monarch having heard these words, was enraged with Takshaka. The speech of Utanka inflamed the prince, even as the sacrificial fire with clarified butter. Moved by grief also, in the presence of Utanka himself the prince asked his ministers the particulars of his father's journey to the regions of the blessed. And when he heard all the circumstances of his father's death from the lips of Utanka, he was overcome with pain and sorrow. "

And thus ends the section called Paushya of the Adi Parva of the blessed Mahabharata.

SECTION IV.

(Pauloma Parva).

Ugrasrava Sauti, the son of Lomaharshana, versed in the Puranas, being in the forest of Naimisha, at the twelve years' sacrifice of Saunaka surnamed Kulapati, stood before the Rishis in attendance. Having studied the Puranas with great pains and therefore acquainted with them thoroughly, with joined hands he addressed them thus, " I have graphically described to ye the history of Utanka which is one of the causes of King Janamejaya's Snake-sacrifice. What, reverend Sirs, do ye wish to hear ? What shall I relate to ye ? " The holy men replied, " O son of Lomaharshana, we shall ask thee and thou wilt reply unto us anxious to hear, recounting some excellent stories. Saunaka our reverend master is at present attending in the apartment of the holy fire. He is acquainted with those divine stories which relate to the gods and Asuras. He adequately knoweth the histories of men, serpents, and Gandharvas. Further, O Sauti, in this sacrifice that learned Brahmana is the chief. He is able, faithful to his vows, wise, a master of the shastras and the Aranyaka, a speaker of

truth, a lover of peace, a mortifier of the flesh, and an observer of the penances according to the ordinance. He is respected by us all. It behoves us therefore to wait for him. And when he is seated on his highly respected seat, thou wilt answer what that best of Dwijas shall ask of thee."

Sauti said, "Be it so. And when the high-souled master hath been seated, by him questioned I will narrate sacred stories on a variety of subjects." After a while that excellent Brahmana (Saunaka) having duly performed all his duties, and having propitiated the gods with prayers and the manes of his fathers with oblations of water, came back to the place of sacrifice, where with Sauti seated before were the assembly of saints of rigid vows sitting at their ease. And when Saunaka was seated in the midst of the Ritwikas and Sadasyas, who were also returned to their places, he spake as followeth.

SECTION V.

(Pauloma Parva continued.)

Saunaka said, "Child, thy father formerly read the whole of the Puranas, O son of Lomaharshana, and the Bharata with Krishna-Dwaipayana. Hast thou also made them thy study? In those ancient records are interesting stories and the history of the first generations of the wise men, all which we heard rehearsed by thy sire. In the first place, I am desirous of hearing the history of the race of Bhrigu. Recount thou that history; we are attentive to listen to thee."

Sauti answered :—"By me hath been acquired all that was formerly studied by the high-souled Brahmanas including Vaisampayana and repeated by them; by me hath been acquired all that had been studied by my father. O descendant of the Bhrigu race, attend then to so much as relateth to the exalted race of Bhrigu, revered by Indra and all the gods, by the tribes of Rishis and Marutas (Winds). O great Muni, I will first then properly recount the story of this family, belonging to the Puranas.

"The great and blessed saint Bhrigu, we are informed, was begot by the self-existing Brahmā from the fire at the sacrifice

of Varuna. And Bhrigu had a son whom he dearly loved named *Chyavana*. And to Chyavana was born a virtuous son called Pramati. And Pramati had a son named Ruru by Ghritachi (the celestial *danceuse*). And to Ruru also by his wife Pramadvarā, was born a son, whose name was Sunaka. He was, O Saunaka, thy great ancestor exceedingly virtuous in his ways. He was devoted to asceticism, of great reputation, learned in the law, and eminent among those having a knowledge of the Vedas. He was virtuous, truthful, and of well regulated fare."

Saunaka said.—"O son of Suta, I ask thee why the illustrious son of Bhrigu was named *Chyavana*. Do tell me all."

Sauti replied:—"Bhrigu had a wife whom he dearly loved, named Pulomā. She became quick with child by Bhrigu. And one day while the virtuous and continent Pulomā was in that condition, Bhrigu, great among those that are true to their religion, leaving her at home went out to perform his ablutions. It was then that a Rakshasa called Puloma came to Bhrigu's abode. And entering the Rishi's abode, the Rakshasa saw the wife of Bhrigu, irreproachable in everything. And seeing her he became filled with lust and lost his reason. The beautiful Pulomā entertained the Rakshasa thus arrived, with roots and fruits of the forest. And the Rakshasa burning with desire upon having seen her, became very much delighted and resolved, O good sage, to bear her away who was so blameless in every respect.

"'My design is accomplished' said the Rakshasa, and so seizing that beautiful matron he carried her away. And, indeed, she of agreeable smiles had been betrothed by her father to the Rakshasa himself, although the former subsequently bestowed her according to due rites on Bhrigu. O thou of the Bhrigu race, this wound rankled deep in the Rakshasa's mind and he thought the present a very good opportunity for carrying the lady away.

"And the Rakshasa saw in the apartment in which the sacrificial fire was kept that element burning brightly. And the Rakshasa then asked the flaming element, 'Tell me, O Agni, whose wife this woman rightfully is. Thou art the mouth of the gods, therefore art thou bound to answer my question. This lady of superior complexion had been first ac-

cepted by me as wife ; but her father subsequently bestowed her on the false Bhrigu. Tell me truly if this fair one can be regarded as the wife of Bhrigu, for having found her alone I am resolved to bear her away by force from the hermitage. My heart burneth with rage when I reflect that Bhrigu hath got possession of this woman of slender waist first betrothed to myself.'"

Sauti continued :—" In this manner the Rakshasa asked the flaming god of fire again and again whether the lady was Bhrigu's wife. And the god was in fear to return an answer. 'Thou, O god of fire,' said he, 'residest continually within every creature, as witness of their merits and demerits. O thou respected one, then answer my question truly. Has not Bhrigu appropriated her who was chosen by me as my wife? Thou shouldst declare truly whether, therefore, she is my wife by first choice. After thy answer as to whether she is the wife of Bhrigu, I will bear her away from this hermitage even in thy sight. Therefore answer thou truly.' "

Sauti continued :—" The Seven-flamed god having heard these words of the Rakshasa became exceedingly distressed, being afraid of telling a falsehood and equally afraid of Bhrigu's curse. And the god at length made answer in words that came out slowly. 'This Pulomā was, indeed, first chosen by thee, O Rakshasa, but she was not taken by thee with holy rites and invocations. But this far-famed lady was bestowed by her father on Bhrigu in gift from desire of a blessing. She was not bestowed on thee ! O Rakshasa, this lady was duly made by the Rishi Bhrigu his wife with Vedic rites in my presence. This is she—I know her. I dare not speak a falsehood. O thou best of Rakshasas, falsehood is never respected in this world.' "

SECTION VI.

(Pauloma Parva continued.)

Sauti said :—" O Brahmana, having heard these words of the god of fire, the Rakshasa assumed the form of a boar, and seizing the lady carried her away with the speed of the wind, even of thought. Then the child of Bhrigu residing in her body

enraged at such violence, dropped from his mother's womb, for which he obtained the name of Chyavana. And the Rakshasa perceiving the infant drop from the mother's womb, shining like the sun, quitted his grasp of the woman and fell down and was instantly converted into ashes. And the beautiful Pulomā distracted with grief, O Brahmana of the Bhrigu race, took up her offspring Chyavana the son of Bhrigu and walked away. And Brahmā, the Grand-father of all, himself saw her, the faultless wife of his son, weeping with eyes full of tears. And the Grand-father of all comforted her who was wedded to his son. And of the drops of tears which fell from her eyes was formed a great river. And that river began to follow the footsteps of the wife of the great ascetic Bhrigu. And the Grandfather of the worlds seeing that river follow the path of his son's wife gave it a name himself, and he called it *Vadhusarā*. And it passeth by the hermitage of Chyavana. And in this manner was born Chyavana of great ascetic power, the son of Bhrigu.

"And Bhrigu saw his child Chyavana and its beautiful mother. And the Rishi in a rage asked her, 'By whom wast thou made known to that Rakshasa resolved to carry thee away? O thou of agreeable smiles, the Rakshasa could not know thee for my wife. Therefore tell me who it was that told the Rakshasa so, inorder that I may curse him from anger.' And Pulomā replied, 'O possessor of the six attributes, I was discovered to the Rakshasa by Agni (the god of fire). And he bore me away crying like the Kurari (female Osprey.) And it was only by the ardent splendour of this thy son that I was rescued; for the Rakshasa (seeing this infant) let me go and himself falling to the ground was turned into ashes.'"

Sauti continued:—"Bhrigu upon hearing this account from Pulomā became exceedingly enraged. And in excess of passion the Rishi cursed Agni, saying, 'Thou shalt eat of all things.'"

So ends the sixth Section called "the curse on Agni" in the Adi Parva.

SECTION VII.

(Pauloma Parva continued.)

Sauti said:—"The god of fire enraged at the curse of Bhrigu, thus addressed the Rishi:—'What meaneth this rashness, O Brahmana, that thou hast displayed towards me? What transgression can be imputed to me who was laboring to do justice and speak the truth impartially? Being asked I gave the true answer. A witness who when interrogated respecting a fact of which he hath knowledge representeth otherwise than it is, ruineth his ancestors and descendants both to the seventh generation. He too, who, being fully informed of all the circumstances of an affair, doth not disclose what he knoweth when asked, is undoubtedly stained with guilt. I also can curse thee, but Brahmanas are held by me in high respect. Although these be known to thee, O Brahmana, I will yet speak of them, so please attend! Having by ascetic power multiplied myself, I am present in various forms, in places of the daily *homa*, in sacrifices extending for years, in places where holy rites are performed (such as marriage, &c.), and in other sacrifices. With the butter that is poured upon my flame according to the ordinances declared in the Vedas, the Devas and the *Pitris* are appeased. The Devas are the waters; the Pitris are also the waters. The Devas have with the Pitris an equal right to the sacrifices called the *Darshas* and *Purna-mashas*. The Devas therefore are the Pitris; and the Pitris, the Devas. They are identical beings, worshipped together and also separately at the changes of the moon. The Devas and the Pitris eat what is poured upon me. I am therefore called the mouth of the Devas and the Pitris. At the new moon the Pitris, and at the full moon the Devas, are fed through my mouth, eating of the clarified butter that is poured on me. Being, as I am, *their* mouth, how am I to be an eater of all things (clean and unclean)?'

"Then Agni, after reflecting for a while, withdrew himself from all places; from places of the daily *homa* of the Brahmanas, from all long-extending sacrifices, from places of holy rites, and from other ceremonies. Without their *Oms* and *Vashats*, and deprived of their *Swadhās* and *Swāhās* (sacrificial mantras of great mystery), the whole body of creatures became

much distressed for the loss of their (sacrificial) fire. The Rishis in great anxiety went to the gods and addressed them thus:— 'Ye immaculate beings! the three regions of the universe are confounded at the cessation of their sacrifices and ceremonies in consequence of the loss of fire! Ordain what is to be done in this matter, so that there may be no loss of time.' Then the Rishis and the gods went together into the presence of Brahmā. And they represented to him all about the curse on Agni and the consequent interruption of all ceremonies. And they said, 'O thou greatly fortunate one! Agni hath been cursed by Bhrigu for some reason. Indeed, being the mouth of the gods and also the first who eateth of what is offered in sacrifices, the eater also of the sacrificial butter, how shall Agni be reduced to the condition of one who eateth of all things promiscuously?' And the creator of the universe hearing those words of theirs summoned Agni to his presence. And Brahmā addressed Agni the creator of all and eternal as himself in these gentle words:—'Thou art the creator of the worlds and thou art their destroyer! Thou preservest the three worlds and thou art the promoter of all sacrifices and ceremonies! Therefore behave thyself so that ceremonies be not interrupted. And O thou eater of the sacrificial butter, why dost thou act so foolishly, being as thou art the Lord of all? Thou alone art always pure in the universe and thou art its stay! Thou shalt not, with all thy body, be reduced to the state of one who eateth all things promiscuously. O thou of flames, the flame that is in thy viler parts shall alone eat of all things alike. That body of thine which eateth of flesh (being in the stomach of all carnivorous animals) shall also eat of all things promiscuously. And as every thing touched by the sun's beams becometh pure so shall everything be pure that shall be burnt by thy flames. Thou, O fire, art the supreme energy born of thy own power. Then, O Lord, by that power of thine make the Rishi's curse true. Continue to receive thy own portion and that of the gods, offered at thy mouth.'"

Sauti continued:—"Then Agni replied to the Grand-father, 'So be it.' And he then went away to obey the command of the supreme Lord. The gods and the Rishis also in delight returned

to the place whence they came. And the Rishis began to perform as before their ceremonies and sacrifices. And the gods in heaven and all creatures of the world rejoiced exceedingly. And Agni too rejoiced in that he was free from the prospect of sin.

"Thus, O possessor of the six attributes, had Agni been cursed in days of yore by Bhrigu. And such is the ancient history founded thereon, the destruction of the Rakshasa Puloma, and the birth of Chyavana."

Thus endeth the seventh Section of the Pauloma of the Adi Parva of the blessed Mahabharata.

SECTION VIII.

(Pauloma Parva continued.)

Sauti said :—"O Brahmana, Chyavana the son of Bhrigu begot in the womb of his wife Su-kanya a son. And that son was the illustrious Pramati of resplendent energy. And Pramati begot in the womb of Ghritāchi a son called Ruru. And Ruru begot by his wife Pramadvarā a son called Sunaka. And I shall relate to you in detail, O Brahmana, the entire history of Ruru of abundant energy. O listen to it then in full!

"Formerly there was a great Rishi called Sthula-kesha possessed of ascetic power and learning and kindly disposed towards all creatures. At that time, O Brahmana sage, Viswavashu, the King of the Gandharvas, it is said, knew Menakā the celestial dancing-girl. And the Apsarā, Menakā, O thou of the Bhrigu race, when her time was come, dropped the infant in her womb near the hermitage of Sthula-kesha. And dropping the new-born infant on the banks of the river, the Apsarā, Menaka, O Branmana, being destitute of pity and shame, went away. And the Rishi, Sthula-kesha, of great ascetic power discovered the infant lying forsaken in a lonely part of the river side. And he perceived that it was a female child, bright as the offspring of an Immortal and as it were blazing with beauty. And the great Brahmana, Sthula-kesha, that first of Munis, seeing that female child, and filled with compassion, took it up and reared it. And the lovely child grew up in his holy habitation, the noble-minded and blessed

Rishi Sthula-kesha performing in due succession all the ceremonies beginning with that at the birth as ordanied by the divine law. And because she surpassed all of her sex in goodness, beauty, and every quality, the great Rishi called her by the name of Pramadvara. And the pious Ruru having seen Pramadvara in the hermitage of Sthula-kesha became one whose heart was pursued by the god of love. And Ruru by means of his companions made his father Pramati, the son of Bhrigu, acquainted with his passion. And Pramati demanded her of the far-famed Sthula-kesha for his son. And her foster-father betrothed the virgin Pramadvara to Ruru fixing the nuptials for the day when the star *Varga-Daivatá* (Purva-phalguni) would be ascendant.

"Then within a few days of the time fixed for the nuptials, the beautiful virgin while at play with companions of her own sex, her time having come, impelled by fate, trod upon a serpent she did not perceive as it lay in a coil. And the reptile, urged to execute the will of fate, violently darted its envenomed fangs on the body of the heedless maiden. And stung by that serpent, she instantly dropped senseless on the ground, her color faded and all the graces of her person gone. And with disheveled hair she became a spectacle of woe to her companions and friends. And she who was so agreeable to behold became in death what was too painful to look at. And the slender-waisted girl, lying on the ground like one asleep—being overcome with the poison of the snake—once more became more beautiful still than in life. And her foster-father and the other holy asceties who were there, all saw her lying motionless upon the ground with the splendour of a lotus. And then there came many noted Brahmanas filled with compassion, and they sat around her. And Swastyatreya, Mahajana, Kushika, Sankhya-mekhala, Uddalaka, Kat-ha, and Sweta of great renown, Bharadwaja, Kauna-kutsya, Arshti-sena, Gautama, Pramati, and Pramati's son Ruru, and other inhabitants of the forest, came there. And when they saw that maiden lying dead on the ground overcome with the poison of the reptile that had stung her, filled with compassion, they all wept. But Ruru, pained exceedingly, retired from the scene."

So ends the eighth Section of the Pauloma of the Adi Parva of the blessed Mahabharata.

SECTION IX.

(Pauloma Parva continued)

Sauti said:—"While those illustrious Brahmanas were sitting around the dead body of Pramadvarā, Ruru, sorely afflicted, retired into a deep wood and wept aloud. And overwhelmed with grief he indulged in much piteous lamentation.' And remembering his beloved Pramadvara he gave vent to his sorrow in the following words:—'Alas! the delicate fair one that increaseth my affliction lieth upon the bare ground! What can be more deplorable to us her friends? If I have been charitable, if I have performed acts of penance, if I have ever reverenced my superiors, let the merit of these acts restore to life my beloved one! If from my birth I have, controlling my passions, adhered to my vows, let the fair Pramadvara rise from the ground.'

"And while Ruru was indulging in these lamentations for the loss of his bride, a messenger from heaven came to him in the forest and addressed him thus:—'The words thou utterest, O Ruru, in thy affliction can have no effect. For, O pious man, one belonging to this world whose days are runout can never come back to life. This poor child of a Gandharva and Apsara has had her days run out! Therefore, O child, thou shouldst not yield up thy heart to sorrow. The great gods, however, have provided before-hand a means. And if thou compliest with it thou mayest receive back thy Pramadvara.'

"And Ruru replied, 'what is that which the gods have provided, O messenger of heaven! Tell me in full so that hearing I may comply with it. It behoveth thee to deliver me!' 'And the celestial messenger said unto Ruru, 'Resign half of thy own life to thy bride, and then, O Ruru of the race of Bhrigu, thy Pramadvara shall rise from the ground.' And Ruru replied, 'O best of celestial messengers, I give up a moiety of my own life in favor of my bride. Then let my beloved one rise up in the dress and form of love.'"

Sauti said, "Then the king of the Gandharvas (the father of Pramadvara) and the celestial messenger, both of excellent qualities, went to the god Dharma (the Judge of the dead) and addressed him, saying, 'If it be thy will, O Dharma-raja, let the amiable Pramadvara, the betrothed wife of Ruru, now lying dead, rise up with a moiety of Ruru's life.' And Dharma-raja answered, 'O messenger of the gods, if it be thy wish, let Pramadvara the betrothed wife of Ruru, rise up endued with a moiety of Ruru's life!'"

Sauti continued:—"And when Dharma-raja had said so, that maiden of superior complexion, Pramadvara, endued with a moiety of Ruru's life, rose as from her slumbers. This bestowal by Ruru, endowed with length of days, of a moiety of his own life to resuscitate his bride afterwards led, it was seen, to a curtailment Ruru's life.

"And on an auspicious day their fathers gladly married them with due rites. And the couple passed their days devoted to each other. And Ruru having obtained such a wife as is hard to be found, beautiful and bright as the filaments of the lotus, made a vow for the destruction of the serpent race. And whenever he saw a serpent, he became filled with great wr) and always killed it taking up a weapon.

"One day, O Brahmana, Ruru entered an extensive forest. And he there saw an old serpent of the Dundubha species lying stretched on the ground. And Ruru thereupon lifted up in anger his staff even like to the staff of Death, for the purpose of killing it. Then the Dundubha, addressing Ruru, said, 'I have done thee no harm, O Brahmana! Then wherefore wilt thou slay me in anger?'"

So ends the ninth Section of the Pauloma of the Adi Parva. of the blessed Mahabharata.

SECTION X.

(Pauloma Parva continued.)

Sauti said:—"And Ruru on hearing those words replied, 'My wife, dear to me as life, was bit by a snake; upon which, I made, O snake, a dreadful vow, viz, that I would kill every

snake that I might see. Therefore shall I smite thee and thou shalt be deprived of life.'

"And the Dundubha replied, 'O Brahmana, they are other snakes that bite man. It behoveth thee not to slay Dundubhas who are serpents only in name. Subject with other serpents to the same calamities but not sharing their good fortune, in woe the same but in joy different, the Dundubhas should not be slain by thee for thou canst judge between right and wrong.'"

Sauti continued:—"And the Rishi Ruru hearing these words of the serpent, and seeing that it was perplexed with fear besides being really of the Dundubha species, killed it not. And Ruru, the possessor of the six attributes, comforting the snake addressed it, saying, 'Tell me fully, O Snake, who art thou thus metamorphosed?' And the Dundubha replied, 'O Ruru! I was formerly a Rishi of name Sahasrapat. And it is by the curse of a Brahmana that I have been metamorphosed into a snake.' And Ruru asked, 'O thou best of Snakes, for what wast thou cursed by a Brahmana in wrath? And how long also shall thy form continue so?'"

And so ends the tenth Section of the Pauloma of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XI.

(Pauloma Parva continued.)

Sauti continued:—"The Dundubha then said, 'in former times, I had a friend Khagama by name. He was keen in his speech and possessed of spiritual power by virtue of his austerities. And one day when he was engaged in the Agni-hotra (Fire-sacrifice), I made a mock snake of blades of grass, and in a frolic attempted to frighten him with it. And anon he went into a swoon. On recovering his senses, that truth-telling and vow-observing ascetic, burning with wrath, exclaimed,—Since thou hast made a powerless mock snake to frghten me, thou shalt be turned even into a venomless serpent thyself by my curse.—O ascetic, I well knew the power of his penances; therefore with an agitated heart, I addressed him thus, lowly bending with joined hands,—Friend I have done this by way

of joke, to excite thy laughter. It behoveth thee to forgive me and revoke thy curse.—And seeing me sorely troubled, the ascetic was moved, and he replied, breathing hot and hard,—What I have said, must come to pass. Hear what I say and lay it to thy heart. O pious one! When Ruru, the pure son of Pramati, will appear, thou shalt be delivered from the curse the moment thou seest him.—Thou art the very Ruru and the son of Pramati. On regaining my native form, I will tell thee something for thy good.'

" And that illustrious man and best of Brahmanas then left his snake body, and attained his own form and original brightness. He then addressed the following words to Ruru of incomparable power. 'O thou first of created beings, verily the highest morality is sparing life. Therefore a Brahmana should never take the life of any creature. A Brahmana should ever be mild. This is the most sacred injunction of the Vedas. A Brahmana should be versed in the Vedas and Vedangas, and should inspire all creatures with confidence. He should be benevolent to all creatures, truth-speaking, and forgiving, even as it is his paramount duty to retain the Vedas in his memory. The duties of the Kshetria are not thine. To be stern, to hold the sceptre and to rule the subject are the duties of the Kshetria. Listen, O Ruru, to the account of the destruction of snakes at the sacrifice of Janamejaya in days of yore, and the deliverance of the terrified reptiles by that best of Dwijas, Astika, profound in Vedic lore and mighty in spiritual energy.'"

And so ends the eleventh Section of the Pauloma of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XII.

(Pauloma Parva continued.)

Sauti continued :—" Ruru then asked, 'O best of Dwijas, why was the king Janamejaya bent upon destroying the serpents? And why were they saved by the wise Astika? I am anxious to hear all this in detail.'

" The Rishi replied, 'O Ruru, the important history of

Astika you will learn from the lips of the Brahmanas'. Saying this, he vanished.

"Ruru rushed out in search of the disappearing Rishi, and having failed to find him in all the wood, fell down upon the ground. And revolving in his mind the words of the Rishi, he swooned away. On regaining his senses, he went home and asked his father to relate the history in question. Thus asked, his father related all about the story."

And so ends the twelfth Section in the Pauloma of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XIII.

(Astika Parva).

Saunaka asked, "For what was it that the mighty monarch Janamejaya determined to take the lives of the snakes by means of his sacrifice ? O Sauti, pray tell us in full the true story. Tell us also why that best of Dwijas and foremost of those that have controlled their passions (Astika), rescued the snakes from the flaming fire. Pray, whose son was that monarch who celebrated the snake sacrifice ? And whose also that best of Dwijas ?"

Sauti said, "O best of speakers, the story of Astika to which you have alluded is long. I will relate it in full, O listen !"

Saunaka said, "I am desirous of hearing at length the charming story of that Rishi of old, the illustrious Brahmana, Astika."

Sauti began, "This history first recited by Krishna-Dwaipayana is called a Purana by the Brahmanas. It was formerly narrated by my wise father, Suta Lomaharshana, the disciple of Vyasa, before the dwellers of the Naimisha forest, at their request. I was present at the recital, and, O Saunaka, since thou askest me, I will narrate the history of Astika exactly as I heard it. O listen as I recite in full that sin-destroying story !

"The father of Astika was powerful like Prajapati. And he was a Brahmachari, and was always engaged in austere devotions. And he ate sparingly, was a mighty ascetic, and had his lust under complete control. And he was known by the

name of Jaratkaru. And that best of the *Yayāvaras* and virtuous and vow-observing Brahmana once undertook a journey over the world, equipped with spiritual energy. And he visited divers holy spots, and rested where night overtook him. And he practised religious austerities hard to be practised by men of undeveloped minds. And the sage lived upon air and renounced sleep for ever. Thus going about like flaming fire, one day he happened to see his ancestors, hanging head foremost in a great hole, their feet pointing to the sky. On seeing them, Jaratkaru addressed them thus :— 'Who are ye thus hanging head foremost in this hole by a rope of *virana* fibres that is again secretly eaten into on all sides by rats living here ?'

"The ancestors said, 'We are vow-observing Rishis of the Yayavara sect. We have come by this low state in consequence of want of descendants. We have a son named Jaratkaru. Woe is us! that wretch hath entered upon a life of austerities and the fool doth not think of raising offspring by marriage. It is for that reason that we have met with this fate. Having means, we fare like wretches as if we had none. Pray, O excellent one, who art thou that thus sorrowest as a friend on our account ? We are desirous to learn who thou art standing by us, and why thou sorrowest for us.'

"Jaratkaru said, 'Ye are even *my* ancestors. I am that Jaratkaru. O tell me how I may serve ye !'

"The fathers then answered, 'Try thy best, O child, to beget a son to extend our line. Thereby thou wilt achieve, O excellent one, a meritorious act for both thyself and ourselves ! Not by doing one's duties, not by practising penances, one acquireth the merit one doth by being a father. Therefore, O child, at our command, do thou make up thy mind to marry and produce offspring. Herein consisteth our chief good.' And Jaratkaru replied, 'I shall not marry for my sake nor earn wealth for enjoyment, but I shall do so for your welfare alone. In proper time, and according to the ordinance, I shall take a wife so that I may attain the end. I shall not do otherwise. If a bride may be had of the same name with me, whose friends would besides willingly give

her to me in marriage as a gift in charity, I shall take her hand, according to rites. But who will give away his daughter to a poor man like myself? I shall accept, however, any daughter given to me in alms. I shall endeavour, O sires, to compass a union. I will abide by my word. I will raise offspring for your redemption, so that, O fathers, ascending to the celestial regions ye may joy as ye like.' "

So ends the thirteenth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XIV.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "That Brahmana of rigid vows then began to search for a wife, but found he none. One day he went into the forest, and recollecting the words of his ancestors, in a faint voice thrice begged for a bride. Thereupon rose before the Brahmana, Vasuki with his sister and offered for the former's acceptance the hand of the fair one. But the Dwija hesitated to accept her, thinking her not of the self-same name with himself. The great Jaratkaru thought within himself, 'I will take none save one who is my namesake.' Then the wise Jaratkaru of austere devotions asked the Snake, 'tell me truly, what is the name of this thy sister?'

"Vasuki replied, 'O Jaratkaru, the name of this my younger sister is Jaratkaru. Pray, accept this slender-waisted one for thy spouse. O best of Dwijas, it was to unite her with thee that I have brought her up. Therefore do thou take her!' Saying this he offered his beautiful sister to Jaratkaru who then espoused her with ordained rites."

So ends the fourteenth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XV.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "O foremost of the Brahm-(truth) knowing Rishis, the mother of the serpents had cursed them of old, saying,

'Agni shall burn ye all in the sacrifice of Janamejaya!' It was to neutralise that curse that the chief of the serpents married his sister to that high-souled and vow-observing Rishi. The Rishi having formally wedded her, begat in her the great Astika, who became an illustrious ascetic, profound in the Vedas and Vedangas, who regarded all with an even eye, and who removed the fears of his parents.

"Then after a long space of time, the king of the Pandava line celebrated a sacrifice known as the Snake sacrifice. After that sacrifice intended for the extermination of the serpents had commenced, the powerful Astika delivered the reptiles,—his brothers and uncles. He delivered his fathers also by raising offspring to himself. And by his austerities, O Brahmana, and by various vows and the study of the Vedas, he became freed from his debts. By sacrifices he propitiated the gods; and by the adoption of the Brahmacharya mode of life he conciliated the Rishis; and by begetting offspring he gratified his ancestors.

"Thus discharging his great debts, and having acquired great merit, Jaratkaru went to heaven with his ancestors, leaving Astika behind. This is the story of Astika, which I have related as I heard it. Now, tell me, O powerful one of the Bhrigu race, what more I am to narrate."

So ends the fifteenth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XVI.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Saunaka said, "O Sauti, relate in *detail* the history of the virtuous and learned Astika. We are extremely curious to hear it. O thou amiable one, thou speakest sweetly, and we are well pleased with thy speech. Thou speakest even as thy father. Thy sire was ever ready to please us. Now tell us the story as thy father told it."

Sauti said, "O thou blest with length of days, I will narrate the history of Astika as I heard it from my father. O Brahmana, in the Krita (golden) age Prajapati had two fair and virtuous daughters named Kadru and Vinata. The sisters were

the wives of Kasyapa. Highly gratified with his virtuous wives, Kasyapa, resembling Prajapati himself, was desirous of conferring on each of them a boon. The ladies were all joy because their lord was willing to confer on them choice blessings. Kadru said, 'I would be mother of a thousand snakes of equal vigor.' And Vinata wished to bring forth two sons surpassing the thousand offspring of Kadru in strength, energy, size of body, and bravery. And Kasyapa said, 'be it so,' to Vinata extremely desirous of having offspring. And having obtained her prayer, she rejoiced greatly. And having obtained two sons of slpendid prowess, she regarded her boon fulfilled. And Kadru also obtained her thousand sons of equal vigor. 'Bear your children carefully' said Kasyapa and went to the forest, leaving his two wives gratified with his blessings."

Sauti said, "O best of Dwijas, after a long time, Kadru brought forth a thousand eggs, and Vinata two. Their maid-servants deposited the eggs separately in warm vessels. Five hundred years passed away, and the thousand eggs produced by Kadru burst and out came the progeny. But the twins of Vinata did not appear. And Vinata was jealous, and she broke one of the eggs and found in it an embryo with the upper part developed but the lower undeveloped. At this, the child in the egg became angry and thus cursed his mother: 'O mother, since thou hast prematurely broken this egg, thou shalt even serve as a slave. And shouldst thou wait five thousand years, and not destroy, by breaking the other egg through impatience, the illustrious child within it, or render it half-developed, he will deliver thee from slavery. And if thou wouldst have the child strong, thou must take tender care of the egg for all this time.' And thus cursing his mother the child rose to the sky. O Brahmana, even he is the charioteer of the Sun, always seen in the hour of morning.

"Then at the expiration of the five hundred years, bursting open the other egg, out came Gadura, the serpent-eater. O tiger of the Bhrigu race, immediately on seeing the light, the son of Vinata left his mother, and the lord of birds feeling hungry mounted on his wings to seek for the food assigned to him by the great ordainer of all."

And so ends the sixteenth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XVII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, " O ascetic, about this time the two sisters saw Uchchaisrava approaching near,—that Uchchaisrava of complacent appearance who was worshipped by the gods, that best of steeds, who at the churning of the Ocean for nectar arose, divine, graceful, perpetually young, creation's masterpiece, of irrisistible vigor, and blest with every auspicious mark. "

Saunaka asked, ' Why did the gods churn the ocean for nectar and under what circumstances (on which occasion, as you say, sprang that best of steeds so powerful and resplendent) was it undertaken ?"

Sauti said, " There is a mountain named *Meru* of blazing appearance, and looking like a huge heap of effulgence. The rays of the sun falling on its peaks of golden lustre are dispersed by them. Abounding with gold and of variegated tints, that mountain is the haunt of the gods and the Gandharvas. It is immeasurable, and unapproachable by men of manifold sins. Dreadful beasts of prey inhabit its breast, and it is illuminated with divine herbs of healing virtue. It standeth kissing the heavens by its height and is the first of mountains. Ordinary people cannot so much as think of ascending it. It is graced with trees and streams and resoundeth with the charming melody of winged choirs. Standing high for infinite ages, upon it once all the mighty celestials sat them down and held a conclave. They came in quest of *amrita,* they who had practiced penances and observed the rules according to the ordinance. Seeing the celestial assembly in anxious consultation, Narayana said to Brahma, ' Do thou churn the Ocean with the Suras (gods) and the Asuras. By doing so, *amrita* shall be obtained together with all drugs and all gems. O ye gods, churn ye the Ocean, and ye shall discover *amrita.*' "

And so ends the seventeenth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XVIII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, " There is a mountain of name Mandara adorned with peaks like those of the clouds. It is the best of mountains, and is covered all over with intertwining herbs. There no end of birds pour forth their melody, and there beasts of prey roam about. The gods, the Apsaras, and the Kinnaras visit the place. Upwards it riseth eleven thousand *yojanas,* and descendeth downwards as much. The gods failed to tear it up and they came to Vishnu and Brahma who were sitting, and said, 'devise you some efficient scheme. Consider, ye gods, how Mandara may be upraised for our good. "

Sauti continued, " And Vishnu, with Brahma, assented to it, O son of Bhrigu ! And the lotus-eyed one laid the hard task on the mighty Ananta, the prince of Snakes. And the mighty Ananta, directed thereto both by Brahma and Narayana, O Brahmana, upraised that mountain with the woods thereon and with the dwellers of those woods. And the gods came to the shore of the Ocean with Ananta, and addressed the Ocean saying, 'O Ocean, we have come to churn thy waters for obtaining nectar.' And the Ocean replied, 'be it so, as I am to have a share of the nectar. I am able to bear the agitation of my waters by the mountain.' And the gods went to the king of the tortoises and said to him, 'O Tortoise-king, thou shalt have to hold the mountain on thy back.' The tortoise-king agreed, and Indra placed the mountain on the former's back by means of instruments.

" And the gods and the Asuras made Mandara their churning staff and Vasuki the cord, and set about churning the main for *amrita.* The Asuras held Vasuki by the hood and the gods by the tail. And Ananta who was for Narayana, at intervals raised the Snake's hood and suddenly lowered it. And in consequence of the friction he received at the hands of the gods and the Asuras, black vapours with flames issued out of his mouth which becoming clouds charged with lightning poured down showers to refresh the tired gods. And blossoms beginning to rain on all sides of the gods from the trees on the whirling Mandara, also refreshed them.

"And, O Brahmana, out of the deep then came a tremendous roar, like unto the roar of the clouds at the universal dissolution. Various aquatic animals were crushed by the great mountain, and gave up their being in the salt-waters. And many dwellers of the lower regions and inhabitants of the world of Varuna were killed. From the revolving Mandara, large trees were torn up by the roots, and flying into the air like birds, they fell into the water. And the mutual friction of the trees produced a fire which surrounded the mountain. And the mountain looked like a mass of dark clouds charged with lightning. O Brahmana, the fire increased, and burnt the lions, elephants and other creatures that were on the mountain. And carcasses of no end of animals floated down the waters. Then Indra extinguished that fire by descending showers.

"O Brahmana, after the churning had gone on for sometime, the gums of various trees and herbs mixed with the waters of the Ocean. And the celestials attained immortality by drinking of the waters mixed with those gums vested with the properties of *amrita*, and with the liquid extract of gold. By degrees, the milky water of the agitated deep produced clarified butter by virtue of the gums and juices. But nectar did not rise even then. And the gods appeared before boon-granting Brahmā seated on his seat and said, 'Sir, we are spent, we have not strength left to churn further. Nectar hath not yet arisen. So that now we have no resource save Narayana.'

"Hearing them, Brahma said to Narayana, 'Lord, vouchsafe to grant the gods strength to churn afresh the deep.'

"And Narayana agreeing to grant their various prayers, said, 'O wise ones, I grant ye sufficient strength. Go, insert the mountain and churn the waters.'

"Re-equipped with strength, the gods began the churning again. After a while, the mild Moon of a thousand rays emerged from the ocean. Thereafter, Lakshmi dressed in white, and wine, the white steed, and then the celestial gem Kaustuva which graces the breast of Narayana. Lakshmi, wine, and the steed fleet as the mind, all came before the gods on high. Then arose the divine Dhanwantari himself with the white vessel of nectar in his hand. And seeing him, the

Asuras set up a loud cry, saying, "Ye have taken all, *he* must be ours.'

"And at length rose the great elephant, Airavata, of huge body and with two pairs of white tusks. And him took the holder of the thunder-bolt. But the churning still went on, so that poison at last appeared, and began to overspread the earth, blazing like a flame mixed with fumes. And at the scent of the fearful Kalakuta, the three worlds were stupefied. And then Mahadeva of the *Mantra* form, solicited by Brahma, to save the creation swallowed the poison and held it in his throat. And it is said that the god from that time is called *Nilakantha* (blue-throated.) Seeing all these wondrous things, the Asuras were filled with despair, and prepared to enter into hostilities with the gods for the possession of Lakshmi and nectar. Thereupon Narayana called his bewitching *Maya* to his aid, and assuming a ravishing female form, coquetted with the Asuras. And the Daityas, ravished with her charms, lost their reason and unanimously placed the nectar in the hands of that fair woman."

So ends the eighteenth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XIX.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "Then the Daityas and the Danavas with first class armours and various weapons pursued the gods. In the meantime the valiant Lord Vishnu accompanied by Nara took away the nectar in his hands from those mighty Danavas.

"And then all the tribes of the gods during that time of great fright drank the nectar receiving it from Vishnu. And while the gods were drinking that nectar after which they had so much hankered, a Danava named Rahu was drinking it in the guise of a god. And when the nectar had only reached Rahu's throat, the Sun and the Moon (discovered him and) communicated the fact to the gods. And Narayana instantly cut off with his discus the well-adorned head of the Danava who was drinking the nectar without permission. And

the huge head of the Danava cut off by the discus and resembling a mountain-peak then rose to the sky and began to utter dreadful cries. And the Danava's headless trunk falling upon the ground and rolling thereon made the Earth tremble with her mountains, forests, and islands. And from that time hath arisen a long-standing quarrel between Rahu's head and the Sun and the Moon. And to this day it swalloweth the Sun and the Moon, (causing the eclipses.)

And Narayana quitting his ravishing female form, and hurling many terrible weapons at them, made the Danavas tremble. And thus on the shores of the sea of salt-water, commenced the dreadful battle of the gods and the Asuras. And sharp-pointed javelins and lances and various weapons by thousands began to be discharged on all sides. And mangled with the discus and wounded with swords, *saktis*, and maces, the Asuras in large numbers vomitted blood and lay prostrate on the earth. Cut off from the trunks with sharp double edged swords, heads adorned with bright gold fell continually on the field of battle. Their bodies drenched in gore, the great Asuras lay dead everywhere. It seemed as if red-dyed mountain peaks lay scattered all around. And when the sun rose in his splendour, thousands of warriors striking one another with their weapons, the sounds 'Alas!' and 'Oh!' were heard everywhere. The warriors fighting at a distance from one another brought one another down by sharp iron missiles, and these fighting at close quarters slew one another by blows of the fist. And the air was filled with shrieks of distress. Everywhere were heard the alarming sounds, 'cut off,' 'pierce,' 'after,' 'hurl down,' 'advance.'.

"And when the battle was raging fiercely, Nara and Narayana entered the field. And Narayana seeing the heavenly bow in the hand of Nara, called to his mind his own weapon—the Danava-destroying discus. And lo! the discus, Sudarshana, destroyer of enemies, like to Agni in effulgence, and dreadful in battle, came from the sky as soon as thought of. And when it came, Achyuta of fierce energy, of arms like the trunk of an elephant, hurled with great force the weapon, effulgent as flaming fire, dreadful, and of extraordinary lustre, and capable of destroying hostile towns. And that discus blazing like the fire

that burneth all things at the end of time, hurled with force from the hands of Narayana, falling constantly everywhere destroyed the Daityas and the Danavas by thousands. Sometimes it flamed like fire and consumed them all, sometimes it struck them down as it coursed through the sky; and sometimes, falling on earth, like a goblin it drank their life blood.

"And on their side, the Danavas, white as the clouds from which the rain hath been extracted, possessing great strength and bold hearts, ascended the sky and hurling down thousands of mountains continually harassed the gods. And those dreadful mountains, like masses of clouds, with their trees and flat tops, falling from the sky, collided with one another and produced a tremendous roar. And when thousands of warriors shouted without intermission on the field of battle and the mountains with the woods thereon began to fall around, the Earth with her forests trembled. Then the divine Nara coming to that dreadful conflict of the Asuras and the Ganas (the followers of Rudra), reducing to dust those rocks by means of his gold-headed arrows covered the heavens with the dust. And discomfitted by the gods, and seeing the furious discus scouring the fields of heaven like a blazing flame, the mighty Danavas entered the bowels of the Earth, while others plunged into the sea of salt waters.

"And having gained the victory, the gods offering due respect to Mandara placed him on his own base. And the nectar-bearing gods making the heavens resound with their shouts, went to their own abodes. And the gods returning to the heavens rejoiced greatly, and the vessel of nectar Indra and the other gods made over to Nara for careful keep."

And so ends the nineteenth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XX.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said :—"Thus have I recited to you all about how *amrita* (nectar) was churned out of the Ocean, and on which occasion the horse Uchchaisrava of great beauty and incom-

parable prowess was obtained. It was this horse seeing whom Kadru asked Vinata, 'Tell me, amiable sister, without taking much time, of what color is Uchchaisrava?' And Vinata answered, 'that king of horses is certainly white. What dost thou think, sister? Say thou what is its color. Let us lay a wager upon it.' And Kadru replied, 'O thou of agreeable smiles, I think that horse is black in its tail. Beauteous one, bet with me that she who loseth shall be the other's slave.'"

Sauti continued, "Thus wagering with each other about menial service as a slave, the sisters went home resolved to satisfy themselves by examining the horse the next day. And Kadru bent upon practising a deception, ordered her thousand sons to transform themselves into black hair and speedily cover the horse's tail inorder that she might not become a slave. But her sons the snakes refusing to do her bidding, she cursed them, saying, 'during the snake-sacrifice of the wise king Janamejaya of the Pandava race, fire shall consume ye.' And the Grand-father (Brahma) himself heard this exceedingly cruel curse denounced by Kadru impelled by the fates. And seeing that the snakes had multiplied exceedingly, the Grand-father moved by kind consideration for his creatures sanctioned with all the gods this curse of Kadru. Indeed, of flaming poison, great prowess, excess of strength, and ever bent on biting other creatures, in consequence of such poison and for the good of all creatures the conduct of their mother towards those persecutors of all creatures was very proper. Fate always inflicts the punishment of death on those who seek the death of other creatures. The gods having exchanged such sentiments with each other then applauded Kadru (and went away.) And Brahmā calling Kasyapa to him spake unto him these words: 'O thou pure one who overcomest all enemies, these snakes of flaming poison, of huge bodies, and ever intent on biting other creatures, that thou hast begot, have been cursed by their mother. Child, do not grieve for it in the least. The destruction of the snakes in the sacrifice hath, indeed, been indicated in the Puranas.' Saying this, the divine Creator of the universe propitiated

the Prajapati (Lord of creation, Kasyapa) and bestowed on that illustrious one the knowledge of neutralising poisons."

And so ends the twentieth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXI.

(Astika Parva continued).

Sauti said, "Then when the night had passed away and the sun had risen in the morning, O thou whose wealth is ascetism, the two sisters, Kadru and Vinata, having laid a wager about slavery, with haste and impatience went to view the horse Uchchaisrava from a near point. On their way they saw Ocean, that receptacle of waters, vast and deep, agitated and in a tremendous roar, full of fishes large enough to swallow the whale, and abounding with huge *makaras* and creatures of various forms by thousands, and rendered inaccessible by the presence of other terrible, monster-shaped, dark, and fierce aquatic animals; abounding also with tortoises and crocodiles, the mine of all kinds of gems, the home of Varuna (the water-god), the excellent and beautiful residence of the Nagas, the lord of rivers, the abode of the subterranean fire, the friend (or asylum) of the Asuras, the terror of all creatures, the grand reservoir of waters, knowing no deterioration. It is holy, beneficial to the gods, and the great mine of nectar; without limits, inconceivable, sacred, and highly wonderful. Dark, terrible with the voice of aquatic creatures, tremendously roaring, and full of deep whirl-pools. It is an object of terror to all creatures. Moved by the winds blowing from its shores and heaving high with agitation and disturbance, it seems to dance everywhere with uplifted hands represented by its surges. Full of heaving billows caused by the waxing and waning of the moon, the parent of (Vāsudeva's great conch called) *Panchajanya*, the great mine of gems, its waters were formerly disturbed in consequence of the agitation caused within them by the Lord Govinda (Vishnu) of immeasurable prowess when he assumed the form of a wild-boar for raising the (submerged) Earth. Its

bottom lower than the nether regions the vow-observing Brahmarshi, Atri, could not fathom after (toiling for) a hundred years. It becomes the bed of the lotus-naveled Vishnu when at the dawn of every *Yuga* that deity of immeasurable power enjoys the deep sleep of spiritual meditation. It is the refuge of Mainaka under the fear of falling thunder, and the retreat of the Asuras overcome in fierce encounters. It offers water as sacrificial butter to the blazing fire emitted from the mouth of *Vadava* (the ocean-mare). It is fathomless and without limits, vast and immeasurable, the lord of rivers.

"And they saw that unto it rushed mighty rivers by thousands, in pride of gait, like competitors in love, each eager for a meeting forestalling the others. And they saw that it was always full, and always dancing with the waves. And they saw that it was deep and abounding with fierce *timis* and *makaras*. And it roared constantly with the terrible sounds of aquatic creatures. And they saw that it was vast, and wide as the expanse of space, unfathomable, and limitless, and the grand reservoir of waters."

And so ends the twenty-first Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

"The Nagas after a debate arrived at the conclusion that they should do their mother's bidding, for if she failed in obtaining her desire she might burn them all abandoning her affection; on the other hand if she were graciously inclined, the magnanimous one might free them from her curse. They said, 'We will certainly render the horse's tail black.' And it is said that they then went and became as hairs in the horse's tail.

"In the meantime, the two co-wives had laid the wager. And having laid the wager, O excellent of Brahmanas, the two sisters, Kadru and Vinata, the daughters of Daksha, proceeded in great delight along the sky to the other side of the ocean. And on their way they saw the Ocean, that receptacle of waters, incapable of being easily disturbed, mightily agitated all on a sudden by the wind, and roaring tremendously. Abounding with

fishes capable of swallowing the whale *(timi)* and full of *makaras*; containing also creatures of various forms computed by thousands; frightful from the presence of horrible monsters, inaccessible, deep, and terrible; the mine of all kinds of gems; the home of Varuna (the water-god), the wonderful habitation of the Nagas; the lord of rivers; the abode of the sub-terranean fire; the residence of the Asuras and of many dreadful creatures; the reservoir of waters; not subject to decay; romantic, and wonderful; the great mine of the *amrita* of the celestials; immeasurable and inconceivable; containing waters that are holy; filled to the brim by many thousands of great rivers; dancing as it were in waves; such the ocean, full of liquid waves, vast as the expanse of the sky, deep, of body lighted with the flames of sub-terranean fire, and roaring, which the sisters quickly passed over."

And so ends the twenty-second Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXIII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "Having crossed the ocean, Kadru of swift speed, accompanied by Vinata, soon alighted at the vicinage of the horse. They then both beheld that foremost of steeds, of great fleetness, with body white as the rays of the moon but (tail) having black hairs. And observing many black hairs in the tail, Kadru put Vinata who was deeply dejected into slavery. And thus Vinata having lost the wager entered into a state of slavery and became exceeding sorry.

"And in the meantime, bursting the egg without (the help of his) mother, Gadura also, of great splendour, when his time came, was born enkindling all the points of the universe,—that mighty being endued with strength, that bird capable of assuming at will any form, of going at will everywhere, and of calling to his aid at will any measure of energy. Effulgent like a heap of fire, he blazed terribly. Of lustre equal to that of the fire at the end of the *Yuga*, his eyes were bright like the lightning flash. And soon after birth that bird grew in size and increasing his body ascended the skies. Fierce and fiercely

roaring, he was terrible like a second ocean-fire. And all the deities seeing him, sought the protection of *Bibhavasu* (Agni.) And they bowed down to that deity of manifold forms seated on his seat and spake unto him these words:—'O Agni, extend not thy body. Thou wilt not consume us? Lo! this huge heap of thy flames is spreading wide' And Agni replied, 'O ye persecutors of the Asuras, it is not as ye imagine. This is Gadura of great strength and equal to me in splendour, endued with great energy, and born to promote the joy of Vinata. Even the sight of *this* heap of effulgence hath caused this delusion in ye. He is the mighty son of Kasyapa, the destroyer of the Nagas, engaged in the good of the gods, and the foe of the Daityas and the Rakshasas. Be not afraid of it in the least. Come with me and see.' And thus addressed, the gods along with the Rishis wending towards Gadura adored him from a distance with the following words.

"The gods said, 'Thou art a Rishi (*i. e.*, cognisant of all *mantras*), sharer of the largest portion in sacrifices, ever displayed in splendour, the controller of the bird of life, the presiding spirit of the animate and the inanimate universe! Thou art the destroyer of all, the creator of all; thou art Brahma of the Hiranyagarva form; thou art the lord of creation in the form of Daksha and the other *Prajapatis*; thou art Indra (the king of the gods), thou art the steed-necked incarnation of Vishnu; thou art the arrow (Vishnu himself, as he became such in the hands of Mahadeva on the burning of *Tripura*); thou art the lord of the universe; thou art the mouth of Vishnu; thou art the four-faced Padmaja; thou art a Brahmana (*i.e.*, wise), thou art Agni, Pavana, &c., (*i.e.*, the presiding deities of every object in the universe). Thou art knowledge; thou art the illusion to which we are all subject; thou art the all-pervading spirit, thou art the lord of the gods; thou art the great truth; thou art fearless; thou art ever unchanged; thou art the *Brahma* without attributes; thou art the energies of the Sun, &c.; thou art the intellectual functions; thou art our great protection; thou art the ocean of holiness; thou art the pure; thou art bereft of the attributes of darkness, &c.; thou art the possessor of the six high attributes; thou art

he who cannot be withstood in contest! From thee have emanated all things; thou art of excellent deeds; thou art all that hath not been and all that hath been! Thou art pure knowledge; thou displayest to us, as the Sun by his rays, this animate and inanimate universe; darkening the splendour of the Sun at every moment, thou art the destroyer of all; thou art all that is perishable and all that is imperishable! O thou of the splendour of Agni, thou burnest all even as the Sun in his anger burneth all creatures! O thou terrible one, thou risest even as the fire at the final dissolution of the creation! Thou destroyest even him that destroyeth all at the revolutions of the *Yugas*! Having reached thee, O mighty Gadura, who movest in the skies, we seek thy protection, O lord of birds, whose energy is great, whose splendour is that of fire, whose brightness is as that of lightning, whom no darkness can approach, who reachest the very clouds, who art both the cause and the effect, the dispenser of boons, and invincible in prowess! O Lord, this whole universe is rendered hot by thy splendour bright as the lustre of heated gold! Protect these high-souled gods, who, overcome by thee and terrified withal, are flying along the heavens in different directions on their celestial cars! O thou best of birds, thou lord of all, thou art the son of the merciful and high-souled Rishi Kasyapa; therefore, be not wroth but have mercy on the universe! Thou art supreme, O assuage thy anger, and preserve us! At thy voice, loud as the roar of thunder, the ten points, the skies, the heavens, this earth, and our hearts, O bird, are continuously trembling! O diminish this thy body resembling Agni! At the sight of thy splendour resembling that of Yama (the great destroyer) in wrath, our hearts losing all equanimity are quaking! O thou lord of birds, be propitious to us who solicit thee! O thou illustrious one, bestow on us good fortune and joy!'

"And that bird of fair feathers, thus adored by the deities and the tribes of the Rishis, diminished his own energy and splendour."

And thus ends the twenty-third Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXIV.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "Then having heard about and beholding his own body, that bird of beautiful feathers diminished his size.

"And Gadura said, 'Let no creature be afraid; and as ye also are in a fright at sight of my terrible form, I will diminish my energy.'"

Sauti continued, "Then that bird capable of going everywhere at will, that ranger of the skies capable of calling to his aid any measure of energy, bearing Aruna on his back wended from his father's home and arrived at his mother's side on the other shore of the great ocean. And he placed Aruna of great splendour in the eastern region, when the Sun had resolved to burn the worlds with his fierce rays."

Saunaka said, "What for did the worshipful Sun resolve at that time to burn the worlds? What wrong was done to him by the gods which provoked his ire?"

Sauti said. "O thou sinless one! when Rahu in the act of drinking nectar was discovered to the gods by the Sun and the Moon, the former from that time conceived an enmity towards those deities. And upon the Sun being sought to be devoured by that afflicter (Rahu), he became wroth, and thought, 'O this enmity of Rahu towards me hath sprung from my desire of benefitting the gods. And this sore evil I alone have to sustain. Indeed, at this pass help I obtain not. And the dwellers of the heavens see me about to be devoured and suffer it. And therefore for the destruction of the worlds must I sit.' And with this resolution he went to the mountains of the west.

"And from that place he began to scatter his heat around for the destruction of the worlds. And then the great Rishis approaching the gods spake unto them: 'Lo! in the middle of the night springeth a great heat striking terror into every heart, and destructive of the three worlds'. And then the gods accompanied by the Rishis wended to the Grand-father, and said unto him, 'O what is this great heat to-day that causeth such panic? The Sun hath not yet arisen, still the

destruction (of the world) is obvious. O Lord, what shall it be when he doth arise ?' And the Grand-father replied, 'Indeed, the Sun is prepared to rise to-day for the destruction of the worlds. As soon as he appeareth he will burn everything into a heap of ashes. By me hath been provided the remedy beforehand. The intelligent son of Kysyapa is known to all by the name of Aruna. He is huge of body and of great splendour; he shall stay at the front of the Sun, doing the duties of charioteer and taking away all the energy of the former. And this will secure the welfare of the worlds, of the Rishis, and of the dwellers of the heavens.'"

And Sauti continued, "And Aruna, ordered by the Grand-father, did all that he was ordered to do. And the Sun rose veiled by Aruna's person. I have told thee all about why the Sun was in wrath, and how Aruna also was appointed as the Sun's charioteer. Now hear of that other question propounded by thee a little while ago."

And so ends the twentyfourth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXV.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "Then that bird of great strength and energy and capable of going at will into every place repaired to his mother's side on the other shore of the great ocean. For thither was Vinata in affliction, defeated in wager and put into a state of slavery. And sometime after, on a certain occasion, Kadru calling Vinata who had prostrated herself to the former, addressed her these words in the presence of her son: 'O gentle Vinata, there is in the midst of the ocean, in a remote quarter, a delightful and fair region inhabited by the Nagas. Bear me thither.' And then the mother of that bird of fair feathers bore (on her back or shoulders) the mother of the snakes. And Gadura also, directed by his mother's words, carried (on his back) the snakes. And that ranger of the skies born of Vinata began to ascend towards the Sun. And thereupon the snakes, scorched by the rays of the Sun, swoon-

ed away. And Kadru seeing her sons in that state adored Indra, saying, 'I bow to thee, thou lord of all the deities: I bow to thee, thou slayer of (the Asura) Vala! I bow to thee, thou slayer of Namuchi, O thou of thousand eyes, thou lord of *Shachi!* By thy showers, be thou the protector of the snakes scorched by the Sun! O thou best of the deities, thou art our great protection! O thou Purandara, thou art able to grant rain in torrents! Thou art Vayu (the air), thou art the clouds, thou art fire, and thou art the lightning of the skies! Thou art the propeller of the clouds, and thou hast been called the great cloud (*i. e.* that which will darken the universe during the end of the *Yuga*)! Thou art the fierce and incomparable thunder, and thou art the roaring clouds! Thou art the creator of the worlds and their destroyer! Thou art unconquered! Thou art the light of all creatures, thou art *Aditya*, thou art *Vibhavasu*, thou art the highest knowledge, thou art wonderful, thou art the greatest being! Thou art wonderful and thou art a King! Thou art the best of the deities! Thou art Vishnu! Thou hast thousand eyes, thou art a god, and thou art the final resource! Thou art, O deity, all *amrita*, and thou art the most adored *Soma* (juice)! Thou art the moment, thou art the lunar day, thou art the *lava* (minute), thou art the *kshana* (4 minutes). Thou art the fortnight of the full moon and the fortnight of the new moon! Thou art the *kala*, thou the *kashtha*, and thou the *Truti*. (These are all divisions of time.) Thou art the year, thou the seasons, thou the months, thou the nights, thou the days! Thou art the fair Earth with her mountains and forests! Thou art also the firmament resplendent with the Sun! Thou art the great Ocean with heaving billows and abounding with *timis*, swallowers of *timis*, *makaras*, and various fishes! Thou art of great renown, always adored by the wise, and by the great Rishis with minds rapt in contemplation! Thou drinkest, for the good of creatures, the *Soma* juice in sacrifices and the clarified butter offered with *Vashats* (*mantras* of a kind). Thou art always worshipped in sacrifices by Brahmanas moved by desire of fruit. O thou incomparable mass of strength, thou art sung in the

Vedangas ! It is for that reason that the learned Brahmanas bent upon performing sacrifices study the Vedangas with every care.' "

And so ends the twenty-fifth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXVI.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti continued, "And then the illustrious one having the best of horses for his bearer, thus adored by Kadru, covered the entire firmament with masses of blue clouds. And he commanded the clouds, saying, 'pour ye your vivifying and blessed drops.' And those clouds luminous with lighting, and incessantly roaring against each other in the welkin, poured abundant water. And the sky looked as if the end of the *Yuga* had come, in consequence of those wonderful and terribly-roaring clouds that were incessantly begetting vast quantities of water. And in consequence of myriads of waves caused in the falling torrents, the deep roar of the clouds, the flashes of lightning, the violence of the wind, and the general agitation, the sky looked as if dancing in madness. And then the sky became dark, the rays of the sun and the moon totally disappeaing in consequence of the incessant downpour by those clouds.

"And upon Indra's causing that downpour, the Nagas became exceedingly delighted. And the Earth was filled with water all around. And the cool clear water reached even the nether regions. And there were countless watery waves all over the Earth. And the snakes with their mother reached (in safety) the island called Ramaniaka. "

And so ends the twenty-sixth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXVII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "And then the Nagas wetted with the shower became exceedingly glad. And borne by that bird of fair feathers, they soon arrived at the island. And that island had been appointed by the creator of the universe as the abode of the *makaras*. They had seen in that island on a former occasion the fierce Asura of the name of Lavana. And arrived there with Gadura, they saw there a beautiful forest, washed by the waters of the sea and resounding with (the music of) winged choirs. And there were clusters of trees all around with various fruits and flowers. And there were also fair mansions all around ; and many tanks abounding with lotuses. And it was also adorned with many fair lakes of pure water. And it was refreshed with pure incense-breathing breezes. And it was adorned with many a tree that grows only on the hills of Malaya (sandal wood) which seemed by its tallness to reach the very heavens, and which shaken by the breeze dropped showers of flowers. And there were also various other trees whose flowers were scattered all around by the breeze. And it seemed as if these bathed the Nagas arrived there with showers of rain represented by their dropping flowers. And that forest was charming and dear to the Gandharvas and always gave them pleasure. And it was full of bees mad with the honey they sucked. And the sight of its appearance was exceedingly delightful. And in consequence of many things there capable of charming everybody, that forest was fair, delightful, and holy. And echoing with the notes of various birds, it delighted greatly the sons of Kadru.

"And then the snakes having arrived at that forest began to enjoy themselves. And they commanded the lord of birds, Gadura, of great energy, saying, 'convey us to some other fair island with pure water. Thou ranger of the skies, thou must have seen many fair regions in thy course (through the air.)' And Gadura, after reflecting for a few moments, asked

his mother Vinata, 'why, mother, am I to do the bidding of the snakes?' And Vinata thus questioned by him thus spake unto that ranger of the skies, her son, invested with every virtue, of great energy, and great strength.

"Vinata said, 'O thou best of birds, I have become, from misfortune, the slave of her who hath the same husband with me. The snakes by an act of deception caused me to lose my bet and have made me so.' And when his mother had told him the reason, that ranger of the skies, dejected with grief, addressed the snakes, saying, 'Tell me, ye snakes, by bringing what thing, or gaining a knowledge of what thing, or doing what act of prowess, we may be freed from this state of bondage to ye.'"

Sauti continued, "And the snakes hearing him said, 'Bring thou *amrita* by force. Then, O bird, shalt thou be freed from bondage.'"

And so ends the twenty-seventh Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXVIII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "Gadura, thus addressed by the snakes, then said unto his mother. 'I shall go to bring *amrita*. I desire to eat something. Direct me to it.' And Vinata replied: 'In a remote region in the midst of the ocean, the Nishadas have their fair home. Having eaten the thousand Nishadas that live there, bring thou *amrita*. But let not thy heart be ever set on taking the life of a Brahmana. A Brahmana of all creatures must not be slain. He is, indeed, like fire. A Brahmana when angry becomes like fire or the Sun, like poison or an edged weapon. A Brahmana, it hath been said, is the master of all creatures. For these and other reasons, a Brahmana is the adored of the virtuous. O child, he is never to be slain by thee even in anger. Hostility with the Brahmanas, therefore, would not be proper under any circumstances. O thou sinless one, neither Agni nor the Sun truly consumeth so as doth a Brahmana of rigid vows when angry. By these various indica-

tions must thou know a good Brahmana. Indeed, a Brahmana is the first-born of all creatures, the foremost of the four orders, the father and the master of all.'

"And Gadura then asked, 'O mother, of what form is a Brahmana, of what behaviour, and of what prowess? Doth he shine like fire, or is he of tranquil mien? And, O mother, it behoveth thee to tell my inquiring self, assigning reasons, those auspicious signs by which I may recognise a Brahmana!'

"And Vinata replied, saying, 'O child, him shouldst thou know as a bull amongst Brahmanas who having entered thy throat will torture thee as a fish-hook or burn thee as flaming charcoal. A Brahmana must never be slain by thee even in anger.' And Vinata from affection for her son again told him these words: 'Him shouldst thou know as a good Brahmana who shall not be digested in thy stomach." And Vinata, from parental affection, reiterated those words. And although she knew the incomparable strength of her son, she yet blessed him heartily, for deceived by the snakes she was very much afflicted by woe. And she said, 'Let Maruta (the god of the winds) protect thy wings, and the Sun and the Moon thy vertebral regions; let Agni protect they head, and the Vasus thy whole body! I also, O child, engaged in beneficial ceremonies, shall sit here to give thee prosperity. Go then, O child, in safety to accomplish thy purpose.'"

Sauti continued, "Then Gadura, having heard the words of his mother, stretched his wings and ascended the skies. And endued with great strength, he soon came upon the Nishadas, hungry and like to another Yama. And bent upon slaying the Nishadas, he then raised a great quantity of dust that overspread the firmament and sucking up water from amid the ocean, shook the trees growing on the adjacent mountains. And then the lord of birds obstructed the principal thoroughfare of the Nishadas by his mouth having increased its cleft at will. And the Nishadas began to fly in great haste in the direction of the open mouth of the great serpent-eater. And as birds in great affliction ascend by thousands into the skies when the trees of the forest are shaken by the wind, so those Nishadas blinded by the dust raised by the storm entered

the wide-extending cleft of Gadura's mouth open to receive them. And then the hungry lord of all rangers of the skies, the oppressor of enemies, endued with great strength, and moving with the greatest activity to achieve his end, closed his mouth killing innumerable Nishadas following the occupation of fishermen."

And so ends the twenty-eighth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXIX.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti continued, "A certain Brahmana with his wife had entered the throat of that ranger of the skies. And the former thereupon began to burn the bird's throat like flaming charcoal. And him Gadura addressed, saying, 'O thou best of Brahmanas, come out soon from my mouth which I open for thee. A Brahmana must never be slain by me although he may be always engaged in sinful practices.' And to Gadura who had thus addressed him, that Brahmana said, 'O let this woman of the Nishada caste who is my wife come out with me!' And Gadura said, 'Taking the woman also of the Nishada caste with thee, come out soon. Save thyself without delay inasmuch as thou hast not yet been digested by the heat of my stomach.'"

Sauti continued, "And then that Brahmana accompanied by his wife of the Nishada caste came out, and eulogising Gadura wended whithersoever he liked. And upon that Brahmana coming out with his wife, that lord of birds, fleet as the mind, stretching his wings ascended the skies. And he then saw his father; and hailed by him, Gadura of incomparable prowess made proper answers. And the great Rishi (Kasyapa) then asked him, 'O child, is it well with thee? Dost thou get sufficient food every day? Is there food in plenty for thee in the world of men?'

"And Gadura replied, 'My mother is ever well. And so my brother, and so am I. But, father, I do not always obtain plenty of food for which my peace is incomplete. I am sent by the snakes to fetch the excellent *amrita* (*Soma*). And,

indeed, I shall fetch it to-day for emancipating my mother from her bondage. My mother had commanded me, saying,—Eat thou the Nishadas.—I have eaten them by thousands but my hunger is not appeased. Therefore, O worshipful one, point out to me some other food, by eating which, O master, I may be strong enough to bring away *amrita* by force. Thou shouldst indicate some food wherewith I may appease my hunger and thirst.'

"And Kasyapa replied, 'This lake thou seest is very sacred. It hath been heard of even in the heavens. There an elephant with face downwards doth continually drag a tortoise his elder brother. I shall speak to you in detail of their hostility in former life. I will tell you in full of their enmity in another life. Hear from me the truth, in proof whereof are they both (in this place.)

"'There was of old a great Rishi of the name of Vibhavasu. He was exceedingly wrathful. He had a younger brother of the name of Supritika who also was a great ascetic. And the great sage Supritika was averse to keep his wealth joint with his brother's. And Supritika would always speak of partition. After a certain time his brother Vibhavasu told Supritika,—It is from great foolishness that persons blinded by love of wealth always desire to make a partition of their patrimony. And after effecting a partition they fight with each other. Then again, enemies in the guise of friends cause an estrangement between ignorant and selfish men after they become separated in their wealth ; and pointing out faults confirm their quarrels so that they soon fall one by one. And downright ruin very soon overtakes the separated. For these reasons, the wise never speak well of partition amongst brothers who when divided regard not the most authoritative *Shastras* and are always in fear of each other. But as thou Supritika, without regarding my advice, impelled by desire of separation always wishest to make an arrangement about your property, thou must become an elephant.—And Supritika, thus cursed, then spake unto Vibhavasu :—Thou also must become a tortoise moving in the interior of the waters.—

"'And thus on account of wealth those two fools, Supritika

and Vibhavasu, from each other's curse, have become an elephant and a tortoise. Owing to their wrath, they have both become inferior animals. And they are engaged in hostilities with each other, proud of their excessive strength and the weight of their bodies. And in this lake those two of huge bodies are engaged in acts according to their former hostility. The other amongst them, the handsome elephant of huge body, is even now approaching. And hearing his roar, the tortoise also of huge body, living within the waters, cometh out agitating the lake exceedingly. And seeing him, the elephant, with trunk in a curl, goeth into the water. And endued with great energy, with motion of his tusks, of fore-part of his trunk, of tail, and of feet, he agitates the waters of the lake abounding with fishes. And the tortoise also of much strength, with upraised head, cometh forward for an encounter. And the elephant is six *yojanas* in height and twice that measure in circumference. And the height of the tortoise also is three *yojanas* and his circumference ten. Eat thou both of them, madly engaged in the encounter and bent upon slaying each other, and accomplish this business that thou desirest. Eating that fierce elephant,—looking like a huge mountain and resembling a mass of dark clouds, bring thou *amrita*.' "

Sauti continued, "And having said so unto Gadura, he (Kasyapa) blessed him then. 'Blest be thou when thou art engaged with the gods in combat. Let pots filled to the brim, Brahmanas, kine, and what other auspicious objects there are, bless thee, O thou oviparous one. And O thou of great strength, when thou art engaged with the gods in combat, let the *Richas*, the *Yajus*, the *Samas*, the sacred sacrificial butter, all the mysteries (of the Vedas), and all the Vedas, be thy strength.'

"And Gadura, thus addressed by his father, wended to the side of that lake. And he saw that expanse of clear water with birds of various kinds all around. And remembering the words of his father, that ranger of the skies possessed of great swiftness of motion seized the elephant and the tortoise, one in each claw. And that bird then soared high into the air. And he came upon a sacred place called *Alamva* and saw

many divine trees. And struck by the wind raised by his wings, those trees began to shake with fear. And those divine trees growing on golden summits feared that they would break. And the ranger of the skies seeing that those trees capable of granting every wish were quaking with fear, went to other trees of incomparable appearance. And those gigantic trees were adorned with fruits of gold and silver and branches of precious gems. And they were washed with the waters of the sea. And there was a large banian among them grown into gigantic proportions, that then spoke unto that lord of birds while coursing towards it fleet as the mind: 'Sit thou on this large branch of mine extending a hundred *yojanas* and eat thou the elephant and the tortoise.' And when that best of birds of great swiftness, and of body resembling a mountain, quickly alighted, that banian, the resort of thousands of birds, shook and that branch also full of leaves broke."

And so ends the twenty-ninth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXX.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "The moment the arm of the tree was touched by Gadura of great might with his feet, it broke. And as it broke, it was supported by Gadura. And as he cast his eyes around in wonder after having broken that gigantic branch, he saw that a tribe of Rishis called Valakhilyas were suspended therefrom with heads downwards. And having seen those Brahmarshis engaged in ascetic practices suspended therefrom, Gadura said unto himself, 'Indeed, there are Rishis suspended from it: I will not kill them.' And reflecting that if that branch fell down, the Rishis would be slain, the mighty one held by his claws the elephant and the tortoise yet more firmly. And the king of birds, from fear of slaying the Rishis and desirous of saving them, held that branch in his beaks and rose on his wings. And great Rishis seeing that act of his which was beyond even the power of the gods, their hearts moved by wonder, gave that mighty bird a name. And they said, 'As

this ranger of the skies rises on its wings bearing a heavy burden, therefore let this foremost of birds having snakes for his food be called *Gadura* (bearer of heavy weight.)'

"And shaking the mountains by his wings, Gadura leisurely coursed through the skies. And as he soared with the elephant and the tortoise (in his claws), he beheld various regions underneath. And desiring as he did to save the Valakhilyas, he saw not a spot whereon to sit. And at last he wended to the foremost of mountains called Gandhamadana. And he saw there his father Kasyapa engaged in ascetic devotions. And Kasyapa also saw his son—that ranger of the skies, of divine form, possessed of great splendour, energy, and strength, and endued with the speed of the wind or the mind, huge as a mountain peak, a ready smiter like the curse of a Brahmana, inconceivable, indescribable, frightful to all creatures, endued with great prowess, terrible, of the splendour of Agni himself, and incapable of being overcome by the deities, Danavas, and invincible Rakshasas, capable of splitting mountain summits and of sucking the ocean itself and of destroying the worlds, fierce, and looking like Yama himself. And then the illustrious Kasyapa seeing him approach and knowing also his motive, spake unto him these words.

"And Kasyapa said, 'O child, don't commit a rash act, for then thou wouldst have to suffer pain. The Valakhilyas, supporting themselves by drinking the rays of the Sun, might, if angry, consume thee.' "

Sauti continued, "And Kasyapa then propitiated, for the sake of his son, the Valakhilyas of exceeding good fortune and whose sins had been destroyed by ascetic penances. And Kasyapa said, 'Ye whose wealth is asceticism, the essay of Gadura is for the good of all creatures. The task is great that he is striving to accomplish. It behoveth ye to accord him your permission ?' "

Sauti continued, "The Munis thus addressed by the illustrious Kasyapa abandoned that branch and wended to the sacred mountain of Himavata for purposes of ascetic penances. And upon those Rishis going away, the son of Vinata, with voice obstructed by the branch in his beaks, asked his father Kasyapa,

'O thou illustrious one, where am I to throw this arm of the tree? Illustrious one, indicate to me some region that is without human beings.' And then Kasyapa spoke of a mountain without human beings, with caves and dales always covered with snow and incapable of approach by ordinary creatures even in thought. And the great bird bearing that branch, the elephant, and the tortoise, then proceeded with great speed towards that mountain of broad waist. And the great arm of the tree with which that bird of huge body flew away could not be girt round with a cord made of a hundred (cow) hides. And Gadura, the lord of birds, then flew away for hundred thousands of *yojanas* within the shortest time. And going according to the directions of his father to that mountain almost in a moment, the ranger of the skies let fall the gigantic branch. And it fell with a great noise. And that king of rocks shook, struck with the storm raised by Gadura's wings. And the trees thereon dropped showers of flowers. And the cliffs of that mountain decked with gems and gold and adorning that great mountain itself, were loosened and fell down on all sides. And the falling branch struck down numerous trees which with their golden flowers amid their dark foliage shone there like clouds charged with lightning. And those trees, bright as gold, falling down upon the ground and becoming dyed with mountain metals, shone as if they were bathed in the rays of the sun.

"And the best of birds, Gadura, perching on the summit of that mountain then ate both the elephant and the tortoise. And he the son of *Tarkhya*, endued with great speed, having eat of the tortoise and the elephant, then rose on his wings from the top of the mountain summit.

"And various omens began to appear among the gods foreboding fear. Indra's favorite thunder-bolt blazed up in a fright. And meteors with flames and smoke, loosened from the welkin, shot down during the day. And the respective weapons of the Vasus, the Rudras, the Adityas, of all of them, of the Sadhyas, the Marutas, and of all the other tribes of the gods, began to spend their force against each other. And such things had never happened even in the war of the gods and the

Asuras. And the winds blew accompanied with thunder, and meteors fell by thousands. And the sky, although it was cloudless, roared tremendously. And even he who was the god of gods, dropped showers of blood. And the lustre of the flowery garlands on the necks of the gods was dimned. And their prowess suffered a diminution. And terrible masses of clouds dropped thick showers of blood. And the dust raised by the winds darkened the splendour of the very coronets of the gods. And he of a thousand sacrifices (Indra), with the other gods, perplexed with fear at sight of these dark disasters, spake unto Vrihaspati thus : 'Why, O worshipful one, have these dark disasters suddenly arisen ? No foe do I behold who would oppress us in war.' And Vrihaspati answered, 'O thou chief of the gods, thou of a thousand sacrifices, it is from thy fault and carelessness, and owing also to the ascetic penances of of the high-souled great Rishis, the Valakhilyas, that the son of Kasyapa and Vinata, a ranger of the skies endued with great strength and possessing the capacity to assume at will any form, is approaching to take away the *Soma*. And that bird, foremost among all endued with strength, is able to rob ye of the *Soma*. Every thing is possible, I ween, in him : the un-achievable he can achieve.'"

Sauti continued, "And Indra having heard these words then spoke unto those that guarded the *amrita* : 'A bird endued with great strength and energy has set his mind on taking away the *amrita*. I warn ye beforehand so that he may not succeed in taking it away by force. Vrihaspati has told me that his strength is immeasurable.' And the gods hearing of it were amazed and took precautions. And they stood surrounding the *amrita*, and Indra also of great prowess, the wielder of the thunder, stood with them. And the gods wore curious breastplates of gold, of great value and set with gems, and bright leathern armour of great toughness. And the mighty deities wielded various sharp-edged weapons of terrible shapes, countless in number, emitting, even all of them, sparks of fire mixed with smoke. And they were also armed with many a discus and iron mace furnished with spikes, and trident, and battle-axe, various kinds of sharp-pointed short missiles

and polished swords and maces of terrible forms, all befitting their respective bodies. And decked with celestial ornaments and resplendent with those bright arms, the gods waited there, their fears allayed. And the gods, of incomparable strength, energy, and splendour, resolved to protect the *amrita*, capable of splitting the towns of the Asuras, all displayed themselves in forms resplendent as the fire. Thus the gods having stood there, that [would be] battle-field, in consequence of hundred thousands of maces furnished with iron spikes, shone like another suddenly arrived sky illumined by the rays of the sun."

And so ends the thirteeth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXXI.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Saunaka said, "O Son of Suta, what was Indra's fault, what his act of carelessness ? How was Gadura born in consequence of the ascetic penances of the Valakhilyas ? Why also had Kasyapa—a Brahmana—the king of birds for his son ? Why too was he invincible of all creatures and un-slayable of all ? Why also was that ranger of the skies capable of going into every place at will and of mustering at will any measure of energy ? If these are described in the Purana, I should like to hear them !"

Sauti said, "What thou askest me is, indeed, the subject of the Purana. O twice-born one, listen as I briefly recite it all !

"Once upon a time, when the Prajapati, Kasyapa, was engaged in a sacrifice from desire of offspring, the Rishis, the gods, and the Gandharvas, gave him help. And Indra was appointed by Kasyapa to bring the sacrificial wood; and with him those ascetics—the Valakhilyas, and all the other deities. And the lord Indra taking up according to his own strength a weight that was mountain-like, brought it without any fatigue. And he saw on the way some Rishis, of bodies of the measure of the thumb, together carrying one single stalk of the *Palasha* (Butea frondosa) leaf. And those Rishis were, from want of food,

very lean-fleshed as if merged into their own bodies. And they were so weak that they were much afflicted when sunk in the water that collected in an indentation on the road caused by the hoof of a cow. And Purandara, proud of his strength, beheld them with surprise, and laughing at them in derision soon left them behind, insulting them besides by passing over their heads. And those Rishis were at this possessed with rage and sorrow. And they made preparations for a great act at which Indra was terrified. Hear thou, O Saunaka, of the wish for the accomplishment of which those vow-observing, wise, and excellent ascetics poured clarified butter on the sacrificial fire with loudly uttered mantras! 'There shall be another *Indra* of all the gods, capable of going everywhere at will and of mustering at will any measure of energy, imparting fear unto the (present) king of the gods. By the fruit of our ascetic penances, let one arise, an hundred times greater than Indra in courage and strength, fleet as the mind, and fierce withal.' And the king of the gods, he of a hundred sacrifices, having come to know of this, became very much alarmed and sought the protection of the vow-observing Kasyapa. And the Prajapati, Kasyapa, hearing everything from Indra went to the Valakhilyas and asked them if their act had been successful. And those truth-speaking Rishis replied to him, saying, 'Let it be as thou sayest.' And the Prajapati, Kasyapa, pacifying them, spake unto them as follows:—'By the word of Brahma, this one hath been made the lord of the three worlds. Ye ascetics, ye also have been striving to create another Indra! Ye excellent ones, it behoveth ye not to falsify the word of Brahma! Let not also this purpose for (accomplishing) which ye are striving be rendered futile. Let there spring an Indra (Lord) of winged creatures, endued with excess of strength. Be gracious unto Indra who is a suppliant before ye!' And the Valakhilyas, thus addressed by Kasyapa, after reverencing that first of Munis, the Prajapati, Kasyapa, spake unto him.

"The Valakhilyas said, 'O Prajapati, this essay of us all is for an Indra. Indeed, this essay hath been also meant for a son being born unto thee. Let this successful act then be

accepted by thee! And in this matter appoint thou whatsoever thou seest is good and proper.'"

Sauti continued, "Meanwhile, moved by the desire of offspring, the good daughter of Daksha, the vow-observing, amiable, and fortunate Vinata, her ascetic penances over, having purified herself with a bath in that season when connubial intercourse might prove fruitful, approached her lord. And Kasyapa spake unto her, 'Respected one, the sacrifice commenced by me hath borne friut: what hath been desired by thee shall come to pass. Two heroic sons shall be born unto thee, the lords of the three worlds. And by the ascetic penances of the Valakhilyas and by virtue of the desire with which I had commenced my sacrifice, those sons shall be of exceeding good fortune and worshipped of the three worlds.' And the worshipful Kasyapa spake unto her again, 'Bear thou these auspicious seeds with great care. These two shall be the lords of all winged creatures. And the heroic rangers of the sky shall be respected of the worlds, and capable of assuming at will any form.'

"And the Prajapati, gratified with all that took place, then addressed him of a hundred sacrifices, saying, 'Thou shalt have two brothers of great energy and prowess, who shall be to thee even as thy help-mates. And from them no injury shall result unto thee. Let thy sorrow cease; thou shalt continue as the lord of all. By thee also let not the utterers of *Brahma* (the Veda) be ever again slighted. Nor by thee also let the very wrathful ones whose words are even as the thunderbolt be ever again insulted.' And Indra, thus addressed, went to heaven, his fears dispelled. And Vinata also, her purpose fulfilled, was exceeding glad. And she gave birth to two sons, Aruna and Gadura. And Aruna of undeveloped body became the fore-runner of the Sun. And Gadura was vested with the lordship of the birds. O thou of the race of Bhrigu, hearken now to the mighty achievement of Gadura!"

And so ends the thirty-first Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXXII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "O thou foremost of Brahmanas, upon the gods having stood prepared for war in that way, Gadura the king of birds soon came upon those wise ones. And the gods beholding him of excessive strength began to quake with fear, and strike one another with all their weapons. And amongst those that guarded the *Shoma* was *Bhaumana* (the celestial architect), of measureless might, effulgent as the electric fire, and of great energy. And after a terrific encounter of only a moment, mangled by the lord of birds with his talons, beak, and wings, he lay as dead on the field. And that ranger of the skies darkening the worlds by the dust raised by the hurricane of his wings, overwhelmed the celestials with it. And the celestials overwhelmed by that dust swooned away. And lo, the immortals who guarded the *amrita*, blinded by that dust, could not see Gadura! And Gadura thus agitated the region of the heavens. And he mangled the gods thus with the wounds inflicted by his wings and beaks.

"And then the god of thousand eyes commanded Vayu (the god of wind), saying, 'dispell thou this shower of dust soon. O Maruta, this is, indeed, thy work!' And then the mighty Vayu soon dispelled that dust. And when the darkness had disappeared, the celestials attacked Gadura. And as he of great might was attacked by the gods, he began to roar loudly, like the great cloud that appeareth in the sky at the end of the *Yuga*, frightening every creature. And that king of birds of great energy and slayer of hostile heroes, then rose on his wings. And him staying in the skies over the heads of the gods, all the wise ones (the celestials) with Indra amongst them covered with double-edged broadswords, iron-maces furnished with sharp spikes, pointed lances, maces, bright *kshurapras*, and many a discus of the form of the sun. And the king of birds, attacked on all sides with showers of various weapons, fought exceeding hard with-

out wavering for a moment. And the son of Vinata, of great prowess, blazing in the sky, attacked the gods on all sides with his wings and breast. And blood began to flow copiously from the bodies of the gods mangled by the talons and the beak of Gadura. And overcome by the lord of birds, the Sadhyas with the Gandharvas fled eastwards, the Vasus with the Rudras towards the south, the Adityas towards the west, and the twin Aswinas towards the north. And gifted with great energy, they retreated fighting, looking back every moment on their enemy.

"And Gadura had encounters with (the Yakshas) Aswakranda of great courage, with Rainuka, with the bold Krathanaka, with Tapana, with Uluka and Shasanaka, with Nimisha, with Puruja, and with Pulina. And the son of Vinata mangled them with his wings, talons, and beak, like that oppressor of enemies—the holder of the *Pinaka* himself in anger at the end of the *yuga*. And those Yakhas of great might and courage, mangled all over by that ranger of the skies, looked like masses of black clouds dropping thick showers of blood.

"And Gadura depriving them of life then went to where the *amrita* was. And he saw that it was surrounded on all sides with fire. And the terrible flames of that fire covered the entire sky. And moved by violent winds, they seemed bent on burning the Sun himself. And the illustrious Gadura then assumed ninety times ninety (eight thousand and one hundred) mouths. And soon drinking in many rivers with those mouths and returning with great speed, that oppressor of enemies, having wings for his vehicle, extinguished that fire with those rivers. And extinguishing that fire, he assumed another small form, desirous of entering into (where the *Soma* was.)

And so ends the thirty-second Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

Section XXXIII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, " And that bird, assuming a golden body bright as the rays of the sun, entered with great force (the region where the *Soma* was), like a torrent entering the ocean. And he saw in the vicinage of the *Soma* a wheel of steel, keen-edged, and sharp as the razor, revolving incessantly. And that fierce instrument, of the lustre of the blazing sun and of terrible form, was devised by the gods for cutting to pieces all robbers of the *Soma*. And Gadura seeing a passage through it stopped there for a moment. And diminishing his body, in an instant he passed through the spokes of that wheel. And within the line of the wheel, he beheld, stationed there for guarding the *Soma*, two great snakes of the lustre of blazing fire, of tongues bright as the lightning flash, of great energy, of mouth emitting fire, of blazing eyes, containing poison, very terrible, always in anger, and of great activity. And their eyes were ceaselessly inflamed with rage and were winkless. And he who is seen by even one of the two is instantly reduced to ashes. And the bird of fair feathers suddenly covered their eyes with dust. And unseen by them he attacked them from all sides. And the son of Vinata—that ranger of the skies—attacking their bodies, mangled them into pieces. And he then approached the *Soma* without loss of time. And the mighty son of Vinata, taking up the *amrita* from the place where it was, rose on his wings with great speed, breaking into pieces the instrument that had surrounded it. And the bird soon came out taking the *amrita* but without drinking it himself. And he then wended on his way without the least fatigue, darkening the splendour of the Sun.

"And the son of Vinata then met with Vishnu in his path along the sky. And Narayana was gratified with that act of self-denial on the part of Gadura. And that deity knowing no deterioration said unto the ranger of the skies, 'O I am inclined to grant thee a boon.' And the ranger of the skies thereupon said, 'I shall stay above thee.' And he again spake

unto Narayana these words :—'I shall be immortal and free from disease without (drinking) *amrita.*' And Vishnu said unto the son of Vinata, 'Be it so.' And Gadura, receiving those two boons, told Vishnu, 'I also shall grant thee a boon; therefore, let the possessor of the six attributes ask of me.' And Vishnu asked the mighty carrier of great weights to become his vehicle. And he made the bird sit on the flag staff of his car, saying, 'Even thus thou shalt stay above me.' And the ranger of the skies, of great speed, saying unto Narayana, 'Be it so,' swiftly wended on his way, mocking the wind with his fleetness.

"And while that foremost of all rangers of the skies, that first of winged creatures, Gadura, was coursing through the air after robbing the *amrita,* Indra hurled at him his thunderbolt. And Gadura, the lord of birds, struck with the thunder bolt, spake laughingly unto Indra engaged in the encounter, in sweet words, saying, 'I shall respect the Rishi (Dadhichi) of whose bone the *Vajra* hath been made. I shall also respect the *Vajra,* and thee also of a thousand sacrifices. I cast this feather of mine whose end thou shalt not attain. Struck with thy thunder I have not felt the slightest pain.' And having said this, the king of birds cast a feather of his. And all creatures became exceeding glad, beholding that excellent feather of Gadura so cast off by himself. And seeing that the feather was very beautiful, they said, 'Let this bird be called *Suparna* (having fair feathers.)' And Purandara of a thousand eyes witnessing this wonderful incident thought that bird to be some great being and addressed him thus.

"And Indra said, 'O thou best of birds, I desire to know the limit of thy great strength, and I desire also eternal friendship with thee.'"

And so ends the thirty-third Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXXIV.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti continued, " And Gadura said, 'O Purandara let there be friendship between thee and me as thou desirest. My strength, know thou, is great and hard to bear. O thou of a thousand sacrifices, the good never approve of speaking highly of their own strength, nor do they speak of their own merits. But being made a friend, asked by thee, O friend, I will answer thee, although self-praise without reason is ever improper. I can bear on a single feather of mine, O Sakra, this Earth with her mountains and forests and with the waters of the ocean, and with thee also stationed thereon. Know thou, my strength is such that I can bear without fatigue even all the worlds put together, with their animate and inanimate objects.' "

Sauti continued, " O Saunaka, after Gadura of great courage had thus spoken, the chief of the gods—the wearer of the (celestial) crown, the lord bent upon the good of the worlds, replied, saying, 'It is as thou sayest. Everything is possible in thee. Accept now my sincere and hearty friendship. And if thou hast no business with the *Soma*, return it to me. Those to whom thou wouldst give it would always oppose us.' And Gadura, answered, 'There is a certain reason for which the *Soma* is being carried by me. I shall not give the *Soma* to any one for drink. But where I myself, O thou of thousand eyes, place it down, thou lord of the heavens canst then, taking it up, instantly bring it away.' And Indra then said, 'O thou oviparous one, I am highly gratified with this speech now spoken by thee! O thou best of all rangers of the skies, accept from me any boon that thou desirest.' "

Sauti continued, " And Gadura, recollecting then the sons of Kadru and remembering also the bondage of his mother, caused by an act of deception, owing to the well-known reason (the curse of Aruna), said, 'Although I have power over all creatures, yet I shall do your bidding. Let, O Sakra, the mighty snakes become my food!' And the slayer of the Da-

navas, having said unto him 'Be it so,' then went to Hari the god of gods, of great soul, the lord of *Yogees*. And the latter sanctioned everything that had been said by Gadura. And the worshipful lord of the heavens again said unto Gadura, 'I shall bring away the *Soma* when thou placest it down." And having said so, he bade farewell to Gadura. And the bird of fair feathers then went to the vicinage of his mother with great speed.

" And Gadura in joy then spake unto all the snakes, 'Here have I brought the *amrita*. Let me place it on some *kusa* grass. O ye snakes, sitting here, drink of it after ye have performed your ablutions and religious rites. As said by ye, let this my mother become from this day a freed-woman, for by me hath been accomplished your bidding.' And the snakes having said unto Gadura 'Be it so,' then went to perform their ablutions. And Sakra in the meantime taking up the *amrita* wended back to the heavens. And the snakes, after performing their ablutions, their daily devotions, and other sacred rites, returned in joy, desirous of drinking the *amrità*. And they saw that the bed of *kusa* grass whereon the *amrita* had been placed was empty, the *amrita* itself having been taken away by a counter act of deception. And they thereupon began to lick with their tongues the *kusa* grass as the *amrita* had been placed thereon. And the tongues of the snakes by that act became divided in twain. And the *kusa* grass too from contact with *amrita* became sacred from that time. And thus by the illustrious Gadura was *amrita* brought (from the heavens) and brought for the snakes, and by him thus were the snakes made of divided tongues.

" And the bird of fair feathers very much delighted, enjoyed himself in those woods accompanied by his mother. And he of grand achievements, deeply reverenced by all rangers of the skies, gratified his mother by eating of the snakes.

" And that man who would listen to this story, or read it to an assembly of good Brahmanas, must surely go to heaven acquiring great merit from the recitation of (the deeds of) Gadura."

And so ends the thirty-fourth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXXV.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Saunaka said, "O son of Suta, thou hast unfolded the reason why the snakes were cursed by their mother, and why Vinata was also cursed by her son. Thou hast also related the bestowal of boons by their husband on Kadru and Vinata. Thou hast likewise told us the names of Vinata's sons. But thou hast not yet recited the names of the snakes. We are anxious to hear the names of the principal ones."

Sauti said, "O thou whose wealth is asceticism, from fear of being lengthy, I shall not mention the names of all the snakes. But I will recite the names of the chief ones. Listen ye to me.

Sesha was born first, and then Vasuki. (Then were born) Airavata, Takshaka, Karkotaka, Dhananjaya, Kalakeya, the serpent Mani, Purana, Pinjaraka and Elapatra, Vamana, Nila, Anila, Kalmasha, Savala, Aryaka, Ugraka, Kalasapotaka, Suramukha, Dadhimukha, Vimalapindaka, Apta, Karotaka, Sankha, Valisikha, Nisthanaka, Hemaguha, Nahusha, Pingala, Bahyakarna, Hastipada, Mudgarapindaka, Kamvala, Aswatara, Kaliyaka, Vritta, Samvartaka, Padma, Mahapadma, Sankhamukha, Kushmandaka, Kshemaka, Pindaraka, Karavira, Pushpadanstraka, Vilwaka, Vilwapandara, Mushakada, Sankhashirah, Purnabhadra, Haridraka, Aparajita, Jyotika, Srivaha, Kauravya, Dhritarastra, Sankhapinda, Virajah, Subahu, Salipinda, Hastipinda, Pitharaka, Sumukha, Kaunapashana, Kuthara, Kunjara, Prabhakara, Kumuda, Kumudakshya, Tittiri, Halika, Kardama, Vahumulaka, Karkara, Akarkara, Kundodara and Mahodara.

Thus, O best of Dwijas, have I told the names of the principal serpents. From fear of length I have not told the names of the rest. O thou whose wealth is asceticism, the sons of these snakes, with their grandsons, are innumerable. Reflecting upon this, I shall not name them to thee. O best of ascetics, in this world the number of snakes defies calculation, there being many thousands and *arbudas* of them.

And so ends the thirty-fifth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXXVI.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Saunaka said, "O child, thou hast named many of the serpents gifted with great energy and incapable of being easily overcome. What did they do after hearing of that curse?" Sauti said, "The illustrious *Shesha* amongst them, of great renown, leaving his mother, practised hard penances, living upon air and rigidly observing his vows. And he was engaged in these ascetic devotions, having arrived at Gandhamadana, Vadari, Gokarna, the woods of Pushkara, and the foot of Himavat. And he passed his days in those sacred regions, some of which were sacred for their waters and others for their soil, in the rigid observance of his vows, with a singleness of aim and his passions in complete control. And the Grand-father of all saw him—that ascetic with knotted hair and clad in rags, his flesh, skin, and sinews dried up, owing to the hard penances he was practising. And the Grand-father addressing him—that penance-practising one of firm fortitude, said, 'What is this that thou doest, O Shesha? Let the welfare of the creatures of the worlds also engage thy thoughts. O thou sinless one, thou art afflicting all creatures by thy hard penances. O Shesha, tell me the desire that is implanted in thy breast.'

"And Shesha replied, 'My uterine brothers are all of wicked hearts. I do not desire to live amongst them. Let this be sanctioned by thee. Like enemies, they are always jealous of one another. I am therefore engaged in ascetic devotions: I will not see them even. They never show any kindness for Vinata and her son. Indeed, Vinata's son, capable of ranging through the skies, is another brother of ours. They always envy him. And he too is much stronger, from the bestowal of the boon by our father—the high-souled Kasyapa. For these, I am engaged in ascetic penances, and I

will cast off this body of mine, so that companionship with them I may avoid, even in another state of life.'

"And the Grand-father spake unto Shesha who had said so, 'O Shesha, I know the behaviour of all thy brothers, and their great danger owing to their offence against their mother. But, O Snake, a remedy hath been provided by me even before-hand. It behoveth thee not to grieve for thy brothers. O Shesha, ask then of me the boon that thou desirest. I have been highly gratified with thee and I will grant thee to-day a boon. O thou best of snakes, it is fortunate that thy heart hath been set on virtue. Let thy heart be more and more firmly set on virtue.'

"And Shesha replied, 'O divine Grand-father, this is the boon that is desired by me, that my heart may always joy in virtue and in blessed ascetic penances, O Lord of all!'

"And Brahma said, 'O Shesha, I am exceedingly gratified by this thy self-denial and love of peace. But by my command, let this act be done by thee for the good of my creatures! Holding properly and well this Earth with her mountains and forests, her seas and towns and retreats for enjoyments, so unsteady, remain thou, O Shesha, so that she may be steady!'

"And Shesha said, 'O divine lord of all creatures, grantor of boons, O lord of the Earth, lord of every created thing, lord of the universe, I will, even as thou sayest, hold the Earth steady. Therefore, O lord of all creatures, place thou that on my head.'

"And Brahma said, 'O best of snakes, go thou underneath the Earth. She will herself give thee a crevice to pass through. And, O Shesha, by holding this Earth thou shalt certainly do what is prized by me very greatly.'"

Sauti continued, "And then the elder brother of the king of the snakes entering by a hole passed to the other side of the Earth, and holding her, supports with his head the goddess Earth with her belt of seas going all round.

"And Brahma said, 'O Shesha, best of snakes, thou art the god Dharma, because alone, with thy huge body, thou sup-

portest this Earth taking everything with her, even as I myself or Valavit (Indra) can'."

Sauti continued, "And the snake, the lord Ananta, of great prowess, lives underneath the Earth, alone supporting the world at the command of Brahma. And the illustrious Grand-father, the best of the immortals, then gave unto Ananta the bird of fair feathers—the son of Vinata, for Ananta's help."

And so ends the thirty-sixth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXXVII.

(Astika Parvá continued.)

Sauti said, "That best of snakes, Vasuki, on hearing the curse of his mother, reflected how to render it abortive. Then he held a consultation with all his brothers, Airavata and all others,intent upon doing what they deemed best for themselves.

And Vasuki said, 'O ye sinless ones! The object of this curse is known to ye. It behoveth us to strive to neutralise it. Remedies certainly exist for all curses, but no remedy is available to those cursed by their mother. Hearing that this curse hath been uttered in the presence of the immutable, the infinite, and the true one, my heart trembleth! Surely, this our annihilation hath come; otherwise why should not the immutable god prevent her (our mother) while uttering the curse? Therefore will we consult to-day how we may secure the safety of the snakes. Let us not waste time. All of ye are wise and discerning. We will consult together and find out the means of deliverance,—as (did) the gods of yore to regain lost Agni who had concealed himself within a cave,—so that the sacrifice of Janamejaya for the destruction of the snakes may not take place, and so that also we may not meet with discomfiture.'"

Sauti continued, "Thus addressed, all the offspring of Kadru assembled together, and wise in counsels, submitted

their opinions to one another. One party of serpents said, 'we should assume the guise of Superior Brahmanas, and beseech Janamejaya,saying,—this (intended) sacrifice of yours ought not to take place——'. Other snakes thinking themselves wise, said, 'we should all become his favorite councellors. He shall then certainly ask for our advice in all projects. And we will then give him such advice that the sacrifice may be obstructed. The king, the foremost of wise men, thinking us of sterling worth shall certainly ask us about his sacrifice. and we shall say,—It must not be--. And pointing to many and serious evils in this and the next world with reasons and causes we should take care that the sacrifice may not take place. Or let one of the snakes approaching bite the person who intending the monarch's good, and well acquainted with the rites of the snake sacrifice, may be appointed as the sacrificial priest, so that he may die. And the sacrificial priest dying, the sacrifice shall not be completed. We shall also bite all those who, acquainted with the rites of snake sacrifice, may be appointed *Ritwijas* of the sacrifice, and by that attain our object.' Other snakes, more virtuous and kind, said, 'O this counsel of yours is evil. It is not meet to kill Brahmanas. In danger, that remedy is proper which is based on the practices of the honest. Unrighteousness finally destroyeth the world.' Other serpents said, 'we shall extinguish the flaming sacrificial fire by ourselves becoming clouds luminous with lightning and pouring down showers.' Other snakes, the best of their kind proposed, 'Going by night, let us steal away the vessel of Soma juice; this will disturb the rite. Or in that sacrifice, let the snakes by hundreds and thousands bite the people, and spread terror around. Or let the serpents defile the pure food with their own food-defiling urine and dung.' Others said, 'let us become the king's *Ritwijas*, and obstruct his sacrifice by saying at the outset,—Give us the sacrificial fee— He (the king) being placed in our power, shall do whatever we like.' Others there said, 'when the king will sport in the waters, we shall carry him to our home and bind him, so that the sacrifice may not take place.' Other serpents who conceived themselves wise, said, 'approaching him (king) let us bite the monarch,

so that our object may be accomplished. By his death the root of all evil will be severed. This is the final deliberation of us all, O thou who hearest by thy eyes! Then, do that speedily which thou deemest proper.' Having said this, they looked intently at Vasuki, the best of snakes. And Vasuki also, after reflecting answered the snakes, saying. 'Ye snakes, this final determination of ye all doth not seem worthy of adoption. The advice of ye all is not to my liking. What shall I appoint which would be for your good? I think the grace of the illustrious Kasyapa (our father) can alone do us good. Ye snakes, my heart doth not know which to adopt of all your suggestions for the welfare of my race as also of mine. That must be done by me which would be to your weal. It is this that makes me so anxious, for the credit and the discredit are mine alone.

And so ends the thirty-seventh Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXXVIII.

(Astikâ Parvâ continued.)

Sauti said, "Hearing the respective speeches of all the snakes, and hearing also the words of Vasuki, Elapatra began to address them, saying, 'That sacrifice is not such that it may not take place. Nor is king Janamejaya of the Pandava race such (as can be hindered), from whom this our great fear proceedeth. The person, O king, who is afflicted by fate hath recourse to fate alone; nothing else can be his refuge. Ye best of snakes, this fear of ours hath fate for its root. Fate alone must be our refuge in this. Listen ye to what I say. When that curse was uttered, ye best of snakes, in fear I had crouched on the lap of our mother. Ye best of snakes, and O lord (Vasuki) of great splendour, from that place I heard the words the sorrowing gods spake thereupon unto the Grand-father. The gods said :—O Grand-father, thou god of gods, who else than the cruel Kadru could thus, after getting such dear children, curse them so, even in thy presence? And O Grand-father, by thee also hath

been spoken in reference to those words of hers, *Be it so.* We wish to know the reason why thou didst not prevent her.—And Brahma thereupon replied,—The snakes have been many, cruel, terrible in form, and highly poisonous. From desire of the good of my creatures, I did not prevent her then. Those poisonous serpents that are always disposed to bite, they who bite for little faults, they who are sinful, biting for no faults, shall indeed be destroyed, not they who are harmless and virtuous. And hear ye, how, when the hour comes, the snakes may escape this dreadful calamity. There shall be born in the race of the Yayavaras a great Rishi known by the name of Jaratkaru, intelligent, given up to ascetic devotions, and having his passions under complete control. That Jaratkaru shall have a son also given up to ascetic penances, of name Astika. He shall put a stop to that sacrifice. And those snakes who shall be virtuous shall escape therefrom.---And the gods replied,---O thou truth-knowing one, in whom shall Jaratkaru that first of munis, gifted with great energy and asceticism, beget his illustrious son ?—And Brahma answered,—Gifted with great energy, that best of Brahmanas shall beget a son possessed of great energy in a wife of the same name with him. Vasuki the king of the snakes hath a sister, of name Jaratkaru ; the son of whom I speak shall be born in her, and he shall liberate the snakes.—'

"Elapatra continued, 'And the gods said unto the Grand-father—*Be it so.* And the lord Brahma having said so unto the gods went to heaven. O Vasuki, I see before me that sister of thine known by the name of Jaratkaru. For relieving us from fear, give her as alms unto *him*, the Rishi Jaratkaru, of excellent vows, who shall roam abegging for a bride. This means of release hath been heard of by me."

And so ends the thirty-eighth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XXXIX.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "O best of dwijas, on hearing these words of Elapatra, all the serpents, in great delight, exclaimed, 'well said, well said!' And from that time Vasuki set about carefully bringing up that maiden, his sister, Jaratkaru. And he took great delight in rearing her.

"And a long time did not elapse from this, when the deities and the Asuras, assembling all together, churned the abode of Varuna. And Vasuki, the foremost of all gifted with strength, became the churning-cord. And directly the work was over, the king of the snakes presented himself before the Grand-father. And the gods, accompanied by Vasuki, addressed the Grand-father, saying, 'O lord, Vasuki is suffering great affliction from fear of (his mother's) curse. It behoveth thee to draw out the dart, begotten of the curse of his mother, that hath pierced the heart of Vasuki desirous of the weal of his race. The king of the snakes is ever our friend and benefactor. O thou lord of the gods, be gracious to him and allay his mind's fever.'

"And Brahma replied, 'O ye immortals, I have thought in my mind what ye have said. Let the king of the snakes himself do that which hath been communicated to him before by Elapatra. The time also hath arrived. Those only shall be destroyed that are wicked, not those that are virtuous. Jaratkaru hath been born, and that Brahmana is engaged in hard ascetic penances. Let Vasuki, at the proper time, bestow on him his sister. Ye gods, what hath been spoken by the snake Elapatra for the weal of the snakes is true and not otherwise.'

Sauti continued, "And the king of the snakes, Vasuki, afflicted with the curse of his mother, on hearing these words of the Grand-father, and intending his sister for bestowal on the Rishi Jaratkaru, commanding all the serpents, even large numbers of them that were ever attentive to their duties, set them to watch the Rishi Jaratkaru, saying, 'when the lord

Jaratkaru will ask for a wife, come immediately and inform me of it. The weal of our race depends upon it.'"

And so ends the thirty-ninth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XL.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Saunaka said, "O son of Suta, I desire to know the reason why the illustrious Rishi whom thou hast named Jaratkaru came to be so called on earth. It behoveth thee to tell us the etymology of the name *Jaratkaru.*"

Sauti said, "*Jara* is said to mean *waste,* and *Karu* implies *huge.* This Rishi's body had been huge, and he gradually reduced it by severe ascetic penances. For the same reason, O Brahmana, the sister of Vasuki was called Jaratkaru."

The virtuous Saunaka, when he heard this, smiled, and addressing Ugrasrava said, "It is even so."

Saunaka then said, "I have heard all that thou hast before recited. I desire to know how Astika was born."

And Suta, on hearing these words, began to say according to what was written in the *Shastras.*

Sauti said, "And Vasuki desirous of bestowing his sister upon the Rishi Jaratkaru gave the snakes (necessary) orders. But days went on, yet that wise Muni of rigid vows, deeply engaged in ascetic devotions, sought not for a wife. And that high-souled Rishi, engaged in study and deeply devoted to asceticism, his vital seed under full control, fearlessly wandered over the whole earth and felt not a wish even for a wife.

"Afterwards, once upon a certain time, there was a king, O Brahmana, of the name of Parikshita, born of the race of the Kauravas. And, like his great-grand-father Pandu of old, he was of mighty arm, the first of all bearers of bows in war and given up to hunting. And the monarch wandered about piercing deer, wild boars, wolves, and buffaloes, and

various other kinds of wild animals. One day having pierced a deer with a sharp arrow and slung his bow on his back, he penetrated into the deep forest, searching for the animal here and there, like the illustrious Rudra himself of old pursuing in the heavens, with bow in hand, the deer which was the celestial sacrifice itself turned into that shape, after having pierced it. No deer that was pierced by Parikshita had ever escaped in the woods with life. This deer, however, wounded as before, fled with speed, as the (proximate) cause of the king's attainment of heaven. And the deer that Parikshita—that king of men—had pierced was lost to his gaze and drew the monarch far enough into the forest. And fatigued and thirsty, he came upon a Muni, in the forest, seated in a fold of kine and drinking to his fill the froth oozing out of the mouths of calves sucking the milk of their dams. And approaching him hastily, the monarch, hungry and fatigued, and raising his bow, asked that Muni of rigid vows, saying, 'O Brahmana, I am king Parikshita, the son of Abhimanyu. A deer pierced by me hath been lost. Hast thou seen it?' But that Muni, observing then the vow of silence, spake not unto him a word. And the king in anger therenpon placed upon his shoulder a dead snake, taking it up with the end of his bow. And the Muni suffered him to do it without protest. And he spake not a word, good or bad. And the king seeing him in that state, cast off his anger and became sorry. And he returned to his capital, but the Rishi continued in the same state. And the forgiving Muni, knowing that the monarch who was a tiger amongst kings was true to the duties of his order, cursed him not though insulted. And that tiger amongst monarchs, the foremost of the Bharata race, also knew him not for a virtuous Rishi. And it was for this that he had insulted him so.

"And that Rishi had a son by name *Sringi*, of tender years, gifted with great energy, deep in ascetic penances, severe in his vows, very wrathful, and difficult to be appeased. At times, he worshipped with great attention and respect his preceptor, seated with ease on his seat and ever engaged in the good of all creatures.

"And commanded by his preceptor he was coming home when,

O best of Brahmanas, a companion of his, a Rishi's son named Krisha in a playful mood laughingly spake unto him. And Sringi, wrathful and like unto poison itself, hearing those words in reference to his father, flamed up in a rage.

"And Krisha said, 'Be not proud, O Sringi, for ascetic as thou art and possessed of energy, thy father bears on his shoulder a dead snake. Henceforth speak not a word to sons of Rishis like ourselves who have knowledge of the truth, are deep in ascetic penances, and have attained success. Where is that manliness of thine, those high words of thine begotten of pride, when thou must have to behold thy father bearing a dead snake? O thou best of all the Munis, thy father too had done nothing to deserve this treatment, and it is for this that I am particularly sorry as if the punishment were mine.'"

And so ends the fortieth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XLI.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "Thus addressed, and hearing that his sire was bearing a dead snake, the powerful Sringi burned with wrath: And looking at Krisha, and speaking softly, he asked him, 'Pray, why doth my father bear to-day a dead snake?' And Krisha replied, 'Even as the king Parikshita was roving for purposes of hunting, O dear one, *he* placed the dead snake on the shoulder of thy sire?'

"And Sringi asked, 'What wrong was done to that wicked monarch by my father? O Krisha tell me this, and witness thou the force of my asceticism.'

"And Krisha answered, 'King Parikshita, the son of Abhimanyu, while hunting, wounded a fleet stag with an arrow and chased it alone. And the king lost sight of the animal in that extensive wilderness. And on seeing thy sire, he immediately accosted him. He was then observing the vow of silence. Oppressed by hunger, thirst, and labour, the prince again and again asked thy father sitting motionless, about the

missing deer. And the sage being under the vow of silence returneth no reply. And the king thereupon placeth the snake on thy father's shoulder with the end of his bow. O Sringi, thy father engaged in devotion is in the same posture still. And the king also hath gone to his capital named after the elephant ?'"

Sauti continued, "Having heard of a dead snake being placed upon his (father's) shoulder, the son of the Rishi, his eyes reddening with anger, as it were flamed up with rage. And possessed by anger, the puissant Rishi then cursed the king, touching water and overcome with wrath.

"And Sringi said, 'That sinful wretch of a monarch who hath placed a dead snake on the shoulder of my lean and old parent, that insulter of Brahmanas and tarnisher of the fame of the Kurus, shall be taken within seven nights hence to the regions of Yama by the snake Takshaka, the powerful king of serpents, stimulated thereto by the strength of my words.'"

Sauti continued, "And having thus cursed (the king) from anger, Sringi went to his father, and saw the sage sitting in the cow-pen, bearing the dead snake. And seeing his parent in that plight, he was again inflamed with ire. And he shed tears of grief, and addressed his sire, saying, 'Father, having been informed of this thy disgrace at the hands of that wicked wretch, the king Parikshita, I have from anger even cursed him ; and that worst of Kurus hath richly deserved my potent curse. Seven days hence, Takshaka, the lord of snakes, shall take the sinful king to the horrible mansions of death.' And the father said to the enraged son, 'Child, I am not pleased with thee. Ascetics should not act thus. We live in the domains of that great king. We are protected by him righteously. In all he does, the reigning king should by the like of us be forgiven. If thou destroy Dharma, verily Dharma will destroy thee. If the king doth not properly protect us, we fare very ill; we can not perform our religious rites according to our desire. But protected by righteous sovereigns, we attain immense merit, and they are entitled to a share thereof. Therefore reigning royalty is by all means to be forgiven. And Parikshita like unto his great-grandsire protecteth us as a king should protect his subjects. That

penance-practising monarch was fatigued and oppressed with hunger. Ignorant of my vow (of silence) he did this. A kingless country always suffereth from evils. The king punisheth offenders, and fear of punishments conduceth to peace; and people do their duties and perform their rites undisturbed. The king establisheth religion (Dharma) and religion establisheth the kingdom of heaven. The king protecteth sacrifices from annoyance, and sacrifices please the gods. The gods cause rain, and rain produceth medicinal herbs, which are always useful to man. Manu sayeth, a ruler of the destinies of men is equal (in dignity) to ten veda-studying priests. Fatigued and oppressed with hunger, that penance-practicing prince hath done this through ignorance of my vow. Why then hast thou rashly done this unrighteous action, through childishness? O son, in no ways doth the king deserve a curse from us.' "

And so ends the forty-first Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

Section XLII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "And Sringi then replied to his father, saying, 'Whether this be an act of rashness, O father, or an improper act that I have done, whether thou likest it or dislikest it, the words spoken by me shall never be vain. O father, I tell thee, this (curse) can never be otherwise. I have never spoken a lie even in jest.'

"And Shamika said, 'Dear child, I know that thou art of great prowess, and truthful in speech. Thou hast never spoken a falsehood before, so that thy curse shall never be falsified. The son, even when he attaineth to age, should yet be always counselled by the father, so that crowned with good qualities he may acquire great renown. A child as thou art, how much more dost thou stand in need of counsel? Thou art ever engaged in ascetic penances. The wrath of even the illustrious ones possessing the six attributes increaseth greatly. O thou foremost of ordinance-observing persons, seeing that thou art

my son and a minor too, and beholding also thy rashness, I see that I must counsel thee. Live thou, O son, inclined to peace and—eating of the fruits and roots of the forest. Kill this thy anger and destroy not the fruit of thy ascetic acts so. Wrath surely decreaseth the virtue that ascetics acquire with great pains. And then for those deprived of virtue, the blessed state existeth not. Peacefulness ever giveth success to forgiving ascetics. This world and the next are both for the forgiving. Therefore becoming forgiving in thy temper and conquering thy passions, shouldst thou always live. By forgiveness shalt thou obtain worlds that are beyond the reach of Brahma himself. Having adopted peacefulness myself, and with a desire also of doing good as much as lies in my power, I must do something; even must I send to that king, telling him,—O monarch, thou hast been cursed by my son of tender years and undeveloped intellect, in wrath at seeing thy act of disrespect towards myself.—' "

Santi continued, "And that great ascetic, observant of vows, moved by kindness, sent with proper instructions a disciple of his to king Parikshita. And he sent his disciple Gaurmukha of good manners and engaged also in ascetic penances, instructing him to first inquire about the welfare of the king and then to communicate the real message. And that disciple soon approached that monarch—the head of the Kuru race. And he entered the king's palace having first sent notice of his arrival through the servant in attendance at the gate.

"And the twice-born Gaurmukha was worshipped by the monarch with proper forms. And after resting for a while, he detailed fully to the king in the presence of his ministers the words of Shamika, of cruel import, exactly as he had been instructed.

"And Gaurmukha said, 'O king of kings, there is a Rishi, Shamika, by name, of virtuous soul, his passions under control, peaceful and given up to hard ascetic devotions, living in thy dominions. By thee, O tiger amongst men, was placed on the shoulders of that Rishi observing at present the vow of silence, a dead snake, with the end of thy bow. He himself forgave thee that act. But his son could not. And by the latter hast thou to-day been cursed, O king of kings, without the know-

ledge of his father, to the effect that within seven nights hence shall (the snake) Takshaka be thy death. And Shamika repeatedly asked his son to save thee, but there is none to falsify his son's curse. And because he hath been unable to pacify his son possessed with anger, therefore have I been sent to thee, O king, for thy good.'

"And that king of the Kuru race, himself engaged in ascetic practices, having heard these cruel words and recollecting his own sinful act, became exceedingly sorry. And the king, learning that foremost of Rishis in the forest had been observing the vow of silence, was doubly afflicted with sorrow. And learning the kindness of the Rishi Shamika, and his own sinful act towards him, the king became very repentant. And the king looking like a very god, did not grieve so much for hearing of his death as for having done that act to the Rishi.

"And then the king sent away Gaurmukha, saying, 'Let the worshipful one (Shamika) be gracious to me.' And when Gaurmukha had gone away, the king, in great anxiety, without loss of time, consulted with his ministers. And having consulted with his ministers, the king, wise in counsels himself, caused a mansion to be erected upon one solitary column. And it was well-guarded day and night. And for its protection were placed there physicians and medicines and Brahmanas skilled in *mantras*, all around. And the monarch, protected on all sides, discharged his kingly duties from that place surrounded by his virtuous ministers. And no one could approach that best of kings there. The air even could not go there, being prevented from entering.

"And when the seventh day had arrived, that best of Brahmanas, the learned Kasyapa, was coming (towards the king's residence) desirous of treating the king (after the snake-bite.) He had heard all that had taken place, *viz.*, that Takshaka, that first of snakes, would send that best of monarchs to the vicinage of Yama. And he thought, 'I would cure the monarch after he is bit by the first of snakes. By that I may have wealth and may acquire virtue also.' But that prince of snakes, Takshaka, in the form of an old Brahmana, saw Kasyapa approaching on his way, his heart set upon curing the king. And the prince of snakes then spake unto that bull amongst

Munis, Kasyapa, saying, 'Whither dost thou go with such speed? What, besides, is the business upon which thou art intent?'

"And Kasyapa, thus addressed, replied, 'Takshaka, by his poison, will to-day burn king Parikshita of the Kuru race, that oppressor of all enemies. And I go with speed, O amiable one, to cure, without loss of time, that king of immeasurable prowess, the sole representative of the Pandava race, after he is bit by the same Takshaka like to Agni himself in energy.' And Takshaka answered, 'I am that Takshaka, O Brahmana, who shall burn that lord of the earth. Stop thou, for thou art unable to cure one bit by me.' And Kasyapa rejoined, 'I am sure that possessed of the power of learning, going thither I shall cure that monarch bit by thee.'"

And so ends the forty-second Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XLIII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "And Takshaka, after this, answered, 'If, indeed, thou art able to cure any creature bit by me, thou, O Kasyapa, revive thou this tree bit by me. O thou best of Brahmanas, I burn this banian in thy sight. Try thy best and show me that skill in *mantras* of which thou hast said.'

"And Kasyapa said, 'If thou art so minded, bite thou then, O king of snakes, this tree. O snake, I shall revive it bit by thee.'"

Sauti continued, "That king of snakes, thus addressed by the illustrious Kasyapa, bit then that banian tree. And that tree, bit by the illustrious snake, and penetrated by the poison of the serpent, blazed up all around. And having burnt the banian so, the snake then spake again unto Kasyapa, saying, 'O first of Brahmanas, try thy best and revive this lord of the forest.'"

Sauti continued, "The tree was reduced to ashes by the poison of the king of snakes. And taking up those ashes,

Kasyapa spake these words :—'O king of snakes, behold the power of my knowledge as applied to this lord of the forest! O snake, in thy very sight I shall revive it.' And then that best of Brahmanas, the illustrious and learned Kasyapa revived, by his learning, that tree which had been reduced to a heap of ashes. And first he created the sprout, then he furnished it with two leaves, and then he made the stem, and then the branches, and then the full-grown tree with leaves and all. And Takshaka seeing the tree revived by the illustrious Kasyapa said unto him, 'It is not wonderful in thee that thou wouldst destroy my poison or that of any one else like myself. O thou whose wealth is asceticism, desiring what wealth thither goest thou? The reward that thou expectest to have from that best of monarchs, even *I* will give thee, however difficult it may be to obtain it. Decked with fame as thou art, thy success may be doubtful on that king affected by a Brahmana's curse and whose period itself of life hath been shortened. And in that case, this blazing fame of thine that hath overspread the three worlds will disappear like the sun when deprived of his splendour (on the occasion of eclipses.)'

"And Kasyapa said, 'I go there for wealth; give it unto me, O snake, so that taking thy gold, I may return.' And Takshaka answered, 'O best of Dwijas, even I will give thee wealth more than what thou expectest from that king. Therefore, cease to go."

Sauti continued, "And that best of Brahmanas, Kasyapa, of great prowess and intelligence, hearing those words of Takshaka sat in *yoga* meditation over the king. And the foremost of Munis, Kasyapa, of great prowess and gifted with spiritual knowledge, ascertaining that the period of life of that king of the Pandava race had really come to its end, returned, receiving from Takshaka as much wealth as he desired.

"And upon the illustrious Kasyapa retracing his steps, Takshaka at the proper time speedily entered the city of Hastinapore. And on his way he heard that the lord of the earth was living very carefully, protected by means of poison-neutralising *mantras* and medicines."

Sauti continued, "And he there-upon reflected, saying,

'The monarch must be deceived by my power of illusion. But what must be the means?' And then Takshaka sent to the king (his attendant) snakes in the guise of ascetics taking with them fruits, the *kusa* grass, and water (as presents). And Takshaka, addressing them, said, 'Go ye all to the king alleging urgent business, without sign of impatience, as if to make the monarch only accept the fruits, flowers and water (that ye shall carry as presents to him).'"

Sauti continued, "And those snakes, thus commanded by Takshaka, acted accordingly. And they took to the king *kusa* grass, water, and fruits. And the foremost of kings, of great prowess, accepted those offerings. And after thier business was finished, he said unto them, 'Retire'. And when those snakes disguised as ascetics had gone away, the king of men then addressed his ministers and friends, saying, 'Eat ye, with me, all these fruits of excellent taste brought by the ascetics.' And then moved by fate and the words of the Rishi, the king, with his ministers, entertained the desire of eating those fruits. And the particular fruit, within which Takshaka was, was eaten by the king himself. And when he was eating the fruit, there appeared, O Saunaka, in it an ugly insect, of shape scarcely discernible, of eyes black and color as copper. And the formemost of kings, taking that insect, addressed his councillors, saying, 'The sun is setting; to-day I have no more fear from poison. Therefore, let this insect becoming as Takshaka, bite me, so that my sinful act be expiated and the words of the ascetic rendered true.' And those councillors also, impelled by fate, approved of that speech. And then the monarch smiled, losing his senses, his honr having come. And he quickly placed that insect on his neck. And as the king was smiling, Takshaka, who had (in the form of that insect) come out of the fruit that had been offered to the king, coiled with his own body, round the neck of the monarch. And quickly coiling round the king's neck and uttering a tremendous roar, Takshaka, the lord of snakes, then bit the protector of the earth."

And so ends the forty-third Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

Section XLIV.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "And the councillors beholding the king in the coils of Takshaka, became pale with fear, and they all wept in exceeding grief. And hearing the roar of Takshaka, the ministers all fled. And as they were flying away in great grief they saw Takshaka, the king of snakes, that wonderful of serpents, coursing through the blue sky like a lotus-colored streak, very much looking like the vermeil-colored line on a woman's crown dividing in the middle the dark masses of her hair.

"And the mansion in which the king was, blazed up with Takshaka's poison. And the king's councillors on beholding it fled away in all directions. And the king himself fell down as if struck with lightning.

"And when the king was fairly laid low by Takshaka's poison, the councillors of the monarch, with the king's priest —a holy Brahmana, performed all his last rites. And all the citizens assembling together made the minor son of the deceased monarch their king. And the people called their new king, that slayer of all enemies, that hero of the Kuru race, by the name of Janamejaya. And that excellent of monarchs, Janamejaya, though a child, was wise in mind. And with his councillors and priest, the eldest son of that bull amongst the Kurus, ruled his kingdom like his heroic great-grand-father (Yudhish-thira.) And then the ministers of the youthful monarch beholding that he could now keep his enemies in check, went to Suvarnavarmana, the king of Kasi (Beneras) and asked him his daughter Vapushtama for a bride. And the king of Kasi, after due inquiries bestowed with ordained rites his daughter Vapushtama on the mighty hero of the Kuru race. And the latter receiving his bride became exceedingly glad. And he gave not his heart at any time to any other woman. And gifted with great energy, he wandered in pursuit of pleasure, with a cheerful heart, on expanses of water and amid woods and flowery fields. And that first of monarchs

passed his time in pleasure as Pururava of old did on receiving the celestial damsel Urvasi. And the fairest of the fair, the damsel Vapushtama too, devoted to her lord and celebrated for her beauty, having gained a desirable husband, pleased him by the excess of her affection during the period he spent in the pursuit of pleasure."

And so ends the forty-fourth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XLV.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Meanwhile, the great ascetic Jaratkaru wandered over the whole Earth making the place where evening fell his home for the night. And gifted with ascetic power, he roamed, practising various vows difficult of being practised by the immature, and bathing also in various sacred waters. And the Muni had air alone for his food, and was free from the desire of worldly enjoyment. And he became daily emaciated and grew lean-fleshed. And he saw one day the spirits of his ancestors hanging with heads downward in a hole, by a cord of *virana* roots having one only thread entire. And that single thread even was being gradually eaten away by a large rat dwelling in that hole. And the *pitris* in that hole were without food, emaciated, pitiable, and eagerly wishing for their salvation. And Jaratkaru approaching the pitiable ones, himself in humble guise, asked them, 'Who are ye hanging by this cord of *virana* roots ? The single weak root that is still left in this cord of *virana* roots already eaten away by the rat dwelling in this hole, is itself being gradually eaten away by the rat with his sharp teeth. The little that remains of that single thread will soon be cut away. It is clear ye shall then fall down into this pit with faces downwards. Seeing ye with faces downwards, and overtaken by this great calamity, my pity hath been excited. What good can I do to ye ? Tell me quickly, whether this calamity can be relieved by a fourth, a third, or even with a half of this my asceticism. O relieve your-

selves with even the whole of my asceticism. I consent to all this. Do ye as ye please !'

"And the *pitris* said, 'Venerable *Brahmacharin*, thou desirest of relieving us ! But, foremost of Brahmanas, thou canst not dispel our affliction by thy asceticism. O child, O thou first of speakers, we too have the fruits of our asceticism. But, O Brahmana, it is for the loss of children that we are falling down into the unholy hell ! The Grand-father himself hath said, that a son is a great merit. Prone as we are in this hole, our ideas are no longer clear ; therefore, O child, we know thee not, although thy manhood is well-known on earth. Venerable thou art and of good fortune, who thus from kindness grievest for us worthy of pity and greatly afflicted. O Brahmana, listen, who we are.

"'We are Rishis of the Yayavara sect, of rigid vows. And, O Muni, from loss of children, we have fallen down from a sacred region. Our severe penances have not been destroyed ; we have a thread yet. But we have one only thread now. But it matters little whether he *is* or *is* not. Unfortunate as we are, we have a thread in one known as Jaratkaru. The unfortunate one has crossed the Vedas and the Vedangas and, has adopted asceticism alone. Of soul under complete control, of desires set high, observant of vows, and deeply engaged in ascetic penances, by him, from temptation of the merits of asceticism, have we been reduced to this deplorable state. He hath no wife, no son, no relatives. Therefore do we hang in this hole, our consciousness gone, like men having none to take care of us. If thou meetest him, O tell him, from thy kindness to ourselves,—Thy *pitris*, in sorrow are hanging with faces downwards in a hole. Holy one, take to wife and beget children. O thou of ascetic wealth, thou art, amiable one, the only thread that remaineth in the line of thy ancestors.— O Brahmana, the cord of *virana* roots that thou seest we are hanging by, is the cord representing our grown up race. And, O Brahmana, those threads of the cord of Virana roots that thou seest have been eaten away, are ourselves who have been eaten up by Time. This root that thou seest hath been half-eaten and by which we are hanging in this hole, is *he* that

hath adopted asceticism alone. The rat that thou beholdest is Time of infinite strength. And he (Time) is gradually weakening the wretch Jaratkaru engaged in ascetic penances tempted by the merits thereof, but wanting in prudence and heart. O thou excellent one, his asceticism cannot save us. Behold, our roots being torn, cast down from higher regions, deprived of consciousness by Time, we are going downwards like sinful wretches! And upon our going down into this hole with all our relatives, eaten up by Time even he shall sink with us into hell. O child, whether it is asceticism, or sacrifice, or whatever else there be of very holy acts, everything is inferior. These cannot count with a son. O child, having seen all, speak unto that Jaratkaru of ascetic wealth. Thou shouldst tell him in detail everything that thou hast beheld. And, O Brahmana, from thy kindness towards ourselves, thou shouldst tell him all that would induce him to take a wife and beget children. Amongst his friends, or of our own race, who art thou, O excellent one, that thus grieveth for us all like a friend? We wish to hear who thou art that stayest here.'"

And so ends the forty-fifth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XLVI.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "Jaratkaru, hearing all this, became excessively sorry. And from sorrow he spake unto those *pitris* in words obstructed by tears. And Jaratkaru said, 'Ye are even *my* fathers and grand-fathers gone before me. Therefore tell me what must I do for your welfare. I am that sinful son of yours,—Jaratkaru! Punish me of sinful deeds and worthless as I am.'

"And the *pitris* replied, saying, 'O son, by good fortune hast thou arrived at this spot in the course of thy rambles. O Brahmana, why hast thou not taken a wife?'

"And Jaratkaru said, 'ye *pitris*, this desire hath always existed in my heart that I would, with vital seed drawn up,

carry this body to the other world. My mind hath been possessed with the idea that I would not take a wife. But ye grand-fathers, having seen ye hanging like birds, I have diverted my mind from the *Brahmacharya* mode of life. I will truly do what ye like. I will certainly marry, if ever I get a maiden of my own name. I shall accept her who shall, bestowing herself of her own accord, be as alms unto me, and whom I shall not have to maintain. I shall marry if I get such a one ; otherwise, I shall not. This is the truth, ye grand-fathers ! And the offspring that will be begot in her shall be your salvation. And, ye *pitris* of mine, ye shall live for ever in blessedness and without fear of fall.' "

Sauti continued, " And the Muni having said so unto the *Pitris*, wandered over the earth again. And, O Saunaka, old as he was, he obtained not a wife. And he grieved much that he was not successful. But directed (as before) by his ancestors, he continued the search. And going into the forest he wept loudly in great grief. And having gone into the forest, the wise one, moved by the desire of doing good to his ancestors, said, 'I will ask for a bride distinctly repeating these words thrice.' And he said, 'Whatever creatures are here, fixed and moving, or whatever that are invisible, O hear my words ! My ancestors, afflicted with grief, have directed me engaged in the most severe penances, saying,—Marry thou for the acquisition of a son.—O ye, directed by my ancestors, I am roaming, in poverty and sorrow, over the wide world for wedding a maiden I may obtain as alms. Let that creature, amongst those I have addressed, who hath a daughter, bestow her on myself roaming on all sides ! Such a bride who is of the same name with me, to be bestowed on me as alms, and whom besides I shall not maintain, O bestow on me !' Then those snakes that had been set on Jaratkaru, ascertaining this his inclination gave information to Vasuki. And the king of the snakes hearing their words, taking with him that maiden decked with ornaments, went into the forest unto that Rishi. And, O Brahmana, Vasuki the king of the snakes, having gone there, offered that maiden as alms to that high-souled Rishi. But the Rishi did not at once accept her. And the Rishi

thinking her not to be of the same name with himself, and the question of her maintenance also being unsettled, reflected for a few moments, hesitating to accept her. And then, O son of Bhrigu, he asked Vasuki the maiden's name, and also said unto him, 'I shall not maintain her.'"

And so ends the forty-sixth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XLVII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "And then Vasuki spake unto the Rishi Jaratkaru these words :—'O best of Brahmanas, this maiden is of the same name with thee. She is my sister and hath ascetic merit. I will maintain thy wife ; accept of her. O thou of ascetic wealth, I shall protect her with all my ability. And O thou foremost of great Munis, she hath been reared by me for thee !' And the Rishi replied, 'This is appointed between us that I shall not maintain her : and she shall not do aught that I do not like. And if she do, I leave her.'"

Sauti continued, "And when the snake had promised, saying, 'I shall maintain my sister,' Jaratkaru then went to the snake's home. Then that first of *mantra*-knowing Brahmanas, observant of rigid vows, the virtuous and veteran ascetic, took her hand presented to him with ordained *mantras*. And taking his bride with him, adored by the great Rishis, he then entered the delightful chamber set apart for him by the king of the snakes. And in that chamber was a bedstead covered with very valuable coverlets. And Jaratkaru lived there with his wife. And the excellent Rishi made an appointment with his wife, saying, 'Nothing must ever be done or said by thee that is against my liking. And upon thy doing any such thing I would leave thee and no longer continue in thy house. Take these words that have been spoken by me.'

"And then the sister of the king of the snakes, in great anxiety and grieving exceedingly, spake unto him, saying, 'Be it so.' And moved by the desire of doing good to her relatives, of unsullied reputation, she then began to attend upon

her lord with the wakefulness of the dog, the timidity of the deer, and knowledge of signs possessed by the crow. And the sister of Vasuki, one day, when her season arrived, approached, after bath according to the custom, her lord the great Muni. And she conceived, and the being conceived was like unto a flame, possessed of excessive energy, and resplendent as fire. And he grew like the moon in the lighted fortnight.

"And one day, within a short time, Jaratkaru of great fame, placing his head on the lap of his wife, slept, looking like one fatigued. And as he was sleeping, the sun entered his chambers in the western mountain. And, O Brahmana, as the day was fading, she, the excellent sister of Vasuki, became thoughtful, fearing the loss of her husband's virtue. And she thought, 'What is proper for me now to do? Shall I wake my husband or not? He is both exacting and punctilious in his religious duties. How can I so act as not to offend? The alternatives are his anger and the loss of virtue of a virtuous man. The loss of virtue is the greater of the two evils, I ween. Again, if I wake him, he will be angry. But if twilight passeth away, he shall certainly sustain loss of virtue.'

"And, having resolved at last, the sweet-voiced Jaratkaru, the sister of Vasuki, then spake softly unto that Rishi resplendent with his ascetic devotions, and lying prostrate like a flame of fire. 'O thou of great good fortune, awake, the sun is setting! O thou of rigid vows, thou illustrious one, adore the twilight after touching water! The time for the evening *homa* hath come. Twilight, O lord, is even now gently covering the western side!'

"And the illustrious Jaratkaru of great ascetic merit, thus addressed, spake unto his wife these words, his upper lip quivering in anger. 'Thou amiable one of the Naga race, thou hast insulted me. I shall no more abide with thee, but shall go whithersoever I came from. O thou of beautiful lower limb, I believe in my heart that the sun hath not power to set in the usual time, if I am asleep. An insulted person should never live where he hath met with the insult, far less should I—a virtuous person, or those that are like me!' And Jaratkaru, the sister of Vasuki, thus addressed by her lord, began to

quake with terror, and she spake unto him, saying, 'O Brahmana, I have not waked thee from desire of insult; but I have done it so that thy daily rites may not be passed over unperformed.'

"And the Rishi Jaratkaru, great in ascetic merit, possessed with anger and desirous of forsaking his spouse, thus addressed, spake unto his wife, saying, 'O thou fair one, never have I spoken a falsehood. Therefore, go I shall. This was also the appointment between ourselves made by me with thee. Amiable one, I have passed the time happily with thee. And, O fair one, tell thy brother when I am gone that I have left thee. And upon my going away, it behoveth thee not to grieve for me.'

"Thus addressed, Jaratkaru, the fair sister of Vasuki, of faultless features, steeped in anxiety and sorrow, having mustered sufficient caurage and patience, though her heart was quaking yet, then spake unto the Rishi Jaratkaru. And her words were obstructed with tears and her face was hueless with fear. And the palms of her hands were joined together, and her eyes were bathed in tears. And she said, 'It behoveth thee not to leave me without fault. Thou art ever in virtue's ways? I too have been in the same path, with heart fixed on the good of my relatives. And, O best of Brahmanas, the purpose for which I have been bestowed on thee hath not been accomplished yet. Unfortunate as I am, what shall Vasuki say unto me? And, O excellent one, the offspring desired of thee by my relatives afflicted by a mother's curse, doth not yet appear! The welfare of my relatives dependeth on the acquisition of an offspring from thee! And in order that my connection with thee may not be fruitless, O illustrious Brahmana, moved by the desire of doing good to my race do I entreat thee! And, O excellent one, high-souled as thou art, why shalt thou leave me who am faultless? This conception of mine is as yet indistinct.'

"Thus addressed, the Muni of ascetic merit then spake unto his wife, Jaratkaru, these words that were proper and suitable to the occasion. And he said, 'O thou fortunate one, the being thou hast conceived, even like unto Agni himself,

is a Rishi of soul highly virtuous, and a master of the Vedas and the Vedangas.'

"And having said so, the great Rishi Jaratkaru, of virtuous soul, went away, his heart firmly fixed on practising again the severest of penances."

And so ends the forty-seventh Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION XLVIII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "O thou of ascetic wealth, as soon as her lord left her, Jaratkaru went to her brother. And she told him everything as it transpired. And the first of snakes, hearing the calamitous news, spake unto his miserable sister, himself more miserable still.

"And he said, 'Thou knowest, amiable one, what the purpose of thy bestowal, what the reason thereof. If from that, for the welfare of the snakes, a son be born, he of energy shall save us all from the snake sacrifice! The Grand-father had said so of old in the midst of the gods. O thou fortunate one, hast thou conceived from thy union with that best of Rishis? My heart's desire is that my bestowal of thee on that wise one may not be fruitless. Truly, it is not proper for me to ask thee about such a business. But from the gravity of that business do I ask thee. Knowing also the obstinacy of thy lord ever engaged in severe penances, I shall not follow him, for he may curse me. Tell me in detail all that thy lord, O amiable one, hath done, and extract the terribly afflicting dart that is implanted, from a long time past, in my heart.'

"Jaratkaru, thus addressed, consoling Vasuki, the king of the snakes, atlengh replied, saying, 'Asked by me about offspring, the high-souled and mighty ascetic said—*There is*, and then he went away. I do not remember him to have ever before spoken even in jest aught that is false. Why should he, O king, speak a falsehood at such a serious occasion? He said,—Thou shouldst not grieve, O daughter of the snake-race, with

regard to the purpose of our union! A son shall be born to thee, resplendent as the blazing sun.—O brother, having said this to me, my husband of ascetic wealth hath gone away. Therefore let this great grief abiding in thy heart disappear.'"

Sauti continued, "Thus addressed, Vasuki, the king of the snakes, accepted those words of his sister, and in great joy said, 'Be it so.' And the best of snakes then adored his uterine sister with his best regards, gift of wealth, and fitting adorations. Then, O best of Brahmanas, the embryo gifted with great energy and of great splendour, began to develop, like the moon in the heavens in the lighted fortnight.

"And in due time, the sister of the snake, O Brahmana, gave birth to a son of the splendour of a celestial child, and the reliever of the fears of his paternal ancestors and maternal relatives. And the child grew up there in the house of the king of the snakes. And he studied the Vedas and the Vedangas with the Muni Chyavana the son of Bhrigu. And though but a boy, his vows were rigid. And he was gifted with great intelligence, and with the several attributes of virtue, knowledge, freedom from the world's indulgences, and saintliness. And the name by which he was known in the world was *Astika*. And he was known by the name of Astika *(whoever is)* because his father had gone to the woods, saying, *There is*, when he was within the womb. And though but a boy he had great gravity and intelligence. And he was reared with great care in the palace of the king of the snakes. And he was like the illustrious lord of the celestials, Mahadeva of the golden form, the wielder of the trident. And he grew up day by day, the delight of all the snakes."

And so ends the forty-eighth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

Section XLIX.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Saunaka said, "Tell me again in detail all that king Janamejaya had asked his ministers about his father's ascension to heaven."

Sauti said, "O Brahmana, hear all that the king asked his ministers, and all that they said about the death of Parikshita.

"Janamejaya asked, 'Know ye all that befell my father? How also the famous one, in time, meet with his death? Hearing from ye the incidents of my father's life in detail, I shall ordain something if it be for the benefit of the world: otherwise I shall do nothing.'

"And the ministers replied, 'Hear, O monarch, what thou askest,—an account of thy illustrious father's life, and how also that king of kings hath gone on his final journey. Thy father was virtuous, and high-souled, and the protector of his people. And hear how he of high soul conducted himself on earth. Like unto an impersonation of virtue and justice, the monarch, cognisant of virtue, virtuously protected the four orders, each engaged in the practice of their specified duties. Of incomparable prowess, and blessed with fortune, he protected the goddess Earth. He had none who hated him and he himself hated none. Like unto Prajapati (Brahma) he was equally disposed to all creatures. And, O monarch, Brahmanas and Kshetrias and Vaisyas and Sudras, all engaged contentedly in the practice of their respective duties, were impartially cherished by that king. Widows and orphans, the maimed and the poor, he maintained. Of handsome features, he was unto all creatures like another *Shoma* (Moon.) Cherishing his subjects and keeping them contented, blessed with good fortune, truth-telling, of severe prowess, he was the disciple, in the science of arms, of *Sharadwat* (Kripacharya.) And, O Janamejaya, thy father was dear unto Govinda! Of great fame, he was loved by all men. And he was born in the womb of Uttara when the Kuru race was almost extinct. And, therefore, the mighty son of *Saubhadra* (Abhimanyu) came to be called *Parikshita* (born in an extinct line.) Well-versed in the interpretation of treatises on the duties of kings, he was gifted with every virtue. Of passions under complete control, intelligent, possessing a retentive memory, the practiser of all virtues, the conqueror of the six passions, of powerful mind, excellent over all, and fully acquainted with the science of morality and political con-

verse, thy father ruled over these subjects for sixty years. And he then died making all his subjects deeply sorry. And, after him, O first of men, thou hast acquired this hereditary sovereignty of the Kurus, for the last thousand years. Thou hast been installed while a child and art protecting every creature.'

"And Janamejaya said, 'There hath not been born in our race a king who hath not sought the good of his subjects or been loved by them. Behold especially the conduct of my grand-fathers ever engaged in grand achievementes. How did my father, blessed with so many virtues, receive his death? Describe everything to me as it fell out. I am desirous of hearing it from ye!'"

Sauti continued, "And thus directed by the monarch, those councillors, ever solicitous of the good of the king, told him everything exactly as it fell out.

"And the councillors said, 'O king, that father of thine, the protector of the whole Earth, the foremost of all obedient to the injunctions of the *shastras*, became addicted to the sports of the field, even as Pandu of mighty arm and the first of all bearers of the bow in battle. And he made over to us all the affairs of state, from the most trivial to the most inportant. And one day, going into the forest, he pierced a deer with an arrow. And having pierced it he followed it quickly on foot into the deep woods, armed with sword and quiver. But thy father could not come upon the lost deer. Sixty years of age and decrepit, he was soon fatigued and became hungry. And he then saw in the deep woods an excellent Rishi. And the Rishi was then observing the vow of silence. And the king asked him, but though asked he made no reply. And the king, tired with exertion and hunger, suddenly became angry with that Rishi, sitting motionless like a piece of wood in observance of his vow of silence. And the king knew not that he was a Muni observing the vow of silence. And being under the control of anger thy father insulted him. And, O excellent one of the Bharata race, the king, thy father, taking up from the ground with the end of his bow a dead snake, placed it on the shoulders of that Muni of pure soul. But the

Muni spake not a word good or bad and became not angry. And he continued in the same posture, bearing the dead snake."

And so ends the forty-ninth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION L.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti continued, "And the ministers said, 'The king of kings then tired with hunger and exertion, having placed the snake upon the shoulder of that Muni, wended back to his capital. The Rishi had a son, born of a cow, of name *Sringi*. And he was widely known, of great prowess, excessive energy, and very wrathful. And going to his preceptor he was in the habit of worshiphing him. And commanded by him he was returning home, when he heard from a friend of his about the insult to his father by thy parent. And, O tiger among kings, he heard that his father, without having committed any fault, was bearing, motionless like a stake, upon his shoulder a dead snake placed thereon. And, O king, the Rishi, insulted by thy father, was severe in ascetic penances, the foremost of Munis, the controller of passions, pure, and ever engaged in wonderful acts. And his soul was enlightened with ascetic penances, and his organs and their functions were under complete control. And his practices and his speech were both handsome. And he was contented and without avarice. And he was without meanness of any kind and without envy. And he was old and in the observance of the vow of silence. And he was the refuge whom all creatures might seek in distress.

"And such was the Rishi insulted by thy father! And the son of that Rishi in wrath cursed thy father. And though young in years, the powerful one was old in ascetic splendour. And speedily touching water he spake, from anger and burning as it were with energy, these words in allusion to thy father:— 'Behold the power of my asceticism! Directed by my words, the snake Takshaka of powerful energy and virulent poison, shall, within seven nights hence, burn with his poison, the

wretch that hath placed the dead snake upon my unoffending father !' And having said this, he went to where his father was. And seeing his father he told him of his curse. And that tiger among Rishis thereupon sent to thy father a disciple of his, named Gourmukha, of amiable manners and possessed of every virtue. And having rested awhile (after arrival at court) he told the king everything, saying in the words of his master, 'Thou hast been cursed, O king, by my son. Takshaka shall burn thee with his poison : therefore, O king, be careful.' And, O Janamejaya, hearing those terrible words, thy father took every precaution against the powerful snake Takshaka.

"'And when the seventh day had arrived, the Brahmana Rishi, Kasyapa, desired to come to the vicinage of the monarch. But the snake Takshaka saw Kasyapa. And the prince of snakes spake unto Kasyapa without loss of time, saying,—Where dost thou go so quickly, and what is the business after which thou goest?—And Kasyapa replied, saying,—O Brahmana, I am going whither king Parikshita, the best of the Kurus, is. He shall to-day be burnt by the poison of the snake Takshaka. I go there quickly in order to cure him, in fact, in order that, protected by me, the snake may not bite him to death.—And Takshaka answered, saying,—Why dost thou seek to revive the king to be bitten by me? I am that Takshaka. O Brahmana, behold the wonderful power of my poison ! Thou art incapable of reviving that monarch when bit by me.—And so saying, Takshaka, then and there, bit a lord of the forest (banian tree.) And the banian, as soon as bit by the snake, was converted into ashes. But Kasyapa, O king, revived the banian. And Takshaka thereupon tempted him, saying,—Tell me thy desire. And Kasyapa too, thus addressed, spake again unto Takshaka, saying,—I go there from desire of wealth. And Takshaka, thus addressed, then spake unto the high-souled Kasyapa in these soft words :—O sinless one, receive thou from me more wealth than what thou expectest from that monarch, and go back thy way.—And Kasyapa, the foremost of bipeds, thus addressed by the snake and receiving from Takshaka as much wealth as he desired, wended back his way.

"'And on Kasyapa wending back his way, Takshaka, approaching in disguise, burnt with the fire of his poison thy virtuous father, that first of kings, then staying in his mansion with all precautions. And after that, thou hast, O tiger among men, been installed (on the throne.) And, O best of monarchs, we have thus told thee all that we have seen and heard, cruel though the account be. And hearing all about the discomfiture of the monarch thy father, and of the insult to the Rishi Utanka, appoint thou that which should follow.'"

Sauti continued, "And king Janamejaya, that punisher of enemies, then spake unto all his ministers. And he said, 'Whence have ye learned all that happened unto that banian reduced to ashes by Takshaka, wonderful as it is, which was subsequently revived by Kasyapa? Assuredly, my father could not have died, for the poison could have been neutralised by Kasyapa with his *mantras*. The worst of snakes, of sinful soul, thought within his mind that if Kasyapa would revive the king bit by him, he, Takshaka, would be an object of ridicule in the world owing to the neutralisation of his poison. Assuredly, having thought so, he pacified the Brahmana. I have devised a way, however, of inflicting punishment upon him. I like to know, however, how have ye seen or heard what happened in the deep solitude of the forest,—the words of Takshaka and the speeches of Kasyapa. Having known it, I shall devise the means of exterminating the snake race.'

"And the ministers said, 'Hear, O monarch, of him who told us before of that meeting between the foremost of Brahmanas and the prince of snakes in the woods. A certain person, O monarch, had climbed on that tree containing some dry branches with the object of breaking them for sacrificial fuel. He was not perceived by both of the snake and the Brahmana. And, O king, that man was reduced to ashes along with the tree itself. And, O king of kings, he was revived with the tree by the power of the Brahmana. That man—a Brahmana's menial—having come to us represented fully everything as it happened between Takshaka and the Brahmana. Thus have we told thee, O king, all that we have seen and heard. And

having heard it, O tiger among kings, appoint that which should follow.'"

Sauti continued, "And king Janamejaya, having listened to the words of his ministers, afflicted with grief, began to weep. And the monarch began to squeeze his hands. And the lotus-eyed king began to exhale long and hot sighs, and shed tears with his two eyes, and shrieked aloud. And possessed with grief and sorrow, and shedding copious tears, and touching water according to the form, the monarch spake. And reflecting for a moment, as if settling something in his mind, the angry monarch, addressing all his ministers, said these words:—

'I have heard your account of my father's ascension to heaven. Now know ye what my fixed resolve is. I conceive, no time must be lost in avenging this injury upon the wretch Takshaka that hath slain my father. He hath burnt my father making Sringi only a secondary cause. From malignity alone he made Kasyapa return. If that Brahmana had arrived, my father assuredly would have lived. What would he have lost if the king had revived by the grace of Kasyapa and the precautionary measures of his ministers? From ignorance of the effects of my wrath, he prevented Kasyapa—that excellent of Brahmanas and whom he could not defeat, from coming to my father with the desire of reviving him. The act of aggression is great of the wretch Takshaka who gave wealth unto that Brahmana in order that he might not revive the king. I must now avenge on my father's enemy to please myself, the Rishi Utanka, and ye all.'"

And so ends the fiftieth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LI.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "King Janamejaya having said so, his ministers expressed their approbation. And the monarch then expressed his determination of performing a Snake-sacrifice. And the lord of the Earth—that tiger of the Bharata race—

the son of Parikshita, then called his priest and Ritwijas; and accomplished in speech, he spake unto them these words relative to the accomplishment of his great task:—'I must avenge on the wretch Takshaka who hath slain my father. Tell me what must I do. Do ye know any act by which I may cast into the blazing fire the snake Takshaka with his relatives? I desire to burn that wretch even as he of yore had burnt by the fire of his poison my father.'

"And the chief priests answered, 'There is, O king, a great sacrifice for thee devised by the gods themselves. It is known as the snake-sacrifice, and is read of in the Purana. O king, thou art alone the accomplisher of it, and no one else. Men versed in the Puranas have told us, there *is* such a sacrifice.'"

Sauti continued, "Thus addressed, the king, O excellent one, thought Takshaka to be already burnt and thrown into the blazing mouth of the eater of the sacrificial butter. The king then spake unto those Brahmanas versed in *mantras*, 'I shall make preparations for that sacrifice. Tell me the things that are necessary.' And the king's Ritwijas then, O excellent Brahmana, versed in the Vedas and wise in knowledge, measured, according to the *shastras*, the land for the sacrificial platform. And the platform was decked with much valuable wealth and with Brahmanas. And it was full of wealth and paddy. And the Ritwijas sat upon it at their ease. And after the sacrificial platform had been thus constructed according to the rule and as desired, they then installed the king in the snake-sacrifice for the attainment of its object. And before the commencement of the snake-sacrifice that was to come, there occurred this very important incident foreboding obstruction to the sacrifice. For when the sacrificial platform was being constructed, a professional builder of great intelligence and well-versed in the knowledge of laying foundations, a Suta by caste and acquainted with the Puranas, said, 'The soil upon which and the time at which the measurement for the sacrificial platform hath been made, indicate that this sacrifice will not be completed, a Brahmana becoming the reason thereof.' Hearing this, the king, before his installation, gave

orders to his gate-keepers not to admit anybody without his knowledge."

And so ends the fifty-first Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "The Snake-sacrifice then commenced according to due form. And the sacrificial priests, competent in their respective duties according to the ordinance, clad in black garments and their eyes red from contact with smoke, poured clarified butter into the blazing fire, uttering proper *mantras*. And causing the hearts of all the snakes to tremble with fear, they poured clarified butter into the mouth of Agni uttering the names of the snakes. And the snakes thereupon began to fall into the blazing fire, benumbed and piteously calling upon each other. And swollen and breathing hard, and twining each other with their heads and tails, they came in large numbers and fell into the fire. The white, the black, the blue, the old, and the young, all fell alike into the fire, uttering various cries. Those measuring a *cross*, and those measuring a *yojana*, and those of the measure of a *gokarna*, fell continuously with great violence into that first of all fires. And thus hundreds and thousands, and ten thousands and hundred thousands of snakes, deprived of all control over their limbs, perished on that occasion. And amongst those that perished, there were some that were like horses, others like the trunks of elephants, and others of huge bodies and strength like maddened elephants. Of various colors and of virulent poison, terrible and looking like maces furnished with iron spikes, of great strength, ever inclined to bite, the snakes afflicted with their mother's curse, fell into the fire.

And so ends the fifty-second Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LIII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Saunaka asked, "What great Rishis became the Ritwijas in the snake-sacrifice of the wise king Janamejaya of the Pandava line ? Who also became the Sadasyas in that terrible snake-sacrifice, so frightful to the snakes, and begetting such sorrow in them ? It behoveth thee, O child, to describe all these in detail, so that, O son of Suta, we may know who were acquainted with the ritual of the snake-sacrifice !"

Sauti answered, "I shall recite the names of those wise ones who became that monarch's Ritwijas and Sadasyas. The Brahmana, Chanda-vargava, became the *Hota* in that sacrifice. He was of great reputation, and was born in the race of Chyavana and was a Brahmana, foremost of those acquainted with the Vedas. The learned old Brahmana, Kautsa, became the *Udgata* (the chaunter of the Vedic hymns.) Jaimini became the *Brahma*, and Saranga-rava and Pingala became the *Adhwaryus*. Vyasa with his son and disciples, Uddalaka, Pramataka. Shetaketu, Pingala, Asita, Devala, Narada, Parvata, Atreya, Kundo-jathara, the Brahmana Kalghata, Vatsya, old Srutasrava ever engaged in *japa* and the study of the Vedas, Kohala, Deva-sarma, Maud-galya, Sama-saurava, these, and many other Brahmanas who had crossed the Vedas, became the Sadasyas in that sacrifice of the son of Parikshita.

"When the Ritwijas in that Snake-sacrifice began to pour clarified butter into the fire, terrible snakes, striking fear unto every creature, began to fall into it. And the fat and the marrow of the snakes thus falling into the fire began to flow in rivers. And the atmosphere was filled with an insufferable stench owing to the incessant burning of the snakes. And cries also were incessant of the snakes fallen into the fire and of those in the air about to fall into it.

"Meanwhile, Takshaka, the prince of snakes, as soon as he heard that king Janamejaya was installed in the sacrifice, went to the palace of Purandara. And that best of snakes having represented all that had taken place, sought in terror

the protection of Indra after having acknowledged his fault. And Indra, gratified, then told him, 'Thou prince of snakes, Takshaka, here thou hast no fear from that Snake-sacrifice. The Grand-father was pacified by me for thy sake. Therefore, thou hast no fear. Let this fever of thy heart be dispelled.'"

Sauti continued, "Thus encouraged by him, that best of snakes began to dwell in Sakra's abode in joy and happiness. But Vasuki seeing that the snakes were incessantly falling into the fire, and that his family was reduced to only a few, became exceedingly sorry. And the king of the snakes was pierced with great grief, and his heart began to swim. And summoning his sister he spake unto her, saying, 'O amiable one, my limbs are burning and I no longer see the points of the heavens. I am about to fall down from loss of consciousness. My mind is turning, my sight is failing, and my heart is breaking. Benumbed, I may fall to-day into that blazing fire. This sacrifice of the son of Parikshita is for the extermination of our race. It is evident I also shall have to go to the abode of the king of the dead. That time is arrived, O my sister, on account of which thou wert bestowed by me on Jaratkaru. O protect us with our relatives! Thou best of the women of the snake race, Astika shall put an end to the sacrifice that is going on. The Grand-father himself told me this of old. Therefore, O child, solicit thy dear son who is fully conversant with the Vedas and regarded even by the old, for the protection of myself with those dependent on me!'"

And so ends the fifty-third Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LIV.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "Then the snake-dame Jaratkaru, calling her own son, told him these words according to the directions of Vasuki the king of the snakes. 'O son, the time is come for the accomplishment of that object for which I was bestowed on thy father by my brother. Therefore do thou what should be done.'

"And Astika asked, 'For what wert thou, O mother, bestowed on my father by my uncle? Tell me all truly so that hearing I may do what is proper.'

"Then Jaratkaru, the sister of the king of the snakes, herself unmoved by the general distress, and ever desirous of the welfare of her relatives, said unto him. 'O son, it is said that the mother of all the snakes is Kadru. Know thou for what she cursed in anger her sons! Addressing the snakes she said,—As ye have refused to falsify (the color of) Uchchaisrava, the prince of horses, for bringing about Vinata's bondage according to the wager, therefore, shall he whose charioteer is Vayu burn ye all in Janamejaya's sacrifice. And perishing in that sacrifice, ye shall go to the region of unredeemed spirits.—The Grand-father himself of all the worlds spake unto her while uttering this curse—*Be it so*, and thus approved her speech. And Vasuki having heard that curse and then the words of the Grand-father, sought the protection of the gods, O child, on the occasion when the *amrita* was being churned for. And the gods, their object fulfilled, they having obtained the excellent *amrita*, with Vasuki ahead, approached the Grand-father. And all the gods with king Vasuki, sought to incline him who was born of the lotus into grace so that the curse might be made abortive.

"'And the gods said,—O Lord, Vasuki, the king of the snakes, is sorry on account of his relatives. How may his mother's curse prove abortive?

"'And Brahma thereupon replied, saying,—Jaratkaru shall take unto himself a wife of the name of Jaratkaru: the Brahmana born in her shall relieve the snakes.

"'And Vasuki, the best of snakes, hearing these words, bestowed me, O thou of god-like looks, on thy high-souled father a little before the commencement of the sacrifice. And from that marriage art thou born of me. That time hath come. It behoveth thee to protect us from this danger. It behoveth thee to protect my brother and myself from the fire, so that the object—our relief—for which I was bestowed on thy wise father may not be unfulfilled. What dost thou think, O son?'"

Sauti continued, "Thus addressed, Astika said unto his mother, 'Yea, I shall.' And he then spake unto the afflicted Vasuki, as if infusing life into him, saying, 'O Vasuki, thou best of snakes, thou great being, truly do I say, I shall relieve thee from that curse. Be easy, O snake! There is no fear any longer. I shall strive earnestly so that good may come. Nobody hath ever said that my speech even in jest hath been false. As to serious occasions I need not say anything. O uncle, going thither to-day, I shall gratify, with words mixed with blessings, the monarch Janamejaya installed in the sacrifice, so that, O excellent one, the sacrifice may stop. O thou high-minded one, thou king of the snakes, believe all that I say. Believe me, my resolve can never be unfulfilled.'

"And Vasuki then said, 'O Astika, my head swims and my heart breaks! I cannot discern the points of the Earth, afflicted as I am with a mother's curse!'

"And Astika said, 'Thou best of snakes, it behoveth thee not to grieve any longer. I shall dispell this fear of thine from the blazing fire. This terrible punishment, capable of burning like the fire at the end of the *yuga*, shall I extinguish. Nurse not thy fear any longer!'"

Sauti continued, "Then that best of Brahmanas, Astika, dispelling the terrible fever of Vasuki's heart, and taking it, as it were, on himself, wended, for the relief of the king of the snakes, with speed to Janamejaya's sacrifice blessed with every merit. And Astika having gone thither, beheld the excellent sacrificial compound covered with numerous *Sadasyas* of splendour like unto that of the Sun or of Agni. But that best of Brahmanas was denied admittance by the door-keepers. And the mighty ascetic gratified them, being desirous of entering the sacrificial compound. And the best of Brahmanas,—the foremost of all virtuous men, having entered the excellent sacrificial compound began to adore the king of infinite achievements, the *Ritwigas*, the *Sadasyas*, and also the sacred fire."

And so ends the fifty-fourth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LV.

(Astikā Parvā continued.)

Astika said, "Shoma and Varuna and Prajapati had performed sacrifices of old in Prayaga. But thy sacrifice, O thou foremost of the Bharata race, thou son of Parikshita, is not inferior to any of those. Let those dear to us be blessed! Sakra had performed an hundred sacrifices. But this sacrifice of thine, thou foremost of the Bharata race, thou son of Parikshita, is fully equal to ten thousand sacrifices of Sakra. Let those dear to us be blessed! Like the sacrifice of Yama, of Harimedha, of king Rantideva, is this sacrifice of thine, thou foremost of the Bharata race, thou son of Parikshita. Let those dear to us be blessed! Like the sacrifice of Maya, of King Shashavindu, of king Vaisravana, is this sacrifice of thine, thou foremost of the Bharata race, thou son of Parikshita. Let those dear to us be blessed! Like the sacrifice of Nriga, of Ajamida, of the son of Dasaratha, is this sacrifice of thine, thou foremost of the Bharata race, thou son of Parikshita. Let those dear to us be blessed! Like the sacrifice of Yudhish-thira the son of a god, and of king Ajamida, both heard even in the heavens, is this sacrifice of thine, thou foremost of the Bharata race, thou son of Parikshita. Let those dear unto us be blessed! Like the sacrifice of Krishna (Dwaipayana) the son of Satyavati, in which, besides, he himself was the chief-priest, is this sacrifice of thine, thou foremost of the Bharata race, thou son of Parikshita. Let those dear unto us be blessed! These (Ritwijas and Sadasyas) that sitting here make thy sacrifice like unto the sacrifice of the slayer of Vritra, are of splendour equal to that of the sun. There now remains nothing for them to know, and gifts made to them become inexhaustible (in merit.) There is none in the world equal to thy Ritwija. This has been settled by Dwaipayana himself. *His* disciples, becoming Ritwijas competent in their duties, travel over the earth.

In this world of men there is no other monarch equal to thee in the protection of subjects. I am ever well pleased with

thy abstinence. Indeed, thou art either Varuna, or Yama the god of justice! Like Sakra himself with thunderbolt in hand, thou art, in this world, the protector of all creatures. In this earth there is no man so great as thou, and no monarch who is thy equal in sacrifice. Thou art like Khatwanga, Nabhaga, and Dilipa, in prowess like Yayati and Mandhta, in splendour equal to the measure of the sun's, a monarch like Subrata Vishma! Like Valmiki thou art of energy concealed! Like Vashishta hast thou controlled thy wrath! Like Indra is thy lordship! Thy splendour also shines like that of Narayana! Like Yama art thou conversant with the judgments of justice! Thou art like Krishna decked with every virtue! Thou art the home of the good fortune that belongeth to the Vasus! Thou art also the refuge of the sacrifices! In strength art thou equal to Damvodvava (Indra)! Like Rama (the son of Jamadagni) art thou conversant with the *Shastras* and arms! In energy art thou equal to Aurva and Trita. Thou inspirest terror by thy looks like Bhagiratha!"

Sauti said, "Astika, having thus adored them, gratified them all,—the king, the Sadasyas, the Ritwijas, and the sacrificial fire. And king Janamejaya, beholding the signs and indications manifested all round, addressed them as follows."

And thus ends the fifty-fifth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

Section LVI.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti continued, "Janmejaya said, 'Though this one is but a boy he speaks yet like a wise old man. He is not a boy but wise and old do I think. I desire to confer on him a boon. Therefore, ye Brahmanas, give me the necessary permission.'

"The Sadasyas said, 'A Brahmana, though a boy, deserves the respect of kings. He again who is learned does more so. This boy deserves the fulfilment of every desire from thee, but not before Takshaka comes with speed.'"

Sauti continued, "The king, being inclined to grant the Brahmana a boon, said, 'Ask thou the boon.' The Hota, how-

ever, being rather displeased, said, 'Takshaka hath not come as yet into this sacrifice.'

"And Janamejaya replied, 'Exert ye to the height of your power so that this sacrifice of mine may attain to completion, and so that Takshaka also may soon come here. He is my enemy.'

"And the Ritwijas replied, 'As the Shastras declare unto us, and as the fire also saith, O monarch, Takshaka is now staying in the abode of Indra, afflicted with fear.'"

Sauti continued, "The illustrious Suta Lohitaksha also, conversant with the Puranas, had said so before. Asked by the king on the present occasion, he again told the monarch, 'Sir, it is even so as the Brahmanas have said. Knowing the Puranas, I say, O monarch, that Indra hath granted him this boon, saying,—Dwell thou with me in concealment, and Agni shall not burn thee.—'"

Sauti continued, "Hearing this, the king installed in the sacrifice became very sorry and urged the Hota to do his duty. And as the Hota, with *mantras*, began to pour clarified butter into the fire, Indra himself appeared on the scene. And the illustrious one came on his car (in the sky) adored by all the gods standing around, followed by masses of clouds, celestial singers, and the several tribes of celestial dancing girls. And Takshaka, anxious with fear, hid himself in the upper garment of Indra and came not. And the king in anger again told his *mantra*-knowing Brahmanas these words, desirous of the destruction of Takshaka :—'If that snake Takshaka be in the abode of Indra, cast him into the fire with Indra himself.'"

Sauti continued, "Urged by king Janamejaya in reference to Takshaka, the Hota poured libations in the name of Takshaka then staying there. And as the libations were poured, Takshaka, with Purandara himself, anxious and afflicted, became visible in a moment in the skies. And Purandara seeing that sacrifice became much alarmed. And quickly casting Takshaka off, he wended back to his own abode. And when Indra had gone away, Takshaka the prince of snakes, insensible with fear, was, by virtue of the *mantras*, brought to the vicinage of the flames of the sacrificial fire.

"And the Ritwijas then said, 'O king of kings, this sacrifice of thine is being performed duly. It behoveth thee, O Lord, to grant a boon now to this first of Brahmanas.'

"And Janamejaya then said, 'Thou immeasurable one, I desire to grant thee that art of such handsome child-like features a worthy boon. Therefore, ask thou that which thou desirest in thy heart. I promise thee, that I will grant it even if it be ungrantable!'

"And the Ritwijas said, 'O monarch, this Takshaka is soon coming under thy control! Uttering terrible cries, his loud roar is being heard! Assuredly, the snake hath been forsaken by the wielder of the thunder. And his body disabled by our *mantras*, he is falling from the heaven. Even now, rolling in the skies, and deprived of consciousness, the prince of snakes cometh, breathing loudly.'"

Sauti continued, "While Takshaka the prince of snakes was about to fall into the sacrificial fire, during those few moments Astika spake as follows:—'O Janamejaya, if thou wouldst grant me a boon, let this sacrifice of thine come to an end and let no more snakes fall into the fire."

"O Brahmana, the son of Parikshita, thus addressed by him, became exceedingly sorry and spake unto Astika thus:—"Thou illustrious one, gold, silver, kine, what other boon thou desirest, shall I give unto thee! But let not my sacrifice come to an end!'

"And Astika thereupon replied, 'Gold, silver, or kine, I do not ask of thee, O monarch! But let thy sacrifice be ended so that my maternal relations be relieved.'"

Sauti continued, "The son of Parikshita, thus addressed by Astika, repeatedly said this unto him, that foremost of speakers:—'Thou best of superior Brahmanas, ask thou some other boon. O, blest be thou!' But, O thou of the Bhrigu race, he did not beg any other boon. Then all the Sadasyas conversant with the Vedas told the king with one voice, 'Let the Brahmana receive his boon.'"

And so ends the fifty-sixth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

Section LVII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Saunaka said, "O son of Suta, I desire to hear the names of all those snakes that fell into the fire of this snake-sacrifice."

Sauti replied, "Many thousands and tens of thousands and *Arbudas* (of snakes fell into the fire.) O excellent of Brahmanas, so great is the number that I am unable to count them all. As far, however, as I remember, hear thou the names I mention of the principal snakes cast into the fire. Hear first the names of the principal ones of Vasuki's race alone, of color blue, red, and white, terrible in form, and of body huge, and of dreadful poison.

"Kotisha, Manasa, Purna, Shala, Pala, Halimaka; Pitchchala, Kaunapa, Chakra, Kalavega, Prokalana; Hiranya-bahu, Sharana, Kakshaka, Kala-dantaka. These snakes, born of Vasuki, fell into the fire. And, O Brahmana, numerous other snakes born of the same race, of terrible form and great strength, were burnt in the blazing fire. I shall now mention those born in the race of Takshaka. Hear thou their names! Puchchandaka, Mandalaka, Pinda-sekta, Ravenaka; Uchchikha, Sharava, Vanga, Vilwa-teja, Virohana; Shili, Shali, Kara, Muka, Sukumara, Pravepana; Mudgara and Shishu-roma, and Suroma and Moha-hanu. These snakes born of Takshaka fell into the fire. And Paravata, Parijata, Pandara, Harina, Krisha; Vihanga, Sharava, Meda, Pramoda, Sanha-tapana. These born in the race of Airavata fell into the fire. Now hear, O best of Brahmanas, the snakes I mention born of the race of Kauravya! Eraka, Kundala Veni, Veni-skandha, Kumaraka; Vahuka, Sringa-vera, Dhurtaka, Prata and Ataka. These born in the race of Kauravya fell into the fire. Now hear the names I mention, in order, of those snakes endued with the speed of the wind and with virulent poison, born in the race of Dhritarashtra. Shanku-karna, Pitharaka, Kuthara, Sukha-shechaka; Purnangada, Purna-mukha, Prahasa, Shakuni, Dari; Ama-hatha, Kamathaka, Sushena, Manasa, Avya; Vairava, Munda-vedanga, Pishanga, Udraparaka; Rishava, the snake Begavana, Pindaraka, Maha-hanu; Raktanga, Sarva-saranga, Samridha, Pa-

tha-vasaka; Varahaka, Viranaka, Suchitra, Chitra-vegika, Parashara, Tarunaka, Mani-skandha, and Aruni.

"O Brahmana, thus I have recited the names of the principal snakes known widely for their achievements! I have not been able to name all, the number being countless. The sons of these snakes, the sons of those sons, that were all burnt, having fallen into the fire, I am unable to mention. They are so many! Some of three heads, some of seven, others of ten, of poison like unto the fire at the end of the *yuga*, and terrible in form, were burnt by thousands!

"Many others, of huge bodies, of great speed, tall as mountain summits, of the length of a *yama*, a *yojana*, and of two yojanas, capable of assuming at will any form and of mustering at will any degree of strength, of poison like unto blazing fire, afflicted by the curse of a mother, were burnt in that great sacrifice!"

And so ends the fifty-seventh Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LVIII.

(Astika Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "Listen now to another very wonderful incident in connection with Astika! When king Janamejaya was about to gratify Astika by granting the boon, the snake (Takshaka,) thrown off Indra's hands, remained in mid-air without actually falling. King Janamejaya thereupon became curious, for Takshaka afflicted with fear did not at once fall into the fire although libations were poured in proper form into the blazing sacrificial Agni in his name."

Saunaka said, "Was it, O Suta, that the *mantras* of those wise Brahmanas were not propitious, as Takshaka did not fall into the fire?"

Sauti replied, "Unto the unconscious Takshaka, that best of snakes, after he had been cast off Indra's hands, Astika had said thrice these words—'stay'—'stay.' And he succeeded in staying in the skies, with afflicted heart, like a person between the vault of the welkin and the Earth.

"The king then, repeatedly urged by his *Sadasyas*, said, 'Let it be done as Astika hath said. Let the sacrifice be ended, let the snakes be safe, let this Astika also be gratified, and let, O Suta, thy words also be true.' And when the boon was granted to Astika, plaudits rang through the air expressive of joy. And that sacrifice of the son of Parikshita—that king of the Pandava race—came to an end. And king Janamejaya of the Bharata race was pleased himself. And unto the Ritwijas with the Sadasyas, and unto all who had come there, the king, bestowed money by hundreds, and thousands. And unto the *Suta* Lohitaksha—conversant with the rules of buildings and foundations—who had at the commencement said that a Brahmana would prove the cause of the interruption of the snake-sacrifice, the king gave much wealth. And the king, of immeasurable kindness, also gave him various things, with food and wearing apparel, according to his desert, and became very much pleased. And then he concluded his sacrifice according to the rites of the ordinance. And after treating him with every respect, the king in joy sent home the wise Astika exceedingly gratified for he had attained his object. And the king said unto him, 'Thou must come again to become a Sadasya in my great horse-sacrifice? And Astika said, *yea*, and then returned home in great joy, having achieved his great end after gratifying the monarch. And returning in joy to his uncle and mother and touching their feet he recounted to them everything as it had happened."

Sauti continued, "Hearing all he said, the snakes that had come thither became very much delighted, and their fears were dispelled. And they were mightily pleased with Astika and asked him to solicit a boon. And they repeatedly asked him, 'O thou learned one, what good shall we do unto thee? We have been very much gratified, having been all saved by thee! What shall we accomplish for thee, O child!'

"And Astika said, 'Those Brhamanas, and other men, who shall, in the morning or the evening, cheerfully and with attention, read the sacred account of this my act, let them have no fear from ye!' And the snakes in joy thereupon said, 'O nephew, in the matter of thy boon, let it be exactly as thou sayest!

That which thou askest shall we all cheerfully do, O nephew! And those also that recall to their minds Asita, Artiman, and Sunitha, in the day or in the night, shall have no fear of snakes. He again shall have no fear of snakes who will say,—I recall to my mind the famous Astika born of Jaratkaru by Jaratkaru, that Astika who saved the snakes from the snake-sacrifice, therefore, ye snakes of great good fortune, it behoveth ye not to bite me, but go ye away, blessed be ye, or go away thou snake of virulent poison, and remember the words of Astika after the snake-sacrifice of Janamejay.—That snake who does not cease from biting after hearing such mention of Astika, shall have his hood divided a hundred-fold like the fruit of the *shingsha* tree.'"

Sauti continued, "That first of Brahmanas, thus addressed by the foremost of the chief snakes assembled together, was very much gratified. And the high-souled one then set his heart upon going away.

"And that best of Brahmanas, having saved the snakes from the snake-sacrifice, ascended to heaven when his time came, leaving sons and grandsons behind him.

"Thus have I recited to thee this history of Astika exactly as it happened. Indeed, the recitation of this history dispelleth all fear of snakes."

Sauti continued, "O Brahmana, thou foremost of the Bhrigu race, as thy ancestor Pramati had cheerfully narrated it to his inquiring son Ruru, and as I had heard it, thus have I recited this blessed history, from the beginning, of the learned Astika! And, O Brahmana, thou oppressor of all enemies, having heard this holy history of Astika that increaseth virtue, and which thou hadst asked me about after hearing the story of the Dundubha, let thy ardent curiosity be satisfied!"

And thus ends the fifty-eighth Section in the Astika of the Adi Parva.

Section LIX.

(*Adivansavatarana Parva.*)

Saunaka said, " O child, thou hast narrated to me this extensive and great history commencing from the progeny of Bhrigu ! O son of Suta, I have been much gratified with thee ! I ask thee again, recite to me, O son of Suta, the history composed by Vyasa ! The varied and wonderful narrations that were recited amongst those illustrious Sadasyas assembled in the sacrifice, in the intervals of their duties in that long-extending snake-sacrifice, and the objects also of those narrations, I desire to hear from thee, O son of Suta ! Recite then, therefore, all those to me fully ! "

Sauti said, "The Brahmanas, in the intervals of their duties, spake of many things founded on the Vedas. But Vyasa recited the wonderful and great history called the *Bharata.*"

Saunaka said, " That sacred history called the Mahabharata, spreading the fame of the Pandavas, which Krishna Dwaipayana, asked by Janamejaya, caused to be duly recited after the completion of the sacrifice, I desire to hear duly ! That history hath been born of the ocean-like mind of the great Rishi of soul purified by *yoga.* Thou foremost of good men, recite it unto me, for, O son of Suta, my thirst hath not been appeased by all thou hast said."

Sauti said, " I shall recite to thee from the beginning that great and excellent history called the Mahabharata composed by Vyasa. O Brahmana, listen to it in full, as I recite it ! I myself feel a great pleasure in reciting it ! "

And so ends the fifty-ninth Section in the Adivansavatarana of the Adi Parva.

Section LX.

(Adivansavatarana Parva continued.)

Sauti said, "Hearing that Janamejaya was installed in the snake-sacrifice, the learned Rishi Krishna-Dwaipayana went thither on the occasion. And he, the grand-father of the Pandavas, was born in an island of the Yamuna, of the virgin Kali by Sakti's son Parashara. And the illustrious one developed by his will alone his body as soon as he was born, and mastered the Vedas with the Angas, and the histories. And he readily obtained that which no one could obtain by asceticism, by the study of the Vedas, by vows, by fasting, by progeny, and by sacrifice. And the first of Veda-knowing ones, he divided the Veda into four parts. And the Brahamana Rishi had knowledge of the supreme Brahma, knew the past by intuition, was holy, and cherished truth. Of sacred deeds and great fame, he begat Pandu and Dhritarashtra and Vidura in order to continue the line of Shantanu.

"And the high-souled Rishi with his disciples all conversant with the Vedas and the Vedangas entered the sacrificial tent of the royal sage Janamejaya. And he saw that the king Janamejaya was seated in the sacrificial compound, like the god Indra, surrounded by numerous Sadasyas, by kings of various countries worshipping him with heads downwards, and by competent Ritwijas like unto Brahma himself. And the best of the Bharata race, the royal sage Janamejaya, beholding the Rishi come, advanced quickly with his followers and relatives in great joy. And the king with the approval of his Sadasyas gave the Rishi a golden seat like Indra to Vrihaspati (the spiritual guide of the celestials.) And when the Rishi, capable of granting boons and adored by the celestial Rishis themselves had been seated, the king of kings then worshipped him according to the rites of the *shastras*. And the king then offered him—his grand-father Krishna—who fully deserved them, *Padya, Achmanya, Arghya,* and kine. And accepting those offerings, from the Pandava Janamejay and ordering the kine also not to be slain, Vyasa became very much gratified. And

the king after these adorations then bowed down to his great-grand-father, and sitting in joy asked him about his welfare. And the illustrious Rishi also, casting his eyes upon him and asking him about his welfare, then worshipped the Sadasyas, having been before worshipped by them all. And after all this, Janamejaya with all his Sadasyas, asked that first of Brahmanas, with joined hands, the following:—

'O Brahmana, thou hast seen with thy own eyes the acts of the Kurus and the Pandavas. I am desirous of hearing thee recite their history! What was the cause of the disunion amongst them of extraordinary deeds? Why also did that great war which was the death of countless creatures occur between all my grand-fathers—their clear sense over-clouded by fate? O excellent of Brahmanas, tell me all this in full, as everything had happened!'

"And hearing those words of Janamejaya, Krishna-Dwaipayana then directed his disciple Vaisampayana seated at his side, saying, 'The disunion that happened between the Kurus and the Pandavas of old, repeat all to him about as thou hast heard from me.'

"Then that bull amongst Brahmanas, at the command of his master, recited the whole of that old history unto the king, the Sadasyas, and all the princes and chieftains there assembled. And he told them all about the hostility and the utter extinction of the Kurus and the Pandavas."

And so ends the sixtieth Section in the Adivansavatarana of the Adi Parva.

Section LXI

(Adivansavatarana Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Bowing down in the first place to my preceptor with the eight parts of the body touching the ground, with devotion and reverence, and singleness of heart, worshiping the whole assembly of Brahmanas and other learned persons, I shall recite in full the narration I have heard of this high-souled great Rishi Vyasa, the first of intelligent men in the three worlds. And having got it within thy reach,

O monarch, thou also art a fit person to hear the composition called Bharata. And encouraged by the command of my preceptor, my heart feeleth no fear.

"Hear, O monarch, why that disunion occurred between the Kurus and the Pandavas, and why also that exile into the woods immediately proceeding from the game at dice prompted by the desire (of the Kurus) for rule. I shall relate all to thee who askest it, thou best of the Bharata race.

"On the death of their father, those heroes (the Pandavas) came to their own home. And within a short time became well-versed in the science of the bow. And the Kurus beholding the Pandavas gifted with physical strength, energy and power of mind, popular also with the citizens and blessed with good fortune, became very much jealous. And then the crooked-minded Duryodhana, and Karna, with (the former's maternal uncle) the son of Suvala, began to persecute them and devise means of their exile. Then the wicked Duryodhana, guided by the counsels of that bird of ill omen, Sakuni (his maternal uncle), persecuted the Pandavas in various ways for the acquirement of undisputed sovereignty. The wicked son of Dhritarashtra gave poison to Bhima, but Bhima of the stomach of the wolfe digested the poison with his food. And then the wretch again tied the sleeping Bhima of the wolfe's stomach on the margin of the Ganges and casting him into the water went away. But when Bhima-sena of strong arms, the son of Kunti, awoke, he tore the strings with which he had been tied and came up, his pains all gone. And while asleep and in the water, black snakes of virulent poison bit him in every part of his body but the slayer of foes did not perish still. And in all those persecutions of the Pandavas by their cousins the Kurus, the high-minded Vidura became attentively engaged in neutralising the evil designs and rescuing the persecuted ones. And as Sakra from the heavens keeps in happiness the world of men, so did Vidura ever keep the Pandavas from all evils.

"And when Duryodhana, by various means, both secret and open, found himself incapable of destroying the Pandavas protected by the fates and kept alive for grave future purposes

(such as the extermination of the Kuru race), he then called together his councillors consisting of Vrisha (Karna), Dushshasana and others, and with the knowledge of Dhrita-rashtra caused a house of lac to be constructed. And king Dhrita-rashtra—the son of Amvica,—from affection for his children, and tempted by the desire of sovereignty, sent the Pandavas to exile. And the Pandavas then went away with their mother from the city called after the name of the elephant. And when they went away, Vidura (born of a Vaisya woman by a Kshetria) became the adviser of those illustrious ones. Rescued by him from the house of lac, they fled in the deep mid-night to the woods.

"The sons of Kunti having reached the town of Varanavata, lived there with their mother. And according to the command of Dhrita-rashtra, those illustrious slayers of all enemies lived in the palace of lac while in that town. And they lived in that palace for one year, protecting themselves from Purochana very wakefully. And causing a subterranean passage to be constructed, acting according to the directions of Vidura, they set fire to that house of lac and burnt Purochana (their enemy and spy of Duryodhana) to death. Those slayers of all enemies anxious with fear then fled with their mother. In the woods beside a fountain they saw a Rakshasa of the name of Hidimva. And they slew that king of Rakshasas. But alarmed at the risk they ran of exposure by such an act, the sons of Pritha (Kunti) fled in the darkness, afflicted with the fear of the sons of Dhrita-rashtra. It was here that Bhima acquired Hidimvā (the sister of the Rakshasa he slew) for a wife, and it was of her that Gatotkacha was born. Then the Pandavas, of rigid vows and conversant with the Vedas, wended to a town of name Ekachakra and dwelt there in the guise of *Brahmacharis*. And those bulls among men dwelt in that town in the house of a Brahmana for some time, in temperance and abstinence. And it was here that Bhima of the wolfe's stomach and of mighty arms came upon a hungry and mighty and man-eating Rakshasa of the name of Vaka. And Bhima the son of Pandu, that tiger among men, slew him speedily with the strength of his arms and made the citizens

safe and fearless. Then they heard of Krishnā (the princess of Panchala) having become disposed to elect a husband from among the assembled princes. And hearing they went to Panchala and going there they obtained the maiden. And having obtained Draupadi (for their common wife) they then dwelt there for a year. And after they were known, those persecutors of all enemies went back to Hastinapura. And they were then told by king Dhrita-rashtra and the son of Shantanu (Visma) as follows :—'In order that, O dear ones, dissensions may not take place between ye and your cousins, we have settled that Khandava-prastha should be your abode. Therefore, go ye, casting all jealousy away, to Khandava-prastha containing many towns and divided by many broad roads for dwelling there!' And according to these words, the Pandavas went, with all their friends and followers, to Khandavaprastha, taking with them many jewels and precious stones. And the sons of Pritha dwelt there for many years. And they brought, by force of arms, many princes under their subjection. And thus, setting their hearts on virtue and firmly adhering to truth, unexcited by affluence, calm in deportment, and putting down numerous evils, the Pandavas gradually rose in power. And Bhima of great reputation subjugated the East; the heroic Arjuna, the North; Nakula, the West; and Sahadeva—the slayer of all hostile heroes, the South. And having done this, their dominion was spread over the whole world. And owing to the five Pandavas, each like unto the Sun, with the Sun himself in his splendour, the Earth looked as if she had six Suns.

"Then for some reason, Yudhish-thira the just, gifted with great energy and prowess, sent his brother Arjuna (the right and left handed one) dearer unto him than life itself, into the woods. And Arjuna, that tiger among men, of firm soul, and gifted with all virtues, lived in the woods for eleven years and ten months. And during this period, on a certain occasion, Arjuna went to Krishna in Dwaravati. And Vivatsu (Arjuna) there obtained for wife the lotus-eyed younger sister of Vasudeva, of name Suvadra, of sweet speech. And she became united, in gladness, with Arjuna the son of Pandu,

like Shachi with the great Indra, or Sri with Krishna himself. And then, O best of monarchs, the son of Kunti, Arjuna, with Vasudeva, gratified Agni—the carrier of the sacrificial butter, in the forest of Khandava (by burning the medicinal plants in that wood to cure Agni of his indigestion.) And to Arjuna, assisted as he was by Keshava, the task did not at all appear as heavy, even as nothing is heavy to Vishnu with the help of means in the matter of destroying his enemies. And Agni gave unto the son of Pritha the excellent bow Gandiva, and a quiver inexhaustible and a war-chariot marked by the sign of the monkey. And it was on this occasion that Arjuna relieved the great Asura (Maya) from fear (of being consumed in the fire.) And Maya, in gratitude, built (for the Pandavas) a celestial court decked with every sort of jewels and precious stones. And the wicked Duryodhana, beholding that building, was tempted with the desire of possessing it; and deceiving Yudhish-thira by means of the dice played through the hands of the son of Suvala (Duryodhana's maternal uncle and chief adviser,) sent the Pandavas into the woods for twelve years and one additional year to be passed in concealment thus making the period full thirteen.

"And on the fourteenth year, O monarch, when the Pandavas returned and claimed their own property, they did not obtain it. And thereupon war was declared. And the Pandavas exterminating the whole race of Kshetrias and slaying king Duryodhana obtained back their ruined kingdom.

"This is the history of the Pandavas who never acted under the influence of evil passions; and this the account, O first of victorious monarchs, of the disunion that ended in the loss of their kingdom by the Kurus and the victory of the Pandavas."

And so ends the sixty-first Section in the Adivansavatarana of the Adi Parva.

Section LXII.

(Adivansavatarana parva continued-)

Janamejaya said, " O excellent of Brahmanas, thou hast, indeed, told me, in abstract, the history, called Mahabharata, of the great acts of the Kurus. But, O thou of ascetic wealth, recite now that wonderful narration very fully. I feel a great curiosity to hear it. It behoveth thee to recite it therefore in full. I am not satisfied with hearing in the abstract the great history. That could never have been a trifling cause for which the virtuous ones could slay those they should not have slain, and for which they are yet applauded by men. Why also those tigers among men, perfectly innocent and quite capable of avenging themselves upon their enemies, calmly suffered the persecutions of the wicked Kurus ? And why also, O best of Brahmanas, Bhima of mighty arm and having the strength of ten thousand elephants controlled his anger even though wronged ? Why also the chaste Krishnā—the daughter of Drupada, wronged by those wretches, and able to burn them, did not burn the sons of Dhrita-rashtra by her wrathful eyes ? Why also did the two other sons of Pritha (Bhima and Arjuna) and the two sons of Madri (Nakula and Sahadeva,) themselves injured by the wretched Kurus, follow Yudhishthira inveterately addicted to the evil habit of gaming ? Why also did Yudhishthira, the foremost of all virtuous men, the son of Dharma himself, and fully acquainted with all duties, suffer that excess of affliction ? Why also did the Pandava Dhananjaya having Krishna for his charioteer, who by his arrows sent to the other world that dauntless host of fighting men, (suffer such persecution ?) O thou of ascetic wealth, tell me all these as every thing happened, and every thing that those mighty charioteers achieved ! "

Vaisampayana said, " O monarch, appoint thou a time for hearing it. This history spoken by Krishna-Dwaipayana is very extensive. This is but the beginning. I will recite it. I will repeat the whole of the composition in full, of the illustrious and great Rishi Vyasa of immeasurable mental power and

worshipped in all the worlds. This Bharata consists of an hundred thousand sacred *slokas* composed by the son of Satyavati of immeasurable mental powers. He that shall read it to others, or they who shall hear it read, shall attain to the world of Brahma and be equal to the very gods. This Bharata is equal unto the Vedas, is holy and excellent ; is the worthiest of all to be listened to, and is a Purana worshipped by the Rishis. It containeth much useful instruction on *Artha* and *Kama* (profit and pleasure.) This sacred history maketh the heart desire for salvation. Learned persons by reciting this Veda of Krishna-Dwaipayana to those that are noble and liberal, truthful and believing, earn much wealth. Sins such as killing the embryo in the womb are destroyed assuredly by this. A person, however cruel and sinful, by hearing this history, escapes from all his sins like the Sun from Rahu (after the eclipse is over.) This history is called *Jaya*. It should be heard by those desirous of victory. A king by hearing it may bring the whole world under subjection and conquer all his foes. This history of itself is a mighty act of propitiousness, a mighty sacrifice, to give blessed fruit. It should ever be heard by a young monarch with his queen, for then they may have a heroic son or a daughter who shall be the heiress to a kingdom. This history is the sacred *Dharma-shastra* ; this too is the great *Artha-shastra* ; and this also is the *Moksha-shastra* : it hath been so said by Vyasa himself of mind that is immeasurable. This history is recited in the present age and will be so recited in the future. They that hear it have sons and servants always obedient to them and doing their behests. All sins that are committed either by body, word, or mind, immediately leave him who hath heard this history. They who hear, without a spirit of fault-finding, the story of the birth of the Bharata princes, have no fear of maladies, let alone the fear of the other world.

"For extending the fame of the high-souled Pandavas and of other Kshatrias versed in all branches of knowledge, high-spirited, and already known in the world for their achievements, Krishna-Dwaipayana, guided also by the desire of benefitting the world, hath composed this work that is excel-

lent, bestowing fame, granting length of life, sacred, and heavenly. He who, from desire of acquiring religious merit, causeth this history to be heard by sacred Brahmanas, doth acquire great merit and virtue that is inexhaustible. He that reciteth the famous generation of the Kurus becometh immediately purified, and acquireth a large family himself, and is respected in the world. That Brahmana who regularly studies this sacred Bharata for the four months of the rainy season, is cleared of all his sins. He that hath read the Bharata may be regarded as one acquainted with the Vedas.

"In this have been described the gods, the royal sages, the holy Brahmarshis; the sinless Keshava; the god of gods Mahadeva and the goddess Parvati; the birth of Kartikeya (the generalissimo of the celestials) sprung from and reared by many mothers; and the greatness of Brahmanas and of kine. This Bharata is a collection of all the *Srutis*, and is fit to be heard by every virtuous person. That learned man who reciteth it to Brahmanas during the sacred lunations, becometh purified of his sins, and not caring for the heavens as it were, attaineth to a union with Brahma. He that causeth even a single foot of this poem to be heard by Brahmanas during the performance of a *Shraddha*, that *Shraddha* becometh inexhaustible, the Pitris becoming ever gratified with the articles once presented to them. The sins that are committed daily by our senses or the mind, those that are committed knowingly or unknowingly by any man, are all destroyed by hearing the Mahabharata. The history of the exalted birth of the Bharata princes is called the Mahabharata. He who knoweth this etymology itself of the name is cleared of all his sins. And because this history of the Bharata race is so wonderful, therefore, when recited, it assuredly purifieth mortals from all sins. The Muni Krishna-Dwaipayana attained his object in three years. Rising daily and purifying himself and performing his ascetic devotions, he composed this Mahabharata. Therefore should this be heard by Brahmanas with the formality of a vow. He who reciteth this holy narration composed by Krishna (Vyasa) for the hearing of others, and they who hear it, in whatever state they may be, can never be

affected by the fruit of their deeds good or bad. The man desirous of acquiring virtue should hear it all. This is equivalent to all histories, and he that heareth it always attaineth to purity of heart. The gratification that one deriveth on attaining to heaven is scarcely equal to that which one deriveth on hearing this holy history. The virtuous man who with reverence heareth it or causeth it to be heard, obtaineth the fruit of the Rajasuya and the horse sacrifice. This Bharata is said to be as much a mine of gems as the illustrious Ocean or the great mountain Meru. This history is sacred and excellent, and is equivalent to the Vedas ; worthy of being heard, pleasing to the ear, purifying, and virtue-increasing. O monarch, he that giveth a copy of the Bharata to one that asketh for it, doth, indeed, make a present of the whole Earth with her belt of seas. O son of Parikshita, this pleasant narration that giveth virtue and victory, I am about to recite in its entirety. Listen to it ! The Muni Krishna-Dwaipayana regularly rising for three years composed this wonderful history called the Mahabharata. O thou bull amongst the Bharata monarchs, whatever about religion, profit, pleasure, and salvation is contained in this, may be seen elsewhere ; but whatever is not contained herein is not to be found anywhere.' "

And thus endeth the sixty-second Section in the Adivansavatarana of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXIII.

(Adivansavatarana Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "There was a king of name Uparichara. And the monarch was devoted to virtue. And he was very much addicted also to hunting. And this monarch of the Paurava race, called also Vasu, conquered the excellent and delightful kingdom of Chedi under instructions from Indra. Sometime after, the king gave up the use of arms, and dwelling in a recluse asylum practised the most severe austerities. And the gods with Indra ahead once approached the monarch during this period, believing that he sought the headship of the gods by those severe austerities of his. And the

celestials, becoming objects of his sight, by soft speeches succeeded in winning him away from his ascetic austerities.

"And the gods said, 'O lord of the Earth, thou shouldst take care so that virtue may not sustain a diminution on Earth! Protected by thee, virtue itself will in return protect the universe!' And Indra said, 'O king, protect thou virtue on Earth, attentively and rigidly! Being virtuous, thou shalt, for all time, behold (in after life) many sacred regions! And though I am of heaven, and thou art of the Earth, yet art thou my friend and dear to me. And, O king of men, dwell thou in that region of the Earth which is the most delightful, which aboundeth in animals, is sacred, full of wealth and corn, well-protected like heaven, of agreeable climate, graced with every object of enjoyment and blessed with fertility. And, O monarch of Chedi, this thy dominion is full of riches, of gems and precious stones, and containeth besides much mineral wealth. The cities and towns of this region are all devoted to virtue; the people are honest and contented; they never lie even in jest. Sons never divide their wealth with their fathers and are ever mindful of the welfare of their parents. Lean cattle are never yoked to the plough or the cart, or engaged in carrying merchandise; on the other hand, they are well-fed and fattened. In Chedi, O thou reverencer of the gods and guests, the four orders are always engaged in their respective vocations. Let nothing be unknown to thee that happens in the three worlds. I shall give thee a crystal car such as the celestials alone have, capable of carrying thee through mid-air. Thou alone, of all mortals on the Earth, riding on that best of cars, shalt range through mid-air like a celestial endued with a physical frame. I shall also give thee a triumphal garland of unfading lotuses wearing which in battle thou shalt not be wounded by weapons. And, O king, this blessed and incomparable garland, widely known on Earth as *Indra's garland*, shall be thy distinctive badge.'

"And the slayer of Vitra also gave the king, for his gratification, a bamboo pole for protecting the honest and the peaceful. And after the expiration of a year, the king planted it on the ground for the purpose of worshipping the giver

thereof, viz, *Sakrá*. From that time forth, O monarch, all kings, following Vasu's example, plant a pole for the celebration of Indra's worship. The next-day, the pole that is erected is decked with golden cloth and scents and garlands and various ornaments. And the god Vasava is worshipped in due form with such garlands and ornaments. And the god, for the gratification of the illustrious Vasu, assuming the form of a swan came himself to accept the worship thus offered. And the god, the great Indra, beholding the auspicious worship thus made by Vasu—that just of monarchs, was delighted, and said unto him, 'Those men, and kings also, who shall worship me and joyously observe this festivity of mine like the king of Chedi, shall have glory and victory for their countries and kingdoms. And their cities also shall expand and be ever in joy.'

"King Vasu was thus blessed by the gratified Maghavat—the high-souled chief of the gods. Indeed, those men who cause this festivity of Sakra to be observed with gifts of land, of gems and precious stones, do become the respected of the world. And king Vasu—the lord of Chedi—bestowing boons and performing great sacrifices and observing the festivity of Sakra, was respected by Indra. And from Chedi he ruled the whole world virtuously. And for the gratification of Indra, Vasu, the lord of Chedi, observed the festivity of Indra.

"And Vasu had five sons of great energy and immeasurable prowess. And the emperor installed his sons as governors of various provinces.

"And his son Vrihadratha was installed in Magadha and was known by the name of Maharatha. And another son of his was Pratyagra; and another, Kusamva, who was also called Mani-vahana. And the two others were Mavellya and Yadu of great prowess and invincible in war.

"These, O monarch, were the sons of that royal sage of mighty energy. And the five sons of Vasu planted kingdoms and towns in their own names and founded separate dynasties that lasted for long ages.

"And when king Vasu was seated on that crystal car, the gift of Indra, and coursed through the sky, he was approached

by Gandharvas and Apsaras (the celestial singers and dancing-maids.) And because he coursed through the upper regions, therefore was he called *Uparichara*. And by his capital flowed a river called *Shuktimati*. And that river was once attacked by a life-endued mountain called *Kolahala* maddened by lust. And Vasu, beholding the foul attempt, struck the mountain with his foot. And by the indentation caused by Vasu's stamp, the river came out (of the embraces of Kolahala.) But the mountain begat in the river two children that were twins. And the river, grateful to Vasu for his having set her free from Kolahala's embraces, gave them both to Vasu. And the child that was male was made by Vasu—that best of royal sages and giver of wealth and the punisher of his enemies—the generalissimo of his forces. But the daughter, called Girika—was by Vasu made his wife.

"And Girika the wife of Vasu, when her season came, becoming pure after a bath, represented her state unto her lord. But that very day, the *Pitris* of Vasu came unto that best of monarchs and foremost of the wise, and asked him to slay deer (for their *Shradha*.) And the king, thinking that the command of the *Pitris* should not be disobeyed, went ahunting, wishfully thinking of Girika alone who was gifted with great beauty and like unto another Sree (Laksmi) herself. And the season being spring, the woods within which the king was roaming, had become delightful like unto the garden of the king of the Gandharvas himself. There were *Ashokas* and *Champakas*, and *Chutas* and *Atimuktas* in abundance; and there were *Punnagas* and *Karnikaras* and *Vakulas* and *Divya Patalas* and *Patalas* and *Narikelas* and *Chandanas* and *Arjunas* and such other beautiful and sacred trees resplendant with fragrant flowers and tasteful fruits. And the whole forest was maddend by the sweet notes of the Kakila and echoed with the hum of the maddened bee. And the king became possessed with desire and he saw not his wife before him. Maddened by desire as he was roaming hither and thither, he saw a beautiful Ashoka decked with dense foliage and its branches covered with flowers. And the king sat at his ease in the shade of that tree. And excited by the fragrance of

the season and the charming odours of the flowers around, and maddened also by the delicious breeze, the king could not keep away from his mind the thoughts of the beautiful Girika. *Ibique in silvis semen suum continere non potuit. Rex autem, illud frustra profundi nolens, ut excidit, in folium recepit. Agnovit etiam tempestivum conjugis suæ horam adventam esse. Itaque rex rem multa cogitatione iterum atque iterum revolvens, (scivit enim semen suum frustra perdi non posse et tempus jam adesse in quo conjux illius egeret), carmina super illo recitavit.* And beholding that a swift hawk was resting very near to him, the king, acquainted with the subtle truths of *Dharma* and *Artha*, went unto him and said, 'Amiable one, carry thou this seed for my wife Girika and give it unto her. Her season hath arrived.'

"And the hawk, swift of speed, took it from the king and rapidly coursed through the air. And while thus passing, the hawk was seen by another of his species. And thinking that the first one was carrying meat, the second one flew at him. And the two fought with each other in the sky with their beaks. And while they were fighting, the seed fell into the waters of the Yamuna (Jumna.) And in those waters dwelt an Apsara of the higher ranks, known by the name of Adrika, but transformed by a Brahmana's curse into a fish. And that Adrika, transformed into a fish, as soon as the seed of Vasu fell into the water from the claws of the hawk, rapidly approaching, swallowed it at once. And that fish was, sometime after, caught by the fishermen. And it was the tenth month of the fish's having swallowed the seed. And from the stomach of that fish came out a male and a female child of human form. And the fishermen wondered much, and wending unto king Uparichara (for they were *his* subjects) told him all. And they said, 'O king, these two of human shape have been born in the body of a fish.' And the male child amongst the two was taken by Uparichara. And this child afterwards became the virtuous and truthful monarch Matsya.

"And after the birth of the twins, the Apsara herself became freed from her curse. For she had been told before by the illustrious one (who had cursed her) that she would, while

living in her piscatorial form, give birth to two children of human shape and then would be freed from the curse. And then, according to these words, having given birth to the two, and slain by the fishermen, leaving her fish form she assumed her own celestial shape. And that Apsara then went away into the regions of the Rishis crowned with success and of the Charanas.

"And the fish-smelling daughter of the Apsara in her piscatorial form was then given by the king unto the fishermen, saying, 'Let this one be *thy* daughter.' And the daughter was known by the name of Satyavati. And gifted with great beauty and possessed of every virtue, she of agreeable smiles, owing to contact with fishermen, was for some time of fishy smell. And wishing to serve her (foster) father, she plied a boat on the waters of the Yamuna.

"While engaged in this vocation, Satyavati was seen one day by the great Rishi Parashara, in course of his wanderings. Gifted with great beauty and an object of desire with even an anchoret, and of graceful smiles, the wise one, as soon as he beheld her, desired to have her. And that bull amongst Munis addressed the daughter of Vasu, of celestial beauty and tapering thighs, saying, 'Accept my embraces, O blessed one!' And Satyavati replied, 'O thou possessor of six attributes, behold the Rishis standing on both banks of the river. Seen by them, how can I grant thy wish?'

"Thus addressed by her, the illustrious lord thereupon created the fog (which existed not before) and by which the whole region was enveloped in darkness. And the maiden, beholding the fog that was created by the great Rishi wondered much. And the helpless one became suffused with the blushes of bashfulness. And she said, 'O thou possessor of the six attributes, know that I am a maiden always under the control of my father. O thou sinless one, by accepting your embraces my virginity will be sullied. O thou best of Brahmanas, my virginity being sullied, how shall I, O Rishi, be able to return home? Indeed, I shall not then be able to bear life! Reflecting upon all this, O illustrious one, do that which should be next done.' And the best of Rishis gratified with all she said, replied, 'Thou shalt remain a virgin even

if thou grantest my wish. And, O timid fair one, do thou solicit the boon that thou desirest! Thou of fair smiles, my grace hath never before proved fruitless.' And thus addressed, the maiden asked for the boon that her body might emit a sweet scent (instead of the fishy odor that it had.) And the illustrious Rishi thereupon granted the wish of her heart.

"And having obtained her boon, she became very much gratified, and her season immediately came. And she accepted the embraces of that Rishi of wonderful deeds. And she thenceforth became known among men by the name of *Gandhavati* (the sweet-scented one.) And men could perceive her scent from the distance of a *yojana*. And for this she was known by another name which was *Yojanagandha* (one who scatters her scent for a *yojana* all around.) And the illustrious Parashara, after this, went to his own asylum.

"And Satyavati gratified with having attained the excellent boon (*viz*, that she became sweet-scented and that her virginity also remained unsullied), conceived in consequence of having admitted Parashara unto herself. And she brought forth the very day, on an island in the Jumna, the child begot in her by Parashara and gifted with great energy. And the child, with the permission of his mother, set his mind on asceticism. And (he went away) saying, 'As soon as remembered by thee when occasion comes, shall I appear unto thee.'

"And it was thus that Dwaipayana was born of Satyavati by Parashara. And because he was born in an island, therefore was he called *Dwaipayana*, (*Dwipa-* or *island-born.*) And the learned Dwaipayana, beholding that virtue is destined to become lame by one *pada* each *yuga* (there being four *padas* in all) and that the period of life and strength too of men followed the yugas, and moved by the desire of doing good to Brahma and the Brahmanas, arranged the Vedas. And therefore came he to be called *Vyasa* (*the arranger or compiler* of the Vedas.) The boon-giving great one then taught Sumantu, Jaimini, Paila, his own son Suka, and Vaisampayana, the Vedas having the Mahabharata for their fifth. And the compilation of the Bharata was published by him through them separately.

"Then Bhisma of great energy and fame and of immeasurable splendour, and sprung from the component parts of the Vasus, was born in the womb of Ganga by king Shantanu. And there was a Rishi of the name of Animandavya of great fame. And he was conversant with the interpretation of the Vedas, was the possessor of the six attributes, gifted with great energy, and of great reputation. And accused of theft though innocent, the old Rishi was impaled. And he thereupon summoned *Dharma* and told him these words :—'In my childhood I had pierced a little fly in a blade of grass. O Dharma, I do recellect that one sin ; but I cannot call to mind any other. I have, however, since practiced penances a thousand-fold. Hath not that one sin been conquered by this my asceticism ? And because the killing of a Brahmana is more heinous than that of any other living thing, therefore, hast thou, O Dharma, been sinful. Thou shalt, therefore, be born on Earth in the Sudra caste !' And for that curse was Dharma born a Sudra in the form of the learned Vidura of pure body and perfectly sinless. And Suta Sanjaya, like a Muni, was born of Gavalgana. And Karna of great strength was born of Kunti in her maidenhood by Surya (the Sun). And he came out of his mother's womb with a natural armour and face brightened by ear-rings. And Vishnu himself, of world-wide fame, and worshipped of the worlds, was born of Devaki by Vasudeva, for the benefit of the three worlds. He is without birth and death, displayed in splendour, the creator of the universe and the lord of all ! Indeed, he who is called the invisible cause of all, who knoweth no deterioration, who is the all-pervading soul, the centre round which every thing moveth, the substance unto which the three attributes of *Satwa, raja,* and *tamá* co-inhere, the universal soul, the immutable, the material out of which hath been created this universe, the creator himself, the controlling lord, the invisible dweller in every object, whose work is this universe of five elements, who is united with the six high attributes, is the *Pranava* or *Om* of the Vedas, is Infinite, incapable of being moved by any force save his own will, displayed in splendour, the embodi ment of the mode of life called *Sannyasa*, who floated

en the waters before the creation, who is the source whence hath sprung this mighty frame, who is the great combiner, the increate, the invisible essence of all, the great immutable, who is THE ONE, is bereft of those attributes that are knowable by the senses, who is the universe itself, without beginning, birth, and decay,—that male being possessed of infinite wealth and the Grand-father of all creatures, took his birth in the race of the Andhaka-Vrishnis for the increase of virtue!

"And Satyaki and Kritavarma, conversant with arms, possessed of mighty energy, well-versed in all branches of knowledge, and obedient to Narayana in everything and competent in the use of weapons, took their births from Satyaka and Hridika. And the seed of the great Rishi Varadwaja of severe penances, kept in a pot, began to develop. And from that seed came *Drona* (the *pot-born.*) And from the seed of Gautama, fallen upon a clump of reeds were born two that were twins, the mother of Aswathama, (called *Kripi,*) and Kripa of great strength. Then was born the mighty Aswathama from Drona. And then was born Dhrishta-dyumna, of the splendour of Agni himself, from the sacrificial fire. And the mighty hero was born with bow in hand for the destruction of Drona. And from the sacrificial altar was born Krishnā (Draupadi) resplendent and handsome, of bright features and excellent beauty. Then were born the disciples of Pralhad—Nagnajit and Suvala. And from Suvala was born a son Sakuni who from the curse of the gods became the slayer of creatures and the foe of virtue. And unto him was also born a daughter (Gandhari) the mother of Duryodhana. And both were well-versed in acquiring worldly profits. And from Krishna-Dwaipayana were born, in the soil of Vichitravirya, Dhrita-rashtra—the lord of men, and Pandu of great strength. And from Dwaipayana was also born, in the Sudra caste, the wise and intelligent Vidura, conversant with both *Dharma* and *Artha,* and free from all sins. And unto Pandu by his two wives were born five sons like the celestials. The eldest of them was Yudhish-thira. And Yudhish-thira was born (of the seed) of Dharma (Yama—the god of justice); and Bhima of the wolfe's stomach of Maruta (Pavana or Vayu—the god

of wind); and Dhananjaya (Arjuna) blessed with good fortune and the first of all wielders of weapons, of Indra; and Nakula and Shahadeva, of handsome features and ever engaged in the service of their superiors, were born of the twin Aswinas. And unto the wise Dhrita-rashtra were born an hundred sons, *viz*, Duryodhana and others, and (in addition to the hundred) another, named Yuyutsu who was born of a Vaisya woman. And amongst those hundred and one, eleven, *viz*, Dush-shasana, Dush-saha, Durmarshana, Vikarna, Chitrasena, Vivingsati, Jaya, Satyavrata, Purumitra, and Yuyutsu by a Vaisya wife, were all *Maharathas* (first class charioteers.) And Avimanyu was born of Suvadra, the sister of Vāsudeva, by Arjuna, and was therefore the grandson of the illustrious Pandu. And unto the five Pandavas were born five sons by (their common wife) Panchali (Draupadi.) And these princes were all very handsome and conversant with all branches of knowledge. From Yudhish-thira was born Pritivindhya; from Vrikodara, Suta-soma; from Arjuna, Sruta-kirti; from Nakula, Shatanika; and from Sahadeva, Sruta-sena of great prowess. And Bhima, in the forest, begat in Hidimvā a son named Ghatotkacha. And from Drupada was born a daughter Shikhandi who was afterwards transformed into a male child. And Shikhandi was so transformed into a male by a Yaksha named Shuna for his own purposes.

"In that great battle of the Kurus came hundreds and thousands of monarchs for fighting against each other. The names of that innumerable host I am unable to recount even in ten thousand years. I have named, however, the principal ones who have been mentioned in this history (of the Bharata.)"

And so ends the sixty-third Section in the Adivansavatarana of the Adi Parva.

Section LXIV.

(Adivansavatarana Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said, " O Brahmana, those thou hast named and those thou hast not named, I wish to hear of in detail, as also of other kings by thousands. And, O thou of great good fortune, it behoveth thee to tell me in full the object for which those Maharathas, equal unto the celestials themselves, were born on earth. "

Vaisampayana said, " It hath been heard by us, O monarch, that what thou askest is a mystery to even the gods. I shall, however, speak it unto thee, after bowing down to *Swayamvu* (the self-born.) The son of Jamadagni (Parushurama) after thrice seven times making the earth bereft of Kshatrias wended to that best of mountains—Mahendra—and there began his ascetic penances. And then when the earth was made bereft of Kshatrias, the Kshatriā ladies, desirous of offspring, came, O monarch, to the Brahmanas. And Brahmanas of rigid vows had connections with them during the womanly season alone, but never, O king, lustfully and out of season. And Kshatriā ladies by thousands conceived from such connections with Brahmanas. Then, O monarch, were born many Kshatrias of greater energy—boys and girls–so that the Kshatria race might thrive. And thus sprung the Kshatria race from Kshatriā ladies by Brahmanas of ascetic penances. And the new generation, blessed with long life, began to thrive in virtue. And thus the four orders having Brahmanas at their head were re-established. And every man at that time went unto his wife during season, and never from lust and out of season. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, in the same way, other creatures also, even those born in the race of birds, went unto their wives during season alone. And, O thou protector of the earth, hundreds of thousands of creatures were born, and all were virtuous and began to multiply in virtue, all being free from sorrow and disease. And, O thou of the elephant's tread, this wide earth having the ocean for her boundaries, with her mountains and woods and towns, was once more

governed by the Kshatrias. And when the earth began to be again governed virtuously by the Kshatrias, the other orders having Brahmanas for their first were filled with great joy. And the kings, forsaking all vices born of lust and anger and justly awarding punishments on those that deserved them, protected the earth. And he of a hundred sacrifices possessed also of a thousand eyes, beholding that the Kshatria monarchs ruled so virtuously, pouring down vivifying showers at proper times and places, blessed all creatures. And, O king, then no one of immature years died, and none knew a woman before attaining to age. And thus, O bull of the Bharata race, this earth to the very shores of the ocean became filled with men that were all long-lived. The Kshatrias performed great sacrifices bestowing much wealth. And the Brahmanas also all studied the Vedas with their branches and the *Upanisadas*. And, O king, no Brahmana in those days ever sold the Vedas (*i. e.* taught for money) or ever read aloud the Vedas in the presence of the *Sudras*. And the Vaisyas with the help of bullocks caused the earth to be tilled. And they never yoked the cattle themselves. And they fed with care all cattle that were lean. And men never milched kine as long the calves drank only the milk of their dams (without having taken to grass or any other food.) And no merchant in those days ever sold his articles by false scales. And, O tiger amongst men, all persons living in the ways of virtue did everything with eyes set upon virtue. And, O monarch, all the orders were mindful of the respective duties that appertained to them. Thus, O tiger among men, virtue in those days never sustained any diminution. And, O bull of the Bharata race, both kine and women gave birth to their offspring at the proper time. And the trees bore flowers and fruits duly according to the seasons. And thus, O king, the *krita* age having then duly set in, the whole earth was filled with numerous creatures.

"And, O bull of the Bharata race, when such was the blessed state of the terrestrial world, the Asuras, O lord of men, began to be born in kingly lines. And the sons of Diti (Daityas) being repeatedly defeated in war by the sons of Aditi (celestials) and deprived also of sovereignty and heaven, began

to be incarnate on earth. And, O king, the Asuras possessed of great power, and desirous of sovereignty among men, began to be born on earth amongst various creatures, such as kine, horses, asses, camels, buffaloes, among creatures such as Rakshasas and others, and in elephants and deer. And, O protector of the earth, owing to those already born and those that were being born, the Earth became incapable of supporting herself. And amongst the sons of Diti (Daityas) and of Danu (Danavas) cast out of heaven, some were born on this earth as kings of great pride and insolence. And possessed of great energy, they covered the earth in various shapes. And capable of oppressing all foes, they filled this earth having the ocean for her boundaries. And by their strength they began to oppress Brahmanas and Kshatrias and Vaisyas and Sudras and all other creatures also. Terrifying and killing all creatures, they traversed the earth, O king, in bands of hundreds and thousands. And bereft of truth and virtue, proud of their strength and intoxicated with the wine of insolence, they even insulted the great Rishis in their asylums.

"And the Earth thus oppressed by the mighty Asuras endued with great strength and energy and possessed of abundant means, began to think of going to Brahma. The united strength of the creatures (such as Shesha, the tortoise, and the huge Elephant), and of many Sheshas too, became incapable of supporting the Earth with her mountains, burdened as she was with the weight of the Danavas. And then, O king, the Earth, oppressed with the weight and afflicted with fear, sought the protection of the Grand-father of all creatures. And she beheld the divine Brahma—the creator of the worlds knowing no deterioration—surrounded by the gods, Brahmanas, and great Rishis, of exceeding good fortune, and adored by delighted Gandharvas and Apsaras always engaged in the business of the celestials. And the Earth then adored the Grand-father, having approached him. And the Earth, desirous of protection, then represented everything unto him, in the presence, O Bharata, of all the Protectors of the world. But, O king, the Earth's object had been known before-hand to the Omniscient Self-create Supreme Lord. And, O Bharata,

creator as he is of the universe, why should he not know fully what is in the minds of all his creatures including the gods and the Asuras? And, O king, the lord of the Earth, the creator of all creatures, *Isa, Sambhu, Prajapati,* then spake unto the Earth. And Brahma said, 'O thou holder of wealth, for the accomplishment of the object for which thou hast approached me, I shall appoint all the dwellers of the heavens.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Having said so unto the Earth, O king, the divine Brahma bade her farewell. And the creator then commanded all the gods saying, 'To ease the Earth of her burden, go ye and take your births on her according to your respective parts and seek ye strife (with the Asuras already born there.)' And the creator of all, summoning also all the tribes of the Gandharvas and the Apsaras, spake unto them these words of deep import:—'Go ye and be born amongst men according to your respective parts in forms that ye like.'

"And all the gods with Indra, hearing these words of the lord of the celestials,—words that were true, desirable under the circumstances, and fraught with benefit,—accepted them. And they all having resolved to come on Earth in their respective parts, then went to Baikuntha where was Narayana—the slayer of all foes, he who has the discus and the mace in his hands, who is clad in purple, who is of bright splendour, who hath the lotus on his navel, who is the slayer of the foes of the gods, who is of eyes looking down upon his wide chest (in *yoga* attitude), who is the lord of the Prajapati himself, the sovereign of all the gods, of mighty strength, who hath the badge of the *Sreevatsa* (the biggest jewel), who is the mover of every one's faculties, and who is adored by all the gods. Him—the most exalted of persons, Indra addressed, saying, 'Be incarnate.' And Hari replied, saying, 'Let it be.'

And thus endeth the sixty-fourth Section in the Adivansavatarana of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXV.

(Sambhava Parva.)

Vaisampayana said, "Then Indra held a consultation with Narayana about the latter's decent on earth from heaven with all the gods according to their respective portions. And having commanded all the dwellers of heaven, Indra returned from the abode of Narayana. And the dwellers of heaven gradually became incarnate on Earth for the destruction of the Asuras and the welfare of the three worlds. And then, O tiger amongst kings, the celestials took their births, according as they pleased, in the lines of *Brahmarshis* and royal sages. And they slew the Danavas, Rakshasas, Gandharvas and Snakes, other man-eaters, and, indeed, many other creatures. And, O bull of the Bharata race, the Danavas and Rakshasas, Gandharvas and Snakes, could not slay the incarnate celestials even in their infancy, they were so strong !"

Janamejaya said, "I desire to hear, from the beginning, of the births of the gods, the Danavas, the Gandharvas, the Apsaras, men, Yakshas, and Rakshas. Therefore, it behoveth thee to tell me about the births of all creatures."

Vaisampayana said, "Indeed, I shall, having bowed down to the self-create, tell thee in detail the origin of the celestials and other creatures. It is known that Brahmā hath six spiritual sons, *viz*, Marichi, Atri, Angira, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu. And Marichi's son is Kasyapa, and from Kasyapa have sprung these creatures. Unto Daksha (one of the Prajapatis) were born thirteen daughters of great good fortune. The daughters of Daksha are, O tiger among men and prince of the Bharata race, Aditi, Diti, Danu, Kala, Danayu, Sinhika, Krodha, Pradha, Viswa, Vinata, Kapila, Muni, and Kadru. The sons and grand-sons of these, gifted with great energy, have been infinite. From Aditi have sprung the twelve Adityas who are the lords of the universe. And, O Bharata, as they are according to their names, shall I recount them to thee. They are Dhata, Mitra, Aryama, Sakra, Varuna, Angsa, Vaga, Vivaswan, Pusha, Savita, Tashta, and Vishnu. The

youngest, however, is superior to them all in merit. Diti had one son called Hiranya-kashipu. And the illustrious Hiranya-kashipu had five sons, all famous throughout the worlds. The eldest of them all was Prahradha, the next was Sanghradha; the third was Anuhrada; and after him were Shivi and Vashkala. And, O Bharata, it is known everywhere that Prahrada had three sons. They were Virochana, Kumva, and Nikumva. And unto Virochana was born a son, Vali, of great prowess. And the son of Vali is known to be the great Asura Vana. And blessed with good fortune Vana was a follower of Rudra, (Siva) and was known also by the name of Mahakala. And Danu had forty sons, O Bharata! The eldest of them all was king Vipra-chitti of great fame. Shamvara, and Namuchi, and Puloma; Ashiloma, and Keshi, and Durjaya; Ayashira, Aswashira, and the powerful Aswa-sanku; also Gagana-murdha, and Vegavana, and he called Ketumana; Swarvanu, Aswa, Aswapati, Vrishaparva, and then Ajaka; and Aswa-griva, and Sukshma, and Tuhundu of great strength; Ekapada, and Ekachakra, Virupaksha, Mahodara; and Nichandra, and Nikumva, Kupata, and then Kapata; Sarava, and Salava, Surya, and then Chandrama; these in the race of Danu are stated to be well-known. The Surya and Chandrama (the Sun and the Moon) of the celestials are other persons, and not the sons of Danu as mentioned above. The following ten gifted with great strength and vigour were also, O king, born in the race of Danu:—Ekaksha, Amritapa of heroic courage, Pralamva and Naraka; Vatapi, Shatru-tapana, and Shat-ha the great Asura; Gavishta, and Vanayu, and the Danava called Dirghajihva. And, O Bharata, the sons and the grand-sons of these were known to be countless. And Singhika gave birth to Rahu the persecutor of the Sun and the Moon; to three others, Suchandra, Chandra-hanta, and Chandra-pramardana. And the countless progeny of Krura (Krodha) were as much crooked and wicked as herself. And the tribe was wrathful, of crooked deeds, and persecutors of their foes. And Danayu also had four sons who were bulls among the Asuras. They were Vikshara, Vala, Vira, and Vritra the great Asura. And the sons of *Kalā* were all like Kala (Yama) himself and smiters of all

foes. And they were of great fame, of great energy and oppressors of all foes. And the sons of Kala were Vinashana; and Krodha, and then Krodha-hanta, and Krodha-shatru. And there were many others among the sons of Kala. And Sukra the son of a Rishi was the chief priest of the Asuras. And the celebrated Sukra had four sons who were priests of the Asuras. And they were Tashtadhara and Atri and two others, Raudra and Karmi. They were like the Sun himself in energy, and devoted to Brahma and the welfare of the worlds.

"Thus hath been recited by me, as heard in the Purana, the progeny of the gods and the Asuras both of great strength and energy. I am incapable, O king, of counting the descendants of these, countless as they are and not much known to fame.

"And the sons of Vinata were Tarkhya, Arishta-nemi, and then Gadura and Aruna, Aruni, and Varuni. And Shesha, Ananta, Vasuki, Takshaka, Kurma, and Kulika, are known to be the sons of Kadru; and Bhima-sena, Ugra-sena, Suparna, Varuna, Gopati, and Dhrita-rashtra, and Surya-varcha the seventh; Satyavak, Arkaparna, Prayuta, Bhima, and Chitraratha known to fame, of great learning, and the controller of his passions, and then Shalishira, and, O king, Parjannya, the fourteenth in the list; Kali, the fifteenth, and Narada, the sixteenth; these Devas and Gandharvas are known to be the sons of Muni (Daksha's daughter as mentioned before.) I shall recount many others, O Bharata! Anavadya, Manu, Vansa Asurā, Margana-pria, Anupa, Suvaga, Vasi, were the daughters brought forth by Pradha. Sidha, and Purna, and Varhi, and Purnayu of great fame; Brahmachari, Ratiguna, and Suparna who was the seventh; Viswavasu, Vanu, and Shuchandra who was the tenth, were also the sons of Pradha; and they were gods some of them and some Gandharvas. And it is also known that this Pradha of great good fortune by the celestial Rishi (Kasyapa her husband) brought forth the sacred race of the Apsaras. Alamvusa, Misra-keshi, Vidyut-parna, Tilot-tama, Aruna, Rakshita, Ramva, Monorama, Keshini, Suvahu, Surata Suraja, Supria, were the daughters, and Ativahu, and the

celebrated Haha and Huhu, and Tumvuru were the sons—the best of Gandharvas—of Prodha. And Amrita, the Brahmanas, kine, Gandharvas, and Apsaras, were born of Kapila as stated in the Purana.

"Thus hath been recited to thee by me the birth of all creatures duly—of Gandharvas and Apsaras, of Snakes, Suparnas, Rudras, and Marutas ; of kine and of Brahmanas blessed with great good fortune and of sacred deeds. And this account, (if read) extendeth the period of life, is sacred, worthy of all praise, and giveth pleasure to the ear. It should be always heard and recited to others, in a proper frame of mind.

"He who duly readeth this account of the birth of all high-souled creatures, in the presence of the gods and Brahmanas, obtaineth large progeny, good fortune, and fame, and attaineth also to excellent worlds hereafter."

And so ends the sixty-fifth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXVI.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " It is known that the spiritual sons of Brahmā were the six great Rishis (already mentioned.) There was another of the name of *Sthanu*. And the sons of Sthanu gifted with great energy were, it is known, eleven. They were Mriga-vyadha, Sarpa, Niriti of great fame ; Ajaikapat, Ahivradhna and Pinaki the oppressor of foes ; Dahana, and Iswara, and Kapali of great splendour ; Sthanu, and the illustrious Bharga. And these are called the eleven Rudras. It hath been already said, that Marichi, Angira, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu—these six great Rishis of great energy—are the sons of Brahmā. It is well-known in the world that Angira's sons are three,—Vrihaspati, Utathya, and Samvarta, all of rigid vows. And, O king, it is said that the sons of Atri are numerous. And being great Rishis they are all conversant with the Vedas, crowned with ascetic success, and of souls in perfect peace. And, O tiger among kings, the sons of Pulastya of great wisdom are the Rakshasas, Monkeys,

Kinnaras (half-men and half-horses), and Yakshas. And, O king, the sons of Pulaha were, it is said, the Salavas (the winged insects), the lions, the Kimpurushas (half-lions and half-men), the tigers, bears, and wolves. And the sons of Kratu, sacred as sacrifices, were the companions of Surya, (the Valakhilyas), known in the three worlds and devoted to truth and vows. And, O thou protector of the Earth, the illustrious Rishi Daksha, of soul in complete peace, and great asceticism, sprung from the right toe of Brahma. And from the left toe of Brahma sprang the wife of the high-souled Daksha. And the Muni (Daksha) begat in her fifty daughters; and all those daughters were of faultless features and limbs, and of eyes like lotus leaves. And the *Prajapati* Daksha, not having any sons, made those daughters his *Putrikas* (so that their sons might belong both to himself and their husbands.) And Daksha bestowed according to the sacred ordinance, ten of his daughters on Dharma, twenty-seven on Chandra (the Moon), and thirteen on Kashyapa. Listen as I recount the wives of Dharma according to their names! They are ten in all—Kirti, Laksmi, Dhriti, Medha, Pushti, Sradha, Kriā, Budhi, Lajjā, and Mati. These are the wives of Dharma as appointed by the self-create. It is known also throughout the worlds that the wives of Shoma (Moon) are twenty-seven. And the wives of Shoma, all of sacred vows, are employed in indicating time; and they are the *Nakshattras* and the *Yoginis* and they became so for assisting the courses of the worlds.

"And Brahmā had another son named Manu. And Manu had a son of name Prajapati. And the sons of Prajapati were eight and were called the *Vàsus* whom I shall name in detail. They were Dhara, Dhruva, Shoma, Aha, Anila, Anala, Pratyusa, and Prabhasa. These eight are known as the Vasus. Of these, Dhara and the truth-knowing Dhruva were born of Dhumra; Chandrama (Shoma) and Shasana (Anila) were born of the amiable Shasa; Aha was the son of Rata; and Hutashana (Anala) of Shandilya; and Pratyusha and Prabhasa were the sons of Prabhata. And Dhara had two sons, Dravina and Hutahavyavaha. And the son of Dhruva is the illustrious Kala

(Time) the destroyer of the worlds. And Shoma's son is the resplendant Varcha. And Varcha begets in his wife Manoharā three sons—Shishira, Prana, and Ramana. And the sons of Aha were Jyoti, Shama, Shanta, and also Muni. And the son of Agni is the handsome Kumara born in the forest of reeds. And he is also called *Kartikeya* because he was reared by Krittika and the others. And after Kartikeya were born his three brothers Shakha, Vishakha, Naigameya. And the wife of Anila is *Shivā*. And Shiva's sons were Manajava and Avijnata-gati. These two were the sons of Anila. The son of Pratyusha, you must know, is the Rishi by name Devala. And Devala had two sons who were both exceedingly forgiving and of great mental power. And the sister of Vrihasptai, the first of women, uttering the sacred truth, engaged in ascetic penances, roamed over the whole Earth. And she became the wife of Prabhasha the eighth Vasu. And she begat the illustrious Viswakarma the founder of all arts. And he was the originator of a thousand arts, engineer of the immortals, the maker of all kinds of ornaments, and the first of artists. And he it was who constructed the celestial cars of the gods. And mankind are enabled to live in consequence of the inventions of that illustrious one. And he is worshipped for that reason by men. And he is eternal and immutable this—Viswakarma.

"And the illustrious Dharma, the dispenser of all happiness, assuming a human countenance came out through the right breast of Brahma. And Ahasta (Dharma) hath three excellent sons capable of charming every creature. And they are Shama, Kama, and Harsha. (Peace, Desire, and Gladness,) And by their energy they are supporting the worlds. And the wife of Kama is Rati, of Shama is Prapti; and the wife of Harsha is Nanda. And upon them, indeed, are the worlds made to depend (for all that their inhabitants do.)

"And the son of Marichi is Kasyapa. And Kasyapa's offspring are the gods and the Asuras. And therefore is Kasyapa the Father of the worlds. And Tastri, of the form of (a mare) Vadava, became the wife of Savitri. And she gave birth, in the skies, to two greatly fortunate twins the Aswinas. And, O king, the sons of Aditi are twelve with Indra heading them

all. And the youngest of them all was Vishnu upon whom are the worlds dependent.

"These are the thirty three gods (eight Vasus, eleven Rudras, twelve Adityas, Prajapati, and Vashatkara). And I shall now recount their progeny according to their *Pakshas*, *Kulas*, and *Ganas*. The Rudras, the Sadhyas, the Marutas, the Vasus, the Bhargavas, and the Viswadevas are each reckoned as a Paksha. Gadura the son of Vinata and the mighty Aruna also, and the illustrious Vrihaspati are reckoned among the Adityas. The twin Aswinas, all annual plants, and all inferior animals, are reckoned among the Guhyakas.

"These are the *Ganas* of the gods recited to thee, O king! This recitation washes men of all sins.

"The illustrious Bhrigu came out, ripping open the breast of Brahma. The learned Sukra is Bhrigu's son. And the learned Sukra becoming a planet and engaged according to the command of the self-existent in pouring and withholding rain, and in despensing and remitting calamities, for sustaining the lives of all creatures in the three worlds traverses through the skies. And the learned Sukra, of great intelligence and wisdom, of rigid vows, leading the life of a Brahmachari, divided himself in twain by power of asceticism, and became the spiritual guide of both the Daityas and the gods. And after Sukra was thus employed by Brahma in seeking the welfare (of the gods and the Asuras), Bhrigu begat another excellent son. This was Chyavana who was like the blazing sun, of virtuous soul, of great fame. And he came out of his mother's womb in anger and became the cause of his mother's release, O king, (from the hands of the Rakshasa.) And Arushi, the daughter of Manu, became the wife of the wise Chyavana. And in her was born Aurva of great reputation. And he came out ripping open the thigh of Arushi. And Aurva begat Richika. And Richika in his boyhood even became possessed of great power and energy, and of every virtue. And Richika begat Jamadagni. And the high-souled Jamadagni had four sons. And the youngest of them all was Rama (Parashurama). And Rama was superior to all his brothers in the possession of good qualities. And he was skilful in all weapons, and became the

slayer of the Kshatrias. And he had his passions under complete control. And Aurva had an hundred sons with Jamadagni the eldest. And these hundred sons had offspring by thousands spread over this Earth.

"And Brahma had two other sons, *viz, Dhata* and *Vidhata,* who stayed with Manu. Their sister is the auspicious Laksmi, having her abode amid lotuses. And the spiritual sons of Laksmi are the sky-ranging horses. And the daughter born of Sukra, named Divi, became the eldest wife of Varuna. In her were born a son named Vala, and a daughter named Surā (wine) giving joy unto the gods. And Adharma (Sin) was born when creatures (from want of food) began to devour each other. And Adharma always destroys every creature. And Adharma had *Niriti* for his wife, whence the Rakshasas who are called Nairitas (offspring of Niriti.) And she hath also three other cruel sons always engaged in sinful deeds. They are *Vaya* (fear), *Mahavaya* (terror), and *Mrityu* (Death) who is always engaged in slaying every created thing. And all-destroyer as he is, he hath no wife, and no son. And *Tamrā* brought forth five daughters known throughout the worlds. They are Kaki (crow), Shyeni (hawk), Vashi (hen), Dhrita-rashtri (goose), and Shuki (parrot). And Kaki brought forth the crows; Shyeni, the hawks; Vashi, the cocks and vultures; Dhrita-rashtri, all ducks and swans; and she also brought forth all Chakravakas; and the fair Shuki of amiable qualities and possessing all auspicious signs brought forth all the parrots. And Krodha gave birth to nine daughters all of wrathful disposition. And their names were *Mrigi, Mrigamanda, Hari, Bhadramana, Matangi, Sharduli, Sheta, Suravi,* and the agreeable *Surasā* blessed with every virtue. And, O thou foremost of men, the offspring of Mrigi are all animals of the deer species. And the offspring of Mrigamandā are all animals of the bear species and those called *Srimara* (swift-footed.) And Bhadramana begat the celestial elephant Airavata for her son. And the offspring of Hari are all animals of the monkey species endued with great activity and also all the horses. And those animals also that are called *Golangula* (the cow-tailed) are said to be the offspring of Hari. And Sharduli begat

lions and tigers in numbers, and also leopards and, no doubt of it, all other strong animals. And, O king, the offspring of Matangi are all the elephants. And Shetā begat the large elephant known by the name of *Sheta* endued with great speed. And, O king, Suravi gave birth to two daughters, the amiable *Rohini* and the far-famed *Gandharvi*. And, O Bharata, she had also two other daughters named Vimalā and Analā. From Rohini have sprung all kine, and from Gandharvi all animals of the horse species. And Anala begat the seven kinds of trees yielding pulpy fruits. (They are the *date*, the *palm*, the *hintalá*, the *tali*, the *little date*, the *nut*, and the *cocoanut*.) And she had also another daughter called *Shuki* (the mother of the parrot species.) And Surasa begat a son called *Kanka* (a species of long-feathered birds.) And *Shyeni*, the wife of Aruna, gave birth to two sons of great energy and strength named *Sampati* and the mighty *Jatayu*. Surasa also begat the *Nagas* and Kadru the *Pannagas* (snakes.) And Vinata begat two sons Gadura and Aruna known extensively. And, O king of men, O thou first of intelligent persons, thus hath the genealogy of all the principal creatures been fully described by me. By listening to this a man is fully cleansed from all his sins, and acquireth great knowledge, and finally attaineth to the first of states in after life."

And thus endeth the sixty-sixth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXVII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said, "Worshipful one, I wish to hear from thee in detail about the birth, among men, of the gods, the Danavas, the Gandharvas, the Rakshas, the lions, the tigers, and other animals, the snakes, the birds, in fact, of all creatures! I wish also to hear about the acts and achievements of these, in due order, after they became incarnate in human forms!"

Vaisampayana said, "O king of men, I shall first tell thee all about those celestials and Danavas that were born among

men. The first of Danavas who was known by the name of Vipra-chitti became that bull among men noted as Jarasandha. And, O king, that son of Diti who was known as Hiranya-kasipu was known in this world among men as the powerful Shishupala. He who had been known as Sang-hlada, the younger brother of Prahlada, became among men the famous Salya,—that bull amongst the Vahlikas. The spirited Anuhlad who had been the youngest became noted in the world as Dhrista-ketu. And, O king, that son of Diti who had been known as Shivi became on earth the famous monarch Druma. And he who was known as the great Asura Vashkala became on earth the great Bhaga-datta. The five great Asuras gifted with great energy, Aya-shira, Aswa-shira, the spirited Aya-shanku, Gagana-murdha, and Vegavana, were all born in the royal line of Kekaya and all became great monarchs. That other Asura of mighty energy who was known by the name of Ketumana became on earth the monarch Amitouja of terrible deeds. That great Asura who was known as Swarvanu became on earth the monarch Ugra-sena of fierce deeds. That great Asura who was known as Aswa became on earth the monarch Asoka of exceeding energy and invincible in battle. And, O king, the younger brother of Aswa who was known as Aswapati, a son of Diti, became on earth the mighty monarch Hardikya. The great and fortunate Asura who was known as Vrisha-parva became noted on earth as king Dhirgha-prajna. And, O king, the younger brother of Vrisha-parva who was known by the name of Ajaka became noted on earth as king Shalya. The powerful and mighty Asura who was known as Aswa-griva became noted on earth as king Rocha-mana. And, O king, the Asura who was known as Suksma, endued with great intelligence and whose achievements also were great, became on earth the famous king Vrihad-ratha. And that first of Asuras who was known by the name of Tuhunda became noted on earth as the monarch Sena-vindu. That Asura of great strength who was known as Ishupa became the monarch Nagna-jita of famous prowess. The great Asura who was known as Ekachakra became noted on earth as Priti-vindhya. The great Asura Virupaksha capable

of displaying various modes of fight became noted on earth as king Chitravarma. The first of Danavas, the heroic Hora, who quelled the pride of all foes became on earth the famous and fortunate Suvahu. The Asura Suhara of great energy and the destroyer of foemen became noted on earth as king Vahlika. That best of Asuras called Nichandra whose face was as handsome as that of the Moon became noted on earth as the fortunate monarch Munja-kesha. That Asura of great intelligence called Nikumbha who was never vanquished in battle was born on earth as king Devadhipa the first among monarchs. That great Asura known amongst the sons of Diti by the name of Sharava became on earth the royal sage called Paurava. And, O king, the great Asura of exceeding energy, the fortunate Kupatha was born on earth as the famous monarch Suparsha. The great Asura, O king, who was called Kratha was born on earth as the royal sage Parvatya of form resplendent like a golden mountain. He amongst the Asuras who was known as Shalava the second became on earth the monarch Prahlad in the country of the Vahlikas. The foremost among the sons of Diti known by the name of Chandra and handsome as the lord of the stars himself became on earth noted as Chandra-varma the king of the Kambojas. That bull amongst the Danavas who was known by the name of Arka became on earth, O king, the royal sage Rishika. That best of Asuras who was known as Mritapa became on earth, O best of kings, the monarch Paschimanupaka. That great Asura of surpassing energy known as Garishta became noted on earth as king Druma-sena. The great Asura who was known as Mayura became noted on earth as the monarch Viswa. He who was known as the younger brother of Mayura became noted on earth as the monarch Kalakirti. The mighty Asura who was known as Chandrahanta became on earth the royal sage Sunaka. The great Asura who was called Chandra-vinashana became noted on earth as the monarch Janaki. That bull amongst the Danavas, O prince of the Kuru race, who was called Dhirgha-jihva, became noted on earth as Kashi-raja. The *Graha* who was brought forth by Singhika and who persecuted the Sun and

the Moon became noted on earth as the monarch Kratha. The eldest of the four sons of Danayu who was known by the name of Vikshara became on earth the spirited monarch Vasumitra. The second brother of Vikshara—that great Asura, was born on earth as the king of the country called Pandya. That best of Asuras who was known by the name of Valina became on earth the monarch Paundra-matsyaka. And, O king, that great Asura who was known as Vitra became on earth the royal sage known by the name of Manimana. That Asura who was the younger brother of Vitra and known as Krodha-hanta became noted on earth as king Danda. That other Asura who was known by the name of Krodha-vardhana became noted on earth as the monarch Danda-dhara. The eight sons of the Kaleyas that were born on earth all became great kings endued also with the prowess of tigers. The eldest of them all became king Jayat-sena in Magadha. The second of them, in prowess like to Indra, became noted on earth as Aparajita. The third of them, endued with great energy and power of producing deception, was born on earth as the king of the Nishadhas gifted with great prowess. That other amongst them who was known as the fourth was noted on earth as Sreniman, that best of royal sages. That great Asura amongst them who was the fifth became noted on earth as king Mahouja the oppressor of enemies. That great Asura possessing great intelligence who was the sixth of them became noted on earth as Abhiru that best of royal sages. The seventh of them became known throughout the earth, from the centre to the sea, as king Samudrasena well-acquainted with the truths of the Dharma *Shastras*. The eighth of the Kaleyas known as Vrihat became on earth a virtuous king ever engaged in the good of all creatures. The mighty Danava known by the name of Kukshi became known on earth as Parvatia of form resplendent as a golden mountain. The mighty Asura Krathana gifted with great energy became noted on earth as the monarch Suryaksha. The great Asura of handsome features known by the name Surya, became on earth the monarch of the Vahlikas by name Darada, the foremost of all kings. And, O king, from the tribe

of Asuras called Krodhavasa, of whom I have already spoken to thee, were born many heroic kings on earth. Madraka, and Karna-veshta, Sidhartha, and also Kitaka; Suvira, and Suvahu, and Mahavira, and also Vahlika; Kratha, Vichitra, Suratha, and the handsome king Nila; and Chiravasa, and Bhumi-pala; and Dantavakra, and he who was called Durjaya; that tiger amongst kings named Rukmi, and king Janamejaya; Ashada, and Vahu-vega, and also Bhuriteja; Ekalavya, and Sumitra, Vatadhana, and also Gomukha; the tribe of kings called the Karushakas, and also Khema-dhurti; Srutayu, and Udvaha, and also Vrihat-sena; Kshema, Ugra-tirtha, the king of the Kalingas; and Matiman, and he who was known as king Iswara; *these* first of kings were all born of the Asura class called Krodhavasa.

"There was also born on earth a mighty Asura known amongst the Danavas by the name of Kalanemi, endued with great strength, of grand achievements, and blessed with a large share of prosperity. He be came the mighty son of Ugrasena and was known on earth by the name of Kansa. And he who was known among the Asuras by the name of Devaka and was besides in splendour like unto Indra himself, was born on earth as the foremost king of the Gandharvas. And, O monarch, know thou that Drona the son of Varadwaja, not born of any woman, sprung from a portion of the celestial Rishi Vrihaspati of grand achievements. And he was the prince of all bowmen, conversant with all weapons, of mighty achievements, of great energy. Thou shouldst know he was also well acquainted with the Vedas and the science of arms. And he was of wonderful deeds and the pride of his race. And, O king, his son the heroic Aswathama, of eyes like the leaves of lotus, gifted with surpassing energy and the terror of all foes, the great oppressor of all enemies, was born on earth of the united portion of Mahadeva, Yama, Kama, and Krodha. And from the curse of Vashista and the command also of Indra, the eight Vasus were born of Ganga by her husband Shantanu. The youngest of them was Visma the dispeller of the fears of the Kurus, gifted with great intelligence, conversant with the Vedas, the first of speakers, and the thinner of

the enemy's ranks. And possessed of mighty energy and the first of all persons acquainted with all weapons, he encountered the illustrious Rama himself the son of Jamadagni of the Bhrigu race. And, O king, that Brahmana sage who on earth was known by the name of Kripa and was the embodiment of all manliness, was born of the tribe of the Rudras. And the mighty charioteer and king who on earth was known by the name of Sakuni, that crusher of foes, thou shouldst know, O king, was Dwapara himself (the third *yuga*.) And he who was Satyaki of sure aim and the upholder of the pride of the Visni race, that oppressor of foes was begotten of the portion of the gods called the Marutas. And that royal sage Drupada who on earth was a monarch the first among all persons bearing arms was also born of the same tribe of the celestials. And, O king, thou shouldst also know that Kritavarma, that prince among men, of deeds, unsurpassed by any one, and the foremost of all bulls amongst Khatrias, was born of the portion of the same celestials. And that royal sage also, Virata by name, the scorcher of the kingdoms of others, and the great oppressor of all foes, was born of the portion of the same gods. That son of Arishta who was known by the name of Hansa was born in the Kuru race and became the monarch of the Gandharvas. He who was known as Dhrita-rashtra born of the seed of Krishna-Dwaipayana, and gifted with long arms and great energy, a monarch besides of the prophetic eye, became blind in consequence of the fault of his mother and the wrath of the Rishi. His younger brother possessed of great strength and who was really a great being, known as Pandu, was devoted to truth and virtue and was purity's self. And, O king, thou shouldst know that he who was known on earth as Vidura, who was the first of all virtuous men, who was the god himself of justice, was the excellent and greatly fortunate son of the Rishi Atri. The evil-minded and wicked king Duryodhana, the destroyer of the fair fame of the Kurus, was born of a portion of Kali on earth. He it was who caused all creatures to be slain and the earth to be wasted; and he it was who fanned the fire of hostility that ultimately consumed all. They who had been the sons of Pulastya (the

Rakshasas) were born on earth among men as Duryodhana's brothers—that century of wicked individuals commencing with Dush-shasana as their first. And, O bull among the Bharata princes, Durmukha, Dush-shaha, and others whose names I do not mention, who always supported Duryodhana (in all his schemes), were, indeed, the sons of Pulastya. And over and above these hundred, Dhrita-rashtra had one son named Yuyutsu born of a Vaisya wife."

Janamejaya said, "O illustrious one, tell me the names of Dhrita-rashtra's sons according to the order of their births beginning from the eldest."

Vaisampayana said, "O king, they are as follows:—Duryodhana, and Yuyutsu, and also Dush-shasana; Dushshaha, and Dush-shala, and then Durmukha; Viving-shati, and Vikarna, Jala-sandha, Sulochana; Vinda and Anuvinda, Dud-dharsha, Suvahu, Dushpradharsana; Durmarshana, and Durmukha, Dushkarna, and Karna; Chitra and Upachitra, Chitraksha, Charuchitra, and Angada; Durmada, and Dushpradharsha, Vivitsu, Vikata, Sama; Urna-nava, and Padma-nava, Nanda and Upanandaka; Senapati, and Sushena, Kundodara and Mahodara; Chitra-vahu, and Chitra-varma, Suvarma, Durvirochana; Ayavahu, Maha-vahu, Chitrachapa and Sukundala; Bhima-vega, Bhim-vala, Valaki, Bhima-vikrama; Ugrayudha, Bhima-shara, Kanakayu, Dridhayudha; Dridha-varma, Dridha-kshatra, Soma-kirti, Anudara; Jara-sandha, Dridha-sandha, Satya-sandha, Sahasra-vak; Ugrasrava, Ugra-sena, and Kshema-murti; Aparajita, Panditaka, Vishalaksha, Duradhara; Dridha-hasta, and Suhasta, Vata-vega and Suvarchasa; Aditya-ketu, Vahvasi, Naga-datta and Anuyaina; Nishangi, Kavachi, Dandi, Danda-dhara, Dhanugraha; Ugra, Bhima-ratha, Vira, Viravahu, Alolupa; Abhaya, and Raudra-karma, also he who was Dridha-ratha; Ana-dhrishya, Kunda-veda, Viravi, Dhirgha-lochana; Dirgha-vahu, Maha-vahu, Vyudhoru, Kanakangada; Kundaja, and Chitraka. There was also a daughter named Dush-shalā who was over and above the hundred. And Yuyutsu who was Dhrita-rashtra's son by a Vaisya wife was also over and above the hundred. Thus, O king, have I recited the names of the hundred sons and the name also of the

daughter (of Dhrita-rashtra.) Thou hast now known their names according to the order of their births. All of them were heroes and great charioteers, and skilled in the art of war. All of them were, besides, versed in the Vedas, and, O king, all of them had crossed the *Shastras*. All of them were mighty in attack and defence, and all were graced with learning. And, O monarch, all of them had wives suitable to themselves in grace and accomplishments. And, O king, when the time came, the Kaurava monarch bestowed his daughter Dush-shala on Jayadratha the king of Sindhu agreeably to the counsels of Sakuni.

"And, O monarch, know thou that king Yudhish-thira was a portion of Dharma; that Bhim-sena was of the diety of wind; that Arjuna was of Indra the chief of the celestials; and that Nakula and Sahadeva, the handsomest beings among all creatures, and unrivalled in beauty on earth, were similarly portions of the twin Aswinas. And he who was known as the mighty Varcha—the son of Shoma—became Abhimanyu of wonderful deeds, the son of Arjuna. And before his incarnation, O king, the god Soma had said these words to the celestials:—'I cannot give (part with) my son. He is dearer to me than life itself. Let this be the compact and let it not be transgressed. The destruction of the Asuras on earth is the work of the celestials and therefore is it our work as well. Let this Varcha therefore go thither but let him not stay there long. Nara, whose companion is Narayana, will take his birth as Indra's son and, indeed, will be known as Arjuna the mighty son of Pandu. This boy of mine shall be his son and become a mighty charioteer in his boyhood. And let him, ye best of immortals, stay on earth for sixteen years. And when he attaineth to his sixteenth year that war shall take place in which all who are born of your portions shall achieve the destruction of mighty warriors. But a certain encounter shall take place without both Nara and Narayana (taking any part in it.) And, indeed, your portions, ye celestials, shall fight having made that disposition of the forces which is known by the name of the *Chakra-vuha*. And my son shall compell all foes to retreat before him. The boy of mighty arms having

penetrated the impenetrable *Vuha* shall range within it fearlessly and send a fourth part of the hostile force, in course of half a day, unto the regions of the king of the dead. Then numberless heroes and mighty charioteers returning to the charge towards the close of the day, shall my boy of mighty arms re-appear before me. And he shall beget one heroic son in his line who shall continue the almost extinct Bharata race.' Hearing these words of Shoma, the dwellers of heaven replied, 'So be it.' And they then all together applauded and worshipped (Shoma) the king of the stars. Thus, O king, have I recited to thee the (particulars of the) birth of thy father's father !

"Know thou also, O monarch, the mighty charioteer Drishtadyumna was a portion of Agni. And know also that Shikhandi, who was at first a female, was (the incarnation of) a Rakshasa. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, they who had become the five sons of Draupadi—those bulls amongst the Bharata princes—were the celestials known as the Viswas. Their names were Pritivindhya, Suta-soma, Sruta-kirti, Satanika the son of Nakula, and Sruta-sena endued with mighty energy.

"Shura—the first of the Yadus—was the father of Vasudeva. He had a daughter called Prithā who in beauty was unrivalled on earth. And Shura, having promised in the presence of fire that he would give his first-born child to Kunti-bhoja the son of his paternal aunt who was without offspring, gave his daughter unto that monarch in expectation of his favors. And Kunti-bhoja thereupon made her his daughter. And she was thenceforth, in the house of her (adoptive) father, engaged in attending upon Brahmanas and guests. One day she had to attend upon the wrathful ascetic of rigid vows—Durvasha by name—acquainted with truth and fully conversant with the mysteries of religion. And Prithā with all possible care gratified the wrathful Rishi of soul under complete control. And the worshipful one gratified with the attentions bestowed on him by the maiden told her, 'I am satisfied, O fortunate one, with thee ! By this *mantra* (that I am about to give thee, thou shalt be able to summon (to thy side) what-

ever celestials thou likest. And by their grace shalt thou also obtain children !' Thus addressed, the girl, (a little while after) possessed with curiosity, summoned, during the period of her maiden-hood, the god Arka (Sun.) And the lord of light thereupon made her conceive and begat in her a son who was the first of all wielders of weapons. And from fear of her relatives she brought forth in sceresy that child who came out with ear-rings and coat of mail. And he was gifted with the beauty of a celestial infant, and in splendour was like unto the maker of day himself and every part of his body was symmetrical and well embellished. And Kunti cast the handsome child into the water. But the child thus thrown into the water was taken up by the excellent husband of Radha and given by him to his wife to be by her adopted as their son. And the couple gave him the name of Vasu-sena by which appellation the child soon became known all over the land. And as he grew up he became very strong and excelled in all arms. And the first of all successful persons, he soon mastered the Vedangas. And while the intelligent one who had truth for his strength was studying the Vedas, there was nothing he would not give to the Brahmanas. At that time Indra—the originator of all things—moved by the desire of benefiting his own son Arjuna, assuming the guise of a Brahmana, came to him and begged of the hero his ear-rings and natural armour. And the hero taking off his ear-rings and armour gave them unto the Brahmana. And Sakra (accepting the gifts) presented to the giver a *Sakti* (missile weapon) surprised (at his open-handedness) and addressed him these words :—'O invincible one, amongst the celestials, Asuras, men, Gandharvas, Nagas, and Rakshasas, he at whom thou hurlest (this weapon), that one shall certainly be slain !' And the son of Surya was at first known in the world by the name of Vasu-sena. But for his deeds he subsequently came to be called Karna. And because the hero of great fame had taken off his natural armour therefore was he—the first son of Prithā—called Karna. And, O thou best of kings, the hero began to grow-up in the Suta caste. And, O king, know thou that Karna—the first of all exalted men—the foremost of all wielders of weapons—the

slayer of foes—and the best portion of the maker of day—was the friend and counsellor of Duryodhana. And he called Vāsudeva, endued with great valor, was among men a portion of him called Narayana—the god of gods—eternal! And Valadeva of exceeding strength was a portion of the Naga Shesha. And, O monarch, know thou that Pradyumna (Kama) of great energy was Sanat-kumara. And in this way the portions of various other dwellers of heaven became exalted men in the race of Vasudeva increasing the glory thereof. And, O king, the portions of the *Gana* of Apsaras which I have mentioned already, also became incarnate on earth according to Indra's commands. And sixteen thousand portions of those goddesses became, O king, in this world of men the wives of Vāsudeva. And a portion of Sri herself became incarnate on earth, for the gratification of Narayana, in the line of Bhismaka. And she was by name the chaste Rukmini. And the faultless Draupadi, slender-waisted like the wasp, was born of the portion of Shachi (the queen of the celestials) in the line of Drupada. And she was niether low nor tall in stature. And she was of the fragrance of the blue lotus, of eyes large as lotus leaves, of thighs fair and round, of dense masses of black curly hair. And endued with every auspicious feature and of complexion like that of the emerald, she became the charmer of the hearts of five foremost of men. And the two goddesses Siddhi and Dhriti became the mothers of those five and were called Kunti and Madri. And she who was Mati became the daughter (Gandhari) of Suvala.

"Thus, O king, have I recited to thee all about the incarnations, according to their respective portions, of the gods, the Asuras, the Gandharvas, the Apsaras, and of the Rakshasas. They who were born on earth as monarchs invincible in war, those high-souled ones who were born in the wide extended line of the Yadus, they who were born as mighty monarchs in other lines, they who were born as Brahmanas and Kshatrias and Vaisyas, have all been recited by me duly. And this account of the incarnation (of superior beings according to their respective portions) capable of bestowing wealth, fame, offspring, long life, and success, should always be heard

in a proper frame of mind. And having listened to this account of incarnations, according to their portions, of gods, Gandharvas, and Rakshasas, the hearer becoming acquainted with the creation, preservation, and destruction of the universe and acquiring wisdom, is never depressed even under the most engrossing sorrows."

And so ends the sixty-seventh Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXVIII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said, "O Brahmana, I have, indeed, heard from thee this account of the incarnation, according to their portions, of the gods, the Danavas, the Rakshasas, and also of the Gandharvas and the Apsaras. I, however, again desire to hear of the dynasty of the Kurus from the very beginning. Therefore, O Brahmana, speak of this in the presence of all these Brahmarshis!"

Vaisampayana said, "O exalted one of the Bharata race, the founder of the Paurava line was Dushmanta gifted with great energy. And he was the protector of the earth bounded by the four seas. And that king had full sway over four quarters of this world. And he was the lord also of various regions in the midst of the sea. And that great oppressor of all foes had sway over the countries even of the *mlecchas*.

And during his rule there were no men of mixed castes, no tillers of the soil (for the land of itself yielded produce), no workers of mines (for the surface of the earth yielded abundance), and no sinful men. All were virtuous, and did every thing from motives, O tiger among men, of virtue. There was no fear of thieves, O dear one, no fear of famine, no fear of disease. And all the four orders took pleasure in doing their respective duties and never performed religious acts for obtaining fruition of desires. And his subjects depending upon him never entertained any fear. And Parjannya (Indra) poured showers at the proper time and the produce of the fields was always pulpy and juicy. And the earth was full of all kinds

of wealth and all kinds of animals. And the Brahmanas were always engaged in their duties and they were always truthful. And the youthful monarch was endued with wonderful prowess and a physical frame hard as thunder-bolt so that he could, taking up the mountain Mandara, support it in his arms with its forests and bushes. And he was well-skilled in four kinds of encounters with the mace (hurling it at foes in a distance, striking at those that are near, whirling it in the midst of many, and driving the foe before.) And he was skilled also in the use of all kinds of weapons and in riding elephants and horses. And in strength he was like unto Vishnu, in splendour like unto the maker of day, in gravity like unto the Ocean, and in patience like unto the Earth. And the monarch was loved of all his subjects, and he ruled his contented people virtuously. "

And thus ends the sixty-eighth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXIX.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said " I desire to hear from thee about the birth and life of the high-souled Bharata and of the origin of Sakuntala. And, O worshipful one, I also desire to hear all about Dushmanta—that lion among men—and how the hero obtained Sakuntala. It behoveth thee, O knower of truth and first of all intelligent men, to tell me everything. "

Vaisampayana said, " Once on a time (king Dushmanta) of mighty arm and accompanied by a large force went into the forest. And he took with him also hundreds of horses and elephants. And the force that accompanied the monarch was of four kinds (foot-soldiers, charioteers, cavalry, and elephants,)—heroes armed with swords and darts and bearing in their hands maces and stout clubs. And surrounded by hundreds of warriors with *Prasa* and *Tomara* (missile weapons) in their arms, the monarch set out on his journey. And with the leonine roar of the warriors and with the notes of the conch and the sound of the drum, with the rumbling of the chariot wheels,

and with the deep roar of the huge elephants, all mingling with the neighing of horses and the clashing of weapons of the variously armed attendants in diversified dresses, there arose a deafening tumult while the king was on his march. And ladies gifted with great beauty, from the terraces of goodly mansions, beheld that heroic monarch the achiever of his own fame. And the ladies saw that he was like unto Sakra, the slayer of his enemies, capable of repulsing the elephants of foes. And they believed that he was the wielder of the thunder-bolt himself. And they said, 'This is that tiger among men who in war is equal unto Vasu in prowess, and in consequence of the might of whose arm there are no foes left.' And saying this, the ladies from affection gratified the monarch by showering flowers on his head. And followed by foremost of Brahmanas uttering blessings all the way, the king in great gladness of heart went towards the forest eager on slaying the deer. And many Brahmanas, Kshatrias, Vaisyas, and Sudras followed the monarch who was like unto the king of the celestials seated on the back of a proud elephant. The citizens and other classes followed the monarch for some distance. And they at last refrained from going further at the command of the king. And the king, then, ascending on his chariot, of winged speed filled the whole earth and even the heavens, with the *ghar-ghara* of his chariot wheels. And as he went he saw around him a forest like unto *Nandana* itself (the celestial gardens.) And it was full of *Vilwa, Arka, Khadira* (catechu) *Kopithwa,* and *Dhava* trees. And he saw that the soil was uneven and scattered over with blocks of stone loosened from the neighbouring cliffs. And he saw that it was without water and without human beings and lay extended for many *Yojanas* around. And it was full of deer and lions and other terrible beasts of prey.

"And king Dushmanta, that tiger among men, assisted by his followers and the warriors in his train, agitated that forest killing numerous animals. And Dushmanta, piercing them with his arrows, felled numerous tigers that were within shooting range. And the king wounded many that were too distant, and killed many that were too near with his heavy sword. And

that foremost of all wielders of darts killed many by hurling his darts at them. And well conversant with the arts of whirling the mace, the king of immeasurable prowess fearlessly wandered over the forest. And the king roamed about killing the inmates of the wilderness somtimes by his swords and sometimes by fast-descending blows of his mace and heavy short clubs.

"And when the forest was so agitated by the king possessed of wonderful energy and by the warriors in his train delighting in warlike sports, the lions began thereupon to desert it in numbers. And herds of animals deprived of their leaders, from fear and anxiety began to utter loud cries as they fled in all directions. And fatigued with flight they began to fall down on all sides, unable to slake their thirst having reached river-beds that were perfectly dry. And many so falling were eaten up by the hungry warriors. While others were eaten up after having been duly quartered and roasted in fires lit up by the warriors. And many strong elephants maddened with the wounds they received and alarmed also beyond measure fled with trunks upraised on high. And those wild elephants betraying the usual symptoms of alarm by urinating and ejecting the contents of their stomach and vomitting blood in large quantities trampled, as they ran, many warriors to death. And that forest which had been full of animals was by the king with his masses of followers and sharp weapons soon made bereft of lions and tigers and other monarchs of the wilderness."

And thus endeth the sixty-ninth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section LXX.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Then the king with his followers having killed thousands of animals entered another forest for purposes of hunting. And attended by a single follower and fatigued with hunger and thirst he came upon a large desert on the frontiers of the forest. And having crossed this herb-

less plain the king came upon another forest full of the retreats of ascetics, beautiful to look at, delighting the heart, and of cool, agreeable breezes. And it was full of trees covered with blossoms, the soil overgrown with the softest and greenest grass, extending for many miles around, and echoing with the sweet notes of winged warblers. And it resounded also with the notes of the male *Kokila* and of the shrill cicala. And it abounded with magnificient trees with outstreched branches forming a shady canopy overhead. And the bees hovered over flowery creepers all around. And there were beautiful bowers in every place. And there was no tree without flowers, none without fruits, or none that had prickles on it, or none that had no bees swarming around it. And the whole forest resounded with the melody of winged choristers. And it was decked with various flowers. And there were refreshing shades of blossoming trees.

"Such was the delicious and excellent forest that the great bowman entered. And trees with branches beautified with clusters of flowers began to gently wave at the soft breeze and rain their flowers over the monarch's head. And the trees clad in their flowery attire of all colors, with sweet-throated warblers perching on them, stood there in rows with heads touching the very heavens. And around their branches hanging down with the weight of flowers the bees tempted by the honey hummed in sweet chorus. And the king endued with great energy beholding innumerable spots covered with bowers of creepers decked with thick clusters of flowers, from excess of gladness became very much charmed. And the forest was exceedingly beautiful in consequence of those trees ranged around with flowery branches twining with each other and looking like so many rain-bows for gaudiness and variety of color. And it was the resort of bands of ascetics crowned with success, of the *Charanas*, of tribes of Gandharvas and Apsaras, of monkeys and *Kinnaras* drunk with joy. Delicious, cool, and fragrant breezes conveying the effluvia of fresh flowers blew in all directions as if they had come there to sport with the trees. And the king saw that charming forest gifted with such beauties. And it was situate in a delta of

the river, and the cluster of high trees standing together made the place look like a gaudy flatstaff.

"And in that forest which was the resort of ever-cheerful birds, the monarch saw a delightful and charming retreat of ascetics. And there were many trees around it. And the sacred fire was burning within it. And the king worshipped that unrivalled retreat. And he saw sitting in it numerous *Yotis*, *Valakhillyas*, and other Munis. And it was adorned with many chambers containing the sacrificial fire. And the flowers dropping from the trees had formed a thick carpet spread over the ground. And the spot looked exceedingly beautiful with those tall trees of large trunks. And by it flowed, O king, the sacred and transparent Malini with every species of water-fowl playing on its bosom. And that stream infused gladness into the hearts of the ascetics who resorted to it for purposes of ablutions. And the king beheld on its banks many innocent animals of the deer species and was exceedingly delighted with all he saw.

"And the monarch, the course of whose chariot no foe could obstruct, then entered that asylum which was like unto the region of the celestials, being exceedingly beautiful all over. And the king saw that it was on the margent of the sacred stream which was like the mother of all the living creatures residing in its vicinage. And on its beach sported the *Chakravaka*, and waves of milk-white foam. And there stood also the habitation of Kinnaras. And monkeys and bears too disported in numbers. And there lived also holy ascetics engaged in study and meditation. And there could be seen also elephants and tigers and snakes. And it was on the banks of that stream that the excellent asylum of the illustrious Kasyapa stood offering a home to numerous Rishis of great ascetic merit. And beholding that river, and the asylum also washed by that river which was studded with many islands and which possessed banks of so much beauty,—an asylum like unto that of Nara and Narayana laved by the waters of the Ganges,—the king then resolved to enter into that sacred abode. And that bull among men, desirous of beholding the great Rishi of ascetic wealth, the illustrious Kanwa of the race of Kasyapa,

one who possessed every virtue and who for his splendour could with difficulty be gazed at, then approached that forest resounding with the notes of maddened peacocks and like unto the gardens of the great Gandharva Chittra-ratha himself. And halting his army, consisting of flags, cavalry, infantry, and elephants, at the entrance of the forest, the monarch spoke as follows :—' I shall go to behold the mighty ascetic of Kasyapa's race, he who is without darkness. Stay ye here until my return ! '

" And the king having entered that forest which was like unto Indra's garden, soon forgot his hunger and thirst. And he was pleased beyond measure. And the monarch, laying aside all signs of royalty, entered that excellent asylum with but his minister and his priest, desirous of beholding that Rishi who was an indestructible mass of ascetic merit. And the king saw that the aylum was like unto the region of Brahma. There were bees sweetly humming here and winged warblers of various species pouring forth their melodies there. At particular places that tiger among men heard the chaunting of the Rig hymns by first-rate Brahmanas according to the just rules of intonation. Other places again were decked with Brahmanas acquainted with the ordinances of sacrifices, of the Angas, and the hymns of the Yayurveda. Other places again were filled with the harmonious strains of *Sama* hymns sung by vow-observing Rishis. At other places the asylum was decked with Brahmanas learned in the *Atharva* Veda. At other places again Brahmanas learned in the Atharva Veda and those capable of chaunting the sacrificial hymns of the Sama were reciting the Sanhitas according to the just rules of voice. At other places again other Brahmanas well-acquainted with the science of ortho-epy were reciting *mantras* of other kinds. In fact, that sacred retreat resounding with these holy notes was like unto a second region of Brahma himself. And there were many Brahmanas skilled in the art of making sacrificial platforms and in the rules of *Krama* in sacrifices, conversant with logic and the mental sciences, and possessing a complete knowledge of the Vedas. There were those also who were fully acquainted with the meanings of all kinds of

expressions, those that were conversant with all especial rites, those also that were followers of *Moksha-dharma*; those again that were well-skilled in establishing propositions, rejecting superfluous causes, and drawing right conclusions. There were those having a knowledge of the science of words (grammar), of prosody, of *Nirukta*; those again who were conversant with astrology and learned in the properties of matter and the fruits of sacrificial rites, possessing a knowledge of causes and effects, capable of understanding the cries of birds and monkies, well-read in large treatises, and skilled in various sciences. And the king, as he proceeded, heard their voices. And the retreat resounded also with the voices of men capable of charming human hearts. And the slayer of hostile heroes also saw around him learned Brahmanas of rigid vows engaged in *Japa* and homa. And the king wondered much on beholding the beautiful carpets which those Brahmanas offered to him respectfully. And that excellent of monarchs, at sight of the rites with which those Brahmanas worshipped the gods and great Rishis, thought within himself that he was in the region of Brahma. And the more the king saw that auspicious and sacred asylum of Kasyapa protected by that Rishi's ascetic virtues and possessing all the requisites of a holy retreat, the more he desired to see it. In fact, he was not satisfied with his short survey. And the slayer of heroes at last, accompanied by his minister and his priest, entered that charming and sacred retreat of Kasyapa peopled all around with Rishis of great ascetic wealth and exalted vows."

And thus ends the seventieth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXI.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "The monarch then, as he proceeded, left even his reduced attendants at the entrance of the asylum. And entering quite alone, he saw not the Rishi (Kanwa) of rigid vows. And not seeing the Rishi and finding that the abode was empty, he hailed loudly, saying, 'What ho, who is

here ?' And the sound of his voice was echoed back, loud as it was. And hearing the sound of his voice, there came out of the Rishi's abode a maiden beautiful as Sree herself but dressed as an ascetic's daughter. And the black-eyed fair one, as soon as she saw king Dushmanta, bade him welcome and worshipped him duly. And showing him due respect by the offer of a seat, *Padya* and *Arghya*, enquired after, O king, about the monarch's health and peace. And having worshipped the king and asked him about his health and peace, the maiden, reverentially asked, 'What must be done, O king ! I await your commands.' The king duly worshipped by her, then said unto that maiden of faultless features and sweet speech, 'I have come to worship the greatly fortunate Rishi Kanwa. Tell me, O amiable and beautiful one, where has the illustrious Rishi gone?'

"Sakuntala then answered, 'My illustrious father hath gone away from the asylum to fetch fruits. Wait but a moment and thou wilt see him when he arrives.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " The king not seeing the Rishi, and addressed thus by her, beheld that the maiden was exceedingly beautiful and endued with perfect symmetry of shape. And he saw that she was of sweet smiles. And she stood decked in beauty for her faultless features, for ascetic penances, and for humility. And he saw that she was in the bloom of youth. She therefore asked her, ' Who art thou ? And whose daughter, O beautiful one ! Why hast thou come into the woods also ? O handsome one, gifted with so much beauty and such virtues, whence hast thou come ? O charming one, at the very first glance hast thou stolen my heart ! I desire to learn all about thee ; therefore tell me all !' And thus addressed by the monarch in the aslyum, the maiden smilingly replied in these sweet words :—' O Dushmanta, I am the daughter of the virtuous, wise, high-souled, and illustrious ascetic Kanwa !'

Dushmanta, hearing this replied, "The universally worshipped and greatly fortunate Rishi is one whose seed hath been drawn up. Even Dharma himself might fall off from his course, but ascetics of rigid vows can never fall off so. Therefore, O thou of the fairest complexion, how hast thou been

born *his* daughter? This great doubt of mine it behoveth thee to dispel!'

Sakutala then replied, 'Hear, O king, what I have learnt regarding all that befell me of old and how I am the daughter of the Muni! Once on a time, a Rishi came here and asked about my birth. All that the illustrious one (Kanwa) told him hear now of me, O king!

" 'My father Kanwa, in answer to that Rishi's enquiries said, Viswamitra of old having been engaged in the most austere of penances alarmed Indra the chief of the celestials who thought that the mighty ascetic of blazing energy would, by his penances, hurl him down from his high seat in the heavens. And Indra thus alarmed, summoned Menaka, and told her, "Thou, O Menaka, art the first of all the celestial Apsaras! Therefore, O amiable one, do me this service. Hear what I say. This great ascetic Viswamitra, like unto the Sun himelf in splendour, is engaged in the most severe of penances. My heart is trembling with fear. Indeed, O slender-waisted Menaka, this is thy business! Thou must see that Viswamittra, of soul rapt in contemplation and engaged in the most austere of penances, who might hurl me from my seat. Go and tempt him, and frustrating his continued austerities accomplish my good! Win him away from his penances, O beautiful one, by tempting him with thy beauty, youth, agreeableness, arts, smiles and speech." Hearing all this, Menaka replied, "The illustrious Viswamitra is endued with great energy and is a mighty ascetic. He is very wrathful also as is known to thee. The energy, penances, and wrath of the high-souled one have made even thee anxious. Why should not I also be anxious? He it was who made even the illustrious Vasishta bear the pangs of witnessing the premature death of his children. He it was who though at first was born a Kshatria subsequently became a Brahmana by strength of his ascetic penances. He it was who for purposes of his ablutions created a deep river that can with difficutly be forded, and which sacred stream is known by the name of the Kausiki. It was Viswamitra whose wife in a season of distress was maintained by the royal sage Matanga (Trisanku) who was then

living under a father's curse as a hunter. It was Viswamitra who, returning after the famine was over, changed the name of the stream laving his asylum from Kausiki into Pārā. It was Viswamitra who, in return for the services of Matanga, himself became the latter's priest for purposes of a sacrifice. The lord of the celestials himself went from fear to that sacrifice for drinking the *Soma* juice. It was Viswamitra who in anger created a second world and numerous stars beginning with Sravana. He it was who granted protection to Trisanku under a superior's curse. I am frightened to approach him whose deeds are such! Tell me, O Indra, the means that should be adopted so that I may not be burnt by his wrath. He can burn the three worlds by his splendour, can, by a stamp, cause the earth to quake. He can sever the great Meru from the earth and hurl it at any distance. He can go round the ten points of the earth in a moment. How can a woman like us even touch such a one full of ascetic virtue, like unto blazing fire, and having his passions under complete control! His mouth is like unto the blazing fire, the pupile of his eye are like the Sun and the Moon, his tongue is like unto Yama himself. How shall, O chief of the celestials, a woman like us even touch him? At the thought of his prowess, Yama, Shoma, the great Rishis, the Saddhyas, the Viswas, the Valakhillyas, are terrified! How can a woman like me refrain from gazing at him in alarm? Commanded, however, by thee, O king of the celestials, I shall somehow approach that Rishi. But, O chief of the gods, devise thou some plan whereby, protected by thee, I may safely move about that Rishi! I think that when I begin to play before the Rishi, Maruta (the god of wind) had better go there and rob me of my dress, and Manmatha (the god of love) had also, at thy command, better help me then. And let also Maruta on that occasion bear thither fragrance from the woods to tempt the Rishi." Saying this, and all she said having been duly provided, Menaka then went to the retreat of the great Kaushika.

And thus endeth the seventy-first Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section LXXII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Kanwa continued,—And Sakra, thus addressed by her, then commanded him who could aproach every place (the god of wind) to be present with Menaka at the time the latter would be before the Rishi. And the timid and beautiful Menaka then entered the retreat and saw there Viswamitra who had burnt, by his penances, all his sins, and was engaged yet in ascetic penances. And saluting the Rishi, she then began to sport before him. And just at this time Maruta robbed her of her garments that were white as the moon. And she thereupon ran, as if in great bashfulness, to catch her attire, and as if she was exceedingly annoyed with Maruta. And she did all this in the very sight of Viswamitra who was endued with energy like that of fire. And Viswamitra saw her in that attitude. And beholding her divested of her robes, he saw that she was of faultless features. And the best of Munis saw that she was exceedingly handsome, with no marks of age on her person. And beholding her beauty and accomplishments, that bull amongst Rishis was possessed with desire, and made a sign that he desired her companionship. And he invited her accordingly and she of faultless features expressed also her acceptance of the invitation. And they then passed a long time there in each other's company. And sporting with each other just as they pleased, for a long time as if it were only a day, the Rishi begat in Menaka a daughter named Sakuntala. And Menaka (as her conception advanced) went to the banks of the river Malini coursing along a valley of the charming mountains of Himvat. And there she gave birth to that daughter. And she cast the new-born infant on the bank of that river and went away. And beholding the new-born infant lying in that forest destitute of human beings but abounding with lions and tigers, a number of vultures sat around to protect it from harm. No Rakshasas or carnivorous animals took its life. Those vultures protected the daughter of Menaka. I had gone there to per-

form my ablutions and beheld the infant lying in the solitude of the wilderness surrounded by vultures. Bringing her hither I have made her my daughter. Indeed, the maker of the body, the protector of life, the giver of food, are all three, in their order, fathers according to the Dharma shastras. And because she was surrounded, in the solitude of the wilderness, by *Sakuntas* (birds), therefore hath she been named by me *Sakuntala* (bird-protected.) O Brahmana, know that it is thus that Sakuntala hath been my daughter. And the faultless Sakuntala also regards me as her father.——

"This is what my father had said unto the Rishi having been asked by him. And, O king of men, it is thus that thou must know I am the daughter of Kanwa. And not knowing my real father, I regard Kanwa as my father. Thus have I told thee, O king, all that hath been heard by me regarding my birth.' "

And thus ends the seventy-second Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXIII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, " King Dushmanta hearing all this said, 'Well-spoken by thee, O princess, all that, O blessed one, thou hast said ! Be my wife, O beautiful one ! What shall I do for thee ? Golden garlands, robes, ear-rings of gold, whitest and handsomest pearls from various countries, golden coins, finest carpets, I shall present thee this very day. Let the whole of my kingdom be thine to-day, O beautiful one ! Come to me, O timid one, wedding me, O beautiful one, according to the Gandharva form ! O thou of tapering thighs, of all modes of marriage, the Gandharva is regarded as the first.'

"And Sakuntala, hearing this, said, 'O king, my father hath gone from this asylum for fetching fruits. Wait but a moment, he will bestow me on thee !'

"And Dushmanta replied, 'O thou beautiful and faultless one, I desire that thou shouldst be my companion. Know thou that I exist for thee, and my heart is in thee. One is

certainly one's own friend, and one certainly may depend upon one's own self. Therefore, according to the ordinance, thou canst certainly bestow thyself. There are, in all, eight kinds of marriage. These are Brahma, Daiva, Arsha, Prajapatya, Asura, Gandharva, Rakshasa, and Paishacha the eighth. The self-create Manu hath spoken of the 'appropriateness of all these forms according to their order. Know thou, O faultless one, that the four first of these is fit for the Brahmanas, and six first for the Kshatrias. As regards kings, even the Rakshasa form is permissible. The Asura form is permitted to the Vaisyas and the Sudras. Of the five first, three are proper, the other two being improper. The Paishacha and the Asura forms should never be practised. These are the institutes of religion, and one may act according to them. The Gandharva and the Rakshasa forms are consistent with the practices of Kshatrias. Thou needst not entertain the least alarm. There is not the least doubt that whether according to any of these last mentioned forms, or according to a union of both of them, our wedding may take place. O thou of the fairest complexion, full of desire as I am, thou also in a similar mood canst be my wife according to the Gandharva form.'

"Sakuntala having listened to all this, answered, 'If this be the course sanctioned by religion, if, indeed, I am my own disposer, hear thou, O thou foremost of the Purava race, what are my terms. Promise truly to give me what I ask thee amongst ourselves alone. The son that shall be begotten in me shall become thy heir-apparent. This, O king, is my fixed resolve. And, O Dushmanta, if thou grantest this, then let our union take place.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "The monarch, without taking time to consider, at once told her 'Let it be. And I will even take thee, O thou of agreeable smiles, with me to my capital. I tell thee truly. O thou beautiful one, thou deservest all this! And so saying, that first of kings then wedded the handsome Sakuntala of graceful tread, and knew her as her husband. And assuring her duly he came away, telling her repeatedly, 'I shall send for thy escort my troops

of four classes. Indeed, it is even thus that I shall take thee to my capital, O thou of beautiful smiles.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "O Janamejaya, having promised so to her the king went away. And as he retraced his way homewards he began to think of Kasyapa. And he asked himself, 'What shall the illustrious ascetic say, after he hath known all?' Thinking of this, he entered his capital.

"The moment the king had left, Kanwa arrived at his abode. But Sakuntala, from a sense of shame, did not go out to receive her father. That great ascetic, however, possessed of spritual knowledge, knew all. Indeed, beholding everything with his spiritual eye, the illustrious one was pleased and addressing her said, 'Amiable one, what hath been done by thee today in secret, without having waited for me, *viz*, intercourse with a man, hath not been destructive of thy virtue. Indeed, union according to the Gandharva form, of a wishful woman with a man full of desire, without *mantras* of any kind, it is said, is the best for Kshatrias. That best of men, Dushmanta, is also high-souled and virtuous. Thou hast, O Sakuntala, accepted him for thy husband. The son that shall be born of thee shall be mighty and illustrious in this world. And he shall have sway over the whole of this earth bounded by the sea. And the forces of that illustrious king of kings, while he goeth out against his foes, shall be irresistible.'

"And Sakuntala then approached her fatigued father and washed his feet. And taking down the weight he had on and placing the fruits in proper order, told him, 'It behoveth thee to give thy grace to that Dushmanta whom I have accepted for my husband, as well as to his ministers.'

"Kanwa replied, 'O thou of the fairest complexion, for thy sake, I am inclined to bless him. But receive from me, thou blessed one, the boon that thou desirest.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Sakuntala thereupon moved by the desire of benefiting Dushmanta, asked the boon that the Paurava monarchs might ever be virtuous and never be deprived of their thrones."

And so ends the seventy-third Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXIV.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "After Dushmanta had left the asylum giving those promises to Sakuntala, the latter of tapering thighs brought forth a boy of immeasurable energy. And when the child was full three years of age, he became in splendour like the blazing fire. And, O Janamejaya, he was possessed of beauty and magnanimity and every accomplishment. And the first of virtuous men, Kanwa, caused all the rites of religion to be performed on that intelligent child thriving day by day. And the boy gifted with pearly teeth and shining locks, capable of slaying lions even at that age, with all auspicious signs on his palm, and broad expansive forehead, grew up in beauty and strength. And like unto a celestial child in splendour he began to grow up rapidly. And when he was only six years of age, endued with great strength he used to seize and bind to the trees that stood around that asylum lions and tigers and boars and buffaloes and elephants. And he rode on some animals, seized some, and pursued others in sportive mood. The dwellers of Kanwa's asylum thereupon bestowed on him a name. And they said, because he seizes and restrains all animals however strong, let him be called *Sarva-damana* (the restrainer of all.) And it was thus that the boy came to be named *Sarva-damana,* endued as he was with prowess and energy, and strength. And the Rishi seeing the boy and marking also his extraordinary acts, told Sakuntala that the time had come for his installation as the heir-apparent. And beholding the strength of the boy, Kanwa commanded his disciples, saying, " Bare ye without delay this Sakuntala with her son from this abode to that of her husband blessed with every auspicious sign. Women should not live long in the houses of their paternal or maternal relations. Such residence is destructive of their reputation, their good conduct, their virtue. Therefore delay not in bear-

ing her hence.' The disciples of the Rishi thereupon, saying 'so be it,' went towards the city named after the elephant (Hastinapore) with Sakuntala and her son before them. And then she of fair eye-brows taking with her that boy of celestial beauty endued with eyes like lotus leaves, left the woods where she had been first known by Dushmanta. And having approached the king, she with her boy resembling in splendour the rising Sun was introduced to him. And the disciples of the Rishi having introduced her, returned to the asylum. And Sakuntala having worshipped the king according to proper form, told him, 'This is thy son, O king! Let him be installed as thy heir-apparent. O king, this child, like unto a celestial, hath been begotten by thee in me. Therefore, O thou best of men, fulfil now the promise thou gavest me. Call to thy mind, O thou of great good fortune, the agreement into which thou hadst entered on the occasion of thy union with me in the asylum of Kanwa.'

"The king, hearing these her words, and remembering everything, said, 'I do not remember anything. Whose art thou, O wicked woman in ascetic guise? I do not remember having contracted any connection with you in respect of *Dharma, Kama* and *Artha*. Go or stay or do as thou pleasest.' Thus addressed by him, the fair-complexioned innocent one became abashed. Grief deprived her of consciousness and she stood for a time like an wooden post. Soon, however, her eyes became red like copper and her lips began to quiver. And the glances she now and then cast upon the king seemed to burn the latter. Her rising wrath, however, and the fire of her asceticism, she extinguished within herself by an extraordinary effort. Gathering her thoughts within a moment, her heart possessed with sorrow and rage, she thus addressed her lord in anger, looking at him. 'Knowing everything, O monarch, how canst thou, like an inferior person, thus say that thou knowest not? Thy heart is a witness a regards the truth or falsehood of this matter. Therefore speak truly without degrading thyself! He who being one thing, representeth himself as another thing to others is like a thief and a robber of his own self. Of what sin is he not capable? Thou thinkest that

thou alone hast knowledge of thy deed. But knowest thou not that the ancient omniscient one (Narayana) lieth in thy heart? He knoweth all thy sins, and thou sinnest in his presence. He that sins thinks that none observeth him. But he is observed by the gods and by him also who occupieth every heart. The Sun, the Moon, the Air, Fire, Earth, Sky, Water, the heart, Yama, the day, the night, both twilights, and Dharma, all witness the acts of man. Yama, the son of Surya, taketh no account of his sins with whom Narayana the witness of all acts is gratified. But he with whom Narayana is not gratified is tortured for his sins by Yama. Him who degradeth himself by representing his self falsely, the gods never bless. Even his own soul doth not bless him. I am a wife devoted to my husband. I have come of my own accord, it is true. But do not, on that account, treat me with disrespect. I am thy wife and therefore deserve to be treated respectfully. Wilt thou not treat me so because I have come hither of my own accord? In the presence of so many, why dost thou treat me like an ordinary woman? I am not certainly crying in the wildneness. Dost thou not hear me? But if thou refusest to do what I supplicate thee for, O Dushmanta, thy head this moment shall burst in hundred pieces. The husband entering the womb of the wife cometh out himself in the form of the son. Therefore is the wife called by those cognisant with the Veda as *Jāyā* (she in whom one is born.) And the son that is so born unto persons cognisant of the Vedic *Mantras* rescueth the spirits of deceased ancestors. And because the son rescueth ancestors from the hell call *Put*, therefore hath he been called by the self-create himself *Puttra* (the rescuer from *Put.*) By a son one conquereth the three worlds. By a son's son, one enjoyeth eternity. And by a grand-son's son great-grand-fathers enjoy everlasting happiness. She is a true wife who is skilful in house-hold affairs. She is a true wife who hath borne a son. She is a true wife whose heart is devoted to her lord. She is a true wife who knoweth none but her lord. The wife is man's half. The wife is the first of friends. The wife is the root of Dharma, Artha, and Kama. The wife is the root of salvation. They that have wives can

perform religious acts. They that have wives can lead domestic lives. They that have wives have the means to be cheerful. They that have wives can achieve good fortune. Sweet-speeched wives are as friends on occasions of joy. They are as fathers on occasions of religious acts. They are as mothers in hours of sickness and woe. Even in the deep woods, a wife to a traveller is his refreshment and solace. He that hath a wife is trusted by all. A wife therefore is one's most valuable possession. Even when the husband leaving this world goeth into the region of Yama, it is the devoted wife that accompanies him there. A wife gone before waits for the husband. But if the husband goeth before, the chaste wife followeth close. For these reasons, O king, doth marriage exist. The husband enjoyeth the companionship of the wife both in this and the other world. It hath been said by learned persons that one is himself born as one's son. Therefore should a man whose wife hath borne a son look upon her as his mother. Beholding the face of the son one hath begot in his wife, like his own face in a mirror, one feeleth as happy as a virtutous man on attaining to heaven. Men scorched by mental grief or suffering under bodily pain feel as much refreshed in the companionship of their wives as one perspiring (under the hot sun) in a cool bath. No man even in anger should ever do anything that is disagreeable to his wife, seeing that happiness, joy, and virtue, everything dependeth on the wife. A wife is the sacred field in which the husband is born himself. Even Rishis cannot create creatures without women. What happiness is greater than what the father feels when the son running towards him, even though his body be smeared with dust, clasps his limbs? Why then dost thou treat with indifference such a son who hath approached thee himself and who casteth wishful glances towards thee for climbing thy knees? Even ants support, without destroying, their own eggs. Then why shouldst not thou, virtuous as thou art, support thy own child? The touch of soft sandal paste, of women, of (cool) water, is not so agreeable as the touch of one's own infant son locked in one's embrace. As a Brahmana is the foremost of all bipeds, a cow the foremost of all

quadrupeds, a preceptor the foremost of all superiors, so is the son foremost of all objects agreeable to the touch. Let therefore, this handsome child touch thee in embrace. There is nothing in the world more agreeable to the touch than the embrace of one's son. O thou chastiser of the foe, I have brought forth this child, O monarch, capable of dispelling all thy sorrows, after bearing him in my womb for full three years. And, O monarch of the Puru race, "He shall perform a hundred horse-sacrifices" were the words uttered in the skies when I was in the lying-in room. Indeed, men going into places remote from their homes take up others' children on their laps and smelling their heads feel great happiness. Thou knowest that Brahmanas repeat these Vedic *mantras* on the occasion of the consecrating rites of infancy. "Thou art born, O son, of my body! Thou art sprung from my heart. Thou art myself in the form of son. Live thou for a hundred years! My life dependeth on thee, and the continuation of my race also on thee. Therefore, O son, live thou in great happiness for a hundred years." He hath sprung from thy body—this second being from thee. Behold thyself in thy son as thou beholdest thy image in the clear lake! As the sacrificial fire is kindled from the domestic one, so hath this one sprung from thee. Though one, thou hast divided thyself. In course of hunting while engaged in the pursuit of deer, I was approached by thee, O king, I who was then a virgin in the asylum of my father! Urvasi, Purva-chitti, Saha-janya, Menaka, Viswachi, and Ghritachi, these are the six foremost Apsaras. Amongst them again, Menaka, born of Brahma, is the first. Descending from heaven on earth, after intercourse with Viswamitra she gave me birth. That celebrated Apsara, Menaka, brought me forth in a valley of the Himalya. And bereft of all affection, she went away casting me there as if I was any body else's child. What sinful act did I do of old in some other life that I was in infancy cast off by my parents and at present am cast off by thee! Cast off by thee I am ready to return to the asylum of my father. But it behoveth thee not to cast off this child who is thy own.'

"Hearing all this, Dushmanta said, 'O Sakuntala, I do not

know having begot in thee this son. Women generally speak untruths. Who shall believe in thy words? Destitute of all affection, the lewd Menaka is thy mother, for by her wast thou cast off on the surface of the Himalya as one throws away, after the worship is over, the flowery offerings he had made to his gods. Thy father too of the Kshatria race, the lustful Viswamitra, who was tempted to become a Brahmana, is destitute of all affection. However, Menaka is the first of Apsaras, and thy father also is the first of Rishis. Being their daughter, why dost thou speak like a woman that is lewd? Thy words deserve no credit. Art thou not ashamed to speak them? Especially before me? Go hence, O wicked woman in ascetic guise. Where is that foremost of great Rishis, where also is that Apsara Menaka? And where art thou, low as thou art, in the guise of an ascetic? Thy child too is grown up. Thou sayest he is a boy, but he is very strong. How hath he so soon grown like a *Shala* sprout? Thy birth is low. Thou speakest like a lewd woman. Lustfully hast thou been begotten by Menaka. O woman of ascetic guise, all that thou sayest is quite unknown to me. I don't know thee. Go whithersoever thou choosest.'

"Sakuntala replied, 'Thou seest, O king, the faults of others, even though they be so small as a mustard seed. But seeing, thou noticest not thy own faults even though they be as large as the Vilwa fruit. Menaka is of the celestials. Indeed, Menaka is reckoned as the first of celestials. My birth, therefore, O Dushmanta, is far higher than thine. Thou walkest upon the earth, O king, but I roam in the skies. Behold, the difference between ourselves is as that between (the mountain of) Meru and a mustard seed. Behold my power, O king! I can repair to the abodes of Indra, Kuvera, Yama, and Varuna. The saying is true which I shall refer to before thee, O sinless one! I refer to it for example's sake and not from evil motives. Therefore it behoveth thee to pardon me after thou hast heard it. An ugly person considereth himself handsomer than others until he sees his own face in the mirror. But when he sees his own ugly face in the mirror, it is then that he perceives the difference between himself and others. He that is really

handsome never taunts anybody. And he that always talketh evil becometh a reviler. And as the swine always affect dirt and filth even when in the midst of a flower-garden, so the wicked always choose the evil out of both evil and good that others speak. Those, however, that are wise, hearing the speeches of others that are intermixed with both good and evil, accept only what is good, like geese that always extract the milk though it be mixed with water. As the honest are always pained in speaking ill of others, so are the wicked always rejoiced in doing the same thing. As the honest are always pleased in showing regard for the old, so are the wicked always rejoiced in aspersing the good. The honest are happy in not seeking for faults. The wicked are happy in seeking for them. The wicked ever speak ill of the honest. But the latter never injure the former even if injured by them. What can be more ridiculous in the world than that those that are themselves wicked should represent the really honest as wicked? When even atheists are annoyed with those that have fallen off from truth and virtue and who are really like angry snakes of virulent poison, what shall I say of myself who am nurtured in faith? He that, having begotten a son who is his own image, regardeth him not, never attaineth to the worlds he coveteth, and verily the gods destroy his good fortune and possesions. The *pitris* have said that the son continueth the race and the line and is, therefore, the best of all religious acts. Therefore should none abandon a son. Manu hath said that there are five kinds of sons: those begotten by one's self in his own wife, those obtained (in gift) from others, those purchased for a consideration, those reared with affection and those begotten in others than wedded wives. Sons support the religion and achievements of men, enhance their joys, and rescue deceased ancestors from hell. It behoveth thee not, therefore, O tiger among kings, to abandon a son who is such. Therefore, O lord of the earth, cherish thy own self, truth, and virtue, by cherishing thy son. O thou lion among monarchs, it behoveth thee not to support this deceitfulness. The dedication of a tank is more meritorious than that of an hundred wells. A sacrifice again is more meritorious than the dedication of a

tank. A son is more meritorious than a sacrifice. Truth is more meritorious than an hundred sons. An hundred horse-sacrifices had once been weighed with Truth. Truth was found heavier than an hundred horse-sacrifices, O king, Truth, I ween, may be equal to the study of the whole Vedas and ablutions in all holy places. There is no virtue equal to Truth. There is nothing superior to Truth. O king, Truth is God himself. Truth is the highest vow. Therefore, violate not thy pledge, O monarch! Let Truth and thee be ever united. If thou placest no credit on my words, I shall of my own accord go hence. Indeed, thy companionship should be avoided. But know thou, O Dushmanta, that when thou art gone, this son of mine shall rule the whole earth surrounded by the four seas and adorned by the king of the mountains.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "And Sakuntala having spoken to the monarch in this wise, then left his presence. But as soon as she had left, a voice from the skies, emanating from no visible shape, thus spoke to Dushmanta as he was sitting surrounded by his Ritwijas, Purohita, Acharyas, and Ministers. And the voice said, 'The mother is but the sheath of flesh: the son sprung from the father is the father himself. Therefore, O Dushmanta, cherish thy son, and insult not Sakuntala. O thou best of men, the son, who is but a form of one's own seed, rescueth (ancestors) from the regions of Yama. Thou art the progenitor of this boy. Sakuntala hath spoken the truth. The husband dividing his body in twain is born of his wife in the form of son. Therefore, O Dushmanta, cherish thou, O monarch, thy son born of Sakuntala. To live forsaking one's living son is a great misfortune. Therefore, O thou of the Puru race, cherish thy high-souled son born of Sakuntala! And because this child is to be cherished by thee even at our word, therefore shall this thy son be known by the name of *Bharata* (the cherished.)' Hearing these words uttered by the dwellers of heaven, the monarch of the Paurava race became overjoyed and spoke as follows unto his Purohita and ministers. 'Hear ye these words uttered by the celestial messenger? I also myself do know this one to be my son. If I had taken him as my son on the strength of

Sakuntala's words alone, my people would have been suspicious and my son also would not have been regarded as pure.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "The monarch then, O thou of the Bharata race, seeing the purity of his son established by the celestial messenger, became exceedingly glad. And he took unto him that son with joy. And the king with a joyous heart then performed all those rites upon his son that a father should perform. And the king smelt his child's head and hugged him with affection. And the Brahmanas began to utter blessings upon him and the bards began to applaud him. And the monarch then experienced the great delight that one feeleth at the touch of one's son. And Dushmanta also received that wife of his with affection. And he told her these words, pacifying her affectionately. 'O Goddess, my union with thee took place privately. Therefore, I was thinking of how best to establish thy purity. My people might think that we were only lustfully united and not as husband and wife; and therefore, this son that I would have installed as my heir-apparent would only have been regarded as of impure birth. And, dearest, every hard word thou hast uttered in thy anger, have I, O large-eyed one, forgiven thee. Thou art my dearest.' And that royal sage, Dushmanta, having spoken thus to his dear wife, then, O Bharata, received her with offerings of perfume, food, and drink. And king Dushmanta then, bestowing the name of Bharata upon his child, formally intsalled him as the heir-apparent. And the famous bright wheels of Bharata's chariot, invincible and like unto the wheels of the cars owned by the gods, traversed every region filling the whole earth with their *ghar-ghara*. And the son of Dushmanta reduced to subjection all the kings of the earth. And he ruled virtuously and earned great fame. And that monarch of great prowess was known by the titles of *Chakra-varti* and *Sarva-bhauma*. And he performed many sacrifices like Sakra or the lord of the Marutas. And Kanwa was the chief priest in those sacrifices in which the offerings to Brahmanas were great. And the blessed monarch performed both the cow- and the horse-sacrifices. And Bharata gave unto Kanwa a thousand

gold coins as the sacrificial fee. It is that Bharata from whom have flowed so many mighty achievements. It is from him that the great race hath sprung called after his name. And all monarchs that have come after him in his race are called after him. And in the Bharata race there have been born many god-like monarchs gifted with great energy, and like unto Brahmā himself. Their numbers cannot be counted. But, O thou of the Bharata race, I shall name the principal ones that were blessed with great good fortune, like unto the gods, and devoted to truth and honesty."

And so ends the seventy-fourth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXV.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Hear now, as I recite, the recorded genealogy, that is sacred and subservient to religion, profit, and pleasure, of *these* royal sages: the lord of creation, Daksha; Manu the son of Surya; Bharata; Kuru; Puru; and Ajmida. I shall also recite to thee, O sinless one, the genealogies of the Yadavas and of the Kurus; and of the kings of the Bharata line. These genealogies are sacred and their recitation is a great act of propitiation. That recitation confereth wealth, fame, and long life. And, O sinless one, all those I have named shone in their splendour and were equal unto the great Rishis in energy.

"Pracheta had ten sons who were all devoted to asceticism and possessed every virtue. They burnt of old, by the fire emanating from their mouths, several plants of poisonous properties, and innumerable large trees that had covered the earth and become a source of great discomfort to man. After these ten, was born another named Daksha. It is from Daksha that all creatures have sprung. Therefore is he, O tiger among men, called the Grand-father. And born of Pracheta, the Muni Daksha, uniting himself with Virini, begat a thousand sons of rigid vows, all like himself. And Narada taught these thousand sons of Daksha the excellent philosophy of Sankhya

as a means of Salvation. [These, therefore, totally abstained from begetting creatures.] And, O Janamejaya, the lord of creation, Daksha, then, from desire of making creatures, begat fifty daughters. And he made all of them his *appointed* daughters (so that *their* sons might be *his* sons also for the performance of all religious acts.) And he bestowed ten of his daughters on Dharma, and thirteen on Kasyapa. And he gave twenty-seven to Chandra, who are all engaged in indicating time. And Kasyapa, the son of Marichi, begat in her who was the eldest of his thirteen wives, the Adityas, the celestials endued with great energy and having Indra as their head, and also Vivaswan (the Sun.) And from Vivaswan was born the lord Yama. And Martanda (Vivaswan) also begot another son after Yama, gifted with great intelligence and named Manu. And Manu was endued with great wisdom and devoted to virtue. And he became the progenitor of a line. And in Manu's race have been born all human beings who have, therefore, been called *Manavas*. And it is from Manu that all men including Brahmanas, Kshatrias, and others have been born. And therefore are they all called Manavas. Subsequently, O monarch, the Brahmanas became united with the Kshatrias. And those sons of Manu that were Brahmanas devoted themselves to the study of the Vedas. And Manu begot ten other children named Vena, Dhrishnu, Narishyan, Nabhaga, Ikshaku, Karusha, Sharyati, the eighth a daughter named Ila, Prishadhru the ninth, and Nabhagarishta the tenth. They all betook themselves to the practices of Kshatrias. Besides these, Manu had fifty other sons on earth. But we heard that they all perished quarreling with each other. The learned Pururavā was born of Ilā. It hath been heard by us that Ilā was both his mother and father. And the great Pururava had sway over thirteen islands of the sea. And though a human being he was always surrounded by companions that were inhuman. And Pururava, intoxicated with power, quarreled with the Brahmanas and little caring for their anger robbed them of their wealth. Beholding all this, Sanatkumara came from the region of Brahmā and gave him good counsels which were, however, all rejected by Puru-

rava. Then the wrath of the great Rishis was excited, and the avaricious monarch, who, intoxicated with power, had lost his reason, was immediately destroyed by their curse.

"It was Pururava who first brought from the region of the Gandharvas the three kinds of fire (for sacrificial purposes.) And he brought thence the Apsarā Urvarsi also. And the son of Ila begat in Urvasi six sons who were called Aya, Dhimān, Amavasu, and Dhridhayu, and Vanayu, and Shatayu. And it is said that Ayu begat four sons, named Nahusha, Vridhasarma, Rajingaya, and Anenā, in the daughter of Sharvanu. And, O monarch, Nahusha, of all the sons of Ayu, was gifted with great intelligence and prowess. And he ruled his extensive kingdom virtuously. And king Nahusha supported evenly the Pitris, the celestials, the Rishis, the Brahmanas, the Gandharvas, the Nagas, the Rakshasas, the Kshatrias, and the Vaisyas. And he suppressed all robber gangs with a mighty hand. But he made the Rishis pay tribute and carry him on their backs like beasts of burden. And conquering the very gods by the beauty of his person, his asceticism, prowess, and energy, he ruled as if he were Indra himself. And Nahusha begot six sons, all of sweet speech, named Yati, Yayati, Sangyati, Ayäti, Ayati, and Dhruva. Yati betaking himself to asceticism became a Muni like unto Brahmā himself. Yayäti became a monarch of great prowess and virtue. He ruled the whole earth, performed numberless sacrifices, worshipped the Pitris with great veneration, and always respected the gods. And he brought the whole world under his sway and was never vanquished by any foe. And the sons of Yayāti were all great bowmen and resplendent with every virtue. And, O king, they were begotten in (his two wives) Devayani and Sharmishtā. And in Devayāni were born Yadu and Turvasu, and in Sharmishta were born Drahyu, Anu, and Puru. And, O king, having virtuously ruled his subjects for a long time, Yayāti was attacked with hideous decrepitude destroying his personal beauty. And attacked by decrepitude, the monarch then spoke, O Bharata, unto his sons Yadu and Puru and Turvashu and Drahyu and Anu these words :—'O dear sons, I wish to be a young man and to gratify my appe-

tites in the company of young women. Do you help me thereto!' To him his eldest son born of Devayani then said, 'What needest thou, O king! Dost thou want to have our youth?' Yayati then told him, 'Accept thou my decrepitude. O son! with thy youth I would enjoy myself. During the time of a great sacrifice I have been cursed by the Muni Usana (Sukra.) O sons, I would enjoy myself with your youth. Take any of ye this my decrepitude and with my body rule ye my kingdom. I would enjoy myself with a renovated body. Therefore, ye my sons, take ye my decrepitude!' But none of his sons took his decrepitude. Then his youngest son Puru said unto him, 'O king, enjoy thou once again with a renovated body and returned youth! I shall take thy decrepitude and at thy command rule thy kingdom.' Thus addressed, the royal sage, by virtue of his ascetic power, then transferred his own decrepitude unto that high-souled son of his. And with the youth of Puru the monarch became a young man; while with the monarch's age Puru ruled his kingdom.

"Then, after a thousand years had passed away, Yayati, that tiger among kings, remained as strong and powerful as a tiger. And he enjoyed for a long time the companionship of his two wives. And in the gardens of Chittra-ratha (the king of the Gandharvas), the king also enjoyed the company of the Apsara Viswachi. But even after all this, the great king found his appetites unsatiated. The king then recollected the following truths contained in the Puranas. 'Truly, one's appetites are never satiated with enjoyment. On the other hand, like sacrificial butter poured into the fire, they flame up with indulgence. Even if one enjoyeth the whole earth with its wealth, diamonds and gold, animals and women, one is not yet satiated. It is only when man doth not commit any sin in respect of any living thing, in heart, deed, or word, it is then that he attaineth to purity as that of Brahma. When one feareth nothing, when one is not feared by any thing, when one wisheth for nothing, when one injureth nothing, it is then that one attaineth to the purity of Brahma.' The wise monarch seeing this and satisfied that one's appetites are never satiated, set his mind at rest by meditation, and took back from his son

his own decrepitude. And giving him back his youth though his appetites were unsatiated, and installing him on the throne, he spoke unto Puru thus :—'Thou art my true heir, thou art my true son in whom my race is to continue! In the world shall my race be known after thy name!' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Then that tiger among kings, having installed his son Puru on the throne, went away to the mount of Bhrigu for devoting himself to asceticism. And having acquired great ascetic merit, after long years he succumbed to the inevitable influence of Time. He left his human body by observing the vow of fasting, and ascended to heaven with his wives."

And thus ends the seventy-fifth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXVI.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said, "O thou whose wealth is asceticism, tell me how our ancestor Yayāti who is the tenth from Prajapati obtained for wife the unobtainable daughter of Sukra. I desire to hear of it in detail. Tell me also, one after another, of those monarchs separately who have been the founders of dynasties."

Vaisampayana said, "The monarch Yayati was in splendour like unto Indra himself. I will tell thee, in reply to thy question, O Janamejaya, how both Sukra and Vrishaparvā bestowed upon him with due rites their daughters, and how his union took place with Devayāni in especial.

"Between the celestials and the Asuras there happened frequent encounters of yore for the sovereignty of the three worlds with everything in them. The gods then, from desire of victory, installed the son of Angira (Vrihaspati) as their priest to conduct their sacrifices; while their opponents installed the learned Usana as their priest for the same purpose. And between those two Brahmanas there was always much boastful rivalry. Those Danavas assembled for encounter that were slain by the gods were all revived by Kavya (Sukra) by aid of the power of his knowledge. And then starting again

into life, these fought with the gods. The Asuras also slew on the field of battle many of the celestials. But the open-minded Vrihaspati could not revive them, because he knew not the science called *Sanjivani* (re-vivification) which Kavya endued with great energy knew so well. And the gods were, therefore, in great sorrow. And the gods in great anxiety of heart and entertaining a fear of the learned Usana, then went to Kacha, the eldest son of Vrihaspati, and spoke unto him, saying, 'We pay court to thee, therefore be kind to us and do us a service that we regard as very great. That knowledge which resides in Sukra—that Brahmana of immeasurable prowess, make thy own as soon as thou canst. Thou shalt then be a sharer with us in all sacrificial offerings. Thou shalt find the Brahmana in the court of Vrishaparva. He always protects the Danavas but never us their opponents. Thou art his junior in age, and therefore capable of adoring him with reverence. Thou canst also adore Deva-yani, the favorite daughter of that high-souled Brahmana. Indeed, thou alone art capable of conciliating them both by worship. There is none else that can do so. By gratifying Deva-yani with thy conduct, liberality, sweetness, and general behaviour, thou canst certainly obtain that knowledge.' The son of Vrihaspati, thus solicited by the gods, then saying 'So be it,' went to where Vrishaparva was. And, O king, Kacha, thus sent by the gods, soon wended into the capital of the chief of the Asuras, and beheld *Sukra* there. And beholding him he thus spoke unto him :—'Accept me as thy disciple. I am the grand-son of the Rishi Angira and son of Vrihaspati himself. By name am I known as Kacha. Thyself becoming my preceptor, I shall practise the Brahmacharya mode of life for a thousand years. Command me then, O Brahmana !'

"And Sukra (hearing this) said, 'Welcome art thou, O Kacha! I accept thy speech. I will treat thee with regard ; for by so doing, it is Vrihaspati who is being regarded."

Vaisampayana continued, "And Kacha, commanded by Kavya or Usana himself called also Sukra, then saying, 'So be it', took the vow he had spoken of. And, O Bharata, accepting the vow as he had said, at the proper time, Kacha

began to conciliate regardfully both his preceptor and (his preceptor's daughter) Deva-yani. And he began to conciliate both. And young as he was, by singing and dancing and playing on different kinds of instruments, he soon gratified Deva-yani who was herself in her youth. And, O Bharata, with his whole heart set upon it, he soon gratified that maiden Deva-yani—already arrived in her youth, by presents of flowers and fruits and services rendered with alacrity. And Deva-yani also by her songs and sweetness of manners used, while they were alone, to attend upon that youth carrying out his vow. And when five hundred years had thus passed of Kacha's vow, the Danavas came to learn of his intention. And having no compunctions about slaying a Brahmana, they became very angry with him. And one day they saw Kacha engaged in a solitary part of the woods in tending (his preceptor's) kine. And they then slew Kacha from their hatred of Vrihaspati and from their desire also of protecting the knowledge of reviving the dead from being taken away by him. And having slain him they hacked his body into pices and gave these to be devoured by jackals and wolves. And (when twilight came) the kine returned to their fold without him who tended them. And Deva-yani, seeing the kine return from the woods without Kacha, spoke, O Bharata, unto her father thus :—

'Thy Evening fire hath been kindled : the Sun also hath set, O father! The kine have returned without him who tendeth them. Indeed, Kacha is not to be seen! It is plain that Kacha hath been lost or dead. Truly do I say, O father, that without him I would not live.'

"And Sukra hearing this said, 'I will revive him by saying —*Let this one come.*' Then having recourse to the science of reviving the dead, Sukra summoned Kacha. And summoned by his preceptor, Kacha appeared before him in gladness of heart, tearing by virtue of his preceptor's science the bodies of the wolves (that had devoured him.) And asked about the cause of his delay, he thus spoke unto Bhargava's (Sukra's) daughter. Indeed, asked by that Brahmana's daughter, he told her, 'I was dead. O thou of pure manners, bearing the

sacrificial fuel, *Kusa* grass, and logs of wood, I was coming towards our abode. I had sat under a banian tree. The kine also having been gathered together were staying under the shade of that same banian. The Asuras, beholding me, asked—'*Who art thou?* They heard me answer—*I am the son of Vrihaspati.* As soon I had said this, the Danavas slew me and hacking my body into pieces gave my remains to jackals and wolves. And they then went to their homes in gladness of heart. O amiable one, summoned by the high-souled Bhargava, I come before thee somehow fully revived.'

"On another occasion, asked by Deva-yani, the Brahmana Kacha went into the woods. And as he was roving about for gathering flowers, the Danavas beheld him. They again slew him and pounding him into paste they mixed it with the waters of the ocean. Finding him late, the maiden again represented the matter unto her father. And summoned again by the Brahmana with the aid of his science, Kacha appearing before (his preceptor and his daughter) told evrything as it had happened. Then slaying him for the third time and burning him and reducing him to ashes the Asuras gave those ashes to the preceptor himself mixing them with his wine. And Deva-yani again spoke unto her father, saying, 'O father, Kacha had been sent to gather flowers. But he is not to be seen. It is plain he hath been lost or dead. I tell thee truly, I would not live without him.'

"Sukra hearing this said, 'O daughter, the son of Vrihaspati hath gone to the region of the dead. Though revived by my science, he is thus slain frequently. What, indeed, am I to do? O Deva-yani, do not grieve, do not cry. One like thee should not grieve for one that is mortal. Indeed, thou art, O daughter, in consequence of my prowess, worshipped thrice a day, during the ordained hours of prayer, by Brahma, Brahmanas, the gods with Indra, the Vasus, the Aswinas, the Asuras, in fact by the whole universe. It is impossible to keep him alive, for revived by me he is as often killed.' To all this Deva-yani replied, 'Why shall I, O father, not grieve for him whose grand-father is old Angira himself, whose father is Vrihaspati—that ocean of ascetic merit, who

is the grand-son of a Rishi and the son also of a Rishi? He himself too was a Brahmachari and an ascetic; always wakeful and skilled in everything. I will starve and follow the way Kacha hath gone. The handsome Kacha is, O father, dear unto me!' "

Vaisampayana continued, "The great Rishi Kavya (Sukra) then, afflicted by what Deva-yani had said, then cried in anger, 'Certainly, the Asuras seek to injure me, for they slay my disciple that stayeth with me. These followers of Rudra desire to divest me of my character as a Brahmana by making me participate in their crime. Truly this crime hath a terrible end. The crime of slaying a Brahmana would even burn Indra himself.' Having said this, that Brahmana Sukra, urged by Deva-yani, began to summon Kacha who had entered the jaws of death. But Kacha, summoned with the aid of science, and afraid at the consequences to his preceptor, feebly replied from within the stomach of his preceptor. And Kacha said, 'Be graceful unto me, O lord! I am Kacha that worshippeth thee! Behave unto me as to thy own dearly-loved son.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Sukra then said, 'By what path, O Brahmana, entering my stomach, dost thou stay there? Leaving the Asuras this very moment, shall I go over to the gods!' And Kacha then answered, 'By thy grace, memory hath not failed me. Indeed, I do recollect everything as it hath happened. My ascetic virtues have not been destroyed. It is therefore that I am able to bear this insufferable pain. O Kavya, slain by the Asuras and burnt and reduced to powder have I been given to thee with thy wine. When thou art present, O Brahmana, the arts of the Asuras will never be able to vanquish the science of the Brahmana!'

"Hearing this, Sukra said, 'O daughter, what good can I do to thee? It is with my death that Kacha can have back his life! O Deva-yani, Kacha is even within me. There is no other way of his coming out except by ripping open my stomach. But Deva-yani replied, 'Both evils shall, like fire, burn me. The death of Kacha and thy own death too are to me as same. The death of Kacha would deprive me of life. If thou also diest, I shall not be able to bear life!' Then

Sukra said, 'O son of Vrihaspati, thou art, indeed, one already crowned with success, because Deva-yani regardest thee so well. Accept now the science that I will today impart to thee, if indeed, thou art no Indra in the form of Kacha! None can come out of my stomach with life. A Brahmana, however, must not be slain. Therefore, accept thou the science I impart to thee. Start thou into life as my son! And possessed of the knowledge, having received it from me, and revived by me, look thou that coming out of my body thou mayest have in view what gratitude dictateth.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Receiving then the science imparted to him by his preceptor, ripping open his stomach the handsome Brahmana Kacha came out like the moon at evening in the fifteenth day of the lighted fortnight. And beholding the remains of his preceptor lying like a heap of Brahma, even Kacha revived him with the aid of the science he had received. And worshipping him with regard, Kacha then said unto his preceptor, 'Him who poureth the nectar of knowledge into one's ears, even as thou hast done into those of myself who am void of all knowledge, him do I regard both as my father and mother. And remembering the immense service done by him, who is there so ungrateful as to injure him? They that, having acquired knowledge, injure their preceptor who is always an object of worship, who is the giver of knowledge, who is the most precious of all precious objects on earth, become hated on earth and finally go to the regions of the sinful.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " The learned Sukra, having been deceived while under wine, and remembering the total loss of consciousness that is one of the terrible consequences of drink, and beholding too before him the handsome Kacha whom he had, in a state of unconsciousness, drunk with his wine, then thought of effecting a reform in the manners of the Brahmanas. The high-souled Usana rising up from the ground in anger then spoke as follows:—'That wretched Brahmana who from this day will, being unable to resist the temptation, drink wine, shall be regarded to have lost his virtue, shall be reckoned to have committed the sin of slaying a Brahmana,

shall be hated both in this and the other world. I set this limit to the conduct and dignity of Brahmanas everywhere. Let the honest, let Brahmanas, let those regardful of their superiors, let the gods, let the three worlds, listen !' Having said these words, that high-souled one—that ascetic of ascetics then summoning the Danavas who had been deprived by fate of their good sense, then told them these words:—'Ye foolish Danavas, know ye that Kacha hath attained his wishes. He will henceforth dwell with me. Indeed, having obtained the valuable knowledge of reviving the dead, that Brahmana hath become in prowess even as Brahmā himself !' "

Vaisampayana continued, "And Bhargava having said so much cut short his speech. The Danavas were surprised and went away to their homes. And Kacha too having staid with his preceptor for a full thousand years then prepared to return to the abode of the celestials after having obtained his preceptor's permission."

And thus ends the seventy-sixth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXVII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "After the expiration of the period of his vow, Kacha having obtained his preceptor's leave was about to return to the abode of the celestials. Just at this time, Deva-yāni, addressing him, said, 'O grand-son of the Rishi Angira, in conduct and birth, in learning, asceticism, and humility, thou shinest most brightly ! As the celebrated Rishi Angira is honored and regarded by my father, so is thy father Vrihaspati regarded and worshipped by me ! O thou of ascetic wealth, knowing this, listen to what I say. Recollect my behaviour to thee during the period of thy vow (of Brahmacharya.) Thy vow hath now been over. It behoveth thee to fix thy affections on me. O accept my hand duly with ordained *mantras* !'

"Kacha replied, 'Thou art to me an object of regard and worship even as thy father ! Indeed, O thou of faultless

features, thou art even an object of greater reverence! Thou art dearer than life to the high-souled Bhargava! O amiable one, as the daughter of my preceptor, thou art ever worthy of my worship. As my preceptor Sukra thy father is ever deserving of my regards, so art thou, O Deva-yani! Therefore it behoveth thee not to say so.' Hearing this Deva-yani replied, 'Thou too art the son of my father's preceptor's son. Therefore, O best of Brahmanas, thou art deserving of my regards and worship. O Kacha, when thou wert slain so many times by the Asuras, recollect today the affection I showed for thee! Remembering my friendship and affection for thee, and, indeed, my devoted regard also, O virtuous one, it behoveth thee not to abandon me without any fault! I am truly devoted to thee!'

"Hearing all this Kacha said, 'O thou of virtuous vows, do not urge me into such a sinful course! O thou of fair eye-brows, be graceful unto me! Beautiful one, thou art to me an object of greater regard than my preceptor! Full of virtuous resolves, O large-eyed one, of face, besides, as handsome as the moon, the place where thou hadst resided, *viz*, the body of Kavya, hath also been my abode. Thou art truly my sister! Therefore, O slender-waisted one, do not say so! Amiable one, happily have we passed the days that we have been together. There is perfect good understanding between us I ask thy leave to return to my abode. Therefore pronounce blessings on me so that my journey may be safe. I must be remembered by thee, when thou dost remember me in connection with topics of conversation, as one that hath not transgressed virtue! Always attend upon my preceptor with readiness and singleness of heart!' To all this, Deva-yani answered, 'Solicited by me, if, indeed, thou dost truly refuse to make me thy wife, then, O Kacha, this thy knowledge shall not bear fruit!'

"Hearing all this, Kacha said, 'I have refused thy request only because thou art the daughter of my preceptor, and not because thou hast any fault. Nor hath my preceptor in this respect issued any command. Curse me if it please thee! I have told thee what the behaviour should be of Rishis. I do not

deserve thy curse, O Deva-yani ! But yet hast thou cursed me. Thou hast acted under the influence of passion and not from a sense of duty. Therefore thy desire shall not be fulfilled. No Rishi's son shall ever accept thy hand in marriage. Thou hast said that my knowledge shall not bear fruit. Let it be so. But in him it shall bear fruit to whom I may impart it.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " That first of Brahmanas, Kacha, having said so unto Deva-yani, speedily wended unto the abode of the chief of the celestials. And beholding him arrived, the celestials with Indra ahead, having first worshipped, spoke unto him as follows :—'Thou hast, indeed, performed an act of great good for us. Wonderful hath been thy achievement ! Thy fame shall never die ! And thou shalt be a sharer with us in sacrificial offerings.' "

And thus ends the seventy-seventh Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXVIII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " The dwellers of heaven became exceedingly glad to welcome Kacha who had mastered the wonderful science. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race the celestials then learnt that science from Kacha and considered their object as already achieved. And then assembling together they spoke unto him of an hundred sacrifices, saying, 'The time hath come for showing thy prowess. Slay thy foes, O Purandara !' And thus addressed, Maghava, then accompanied by the celestials, set out, saying 'So be it.' But on his way he saw a number of damsels. These maidens were sporting in a lake in the gardens of the Gandharva Chittraratha. And changing himself into wind he soon mixed up the garments of those maidens which they had kept on the bank. A little while after, the maidens getting up from the water approached their garments that had, indeed, been mingled with each other. And it so happened that from the intermingled heap the attire of Deva-yani was appropriated by Sharmishta the daughter of Vrishaparva, from ignorance that

it was not hers. And, O king, upon this, between them, Deva-yani and Sharmishta, then occurred a dispute. And Deva-yani said, 'O daughter of the Asura (chief), why dost thou take my attire, being, as thou art, my disciple? Destitute of good behaviour, nothing good can happen to thee!' Sharmishta, however, quickly replied, 'Thy father occupying a lower seat always adoreth, with downcast looks like a hired chaunter of praises, my father whether when he sitteth at his ease or reclineth at full length. Thou art the daughter of one that beggeth, one that chaunteth the praises of others, of one that accepteth alms. I am the daughter of one who is adored, one who bestoweth alms instead of ever accepting them. Beggar woman as thou art, thou art free to strike thy breast, to use ill words, to vow enmity to me, to give way to thy wrath. Acceptress of alms, thou weepest tears of anger in vain. Thou art perfectly harmless, whereas, if so minded, I can harm thee. Thou desirest to quarrel. But know thou that I do not reckon thee as my equal.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words Deva-yani became exceedingly angry and began to pull at her clothes. Sharmishta thereupon threw her into a well, and went home. Indeed, the wicked Sharmishta believing that Deva-yani was dead, bent her steps homewards in a wrathful mood.

"After Sharmishta had left, Yayati the son of Nahusha soon came to that spot. And the king had been out ahunting. And the couple of horses harnessed to his car and the other single horses with him were all fatigued. And the king himself was thirsty. And the son of Nahusha saw a well that was by. And he saw that it was dry. But in looking within it, he saw a maiden who in splendour was like unto the blazing fire. And beholding her within it, the best of kings addressed that girl of the complexion of the celestials, soothing her with sweet words. And he said, 'Who art thou, O fair one, of nails bright as burnished copper, and with ear-rings decked with celestial gems? Thou seemest to be greatly anxious. Why dost thou weep in affliction? How, indeed, hast thou fallen into this well covered with creepers and long grass? And O slender-waisted girl, answer me truly whose daughter thou art!'

"Deva-yani then answered, 'I am the daughter of Sukra who brings back into life the Asuras that are slain by the gods. He doth not know what hath befallen me. This is my right hand, O king, with nails bright as burnished copper. Thou art well-descended; I ask thee, take it and raise me up therefore! I know thou art of good behaviour, of great prowess, and wide fame! It behoveth thee, therefore to raise me from this well!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "King Yayati, learning that she was a Brahmana's daughter, then raised her from that well catching hold of her right hand. And the monarch promptly raising her from the pit and speaking to her who was of tapering thighs, sweetly and courteously, returned to his capital.

"And when the son of Nahusha had gone away, Deva-yani of faultless features, afflicted with grief, then spoke unto her maid, Ghurnika by name, who met her at the time. And she said, 'O Ghurnika hie thou soon and speak to my father without loss of time of everything as it hath happened. I shall not now enter the city of Vrisha-parva.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "And Ghurnika, thus commanded, repaired quickly to the mansion of the Asura chief. And there she saw Kavya and spoke unto him with her perception dimmed by anger. And she said, 'I tell thee, O great Brahmana, that Deva-yani hath been ill-used, O fortunate one, in the forest by Sharmishta the daughter of Vrishaparva!' And Kavya, hearing that his daughter had been ill-used by Sharmishta, speedily went out with a heavy heart, seeking for her in the woods. And when he found her in the woods he clasped her with affection and spoke unto her with voice choked with grief. 'O daughter, the weal or woe that befalleth people is always due to their own faults. Thou hast, therefore, some fault, I ween, which hath been expiated thus!' Hearing this, Deva-yani replied, 'Be it a penalty or not, listen thou to me with attention! O hear all that Sharmishta, the daughter of Vrishaparva, hath said unto me! Really hath she said that thou art only the hired chaunter of the praises of the Asura king. Even *thus* hath she—that Sharmishta, Vrishaparva's daughter,—spoken to me, with red eyes, these piercing and cruel

words:—"Thou art the daughter of one that ever chaunteth for hire the praises of others; of one that asketh for charity; of one that accepteth alms; whereas I am the daughter of one that receiveth adorations, of one that giveth, of one that never accepteth anything in gift." These have been the words repeatedly spoken unto me by the proud Sharmishta, the daughter of Vrishaparva, with eyes red in anger. If, O father, I am really the daughter of a hired chaunter of praises, of one that accepteth gifts, I must offer her my adorations in hopes of obtaining her grace. O, of this I have already told her.'

"Sukra replied, 'Thou art, O Deva-yani, no daughter of a hired adorer, of one that asketh for alms and accepteth gifts! Thou art the daughter of one that adores none; of one that is adored by all. Vrishaparva himself knoweth it, and Indra, and king Yayati too, that the inconceivable Brahma, the un-opposable God-head, is my strength. The self-create himself, gratified by me, hath said that I am for aye the lord of that which is in all things on earth or in heaven. I tell thee truly that it is I who poureth rain for the good of creatures and who nourisheth the annual plants that sustain all living things.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "It was by such sweet words of excellent import that the father endeavoured to pacify his daughter afflicted with woe and oppressed by anger."

And so ends the seventy-eighth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section LXXIX.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

"Sukra continued, 'Know then, O Deva-yani, that he that regardeth not the evil speeches of others, conquereth everything! The wise say that he is a true charioteer who without slackening holdeth tightly the reins of his horses. He, therefore, is the true man that subdueth, without indulging, his rising wrath. Know thou, O Deva-yani, that by him is everything conquered who calmly subdueth his rising anger,

He is regarded as a man who by having recourse to forgiveness casteth off his rising anger like a snake casting off his outerskin. He that suppresseth his anger, he that regardeth not the evil speeches of others, he that becometh not angry though there be cause, certainly acquireth the four objects for which we live. (Religion, profit, desire, and salvation.) Between him that performeth without fatigue sacrifices every month for an hundred years, and him that never feeleth wrath in respect of anything, he that feeleth not anger is certainly the higher. Boys and girls, unable to distinguish between right and wrong, quarrel with each other. The wise never imitate them.' Devayani, hearing this speech of her father, said, 'O father, I know, though a girl, what are our duties and virtues. I know also what the difference is between anger and forgiveness as regards the power of each. But when a disciple behaveth disrespectfully, he should never be forgiven by the preceptor if the latter is realy desirous of benefiting the former. Therefore I do not desire to live any longer in a country where evil behaviour is on the ascendant. The wise man desirous of good, should not dwell among those sinfully-inclined men who alaways speak ill of good behaviour and high birth. But there should one live,—indeed, that hath been said to be the best of dewelling places,—where good behaviour and purity of birth are known and respected. The cruel words uttered by Vrishaparva's daughter burn my heart even as men desirous of kindling a fire burn the dry fuel. I do not think anything more miserable for a man in the three worlds than for him to adore his enemies blessed with good fortune, himself possessing none. Indeed, it hath been said by the learned that for such a man even death would be better.'"

And thus ends the seventy-ninth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section LXXX.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Then Kavya the foremost of Bhrigu's line became angry himself. And approaching Vrishaparva where the latter was seated, began to address him without weighing his words. 'O king,' he said, 'sinful acts do not, like the earth, bear fruit immediately. But gradually and secretly do they cut away the roots of their doer. Such fruit is seen either in one's own self, in one's son, or in one's grandson. Sins must bear their fruit. Like rich food they can never be digested. And because ye slew the Brahmana Kacha, the grand-son of Angira, who was virtuous, acquainted with the precepts of religion, and attentive to his duties, while residing in my abode, even for this act of slaughter—unfit as he was for it—and for the mal-treatment of my daughter too, know, O Vrishaparva, I shall leave thee and thy relatives. Indeed, O king, for this I can no longer stay with thee! Dost thou, O Asura chief, think that I am a raving liar? Thou makest little of thy offence without seeking to correct it.'

"Vrishaparva then said, 'O son of Bhrigu, never have I attributed want of virtue or falsehoood to thee! Indeed, virtue and truth ever dwell in thee! Be graceful unto me! O Bhargava, if leaving us thou really goest hence, we shall then go into the depths of the ocean. Indeed, there is nothing else for us to do.'

"Sukra then replied, 'Ye Asuras, whether ye go into the depths of the ocean or fly away in all directions, I care little. I am unable to bear my daughter's grief. My daughter is ever dear to me. My life dependeth on her. Seek ye to please her. As Vrihaspati ever seeketh the good of Indra, so do I always seek thine by my ascetic merits.'

"Vrishaparva then said, 'O Bhargava, thou art the absolute master of whatever is possessed by the Asura chiefs in this world, their elephants, kine, and horses, of even my own self.'

"Sukra then answered, 'If it is true, O great Asura, that I am the lord of all the wealth of the Asuras, then go and gratify Deva-yani.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "And when the great Kavya had been so addressed by Vrishaparva he then went to Deva-yani and told her all. Deva-yani, however, quickly replied, 'O Bhargava, if thou art truly the lord of the Asura king himself and of all his wealth, then let the king himself come to me and say so in my presence.' Vrishaparva then approached Deva-yani and told her, 'O Deva-yani of sweet smiles, whatever thou desirest I am willing to give thee however difficult it may be to grant the same? Deva-yani answered, 'I desire Sharmishta with a thousand maids to wait on me. She must also follow me to where my father may bestow me.'

"Vrishaparva then commanded a maid-servant in attendance on him, saying, 'Go and quickly bring Sharmishta hither. Let her also accomplish what Deva-yani wisheth.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "The maid servant then repairing to Sharmishta told her, 'O amiable Sharmishta, rise and follow me. Accomplish thou the good of thy relatives. Urged by Deva-yani, the Brahmana (Sukra) is on the point of leaving his disciples (the Asuras.) O sinless one, thou must do what Deva-yani wisheth!' Sharmishta replied, 'I shall cheerfully do what Deva-yani wisheth. Urged by Deva-yani Sukra is calling me. Both Sukra and Deva-yani must not leave the Asuras through my fault.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Commanded by her father then, Sharmishta, accompained by a thousand maidens, soon came, in a palanquin, out of her father's excellent mansion. And approaching Deva-yani said, 'With my thousand maids I am thy waiting-woman. And I shall follow thee where thy father may bestow thee.' Deva-yani replied, 'I am the daughter of one who chaunteth the praises of thy father, and who beggeth and accepteth alms. Thou, on the other hand, art the daughter of one who is adored. How canst thou be my waiting woman?'

"Sharmishta answered, 'One must by all means contribute to the happiness of one's afflicted relatives. Therefore shall I follow thee wherever thy father may bestow thee!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "When Sharmishtā had thus promised to be Deva-yani's waiting-woman, the latter, O

king, then spoke unto her father thus :—'O best of all excellent Brahmanas, I am gratified. I shall now enter the Asura capital. I now know that thy science and power of knowledge are not futile.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "That best of Brahmanas, of great reputation, thus addressed by his daughter, then entered the Asura capital in gladness of heart. And the Danavas worshipped him with great reverence."

And thus ends the eightieth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXXI.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "After some length of time, O best of monarchs, Deva-yani of the fairest complexion went into the same woods for purposes of pleasure. And accompanied by Sharmishta with her thousand maids she reached the same spot and began to wander in freedom. And waited upon by all those companions she felt herself supremely happy. And sporting with light hearts, they began drinking the honey of flowers, eating various kinds of fruits and biting some. And just at this time, king Yayati the son of Nahusha, again came there in course of his wanderings, tired and thirsty, in search of deer. And the king saw Deva-yani and Sharmishta, and those other maidens also, all decked with celestial ornaments and full of voluptuous langour in consequence of the flowery honey they drank. And Deva-yani of sweet smiles, unrivalled in beauty and possessing the fairest complexion amongst them all, was reclining at her ease. And she was waited upon by Sharmishta gently pressing her feet.

"And Yayati seeing all this, said, 'O amiable ones, I would ask ye both your names and parentage. It seems that these two thousand maids wait on ye two.' Hearing the monarch, Deva-yani then answered, 'Listen to me, O best of men. Know thou that I am the daughter of Sukra the spiritual guide of the Asuras. This my companion is my waiting-woman. She

attendeth on me wherever I go. She is Sharmishta the daughter of the Asura king Vrishaparva.'

"Yayati then asked, 'I am curious to know why is this thy companion of fair eye-brows—this maiden of the fairest complexion—the daughter of the Asura chief—thy waiting-woman!' Deva-yani replied, 'O best of kings, everything resulteth from the fates. Knowing this also to be the result of fate, cease to wonder at it. Thy features and attire are both like a king's. Thy speech also is fair and correct as that of the Veda. Tell me thy name, whence thou art, and whose son also!'

"The monarch replied, 'During my vow of Brahmacharya, the whole Vedas entered my ears. I am known as Yayati, a king's son and a king myself.' Deva-yani then enquired, 'O king, what for hast thou come here? Is it to gather lotuses, or to angle or to hunt?' Yayati said, 'O amiable one, thirsty in the pursuit of deer have I come hither in search of water. I am very much fatigued. I wait but your commands to leave this spot.'

"Deva-yani answered, 'With my two thousand damsels and my waiting-woman Sharmishta, I wait but your commands. Prosperity to thee! Be thou my friend and lord!'

"Yayati hearing this replied, 'Beautiful one, I do not deserve thee. Thou art the daughter of Sukra, far my superior. Thy father cannot bestow thee even on great kings.' To this Deva-yani: 'Brahmanas have before this been mixed with the Khatrias, and Khatrias with Brahmanas. Thou art the son of a Rishi and a Rishi thyself. Therefore, O son of Nahusha, marry thou me!' Yayati, however, replied, 'O thou of the handsomest features, the four orders have, indeed, sprung from one body. But their duties and purity are not the same. The Brahmana is truly superior to all!' Deva-yani answered, 'This hand of mine hath never been touched before by any man save thee! Therefore do I accept thee for my lord. How, indeed, shall any other man touch my hand which hath before been touched by thyself who art a Rishi?' Yayati then said, 'The wise know that a Brahmana is more to be avoided than an angry snake of virulent poison or a

blazing fire of spreading flames.' Deva-yani then told the monarch, 'O thou bull amongst men, why dost thou, indeed, say that a Brahmana should be more avoided than an angry snake of virulent poison or a blazing fire of spreading flames?' The monarch answered, 'The snake but killeth only one. The sharpest weapon slayeth but a single person. The Brahmana, if angry, destroyeth whole cities and kingdoms. Therefore, O timid one, do I deem a Brahmana as more to be avoided than either. I cannot hence wed thee, O amiable one, unless thy father bestoweth thee on me!' Deva-yani then said, 'Thou art, indeed, chosen by me. And, O king, it is understood then that thou wilt accept me if my father bestoweth me on thee. Thou need'st not fear to accept my poor self if bestowed on thee. Thou dost not, indeed, ask for me.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " After this, Deva-yani quickly sent a maid-servant to her father. The maid represented to Sukra everything as it had happened. And as soon as he had heard all, Bhargava came and saw Yayati. And beholding Bhargava come, Yayati, that lord of the earth, bowing down worshipped and adored that Brahmana, and stood with joined hands in expectation of his commands.

"And Deva-yani then said, 'This, O father, is the son of Nahusha. He took hold of my hand when I was in distress. I bow to thee. Bestow me unto him. I shall not wed any other person in the world!' Sukra exclaimed, 'O thou of splendid courage, thou hast, indeed, been accepted as her husband by this my dear daughter! I bestow her on thee. Therefore, O son of Nahusha, accept her as thy wife!'

"Yayati then said, 'I beseech the boon, O Brahmana, that by so doing, the sin of begetting a mixed caste might not touch me!' Sukra, however, assured him by saying, 'I shall absolve thee from sin. Ask thou the boon that thou desirest! Fear not to wed her. I grant thee absolution! Maintain virtuously thy wife—the slender-waisted Deva-yani! Transports of happiness be thine in her company. This other maiden, Vrishaparva's daughter Sharmishta, should ever be regarded by thee. But thou shalt not summon her to thy bed!' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus addressed by Sukra, Yayati

then walked round the Brahmana. And the king then went through the auspicious ceremony of marriage according to the rites of the *Shastras*. And having received from Sukra a rich treasure in the excellent Deva-yani with Sharmishta and those two thousand maidens, and duly honored also by Sukra himself and the Asuras, the best of monarchs then, commanded by the high-souled Bhargava, returned to his capital with a joyous heart."

And so ends the eighty-first Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXXII.

(Sambhava Parva continued)

Vaisampayana said, "Yayati then, having returned to his capital which was like unto the city itself of Indra, entered his inner apartments and established there his bride Deva-yani. And the monarch, directed by Deva-yani, established Vrishaparva's daughter Sharmishta in a mansion especially erected near the artificial forest of Asokas in his gardens. And the king surrounded Vrishaparva's daughter Sharmishta with a thousand maids and honored her by making every arrangement regarding her food and garments. But it was with Deva-yani that the royal son of Nahusha sported like a celestial for many years in joy and bliss. And when her season came, the fair-Deva-yani conceived. And she brought forth as her first child a fine boy. And when thousand years had passed away, Vrishaparva's daughter Sharmishta having attained to puberty saw that her season too had come. And she became thoughtful. And she said to herself, 'My season hath arrived. But I have not yet chosen a husband. O what hath happened! What should I do! How am I to obtain the fruition of my wishes! Deva-yani hath become a mother. My youth is destined to pass away in vain. Shall I choose him also for my husband whom Deva-yani hath chosen? Indeed, this is my resolve: that monarch should give me a son. Will not the virtuous one grant me an interview in private?'"

Vaisampayana continued, "While Sharmishta was thus

busy with her thoughts, the king wandering listlessly came to that very forest of Asokas, and beholding Sharmishta before him, stood there in silence. Then Sharmishta of beautiful smiles seeing the monarch before her with nobody to witness what might pass, approaching the monarch said, joining her hands, 'O son of Nahusha, no one can behold the ladies that dwell in the inner apartments of Shoma, of Indra, of Vishnu, of Yama, of Varuna, and of thine. Thou knowest, O king, that I am both handsome and well-born. I solicit thee, O king! My season hath arrived: see that it goeth not in vain.'

"Yayati answered, 'Well do I know that the honor of birth is thine, born as thou art in the proud race of the Danavas. Thou art also gifted with beauty. Indeed, I do not see even the speck of a fault in thy features. But Usana commanded me while I was united with Deva-yani that never should Vrishaparva's daughter be summoned to my bed.'

"Sharmishta then said, 'It hath been said, O king, that it is not sinful to lie on the occasion of a joke, in respect of women sought to be enjoyed, on occasions of marriage, in prospect of immediate death and of the loss of one's whole fortune. Lying is excusable on these five occasions. O king, it is false that he is fallen who speaks not the truth when asked. Both Deva-yani and myself have been called hither as companions to serve the same purpose. When, therefore, thou hadst said that thou wouldst confine thyself to one only amongst us, that was a lie thou hadst spoken.' Yayati replied, 'A king should ever be a pattern in the eyes of his people. That monarch certainly meets with destruction who speaks untruths. As for myself, I do not dare speak an untruth even if the greatest loss threatens me.' Sharmishta answered, 'O monarch, one may look upon her friend's husband as her own. One's friend's marriage is the same as one's own. Thou hast been chosen by my friend as her husband. Thou art as much my husband therefore.' Yayati then said, 'It is, indeed, my vow to always grant what one asketh. Thou askest me. Therefore tell me what am I to do?' Sharmishta then said, 'Absolve me, O king, from sin! Protect my virtue! Becoming a mother

by thee let me practise the highest virtue in this world. It is said, O king, that a wife, a slave, and a son, can never earn wealth for themselves. That which they earn always belongeth to him who owneth them. I am, indeed, the slave of of Deva-yani. Thou art Deva-yani's master and lord. Thou art, therefore, O king, my master and lord as much as Deva-yani's. I solicit thee. O fill my wishes!"

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus addressed by Sharmishta, the monarch was persuaded that all she spoke was true. He, therefore, honored Sharmishta by protecting her virtue. And they passed some time together. And taking an affectionate farewell of each other they then separated, each returning to whence he or she had come.

"And it came to pass that Sharmishta of sweet smiles and fair eye-brows conceived in consequence of that connection of hers with that best of monarchs. And, O king, that lotus-eyed lady then in due time brought forth a son of the splendour of a celestial child and of eyes like lotus leaves."

And thus ends the eighty-second Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXXIII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "When Deva-yani of sweet smiles heard of the birth of this child, she became jealous, and, O Bharata, Sharmishta became an object of her unpleasant reflections. And Deva-yani repairing to her addressed her thus:— 'O thou of fair eye-brows what sin is this thou hast committed by yeilding to the influence of lust?' Sharmishta replied, 'A certain Rishi of virtuous soul and fully conversant with the Vedas came to me. Capable of granting boons, he was solicited by me to grant my wishes that were based on considerations of virtue. O thou of sweet smiles, I would not seek the sinful fulfilment of my desires. I tell thee truly that this child of mine is by that Rishi.' Deva-yani answered, 'It is all right if that is the case, O timid one! But if the lineage, name, and family of that Brahmana be known to thee, I should like to

hear them.' Sharmishta replied, 'O thou of sweet smiles, that Rishi, in ascetism and energy is resplendent as the Sun himself. Beholding him, I had not, indeed, the power to make these enquiries!' Deva-yani then said, 'If this is true, if, indeed, thou hast obtained thy child from such a superior Brahmana, then, O Sharmishta, I have no cause of anger.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Having thus talked and laughed with each other, they separated, Deva-yani returning to the palace with the knowledge imparted to her by Sharmishta. And, O king, Yayati also begat in Deva-yani two sons called Yadu and Turvasu who were like Indra and Vishnu. And Sharmishta the daughter of Vrishaparva became mother by the royal sage of three sons in all, named Drahyu, Anu, and Puru.

"And, O king, it so came to pass that one day Deva-yani of sweet smiles accompanied by Yayati went into a solitary part of the woods (in the king's extensive park.) And there she saw three children of celestial beauty playing with perfect trustfulness. And Deva-yani asked in surprise, 'Whose children are these, O king, so handsome, and so like unto the children of the celestials? In splendour and beauty they are like thee I think.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "And Devayani without waiting for a reply from the king, asked the children themselves, 'Ye children, what is your lineage? Who is your father? Answer me truly. I desire to know all.' Those children then pointed to the king with their fore-finger and spoke of Sharmishta as their mother.

"And having said so, the children approached the king to clasp his knees. But the king dared not caress them in the presence of Deva-yani. The boys then left the place weeping in grief and going towards their mother. And the king at this conduct of the boys became very much abashed. But Deva-yani, marking the affection of the children for the king, learnt the secret and addresing Sharmishta said, 'How hast thou dared to do me an injury, being as thou art dependent on me? Dost thou not fear to have recourse once more to that Asura usage of thine?'

"Sharmishta said, 'O thou of sweet smiles, all that I told thee of a Rishi is perfectly true. I have acted rightly and according to the precepts of virtue. Therefore I do not fear thee. When thou hadst chosen the king for thy husband I too chose him for mine. O thou beautiful one, a friend's husband is, according to usage, one's own husband also. Thou art the daughter of a Brahmana and, therefore, deservest my worship and regard. But dost thou not know that this royal sage is held by me in greater esteem still ?' "

Vaisampayana said, "Deva-yani then, hearing those words of hers, exclaimed, O king, thus :—'Thou hast wronged me, O monarch ! I shall not live here any longer.' And saying this she quickly rose, with tearful eyes, to go to her father. And the king was grieved to see her thus. And alarmed greatly, he followed her footsteps endeavouring to appease her wrath. But Deva-yani with eyes red in anger would not desist. Speaking not a word to the king, with eyes bathed in tears, she soon reached the side of her father Usana the son of Kavi. And beholding her father, she stood before him after due salutation. And Yayati also, immediately after, saluted and worshipped Bhargava.

"And Deva-yani said, 'O father, virtue hath been vanquished by vice. The low have risen, the high have fallen. I have been transgressed by Sharmishta the daughter of Vrishaparva. Three sons have been begotten in her by this king Yayati. But, O father, luckless as I am, I have got only two sons ! O son of Bhrigu, this king is renowned for his knowledge of the precepts of religion. But, O Kavya, I tell thee that he hath deviated from the path of rectitude.'

"Sukra, hearing all this, said, 'O monarch, since thou hast made vice thy loved pursuit though fully acquainted with the precepts of religion, therefore shall invincible decrepitude paralyse thee.' Yayati answered, 'Adorable one, I was solicited by the daughter of the Danava king to fructify her season. I did it from a sense of virtue and not from other motives. That male person, who being solicited by a woman in season doth not grant her wishes, is called, O Brahmana, by those cognisant of the Veda as a slayer of the embryo. He who, soli-

cited in secret by a woman full of desire and in season, goeth not unto her, loseth virtue and is called by the learned a killer of the embryo. O son of Bhrigu, for these reasons, and anxious to avoid sin, I went unto Sharmishta.' Sukra then replied, "Thou art dependent on me. Thou shouldst have awaited my command. Having acted falsely in the matter of thy duty, O son of Nahusha, thou hast been guilty of the sin of theft.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "And Yayati the son of Nahusha, thus cursed by the angry Usana, was then divested of his youth and immediately overcome by decrepitude. And Yayati said, 'O son of Bhrigu, I have not yet been satiated with youth or with Deva-yani. Therefore, O Brahmana, be graceful unto me so that decrepitude might not touch me.' Sukra then answered, 'I never speak an untruth. Even now, O king, art thou attacked by decrepitude. But if thou likest, thou art competent to transfer this thy decrepitude to another.' Yayati said, 'O Brahmana, let it be commanded by thee that that son of mine who giveth me his youth shall enjoy my kingdom, and shall achieve both virtue and fame.' Sukra replied, 'O son of Nahusha, thinking of me thou mayst transfer this thy decrepitude to whomsoever thou likest. That son who shall give thee his youth shall become thy successor on the throne. He shall also have long life, wide fame, and a large progeny.'"

Thus ends the eighty-third Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXXIV.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Yayati then, having been overcome with decrepitude, returned to his capital, and summoning his eldest son Yadu who was also the most accomplished, addressed him thus :—'Dear child, from the curse of Kavya called also Usana, decrepitude and wrinkles and whiteness of hair have come over me! But I have not been gratified yet with the enjoyment of youth. Thou, O Yadu, take this my weakness along with my decrepitude. I shall enjoy with thy youth,

And when a full thousand years have elapsed, returning to thee thy youth I shall take back my weakness with this decrepitude.'

"Yadu replied, 'There are innumerable inconveniences in decrepitude, in respect of drinking and eating. Therefore, O king, I shall not take thy decrepitude. This is, indeed, my determination. White hair on the head, cheerlessness, a relaxation of the nerves, wrinkles all over the body, deformities, weakness of the limbs, emaciation, incapacity to work, defeat at the hands of friends and companions, these are the consequences of decrepitude. Therefore, O king, I desire not to take it. O king, thou hast many sons some of whom are dearer to thee. Thou art acquainted with the precepts of virtue: ask some other son of thine to take thy decrepitude.'

"Yayati replied, 'Thou art sprung from my heart, O son, but thou givest me not thy youth. Therefore thy children shall never be kings.' And he continued, addressing another son of his, 'O Turvasu, take thou this weakness of mine along with my decrepitude. With thy youth, O son, I like to enjoy the pleasures of life. And after the expiration of a full thousand years I shall give thee thy youth, and take back from thee my weakness and decrepitude!'

"Turvasu then replied, "I do not like decrepitude, O father! It destroyeth all appetites and enjoyments, strength and beauty of person, the intellect, and even life.' Yayati told him, 'Thou art sprung from my heart, O son! But thou givest me not thy youth. Therefore, O Turvasu, thy race shall be extinct. Wretch, thou shalt be the king of those whose practices and precepts are impure, amongst whom men of inferior blood procreate children in women of superior blood, who live on meat, who are mean, who hesitate not to appropriate the wives of their superiors, whose practices are as those of birds and beasts, who are sinful, and non-Aryan.'"

Visampayana said, "Yayati having thus cursed his son Turvasu then addressed Sharmishta's son Druhyu thus:—'O Druhyu, take thou for a thousand years my decrepitude destructive of complexion and personal beauty and give me thy youth. And when a thousand years have passed away I shall return thee thy youth and take back my own weakness,

and decrepitude.' To this Druhyu answered, 'O king, one that is decrepit can never enjoy elephants and cars and horses and women. Even his voice becometh hoarse. Therefore I do not desire (to take) thy decrepitude.' Yayati told him, 'Thou art sprung from my heart, O son. But thou refusest to give me thy youth. Therefore thy most cherished desires shall never be accomplished. Thou shalt be king, only in name, of that region where there are no roads for the passage of horses and cars and elephants, and good vehicles, and asses, and goats and bullocks, and palanquins; where there is swimming only by rafts and floats.' Yayati next addressed Anu and said, Thou, O Anu, take my weakness and decrepitude. I shall with thy youth enjoy the pleasures of life for a thousand years.' To this Anu replied, 'Those that are decrepit always eat like children and are always impure. They can not pour libations on Agni in proper times. Therefore I do not like to take thy decrepitude.' Yayati told him, 'Thou art sprung from my heart. Thou givest me not thy youth. Thou findest so many faults in decrepitude. Therefore shall decrepitude overcome thee. And, O Anu, thy progeny also, as soon as they attain to youth, shall die. And thou shalt also not be able to perform sacrifices before Agni.'

"Yayati at last turned to his youngest child Puru, and addressing him said, 'Thou art, O Puru, my youngest son. But thou shalt be the first of all. Decrepitude, wrinkles, and whiteness of hair have come over me in consequence of the curse of Kavya called also Usana. I have not yet, however, been satiated with youth. O Puru take thou this my weakness and decrepitude! With thy youth I shall enjoy, for some years, the pleasures of life. And when a thousand years have passed away I shall give thee thy youth and take back my own decrepitude.'"

Vaisampayana said, "Thus addressed by the king, Puru answered with humility, 'I shall do, O monarch, as thou biddest me. I shall take, O king, thy weakness and decrepitude. Take thou my youth and enjoy as thou listeth the pleasures of life. Covered with thy decrepitude and becoming as one old, I shall, as thou commandest, continue to live, giving to

thee my youth.' Yayati then said, 'O Puru, I have been gratified with thee! And being gratified I tell thee that the people of thy kingdom shall have all their desires accomplished.'

"And having said this, the great ascetic Yayati, then thinking of Kavya, transferred his decrepitude unto the body of the high-souled Puru."

And thus ends the eighty-fourth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXXV.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "And the excellent monarch Yayati the son of Nahusha, having received Puru's youth, became exceedingly gratified. And with it he once more began to indulge in his favorite pursuits to the full extent of his desires and the limit of his powers, according to season, so as to derive the greatest pleasure thereform. And, O king, in nothing that he did, he acted against the precepts of his religion as behoved him well. He gratified the gods by his sacrifices; the *pitris* by *Sradhas*; the poor by his charities; all excellent Brahmanas, by ful-filling their desire; all persons entitled to the rites of hospitality, by food and drink; the Vaisayas, by protection; and the Sudras, by kindness. And the king repressed all criminals by proper punishments. And Yayati, gratifying all sections of his subjects, protected them virtuously like another Indra. And the monarch possessed of the prowess of a lion, with youth and every object of enjoyment under control, enjoyed unlimited happiness without transgressing the precepts of religion. And the king became very happy in thus being able to enjoy all the excellent objects of his desire. And he was only sorry when he thought that those thousand years would come to an end. And having obtained youth for a thousand years, the king acquainted with the mysteries of time, and watching proper *Kalas* and *Kashtas*, sported with (the celestial damsel) Viswachi, sometimes in the beautiful gardens of Indra, sometimes in Alaka (the city of Kuvera), and sometimes on the summit of

the mountain Meru on the north. And when the virtuous monarch saw that the thousand years were full, summoning his son Puru he addressed him thus :—'O thou oppressor of the foe, with thy youth, O son, I have enjoyed the pleasures of life, each according to its season, to the full extent of my desires,—to the limit of my powers. Our desires, however, are never gratified by indulgence. On the other hand, with indulgence they only flame up like fire with libations of sacrificial butter. If a single person were owner of everything on earth, —all its yield of paddy and barley, its silver, gold, and gems, its animals and women, he would not yet be content. Thirst of enjoyment, therefore, should be abandoned. Indeed, true happiness is theirs who have cast off their thirst for the objects of the earth,—a thirst which is difficult to be cast off by the wicked and the sinful, which faileth not with failing life, and which is truly the fatal desease of man. My heart hath for a full thousand years been fixed upon the objects of desire. My thirst for these, however, without abating, increaseth day by day. Therefore shall I cast it off, and fixing my mind on Brahma shall I pass the rest of my days with the innocent deer of the forest, peacefully and without affection for any worldly object. And, O Puru, I have been exceedingly gratified with thee! Prosperity be thine! Receive back this thy youth. Receive thou also my kingdom. Thou art, indeed, that son of mine who has done me the greatest of services.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "And then Yayati, the son of Nahusha, received back his decrepitude. And his son Puru also received back his own youth. And Yayati was desirous of installing Puru his youngest son on the throne. But the four orders with the Brahmanas at their head then addressed the monarch thus :—'O king, how shalt thou bestow thy kingdom on Puru passing over thy eldest son Yadu born of Deva-yani and therefore the grandson of the great Sukra? Indeed, Yadu is thy eldest son ; after him hath been born Turvasu ; and of Sharmishta's sons, the first is Druhyu, then Anu, and then Puru. How doth the youngest deserve the throne passing all his elder brothers over? This we represent to thee : O, conform to virtuous practice!'

"Yayati then said, 'Ye four orders with Brahmanas at their head, hear ye my words, as to why my kingdom should not be given to my eldest son! My commands have been disobeyed by my eldest son Yadu. The wise say that he is no son who disobeyeth his father. That son, however, who doth the bidding of his parents, who seeketh their good, who is agreeable to them, is, indeed, the best of sons. I have been disregarded by Yadu, and by Turvasu too. Much have I been disregarded by Druhyu and Anu also. By Puru alone hath my word been obeyed. By him have I been much regarded. Therefore shall the youngest be my heir. He took my decrepitude. Indeed, Puru is my friend! He did what was so agreeable to me! It hath also been commanded by Sukra himself—the son of Kavi, that that son of mine who should obey me become king after me and bring the whole earth under his sway. I therefore beseech ye, let Puru be installed on the throne!'

"The people then said, 'True it is, O king, that that son who is accomplished and always seeketh the good of his parents, deserveth prosperity even if he be the youngest. Therefore doth Puru, who hath done thee good, deserve the crown. And as Sukra himself hath commanded it, we have nothing to say to it.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "And the son of Nahusha, thus addressed by the contented people, then installed his son Puru on the throne. And having bestowed his kingdom on Puru, the monarch performed the initiatory ceremonies for retiring into the woods. And soon after he left his capital, followed by Brahmanas and ascetics.

"And the sons of Yadu are known by the name of the *Yadavas*; while those of Turvasu have come to be called the *Yavanas*. And the sons of Druhyu are the Bhojas, while those of Anu the Mlechchas. The progeny of Puru, however, are the Pauravas amongst whom, O monarch, thou art born, inorder to rule for a thousand years with thy passions under complete control!"

And thus ends the eighty-fifth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section LXXXVI.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "King Yayati the son of Nahusha, having thus installed his dear son on the throne, became exceedingly happy, and entered into the woods to lead the life of a hermit. And having lived for some time in the forest in the company of Brahmanas, observing many rigid vows, eating of fruits and roots, patiently bearing privations of all sorts, the monarch at last ascended to heaven. And having ascended to heaven he lived there in bliss. But soon, however, he was hurled down by Indra. And it hath been heard by me, O king, that though hurled from heaven, Yayati, without reaching the surface of the earth, stayed in the firmament. I have heard that some time after he again entered the region of the celestials in the company of Vasuman, Ashtaka, Pratarddana, and Shivi."

Janamejaya then said, "I desire to hear from thee in detail why Yayati having first obtained admission into heaven was hurled therefrom and why also he gained re-admittance. Let all this, O Brahmana, be narrated by thee in the presence of these Brahmana sages. Yayati the lord of the earth was, indeed, like the chief of the celestials. The progenitor of the extensive race of the Kurus, he was of the splendour of the Sun! I desire to hear in full the story of his life both in heaven and on earth, illustrious as he was, of world-wide celebrity, and of wonderful achievements!"

Vaisampayana said, "Indeed, I shall recite to thee the excellent story of Yayati's adventures on earth and in heaven. That story is sacred and destroyeth the sins of those that hear it.

"King Yayati the son of Nahusha, having installed his youngest son Puru on the throne after casting his sons with Yadu for their eldest amongst the Mlechchas, entered the woods to lead the life of a hermit. And the king eating of fruits and roots lived for sometime in the forest. With mind and passions under complete control, the king gratified by

sacrifices both the *pitris* and the gods. And he poured libations of clarified butter into fire according to the rites prescribed for those leading the Vanaprasta mode of life. And the illustrious one entertained guests and strangers with fruits of the forest and clarified butter, while he himself supported life by gleaning scattered corn-seeds. And the king led this sort of life for a full thousand years. And observing the vow of silence and with mind under complete control, he passed one full year living upon air alone and without sleep. And he passed another year practising the severest austerities in the midst of four fires around and the sun overhead. And living upon air alone, he stood erect for six months on one leg. And then the king, of sacred deeds, ascended to heaven covering heaven as well as the Earth (with the fame of his achievements.)

And so ends the eighty-sixth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXXVII.

(Sambhava Parva continued)

Vaisampayana said, " While that king of kings dwelt in heaven—the home of the celestials—he was reverenced by the gods, the Sadhyas, the Marutas, and the Vasus. Of sacred deeds, and mind under complete control, the monarch used to repair now and then from the abode of the celestials unto the region of Brahma. And it hath been heard by me that he dwelt for a long time in heaven.

" One day that best of kings Yayati went to Indra and there in course of conversation the lord of the Earth was asked by Indra as follows :—

' What didst thou say, O king, when thy son Puru took thy decrepitude on earth and when thou didst bestow upon him thy kingdom ?'

" Yayati answered, ' I told him that the whole country between the rivers Ganges and the Yamuna is thine. That is, indeed, the central region of the Earth : while the outlying regions are to be the dominions of thy brothers. I also

told him that those without anger are ever superior to those under its sway : those disposed to forgive are ever superior to the unforgiving. Man is superior to the lower animals. Among men again the learned are superior to the unlearned. If wronged thou shouldst not wrong in return. One's wrath, if disregarded, burneth one's own self ; while he that regardeth it not taketh away all the virtues of him that exhibiteth it. Never shouldst thou pain others by cruel speeches. Never subdue thy foes by despicable means ; and never utter such scorching and sinful words as may torture others. He that pricketh as with thorns men by means of hard and cruel words, thou must know ever carrieth in his mouth a Rakshasa. Prosperity and luck fly away at his very sight. Thou shouldst ever keep the virtuous before thee as thy models : thou shouldst ever in retrospect compare thy acts with those of the virtuous : thou shouldst ever disregard the hard words of the wicked. Thou shouldst ever make the conduct of the wise the model upon which thou art to act thyself. The man hurt by the arrows of cruel speech emitted from one's lips, weepeth day and night. Indeed, these strike at the core of the body. Therefore the wise never fling these around at others. There is nothing in the three worlds by which thou canst worship and adore the dieties better than by kindness, friendship, charity, and sweet speeches unto all. Therefore shouldst thou always utter words that soothe, never those that scorch. And thou shouldst regard those that deserve thy regards ; thou shouldst always give but never beg.' "

Thus ends the eighty-seventh Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXXVIII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " After this, Indra again asked Yayati, 'Thou hadst retired into the woods, O king, after accomplishing all thy duties. O Yayati son of Nahusha, I would ask thee, with whom art thou equal in ascetic austerities ?' Yayati then answered, 'O Vasava, I do not, in ascetic austerities,

behold my equal among men, the clestials, the Gandharvas, and the great Rishis!' Indra then said, 'O monarch, because thou dost disregard those that are thy superiors, thy equals, and even thy inferiors, without, in fact, knowing their real merits, therefore, thy virtues have suffered a diminution and thou must fall from heaven!' Yayati then said, 'O Sakra, if, indeed, my virtues have really sustained a diminution and I must on that account fall down from heaven, I desire, O chief of the celestials, that I may at least fall among the virtuous and the honest.' Indra then replied, 'Yes O king, thou shalt fall among those that are virtuous and wise; and thou shalt acquire also much renown. And after this experience of thine, O Yayati, never more disregard those that are thy superiors or even thy equals.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Upon this, Yayati fell from the region of the celestials. And as he was falling, he was beheld by the foremost of royal sages Ashtaka, the protector of his own religion. And Ashtaka beholding him enquired, 'Who art thou, O youth, of beauty equal to that of Indra himself, in splendour blazing as the fire, thus falling from high! Art thou that foremost of sky-ranging bodies—the sun—emerging from dark masses of clouds? Indeed, beholding thee falling from the solar course, possessed of immeasurable energy and the splendour of fire or the sun, every one is exercised as to what it is that is so falling, and is, besides, deprived of consciousness! Beholding thee in the path of the celestials, possessed of energy like that of either Sakra, Surya, or Vishnu, we have approached thee to ascertain the truth! If thou hadst first asked us to who we are, we would never have been guilty of the incivility of asking thee first. We now ask thee who thou art and why dost thou approach hither? Let thy fears be dispelled; let thy woes and afflictions cease! Thou art now in the presence of the virtuous and the wise. Even Sakra himself—the slayer of Vala—can not here do thee an injury! O thou of the prowess of the chief of the celestials, the wise and the virtuous are the support of their brethren in grief. Here there are none but the wise and virtuous like thee, assembled together! Therefore stay thou here in peace.

Fire alone hath power to give heat. The Earth alone hath power to infuse life into the seed. The Sun alone hath power to illuminate everything. So thee guest alone hath power to command the virtuous and the wise.' "

Thus ends the eighty-eighth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXXXIX.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

" Yayati said, 'I am Yayati the son of Nahusha and the father of Puru. For having disregarded every creature, cast off from the region of the celestials and of Rishis crowned with success, I am falling down, my righteousness having sustained a diminution. In years I am older than ye. Therefore have I not saluted ye first. Indeed, the Brahmanas always regard him who is older in years or superior in learning or ascetic merit.'

" Ashtaka then replied, 'Thou sayest, O monarch, that he who is older in years is worthy of regard. But it is said that he is truly worthy of worship who is superior in learning and ascetic merit.'

" Yayati to this : 'It is said that sin destroyeth the merit of our virtuous acts. Vanity containeth the element of that which leadeth to hell. The virtuous never follow in the wake of the vicious. They act in such a way that their religious merit always increaseth. I myself had great religious merit. All that, however, is gone. I would scarcely be able to regain it even by my best exertions. Beholding my fate, he that is bent upon achieving his own good, will certainly suppress vanity. He who having acquired great wealth performeth meritorious sacrifices, who having acquired all kinds of learning remaineth humble, and who having studied the whole Vedas devoteth himself to asceticism with a heart withdrawn from all mundane enjoyments, goeth to heaven. None should exult for having acquired great wealth. None should feel vain on having studied the whole Vedas. In the world men are of different dispositions. Destiny is supreme. Both

power and exertion are fruitless. Knowing destiny to be all-powerful, the wise, whatever their portion, should neither exult nor grieve. When creatures know that both weal and woe are dependent on destiny and not on their own exertion or power, they should neither grieve nor exult remembering that destiny is all powerful. The wise should ever live contented, neither grieving at woe nor exulting at weal. When destiny is supreme, both grief and exultation are both unbecoming. O Ashtaka, I never suffer myself to be overcome by fear, nor do I ever entertain grief, knowing for certain that I shall be in the world what the great disposer of all hath ordained. Insects and worms, all oviparous creatures, vegetable existences, all crawling animals, vermin, the fish in water, stones, grass, wood, in fact, all created things, when they are freed from the effects of their acts, are united with the supreme Soul. Happiness and misery are both transient. Therfore, O Ashtaka, why should I grieve ? We can never know how are we to act in order to avoid misery. Therefore none should grieve at misery.'

"Possessed of every virtue king Yayati who was the maternal grand-father of Ashtaka, while staying in the firmament, at the conclusion of his speech was again questioned by Ashtaka. The latter said, 'O king of kings, tell me in detail of all those regions that thou hast visited and enjoyed, as well as the periods for which thou hast enjoyed each. Thou speakest of the precepts of religion even like the clever masters acquainted with the acts and sayings of great beings !' Yayati then replied, 'I was a great king on earth owning the whole world for my dominion. Leaving it I acquired by force of religious merit many high regions. There I dwelt for a full thousand years, and then I attained to a very high region which is the abode of Indra, of extraordinary beauty, having a thousand gates, and extending a hundred *yojanas* all around. There too I dwelt for a full thousand years and then attained to a higher region still. That is the region of perfect beatitude where decay is never,—the region, *viz*, of the creator and the lord ofthe earth, so difficult of attainment ! There also Idwelt for a full thousand years, and then attained to another

very high region, *viz*, that of the god of gods (Vishnu) where too I have lived in happiness. Indeed, I have dwelt in various regions, adored by all the celestials, and possessed of prowess and splendour equal unto those of the celestials themselves. Capable of assuming any form at will, I have lived for a hundred *Ayutas* of years in the gardens of Nandana, sporting with the Apsaras and even beholding, numberless beautiful trees clad in flowery vestments and shedding delicious perfumes all around. And after many many years had elapsed, while still residing there in the enjoyment of perfect beatitude, the celestial messenger of grim visage one day, in a loud and deep voice, thrice shouted to me, *Ruined, Ruined, Ruined*. O thou lion among kings, this much I remember. I have then fallen from Nandana, my religious merits gone! I heard in the skies, O king, the voices of the celestials exclaiming in grief,—"Alas! What misfortune! Yayati, with his religious merits destroyed, though virtuous and of sacred deeds, is falling!"—And as I was falling, I asked them loudly, "Where, ye clestials, where are those wise amongst whom I am to fall?" They then pointed out to me this sacred sacrificial region belonging to ye. And beholding the curls of smoke blackening the atmosphere and scenting the perfume of clarified butter poured incessantly into the fire, and guided thereby, I am approaching this region of yours, glad at heart that I come amongst ye.'"

And so ends the eight-ninth Section of the Sambhava in the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXL.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

"Ashtaka then said, 'Capable of assuming any form at will, thou hast lived for an hundred *Ayuta* years in the gardens of Nandana. For what cause, O thou foremost of those that flourished in the *Krita* age, hast thou been compelled to leave that region and come hither?' Yayati answered, 'As kinsmen, friends, and relatives forsake, in this world, those whose wealth disappears, so in the other world, the celestials

with Indra as their chief forsake him who hath lost his righteousness.' Ashtaka then said, 'I am extremely anxious to know how in the other world men can lose virtue. Tell me also, O king, what regions are attainable by what courses of action. Thou art acquainted, I know, with the acts and sayings of great beings!'

"Yayati answered, 'O thou pious one, they that speak of their own merits are doomed to suffer the pains of the hell called Bhauma. Though really emaciated and lean, they appear to grow on earth (in the shape of their sons and grandsons) only to become food for vultures, dogs, and jackals. Therefore, O king, this highly censurable and wicked vice should be repressed. I have now, O king, told thee all. Tell me what more I shall say.'

"Ashtaka said, 'When life is destroyed with age, vultures, peacocks, insects, and worms eat up the human body. Where doth man then reside? How doth he also come again to life? I have never heard of any hell called *Bhauma* on earth.'

"Yayati answered, 'After the dissolution of the body, man, according to his acts, re-entereth the womb of his mother and stayeth there in an indistinct form, and soon after assuming a distinct and visible shape re-appeareth in the world and walketh on its surface. This is that Earth-hell (*Bhauma*) where he falleth, for he beholdeth not the termination of his existence and acteth not towards his emancipation. Some dwell for sixty thousand years, some for eighty-thousand years in heaven; and then they fall. And as they fall they are attacked by certain Rakshasas belonging to the world in the form of sons, grandsons, and other relatives that withdraw their hearts from acting for their own emancipation.'

"Ashtaka then asked, 'For what sin are beings when they fall from heaven attacked by these fierce and sharp-toothed Rakshasas? Why are they not reduced to annihilation? How do they again enter the womb, furnished with the senses?'

"Yayati answered, 'After falling from heaven, the being becometh a subtile substance living in water. This water becometh the semen which is the seed of vitality. Thence entering the mother's womb on the womanly season, it de-

velopeth into the embryo and next into visible life like the fruit from the flower. And entering trees, plants, and other vegetable substances, water, air, earth, and space, that watery seed of life becometh of quadrupedal or bipedal form. This is the case with all creatures that you see.'

"Ashtaka said, 'O tell me, I ask thee because I have my doubts! Doth a being that hath received a human form enter the womb in its own shape or in some other? How doth it also acquire its distinct and visible shape, eyes and ears, and consciousness as well? Questioned by me, O explain it all! Thou art, O father, one acquainted with the acts and sayings of great beings!' Yayati answered, 'According to the merits of one's acts, the being that in a subtile form co-inheres in the semen that is dropped into the womb is attracted by atmospheric force for purposes of re-birth. It then developeth there in course of time, first becoming the embryo, and is next furnished with the visible physical organism. Coming out of the womb in course of time it becometh conscious of its existence as man, and by his ears becometh sensible of sound; by his eyes, of color and form; by his nose, of scent; by his tongue, of taste; by his whole body, of touch; and by his mind, of ideas. It is thus, O Ashtaka, that the gross and visible body developeth from the subtile essence.'

"Ashtaka asked, 'After death, the body is burnt, buried, or otherwise destroyed. Reduced to nothing upon such dissolution, by what principle is he again revived? Yayati said, 'O thou lion among kings, the person that is dead assumeth a subtile form and retaining consciousness of all his acts as in a dream entereth some other form with a spred quicker than of air itself. The virtuous attain to a superior, and the vicious to an inferior form of existence. The vicious become worms and insects. I have nothing more to say, O thou of great and pure soul! I have told thee how beings are born after development of embryonic forms as four-footed, two-footed, six-footed, and so. What more wilt thou ask me?'

"Ashtaka said, 'How, O father, do men attain to those superior regions whence there is no return to earthly life? Is it by asceticism or knowledge? How also may one

gradually attain to felicitous regions? Asked by me, O tell it in full!'

"Yayati answered, 'The wise say that for men there are seven gates through which admission may be gained into Heaven: these are Asceticism, Gift, Quiet of mind, Self-command, Modesty, Simplicity, and Kindness to all creatures. The wise also say that a person loseth all these in consequence of vanity. That man who having acquired knowledge regardeth himself as learned, and with his learning destroyeth the reputation of others, never attaineth to regions of indestructible felicity. That knowledge also doth not make the possessor competent to attain to Brahma. Study, the vow of silence, worship before fire, and sacrifices, these four remove all fear. When however these are mixed with vanity, instead of removing, they cause fear. The wise should never exult on receiving honors; nor should they grieve at insults. For it is the wise alone that honor the wise; the wicked never act like the virtuous. I have given away so much—I have performed so many sacrifices—I have studied so much—I have observed these vows,—*such* vanity is the root of fear. Therefore thou must not indulge such feelings. Those learned men who accept as their support the unchangeable, inconceivable Brahma alone that ever showereth blessings on persons virtuous as thee, enjoy perfect peace here and hereafter!'"

And thus ends the ninetieth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXLI.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Ashtaka said, 'Those congnisant with the Vedas differ in opinion as to how the followers of each of the four modes of life, *viz*, *Grihastas*, *Bhikshus*, *Brahmacharis*, and *Vanaprashtas*, are to conduct themselves in order to acquire religious merit.'

"Yayati answered, 'These are what a Brahmachari must do. While dwelling in the abode of his preceptor, he must receive lessons only when his preceptor summons him to do

so ; he must attend to the service of his preceptor without waiting for the commands of the latter ; he must rise from bed before his preceptor riseth, and go to bed after his preceptor goeth thereto. He must be humble, must have his passions under complete control, must be patient, vigilant, and devoted to study. It is then only that he can achieve success. It hath been said in the oldest Upanishada that a *grihastā* acquiring wealth by honest means should perform sacrifices ; he should ever give in charity, should perform the rites of hospitality unto all arriving at his abode, and should never use anything without giving a portion thereof to others. A Muni without search for food should live in the woods depending on his own vigour ; should abstain from all vicious acts ; should give away in charity, should never inflict pain on any creature. It is then only that he can achieve success. He, indeed, is a true Bhikshu who doth not support himself by any manual arts, who possesseth numerous accomplishments, who hath his passions under complete control, who is unconnected with all worldly concerns, who sleepeth not under the shelter of a house-holder's roof, who is without wife, and who going a little way every day, travelleth over a large extent of country. A learned man should adopt the Vanaprashta mode of life after performance of the necessary rites, when he hath been able to control his appetites for enjoyment and desire of acquiring valuable possessions. When one dieth in the woods while leading the Vanaprashta mode of life, he maketh his ancestors and succesors, numbering ten generations including himself, fuse with the Divine essence.'

"Ashataka asked, 'How many kinds of *Munis* are there, and how many kinds of *Mounis* (observers of the vow of silence) ?'

"Yayati answered, 'He, indeed, is a Muni who, though dwelling in the woods, hath an inhabited place near, or who, though dwelling in an inhabited place, hath the woods near.'

"Ashtaka enquired what it meant. Yayati replied, 'A Muni withdrawing himself from all worldly objects liveth in the woods. And though he might never seek to surround himself with those objects that are procurable in inhabited

places he might yet obtain them all by virtue of his ascetic power. *He* may truly be said to dwell in the woods having an inhabited place near to himself. Again, a wise man withdrawn from all earthly objects might live in a hamlet leading the life of a hermit. He may never exhibit the pride of family, birth, or learning. Clad in the scantiest robes he may yet regard himself as attired in the richest vestments. He may be content with food just enough for supporting life. Such a person, though dwelling in an inhabited place, liveth yet in the woods.

"The person again who, with passions under complete control, adopteth the vow of silence, refraining from action and entertaining no desire, achieveth success. Why shouldst thou not, indeed, reverence the man who liveth on clean food, who refraineth from ever injuring others, whose heart is ever pure, who is displayed in the splendour of ascetic attributes; who is free from the leaden weight of desire, who abstaineth from injury even when sanctioned by religion? Emaciated by austerities, and reduced in flesh, marrow, and blood, such a one conquereth not only thus but the highest world as well. And when the Muni sits in *yoga* meditation becoming indifferent to happiness and misery, honor and insult, he then leaveth this world and enjoyeth communion with Brahma. When the Muni taketh food like kine and other animals, *i. e*, without providing for it beforehand and without any relish (like a sleeping infant feeding on the mother's pap) then like the all-pervading spirit he becometh identified with the whole universe and attaineth to salvation.' "

And so ends the ninety-first Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXLII.

(Sambhava Parva continued)

"Ashtaka asked, 'Who amongst these, O king, both exerting constantly like the Sun and the Moon, first attaineth to communion with Brahma,—the ascetic or the man of knowledge?'

"Yayati answered, 'The wise, by help of the Veda and of

Knowledge, having ascertained the visible universe to be illusory instantly realise the Supreme Spirit as the sole existent independent essence. While they that devote themselves to *Yoga* meditation take time to acquire the same knowledge, for it is by practice alone that these latter divest themselves of the consciousness of duality. Hence the wise attain to salvation first. Then again if the person devoted to *yoga* findeth not sufficient time in one life to attain to success, being led astray by the attractions of the world, in his next life he is benefited by the progress he hath already made, for regretfully he devoteth himself to the pursuit of success. But the man of Knowledge ever beholdeth the indestructible Unity, and therefore, though immersed in worldly enjoyments, never affecteth them at heart. Therefore there is nothing to impede his salvation. He, however, who faileth to attain to Knowledge, should yet devote himself to piety as dependent on action (sacrifices, &c.) But he that devoteth himself to such piety, moved thereto by desire of salvation, can never achieve success. His sacrifices bear no fruit and partake of the nature of cruelty. Piety as dependent on action that proceedeth not from the desire of gain, is, in the case of such men, *yoga* itself.'

"Ashtaka said, 'O king, thou lookest like a youth; thou art handsome and decked with a celestial garland. Thy splendour is great! Whence dost thou come and where dost thou go? Whose messenger art thou? Art thou going into the Earth?'

"Yayati said, 'Fallen from heaven upon the loss of all my religious merit, I am destined to enter the Earth-hell. Indeed, I shall go there after I have finished my discourse with ye! Even now the deities of the ten points of the Universe command me to hasten thither. And, O king, I have obtained it as a boon from Indra that though fall I must upon the Earth yet I should fall amidst the wise and the virtuous. Ye are all wise and virtuous that are assembled here!'

"Ashtaka said, 'Thou art acquainted with everything. I ask thee, O king, are there any regions for myself to enjoy in heaven or in the firmament? If there be, then, thou shalt not fall though falling!'

"Yayati answered, 'O king, there are many regions for thee to enjoy in heaven as there are kine and horses in the earth with the animals in the wilderness and the hills!'

"Ashtaka then said, 'If there are worlds for me to enjoy, as fruits of my religious merits, in heaven, O king, I give them all unto thee! Therefore, though falling, thou shalt not fall. O take thou soon all these, wherever they be, in heaven or in the firmament! Let thy sorrows cease!'

"Yayati answered, 'O thou best of kings, a Brahma-knowing Brahmana alone can take in gift, but not one like ourselves! And, O monarch, I myself have given away to Brahmanas as one should. Let no man not a Brahmana and let not the wife of a learned Brahmana ever live in infamy by accepting gifts! On Earth I have ever desired to perform virtuous acts! Having never done so before, how shall I now accept a gift?'

"Pratarddana who was amongst them asked, 'O thou of the handsomest form, I am Pratarddana by name. I ask thee, are there any worlds for me to enjoy as fruits of my religious merits, in heaven or in the firmament? Answer me, thou art acquainted with everything!'

"Yayati said, 'O king, numberless worlds full of felicity, effulgent like the solar surface, and where woe can never be, await thee. It thou dwellest in each but for seven days, they would not yet be exhausted.'

"Pratarddana then said, 'These then I give unto thee! Therefore though falling thou must not fall! Let the worlds that are mine be thine! Whether they be in the firmament or in heaven, O soon take them! Let thy woes cease!'

"Yayati answered, 'O monarch, no king of equal energy should ever desire to receive in gift the religious merits of another king acquired by *yoga* austerities. And no king who is afflicted with calamity by the fates should, if wise, yet act in a censurable way. A king keeping his eye ever fixed on virtue should walk in the path of virtue and increase his fame thereby. A person of virtue like myself and knowing what are his duties should not act so meanly as thou directest. When others desirous of acquiring religious merit do not

accept gifts, how can *I* do what *they* do not?' On the conclusion of this speech, that best of kings Yayati was then addressed by Vasumana in the following words."

Thus ends the ninety-second Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXLIII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

"Vasumana said, 'I am Vasumana, the son of Osadawsa. I would ask thee, O king, whether there are any worlds for me to enjoy, as fruits of my religious merits, in heaven or in the firmament. Thou art, O high-souled one, acquainted with all holy regions!'

Yayati answered, 'There are as many regions for thee to enjoy in heaven as the number of places in the firmament, the Earth, and the ten points of the universe, illumined by the Sun.'

"Vasumana then said, 'I give them to thee. Let those regions that are for me be thine. Therefore, though falling, thou shalt not fall. If to accept them in gift be improper for thee, then, O monarch, buy them with a straw.'

"Yayati answered, 'I do not remember, ever having bought and sold anything unfairly. This has never been done by other kings. How shall *I* do it therefore?'

"Vasumana said, 'If to buy them, O king, be regarded by thee as improper, then take them in gift from me. For myself I answer that I will never go to those regions that are for me. Let them therefore be thine!'

"Shivi then addressed the king thus:—'I am, O king, Shivi by name, the son of Ushinara. O father, are there in the firmament or in heaven, any worlds for me to enjoy? Thou knowest every region that one may enjoy as the fruit of his religious merit!'

"Yayati then said, 'Thou hast never, by speech or in mind, disregarded the honest and the virtuous that applied to thee. There are infinite worlds for thee to enjoy in heaven, all blazing like lightning.' Shivi, then said, 'If thou regardest their

purchase as improper, I give them to ye. Take them all, O king! I shall never take them,—those regions where the wise never feel the least disquiet.'

"Yayati then answered, 'O Shivi, thou hast, indeed, obtained for thyself, possessed as thou art of the prowess of Indra, infinite worlds! But I do not desire to enjoy regions given to me by others. Therefore, I accept not thy gift.'

"Ashtaka then said, 'O king, each of us have expressed our desire to give thee the worlds that each of us have acquired by our religious merit. Thou acceptest not them. But leaving them for thee, we shall descend unto the Earth-hell.'

"Yayati answered, 'Ye all are truth-loving and wise: give me that which I deserve. I shall not be able to do that which I have never done before.'

"Ashtaka then said, 'Whose are those five golden cars that we see? Do men that repair to regions of everlasting bliss ride on them?'

"Yayati answered, 'Those five golden cars displayed in glory and blazing as fire, would, indeed, carry ye to the regions of bliss.'

"Ashtaka said, 'O king, ride those cars thyself, and repair to heaven. We can wait. We will follow thee in time.'

"Yayati then said, we can now all go together. Indeed, all of us have conquered heaven. Behold, the glorious path to heaven becomes visible!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Then all those excellent monarchs riding on those cars set out for heaven, for gaining admittance into it, illuminating the whole firmament by the glory of their virtues.

"And Aahtaka, again breaking silence, asked, 'I had always thought that Indra was my especial friend, and that I of all the others, should first obtain admittance into heaven. But how is it that Usinara's son Shivi, hath already left us behind."

"Yayati answered, 'This Usinara's son had given all he possessed for attaining to the region of Brahma. Therefore is he foremost among ye. Besides, Shivi's liberality, asceticism, truth, virtue, modesty, good-fortune, forgiveness, amiability,

desire of performing good acts, have been so great that none can measure them.'

Vaisampayana continued, "After this, Ashtaka, impelled by curiosity, again asked his maternal grand-father resembling Indra himself, saying, 'O king, I would ask thee, tell me truly, whence thou art, who thou art, and whose son? Is there any other Brahmana or Kshatria who hath done what thou didst on Earth?' Yayati answered, 'I tell thee truly, I am Yayati, the son of Nahusha and the father of Puru. I was lord of all the Earth. Ye are my relatives: I tell thee truly, I am the maternal grand-father of ye all. Having conquered the whole Earth, I gave clothes to Brahmanas and also a hundred handsome horses fit for sacrificial offering. For such acts of virtue the gods become propitious to those that perform them. I also gave to Brahmanas this whole Earth with her horses and elephants and kine, and gold and all kinds of wealth, along with an hundred *Arbudas* of excellent milch cows. Both the Earth and the firmament exist owing to my truth and virtue; fire yet burneth in the world of men owing to my truth and virtue. Never hath word spoken by me been untrue. It is for this that the wise adore truth. O Ashtaka, all I have told thee, Pratarddana, and Vasumana, is the truth itself. I know it for certain that the gods and the Rishis and all the mansions of the blest are adorable only because of Truth that characterises them all. He that shall without malice duly read to good Brahmanas this account of our ascension to heaven shall himself attain to the same worlds with us.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "It was thus that the illustrious king Yayati of high achievements, rescued by his collateral descendants, ascended to heaven leaving this earth and covering the three worlds by the fame of his deeds."

And so ends the ninety-third Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXLIV.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Janamejaya said, "Adorable one, I desire to hear the histories of those kings who were decended from Puru. O tell me of each as he was in prowess and achievements! I have, indeed, heard that in Puru's line there was not a single king who was deficient in good-behaviour and prowess, or who was without sons. O thou of ascetic wealth, I desire to hear the histories in detail of those famous monarchs endued with learning and all accomplishments."

Vaisampayana said, "Asked by thee I shall tell thee all about the heroic kings of Puru's line, all equal unto Indra in prowess, possessing great affluence and commanding the respect of all for their accomplishments.

"Puru had by his wife Paushti three sons, Pravira, Iswara, and Raudraswa, all of whom were mighty charioteers. Amongst them, Pravira was the perpetuator of the dynasty. Pravira had by his wife Shurasheni a son named Manushya. And the latter, of eyes like lotus leaves, had sway over the whole earth bounded by the four seas. And Manushya had for his wife. Souviri. And he begat in her three sons called Shakta, Sanhanana, and Vagmi. And they were heroes in war and mighty charioteers. Then again the intelligent and virtuous Raudraswa begat in the Apsara Misra-keshi ten sons who were all great bowmen. And they all grew up into heroes, performing numerous sacrifices in honor of the gods. And they all had sons, were learned in all branches of knowledge, and ever devoted to virtue. They were Richeyu, and Kaksheyu and Vrikeyu of great prowess, Sthandileyu, and Vaneyu, and Jaleyu of great fame, Tejeyu of great strength and intelligence, and Satyeyu of the prowess of Indra, Dharmeyu, and Saunateyu, the tenth, of the prowess of the celestials. Amongst them all, Richeyu became the sole monarch of the whole Earth and was known by the name of Anadhrishti. And in prowess he was like unto Vasava himself amongst the celestials. And Anadhrishti had a son of name Matinara who be-

came a famous and virtuous king. And he performed both the Rajashuya and the horse-sacrifice. And Matinara had four sons of inmeasurable prowess, *viz*, Tansu, Mahan, Atiratha, and Drahyu of inmeasurabie glory. Amongst them Tansu of great prowess became the perpetuator of Puru's line. And he subjugated the whole earth and acquired great fame and splendour. And Tansu begat a son of great prowess named Ilina. And he was the foremost of all conquerors and he brought the whole world under his subjection. And Ilina begat in his wife Rathantarya five sons with Dushmanta as their head, all equal in might unto the five elements. They were Dushmanta, Shura, Bhima, Pravashu, and Vasu. And, O Janamejaya, the eldest of them Dushmanta became king. And from Dushmanta was born by his wife Sakuntala an intelligent son named Bharata who became king. And Bharata gave his name to the race of which he was the founder. And it is from him that the fame of that dynasty hath spread so wide. And Bharata begat in his three wives altogether nine sons. But none of them were like their father and so Bharata was not at all pleased with them. Their mothers therefore became angry and slew them all. The procreation of children by Bharata therefore became in vain. The monarch then performed a great sacrifice and through the grace of Bharadwaja obtained a son of name Bhumanyu. And then Bharata the great descendant of Puru, regarding himself as really possessing a son, installed, O thou foremost of the Bharata race, that son as his heir-apparent. And Bhumanyu begat in his wife Pushkarini six sons of name Suhotra, Suhota, Suhavi, Suyaju, and Diviratha. The eldest of them all, Suhotra, obtained the throne and performed many Rajashuya and horse-sacrifices. And Suhotra brought under his sway the whole Earth surrounded by her belt of seas, and full of elephants, kine, and horses, and all her wealth in gems and gold. And the Earth afflicted with the weight of numberless human beings and elephants, horses, and cars, was as it were about to sink. And during the virtuous reign of Suhotra the surface of the whole earth was dotted all over with hundreds and thousands of sacrificial stakes. And the Earth became full of corn and

human beings. And the lord of the Earth Suhotra begat in his wife Aikshaki three sons, *viz*, Ajamida, Sumida, and Purumida. The eldest of them Ajamida was the perpetuator of the royal line. And he begat six sons in his three wives. Of these sons, Siksha was born of the womb of Dhumini, Dushmanta and Parameshti in that of Nila and Jahnyu, Jala, and Rupina, were born in that of Keshini. All the tribes of the Panchalas are descended from Dushmanta and Parameshti. And the Kushikas are the sons of Jahnyu of immeasurable prowess. And Riksha who was elder than both Jala and Rupina became king. And Riksha begat Samvarana the perpetuater of the royal line. And, O king, it hath been heard by us that while Samvarana the son of Riksha was ruling the earth, there happened a great loss of people from famine, pestilence, drought, and disease. And the Bharata princes were beaten by the troops of enemies. And the Panchalas setting out to invade the whole earth with their four kinds of troops soon brought the wole earth under their sway. And with their ten Akshauhinis the king of Panchala defeated the Bharata prince. Samvarana then, with his wife and ministers, sons and relatives, fled in fear. And he took shelter in the forest on the banks of the Sindhu extending to the foot of the mountains. There the Bharatas lived for a full thousand years within their fort. And after they had lived there a thousand years, one day the illustrious Rishi Vashishta approached the exiled Bharatas. And the Bharatas going out saluted the Rishi and worshipped him by the offer of the Arghya. And entertaining him with reverence, they then represented everything unto that illustrious Rishi. And after he was seated on his seat, the king himself approached the Rishi and addressed him, saying, 'Be thou our Purohita, O illustrious one. We will endeavour to regain our kingdom.' And Vashista then answered the Bharatas by saying 'Om' (the sign of consent.) And it hath been heard by us that Vashista then installed the Bharata prince in the sovereignty of all the Kshatrias on the Earth, making by virtue of his *mantras* this descendant of Puru the veritable horns of the wild bull or the tusks of the wild elephant. And the

king retook the capital that had been taken away from him and once more made all monarchs pay tribute to him. The powerful Samvarana, thus installed once more in the actual sovereignty of the whole earth, performed many sacrifices in which the offerings to the Brahmanas were great.

"And Samvarana begat in his wife Tapati the daughter of Sura a son named Kuru. This Kuru was exceedingly virtuous. Therefore was he installed on the throne by his people. It is from his name that the field called Kuru-jangala has become so famous in the world. Devoted to asceticism, he made that field (*Kuru-kshetra*) sacred by practising his austerities there. And it hath been heard by us that Kuru's highly intelligent wife Vahini brought forth five sons, *viz*, Avikshit, Abhishya, Chaittra-ratha, Muni, and the celebrated Janamejaya. And Avikshit begat Parikshit, the powerful Shavalaswa, Adiraja, Viraja, Shalmali of great physical strength, Uchaisrava, Bhangakāra, and Jitari the eighth. In the race of these were born, as the fruits of their pious acts, seven mighty charioteers with Janamejaya as their head. And unto Parikshit were born sons who were all acquainted with the interpreta- of the *shastras*. And they were Kaksha-sena, and Ugra-sena, and Chittra-sena endued with great energy, and Indra-sena and Susena and Bhima-sena by name. And the sons of Janamejaya were all endued with great strength and became celebrated all over the world. And they were Dhrita-rashtra who was the eldest, and Pandu and Valhika, and Nishadha endued with great energy, and then the mighty Jambunada, and then Kundodara, and Padati and then Vashati the eighth. And they were all skilfull in the interpretation of the shastras and were kind to all creatures. Amongst them Dhrita-rashtra became king. And Dhrita-rashtra had eight sons, *viz*, Kundika, Hasti, Vitarka, Kratha, Kundina the fifth, Vahishrava, Indrava, and Bhumanyu the invincible. And Dhrita-rashtra had many grand-sons, of whom three only were famous. They were, O king, Pratipa, Dharma-netra, Su-netra. Amongst these last three, Pratipa became unrivalled on earth. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, Pratipa begat three sons, *viz*, Devapi, Shantanu, and the mighty charioteer Valhika. The eldest

Devapi adopted an ascetic course of life impelled thereto by the desire of benefiting his brothers. And the kingdom was obtained by Shantanu and the mighty charioteer Valhika.

"O monarch, besides these, there were born in the race of Bharata numberless other excellent monarchs endued with great energy and like unto the celestial Rishis themselves in virtue and ascetic power. And so also in the race of Manu were born many mighty charioteers like unto the celestials themselves and who by their number swelled the *Aila* dynasty into gigantic proportions."

And so ends the ninety-fourth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXLV.

(Sambhava Parva continued)

Janamejaya said, "O Brahmana, I have now heard from thee this great history of my ancestors. I have also heard from thee about the great monarchs that were born in this line. But I have not been gratified in consequence of this charming account having been so short. Therefore be pleased, O Brahmana, to recite the delightful narrative once more in detail, commencing from Manu the lord of creation. Who is there that will not be charmed with such an account, sacred as it is? The fame of these monarchs, increased by their wisdom, virtue, accomplishments, and high character, hath been so swelled as to cover the three worlds. Having listened to the history, sweet as nectar, of their liberality, prowess, physical strength, mental vigor, energy, and perseverance, I have not been satiated."

Vaisampayana said, "Hear then, O monarch, as I recite in full the auspicious account of thy own race just as I heard it from Dwaipayana before.

"Daksha begat Aditi, and Aditi begat Vivaswan, and Vivaswan begat Manu, and Manu begat Ila, and Ila begat Puru-rava. And Puru-rava begat Ayu, and Ayu begat Nahusha, and Nahusha begat Yayati. And Yayati had two wives, *viz*, Devayani the daughter of Usana, and Sharmishta the daughter of

Vrishaparva. Here occurs a *sloka* regarding (Yayati's) descendants. 'Deva-yani gave birth to Yadu and Turvasu ; and Vrishaparva's daughter Sharmishta gave birth to Drahyu, Anu, and Puru.' And the descendants of Yadu are the Yadavas, and of Puru are the Pauravas. And Puru had a wife of name Kausalya. And he begat in her a son named Janamejaya. And Janamejaya performed three horse-sacrifices and a sacrifice called *Viswajit*. And then he entered into the woods. And Janamejaya had married Ananta the daughter of Madhava, and begat in her a son called Prachinwan. And the prince was so called because he had conquered all the eastern countries to the very confines of the region where the sun rises. And Prachinwan married Ashmaki a daughter of the Yadavas and begat in her a son named Sanyati. And Sanyati married Varangi the daughter of Drishadwata and begat in her a son named Ahanyati. And Ahanyati married Bhanumati the daughter of Krita-virya and begat in her a son named Sarvabhauma. And Sarvabhauma married Sunanda the daughter of the Kekaya prince, having obtained her by force. And he begat in her a son named Jayat-sena. And Jayat-sena married Susrava the daughter of the Vidharva king and begat in her Avachina. And Avachina also married another princess of Vidharva of name Maryada. And he begat in her a son named Arihas. And Arihas married Angi and begat in her Mahabhauma. And Mahabhauma married Suyajna the daughter of Prasena-jit. And in her was born Ayuta-nayi. And he was so called because he had performed a sacrifice in which the fat of an *Ayuta* of male beings was required. And Ayuta-nayi took for wife Kama the daughter of Prithu-sravasa. And in her was born a son named Akrodhana. And Akrodhana took for wife Karambha the daughter of the king of Kalinga. And in her was born Devatithi. And Devatithi took for wife Maryada the princess of Videha. And in her was born a son named Arihas. And Arihas took for wife Sudeva the princess of Anga. And in her he begat a son named Riksha. And Riksha married Jwala the daughter of Takshaka. And he begat in her a son of name Matinara. And Matinara performed on the banks of the Saraswati the twelve years' extending

sacrifice said to be so efficacious. On the conclusion of the sacrifice, Saraswati appearing in person before the king chose him for her husband. And he begat in her a son named Tangsu. Here occurs a *sloka* descriptive of Tangsu's descendants.

'Tangsu was born of Saraswati by Matinara. And Tangsu himself begat a son named Ilina in his wife the princess of Kalinga.'

Ilina begat in his wife Rathantari five sons, of whom Dushmanta was the eldest. And Dushmanta took for wife Sakuntala the daughter of Viswamitra. And he begat in her a son named Bharata. Here occur two *slokas* about (Dushmanta's) descendant.

'The mother is but the sheath of flesh in which the father begets the son. Indeed, the father himself is the son. Therefore, O Dushmanta, support thy son and insult not Sakuntala. O thou god among men, the father himself becoming as son rescueth himself from hell. Sakuntala hath truly said that thou art the author of this child's being.'

It for this (because the king supported his child after hearing the above speech of the celestial messenger) that Sakuntala's son came to be called *Bharata* (the *supported.*) And Bharata married Sunandā the daughter of Sarva-sena the king of Kasi. And he begat in her a son named Bhumanyu. And Bhumanyu married Vijayā the daughter of Dasharha. And he begat in her a son Suhotra. And Suhotra married Suvarnā the daughter of Ikshaku. In her was born a son named Hasti who founded this city which has therefore been called Hastinapore. And Hasti married Yashodhara the princess of Trigarta. And in her was born a son named Vikunthana. And Vikunthana took for wife Sudeva the princess of Dasharha. And in her was born a son named Ajamida. And Ajamida had four wives named Kaikeyi, Gandhari, Vishala and Riksha. And he begat in them two thousand and four hundred sons. But amongst them all Samvarana became the perpetuator of the dynasty. And Samvarana took for wife Tapati the daughter of Vivaswan. And in her was born Kuru. And Kuru married Suvangi the princess of Dasharha. And he begat in her a son named Vidura. And Vidura took for wife Sampria

the daughter of Madhava. And he begat in her a son named Anaswa. And Anaswa married Amrita the daughter of the Madhavas. And in her was born a son named Parikshit. And Parikshit took for wife Yasha the daughter of Vahuda. And he begat in her a son named Bhima-sena. And Bhima-sena married Kumari the princess of Kekaya. And he begat in her Pratisrava. And Pratisrava's son was Pratipa. And Pratipa married Sunanda the daughter of Shivi. And he begat in her three sons, *viz*, Devapi, Shantanu, and Valhika. And Devapi while still a boy entered the woods as a hermit. And Shantanu became king. Here occurs a *sloka* in respect of Shantanu.

'Those old men that were touched by this monarch not only felt an indescribable sensation of pleasure but also became restored to youth. Therefore was this monarch called Shantanu.'

And Shantanu married Ganga. And in her was born a son Deva-brata who was afterwards called Bhisma. And Bhisma moved by the desire of doing good to his father married him to Satyavati who was also called Gandhakali. And in her maidenhood she had a son by Parashara, named Dwaipayana. And in her Shantanu begat two other sons named Chittrangada and Vichitra-virya. And before they had attained to majority, Chittrangada was slain by the Gandharvas. But Vichitra-virya became king. And Vichitra-virya married the two daughters of the king of Kasi, named Amvika and Amvalika. And Vichitra-virya died childless. Then Satyavati began to think how the dynasty of Dushmanta might be perpetuated. And she recollected the Rishi Dwaipayana. The latter coming before her asked, 'What are thy commands?' And she said, 'Thy brother Vichitra-virya hath gone to heaven childless. Beget virtuous children for him.' And Dwaipayana, consenting to this, begat three children, *viz*, Dhrita-rashtra, Pandu, Vidura. And king Dhrita-rashtra had an hundred sons by his wife Gandhari in consequence of the boon granted by Dwaipayana. And amongst these hundred sons of Dhrita-rashtra, four became celebrated. They were Duryodhana, Dush-shasana, Vikarna, and Chittra-sena. And Pandu had two jewels

of wives, *viz*, Kunti, also called Pritha, and Madri. One day Pandu going out to hunt saw a deer coupling with its mate. That was really a Rishi in the form of a deer. And seeing the deer in that attitude he killed it by his arrows before its desire had been gratified. Pierced with the king's arrow, the deer quickly changing its form and becoming a Rishi said unto Pandu, 'O Pandu thou art virtuous and acquainted also with the pleasure devived from the gratification of one's desire. Before my desire was gratified thou hast slain me. Therefore thou also, when in such a state and before thou art gratified, shalt die.' And Pandu hearing this curse became pale, and from that time would not go unto his wives. And he told them these words :—'From my own fault, I have been cursed. But I have heard that for the childless there are no regions hereafter.' Therefore he solicited Kunti to raise offspring for him. And Kunti, saying 'Let it be,' raised up offspring. By Dharma she had Yudhishthira ; by Maruta, Bhima ; and by Sakra, Arjuna. And Pandu well pleased with her, said, 'This thy co-wife is also childless. Therefore cause her to bear children. And Kunti saying 'Let it be,' imparted unto Madri the *mantra* of invocation. And in Madri were raised, by the twin Aswinas, the twins Nakula and Sahadeva. And (one day) Pandu beholding Madri decked in ornaments had his desire kindled. And as soon as he touched her he died. And Madri ascended the funeral pyre with her lord. And she said unto Kunti, 'Let these twins of mine be brought up by thee with affection.' After some time those five Pandavas were taken by the ascetics of the woods to Hastinapore and there introduced to Bhisma and Vidura. And after introducing them the ascetics disappeared in the very sight of all. And after the conclusion of the speech of those ascetics, flowers were showered down upon the earth. And the celestial *Dundhuvi* also rang in the skies. And the Pandavas were then taken (by Bhisma.) They then represented the death of their father and performed his obsequial rites duly. And as they were being brought up there Duryodhana became exceedingly jealous of them. And the sinful Duryodhana, acting like a Rakshasa, tried by various means to drive them away. But that which

is to be can never be frustrated. So all Duryodhana's efforts proved futile. Then Dhrita-rashtra sent them, by an act of deception, to Varanavata, and they went there willingly. There an endeavor was made to burn them to death; but it proved abortive owing to the warning counsels of Vidura. After that, the Pandavas slew Hidimva, and then they went to a town called Eka-chakra. There also they slew a Rakshasa of the name of Vaka and then went to Panchala. And there obtaining Draupadi for wife they returned to Hastinapore. And there they dwelt for sometime in peace and begat children. And Yudishthira begat Priti-vindhya; and Bhima, Sutasoma; and Arjuna, Sruta-kirti; and Nakula, Shatanika; and Sahadeva, Sruta-karma. Besides these, Yudhisthira having obtained for wife Devika the daughter of Gavashana the king of Shaivya, in a *Swaymvara* (in which the bride elects her lord from among the assembled princes,) begat in her a son named Yaudheya. And Bhima also, obtaining for wife Valadhara the daughter of the king of Kasi, offering as dower his own prowess, begat in her a son named Sarvaga. And Arjuna also, repairing to Dwaravati brought away by force Subhadra the sweet-speeched sister of Vāsudeva and returned in happiness to Hastinapore. And he begat in her a son named Abhimanyu endued with all accomplishments and dear to Vāsudeva himself. And Nakula obtaining for wife Karenumati the princess of Chedi begat in her a son named Niramitra. And Sahadeva also married Vijaya the daughter of Dyutimana the king of Madra, obtaining her in *Swayamvara*, and begat in her a son named Suhotra. And Bhima-sena had sometime before begat in Hidimva a son named Ghatot-kacha. These are the eleven sons of the Pandavas. Amongst them all, Abhimanyu was the perpetuator of the family. He married Uttarā the daughter of Virata. She brought forth a dead child whom Kunti took up on her lap at the command of Vāsudeva who said 'I will revive this child of six months.' And though born before time, being burnt by the fire of (Aswathama's) weapon and therefore deprived of strength and energy, he was revived by Vasudeva and endued with strength; energy, and prowess. And after being revived, Vasudeva said;

'Because this child hath been born in an extinct race, therefore he shall be called Parikshit. And Parikshit married Madravati thy mother, O king! And thou art born of her, O Janamejaya! Thou hast also begotten two sons in thy wife Vapustama, named Shatanika and Shankukarna. And Shatanika also hath begot one son named Aswamedha-datta in the princess of Videha.

"Thus have I, O king, recited the history of the decendants of Puru and of the Pandavas. This excellent, virtue increasing, and sacred history should ever be listened to by vow-observing Brahmanas, by Kshatrias devoted to the practices of their order and ready to protect their subjects; by Vaisyas with attention, and by Sudras with reverence whose chief occupation is to wait upon the three other orders. Brahmanas conversant with the Veda and other persons, who with attention and reverence recite this sacred history or listen to it when recited, subdue the heavens and attain to the mansions of the blest. They are also always respected and adored by the gods, Brahmanas, and other men. This holy history of Bharata hath been composed by the sacred and illustrious Vyasa. Veda-knowing Brahmanas and other persons who with reverence and without malice hear it recited, earn great religious merit and subdue the heavens. Though sinning they are not yet disregarded by any one. Here occurs a *sloka*. 'This (Bharata) is equal unto the Vedas: it is holy and excellent. It bestoweth wealth, fame, and life. Therefore should it be listened to by men with rapt attention.'"

Thus ends the ninety-fifth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXLVI.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "There was a king known by the name of Mahabhisha born in the race of Ikshaku. He was the lord of all the earth, and was truthful in speech and of true prowess. By a thousand horse-sacrifices and an hundred

Rajashuyas he had gratified the chief of the celestials and ultimately attained to heaven.

"One day the celestials had assembled together and were worshipping Brahma. Many royal sages and king Mahabhisha also were present on the spot. And Ganga, the Queen of rivers, also came there to pay her adorations to the Grandfather. And her garments, white as the beams of the moon, became loosened by the action of the wind. And as her person was exposed, the celestials bent down their heads. But the royal sage Mahabhisha rudely stared at the Queen of the rivers. And Mahabhisha was for this cursed by Brahma. And Brahma said, 'Wretch, as thou hast forgotten thyself at sight of Ganga, thou shalt be re-born on Earth. But, nevertheless, thou shalt again attain to these regions. And she too shall be born in the world of men and shall do thee injuries. But when thy wrath shall be provoked thou shalt thou be freed from my curse.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "And king Mahabhisha then, recollecting all the monarchs and ascetics on Earth, wished to be born as son to Pratipa of great prowess. And the Queen of rivers too seeing king Mahabhisha lose his firmness, went away thinking of him wishfully. And on her way she saw those dwellers of heaven, the Vasus, also pursuing the same path. And the Queen of rivers beholding them in that predicament asked them, 'Why look ye so dejected? Ye dwellers of heaven, is everything right with ye?' Those celestials—the Vasus—answered her, saying, 'O Queen of rivers, we have been cursed for a venial fault by the illustrious Vashishta in anger. The foremost of excellent Rishis, Vashishta, had been engaged in his twilight adorations. Seated as he was such that he could not be seen by us, we crossed him in ignorance. Therefore in wrath hath he cursed us, saying,—Be born among men.—It is beyond our power to frustrate what hath been said by that utterer of Brahma. Therefore, O river, thyself becoming a human female make us, Vasus, thy children! O amiable one, we are unwilling to enter the womb of any human female.' Thus addressed, the Queen of rivers told them 'Be it so,' and asked them, 'On Earth, who is that foremost of men whom ye will make your father?'

"The Vasus replied, 'On Earth, unto Pratipa shall be born a son Shantanu who shall be a king of world-wide fame.' Ganga then said, 'Ye celestials, that is exactly my wish which ye sinless ones have expressed ! I shall, indeed, do good to that Shantanu. That is also your desire as just expressed !' The Vasus then said, 'It behoveth thee to throw thy children, as they are born, into the water, so that, O thou of three courses, (celestial, terrestrial, and subterranean,) we may be rescued soon without having to live on Earth for any length of time.' Ganga then answered, 'I shall do what ye desire. But inorder that his intercourse with me may not be entirely fruitless, provide ye that one son at least may live !' The Vasus then replied, 'We shall each contribute an eighth part of our respective energies. With the sum thereof thou shalt have one son according to thy and his wishes. But this son shall not begat any children on Earth. Therefore that son of thine, endued with great energy, shall be childless.'

"The Vasus making this arrangement with Ganga, without waiting went away to the place they liked."

Thus ends the ninety-sixth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXLVII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

There was a king of name Pratipa who was kind to all creatures. He spent many years in ascetic penances at the source of the river Ganges. And the accomplished and lovely Ganga one day assuming the form of a beautiful female, rising from the waters, approached the monarch. And the celestial maiden endued with ravishing beauty, approaching the royal sage engaged in ascetic austerities, sat upon his right thigh that was for manly strength a veritable *Shal* tree. And when the maiden of handsome face had so sat upon his lap, the monarch said unto her, 'O amiable one, what dost thou desire ? What shall I do ?' The damsel answered, 'I desire thee, O king, for my husband ! O thou foremost of the Kurus, be mine ! To refuse a woman coming of her own

accord is never applauded by the wise.' Pratipa then answered, 'O thou of the fairest complexion, moved by lust I never go unto others' wives or women that are not of my order. This, indeed, is my virtuous vow!' The maiden rejoined, 'I am not inauspicious or ugly. I am every way worthy of being enjoyed. I am a celestial maiden of rare beauty. I desire thee for my husband. Refuse me not, O king!' To this Pratipa: 'I am, O damsel, abstaining from that course to which thou wouldst incite me. If I break my vow, sin will overwhelm and slay me. O thou of the fairest complexion, thou hast embraced me sitting on my right thigh. But, O timid one, know that is the seat for daughters and daughters-in-law. The left lap is for the wife, but thou hast not accepted that. Therefore, O best of women, I cannot enjoy thee as an object of desire. Be my daughter-in-law. I accept thee for my son.'

"The damsel then said, 'O thou virtuous one, let it be as thou sayest. Let me be united with thy son. From my respect for thee, I shall be a wife of the celebrated Bharata race. Ye (of the Bharata race) are the stay of all the monarchs on earth. I am incapable of numbering the virtues of this race even in an hundred years. The greatness and goodness of many celebrated monarchs of this race are also limitless. O lord of all, let it be understood now that when I become thy daughter-in-law, thy son shall not be able to judge of the propriety of my acts. Living thus with thy son I shall do good to him and increase his happiness. And he shall finally attain to heaven in consequence of the sons I shall bare him, his virtues, and good conduct.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "O king, having said so, the celestial damsel then and there disappeared. And the king too waited for the birth of his son inorder to fulfill his promise.

"About this time Pratipa, that light of the Kuru race, that bull amongst the Kshatrias, then engaged, along with his wife, in ascetic austerities from desire of offspring. And when they had grown old, a son was born unto them. This was no other than Mahabhisha. And the child was called Shantanu because he was born when his father had controlled

his passions by ascetic penances. And the best of Kurus, Shantanu, knowing that regions of indestructible bliss can be acquired by one's deeds alone, became devoted to virtue. And when Shantanu grew up a youth, Pratipa addressed him and said, 'Sometime before, O Shantanu, a celestial damsel came to me for thy good. If thou meetest that fair-complexioned one in secret and if she solicit thee for children, accept her as thy wife. And, O sinless one, judge not of the propriety or impropriety of anything she does, and ask not who she is and whose or whence, but accept thou her as thy wife at my command.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " And Pratipa, having thus commanded his son Shantanu and installing him on his throne, then retired into the woods. And king Shantanu endued with great intelligence and equal unto Indra himself in splendour became addicted to hunting and passed much of his time in the woods. And the best of monarchs always slew deer and buffaloes. And one day as he was wandering along the banks of the Ganges he came upon a region frequented by the *shiddhas* (ascetics crowned with success) and *charanas*. And there he saw a lovely maiden of blazing beauty and like unto another Sree herself. Of faultless and pearly teeth, and decked with celestial ornaments, she was attired in garments of fine texture and resembled in splendour the filaments of the lotus. And the monarch beholding that damsel became surprised, and his raptures produced instant horripilation. With steadfast gaze he seemed to be drinking her charms, but repeated draughts failed to quench his thirst. The damsel also, beholding the monarch of blazing splendour moving about in great agitation, was moved herself and experienced an affection for him. She gazed and gazed and longed to gaze at him evermore. The monarch then in soft words addressed her and said, 'O thou slender-waisted one, beest thou a goddess or the daughter of a Danava, beest thou of the race of the Gandharvas or Apsarãs, beest thou of the Yakshas or of the Nagas, or beest thou of human origin, O thou of celestial beauty, I solicit thee to be my wife.' "

And so ends the ninety-seventh Section in the Sambhava of the Adi parva.

SECTION LXLVIII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "The maiden then, hearing those soft and sweet words of the smiling monarch, and remembering her promise to the Vasus, then addressed the king in reply. Of faultless features and sending a thrill of pleasure into the heart by every word she uttered, the damsel said, 'O king, I shall become thy wife and obey thy commands. But, O monarch, thou must not interfere with me in anything I do, be it agreeable or disagreeable. Nor shalt thou ever address me unkindly. As long as thou shalt behave kindly, I promise to live with thee. But I shall certainly leave thee the moment thou interferest with me or speakest to me an unkind word.' The king answered, 'Let it be.' And thereupon the damsel obtaining that excellent monarch—the foremost of the Bharata race—for her husband, became highly pleased. And king Shantanu also obtaining her for wife enjoyed to his fill the pleasures of her company. And adhering to his promise he refrained from asking her anything. And the lord of earth, Shantanu, became exceedingly gratified with her conduct, beauty, magnanimity, and attention to his comforts. And the goddess Ganga also, of three courses (celestial—terrestrial—and subterranean) assuming a human form of superior complexion and endued with celestial beauty, lived happily as the wife of Shantanu, having obtained for her husband, as the fruit of her virtuous acts, that tiger among kings equal unto Indra himself in splendour. And she gratified the king by her attractiveness and affection, her wiles and love, her music and dance, and became gratified herself. And the monarch was so enraptured with his beautiful wife that months, seasons, and years rolled away without his being conscious of them. And the king, while thus enjoying himself with his wife, had eight children born unto him who in beauty were like the very celestials themselves. But, O Bharata, these children one after

another, as soon as they were born, were thrown into the river by Ganga saying, 'This is for thy good.' And the children sank to rise no more. The king, however, could not be pleased with such conduct. But he spoke not a word about it lest his wife should leave him. But when the eighth child was born, and when his wife as before was about to throw it smilingly into the river, the king, with a sorrowful countenance and desirous of saving it from destruction, addressed her and said, 'Slay it not! Who art thou and whose? Why dost thou slay thy own children? Murderess of thy sons, the load of thy sins is great!'

"His wife, thus addressed, then replied, 'O thou desirous of offspring, thou hast already become the first of those that have children. I shall not slay this child of thine. But according to our agreement, the period of my stay with thee is at an end. I am Ganga the daughter of Janhu. I am ever worshipped by the great sages. I have lived with thee so long for accomplishing the purposes of the celestials. The eight illustrious Vasus endued with great energy had, from Vashishta's curse, to assume human forms. On earth, besides thee there was none else to deserve the honor of being their begetter. There is no woman also on earth except one like me—a celestial of human form—to become their mother. I assumed a human form to bring them forth. Thou also, having become the father of the eight Vasus, hast acquired many regions of perennial bliss. It was also agreed between myself and the Vasus that I should free them from human forms as soon as they would be born. I have thus freed them from the curse of the Rishi Apava. Blest be thou. I leave thee, O king! But rear thou this child of rigid vows. That I should live with thee so long was the promise I gave to the Vasus. And let this child be called Ganga-datta.'"

Thus ends the ninety-eighth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION LXLIX.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Shantanu asked, 'What was the fault of the Vasus and who was Apava through whose curse the Vasus had to be born among men ? What also hath this child of thine—Gangadatta—done for which he shall have to live among men ? Why also were the Vasus—the lords of the three worlds—condemned to be born anongst men ? O daughter of Janhu, tell me all.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Thus addressed, the celestial the daughter of Janhu, Ganga, then replied to the monarch, her husband—that bull amougst men—saying, 'O thou best of tht Bharata race, he who was obtained as son by Varuna was called Vashishta—the Muni who afterwards came to be known as Apava. He had his asylum on the side of the king of mountains Meru. The ground was sacred and abounded with birds and beasts, and there bloomed at all times of the year flowers of every season. And, O thou best of the Bharata race, the foremost of virtuous men, the son of Varuna, practised his ascetic penances in those woods abounding with sweet roots and fruits and water.

" 'Daksha had a daughter known by the name of Surabhi. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, Surabhi, for benefiting the world, brought forth, by her connection with Kasyapa, a daughter (Nandini) in the form of a cow. The foremost of all kine, Nandini, was the cow of plenty (capable of granting every desire.) And the virtuous son of Varuna obtained Nandini for his *Homa* cow. And the cow, dwelling in that hermitage which was adored by Munis, roved fearlessly in those sacred and delightful woods.

" 'One day, O thou bull of the Bharata race, there came into those woods adored by the gods and celestial Rishis, the Vasus with Prithu as their head. And wandering there with their wives, they enjoyed themselves in those delightful woods and mountains. And as they were wandering there, the slender-waisted wife of one of the Vasus, O thou of the prowess of Indra, saw in those woods Nandini the cow of plenty. And

as she saw that cow possessing the wealth of all accomplishments, large eyes, full udders, fine tail, beautiful hoofs, and every other auspicious sign, and yielding much milk, she showed it to her husband named Dyau. And, O thou of the prowess of the first of elephants, when Dyau was shown that cow, he began to admire its several qualities, and addressing his wife said,—O thou black-eyed girl of fair thighs, this excellent cow belongeth to that Rishi whose is this delightful asylum. And, O thou slender-waisted one, that mortal who drinketh of the sweet milk of this cow remaineth in unchanged youth for ten thousand years.—And, O best of monarchs, hearing this, the slender-waisted goddess of faultless features then addressed her lord of blazing splendour and said,—There is on earth a friend of mine, by name Jitavati, possessed of great beauty and youth. She is the daughter of that god among men, the royal sage Usinara endued with intelligence and devoted to truth. I desire to have this cow, O thou illustrious one, with her calf for that friend of mine. Therefore, O thou best of celestials, bring that cow so that my friend drinking of its milk may alone become on earth free from disease and decrepitude. O thou illustrious and blameless one, it behoveth thee to grant me this desire of mine. There is nothing that would be more agreeable to me.—Hearing these words of his wife, Dyau, moved by the desire of humouring his wife, stole that cow, along with his brothers Prithu and others. Indeed, Dyau, commanded by his lotus leaf-eyed wife, did her bidding, forgetting at the moment the high ascetic merits of the Rishi who owned her. He did not also think at the time that he fell with the commission of the sin of stealing the cow.

" 'When the son of Varuna returned to his asylum in the evening with the fruits he had collected, and beheld not the cow with its calf there, he began to search for it in the woods. But when the great ascetic, of superior intelligence, found not his cow on search, he saw by his ascetic vision that it had been stolen by the Vasus. His wrath was instantly kindled and he cursed the Vasus saying,—Because the Vasus have stolen my cow of sweet milk and handsome tail, therefore shall they certainly be born on earth.—

" 'O thou bull of the Bharata race, the illustrious Rishi Apava thus cursed the Vasus in wrath. And having cursed them the illustrious one set his heart once more on ascetic meditation. And after that *Brahmarshi* of great power and ascetic wealth had thus in wrath cursed the Vasus, the latter, O king, coming to know of it, speedily came into his asylum. And addressing the Rishi, O thou bull among kings, they endeavoured to pacify him. But they failed, O thou tiger among men, to obtain grace from Apava—that Rishi conversant with all rules of virtue. The virtuous Apava, however, said—Ye Vasus, with Dhava and others, ye have been cursed by me ! But ye shall be freed from my curse within a year of your birth among men. But he for whose deed ye have been cursed by me, he, *viz*, Dyau, shall, for his sinful act, have to dwell on earth for length of time. I shall not render futile the words I have uttered in wrath. Dyau, though dwelling on earth, shall not beget children. He shall, however, be virtuous and conversant with all *Shastras*. He shall be an obedient son to his father, but shall have to abstain from the pleasure of female companionship.—

" 'Thus addressing the Vasus, the great Rishi went away. The Vasus then together came to me. And, O king, they begged of me the boon that as soon as they would be born, I should throw them into the water. And, O best of kings, I did as they desired, in order to free them from their earthly life. And, O best of kings, from the Rishi's curse, this one only—Dyau himself—is to live on earth for some time.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Having said this, the goddess then and there disappeared. And taking with her the child she went away to the region she chose. And that child of Shantanu was named both Gangeya and Deva-brata and excelled his father in all accomplishments.

" Shantanu, after the disappearance of his wife, returned to his capital with a sorrowful heart. I shall now recount to thou the many virtues and great good fortune of that illustrious king Shantanu of the Bharata race. Indeed, it is this splendid history that is called the Mahabharata. "

And so ends the ninety-ninth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION C.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "The monarch Shantanu, the adored of the gods and of the royal sages, was known in all the worlds for his wisdom, virtues, and truthfulness of speech. The qualities of self-control, liberality, forgiveness, intelligence, modesty, patience, and superior energy dwelt continually in that bull among men, Shantanu, that great being. Endued with these accomplishments and skilled also in interpreting the *Shastras,* the monarch was at once the protector of the Bharata race and of all human beings. His neck was marked with (three) lines like a shell, his shoulders were broad and he resembled in prowess an infuriate elephant. It would seem that all the auspicious signs of royalty dwelt in his person considering that to be their fittest abode. And men seeing the behaviour of that monarch of great achievements came to ascertain for themselves that virtue is ever superior to pleasure and profit. These were the attributes that dwelt in that great being—that bull among men—Shantanu. And truly there never was a king like Shantanu. And all the kings of the earth, beholding him devoted to virtue, bestowed upon that foremost of virtuous men the title of King of kings. And all the kings of the earth during the time of that lord protector of the Bharata race, were without woes, and fears, and anxieties of any kind. And they all slept in peace rising from bed every morning after happy dreams. And owing to that monarch of splendid achievements resembling Indra himself in energy, all the kings of the earth became virtuous and devoted to liberality, religious acts, and sacrifices. And when the earth was ruled by Shantanu and other monarchs like him, the religious merits of every order increased very greatly. The Kshatrias served the Brahmanas, and the Vaisyas waited upon the Kshatrias, and the Sudras adoring the Brahmanas and the Ksh atrias, waited upon the Vaisyas. And Shantanu

residing in Hastinapore, the delightful capital of the Kurus, ruled the whole earth bounded by the seas. He was truthful and guileless, and like the king of the celestials himself conversant with the dictates of virtue. And from the combination in him of liberality, religion, and asceticism, he acquired great good fortune. He was free from anger and malice, and was handsome in person like Soma himself. In splendour he was like the Sun and in impetuosity of valor like Vayu. In wrath he was like Yama, and in patience like the Earth. And, O king, while Shantanu ruled the earth, no deer, boars, birds, or other animals were needlessly slain. In his dominions the great virtue of kindness to all creatures prevailed, and the king himself with the soul of mercy and destitute of desire and wrath, extended equal protection unto all creatures. Then sacrifices in honor of the gods, the *Rishis* and the *Pitris*, commenced, and no creature was deprived of life sinfully. And Shantanu was the king and father of all,—of those that were miserable and those that had no protectors, of birds and beasts, in fact, of every created thing. And during the rule of that best of Kurus—of that King of kings—speech became united with truth, and the minds of men were set upon liberality and religion. And Shantanu having enjoyed domestic felicity for six and thirty years retired into the woods.

"And Shantanu's son—the Vasu born of Ganga and named Deva-brata—resembled Shantanu himself in personal beauty, in habits and behaviour, and in learning. And in all branches of knowledge, worldly or spiritual, his skill was very great. His strength and energy were extraordinary. He became a mighty charioteer. In fact, he was a great being.

"One day in pursuing along the banks of the Ganges, a deer that he had struck with his arrow, king Shantanu observed that the river had become shallow. And observing this, that bull among men, Shantanu, began to reflect upon this strange appearance. He mentally asked why that first of rivers ran not so quickly as before. And while seeking for a cause, the illustrious monarch beheld that a youth of great comeliness, of well-built and amiable person, like Indra

himself, had, by his keen celestial weapons, checked the flow of the river. And the king, beholding this extraordinary feat of the river Ganga being thus checked in her course near where that youth stood, became very much surprised. This youth was none other than Shantanu's son. But as Shantanu had seen his son only once a few moments after his birth, he had not sufficient recollection to identify that infant with the youth before his eyes. The youth, however, seeing his father knew him at once. But instead of confessing himself, he clouded the king's perception by his celestial powers of illusion and disappeared in his very sight.

"King Shantanu wondering much at what he saw and imagining the youth to be his own son, then addressed Ganga and said, 'Show me that child.' And Ganga, thus addressed, assuming a beautiful form, and holding the boy decked in ornaments in her right hand, showed him to Shantanu. And Shantanu recognised not that beautiful female bedecked with ornaments and attired in fine robes of white, although he had known her before. And Ganga said, 'O thou tiger among men, the eighth son that thou hadst sometime before begot in me is this one. Know that this excellent child is conversant with all weapons. O monarch, take him now. I have reared him with care. And go home, O thou tiger amog men, taking him with thee. Endued with superior intelligence, he has studied with Vasishta the whole Vedas with the Angas. Skilled in all weapons and a mighty bowman, he is like Indra himself in battle. And, O Bharata, both the gods and the Asuras look upon him with favor. Whatever branches of knowledge are known to Usana, this one knoweth completely. And so is he the master of all those *shastras* that the son of Angira (Vrihaspati) adored by the gods and the Asuras knoweth. And all the weapons known to the powerful and invincible Rama the son of Jamadagni are known to this thy illustrious son of mighty arms. And, O king of superior courage, take home this thy own heroic child given unto thee by me. He is a mighty bowman and cognisant with the interpretation of all treatises on the duties of kings.' And thus commanded by Ganga, Shantanu taking with him his child resembling the Sun himself in glory,

returned to his capital. And having reached his city that was like unto the celestial capital itself, that monarch of Puru's line regarded himself as greatly fortunate. And having summoned all the Pauravas together, for the protection of his kingdom he installed his son as his heir-apparent and associate on the throne. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, the prince soon gratified by his behaviour, his father, and other members of the Paurava race, in fact, all the subjects of the kingdom. And the king of incomparable prowess, lived happily with that son of his.

"Four years had thus passed away, when the king one day went into the woods on the banks of the Yamuna (Jumna.) And while the king was rambling there he perceived a sweet scent coming from an unknown direction. And the monarch impelled by the desire of ascertaining the cause, wandered hither and thither. And in course of his rambles he beheld a black-eyed maiden of celestial beauty, the daughter of a fisherman. The king addressing her said, 'Who art thou, and whose daughter? What dost thou do here, O timid one!' She answered, 'Blest be thou. I am the daughter of the chief of the fishermen. At his command, for religious merit I am engaged in rowing passengers across this river in my boat.' And Shantanu beholding that maiden of celestial form endued with beauty, amiableness, and such fragrance, desired her for wife. And repairing unto her father the king solicited his consent to the proposed match. But the chief of the fishermen replied to the monarch, saying, 'O king, as soon as my daughter of superior complexion was born, it was, of course, understood that she should be bestowed upon a husband. But listen to the desire I have entertained all along in my heart. O sinless one, thou art truthful; if thou desirest to obtain this maiden in gift from me, give me thou this pledge. If, indeed, thou givest the pledge, I will truly bestow my daughter upon thee, for truly I can never obtain a husband for her equal to thee.'

"Shantanu, hearing this replied, 'When I have heard of the pledge thou askest, I shall then say whether I would be able to grant it or not. If it is capable of being granted, I shall certainly grant it. If otherwise, how shall I grant it?' The

fisherman then said, 'O king, what I ask of thee is this: that the son born of this maiden shall be installed by thee on thy throne and none else shalt thou make thy successor.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "O Bharata, when Shantanu heard this, he felt no inclination to grant such a boon, though the fire of desire sorely burnt him within. The king, with his heart afflicted by desire, returned to Hastinapore thinking all the way of the fisherman's daughter. And having returned home, the monarch passed his time in sorrowful meditation. One day Devabrata approaching his afflicted father said, 'All is prosperity with thee; all chiefs obey thee; then why is it that thou grievest thus? Busied with thy own thoughts, thou speakest not a word to me in reply. Thou goest not out on horse-back now. Thou lookest pale, and emaciated, having lost all animation. I wish to know what is the disease under which thou sufferest so that I may endeavour to apply a remedy.' Thus addressed by his son, Shantanu then answered, 'Thou sayest truly, O son, that I have become melancholy. I will also tell thee why I am so. O thou of the Bharata line, thou art the only scion of this our large race. Thou art always engaged in sports of arms and achievements of prowess. But, O son, I am always thinking of the instability of human life. If any danger overtake thee, O child of Ganga, the result is that we become sonless! Truly, alone thou art to me as a century of sons. I do not therefore desire to wed again. I only desire, may prosperity ever attend on thee so that our dynasty may be perpetuated. The wise say that he that hath one son hath no son. Sacrifices before fire and the knowledge of the three Vedas yield, it is true, everlasting religious merits. But all these, in point of religious merit, do not come up to a sixteenth part of the religious merit attainable on the birth of a son. Indeed, in this respect there is hardly any difference between men and the lower animals. O thou wise one, I do not entertain the shadow of a doubt that one attains to heaven in consequence of having begotten a son. The Vedas which constitute the root of the Puranas and are regarded as authoritative even by the gods contain numerous proofs of this. O thou of the Bharata race, thou

art a hero, of excitable temper and always engaged in exercises of arms. It is very probable that thou wouldst be slain on the field of battle. If it so happen, what would be the state of the Bharata dynasty ? It is this thought that hath made me so melancholy. I have now told thee fully the causes of my sorrow.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Deva-brata who was endued with great intelligence, having ascertained all this from the king, reflected within himself for a while. He then went to the old minister devoted to his father's welfare and asked him about the cause of the king's grief. O thou bull of the Bharata race, when the prince questioned the minister, the latter told him about the boon that was demanded by the chief of the fishermen in respect of his daughter Gandhavati. Then Deva-brata, accompanied by many Kshatria chiefs of venerable age, himself repaired to the chief of the fishermen and begged of him his daughter on behalf of the king. The chief of the fishermen received him after due adorations, and, O thou of the Bharata race, when the prince took his seat in the court of the chief, the latter addressed him and said, 'O thou bull among the Bharatas, thou art the first of all wielders of weapons and the only son of Shantanu. Thy influence is great. But I have something to tell thee. If the bride's father were Indra himself, even *he* would have to repent if he were to reject such an exceedingly honorable and desirable proposal of marriage. That great man from whose seed this celebrated maiden named Satyavati hath been born is, indeed, equal to ye in virtues. He hath spoken to me on many occasions of the virtues of thy father and told me that that king alone was worthy of marrying Satyavati. Let me tell you that I have even rejected the solicitations of that best of Brahmarshis—the celestial Rishi Asita—who had often asked for Satyavati's hand in marriage. I have only one word to say on the part of this maiden. In the matter of the proposed marriage there is only one great objection founded on the fact of a rival existing in a co-wife's son. O thou oppressor of all foes, he hath no security, even if he be an Asura or a Gandharva, who hath a rival in thee ! There is this only objection in the proposed

marriage, and nothing else. Blest be thou! But this is all I have to say in the matter of bestowal or otherwise.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "O thou of the Bharata race, Deva-brata having heard these words, and moved by the desire of benefiting his father, thus answered in the hearing of the assembled chiefs. 'O thou foremost of truthful men, listen to the vow I utter. There hath been born no man nor shall be, who would have the courage to take such a vow! I shall accomplish all that thou demandest! The son that may be born of this maiden shall be our king.' Thus addressed, the chief of the fishermen, impelled by desire of sovereignty (on behalf of his daughter's son) to achieve the almost impossible, then said, 'O thou of virtuous soul, thou art come hither as full manager on behalf of thy father Shantanu of immeasurable glory. Be thou also the sole manager on my behalf in the matter of the bestowal of this my daughter. But, O amiable one, there is something else to be said, something else to be reflected upon by thee! O thou suppressor of the foe, those that have daughters, from the very nature of their obligations, must say what I say. O thou devoted to truth, the promise thou hast given in the presence of these chiefs for the benefit of Satyavati hath, indeed, been worthy of thee. O thou of mighty arms, I have not the least doubt of its never being violated by thee. But I have my doubts in respect of the children thou mayst beget.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "O king, the son of Ganga devoted to truth having ascertained the scruples of the chief of the fishermen, then said, moved thereto by the desire of benefiting his father, 'Chief of the fishermen, thou best of men, listen to what I say in the presence of the assembled kings! Ye kings, I have before long relinquished my right to the throne. I shall now settle the matter of my children. O fisherman, from this day I adopt the vow of *Brahmacharya* (study and meditation in celebacy.) If I die sonless, I shall yet attain to regions of perennial bliss in heaven.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of the son of Ganga, all the down of the fisherman's body stood erect in glee, and he replied, 'I bestow my daughter.' Immediately

after, the Apsaras and the gods with the tribes of the Rishis began to rain down flowers from the firmament upon the head of Deva-brata and exclaimed, 'This one is *Bhisma* (the terrible.)' Bhisma then, for serving his father, addressed the illustrious damsel and said, 'O mother, ascend this chariot, and let us go unto our house.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Having said this, Bhisma made the beautiful maiden ride on his chariot. And arriving with her at Hastinapore, he told Shantanu everything as it had happened. And the assembled monarchs, jointly and individually, applauded his extraordinary act, and said, 'He is really *Bhisma* (the terrible).' And Shantanu also hearing of the extraordinary achievement of his son became highly gratified and bestowed upon the high-souled prince the boon of death at choice, saying, 'Death shall never come to thee as long as thou desirest to live. Truly, death shall approach thee, O sinless one, having first obtained thy command.' "

Thus ends the hundreth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CI.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " O monarch, after the nuptials were over, king Shantanu established his beautiful bride in his household. Soon after was born of Satyavati an intelligent and heroic son of Shantanu named Chittrangada. He was endued with great energy and became the foremost of men. The lord Shantanu of great prowess also begat in Satyavati another son named Vichittra-virya who became a mighty bowman and who became king after his father. And before that bull among men, Vichittra-virya, had attained to majority, the wise king Shantanu realised the inevitable influence of Time. And after Shantanu had ascended to heaven, Bhisma, placing himself under the command of Satyavati, installed that suppressor of the foe, Chittrangada, on the throne. Chittrangada soon vanquished by his prowess all monarchs. He considered not any man as his equal. And beholding that he

could vanquish men, Asuras, and the very gods, the powerful king of the Gandharvas bearing the same name, approached him for an encounter. And between that Gandharva and the foremost of the Kurus, who were both very powerful, there occurred on the field of Kurukshetra a fierce combat. And the combat lasted for full three years on the banks of the Saraswati. And in that terrible encounter characterised by thick showers of weapons and in which the combatants grinded each other fiercely, the Gandharva who had greater prowess of strategic deception slew the Kuru prince. And having slain Chittrangada—that first of men and oppressor of the foe—the Gandharva ascended to heaven. And when that tiger among men endued with great prowess was slain, Bhisma the son of Shantanu performed, O king, all his obsequial rites. And he then installed the boy Vichittra-virya of mighty arms, yet in his minority, on the throne of the Kurus. And Vichittra-virya placing himself under the commands of Bhisma ruled his ancestral kingdom. And he adored Shantanu's son Bhisma who was conversant with all the rules of religion and law, as, indeed, Bhisma also protected him who was so obedient to the dictates of duty.' "

Thus ends the hundred and first Section in the Shambhava of the Adi parva.

SECTION CII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " O thou of the Kuru race, after Chittrangada was slain, his successor Vichittra-virya being a minor, Bhisma ruled the kingdom placing himself under the commands of Satyavati. And when he saw that his brother who was the foremost of intelligent men attained to majority, Bhisma set his heart upon marying Vichittra-virya. At this time he heard that the three daughters of the king of Kasi, all equal in beauty to the Apsaras themelves, would be married on the same occasion, electing their husbands in *Swyamvara.* Then that foremost of charioteers, the vanquisher of all foes, at the command of his mother went to the city of Bara-

nasi with a single chariot. There Bhisma the son of Shantanu saw that innumerable monarchs had come from all directions; and there he also saw those three maidens that would elect their own husbands. And when the (assembled) kings were being mentioned by name, Bhisma then chose those maidens (on behalf of his brother.) And taking them upon his chariot, Bhisma, that first of smiters in battle, addressed the kings, O monarch, and said in a voice like the roar of the clouds, 'The wise have directed that after inviting an accomplished person a maiden may be bestowed on him, decked in ornaments and along with many valuable presents. Others again may bestow their daughters by accepting of a couple of kine. Some again bestow their daughters by taking a fixed sum, and some take away maidens by force. Some wed with the consent of the maidens, some by drugging them into consent, and some by going unto the maiden's parents and obtaining their sanction. Some again obtain wives as presents, for assisting at sacrifices. Of these, the learned always applaud the eighth form of marriage. Kings, however, speak highly of the *Swyamvara* (the fifth form as above) and themselves wed according to it. But the sages have said that that wife is dearly to be prized who is taken away by force, after slaughter of opponents, from amid the concourse of princes and kings invited to a *Swyamvara*. Therefore, ye monarchs, I bear aways these maidens from hence by force. Strive ye to the best of your might to vanquish me or be vanquished! Ye monarchs, I stand here resolved to fight.' The Kuru prince, endued with great energy, thus addressing the assembled monarchs and the king of Kasi, took up on his car those maidens. And having taken them up, he sped his chariot away, challenging the invited kings to battle.

"The challenged monarchs then all stood up, slapping their arms and biting their nether lips in wrath. And loud was the din produced as in great hurry they began to cast off their ornaments and put on their armours. And the motion of their ornaments and armours, O Janamejaya, brilliant as these were, resembled meteoric flashes in the sky. And with b[illegible] contracted and eyes red in rage, the monarchs moved in im[illegible]

tience, their armours and war-ornaments dangling or waving with their agitated steps. The charioteers soon brought handsome cars harnessing fine horses thereto. Those splendid warriors then, furnished with all kinds of weapons, rode on those cars, and with upraised weapons pursued the retreating chief of the Kurus. Then, O Bharata, occurred the terrible encounter between those innumerable monarchs on the one side and the Kuru warrior alone on the other. And the assembled monarchs threw at their foe ten thousand arrows at the same time. Bhisma, however, speedily checked those numberless arrows before they could come upon him, by means of a shower of his own arrows innumerable as the down on the body. Then those kings surrounded him on all sides and rained arrows on him like masses of clouds showering on the mountain-breast. But Bhisma arresting by his shafts the course of that arrowy downpour then pierced each of the monarchs with three shafts. The latter, on the other hand, pierced Bhisma, each with five shafts. But, O king, Bhisma checked these by his prowess and pierced each of the contending kings with two shafts. The combat became so fierce with that dense shower of arrows and other missiles, that it looked very like the encounter between the celestials and the Asuras of old, and men of courage who took no part in it were struck with fear to even loook at the scene. Bhisma cut off on the field of battle, by his arrows, bows, and flag-staffs, and coats of mail, and human heads by hundreds and thousands. And such was his terrible prowess and extraordinary lightness of hand and such the skill with which he protected himself that the contending charioteers, though his enemies, began to applaud him loudly. Then that foremost of all wielders of weapons having vanquished in war all those monarchs, pursued his way towards the capital of the Bharatas, taking those maidens along with him.

"It was then, O king, that that mighty charioteer, king Shalya of immeasurable prowess, from behind summoned Bhisma the son of Shantanu to an encounter. And desirous of obtaining the maidens, he came upon Bhisma like a mighty leader of a herd of Elephants rushing upon another and tearing with his tusks the latter's hips at sight of a female

elephant in season. And Shalya of mighty arms, moved by wrath addressed Bhisma and said, 'Stay, Stay.' Then Bhisma, that tiger among men, that grinder of hostile armies, provoked by those words, flamed up in wrath like a blazing fire. And with bow in hand, and brow furrowed into wrinkles, he stayed on his car, in obedience to Kshatria usage, having checked its course in expectation of the enemy. And all the monarchs, seeing him stop, stood there to become spectators of the coming encounter between him and Shalya. And the two began to exhibit their prowess towards each other like two roaring bulls of great strength at sight of a cow in season. Then that foremost of men, king Shalya, covered Bhisma the son of Shantanu with hundreds and thousands of swift-winged shafts. And those monarchs seeing Shalya thus covering Bhisma at the outset with innumerable shafts, wondered much and uttered shouts of applause. Beholding his lightness of hand in combat, the crowd of kingly spectators became very glad and applauded Shalya greatly. That reducer of hostile towns, Bhisma then, hearing those shouts of the Kshatrias, became very angry, and said, 'Stay, Stay.' In wrath, he commanded his charioteer, saying, 'Lead thou my chariot to where Shalya is, so that I may slay him instantly as Gadura slays a serpent.' Then the Kuru chief fixed the *Varuna* weapon on his bowstring. And with it he slew the four horses of king Shalya. And, O tiger among kings, the Kuru chief then, warding off with his weapons those of his foe, slew Shalya's charioteer. Then that first of men, Bhisma the son of Shantanu, fighting for the sake of those damsels, slew with the *Indra* weapon the (other) noble steeds if his adversary. He then vanquished that best of monarchs but left him with his life. O thou bull of the Bharata race, Shalya after his defeat returned to his kingdom and continued to rule it virtuously. And, O thou conqueror of hostile towns, the other kings also who had come to see the *Swyamvara* returned to their own kingdoms.

"The foremost of smiters, Bhisma then, after defeating those monarchs, set out, with those damsels, for Hastinapore whence the virtuous Kuru prince Vichittra-virya ruled the Earth like that best of monarchs his father Shantanu. And,

O king, passing many forests, rivers, hills, and woods abounding with trees, he arrived (at the capital) in no time. Of immeasurable prowess in war, the son of the ocean-going Ganga, having slain numberless foes in battle without a scratch on his own person, brought the daughters of the king of Kashi unto the Kurus, as tenderly if they were his daughters-in-law or younger sisters, or daughters. And Bhisma of mighty arms, impelled by the desire of benefiting his brother, having by his prowess brought them thus, then offered those maidens possessing every accomplishment unto Vichittra-virya. Conversant with the dictates of virtue, the son of Shantanu, having achieved such an extraordinary feat according to (kingly) custom, then began to make preparations for his brother's wedding. And when everything about the wedding had been settled by Bhisma in consultation with Satyavati, the eldest daughter of the king of Kashi, softly smiling, told him these words: 'In my heart I had chosen the king of Sauva for my husband. He had, in his heart accepted me for his wife. This was also agreeable to my father. In the *swyamvara* I would have also chosen him as my lord. Thou art conversant with all the dictates of virtue! Knowing all this, do as thou likest.' Thus addressed by that maiden in the persence of the Brahmanas, the heroic Bhisma began to reflect upon what should be done. Conversant as he was with the rules of virtue, having consulted with Brahmanas possessing the mastery of the Vedas, he permitted Amvā the eldest daughter of the ruler of Kashi to do as she liked. But he bestowed with due rites the two other daughters, Amvikā and Amvalikā, on his younger brother Vichittra-virya. And though Vichittra-virya was virtuous and abstemious, yet proud of youth and beauty he soon became lustful after his marriage. And both Amvikā and Amvalikā were of tall stature, and of the complexion of heated gold. And their heads were covered with black curly hair, and their finger-nails were high and red. And their hips were fair and round, and their breasts full and high. And endued with every auspicious mark, the amiable young ladies considered themselves wedded to a husband who was everyway worthy of themselves.

And they loved and respected Vichittra-virya very greatly. And Vichittra-virya also, endued with the prowess of the celestials and the beauty of the twin Aswinas, could steal the heart of every beautiful woman. And the prince passed seven years uninterruptedly in the companionship of his wives. He was attacked, while yet in the prime of youth, with pthisis. Friends and relatives in consultation with each other tried to effect a cure. But in spite of all efforts, the Kuru prince died, setting like the evening sun. The virtuous Bhisma then became plunged in anxiety and grief, and in consultation with Satyavati he caused the obsequial rites of the deceased to be performed by learned priests and the several elders of the Kuru race."

Thus ends the hundred and second Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CIII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "The unfortunate Satyavati then became plunged in grief on account of her son. And after performing with her daughters-in- law the obsequial rites of the deceased, consoled as best she could her weeping daughters-in-law and Bhisma that foremost of all wielders of weapons. And turning her eyes on religion, and on the paternal and maternal lines (of the Kurus,) she addressed Bhisma and said, 'The funeral cake, the achievements, and the perpetuation of the line of the virtuous and celebrated Shantanu of the Kuru dynasty, all now depend on thee! As the attainment of heaven is inseparable from good deeds, as longevity of life is inseparable from truth and faith, so is virtue inseparable from thee! O thou virtuous one, thou art well acquainted, in detail and in abstract, with the dictates of virtue, with various *Srutis*, and with all branches of the Vedas. I know very well that thou art equal unto Sukra and Angira as regards firmness in virtue, knowledge of the particular customs of families, and readiness of invention under difficulties. Therefore, O thou foremost of virtuous men, relying on thee greatly

I shall appoint thee in a certain matter. Hearing me, it behoveth thee to do my bidding. O thou bull among men, my son and thy brother, endued with energy and dear unto thee, hath gone childless to heaven while still a boy. These wives of thy brother, the amiable daughters of the ruler of Kashi, possessing both beauty and youth, have become desirous of children. Therefore, O thou of mighty arms, at my command raise up offspring in them for the perpetuation of our line. It behoveth thee to guard virtue from loss. Install thyself on the throne and rule the kingdom of the Bharatas. Wed thou duly a wife. Sink not thy ancestors in hell.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Thus addressed by his mother and friends and relatives, that oppressor of all foes, the virtuous Bhisma gave this reply conformable to the dictates of virtue, 'O mother, what thou sayest is certainly sanctioned by virtue. But thou knowest what my vow is in the matter of begetting children. Thou knowest also all that transpired in connection with thy dower. O Satyavati, I repeat the pledge I once gave,—I would renounce the three worlds, the empire of heaven, or anything that may be greater than that, but truth I would never renounce. Earth may renounce its scent, water may renounce its moisture, light may renounce its attribute of exhibitting forms, the atmosphere may renounce its attribute of being perceivable by the touch, the Sun may renounce his glory, the commet its heat, the Moon his cool rays, space its capacity of generating sound, the slayer of Vitra his prowess, the god of justice his impartiality, but I cannot renounce truth.' Thus addressed by her son endued with wealth of energy, Satyavati then said unto Bhisma, 'O thou whose prowess is truth, I know thy firmness in truth. Thou canst, if so minded, create, by help of thy energy, three worlds other than those that exist. I know what thy vow was on my account. But considering this emergency, bear thou the burden of duty that one oweth to his ancestors. O thou oppressor of the foe, act in such a way that the lineal string may not be broken and our friends and relatives may not grieve!' Thus urged by the miserable and weeping Satyavati speaking such words inconsistent with virtue from

grief at the loss of her son, Bhisma addressed her again and said, 'O Queen, take not thy eyes away from virtue! O destroy us not! Breach of truth in a Kshatria is never applauded in our treatises on religion. I shall soon tell thee, O Queen, what the established Kshatria usage is to which recourse may be had to prevent Shantanu's line becoming extinct on earth. Hearing me, reflect on what should be done, in consultation with learned priests and those that are acquainted with practices allowable in times of emergency and distress, forgetting not at the same time what the ordinary course of social conduct is.' "

And so ends the hundred and third Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CIV.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

"Bhisma continued, 'In olden days, Rama, the son of Jamadagni, in anger at the death of his father, slew with his battle-axe the king of the Haihayas. And Rama by cutting off the thousand arms of Arjuna (the Haihaya king) achieved a most difficult feat in the world. Not content with this, he set out on his chariot for the conquest of the world, and taking up his bow he cast around his mighty weapons to exterminate the Kshatrias. And the illustrious scion of the Bhrigu race, by means of his swift arrows exterminated the Kshatria tribe for one and twenty times.

" 'And when the Earth was thus deprived of Kshatrias by that great Rishi, the Kshatria ladies all over the land raised up offspring by means of Brahmanas skilled in the Vedas. It has been said in the Vedas that the son so raised belongeth to him that had married the mother. And the Kshatria ladies went unto the Brahmanas not lustfully but from motives of virtue. Indeed, it was thus, that the Kshatria race was revived.

" 'In this conection there is another old history that I will recite to you. There was in olden days a wise Rishi of name Utathya. He had a wife of name Mamatã whom he dearly loved. One day, Utathya's younger brother, Vrihaspati, the *Purohita* of the celestials and endued with great energy,

approached Mamatā. The latter, however, told her husband's younger brother—that first of eloquent men—that she had conceived from her connection with his elder brother and that therefore he should not seek then for the consummation of his wishes. She continued,—O thou illustrious Vrihaspati, the child that I have conceived, hath studied in his mother's womb the Vedas with the six *Angas*. *Semen tuum frustra perdi non potest.* How shall then this womb of mine afford room for two children at the same time? Therefore it behoveth thee not to seek for the consummation of thy desire at such a time.—Thus addressed by her, Vrihaspati though possessed of great wisdom succeeded not in suppressing his desire. *Quum autem jam jam cum illá coiturus esset,* the child in the womb then addressed him and said,—O father, cease in thy attempt! There is not space here for two. O thou illustrious one, the room is small. I have occupied it before. *Semen tuum perdi non potest.* It behoveth thee not to afflict me!—But Vrihaspati without listening to what that child in the womb said, sought the embraces of Mamatā possessing the most beautiful pair of eyes. *Ille tamen Muni, qui in ventre erat, id punctum temporis quo humor vitalis jam emissum iret providens, viam per quam semen intrare posset pedibus obstruxit. Semen, ita exlusum, excidit et in terram projectum est.* And the illustrious Vrihaspati beholding this became indignant, and reproaching Utathya's child cursed him, saying,—Because thou hast spoken to me in the way thou hast, at a time of pleasure that is sought after by all creatures, perpetual darkness shall overtake thee.—And from this curse of the illustrious Vrihaspati, Utathya's child who was equal unto Vrihaspati in energy, was born blind and came to be called *Dirghatama* (enveloped in perpetual darkness.) And the wise Dirghatama possessing a knowledge of the Vedas, though born blind, succeeded yet, for the sake of his learning, in obtaining for wife a young and handsome Brahmini maiden of name Pradweshi. And having married her, the illustrious Dirghatama, for the expansion of Utathya's race, begat upon her several children with Gautama as their eldest. These children, however, were all wedded to

covetousness and folly. The virtuous and illustrious Dirghatama possessing complete mastery over the Vedas, soon after learnt from Suravi's son the practices of their order and fearlessly betook to those practices regarding them with reverence. (For shame is the creature of sin and can never be where there is purity of intention.) Then those best of Munis that dwelt in the same asylum, beholding him transgressing the limits of propriety, became indignant, seeing sin where sin was not. And they said,—Oh, this man transgresseth the limits of propriety. No longer doth he deserve a place amongst us. Therefore shall we all cast off this sinful wretch. And they said many other things regarding the Muni Dirghatama. And his wife too, having obtained children, became indignant with him.

" 'The husband then, addressing his wife Pradweshi, said,—Why is it that thou also hast been dissatisfied with me?—His wife answered,—The husband is called the *Varta* because he supporteth the wife. He is called *Pati* because he protecteth her. But thou art neither to me! O thou of great ascetic merit, on the other hand, as thou hast been blind from birth, I it is who have supported thee and thy children. I shall not do so in future.—

" 'Hearing these words of his wife, the Rishi became indignant and said unto his wife with her children,—Take me unto the Kshatrias and thou shalt then be rich?—His wife replied by saying,—I desire not wealth that may be procured by thee, for that can never bring me happiness! O thou best of Brahmanas, do as thou likest. I shall not be able to maintain thee as before.—At these words of his wife, Dirghatama said,—I establish from this day the rule that every woman shall have to adhere to one husband for her life. If the husband be dead or alive, it shall not be lawful for a woman to have connection with another. And she who may have such connection shall certainly be regarded as fallen. A woman without husband shall always be liable to be sinful. And even if she hath wealth she shall not be able to enjoy it truly. Calumny and evil report shall ever follow in her wake.—Hearing these words of her husband, Pradweshi became very

angry, and commanded her sons, saying,—Throw him into the waters of the Ganga.—And at the command of their mother, the wicked Gautama and the other brothers, those slaves of covetousness and folly, exclaiming,—Indeed, why should we support this old man ?—tied the Muni on a raft and committing him to the mercy of the stream returned home without compunction. The blind old man drifting along the stream on that raft passed through the territories of many kings. One day a king of name Vali, conversant with every duty, went into the Ganges for performing his ablutions. And as the monarch was thus engaged, the raft on which the Rishi was, approached him. And as it came, the king took up the old man. The virtuous Vali, ever devoted to truth, then learning who the man was that was thus saved by him, chose him for raising up offspring. And Vali said,—O thou illustrious one, it behoveth thee to raise in my wife a few sons that shall be virtuous and wise.—Thus addressed, the Rishi endued with great energy expressed his willingness. Thereupon king Vali sent his wife Sudeshna unto the Rishi. But the queen knowing that the latter was blind and old went not unto him. Instead, she sent unto him her nurse. And upon that Sudra woman the virtuous Rishi of passions under full control begat eleven children of whom Kakshivan was the eldest. And beholding those eleven sons with Kskshivan as the eldest, who had studied all the Vedas and who like Rishis were utterers of Brahma and possessed of great power, king Vali one day asked the Rishi, saying,—Are these children mine ?—The Rishi replied,—No, they are mine. Kakshivan and others have been begotten by me upon a Sudra woman. Thy unfortunate queen Sudeshna seeing me blind and old insulted me by not coming herself but sending unto me, instead, her nurse ?—The king then pacified that best of Rishis and sent unto him his queen Sudeshna. The Rishi by merely touching her person told her,—Thou shalt have five children named Anga, Banga, Kalinga, Pundra, and Sumbha, who shall be like unto Surya himself in glory. And after their names as many countries shall be known on Earth.—It is after their names that their dominions have come to be called Anga, Banga, Kalinga, Pundra, and Sumbha.

"'It was thus that the line of Vali was perpetuated, in days of old, by a great Rishi. And it was thus also that many mighty bowmen and great charioteers wedded to virtue sprung in the Kshatria tribe from the seed of Brahmanas. Hearing this, O mother, do as thou likest, as regards the matter in hand.' "

Thus ends the hundred and fourth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CV.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

"Bhisma continued, 'Listen, O mother, to me as I indicate the means by which the Bharata line may be perpetuated! Let an accomplished Brahmana be invited by offer of wealth, and let him raise offspring upon the wives of Vichittra-virya.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Satyavati then, smiling softly and her voice broken in bashfulness, addressed Bhisma saying, 'O Bharata of mighty arms, what thou sayest is true. From my confidence in thee I shall now indicate the means of perpetuating our line. Thou shalt not be able to reject it, conversant as thou art with the practices permitted in seasons of distress. In our race, thou art Virtue, and thou art Truth, and thou too art our sole refuge! Therefore, hearing what I say truly, do what may be proper.

"'My father was a virtuous man. For virtue's sake he had kept a (ferry) boat. One day, in the prime of my youth, I went to ply that boat. It so happened that the great and wise Rishi Parashara, that foremost of all virtuous men, came upon my boat for crossing the Yamuna. As I was rowing him accross the river, the Rishi became excited with desire and began to address me in soft words. The fear of my father was uppermost in my mind. But the fear of the Rishi's curse at last prevailed. And having obtained from him a precious boon, I could not refuse his solicitations. The Rishi by his energy brought me under his complete control, and gratified his desire there and then, having first enveloped the region wtih

a thick fog. Before this there was a revolting fishy odor in my body. But the Rishi dispelling it gave me my present fragrance. The Rishi also told me that bringing forth his child on an island of the river, I would continue to be a virgin. And the child of Parashara so born of me in my maidenhood hath become a great Rishi endued with large ascetic powers and known by the name of *Dwaipayana* (the island-born.) That illustrious Rishi having, by his ascetic power, divided the Vedas into four parts hath come to be called on earth by the name of *Vyasa* (the divider or arranger.) and for the darkness of his color, Krishna (the dark.) Truthful in speech, and free from passion, a mighty ascetic who hath burnt all his sins, he went away with his father immediately after his birth. Appointed by me and thee also, that Rishi of incomparable splendour will certainly beget good children upon the wives of thy brother. He told me when he went away,—Mother, think of me, when thou art in difficulty.—I will now recollect him, if thou, O Bhisma of mighty arms, so desirest. If thou art willing, O Bhisma, I am sure that great ascetic will beget children in Vichittra-virya's field.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Mention being made of the great Rishi, Bhisma with joined palms said, 'That man is truly intelligent who fixes his eyes judiciously on virtue, profit, and pleasure ; who after reflecting with patience acteth in such a way that virtue may lead to future virtue, profit to future profit, and pleasure to future pleasure. Therefore that which hath been said by thee, and which besides being beneficial to us is consistent with virtue, is certainly the best advice and hath my full approval.' And when Bhisma had said this, O thou of the Kuru race, Kali (Satyavati) thought of the Muni Dwaipayana. And Dwaipayana who was then engaged in interpreting the Vedas, learning that he was being thought of by his mother, came instantly unto her without anybody knowing it. Satyavati then duly saluted her son and embracing him with her arms bathed him with her tears, for the daughter of the fisherman wept copiously at the sight of her son after so long a time. And her first son, the great Rishi Vyasa, beholding her weeping, washed her with cool

water, and bowing to her, said, 'I have come, O mother, to fulfil thy wishes. Therefore, O thou virtuous one, command me without delay. I shall accomplish thy desire.' The family priest of the Bharatas then worshipped the great Rishi duly, and the latter accepted the offerings of worship, uttering the usual *mantras*. And gratified with the worship he received, he took his seat. And Satyavati beholding him seated at his ease, after the usual inquiries, addressed him and said, 'O thou learned one, sons derive their birth both from the father and the mother. They are, therefore, the common property of both parents. There cannot be the least doubt about it that the mother hath as much power over them as the father. As thou art, indeed, my eldest son according to the ordinance, O *Brahmarshi*, so is Vichittra-virya my youngest son. And as Bhisma is Vichittra-virya's brother on the father's side, so art thou his brother on the mother's side. I do not know what you may think, but this is what, O son, I think. This Bhisma the son of Shantanu, devoted to truth, doth not, for the sake of truth, entertain the desire of either begetting children or ruling the kingdom. Therefore, from affection for thy brother Vichittra-virya, for the pepetuation of our dynasty, for the sake of this Bhisma's request and my command, for kindness to all creatures, for the protection of the people, and from the liberality of thy heart, O thou sinless one, it behoveth thee to do what I say! Thy younger brother hath left too wives like unto the daughters of the celestials themselves, endued with youth and great beauty. For the sake of virtue and religion, they have become desirous of offspring. Thou art the fittest person to be appointed. Therefore, beget upon them children worthy of our race and for the continuance of our line.'

"Vyasa, hearing this, said, 'O Satyavati, thou knowest what virtue is, both in respect of this and the other life. O thou of great wisdom, thy affections also are fixed on virtue. Therefore, at thy command, making virtue my motive, I shall do what thou desirest. Indeed, this practice that is conformable to the true and eternal religion is known to me. I shall give unto my brother children that shall be like unto

Yama and Varuna. Let the ladies then duly observe for one full year the vow I indicate. They shall then be purified. No woman shall ever approach me without having observed a rigid vow.'

"Satyavati then said, 'O thou sinless one, it must not be as you say. On the other hand, take such steps that the ladies may conceive immediately. In a kingdom where there is no king, the people perish from want of protection; sacrifices and other holy acts are suspended; the clouds give no showers, and the gods disappear. How can, O lord, a kingdom be protected that hath no king? Therefore, see thou that the ladies conceive. Bhisma will watch over the children as long as they may be in their mother's wobms.'

"Vyasa replied, 'If I am to give unto my brother children so unseasonably, then let the ladies bear my ugliness. That of itself shall, in their case, be the austerest of penances. If the princess of Koshala can bear my strong odor, my ugly and grim visage, my attire and body, she shall then conceive an excellent child.'"

Vaismpayana continued, "Having spoken thus to Satyavati, Vyasa of great energy again addressed her and said, 'Let the princess of Koshala in clean attire and decked in ornaments wait for me in her sleeping apartments.' And saying this the Rishi disappeared. Satyavati then went to her daughter-in-law and seeing her in private spoke to her these words of beneficial and virtuous import: 'O princess of Koshala, listen to what I say. It is consistent with virtue. The dynasty of the Bharatas hath become extinct from my misfortune. Beholding my affliction and the extinction of his paternal line, the wise Bhisma, impelled also by the desire of perpetuating our race, hath made me a suggestion. That suggestion, however, for its accomplishment, is dependent on thee. Accomplish it, O daughter, and restore the lost line of the Bharatas! O thou of fair hips, bring thou forth a child equal in splendour unto the chief of the celestials! He shall bear the onerous burden of this our hereditary kingdom.'

"Satyavati having succeeded with great difficulty in procuring the assent of her virtuous daughter-in-law to her propo-

sals not inconsistent with virtue, then fed Brahmanas and Rishis and numberless guests who arrived on the occasion."

Thus ends the hundred and the fifth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CVI.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Soon after when the princess of Koshala had her season, Satyavati purifying her daughter-in-law with a bath led her to her sleeping apartments. There seating her upon a luxurious bed, she addressed her, saying, 'O princess of Koshala, thy husband hath an elder brother who shall this day enter thy womb as thy child. Wait for him tonight without sinking into sleep.' Hearing these words of her mother-in-law, the amiable princess, as she lay on her bed, began to think of Bhisma and the other elders of the Kuru race. Then the Rishi of truthful speech, who had given his promise in respect of Amvika (the eldest of the princesses) in the first instance, entered her chamber while the lamp was burning. The princess seeing his dark visage, his matted locks of copper hue, his blazing eyes, his grim beard, closed her eyes in fear. The Rishi, however, from desire of accomplishing his mother's wishes, united himself with her. But the latter, struck with fear, opened not her eyes even once to look at him. And when Vyasa came out he was met by his mother. And she asked him, 'Shall the princess have an accomplished son?' Hearing her he replied, 'The son the princess shall bring forth will be equal in might unto ten thousand Elephants. He will be an illustrious royal sage, possessed of great learning and intelligence and energy. The high-souled one shall have in time a century of sons. But from the fault of his mother he shall be blind.' At these words of her son, Satyavati said, 'O thou of ascetic wealth, how can one that is blind become a monarch worthy of the Kurus? How can one that is blind become the protector of his relatives and family, and the glory of his father's race? It behoveth thee to give another king unto the Kurus!' Saying 'So be it,' Vyasa went away.

And the first princess of Koshala in due time brought forth a blind son.

"Soon after Satyavati, O thou suppressor of the foe, summoned Vyasa, after having procured the assent of her daughter-in-law. Vyasa came according to his promise, and approached, as before, the second wife of his brother. And Amvalika beholding the Rishi became pale with fear. And, O Bharata, beholding her so afflicted and pale with fear, Vyasa addressed her and said, 'Because thou hast been pale with fear at sight of my grim visage, therefore shall thy child be pale in complexion. And, O thou of handsome face, the name also of thy child shall be *Pandu* (the pale).' Saying this, the illustrious and best of Rishis came out of her chamber. And as he came out, he was met by his mother who asked him about the would-be child. The Rishi told her that the child would be of pale complexion and known by the name of Pandu. Satyavati again begged of the Rishi another child, and the Rishi told her in reply, 'So be it.' Amvalika then, when her time came, brought forth a son of pale complexion. Blazing with beauty, the child was endued with all auspicious marks. Indeed, it was this child who afterwards became the father of those mighty bowmen—the Pandavas.

"Sometime after, when the eldest of Vichittra-virya's wives again had her season, she was solicited by Satyavati to approach Vyasa once more. Possessed of beauty like unto a daughter of the celestials, the princess refused to do her mother-in-law's bidding, remembering the grim visage and strong odor of the Rishi. She, however, sent unto him, a maid of hers, endued with the beauty of an Apsara and decked in her own ornaments. And when Vyasa arrived, the maid rose up and saluted him. And she waited upon him respectfully and took her seat near him when asked. And, O king, the great Rishi of rigid vows was well pleased with her. And when he rose up to go away, he addressed her and said, 'Amiable one, thou shalt no longer be a slave. Thy child also shall be greatly fortunate and virtuous, and the foremost of all intelligent men on earth.' And, O king, the son thus begotten upon her by Krishna-Dwaipayana was afterwards known by the name

of Vidura. He was thus the brother of Dhrita-rashtra and of the illustrious Pandu. And Vidura was free from desire and passion, and conversant with the rules of government, and was the god of justice born on earth under the curse of the illustrious Rishi Mandavya. And Krishna-Dwaipayana, when he met his mother as before, informed her how he was deceived by the eldest of the princesses and how he had begotten a son upon a Sudra woman. And having spoken thus unto his mother, the Rishi disappeared in her sight.

"Thus were born, in the field (wives) of Vichittra-virya, even from Dwaipayana, those sons of the splendour of celestial children and expanders of the Kuru race."

Thus ends the hundred and sixth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi parva.

Section CVII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said, "What did the god of justice do for which he was cursed ? And who was the Brahmana ascetic from whose curse the god had to be born in the Sudra caste ?"

Vaisampayana said, "There was a Brahmana known by the name of Mandavya. He was conversant with all duties and was devoted to religion, truth, and asceticism. That great ascetic used to sit at the entrance of his asylum at the foot of a tree, with his arms upraised in the observance of the vow of silence. And as he had sat there for years and years together, one day there came into his asylum a number of robbers laden with spoil. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, those robbers were then being pursued by a superior body of the guardians of the peace. And the thieves entering that asylum hid their booty there, and in fear concealed themselves thereabouts before the guards came. But scarcely had they thus concealed themselves, the constables in pursuit came into the spot. The latter, observing the Rishi sitting under the tree, questioned him, O king, saying, 'O thou best of Brahmanas, which way have the thieves taken? Point it out to us so that we may follow it without loss of time.' Thus

questioned by the guardians of the peace, the ascetic, O king, said not a word, good or bad, in reply. The officers of the king, however, in searching that asylum soon discovered the thieves concealed thereabouts together with the plunder. Upon this their suspicions fell upon the Muni, and accordingly they seized him with the thieves and brought him before the king. The king sentenced him to be executed along with his supposed associates. And the officers, acting in ignorance, carried out the sentence by impaling the celebrated Rishi. And having impaled him, they went to the king with the booty they had recovered. But the virtuous Rishi, though impaled and kept without food, remained in that state for a long time without dying. And the Rishi by his ascetic power not only preserved his life but summoned other Rishis to the scene. And they came there in the night in the form of birds, and beholding him engaged in ascetic meditation though fixed on that stake, they became plunged in grief. And telling that best of Brahmanas who they were, they asked him saying, 'O Brahmana, we desire to know what hath been thy sin for which thou hast thus been made to suffer the tortures of impalement.'"

Thus ends the hundred and seventh Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section CVIII.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Thus asked, that tiger among Munis then answered those Rishis of ascetic wealth, 'Whom shall I blame for this? In fact, none else (than my own self) hath offended against me!' After this, O monarch, the officers of justice seeing him alive informed the king of it. The latter hearing what they said, and having consulted with his advisers, came to the place and began to pacify the Rishi fixed on the stake. And the king said, 'O thou best of Rishis, I have offended against thee in ignorance. I beseech thee, pardon me for the same. It behoveth thee not to be angry with me.' Thus addressed by the king, the Muni was pacified. And beholding him free from wrath, the king took him up with the stake and endea-

voured to extract it from his body. But not succeeding therein, he cut it off at the point just outside the body. The Muni with a portion of the stake within his body walked about, and in that state practised the austerest penances and conquered numberless regions unattainable by others. And for the circumstance of a part of the stake being within his body, he came to be known in the three worlds by the name of *Ani-mandavya* (Mandavya with a stake within). And one day that Brahmana acquainted with the highest truths of religion went unto the abode of the god of justice. And beholding there the god seated on her throne, the Rishi reproached him and said, 'What, pray, is that sinful act committed by me unconsciously, for which I am bearing this punishment? O tell me soon, and behold the power of my asceticism!'

"The god of justice, thus questioned, replied, saying, 'O thou of ascetic wealth, a little insect was by thee once pierced with a blade of grass. Thou bearest now the consequence of that act. As, O Rishi, a gift, however small, multiplieth in respect of its religious merits, so a sinful act multiplieth in respect of the woe it bringeth in its train.' Hearing this, Ani-mandavya asked, 'O, tell me truly when was this act committed by me.' Told in reply by the god of justice that he had committed it when a child, the Rishi said, 'That shall not be sin which may be done by a child up to the twelfth year of his age from birth. The *shastras* shall not recognise it as sinful. The punishment thou hast inflicted on me for such a venial offence hath been disproportionate in severity. The killing of a Brahmana involves a sin that is heavier than the killing of any other living being. Thou shalt, therefore, O god of justice, have to be born among men even in the Sudra order! And from this day, I establish this limit in respect of the consequences of acts that an act shall not be sinful when committed by one below the age of fourteen years. But when committed by one above that age, it shall be regarded as sin.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Cursed for this fault by that illustrious Rishi, the god of justice took his birth as Vidura

in the Sudra order. And Vidura was well-skilled in the doctrines of morality and also of politics and worldly profit. And he was entirely free from covetousness and wrath. Possessed of great foresight and undisturbed tranquillity of mind, Vidura was ever engaged in the welfare of the Kurus."

Thus ends the hundred and eighth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CIX.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Upon the birth of those three children, Kurujangala, Kurukshetra, and the Kurus grew in prosperity. The Earth began to give abundant harvests and the crops also became of good flavour. And the clouds began to pour rain in season and the trees became full of fruits and flowers. And the draught cattle were all happy and the birds and other animals rejoiced exceedingly. And the flowers became fragrant and the fruits became well-flavoured. And the cities and towns became filled with merchants and traders and artists of every description. And the people became brave, learned, honest, and happy. And there were no robbers then, nor anybody who was sinful. And it seemed that the golden age had come upon every part of the kingdom. And the people, devoted to virtuous acts, sacrifices, and truth, and regarding each other with love and affection, grew up in prosperity. And free from pride, wrath, and covetousness, they rejoiced in sports that were perfectly innocent. And the capital of the Kurus, full as the ocean, and teeming with hundreds of palaces and mansions, and possessing gates and arches dark as the clouds, looked like a second Amaravati. And men in great cheerfulness sported constantly on rivers, lakes, and tanks, and in fine groves and charming woods. And the southern Kurus in virtuous rivalry with their northern kinsmen walked about in the company of Charanas and Rishis crowned with success. And all over that delightful country whose prosperity was thus increased by the Kurus, there were no misers and no women that were widows. And the wells

and lakes were ever full, and the groves abounded with trees, and the houses and the abodes of Brahmanas were all full of wealth. And the whole kingdom was full of festivities. And, O king, virtuously ruled by Bhisma, the kingdom was adorned with hundreds of sacrificial stakes. And the wheel of virtue having been set in motion by Bhisma, the country became so delightful that the subjects of other kingdoms leaving their homes came to dwell there and increase its population. And the citizens and the people were filled with hope upon seeing the youthful acts of their illustrious princes. And, O king, in the houses of the Kuru chiefs as also of the principal citizens, 'Give' and 'Eat' were the words that were constantly heard. And Dhrita-rashtra and Pandu and Vidura of great intelligence were from their birth brought up by Bhisma as if they were his own children. And the children having passed through the usual rites of their order devoted themselves to vows and study. And they grew up into fine youths skilled in the Vedas and all athletic sports. And they became well skilled in exercises of the bow, in horsemanship, in encounters with the mace, sword, and shield, in the management of elephants in battle, and the science of morality. And well-read in history and the Puranas and various branches of learning, and acquainted with the truths of the Vedas and the Vedangas, the knowledge they acquired was versatile and deep. And Pandu possessed of great prowess excelled all men in the science of the bow, while Dhrita-rashtra excelled all in personal strength; while in the three worlds there was no one equal to Vidura in devotion to virtue and knowledge of the dictates of morality. And beholding the restoration of the extinct line of Shantanu, the saying became current in all countries, *viz*, that among mothers of heroes, the daughters of the king of Kashi were the first; that among countries Kuru-jangala was the first; that among virtuous men, Vidura was the first; and that among cities Hastinapore was the first. Pandu became king, for Dhrita-rashtra owing to his blindness, and Vidura his birth in a Sudra woman, obtained not the kingdom. One day Bhisma, the foremost of those acquainted with the duties of statesmanship and dictates of morality,

properly addressing Vidura conversant with the truths of religion and virtue, said as follows.' "

And so ends the hundred and ninth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CX.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

"Bhisma said, 'This our celebrated race, resplendent with every virtue and accomplishment, hath all along exercised sovereignty over all other monarchs on earth. Its glory maintained and itself perpetuated by many virtuous and illustrious monarchs of old, the illustrious Krishna (Dwaipayana), Satyavati, and myself have raised ye (three) up, inorder that it may not be extinct. And it behoveth myself and thee also to take such steps that this our dynasty may expand again as the sea. It hath been heard by me that there are three maidens, worthy of being allied to our race. One is the daughter of (Surasena of) the Yadava race ; the other is the daughter of Suvala; and the third is the princess of Madra. And, O son, these maidens are, therefore, all of pure birth. Possessed of beauty and pure blood, they are eminently fit for alliances with our family. O thou foremost of intelligent men, I think we should choose them for the growth of our race. Tell me what thou thinkest.' Thus addressed, Vidura replied, 'Thou art our father and thou too art our mother ! Thou art our respected spiritual instructor ! Therefore do thou that which may be best for us in thy eyes !' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Soon after Bhisma heard from the Brahmanas that Gandhari the amiable daughter of Suvala having worshipped Hara (Siva) had obtained from that deity the boon that she should have a century of sons. Bhisma the grand-father of the Kurus having heard this, sent messengers unto the king of Gandhara (proposing Dhrita-rashtra's marriage with Gandhari.) King Suvala hesitated at first on account of the blindness of bride-groom. But taking into consideration the blood of the Kurus, their fame and behaviour, he gave his virtuous daughter unto Dhrita-rashtra. And the

chaste Gandhari learning that Dhrita-rashtra was blind and that her parents had consented to wed her with him, from love and respect for her future husband bandaged her own eyes with cloth gathered into many folds. Then Sakuni, the son of Suvala, bringing unto the Kurus his sister endued with youth and beauty, formally gave her away unto Dhrita-rashtra. And Gandhari was received with great respect and the nuptials were celebrated with great pomp under Bhisma's directions. And the heroic Sakuni after having bestowed his sister along with many valuable robes, and having received Bhisma's adorations, returned to his own city. And, O thou of the Bharata race, the beautiful Gandhari gratified all the Kurus by her behaviour and respectful attentions. And Gandhari, ever devoted to her husband, gratified her superiors by her good conduct; and chaste as she was, she never referred, even by words, to men other than her husband or such superiors."

Thus ends the hundred and tenth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXI.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, "There was amongst the Yadavas a chief of name Shura. He was the father of Vasudeva. And he had a daughter called Prithā, who in beauty was unrivalled on earth. And, O thou of the Bharata race, Shura, always truthful in speech, gave from friendship this his first-born daughter unto his childless cousin and friend the illustrious Kunti-bhoja—the son of his paternal aunt—pursuant to former promise. And Prithā in the house of her adoptive father was engaged in looking after the duties of hospitality to Brahmanas and other guests. One day she gratified by her attentions the terrible Brahmana of rigid vows, known by the name of Durvasa and who was well-acquainted with the hidden truths of morality. And gratified with her respectful attentions, the Rishi, anticipating by his spiritual power the future season of distress (consequent upon the curse to be pronounced upon Pandu for his unrighteous act of slaying a deer

while coupling with its mate) imparted to her a formula of invocation for summoning any of the celestials she liked for giving her children. And the Rishi said, 'Those celestials that thou shalt summon by this *mantra* shall certainly approach thee and give thee children.' Thus addressed by the Brahmana, the amiable Kunti (Prithā) became curious, and in her maiden-hood summoned the god Arka (Sun). And as soon as she pronounced the *mantra*, she beheld that effulgent deity—that beholder of everything in the world—approaching her. And beholding that extraordinary sight, the maiden of faultless features was overcome with surprise. But the god Vivaswan approaching her said, 'Here I am, O black-eyed girl! Tell me what I am to do for thee!'

"Hearing this, Kunti said, 'O thou slayer of the foe, a certain Brahmana gave me this formula of invocation as a boon. O lord, I have summoned thee only to test the efficacy of that formula. For this offence I bow to thee for thy grace. A woman, whatever her offence, always deserveth pardon.' Surya replied, 'I know that Durvasa hath granted thee this boon. But cast off thy fears, timid maiden, and grant me thy embraces. Amiable one, my approach cannot be futile. It must bear fruit. Thou hast summoned me. If it be for nothing, it shall certainly be regarded as thy fault.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Vivaswan thus spake unto her many things with a view to allay her fears. But, O Bharata, the amiable maiden, from modesty and fear of her relatives, consented not to grant his request. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, Arka addressed her again and said, 'O princess, for my sake, it shall not be sinful in thee to grant my wish.' Thus speaking unto the daughter of Kunti-bhoja, the illustrious Tapana—the illuminator of the universe—gratified his wishes. And from this connection was immediately born a son known all over the world as Karna, encased in natural armour and with face brightened by ear-rings. And the heroic Karna was the first of all wielders of weapons, blessed with good fortune, and endued with the beauty of a celestial child. And after the birth of this child, the illustrious Tapana granted unto Prithā her maiden-hood and ascended to heaven. And the princess

of the Vrishni race, beholding with sorrow that son born of her, reflected intently upon what was then best for her to do. And from fear of her relatives she resolved to conceal that evidence of her frailty. And she cast her offspring endued with great physical strength into the water. Then the well-known husband of Radhā, of the Suta caste, took up the child thus cast into the water, and with his wife brought him up as their own son. And Radhā and her husband bestowed on him the name of *Vasu-sena* (born with wealth) because he was born with a natural armour and ear-rings. And endued as he was with great strength, as he grew up he became skilled in all weapons. Possessed of great energy, he used to adore the Sun until his back was heated by his rays (*i. e.* from dawn to mid-day); and during his hours of worship, there was nothing on earth that the heroic and intelligent Vasu-sena would not give unto the Brahmanas. And Indra desirous of benefiting his own son Falguni (Arjuna), assuming the form of a Brahmana, approached Vasu-sena on one occasion and asked of him his natural armour. Thus asked, Karna took off his natural armour, and joining his hands in reverence gave it unto Indra in the guise of a Brahmana. And the chief of the celestials accepted the gift and was exceedingly gratified with Karna's liberality. He therefore gave unto him a fine javelin, saying, 'That one (and *one* only) among the celestials, the Asuras, men, the Gandharvas, the Nagas, and the Rakshasas, whom thou desirest to conquer, shall by this javelin be certainly slain.'

" 'The son of Surya was before this known by the name of Vasu-sena. But since he cut off his natural armour, he came to be called *Karna* (*the cutter or peeler* of his own cover.)"

Thus ends the hundred and eleventh Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " The large-eyed daughter of Kunti-bhoja—Pritha by name, was endued with beauty and every accomplishment. Of rigid vows, she was devoted to virtue, and possessed every good quality. But though endued with beauty and youth and every womanly attribute, yet it so happened that no king asked for her hand. Her father Kunti-bhoja, seeing this, invited, O best of monarchs, the princes and kings of other countries and desired his daughter to elect her husband from among his guests. The intelligent Kunti entering the amphitheatre beheld Pandu—the foremost of the Bharatas—that tiger among kings—in that concourse of crowned heads. Proud as the lion, broad-chested, bull-eyed, endued with great strength, and out-shining in splendour all other monarchs, he looked like another Indra in that royal assemblage. And the amiable daughter of Kunti-bhoja, of faultless features, behholding Pandu—that best of men—in that assembly, became very much agitated. And advancing with modesty, all the while quivering with emotion, she placed the nuptial garland round Pandu's neck. The other monarchs, seeing Kunti choose Pandu for her lord, returned to their respective kingdoms on elephants, horses, and cars, as they came. Then, O king, the bride's father caused the nuptial rites to be performed duly. The Kuru prince, blessed with great good fortune, and the daughter of Kunti-bhoja, formed a couple like Maghavan and Paulomi (the king and queen of the celestials). And, O thou best of Kuru monarchs, king Kunti-bhoja, after the nuptials were over, presented his son-in-law with much wealth and sent him back to his capital. Then the Kuru prince Pandu, accompanied by a large force bearing various kinds of banners and penons, and eulogised by Brahmanas and great Rishis pronouncing benedictions, reached his capital. And arrived at his own palace, he established his queen therein."

Thus ends the hundred and twelfth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section CXIII.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana continued, "Sometime after, Bhisma the intelligent son of Shantanu set his heart upon marrying Pandu, to a second wife. And accompanied by an army composed of four kinds of force, and also by aged councillors and Brahmanas and great Rishis, he went to the capital of the king of Madra. And that bull of the Valhikas—the king of Madra—hearing that Bhisma had arrived, went out to receive him. And having received him with respect, he caused him to enter his palace. And arrived there, the king of Madra gave unto Bhisma a white carpet for seat, water for washing his feet, and the usual oblations of various ingredients indicative of respect. And when he was seated at his ease, the king asked him the reason of his visit. Then Bhisma—the supporter of the dignity of the Kurus—addressed the king of Madra and said, 'O thou oppressor of all foes, know that I have come for the hand of a maiden. It hath been heard by us that thou hast a sister named Madri celebrated for her beauty and endued with every virtue. I would choose her for Pandu. Thou art, O king, every way worthy of an alliance with us, and we also are worthy of thee! Reflecting upon all this, O king of Madra, accept us duly.' The ruler of Madra, thus addressed by Bhisma, then replied, 'To my mind, there is none else than one of thy family a better one to make alliance with. But there is a custom in our family acted upon by our ancestors, which, be it good or be it evil, I am incapable of transgressing. It is well-known, and therefore is known to thee as well, I doubt not. Therefore, it is not proper for thee to tell me,—*Bestow thy sister.*—The custom to which I allude is our family custom. That with us is virtue and worthy of observance. It is for this only, O thou slayer of all foes, I cannot give thee any assurance in the matter of thy request.' Hearing this, Bhisma answered the king of Madra, saying, 'O king, this, no doubt, is virtue. The Self-create himself hath said it. Thy ancestors have observed the custom. There

is no fault to find with it. It is also well-known, O Shalya, that this custom in respect of family dignity hath the approval of the wise and the good.' Saying this, Bhisma of great energy, gave unto Shalya much gold both coined and uncoined, and precious stones of various colors by thousands, and elephants and horses, and cars and much cloth and many ornaments, and gems and pearls and corals. And Shalya accepting with a cheerful heart those precious gifts then gave away his sister decked in ornaments unto that bull of the Kuru race. Then the wise Bhisma, the son of the ocean-going Ganga, rejoiced at the issue of his mission, and taking Madri with him, returned to the Kuru capital named after the elephant.

" Then selecting an auspicious day and moment as indicated by the wise for the ceremony, king Pandu was duly united with Madri. And after the nuptials were over, the Kuru king established his beautiful bride in handsome apartments. And, O king of kings, that best of monarchs then gave himself up to enjoyment in the company of his two wives as best he liked and to the limit of his desires. And after thirty days had elapsed, the Kuru king, O monarch, started from his capital for the conquest of the world. And after reverentially saluting and bowing to Bhisma and other elders of the Kuru race, and with adieus to Dhrita-rashtra and others of the family, and obtaining their leave, he set out on his grand campaign, accompanied by a large force of elephants, horses, and cars, and well-pleased with the blessings uttered by all around and the auspicious rites performed by the citizens for his success. And Pandu, accompanied by such a strong force marched against various foes. And that tiger among men—that spreader of the fame of the Kurus—first subjugated the robber tribes of *Dasharna*. He next turned his army composed of innumerable elephants, cavalry, infantry, and chariots, with standards of various colors, against, Dhirgha—the ruler of the kingdom of Maghadha—who, proud of his strength, had offended against numerous monarchs. And attacking him in his capital, Pandu slew him there, and took everything in his treasury and also vehicles and draught ani-

mals without number. He then marched into Mithila and subjugated the Videhas. And then, O thou bull among men, Pandu led his army against Kasi, Sumbha, and Pundra, and by the strength and prowess of his arms he spread the fame of the Kurus. And Pandu—that oppressor of all foes—like unto a mighty fire whose far-reaching flames were represented by his arrows, and splendour by his weapons, began to consume all kings that came in contact with him. And these with their forces, being vanquished by Pandu at the head of his, were made the vassals of the Kurus. And all the kings of the world, thus vanquished by him, regarded him as the one only hero on earth even as the celestials regard Indra in heaven. And the kings of the earth with joined palms bowed to him and waited on him wiih presents of various kinds of gems and wealth—precious stones and pearls and corals, and much gold and silver, and first-class kine and handsome horses and fine cars and elephants, and asses and camels and buffaloes, and goats and sheep, and blankets and beautiful hides, and carpets made of the skin of the Ranku deer. And the king of Hastinapore accepting those offerings retraced his steps towards his capital to the great delight of his subjects. And the citizens and others filled with joy, and kings and ministers, all began to say, 'O the fame of the achievements of Shantanu, that tiger among kings, and of the wise Bharata, that was about to die, hath been revived by Pandu. They who before robbed the Kurus of both territory and wealth have been by Pandu—that tiger of Hastinapore—subjugated and made to pay tribute!' And all the citizens with Bhisma at their head went out to receive the victorious king. They did not proceed far when they saw the attendants of the king laden with much wealth. And the train of various conveyances laden with all kinds of wealth, and of elephants, horses, cars, kine, camels, and other animals, was so long that they saw not its end. Then Pandu—the sweller of Kausalya's joy—beholding his father Bhisma worshipped his feet and saluted the citizens and others as each deserved. And Bhisma too embracing his son who had returned victorious after grinding many hostile kingdoms, wept tears of joy. And Pandu

then instilling joy into the hearts of his people with flourish of trumpets and conches and kettle-drums, entered his capital."

Thus ends the hundred and thirteenth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXIV.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Pandu then, at the command of Dhrita-rashtra, offered the wealth he had acquired by the prowess of his arms to Bhisma, their grand-mother Satyavati, and their mothers, the princesses of Koshala. And he sent a portion of his wealth to Vidura also. And the virtuous Pandu gratified his other relatives also with similar presents. Then Satyavati and Bhisma and the Koshala princesses were all gratified with the presents Pandu made out of the acquisitions of his prowess. And Amvalika in particular, upon embracing her son of incomparable prowess became as glad as the queen of heaven upon embracing Jayanta. And with the wealth acquired by that hero, Dhrita-rashtra performed five great sacrifices that were equal unto an hundred great horse-sacrifices, in all of which the offerings to Brahmanas were by hundreds and thousands.

"A little while after, O thou bull of the Bharata race, Pandu who had achieved a victory over sloth and lethargy accompanied by his two wives Kunti and Madri retired into the woods. Leaving his excellent palace with its luxurious beds, he become a permanent inhabitant of the woods devoting the whole of his time to the chase of the deer. And fixing his abode in a delightful and hilly region overgrown with huge *shal* trees, on the southern slope of the Himavat mountains, he roamed about in perfect freedom. The handsome Pandu in the midst of his two wives wandered in those woods like Airavata in the midst of two she-elephants. And the dwellers of those woods beholding the heroic Bharata prince in the company of his wives, armed with sword, arrows, and bow, encased in his beautiful armour, and skilled in all excellent weapons, regarded him as a very god wandering amongst them.

And at the command of Dhrita-rashtra, people were busy in supplying Pandu in his retirement with every object of pleasure and enjoyment.

"Meanwhile the son of the ocean-going Ganga heard that king Devaka had a daughter endued with youth and beauty and begotten upon a Sudra wife. Bringing her from her father's abode, Bhisma married her to Vidura of great wisdom. And the Kuru prince Vidura begot upon her many children like unto himself in accomplishments."

Thus ends the hundred and fourteenth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXV.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Meanwhile, O Janamejaya, Dhrita-rashtra begat upon Gandhari an hundred sons, and upon a Vaisya wife another besides these hundred. And Pandu had by his two wives Kunti and Madri five sons who were great charioteers and who were all begotten by the celestials for the perpetuation of the Kuru line."

Janamejaya said, "O thou best of Brahmanas, how did Gandhari bring forth these hundred sons and in how many years? What were also the periods of life alloted to each? How did Dhrita-rashtra also beget another son in a Vaisya wife? How did Dhrita-rashtra behave towards his loving, obedient, and virtuous wife Gandhari? How were also begotten the five sons of Pandu—those mighty charioteers—even though Pandu himself laboured under the curse of the great Rishi (he slew)? O thou of ascetic wealth and great learning, tell me all this in detail, for my thirst of hearing everything relating to my own ancestors hath not been slaked."

Vaisampayana said, "One day Gandhari entertained with respectful attention the great Dwaipayana who came to her abode exhausted with hunger and fatigue. Gratified with Gandhari's hospitality, the Rishi gave her the boon she asked, *viz*, that she should have a century of sons each equal unto her lord in strength and accomplishments. Sometime after,

Gandhari conceived. She bore the burden in her womb for two long years without being delivered. And she was greatly afflicted at this. It was then that she heard that Kunti had brought forth a son whose splendour was like unto the morning sun. Anxious that in her own case the period of gestation had been so long, and deprived of reason by grief, with great violence she struck her womb without the knowledge of her husband. And thereupon came out of her womb, after two years' growth, a hard mass of flesh like unto an iron ball. When she was about to throw it away, Dwaipayana learning everything by his spiritual powers, promptly came there, and that first of ascetics beholding that ball of flesh addressed the daughter of Suvala and said, 'What hast thou done?' Gandhari without endeavouring to disguise her feelings, addressed the Rishi and said, 'Having heard that Kunti had brought forth a son like unto *Suryā* himself in splendour, I struck in grief at my womb. Thou hadst, O Rishi, granted me the boon that I should have an hundred sons. But here is only a ball of flesh for those hundred sons.' Vyasa then said, 'Daughter of Suvala, it is even so. But my words can never be futile. I have not spoken an untruth even in jest. I need not speak of other occasions. Let an hundred pots full of clarified butter be brought instantly, and let them be placed at a concealed spot. In the meantime, let cool water be sprinkled upon this ball of flesh.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "That ball of flesh then, sprinkled over with water, became, in time, divided into an hundred and one parts, each about the size of the thumb. These were then put into those pots full of clarified butter that had been placed at a concealed spot, and were watched with care. The illustrious Vyasa then said unto the daughter of Suvala that she should open the covers of the pots after full two years. And having said this, and made those arrangements, the wise Dwaipayana went to the Himavat mountains for devoting himself to asceticism.

"Then, in time, king Duryodhana was born from among those pieces of the ball of flesh that had been deposited in those pots. According to the order of birth, king Yudhish-

thira was the eldest. The news of Duryodhana's birth was carried to Bhisma and the wise Vidura. The day that the haughty Duryodhana was born was also the birth-day of Bhima of mighty arms and great prowess.

"As soon as Duryodhana was born he began to cry and bray like an ass. And hearing that sound, the asses, vultures, jackals, and crows uttered their respective cries responsively. Violent winds began to blow, and there were fires in various directions. Then king Dhrita-rashtra in great fear summoning Bhisma, and Vidura, and other well-wishers and all the Kurus, and numberless Brahmanas, addressed them and said, 'The eldest of the princes, Yudhish-thira, is the perpetuator of our line. By virtue of his birth he hath acquired the kingdom. We have nothing to say to this. But shall this my son born after him become king? Tell me truly what is lawful and right under these circumstances.' As soon as these words were spoken, O Bharata, jackals and other carnivorous animals began to howl ominously. And marking those frightful omens all around, the assembled Brahmanas and the wise Vidura replied, 'O king, O thou bull among men, when these frightful omens are noticeable at the birth of thy eldest son, it is evident that he shall be the exterminator of thy race. The prosperity of all dependeth on his abandonment. Calamity there must be in keeping him. O king, if thou abandonest him, there remain yet for thee nine and ninety sons! If thou desirest the good of thy race, abandon him, O Bharata! O king, do good to the world and thy own race by casting off this one child of thine! It hath been said that the individual should be cast off for the sake of the family; that the family should be cast off for the sake of the village; that the village may be abandoned for the sake of the whole country; and that the earth itself may be abandoned for the sake of the soul.' When Vidura and those Brahmanas had said so, king Dhrita-rashtra from affection for his son had not the heart to follow that advice. Then, O king, within a month, were born a full hundred sons unto Dhrita-rashtra and a daughter also in excess of this hundred. And during the time when Gandhari was in a state of advanced pregnancy, there was a

maid-servant of the Vaisya class who used to attend on Dhrita-rashtra. During that year, O king, was begotten upon her by the illustrious Dhrita-rashtra a son endued with great intelligence who was afterwards named Yuyutshu. And because he was begotten by a Kshatriya upon a Vaisya woman, he came to be called a *Karana.*

" Thus were born unto the wise Dhrita-rashtra an hundred sons who were all heroes and mighty charioteers, and a daughter over and above the hundred, and another son Yuyutshu of great energy and prowess begotten upon a Vaisya woman. "

So ends the hundred and fifteenth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXVI.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Janamejaya said, " O sinless one, thou hast narrated to me from the beginning all about the birth of Dhrita-rashtra's hundred sons owing to the boon granted by the Rishi. But thou hast not told me as yet any particulars about the birth of a daughter. Thou hast merely said that over and above the hundred sons, there was another son named Yuyutshu begotten upon a Vaisya woman, and a daughter. The great Rishi Vyasa of immeasurable energy had said unto the daughter of the king of Gandhara that she would become the mother of an hundred sons. Illustrious one, how is it that thou sayest, Gandhari had a daughter over and above her hundred sons? If the ball of flesh had been distributed by the great Rishi only into an hundred parts, and if Gandhari did not conceive on any other occasion, how then was Dushshalā born? Tell me this, O Rishi! My curiosity hath been great. "

Vaisampayana said, " O thou descendant of the Pandavas, thy question is just, and I will tell you how it happened. The illustrious and great Rishi himself, by sprinkling water over that ball of flesh, began to divide it into parts. And as it was being divided into parts, the nurse began to take them ud

and put them one by one into those pots filled with clarified butter. While this process was going on, the beautiful and chaste Gandhari of rigid vows realising the affection that one feeleth for a daughter began to think in her mind, 'There is no doubt that I shall have an hundred sons. The Muni hath said so. It can never be otherwise. But I should be very happy if a daughter were born unto me over and above these hundred sons and junior to them all. My husband then may attain to those worlds that the possession of daughter's sons conferreth. Then again, the affection that women feel for their sons-in-law is great. If therefore I obtain a daughter over and above my hundred sons, then, surrounded by sons and daughter's sons, I may feel supremely blest. If I have ever practised ascetic austerities, if I have ever given in charity, if I have ever performed the *homa* (through the instrumentality of Brahmanas), if I have ever gratified my superiors by respectful attentions, then (as the fruit of these acts) let a daughter be born unto me!' All this while that illustrious and best of Rishis, Krishna-Dwaipayana himself was dividing the ball of flesh; and counting a full hundred of the parts, he said unto the daughter of Suvala, 'Here are thy hundred sons. I did not speak aught unto thee that was false. Here however is one part in excess of hundred intended for giving thee a daughter's son. This part shall expand into an amiable and fortunate daughter, as thou hast desired.' Then that great ascetic bringing another pot full of clarified butter, put the part intended for a daughter into it.

"Thus have I, O Bharata, narrated unto thee all about the birth of Dush-shalã. Tell me, O sinless one, what more I am now to narrate."

Thus ends the hundred and sixteenth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section CXVII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said, "Recite, O Brahmana, the names of Dhrita-rashtra's sons according to the order of their births."

Vaisampayana said, "Their names, O king, according to the order of birth, are Duryodhana, Yuyutshu, and Dushshashana: Dush-saha, Dush-shala, Jalasandha, Sama, Saha; Vinda, and Anuvinda; Dud-dharsha, Suvahu, Dushpradharshana, Durmarshana, and Durmukha; Dushkarna, and Karna; Vivingsati, and Vikarna, Shala, Satwa, Sulochana, Chittra, and Upachittra, Chitraksha, Charuchitra, Sarasana; Durmada, and Durvigaha, Vivitshu, Vikatanana; Urna-nava, and Sunava, then Nandaka, and Upanandaka; Chitra-vana, Chittravarma, Suvarma, Durvilochana; Ayovāhu, Mahavahu, Chitranga, Chittra-kundala; Bhima-vega, Bhima-vala, Balaki, Bala-vardhana, Ugrayudha; Bhima, Karna, Kānakaya, Dridayudha, Dhrida-varma, Dhrida-kshatra, Soma-kirti, Anudara; Dhrida-sandha, Jarasandha, Satya-sandha, Sada, Suvak, Ugrasrava, Ugra-sena, Senani, Dush-parajaya; Aparajita, Kundashayi, Vishalaksha, Duradhara; Dhrida-hasta, Suhasta, Vatavega, and Suvarchas; Aditya-ketu, Vahvashi, Naga-datta, Agra-yayi; Kavachi, Krathana, Kundi, Kunda-dhara, Dhanurdhara; the heroes Ugra, and Bhima-ratha, Viravahu, Alolupa; Abhaya, and Raudra-karma, and then he called Dhrida-ratha; Anadhrishya, Kunda-bhedi, Viravi, Dhirghalochana; Pramatha, and Pramathi, and the powerful Dhirgharoma; Dhirgha-vahu, Mahavahu, Vyudoru, Kanakadhaja; Kundashi, and Virajas. Besides these hundred sons, there was a daughter named Dush-shala. All were heroes and *Ati-rathas*, and were well-skilled in war. All were learned in the *Vedas*, and all kinds of weapons. And, O king, worthy wives were in time selected for all of them by Dhrita-rashtra after proper examination. And king Dhrita-rashtra, O monarch, also bestowed Dush-shala, in proper time and with proper rites, upon Jayadratha (the king of Sindhu)."

Thus ends the hundred and seventeenth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXVIII.

(Sámbhava Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said, " O thou utterer of Brahma, thou hast recited (everything about) the extraordinary births, among men, of the sons of Dhrita-rashtra in consequence of the Rishi's grace. Thou hast also said what their names were, according to the order of birth. O Brahmana, I have heard all these from thee. But tell me now all about the Pandavas. While reciting the incarnations on earth of the celestials, the Asuras, and beings of other classes, thou saidst that the Pandavas were all illustrious and endued with the prowess of gods, and that they were incarnate portions of the celestials themselves. I desire, therefore, to hear all about those beings of extraordinary achievements, beginning from the moment of their births. O Vaisampayana, recite thou their achievements. "

Vaisampayana said, " O king, one day Pandu, while roaming in the woods (on the southern slopes of Himavat) that teemed with deer and wild animals of fierce disposition, saw a large deer that seemed to be the leader of a herd coupling with its mate. Beholding the animals, the monarch pierced them both with five of his sharp and swift arrows winged with golden feathers. O monarch, that was no deer that Pandu struck at, but a Rishi's son of great ascetic merit who was coupling with his mate in the form of a deer. Pierced by Pandu while engaged in the act of intercourse, he fell down on the earth uttering cries that were human and began to weep bitterly.

" The deer then addressed Pandu and said, 'O king, even men that are slaves of lust and wrath, and void of reason, and ever sinful, never commit such a cruel act as this! Individual judgment prevaileth not against the ordinance, the ordinance prevaileth against individual judgment. The wise never sanction anything discountenanced by the ordinance. Thou art born, O Bharata, in a race that has ever been virtuous. How is it, therefore, that even thou, suffer-

ing thyself to be overpowered by passion and wrath, losest thy reason?' Hearing this, Pandu replied, 'O deer, kings behave in the matter of slaying animals of thy species exactly as they do in the matter of slaying foes. It behoveth thee not, therefore, to reprove me thus from ignorance? Animals of thy species are slain by open or covert means. This, indeed, is the practice of kings. Then why dost thou reprove me? Formerly, the Rishi Agastya, while engaged in the performance of a grand sacrifice, chased the deer, and devoted every deer of the forest unto the gods in general. Thou hast been slain pursuant to usage sanctioned by such precedent. Wherefore reprovest us then? For his especial sacrifices Agastya performed the *homa* with fat of the deer.'

"The deer then said, 'O king, men do not let fly their arrows at even their enemies when the latter are unprepared. But there is a time for doing it (*viz*, after declaration of hostilities). Slaughter at such a time is not censurable.'

"Pandu replied, 'It is well-known that men slay deer by various effective means, without regarding whether the animals are careful or careless. Therefore, O deer, why reprovest thou me?'

"The deer then said, 'O king, I do not blame thee for thy having killed a deer, or for the injury thou hast done to me! But, instead of acting so cruelly, thou shouldst have waited for the completion of my act of intercourse. What man of wisdom and virtue is there that can kill a deer while engaged in such an act? The time of sexual intercourse is agreeable to every creature and productive of good to all. O king, upon this my mate I was engaged in the gratification of my sexual desire. But that effort of mine hath been rendered futile by thee! O king of the Kurus, born as thou art in the race of the Pandavas ever noted for white (virtuous) deeds, such an act hath scarcely been fit for thee! O Bharata, this act must be regarded as extremely cruel, deserving of universal execration, infamous, and sinful, and certainly leading to hell. Thou art acquainted with the pleasures of sexual intercourse. Thou art acqnainted also with the teachings of morality and the dictates of duty. Like unto a celestial as

thou art, it behoved thee not to do such an act as leadeth to hell! O thou best of kings, thy duty is to chastise all who act cruelly, who are engaged in sinful practices, and all who have taken leave of religion, profit, and pleasure, as explained in the *Shastras*. What hast thou done, O best of men, in killing me who have done thee no offence! I am, O king, a Muni that liveth on fruits and roots, though disguised as a deer! I was living in the woods in peace with all. Thou hast killed me yet, O king, for which I will curse thee certainly. Cruel as thou hast been unto a couple of opposite sexes, death shall certainly overtake thee as soon as thou feelest the influence of desire. I am a Muni of name Kimindama, possessed of ascetic merit. I was engaged in sexual intercourse with this deer because my feelings of modesty do not permit me to indulge in such an act in human society. In the form of a deer I rove in the deep woods in the company of other deer. Thou hast slain me without knowing that I am a Brahmana. The sin of having slain a Brahmana shall not, therefore, be thine. But, senseless man, having killed me, disguised as a deer, at such a time, thy fate shall certainly be even like mine! When, having approached thy wife lustfully, thou art united with her even as I had been with mine, in that very state thou shalt have to go to the world of spirits. And that wife of thine with whom thou mayst be united in intercourse at the time of thy death shall also follow thee with affection and reverence to the domains of the king of the dead which no one can avoid. Thou hast brought me grief while I was happy. So shall grief come to thee while thou art in happiness.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Saying this, that deer, afflicted with grief, gave up life; and Pandu also was plunged in woe at the sight."

Thus ends the hundred and eighteenth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXIX.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " After the death of that deer, king Pandu with his wives was deeply afflicted and wept bitterly. And he exclaimed, 'The wicked, even if born in virtuous families, deluded by their own passions, are overwhelmed with misery as the fruit of their own deeds. I have heard that my father, though begotten by Shantanu of virtuous soul, was cut off while still a youth, only because he had become a slave of lust. In the soil of that lustful king, the illustrious Rishi Krishna-Dwaipayana himself, of truthful speech, begot me. Son though I am of such a being, with my wicked heart devoted to vice, I am yet leading a wandering life in the woods in the chase of the deer ! Oh, the very gods have forsaken me ! I shall seek salvation now. The great impediments to salvation are the desire to beget children, and the other concerns of the world. I shall now adopt the Brahmacharya mode of life and follow in the imperishable wake of my father ! I shall certainly bring my passions under complete control by severe ascetic penances. Forsaking my wives and other relatives and shaving my head, alone shall I wander over the earth, begging for my subsistence from each of these trees standing here. Forsaking every object of affection and aversion, and covering my body with dust, I shall make the shelter of trees or deserted houses my home. I shall never yield to the influence of sorrow or joy, and I shall regard slander and eulogy in the same light. I shall not seek benedictions or bows. I shall be in peace with all, and shall not accept gifts. I shall not mock anybody or contract my brows at any one, but shall be ever cheerful and devoted to the good of all creatures. I shall not harm any of the four orders of life gifted with power of locomtion or otherwise, *viz*, ovi-parous, vivi-parous, worms, and vegetables, but, on the other hand, preserve an equality of behaviour towards all as if they were my own children. Once a day I shall beg of five or ten families at the most, and if I do not succeed in obtain-

ing alms, I shall then go without food. I shall rather stint myself than beg more than once of the same person. If I do not obtain anything after completing my round of seven or ten houses, moved by covetousness I shall not enlarge my round. Whether I obtain or fail to obtain alms, I shall be equally unmoved like a great ascetic. One lopping off an arm of mine with an hatchet, and one smearing another with sandal-paste, shall be regarded by me equally. I shall not wish prosperity to the one or misery to the other. I shall not be pleased with life or displeased with death. I shall neither desire to live nor to die. Washing my heart of all sins, I shall certainly transcend those sacred rites productive of happiness that men perform in auspicious moments, days, and periods. I shall also abstain from all acts of religion and profit and also those that lead to the gratification of the senses. And freed from all sins and snares of the world, I shall be like the wind subject to none. Treading in the path of fearlessness and bearing myself in this way I shall at last lay down my life. Destitute of the power of begetting children, firmly adhering to the line of duty I shall not certainly deviate therefrom in order to tread in the vile path of the world that is so full of misery. Whether respected or disrespected in the world, that man who from covetousness casteth on others a begging look, certainly behaveth like a dog. (Destitute as I am of the power of procreation, I should not certainly, from desire of offspring, solicit others to give me children.)'"

Vaisampayana continued, "The king having wept thus in sorrow, with a sigh looked at his two wives Kunti and Madri, and addressing them said, 'Let the princess of Koshala (my mother), Vidura, the king with our friends, the venerable Satyavati, Bhisma, the priests of our family, illustrious *Soma*-drinking Brahmanas of rigid vows, and all other elderly citizens depending on us, be all informed, after being prepared for it, that Pandu hath retired into the woods to lead a life of asecticism.' Hearing these words of their lord who had fixed his heart upon leading a life of asceticism in the woods, both Kunti and Madri addressed him in these proper

words :—'O thou bull of the Bharata race, there are many other modes of life which thou canst adopt and in which thou canst undergo the severest of penances along with us thy wedded wives; in which, for the salvation of thy body (freedom from re-birth) thou mayst obtain heaven as thy reward, or even become the lord of heaven! We also, in the company of our lord, and for his benefit, controlling our passions and bidding farewell to all luxuries shall subject ourselves to the severest austerities. O king, O thou of great wisdom, if thou abandonest us, we shall then this very day truly depart from this world.'

"Pandu replied, 'If indeed, this your resolve springeth from virtue, then with ye both I shall follow the imperishable path of my father. Abandoning the luxuries of cities and towns, robed in barks of trees, and living on fruits and roots, I shall wander in the deep woods practising the severest of penances. Bathing both morning and evening I shall perform the *homa*. I shall reduce by body by eating very sparingly and shall wear rags and skins, and bear knotted locks on my head. Exposing myself to both heat and cold and regardless of hunger and thirst, I shall reduce my body by severe ascetic austerities. Living in solitude, I shall give myself up to contemplation. I shall eat fruits ripe or raw that I may find. I shall offer oblations to the *pitris* and the gods with speech, water, and fruits of the wilderness. I shall not see, far less harm, any of the dwellers of the woods or any of my relatives, or any of the dwellers of cities and towns. Until I lay down this body, I shall thus practise the severe ordinances of the *Vana-prastha* scriptures, always searching for severer ones that they may contain.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "The Kuru king having said this unto his wives gave away to Brahmanas the big jewel on his diadem, his necklace of precious gold, his bracelets, his large ear-rings, his valuable robes, and all the ornaments of his wives. Then summoning his attendants he commanded them saying, 'Return ye to Hastinapore and proclaim unto all that Pandu with his wives hath gone into the woods abandoning wealth, desires, happiness, and even sexual appetite.' Then

those followers and attendants hearing these and other soft words of the king sent forth a loud wail, uttering 'Oh, we are undone!' Then leaving the monarch, with hot tears trickling down their cheeks they returned to Hastinapore with speed, carrying that wealth with them (that was to be distributed in charity). Then Dhrita-rashtra, that first of men, hearing from them everything that had happened in the woods, wept for his brother. He brooded over his affliction continually, little relishing the comfort of beds and seats and dishes.

"Meanwhile, the Kuru prince Pandu (after sending away his attendants), accompanied by his two wives, and eating of fruits and roots, went to the mountains of *Naga-shata*. He next went to *Chaitra-ratha*, and then crossed the *Kala-kuta*. Finally, crossing the Himavat he arrived at Gandhamadana. Protected by *Maha-bhutas*, *Shidhas*, and great Rishis, Pandu lived, O king, sometimes on level ground and sometimes on mountain slopes. He then journeyed to the lake of Indra-dyumna, whence crossing the mountains of Hansa-kuta he went to the mountain of hundred peaks and there practised ascetic austerities."

Thus ends the hundred and nineteenth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXX.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Pandu possessed of great energy then devoted himself to asceticism. Within a short time he became the favorite of the whole body of the *Shidhas* and the *Charanas* residing there. And, O Bharata, devoted to the service of his spiritual masters, free from vanity, with mind under complete control and the passions fully subdued, the prince, becoming competent to enter heaven by his own energy, attained to great (ascetic) prowess. Some of the Rishis would call him brother, some friend, while others cherished him as their son. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, having acquired after a long time great ascetic merit coupled with

complete sinlessness, Pandu became even like a *Brahmarshi* (though he was a Kshatriya by birth).

" On a certain day of the new moon, the great Rishis of rigid vows assembled together, and desirous of beholding Brahmā were on the point of starting on their expedition. Seeing them about to start, Pandu asked those ascetics, saying, 'Ye first of eloquent men, where shall ye go?' The Rishis answered, 'There will be a great gathering today, in the abode of Brahmā, of celestials, Rishis, and *Pitris*. Desirous of beholding the Self-create we shall go there today.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Hearing this, Pandu rose up suddenly, desirous of visiting heaven along with the great Rishis. Accompanied by his two wives, when he was on the point of following the Rishis in a northerly direction from the mountain of hundred peaks, those ascetics addressed him, saying, 'In our northward march, while gradually ascending the king of mountains, we have seen on its delightful breast many regions inaccessible to ordinary mortals; retreats also of the gods, Gandharvas, and Apsaras, with palatial mansions by hundreds clustering thick around and resounding with the sweet notes of celestial music; the gardens of Kuvera laid out on even and uneven grounds; banks of mighty rivers, and deep caverns. There are many regions also on those heights that are covered with perpetual snow and are utterly destitute of vegetable and animal existence. In some places the downpour of rain is so heavy that they are perfectly inaccessible and incapable of being utilised for habitation. Not to speak of other animals, even winged creatures cannot cross them. The only thing that can go there is air, and the only beings, *Sidhas* and great Rishis. How shall these princesses ascend those heights of the king of mountains? Unaccustomed to pain, shall they not droop in affliction? Therefore, come not with us, O thou bull of the Bharata race!'

" Pandu replied, 'Ye fortunate ones, it is said that for the sonless there is no admission into heaven. I am sonless! In affliction I speak unto ye! Ye whose wealth is asceticism, I am afflicted because I have not been able to discharge the debt I owe to my ancestors! It is certain that with the

dissolution of this my body my ancestors perish! Men are born on this earth with four debts, *viz*, those due unto the (deceased) ancestors, the gods, the Rishis, and other men. In justice these must be discharged. The wise have declared that no regions of bliss exist for them who neglect to pay these debts in due time. The gods are paid (gratified) by sacrifices; the Rishis, by study, meditation, and asceticism; the (deceased) ancestors, by begetting children and offering the funeral cake; and, lastly, other men, by leading a humane and inoffensive life. I have justly discharged my obligations to the Rishis, the gods, and other men. But those others than these three are sure to perish with the dissolution of my body! Ye ascetics, I am not yet freed from the debt I owe to my (deceased) ancestors! The best of men are born in this world to beget children for discharging that debt. I would ask ye, should children be begotten in my soil (upon my wives) as I myself was begotten in the soil of my father by the eminent Rishi?'

"The Rishis said, 'O king of virtuous soul, there is progeny for thee in store, that is sinless and blest with good fortune and like unto the gods! We behold it all with our prophetic eyes! Therefore, O thou tiger among men, accomplish by your own acts that which destiny pointeth at. Men of intelligence, acting with deliberation always obtain good fruits. It behoveth thee, therefore, O king, to exert thyself. The fruits thou wouldst obtain are distinctly visible. Thou wouldst really obtain accomplished and agreeable progeny.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of the ascetics, Pandu, remembering the loss of his procreative powers owing to the curse of the deer, began to reflect deeply. And calling his wedded wife the excellent Kunti unto him, he told her in private, 'Strive thou to raise up offspring at this time of distress! The wise expounders of the eternal religion declare that a son, O Kunti, is the cause of virtuous fame in the three worlds. It is said that sacrifices, gifts in charity, ascetic penances, and vows observed most carefully, do not confer religious merit on a sonless man! O thou of sweet smiles, knowing all this, I am certain that sonless as I am, I

shall not obtain regions of true felicity ! O thou timid one, wretch as I was and addicted to cruel deeds, as a consequence of the polluted life I led my power of procreation hath been destroyed by the curse of the deer. The religious institutes mention six kinds of sons that are heirs and kinsmen, and six other kinds that are not heirs but kinsmen. I shall speak of them presently; O Prithā, listen to me ! Thy are 1st, the son begotten by one's own self upon his wedded wife ; 2nd, the son begotten upon one's wife by an accomplished person from motives of kindness ; 3rd, the son begotten upon one's wife by a person for a pecuniary consideration ; 4th, the son begotten upon the wife after the husband's death ; 5th, the maiden-born son (or *putrikā-putra*) ; 6th, the son born of an unchaste wife ; 7th, the son given ; 8th, the son bought for a consideration ; 9th, the son self-given ; 10th, the son received with a pregnant bride ; 11th, the brother's son ; and 12th, the son begotten upon a wife of lower caste. On failure of offspring of a prior class, the mother should desire to have offspring of the next class. At times of distress, men solicit offspring from accomplished younger brothers. The Self-create Manu hath said that men failing to have legitimate offspring of their own may have offspring begotten upon their wives by others, for sons confer the highest religious merit. Therefore, O Kunti, being destitute myself of the power of procreation, I command thee to raise up good offspring by some person that is either equal or superior to me ! O Kunti, listen to the history of the daughter of Shara-dandayana who was appointed by her lord to raise up offspring ! That warrior-dame, when her season came bathed duly and in the night went out and waited at a spot where four roads met. She did not wait long when a Brahmana crowned with ascetic success came there. The daughter of Shara-dandayana solicited him for offspring, and after pouring libations of clarified butter into the fire (in the performance of the sacrifice known by the name of *Pungshavana*) she brought forth three sons that were mighty charioteers and of whom Durjaya was the eldest, begotten upon her by that Brahmana. O thou of good fortune, do thou follow that warrior-dame's example at my command, and speedily

raise up offspring from the seed of some Brahmana of high ascetic merit.' "

Thus ends the hundred and twentieth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section CXXI.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Thus addressed, Kunti replied unto her heroic lord king Pandu—that bull amongst the Kurus—saying, 'O thou virtuous one, it behoveth thee not to say so unto me! I am, O thou of eyes like lotus-leaves, thy wedded wife, and devoted to thee! O Bharata of mighty arms, thyself shalt, in righteousness, beget upon me children endued with great energy. Then shall I ascend to heaven with thee! O prince of the Kuru race, receive me in thy embraces for begetting children! I shall not certainly, even in imagination, accept any other man except thee in my embraces! What other man is there in this world superior to thee? O thou virtuous one, listen to this Pauranic narrative that hath been, O thou of large eyes, heard by me, and that I shall presently narrate.

"'There was in ancient times a king of the race of Puru, known by the name of Vyushitaswa. He was devoted to truth and virtue. Of virtuous soul and mighty arms, on one occasion, while he performed a sacrifice, the gods with Indra and the great Rishis came to him. And Indra was so intoxicated with the *Soma* juice he drank, and the Brahmanas with the large presents they received, that both the gods and the great Rishis began themselves to perform everything appertaining to that sacrifice of the illustrious royal sage. And thereupon Vyushitaswa began to shine above all men like the sun appearing in double splendour after the season of frost is over. And the powerful Vyushitaswa was endued with the strength of ten elephants. And he soon enough performed the horse-sacrifice, overthrowing, O best of monarchs, all the kings of the East and the North, the West and the South, and exacting tribute from them all. There is a

proverb, O thou best of the Kurus, that is sung by all reciters of the Puranas, in connection with that first of all men—the illustrious Vyushitaswa: Having conquered the whole earth to the shores of the sea, Vyushitaswa protected every class of his subjects like a father cherishing his own begotten sons. Performing many great sacrifices he presented much wealth to the Brahmanas. And collecting jewels and precious stones without limit, he made arrangements for performing still greater ones. And he performed also the *Agni-shtoma*, and other special Vedic sacrifices, extracting great quantities of *Soma* juice. And, O king, Vyushitaswa had for his dear wife Vadrā, the daughter of Kskshivana and unrivalled on earth for beauty. And it hath been heard by us that the couple loved each other deeply. King Vyushitaswa was seldom separated from his wife. Sensual indulgence, however, brought on an attack of pthisis and the king died within a few days, sinking like the sun in his glory. Then Vadra, his beautiful queen was plunged in woe, and sonless as she was, O tiger among men, she wept in great affliction. Listen to me, O king, as I narrate to you all that Vadra said with bitter tears trickling down her cheeks,—O virtuous one, she said, women serve no purpose when their husbands are dead! She who liveth after her husband is dead, draggeth on a miserable existence that can hardly be called life! O thou bull of the Kshatriya order, death is a blessing to women without husbands. I wish to follow the way thou hast gone! Be kind, and take me with thee! In thy absence, I am unable to bear life even for a moment! Be kind to me, O king, and take me hence soon enough! O tiger among men, I shall follow thee over even and uneven ground. Thou hast gone away, O lord, never more to return! I shall follow thee, O king, as thy own shadow! O tiger among men, I will be obedient to thee (as thy slave) and will ever do what is agreeable to thee and what is for thy good! O thou of eyes like lotus-leaves, without thee, from this day, mental agonies will overwhelm me and eat into my heart! Wretch that I am, some loving couple had doubtless been separated by me in former life for which in this I am made to suffer the pangs

of separation myself from thee! O king, that wretched woman who liveth even for a moment, separated from her lord, liveth in woe and suffereth the pangs of hell even here! Some loving couple had doubtless been separated by me in former life, as the consequence of which sinful act I am suffering this torture born of my separation from thee! O king, from this day I will lay myself down on a bed of *Kusa* grass and abstain from every luxury desiring once more to behold thee! O thou tiger among men, show thyself to me! O king, O lord, command once more thy wretched and bitterly weeping wife plunged in woe!—'

"Kunti continued, 'It was thus, O Pandu, that the beautiful Vadra wept on the death of her lord. And the weeping Vadra clasped in her arms the corpse in anguish of heart. Then she was addressed by an incorporeal voice in these words:—Rise up, O Vadra, and leave this place! O thou of sweet smiles, I grant thee this boon. I will beget offspring upon thee. Lie thou down with me on thy own bed, after the catamenial bath, on the night of the eighth or the fourteenth day of the moon.—Thus addressed by the incorporeal voice, the chaste Vadra did as she was directed, for obtaining offspring. And, O thou bull of the Bharatas, the corpse of her husband begat upon her seven children in all, *viz*, three Shalwas and four Madras. O thou bull of the Bharatas, do thou also beget offspring upon me, like the illustrious Vyushitaswa, in the exercise of that ascetic power which thou possessest!'"

Thus ends the hundred and twenty first Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXII.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Thus addressed by his loving wife, king Pandu, well-acquainted with all rules of morality, replied in these words of virtuous import: 'O Kunti, what thou hast said is quite true. Vyushitaswa of old did even as thou hast said. Indeed, he was equal to the celestials themselves! But I shall now tell thee about the practices of old indicated

by illustrious Rishis fully acquainted with every rule of morality. O thou of handsome face and sweet smiles, women formerly were not immured within houses and dependent on husbands and other relatives. They used to go about freely, enjoying as best liked them. O thou of excellent qualities, they did not then adhere to their husbands faithfully, and yet, O handsome one, they were not regarded sinful, for that was the sanctioned usage of the times. That very usage is followed to this day by birds and beasts without any exhibition of jealousy. That practice, sanctioned by precedent, is applauded by great Rishis. And, O thou of tapering thighs, the practice is yet regarded with respect amongst the northern Kurus. Indeed, this usage so lenient to women hath the sanction of antiquity. The present practice, however, (of women being confined to one husband for life) hath been established but lately. I shall tell thee in detail who established it and for what.

" 'It hath been heard by us that there was a great Rishi of name Uddalaka. He had a son of name Shetaketu who also was an ascetic of merit. O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, the present virtuous practice hath been established by that Shetaketu from anger. Hear thou the reason. One day, in the presence of Shetaketu's father, a Brahmana came and catching Shetaketu's mother by the hand, told her, *Let us go.* Beholding his mother seized by the hand and taken away apparently by force, the son, moved by wrath, became very indignant. Seeing his son indignant, Uddalaka addressed him and said, —Be not angry, O son! This is the practice sanctioned by antiquity. The women of all orders in this world are free. O son, men in this matter, as regards their respective orders, act as kine.—The Rishi's son Shetaketu, however, disapproved of the usage and established in the world the present usage as regards men and women. It hath been heard by us, O thou of great virtue, that the existing practice dates from that period among human beings but not among beings of other classes. Accordingly, since the establishment of the present usage, it is sinful for women not to adhere to their husbands. Women transgressing the limits assigned by

the Rishi become guilty of slaying the embryo. And men too violating a chaste and loving wife who hath from her maidenhood observed the vow of purity become guilty of the same sin. The woman also who, being commanded by her husband to raise up offspring refuses to do his bidding, becometh equally sinful.

"'Thus, O timid one, was the existing usage established of old by Shetaketu the son of Uddalaka in defiance of antiquity. O thou of tapering thighs, it hath also been heard by us that Madayanti the wife of Saudasa, commanded by her husband to raise up offspring, went unto the Rishi Vashishta. And going unto him, the handsome Madayanti obtained a son named Asmaka. She did this, moved by the desire of doing good to her husband. O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, thou knowest, timid girl, how we ourselves, for the perpetuation of the Kuru race, were begotten by Krishna-Dwaipayana. O thou faultless one, beholding all these precedents, it behoveth thee to do my bidding, which is not inconsistent with virtue. O princess devoted to thy husband, it hath also been said by those acquainted with the rules of virtue that a wife when her season cometh must ever seek her husband, though at other times she deserveth liberty. The wise have declared this to be the ancient practice. But be the act sinful or sinless, those acquainted with the Vedas have declared that it is the duty of wives to do what their husbands bid them do. Especially, O thou of faultless features, I who am deprived of the power of procreation, having yet become desirous of beholding offspring, deserve the more to be obeyed by thee. O amiable one, joining my hands furnished with rosy fingers, and making of them a cup as of lotus leaves, I place them on my head to propitiate thee! O thou of fair locks, it behoveth thee to raise up offspring, at my command, by the instrumentality of some Brahmana possessed of high asectic merit! For then, owing to thee, O thou of fair hips, I may go the way that is reserved for those that are blessed with children'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus addressed by Pandu—that subjugator of hostile cities—the handsome Kunti, ever

attentive to what was agreeable and beneficial to her lord, then replied unto him, saying, 'In my girlhood, O lord, I was in my father's home engaged in attending upon all guests. I used to wait respectfully upon Brahmanas of rigid vows and great ascetic merit. One day I gratified with my attentions that Brahmana whom people call Durvasa, of mind under full control and possessing knowledge of all the mysteries of religion. Pleased with my services, that Brahmana gave me a boon in the form of a *mantra* (formula of invocation) for calling to my presence any one of the celestials I liked. And the Rishi addressing me said,—Any one among the celestials whom thou callest by this, shall, O girl, approach thee and be obedient to thy will, whether he liketh it or not. And, O princess, thou shalt also have offspring, by his grace.—O Bharata, that Brahmana told me this when I was in my father's home. The words uttered by the Brahmana could never be false. The time also hath come when they may yield fruit. Commanded by thee, O royal sage, I can by that *mantra* summon any of the celestials, so that we may have good children. O thou foremost of all truthful men, tell me which of the celestials I shall summon. Know that as regards this matter I await your commands.'

"Hearing this, Pandu replied, 'O thou handsome one, strive thou duly this very day to gratify our wishes! Fortunate one, summon thou the god of Justice! He is the most virtuous of the celestials. The god of justice and virtue will never be able to pollute us with sin. The world also, O beautiful princess, will then think that what we do can never be unholy. The son also that we shall obtain from him shall in virtue be certainly the foremost among the Kurus. Begotten by the god of justice and morality, he would never set his heart upon anything that is sinful or unholy. Therefore, O thou of sweet smiles, steadily keeping virtue before thy eyes, and duly observing holy vows, summon thou the god of justice and virtue by the help of thy solicitations and incantations!' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Then Kunti, that best of women, thus addressed by her lord, said, '*So be it.*' And

bowing down to him and reverently circumambulating his person, she resolved to do his bidding."

Thus ends the hundred and twenty second Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXIII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "O Janamejaya, when Gandhari's conception had been a full year old, it was then that Kunti summoned the eternal god of justice to obtain offspring from him. And she offered, without loss of time, sacrifices unto the god and began to duly repeat the formula that Durvasa had imparted to her sometime before. Then the god, overpowered by her incantations, arrived at the spot where Kunti was, seated on his car resplendent as the sun. Smiling he asked, 'O Kunti, what am I give thee ?' And Kunti too, smiling in her turn, replied, 'Thou must even give me offspring !' Then the handsome Kunti was united (in intercourse) with the god of justice in his spiritual form and obtained from him a son devoted to the good of all creatures. And she brought forth this excellent child, who lived to acquire great fame, at the eighth *Muhurta* called *Avijit,* of the hour of noon of that very auspicious day of the eighth month (Kartik) *viz,* the fifth of the lighted fortnight, when the star *Jeshtha* in conjunction with the moon was ascendant. And as soon as the child was born, an incorporeal voice (in the skies) said, 'This child shall be the best of men—the foremost of those that are virtuous. Endued with great prowess and truthful in speech, he shall certainly be the ruler of the Earth. And this first child of Pandu shall be known by the name of Yudhish-thira. Possessed of prowess and honesty of disposition, he shall be a famous king, known throughout the three worlds.'

"Pandu, having obtained that virtuous son, again addressed his wife and said, 'The wise have declared that a Kshatriya must be endued with physical strength, otherwise he is no Kshatriya. Therefore, ask thou for an offspring of superior strength.' Thus commanded by her lord, Kunti then invoked

Vayu. And the mighty god of wind, thus invoked, came unto her, riding upon a deer, and said, 'What, O Kunti, am I to give thee? Tell me, what is in thy heart?' Smiling in modesty, she told him, 'Give me, O best of celestials, a child endued with great strength and largeness of limbs and capable of humbling the pride of everybody!' The god of wind thereupon begat upon her the child afterwards known as Bhima of mighty arms and fierce prowess. And upon the birth of that child endued with extraordinary strength, an incorporeal voice, O Bharata, as before, said, 'This child shall be the foremost of all endued with strength.' I must tell you, O Bharata, of another wonderful event that occured on the birth of Vrikodara (Bhima). Falling from the lap of his mother upon the mountain's breast, the violence of the fall broke into fragments the stone upon which he fell without his infant body being injured in the least. And he fell from his mother's lap, because Kunti, frightened by a tiger, had risen up suddenly, unconscious of the child that lay asleep on her lap. And as she had risen, the infant, of body hard as the thunder-bolt, falling down upon the mountain's breast, broke into an hundred fragments the rocky mass upon which he fell. And beholding this, Pandu wondered much. And it so happened that that very day on which Vrikodara was born, was also, O best of Bharatas, the birth-day of Duryodhana, who afterwards became the ruler of the whole earth.

"After the birth of Vrikodara, Pandu again began to think, 'How am I to obtain a very superior son who shall achieve world-wide fame? Everything in the world dependeth on Destiny *and* Exertion. But Destiny can never be fulfilled except by timely exertion. It hath been heard by us that Indra is the chief of the gods. Indeed, he is endued with immeasurable might and energy and prowess and glory. Gratifying him with my asceticism, I shall obtain from him a son of great strength. Indeed, the son he giveth me must be superior to all and capable of vanquishing in battle all men and creatures other than men. I shall, therefore, practise the severest austerities with heart, deed, and speech.'

"After this, the Kuru king Pandu taking counsel with the

great Rishis commanded Kunti to observe an auspicious vow for one full year, while he himself commenced, O Bharata, to stand upon one leg from morning to evening, and practise other severe austerities with mind rapt in meditation, for gratifying the lord of the celestials.

"It was after a long time that Indra (gratified with such devotion) approached Pandu and addressing him, said, 'I shall give thee, O king, a son who will be celebrated all over the three worlds and who will promote the welfare of Brahmanas, kine, and all honest men. The son I shall give thee will be the smiter of the wicked and the delight of friends and relatives. Foremost of all men, he will be an irresistible slayer of all foes.' Thus addressed by Vāsava, the virtuous king of the Kuru race, well recollecting those words, said unto Kunti, 'Fortunate one, thy vow hath been successful. The lord of the celestials hath been gratified, and is willing to give thee a son such as thou desirest, of super-human achievements and great fame. He will be the oppressor of all enemies and possessed of great wisdom. Endued with a great soul, in splendour equal unto the Sun, invincible in battle, and of great achivements, he will also be extremely handsome. O thou of fair hips and sweet smiles, the lord of the celestials hath become graceful to thee. Invoking him bring thou forth a child who will be the very home of all Kshatriya virtues!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "The celebrated Kunti, thus addressed by her lord, invoked Sakra, who thereupon came unto her and begat him who was afterwards called Arjuna. And as soon as this child was born, an incorporeal voice, loud and deep as that of the clouds and filling the whole welkin, distinctly said, addressing Kunti in the hearing of every creature dwelling in that asylum, 'This child of thine, O Kunti, will be equal unto Kartyavirya in energy, and Shiva in prowess! Invincible like Sakra himself, he will spread thy fame far and wide! As Vishnu (the youngest of Aditi's sons) had enhanced Aditi's joy, so shall this child enhance thy joy! Subjugating the Madras, the Kurus along with the Somakas, and the peoples of Chedi, Kashi, and Karusha,

he will support the prosperity of the Kurus. (Surfeited with libations at the sacrifice of king Shwetaki), Agni will derive great gratification from the fat of all creatures dwelling in the Khandava woods (to be burnt down) by the might of this one's arms. This mighty hero, vanquishing all the effiminate monarchs of the earth, will, with his brothers, perform three great sacrifices. In prowess, O Kunti, he will be even as Jamadagnya or Vishnu. The foremost of all men endued with prowess, he will achieve great fame. He will gratify in battle (by his heroism) Shankara, the god of gods (Mahadeva), and will receive from him the great weapon named *Pashupata*. This thy son of mighty arms will also slay, at the command of Indrá, those Daityas called the Nivata-kavachas who are the enemies of the gods. He will also acquire all kinds of celestial weapons, and this bull among men will also retrieve the fallen fortunes of his race.'

"Kunti heard these extraordinary words while in the lying-in-room. And hearing those words uttered so loudly, the ascetics dwelling on that mountain of hundred peaks, and the celestials with Indra sitting on their cars, became exceedingly glad. The sounds of the (invisible) *Dunduvi* filled the entire welkin. There were shouts of joy, and the whole region was covered with flowers showered down by invisible agents. The various tribes of celestials, assembled together, began to offer their respectful adorations to the son of Pritha. The sons of Kadru (Nagas), the sons of Vinata, the Gandharvas, the Apsarās, the lords of the creation, and the seven great Rishis, *viz*, Bharadwaja, Kasyapa, Gautama, Viswamitra, Jamadagni, Vashishta, and the illustrious Atri who illumined the world of old when the Sun was lost, all came there. And Marichi, Angira, Pulasta, Pulaha, Kratu, the lord of creation Daksha, the Gandharvas and Apsarās, came there also. The various tribes of Apsarās, decked with celestial garlands and every ornament, and attired in fine robes, came there and danced in joy, chaunting the praises of Vivatsu (Arjuna). All around, the great Rishis began to utter propitiatory formulæ. And Tumvuru accompanied by the Gandharvas began to sing in charming notes. And Bhima-sena and Ugra-sena, Urnayu and

Anagha, Gopati and Dhrita-rashtra, Surya and Varcha the eighth, Yugapa and Trinapa, Karshni, Nandi and Chitra-ratha, Shalishira the thirteenth, Parjanya the fourteenth, Kali the fifteenth, and Narada the sixteenth in this list, Sad-dha, Vrihad-dha, Vrihaka, Karala of great soul, Brahmachari, Vahuguna, Suvarna of great fame, Viswavasu, Bhumanyu, Suchandra, Sharu, and the celebrated tribes of Haha and Huhu both gifted with wonderful melody of voice, *these* celestial Gandharvas, O king, all went there. Many illustrious Apsaras also of large eyes, decked in every ornament, came there to dance and sing. And Anuchana and Anavadya, Gunamukhya and Gunavara, Adrika and Soma, Misra-keshi and Alamvusha, Marichi and Shuchika, Vidyut-parna and Tilottama and Amvika, Lakshmana, Kshema, Devi, Rambha, Manorama, Ashita, Suvahu, Supria, Suvapu, Pundarika, Sugandha, Surasa, Pramathini, Kamya, and Sharadhvati, all danced there together. And Menaka, Saha-janya, Karnika, Punjika-sthala, Ritu-sthala, Ghritachi, Viswachi, Purva-chiti, the celebrated Umlochā, Pramlocha the tenth, and Urvashi the eleventh,—these large-eyed dancing-girls of heaven came there and sang in chorus. And Dhata and Aryama and Mitra and Varuna and Angsha, and Vaga, and Indra, Vivaswan, Pusha, Tashta, and Parjanya or Vishnu,—these twelve Adityas, and the Pavakas came there to glorify Pandu's son. And, O king, Mirga-vyada, Sarpa, the celebrated Niriti, Ajaika-pada, Ahi-vradhna, Pinaki, Dahana, Iswara, Kapali, Sthanu, and the illustrious Bhagavana,—these eleven Rudras also came there. And the twin Aswinas, the eight Vasus, the mighty Marutas, the Viswa-devas, and the Sadhyas, also came there. And Karkotaka, Vasuki, Kachchapa, Kunda, and the great Naga Takshaka,—these mighty and wrathful snakes possessed of high ascetic merit, also came there. And Tarkshya, Arishtanemi, Garuda, Asita-dhaja,—these and many other Nagas came there. And Aruna and Aruni and other sons of Vinata also came there. It was only the great Rishis crowned with ascetic success and not others that saw those celestials and other beings seated on their cars or waiting on the mountain peaks. Those best of Munis beholding that wonderful sight

became amazed, and their love and affection for the children of Pandu were in consequence enhanced.

"The celebrated Pandu, tempted by the desire of having more children, wished to speak again unto his wedded wife (for invoking some other god). But Kunti addressed him, saying, 'The wise do not sanction a fourth delivery even in a season of distress. The woman having intercourse with four different men is called a *Shairini*, while she having intercourse with five becometh a harlot. Therefore, O learned one, well acquainted as thou art with the scripture on this subject, why dost thou, beguiled by the desire of offspring, tell me so in seeming forgetfulness of the ordinance?'"

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-third Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXIV.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "After the birth of Kunti's sons and after the hundred sons also of Dhrita-rashtra were born, the daughter of the king of Madra privately addressed Pandu, saying, 'O thou slayer of all foes, I have no complaint even if thou art unpropitious to me! I have, O sinless one, also no complaint that though by birth I am superior to Kunti yet I am inferior to her in station! I do not grieve, O thou of the Kuru race, that Ghandhari hath obtained an hundred sons! This, however, is my great grief that while I and Kunti are equal, I should be childless while it should so chance that thou shouldst have offspring by Kunti! If the daughter of Kunti-bhoja should so provide that I should have offspring, she would then be really doing me a great favor and benefiting thee likewise. She is my rival. Therefore am I ashamed of soliciting any favor of her. If thou art, O king, be propitiously inclined to me, then ask thou her to grant my desire!'

"Hearing her, Pandu replied, 'O Madri, I do revolve this matter often in my own mind. But I had hitherto hesitated to tell thee anything, not knowing how you would receive

it. Now that I know what your wishes are, I shall certainly strive after that end. I think that asked by me she will not refuse.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " After this, Pandu addressed Kunti in private, saying, 'O Kunti, grant me some more offspring for the expansion of my race, and benefit thou the world! O blessed one, provide thou that I myself, my ancestors, and thine also, may always have offered to us the funeral cake! O, do what is beneficial to me, and grant me and the world what, indeed, is the best of benefits! O, do what, indeed, may be difficult for thee, moved by the desire of achieving undying fame! Behold, Indra, even though he hath obtained the sovereignty of the celestials, doth yet, for fame alone, perform sacrifices! O handsome one, Brahmanas, well acquainted with the Vedas, and having achieved high ascetic merit, do yet, for fame alone, approach their spiritual masters with reverence! So also all royal sages and Brahmanas possessed of ascetic wealth have achieved, for fame only, the most difficult of ascetic feats! Therefore, O thou blameless one, rescue thou this Madri as by a raft (by granting her the means of obtaining offspring,) and achieve thou imperishable fame by making her a mother of children!'

" Thus addressed by her lord, Kunti readily yielded, and said unto Madri, 'Think thou, without loss of time, of some celestial, and thou shalt certainly obtain from him a child like unto him.' Reflecting for a few moments, Madri then thought of the twin Aswinas. Those celestials coming unto her with speed begat upon her two sons that were twins named Nakula and Sahadeva, unrivalled on earth for personal beauty. And as soon as they were born, an incorporeal voice said, 'These twins in energy and beauty shall transcend even the twin Aswinas themselves.' Indeed, possessed of great energy and wealth of beauty they illumined the whole region.

" O king, after all the children were born, the Rishis dwelling on the mountain of hundred peaks, uttering blessings on them and affectionately performing the first rites of birth, bestowed appellations on them. The eldest of Kunti's children was called Yudhish-thira, the second Bhima-sena, and the

third Arjuna. And of Madri's sons, the first-born of the twins was called Nakula, and the next Sahadeva. And those best of the Kurus, born at intervals of one year after one another, looked like an embodied period of five years. And king Pandu beholding his children of celestial beauty and endued with super-abundant energy, great strength and prowess, and largeness of soul, rejoiced exceedingly. And the children became great favourites of the Rishis, as also of their wives, dwelling on the mountain of hundred peaks.

"Sometime after Pandu again requested Kunti on behalf of Madri. Addressed, O king, by her lord in private, Kunti replied, 'Having given her the formula of invocation only once, she hath, O king, managed to obtain two sons. Have I not been thus deceived by her? I fear, O king, that she will soon surpass me in the number of her children! This, indeed, is the way of all wicked women! Fool that I was I did not know that by invoking twin gods I could obtain at one birth twin children. I beseech thee, O king, do not command me any further! Let this be the boon granted to me!'

"Thus, O king, were born unto Pandu five sons begotten by the celestials, endued with great strength and who all lived to achieve great fame and expand the Kuru race. Each bearing every auspicious mark on his person, handsome like Soma, proud as the lion, well-skilled in the use of the bow, and of leonine tread, breast, heart, eyes, neck, and prowess, those foremost of men, resembling the celestials themselves in might, began to grow up. And beholding them and their virtues expanding with years, the great Rishis dwelling on that sacred mountain capt with snow were filled with wonder. And the five Pandavas and the hundred sons of Dhrita-rashtra—expanders of the Kuru race—grew up rapidly like an assemblage of lotuses in a lake."

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-fourth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXV.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " Beholding his five handsome sons growing-up before him in that great forest on the charming mountain slope, Pandu felt the lost might of his arms once more revive. One day in the season of spring which maddens every creature, the king, accompained by his wife (Madri), began to rove in the woods where every tree had put forth new blossoms. He beheld all around *Palashas* and *Tilakas* and *Mangoes* and *Champakas* and *Asokas* and *Kesharas* and *Atimuktas* and *Kuruvakas* with swarms of maddened bees sweetly humming about. And there were flowers of blossoming *Parijatas* with the *Kokila* pouring forth its melodies from under every twig and echoing with the sweet hum of the black bee. And he beheld also various other kinds of trees bent down with the weight of their flowers and fruits. And there were also many fine pieces of water overgrown with hundreds of fragrant lotuses. Beholding all this, Pandu felt the soft influence of desire. Roving like a celestial with a light heart amid such scenery, Pandu was alone with his wife Madri in semi-transparent attire. And beholding the youthful Madri thus attired, the king's desires flamed up like a forest-conflagration. And ill able to suppress his desires thus kindled at the sight of his wife of eyes like lotus leaves, he was completely overpowered by them. The king then seized her against her will; but Madri, trembling in fear, resisted him to the best of her might. Consumed by his desires, he forgot everything about his misfortune. And, O thou of the Kuru race, unrestrained by the fear of (the Rishi's) curse and impelled by fate, the monarch, overpowered by his passions, forcibly sought the embraces of Madri, as if to put an end to his own life. His reason, thus beguiled by the great destroyer himself, after intoxicating his senses, was itself lost with his life. And the Kuru king Pandu, of virtuous soul, thus succumbed to the inevitable influence of time, while united in intercourse with his wife.

"Then Madri, clasping the body of her senseless lord, began to weep aloud. Then Kunti with her sons and the twins of Madri, hearing those cries of grief, came to the spot where the king lay in that state. Then, O king, Madri addressing Kunti in a piteous voice, said, 'Come hither alone, O Kunti, and let the children stay there!' Hearing these words, Kunti, bidding the children stay, ran with speed, exclaiming, 'Woe is me!' And beholding both Pandu and Madri lying prostrate on the ground, she wept in grief and affliction, saying, 'Of passions under complete control, this hero, O Madri, had all along been watched by me with care! How did he then, forgetting the Rishi's curse, approach thee with enkindled desire? O Madri, this foremost of men should have been protected by thee! Why didst thou then tempt him into solitude? Always melancholy at the thought of the Rishi's curse, how came he to be merry with thee in solitude? O princess of Valhika, more fortunate than myself, thou art really to be envied, for thou hast seen the face of our lord expand with gladness and joy!'

"Madri then replied, saying, 'Revered sister, with tears in my eyes, I resisted the king, but he could not control himself, as if bent on making the Rishi's curse true!'

"Kunti then said, 'I am the elder of his wedded wives: the chief religious merit must be mine. Therefore, O Madri, prevent me not from achieving that which must be achieved. I must follow our lord to the region of the dead! Rise up, O Madri, and yield me his body. Rear thou these children.' Madri replied, saying, 'I do clasp our lord yet, and have not allowed him to depart; therefore shall I follow him. My appetite hath not been appeased. Thou art my elder sister. O, let me have thy sanction! This foremost of the Bharata princes had approached me desiring to have intercourse. His appetite unsatiated, shall I not follow him to the region of Yama to gratify him? O revered one, if I survive thee, it is certain I shall not be able to rear thy children as if they were mine. Shall not sin touch me on that account? But thou, O Kunti, shalt be able to bring up my sons as if they were thine! The king in seeking me wishfully hath gone to the region of

spirits; therefore should my body be burnt with his. O revered sister, refuse not thy sanction to this which is agreeable to me! Thou wilt certainly bring up the children carefully. That, indeed, would be very agreeable to me. I have no other direction to give.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Having said this, the daughter of the king of Madra—the wedded wife of Pandu—ascended the funeral pyre of her lord—that bull among men."

Thus ends the hundred and twenty fifth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section CXXVI.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, " The god-like Rishis wise in counsels, beholding the death of Pandu, consulted with each other. And they said, 'The virtuous and renowned king Pandu, abandoning both sovereignty and kingdom, had come hither for practising ascetic austerities and resigned himself to the ascetics dwelling on this mountain. He hath hence ascended to heaven leaving his wife and infant sons as a trust in our hands. Our duty now is to repair to his kingdom with these his offspring, his body, and his wife!"

Vaisampayana continued, " Then those god-like Rishis of magnanimous hearts and crowned with ascetic success, summoning one another, resolved to go to Hastinapore with Pandu's children in the van, desiring to place them in the hands of Bhisma and Dhrita-rashtra. The ascetics set out that very moment, taking with them those children and Kunti and the two dead bodies. And though unused to toil all her life, the affectionate Kunti now regarded as very short the really long journey she had to perform. Arrived at Kuru-jangala within a short time, the illustrious Kunti presented herself at the principal gate. The ascetics then charged the porters to inform the king of their arrival. The men carried the message within a trice to the court. And the citizens of Hastinapore, hearing of the arrival of thousands of *Charanas* and Munis, were filled with wonder. And it was soon after sun-

rise that they began to come out in numbers with their wives and children to behold those ascetics. Seated on all kinds of cars and conveyances by thousands, vast numbers of Kshatriyas with their wives and Brahmanas accompanied by Brahmanis came out. And the concourse of Vaisyas and Sudras too was as large on the occasion. The vast assemblage was as peaceful as ever, for every heart then was inclined to piety. And there also came out Bhisma the son of Shantanu, and Somadatta of Valhika, and the royal sage (Dhrita-rashtra) endued with the vision of knowledge, and Vidura himself, and the venerable Satyavati, and the illustrious princess of Koshala, and Gandhari accompanied by the other ladies of the royal household. And the hundred sons of Dhrita-rashtra, decked in various ornaments, also came out.

"The Kauravas then, accompanied by their Purohitas, saluting the Rishis by lowering their heads, took their seats before them. The citizens also, saluting the ascetics and bowing down to them with heads touching the ground, took their seats there. Then Bhisma, seeing that vast concourse perfectly still all arround, duly worshipped, O king, those ascetics by offering them water to wash their feet and the customary *Arghya*. And having done this, he spoke to them about the sovereignty and the kingdom. Then the oldest of the ascetics, with matted locks on head and loins encased in animal skin, stood up, and with the concurrence of the other Rishis spoke as follows:—'Know ye all that that possessor of the sovereignty of the Kurus who was called king Pandu, had, after abandoning the pleasures of the world, repaired hence to dwell on the mountain of hundred peaks. He had adopted the Brahmacharya mode of life, but for some inscrutable purpose the gods have in view, this his eldest son—Yudhish-thira was born there, begotten by Dharma himself. Then that illustrious king obtained from Vayu this other son—the foremost of all mighty men—called Bhima. This other son, begotten upon Kunti by Indra, is Dhananjaya whose achievements will humble all bowmen in the world. Look here again at these tigers among men, mighty in the use of the bow,—the twin children begotten upon Madri by the twin Aswinas! Leading

in righteousness the life of a Vanaprastha in the woods, the illustrious Pandu hath thus revived the almost extinct line of his grand-father. The birth, growth, and Vedic studies of these children of Pandu, will, no doubt, give ye great pleasure! Steadily adhering to the path of the virtuous and the wise, and leaving behind him these children, Pandu hath departed hence, seventeen days ago. His wife Madri, beholding him placed on the funeral pyre and about to be consumed, herself ascended the same pyre, and sacrificing her life thus, hath gone with her lord to the region reserved for chaste wives. Accomplish now whatever rites should be performed for their benefit. These are (the unburnt portions of) their bodies. Here also are their children—these oppressors of all foes—with their mother! Let these be now received with due honors. And, after completion of the first rites in honor of the dead, let the virtuous Pandu, who had all along been the supporter of the dignity of the Kurus, have the first annual *sradhā (sapindikarana)* performed with a view to install him formally among the *pitris*.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "The ascetics with the *Guhyakas*, having said this unto the Kurus, instantly disappeared in the very sight of the people. And beholding the Rishis and the *Sidhyas* thus vanish in their sight, like vapoury forms appearing and disappearing in the skies, the citizens, filled with wonder, returned to their homes."

Thus ends the hundred and twenty sixth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXVII.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana continued, "Dhrita-rashtra then said, 'O Vidura, celebrate the funeral ceremonies of that lion among kings—Pandu, and of Madri also in a right royal style! For the good of their souls, distribute cattle, cloths, gems, and various kinds of wealth, every one having as much as he asketh for. Make arrangements also for Kunti's performing

the last rites of Madri in such style as pleaseth her. And let Madri's body be so carefully wrapped up that neither the Sun nor Vayu may behold it ! Lament not for the sinless Pandu,—he was a worthy king and hath left behind five heroic sons equal unto the celestials themselves !' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Then Vidura, O Bharata, saying, 'So be it,' in consultation with Bhisma, fixed upon a sacred spot for the funeral rites of Pandu. The family priests went out of the city without loss of time, carrying with them the lit up sacred fire that was fed with clarified butter and rendered fragrant therewith. Then friends, relatives, and adherents, wrapping it up with cloth, decked the body of the monarch with the flowers of the season and sprinkled various excellent perfumes over it. And they also decked the hearse itself with garlands and rich hangings. Then placing the covered body of the king with that of his queen on that excellent bier decked out so brightly, they caused it to be carried on human shoulders. With the white umbrella (of state) held over the hearse, and waving *Chamaras* and the sounds of various musical instruments, the whole scene looked bright and grand. Hundreds of people began to distribute gems among the crowd on the occasion of the funeral rites of the king. At length some beautiful robes, and white umbrellas, and larger *Chamaras*, were brought for the great dead. The priests, clad in white, walked in the van of the proccesion, pouring libations of clarified butter on the sacred fire blazing in an ornamented vessel. And Brahmanas, and Kshatriyas, and Vaisyas, and Sudras in thousands followed the deceased king, loudly wailing in these accents :—' O prince, where dost thou go, leaving us behind, and making us forlorn and wretched for ever ! ' And Bhisma, and Vidura, and the Pandavas also all wept aloud. At last they came to a romantic wood on the bank of the Ganga. There they deposited down the car on which the truthful and lion-hearted prince and his spouse lay. Then they brought water in many golden vessels, washed the body of the prince before besmeared with several kinds of fragrant paste, and smeared it anew with sandal paste. They then dressed it in a white dress made

of national fabrics. And with this new suit on, the king seemed as if he was living and only sleeping on a costly bed.

" When the other funeral ceremonies had been finished in consonance with the directions of the priests, the Kauravas set fire to the dead bodies of the king and queen,—bringing lotuses, sandal paste, and other fragrant substances to the pyre.

" Then seeing the bodies aflame, Kausalya burst out, 'O, my son, my son!'—and fell down sensless on the ground. And seeing her down, the loyal citizens began to wail from grief. And the birds of the air and the beasts of the field were touched by the lamentations of Kunti. And Bhisma, son of Shantanu, and the wise Vidura, and others also became disconsolate.

" Thus weeping, Bhisma, Vidurá, Dhrita-rashtra, the Pandavas, and the ladies performed the watery ceremony of the king. And when all this was over, the magnates with their servants and subjects fell to consoling the bereaved sons of Pandu. And the Pandavas with their friends began to sleep on the ground. Seeing this, the Brahmanas and other citizens also renounced their beds. Young and old—all the citizens grieved on account of the sons of king Pandu, and passed their days in mourning with the weeping Pandavas."

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-seventh Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section CXXVIII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " Then Bhisma and Kunti with their friends celebrated the *sradha* of the deceased monarch, and offered the *pinda*. And they feasted the Kauravas and thousands of Brahmanas, to whom they also gave gems and lands. Then the citizens returned to the city with the sons of king Pandu, now that they had been cleansed from the impurity incident to the demise of their father. All then fell to weeping for the departed king,—it seemed as if they had lost one of their own kin.

" When the *sradha* had been celebrated in the manner men-

tioned above, the venerable Vyasa, seeing all the subjects sunk in grief, said one day to his mother Satyavati 'Mother, our days of happiness have gone by and days of calamity have succeeded. Sin beginneth to increase day by day. The world hath got old. The empire of the Kauravas will no longer endure, because of wrong and oppression. Go thou then into the forest, and devote thyself to contemplation through the *Yoga*! Henceforth society will be filled with illusion and wrong. Good works will cease. Do not witness the annihilation of thy race, in this old age!

"And acquiescing in the words of Vyasa, Satyavati entered the inner apartments, and addressed her daughter-in-law, saying, 'O Ambika! I hear that in consequence of the deeds of your grand-sons, this Bharata dynasty and their subjects will perish! If thou permit, I would go to the forest with Kausalya, so grieved at the loss of her son.' O king, saying this, the queen, taking the permission of Bhisma also, went to the forest. And arriving there with her two daughters-in-law, she became engaged in profound contemplation, and in good time leaving her body ascended to heaven."

Vaisampayana continued, "Then the sons of king Pandu, having gone through all the purifying rites prescribed in the Vedas, began to grow up in princely style in the home of their father. Whenever they were engaged in play with the sons of Dhrita-rashtra, their superiority of strength was marked. Alike in speed and in securing objects aimed at, alike in consuming articles of food and in throwing up dust, Bhim-sena beat all the sons of Dhrita-rashtra. That son of the wind-god pulled them by the hair and made them fight with one another, laughing all the while. They could not have defeated him had their number been one hundred and one. The second Pandava used to take hold of them by the hair, and throwing them on the ground, to rub their faces over the earth. By this, some had their knees broken, some their legs, some their heads. That strong youth sometimes holding ten of them drowned them in water; and did not release them till they were well nigh dead. When the sons of Dhrita-rashtra got up to the boughs of a tree for plucking fruits, Bhima used to shake

the tree, by striking it with his foot, so that down came the fruits and the fruit-pluckers at the same time. In fact those princes were no match for Bhima in pugilistic encounters, in speed, or in skill. Bhima used to make a childish display of his strength by thus tormenting them.

"And seeing these wonderful exhibitions of the might of Bhima, Duryodhana, the powerful eldest son of Dhrita-rashtra, began to conceive hostility towards him. And the wicked and unrighteous Duryodhana, through ignorance and ambition, prepared himself for an act of sin. He thought, 'There is no other individual who can compare with Bhima the second son of Pandu in point of prowess. I shall have to destroy him by artifice. Singly, Bhima dares us all one hundred to the combat. Therefore, when he shall sleep in the garden, I shall throw him into the current of the Ganga. Afterwards, confining his eldest brother Yudish-thira and his younger Arjuna, I shall reign sole king without molestation.' Determined thus, the wicked Duryodhana was ever on the watch to find out the failings of Bhima. And, O son of Bharata, at length at a beautiful place called Praman-koti on the banks of the Ganga, he built a palace decorated with hangings of broadcloth and other rich stuffs. And he built this palace for sporting in the water there, and filled it with all kinds of entertaining things, and choice viands. Gay flags waved on the top of this mansion. The name of the house was *Udakakrirana.* Skilful cooks prepared various kinds of viands. When all was ready, the officers gave intimation to Duryodhana. Then the evil-minded prince said to the Pandavas, 'Let us all go to the banks of the Ganga graced with trees and crowned with flowers, and sport there in the waters.' And on Yudhish-thira agreeing to this, the sons of Dhrita-rashtra, taking the Pandavas with them mounted huge elephants and a car resembling a city, and left the metropolis.

"On arriving at the place, the princes dismissed their attendants, and surveying the beauty of the grove, entered the palace, like lions entering their dens. On entering they saw that the architects had handsomely plastered the walls and the ceilings and that painters had painted them

beautifully. The windows looked very graceful, and the artificial fountains were splendid. At places, were tanks of pellucid water in which bloomed forests of lotuses. The banks were decked with various flowers whose fragrance filled the atmosphere. The Kauravas and the Pandavas sat down and began to enjoy the things provided for them. They became engaged in play and began to exchange morsels of food with one another. In the meantime the evil Duryo-dhana had mixed *kalkuta* (a kind of powerful poison) with a quantity of food, with the object of making away with Bhima. That wicked youth (who had nectar in his tongue, and poison in his heart) rose at length, and in a friendly way fed Bhima largely with that poisoned food, and thinking himself lucky in having compassed his end was exceedingly glad at heart. Then the sons of Dhrita-rashtra and Pandu together became cheerfully engaged in sporting in the water. On their sports having been finished, they dressed themselves in white habiliments, and decked themselves with various ornaments. Fatigued with the play, they felt inclined in the evening to rest in the pleasure house belonging to the garden. Having made the other youths exercise in the waters, the powerful second Pandava was excessively fatigued. So that on rising from the water, he lay down on the ground. He was weary and under the influence of the poison. And the cool air served to spread the poison over all his frame, so that he lost his senses at once. Seeing this, Duryodhana bound him with chords of shrubs, and threw him into the water. The insensible son of Pandu sank down till he reached the Naga kingdom. The Nagas, furnished with fangs containing virulent venom, bit him by thousands. The vegetable poison, mingled in the blood of the son of the wind-god, was neutralised by the serpent-poison. The serpents had bitten all over his frame, except his chest, the skin of which was so tough that their fangs could not penetrate it.

"On regaining his consciousness, the son of Kunti burst his bands and began to bury the snakes under the ground. A remnant fled for life, and going to their king Vasuki, represented, 'O king of snakes, a man sank under the water,

bound in chords of shrubs. Probably he had drunk poison. For when he fell amongst us, he was insensible. But when we began biting him, he regained his senses, and bursting his fetters, commenced laying at us. May it please your majesty to enquire who he is.'

"Then Vasuki, in accordance with the prayer of the inferior Nagas, went to the place and saw Bhim-sena. Of the serpents, there was one, named Aryaka. He was the grand-father of the father of Kunti. The lord of serpents saw his relative and embraced him. Then, Vasuki, learning all, was pleased with Bhima, and said to Aryaka with satisfaction, 'How are we to please him? Let him have money and gems in profusion.'

"On hearing the words of Vasuki, Aryaka said, 'O king of serpents, when your majesty is pleased with him, no need of wealth for him. Permit him to drink of your *rasa-kundu* (nectar-vessels) and thus acquire immeasurable strength. There is the strength of one thousand elephants in each one of those vessels. Let this prince drink as much as he can.'

"The king of serpents gave his consent. And the serpents thereupon began auspicious rites. Then purifying himself carefully, Bhim-sena sat facing the east, and began to drink the nectar. At one breath, he quaffed off a whole vessel, and in this manner drained off eight successive jars, till he was full. Atlength the serpents prepared an excellent bed for him, on which he lay down at ease."

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-eighth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXIX.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Meanwhile after having thus sported there, the Kauravas and the Pandavas, without Bhima, set out for Hastinapore, some on horses, some on elephants, while others preferred cars and other conveyances. And on their way they said to one another, 'Perhaps, Bhimâ hath gone

before us.' And the wicked Duryodhana was glad at heart to miss Bhima, and entered the city with his brothers in joy.

" The virtuous Yudhish-thira, unacquainted with vice and wickedness himself, regarded others as honest as himself. The eldest son of Prithā, filled with fraternal love, going unto his mother, said, after making obeisance to her, 'O mother, hath Bhima come? O good mother, I don't find him here? Where can he have gone? We long sought for him everywhere in the gardens and the beautiful woods; but found him nowhere. At length, we thought that the heroic Bhima had come before us all. O illustrious dame, we come hither in great anxiety. Arrived here, where hath he gone? Have you sent him anywhere? O tell me, I am full of doubts respecting the mighty Bhima! He had been asleep and hath not come. I conclude he is no more!'

" Hearing these words of the highly intelligent Yudishthira, Kunti shrieked ni alarm, and said, 'Dear son, I have not seen Bhima. He did not come to me. O, return in haste and with your brothers seek for him!'

" Having said this, in affliction to her eldest son, she summoned Vidura, and said, 'O illustrious *Khatta*, Bhima-sena is missing! Where hath he gone! The other brothers have all come back from the gardens, only Bhima of mighty arms doth not come home! Duryodhana liketh him not. The Kaurava is crooked and malicious and low-minded and imprudent. He coveteth the throne openly. I am afraid lest he have in a fit of anger slain my darling! This afflicteth me sorely, indeed, burneth my heart!'

" Vidura replied, 'Blessed dame, say not so! Protect thy other sons with care! If the wicked Duryodhana be accused, he may slay thy remaining sons. The great Muni hath said that thy sons will all be long-lived. Therefore Bhima will surely return and gladden thy heart!' "

Vaisampayana continued, " The wise Vidura having said this unto Kunti returned to his abode, while Kunti, in great anxiety, continued to stay at home with her children.

" Meanwhile, Bhima-sena awaked from that slumber on the eighth day, and felt himself strong beyond measure in con-

sequence of the nectar he had taken having been all digested. Seeing him awake, the Nagas began to console and cheer him, saying, 'O thou of mighty arms, the strength-giving liquor thou hast drunk will give thee the might of ten thousand elephants! No one now will be able to vanquish thee in fight! O thou bull of the Kuru race, do thou bathe in this holy and auspicious water and return home. Thy brothers are disconsolate because of thee.'

"Then Bhima purified himself with a bath in those waters, and decked in white robes and flowery garlands of the same hue, ate of the *paramanna* (rice and sugar pudding) offered to him by the Nagas. Then that oppressor of all foes, decked in celestial ornaments, received the adorations and blessings of the snakes, and saluting them in return, rose from the nether region. Bearing up the lotus-eyed Pandava from under the waters, the Nagas placed him in the self-same gardens wherein he had been sporting, and vanished in his very sight.

"The mighty Bhima-sena, arrived on the surface of the earth, ran with speed to his mother. And bowing down unto her and his eldest brother, and scenting the heads of his younger brothers, that oppressor of all foes was himself embraced by his mother and every one of those bulls among men. Affectionate unto one another, they all repeatedly exclaimed, 'What joy is ours today, O, what joy!'

"Then Bhima, endued with great strength and prowess, related to his brothers everything about the villany of Duryodhana, and the lucky and unlucky incidents that had befallen him in the world of the Serpents. Thereupon, Yudhish-thira wisely said, 'Brother, do thou observe silence on this. Do not speak of this to any one. From this day, protect ye all one another with care.' Thus cautioned by the righteous Yudhish-thira, they all, with Yudhish-thira himself, became very vigilant from that day. And inorder that no negligence might occur on the part of the sons of Kunti, Vidura continually offered them sage advice.

"Sometime after, Duryo-dhana again mixed in the food of Bhima a poison that was fresh, virulent, and very deadly. But Yuyutsu (Dhrita-rashtra's son by a Vysya wife), moved

by his friendship for the Pandavas, informed them of this. Vrikodara, however, swallowed it without any hesitation, and digested it completely. And though virulent, the poison produced no change on Bhima.

"And when that terrible poison intended for the destruction of Bhima failed of effect, Duryo-dhana, Karna, and Sakuni, without giving up their wicked designs, had recourse to numerous other contrivances for accomplishing the death of the Pandavas. And though every one of these contrivances was fully known to the Pandavas, yet in accordance with the advice of Vidura they suppressed their indignation.

"Meanwhile, the king (Dhrita-rashtra) beholding the Kuru princes passing their time in idleness and growing naughty, appointed Gautama as their preceptor and sent them unto him for instruction. Born among a clump of heath, Gautama was well-skilled in the Vedas, and it was from him (also called Kripa) that the Kuru princes began to learn the use of arms."

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-ninth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXX.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Janamejaya said, "O Brahmana, it behoveth thee to relate to me everything about the birth of Kripa! How did he spring from a clump of heath? And whence also obtained he his weapons?"

Vaisampayana said, "O king, the great sage Gotama had a son named Saradwan. This Saradwan was born with arrows (in hand). O thou oppressor of all foes, the son of Gotama exhibited great aptitude for the study of the *Dhanur-veda* (science of weapons), but none for the other Vedas. And Saradwan acquired all his weapons by those austerities by which Brahmanas in student life acquire the knowledge of the Vedas. And Gautama (the son of Gotama) by his aptitude for the science of weapons and by his austerities also made Indra himself greatly afraid of him. Then, O thou of the Kuru race, the chief of the gods summoned a celestial dam-

sel named Jāna-padi and sent her unto Gautama, saying, 'Do thy best to disturb the austerities of Gautama.' Repairing unto the charming asylum of Saradwan, the damsel began to tempt that ascetic equipped with bow and arrows. Beholding that Apsarā, of figure unrivalled on earth for beauty, alone in those woods and clad in a single piece of cloth, Saradwan's eyes expanded with delight. At sight of the damsel, his bow and arrow slipped from his hand and his frame shook all over with emotion; but possessed of ascetic fortitude and strength of soul, the sage mustered sufficent patience to bear up against the temptation. The suddenness, however, of his mental agitation, caused an unconscious emission of his vital fluid. Leaving his bow and arrows and deer-skin behind, he went away, flying from the Apsarā. His vital fluid, however, having fallen upon a clump of heath, was divided into two parts, whence sprang two children that were twins.

" And it happened that a soldier in atttendance upon king Shantanu while the monarch was out ahunting in the woods, came upon the twins. And seeing the bow and arrows and deer-skins on the ground, he thought they might be the offspring of some Brahmana proficient in the science of arms. Deciding thus, he took up the children along with the bow and arrows, and showed what he found to the king. Beholding them the king was moved with pity, and saying, 'Let these become my children,' brought them to his palace. Then that first of men, Shantanu the son of Pratipa, having brought Gautama's twins into his house, performed in respect of them the usual rites of religion. And he began to bring them up and called them *Kripa* and *Kripi*, in allusion to the fact that he brought them up from motives of pity (*Kripa*). The son of Gautama having left his former asylum continued his study of the science of arms in right earnest. By his spiritual insight he learnt that his son and daughter were in the palace of Shantanu. He thereupon went to the monarch and represented everything about his lineage. He then taught Kripa the four branches of the science of arms, and various other branches of knowledge, including all their mysteries and recondite details. In a short time Kripa became an eminent professor of the

science (of arms). And the hundred sons of Dhrita-rashtra, and the Pandavas along with the Yadavas, and the Vrishnis, and many other princes from various lands, began to receive lessons from him in that science."

So ends the hundred and thirtieth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXXI.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Desirous of giving his grand-sons a superior education, Bhisma was on the look-out for a teacher endued with energy and well-skilled in the science of arms. Deciding, O thou foremost of the Bharatas, that none who was not possessed of great intelligence, none who was not illustrious or a perfect master of the science of arms, none who was not of god-like might, should be the instructor of the Kuru (princes), the son of Ganga, O thou tiger among men, placed the Pandavas and the Kauravas under the tuition of Bharadwaja's son, the intelligent Drona skilled in all the Vedas. Pleased with the reception given him by the great Bhisma, that foremost of all men skilled in arms—the illustrious Drona of world-wide fame—accepted the princes as his pupils. And Drona taught them the science of arms in all its branches. And, O monarch, both the Kauravas and the Pandavas endued with immeasurable strength, in a short time became proficient in the use of all kinds of arms."

Janamejaya asked, "O Brahmana, how was Drona born? How and whence did he acquire his arms? How and why came he unto the Kurus? Whose son also was he endued with such energy? Again, how was born his son Ashwathama the foremost of all skilled in arms? I wish to hear all this! Please recite them in detail."

Vaisampayana said, "There dwelt at the source of the Ganges, a great sage named Bharadwaja, ceaselessly observing the most rigid vows. One day, of old, intending to celebrate the *Agnihotra* sacrifice, he went along with many great Rishis to the Ganges to perform his ablutions. Arrived at the bank

of the stream, he saw Ghritachi herself—that Apsara endued with youth and beauty, who had gone there a little before. With an expression of pride in her countenance, mixed with a voluptuous langour of attitude, the damsel rose from the water after her ablutions were over. And as she was gently treading on the bank, her attire which was loose was disordered. Seeing her attire disordered, the sage was smitten with burning desire. The next moment his vital fluid came out, in consequence of the violence of his emotion. The Rishi immediately held it in a vessel called a *drona*. Then, O king, Drona sprang from the fluid thus preserved in that vessel, by the wise Bharadwaja! And the child thus born studied all the Vedas and Vedangas. Before now Bharadwaja of great prowess and the foremost also of those possessing a knowledge of arms, had communicated to the illustrious Agnivesha a knowledge of the weapon called *Agneya*. O thou foremost of the Bharata race, the Rishi (Agnivesha) sprung from fire now communicated the knowledge of that great weapon to Drona the son of his preceptor.

" There was a king named Prishata who was a great friend of Bharadwaja. And about this time, Prishata had a son born unto him, named Drupada. And that bull among Kshatriyas—Drupada the son of Prishata—used every day to come to the hermitage of Bharadwaja to play with Drona, and study in his company. O monarch, when Prishata was dead, this Drupada of mighty arms became the king of the northern Panchalas. About this time, the illustrious Bharadwaja also ascended to heaven. Drona continuing to reside in his father's hermitage devoted himself to ascetic austerities. And having become well-versed in the Vedas and Vedangas, and having burnt also all his sins by his asceticism, the celebrated Drona, obedient to the injunctions of his father and moved by the desire of offspring, married Kripi—the daughter of Sharadwan. And the daughter of Gautama, ever engaged in virtuous acts and the *Agni-hotra* and the austerest of penances, obtained a son named Ashwathama. And as soon as Aswathama was born, he neighed like the (celestial) steed Ucchaisrava. And hearing that cry, an invisible being in the

skies said, 'The voice of this child, hath, like the neighing of a horse, been audible all around. The child shall, therefore, be known by the name of *Aswathama* (the horse-voiced).' And the son of Bharadwaja (Drona) was exceedingly glad at having obtained that child. And continuing to reside in that hermitage he devoted himself to the study of the science of arms.

" O king, it was about this time that Drona heard that the illustrious Brahmana Jamadagnya, the slayer of all foes, the foremost of all wielders of weapons versed in all kinds of knowledge, had expressed his desire of distributing in gifts all his wealth among Brahmanas. Having heard of Rama's knowledge of arms and of his celestial weapons also, Drona set his heart upon them as also upon the knowledge of morality that Rama possessed. Then Drona of mighty arms and endued with high ascetic virtues, accompanied by disciples who were all devoted to vows and ascetic austerities, set out for the Mahendra mountains. Arrived at Mahendra, the son of Bharadwaja possessed of high ascetic merit, beheld the son of Bhrigu, that exterminator of all foes endued with great patience and with mind under complete control. Then, approaching with his disciples that scion of the Bhrigu race, Drona giving him his name told him of his birth in the line of Angira. And touching the ground with his head, he worshipped Rama's feet. And beholding the illustrious son of Jamadagni intent upon retiring into the woods after having given away all his wealth, Drona said, 'Know me to have sprung from Bharadwaja, but not in any woman's womb ! I am a Brahmana of high birth, Drona by name, come to thee with the desire of obtaining thy wealth !'

" On hearing him, that illustrious grinder of the Kshatriya race replied, 'Thou art welcome, O best of Dwijas ! Tell me what thou desirest.' Thus addressed by Rama, the son of Bharadawja replied unto that foremost of all smiters desirous of giving away the whole of his wealth, 'O thou of multifarious vows, I am a candidate for thy eternal wealth.' 'O thou of ascetic wealth,' returned Rama, 'My gold and whatever other wealth I had, have all been given away unto Brahmanas.

This earth also to the verge of the sea, decked with towns and cities, as with a garland of flowers, I have also given unto Kasyapa. I have now my body alone and my various valuable weapons left. I am prepared to give either my body or my weapons. Say, which thou wouldst have. I would give it thee. Say quickly!'

"Drona answered, 'O son of Bhrigu, it behoveth thee to give me all thy weapons together with the mysteries of hurling and recalling them!'

"Saying, 'So be it,' the son of Bhrigu gave away all his weapons unto Drona,—indeed, the whole science of arms with its rules and mysteries. Accepting them all, and thinking himself amply rewarded, that best of Brahmanas then, glad at heart, set out, for (the city of) his friend Drupada."

Thus ends the hundred and thirty first Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

Section CXXXII.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Then, O king, the mighty son of Bharadwaja presented himself before Drupada, and addressing that monarch, said, 'Know me for thy friend!' Thus addressed by his friend, the son of Bharadwaja with a joyous heart, the lord of Panchala was ill able to bear that speech. The king, intoxicated with the pride of wealth, contracted his brows in wrath, and with reddened eyes spake these words unto Drona, 'O Brahmana, thy intelligence is scarcely of a high order, inasmuch as thou sayest unto me, all on a sudden, that thou art my friend! O thou of dull apprehension, great kings can never be friends with such luckless and indigent wights as thou. It is true there was friendship between thee and me before, for we were then both equally circumstanced. But Time that impaireth everything in its course, impaireth friendship also. In this world, friendship never endureth for ever in any heart. Time weareth it off and anger destroyeth it too. Do thou not stick therefore to that worn-off friendship. Think not of it any longer. The

friendship I had with thee, O thou first of Brahmanas, was for a particular purpose. Friendship can never subsist between a poor man and a rich man, between a man of letters and an unlettered hind, between a hero and a coward. Why dost thou therefore desire the continuance of our former friendship? There may be friendship or hostility between persons equally situated as to wealth or might. The indigent and the affluent can neither be friends nor quarrel with each other. One of impure birth can never be a friend to one of pure birth; one who is not a charioteer can never be a friend to one who is so; and one who is not a king can never have a king for his friend. Therefore, why dost thou desire the continuance of our former friendship?'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus addressed by Drupada, the mighty son of Bharadwaja became filled with wrath, and reflecting for a moment, made up his mind as to his course of action. Seeing the insolence of the Panchala king, he wished to check it effectually. Hastily leaving the Panchala capital, Drona bent his steps towards the capital of the Kurus, named after the elephant."

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-second Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXXIII.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Arrived at Hastinapore, that best of Brahmanas—the son of Bharadwaja—continued to live privately in the house of Gautama (Kripa). His mighty son (Aswathamā) at intervals of Kripa's teaching, used to give the sons of Kunti lessons in the use of arms. But as yet none knew of Aswathamā's prowess.

"Drona had thus lived privately for sometime in the house of Kripa, when one day the heroic princes, all in a company, came out of Hastinapore. And coming out of the city, they began to play with a ball and roam about in gladness of heart. And it so happened that the ball with which they had been playing fell into a well. And thereupon the princes strove their

best to recover it from the well. But all the efforts the princes made to recover it proved futile. And they began to eye one another bashfully, and not knowing how to recover it, their anxiety was great. Just at this time they beheld a Brahmana near enough unto them, of darkish hue, decrepit and lean, sanctified by the performance of the *Agni-hotra*, and who had finished his daily rites of worship. And beholding that illustrious Brahmana, the princes who had despaired of success surrounded him immediately. Drona (for that Brahmana was no other) seeing the princes unsuccessful, and conscious of his own skill, smiled a little, and addressing them said, 'Shame on your Kshatriya might, and shame also on your skill in arms! Ye have been born in the race of Bharata! How is it that ye can not recover the ball (from the bottom of this well)? If ye promise me a dinner to-day, I will, with these blades of grass, bring up not only the ball ye have lost but this ring also that I now throw down.' Thus saying, Drona—that oppressor of all foes—taking off his ring threw it down into that dry well. Then Yudhish-thira, the son of Kunti, addressing Drona, said, 'O Brahmana, (thou askest for a trifle!) Do thou with Kripa's permission, obtain of us that which would last thee for life!' Thus addressed, Drona with smiles replied unto the Bharata princes, saying, 'This handful of long grass I would invest, by my *mantras*, with the virtue of weapons. Behold, these blades possess virtues that other weapons have not! I will, with one of these blades, pierce the ball, and then pierce that blade with another, and that another with a third, and thus shall I, by a chain, bring up the ball.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Then Drona did exactly what he had said. And the princes were all amazed and their eyes expanded with delight. And regarding what they had witnessed to be very extraordinary, they said, 'O learned Brahmana, do thou bring up the ring also without loss of time.'

"Then the illustrious Drona, taking a bow with an arrow, pierced the ring with that arrow and brought up the ring at once. And taking the ring thus brought up from the well, still pierced with his arrow, he coolly gave it to the astonished

princes. Then the latter, seeing the ring thus recovered, said, 'We bow to thee, O Brahmana! None else owneth such skill. We long to know who thou art and whose son. What also can we do for thee?'

"Thus addressed, Drona replied unto the princes, saying, 'Do ye repair unto Bhisma and describe to him my likeness and skill. That mighty one will recognize me.' The princes then saying 'So be it,' repaird unto Bhisma and telling him of the purport of that Brahmana's speech, related everything about his (extraordinary) feat. Hearing everything from the princes, Bhisma at once understood that the Brahmana was none else than Drona, and thinking that *he* would make the best preceptor for the princes, went in person unto him and welcoming him respectfully, brought him over to the palace. Then Bhisma—that foremost of all wielders of arms—adroitly asked him the cause of his arrival at Hastinapore. And asked by him, Drona represented everything as it had happened, saying, 'O sir, in times past I went to the great Rishi Agnivesha for obtaining from him weapons and desirous also of learning the science of arms. Devoted to the service of my preceptor, I lived with him for many years in the humble guise of a Brahmachari, with matted locks on my head. At that time, actuated by the same motives, the prince of Panchala—the mighty Yajna-sena—also lived in the same asylum. He became my friend, always seeking my welfare. I liked him much. Indeed, we lived together for many many years. O thou of the Kuru race, from our earliest years we had studied together and, indeed, he was my friend from boyhood, always speaking and doing what was agreeable to me. For gratifying me, O Bhisma, he used to tell me—O Drona, I am the favorite child of my illustrious father. When the king installeth me as monarch of the Panchalas, the kingdom shall be thine, O friend! This, indeed, is my solemn promise. My dominion, wealth, and happiness, shall all be dependent on thee.—At last the time came for his departure. Having finished his studies, he bent his steps towards his country. I offered him my regards at the time, and, indeed, I remembered his words ever afterwards.

"'Sometime after, in obedience to the injunctions of my father and tempted also by the desire of offspring, I married Kripi of short hair, who, gifted with great intelligence, had observed many rigid vows, and was ever engaged in the *Agnihotra* and other sacrifices and rigid austerities. And Gautami, in time, gave birth to a son named Aswathama of great prowess and equal in splendour unto the Sun himself. Indeed, I was joyed on having obtained Aswathama, as much as my father had been on obtaining myself.

"'And it so happened that one day the child Aswathama observing some rich men's sons drink milk, began to cry. At this I was so beside myself that I lost all knowledge of direction. Instead of asking him who had only a few kine (so that if *he* gave me one, he would no longer he able to perform his sacrifices and thus sustain a loss of virtue), I was desirous of obtaining a cow from one who had many, and for that I wandered from country to country. But my wanderings proved unsuccessful, for I failed to obtain a milch cow. After I had come back unsuccessful, some of his playmates gave him water mixed with powdered rice. Drinking this, the poor boy, from inexperience, was deceived into the belief that he had taken milk, and began to dance in joy, saying,—*O, I have taken milk, I have taken milk!*—Beholding him dancing with joy amid his playmates smiling at his simplicity, I was exceedingly touched. Hearing also the derisive speeches of busybodies who said, Fie upon the indigent Drona, who strives not to earn wealth! Whose son drinking water mixed with powdered rice mistaketh it for milk and danceth with joy, saying, I have taken milk—I have taken milk!—I was quite beside myself. Reproaching myself much, I at last resolved that even if I should live cast off and censured by Brahmanas, I would not yet, from desire of wealth, be anybody's servant, which is ever hateful. Thus resolved, O Bhisma, I went for former friendship, unto the king of the Somakas, taking with me my dear child and wife. Hearing that he had been installed in the sovereignty (of the Somakas), I regarded myself as blest beyond compare. Joyfully I went unto that dear friend of mine seated on a throne, remembering my former

friendship with him and also his own words to me. And, O illustrious one, approaching Drupada, I said,—O thou tiger among men, know me for thy friend!—Saying this I approached him confidently as a friend should. But Drupada, laughing in derision, cast me off as if I were a vulgar fellow. And addressing me he said,—Thy intelligence scarcely seemeth to be of a high order, inasmuch as, approaching me suddenly, thou sayest thou art my friend! Time that impaireth everything impaireth friendship also. My former friendship with thee was for a particular purpose. One of impure birth can never be a friend of one who is of pure birth. One who is not a charioteer can never be a friend of one who is such. Friendship can subsist between persons that are of equal rank, but not between those that are unequally situated. Friendship never subsisteth for ever in any heart. Time impaireth friendships, as also anger destroyeth them. Do thou not stick, therefore, to that worn-off friendship between us. Think not of it any longer. The friendship I had with thee, O thou best of Brahmanas, was for a special purpose. There cannot be friendship between a poor man and a rich man, between an unlettered hind and a man of letters, between a coward and a hero. Why dost thou therefore desire the revival of our former friendship? O thou of simple understanding, great kings can never have friendship with such indigent and luckless wights as thou? One who is not a king can never have a king for his friend. I do not remember ever having promised thee my kingdom. But, O Brahmana, I can now give thee food and shelter for one night.—Thus addressed by him, I left his presence quickly with my wife, vowing to do that which I will certainly do soon enough. Thus insulted by Drupada, O Bhisma, I have been filled with wrath. I come to the Kurus desirous of obtaining intelligent and docile pupils. I come to Hastinapore to gratify thy wishes. O, tell me what I am to do.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus addressed by the son of Bharadwaja, Bhisma said unto him, 'String thy bow, O Brahmana, and make the Kuru princes accomplished in arms. Worshipped by the Kurus, enjoy with a glad heart to thy

fill every comfort in their abode. Thou art the absolute lord, O Brahmana, of whatever wealth the Kurus have and of their sovereignty and kingdom. The Kurus are thine (from this day). Think that as already accomplished which may be in thy heart. Thou art, O Brahmana, obtained by us as the fruit of our great good luck! Indeed, the favor thou hast conferred upon me by thy arrival is great!"

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-third Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXXIV.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Then worshipped by Bhisma, Drona—that first of men—endued with great energy, took up his quarters in the abode of the Kurus and continued to live there, receiving their adorations. And after he had rested awhile, Bhisma taking with him his grand-sons the Kaurava princes, gave them unto him as his pupils, making at the same time many valuable presents. And the mighty one (Bhisma) also joyfully gave unto the son of Bharadwaja a house that was tidy and neat and well filled with paddy and every kind of wealth. And that first of bowmen Drona thereupon joyfully accepted the Kauravas, *viz*, the sons of Pandu and Dhrita-rashtra, as his pupils. And having accepted them all as his pupils, one day Drona called them apart and making them touch his feet, told them with a swelling heart, 'I have in my heart a particular purpose. Promise me truly, ye sinless ones, that when ye have become skilled in arms, ye will accomplish it.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words, the Kuru princes remained silent. But Arjuna, O king, vowed to accomplish it whatever it was. Drona then cheerfully clasped Arjuna to his bosom and took the scent of his head repeatedly, shedding tears of joy all the while. Then Drona endued with great prowess taught the sons of Pandu (the use of) many weapons both celestial and human. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, many other princes also flocked to that

best of Brahmanas for instruction in arms. The Vrishnis and the Andhakas and princes from various lands and the (adopted) son of Rādhā of the Suta caste, (Karna), all became pupils of Drona. But of them all, the *Suta* child Karna from jealousy frequently defied Arjuna, and supported by Duryodhana, used to disregard the Pandavas. Arjuna, however, from devotion to the science of arms, always stayed by the side of his preceptor, and in skill, strength of arm, and perseverance, excelled all (his class-fellows). Indeed, although the instruction the preceptor gave was the same in the case of all, yet in lightness and skill Arjuna became the foremost of all his fellow pupils. And Drona was convinced that none of his pupils would (at any time) be able to equal that son of Indra.

"Thus Drona continued giving lessons to the princes in the science of weapons. And while he gave unto every one of his pupils a narrow-mouthed vessel (for fetching water) in-order that much time may be spent in filling them, he gave unto his own son Aswathama a broad-mouthed vessel, so that filling it quickly, *he* might return soon enough. And in the intervals so gained, Drona used to instruct his own son in several superior methods (of using weapons). Jishnu (Arjuna) came to know of this, and thereupon filling his narrow-mouthed vessel with water by means of the *Varuna* weapon, he used to come unto his preceptor at the same time with his preceptor's son. And accordingly the intelligent son of Prithā that foremost of all men possessing a knowledge of weapons—had no inferiority to his preceptor's son in respect of excellence. Arjuna's devotion to the service of his preceptor as also to arms was very great, and he soon became the favorite of his preceptor. And Drona beholding his pupil's devotion to arms, summoning the cook, told him in secret, 'Never give Arjuna his food in the dark, nor do thou tell him that I have told thee this.' A few days after, however, when Arjuna was taking his food, a wind rose and thereupon the lamp that was burning went out. But Arjuna, endued with energy, continued eating in the dark, his hand, from habit going up to his mouth. His attention being thus called to the force of

force of habit, the strong-armed son of Pandu set his heart upon practising with his bow in the night. And, O Bharata, Drona, hearing the twang of his bow-string in the night, came to him, and clasping him, said, 'Truly do I tell thee that I shall do that unto thee by which there shall not be a bowman equal to thee in the world.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Thereafter Drona began to teach Arjuna the art of fighting on horse-back, on the back of elephants, on chariots, and on the ground. And the mighty Drona also instructed Arjuna in fighting with the mace, the sword, the *tomara*, the *prasa*, and the *sakti*. And he also instructed him in using many weapons and fighting with many men at the same time. And hearing reports of his skill, kings and princes, desirous of learning the science of arms, flocked to Drona by thousands. And amongst those that came, there, O monarch, was a prince named Ekalavya, who was the son of Hiranya-dhanu, king of the *Nishadas* (the lowest of the mixed orders). Drona, however, cognisant of all rules of morality, accepted not the prince as his pupil in archery, seeing that he was a *Nishada*, who might (in time) excell all his high-born pupils. But, O thou oppressor of all enemies, the Nishada prince, touching Drona's feet with bent head, wended into the forest. And there making a clay image of Drona began to worship it respectfully, as if it were his real preceptor, and practise weapons before it with the most rigid regularity. In consequence of his exceptional reverence for his preceptor, and of his devotion also to his purpose, all the three processes of fixing arrows on the bow-string, aiming, and letting off shafts became very easy to him.

"And one day, O thou grinder of all foes, the Kuru and the Pandava princes, with Drona's leave, set out on their chariots on a hunting excursion. A servant, O king, followed the party at liesure, with the usual implements and a dog. Having arrived at the woods, they wandered about intent on the purpose they had in view. Meanwhile, the dog also, in wandering alone about the woods, came upon the Nishada prince (Ekalavya). And beholding the Nishada of dark hue, of body

besmeared with filth, dressed in black, and bearing matted locks on head, the dog began bark to aloud.

"Thereupon the Nishada prince, desirous of exhibiting his lightness of hand, struck seven arrows into its mouth (before it could shut it). And the dog thus pierced with seven arrows came back to the Pandavas. And those heroes, beholding that sight, were filled with wonder. And ashamed of their own skill, they began to praise the lightness of hand and precision of aim by auricular perception (exhibited by the unknown archer). And they thereupon began to seek in those woods for the unknown dweller thereof (who showed such skill). And, O king, the Pandavas soon found out the object of their search ceaselessly discharging arrows from the bow. And beholding that man of grim visage, who was a total stranger to them, they asked, 'Who art thou and whose son?' Thus questioned, the man replied, 'Ye heroes, I am the son of Hiranya-dhanu king of the Nishadas. Know me also for a pupil of Drona,, labouring for the acquisition of the art of arms.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "The Pandavas then, having made themselves acquainted with everything connected with him, returned (to the city), and going unto Drona, told him of that wonderful feat of archery which they had witnessed in the woods. But Arjuna, however, in particular, thinking all the while, O king, of Ekalavya, saw Drona in private and relying upon his preceptor's affection for him, said, 'Thou hadst lovingly told me, clasping me to thy bosom, that no pupil of thine should be equal to me. Why then is there a pupil of thine, *viz*, the mighty son of the Nishada king, superior to me?'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words, Drona reflected for a moment, and resolving upon the course of action he should follow, took Arjuna with him and went unto the Nishada prince. And he beheld Ekalavya with body besmeared with filth, matted locks (on head), clad in rags, bearing a bow in hand and ceaselessly shooting arrows therefrom. And when Ekalavya saw Drona approaching towards him, wending a few steps forward, he touched his feet and prostrated himself on the ground. And the son of the Nishada king

worshipping Drona, duly represented himself as his pupil, and clasping his hands in reverence, stood before him (awaiting his commands). Then Drona, O king, addressed Ekalavya, saying, 'If, O hero, thou art really my pupil, give me then my fee.' Hearing these words, Ekalavya was very much gratified, and said in reply, 'O illustrious preceptor, what shall I give? Command me; for there is nothing, O thou foremost of all conversant with the Vedas, which I may not give unto my preceptor.' Drona answered, 'O Ekalavya, if thou art really intent on making me a gift, I should like then to have the thumb of thy right hand.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Hearing these cruel words of Drona, who had asked of him his thumb as tuition-fee, Ekalavya, ever devoted to truth and desirous also of keeping his promise, with a cheerful face and an unafflicted heart, cut off without ado his thumb, and gave it unto Drona. After this, when the Nishada prince began once more to shoot with the help of his remaining fingers, he found, O king, that he had lost his former lightness of hand. And Arjuna at this became happy, the fever (of jealousy) having left him.

" Two of Drona's pupils became very much accomplished in the use of the mace. These were Duryodhana and Bhima, who were, however, always jealous of each other. Aswathama excelled everyone in the mysteries of the (science of arms). The twins (Nakula and Sahadeva) excelled everybody in handling the sword. Yudish-thira excelled everybody as a charioteer. Arjuna, however, excelled everyone in every respect; surpassing everyone in intelligence, resourcefulness, strength, and perseverance. Accomplished in all weapons, Arjuna became the foremost of even the foremost of charioteers; and his fame spread all over the earth to the verge of the sea. And although the instruction had been equal, yet the mighty Arjuna excelled all (the princes) in lightness of hand. Indeed, in weapons as in devotion to his preceptor, he became the first of them all. And amongst all the princes, Arjuna alone became an *Atiratha* (a charioteer capable of fighting at one time with sixty thousand foes). And the wicked sons of Dhrita-rashtra, beholding Bhima-sena endued

with great strength and Arjuna accomplished in all arms, became very jealous of them.

"O thou bull among men, one day Drona desirous of testing the comparative excellence of all his pupils in the use of arms, collected them all together after their education had been completed. And before assembling them together, he had caused an artificial bird, as the would-be aim, to be placed on the top of a neighbouring tree. And when they were all together, Drona said unto them, 'Take up your bows quickly and stand here aiming at that bird on the tree, with arrows fixed on your bow-strings; shoot and cut off the bird's head, as soon as I give the order. I shall give each of ye a turn, one by one, my children."

Vaisampayana continued, "Then Drona, that foremost of all Angira's sons, first addressed Yudhish-thira saying, 'O irrepressible one, aim with thy arrow and let it off as soon as I give the order. Yudishthira took up the bow first, as desired, O king, by his preceptor, and stood aiming at the bird. But, O thou bull of the Bharata race, Drona in an instant, addressing the Kuru prince standing with bow in hand, said, 'Behold, O prince, that bird on the top of the tree.' Yudhish-thira replied unto his preceptor, saying, 'I do.' But the instant after, Drona again asked him, 'What dost thou now see, O prince? Seest thou the tree, myself, or thy brothers?' Yudhish-thira answered, 'I see the tree, thyself, my brothers, and the bird.' Drona repeated his question, but was answered as often in the same words. Drona then, vexed with Yudhish-thira, reproachingly told him, 'Stand thou apart. It is not for thee to strike the aim.' Then Drona repeated the experiment with Duryo-dhana and the other sons of Dhrita-rashtra one after another, as also with his other pupils, Bhima and the rest, including the princes who had come unto him from other lands. But the answer in every case was the same as Yudhish-thira's, *viz*, ('We behold the tree, thyself, our fellow-pupils, and the bird).' And reproached by their preceptor, they were all ordered, one after another, to stand apart."

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-fourth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXXV.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " When everyone had failed, Drona smilingly called Arjuna and said unto him, 'By thee the aim must be shot at ; therefore, turn thy eyes to it. Thou must let fly the arrow as soon as I give the order. Therefore, O son, stand here with bow and arrow for an instant.' Thus addressed, Arjuna stood aiming at the bird, as desired by his preceptor, with bow bent. An instant after Drona asked him as in the case of others, 'Seest thou, O Arjuna, the bird there, the tree, and myself ?' Arjuna replied, 'I see the bird only, but not the tree or thyself.' Then the irrepressible Drona, well pleased with Arjuna, the instant after, again said unto that mighty charioteer amongst the Pandavas, 'If thou seest the vulture, then describe it to me. And Arjuna said, 'I only see the head of the vulture, not its body. At these words of Arjuna, the down on Drona's body stood on end for delight. And he then said to Partha. 'Shoot thou.' And the latter instantly let fly (his arrow) and with his sharpened shaft speedily struck off the head of the vulture on the tree and brought it to the ground. No sooner was the deed done than Drona clasped Falgoona to his bosom and thought that Drupada with his friends had already been vanquished in fight.

" Sometime after, O thou bull of the Bharata race, Drona, accompanied by all his pupils, went to the banks of the Ganges to bathe in the sacred stream. And when Drona had plunged in the stream, a strong alligator, as if sent by Death himself, seized him about his thigh. And though quite capable himself, Drona asked in seeming hurry his pupils to rescue him. And he said, 'O kill this monster and rescue me.' Contemporaneously with this speech, Vivatsu (Arjuna) struck the monster within the water with five sharp arrows irresistible in their course, while the other pupils stood confounded each at his place. Beholding Arjuna's readiness, Drona considered him to be the foremost of all his pupils, and became highly pleased. The monster, in the meantime, cut

into pieces by the arrows of Arjuna, released the thigh of the illustrious Drona and gave up the ghost. The son of Bharadwaja then addressed the illustrious and mighty charioteer Arjuna and said, 'Accept, O thou of mighty arms, this very superior and irresistible weapon called *Brahma-shira*, with the methods of hurling and recalling it. Thou must not, however, ever use it against any human foe, for if hurled at any foe endued with inferior energy, it might burn the whole universe. It is said, O child, that this weapon hath not a peer in the three worlds. Keep it therefore with great care, and listen to what I say. If ever, O hero, any foe not human contendeth against thee, then shalt thou employ it against him for compassing his death in battle.' Pledging himself to do what he was bid, Vivatsu then, with joined hands, received that great weapon. The preceptor then, addressing him again, said, 'None else, in this world, will ever become a superior bowman to thee. Vanquished thou shalt never be by any foe, and thy achievements will be great.'"

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-fifth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXXVI.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "O thou of the Bharata race, beholding the sons of Dhrita-rashtra and Pandu accomplished in arms, Drona, O monarch, addressed king Dhrita-rashtra, in the presence of Kripa, Soma-datta, Valhika, the wise son of Ganga, Vyasa, and Vidura, and said, 'O thou best of Kuru kings, thy children have completed their education. With thy permission, O king, let them now show their proficiency.' Hearing him, the king said with a glad heart, 'O thou best of Brahmanas, thou hast, indeed, accomplished a great deed. Command me thyself as to the place and the time where and when and the manner also in which the trial may be held. Grief arising from my own blindness maketh me envy those men who, blesssed with sight, will behold my children's prowess in arms. O *Khatta* (Vidura), do all that Drona

sayeth. O thou devoted to virtue, I think there is nothing that can be more agreeable to me.' Then Vidura giving the necessary assurance to the king, went out to do what he was bid. And Drona, endued with great wisdom, then measured out a piece of land that was void of trees and thickets and furnished with wells and springs. And upon the spot of land so measured out, Drona—that first of eloquent men—selecting a lunar day when the star ascendant was auspicious, offered up sacrifice unto the gods, in the presence of the citizens assembled by proclamations to witness the same. And then, O thou bull among men, the artificers of the king built thereon a large and elegant stage according to the rules laid down in the scriptures. And it was furnished with all kinds of weapons. And they also built another elegant hall for lady spectators. And the citizens constructed many platfoms, while the wealthier of them pitched many spacious and high tents all around.

" And when the day fixed for the exhibition came, the king accompanied by his ministers, with Bhisma and Kripa the foremost of preceptors, walking ahead, came unto that theatre of almost celestial beauty, constructed of pure gold, and decked with strings of pearls and the *lapis lazuli*. And, O thou first of victorious men, Gandhari blessed with great good fortune and Kunti, and the other ladies of the royal household in gorgeous attire and accompanied by their waiting-women, joyfully ascended the platforms, like celestial ladies ascending the Sumeru mountain. And the four orders including the B ahmanas and Kshatriyas, desirous of beholding the princes' skill in arms, left the city and came running to that spot. And so impatient was every one to behold the spectacle, that the vast crowd assembled there in almost an instant. And with the noise of blowing trumpets and beating drums and the sound of many voices, that vast concourse became like the agitated ocean.

" At last, Drona accompanied by his son, dressed in white attire, with white sacred thread, white locks, white bread, white garlands, and white sandal paste besmeared over his body, entered the lists. It seemed as if the Moon hin[illegible]

accompanied by the planet Mars appeared in an unclouded sky. On entering, Bharadwaja performed timely worship, and caused Brahmanas versed in the *mantras* to celebrate the auspicious rites. And after auspicious sweet-sounding musicial instruments had struck up as a propitiatory ceremony, entered some persons equipped with various arms. And then having girt up their loins, entered those mighty warriors, he best of the Bharata race (the princes) furnished with the finger-protectors, and bows and quivers. And with Yudishthira at their head, the puissant princes entered in the order of age and began to show wonderful skill with their weapons. Some of the spectators lowered their heads, apprehending fall of arrows. While others fearlessly looked on with wonder. And swiftly riding on horses and managing them dexterously, the princes began to hit marks with shafts graced with their respective names. And seeing the prowess of the princes furnished with bows and arrows, the spectators thought that they were seeing the city of the Gandharvas, and became filled with amazement. And, O Bharata, all of a sudden some hundreds and thousands, with eyes expanded with wonder, exclaimed 'Well done! Well done!' And having repeatedly displayed their skill and dexterity in the use of the bow and arrow and in the management of cars, the mighty warriors took up their swords and bucklers, and began to range the lists, playing their weapons. The spectators saw (with wonder) their agility, the symmetry of their bodies, their grace, their calmness, the firmness of their grasp and their use of the sword and buckler. Then Vrikodara and Suyodhana internally delighted (at the prospect of fight) entered the arena, mace in hand, like two one-peaked mountains. And the mighty armed warriors braced their waist, and summoning up their energy, roared like two mad (male) elephants contending for a female one; and like two mad male elephants those mighty heroes faultlessly (in consonance with the dictates of the science of arms) went right and left, circling the lists. And Vidura described to Dhrita-rashtra and the mother of the Pandavas (Kunti) to Gandhari all the feats of the princes."

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-sixth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXXVII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, " And upon the Kuru king and Bhima the foremost of all endued with strength, having entered the arena, the spectators were divided into two parties, in consequence of their partiality swaying their affections. And some cried 'Behold the heroic king of the Kurus!' And some, 'Behold Bhima!' And on account of these cries there was all of a sudden a loud uproar. And seeing the place became like a troubled ocean, the intelligent Bharadwaja said unto his dear son Aswathama, 'Restrain thou both these mighty warriors so proficient in arms! Let not the ire of the assembly be provoked by this combat of Bhima and Duryo-dhana.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " And the son of the preceptor of the princes then restrained those combatants with uplifted maces and who resembled two swollen oceans agitated by the winds that blow at the universal dissolution. And Drona himself entering the yard of the arena commanded the musicians to stop and with a voice deep as that of the clouds addressed these words: 'Behold ye now that Partha who is dearer to me than my own son, the master of all arms, the son of Indra himself, and like unto the younger brother of Indra (Vishnu)!' And having performed the propitiatory rites, the youth *Falguna*, furnished with the finger-ptotector and his quiver full of shafts and bow in hand, doning on his golden mail, appeared in the lists even like an evening cloud reflecting the rays of the setting sun, and illumined by the hues of the rainbow and flashes of lightning.

" And on seeing Arjuna the whole assembly were delighted, and conches began to be blown all around with other musical instruments. And there arose a great uproar in consequence of the spectators exclaiming, 'This is the graceful son of Kunti!'—'This is the middle (third) Pandava!'—'This is the son of the mighty Indra!'—'This is the protector of the Kurus!'—'This is

the foremost of those versed in arms!'—'This is the foremost of all cherishers of virtue!'—'This is the foremost of all well-conducted persons, the great repository of the knowledge of manners!' At those exclamations, the tears of Kunti, mixing with the milk of her breast, drenched her bosom. And having his ears filled with that uproar, that first of men, Dhritarashtra, asked Vidura with delight, 'O Kshatta, what is this great uproar, like unto that of the troubled deep, arising all of a sudden, and rending the very heavens?' Vidura replied 'O mighty monarch, the son of Pandu and Pritha, Falguna, clad in mail hath entered the lists. And hence this uproar!' Dhritarashtra said, 'O thou of soul so great, by the three fires sprung from Pritha who is even like the sacred fuel, I have, indeed, been blessed, favored and protected!' "

Vaisampayana continued, "And when the spectators excited with delight, had somewhat regained their equanimity, Vivatshu began to display before his preceptor his lightness in the use of weapons. By the *Agneya* weapon he created fire, and by the *Varuna* weapon, he created water. And by the *Vayavya* weapon, he created air, and by the *Paryanya* weapon, he created clouds. And by the *Bhauma* weapon, he created land, and by the *Parvatya* weapon mountains came into being. And by the *Antar-dhana* weapon these all were made to disappear. Now the beloved of his preceptor (Arjuna) appeared tall, and now short; now he was seen on the yoke of his car, and now on the car itself; and the next moment he was on the ground. And the hero favored by his practised dexterity, hit by his arrows various butts, some tender, some fine, and some of thick composition. And like one shaft, he let fly at one time into the mouth of a moving iron boar five shafts together from his bow-string. And that hero of mighty energy discharged one and twenty arrows into the hollow of a cow's horn hung up on a rope and swaying to and fro. In this manner, O sinless one, Arjuna showed his profound skill in the use of the sword, the bow, and the mace, walking over the lists in circles.

"And, O Bharata, when the exhibition had well nigh ended, the excitement of the spectators cooled, and the sound of the

musical instruments been suspended, there was heard proceeding from the gate, the slapping of arms, betokening might and strength, and even like unto the roar of thunder. And, O king, as soon as this sound was heard, the assembled multitude instantly thought, 'Are the mountains splitting, or is the Earth itself rending asunder, or is the welkin resounding with the roar of gathering clouds ?' And then all the spectators turned their eyes towards the entrance. And Drona stood surrounded by the five brothers—the sons of Pritha, and seemed like the moon in conjunction with the five-starred constellation Hastā. And Duryodhana, that slayer of foes, stood up in haste and was surrounded by his century of haughty brothers with Aswathama amongst them. And that prince, mace in hand, thus surrounded by his hundred brothers with uplifted weapons, appeared like Purandara in days of yore, encircled by the celestial host on the occasion of the battle with the Danavas."

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-seventh Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXXVIII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, " When the spectators, with eyes expanded with wonder, made way for that subjugator of hostile cities, Karna, that hero with his natural mail and face brightened up with ear-rings, taking his bow and girding on his sword, entered the spacious lists, like a walking cliff. That far-famed destroyer of hostile hosts, the large-eyed, Karna, was born of Pritha in her maidenhood. He was a portion of the hot-beamed Sun. His energy and prowess were like unto those of the lion, or the bull, or the leader of a herd of elephants. He resembled the sun in splendour, the moon in loveliness, and the fire in energy. Born of the Sun himself he was tall in stature like a golden palm tree, and endued with the vigor of youth he was capable of slaying a lion. Handsome in features, he was possessed of countless accomplishments. The mighty-armed warrior eyeing all around the

arena, bowed indifferently to Drona and Kripa. And the entire assembly, motionless and with steadfast gaze, thought 'Who is he?' And they became agitated in consequence of their curiosity to know the warrior. And that foremost of eloquent men, the offspring of the Sun, in a voice deep as that of the clouds, addressed his unknown brother, the son of the subduer of the Asura Paka (Indra) saying, 'O Partha! I shall perform feats before this gazing multitude, excelling all thou hast performed! Beholding them thou shalt be amazed!' And, O thou best of those blest with speech, he had hardly ended when the spectators stood up all at once, as if uplifted by some instrument. And, O tiger among men, Duryodhana was filled with delight, while Vivatshu was instantly all abashment and anger. Then with the permission of Drona the mighty Karna delighting in battle, there did all that Partha had done before. And, O Bharata, Duryodhana with his brothers thereupon embraced Karna in joy and then addressed him saying, 'Welcome, O mighty-armed warrior! I have obtained thee by good fortune, O polite one! Live thou as thou pleasest, and command myself and the kingdom of the Kurus!' Karna replied, 'When thou hast said it, I regard it as already accomplished! I only long for thy friendship! And, O lord, my wish is even for a single combat with Arjuna!' Duryodhana said, 'Do thou with me enjoy the good things of life! Be thou the benefactor of thy friends, and, O thou repressor of enemies, place thou thy feet on the heads of all foes.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "And Arjuna, after this, deeming himself disgraced, said unto Karna stationed amidst the brothers like unto a cliff, 'That path which the unwelcome intruder and the uninvited talker cometh to, shall be thine, O Karna, being slain by me!' Karna replied, 'This arena is meant for all, not for thee alone, O Falguna! They are kings who are superior in energy; and verily, the Kshatriya regardeth might alone. What need of altercation which is the excercise of the weak! O Bharata, speak then in arrows, until with arrows I strike off thy head today before the preceptor himself!'"

Vaisampayana continued, " And then, hastily embraced by his brothers, Partha, that subduer of hostile cities, with the permission of Drona advanced for the combat. On the other side Karna having been embraced by Duryodhana with his brothers, taking up his bow and arrows, stood ready for fight. Then the firmament became enveloped in clouds emitting flashes of lightning, and the colored bow of Indra appeared shedding its effulgent rays. And the clouds seemed to laugh in consequence of rows of white *vakas* that were then on their wing. And seeing Indra thus viewing the arena from affection (for his son), the Sun too dispersed the clouds from over his own offspring. And Falguna remained deep hid under cover of the clouds, while Karna remained visible, being surrounded by the rays of the Sun. And the sons of Dhritarashtra stood by Karna, and Bharadwaja, and Kripa, and Bhisma remained with Partha. And the assembly was divided as also were the female spectators. And knowing the state of things, Kunti, the daughter of Bhoja, swooned away. And by help of female attendants, Vidura, versed in the lore of all duties, revived the insensible Kunti by sprinkling sandal paste and water on her person. On being restored to consciousness, Kunti seeing her two sons clad in mail was seized with fear, but she could do nothing (to protect them). And beholding both the warriors with bows strung in their hands, the son of Saradwan, Kripa, knowing all duties and cognisant of the rules regulating duels, addressed Karna, saying, "This Pandava is the youngest son of Kunti. He belongeth to the Kaurava race. He will engage in combat with thee. But, O thou mighty-armed one, thou too must tell us thy lineage and the names of thy father and mother; and the royal line of which thou art the ornament! Learning all this, Partha will fight with thee or not (as he shall see fit). Sons of kings never fight with men of inglorious lineage.'"

Vaisampayana continued, " Thus addressed by Kripa, Karna's countenance became like unto a lotus pale and torn with the pelting showers of the rainy season. Duryodhana said, 'O preceptor, verily, the *shastras* have it that three classes of persons can lay claim to royalty, *viz*, persons of the blood

royal, heroes, and, lastly, those that lead armies. If Falguna is unwilling to fight with one who is not a king, I will install Karna king of Anga !' "

Vaisampayana said, " And at that very moment, seated on a golden seat, with fried paddy and flowers and water-pots and much gold, the mighty warrior Karna was installed king by Brahmanas versed in *mantras*. And the royal umbrella was held over his head, while *chamaras* waved around that redoubted hero of graceful mien. And the cheers having ceased, king (Karna) said unto the Kaurava Duryodhana, 'O tiger among monarchs! What shall I give unto thee that may compare with thy gift of a kingdom? O king, I will do all thou biddest! And Suyodhana said unto him, 'I eagerly wish for thy friendship!' Thus spoken to, Karna replied, 'Be it so.' And they embraced each other in joy, and experienced great happiness."

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-eighth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXXIX.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, " After this, with his sheet loosely hanging down, Adhiratha entered the lists, perspiring and trembling, and supporting himself on a staff.

" Seeing him Karna left his bow and impelled by filial regard bowed his head still wet with the water of inauguration. And then the charioteer, hurriedly covering his feet with the end of his sheet, addressed Karna crowned with success as his son. And the charioteer embraced Karna and from excess of affection bedewed his head with tears, that head still wet with the water sprinkled over it on account of his coronation as king of Anga. And seeing the charioteer, the Pandava Bhima-sena took Karna for a charioteer's son, and said by way of ridicule, 'O thou son of a charioteer! Thou dost not deserve death in fight at the hands of Partha! As befits thy race take thou anon the whip! And, O worst of mortals! surely, thou art not worthy to sway the kingdom of Anga, even as a dog doth not deserve the butter placed

before the sacrificial fire. Karna, thus addressed, with slightly quivering lips fetched a deep sigh and looked at the god of day in the skies. And even as a mad elephant riseth from an assemblage of lotuses, rose the mighty Duryodhana in wrath from among his brothers. And addressing that performer of dreadful deeds, Bhima-sena there present, the Kaurava said, 'O Vrikodara! it behoveth thee not to speak such words. Might is the cardinal virtue of a Kshatriya, and even a Kshatriya of inferior birth deserveth to be fought with. The lineage of heroes, like the sources of lordly rivers, is ever unknown. The fire that covereth the whole world riseth from the waters. The thunder that slayeth the Danavas was made of a bone of (a mortal named) Dadhichi. The illustrious deity Guha, who combines in his composition the portions of all the other deities, is of lineage unknown. Some call him the offspring of Agni; some, of Krittika; some, of Rudra; and some, of Gangā. It hath been heard by us that persons born in the Kshatriya order have before become Brahmanas. Viswamitra and others (born Kshatriyas) have obtained the eternal Brahma. The foremost of all wielders of weapons—the preceptor Drona—hath been born in a water-pot, and Kripa of the race of Gotama hath sprung from a clump of heath. Your own births, ye Pandava princes, are known to me. Can a she-deer bring forth a tiger (like Karna of the splendour of the Sun, and endued with every auspicious mark, and born also with a natural mail and ear-rings? This prince among men deserveth the sovereignty of the world, not of Anga only, in consequence of the might of his arm and my disposition to obey him in everything. If there be anybody here to whom all that I have done unto Karna hath become intolerable, let him ascend his chariot and bend his bow with the help of his feet.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Then there arose a confused murmur amongst the spectators approving of Duryodhana's speech. The sun, however, went down, but prince Duryodhana taking Karna's hand led him out of the arena lighted with countless lamps. And, O king, the Pandavas also, accompanied by Drona and Kripa and Bhisma, returned to

their abodes. And the people too came away, some naming Arjuna, some Karna, and some Duryodhana, (as the victor of the day.) And Kunti recognising her son in Karna by the various auspicious marks on his person and beholding him installed in the sovereignty of Anga was, from motherly affection, very well pleased. And Duryodhana, O monarch, having obtained Karna (in this way), banished his fears arising out of Arjuna's proficiency in arms. And the heroic Karna, accomplished in arms, began to gratify Duryodhana with sweet speeches, while Yudhish-thira was impressed with the belief that there was no warrior on earth like unto Karna.

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-ninth section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXL.

(*Sambhava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana continued, "Beholding the Pandavas and the sons of Dhrita-rashtra accomplished in arms, Drona thought the time had come when he could demand the preceptorial fee. And, O king, assembling his pupils one day together, the preceptor Drona asked of them the fee, saying, 'Seize ye Drupada the king of Panchala in battle and bring him unto me. That shall be the most acceptable fee!' Those warriors then, answering 'So be it,' speedily ascended their chariots, and for bestowing upon their preceptor the fee he demanded, marched out accompanied by him. Those bulls among men smiting the Panchalas on their way laid siege to the capital of the great Drupada. And Duryodhana and Karna and the mighty Yuyutshu, and Dush-shasana and Vikarna and Jala-shandha and Sulochana—these and many other foremost of Kshatriya princes of great prowess vied with each other in becoming the foremost in the attack. And the princes riding on first class chariots and followed by cavalry, entering the hostile capital, proceeded along the streets.

"Meanwhile, the king of Panchala beholding that mighty force and hearing its loud clamour, came out of his palace

accompanied by his brothers. And king Jagna-sena was well-armed. But the Kuru army assailed him with a shower of arrows uttering their war-cry. But Jagna-sena, difficult of being subdued in battle, upon his white chariot approaching the Kurus began to rain his fierce arrows arround.

"Before the battle commenced, Arjuna, beholding the pride of prowess displayed by the princes, addressed his preceptor—that best of Brahmanas—Drona and said, 'We shall exert ourselves after these have displayed their prowess. The king of Panchala can never be taken on the field of battle by any of these!' Having said this, the sinless son of Kunti, surrounded by his brothers waited ontside the town at a distance of a mile from it. Meanwhile Drupada, beholding the Kuru host, rushed forward and pouring a fierce shower of arrows around, terribly afflicted the Kuru ranks. And such was his lightness of motion on the field of battle that though fighting unsupported on a single chariot, the Kurus from panic supposed that there were many Drupadas opposed to them. And the fierce arrows of that monarch fell fast on all sides, till conches and trumpets and drums by thousands began to be sounded by the Panchalas from their houses (giving the alarm). Then there arose from the mighty Panchala host a roar terrible as that of the lion, while the twang of their bow-strings seemed to rend the very heavens. Then Duryodhana and Vikarna, Suvahu and Dirgha-lochana and Dush-shasana, becoming furious, began to shower their arrows upon the enemy. But the mighty bowman—Prishata's son—invincible in battle, though very much pierced with the arrows of the enemy, instantly began, O Bharata, to afflict the hostile ranks with greater vigor. And moving over the field of battle like a fiery wheel, king Drupada with his arrows smote Duryodhana and Vikarna and even the mighty Karna, and many other heroic princes and numberless warriors, and slaked their thirst of battle. Then all the citizens showered upon the Kurus various missiles like clouds showering rain-drops upon the earth. And young and old they all rushed to battle assailing the Kurus with vigor. The Kauravas then, O Bharata, beholding the battle become frightful, broke and fled wailing towards the Pandavas.

"The Pandavas, hearing the terrible wail of the beaten host, reverentially saluted Drona and ascended their chariots. Then Arjuna hastily bidding Yudhish-thira not to engage in the fight, rushed forward, appointing the sons of Madri (Nakula and Sahadeva) the protectors of his chariot wheels, while Bhima-sena, ever fighting in the van, with mace in hand, ran ahead. The sinless Arjuna, thus accompanied by his brothers, hearing the shouts of the enemy, advanced towards them filling the whole region with the sound of his chariot-wheels. And like a *Makara* entering the sea, the mighty-armed Bhima, resembling a second Yama with mace in hand, entered the Panchala ranks,—fiercely roaring like the ocean in a tempest. And Bhima, mace in hand, first rushed towards the array of elephants in the hostile force, while Arjuna, proficient in war, assailed that force (in some other point) by the prowess of his arm. And Bhima, like the great destroyer himself, began to slay those elephants with his mace. Those huge animals like unto mountains, struck with Bhima's mace, had their heads broken into pieces, and covered with streams of blood, began to fall upon the ground like cliffs loosened by thunder. And the Pandava prostrated on the ground elephants and horses and cars by thousands and slew much infantry and many charioteers. Indeed, as a herdsman in the woods driveth before him with his staff countless cattle with ease, so did Vrikodara drive before him the chariots and elephants of the hostile force.

"Meanwhile Falguna, impelled by the desire of doing good unto Bharadwaja, assailed the son of Prishata with a shower of arrows and felled him from the elephant on which he was seated. And, O monarch, Arjuna, like unto the terrible fire that consumeth at the end of the *Yuga*, began to prostrate on the ground horses and cars and elephants by thousands. The Panchalas and the Srinjayas, on the other hand, thus assailed by the Pandava, met him with a perfect shower of weapons of various kinds. And they sent up a loud shout and fought desperately with Arjuna. The battle became furious and terrible to behold. Hearing the enemy's shout, the son of Indra was filled with wrath. Assailing the

hostile host with a thick shower of arrows, he rushed towards it furiously, afflicting it with renewed vigor. They who observed the illustrious Arjuna at that time could not mark any interval between his fixing the arrows on the bowstring and letting them off. Loud were the shouts that rose thereupon mingled with cheers of approval. Then the king of Panchala, accompanied by (the generalissimo of his forces). Satya-jit, rushed with speed at Arjuna like the Asura Samvara rushing at the chief of the celestials (in days of yore). Then Arjuna covered the king of Panchala with a thick shower of arrows. Then there arose a frightful uproar among the Panchala host like unto the roar of a mighty lion springing the leader of a herd of elephants. And beholding Arjuna rushing at the king of Panchala for seizing him, Satyajit of great prowess rushed at him. And the two warriors, like unto Indra and the Asura Virochana's son (Vali), approaching each other for combat, began to grind each other's ranks. Then Arjuna with great force pierced Satyajit with ten keen shafts at which feat the spectators were all amazed. But Satyajit without losing any time assailed Arjuna with a hundred shafts. Then that mighty charioteer, Arjuna, endued with remarkable lightness of motion, thus covered by that shower of arrows, rubbed his bow-string to increase the velocity of his shafts. Then cutting in twain his antagonist's bow, Arjuna rushed at the king of Panchala. But Satyajit quickly taking up a tougher bow pierced with his arrows Partha, his chariot, charioteer, and horses. Arjuna, thus assailed in battle by the Panchala warrior, forgave not his foe. Eager to slay him at once, he pierced with a number of arrows his antagonist's horses, flags, bow, clenched (left) fist, charioteer, and the attendant at his back. Then Satyajit, finding his bows repeatedly cut in twain and his horses slain as often, desisted from the fight.

"The king of Panchala, beholding his general thus discomfited in the encounter, himself began to shower his arrows upon the Pandava prince. Then Arjuna, that foremost of warriors crowned with success, began to fight furiously. And

quickly cutting his enemy's bow in twain as also his flag-staffs which he caused to fall down, he pierced his antagonist's horses and charioteer also with five arrows. Then throwing aside his bow, Arjuna took his quiver, and taking out a scimitar and sending forth a loud shout, leaped from his own chariot upon that of his foe. And standing there with perfect fearlessness he seized Drupada as Gadura seizeth a huge snake after agitating the waters of the deep. At sight of this, the Panchala troops ran away in all directions.

"Then Dhananjaya, having thus exhibited the might of his arm in the presence of both hosts, sent forth a loud shout and came out of the Panchala ranks. And beholding him returning (with his captive), the princes began to lay waste Drupada's capital. Addressing them Arjuna said, 'This best of monarchs, Drupada, is a relative of the Kuru heroes. Therefore, O Bhima, slay not his soldiers! Let us only give unto our preceptor his fee!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "O king, thus prevented by Arjuna, the mighty Bhima-sena, though unsatiated with the exercise of battle, refrained from the act of slaughter. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, the princes then taking Drupada with them, after having seized him on the field of battle along with his friends and counsellors, offered him unto Drona. And Drona beholding Drupada thus brought under complete control—humiliated and deprived of wealth—remembered that monarch's former hostility and addressing him said, 'Thy kingdom and capital have been laid waste by me. But fear not for thy life though it dependeth now on the will of thy foe! Dost thou now desire to revive thy friendship (with me)?' Having said this he smiled a little and again said, 'Fear not for thy life, brave king! We Brahmanas are ever forgiving. And, O thou bull amongst the Kshatriyas, my affection and love for thee have grown with my growth in consequence of our having sported together in child-hood in the hermittage. Therefore, O king, I ask for thy friendship again. And as a boon (unasked) I give thee half the kingdom (that was thine)! Thou toldst me before that none who is not a king could be a king's friend. Therefore is it, O

Jagna-sena, that I retain half thy kingdom! Thou art the king of all the territory lying on the southern side of the Bhagirathi while I become king of all the territory on the north of that river. And, O Panchala, if it pleaseth thee, know me from hence for thy friend!'

"Hearing these words, Drupada answered, 'Thou art of noble soul and great prowess. Therefore, O Brahmana, I am not surprised at what thou dost! I am very much gratified with thee, and I desire thy eternal friendship!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "After this, O Bharata, Drona released the king of Panchala, and cheerfully performing the usual offices of regard, bestowed upon him half the kingdom. Thenceforth Drupada began to reside sorrowfully in (the city of) Kampilya within (the province of) Makandi on the banks of the Ganges filled with many towns and cities. And after his defeat by Drona, Drupada also ruled the southern Panchalas up to the banks of the Charmanwati river. And Drupada from that day was well convinced that he could not, by Kshatriya might alone, defeat Drona, being very much his inferior in Brahma (spiritual) power. And he, therefore, began to wander over the whole earth for finding the means of obtaining a son (who would subjugate his Brahmana foe).

"Meanwhile Drona continued to reside in Ahichchatra. Thus, O king, was the territory of Ahichchatra, full of towns and cities, obtained by Arjuna, and bestowed upon Drona!"

Thus ends the hundred and fortieth Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXI.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, "After the expiration, O king, of a year from this, Dhrita-rashtra, moved by kindness for the people, installed Yudhish-thira the son of Pandu as the heir-apparent of the kingdom on account of his firmness, fortitude, patience, benevolence, frankness, and unswerving honesty of heart. And within a short time Yudhish-thira the son of Kunti, by his good behaviour, manners, and close

application to business, darkened the deeds of his father. And the second Pandava, Vrikodara, began to receive continued lessons from Sankarshana (Vala-rama) in encounters with the sword and the mace and on the chariot. And after Bhima's education was finished, he became in strength like unto Dyumat-sena himself. And continuing to live in harmony with his brothers he began to exert his prowess. And Arjuna became celebrated for the firmness of his grasp (of weapons), for his lightness of motion, precision of aim, and his proficiency in the use of the *Kshura*, *Naracha*, *Valla*, and *Vipatha* weapons, indeed, of all weapons whether straight, or crooked, or heavy. And Drona certified that there was none in the world who was equal unto Arjuna in lightness of hand and general proficiency.

"One day Drona, addressing Arjuna before the assembled Kaurava princes, said, 'There was a disciple of Agastya in the science of arms called Agni-visha. He was my preceptor and I his disciple. By ascetic merit I obtained from him a weapon called *Brahma-shira* which can never be futile and which is like unto thunder itself and capable of consuming the whole earth. That weapon, O Bharata, from what I have done, may now discend from disciple to disciple. While imparting it to me, my preceptor said,—O son of Bharadwaja, never shouldst thou hurl this weapon at any human being, especially at one who is of small energy!—Thou hast, O hero, obtained that celestial weapon! None else deserveth it. But obey thou the command of the Rishi (Agni-visha). And, behold, O Arjuna, give me now the preceptorial fee in the presence of these thy cousins and relatives!' And when Arjuna, hearing this, pledged his word that he would give what the preceptor demanded, the latter said, 'O sinless one, thou must fight with me when I fight with thee!' And that bull among the Kuru princes thereupon pledged his word unto Drona and touching his feet went away northwards. Then there arose a loud shout covering the whole earth bounded by her belt of seas to the effect that there was no bowman in the whole world like unto Arjuna. And, indeed, Dhananjaya, in encounters with the mace and the sword and on the chariot,

as also with the bow, acquired wonderful proficiency. And Sahadeva obtaining the whole science of morality and duties from (Vrihaspati) the spiritual chief of the celestials, continued to live under the control of his brothers. And Nakula—the favorite of his brothers—taught by Drona became known as a skilful warrior and a great charioteer (*Ati-ratha*). Indeed, Arjuna and the other Pandava princes became so powerful that they slew in war the great Sauvira who had performed a sacrifice extending for three years undaunted by the inroads of the Gandharvas. And the king of the Yavanas himself whom the powerful Pandu even had failed to bring under subjection was brought by Arjuna under control. Then rgain, Vipula, the king of Sauvira, endued with great prowess, who had always shown a disregard for the Kurus, was made by the intelligent Arjuna to feel the edge of his power. And Arjuna also repressed by means of his arrows (the pride of) king Sumitra of Sauvira, also known by the name of Dattamitra, who had resolutely sought an encounter with him. The third of the Pandava princes, assisted by Bhima, with only a single chariot subjugated all the kings of the East backed by ten thousand chariots. In the same way, having conquered with a single chariot the whole of the South, Dhananjaya sent unto the kingdom of the Kurus a considerable spoil.

"Thus did those foremost of men—the illustrious Pandavas—conquering the territories of other kings extended the limits of their own kingdom. But beholding the great prowess and strength of those mighty bowmen, king Dhritarashtra's sentiments towards the Pandavas became suddenly poisoned, and from that day the monarch became so anxious that he could not sleep."

Thus ends the hundred and forty-first section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXLII.

(Sambhava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing that the heroic sons of Pandu endued with excess of energy had become so mighty, king Dhrita-rashtra became very miserable with anxiety. Then summoning unto his side Kanika—that foremost of ministers—well-versed in the science of politics and expert in counsels, the king said, 'O best of Brahmanas, the Pandavas are daily over-shadowing the earth. I am exceedingly jealous of them. Should I have peace or war with them? O Kanika, advise me truly, for I shall do as thou biddest!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "That best of Brahmanas, thus addressed by the king, freely answered him in these pointed words well-agreeing with the import of political science.

'Listen to me, O sinless king, as I answer thee! And, O best of Kuru kings, it behoveth thee not to be angry with me after hearing all I say. Kings should ever be ready with uplifted maces (to strike when necessary), and they should ever extend their prowess. Carefully avoiding all flaws themselves, they should ceaselessly watch for the flaws of their foes and take advantage of them. If the king is always ready to strike, everybody feareth him Therefore, should the king ever have recourse to chastisement in all he doeth. He should so conduct himself that his foe may not detect any flaw in him. But by means of the weakness he detecteth in his foe he should pursue him (to destruction). He should always conceal, like the tortoise hiding its body, his means and ends, and he should always conceal his own weaknesses from the sight of others. And having begun a particular act, he should ever accomplish it completely. Behold, a thorn, if not extracted wholly, produceth a festering sore! The slaughter of a foe who doeth thee evil is always praiseworthy. If the foe be one of great prowess, one should always watch for the hour his disaster and then slay him without any scruples. If he should happen to be a great warrior, his hour of disaster also should be watched and he should then be induced to fly. O, father, an enemy

should never be scorned however contemptible. A spark of fire is capable of consuming an extensive forest if only it can spread from one object to another in proximity. Kings should sometimes feign blindness and deafness, for if impotent to chastise they should pretend not to notice the faults that call for chastisement. On occasions such as these let them regard their bows as made of straw. But they should be always alert like a herd of deer sleeping in the woods. When thy foe is in thy power destroy him by every means open or secret. Do not show him any mercy although he seeketh thy protection. A foe or one that hath once injured thee should be destroyed by lavishing money if necessary, for by killing him thou mayst be at your ease. The dead can never inspire fear. Thou must destroy the three, five and seven (resources) of thy foes. Thou must destroy thy foes, completely tearing them up by their roots. Then shouldst thou destroy their allies and partisans. The allies and partisans can never exist if the principals are destroyed. If the root of the tree is torn up the branches and twigs can never exist as before. Carefully concealing thy own means and ends, thou shouldst always watch thy foes, always seeking their flaws. Thou shouldst, O king, rule thy kingdom always anxiously watching thy foes. By maintaining the perpetual fire, by sacrifices, by brown cloths, by matted locks, and by hides of animals for thy bedding, shouldst thou at first gain the confidence of thy foes, and when thou hast gained it thou shouldst then spring upon them like a wolf. For it hath been said that in the acquisition of wealth even the garb of holiness might be employed as a hooked staff to bend down a branch in order to pluck the fruits that are ripe. The method followed in the plucking of fruits should be the method in destroying foes, for thou shouldst proceed by the principle of selection. Bear thou thy foe upon thy shoulders till the time cometh when thou canst throw him down, breaking him into pieces like an earthen pot thrown with violence upon a stony surface. The foe must never be let off even though he addresseth thee most piteously. No pity shouldst thou shew him but slay him at once. By the arts of conciliation or

the expenditure of money should the foe be slain. By producing disunion amongst his allies or by the employment of force, indeed, by every means in thy power shouldst thou destroy thy foe.'

"Dhrita-rashtra then said, 'Tell me truly how can a foe be destroyed by the arts of conciliation or the expenditure of money, or by producing disunion or by the employment of force.'

"Kanika replied, 'Listen, O monarch, to the history of a jackal dwelling in days of yore in the forest and fully acquainted with the science of politics. There was a wise jackal, mindful of his own interests, who lived in the company of four friends, *viz*, a tiger, a mouse, a wolf, and a mongoose. One day they saw in the woods a strong deer—the leader of a herd—whom, however, they could not seize for his fleetness and strength. They thereupon called a council for consultation. The jackal, opening the proceedings, said,—O tiger, thou hast made many an effort to seize this deer, but all in vain, simply because this deer is young, fleet, and very intelligent. Let now the mouse go and eat into its feet when it lieth asleep. And when this is done, let the tiger approach and seize it. Then shall we all, with great pleasure, feast over it.—Hearing these words of the jackal, they all set to work very cautiously as he directed. And the mouse ate into the feet of the deer and the tiger killed it as anticipated. And beholding the body of the deer lying motionless on the ground, the jackal said unto his companions,—Blessed be ye! Go and perform your ablutions. In the meantime I will look after the deer.—Hearing what the jackal said, they all went into a stream. And the jackal waited there, deeply meditating upon what he should do. And the tiger, endued with great strength, returned first of all to the spot after having performed his ablutions. And he saw the jackal there plunged in meditation. The tiger said,—Why art thou so sorrowful, O wise one! Thou art the foremost of all intelligent persons. Let us enjoy ourselves today by feasting on this carcase.—The jackal said,—Hear, O mighty-armed one, what the mouse hath said. He hath even said,—'O, fie on the strength of the

king of the beasts! This deer hath been slain by me! By the might of my arm he will today gratify his hunger!'—When he hath boasted in such language, I, for my part, do not wish to touch this food.—The tiger replied,—If, indeed, the mouse hath said so, my sense is now awakened. I shall, from this day, slay, with the might of my own arm, creatures ranging the forest and then feast on their flesh.—Having said this, the tiger went away.

"'And after the tiger had left the spot, the mouse came. And seeing the mouse come, the jackal addressed him and said,—Blest be thou, O mouse, but listen to what the mongoose htah said. He hath even said,—'The carcase of this deer is poison (the tiger having touched it with his claws). I will not eat of it. On the other hand, if thou, O jackal, permittest it, I will even slay the mouse and feast on him!' Hearing this the mouse became alarmed and quickly entered his hole. And after the mouse had gone, the wolf, O king, came there having performed his ablutions. And seeing the wolf come, the jackal said unto him,—The king of the beasts hath been angry with thee! Evil is certain to overtake thee! He is expected here with his wife. Do as thou pleasest!—Thus was the wolf also, fond of animal meat, got rid off by the jackal. And the wolf fled contracting his body into the smallest dimensions. It was then that the mongoose came. And, O king, the jackal, seeing him come, said,—By the might of my arm have I defeated the others who have already fled. Fight with me first and then eat of this meat as you please!—The mongoose replied,—When, indeed, the tiger, the wolf, and the intelligent mouse, have all been defeated by thee, heroes as they are, thou seemest to be a greater hero still! I do not desire to fight with thee.—Saying this, the mongoose also went away.'

"Kanika continued, 'When they all had thus left the place, the jackal, well-pleased at the success of his policy, alone ate of that meat. If kings ever act in this way, they can be happy. Thus should the timid by exciting their fears, the courageous by the arts of conciliation, the covetous by gift of wealth, and equals and inferiors by exhibition of prowess,

be brought under thy sway. Besides all this, O king, that I have said, listen now to something else that I say.'

"Kanika continued, 'If thy son, friend, brother, father, or even spiritual preceptor, becometh thy foe, thou shouldst, if desirous of prosperity, slay him without scruples. By curses and incantations, by gift of wealth, by poison, or by deception, the foe should be slain. He should never be neglected from disdain. If both the parties be equal and success uncertain, then he that acteth with deligence groweth in prosperity. If the spiritual preceptor himself be vain, ignorant of what should be done and what left undone, and vicious in his ways, even he should be chastised. If thou art angry, show thyself as if thou art not so, speaking even then with smiles on thy lips. Never reprove any one with indications of anger (in thy speech). And, O Bharata, speak soft words before thou smiteth and even while thou art smiting! After the smiting is over, pity the victim, and grieve for him, and even shed tears. Comforting thy foe by conciliation, by gift of wealth, and smooth behaviour, thou must smite him when he walketh not aright. Thou shouldst equally smite the heinous offender who hath since been living in the practice of virtue, for the garb of virtue simply covereth his offences like black clouds covering the mountains. Thou shouldst burn the house of that person whom thou punishest with death. And thou shouldst never permit beggars and atheists and thieves to dwell in thy kingdom. By a sudden sally or pitched battle, by poison or by corrupting his allies, by gift of wealth, by any means in thy power, thou shouldst destroy thy foe. Thou mayst act with the greatest cruelty. Thou shouldst make thy teeth sharp to bite with fatal effect. And thou shouldst ever smite so effectually that thy foe may not again raise his head. Thou shouldst ever stand in fear of even one from whom there is no fear, not to speak of him from whom there is fear. For if the first be ever powerful he may destroy thee to the roots (for thy unpreparedness). Thou shouldst never trust the faithless, nor trust too much those that are faithful, for if those in whom thou confidest prove thy foes, thou art certain to be annihilated. After testing their faithfulness thou

shouldst employ spies in thy own kingdom and in the kingdoms of others. Thy spies in foreign kingdoms should be apt deceivers and persons in the garb of ascetics. Thy spies should be placed in gardens, places of amusement, temples and other holy places, drinking places, streets, and with the (eighteen) *thirthas* (*viz*, the minister, the chief priest, the heir-presumptive, the commander-in-chief, the gate-keepers of the court, persons of the inner apartments, the jailer, the chief purveyor, the head of the treasury, the general executant of orders, the chief of the town police, the chief architect, the chief justice, the president of the council, the chief of the punitive department, the commander of the fort, the chief of the arsenal, the chief of the frontier guards, and the keeper of the forests), and in places of sacrifices, near wells, on mountains and rivers, in forests, and in all places where people congregate. In speech thou shouldst ever be humble, but let thy heart be ever sharp as the razor. And when thou art engaged in doing even a very cruel and terrible act, thou shouldst talk with smiles on thy lips. If desirous of prosperity, thou shouldst adopt all arts,—humility, oath, conciliation, worshipping the feet of others by lowering thy head, inspiring hope, and the like. A person conversant with the rules of policy is like a tree decked with flowers but bearing no fruits; or, if bearing fruits, these must be at a great height not easily attainable from the ground; and if any of these fruits seem to be ripe, care must be taken to make them appear as raw. Conducting himself in such a way, he shall never fade. Virtue, wealth, and pleasure have both their evil and good effects closely knit together. While extracting the effects that are good, those that are evil should be avoided. Those that practise virtue (incessantly) are made unhappy for want of wealth and the neglect of pleasure. Those again in pursuit of wealth are made unhappy for the neglect of the two others. And so those who pursue pleasure suffer for their inattention to virtue and wealth. Therefore shouldst thou pursue virtue, wealth, and pleasure, in such a way that thou mayst not have to suffer therefrom. With humiliation and attention, without jealousy and solicitous of

accomplishing thy purpose, shouldst thou, in all sincerity, consult with the Brahmanas. When thou art fallen, thou shouldst raise thyself by any means, gentle or violent; and after thou hast thus raised thyself, thou shouldst practise virtue. He that hath never been afflicted with calamity can never have prosperity. This may be seen in the life of one who surviveth his calamities. He that is afflicted with sorrow should be consoled by the recitation of the history of persons of former times (like those of Nala and Rama). He whose heart hath been unstrung by sorrow should be consoled by hopes of future prosperity. He again who is learned and wise should be consoled by pleasing offices presently rendered unto him. He who having concluded a treaty with an enemy reposeth at ease as if he hath nothing more to do, is very like a person who awaketh having fallen down from the top of a tree whereon he had slept. A king should ever conceal his counsels without fear of calumny, and while beholding everything with the eyes of his spies, he should take care to conceal his own emotions before the spies of his enemies. Like a fisherman who becometh prosperous by catching and killing fish, a king can never grow prosperous without tearing the vitals of his enemy and without doing some violent deeds. The might of thy foe, as represented by his armed force, should ever be completely destroyed, by ploughing it up (like weeds) and mowing it down and otherwise afflicting it by disease, starvation, and want of drink. A person in want never approacheth (from love) one in affluence; and when one's purpose hath been accomplished he hath no need to approach him whom he had hitherto looked to for its accomplishment. Therefore when thou dost anything never do it completely, but ever leave something to be desired for by others (whose services thou mayst need). One who is desirous of prosperity should with diligence seek allies and means, and carefully conduct his wars. His exertions in these respects should always be guided by prudence. A prudent king should ever act in such a way that friends and foes may never know his intent before the commencement of his acts. Let them know all when the act hath been commenced or ended. As long as

danger doth not come so long only shalt thou act as if thou art afraid, But when it hath overtaken thee, thou must grapple with it courageously. He who trusteth in a foe who hath been brought under subjection by force, summoneth his own death as a she-mule by her act of conception. Thou shouldst always reckon the act that is future as already arrived (and concert measures for meeting it), else, from want of calmness caused by haste, thou mayst even overlook an important point in meeting it when it is before thee. A person desirous of prosperity should always exert with prudence adapting his measures to time and place. He should also act with an eye to destiny as capable of being regulated by *mantras* and sacrificial rites, and to virtue, wealth, and pleasure. It is well-known that time and place (if taken into consideration) always produce the greatest good. If the foe is insignificant, he should not yet be despised, for he may soon grow like a palm tree extending its roots, or like a spark of fire in the deep woods that may soon flame up into an extensive conflagration. As a little fire gradually fed with faggots soon becometh capable of consuming even the biggest blocks, so the person who increaseth his power by making alliances and friendships soon becometh capable of subjugating even the most formidable foe. The hope thou givest unto thy foe should be long deferred in the filling; and when the time cometh for its fulfilment, invent some pretext for deferring it still. Let that pretext be shown as founded upon some reason, and let that reason itself be made to appear as founded on some other reason. Kings should, in the matter of destroying their foes, ever resemble razors in every particular: unpitying as these are sharp, hiding their intents as these are concealed in their leathern cases, striking when the opportunity cometh as these are used on proper occasions, sweeping off their foes with all allies and dependents as these shave the head or the chin without leaving a single hair. O thou supporter of the dignity of the Kurus, bearing thyself towards the Pandavas and others also as policy dictateth, act in such a way that thou mayst not have to grieve in future. Well do I know that thou art endued with every blessing, and

possessed of every mark of good fortune. Therefore, O king, protect thyself from the sons of Pandu! O king, the sons of Pandu are stronger than their cousins (thy sons): therefore, O thou oppressor of all foes, I tell thee plainly what thou shouldst do. Listen to it, O king, with thy children, and having listened to it, exert yourselves (to do the needful). O king, act in such a way that there may not be any fear unto thee from the Pandavas. Indeed, adopt such measures in consonance with the science of policy that thou mayst not have to grieve in the future.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Having delivered himself thus, Kanika returned to his abode, while the Kuru king Dhrita-rashtra became pensive and melancholy. "

Thus ends the hundred and forty-second Section in the Sambhava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXIII.

(Jatu-griha Parva.)

Vaisampayana said, " Then the son of Suvala (Sakuni), king Duryodhana, Dush-shasana, and Karna, in consultation with each other, formed an evil conspiracy. With the sanction of Dhrita-rashtra the king of the Kurus, they resolved to burn to death Kunti and her (five) sons. But the wise Vidura, capable of reading the heart by external signs, ascertained the intention of those wicked wights by observing their countenances alone. Then the sinless Vidura, of soul enlightened by true knowledge, and devoted to the good of the Pandavas, came to the conclusion that Kunti with her children should fly away from her foes. And providing for that purpose a boat furnished with engines and flags and strong enough to withstand both winds and waves, he addressed Kunti and said, 'This Dhrita-rashtra hath been born for destroying the fame and offspring of the (Kuru) race. Of wicked soul, he is about to cast off eternal virtue! O blessed one, I have kept ready on the stream a boat capable of withstanding both winds and waves. By it escape thou with thy children from the net that Death hath spread around ye!'

Vaisampayana continued, 'Hearing these words, the illustrious Kunti was deeply grieved, and with her children, O thou bull of the Bharata race, stepped into the boat and went over the Ganges. Then leaving the boat according to the advice of Vidura, the Pandavas took with them the wealth that had been given to them (while at Varanavata) by their enemies and safely entered the deep woods. In the house of lac, however, that had been prepared for the destruction of the Pandavas, an innocent Nishāda woman who had come there for some purpose, was, with her children, burnt to death. And that worst of *Mlechchas*—the wretched Purochana—(who was the architect employed in building the house of lac) was also burnt in the conflagration. And thus were the sons of Dhrita-rashtra with their counsellors deceived in their expectations. And thus also were the illustrious Pandavas, by the advice of Vidura, saved with their mother. But the people (of Varanavata) knew not of their safety. And the citizens of Varanavata, seeing the house of lac consumed (and believing the Pandavas to have been burnt to death) became exceedingly sorry. And they sent messengers unto king Dhrita-rashtra to represent everything that had happened. And they told the monarch, 'Thy great end hath been achieved! Thou hast at last burnt the Pandavas to death! Thy desire fulfilled, enjoy with thy children, O king of the Kurus, the kingdom!' Hearing this, Dhrita-rashtra with his children, made a show of grief, and along with his relatives, including Khatta (Vidura) and Bhisma the foremost of the Kurus, performed the last rites of the Pandavas."

Janamejaya said, 'O best of Brahmanas, I desire to hear in full this history of the burning of the house of lac and the escape of the Pandavas therefrom. That was a cruel act of theirs (the Kurus) acting under the counsels of the wicked (Kanika). Recite thou the history to me of all that happened. I am burning with curiosity to hear it!"

Vaisampayana said, " O thou chastiser of all foes, listen to me, O monarch, as I recite the (history of the) burning of the house of lac and the escape of the Pandavas. The wicked Duryodhana, beholding Bhima-sena surpass (every-

body) in strength and Arjuna highly accomplished in arms, became pensive and sad. Then Karna the offspring of the Sun and Sakuni the son of Suvala endeavoured by various means to compass the death of the Pandavas. The Pandavas too counteracted all those contrivances one after another, and in obedience to the counsels of Vidura, never spoke of them afterwards. Then the citizens, beholding the sons of Pandu possessed of all accomplishments, began, O Bharata, to speak of them in all places of public resort. And assembled in courtyards and other places of gathering, they talked of the eldest son of Pandu (Yudhish-thira) as possessed of the qualification for ruling the kingdom. And they said, 'Dhrita-rashtra, though possessed of the eye of knowledge, being (born) blind, obtained not the kingdom before. How can he (therefore) become King now? Then Bhisma, the son of Shantanu, of rigid vows and devoted to truth, having formerly relinquished the sovereignty, would never accept it now. We shall, therefore, now install (on the throne) with proper ceremonies the eldest of the Pandavas endued with youth, accomplished in war, versed in the Vedas, and truthful and kind. Worshipping Bhisma the son of Shantanu and Dhrita-rashtra conversant with the rules of virtue, he will certainly maintain both the former and the latter with his children in every kind of enjoyment.'

"The wretched Duryodhana, hearing these words of the prating partisans of Yudhish-thira, became very much distressed. And afflicted deeply, the wicked prince could not put up with those speeches. Inflamed with jealousy he went unto Dhrita-rashtra, and finding him alone he saluted him with reverence, and distressed at (the sight of) the partiality of the citizens for Yudhish-thira, he addressed the monarch and said, 'O father, I have heard the prating citizens utter words of ill omen. Passing thee by, and Bhisma too, they desire the son of Pandu to be their king! Bhisma will sanction this, for he will not rule the kingdom! It seems, therefore, that the citizens are endeavouring to inflict a great injury on us! Pandu obtained of old the ancestral kingdom by virtue of his own accomplishments. Thou, from blindness,

obtainedst not thy kingdom though fully qualified to have it. If Pandu's son now obtaineth the kingdom as his inheritance from Pandu, then his son will obtain it after him and that son's son also, and so on will it descend in Pandu's line. In that case, O king of the world, ourselves with our children, excluded from the royal line, shall certainly be disregarded of all men! Therefore, O monarch, adopt thou such counsels that we may not suffer perpetual distress becoming dependents on others for our food. O king, if thou hadst obtained the sovereignty before, we would certainly have succeeded to it, however much the people might be unfavourable to us!"

Thus ends the hundred and forty-third Section in the Jatugriha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXLIV.

(Jatu-griha Parvâ continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, "King Dhrita-rashtra whose kowledge was his only eye, hearing these words of his son and recollecting everything that Kanika had said unto him, became afflicted with sorrow. And his mind also thereupon began to waver. Then Duryodhana and Karna and Sakuni the son of Suvala and Dush-shasana the fourth held a consultation together. Then prince Duryodhana said unto Dhrita-rashtra, 'Send, O father, by some clever contrivance, the Pandavas to the town of Varanavata! We shall then have no fear of them!' Dhrita-rashtra, hearing these words uttered by his son, reflected for a moment and then replied unto Duryodhana, saying, 'Pandu, ever devoted to virtue, always behaved dutifully towards all his relatives but particularly towards myself. He cared very little for the enjoyments of the world, but devotedly gave everything unto me, even the kingdom. His son is as much devoted to virtue as he, and is possessed of every accomplishment. Of world-wide fame, he is again the favorite of the people. Possessed of allies, how can we by force exile him from his ancestral kingdom? The counsellors and soldiers (of the state) and their sons and grandsons have

all been cherished and maintained by Pandu. Thus benefited of old by Pandu, shall not, O child, the citizens slay us with all our friends and relatives now on account of Yudhish-thira?'

"Duryodhaaa replied, 'What thou sayest, father, is perfectly true. But in view of the evil that is looming in the future as regards thyself, if we conciliate the people with wealth and honors, they would assuredly side with us for these proofs of our power. The treasury and the ministers of state, O king, are at this moment under our control. Therefore, it behoveth thee now to banish, by some gentle means, the Pandavas to the town of Varanavata. And, O king, when the sovereignty shall have been vested in me, then, O Bharata, may Kunti with her children come back from that place.'

"Dhrita-rashtra replied, 'This, O Duryodhana, is the very thought existing in my mind. But from its sinfulness I have never given expression to it. Neither Bhisma, nor Drona, nor Khatta, nor Gautama (Kripa), will ever sanction the exile of the Pandavas. In their eyes, O dear son, amongst the Kurus both ourselves and the Pandavas are equal. Those wise and virtuous persons will make no difference between us. If, therefore, we behave so towards the Pandavas, shall we not, O son, deserve death at the hands of the Kurus, of these illustrious personages, and of the whole world?'

"Duryodhana answered, 'Bhisma hath no excess of affection for either side and will, therefore, be neutral (in case of a dispute). The son of Drona (Aswathama) is on my side. There is no doubt that where the son is, there the father will also be. Then Kripa the son of Saradwan must be on the side on which Drona and Aswathama are. He will never abandon Drona and his sister's son (Aswathama). Khatta (Vidura) is dependent on us for his means of life though he is covertly with the foe. But siding the Pandavas, alone he can do us no injury. Therefore, exile thou the Pandavas to Varanavata without any fear. And take such steps that they may go thither this very day. By this act, O father, extinguish thou the grief that consumeth me like a blazing fire, that robbeth me of sleep, and that hath pierced my heart even like a terrible dart!'"

Thus ends the hundred and forty-fourth Section in the Jatu-griha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXLV.

(*Jatu-griha Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Then prince Duryodhana along with his brothers began gradually to win over the people to his side by grants of wealth and honors. Meanwhile, some clever councillors instructed by Dhrita-rashtra, one day began to describe (in court) the town of Varanavata as a charming place. And they said, 'The festival of Pashupati (Siva) hath commenced in the town of Varanavata. The concourse of people is great and the procession is the most delightful of all ever witnessed on earth. Decked with every ornament, it charmeth the hearts of all spectators.' Thus did those councillors, instructed by Dhrita-rashtra, speak of Varanavata. And whilst they were so speaking, the Pandavas, O king, entertained the desire of going to that delightful town. And when the king (Dhrita-rashtra) ascertained that the curiosity of the Pandavas had been awakened, the son of Amvikā addressed them, saying, 'These men of mine often speak of Varanavata as the most delightful town in the world. If, therefore, ye children desire to witness that festival, go ye to Varanavata with your followers and friends and enjoy yourselves there like the celestials. And give ye away pearls and gems unto the Brahmanas and the musicians (that may be assembled there). And sporting there for sometime as ye please like the resplendent celestials and enjoying as much hapiness as ye like, return. ye to Hastinapore again!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Yudhish-thira, fully understanding the motives of Dhrita-rashtra and considering that he himself was weak and friendless, replied unto the king, saying, 'So be it.' Then addressing Bhisma the son of Shantanu, the wise Vidura, Drona, Valhika, the Kaurava Somadatta, Kripa, Aswathama, Bhuri-srava, and the other reverend councillors, and Brahmanas and ascetics, and the priests, and the citizens, and the illustrious Gandhari, Yudhish-thira

said slowly and humbly, 'With our friends and followers we go to the delightful and populous town of Varanavata at the command of Dhrita-rashtra! Cheerfully give us your benedictions so that acquiring prosperity therewith we may not be touched by sin!' Thus addressed by the eldest of Pandu's sons, the Kaurava chiefs all cheerfully pronounced blessings on them, saying, 'Ye sons of Pandu, let all the elements bless ye along your ways and let not the slightest evil befall ye!'

"The Pandavas, having performed propitiatory rites for obtaining (their share of) the kingdom, and finishing their preparations, set out for Varanavata."

Thus ends the hundred and forty-fifth Section in the Jatu-griha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXLVI.

(Jatu-griha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "The wicked Duryodhana became very much pleased when the king, O Bharata, had said so unto the Pandavas. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, Duryodhana then summoning his counsellor Purochana in private took hold of his right hand and said, 'O Purochana, this world, so full of wealth, is mine! But it is thine equally with mine! It behoveth thee, therefore, to protect it! I have no more trustworthy counsellor than thee with whom to consult. Therefore, O father, keep my counsel and exterminate my foes by a clever device. O do as I bid thee! The Pandavas have, by Dhrita-rashtra, been sent to Varanavata. They will, at Dhrita-rashtra's command, enjoy themselves there during the festivities. Do that by which thou mayst this very day reach Varanavata upon a chariot drawn by swift mules! Repairing thither, cause thou to be erected a quadrangular palace in the neighbourhood of the arsenal, rich in materials and furniture, and guard thou the mansion well (from prying eyes)! And use thou (in erecting that house) hemp and resin and all other inflammable materials that are procurable. And mixing a little earth with clarified butter and oil and fat and a large measure of lac, make thou

a plaster for lining the walls. And scatter thou all around that house hemp and oil and clarified butter and lac and wood in such a way that the Pandavas, or any others, may not, even with scrutiny, behold them there or conclude the house to be an inflammable one. And having erected such a mansion, cause thou the Pandavas, after worshipping them with great reverence, to inhabit it, with Kunti, and all their friends. And place thou there seats and conveyances and beds, all of the best workmanship, for the Pandavas, so that Dhrita-rashtra may have no reason to complain. And thou must also so manage it all that none of Varanavata may know anything till the end we have in view is accomplished. And assuring thyself that the Pandavas are sleeping within in confidence and without fear, thou must then set fire to that mansion beginning at the outer door. The Pandavas thereupon must be burnt to death, but the people will say that they have been burnt in (an accidental) conflagration of their house.'

"Saying 'So be it' unto the Kuru prince, Purochana repaired to Varanavata on a car drawn by fleet mules. And going thither, O king, without loss of time, obedient to the instructions of Duryodhana he did everything that that prince bade him do."

Thus ends the hundred and forty-sixth Section in the Jatugriha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXLVII.

(Jatu-griha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Meanwhile the Pandavas ascended their chariots yoking thereto some fine horses endued with the speed of the wind. And while they were on the point of riding on their cars, they touched, in great distress, the feet of Bhisma, of king Dhrita-rashtra, of the illustrious Drona, of Kripa, of Vidura, and of the other elders of the Kuru race. Thus saluting reverentially all the older men, and embracing their equals, and receiving the farewell of even the children, and taking leave of all the venerable ladies of

their household and walking round them respectfully, and bidding farewell unto all the citizens, the Pandavas, ever mindful of their vows, set out for Varanavata. And Vidura of great wisdom and the other bulls among the Kurus and the citizens also, in great affliction followed those tigers among men for some distance. And some amongst the citizens and the country-people who followed the Pandavas, afflicted beyond measure at beholding the sons of Pandu in such distress, began to say aloud, 'King Dhrita-rashtra of wicked soul seeth not things with an equal eye! The Kuru monarch casteth not his eye on virtue! Neither the sinless Yudhish-thira, nor Bhima the foremost of mighty men, nor Dhananjaya the (youngest) son of Kunti, will ever be guilty of (the sin of waging a rebellious war). And when these will remain quiet, how shall the illustrious sons of Madri do anything? Having inherited the kingdom from their father, Dhrita-rashtra could not bear them. How is it that Bhisma, who suffers the exile of the Pandavas to that wretched place, sanctions this act of great injustice? Vichitra-virya the son of Shantanu and the royal sage Pandu of the Kuru race both cherished us of old with fatherly care. But now that Pandu—that tiger among men—hath ascended to heaven, Dhrita-rashtra cannot bear these princes—his children. We who do not sanction this exile shall all go, leaving this excellent town and our own homes, to where Yudhish-thira will go.'

"Unto those distressed citizens talking in this way, the virtuous Yudhish-thira, himself afflicted with sorrow, reflecting for a few moments said, 'The king is our father, worthy of regard, our spiritual guide, and our superior! To do with unsuspicious hearts whatever he biddeth is, indeed, our duty. Ye are our friends! Walking round us and making us happy by your blessings, return ye to your abodes! When the time cometh for anything to be done for us by ye, then, indeed, accomplish all that is agreeable and beneficial to us!' Thus addressed, the citizens walked round the Pandavas and blest them with their blessings and returned to their respective abodes.

"And after the citizens ceased following the Pandavas,

Vidura, conversant with all the dictates of morality, desirous of awakening the eldest of the Pandavas (to a sense of his dangers) addressed him in these words. The learned Vidura, conversant with the jargon (of the *Mlechchas*), addressed the learned Yudhish-thira also conversant with the jargon (of the *Mlechchas*) in words of the *Mlechcha* tongue so as to be unintelligible to all except Yudhish-thira. And he said, 'He that knoweth the schemes his foes contrive in accordance with the dictates of political science, should, knowing them, act in such a way as to keep himself off from all danger. He that knoweth that there are sharp weapons capable of cutting the body though not made of steel, and understandeth also the means of warding them off, can never be injured by his foes. He liveth who protecteth himself by the knowledge that neither the consumer of straw and wood nor the drier of the dew burneth the inmates of a hole in the deep woods. The blind see no way nor have any knowledge of direction. They who have no patience never acquire prosperity. Remembering this, keep thyself alert. The person who accepteth an inflammable abode assigned to him by his foes can escape from fire by making his abode like unto that of a jackal (having many outlets). By wandering a man can acquire the knowledge of ways, and by the stars he can ascertain the directions, and he who keepeth his five (senses) under control can never be oppressed by his enemies.'

"Thus addressed, Pandu's son Yudhish-thira the just replied unto Vidura the foremost of all learned men, saying, 'I have understood thee.' Then Vidura, having instructed the Pandavas and followed them (thus far), walked around them and bidding them farewell returned to his own abode. And when the citizens and Bhisma and Vidura had all ceased following, Kunti approched Yudhish-thira and said, 'The words that Khatta said unto thee in the midst of many people, so indistinctly as if he said not anything, and thy reply also to him in similar words and voice, we have not understood. If it is not improper for us to know them I should then like to hear everything that passed between him and thee!'

"Yudhish-thira replied, 'The virtuous Vidura said unto

me that we should know the mansion (for our accommodation at Varanavata) hath been built of inflammable materials. He also said unto me,—the path of escape too shall not be unknown to thee,—and, further, that—those that can control their senses can acquire the sovereignty of the whole world.—The reply that I gave unto Vidura was,—I have understood thee.—' "

Vaisampayana continued, " The Pandavas set out on the eighth day of the month of Falgoona when the star Rohiny was ascendant, and arriving at Varanavata they beheld the town and the people."

Thus ends the hundred and forty-seventh Section in the Jatu-griha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXLVIII.

(Jatu-griha Parva.Continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " Then all the citizens (of Varanavata), hearing that the sons of Pandu had come, and filled with joy at the tidings, with great actvity came out of Varanavata, on conveyances of various kinds by thousands, and taking with them every auspicious article, as directed by the *Shastras*, to receive those foremost of men. And the people of Varanavata having approached the sons of Kunti blessed them by uttering the word *Jaya* and stood surrounding them. That tiger among men—the virtuous Yudhish-thira—thus surrounded by them looked resplendent like him having the thunder-bolt in his hands (Indra) in the midst of the celestials. And those sinless ones welcomed by the citizens and welcoming the citizens in return then entered the populous town of Varanavata decked with every ornament. And entering the town, those heroes first went, O monarch, to the abodes of Brahmanas engaged in their proper duties. Those foremost of men then went to the abodes of the *Sutas* and of the Vaisyas and even of the Sudras. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, thus adored by the citizens, the Pandavas at last went, with Purochana walking before them, to the palace that had been built for them. And Purochana then began

to place before them food and drink and beds and carpets, all of the first and most handsome kind. And the Pandavas, dressed in costly attire, continued to live there, adored by Purochana and the people having their homes in Varanavata.

" After the Pandavas had thus lived for ten nights, Purochana spoke to them of the mansion (he had built) called 'The blessed home,' but in reality the cursed house. Then those tigers among men attired in costly dress, entered that mansion at Purochana's word, like Guhyakas entering the palace (of Shiva) on the Kylasa mount. The foremost of all virtuous men—Yudhish-thira—inspecting the house said unto Bhima that it was really built of inflammable materials. And scenting the smell of fat mixed with clarified butter and preparations of lac, he said unto Bhima, 'O thou oppressor of all enemies, this house is truly built of inflammable materials! Indeed, it is apparent that such is the case! The enemy, it is evident, by the aid of trusted artists well-skilled in the construction of houses have finely built this mansion, after procuring hemp, resin, heath, straw, and bamboos all soaked in clarified butter. This wicked wretch, Purochana, acting under the instructions of Duryo-dhana, stayeth here with the object of burning me to death when he seeth me trustful. But, O son of Pritha, Vidura of great intelligence knew this danger and, therefore, hath apprised me of it beforehand. Knowing it all, that youngest uncle of ours, ever wishing our good, from affection hath told us that this house so full of danger hath been constructed by the wretches under Duryo-dhana acting in secrecy.'

" Hearing this, Bhima replied, 'If, sir, you know this house to be so inflammable, it would then be well for us to return thither where we had taken up our quarters first.' Yudhish-thira replied, 'It seemeth to me that we should rather continue to live here in seeming unsuspiciousness but all the while with caution and our senses wide awake, and seeking for some certain means of escape. If Purochana findeth from our countenances that we have fathomed his designs, acting with haste he may suddenly burn us to death. Indeed, Purochana careth little, for obloquy or sin. The

wretch stayeth here, acting under the instructions of Duryodhana. If we are burnt to death, will our grandfather Bhisma be angry? Why will he, by showing his wrath, make the Kauravas angry with him? Or, it may be that our grandfather Bhisma and the other bulls of the Kuru race, regarding indignation at such a sinful act to be virtuous, may become indignant. If, however, from fear of being burnt we fly hence, Duryo-dhana, ambitous of sovereignty, will certainly compass our deaths by means of spies. While we have no rank and power, Duryodhana hath both: while we have no friends and allies Duryo-dhana hath both: while we are without wealth, Duryodhana commandeth a full treasury. May he not, therefore, certainly destroy us by adopting adequate means? Let us, therefore, deceiving this wretch (Purochana) and that other wretch Duryo-dhana, pass our days, disguising ourselves at times. Let us also lead a hunting life, wandering over the earth. We shall then, if we have to escape our enemies, be familiar with all paths. We shall also, this very day, cause a sub-terranean passage to be dug in our chamber in great secrecy. If we act in this way, concealing what we do from all, fire shall never be able to consume us. We shall live here actively doing everything for our safety but with such secrecy that neither Purochana nor any of the citizens of Varanavata may know anything we do.' "

Thus ends the hundred and forty-eighth Section in the Jatu-griha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXLIX.

(Jatu-griha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, "A friend of Vidura, a person well-skilled in mining, coming unto the Pandavas, addressed them in secret, saying, 'I have been sent by Vidura and am a skilful miner. I am to serve the Pandavas. Tell me what I am to do for ye! From the trust he reposeth in me, Vidura hath said unto me,—Go thou unto the Pandavas and accomplish thou their good.—What shall I do for ye? Puro-

chana will set fire to the door of thy house on the fourteenth night of this the dark lunation. To burn to death those tigers among men—the Pandavas—with their mother is the design of that wicked wretch the son of Dhrita-rashtra. And, O son of Pandu, Vidura also told thee something in the Mlechcha tongue to which thou also hadst replied in the same language. I state these particulars as my credentials.' Hearing these words, Yudhish-thira the truthful son of Kunti replied, saying, 'O amiable one, I now know thee as a dear and trusted friend of Vidura, true and ever devoted to him. There is nothing that the learned Vidura doth not know! As his so ours art thou! Make no difference between him and us. We are as much thine also as his. O protect us as the learned Vidura ever protecteth us! I know that this house so inflammable hath been contrived for me by Purochana at the command of Dhrita-rashtra's son. That wicked wretch commanding wealth and allies pursueth us without intermission. O save us with a little exertion from the impending conflagration! If we are burnt to death here, Duryodhana's most cherished desire will be satisfied. Here is that wretch's well-furnished arsenal. This large mansion hath been built abutting the high ramparts of the arsenal without any outlet. But this unholly contrivance of Duryodhana was known to Vidura from the first, and he it was who enlightened us beforehand. That danger of which Khatta had foreknowledge is at our door. Save us from it without Purochana being able to know that we are saved.' Hearing these words the miner said, 'So be it,' and carefully beginning his work of excavation made a large subterranean passage. And the mouth of that passage was in the centre of that house, and it was on a level with the floor and closed up with planks. And the mouth was so covered from fear of Purochana. That wicked wretch kept a constant watch at the door of the house. And the Pandavas used to sleep within their chambers with arms ready for use, while during the day they went ahunting from forest to forest. And thus, O king, they lived (in that mansion) very guardedly, deceiving Purochana by a show of trustfulness and contentment while in reality they were

trustless and discontented. Nor did the citizens of Varanavata know anything about these plans of the Pandavas. In fact, none else knew of them except Vidura's friend that good miner."

Thus ends the hundred and forty-ninth Section in the Jatu-griha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CL.

(Jatu-griha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Seeing the Pandavas living cheerfully and without suspicion for a full year, Purochana became exceedingly glad. And beholding Purochana so very glad, Yudhish-thira the virtuous son of Kunti, addressing Bhima and Arjuna and the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva) said, 'The cruel-hearted wretch hath been well-deceived. I think the time is come for our escape. Setting fire to the arsenal and burning Purochana to death and letting his body lie here, let us six persons fly hence unmarked by all.'

"Then on the occasion of a gift, O king, Kunti fed on a certain night a large number of Brahmanas. And there came also a number of ladies. These eating and drinking enjoyed there as they pleased, and with Kunti's leave at last returned to their respective homes. And desirous of obtaining food, there came, as if impelled by the fates, to that feast, in course of her wanderings a Nishada woman—the mother of five children—accompanied by all her sons. And, O king, she and her children, intoxicated with the wine they drank, became incapable. And deprived of consciousness and more dead than alive, she with all her sons lay down in that mansion to sleep. Then when all the inmates of the house lay down to sleep, there began to blow a violent wind in the night. Then Bhima set fire to the house just where Purochana was sleeping. Then the Pandava set fire to the door of that house of lac. Then he set fire to that mansion in several parts all around. Then when the sons of Pandu were satisfied that the house had caught fire in several parts, those chastisers of enemies, with their mother, entered the subterranean

passage without losing any time. Then the heat and the roar of the fire became intense and awakened the towns-people. And beholding that house in flames, the citizens with sorrowful faces began to say, 'The wretch (Purochana) of wicked soul had, under the instructions of Duryo-dhana, built this house for the destruction of his employer's relatives. And he, indeed, hath set fire to it. Oh fie on Dhrita-rashtra's heart which is so partial! He hath burnt to death, as if he were their foe, the sinless heirs of Pandu! Oh the sinful, wicked-souled (Purochana) who hath burnt those best of men —the innocent and unsuspicious princes—hath himself been burnt to death as fate would have it!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus did the citizens of Varanavata bewail (the fate of the Pandavas). And they waited there for the whole night surrounding that house. The Pandavas, however, accompanied by their mother, coming out of that subterranean passage, fled in haste unmarked. But those chastisers of foes, for sleepiness and fear, could not, with their mother, proceed in haste. But, O monarch, Bhima-sena, endued with terrible prowess and swiftness of motion took upon his body all his brothers and mother and began to push through the darkness. Taking his mother on his shoulder, the twins on his sides, and Yudhish-thira and Arjuna on both his arms, Vrikodara, of great energy and strength, and endued with the velocity of the wind, commenced his march, breaking the trees by his breast and pressing deep the earth with his stamp."

Thus ends the hundred and fiftieth Section in the Jatugriha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLI.

(Jatu-griha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "About this time, the learned Vidura sent into those woods a man of pure character and much trusted by him. This person going to where he had been directed, saw the Pandavas with their mother in the forest,

employed in a certain place in measuring the depth of a river. The design that the wicked Duryo-dhana had formed had been through his spies known to Vidura of great intelligence, and, therefore, he now sent that prudent person unto the Pandavas. Sent by Vidura unto them he showed the Pandavas on the sacred banks of the Ganges a boat with engines and flags, constructed by trusted artificers and capable of withstanding winds and waves and endued with the speed of the wind or of the mind. He then addressed the Pandavas in these words to show that he was really sent by Vidura. 'O Yudhish-thira,' he said, 'Listen to these words that the learned Vidura had said (unto thee) as a proof of the fact that I come from him !—Neither the consumer of straw and wood, nor the drier of the dew ever burneth the inmates of a hole in the forest. He escapeth from death who protecteth himself knowing this.—By these credentials know me to have been truly sent by Vidura and to be also his trusted agent. Vidura conversant with everything hath again said,—O son of Kunti, thou shalt surely defeat in battle Karna and Duryodhana with his brothers and Sakuni.—This boat is ready on the waters. It will glide pleasantly thereon, and shall certainly carry ye all from these regions.'

"Then beholding those foremost of men along with their mother pensive and sad, he caused them to go into the boat that was on the Ganges and accompanied them himself. Addressing them again, he said, 'Vidura having scented your heads and embracing ye (mentally), hath said it again that in commencing your auspicious journey and going along ye should never be careless.'

"Saying these words unto those heoric princes, the person sent by Vidura took those bulls among men to the other side of the Ganges on his boat. And having taken them over the water and seeing them all safe on the opposite bank he uttered the word *Jaya* to their success and then left them and returned to the place whence he came.

"The illustrious Pandavas also, transmitting through that person some message to Vidura, began, after having crossed the Ganges, to proceed with haste and in great secrecy."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-first Section in the Jatugriha of the Adi Parva,

---

SECTION CLII.

(*Jatu-griha Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, " Then when the night had passed away, a large concourse of the towns-people came there in haste to see the sons of Pandu. Extinguishing the fire, they saw that the house just burnt down had been built of laccine materials and that (Duryodhana's) counsellor Purochana had been burnt to death. And the people began to wail aloud, saying, 'Indeed, this had been contrived by the sinful Duryodhana for the destruction of the Pandavas. There is little doubt that Duryodhana hath, with Dhrita-rashtra's knowledge, burnt to death the heirs of Pandu, else the prince would have been prevented by his father. There is little doubt that even Bhisma the son of Shantanu and Drona and Vidura and Kripa and the other Kauravas have, none of them, followed the dictates of duty. Let us now send to Dhrita-rashtra to say—Thy great desire hath been achieved! Thou hast burnt to death the Pandavas!'

" They then began to extinguish the embers for obtaining some trace of the Pandavas, and they saw the innocent Nishada woman with her five sons burnt to death. Then the miner sent by Vidura, while removing the ashes covered the hole he had dug with those ashes in such a way that it remained unnoticed by all who had gone there.

" The citizens then sent to Dhrita-rashtra to inform him that the Pandavas along with (Duryodhana's) counsellor Purochana had been burnt to death. King Drhita-rashtra hearing the evil news of the death of the Pandavas wept in great sorrow. And he said, 'King Pandu my brother of great fame hath, indeed, died today when those heroic sons of his together with their mother have been burnt to death! Ye men, repair ye quickly to Varanavata and cause the funeral rites to be performed of those heroes and of the daughter of Kuntiraj! Let also the bones of the deceased

be sanctified by the usual rites, and let all the beneficial and great acts (usual on such occasions) be performed. Let the friends and relatives of those that have been burnt to death repair thither. Let also whatever other beneficial acts that ought, under these circumstances, be performed by us for the Pandavas and Kunti be accomplished by wealth.'

"Having said this, Dhrita-rashtra the son of Amvika, surrounded by his relatives, offered oblations of water to the sons of Pandu. And all of them, afflicted with excessive sorrow, bewailed aloud, exclaiming, 'Oh Yudhish-thira! Oh prince of the Kuru race!—while others cried aloud, 'Oh Bhima!—Oh Falgoona!'—while some again, 'Oh the twins!—Oh Kunti!—Thus did they bewail the Pandavas and offer oblations of water unto them. The citizens also wept for the Pandavas, but Vidura did not weep much because he knew the truth.

"Meanwhile, the Pandavas endued with great strength, with their mother forming a company of six, going out of the town of Varanavata, arrived at the banks of the Ganges. They then speedily reached the opposite bank aided by the strength of the boatmen's arms, the rapidity of the river's current, and a favorable wind. Leaving the boat they proceeded in a southern direction finding their way in the darkness by the light of the stars. After much suffering they at last reached, O king, a dense forest. They were then tired and thirsty and sleep was closing their eyes every moment. Then Yudhish-thira, addressing Bhima endued with great energy, said, 'What can be more painful than this! We are now in the deep woods. We know not which side is which. Nor can we proceed much further. We do not know whether that wretch Purochana hath or hath not been burnt to death. How shall we escape from these dangers—unmarked by others? O Bharata, taking us on thyself, proceed thou as before! Thou alone amongst us art strong and swift as the wind!'

"Thus addressed by Yudhish-thira the just, the mighty Bhima-sena, taking up on his body Kunti and his brothers, began to proceed with great celerity."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-second Section in the Jatu-griha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLIII.

(Jatu-griha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "As the migthy Bhima proceeded, by the clasp of his breast the whole forest with its trees and their branches seemed to tremble. The motion of his legs raised a wind like unto that which bloweth during the months of *Jaishtha* and *Ashara*. And the mighty Bhima proceeded, making a path for, himself, by treading down the trees and creepers before him. In fact, he broke (by the pressure of his body) the large trees and plants with their flowers and fruits standing on his way. Even so passeth through the woods, breaking down mighty trees, a leader of a herd of elephants, of the age of sixty years, angry and endued with excess of energy, during the season of rut when the liquid juice tricketh down the three parts of its body. Indeed, so great was the force with which Bhima endued with the speed of Gadura or of Maruta (the god of wind) proceeded that the Pandavas seemed to faint in consequence. Frequently swimming accross streams difficult of being crossed, the Pandavas disguised themselve on their way from fear of the sons of the Dhrita-rashtra And Bhima carried on his shoulders his illustrious mothe of delicate sensibilities along the uneven banks of rivers Towards the evening, O thou bull of the Bharata race, Bhim (bearing his brothers and mother on his back) reached terrible forest where furits and roots and water were scarce a which was resounding with the terrible cries of birds an beasts. The twilight deepened, the cries of birds and beast became fiercer, darkness surrounded everything from the view and an untimely wind began to blow that broke and laid lo many a tree large and small and many of creeper with dr leaves and fruits. The Kaurava princes, afflicted with fatigu and thirst and heavy with sleep, were unable to proceed further. They then all sat down in that forest without food and drink. Then Kunti afflicted with thirst said unto her

sons, 'I am the mother of the five Pandavas and am now in their midst! Yet am I burning with thirst!' Kunti repeatedly said this unto her sons. Hearing these words, from affection for his mother Bhima's mind was warmed by compassion and he resolved to go (along as before). Then Bhima, proceeding through that terrible and extensive forest without a living soul saw a beautiful banian with wide-spreading branches. Causing his brothers and mother, O thou bull of the Bharata race, to alight there, he said unto them, 'Rest ye here, while I go in quest of water. I hear the sweet cries of acquatic fowls. I think there must be a large pool here.' Commanded, O Bharata, by his eldest brother who said unto him 'Go,' Bhima proceeded in the direction whence the cries of those acquatic fowls were coming. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, he soon came upon a pool, and bathed and slaked his thirst. And affectionate unto his brothers, he brought for them, O Bharata, water by soaking his upper garments. Hastily retracing his way over those four miles he came unto where his mother was and beholding her he was afflicted with sorrow and began to sigh like a snake. Distressed with grief at seeing his mother and brothers asleep on the bare ground, Vrikodara began to weep. 'Oh wretch that I am, who beholdeth his brothers asleep on the bare ground, what can befall unto me more painful than this? Oh, they who formerly at Varanavata could not sleep on the softest and most valuable beds are now asleep on the bare ground! Oh, what more painful sight shall I ever behold than that of Kunti,—the sister of Vasudeva that grinder of hostile hosts,—the daughter of Kuntiraja,—herself decked with every auspicious mark,—the daughter-in-law of Vichitravirya,—the wife of the illustrious Pandu,—the mother of us (five brothers),—resplendant as the filaments of the lotus, and delicate and tender and fit to sleep on the most costly beds,—thus asleep, as she should never be, on the bare ground? Oh, she who hath brought forth these sons by Dharma and Indra and Maruta—she who hath ever slept within palaces—now sleepeth fatigued on the bare ground! What more painful sight shall ever be

beheld by me than that of these tigers among men (my brothers) asleep on the ground! Oh, the virtuous Yudhish-thira who deserveth the sovereignty of the three worlds sleepeth fatigued, like an ordinary man, on the bare ground! This Arjuna of darkish hue, like unto that of the clouds of heaven, and unequalled amongst men, sleepeth on the ground like an ordinary person! Oh, what can be more painful than this? Oh, the twins who in beauty are like the twin Aswinas amongst the celestials are asleep like ordinary mortals on the bare ground! He who hath no jealous and evil-minded relatives, liveth in happiness in this world like a single tree in a village. The tree that standeth single in a village with its leaves and fruits, from absence of others of the same species, becometh sacred and is worshipped and venerated by all. They again that have many relatives but all heroic and virtuous, live happily in the world without sorrow of any kind. Themselves powerful and growing in prosperity and always gladdening their friends and relatives, they live depending on eachother like tall trees growing in the same forest. We, however, have been forced into exile by the wicked Dhrita-rashtra with his sons, having escaped with difficulty, from sheer good fortune, a fiery death. Having escaped from that fire we are now resting in the shade of this tree! Having already suffered so much, where now are we to go? Ye sons of Dhrita-rashtra of little fore-sight, ye wicked wights, enjoy your temporary success! The gods are certainly auspicious to ye! But ye wicked wretches, ye are alive yet only because Yudhish-thira doth not command me to take your lives! Else this very day, filled as I am with wrath, I would send thee, (Duryodhana) to the regions of Yama with thy children and friends and brothers, and Karna, and (Sakuni) the son of Suvala! But what can I do! For ye sinful wretches, the virtuous king Yudhish-thira —the eldest of the Pandavas—is not yet angry with ye!'

" Having said this, Bhima of mighty arms, fired by wrath, began to squeeze his palms, sighing deeply in affliction. Excited again in wrath like an extinguished fire blazing up all on a sudden, Vriko-dara once more beheld his brothers

sleeping on the ground like ordinary persons sleeping in trustfulness. And Bhima said unto himself, 'I think there is some town not far off from this forest. These all are asleep, so I will sit awake. And these will slake their thirst after they rise refreshed from sleep!' Saying this, Bhim sat there awake, keeping watch over his sleeping mother and brothers."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-third Section in the Jatu-griha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLIV.

(*Hidimva-badha Parva.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Not far from the place where the Pandavas were asleep, a Rakshasa of name Hidimva dwelt on a *Shala* tree. Possessed of great energy and prowess, he was cruel cannibal of visage grim in consequence of his sharp and long teeth. He was now hungry and longing for human food. Of long shanks and a large belly, his locks and beard were both red in hue. His shoulders were broad like the neck of a tree, his ears were like unto arrows, and his features were frightful. Of red eyes and grim visage, the monster beheld, in casting his glances around, the sons of Pandu sleeping in those woods. He was then hungry and longing for human flesh. Shaking his dry and grizzly locks and scratching them with his fingers pointed upwards, the large-mouthed cannibal repeatedly looked at the sleeping sons of Pandu, yawning wishfully at times. Of huge body and great strength, of complexion like a mass of clouds, of teeth long and sharp-pointed and face emitting a sort of lustre, he was ever pleased with human food. And scenting the odor of man, he addressed his sister, saying, 'O sister, it is after a long time that such agreeable food hath approached me! My tongue is moistened with saliva owing to the anticipated relish of such food. My eight teeth, so sharp-pointed and incapable of being resisted by any substance, I shall today, after a long time, dip into the most delicious meat. Attacking the human throat and even opening the veins, I shall (today) drink a plentiful quantity of human blood, hot and fresh and frothy. Go thou and ascertain who

these are lying asleep in these woods! The strong scent of man pleaseth my nostrills. Slaughtering all these men bring them unto me. They sleep within my dominion. Thou needst have no fear of them. Do my bidding soon, for we shall then together eat their flesh tearing it off their bodies according to our pleasure. And after feasting to our fill on human meat we shall then dance together to various measures.'

"Thus addressed by Hidimva in those woods, Hidimvā, the female cannibal, at the command of her brother, went, O thou bull of the Bharata race, to the spot where the Pandavas were. And going there she beheld the Pandavas asleep with their mother and the invincible Bhima-sena sitting awake. And beholding Bhima-sena unrivalled on earth for beauty and like unto a vigorous *Shal* tree, the Rakshasa woman immediately fell in love with him. And she said to herself, 'This person of hue like heated gold and mighty arms, of broad shoulders as the lion, and so resplendant, of neck marked with three lines like a shell and eyes like lotus leaves, is worthy of being my husband. I shall not obey the cruel mandate of my brother. A woman's love for her husband is stronger than her affection for her brother. If I slay him, my brother's gratification as well as mine will only be momentary. But if I slay him not, I can enjoy with him for ever and ever.' Thus saying, the Rakshasa woman, capable of assuming any form at will, assumed an excellent human form and began to advance with slow steps towards Bhima of mighty arms. Decked in celestial ornaments, she advanced with smiles on her lips and a modest gait, and addressing Bhima, said, 'O thou bull amongst men, whence hast thou come here and who art thou? Who, besides, are these persons of celestial beauty sleeping here? Who also, O thou sinless one, is this lady of transcendent beauty sleeping so trustfully in these woods as if she were lying in her own chamber? Dost thou not know that this forest is the abode of a Rakshasa? Truly do I say, here liveth the wicked Rakshasa called Hidimva! Ye beings of celestial beauty, I have been sent hither even by that Rakshasa—my brother—with the cruel intent of killing ye for his food! But I tell

thee truly that beholding thee resplendent as a celestial, even I would have none else for my husband save thee! Thou who art acquainted with all duties, knowing this, do unto me what is proper! My heart as well as body hath been pierced by (the shafts of) Kama! O, desirous as I am of obtaining thee, make me thine! O thou of mighty arms, I will rescue thee from the Rakshasa who eateth human flesh! O sinless one, be thou my husband! We shall then live on the breasts of mountains inaccessible to ordinary mortals. I can range the air and I do so at pleasure. Thou mayst enjoy great felicity with me in those regions!'

"Hearing these words of hers, Bhima replied, 'O Rakshasa woman, who can, like a Muni having all his passions under complete control, abandon his sleeping mother, and elder and younger brothers? What man like me would go to gratify his lust leaving his sleeping mother and brothers as food for a Rakshasa?'

"The Raksha woman replied, 'O awaken all these, and I shall do unto ye all what is agreeable to thee! I shall certainly rescue ye all from my cannibal brother!'

"Bhima then said, 'O Rakshasa woman, I will not from fear of thy wicked brother awaken my brothers and mother sleeping comfortably in the woods! O timid one, Rakshasas are never able to bear the prowess of my arms! And, O thou of handsome eyes, neither men, nor Gandharvas, nor Yakshas are able to bear my might. O thou amiable one, thou mayst stay or go as thou likest, or mayst even send thy cannibal brother, O thou of delicate shape, I care not!'"

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-fourth Section in the Hidimva-badha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLV.

(Hidimva-badha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Hidimva, the chief of the Rakshasas, seeing that his sister returned not soon enough, then alighted from the tree and proceeded quickly to where the Pandavas were. Of red eyes and strong arms and the hair,

of his head standing erect, of large open mouth and body like unto a mass of dark clouds, and teeth long and sharp-pointed, he was terrible to behold. And Hidimvā, beholding her brother of frightful visage alight from the tree, became very much alarmed, and addressing Bhima said, 'The wicked cannibal is coming hither in wrath! I entreat thee, with thy brothers do as I bid thee! O thou of great courage, endued as I am with the powers of a Rakshasa I am capable of going whithersoever I like. Mount ye on my hips, I will carry ye all through the skies! And, O thou chastiser of all foes, awaken these and thy mother sleeping in comfort. Taking them all on my person I will convey ye through the skies.'

"Bhima then said, 'O thou of fair hips, fear not anything. I am sure that as long as I am here, there is no Rakshasa capable of injuring any of these. O thou of slender waist, I will slay this (cannibal) in thy very sight! This worst of Rakshasas, O timid one, is no worthy antagonist of mine. Neither can all the Rakshasas together bear the strength of my arms. Behold these strong arms of mine, each like unto the trunk of an elephant! Behold also these thighs of mine like unto iron maces and this broad and adamantine chest! O thou beautiful one, thou shalt today behold my prowess like unto that of Indra. O thou of fair hips, contemn me not thinking that I am a man!'

"Hidimvā replied, saying, 'O thou tiger among men, O thou of the beauty of a celestial, I do not certainly hold thee in contempt! But I have seen the prowess that Rakshasas exert upon men.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Then, O Bharata, the wrathful Rakshasa eating human flesh heard those words of Bhima who had been talking in that way. And Hidimva beheld his sister disguised in human form, her head decked with garlands of flowers and her face like the full moon and her eyebrows and nose and eyes and ringlets all of the handsomest description, and her nails and complexion of the most delicate hue, and herself wearing every kind of ornament and attired in fine transparent robes. And the canni-

bal, beholding her in that charming human form, suspected that she was desirous of carnal intercourse and became indignant. And, O thou best of the Kurus, becoming angry with his sister, the Rakshasa expanded his eyes and addressing her said, 'What senseless creature wishes to throw obstacles in my path now that I am so hungry? Hast thou become so senseless, O Hidimvā, that thou fearest not my wrath? Fie on thee, unchaste woman! Thou art even now desirous of carnal intercourse and solicitous of doing me an injury! Thou art ready to sacrifice the good name and honor of all the Rakshasas thy ancestors! Those with whose aid thou wouldst do me this great injury, I will, even now, slay along with thee!' Addressing his sister thus, Hidimva, with eyes red in anger and teeth pressing against teeth, ran at her for killing her then and there. But beholding him to rush at his sister, Bhima that foremost of smiters endued with great energy rebuked him and said, 'Stop,' 'Stop,' "

Vaisampayana continued, "And Bhima beholding the Rakshasa angry with his sister, smiled (in derision), and addressing him said, 'O Hidimva, what need is there for thee to awaken these persons sleeping so comfortably. O thou wicked cannibal, approach me first without loss of time! Smite me first,—it behoveth thee not to kill a woman, especially when she has been sinned against instead of sinning! This girl is scarcely responsible for her act in desiring intercourse with me! She hath in this been moved by the deity of desire that pervadeth every living form! Thou wicked wretch and the most infamous of Rakshasas, thy sister came here at thy command! Beholding my person she desireth me. In that the timid girl doth no injury to thee! It is the deity of desire that hath offended. It behoveth thee not to injure her for his offence! O wicked wretch, thou shall not slay a woman when I am here! Come with me, thou cannibal, and fight with myself singly! Singly shall I send thee today to the abode of Yama! O Rakshasa, let thy head today, pressed by my might, be pounded to pieces, as if pressed by the tread of a mighty

elephant. Slain by me on the field of battle, let herons and hawks and jackals tear in glee thy limbs today on the ground! In a moment I shall today make this forest destitute of Rakshasas,—this forest which had so long been polluted by thee the devourer of human beings. Thy sister, O Rakshasa, shall today behold thyself, huge though thou art like a mountain, repeatedly dragged like a huge elephant by a lion. O thou worst of Rakshasas, thyself slain by me, men ranging these woods will henceforth do so safely and without fear!'

"Hearing these words, Hidimva said, 'What need there, O man, of this thy vaunt and this thy boast! Accomplish it all first, and then by thy deed mayst thou vaunt. Therefore delay thou not. Thou knowest thyself to be strong and endued with prowess. Thou shalt rightly estimate thy strength today in thy encounter with me. Until that I will not slay these (thy brothers), let them sleep comfortably. But I will, fool as thou art and the utterer of evil speeches, slay thee first! And drinking the blood of thy body I will slay these also, and then, last of all, this (sister of mine) that hath done me an injury.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Saying this, the cannibal extending his arms ran in wrath towards Bhima-sena that chastiser of all foes. Then Bhima of terrible prowess quickly seized, as if in sport, with great force the extended arms of the Rakshasa who had rushed at him. Then seizing the struggling Rakshasa with violence, Bhima dragged him from that spot full thirtytwo cubits, like a lion dragging any little animal. Then the Rakshasa, thus made to feel the weight of Bhima's strength, became very angry and clasping the Pandava sent forth a terrible yell. The mighty Bhima then dragged with force the Rakshasa to a further distance lest his yells should awake his brothers sleeping in comfort. Clasping and dragging each other with great force, both Hidimva and Bhima-sena put forth their prowess. Fighting like two full-grown elephants mad with anger, they then began to break down the trees and tear the creepers that grew around. And at those sounds, those tigers among men (the

sleeping Pandavas) woke up with their mother, and saw Hidimvā sitting before them."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-fifth Section in the Hidimva-badha of the Adi Parva.

Section CLVI.

(*Hidimva-badha Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Roused from sleep, those tigers among men with their mother, beholding the extraordinary beauty of Hidimvā, were filled with wonder. And Kunti, gazing at her and filled with wonder at her beauty, addressed her sweetly and gave her every assurance. And she asked, 'O thou of the splendour of a daughter of the celestials, whose art thou and who art thou? O thou of the fairest complexion, for what buisness hast thou come hither and whence hast thou come? If thou art the deity of these woods, or an Apsarā, tell me all regarding thyself and also why thou dost stay here!' Hearing these words, Hidimvā replied, 'This extensive forest that thou seest, of the hue of blue clouds, is the abode of a Rakshasa of name Hidimva as also of mine. O handsome lady, know me as the sister of that chief of the Rakshasas. Reverend dame, I had been sent by that brother of mine to kill thee with all thy children. But arrived here at the command of that cruel brother of mine, I beheld thy mighty son of color like pure gold. Then, O blessed lady, I was brought under the control of thy son by Manmatha (the deity of love) that pervadeth the nature of every being! I then (mentally) chose that mighty son of thine as my husband! I tried my best to convey ye hence, but I could not (because of thy sons opposition). Then the cannibal seeing my delay came hither to kill all these thy children. But he hath been dragged hence with force by that mighty and intelligent son of thine—my husband. Behold now that couple—a man and a Rakshasa—both endued with great strength and prowess, engaged in combat, grinding each other and filling the whole region with their shouts.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing those words of hers, Yudhish-thira suddenly rose up and Arjuna also and Nakula and Sahadeva of great energy. And they beheld Bhima and the Rakshasa already engaged in fight, eager to overcome each other and dragging each other with great force, like two lions endued with great might. The dust raised by their feet in consequence of that encounter looked like the smoke of a forest-conflagration. And covered with the dust their huge bodies resembled two tall cliffs enveloped in mist. Then Arjuna, beholding Bhima rather oppressed in the fight by the Rakshasa, slowly said, with smiles on his lips, 'Fear not, O Bhima of mighty arms! (We had been asleep) and (therefore) knew not that thou wast engaged with a terrible Rakshasa and tired in fight! Here do I stand to help thee. Let *me* slay the Rakshasa, and let Nakula and Sahadeva protect our mother.' Hearing him, Bhima said, 'Look on this encounter, O brother, like a stranger! Fear not for the result! Having come within the reach of my arms, he shall not escape with life.' Then Arjuna said, 'What need, O Bhima, for keeping this Rakshasa alive so long? O thou oppressor of all enemies, we are to go hence, and cannot stay here longer. The east is reddening, the morning twilight is about to set in. Rakshasas become stronger by break of day. Therefore, hasten, O Bhima! Play not (with thy victim), but slay the terrible Rakshasa soon. During the two twilights Rakshasas always put forth their powers of deception. Use all the strength of thy arms.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "At this speech of Arjuna, Bhima, flaming up with anger, summoned the might that (his father) Vayu puts forth at the time of the universal dissolution. And filled with rage, he quickly raised high in the air the Rakshasa's body blue as the clouds of heaven and whirled it an hundred times. Then addressing the cannibal Bhima said, 'O Rakshasa, thy intelligence was given thee in vain, and in vain hast thou grown and thrived on unsanctified meat! Thou deservest, therefore, an unholy death and I shall reduce thee today to nothing! I shall make this forest blessed today, like one without prickly

plants. And, O Rakshasa, thou shalt no longer slay human beings for thy food!' Arjuna, at this juncture said, 'O Bhima, if thou thinkest it a hard task for thee to overcome this Rakshasa in combat, let me render thee help! Else, slay him thyself without loss of time! Or, O Vrikodara, let me alone slay the Rakshasa! Thou art tired, and hast almost finished the affair. Well dost thou deserve rest!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of Arjuna, Bhima was fired with rage and dashing the Rakshasa on the ground with all his might slew him as if he were an animal. The Rakshasa, while dying, sent forth a terrible yell that filled the whole forest, and deep as the sound of a wet drum. Then the mighty Bhima, holding the body with his hands, bent it double and breaking it in the middle greatly gratified his brothers. They, beholding Hidimva slain, became exceedingly glad and lost no time in offering their congratulations to Bhima that chastiser of all foes. Then Arjuna, worshipping the illustrious Bhima of terrible prowess, addressed him again and said, 'Reverend signor, I think there is a town not far off from this forest. Blest be thou, let us go hence soon so that Duryodhana may not trace us.'

"Then all those mighty charioteers,—those tigers among men—saying, 'So be it,' proceeded along with their mother, followed by Hidimvā the Rakshasa woman."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-sixth Section in the Hidimva-badha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLVII.

(Hidimva-badha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Bhima, beholding Hidimvā following them, addressed her, saying, the Rakshas revenge themselves on their enemies by adopting deceptions that are incapble of being penetrated. Therefore, O Hidimvā, go thou the way on which thy brother hath gone!' Then Yudhish-thira, beholding Bhima in rage, said, 'O Bhima, O thou tiger among men, however enraged, do not slay a woman! O Pandava, the observance of virtue is a higher

duty than the protection of life! Hidimva who had come with the object of slaying us thou hast already slain. This woman is the sister of that Rakshasa. What can she do to us even if she were angry?'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Then Hidimvā, reverentially saluting Kunti and her son Yudhish-thira also, said, with joined palms, 'O reverend lady, thou knowest the pangs that women are made to feel at the hands of Ananga (the deity of love)! Blessed dame, those pangs, of which Bhima-sena hath been the cause, are torturing me! I had hitherto borne those insufferable pangs, waiting for the time (when thy son could assuage them). That time is now come, when I expected I would be made happy! Casting off my friends and relatives and the usages of my race, I have, O blessed lady, chosen this son of thine—this tiger among men—as my husband! I tell thee truly, O illustrious lady, that if I am cast off by that hero or by thee either, I will no longer bear this life of mine! Therefore, O thou of the fairest complexion, it behoveth thee to show me mercy, thinking me either as very silly or thy obedient slave! O illustrious dame, unite me with this thy son and my husband! Endued as he is with the form of a celestial, taking him with me, let me go wherever I like. Trust me, O blessed lady, I will again bring him back unto ye all! When ye think of me I will come to ye immediately and convey ye whither-soever ye may command! I will rescue ye from all dangers and carry ye across inaccessible and uneven regions! I will carry ye on my back whenever ye desire to proceed with swiftness. O be graceful unto me and make Bhima accept me! It hath been said that in a season of distress one should protect his life by any means. He that seeketh to discharge that duty should not scruple about the means. He that in a season of distress keepeth his virtue is the foremost of virtuous men. Indeed, distress is the greatest danger to virtue and virtuous men. It is virtue that protecteth life, therefore, is virtue called the giver of life. Hence, the means by which virtue or the observance of a duty is secured can never be censurable.'

"Hearing these words of Hidimvā, Yudhish-thira said, 'It is even so, O Hidimvā, as thou sayest. There is no doubt of it. But, O thou of slender-waist, thou must act even as thou hast said! Bhima will, after he hath washed himself and said his prayers and performed the usual propitiatory rites, pay his attentions to thee till the sun sets. Sport thou with him as thou likest, during the day, O thou endued with the speed of the mind! But thou must bring Bhima-sena hither every day at nightfall.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Then Bhima, expressing his assent to all that Yudhis-thira said, addressed Hidimvā, saying, 'Listen to me, O Rakshasa woman! Truly do I make this engagement with thee that I will stay with thee, O thou of slender waist, until thou obtainest a son!' Then Hidimvā, saying, 'So be it,' took Bhima upon her body and sped through the skies. On mountain peaks of picturesque scenery and regions sacred to the gods, abouning with dappled herds and echoing with the melodies of feathered tribes, herself assuming the handsomest form decked with every ornament and pouring forth at times m ellifluous strains, Hidimvā sported with the Pandava and studied to make him happy. So also in inaccessible regions of forests, and on mountain-breasts overgrown with blossoming trees, on lakes resplendent with lotuses and lilies, islands of rivers and their pebbly banks, on sylvan streams with beautiful banks and mountain currents, in picturesque woods with blossoming trees and creepers, in Himalyan bowers, and various caves, on crystal pools smiling with lotuses, on sea-shores shining with gold and pearls, in beautiful towns and fine gardens, in woods sacred to the gods and on hill-sides, in the regions of the Guhyakas and of ascetics, on the banks of the Manasasarawara abounding with the fruits and flowers of every season, Hidimvā, assuming the handsomest form, sported with Bhima and studied to make him happy. Endued with the speed of the mind, she sported with Bhima in all these regions, till, in time, she conceived and brought forth a mighty son begotten upon her by the Pandava. Of terrible eyes and large mouth and

straight arrowy ears, the child was terrible to behold. Of lips brown as copper and sharp teeth and loud roar, of mighty arms and great strength and excessive prowess, this child became a mighty bowman. Of long nose, broad chest, frightfully swelling calves, celerity of motion and excessive strength, he had nothing human in his countenance though born of man. And he excelled (in strength and prowess) all Pishachas and kindred tribes as well as all Rakshasas. And, O monarch, though an infant he grew up a youth the very hour he was born. The mighty hero soon acquired high proficiency in all weapons. The Rakshasa women bring forth the very day they conceive, and capable of assuming any form at will, they always change their forms (for the purposes at hand). And the bald-headed child—that mighty bowman—soon after his birth, bowing down to his mother touched her feet and touched the feet also of his father. His parents then bestowed upon him a name. His mother having remarked that his head was (bald) like unto a *Ghata* (water-pot), both his parents thereupon called him *Ghatotkacha* (the pot-headed). And Ghatotkacha was exceedingly devoted to the Pandavas. And he became a great favorite with them, indeed, almost one of them.

"Then Hidimvā, knowing that the period of her stay (with her husband) had come to an end, saluted the Pandavas and making a new appointment with them went away whithersoever she liked. And Ghatotkacha also—that foremost of Rakshasas—promising unto his fathers that he would come when wanted for business, saluted them and went away northwards. Indeed, it was the illustrious Indra who created (by lending a portion of himself) the mighty charioteer Ghatotkacha as a fit antagonist for Karna of unrivalled energy, in consequence of the *Shakti* (missile) Indra had given unto Karna (and which was sure to kill the person against whom it would be hurled)."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-sevenh Section in the Hidimva-badha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLVIII.

(Hidimva-badha Parva Continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " Those mighty charioteers—the heroic Pandavas—then went, O king, from forest to forest, killing deer and many animals (for their food). And in course of their wanderings they saw the countries of the Matsyas, the Trigartas, the Panchalas, and then of the Kichakas, and also many beautiful woods and lakes therein. And they all had matted locks on their heads and were attired in barks of trees and the skins of animals. Indeed, with Kunti in their campany, those illustrious heroes were in the garb of ascetics. And those mighty charioteers sometimes proceeded in haste, carrying their mother on their backs; and sometimes they proceeded in disguise, and sometimes again with great celerity. And they used to study the Ric and the other Vedas (treating of the Deity and his attributes), and also all the Vedangas as well as the science of morals and politics. And the Pandavas, conversant with the science of morals, met, in course of their wanderings, their grand-father (Vyasa). And saluting the illustrious Krishna-Dwaipayana, those oppressors of all enemies, with their mother, stood before him with joined hands.

" Vyasa then said, 'Ye princes, I knew in my mind before about this affliction of ye in that ye have been exiled so unjustly by the sons of Dhrita-rashtra. Knowing this, I have come unto ye, desirous of doing ye some great good. Do not grieve for what hath befallen ye. Know that all this is for your happiness. Uudoubtedly, both the sons of Dhrita-rashtra and ye all are equal in my sight. But men are always partial to those who are in misfortune or of tender years. It is therefore that my affection for ye is greater now. And in consequence of that affection I desire to do ye good. Listen to me! Not far off before ye is a delightful town where no danger can overtake ye. Live ye there in disguise waiting for my return!' "

Vaisampayana continued, " And Vyasa the son of Satyavati, thus comforting the Pandavas, led them into the town

of Ekachakra. And the master also comforted Kunti, saying, 'Live, O daughter! This son of thine, Yudhish-thira, ever devoted to truth, this illustrious bull among men, having by his justice conquered the whole world, shall rule over all the other monarchs of the earth! There is little doubt that having by means of Bhima's and Arjuna's prowess conquered the whole earth with her belt of seas, he will enjoy the sovereignty thereof. Thy sons as well as these of Madri—mighty charioteers all—will cheerfully sport as pleaseth them in their dominions. And these tigers among men will also perform various sacrifices such as the Raja-suya and the Horse-sacrifice in which the presents unto the Brahmanas are very large. And these thy sons will rule their ancestral kingdom, maintaining their friends and relatives in luxury and affluence and happiness.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "With these words Vyasa introduced them into the dwelling of a Brahmana. And the island-born Rishi addressing the eldest of the Pandavas said, 'Wait ye here for me! I will come back to ye! By adapting yourself to the country and the occasion ye will succeed in becoming very happy!'

"Then, O king, the Pandavas with joined hands said unto the Rishi, 'So be it.' And the illustrious master—the Rishi Vyasa—then went away to the region whence he came."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-eighth Section in the Hidimva-badha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLIX.

(*Vaka-badhá Parva.*)

Janamejaya asked, "O thou first of Brahmanas, what did the Pandavas—those mighty charioteers—the sons of Kunti—do after arriving at Ekachakra?"

Vaisampayana said, "Those mighty charioteers—the sons of Kunti—arriving at Ekachakra lived for a short time in the abode of a Brahmana. Leading an eleemosynary life they beheld (in course of their wanderings) various delightful forests and earthly regions, and many rivers and lakes. And

they became great favorites of the inhabitants of that town in consequence of their own accomplishments. At nightfall they placed before Kunti all they acquired in their mendicant tours. And Kunti used to divide the whole amongst them, each taking what was alloted to him. And those heroic chastisers of all foes along with their mother together took one moiety of the whole, while the mighty Bhima alone took the other moiety. In this way, O thou bull of the Bharata race, the illustrious Pandavas lived there for sometime.

One day while those bulls of the Bharata race were out on their tour of mendicancy, it so happened that Bhima was (at home) with (his mother) Prithā. That day, O Bharata, Kunti heard a loud and heart-rending wail of sorrow coming from within the apartments of the Brahmana. And hearing the inmates of the Brahmana's house wailing and indulging in piteous lamentations, Kunti, O king, from compassion and the goodness of her heart, could not bear it with indifference. Afflicted with sorrow, the amiable Prithā addressing Bhima said these words full of compassion:—Our woes assuaged, we are, O son, living happily in the house of this Brahmana respected by him and unknown to Dhrita-rashtra's sons! O son, I always think of the good I should do to this Brahmana, like what they do that live happily in others' abodes! O child, he is a true man upon whom favors are never lost. He payeth back to others more than what he receiveth at their hands. There is no doubt some affliction hath overtaken this Brahmana. If we could be of help to him we would then be requiting his services.'

" Hearing these words of his mother, Bhima said, 'Ascertain, O mother, the nature of the Brahmana's distress and whence also hath it arisen. Learning all about it, relieve it I will however difficult may the task prove.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " While mother and son were thus talking with each other, they heard again, O king, another wail of sorrow proceeding from the Brahmana and his wife. Then Kunti quickly entered the inner apartments of that illustrious Brahmana, like unto a cow running towards

her tethered calf. And she beheld the Brahmana, with his wife, son, and daughter, sitting with a woeful face. And Kunti heard the Brahmana saying, 'O fie on this earthly life that is hollow as the reed and so fruitless after all, that is based on sorrow and hath no freedom, and that hath misery for its lot! Life is sorrow and disease, life is truly a record of misery! The soul is one; but it hath to pursue virtue, wealth, and pleasure. And because these are pursued at one and the same time, there frequently occureth a disagreement that is the source of much misery. Some say that salvation is the highest object of our wishes. But I believe it can never be attained. The acquisition of wealth is hell: the pursuit of wealth is attended with misery; there is more misery after one hath acquired it. For one loveth his possessions, and if any mishap befalleth them the possessor becometh afflicted with woe. I do not see by what means I can escape from this danger, nor how I can fly hence with my wife to some region free from danger. Remember, O wife, that I endeavoured to migrate to some other place where we could be happy. But thou didst not then listen to me! Though frequently solicited by me, Thou, O simple woman, told me,—I have been born here, and here have I grown old. This is my ancestral homestead!—Thy venerable father, O wife, and thy mother also, had, a long time ago, ascended to heaven. Thy relations also had all been dead. O why then didst thou yet like to live here? Led by affection for thy relatives thou didst not then hear what I said. But the time is now come when thou art to witness the death of a relative. O how sad is that spectacle for me! Or, perhaps, the time is come for my own death, for I shall never be able to abandon cruelly one of my own as long as I myself am alive! Thou art my helpmate in all good deeds, self-denying, and always affectionate to me as a mother. The gods have given thee to me as a true friend and thou art ever my chief stay. Thou hast, by my parents, been made the participator in my domestic concerns. Of pure lineage and good disposition, the mother of children, devoted to me, and so innocent, having chosen and wed

thee with due rites, I cannot abandon thee,—my wife, constant in her vows,—to save my own life! How shall I myself be able to sacrifice my son—a child of tender years and yet without the hirsute appendages (of manhood)? How shall I sacrifice my daughter whom I have begotten myself,—who hath been placed, as a pledge, in my hands by the illustrious Creator himself for bestowal on a husband,—and through whom I hope to enjoy, along with my ancestors, the regions attainable by those only that have daughter's sons? Some people think that the father's affection for a son is greater. Others that his affection for a daughter is greater; mine, however, is equal. How can I be prepared to abandon the innocent daughter upon whom rest the regions of bliss (obtainable by me in after life) and my own lineage and perpetual happiness? If, again, I sacrifice myself and go to the other world, I would scarcely know any peace, for, indeed, it is evident that left by me these would not be able to support life. The sacrifice of any of these would be cruel and censurable. On the other hand, if I sacrifice myself, these, without me, will certainly perish! The distress into which I have fallen is great; nor do I know the means of escape. Alas, what course shall I take today with my near ones! It is well that I should die with all these, for I can no longer live!'"

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-ninth Section in the Vaka-badha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLX.

(Vaka-badha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Hearing these words of the Brahmana, his wife said, 'Thou shouldst not, O Brahmana, grieve like an ordinary man. Nor is this the time for mourning. Thou hast learning. Thou knowest that all men are sure to die! None should grieve for that which is inevitable! Wife, son, and daughter, these all are sought for one's own self. Possessed as thou art of a good understanding, kill thou thy sorrows. I will myself go there.

This, indeed, is the highest and the eternal duty of women, *viz*, that sacrificing their lives they should seek the good of their husbands. Such an act done by me will make thee happy, and bring me fame in this world and eternal bliss in the world hereafter! This, indeed, is the highest virtue that I tell thee. And thou mayst, by this, acquire both virtue and happiness. The object for which one desireth a wife hath already been achieved by thee through me. I have borne thee a daughter and a son and thus been freed from the debt I owed thee. Thou art well able to support and cherish the children. I, however, can never support and cherish them like you. Thou art my life, wealth, and lord! Bereft of thee how shall these children of tender years, how also shall I myself exist? Widowed and masterless, with two little children depending on me, how shall I, without thee, keep alive the pair, myself leading an honest life? If this daughter of thine is solicited (in marriage) by persons dishonorable and vain and unworthy of contracting an alliance with thee, how shall I be able to protect the girl? Indeed, as brids seek with avidity for meat that hath been thrown away on the ground, so do men solicit a woman that hath lost her husband. And, O thou best of Brahmanas, solicited by wicked men I may waver and may not be able to continue in the path that is desired by all honest men. How shall I be able to place this sole daughter of thy house—this innocent girl—in the way along which her ancestors have always walked? How shall I then be able to impart unto this child every desirable accomplishment to make him virtuous as thyself, in that season of every want when I am masterless? Overcoming myself who shall be masterless, unworthy persons will demand (the hand of) this daughter of thine, like Sudras desiring to hear the Vedas. And if I bestow not upon them this girl possessing thy blood and qualities, they may even take her away by force like crows taking away the sacrificial butter. And beholding thy son become so unlike to thee, and thy daughter placed under the control of some unworthy person, I shall be despised in the world by even persons that are dishonorable, and scarcely knowing myself I will certainly

die! And these children also, bereft of me and thee their father, will, I doubt not, perish like fish when the water drieth. There is no doubt that bereft of thee, three will perish. Therefore it behoveth thee to sacrifice me! O Brahmana, persons conversant with morals have said that for women that have borne children, to predecease their lords is an act of the highest merit. Ready am I to abandon this son and this daughter, these my relations, and life itself for thee! For woman to be ever employed in doing agreeable offices to her lord is a higher duty than sacrifices, asceticism, vows, and charities of every description. The act, therefore, which I intend to perform is consonant with the highest virtue and is for thy good and that of thy race. The wise have declared that children and relatives and wife and all things held dear are cherished for the purpose of liberating one's self from danger and distress. One must guard his wealth for freeing one's self from danger, and it is by his wealth that he should cherish and protect his wife. But he must protect his own self both by means of his wife and his wealth. The learned have enunciated the truth that one's wife, son, wealth, and house, are acquired with the intention of providing for accidents, foreseen or unforeseen. The wise have also said that all one's relations weighed against one's own self would not be equal unto one's self. Therefore, reverend sir, protect thy own self by abandoning me. O give me leave to sacrifice myself. Cherish thou my children. Those that are conversant with morals have, in their treatises, said, that women should never be slaughtered and that Rakshasas are not ignorant of the rules of morality. Therefore, while it is certain that the Rakshasa will kill a man, it is doubtful whether he will kill a woman. It behoveth thee, therefore, conversant as thou art with the rules of morality, to place me before the Rakshasa. I have enjoyed much happiness, have obtained much that is agreeable to me, and have also acquired great religious merit. I have also obtained from thee children that are so dear to me. Therefore it grieveth me not to die. I have borne thee children and have also grown old. I am ever desirous of

doing good to thee. Remembering all this I have come to this resolution. O reverend sir, abandoning me thou mayst obtain another wife. By her thou mayst again acquire religious merit. There is no sin in this. Polygamy in men is an act of merit. In woman it is very sinful to betake to a second husband after the first. Considering all this and remembering too that sacrifice of thy own self is censurable, O liberate today without loss of time thy own self, thy race, and these thy children, (by abandoning me)!' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus addressed by her, O Bharata, the Brahmana embraced her and they both began to weep in silence, afflicted with grief."

Thus ends the hundred and sixtieth Section in the Vakabadha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXI.

(Vaka-badha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Hearing these words of her afflicted parents, the daughter was filled with grief, and she addressed them saying, 'Why are ye so afflicted and why do ye so weep as if ye have none to look after ye? O, listen to me and then do what may be proper! There is little doubt that ye are bound in duty to abandon me at one time. Sure to be abandoned once, O abandon me now and save everything at the expense of myself alone! Men desire to have children thinking that children would save them (in this as well as the region hereafter). O cross ye the stream of your difficulties by means of my poor self as if I were a raft! A child rescueth his parents in this and the other region; therefore is the child called by the learned *Puttra* (*rescuer*). The ancestors desire daughter's sons from me (as a special means of salvation). But (without waiting for my children) I myself will rescue them by protecting the life of my father! This my brother is of tender years. There is little doubt that he will perish if thou diest now. If thou my father diest and my brother too followeth thee, the funeral cake of the *Pitris* will be suspended and they will be

greatly wronged. Left behind by my father and brother, and by my mother also (for she will not survive her husband and son), I shall, plunged deeper and deeper in woe, ultimately perish in great distress. There can be little doubt that if thou escape from this danger as also my mother and infant brother, both thy race and the (ancestral) cake will be perpetuated. The son is one's own self; the wife is one's friend; the daughter, however, is the source of trouble. Do thou save thyself, therefore, by sacrificing that source of trouble, and do thou thereby set me in the path of virtue. A girl as I am, O father, destitute of thee I shall be helpless and plunged in woe, and shall have to go everywhere. It is therefore that I am resolved to rescue my father's race and to share the merit of that act by accomplishing this difficult task. If thou, O best of Brahmanas, goest thither (unto the Rakshasha) leaving me here, then I shall be very much pained. Therefore, O father, be kind to me! O thou best of men, for our sake, for that of virtue, and also of thy race, save thyself, abandoning me whom at one time thou shalt be constrained to abandon! There need be no delay, O father, in doing that which is inevitable. What can be more painful than that when thou hast ascended to heaven we shall have to go about begging our food, like dogs, from strangers? But if thou art rescued with thy relations, from these difficulties, I shall then live happily in the region of the celestials! It hath been heard by us that if after bestowing thy daughter in this way thou offerest oblations to the gods and the celestials, they will certainly be propitious to thee!' "

Vaisampayana continued, "The Brahmana and his wife, hearing these various lamentations of their daughter, became sadder than before and the three began to weep together. Their son then of tender years, beholding them and their daughter thus weeping together, lisped these words in sweet tones, his eyes expanding with delight. 'Weep not, O father, nor thou, O mother, nor thou, O sister!' And smilingly the child approached each of them, and at last taking up a blade of grass said in glee, 'With this I will slay that Rak-

shasa that eateth human beings!' And although they all had been plunged in woe, yet hearing what the child lisped so sweetly, joy appeared on their faces. Then Kunti, thinking that to be the proper opportunity, approached the group and said these words. Indeed, her words revived them as nectar reviveth a person that is dead."

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-first Section in the Vaka-badha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXII.

(Vaka-badha Parva continued.)

"And Kunti said, 'I desire to learn from ye what is the cause of this grief for I will remove it if it is capable of being removed.'

"The Brahmana replied, 'O thou of ascetic wealth, thy speech is, indeed, worthy of thee! But this grief is incapable of being removed by any human being. There liveth a Rakshasa of name Vaka not far off from this town. That cannibal is the lord of this country and town. Thriving on human flesh, that wretched Rakshasa endued with great strength ruleth this country. He is the chief of the Asuras. This town and the country in which it is situate are protected by the might of that Rakshasa. We have no fear from the machinations of any enemy, or, indeed, from any living soul. The fee, however, fixed for that Rakshasa is his food which consists of a cart-load of rice, two buffaloes, and a human being who conveyeth them unto him. One after another, the householders have to send him this food. Difficult of being kept, the turn, however, cometh to a particular family at intervals of many long years. If there are any that seek to avoid it, the Rakshasa slayeth them with their children and wives and devoureth them all. There is, in this country a city called Vetrakiya where liveth the king of these territories. He is ignorant of the science of government. Possessed of little intelligence he adopts not with care any measure by which these territories may be rendered safe for all time to come. But we certainly deserve it all inasmuch as we

live within the dominions of that wretched and weak monarch in perpetual anxiety. Brahmanas can never be made to dwell permanently within the dominions of any one, for they are dependent on nobody. They live rather like birds ranging all countries in perfect freedom. It hath been said that one must secure a (good) king, then a wife, and then wealth. It is by the acquisition of these three that one can rescue his relatives and sons. But as regards the acquisition of these three the course of my actions hath been contrary. Hence, plunged in a sea of danger, I am suffering sorely. That turn, destructive of one's family, hath now come for me. I shall have to give unto the Rakshasa as his fee the food of the description I have already said and one human being besides. I have no wealth to buy a man. I cannot by any means consent to part with any of my family. Nor do I see any way of escape from (the clutches of) that Rakshasa. I am now sunk in an ocean of grief from which there is no escape. I shall go to that Rakshasa today attended by all my family in order that that wretch might dovour us all at once.' "

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-second Section in the Vaka-badha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXIII.

(Vaka-badha Parva continued.)

" Kunti said, 'Grieve not at all, O Brahmana, on account of this danger ! I see a way by which to rescue thee from that Rakshasa. Thou hast only one son, who, besides, is of very tender years. Thou hast also one only daughter, young and helpless. I do not like that any of these, or thy wife, or even thyself, should go unto the Rakshasa ! I have five sons, O Brahmana! Let one of them go carrying in thy behalf the tribute of that Rakshasa !'

" Hearing this the Brahmana replied, 'For saving my own life I shall never suffer this to be done! I shall never, sacrifice for saving myself, the life of a Brahmana or of a guest ! Indeed, even those that are of low origin and sinful practices refuse to do (what thou askest me to do) ! It is

said that one should sacrifice himself and his offspring for the benefit of a Brahmana. I regard this advice as excellent and I like to follow it too. When I have to choose between the death of a Brahmana and that of my own, I would prefer the latter. The killing of a Brahmana is the highest sin. There is no expiation for it. I think a reluctant sacrifice of one's own self is better than sacrificing a Brahmana against one's will. O blessed lady, in sacrificing myself I do not become guilty of self-destruction. No sin can attach to me when another will take my life. But if I deliberately consent to the death of a Brahmana, it would be a cruel and sinful act from the consequences of which there is no escape. The learned have said that the abandonment of one who hath come to thy house or sought thy protection, as also the killing of one who seeketh death at thy hands, is both cruel and sinful. The illustrious among those conversant with the practices allowable in seasons of distress have before now said that one should never perform an act that is cruel and censurable. It is well for me that I should today perish myself with my wife. I would never sanction the death of a Brahmana.'

"Kunti said, 'I too am firmly of opinion, O Brahmana, that Brahmanas should ever be protected. As regards myself, no son of mine would be less dear to me even if I had an hundred sons instead of the five I have. But this Rakshasa will not be able to kill my son. For that son of mine is endued with great prowess and energy and skilled in *mantras*. He will faithfully deliver to the Rakshasa his food, but will, I know to a certainty, rescue himself. I have seen before many mighty Rakshasas of huge bodies engaged in combat with my heroic son and killed too by him. But, O Brahmana, do not disclose this fact to anybody, for if it is known, persons desirous of obtaining this power, will, from curiosity, always trouble my sons. The wise have said that if my son imparteth any knowledge, without the assent of his preceptor, unto any person, my son himself will no longer be able to profit by that knowledge.'

"Thus addressed by Prithā, the Brahmana with his wife became exceedingly glad and assented to Kunti's speech

which was unto them as nectar. Then Kunti accompanied by the Brahmana went unto the son of Vayu (Bhima) and asked him to accomplish (that difficult task). Bhima replied unto them, saying, 'So be it."

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-third Section in the Vaka-badha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXIV.

(Vaka-badhà Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " After Bhima had pledged himself to accomplish the task, saying 'I will do it,' the Pandavas, O Bharata, returned home with the alms they had obtained during the day. Then Yudhish-thira the son of Pandu, from Bhima's countenance alone, suspected the nature of the task he had undertaken to accomplish. Sitting by the side of his mother, Yudhish-thira asked her in private, 'What is this task, O mother, that Bhima of terrible prowess seeketh to accomplish ? Doth he do so at thy command or at his own will ?' Kunti replied, 'Bhima the oppressor of all foes will, at my command, do this great deed for the good of the Brahmana and the liberation of this town.'

" Yudhish-thira said, 'What rash act hast thou done, O mother ! It is difficult of being performed and almost amounteth to suicide ! The learned never applaud one's abandonment of one's own child. Why dost thou, O mother, wish to sacrifice thy own child for the sake of another's ? Thou hast, O mother, by this abandonment of thy child, acted not only against the course of human practices but also against the teachings of the Vedas ! That Bhima relying on whose arms we sleep happily in the night and hope to recover the kingdom of which we have been deprived by the covetuous son of Dhritarashtra, that hero of immeasurable energy remembering whose prowess Duryodhana and Sakuni do not sleep a wink during the whole night and by whose prowess we were rescued from the palace of lac and various other dangers, that Bhima who caused the death of Purochana, and relying on whose might we regard ourselves as having already slain the sons of

Dhrita-rashtra and acquired this earth with all her wealth, upon what considerations, O mother, hast thou resolved upon his abandonment? Hast thou been deprived of thy reason? Hath thy understanding been clouded by the calamities thou hast undergone?'

"Hearing these words of her son, Kunti said, 'O Yudhishthira, thou needst not be at all anxious on account of Vrikodara. Nor have I come to this resolve owing to any weakness of understanding. Respected by him and our sorrows assuaged, we have, O son, been living in the house of this Brahmana, unknown to the sons of Dhrita-rashtra! For requiting, O son, that Brahmana I have resolved to do this! He, indeed, is a man upon whom good offices are never lost. The measure of his requital also becometh greater than the measure of the services he receiveth. Beholding the prowess of Bhima on the occasion of (our escape from) the house of lac, and from the destruction also of Hidimva, my confidence in Vrikodara is great. The might of Bhima's arm is equal unto that of ten thousand elephants. It was, therefore, that he succeeded in carrying ye all, each heavy as an elephant, from Varanavata. There is no one (on earth) equal unto Bhima in might. He may even overcome that foremost of warriors—the holder of the thunder-bolt himself. Soon after his birth he fell from my lap on the breast of the mountain. By the weight of his body the mass of stone on which he fell broke into pieces. From this also, O son of Pandu, I have come to know Bhima's might. For this reason have I resolved to set him against the Brahmana's foe. I have not in this acted from foolishness or ignorance or motives of gain. I have deliberately resolved to do this deed of virtue. By this act, O Yudhish-thira, two objects will be accomplished; one is a requital of the services rendered by the Brahmana and the other is the acquisition of high religious merit. It is my conviction that the Kshatriya who rendereth help unto a Brahmana in anything acquireth regions of bliss hereafter. So also a Kshatriya who saveth the life of a Kshatriya achieveth great fame in this as well as the other world. A Kshatriya rendering help unto a Vaisya also on this earth, certainly

becometh popular in the whole world. One of the kingly tribe should protect even the Sudra who cometh to him for protection. If he doth so, in his next life he receiveth his brith in a royal line commanding prosperity and the respect of other kings. O scion of the Puru race, the illustrious Vyasa of wisdom acquired by hard ascetic toil had told me so in days gone by. It is, therefore, that I have resolved upon accomplishing this!' "

Thus ends the hundred and sixy-fourth Section in the Vaka-badha of the Adi Parva.

Section CLXV.

(*Vaka-badha Parva continued.*)

" Hearing these words of his mother, Yudhish-t hira said, 'That which thou, O mother, hast deliberately done, moved by compassion for the afflicted Brahmana, is, indeed, excellent! Bhima will certainly come back with life, after having slain the cannibal, inasmuch as thou art, O mother, always compassionate unto Brahmanas! But tell thou the Brahmana, O mother, that he doth not anything whereby the dwellers of this town may know all about it, and O make him promise to obey thy request!' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Then when the night passed away, Bhima-sena the son of Pandu taking with him the Rakshasa's food set out for the place where the cannibal lived. And the mighty son of Pandu approaching the forest where the Rakshasa dwelt, began to eat himself the food he carried, calling loudly the Rakshasa by his name. And the Rakshasa, inflamed with anger at Bhima's words, came out and approached the place where Bhima was. Of huge body and great strength, red eyes, red beard, and read hair, he was terrible to behold. And he came pressing deep the earth with his tread. The opening of his mouth was from ear to ear, and his ears themselves were straight as arrows. Of grim visage, his forehead was furrowed into three lines. Beholding Bhima eating his food, the Rakshasa advanced, biting his nether lip and expanding his eyes in wrath. And addressing Bhima he said, 'Who is this fool, who desiring to go to the abode of

Yama, eateth in my very sight the food intended for me?' Hearing these words Bhima, however, O Bharata, smiled in derision, and disregarding the Rakshasa continued eating with averted face. Beholding this, the cannibal uttered a frightful yell and with both arms upraised ran at Bhima desiring to kill him then and there. Even then disregarding the Rakshasa and casting only a single glance at him, Vrikodara—that slayer of hostile heroes—continued to eat the Rakshasa's food. Filled with wrath at this, the Rakshasa struck, from behind, with both his arms a heavy blow on the back of Vrikodara the son of Kunti. But Bhima, though struck heavily by the mighty Rakshasa with both his hands, did not even look up at the Rakshasa but continued to eat as before. Then the mighty Rakshasa inflamed with wrath tore up a tree and ran at Bhima for striking him again. Meanwhile the mighty Bhima—that bull among men—had leisurely eaten up the whole of that food and washing himself stood cheerfully for fight. Then, O Bharata, possessed of great energy, Bhima, smiling in derision, caught by his left hand the tree hurled at him by the Rakshasa in anger. Then that mighty Rakshasa, tearing up many more trees hurled them at Bhima, and the Pandava also hurled as many at the Rakshasa. Then, O king, the combat with trees, between that human being and the Rakshasa, became so terrible that the region around soon became destitute of trees. Then the Rakshasa saying that he was none else than Vaka sprang upon the Pandava and seized the mighty Bhima with his arms. That mighty hero also, clasping with his own strong arms the strong-armed Rakshasa, and exerting himself actively, began to drag him violently. Dragged by Bhima and dragging Bhima also, the cannibal was overcome with great fatigue. The earth itself began to tremble in consequence of the strength they both exerted, and large trees even that stood there broke into pieces. Then Bhima, beholding the cannibal overcome with fatigue, pressed him down on the earth with his knees and began to strike him with great force. Then placing one knee on the middle of the Rakshasa's back, Bhima seized his neck with his right hand and the cloth on his waist with his left, and bent

him double with great force. The cannibal then roared frightfully. And, O monarch, the Rakshasa also began to vomit blood while he was being broken on Bhima's knee."

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-fifth Section in the Vaka-badha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXVI.

(Vaka-badha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Then Vaka, huge as a mountain, thus broken (on Bhima's knee), died uttering frightful yells. Terrified by those sounds, the relatives of that Rakshasa came out, O king, with their attendants. Then Bhima—that foremost of smiters—seeing them so terrified and deprived of reason—comforted them, and made them promise (to give up cannibalism) saying, 'Do not ye ever again kill human beings. If ye kill men, ye will have to die even as Vaka!' Those Rakshasas hearing this speech of Bhima said, 'So be it,' and gave, O king, the desired promise. From that day, O Bharata, the Rakshasas (of that region) were seen by the inhabitants of that town to be very peaceful towards mankind. Then Bhima, dragging the lifeless cannibal placed him at one of the gates of the town and went away unobserved by any one. The kinsmen of Vaka, beholding him slain by the might of Bhima, became frightened and fled in different directions.

"Meanwhile Bhima, having slain the Rakshasa, returned to the Brahmana's abode and recited to Yudhish-thira all that had happened in detail. The next morning the inhabitants of the town in coming out saw the Rakshasa lying dead on the ground, his body covered with blood. And beholding that terrible cannibal, huge as a mountain cliff, thus mangled and lying on the ground, the hairs of the spectators stood erect. Returning to Ekachakra they soon gave the intelligence. Then, O king, the citizens by thousands, accompanied by their wives, the aged, and the young, began to come to the spot for beholding Vaka. And they were all amazed at seeing that superhuman feat. Instantly, O monarch, they

began to pray to their gods. Then they began to calculate whose turn it had been the day before to carry food to the Rakshasa. And ascertaining this they all came to that Brahmana and asked him (to satisfy their curiosity). Thus asked by them repeatedly, that bull amongst Brahmanas, desirous of concealing the Pandavas, said these words unto all the citizens:—'A certain high-souled Brahmana skilled in *mantras* beheld me weeping with my relatives after I had been ordered to supply the food of the Rakshasa. Asking me the cause and ascertaining the distress of the town, that first of Brahmanas gave me every assurance and with smiles said, —I shall carry the food for that wretched Rakshasa today. Do not fear for me.—Saying this he conveyed the food towards the forest of Vaka. This deed, so beneficial unto us all, hath very certainly been done by him.'

"Then those Brahmanas and Kshatriyas (of the city) hearing this wondered much. And the Vaisyas and Sudras also became exceedingly glad. And they all established a festival in which the worship of Brahmanas was the principal ceremony (in remembrance of the Brahmana who had relieved them from their fears of Vaka)."

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-sixth Section in the Vaka-badha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXVII.

(*Chaitra-ratha Parva.*)

"After this the citizens returned to their respective homes. And the Pandavas continued to dwell at Ekchakra as before."

Janamejaya said, "O Brahmana, what did those tigers among men—the Pandavas—do after they had slain the Rakshasa Vaka?"

Vaisampayana said, "The Pandavas, O king, after slaying the Rakshasa Vaka, continued to dwell in the abode of that Brahmana, employed in the study of the Vedas. Within a few days there came a Brahmana of rigid vows into the abode of their host for taking up his quarters there. Their host—that bull amongst Brahmanas—ever hospitable unto all

guests, worshipping the newly arrived Brahmana with due ceremonies, gave him quarters in his own abode. Then those bulls among men—the Pandavas—with their mother Kunti solicited the new lodger to narrate to them his interesting experiences. And the Brahmana spoke to them of various countries and shrines and (holy) rivers, of kings and many wonderful provinces and cities. And after his narrations were over, that Brahmana, O Janamejaya, also spoke of the wonderful *Swayamvara* of Jajna-seni (the daughter of the king) of the Panchalas, and of the births of Dhrishta-dyumna and Shikhandi, and of the birth, without the intervention of a woman, of Krishnā (Jajna-seni or Draupadi) in the great sacrifice of Drupada.

"Then those bulls among men—the Pandavas—hearing of these extra-ordinary facts regarding that illustrious monarch (Drupada), and desiring to know the details thereof, asked the Brahmana, after his narration was concluded, to satisfy their curiosity. And the Pandavas said, 'How, O Brahmana, did the birth of Dhrishta-dyumna, the son of Drupada, take place from the (sacrificial) fire? How also did the extraordinary birth of Krishnā take place from the centre of the sacrificial platform? How also did Drupada's son learn all weapons from the great bowman Drona? And, O Brahmana, how and for whom and what reason was the friendship between Drona and Drupada broken?' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus questioned, O monarch, by those bulls among men, the Brahmana narrated all particulars about the birth of Draupadi."

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-seventh Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXVIII.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

"The Brahmana said, 'At that region where the Ganges enters the plains there lived a great Rishi devoted to the austerest of penances. Of rigid vows and great wisdom, his name was Bharadwaja. One day coming to the Ganges for

performing his ablutions, the Rishi saw the Apsarā Ghritāchi, who had come before, standing on the shore after her ablutions were over. And it so happened that a wind arose and disrobed the Apsarā standing there. And the Rishi beholding her thus disrobed felt the influence of desire. Practising the vow of chastity from his very youth, as soon as he felt the influence of desire, the Rishi's vital fluid came out. And as it came out, he held it in a pot (*Drona*). And from that fluid thus preserved in a pot was born a son who came to be called *Drona* (the pot-born). And Drona studied all the Vedas and their several branches. And Bharadwaja had a friend named Prishata who was the king of the Panchalas. And about the time that Drona was born, Prishata also obtained a son named Drupada. And that bull amongst Kshatriyas—Prishata's son—going every day to that asylum of Bharadwaja played and studied with Drona. And after Prishata's death, Drupada succeeded him on the throne. Drona about this time heard that (the great Brahmana hero) Rama (on the eve of his retiring into the woods) was resolved to give away all his wealth. Hearing this, the son of Bharadwaja repaired unto Rama who was about to retire into the woods, and addressing him said,—O thou best of Brahmanas, know me to be Drona who hath came to thee for obtaining thy wealth!—Rama replied, saying,—I have given away everything. All that I now have is this body of mine (and my weapons)! O Brahmana, thou mayst ask of me one of these two, either my body or my weapons!—Then Drona, said,—It behoveth thee, sir, to give me all thy weapons together with (the mysteries of) their use and withdrawal.—'

"The Brahmana continued, 'Then Rama the scion of Bhrigu's race, saying,—*So be it*,—gave all his weapons unto Drona. And Drona obtaining them regarded himself as crowned with success. And Drona, obtaining from Rama that most exalted of all weapons called *Brahma-weapon*, became exceedingly glad and acquired a decided superiority over all men. Then the son of Bharadwaja, endued with great prowess, went to king Drupada, and approaching the monarch, that tiger among men said,—Know me for thy friend!—Hearing this,

Drupada said,—One of low birth can never be the friend of one whose lineage is pure. Nor can one who is not a charioteer own a charioteer for his friend. So also one who is not a king cannot have a king for his friend. Why dost thou therefore desire (to revive our) former friendship ?—'

" The Brahmana continued, 'Drona, gifted with great intelligence, was extremely mortified at this, and settling in his mind some means of humiliating the king of the Panchalas, the Brahmana went to the capital of the Kurus, called after the name of the elephant. Then Bhisma taking with him his grandsons presented them unto the wise son of Bharadwaja as his pupils for instruction, along with various kinds of wealth. Then Drona, desirous of humiliating king Drupada called together his disciples and addressing them said,—Ye sinless ones, it behoveth ye, after ye have been accomplished in arms, to give me as preceptorial fee something that I cherish in my heart!—Then Arjuna and the others said unto their preceptor,—So be it.—After a time when the Pandavas became accomplished in arms and sure of aim, Drona demanding of them his fee again told them these words:—*Drupada the son of Prishata is the king of Chchatravati. Taking away from him his kingdom, give it unto me!* Then the Pandavas, defeating Drupada in battle and taking him prisoner along with his ministers, offered him unto Drona. And Drona beholding the vanquished monarch said,—O king, I again solicit thy friendship! And because none who is not a king deserveth to be the friend of a king, therefore, O Jajna-sena, I have resolved to divide thy kingdom amongst ourselves. While thou art the king of the country to the south of the Bhagirathee (Ganges) I rule the country to the north.—'

" The Brahmana continued, 'The king of the Panchalas, thus addressed by the wise son of Bharadwaja, told that best of Brahmanas and foremost of all persons conversant with weapons, these words:—O thou high-souled son of Bharadwaja! Blest be thou, let it be so! Let there be eternal friendship between us as thou desirest!—Thus addressing each other and establishing a permanent bond between themselves, Drona and the king of the Panchalas both of them chastisers of

all foes—went away to the places they came from. But the thought of that humiliation did not leave the king's mind for a single moment. Sad at heart, the king began to waste away.' "

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-eighth Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXIX.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

" The Brahmana continued, 'King Drupada (after this), distressed at heart, wandered among many asylums of Brahmanas in search of superior Brahmanas well skilled in sacrificial rites. Overwhelmed with grief and eagerly coveting children, the king always said—Oh I have no offspring surpassing all in accomplishments !—And the monarch, from great despondency, always said,—Oh fie on those children that I have and on my relatives !—And ever thinking of revenging himself on Drona, the monarch sighed incessantly. And that best of monarchs, O Bharata, even after much deliberation, saw no way of overcoming, by his Kshatriya might, the prowess and discipline and training and accomplishments of Drona. And wandering along the banks of the Jumna and the Ganges, the monarch once came upon a sacred asylum of Brahmanas. There was in that asylum no Brahmana who was not a *Snataka*, no one who was not of rigid vows, and none who was not virtuous in a high degree. And the king saw there two Brahmana sages named Yaja and Upayaja, both of rigid vows and souls under complete control and belonging to the most superior order. And they were both devoted to the study of the ancient institutes and sprung from the race of Kasyapa. And those best of Brahmanas were well able to help the king in the attainment of his object. The king then, with great assiduity and singleness of purpose began to court this pair of excellent Brahmanas. And ascertaining the superior accomplishments of the younger of the two, the king courted in private Upayaja of rigid vows, by the offer of every desirable acquisition. Employed in paying homage to the feet

of Upayaja, always speaking sweet words and offering every object that is desired by men, Drupada, after worshipping that Brahmana, addressed him (one day), saying,—O Upayaja, O Brahmana, if thou performest those sacrificial rites by (virtue of)which I may obtain a son who may slay Drona, I promise thee ten thousand kine! Or whatever else may be agreeable to thee, O first of Brahmanas, truly am I ready to bestow on thee!—Thus addressed by the king, the Rishi replied, saying,--I cannot (perform any such rites).—But Drupada without accepting this reply as final once more began to serve and pay homage unto that Brahmana. Then, after the expiration of a year, Upayaja that first of Brahmanas, O monarch, addressing Drupada in sweet tones, said,—My elder brother (Yaja) one day in wandering through the deep woods took up a fruit that had fallen upon a spot the purity of which he cared not to enquire. I was following him (at the time) and observed this unworthy act of his. Indeed, he entertains no scruples in accepting things impure. In accepting that (particular) fruit he saw not any impropriety of a sinful nature. Indeed, he who observeth not purity (in one instance) is not very likely to observe it in other instances. When he lived in the hosuse of his preceptor, employed in studying the institutes, he always used to eat the (impure) remains of other people's feasts. He always speaks approvingly of food and entertains no abomination for anything. Arguing from these, I believe that my brother coveteth earthly acquisitions. Therefore, O king, go to him; he will perform spiritual offices for thee!—Hearing these words of Upayaja, king Drupada though entertaining a low opinion of Yaja nevertheless went to his abode. And worshipping Yaja who was (still) worthy of homage, Drupada said unto him,—O master, perform thou spiritual offices for me! I give thee eighty thousand kine! Enmity for Drona burneth my heart! It behoveth thee to cool that heart of mine! Foremost of those conversant with the Vedas, Drona is also skilled in the *Brahma* weapon. For this, Drona hath overcome me in a contest arising from (impaired) friendship. Gifted with great intelligence, the son of Bharadwaja is (now) the chief pre-

ceptor of the Kurus. There is no Kshatriya in this world superior to him. His bow is full six cubits long and looks very grand. And his shafts are capable of slaying every living being. That great bowman—the high-souled son of Bharadwaja—habited as a Brahmana is destroying the Kshatriya might all over the earth. Indeed, he is like a second Jamadagnya intended for the extermination of the Kshatriya race. There is no man on earth who can overcome the terrible force of his weapons. Like a blazing fire fed with clarified butter, Drona possesseth Brahma might, and uniting it with Kshatriya might he consumeth every antagonist in war. But (thy) Brahma force is greater in itself than (Drona's) Brahma force united with Kshtriya might. Therefore, inferior as I am (to Drona) in consequence of my possession of Kshatriya might alone, I solicit the aid of thy Brahma force having obtained thee so superior to Drona in knowledge of Brahma. O Yaja, perform thou that sacrifice by means of which I may obtain a son invincible in war and capable of slaying Drona! Ready am I to give thee ten thousand kine!—Hearing these words of Drupada, Yaja said,—So be it–And Yaja then began to recollect the various ceremonies appertaining to the particular sacrifice. And knowing the affair to be a very grave one, he asked the assistance of Upayaja who coveted nothing. Then Yaja promised to perform the sacrifice for the destruction of Drona. Then that great ascetic Upayaja spoke unto king Drupada of everything required for the grand sacrifice (by aid of fire) from which the king was to obtain offspring. And he said,—O king, a child shall be born unto thee, endued, as thou desirest, with great prowess, great energy, and great strength!—'

" The Brahmana continued, 'Then king Drupada, impelled by the desire of obtaining a son who was to slay Drona, began, for the success of his wish, to make the necessary preparations. (And when everything was complete) Yaya, after having poured libations of clarified butter into the sacrificial fire, commanded Drupada's queen, saying, —Come hither, O queen, O daughter-in-law of Prishata! A son and daughter have arrived for thee!—Hearing this, the queen said,—

O Brahmana, my mouth is yet filled with saffron and other perfumed things. My body also beareth many sweet scents. I am not fit for accepting the (sanctified butter which is to give me) offspring. Wait for me a little, O Yaja! Wait for that happy consummation!—Yaja, however, replied,—O lady, whether thou comest or waitest, why should not the object of this sacrifice be accomplished, when the oblation hath already been prepared by me and sanctified by Upayaja's invocations!—'

"The Brahmana continued, 'Having said this, Yaja poured the sanctified libation into the fire, whereupon arose from those flames a child resembling a celestial. Possessing the effulgence of fire, he was terrible to behold. With a crown on his head and his body encased in excellent armour, sword in hand and bearing a bow and arrows, he frequently sent forth loud roars. And immediately after his birth he ascended an excellent chariot and went about on it for sometime. Then the Panchalas in great joy shouted *excellent, excellent.* The very earth seemed at the time unable to bear the weight of the Panchalas mad with joy. Then, O marvellous to say, the voice of some invisible spirit in the skies said,—*This prince hath been born for the desrtuction of Drona. He will dispell all the fears of the Panchalas and spread their fame. He will also dispell the sorrows of the king.*—And there arose, after this, from the centre of the sacrificial platform, a daughter also, called Panchāli. Blest with great good fortune she was exceedingly handsome. Her eyes were black and large as lotus leaves, her complexion was dark, and her locks were blue and curly. Her nails were beautifully convex and bright as burnished copper, her eye-brows were fair, and her bosom was deep. Indeed, she resembled a veritable daughter of the celestials born among men. Her body emitted a fragrance as that of a blue lotus, perceivable from a distance of full two miles. Her beauty was such that she had no equal on earth. Like a celestial herself, she could be desired [in marriage] by a celestial, a Danava, or a Yaksha. And when this girl of fair hips was born, an incorporeal voice said,—This dark-complexioned girl will be the first of all women, and she will be the

cause of the destruction of many Kshatriyas. and this slender-waisted one will, in time, accomplish the purposes of the gods. And from her many dangers will overtake the Kauravas.—Hearing these words the Panchalas uttered a loud roar as that of the lion. And the earth was unable to bear the weight of that joyous concourse. Then beholding the boy and the girl, the daughter-in-law of Prishata, desiring to have them, approached Yaja and said,—Let not these know any one else except myself as their mother.—Yaja, desiring to do good unto the king said,—So be it.—Then the Brahmanas (present there), their expectations fully gratified, bestowed names upon the new born pair.—Let this son of king Drupada,—they said,—be called *Dhrista-dyumna* because of his excessive audacity and because he hath been born like *Dyumna* with a natural mail and weapons.—And they also said —Because this daughter is so dark in complexion she should be called *Krishnā* (the dark),'—

"The Brahmana continued, thus were born those twins in the great sacrifice of Drupada. And the great Drona bringing the Panchala prince into his own abode taught him all weapons in requital of half the kingdom he had formerly taken from Drupada. The high-souled son of Bharadwaja, regarding destiny to be inevitable, did what would perpetuate his own great deeds.' "

Thus ends the hundred and sixy-ninth Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXX.

(*Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Hearing these words of the Brahmana, the sons of Kunti seemed to be, as it were, pierced with darts. Indeed, all those mighty heroes lost their peace of mind. Then the truthful Kunti, beholding all her sons listless and inattentive, addressed Yudhish-thira and said, 'We have now lived for many nights in the abode of this Brahmana. We have passed our time pleasantly in this town, living on the alms we obtained from many honest and illustri-

ous persons. O thou oppressor of all enemies, we have now seen often and often all the agreeable woods and gardens that are in this part of the country. To see them again would no longer give any pleasure. And, O heroic scion of the Kuru race, alms also are not now obtainable here so easily as before. If thou wishest, it would be well for us now to go to Panchala, We have not seen the country before. It will, no doubt, O hero, prove delightful to us. And, O thou mower of all foes, it hath been heard by us that alms are obtainable in the country of the Panchalas, and that Yajna-sena the king thereof is devoted to Brahma. I am of opinion that it is not well to live long in one place. Therefore, O son, if thou likest, it is well for us to go there.'

" Hearing these words, Yudhish-thira said, 'It is our duty to obey thy command, which, besides, must be for our good. I do not, however, know whether my younger brothers are willing to go or not.' "

Thus ends the hundred and seventieth Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXI.

(Chaitra-rathā Parva Continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, " Then Kunti spoke unto Bhimasena and Arjuna and the twins regarding the journey to Panchala. They all said, 'So be it.' Then, O king, Kunti with her sons saluted the Brahmana (in whose house they had dwelt) and set out for the delightful town of the illustrious Drupada. "

Vaisampayana said, " While the illustrious Pandavas had been living disguised in the abode of the Brahmana, there came Vyasa the son of Satyavati to see them. Then those oppressors of all foes, beholding him coming, rose up and stepped towards to receive him. Saluting him reverentially and worshipping him also, the Pandavas stood in silence with joined hands. Thus worshipped by them the Muni became gratified. He then asked them to be seated and cheerfully addressing them said, 'Ye slayers of all foes, are ye living in

the path of virtue and according to the *Shastras*? Do ye worship the Brahmanas? Ye are not, I hope, deficient in paying homage unto those that deserve your homage?' The illustrious Rishi, after this, spoke many words of virtuous import, and after discoursing upon many topics of great interest, addressing them said, 'An illustrious Rishi, living in a certain hermittage, had a daughter of slender waist, fair hips, fine eyebrows, and possessing every accomplishment. As a consequence of her own acts (of a past life) the fair maid became very unfortunate. And though chaste and beautiful the damsel obtained not a husband. With a sorrowful heart she thereupon began to practise ascetic penances with the object of obtaining a husband. She soon gratified by her severe asceticism the god Sankara (Mahadeva). And the possessor of six attributes becoming propitious unto her said unto that illustrious damsel,—Ask thou the boon thou desirest! Blest be thou! I am Sankara prepared to give thee what thou wilt ask!—Desirous of benefiting herself, the maiden repeatedly said unto the supreme lord,—O give me a husband endued with every accomplishment.—Then Isana (Mahadeva) the foremost of all speakers replied unto her, saying,—O blessed one, thou shalt have five husbands from among the Bharata princes. —Thus told, the maiden said unto the god who had given her that boon,—O lord, I desire to have one only husband, by thy grace!—The god then addressed her again and said these excellent words:—Thou hast, O girl, said full five times,—*Give me (a) husband.* Thou shalt, therefore, in another life have five husbands.—Ye princes of the Bharata line, that damsel of celestial beauty hath been born in the race of Drupada. The faultless Krishnā of Prishata's line hath been appointed to be the wife of ye all! Ye mighty ones, go therefore to the capital of the Panchalas and dwell ye there! There is no doubt that having obtained her as wife ye shall be very happy.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Having said so unto the Pandavas, the illustrious and blessed grandfather then bade them farewell. The great ascetic then left them, going to the place whence he came."

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-first Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXII.

(Chaitra-ratha Parvā continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " After Vyasa had gone away, those bulls among men—the Pandavas—saluting the Brahmana and bidding him farewell, proceeded (towards Panchala) with joyous hearts and with their mother walking before them. Those slayers of all foes, inorder to reach their destination, proceeded in a due northerly direction, walking day and night, till they reached the sacred shrine of *Shoma-srayāyanam* (the shrine of Siva with the crescent mark on his brow). Then those tigers among men—the sons of Pandu—arrived at the banks of the Ganges, Dhananjaya, that mighty charioteer, walking before them, torch in hand for showing the way and protecting them (against wild animals). And it so happened that at that time the proud king of the Gandharvas with his wives was sporting in that solitary region in the delightful waters of the Ganges. And the king of the Gandharvas heard the tread of the Pandavas as they approached the river. And hearing the sounds of their footsteps the mighty Gandharva was inflamed with wrath. And beholding those chastisers of all foes—the Pandavas—approaching towards him with their mother, the Gandharva, drawing his frightful bow to a circle, said, 'It is known that excepting the first forty seconds the grey twilight preceding nightfall hath been appointed for the wanderings of the Yakshas, the Gandharvas, and the Rakshasas, capable of going everywhere at will. The rest of the time hath been appointed for man to do his work. If therefore men, wandering during those moments from greed of gain, come near us, both we and the Rakshasas slay those fools. Therefore persons acquainted with the Vedas never applaud those men—not even kings at the head of their troops—that then approach any piece of water. Stay ye at a distance. Approach me not. Know ye not that I am bathing in the waters of the Bhāgirathee ? Know that I am Angara-parna the Gan-

dharva, ever depending on my own strength! I am proud and haughty and am the friend of Kuvera. This mine forest on the banks of the Ganges, where I sport to gratify all my senses, is called Angarparna after my own name. Here neither gods, nor Kāpālikas, nor Gandharvas, nor Yakshas can come. How dare ye approach me who am the brightest jewel on the diadem of Kuvera.'

"Hearing these words of the Gandharva, Arjuna said, 'Block-head, whether it be day, night, or twilight, who can bar others from the ocean, the sides of the Himalayas, and this river? O thou ranger of the skies, whether the stomach be empty or full, whether it is night or day, there is no special time for any body to come to the Ganges—the foremost of all rivers! As regards ourselves, endued with might, we care not when we disturb thee! Wicked being, those men that are weak in war worship ye! This Gangā issuing out of the golden peaks of the Himavat, falleth into the waters of the ocean being distributed into seven streams. They who drink the waters of these seven streams, *viz*, Gangā, Yamunā, Saraswati, Vithasthā, Sarayu, Gomati, and Gandaki, are cleansed of all their sins. O Gandharva, this sacred Gangā again, flowing through the celestial regions, is called there the Alakanandā. It hath, again, in the region of the *Pitris* become the *Vaitarani*, difficult of being crossed by sinners. Krishna-Dwaipayana himself hath said so. This auspicious and celestial river, capable of leading unto heaven (those that touch its waters), is free from all dangers. Why dost thou then desire to bar us from it? This act of thine is not consonant with eternal virtue! Disregarding thy words, why shall we not touch the sacred waters of the Bhagirathee free from all dangers and from which none can bar us?' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of Arjuna, Angāraparna became inflamed with wrath and drawing his bow to a circle began to shoot his arrows like venomous snakes at the Pandavas. Then Dhananjaya the son of Pandu, wielding a good shield and the torch he held in his hands soon warded off all those arrows. Addressing the Gandharva, Arjuna again said, 'O Gandharva, seek thou not to terrify those that

are skilled in weapons, for weapons hurled at them vanish like froth. I think, O Gandharva, that ye are superior (in prowess) to men. Therefore shall I fight with thee with celestial weapons and not by any crooked ways. This fiery weapon (that I shall hurl at thee), Vrihaspati the reverend preceptor of Indra gave unto Bharadwaja. From Bharadwaja it was obtained by Agni-veshya, and from Agni-veshya by my preceptor. That foremost of Brahmanas—Drona—gave it unto me.' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Saying these words, the Pandava in wrath hurled at the Gandharva, that blazing weapon made of fire. And it burnt the Gandharva's chariot in a trice. Deprived of consciousness by the force of the weapon, the mighty Gandharva was falling, head downwards, from his chariot. Just then Dhananjaya seized him by the hair of his head adorned with garlands of flowers. Thus seizing him the Pandava dragged the unconscious Gandharva towards his brothers. Beholding this, that Gandharva's wife, Kumbhinasi, desirous of saving her husband, ran towards Yudhish-thira and sought his protection. And the Gandharvi said, 'O thou exalted one, extend to me thy protection! O set my husband free! O lord, I am Kumbhinasi by name, the wife of this Gandharva, who seeketh thy protection!' Beholding her (so afflicted) the mighty Yudhish-thira addressed Arjuna and said, 'O thou slayer of all foes, O child, who would slay a foe who hath been vanquished in fight, who hath been deprived of fame, who is protected by a woman, and who hath no prowess?' Arjuna replied, saying, 'Take thou thy life, O Gandharva! Go hence, and grieve not! Yudhish-thira the king of the Kurus commandeth me to show thee mercy!'

" The Gandharva replied, 'I have been vanquished by thee. I shall, therefore, abandon my former name *Angar-parna* (the blazing-vehicled). I have been vanquished by thee. I shall, therefore, abandon my former name. In name alone I should not be boastful when my pride of strength hath been overcome. I have been fortunate in that I have obtained thee—Arjuna—the wielder of celestial weapons! I like to impart to thee the power of (producing) illusions which Gandhar-

vas alone have. My excellent and variegated chariot hath been burnt by means of thy fiery weapons. I who had formerly been called after my excellent chariot should now be called after my burnt chariot. The science (of producing illusions) that I have spoken of was formerly obtained by me by ascetic penances. That science I will today impart to the giver of my life—thy illustrious self! What good luck doth he not deserve who, after overcoming a foe by his might, giveth him life when that foe asketh for it? This science is called *Chakshusi.* It was communicated by Manu, unto Shoma and by Shoma, unto Viswavasu, and lastly by Viswavasu unto me! Communicated by my preceptor, that science, having come unto me who am without energy, is gradually becoming fruitless. I have spoken to thee about its origin and descent. Listen now to its power! One may see (by its aid) whatever one wisheth to see, and in whatever way he liketh (generally or particularly). One can acquire this science only after standing on one leg for six months. I shall, however, communicate to thee this science without thyself being obliged to observe any rigid vow. O king, it is for this knowledge that we are superior to men. And capable as we are of seeing everything by spiritual insight, it is for this that we are equal to the gods. O thou best of men, I intend to give thee and to each of thy brothers an hundred horses born in the country of the Gandharvas. Of celestial color and endued with the speed of the mind, these horses are employed in carrying the celestials and the Gandharvas. They may be lean-fleshed but they tire not, nor doth their speed suffer on that account. In days of yore the thunder-bolt was created for the chief of the celestials inorder that he might slay (the Asura) Vitra with it. But hurled at Vitra's head it broke into a thousand pieces. The celestials worship with reverence those fragments of the thunder-bolt. That which is known in the three worlds as glory is a portion of the thunder-bolt. The hand of the Brahmana with which he poureth libations into the sacrificial fire, the chariot upon which the Kshatriya fighteth, the charity of the Vaisya, and the service the Sudra rendereth unto the three other classes, are all frag-

ments of the thunder-bolt. It hath been said that these horses which form a portion of the Kshatriya's chariot are on that account incapable of being slain. The horses which form a portion of the Kshatriya's chariot are the offspring of Vadavā. Those amongst them that are born in the region of the Gandharvas can go everywhere and assume any hue and speed at the will of their owners. These horses of mine that I give thee will always gratify thy wishes.'

"Hearing these words of the Gandharva, Arjuna said, 'O Gandharva, if from satisfaction at having obtained thy life at my hands in a situation of danger, thou givest me thy science and these horses, I would not accept thy gift.' The Gandharva replied, saying, 'A meeting with an illustrious person is ever a source of gratification. Besides, thou hast given me my life. Gratified with thee, I will give thee my science. That the obligation, however, may not all be on one side, I will take from thee, O Vivatsu—thou bull of the Bharata race—thy excellent and eternal weapon of fire!'

"Arjuna said, 'I would accept thy horses in exchange for my weapon! And let our friendship last for ever! O friend, tell us for what we human beings have to stand in fear of the Gandharvas! Chastisers of all foes that we are, virtuous and conversant with the Vedas, tell us, O Gandharva, why in travelling through the night we have been censured by thee!'

"The Gandharva said, 'Ye are without wives (though ye have completed the period of study)! Ye are without a particular *asrama* (mode of life)! And, lastly, ye are out without a Brahmana walking before ye! Therefore, ye sons of Pandu, have ye been censured by me! The Yakshas, Rakshasas, Gandharvas, Pishachas, Uragas, and Danavas, are possessed of wisdom and intelligence, and are acquainted with the history of the Kuru race. O hero, I too have heard from Narada and other celestial Rishis the good deeds of your wise ancestors! I myself too, while roaming over the whole earth bounded by her belt of seas, witnessed the prowess of thy great race! O Arjuna, I have personal knowledge of thy preceptor—the illustrious son of Bharadwaja—celebrated throughout the three worlds for his knowledge of the Vedas

and the science of arms! O thou tiger of the Kuru race, O son of Prithā, I also know Dharma, Vayu, Sakra, the twin Aswinas, and Pandu,—these six perpetuators of the Kuru race,—these excellent celestial and human progenitors of ye all! I also know that ye five brothers are learned and high-souled, that ye are foremost of all wielders of weapons, that ye are brave and virtuous and observant of vows. Knowing that your understandings and hearts are excellent and your behaviour faultless, I have yet censured ye. For, O thou of the Kuru race, it behoveth no man endued with might of arms to bear with patience any ill usage in the sight of his wife! Especially as, O son of Kunti, our might increaseth during the hours of darkness, accompanied as I was by my wife I was filled with wrath! O thou best of vow-observing men, I have, however, been vanquished by thee in battle. Listen to me as I tell thee the reasons that have led to my discomfiture! The *Brahmacharya* is a very superior mode of life. Thou art in that mode now. It is for this, O Partha, that I have been defeated by thee in battle! O thou chastiser of all foes, if any married Kshatriya fight with us in the night, he can never escape with life! But, O Partha, a married Kshatriya, who is sanctified with Brahma, and who hath assigned the cares of his state to a priest, might vanquish all wanderers of the night. O child of Tapaṭi, men should, therefore, ever employ learned priests possessing self-command for the acquisition of every good luck they desire. That Brahmana is worthy of being the king's priest who is accomplished in the Vedas and the six branches thereof, who is pure and truthful, who is of virtuous soul and possest of self-command. That monarch becometh ever victorious and finally earneth heaven who hath for his priest a Brahmana conversant with the rules of morality, who is a master of words, and who is pure and good-behavioured. The king should always select an accomplished priest inorder to acquire what he hath not and protect what he hath. He who desireth his own prosperity should ever be guided by his priest, for he may then obtain even the whole earth surrounded by her belt of seas. O son of Tapati, a king who is without a Brahmana, can never acquire any

land by his bravery or prestige of birth alone! Know, therefore, O thou perpetuator of the Kuru race, that that kingdom lasteth for ever in which Brahmanas have power.' "

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-second Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXIII.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

" Arjuna said, 'Thou hast addressed me (more than once) as *Tāpatya*. I wish to know what the precise signification of this word is. O virtuous Gandharva, being sons of Kunti we are, indeed, *Kaunteyas*. But who is *Tapati* that we should be called *Tapätya*?' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Thus addressed, the Gandharva recited to Dhananjaya the son of Kunti the (following) story celebrated in the three worlds.

" The Gandharva said, 'O son of Prithā, thou foremost of all intelligent men, I will duly recite to you in full this charming narration. O listen with attention to what I say in explanation of why I have addressed thee as *Tapatya*! That one in heaven who pervadeth by his light the whole firmament had a daughter named *Tapati* equal unto himself. And Tapati the daughter of the god Vivaswan was the younger sister of Sāvitri. And she was celebrated throughout the three worlds and devoted to ascetic penances. There was no woman amongst the celestials, the Asuras, the Yakshas, the Rakshasas, the Apsarās, and the Gandharvas, who was equal to her in beauty. Of perfectly symmetrical and faultless features, of black and large eyes, and beautiful attire, the girl was chaste and exceedingly well conducted. And, O Bharata, seeing her, Savitā (the Sun) thought that there was none in the three worlds who for his beauty, accomplishments, behaviour, and learning, deserved to be her husband. Beholding her attain to the age of puberty and, therefore, worthy of being bestowed on a husband, her father knew no peace of mind, always thinking of the person he should select. At that time, O son of Kunti, Riksha's son—that bull amongst the Kurus—the

mighty king Samvarana, was duly worshipping Surya with offers of the *Arghya* and flowery garlands and scents, and with vows and fasts and ascetic penances of various kinds. Indeed, Samvarana was worshipping the Sun confest in all his glory, with devotion and humility and piety. And beholding Samvarana conversant with all rules of virtue and unequalled on earth for beauty, Surya regarded him as a fit husband for his daughter Tapati. And, O thou of the Kuru race, Vivaswan then resolved to bestow his daughter on that best of kings—Samvarna—the offspring of a race of world-wide fame. As the Sun himself in the heavens filleth the firmament with his splendour, so did king Samvarana on the earth fill every region with the splendour of his good achievements. And as utterers of Brahma worship the Sun confest in all his glory, so did, O Partha, all men except Brahmanas worship Samvarana! Blest with good luck king Samvarana excelled *Soma* in soothing the hearts of friends and the Sun in burning the hearts of his foes. And, O Kaurava, Tapana (Surya) himself resolved upon bestowing his daughter Tapati upon king Samvarana who was possessed of such virtues and accomplishments.

" 'Once on a time, O Partha, king Samvarana, endued with beauty of person and immeasurable prowess, went on a hunting expedition to the under-woods on the mountain breast. While wandering in quest of deer, the excellent steed the king rode, overcome, O Partha, with hunger, thirst, and fatigue, died on the mountains. Abandoning the steed, the king, O Arjuna, began to wander upon the mountain-breast on foot. And in course of his wanderings the monarch saw a maiden of large eyes and unrivalled for her beauty. And that grinder of hostile hosts—that tiger among kings—himself without a companion, beholding there that maiden without a companion, stood motionless, gazing at her steadfastly. For her beauty, the monarch for some moments believed her to be (the goddess) Sree herself. Next he regarded her to be the embodiment of the rays emanating from the Sun. In splendour of body she resembled a flame of fire, though in benignity and loveliness she resembled a spotless digit of the moon. And standing

on the mountain breast the black-eyed maiden appeared like a bright statue of gold. And the mountain itself with its creepers and plants, in consequence of the beauty and attire of that damsel, seemed to be converted into gold. And the sight of that maiden inspired the monarch with a contempt for all women that he had seen before. And looking at her, the king regarded his eye-sight truly blessed. Nothing the king had seen from the day of his birth could equal, he thought, the beauty of that girl. And the king's heart and eyes were captivated by that damsel, as if they were bound in ropes, and he remained rooted to that spot, deprived of his senses. And the monarch thought that the artificer of so much beauty had created it only after churning the whole world of gods, Asuras, and human beings. Entertaining these various thoughts, king Samvarana regarded that maiden unrivalled in the three worlds for wealth of beauty.

"'And the monarch of pure descent, beholding the beautiful maiden, was pierced with Kama's shafts and lost his peace of mind. And burnt by the strong flame of desire the king asked that charming maiden, still innocent though in her full youth, saying,—O thou of tapering thighs, who art thou and whose? Why also dost thou stay here? O thou of sweet smiles, why dost thou wander alone in these solitary woods? Of every feature perfectly faultless, and decked in every ornament, thou seemest to be the coveted ornament of these ornaments themselves! Thou seemest not to be of celestial or Asura or Yaksha or Rakshasa or Naga or Gandharva or human origin. O excellent lady, the best of women that I have seen or heard of, would not come up to thee in beauty. O thou of handsome face, at sight of that face of thine, lovelier than the moon and furnished with eyes like lotus-leaves, the god of desire is grinding me!—

"'Thus did king Samvarana address that damsel in the forest. She, however, spoke not a word unto the monarch burning with desire. Instead, like lightning in the clouds, that large-eyed maiden quickly disappeared in the very sight of the wishful monarch. The king then wandered through the whole forest like one out of his senses in search of that

girl of eyes like lotus-leaves. And failing to find her, that best of monarchs indulged in copious lamentations, and for a time stood motionless in grief.'"

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-third Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXIV.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

"The Gandharva continued, 'When that maiden disappeared, that feller of hostile ranks, deprived of his senses by Kama, himself fell down on the earth. And as the monarch fell down, that maiden of sweet smiles and swelling and round hips appeared again unto him. And smiling sweetly, Tapati said unto that perpetuator of the Kuru race these honeyed words:—Rise, Rise, O thou oppressor of all foes! Blest be thou, it behoveth thee not, O thou tiger among kings, to lose thy reason, celebrated as thou art in the world!—Addressed in these honeyed words, the king opened his eyes and saw before him that same girl of swelling hips. The monarch who was burning with the flame of desire then addressed that black-eyed damsel in accents weak with emotion, and said,—Blest be thou, O excellent woman of black eyes! Burning as I am with desire and paying thee court, O accept me! My life is ebbing away. O thou of large eyes, for thy sake it is, O thou of the filaments of the lotus, that this Kama incessantly pierceth me with his keen shafts without stopping for a moment. O amiable and cheerful girl, I have been bitten by Kama who is even like a venomous snake. O thou of swelling and large hips, have mercy on me! O thou of handsome and faultless features, O thou of face like unto the lotus or the moon, O thou of voice sweet as that of singing Kinnaras, my life now depends on thee! Without thee, O timid one, I am unable to live! O thou of eyes like lotus-leaves, this Kama is piercing me incessantly. O large-eyed girl, be merciful unto me! It behoveth thee not, O black-eyed maid, to cast me off. O handsome girl, it behoveth thee to relieve me from such affliction, by giving me thy love! At the first sight thou hast at-

tracted my heart. My mind wandereth! Beholding thee I like not to cast my eyes on any other woman! Be merciful, I am thy obedient slave, thy adorer! O accept me! O beautiful lady, O large-eyed girl, at sight of thee, the god of desire hath entered my heart and is piercing me with his shafts. O thou of lotus eyes, the flame of desire burneth within me! O extinguish that flame by throwing on it the water of thy love! O beautiful lady, by becoming mine pacify thou the irrepressible god of desire who hath appeared here armed with his deadly bow and arrows and who pierceth me incessantly with those keen shafts of his! O thou of the fairest complexion, wed me according to the Gandharva form, for, O thou of tapering hips, of all forms of marriage the Gandharva hath been said to be the best!—'

"The Gandharva continued, 'Hearing these words of the monarch, Tapati, answered,—O king, I am not the mistress of my own self! Know that I am a maiden ruled by her father! If thou really entertainest an affection for me, demand me of my father! Thou sayest, O king, that thy heart hath been robbed by me. But thou also hast, at first sight, robbed me of my heart! I am not the mistress of my body. Therefore, O best of kings, I do not approach thee. Women are never independent. What girl is there in the three worlds who would not desire thee for husband, kind as thou art unto all thy dependents and born as thou art in a pure race? Therefore when the opportunity comes ask my father Aditya for my hand, with worship, ascetic penances, and vows! If my father bestoweth me upon thee, then, O king, I shall ever be thy obedient wife! My name is Tapati, and I am the younger sister of Sāvitri, and the daughter, O thou bull of the Kshatriya race, of Sāvita the illuminator of the universe.—'"

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-fourth Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXV.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

"The Gandharva continued, 'Saying this, Tapati of faultless features ascended the skies. The monarch, upon this, again fell down on the earth. His ministers and followers searching for him throughtout the forest at last came upon him lying in that solitary spot. And beholding that excellent king, that mighty bowman, thus lying forsaken on the ground like a rainbow dropped from the firmament, his minister-in-chief became like one burnt by a flame of fire. And advancing hastily with affection and respect, the minister raised the best of monarchs lying prostrate on the ground deprived of his senses by desire, like a father raising the fallen form of his son. Old in wisdom as in age, in achievements as in politics, the minister, after having raised the prostrate monarch, became easy. And addressing the king in sweet words that were also for his good, said,—Blest be thou, O sinless one! Fear not, O thou tiger among kings!—The minister thought that the monarch had been lying on the ground overcome with hunger, thirst, and fatigue,—he who was the great feller of hostile ranks in battle. The old man then sprinkled the crownless head of the monarch with water that was cold and rendered fragrant with lotus leaves. Slowly regaining his consciousness, the mighty monarch sent away all his attendants with the exception of his minister alone. And after those attendants had retired at his command, the king sat upon the mountain breast. Purifying himself duly, the king sat upon that chief of mountains, and with joined hands and upturned face, began to worship the Sun. And king Samvarana, the smiter of all foes, also thought of his chief priest Vashishta—that best of Rishis. And after the king had staid thus on the same spot day and night without intermission, the Brahmana sage Vashishta came there on the twelfth day. And the great Rishi, of soul under perfect command, knew at once by his ascetic power that the monarch had lost his senses in consequence of Tapati. And that virtuous and best of Munis, as soon as he knew this, desirous of benefiting the monarch ever observant

of vows, addressed him and gave him every assurance. And the illustrious Rishi, in the very sight of that monarch ascended upwards to interview the Sun, himself possessing the splendour of that luminary. And the Brahmana then approached with joined hands the god of a thousand rays and represented himself cheerfully unto him, saying,—I am Vashishta.—Then Vivaswan of great energy said unto that best of Rishis,—Welcome art thou, O great Rishi! Tell me what is in thy mind. O thou of great good fortune, whatever thou demandest from me, O thou foremost of eloquent men, I will confer on thee, however difficult it may be for me!—Thus addressed by the Sun, the Rishi of great ascetic merit, bowing unto the god of light, replied, saying,—O Vivavasu, this thy daughter Tapati, the younger sister of Savitri, I ask of thee for Samvarana! That monarch is of mighty achievements, conversant with virtue, and of high soul. O thou wanderer of the firmament, Samvarana will make a worthy husband for thy daughter!—Thus addressed by the Rishi, Vivakara, resolved upon bestowing his daughter upon Samvarana, saluted the Rishi and replied unto him saying,—O Muni, Samvarana is the best of monarchs, thou art the best of Rishis, and Tapati is the best of women. What can be done, therefore, but to bestow her on Samvarana?—Saying this, the god Tapana himself gave his daughter Tapati of every feature perfectly faultless unto the illustrious Vashishta for bestowal upon Samvarana. And the great Rishi then accepted the girl Tapati, and taking leave of the Sun came back to the spot where that bull amongst the Kurus of celebrated achievements was. And king Samvarana, possest by Kama and with his heart fixed on Tapati, beholding that celestial maiden of sweet smiles led by Vashishta, became exceedingly glad. And Tapati of fair eyebrows came down from the firmament like lightning from the clouds dazzling the ten points of heaven. And the illustrious Rishi Vashishta of pure soul approached the monarch after the latter's twelve nights' vow was over. It was thus that king Samvarana obtained a wife, after having worshipped with ascetic penances the propitious lord Vivaswan, by the help of Vashishta's (ascetic) power, And Samvarana-that

bull among men—with due rites took Tapati's hand on that mountain breast which was resorted to by the celestials and the Gandharvas. And the royal sage, with the permission of Vashishta, desired to sport with his wife on that mountain. And the king caused Vashishta to be proclaimed his regent in his capital and kingdom, in the woods and gardens. And bidding farewell unto the monarch, Vashishta left him and went away. And Samvarana sported on that mountain like a celestial. And the monarch sported with his wife in the woods and the under-woods on that mountain for full twelve years. And, O thou best of the Bharatas, the god of a thousand eyes poured no rain for twelve years in the capital and kingdom of that monarch. Then, O thou oppressor of all enemies, when that season of drought commenced, the people of that kingdom as also the trees and lower animals began to die fast. And during the continuance of that dreadful drought, not even a drop of dew fell from the skies and no corn was grown. And the inhabitants in despair, afflicted with the fear of hunger, left their homes and fled away in all directions. And the famished people of the capital and the country began to abandon their wives and children and grew reckless of one another. And the people being afflicted with hunger, without a morsel of food, and reduced to skeletons, the capital looked very much like the city of the king of the dead filled only with ghostly beings. And beholding the capital reduced to such a state, the illustrious and virtuous and best of Rishis—Vashishta—resolved upon applying a remedy. And the Rishi brought back into the city that tiger among kings—Samvarana—along with his wife, after he had passed so long a period in solitude and seclusion. And after the king had entered his capital, things became as before. For when that tiger among kings came back to his own, the god of a thousand eyes—the slayer of Asuras—poured rain in abundance and caused corn to grow. And revivified by that foremost of monarchs of virtuous soul, the capital and the country became glad with exceeding joy. And the monarch with his wife Tapati once more performed sacrifices for twelve years, like the lord Indra performing sacrifices with his wife Shachi.'

"The Gandharva continued, 'This, O Partha, is the history of Tapati of old, the daughter of Vivaswan! And it is for her that thou art *Tāpatya!* King Samvarana begat upon Tapati a son named Kuru who was the foremost of ascetics. Born in the race of Kuru, thou art, O Arjuna, to be called *Tāpatya!*"

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-fifth Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXVI.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva Continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "That bull among the Bharatas—Arjuna—hearing these words of the Gandharva was inspired with a feeling of devotion and stood confest like the moon in full. And that mighty bowman—that foremost of the Kurus—having his curiosity greatly excited by what he had heard of Vashishta's ascetic power, asked the Gandharva, saying, 'I desire to hear of the Rishi whom thou hast mentioned as Vashishta. O tell me in full about him! O chief of the Gandharvas, tell me who this illustrious Rishi was who was the priest of our forefathers!' The Gandharva replied, 'Vashishta is Brahmā's spiritual son and Arandhati's husband. Ever difficult of being conquered even by the immortals, Desire, and Wrath, conquered by Vashishta's ascetic penances, used to shampoo his feet. Though his wrath was excited by Viswamitra's offence, that high-souled Rishi did not yet exterminate the Kaushikas (the tribe whose king Viswamitra was). Afflicted at the loss of his sons, as if powerless though fully capable, he did not do any dreadful deed for the destruction of Viswāmitra. Like the ocean transgressing not its continents, Vashishta transgressed not (the laws of) Yama for bringing back his lost children from the domains of the king of the dead. It was by obtaining that illustrious one who had conquered his own self that Ikshaku and other great monarchs acquired the whole earth. And, O prince of the Kuru race, it was by obtaining as their priest Vashishta—that best of Rishis—that those monarchs performed many grand sacrifices. And, O

thou best of the Pandavas, that Brahmana Rishi assisted those monarchs in the performance of their sacrifices like Vrihaspati himself assisting the immortals. Therefore, look ye for some accomplished and desirable Brahmana conversant with the Vedas and in whose heart virtue prevaileth, to be your priest! A Kshatriya of good lineage, desirous of extending his dominions by conquering the earth, should, O Partha, first appoint a priest! He who is desirous of conquering the earth should have a Brahmana before him. Therefore, O Arjuna, let some accomplished and learned Brahmana, having his senses under complete control and conversant with *Dharma, Artha* and *Kama,* be your priest!' "

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-sixth Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXVII.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing this, Arjuna said, 'O Gandharva whence arose the hostility between Viswamitra and Vashishta both of whom dwelt in a celestial hermittage? O, tell us all about it.'

"The Gandharva replied, 'O Partha, the story of Vashishta is regarded as a Purana in all the three worlds. Listen to me as I recite it fully! There was, in Kanyakuvja, O thou bull of the Bharata race, a great king celebrated throughout the world named Gādhi the son of Kushika. And the virtuous Gādhi had a son named Viswamitra—that grinder of all foes—possessing a large army and many animals and vehicles. And Viswāmitra accompanied by his ministers used to roam in quest of deer through deep woods and over picturesque marshes, killing deer and wild boars. And once on a time while out in quest of deer, the king was weak with exertion and thirst. And the monarch arrived in that state at the asylum of Vashishta. And the blessed and illustrious Rishi beholding him arrive reverenced with his homage that best of men king Viswamitra. And, O Bharata, the Rishi saluted the monarch by offering him water to wash his feet, and the

Arghya, and water to wash his face, and wild fruits, and clarified butter. For the illustrious Rishi had a cow yielding everything that was desired of her. And when she was addressed,—*O give*,—she ever yielded the article that was sought. And she yielded various fruits and corn both wild and grown in gardens and fields, and milk, and many excellent nutritive viands filled with the six different kinds of juice and like unto nectar itself, and various other kinds of enjoyable things, O Arjuna, of ambrosial taste, for drinking and eating, and for lapping and sucking, and also many precious gems and robes of various kinds. And with these desirable objects in profusion the monarch was worshipped. And with his ministers and troops the king became highly pleased. And the monarch wondered much beholding that cow with six elevated limbs, and beautiful flanks and hips, andfive limbs that were broad, and eyes prominent like those of the frog, and of beautiful size, high udders, faultless make, straight and upraised ears, handsome horns, and well-developed head and neck.

"And, O prince, the son of Gādhi, gratified with everything and applauding the cow named Nandini, addressed the Rishi saying—O Brahmana, O great Muni, give me thy Nandini in exchange for ten thousand kine or my kingdom either. Enjoy thou my kingdom (giving me thy cow)!—

"'Hearing these words of Viswāmitra, Vashishta said,—O sinless one, this cow hath been kept by me for the sake of the gods, guests, and the *Pitris*, as also for my sacrifices. I cannot give thee this Nandini in exchange for even thy kingdom!—Viswamitra replied,—I am a Kshatriya, but thou art a Brahmana devoted to asceticism and study. Is there any energy in Brahmanas who are peaceful and who have their souls under perfect command? When thou givest me not what I desire, in exchange even for ten thousand kine, I will not abandon the practices of my order. I will take thy cow even by force!—Vashishta said,—Thou art a Kshatriya endued with might of arms! Thou art a powerful monarch! O do in haste what thou desirest, and stop not to consider its propriety.'—

"The Gandharva continued, 'Thus addressed by Vashishta, Viswāmitra, O Partha, then forcibly seized Nandini—that cow

(white) as the swan or the moon—and attempted to take her away, afflicting her with stripes and persecuting her otherwise. The innocent Nandini then began, O Partha, to low piteously, and approaching the illustrious Vashishta stood before him with uplifted face. And though persecuted very cruelly she refused to leave the Rishi's asylum.

" 'Beholding her in that plight, Vashishta said,—O amiable one, thou art lowing repeatedly and I hear thy cries! But, O Nandini, even Viswamitra is taking thee away by force What can I do in this matter! I am a forgiving Brahmana!—'

" The Gandharva continued, 'Then, O thou bull of the Bharata race, Nandini, terrified at sight of Viswamitra's troops and alarmed by Viswamitrā himself, approached the Rishi still closer. And she said,—O illustrious one, why art thou so indifferent to my poor self afflicted with the stripes of the cruel troops of Viswāmitra and crying so piteously as if I am masterless?—Hearing even these words of the crying and persecuted Nandini, the great Rishi lost not his patience nor departed from his vow of forgiveness. And he replied,—The Kshatriya's might lay in personal prowess, the Brahmana's in forgiveness. And because I cannot cast off forgiveness, go thou, O Nandini, if thou choosest!—Nandini answered, —'Castest me away, O illustrious one, that thou sayest so? If thou dost not cast me off, I cannot, O Brahmana, be taken away by force.—Vashishta said,—O lucky one, I do not cast thee off! Stay, if thou canst! O yonder is thy calf, tied with a stout cord, and even now being weakened by it!—'

" The Gandharva continued, 'Then that cow of Vashishta, hearing the word *Stay*, raising her head and neck upwards, became terrible to behold. With eyes red in anger and lowing repeatedly, that cow then attacked Viswāmitra's troops on all sides. Afflicted with their stripes and running hither and thither with those red eyes of hers, her wrath increased. Blazing with anger, she soon became terrible to behold like unto the Sun in his mid-day glory. And from her tail she began to rain showers of burning coals all around. And some moments after, from her tail she brought forth an army of Palhavas; and from her udders, of Dravidas and Shakas; and

from her womb, of Yavanas; and from her dung, of Shavaras; and from her urine, of Kanchis, and from her sides, of Shavaras again. And from the froth of her mouth came out hosts of Paundras and Kiratas, Yavanas and Singhalas, and the barbarous tribes of Khasas and Chivukas and Pulindas and Chins and Huns with Keralas, and numerous other Mlechchas. And that vast army of Mlechchas in various uniforms and armed with various weapons, as soon as it sprang into life, deploying in the very sight of Viswāmitra, attacked that monarch's soldiers. And so numerous was the Mlechcha host that each particular soldier of Viswamitra was attacked by bands of five or seven of their enemies. And assailed with a mighty shower of weapons, Viswamitra's troops broke and fled panic-sticken in all directions, in his very sight. But, O bull of the Bharata race, the troops of Vashishta, though excited with wrath, took not the life of any of Viswamitra's troops. Nandini simply caused the monarch's army to be routed and driven off. And driven (from the asylum) full twenty-seven miles, panic-stricken they shrieked aloud and beheld not any one who could protect them. And Viswamitra beholding this wonderful feat which resulted from Brahmana prowess, became disgusted with Kshatriya prowess and said,—O fie on Kshatriya prowess! Brahma prowess is true prowess! In judging of strength and weakness, I see that asceticism is true strength.—And saying this, the monarch, abandoning his large domains and regal splendour and turning his back upon all pleasures, set his mind on asceticism. And crowned with success in asceticism and filling the three worlds with the heat of his ascetic penances, he afflicted all creatures and finally became a Brahmana. And the son of Kushika at last drank *Soma* with Indra himself (in the heavens).'"

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-seventh Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXVIII.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

" The Gandharva continued, 'There was, O Partha, a king in this world, of name Kalmāshpāda. And he was of the race of Ikshāku and was unequalled on earth for prowess. One day the king went from his capital into the woods for purposes of hunting. And that grinder of all foes pierced (with his arrows) many deers and wild boars. And in those deep woods the king also slew many rhinoceroses. And engaged in sport for some length of time the monarch became very much fatigued, and at last gave up the chase desiring to rest awhile.

'The great Viswamitra endued with energy had, a little time before, desired to make the monarch his disciple. And as the monarch, afflicted with hunger and thirst, was proceeding through the woods, he met that best of Rishis—the illustrious son of Vashishta—coming along the same path. And the king, ever victorious in battle, saw that Muni bearing the name of Shaktri—that illustrious perpetuator of Vashishta's race—the eldest of the high-souled Vashishta's hundred sons—coming along an opposite direction. And the king, beholding him, said,—*Stand out of our way.* The Rishi addressing the monarch in a conciliatory manner said unto him sweetly, —O king, this is my way. This is the eternal rule of morality indicated in every treatise on duty and religion that a king should ever yield the way to Brahmanas.—Thus did they address each other respecting their right of way. *Stand aside, Stand aside,* were the words they said unto each other. And the Rishi who was in the right did not yield. Nor did the king yield to the Muni, from a sense of pride and anger. And that best of monarchs, enraged at seeing the Rishi refuse to yield him way, acting like a Rakshasa struck him with his whip. Thus whipped by the monarch, that best of Rishis—the son of Vashishta was deprived by anger of his senses and speedily cursed that first of monarchs. And he said,—O thou worst of kings, since thou persecutest like a Rakshasa an ascetic, therefore shalt thou, from this day be a Rakshasa

eating of human flesh. Go hence, thou worst of kings! Thou shalt wander over the earth, affecting human flesh!' Thus did that Rishi Shaktri endued with great prowess speak unto king Kalmāshpāda. At this time Viswamitra, between whom and Vashishta there was a dispute about the discipleship of king Kalmāshpāda, approached the place where that monarch and Vashishta's son were. And, O Partha, that Rishi of severe ascetic penances. Viswamitra of great energy, approached the pair (knowing by his spiritual insight that they were thus quarreling with each other). And after the curse had been pronounced, that best of monarchs knew that Rishi to be Vashishta's son and equal unto Vashishta himself in energy. And, O Bharata, Viswamitra, desirous of benefiting himself, remained in that spot, concealed from the sight of both by making himself invisible. Then that best of monarchs, thus cursed by Shaktri, desiring to propitiate the Rishi began to humbly court him. And, O thou best of the Kurus, Viswamitra ascertaining the disposition of the king (and fearing that the difference might be made up) ordered a Rakshasa to enter the body of the king. And a Rakshasa of name Kingkara then entered the monarch's body, obedient to Shaktri's curse and Viswamitra's command. And knowing, O thou oppressor of all enemies, that the Rakshasa had possessed the monarch, that best of Rishis, Viswamitra, then left the spot and went away.

'Shortly after, O Partha, the monarch having been possest by the Rakshasa and terribly afflicted by him, lost all his senses. At this time a Brahmana beheld the king in those woods. And afflicted with hunger that Brahmana begged of the king some food with meat. The royal sage—Kalmāshpāda—that cherisher of friends—answered the Brahmana, saying,—Stay thou here, O Brahmana, for a moment! Returning I will give thee whatever food thou desirest.—Having said this, the monarch went away, but the Brahmana continued to stay there. The high-minded king, having roved for sometime at pleasure and according to his wishes, at last entered his inner apartments. Then waking at midnight and remembering his promise, he summoned his cook and told him of

his promise unto the Brahmana staying in the forest. And he commanded him, saying,—Hie thee to that forest. A Brahmana waiteth for me in hope of food. Go and entertain him with food mixed with meat.—'

" The Gandharva continued, 'Thus commanded, the cook went out in search of meat. And distressed at not having found any, he informed the king of his failure. The monarch, however, possest as he was by the Rakshasa, repeatedly said without scruples of any kind,—Feed him with human meat.—The cook, saying *so be it*, then went to the place where the (king's) executioners were, and thence taking human meat and washing and cooking it duly and covering it with boiled rice offered it unto that hungry Brahmana devoted to ascetic penances. But that best of Brahmanas, seeing with his spiritual sight that the food was unholy and therefore unworthy of being eaten, said these words with eyes red in anger.—Because that worst of kings offereth me food that is unholy and unworty of being taken, therefore shall that wretch have himself a fondness for such food. And becoming fond of human meat as cursed by Shaktri of old, the wretch shall wander over the earth alarming and otherwise troubling all creatures. —The curse, therefore, on that king being thus repeated a second time, became very strong, and the king possest by Rakshasa disposition soon lost all his senses.

'A little-while after, O Bharata, that best of monarchs deprived of all his senses by the Rakshasa within him, beholding Shaktri who had cursed him, said,—Because thou hast denounced on me this extraordinary curse, therfore shall I begin my life of cannibalism by devouring thee!—Having said this, the king immediately slew Shaktri and ate him up, like a tiger eating any animal it is fond of. And beholding Shaktri thus slain and devoured, Viswamitra repeatedly urged that Rakshasa (who was within the monarch) against the other sons of Vashishta. And like a wrathful lion devouring small animals, that Rakshasa soon devoured the other sons of the illustrious Vashishta who were junior to Shaktri in age. But Vashishta learning that all his sons were caused to be slain by Viswāmitra, patiently bore his grief like the great mountain

bearing the earth. And that best of Munis, that foremost of intelligent men, resolved rather to sacrifice his own life than exterminate (in anger) the race of the Kaushikas. And the illustrious Rishi threw himself down from the summit of Meru, but he descended on the stony ground as if on a heap of cotton. And, O son of Pandu, when the illustrious one found that death did not result from this fall, he ignited a huge fire in the forest and entered it with alacrity. But that fire though burning brightly consumed him not. O thou slayer of all foes, that blazing fire seemed to him cool. Then the great-Muni, under the influence of grief, beholding the sea, tied a stony weight to his neck and threw himself into its waters. But the waves soon cast him ashore. At last when that Brahmana of rigid vows succeeded not in killing himself by any means, he returned, in distress of heart, to his asylum.' "

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-eighth Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXIX.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

" The Gandharva continued, 'Beholding his asylum reft of his children, the Muni, afflicted with great grief, left it again. And in course of his wanderings he saw, O Partha, a river swollen with the waters of the rainy season, sweeping away numerous trees and plants that grew on its margin. Beholding this, O thou of the Kuru race, the distressed Muni fell athinking, and thought he would certainly be drowned if he fell into the waters of that river. Then the great Muni tied himself strongly with several cords and flung himself, under the influence of grief, into the current of that mighty river. But, O thou slayer of all foes, that stream soon cut those cords and cast the Rishi ashore. And the Rishi rose from the bank, freed from the cords with which he had tied himself. And because his cords were thus broken by the violence of the current, the Rishi called the stream by the name of *Vipasha* (the cord-breaker). From grief the Muni could not, from that time, stay in one place. And he began to wander over moun-

tains and along rivers and lakes. And beholding once again a river named Haimavati (flowing from the Himavat) of terrible mien and full of fierce crocodiles and other monsters, the Rishi threw himself into it. But the river mistaking the Brahmana for a heap of (unquenchable) fire, immediately fled in an hundred different directions and hath been known ever since by the name of the *Shata-dru* (the river of hundred courses). And seeing himself on dry land even there, he exclaimed,—O I cannot die by my own hands!—Saying this the Rishi once more bent his steps towards his asylum. And crossing numberless mountains and countries, as he was about to enter his asylum, he was being followed by his daughter-in-law named *Adrishyanti.* And as she neared him, he heard the sound, from behind, of a very intelligent recitation of the Vedas with the six graces of elocution. And hearing that sound, the Rishi asked,—Who is it that followeth me?—And his daughter-in-law then answered,—I am Adhrishyanti, the wife of Shaktri. I am helpless though devoted to asceticism—Hearing her, Vashishta said,—O daughter, whose is this voice that I hear repeating the Vedas along with the Angas like unto the voice of Shaktri reciting the Vedas with the Angas?—Adrishyanti answered, saying,—I bear in my womb a child by thy son Shaktri. He hath been here full twelve years. The voice thou hearest is that Muni's who is reciting the Vedas.—'

"The Gandharva continued, 'Thus addressed by her, the illustrious Vashishta became exceedingly glad. And saying—*O there is a child* (*of my race*)—he refrained, O Partha, from self-destruction. And the sinless one, accompanied by his daughter-in-law, then returned to his asylum. And the Rishi saw one day in the solitary woods the (Rakshasa) Kalmāshapāda. And the king, O Bharata, possest by a fierce Rakshasa, as he saw the Rishi, became filled with wrath and rose up desiring to devour the Rishi. And Adrishyanti, beholding before her that Rakshasa of cruel deeds, addressed Vashishta in these words full of anxiety and fear,—O illustrious one, the cruel Rakshasa, like unto Death himself armed with (his) fierce club, cometh towards us with a wooden club in hand! There is

none else on earth, except thee, O illustrious one and foremost of all conversant with the Vedas, to restrain him today! Protect me, O illustrious one, from this cruel wretch of terrible mien. Surely, the Rakshasa cometh hither to devour us! —Vashishta, hearing this, said,—Fear not, O daughter, there needst be no fear from any Rakshasa! This one is no Rakshasa from whom thou apprehendest imminent danger. This is king Kalmāshpāda endued with greeat energy and celebrated on earth. That terrible man dwelleth in these woods.—'

"The Gandharva continued, 'Beholding him advancing, the illustrious Rishi Vashishta endued with great energy restrained him, O Bharata, by uttering the sound *Hum*. And sprinkling him again with water sanctified with incantations, the Rishi freed the monarch from that terrible curse. And for twelve years the monarch had been overwhelmed by the energy of Vashishta's son like the Sun seized by the planet (Rāhu) during the season of an eclipse. And freed from the Rakshasa the monarch illuminated that large forest by his splendour like the Sun illuminating the evening clouds. Recovering his reason, the king saluted that best of Rishis with joined hands and said,—O illustrious one, I am the son of Sudasa and thy disciple, O best of Munis! O tell me what is thy pleasure and what I am to do!—Vashishta replied, saying,—My desire hath already been accomplished. Return now to thy kingdom and rule thy subjects. And, O thou chief of men, never insult Brahmanas any more!—The monarch replied,—O illustrious one, I shall never more insult superior Brahmanas. In obedience to thy command I shall always worship Brahmanas. But, O thou best of Brahmanas, I desire to obtain from thee that by which, O thou foremost of all that are conversant with the Vedas, I may be freed from the debt I owe to the race of Ikshāku! O thou best of men, it behoveth thee to grant me, for the perpetuation of Ikshāku's race, a desirable son possessing beauty and accomplishments and good behaviour!—'

"The Gandharva continued, 'Thus addressed, Vashishta—that best of Brahmanas devoted to truth—replied unto that

mighty bowman of a monarch, saying,—*I will give.* After sometime, O prince of men, Vashishta, accompanied by the monarch went to the latter's capital known all over the earth by the name of Ayodhyā. And the citizens in great joy came out to receive the sinless and illustrious one, like the dwellers of heaven coming out to receive their chief. And the monarch, accompanied by Vashishta, re-entered his auspicious capital after a long time. And the dwellers of Ayodhya beheld their king accompanied by his priest, as if he were the rising sun. And the monarch who was superior to everyone in beauty filled by his splendour the whole town of Ayodhya, like the autumnal moon filling by his splendour the whole firmament. And the excellent city itself, in consequence of its streets having been watered and swept, and of the rows of banners and pendants beautifying it all around, gladdened the monarch's heart. And, O prince of the Kuru race, the city filled as it was with joyous and healthy souls, in consequence of his presence, looked gay like Amarāvati with the presence of the chief of the celeslials. And after the royal sage had entered his capital, the queen at the king's command approached Varhishta. And the great Rishi making a covenant with her united himself with her according to the high ordinance. And after a little while when the queen conceived, that best of Rishis, receiving the reverential salutations of the king, went back to his asylum. And the queen bore the embryo in her womb for a long time. And when she saw that she brought not forth anything, she tore open her womb by a piece of stone. And it was then that at the twelfth year (of the conception) was born Asmaka—that bull amongst men—that royal sage who founded (the city of)Paudanya.' "

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-eighth Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXIX.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

"The Gandharva continued, 'Then, O Partha, Adrishyanti, who had been residing in Vashishta's asylum, brought forth (when the time came) a son who was the perpetuator of Shaktri's race and who was a second Shaktri in everything. And, O thou foremost of the Bharatas, that best of Munis—the illustrious Vashishta—himself performed the usual after-birth ceremonies of his grandson. And because the Rishi Vashishta had resolved on self-destruction but abstained therefrom as soon as he knew the existence of that child, therefore was that child, when born, called *Parasharā* (the vivifier of the dead). And the virtuous Parashara, from the day of his birth, knew Vashishta for his father and behaved towards the Muni as such. And one day, O Kaunteya, the child addressed Vashishta, that first of Brahmana sages, as *father*, in the presence of his mother Adrishyanti. And Adrishyanti hearing the very intelligible sound of *father* sweetly uttered by her son, addressed him with tearful eyes and said,—O child, do not address this thy grand-father as *father* ! Thy father, O son, has been devoured by a Rakshasa in a different forest ! O innocent one, he is not thy father whom thou regardest so ! The reverend one is the father of that celebrated father of thine !—Thus addressed by his mother, that best of Rishis of truthful speech gave way to sorrow, and soon firing up resolved to destroy the whole creation. Then that illuitrious and great ascetic Vashishta—that foremost of all conversant with Brahma—that son of Mitra-varuna—that Rishi acquainted with positive truth—addressed his grandson who had set his heart upon the destruction of the world. Hear, O Arjuna, the arguments by which Vashishta succeeded in driving that resolution from his grandson's mind !'

"The Gandharva continued 'Then Vashishta said,—There was a celebrated king of the name of Krita-virya. And that bull among the kings of the earth was the disciple of the Veda-knowing Bhrigus. That king, O child, after performing

the Soma sacrifice, gratified the Brahmanas with large presents of rice and wealth. After that monarch had ascended to heaven, an occasion came when his descendants were in want of wealth. And knowing that the Bhrigus were rich, those princes went unto those best of Brahmanas, in the guise of beggars. Some amongst the Bhrigus, to protect their wealth, buried it under the earth; and some, from fear of the Kshatriyas, began to give away their wealth unto (other) Brahmanas; while some amongst them duly gave unto the Kshatriyas whatever they wanted. It happened, however, that some Kshatriyas, in digging as they pleased at the house of a particular Bhārgava, came upon a large treasure. And that treasure was seen by all those bulls among Kshatriyas who had gone there. Enraged at what they regarded the deceitful behaviour of the Bhrigus, the Kshatriyas insulted the Brahmanas though the latter asked for mercy. And those mighty bowmen began to slaughter the Bhrigus with their sharp arrows. And the Kshatriyas wandered over the earth, slaughtering even the embryos that were in the wombs of the women of the Bhrigu race. And while the Bhrigu race was thus being exterminated, the women of that tribe fled from fear to the inaccessible mountains of Himavat. And one amongst these women, of tapering thighs, desiring to perpetuate her husband's race, held in one of her thighs an embryo endued with great energy. A certain Brahmana woman, however, who came to know this fact, went from fear unto the Kshatriyas and reported it unto them. And the Kshatriyas then went to destroy that embryo. And arrived at the place, they beheld the would-be mother blazing with inborn energy. And the child that was in her thigh came out tearing open the thigh and dazzling the eyes of those Kshatriyas like the mid-day Sun. Then deprived of their eyes the Kshatriyas began to wander over those inaccessible mountains. And distressed at this loss of sight the princes were afflicted with woe, and desirous of regaining the use of their eyes they resolved to seek the protection of that faultless woman. Then those Kshatriyas, afflicted with sorrow and from loss of sight like unto a fire that has gone out, addressing with anxious hearts that illustrious lady, said,

By thy grace, O lady, we wish to be restored to sight! We shall then return to our homes all together and abstain forever from our sinful practice! O handsome one, it behoveth thee with thy child to show us mercy! It behoveth thee to favor these kings by granting them their eye-sight!—'"

Thus ends the hundred and eightieth Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXXI.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva Continued.)

"'Vashishta continued,—The Brahmana lady, thus addressed by them, said,

Ye children, I have not robbed ye of your eye-sight, nor am I angry with ye! This child, however, of the Bhrigu race hath certainly been angry with ye. There is little doubt, ye children, that ye have been robbed of your sights by that illustrious child whose wrath hath been kindled at the remembrance of the slaughter of his race! Ye children, while ye were destroying even the embroys of the Bhrigu race, this child was held by me in my thigh for a hundred years! And inorder that the prosperity of Bhrigu's race might be restored, the entire Veda with its six branches came unto this one even while he was in the womb. It is plain that that scion of the Bhrigu race, enraged at the slaughter of his fathers, desireth to slay ye! It is by his celestial energy that your eyes have been scorched! Therefore, ye children, pray ye unto this my excellent child born of my thigh! Propitiated by your homage, he may restore your eye-sights!

'Vashishta continued,—Hearing these words of the Brahmana lady, all those princes addressed the thigh-born child, saying, *Be propitious!* And the child became propitious unto them. And that best of Brahmana Rishis, in consequence of his having been born after tearing open his mother's thigh, came to be known throughout the three worlds by the name of Aurva (thigh-born). And those princes regaining their eye-sights went away. But the Muni Aurva of the Bhrigu race resolved upon overcoming the whole world. And the high-

souled Rishi set his heart, O child, upon the destruction of every creature in the world! And that scion of the Bhrigu race, for paying homage (as he regarded) unto his slaughtered ancestors, devoted himself to the austerest of penances with the object of destroying the whole world! And desirous of gratifying his ancestors, the Rishi afflicted, by his severe asceticism, the three worlds with the celestials, the Asuras, and human beings. The *Pitris* then, learning what the child of their race was about, all came from their own region unto the Rishi and addressing him said,

Aurva, O son, fierce thou hast been in thy asceticism! Thy power hath been witnessed by us! Be propitious unto the three worlds! O control thy wrath! O child, it was not from incapacity that the Bhrigus of souls under complete control were, all of them, indifferent to their own destruction at the hands of the murderous Kshatriyas! O child, when we grew weary with the long periods of life allotted to us, it was then that we desired our own destruction through the instrumentality of the Kshatriyas! The wealth that the Bhrigus had placed in their houses under-ground had been placed only with the object of enraging the Kshatriyas and raising a quarrel with them. O thou best of Brahmanas, desirous as we were of heaven, of what use could wealth be to us? The treasurer of heaven (Kuvera) had kept a large treasure for us! When we found that death could not, by any means, over-take us all, it was then, O child, that we regarded this as the best means (for compassing our desire)! They who commit suicide never attain to regions that are blessed. Reflecting upon this, we abstained from self-destruction. That which, therefore, thou desirest to do is not agreeable to us! Restrain thy mind, therefore, from the sinful act of destroying the whole world! O child, destroy not the Kshatriyas, nor the seven worlds! O kill this wrath of thine that staineth thy ascetic energy!—' "

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-first Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXXII.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

"The Gandharva said, 'Vashishta after this continued the narration, saying,—Hearing these words of the Pitris, Aurva, O child, replied unto them to this effect :—

Ye Pitris, the vow I have made from anger for the destruction of all the worlds, must not be in vain! I cannot consent to be one whose anger and vows are futile! Like fire consuming dry wood, this rage of mine will certainly consume me if I do not accomplish my vow! The man that represseth his wrath that hath been excited by (adequate) cause, becometh incapable of duly compassing the three ends of life (*viz*, religion, profit, and pleasure). The wrath that kings desirous of subjugating the whole earth exhibit is not without its uses. It serveth to restrain the wicked and to protect the honest. While lying unborn within my mother's thigh, I heard the doleful cries of my mother and the other women of the Bhrigu race that was then being exterminated by the Kshatriyas. Ye Pitris, when those wretches of Kshatriyas began to exterminate the Bhrigus together with the unborn children of their race, it was then that wrath filled my soul! My mother and the other women of our race, each in a state of advanced pregnancy, and my fathers, while terribly alarmed, found not in all the worlds a single protector! Then when the Bhrigu women found not a single protector, my mother held me in one of her thighs! If there be a punisher of crimes in the worlds, no one in all the worlds would dare comit a crime. If sin findeth not a punisher, the number of sinners becometh large. The man who having the power to prevent or punish sin doth not do so knowing that a sin hath been commited, is himself defiled by that sin. When kings and others, capable of protecting my fathers, protected them not, postponing that duty to the pleasures of life, I have just cause to be enraged with them! I am the lord of the creation (capable of punishing its iniquity)! I am incapable of obeying your command! Capable as I am of punishing this crime, if I abstain from

doing so, men will once more have to undergo a similar persecution! The fire of my wrath too that is ready to consume the worlds, if repressed will certainly consume, by its own energy, my own self! Ye masters, I know that ye ever seek the good of the worlds. Direct me therefore as to what may benefit both myself and the worlds!

'Vashishta continued,—The Pitris replied, saying,

O throw this fire that is born of thy wrath and that desireth to consume the worlds, into the waters. That will do thee good. The worlds, indeed, are all dependent on water (as their elementary cause). Every juicy substance containeth water: indeed, the whole universe is made of water. Therefore, O thou best of Brahmanas, cast this fire of thy wrath into the waters. If, therefore, thou desirest it, O Brahmana, let this fire born of thy wrath abide in the great ocean, consuming the waters thereof, for it hath been said that the worlds are made of water. In this way, O thou sinless one, thy word will be rendered true, and the worlds with the gods will not be destroyed!—

'Vashishta continued,—Then, O child, Aurvya cast the fire of his wrath into the abode of Varuna. And that fire consumeth the waters of the great ocean. And that fire became like unto a large horse's head which persons conversant with the Vedas call by the name of *Vadavā-mukha*. And emitting itself from that mouth it consumeth the waters of the mighty ocean! Blest be thou! It behoveth not thee, therefore, to destroy the worlds, O Parāshara, thou who art acquainted with the higher regions, thou foremost of wise men!—' "

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-scond Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXXIII.

(*Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.*)

"The Gandharva continued, 'The Brahmana sage (Parāshara) thus addressed by the illustrious Vashishta controlled his wrath from destroying the worlds. But the Rishi Parāshara endued with great energy—the son of Shaktri—the

foremost of all persons acquainted with the Vedas—performed a grand Rakshasa sacrifice. And remembering the slaughter of (his father) Shaktri, the great Muni began to consume the Rakshasas, young and old, in the sacrifice he performed. And Vashishta did not restrain him from this slaughter of the Rakshasas, from the determination of not obstructing this second vow (of his grandson). And in that sacrifice the great Muni Parāshara sat before three blazing fires, himself like unto a fourth fire. And the son of Shaktri, like the Sun just emerged from the clouds, illuminated the whole firmament by that stainless sacrifice of his in which large were the libations poured of clarified butter. Then Vashishta and the other Rishis regarded that Muni blazing with his own energy as if he were a second Sun. Then the great Rishi Atri of liberal soul, desirous of ending that sacrifice,—an achievement highly difficult for others,—came to that place. And there also came, O thou slayer of all foes, Pulastya and Pulaha and Kratu the performer of many great sacrifices, all influenced by the desire of saving the Rakshasas. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, Pulastya then, seeing that many Rakshasas had already been slain, told these words unto Parāshara that oppressor of all enemies.

'There is no obstruction, I hope, to this sacrifice of thine, O child? Takest thou any pleasure, O child, in this slaughter of even all those innocent Rakshasas that know nothing of thy father's death? It behoveth thee not to destroy my creatures thus! This, O child, is not the occupation of Brahmanas devoted to asceticism. Peace is the highest virtue. Therefore, O Parāshara, practise thou peace! How hast thou, O Parāshara, being so superior, engaged thyself in such a sinful practice? It behoveth not thee to transgress against Shaktri himself who was well acquainted with all rules of morality! It behoveth not thee to exterminate my creatures! O descendant of Vashishta's race, that which befell thy father was brought about by his own curse! It was for his own fault that Shaktri was taken hence unto heaven! O Muni, no Rakshasa was capable of devouring Shaktri; he himself provided for his own death! And, O Parāshara, Visvāmitra

was only a blind instrument in that matter. Both Shaktri and Kalmāshpāda, having ascended to heaven, are enjoying great happiness. And the other sons also of the great Rishi Vashishta who were younger to Shaktri, are even now enjoying themselves with the celestials. And, O child, O offspring of Vashishta's son, thou hast also been, in this sacrifice, only an instrument in the destruction of these innocent Rakshasas! O blest be thou! Abandon this sacrifice of thine. Let it come to an end!—'

"The Gandharva continued, 'Thus addressed by Pulastya as also by the intelligent Vashishta, that mighty Muni—the son of Shaktri—then brought that sacrifice to an end. And the Rishi cast the fire that he had ignited for the purposes of the Rakshasa sacrifice into the deep woods on the north of the Himavat. And that fire may be seen to this day consuming Rakshasas and trees and stones in all seasons.' "

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-third Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXXIV.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

"Arjuna asked, 'For what cause, O Gandharva, did king Kalmāspāda command his queen to go unto that foremost of all persons conversant with the Vedas,—the master Vashishta? Why also did that illustrious and great Rishi Vashishta himself who was acquainted with every rule of morality know a woman he should not have known? O friend, was this an act of sin on the part of Vashishta? It behoveth thee to remove the doubts I entertain and refer to thee for solution!'

"The Gandharva replied, saying, 'O irrepressible Dhananjaya, listen to me as I answer the question thou hast asked in respect of Vashishta and king Kalmāshapāda that cherisher of friends! O thou best of the Bharatas, I have told thee all about how king Kalmāshapāda was cursed by Shaktri the illustrious son of Vashishta. Brought under the influence of the curse, that smiter of all foes—king Kalmāshapāda—with

eyes whirling in anger went out of his capital accompanied by his wife. And entering with his wife the solitary woods the king began to wander around. And one day while the king under the influence of the curse was wandering through that forest abounding in several kinds of deer and various other animals and overgrown with numerous large trees and shrubs and creepers and resounding with terrible cries, he became exceedingly hungry. And the monarch thereupon began to search for some food. Knawed with hunger, the king at last saw, in a very solitary part of the woods, a Brahmana and his wife coupling with each other. Alarmed at beholding the monarch, the couple ran away, their desires unfulfilled. Pursuing the retreating pair, the king forcibly seized the Brahmana. Then the Brahmani, beholding her lord seized, addressed the monarch, saying,—Listen to what I say, O monarch of excellent vows! It is known all over the world that thou art born in the Solar race, and that thou art ever vigilant in the practice of morality and devoted to the service of thy superiors! It behoveth thee not to commit sin, O thou irrepressible one, deprived though thou hast been of thy senses by (the Rishi's) curse! My season hath come, and wishful of my husband's company I was united with him. I have not been gratified yet. Be propitious unto us, O thou best of kings! Liberate my husband!—The monarch, however, without listening to her cries cruelly devoured her husband like a tiger devouring its desirable prey. Possest with wrath at this sight, the tears that woman shed blazed up like fire and consumed everything in that place. Afflicted with grief at the calamity that overtook her lord, the Brahmani in anger cursed the royal sage, Kalmāshpāda, saying,—Vile wretch, since thou hast today cruelly devoured in my very sight my illustrious husband dear unto me, even before my desires have been gratified, therefore shalt thou, O wicked one, afflicted by my curse, meet with instant death when thou unitest thyself with thy wife in season! And thy wife, O wretch, shall bring forth a son, uniting herself with that Rishi Vashishta whose children have been devoured by thee! And that child, O worst of kings, shhll be the perpetuator of thy race!—

And cursing the monarch thus, that lady of Angira's house bearing every auspicious mark, entered the blazing fire in the very sight of the monarch. And, O thou oppressor of all foes, the illustrious and exalted Vashishta, by his ascetic power and spiritual insight, immediately knew all. And long after this, when the king became freed from his curse, he approached his wife Madayanti when her season' came. But Madayanti softly sent him away. Under the influence of desire the monarch had no recollection of that curse. Hearing, however, the words of his wife, the best of kings became terribly alarmed. And recollecting the curse he repented bitterly of what he had done. And it was for this reason, O thou best of men, that the monarch, stained with the Brahmani's curse, appointed Vashishta to beget a son upon his queen.' "

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-fourth Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXXV.

(Chaitra-ratha Parva continued.)

"Arjuna asked, 'O Gandharva, thou art acquainted with everything! Tell us, therefore, what Veda-knowing Brahmana is worthy to be appointed as our priest!'

"The Gandharva replied, 'There is in these woods a shrine of the name of Utkochaka. Dhaumya the younger brother of Devala is engaged there in ascetic penances. Appoint him, if ye desire, your priest!' "

Vaisampayana said, "Then Arjuna, highly pleased with everything that had happened, gave unto that Gandharva his weapon of fire with befitting ceremonies. And addressing him, the Pandava also said, 'O thou best of Gandharvas, let the horses thou givest us remain with thee for sometime. When occasion cometh, we will take them from thee! Blest be thou!' Then the Gandharva and the Pandavas, respectfully saluting each other, left the delightful banks of the Bhāgirathee and went whithersoever they desired. Then, O Bharata, the Pandavas wending to Utkochaka the sacred asylum of Dhaumya installed Dhaumya as their priest. And Dhau-

mya the foremost of all conversant with the Vedas, receiving them with presents of wild fruits and roots, consented to become their priest. And the Pandavas with their mother forming the sixth of the company, having obtained that Brahmana as their priest regarded their sovereignty and kingdom as already regained and the daughter of the Panchala king as already obtained in the *Svayamvara*. And those bulls of the Bharata race, having obtained the master Dhaumya as their priest, also regarded themselves as placed under a powerful protector. And the high-souled Dhaumya, acquainted with the true meaning of the Vedas and every rule of morality, becoming the spiritual preceptor of the virtuous Pandavas, made them his *Yajamanas* (spiritual disciples). And that Brahmana, beholding those heroes endued with intelligence and strength and perseverence like unto the celestials, regarded them as already restored, by virtue of these their own accomplishments, to their sovereignty and kingdom. Then those kings of men, having had benedictions uttered upon them by that Brahmana, resolved to go, accompanied by him, to the *Svayamvara* of the princess of Panchala."

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-fifth Section in the Chaitra-ratha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXXVI.

(*Svayamvara Parva.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Then those tigers among men—those brothers—the five Pandavas, set out for Panchala to behold that country and Draupadi and the festivites (in view of her marriage). And those tigers among men—those oppressors of all enemies—in going along, with their mother, saw on the way numerous Brahmanas proceeding together. And those Brahmanas who were all *Brahmacharins* beholding the Pandavas, O king, asked them, 'Where do ye go? Whence also are ye come?' And Yudhish-thira replied unto them, saying, 'Ye bulls among Brahmanas, know ye that we are uterine brothers proceeding together with our mother. We are coming even from Ekachakrā.' The Brahmanas then said, 'Go ye this very

day to the abode of Drupada in the country of the Panchalas! A great *Svayamvara* takes place there, on which a large sum of money will be spent. We also are proceeding thither. Let us go together. Extraordinary festivities will take place (in Drupada's abode). The illustrious Yajna-sena, otherwise called Drupada, hath a daughter risen from the centre of the sacrificial altar. Of eyes like lotus leaves and features that are faultless, endued with youth and intelligence, she is extremely beautiful. And the slender-waisted Draupadi of every feature perfectly faultless, and whose body emitteth a fragrance like unto that of the blue lotus for full two miles around, is the sister of the strong-armed Dhrishta-dyumna gifted with great prowess—the (would-be) slayer of Drona—who was born with natural mail and sword and bow and arrows from the blazing fire, himself like unto a second fire. And that daughter of Yajna-sena will elect a husband from among the invited princes. And we are repairing thither to behold her and the festivities on the occasion, like unto the festivities of heaven. And to that *Svayamvara* will come from various lands kings and princes who are performers of sacrifices in which the presents to the Brahmanas are large; who are devoted to study, are holy, illustrious, and of rigid vows; who are young and handsome; and who are mighty charioteers and accomplished in arms. And desirous of winning the maiden, those monarchs will all give away much wealth and kine and food and other articles of enjoyment. And taking all that they will give away, and beholding the *Svayamvara*, and enjoying the festivities, we shall go whithersoever we like. And there will also come unto that *Svayamvara*, from various countries, actors, and bards singing the panegyrics of kings, and dancers, and reciters of Puranas, and heralds, and powerful athletes. And beholding all these sights and taking what will be given away, ye illustrious ones, ye will return with us. Ye are all handsome and like unto the celestials! Beholding ye, Krishnā may, by chance, choose some one amongst ye superior to the rest. This thy brother of mighty arms, and handsome and endued with beauty also, engaged in (athletic) encounters, may, by chance, earn great wealth!'

"Hearing these words of the Brahmanas, Yudhish-thira replied, 'Ye Brahmanas, we all will go with ye to behold that maiden's *Svayamvara*—that excellent jubilee.'"

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-sixth Section in the Svayamvara of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXXVII.

(*Svayamvara Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Thus addressed by the Brahmanas, the Pandavas, O Janamejaya, proceeded towards the country of the southern Panchalas ruled over by king Drupada. And on their way those heroes beheld the illustrious Dwaipayana—that Muni of pure soul and perfectly sinless. And duly saluting the Rishi and saluted by him, after their conversation was over, commanded by him they proceeded to Drupada's abode. And those mighty charioteers proceeded by slow stages, staying for sometime within those beautiful woods and fine lakes that they beheld along their way. Devoted to study, pure in their practices, amiable, and sweet-speeched, the Pandavas at last entered the country of the Panchalas. And beholding the capital as also the fort, they took up their quarters in the house of a potter. And adopting the Brahmanical profession, they began to lead an eleemosynary life. And no men recognised those heroes during their stay in Drupada's capital.

"Yajna-sena always cherished the wish of bestowing his daughter on Kiriti (Arjuna) the son of Pandu. But he never spoke of this wish to anybody. And, O Janamejaya, the king of Panchala thinking of Arjuna, caused a very stiff bow to be made that was incapable of being bent by anybody except Arjuna. And causing some machinery to be erected in the sky, the king set up a mark attached to that machinery. And Drupada said, 'He that will string this bow and with these well-adorned arrows shoot the mark above the machine shall obtain my daughter.'"

Vaisampayana continued "With these words king Drupada proclaimed the *Svayamvara*. And hearing them, O Bharata, the kings of other lands came to his capital. And there came

also many illtstrious Rishis desirous of beholding the *Svayamvara.* And there came also, O king, Duryodhana and the Kurus accompanied by Karna. And there also came many superior Brahmanas from every country. And the monarchs who came there were all received with reverence by the illustrious Drupada. And desirous of beholding the Svayamvara, the citizens, roaring like the sea, all took their seats on the platforms that were erected around the amphitheatre. And the monarch entered the grand amphitheatre by the north-eastern gate. And the amphitheatre itself had been erected on an auspicious and level plain to the north-east of Drupada's capital. And it was surrounded on all sides by beautiful mansions. And it was enclosed on all sides with high walls and a moat with arched door-ways here and there. And the vast amphitheatre was also shaded by a canopy of various colors. And resounding with the notes of thousands of trumpets, it was scented with the black aloe and sprinkled all over with water mixed with sandal paste and adorned with garlands of flowers. And it was surrounded on all sides by high mansions perfectly white and resembling the cloud-kissing peaks of Kailasa. And the windows of those mansions were covered with net-works of gold, and the walls were set with diamonds and precious stones. And the staircases were easy of ascent and the floors were covered with costly carpets and cloths. And all those mansions were adorned with wreathes and garlands of flowers and rendered fragrant with excellent aloes. And they were all white and spotless, like unto the necks of swans. And their fragrance could be perceived from the distance of a *Yojana.* And they were each furnished with a hundred doors wide enough to admit a crowd of persons. And they were adorned with costly beds and carpets; and beautified with various metals, they resembled the peaks of the Himavat. And in those seven-storied houses of various sizes dwelt the monarchs that were invited by Drupada—their persons adorned with every ornament and possessed with the desire of excelling one another. And the denizens of the city and the country who had come to behold Krishnā and taken their seats on the excellent platforms erected around, beheld seated within those mansions those lions among kings

who were all endued with the energy of great souls. And those exalted sovereigns were all adorned with the fragrant paste of the black aloe. Of great liberality, they were all devoted to Brahma and they protected their kingdoms against all foes. And for their own good deeds they were the loved of the whole world.

"The Pandavas too, entering that amphitheatre, sat with the Brahmanas and beheld the unrivalled affluence of the king of the Panchalas. And that concourse of princes, Brahmanas, and others, looking gay with the peformances of actors and dancers and in which large presents of every kind of wealth were constantly made, began to increase day by day. And it lasted, O king, for several days, till on the sixteenth day when it was at its full, the daughter of Drupada, O thou bull of the Bharata race, having washed herself clean, entered that amphitheatre, richly attired and adorned with every ornament and bearing in her hand a golden dish (whereon were the usual offerings of the *Arghya*) and a garland of flowers. Then the priest of the Lunar race—a holy Brahmana conversant with all *mantras*—igniting the sacrificial fire poured with due rites libations of clarified butter into it. And gratifying Agni by those libations and making the Brahmanas utter the auspicious formula of benediction, stopped the musical instruments that were playing all around. And when that vast amphitheatre, O monarch, became perfectly still, Dhrishtadyumna possessing a voice deep as that of the kettle-drum or the clouds, taking hold of his sister's arm stood in the midst of that concourse, and said, with a voice loud and deep as that of the clouds, these charming words of excellent import: 'Hear ye assembled kings, this is the bow, that is the mark, and these are the arrows! Shoot the mark through the orifice of the machine by means of these five sharpened arrows! Truly do I say, that possessed of lineage, beauty of person, and strength, he that achieveth this great feat shall obtain today this my sister Krishnā as his wife!' Having spoken unto the assembled monarchs thus, Drupada's son then addressed his sister, reciting unto her the names and lineage and achievements of those assembled lords of the earth."

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-seventh Section in the Svayamvara of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXXVIII.

(Svayamvara Parva continued.)

"Dhrista-dyumna said, 'Duryodhana, Durvishaha, Durmukha and Dushpradharshana; Vivingsati, Vikarna, Saha, and Dusshasana; Yuyutsu and Vayuvega and Bhima-vegrava; Urgrāyudha, Valāki, Kankāyu, and Virochana, Sukundala, Chitrasena, Suvarcha, and Kanaka-dhaja; Nandaka, and Vàhusali, and Tuhunda, and Vikata; these, O sister, and many other mighty sons of Dhrita-rashtra—heroes all—accompanied with Karna, have come for thy hand! Innumerable other illustrious monarchs—all bulls among Kshatriyas—have also come for thee! Sakuni, Sauvala, Vrishaka, and Vrihadvala,—these sons of the king of Gāndhara—have also come. Foremost of all wielders of weapons—the illustrious Aswathama and Bhoja—adorned with every ornament have also come for thee! Vrihanta, Manimāna, Danda-dhara, Sahadeva, Jayat-sena, Megha-sandhi, Virāta with his two sons Sankha and Uttara, Vārdha-kshemi, Susharmā, Senā-vindu, Suketu with his two sons Sunāmā and Suvarchā, Suchitra, Sukumāra, Vrika, Satyadhriti, Suryadhaja, Rochamāna, Nila, Chitrāyudha, Angsumāna, Chekitāna, the mighty Srenimāna, Chandra-sena the mighty son of Samudra-sena, Jalasandha, Vidanda and Danda—the father and son, Paundraka, Vāsudeva, Bhagadatta endued with great energy, Kalinga, Tāmralipta, the king of Pattana, the mighty charioteer Salya the king of Madra with his son the heroic Rukmangada, Rukma-ratha, Somadatta of the Kuru race with his three sons, all mighty charioteers and heroes, *viz*, Bhuri, Bhurisrava, and Shala, Sudhakshina, Kamvoja, Dhridadhanvā of the Puru race, Vrihadvala Sushena, Shivi the son of Usinara, Patach-charanihantā, the king of Kārusha, Sankarsana (Valadeva), Vāsudeva (Krishna), the mighty son of Rukminy, Shamva Charudeshna, the son of Pradyumna with Gada, Akrura, Satyaki, the high-souled Udhava, Kritavarmá the son of Hridikā, Prithu, Viprithu,

Viduratha, Kanka, Sankha with Gaveshana, Asāvaha, Anirudha, Samika, Sārimejaya, the heroic Vātāpati, Jhilli, Pindāraka, the powerful Usinara,—all these of the Vrishni race, Bhagiratha, Vrihatkshatra, Jayadratha the king of Sindhu, Vrihadratha, Vālhika, the mighty charioteer Srutāyu, Uluka, Kaitava, Chitrāngada and Suvàngada, the highly intelligent Vatsa-raja, the king of Koshala, Shishupāla and the powerful Jarà-sandha, these and many other great kings—all Kshatriyas celebrated throughout the world—have come, O blessed one, for thee! Endued with prowess, these will shoot the mark. And thou shalt choose him for thy husband who amongst these will shoot the mark!' "

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-eighth Section in the Svayamvara of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXXXIX.

(*Svayamvara Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Then those youthful princes adorned with ear-rings, vieing with one another and each regarding himself accomplished in arms and gifted with might, stood up brandishing their weapons. And intoxicated with the pride of beauty, prowses, lineage, knowledge, wealth, and youth, they were like Himalyan elephants in the season of rut with crowns split from excess of temporal juice. And beholding each other with jealousy and influenced by the god of Desire, they suddenly rose up from their royal seats, exclaiming 'Krishnā shall be mine.' And the Kshatriyas assembled in that amphitheatre, each desirous of winning the daughter of Drupada, looked like the celestials (of old) standing round Umā the daughter of the King of mountains. Afflicted with the shafts of the god of the flowery bow and with hearts utterly lost in the contemplation of Krishnā, those princes descended into the amphitheatre for winning the Panchala maiden and began to regard even their best friends with jealousy. And there came also the celestials on their cars, with the Rudras and the Adityas, the Vasus and the twin Aswinas, the Sadhyas and all the Marutas, and Kuvera with Yama walking ahead. And there

came also the Daityas and the Suparnas, the great Nagas and the celestial Rishis, the Guhyakas and the Charanas, the Viswavasus, and Narada and Parvata, and the principal Gandharvas with the Apsaras. And Halāyaudha (Vala-deva) and Janarddana (Krishna) and the chiefs of the Vrishni, Andhaka, and Yādava tribes who obeyed the leadership of Krishna, were also there, viewing the scene. And beholding those elephants in rut—the five (Pandavas)—attracted towards Draupadi like mighty elephants towards a lake overgrown with lotuses, or like fire covered with ashes, Krishna the foremost of Yadu heroes began to reflect. And he said unto Rama (Valadeva),—'That is Yudhish-thira; that is Bhima with Jishnu (Arjuna); and those are the twin heroes.' And Rama surveying them slowly cast a glance of satisfaction on Krishna. Biting their nether lips in wrath, the other heroes there—sons and grandsons of kings—with their eyes and hearts and thoughts set on Krishnā, looked with expanded eyes on Draupadi alone without noticing the Pandavas. And the sons of Prithā also, of mighty arms, and the illustrious twin heroes, beholding Draupadi, were all likewise struck by the shafts of Kāma. And crowded with celestial Rishis and Gandharvas and Suparnas and Nagas and Asuras and Sidhyas, and filled with celestial perfumes and scattered over with celestial flowers, and resounding with the kettle-drum and the deep hum of infinite voices, and echoing with the softer music of the flute, the Vina, and the tabor, the cars of the celestials, could scarcely find a passage through the firmament. Then those princes—Karna, Duryodhana, Shalva, Shālya, Aswathamā, Krātha, Sunitha, Vakra, the rulers of Kalinga and Banga, Pāndya, Paundra, the ruler of Videha, the chief of the Yavanas,—and many other sons and grandsons of kings,—sovereigns of territories with eyes like lotus leaves,—one after another began to exhibit their prowess for (winning) that maiden of unrivalled beauty. Adorned with crowns, garlands, bracelets, and other ornaments, endued with mighty arms, possest of prowess and vigor and bursting with strength and energy, those princes could not, even in imagination, string that bow of extraordinary stiffness,

"And (some amongst) those kings in exerting with swelling lips—each according to his strength, education, skill, and energy,—to string that bow, were tossed on the ground and lay perfectly motionless for some time. Their strength spent and their crowns and garlands loosened from their persons, they began to pant for breath and their ambition of winning that fair maiden was cooled. Tossed by that tough bow, and their garlands and bracelets and other ornaments disordered, they began to utter exclamations of woe. And that assemblage of monarchs, their hope of obtaining Krishnā gone, looked sad and woeful. And beholding the plight of those monarchs, Karna that foremost of all wielders of the bow went to where the bow was, and quickly raising it stringed it soon and placed the arrows on the string. And beholding the son of Surya—Karna of the Suta tribe—like unto fire, or Soma, or Surya himself, resolved to shoot the mark, those foremost of bowmen—the sons of Pandu—regarded the mark as already shot, and brought down upon the ground. But seeing Karna, Draupadi loudly said, 'I will not elect a Suta for my lord!' Then Karna, laughing in vexation and casting a glance on the Sun, threw aside the bow already drawn to a circle.

"Then when all those Kshatiyas gave up the task, the heroic king of the Chedis—mighty as Yama himself—the illustrious and determined Shishupāla the son of Damaghosa, in endeavouring to string the bow, himself fell upon his knees on the ground. Then king Jarāsandha endued with great strength and powers, approaching the bow stood there for some moments fixed and motionless like a mountain. Tossed by the bow, he too fell upon his knees on the ground. And rising up, the monarch left the amphitheatre for returning to his kingdom. Then the great hero Shalya the king of Madra, endued with great strength, in endeavouring to string the bow fell upon his knees on the ground. At last when in that assemblage consisting of highly respectable people, all the monarchs had become the subjects of derisive talk, that foremost of heroes—Jishnu the son of Kunti—desired to string the bow and place the arrows on the bowstring."

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-ninth Section in the Svayamvara of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXL.

(Svayamvara Parva Continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, "When all the monarchs had desisted from stringing that bow, the high-souled Jishnu arose from among the crowd of Brahmanas seated in that assembly. And beholding Pārtha possessing the complexion of Indra's banner, advancing towards the bow, the principal Brahmanas shaking their deer-skins raised a loud clamour. And while some were displeased, there were others that were well-pleased. And some there were, possessed of intelligence and foresight, who addressing one another said, 'Ye Brahmanas, how can a Brahmana stripling, unpracticed in arms and weak in strength, string that bow which such celebrated Kshatriyas as Salya and others, endued with might and accomplished in the science and practice of arms, could not? If he doth not achieve success in this untried task which he hath undertaken from a spirit of boyish restlessness, the entire body of Brahmanas here will be ridiculous in the eyes of the assembled monarchs. Therefore, forbid this Brahmana that he may not go to string the bow which he is even now desirous of doing from vanity, childish daring, or mere restlessness.' Others replied, 'We shall not be ridiculous, nor shall we incur the disrespect of anybody or the displeasure of the sovereigns.' Some remarked, 'This handsome youth who is even like the trunk of a mighty elephant, whose shoulders and arms and thighs are so well-built, who in patience looks like the Himavat, whose gait is even like that of the lion, and whose prowess seems to be like that of an elephant in rut, and who is so resolute, will it is probable, accomplish this feat. He has strength and resolution. If he had none, he would never go of his own accord. Besides, there is nothing in the three worlds that Brahmanas of all mortal men cannot accomplish. Abstaining from all food or living upon air or eating of fruits, persevering in their vows, and emaciated and weak, Brahmanas are ever

strong in their own energy. One should never disregard a Brahmana whether his acts be right or wrong, by supposing him incapable of achieving any task that is great or little, or that is fraught with bliss or woe. Rama the son of Jamadagnya defeated in battle all the Kshatriyas. Agastya by his Brahma energy drank the fathomless ocean. Therefore, say ye—Let this youth bend the bow and string it with ease.—' Many said, 'So be it.' And the Brahmanas continued speaking unto one another these and other words. Then Arjuna approached the bow and stood there like a mountain. And walking round that bow, and bending his head unto that giver of boons—the lord Isāna,—and remembering Krishna also, he took it up. And that bow which Rukma, Sunitha, Vakra, Rādha's son, Duryodhana, Shàlya, and many other kings accomplished in the science and practice of arms, could not, even with great exertion, string, Arjuna the son of Indra, that foremost of all persons endued with energy and like unto the younger brother of Indra (Vishnu) in might, stringed within the twinkling of an eye. And taking up the five arrows he shot the mark and caused it to fall down on the ground through the hole in the machine above which it had been placed. Then there arose a loud uproar in the firmament, and the amphitheatre also resounded with a loud clamour. And the gods showered celestial flowers on the head of Pārtha that slayer of foes. And thousands of Brahmanas began to wave their upper garments in joy. And all around, the monarchs who had been unsuccessful, uttered exclamations of grief and despair. And flowers were rained from the skies all over the amphitheatre. And the muscians struck up in concert. Bards and heralds began to chaunt in sweet tones the praises (of the hero who accomplished the feat). And beholding Arjuna, Drupada—that slayer of foes—was filled with joy. And the monarch desired to assist with his forces the hero if occasion arose. And when the uproar was at its height, Yadhish-thira the foremost of all virtuous men, accompanied by those first of men the twins, hastily left the amphitheatre for returning to his temporary home. And Krishnā beholding the mark shot and beholding Pārtha also,

like unto Indra himself, who had shot the mark, was filled with joy, and approached the son of Kunti with a white robe and a garland of flowers. And Arjuna the accomplisher of inconceivable feats, having won Draupadi by his success in the amphitheare, was saluted with reverence by all the Brahmanas. And he soon after left the lists followed close by her who thus became his wife."

Thus ends the hundred and nintieth Section in the Svayamvara of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXLI.

(Svayamvara Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "When the king (Drupada) expressed his desire of bestowing his daughter on that Brahmana (who had shot the mark), all those monarchs who had been invited to the *Svayamvara*, looking at one another, were suddenly filled with wrath. And they said, 'Passing us by and regarding the assembled monarchs as straw this Drupada desireth to bestow his daughter—that first of women—on a Brahmana! Having planted the tree he cutteth it down when it is about to bear fruit. The wretch regardeth us not: therefore let us slay him! He deserveth not our respect, nor, the veneration due to age. Owing to such qualities of his, we shall therefore, slay this wretch that insulteth all kings, along with his son! Inviting all the monarchs and entertaining them with excellent food, he disregardeth us at last. In this assemblage of monarchs like unto a conclave of the celestials, doth he not see a single monarch equal unto himself? The Vedic declaration is well-known that the *Svayamvara* is for the Kshatriyas. The Brahmanas have no claim in respect of an election of husband by a Kshatriya damsel. Or, ye kings, if this damsel desireth not to elect any one of us as her lord, let us cast her into the fire and return to our kingdoms. As regards this Brahmana, although he hath, from offiicousness or avarice, done this injury to the monarchs, he should not yet be slain; for our kingdoms, lives, treasures, sons, grandsons, and whatever other wealth we have, all exist for Brahmanas. Some-

thing must be done here (even unto him) so that from fear of disgrace and the desire of maintaining what properly belongeth unto each order, other *Svayamvara* may not terminate in this way.'

"Having addressed one another thus, those tigers among monarchs endued with arms like unto spiked iron maces, took up their weapons and rushed at Drupada for slaying him then and there. And Drupada beholding those monarchs all at once rushing towards him in anger with bow and arrows, sought, from fear, the protection of the Brahmanas. But those mighty bowmen (Bhima and Arjuna) of the Pāndavas, capable of chastising all foes, advanced to oppose those monarchs rushing towards them inpetuously like elephants in the season of rut. Then the monarchs with fingers cased in leather and upraised weapons rushed in anger at the Kuru princes Bhima and Arjuna for slaying them. Then the mighty Bhima of extraordinary achievements, endued with the strength of thunder, tore up like an elephant a large tree and divested it of its leaves. And with that tree, the strong-armed Bhima the son of Prithā,—that grinder of all foes,—stood, like unto the mace-bearing king of the Dead (Yama) armed with his fierce mace, near that bull amongst men Arjuna. And beholding that feat of his brother, Jishnu of extraordinary intelligence and himself also of inconceivable feats, wondered much. And equal unto Indra himself in achievements, casting off all fear he stood with his bow realy to receive those assailants. And beholding those feats of both Jishnu and his brother; Dāmodara (Krishna) of superhuman intelligence and inconceivable feats, addressing his brother, Halāyudha (Valadeva) of fierce energy, said, 'That hero there, of tread like that of a mighty lion, who draweth the large bow in his hand full four cubits in length, is Arjuna! There is no doubt, O Sankarshana, in this, if I am Vāsudeva! That other hero who having speedily torn up the tree hath suddenly become ready to drive off the monarchs, is Vrikodara! For no one in the world, except Vrikodara, could today perform such a feat in the field of battle! And, O Achyuta, that other youth of eyes like unto lotus leaves, of full four cubits' height, of gait like

that of a mighty lion. and humble withal, of fair cmplexion and prominent and shining nose, who hath, a little before, left the amphitheatre, is Dharma's son (Yudhish-thira). The two other youths, like unto Kārtikeya, are, I suspect, the sons of the twin Aswinas. I heard that the sons of Pandu along with their mother Prithā had all escaped fron the conflagration of the house of lac.' Then Halāyudha of complexion like unto that of clouds uncharged with rain, addressing his younger brother (Krishna), said with great satisfaction 'O, I am happy to hear, as I do from sheer good fortune, that our father's sister Prithā with the foremost of the Kaurava princes have all escaped (from death)!' "

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-first Section in the Svayamvara of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXLII.

(Svayamvara Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Then those bulls among Brahmanas shaking their deer-skins and water-pots made of cocanut-shells exclaimed, 'Fear not, we will fight the foe!' Arjuna smilingly addressing those Brahmanas exclaiming thus, said, 'Stand ye asside as spectators (of the fray) Showering hundreds of arrows furnished with straight points even I shall check, like snakes with *mantras*, all those angry monarchs.' Having said this, the mighty Arjuna taking up the bow he had obtained as dower accompanied by his brother Bhima, stood immovable as a mountain. And beholding those Kshatriyas who were ever furious in battle with Karna ahead, the heroic brothers rushed fearlessly at them like two elephants rushing against a host of hostile elephants. Then those monarchs eager for the fight fiercely exclaimed, 'The slaughter in battle of a Brahamana desiring to fght is permitted.' And saying this, the monarchs suddenly rushed agsinst the Brahmanas. And Karna endued with great energy rushed against Jishnu for fight. And Salya the mighty king of the Madras rushed against Bhima like one elephant rushing against another for the sake of a she-elphant in season; while Duryodhona and others, engaged with

the Brahmanas, skirmished with them lightly and carelessly. Then the illustrious Arjuna beholding Karna the son of Vikartana (Surya) advancing towards him, drew his tough bow and pierced him with his sharp-arrows. And the impetus of those whetted arrows furnished with fierce energy made Rādheya (Karna) faint. Recovering consciousness Kārna attacked Arjuua with greater care than before. Then Karna and Aajuna, both foremost of victorious warriors, desirous of vanquishing each other, fought madly on. And such was the lightness of hand they both displayed that (each enveloped by the other's shower of arrows) they both became invisible (unto the spectators of their encounter). 'Behold the strength of my arms,'—'Mark, how I have counteracted the feat,'—those were the words—intelligible to heroes alone—in which they addressed each other. And incensed at finding the strength and energy of Arjuna's arms unequalled on earth, Karna the son of Surya fought with greater vigor. And parrying all those impetuous arrows shot at him by Arjuna, Karna sent up a loud shout. And this feat of his was applauded by all the warriors. Then addressing his antagonist, Karna said, 'O thou foremost of Brahmanas, I am gratified to observe the energy of thy arms that knoweth no relaxation in battle and thy weapons themselves fit for achieving victory. Art thou the emrbodiment of the science of weapons, or art thou, Rama that best of Brahmanas, or Indra himself, or Indra's younger brother Vishnu called also Achyuta, who for disguising himself hath assumed the form of a Brahmana and mustering such energy of arms fighteth with me? No other person except the husband himself of Shachi or Kiriti the son of Pandu is capable of fighting with me when I am angry on the field of battle. 'Then hearing those words of his, Falgoona replied, saying, 'O Karna, I am neither the science of arms (personified), nor Rama endued with superhuman powers! I am only a Brahamana who is the foremost of all warriors—of all wielders of weapons. By the grace of my preceptor I have become accomplished in the *Brahma* and the *Paurandara* weapons. I am here to vanquish thee in battle. Therefore, O hero, wait a little!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus addressed (by Arjuna), Karna the adopted son of Rādhā desisted from the fight, for that mighty charioteer thought that *Brahma* energy is ever invincible. Meanwhile on another part of the field, the mighty heroes Shalya and Vrikodara, well-skilled in battle and possessed of great strength and proficiency, challenging each other, engaged in fight like two elephants in the season of rut! And they struck each other with their clenched fists and knees. And sometimes pushing each other forward and sometimes dragging each other near, sometimes throwing each other down face downwards and sometimes on the sides, they fought on, striking each other at times with their clenched fists. And encountering each other with blows hard as the clash of two masses of granite, the lists rang with the sounds of their combat. Fighting with each other thus for a few seconds, Bhima the foremost of the Kuru heroes taking up Shalya on his arms hurled him to a distance. And Bhima-sena —that bull amongst men—surprised all (by the dexterity of his feat) for though he threw Shalya on the ground he did it without hurting him much. And when Shalya was thus thrown down and Karna was struck with fear, the other monarchs were all alarmed. And they hastily surrounded Bhima, and exclaimed, 'Surely, these bulls amongst Brahmanas are excellent (warriors)! Ascertain in what race have they been born and where they abide. Who can encounter Karna the son of Rādhā in fight, except Rama, Drona, or Kiriti the son of Pandu? Who also can encounter Duryo-dhana in battle except Krishna the son of Devaki, and Kripa the son of Sharadwan? Who also can overthrow in battle Shalya—that first of mighty warriors—except the hero Valadeva, or Vrikodara the son of Pandu, or the horoic Duryodhana? Let us, therefore, desist from this fight with the Brahmanas. Indeed, Brahmanas, however offending, should yet be ever protected. And first let us ascertain who these are; for after we have done that we may cheerfully fight with them.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "And Krishna, having beheld that feat of Bhima, believed them both to be the sons of Kunti. And gently addressing the assembled monarchs, say-

ing, 'This maiden hath been justly acquired (by the Brahmana),' he induced them to abandon the fight. Accomplished in battle, those monarchs then desisted from the fight. And those best of monarchs then returned to their respective kingdoms, wondering much. And those who came there went away saying, 'The festive scene hath terminated in the victory of the Brahmanas. The princess of Panchala hath become the bride of a Brahmana.' And surrounded by Brahmanas dressed in skins of deer and other wild animals, Bhima and Dhananjaya passed with difficulty out of the throng. And those heroes among men, mangled by the enemy and followed by Krishnā, having at last escaped from that throng, looked like the moon in full and the sun emerged from the clouds.

"Meanwhile Kunti seeing that her sons were late in returning from their eleemosynary round, was filled with anxiety. And she began to think of various evils having overtaken her sons. At one time she thought that the sons of Dhrita-rashtra having recognised her children had slain them. Next she feared that some cruel and strong Rakshasas endued with powers of deception had slain them. And she asked herself, 'Could the illustrious Vyasa himself (who had directed my sons to come to Panchala) have been guided by perverse intelligence?' Thus reflected Prithā in consequence of her affection for her children. Then in the stillness of the late afternoon, Jishnu, accompanied by a body of Brahmanas, entered the abode of the potter, like the cloud-covered sun appearing in a cloudy day."

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-second Section in the Svayamvara of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXLIII.

(*Svayamvara Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Then those illustrious sons of Prithā, returning to the potter's abode, approached their mother. And those first of men represented Yājna-seni unto their mother as the *alms* they had obtained that day. And Kunti who was there within the room and saw not her sons, replied,

saying, 'Enjoy ye all (what ye have obtained)!' The moment after, she beheld Krishnā and then she said, 'Oh, what have I said!' And anxious with the fear of sin and reflecting how every one could be extricated from the situation, she took the cheerful Yājna-seni by the hand, and approaching Yudhishthira said, 'This daughter of king Yajna-sena upon being represented to me by thy younger brothers as the *alms* they had obtained, from ignorance, O king, I said what was proper, *viz, Enjoy ye all what hath been obtained.* O thou bull of the Kuru race, tell me how my speech may not become untrue, how sin may not touch the daughter of the king of Panchala, and how also she may not become uneasy!' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus addressed by his mother, that hero among men, that foremost scion of the Kuru race, the intelligent king (Yudhish-thira), reflecting for a moment, consoled Kunti, and addressing Dhananjaya, said, 'By thee, O Falgoona, hath Yājna-seni been won. It is proper, therefore, that thou shouldst wed her. O thou withstander of all foes, igniting the sacred fire take thou her hand with due rites!'

"Arjuna, hearing this, replied, 'O king, do not make me a participator in sin! Thy behest is not conformable to virtue! That is the path followed by the sinful. Thou shouldst wed first, then the strong-armed Bhima of inconceivable feats, then myself, then Nakula, and last of all, Sahadeva endued with great activity. Both Vrikodara and myself, and the twins and this maiden also, all await, O monarch, thy commands! When such is the state of things, do that, after reflection, which would be proper, conformable to virtue, productive of fame, and beneficial unto the king of Panchala. All of us are obedient to thee. O, command us as thou likest!' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of Jishnu, so full of respect and affection, the Pandavas all cast their eyes upon the princess of Panchala. And the princess of Panchala also looked at them all. And casting their glances on the illustrious Krishnā, those princes looked at one another. And taking their seats, they began to think of Draupadi alone, Indeed, after those princes of immeasurable energy

had looked at Draupadi, the god of Desire invaded their hearts and continued to grind all their senses. The ravishing beauty of Panchali had been modelled by the Creator himself, and superior to that of all other women on earth it could captivate the heart of every creature. And Yudhish-thira the son of Kunti, beholding his younger brothers, understood what was passing in their minds. And that bull among men immediately recollected the words of Krishna-Dwaipayana. And the king then, from fear of a division amongst the brothers, addressing all of them, said, 'The auspicious Draupadi shall be the common wife of us all !' "

Vaisampayana continued, "The sons of Pandu then, hearing those words of their eldest brother, began to revolve them in their minds in great cheerfulness. Then the hero of the Vrishni race (Krishna) suspecting the five persons he had seen in the *Svayamvara* to be none else than the heroes of the Kuru race, came, accompanied by the son of Rohiny (Valadeva), to the house of the potter where those foremost of men had taken up their quarters. And arrived there, Krishna and Valadeva beheld seated in that potter's house Ajata-shatru (Yudhish-thira) of well-developed and long arms, and his younger brothers possessing the splendour of fire sitting around him. Then Vāsudeva approaching that foremost of virtuous men—the son of Kunti—and touching the feet of that prince of the Ajamida race, said, 'I am Krishna ! And the son of Rohiny (Valadeva) also, approaching Yudhish-thira, did the same. And the Pandavas, beholding Krishna and Valadeva, began to express great delight. And, O thou foremost of the Bharata race, those heroes of the Yadu race thereafter touched also the feet of (Kunti) their father's sister. And Ajata-shatru—that foremost of the Kuru race—beholding Krishna enquired after his well-being and asked, 'How, O Vāsudeva, hast thou been able to trace us, living as we are in disguise ?' And Vāsudeva, smiling, answered, 'O king, fire, even if covered, can be known. Who else, among men, than the Pandavas could exhibit such might ? Ye resisters of all foes, ye sons of Pandu, by sheer good fortune have ye escaped from that fierce fire ! And it is by sheer good fortune alone

that the wretched son of Dhrita-rashtra and his counsellors have not succeeded in accomplishing their wishes. Blest be ye! And grow ye in prosperity like a fire in a cave gradually growing and spreading itself all around! And lest any of the monarchs recognise ye, give us leave to return to our tent!' Then, obtaining Yudhish-thira's leave, Krishna of prosperity knowing no decrease, accompanied by Vāladeva, hastily went away from the potter's abode."

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-third Section in the Svayamvara of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXLIV.

(Svayamvara Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "When the Kuru princes (Bhima and Arjuna) were wending towards the abode of the potter, Dhrishta-dyumna the Panchala prince followed them. And sending away all his attendants, he concealed himself in some part of the potter's house, unknown to the Pandavas. Then Bhima, that grinder of all foes, and Jishnu, and the illustrious twins, returning from their eleemosynary round in the evening, cheerfully gave everything unto Yudhish-thira Then the kind Kunti addressing the daughter of Drupada said, 'O amiable one, take thou first a portion from this and devote it to the gods and give it away to Brahmanas, and feed those that desire to eat and give unto those who have become our guests. Divide the rest into two halves. Give one of these unto Bhima, O amiable one, for this strong youth of fair complexion—equal unto a king of elephants—this hero always eateth much. And divide the other half into six parts, four for these youths, one for myself, and one for thee.' Then the princess hearing those excellent words of her mother-in-law, cheerfully did all that she had been directed to do. And those heroes then all ate of the food prepared by Krishnā. Then Sahadeva the son of Madri, endued with great activity, spread on the ground a bed of *Kusa* grass. Then those heroes, each spreading thereon his deer-skin, laid themselves down to sleep. And those foremost of the Kuru

princes laid themselves down with heads towards the south. And Kunti laid herself down along the line of their heads, and Krishnā along that of their feet. And Krishnā, though she lay with the sons of Pandu on that bed of *Kusa* grass along the line of their feet as if she were their nether pillow, grieved not in her heart nor thought disrespectfully of those bulls amongst the Kurus. Then those heroes began to converse with each other. And the conversation of those princes, each worthy to lead an army, was exceedingly interesting, being upon celestial weapons, and cars, and elephants, and swords, and arrows, and battle-axes. And the son of the Panchala king listened (from his place of concealment) unto all they said. And all those who were with him beheld Krishnā in that state.

"When morning came, the prince Dhrishta-dyumna set out from his place of concealment with great haste inorder to report to Drupada in detail all that had happened at the potter's abode and all that he had heard those heroes to say amongst one another during the night. The king of Panchala had been sad because he knew not as Pandavas those who had taken away his daughter. And the illustrious monarch asked Dhrishta-dyumna on his return, 'Oh, where hath Krishnā gone? Who hath taken her away? Hath any Sudra or anybody of mean descent, or hath a tribute-paying Vaisya, by taking my daughter away, placed his dirty foot on my head? O son, hath that wreathe of flowers been thrown away on a grave-yard? Hath any Kshatriya of high brith, or any one of the superior order (Brahmana) obtained my daughter? Hath any one of mean descent, by having won Krishna, placed his left foot on my head? I would not, O son, grieve but feel greatly happy, if my daughter hath been united with Pārtha that foremost of men! O thou exalted one, tell me truly, who hath won my daughter today! O, are the sons of that foremost of the Kurus—Vichitra-virya's son—alive? Was it Pārtha (Arjuna) that took up the bow and shot the mark?'"

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-fourth Section in the Svayamvara of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXLV.

(*Vaivāhika Parva.*)

Vaisampayana said "Thus addressed, Dhrishta-dyumna, that foremost of the Lunar princes, cheerfully said unto his father all that had happened and by whom had Krishnā been won. And the prince said, 'With large, red, eyes, attired in deer-skin, and resembling a celestial in beauty, the youth who stringed that foremost of bows and brought down on earth the mark set on high, was soon surrounded by the foremost of Brahmanas who also offered him their homage for the feat he had achieved. Incapable of bearing the sight of a foe and endued with great activity, he began to exert his prowess. And surrounded by the Brahmanas he resembled the thunder-wielding Indra standing in the midst of the celestials and the Rishis. And like a she-elephant following the leader of a herd, Krishnā cheerfully followed that youth catching hold of his deer-skin. Then when the assembled monarchs incapable of bearing that sight rose up in wrath and advanced for fight, there rose up another hero who tearing up a large tree rushed against that concourse of kings felling them right and left like Yama himself smiting down creatures endued with life. Then, O monarch, the assembled kings stood motionless looking at that couple of heroes, while they, resembling the Sun and the Moon, taking Krishnā with them, left the amphitheatre and wended unto the abode of a potter in the suburbs of the town. And there at the potter's sat a lady like unto a flame of fire who, I ween, is their mother. And around her also sat three other foremost of men each of whom was like unto fire. And the couple of heroes having approached her paid homage unto her feet, and they said unto Krishnā also to do the same. And keeping Krishnā with her, those foremost of men all went out on a tour of eleemosynation. Sometime after when they returned, Krishnā taking from them what they had obtained in alms, devoted a portion thereof to the gods, and gave another por-

tion away in gift to Brahmanas. And of what remained after this, she gave a portion to that venerable lady, and distributed the rest amongst those five foremost of men. And she took a little for herself and ate it last of all. Then, O monarch, they all laid themselvs down for sleep, Krishna lying along the line of their feet as their nether pillow. And the bed on which they lay was made of *Kusa* grass upon which was spread their deer skins. And before going to sleep they talked on diverse subjects in voices deep as of black clouds. And the talk of those heroes was such that neither Vaisyas nor Sudras, nor Brahmanas, would talk in that way. Without doubt, O monarch, they are all bulls amongst Kshatriyas, their talk having been on military subjects. It seems, O father, that our hope hath fructified, for we have heard that the sons of Kunti all escaped from the conflagration of the house of lac. From the way in which the mark was shot down by that youth, and the strength with which the bow was stringed by him, and the manner in which I have heard them talk with one another, it is certain, O monarch, that they are the sons of Prithā wandering in disguise.

"Hearing these words of his son, king Drupada became exceedingly glad, and he sent unto them his priest directing him to ascertain who they were and whether they were the sons of the illustrious Pandu. Thus directed, the king's priest went unto them and applauding them all, delivered the king's message duly, saying, 'Ye who are worthy of preference in everything, the boon-giving king of the earth—Drupada—is desirous of ascertaining who ye are! Beholding this one who hath shot down the mark, his joy knoweth no bounds. Giving us all particulars of your family and tribe, place ye your feet on the heads of your foes and gladden the hearts of the king of Panchala and his men and mine also! King Pandu was the dear friend of king Drupada and regarded by him as his counter self. And Drupada had all along cherished the desire of bestowing this daughter of his upon Pandu as his daughter-in-law. Ye heroes of features perfectly faultless, king Drupada hath all along cherished this deire in his heart that Arjuna of strong and long arms might wed this daughter

of his according to the ordinance. If that hath become possible, nothing could be better, nothing more beneficial, nothing more conducive to fame and virtue, so far as Drupada is concerned.'

"Having said this, the priest became silent and humbly waited for an answer. And beholding him sitting thus, the king (Yudhish-thira) commanded Bhima who sat near, saying, 'Let water to wash his feet and *Arghya* be offered unto this Brahmana. He is king Drupada's priest and therefore worthy of great respect. We should worship him with more than ordinary reverence.' Then, O monarch, Bhima did as directed. And accepting the worship thus offered unto him, the Brahmana with a glad heart sat at his ease. Then Yudhish-thira addressed him and said, 'The king of Panchala hath, by appointing a special kind of dower, given away his daughter according to the practice of his order and not freely. This hero hath, by satisfying that demand, won the princess. King Drupada, therefore, hath nothing now to say in regard to the race, tribe, family, and disposition of him who hath performed that feat. Indeed, all his queries have been answered by the stringing of the bow and the shooting down of the mark. It is by doing what he had directed that this illustrious hero hath brought away Krishnā from among the assembled monarchs. Under these circumstances, the king of the Lunar race should not indulge in any regrets which can only make him unhappy (without mending matters in the least). The desire that king Drupada hath all along cherished will be accomplished, for this handsome princess beareth, I ween, every au-picious mark! None that is weak in strength could string that bow, and none of mean birth unaccomplished in arms could have shot down the mark. It behoveth not, therefore, the king of Panchala to grieve for his daughter today. Nor can anybody in the world undo that act of shooting down the mark. Therefore, the king should not grieve for what must take its course.'

"While Yudhish-thira was saying all this, another messenger from the king of Panchala, coming thither in haste, said 'The (nuptial) feast is ready.'"

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-fifth Section in the Vaivahika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXLVI.

(Vaivahika Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, "The messenger said, 'King Drupada hath in view of his daughter's nuptials, prepared a good feast for the bride-groom's party. Come ye thither after finishing your daily rites. Krishnā's wedding will take place there. Delay ye not. These chariots adorned with golden lotuses and drawn by excellent horses are worthy of kings. Riding on them, ye all come into the abode of the king of Panchala.'"

Vaisampayana continued, 'Then those bulls among the Kurus, dismissing the priest and causing Kunti and Krishnā to ride together upon one of those cars, themselves ascended those splendid vehicles and proceeded towards Drupada's palace. Meanwhile, O Bharata, hearing from his priest the words that Yudhish-thira the just had said, king Drupada, inorder to ascertain the order to which those heroes belonged, kept ready a large collection of articles (required under the ordiance for the wedding of each of the four orders). And he kept ready fruits, sanctified garlands, and coats of mail, and shields, and carpets, and kine, and seeds, and various other articles and implements of agriculture. And the king also collected, O monarch, every article appertaining to other arts, and various implements and apparatus of every kind of sport. And he also collected excellent coats of mail and shining shields, and swords and scimitars of fine temper, and beautiful chariots and horses, and first-class bows and well adorned arrows, and various kinds of missiles ornamented with gold. And he also kept ready darts and rockets and battle-axes and various utensils of war. And there were in that collection beds and carpets and various fine things, and cloths of various kinds. And when the party went to Drupada's abode, Kunti taking with her the virtuous Krishnā entered the inner apartments of the king. And the ladies of the king's household with joyous hearts worshipped the queen of the Kurus. And behold-

ing, O monarch, those foremost of men, each possessing the active gait of the lion, with deer-skins for their upper garments, eyes like unto those of mighty bulls, broad shoulders, and long hanging arms like unto the bodies of mighty snakes, the king, and the king's minister, and the king's son, and the king's friends, and attendants, became exceedingly glad. And those heroes sat on excellent seats furnished with foot-stools without any awkwardness and hesitation. And those foremost of men sat with perfect fearlessness on those costly seats one after another according to the order of their ages. And after those heroes were seated, well dressed servants, male and female, and skilful cooks brought excellent and costly viands worthy of kings on gold and silver plates. Then those foremost of men dined on those dishes and became well pleased. And after the dinner was over, those heroes among men, passing over all other articles, began to observe with interest the various utensils of war. And beholding this, Drupada's son and Drupada himself along with all his chief ministers of state, understanding the sons of Kunti to be all of royal blood, became exceedingly glad."

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-sixth Section in the Vaivahika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXLVII.

(Vaivahika Parvá continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Then the illustrious king of Panchala, addressing prince Yudhis-thira in the form applicable to Brahmanas, cheerfully asked that illustrious son of Kunti, saying, 'Are we to know ye as Kshatriyas, or Brahmanas, or accomplished Vaisyas, or as born in the race of Sudras? Or, are we to know ye as celestials who disguising themselves as Brahmanas are ranging the earth and come hither for the hand of Krishnā? O tell us truly, for we have great doubts! Shall we not be glad when our doubts have been resolved! O thou oppressor of all enemies, have the fates been propitious unto us? Tell us the truth willingly! Truth becometh monarchs better than sacrifices and dedications of tanks.

Therefore, tell us not what is untrue! O thou of the beauty of a celestial, O thou oppressor of enemies, hearing thy reply I shall arrange for my daughter's wedding according to the order to which ye belong!'

"Hearing these words of Drupada, Yudhish-thira answered, saying, 'Be not cheerless, O king! Let joy fill thy heart! The desire cherished by thee hath certainly been accomplished! We are Kshatriyas, O king, and sons of the illustrious Pandu. Know me to be the eldest of the sons of Kunti, and these to be Bhima and Arjuna! By these, O king, was thy daughter won amid the concourse of monarchs! The twins (Nakula and Sahadeva) and Kunti wait where Krishnā is. O thou bull amongst men, let grief be dispelled from thy heart, for we are Kshatriyas! Thy daughter, O monarch, hath like a lotus been only transferred from one lake into another! O king, thou art our reverend superior and chief refuge. I have told thee the whole truth!'"

Vaysampayana continued, "Hearing those words, king Drupada's eyes rolled in ecstasy, and filled with delight the king could not (for some moments) answer Yudhish-thira. Suppressing his joy with great exertion, that oppressor of all foes at last replied unto Yudhish-thira in proper words. And the virtuous monarch enquired how the Pandavas had escaped from the town of Varanavata. And the son of Pandu told the monarch every particular in detail of their escape from the burning palace of lac. And hearing everything that the son of Kunti said, king Drupada censured Dhrita-rashtra that ruler of men. And the monarch gave every assurance unto Yudhish-thira the son of Kunti. And that foremost of eloquent men there and then vowed to restore Yudhish-thira on his paternal throne.

"Then Kunti and Krishnā and Bhima and Arjuna and the twins, commanded by the king, all took up their quarters in a palace. And they continued, O king, to reside there treated by Yajna-sena with every respect. Then king Drupada along with his sons, assured by all that had happened, approaching Yudhish-thira, said, 'O thou of mighty arms, let the Kuru prince Arjuna take, with due rites, the hand of my daughter

this auspicious day, and let him, therefore, perform the usual initiatory rites of marriage.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of Drupada, the virtuous king Yudhish-thira replied, saying, 'O great king, I also shall have to marry!' Hearing him Drupada said, 'If it pleasest thee, take thou the hand of my daughter thyself with due rites! Or, give thou Krishnā in marriage with whomsoever of thy brothers thou likest!' Yudhishthira said, 'Thy daughter, O king, shall be the common wife of us all! Even thus it hath been ordered, O monarch, by our mother! I am unmarried still, and Bhima also amongst the sons of Pandu. This thy jewel of a daughter hath been won by Arjuna. This, O king, is the rule with us: to ever enjoy equally a jewel that we may obtain! O thou best of monarchs, that rule of conduct we cannot now abandon! Krishnā, therefore, shall become the wedded wife of us all. Let her take our hands, one after another, before the fire.'

"Drupada answered, 'O scion of the Kuru race, it hath been directed that one man may have many wives. But it hath never been heard that one woman may have many husbands! O son of Kunti, pure as thou art and acquainted with the rules of morality, it behoveth thee not to commit an act that is sinful and opposed both to usage and the Vedas! Why, O prince, hath thy understanding become so?' Yudhish-thira said in reply 'O monarch, morality is subtle. We do not know its course. Let us follow in the way that hath been trod by the illustrious ones of former ages. My tongue never uttereth an untruth. My heart also never turneth to what is sinful. My mother commandeth so; and my heart also approveth of it. Therefore, O king, this is quite conformable to virtue. Act according to it, without any scruples. Entertain no fear, O king, in this matter!'

"Drupada said, 'O son of Kunti, thy mother, and my son Dhrishta-dyumna, and thyself, settle amongst yourselves as to what should be done. Tell me the result of your deliberations and hereafter I will do what is proper.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "After this, O Bharata, Yudhishthira, Kunti, and Dhrishta-dyumna discoursed upon this

matter. Just at that time, however, Dwaipayana, O monarch, came there in course of his wanderings."

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-seventh Section in the Vaivahika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXLVIII.

(Vaivahika Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Then all the Pandavas and the illustrious king of Panchala and all others there present stood up and saluted with reverence the illustrious Rishi Krishna (-Dwaipayana). And the high-souled Rishi, saluting them in return and enquiring after their welfare, sat down on a carpet of gold. And commanded by Krishna (-Dwaipayana) of immeasurable energy, those foremost of men, all sat down on costly seats. A little while after, O monarch, the son of Prishata in sweet accents asked the illustrious Rishi about the wedding of his daughter. And he said, 'How, O illustrious one, can one woman become the wife of many men without being defiled by sin? O, tell me truly all about this?' And hearing these words, Vayasa replied, 'This practice, O king, being opposed to usage and the Vedas, hath become obsolete. I desire, however, to hear what the opinion of each of ye is upon this matter.'

"Hearing these words of the Rishi, Drupada spoke first, saying, 'The practice is sinful in my opinion, being opposed to both usage and the Vedas. Thou best of Brhmanas, nowhere have I seen many men having one wife. The illustrious ones also of former ages never had such an usage amongst them. The wise should never commit a sin. I, therefore, can never make up my mind to act in this way. This practice always appeareth to me of doubtful morality.'

"After Drupada had ceased, Dhrishta-dyumna spoke, saying, 'O thou bull amongst Brahmanas, O thou of ascetic wealth, how can, O Brahmana, the elder brother, if he is of good disposition, approach the wife of his younger brother? The ways of morality are ever subtle, and, therefore, we know them not. We cannot, therefore, say what is conformable

to morality and what not. We cannot do such a deed, therefore, with a safe conscience. Indeed, O Brahmana, I cannot say—*Let Draupadi become the common wife of five brothers.*'

"Yudhishthira then spoke, saying, 'My tongue never uttereth an untruth, and my heart never inclineth to what is sinful. When my heart approveth of it, it can never be sinful. I have heard in the Purana that a lady of name Jatilā,—the foremost of all virtuous women,—belonging to the race of Gotama had married seven Rishis. So also an ascetic's daughter born of a tree had in former times united herself in marriage with ten brothers bearing the same name of Prachetā and who were all of souls exalted by asceticism. O thou foremost of all who are acquainted with the rules of morality, it is said that obedience to superiors is ever meritorious. Amongst all superiors, it is well known that the mother is the foremost. Even she hath commanded us to enjoy Draupadi as we do anything obtained as *alms*. It is for this, O best of Brahmanas, that I regard the (proposed) act as virtuous.'

"Kunti then said, 'The fact is even so as the virtuous Yudhish-thira hath said. I greatly fear, O Brahmana, lest my speech becometh untrue! How shall I be saved from untruth!'

When they had all finished speaking, Vyasa said, 'O amiable one, thou shalt be saved from the consequences of untruth! Even this is the eternal virtue! I will not, O king of Panchala, discourse of this before ye all. But thou alone shalt listen to me when I disclose how this practice hath been established and why it is to be regarded as old and eternal. There is no doubt that what Yudhish-thira hath said is quite conformable to virtue.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Then the illustrious Vyasa—the master Dwaipayana—rose, and taking hold of Drupada's hand led him to a private apartment. And the Pandavas and Kunti and Dhrishta-dyumna of Prishata's race sat there waiting for the return of Vyasa and Drupada. Meantime Dwaipayana began his discourse with that illustrious monarch for explaining how the practice of polyandry could not be regarded as sinful."

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-eighth Section in the Vaivahika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CLXLIX.

(Vaivahika Parva Continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Vyasa continued, 'In days of yore, the celestials had once commenced a grand sacrifice in the forest of Naimisha. And in that sacrifice, O king, Yama the son of Vivaswan became the slayer of the devoted animals. And Yama being thus employed in that sacrifice, he did not, O king, slay a single one amongst human beings. And death being suspended in the world, the number of human beings increased very greatly. Then Soma and Shakra and Varuna and Kuvera, the Sadhyas, the Rudras, the Vasus, the twin Aswinas,—these and other celestials went unto Prajapati the Creator of the universe. And struck with fear at the increase of the human population of the world, they addressed the master of the creation and said,—Alarmed, O lord, at the increase of human beings on earth, we come to thee for relief! Indeed, we crave thy protection!—And hearing those words, the Grand-father said,—Ye have little cause to be frightened at this increase of human beings. Ye all are immortal! It behoveth ye not to take fright at human beings!—The celestials replied,—The mortals have all become immortal. There is no distinction now between us and them. Vexed at the disappearance of all distinction, we have come to thee inorder that thou mayest distinguish us from them!—The Creator then said,—The son of Vivaswan is even now engaged in the grand sacrifice. It is for this that men are not dying. But when Yama's work in connection with the sacrifice terminates, men will once more begin to die as before. Strengthened by your respective energies, Yama will, when that time comes, sweep away by thousands the inhabitants of the earth who will scarcely have then any energy left in them.'

"Vyasa continued, 'Hearing these words of the first-born deity, the celestials returned unto where the grand sacrifice was being performed, And the mighty ones sitting by the

side of the Bhāgirathee saw a (golden) lotus carried along the current. And beholding that (golden) lotus, they wondered much. And amongst them, that foremost of celestials—Indra—desirous of ascertaining whence it came, proceeded along the source of the Bhāgirathee. And reaching that spot where the goddess Gangā issues perennially, Indra beheld a woman possessing the splendour of fire. And the woman desirous of fetching water was washing herself in the stream, weeping all the while. And the tear-drops she shed, falling on the stream, were being transformed into golden lotuses. And the wielder of the thunder-bolt beholding that wonderful sight, approached that woman, and asked her, saying,—Who art thou, amiable lady? Why also dost thou weep? I desire to know the truth. O tell me everything!—'

"Vyāsa continued, 'The woman hearing this, answered,—O Shakra, thou mayst know who I am, and why, unfortunate that I am, do I weep, if only, O chief of the celestials, thou comest with me as I lead the way. Thou shalt then see what it is I weep for.—Hearing these words of the lady, Indra followed her as she led the way. And soon he saw, not far off from where he was, a handsome youth with a young lady seated on a throne placed on one of the peaks of the Himavat, and playing with dice. And beholding that youth, the chief of the celestials said,—Know, intelligent youth, that this universe is under my sway!—And seeing that the person addressed was so abstracted with dice that he took no notice of what he said, Indra was possessed with anger and repeated,—I am the lord of the universe!—And the youth who was none else than the god Mahādeva, seeing Indra filled with wrath, only smiled, having cast a glance upon him. And at that glance the chief of the celestials was at once paralysed and stood there like a stake. And when the game of dice was over, Isāna addressed the weeping woman, saying,—Bring Shakra hither, for I shall soon so deal with him that pride may not again enter his heart.—And as soon as Shakra was touched by that woman, with limbs pralysed by that touch the chief of the celestials fell down upon the earth. And the illustrious Isāna of fierce energy said unto him,—Act not, O Shakra, ever again in this

way. Take up this huge stone, for thy strength and energy are both immeasurable, and enter the hole (it will disclose); where await some others possessing the splendour of the sun and who are all like unto thee.—And Indra on removing that stone beheld a cave on the breast of that king of mountains, within which were four others resembling Indra himself. And beholding their plight, Shakra was possessed with grief and exclaimed,—Shall I be even like these?—Then the god Girisha (Isāna), looking full at Indra with expanded eyes, said in anger,—O thou of a hundred sacrifices, enter this cave without loss of time, for thou hast, from folly, insulted me before my eyes.—Thus addressed by the lord Isāna, the chief of the celestials, in consequence of that terrible imprecation, was deeply pained, and with limbs weakened by fear he trembled like the wind-shaken leaf of a Himalayan fig. And cursed unexpectedly by the god owning a bull for his vehicle, Indra, with joined hands and shaking from head to foot, addressed that fierce god of multiform manifestations, saying,—Thou art today, O Bhava, the foremost of the infinite universe!—Hearing these words, the god of fiery energy smiled and said,—Those that are of disposition like thine never obtain my grace. These others (within the cave) had at one time been like thee. Enter thou this cave, therefore, and lie there for some time. The fate of ye all shall certainly be the same. All of ye shall have to take your births in the world of men, where having achieved many difficult feats and slaying a large number of men, ye shall again, by the merits of your respective deeds, regain the valued region of Indra. Ye shall accomplish all I have said and much more, besides, of other kinds of work!—Then those Indras, divested of their glory, said,—We shall go from our celestial regions even unto the region of man where salvation is ordained to be difficult of acquisition. But let the gods Dharma, Vāyu, Maghavān, and the twin Aswinas beget us upon our would-be mother. Fighting with men by means of both celestial and human weapons, we shall again come back into the region of Indra.—"

"Vyāsa continued, 'Hearing these words of the former Indras, the wielder of the thunder-bolt once more addressed

the foremost of the gods, saying,—Instead of going myself, I shall, with a portion of my energy, create from myself a person for the accomplishment of the task (thou assignest), to form the fifth among these.—Viswabhuk, Bhuta-dhāmā, Shivi of great energy, Shānti the fourth, and Tejaswi,- these, it is said, were the five Indras of old. And the illustrious god of the formidable bow, from his kindness, granted unto the five Indras the desire they cherished. And he also appointed that woman of extraordinary beauty, and who was none else than the celestial Sree herself, to be their common wife in the world of men. And accompanied by all those Indras, the god Isāna then went unto Nārāyana of immeasurable energy,—the Infinite, the Immaterial, the Increate, the Old, the Eternal, and the Spirit of this universe without limits. And Nārāyana approved of every thing. And those Indras then took their birth in the world of men. And Hari (Nārāyana) took up two hairs from his body. And one of these hairs was black and the other white. And those two hairs entered the wombs of two of the dames of the Yadu race, of name Devaki and Rohini. And one of these hairs, *viz*, that which was white, became Valadeva. And the hair that was black became born as Keshava's self, Krishna. And those Indras of old who had been confined in the cave on the Himavat were none else than the sons of Pandu all endued with great energy. And Arjuna of the Pāndavas, called also Savya-sāchi (using both hands with equal dexterity) is a portion of Shakra.'

"Vyāsa continued, 'Thus, O king, they who have been born as the Pāndavas are none else than those Indras of old. And the celestial Sree herself who had been appointed as their wife is this Draupadi of extraordinary beauty. How could she whose effulgence is like that of the sun or the moon, whose fragrance spreadeth for two miles around, take her birth in any other than an extraordinary way, *viz*, from within the earth, by virtue of thy sacrificial rites? Unto thee, O king, I cheerfully grant this other boon in the form of spiritual sight. Behold now the sons of Kunti endued with their sacred and celestial bodies of old!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Saying this, that sacred Brāh-

mana, Vyāsa, of generous deeds, by means of his ascetic power, granted celestial sight unto the king. And thereupon the king beheld all the Pāndavas endued with their former bodies. And the king saw them possessed of celestial bodies, with golden crowns and celestial garlands, and each resembling Indra himself, with complexions like unto that of the fire or the sun, and decked in every ornament, and handsome, and youthful, with broad chests and statures measuring about five cubits. And endued with every accomplishment, and decked in celestial robes of great beauty and in fragrant garlands of excellent make, the king beheld them as so many three-eyed gods (Mahādeva), or Vasus, or Rudras, or Adityas themselves. And observing the Pāndavas in the forms of the Indras of old, and Arjuna also in the form of Indra sprung from Shakra himself, king Drupada was highly pleased. And the monarch wondered much on beholding that manifestation of celestial power under deep disguise. And the king looking at his daughter, that foremost of women endued with great beauty, like unto a celestial damsel, and possessed of the splendour of fire or the moon, regarded her as the worthy wife of those celestial beings, for her beauty, splendour, and fame. And beholding that wonderful sight, the monarch touched the feet of Satyavati's son, exclaiming, 'O great Rishi, nothing is wonderful in thee!' And the Rishi cheerfully continued, 'In a certain hermitage there was an illustrious Rishi's daughter, who, though handsome and chaste, obtained not a husband. And the maiden gratified, by severe ascetic penances, the god Shankara (Mahādeva). And the lord Shankara, gratified with her penances, told her himself,—Ask thou the boon thou desirest!—Thus addressed, the maiden repeatedly said unto the boon-giving Supreme lord,—I desire to obtain a husband possessed of every accomplishment.—And Shankara, the chief of the gods, gratified with her, gave her the boon she asked, saying.—Thou shalt have, amiable maiden, five husbands.—The maiden, who had succeeded in gratifying the god, said again,—O Shankara, I desire to have from thee only *one* husband possessed of every virtue!—The god of gods, well pleased with her, spake again, saying,—Thou hast, O maiden, address-

ed me full five times, repeating, *give me a husband.* Therefore, O amiable one, it shall even be as thou hast asked. Blest be thou. All this, however, will happen in a future life of thine.—'

"Vyāsa continued, 'O Drupada, this thy daughter of celestial beauty is that maiden. Indeed, the faultless Krishnā sprung in Prishata's race hath been pre-ordained to become the common wife of five husbands. The celestial Sree, having undergone severe ascetic penances, hath, for the sake of the Pāndavas, taken her birth as thy daughter, in the course of thy grand sacrifice. That handsome goddess waited upon by all the celestials, shall, as a consequence of her own acts, become the (common) wife of five husbands. It is for this that the Self-create hath created her. Having listened to all this, O king Drupada, do what thou desirest !' "

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-ninth Section in the Vaivahika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CC.

(Vaivahika Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said, "Drupada, on hearing this, observed, 'O great Rishi, it was only when I had not heard all this from thee that I had sought to act in the way I told thee of. Now, however, that I know all, I cannot be indifferent to what hath been ordained by the gods. Therefore do I resolve to accomplish what thou hast said. The knot of destiny cannot be untied. Nothing in this world is the result of our own acts. That which had been appointed by us in view of securing one only bride-groom hath now terminated in favor of many. As Krishnā (in a former life) had repeatedly said,—*O, give me a husband!*—the great god himself even gave her the boon she had asked. The god himself knoweth the right or the wrong of this. As regards myself, when Shankra hath ordained so, right or wrong, no sin can attach to me. Let these with happy hearts take, as ordained, the hand of this Krishnā with due rites.' "

Vaisampāyana continued, "Then the illustrious Vyāsa,

addressing Yudhish-thira the just, said, 'Today is an auspicious day, O son of Pāndu! This day the moon entereth the conjunction called *Paushya*. Take thou the hand of Krishnā today, thyself first before thy brothers!' When Vyāsa had said so, king Yajna-sena along with his son made preparations for the wedding. And the monarch brought various costly articles as marriage presents. And he brought out his daughter Krishnā also, decked, after a bath, in many jewels and pearls. Then there came to witness the wedding all the friends and relatives of the king, ministers of state, and many Brāhmanas and citizens. And they all took their seats according to their respective ranks. And adorned with that concourse of principal men, with its yard decked with lotuses and lilies scattered thereon, and beautified with lines of troops, king Drupada's palace, festooned around with diamonds and precious stones, looked like the firmament studded with brilliant stars. Then those princes of the Kuru line, endued with youth and adorned with ear-rings, attired in costly robes and perfumed with sandal paste, bathed and performed the usual rites of religion, and accompanied by their priest, Dhaumya, possessed of the splendour of fire, entered the wedding hall, one after another in due order, and with glad hearts, like mighty bulls entering the fold. Then Dhaumya, well conversant with the Vedas, igniting the sacred fire, poured with due *mantras* libations of clarified butter into that blazing element. And calling Yudhish-thira there, Dhaumya acquainted with *mantras* united him with Krishnā. And walking round the fire the bride-groom and the bride took each other's hand. And after their union was complete, the priest Dhaumya, taking leave of Yudhish-thira, that ornament of war, went out of the palace. Then those mighty charioteers,—those perpetuators of the Kuru line,—those princes attired in gorgeous dresses, took the hand of that best of women—day after day. And, O king, the celestial Rishi told me of a very wonderful and extraordinary thing (in connection with these marriages), *viz*, that the illustrious princess of slender waist, regained her virginity day by day after a previous marriage. And after the weddings were complete, king Drupada gave unto

those mighty charioteers various kinds of excellent wealth. And the king gave unto them one hundred chariots with golden flag-staffs, each drawn by four horses with golden bridles. And he gave them one hundred elephants all possessing auspicious marks on their temples and faces, and like unto a hundred mountains with golden peaks. And he also gave them a hundred female servants all in the prime of youth and decked in costly robes and ornaments and floral wreathes. And the illustrious monarch of the lunar race gave unto each of those princes of celestial beauty, making the sacred fire a witness of his gifts, a lakh of coins and many costly robes and ornaments of great splendour. And the sons of Pandu endued with great strength, after their weddings were over, and after they had obtained Krishnā like unto a second Sree along with great wealth, passed their days in joy and happiness, like so many Indras, in the capital of the king of Pānchāla."

Thus ends the two hundredth Section in the Vaivahika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCI.

(Vaivahika Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said, "King Drupada, after his alliance with the Pāndavas, had all his fears dispelled. Indeed, the monarch no longer stood in fear of even the gods. And the ladies of the illustrious Drupada's household, approaching Kunti, introduced themselves unto her, mentioning their respective names; and worshipped her feet with heads touching the ground. And Krishnā also, attired in red silk and her wrists still encircled with the auspicious thread, saluting her mother-in-law with reverence, stood contentedly before her with joined palms. And Prithā, from affection, pronounced a blessing upon her daughter-in-law endued with beauty and every auspicious mark and possessed of a sweet disposition and good character, saying, 'Be thou unto thy husbands as Shachi unto Indra, Swāhā unto Vibhāvasu, Rohini unto Soma, Damayanti unto Nala, Vadrā unto Vaisravana, Arundhati unto Vashishta, Lakshmi unto Nārāyana! O amiable

one, be thou the mother of long-lived and heroic children and possessed of every thing that can make thee happy! Let luck and prosperity ever wait on thee! And wait thou ever on husbands annointed for the performance of grand sacrifices. And be thou devoted to thy husbands. And let thy days be ever passed in duly entertaining and reverencing guests and strangers arrived at thy abode, and the pious and the old and children and superiors. And be thou installed as the Queen of the kingdom and the capital of Kurujāngala, with thy husband, Yudhish-thira the just! And, O daughter, let the whole earth, conquered by the prowess of thy husbands endued with great strength, be given away by thee unto Brāhmanas, in the horse-sacrifice! O thou accomplished one, whatever gems there are on earth possessing superior virtues, obtain thou, O lucky one, and be thou happy for a full hundred years! And, O daughter-in-law, as I rejoice today in beholding thee attired in red silk, so shall I rejoice again, when, O accomplished one, I behold thee become the mother of a son!"

Vaisampāyana continued, "And after the sons of Pāndu were married, Hari (Krishna) sent unto them (as presents) various golden ornaments set with pearls and black gems (*lapis lazuli*). And Mādhava (Krishna) also sent unto them costly robes manufactured in various countries, and many beautiful and soft blankets and hides of great value, and many costly beds and carpets and vehicles. And he also sent them vessels by hundreds, set with gems and diamonds. And Krishna also gave them female servants by thousands, brought from various countries, and endued with beauty, youth, and accomplishments, and clad in every ornament. And he also gave them many well-trained elephants brought from the country of the Madras, and many excellent horses in costly harness, cars drawn by horses of excellent colors and large teeth. And the slayer of Madhu, of immeasurable soul, also sent them coins of pure gold by crores upon crores in separate heaps. And Yudhish-thira the just, desirous of gratifying Govinda, accepted all those presents with great joy."

Thus ends the two hundred and first Section in the Vaivahika of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCII.

(Viduragamana Parva continued.)

Vayampayana said, "The news was carried unto all the monarchs (who had come to the *Svayamvara* of Draupadi) by their trusted spies that the handsome Draupadi had been united in marriage with the sons of Pandu. And they were also informed that the illustrious hero who had bent the bow and shot the mark was none else than Arjuna, that foremost of victorious warriors and first of all wielders of the bow and arrow. And it became known that the mighty warrior who had dashed Shalya, the king of the Madras, on the ground, and who in wrath had terrified the assembled monarchs by means of the tree (he had uprooted), and who had taken his stand before all foes in perfect fearlessness, was none else than Bhima—that feller of hostile ranks, whose touch alone was sufficient to take the life out of all foes. And the monarchs, upon being informed that the Pandavas had assumed the guise of peaceful Brahmanas, wondered much. They had heard that Kunti with all her sons had been burnt to death in the conflagration of the house of lac. They, therefore, now regarded the Pandavas in the light of persons who had, after death, come back to life. And recollecting the cruel scheme contrived by Purochana, they began to say,—'O fie on Bhisma, fie on Dhrita-rashtra of the Kuru race!'

"And after the Svayamvara was over, all the monarchs (who had come thither), hearing that Draupadi had been united with the Pandavas, set out for their own dominions.

"And Duryodhana, hearing that Draupadi had elected Shwe-ta-vāhana (Arjuna) as her lord, became greatly depressed. And accompanied by his brothers, Aswat-thama, his uncle (Sakuni), Karna, and Kripa, the prince set out with a heavy heart for his capital. Then Dush-shasana, blushing with shame, addressed his brother softly and said, 'If Arjuna had not disguised himself as a Brahmana, he could never have succeeded in obtaining Draupadi. It was for this disguise, O king, that no one could recognise him as Dhananjaya. Destiny,

ween, is supreme. Exertion is fruitless; fie on our exertions, O brother! The Pandavas are still alive!' Speaking unto one another thus and blaming Purochana (for his carelessness), they then entered the city of Hastinapore, with cheerless and sorrowful hearts. And beholding the mighty sons of Prithā, out of the burning house of lac and allied with Drupada, and thinking of Dhrishta-dyumna and Shikhandi and the other sons of Drupada all accomplished in fight, they were srtuck with fear and overcome with despair.

"Then Vidura, having learnt that Draupadi had been won by the Pandavas and that the sons of Dhrita-rastra had come back (to Hastinapore) in shame—their pride humiliated, became filled with joy. And, O king, approaching Dhrita-rashtra, Kshatta said, 'The Kurus are prospering by good luck!' And hearing these words of Vidura, the son of Vichitra-virya (Dhrita-rashtra) wondering, said in great glee, 'What good luck, O Vidura? What good luck?' And from ignorance, the blind monarch understood that his eldest son Duryo-dhana had been elected by Drupada's daughter as her lord. And the king immediately ordered various ornaments to be made for Draupadi. And he commanded that both Draupadi and his son Duryodhana should be brought with pomp to Hastinapore. It was then that Vidura told the monarch that Draupadi had elected the Pandavas for her lords, and that those heroes were all alive and in peace, and that they had been received with great respect by king Drupada. And he also informed Dhrita-rashtra that the Pandavas had been united with many relatives and friends of Drupada, each owning large armies, and with many others who had come into that Svayamvara.

"Hearing these words of Vidura, Dhrita-rashtra said, 'Those children are to me, O Kshatta, as much as they are to Pandu. Nay more. O listen to me why my affection for them now is even greater! The heroic sons of Pandu are well and in peace. They have obtained many friends. Their relatives, and others whom they have gained as allies, are all endued with great strength. Who, O Kshatta, amongst monarchs in prosperity or adversity, would not like to have Drupada with his relatives as ally?'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of the monarch, Vidura said, 'O king, let thy understanding remain so without change for a hundred years!' And having said this, Vidura returned to his own abode. Then, O monarch, there came unto Dhrita-rashtra, Duryodhana and the son of Rādhā (Karna). And addressing the monarch they said, 'We cannot, O king, speak of any transgression in the presence of Vidura! We have now found thee alone, and will, therefore, say all we like! What is this that thou hast, O monarch, desired to do? Dost thou regard the prosperity of thy foes as if it were thy own, that thou hadst been applauding the Pandavas, O thou foremost of men, in the presence of Vidura? O thou sinless one, thou actest not, O king, in the way thou shouldst! O father, we should now act every day in such a way as to weaken the strength of the Pandavas! The time hath come, O father, for us to take counsel together; so that the Pandavas may not swallow us all with our children and forces and friends and relatives!'"

Thus ends the two hundred and second Section in the Vidurāgamana of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCIII.

(Viduragamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Dhrita-rashtra replied, saying, 'I desire to do exactly what you would recommend. But I wish not to inform Vidura of it even by a change of muscle. It was, therefore, O son, that I was applauding the Pandavas in Vidura's presence, so that he might not know even by a sign what is in my mind. Now that Vidura hath gone away, this is the time, O Suyodhana, for telling me what thou hast hit upon, and what, O Rādheya, thou too hast hit upon!'

"Duryodhana said, 'Let us, O father, by means of trusted and skilful and adroit Brahmanas, seek to produce dissensions between the sons of Kunti and those of Mādri. Or let king Drupada and his sons, and all his ministers of state be tempt-

ed by presents of large wealth, so that he may abandon the cause of Yudhish-thira, the son of Kunti. Or let our spies induce the Pandavas to settle in Drupada's dominions, by describing to them, separately, the inconveniences of residing in Hastinapore, so that, separated from us, they may permanently settle in Panchala. Or let some clever spies, full of resources, sowing the seeds of dissension among the Pandavas, make them jealous of one another. Or let them incite Krishnā against her husbands. She has many lords and this will not present any difficulties. Or let some seek to make the Pandavas themselves dissatisfied with Krishnā, in which case Krishnā also will be dissatisfied with them. Or let, O king, some clever spies repairing thither, secretly compass the death of Bhima-sena. Bhima is the strongest of them all. Relying on Bhima alone, the Pandavas used not to regard us of old. Bhima is fierce and brave and the (sole) refuge of the Pandavas. If he is slain, the others will be deprived of strength and energy. Deprived of Bhima, who is their sole refuge, they will no longer strive to regain their kingdom. Arjuna, O king, is invincible in battle, if Bhima protecteth him from behind. Without Bhima, Arjuna is not equal to even a fourth part of Rādheya. Indeed, O king, the Pandavas conscious of their own feebleness without Bhima and of our strength would not really strive to recover the kingdom. Or, if, O monarch, coming hither, they prove docile and obedient to us, we would then seek to repress them according to the dictates of political science (as explained by Kanika). Or we may tempt them by means of handsome girls, upon which the princess of Panchala will get annoyed with them. Or, O Rādheya, let messengers be despatched for bringing them hither, so that, when arrived, we may through trusted agents, by some of the above methods, cause them to be slain. Strive, O father, to employ any of these (various) methods that may appear to thee faultless. Time passeth! Till their confidence in king Drupada—that bull amongst kings—is established we may succeed, O monarch, to encounter them. But after their confidence hath been established in Drupada, we should fail. These, O father, are the views entertained by me for the dis-

comfiture of the Pandavas. Judge, whether they be good or bad! What, O Karna, dost thou think!'"

Thus ends the two hundred and third Section in the Vidurāgamana of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCIV.

(Viduragamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Thus addressed by Duryodhana, Karna said, 'It doth not seem to me, O Duryodhana, that thy reasoning is well-founded. O thou perpetuator of the Kuru race, no method will succeed against the Pandavas! Brave prince, thou hadst before, by various subtle means, striven to compass thy wishes. But ever hast thou failed to slay thy foes. They were then living near thee, O king! They were then unfledged and of tender years! Thou couldst not injure them then. They are now living at a distance, grown up, full-fledged. The sons of Kunti, O thou of firm resolution, cannot now be injured by any subtle contrivances of thine. This is my opinion. Aided as they are by the very fates, and desirous as they are of regaining their ancestral kingdom, we can never succeed in injuring them by any means in our power. It is impossible to create disunion amongst them. They can never be disunited who have all taken to a common wife. Nor can we succeed in estranging Krishnā from the Pandavas by any spies of ours. She chose them as her lords when they were in adversity. Will she abandon them now that they are in prosperity? Besides, women always like to have many husbands. Krishnā hath obtained her wish. She can never be estranged from the Pandavas. The king of Panchāla is honest and virtuous. He is not avaricious. Even if we offer him our whole kingdom, he will not abandon the Pandavas. Drupada's son also possesseth every accomplishment, and is attached to the Pandavas. Therefore, I do not think that the Pandavas can now be injured by any subtle means in thy power. But, O thou bull amongst men, this is what is good and advisable for us now, *viz*, as long as the Pandavas, O king, are not exterminated, so long should we attack and smite them! Let this

course recommend itself to thee! As long as our party is strong and that of the king of Panchala is weak, so long strike them without any scruples. O son of Gāndhāri, as long as their innumerable vehicles and animals, friends, and friendly tribes, are not mustered together, continue thou, O king, to exibit thy prowess! As long as the king of the Panchalas together with his sons gifted with great prowess, setteth not his heart upon fighting with us, so long, O king, exibit thy prowess! And, O king, exert thy prowess till he of the Vrishni race (Krishna) cometh with the Yādava host into the city of Drupada, carrying everything before him, to restore the Pandavas to their paternal kingdom. Wealth, every article of enjoyment, kingdom, there is nothing that Krishna may not sacrifice for the sake of the Pandavas. The illustrious Bharata had accquired the whole earth by his prowess alone. Paka-shasana (Indra) hath acquired the sovereignty of the three worlds by prowess alone. O king, prowess is always applauded in the Kshatriya. O thou bull amongst Kshatriyas, prowess is the cardinal virtue of the brave. Let us, therefore, O monarch, with our large army consisting of four kinds of forces, grinding Drupada without loss of time, bring hither the Pandavas. Indeed, the Pandavas are incapable of being discomfitted by any policy of conciliation, of gift of wealth and bribery, or of disunion. Vanquish them therefore, by thy prowess! And Vanquishing them by thy prowess, rule thou this wide earth! O monarch, I see not any other means by which we may accomplish our end.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of Rādheya Dhrita-rashtra endued with great strength, applauded him highly. The monarch then addressed him and said, 'Thou, O son of *Suta*, art gifted with great wisdom and accomplished in arms. This speech, therefore, favoring the exhibition of prowess suiteth thee well! But let Bhisma, and Drona, and Vidura, and ye two, take counsel together and adopt that proposal which may lead to our benefit.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Then king Dhrita-rashtra called unto him all those celebrated ministers and took counsel with them."

Thus ends the two hundred and fourth Section in the Vidurāgamana of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCV.

(Viduragamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Asked by Dhrita-rashtra to give his opinion, Bhisma replied, 'O Dhrita-rastra, quarrel with the Pandavas is what I can never approve. As thou art to me, so is Pandu without doubt. And the sons of Gāndhāri are to me as those of Kunti. I should protect them as well as I should thy sons, O Dhrita-rashtra! And, O king, the Padavas are as much near to me as they are to prince Duryodhana or to all the other Kurus. Under these circumstances, a quarrel with them is what I never like. Concluding a treaty with those heroes, let half the land be given unto them. This is, without doubt, the paternal kingdom of those foremost of the Kurus also. And, O Duryodhana, like thee who lookest upon this kingdom as thy paternal property, the Pandavas also look upon it as their paternal possession. If the renowned sons of Pandu obtain not the kingdom, how can it be thine, or of any other descendant of the Bharata race? If thou regardest thyself as lawfully come into the possession of the kingdom, I think they have lawfully come into the possession of this kingdom before thee! Give unto them half the kingdom, in peace. This, O thou tiger among men, is beneficial to all. If thou actest otherwise, evil will befall us all. And thou too shalt be covered with dishonor. O Duryodhana, strive thou to maintain thy good name. A good name is, indeed, the source of one's strength. It hath been said that one liveth in vain whose reputation hath gone. A man, O Kaurava, doth not die so long as his fame lasteth! One liveth as long as one's fame lasteth, and dieth when one's fame is gone! Follow thou, O son of Gāndhāri, the practice that is worthy of the Kuru race. O thou of mighty arms, imitate thou thy own ancestors! We are fortunate that the Pandavas have not perished. We are fortunate that Kunti too liveth. We are furtunate that the wretch Purochana without being able to

accomplish his purpose hath himself perished. From that time when I heard that the sons of Kunti-bhoja's daughter were burnt to death, I was, O son of Gāndhāri, ill able to meet any living creature. And, O thou tiger among men, hearing of the fate that overtook Kunti (and her sons), the world doth not regard Purochana so guilty as it regardeth thee! And, O king, the escape, therefore, of the sons of Pandu with life from that conflagration, and their reappearance, do away with thy evil repute! And know, O thou of the Kuru race, that as long as those heroes live, the wielder of thunder himself cannot deprive them of their ancestral share in the kingdom! The Pandavas are virtuous and united. Wrongly are they being kept out of their equal share in the kingdom. If thou shouldst act rightly, if thou shouldst do what is agreeable to me, if thou shouldst seek the welfare of all, give half the kingdom unto them!"

Thus ends the two hundred and fifth Section in the Vidurāgamana of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCVI.

(*Viduragamana Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "After Bishma had concluded, Drona spake, saying, 'O king Dhrita-rashtra, it hath been heard by us that friends summoned for consultation should always speak what is right, true, and conducive to fame. And, O father, I am of the same mind in this matter with the illustrious Bhisma! Let a share of the kingdom be given unto the Pandavas. This is eternal virtue. Send, O Bharata, unto Drupada without loss of time some messenger of agreeable speech, carrying with him a large treasure for the Pandavas. And let the man go unto Drupada carrying costly presents for both the bride-grooms and the bride, and let him speak unto that monarch of thy increase of power and dignity arising from this new alliance with him. And, O monarch, let the man also say that both thyself and Duryodhana have become exceedingly glad in consequence of what hath happened. Let him say this repeatedly unto Drupada and Dhrista-dyumna. And

let him speak also about the alliance as having been exceedingly proper, and agreeable unto thee, and thyself being worthy of it. And let the man repeatedly propitiate the sons of Kunti and those of Madri (in proper words). And at thy command, O king, let plenty of ornaments of pure gold be given unto Draupadi. And let, O thou bull of the Bharata race, proper presents be given unto all the sons of Drupada. Let the messenger then propose the return of the Pandavas to Hāstinapore. And after the heroes have been permitted (by Drupada) to come hither, let Dush-shasana and Vikarna go out with a handsome train to receive them. And when they have arrived at Hāstinapore, let those foremost of men be received with affection by thee. And let them then be installed on their paternal throne, agreeably to the wishes of the people of the realm. This, O monarch of the Bharata race, is what I regard should be thy behaviour towards the Pandavas who are to thee even as thy own sons!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "After Drona had ceased, Karna spoke again, saying, 'Both Bhisma and Drona have been pampered with wealth that is thine and favors conferred by thee! They are also regarded by thee as ever thy trusted friends. What can, therefore, be more amusing than that they both should give thee advice that is not for thy good? How can the wise approve that advice which is pronounced as good by a person speaking with wicked intent but taking care to conceal the wickedness of his heart? Indeed, during a season of distress, friends can neither benefit nor injure. Every one's happiness or the reverse dependeth on destiny. He that is wise and he that is a fool, he that is young in years and he that is old, he that has allies and he that is without allies, all become, it is seen everywhere, happy or unhappy at times. It hath been heard by us that there was of old a king of name Ambu-vicha. Having his capital at Raja-griha he was the king of all the Magadha chiefs. He never attended to his affairs. All his exertion consisted in inhaling and exhaling the air. All his affairs were in the hands of his minister. And his minister, of name Mahakarni, became the supreme authority in the state, And regarding himself allpowerful, he be-

gan to disregard the king. And the wretch himself appropriated everything belonging unto the king,—his queens and treasures and sovereignty. But the possession of all these, instead of satisfying his avarice, only served to inflame it the more. Having appropriated everything belonging unto the king, he even coveted the throne. But it hath been heard by us that with his best endeavours he succeeded not in acquiring the kingdom of the monarch his master even though the latter was inattentive to all business and content with only inhaling and exhaling the air. What else can be said than that, O king, that monarch's sovereignty was dependent on destiny? If, therefore, O king, this kingdom be established in thee by destiny, it will certainly continue in thee, even if the whole world were to become thy foe. If, however, destiny hath ordained otherwise, howsoever mayest thou strive, it will not last in thee! O learned one, remembering all this, judge thou of the honesty or otherwise of thy advisers! And ascertain thou also who amongst them are wicked and who have spoken wisely and well.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of Karna, Drona replied, 'Wicked as thou art, it is evident thou sayest so in consequence of the wickedness of thy intents. It is for injuring the Pandavas that thou findest fault with us. But know, O Karna, that what I have said is for the good of all and the prosperity of the Kuru race. If thou regardest all this as productive of evil, declare thyself what is for our good. If the good advice I have given be not followed, I think the Kurus will be exterminated in no time.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and sixth Section in the Vidurāgamana of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCVII.

(Vidurāgamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "After Drona had ceased, Vidura spoke, saying, 'O monarch, thy friends, without doubt, say unto thee what is for thy good. But unwilling as thou art to listen to what they say, their words scarcely find a place

in thy care. What that foremost of the Kurus, Bhisma the son of Shantanu, hath said, is excellent and for thy good. But thou dost not listen to it. The preceptor Drona also hath said much that is for thy good, which, however, Karna the son of Rādhā doth not regard so. But, O king, reflecting hard I do not find any one who is a better friend to thee than these two lions among men (Bhisma and Drona), or any one who excells them in wisdom. These two, old in years, in wisdom, and in learning, always regard thee, O king, and the sons of Pandu with equal eyes. And without doubt, O king of the Bharata race, they are both, in virtue and truthfulness, not inferior to Rāma the son of Dasaratha, and Gaya (of old). Never before did they give thee any evil advice. Thou also, O monarch, hast never done them any injury. Why should, therefore, these tigers among men, who are ever truthful, give thee wicked advice, when especially thou hast never injured them? Endued with wisdom, these foremost of men in this world, O king, will never give thee counsels that are crooked. O scion of the Kuru race, this is my firm conviction that these two, acquainted as they are with all rules of morality, will never, tempted by wealth, utter anything betraying a spirit of partizanship. What they have said, O Bharata, I regard as highly beneficial to thee! Without doubt, O monarch, the Pandavas are thy sons as much as Duryodhana and others are. Those ministers, therefore, that give thee any counsels fraught with evil unto the Pandavas, do not really look after thy interests. If there is any partiality in thy heart, O king, for thy own children, they who by their counsels seek to bring it out, certainly do thee no good. Therefore, O king, these illustrious persons endued with great splendour, have not, I think, said anything that leadeth to evil. Thou, however, dost not understand it. What these bulls amongst men have said regarding the invincibleness of the Pandavas is perfectly true. Think not otherwise of it, O tiger among men! Blest be thou! Can the handsome Dhananjaya the son of Pandu, using both right and left hands with equal activity, be vanquished in battle even by Maghavan himself! Can the great Bhima-sena of strong arms,

possessing the might of ten thousand elephants, be vanquished in battle by the immortals themselves? Who also that desireth to live can overcome in battle the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva) like unto the sons of Yama himself, and well skilled in fight? How too can the eldest of the Pandavas (Yudhish-thira) in whom patience, mercy, forgiveness, truth, and prowess are always present, be vanquished? They who have Rama (Valadeva) as their ally, and Janarddana (Krishna) as their counsellor, and Sātyaki as their partisan, whom have they not already defeated in war? They who have Drupada for their father-in-law, and Drupada's sons—the heroic brothers Dhrishta-dyumna and others of Prishata's race—for their brothers-in-law, are certainly invincible. Remembering this, O monarch, and knowing that their claim to the kingdom is even prior to thine, behave thou virtuously towards them. The stain of calumny is on thee, O monarch, in consequence of the act of Purochana. Wash thyself of it now, by a kindly behaviour towards the Pandavas. This kindly behaviour of thine, O monarch, towards thee Pandavas will be an act of great benefit to us, protecting the lives of us all belonging to the Kuru race, and leading to the growth of the whole Kshatriya race. We had formerly warred with king Drupada. If we can now secure him as an ally, it will strengthen our party. The *Dasharhas* are, O king, numerous and strong. Know that where Krishna is all must be, and where Krishna is, there victory must be. And, O king, that which can be effected by conciliation, who, unless cursed by the gods, would seek to effect by means of war? Hearing that the sons of Prithā are alive, the citizens and other subjects of the realm have become exceedingly glad and eager for beholding them. O monarch, act in a way that is agreeable to them. Duryodhana and Karna and Sakuni the son of Suvala, are sinful, foolish, and young. Listen not to them! Possessed of every virtue as thou art, I have long ago told thee, O monarch, that for Duryodhana's fault, the subjects of this kingdom will be exterminated.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and seventh Section in the Vidurāgamana of the Adi Parva.

Section CCVIII.

(Viduragamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Hearing these various speeches, Dhrita-rashtra spoke, saying, 'The learned Bhisma son of Shantanu, and the illustrious Rishi Drona, and thyself also (O Vidura), have said the truth and what also is most beneficial to me. Indeed, as those mighty charioteers—the heroic sons of Kunti—are the children of Pandu, so are they, without doubt, my children according to the ordinance. And as my sons are entitled to this kingdom, so are the sons of Pandu, without boubt, entitled to it. Therefore, hie thee, O Kshatta, and bring hither the Pandavas along with their mother, treating them with affectionate consideration. And, O thou of the Bharata race, bring also Krishnā of celestial beauty along with them. From sheer good fortune the sons of Prithā are alive; and from good fortune alone those mighty charioteers have obtained the daughter of Drupada! It is from good fortune alone that our strength hath increased, and it is from good fortune alone that Purochana hath perished. And, O thou of great splendour, it is from good fortune that my great grief hath been dispelled.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Then Vidura, at the command of Dhrita-rashtra, repaired, O Bhārata, unto Yajna-sena and the Pandavas. And he repaired thither, carrying with him numerous jewels and various kinds of wealth for Draupadi and the Pandavas and Yajna-sena also. And arrived at Drupada's abode, Vidura, conversant with every rule of morality and deep in every science, properly accosted the monarch and waited beside him. And Drupada also received Vidura in proper form and they then both enquired after each other's welfare. And Vidura then saw there the Pandavas and Vāsudeva. And as soon as he saw them he embraced them from affection and enquired after their welfare. And the Pandavas also, with Vāsudeva, in due order worshipped Vidura of immeasurable intelligence. But Vidura, O king, in the name of Dhrita-rashtra repeatedly enquired with great affection

after their welfare. And he then gave, O monarch, unto the Pandavas and Kunti and Draupadi, and unto Drupada and Drupada's sons, the gems and various kinds of wealth that the Kauravas had sent them through him. And possessed of immeasurable intelligence, the modest Vidura then, in the presence of the Pandavas and Keshava, addressed the well-behaved Drupada thus ;—

'With thy ministers and sons, O monarch, listen to what I say! King Dhrita-rashtra, with his ministers, sons, and friends, hath with a joyous heart, O king, repeatedly enquired after thy welfare! And, O monarch, he hath been highly pleased in consequence of this alliance with thee! So also, O king, Bhisma of great wisdom, the son of Shantanu, with all the Kurus, enquireth of thy welfare, in every respect, And Drona also of great wisdom, the son of Bharadwaja and thy dear friend, embracing thee in imagination, enquireth of thy happiness. And, O king of Panchalas, Dhrita-rashtra and all the Kurus, in conseqence of this alliance with thee, regard themselves supremely blest. And, O Yajna-sena, the acquisition of this alliance with thee hath made them happier than if they had acquired a new kingdom. Knowing all this, O monarch, permit the Pandavas to revisit their anscestral kingdom. The Kurus are exceedingly eager to behold the sons of Pandu! These bulls among men have been absent long (from their kingdom). They as well as Prithā must be very eager to behold their city. And all the Kuru ladies and the citizens and our sujects are eagerly waiting to behold Krishnā the Panchala princes. This, therefore, is my opinion, O monarch, that thou shouldst, without delay, permit the Pandavas to go thither with their wife! And after the illustrious Pandavas, O king, have received thy permission to go thither, I shall send information unto Dhrita-rashtra by quick messengers. Then, O king, will the Pandavas set out with Kunti and Krishnā.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and eighth Section in the Vidurāgamana of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCIX.

(Viduragamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of Vidura, Drupada said, 'It is even so as thou, O Vidura of great wisdom, hast said. Venerable one, I too have been exceedingly happy in consequence of this alliance. It is highly proper that these illustrious ones should return to their ansestral kingdom. But it is not proper for me to say this myself. If the brave son of Kunti Yudhish-thira, if Bhima and Arjuna, if those bulls among men—the twins, themselves desire to go, and if Rama (Valadeva) and Krishna both acquainted with every rule of morality, be of the same mind, then let the Pandavas go thither. For these tigers among men (Rāma and Krishna) are ever engaged in doing what is agreeable and beneficial to the sons of Pandu.'

"Hearing this, Yudhish-thira said, 'We are now, O monarch, with all our younger brothers, dependent on thee! We shall cheerfully do what thou art pleased to command!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Then Vāsudeva said, 'I am of opinion that the Padavas should go. But we should all abide by the opinion of king Drupada who is conversant with every rule of morality.'

"Drupada then spoke, saying, I certainly agree with what the foremost of men, the heroic Dāsārha of strong arms thinketh, having regard to the circumstances. For as the illustrious sons of Pandu now are to me, so are they, without doubt, to Vāsudeva. And the son of Kunti Yudhish-thira himself doth not seek the welfare of the Pandavas so earnestly as doth Keshava this tiger among men.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Commanded by the illustrious Drupada, the Pandavas then, O king, and Krishna and Vidura, taking with them Krishnā the daughter of Drupada, and the renowned Kunti, journeyed towards the city called after the elephant, stopping at various places along the way for purposes of pleasure and enjoyment. And king Dhrita-rashtra hearing those heroes had neared the capital, sent out the

Kauravas to receive them. And they who were thus sent out were, O Bhārata, Vikarna of the great bow, and Chitra-sena, and Drona that foremost of warriors, and Kripa of Gautama's line. And surrounded by these, those mighty heroes, their splendour enhanced by that throng, slowly entered the city of Hāstinapore. And the whole city became radiant as it were, with the gay throng of sightseers impelled by curiosity. And those tigers among men gladdened the hearts of all who beheld them. And the Pandavas, dear unto the hearts of the people, heard, as they proceeded, various exclamations which the citizens, ever desirous of doing the pleasure of those princes, loudly uttered. And some exclaimed, 'Here returns that tiger among men, conversant with all the rules of morality, and who always protects us as if we were his nearest relatives!' And elsewhere some said, 'It seems that king Pandu—the beloved of his people—returneth today from the forest, doubtless to do what is agreeable to us!' And there were some who said, 'What good is not done to us today when the heroic sons of Kunti have come back to our town? If we have ever given away in charity, if we have ever poured libatious of clarified butter into the fire, if we have any ascetic merit, by virtue of all those acts let the Pandavas stay in our town for a hundred years!'

"At last the Pandavas arriving at the palace, worshipped the feet of Dhrita-rashtra, as also of the illustrious Bhisma. And they also worshipped the feet of everybody also who deserved that honor. And they enquired after the welfare of every citizen (there present). At last at the command of Dhrita-rashtra they entered the chambers that had been assigned to them.

"And after they had rested there for some time, they were summoned (to the court) by king Dhrita-rashtra and Bhisma the son of Santanu. And when they came, king Dhrita-rashtra addressing Yudhish-thira, said, 'Listen, O son of Kunti, with thy brothers, to what I say! Repair ye to Khandava-prastha so that no difference may arise again (between ye and your cousins)! If ye take up your quarters there, no one will be able to do ye any injury! Protected by Pārtha

(Arjuna), like the celestials by the wielder of the thunder-bolt, reside ye at Khandava-prastha, taking half the kingdom!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Agreeing to what Dhrita-rashtra said, those bulls among men worshipping the king, set out from Hāstinapore. And content with half the kingdom, they removed to Khandava-prastha, which was an unreclaimed desert. Then those heroes of undeteriorating splendour—the Pandavas—with Krishna in the van, arriving there, beautified the place and made it like unto a second heaven. And those mighty charioteers selecting with Dwaipayana's assistance a sacred and auspicious region, performed certain propitiatory ceremonies and measured out a piece of land for their city. And surrounded by a trench wide as the sea and by walls reaching high into the heavens and white as the fleecy clouds or the rays of the moon, that foremost of cities rose adorned like the capital of the nether kingdom (Bhogavati) encircled by the Nagas. And it stood adorned with palatial mansions and numerous gates each furnished with a couple of pannels resembling the outstretched wings of Gadura. And the gateways that protected the town were high as the Mandara mountain and massy as the clouds. And furnished with numerous weapons of attack, the missiles of the foe could not make the slightest impression on them. And they were almost covered with darts and other missiles like double-tongued snakes. And the turrets along the walls were filled with armed men in course of training. And the walls were lined with numerous warriors along their whole length. And there were thousands of sharp hooks and *shataghnis* (machines slaying a century of warriors) and numerous other machines on the battlements. And there were also large iron wheels planted on them. And with all these was that foremost of cities adorned. And the streets were all wide and laid out excellently. And there was no fear in them of accidents. And decked with innumerable white mansions, the city became like unto Amaravati and came to be called *Indra-prastha* (like unto Indra's city). And in a delightful and auspicious part of the city rose the palace of the Pandavas filled

with every kind of wealth and like unto the palace of the celestial treasurer (Kuvera) himself. And it looked very much like a mass of clouds.

"And when the city was built, there came, O king, numerous Brahmanas well acquainted with all the Vedas and conversant with every language, wishing to dwell there. And there came also unto that town numerous merchants from every direction, in hopes of earning wealth. And there also came numerous persons well-skilled in all the arts, wishing to take up their abode in that city. And around the city were laid out many delightful gardens adorned with numerous trees bearing both fruits and flowers. And there were *Amras* and *Amratakas*, and *Kadamvas* and *Asokas*, and *Champakas*; and *Punnagas* and *Nagas* and *Lakuchas* and *Panasas;* and *Shalas* and *Talas* and *Tamalas* and *Vakulas*, and *Ketakas* with their fragrant loads; beautiful and blossoming and grand *Amalakas* with branches bent down with the weight of fruits, and *Lodhras* and blossoming *Ankolas*; and *Jambus* and *Patalas* and *Kunjakas* and *Atimuktas;* and *Karaviras* and *Parijatas* and numerous other kinds of trees, always adorned with flowers and fruits and thronged with feathered creatures of various tribes. And those verdant groves always resounded with the notes of maddened peacocks and *Kokilas*. And there were various pleasure-houses bright as mirrors, and numerous bowers of creepers, and charming and artificial hillocks, and many lakes filled to the brim with crystal water, and delightful tanks fragrant with lotuses and lilies and adorned with swans and ducks and *chakravakas*. And there were many delicious pools overgrown with fine acquatic plants. And there were also diverse ponds of great beauty and large dimensions. And, O king, the joy of the Pandavas increased from day to day, in consequence of their residence in that large kingdom that was peopled with pious men.

"Thus after the virtuous behaviour of Bhisma and king Dhrita-sashtra towards them, the Pandavas took up their abode in Khandava-prastha. And adorned with those five mighty warriors, each equal unto Indra himself, that foremost of cities looked like the capital of the nether kingdom (Bhoga-

vati) adorned with the Nagas. And, O monarch, having settled the Pandavas there, the heroic Krishna, having obtaining their leave, came back with Rama to Dwārāvati."

Thus ends the two hundred and ninth Section in the Rajyatava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCX.

(Rajyalava Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said, "O thou of the wealth of asceticism, what did those great souls, my grand-sires, the illustrious Pandavas, do, after having obtained the kingdom of Indraprastha? How did their wedded wife Draupadi obey them all? How is it also that no dissensions arose amongst those illustrious rulers of men, all attached to *one* wife; Krishnā? O thou of the wealth of asceticism, I wish to hear everything in detail regarding the behaviour towards one another of those rulers of men after their union with Krishnā!"

Vaysampayana said, "Those oppressors of all foes, the Pandavas, having obtained their kingdom, at the command of Dhrita-rashtra passed their days in joy and happiness at Khandava-prastha with Krishnā. And Yudhish-thira, endued with great energy and ever adhering to truth, having obtained the sovereignty, assisted by his brothers virtuously ruled the land. And the sons of Pandu, endued with great wisdom and devoted to truth and virtue, having vanquished all their foes, continued to live there in great happiness. And those bulls among men, seated on royal seats of great value, used to discharge all the duties of government. And one day while all those illustrious heroes were seated, there came unto them the celestial Rishi Narada in course of his wanderings. And beholding the Rishi, Yudhish-thira gave him his own handsome seat. And after the celestial Rishi had been seated, the wise Yudhish-thira duly offered him the *Arghya* with his own hands. And the king also informed the Rishi of the state of his kingdom. And the Rishi accepting the worship became well pleased. And eulogising him with benedictions, the Rishi commanded the king to take his seat. And commanded by

the Rishi the king took his seat. And the king sent word unto Krishnā (in the inner apartments) of the arrival of the illustrious one. And hearing of the Rishi's arrival, Draupadi, purifying herself properly, came with a respectful attitude to where Nārada was with the Pandavas. And the virtuous princess of Panchāla, worshipping the celestial Rishi's feet, stood with joined hands before him, properly veiled. And the illustrious Narada, pronouncing various benedictions on her, commanded the princess to retire. And after Krishnā had retired, the illustrious Rishi, addressing in private all the Pandavas with Yudhish-thira at their head, said, 'The renowned princess of Panchāla is the wedded wife of ye all. Establish ye a rule amongst yourselves so that disunion may not arise amongst ye. There were, in former days, celebrated throughout the three worlds, two brothers named Sunda and Upasunda living together and incapable of being slain by anybody except themselves. They ruled the same kingdom, lived in the same house, slept on the same bed, sat on the same seat, and ate of the same dish. And yet they killed each other for the sake of Tilottamā. Therefore, O Yudhishthira, preserve your friendship for one another and do that which may not produce disunion amongst ye!'

"Hearing this, Yudhish-thira asked, 'O great Muni, whose sons were those Asuras called Sunda and Upasunda? Whence arose that dissension amongst them, and why did they slay each other? Whose daughter also was this Tilottama, for whose love the maddened brothers killed each other? Was she an Apsarā or the daughter of any celestial? O thou whose wealth is asceticism, we desire, O Brahmana, to hear in detail everything as it had happened! Indeed, our curiosity hath become great!'"

Thus ends the two hundred and tenth Section in the Rajya-lava of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXI.

(Rajya-lava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " Hearing these words of Yudhish-thira, Narada replied, 'O son of Prithā, with thy brothers listen to me as I recite this old story, O Yudhish-thira, exactly as everything happened! In olden days, a mighty Daitya of name Nikumbha, endued with great energy and strength, was born in the race of the great Asura, Hiranya-kashipu. Unto this Nikumbha were born two sons named Sunda and Upasunda. And both of them were mighty Asuras endued with great energy and terrible prowess. And the brothers were both fierce and possessed wicked hearts. And these Daityas were both of the same resolution, and ever engaged in achieving the same tasks and ends. And they were ever sharers with each other in happiness as well as in woe. And each speaking and doing what was agreeable to the other, the brothers never ate unless they were together, and never went anywhere unless together. Of exactly the same disposition and habits, they seemed to be one individual divided into two parts. And endued with great energy and ever of the same resolution in everything they undertook, the brothers gradually grew up. And always entertaining the same purpose, desirous of subjugating the three-worlds, the brothers, after due initiation, went to the mountains of Vindhya. And wending there, severe were the ascetic penances they performed. And exhausted with hunger and thirst, with matted locks on their heads and attired in barks of trees, long was the time after which they acquired sufficient ascetic merit. Besmearing themselves with dirt from head to foot, living upon air alone, standing on their toes, they offered pieces of the flesh of their bodies into the fire. With arms upraised, and eye-lids fixed, long was the period for which they observed their vows. And during the course of their ascetic penances, a wonderful incident happened there. For the mountains of Vindhya, heated for a long course of years by the power of their ascetic austerities, began to emit vapours from every part of their body. And

beholding the severity of their austerities, the celestials became alarmed. And the gods began to offer numerous obstructions for impeding the progress of their asceticism. And the celestials repeatedly tempted the brothers by means of every precious possession and the most beautiful girls. But firmly wedded thereto, the brothers broke not their vows. Then the celestials once more manifested, before the illustrious brothers, their powers of illusion. For it seemed their sisters, mothers, wives, and other relatives, with dishevelled hair and ornaments and robes, were running towards them in terror, pursued and struck down by a Rakshasa with a lance in hand. And it seemed that the women implored the help of the brothers, crying. *O save us!* But all this went for nothing; for firmly wedded thereto, the brothers did not still break their vows. And when it was found that all this produced not the slightest impression on any of the two, both the women and the Rakshasa vanished from sight. At last the Grand-sire himself, the Supreme lord ever seeking the welfare of all, came unto those great Asuras and asked them to solicit the boon they desired. Then the brothers Sunda and Upasunda, both of great prowess, beholding the Grand-sire, rose from their seats and waited with joined hands. And the brothers both said unto the god,—O Grand-sire, if thou hast been pleased with these our ascetic austerities, and art, O lord, propitious unto us, then let us have knowledge of all weapons and of all powers of illusion! Let us be endued with great strength, and let us be able to assume every form at will! And last of all, let us also be immortal! Hearing these words of theirs, Brhamā said,—Except the immortality ye ask for, ye shall even be all that ye desire! Solicit ye some form of death by which ye may still be equal unto the immortals! And since ye have undergone these severe ascetic austerities from desire of sovereignty alone, I cannot confer on ye the boon of immortality! Ye have performed your ascetic penances even for the subjugation of the three-worlds. It is for this, O mighty Daityas, that I cannot grant ye what ye desire!—'

"Narada continued, 'Hearing these words of Brahmā, Sunda and Upasunda said, 'O Grand-sire, let us have no fear then

from any created thing, mobile or immobile, in the three worlds, except only from each other!—The Grand-sire then said,—I grant ye what ye have asked and said, even this your desire!—And granting them this boon, the Grand-sire made them desist from their asceticism, and returned to his own region. And the brothers—those mighty Daityas—having received those several boons, became incapable of being slain by anybody in the universe. And they then returned to their own abode. And all their friends and relatives, beholding those Daityas of great intelligence, crowned with success in the matter of the boons they had obtained, became exceedingly glad. And Sunda and Upasunda then cut off their matted locks and wore coronets on their heads. And attired in costly robes and ornaments, they looked exceedingly handsome. And they caused the moon to rise over their city every night even out of his season. And their friends and relatives gave themselves up to joy and merriment with happy hearts. And *Eat, Feed, Give, Make merry, Sing, Drink*, were the sounds heard every day in every house. And here and there arose loud uproars of hilarity mixed with clappings of hand, which filled the whole city of the Daityas. And the Daityas, capable of assuming any form at will, engaged in every kind of amusement and sport and scarcely noticed the flight of time, even regarding a whole year as a single day.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and eleventh Section in the Rājyalāva of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXII.

(*Rajya-lava Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Narada continued, 'And as soon as those festivities came to an end, the brothers Sunda and Upasunda, desirous of the sovereignty of the there worlds, took counsel and commanded their forces to be arranged. And obtaining the assent of their friends and relatives, of the elders of the Daitya race, of their ministers of state, and performing the preliminary rites of departure, they set out in the night when the constellation Maghā was on the ascendant,

And the brothers set out with a large Daitya force cased in mail and armed with maces and axes and lances and clubs. And the Daitya heroes set out on their expedition with joyous hearts, the *charanas* chaunting auspicious panegyrics indicative of their future triumphs. Furious in war, the Daitya brothers capable of going everywhere at will, ascended the skies and went unto the region of the celestials. And the celestials knowing that they were coming, and acquainted also with the boons granted unto them by the Supreme Deity, leaving heaven sought refuge in the region of Brahmā. And endued with fierce prowess, the Daitya heroes soon subjugated the region of Indra, and vanquishing the tribes of the Yakshas and Rakshas, and every creature ranging the skies, came away. And those mighty charioteers next subjugated the Nāgas of the nether region, and then the inmates of the ocean and then all the tribes of the Mlechchas. And desirous next of subjugating the whole earth, those heroes of irresitible rule, summoning their soldiers issued these cruel commands:—Brahmanas and royal sages (on earth) by their libations and other food offered in grand sacrifices, increase the energy and strength of the gods as also their prosperity. Engaged in such acts, they are the enemies of the Asuras. All of us, therefore, mustering together, should completely slaughter them off the face of the earth.—Ordering their soldiers thus on the eastern beach of the great ocean, and entertaining such a cruel resolution, the Asura brothers set out in all directions. And those that were performing sacrifices and the Brahmanas that were assisting at those sacrifices, the mighty brothers instantly slew. And slaughtering them with violence they departed for some other place. And their soldiers threw into the water the sacrificial fires that were in the assylums of Munis having their souls under complete control. And the curses uttered by the illustrious Rishis in wrath, rendered abortive by the boons granted (by Bramhā), touched not the Asura brothers. And when the Brahmanas saw that their curses produced not the slightest effect like shafts shot at stones, forsaking their rites and vows they fled in all directions. And even those Rishis on the earth that were

crowned with ascetic success, and had their passions under complete control and were wholly engrossed in the meditation of the Deity, from fear of the Asura brothers, fled like snakes at the approach of Vinata's son (Gadura). And the sacred asylums were all trodden down and broken. And the sacrificial jars and vessels being broken, their (sacred) contents were scattered over the ground. And the whole universe became empty, as if its creatures had all been stricken down during the season of general dissolution. And, O king, after the Rishis had all disappeared and made themselves invisible, both the great Asuras, resolved upon their destruction, began to assume various forms. And assuming the forms of maddened elephants with temples rent from excess of juice, the Asura pair searching out the Rishis who had sheltered themselves in caves, sent them to the region of Yama. And sometimes becoming as lions and again as tigers and disappearing the next moment, by these and other methods the cruel pair, seeing the Rishis, slew them instantly. And thus sacrifices and study ceased, and kings and Brahmanas were exterminated. And the earth became utterly destitute of sacrifices and festivals. And the terrified people cried, *Oh* and *Alas*, and all buying and selling were stopped. And all religious rites ceased, and the earth became destitute of sacred ceremonies and marriages. And agriculture was neglected and cattle were no longer tended. And towns and asylums became desolate. And scattered over with bones and skeletons, the earth assumed a frightful aspect. And all ceremonies in honor of the *pitris* were suspended, and the sacred sound of *Vashat* and the whole circle of auspicious rites ceased. And the earth became frightful to behold. And the sun and the moon, the planets, stars, stellar constellations, and other dwellers of the firmament, witnessing these acts of Sunda and Upasunda, grieved deeply. And subjugating all the points of heaven by means of such cruel acts, the Asura brothers took up their abode in Kurukshetra, without a single rival.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and twelfth Section in the Rājya-lāva of the Adi Parva.

Section CCXIII.

(Rājya-lavā Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, " Nārada continued, 'Then the celestial Rishis, the *Siddhas*, and the high-souled Rishis possessing the attributes of *Shama* and *Dama*, beholding that act of universal slaughter, were affected with great grief. With their passions and senses and souls under complete control, they then went to the abode of the Grand-sire, moved by compassion for the universe. And arrived there, they beheld the Grand-sire seated, with the gods, the *Siddhas*, and the *Brahmarshis* around. And there were the god of gods—Mahadeva, and Agni accompanied by Vāyu, and the Moon and the Sun, and Shakra and Rishis devoted to the contemplation of Brahma, and the Vaikhānasas, the Vālikhillyas, the Vānaprasthas, the Marichipās, the Ajas, the Avimudas, and other ascetics of great energy. And all these Rishis had been sitting with the Grand-sire, when the celestial and other Rishis, approaching Brahmā with sorrowful hearts, represented unto him all the acts of Sunda and Upasunda. And they represented unto the Grand-sire in detail everything that the Asura brothers had done, how they had done it all, and in what order. Then all the celestials and the great Rishis represented that very matter unto the Grand-sire. And the Grand-sire, hearing everything they said, reflected for a moment and settled in his mind as to what he should do. And resolving to compass the destruction of the Asura brothers, he summoned Viswakarmā (the celestial artificer). And seeing Viswakarmā before him, the Grand-sire possest of supreme ascetic merit commanded him, saying,—Create thou a damsel capable of captivating all hearts.—And bowing down unto the Grand-sire and receiving his command with reverence, the great artificer of the universe created a celestial maiden with careful attention. And Viswakrit first collected whatever of handsome creatures, mobile or immobile, there were in the three worlds. And he placed gems by crores upon the body of the damsel he created. Indeed, the celestial maiden that he created was almost a mass

gems. And created with great care by Viswa-karmā, the damsel, in beauty, became unrivalled among the women of the three worlds. And there was not even a minute part of her body which by its wealth of beauty could not rivet the gaze directed towards it of the beholders. And like unto the embodiment of Sree herself, that damsel of extraordinary beauty captivated the eyes and hearts of every creature. And because she had been created with portions of every gem taken in minute measures, the Grand-sire bestowed upon her the name of *Tilottamā*. And as soon as she started into life, the damsel bowed down to Brahmā and with joined hands said,—O lord of every created thing, what task am I to accomplish and for what have I been created?—And the Grand-sire answered,—Go, O Tilottamā, unto the Asuras, Sunda and Upasunda! And, O amiable one, tempt them with thy captivating beauty! And, O damsel, conduct thyself there in such a way that the Asura brothers may, in consequence of the wealth of thy beauty, quarrel with each other as soon as they cast their eyes upon thee!—'

"Nārada continued, 'Bowing down unto the Grand-sire and saying—*So be it*,—the damsel walked round the celestial conclave. And the illustrious Brahmā was then sitting with face turned eastwards, and Mahadeva also with face towards the east, and all the celestials with face northwards, and the Rishis with faces towards all directions. And while Tilottamā was walking round the conclave of the celestials, Indra and the illustrious Sthānu (Mahadeva) were the only ones who succeeded in preserving their tranquillity of mind. And exceedingly desirous as Mahadeva was (of beholding Tilottamā), when that damsel (in her progress round the celestial conclave) was at his side, another face like a full-bloomed lotus appeared on the southern side of his body. And when she was at his back, another face appeared on the west. And when the damsel was on the northern side of the great god, a fourth face appeared on the northern side of his body. And Māhendra also (who was eager to behold the damsel) came to have on his back, sides, and in front, a thousand eyes, each large and slightly reddish. And it was thus that Sthānu the great god

came to have four faces, and the slayer of Vala, a thousand eyes. And as regards the mass of the celestials and the Rishis, they turned their faces towards all directions as Tilottamā walked round them. And excepting the god—the Grand-sire himself, the glances of those illustrious personages, even of all of them, fell upon Tilottamā's body. And when Tilottamā set out (for the city of the Asuras), all the celestials and the great Rishis, beholding the wealth of her beauty, regarded the task as already accomplished. And after Tilottamā had gone away, the great god who was the First cause of the universe, dismissed all the celestials and the Rishis.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and thirteenth Section in the Rājya-lāva of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXIV.

(Rajya-lava Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Nārada continued, 'Meanwhile the Asura brothers having subjugated the earth were without a rival. And their fatigue of exertion past, bringing the three worlds under equal sway, they regarded themselves as having nothing more to do. And having brought all the treasures of the gods, the Gandharvas, the Yakshas, the Nāgas, the Rākshasas, and the kings of the earth, the brothers began to pass their days in great happiness. And when they saw they had no rivals (in the three worlds), giving up all exertion, they devoted their time to pleasure and merriment, like the celestials. And they experienced great happiness by giving themselves up to every kind of enjoyment, such as women, and perfumes, and floral wreaths, and viands, and drinks, and many other agreeable objects, all in plenty. And in houses and woods and gardens, in hills and in forests, wherever they liked, they passed their time in pleasure and amusement, like the immortals. And it so happened that one day they went for purposes of pleasure to a table-land of the Vindhya range, perfectly level and stony, and overgrown with blossoming trees. And after every object of desire, all of the most agreeable kind, had been brought, the brothers sat on

an excellent seat, with happy hearts and accompanied by handsome women. And these damsels, desirous of pleasing the brothers commenced a dance in accompaniment with music, and sweetly chaunted many a song in praise of the mighty pair.

"'Meanwhile, Tilottamā attired in a single piece of red silk that exposed all her charms, came along, plucking wild flowers along her way. And she slowly advanced to where those mighty Asuras were, gathering, as she walked, *karnikāras* from the trees that grew along the river-side. And the Asura brothers, intoxicated with the large potations they had imbibed, were smitten upon beholding that maiden of transcendant beauty. And leaving their seats they went quickly to where the damsel was. And both of them being under the influence of desire, each sought the maiden for himself. And Sunda seized that maid of fair brows by her right hand, while Upasunda caught hold of Tilottamā by her left hand. And intoxicated with the boons they had obtained, with physical might, with the wealth and gems they had gathered from every quarter, and with the wine they had drunk, and maddened with all these, and influenced by desire, they addressed each other, each contracting his brow in anger. *She is my wife and, therefore, your superior*, said Sunda. *She is my wife and, therefore, your daughter-in-law*, replied Upasunda. And they said unto each other, *She is mine, not yours.* And soon they were under the influence of rage. And maddened by the beauty of the damsel, they soon forgot their love and affection for each other. And both of them, deprived of reason by desire, then took up their fierce maces. And each repeating, *I was the first, I was the first* (in taking her hand), struck each other. And the fierce Asuras, struck by each other with the mace, fell down upon the ground, their bodies bathed in blood, like two suns loosened from the firmament. And beholding this, the women that had come there, and the other Asuras there present, all fled away, trembling in grief and fear, and took refuge in the nether regions. And the Grandsire himself, of pure soul, then came there, accompanied by the celestials and the great Rishis. And the illustrious Grandsire applauded Tilottamā and expressed his wish of granting

her a boon. And the Supreme Deity, before Tilottamā spoke, desirous of granting her a boon, cheerfully said,—O beautiful damsel, thou shalt roam in the region of the Adityas. And thy splendour shall be so great that nobody will ever be able to look at thee for any length of time.—And the Grand-sire of all, granting this boon unto her, and establishing the three worlds on Indra as before, returned to his own region.'

"Nārada continued, 'It was thus that those Asuras, ever united and ever inspired by the same purpose, slew each other in wrath for the sake of Tilottamā. Therefore, from affection I tell ye, O ye best of the Bharata line, that if ye desire to do anything agreeable to me, make some such arrangement that ye may not quarrel with one another for the sake of Draupadi!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "The illustrious Pandavas, thus addressed by the great Rishi Nārada, consulting with one another, established a rule amongst themselves, in the presence of the celestial Rishi himself endued with immeasurable energy. And the rule they made was that when one of them would be sitting with Draupadi, any of the other four who would see that one thus must retire into the forest for twelve years, passing his days as a Brahmachārin. And after the virtuous Pandavas had established that rule amongst themselves, the great Muni, Nārada, gratified with them, went to the place he wished. Thus, O Janameyaja, did the Pandavas, urged by Nārada. establish a rule amongst themselves in regard to their common wife. And it was for this, O Bhārata, that no differences arose between them."

Thus ends the two hundred and fourteenth Section in the Rājya-lāva of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXV.

(Arjuna Vanavasa Parva.)

Vaisampayana said, "The Pandavas, having established such a rule, continued to reside there. And by the prowess of their arms they brought many kings under their sway. And Krishnā became obedient unto all the five sons of Prithā,

those lions among men, of immeasurable energy. And like the river Saraswati decked with elephants, and the elephants taking pleasure in that stream, Draupadi took great delight in her five heroic husbands and they too took delight in her. And in consequence of the illustrious Pandavas being exceedingly virtuous in their practices, the whole race of Kurus, free from sin and happy, grew in prosperity.

"After sometime, O king, it so happened that certain robbers lifted the cattle of a Brahmana. And while the robbers were carrying away the booty, the Brahmana, deprived of his senses by anger, repairing to Khandava-prastha began to reprove the Pandavas in accents of woe. And the Brahmana said, 'Ye Pandavas, from this your dominion, my kine are even now being taken away by force, by despicable and wicked wretches! Pursue ye the thieves! Alas, the sacrificial butter of a peaceful Brahmana is being taken away by the crows! Alas, the wretched jackal invadeth the empty cave of the lion! A king that taketh the sixth part of the produce of the land without protecting the subject, hath been called by the wise to be the most sinful person in the whole world! The wealth of a Brahmana is being taken away by robbers! Virtue itself is sustaining a diminution! Take me up by the hand, ye Pandavas, for I am plunged in grief!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Dhananjaya the son of Kunti heard those accents of the Brahmana weeping in bitter grief. And as soon as he heard those accents, he loudly assured the Brahmana, saying,—'No fear!' But it so happened that the chamber where the illustrious Pandavas had their weapons was then occupied by Yudhish-thira the just with Krishnā. Arjuna, therefore, was incapable of entering that chamber, or going alone with the Brahmana, though repeatedly urged (to do either) by the weeping accents of the Brahmana. Summoned by the Brahmana, Arjuna reflected with a sorrowful heart, 'Alas, this innocent Brahmana's wealth is being robbed! I should certainly dry up his tears. He hath come to our gate and is weeping even now. If I do not protect him, the king will be touched with sin in consequence of my

indifference, our own irreligiousness will be established throughout the kingdom, and we shall be incurring a great sin. If disregarding the king, I enter the chamber, without doubt I shall be behaving untruthfully towards that monarch without a foe. By entering the chamber, again, I incur the penalty of an exile in the woods. But I must overlook everything. I care not if I have to incur sin by disregarding the king. I care not if I have to go to the woods and die there. Virtue is superior to the body, and lasteth after the body hath perished.' Dhananjaya, arriving at this resolution, entered the chamber and talked with Yudhish-thira. And coming out with the bow, he cheerfully told the Brahmana, 'Proceed, O Brahmana, with haste, so that those wretched robbers may not distance us much. I shall accompany thee and restore unto thee thy wealth that hath fallen into the hands of the thieves!' Then Dhananjaya, using both his arms with equal skill, armed with the bow and cased in mail and riding on his war-chariot decked with flagstaffs, pursued the thieves, and piercing them with his arrows, compelled them to give up the booty. And benefiting the Brahmana thus by making over to him his kine, and winning great renown, the hero returned to the capital. And bowing unto all the elders, and congratulated by everybody, Pārtha at last approached Yudhish-thira, and addressing him, said, 'Give me leave, O lord, to observe the vow I took! In beholding thee sitting with Draupadi, I have violated the rule established by ourselves. I shall, therefore, go into the woods, for even this is our understanding!' Then Yudhish-thira, suddenly hearing those painful words, became afflicted with grief, and said in an agitated voice, 'Why!' A little while after, king Yudhish-thira in grief said unto his brother Dhananjaya of curly hair who never departed from his vows, these words:—'O thou sinless one, if I am an authority worthy of regard, listen to what I say! O hero, full well do I know the reason why thou hadst entered my chamber and didst what thou regardest an act disagreeable to me! But there is no displeasure in my mind. The younger brother may, without fault, enter the chamber where the elder brother sitteth with his wife. It is

only the elder brother that acts against the rules of propriety by entering the room where the younger brother sitteth with his wife. Therefore, O thou of mighty arms, desist from thy purpose! Do what I say! Thy virtue hath sustained no diminution. Thou hast not disregarded me!'

"Arjuna, hearing this, replied, 'I have heard even from thee, that quibbling is not permitted in the discharge of duty. I cannot waver from truth. Truth is my weapon!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Obtaining then the king's permission, Arjuna prepared himself for a life in the woods. And he went to the forest to live there for twelve years."

Thus ends the two hundred and fifteenth Section in the Arjuna-vanavāsha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXVI.

(*Arjuna-vanavashà Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "And when that spreader of the renown of the Kuru race, the strong-armed Arjuna, set out (for the forest), Brahmanas conversant with the Vedas walked behind that illustrious hero for a certain distance. And followed by Brahmanas conversant with the Vedas and Vedāngas and devoted to the contemplation of the Supreme Spirit, by persons skilled in music, by ascetics devoted to the Deity, by reciters of Puranas, by narrators of sacred stories, by devotees leading celebate lives, by *Vanaprasthas,* by Brahmanas sweetly reciting celestial histories, by these and various classes of persons of sweet speeches, Arjuna journeyed like Indra followed by the Marutas. And, O thou of the Bharata race, that bull of the Bhāratas saw, as he journeyed, many delightful and picturesque forests, lakes, rivers, seas, provinces, and sacred places of pilgrimage. And at last arriving at the source of the Ganges, the mighty hero thought of settling there.

"Listen now, O Janameyaja, to a wonderful feat which that foremost of the sons of Pandu, of high soul, did while there! When that son of Kunti, O Bhārata, and the Brahmanas who had followed him, took up their residence at that region, the Brahmanas performed innumerable *Agni-hotras* (sacrifical rites

by igniting the fire). And, O king, in consequence of those learned, vow-observing, and illustrious Brahmanas, who never deviated from the right path, daily establishing, and igniting with *mantras* on the banks of that sacred stream, after performance of their ablutions, fires for their sacrifices, and pouring libations of clarified butter into the same, and worshipping those fires with offerings of flowers, that region itself where the Ganges entered the plains became exceedingly beautiful! And one day that bull amongst the Pandavas, while residing in that region in the midst of those Brahmanas, descended (as usual) into the Ganges for performing his ablutions. And after his ablutions had been over, and after he had offered the (usual) oblations of water unto his deceased ancestors, as he he was about to rise up from the stream desirous of performing his sacrificial rites before the fire, the long-armed hero, O king, was drawn away into the bottom of the water by Ulupi, the daughter of the king of the Nāgas, urged by the god of desire. And it so happened that the son of Pandu was carried into the beautiful mansion of Kauravya the king of the Nāgas. And Arjuna saw there a sacrificial fire ignited for himself. And beholding that fire, Dhananjaya, the son of Kunti, performed his sacrificial rites with devotion. And Agni was much gratified with Arjuna for the fearlessness with which that hero poured libations into his manifested form. And after he had performed his rites before fire, the son of Kunti, beholding the daughter of the king of the Nāgas, addressed her smilingly and said, 'O handsome girl, what act of rashness is this that thou hast performed, O timid one! Whose is this beautiful region, who art thou and whose daughter?'

"Hearing these words of Arjuna, Ulupi answered, 'There is a Nāga of name Kauravya, born in the line of Airāvata. I am, O prince, the daughter of that Kauravya, and my name is Ulupi. And, O thou tiger among men, beholding thee descended into the stream for performing thy ablutions, I was deprived of reason by the god of desire! O thou sinless one, I am still unmarried. Oppressed as I am by the god of desire on account of thee, O thou of the Kuru race, gratify me today by giving thyself up to me!'

"Arjuna replied, 'Commanded by king Yudhish-thira, O amiable one, I am undergoing the vow of a Brahmachārin for twelve years! I am not free to act in any way I like. But, O thou ranger of the waters, I am willing yet to do thy pleasure (if I can). I have never spoken an untruth before. Tell me, therefore, O Nāga maid, how I may act so, that while doing thy pleasure I may not be guilty of any untruth or breach of duty!'

"Ulupi answered, 'I know, O son of Pāndu, why thou wanderest over the earth, and why is it that thou hast been commanded to lead the life of a Brahmachārin by thy superior! Even this was the understanding to which all of ye had been pledged, *viz*, that amongst ye all owning Drupada's daughter as your common wife, he who should from ignorance enter the room where one of ye should be sitting with her, should lead the life of a Brahmachārin in the woods for twelve years! The exile of one another of ye, therefore, is only for the sake of Draupadi. Thou art but observing the duty arising from that vow. Thy virtue cannot sustain any diminution (by acceding to my solicitation). Then again, O thou of large eyes, it is a duty to relieve the distressed! Thy virtue suffereth no diminution by relieving me! Or, if (by this act) O Arjuna, thy virtue suffereth a minute diminution, thou wilt acquire great merit by saving my life. Know me for thy worshipper, O Pārtha! Therefore' yield thyself up to me! Even this, O lord, is the opinion of the wise, (*viz*, that one should accept a woman that wooeth herself). If thou dost not act in this way, know that I will destroy myself. O thou of long arms, earn thou great merit by saving my life! I seek thy shelter, O thou best of men! Thou protectest always, O son of Kunti, the afflicted and the masterless! I seek thy protection, weeping in sorrow. I woo thee, being filled with desire. Therefore, do what is agreeable to me! It behoveth thee to gratify my wish by yielding thyself up to me!'"

Vaisampayana said, "Thus addressed by the daughter of the king of the Nāgas, the son of Kunti did everything she desired, making virtue his motive. And the powerful Arjuna,

spending the night in the mansion of the Nāga, rose with the sun in the morning. And accompanied by Ulupi he came back from the palace of Kauravya to the region where the Ganges entereth the plains. And the chaste Ulupi taking leave of him there, returned to her own abode. And, O Bhārata, she granted unto Arjuna a boon making him invincible in water, saying, 'Every amphibious creature shall, without doubt, be vanquishable by thee!'"

Thus ends the two hundred and sixteenth Section in the Arjuna-vanavāsa of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXVII.

(*Arjuna vanavasa Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Then the son of the wielder of the thunder-bolt, having narrated everything unto those Brahmanas (residing with him there), set out for the side of the Himavat. And arriving at the spot called *Agastya-vata*, he next went to Vashishta's peak. And thence the son of Kunti proceeded to the peak of Bhrigu. And purifying himself with ablutions and other rites there, that foremost of the Kurus gave away unto Brahmanas many thousands of kine and many houses. And thence that best of men proceeded to the sacred asylum called Hirnyavindu. And performing his ablutions there, that foremost of the sons of Pandu saw many holy regions. And descending from those heights, that chief of men, O Bhārata, accompanied by the Brahmanas, journeyed towards the east, desiring to behold the regions that lay in that direction. And the foremost of the Kuru race saw many regions of sacred waters one after another. And beholding in the forest of Naimisha the delightful river *Utpalini* (full of lotuses) and the Nandā and the Apara Nandā, the far-famed Kausiki, and the mighty rivers Gayā and Gangā, and all the regions of sacred waters, he purified himself, O Bharata, (with the usual rites), and gave away many kine unto Brahmanas. And whatever regions of sacred waters and other holy places there were in Anga, Vanga, and Kalinga, Arjuna went to all of them. And seeing them all with due ceremonies, he gave away much wealth. And,

O Bhārata, all those Brahmanas who had gone thither following the son of Pandu, bade him farewell at the gate of the kingdom of Kalinga and desisted from following him further. And the brave Dhananjaya, the son of Kunti, obtaining their leave, went towards the ocean accompanied by only a few attendants. And crossing the country of the Kalingas, the mighty one proceeded, seeing on his way many countries and sacred spots and delightful mansions and houses. And beholding the Mahendra mountains adorned with the ascetics (residing there), he went to Manipur, proceeding slowly along the sea shore. And beholding all the regions of sacred waters and other holy places in that province, the strong-armed son of Pandu at last went, O king, to the virtuous Chitra-vāhna, the ruler of Manipur. And the king of Manipur had a daughter of great beauty named Chitrāngadā. And it so happened that Arjuna beheld her in her father's palace wandering at pleasure. And beholding the handsome daughter of Chitra-vāhana, Arjuna desired to possess her. And going unto the king (her father), he represented unto him what he sought. And he said, 'Give unto me thy daughter, O king! I am an illustrious Kshatriya's son.' And hearing this, the king asked him, 'Whose son art thou?' And Arjuna replied, 'I am Dhananjaya, the son of Pandu and Kunti.' And the king, hearing this, spoke unto him these words in sweet accents:—'There was in our race a king of the name of Prabhanjana. He was childless. To obtain a child, he underwent severe ascetic penances. And by his severe ascetism, O Pārtha, he gratified that god of gods, Mahadeva, the husband of Umā, that supreme lord holding the (mighty bow called) Pināka. And the illustrious lord granted him the boon that each successive descendant of his race should have one child only. And in consequence of that boon, one child only is born unto every successive descendant of this race. All my ancestors (one after another) had each male children. I, however, have only a daughter to perpetuate my race. But, O thou bull amongst men, this daughter of mine I ever look upon as my son. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, I have duly made her a *Putrikā*. Therefore, one amongst the sons that

may be begotten upon her by thee, O Bhārata, shall be the perpetuator of my race. And that son is the dower for which I may give away my daughter. O son of Pandu, if thou choosest, thou canst take her upon this understanding.' Hearing these words of the king, Arjuna accepted them all, saying, 'So be it.' And taking Chitra-vāhana's daughter (as his wife), the son of Kunti resided in that city for three years. And when Chitrāngadā gave birth to a son, Arjuna embraced that handsome princess affectionately. And taking leave of the king (her father), he set out on his wanderings again."

Thus ends the two hundred and seventeenth Section in the Arjuna-vanavāsa of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXVIII.

(Arjuna-vanavasa Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Then that bull of the Bharatā race went to the regions of sacred water on the banks of the southern ocean, all adorned with the ascetics residing there. And there lay scattered five regions of sacred water around, where also dwelt many ascetics. But those five pieces of water themselves were shunned by all of them. And those sacred waters were called Agastya, and Saubhadra, and Paulomā of great holiness, and Kārandhama of great propitiousness yielding the fruits of a horse-sacrifice unto those that bathed there, and Bhāradwaja, that great washer of sins. And that foremost of the Kurus beholding those five sacred waters, and seeing them uninhabited, and ascertaining also that they were shunned by the virtuous ascetics dwelling around, asked those pious men with joined hands, saying, 'Why, O ascetics, are these five sacred waters shunned by the utterers of Brahmā?' And hearing him, the ascetics replied, 'There dwell in these waters five large crocodiles which take away the ascetics (that may happen to bathe in them.) It is for this, O son of the Kuru race, that these are shunned!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of the ascetics, that foremost of men endued with mighty arms, though dissuaded by them, went to behold those waters. And arrived

at the excellent sacred water called Saubhadra called after a great Rishi, the brave oppressor of all foes suddenly plunged into it for taking a bath. And as soon as that tiger among men had plunged into the water, a great crocodile that was in it seized him by the leg. But the strong-armed Dhananjaya the son of Kunti,—that foremost of all men endued with might,—seized that struggling ranger of the water, and dragged it forcibly to the shore. But dragged by the renowned Arjuna to the land, that crocodile became (transformed into) a beautiful damsel decked in every ornament. And, O king, that charming damsel of celestial form seemed to shine for her beauty and complexion. And Dhananjaya the son of Kunti, beholding that strange sight, asked that damsel with a pleased heart, 'Who art thou, O beautiful one? What for hadst thou been a ranger of the waters? Why also didst thou commit such a dreadful sin?' The damsel replied, saying, 'I am, O mighty-armed one, an Apsarā sporting in the celestial woods. I am, O mighty one, Vargā by name, and ever dear unto the celestial treasurer (Kuvera). I have four other companions, all handsome and capable of going everywhere at will. Accompanied by them I was one day going to the abode of Kuvera. On the way we beheld a Brahmana of rigid vows, and exceedingly handsome, studying the Vedas in solitude. The whole forest (in which he was sitting) seemed to be covered by his ascetic splendour. He seemed to have illuminated the whole region like the Sun himself. And beholding his ascetic devotion of that nature and his wonderful beauty, we alighted in that region, in order to disturb his ascetic meditation. Myself and Sauraveyi and Samichi and Vudvudā and Latā, approached that Brahmana, O Bharata, at the same time. And we began to sing and smile and otherwise tempt that Brahmana. But, O hero, that Brahmana (youth) set not his heart even once upon us. His mind fixed on pure meditation, that youth of great energy suffered not his heart to waver. And, O thou bull of the Kshatriya race, the glance he cast upon us was one of wrath. And he said looking at us,—Becoming crocodiles, range ye the waters for a hundred years.—'"

Thus ends the two hundred and eighteenth Section in the Arjuna-vanavāsa of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXIX.

(*Arjuna-vanavasa Parva continued.*)

Vaisampyana said, "Vargā continued, 'We were then, O thou best of the Bhārata race, deeply distressed at this curse. We sought to propitiate that Brahmana of ascetic wealth departing not from his vows. And addressing him we said,—Inflated with a sense of our beauty and youth, and urged by the god of desire, we have acted very improperly. It behoveth thee, O Brahmana, to pardon us! Truly, O Brahmana, it was death to us that we had at all come hither to tempt thee of rigid vows and possest of sufficiency of ascetic wealth! The virtuous, however, have said that women should never be slain. Therefore, grow thou in virtue! It behoveth thee not to slay us so! Conversant as thou art with virtue, it hath been said that a Brahmana is ever the friend of every creature. O thou of great prosperity, let this speech of the wise become true! The eminent always protect those that seek protection at their hands. We seek thy protection. It behoveth thee to grant us pardon!—'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus addressed, that Brahmana of virtuous soul and good deeds and equal in splendour, O hero, unto the Sun or the Moon, became propitious unto them! And the Brahmana said, 'The words *hundred* and *hundred thousand* are all indicative of eternity. The word *hundred*, however, as employed by me is to be understood as a limited period and not indicative of a period without end. Ye shall, therefore, becoming crocodiles seize and take away men (for only an hundred years as explained by me). At the end of that period, an exalted individual will drag ye all from the water to the land. Then ye will have back your real forms. Never before have I spoken an untruth even in jest. Therefore all that I have said must come to pass. And those sacred waters (within which I assign ye your places), after ye have been delivered by that individual, will become known all

over the world by the name of *Nari-thirthas* (or sacred waters connected with the sufferings and deliverance of females). And all of them shall become sacred and purifying in the eyes of the virtuous and the wise.' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Vargā then, addressing Arjuna, finished her discourse, saying, 'Hearing these words of the Brahmana, we saluted him with reverence and walked round him. Leaving that region we came away with heavy hearts, thinking as we proceeded,—Where shall we all soon meet with that man who will give us back our own forms (after the transformation) ?—And as we were thinking of it, in almost a moment, O Bhārata, we beheld even the eminent celestial Rishi Narada. And beholding the celestial Rishi of immeasurable energy our hearts were filled with joy. And saluting him with reverence, O Pārtha, we stood before him with blushing faces. And he asked us the cause of our sorrow and we told him all. And hearing what had happened, the Rishi said,—In the lowlands bordering on the southern ocean, there are five regions of sacred water. They are delightful and eminently holy. Go ye thither without delay. That tiger among men, Dhananjaya the son of Pandu, of pure soul, will soon deliver ye, without doubt, from this sad plight.—O hero, hearing the Rishi's words, we all came hither. And, O sinless one, true it is that I have today been delivered by thee ! And those four friends of mine are still within the other waters here. O hero, do thou a good deed by delivering them also !' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Then O monarch, that foremost of the Pandavas endued with great prowess, cheerfully delivered all of them from that curse. And rising from the waters they all regained their own forms. And those Apsarās then all looked, O king, as before. And freeing those regions of sacred water (from the dangers for which they had been noted), and giving the Apsarās leave to go where they chose, Arjuna became desirous of once more seeing Chitrāngadā. He, therefore, proceeded towards the city of Manipur. And arrived there he beheld on the throne the son he had begotten upon Chitrāngadā, and who was called by the name of Vabhru-

vāhana. And seeing Chitrāngadā once more, Arjuna proceeded, O monarch, towards the spot called Gokarna."

Thus ends the two hundred and nineteenth Section in the Arjuna-vanavāsa of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXX.

(Arjuna-vanavasa Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Then Arjuna of immeasurable prowess saw, one after another, all the regions of sacred water and other holy places that were on the shores of the Western ocean. Vivatshu reached the sacred spot called Prabhāsa. And when the invincible Arjuna had arrived at that sacred and delightful region, the slayer of Madhu, (Krishna) heard of it. And Mādhaba soon went there to see his friend the son of Kunti. And Krishna and Arjuna met together and embracing each other enquired after each other's welfare. And those dear friends who were none else than the Rishi Nara and Nārāyana of old sat themselves down. Vāsudeva asked Arjuna about his travels, saying, 'Why, O Pandava, art thou wandering over the earth beholding all the regions of sacred water and other holy places?' Then Arjuna told him everything that had happened. And hearing all, the lord Vārshneya said, 'This is as it should be.' And Krishna and Arjuna, sporting as they liked, for sometime in Prabhāsa, went to the Raivataka mountain for passing some days there. And before they arrived at Raivataka, that mountain had, at the command of Krishna, been well adorned by many artificers. And much food also had, at Krishna's command, been collected there. And Arjuna enjoying everything that had been collected there for him, sat with Vāsudeva to see the performances of the actors and the dancers. Then the high-souled Pandava, dismissing them all with proper respect, laid himself down on a well-adorned and excellent bed. And as the strong-armed one lay on that excellent bed, he described unto Krishna everything about the regions of sacred water, the lakes and the mountains, the rivers and the forests, that he had seen. And while he was speaking of these, stretched upon that celestial

bed, sleep, O Janamejaya, stole upon him. And he rose in the morning, awakened with sweet songs and the melodious notes of the *Vinā* and the panegyrics and benedictions of the bards. And after he had gone through the necessary acts and ceremonies, he was affectionately accosted by him of the Vrishni race. And riding upon a golden car, the hero then set out for Dwārakā, the capital of the Yādavas. And, O Janamejaya, for honoring the son of Kunti, the city of Dwārakā was well-adorned, even all the gardens and houses within it. And the citizens of Dwārakā, desirous of beholding the son of Kunti, began to pour eagerly into the public thoroughfares by hundreds of thousands. And in the public squares and thoroughfares, hundreds and thousands of women mixing with the men swelled the great crowd of the Bhojas, the Vrishnis, and the Andhakas, that had collected there. And Arjuna was welcomed with respect by all the sons of the Bhojas, the Vrishnis, and the Andhakas. And he worshipped those who deserved his worship and received their blessings. And the hero was welcomed with affectionate reception by all the young men of the Yādava tribe. And he repeatedly embraced all who were equal to him in age. And wending then to the delightful mansion of Krishna filled with gems and every article of enjoyment, he took up his abode there with Krishna for many days."

Thus ends the two hundred and twentieth Section in the Arjuna-vanavāsa of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXI.

(Subhadrā-harāna Parva.)

Vaisampayana said, "O best of monarchs, within a few days after this, there commenced on the Raivataka mountain, a grand festival of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas. And in that mountain festival of the Bhojas, the Vrishnis, and the Andhakas, the heroes of those tribes began to give away much wealth unto Brahmanas by thousands. And, O king, the region around that hill was adorned with many a mansion decked with gems and many an artificial tree of gaudy hue. And the musicians struck up in concert and the dancers

began to dance and the vocalists to sing. And the youths of the Vrishni race, endued with great energy, adorned with every ornament and riding on their gold-decked cars, looked extremely handsome. And the citizens, some on foot and some on excellent cars, with their wives and followers went there by hundreds and thousands. And there was the lord Haladhara (Valarāma) too roving at will, excited with drink and accompanied by (his wife) Revati and followed by many musicians and vacalists. And there also came Ugra-sena the powerful king of the Vrishni race, accompanied by his thousand wives and followed by sweet singers. And Raukmineya and Shāmva also, ever furious in battle, were roving there, excited wlth drink and adorned with floral wreaths of great beauty, and costly attire, disporting themselves like a pair of celestials. And Akrura and Sārana and Gada, and Vabhru and Nishat-ha, and Chāru-deshna and Prithu and Viprithu, and Satyaka and Sātyaki, and Vanga-kāra and Mahārava, and Hārdikya and Udhava and many others whose names are not given, accompanied by their wives and followed by bands of singers, adorned that mountain festival. And when that delightful festival of great grandeur set in, Vāsudeva and Pārtha went about, together beholding everything around. And while they were wandering there, they saw the handsome daughter of Vasudeva—Bhadrā by name—decked in every ornament in the midst of her maids. And as soon as Arjuna beheld her, he was possest by the god of desire. And, O Bhārata, that tiger among men, Krishna, observing Pārtha contemplate her with absorbed attention, said with smiles, 'How is this? Can the heart of one that rangeth the woods be agitated by the god of desire? This is my sister, O Pārtha, and the uterine sister of Sārana. Blest be thou, her name is Bhadrā, and she is the favorite daughter of my father. Tell me if thy heart be fixed upon her, for I shall then speak to my father myself.'

"Arjuna answered, 'She is Vasudava's daughter and Vāsudeva's sister. Endued with so much beauty, whom can she not fascinate? If this thy sister, this maid of the Vrishni race, becometh my wife, truly may I win prosperity

in everything! Tell me, O Janarddana, by what means I may obtain her! I will achieve anything that is achievable by man, to obtain her!'

"Vāsudeva answered, 'O thou bull amongst men, the *Swayamvara* hath been ordained for the marriage of the Kshatriyas. But that is doubtful (in its consequence), O Pārtha, as we do not know this girl's temper and disposition. In the case of Kashatriyas that are brave, a forcible abduction for purposes of marriage is applauded, as the learned have said. Therefore, O Arjuna, carry away this my beautiful sister by force, for who knows what she may do in a Swayamvara?' Then Krishna and Arjuna, having thus settled about what should be done, sent some speedy messenger unto Yudhish-thira at Indraprastha, informing him of everything. And the strong-armed Yudhish-thira, as soon as he heard it, gave his assent to it."

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-first Section in the Subhadrā-harana of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXII.

(Subhadra-harana Parva continued.)

"Vaisampayana said, 'Then Dhananjaya, informed of the assent of Yudhish-thira, and ascertaining, O Janamejaya, that the maiden had gone to the Raivataka hill, obtained the assent of Vāsudeva also, after having settled in consultation with him about what should be done. And that bull of the Bharata race, that foremost of men, with Krishna's assent, riding on his well-built car of gold furnished with rows of small bells and equipped-with every kind of weapon,—and the clatter of whose wheels was like unto the roar of the clouds and whose splendour was like unto that of blazing fire and which struck terror into the hearts of all foes and unto which were yoked the horses Saivya and Sugriva,—himself accoutred in mail and armed with the sword and his fingers encased in leathern fence, set out as if on a hunting expedition. Meanwhile Subhadrā, having paid her homage unto that prince of hills Raivataka, and having worshipped the deities and made the Brahmanas utter benedic-

tions upon her, and having also walked round the hill, was coming towards Dwārāvati. And the son of Kunti, afflicted with the shafts of the god of desire, suddenly rushed towards that Yādava girl of faultless features and forcibly took her up on his car. And that tiger among men, having seized that girl of sweet smiles, proceeded on his car of gold towards his own city (Indra-prastha). Meanwhile, the armed attendants of Subhadrā, beholding her thus seized and taken away, all ran crying towards the city Dwārakā. And they all together reaching the Yādavā court called by the name of Sudharmā, represented everything about the prowess of Pārtha unto the chief officer of the court. And the chief officer of the court, hearing everything from those messengers, blew his gold-decked trumpet of loud sound, calling all to arms. Stirred up by that sound, the Bhojas, Vrishnis, and Andhakas began to pour in from all sides. Those that were eating left their food, and those that were drinking left their drink. And those tigers among men—those great warriors of the Vrishni and Andhaka tribes—took their seats upon their thousand thrones of gold covered with excellent carpets and variegated with gems and corals and possessed of the lustre of blazing fire. And they took their seats upon those thrones, like fire taking unto itself the faggots lying around. And after they were seated in that court which was like unto a conclave of the celestials themselves, the chief officer of the court assisted by those that stood at his back, spoke of the conduct of Jishnu. And the proud Vrishni heroes, of eyes red with wine, as soon as they heard of it, rose up from their seats, unable to bear what Arjuna had done. And some amongst them said, 'Yoke our cars;' and some, 'Bring our weapons;' and some said, 'Bring our costly bows and strong coats of mail;' and some loudly called upon their charioteers to yoke their cars, and some, from impatience, themselves yoked their horses decked in gold unto their cars. And while their cars and armours and standards were being brought, loud became the uproar of those heroes. Then Valadeva, white and tall as the Kylāsa cliff, decked in garlands of wild flowers and attired in blue robes, and proud and intoxicated with drink, said these words:—

'Ye senseless men, what are ye doing, when Janarddana sitteth silent? Without knowing what is in his mind, vainly do ye roar in wrath! Let the high-souled Krishna give out what he purposeth. Accomplish ye with activity what he desireth to do!' Then all of them, hearing these words of Halāyudha that deserved to be accepted, exclaimed 'Excellent!' 'Excellent!' They then all became silent. And silence having been restored by the words of the intelligent Valadeva, they took their seats once more in that assembly. And Rama, that oppressor of all foes, then spake unto Vāsudeva, saying, 'Why, O Janarddana, sittest thou gazing without speaking? O Achyuta, it was for thy sake that the son of Prithā had been welcomed and honored by us! It seemeth, however, that vile wretch deserved not our homage. What man is there born of a respectable family that would break the plate after having dined off it? Even if one desireth to contract such an alliance, yet remembering all the services he hath received, who is there, desirous of happiness, that would act so rashly? That Pāndava, disregarding us and thee too, hath today ravished Subhadrā, desiring to compass his own death. He hath placed his foot on the crown of my head. How shall I, O Govinda, tamely bear it? Shall I not resent it, even like a snake that is trod upon? Alone shall I today make the earth destitute of Kauravas! Never shall I put up with this transgression of Arjuna!' Then all the Bhojas, Vrishnis, and Andhakas, pressing there approved of everything that Valadeva had said deeply roaring like unto a kettle-drum or the clouds."

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-second Section in the Subhadrā-harana of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXIII.

(Harana-harana Parva.)

Vaisampayana said, "When the heroes of the Vrishni race began to speak repeatedly in this strain, Vāsudeva then uttered these words of deep import and consistent with true morality. 'Gudā-kesha (the conqueror of sleep or he of the curly-hair), by what he hath done, hath not insulted our family,

He hath, without doubt, rather enhanced our respect. Pārtha knoweth that we of the Sātwata race are never mercenary. The son of Pandu also regardeth a Swayamvara as doubtful in its results. Who also would approve of accepting a bride in gift as if she were an animal? What man also is there on earth who would sell his offspring? I think Arjuna seeing these faults in all the other methods took the maiden away by force, according to the ordinance. This alliance is very proper. Subhadrā is a renowned girl. Pārtha too possesseth renown. Perhaps, thinking of all this Arjuna hath taken her away by force. Who is there that would not desire to have Arjuna for a friend born in the race of Bharata and of the renowned Shāntanu, and the son also of the daughter of Kunti-bhoja? I do not see, in all the worlds with Indra and the Rudras, the person that can by force vanquish Pārtha in battle, except the three-eyed god Mahādeva. His car is well-known. And yoked thereunto are those horses of mine. Pārtha as a warrior is well-known, as also his lightness of hand. Who shall be equal to him? Even this is my opinion: Go ye cheerfully after Dhananjaya and by conciliation stop him and bring him back. If Pārtha goes to his city after having vanquished us by force, our fame will be gone. There is no disgrace, however, in conciliation.' Hearing, O monarch, these words of Vāsudeva, they did as he directed. And stopped by them, Arjuna returned to Dwārakā and was united in marriage with Subhadrā. And worshipped by the sons of the Vrishni race, Arjuna, sporting there as he pleased, passed a whole year in Dwāraka. And the last years of his exile the exalted one passed at the sacred region of Pushkara. And after the twelve years were complete, he came back to Khāndava-prastha. And he approached the king first and then worshipped the Brahmanas with respectful attention. At last the hero went unto Draupadi. And Draupadi from jealousy spake unto him, saying, 'Why tarriest thou here, O son of Kunti! Go where the daughter of the Sātwata race is! A second tie always relaxeth the first one upon a bundle!' And Krishnā lamented much in this strain. But Dhananjaya pacified her and repeatedly asked for forgive-

ness. And returning soon unto where Subhadrā was, attired in red silk, Arjuna sent her into the inner apartments dressed (not as a queen but) in the simple garb of a cowherd woman. But arrived at the palace the renowned Subhadrā looked handsomer in that dress. And the renowned Bhadrā of large and slightly red eyes first worshipped Prithā. And Kunti from excess of affection smelt the head of that girl of every feature perfectly faultless, and pronounced infinite blessings upon her. Then that girl of face like the full moon hastily went unto Draupadi and worshipped her, saying, 'I am thy maid!' And Krishnā rose up hastily and embraced the sister of Mādhava from affection, and said, 'Let thy husband be without a foe!' And Bhadrā with a delighted heart said unto Draupadi, 'So be it!' And from that time, O Janamejaya, those great warriors—the Pandavas—began to live in happiness, and Kunti also became very happy."

Vaisampayana continued, "When that oppressor of all foes, Keshava of pure soul and eyes like lotus leaves, heard that the foremost of the Pandavas, Arjuna, had reached his own excellent city of Indraprastha, he came there accompanied by Rama and the heroes and great warriors of the Vrishni and Andhaka tribes, and by his brothers and sons and many other brave warriors. And Sauri came accompanied by a large army that protected him. And there came along with Sauri, that oppressor of all foes, the exceedingly liberal Akrura of great intelligence and renown, the commander of the brave Vrishni host. And there also came Anādhrishti of great prowess, and Uddhava of great renown, of great intelligence, of great soul, and a disciple of Vrihaspati himself (in morals). And there also came Satyaka and Sātyaki and Kritavarmā and Satwata; and Pradyumna and Nishatha and Shankara; and Chārudeshna, and Jhilli of great prowess, and Viprithu also; and Sārana, and Gada of mighty arms and the foremost of learned men. These and many other Vrishnis and Bhojas and Andhakas came to Indraprastha bringing with them many nuptial presents. And king Yudhish-thira, hearing that Mādhava had arrived, sent the twins out to receive him. And received by them, the Vrishni host of great prosperity entered Khān-

dava-prastha well-adorned with flags and ensigns. And the streets were well-swept and watered, and decked with floral wreaths and bunches. And they were sprinkled over with sandal wood water that was fragrant and cooling. And every part of the town was filled with the sweet scent of burning aloes. And the city was full of joyous and healthy people and adorned with merchants and traders. And that best of men, Keshava of mighty arms, accompanied by Rāma and many of the Vrishnis, Andhakas, and Bhojas, having entered the town, was worshipped by the citizens and the Brahmanas by thousands. And he at last entered the palace of the king which was like unto the mansion of Indra himself. And beholding Rama, Yudhish-thira received him with due ceremonies. And the king smelt the head of Keshava and embraced him with both his arms. And Govinda, gratified with the reception, humbly worshipped Yudhish-thira. And he also paid homage unto Bhima, that tiger among men. And Yudhish-thira the son of Kunti also received the other principal men of the Vrishni and Andhaka tribes with due ceremonies. And Yudhish-thira reverentially worshipped some as his superiors, and welcomed others as equals. And some he received with affection and by some he was worshipped with reverence. And Hrishikesha of great renown then gave unto the party of the bridegroom much wealth. And unto Subhadrā he gave the nuptial presents that had been given to her by her relatives. And Krishna gave unto the Pandavas a thousand cars of gold furnished with rows of bells, and unto each of which were yoked four horses driven by well-trained charioteers. And he also give unto them ten thousand kine belonging to the country of Mathura, and yielding much milk and all of excellent complexion. And Janārddana well-pleased, also gave them a thousand mares with gold-harnesses and of color white as the rays of the moon. And he also gave them a thousand mules, all well-trained and possessing the speed of the wind, and of white color with black manes. And he of eyes like lotus leaves also gave unto them a thousand damsels well-skilled in assisting at the operations of bathing and at drinking, young in years and virgins all before their first season, well-attired and of excellent

complexion, each wearing a hundred pieces of gold around her neck, without the hirsute growth of youth, decked in every ornament, and well-skilled in every kind of personal service. And Janārddana also gave unto them hundreds of thousands of draught horses from the country of the Vālhikas as Subhadrā's excellent dower. And Janārddana of the Dāsārha race also gave unto Subhadrā as her pecculium ten carrier-loads of first class gold possessing the splendour of fire, both purified and in a state of ore. And Ramā having the plough for his weapon and always loving bravery gave unto Arjuna as nuptial present a thousand elephants with the juice flowing in three streams from the three parts of their bodies (the temple, the ears, and the anus), each large as a mountain suimmit, irresistible in battle, decked with coverlets and ever ringing bells, well-adorned with other golden ornaments, and furnished with excellent *howdas* (thrones on the back). And that large wave of wealth and gems that the Yādavas presented, together with the cloths and blankets that represented its foam, and the elephants its alligators and sharks, and the flags its floating plants, swelling to large proportions, mingled with the Pandu ocean and filled it to the brim to the great sorrow of all foes. And Yudhish-thira accepted all those presents and worshipped all those great warriors of the Vrishni and Andhaka races. And those illustrious heroes of the Kuru, Vrishni, and Andhaka races passed their days in pleasure and merriment there like virtuous men (after death) in the celestial regions. And the Kurus and the Vrishnis with joyous hearts amused themselves there, sending up at times loud shouts mixed with clappings of the hand. And thus spending many days in sports and merriment there, and worshipped by the Kurus all the while, those Vrishni heroes endued with great energy then returned to the city of Dwārāvati. And the great warriors of the Vrishni and the Andhaka race set out with Rama in the van, carrying with them those gems of the purest rays that had been given them by the best of the Kurus. And, O Bhārata, the high-souled Vāsudeva remained there with Arjuna in that delightful city of Indraprastha. And the illustrious one wandered over the banks

of the Yamuna in search of deer. And he sported with Kiriti (Arjuna) piercing with his shafts deer and wild boars. Then Subhadrā the favorite sister of Keshava gave birth to an illustrious son, like Puloma's daughter (the queen of heaven) bringing forth Jayanta. And the son that Subhadrā brought forth was of long arms, broad chest, and eyes large as those of a bull. And that hero and oppressor of all foes came to be called Abhimanyu. And the son of Arjuna, that grinder of foes and bull among men, was called Abhimanyu, because he was fearless and wrathful. And that great warrior was begotten upon the daughter of the Sātwata race by Dhananjaya, like fire produced in a sacrifice from within the *shami* wood by the process of rubbing. And upon the birth of this child, Yudhishthira the powerful son of Kunti, gave away unto the Brahmanas ten thousand kine and coins of gold. And the child from his earliest years became the favorite of Vāsudeva and of his father and uncles, like the moon unto all the people of the earth. And upon his birth, Krishna performed the usual rites of infancy. And the child began to grow up like the moon in the lighted fortnight. And that grinder of foes soon became conversant with the Vedas and acquired from his father the science of weapons both celestial and human, consisting of four branches and ten divisions.

And endued with great strength, the child also acquired the knowledge of counteracting the weapons hurled at him by others, and lightness of hand, and fleetness of motion forwards and backwards and transverse and wheeling. And Abhimanyu became like unto his father in knowledge of the Shāstras and rites of religion. And Dhananjaya, beholding his son, became filled with joy. And like Maghavān beholding Arjuna, the latter beheld his son Abhimanyu and became exceedingly happy. And Abhimanyu possessed the power of slaying every foe and bore on his person every auspicious mark. And he was invincible in war and broad-shouldered as the bull. And possessing a broad face as (the hood) of the snake, his pride was as that of the lion. And wielding a large bow, his prowess was like that of an elephant in rut. And possest of a face handsome as the full moon, and a voice deep as that of the drum

or of the clouds, he was equal unto Krishna in bravery and energy, in beauty and features. And the auspicious Pānchāli also, from her five husbands, obtained five sons who were all heroes of the foremost rank and immovable in battle like five hills. Pratibindhya by Yudhish-thira, Sutasoma by Vrikodara, Srutakarmā by Arjuna, Shatānika, by Nakula and Srutasena by Sahadeva,—these were the five heroes and great warriors that Pānchāli brought forth, like Aditi bringing forth the Adityas. And the Brahmanas, from their fore-knowledge, said unto Yudhish-thira, that because that son of his would be capable of bearing like the Vindhya mountain the weapons of the foe, therefore should he called *Prativindhya*. And because the child that Draupadi bore to Bhima-sena was born after Bhima had performed a thousand *Soma* sacrifices, he came to be called *Sutasoma*. And because Arjuna's son was born upon his return from exile during which he had achieved many celebrated feats, that child came to be called *Sruta-karma*. And Nakula named his son *Shatanika* after a royal sage of that name in the illustrious race of Kuru. And because the son that Draupadi bore to Sahadeva was born under the constellation called Vahni-daivata (Kirtikā), therefore was he called after the generalissimo of the celestial host, *Sruta-sena* (Kārtikeya). And the sons of Draupadi were born, each at the interval of one year. And all of them became renowned and much attached to one another. And, O monarch, all their rites of infancy and child-hood such as *Chuda-karana* and *Upanayana* (shaving of the head with but one lock and investiture with the sacred thread) were performed by Dhaumya according to the ordinance. And all of them, of excellent behaviour and vows, after having studied the Vedas, acquired from Arjuna knowledge of all weapons celestial and human. And, O thou tiger among kings, the Pandavas, having obtained sons all of whom were equal unto the children of the celestials and endued with broad chests, and all of whom became great warriors, were filled with joy !"

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-third Section in the Haranā-harana of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CXXIV.

(*Khandava-daha Parva* .)

Vaisampayana said, "The Pandavas, after they had taken up their abode at Indra-prastha at the command of Dhritarashtra and Bhisma, began to bring other kings under their sway. And all the subjects (of the kingdom) lived most happily, depending upon Yudhish-thira the just, like a soul living happily, depending upon a body blest with auspicious marks and pious deeds. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, Yudhish-thira paid homage unto virtue, pleasure, and profit, in judicious proportion, as if each were a friend dear unto him like his own self. And it seemed as if the three pursuits—virtue, pleasure, and profit—became personified on earth and amongst whom the king shined as a fourth. And the subjects having obtained Yudhish-thira as their king, obtained in him one that was devoted to the study of the Vedas, one that was a performer of great sacrifices, and one that was the protector of all good people. And in consequence of Yudhish-thira's influence, the good fortune of all the monarchs of the earth became stationary, and their hearts became devoted to the meditation of the Supreme spirit, and virtue itself began to grow every way all around. And in the midst of and assisted by his four brothers, the king looked more resplendent (than if he were alone), like a great sacrifice depending upon and assisted by the four Vedas. And many learned Brahmanas with Dhananjaya at their head, each like unto Vrihaspati, waited surrounding the monarch, like the celestials waiting around the Lord himself of the creation. And from excess of affection, the eyes and hearts of all the people equally took great delight in Yudhish-thira who was even as the full moon without a stain. And the people took delight in him not only because he was their king but also from true affection. And the king always did what was agreeable unto them. And the sweet-speeched Yudhish-thira of great intelligence never uttered anything that wus improper or untrue or unbearable or disagreeable. And that best of monarchs of the Bharata race,

endued with great energy, passed his days happily in seeking the good of everybody as his own. And his brothers also, bringing by their energy other kings under their sway, passed their days in happiness without a foe to disturb their peace.

"After a few days, Vivatshu, addressing Krishna, said, 'The summer days have set in, O Krishna! Therefore, let us go to the banks of the Yamunā. And, O slayer of Madhu, sporting there in the company of friends, we will, O Janārddana, return in the evening!' Hearing this, Vāsudeva said, 'O son of Kunti, this also is my wish. Let us, O Pārtha, sport in the waters as we like, in the company of friends!' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Then, O Bhārata, having consulted thus with each other, Pārtha and Govinda, with Yudhish-thira's leave, set out surrounded by friends. And reaching a fine spot (on the banks of the Yamunā) fitted for purposes of pleasure, that was overgrown with numerous tall trees and where had been erected several high mansions that made the place look like the celestial city, and within which had been collected for Krishna and Pārtha numerous costly and well-flavoured viands and drinks and other articles of enjoyment and floral wreaths and various perfumes, the party entered without delay the inner apartments that were all adorned with many precious jewels of pure rays. And entering those apartments, everybody, O Bhārata, began to sport according to his pleasure. And the women of the party, all of full rotund hips and fine and deep bosoms and handsome eyes and gait unsteady with wine, began to sport there at the command of Krishna and Pārtha. And some amongst the women sported as they liked in the woods, and some in the waters, and some within the mansions, as directed by Pārtha and Govinda. And Draupadi and Subhadrā, exhilarated with wine, began to give away unto the women so sporting there costly robes and ornaments. And some amongst those women began to dance in joy, and some began to sing; and some amongst them began to laugh and jest, and some to drink excellent wines. And some began to obstruct one another's progress and some to fight with one another, and some to discourse with one another in private. And those mansions and the woods, filled with the

charming music of flutes and guitars and kettle-drums, became the scene of prosperity itself.

"And when such was the state of things there, Arjuna and Vāsudeva went to a certain charming spot (in those woods) not remote from the place where the others were. And, O monarch, the high-souled Krishna, and Arjuna that subjugator of hostile cities, going thither sat themselves down upon two very costly seats. And Mādhava and Pārtha amused themselves there in discoursing upon many past achievements of prowess and upon many other topics. And unto Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya happily sitting there like the twin Ashwinas in heaven, a certain Brahmana came. And the Brahmana that came there was like unto a tall *shal* tree. And his complexion was like unto molten gold. And his beard was bright yellow tinged with green. And the height and the thickness of his body were in just proportion. Of matted locks and dressed in rags, in splendour he resembled the morning sun. Of eyes like lotus leaves and of a tawny hue, he seemed to be blazing in splendour. And beholding that foremost of Brahmanas blazing in splendour, approach towards them, both Arjuna and Vāsudeva, hastily rising from their seats, stood waiting (for his commands)."

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-fourth Section in the Khāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXV.

(*Khandava-daha Parva.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Then that Brahmana, addressed Arjuna and Vāsudeva of the Sāttwata race, saying, 'Ye who are now staying so near unto Khāndava are the foremost heroes on earth! I am a voracious Brahmana that always eateth much. O thou of the Vrishni race, and O Pārtha, I solicit ye to gratify me by giving me sufficient food!' Thus addressed by the Brahmana, Krishna and the son of Pandu answered him, saying, 'O tell us what food will gratify thee, so that we may endeavour to give it thee!' The illustrious Brahmana, thus replied to, said unto those heroes who were enquiring after the

kind of food he sought, 'I do not desire to eat ordinary food. Know that I am Agni! Give me that food which suiteth me. This forest of Khāndava is always protected by Indra. And protected as it is by the illustrious one (Indra), I always fail in consuming it. There always dwelleth, with his followers and family, a Nāga called Takshaka who is the friend of Indra. It is for him that the wielder of the thunder-bolt protecteth this forest. And many other creatures are thus being protected here for the sake of Takshaka. Desiring to consume the forest I succeed not in my attempts in consequence of Indra's prowess. Beholding me blazing forth, he always poureth upon me water from the clouds. Therefore I succeed not in consuming the forest of Khāndava, although I very much desire to do so. I now have come to ye,—ye who are both skilled in weapons. If ye help me I will surely consume this forest: for even this is the food that is desired by me. Conversant as ye are with excellent weapons, I pray ye to prevent those showers from descending and any of the creatures from escaping, when I begin to consume this forest!'"

Janamejaya said, "Why did the illustrious Agni desire to consume the forest of Khāndava that was filled with various living creatures and protected by the chief of the celestials? When Agni consumed in wrath the forest of Khāndava, it is evident there was a grave cause. I desire, O Brahmana, to hear all this in detail from thee! Tell me, O Muni, how the Khāndava forest was consumed in days of yore!"

Vaisampayana said, "O chief of men, narrate to me the story of the destruction of Khāndava as told by Rishis in the Purāna. It hath been heard, O king, in the Purāna that there was a celebrated king of the name of Swetaki who was endued with strength and prowess and who was equal unto Indra himself. There is no one on earth equal unto him in sacrifices, charity, and intelligence. And Swetaki performed the five great sacrifices and many others, in all of which the presents unto Brahmanas are large. And, O king, the heart of that monarch was always set upon sacrifices, religious rites, and gifts of all kinds. And king Swetaki of great intelligence, assisted by his *Ritwijas* performed sacrifices for many long

years, till those sacrificial priests with eyes afflicted by the continued smoke and becoming very weak, left that monarch, wishing never more to assist at his sacrifices. The king, however, repeatedly asked those *Ritwijas* to come to him. But they come not to his sacrifice in consequence of the painful state of their eyes. The king, therefore, inviting at the command of his own *Ritwijas* others like unto them, completed the sacrifice that he had begun. And after some days had elapsed, king Swetaki desired to perform another sacrifice which should extend for an hundred years. But the illustrious monarch obtained not any priests to assist him at this sacrifice. That celebrated king then with his friends and relatives casting off all sloth, repeatedly courted his priests with great persistence by bowing down unto them, by conciliatory speeches, and by gift of wealth. All of them, however, refused to accomplish the purpose which that king of immeasurable energy had in view. Then that royal sage, getting angry, addressed those Brahmanas sitting in their asylums, and said, 'If, ye Brahmanas, I were a fallen person, or if I were wanting in homage and service to ye, I should then deserve to be abandoned without scruples by ye and by other Brahmanas at the same time! But as I am neither degraded nor wanting in homage to ye, it behoveth ye not to obstruct the performance by me of my sacrifice or to abandon me thus, ye foremost of Brahmanas, without adequate reason! I seek, ye Brahmanas, your protection! It behoveth ye to be propitious unto me! But, ye foremost of Brahmanas, if ye abandon me from enmity alone or any improper motive, I shall go unto other priests for their assistance in this saceifice of mine, and conciliating them by sweet words and gifts, I shall represent unto them the business I have on hand, so that they may accomplish it. Having said this, the monarch became silent. And, O thou oppressor of all foes, when those priests well knew that they could not assist at the king's sacrifice, they pretended to be angry, and addressing that best of monarchs, said, 'O thou best of kings, thy sacrifices are incessant. By assisting thee always, we have all been fatigued. And wearied as we have been in conse-

quence of these labors, it behoveth thee to give us leave! O sinless one, from loss of judgment thou canst not wait, (but urgest us repeatedly). Go unto Rudra! He will assist at thy sacrifice!' Hearing those words of censure and wrath, king Swetki became angry. And the monarch wending to the mountain of Kylasa, devoted himself to ascetism there. And, O king, the monarch began to worship Mahadeva, with fixed attention, and observing the most rigid vows, and foregoing all food at times, he passed a long time. And the monarch ate only fruits and roots sometimes at the twelfth and sometimes at the sixteenth hour of the whole day (of twenty four hours). And king Swetaki stood for six months, rapt in attention, with arms upraised and stead-fast eyes, like the trunk of a tree or a column rooted to the ground. And, O Bhārata, Sankara at last, gratified with that tiger among kings who was undergoing such hard penances, showed himself unto the king. And the god spake unto the monarch in a calm and grave voice, 'O tiger among kings, O oppressor of all foes, I have been gratified with thee for thy asceticism! Blest be thou! Ask now the boon that thou, O king, desirest!' Hearing these words of Rudra of immeasurable energy, the royal sage bowed down unto that high-souled deity and replied, saying, 'O illustrious one, O thou who art worhipped of the three worlds, if thou hast been gratified with me, then, O thou god of gods, assist me thyself, O lord of the celestials, in my sacrifice!' Hearing these words spoken by the monarch, the illustrious god was gratified, and smilingly said, 'We do not ourselves assist at sacrifices. But as thou, O king, hast undergone severe penances desirous of obtaining a boon, I will, O thou oppressor of all foes, assist at thy sacrifice upon, O king, this condition!' And Rudra continued, 'If, O king of kings, thou canst, for twelve years, pour without intermission libations of clarified butter into the fire, thyself leading all the while the life of a Brahmachārin with rapt attention, then thou shalt obtain from me what thou askest!' And king Swetaki, thus addressed by Rudra, did all that he was directed to do by the wielder of the trident. And after twelve years had elapsed he again came unto Maheswara. And Sankara—the c

of the worlds—upon seeing Swetaki that excellent of monarchs—immediately said, in great gratification, 'I have been gratified by thee, of best of kings, with this thy own act! But, O oppressor of all foes, the duty of assisting at sacrifices properly belongeth to Brahmanas. Therefore, O oppressor of all foes, I will not myself assist at thy sacrifice to-day! There is on earth an exalted Brahmana who is even a portion of my own self! He is known by the name of Durvāsā. Even that Brahmana endued with great energy will assist at thy sacrifice. Let, therefore, every preparation be made for thy sacrifice!' And hearing these words uttered by Rudra, the king, returning unto his own capital, began to collect all that was necessary. And after everything had been collected, the monarch again presented himself before Rudra and said, 'Every necessary article hath been collected, and all my preparations are complete, by thy grace, O god of gods! Let me, therefore, be initiated in the sacrifice to-morrow!' And hearing these words of that illustrious king, Rudra summoned Durvāsā before him and said, 'This, O Durvāsā, is that best of monarchs called Swetaki. At my command, O thou best of Brahmanas, assist even this king in his sacrifice!' And the Rishi Durvāsā said unto Rudra, 'So be it!' Then the sacrifice for which king Swetaki had made those preparations, took place. And the illustrious monarch's sacrifice was performed according to the ordinance and in proper season. And the gifts, in that sacrifice, unto the Brahmanas were large. And after that monarch's sacrifice had come to an end, the other priests who had come to assist at it all went away with Durvāsā's leave. And all other *Sadasyas* also, of immeasurable energy, who had been initiated in that sacrifice, then went away. And that exalted monarch also, then entered his own palace, worshipped by exalted Brahmanas conversant with the Vedas, eulogised by chaunters of panegyrical hymns and congratulated by the citizens.

"Such was the history of that best of monarchs—the royal sage Swetaki, who when the time came, ascended heaven, having won great renown on earth, and accompanied by the *Ritwijas* and the *Sadasyas* who had helped him in life."

Vaisamyayna continued, "And in that sacrifice of Swetaki,

Agni had drunk clarified butter for twelve years. Indeed, butter had been poured into Agni's mouth in a continuous stream for that period. And having drunk so much butter, Agni was satiated, and desired not to drink butter again from the hand of any body else in any other sacrifice. And Agni became pale, having lost his color. And he could not shine as before. Then Agni felt a loss of appetite from surfeit, and his energy itself became weakened, and sickness afflicted him. Then when the drinker of sacrificial libations perceived that his energy was gradually diminishing, he went to the sacred abode of Brahmā which is worshipped by all. And approaching the great Deity seated on his seat, Agni said, 'O exalted one, Swetaki hath (by his sacrifice) gratified me to excess. Even now I am suffering from surfeit which I can not dispell. And, O lord of the universe. I am being reduced both in splendour and strength! I desire to regain by thy grace my own permanent nature!' Hearing these words from Hutavaha (Agni), the illustrious creator of all things, smilingly replied unto him, saying, 'O exalted one, thou hast eaten, for twelve years, a continuous stream of sarificial butter poured into thy mouth! It is for this that illness hath affected thee! But, O Agni, grieve not for it! Thou shalt soon regain thy own nature. I shall dispell this surfeit of thine. The time for it is even come, O Vivāvasu! The dreadful forest of Khāndava, that abode of the enemies of the gods, which thou hadst of old once consumed to ashes at the request of the gods, hath now become the home of numerous creatures. When thou hast eaten the fat of those creatures, thou wilt regain thy own nature! Proceed thither in haste to consume that forest with its living population. Thou shalt then be cured of thy malady!' And hearing these words that fell from the lips of the Supreme Deity, Hutāshana proceeded with great speed and soon reached the forest of Khāndava in great vigor. And arrived there, he suddenly blazed forth in anger, assisted by Vāyu. And beholding Khāndava on fire, the dwellers (of the forest) that were there, made great efforts to extinguish the conflagration. And elephants by hundreds and thousands, speeding in anger, brought water in their trunks and scattered it upon the fire. And thousands of

many-headed snakes, mad with anger, hastly began to scatter upon the fire much water from those many hoods of theirs. And so, O bull of the Bharata race, the other creatures dwelling in that forest, by various appliances and efforts, soon extinguished the fire. In this way, Agni had blazed forth in Khāndava repeatedly, even for seven times. And it was in this way that the blazing fire was extinguished there as often by the dwellers of that forest."

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-fifth Section in the Khāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXVI.

(Khāndava-daha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Then Havyavāhana (Agni) in anger and disappointment, with his ailment uncured, went back to the Grand-sire. And he represented unto Brahmā all that had happened. And the illustrious deity, reflecting for a moment, said unto him, 'O sinless one, I see a way by which thou mayst consume the forest of Khándava to-day in the very sight of Indra! O Vivāvasu, those old deities, Nara and Nārāyana, have become incarnate in the world of men to accomplish the business of the celestials. And they are called on earth Arjuna and Vāsudeva. They are even now staying in the forest of Khāndava. Solicit them for aiding thee in consuming that forest. Thou shalt then consume the forest even if it be protected by the celestials. They will certainly prevent the population of Khāndava from escaping, and thwart Indra also (from aiding any one in the escape). I have no doubt in this.' And hearing these words, Agni came with haste unto Krishna and Pārtha. And, O king, I have already told thee what he said having approached the illustrious pair. And, O tiger among kings, hearing those words of Agni who was desirous of consuming the forest of Khāndava against the will of Indra, Vivatshu said unto him these words well suited to the occasion. 'I have numberless excellent celestial weapons with which I can fight even many wielders of the thunder-bolt. But, O exalted one, I have no bow suited to the strength of my arms, and

capable of bearing the strength I may put forth in battle. In consequence of the lightness of my hand also, I require arrows that must not be exhausted. But my car is scarcely able to bear the load of arrows that I would desire to keep by me. I desire also celestial horses of pure white, possessing the speed of the wind; and a car poesessing the splendour of the Sun and the roar of whose wheels should be as that of the clouds. Then again, there is no weapon suited to Krishna's energy and with which Mādhava can slay Nāgas and Pisāchas. O exalted one, it behoveth thee to give us the means by which success may be achieved and by which we may thwart Indra from pouring his showers upon that extensive forest. O Pāvaka, we are ready to do all that manliness and prowess may do. But, O exalted one, it behoveth thee to give us the adequate means!'"

Thus endeth the two hundred and twenty-sixth Section in the Khāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXVII.

(Khandava-daha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Thus addressed by Arjuna, the smoke-bannered Hutāshana, desirous of an interview with Varuna, recollected that son of Aditi,—that deity protecting one of the points of the heavens and having his home in the waters and ruling that element. And Varuna knowing that he was being thought of by Pāvaka (Agni), immediately appeared unto that deity. And the smoke-bannered celestial welcoming with reverence the ruler of the waters, that fourth of the *Loka-palas*, said unto that eternal god of gods, 'Give me without loss of time that bow and quiver, and that ape-bannered car also, which were obtained from king Soma! Pārtha will achieve a great task with the Gāndiva, and Vāsudeva also with the discus! Give both, therefore, unto me to-day!' Hearing these words, Varuna replied unto Pāvaka, saying, 'I am giving.' And he then gave (unto Arjuna) that wonderful jewel of a bow that was endued with great energy. And that bow was the enhancer of fame and achie vements, and was incapable of being

injured by any weapon. And it was the chief of all weapons, and the grinder of them all. And it was the smiter of hostile hosts, and was alone equal to an hundred thousand bows. And it was the enhancer of kingdoms, and was variegated with excellent colors. And it was well-adorned and beautiful to behold and without a mark of weakness or injury anywhere. And it was worshipped both by the celestials and the Gandharvas for ever. And Varuna also gave (unto Arjuna) two inexhaustable quivers. And he also gave (unto Arjuna) a car furnished with celestial weapons and whose banner bore a large ape. And yoked unto that car were horses white as silver or the fleecy clouds, and born in the region of the Gandharvas, and decked in golden harness, and resembling in fleetness the wind or the mind. And it was furnished with every utensil of war, and was incapable of being vanquished by the celestials or the Asuras. And its splendour was great and the sound of its wheels was tremendous. And it delighted the heart of every creature that looked on it. And it had been created by Viswakarma, architect of the universe and one of the lords of the creation, after severe ascetic medidation. And its splendour, like that of the sun, was so great that no one could gaze at it. And it was the very car riding upon which the lord Soma had vanquished Dānavas. And resplendent with its beauty, it looked like an evening cloud reflecting the effulgence of the setting sun. And it was furnished with an excellent flag-staff of golden color and great beauty. And there sat upon that flag-staff a celestial ape of form fierce like that of a lion or a tiger. And stationed on high, the ape seemed bent upon burning every thing if beheld. And upon the (other) flags were various creatures ot large size, whose roars and yells caused the enemy's soldiers to faint. And Arjuna, accoutered in mail and armed with the sword, and his fingers cased in leather, then walking round that excellent car adorned with numerous flags and bowing down unto the gods, ascended it like a virtuous man riding upon the celestial car that carries him to heaven. And taking up that celestial and first of bows created by Brahmā of old and called Gāndiva, Arjuna was filled with joy. And bowing down unto Hutāshana, Pārtha endued

with great energy, took up the bow and stringed it forcibly. And those who heard the noise that was made while the mighty Pandava stringed that bow, quaked with fear. And having obtained that car and that bow and the two inexhaustible quivers, the son of Kunti became glad and thought himself competent to assist at the task. And Pāvaka then gave unto Krishna a discus with an iron stick attached to a hole in the centre, which was a fiery weapon and became his favorite. And having obtained that weapon, Krishna also became equal to the task. And Pāvaka then addressing Krishna said, 'With this, O slayer of Madhu, thou shalt be able without doubt to vanquish in battle even foes that are not human. And with this weapon, without doubt, thou shalt be superior in battle to men and gods, and Rakshasas and Pishāchas, and Daityas and Nāgas. And thou shalt certainly be able with this to smite all. And, O Mādhava, hurled by thee in battle at thy foes, this weapon irresistibly slaying the enemy will again come back into thy hands.' And the lord Varuna, after this, gave unto Krishna a mace of name *Kaumadaki*, capable of slaying every Daitya and producing when hurled a roar as that of the thunder. Then Arjuna and Achyuta, filled with gladness, said unto Pāvaka, 'O exalted one, furnished with arms and knowing their use, possessed of cars with flags and flag-staffs, we are now able to fight with even all the celestials and the Asuras (drawn up together), let alone the wielder of the thunder-bolt desirous of fighting for the sake of the Nāga (his friend Takshaka).' And Arjuna also said, 'O Pāvaka, while Hrishikesha, endued with abundant energy, moves on the field of battle with this discus in hand, there is nothing in the three worlds that the powerful Janārddana will not be able to consume by hurling this weapon. And having obtained the bow Gāndiva and this couple of inexhaustible quivers, I am also ready to conquer in battle the three worlds. Therefore, O lord, blaze thou forth as thou likest, surrounding this large forest on every side. We are quite able to help thee!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus addressed both by Dāsārha and Arjuna, the illustrious god then putting forth his most

energetic form, prepared to consume that forest. And surrounding it on all sides with his seven flames, he began to consume the forest of Khāndava, exhibiting his all-consuming form as at the end of the Yuga. And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, surrounding that forest and catching it on all sides, with a roar as that of the clouds, Agni made every creature within it tremble. And, O Bhārata, that burning forest then looked resplendent like the king of mountains, Meru, refulgent with the rays of the sun fallen thereupon."

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-seventh Section in the Khāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXVIII.

(Khandava-daha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Then those foremost of charioteers (Krishna and Arjuna), riding on their chariots and placing themselves on opposite sides of that forest, began a great slaughter on all sides, of the creatures dwelling in Khāndava. And at whatever point any of the creatures residing in Khāndava could be seen attempting to escape, thither rushed those mighty heroes (for preventing its flight). And the chariots themselves were moving so fast around that forest that the inmates of Khāndava saw not an interval of space (between them). Indeed, those two excellent cars seemed to be but one, and the two warriors also on them but one individual. And while the forest was burning, hundreds and thousands of living creatures, uttering frightful yells, began to run about in all directions. And some had particular limbs burnt and some were scorched with excesive heat and some were withered therewith. And the eyes of some came out, and some ran about in fear. And some clasping their children and some their parents and brothers, died calmly without, from excess of affection, being able to abandon those that were dear unto them. And many there were who biting their nether lips rose upwards and soon fell whirling into the blazing element below. And some were seen to roll on the ground with wings, eyes, and feet scorched and burnt. And these

creatures were all seen to perish there almost soon enough. And the tanks and ponds within that forest, heated with the fire around, began to boil, and the fishes and the tortoises in them were all seen to perish. And during that great slaughter of living creatures in that forest, the burning bodies of various animals looked as if fire itself had assumed many forms. And the birds that took to their wings for escaping from that conflagration were pierced by Arjuna with his shafts, and cut into pieces they fell down into the burning element below. And pierced all over with Arjuna's shafts, the birds dropped down upon the burning forest, uttering loud cries. And the dwellers of the forest, struck with those shafts, began to roar and yell. And the clamour they caused was like unto the frightful uproar that had been heard during the churning of the ocean (in days of yore). And the mighty flames of the blazing fire, reaching the firmament, caused great anxiety amongst the celestials themselves. Then all the illustrious dwellers of heaven went in a body unto him of an hundred sacrifices and thousand eyes, *viz*, their chief, that grinder of Asuras. And approaching Indra, the celestials said, 'Why, O lord of the immortals, doth Agni burn these creatures below ? Hath the time come for the destruction of the worlds ?' "

Vaisampayana continued, "Hearing these words of the gods, and himself beholding what Agni was doing, the slayer of Vritrā set out for the protection of the forest of Khandava. And Vāsava—the chief of the celestials—soon covering the sky with masses of clouds of every kind, began to shower upon the burning forest. And these masses of clouds by hundreds and thousands, commanded by Indra, began to pour rain upon Khandava in showers thick as the flag-staffs of chariots. But the showers were all dried up in the sky itself by the heat of the fire and could not, therefore, reach the fire at all. Then the slayer of Namuchi, getting angry with Agni, collected more masses of clouds and caused them to yield a heavy down-pour. Then with the flames contending with those heavy showers, and with masses of clouds overhead, that forest, filled with smoke and flashes of lightning, became terrible to behold. "

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-eighth Section in the Kāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXIX.

(*Khandava-daha Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Then Vivatshu the son of Pandu, displaying his excellent weapons, prevented that shower of rain by Indra, by means of a shower of his own weapons. And Arjuna of immeasurable soul soon covered the forest of Khāndava with innumerable arrows like the moon covering the atmosphere with a thick fog. And when the sky above that forest was thus covered with the arrows Arjuna shot, no living creature could then escape from below. And it so happened that while that forest was burning, Takshaka the chief of Nagas was not there, he having gone at the time to the field of Kurukshettra. But the mighty son of Takshaka, Aswasena was there. And he made great efforts to escape from that fire. But confined by Arjuna's shafts he succeeded not in finding a way. It was then that his mother—the daughter of a snake,—determined to save him by swallowing him first. And his mother first swallowed his head and then was swallowing his tail. And desirous of saving her son, the she-snake rose up (from the earth) while still employed in swallowing her son's tail. But Arjuna, as soon as he beheld her escaping, severed her head from her body by means of a sharp and keen-edged arrow. Indra saw all this, and desiring to save his friend's son, the wielder of the thunderbolt, by raising a violent wind, deprived Arjuna of his consciousness. And during those few moments, Aswa-sena suceeded in effecting his escape. And beholding that manifestation of the power of illusion, and deceived by that snake, Arjuna was much angered. And he forthwith cut every animal seeking to escape by the skies into two, three, or more pieces, And Vivatshu all in anger, and Agni, and Vasudeva also, cursed the snake that had escaped so deceitfully, saying, 'Never shalt thou be famous!' And Jishnu, remembering the deception practised upon him, became angry and covering the firmament with

a cloud of arrows sought to fight with him of a thousand eyes. And the chief of the celestials also, seeing Arjuna in anger, sought to fight with him, and hurled his own fierce weapons, covering the wide expanse of the firmament. Then the winds making a loud roar and agitating all the oceans brought together masses of clouds in the sky charged with torrents of rain. Then those masses of clouds began to vomit thunder and terrible flashes of lightning charged with the thunder-rattle. Then Arjuna possessing a knowledge of means, hurled the excellent weapon called *Vayavya* with proper *mantras*, for dispelling those clouds. And by that weapon the energy and force of Indra's thunder-bolt and of those clouds were destroyed. And the torrents of rain with which those clouds were charged were all dried up, and the lightning that played amongst them was also destroyed. And within a moment the sky was cleared of dust and darkness, and a delicious cool breeze began to blow and the disc of the sun resumed its normal state. Then the eater of clarified butter (Agni), glad because none could baffle him, assumed various forms, and sprinkled over with the fat exuded by the bodies of creatures, blazed forth with all his flames, filling the universe with his roar. Then numerous birds of the Gadura tribe bearing excellent feathers beholding that forest protected by Krishna and Arjuna, filled with pride descended from the upper skies desirous of striking those heroes with their thunder-like wings, beaks, and claws. And innumerable Nāgas also, with faces emitting fire, descending from high approached Arjuna, vomitting the most virulent poison all the while. And Arjuna, beholding them approach, cut them into pieces by means of arrows steeped in the fire of his own wrath. Then those birds and snakes, deprived of life fell into the burning element below. And there came also, desirous of battle, innumerable Asuras with Gandharvas and Yakshas and Rakshasas and Nāgas sending forth terrific yells. And armed with machines vomitting from their throats iron balls and bullets, and catapults for propelling huge stones, and rockets, they approached for striking Krishna and Pārtha, their energy and strength increased by wrath. And though they rained a perfect shower of weapons, Vivatshu, addressing them reproach-

fully, struck off their heads with his own sharp arrows. And that slayer of all foes, Krishna also, endued with great energy, made a great slaughter of the Daitya and the Dānava hosts with his discus. And many Asuras of immeasurable might, pierced with Krishna's arrows and smitten with the force of his discus, became motionless like waifs and strays stranded on the bank by the violence of the waves. Then Shakra the lord of the celestials, riding on his white elephant, rushed at those heroes, and taking up his thunder-bolt which could never go in vain, he hurled it with great force. And the slayer of Asuras said unto the gods, 'These two are slain.' And beholding the fierce thunder-bolt about to be hurled by their chief, the celestials all took up their respective weapons. And, O king, Yama took up the death-dealing mace, and Kuvera his spiked club, and Varuna his noose and beautiful missile. And Skanda (Karti-keya) took up his long lance and stood motionless like the mountain of Meru. And the Aswinas stood there with resplendent plants in their hands. And Dhātā stood bow in hand, and Jaya with a thick club. And Tashtā of great stength took up, in wrath, a huge mountain. And Surya stood with a bright *shakti*, and Mrityu with a battle-axe. And Aryamā stalked about with a terrible bludgeon furnished with sharp spikes. And Mitra stood there with a discus sharp as a razor. And, O monarch, Pushā and Bhaga and Savitā, in wrath, rushed at Krishna and Pārtha with bows and scimitars in hand. And the Rudras and the Vasus, the mighty Marutas and the Viswadevas and the Sāddhyas, all resplendent with their own energy,—these and many other celestials, armed with various weapons rushed, against those exalted of men, Krishna and Pārtha, for smiting them down. Then were seen in that great conflict wonderful omens all around, robbing every creature of his sense, and resembling those that may be seen at the time of the universal dissolution. But Arjuna and Krishna, fearless and invincible in battle, beholding Shakra and the other celestials prepared for fight, camly waited bow in hand. And skilled in battle, those heroes in wrath assailed the advancing host of celestials with their own thunder-like arrows. And the celes-

tials, repeatedly routed by Krishna and Arjuna, at last left the field of battle in fear and sought the protection of Indra. And the Munis who were witnessing the battle from the skies, beholding the celestials defeated by Mādhava and Arjuna, were filled with wonder. And Shakra also, repeatedly witnessing their prowess in battle, became exeedingly gratified, and once more rushed to the assault. And the chastiser of Pāka (Indra) then caused a heavy shower of stones desiring to ascertain the prowess of Arjuna using both his hands with equal skill. And Arjuna in great wrath, dispelled with his arrows that thick shower. Then he of an hundred sacrifices (Indra), beholding that shower baffled, once more caused a thicker shower of stones. But the son of the chastiser of Pāka (Arjuna) gratified his father by baffling that shower also with his swift arrows. Then Shakra desirous of smiting down the son of Pandu tore up with his hands a large peak from the Mandara with tall trees on it, and hurled it against him. But Arjuna divided that mountain peak into a thousand pieces by his swift-going, fire-monthed arrows. And the fragments of that mountain in falling through the skies looked as if the sun and the moon and the planets, loosened from their positions, fell down on the earth. And that huge peak fell down upon that forest, and in falling killed numerous living creatures that dwelt in Khāndava."

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-ninth Section in the Khāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXX.

(*Khandava-daha Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Then the inhabitants of the forest of Khāndava,—the Dānavas and Rākshas and Nāgas and wolves and bears and other wild animals, and elephants with rent temples, and tigers, and lions with manes, and deer and buffaloes by hundreds, and birds, and various other creatures,—frightened at the falling stones and extremely anxious, began to fly in all directions. And they saw the forest (burning all around) and Krishna and Arjuna also ready with their weapons. And

frightened at the terrible sounds that were audible all around, those creatures lost their power of locomotion. And beholding the forest burning in innumerable places and Krishna also ready to smite them down with his weapons, they all set up a frightful roar. And with that terrible clamour as also with the roar of fire, the whole welkin resounded, as if with the voice of portentous clouds. Then Keshava of dark hue and mighty arms, for compassing their destruction, hurled at them his large and fierce discus resplendent with its own energy. The dwellers of the forest, including the Dānavas and the Rākshas, afflicted by that weapon, were cut into hundreds of pieces and fell into the mouth of Agni. And mangled by Krishna's discus, the Asuras were covered with blood and fat and looked like evening clouds. And, O Bhārata, he of the Vrishni race moved about like Death himself, slaying Pishāchas and birds and Nāgas and other creatures by thousands. And the discus itself, repeatedly hurled from the hands of Krishna, that slayer of all foes, came back to his hands after slaughtering numberless creatures. And the face and form of Krishna —that soul of every created thing—became fierce to behold while he was thus employed in the slaughter of the Pishāchas, Nāgas and Rākshas. And no one amongst the celestials who had mustered there could vanquish in battle Krishna and Arjuna. And when the celestials saw that they could not protect that forest from the might of Krishna and Arjuna by extinguishing that conflagration, they retired from the scene. And, O monarch, he of an hundred sacrifices (Indra), beholding the immortals retreat, became filled with joy and applauded Krishna and Arjuna. And when the celestials gave up the fight, an incorporeal voice, deep and loud, addressing him of an hundred sacrifices, said, 'Thy friend Takshaka, that chief of snakes, hath not been slain! Before the conflagration commenced in Khāndava he had gone to Kurukshetra. Know from my words, O Vasava, that Vāsudeva and Arjuna are incapable of being vanquished in battle by any one! They are Nara and Nārāyana—those gods of old heard in heaven! Thou knowest what their energy is and what their prowess. Invincible in battle, these best of old Rishis are incapable of

being vanquished by any one in all the worlds! They deserve the most reverential worship of all the celestials and Asuras, of Yakshas and Rākshasas and Gandharvas, of human beings and Kinnaras and Nāgas. Therefore, O Vāsava, it behoveth thee to go hence with all the celestials! The destruction of Khāndava hath been ordained by fate!' Then the chief of the immortals, ascertaining those words to be true, forsook his wrath and jealousy, and went back to heaven. And the dwellers of heaven, O monarch, beholding the illustrious Indra abandon the fight, followed him with all their soldiers. Then those heroes Vāsudeva and Arjuna, when they saw the chief of the celestials retreat accompanied by all the gods, set up a leonine roar. And, O monarch, Keshava and Arjuna, after Indra had left the scene, became exceeding glad. And those heroes then fearlessly assisted at the conflagration of the forest. And Arjuna, scattering the celestials like the god of wind scattering the clouds, slew by his showers of arrows numberless creatures that dwelt in Khāndava. And cut off by Arjuna's arrows, no one amongst the innumerable creatures could escape from the burning forest. And let alone fighting with him, none amongst even the strongest creatures mustered there could look at Arjuna whose weapons were never futile. And Arjuna sometimes piercing hundred creatures with one shaft and sometimes a single creature with hundred shafts, the creatures themselves deprived of life began to fall into the mouth of Agni as if struck down by Death himself. On the banks of rivers or on uneven plains or on cremation grounds, nowhere did the creatures (dwelling in Khāndava) find any case, for wherever they sought shelter they were afflicted by the heat. And crowds of creatures roared out in pain, and elephants and deer and wolves set up a yell of affliction. And at that sound the fishes of the Ganges and the sea, and the various tribes of Vidyadharas dwelling in that forest, all became frightened. And, O thou of mighty arms, let alone battling with them, no one could even gaze at Arjuna or Janārddana of dark hue. And Hari slew with his discus those Rākhasas and Dānavas and Nāgas that were rushing at him in bands. Of huge bodies, their heads and trunks were

cut off by the swift motion of the discus, and deprived of life they fell down into the blazing fire. And gratified with large quantities of flesh, of blood, and fat, the flames rose up to a great height without a curling wreath of smoke. And Hutāshana with blazing and copper-colored eyes, and with flaming tongue and large mouth, and hair on crown all of fire, drinking with the help of Krishna and Arjuna that nectar-like stream of animal fat, became filled with joy. And gratified greatly, Agni derived much happiness.

"And it so happened that the slayer of Madhu suddenly beheld an Asura of the name of Maya escaping from the abode of Takshaka. And Agni having Vāyu for his charioteer, assuming a body with matted locks on head, and roaring like the clouds, was pursuing the Asura, desirous of consuming him. And beholding the Asura, Vāsudeva stood with his weapon upraised, ready to smite him down. And beholding the discus upraised and Agni pursuing from behind to burn him, Maya said, 'Run to me, O Arjuna, and protect me!' And hearing his affrighted voice, Arjuna said, 'Fear not!' And that voice of Arjuna, O Bhārata, seemed to give Maya his life. And the merciful son of Prithā having said unto Maya that there was nothing to fear, he of the Dasārha race no longer desired to slay Maya who was the brother of Namuchi,—and Agni also burned him not."

Vaisampayana continued, "Protected from Indra by Krishna and Pārtha, Agni, gifted with great intelligence, burned that forest for five and ten days. And while the forest burned, Agni burned not six only of its dwellers, *viz*, Aswa-sena, Maya, and four birds called *Sharngakas*."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirtieth Section in the Khāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXXI.

(Khandava-daha Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said, "O Brahmana, tell me why, when that forest was burning in that way, Agni consumed not the birds called *Sharngakas*? Thou hast, O Brahmana, recited (to us)

the cause of Aswa-sena and the Dānava Maya not having been consumed. But as yet thou hast not said what the cause was of the escape of the *Sharngakas !* The escape of those birds, O Brahmana, appeareth to me to be wonderful. Tell us why they were not destroyed in that dreadful conflagration !"

Vaisampayana said, " O slayer of all foes, I shall tell thee all about why Agni did not consume those birds during that conflagration. There was, O king, a great Rishi known by the name of Mandapāla, conversant with all the *shastras*, of rigid vows, devoted to asceticism, and the foremost of all virtuous persons. And, O monarch, following in the wake of Rishis who had drawn up their vital fluid, that ascetic, with every sense under complete control, devoted himself to study and virtue. And, O Bhārata, having reached the opposite shores of asceticism, he left his human form and went to the region of the *Pitris*. But going thither he failed to obtain the (expected) fruit of his acts. He then asked the celestials that were sitting around the king of the dead as to the cause of his treatment. And Mandapāla said, 'Why have these regions become unattainable to me, regions that I had thought had been acquired by me by my ascetic devotions ? Have I not done those acts whose fruit are these regions ? Ye dwellers of heaven, tell me why these regions are shut against me ! I will do that which will give me the fruit of my ascetic penances !'

" The celestials answered, 'Hear, O Brahmana, of those acts and things on account of which men are born debtors ! Without doubt, it is for religious rites, study according to the ordinance, and progeny, that men are born debtors. These debts are all discharged by sacrifices, asceticism, offspring. Thou art an ascetic and hast also performed sacrifices. But thou hast no offspring. These regions are shut against thee only for want of children. Beget thou children, therefore ! Thou shalt then enjoy multifarious regions of felicity. The Vedas have declared that the son rescueth the father from a hell called *Put*. Then, O best of Brahmanas, strive thou to beget offspring !' "

Vaisampayana continued, " Mandapāla, having heard these

words of the dwellers of heaven, reflected how best he could obtain offspring within the shortest time and many in number. And the Rishi after reflection came to know that of all creatures birds alone were blest with fecundity. And assuming the form of a Shārngaka, the Rishi had connection of a female bird of the same species called by the name of Jaritā. And he begat upon her four sons who were all riciters of the Veda. And leaving all those sons of his with their mother in that forest while they were still within eggs, the Muni went to (another wife called by the name of) Lapitā. And, O Bharata, when the exalted Muni went away for the company of Lapitā, moved by affection for her offspring Jaritā became very thoughtful. And though forsaken by their father in that forest of Khāndava, Jaritā, anxious in her affection for them, could not forsake her offspring—those infant Rishis encased in eggs. And moved by parental affection, she brought up those children born of her, herself following the pursuit proper to her own species. And sometime after, the Rishi, in wandering over that forest in the company of Lapitā, saw Agni coming towards Khāndava to burn it down. Then that Brahmana Mandapāla, knowing the intention of Agni and remembering also that his children were all young, moved by fear gratified the god of the burning element—that *Lokapala* of great energy. And he did this, desiring to put in a word for his unfledged offspring. And addressing Agni, the Rishi said, 'Thou art, O Agni, the mouth of all the worlds! Thou art the carrier of the sacrificial butter! And, O purifier (from all sins), thou movest invisibly within the frame of every creature! The learned have spoken of thee as One, and again as possest of triple nature! The wise perform their sacrifices before thee, taking thee as consisting of eight (mouths)! The great Rishis declare that this universe hath been created by thee! And, O thou who feedest on sacrificial butter, without thee this whole universe would be destroyed within a single day! Bowing to thee, the Brahmanas, accompanied by their wives and children, go to eternal regions won by them by help of their own deeds! O Agni, the learned represent thee as the clouds in the heavens charged with lightning! And, O Agni, the

flames put forth by thee consume every creature! And, O thou of great splendour, this universe hath been created by thee! The Vedas are thy Word! And all creatures, mobile and immobile, depend upon thee! Water primarily dependeth on thee, and the whole of this universe also! All offerings of clarified butter and oblations of food to the *pitris* have been established in thee! And, O god, thou art the consumer, thou the creator, and thou Vrihaspati himself (in intelligence)! Thou art the twin Aswinas, thou art Surya, thou art Soma, and thou art Vāyu!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "O monarch, thus panegyrised by Mandapāla, Agni was gratified with that Rishi of immeasurable energy! And the god, well-pleased, replied, 'What good can I do thee?' Then Mandapāla with joined hands said unto the conveyer of clarified butter, 'While thou burnest the forest of Khāndāva, spare thou my children!' The illustrious conveyer of clarified butter replied, 'So be it.' It was, therefore, O monarch, that he blazed not forth, while consuming the forest of Khāndava, for the destruction of Mandapāla's children."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-first Section in the Khāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXXII.

(Khāndava-daha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "When the fire blazed forth in the forest of Khāndava, the infant *Sharngakas* became very much distressed and afflicted. And filled with anxiety, they saw not any means of escape. And their mother, the helpless Jaritā, knowing that they were too young to escape, was filled with sorrow and wept aloud. And she said, 'Oh, the terrible conflagration, illuminating the whole universe and burning the forest down, approacheth towards us, increasing my woe! These infants with immature understandings, without feathers and feet, and the sole refuge of our deceased ancestors, afflict me! Oh, this fire approacheth, spreading fear all around, and licking with its tongue the tallest trees! But my unfledged

children are incapable of effecting their escape! I myself am not capable of escaping, taking all of these with me! Nor am I capable of abandoning them, for my heart is distressed on their account. Whom, amongst my sons, shall I leave behind, and whom shall I carry with me? What act should I now do that is consistent with duty? What also do ye, my infant sons, think? I do not, even on reflection, see any way of escape for ye! I shall even cover ye with my wings and die with ye! Your cruel father left me sometime before saying.—Upon this Jaritāri, because he is eldest of my sons, will my race depend. My second Sārisrikka, will beget progeny for the expansion of my ancestor's race. My third, Stamvamitra, will be devoted to asceticism, and my youngest, Drona, will become the foremost of those acquainted with the Vedas. —But now this terrible calamity hath overtaken us. Whom shall I take with me? Deprived of judgment as I am, what should I do that is consistent with duty? I do not see, in the exercise of my own judgment, the escape of my children from fire!'"

Vaisampayana said, "Unto their mother indulging in these lamentations, the infant ones said, 'O mother, relinquishing thy affection for us, go thou to a place where there is no fire. If we are killed here, thou mayst have other children born to thee! If thou art, O mother, killed, we can have no more children in our race. Reflecting upon both these calamities, the time hath come for thee, O mother, to do that which is beneficial to our race. Do not be influenced by affection for thy offspring, which promises to destroy both us and thee! If thou savest thyself, our father who is even desirous of winning regions of felicity, may have his wishes gratified!'

"Hearing what those infants said, Jaritā replied, 'There is a hole here in the ground near to this tree, belonging to a mouse. Enter ye this hole without loss of time. Ye shall have then no fear of fire. After ye have entered it, I shall, ye children, cover its mouth with dust. This is the only means of escape that I see from the blazing fire. Then when the fire will be quenched, I shall return hither to remove the

dust. Follow ye my advice if ye are to escape from the conflagration.'

"The infant birds replied, 'Without feathers we are but so many balls of flesh. If we enter the hole, certain it is that the carnivorous mouse will destroy us all. Beholding this danger before us, we cannot enter this hole. Alas, we do not see any means by which we may escape from fire or from the mouse. We do not see how our father's act of procreation may not turn futile, and how also our mother may be saved! If we enter the hole, the mouse will destroy us; if we remain where we are, the sky-ranging fire will destroy us. Reflecting upon both these calamities, a fiery death is preferable to death by being eaten up. If we are devoured by the mouse within the hole, that death is certainly ignoble, whereas the destruction of the body in fire is approved by the wise.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-second Section in the Khāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXXIII.

(Khandava-daha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "Hearing these words of her sons, Jaritā continued, 'The little mouse that had come out of this hole was seized by a hawk with his claws and carried away hence. Therefore, ye may fearlessly enter this hole.' The young ones replied, 'We are not by any means certain of that mouse having been taken away by the hawk. There may be other mice living here. And from them we have every fear. Whereas it is doubtful whether fire at all approacheth here. Already we see an adverse wind blowing the flames away. If we enter the hole, death is certain at the hands of the dwellers of the hole. But if we remain where we are, death is uncertain. O mother, a position in which death is uncertain is better than that in which it is certain. It is thy duty, therefore, to escape thyself, for, if thou livest, thou shalt obtain other children as good!'

"Their mother then said, 'Ye children, I myself saw the mighty hawk—that best of birds—swoop down and fly away with the mouse from the hole. And while he was flying away swiftly, I followed him behind and pronounced blessings on him for his having taken away the mouse from the hole. I said unto him,—O king of hawks, because thou art flying away with our enemy, the mouse, in thy claws, mayst thou without a foe live in heaven with a golden body!—Afterwards when that hawk devoured the mouse, I came away, obtaining his leave. Therefore, ye children, enter ye this hole trustfully. Ye have nothing to fear. The mouse that was its inmate hath been seized and taken away by the illustrious hawk in my sight. The young ones again said, 'O mother, we do not by any means know that the mouse hath been carried away by the hawk. We cannot enter this hole in the ground without being certain of the fact.' Their mother said, 'I know to a certainty that the mouse hath been carried away by the hawk. Therefore, ye children, ye have nothing to fear. Do what I say!' The young ones again said, 'We do not, O mother, say that thou art dispelling our fears with a false story! For whatever is done by a person when his reason hath been disturbed can scarcely be said to be that person's deliberate act. Thou hast not been benefitted by us, nor dost thou know who we are. Why dost thou, therefore, strive to protect us at so much cost to thyself? Who are we to thee? Thou art young and handsome, and capable of seeking out thy husband. Go thou unto thy husband. Thou shalt obtain good children again. Let us by entering the fire attain to regions of felicity. If, however, fire consumeth us not, thou mayst come back and obtain us again!'"

Vaisampayana said, "The parent bird then, thus addressed by her sons, left them in Khāndava and hastily went to the spot where there was no fire and where there was safety. Then Agni in haste and with fierce flames approached the spot where the sons of Mandapāla were. The young *Sharngas* saw the blazing fire come towards them. Then Jaritāri, the oldest of those four, in the hearing of Agni began to speak."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-third Section in the Kāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXXIV.

(Khandava-daha Parva continued.)

"Jaritāri said, 'The man that is wise remaineth wakeful in view of death. Accordingly, when the hour of death approacheth, he feeleth no pangs. But the man of perplexed soul who remaineth not awake, when the hour of death is come, feeleth the pangs of death and never attaineth salvation.'

"The second brother, Sārisrikka, said, 'Thou art patient and intelligent. The time is come when our lives are threatened. Without doubt, one only amongst many becometh wise and brave!'

"The third brother, Stamva-mitra, said, 'The eldest brother is called the protector. It is the eldest brother that rescueth (the younger ones) from danger. If the eldest himself faileth to rescue them, what can the younger ones do?'

"The fourth and youngest brother, Drona, said, 'The cruel god of fire, with seven tongues and seven mouths, quickly cometh towards our habitation, blazing forth in splendour and licking up every thing along his path.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Having addressed one another thus, the sons of Mandapāla then each devoutly addressed an eulogistic hymn to Agni. Listen now, O monarch, to those hymns as I recite them.

"Jaritāri said, 'Thou art, O fire, the soul of air! Thou art the body of the earth's vegetation! O Sukra, water is thy parent as thou art the parent of water! O thou of great energy, thy flames, like the rays of the sun, extend themselves above, below, behind, and on every side.'

"Sārisrikka said, 'O smoke-bannered god, our mother is not to be seen, and we know not our father! As yet, our feathers have not grown. We have none to protect us save thee! Therefore, O Agni, infants that we are, O protect us! And, O Agni, distressed as we are, protect us with that auspicious form thou hast and with those seven flames of thine!

We seek protection at thy hands! Thou alone, O Agni, art the giver of heat (in the universe)! O lord, there is none else (save thee) that giveth heat to the rays of the sun! O protect us who are young and who are Rishis! And, O Havya-vāha, be pleased to go hence by some other route.'

"Stamvamitra said, 'Thou alone, O Agni, art everything! This whole universe is established in thee! Thou upholdest every creature, and thou supportest the universe! Thou art the carrier of the sacrificial butter, and thou art the excellent sacrificial butter itself! The wise know thee to be *one* (as cause) and *many* (as effects)! Having created the three worlds, thou, O Havya-vāha, again destroyest them when the time cometh, swelling thyself forth! Thou art the productive cause of the whole universe, and thou also art the essence in which the universe dissolveth itself!'

"Drona said, 'O lord of the universe, growing in strength and remaining within their bodies, thou causest the food that living creatures eat to be digested! Everything, therefore, is established in thee. O Sukra, O thou from whose mouth the Vedas have sprung, it is thou who assumest the form of the sun, and sucking up the waters of the earth and every liquid juice that the earth yields, givest them back in time in the form of rain and causest everything to grow! From thee, O Sukra, are these plants and creepers with green foliage. From thee have sprung these tanks and pools, and the great ocean also that is ever blessed! O thou of fierce rays, this our (human) body dependeth on Varuna (the water-god)! We are unable to bear thy heat. Be thou, therefore, our auspicious protector! O destroy us not! O thou of eyes of the hue of copper, O thou of red neck, O thou whose path is marked by a black color, save us by going along any remote route, as indeed, the ocean saveth the houses on its banks!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Thus addressed by Drona—that utterer of Brahma—Agni, well-pleased at what he heard, and remembering also the promise he had made to Mandapāla, replied unto him, saying, 'Thou art a Rishi, O Drona!' For what thou hast said is Brahma (Vedic truth). I shall do your pleasure. Fear not! Indeeed, Mandapāla had spoken to me of ye to

the effect that I should spare his sons while consuming the forest. The words he spoke and thy speech also are entitled to great weight with me. Say what I am to do. O best of Brahmanas, I have been greatly pleased with thy hymn. Blest be thou, O Brahmana !'

"Drona said, 'O Sukra, these cats trouble us every day. O Hutāshana, consume them with their friends and relatives !"

Vaisampayana continued, "Then Agni did what the *Sharngas* asked him to do, telling them of his intentions. And, O Janamejaya, growing in strength he began then to consume the forest of Khāndava."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-fourth Section in the Khāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXXV.

(Khāndava-daha Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana said, "O thou of the Kuru race, the Rishi Mandapāla became very anxious about his children, although he had spoken of them to the god of fierce rays. Indeed, his mind was not in peace. Distressed on account of his sons, he addressed Lapitā (his second wife with whom he then was), saying, 'O Lapitā, incapable as my children are of the power of moving, how are they ? When the fire will grow in strength and the wind begin to blow violently, my children will scarcely be able to save themselves ! How shall their mother be able to rescue them ? That innocent woman will be afflicted with great sorrow when she will find herself unable to save her offspring ! Oh, how she will hover uttering various lamentations on account of my children who are all incapable of taking to their wings or rising up in the air ! Oh, how is Jaritāri my son, and how Sārisrikka, and how Stamva-mitra, and how Drona, and how also their helpless mother !'

"Unto the Rishi Mandapāla thus weeping in the forest, Lapitā, O Bhārata, thus replied, under the influence of jealousy. 'Thou hast no anxiety on account of thy children who, thou hast assured me, are all Rishis endued with energy and prowess ! They can have no fear from fire. Didst thou not

speak to Agni in my presence, on their behalf? Has not the illustrious deity promised to save them? A *Lokapala* as Agni is, he will never falsify his speech. Thou hast no anxiety, nor is thy heart inclined towards benefiting friends. It is only by thinking of her—my enemy—(Jaritā) that thou art so distracted. Certain it is that the love thou bearest to me is not equal to what thou hadst for her at first. He that hath two parties dividing his attention, can easily behold one of these suffer all sorts of pangs; but he should not disregard the party that is next to his heart. Then go thou to Jaritā, for whom thy heart is sorrowing. As for myself, I shall henceforth wander alone, as a fit reward for my having attached myself to a wicked person.'

"Hearing these words, Mandapāla replied, 'I do not wander over the earth with such intentions as thou conceivest. It is only for the sake of progeny that I am here. And even those that I have are in danger. He who casteth off what he hath, for the sake of what he may acquire, is a wicked person. The world disregardeth and insulteth him. (Therefore, go I must.) As for thyself, thou art free to do what thou choosest. This blazing fire that licketh up the trees causeth in my anxious heart sorrow and raiseth therein anticipations of evil!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Meanwhile, after the fire had left the spot where the *Sharngakas* dwelt, Jaritā, much attached to her children, hastily came thither to see how they were. She found that all of them had escaped from the fire and were perfectly well. Beholding their mother they began to weep, though safe and sound. And she too shed tears on beholding them alive. And she then embraced, one by one, all her weeping children. Just at that time, O Bhārata, the Rishi Mandapāla arrived there. But none of his sons expressed joy on beholding him. But the Rishi began to speak to them one after another and unto Jaritā also, repeatedly. But neither his sons nor Jaritā spoke anything well or ill unto him in return.

"Mandapāla then said, 'Who amongst these is thy first-born, and who the next after him? And who is the third,

and who the youngest ? I am speaking unto thee wofully; why dost thou not reply to me ? I left thee, it is true, but I was not happy where I was.'

"Jaritā then said, 'What hast thou to do with the eldest of these, and what with him that is next to him ? What with the third, and what with the youngest ? Go now unto that Lapitā of sweet smiles and endued with youth, unto whom thou wentst of old, beholding me deficient in everything.' Mandapāla replied, 'As regards females, there is nothing so destructive of their happiness whether in this or the other world as a co-wife and a clandestine lover. There is nothing like these two that inflames the fire of hostility and causes such anxiety. Even the auspicious and well-behaved Arundhati, celebrated amongst all creatures, had been jealous of the illustrious Vashishtha of great purity of mind and always devoted to the good of his wife. And Arundhati insulted even that wise Muni amongst the (celestial) seven. And in consequence of such insulting thoughts of hers, she has become a little star, like fire mixed with smoke, sometimes visible and sometimes invisible, like an omen portending no good, (amongst a constellation of seven bright stars representing the seven Rishis). I took to thee for the sake of children. And I never wronged thee, like Vashishtha who never wronged his wife. Thou hast, therefore, by thy jealousy, behaved towards me like Arundhati of old towards Vashishtha. Men should never trust women even if they be wives. Women, when they have become mothers, do not much mind serving their husbands.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "After this, all his children came forward to worship him. And he also began to speak kindly towards them all, giving them every assurance."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-fifth Section in the Khāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

SECTION CCXXXVI.

(*Khandava-daha Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana said, "Mandapāla then addressed his children, saying, 'I had spoken unto Agni for the safety of ye all. The illustrious deity also had assured me that he would grant my wish. At those words of Agni, and knowing the virtuous disposition of your mother as also the great energy that is in ye, I came not here earlier. Therefore, ye sons, do not harbour in your hearts any resentment towards me. Ye are all Rishis acquainted with the Vedas. Even Agni knoweth ye well.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Having given such assurances unto his sons, the Brahmana, Mandapāla, took with him his wife and sons, and leaving that region went away to some other country.

"It was thus that the illustrious god of fierce rays, having grown in strength, consumed the forest of Khāndava, with the help of Krishna and Arjuna, for the good of the world. And Agni, having drunk several rivers of fat and marrow, became highly gratified, and showed himself to Arjuna. Then Purandara, surrounded by the Marutas, descended from the firmament and addressing Pārtha and Keshava said, 'Ye have achieved a feat that a celestial even could not. Ask ye each a boon that is not obtainable by any man. I have been gratified with ye!'"

Vaisampayana continued, "Then Pārtha asked of Indra all his weapons. At this Shakra of great splendour, having fixed the time for giving them, said, 'When the illustrious Mahādeva (Siva) is pleased with thee, then, O son of Pandu, I will give thee all my weapons. O prince of the Kuru race, I shall know when the time cometh. Even for thy austere asceticism I will give thee all my weapons of fire and all my *Vayavya* weapons, and thou also wilt accept them all of me!' Then Vāsudeva asked that his friendship with Arjuna might be eternal. The chief of the celestials granted unto the intelligent Krishna the boon he desired. And having granted

these boons unto Krishna and Arjuna, the lord of the Marutas accompanied by the celestials ascended to heaven, having also spoken to Hutāshana. And Agni also, having burnt that forest with its animals and birds for five and ten days, became gratified and extinguished himself. And having eaten flesh in abundance and drunk fat and blood, he became highly gratified, and addressing Achyuta and Arjuna said, 'I have been gratified by ye two tigers among men. At my command, ye heroes, ye shall be competent to go whithersover ye choose.' Thus addressed by the illustrious Agni, Arjuna and Vāsudeva and the Dānava Maya also,—these three—having wandered a little, at last sat themselves down on the delightful banks of a river."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-sixth Section in the Khāndava-dāha of the Adi Parva.

FINIS ADI PARVA.

Mahabharata. English.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

LIBRARY OF PRINCETON
JUN 1918
THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY

———o———

Published and Distributed chiefly *gratis*

BY

PROTAP CHANDRA ROY.

SABHA PARVA.

Vol. II

CALCUTTA:

BHARATA PRESS.

No. 367, Upper Chitpore Road.

1884.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

NOTICE.

The *Adi Parva* has been finished. So far as subscribers are concerned, I cannot say that I have achieved success. Of the crowned heads in India, my obligations are specially due to their Highnesses the Maharajahs of Travancore, Cashmere, and Indore. I have also to thank the Governments of Bengal and the N. W. Provinces for the grants they have both made in aid of the work. Mr. Rivers Thompson has been pleased to make a grant of Rs. 5,000 payable in annual instalments of Rs. 1,000 for five years, and Sir Alfred Lyall, so far as his Government is concerned, has subscribed for 60 copies of the work at Rs. 50 a copy. If the other Local Governments make similar contributions, my anxiety for funds to complete what I have begun may be considerably lessened. To the Press, Indian, European, and American, as also to the numerous Sanskritists of Europe and America, I am much obliged for the active sympathy and encouragement I have uniformly received in course of my humble labors. The press of England, however, has been comparatively indifferent. None of the great journals of England, daily, weekly, or monthly, has yet noticed the work. The reason is not far to seek. English Sanskritists of note may still be counted on one's fingers. To the general reader in England, the Mahābhārata is, perhaps, quite unknown. A few may have only heard of it. But as regards its contents it is still classed with the institutes of Tamarlane, or the precepts of Confucius. To the English *savants*, however, I am particularly grateful. From the very commencement of the task, Dr. Ross, the learned Librarian of the India office, has done everything in power to

encourage me. And as regards Professor Max Müller, the work itself would never have been undertaken but for him.

To my countrymen I would say that I have great faith in their liberality. The age is past when Indian students used to spout Byron over dishes of beef with the glass circling round in quick succession. Under influences more wholesome and due to a variety of causes, the English-educated native of India has learnt to respect his ancestors. His pride also in Vyasa and Vālmiki, in Kālidasa and Bhavabhuti, in Gautama and Kapila, is genuine. As regards, again, the veneration of the orthodox classes for the ancient literature of their country, it is real and deep. An appeal, therefore, to the liberality of my countrymen in aid of a work like the one undertaken by the "Dātavya Bhārata Kāryalaya" cannot be unsuccessful.

Calcutta,
No. 367, Upper Chitpore Road.

PROTAP CHANDRA ROY,
Secy. to the Dātavya Bhārata Kāryalaya.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

SABHA PARVA.

Sabha-Kriyā Parva.

	PAGE.
The Dānava Maya's offer of service. . .	1
Krishna tells him to build a palace for Yudhishthira	2
Maya measures out a piece of land as site of the palace	ib
Krishna takes leave of the Pāndavas . .	5
Maya goes to bring materials for the palace .	6
He constructs the palace in fourteen months .	7
Yudhishthira enters it . . .	8
Princes from various countries wait on Yudhishthira	9

Lokapālā Sabhākshyāna Parva.

Arrival of Nārada	11
Nārada asks Yudhishthira concerning the state of his kingdom	12
Yudhishthira's reply . . .	21
Nārada describes the assembly-house of Indra .	23
Description of the assembly-house of Yama .	25
Description of the assembly-house of Varuna .	28
Description of the assembly-house of Kuvera .	30
Description of the assembly-house of Brahmā .	33
Yudhishthira asks how Nārada met his father in the region of the *Pitris*	38
History of Harischandra . . .	ib
Nārada tells Yudhishthira to perform the *Rājasuya* sacrifice	39

Rājasuyarambha Parva.

Yudhishthira intends to perform the Rājasuya sacrifice	40
State of the kingdom under Yudhishthira .	41
Krishna comes to Indraprastha . .	43
Yudhishthira apprises Krishna of his intention regarding the sacrifice	44
Power of Jarāsandha . . .	45
Krishna advises Yudhishthira to slay Jarāsandha .	49
The wonderful birth of Jarāsandha . .	54

Jarāsandha Badha Parva.

PAGE

Krishna points out the means of Jarāsandha's destruction 61
Krishna, Arjuna and Bhima set out for Magadha , 62
They arrive at the city . . . 63
They enter the palace of Jarāsandha as Snātaka Brāhmanas , . . . 65
The interview of the heroes with Jarāsandha , ib
Krishna discovers his purpose . . . 67
Fight of Bhima with Jarāsandha , . 70
Jarāsandha is killed 73
Krishna releases the monarchs from prison and installs the son of Jarāsandha in the kingdom of Magadha 74
Krishna, Bhima and Arjuna return to Indraprastha ib
Krishna departs for Dwārakā . . . 77

Digvijaya Parva.

Bhima, Arjuna, Nakula, and Sahadeva set out to conquer the four quarters 78
Description of Arjuna's conquests . . 79
His encounter with Bhagadatta . . . ib
He prevails upon Bhagadatta to pay tribute . 80
His various conquests in the north . . ib
He comes back to Indraprastha with immense spoils 83
Bhima goes to the east and conquers many nations 84
Bhima returns with vast wealth . . 87
Sahadeva marches towards the south . . ib
His conquests 87
His encounter with king Nila . . . 89
Story of the amours of Agni with the daughter of Nila ib
Nila pays tribute 91
Sahadeva comes back to the metropolis . . 93
Nakula marches towards the west . . ib
His conquests . . . . ib
He returns to Indraprastha with immense wealth . 94

Rajasuyā Parva.

Krishna comes to Khāndavaprastha with presents . 95
Preparations for the Rājasuya sacrifice . . 97

Arghyāharana Parva.

PAGE

Yudhishthira is installed in the sacrifice . . 98
The Kshatriyas come to the sacrifice . . 99
Sahadeva offers the first *Arghya* to Krishna . 105
Shishupāla takes umbrage at this . . ib
The kings go out of the assembly . . 107
Yudhishthira makes them desist . . 108
Bhishma praises Krishna . . . ib
Sahadeva completes the ceremony . . 111
The kings prepare to enter into hostilities . . ib

Shishupala-Badha Parva.

Shishupāla rebukes Bhishma . . . 113
Bhishma describes the birth of Shishupāla . 117
Shishupāla reproves Bhishma . . . 119
Bhishma challenges all the assembled kings . 122
Shishupāla challenges Krishna . . . ib
Destruction of Shishupāla . . . 124
The sacrifice completed . . . 125
Krishna returns to Dwārakā . . . 126
Vyasa comes to Yudhishthira . . . 127
His prophesy . . . . ib
Yudhishthira vows to live for others . . 129
Duryodhana unbosoms himself to Sakuni . . 131
Sakuni first suggests the idea of gambling . 133
Duryodhana laments before Dhritarāshtra . . 134
Dhritarāshtra orders a palace to be built . . 137
Vidura dissuades the king from inviting the Pāndavas to gamble . . . . ib
Duryodhana describes the *Rājasuya* sacrifice . 140
Dhritarāshtra's speech to Duryodhana . . 149
Vidura goes to summon Yudhishthira to the dice-match 155
Yudhishthira sets out for Hastināpore . . 157
Yudhishthira shows unwillingness to play . . 159
Yudhishthira becomes engaged in play . . 161
He begins to lose stakes . . . ib
He stakes his brothers one by one and loses . 170

	PAGE.
He stakes himself and loses	171
He stakes Draupadi and loses	172
Draupadi is dragged to the court by Dusshāsana	177
Dusshāsana drags Draupadi's attire off her person	182
Dharma invisibly covers her with clothes	183
Bhima vows to rip open Dusshāsana's breast	ib
Story of Virochana and Sudhanwan	184
Duryodhana shows his bare thigh to Draupadi	191
Bhima's terrible oath	ib
Ominous signs	192
Dhritarāshtra grants boons to Draupadi	193
Yudhishthira starts for Indraprastha	196
Gāndhari's speech	199
Yudhishthira is again summoned to dice	200
He is defeated	204
He bids the Bhāratas farewell	205
Kunti stays with Vidura	206
Her lamentations	208
The Pāndavas go into exile	209
Vidura's speech	211
Drona's speech	213
Sanjaya's speech	214
Dhritarāstra's speech	215

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA.

SABHA PARVA.

SECTION I.

(Sabha-kriya Parva.)

Om! Having bowed down to Nārāyana, and Nara the most exalted male-being, and also to the goddess Saraswati, must the word *Jaya* be uttered.

Vaisampayana spoke. "Then in the presence of Vāsudeva, Maya, having worshipped Arjuna, repeatedly spoke unto him with joined hands and in amiable words, saying, 'O son of Kunti, saved have I been by thee from this Krishna in anger and from Pāvaka (fire) desirous of consuming me! Tell me what I am to do for thee!'

"Arjuna spoke. 'O great Asura, everything hath already been done by thee (even by this offer of thine)! Blest be thou. Go whithersoever thou likest! Be kind and well-disposed towards me as we are even kind and well-pleased towards thee!

"Maya spoke. 'O bull amongst men, that which thou hast said is deserving of thee, O exalted one! But, O Bhārata, I desire to do something for thee cheerfully! I am a great artist, even the Viswakarmā of the Dānavas! O son of Pandu, being what I am, I desire to do something for thee!'

"Arjuna spoke. 'O sinless one, thou regardest thyself as saved (by me) from instant death. When it hath been even so, I cannot make thee do anything for me. At the same time, O Dānava, I do not wish to frustrate thy intentions! Do thou something for Krishna. That will be sufficient requital for my services to thee.'"

Vaisampayana spoke. "Then, O bull of the Bharata race, urged by Maya, Vāsudeva reflected for a moment as to what he should order Maya to accomplish. And the lord of the

universe and the creator of every object, Krishna, having reflected in his mind, commanded Maya, saying, 'Let a palatial amphitheatre as thou choosest be built (by thee), if thou, O son of Diti, who art the foremost of all artists, desirest to do good to Yudhishthira the just! Indeed, build thou a palace such that persons belonging to the world of men may not be able to imitate it even after examining it with care while seated within. And, O Maya, build thou a mansion in which we may behold (a mixture of) celestial, Asura, and human designs!'"

Vaisampayana continued. "Having heard those words, Maya became exceedingly glad. And he forthwith built an auspicious palace for the son of Pandu like unto the palace of the celestials themselves. Then Krishna and Pārtha, having represented everything unto king Yudhishthira the just, introduced Maya unto him. And Yudhishthira received Maya with respect, offering him the worship he deserved. And, O Bhārata, Maya accepted that worship thinking highly of it. And, O monarch of the Bharata race, that great son of Diti then recited unto the sons of Pandu the history of the Dānava Vrisha-parvā. And that foremost of artists then, having rested awhile, set himself, after much reflection, to build a palace for the illustrious sons of Pandu. And agreeably to the wishes of both Krishna and the sons of Prithā, the illustrious Dānava of great prowess, having performed on an auspicious day the initiatory rites of propitiation, and having gratified also thousands of principal Brahmanas with sweetened milk and rice and with presents of various kinds of wealth, measured out a piece of land five thousand cubits square, that was delightful and exceedingly handsome to behold and that was favorable to the construction of a building well-suited to the exigencies of every season."

Thus endeth the first Section in the Sabha-kriyā of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION II.

(Sabha-kriya Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana spoke. "Janārddana deserving the worship of all, having lived happily at Khāndavaprastha for sometime, worshipped all the while with love and affection by the sons of Prithā, became desirous one day of leaving Khāndavaprastha for beholding his father. That possessor of large eyes unto whom was due the obeisance of the universe then saluted both Yudhishthira and Prithā and made obeisance with his head unto the feet of his father's sister! Thus reverenced by Keshava, Prithā smelt his head and embraced him in affection. After this, Krishna of great renown saw his own sister. And the illustrious Hrishikesha, approaching her affectionately, his eyes filled with tears, spake unto the amiable Subhadrā of sweet speech words of excellent import and truth, and terse and proper and unanswerable and fraught with good. Subhadrā also, saluting him in return and worshipping him repeatedly with bent head, told him all that she wished to be conveyed to her relatives (on the paternal side). And bidding her farewell and uttering benedictions on his handsome sister, he of the Vrishni race, next saw Krishnā and Dhaumya. And that best of men duly made obeisance unto Dhaumya, and consoling Draupadi obtained her leave. Then the learned and mighty Krishna, accompanied by Pārtha, went to his cousins. And surrounded by the five brothers, Krishna shone like Shakra in the midst of the celestials. And he whose banner bore the figure of Gadura, desirous of performing the rites preparatory to the commencement of a journey, purified himself by a bath and adorned his person with ornaments. And the bull of the Yudu race then worshipped the gods and Brahmanas with floral wreaths, *mantras*, bows of the head, and excellent perfumes. And having finished all these rites, that foremost of steady and virtuous persons then thought of setting out. And the chief of the Yadu race then came out of the inner into the outer apartments, and issuing thence he made unto Brahmanas deserving of worship offerings of vessels of curd

and fruits and fried grain and caused them to pronounce benedictions upon him. And making presents also unto them of wealth, he walked round them. And ascending his excellent car of gold endued with great speed and banner bearing the figure of Tārkhya (Gadura) and furnished also with mace, discus, sword, and his bow *Sharnga*, and other weapons, and yoking thereunto his horses Shaivya and Sugriva, he of eyes like lotuses set out at an excellent moment of a lunar day of auspicious stellar conjunction. And Yudhishthira the king of the Kurus, from affection, ascended the chariot after Krishna, and causing that best of charioteers Dāruka to stand aside, himself took the reins. And Arjuna also, of long arms, riding on that car, walked round Krishna and fanned him with a white *chamara* furnished with a handle of gold. And the mighty Bhima-sena also accompanied by the twins, and the priests and citizens, all followed Krishna behind. And Keshava, that slayer of hostile heroes, followed by all the brothers, shone like a preceptor followed by his favorite pupils. Then Govinda spake unto Arjuna and clasped him firmly, and worshipping Yudhishthira and Bhima, embraced the twins. And embraced in return by the three elder Pandavas, he was reverentially saluted by the twins. And having gone about half a *Yojana*, Krishna, that subjugator of hostile towns, respectfully addressed Yudhishthira and requested him, O Bhārata, to stop (following him further). And Govinda, conversant with every duty, then reverentially saluted Yudhishthira and took hold of his feet. But Yudhishthira soon raised Keshava and smelt his head. And king Yudhishthira the just, the son of Pandu, having raised Krishna endued with eyes like lotus leaves and the foremost of the Yadava race, gave him leave, saying, 'Go!' Then the slayer of Madhu, making an appointment with them (about his return) in words that were proper, and preventing with difficulty the Pandavas from following him further on foot, gladly proceeded towards his own city, like Indra going towards Amarāvati. And from the love and affection they bore him, the Pandavas gazed at Krishna as long he was within sight, and their minds also followed him when he became out of sight. And Keshava of agreeable person soon dis-

appeared from their sight, unsatiated though their minds were with looking at him. And those bulls among men, the sons of Prithā, with minds fixed on Govinda, desisted (from following him further) and unwillingly returned to their own city in haste. And Krishna on his car soon reached Dwārakā followed by that hero Sātyaki. And Sauri the son of Devaki, accompanied by his charioteer Dāruka reached Dwārakā with the speed of Gadura."

Vaisampayana continued. "Meanwhile king Yudhishthira of unfading glory, accompanied by his brothers and surrounded by friends, entered his excellent capital. And that tiger among men, dismissing all his relatives, brothers, and sons, sought to make himself happy in the company of Draupadi. And Keshava also, worshipped by the principal Yādavas including Ugrasena, entered with a happy heart his own excellent city. And worshipping his old father and his renowned mother and saluting (his brother) Valadeva, he of eyes like lotus leaves took his seat. And embracing Pradyumna, Shāmva, Nishatha, Chārudeshna, Gada, Aniruddha, and Bhānu, and obtaining the leave of all the elderly men, Janārddana entered the apartments of Rukmini."

Thus endeth the second Section in the Sabhā-kriyā of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION III.

(Sabha-kriya Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana spoke. "Then Maya addressed Arjuna, that foremost of successful warriors, saying, 'I will go now with thy leave, but I will come back soon. On the north of the Kailāsa peak near the mountains of Maināka while the Dānavas were employed in a sacrifice on the banks of the Vindu lake, I gathered a delightful and variegated *vanda* (mass of rough materials) composed of jewels and gems. This was placed in the mansion of Vrishaparva ever devoted to truth. If it is yet existing, I will come back, O Bhārata, bringing it with me. I shall then commence the construction of the delightful palace of the Pandavas, which is to be adorned with every kind of gems and celebrated

all over the world. There is also, I think, O thou of the Kuru race, a fierce club placed in the lake Vindu by the king (of the Dānavas) after slaughter therewith of all his foes in battle. Besides being heavy and strong and variegated with golden knobs, it is capable of enduring great weight, and of slaying all foes, and is equal in strength unto an hundred thousand clubs. It is a fit weapon for Bhima, even as the Gāndīva is for thee! There is also (in that lake) a large conch-shell called Devadatta of loud sound, that came from Varuna. I will give all these to thee without doubt.' Having spoken thus unto Pārtha, the Asura went away in a north-easterly direction. On the north of Kailāsa in the mountains of Maināka, there is a huge peak of gems and jewels called Hiranya-sringa. Near that peak is a delightful lake of name Vindu. There on its banks had dwelt king Bhagiratha for many years, desiring to behold the goddess Gangā since called Bhāgirathee after that king's name. And there, on its banks, O thou best of the Bhāratas, the illustrious lord of every created thing had perfomed an hundred grand sacrifices. There, for the sake of beauty, though not according to the dictates of the ordinance, were placed sacrificial stakes made of gems and altars of gold. There, performing those sacrifices the thousand-eyed lord of Shachi became crowned with success. There the fierce Mahādeva, the eternal lord of every creature, took up his abode after having created all the worlds, and there he dwelleth worshipped with reverence by thousands of spirits. There Nara and Nārāyana, Brahmā and Yama and Sthānu the fifth, perform their sacrifices at the expiration of a thousand *yugas*. There, for the establishment of virtue and religion, Vāsudeva had with pious devotion performed his sacrifices extending for many long years. There were placed by Keshava thousands and tens of thousands of sacrificial stakes adorned with golden garlands and altars of great splendour. Going thither, O Bhārata, Maya brought away the club and the conch-shell and the various crystalline articles that had belonged to king Vrisha-parva. And the great Asura, Maya, having gone thither, possessed himself of the whole of that great wealth which was guarded by Yakshas and Rākshas. And bringing them away, the Asura

constructed therewith the peerless palace. And the palace was of great beauty and of celestial make, composed entirely of gems and precious stones, and celebrated throughout the three worlds. And he gave unto Bhima-sena that best of clubs, and unto Arjuna that excellent and best of conch-shells at whose sound all creatures trembled in awe. And the palace that Maya built, consisting of columns of gold, occupied, O monarch, an area of five thousand cubits. And the palace, like unto that of Agni or Surya or Soma, possessing an exceedingly beautiful form, shone in great splendour, and by its brilliance seemed to darken the bright rays themselves of the sun. And with the effulgence it exhibited, which was a mixture of both celestial and terrestrial light, it looked as if it was on fire. And like unto a mass of new clouds conspicuous in the sky, the palace rose filling the view. Indeed, the palace that the intelligent Maya built was so wide, delightful, and refreshing, and composed of such excellent materials, and furnished with such golden walls and archways, and adorned with so many varied pictures, and was, withal, so rich and well-built, that in beauty it far surpassed the Sudharmā of him of the Dasārha race, or the mansion of Brahmā himself. And eight thousand Rākshasas called Kinkaras, fierce, large-bodied, and endued with great strength, with red coppery eyes and arrowy ears, well-armed and capable of ranging through the air, used to guard and support that palace. And within that palace Maya placed a peerless tank, and in that tank were lotuses with leaves of dark-colored gems and stalks of bright jewels, and other water flowers also of golden leaves. And acquatic fowls of various species sported on its bosom. And itself variegated with full-blown lotuses and with fishes and tortoises of golden hue, its bottom was without mud and its water transparent. And there was a flight of stairs made of crystal leading from the banks to the edge of the water. And the gentle breezes that swept along its bosom softly shook the flowers that studded it. And the banks of that tank were overlaid with slabs of costly marble set with pearls. And beholding that tank thus adorned all around with jewels and precious stones, many kings that came there mistook it for land

and fell into it with eyes open. And many tall trees of various kinds were planted all around the palace. Of green foliage and cool shade, and ever-blossoming, they were all charming to behold. And artificial woods were planted around always emitting a delicious fragrance. And there were many tanks also in the grounds lying about the mansion, that were adorned with swans and *Karandavas* and *Chakravakas.* And the breezes, bearing the fragrance of lotuses growing in the water and of those growing on land, ministered unto the pleasure and happiness of the Pāndavas. And Maya having constructed such a palatial amphitheatre in fourteen months, represented its completion unto Yudhishthira."

Thus endeth the third Section in the Sabhā-kriyā of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION IV.

(*Sabha-kriya Parva continued.*)

Vaisampayana spoke. "Then that chief of men, king Yudhishthira, entered that palatial amphitheatre, having first fed ten thousand Brahmanas with preparations of milk and rice mixed with clarified butter and honey, with fruits and roots, and with pork and venison. And the king gratified those superior Brahmanas who had come from various countries with food seasoned with seasamum, with vegetables called *jibanti,* with rice mixed with clarified butter, with different preparations of meat, with, indeed, various kinds of other food,—with numberless viands that are fit to be sucked and innumerable kinds of drinks, with new and unused robes and clothes, and with excellent floral wreaths. And the king also gave unto each of those Brahmanas a thousand kine. And, O Bhārata, the voice of the gratified Brahmanas saying, 'What an auspicious day is this!' became so loud that it seemed to reach heaven itself. And when the Kuru king entered the palatial amphitheatre, having also worshipped the gods with various kinds of music and numerous species of excellent and costly perfumes, the athletes and mimes and prize-fighters and bards and encomiasts began by exhibiting their skill, to gratify that illustrious son

of Dharma. And celebrating his entry into the palace thus, Yudhishthira with his brothers sported within that palace like Shakra himself in heaven. And upon the seats in that palace sat, along with the Pandavas, Rishis and kings that came from various countries. And Asita and Devala, Satya, Sarpamāli, and Mahāshirā; Arvāvasu, Sumitra, Maitreya, Sunaka, and Vali; Vaka, Dālvya, Sthulashirā, Krishna-Dwaipayana, and Suka; Sumanta, Jaimini, Paila, and the disciples of Vyasa, *viz*, ourselves; Tittiri, Yajnavalkya, and Lomaharshana with his son; Apsuhomya, Dhaumya, Animāndavya, and Kaushika; Dāmoshnisha and Traivali, Parnāda, and Varajānuka, Maunjāyana, Vāyuvaksha, Pārāsarya, and Sārika; Valivāka, Silivāka, Satyapāla, and Krita-srama; Jātukarna, and Shikhāvat, Alamva, and Pārijātaka; the exalted Parvata, and the great Muni Mārkandeya; Pavitrapani, Sāvarna, Vāluki, and Galava; Janghābandhu, Raivya, Kopavega, and Bhrigu; Harivabhru, Kaundinya, Vabhrumāli, and Sanātana; Kashivat, and Aushija, Nāchiketa, and Gautama; Painga, Varāha, Sunaka, and Shāndilya of great ascetic merit; Kukkura, Venujangha, Kālāpa and Katha;—these virtuous and learned Munis with senses and souls under complete control, and many others, as numerous, all well-skilled in the Vedas and the Vedāngas, and conversant with morality, and pure and spotless in behavour, waited on the illustrious Yudhishthira, gladdening him by their sacred discourses. And so also numerous principal Kshatriyas, such as the illustrious and virtuous Munjaketu, Vivarddhana, Sangrāmjit, Durmukha, the powerful Ugrasena; Kakshasena, the lord of earth, Kshemaka the invincible; Kamatha the king of Kāmvoja, and the mighty Kampana who alone made the Yavanas to ever tremble at his name just as the god that wieldeth the thunder-bolt maketh those Asuras, the Kālakeyas, tremble before him; Jatāsura, and the king of the Madrakas, Kunti, Pulinda the king of the Kirātas, and the kings of Anga and Vanga, and Pundaka and Pāndrya, and the king of Udhra, and Andhraka; Sumitra, and Saivya that slayer of foes; Sumanas the king of the Kirātas, and Chānur the king of the Yavanas, Devarata, Bhoja, and he called Bhimaratha, Srutāyudha the king of Kalinga, Jayasena the

king of Magadha; Sukarman, and Chekitāna, and Puru that slayer of foes; Ketumāt, Vasudāna, and Vaideha and Kritakshana; Sudharman, Anirudha, and Srutāyu endued with great strength; the invincible Anuparāja, the handsome Kramajit; Shishupāla with his son, and the king of Kārusha; and the invincible youths of the Vrishni race, all equal in beauty unto the celestials, *viz*, Ahuka, Viprithu, Gada, Sārana, Akrura, Kritavarman, and Satyaka the son of Shini; and Bhismaka, Ankriti, and the powerful Dyumatsena, those chief of bowmen the Kaikeyas, and Yajnasena of the Somaka race;—these Kshatriyas endued with great might, all well-armed and wealthy, and many others as numerous and regarded as the foremost, all waited on Yudhishthira the son of Kunti in that *Sabha*, desirous of ministering to his happiness. And those princes also, endued with great strength, who dressing themselves in deer-skins learnt the science of weapons under Arjuna, waited upon Yudhishthira. And, O king, the princes, also of the Vrishni race,—*viz*, Praddyumna (the son of Rukminy), and Shāmva, and Yuyudhāna the son of Satyaka, and Sudharman the son of Satyaka, and Anirudha, and Shaivya that foremost of men,—acquired their science of arms under Arjuna on that occasion. These and many other kings, O lord of earth, used to wait on Yudhishthira. And that friend of Dhananjaya, Tumvuru, and the Gandharva Chitrasena with his ministers, and many other Gandharvas and Apsaras, well-skilled in vocal and instrumental music and in cadence, and Kinnaras also well-versed in (musical) measures and motions, singing celestial tunes in proper and charming voices, waited upon and gladdened the sons of Pandu and the Rishis who sat in that *Sabha*. And seated in that *Sabha*, those bulls among, men of rigid vows and devoted to truth, all waited upon Yudhishthira like the celestials in heaven waiting upon Brahmā."

Thus ends the fourth Section in the Sabhā-kriyā of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION V.

(*Lokapala Sabhakhyana Parva.*)

Vaisampayana spoke. "While the illustrious Pandavas were seated in that *Sabha* along with the principal Gandharvas, there came, O Bharata, unto that assembly the celestial Rishi Nārada. Conversant with the Vedas and *Upanishadas*, worshipped by the celestials, acquainted with histories and Purānas, well-versed with all that occurred in ancient *kalpas*, skilled in *Naya* and the truths of moral science, possessing a complete knowledge of the six *Angas* (*viz*, pronunciation, grammar, prosody, explanation of obscure terms, description of religious rites, and astronomy), a perfect master of reconciling contradictory texts and differentiating the application of general principles to particular cases, as also of interpreting contraries by reference to differences in situation, eloquent, resolute, intelligent, possessed of powerful memory, acquainted with the science of morals and politics, learned, proficient in distinguishing things inferior from superior, skilled in drawing inferences from evidence, competent to judge of the correctness or incorrectness of syllogistic statements consisting of five propositions, capable of answering successively Vrihaspati himself while arguing, with definite conclusions properly framed about religion, pleasure, profit, and salvation, of great soul—beholding this whole universe, above, below, and around, as if it were present before his eyes, master of both the *Sankhya* and *Yoja* systems of philosophy, ever desirous of humbling the celestials and Asuras by fomenting quarrels among them, conversant with the science of war and treaty, proficient in making dispositions by judging of things not within direct ken, as also in the six sciences of treaty, war, march, maintaining of posts against the enemy, stratagems by ambuscades and reserves, and through master of every branch of learning, fond of war and music, incapable of being repulsed by any science or any course of action,—possessed of these and numberless other accomplishments, the Rishi, having wandered over the different worlds, came into that *Sabha*. And the celestial Rishi of immeasurable splendour, endued with

great energy, was accompanied, O monarch, by Pārijātā and the intelligent Raivata and Saumya and Sumukha. Possessing the speed of the mind, the Rishi came thither and was filled with gladness upon beholding the Pandavas. And the Brahmana, arrived there, paid homage unto Yudhishthira by uttering blessings on him and wishing him victory. Beholding the learned Rishi arrive, the eldest of the Pandavas, conversant with all rules of duty, quickly stood up with his younger brothers. Bending low with humility, the monarch cheerfully saluted the Rishi, and gave with due ceremonies a befitting seat unto him. And the king also gave him kine and the usual offerings of the *Arghya* including honey and the other ingredients. And conversant with every duty the monarch also worshipped the Rishi with gems and jewels and with his whole heart. And receiving that worship from Yudhishthira in proper form, the Rishi became gratified. Thus worshipped by the Pandavas and the great Rishis, Nārada, possesing a complete mastery over the Vedas, said unto Yudhishthira the following words bearing upon religion, pleasure, and profit.

"Nārada spoke. 'Is the wealth thou art earning being spent on proper objects? Doth thy mind take pleasure in virtue? Art thou enjoying the pleasures of life? Thy mind sinketh not under their weight? O chief of men, continuest thou in the noble conduct consistent with religion and profit practised by thy ancestors towards the three classes of subjects (*viz*, good, indifferent, and bad)? Injurest thou religion for the sake of profit, or profit for the sake of religion, or both religion and profit for the sake of pleasure that easily seduces? O thou foremost of victorious men ever devoted to the good of all, conversant as thou art with the timeliness of everything, followest thou religion, pleasure, and profit, dividing thy time judiciously? O sinless one, with the six attributes of kings (*viz*, cleverness of speech, readiness in providing means, intelligence in dealing with the foe, memory, and acquaintance with morals and politics), dost thou attend to the seven means (*viz*, sowing dissensions, chastisement, conciliation, gifts, incantations, medicines, and magic)? Examinest thou also, after a

survey of thy own strength and weakness, the fourteen possessions of thy foes? (These are, the country, forts, cars, elephants, cavalry, foot-soldiers, the principal officials of state, the zenana, food-supply, computation of the army and income, the religious treatises in force, the accounts of state, the revenue, wine-shops and other secret enemies. Attendest thou to the eight occupations (of agriculture, trade, &c.), having examined, O thou foremost of victorious monarchs, thy own and thy enemy's means, and having made peace with thy enemies? O bull of the Bharata race, thy seven principal officers of state (*viz*, the governor of the citadel, the commander of forces, the chief judge, the general in inferior command, the chief priest, the chief physician, and the chief astrologer), have not, I hope, succumbed to the influence of thy foes, nor have they, I hope, become idle in consequence of the wealth they have earned? They are, I hope, all obedient to thee? Thy counsels, I hope, are never divulged by thy trusted spies in disguise, by thyself or by thy ministers? Thou ascertainest, I hope, what thy friends, foes, and strangers are about? Makest thou peace and makest thou war at proper times? Observest thou neutrality towards strangers and persons that are neutral themselves towards thee? And, O hero, hast thou made persons like thyself, persons that are old, pure in behavour, capable of understanding what should be done and what should not, pure as regards birth and blood, and devoted to thee, thy ministers? O Bhārata, the victories of kings have for their basis counsels! O child, is thy kingdom protected by ministers learned in the *shastras*, keeping their counsels close? Foes are not injuring it? Thou hast not become a slave of sleep? Wakest thou at the proper time? Conversant with pursuits yielding profit, thinkest thou in the small hours of night of what thou shouldst do and what not do the next day? Thou settlest nothing alone, nor takest counsel with many? The counsels thou hast resolved upon do not become known all over thy kingdom? Commencest thou soon to accomplish measures of great utility that are easy of accomplishment? Such measures are never obstructed? Keepest thou not the agricul-

turists out of thy sight? They do not fear to approach thee? Achievest thou thy measures through persons that are trusted, incoruptible, and possessed of practical experience? And, O brave king, I hope people only know the measures already accomplished by thee and those that have been partially accomplished and are waiting for completion, but not those that are only in contemplation and uncommenced? Have experienced teachers capable of explaining the reasons of things and learned in the science of morals and every branch of learning, been appointed to instruct the princes and the chiefs of the army? Buyest thou a single learned man by giving in exchange a thousand ignorant individuals? The man that is learned conferreth the greatest benefit in seasons of distress. Are thy forts always filled with treasure, food, weapons, water, engines and intruments, as also with engineers and bowmen? Even a single minister that is intelligent, brave, having his passions under complete control, and possessed of wisdom and judgment, is capable of conferring the highest prosperity on a king or a king's son. I ask thee, therefore, is there even one such minister with thee? Seekest thou to know everything about the eighteen *thirthas* of the foe and fifteen of thy own by means of three and three spies all unacquainted with one another? O slayer of all foes, watchest thou all thy enemies with care and attention, and unknown to them? Is the priest thou honorest, possessed of humility, and purity of blood, and renown, and without jealousy and illiberality? Hath some well-behaved, intelligent, and guileless Brahmana, well up in the ordinance, been employed by thee in the performance of thy daily rites before the sacred fire, and doth he remind thee in proper time as to when thy *homa* hath been performed and when it should be performed? Is the astrologer thou hast employed skilled in reading physiognomy, capable of interpreting omens, and competent in neutralising the effects of the disturbances of nature? Have respectable servants been employed by thee in offices that are respectable, indifferent ones in indifferent offices, and low ones in offices that are low? Hast thou appointed in high offices ministers that are guileless and well-

conducted for generations and above the common people? Oppressest thou thy people with cruel and severe punishments? And, O bull of the Bharata race, do thy ministers rule thy kingdom taking thy orders? Do thy ministers ever slight thee, like sacrificial priests slighting men that are fallen (and incapable of performing any more sacrifices) or like wives slighting husbands that are proud and incontinent in their behaviour? Is the commander of thy forces possessed of sufficient confidence, brave, intelligent, patient, well-conducted, of good birth, devoted to thee, and competent? Treatest thou with consideration and regard the chief officers of thy army that are skilled in every kind of warfare, are forward, well-behaved, and endued with prowess? Givest thou to thy troops in the appointed time their sanctioned rations and pay? Thou dost not oppress them by withholding these? Knowest thou that the misery caused by arears of pay and irregularity in the distribution of rations leadeth the troops to mutiny, and that is called by the learned to be one of the greatest of mischiefs? Are all the principal men, high-born and devoted to thee, ready with cheerfulness to lay down their lives in battle for thy sake? I hope no single individual of passions uncontrolled, is ever permitted by thee to rule as he likes many concerns together appertaining to the army. Is any servant of thine, who hath accomplished well a particular business by the expenditure of especial ability, disappointed in obtaining from thee a little more regard, and an increase of food and pay? I hope thou rewardest persons of learning and humility, and skill in every kind of knowledge, with gifts of wealth and honor proportionate to their qualifications. Dost thou support, O bull of the Bharata race, the wives and children of men that have given their lives for thee and have been distressed on thy account? Cherishest thou, O son of Prithā, with parental affection the foe that hath come to thee from fear and him that hath been weakened, him also that hath sought thy shelter having been vanquished in battle? O lord of earth, art thou equal unto all men, and can every one approach thee without fear as if thou wast their mother and father? And, O bull of the

Bharata race, marchest thou, without loss of time, and reflecting well upon three kinds of forces, against thy foe when thou hearest that he is in distress? O subjugator of all foes, beginnest thou thy march when the time cometh, having taken into consideration all the omens you might see, and convinced that the resolutions thou hast formed, and defeat in their execution, depend upon the twelve *mandalas* (such as reserves, and ambuscades, &c.), and having paid the troops their pay in advance? And, O persecutor of all foes, givest thou gems and jewels, as they deserve, unto the principal officers of thy enemy, without thy enemy's knowledge? O son of Prithā, seekest thou to conquer thy incensed foes that are slaves of their passions, having first conquered thy own soul and obtained the mastery over thy own senses? Before thou marchest out against thy foes, dost thou properly employ the four arts of conciliation, gift (of wealth), producing disunion, and application of strength? O monarch, goest thou out against thy enemies, having first strengthened thy own kingdom? And having gone out against them, exertest thou to the utmost to obtain victory over them? And having conquered them, seekest thou to protect them with care? Are thy *Chamus* consisting of four kinds of forces *viz*, the regular troops, the allies, the mercenaries, and the irregulars, each furnished with the eight ingredients *viz*, cars, elephants, horses, officers, infantry, camp-followers, spies possesing a through knowledge of the country, and ensigns) led out against thy enemies after having been well trained by superior officers? O oppressor of all foes, O great king, I hope thou slayest thy foes without regarding their seasons of reaping and of famine? O king, I hope thy servants and agents in thy own kingdom and in the kingdoms of thy foes continue to look after their respective duties and to protect one another. O monarch, I hope trusted servants have been employed by thee to look after thy food and the robes thou wearest and the perfumes thou usest. I hope, O king, thy treasury, barns, stables, arsenals, and women's appartments, are all protected by servants devoted to thee and ever seeking thy welfare. I hope, O monarch, thou protectest first thyself from thy domestic and

public servants, then those servants from thy relatives and from one another. Do thy servants, O king, ever speak to thee in the forenoon regarding thy extravagance of expenditure in respect of thy drinking, sports, and women? Is thy expenditure always covered by a fourth, a third, or a half of thy income? Cherishest thou always, with food and wealth, relatives, superiors, merchants, the aged, and other proteges, and the distressed? Do the accountants and clerks employed by thee in looking after thy income and expenditure, always apprise thee every day in the forenoon of thy income and expenditure? Dismissest thou without fault servants accomplished in business and popular and devoted to thy welfare? O Bhārata, dost thou employ superior, indifferent, and low men, after examining them well, in the offices they deserve? O monarch, employest thou in thy business persons that are thievish or open to temptation, or hostile, or minors? Persecutest thou thy kingdom by the help of thievish or covetous men, or minors, or women? Are the agriculturists in thy kingdom contented? Are large tanks and lakes established all over thy kingdom at proper distances, without agriculture being in thy realm entirely dependent on the showers of heaven? The agriculturists in thy kingdom want not either seed or food? Grantest thou with kindness loans (of seed-grain) unto the tillers, taking only a fourth in excess of every measure by the hundred? O child, are the four professions of agriculture, trade, cattle-rearing, and lending on interest, managed by honest men? Upon these, O monarch, depends the happiness of thy people! O king, do the five brave and wise men, employed in the five offices of protecting the city, the citadel, the merchants, and the agriculturists, and punishing the criminals, always benefit thy kingdom by working in unison with one another? For the protection of thy city, have the villages been made like towns, and the hamlets and outskirts of villages like villages? And are all these entirely under thy supervision and sway? Are thieves and robbers that sack thy towns pursued by thy police over the even and the uneven parts of thy kingdom? Consolest thou women and are they protected in thy realm? I hope thou placest not any confi-

dence in them, nor divulgest any secret before any of them? O monarch, having heard of any danger and having reflected on it also, liest thou in the inner apartments enjoying every agreeable object? Having slept during the second and the third divisions of the night, thinkest thou of religion and profit in the fourth division wakefully? O son of Pandu, rising from bed at the proper time and dressing thyself well, showest thou thyself to thy people, accompanied by ministers conversant with the auspiciousness or otherwise of moments? O repressor of all foes, do men dressed in red and armed with swords and adorned with ornaments stand at thy sides to protect thy person? O monarch, behavest thou like the god of justice himself unto those that deserve punishment and those that deserve worship, unto those that are dear to thee and those that thou likest not? O son of Prithā, seekest thou to cure bodily diseases with medicines and fasts, and mental illness with the advice of the aged? I hope that the physicians engaged in looking after thy health are all well-conversant with the eight kinds of treatment and are all attached and devoted to thee! Happeneth it ever, O monarch, that from covetousness or folly or pride thou failest to decide between the plaintiff and the defendant who have come to thee? Deprivest thou, from covetousness or folly, of their pensions, the proteges who have sought thy shelter from trustfulness or love? Do the people that inhabit thy realm, bought by thy foes, ever seek to raise disputes with thee, uniting themselves with one another? Are those amongst thy foes that are feeble always repressed by the help of thy troops; that are strong, by the help of good counsels or by the help of both counsels and troops? Are all the principal chieftains (of thy empire) all devoted to thee? Are they ready to lay down their lives for thy sake, commanded by thee? Dost thou worship Brahmanas and wise men according to their merits in respect of all the branches of learning? I tell thee, such worship is, without doubt, highly beneficial to thee! Hast thou faith in the religion based on the three (Vedas) and practised by men who have gone before thee? Dost thou carefully follow the practices that were

followed by them? Are accomplished Brahmanas entertained in thy house and in thy presence with nutritive and excellent food, and do they also obtain pecuniary gifts at the conclusion of those feasts? Dost thou, with passions under complete control and singleness of mind, strive to perform the sacrifices called *Vajapeya* and *Pundarika* with their full complement of rites? Bowest thou unto thy relatives and superiors, the aged, the gods, the ascetics, the Brahmanas, and the tall trees (banians) in villages, that are of so much benefit to the people? O sinless one, inspirest thou ever grief or anger in any one? Do priests capable of granting thee auspicious fruits ever stand at thy side? O sinless one, are thy inclination and practice such as I have described them and as always enhance the duration of life, and spread one's renown, and as always help the cause of religion, pleasure, and profit? He who conducteth himself according to this way, never findeth his kingdom distressed or afflicted; and that monarch, subjugating the whole earth, enjoyeth a high degree of felicity. O monarch, I hope, no well-behaved, pure-souled, and respected person is ever ruined and his life taken on a false charge of theft by thy ministers ignorant of *shastras* acting from temptation? And, O bull among men, I hope thy ministers never, from covetousness, set free a real thief knowing him to be such and having apprehended him with the booty on him? O Bhārata, I hope thy ministers never, won over by bribes, wrongly decide the disputes that arise between the rich and the poor? Dost thou keep thyself free from the fourteen vices of kings, *viz*, atheism, untruthfulness, anger, incautiousness, procrastination, not visiting the wise, idleness, restlessness of mind, taking counsels with only one man, consultation with persons unacquainted with the science of profit, abandonment of a settled plan, divulgence of counsels, unaccomplishment of beneficial projects, and undertaking everything without reflection? By these, O king, even monarchs firmly seated on their thrones are ruined! Hath thy study of the Vedas, hath thy wealth and knowledge of the *shastras*, and marriage, borne fruit?'"

Vaisampayana continued, "After the Rishi had finished,

Yudhishthira asked, 'How, O Rishi, do the Vedas, wealth, wife, and knowledge of the *shastras*, bear fruit?'

"The Rishi answered, 'The Vedas are said to bear fruit when he that hath studied them performeth the *Agnihotra* and other sacrifices. Wealth is said to bear fruit when he that hath it enjoyeth it himself and giveth it away in charity. A wife is said to bear fruit when she is used and when she beareth children. Knowledge of the *shastras* is said to bear fruit when it resulteth in humility and good behaviour.'"

Vaisampayana continued, "The great ascetic Nārada, having answered Yudhishthira thus, again asked that just ruler, 'Do the officers of thy government, O king, that are paid from the taxes levied on the community, take only their just dues from the merchants that come to thy territories from distant lands impelled by the desire of gain? Are the merchants, O king, treated with consideration in thy capital and kingdom, capable of bringing their goods thither without being deceived by the false pretexts of (both the buyers and the officers of government)? Listenest thou always, O monarch, to the words, fraught with instruction on religion and profit, of old men acquainted with the science of profit and capable of pointing out the paths of religion and profit? Are gifts of honey and clarified butter made to the Brahmanas for the increase of agricultural produce, of kine, of fruits and flowers, and for the sake of virtue? Givest thou always, O king, regularly unto all the artisans and artists employed by thee, the materials of their works and their wages for periods not more than four months? Examinest thou the works excuted by those that are employed by thee, and applaudest thou them before good men, and rewardest thou them having shewn them proper respect? O bull of the Bharata race, followest thou the aphorisms (of the sages) in respect of every concern, particularly those that relate to elephants, horses, and cars? O bull of the Bharata race, are the aphorisms relating to the science of arms, as also those that relate to the practice of engines in warfare—so useful to towns and fortified places, studied in thy court? O sinless one, art thou acquainted with all weapons, with all mysterious incantations, and

with the secrets of poisons destructive of all foes? Protectest thou thy kingdom from the fear of fire, of snakes and other animals destructive of life, of diseases, and Rakshasas? Acquainted as thou art with every duty, cherishest thou like a father, the blind, the dumb, the lame, the deformed, the friendless, and ascetics that have no homes? Hast thou banished these six evils, O monarch, *viz*, sleep, ildleness, fear, anger, weakness of mind, and procrastination?' "

Vaisampayana continued, "The illustrious bull among the Kurus, having heard these words of that best of Brahmanas, bowed down unto him and worshipped his feet. And gratified with everything he heard, the monarch said unto Nārada of celestial form, 'I shall do all that thou hast directed, for my knowlege hath expanded under thy advice!' Having said this, the king acted conformably to that advice, and gained in time the whole earth bounded by her belt of seas. Nārada again spoke, saying, 'That king who is thus employed in the protection of the four orders (Brahmanas, Kshatriyas, Vaisyas, and Sudras) passing his days happily here, attaineth hereafter to the region of Shakra.' "

Thus endeth the fourth Section in the Lokapāla-Sabhākhyana of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION VI.

(Lokapala-sabhakhyana Parva continued.)

Vaisampayana spoke. "At the conclusion of Narada's words, king Yudhishthira the just worshipped him duly; and commanded by him, the monarch began to reply succintly to the questions the Rishi had asked.

"Yudhishthira spoke. 'O holy one, the truths of religion and morality thou hast indicated one after another, are just and proper. As regards myself, I duly observe those ordinances to the best of my power. Indeed, the acts that were properly performed by monarchs of yore are, without doubt, to be regarded as having borne proper fruit, undertaken from solid reasons and for the attaintment of proper objects. O master, we desire to walk in the virtuous path of those monarchs, but

we are incapable of walking along it after the manner of those rulers that had, besides, their souls under complete contol.' "

Vaisampayana continued. "Yudhishthira the son of Pandu, possessed of great glory, having received with reverence the words of Nārada and having also answered the Rishi thus, reflected for a moment. And perceiving a proper opportunity, the monarch seated beside the Rishi, asked Nārada sitting at his ease and capable of going into every world at will, in the presence of that assembly of kings, saying, 'Possessed of the speed of mind, thou roamest over various and many worlds created in days of yore by Brahmā, beholding everything! Tell me, I ask thee, if thou hast, O Brahmana, ever beheld anywhere before an assembly room like this of mine or superior to it!' Hearing these words of Yudhishthira the just, Nārada smiling answered the son of Pandu in these sweet accents :—

"Narada spoke. 'O child, O king, I saw not or heard of ever before, amongst men, any assembly room built of gems and precious stones like this of thine, O Bhārata! I shall, however, describe unto thee the assembly rooms of the king of the departed (Yama), of Varuna of great intelligence, of Indra, and also of him who hath his home in Kailāsa (Kuvera). I shall also describe unto thee the celestial *Sabha* of Brahmā that dispelleth every kind of uneasiness. All these assembly rooms exhibit in their structure both celestial and human designs and present every kind of form that exists in the universe. And they are ever worshipped by the gods and the *Pitris*, the *Sadhyas*, (under-deities called Gana), by ascetics employed in sacrifices with souls under complete command, by peaceful Munis engaged without intermission in Vedic sacrifices with presents to Brahmanas. I shall describe all these to you if, O bull of the Bharata race, thou hast any inclination to listen to me!' "

Vaismpayana continued, "Thus addressed by Nārada, the high-souled king Yudhishthira the just, with his brother and all those foremost of Brahmanas (seated around him), joined his hands (in entreaty). And the monarch then asked Nārada, saying, 'Describe unto us all those assembly rooms! We

desire to listen to thee! O Brahmana, which Sabhā is made of what articles? What is the area of each, and what the length and breadths of each? Who wait upon the grandsire in that assembly room? And who also upon Vāsava the chief of the celestials, and upon Yama the son of Vivaswan? And who upon Varuna and upon Kuvera in their respective assembly rooms? O Brahmana Rishi, tell us all about these! We all together desire to hear thee describe them. Indeed, our curiosity is great!' Thus addressed by the son of Pandu, Nārada replied, saying, 'O monarch, hear ye all about those celestial assembly rooms one after another!'"

Thus endeth the sixth Section in the Lokapāla-Sabhākhyana of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION VII.

(*Lokapala-Sabhakhyana Parva continued.*)

"Narada spoke. 'The celestial assembly room of Shakra is full of lustre. He hath obtained it as the fruit of his own acts. Possessed of the splendour of the sun, it was built, O scion of the Kuru race, by Shakra himself. Capable of going everywhere at will, this celestial assembly house is full one hundred and fifty *yojanas* in length, and hundred *yojanas* in breadth, and five *yojanas* in height. Dispelling weakness of age, grief, fatigue, and fear, auspicious and bestowing good fortune, furnished with rooms and seats, and adorned with celestial trees, it is delightful in the extreme. There sitteth in that assembly room, O son of Prithā, on an excellent seat, the lord of celestials, with his wife Shachi and with beauty and affluence embodied. Assuming a form incapable of description for its vagueness, with a crown on his head and bright bracelets on the upper arms, attired in robes of pure white, and decked in floral wreaths of many hues, there he sitteth with beauty, fame, and glory, by his side. And the illustrious deity of an hundred sacrifices is daily waited upon, O monarch, in that assembly, by the Marutas in a body, each leading the life of a householder in the bosom of his family. And the *Sid-*

dhas and celestial Rishis, the *Sadhyas* and all the gods, and the Marutās of brilliant complexions and adorned in golden garlands,—these all of celestial forms and decked in ornaments, always wait upon and worship the illustrious chief of the immortals, that mighty rspressor of all foes. And, O son of Prithā, the celestial Rishis also, all of pure souls, with sins completely washed off, and resplendent as the fire, and possessed of energy, and without sorrow of any kind, and freed from the fever of anxiety, and performers all of the Soma sacrifice, also wait upon and worship Indra. And Parāshara, and Parvata and Savarni and Gālava ; and Sankha, Likhita, and the Muni Gaurshiras, and Durvāsas, and Krodhana and Swena, and the Muni Dhirghatamas ; and Pavitrapāni, Sāvarni, Yājnavalkya, and Bhāluki ; and Uddālaka, Swetaketu, and Tāndya, and also Bhāndāyani ; and Havishmat, and Garishta, and king Harishchandra ; and Hridya, Udarashāndilya, Pārāsharya, Krishivala ; Vātashkandha, Vishākha, Vidhātas, and Kāla ; and Karāladanta, Tashtri, and Viswakarman, and Tumvuru ; and other Rishis some born of women and some not born of women, and others living upon air, and others again living upon fire ; these all worship the wielder of the thunder-bolt, the lord of all the worlds. And Sahadeva, and Sunitha, and Vālmiki of great ascetic merit ; and Shamika of truthful speech, and Prachetas ever performing his promises, and Medhātithi, and Vāmadeva, and Pulastya, Pulaha and Kratu ; and Marutta and Marichi, and Sthānu of great ascetic merit ; and Kākshivat, and Gautama, and Tārkhya, and also the Muni Vaishwānara ; and the Muni Kālakavrikhiya and Asrāvya, and also Hiranmaya, and Samvartta, and Dehahavya, and Viswaksena of great ereat energy ; and Kanwa, and Kātyaana, O king, and Gārgya, and Kaushika ;—these all, and the celestial waters and plants ; and Faith, and Intelligence, and the goddess of learning, and Profit, Religion, and Pleasure ; and Lightning, O son of Pāndu ; and the rain-charged clouds, and the winds, and all the loud-sounding forces of heaven ; the Eastern point, the twenty seven fires conveying the sacrificial butter, Agni and Shoma, and the fire of Indra, and Mitra, and Sāvitri, and Aryaman ; Bhaga, the Viswas, the Sādhyas,

the preceptor (Vrihaspati), and also Sukra; and Viswāvasu and Chitrasena, and Sumanas, and also Taruna; the Sacrifices, the gifts to Brahmanas, the planets, and the stars, O Bhārata, and the Mantras that are uttered in sacrifices, all these are present there. And, O king, many charming Apsarās and Gandharvas, by various kinds of dances and music both instrumental and vocal, and the practice of auspicious rites, and by the exhibition of many feats of skill, gratify the lord of the celestials—Shatakratu—the illustrious slayer of Vala and Vritra. Besides these, many other Brahmana and royal and celestial Rishis, all resplendent as the fire, decked in floral wreaths and ornaments, frequently come to and leave that assembly riding on celestial cars of various kinds. And Vrihaspati and Sukra are present there on all occasions. These and many other illustrious ascetics of rigid vows, and Bhrigu and the seven Rishis who are equal, O king unto Bhramā himself, use to come to and leave that assembly house, riding on cars beautiful as the car of Soma, and themselves looking as bright thereon as Soma himself. This, O mighty armed monarch, is the assembly house, called Pushkara-mālini, of him of an hundred sacrifices that I have seen! Listen now to the account of Yama's assembly house!' "

Thus endeth the seventh Section in the Lokapāla-Sabhākhyana of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION VIII.

(Lokapala-Sabhakhyana Parva continued.)

"Narada spoke. 'O Yudhishthira, I shall now describe the assembly house of Yama the son of Vivaswat, which, O son of Prithā, was built by Viswakarman! Listen now to me! Bright as burnished gold, that assembly house, O monarch, covers an area of much more than an hundred *yojanas*. Possessed of the splendour of the sun it yieldeth everything that one may desire. Neither very cool nor very hot, it delighteth the heart. In that assembly house there is neither grief nor weakness of age, neither hunger nor thirst. Nothing disagreeable findeth a place there, nor any kind of

wretchedness or distress. There can be no fatigue or any kind of evil feelings there. Every object of desire, celestial or human, is to be found in that mansion. And all kinds of enjoyable articles, as also of sweet, juicy, agreeable and delicious edibles in profusion that are licked, sucked, and drunk, are there, O chastiser of all enemies! And the floral wreaths in that mansion are of the most delicious fragrance, and the trees that stand around it yield fruits that are desired of them. And there are both cold and hot waters and these are sweet and agreeable. And in that mansion many royal sages of great sanctity and Brahmana sages also of great purity, cheerfully wait upon, O child, and worship Yama the son of Vivaswat. And Yayāti, Nahushu, Puru Māndhātri, Somaka, Nriga; the royal sage Trasadasyu, Kritavirya, Srutasravas; Arishtanemi, Siddha, Kritavega, Kriti, Nimi; Pratarddana, Shivi, Matsya, Prithulāksha, Vrihadratha; Vārtta, Marutta, Kushika, Sānkāsya, Sānkriti, Dhruva; Chaturaswa, Sadaswormi, and king Kārtyavirya; Bhārata, and Suratha, Sunitha, Nishatha, Nala; Divodāsa, and Sumanas, Amvarisha, Bhagiratha; Vyaswa, Sadaswa, Vadhrāswa, Prithuvega, Prithusravas; Prishadaswa, Vasumanas, Kshupa, and Sumahāvala, Vrishadgu, and Vrishasena, Purukutsa, Dhajin and Rathin; Arshtisena, Dwilipa, and the high-souled Usinara; Ausinari, Pundarika, Sharyāti, Sharava, and Shuchi; Anga, Rishta, Vena, Dushmanta, Srinjaya, and Jaya; Bhāngāsuri, Sunitha, and Nishada, and Vahinara; Karandhama, Vālhika, Sudyumna, and the mighty Madhu; Aila, and the mighty king of earth Marutta; Kapota-roman, Trinaka, and Sahadeva, and Arjuna also; Vyaswa, Sāswa, and Krishāswa, and king Shasha-vindu; Rama the son of Dasharatha, and Lakshmana, and Pratarddana; Alarka, and Kakshasena, Gaya, and Gaurāswa; Rama the son of Jamadagnya, Nābhāga, and Sagara; Bhuridyumna, and Mahāshwa, Prithāshwa, and also Janaka; king Vainya, Vārishena, Purujit, and Janamejaya; Brahmadatta, and Trigarta, and king Uparichara also; Indradyumna, Bhimajānu, Gauraprishtha, Nala, Gaya; Padma, and Muchukunda, Bhuridyumna, Prasenajit; Arishtanemi, Sudyumna, Prithulāshwa, and Ashtaka also; an hundred kings of the

Matsya race, an hundred of the Nipa and an hundred of the Haya races: an hundred kings of the name of Dhritarāshtra, eighty kings of the name of Janamejaya; an hundred monarchs called Brahmadatta, and an hundred kings of the name Iri; more than two hundred Bhismas, and also an hundred Bhimas; an hundred Prati-vindhyas, an hundred Nāgas, and an hundred Hayas; an hundred Palāshas, and an hundred called Kāsha and Kusha; that king of kings Shāntanu, and thy father Pandu, Usangava, Shata-ratha, Devarāja, Jayadratha; the intelligent royal sage Vrishadharva with his ministers; and a thousand other kings known by the name of Shasha-vindu and who have died having performed many grand horse-sacrifices with large presents to the Brahmanas;—these holy royal sages of grand achievements and great knowledge of the *Shastras*, wait upon, O king, and worship the son of Vivaswat in that assembly house! And Agastya and Matanga, and Kāla, and Mrityu (Death), performers of sacrifices, the Siddhas, and many Yogins; the *Pitris* belonging to the classes—called *Agniswattas, Fenapa, Ushmapa, Swadhavat,* and *Varhishada,* as also those others that have forms; the wheel of time, and the illustrious conveyer himself of the sacrificial butter; all sinners among human beings as also that have died during the winter solstice; these officers of Yama who have been appointed to count the allotted days of every body and every thing; the *Shingshapa Palasha, Kasha,* and *Kusha* trees and plants, in their embodied forms;—these all, O king, wait upon and worship the god of justice in that assembly house of his. These and many others are present in the *Sabha* of the king of the *Pitris.* So numerous are they that I am incapable of describing them either by mentioning their names or deeds. O son of Prithā, that delightful assembly house, moving everywhere at the will of its owner, is of wide extent. It was built by Viswakarman after a long course of ascetic penances. And, O Bhārata, resplendent with its own effulgence, it stands confest in all its beauty. Sanyāshins of severe ascetic penances, of excellent vows, and of truthful speech, peaceful and pure and sanctified by holy deeds, of shining bodies and

attired in spotless robes, decked in bracelets and floral garlands of many hues, with earrings of burnished gold, and adorned with their own holy acts as with the marks of their orders (painted over their bodies), constantly visit that Sabhā. And many illustrious Gandharvas, and many Apsarās, fill every part of that mansion with music both instrumental and vocal and with the sounds of laughter and dance. And, O son of Prithā, excellent perfumes, and sweet sounds, and garlands of celestial flowers always contribute to make that mansion supremely blest. And hundreds of thousands of virtuous persons, of celestial beauty and great wisdom, always wait upon and worship the illustrious lord of created beings in that assembly house. Such, O monarch, is the *Sabha* of the illustrious king of the *Pitris*! I shall now describe unto thee the assembly house of Varuna also, called *Pushkaramalini*!"

Thus ends the eighth Section in the Lokapalā-Sabhākhyāna of Sabhā Parva.

SECTION IX.

(*Lokapala-Sabhakhyana Parva continued.*)

"Narada spoke, 'O Yudhishthira, the celestial *Sabha* of Varuna is of unparalleled splendour! In dimensions it is similar to that of Yama. Its walls and arches are all of pure white. It hath been built by Viswakarman (the celestial artificer) within the waters. It is surrounded on all sides by many celestial trees made of gems and jewels and yielding excellent fruits and flowers. And many plants with their weight of blossoms, blue and yellow, and black and darkish, and white and red, that stand there, form excellent bowers around. And within those bowers hundreds and thousands of birds of diverse species, beautiful and variegated, always pour forth their melodies. The atmosphere of that mansion is extremely delightful, neither cold nor hot. Owned by Varuna, that delightful assembly house of pure white, consists of many rooms and is furnished with many seats. There sitteth Varuna attired in celestial robes and decked in celes-

tial ornaments and jewels, with his queen. Adorned with celestial garlands and perfumed with celestial scents and besmeared with paste of celestial fragrance, the Adityas wait upon and worship in that mansion Varuna the lord of the waters. And Vāsuki and Takshaka, and the Nāga called Airāvana; and Krishna and Lohita and Padma and Chitra endued with great energy; and the Nāgas called Kamvala and Aswatara, and Dhritarāshtra and Valāhaka; and Matimat and Kundadhāra and Karkotaka and Dhananjaya; and Panimat and the mighty Kundaka, O lord of the earth; and Prahlāda and Mushikāda, and Janamejaya; all having auspicious marks and *mandalas* and extended hoods;—these and many other snakes, O Yudhishthira, without anxiety of any kind, wait upon and worship the illustrious Varuna! And, O king, Vali the son of Virochana, and Naraka the subjugator of the whole earth; and Sanghrāda and Viprachitti, and those Dānavas called Kālakhanja; and Suhanu and Durmukha and Shankha and Sumanas, and also Sumati; and Ghatodara, and Mahāpārsha, and Krathana, and also Pithara; and Viswarupa, Swarupa, Virupa, and Mahāsiras; and Dashagriva, Vāli, and Meghavāsas, and Dashāvara; Tittiva, and Vitabhuta, and Sanghrāda, and Indratāpana; these Daityas and Dānavas, all decked with earnings and floral wreaths and crowns, and attired in celestial robes; all blessed with boons and possessed of great bravery, and enjoying immortality; and all well conducted and of excellent vows, wait upon and worship in that mansion the illustrious Varuna, the deity bearing the noose as his weapon. And, O king, there also the four oceans, the river Bhāgirathee, the Kālindi, the Vidishā, the Venwā, the Narmadā of rapid current; the Vipāshā, the Satadru, the Chandrabhāgā, the Saraswati; the Iravati, the Vitastā, the Sindhu, the Devanadi; the Godāvari, the Krishna-venwā, and that queen of rivers the Cāveri; the Kimpunā, the Vishalya, and the river Vaitarani also; the Tritiyā, the Jeshthilā, and the great Shone (Soane); the Charmanwati, and the great river Parnāshā; the Sarayu, the Vāravatya, and that queen of rivers the Lāngali; the Karatoyā, the Atreyi, the red Mahānada; the Laghanti, the

Gomati, the Sandhyā, and also the Trisrotasi; these and other rivers which are all sacred and world-renowned places of pilgrimage, as also all other rivers and sacred waters and lakes and wells and springs, and tanks, large and small, in their personified forms, O Bhārata, wait upon and whrship the lord Varuna. The Points of the heavens, the Earth, and all the Mountains, as also every species of acquatic animals, all worship Varuna there. And various tribes of Gandharvas and Apsarās, devoted to music both vocal and instrumental, wait there upon Varuna, singing eulogistic hymns unto him. And all those mountains that are noted for being both delightful and rich in jewels, wait (in their personified forms) in that Sabhā employed in sweet converse with one another. And the chief minister of Varuna, Sunābha by name, surrounded by his sons and grandsons, also waiteth upon his master, along with (the personified form) of a sacred water colled *Go*. These all, in their personified forms, worship that deity. O bull of the Bharata race, such is the assembly room of Varuna seen by me before in course of my wanderings! Listen now to the account I give of the assembly room of Kuvera!"

Thus ends the ninth Section in the Lokapāla-Sabhākhyana of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION X.

(Lokapala-Sabhakhyana Parva continued.)

"Narada spoke. 'Possessed of great splendour, the assembly house of Vaisravana, O king, is an hundred *yojanas* in length and seventy *yojanas* in breadth. It was built, O king, by Vaisravana himself using his ascetic power. Possessing the splendour of the peaks of Kailāsa, that mansion darkens by its own the brilliance of the Moon himself. Supported by Guhyakas, that mansion seems to be attached to the firmament. Of celestial make, it is rendered extremely handsome with high chambers of gold. Extremely delightful and rendered fragrant with celestial perfumes, it is variegated with numberless costly jewels. Resembling the peaks of a mass of white clouds it seems to be floating in the air. Pain-

led with colors of celestial gold it seems to be decked with streaks of lightning. Within that mansion sitteth on an excellent seat—bright as the sun and covered with celestial carpets and furnished with a handsome footstool, king Vaisravana of agreeable person, attired in excellent robes and adorned with costly ornaments and ear-rings of great brilliance, surrounded by his thousand wives. Delicious and cool breezes murmuring through forests of tall Mandāras, and bearing the fragrance of extensive plantations of jasmine as also of the lotuses on the bosom of the river Alakā, and of the Nandana gardens, always administer to the pleasure of the king of the Yakshas. There the deities with the Gandharvas surrounded by various tribes of Apsarās, sing in chorus. O king, in notes of celestial sweetness. And Misrakeshi, and Rambhā, and Chitrasenā, and Suchismitā ; and Chārunetrā, and Ghritāchi, and Menakā, and Punjikasthalā ; and Viswāchi Sahajanya, and Pramlochā and Urvasi and Irā, and Vargā and Sauraveyi, and Samichi, and Vudvudā, and Latā; these and a thousand other Apsarās and Gandharvas, all well-skilled in music and dance, wait upon the lord of treasures. And that mansion always filled with the notes of instrumental and vocal music, as also with the sounds of dance, of various tribes of Gandharvas, and Apsarās, hath become extremely charming and delicious. And the Gandharvas called Kinnaras, and others called Naras, and Manibhadra, and Dhanada, and Swetabhadra, and Guhyaka; Kasheraka, Gandakandu, and the mighty Pradyota ; Kustumvuru, Pishācha, Gajakarna, and Vishālaka; Varāhakarna, Tāmraushtha, Falakaksha, and Falodāka ; Hansachura, Sikhāvarta, Vibhishana ; Pushpānana, Pingalika, Shonitoda, and Pravālaka; Vrikshavāshpa-niketa, and Chiravāsas ; these, O Bhārata, and many other Yakhas by hundreds and thousands always wait upon Kuvera! The goddess Laksmi always stayeth there, also Kuvera's son Nalakuvara. And myself and many others like myself often repair thither. And many Brahmana Rishis and celestial Rishis also repair there often. And many Rākshasas, and many Gaundharvas besides those that have been named, wait upon and worship, in that mansion, the illus-

trious lord of all treasures. And, O tiger among kings, the illustrious husband of Umā and lord of created things, the three-eyed Mahādeva, the wielder of the trident and the slayer of the Asura called Bhaga-netra the mighty god of the fierce bow, surrounded by multitudes of spirits by hundreds and thousands, some of dwarfish stature, some of fierce visage, some hunch-backed, some of blood-red eyes, some of frightful yells, some feeding upon fat and flesh, and some terrible to behold, and all armed with various weapons and endued with the speed of the wind, with the goddess (Pārvati) ever cheerful and knowing no fatigue, always waiteth here upon his friend the lord of treasures. And hundreds of Gandharva chiefs, with cheerful hearts and attired in their respective robes, and Viswāvasu, and Hāhā and Huhu; and Tumvuru and Parvata, and Shailusha; and Chitrasena skilled in music, and also Chitraratha;—these and innumerable Gandharvas worship the lord of treasures. And Chakradharman the chief of the Vidyādharas, with his followers, waiteth in that mansion upon the lord of treasures. And Kinnaras by hundreds and innumerable kings with Bhagadatta as their chief, and Druma the chief of the Kimpurushas, and Mahendra the chief of the Rākshasas, and Gandhamādana, accompahied by many Yakshas and Gandharvas and many Rākshasas, wait upon the lord of treasures. And the virtuous Vibhishana ālso worshippeth there his elder brother the lord Kuvera. And the mountains of Himavat, Pāripātrā, Vindhya, Kailāsa, Mandara, Malaya, Durdura, Mahendra, Gandhamādana, Indrakila, Sunāva, and the Eastern and the Western hills, these and many other mountains, in their personified forms, with Meru standing before, all wait upon and worship the illustrious lord of treasures. The illustrious Nandiswara, and Mahākāla, and many spirits with arrowy ears and sharp-pointed mouths, Kaskha, Kuthimukha, Danti, and Vijaya of great ascetic merit, and the mighty white bull of Siva roaring deep, all wait in that mansion. Besides these, many other Rākshasas and Pishāchasas worship Kuvera in that assembly house. The son of Pulastya (Kuvera) formerly used always to worship in all the modes and sit with permission obtained, be-

side the god of gods Siva, the creator of the three worlds, that supreme Deity surrounded by his attendants. One day the exalted Bhava made friends with Kuvera. From that time, O king, Mahādeva always sitteth in the mansion of his friend the lord of treasures. Those best of all jewels, those princes of all gems in the three worlds, *viz*, Sankha and Padma, in their personified forms, accompanied by all the jewels of the earth (also in their personified forms) worship Kuvera.

'This delightful assembly-house of Kuvera that I have seen, attached to the firmament and capable of moving along it, is such, O king! Listen now to the Sabhā I describe unto thee, belonging to the Grand-sire.'"

Thus endeth the tenth Section in the Lokapāla-Sabhākhyana of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XI.

(*Lokapala-Sabhakhyana Parva continued.*)

"Narada spoke, 'Listen to me, O child, as I tell thee of the assembly-house of the Grand-sire, that house which none can describe saying, it is such. In the *Krita* age of old, O king, the exalted deity Aditya (once) came down from heaven into the world of men. Having seen before the assembly-house of the Self-created, Aditya was cheerfully wandering over the Earth in human form, desirous of beholding what could be seen here. It was on that occasion, O son of Pandu, that the god of day spoke unto me, O bull of the Bharata race, of that celestial *Sabha* of the Grand-sire, immeasurable and immaterial, indescribable as regards form and shape, and capable of delighting the heart of every creature by its splendour. Hearing, O bull of the Bharata race, of the merits of that *Sabha*, I became, O king, desirous of beholding it. I then asked Aditya, saying,—O exalted one, I desire to behold the sacred *Sabha* of the Grand-sire! O lord of light, tell me, O exalted one, by what ascetic penances, or by what acts, or by what charms with what rites, I may be enabled to behold that excellent sin-cleansing Sabhā!—Hearing these words of mine, the god of day, the deity of

a thousand rays, answered me, O chief of the Bharata race, saying,—Observe thou, with mind rapt in meditation, the Brahma vow extending for a thousand years.—Repairing then to the breast of the Himavat, I commenced that great vow, and (after I had completed it) the exalted and sinless deity Surya endued with great energy, and knowing no fatigue, took me with him to the *Sabha* of the Grand-sire. O king, it is impossible to describe that *Sabha* saying, *it is such*, for within a moment it assumes a different form that language fails to paint. O Bhārata, it is impossible to indicate its dimensions or shape. I never saw anything like it before. Ever contributing to the happiness of those within it, its atmosphere is neither cold nor warm. Hunger and thirst or any kind of uneasiness disappear as soon as one goeth thither. It seems to be made up of brilliant gems of many kinds. It doth not seem to be supported on columns. It knoweth no deterioration, being eternal. That self-effulgent mansion, by its numerous blazing celestial indications of unrivalled splendour, seems to surpass the moon, the sun, and the fire. Stationed in heaven, it blazes forth as if censuring the maker of the day. In that mansion, O king, the Supreme Deity, the Grand-sire of all created things, having himself, alone, created everything by virtue of his creative illusion, stayeth ever. And Daksha, Prachetas, Pulaha, Marichi, the master Kasyapa, Bhrigu, Atri, and Vashishta and Gautama, and also Angiras, and Pulastya, Kratu, Prahlāda, and Karddama;—these *Prajapatis*, and Angirasa of the Atharvan Veda, the Vālikhillyas, the Marichipas; and Intelligence, and Space, and Knowledge, and Air, and Heat, and Water, and Earth; and Sound, and Touch, and Form, and Taste, and Scent; and Nature, and the Modes (of Nature), and the elemental and prime causes of the world;—all stay in that mansion beside the lord Brahmā. And Agastya of great energy, and Mārkandeya of great ascetic power, and Jamadagni, and Bharadwāja, and Samvarta, and Chyavana; the exalted Durvasas, and the virtuous Rishyasringa, the illustrious Sanatkumāra of great ascetic merit and the preceptor in all matters affecting *Yoga*; Asita, and Devala, and Jaigishavya acquainted with

truth; Rishava, Ajitashatru, and Mani of great energy; and the Science of healing with its eight branches—all in their personified forms, O Bhārata; the Moon with all the stars and the stellar conjunctions; Aditya with all his rays, the Winds, the Sacrifices, the Declarations of purpose (in sacrifices), the Vital principles,—these illustrious and vow-observing beings in their personified forms, and many others too numerous to mention, all wait upon Brahmā in that mansion. And Profit and Religion and Desire, and Joy, and Aversion, and Asceticism, and Tranquillity; all wait together upon the Supreme Deity in that palace. And the twenty tribes of the Gandharvas, and Apsarās, as also their seven other tribes, and all the Lokapālas (chief protectors of the several regions); and Sukra, and Vrihaspati, and Vudha, and Angāraka (Mangala), Shani, Rāhu, and the other planets; the Mantras (of the Sāma Veda), the especial Mantras (of the same Veda), (the rites of) Harimat and Vasumat, the Adityas with Indra, the two Agnis mentioned by name (*viz*, Agnisoma and Indrāgni), the Marutas, Viswakarman, and the Vasus, O Bhārata; the Pitris, and all kinds of sacrificial libations; the four Vedas, *viz*, Rig, Sāma, Yajus, and Atharvan; and all Sciences and branches of learning; Histories and all minor branches of learning; the several branches of the Vedas; the Planets, the Sacrifices, the Soma, all the Deities; Sāvitri (Gāyatri), the seven kinds of Speech; Understanding, Patience, Memory, Wisdom, Intelligence, Fame, Forgiveness; the Hymns of the Sāma Veda, the Science of hymns in general, and various kinds of Verses and Songs; various Commentaries with arguments; all in their personified forms, O king; and various Dramas and Poems and Stories and abridged Glosses; these also, and many others wait upon the Supreme Deity in that *Sabha*. And *Kshanas*, *Lavas*, *Muhurtyas*, the Day, the Night, the Fortnights, the Months, the six Seasons, O Bhārata; the Years, the Yugas, the four kinds of Days and Nights (*viz*, appertaining to man, to the Pitris, to the gods, and to Brahmā); and that eternal, indestructible, undeteriorating, excellent Wheel of Time, and the Wheel also of virtue;—these always wait there, O Yudhishthira; and Aditi,

Diti, Danu, Surasā, Vinatā, Irā, Kālikā, Suravi Devi, Saramā, Gautami, and the goddesses Pradhā, and Kadru ;—these mothers of the celestials, and Rudrāni, Sree, Laksmi, Bhadrā, Shashthi, the Earth, Gangā, Hri, Swāhā, Kirti, the goddess Surā, Shachi, Pushti, Arundhati, Samvritti, Ashā, Niyati, Srishti, Rati ;—these and many other goddesses wait upon the Creator of all. And the Adityas, Vasus, Rudras, Marutas, Aswinās, the Viswedevas, Sādhyas, and the Pitris gifted with the speed of the mind ; these all wait there upon the Grand-sire. And, O bull amongst men, know thou that there are seven classes of Pitris, of which four classes have embodied forms and the remaining three none. It is well known that the illustrious Vairājas and Agniswāttas and Gārhapattyas (three classes of Pitris) range in heaven. And those amongst the Pitris that are called the Somapās, the Ekasringas, the Chaturvedas, and the Kalās, are ever worshipped amongst the four orders of men. Gratified with the Soma (juice) first, these gratify Soma afterwards. All these tribes of Pitris wait upon the Lord of the creation and cheerfully worship the Supreme Deity of immeasurable energy. And Rākshasas, Pishāchas, Danavas and Guhyakas ; Nāgas, Birds, and various animals ; and all mobile and immobile great beings ; all worship the Grand-sire. And Purandara the chief of the celestials, and Varuna and Kuvera and Yama, and Mahādeva accompanied by Uma, always repair thither. And, O king of kings, Mahāsena (Kartikeya) also adoreth there the Grand-sire. And Nārāyana himself, and the celestial Rishis, and those Rishis called Vālikhillyas, and all beings born of females and all not born of females, and whatever else is seen in the three worlds—both mobile and immobile, were all seen by me there, know O king ! And eighty thousand Rishis with vital seed drawn up, and, O son of Pandu, fifty thousand Rishis having sons, were all seen by me there ! And all the dwellers of heaven repairing thither behold the Supreme Deity when they please, and worshipping him with bow of the head return whence they came. And, O king of men, the Grand-sire of all created beings, the Soul of the universe, the Self-create Brahmā of immesurable in-

telligence and glory, equally kind unto all creatures, honoreth as they deserve, and gratifieth with sweet speech and gift of wealth and other enjoyable articles, the gods, the Daityas, the Nāgas, the Brahmanas, the Yakshas, the Birds, the Kāleyas, the Gandharvas, the Apsarās, and all other exalted beings that come to him as his guests. And that delicious *Sabha*, O child, is always crowded with persons coming and going. Filled with every kind of energy, and worshipped by *Brahmarshis*, that celestial *Sabha* blazes forth with the graceful possessions of Brahmā and looks extremely handsome. And, O tiger among kings, as this thine *Sabha* is unrivalled in the world of men, so is that *Sabha* of Brahmā, seen by me, unrivalled in all the worlds. I have seen these *Sabhas*, O Bhārata, in the regions of the celestials. This thy *Sabha* is unquestionably the foremost in the world of men!' "

Thus endeth the eleventh Section in the Lokapāla-Sabhākhyana of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XII.

(Lokapala-Sabhakhyana Parva continued.)

" Yudhishthira spoke. 'O thou foremost of eloquent men; as thou hast described the different *Sabhas* unto me, it appeareth that almost all the monarchs of the earth are to be found in the *Sabha* of Yama. And, O master, almost all the Nāgas, and principal Daityas, and rivers, and oceans, are to be found in the *Sabha* of Varuna. And so the Yakshas, the Guhyakas, the Rākshasas, the Gandharvas and Apsarās, and the Deity having the bull for his vehicle, are to be found in the *Sabha* of the lord of treasures. Thou hast said that in the Sabhā of the Grand-sire are to be seen all the great Rishis, all the gods, all the branches of learning. As regards the *Sabha* of Shakra, however, thou hast named, O Muni, all the gods, the Gandharvas, and various Rishis. But, O great Muni, thou hast mentioned one only king, *viz*, the royal Rishi Harishchandra as living in the *Sabha* of the illustrious chief of the gods! What act was performed by that celebrated king, or what ascetic penances with steady vows, in con-

sequence of which he hath been equal to Indra himself? O Brahmana, how didst thou also meet with my father, the exalted Pandu, now a guest of the region of the Pitris? O exalted one of excellent vows, hath he told thee anything? O tell me all. I am exceedingly curious to hear all this from thee!'

"Nārada spoke. 'O king of kings, I shall tell thee all that thou askest me about Harishchandra. I shall presently tell thee of his high excellence. He was a powerful king, in fact, an emperor over all the kings of the earth. Indeed, all the kings of the earth obeyed his sway. O monarch, alone upon a victorious car adorned with gold, that king by the prowess of his weapons brought the whole earth with her seven islands under his sway. And, O monarch, having subjugated the whole earth with her mountains, forests, and woods, he made preparations for the great sacrifice called the Rājasuya. And all the kings of the earth brought at his command wealth unto that sacrifice. And all of them consented to become distributors of food and gifts unto the Brahmanas that were fed on the occasion. And in that sacrifice king Harishchandra gave away, unto all who asked, wealth that was five times more than what each solicited. And at the conclusion of the sacrifice the king gratified the Brahmanas that came from various countries with large presents of various kinds of wealth. And the Brahmanas gratified with various kinds of food and enjoyable articles given away unto them to the extent of their desires, and with the heaps of jewels distributed amongst them, began to say,—King Harishchandra is superior to all kings in energy and renown.—And know, O monarch, O bull of the Bharata race, it was for this reason that Harishchandra shone more brightly than thousands of other kings! The powerful Harishchandra, having concluded his great sacrifice, became installed, O king, in the sovereignty of the earth and looked resplendent on his throne. And, O bull of the Bharata race, all those monarchs that perform the great sacrifice of Rajasuya, (attaining to the region of Indra) pass their time in felicity in Indra's company. And, O bull of the Bharata race, those kings also that yield up

their lives without turning their backs on the field of battle attain to the mansion of Indra and live in joy with him. Those again that yield up their bodies after severe ascetic penances also attain to the same region and shine brightly there for ages. O king of the Kuru race, O son of Kunti, thy father Pandu, beholding the good fortune of Harishchandra and wondering much thereat, hath told thee something. Knowing that I was coming to the world of men, he bowed unto me and said,—Thou shouldst tell Yudhishthira, O Rishi, that he can subjugate the whole earth inasmuch as his brothers are all obedient to him. And having done this, let him commence the grand sacrifice called Rājasuya. He is my son. If he performeth that sacrifice, I may, like Harishchandra, soon attain to the mansion of Indra, and there in his *Sabha* pass countless years in continuous joy !—I told him in reply,—O king, I shall tell thy son all this, if I go to the world of men.—I have now told thee what he hath said. O tiger among men, accomplish then, O son of Pandu, the intentions of thy father! If thou performest that sacrifice, thou shalt then be able to go, along with thy deceased ancestors, into the same region that is inhabited by the chief of the immortals. It hath been said, O king, that this great sacrifice is attended with many obstacles. A class of Rākshasas called *Brahma Rakshasas*, employed in obstructing all sacrifices, always search for holes when this great sacrifice is commenced. On the commencement of such a sacrifice a war may take place destroying the Kshatriyas and even furnishing occasion for the destruction of the whole earth. A slight obstacle may involve the whole earth in ruin. Reflecting upon all this, O king of kings, do what is for thy good. Be thou ever watchful and ready in protecting the four orders of thy subjects. Grow thou in prosperity, and enjoy thou felicity. And gratify thou the Brahmanas with gifts of wealth! I have now answered in detail all that thou hadst asked me. With thy leave I will now go to the city (Dwārāvati) of the Dāsārhas.' "

Vaiampayana spoke. " O Janamejaya, having said this unto the sons of Prithā, Nārada went away, accompanied by

those Rishis with whom he had come. And after Nārada had gone away, king Yudhishthira, O thou of the Kuru race, began to think, along with his brothers, of that foremost of sacrifices called Rajasuya."

Thus ends the twelfth Section in the Lokapāla Sabhākhayana of the Sabhā Parva.

Section XIII.

(Rajasuyarambha Parva.)

Vaisampayana spoke. "Yudhishthirā, having heard these words of Nārada, began to sigh heavily. And, O Bhārata, busied with his thoughts about the Rajasuya, the king had no peace of mind. Having heard of the glory of the illustrious monarchs (of old) and ascertained also the acquisition of regions of felicity by performers of sacrifices in consequence of their sacred deeds, and thinking especially of that royal sage Harishchandra who had performed the great sacrifice, king Yudhishthira desired to make preparations for the Rajasuya sacrifice. Then worshipping his counsellors and others present in his *Sabha*, and worshipped by them in return he began to consult with them about that sacrifice. Having reflected much, that king of kings, that bull amongst the Kurus, inclined his mind towards making preparations for the Rajasuya. That prince of wonderful energy and prowess, however, reflecting upon virtue and righteousness, again set his heart to find out what would be for the good of all his people. For Yudhishthira, that foremost of all virtuous men, always kind unto his subjects, worked for the good of all without making any distinctions. Indeed, casting off both anger and arrogance, Yudhishthira always said, *Give unto each what each is to have.* And the only sounds that could be heard were, *Blessed be Dharma, Blessed be Dharma* (Yudhishthira)! Conducting himself thus and giving paternal assurances to everybody, there was none in the kingdom who entertained any hostile feelings towards him. He, therefore, came to be called *Ajatashatru* (having no one for his enemy). The king cherished every one as belonging to his family,

and Bhima ruled over all justly. And Arjuna using both his hands with equal skill protected the people from (external) enemies. And the wise Sahadeva administered justice impartially. And Nakula behaved towards all with humility that was natural to him. And owing to all this, the kingdom became free from disputes and fear of every kind. And all the people became attentive to their respective occupations. The rains became so abundant as to leave no room for desire; and the kingdom grew in prosperity. And in consequence of the virtues of the king, persons living upon usury, the articles required for sacrifices, cattle-rearing, tillage, and traders, all and everything grew in prosperity. Indeed, during the reign of Yudhishthira who was ever devoted to truth, there was no extortion, no stringent realisation of arrears of rent, no fear of disease, of fire, or of death by poisoning and incantations, in the kingdom. It was never heard at that time that thieves or cheats or royal favorites ever behaved wrongfully towards the king or towards one another amongst themselves. The conquered kings on the six occasions (of war, treaty, &c.) in order to do good unto the monarch and worship him ever used to wait upon him with traders of different classes come to pay him the taxes leviable on their respective occupations. And accordingly during the reign of Yudhishthira who was ever devoted to virtue, his dominions grew in prosperity. Indeed, the prosperity of the kingdom was increased (not by these alone but even) by persons wedded to voluptuousness and indulging in all luxuries to their fill. And the king of kings, Yudhishthira, whose sway extended over all, possessed every accomplishment and bore everything with patience. And, O king, whatever countries the celebrated and illustrious monarch conquered, the people everywhere, from Brahmanas to swains, were all more attached to him than to their own fathers and mothers."

Vaisampayana spoke. "King Yudhishthira then, that foremost of speakers, summoning together his counsellors and brothers, asked them repeatedly about the Rājasuya sacrifice. Those ministers in a body, thus asked by the wise Yudhishthira desirous of performing the sacrifice, then told him these

words of grave import :—'One already in possession of a kingdom desireth all the attributes of an emperor by means of that sacrifice which aideth a king in acquiring the attributes of Varuna. O prince of the Kuru race, thy friends think that worthy as thou art of the attributes of an emperor, the time is even come for thee to perform the Rājasuya sacrifice. The time for the performance of that sacrifice in which Rishis of austere vows establish six fires with *mantras* of the Sāma Veda, is come for thee in consequence of thy Kshatriya possessions. At the conclusion of the Rājasuya sacrifice when the performer is installed in the sovereignty of the empire, he is rewarded with the fruits of all sacrifices including the *Agni-hotra*. It is for this that he is called the conqueror of all. Thou art quite able, O strong-armed one, to perform this sacrifice! All of us are obedient to thee. Soon will you be able, O great king, to perform the Rājasuya. Therefore, O great king, let thy resolution be taken to perform this sacrifice without further discussion!' Thus spoke unto the king all his friends and counsellors separately and together. And, O king, Yudhishthira that slayer of all enemies, having heard these virtuous, bold, agreeable, and weighty words of theirs, accepted them mentally. And having heard those words of his friends and counsellors, and knowing his own strength also, the king, O Bhārata, repeatedly thought over the matter. After this the intelligent and virtuous Yudhishthira, wise in counsel, again consulted with his brothers, with the illustrious *Ritwijas* about him, with his ministers, and with Dhaumya and Dwaipayana and others.

"Yudhishthira spoke. 'How may this wish that I entertain, of performing the excellent sacrifice of Rājasuya that is worthy of an emperor, bear fruit, in consequence of my faith and speech alone?'"

Vaisampayana spoke. "O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, thus asked by the king, they replied at that time unto Yudhishthira the just in these words :—'Thou art, O king, conversant as thou art with the dictates of morality, worthy to perform the grand sacrifice of Rājasuya!' After the *Ritwijas* and the Rishis had told these words unto the king, his minis-

ters and brothers highly approved of the speech. The king, however, possessed of great wisdom and with mind under complete control, actuated by the desire of doing good unto the world, again revolved the matter in his mind, thinking of his own strength and means, the circumstances of time and place, and his income and expenditure. For he knew that the wise never come to grief owing to their always acting after full deliberation. Thinking that the sacrifice should not be commenced pursuant to his own resolution only, Yudhishthira, carefully bearing upon his shoulders the weight of affairs, thought of Krishna that persecutor of all sinners as the properest person to decide the matter, inasmuch as he knew him to be the foremost of all persons, possessed of immeasurable energy, strong-armed, without birth, and born amongst men from pleasure alone. Reflecting upon his godlike feats the son of Pandu concluded that there was nothing that was unknown to him, nothing that he could not achieve, and nothing that he could not bear. And Yudhishthira the son of Prithā, having come to this settled resolution, soon sent a messenger unto that master of all beings, conveying through him blessings and speeches such as one senior in age might send to one that is younger. And that messenger riding on a swift car soon arrived amongst the Yādavas and approached the presence of Krishna who was then residing in Dwārāvati. And Achyuta hearing that the son of Prithā had become desirous of seeing him, desired to see his cousin. And quickly passing over many regions, being drawn by his own swift horses, Krishna arrived at Indraprastha accompanied by Indrasena. And arrived at Indraprastha, Janārddana approached Yudhishthira without loss of time. And Yudhishthira received Krishna with parental affection, and Bhima also received him as affectionately. And Janārddana then went with a cheerful heart to his father's sister (Kunti). And worshipped then with reverence by the twins, he began to converse cheerfully with his friend Arjuna who was joyed upon seeing him. And after he had rested awhile in a pleasant apartment and was fully refreshed, Yudhishthira approached him at his liesure and informed him of his own business.

"Yudhishthira spoke, 'I have wished to perform the Rājasuya sacrifice. That sacrifice, however, cannot be performed by one's wishing alone to perform it. Thou knowest, O Krishna, everything about the means by which it may be accomplished! He alone can achieve this sacrifice in whom everything is possible, who is worshipped everywhere, and who is the king of all kings. My friends and counsellors approaching me have said that I should perform that sacrifice. But, O Krishna, in respect of that matter, thy words shall be my guide. Of counsellors, some from friendship do not notice the difficulties. Others from motives of self-interest say only what is agreeable. Some again regard that which is beneficial to themselves as worthy of adoption. Men are seen to counsel thus in matters awaiting decision. But thou, O Krishna, art above such motives! Thou hast conquered both desire and anger! It behoveth thee to tell me that which is most beneficial for the world!'"

Thus endeth the thirteenth Section in the Rājasuyārambha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XIV.

(Rajasuyarambha Parva continued.)

"Krishna spoke. 'O great king, thou art worthy, for all thy qualities, of the Rājasuya! Thou knowest everything, O Bhārata! I shall, however, still tell thee something. Those persons in the world that now go by the name of Kshatriyas are inferior (in everything) to those Kshatriyas that Rama the son of Jamadagnya exterminated. O lord of earth, O bull of the Bharata race, thou knowest what rule these Kshatriyas, taught by the instructions traditionally handed down from generation to generation, have established amongst their own order, (in respect of the competence of the person who desires to perform the Rājasuya)! The numerous royal lines and other ordinary Kshatriyas all represent themselves to be the descendants of Aila and Ikshāku. The descendants of Aila, O king, as, indeed, the kings of Ikshāku's race, are, know O bull of the Bharata race, each distributed into an

hundred separate dynasties. The descendants of Yayāti and the Bhojas are great, both in extent (number) and accomplishments. O king, these last are today scattered all over the earth. And all the Kshatriyas worship the prosperity of those monarchs. At present, however, O monarch, king Jarāsandha, overcoming that prosperity reverenced by their whole order, and overpowering them by his energy, hath set himself over the heads of all the kings. And Jarāsandha, enjoying the sovereignty of the middle portion of the earth (Mathurā), resolved to create a disunion amongst ourselves. O monarch, that king who is the lord paramount of all kings, and in whom alone the dominion of the universe is centered, properly deserves to be called emperor. And, O monarch, king Shishupāla endued with great energy, having placed himself under his protection, hath become the generalissimo of his forces. And, O great king, the mighty Vakra, the king of the Karushas, capable of fighting by putting forth his powers of illusion, waiteth, O great king, upon Jarāsandha, as his disciple. There are two others, Hansa and Dimvaka, of great energy and great soul, that have sought the shelter of the mighty Jarāsandha. There are others also, *viz*, Dantavakra, Karusha, Karava, Meghavāhana, that wait upon Jarāsandha. He also that beareth on his head that gem which is known as the most wonderful on earth, that king of the Yavanas who hath chastised Muru and Naraka, whose power is unlimited, and who ruleth the west like another Varuna, who is called Bhagadatta, and who is the old friend of thy father, hath lowered his head unto Jarāsandha, by speech and specially by act. In his heart, however, tied as he is by affection to thee, he regardeth thee as a father regardeth his child. O king, that lord of earth who hath his dominions on the west and the south, and who is thy maternal uncle, and who is called Purujit, that brave perpetuator of the Kunti race, that slayer of all foes, is the single king that regardeth thee from affection. He whom I did not formerly slay, that wicked wretch amongst the Chedis who representeth himself in this world as a divine personage, and who hath become known also as such, and who always beareth, from foolishness, the

signs that distinguish me, that king of Vanga, Pundra, and the Kirātas, endued with great strength; and who is known on earth by the name of Paundraka and Vāsudeva, hath also embraced the side of Jarāsandha. And, O king of kings, Bhismaka the mighty king of the Bhojas—the friend of Indra—the slayer of hostile heroes—who governs a fourth part of the world, who by his learning conquered the Pāndyas and the Kratha-Kaushikas, whose brother the brave Akriti was like Rama the son of Jamadagni, hath become a servitor of the king of Magadha. We are his relatives and are, therefore, engaged everyday in doing what is agreeable unto him. But although we regard him much, still he regardeth us not and is engaged in doing us ill. And, O king, without knowing his own strength and the dignity of the race to which he belongs, he hath placed himself under Jarāsandha's shelter at sight of the latter's blazing fame alone. And, O exalted one, the eighteen tribes of the Bhojas, from fear of Jarāsandha, have all fled towards the west. And so also have the Shurasenas, the Bhadrakāras, the Vodhas, the Shālyas, the Patachcharas, the Susthulas, the Mukuttas, and the Kulindas, along with the Kuntis. And the kings of the Shālwāyana tribe with their brethren and followers; and the southern Panchālas and the eastern Koshalas have all fled to the country of the Kuntis. So also the Matsyas and the Sannyastapālas, overcome with fear, leaving their dominions in the north have fled into the southern country. And so all the Pānchalas, alarmed at the power of Jarāsandha, have left their own kingdom and fled in all directions. Sometime before, the foolish Kansa, having persecuted the Yādavas, married two of the daughters of Jarāsandha. They are called Asti and Prāpti and are the sisters of Sahadeva. Strengthened by such an alliance, the fool persecuting his relatives gained an ascendancy over them all. But by this conduct he earned great obloquy. The wretch also began to oppress the old kings of the Bhoja tribe, but these, to protect themselves from the persecution of their relative, sought our help. Having bestowed upon Akrura the handsome daughter of Ahuka, with Sankarshana as my second I did a service to

my relatives, for both Kansa and Sunāman were slain by me assisted by Rāma. But after the immediate cause of fear was removed (by the death of Kansa), Jarāsandha, his father-in-law, took up arms. Ourselves consisting of the eighteen younger branches of the Yādavas arrived at the conclusion that even if we struck our enemies continually with excellent weapons capable of taking the lives of the foe we would still be unable to do anything unto him even in three hundred years. He hath two friends that are like unto the immortals, and in point of strength the foremost of all men endued with might. They are called Hansa and Dimvaka who are both incapable of being slain by weapons. The mighty Jarāsandha when united with them becomes incapable, I think, of being vanquished by even the three worlds. O thou foremost of all intelligent men, this is not our opinion alone, but all other kings also are of the same mind. There lived, O monarch, a king of the name of Hansa. He was slain by Rama (Valadeva) after a battle of eighteen days. But, O Bhārata, hearing people say that Hansa had been killed, Dimvaka, O king, thought that he could not live without Hansa. He accordingly jumped into the waters of the Yamunā and killed himself. Afterwards when Hansa the subjugator of hostile heroes heard that Dimvaka had killed himself, he went to the Yamunā and jumped into its waters. Then, O bull of the Bharata race, king Jarāsandha, hearing that both Hansa and Dimvaka had been killed, returned to his kingdom with an empty heart. After Jarāsandha returned, O slayer of all foes, we were filled with pleasure and continued to live at Mathurā. But when the widow of Hansa and the daughter of Jarāsandha, that handsome woman with eyes like lotus leaves, grieved at the death of her lord, went unto her father, and repeatedly urged, O monarch, the king of Magadha, saying,—O slayer of all foes, kill thou the slayer of my husband!—Then, O great king, remembering the conclusion to which we had come of old, we became exceedingly cheerless and fled from Mathurā. Dividing our large wealth into small portions so as to make each portion easily portable, we fled from fear of Jarāsandha, with our cousins and relatives,

Reflecting upon everything we fled towards the west. There is a delightful town towards the west called Kushasthali adorned by the mountains of Raivatā. In that city, O monarch, we took up our abode. We rebuilt its fort and made it so strong that it became unimpregnable to even the gods. And from within it even the women might fight the foe, why speak of the Yādava heroes? O slayer of all foes, without fear of any kind, we are now living in that city. And, O tiger of the Kuru race, considering the inaccessibility of that first of mountains and regarding themselves as having already crossed the fear of Jarāsandha, the descendants of Madhu have become exceedingly glad. Thus, O king, though possessed of strength and energy, yet from the oppressions of Jarāsandha we have been obliged to repair to the mountains of Gomanta, those mountains are three *yojanas* in length. Within each *yojana* have been established one and twenty posts of armed men. And at intervals of each *yojanas* are hundred gates whose arches consist of the valor of the heroes engaged in guarding them. And innumerable Kshatriyas invincible in war, belonging to the eighteen younger branches of the Yādavas, are employed in defending these works. In our race, O king, there are full eighteen thousand brothers and cousins. Ahuka hath an hundred sons, each of whom is almost like a god (in prowess), Chārudeshna with his brother Chakradeva, Sātyaki, myself, Valadeva the son of Rohiny, and my son Shāmva who is equal unto me in battle; these seven, O king, are *Atirathas*. Besides these there are others, O king, whom I shall presently name. They are Kritavarman, Anādhrishti, Shamika, Samitinjaya, Kanka, Shanku, and Kunti. These seven are *Maharathas*. There are two sons also of Andhakabhoja, and the old king himself. Endued with great energy, these are all heroes each mighty as the thunderbolt. These *Maharathas*, choosing the middle country, are now living amongst the Vrishnis. O thou best of the Bharta line, thou alone art worthy of being an emperor. It behoveth thee, O Bhārata, to establish thy empire over all the Kshatriyas! But this is my judgment, O king, that thou wilt not be able to celebrate the Rājasuya as long as the mighty Jarāsandha liveth! By

him have been immured in his hill-fort numerous monarchs like a lion that hath deposited the slain bodies of mighty elephants within a cave of the king of mountains. O slayer of all enemies, king Jarāsandha, desirous of performing a sacrifice through the instrumentality of the other monarchs, adored with fierce ascetic penances the illustrious god of gods, the lord of Umā. It is by this means that the kings of the earth have been vanquished by Jarāsandha. And, O best of monarchs, he hath by that means been able to fulfil the vow he had made relative to his sacrifice. By defeating and defeating the kings with their troops and bringing all of them as captives into his city, he has swelled its crowds enormously. We also, O king, from fear of Jarāsandha at one time, had to leave Mathurā and fly to the city of Dwārāvati. If, O great king, thou desirest to perform this sacrifice, strive to release the kings confined by Jarāsandha as also to compass his death. O son of the Kuru race, otherwise this undertaking of thine can never be completed. O thou foremost of intelligent men, if the Rājasuya is to be performed by thee, you must do so and not otherwise. This, O king, is my view (of the matter)! Do, O sinless one, as thou thinkest! Under these circumstances, O king, having reflected upon everything taking note of causes, tell us what thou thyself thinkest proper!"

Thus ends the fourteenth Section in the Rajasuyārambha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XV.

(Rajasuyarambha Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira spoke. 'Intelligent as thou art, thou hast said what none else is capable of saying. There is none else on earth who is a settler of all doubts. Behold, there are kings in every province employed in benefiting their respective selves. But none amongst them hath been able to achieve the imperial dignity. Indeed, the title emperor is is difficult of acquisition. He that knoweth the valor and strength of others never applaudeth himself. He, indeed, is

really worthy of applause (worship) who engaged in encounters with his enemies beareth himself commendably. O thou supporter of the dignity of the Vrishni race, man's desires and propensities, like the wide earth itself adorned with many jewels, are varied and extensive. As experience can seldom be gained but by travelling in regions remote from one's home, so salvation can never be attained except by acting according to principles that are at a great height compared with the ordinary level of our desires and propensities. I regard peace of mind as the highest object here, for from that quality may proceed my prosperity. In my judgment, if I undertake to celebrate this sacrifice I will never win the highest reward. O Janārddana, endued with energy and intelligence, these that have been born in our race think that some one amongst them will at some time become the foremost amongst all Kshatriyas. But, O exalted one, we also were all frightened by the fear of Jarāsandha and, O sinless one, by the wickedness of that monarch! O thou invincible in battle, the might of thy arm is my refuge. When, therefore, thou tookest fright at Jarāsandha's might, how should I regard myself strong in comparison with him? Mādhava, O thou of the Vrishni race, I am repeatedly depressed at the thought whether Jarāsandha is capable or not of being slain by thee, by Rama, by Bhima-sena, or by Arjuna! But what shall I say, O Keshava! Thou art my highest authority in everything!'

"Hearing these words, Bhima well-skilled in speech spoke. 'That king who is without exertion, or who being weak and without resources entereth into hostility with one that is strong, perisheth like an ant-hill. It may be generally seen, however, that even a king that is weak, by wakefulness and by the application of policy, may vanquish an enemy that is strong and obtain the fruition of all his wishes. In Krishna is policy, in myself strength, in Arjuna victory. So like the three (sacrificial) fires that accomplish a sacrifice, we shall accomplish the death of the king of Magadha.'

"Krishna then spoke. 'One that is of immature understanding seeketh the fruition of his desires without an eye to

what may happen to him in the future. It is seen that no one forgiveth for that reason a foe that is of immature understanding and inclined to serve his own interests. It hath been heard by us that in the *krita* age, having brought every one under their subjection, Yauvanāswin by the remission of all taxes, Bhagiratha by his kind treatment of his subjects, Kārtavirya by the energy of his asceticism, the lord Bharata by his strength and valor, and Marutta by his prosperity,—these five became emperors. But, O Yudhishthira, thou who covetest the imperial dignity deservest it (not by one but) by all these qualities, *viz*, victory, protection afforded to thy people, virtue, prosperity, and policy. Know, O bull of the Kuru race, that Jarāsandha the son of Vrihadratha is even such (*i e.* a candidate for the imperial dignity). An hundred families of kings have become unable to oppose Jarāsandha. He, therefore, may be regarded to be an emperor for his strength. Kings that are wearers of jewels worship Jarāsandha (with presents of jewels). But wicked from his childhood, he is scarcely satisfied with such worship. Having become the foremost among all, he attacketh yet with violence kings with crowns on their heads. Nor is there seen any king from whom he taketh not tribute. Thus hath he brought under his sway nearly an hundred kings. How can, O son of Prithā, any weak monarch approach him with hostile intentions? Kept in the temple of Shiva, devoted unto that god and offered as sacrifice unto him like so many animals, do not these monarchs feel the most poignant misery, O bull of the Bharata race? A Kshatriya that dieth in battle is ever regarded with respect. Why shall we not, therefore, meet together and oppose Jarāsandha in battle? He hath already brought eightysix kings; fourteen only are wanting to complete one hundred. As soon as he obtaineth those fourteen, he will begin his cruel act. He that shall be able to obstruct that act will surely win blazing renown. And he that will vanquish Jarāsandha will surely become the emperor of all the Kshatriyas.'"

Thus ends the fifteenth Section in the Rājasuyārambha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XVI.

(Rajasuyarambha Parva continued.)

" Yudhishthira spoke. 'Desirous of the imperial dignity, but acting from selfish motives and relying upon courage alone, how, O Krishna, can I despatch ye (unto Jarāsandha)? Both Bhima and Arjuna I regard as my eyes, and thee, O Janārddana, as my mind! How shall I live, deprived of my eyes and mind? Yama himself cannot vanquish in battle the mighty host of Jarāsandha that is endued, besides, with terrible valor. What valor can ye exhibit against it? This affair that promises to terminate otherwise, may lead to great mischief. It is my opinion, therefore, that the proposed task should not be undertaken. Listen, O Krishna, to what I for one think! O Janārddana, desisting from this act seemeth to me to be beneficial! My heart today is afflicted. The Rājasuya appeareth to me difficult of accomplishment.' "

Vaisampayana spoke. "Arjuna who had obtained that excellent of bows and that couple of inexhaustible quivers, and that car with that banner, as also that assembly room, now addressed Yudhishthira and said, 'I have obtained, O king, a bow and weapons and arrows and energy and allies and dominion and fame and strength. These are always difficult of acquisition however much they may be desired. Learned men of reputation always praise in good society nobleness of descent. But nothing is equal to might. Indeed, O monarch, there is nothing I like more than prowess. Born in a race noted for its valor, one that is without valor is scarcely worthy of regard. One, however, possessed of valor, that is born in a race not noted for it, is much superior to the former. He, O king, is a Kshatriya in everything who increaseth his fame and possessions by the subjugation of his enemies. And he that is possessed of valor, though destitute of all (other) merits, will vanquish his foes. One, however, that is destitute of valor, though possessed of every (other) merit, can scarcely accomplish anything. Every merit exists by the side of valor in an incipient state. Concentration of attention, exer-

tion, and destiny, exist as the three causes of victory. One, however, that is possessed of valor doth not yet deserve success if he acts with carelessness. It is for this that an enemy endued with strength sometimes suffers death at the hands of his foes, As meanness overtakes the weak so folly sometimes overtakes the strong. A king, therefore, that is desirous of victory, should forsake both these causes of destruction. If for the purpose of our sacrifice we endeavour to slay Jarāsandha and rescue the kings kept by him for a cruel purpose, there is no higher act in which we could employ ourselves. If, however, we undertake not the task, the world will always regard us as incompetent. We have certainly the competence, O king! Why should you, therefore, regard us as incompetent? Those that have become Munis desirous of achieving tranquillity of souls, obtain red clothes with ease. So if we vanquish the foe, the imperial dignity will easily be ours. We shall, therefore, fight the foe.' "

Thus ends the sixteenth Section in the Rājasuyārambha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XVII.

(Rajasuyarambha Parva continued.)

" Vasudeva spoke. 'Arjuna hath indicated what the inclination should be of one that is born in the Bharata race, especially of one who is the son of Kunti. We know not when death will overtake us, in the night or the day. Nor have we ever heard that immortality hath been achieved by desisting from fight. This, therefore, is the duty of men, *viz*, to attack all enemies with the help of the policy indicated in the ordinance. This always gives satisfaction to the heart. Aided by good policy, if not frustrated by destiny, an undertaking becomes crowned with success. If both parties aided by such means encounter each other, one must obtain ascendancy over the other, for both cannot win or lose. Aided, however, by bad policy which again is destitute of the well-known arts, a battle ends in defeat or destruction. If, again, both parties are equally circumstanced, the result becomes

doubtful. Both, however, cannot win. When such is the case, why should we not, aided by good policy, approach the presence of the foe, and destroy him, like the current of the river uprooting a tree? If covering our own faults we attack the enemy taking advantage of his holes, why should we not succeed? This, indeed, is the policy of all intelligent men that no one should fight with foes that are exceedingly powerful and at the head of their well-arrayed forces. This too is my opinion. If, however, we accomplish our purpose by secretly entering the abode of our foe and attacking his person, we shall never earn obloquy. That bull among men—Jarāsandha—alone enjoyeth unfading glory, like him that is the inner soul of every created being. But I see his destruction before me! Desirous of protecting our relatives we will either slay him in battle or shall ascend to heaven being ourselves slain in the end by him."

"Yudhishthira spoke. 'O Krishna, who is this Jarāsandha? What is his energy and what his prowess, that he hath not been burnt having touched thee, like an insect at the touch of fire?'

"Krishna spoke. 'Hear, O monarch, who Jarāsandha is, what his energy, and what his prowess, and why also he hath been spared by us even though he hath repeatedly offended us! There was a mighty king of the name of Vrihadratha, the lord of the Magadhas. Proud in battle, he had three *Akshauhinis* of troops. Handsome, and endued with energy, and possessed of affluence and prowess beyond compare, and always bearing on his person marks indicating installation in sacrifices, he was like a second Indra. In glory he was like unto Surya, in forgiveness like unto the earth, in wrath like unto the destroyer Yama, and in wealth like unto Vaisravana. And, O thou foremost of the Bharata race, the whole earth was covered by his qualities that descended to him from a long line of ancestors, as with the rays of the sun. And, O bull of the Bharata race, endued with great energy that monarch married the two twin-daughters of the king of Kāshi both endued with wealth of beauty. And that bull among men made an engagement in secret with his wives that he would

love them equally and would never show a preference for either. And the lord of earth in the company of his two dearly-loved wives both of whom suited him well, passed his days in joy like a mighty elephant in the company of two she-elephants, or like the ocean in his personified form between Gangā and Yamunā (also in their personified forms). The monarch's youth, however, passed away in the enjoyment of his possessions, without any son being born unto him to perpetuate his line. The best of monarchs failed to obtain a son to perpetuate his race, even by means of various auspicious rites, and *homas*, and sacrifices performed with the desire of offspring. One day the king heard that the high-souled Chanda-kaushika, the son of Kākshivat of the illustrious Gautama race, having desisted from ascetic penances had come in course of his wanderings and sat under the shade of a tree. The king went unto that Muni, accompanied by his two wives, and worshipping him with jewels and valuable presents gratified him highly. That best of Rishis, truthful in speech and firmly attached to truth, then told the king,—O king of kings, I have been gratified with thee! O thou of excellent vows, solicit thou a boon!—King Vrihadratha then, with his wives, bending low unto that Rishi, spoke these words choked with tears in consequence of his despair of obtaining a child!—O holy one, forsaking my kingdom I am about to go into the woods for practising ascetic penances! I am very unfortunate, for I have no son! What shall I do, therefore, with my kingdom or with a boon?—'

"Krishna continued, 'Hearing these words (of the king), the Muni controlling his outer senses entered into *yoja* meditation sitting in the shade of that very mango tree where he was. And there fell upon the lap of the seated Muni a mango that was juicy and untouched by beak of parrot or other bird. That best of Munis, taking up the fruit and mentally pronouncing certain *mantras* over it, gave it unto the king as the means of his obtaining an incomparable offspring. And the great Muni possessed also of extraordinary wisdom, addressing the monarch, said—Return, O king! Thy wish is fulfilled! Desist, O king, from going (into the woods)!

—Hearing these words of the Muni and worshipping his feet, the monarch possessed of great wisdom returned to his own abode. And recollecting his former promise (unto them) the king gave, O bull of the Bharata race, unto his two wives that one fruit. His beautiful queens, dividing that single fruit into two parts, ate it up. In consequence of the certainty of the realisation of the Muni's words and his truthfulness, both of them conceived as an effect of their having eaten that fruit. And the king beholding them in that state became filled with great joy. Then, O wise monarch, sometime after, when the season came, each of the queens brought forth a fragmentary body. And each fragment had one eye, one arm, one leg, half a stomach, half of a face, and half of an anus. Beholding the fragmentary bodies, both the mothers trembled much. The helpless sisters then anxiously consulted with each other, and sorrowfully abandoned those fragments endued with life. The two midwives then (that waited upon the queens) carefully wrapping up the still-born fragments went out of the inner-apartments (of the palace) by the back door and throwing away the bodies returned in haste. A little while after, O tiger among men, a Rākshasa woman of the name of Jarā living upon flesh and blood, took up the fragments that lay on a crossing. And impelled by force of fate, the female cannibal united the fragments for facility of carrying (them away). And, O bull among men, as soon as the fragments were united, they formed a sturdy child of one body (endued with life). Then, O king, the female cannibal, with wonder-expanded eyes, found herself unable to carry away that child of body hard and strong as the thunder-bolt. That infant then, closing his fists red as copper and inserting it into its mouth, began to roar terribly as rain-charged clouds. Alarmed at that sound, the inmates of the palace, O tiger, among men, suddenly came out with the king, O slayer of all foes! The helpless and disappointed and sad queens also, with breasts full of milk, also came out suddenly to recover their child. The female cannibal, beholding the queens in that condition and the king too so desirous of offspring, and the child also that was so strong, thought within herself,—I live

within the dominions of the king who is so desirous of offspring. It behoveth not me, therefore, to kill the infant child of such an illustrious and virtuous monarch !—The Rākshasa woman then, holding the child in her arms like the clouds enveloping the sun, and assuming a human form, told the king these words:—O Vrihadratha, this is thy child ! Given to thee by me, O take it ! It hath been born of both thy wives by virtue of the command of the great Brahmana. Cast away by the midwives, it hath been protected by me !—'

"Krishna continued, 'O thou foremost of the Bharata race, the handsome daughters of the king of Kāshi, having obtained the child, soon drenched it with their lacteal streams. The king, ascertaining everything, was filled with joy, and addressing that female cannibal disguised as a human being possessing the complexion of gold, asked,—O thou of the complexion of the filaments of the lotus, who art thou that givest me this child ? O auspicious one, thou seemest to me as a goddess roaming at thy pleasure !'"

Thus ends the seventeenth Section in the Rājasuyārambha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XVIII.

(*Rajasuyarambha Parva continued.*)

"Krishna continued, 'Hearing these words of the king, the Rākshasa woman answered,—Blessed be thou, O king of kings ! Capable of assuming any form at will, I am a Rākshasa woman called Jarā. I am living, O king, happily in thy house, worshipped by all. Every day I wander from house to house of men. Indeed, I was created of old by the Self-create and named *Grihadevi* (the house-hold goddess). Of celestial beauty I was placed (in the world) for the destruction of the Dānavas. He that with devotion painteth on the walls (of his house) a likeness of myself endued with youth and in the midst of children, must have prosperity in his abode. Otherwise a household must sustain decay and destruction. O lord, painted on the walls of thy house is a likeness of myself surrounded by numerous children. Stationed there I

am daily worshipped with scents and flowers, with incense and edibles and various objects of enjoyment. Thus worshipped in thy house, I daily think of doing thee some good in return. It chanced, O virtuous king, that I beheld the fragmentary bodies of thy son. When these chanced to be united by me, a living child was formed of them. O great king, it hath been so owing to thy good fortune alone! I have been only the instrument! I am capable of swallowing the mountain of Meru itself, what shall I say of thy child? I have, however, been gratified with thee in consequence of the worship I obtain in thy house. It is, therefore, O king, that I have bestowed this child on thee!—'

"Krishna continued. 'Having spoken these words, O king, Jarā disappeared there and then. The king obtaining the child then entered his palace. And the king then caused all the rites of infancy to be performed on that child. And the king ordered a festival to be observed by his people in honor of that Rākshasa woman. And the monarch equal unto Brahmā himself then bestowed a name on his child. And he said that because the child hath been united by Jarā, therefore should he be called *Jarasandha* (united by *Jara*). And the son of the king of Magadha, endued with great energy, began to grow up in bulk and strength like a fire into which hath been poured libations of clarified butter. And increasing day by day like the moon in the lighted fortnight, the child began to enhance the joy of his parents.'"

Thus ends the eighteenth Section in the Rājasuyārambha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XIX.

(Rajasuyarambha Parva continued.)

"Krishna spoke. 'Sometime after this, the great ascetic, the exalted Chanda-kausika, again came into the country of the Māgadhas. Filled with joy at the advent of the Rishi, king Vrihadratha, accompanied by his ministers and priest and wives and son, went out to receive him. And, O Bhārata, worshipping the Rishi with water to wash his feet and face,

and with the offerings of the *Arghya*, the king then offered his whole kingdom along with his son for the acceptance of the Rishi. The adorable Rishi accepting that worship offered by the king, addressing the ruler of Magadha, O monarch, said with well-pleased heart,—O king, I knew all this by spiritual insight. But hear, O king of kings, what this son of thine will be, as also what his beauty, excellence, strength, and valor. Without doubt this son of thine, growing in prosperity and endued with prowess, will obtain all these. Like other birds that can never imitate the speed of Vinatā's son (Gadura), the other monarchs of the earth will not be able to equal in energy this thy son who will be endued with great valor. And all those that will stand in his way will certainly be destroyed. Like the force of the current that can never make the slightest impression upon the rocky breast of a mountain, weapons hurled at him even by the celestials will fail to produce the least pain in him. He will blaze forth above the heads of all that wear crowns on their brows. Like the sun that darkens the lustre of all luminous bodies, this son of thine will rob all monarchs of their splendour. Even kings that are powerful for their large armies and numberless vehicles and animals, upon approaching this son of thine, will all perish as insects upon fire. This child will seize the growing prosperity of all kings like the ocean receiving the rivers swollen with the waters of the rainy season. Like the huge earth that bears all kinds of produce, supporting things that are both good and evil, this child endued with great strength will support all the four orders of men. And all the kings of the earth will live in obedience to the commands of this child, like every creature endued with body living in dependence upon Vāyu that is dear as self unto beings. This prince of Magadha—the mightiest of all men in the world—will behold with his physical eyes the god of gods called Rudra or Hara, the slayer of Tripura.—O thou slayer of all foes, saying this, the Rishi, thinking of his own business, dismissed king Vrihadratha. The lord of the Magadhas then, re-entering his capital, and calling together his friends and relations, installed Jarāsandha on the throne. King Vrihadratha then conceived

a great distaste for worldly pleasures. And after the installation of Jarāsandha king Vrihadratha followed by his two wives became an inmate of an ascetic asylum in the woods. And, O king, after his father and mother had retired into the woods, Jarāsandha by his valor brought numerous kings under his sway.' "

" Vaisampāyana continued, 'King Vrihadratha, having lived for sometime in the woods and practised ascetic penances, ascended to heaven at last with his wives. King Jarāsandha also, as uttered by Kaushika, having received those numerous boons, ruled his kingdom like a father. Sometime after when king Kansa was slain by Vāsudeva, an enmity arose between him and Krishna. Then, O Bhārata, the mighty king of Magadha, from his city of *Girivraja*, whirling a mace ninety-nine times, hurled it towards Mathurā. At that time Krishna of wonderful deeds was residing in Mathurā. The handsome mace hurled by Jarāsandha fell near Mathurā at a distance of ninety nine *yojanas* (from *Girivraja*). The citizens beholding the circumstance well, went unto Krishna and informed him of the fall of the mace. The place where the mace fell is adjacent to Mathurā and is called *Gadavasān*. Jarāsandha had two supporters called Hansa and Dimvaka both of whom were incapable of being slain by weapons. Well-conversant with the science of politics and morality, in counsel they were the foremost of all intelligent men. I have before told thee everything about that mighty pair. They two and Jarāsandha, I believe, were more than a match for the three worlds. O brave king, it was for this that the powerful Kukkura, Andhaka, and Vrishni tribes, acting from motives of policy, chose not to fight with him.' "

Thus ends the nineteenth Section in the Rājasuyārambha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XX.

(Jarasandha-badha Parva.)

" Krishna spoke. 'Both Hansa and Dimvaka have fallen; Kansa also with all his followers hath been slain. The time

hath, therefore, come for the destruction of Jarāsandha. He is incapable of being vanquished in battle even by all the celestials and the Asuras (fighting together). We think, however, that he should be vanquished in a personal struggle with bare arms. In me is policy, in Bhima is strength, and there is Arjuna to project us both. Like three fires, therefore, accomplishing a sacrifice, we will certainly achieve the destruction of the ruler of Magadha. When we three approach him in secret, that monarch will, without doubt, be engaged in an encounter with one of us. From fear of disgrace, from covetousness, from pride of strength, he will certainly summon Bhima to the encounter. Like Death himself that slays a person however swelling with pride, the long-armed and mighty Bhima-sena will effect the destruction of the king. If thou knowest my heart, if thou hast any faith in me, then make over to me, as a pledge, Bhima and Arjuna without loss of time!'"

"Vaisampāyana continued. "Thus addressed by the exalted one, Yudhishthira, beholding both Bhima and Arjuna standing with cheerful faces, replied, saying, 'O Achyuta, O Achyuta, thou slayer of all enemies, say not so! Thou art the lord of the Pāndavas! We are dependent on thee! What thou sayest, O Govinda, is consistent with wise counsels! Thou never leadest those upon whom prosperity hath turned her back! I who stay under thy command regard that Jarāsandha is already slain, that the monarchs confined by him have already been set free, that the Rājasuya hath already been accomplished by me! O lord of the universe, O thou best of persons, watchfully act thou so that this task may be accomplished. Without ye then, I dare not live, like a sorrowful man afflicted with disease without the three attributes of morality, pleasure, and wealth. Pārtha cannot live without Shauri (Krishna), nor can Shauri live without Pārtha. Nor is there anything in the world that is unconquerable by these two—*viz*, Krishna and Arjuna. This handsome Bhima also is the foremost of all persons endued with might. Of great renown, what may he not achieve when with ye two? Troops when properly led always do excellent service. A force with-

out a leader hath been called inert by the wise. Forces, therefore, should always be led by experienced commanders. Into places that are low, the wise always conduct the water. Even fishermen cause the water (of tanks) to run out through holes. (Experienced leaders always lead their forces noting the holes and assailable points of the foe). We shall, therefore, strive to accomplish our purpose following the leadership of Govinda conversant with the science of politics, that personage whose fame hath spread over all the world. For the successful accomplishment of one's purposes one should ever place Krishna in the van, that foremost of personages whose strength consists in wisdom and policy and who possesseth a knowledge of both methods and means. For the accomplishment of one's purpose let, therefore, Arjuna the son of Prithā follow Krishna the foremost of the Yādavas, and let Bhima follow Arjuna. Policy and good fortune and might will (then) bring about success in a matter requiring valor.' "

Vaisampāyana spoke. " Thus addressed by Yudhishthira, the brothers Krishna and Arjuna and Bhima, all possessed of great energy, set out for Magadha attired in the garb of *Snataka* Brahmanas of resplendent bodies, and blessed by the agreeable speeches of friends and relatives. Possessed of superior energy and of bodies already like the Sun, the Moon, and Fire, inflamed with wrath on account of their relatives, those bodies of theirs became more blazing still. And the people, beholding Krishna and Arjuna, both of whom had never before been vanquished in battle, with Bhima in the van, all ready to achieve the same task, regarded Jarāsandha as already slain. For the illustrious pair (Krishna and Arjuna) were the masters that directed every operation (in the universe) as also all acts relating to the morality, wealth, and pleasure of every being. Having set out from the country of the Kurus, they passed through Kuru-jāngala and arrived at the charming lake of lotuses. Passing over the hills of Kālakuta they then went on crossing the Gandaki, the Sadānirā (Karatoyā), and the Sharkarāvarta and the other rivers taking their rise in the same mountains. They then crossed the delightful Sarayu and saw the country of eastern

Koshala. Passing over this country they went to Mithilā and then crossing the Mālā and Charmanwati, the three heroes crossed the Ganges and the Shone and went on towards the east. At last those heroes of unfading glory arrived at Magadha in the heart of (the country of) Kushāmva. Reaching then the hills of Goratha, they saw the city of Magadha that was always filled with kine and wealth and water and rendered handsome with the innumerable trees standing there."

Thus ends the twentieth Section in the Jarāsandha-badha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXI.

(Jarasandha-badha Parva continued.)

"Vāsudeva spoke. 'Behold, O Pārtha, the great capital of Magadha standing in all its beauty! Filled with flocks and herds and its stock of water never exhausted; and adorned also with fine mansions standing in excellent array, it is free from every kind of calamity. The five large hills of Vaihāra, Varāha, Vrishava, Rishigiri, and the delightful Chaitya, all of high peaks and overgrown with tall trees of cool shade, connected with one another, seem to jointly protect the city of Girivraja. The breasts of the hills are concealed by forests of delightful and fragrant *Lodhras* with ends of their branches covered with flowers. It was there that the illustrious Gautama of rigid vows begat upon the Sudra woman Ausinari (the daughter of Usinara) Kākshivat and other celebrated sons. That that race sprung from Gautama doth yet live under the sway of an ordinary human race (of monarchs) is only evidence of Gautama's kindness for kings. And, O Arjuna, it was here that in olden times the mighty monarchs of Anga and Vanga and other countries, coming to the abode of Gautama, passed their days in joy and happiness. Behold, O Pārtha, those forests of delightful *Pippalas* and beautiful *Lodhras* standing near the site of Gautama's abode! There dwelt of old those Nāgas Arvuda and Shakravāpin, those persecutors of all enemies, as also the Nagā Swastika and that other excellent Nāga called Mani, Manu himself had ordered the

country of the Magadhas to be never afflicted with drought, and Kaushika and Manimat also have favored the country. And owning such a delightful and impregnable city, Jarāsandha is ever bent on seeking the fruition of his purposes unlike other monarchs. We shall, however, by slaying him today humble his pride.'"

Vaisampāyana spoke. "Thus saying, those brothers of abundant energy, *viz*, he of the Vrishni race and the two Pāndavas, entered the city of Magadha. They then approached towards the impregnable city of Girivraja that was full of cheerful and well-fed inhabitants belonging to all the four orders, and where festivities were perennial. And arriving then at the gate of the city, the brothers (instead of passing through it) began to pierce (with their shafts) the heart of the high Chaityaka peak that was worshipped by the race of Vrihadratha as also by the citizens, and which delighted the hearts of all the Māgadhas. There Vrihadratha had slain a cannibal called Rishava, and having slain the monster, made of his hide three drums which he placed in his own city. And those drums were such that once beat their sound lasted a full month. And the brothers broke down the Chaityaka peak that was delightful to all the Magadhas, at that point where those drums covered with celestial flowers used to yield their continuous sound. And desirous of slaying Jarāsandha they seemed, by that act of theirs, to place their feet upon the head of their foe. And attacking with their mighty arms that immovable and huge and high and old and celebrated peak always worshipped with perfumes and floral wreaths, those heroes broke it down. And with joyful hearts they then entered the city. And it so happened that the learned Brahmanas residing within the city, saw many evil omens which they reported to Jarāsandha. And the priests making the king mount an elephant whirled lighted brands about him. And king Jarāsandha also, possessed of great prowess, with a view to ward off those evils, entered upon the celebration of a sacrifice, with proper vows and fasts. Meanwhile, O Bhārata, the brothers unarmed, or rather with their bare arms as their only weapons, desirous of

fighting with Jarāsandha, entered the capital in the guise of *Snataka* Brahmanas. And they beheld the exceeding beauty of the shops full of various edibles and floral wreaths, and swelling with every article of every quality, and every kind of wealth that man can desire. And those best of men, Krishna, Bhima, and Dhananjaya, beholding in those shops their affluence, passed along the public road. And endued with great strength they snatched forcibly from the flower-vendors the garlands they had exposed for sale. And attired in robes of various colors and decked in garlands and ear-rings, the heroes entered the abode of Jarāsandha possessed of great intelligence, like Himālayan lions eyeing cattle-folds. And the arms of those warriors, O king, smeared with sandal and aloe paste, looked like the trunks of *shala* trees. And the people of Magadha, beholding those heroes looking like elephants, with necks broad like those of *shala* trees and wide chests, began to wonder much. And those bulls among men, passing through three gates that were crowded with men, proudly and cheerfully approached the king. And Jarāsandha rising up in haste received with proper ceremonies his visitors—who were everyway worthy of being received with water to wash their feet, and honey and the other ingredients of the *Arghya*—with gift of kine, and with other forms of respect. And the great king addressing them said, 'Ye are welcome!' And, O Janamejaya, both Pārtha and Bhima remained silent at this. And amongst them Krishna alone, of great intelligence, began to speak. And addressing the monarch, Krishna said, 'O king of kings, these two are in the observance of a vow. Therefore they will not speak. Silent they will remain till midnight. After that hour they will speak with thee!' The king then quartering his guests in the sacrificial apartments retired into his private chambers. And when midnight came, the monarch arrived at the place where his guests attired as Brahmanas were. For, O king, that ever victorious monarch observed this vow which was known throughout the worlds that as soon as he should hear of the arrival at his palace of *Snataka* Brahmanas, should it be even at midnight, he would immediately, O Bhārata, come out

and grant them an audience! Beholding the strange attire of his guests, that best of kings wondered much. For all that, however, he waited on them respectfully. Those bulls among men, those slayers of all foes, on the other hand, O thou best of the Bharata race, beholding king Jarāsandha, said, 'Let salvation be attained by thee, O king, without difficulty!' And, O tiger among kings, having said this unto the monarch, they stood looking at each other. And, O king of kings, Jarāsandha then said unto those sons of Pāndu and him of the Yadu race, all disguised as Brahmanas, 'Take your seats.' And those bulls among men sat themselves down, and like the three fires of a great sacrifice blazed forth in their beauty. And king Jarāsandha, O thou of the Kuru race, firmly devoted to truth, censuring his disguised guests, said unto them, 'It is well-known to me that in the whole world Brahmanas in the observance of the Snātaka vow never deck their persons with garlands and fragrant paste unseasonably. Who are ye, therefore, thus decked in flowers, and with hands bearing the marks of the bowstring? Attired in colored robes and decked unseasonably with flowers and paste, ye give me to understand that ye are Brahmanas, although ye bear Kshatriya energy! Tell us truly who ye are! Truth decks even kings. Breaking down the peak of the Chaityaka hill, why have ye, in disguise, entered (the city) by an improper gate without fear of the royal wrath? The energy of a Brahmana dwelleth in his speech, (not in act). This your feat is not suited to the order to which ye profess to belong. Tell us, therefore, the end ye have in view! Arrived here by such an improper way, why accept ye not the worship I offer? What is your purpose in coming to me?' Thus addressed by the king, the high-souled Krishna, well-skilled in speech, thus replied unto the monarch in a calm and grave voice.

"Krishna spoke. 'O king, know us for *Snataka* Brahmanas. Brahmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaisyas are all, O monarch, competent to observe the vow of *Snatakas*. This vow, besides, hath (many) especial and general rules. A Kshatriya observing this vow with especial rules always obtaineth prosperity. Persons decked in flowers always achieve prosperity.

Therefore have we decked ourselves in flowers. Kshatriyas again, O king, exhibit their energy by their arms and not in speech. It is, therefore, O son of Vrihadratha, that the speeches uttered by a Kshatriya are never audacious. O monarch, the creator hath planted his own energy in the arms of the Kshatriya. If thou wish to behold it, thou shalt certainly behold it today! These are the rules of the ordinance, *viz*, that an enemy's abode should be entered through a wrong gate and a friend's abode through the right gate. And know, O monarch, that this also is our eternal vow that having entered the foe's abode for the accomplishment of our purpose, we accept not the worship offered to us!' "

Thus ends the twenty-first Section in the Jarāsandha-badha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXII.

(*Jarasandha-badha Parva continued.*)

" Jarāsandha spoke. 'I do not recollect when ever I acted injuriously towards ye! Upon even a careful internal survey I fail to see the injury I did unto ye! When I have never done ye an injury, why, ye Brahmanas, do ye regard me, who am innocent, as your foe? O answer me truly, for this, indeed, is the rule followed by the honest. The mind is pained in consequence of injury to one's pleasure and morality. That Kshatriya who injures an innocent man's (sources of) pleasure and morality, even if he be otherwise a great warrior and well-versed in all rules of morality, obtains, without doubt, the fate of sinners (hereafter) and falls off from prosperity. The practices of the Kshatriyas are the best for those that are honest in the three worlds. Indeed, those that are acquainted with morality applaud the Kshatriya practices. Adhering to those practices of my order with steady soul, I never injure those that are under me. In bringing this charge, therefore, against me, it appears that ye speak erroneously!'

" Krishna spoke. 'O thou of mighty arms, there is a certain person at the head of a (royal) line who upholdeth the

dignity of his race. At his command have we come against thee. Thou hast brought, O king, many of the Kshatriyas of the world as captives (to thy city). Having perpetrated that wicked wrong how dost thou regard thyself as innocent? O best of monarchs, how can a king act wrongfully towards other virtuous kings? But thou, O king, treating other kings with cruelty, seekest to offer them as sacrifice unto the god Rudra! O son of Vrihadratha, this sin committed by thee may touch even us, for virtuous as we are in our practices we are capable of protecting virtue. The slaughter of human beings as sacrifice unto the gods is never seen. Why dost thou, therefore, seek to perform a sacrifice unto the god Shankara by slaughtering human beings? Thou art for calling persons belonging to thy own order as animals (fit for sacrifice)! Fool as thou art, who else, O Jarāsandha, is capable of behaving in this way? One always obtaineth the fruits of whatever acts one performeth under whatever circumstances. Therefore, desirous as we are of helping all distressed people, we have, for the prosperity of our race, come hither to slay thee the slaughterer of our relatives! Thou thinkest that there is no man among the Kshatriyas (equal to thee)! This, O king, is a great error of judgment on thy part. What Kshatriya is there, O king, who, endued with greatness of soul and recollecting the dignity of his own parentage, would not ascend to eternal heaven that hath not its like anywhere, falling in open fight? Know O bull among men, that as persons installed in sacrifices, Kshatriyas engage in battle, with heaven in view, and vanquish the whole world! Study of high *Brahma* (Vedas), great fame, ascetic penances, and death in battle, are all acts that lead to heaven. The attainment of heaven by the three other acts may be uncertain. But death in battle hath that for its certain consequence! Death in battle is the certain cause of triumph like Indra's. It is graced by numerous merits. It is for this that he of an hundred sacrifices (Indra) hath become what he is, so that vanquishing the Asuras he ruleth the universe! Hostility with whom else than thee is so sure of leading to heaven, proud as thou art of the excessive strength of thy vast

Magadha host? Don't disregard others, O king! Valor dwelleth in every man. O king of men, there are many men whose valor may be equal or superior to thine! As long as these are not known so long only art thou noted for thy valor. Thy prowess, O king, can be borne by us. It is, therefore, that I say so. O king of Magadha, cast off thy superiority and pride in the presence of those that are thy equals! Go not, O king, with thy children and ministers and army, into the regions of Yama! Damvodbhava, Kārttavirya, Uttara, and Vrihadratha, were kings that met with destruction, along with all their forces, for having disregarded their superiors! Desirous of liberating the captive monarchs from thee, know that we are certainly not Brāhmanas! I am Hrishikesha otherwise called Shauri, and these two heroes among men are the sons of Pāndu. O king of Magadha, we challenge thee! Fight standing before us! Either set free all the monarchs, or go thou to the abode of Yama!'

"Jarāsandha spoke. 'I never make a captive of a king without first vanquishing him. Who hath been kept here that hath not been defeated in war? This, O Krishna, it hath been said, is the duty that should be followed by the Kshatriyas, *viz*, to bring others under sway by the exhibition of prowess and then to treat them as slaves. Having gathered these monarchs intending to offer them as sacrifices unto the god, how shall I, O Krishna, from fear liberate them today, and recollecting also the duty I have recited of a Kshatriya? With troops against troops arrayed in order of battle, or alone against one, or against two, or against three, at the same time or separately, I am ready to do battle!'"

Vaisampāyana spoke. "Having spoken thus, and desiring to fight with those heroes of terrible achievements, king Jarāsandha ordered (his son) Sahadeva to be installed on the throne. Then, O bull of the Bharata race, the king, on the eve of battle, thought of his two generals Kaushika and Chitrasena. These two, O king, were formerly called by everybody in the world of men by the respectful appellations of Hansa and Dimvaka. And, O monarch, that tiger among men, the lord Shauri ever devoted to truth, the slayer of

Madhu, the younger brother of Haladhara, the foremost of all persons having their senses under complete control, keeping in view the command of Brahmā and remembering that the ruler of Magadha was destined to be slain in battle by Bhima and not by the descendants of Madhu (Yādavas), desired not to himself slay that foremost of all men endued with strength, that hero possessed of the prowess of a tiger, that warrior of terrible valor, king Jarāsandha."

Thus ends the twenty-second Section in the Jarāsandha-badha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXIII.

(Jarasandha-badha Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "Then that foremost of all speakers, Krishna of the Yādava race, addressing king Jarāsandha resolved upon fight, said, 'O king, with whom amongst us three dost thou desire to fight? Who amongst us shall prepare himself for battle (with thee)? Thus addressed, the ruler of Magadha, king Jarāsandha of great splendour, expressed his desire of fighting with Bhima. The priest then, bringing with him the yellow pigment obtained from the cow, and garlands of flowers, and other auspicious articles, as also various excellent medicines for restoring lost consciousness and alleviating pain, approached Jarāsandha panting for battle. Then king Jarāsandhā, on whose behalf propitiatory ceremonies with benedictions were performed by a renowned Brāhmana, remembering the duty of a Kshatriya, dressed himself for battle. Taking off his crown and binding his hair properly, Jrrāsandha stood up like an ocean bursting its continents. And the monarch possessed of terrible prowess, addressing Bhima, said, 'O Bhima, I will fight with thee! It is better to be vanquished by a superior person.' And saying, this, Jarāsandha, that repressor of all foes endued with great energy, rushed at Bhimasena like the Asura Vala of old at the chief of the celestials. And the mighty Bhimasena also, having consulted with Krishna and on whose behalf the gods had been invoked by that cousin of his, advanced towards

Jarāsandha, impelled by the desire of fight. Then those tigers among men, those heroes of great prowess, with their bare arms as their only weapons, cheerfully engaged in the encounter, each desirous of vanquishing the other. And seizing each other's arms and twining each other's legs, (at times) they slapped their arm-pits, causing the enclosure to tremble at the sound. And frequently seizing each other's necks with their hands and dragging and pushing it with violence, and each pressing every limb of his body against every limb of the other, they continued, O exalted one, to slap their arm-pits (at times). And sometimes stretching their arms and sometimes drawing them close, and sometimes raising them up and sometimes dropping them down, they began to seize each other. And striking neck against neck and forehead against forehead, they caused fiery sparks to be emitted like flashes of lightning. And grasping each other in various ways by means of their arms, and kicking each other with such violence as to affect the innermost nerves, they struck at each other's breasts with clenched fists. With bare arms as their only weapons, roaring like clouds they grasped and struck each other like two mad elephants encountering each other with their trunks. And incensed at each other's blows they fought on, dragging and pushing each other and fiercely looking at each other like two lions filled with wrath. And each striking every limb of the other with his own, and using his arms also against the other, and catching hold of each other's waist, they hurled each other to a distance. And accomplished in wrestling, the two heroes, clasping each other with their arms and each dragging the other unto hi nself, began to press each other with great violence. And the heroes then, performed those grandest of all feats in wrestling called *Prishta-bhanga* which consists in throwing each other down with face to the earth and maintaining the thrown in that position as long as possible. And employing his arms each also performed the feats called *Sampurna-murchcha* and *Purna-kumbha*. And at times they twisted each other's arms and other limbs as if these were vegetable fibres that were to be twisted into chords. And with clenched fists they struck each other at times, pretending to

aim at particular limbs while the blows descended upon other parts of the body. It was thus that those heroes fought with each other. And the citizens consisting of thousands of Brahmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaisyas and Sudras, and even women and the aged, O tiger among men, came out and gathered there to behold the fight. And the crowd became so great that it was one solid mass of humanity with no space between body and body. And the sound the wrestlers made by the slapping of their arms, the seizing of each other's necks for bringing each other down, and grasping of each other's legs for dashing each other to the ground, became so loud that it resembled the roar of thunder or of falling cliffs. Both of them were foremost of mighty men, and both took great delight in such encounter. And desirous of vanquishing the other, each was on the alert for taking advantage of the slightest lapse of the other. And, O monarch, the mighty Bhima and Jarāsandha fought terribly on in those lists, driving the crowd at times by the motions of their hands, like Vritra and Vāsava of old. And the two heroes, pressing each other forwards and dragging each other backwards and with sudden jerks throwing each other face downwards and sideways, mangled each other dreadfully. And at times they struck each other with their knee-joints. And addressing each other loudly in stinging speeches, they struck each other with clenched fists, the blows descending like a mass of stone upon other. With broad shoulders and long arms and both well-skilled in wrestling encounters, they struck each other with those long arms of theirs that were like maces of iron. That encounter of the heroes commenced on the first (lunar) day of the month of Kartic and the illustrious heroes fought on without intermission and food, day and night, till the thirteenth lunar day. It was on the night of the fourteenth of the lunar fortnight that the monarch of Magadha desisted from fatigue. And, O king, Janārddana beholding the monarch tired, addressed Bhima of terrible deeds, and as if to stimulate him said, 'O son of Kunti, a foe that is fatigued cannot be pressed for if pressed at such a time he may even die! Therefore, O son of Kunti, this king should not be oppressed by thee. On

the other hand, O bull of the Bharata race, fight with him with thy arms, puting forth as much strength only as thy antagonist hath now left!' Then that slayer of hostile heroes, the son of Pāndu, thus addressed by Krishna, understood the plight of Jarāsanda and forthwith resolved upon taking his life. And that foremost of all men endued with strength, that prince of the Kuru race, desirous of vanquishing the hitherto unvanquished Jarāsandha, mustered all his strength and courage."

Thus ends the twenty-third Section in the Jarāsandha-badha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXIV.

(Jarasandha-badha Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said, "Thus addressed, Bhima, firmly resolved to slay Jarāsandha, replied unto Krishna of the Yadu race, saying, 'O tiger of the Yadu race, O Krishna, this wretch that yet stayeth before me with sufficient strength and dressed for fight, should not be forgiven by me!' Hearing these words of Vrikodara, that tiger among men, Krishna, desiring to stimulate that hero to accomplish the death of Jarāsandha without delay, answered, 'O Bhima, the strength thou hast derived from fate, the might also thou hast obtained from (thy father) the god Maruta, exhibit today upon Jarāsandha!' Thus addressed by Krishna, Bhima that slayer of foes, taking up the powerful Jarāsandha, began to whirl him on high. And, O bull of the Bharata race, having so whirled him on high a full hundred times, Bhima pressed his knee against Jarāsandha's backbone and broke his body in twain. And having killed him thus, the mighty Vrikodara uttered a terrible roar. And the roar of the Pāndava mingling with that of Jarāsandha while he was being broken on Bhima's knee, caused a loud uproar that struck fear into the heart of every creature. And all the citizens of Magadha became dumb with terror and many women were prematurely delivered. And hearing those roars, the people of Magadha thought that either the Himavat was trembling down or the earth itself

was being rent asunder. And those oppressors of all foes then, leaving the lifeless body of the king at the palace gate where he lay as one asleep, went out of the town. And Krishna causing Jarāshandha's car furnished with an excellent flag-staff to be made ready, and making the brothers (Bhima and Arjuna) ride on it, went out and released his (imprisoned) relatives. And those lords of earth, those monarchs rescued from a terrible fate, rich in the possession of jewels, meeting with Krishna made presents unto him of jewels and gems. And having vanquished his foe, Krishna, furnished with weapons and unwounded and accompanied by the kings (he had released), came out of Girivraja riding on that celestial car (of Jarāsandha). And he also who could wield the bow with both hands (Arjuna), who was incapable of being vanquished by any of the monarchs of the earth, who was exceedingly handsome in person and well-skilled in the slaughter of the foe, accompanied by the possessor of great strength (Bhima), and with Krishna driving the car where-on he rode, also came out of that fort. And that best of cars, incapable of being vanquished by any king, ridden on by those warriors Bhima and Arjuna, and driven by Krishna, looked exceedingly handsome. Indeed, it was upon that car that Indra and Vishnu had fought of old in the battle (with the Asuras) in which Tārakā (the wife of Vrihaspati) had become the immediate cause of much slaughter. And riding upon that car Krishna now came out of the hill-fort. Possessed of the splendour of heated gold, and decked with rows of jingling bells, and furnished with wheels whose clatter was like the roar of the clouds, and ever victorious in battle, and always slaughtering the foe against whom it was driven, it was that very car riding upon which Indra had slain ninty-nine Asuras of old. And those bulls among men (the three cousins) having obtained that car became exceedingly glad. And the people of Magadha, beholding the long-armed Krishna along with the two brothers, seated on that car (of Jarāsandha), wondered much. And, O Bhārata, that car whereunto were yoked celestial horses and which possessed the speed of the wind, thus ridden upon by Krishna, looked exceedingly beautiful. And upon that best

of cars was a flag-staff without being visibly attached thereto, and which was the product of celestial skill. And that handsome flag-staff, possessed of the splendour of the rainbow, could be seen from the distance of a *yojana*. And Krishna, (while coming out, thought of Gadura. And Gadura, thought of by his master, came thither in no time, like a tree of vast proportions standing in a village worshipped by all. And Gadura of immense weight of body and living upon snakes sat upon that excellent car along with the numberless open-mouthed and frightfully-roaring creatures on its flag-staff. And thereupon that best of cars became more dazzling still for its splendour and incapable of being looked at by created beings, like the sun in midday surrounded by a thousand rays. And, O king, such was that best of flag-staffs of celestial make that it never struck against any tree nor could weapons injure it in the least even though visible to men's eyes. And Achyuta that tiger among men, riding with the two sons of Pāndu upon that celestial car the clatter of whose wheels was like the roar of the clouds, came out of Girivraja. And the car upon which Krishna rode had been obtained by king Vasu from Vāsava, and from Vasu by Vrihadratha, and from the latter in due course by king Jarāsandha. And he of long arms and eyes like lotus leaves and possessed of illustrious reputation, coming out of Girivraja, stopped (for some time) on a level plain outside the town. And, O king, all the citizens then, with the Brāhmanas at their head, hastened thither to adore him with the due rites of the ordinance. And the monarchs who had been released from confinement worshipped the slayer of Madhu with reverence, and addressing him with eulogies, said, 'O thou of long arms, thou hast today rescued the kings sunk in the deep mire of sorrow in the lake of Jarāsandha! Such an act of virtue in thee the son of Devakī assisted by the might of Bhima and Arjuna, is scarcely extraordinary! O Vishnu, languishing as we all were in the terrible hill-fort of Jarāsandha, from sheer good fortune alone (of ours), thou hast rescued us, O son of the Yadu race, and achieved thereby an illustrious reputation! O tiger among men, we bow to thee! O command us what we shall do!

However difficult of accomplishment thy command may be, know, O lord, that it hath already been accomplished by the kings!' Thus addressed by the monarchs, the high-souled Hrishikesha gave them every assurance and said, 'Yudhishthira is desirous of performing the sacrifice of *Rajasuya*. Solicitous as that monarch, ever guided by virtue, is of acquiring the imperial dignity, assist ye him in his endeavours, having known this of me!' Then, O king, all those monarchs with joyous hearts accepted the words of Krishna, saying, 'So be it!' And saying this, those lords of earth made presents of jewels unto him of the Dasārha race. And Govinda, moved by kindness towards them, took a portion of those presents.

"Then the son of Jarāsandha, the high-souled Sahadeva, accompanied by his relatives and the principal officers of state, and with his priest in the van, came thither. And the prince, bending himself low and making large presents of jewels and precious stones, worshipped Vāsudeva that god among men. Then that best of men, Krishna, giving every assurance unto the prince afflicted with fear, accepted those presents of his of great value. And Krishna joyfully installed the prince there and thenin the sovereignty of Magadha. And the strong-armed and illustrious son of Jarāsandha, thus installed on the throne by those exalted of men and having obtained the friendship of Krishna, and treated with respect and kindness by the two sons of Prithā, re-entered the city of his father. And that bull amongst men, Krishna, accompanied by the sons of Prithā and graced with great good fortune, left the city of Magadha, laden with numerous jewels. And accompanied by the two sons of Pāndu, Achyuta, arriving at Indraprastha, approached Yudhishthira, and joyfully addressing that monarch, said, 'O best of kings, from good fortune the mighty Jarāsandha hath been slain by Bhima and the monarchs confined (at Girivraja) have been set free! From good fortune also, these two, Bhima and Dhananjaya, are well, and arrived, O Bhārata, at their own city unwounded!' Then Yudhishthira worshipped Krishna as he deserved and embraced Bhima and Arjuna in joy. And the monarch who

had no enemy, having obtained victory through the agency of his brothers in consequence of the death of Jarāsandha, gave himself up to pleasure and merriment with all his brothers. And the eldest son of Pāndu together with his brothers approached the kings who had come to Indraprastha and entertaining and worshipping them, each according to his age, dismissed them all. And commanded by Yudhishthira those kings with joyful hearts, set out for their respective countries without loss of time, riding upon excellent vehicles. Thus, O king, did that tiger among men, Janārddana of great intelligence, caused his foe Jarāsandha to be slain by the instrumentality of the Pāndavas. And, O Bhārata, that chastiser of all foes, having thus caused Jarāsandha to be slain, took leave of Yudhishthira and Prithā and Draupadi, and Subhadrā, and Bhimasena, and Fālguna, and the twins. And taking leave of Dhananjaya also, he set out for his own city (of Dwārakā), riding upon that best of cars of celestial make, possessed of the speed of the mind, and given unto him by Yudhishthira, filling the ten points of the horizon with the deep rattle of its wheels. And, O bull of the Bharata race, just as Krishna was on the point of setting out, the Pāndavas with Yudhishthira at their head walked round that tiger among men who was never fatigued with exertion.

"And after the illustrious Krishna, the son of Devaki, had departed (from Indraprastha) having acquired that great victory and having also dispelled the fears of the kings, that feat, O Bhārata, swelled the fame of the Pāndavas. And, O king, the Pāndavas passed their days, continuing to gladden the heart of Draupadi. And at that time, whatever was proper and consistent with virtue, pleasure, and profit, continued to be properly executed by king Yudhishthira in the exercise of his duties of protecting his subjects."

Thus ends the twenty-fourth Section in the Jarāsandhabadha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXV.

(Digvijaya Parva.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "Arjuna, having obtained that best of bows and that couple of inexhaustible quivers, and that car and flag-staff, as also that assembly house, addressed Yudhishthira and said, 'Bow, weapons, great energy, allies, territory, fame, army,—these, O king, difficult of acquisition however desirable, have all been obtained by me. I think, therefore, that what should now be done is the increase of our treasury. I desire, O best of monarchs to make the kings (of the earth) pay tribute to us! I desire to set out in an auspicious moment of a holy day of the moon under a favorable constellation, for the conquest of the direction that is presided over by the lord of treasures (*viz*, the North)!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "King Yudhishthira the just, hearing these words of Dhananjaya, replied unto him in a grave and collected voice, saying, 'O bull of the Bharata race, set thou out, having made holy Brāhmanas utter benedictions on thee, for plunging thy enemies in sorrow and filling thy friends with joy! Victory, O son of Prithā, will surely be thine and thou wilt surely obtain the fulfilment of thy desires'

"Thus addressed, Arjuna, sorrounded by a large host, set out on that celestial car of wonderful achievements he had obtained from Agni. And Bhimasena also, and those bulls among men, the twins, dismissed with affection by Yudhishthira the just, set out, each at the head of a large army. And the son of the chastiser of Pāka then subjugated that direction which was under the presidency of the lord of treasures. And Bhimasena subjugated the East, and Sahadeva the South, And Nakula, O king, acquainted with all weapons, conquered the West. And while his brothers were so employed, the exalted king Yudhishthira the just stayed within Khāndavaprastha in the enjoyment of great affluence in the midst of friends and relatives."

Thus ends the twenty-fifth Section in the Digvijaya of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXVI.

(Digvijaya Parva continued.)

Janamejaya spoke. "O Brāhmana, narrate to me in full the history of the conquest of all the points of the horizon! I am incapable of being satiated with listening to the great history of my ancestors!"

Vaisampāyana spoke. "This earth was subjugated at the same time by the sons of Prithā. I shall, therefore, tell thee of the campaign of Dhananjaya first.

"At the outset, the long-armed Dhananjaya subjugated the kings of the country of the Kulindas, by the greatest of courageous feats. And having brought the Kulindas, the Anarttas, and the Kālkutas under his sway, Arjuna subjugated (king) Sumandala with his troops. Then, O king, that chastiser of all foes, capable of fighting with both hands with equal skill, assisted by (king) Sumandala, conquered the island called Shākala as also king Pritivindhya. And there were many kings in the island of Shākala amongst the seven islands of the earth. And between them at the head of their troops and Arjuna, the encounters that took place were fierce. But, O bull of the Bharata race, even those great bowmen were all vanquished by Arjuna. And uniting himself with all of them, he then attacked the kingdom of Prāgyotisha. And there, O king, was a great monarch called Bhagadatta. And with him the encounter that the illustrious Pāndava had was fierce. And the king of Prāgjyotisha was supported by a host of Kirātas and Chins and numerous other warriors that dwelt on the sea-coast. And king Bhagadatta, having fought with Dhananjaya for eight days continuously, and finding him still untired in battle, smilingly said, 'O thou of long arms, O son of the Kuru race, this energy (that thou hast exhibitted) is, indeed, well-suited to thee who art the son of the chastiser of Pāka and who art the ornament of battle! I am the friend of Indra, scarcely inferior to him in battle. But, O child, I cannot stay before thee in fight! O son of Pāndu, tell me what am I to do and which thou desirest! O son, O thou of long arms, I shall accomplish whatever thou wilt say!'

Thus addressed, Arjuna replied, 'That bull amongst the Kurus, king Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, is conversant with the rules of morality, devoted to truth, and a performer of sacrifices in which the gifts (to Brāhmanas) are great. I desire to see him acquire the imperial dignity. Let tribute be paid unto him by thee! Thou art my father's friend, and gratified also thou hast been by me. I cannot command thee. Let the tribute, therefore, be paid by thee joyously at thy will!'

"Bhagadatta, hearing this, said, 'O thou who hast Kunti for thy mother, as thou art to me so is Yudhishthira also! I shall do all this. Tell me, what else I may do for thee!'"

Thus ends the twenty-sixth Section in the Digvijaya of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXVII.

(*Dig-vijaya Parva continued.*)

Vaisampāyana continued. "Thus addressed, Dhananjaya replied unto Bhagadatta, saying, 'If thou wilt give thy promise to do this, thou wilt have done all I desire!' And having thus subjugated the king of Prāgjyotisha, Dhananjaya of long arms, the son of Kunti, then marched thence towards the north—the direction presided over by the lord of treasures. And that bull amongst men, that son of Kunti, then subjugated the montain fastnesses and their outskirts as also the hilly regions. And having conquered all the mountains and the kings that reigned there, and bringing them under his sway, he exacted tribute from all. And winning the affections of those kings and uniting himself with them, he next marched, O king, against Vrihanta the king of Uluka, making this earth tremble with the sound of his drums, the clatter of his chariot-wheels, and the roar of the elephants in his train. Vrihanta, however, quickly coming out of his city, followed by his army consisting of four kinds of troops, gave battle to Fālguna, And the collision was terrible that took place between Vrihanta and Dhananjaya. And it so happened that Vrihanta was unable to hear the prowess of the son of Pāndu. Then that invincible mountain king, regard-

ing the son of Kunti incapable of being withstood, approached him with all his wealth. Arjuna snatched not the kingdom from Vrihanta, but having made peace with him marched, accompanied by that king, against Senāvindu whom he soon expelled from his kingdom. After this he subjugated Modāpura, Vāmadeva, Sudāman, Susankula, the Northern Ulukas, and the kings of these countries and peoples. At the command of Yudhishthira, O monarch, Arjuna, without moving from the city of Senāvindu, by sending his troops alone, brought under his sway those five countries and peoples. For Arjuna, having arrived at Devaprastha the city of Senāvindu, took up his quarters there with his army consisting of four kinds of forces. Thence, surrounded by the kings and the peoples he subjugated, the hero marched against king Viswagaswa—that bull of Puru's race. And having vanquished in battle the brave mountaineers who were all great warriors, the son of Pāndu, O king, then reduced, by means of his troops, the town protected by the Puru king. And having vanquished in battle the Puru king as also the robber tribes of the mountains, the son of Pāndu brought under his sway the seven tribes called Utsava-sanketa. And that bull of the Kshatriya race then defeated the brave Kshatriyas of Kāsmira, and then king Lohita along with ten minor chiefs. Then the Trigartas, the Dārvās, the Kokonadas, and various other Kshatriyas, O king, advanced against the son of Pāndu. That prince of the Kuru race then reduced the delightful town of Avisāri, and then Rochamāna ruling in Uraga. Then the son of Indra, putting forth his might, pressed the delightful town of Singhapura that was well protected with various weapons. Then Arjuna, that bull amongst the sons of Pāndu, at the head of all his troops, pressed hard the regions called Suhma and Sumālā. Then the son of Indra endued with great prowess, after grinding them with great force brought the Vālhikas always difficult of being vanquished, under his sway. Then Fālgoona the son of Pāndu, taking with him a select force, defeated the Daradas along with the Kāmbojas. And the exalted son of Indra then vanquished the robber tribes that dwelt in the north-eastern frontier and those also

that dwelt in the woods. And, O great king, the son of Indra also subjugated the allied tribes of the Lohas, the eastern Kāmbojas, and the northern Rishikas. And the battle with the Rishikas was fierce in the extreme. Indeed, the fight that took place between them and the son of Prithā was equal to that between the gods and the Asuras in which Tārākā (the wife of Vrihaspati) had become the cause of so much slaughter. And defeating, O king, the Rishikas on the field of battle, Arjuna took from them as tribute eight horses that were of the color of the parrot's breast, as also other horses of the hues of the peacock, born in nothern and other climes and endued with speed of motion. At last, having conquered all the Himalayas and the Nishkuta mountains, that bull among men, arriving at the White mountains, encamped on its breast."

Thus ends the twenty-seventh Section in the Digvijaya of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXVIII.

(Digvijaya Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "That heroic and foremost of the Pāndavas, endued with great energy, crossing the White mountains, subjugated the country of the Kimpurushas ruled by *Drumaputra*, after a collision distinguished by a great slaughter of Kshatriyas, and brought the region under his complete sway. Having reduced this country, the son of Indra with a collected mind marched at the head of his troops to the country called Hātaka ruled by the Guhyakas. Subjugating them by a policy of conciliation, the Kuru prince beheld (in that region) the excellent of lake called Mānasa and various other lakes and tanks sacred to the Rishis. And the exalted prince having arrived at the lake Mānasa conquered the regions ruled by the Gandharvas that lay around the Hātaka territories. And the conqueror took, as tribute from the country, numerous excellent horses, called *Tittiri*, *Kalmasha*, *Manduka*. At last the son of the slayer of Pāka, arriving at the country of North Harivarsha, desired to conquer it,

Thereupon certain frontier-guards of huge bodies and endued with great strength and energy, coming to him with cheerful hearts, said, 'O son of Prithā, this country can never be conquered by thee! If thou seekest thy good, return hence! O Achyuta, thy conquests have been enough! He that entereth this region, if human, is sure to perish. We have been gratified with thee, O hero, thy conquests have been enough. Nor is anything to be seen here, O Arjuna, that may be conquered by thee! The Northern Kurus live here. There cannot be war here. Even if thou enterest it, thou wilt not be able to behold anything, for with human sight nothing can be seen here. If, however, thou seekest anything else, O Bhārata, tell us, O tiger among men, so that we may do thy bidding!' Thus addressed by them, Arjuna smilingly addressing them, said, 'I desire the acqusition of the imperial dignity by Yudhishthira the just, of great intelligence. If shut against human beings, I will not enter your country. Let something be paid unto Yudhishthira by ye as tribute!' Hearing these words of Arjuna, they gave him as tribute many cloths and ornaments of celestial make, silkens of celestial texture, and skins of celestial origin.

"It was thus that that tiger among men subjugated the countries that lay to the North, having fought numberless battles with both Kahatriya and robber tribes. And having vanquished those monarchs and brought them under his sway, he exacted from them all much wealth, and various gems and jewels, and horses of the species called Tittiri and Kalmāsha as also those of the color of the parrot's wings and those that were like the peacock in hue and all endued with the speed of the wind. And surrounded, O king, by a large army consisting of the four kinds of forces, the hero came back to the excellent city of Shakraprastha. And Pārtha offered the whole of that wealth, together with the animals he had brought, unto Yudhishthira the just. And commanded by the monarch, the hero retired to the chambers of the palace for rest."

Thus ends the twenty-eighth Section in the Digvijāya of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXIX.

(Digvijaya Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "In the meantime, Bhimasena also endued with great energy, having obtained the assent of Yudhishthira the just, marched towards the eastern direction. And that tiger among the Bhāratas, possessed of great valor and ever enhancing the sorrows of his foes, was accompanied by a mighty host with the full complement of elephants and horses and cars, well armed and capable of grinding all hostile kingdoms. And that tiger among men, the son of Pāndu, going (first) into the great country of the Pānchālas, began by various means to conciliate that tribe. Then that hero, that bull of the Bharata race, within a short time vanquished the Gandakas and the Videhas. The exalted one then subjugated the Dasārnas. There in the country of the Dasārnas, the king called Sudharman with his bare arms did fierce battle with Bhimasena. And Bhimasena, beholding that feat of the illustrious king, appointed the mighty Sudharman as the first in command of his forces. Then Bhima of terrible prowess marched towards the east, causing the earth, itself to tremble with the tread of the mighty host that followed him. Then that hero who in strength was the foremost of all strong men, defeated in battle Rochamāna the king of Aswamedha at the head of all his troops. And the son of Kunti, having vanquished that monarch by performing feats that excelled in fierceness, subjugated the eastern region. Then that prince of the Kuru race, endued with great prowess going into the country of Pulinda in the south, brought Sukumāra and king Sumitra under his sway. Then, O Janamejaya, that bull of the Bharata race, at the command of Yudhishthira the just, marched against Shishupāla of great energy. The king of Chedi, hearing of the intentions of the son of Pāndu, came out of his city. And that chastiser of all foes then received the son of Prithā with respect. Then, O king, those bulls of the Chedi and the Kuru lines, thus met together, enquired after each other's welfare. Then, O mon-

arch, the king of Chedi offered his kingdom unto Bhima and said smilingly, O sinless one, upon what art thou bent ?' And Bhima thereupon represented unto him the intentions of king Yudhishthira. And Bhima dwelt there, O king, for thirty nights, duly entertained by Shishupāla. And after this he set out from Chedi with his troops and vehicles."

Thus ends the twenty-ninth Section in the Digvijaya of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION. XXX.

(Digvijaya Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "That chastiser of all foes then vanquished king Srenimat of the country of Kumāra, and then Vrihadvala the king of Koshala. Then that foremost of the sons of Pāndu, by performing feats excelling in fierceness, vanquished the virtuous and mighty king called Dhirghayagna of Ayodhya. And the exalted one then subjugated the country of Gopālakaksha and the northern Koshalas and also the king of the Mallas. And the mighty one, arriving then at the moist region at the foot of the Himālayas soon brought the whole country under his sway. And that bull of the Bharata race subjugated in this way diverse countries. And endued with great energy and in strength the foremost of all strong men, the son of Pāndu next conquered the country of Bhallāta as also the mountain of Shuktimanta that was by the side of Bhallāta. Then Bhima of terrible prowess and long arms, vanquishing in battle the unretreating Suvāhu the king of Kāshi, brought him under complete sway. Then that bull among the sons of Pāndu overcame in battle, by sheer force, the great king Krātha reigning in the region lying about Supārsha. Then the hero of great energy vanquished the Matsyas and the powerful Maladas and the country called Pashubhumi that was without fear or oppression of any kind. And the long-armed hero then, coming from that land, conquered Madadhāra and Mahidhara, and the Shomadheyas, and turned his steps towards the north. And the mighty son of Kunti then subjugated, by sheer

force, the country called Vatsabhumi, and the king of the Bhargas, as also the ruler of the Nishādas, and Manimat and numerous other kings. Then Bhima, with scarcely any degree of exertion, and almost soon enough, vanquished the southern Mallas and the Bhagavanta mountains. And the hero next vanquished, by policy alone, the Sharmakas and the Varmakas. And that tiger among men then defeated with comparative ease that lord of earth, Janaka the king of the Vidchas. And the hero then subjugated by treachery the Shakas and the barbarians living in that part of the country. And the son of Pāndu, sending forth expeditions from Videha, conqured the seven kings of the Kirātas living about the Indra mountain. And the mighty hero then, endued with abundant energy, having vanquished in battle the Suhmas and the Prasuhmas. And winning them over to his side, the son of Kunti, possessed of great strength, marched against Magadha. And on his way he subjugated the monarchs known by the names of Danda and Dandadhāra. And accompanied by those monarchs, the son of Pāndu marched against Girivraja. And bringing the son of Jarāsandha under his sway by conciliation and making him pay tribute, the hero then, accompanied by the monarchs he had vanquished, marched against Karna. And making the earth tremble by means of his troops consisting of the four kinds of forces, the foremost of the Pāndavas then encountered Karna that slayer of foes. And, O Bhārata, having subjugated Karna and brought him under his sway, the mighty hero then vanquished the powerful kings of the mountainous regions. And the son of Pāndu then slew in a fierce encounter, by the strength of his arms, the mighty king who dwelt in Modāgiri. And the Pāndava then, O king, subjugated in battle those strong and brave heroes of fierce prowess, *viz*, the heroic and mighty Vāsudeva the king of Pundra and king Mahaujas who reigned in Kaushikakachcha. And having defeated both these monarchs, the son of Prithā then attacked the king of Vanga. And having vanquished Samudrasena and king Chandrasena and Tāmralipta, and also the king of the Karvatas and the ruler of the Suhmas, as also the kings that dwelt on the sea shore, that

bull among the Bharatas then conquered all the *Mlechchas* tribes. And the mighty son of the wind-god having thus conquered various countries and exacting tribute from them all, advanced towards Lohitya. And the son of Pāndu then made all the *Mlechcha* kings dwelling in the marshy regions on the seacoast, pay tribute and various kinds of wealth, and sandal wood and aloes, and cloths and gems, and pearls and blankets, and gold and silver and valuable corals. And the *Mlechcha* kings showered upon the illustrious son of Kunti a thick down-pour of wealth consisting of coins and gems counted by hundreds of millions. Then returning to Indraprashtha, Bhima of terrible prowess offered the whole of that wealth unto king Yudhishthira the just."

Thus ends the thirtieth Section in the Digvijaya of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXXI.

(Digvijaya Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "Thus also Sahadeva, dismissed with affection by king Yudhishthira the just, marched towards the southern direction accompanied by a mighty host. And strong in his strength, that mighty prince of the Kuru race, vanquishing completely at the outset the Shurasenas, brought the king of Matsya under his sway. And the hero then, defeating Dantavakra the mighty king of the Adhirājās and making him pay tribute, re-established him on his throne. And the prince then brought under his sway Sukumāra and then king Sumitra, and he next vanquished the other Matsyas and then the Patachcharas. And endued with great intelligence the Kuru warrior then conquered soon enough the country of the Nishādas and also the high hill called Gosringa, and that lord of earth called Srenimat. And subjugating next the country called Navarāshtra, the hero marched against Kuntibhoja. And king Kuntibhoja, with great willingness accepted the sway of the conquering hero. And marching thence to the banks of the Charmanwati, the Kuru warrior met the son of king Jamvaka, who had, on

account of old hostilities, been defeated before by Vāsudeva. And, O Bhārata, the son of Jamvaka gave battle to Sahadeva. And Sahadeva defeating the prince marched towards the south. And the mighty warrier then vanquished the Sekas and the other Sekas and exacted tribute from them and also various kinds of gems and wealth. And uniting himself with the vanquished tribes, the prince then marched towards the countries that lay on the banks of the Narmadā. And defeating there in battle the two heroic kings of Avanti called Vinda and Anuvinda supported by a mighty host, the mighty son of the twin gods exacted much wealth from them. And after this the hero marched towards the town of Bhojakata. And there, O king of unfading glory, a fierce encounter took place between him and the king of that city for two whole days. But the son of Mādri, vanquishing the invincible Bhismaka, then defeated in battle the king of Koshala and the ruler of the territories lying on the banks of the Venwā, as also the Kāntārakas and the kings of the eastern Koshalas. And the hero then, defeating both the Nātakeyas and the Heramvakas in battle, and subjugating the country of Mārudha, reduced Munjagrāma by sheer strength. And the son of Pāndu then vanquished the mighty monarchs of the Nāchinas and the Arvukas and the various forest kings of that part of the country. And endued with great strength the hero then reduced to subjection king Vātādhipa. And defeating in battle the Pulindas, the hero then marched southwards. And the younger brother of Naklua then fought for one whole day with the king of Pāndrya. And the long-armed hero having vanquished that monarch marched further to the south. And then he beheld the celebrated caves of Kishkindhya and in that region fought for seven days with the monkey-kings Mainda and Dwivida. Those illustrious kings, however, without being tired in the encounter, were gratified with Sahadeva. And joyfully addressing the Kuru prince, they said, 'O tiger among the sons of Pāndu, go hence, taking with thee tribute from us all! Let the business of king Yudhishthira the just, possessed of great intelligence, be accomplished without hindrance!' And taking

jewels and gems from them all, the hero marched towards the city of Māhishmati. And there that bull of men did battle with king Nila. And the battle that took place between king Nila and the mighty Sahadeva the son of Pāndu, that slayer of hostile heroes, was fierce and terrible. And the encounter was an exceedingly bloody one, and the life of the hero himself was exposed to great risk, for the god Agni himself assisted king Nila in that fight. Then the cars, horses, and elephants, and the soldiers in their coats of mail, of Sahadeva's army, all appeared to be on fire. And beholding this, the prince of the Kuru race became exceedingly anxious. And, O Janamejaya, at sight of this the hero could not resolve upon what he should do."

Janamejaya spoke. "O regenerate one, why was it that the god Agni became hostile in battle unto Sahadeva who was fighting only for the accomplishment of a sacrifice (and, therefore, for the gratification of Agni himself)?"

Vaisampāyana spoke. "It is said, O Janamejaya, that the god Agni, while residing in Māhishmati, earned the reputation of an adulterer. King Nila had a daughter who was exceedingly beautiful. She used always to stay near the sacred fire of her father, causing it to blaze up with vigor. And it so happened that (king Nila's) fire, even if fanned, would not blaze up till agitated by the gentle breath of that girl's fair lips. And it was said in king Nila's palace and in the houses of all (his subjects) that the god Agni desired that beautiful girl for his bride. And it so happened that he was accepted by the girl herself. And one day the deity, assuming the form of a Brahmana, was enjoying at his pleasure the society of the fair one, when he was discovered by the king. And the virtuous king thereupon ordered the Brāhmana to be punished according to the law. At this the illustrious deity flamed up in wrath. And beholding this, the king wondered much and bent his head low on the ground. And after some time the king, bowing low, bestowed that daughter of his upon the god Agni disguised as a Brāhmana. And the god Vibhāvasu, accepting that fair-browed daughter of king Nila, became graceful unto that monarch. And the illustrious gratifier of all purposes also asked

the monarch to beg a boon. And the king begged that his troops might never be struck with panic while engaged in battle. And from that time, O king, those monarchs who, from ignorance of this, desire to subjugate king Nila's city, are consumed by Hutāshana. And, from that time, O perpetuator of the Kuru race, the girls of the city of Māhishmati became rather unacceptable to others (as wives). And Agni by his boon granted them sexual liberty, so that the women of that town always roam about at will, each unconfined to a particular husband. And, O bull of the Bharata race, from that time the monarchs (of other countries) forsake this city for fear of Agni. And the virtuous Sahadeva, beholding his troops afflicted with fear and surrounded by flames of fire, himself stood there immovable as a mountain. And purifying himself and touching water, the hero then addressed the god that sanctifieth everything, in these words:—

'I bow unto thee, O thou whose track is always marked with smoke! These my exertions are all for thee! O thou sanctifier of all, thou art the mouth of the gods and thou art Sacrifice personified! Thou art called *Pāvaka* because thou sanctifiest everything, and thou art *Havya-vahana* because thou carriest the clarified butter that is poured into thee! The Vedas have sprung for ministering unto thee, and, therefore, art thou called *Jātavedas*! Chief of the gods as thou art, thou art called Chittrabhānu, Anala, Vibhāvasu, Hutāsha, Jvalana, Shikhi, Vaishwānara, Pingesha, Plavanga, Bhuritejas! Thou art he from whom Kumāra (Kārtikeya) had his origin; thou art holy, thou art called *Rudragarva*, and *Hiranyakrit!* Let thee, O Agni, grant me energy, let Vayu grant me life, let Earth grant me nourishment and strength, and let Water grant me prosperity! O Agni, thou who art the first cause of the waters, thou who art of great purity, thou for ministering unto whom the Vedas have sprung, thou who art the foremost of the deities, thou who art their mouth, O purify me by thy truth! Rishis and Brāhmanas, Deities and Asuras, pour clarified butter, every day according to the ordinance, in sacrifices. Let the rays of truth emanating from thee as thou exhibitest thyself in those sacrifices purify me! Smoke-

bannered as thou art, and possessed of flames, thou great purifier from all sins, born of Vāyu, and ever present as thou art in all creatures, O purify me by the rays of thy truth! Having cleansed myself, thus cheerfully, O exalted one, do I pray unto thee! O Agni, grant me now content and prosperity, and knowledge and gladness!' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "He that will pour clarified butter into Agni reciting these *mantras*, will ever be blessed with prosperity, and having his soul under complete control will also be cleansed from all his sins.

" Sahadeva, addressing Agni again, said, 'O carrier of the sacrificial libations, it behoveth thee not to obstruct a sacrifice!' Having said this, that tiger among men—the son of Mādri—spreading some *kusa* grass on the earth sat himself down in expectation of the (approaching) fire and in front of those terrified and anxious troops of his. And Agni too, like the ocean that never transgresseth its continents, did not pass over his head. On the other hand, approaching Sahadeva quietly, and addressing that prince of the Kuru race—that god of men—and giving him every assurance, said, 'O thou of the Kuru race, rise up from this posture! O rise up! I was only trying thee! I know all thy purposes as also those of the son of Dharma (Yudhishthira). But, O best of the Bharata race, as long as there is a descendant of king Nila's line, so long should this town be protected by me! I will, however, O son of Pāndu, accomplish the desire of thy heart!' And at these words of Agni, O bull of the Bharata race, the son of Mādri rose up with a cheerful heart, and joining his hands and bending his head worshipped that sanctifier of all beings. And at last, after Agni had disappeared, king Nila came there, and at the command of that deity, worshipped with due rites Sahadeva that tiger among men—that master of battle. And Sahadeva accepted that worship and made him pay tribute. And having brought king Nila under his sway thus, the victorious son of Mādri then went further towards the south. And the long-armed hero then brought the king of Tripura of immeasurable energy under his sway. And next turning his forces against the Paurava kingdom, he vanquished

and reduced to subjection the monarch thereof. And the prince, after this, with great efforts brought Akriti the king of Saurāshtra and preceptor of the Kaushikas under his sway. And the virtuous prince, while staying in the kingdom of Saurāshtra sent an ambassador unto king Rukmin of Bhishmaka within the territories of Bhojakata, who, rich in possessions and intelligence, was the friend of Indra himself. And that monarch along with his son, remembering their relationship with Krishna, cheerfully accepted, O king, the sway of the son of Pāndu. And that master of battle then, having exacted jewels and wealth from king Rukmi, marched further to the south. And endued with great energy and great strength, the hero then, reduced to subjection, Surpāraka and Tālākata, and the Dandakas also. And the Kuru warrior then vanquished and brought under his subjection numberless kings of the *Mlechcha* tribe living on the sea coast, and the Nishādas and the cannibals and even the Karnaprāvaranas, and those tribes also called the *Kālamukhas* who were a cross between human beings and Rākshasas, and the whole of the Cole mountains, and also Surabhipattna, and the island called the Copper island, and the mountain called Rāmaka. And the high-souled warrior, having brought under subjection king Timingila, conquered a wild tribe known by the name of the Kerakas and who were men with one leg. And the son of Pāndu also conquered the town of Sanjayanti and the country of the Pāshandas and the Karahātakas by means of his messengers alone, and made all of them pay tribute. And the hero also brought under his subjection and exacted tribute from the Pāndyas and the Dravidas along with the Udrakeralas and the Andhas and the Tālavanas, the Kalingas and the Ushtrakarnikas, and also the delightful city of Atavi and that of the Yavanas. And, O king of kings, that slayer of all foes, the virtuous and intelligent son of Mādri, having arrived at the sea shore, then despatched with great assurance messengers unto the illustrious Vibhishana the grand-son of Pulastya. And that monarch willingly accepted the sway of the son of Pāndu; for that intelligent and exalted king regarded it all as the act of time. And he sent unto the son of

Pāndu diverse kinds of jewels and gems, and sandal and aloe wood, and many celestial ornaments, and much costly apparel, and many valuable pearls. And the intelligent Sahadeva, accepting them all, returned to his own kingdom.

"Thus it was, O king, that that slayer of all foes, having vanquished by conciliation and war numerous kings and having also made them pay tribute, came back to his own city. And that bull of the Bharata race, having presented the whole of that wealth unto king Yudhishthira the just, regarded himself, O Janamejaya, as crowned with success and continued to live happily."

Thus ends the thirty-first Section in the Digvijaya of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXXII.

(Digvijaya Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "I shall now recite to you the deeds and triumphs of Nakula, and how that exalted one conquered the direction that had once been subjugated by Vāsudeva. The intelligent Nakula, surrounded by a large host, set out from Khāndavaprastha for the west, making this earth tremble with the shouts and the leonine roars of the warriors and the deep rattle of chariot wheels. And the hero first assailed the mountainous country called Rohitaka that was dear unto (the celestial generalissimo) Kārtikeya and which was delightful and prosperous and full of kine and every kind of wealth and produce. And the encounter the son of Pāndu had with the Mattamayurakas of that country was fierce. And the illustrious Nakula after this subjugated the whole of the desert country and the region known as Shairishaka full of plenty, as also that other one called Mahettha. And the hero had a fierce encounter with the royal sage Akrosha. And the son of Pāndu left that part of the country having subjugated the Dashārnas, the Shivis, the Trigartas, the Amvashtas, the Mālavas, the five tribes of the Karnātas, and those twice-born classes that were called the Madhyamakeyas and Vātadhānas. And making a circuitous journey, that bull

among men then conquered the (*Mlechcha*) tribes called the Utsava-sanketas. And the illustrious hero soon brought under subjection the mighty Grāmaniyas that dwelt on the banks of the sea, and the Sudras and the Abhiras that dwelt on the banks of the Saraswati, and all those tribes that lived upon their fisheries, and those also that dwelt on the mountains, and the whole of the country called after the five rivers, and the mountains called Amara, and the country called Uttara-yotisha and the city of Divyakuta, and the tribe called Dwārapāla. And the son of Pāndu, by sheer force, reduced to subjection the Rāmathas, the Hārahunas, and various kings of the west. And while staying there, Nakula sent, O Bhārata, messengers unto Vāsudeva. And Vāsudeva with all the Yādavas accepted his sway. And the mighty hero, proceeding thence to Shākala the city of the Madras, made his uncle Shalya accept from affection the sway of the Pāndavas. And, O monarch, deserving of hospitality and entertainment at his uncle's hands, the illustrious prince was well entertained by his uncle. And skilled in war, the prince, taking from Shalya a large quantity of jewels and gems, left his kingdom. And the son of Pāndu then reduced to subjection the fierce *Mlechchas* residing on the sea coast as also the wild tribes of the Palhavas, the Kirātas, the Yavanas, and the Shakas. And having subjugated various monarchs, and making all of them pay tribute, Nakula, that foremost of the Kurus, full of resources, retraced his way towards his own city. And, O king, so great was the treasure which Nakula earned that ten thousand camels carried it with difficulty on their backs. And arriving at Indraprastha, the heroic and fortunate son of Mādri presented the whole of that wealth unto Yudhishthira.

"Thus, O king, did Nakula subjugate the countries that lay to the west—the direction that is presided over by the god Varuna, and that had once before been subjugated by Vāsudeva himself!"

Thus ends the thirty-second Section in the Digvijaya of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXXIII.

(Rajasyuika Parva.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "In consequence of the protection afforded by Yudhishthira the just, and of that truth which he ever cherished in his behaviour, as also of the check under which he kept all foes, the subjects of that virtuous monarch were all engaged in their respective avocations. And in consequence of the equitable taxation and the virtuous rule of the monarch, the clouds poured as much rain as the people desired, and the cities and towns became highly prosperous. Indeed, as a consequence of the monarch's acts, every affair of the kingdom, but especially the breeding of cattle and agriculture and trade, prospered highly. And, O king, during those days even robbers and cheats never spoke lies amongst themselves, nor they that were the favorites of the monarch. And there were no droughts and floods and plagues and fires and premature deaths in those days of Yudhishthira devoted to virtue. And it was only for doing agreeable services, or for worshipping, or for offering tribute that would not impoverish, that other kings used to approach Yudhishthira (and not for hostility or battle). And the large treasure room of the king became so much filled with hoards of wealth virtuously obtained that it could not be emptied even in an hundred years. And the son of Kunti, ascertaining the state of his treasury and the extent of his possessions, fixed his heart upon the celebration of a sacrifice. And his friends and officers, each separately and all together, approaching him said, 'The time hath come, O exalted one, for thy sacrifice! Let arrangements, therefore, be made without loss of time.' And while they were thus talking, Hari (Krishna) came there. And that omniscient and ancient one, that soul of the Vedas, that invisible one as described by those that have knowledge, that foremost of all lasting existences in the universe, that origin of all things as also that in which all things are to be dissolved, that lord of the past, the future, and the present, named Keshava,—the slayer of Keshi and the bulwark of all

the Vrishnis and the dispeller of all fear in times of distress and the smiter of all foes, having appointed Vasudeva to the command of the (Yādava) army, and bringing with him for king Yudhishthira the just a large mass of treasure, entered that excellent of cities, Khāndava, himself surrounded by a mighty host and filling the atmosphere with the rattle of his chariot wheels. And Mādhava, that tiger among men, enhancing that limitless mass of wealth the Pāndavas had, that inexhaustible ocean of gems, by what he had brought, enhanced the sorrows of the enemies of the Pāndavas. And the capital of the Bhāratas was gladdened by Krishna's presence like a sunless region by the sun or a region of still air by a gentle breeze. And approachihg him joyfully and receiving him with due respect, Yudhishthira enquired of his welfare. And after Krishna had been seated at his ease that bull among men, the son of Pāndu, with Dhaumya and Dwaipāyana and the other sacrificial priests and with Bhima and Arjuna and the twins, addressed Krishna thus:—

'O Krishna, it is for thee that the whole earth is under my sway! And, O thou of the Vrishni race, it is through thy grace that vast wealth hath been earned by me! And, O son of Devaki, O Mādhava, I desire to devote that wealth, according to the ordinance, unto superior Brāhmanas and the carrier of sacrificial libations! And, O thou of the Dasārha race, it behoveth thee, O thou of mighty arms, to grant me permission to celebrate a sacrifice along with thee and my younger brothers! Therefore, O Govinda, O thou of long arms, install thyself in that sacrifice; for, O thou of the Dasārha race, if thou performest the sacrifice, I shall be cleansed from sin. Or, O exalted one, grant permission for myself being installed in the sacrifice along with these my younger brothers, for permitted by thee, O Krishna, I shall be able to enjoy the fruit of an excellent sacrifice!' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Unto Yudhishthira, after he had said this, Krishna, extolling his virtues, said, 'Thou, O tiger among kings, deservest imperial dignity! Let, therefore, the great sacrifice be performed by thee! And if thou performest that sacrifice and obtainest its fruit, we all shall

regard ourselves as crowned with success. I am always engaged in seeking thy good. Perform thou, then, the sacrifice thou desirest! Employ me also in some office towards that end. For I should obey all thy commands!' Yudhishthira replied, 'O Krishna, my resolve is already crowned with fruit, and success also is surely mine, when thou, O Hrishikesha, hast arrived here agreeably to my wish!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Commanded by Krishna, the son of Pāndu along with his brothers set himstlf in collecting the materials for the accomplishment of the Rājasuya sacrifice. And that chastiser of all foes, the son of Pāndu, then commanded Sahadeva that foremost of all warriors and all his ministers also, saying, 'Let persons be appointed to collect, without loss of time, all those articles which the Brāhmanas have directed as necessary for the performance of this sacrifice, and all materials and auspicious necessaries that Dhaumya may order as required for it, each of the kind needed and one after another in due order. And let Indrasena and Vishoka and Puru with Arjuna for his charioteer be engaged to collect food if they are to please me. And let those foremost of the Kurus also gather every article with agreeable taste and smell as may delight and attract the hearts of the Brāhmanas.'

"Simultaneously with these words of king Yudhishthira the just, Sahadeva, that foremost of warriors, having accomplished everything, represented the matter to the king. And Dwaipāyana, O king, then appointed as sacrificial priests exalted Brāhmanas that were like the Vedas themselves in embodied forms. And the son of Satyavati became himself the *Brahma* of that sacrifice. And that bull of the Dhananjaya race, Susāman, became the chaunter of the Vedic (*Sama*) hymns. And Yajnavalkya devoted to *Brahma* became the *Adhyaryu*. And Paila the son of Vasu and Dhaumya became the *Hotris*. And, O bull of the Bharata race, the disciples and the sons of these men, all well-acquainted with the Vedas and the branches of the Vedas, became *Hotragas*. And all of them, having uttered benedictions and recited the object of the sacrifice, worshipped, according to the ordinance, the large sacrificial compound. And commanded by the Brāhmanas, builders and

artificers erected numerous edifices there that were spacious and well-perfumed like unto the temples of the gods. And after these were finished, that best of kings and bull among men, Yudhishthira, commanded his chief adviser Sahadeva, saying, 'Despatch thou, without loss of time, messengers endued with speed, to invite all (to the sacrifice).' And Sahadeva, hearing these words of the king, despatched messengers telling them 'Invite ye all the Brāhmanas in the kingdom and all the owners of land (Kshatriyas) and all the Vaisyas and also all the respectable Sudrās, and bring them hither!'"

Vaisampāyana continued, "Endued with speed, those messengers then, thus commanded, invited everybody according to the orders of the Pāndava without losing any time, and brought with them many persons, both friends and strangers. Then, O Bhārata, the Brāhmanas at the proper time installed Yudhishthira the son of Kunti in the Rājasuya sacrifice. And after the ceremony of installation was over, that foremost of men, the virtuous king Yudhishthira the just, like the god Dharma himself in human frame, entered the sacrificial compound, surrounded by thousands of Brāhmanas and his brothers and relatives and friends and counsellors, and by a large number of Kshatriya kings come from various countries, and by the officers of state. And numerous Brāhmanas, well-skilled in all branches of knowledge and versed in the Vedas and their several branches, began to pour in from various countries. And thousands of artificers, at the command of king Yudhishthira the just, erected separate habitations for those Brāhmanas with their attendants, well-filled with food and clothes and the fruits and flowers of every season. And, O king, duly worshipped by the monarch the Brāhmanas continued to reside there, passing their time in conversation on diverse topics and beholding the performances of actors and dancers. And the clamour of high-souled Brāhmanas, cheerfully eating and talking, was heard there without intermission. And 'Give', and 'Eat,' were the words that were heard there incessantly and everyday. And, O Bhārata, king Yudhishthira the just gave unto each of those Brāhmanas thousands of kine and beds and golden coins and damsels.

Thus commenced on earth the sacrifice of that unrivalled hero, the illustrious son of Pāndu, like the sacrifice in heaven of Shakra himself. Then that bull among men, king Yudhishthira despatched Nakula the son of Pāndu unto Hāstinapura for bringing Bhishma and Drona and Dhrita-rāshtra and Vidura and Kripa and those amongst his cousins that were well-affected towards him."

Thus ends the thirty-third Section in the Rājasuyika of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXXIV.

(Rajasuyika Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "The ever-victorious Nakula the son of Pāndu, having reached Hāstinapura, formally invited Bhishma and Dhrita-rashtra. And the elders of the Kuru race with the preceptor at their head, invited with due ceremonies, came with joyous hearts to that sacrifice, with Brahmanas walking before them. And, O bull of the Bharata race, having heard of king Yudhishthira's sacrifice, hundreds of other Kshatriyas, acquainted with the nature of the sacrifice, with joyous hearts came there from various countries, desiring to behold king Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu and his sacrificial mansion, and bringing with them many costly jewels of various kinds. And Dhrita-rāshtra and Bhishma and Vidura of high intelligence; and all the Kaurava brothers with Duryodhana at their head; and Suvala the king of Gāndhara and Shakuni endued with great strength; and Achala, and Vrishaka, and Karna that foremost of all charioteers; and Shalya endued with great might and the strong Vālhika; and Somadatta, and Bhuri of the Kuru race, and Bhurisravas, and Shala; and Aswatthāman, Kripa, Drona, and Jayadratha the ruler of Sindhu; and Yajnasena with his sons, and Shālva that lord of earth; and that great charioteer king Bhagadatta of Prāgjyotisha accompanied by all the *Mlechcha* tribes inhabiting the marshy regions on the sea shore; and many mountain kings, and king Vrihadvala; and Vāsudeva the king of the Paundryas, and the kings of Vanga and Kālinga; and Akarsha

and Kuntala and the kings of the Mālavās and the Andhrakas; and the Drāvidas and the Singhalas and the king of Kāshmira, and king Kuntibhoja of great energy and king Gaurvāhana; and all the other heroic kings of Vālhika; and Virāta with his two sons, and Māvella endued with great might; and various kings and princes ruling in various countries; and, O Bhārata, king Shishupāla endued with great energy and invincible in battle accompanied by his son; these all came into the sacrifice of the son of Pāndu. And Rāma and Aniruddha and Kanka and Sārana; and Gada, Pradyumna, Shāmva, and Chārudeshna of great energy; and Ulmuka and Nishatha and the brave Angāvaha; and innumerable other Vrishnis—mighty charioteers all—came there.

"These and many other kings from the middle country came, O monarch, to that great Rājasuya sacrifice of the son of Pāndu. And, O king, at the command of king Yudhishthira the just, mansions were assigned to all those monarchs that were full of various kinds of edibles and adorned with tanks and tall trees. And the son of Dharma worshipped all those illustrious monarchs according as they deserved. And worshipped by the king, they retired to the mansions that were assigned to them. And those mansions were (white and high) like the cliffs of Kailāsa, and delightful to behold, and adorned with every kind of furniture. And they were enclosed on all sides with well-built and high and white-washed walls. And their windows were covered with networks of gold and their interiors were adorned with rows of pearls. And their flights of stairs were easy of ascent, and the floors were all laid over with costly carpets. And they were all hung over with garlands of flowers and perfumed with excellent aloes. And white as swans or the moon, they looked extremely handsome even from the distance of a *yojana*. And their doors and entrances were set uniformly and were wide enough to admit a crowd of persons. And adorned with various costly articles and built of various metals, they looked like peaks of the Himavat. And having rested awhile in those mansions the monarchs beheld king Yudhishthira the just surrounded by numerous *Sadasyas* (sacrificial priests) and ever performing sacri-

fices distinguished by large gifts to Brāhmanas. And that sacrificial mansion crowded with kings and Brāhmanas and great Rishis, looked, O king, as handsome as heaven itself crowded with the gods.!"

Thus ends the thirty-fourth Section in the Rājasuyika of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXXV.

(Rajasuyika Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "Then, O king, Yudhishthira, having approached and worshipped his grand-father and his preceptor, addressed Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and the son of Drona and Duryodhana and Vivingsati, and said, Favor me ye all in the matter of this sacrifice! This large treasure that is here is yours. Consult ye with one another and guide me as ye desire!'

"The eldest of the sons of Pāndu, who had been installed in the sacrifice, having said this unto all, appointed every one of them in suitable offices. And he appointed Dushshāsana to superintend the department of food and other enjoyable articles. And Aswatthāman was asked to attend to the Brāhmanas. And Sanjaya was appointed to offer return-worship unto the kings. And Bhishma and Drona, both endued with great intelligence, were appointed to see what was done and what left undone. And the king appointed Kripa to look after the diamonds and the gold and the pearls and gems as also after the distribution of gifts to Brāhmanas. And so other tigers among men were appointed in similar offices. And Vāhlika and Dhritarāshtra and Somadatta and Jayadratha, brought thither by Nakula, went about, enjoying themselves as lords of the sacrifice. And Vidura otherwise called Kshatta, conversant with every rule of morality, became the disburser. And Duryodhana became the receiver of the tributes that were brought by the kings. And Krishna who was himself the centre of all the worlds and round whom moved every creature, desirous of acquiring excellent fruits, was engaged at his own will in washing the feet of the Brāhmanas.

" And desirous of beholding that sacrificial mansion as also king Yudhishthira the just, none came there bringing with them tribute less than a thousand (in number, weight or measure). And every one honored king Yudhishthira the just with large presents of jewels. And the kings made presents of their wealth, vieing with one another that the jewels each gave would enable the Kuru king Yudhishthira to complete his sacrifice. And, O monarch, the sacrificial compound of the illustrious son of Kunti looked extremely handsome with the multitude of palaces built so as to last for ever and crowded with guards and warriors and so high that their tops touched the cars of the gods that came to behold that sacrifice, as also with the cars themselves of the celestials, and the dwellings of the Brāhmanas, and the mansions that were created there for the kings resembling the cars of the celestials and adorned with gems and filled with every kind of wealth, and lastly with crowds of kings that came there all endued with beauty and wealth. And Yudhishthira, as if vieing with Varuna himself in wealth, commenced the sacrifice (of Rājasuya) with six fires and distinguished by large gifts to Brāhmanas. And the king gratified everybody with presents of great value, indeed, with every object that one could desire. And with abundance of rice and of every kind of food, as also with a mass of jewels brought as tribute, that vast concourse consisted of persons every one of whom was fed to his fill. And the gods also were gratified in that sacrifice by the *Idá*, clarified butter, *Homa*, and libations poured by the great Rishis versed in *mantras* and pronunciation. And like the gods, the Brāhmanas also were gratified with the sacrificial gifts and food and great wealth. And all the other orders of men also were gratified in that sacrifice and filled with joy."

Thus ends the thirty-fifth Section in the Rājasuyika of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION. XXXVI.

(*Arghāharana Parva.*)

Vaisampāyna spoke. "On the last day of the sacrifice when the king was to be sprinkled over with sacred water, the great Brāhmana Rishis ever deserving of respectful treatment, along with the [invited] kings, entered together the inner enclosure of the sacrificial compound. And those illustrious Rishis with Nārada as their foremost, seated at their ease with those royal sages within that enclosure, looked like the gods seated in the mansion of Brahmā in the company of the celestial Rishis. And endued with immeasurable energy those Rishis, having obtained leisure, started various topics of conversation. 'This is so,' 'This is not so,' 'This is even so,' 'This cannot be otherwise',—thus did many of them engage in disputations with one another. And some amongst the disputants, by well-chosen arguments made the weaker appear the stronger position and the stronger the weaker. And some disputants endued with great intelligence fell upon the position urged by others like hawks darting at meat thrown into the air. While some amongst them versed in the interpretations of religious treatises and others of rigid vows, and well-acquainted with every commentary and gloss, engaged themselves in pleasent converse. And, O king, that platform crowded with gods, Brāhmanas and great Rishis looked extremely handsome like the wide expanse of the firmament studded with stars. And, O monarch, there was then no Sudra near that inner platfrom of Yudhishthira's mansion, nor anybody that was without vows.

"And Nārada, beholding the prosperity of the fortunate Yudhishthira that was born of that sacrifice, became highly gratified. And beholding that vast concourse of all the Kshatriyas, the Muni Nārada, O king of men, became thoughtful. And, O bull amongst men, the Rishi began to recollect the words he had heard of old in the mansion of Brahmā regarding the incarnation on earth of portions of every deity. And knowing, O son of the Kuru race, that that

was a concourse of (incarnate) gods, Nārada thought in his mind of Hari with eyes like lotus leaves. And he knew that that creator himself of every object, that exalted of all gods —Nārāyana—who had formerly commanded the celestials, saying, 'Taking your births on earth and slaying one another, come ye back to heaven'—that slayer of all the enemies of the gods, that subjugator of all hostile towns, in order to fulfill his own promise, had been born in the Kshatriya order. And Nārada knew that the exalted and holy Nārāyana, also called Shambhu, the lord of the universe, having commanded all the celestials thus, had taken his birth in the race of Yadu, and that that foremost of all perpetuators of races, having sprung in the line of the Andhaka-vrishnis on earth was graced with great good fortune and was shining like the moon himself among the stars. And Nārada knew that he whose strength of arm was ever bepraised by all the celestials with Indra among them, that Hari the grinder of foes, was then living in the world in human form. 'Oh, the Self-Create will himself take away (from the earth) this vast concourse of Kshatriyas endued with so much strength !'—This was the thought of Nārada the omniscient who knew Hari or Nārāyana to be that Supreme Lord whom everybody worshipped with sacrifices. And Nārada, gifted with great intelligence and the foremost of all persons conversant with morality, thinking of all this, sat in that sacrifice of the wise king Yudhishthira the just with feelings of awe.

"Then Bhishma, O king, addressing king Yudhishthira the just, said, 'O Bhārata, let *Arghas* be offered unto the kings, as each of them deserveth ! Listen, O Yudhishthira, the preceptor, the sacrificial priest, the relative, the *Snātaka*, the friend, and the king, it hath been said, are the six that deserve the *Argha !* The wise have said that when any of these dwell with one for a full year he deserveth to be worshipped with the *Argha*. These kings have been staying with us for sometime. Therefore, O king, let *Arghas* be procured, to be offered one unto each of these ! And let an *Argha* be presented first of all unto him among these who is the foremost !'

"Hearing these words of Bhishma, Yudhishthira said, 'O grand-sire, O thou of the Kuru race, whom dost thou deem the foremost amongst these and unto whom should the *Argha* be presented by us, O tell me!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Then, O Bhārata, Bhishma the son of Shāntanu, settled it by his intelligence that on earth Krishna was the foremost of all. And he said, 'As the sun among all luminous objects, so doth this one shine like the sun among these all, in consequence of his energy, strength, and prowess. And this our sacrificial mansion is illuminated and gladdened by him like a sunless region by the sun, or a region of still air by a gust of breeze!' Thus commanded by Bhishma, Sahadeva endued with great prowess duly presented the first *Argha* of excellent ingredients unto him of the Vrishni race. And Krishna also accepted it according to the forms of the ordinance. But Shishupāla could not bear to see that worship offered unto Vāsudeva. And the mighty king of Chedi, reproving in the midst of that assembly both Bhishma and Yudhishthira, censured Vāsudeva thereafter."

Thus ends the thirty-sixth Section in the Arghāharana of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXXVII.

(Arghaharana Parva continued)

"Shishupāla said, 'O thou of the Kuru race, this one of the Vrishni race doth not deserve royal worship as if he were a king, in the midst of all these illustrious monarchs! O son of Pāndu, this conduct of thine in thus willingly worshipping him with eyes like lotus leaves, is not worthy of the illustrious Pāndavas! Ye sons of Pāndu, ye are children! Ye know not what morality is, for that is very subtile. This son also of the river (Gangā), of little knowledge, hath transgressed the rules of morality (in giving ye such counsel)! And, O Bhishma, if one like thee, possessed of virtue and morality, acteth from motives of interest, he becometh worthy of censure among the honest and the wise! How doth

he of the Dasārha race, who is not a king, deserve worship among these kings that he hath been worshipped by ye? O bull of the Kuru race, if thou regardest Krishna as the oldest in age, here is Vasudeva, and how can his son be so in his presence? Or, if thou regardest Vāsudeva as your well-wisher and supporter, when Drupada is here how can Mādhava deserve the (first) worship? Or, O son of Kuru, regardest thou Krishna as preceptor? When Drona is here, how hast thou worshipped him of the Vrishni race? Or, O son of Kuru, regardest thou Krishna as the *Ritwija?* When old Dwaipāyana is here, how hath Krishna been worshipped by thee? Again, when old Bhishma the son of Shāntanu, that foremost of men who is not to die save at his own wish, is here, why, O king, hath Krishna been worshipped by thee? When the brave Aswatthāman versed in every branch of knowledge is here, why, O king, hath Krishna, O thou of the Kuru race, been worshipped by thee? When that king of kings, Duryodhana, that foremost of men, is here, as also Kripa the preceptor of the Bhārata princes, why hath Krishna been worshipped by thee? How, O son of Pandu, passing over Druma the preceptor of the Kimpurashas, hast thou worshipped Krishna? When the invincible Bhishmaka, and king Pāndya possessed of every auspicious mark, and that foremost of kings—Rukmi, and Ekalavya, and Shalya the king of the Madras, are here, how, O son of Pāndu, hast thou offered the first worship unto Krishna? Here also is Karna ever boasting of his strength among all kings, and (really) endued with great might, the favorite disciple of the Brāhmana Jāmadagnya, the hero who vanquished in battle all monarchs by his own strength alone! How, O Bhārata, hast thou, passing him over, offered the first worship unto Krishna? The slayer of Madhu is neither sacrificial priest nor preceptor nor king. That thou hast yet worshipped him, O chief of the Kurus, could alone have been from motives of gain. If, O Bhārata, it was your wish to offer the first worship unto the slayer of Madhu, why were these monarchs brought here to be insulted thus? We all have not paid tribute to the illustrious son of Kunti from fear, from desire of gain, or from having been

won over by conciliation. On the other hand, we have paid him tribute simply because he hath been desirous of the imperial dignity from motives of virtue. And yet he it is that thus insulteth us! And, O king, from what else, save motives of insult, could it have been that thou hast worshipped Krishna, who possesseth not the insignia of royalty, with the *Argha* in the midst of the assembled monarchs? Indeed, the reputation for virtue that the son of Dharma hath acquired, hath been acquired by him without cause, for who would offer such unworthy worship unto one that hath fallen away from virtue! This wretch born in the race of the Vrishnis unrighteously slew of old the illustrious king Jarāsandha. Righteousness hath today abandoned Yudhishthira and his meanness only hath been displayed in consequence of his having offered the *Argha* to Krishna. If the helpless sons of Kunti were affrighted and disposed to meanness, thou, O Mādhava, ought to have enlightened them as to thy claims to the first worship! Why also, O Janārddana, didst thou accept the worship of which thou art unworthy, although it was offered unto thee by those mean-minded princes? Thou thinkest much of the worship unworthily offered unto thee, like a dog that lappeth in solitude a quantity of clarified butter that he hath obtained. O Janārddna, this is really no insult offered unto the monarchs. On the other hand it is thou whom the Kurus have insulted! Indeed, O slayer of Madhu, as a wife is to one that is without virile power, a fine show to one that is blind, so is this royal worship to thee who art no king! What Yudhishthira is, hath been seen; what Bhishma is, hath been seen; and what this Vāsudeva is, hath been seen. Indeed, all these have been seen as they are!'

"Having spoken these words, Shishupāla rose from his excellent seat, and accompanied by the kings, went out of that assembly."

Thus ends the thirty-seventh Section in the Arghāharana of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXXVIII.

(*Arghāharana Parva continued.*)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "Then king Yudhishthira hastily ran after Shishupāla and spoke unto him sweetly and in a conciliating tone the following words:—

'O lord of earth, what thou hast said is scarcely proper for thee! O king, it is highly sinful and needlessly cruel. Insult not Bhishma, O king, by saying that he doth not know what virtue is. Behold, these many kings, older than thou art, all approve of the worship offered unto Krishna! It behoveth thee to bear it patiently like them. O ruler of Chedi, Bhishma knoweth Krishna truly. Thou knowest him not so well as this one of the Kuru race!'

"Bhishma also, after this, said, 'He that approveth not the worship offered unto Krishna, the oldest one in the universe, deserveth neither soft words nor conciliation. That chief of warriors of the Kshatriya race, who having overcome a Kshatriya in battle and brought him under his power, setteth him free, becometh the *guru* of the vanquished one. I do not behold in this assembly of kings even one ruler of men who hath not been vanquished in battle by the energy of this son of the Sātwata race. This one here, of undefiled glory, deserveth to be worshipped not by ourselves alone. Of mighty arms, he deserveth to be worshipped by the three worlds. Innumerable bulls among Kshatriyas have been vanquished in battle by Krishna. The whole universe without limits is established in him of the Vrishni race. Therefore do we worship Krishna amongst the best and the oldest, and not others. It behoveth thee not to say so! Let thy understanding be never so! I have, O king, waited upon many persons that are old in knowledge. I have heard, from all those wise men while talking, of the numerous much-regarded attributes of the accomplished Shauri. I have also heard many times all the acts recited by people that Krishna of great intelligence hath performed since his birth. And, O king of Chedi, we do not, from caprice, or keeping in view our relationship or the benefits he may confer on us, worship

Jānarddana who is worshipped by the good on earth and who is the source of the happiness of every creature. We have offered unto him the first worship, in view of his fame, his heroism, his success. There is none here of even tender years whom we have not taken into consideration. Passsing over many persons that are foremost for their virtues, we have regarded Hari as deserving of the first worship. Amongst Brāhmanas he that is superior in knowledge, amongst Kshatriyas he that is superior in strength, amongst Vaisyas he that is superior in possessions and wealth, and amongst Sudras he that is superior in years, deserveth to be worshipped. In the matter of the worship offered unto Govinda, there are two reasons, *viz*, knowledge of the Vedas and their branches, and also excess of strength. Who else is there in the world of men, than Keshava, that is so distinguished? Indeed, liberality, cleverness, knowledge of the Vedas, bravery, modesty, achievements, excellent intelligence, humility, beauty, firmness, contentment, and prosperity, all dwell for ever in Achyuta. Therefore, ye kings, it behoveth ye to approve of the worship that hath been offered unto Krishna who is of great accomplishments, who is preceptor, father, *guru*, worthy of the *Argha* and deserving of (everybody's) worship! Hrishikesha is sacrificial priest, *guru*, worthy of being solicited to accept one's daughter in marriage, *Snātaka*, king, friend; therefore hath Achyuta been worshipped by us. Krishna is the origin of the universe and that in which the universe is to dissolve. Indeed, this universe of mobile and immobile creatures hath sprung into existence for Krishna only. He is the unmanifest primal matter (*Avyaktā Prakriti*), the creator, the eternal,—and beyond (the ken of) all creatures. Therefore doth he of unfading glory deserve the highest worship. The intellect, the seat of sensibility, the primal elements, air, heat, water, space, earth, and the four kinds of life (oviparous, viviparous, born of filth and vegetables), are all established in Krishna. The sun, the moon, the constellations, the planets, the principal directions, the intermediate directions, are all established in Krishna. As the *Agni-hotra* is the foremost among all Vedic sacrifices, as the *Gāyatri* is the foremost among metres, as the king is

the foremost among men, as the ocean is the foremost among all rivers, as the moon is the foremost among all constellations, as the sun is the foremost among all luminous bodies, as the Meru is the foremost among all mountains, as Gadura is the foremost among all birds, so, as long as the upward, downward, and side-way course of the universe lasteth, Keshava is the foremost among all the worlds including the regions of the celestials. This Shishupāla is a mere boy and hence he knoweth Krishna not, and ever and everywhere speaketh of Krishna thus. This ruler of Chedi will never see virtue in that light in which he that is desirous of acquiring high merit will see it. Who is there among the old and the young or among these illustrious lords of earth who doth not regard Krishna deserving of worship or who doth not worship Krishna? If Shishupāla regardeth this worship as undeserved, it behoveth him to do that which is proper in this matter.' "

Thus ends the thirty-eighth Section in the Arghāharana of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XXXIX.

(Arghāharana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "The mighty Bhishma ceased, having said this. Sahadeva then answered (Shishupāla) in words of grave import, saying, 'If amongst ye there be any king that can not bear to see Keshava of dark hue, the slayer of Keshi, the possessor of immeasurable energy, worshipped by me, this my foot is placed on the heads of all mighty ones (like him). When I say this, let that one give me an adequate reply. And let those kings that possess intelligence approve the worship of (Krishna who is) the preceptor, the father, the *guru*, and who deserveth the *Argha* and the worship (already offered unto him).'

"When Sahadeva thus showed his foot, no one among those intelligent and wise and proud and mighty monarchs said anything. And a shower of flowers fell on Sahadeva's head, and an incorporeal voice said, 'Excellent,' Excellent.' Then Nārada, clad in a black deer-skin, speaking of both the

future and the past, that dispeller of all doubts, fully cognisant of all the worlds, said, in the midst of innumerable creatures, these words of the clearest import,—'Those men that will not worship Krishna with eyes like lotus leaves, should be regarded as dead though moving and should never be talked to on any occasion.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Then that god among men, Sahadeva, cognisant of the distinction between a Brāhmana and a Kshatriya, having worshipped those that deserved worship, completed that ceremony. But upon Krishna having received the first worship, Sunitha (Shishupāla)—that mower of foes—with eyes red as copper from anger, addressed those rulers of men and said, 'When I am here to head ye all, what are ye thinking of now? Arrayed let us stand in battle against the assembled Vrishnis and the Pāndavas!' And the bull of the Chedis, having thus stirred the kings up, began to consult with them how to obstruct the completion of the sacrifice. And the invited monarchs who had come to the sacrifice, all with Sunitha as their chief, looked angry and their faces became pale. And they all said, 'We must so act that the final sacrificial rite performed by Yudhishthira and the worship of Krishna may not be regarded as having been acquiesced in by us.' And impelled by a belief in their power and great assurance, the kings, deprived of reason by anger, began to say this. And moved by self-confidence and thinking of the insult offered unto them, the monarchs repeatedly exclaimed thus. And though sought to be appeased by their friends, their faces glowed with anger like those of roaring lions driven away from their prey. And Krishna then understood that that vast sea of monarchs with its countless waves of troops was preparing for a terrific rush."

Thus ends the thirty-ninth Section in the Arghāharana of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XL.

(Shishupāla-badha Parva.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "Beholding that vast assembly of kings agitated by wrath, even like the terrific sea agitated by the winds that blow at the time of the universal dissolution, Yudhishthira addressing the aged Bhishma, that chief of intelligent men and the grand-sire of the Kurus, —even like that slayer of foes, Puruhita (Indra) of abundant energy, addressing Vrihaspati,—said, 'This vast ocean of kings, hath been agitated by wrath ! Tell me, O grand-sire, what I should do in view of this! And, O grand-sire, tell me now what I should do that my sacrifice may not be obstructed and my subjects may not be injured !'

"When king Yudhishthira the just, conversant with morality, said this, Bhishma, the grand-sire of the Kurus, spoke these words in reply. 'Fear not, O tiger of the Kurus! Can the dog slay the lion? I have before this settled a way that is both beneficial and comformable to policy. As dogs in a pack approaching the lion that is asleep bark together, so are all these lords of earth! Indeed, O child, like dogs before the lion, these (monarchs) are barking in rage before the sleeping lion of the Vrishni race! Achyuta now is like a lion that is asleep. Until he waketh up, this chief of the Chedis—this lion among men—maketh these monarchs look like lions! O child, O thou foremost of all monarchs, this Shishupāla possessed of little intelligence is desirous of taking along (with him) all these kings, through the agency of him who is the soul of the universe, to the regions of Yama! Assuredly, O Bhārata, Vishnu hath been desirous of taking back unto himself the energy that liveth in this Shishupāla! O chief of all intelligent men, O son of Kunti, the intelligence of this wicked-minded king of the Chedis as also of all these monarchs, hath become perverse. Indeed, the intelligence of all those whom this tiger among men desireth to take unto himself, becometh perverse even like that of this king of the Chedis. O Yudhishthira, Mādhava is the progenitor as

also the destroyer of all created beings of the four species existing in the three worlds.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Then the ruler of the Chedis, having heard these words of Bhishma, addressed the latter, O Bhārata, in words that were stern and rough."

Thus ends the fortieth Section in the Shishupāla-badha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XLI.

(Shishupāla-badha Parva continued.)

"Shishupāla spoke. 'Old and infamous wretch of thy race, art thou not ashamed of affrighting all these monarchs with these numerous false terrors? Thou art the foremost of the Kurus, and living as thou dost in the third state (celebacy) it is but fit that thou shouldst give such counsel that is so wide of morality! Like a boat tied to another boat, or the blind following the blind, are the Kurus who have thee for their guide! Thou hast once more simply pained our hearts by reciting particularly the deeds of this one (Krishna), such as the slaying of Putanā and others. Arrogant and ignorant as thou art, and desirous of praising Keshava, why doth not this tongue of thine split into an hundred parts? That cow-herd in respect of whom even men of little intelligence may address invectives, how dost thou, superior as thou art in knowledge, desire to praise? If Krishna in his infancy slew a vulture, what is there remarkable in that, or in that other feat of his, O Bhishma, *viz*, in his slaughter of Ashwa and Vrishava, both of whom were unskilled in battle? If this one threw down by a kick an inanimate piece of wood, *viz*, a car, what is there, O Bhishma, wonderful in that? O Bhishma, what is there remarkable in this one's having supported for a week the Govardhana mount, which is like an ant-hill? 'While sporting on the top of a mountain, this one ate a large quantity of food,'—hearing these words of thine many have wondered exceedingly. But, O thou who art conversant with the rules of morality, is not this more wonderful still that that great person, *viz*, Kansa,

whose food this one ate hath been slain by him? Thou infamous one of the Kuru race, thou art ignorant of the rules of morality! Thou hast not ever heard, from wise men speaking unto thee, what I would now tell thee! The virtuous and the wise always instruct the honest that weapons must never be made to descend upon women and kine and Brāhmanas and upon those whose food hath been taken as also those whose shelter hath been enjoyed! It seemeth, O Bhishma, that all this teaching hath been thrown away upon thee! O infamous one of the Kuru race, desiring to praise Keshava, thou describest him before me as great and superior in knowledge and in age, as if I knew nothing. If at thy word, O Bhishma, one that hath slain women and kine be worshipped, what then is to become of this great lesson? How can he deserve praise who is such, O Bhishma? 'This one is the foremost of all wise men,'—'This one is the lord of the universe,'—hearing these words of thine, Janārddana believeth that they are all true. But surely, they are all false! The verses that a chaunter sings, even if he sings them often, produce no impression on him. And every creature acts according to his disposition, even like the bird *Bhulinga* (that picks the particles of flesh from between the lion's teeth, though preaching against rashness). Assuredly thy disposition is very mean. There is not the least doubt about it. And so also, it seemeth, that the sons of Pāndu, who regard Krishna as deserving of worship and who have thee for their guide, are possessed of a sinful disposition. Posessing a knowledge of virtue, thou hast fallen off from the path of the wise. Therefore art thou sinful. Who, O Bhishma, knowing himself to be virtuous and superior in knowledge, will so act as thou hast from motives of virtue? If thou knowest the ways of morality, if thy mind is guided by wisdom, blessed be thou, why, O Bhishma, was that virtuous girl Amvā, who had set her heart upon another, ravished by thee so proud of wisdom and virtue? Thy brother Vichitravirya, conformably to the ways of the honest and the virtuous, knowing that girl's condition, married her not though brought by thee! Boasting as thou dost of virtue, in thy very sight, upon the widow of thy brother were sons

begotten by another according to the ways of the honest! Where is thy virtue, O Bhishma? This thy celebacy, which thou leadest either from ignorance or impotence, is fruitless! O thou who art conversant with virtue, I do not behold thy prosperity! Thou who expoundest morality in this way dost not seem to have ever waited upon the old. Worship, gift, study, sacrifices distinguished by large gifts to Brāhmanas,—these all equal not in merit even one-sixteenth part of that which is obtainable by the possession of a son. The merit, O Bhishma, that is acquired by numberless vows and fasts assuredly becomes fruitless in the case of one that is childless. Thou art childless and old and the expounder of false morality. Like the swan in story thou shalt now die at the hands of thy relatives. Other men, possessed of knowledge, have said this of old. I will presently recite it fully in thy hearing.

"'There lived of yore an old swan on the sea-coast. Ever speaking of morality but otherwise in his conduct, he used to instruct the feathery tribe. *Practise ye virtue and forego sin*,—these were the words that other truthful birds, O Bhishma, constantly heard him utter! And the other oviparous creatures ranging the sea, it hath been heard by us, O Bhishma, used for virtue's sake to bring him food. And, O Bhisma, all those other birds, keeping their eggs with him, ranged and dived in the waters of the sea. And the sinful old swan, attentive to his own pursuits, used to eat up the eggs of all those birds that foolishly trusted in him. After a while when the eggs were decreasing in number, another bird of great wisdom had his suspicions roused and he even witnessed (the affair) one day. And having witnessed the sinful act of the (old) swan, that bird in great sorrow spoke unto all the other birds. Then, O thou best of the Kurus, all those birds witnessing with their own eyes the act of the old swan, approached and slew that wretch of false conduct.

"'Thy behaviour, O Bhishma, is even like that of the old swan. These lords of earth might slay thee in anger like those creatures of the feathery tribe slaying the old swan. Persons conversant with the Puranas recite a proverb, O Bhishma, as regards this occurrence. I shall, O Bhārata,

repeat it to thee fully. It is even this: *O thou that supportest thyself on thy wings, though thy heart is affected (by the passions), thou preachest yet (of virtue); but this thy sinful act of eating up the eggs transgresseth thy speech!*"

Thus ends the forty-first Section in the Shishupāla-badha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XLII.

(Shishupala-badha Parva continued.)

"Shishupāla spoke. 'That mighty king Jarāsandha who desired not to fight with Krishna, saying, *He is a slave,* was worthy of my greatest esteem. Who will regard as praiseworthy that which was done by Keshava, as also by Bhima and Arjuna, in the matter of Jarāsandha's slaughter? Entering by an improper gate, disguised as a Brāhmana, this Krishna observed the strength of king Jarāsandha. And when that monarch offered at first unto this wretch water to wash his feet, it was then that he denied his Brāhmanhood from seeming motives of virtue. And when Jarāsandha, O thou of the Kuru race, asked Krishna and Bhima and Dhananjaya to eat, it was this Krishna that refused that monarch's request! If this one is the lord of the universe as this fool representeth him, why doth he not regard himself as a Brāhmana? This, however, surpriseth me greatly that though thou leadest the Pāndavas away from the path of the wise, they yet regard thee honest. Or, perhaps, this is scarcely a matter of surprise in respect of those that have thee, O Bhārata, womanish in disposition and bent down with age, for their counsellor in everything.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words of Shishupāla, harsh both in import and sound, that foremost of mighty men, Bhima-sena endued with energy, became angry. And his eyes, naturally large and expanding and like unto lotus leaves, became more extended still and red as copper under the influence of that rage. And the assembled monarchs beheld on his forehead three lines of wrinkles like the Gangā of treble currents on the treble-peaked mountain.

Having begun to grind his teeth in rage, the monarchs beheld his face resemble that of Death himself, at the end of the *Yuga*, prepared to swallow every creature. And as the hero endued with great energy of mind was about to leap up impetuously, the mighty-armed Bhishma caught him like Mahādeva seizing Mahāsena (the celestial generalissimo). And, O Bhārata, Bhima's wrath was soon appeased by Bhishma the grand-sire of the Kurus, with various kinds of counsel. And that chastiser of foes could not disobey Bhishma's words, like the ocean that never transgresseth, even when swollen with the waters of the rainy season, its continents. But, O king, even though Bhima was angry, the brave Shishupāla, depending on his own manhood, trembled not in fear. And though Bhima was leaping up impetuously every moment, Shishupāla bestowed not a single thought on him, like a lion that recks not a little animal in rage. The powerful king of Chedi, beholding Bhima of terrible prowess in such rage, laughingly said, 'Release him, O Bhishma! Let all the monarchs behold him scorched by my prowess like an insect in fire.' Hearing these words of the ruler of the Chedis, Bhishma, that foremost of the Kurus and chief of all intelligent men, spoke unto Bhima these words."

Thus ends the forty-second Section in the Shishupāla-badha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XLIII.

(Shishupāla-badha Parva continued.)

"Bhishma said, 'This Shishupāla was born in the line of the king of Chedi, with three eyes and four hands. And as soon as he was born, he screamed and brayed like an ass. On that account, his father and mother along with their relatives, were struck with fear. And beholding these extraordinary omens, his parents resolved to abandon him. But an incorporeal voice, about this time, said unto the king and his wife with their ministers and priest, all with hearts paralysed by anxiety, these words :—*This thy son, O king, that hath been born will become both fortunate and superior in*

strength. Therefore thou hast no fear from him. Indeed cherish the child without anxiety. He will not die (in childhood). His time is not yet come. He that will slay him with weapons hath also been born. Hearing these words, the mother, rendered anxious by affection for her son, addressed the invisible being and said, *I bow with joined hands unto him that hath uttered these words respecting my son; whether he be an exalted divinity or any other being, let him tell me another word. I desire to hear who will be the slayer of this my son.* The invisible being then said, '*He upon whose lap this child being taken his superfluous arms will fall down upon the ground like a pair of five-headed snakes, and observing whom his third eye on the forehead will disappear, will be his slayer?*' Hearing of the child's three eyes and four arms as also of the words of the invisible being, all the kings of the earth went to Chedi to behold him. And the king of Chedi worshipping, as each deserved, the monarchs that came, gave his child upon their laps one after another. And though the child was placed upon the laps of a thousand kings one after another, yet that which the incorporeal voice had said came not to pass. And having heard of all this at Dwāravati, the mighty Yādava heroes Sankarshana and Janārddana also went to the capital of the Chedis, to see their father's sister—that daughter of the Yādavas (the queen of Chedi). And saluting everybody according to his rank and the king and queen also, and inquiring after everybody's welfare, both Rāma and Keshava took their seats. And after those heroes had been worshipped, the queen with great pleasure herself placed the child on the lap of Dāmodara. And as soon as the child was placed on his lap, those superfluous arms of his fell down and the eye on his forehead also disappeared. And beholding this, the queen in alarm and anxiety begged of Krishna a boon. And she said,—O mighty-armed Krishna, I am afflicted with fear; grant me a boon. Thou art the assurer of all afflicted ones and the dispeller of everybody's fears.—Thus addressed by her, Krishna, that son of the Yadu race, said,—Fear not, O goddess! Thou art acquainted with morality. Thou hast

no fear from me! What boon shall I give thee? What shall I do, O aunt?' Whether able or not, I will do thy bidding.—Thus spoken to by Krishna, the queen said,—O thou of great strength, thou wilt have to pardon the offences of Shishupāla for my sake, O tiger of the Yadu race! Know, O lord, even this is the boon that I ask.—Krishna then said,—O aunt, even when he will deserve to be slain, I will pardon an hundred offences of his! Grieve thou not.—'

"Bhishma continued. 'Even thus, O Bhima, is this wretch of a king Shishupāla of wicked heart, who, proud of the boon granted by Govinda, summons thee to battle!' "

Thus ends the forty-third Section in the Shishupāla-badha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XLIV.

(Shishupāla-badha Parva continued.)

"Bhishma said, 'The desire under which the ruler of Chedi summoneth thee to fight, though thou art of strength that knoweth no deterioration, is scarcely his own desire. Assuredly, this is the purpose of Krishna himself, the lord of the universe. O Bhima, what king is there on earth that would dare abuse me thus as this wretch of his race, already possessed by Death, hath done today? This mighty-armed one is, without doubt, a portion of Hari's energy. And surely, the Lord desireth to take back unto himself that energy of his own; in consequence of which, O tiger of the Kuru race, this tiger-like king of Chedi so wicked of heart roareth in such a way little caring us all.' "

Vaisampāyana continued "Hearing these words of Bhishma, the king of Chedi could not bear them. He then replied in rage unto Bhishma in these words:—

'Let our foes, O Bhishma, be endued with that prowess which this Keshava hath whom thou like a professional chaunter of hymns praisest so rising repeatedly from thy seat! If thy mind, O Bhishma, delighteth so in praising others, then praise thou these kings leaving off Krishna! Praise thou this excellent of kings, Darada, the ruler of Vāhlika, who rent

this earth as soon as he was born. Praise thou, O Bhishma, this Karna the ruler of the territories of Anga and Vanga, who is equal in strength unto him of a thousand eyes, who draweth a large bow, who endued with mighty arms owneth these celestial ear-rings of heavenly make with which he was born and this coat of mail possessing the splendour of the rising sun, who vanquished in a wrestling encounter the invincible Jarāsandha equal unto Vāsava himself, and who tore and mangled that monarch. O Bhishma, praise Drona and Aswatthāman, who both, father and son, are mighty warriors, worthy of praise, and the best of Brāhmanas, and either of whom, O Bhishma, if enraged, could annilhilate this earth with its mobile and immobile creatures, as I believe. I do not behold, O Bhishma, the king that is equal in battle unto Drona or Aswatthāman! Why wishest thou not to praise them? Passing over Duryodhana, that mighty-armed king of kings, who is unequalled in the whole earth girt with her seas, and king Jayadratha accomplished in weapons and endued with great prowess, and Druma the preceptor of the Kimpurushas and celebrated over the world for prowess, and Sharadwāta's son, old Kripa, the preceptor of the Bhārata princes and endued with great energy, why dost thou praise Keshava? Passing over that foremost of bowmen, that excellent of kings, Rukmi of great energy, why praisest thou Keshava? Passing over Bhishmaka of abundant energy, and king Dantavakra, and Bhagadatta known for his innumerable sacrificial stakes, and Jayatsena the king of Magadha, and Virāta and Drupada, and Shakuni and Vrihadvala, and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, Pāndya, Shweta, Uttama, Shankha of great prosperity, the proud Vrishasena, the powerful Ekalavya, and the great chairoteer Kālinga of abundant energy, why dost thou praise Keshava? And, O Bhishma, if thy mind is always inclined to sing the praises of others, why dost thou not praise Shalya and other rulers of the earth? O king, what can be done by me when (it seemeth) thou hast not heard anything before from virtuous old men giving lessons in morality? Hast thou never heard, O Bhishma, that reproach and glorification, both of self and others, are

not the practices of those that are respectable ? There is no one that approveth thy conduct, O Bhishma, in unceasingly praising with devotion, from ignorance alone, this Keshava so unworthy of praise ! How dost thou, from thy wish alone, establish the whole universe in the servitor and cowherd of Bhoja (Kansa) ? Perhaps, O Bhārata, this thy inclination is not conformable to thy true nature, like to what may be seen in the bird *Bhulinga* as hath already been said by me. There is a bird called *Bhulinga* living on the other side of the Himavat. O Bhishma, that bird ever uttereth words of adverse import. *Never do anything rash,*—this is what she always sayeth, but never understandeth that she herself always acteth very rashly. Possessed of little intelligence that bird picketh from the lion's mouth the pieces of flesh sticking between the teeth, and at a time when the lion is employed in eating. Assuredly, O Bhishma, that bird liveth at the pleasure of the lion. O sinful wretch, thou always speakest like that bird. And assuredly, O Bhishma, thou art alive at the pleasure only of these kings. Employed in acts contrary to the opinions of all, there is none else like thee !' "

Vaisampāyana continued. " Hearing these harsh words of the ruler of Chedi, Bhishma, O king, said these words in the hearing of the king of Chedi :—'Truly am I alive at the pleasure of these rulers of earth ! But I do not regard these kings as equal to even a straw.' As soon as these words were spoken by Bhishma, the kings became inflamed with wrath. And the down of some amongst them stood erect and some began to reprove Bhishma. And hearing those words of Bhishma, some amongst them that were wielders of large bows exclaimed, 'This wretched Bhishma, though old, is exceedingly boastful. He deserveth not pardon. Therefore, ye kings, incensed with rage as this Bhishma is, it is well that this wretch were slain like an animal. Or, mustering together, let us burn him in a fire of grass or straws.' Hearing these words of the monarchs, Bhishma the grand-sire of the Kurus, endued with great intelligence, addressing those lords of earth, said, 'I do not see the end of our speeches, for words may be answered with words. Therefore, ye lords of earth, listen ye all unto

what I say! Whether I be slain like an animal or burnt in a fire of grass and straws, thus do I distinctly place my foot on the heads of ye all. Here is Govinda, that knoweth no deterioration. Him have we worshipped. Let him who wisheth for speedy death, summon to battle Mādhava of dark hue and the wielder of the discus and the mace; and falling enter into and mingle with the body of this god!'"

Thus ends the forty-fourth Section in the Shishupāla-badha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XLV.

(Shishupāla-badha Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "Hearing these words of Bhishma, the ruler of Chedi endued with exceeding prowess, desirous of combating with Vāsuḍeva, addressed him and said, 'O Janārddana, I challenge thee! Come, fight with me until I slay thee today with all the Pāndavas. For, O Krishna, the sons of Pāndu also, who passing by all these kings have worshipped thee who art no king, deserve to be slain by me along with thee! Even this is my opinion, O Krishna, that they who from childishness have worshipped thee, as if thou deservest it although thou art unworthy of worship, being only a slave and a wretch and no king, deserve to be slain by me.' Having said this, that tiger among kings stood there roaring in anger. And after Shishupāla had ceased, Krishna, addressing all the kings in the presence of the Pāndavas, spoke these words in a soft voice:—'Ye kings, this wicked-minded one, who is the son of a daughter of the Sātwata race, is a great enemy of us of the Sātwata race; and though we never seek to injure him he even seeketh our evil. This wretch of cruel deeds, ye kings, hearing that we had gone to the city of Prāgjyotisha, came and burnt Dwārakā although he is the son of my father's sister! While king Bhoja was sporting on the Raivataka hill, this one fell upon the attendants of that king and slew and led away many of them in chains to his own city. Sinful in all his purposes,

this wretch, in order to obstruct the sacrifice of my father, stole the sacrificial horse of the horse-sacrifice that had been let loose under the guard of armed men. Prompted by sinful motives, this one ravished the reluctant wife of the innocent Vabhru (Akrura) on her way from Dwārakā to the country of the Sauviras. This injurer of his maternal uncle, disguising himself in the attire of the king of Kārusha, ravished also the innocent Bhadrā, the princess of Vishāla, the intended bride of king Kārusha. I have patiently borne all these sorrows for the sake of my father's sister. It is, however, very fortunate that all this hath occurred today in the presence of all the kings. Behold ye all today the hostility this one beareth towards me. And know ye also all that he hath done me at my back. For the excess of that pride in which he hath indulged in the presence of all these monarchs, he deserveth to be slain by me. I am ill able to pardon today the injuries that he hath done me. Desirous of speedy death, this fool had desired Rukmini. But the fool obtained her not like a Sudra failing to obtain the audition of the Vedas.' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words of Vāsudeva, all the assembled monarchs began to reprove the ruler of Chedi. But the powerful Shishupāla, having heard these words, laughed aloud and spoke thus:—'O Krishna, art thou not ashamed in saying in this assembly, especially before all these kings, that Rukmini (thy wife) had been intended for me? O slayer of Madhu, who else is there than thee, who regarding himself a man would say in the midst of respectable men that his wife had been intended for somebody else? O Krishna, pardon me if thou pleasest, or pardon me not! But angry or friendly, what canst thou do unto me?'

"And while Shishupāla was speaking thus, the exalted slayer of Madhu thought in his mind of the discus that humbleth the pride of the Asuras. And as soon as the discus came into his hands, skilled in speech the illustrious one loudly uttered these words:—'Listen ye lords of earth, why this one had hitherto been pardoned, by me! Asked by his mother, an hundred offences (of his) were to be pardoned by me. Even this was the boon she had asked and even this I

granted her. That number, ye kings, hath become full. I shall now slay him in your presence, ye monarchs !' Having said this, the chief of the Yadus, that slayer of all foes, in anger instantly cut off the head of the ruler of Chedi by means of his discus. And the mighty-armed one fell down like a cliff struck with thunder. And, O monarch, the assembled kings then beheld a fierce energy, like unto the sun in the sky, issue out of the body of the king of Chedi. And, O king, that energy then adored Krishna possessed of eyes like lotus leaves and worshipped of all the worlds, and entered his body. And all the kings beholding the energy which entered that mighty-armed chief of men regarded it as wonderful. And when Krishna had slain the king of Chedi, the sky though cloudless poured showers of rain, and blasting thunders were hurled, and the earth itself began to tremble. And some there were among the kings who spoke not a word during those unspeakable moments but merely sat gazing at Janārddana. And some there were that rubbed in rage their palms with their forefingers. And there were others who deprived of reason by rage bit their lips with their teeth. And some amongst the kings applauded him of the Vrishni race in private. And some there were that became excited with anger ; while others became mediators. And the great Rishis with pleased hearts praised Keshava and went away. And all the high-souled Brāhmanas and the mighty kings that were there, beholding Krishna's prowess, became glad at heart and praised him.

"Yudhisthira then commanded his brothers to perform without delay the funeral rites of king Shishupāla, the brave son of Damaghosha, with proper respect. And the sons of Pāndu obeyed the behest of their brother. And Yudhishthira then, with all the kings, installed the son of king Shishupāla in the sovereignty of the Chedis.

"Then that sacrifice, O monarch, of the king of the Kurus possessed of great energy, blessed with every kind of prosperity, became exceedingly handsome and pleasing unto all young men. And commenced auspiciously, and all impediments removed, and furnished with abundance of wealth and corn, as also with plenty of rice and every kind of food,

it was properly watched by Keshava. And Yudhishthira in due time completed the great sacrifice. And the mighty-armed Janārddana, the exalted Shauri, with his bow called *Shārnga* and his discus and mace, guarded that sacrifice till its completion. And all the Kshatriya monarchs, having approached the virtuous Yudhishthira who had bathed after the conclusion of the sacrifice, said these words :—'By good fortune thou hast grown, O virtuous one ! Thou hast obtained the imperial dignity ! O thou of the Ajamida race, by thee hath been spread the fame of thy whole race ! And, O king of kings by this act of thine, thou hast also acquired great religious merit ! We have been worshipped by thee to the full extent of our desires. We now tell thee that we are desirous of returning to our own kingdoms. It behoveth thee to grant us permission ! '

"Hearing these words of the monarchs, king Yudhishthira the just, worshipping them as each deserved, commanded his brothers, saying, 'These monarchs had all come to us at their own pleasure. These chastisers of foes are now desirous of returning to their own kingdoms, bidding me farewell, Blest be ye, follow ye these excellent kings to the confines of our own dominions.' Hearing these words of their brother, the virtuous Pāndava princes followed the kings, one after another as each deserved. The powerful Dhrishta-dyumna followed without loss of time king Virata ; and Dhananjaya followed the illustrious and mighty charioteer Yajnasena ; and the mighty Bhimasena followed Bhishma and Dhritarāshtra ; and Sahadeva—that master of battle, followed the brave Drona and his son ; and Nakula, O king, followed Suvala with his son ; and the sons of Draupadi with the son of Subhadrā followed those mighty warriors—the kings of the mountainous countries. And other bulls among Kshatriyas followed other Kshatriyas. And the Brāhmanas by thousands, also went away, duly worshipped.

"And after all the kings and the Brāhmanas had gone away, the powerful Vāsudeva addressing Yudhishthira said, 'O son of the Kuru race, with thy leave, I also desire to go to Dwārakā. By great good fortune, thou hast accomplished

the foremost of sacrifices—Rājasuya!' Thus addressed by Janārddana, Yudhishthira replied, 'Owing to thy grace, O Govinda, have I accomplished the great sacrifice! And it is owing to thy grace that the whole Kshatriya world, having accepted my sway, had come hither with valuable tribute. O hero, without thee, my heart never feeleth any delight. How can I, therefore, O hero, give thee, O sinless one, leave to go? But thou must have to go to the city of Dwārakā.' The virtuous Hari of world-wide fame, thus addressed by Yudhishthira, cheerfully went with his cousin to Prithā and said, 'O aunt, thy sons have now obtained the imperial dignity. They have obtained vast wealth and been also crowned with success. Be pleased with all this. Commanded by thee, O aunt, I desire to go to Dwārakā!' After this, Keshava bade farewell to Draupadi and Subhadrā. Coming out then of the inner apartments accompanied by Yudhishthira, he performed his ablutions and went through the daily rites of worship, and then made the Brāhmanas utter benedictions. Then the mighty-armed Dāruka came there with a car of excellent design and body resembling the clouds. And beholding that Gadura-bannered car arrived thither, the high-souled one, with eyes like lotus leaves, walked round it respectfully and ascending on it set out for Dwārāvati. And king Yudhishthira the just, blessed with prosperity, accompanied by his brothers, followed on foot the mighty Vāsudeva. Then Hari with eyes like lotus leaves, stopping that best of cars for a moment, addressing Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, said, 'O king of kings, cherish thou thy subjects, with ceaseless vigilance and patience. And as the clouds are unto all creatures, as the large tree of spreading boughs unto birds, as he of a thousand eyes unto the immortals, be thou the refuge and support of thy relatives!' And Krishna and Yudhishthira having thus talked unto each other, took each other's leave and returned to their respective homes. And, O king, after the chief of the Swāttata race had gone to Dwāravati, king Duryodhana alone, with king Suvala's son, Shakuni,—these two bulls among men,—continued to live in that celestial assembly house."

Thus ends the forty-fifth Section in the Shishupāla-badha of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XLVI.

(*Dyuta Parva.*)

Vaisampāyana spoke. "When that foremost of sacrifices, the Rājasuya, so difficult of accomplishment, was completed, Vyasa surrounded by his disciples presented himself before Yudhishthira. And Yudhishthira, upon beholding him, quickly rose from his seat, surrounded by his brothers, and worshipped the Rishi who was his grand-father, with water to wash his feet and the offer of a seat. And the illustrious one having taken his seat on a costly carpet inlaid with gold, addressed king Yudhishthira the just and said, 'Take thy seat!' And after the king had taken his seat surrounded by his brothers, the illustrious Vyasa, skilled in speech, said, 'O son of Kunti, thou growest from good fortune! Thou hast obtained imperial sway so difficult of acquisition! And, O perpetuator of the Kuru race, all the Kauravas have prospered in consequence in thee! O emperor, I have been duly worshipped. I desire now to go with thy leave!' King Yudhishthira the just, thus addressed by the Rishi of dark hue, saluted (him) his grand-father and touching his feet said, 'O chief of men, a doubt, difficult of being dispelled, hath risen within me. O bull among regenerate ones, save thee there is none to remove it. The illustrious Rishi Nārada said that (as a consequence of the Rājasuya sacrifice) three kinds of portents, *viz*, celestial, atmospherical, and terrestrial happen, O grandsire! Have those portents been ended by the fall of the king of the Chedis?'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words of the king, the exalted son of Parāshara, the island-born Vyasa of dark hue, spoke these words;—'For thirteen years, O king, those portents will bear mighty consequences, even for the destruction, O king of kings, of all the Kshatriyas. In course of time, O bull of the Bhārata race, making thee the sole cause, the assembled Kshatriyas of the world will all be destroyed;

O Bhārata, for the sins of Duryodhana and through the might of Bhima and Arjuna. In thy dream, O king of kings, thou wilt behold towards the end of this night the blue-throated Bhava, the slayer of Tripura, ever fixed in meditation, having the bull for his mark, and drinking off the human skull, and fierce and terrible, that lord of all creatures, that god of gods, the husband of Umā, otherwise called Hara and Sharva, and Vrisha, armed with the trident and the bow called *Pinaka*, and attired in animal skin. And thou wilt behold Shiva, tall and white as the Kailāsa cliff, and seated on his bull, gazing, unceasingly towards the direction (south) presided over by the king of the *Pitris*. Even this will be the dream thou wilt dream to day, O king of kings! Do not grieve for dreaming such a dream. None can rise superior to the influence of Time. Blest be thou! I will now proceed towards the Kailāsa mountain. Rule thou the earth, with vigilance, and steadiness, and patiently bearing every privation!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Having said this, the illustrious and island-born Vyasa of dark hue, accompanied by his disciples ever following the dictates of the Vedas, proceeded towards Kailasa. And after the grand-father had thus gone away, the king, affected with anxiety and grief, began to think continuously upon what the Rishi had said. And he said to himself, 'Indeed, what the Rishi hath said must come to pass. Who will succeed in warding off the fates by exertion alone?' Then Yudhishthira, endued with great energy, addressing all his brothers, said, 'Ye tigers among men, ye have heard what the island-born Rishi hath told me. Having heard the words of the Rishi, even this is the firm resolution at which I have arrived, *viz*, that I should die when I am ordained to be the cause of the destruction of all the Kshatriyas. Ye children, if Time hath intended so, what need is there for me to live?' Hearing these words of the king, Fālguna replied, 'O king, yield not thyself to this terrible depression that is destructive of reason! Mustering fortitude, O great king, do what would be beneficial.' Yudhishthira then, firm in truth, thinking all the while of Dwaipāyana's words, answered his brothers, thus:—'Blest be ye! Listen to my vow from this day! For

thirteen years what other purpose have I to live for? I shall not speak a hrash word to my brothers or to any of the kings of the earth. Living under the command of my relatives, I shall practise virtue, exemplifying my vow. If I live in this way, making no distinction between my own children and others, there will be no disagreement (between me and others). It is disagreement that is the cause of war in the world. Keeping war at a distance, and ever doing what is agreeable to others, evil reputation will not be mine in the world, ye bulls among men!' Hearing these words of their eldest brother, the Pāndavas, always engaged in doing what was agreeable to him, approved of them. And Yudhishthira the just, having pledged so along with his brothers, in the midst of that assembly, gratified his *Priests* as also the gods with due ceremonies. And, O bull of the Bhārata race, after all the monarchs had gone away, Yudhishthira along with his brothers, having performed the usual auspicious rites, accompanied by his ministers entered his own palace. And, O ruler of men, king Duryodhana and Cakuni the son of Suvala continued to dwell in that delightful assembly house."

Thus ends the forty-sixth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XLVII.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"That bull among men, Duryodhana, continued to dwell in that assembly house (of the Pāndavas). And with Cakuni, the Kuru prince slowly examined the whole of that mansion. And the Kuru prince beheld in it many celestial designs, which he had never seen before in the city called after the elephant (Hastināpore). And one day king Duryodhana in going over that mansion came upon a crystal surface. And the king, from ignorance, mistaking it for a piece of water, drew up his clothes. And afterwords finding his mistake out, the king wandered over the mansion in great sorrow. And sometime after, the king, mistaking a lake of crystal water adorned with lotuses of crystal petals for land,

fell into it with all his clothes on. Beholding Suyodhana fall into the lake, the mighty Bhima laughed aloud as also the menials of the palace. And the servants, at the command of the king, soon brought him dry and handsome clothes. Beholding the plight of Duryodhana, the mighty Bhima and Arjuna and both the twins,—all laughed aloud. And incapable of putting up with insults, Duryodhana could not bear that laugh of theirs. Concealing his emotions he even cast not his eyes on them. And beholding the monarch once more draw up his clothes to cross a piece of dry land which he had mistaken for water, they all laughed again. And the king sometime after mistook as open a closed door made of crystal. And as he was about to pass through it, his head struck against it and he stood with his brain swimming. And mistaking as closed another door made of crystal that was really open, the king, in attempting to open it with stretched hands, tumbled down. And coming upon another door that was really open, the king, thinking it as closed, went away from it. And, O monarch, king Duryodhana, beholding that vast wealth in the Rājasuya sacrifice and having become the victim of those numerous errors within the assembly house, at last, with the leave of the Pāndavas, returned to Hastināpore.

"And the heart of king Duryodhana, afflicted at sight of the prosperity of the Pāndavas, became inclined to sin, as he proceeded towards his city reflecting on all he had seen and suffered. And beholding the Pāndavas happy and all the kings of the earth obedient to them, as also everybody, young and old, engaged in doing good unto them, and reflecting also on the splendour and prosperity of the illustrious sons of Pāndu, Duryodhana the son of Dhritarāshtra became pale. In proceeding (to his city) with an afflicted heart, the prince thought of nothing else than that assembly house and that unrivalled prosperity of the wise Yudhishthira. And Duryodhana the son of Dhritarāshtra was so taken up with his thoughts then that he spoke not a word to Suvala's son even though the latter addrssed him repeatedly. And Cakuni, beholding him unsettled, said,—'O Duryodhana, why art thou proceeding sighing thus?'

"Duryodhana replied,—'O uncle, beholding this whole earth, in consequence of the force of the illustrious Arjuna's weapons, owning the sway of Yudhishthira, and beholding also that sacrifice of the son of Prithā like unto the sacrifice of Cakra himself of great glory among the celestials, filled with jealousy and burning day and night, I am being dried up like a shallow tank in the summer season. Behold, when Ciçupāla was slain by the chief of the Sātwatas, there was no man to take the side of Ciçupāla. Consumed by the Pāndava-fire, they all forgave that offence; otherwise who is there that could forgive it? That highly improper act of grave consequence done by Vāsudeva succeeded in consequence of the energy of the illustrious sons of Pāndu. And so many monarch also bringing with them various kinds of wealth worshipping king Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, like tribute-paying Vaiçyas! Beholding Yudhishthira's prosperity of such splendour, my heart burneth, afflicted with jealousy, although it behoveth me not to be jealous.'

"Having reflected in this way, Duryodhana, as if burnt by fire, addressed the king of Gāndhāra again and said,—'I shall throw myself upon a flaming fire or swallow poison or drown myself in water! I cannot live. What man is there in the world possessed of vigor who can bear to see his foes in the enjoyment of prosperity and himslf in destitution? Therefore I who bear to see that accession of prosperity and fortune (in my foes) am neither a woman nor one that is not a woman, neither also a man nor one that is not a man. Beholding their sovereignty over the world, and vast affluence, as also that sacrifice, who is there like me that would not smart under all that? Alone I am incapable of acquiring such royal prosperity; nor do I beheld allies that could help me in the matter. It is for this that I am thinking of self-destruction. Beholding that great and serene prosperity of the son of Kunti, I regard Fate as supreme and exertion fruitless. O son of Suvala, formerly I strove to compass his destruction. But baffling all my efforts he hath grown in prosperity, even like the lotus from within a pool of water. It is for this that I regard Fate as supreme and exertion fruitless. Behold, the sons of

Dhritarāshtra are decaying and the sons of Prithā are growing day by day! Beholding that prosperity of the Pāndavas, and that assembly house of theirs, and those menials laughing at me, my heart burneth as if it were on fire. Therefore, O uncle, know me now as deeply grieving and filled with jealousy, and speak of it to Dhritarāshtra.'"

Thus ends the forty-seventh Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION XLVIII.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

'Cakuni said,—"O Duryodhana, thou shouldst not be jealous of Yudhishthira. The sons of Pāndu are enjoying what they deserve in consequence of their own good fortune. O slayer of foes, O great king, thou couldst not destroy them by repeatedly adopting numberless plans many of which thou hadst even reduced to practice. Those tigers among men escaped all those machinations by help of their good fortune. They have obtained Draupadi for wife, and Drupada with his sons as also Vāsudeva of great prowess as allies capable of helping them in subjugating the whole world. And,, O king, having obtained their paternal share of the kingdom without being deprived of it they have grown in consequence of their own energy. What is there to make thee sorry for this? Having gratified Hutāçana, Dhananjaya hath obtained the bow Gāndiva and the couple of inexhaustible quivers and many celestial weapons. With that foremost of bows and by the strength of his own arms also, he hath brought all the kings of the world under his sway. What is there to make thee sorry for this? Having saved the *Asura* Maya from a conflagration, that slayer of foes, Arjuna, using both his hands with equal skill, caused him to built that assembly house. And it is for this also that commanded by Maya, those grim *Rākshasas* called *Kinkaras* support that assembly house. What is there in this to make thee sorry? Thou hast said, O king, that thou art without allies. This, O Bhārata, is not true! These thy brothers are obedient to thee! Drona of

great prowess and wielding the large bow along with his son; Rādhā's son Karna; the great warrior Gautama (Kripā); myself with my brothers; king Saumadatti; these are thy allies! Uniting thyself with those, conquer thou the whole of the earth!'

"Duryodhana said,—'O king, with thee, as also with these great warriors, I shall subjugate the Pāndavas, if it please thee! If I can now subjugate them, the world will be mine and all the monarchs, and that assembly house so full of wealth.'

"Cakuni replied,—'Dhananjaya and Vāsudeva, Bhimasena and Yudhishthira, Nakula and sahadeva and Drupada with his sons,—these can not be vanquised in battle by even the celestials, for they are all great warriors wielding the largest bows, accomplished in weapons, and delighting in battle. But, O king, I know the means by which Yudhishthira himself may be vanquished. Listen to me and adopt it!'

"Duryodhana said,—'Without danger to our friends and other illustrious men, O uncle, tell me if there is a way by which I may vanquish him!'

"Cakuni said,—'The son of Kunti is very fond of gambling, although he doth not know how to play. That king, if asked to play, is ill able to refuse. I am skilful at dice. There is none equal to me on earth, no, not even in the three worlds, O son of Kuru! Therefore, ask him to play at dice. Skilled at dice, I will win his kingdom, and that splendid prosperity of his, for thee, O bull among men! But, O Duryodhana, represent all this unto the king (Dhritarāshtra). Commanded by thy father I will win without doubt the whole of Yudhishthir's possessions!'

"Duryodhana said,—'O son of Suvala, thou thyself represent properly all this to Dhritarāshtra the chief of the Kurus! I shall not be able to do so.'"

Thus ends the forty-eighth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

Section XLIX.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"O king, impressed with the great Rājasuya sacrifice of king Yudhishthira, Cakuni the son of Suvala, having learnt before the intentions of Duryodhana, accompanied by Gāndhāri's son, and desirous of saying what was agreeable to him, approached Dhritarāshtra endued with great wisdom, and finding the monarch whose intellect was his eye, seated (on his throne), told him these words:—'Know, O great king, O bull of the Bharata race, that Duryodhana, having lost color, hath become pale and emaciated and depressed and a prey to anxiety! Why dost thou not, after due enquiry, ascertain the grief that is in the heart of thy eldest son, the grief that is caused by the foe?'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Duryodhana, what is the reason of thy great affliction, O son of the Kuru race, if it is fit for me to hear it, then tell me the reason! This Cakuni here says that thou hast lost color, become pale and emaciated, and a prey to anxiety. I do not know what can be the reason of thy sorrow. This vast wealth of mine is at thy control. Thy brothers and all our relations never do anything that is disagreeable to thee! Thou wearest the best apparel and eatest food that is prepared with meat. The best of horses carry thee. What it is, therefore, that hath made thee pale and emaciated? Costly beds, beautiful damsels, mansions decked with excellent furniture, and sport of the most delightful kind, without doubt, these all wait but thy command, as in the case of the gods themselves. Therefore, O proud one, why dost thou grieve O son, as if thou wert destitute?'

"Duryodhana said,—'I eat and dress myself like a wretch and pass my time, all the while a prey to fierce jealousy. He, indeed, is a man, who incapable of bearing the pride of the foe, liveth having vanquished that foe with the desire of liberating his own subjects from the tyranny of the foe. Contentments, as also pride, O Bhārata, are destructive of prosperity; and those other two qualities also, *viz.*, compassion and

fear. One who acteth under the influence of these, never obtaineth anything high. Having behold Yudhishthira's prosperity, whatever I enjoy gratifieth me not. The prosperity of Kunti's son that is possessed of such splendour maketh me pale. Knowing the affluence of the foe and my own destitution, even though that affluence is not before me, I yet see it before me! Therefore, have I lost color and become melancholy, pale and emaciated. Yudhisthira supporteth eighty-eight thousand Snātaka Brāhmanas leading domestic lives, giving unto each of them thirty slave-girls. Beside this, thousand other Brāhmanas daily eat at his palace the best of food of golden plates. The king of Kāmbhoja sent unto him (as tribute) innumerable skins, black, darkish, and red, of the deer called *Kadali*, as also numberless blankets of excellent texture. And hundreds and hundreds and thousands and thousands of mares of elephants and thirty thousand she-camels wander within the palace, for the kings of the earth brought them all as tribute to the capital of the Pāndava. And, O lord of earth, the kings also brought unto this foremost of sacrifices heaps upon heaps of jewels of gems for the son of Kunti. Never before saw or heard of such enormous wealth as was brought unto the sacrifice of the intelligent of Pāndu. And, O king, beholding that enormous collection of wealth belonging to the foe, I cannot enjoy peace of mind, O king. Hundreds of Brāhmanas supported by the hands Yudhishthira hath given them and possessing wealth of kine, waited at the palace gate with three thousands of millions of tribute, prevented by the keepers from entering the mansion. Bringing with them clarified butter in handsome *Kamandalus* made of gold, they obtained not admission into the palace. And Ocean himself brought unto him in vessels of white copper the nectar that is generated within his waters and which is so superior to that which flowers and annual plants produce for Cakra. And Vāsudeva (at the conclusion of the sacrifice) having brought an excellent conch bathed him with sea-water brought in thousand jars of gold, all well-adorned with numerous gems. Beholding all this, I became feverish with jealousy. Those jars had

been taken to the Easten and the Southern oceans. And they had also been taken on the shoulders of men to the Western ocean, O bull among men. And, O father, although none but birds only can go to the Northern region, Arjuna, having gone thither, exacted as tribute a vast quantity of wealth. There is another wonderful incident also which I will relate to thee. O listen to me! When a hundred thousand Brāhmanas were fed, it had been arranged that to notify this fact every day conches would be blown in a chorus. But, O Bhārata, I continually heard conchs blown there almost repeatedly. And hearing those notes my hair stood on end. And, O great king, that palatial compound, filled with innumerable monarchs that came there as spectators, looked exceedingly handsome like the cloudless firmament with stars. And, O king of men, the monarchs came into that sacrifice of the wise son of Pāndu bringing with them every kind of wealth. And the kings that came there became like Vaiçyas the distributors of food unto the Brāhmanas that were fed. And, O king, the prosperity that I beheld of Yudhishthira was such that neither the chief himself of the celestials, nor Yama nor Varuna, nor the lord of the Guhyakas owneth the same. And beholding that great prosperity of the son of Pāndu, my heart burneth and I cannot enjoy peace!'

"Hearing these words of Duryodhana, Cakuni replied,—'Hear how thou mayst obtain this unrivalled prosperity that thou beholdest in the son of Pāndu, O thou that hast truth for thy prowess! O Bhārata, I am an adept at dice, superior to all in the world: I can ascertain the success or otherwise of every throw, and when to stake and when not. I have especial knowledge of the play. The son of Kunti also is fond of play though he possesseth little skill. Summoned to play or battle, he is sure to come forward, and I will defeat him constantly at every throw by practising deception. I promise to win all that wealth of his, and thou, O Duryodhana, shalt then enjoy the same!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"King Duryodhana, thus addressed by Cakuni, without allowing a moment to elapse,

said unto Dhritarāshtra, 'This Shakuni, an adept at dice, is ready to win at dice, O king, the wealth of the sons of Pandu. It behoveth thee to grant him permission to do so.'

"Dhritarāshtra replied, 'I always follow the counsels of Kshatta my minister possessed of great wisdom. Having consulted with him, I will inform thee what my conclusion is in respect of this affair. Endued with great foresight, he will, keeping morality before his eye, tell us what is good and what is proper for both parties, and what should be done in this matter.'

"Duryodhana said, 'If thou consultest with Kshatta, he will make thee desist. And if thou desistest, O king, I will certainly kill myself. And when I am dead, O king, thou wilt become happy with Vidura. Thou wilt then enjoy the whole earth; what need hast thou with me?'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Dhritarāshtra, hearing these words of affliction uttered by Duryodhana from mixed feelings, commanded his servants, himself ready to do what Duryodhana dictated, saying, 'Let artificers be employed to erect, without delay, a delightful and handsome and spacious palace with an hundred doors and a thousand columns. And having brought carpenters and joiners, set ye jewels and precious stones all over the walls. And making it handsome and easy of access, report to me when everything is complete.' And, O monarch, king Dhritarāshtra having framed this resolution for the pacification of Duryodhana, sent messengers unto Vidura for summoning him. For without taking counsel with Vidura, the monarch never framed any resolution. But as regards the matter at hand, the king, although he knew the evils of gambling, was attracted yet towards it. The intelligent Vidura, however, as soon as he heard of it, knew that the arrival of Kali was at hand. And seeing that the way to destruction was about to open, he quickly came to Dhritarāshtra. And Vidura, approaching his illustrious eldest brother and bowing down unto his feet, said these words:—

'O exalted king, I do not approve of this resolution that thou hast formed. It behoveth thee, O king, to act in such a way that no dispute may arise between thy children on account of this gambling match.'

"Dhritarāshtra replied, 'O Kshatta, if the gods be merciful unto us, assuredly no dispute will ever arise amongst my sons. Therefore, auspicious or otherwise, beneficial or otherwise, let this friendly challenge at dice proceed! Even this, without doubt, is what fate hath ordained for us! And, O son of the Bharata race, when I am near, and Drona, and Bhishma, and thou too, nothing evil that even fate might have ordained is likely to happen. Therefore, go thou on a car, yoking thereto horses endued with the speed of the wind, so that thou mayst reach Khāndavaprastha even today, and bring thou Yudhishthira with thee! And, O Vidura, I tell thee that even this is my resolution. Tell me nothing. I regard Fate as supreme which bringeth all this.' Hearing these words of Dhritarāshtra and concluding that his race was doomed, Vidura in great sorrow went unto Bhishma endued with great wisdom."

Thus ends the forty-ninth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION L.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

Janamejaya spoke. "'O thou foremost of all conversant with the Vedas, how did that game at dice take place, fraught with such evil to the cousins and through which my grand-sires, the sons of Pāndu, were plunged into such sorrow? What kings also were present in that assembly, and who amongst them approved of the gambling match and who amongst them forbade it? O sinless one, O chief of regenerate ones, I desire thee to recite in detail all about this, which, indeed, was the cause of the destruction of the world!"

Sauti said, "Thus addressed by the king, the disciple of Vyasa, endued with great energy and conversant with the entire Vedas, narrated everything that happened."

Vaisampāyana said, "O best of the Bharatas, O great king, if thou desirest to hear, then listen to me as I narrate to thee everything again in detail!

"Ascertaining the opinion of Vidura, Dhritarashtra the son

of Amvikā, calling Duryodhana told him again in private, 'O son of Gāndhāri, have nothing to do with dice. Vidura doth not speak well of it. Possessed of great wisdom, he will never give me advice that is not for my good. I also regard what Vidura sayeth as exceedingly beneficial for me. Do that, O son, for I regard it all as for thy good also. Indeed, Vidura knoweth with all its mysteries the science (of political morality) that the illustrious and learned and wise Vrihaspati—the celestial Rishi who is the spiritual guide of Vāsava—had unfolded unto the wise chief of the immortals. And, O son, I always accept what Vidura adviseth. O king, as the wise Uddhava is ever regarded amongst the Vrishnis, so is Vidura possessed of great intelligence esteemed as the foremost of the Kurus. Therefore, O son, have nothing to do with dice. It is evident that dice soweth dissensions. And dissensions are the ruin of the kingdom. Therefore, O son, abandon the idea of gambling. O son, thou hast obtained from us what, it hath been ordained; a father and mother should give unto their son, *viz*, ancestral rank and possessions. Thou hast studied, become clever in every branch of knowledge, and been cherished with affection in thy paternal dwelling. Born the eldest among all thy brothers, living within the kingdom, regardest thou thyself as unhappy? O thou of mighty arms, thou obtainest food and attire of the very best kind and which is not obtainable by ordinary men. Why dost thou grieve yet, O son! O mighty-armed one, daily ruling thy large ancestral kingdom swelling with people and wealth, thou shinest as splendidly as the chief of the celestials in heaven! Thou art possessed of wisdom! It behoveth thee to tell me what can be the root of this grief that thou feelest and that hath made thee so melancholy!'

"Duryodhana replied, 'I am a sinful wretch, O king, because I eat and dress beholding (the prosperity of the foe). It hath been said that that man is a wretch who is not filled with jealousy at sight of his enemy's prosperity. O exalted one, this ordinary prosperity of mine doth not gratify me! Beholding that blazing prosperity in the son of Kunti, I am very much pained! I tell thee, strong must be my vitality, in as

much as I am living even at the sight of the whole earth owning the sway of Yudhishthira! The Nipas, the Chittrakas, the Kukkuras, the Kāraskaras, and the Lauha-janghās are living in the palace of Yudhishthira like bondsmen. The Himavat, the ocean, the regions on the sea-shore, and the numberless other regions that yield jewels ahd gems, have all acknowledged their inferiority to the mansion of Yudhishthira (in respect of the wealth it containeth). And O monarch, regarding me as the eldest and entitled to respect, Yudhishthira having received me respectfully, appointed me in receiving the jewels and gems (that were brought as tribute). O Bhārata, the limit and the like of the excellent and invaluable jewels that were brought there have not been seen! And, O king, my hands were fatigued in receiving that wealth. And when I was tired, they that brought those valuable articles from distant regions used to wait till I was able to resume my labor. Bringing jewels from the lake Vindu, the Asura architect Maya constructed (for the Pāndavas) a lake-like surface made of crystal. Beholding the (artificial) lotuses with which it was filled, I mistook it, O king, for water. And seeing me draw up my clothes (while about to cross it), Vrikodara laughed at me, regarding me as destitute of jewels, and deprived of reason on beholding the affluence of my enemies. If I had the ability, I would, O king, without the loss of a moment, slay Vrikodara for that. But, O monarch, if we endeavor to slay Bhima now, without doubt, ours will be the fate of Shishupāla. O Bhārata, that insult by the foe burneth me! Once again, O king, beholding a similar lake that is really full of water but which I mistook for a crystal surface, I fell into it. At that, Bhima with Arjuna once more laughed melodiously, and Draupadi also accompanied by other females. That paineth my heart exceedingly! My apparel having been wet, the menials, at the command of the king, gave me other clothes. That also is my great sorrow! And, O king, hear now of another mistake that I speak of. In attempting to pass through what is exactly of the shape of a door but through which there is really no passage, I struck my forehead against stone and injured myself. The twins, beholding from a distance that

I was struck, both came and supported me in their arms, expressing great concern. And Sahadeva repeatedly told me, as if with a smile,—*This, O king, is the door. Go this way !* And Bhimasena, laughing aloud, addressed me and said,—*O son of Dhritarashtra, this is the door !* And, O king, I had not even heard of the names of those gems that I saw in that mansion. And it is for these reasons that my heart burneth so.'"

Thus ends the fiftieth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LI.

(*Dyuta Parva continued.*)

"Duryodhana said, 'Listen now, O Bhārata, about all the more costly articles I saw, belonging unto the sons of Pāndu, and brought, one after another, by the kings of the earth. Beholding that wealth of the foe, I lost my reason and scarcely knew myself. And, O Bhārata, listen as I describe that wealth consisting of both manufactures and the produce of the land. The king of Kāmboja gave innumerable skins of the best kind, and blankets made of wool, of the soft fur of mice and other animals living in holes, and of the hair of cats, and all inlaid with threads of gold. And he also gave three hundred horses of the *Tittiri* and the *Kalmāsha* species, possessing noses like parrots. And he also gave three hundred camels and an equal number of she-asses, all fattened with the olive and the *Pilusha*. And innumerable Brāhmanas engaged in rearing cattle and fit to be engaged in low offices, for the gratification of the illustrious king Yudhishthira the just, waited at the gate, with three hundred millions of tribute, denied admission into the palace. And hundreds upon hundreds of Brāhmanas possessing wealth of kine and living upon the lands that Yudhishthira had given them, came there with their handsome golden *Kamandalus* filled with clarified butter. And though they had brought such tribute, they were refused admission into the palace. And the Sudra kings that dwelt in the regions on the sea coast, brought with them, O king, hundred thousands of serving girls of the *Kārpāsika*

country, of beautiful features and slender waist and luxuriant hair and decked in golden ornaments; and many skins also that are worthy even of Brāhmanas, of the *Ranku* deer, as tribute unto king Yudhishthira. And the tribes Vairamās, Pāradas, Tungās, with the Kitavas,—they who lived upon crops that depended on water from the sky or of the river, they who were born in regions on the sea-shore, in woodlands, or countries on the other side of the ocean,—waited at the gate, being refused permission to enter, with goats and kine and asses and camels and vegetable honey and blankets and jewels and gems of various kinds. And that great warrior king Bhagadatta, the brave ruler of Prāgjyotisha and the mighty sovereign of the *mlechchas*, at the head of a large number of Yavanas, waited at the gate, unable to enter, with a considerable tribute comprising horses of the best breed and possessing the speed of the wind. And king Bhagadatta (beholding the concourse) had to go away from the gate, making over a number of swords with handles made of the purest ivory and well-adorned with diamonds and every kind of gems. And many tribes coming from different regions, some possessing two eyes, some three, and some whose eyes were on their foreheads, and those also called *Aushnikas*, and Nishādas, and Romakas, and some that were cannibals, and many possessing only one leg, I saw, O king, standing at the gate, being refused permission to enter. And these diverse rulers brought as tribute ten thousand asses of diverse hues and black necks and huge bodies and great speed and much docility and celebrated all over the world. And these asses were all of goodly size and delightful color. And they were all born on the coast of Vankhu. And there were many kings that gave unto Yudhishthira much gold and silver. And having given so much tribute they obtained admission into the palace of Yudhishthira. And the people that came there possessing only one leg gave unto Yudhishthira many wild horses, some of which were as red as the coccinella, and some white, and some possessing the hues of the rain-bow, and some looking like evening clouds, and some that were of variegated color. And they were all endued

with the speed of the mind. And they also gave unto the king much gold of superior quality. And I also saw numberless Chins and Shakas and Uddras and many barbarous tribes living in the woods, and many Vrishnis and Hārahunas, and dusky tribes of the Himavat, and many Nipas and people residing in regions on the sea coast, waiting at the gate being refused permission to enter. And the people of Valhika gave unto him as tribute ten thousand asses, of goodly size and black necks and daily running two hundred miles. And those asses were of many shapes. And they were well-trained and celebrated all over the world. And possessed of symmetrical proportions and excellent color, their skins were pleasant to the touch. And the Vāhlikas also presented numerous blankets of woolen texture manufactured in Chin, and numerous skins of the Ranku deer, and clothes manufactured from jute, and others from the threads of insects. And they also gave thousands of other clothes not made of cotton, possessing the color of the lotus. And these were all of smooth texture. And they also gave soft sheep-skins by thousands. And they also gave many sharp and long swords and scimitars, and hatchets and fine-edged battle-axes manufactured in the western countries. And having presented perfumes and jewels and gems of various kinds by thousands as tribute, they waited at the gate, being refused admission into the palace. And the Shakas and Tukhāras and Kānkas and Romakas and men with horns, bringing with them as tribute numerous large elephants and ten thousand horses, and hundreds and hundreds of millions of gold, waited at the gate, being refused permission to enter. And the kings of the eastern countries having presented numerous valuable articles including many costly carpets and vehicles and beds, and armours of diverse hues decked with jewels and gold and ivory, and weapons of various kinds, and cars of various shapes and handsome make and adorned with gold, with well-trained horses covered with tiger skins, and rich and variegated blankets for covering elephants, and various kinds of jewels and gems, and arrows long and short and various other kinds of weapons, obtained permission to enter the sacrificial palace of the illustrious Pāndava!"

Thus ends the fifty-first Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LII.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Duryodhana said, 'O sinless one, listen to me as I describe that large mass of wealth consisting of various kinds of tribute presented unto Yudhishthira by the kings of the earth. They that dwell by the side of the river Shailodā flowing between the mountains of Mer and Mandara, and enjoy the delicious shade of topes of the *Kichaka* bamboo, *viz*, the Khashas, the Ekāsanas, the Arhas, the Pradaras, the Dirghvenus, the Pāradas, the Kulindas, the Tanganas, and the other Tanganas, brought as tribute heaps of gold measured in *Dronas* (jars) and raised from underneath the earth by ants and, therefore, called after these creatures. The mountain tribes endued with great strength, having brought as tribute numerous *Chamaras* (long brushes) soft and black, and others white as the beams of the moon, and sweet honey extracted from the flowers growing on the Himavat as also from the *Michelia champaka*, and garlands of flowers brought from the region of the northern Kurus, and diverse kinds of plants from the north, even from Kailāsa, waited with heads down at the gate of king Yudhishthira, being refused permission to enter. I also beheld there numberless chiefs of the Kirātas armed with cruel weapons and ever engaged in cruel deeds, eating of fruits and roots and attired in skins, and living on the northern slopes of the Himavat and on the mountain from behind which the sun rises and in the region of Kārusha on the sea-coast and on both sides of the Lohitya mountains. And, O king, having brought with them as tribute loads upon loads of sandal and aloe as also black aloe, and heaps upon heaps of valuable skins and gold and perfumes, and ten thousand serving-girls of their own race, and many beautiful animals and birds of remote countries, and much gold of great splendour procured from mountains, they waited at the gate, being refused permission to enter, The Kairātas, the Daradas,

the Darvās, the Shuras, the Vaiāmakas, the Audumvaras, the Durvibhāgas, the Pāradas along with the Vāhlikas, the Kāshmiras, the Kumāras, the Ghorakas, the Hansakāyanas, the Shivis, the Trigartas, the Yaudheyas, the ruler of the Madras and the Kaikeyas, the Amvashtas, the Kaukuras, the Tārkshyas, the Vastrapas along with the Palhavas, the Vashātāyas, the Mauleyas along with the Kshudrakas, and the Mālavas, the Paundryas, the Kukkuras, the Shakas, the Angas, the Vangas, the Pundras, the Shānavatyas, and the Gayas,—these good and well-born Kshatriyas distributed into regular clans and trained to the use of arms, brought tribute unto king Yudhishthira by hundreds and thousands. And the Vangas, the Kalingas, the Magadhas, the Tāmraliptas, the Supundrakas, the Dauvālikas, the Sāgarakas, the Patrornas, the Shaishavas, and innumerable Karnaprāvaranas, who presented themselves at the gate, were told by the gate-keepers, at the command of the king, that if they could wait and bring good tribute they could obtain admission. Then the kings of those nations each gave a thousand elephants furnished with tusks like unto the shafts of ploughs and decked with girdles made of gold, and covered with fine blankets and, therefore, resembling the lotus in hue. And they were all darkish as rocks and always musty, and procured from the sides of the Kāmyaka lake, and covered with defensive armour. And they were also exceedingly patient and of the best breed. And having made these presents, those kings were permitted to enter. And, O king, these and many others, coming from various regions, and numberless other illustrious kings, brought jewels and gems unto this sacrifice. And Chittra-ratha also, the king of the Gandharvas, the friend of Indra, gave four-hundred horses gifted with the speed of the wind. And the Gandharva Tumvuru gladly gave an hundred horses of the color of the mango leaf and decked in gold. And, O thou of the Kuru race, the celebrated king of the *mlechcha* tribe called the Shukaras, gave many hundreds of excellent elephants. And Virāta the king of Matsya gave as tribute two thousand must elephants decked in gold. And king Vasudāna from the kingdom of Pānshu presented unto the sons of Pāndu six and

twenty elephants and two thousand horses, O king, all decked in gold and endued with speed and strength and in the full vigor of youth, and diverse other kinds of wealth. And Yajnasena presented unto the sons of Pāndu for the sacrifice, fourteen thousand serving-girls and ten thousand serving-men with their wives, many hundreds of excellent elephants, six and twenty cars with elephants yoked unto them, and also his whole kingdom. And Vāsudeva of the Vrishni race, in order to enhance the dignity of Arjuna, gave fourteen thousands of excellent elephants. Indeed, Krishna is the soul of Arjuna and Arjuna is the soul of Krishna, and whatever Arjuna may say Krishna is certain to accomplish. And Krishna is capable of abandoning heaven itself for the sake of Arjuna, and Arjuna also is capable of sacrificing his life for the sake of Krishna. And the kings of Chola and Pāndya, though they brought numberless jars of gold filled with fragrant sandal juice from the hills of Malaya, and loads of sandal and aloe wood from the Dardduras hills, and many gems of great brilliancy, and fine cloths inlaid with gold, obtained not permission (to enter). And the king of the Singhalas gave those best of sea-born gems called the *lapis lazuli*, and heaps of pearls also, and hundreds of coverlets for elephants. And numberless dark-colored men with the ends of their eyes red as copper, attired in clothes decked with gems, waited at the gate with those presents. And numberless Brāhmanas, and Kshatriyas who had been vanquished, and Vaisyas and serving Sudras, from love of Yudhishthira, brought tribute unto the son of Pāndu. And even all the *mlechchas*, from love and respect, came unto Yudhishthira. And all orders of men, good, indifferent, and low, distributed into numberless races, coming from diverse lands, made Yudhishthira's habitation the epitome of the world.

" 'And beholding the kings of the earth present unto the foe such excellent and valuable presents, from grief I wished for death. And, O king, I will now tell thee of the servants of the Pāndavas, people for whom Yudhishthira supplieth food both cooked and uncooked. There are an hundred thousand billions of mounted elephants and cavalry and an hundred

millions of cars, and countless foot-soldiers. At one place raw provisions are being measured out; at another they are being cooked; and at another place the goods are being distributed. And the sound of festivity is being heard everywhere. And amongst men of all orders I beheld not a single one in the mansion of Yudhishthira that had not food and drink and ornaments. And eighty-eight thousands of Snātaka Brāhmanas leading domestic lives, all supported by Yudhishthira, with thirty serving-girls given unto each, gratified by the king always pray for, with pleased hearts, the destruction of his foes. And ten thousands of other ascetics with vital seed drawn up, daily eat off golden plates in Yudhishthira's palace. And, O king, Yājnaseni, without having eaten herself, daily seeth whether everybody, including even the deformed and the dwarfs, hath eaten or not. And, O Bhārata, only two do not pay tribute unto the son of Kunti, *viz*, the Pānchālas in consequence of their relationship by marriage, and the Andhakas and Vrishnis in consequence of their friendship.'"

Thus ends the fifty-second Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LIII.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Duryodhana said, 'Those kings that are revered over all the world, who are devoted to truth and who are pledged to the observance of rigid vows who are endued with great learning and eloquence, who are fully conversant with the Vedas and their branches, as also with sacrifices, who have piety and modesty, whose souls are devoted to virtue, who possess fame, and upon whom have been performed the grand rites of coronation, all wait upon and worship king Yudhishthira. And, O king, I beheld there many thousands of wild kine with as many vessels of white copper for milching them, brought thither by the kings of the earth as sacrificial presents to be given away by Yudhishthira unto the Brāhmanas. And, O Bhārata, for bathing Yudhishthira at the

conclusion of the sacrifice, many kings with the greatest alacrity, themselves brought there in a state of purity many excellent jars (containing water). And king Vāhlika himself brought there a car decked with pure gold. And king Sudakshina himself yoked thereto four white horses of the Kāmboja breed. And Sunitha of great might gladly fitted the lower pole and the ruler of Chedi with his own hands took up and fitted the flag-staff. And the king of the South country stood ready with the coat of mail; the ruler of Magadha, with garlands of flowers and the head-gear; the great warrior Vasudāna with a sixty year old elephant; the king of Matsya, with the side-fittings of the car all encased in gold; king Ekalavya, with the shoes; the king of Avanti, with diverse kinds of water for the final bath; king Chekitāna, with the quiver; the king of Kāshi, with the bow; and Shalya, with a sword whose hilt and straps were adorned with gold. Then Dhaumya and Vyasa of great ascetic merit, with Nārada and Asita's son Devala standing before, performed the ceremony of sprinkling the sacred water over the king. And the great Rishis with cheerful hearts sat where the sprinkling ceremony was performed. And other illustrious Rishis conversant with the Vedas, with Jamadagni's son amongst them, approached Yudhishthira the giver away of large sacrificial presents, uttering *mantras* all the while. like the seven Rishis approaching the great Indra in heaven. And Sātyaki of unbaffled prowess held the umbrella (over the king's head). And Dhananjaya and Bhima were engaged in fanning the king; while the twins held a couple of *chamaras* in their hands. And the Ocean himself brought in a sling that big conch of Varuna which the celestial artificer Viswakarman had constructed with a thousand *Nishkas* of gold, and which Prajāpati had, in a former *Kalpa*, presented unto Indra! It was with that conch that Krishna bathed Yudhishthira after the conclusion of the sacrifice, and beholding it, I swooned away. People go to the Eastern or the Western seas, and also to the Southern one. But, O father, none, except birds can ever go to the Northern sea. But the Pāndavas have spread their dominion even there, for I heard hundreds of conches that

had been brought thence blown (in the sacrificial mansion) indicative of auspicious rejoicing. And while those conches blew simultaneously, my hair stood on end. And those among the kings who were weak in strength fell down. And Dhrishtadyumna and Sātyaki and the sons of Pāndu and Keshava,—those eight, endued with strength and prowess and handsome in person, beholding the kings deprived of consciousness and myself in that plight, laughed outright. Then Vibhatsu (Arjuna) with a cheerful heart gave, O Bhārata, unto the principal Brāhmanas five hundred bullocks with horns plated with gold. And king Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, having completed the Rājasuya sacrifice, obtained like the exalted Harishchandra such prosperity that neither Rantideva nor Nābhāga, nor Jauvanāshwa, nor Manu, nor king Prithu the son of Vena, nor Bhagiratha, nor Yayāti, nor even Nahusha, had obtained its like. And beholding, O exalted-one, such prosperity in the son of Pirthā which is even like that which Harishchandra had, I do not see the least use in continuing to live, O Bhārata! O ruler of men, a yoke that is tied (to the bullocks' shoulders) by a blind man becomes loosened. Even such is the case with us. The younger ones are growing while the elder ones are decaying. And beholding all this, O chief of the Kurus, I cannot enjoy peace even with the aid of reflection. And it is for this, O king, that I am plunged into grief and becoming pale and emaciated!'"

Thus ends the fifty-third Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LIV.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Dhritarashtra said, 'Thou art my eldest son and born also of my eldest wife! Therefore, O son, be not jealous of the Pāndavas. He that is jealous is always unhappy and suffereth the pangs of death. O bull of the Bharata race, Yudhishthira knoweth not deception, possesseth wealth equal unto thine, hath thy friends for his, and is not jealous of thee! Why shouldst thou, therefore, be jealous of him? O king, in res-

pect of friends and allies thou art equal unto Yudhishthira. Why shouldst thou, therefore, covet, from folly, the property of thy brother? Be not so. Cease to be jealous! Do not grieve! O bull of the Bharata race, if thou covetest the dignity attaching to the performance of a sacrifice, let the priests arrange for thee the great sacrifice called the *Saptatantu*. The kings of the earth then, cheerfully and with great respect, will bring for thee also much wealth and gems and ornaments. O child, coveting others' possessions is exceedingly mean. He, on the other hand, enjoyeth happiness, who is content with his own, being engaged in the practices of his own order. Never striving to obtain the wealth of others, persevering in one's own affairs, and protecting what hath been earned, —these are the indications of true greatness. He that is unmoved in calamity, skilled in his own business, ever exerting, vigilant, and humble, always beholdeth prosperity. The sons of Pāndu are as thy arms. Do not lop off those arms of thine! Plunge not into internal dissensions for the sake of that wealth of thy brothers. O king, be not jealous of the sons of Pāndu! Thy wealth is equal unto that of thy brothers in its entirety. There is great sin in quarreling with friends. They that are thy grand-sires are theirs also! Give away in charity on occasions of sacrifice, gratify every dear object of thy desire, disport in the company of women freely, and enjoy thou peace!' "

Thus ends the fifty-fourth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LV.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Duryodhana said, 'He that hath no intellect but hath merely heard of many things, cannot understand the real import of the scriptures, like the spoon that hath no perception of the taste of the soup it toucheth. Thou knowest everything, but yet confoundest me! Like a boat that is tied to another, thou and I are tied to each other, Art thou unmind-

ful of thy own interests? Or, dost thou entertain hostile feelings towards me? These thy sons and allies are doomed to destruction, inasmuch as they have thee for their ruler, for that which is to be done at the present moment thou describest as attainable in the future. He often trippeth whose guide moveth under the instructions of others. And how can they obtain a path that follow one that misguided is? O king, thou art of mature wisdom; thou waitest on the old, and thy senses also are under thy control! It behoveth thee not to confound us who are ready to seek our own interests! Vrihaspati hath said that the usages of kings are different from those of common people. Therefore should kings always attend to their interests with vigilance. The conduct of a Kshatriya is to be determined by success. Whether, therefore, it is virtuous or sinful, what scruples can there be in the duties of one's order? He that is desirous of snatching the blazing prosperity of his foe, should, O bull of the Bharata race, bring every direction under his subjection like the charioteer taming the steeds with his whip. Those acquainted with weapons say that, covert or open, the means that can vanquish the foe, is to be called a weapon, and not that which cuts. Who is to be reckoned a foe and who a friend, doth not depend on one's figure or dimensions. He that paineth another is, O king, to be regarded a foe by him that is pained. Discontent is the root of prosperity. Therefore, O king, I desire to be discontented. He that striveth after the acquisition of prosperity is, O king, a truly politic person. Nobody should set his affections on his wealth and affluence, for the wealth that hath been earned and hoarded may be plundered. The usages of kings are even such. It was during a time of peace and having given a pledge to the contrary that Shakra cut off the head of Namuchi, and it was because he approved of this eternal usage towards the enemy that he did so. Like a snake that swalloweth up frogs and other creatures living in holes, the earth swalloweth up a king that is peaceful and a Brāhmana that stireth not out of home. O king, none can by nature be any person's foe. He is one's foe, and not anybody else, who hath common pursuits with one. He that from folly

neglecteth a growing foe, hath his vitals cut off as by a disease that he cherisheth without treatment. A foe, however insignificant, if suffered to grow in prowess, swalloweth one like the white ants about the root of a tree eating into the tree itself. O Bhārata, O Ājamida, let not the prosperity of the foe be acceptable to thee! This policy (of not neglecting the foe) the wise should always bear on their heads even like a load. He that always wisheth for the increase of his wealth, ever groweth in the midst of his relatives even like the body naturally growing from the moment of birth. Prowess conferreth speedy growth. Coveting as I do the prosperity of the Pāndavas, I have not yet made it my own. At present I am a prey to doubts in respect of my ability. I am determined to resolve those doubts of mine. I will either obtain that prosperity of theirs, or lie down having perished in battle. O king, when the state of my mind is such, what do I care now for life, for the Pāndavas are daily growing while our pessessions know no increase?' "

Thus ends the fifty-fifth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LVI.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Shakuni said, 'O thou foremost of victorious persons, I will snatch (for thee) this prosperity of Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu, at sight of which thou grievest so! Therefore, O king, let Yudhishthira the son of Kunti be summoned! By throwing dice, a skilful man, himself uninjured, may vanquish one that hath no skill. Know, O Bhārata, that betting is my bow, the dice are my arrows, the marks on them my bow-string, and the dice-board my car!'

"Duryodhana said, 'This Shakuni, skilled at dice, is ready O king, to snatch the prosperity of the son of Pāndu by means of dice! It behoveth thee to give him permission!'

"Dhritarāshtra said, 'I am obedient to the counsels of my brother, the illustrious Vidura. Consulting with him, I shall settle what should be done in this matter!'

"Duryodhona said, 'Vidura is always engaged in doing good to the sons of Pāndu. O Kaurava, his feelings towards us are otherwise. He will, therefore, without doubt, withdraw thy heart from the proposed act. No man should set himself to any task depending upon the counsels of another, for, O son of Kuru's race, the minds of two persons seldom agree in any particular act. The fool that liveth shunning all causes of fear wasteth himself like an insect in the rainy season. Neither sickness nor Yama waiteth till one is in prosperity. So long, therefore, as there is life and health, one should (without waiting for prosperity) accomplish his purpose.'

"Dhritarāshtra said, 'O son, hostility with those that are strong, is what never recommendeth itself to me! Hostility bringeth about a change of feelings and that itself is a weapon though not made of steel. Thou regardest, O prince, this that will bring in its train the terrible consequences of war, this that is really fraught with mischief, as a great blessing! If once it beginneth, it will create sharp swords and pointed arrows.'

"Duryodhana replied, 'Men of the most ancient times invented the use of dice. There is no destruction in it nor is there any striking with weapons. Let the words of Shakuni, therefore, be acceptable to thee, and let thy commands be issued for the speedy construction of the assembly house! The door of heaven, leading us to such happiness, will be opened to us by gambling! Indeed, they that betake to gambling (with such aid) deserve such good fortune. The Pāndavas then will become thy equals (instead of, as now, superiors); therefore, gamble thou with the Pāndavas!'

"Dhritarāshtra said, 'The words uttered by thee do not recommend themselves to me. Do what may be agreeable to thee, O ruler of men! But thou shalt have to repent for acting according to these words; for words that are fraught with such immorality can never bring prosperity in the future. Even this was foreseen by the learned Vidura ever treading the path of intelligence and wisdom. Even that great calamity, destructive of the lives of the Kshatriyas, cometh as willed by fate!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. " Having said this, the weak-minded Dhritarāshtra regarded fate as supreme and unavoidable. And the king, deprived of reason by fate, and obedient to the counsels of his son, commanded his men in a loud voice, saying, 'Carefully construct, without loss of time, an assembly house of the most beautiful description, to be called the *crystal-arched* palace, with a thousand columns, decked with gold and the *lapis lazuli*, furnished with an hundred gates, and full two miles in length and in breadth the same.' And hearing those words of his, thousands of artificers endued with wisdom and skill soon erected the palace with the greatest alacrity, and having erected it brought thither every kind of article. And soon after they cheerfully represented unto the king that the palace had been finished, and that it was delightful and handsome and furnished with every kind of gems, and covered with many-colored carpets inlaid with gold. Then king Dhritarāshtra, possessed of learning, summoning Vidura the chief of his ministers, said, 'Repairing (to Khāndavaprastha), bring prince Yudhishthira here without loss of time. Let him, coming hither with his brothers, behold this handsome assembly house of mine, furnished with countless jewels and gems, and with costly beds and carpets, and let a friendly match at dice commence here!' "

Thus ends the fifty-sixth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LVII.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. " King Dhritarāshtra, ascertaining the inclinations of his son, and knowing that Fate is inevitable, did what I have said. Vidura, however, that foremost of intelligent men, approved not his brother's words and spoke thus. 'I approve not, O king, of this command of thine! Do not act so! I fear this will bring about the destruction of our race. When thy sons lose their unity, dissension will certainly ensue amongst them. This I apprehend, O king, from this match at dice!'

"Dhritarāshtra said, 'If Fate be not hostile, this quarrel will not certainly grieve me. The whole universe moveth at the will of its Creator, under the controlling influence of Fate. It is not free. Therefore, O Vidura, going unto king Yudhishthira at my command, bring thou soon that invincible son of Kunti!'"

Thus ends the fifty-seventh Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LVIII.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "Vidura then, thus commanded against his will by king Dhritarāshtra, set out, with the help of horses of high mettle, and endued with great speed and strength, and quiet and patient, for the abode of the wise sons of Pāndu. And possessed of great intelligence, Vidura proceeded by the way leading to the capital of the Pāndavas. And arrived at the city of king Yudhishthira, he entered it and proceeded towards the palace, worshipped by numberless Brāhmanas. And coming to the palace which was even like unto the mansion of Kuvera himself, the virtuous Vidura approached towards Yudhishthira the son of Dharma. Then the illustrious Ajamida devoted to truth and having no enemy on earth, reverentially saluted Vidura, and asked him about Dhritarāshtra and his sons. And Yudhishthira said, 'O Kshatta, thy mind seemeth to be cheerless. Dost thou come here in happiness and peace? The sons of Dhritarāshtra, I hope, are obedient to their old father. The people also, I hope, are obedient to Dhritarashtra's rule.'

"Vidura said, 'The illustrious king, with his sons, is well and happy, and surrounded by his relatives he reigneth even like Indra himself. The king is happy with his sons who are all obedient to him, and hath no grief. The illustrious monarch is bent on his own aggrandisement. The king of the Kurus hath commanded me to enquire after thy peace and prosperity, and to ask thee to repair to Hāstinapore with thy brothers and say, beholding king Dhritarāshtra's newly erected

palace, whether that one is equal to thy own. Repairing thither, O son of Prithā, with thy brothers, enjoy ye in that mansion and sit to a friendly match at dice. We shall be glad if thou goest, as also the Kurus already arrived there! And those gamblers that the illustrious king Dhritarāshtra hath already brought thither,—those cheats thou wilt see there! It is for this, O king, that I have come hither! Let the king's command be approved by thee!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'O Kshatta, if we sit to a match at dice, we may quarrel! What man is there, who knowing all this, will consent to gamble? What dost thou think fit for us? We all are obedient to thy counsels!'

"Vidura said, 'I know that gambling is the root of misery, and I strove to dissuade the king from it. The king, however, hath sent me to thee. Having known all this, O learned one, do what is beneficial!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'Besides the sons of Dhritarāshtra, what other dishonest gamblers are there ready for play? Tell us, O Vidura, who they are with whom we shall have to play staking hundreds upon hundreds of our possessions!'

"Vidura said, 'O monarch, Shakuni the king of Gāndhara, an adept at dice, with great skill of hand, and desperate in stakes, Vivingshati, king Chittrasena, Satyavrata, Purumitra, and Jaya,—these, O king, are there!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'It would seem then that some of the most desperate and terrible gamblers always depending upon deceit are there. This whole universe, however, is at the will of its Maker, under the control of Fate. It is not free. O learned one, I do not desire, at the command of king Dhritarāshtra to engage in gambling. The father always wisheth to benefit his son. Thou art our master, O Vidura! Tell me what is proper for us! Unwilling as I am to gamble, I will not do so if the wicked Shakuni doth not summon me to it in the *Sabhā*. If, however, he challangeth me, I will never refuse. For that, as settled, is my eternal vow.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "King Yudhishthira the just, having said this unto Vidura, commanded that preparations for his journey might be made without loss of time. And

the next day, the king, accompanied by his relatives and attendants, and taking also the women of the household with Draupadi in their midst with him, set out for the capital of the Kurus. *'Like some brilliant body falling before the eyes, Fate depriveth us of reason; and man, tied as it were with a cord, submitteth to the sway of Providence,'*—Saying this, king Yudhishthira, that chastiser of the foe, set out with Kshatta, without deliberating upon that summons from Dhritarāshtra. And that slayer of hostile heroes, the son of Pāndu and Prithā, riding upon the car that had been given him by the king of Vālhika, and attired also in royal robes, set out with his brothers. And the king, blazing as it were with royal splendour, with Brāhmanas walking before him, set out from his city, summoned by Dhritarāshtra and impelled by what hath been ordained by Time. And arriving at Hāstinapore, he went to the palace of Dhritarāshtra. And going there, the son of Pāndu approached the king. And the exalted one then approached Bhishma, and Drona, and Karna, and Kripa, and the son of Drona, and embraced and was embraced by them all. And the mighty-armed one, endued with great prowess, then approached Somadatta, and then Duryodhana and Shalya, and the son of Suvala, and those other kings also that had arrived there before him. And the king then went to the brave Dushshāshana and then to all his (other) brothers and then to Jayadratha and next to all the Kurus one after another. And the mighty-armed one, then surrounded by all his brothers, entered the apartment of the wise king Dhritarāshtra. And there Yudhishthira beheld the reverend Gāndhāri, ever obedient to her lord, and surrounded by her daughters-in-law like Rohini by the stars. And saluting Gāndhāri and blessed by her in return, the king then beheld his old father, that illustrious monarch whose wisdom was his eye. And king Dhritarāshtra then, O monarch, smelt his head as also the heads of those four other princes of the Kuru race, *viz*, the sons of Pāndu with Bhimasena as their eldest. And, O king, beholding these tigers among men, the handsome Pāndavas, all the Kurus became exceedingly glad. And commanded by the king, the Pāndavas then retired to the

chambers allotted to them and which were all furnished with jewels and gems. And when they had retired into their chambers, the women of Dhritarāshtra's household with Dushshalā taking the lead visited them. And the daughters-in-law of Dhritarāshtra, beholding the blazing and splendid beauty and prosperity of Yājnaseni, became cheerless and filled with jealousy. And those tigers among men, having conversed with the ladies, went through their daily physical exercises and then performed the religious rites of the day. And having finished their daily devotions, they decked their persons with sandal paste of the most fragrant kind. And desiring to secure good luck and prosperity, they caused (by gifts) the Brāhmanas to utter benedictions. And then eating food that was of the best taste they retired to their chambers for the night. And those bulls among the Kurus then were sung to by handsome females. And obtaining from them what came in due succession, those subjugators of hostile towns passed with cheerful hearts that delicious night in pleasure and sport. And waked by the bards with sweet music, they rose from their beds. And having passed the night thus in happiness, they rose at dawn and having gone through the usual rites, they entered into the assembly house and were saluted by those that were ready there for gambling."

Thus ends the fifty-eighth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LIX.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "The sons of Prithā with Yudhishthira at their head, having entered that assembly house, approached all the kings that were present there. And worshipping all those that deserved to be worshipped, and saluting others as each deserved according to age, they seated themlves on seats that were clean and furnished with costly carpets. And after they had taken their seats, as also all the kings, Shakuni the son of Suvala addressed Yudhishthira and said, 'O king, the assembly is full! All had been wait-

ing for thee! Let, therefore, the dice be cast and the rules of play be fixed, O Yudhishthira!'

"Yudhishthira replied, 'Deceitful gambling is sinful. There is no Kshatriya prowess in it. There is certainly no morality in it. Why, then, O king, dost thou praise gambling so? The wise applaud not the pride that gamesters feel in deceitful play. O Shakuni, vanquish us not, like a wretch, by deceitful means!'

"Shakuni said, 'That high-souled player who knoweth the secrets of winning and losing, who is skilled in baffling the deceitful arts of his *confrere*, who is untried in all the diverse operations of which gambling consisteth, truly knoweth the play, and he suffereth all in course of it. O son of Prithā, it is the staking at dice, which may be lost or won, that may injure us. And it is for that reason that gambling is regarded as a fault. Let us, therefore, O king, begin the play. Fear not! Let the stakes be fixed. Delay not!.'

"Yudhishthira said, 'That best of Munis, Devala, the son of Asita, who always instructeth us about all those acts that may lead to heaven, hell, or the other regions, hath said, that it is sinful to play deceitfully with a gamester. To obtain victory in battle without cunning or strategem is the best sport. Gambling, however, as a sport, is not so. Those that are respectable never use the language of the *mlechchas*, nor do they adopt deceitfulness in their behaviour. War carried on without crookedness and cunning,—this is the act of men that are honest. That wealth with which, according to our abilities, we strive to learn how to benefit the Brāhmanas, do not, O Shakuni, playing desperately, win of us! Even enemies should not be vanquished by desperate stakes in deceitful play. I do not desire either happiness or wealth by means of cunning. The conduct of one that is a gamester, even if it be without deceitfulness, should not be applauded.'

"Shakuni said, 'O Yudhishthira, it is from a desire of vanquishing, which is not a very honest motive, that one high-born person approacheth another (in a contest of race superiority). So also it is from a desire of vanquishing, which is not a very honest motive, that one learned person approach-

eth another (in a contest of learning). Such motives, however, are scarcely regarded as really dishonest. So also, O Yudhishthira, a person skilled at dice approacheth one that is not so skilled, from a desire of vanquishing. One also who is conversant with the truths of science approacheth another that is not, from desire of victory, which is scarcely an honest motive. But (as I have already said) such a motive is not really dishonest. And, O Yudhishthira, so also one that is skilled in weapons approacheth one that is not so skilled; the strong approacheth the weak. This is the practice in every contest. The motive is victory, O Yudhishthira! If, therefore, thou, in approaching me, regardest me to be actuated by motives that are dishonest, if thou art under any fear, desist then from play!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'Summoned, I do not withdraw. This is my established vow. And, O King, Fate is all powerful! We all are under the control of Destiny. With whom in this assembly am I to play? Who is there that can stake equally with me? Let the play begin.'

"Duryodhana said, 'O monarch, I shall supply jewels and gems and every kind of wealth. And it is for me that this Shakuni, my uncle, will play.'

"Yudhishthira said, 'Gambling for one's sake by the agency of another seemeth to me to be contrary to rule. Thou also, O learned one, will admit this. If, however, thou art still bent on it, let the play begin.'"

Thus ends the fifty-ninth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LX.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "When the play commenced, all those kings with Dhritarāshtra at their head took their seats in that assembly. And, O Bhārata, Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and the high-souled Vidura with cheerless hearts sat behind. And those kings with leonine necks and endued with great energy took their seats separately and in pairs upon many elevated

seats of beautiful make and color. And, O king, that mansion looked resplendant with those assembled kings like heaven itself with a conclave of the celestials of great good fortune. And they were all conversant with the Vedas and brave and of resplendent countenances. And, O great king, the friendly match at dice then commenced.

"Yudhishthira said, 'O king, this excellent wreath of pearls of great value, procured from the ocean by churning it (of old), so beautiful and decked with pure gold,—this, O king, is my stake! What is thy counter-stake, O great king, —the wealth with which thou wishest to play with me?'

"Duryodhana said, 'I have many jewels and much wealth. But I am not vain of them. Win thou this stake.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Then Shakuni, well skilled at dice, took up the dice and (casting them) said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo, I have won!'"

Thus ends the sixtieth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXI.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said, 'Thou hast won this stake of me by unfair means. But be not so proud, O Shakuni! Let us play staking thousands upon thousands. I have many beautiful jars each full of a thousand *Nishkas*, my treasury, inexhaustible gold, and much silver and other minerals. This, O king, is the wealth with which I will stake with thee!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Thus addressed, Shakuni said unto the chief of the perpetuators of the Kuru race, the eldest of the sons of Pāndu, king Yudhishthira, of glory incapable of sustaining any diminution, 'Lo, I have won!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'This my sacred and victorious and royal car which gladdeneth the heart and hath carried us hither, which is equal unto a thousand cars, which is of symmetrical proportions and covered with tiger-skin, and furnished with excellent wheels and flagstaff, which is handsome, and decked with strings of little bells, whose clatter is even like the roar

of the clouds or of the ocean, and which is drawn by eight noble steeds known all over the kingdom and which are white as the beams of the moon and from whose hoofs no terrestrial creature can escape,—this, O king, is my wealth with which I will stake with thee !' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words, Shakuni ready with the dice, and adopting unfair means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo, I have won !'

"Yudhishthira said, 'I have an hundred thousand serving girls, all young, and decked with golden bracelets on their wrists and upper arms, and with *Nishkas* round their necks and other ornaments, adorned with costly garlands and attired in rich robes, daubed with the sandal paste, wearing jewels and gold, and well-skilled in the four and sixty elegant arts, especially versed in dancing and singing, and who wait upon and serve at my command the celestials, the Snātāka Brāhmanas, and kings ! With this wealth, O king, I will stake with thee !' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words, Shakuni, ready with the dice, adopting unfair means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo, I have won !'

"Yudhishthira said, 'I have thousands of serving-men, skilled in waiting upon guests, always attired in silken robes, endued with wisdom and intelligence, their senses under control though young, and decked in ear-rings, and who feed all guests night and day with plates and dishes in hand. With this wealth, O king, I will stake with thee !' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words, Shakuni, ready with the dice, adopting unfair means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo, I have won !'

"Yudhishthira said, 'I have, O son of Suvala, one thousand musty elephants with golden girdles, decked with ornaments, with the mark of the lotus on their temples and necks and other parts, adorned with golden garlands, with fine white tusks long and thick as plough-shafts, worthy of carrying kings on their backs, capable of bearing every kind of noise on the field of battle, with huge bodies, capable of battering down the walls of hostile towns, of the color of

new-formed clouds, and each possessing eight she-elephants! With this wealth, O king, I will stake with thee!"

Vaisampāyanā continued. "Unto Yudhishthira who had said so, Shakuni the son of Suvala laughingly said, 'Lo, I have won it!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'I have as many cars as elephants, all furnished with golden poles and flag-staffs and well-trained horses and warriors that fight wonderfully, and each of whom receiveth as his allowance a thousand coins as his monthly pay whether he fighteth or not. With this wealth, O king, I will stake with thee!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "When these words had been spoken, the wretch Shakuni, pledged to enmity, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo, I have won it!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'The steeds of the *Tittiri*, *Kalmāsha*, and *Gandharva* breeds, decked with ornaments, Chittraratha, having been vanquished in battle and subdued, cheerfully gave unto the wielder of the Gāndiva. With this wealth, O king, I will stake with the!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing this, Shakuni, ready at dice, adopting unfair means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo I have won!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'I have ten thousand cars and vehicles unto which are yoked draught animals of the foremost breed. And I have also sixty thousand warriors picked from each order by thousands, who are all brave and endued with the prowess of heroes, who drink milk and eat good rice, and all of whom have broad chests. With this wealth, O king, I will stake with thee!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing this, Shakuni, ready at dice, adopting nefarious means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo I have won!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'I have four hundred *Nidis* (jewels of great value) encased in sheets of copper and iron. Each one of them is equal to five *draunikas* of the costliest and purest leaf gold of the *Jātarupa* kind. With this wealth, O king, I will stake with thee!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing this, Shakuni, ready

at dice, adopting foul means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo, I have won it!'"

Thus ends the sixty-first Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXII.

(Dyuta Parvā continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "During the course of this gambling certain to bring about utter ruin (on Yudhishthira), Vidura, that dispeller of all doubts, (addressing Dhritarāshtra) said, 'O great king, O thou of the Bharata race, attend to what I say, although my words may not be agreeable to thee, like medicine to one that is ill and about to breathe his last! When this Duryodhana of sinful mind had, immediately after his birth, cried discordantly like a jackall, it was well known that he had been ordained to bring about the destruction of the Bharata race. Know, O king, that he will be the death of ye all! A jackall is living in thy house, O king, in the form of Duryodhana. Thou knowest it not in consequence of thy folly. Listen now to the words of Kavi (Shukra) which I will quote. They that collect honey (in mountains), having received what they seek, mark not that they are about to fall. Ascending dangerous heights, abstracted in the pursuit of what they seek, they fall down and meet with destruction. This Duryodhana also, maddened with the play at dice, like the collector of honey abstracted in what he seeketh, marketh not the consequences. Making enemies of these great warriors, he beholdeth not the fall that is before him. It is known to thee, O thou of great wisdom, that amongst the Bhojas, they abandoned, for the good of the citizens, a son that was unworthy of their race. The Andhakas, the Yādavas, and the Bhojas, uniting together, had abandoned Kansa. And afterwards, when at the command of the whole tribe, the same Kansa had been slain by Krishna—that slayer of foes, all the men of the tribe became exceedingly glad for an hundred years. So at thy command, let Arjuna slay this Suyodhana. And in consequence of the slaying of this wretch, let the Kurus be

glad and pass their days in happiness. At the exchange of a crow, O great king, buy these peacocks,—the Pāndavas; and at the exchange of a jackall, buy these tigers. *For the sake of a family a member may be sacrificed; for the sake of a village a family may be sacrificed; a village may be srcrificed for the sake of a province; and for the sake of one's own soul the whole earth may be sacrificed.* Even this was what the omniscient Kāvya himself, acquainted with the thoughts of every creature, and a source of terror unto all foes, said unto the great Asuras to induce them to abandon Jambhā at the moment of his birth. It is said that a certain king, having caused a number of wild birds that vomitted gold to take up their quarters in his own house, afterwards killed them from temptation. O slayer of foes, blinded by temptation and the desire of enjoyment, for the sake of the gold the king at the same time destroyed both his present and future (gains). Therefore, O king, persecute not the Pāndavas from desire of profit, even like the king in story. For then, blinded by folly thou wilt have to repent afterwards, even like the person that killed the birds. Like a flower-seller that plucketh (many flowers) in the garden from trees that he cherisheth with affection from day to day, continue, O Bhārata, to pluck flowers day by day from the Pāndavas. Do not scorch them to their roots like a fire-producing breeze that reduceth everything to black char-coal. Go not, O king, unto the region of Yama, with thy sons and ministers and troops, for who is there that is capable of fighting with the sons of Prithā together? Not to speak of others, is the chief of the celestials at the head of the celestials themselves, capable of so doing?' ''

Thus ends the sixty-second Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXIII.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Vidura said, 'Gambling is the root of dissensions. It bringeth about disunion. Its consequences are frightful. Yet

having recourse to this, Dhritarāshtra's son Duryodhana createth for himself fierce enmity. The descendants of Pratipa and of Shāntanu, with their fierce troops and their allies the Vāhlikas, will, for the sins of Duryodhana, meet with destruction. Duryodhana, in consequence of this intoxication, forcibly driveth away luck and prosperity from his kingdom, even like an infuriate bull breaking his own horns himself. That brave and learned person who, disregarding his own foresight, followeth, O king, (the bent of) another man's heart, sinketh in terrible affliction even like one that goeth into the sea in a boat guided by a child. Duryodhana is gambling with the son of Pāndu, and thou art in raptures that he is winning. And it is such success that begeteth war, which endeth in the destruction of men. This fascination (of gambling) that thou hast well-devised only leadeth to dire results. Thou hast simply brought on by these counsels great affliction to thy heart. And this thy quarrel with Yudhishthira who is so nearly related to thee, even if thou hadst not foreseen it, is still approved by thee. Listen, ye sons of Shantanu, ye descendants of Pratipa, who are now in this assembly of the Kauravas, to these words of wisdom! Enter ye not into the terrible fire that hath blazed forth, following a wretch! When Ajātashatru the son of Pāndu, intoxicated with dice, giveth way to his wrath, and Vrikodara and Arjuna and the twins (do the same), who, in that hour of confusion, will prove your refuge? O great king, thou art thyself a mine of wealth. Thou canst earn (by other means) as much wealth as thou seekest to earn by gambling. What dost thou gain by winning from the Pāndavas their vast wealth? Win the Pāndavas themselves, who will be to thee more than all the wealth they have. We all know the skill of Suvala in play. This hill-king knoweth many nefarious methods in gambling. Let Shakuni return whence he came. War not, O Bhārata, with the sons of Pāndu!"

Thus ends the sixty-third Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

Section LXIV.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Duryodhana said, 'O Kshatta, thou art always boasting of the fame of our enemies, depreciating the sons of Dhritarāshtra! We know, O Vidura, of whom thou art really fond! Thou always disregardest us as children! That man standeth confest who wisheth for success unto those that are dear to him and defeat unto those that are not his favorites. His praise and blame are applied accordingly. Thy tongue and mind betray thy heart. But the hostility thou showeth in speech is even greater than what is in thy heart. Thou hast been cherished by us like a serpent on our lap. Like a cat thou wishest evil unto him that cherisheth thee. The wise have said that there is no sin graver than that of injuring one's master. How is it, O Kshatta, that thou dost not fear this sin? Having vanquished our enemies we have obtained great advantages. Use not harsh words in respect of us. Thou art always willing to make peace with the foes. And it is for this reason that thou hatest us always. A man becometh a foe by speaking words that are unpardonable. Then again in praising the enemy, the secrets of one's own party should not be divulged. (Thou, however, transgressest this rule). Therefore, O thou parasite, why dost thou obstruct us so? Thou sayest whatever thou wishest. Insult us not! We know thy mind. Go, learn sitting at the feet of the old! Keep up the reputation that thou hast won. Meddle not with the affairs of other men. Do not imagine that thou art our chief. Tell us not harsh words always, O Vidura! We do not ask thee what is for our good. Cease, irritate not those that have already borne too much at thy hands! There is one only controller, no second. He controlleth even the child that is in the mother's womb. I am controlled by him. Like water that always floweth in a downward course, I am acting precisely in the way in which he is directing me. He that breaketh his head against a stone-wall, and he that feedeth a serpent, are guided in those acts of theirs by

their own intellects. (Therefore, in this matter, I am guided by my own intelligence). He becometh a foe who seeketh to control another by force. When advice, however, is offered in a friendly spirit, the learned bear with it. He again that hath set fire to such an highly inflamable object as camphor, beholdeth not its ashes if he runeth not soon to extinguish it. One should not give shelter to another who is the friend of his foes, or to another who is ever jealous of his protector, or to another who is evil-minded. Therefore, O Vidura, go whithersoever thou pleasest! A wife that is unchaste, however well-treated, forsaketh her husband yet!'

"Vidura, addressing Dhritarāshtra, said, 'O monarch, tell us like a witness (impartially) what thou thinkest of the conduct of those who abandon their serving-men for thus giving them instruction! The hearts of kings are, indeed, very restless. Granting protection at first, they strike with clubs at last. O prince (Duryodhana), thou regardest thyself as mature in intellect; and, O thou of bad heart, thou regardest me as a child. But consi ler that he is a child who having first accepted one for a friend, subsequently findeth fault with him! A bad-hearted man can never be brought to the path of rectitude, like an unchaste wife in the house of a well-born person. Assuredly, instruction is not agreeable to this bull of the Bharata race, like a husband of sixty years to a damsel that is young. After this, O king, if thou wishest to hear words that are agreeable to thee, in respect of all acts good or bad, ask thou women and idiots and cripples or persons of that description. A sinful man speaking words that are agreeable may be had in this world. But a speaker of words that are disagreeable though fit as regimen, or a hearer of the same, is very rare. He, indeed, is a king's true ally who disregarding what is agreeable or disagreeable to his master beareth himself virtuously and uttereth what may be disagreeable but required as regimen. O great king, drink thou that which the honest drink and the dishonest shun, even humility, which is like a medicine that is bitter, pungent, burning, unintoxicating, disagreeable, and revolting! And drinking it, O king, regain thou thy sobriety! I always wish

Dhritarāshtra and his sons affluence and fame. Happen what may unto thee, here I bow to thee (and take my leave). Let the Brāhmanas wish me well! O son of Kuru, this is the lesson I carefully inculcate, that the wise should never enrage such adders as have venom in their very glances!"

Thus ends the sixty-fourth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXV.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Shakuni said, 'Thou hast, O Yudhishthira, lost much wealth of the Pāndavas. If thou hast still anything that thou hast not, O son of Kunti, yet lost to us, tell us what it is!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'O son of Suvala, I know that I have untold wealth. But why is it, O Shakuni, that thou askest me of my wealth? Let tens of thousands and millions and tens of millions and hundreds of millions and tens of billions and hundreds of billions and trillions and tens of trillions and hundreds of trillions and tens of quadrillions and hundreds of quadrillions and even more wealth be staked by thee. I have as much. With that wealth, O king, I will play with thee!'"

Vaisampāyana said. "Hearing this, Shakuni, ready with the dice, adopting unfair means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo! I have won!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'I have, O son of Suvala, immeasurable kine and horses and milch cows with calves and goats and sheep in the country extending from the Parnāshā to the eastern bank of the Sindhu. With this wealth, O king, I will play with thee!'"

Vaisampāyana said. "Hearing this, Shakuni, ready with the dice, adopting unfair means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo! I have won!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'I have my city, the country, lands, the wealth of all dwelling therein except of Brāhmanas, and all those persons themselves except Brāhmanas, still remaining to me. With this wealth, O king, I will play with thee!'"

Vaisampāyana said. "Hearing this, Shakuni, ready with the dice, adopting foul means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo! I have won it.'

"Yudhishthira said, 'These princes here, O king, who look resplendent in their ornaments and their ear-rings and *Nishkas* and all the royal ornaments on their person, are now my wealth. With this wealth, O king, I will play with thee!'"

Vaisampāyana said. "Hearing this, Shakuni, ready with the dice, adopting foul means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo! I have won them!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'This Nakula here, of mighty arms and leonine neck, of red eyes, and endued with youth, is now my one stake. Know that he is my wealth.'

"Shakuni said, 'O king Yudhishthira, prince Nakula is dear to thee! He is already under our subjection. With whom (as stake) wilt now play?'"

Vaisampāyana said. "Saying this, Shakuni cast those dice, and said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo! he hath been won by us.'

"Yudhishthira said, 'This Sahadeva administereth justice. He hath also acquired a reputation for learning in this world. However undeserving he may be to be staked in play, with him as stake I will play, with such a dear object, as if, indeed, he were not so!'"

Vaisampayāna said. "Hearing this, Shakuni, ready with the dice, adopting foul means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo! I have won.'

"Shakuni continued, 'O king, the sons of Mādri, dear unto thee, have both been won by me. It would seem, however, that Bhimasena and Dhananjaya are regarded by thee.'

"Yudhishthira said, 'Wretch,! thou actest sinfully in thus seeking to create disunion amongst us who are all of one heart, disregarding morality.'

"Shakuni said, 'One that is intoxicated falleth into a pit (hell) and stayeth there deprived of the power of motion. Thou art, O king, senior to us in age, and possessest the highest accomplishments. O bull of the Bharata race, I (beg thy pardon and) bow to thee. Thou knowest, O Yudhish-

thira, that gamesters, while excited with play, utter such ravings that they never indulge in the like of them in their waking moments nor even in dream.'

"Yudhishthira said, 'He that taketh us like a boat to the other shore of the sea of battle, he that is ever victorious over foes, the prince who is endued with great activity, he who is the one hero in this world, (is here). With that Fālguna as stake, however undeserving of being made so, I will now play with thee.'"

Vaisampāyana said. "Hearing this, Shakuni, ready with the dice, adopting foul means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo! I have won!'

"Shakuni continued, 'This foremost of all wielders of the bow, this son of Pāndu capable of using both his hands with equal activity, hath now been won by me. O king, play now with the wealth that is still left unto thee, even with Bhima thy dear brother, as thy stake, O son of Pāndu!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'O king, however undeserving he may be of being made a stake, I will now play with thee by staking Bhimasena, that prince who is our leader, who is the foremost in fight—even like the wielder of the thunder-bolt—the one enemy of the Dānavas,—the high-souled one with leonine neck and arched eye-brows and eyes looking askance, who is incapable of putting up with an insult, who hath no equal in might in the world, who is the foremost of all wielders of the mace, and who grindeth all foes.'"

Vaisampāyana said. "Hearing this, Shakuni, ready with the dice, adopting foul means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo! I have won him!'

"Shakuni continued, 'Thou hast, O son of Kunti, lost much wealth, horses and elephants with thy brothers. Say, if thou hast anything which thou hast not lost.'

"Yudhishthira said, 'I alone, the eldest of all my brothers and dear unto them, am still unwon. Won by thee, I will do what he that is won will have to do.'"

Vaisampāyana said. "Hearing this, Shakuni, ready with the dice, adopting foul means, said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo! I have won!'

"Shakuni continued, 'Thou hast permitted thyself to be won. This is very sinful. There is wealth still left to thee, O king! Therefore, thy having lost thyself is certainly sinful.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Having said this, Shakuni, well-skilled at dice, spake unto all the brave kings present there of his having won, one after another, all the Pāndavas. The son of Suvala then, addressing Yudhishthira, said, 'O king, there is still one stake dear to thee that is still unwon. Stake thou Krishnā the princess of Pānchāla. By her, win thyself back.'

"Yudhishthira said, 'With Draupadi as stake, who is neither short nor tall, neither spare nor corpulent, and who is possessed of blue curly locks, I will now play with thee! Possessed of eyes like the leaves of the autumn lotus, and fragrant also as the autumn lotus, equal in beauty unto her (Laksmi) who delighteth in autumn lotuses, and unto Sree herself in symmetry and every grace, she is such a women as a man may desire for wife in respect of softness of heart, and wealth of beauty and of virtues! Possessed of every accomplishment, and compassionate, and sweet-speeched, she is such a woman as a man may desire for wife in respect of her fitness for the acquisition of virtue, and pleasure, and wealth. Retiring to bed last and waking up first, she looketh after all down to the cowherds and the shepherds. Her face too, when covered with sweat, looketh as the lotus or the jasmine. Of slender waiste like the wasp, of long flowing locks, of red lips, and body without down, is the princess of Pānchāla! O king, making the slender-waisted Draupadi, who is even such, as my stake, I will play with thee, O son of Suvala!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "When the intelligent king Yudhishthira the just had spoken thus, '*Fie,!*' '*Fie,!*' were the words that were uttered by all the aged persons that were in the assembly. And the whole conclave was agitated, and the kings who were present there all gave way to grief. And Bhishma and Drana and Kripa were covered with perspiration. And Vidura holding his head between his hands sat like one

that had lost his reason. And he sat with face downwards giving way to his reflections and sighing like a snake. But Dhritarāshtra, glad at heart, asked repeatedly, 'Hath the stake been won?' 'Hath the stake been won?', and could not conceal his emotions. And Karna with Dushshāsana and others laughed aloud, while tears began to flow from the eyes of all others present in the assembly. And the son of Suvala, proud of success, and flurried with excitement, and repeating, 'Thou hast one stake, dear to thee, etc' said, 'Lo! I have won!' and took up the dice that had been cast."

Thus ends the sixty-fifth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXVI.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Duryodhana said, 'Come, Kshatta, bring hither Draupadi the dear and loved wife of the Pāndavas. Let her sweep the chambers, forced thereto, and let the unfortunate one stay where our serving-women are.'

"Vidura said, 'Dost thou not know, O wretch, that by uttering such harsh words thou art tying thyself with cords? Dost thou not understand that thou art hanging on the edge of a precipice? Dost thou not know that being a deer thou provokest so many tigers to rage? Snakes of deadly venom, provoked to ire, are on thy head! Wretch, do not further provoke them and go to the regions of Yama! In my judgment, the status of slavery can not attach to Krishnā, inasmuch as she was staked by the king after he had lost himself and ceased to be his own master! Like the bamboo that beareth fruit only when it is about to die, this king—the son of Dhritarāshtra—winneth this treasure at play. Intoxicated, he perceiveth not in these his last moments that dice bring about enmity and frightful terrors. No man should utter harsh speeches and pierce the hearts of others. No man should subjugate his enemies by dice and such other foul means. No one should utter such words—disapproved by the

Vedas and leading to hell—as annoy others. Some one utter-eth from his lips words that are harsh. Stung by them another burneth day and night. These words pierce the very heart of another. The learned, therefore, should never utter them, pointing them at others. A goat had once swallowed a hook, and when it was pierced with it, the hunter placing the head of the animal on the ground tore its throat frightfully in drawing it out. Therefore, O Duryodhana, swallow not the wealth of the Pāndavas! Make them not thy enemies! The sons of Prithā never use words such as these. It is only low men that are like dogs who use harsh words towards all classes of people, *viz*, those that have retired to the woods and those that live in domesticity, those employed in ascetic devotions and those that are of great learning. Alas! the son of Dhritarāshtra knoweth not that dishonesty is one of the frightful doors of hell! Alas! many of the Kurus with Dusshāsana amongst them have followed him in the path of dishonesty in the matter of this play at dice! Even gourds may sink and stones may float, and boats also may always sink in water, still this foolish king, the son of Dhritarāshtra, listeneth not to my words that are even as regimen unto him. Without doubt, he will prove the destruction of the Kurus. When the words of wisdom spoken by friends and which are even as fit regimen are not listened to, but on the other hand, temptation is on the increase, a frightful and universal destruction is sure to overtake all the Kurus.'"

Thus ends the sixty-sixth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXVII.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "Intoxicated with pride, the son of Dhritarāshtra spake, 'Fie on Kshatta!' and casting his eyes upon the *Prātikāmin* in attendance, commanded him, in the midst of all those reverend seniors, saying, 'Go, *Prātikāmin*, and bring thou Draupadi hither! Thou hast no fear from the

sons of Pāndu ! It is Vidura alone that raveth in fear. Besides, he never wisheth for our prosperity ! ' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Thus commanded, the *Prātikāmin*, who was of the *Suta* caste, hearing the words of the king, proceeded with haste, and entering the abode of the Pāndavas, like a dog a lion's den, approached the queen of the sons of Pāndu. And he said, ' Yudhishthira having been intoxicated with dice, Duryodhana, O Draupadi, hath won thee ! Come now, therefore, to the abode of Dhritarāshtra ! I will take thee, O Yājnaseni, and put thee in some menial work !'

" Draupadi said, 'Why, O *Prātikamin*, dost thou say so ? What prince is there who playeth staking his wife ? The king was certainly intoxicated with dice ! Else, could he not find any other object to stake ? '

" The *Prātikamin* said, 'When he had nothing else to stake, it was then that Ajātashatru the son of Pāndu, staked thee. The king had first staked his brothers, then himself, and then thee, O princess.'

" Draupadi said, 'O son of the *Suta* race, go, and ask that gambler present in the assembly, whom he hath lost first, himself, or me. Ascertaining this, come hither, and then take me with thee, O son of the *Suta* race.' "

Vaisampāyana continued. " The messenger coming back to the assembly told all present the words of Draupadi. And he spake unto Yudhishthira, sitting in the midst of the kings, these words :—' Draupadi hath asked thee,—*Whose lord wert thou at the time thou lost us in play ? Didst thou lose thyself first or me ?* ' Yudhishthira, however, sat there like one demented and deprived of reason and gave no answer to the *Suta*, good or ill.

" Duryodhana then said, 'Let the princess of Pānchāla come hither and put her question. Let every one hear in this assembly the words that pass between her and Yudhishthira. ' "

Vaismpāyana continued. "The messenger, obedient to the command of Duryodhana, going back, once again, to the palace, himself much distressed, said unto Draupadi, 'O

princess, they that are in the assembly are summoning thee. It seemeth that the end of the Kauravas is at hand. When Duryodhana, O princess, is for taking thee before the assembly, this weak-brained king will no longer be able to protect his prosperity.'

"Draupadi said, 'The great ordainer of the world hath, indeed, ordained so! Happiness and misery pay their court to both the wise and the unwise. Morality, however, it hath been said, is the one highest object in the world. If cherished, that will certainly dispense blessings to us! Let not that morality now abandon the Kauravas! Going back to those that are present in that assembly, repeat these my words consonant with morality. I am ready to do what those elderly and virtuous persons conversant with morality will definitely tell me!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "The *Suta*, hearing these words of Yājnaseni, came back to the assembly and repeated the words of Draupadi. But all sat with faces downwards, uttering not a word, knowing the eagerness and resolution of Dhritarāshtra's son.

"Yudhishthira, however, O bull of the Bharata race, hearing of Duryodhana's intentions, sent a trusted messenger unto Draupadi, directing that although in consequence of her season having come she was attired in one piece of cloth with her navel itself exposed, she should come before her father-in-law, weeping bitterly. And that intelligent messenger, O king, having gone to Draupadi's abode with speed, informed her of the intentions of Yudhishthira. The illustrious Pāndavas, meanwhile, distressed and sorrowful, and bound by promise, could not settle what they should do. And casting his eyes upon them, king Duryodhana, glad at heart, addressed the *Suta* and said, 'O *Prātikamin*, bring her hither! Let the Kauravas answer her question before her face.' The *Suta* then, obedient to his commands, but terrified at the (possible) wrath of the daughter of Drupada, desregarding his reputation for intelligence, once again said to those that were in the assembly, 'What shall I say unto Krishnā?'

"Duryodhana, hearing this, said, 'O Dusshasana, this son of my *Suta*, of little intelligence, feareth Vrikodara. There-

fore, go thou thyself and forcibly bring hither the daughter of Yajnasena. Our enemies at present are dependent on our will. What can they do thee?' Hearing the command of his brother, prince Dusshāsana rose with blood-red eyes, and entering the abode of those great warriors, spake these words unto the princess, 'Come, come, O Krishnā, princess of Pānchāla, thou hast been won by us. Putting aside thy modesty, come and behold Duryodhana. And, O thou of eyes large as lotus leaves, come now and accept the Kurus for thy lords. Thou hast been won virtuously, come to the assembly.' At these words, Drupadi, rising up in great affliction, rubbed her pale face with her hands, and distressed she ran to the place where the ladies of Dhritarāshtra's household were. At this, Dusshāsana, roaring in anger, ran after her and seized the queen by her locks so long and blue and wavy. Alas! those locks that had been sprinkled with water sanctified with *mantras* in the great Rājasuya sacrifice, were now forcibly seized by the son of Dhritarāshtra disregarding the prowess of the Pāndavas. And Dusshāsana, dragging Krishnā of long—long—locks unto the presence of the assembly,—Krishnā as if she were helpless though having powerful proctectors —and pulling at her, made her tremble like the banana plant in a storm. And dragged by him, with body bent she faintly cried, 'Wretch! it ill behoveth thee to take me before the assembly. My season hath come, and I am now clad in one piece of attire.' But Dusshāsana dragging her forcibly by her black locks and while she was praying piteously unto Krishna and Jishnu, who were Nārāyana and Nara (on earth), said unto her, 'Whether thy season hath come or not, whether thou art attired in one peice of cloth or entirely naked, when thou hast been won at dice and made our slave, thou art to live amongst our serving-women as thou pleasest.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "With hair dishevelled and half her attire loosened, all the while dragged by Dusshāsana, the modest Krishanā, consumed with anger, faintly said, 'In this assembly are persons conversant with all branches of learning, devoted to the performance of sacrifices and other rites, and all equel unto Indra, persons some of whom are really

my superiors and others who deserve to be respected as such. I cannot stay before them in this state. O wretch! O thou of cruel deeds, drag me not so! Uncover me not so! The princes (my lords) will not pardon thee, even if thou hast the gods themselves with Indra as thy allies! The illustrious son of Dharma is now bound by the obligations of morality. Morality, however, is subtle. Those only that are possessed of great clearness of vision can ascertain it. In speech even, I am unwilling to admit an atom of fault in my lord, forgetting his virtues. Thou dragest me who am in my season before these Kuru heroes! This is truly an unworthy act. But no one here rebuketh thee! Assuredly, all these are of the same mind with thee! O fie! Truly hath the virtue of the Bhāratas gone! Truly hath also the usage of those acquainted with the Kshatriya practice disappeared! Else these Kurus in this assembly would never have looked silently on this act that transgresseth the limits of their practices. Oh! both Drona and Bhishma have lost their energy, and so also hath the high-souled Kshattā, and so also this king! Else, why do these foremost of the Kuru elders look silently on this great crime?' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Thus did Krishnā of slender waist cry in distress in that assembly. And casting a glance upon her enraged lords—the Pāndavas—who were filled with terrible wrath, she inflamed them further with that glance of hers. And they were not so distressed at having been robbed of their kingdom, of their wealth, of their costliest gems, as with that glance of Krishnā moved by modesty and anger. And Dusshāsana, beholding Krishnā looking at her helpless lords, dragging her still more forcibly, addressed her, 'Slave'! 'Slave'! and laughed aloud! And at those words Karna became very glad and approved of them by laughing aloud. And Shakuni the son of Suvala the Gāndhāra king, similarly applauded Dusshāsana. And amongst all those that were in that assembly, except these three and Duryodhana, every one was filled with sorrow at beholding Krishnā thus dragged in sight of that assembly. And beholding it all, Bhishma said, 'O blessed one, morality is subtle. I, therefore, am unable to

duly decide this point that thou hast put, beholding that one that hath no wealth cannot stake the wealth belonging to others, while wives are always under the orders and at the disposal of their lords. Yudhishthira can abandon the whole world full of wealth, but he will never sacrifice morality. The son of Pāndu hath said, 'I am won!'. Therefore, I am unable to decide this matter. Shakuni hath not his equal among men at dice. The son of Kunti had still voluntarily staked with him. The illustrious Yudhishthira doth not himself regard that Shakuni hath played with him deceitfully. Therefore, I cannot decide this point.'

"Draupadi said, 'The king had been summoned to this assembly and though possessing no skill at dice, was made to play with skilful, wicked, deceitful, and desperate gamblers. How can he be said then to have staked voluntarily? The chief of the Kurus and the Pāndavas was deprived of his senses by wretches of deceitful conduct and unholy instincts acting together, and then vanquished. He could not understand their tricks, but he hath now done so. Here, in this assembly, are these Kurus who are the lords of both their sons and their daughters-in-law! Let all of them, reflecting well upon my words, duly decide the point that I have put!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Unto Krishnā who was thus weeping and crying piteously, looking at times upon her helpless lords, Dusshāsana spake many disagreeable and harsh words. And beholding her who was then in her season thus dragged, and her upper garments loosened, beholding her in that condition which she little deserved, Vrikodara afflicted beyond endurance, casting his eyes upon Yudhishthira, gave way to wrath."

Thus ends the sixty-seventh Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXVIII.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Bhima said, 'O Yudhishthira, gamblers have in their houses many women of loose character. They do not yet stake

those women having kindness for them even. Whatever wealth and other excellent articles the king of Kāshi gave, whatever gems and animals and wealth and coats of mail and weapons that the other kings of the earth gave, our kingdom, thyself, and ourselves, have all been won by the foes. At all this my wrath was not excited, for thou art our lord! This, however, I regard as a highly improper act,—this act of staking Draupadi. This innocent girl deserveth not this treatment. Only having obtained the Pāndavas as her lords, for thee is she thus persecuted by the low, despicable, cruel, and mean-minded Kauravas. It is for her sake, O king, that my anger falleth on thee! I shall burn those hands of thine! Sahadeva, bring some fire!'

"Arjuna, hearing this, said, 'Thou hast never, O Bhimasena, before this uttered such words as these! Assuredly, thy high morality hath been destroyed by these cruel foes. Thou shouldst not fulfil the wishes of the enemy! Practice thou the highest morality! Whom doth it behove to transgress his virtuous eldest brother? The king, summoned by the foe, and remembering the usage of the Kshatriya, played against his will. That is certainly conducive to our great fame!'

"Bhima said, 'If I had not known, O Dhananjaya, that the king had acted according to Kshatriya usage, then I would have, taking his hands together by sheer force, burnt them in a blazing fire!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Beholding the Pāndavas thus distressed and the princess of Panchāla also thus afflicted, Vikarna the son of Dhrítarāshtra said, 'Ye kings, answer ye the question that hath been asked by Yājnaseni! If we do not judge a matter referred to us, all of us will assuredly have to go to hell without delay. Bhishma and Dhritarāshtra, both of whom are the oldest of the Kurus, as also the high-souled Vidura, do not say anything! The son of Bharadwāja who is the preceptor of us all, as also Kripa, is here! Why do not these best of regenerate ones answer the question? Let also those other kings assembled here from all directions, answer, according to their judgments, this question, leaving aside all motives of gain and anger. Ye kings, answer ye the

question that hath been asked by this blessed daughter of king Drupada, and declare, after reflection, on which side each of ye is.' Thus did Vikarna repeatedly appeal to those that were in that assembly. But those kings answerd him not one word, good or ill. And Vikarna, having repeatedly appealed to all the kings, began to rub his hands and sigh like a snake. And at last the prince said, 'Ye kings of the earth, ye Kauravas, whether ye answer this question or not, I will say what I regard as just and proper. Ye foremost of men, it hath been said that hunting, drinking, gambling, and too much enjoyment of women, are the four vices of kings. The man that is addicted to these, liveth forsaking virtue. And people do not regard the acts done by a person who is thus improperly engaged, as of any authority. This son of Pāndu, while deeply engaged in one of these vicious acts, urged thereto by deceitful gamblers, made Draupadi a stake. The faultless Draupadi is, besides, the common wife of all the sons of Pāndu. And the king, having first lost himself, offered her as a stake. And Sauvala himself desirous of a stake, induced and prevailed upon the king to stake this Krishnā. Reflecting upon all these circumstances, I regard Draupadi as not won.'

"Hearing these words, a loud uproar rose from among those present in that assembly. And they all applauded Vikarna and censured the son of Suvala. And at that sound, the son of Rādhā, deprived of his senses by anger, waving his well-shaped arms, said these words, 'O Vikarna, many opposite and inconsistent conditions are noticeable in this assembly. Like fire produced from a faggot, consuming the faggot itself, this thy ire will consume thee! These personages here, though urged by Krishnā, have not uttered a word. They all regard the daughter of Drupada to have been properly won. Thou alone, O son of Dhritarāshtra, in consequence of thy immature years, art bursting with wrath, for though but a boy, thou speakest in this assembly as if thou wert old. O younger brother of Duryodhana, thou dost not know what morality truly is, for thou sayest like a fool that this Krishnā who hath been (justly) won as not won at all. O son of Dhrita-

rāshtra, how dost thou regard Krishnā as not won, when the eldest of the Pāndavas, before this assembly, staked all his possessions? O bull of the Bharata race, Draupadi is included in *all* the possessions (of Yudhishthira). Therefore, why regardest thou Krishnā, who hath been justly won as not won? Draupadi had been mentioned (by Sauvala) and approved of as a stake by the Pāndavas. For what reason then dost thou yet regard her as not won? Or, if thou thinkest that in bringing her hither attired in a single piece of cloth there is impropriety, listen to certain excellent reasons I will give. O son of the Kuru race, the gods have ordained one only husband for one woman. This Draupadi, however, hath many husbands. Therefore, certain it is that she is an unchaste woman. So bring her, therefore, into this assembly, attired though she be in one piece of cloth; even to uncover her is not at all an act that may cause surprise. Whatever wealth the Pāndavas had, she herself, these Pāndavas themselves, have all been justly won by the son of Suvala. O Dusshāsana, this Vikarna, speaking words of (apparent) wisdom, is but a boy. Take off the robes of the Pāndavas as also the attire of Draupadi!' Hearing these words, the Pāndavas, O Bhārata, taking off their upper garments and throwing them down, sat in that assembly. Then Dusshāsana, O king, forcibly seizing Draupadi's attire before the eyes of all, began to drag it off her person."

Vaisampāyana continued. "When the attire of Draupadi was being thus dragged, she thought of Hari. (And she herself cried aloud, saying,) 'O Govinda! O thou who dwellest in Dwārakā! O Krishna! O thou who art fond of cowherdesses (of Vrindāvana)! O Keshava! seest thou not that the Kauravas are humiliating me! O Lord! O husband of Laksmi! O Lord of Vraja (Vrindāvana)! O destroyer of all afflictions! O Janārddana! rescue me who am sinking in the Kaurava ocean! O Krishna! O Krishna! O thou great *yogin*! thou soul of the universe! thou creator of all things! O Govinda! save me who am distressed, me who am losing my senses in the midst of the Kurus!' Thus did that afflicted lady resplendant still in her beauty, O king, covering her face, cry

aloud, thinking of Krishna, of Hari, of the lord of the three worlds. Hearing the words of Draupadi, Krishna was deeply moved. And leaving his seat the benevolent one, from compassion, arrived there on foot. And while Yājnaseni was crying aloud to Krishna also called Vishnu, and Hari, and Nara, for protection, the illustrious Dharma, remaining unseen, covered her with excellent clothes of many hues. And, O monarch, as the attire of Draupadi was being dragged, after one was taken off, another of the same kind appeared covering her. And thus did it continue till many clothes were seen. And, O exalted one, owing to the protection of Dharma, hundreds upon hundreds of robes of many hues came off Draupadi's person. And there arose then a deep uproar of many voices. And the kings present in that assembly, beholding that most extraordinary of all sights in the world, began to applaud Draupadi and censure the son of Dhritarāshtra. And Bhima then, sqeezing his hands, with lips quivering in rage, swore, in the midst of all those kings a terrible oath in a loud voice.

"And Bhima said, 'Hear these words of mine, ye Kshatriyas of the world! Words such as these were never before uttered by other men, nor will anybody in the future ever utter them! Ye lords of earth, if having spoken these words I do not accomplish them hereafter, let me not obtain the path of my deceased ancestors! Tearing open in battle, by sheer force, the breast of this wretch, this wicked-minded scoundrel of the Bharata race,—if I do not drink his life-blood, let me not obtain the path of my ancestors!' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these terrible words of Bhima that made the down of the auditors to stand on end, everybody present there applauded him and censured the son of Dhritarāshtra. And when a mass of clothes had been gathered in that assembly all dragged from the person of Draupadi, Dusshāsana, tired and ashamed, sat down. And beholding the sons of Kunti in that state, the persons—those gods among men—that were in that assembly all uttered the word 'Fie'! (on the son of Dhritarāshtra). And the united voices of all became so loud that they made the down of

anyboly who heard them stand on end. And all the honest men that were in that assembly began to say, 'Alas! the Kauravas answer not the question that hath been put to them by Draupadi.!' And all censuring Dhritarāshtra together, made a loud clamour. Then Vidura, that master of the science of morality, waving his hands and silencing every one, spake these words:—'Ye that are in this assembly, Draupadi having put her question is weeping helplessly! Ye are not answering her! Virtue and morality are being persecuted by such conduct! An afflicted person approaceth an assembly of good men, like one that is being consumed by fire. They that are in the assembly quench that fire and cool him by means of truth and morality. The afflicted person asketh the assembly about his rights as sanctioned by morality. They that are in the assembly should, unmoved by interest and anger, answer the question. Ye kings, Vikarna hath answered the question, according to his own knowledge and judgment! Ye should also answer it as ye think proper! Knowing the rules of morality, and having gone to an assembly, he that doth not answer a query that is put, incureth half the demerit that attacheth to a lie. He, on the other hand, who, knowing the rules of morality and having gone to an assembly, answereth falsely, assuredly incureth the sin of a lie. The learned quote as an example in this connection the old history of Prahlāda and the son of Angirasa.

"'There was of old a chief of the Daityas, of name Prahlāda. He had a son named Virochana. And Virochana, for the sake of obtaining a bride, quarrelled with Sudhanwan, the son of Angirasa. It hath been heard by us that they mutually wagered their lives, saying,—*I am superior,—I am superior,*—for the sake of obtaining a bride. And after they had thus quarrelled with each other, they both made Prahlāda the arbitrator to decide between them. And they asked him, saying,—*Who amongst us is superior (to the other)? Answer this question. Speak not falsely!*—Frightened at this quarrel, Prahlāda cast his eyes upon Sudhanwan. And Sudhanwan in rage, burning like unto the mace of Yama told him,—*If thou answerest falsely, or dost not answer at all, thy head will then be*

split into an hundred pieces by the wielder of the thunder-bolt with that bolt of his!—Thus addressed by Sudhanwan, the Daitya, trembling like a leaf of the fig tree, went to Kasyapa of great energy, for taking counsel with him. And Prahlāda said,—Thou art, O illustrious and exalted one, fully conversant with the rules of morality that should guide both the gods and the Asuras, and the Brāhmanas as well! Here, however, is a situation of great difficulty in respect of duty. Tell me, I ask thee, what regions are obtainable by them who upon being asked a question, answer it not or answer it falsely!—Kasyapa, thus asked, answered.—He that knoweth, but answereth not a question from temptation, anger, or fear, casteth upon himself a thousand *Pāshas* of Varuna. And the person who, cited as a witness with respect to any matter of occular or auricular knowledge, speaketh carelessly, casteth a thousand *Pāshas* of Varuna upon his own person. On the completion of one full year, one such *Pāsha* is loosened. Therefore, he that knoweth, should speak the truth without concealment. If virtue, pierced by sin, repaireth to an assembly (for aid), it is the duty of everybody in the assembly to take off the dart, otherwise they themselves would be pierced with it. In an assembly where a truly censurable act is not rebuked, half the demerit of that act attacheth to the head of that assembly, a fourth to the person acting censurably, and a fourth unto those others that are there. In that assembly, on the other hand, when he that deserveth censure is rebuked, the head of the assembly becometh freed from all sins, and the other members also incur none. It is only the perpetrator himself of the act that becometh responsible for it. O Prahlāda, they who answer falsely those that ask them about morality, destroy the meritorions acts of their seven upper and seven lower generations. The grief of one who hath lost all his wealth, of one who hath lost a son, of one who is in debt, of one who is separated from his companions, of a woman who hath lost her husband, of one that hath lost his all in consequence of the king's demand, of a woman who is sterile, of one who hath been devoured by a tiger (during his last struggles in the tiger's claws), of one who

is a cowife, and of one who hath been deprived of his property by false witnesses, have been said by the gods to be uniform in degree. These different sorts of grief are his who speaketh false. A person becometh a witness in consequence of his having seen, heard, and understood a thing. Therefore, a witness should always tell the truth. A truth-telling witness never loseth his religious merits and earthly possessions also.—Hearing these words of Kasyapa, Prahlāda told his son,—Sudhanwan is superior to thee, as, indeed, (his father) Angiras is superior to me. The mother also of Sudhanwan is superior to thy mother. Therefore, O Virochana, this Sudhanwan is now the lord of thy life.—At these words of Prahlāda, Sudhanwan said,—Since unmoved by affection for thy child, thou hast adhered to virtue, I command, let this son of thine live for an hundred years!—'

"Vidura continued, 'Let all the persons, therefore, present in this assembly, hearing these high truths of morality, reflect upon what should be the answer to the question asked by Draupadi.'"

Vaisampāyana continued, "The kings that were there, hearing these words of Vidura, answered not a word, yet Karna alone spake unto Dusshāsana, telling him, 'Take away this serving-woman Krishnā into the inner apartments.' And thereupon, Dusshāsana began to drag, before all the spectators, the helpless and modest Draupadi, trembling and crying piteously unto the Pāndavas her lords."

Thus ends the sixty-eighth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXIX.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Draupadi said, 'Wait a little, thou worst of men, thou wicked-minded Dusshāsana! I have a duty to perform—a high duty that hath not been performed by me yet! Dragged forcibly by this wretch's strong arms, I am deprived of my senses. I salute these reverend seniors in this assembly of the Kurus, That I could not do it before cannot be my fault.'"

Vaisampāyana said, "Dragged with greater force than before, the afflicted and helpless Draupadi, undeserving of such treatment, falling down upon the ground, thus wept in that assembly of the Kurus :—

"'Alas! Once beheld before, on the occasion of the Swayamvara, by the assembled kings, in the amphitheatre, and never, even once, afterwards, I am to day brought before this assembly! She whom never before, in her palace, even the winds and the sun had seen, is to-day before this assembly and exposed to the gaze of the crowd! Alas! she whom the sons of Pāndu could not, while in her palace, suffer to be touched even by the wind, is to-day suffered by them to be seized and dragged by this wretch! Alas! these Kauravas also suffer their daughter and daughter-in-law, so unworthy of such treatment, to be thus afflicted before them! It seemeth that the times are out of joint! What can be more distressing (to me) than that though high-born and chaste, I should yet be compelled to enter this public court? Where is that virtue for which these kings were noted? It hath been heard that the kings of ancient days never brought their wedded wives into the public court. Alas! that eternal usage hath disappeared from among the Kauravas! Else, how is it that the chaste wife of the Pāndavas, the sister of Prishata's son, the friend of Vāsudeva, is brought before this assembly? Ye Kauravas, I am the wedded wife of king Yudhishthira the just, taken from the same order to which the king belongeth! Tell me now, whether I am a serving-maid or otherwise! I will cheerfully accept your answer! This mean wretch, this destroyer of the fame of the Kurus, is afflicting me hard! Ye Kauravas, I cannot bear it any longer! Ye kings, I desire ye to answer whether ye regard me as won or unwon! I will accept your answer whatever it be!'

"Hearing these words, Bhishma answered, 'I have already said, O blessed one, that the course of morality is subtle. Even the illustrious wise in this world, fail to understand it always. What in this world a strong man sayeth is morality, is regarded such by others, however otherwise it may really be, while what a weak man sayeth is morality is scarcely regarded

such, even if it be the highest morality. From the importance of the issue involved, from its intricacy and subtlety, I am unable to answer with certitude the question thou hast asked! However, it is certain that as all the Kurus have become the slaves of covetousness and folly, the destruction of this our race will happen on no distant date. O blessed one, the family into which thou hast been admitted as a daughter-in-law, is such that those who are born in it, however much they might be afflicted by calamities, never deviate from the paths of virtue and morality. O princess of Pānchāla, this conduct of thine also, *viz*, that though sunk in distress, thou still castest thy eyes on virtue and morality, is assuredly worthy of thee! These persons, Drona and others, of mature years and conversant with morality, sit, heads downwards, like men that are dead, with bodies from which life hath departed. It seemeth to me, however. that Yudhishthira is an authority on this question. It behoveth him to declare whether thou art won or not won!"

Thus ends the sixty-ninth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXX.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana spake. "The kings present in that assembly, from fear of Duryodhana, uttered not a word, good or ill, although they beheld Draupadi crying piteously in affliction like a female osprey, and repeatedly appeal to them. And the son of Dhritarāshtra beholding those kings and sons and grandsons of kings all remaining silent, smiling a little, then addressed the daughter of the king of Pānchāla, and said, 'O Yājnaseni, the question thou hast put dependeth on thy husbands—on Bhima of mighty strength, on Arjuna, on Nakula, on Sahadeva! Let these answer thy question. O Pānchāli, let these, for thy sake. declare, in the midst of these respectable men, Yudhishthira to be not their lord, let them thereby make king Yudhishthira the just a liar, thou shalt then be freed from the condition of slavery. Let the illustrious son

of Dharma, always adhering to virtue, who is even like Indra, himself declare whether he is or is not thy lord! At his words, accept thou the Pāndavas or ourselves without delay. Indeed, all the Kauravas present in this assembly are floating in the ocean of thy distress. Endued with magnanimity, they are unable to answer thy question, looking at thy unfortunate husbands!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "And hearing these words of the Kuru king, all who were present in the assembly loudly applauded them. And shouting approvingly, they made signs unto one another by motions of their eyes and lips. And amongst some that were there, sounds of distress such as 'O!' and 'Alas!' were heard. And at these words of Duryodhana, so delightful (to his partisans), the Kauravas present in that assembly became exceedingly glad. And the kings, delighted thereat, applauded the virtuous king of the Kurus. And the kings, with faces turned sideways, looked upon Yudhishthira conversant with the rules of morality, curious to hear what he would say. And every one present in that assembly became curious to hear what Vivatsu the son of Pāndu, never defeated in battle, and what Bhimasena, and what the twins also, would say. And when that busy hum of many voices became still, Bhimasena, waving his strong and well-formed arms smeared with sandal-paste, spake these words:—'If this high-souled king Yudhishthira the just, who is our eldest brother, had not been our lord, we would never have forgiven the Kuru race (for all this)! He is the lord of all our religious and ascetic merits, the lord of even our lives! If he regardeth himself as won, we too have all been won. If this were not so, who is there amongst creatures touching the earth with their feet and mortal, that would escape from me with his life, after having touched these locks of the princess of Pānchāla? Behold these mighty, well-formed arms of mine, even like maces of iron! Having once come within them, even he of an hundred sacrifices is incapable of effecting an escape! Bound by the ties of virtue, and the reverence that is due to our eldest brother, and repeatedly urged by Arjuna to remain silent, I am not doing anything terrible. If, how-

ever, I am once commanded by king Yudhishthira the just, I would slay these wretched sons of Dhritarāshtra, making slaps do the work of swords, like a lion slaying a number of little animals.' "

Vaisampāyana continued: "Unto Bhima who had spoken these words, Bhishma and Drona and Vidura said, 'Forbear, O Bhima! Everything is possible in thee.' "

Thus ends the seventieth Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXXI.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Karna said, 'Of all the persons in this assembly, three, *viz*, Bhishma, Vidura, and the preceptor of the Kurus (Drona), appear to be independent; for they always speak of their master as wicked, always censure him, and never wish for his prosperity. O excellent one, the slave, the son, and the wife are always dependent. They cannot earn wealth, for whatever they earn belongeth to their master. Thou art the wife of a slave incapable of possessing anything on his own account. Repair now to the inner apartments of king Dhritarāshtra and serve the king's relatives. We direct that that is now thy proper business. And, O princess, all the sons of Dhritarāshtra and not the sons of Prithā are now thy masters. O handsome one, select thou another husband now,—one who will not make thee a slave by gambling. It is well-known that women, especially they that are slaves, art not censurable if they proceed with freedom in electing husbands. Therefore, let it be done by thee! Nakula hath been won, as also Bhimasena, and Yudhishthira also, and Sahadeva, and Arjuna. And, O Yājnaseni, thou art now a slave! Thy husbands that are slaves cannot continue to be thy lords any-longer! Alas! doth not the son of Prithā regard life as anything of use, doth he not regard prowess and manhood, that he offereth this daughter of Drupada the king of Pānchāla, in the presence of all this assembly, as a stake at dice?' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words, the wrathful Bhima breathed hard, a very picture of woe. Obedient to the king and bound by the tie of virtue and duty, burning everything with his eyes inflamed by anger, he said, 'O king, I cannot be angry at these words of this son of a Suta, for we have truly entered the state of servitude! But O king, could our enemies have said so unto me if thou hadst not played staking this princess?' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words of Bhimasena, king Duryodhana addressed Yudhishthira who was silent and deprived of his senses, saying, 'O king, both Bhima and Arjuna, and the twins also, are under thy sway. Answer thou the question (that hath been asked by Draupadi)! Say, whether thou regardest Krishnā as unwon!' And having spoken thus unto the son of Kunti, Duryodhana, desirous of encouraging the son of Rādhā and insulting Bhima, quickly uncovered his left thigh that was like unto the stem of a plantain tree or the trunk of an elephant and which was graced with every auspicious sign and endued with the strength of thunder, and showed it to Draupadi in her very sight. And beholding this, Bhimasena, expanding his red eyes, said unto Duryodhana in the midst of all those kings and as if piercing them (with his dart-like words), 'Let not Vrikodara attain to the regions obtained by his ancestors, if he doth not break that thigh of thine in the great conflict!' And sparkes of fire began to be emitted from every sense of Bhima filled with wrath, like those that come out of every crack and orifice in the body of a blazing tree.

"Vidura then, addressing everybody, said, 'Ye kings of Pratipa's race, behold the great danger that ariseth from Bhimasena! Know ye for certain, that this great calamity that threateneth to overtake the Bhāratas, hath been sent by destiny itself! The sons of Dhritarāshtra have, indeed, gambled disregarding every proper consideration. They are even now disputing in this assembly about a lady (of the royal household)! The prosperity of your kingdoms is at an end! Alas! the Kauravas are even now engaged in sinful consultations! Ye Kauravas, take to your heart this high precept that I de-

clare! If virtue is persecuted, the whole assembly becometh polluted! If Yudhishthira had staked her before he was himself won, he would certainly have been regarded as her master. If, however, a person staketh anything at a time when he himself is incapable of holding any wealth, to win it is very like obtaining wealth in a dream! Listening to the words of the king of Gāndhāra, fall ye not off from this undoubted truth!'

"Duryodhana, hearing Vidura thus speak, said, 'I am willing to abide by the words of Bhima, of Arjuna, of the twins! Let them say that Yudhishthira is not their master; Yāgnaseni will then be freed from her state of bondage!'

"Arjuna, at this, said, 'This illustrious son of Kunti, king Yudhishthira the just, was certainly our master before he began to play. But having lost himself, let all the Kauravas judge whose master he could be after that!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Just then, a jackall began to cry loudly in the *homa*-chamber of king Dhritarāshtra's palace. And, O king, unto the jackall that cried so, the asses began to bray responsively. And terrible birds also, from all sides, began to answer with their cries. And Vidura conversant with everything and the daughter of Suvala, both understood the meaning of those terrible sounds. And Bhishma and Drona and the learned Gautama loudly cried,—*Swashti! Swashti!* * Then Gāndhāri and the learned Vidura beholding that frightful omen, represented everything, in great affliction, unto the king. And the king (Dhritarāshtra) thereupon said,

'Thou wicked-minded Duryodhana! thou wretch! destruction hath already overtaken thee when thou insultest in language such as this the wife of these bulls among the Kurus, especially their wedded wife, Draupadi!' And having spoken those words, the wise Dhritarāshtra endued with knowledge, reflecting with the aid of his wisdom and desirous of saving his relatives and friends from destruction, began to console Krishnā, the princess of Pānchāla, and addressing her, the

* A particle of benediction, similar to 'Amen.'

monarch said, 'Ask of me any boon, O princess of Pānchāla, that thou desirest! Chaste and devoted to virtue, thou art the first of all my daughters-in-law!'

"Draupadi said, 'O bull of the Bharata race, if thou wilt grant me a boon, I ask let the handsome Yudhishthira, obedient to every duty, be freed from slavery! Let not unthinking children speak of my child Prativindhya endued with great energy of mind as the *son of a slave*! Having been a prince, so superior to all men, and nurtured by kings, it is not proper that he should be called the child of a slave!'

"Dhritarāshtra said unto her, 'O auspicious one, let it be as thou sayest! O excellent one, ask thou another boon, for I will give it! My heart inclineth to give thee a second boon. Thou dost not deserve one only boon!'

"Draupadi said, 'I ask, O king, that Bhimasena and Dhananjaya and the twins also, with their cars and bows, freed from bondage, regain their liberty!'

"Dhritarāshtra said, 'O blessed daughter, let it be as thou desirest! Ask thou a third boon, for thou hast not been sufficiently honored with two boons. Virtuous in thy behaviour, thou art the foremost of all my daughters-in-law!'

"Draupadi said, 'O best of kings, O illustrious one, covetuousness always bringeth about loss of virtue! I do not deserve a third boon; therefore I dare not ask any! O king of kings, it hath been said that a Vaisya may ask one boon, a Kshatriya lady, two boons, a Kshatriya male, three, and a Brāhmana, an hundred! O king, these my husbands freed from the wretched state of bondage, will be able to achieve prosperity by their own virtuous acts!'"

Thus ends the seventy-first Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXXII.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Karna said, 'We have never heard of such an act (as this one of Draupadi), performed by any of the women noted in this world for their beauty! When the sons of both Pāndu

and Dhritarāshtra were excited with wrath, this Draupadī became unto the sons of Pāndu as their salvation. Indeed, the princess of Pānchāla, becoming as a boat unto the sons of Pāndu who were sinking in a boatless ocean of distress, hath brought them in safety to the shore!"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words of Karna in the midst of the Kurus,—*viz*, that the sons of Pāndu were saved by their wife,—the angry Bhimasena in great affliction said (unto Arjuna), 'O Dhananjaya, it hath been said by Devala that three lights reside in every person, *viz*, offspring, acts, and learning, for from these hath sprung creation! When life becometh extinct and the body becometh impure and is cast off by relatives, these three become of service to every person. But the light that is in us hath been dimmed by this act of insult to our wife! How, O Arjuna, can a son born from this insulted wife of ours prove serviceable to us?'

"Arjuna replied, 'Superior persons, O Bhārata, never prate about the harsh words that may or may not be uttered by inferior men. Persons that have earned respect for themselves, even if they are able to retaliate, remember not the acts of hostility done by their enemies, but, on the other hand, treasure up only their good deeds.'

"Bhima said, 'Shall I, O king, slay, without loss of time, all these foes assembled together, even here, or shall I destroy them, O Bhārata, by the roots, outside this palace? Or, what need is there of words or of command? I shall slay all these even now, and rule thou the whole earth, O king, without a rival!' And saying this, Bhima with his younger brothers like a lion in the midst of a herd of inferior animals, repeatedly cast his angry glances around. But Arjuna, however, of white deeds, with appealing looks, began to pacify his elder brother. And the mighty-armed hero endued with great prowess began to burn with the fire of his wrath. And, O king, upon this, fire with smoke and sparks and flames began to issue out of Vrikodara's ears and other senses. And his face became terrible to behold in consequence of his furrowed brows, like those of Yama himself at the time of the universal destruction. Then Yudhishthira forbade the mighty

hero, embracing him with his arms and telling him 'Be not so! Stay in silence and peace.' And having pacified the mighty-armed one with eyes red in wrath, the king approached his father Dhritarāshtra, with hands joined in entreaty."

Thus ends the seventy-second Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXXIII.

(Dyuta Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said, 'O king, thou art our master! Command us as to what we shall do! O Bhārata, we desire to remain always in obedience to thee!'

"Dhritarāshtra replied, 'O Ajātashatru, blest be thou! Go thou in peace and safety! Commanded by me, go, rule thy own kingdom with thy wealth! And, O child, take to heart this command of an old man, this wholesome advice that I give, and which is even a nutritive regimen! O Yudhishthira, O child, thou knowest the subtle path of morality! Possessed of great wisdom, thou art also humble, and thou waitest also upon the old! Where there is intelligence, there is forbearance! Therefore, O Bhārata, follow thou counsels of peace! The axe falleth upon wood, not upon stone. (Thou art open to advice, not Duryodoana)! They are the best of men that remember not the acts of hostility of their foes; that behold only the merits, not the faults, of their enemies; and that never enter into hostilities themselves. They that are good remember only the good deeds of their foes and not the hostile acts their foes might have done unto them. The good, besides, do good unto others without expectation of any good in return. O Yudhishthira, it is only the worst of men that utter harsh words in quarrelling; while they that are indifferent reply to such when spoken by others. But they that are good and wise never think of or recapitulate such harsh words, little caring whether these may or may not have been uttered by their foes. They that are good, having regard to the state of their own feelings, can understand the feelings of others, and therefore remember only the good deeds and not the acts

of hostility of their foes. Thou hast acted even as good men of prepossessing countenance do, who transgress not the limits of profit, pleasure and virtue. O child, remember not the harshness of Duryodhana! Look at thy mother Gāndhāri and myself also, if thou desirest to remember only what is good. O Bhārata, look at me, thy father who am old and blind, and still alive! It was for seeing our friends and examining also the strength and weakness of my children, that I had, from motives of policy, suffered this match at dice to proceed. O king, those amongst the Kurus that have thee for their ruler, and the intelligent Vidura conversant with every branch of learning for their counsellor, have, indeed, nothing to grieve for! In thee is virtue, in Arjuna is patience, in Bhimasena is prowess, and in the twins, those foremost of men, is pure reverence for superiors! Blest be thou, O Ajātashatru! Return to Khāndavaprastha, and let there be brotherly love between thee and thy cousins! Let thy heart also be ever fixed on virtue!"

Vaisampāyana continued. "That foremost of the Bharatas —king Yudhishthira the just—then, addressed thus by his uncle, having gone through every ceremony of politeness, set out with his brothers for Khāndavaprastha. And accompanied by Krishnā and ascending their cars which were all of the hue of the clouds, with cheerful hearts they all set out for that best of cities called Indraprastha."

Thus ends the seventy-third Section in the Dyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXXIV.

(Anudyuta Parva.)

Janamejaya said. "How did the sons of Dhritarāshtra feel, when they came to know that the Pāndavas had, with Dhritarāshtra's leave, left Hāstinapura with all their wealth and jewels?"

Vaisampāyana said. "O king, learning that the Pāndavas had been commanded by the wise Dhritarāshtra to return to

their capital, Dusshāsana went, without loss of time unto his brother. And, O bull of the Bharata race, having arrived before Duryodhana with his counsellors, the prince, afflicted with grief, began to say, 'Ye mighty warriors, that which we had won after so much trouble, the old man hath th own away! Know ye that he hath made over the whole of that wealth to the foe!' At these words, Duryodhana and Karna and Shakuni the son of Suvala, all of whom were guided by vanity, united together, and desirous of counteracting the sons of Pāndu, approaching in haste saw privately the wise king Dhritarāshtra—the son of Vichitraviryya and spake unto him these smooth and artful words. Duryodhana said,

'Hast thou not heard, O king, what the learned Vrihaspati, the preceptor of the celestials, said in course of counselling Shakra about morals and politics? Even these, O slayer o foes, were the words of Vrihaspati,—*Those enemies that always do wrong by stratagem or force, should be slain by every means.* If, therefore, with the wealth of the Pāndavas, we gratify the kings of the earth and then fight with the sons of Pāndu, what reverses can overtake us? When one hath placed on his neck and back angry snakes filled with venom, and which have approached for compassing his destruction, is it possible for him to take them off? Equipped with weapons and seated on their cars, the angry sons of Pandu, like wrathful and venomous snakes will assuredly annihilate us, O father! Even now Arjuna proceedeth, encased in mail and furnished with his couple of quivers, frequently taking up the Gāndiva and breathing hard and casting angry glances around! It hath (also) been heard by us that Vrikodara, hastily ordering his car to be made ready and riding on it, is proceeding along, frequently whirling his heavy mace! Nakula also is going along, with the sword in his grasp and the semi-circular shield in his hand! And Sahadeva and the king (Yudhishtisira) have made signs clearly testifying to their intentions! Having ascended their cars that are full of all kinds of arms, they are whipping their horses (for going to Khāndava soon) and assembling their forces! Persecuted thus by us, they are incapable of forgiving us those injuries!

Who is there among them that will forgive that insult to Draupadi? Blest be thou! We will again gamble with the sons of Pāndu for sending them to exile! O bull among men, we are competent to thus bring them under our sway. Dressed in skins, either we or they defeated at dice, shall repair to the woods for twelve years! The thirteenth year shall have to be spent in some inhabited country, unrecognised; and, if recognised, an exile for another twelve years shall be the consequence. Either we or they shall live so. Let the play begin! Casting the dice, let the sons of Pāndu once more play! O bull of the Bharata race, O king, even this is our highest duty! This Shakuni knoweth well the whole science of dice. If they succeed in observing this vow for thirteen years, we shall, in the meantime firmly rooted in the kingdom and making alliances, assemble a vast invincible host and keep them content, so that we shall, O king, defeat the sons of Pāndu if they reappear! Let this plan recommend itself to thee, O slayer of foes!'

"Dhritarāshtra said, 'Bring back the Pāndavas then, indeed, even if they have gone a great way. Let them come and once again cast dice.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Then Drona, Somadatta, and Vāhlika, Gautama, Vidura, the son of Drona, and the mighty son of Dhritarāshtra by his Vaisyā wife, and Bhurisravas, and Bhishma, and that mighty warrior Vikarna, —all said, 'Let not the play commence! Let there be peace!' But Dhritarāshtra, partial to his sons, disregarding the counsels of all his wise friends and relatives, summoned the sons of Pāndu!"

Thus ends the seventy-fourth Section in the Anudyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

Section LXXV.

(Anudyuta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "O monarch, it was then that the virtuous Gāndhāri, afflicted with grief on account of her affection for her sons, addressed king Dhritarāshtra, and said,

'When Duryodhana, was born, Vidura of great intelligence had said,—*It is well to send this disgrace of the race to the other world.* He cried repeatedly and dissonantly like a jackall. It is certain he will prove the destruction of our race. Take this to heart, O king of the Kurus. O Bhārata, sink not, for thy own fault, in an ocean of (calamity). O lord, accord not thy approbation to the counsels of the wicked ones of inmature years. Be not thou the cause of the terrible destruction of this race! Who is there that will break an embankment which hath been completed, or rekindle a conflagration which hath been extinguished? O bull of the Bharata race, who is there that will provoke the peaceful sons of Prithā? Thou rememberest, O Ajamida, everything, but still I will call thy attention to this. The scriptures can never control the wicked-minded for good or evil. And, O king, a person of immature understanding will never act as one of mature years. Let thy sons follow thee as their leader. Let them not be separated from thee for ever (by losing their lives). Therefore, at my word, O king, abandon this wretch of our race. Thou couldst not, O king, from parental affection, do it before. Know, that the time hath come for the destruction of our race through him. Err not, O king! Let thy mind, guided by counsels of peace, virtue, and true policy, be what it naturally is. That prosperity which is acquired by the aid of wicked acts, is soon destroyed; while that which is won by mild means taketh root and descendeth from generation to generation.'

"The king, thus addressed by Gāndhāri who pointed out to him in such language the path of virtue, replied unto her, saying, 'If the destruction of our race is come, let it take place freely. I am ill able to prevent it. Let it be as they (these my sons) desire. Let the Pāndavas return. And let my sons again gamble with the sons of Pāndu.'

Thus ends the seventy-fifth Section in the Anudyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXXVI.

(Anudyuta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "The royal messenger, agreeably to the commands of the intelligent king Dhritarāshtra, coming upon Yudhishthira the son of Prithā who had by that time gone a great way, addressed the monarch and said, 'Even these are the words of thy father, O Bhārata, spoken unto thee.—*The assembly is ready. O son of Pāndu, O king Yudhishthira, come and cast the dice !*—'

"Yudhishthira said, 'Creatures obtain fruits good and ill according to the appointment of the Ordainer of the creation. Those fruits are inevitable whether I play or not. This is a summons to dice; it is, besides, the command of the old king. Although I know that it will prove destructive to me, yet I cannot refuse.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Although (a living) animal made of gold was an impossibility, yet Rāma suffered himself to be tempted by a (golden) deer. Indeed, the minds of men over whom calamities hang, become deranged and out of order. Yudhishthira, therefore, having said these words, retraced his steps along with his brothers. And knowing full well the deception practised by Shakuni, the son of Prithā came back to sit at dice with him again. These mighty warriors again entered that assembly, afflicting the hearts of all their friends. And afflicted by the fates, they once more for the destruction of men, sat down at ease for gambling.

"Shakuni then said, 'The old king hath given ye back all your wealth. That is well. But, O bull of the Bharata race, listen to me, there is a stake of great value! Either defeated by ye at dice, dressed in deer skins we shall enter the great forest and live there for twelve years, passing the whole of the thirteenth year in some inhabited region, unrecognised, and if recognised, return to an exile of another twelve years; or, vanquished by us, dressed in deer skins ye shall, with Krishnā live for twelve years in the woods passing the whole of the thirteenth year, unrecognised, in some inhabited region. If

recognised, an exile of another twelve years is to be the consequence. On the expiry of the thirteenth year, each is to have his kingdom surrendered by the other! O Yudhishthira, with this resolution, play with us, O Bhārata, casting the dice!'

"At these words, they that were in that assembly, raising up their arms, said, in great anxiety of mind, and from the strength of their feelings, these words:—'Alas, fie on the friends of Duryodhana that they do not apprise him of his great danger! Whether he, O bull among the Bhāratas (Dhritarāshtra) understandeth or not, of his own sense, it is thy duty to tell him plainly.'"

"Vaisampāyana continued. "King Yudhishthira, even hearing these various remarks, from shame and a sense of virtue again sat at dice. And though possessed of great intelligenence and fully knowing the consequences, he again began to play, as if knowing that the destruction of the Kurus was at hand.

"And Yudhishthira said, 'How can, O Shakuni, a king like me, always observant of the usages of his own order, refuse, when summoned to dice? Therefore will I play with thee!'

"Shakuni answered, 'We have many kine and horses, and milch cows, and an infinite number of goats and sheep; and elephants and treasuries and gold, and slaves both male and female. All these were staked by us before, but now let this be our one stake, *viz*, exile into the woods, and being defeated either ye or we will dwell in the woods (for twelve years) and the thirteenth year, unrecogised, in some inhabited place. Ye bulls among men, with this determination, will we play.'

"O Bhārata, this proposal about a life in the woods was uttered but once. The son of Prithā, however, accepted it and Shakuni took up the dice. And casting them he said unto Yudhishthira, 'Lo, I have won!'"

Thus ends the seventy-sixth Section in the Anudyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXXVII.

(Anudyuta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "Then the vanquished sons of Prithā prepared for their exile into the woods. And they, one after another, in due order, casting off their royal robes, attired themselves in deer-skins. And Dus-shāsana, beholding those chastisers of foes, dressed in deer-skins and deprived of their kingdom and ready to go into exile, exclaimed, 'The absolute sovereignty of the illustrious king Duryodhana hath commenced! The sons of Pāndu have been vanquished, and plunged into great affliction. Now have we attained the gods either by broad or narrow paths. For to-day becoming superior to our foes in point of prosperity as also of duration of rule, have we become praiseworthy of men. The sons of Prithā have all been plunged by us into everlasting hell! They have been deprived of happiness and kingdom for ever and ever! They who, proud of their wealth, laughed in derision at the sons of Dhritarāshtra, will now have to go into the woods, defeated and deprived by us of all their wealth! Let them now put off their variegated coats of mail, their resplendent robes of celestial make, and let them all attire themselves in deer-skins according to the stake they had accepted of the son of Suvala. They who always used to boast that they had no equals in all the world, will now know and regard themselves in this their calamity as grains of sesame without kernel. Although in this dress of theirs the Pāndavas seem like unto wise and powerful persons installed in a sacrifice, yet they look like persons not entitled to perform sacrifices, wearing such a guise! The wise Yajnasena of the Somaka race, having bestowed his daughter—the princess of Panchāla—on the sons of Pāndu, acted most unfortunately, for the husbands of Yājnaseni—these sons of Prithā—are as eunuchs. And, O Yājnaseni, what joy will be thine upon beholding in the woods these thy husbands dressed in skins and thread-bare rags, deprived of their wealth and possessions. Elect thou a husband, whomsoever thou likest, from among all these present here! These

Kurus, assembled here, are all forbearing and self-controlled, and possessed of great wealth! Elect thou one amongst these as thy lord, so that this great calamity may not drag thee (to wretchedness). The sons of Pāndu now are even like grains of sesame that are without kernel, or like show-animals encased in skins, or like grains of rice without the kernel. Why shouldst thou, then any longer wait upon the fallen sons of Pāndu? The labor is thrown away that is bestowed upon pressing the sesame grain that is without the kernel!'

"Thus did Dusshāsana, the son of Dhritarāshtra, utter in the hearing of the Pāndavas, harsh words of the cruellest import. And hearing them, the unforbearing Bhima, in wrath suddenly approaching that prince like a Himālayan lion a jackall, loudly and chastisingly rebuked him in these words:—'Wicked-minded villain! ravest thou so in words that are uttered alone by the sinful? Boastest thou thus in the midst of the kings advanced as thou art by the skill of the king of Gāndhāra. As thou piercest our hearts here with these thy arrowy words, so shall I pierce thy heart in battle, calling all this to thy mind. And they also who from anger or covetousness are walking behind thee as thy protectors,—them also shall I send to the abode of Yama with their descendants and relatives!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Unto Bhima dressed in deer-skins and uttering these words of wrath without doing anything, for he could not deviate from the path of virtue, Dusshāsana, abandoning all sense of shame, dancing around in the midst of the Kurus, loudly said, 'O cow! O cow!'

"Bhima at this once more said, 'Wretch! darest thou, O Dusshāsana, use harsh words as these? Whom doth it behove to boast, thus having won wealth by foul means? I tell thee that if Vrikodara the son of Prithā drinketh not thy life-blood, piercing open thy breast in battle, let him not attain to regions of blessedness. I tell thee truly that slaying the sons of Dhritarāshtra in battle, at the sight of all the warriors, I shall pacify this wrath of mine soon enough!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "And as the Pāndavas were going away from the assembly, the wicked king Duryodhana,

from excess of joy mimicked by his own steps the playful leonine tread of Bhima. Then Vrikodara, half turning towards the king, said, 'Think not, fool, that by this thou gainest any ascendancy over me! Slay thee I soon shall with all thy followers, and answer thee, recalling all this to thy mind!' And beholding this insult offered to him, the mighty and proud Bhima, suppressing his rising rage and following the steps of Yudhishthira, also spake these words while going out of the Kaurava court:—'I will slay Duryodhana, and Dhananjaya will slay Karna, and Sahadeva will slay Shakuni that gambler with dice. I also repeat in this assembly these proud words which the gods will assuredly make good if ever we engage in battle with the Kurus! I will slay this wretched Suyodhana in battle with my mace, and prostrating him on the ground I will place my foot on his head! And as regards this (other) wicked person—Dusshāsana—who is bold in speech, I will drink his blood like a lion!'

"And Arjuna said, 'O Bhima, the resolutions of superior men are not known in words only. On the fourteenth year from this day, they shall see what happeneth!'

"And Bhima again said, 'The earth shall drink the blood of Duryodhana, and Karna, and the wicked Shakuni, and Dusshāsana that maketh the fourth.'

"And Arjuna said, 'O Bhima, I will, as thou directest, slay in battle this Karna so malicious and jealous and harsh-speeched and vain! For doing what is agreeable to Bhima, Arjuna voweth that he will slay in battle with his arrows this Karna with all his followers! And I will send unto the regions of Yama also all those other kings that will from foolishness fight against me! The mountains of Himavat might be removed from where they are, the maker of the day might lose his rays, the moon his coolness, if this vow of mine were not fulfilled! And all this shall assuredly happen if on the fourteenth year from this, Duryodhana doth not, with proper respect, return us our kingdom!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "After Arjuna had said this, the handsome son of Madri,—Sahadeva, endued with great energy—desirous of slaying Shakuni, waving his mighty arms

and sighing like a snake, exclaimed, with eyes red with anger, 'Thou disgrace of the Gāndhāra kings, those which thou thinkest as dice are not really so! Those are even sharp-pointed arrows of whose wounds thou hast run the risk in battle. I shall certainly accomplish all which Bhima hath said adverting to thee with all thy followers! If, therefore, thou hast anything to do, do it before that day cometh! I shall assuredly slay thee in battle with all thy followers soon enough, if thou, O son of Suvala, stayest in the fight pursuant to the Kshatriya usage!'

"Then, O monarch, hearing these words of Sahadeva, Nakula the handsomest of men spake these words.—'I shall certainly send unto the mansions of Yama all those wicked sons of Dhritarāshtra, who, desirous of death and impelled by Fate, and moved also by the wish of doing what is agreeable to Duryodhana, have used harsh and insulting speeches towards this daughter of Yajnasena at the gambling match! Soon enough shall I, at the command of Yudhishthira and remembering the wrongs of Draupadi, make the earth destitute of the sons of Dhritarāshtra!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "And those tigers among men, all endued with long arms, having thus pledged themselves to various promises, approached king Dhritarāshtra."

Thus ends the seventy-seventh Section in the Anudyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXXVIII.

(Anudyuta Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said, 'I bid farewell unto all the Bhāratas, —unto my old grand-sire (Bhishma), king Somadatta, the great king Vāhlika, Drona, Kripa, all the other kings, Aswatthāman, Vidura, Dhritarāshtra, all the sons of Dhritarāshtra, Yuyutsu, Sanjaya, and all the courtiers! I bid all of ye farewell, and returning again I shall see you!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Overcome with shame, none of those that were present there could tell Yudhishthira any-

thing. Within their hearts, however, they prayed for the welfare of that intelligent prince.

"Vidura then said, 'The reverend Prithā is a princess by birth. It behoveth her not to go into the woods. Delicate and old, and ever known to happiness, the blessed one will live, respected by me, in my abode! Know this, ye sons of Pāndu! And let safety be always yours!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "The Pāndavas thereupon said, 'O sinless one, let it be as thou sayest! Thou art our uncle, and, therefore the same as our father! We also are all obedient to thee! Thou art, O learned one, our most respected superior! We should always obey what thou choosest to command. And, O high-souled one, order thou whatever else there is that remaineth to be done!'

"Vidura replied; 'O Yudhishthira, O bull of the Bharata race, know this to be my opinion, that one that is vanquished by sinful means need not be pained by such defeat. Thou knowest every rule of morality; Dhananjaya is ever-victorious in battle; Bhimasena is the slayer of foes; Nakula is the gatherer of wealth; Sahadeva hath administrative talents; Dhaumya is the foremost of all conversant with the Vedas; and the well-behaved Draupadi is conversant with virtue and economy. Ye are attached to one another and feel delight at one another's sight and enemies can not separate you from one another and ye are contented. Therefore, who is there that will not envy ye? O Bhārata, this patient abstraction from the possession of the world will be of great benefit to thee. No foe, even if he were equal to Shakra himself, will be able to stand it. Formerly thou wert instructed on the mountains of Himavat by Meru-sāvarni; in the town of Vāranāvata by Dwaipāyana Krishna; on the cliff of Bhrigu by Rāma; and on the banks of Drishadwati by Shamvu himself. Thou hast also listened to the instruction of the great Rishi Asita on the hills of Anjana; and thou becamest a disciple of Bhrigu on the banks of the Kalmāshi! Nārada and this thy priest Dhaumya will now become thy instructors. In the matter of the next world, abandon not these excellent lessons thou hast obtained from the Rishis. O son of Pāndu, thou

surpassest in intelligence even Pururavas the son of Ilā; in strength, all other monarchs and in virtue, even the Rishis. Therefore, resolve thou earnestly to win victory, which belongeth to Indra; to control thy wrath, which belongeth to Yama; to give in charity which belongeth to Kuvera; and to control all passions, which belongeth to Varuna. And, O Bhārata, obtain thou the power of gladdening from the moon; the power of sustaining all from the water; forbearance from Earth; energy from the entire solar disc; strength from the winds; and affluence from the other elements. Welfare and immunity from ailment be thine! I hope to see thee return. And, O Yudhishthira, act properly and duly in all seasons,—in those of distress—in those of difficulty,—indeed, in respect of everything. O son of Kunti, with our leave go hence! O Bhārata, blessings be thine! No one can say that ye have done anything sinful before. We hope to see thee, therefore, return in safety and crowned with success!"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Thus addressed by Vidura, Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu, of prowess incapable of being baffled, saying 'So be it,' and bowing low unto Bhishma and Drona, went away."

Thus ends the seventy-eighth Section in the Anudyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXXIX.

(Anudyuta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "Then when Krishnā was about to set out, she went unto the illustrious Prithā and solicited her leave. And she also asked leave of the other ladies of the household who had all been plunged in grief. And saluting and embracing every one of them as each deserved, she desired to go away. Then there arose within the inner apartments of the Pāndavas a loud wail of woe. And Kunti, terribly afflicted upon beholding Draupadi on the eve of her journey, uttered these words in a voice choked with grief:—

'O child, grieve not that this great calamity hath overtaken thee. Thou art well conversant with the duties of the female

sex, and thy behaviour and conduct also is as it should be! It behoveth me not, O thou of sweet smiles, to instruct thee as to thy duties towards thy lords! Thou art chaste and accomplished, and thy qualities have adorned the race of thy birth as also the race into which thou hast been admitted by marriage! Fortunate are the Kauravas that they have not been burnt by thy wrath! O child, safely go thou blest by my prayers! Good women never suffer their hearts to be unstrung at what is inevitable! Protected by virtue that is superior to everything, soon shalt thou obtain good fortune! While living in the woods, keep thy eye ever on my child Sahadeva! See that his heart sinketh not under this great calamity.'

"Saying 'So be it!' the princess Draupadi bathed in tears, and clad in one piece of cloth, stained with blood, and with hair dishevelled left her mother-in-law. And as she went away weeping and wailing, Prithā herself in grief followed her. She had not gone far when she saw her sons shorn of their ornaments and robes, their bodies clad in deer-skins, and their heads ground-wards with shame. And she beheld them surrounded by rejoicing foes and pitied by friends. Endued with excess of parental affection, Kunti approaced her sons in that state, and embracing them all, and in accents choked by woe, said these words :—

'Ye are virtuous and well-conducted, and adorned with all excellent qualities and respectfulness of behaviour! Ye are all high-minded, and engaged in the service of your superiors! And ye are also devoted to the gods and the performance of sacrifices! Why, then, hath this calamity overtaken you! Whence is this reverse of fortune? I do not see by whose wickedness this sin hath overtaken you. Alas! I have brought you forth! All this must be due to my ill fortune. It is for this that ye have been overtaken by this calamity, though ye all are endued with excellent virtues. In energy and prowess and strength and firmness and might ye are not poor! How shall ye now, losing your wealth and possessions, live poor in the pathless woods? If I had known before that ye are destined to live in the woods, I would not have

on Pāndu's death, come from the mountains of Satasringa to Hatināpore! Fortunate was your father, as I now regard, for he truly reaped the fruit of his asceticism, and he was gifted with foresight, as he entertained the wish of ascending to heaven, without having had to feel any pain on account of his sons! Fortunate also was the virtuous Mādri, as I regard her today, who had, it seems, a fore-knowledge of what would happen and who, on that account, obtained the high path of emancipation and every blessing therewith. Ah! Mādri looked upon me as her stay, and her mind and her affections were ever fixed on me. Oh! Fie on my desire of life, owing to which I suffer all this woe. Ye children, ye are all excellent and dear unto me! I have obtained you after much suffering! I cannot leave you! Even I will go with you! Alas! O Krishnā, why dost thou leave me so? Everything endued with life is sure to perish! Hath Dhātri himself forgotten to ordain my death? Perhaps, it is so, and, therefore, life doth not quit me! O Krishna, O thou who dwellest in Dwārakā, O younger brother of Sankarsana, where art thou? Why dost thou not deliver me and these best of men also from such woe? They say that thou who art without beginning and without end deliverest those that think of thee. Why doth this saying become untrue! These my sons are ever attached to virtue and nobility and good fame and prowess! They deserve not to suffer affliction! Oh, show them mercy! Alas! when there are such elders amongst our race as Bhishma and Drona and Kripa, all conversant with morality and the science of worldly concerns, how could such a calamity at all come? O Pāndu! O king! where art thou? Why sufferest thou quietly thy good children to be thus sent into exile, defeated at dice? O Sahadeva, cease to go! Thou art my dearest child, dearer, O son of Mādri, than my body itself! Forsake me not! It behoveth thee to have some kindness for me! If bound by the ties of virtue, let these thy brothers go! But then, earn thou that virtue which springeth from waiting upon me!"

Vaisampāyana continued. "The Pāndavas then consoled their weeping mother, and with hearts plunged in grief set out for the woods. And Vidura also himself more afflicted, consoling

the afflicted Kunti with reasons, led her slowly to his house. And the ladies of Dhrtarāshtra's house, hearing everything as it happened, *viz*, the exile (of the Pāndavas) and the dragging of Krishnā into the assembly where the princes had gambled, loudly wept, censuring the Kauravas. And the ladies of the royal household also sat silent for a long time, covering their lotus-like faces with their fair hands. And king Dhritarāshtra also, thinking of the dangers that threatened his sons, became a prey to anxiety and could not enjoy peace of mind. And anxiously meditating on everything, and with mind deprived of its equanimity by grief, he sent a messenger unto Vidura, saying, 'Let Kshattā come to me without a moment's delay.'

"At this summons, Vidura quickly came to Dhritarāshtra's palace. And as soon as he came, the monarch asked him in great anxiety (about how the Pāndavas had left Hastinapore)."

Thus ends the seventy-ninth Section in the Anudyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXXX.

(Anudyuta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "As soon as Vidura endued with great foresight came unto him, king Dhritarāshtra the son of Amvikā timidly asked his brother, 'How doth Yudhishthira, the son of Dharma, proceed along? And how Bhimasena? And how Arjuna? And how the twin sons of Mādri? And how, O Kshatta, doth Dhaumya proceed along? And how the illustrious Draupadi? I desire to hear everything, O Kshatta. Describe to me all their acts!'

"Vidura replied, 'Yudhishthira the son of Kunti hath gone away, covering his face with his cloth. And Bhima, O king, hath gone away, looking at his own mighty arms. And Jishnu (Arjuna) hath gone away, following the king, spreading sand-grains around. And Sahadeva the son of Mādri hath gone away besmearing his face, and Nakula, the handsomest of men, O king, hath gone away, staining himself with dust and his heart in great affliction. And the large-eyed and beautiful Krishnā hath gone away, covering

her face with her dishevelled hair, following in the wake of the king, weeping and in tears. And, O monarch, Dhaumya goeth along the road, with *kusa* grass in hand, and uttering the awful *mantras* of the *Sāma* Veda that relate to Yama!'

"Dhritarāshtra asked, 'Tell me, O Vidura, why is it that the Pāndavas are leaving Hastināpura in such varied guise!'

"Vidura replied, 'Though persecuted by thy sons and robbed of his kingdom and wealth, the mind of the wise king Yudhishthira the just hath not yet deviated from the path of virtue. King Yudhishthira is always kind, O Bhārata, to thy children! Though deprived (of his kingdom and possessions) by foul means, filled with wrath as he is, he doth not open his eyes. *I should not burn the people by looking at them with angry eyes,*—thinking so, the royal son of Pāndu goeth covering his face! Listen to me as I tell thee, O bull of the Bharata race, why Bhima goeth so! *There is none equal to me in strength of arms,*—Thinking so, Bhima goeth, repeatedly stretching forth his mighty arms! And, O king, proud of the strength of his arms, Vrikodara goeth, exhibiting his arms and desiring to do unto his enemies deeds worthy of those arms! And Arjuna the son of Kunti, capable of using both his arms (in wielding the Gāndiva) followeth the footsteps of Yudhishthira, scattering sand-grains emblematical of the arrows he would shower in battle. And, O Bhārata, he indicateth that as the sand-grains are scattered by him with ease, so will he rain arrows with perfect ease on the foe (in time of battle). And Sahadeva goeth besmearing his face, thinking,—*None may recognise me in this day of trouble.* And, O exalted one, Nakula goeth staining himself with dust, thinking, *Lest otherwise I steal the hearts of the ladies that may look at me.* And Draupadi goeth, attired in one piece of stained cloth, her hair dishevelled, and weeping, signifying, —*The wives of those for whom I have been reduced to such a plight, shall,—on the fourteenth year hence, deprived of husbands and sons and relatives and dear ones, and smeared all over with blood, with hair dishevelled and all in their feminine seasons,—enter Hastinapore having offered oblations of water (unto the manes of those they will have lost).*—And, O

Bhārata, the learned Dhaumya with passions under full control, holding the *kusa* grass in his hand and pointing the same towards the south-west, walketh before, singing the *mantras* of the Sāma Veda that relate to *Yama!* And, O monarch, that learned Brāhmana goeth, also signifying,—*When the Bhāratas shall be be slain in battle, the priests and preceptors of the Kurus will thus sing the Sāma mantras (for the benefit of the deceased)!* And the citizens, afflicted with great grief, are repeatedly crying out,—*Alas! Alas! Behold our masters are going away! O, fie on the Kuru-elders that have acted like foolish children in thus banishing the heirs of Pandu from covetousness alone! Alas, separated from the sons of Pandu we all shall become masterless! What love can we bear to the wicked and avaricious Kurus?*—Thus, O king, have the sons of Kunti, endued with great energy of mind, gone away,—indicating, by manner and signs, the resolutions that are in their hearts! And after those foremost of men had gone away from Hastināpore, flashes of lightning appeared without clouds in the sky, and the earth itself began to tremble. And Rāhu came to devour the Sun, although it was not the day of conjunctions. And meteors began to fall, keeping the city to their right. And jackalls and vultures and ravens and other carnivorous beasts and birds began to shriek and cry aloud from the temples of the gods and the tops of sacred trees and walls and house-tops. And these extraordinary calamitous portents, O king, were seen and heard, indicating the destruction of the Bhāratas as the consequence of thy evil counsels!"

Vaisampāyana continued. "And, O monarch, while king Dhritarāshtra and the wise Vidura were thus talking with each other, there appeared in that assembly of the Kauravas and before the eyes of all, the celestial Rishi Nārada surrounded by the great Rishis. And appearing before them all, he uttered these terrible words;—'On the fourteenth year hence, the Kauravas, in consequence of Duryodhana's fault, will all be destroyed by the might of Bhima and Arjuna.' And having said this, that best of celestial Rishis, adorned with surpassing Vedic grace, passing through the skies, disappeared from the scene. Then Duryodhana and Karna and

Shakuni the son of Suvala, regarding Drona as their sole refuge, offered the kingdom to him. Drona then, addressing the envious and wrathful Duryodhana and Dusshāsana and Karna and all the Bhāratas, said, "The Brāhmanas have said that the Pāndavas of celestial origin are incapable of being slain. The sons of Dhritarāshtra, however, having, with all the kings, heartily and with reverence sought my protection, I shall look after them to the best of my power. Destiny is supreme. I cannot abandon them. The sons of Pāndu, defeated at dice, are going into exile in pursuance of their promise. They will live in the woods for twelve years. Practising the *Brahma-charya* mode of life for this period, they will return in anger and to our great grief take the amplest vengeance on their foes. I had formerly deprived Drupada of his kingdom in a friendly dispute. Robbed of his kingdom by me, O Bhārata, the king performed a sacrifice for obtaining a son (that should slay me). Aided by the ascetic power of Yāja and Upayāja, Drupada obtained from the (sacrificial) fire a son named Dhrishta-dyumna and a daughter, *viz*, the faultless Krishnā, both risen from the sacrificial plat-form. That Dhrishtadyumna is the brother-in-law of the sons of Pāndu by marriage, and dear unto them. It is from him, therefore, that I have much fear. Of celestial origin and resplendent as the fire, he was born with bow, arrows, and encased in mail. I am a being that is mortal. Therefore, it is from him that I have great fear. That slayer of all foes, the son of Pārshata, hath taken the side of the Pāndavas. I shall have to lose my life if he and I have ever to encounter each other in battle. What grief can be greater to me in this world than this, ye Kauravas! *Dhrishta-dyumna is the destined slayer of Drona*,—this belief is general. That he hath been born for slaying me hath been heard by me and is widely known also in the world. For thy sake, O Duryodhana, that terrible season of destruction is almost come! Do, without loss of time, what may be beneficial unto thee! Think not that everything hath been accomplished by sending the Pāndavas into exile! This thy happiness will last but a moment, even as in winter the shadow of the top of the palm tree resteth (for a short time) at its base. Perform various kinds of sacrifices, and

enjoy, and give, O Bhārata, everything thou likest! On the fourteenth year hence, a great calamity will overwhelm thee!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words of Drona, Dhritarāshtra said, 'O Kshatta, the preceptor hath uttered what is true! Go thou and bring back the Pāndavas. If they do not come back, let them go treated with respect and affection. Let those my sons go with weapons, and cars, and infantry, and enjoying every other good thing!'"

Thus ends the eightieth Section in the Anudyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SECTION LXXXI.

(*Anudyuta Parva continued.*)

Vaisampāyana said. "Defeated at dice, after the Pāndavas had gone to the woods, Dhritarāshtra, O king, was overcome with anxiety. And while he was seated restless with anxiety and sighing in grief, Sanjaya approaching him said, 'O lord of the earth, having now obtained the whole earth with all its wealth, and sent away the sons of Pāndu into exile, why is it, O king, that thou grievest so?'

"Dhritarāshtra said, 'What have they not to grieve for who will have to encounter in battle those bulls among warriors—the sons of Pāndu—fighting on great cars and aided by allies?'

"Sanjaya said, 'This, indeed, is thy graceful act, O king, this great hostility that is inevitable and that will assuredly bring about the wholesale destruction of the whole world! Forbidden by Bhishma, by Drona, and by Vidura, they wicked-minded and shameless son Duryodhana sent his *Suta* messenger commanding him to bring into court the beloved and virtuous wife of the Pāndavas. The gods first deprive that man of his reason unto whom they send defeat and disgrace. It is for this that such a person seeth things in a strange light. When destruction is at hand, evil appeareth as good unto the understanding polluted by sin, and adhereth to it firmly. That which is improper appeareth as proper, and that which is proper appeareth as improper unto the man about to be overwhelmed by destruction, and evil and impropriety are what he liketh. The time that bringeth on destruc-

tion doth not come with upraised club and smash one's head. On the other hand, the peculiarity of such a time is that it maketh a man behold evil in good and good in evil. The wretches have brought on themselves this terrible, wholesale, and horrible destruction by dragging the helpless princess of Pānchāla into the court. Who else than Duryodhana—that false player at dice—could bring into the assembly, with insults, the daughter of Drupada, endued with beauty and intelligence, and conversant with every rule of morality and duty, and sprung not from any woman's womb but from the sacred fire? The handsome Krishnā, then in her season, attired in one pelce of stained cloth, when brought into the court cast her eyes upon the Pāndavas. She beheld them, however, robbed of their wealth, of their kingdom, of even their attire, of their beauty, of every object of enjoyment, and plunged into a state of bondage! Bound by tie of virtue, they were then unable to exert their prowess! And before all the assembled kings Duryodhana and Karna spake such cruel and harsh words unto the distressed and enraged Krishnā undeserving of such treatment! O monarch, all this appeareth to me as foreboding fearful consequences!'

"Dhritarāshtra said, 'O Sanjaya, the glances of the distressed daughter of Drupada might consume the whole earth! Can it be possible that even a single son of mine will live? The wives of the Bhāratas, uniting with Gāndhāri, upon beholding the virtuous Krishnā, the wedded wife of the Pāndavas, endued with beauty and youth, dragged into the court, set up a frightful wail! Even now, along with all my subjects, they weep every day! Enraged at the ill treatment of Draupadi, the Brāhmanas in a body performed not that evening their *Agnihotra* ceremony. The winds blew mightily, as they do at the time of the universal dissolution. There was a terrible thunderstorm also. Meteors fell from the sky, and Rāhu by swallowing the Sun unseasonably alarmed the people terribly. Our war-chariots were suddenly ablaze, and all their flagstaffs fell down foreboding evil unto the Bhāratas! Jackalls began to cry frightfully from within the sacred fire chamber of Duryodhana, and asses from all directions began

to bray in response. Then Bhishma and Drona, and Kripa, and Somadatta and the high-sould Vāhlika, all left the assembly. It was then that at the advice of Vidura I addressed Krishnā and said,—*I will grant thee boons, O Krishnā, indeed, whatever thou wouldst ask!* The princess of the Pānchāla there begged of me the liberation of the Pāndavas. Of my own motion I then set free the Pāndavas, commanding them to return (to their capital) on their cars and with their bows and arrows. It was then that Vidura told me,—Even this will prove the destruction of the Bharata race, *viz*, this dragging of Krishnā into the court! This daughter of the king of Pānchāla is the faultless Sree herself. Of celestial origin, she is the wedded wife of the Pāndavas. The wrathful sons of Pāndu will never forgive this insult offered unto her. Nor will the mighty bowmen of the Vrishni race, nor the mighty warriors amongst the Pānchālas suffer this in silence. Supported by Vāsudeva of unbaffled prowess, Arjuna will assuredly come back, surrounded by the Pānchāla host. And that mighty warrior amongst them, Bhimasena endued with surpassing strength, will also come back, whirling his mace like Yama himself with his club. Those kings will scarcely be able to bear the force of Bhima's mace. Therefore, O king, not hostility but peace for ever with the sons of Pāndu is what seemeth to me to be the best! The sons of Pāndu are always stronger than the Kurus. Thou knowest, O king, that the illustrious and mighty king Jarāsandha was slain in battle by Bhima with his bare arms alone! Therefore, O bull of the Bharata race, it behoveth thee to make peace with the sons of Pāndu! Without scruples of any kind, unite the two parties, O king! And if thou actest in this way, thou art sure to obtain good luck, O king!—It was thus, O son of Gavalgani, that Vidura addressed me in words of both virtue and profit. But I did not accept this counsel, moved by affection for my son!"

Thus ends the eighty-first Section in the Anudyuta of the Sabhā Parva.

SABHA PARVA FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

Published and distributed chiefly *gratis*

BY

PROTAP CHANDRA ROY

VANA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHARATA PRESS.

No. 367, Upper Chitpore Road,

1884.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

NOTICE.

After having completed the *Adi* and *Sabhā* Parvas, in the present Part I enter upon the *Vana*, the largest of the eighteen Parvas with the single exception of the Sānti. My condition now, as I have already said, resembles that of a person who after having crossed rivers finds himself on the waters of the shoreless main. The *Vana* appals my spirit by reason of its vastness, and fills me with great apprehensions. I ask myself, "How shall I come out of this trackless forest? Who will lead me through the frightful wilderness abounding with all forms of fierceness, from serpents and tigers and lions to *Rāksha sas* of grim visage?"

Regaining my composure, however, I see that I need not be so very much terrified. The same beneficent Hari that conducted the afflicted Pāndavas from the palpable gloom of the forest into the blessed light of day, and who has hitherto watched over me in all my difficulties—difficulties that would otherwise have paralysed my energies—will certainly not forsake me now. Next to the slayer of Madhu, on earth there is Her Gracious Majesty the Queen-Empress of India, the incarnate Divinity on earth, as my scriptures teach me,—whose protection I may crave and who, interested in all projects of real usefulness to her people, will never bear to see a helpless and dutiful subject of hers perish amid the dangers indicated, even though these are of his own seeking. Next to the Queen-Empress is her representative in this realm, the august dignitary whose glorious privilege it is to exert his beneficent influence in administering the affairs of millions of his Imperial Mistress's subjects, and upon whose help I may be permitted to build my hope. Next to the Viceroy of India are the Provincial Governors upon whom I may rely for succour, persuaded that their kind hearts will not fail to induce them to come to my rescue in the midst of my difficulties. Next to these are the high officials of Government—those satellites that cluster round the central luminary, to whose generous sympathy and disinterested zeal I may look up for aid. Those personages, ever eager to foster all that is noble and humanising, will never, I am pursuaded, behold me perish in the solitary woods. Next to these, are the illustrious princes

and chiefs of the land, who would do honor to any country in the world for their generous patronage of letters, and who, I am convinced, will offer me their gracious assistance. Next to these are the Zemindars and merchant-princes of India, the vast body of my countrymen, and, I am proud to say, my countrywomen, who also, I have every faith, will never remain idle while I should be toiling in the pathless woods and crying for help.

The Bhārata Institution has been known to scholars and readers of almost all countries. It is not to India alone, therefore, that I look for help. I would appeal to every country in the world. "Literature", I have already said, "is a cosmopolitan concern. Vyāsa and Vālmiki lived as much for the Hindus as for any other race of men." Nor have I been as yet disappointed in my expectations, in so far as sympathy with my labors is concerned. As yet, of all countries, however, America—enlightened and liberal and generous America,—with a heart brimful of sympathy for everything that is humanising, has accorded me much encouragement. I am pursuaded that if appealed to, America will stretch forth her hand to me in my perils. And judging from the past, Europe also, I am confident, will come to my assistance, and serve to make the undertaking in which I am engaged a *fait accompli.*

Calcutta:
No. 367, Upper Chitpore Road.

PROTAP CHUNDRA ROY,
Secy. to the Dātavya Bhārata Kāryalaya.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Aranyaka Parva

	PAGE.
The Pāndavas retire into exile . .	1
The attempt of the citizens to make them desist .	2
The arrival of the Pāndavas at the banian named *Prāmāna*	4
Yudhishthira's endeavour to dismiss the Brāhmanas	5
Saunaka's exhortation to Yudhishthira regarding *Dharma* and *Artha* . . .	ib
Yudhishthira laments for his inability to feed his regenerate followers . . .	11
Dhaumya advises him to invoke Surya . .	12
The hundred and eight names of Surya . .	ib
Yudhishthira's invocation of Surya . .	14
Surya shows himself to Yudhishthira and presents him with a miraculous copper vessel . .	16
Yudhishthira entertains the Brāhmanas with the food from that inexhaustible vessel . .	17
The Pāndavas set out for the woods of Kāmyaka .	ib
Vidura advises Dhritarāshtra to recall Yudhishthira and give him back his kingdom . . .	18
Vidura leaves Dhritarāshtra for joining the Pāndavas	20
The arrival of the Pāndavas at Kāmyaka . .	ib
The arrival of Vidura at Kāmyaka . .	ib
Dhritarāshtra sends Sanjaya to recall Vidura .	23
Vidura comes back to Dhritarāshtra . .	ib
Duryodhana resolves to slay the Pāndavas and is prevented by Vyāsa . . .	25
Vyāsa reproves Dhritarāshtra for exiling the Pāndavas	26
The story of Indra and Surabhi . .	27
Vyāsa advises Dhritarāshtra to conclude peace with the Pāndavas	28
Maitreya's advice to Duryodhana for peace .	30
Duryodhana slights Maitreya and is cursed by him .	31

Kirmira-badha Parva.

PAGE.

Vidura narrates the death of Kirmira at Bhima's hands 32

Arjunābhigamana Parva.

The Bhojas, the Vrishnis, and the Andhakas come to see the Pāndavas 36
Arjuna recites the achievements of Krishna in his former lives 37
Draupadi's lamentations to Krishna . . 40
Krishna's consolations to Draupadi . . 45
Krishna narrates Sālwa's attack on Dwārakā and the destruction of his aerial city by himself . 47
Krishna leaves the Pāndavas for Dwārakā . . 67
The Pāndavas go to Dwaitavana . . 70
Mārkandeya comes to see Yudhishthira . . 72
Mārkandeya's consolations to Yudhishthira . ib
Draupadi exhorts Yudhishthira to wreak vengeance on the foe 76
Draupadi relates the conversation between Prahlāda and Vali on the ever-forgiving and the never-forgiving 78
Prahlāda indicates occasions of forgiveness . 80
Yudhishthira expatiates over the evils of anger . 81
"Forgiveness is the highest virtue" . . 85
Draupadi's remarks on consequences of acts . 86
Draupadi's scepticism 88
Yudhishthira refutes his wife and maintains that virtue is its own reward 89
Draupadi extolls the virtues of action . . 93
Draupadi's censure of those that believe in Chance and Destiny . . . . ib
Bhima's remarks on virtue . . . 97
Bhima exhorts Yudhishthira to snatch the kingdom by force 103
Yudhishthira's inability to violate his pledge . 106
Bhima censures Yudhishthira as weak . . 107
Yudhishthira deprecates immediate action . 110

PAGE.

Vyāsa comes to the Pāndavas . . . 111
He imparts to Yudhishthira the knowledge called *Pratismriti* 112
Yudhishthira repairs to Kāmyaka . . ib
Yudhishthira imparts to Arjuna the knowledge called *Pratismriti* 114
Arjuna sets out for seeing Indra . . 116
Arjuna meets with Indra in the guise of an ascetic . ib

Kairāta Parva.

Arjuna's asceticism on the Himavat . . 119
Mahādeva comes to Arjuna disguised as a *Kirāta* . 120
The combat between Mahādeva and Arjuna . 122
The Kairāta dicovers himself to Arjuna . . 125
Arjuna's hymn to Mahādeva . . . ib
Mahādeva bestoweth the *Pāçupata* weapon on Arjuna 127
Indra and the other deities come to see Arjuna . 129

Indraloka-gamana Parva.

The gods give all their weapons to Arjuna . 130
Mātali takes Arjuna to heaven . . . 134
Description of the city of Indra . . 135
Arjuna obtains celestial weapons . . 138
Urvaçi goes to Arjuna's abode at night . . 143
Urvaçi discovers to him her passion . . 144
Arjuna declines to gratify her . . . ib
Urvaçi curses Arjuna 145
The curse changed into a blessing by Indra . 146
Lomaça goes to Yudhishthira at the instance of Indra 148
Conversation between Dhritarāshtra and Sanjaya . 149

Nalopākhyana Parva

Conversation of Yudhishthira and Bhima . 158
Vrihadaçwa comes to the Pāndavas . . 160
The story of Nala and Damayanti . . 161
Nala and Damayanti conceive a passion for each other 162

PAGE.

The feathery messengers to Damayanti . . 163
The announcement of Damayanti's *Sayamvara* . 164
The celestials intercept Nala . . . 166
Nala repairs to Damayanti as messenger of the celestials 167
Nala requests her to accept Indra or any of the other celestials for her lord . . . ib
Damayanti's refusal 169
Damayanti openly chooses Nala for her lord . 171
Kali possesses Nala in rage . . . 174
Nala loses to Pushkara at dice his kingdom and goes to exile 177
Nala forsakes his wife in the forest . . 181
The power of chastity . . . 184
Damayanti's lament 185
Damayanti beholds an asylum of ascetics . 189
The asylum vanishes from her sight . . 192
Damayanti meets with a caravan . . 193
Damayanti flees from the merchants . . 197
Damayanti goes to the city of Suvāhu . . 198
The Queen-mother receives Damayanti cordially . 199
Nala saves a snake and is bit by it for his good . 201
Nala goes to king Rituparna . . . 203
Bhima sends out Brāhmanas to search for Nala and Damayanti 204
Sudeva discovers Damayanti . . . ib
Damayanti returns to the city of her father . 208
Brāhmanas despatched to search for Nala . 211
Damayanti sends Sudeva to Rituparna . . ib
Report of Damayanti's second *Sayamvara* . 212
Rituparna sets out for the city of the Vidarbhas . 213
Rituparna exchanges with Vāhuka his skill at dice for the latter's knowledge of horses . . 216
Kali leaves Nala 217
Damayanti sends her maid Keçini to Vāhuka . 220
Conversation between Vāhuka and Keçini . ib
Keçini comes back to Vāhuka with Damayanti's children 224
Vāhuka is brought before Damayanti . . . 225

PAGE.

Nala's identity with Vāhuka 226
The conversation between husband and wife . ib
The Wind-god vindicates Damayanti's character . 227
Rejoicings in the city 228
Nala's return to his own kingdom . . 229
Nala wins back his kingdom from Pushkara . 230
Damayanti brought back from her father's city . 232

Tirtha-yātrā Parva.

The lamentations of the Pāndavas for Arjuna . 234
Nārada describes the merits of visiting *tirthas* . 238
The merits of *Pushkara* . . . 240
Directions for visiting the *tirthas* successively . 242
Kurukshetra and other places . . . 249
The story of Mankanaka . . . 258
Various *tirthas* and the merits thereof . . 259
The country between Gangā and Yamuna the *mons veneris* of the world . . . 281
Prayāga, Pratisthāna, etc. are the sacrificial platforms of the Creator 282
No *tirthá* like unto Gangā 283
Dhaumya enumerates various holy spots . . 289
Lomaça brings from heaven tidings of Arjuna . 297
The Pāndavas visit various *tirthas* . . 304
Description of the *tirtha* called *Brahmasara* . 305
The destruction of Vātāpi by Agastya . . 307
Birth of Lopāmudrā 308
Agastya marries Lopāmudrā . . . 309
Conversation between Agastya and Lopāmudrā . 310
Agastya goes to Illwala 312
Agastya eats up Vātāpi 313
Meeting of Rāma and Paraçu-Rāma . . 316
Rāma discovers his native form . . . 317
Paraçu-Rāma proceeds to the Mahendra mountains . ib
The origin of the thunder-bolt . . . 319
The encounter of the gods and the *Dānavas* . 320
The destruction of Vritra by Indra . . 321

PAGE.
Agastya drinks up the Ocean . . . 327
The sixty thousand sons of Sagara reduced to ashes . 333
Bhagiratha's austerities for gratifying Gangā . 337
Bhagiratha goes to the Kailāça and practises penances 338
Bhagiratha brings down Gangā from heaven . 339
The wonderful birth of Rishyaçringa . . 343
The courtesans allure Rishyaçringa . . 345
Rishyaçringa brought to king Lomapāda . . 350
Paraçu-Rāma slays his mother . . . 359
Paraçu-Rāma slays Kritavirya's son Arjuna . 360
Arjuna's sons slay Jamadagni . . . ib
Paraçu-Rāma exterminates the Kshatriyas . 362
Yudhishthira visits various sacred spots . . 363
The Vrishnis visit Yudhishthira . . . 364
Valarāma's lament for the exile of the Pāndavas . 365
Sātyaki proposes for immediate retaliation . 368
Krishna and Yudhishthira pacify him . . 370
The departure of the Yādavas . . . 371
Chyavana weds Sukanyā . . . 375
Chyavana attains youth and beauty through the aid of the twin Açwins 377
Indra's arm paralysed by Chyavana . . 379
Indra chastised by Chyavana and the twin Açwins made Soma-drinkers at sacrifices . . 380
Wonderful birth of Māndhātā . . . 384
King Somaka offers his son Jantu as a victim . 387
Somaka liberates himself and his priest from hell . 389
Indra and Agni test the merit of Uçinara . 393
Uçinara cuts off his own flesh to save the pigeon from the hawk 395
The birth of Ashtāvakra . . . 397
Ashtāvakra repairs to king Janaka's sacrifice . 398
Ashtāvakra's controversy with Vandi . . 402
Vandi defeated enters into water . . 407
Austerities practised by Yavakrita . . 409
His violent death 413
Bharadwāja ascends the funeral pyre . . 414

PAGE.

Bharadwāja and Yavakrita restored to life . 417
Yudhishthira's grief for Arjuna . . 421
Destruction of Naraka by Vishnu . . 424
The Earth sinks in consequence of over-population . 425
Vishnu becomes a Boar for raising her up . . 426
The Pāndavas proceed to the Gandhamādana . 427
Draupadi faints on the way . . . 429
Ghatotkacha comes to the Pāndavas . . 430
Ghatotkacha bears Krishnā on his back . . 431
The asylum of Nara and Nārāyana . . 432
Bhima's journey for celestial lotuses . . 435
Bhima meets with Hanumān . . . 440
Bhima's conversation with Hanumān . . ib
Bhima's discomfiture 443
Hanumān describes to Bhima the nature of the different *Yugas* 446
Bhima beholds Hanumān's former shape . . 449
Hanumān's instructions to Bhima as regards the duties of the several orders . . . 450
The arrival of Bhima at the lotus-lake . . 455
Bhima's encounter with the Yakshas . . 458
Yudhishthira and the others search for Bhima . . 460

Jatāçura-badha Parva.

Yudhishthira, the twins and Krishnā carried off by a Rākshasa 462
Bhima slays the Rākshasa . . . 467

Yaksha-yudha Parva.

Description of the Gandhamādana . . 469
The Pāndavas come to the hermitage of Arshtishena 473
Bhima goes to procure flowers for Draupadi . 477
Bhima defeats and slays the Yaksha Manimān . 480
Vaiçravana comes to the Pāndavas . . 482
His instructions to Yudhishthira . . 484
Arjuna's return from heaven . . . 491

Nivāta-kavacha yudha Parva.

PAGE.

Indra comes to the Pāndavas . . . 493
Arjuna relates his encounter with Mahādeva . 494
Arjuna describes his experiences . . 497
Arjuna describes his fight with the *Nivāta-kavachas* 505
Arjuna's destruction of the aerial city called Hiranya-pura 512
Arjuna's exhibition of celestial weapons to Yudhishthira 517
Nārada interferes to stop it . . . 518

Ajagara Parva.

The Pāndavas go to the Kailāça . . 521
Bhima is caught by a mighty snake . . 525
The snake narrates its history to Bhima . . 526
Yudhishthira sets out to search for Bhima. . 529
The snake puts questions to Yudhishthira . . 530
Yudhishthira puts questions to the snake . . 532
The snake or Nahusha liberates Bhima and goes to heaven 536

Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva.

Krishna comes to see Arjuna . . . 538
Krishna conveys to Draupadi tidings of her sons . 540
Mārkandeya comes to the Pāndavas . . 541
Mārkandeya's disquisition on the chastening effects of affliction 543
The wonderful revival of the sage Tārkshya's son . 547
Atri obtains wealth from king Venya . . 550
Saraswati mentions the fruits of various virtuous acts 551
History of Vaivaswata Manu . . . 552
Story of the fish reared by Manu . . 554
The ship in the deluge . . . 555
Mārkandeya describes the characters of the different *Yugas* 557
The conflagration and deluge at the end of the *Yuga* 561
Mārkandeya's experiences in Vishnu's stomach . 563
Nārāyana describes his own nature to Mārkandeya . 566

PAGE.

Mārkandeya's description of the practices of the *Kali* age 571
Revival of the creation after the *Kali* age . 578
Return of the *Krita* age . . . 579
Mārkandeya instructs Yudhishthira as to his duties 581
Story of king Parikshit . . . 582
Story of Vāmadeva and Sala and the latter's violent death 585
Story of king Dala 588
Meeting of Vaka and Indra . . . 590
Wonderful self-sacrifice of king Sivi . . 596
Sivi slays his own son to feed a Brāhmana . 601
Story of king Indradyumna's longevity . . 603
Mārkandeya on the various modes of charity . 605
The merits of entertaining guests . . 609
Purity relative to the Brāhmanas . . 612
The mysteries of charity . . . 615
Devotions of the *Rishi* Utanka . . . 618
How Vishnu slew Madhu and Kaitava . . 624
Destruction of Dhundhu by Kuvalāçwa . . 627
Story of the good housewife . . . 631
Kauçika goes to the fowler . . . 635
The fowler speaks of the various duties of kings, and of the supreme importance of virtue . . 636
The fowler expounds the nature of virtue . 640
He defends the eating of animal food . . 643
The doctrine of *Karma*, etc. . . . 646
The righteous and the unrighteous characterized . 650
Of self-discipline 652
The nature of the attributes *Sattwa*, *Rajas* and *Tamas* 654
Of the vital airs, etc. 656
The fowler's filial piety . . . 660
The fowler's previous life . . . 663
Genealogy of the family of *Angiras* . . 669
The origin of the five tribes . . . 672
Various kinds of *Agni* . . . 674

PAGE

Indra's encounter with Keçin . . . 679
The wonderful planetary conjunction . . 681
Adbhuta knows Swāhā . . . 684
The birth of Skanda . . . . ib
Description of his form . . . 685
Indra's encounter with Skanda . . . 689
Indra appoints Skanda as generallissimo of the celestial hosts 693
Skanda's marriage with Devasenā . . 694
Origin of Sitā Putanā 697
Skanda marches forth surrounded by the celestial hosts 701
Defeat of the Dānavas by Skanda . . 706
The overthrow of Mahisha . . . ib
The various names of Skanda . . . 707
Mārkandeya's hymn to Skanda . . . 708

Draupadi Satyabhāmā Samvāda Parva.

Draupadi explains to Satyabhāmā how she may win the affections of Krishna . . . 711
Draupadi instructs Satyabhāmā on the duties of a wife 714
Krishna's departure 716

Ghosha-yātrā Parva.

Dhritarāshtra's lament . . . 718
Karna advises Duryodhana to behold the Pāndavas in exile 721
Dhritarāshtra dissuades Duryodhana . . 725
Duryodhana goes to Dwaitavana . . 726
Quarrel and encounter with the Gandharvas . 730
Karna's defeat and flight . . . 731
The defeat and captivity of Duryodhana . . 732
The message to Yudhishthira . . . ib
Yudhishthira urges his brothers to rescue the captives 733
Arjuna's fight with Chitrasena . . . 736
The heroism of the Pāndavas and the cessation of the fight 739

PAGE.

Yudhishthira's liberation of Duryodhana . . 740
Duryodhana's despondency . . . 742
Karna's efforts to soothe Duryodhana . . 746
Duryodhana resolves to die . . . 748
Duryodhana carried away by the Dānavas . 750
The Dānavas unfold to Duryodhana who he is . ib
Karna comforts Duryodhana . . . 753
The Vaishnava sacrifice . . . 754
Karna sets out on a career of conquest . . 756
Karna's victories and conquests . . . ib
Duryodhana celebrates the Vaishnava sacrifice . 760
The Pāndavas are invited to it . . . 761
The message of Bhima to Duryodhana . . ib
Yudhishthira's vision of the deer . . 764
The Pāndavas repair to Kāmyaka . . 765
Vyāsa's visit to the Pāndavas . . . 766
Vyāsa instructs Yudhishthira in morality . . 767
The self-denial of Mudgala . . . 768
The celestial messenger describes the felicities of heaven 771
The disadvantages pertaining to the celestial regions 773
Mudgala declines to go to heaven . . 774
Mudgala finally attains to *nirvāna* . . 775

Draupadi-harana Parva.

The sage Durvāsā comes to Duryodhana . . 775
The boon he grants to Duryodhana . . 776
Durvāsā goes to the Pāndavas after Draupadi's meal, with ten thousand disciples . . . 777
Draupadi invokes Krishna . . . ib
Krishna comes and performs a miracle . . 778
Jayadratha on his way through the woods beholds Draupadi 781
Draupadi's offer of hospitality to Jayadratha . 785
Jayadratha's insulting overtures to Draupadi . 787
Draupadi carried off by Jayadratha . . 788
The Pāndavas set out to rescue Draupadi . . 791
Draupadi describes the Pāndavas to Jayadratha . 792

PAGE

Encounter of the Pāndavas with Jayadratha . 794
Defeat and slaughter of Jayadratha's followers . 795
Jayadratha pursued by Bhima and Arjuna . 797
Jayadratha disfigured and led captive before Yudhishthira 798
Jayadratha's adorations to Mahādeva . . 800
Mahādeva confers a boon on him . . ib
Mahādeva describes to Jayadratha the antecedents of Arjuna and Krishna . . . 801
Yudhishthira's despondency . . . 804
Mārkandeya begins to narrate the history of Rāma . 805
Birth of Rāma and his brothers . . . ib
Rāvana and his brothers perform austerities and obtain boons from Brahmā . . . 808
The celestial Dundubhi is born as Mantharā . 810
Daçaratha intends to instal Rāma as Prince-Regent 812
Kaikeyi insists on the king to banish Rāma . 813
Rāma sets out for the forest . . . ib
The mutilation of Surpanakhā by Lakshmana . 814
Surpanakhā goes back to Rāvana . . ib
Rāvana desires Māricha to entice Rāma away from his forest-abode 815
Māricha entices away Rāma . . . 816
Māricha's imitation of Rāma's voice . . 817
Rāvana carries away Sitā . . . 818
Encounter between Rāvana and the vulture Jatāyu ib
Defeat of Jatāyu . . . . ib
Rāma obtains tidings of Sitā from the expiring Jatāyu 819
The grief of Rāma and his wanderings . . 820
Metamorphosis of the Gandharva Viçwāvashu . 821
Rāma's meeting with Sugriva . . . 823
Encounter between Sugriva and Vāli . . 824
Sitā in the Açoka woods . . . 825
Trijatā comforts Sitā 826
Rāvana endeavours to seduce Sitā . . 828
Sitā's speech 829

PAGE.

Hanumān brings tidings of Sitā . . 832
The description of Hanumān's journey . . 833
The monkeys flock to Sugriva . . . 835
The monkey-chief Nala constructs a bridge across the ocean 838
Description of Lankā 839
Angada's embassy to Rāvana . . . 840
The seige of Lankā 841
Engagement with the Rākshasas . . 842
Kumbhakarna fights with Lakshmana and is slain by him 847
Indrajit enters the field . . . 849
He overpowers Rāma and Lakshmana . . 850
Indrajit is slain by Lakshmana . . . 853
Rāvana's fight with Rāma . . . 854
Rāvana is slain 856
Sitā is led from the Açoka woods to the presence of Rāma 857
The celestials declare Sitā's purity and chastity . 859
The monkeys slaughtered in battle are restored to life 860
Sitā confers immortality on Hanumān and food and drink in profusion for ever . . . ib
Installation of Vibhishana on the throne . ib
Rāma's return to Ayodhyā . . . 861
Installation of Rāma on the throne . . ib
Mārkandeya comforts Yudhishthira . . 862

Pativratā-māhātmya Parva.

The story of Sāvitri 864
Birth of Sāvitri 865
Sāvitri goes in search of a husband . . 866
Nārada unfolds the *one* defect of Satyavān . 868
Sāvitri persists in wedding Satyavān . . 869
Marriage of Sāvitri with Satyavān . . 870
Sāvitri observes a difficult vow . . . 871
Sāvitri goes to the deep woods with her lord . 873
Satyavān's sudden head-ache and death . . 874
Yama appears before Sāvitri . . . ib

PAGE.

Yama carries away Satyavān's life . . 875
Sāvitri follows Yama . . . . ib
Sāvitri obtains various boons from Yama . . 877
Sāvitri obtains Satyavān's life . . . 880
Satyavān restored to consciousness . . 881
Satyavān sets out for the hermitage . . 883
The *Rishis* console Dyumatsena afflicted with grief at the absence of Satyavān . . . 884
Sāvitri returns to the hermitage . . 885
Sāvitri relates everything to the *Rishis* . . 886
People come to Dyumatsena from Sālwa . . 887
Dyumatsena sets out for his own city and is placed on his throne 888

Kundalāharana Parva.

Deprivation of Karna's ear-rings by Indra . 889
Surya in a dream warns Karna of Indra's intention ib
Karna's determination to give away the ear-rings and coat of mail 891
Surya advises Karna to give away the ear-rings and mail only on one condition . . . 894
The secret of Karna's birth . . . 895
A holy Brāhmana comes to king Kuntibhoja . ib
Kuntibhoja desires Kunti to serve the Brāhmana . 896
Kunti deputed to serve the Brāhmana . . 897
The Brāhmana's boons to Kunti . . 900
Kunti invokes Surya from girlish curiosity . 901
Surya desires Kunti to gratify him . . 902
Surya succeeds in persuading Kunti . . 904
Surya begets upon Kunti a son by *Yoga* power . 905
Kunti gives birth to a god-like son . . 906
Kunti consigns her offspring to the river Açwa . ib
Her lamentations . . . . ib
Rādhā finds the basket containing the child . 907
Karna reared by Adhiratha of the *Suta* caste . 908
Karna sent to Hastināpura . . . ib

PAGE.

Karna becomes a mighty bowman . . 908
Indra comes to Karna as a Brāhmana for the ear-rings 909
Karna consents to give the ear-rings in lieu of an infallible dart 911
Karna receives a dart from Indra and peels off his natural mail 912
The admiration of the celestials . . . ib
The sorrow of the Dhārtarāshtras . . ib
The joy of the Pāndavas . . . ib

Araneya Parva.

The Pāndavas return to Dwaitavana . . 913
The Pāndavas set out to rescue a Brāhmana's fire-sticks carried away by a deer . . . ib
The Pāndavas fail to overtake the deer . . 914
The Pāndavas overcome with hunger and thirst, sit down to talk over their calamity . . ib
Nakula, Sahadeva, Arjuna, and Bhima, one after another, set out to fetch water and fall down dead at the lake 915
Yudhishthira goes to the lake . . . 918
Yudhishthira's lament on beholding his brothers . ib
An aerial voice speaks to Yudhishthira . . 920
The Yaksha appears before Yudhishthira . . 921
The Yaksha's interrogatories to Yudhishthira and the latter's answers . . . . ib
The Yaksha revives Yudhishthira's brothers . 930
The Yaksha discovers himself to be *Dharma* . 931
Dharma's boons to Yudhishthira, especially about the period of concealment . . . 932
Dhaumya consoles Yudhishthira . . . 934
The Brāhmanas bid farewell to the Pāndavas . 935

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

VANA PARVA.

SECTION I.

(Aranyaka Parva.)

Having bowed down to Nārāyana, and Nara the foremost of male beings, and the goddess Saraswati also, must the word Jaya be uttered.

Janamejaya said,—"O thou foremost of regenerate ones, deceitfully defeated at dice by the sons of Dhritarāshtra and their counsellors, incensed by those wicked ones that thus brought about a fierce animosity, and addressed in language that was so cruel, what did the Kuru princes my ancestors—the sons of Prithā—(then) do? How also did the sons of Prithā, equal unto Cakra in prowess, deprived of affluence and suddenly overwhelmed with misery, pass their days in the forest? Who followed the steps of those princes plunged in excess of affliction? And how did those high-souled ones bear themselves and derive their sustenance, and were did they put up? And, O illustrious ascetic and foremost of Brāhmanās, how did those twelve years (of exile) of those warriors who were slayers of foes, pass away in the forest? And undeserving of pain, how did that princess, the best of her sex, devoted to her husbands, eminently virtuous, and always speaking the truth, endure that painful exile in the forest? O thou of ascetic wealth, tell me all this in detail, for, O Brāhmana, I desire to hear thee narrate the history of those heroes possessed of abundant prowess and lustre. Truly, my curiosity is great"

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thus defeated at dice and incensed by the wicked sons of Dhritarāshtra and their counsellors, the sons of Prithā set out from the city called after the elephant. And issuing through "*Vardhamana*" gate of the city the

Pāndavas, bearing their weapons and accompanied by Krishnā, set out in a northerly direction. And Indrasena and others, numbering altogether fourteen and one servants, with their wives, followed them on swift cars. And the citizens learning of their departure became overwhelmed with sorrow, and began to censure Bhishma and Vidura and Drona and Gautama. And having met together they thus addressed one another fearlessly :—

"'Alas! Our families, we ourselves, and our homes are all gone, when the wicked Duryodhana, backed by the son of Suvala, by Karna, and Duscasana, aspireth to this kingdom. And, Oh, our families, our (ancestral) usages, our virtue and prosperity, are all doomed where this sinful wretch supported by wretches as sinful aspireth to the kingdom! And, Oh, how can happiness be there where these are not! Duryodhana beareth malice towards all superiors, hath taken leave of good conduct, and quarreleth with those that are near to him in blood. And covetuous and vain and mean, he is cruel by nature. The whole earth is doomed when Duryodhana becometh its ruler. Thither, therefore, let us proceed whither the merciful and high-minded sons of Pāndu, with passions under control and victorious over foes, and possessed of modesty and renown, and devoted to pious practices, repair!'"

Vaisampāyana said. "And saying this, the citizens went after the Pāndavas, and having met them, they all, with joined hands, thus addressed the sons of Kunti and Mādri :—

"'Blest be ye! Where will ye go, leaving us in grief? We will follow you whithersoever ye will go! Surely have we been distressed upon learning that ye have been deceitfully vanquished by relentless enemies! It behoveth you not to forsake us that are your loving subjects and devoted friends always seeking your welfare and employed in doing what is agreeable to you! We desire not to be overwhelmed in certain destruction living in the dominions of the Kuru king. Ye bulls among men, listen as we indicate the merits and demerits springing respectively from association with what is good and bad! As cloth, water, the ground, and sesame seeds are perfumed by association with flowers, even so are qualities ever

the product of association. Verily, association with fools produceth an illusion that entangleth the mind, as daily communion with the good and the wise leadeth to the practice of virtue. Therefore, they that desire emancipation should associate with those that are wise and old and honest and pure in conduct and possessed of ascetic merit. They should be waited upon whose triple possessions, *viz*, knowledge (of the Vedas,) origin, and acts, are all pure, and association with them is even superior to (the study of the) scriptures. Devoid of religious acts as we are, we shall yet reap religious merit by association with the righteous, as we should come by sin by waiting upon the sinful. The very sight and touch of the dishonest, and converse and association with them, cause diminution of virtue, and men (that are doomed to these) never attain purity of soul. Association with the base impaireth the understanding, as, indeed, with the indifferent maketh it indifferent, while communion with the good ever exalteth it. All those attributes which are spoken of in the world as the sources of religious merit, of worldly prosperity and sensual pleasures, which are regarded by the people, extolled in the Vedas, and approved by the well-behaved, exist in you, separately and jointly! Therefore, desirous of our own welfare, we wish to live amongst you who possess those attributes!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'Blessed are we since the people with the Brāhmanas at their head, moved by affection and compassion, credit us with merits we have not. I, however, with my brothers, would ask all of you to do onething. Ye should not, through affection and pity for us, act otherwise! Our grand-father Bhishma, the king, (Dhritarāshtra,) Vidura, my mother, and most of my well-wishers, are all in the city of Hastināpura. Therefore, if minded to seek our welfare, as they are overwhelmed with sorrow and afflictions, cherish ye them with care, uniting all together. Grieved at our departure, ye have come far! Go ye back, and let your hearts be directed with tenderness towards the relatives I entrust to you as pledges! This, of all others, is the one act upon which my heart is set, and by doing this ye would give me great satisfaction and pay me your best regards!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Thus exhorted by Yudhishthira the just, the people in a body set up a loud wail exclaiming, '*Alas, O king!*' And afflicted and overwhelmed with sorrow on remembering the virtues of Pritha's son, they unwillingly retraced their steps, asking leave of the Pāndavas.

"The citizens having ceased to follow, the Pāndavas ascended their cars, and setting out reached (the site of) the mighty banian called *Pramāna* on the banks of the Ganges. And reaching the site of the banian about the close of day, the heroic sons of Pāndu purified themselves by touching the (sacred) water, and passed the night there. And afflicted with woe they spent that night taking water alone as their sole sustenance. And certain Brāhmanas belonging to both classes, *viz*, those that maintained the sacrificial fire and those that maintained it not, who had, with their disciples and relatives, out of affection followed the Pāndavas thither (also passed the night with them). And surrounded by those utterers of *Brahma*, the king shone resplendant in their midst. And in that evening hour, at once beautiful and terrible, those Brāhmanas, having lighted their (sacred) fires, began to chaunt the Vedas and hold mutual converse. And those foremost of Brāhmanas, with swan-sweet voices spent the night, comforting that best of Kurus—the king."

And thus ends the first Section in the Aranyaka of the Vana Parva.

SECTION II.

(Aranyaka Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "When that night passed away and day broke in, those Brāhmanas who supported themselves by mendicancy, stood before the Pāndavas of exalted deeds, who were about to enter the forest. Then king Yudhishthira, the son of Kunti, addressed them, saying, 'Robbed of our prosperity and kingdom, robbed of everything, we are about to enter the deep woods in sorrow: depending for our food, on fruits and roots, and the produce of the chase. The forest too is full of dangers, and abounds with reptiles and beasts of prey. It

appeareth to me that ye will certainly have to suffer much privation and misery there. The sufferings of the Brāhmanas might overwhelm the very gods. That they would overwhelm me is too certain. Therefore, O ye Brāhmanas, go ye back whithersoever ye list!'

"The Brānmanas replied, 'O king, our path is even that on which ye are for setting out! It behoveth thee not, therefore, to forsake us who are thy devoted admirers practising the true religion! The very gods have compassion upon their worshippers,—especially upon Brāhmanas of regulated lives!'

"Yudhishthira said. 'Ye regenerate ones, I too am devoted to the Brāhmanas! But this destitution that hath overtaken me overwhelmeth me with confusion! These my brothers that are to procure fruits and roots and the deer (of the forest) are stupefied with grief arising from their afflictions and on account of the distress of Draupadi and the loss of our kingdom! Alas! as they are distressed, I cannot employ them in painful tasks!'

"The Brāhmanas said. 'Let no anxiety, O king, in respect of our maintenance, find a place in thy heart! Ourselves providing our own food, we shall follow thee and by meditation and saying our prayers we shall compass thy welfare, while by pleasant converse we shall entertain thee and be cheered ourselves.'

"Yudhishthira said, 'Without doubt, it must be as ye say, for I am ever pleased with the company of the regenerate ones! But my fallen condition maketh me behold in myself an object of reproach! How shall I behold you all, that do not deserve to bear trouble, out of love for me painfully subsist upon food procured by your own toil? Oh, fie upon the wicked sons of Dhritarāshtra!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Saying this, the weeping king sat himself down upon the ground. Then a learned Brāhmana, Saunaka by name, versed in the philosophy of the soul and skilled in the *Sānkhya* system of *yoga*, addressed the king, saying, 'Causes of grief by thousands, and causes of fear by hundreds, day after day, overwhelm the ignorant but not the wise. Surely, sensible men like thee never suffer themselves to be deluded by acts that are opposed to true knowledge, fraught

with every kind of evil, and destructive of salvation. O king, in thee dwelleth that understanding furnished with the eight attributes, which is said to be capable of providing against all evils and which resulteth from a study of the *Sruti* (Vedas) and scriptures! And men like unto thee are never stupefied, on the accession of poverty or on afflictions overtaking their friends, through bodily or mental uneasiness! Listen! I shall tell thee the *slokas* which were chanted of old by the illustrious Janaka touching the subject of controlling the soul! This world is afflicted with both bodily and mental suffering. Listen now to the means of allaying it as I indicate them both briefly and in detail. Disease, contact with painful things, toil and want of objects desired,—these are the four causes that induce bodily suffering. As regards disease, it may be allayed by the application of medicine, while mental ailments are cured by seeking to forget them in *Yoga* meditation. For this reason, sensible physicians first seek to allay the mental sufferings of their patients by agreeable converse and the offer of desirable objects. And as a hot iron bar thrust into a jar maketh the water therein hot, even so doth mental grief bring on bodily agony. And as water quencheth fire, so doth true knowledge allay mental disquietude. And the mind attaining ease, the body findeth ease also. It seemeth that affection is the root of all mental sorrow. It is affection that maketh every creature miserable and bringeth on every kind of woe. Verily, affection is the root of all misery and of all fear, of joy and grief, of every kind of pain. From affection spring all purposes, and it is from affection that spring the love of worldly goods! Both of these (latter) are sources of evil, though the first (our purposes) is worse than the second. And as (a small portion of) fire thrust into the hollow of a tree consumeth the tree itself to its roots, even so affection, ever so little, destroyeth both virtue and profit. He cannot be regarded to have renounced the world who hath merely withdrawn from worldly possessions. He, however, who though in actual contact with the world regardeth its faults, may be said to have truly renounced the world. Freed from every evil passion, his soul dependent on nothing, such a one hath

truly renounced the world! Therefore, should no one seek to place his affections on either friends or the wealth he hath earned. And so should affection for one's own person be extinguished by knowledge. Like the lotus-leaf that is never drenched by water, the souls of men capable of distinguishing between the ephemeral and the ever-lasting, of men devoted to the pursuit of the eternal, conversant with the scriptures and purified by knowledge, can never be moved by affection. The man that is influenced by affection is tortured by desire; and from the desire that springeth up in his heart his thirst for worldy possessions increaseth. Verily, this thirst is sinful and is regarded as the source of all anxieties. It is this terrible thirst, fraught with sin that leadeth unto unrighteous acts. Those find happiness that can renounce this thirst, which can never be renounced by the wicked, which decayeth not with the decay of the body, and which is truly a fatal disease! It hath neither beginning nor end. Dwelling within the heart, it destroyeth creatures, like a fire of incorporeal origin. And as a faggot of wood is consumed by the fire that is fed by itself, even so doth a person of impure soul find destruction from the covetousness born of his heart. And as creatures endued with life have ever a dread of death, so men of wealth are in constant apprehension of the king and the thief, of water and fire, and even of their relatives. And as a morsel of meat if in the air may be devoured by birds, if on the ground by beasts of prey, and if in water by the fishes, even so is the man of wealth exposed to dangers wherever he may be. To many the wealth they own is their bane, and he that beholding happiness in wealth becometh wedded to it, knoweth not true happiness. And hence accession of wealth is viewed as that which increaseth covetousness and folly. Indeed, wealth alone is the root of niggardliness and boastfulness, of pride and fear and anxiety! These are the miseries of men that the wise see in riches! Men undergo infinite miseries in the acquisition and retention of wealth. Its expenditure also is fraught with grief. Nay, sometimes, life itself is lost for the sake of wealth! The abandonment of wealth produces misery, and even they that are cherished by one's wealth become enemies for the sake of that

wealth! When therefore, the possession of wealth is fraught with such misery, one should not mind its loss. It is the ignorant alone who are discontented. The wise, however, are always content. The thirst of wealth can never be assuaged. Contentment is the highest happiness. Therefore, it is, that the wise regard contentment as the highest object of pursuit. The wise, knowing the instability of youth and beauty, of the life and treasure-hoards, of prosperity and the company of the loved ones, never covet them. Therefore, should one refrain from the acquisition of wealth, bearing the pain incident to it. None that is rich is free from trouble, and it is for this that the virtuous applaud them that are free from the desire of wealth. And as regards those that pursue wealth for purposes of virtue, it is better for them that do so, to altogether refrain from such pursuit, for, surely, it is better not to touch mire at all than to wash it off after having been besmeared with it. And, O Yudhishthira, it behoveth thee not to covet anything! And if thou wouldst have virtue, emancipate thyself from desire of worldly possessions!'

"Yudhishthira said, 'O Brāhmana, this my desire of wealth is not for enjoying it when obtained. It is only for the support of the Brāhmanas that I desire it and not because I am actuated by avarice! For what purpose, O Brāhmana, doth one like us lead a domestic life, if he cannot cherish and support those that follow him? All creatures may be seen to divide the food (they procure) amongst those that depend on them. * So should a person leading a domestic life give a share of his food to *Yatis* and *Brahmacharins* that have renounced cooking for themselves. Grass (for seat), space (for rest), water (to wash and assuage thirst), and, fourthly, sweet words—of these the houses of the good can never be in want. To the weary a bed,—to one fatigued with standing, a seat,—to the thirsty, water,—and to the

* This seems to be the obvious meaning. There is a different reading, however. For *Dricyatay*=seen, some texts have *Casyatay*=applauded. Nilkantha imagines that the meaning is "As distribution (of food) amongst the various classes of beings like the gods, the *Pitris*, &c. is applauded, &. c., &. c."=*T*.

hungry, food should ever be given. To a guest are due pleasant looks and a cheerful heart and sweet words. The host, rising up, should advance towards the guest, offer him a seat, and duly worship him. Even this is eternal morality. They that perform not the *Agni-hotra*, * nor wait upon bulls, nor cherish their kinsmen and guests and friends and sons and wives and servants, are consumed with sin for such neglect. None should cook his food for himself alone, and none should slay an animal without devoting it to the gods, the *pitris*, and guests. Nor should one eat of that food which hath not been duly dedicated to the gods and the *pitris*. By scattering food on the earth, morning and evening, for (the behoof of) dogs and *Chandālas* and birds, should a person perform the *Vaiswadeva* sacrifice. † He that eateth the *Vighasa* is regarded as eating ambrosia. What remaineth in a sacrifice after dedication to the gods and the *pitris* is regarded as ambrosia; and what remaineth after feeding the guest is called *Vighasa* and is equivalent to ambrosia itself. Feeding a guest is equivalent to a sacrifice, and the pleasant looks the host casteth upon the guest, the attention he devoteth to him, the sweet words in which he addresseth him, the respect he payeth by following him, and the food and drink with which he treateth him, are the five *Dakshinas* ‡ in that sacrifice. He who giveth without stint food to a fatigued way-farer never seen before, obtaineth merit that is great. And he who, leading a domestic life, followeth such practices, acquireth religious merit that is said to be very great. O Brāhmana, what is thy opinion on this?'

---

* A form of sacrifice which consists in pouring oblations of clarified butter with prayers into a blazing fire. It is obligatory on Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas, except those that accept certain vows of great austerity.—*T.*

† The *Vaiswadeva* sacrifice is the offer of food to all creatures of the earth (by scattering a portion).—*T.*

‡ A gift. It may be of various kinds. The fees paid to Brāhmanas assisting at sacrifices and religious rites, such as offering oblations to the dead, are *Dakshinas*, as also gifts to Brāhmanas on other occasions, particularly when they are fed, it being to this day the custom never to feed a Brāhmana without paying him a pecuniary fee. There can be no sacrifice, no religious rite, without *Dakshina*.—*T.*

"Saunaka said, 'Alas, this world is full of contradictions! That which shameth the good gratifieth the wicked! Alas, moved by ignorance and passion, and slaves of their own senses, even fools perform many acts of (apparent merit) to gratify (in after-life) their appetites! With eyes open are these men led astray by their seducing senses, even as a charioteer, who hath lost his senses, by restive and wicked steeds! When any of the six senses findeth its particular object, the desire springeth up in the heart to enjoy that particular object. And thus when one's heart proceedeth to enjoy the obects of any particular sense, a wish is entertained, which, in its turn, giveth birth to a resolve. And, finally, like unto an insect falling into a flame from love of light, the man falleth into the fire of temptation, pierced by the shafts of the object of enjoyment discharged by the desire constituting the seed of the resolve! And thenceforth blinded by sensual pleasure which he seeketh without stint, and steeped in dark ignorance and folly which he mistaketh for a state of happiness, he knoweth not himself! And like unto a wheel that is incessantly rolling, every creature, from ignorance and deed and desire, falleth into various states in this world, wandering from one birth to another, and rangeth the entire circle of existences from a *Brahmā* to the point of a blade of grass, now in water, now on land, and now again in air!

"'This then is the career of those that are without knowledge. Listen now to the course of the wise, they that are intent on profitable virtue, and are desirous of emancipation! The Vedas enjoin, *act* but *renounce* (interest in) *action*. Therefore, shouldst thou act, renouncing *Abhimāna*. * Performance of sacrifices, study (of the Vedas), gifts, penance, truth (in both speech and act), forgiveness, subduing the senses, and renunciation of desire,—these have been declared to be the eight (cardinal) duties constituting the true path. Of these, the four first pave the way to the world of the *pitris*. And these

---

* Reference to *Self*, literally, *i. e.* without the motive of bettering one's ownself, or without any motive at all. (This contains the germ of the doctrine preached more elaborately in the *Bhagavat gita*),—*T.*

should be practised without *Abhimāna.* The four last are always observed by the pious, to attain the heaven of the gods. And the pure in spirit should ever follow these eight paths. Those who wish to subdue the world for purposes of salvation, should ever act, fully renouncing motives, effectually subduing their senses, rigidly observing particular vows, devotedly serving their preceptors, austerely regulating their fare, diligently studying the Vedas, renouncing action as a mean, and restraining their hearts. By renouncing desire and aversion, the gods have attained prosperity. It is by virtue of their wealth of *yoga* * that the *Rudras,* and the *Sādhyas,* and the *Adityas,* and the *Vasus,* and the twin *Aswins,* rule the creatures. Therefore, O son of Kunti, like unto them do thou, O Bhārata entirely refraining from action with motive, strive to attain success in *yoga* and by ascetic austerities! Thou hast already achieved such success so far as thy debts to thy ancestors, both male and female, are concerned, and that success also which is derived from action (sacrifices)! Do thou, for serving the regenerate ones endeavour to attain success in penances. Those that are crowned with ascetic success can, by virtue of that success, do whatever they list; do thou, therefore, practising asceticism realise all thy wishes!'"

Thus ends the second Section in the Aranyaka of the Vana Parva.

SECTION III.

(Aranyaka Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, thus addressed by Saunaka, approached his priest and in the midst of his brothers said, 'The Brāhmanas versed in the Vedas are following me who am departing for the forest! Afflicted with many calamities I am unable to support them! I cannot abandon them, nor have I the power to offer them sustenance! Tell me, O holy one, what should be done by me in such a pass!'"

---

* This *Yoga* consists, in their case, of a combination of attributes by negation of the contrary ones, *i. e.* by renunciation of motives in all they do.

Vaisampāyana said. "After reflecting for a moment seeking to find out the (proper) course by his *yoga* powers, Dhaumya, that foremost of all virtuous men, addressed Yudhishthira, in these words:—'In days of old, all living beings that had been created were sorely afflicted with hunger. And like a father (unto all of them), *Savitri* (the sun) took compassion upon them. And going first into the northern declension, the sun drew up water by his rays, and coming back to the southern declension, stayed over the earth, with his heat centered in himself. And while the Sun so stayed over the earth, the lord of the vegetable world (the moon), converting the effects of the solar heat (vapours) into clouds and pouring them down in the shape of water, caused plants to spring up. Thus it is the Sun himself who, drenched by the lunar influence, is transformed, upon the sprouting of seeds, into holy vegetables furnished with the six tastes. And it is these which constitute the food of all creatures upon the earth. Thus the food that supporteth the lives of creatures is instinct with solar energy, and the Sun is, therefore, the father of all creatures! Do thou, hence, O Yudhishthira, take refuge even in him! All illustrious monarchs of pure descent and deeds are known to have delivered their people by practising high asceticism. The great Kārttaviryya, and Vainya, and Nahusa, had all, by virtue of ascetic meditation preceded by vows, delivered their people from heavy afflictions! Therefore, O virtuous one, as thou art purified by thy acts, do thou likewise, entering upon a life of austerities, O Bhārata, virtuously support the regenerate ones!'"

Janamejaya said. "How did that bull among the Kurus, king Yudhishthira, for the sake of the Brāhmanas adore the Sun of wonderful appearance?"

Vaisampāyana said. "Listen attentively, O king, purifying thyself and withdrawing thy mind from every other thing! And, O king of kings, appoint thou a time. I will tell thee everything in detail! And, O illustrious one, listen to the one hundred and eight names (of the Sun) as they were disclosed of old by Dhaumya to the high-souled son of Prithā! Dhaumya said, 'Sûrya, Aryaman, Bhaga, Twaṣṭri, Pushā, Arka, Savitri, Ravi, Gabhastimat, Aja, Kāla, Mrityu, Dhātri,

Prabhākara, Prithibi, Apa, Teja, Kha, Vāyu, the sole stay, Soma, Vrihaspati, Sukra, Budha, Angāraka, Indra, Vivaswāt, Diptānshu, Suchi Sauri, Sanaischara, Brahmā, Vishnu, Rudra, Skanda, Vaisravana, Yama, Vaidyutāgni, Jātharāgni, Aindhna, Tejasam-pati, Dharmadhdhwaja, Veda-karttri, Vedānga, Veda-vāhana, Krita, Tretā, Dwāpara, Kali, full of every impurity, Kalā, Kāsthā, Muhurtta, Kshapā, Yāma and Kshana; Samvatsara-kara, Aswattha, Kālachakra. Bibhāvasu, Purusha, Sāswata, Yogin, Vyāktāvyākta, Sanātana, Kālādhyaksha, Prajādhyaksha, Vishwakarman, Tamonuda, Varuna, Sāgara, Ansu, and Jimuta, Jivana, Arihan, Bhutāsraya, Bhutapati, Srastri, Samvartaka, Vanhi, Sarvādi, Alolupa, Ananta, Kapila, Bhānu, Kāmada, Sarvatomukha, Jaya, Vicsla, Varada, Manas, Suparna, Bhutādi, Sighraga, Prānadhārana, Dhanwantari, Dhumaketu, Adideva, Aditisuta, Dwādasātman, Aravindāksha, Pitri, Mātri, Pitāmaha, Swarga-dwāra, Prajādwāra, Mokshadwāra, Tripistapa, Dehakartri, Prasāntātman, Viswātman, Viswatomukha, Charācharātman, Sukhsmātman, the merciful Maitreya. These are the hundred and eight names of Surya of immeasurable energy, as told by the self-create (Brahmā). For the acquisition of prosperity. I bow down to thee, O Bhāskara, blazing like unto gold or fire, who is worshipped of the gods and the *Pitris* and the Yakhas, and who is adored by Asuras, Nisacharas, and Siddhas. He that with fixed attention reciteth this hymn at sun-rise, obtaineth wife and offspring and riches and the memory of his former existence, and by reciting this hymn a person attaineth patience and memory. Let a man concentrating his mind, recite this hymn. By doing so, he shall be proof against grief and forest-fire and ocean and every object of desire shall be his.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Having heard from Dhaumya these words suitable to the occasion, Yudhishthira the just, with heart concentrated within itself and purifying it duly, became engaged in austere ascetic meditation, moved by the desire of supporting the Brāhmanas. And worshipping the maker of day with offerings of flowers and other articles, the king perfomed his ablutions. And standing in the stream, he

turned his face towards the god of day. And touching the water of the Ganges, the virtuous Yudhishthira with senses under complete control and depending upon air alone for his sustenance, stood there with rapt soul engaged in *prānāyāma.* * And having purified himself and restrained his speech, he began the hymn of praise (to the Sun).

"Yudhishthira said, 'Thou art, O Sun, the eye of the universe! Thou art the soul of all corporeal existences! Thou art the origin of all things! Thou art the embodiment of the acts of all religious men! Thou art the refuge of those versed in the *Sānkhya* philosophy (the mysteries of the soul,) and thou art the support of the *Yogins*! Thou art a door unfastened with bolts! Thou art the refuge of those wishing for emancipation! Thou sustainest and discoverest the world, and sanctifiest and supportest it from pure compassion! Brāhmanas versed in the Vedas, appearing before thee, adore thee in due time, reciting the hymns from the respective branches (of the Vedas) they prefer! Thou art the adored of the Rishis! The *Siddhas*, and the *Chāranas*, and the *Gandharvas*, and the *Yakshas*, and the *Guhykas*, and the *Nāgas*, desirous of obtaining boons follow thy car coursing through the skies! The thirty-three gods † with Upendra (Vishnu) and Mahendra, and the order of *Vaimānikas*, ‡ have attained success by worshipping thee! By offering thee garlands of the celestial *Mandāras*, § the best of the *Vidyādharas* have obtained all their desires! The *Guhyas* and the seven orders of the *Pitris*—both divine and human—have attained superiority by adoring thee alone! The *Vasus*, the *Marutas*, and the *Rudras*, the *Sāddhyas*, the *Marichipas*, the *Vālikhilyas*, and the *Siddhas*, have attained pre-eminence by bowing down unto thee! There is nothing that I know in the entire seven worlds, including that of Brah-

---

* A form of *Yoga* that is said to consist in the mingling of some of the airs supposed to exist in every animal body. These airs are five: *Prāna*, *Apāna*, *Samāna*, *Udana*, and *Vyana*.

† The 8 *Vasus*, the 11 *Rudras*, the 12 *Adityas*, *Prajapati*, and *Vashatkara*.

‡ An order of celestials.

§ Celestial flowers of much fragrance.

mā, which is beyond thee! There are other beings both great and endued with energy; but none of them hath thy lustre and energy! All light is in thee, indeed thou art the lord of all light! In thee are the (five) elements and all intelligence, and knowledge and asceticism and the ascetic properties. * The discus by which the wielder of the *Sārnga* † humbleth the pride of the Asuras, and which is furnished with a beautiful nave, was forged by Viswakarman with thy energy! In summer thou drawest, by thy rays, moisture from all corporeal existences and plants and liquid substances, and pourest it down in the rainy season! Thy rays warm and scorch, and becoming as clouds roar and flash with lightning and pour down showers when the season cometh. Neither fire nor shelter, nor woolen cloths give greater comfort to one suffering from chilling blasts than thy rays! Thou illuminest by thy rays the whole Earth with her thirteen islands! Thou alone art engaged in the welfare of the three worlds! If thou dost not rise, the universe becometh blind and the learned cannot employ themselves in the attainment of virtue, wealth, and profit! It is through thy grace that the (three) orders of Brāhmanas, Kshatriyas and Vaisyas are able to perform their various duties and sacrifices! ‡ Those versed in chronology say that thou art the beginning and thou the end of a day of Brahmā, which consisteth of a full thousand *Yugas!* Thou art the lord of the Manus and of the sons of the Manus, of the universe and of man, of the *Manwantaras*, and their lords! When the time of universal dissolution cometh, the fire *Samvartaka* born of thy wrath consumeth the three worlds and existeth alone! And clouds of various hues begot of thy rays, accompanied by the elephant Airāvata and the thunderbolt, bring about the appointed deluges. And dividing thyself into twelve parts and becoming as many suns, thou drinkest up the ocean once more with thy rays! Thou art called Indra, thou art Vishnu, thou art Brahmā, thou art Prajāpati! Thou art fire and thou art the subtle mind! And

* The ascetic properties are *Anima*, *Laghima*, *&c.*

† The bow of Vishnu, as that of Civa is called *Pinaka*.

‡ The words of the text are *Adhana*, *Pashubandha*, *Ishti*, *Mantra-yajna*, and *Tapa-kriyā*.

thou art the lord and the eternal *Brahmā* ! Thou art *Hansa*, thou art *Savitri*, thou art *Bhānu*, *Ansumālin*, and *Vrishākapi* ! Thou art *Vivasawan*, *Mihira*, *Pusha*, *Mitra*, and *Dharma* ! Thou art thousand-rayed, thou art *Aditya*, and *Tapana*, and the lord of rays ! Thou art *Mārtanda*, and *Arka* and *Ravi* and *Surya* and *Saranya* and maker of day, and *Divakara*, and *Saptasapti*, and *Dhumakeshin* and *Virochana* ! Thou art spoken of as swift of speed and the destroyer of darkness, and the possessor of yellow steeds ! He that reverentially adoreth thee on the sixth or the seventh lunar day with humility and tranquillity of mind, obtaineth the grace of Lakshmi ! They that with undivided attention adore and worship thee, are delivered from all dangers, agonies, and afflictions. And they that hold that thou art everywhere (being the soul of all things) live long, freed from sin and enjoying an immunity from all diseases ! O lord of all food, it behoveth thee to grant food in abundance unto me who am desirous of food even for entertaining all my guests with reverence ! I bow also to all those followers of thine that have taken refuge at thy feet—*Māthara* and *Aruna* and *Danda* and others, including *Asani* and *Kshuvā* and the others ! And I bow also to the celestial mothers of all creatures, *viz*, *Kshuva* and *Maitri* and the others of the class ! O, let them deliver me their suppliant !' "

Vaisampāyana said. "Thus, O great king, was the Sun, that purifier of the world, adored (by Yudhishthira) ! And pleased with the hymn, the maker of day, self-luminous, and blazing like fire, showed himself to the son of Pāndu. And Vivaswān said, 'Thou shalt obtain all that thou desirest ! I shall provide thee with food for five and seven years together ! And, O king, accept this copper vessel which I give unto thee ! And, O thou of excellent vows, as long as Pānchāli will hold this vessel, without partaking of its contents fruits and roots and meat and vegetables cooked in thy kitchen, these four kinds of food shall from this day be inexhaustible ! And on the fourteenth year from this, thou shalt regain thy kingdom !' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Having said this, the god vanished away. He that, with the desire of obtaining a boon, reciteth this hymn concentrating his mind with ascetic abstrac-

tion, obtaineth it from the Sun, however difficult of acquisition it may be that he asketh for. And the person, male or female, that reciteth or heareth this hymn day after day, if he or she desireth for a son, obtaineth one, and if riches, obtaineth them, and if learning, acquireth that too! And the person, male or female, that reciteth this hymn every day in the two twilights, if overtaken by danger, is delivered from it, and if bound, is freed from the bonds. Brahmā himself had communicated this hymn to the illustrious Sakra, and from Sakra was it obtained by Nārada, and from Nārada, by Dhaumya. And Yudhishthira, obtaining it from Dhaumya, attained all his wishes. And it is by virtue of this hymn that one may always obtain victory in war, and acquire immense wealth also. And it leadeth the reciter from all sins, to the solar region."

Vaisampāyana continued. "Having obtained the boon, the virtuous son of Kunti, rising from the water, took hold of Dhaumya's feet and then embraced his brothers. And, O exalted one, wending then with Draupadi to the kitchen, and adored by her duly, the son of Pāndu set himself to cook (their day's) food. And the clean food, however little, that was dressed, furnished with the four tastes, increased and became inexhaustible. And with it Yudhishthira began to feed the regenerate ones. And after the Brāhmanas had been fed, and his younger brothers also, Yudhishthira himself ate of the food that remained, and which is called *Vighasa*. And after Yudhishthira had eaten, the daughter of Prishata took what remained. And after she had taken her meal, the day's food became exhausted.

"And having thus obtained the boon from the maker of day, the son of Pāndu, himself as resplendant as that celestial, began to entertain the Brāhmanas agreeably to their wishes. And obedient to their priest, the sons of Prithā, on auspicious lunar days and constellations and conjunctions, performed sacrifices according to the ordinance, the scriptures, and the *mantras*. And after the sacrifices, the sons of Pāndu, blessed by the auspicious rites performed by Dhaumya and accompanied by him, and surrounded also by the Brāhmanas, set out for the woods of *Kamyaka*."

Thus ends the third Section in the Aranyaka of the Vana Parva.

Section IV.

(*Aranyaka Parva continued.*)

Vaisampāyana said. "After the Pāndavas had gone to the forest, Dhritarāshtra the son of Amvikā, whose knowledge was his eye, * became exceedingly sorrowful. And seated at his ease the king addressed these words to the virtuous Vidura of profound intelligence :—'Thy understanding is as clear as that of Bhārgava ! † Thou knowest also all the subtleties of morality, and thou lookest on all the Kauravas with an equal eye. O tell me what is proper for me and them ! O Vidura, things having thus taken their course, what should we do now ? How may I secure the goodwill of the citizens so that they may not destroy us to the roots ? O, tell us all, since thou art conversant with every excellent expedient !'

"Vidura said. 'The three-fold purposes, O king, (*viz*, profit, pleasure, and salvation), have their foundations in virtue, and the sages say that a kingdom also standeth on virtue as its basis. Therefore, O monarch, according to the best of thy power, cherish thou virtuously thy own sons and those of Pāndu ! That virtue had been beguiled by wicked souls with Suvala's son at their head, when thy sons invited the righteous Yudhishthira and defeated him in the match at dice. O king, of this deed of utter iniquity I behold this expiation whereby, O chief of the Kurus, thy son, freed from sin, may win back his position among good men ! Let the sons of Pāndu, obtain that which was given unto them by thee. For, verily, even this is the highest morality that a king should remain content with his own, and never covet another's possessions. Thy

---

* Dhritarashtra being blind is described as *Prajnachakshu*, *i.e*, having knowledge for his eye. It may also mean, "Of the prophetic eye." —T

† The great preceptor of the Asuras, *viz*, *Sukra*, possessing the highest intelligence as evidenced by his various works on all manner of subjects particularly, the *Sukra-nīti*.—T.

good name then would not suffer, nor would family dissensions ensue, nor unrighteousness be thine! This then is thy prime duty now,—to gratify the Pāndavas and disgrace Sakuni. If thou wishest to restore to thy sons the good fortune they have lost, then, O king, do thou speedily adopt this line of conduct! If thou dost not act so, the Kurus will surely meet with destruction, for neither Bhimasena nor Arjuna, if angry, will leave any of their foes unslain. What is there in the world which is unattainable to those who count among their warriors *Savyasāchi* skilled in arms; who have the *Gāndiva*, the most powerful of all weapons in the world, for their bow; and who have amongst them the mighty Bhīma also as a warrior? Formerly, as soon as thy son was born, I told thee—*Forsake thou this inauspicious child of thine. Herein lieth the good of thy race.*—But thou didst not then act accordingly. Now also, O king, have I pointed out to thee the way of thy welfare. If thou doest as I have counselled, thou shalt not have to repent afterwards! If thy son consent to reign in peace jointly with the sons of Pāndu, passing thy days in joy thou shalt not have to repent! Should it be otherwise, abandon thou thy child for thy own happiness! Putting Duryodhana aside, do thou instal the son of Pāndu in the sovereignty, and let, O king, Ajātasatru, free from passion, rule the earth virtuously! All the kings of the earth, then, like Vaisyas, will, without delay, pay homage unto us! And, O king, let Duryodhana and Sakuni and Karna with alacrity wait upon the Pāndavas. And let Dussāsana, in open court, ask forgiveness of Bhimasena and of the daughter of Drupada also. And do thou pacify Yudhishthira by placing him on the throne with every mark of respect. Asked by thee, what else can I counsel thee to do? By doing this, O monarch, thou wouldst do what was proper!'

"Dhritarāshtra said. 'These words, O Vidura, that thou hast spoken in this assembly, with reference to the Pāndavas and myself, are for their good but not for ours. My mind doth not approve them. How hast thou settled all this in thy mind now? When thou hast spoken all this on behalf of the Pāndavas, I perceive that thou art not friendly to me. How can I abandon my son for the sake of the sons of Pāndu? Doubtless,

they are my sons, but Duryodhana is sprung from my body. Who then, speaking with impartiality, will ever counsel me to renounce my own body for the sake of others? O Vidura, all that thou sayest is crooked, although I hold thee in high esteem! Stay or go as thou listest! However much may she be humoured,, an unchaste wife forsaketh her husband!' "

Vaisampāyana said. "O king, saying this, Dhritarāshtra rose suddenly and went into the inner apartments. And Vidura, saying 'This race is doomed' went away to where the sons of Prithā were."

Thus ends the fourth Section in the Aranyaka of the Vana Parva.

SECTION V.

(Aranyaka Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "Desirous of living in the forest, those bulls of the Bharata race, the Pāndavas, with their followers, setting out from the banks of the Ganges went to the field of Kurukshetra. And performing their ablutions in the Sarswati, the Drisadwati and the Yamunā, they went from one forest to another, travelling in an westerly direction. And at length they saw before them the woods of Kāmyaka, the favorite haunt of *Munis*, situated by a level and wild plain on the banks of the Saraswati. And in those woods, O Bhārata, abounding in birds and deer, those heroes began to dwell, entertained and comforted by the Munis. And Vidura always longing to see the Pāndavas, went in a single car to the Kāmyaka woods abounding in every good thing. And arriviving at Kāmyaka on a car drawn by swift steeds, he saw Yudhishthira the just sittting with Draupadi at a retired spot, surrounded by his brothers and the Brāhmanas. And seeing Vidura approach from a distance with swift steps, the virtuous king addressed his brother, Bhimasena, saying, 'With what message doth Kshatta come to us? Doth he come hither, despatched by Sakuni, to invite us again to a game of dice? Doth the little-minded Sakuni intend to win again our weapons at dice? O Bhimasena, challenged by any one addressing me,—*Come,* I am unable

to stay! And if our possession of the *Gāndiva* becomes doubtful, will not the acquisition of our kingdom also be so?' "

Vaisampāyana said. "O king, the Pāndavas then rose up and welcomed Vidura. And received by them, that descendant of the Ajamida line (Vidura) sat in their midst and made the usual enquiries. And after Vidura had rested awhile, those bulls among men asked him the reason of his coming. And Vidura began to relate unto them in detail everything connected with the bearing of Dhritarāshtra the son of Amvikā.

"Vidura said. 'O Ajātasatru, Dhritarāshtra called me, his dependant, before him and honoring me duly, said,—Things have fared thus. Now, do thou tell me what is good for the Pāndavas as well as for me.—I pointed out what was beneficial to both the Kauravas and Dhritarāshtra. But what I said was not relished by him, nor could I hit upon any other course. What I advised was, O Pāndavas, highly beneficial, but the son of Amvikā heeded me not. Even as medicine recommendeth itself not to one that is ill, so my words failed to please the king. And, O thou without a foe, as an unchaste wife in the family of a man of pure descent, cannot be brought back to the path of virtue, so I failed to bring Dhritarāshtra back. Indeed, as a young damsel doth not like a husband of three score, even so Dhritarāshtra did not like my words! Surely, destruction will overtake the Kuru race: surely Dhritarāshtra will never acquire good fortune! For as water dropped on a lotus leaf doth not remain there, my counsels will fail of effect to Dhritarāshtra! The incensed Dhritarāshtra told me—O Bhārata, go thou thither where thou likest! Never more shall I seek thy aid in ruling the earth or my capital!—O best of monarchs, forsaken by king Dhritarāshtra, I come to thee for tendering good counsel! What I had said in the open court, I will now repeat unto thee! Listen, and bear my words in mind!—That wise man who bearing all the gross wrongs heaped upon him by his enemies, patiently bideth his time, and multiplieth his resources even as men by degrees turn a small fire into a large one, ruleth alone this entire earth. He that (in prosperity) enjoyeth his substance with his adherents findeth in them sharers of his adversity.—This is the best means of securing adherents,

and it is said that he that hath adherents, winneth the sovereignty of the world! And, O Pāndava, devide thy prosperity with thy adherents, behave truthfully towards them, and converse with them agreeably! Share also your food with them! And never boast thyself in their presence! This behaviour increaseth the prosperity of kings!'—

"Yudhishthira said. 'Having recourse to such high intelligence, undisturbed by passion, I will do as thou counsellest! And whatever else thou mayst counsel in respect of time and place, I will carefully follow entirely.'"

And thus ends the fifth Section in the Aranyaka of the Vana Parva.

Section VI.

(Aranyaka Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "O king, after Vidura had gone to the abode of the Pāndavas, Dhritarāshtra, O Bhārata, of profound wisdom, repented of his action. And thinking of the great intelligence of Vidura in matters connected with both war and peace, and also of the agrandisement of the Pāndavas in the future, Dhritarāshtra, pained at the recollection of Vidura, having approached the door of the hall of state fell down senseless in the presence of the monarchs (in waiting). And regaining consciousness, the king rose from the ground and thus addressed Sanjaya standing by, "My brother and friend is even like the god of Justice himself! Recollecting him to-day, my heart burneth in grief! Go, bring unto me without delay my brother well-versed in morality!' Saying this, the monarch wept bitterly. And burning in repentance, and overwhelmed with sorrow at the recollection of Vidura, the king, from brotherly affection, again addressed Sanjaya, saying, 'O Sanjaya, go thou and ascertain whether my brother, expelled by my wretched self through anger, liveth still! That wise brother of mine of immeasurable intelligence hath never been guilty of even the slightest transgression, but, on the other hand, he it is who hath come by grievous wrong at my

hands! Seek him, O wise one, and bring him hither; else, O Sanjaya, I will lay down my life!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words of the king, Sanjaya expressed his approbation, and saying *So be it*, went in the direction of the Kāmyaka woods. And arriving without loss of time at the forest where the sons of Pāndu dwelt, he beheld Yudhishthira clad in deer-skin, seated with Vidura, in the midst of Brāhmanas by thousands and guarded by his brothers, even like Purandara in the midst of the celestials! And approaching Yudhishthira Sanjaya worshippod him duly, and was received with due respect by Bhima and Arjuna and the twins. And Yudhishthira made the usual enquiries about his welfare and when he had been seated at his ease, he disclosed the reason of his visit, in these words: 'King Dhritarāshtra the son of Amvikā hath, O Kshatta! remembered thee! Returning unto him without loss of time, do thou revive the king! And, O thou best of men, with the permission of these Kuru princes—these foremost of men—it behoveth thee, at the command of that lion among kings, to return unto him!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Thus addressed by Sanjaya, the intelligent Vidura, ever attached to his relatives, with the permission of Yudhishthira returned to the city named after the elephant.* And after he had approached the king, Dhritarāshtra of great energy, the son of Ambhikā, addressed him, saying, 'From my good-luck alone, O Vidura, thou, O sinless one, so conversant with morality, hast come here remembering me! And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, in thy absence I was beholding myself, sleepless through the day and the night, as one that hath lost on earth!' And the king then took Vidura on his lap and smelt his head, and said, 'Forgive me, O sinless one, the words in which thou wert addressed by me!' And Vidura said, 'O king, I have forgiven thee.

---

* The name is written in two ways, Hastināpura, and Hāstinapura, the etymology being as explained in the text. There was also a king of the name of Hastin after whom, the city has been called. See Sambhava Parva in the *Adi Parva*, p.—*T.*

Thou art my superior, worthy of the highest reverence! Here am I, having come back, eagerly wishing to behold thee! All virtuous men, O tiger among men, are (instinctively) partial towards those that are distressed! This, O king, is scarcely the result of deliberation! (My partiality to the Pāndavas proceedeth from this cause)! O Bhārata, thy sons are as dear to me as the sons of Pāndu, but as the latter are now in distress, my heart yearneth after them!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "And addressing each other thus in apologetic speeches, the two illustrious brothers, Vidura and Dhritarāshtra, felt themselves greatly happy!"

Thus ends the sixth Section in the Aranyaka of the Vana Parva.

Section VII.

(*Aranyaka Parva continued.*)

Vaisampāyana said. "Hearing that Vidura had returned, and that the king had consoled him, the evil-minded son of Dhritarāshtra began to burn in grief. His understanding clouded by ignorance, he summoned the son of Suvala, and Karna and Dussāsana, and addressed them saying, 'The learned Vidura, the minister of the wise Dhritarāshtra hath returned! The friend of the sons of Pāndu, he is ever engaged in doing what is beneficial to them. So long as this Vidura doth not succeed in inducing the king to bring them back, do ye all think of what may benefit me! If ever I behold the sons of Prithā return to the city, I shall again be emaciated by renouncing food and drink, even though there be no obstacle in my path! And I shall either take poison or hang myself, either enter the pyre or kill myself with my own weapons. But I shall never be able to behold the sons of Pāndu in prosperity!'

"Sakuni said. 'O king, O lord of the earth, what folly hath taken possession of thee! The Pāndavas have gone to the forest, having given a particular pledge, so that what thou apprehendest can never take place! O bull of the Bhārata race, the Pāndavas ever abide by the truth. They will never,

therefore, accept the words of thy father! If, however, accepting the commands of the king, they come back to the capital, violating their vow, even this would be our conduct, *viz*, assuming an aspect of neutrality, and in apparent obedience to the will of the monarch, we will closely watch the Pāndavas, keeping our counsels!'

"Dussāsana said, 'O uncle of great intelligence, it is even as thou sayest! The words of wisdom thou utterest always recommend themselves to me!'

"Karna said, 'O Duryodhana, all of us seek to accomplish thy will, and, O king, I see that unanimity at present prevaileth among us! The sons of Pāndu, with passions under complete control, will never return without living out the promised period. If, however, they do return from failing sense, do thou defeat them again at dice.'"

Vaisampāyana said. "Thus addressed by Karna, king Duryodhana, with cheerless heart, averted his face from his counsellors. Marking all this, Karna expanding his beautiful eyes, and vehemently gasticulating in anger, haughtily addressed Duryodhana and Dussāsana and Suvala's son, saying, 'Ye princes, know ye my opinion! We are all servants of the king (Duryodhana), waiting upon him with joined palms! We should, therefore, do what is agreeable to him! But we are not always able to seek his welfare with promptness and activity (owing to our dependence on Dhritarāshtra)! But let us now, encased in mail and armed with our weapons, mount our cars and go in a body to slay the Pāndavas now living in the forest! After the Pāndavas have been quieted and after they have gone on the unknown journey, both ourselves and the sons of Dhritarāshtra will find peace! As long as they are in distress, as long as they are in sorrow, as long as they are destitute of help, so long are we a match for them! This is my mind!'

"Hearing these words of the charioteer's son, they repeatedly applauded him, and at last exclaimed, 'Very well!' And saying this, each of them mounted his car, and sanguine of success, they rushed in a body to slay the sons of Pāndu. And knowing by his spiritual vision that they had gone out, the master Krishna-dwaipāyana of pure soul came upon them,

and commanded them to desist. And sending them away, the holy one, worshipped of all the worlds, quickly appeared before the king whose intelligence served the purposes of eyesight, and who was then seated (at his ease). And the holy one addressed the monarch thus."

Thus ends the seventh Section in the Aranyaka of the Vana Parva.

SECTION VIII.

(Aranyaka Parva continued.)

"Vyāsa said. 'O wise Dhritarāshtra, hear what I say! I will tell thee that which is for the great good of all the Kauravas! O thou of mighty arms, it hath not pleased me that the Pāndavas have gone to the forest dishonestly defeated (at dice) by Duryodhana and others! O Bhārata, on the expiration of the thirteenth year, recollecting all their woes, they may shower death-dealing weapons, even like virulent poison, upon the Kauravas! Why doth thy sinful son of wicked heart, ever inflamed with ire, seek to slay the sons of Pāndu for the sake of their kingdom? Let the fool be restrained; let thy son remain quiet! In attempting to slay the Pāndavas in exile, he will only lose his own life. Thou art as honest as the wise Vidura, or Bhishma, or ourselves, or Kripa, or Drona. O thou of great wisdom, dissensions with one's own kin are forbidden, sinful and reprehensible! Therefore, O king, it behoveth thee to desist from them! And, O Bhārata, Duryodhana looketh with such jealousy towards the Pāndavas that great harm would be the consequence if thou didst not interfere. Or let this wicked son of thine, O monarch, alone and unaccompanied, himself go to the forest and live with the sons of Pāndu. For then, if the Pāndavas, from association, feel an attachment for Duryodhana, then, O king of men, good fortune may be thine! (This, however, may not be)! For it hath been heard that one's congenital nature leaveth him not till death.—But what think Bhishma and Drona and Vidura? What also dost thou think? That which is beneficial should be done while there is time, else thy purposes will be unrealised!'"

Thus ends the eighth Section in the Aranyaka of the Vana Parva.

SECTION IX.

(Aranyaka Parva continued.)

"Dhritarāshtra said. 'O holy one, I did not like this business of gambling, but, O Muni, I think I was made to consent to it drawn by Fate! Neither Bhishma, nor Drona, nor Vidura, nor Gāndhāri liked this game at dice. No doubt, it was begot of folly. And, O thou who delightest in the observance of vows, O illustrious one, knowing every thing yet influenced by paternal affection, I am unable to cast off my senseless son, Duryodhana!'

"Vyāsa said. 'O king, O son of Vichitra-vìrya, what thou sayest is true! We know it well that a son is the best of all things and that there is nothing that is so good as a son.* Instructed by the tears of Suravi † Indra came to know that the son surpasseth in worth other valuable possessions. O monarch, I will, in this connection, relate to thee that excellent and best of stories, the conversation between Indra and Suravi. In days of yore, Suravi the mother of cows was once weeping in the celestial regions. O child, Indra took compassion upon her, and asked her, saying,—O auspicious one! why dost thou weep? Is everything well with the celestials? Hath any misfortune, ever so little, befallen the world of men or serpents?—Suravi replied,—No evil hath befallen thee that I perceive. But I am agrieved on account of my son, and it is, therefore, O Kausika, that I weep! See, O chief of the celestials, yonder cruel husbandman is belabouring my weak son

---

* Nilakantha (the commentator) explains the word *Param* (occurring twice) in the second line of this verse as meaning both the best and the worst. The sense then would be, 'A son is the best or the worst thing one may have, according as he is a good or a bad son.' Beyond a popular adage to that effect, there is no authority that he cites, although, of course, he himself is no mean authority as regards the meaning of a word.—*T.*

† The celestial cow supposed to be the progenetrix of all creatures of the vaccine species.—*T.*

with the wooden stick, and oppressing him with the (weight of the) plough, in consequence of which my child agitated with agony is falling upon the ground and is at the point of death! At sight of this, O lord of the celestials, I am filled with compassion, and my mind is agitated! The one that is the stronger of the pair is bearing his burthen of greater weight (with ease), but, O Vāsava, the other is lean, and weak and is a mass of veins and arteries! He beareth his burden with difficulty! And it is for him that I grieve. See, O Vāsava, sore inflicted with the whip, and harassed exceedingly, he is unable to bear his burthen. And it is for him that, moved by grief, I weep in heaviness of heart, and these tears of compassion trickle down my eyes!

"'Sakra said,—O fair one, when thousands of thy sons are (daily) oppressed, why dost thou grieve for one under infliction?.—Suravi replied,—Although I have a thousand offspring, yet my affections flow equally towards all! But, O Sakra, I feel greater compassion for one that is weak and innocent!—'

"Vyāsa continued. 'Then Indra having heard these words of Suravi, was much surprised, and, O thou of the Kuru race, he became convinced that a son is dearer than one's life! And the illustrious chastiser of Pāka thereupon suddenly poured there a thick shower and caused obstruction to the husbandman's work. And as Suravi said, thy affections, O king, equally flow towards all thy sons. Let them be greater towards those that are weak! And as my son Pāndu is to me, so art thou, O son, and so also Vidura of profound wisdom! It is out of affection that I tell you all this! O Bhārata, thou art possessed of an hundred and one sons, but Pāndu hath only five. And they are in a bad plight and passing their days in sorrow. *How may they save their lives, how may they thrive* —such thoughts regarding the distressed sons of Prithā continually agitate my soul! O king of the earth, if thou desirest all the Kauravas to live, let thy son Duryodhana make peace with the Pāndavas!'"

Thus ends the ninth Section in the Aranyaka of the Vana Parva.

Section X.

(Aranyaka Parva continued.)

"Dhritarāstra said. 'O Muni of profound wisdom, it is even as thou sayest! I know it well as do all these kings! Indeed, what thou considerest to be beneficial for the Kurus was pointed out to me, O Muni, by Vidura and Bhishma and Drona. And if I deserve thy favor, and if thou hast kindness for the Kurus, do thou exhort my wicked son Duryodhana!'

"Vyāsa said. 'O king, after having seen the Pāndava-brothers here cometh the holy Rishi Maitreya, with the desire of seeing us. That mighty Rishi, O king, will admonish thy son for the welfare of this race. And, O Kauravya, whatever he adviseth must be followed undoubtingly, for if what he recommendeth is not done, the sage will curse thy son in anger.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Saying this, Vyāsa departed, and Maitreya made his appearance. And the king with his son respectfully received that way-worn chief of Munis, with offerings of the *Arghya* and other rites. And king Dhritarāshtra, the son of Amvikā, in words of respect thus addressed the sage, 'O holy one, hath thy journey from the *Kuru-jāngala* been a pleasant one? Are those heroes the five Pāndavas living happily? Do those bulls of the Kuru race intend to stay out their time? Will the brotherly affection of the Kauravas ever be impaired?'

"Maitreya said. 'Setting out on a pilgrimage to the different shrines, I arrived at *Kuru-jāngala*, and there I unexpectedly saw Yudhishthira the just in the woods of Kāmyaka. And, O exalted one, many Munis had come there to behold the high-souled Yudhishthira, dwelling in an ascetic asylum, clad in deer-skin and wearing matted locks. It was there, O king of kings, that I heard of the grave error committed by thy sons and the calamity and the terrible danger arisen from dice that had overtaken them. Therefore it is that I have come to thee, for the good of the Kauravas, since, O exalted one, my affection is great for thee and I am delighted with thee! O king, it is not fit that thy sons should on any account

quarrel with one another, thyself and Bhishma living. Thou art, O king, the stake at which bulls are tied (in treading corn), and thou art competent to punish and reward! Why dost thou overlook then this great evil that is about to overtake all? And, O descendant of the Kurus, for those wrongs that have been perpetrated in thy court, which are even like the acts of wretched outcastes, thou art not well thought amongst the ascetics!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Then turning to the wrathful prince Duryodhana, the illustrious Rishi Maitreya addressed him in these soft words:—'O mighty-armed Duryodhana, O best of all eloquent men, O illustrious one, give heed unto the words I utter for thy good! O king, seek not to quarrel with the Pāndavas! And, O bull among men, compass thou thy own good as also of the Pāndavas, of the Kurus and of the world! All those tigers among men are heroes of high prowess in war, gifted with the strength of ten thousand elephants, with bodies hard as the thunderbolt, holding fast by their promises, and proud of their manliness! They have slain the enemies of the celestials—those Rākshasas capable of assuming any form at will, such as were headed by Hidimva and Kirmira! When those high-souled ones went from hence, that Rākshasa of fierce soul obstructed their nocturnal path even like an immovable hill. And even as a tiger slayeth a little deer, Bhima, that foremost of all endued with strength, and ever delighting in fight, slew that monster. Consider also, O king, how while out on his campaign of conquest, Bhima slew in battle that mighty warrior, Jarāsandha, possessing the strength of ten thousand elephants. Related to Vāsudeva and having the sons of king Drupada as their brothers-in-law, who that is subject to decrepitude and death would undertake to cope with them in battle? O bull of the Bharata race, let there be peace between thee and the Pāndavas! Follow thou my counsels and surrender not thyself to anger!'

"O king, thus admonished by Maitreya, Duryodhana began to slap his thigh resembling the trunk of the elephant, and smilingly began to scratch the ground with his foot. And the wicked wretch spake not a word, but hung down his head.

And, O monarch, beholding Duryodhana thus offer him a slight by scratching the earth silently, Maitreya became angry. And, as if commissioned by Fate, Maitreya, that best of Munis, overwhelmed by wrath, set his mind upon cursing Duryodhana! And then, with eyes red in anger, Maitreya, touching water, cursed the evil-minded son of Dhritarāshtra, saying, 'Since slighting me thou declinest to act according to my words, thou shalt speedily reap the fruit of this thy insolence! In the great war which shall spring out of the wrongs perpetrated by thee, the mighty Bhima shall smash that thigh of thine with a stroke of his mace!'

"When the Muni had spoken so, king Dhritarāshtra began to pacify the sage, inorder that what he had said might not happen. But Maitreya said, 'O king, if thy son concludeth peace with the Pāndavas, this curse of mine, O child, will not take effect, otherwise it must be as I have said!'"

Vaisampāyana said. "Desirous of ascertaining the might of Bhima, that foremost of kings, the father of Duryodhana, then asked Maitreya, saying, 'How was Kirmira slain by Bhima?'

"Maitreya said, 'I shall not speak again unto thee, O king, for my words are not regarded by thy son. After I have gone away, Vidura will relate everything unto thee!' And saying this, Maitreya went away to the place whence he had come. And Duryodhana also went out perturbed at the tidings of Kirmira's death (at the hands of Bhima)."

Thus ends the tenth Section in the Aranyaka of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XI.

(*Kirmira badha Parva.*)

"Dhritarāshtra said. 'O Kshatta, I am desirous to hear of the destruction of Kirmira! Do thou tell me how the encounter took place between the Rākshasa and Bhimasena!'

"Vidura said. 'Listen to the story of that feat of Bhimasena of superhuman achievements! I have often heard of it in

course of my conversation with the Pāndavas (while I was with them).

"'O foremost of kings, defeated at dice, the Pāndavas departed from hence, and travelling for three days and nights they at length reached those woods that go by the name of Kāmyaka. O king, just after the dread hour of midnight when all nature is asleep, when man-eating Rākshasas of terrible deeds begin to wander, the ascetics and the cow-herds and other rangers of the forest used to shun the woods of Kāmyaka and fly to a distance from fear of cannibals. And, O Bhārata, as the Pāndavas were at this hour entering those woods, a fearful Rākshasa of flaming eyes appeared before them with a lighted brand, obstructing their path. And with outstretched arms and terrible face, he stood obstructing the way on which those perpetuators of the Kuru race were proceeding. With eight teeth standing out, with eyes of coppery hue, and with the hair of his head blazing and standing erect, the fiend looked like a mass of clouds reflecting the rays of the sun, or mingled with lightning flashes and graced with flocks of cranes underneath on their wings. And uttering frightful yells and roaring like a mass of clouds charged with rain, the fiend began to spread the illusion proper to his species. Hearing that terrible roar, birds along with other creatures that live on land or in water, began to drop down in all directions, uttering cries of fear. And in consequence of the deer and the leopards and the buffaloes and the bears flying about in all directions, it seemed as if the forest itself was in motion. And swayed by the wind raised by the thighs of the Rākshasas, creepers growing at a great distance seemed to embrace the trees with their arms of coppery leaves. And at that moment, a violent wind began to blow, and the sky became darkened with the dust that covered it. And as grief is the greatest enemy of the objects of the five senses, even so appeared before the Pāndavas that unknown foe of theirs. And beholding the Pāndavas from a distance clad in black deer-skins, the Rākshasa obstructed their passage through the forest, even like the *Maināka* mountain. And at the sight of him never seen before, the lotus-eyed Krishnā, agitated with

fear, closed her eyes. And she whose braids had been dishevelled by the hand of Dusçāsana, stationed in the midst of the five Pāndavas, looked like a stream chafing amid five hills. And seeing her overwhelmed with fear the five Pāndavas supported her as the five senses influenced by desire adhere to the pleasures relating to their objects. And Dhaumya of great (ascetic) energy, in the presence of the sons of Pāndu, destroyed the fearful illusion that had been spread by the Rākshasa, by applying various *mantras*, calculated to destroy the Rākshasas. And beholding his illusion dispelled, the mighty Rākshasa of crooked ways, capable of assuming any form at will, expanded his eyes in wrath and seemed like Death himself. Then king Yudhishthira, endued with great wisdom, addressed him, saying,—Who art thou, and whose (son)? Tell us what we should do for thee.—The Rākshasa thus addressed, answered Yudhishthira the just, saying,—I am the brother of Vaka, the celebrated Kirmira. I live at ease in these deserted woods of Kāmyaka, daily procuring my food by vanquishing men in fight. Who are ye that have come near me in the shape of my food? Defeating ye all in fight, I will eat ye with pleasure!—'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "O Bhārata, hearing these words of the wretch, Yudhishthira announced his own name and lineage, saying, 'I am king Yudhishthira the just, the son of Pāndu, of whom thou mayst have heard. Deprived of my kingdom, I have, with my brothers Bhimasena and Arjuna and the others, in course of my wanderings, come into this terrible forest which is thy dominion, desirous of passing my period of exile here!'

"Vidura continued. 'Kirmira said unto Yudhishthira,—By good luck it is that Fate hath accomplished today my long-cherished desire! With weapons upraised have I been continually ranging the entire earth with the object of slaying Bhima. But Bhima I had found not. By good luck it is that that slayer of my brother, whom I had been seeking so long, hath come before me! It was he who in the disguise of a Brāhmana slew my dear brother Vaka in the *Vetrakiya* forest, by virtue of his science. He hath truly no strength of arms! It is also this

one of wicked soul who formerly slew my dear friend Hidimva, living in this forest, and ravished his sister! And that fool hath now come into this deep forest of mine, when the night is half spent, even at the time when we wander about! To-day I will wreak my long cherished vengeance upon him, and I will today gratify (the manes of) Vaka with his blood in plenty! By slaying this enemy of the Rākshasas, I shall today be freed from the debt I owe to my friend and my brother, and thereby attain supreme happiness! If Bhimasena was let free formerly by Vaka, today I will devour him in thy sight, O Yudhishthira! And even as Agastya ate up and digested the mighty Asura (Vātāpi), I will eat up and digest this Bhima!—'

"Vidura continued. 'Thus addressed by the Rākshasa, the virtuous Yudhishthira, steadfast in his pledges, said—It can never be so,—and in anger rebuked the Rākshasa. The mighty-armed Bhima then tore up in haste a tree of the length of ten *Vyāmas* * and stripped it of its leaves. And in the space of a moment the ever-victorious Arjuna stringed his bow *Gāndiva* possessing the force of the thunderbolt. And, O Bhārata, making Jishnu desist, Bhima approached that Rākshasa still roaring like the clouds and said unto him,—*Stay! Stay!* And thus addressing the cannibal, and tightening the cloth around his waist, and rubbing his palms, and biting his nether lip with his teeth, and armed with the tree, the powerful Bhima rushed towards the foe. And like unto Maghavat hurling his thunderbolt, Bhima made that tree, resembling the mace of Yama himself, descend with force on the head of the cannibal. The Rākshasa, however, was seen to remain unmoved at that blow, and wavered not in the conflict. On the other hand, he hurled his lighted brand, flaming like lightning, at Bhima. But that foremost of warriors turned it off with his left foot in such a way that it went back towards the Rākshasa. Then the fierce Kirmira on his part, all of a sudden uprooting a tree, darted to the encounter like unto the mace-bearing Yama himself. And that fight, so destructive of the trees, looked like the encounter in days of yore between the brothers Vāli and

*A *Vyāma* is equal to the two arms stretched out in a line.

Sugriva for the possession of the same woman. And the trees struck at the heads of the combatants, were broken into shivers, like lotus stalks thrown on the temples of infuriate elephants. And in that great forest, innumerable trees, crushed like unto reeds, lay scattered as rags. That encounter with trees between that foremost of Rākshas and that best of men, O thou bull of the Bharata race, lasted but for a moment. Then taking up a crag, the angry Rākshasa hurled it at Bhima standing before him, but the latter wavered not. Then like unto Rāhu going to devour the Sun dispersing his rays with extended arms, the Rākshasa with outstretched arms darted towards Bhima, who had remained firm under the blow inflicted with the crag. And tugging at and grappling with each other in divers ways they appeared like two infuriate bulls struggling with each other. Or like unto two mighty tigers armed with teeth and claws, the encounter between them waxed fierce and hard. And remembering their (late) disgrace at the hands of Duryodhana, and proud of the strength of his arms, and conscious also of Krishnā looking at him, Vrikodara began to swell in vigor. And fired with anger, Bhima seized the Rākshasa with his arms, as one elephant in rut seizeth another. And the powerful Rākshasa also in his turn seized his adversary, but Bhimasena, that foremost of all men endued with strength, threw the cannibal down with violence. The sounds that arose in consequence of those mighty combatants pressing each other's hands, were frightful and resembled the sounds of splittering bamboos. And Bhima by main force hurling the Rākshasa down, seized him by the waist, and began to whirl him about, even as a fierce hurricane shaketh a tree. And thus seized by the mighty Bhima, the fatigued Rākshasa became faint, and trembling all over, he still pressed the Pāndava with all his strength. And finding him fatigued, Vrikodara twined his own arms round the foe, even as one bindeth a beast with cord. And the monster thereupon began to roar frightfully, as a trumpet out of order. And the mighty Vrikodara for a long while whirled the Rākshasa till the latter appeared to be insensible, and began to move convulsively. And finding the Rākshasa exhausted, the son of Pāndu without loss of time took him up in his arms, and slew

him like a beast. And placing his knee on the waist of that wretch of a Rākshasa, Vrikodara began to press the neck of the foe with his hands. Then Bhima, dragging along the earth the bruised body of the Rākshasa with the eye-lids about to close, said,—O sinful wretch, thou wilt no more have to wipe away the tears of Hidimva or Vaka; for thou too art about to go to the mansions of Yama!—And saying this, that foremost of men, his heart filled with wrath, beholding the Rākshasa destitute of clothing and ornaments, and insensible, and undergoing convulsions, left him dead. And after that Rākshasa of hue like the clouds had been slain, the son of that best of kings (Pāndu) praised Bhima for his many qualities, and placing Krishnā in their front, set out for the Dwaita woods.'

"Vidura said. 'It was thus, O lord of men, that Kirmira was slain in combat by Bhima, in obedience, O Kaurava, to the commands of Yudhishthira the just! And having rid the forest of its pest, the victorious Yudhishthira the just began to live in that dwelling of theirs, with Draupadi. And those bulls of the Bharata race comforting Draupadi began to cheerfully extol Bhima with glad hearts. And after the Rākshasa had been slain borne down by the might of Bhima's arms, those heroes entered into the peaceful forest freed from its annoyance. Passing through the great forest I saw lying the body of the wicked and fearful Rākshasa slain by Bhima's might. And, O Bhārata, there I heard of this achievement of Bhima from those Brāhmanas who have assembled round the Pāndavas.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing the account of the slaughter in combat of Kirmira that foremost of Rākshasas, the king sighed in sorrow and became absorbed in thought."

Thus ends the eleventh Section in the Kirmira-badha of the Vana Parva.

Section XII.

(*Arjunābhigamana Parva.*)

Vaisampāyana said. "Hearing that the Pāndavas had been banished, the Bhojas, the Vrishnis, and the Andhakas went to those heroes residing in affliction in the great forest,

And the consanguinous relatives of Pānchāla, and Dhrishtaketu the king of Chedi, and those celebrated and powerful brothers—the Kaikeyas, their hearts fired with wrath, went to the forest to see the sons of Prithā. And reproaching the sons of Dhritarāshtra, they said, 'What should we do?' And those bulls of the Kshatriya race, with Vāsudeva at their head, sat themselves down around Yudhishthira the just. And respectfully saluting that foremost of the Kurus, Keçava mournfully said, 'The earth shall drink the blood of Duryodhana and Karna, of Dusçāsana and the wicked Sakuni! Slaying these in battle and defeating their followers along with their royal allies, will we all install Yudhishthira the just on the throne! The wicked * deserve to be slain! Verily, this is eternal morality!' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "And when on account of the wrongs of Prithā's sons, Janārddana had thus got into a passion, and seemed bent upon consuming all created things, Arjuna exerted himself to pacify him. And beholding Keçava angry, Fālguna began to recite the feats achieved in his former lives by that soul of all things, himself immeasurable, the eternal one, of infinite energy, the lord of *Prajāpati* himself, the supreme ruler of the worlds, Vishnu of profound wisdom!

"Arjuna said, 'In days of old, thou, O Krishna, hadst wandered on the Gandhamādana mountains for ten thousand years as a *Muni* having his home where evening fell! Living upon water alone, thou hadst, in days of old, O Krishna, also dwelt for full eleven thousand years by the lake of Pushkara! And, O slayer of Madhu, with arms upraised and standing on one leg, thou hadst passed an hundred years on the high hills of Vadari, † living all the while upon air! And leaving aside thy upper garment, with body emaciated and looking like a bundle of veins, thou hadst lived on the banks of the Saraswati, employed in thy sacrifice extending for twelve years!

* The words in the text are *nikrityopacharan* meaning he who behaves artfully.—T.

† Also called *Vadarika*, a hermitage on the Himalayas near the sources of the Ganges.—T.

And, O Krishna of mighty energy, in observance of thy vow thou hadst stood on one leg for the length of a thousand years of the celestials, on the plains of *Prabhāsa* which it behoveth the virtuous to visit! Vyāsa hath told me that thou art the cause of the creation and its course! And, O Keçava, the lord of *Kshetra*, * thou art the mover of all minds, and the beginning and end of all things! All asceticism resteth in thee, and thou too art the embodiment of all sacrifices, and the eternal one! Slaying the Asura Naraka, offspring of the Earth—first begotten, thou hadst obtained his ear-rings, and performed, O Krishna, the first horse-sacrifice, (offering up that Asura as the sacrificial horse)! And, O bull of all the worlds, having performed that feat, thou hast become victorious over all! Thou hadst slain all the *Daityas* and *Dānavas* mustered in battle, and giving the lord of *Sachi* (Indra) the sovereignty of the universe, thou hast, O Keçava of mighty arms, taken thy birth among men! O slayer of all foes, having floated on the primordial waters, thou subsequently becamest *Hari*, † and *Brahmā*, and *Surya*, and *Dharma*, and *Dhātri*, and *Yama*, and *Anala*, and *Vāyu*, and *Vaisravana*, and *Rudra*, and *Kāla*, and the firmament, the earth, and the ten directions! Thyself increate, thou art the lord of the mobile and the immobile universe, the Creator of all, O thou foremost of all existences! And, O slayer of Madhu, O thou of abundant energy, in the forest of Chaitraratha thou didst, O Krishna, gratify with thy sacrifice the chief of all the gods, the highest of the high! O Janārddana, at each sacrifice thou didst offer, according to shares, gold by hundreds and thousands. And, O son of the Yādava race, becoming the son of Aditi, O exalted one of the supreme attributes, thou hast been known as the younger brother of Indra! And, O thou chastiser of foes, even

---

* Nilakantha explains *kshetra* as including *Mahābhuta*, consciousness, intellect, the unmanifest (primordial elements), the ten senses, the five objects of the senses, *viz*, earth, water, &c., desire, aversion, pleasure, pain, the combinations of elements, and *chaitanya*.—T.

† *Hari* here means the developed seed that is to expand into the vast whole of the universe.

while a child thou didst, O Krishna, in consequence of thy energy, fill by three steps only the heaven, the firmament, and the earth! And, O thou soul of all, covering the heaven and the firmament (while thou wert thus transformed), thou didst dwell in the body of the Sun and afflict him with thy own splendour! And, O exalted one, in thy incarnations on those thousand occasions, thou hadst slain, O Krishna, sinful Asuras by hundreds! By destroying the *Mauravas* and the *Pāças*, and slaying Nisunda and Naraka, thou hast again rendered safe the road to Prāgjyotisha! Thou hast slain Ahvriti at Jāruthi, and Krātha and Shiçupāla with his adherents, and Jarāsandha and Saivya and Satadhanwan! And on thy car roaring like unto clouds and effulgent like the sun, thou didst obtain for thy queen the daughter of Bhoja, defeating Rukmi in battle! Thou didst in fury slay Indradyumna and the *Yavana* called Kaserumān! And slaying Sālwa the lord of Saubha, thou didst destroy that city of Saubha itself! These have all been slain in battle: listen to me as I speak of others (also slain by thee)! At Irāvati thou hast slain king Bhoja equal unto Kārttaviryya in battle, and both Gopati and Tālaketu also have been slain by thee! And, O Janārddana, thou hast also appropriated unto thyself the sacred city of Dwārakā, abounding in wealth and agreeable unto the Rishis themselves, and thou wilt submerge it at the end within the ocean! O slayer of Madhu, how can crookedness be in thee, devoid as thou art, O thou of the Dasārha race, of anger and envy and untruth and cruelty? O thou who knowest no deterioration, all the Rishis, coming unto thee seated in thy glory on the sacrificial ground, seek protection of thee! And, O slayer of Madhu, thou stayest at the end of the *Yuga*, contracting all things and withdrawing this universe into thy own self, thou repressor of all foes! O thou of the Vrishni race, at the beginning of the *Yuga*, there sprang from thy lotus-like navel, Brahmā himself, the lord of all mobile and immobile things, and whose is this entire universe! When the dreadful Dānavas Madhu and Kaitava were bent on slaying Brahmā, beholding their impious endeavour thou wert angry, and from thy forehead, O Hari, sprang Sambhu, the holder of the tri-

dent! Thus these two foremost of the deities have sprung from thy body in order to do thy work! Even Nārada it was who hath told me this! O Nārayana, thou didst, in the forest of Chaitraratha, celebrate with plentiful gifts a grand sacrifice consisting of a multitude of rites! O god, O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, the deeds thou hast performed while still a boy, having recourse to thy might and aided by Valadeva, have never before been done by others, nor are they capable of being achieved by others in the future! Thou didst even dwell in Kailāsa, accompanied by Brāhmanas!' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Having addressed Krishna thus, the illustrious Pāndava, who was the soul of Krishna, became dumb, when Janārddana (in reply) addressed that son of Prithā, saying, 'Thou art mine and I am thine, while all that is mine is thine also! He that hateth thee hateth me as well, and he that followeth thee followeth me! O thou irrepressible one, thou art *Nara* and I am *Nārāyana* or Hari! We are the Rishis Nara and Nārāyana, born in the world of men for a special purpose. O Pārtha, thou art from me and I am from thee! O bull of the Bharata race, no one can understand the difference that is between us!' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "When the illustrious Keçava had said so in the midst of that assembly of brave kings, all excited with anger, Pānchāli surrounded by Dhristadyumna and her other heroic brothers, approached him of eyes like lotus-leaves seated with his cousins, and, desirous of protection, addressed in angry accents that refuge of all, saying, 'Asita and Devala have said that in the matter of the creation of all things, thou hast been indicated (by the sages) as the only *Prajāpati* and the Creator of all the worlds! And, O irrepressible one, Jāmadagnya saith that thou art *Vishnu*, and, O slayer of Madhu, that thou art (the embodiment of) *Sacrifice*, the *Sacrificer* and he for whom the sacrifice is performed! And, O best of male beings, the Rishis indicate thee as Forgiveness and Truth! Kaçyapa hath said that thou art Sacrifice sprung from Truth! O exalted one, Nārada calleth thee the god of the Sādhyas, and of the Sivas, as also the Creator and the Lord of all things. And, O tiger among men, thou repeatedly sportest with the gods

including Brahmā and Sankara and Sakra even as children sporting with their toys! And, O exalted one, the firmament is covered by thy head, and the earth by thy feet! These worlds are as thy womb and thou art the Eternal one! With Rishis sanctified by Vedic lore and asceticism, and whose souls have been purified by penance, and who are contented with soul-vision, thou art the best of all objects! And, O chief of all male beings, thou art the refuge of all royal sages devoted to virtuous acts, never turning their backs on the field of battle, and possessed of every accomplishment! Thou art the Lord of all, thou art Omnipresent, thou art the Soul of all things, and thou art the active power pervading everything! The rulers of the several worlds, those worlds themselves, the stellar conjunctions, the ten points of the horizon, the firmament, the Moon, and the Sun, are all established in thee! And, O mighty-armed one, the mortality of (earthly) creatures, the inmortality of the universe, are established in thee! Thou art the Supreme lord of all creatures, celestial or human! Therefore it, is O slayer of Madhu, that impelled by the affection thou bearest me that I will relate to thee my griefs! O Krishna, how could one like me, the wife of Prithā's sons, the sister of Dhristadyumna, and the friend of thee, be dragged to the assembly! Alas, during my season, stained with blood, with but a single cloth on, trembling all over, and weeping, was I dragged to the court of the Kurus! Beholding me, stained with blood in the presence of those kings in the assembly, the wicked sons of Dhritarāshtra laughed at me! O slayer of Madhu, while the sons of Pāndu and the Pānchālas and the Vrishnis lived, they dared express the desire of using me as their slave! O Krishna, I am, according to the ordinance, the daughter-in-law of both Dhritarāshtra and Bhishma! Yet, O slayer of Madhu, they wished to make of me a slave by force! I blame the Pāndavas who are mighty and foremost in battle, for they saw (without stirring) their own wedded wife known over all the world, treated with such cruelty! Oh fie on the might of Bhimasena, fie on the *Gāndiva* of Arjuna, for they, O Janārddana, both suffered me to be thus disgraced by little men! This eternal course of morality is ever followed by the virtuous—*viz*, that the husband, however

weak, protecteth his wedded wife! By protecting the wife one protecteth his offspring, and by protecting the offspring one protecteth his own self! One's own self is begotten on one's wife, and therefore it is that the wife is called *Jāyā*. A wife also should protect her lord, remembering that he is to take his birth in her womb! The Pāndavas never forsake the person that soliciteth their protection; and yet they abandoned me who solicited it! By my five husbands five sons of exceeding energy have been born of me: Prativindhya by Yudhishthira, Sutasoma by Vrikodara, Srutakirti by Arjuna, Satānika by Nakula and Srutakarman by the youngest, all of them of energy that cannot be baffled. For their sake, O Janārddana, it was necessary to protect me! Even as (thy son) Pradyumna, they are, O Krishna, mighty warriors all! They are foremost of bowmen, and invincible in battle by any foe! Why do they bear the wrongs inflicted (on me) by the sons of Dhritarāshtra of such contemptible strength? Deprived of their kingdom by deception, the Pāndavas were made bondsmen and I myself was dragged to the assembly while in my season, and having only a single cloth on! Fie on that *Gāndiva* which none else can string save Arjuna and Bhima and thyself, O slayer of Madhu! Fie on the strength of Bhima, and fie on the prowess of Arjuna, since, O Krishna, Duryodhana (after what he had done) hath drawn breath even for a moment! He it is, O slayer of Madhu, who formerly drove the guileless Pāndavas with their mother from the kingdom, while they were children still engaged in study and the observance of their vows. It is that sinful wretch who, horrible to relate, mixed in Bhima's food fresh and virulent poison in full dose. But, O Janārddana, Bhima digested that poison with the food, without sustaining any injury, for, O best of men and mighty-armed one, Bhima's days had not been ended! And, O Krishna, it is Duryodhana who at the house standing by the banian called *Pramāna* bound Bhima sleeping unsuspectingly, and casting him into the Ganges returned to the city. But the powerful Bhimasena the son of Kunti, possessed of mighty arms, on waking from sleep, tore his bonds and rose from the water. It is Duryodhana who caused venomous black-cobras to bite all over the

body of Bhimasena, but that slayer of foes died not. Awaking, the son of Kunti smashed all the serpents and with his left hand killed (the agent, *viz*,) the favorite charioteer of Duryodhana. Again, while the children were lying asleep at Vāranāvata with their mother, it is he who set fire to the house intending to burn them to death. Who is there capable of doing such as an act? It was then that the illustrious Kunti, overtaken by this calamity, and surrounded by the flames, began to cry out in terror, speaking to her children, —Alas, I am undone! How shall we escape from this fire to day! Alack, I shall meet with destruction with my little children!—Then Bhima, possessed of mighty arms, and prowess like unto the force of the wind, comforted his illustrious mother as also his brothers, saying,—Like that king of birds, Gadura, the son of Vinatā, I will spring up into the air. We have no fear from this fire.—And then taking his mother on his left flank, and the king in his right, and the twins on each shoulder, and Vivatsu on his back, the mighty Vrikodara, thus taking all of them, at one leap cleared the fire and delivered his mother and brothers from the conflagration. Setting out that night with their renowned mother, they came near the forest of Hidimva. And while fatigued and distressed, they were sleeping fast with her, a Rākshasa woman called Hidimvā approached them. Beholding the Pāndavas with their mother asleep on the ground, influenced by desire she sought to have Bhimasena for her lord. The weak one then took up Bhima's feet on her lap to press them with her soft hands. The mighty Bhima of immeasurable energy, of prowess that could not be baffled, then woke from sleep, and asked her, saying,—O thou of faultless features, what dost thou wish here?— Thus asked by him, the Rākshasa lady of faultless features, capable, besides, of assuming any form at will, replied unto the high-souled Bhima, saying,—Do ye speedily fly this place! My brother gifted with strength will come to slay ye! Therefore, speed and tarry not!—But Bhima haughtily said,—I do not fear him! If he cometh here, I will slay him!—Hearing their converse, that vilest of cannibals came to the spot. Of frightful form and dreadful to behold, uttering loud cries as he came,

the Rākshasa said,—O Hidimvā, with whom dost thou converse? Bring him unto me. I will eat him up. It behoveth thee to tarry not.—But moved by compassion, the Rākshasa lady of faultless features and pure heart said nothing out of pity. Then the man-eating monster, uttering dreadful cries, rushed at Bhima with great force. And approaching him furiously, the mighty cannibal, possessed with rage, caught hold of Bhima's hand with his own, and clenching fast his other hand and making it hard as the thunder-bolt of Indra, suddenly struck Bhima a blow that descended with the force of lightning. His hand having been seized by the Rākshasa, Vrikodara, without being able to brook it, flew into a rage. Then a dreadful combat took place between Bhimasena and Hidimva, both skilled in all weapons, and which was like unto the encounter of Vāsava with Vritra. And, O sinless one, after sporting with the Rākshasa for a long while, the powerful Bhima of mighty energy slew the cannibal when the latter had become weak with exertion. Then having slain Hidimva, and taking (his sister) Hidimvā at their head, of whom was (subsequently) born Ghatotkacha, Bhima and his brothers went away. Then all those repressors of their foes, accompanied by their mother and surrounded by many Brāhmanas proceeded towards Ekachakrā. In the matter of this their journey, Vyāsa ever engaged in their welfare had become their counsellor. Then arriving at Ekachakrā, the Pāndavas of rigid vows there also slew a mighty cannibal, Vaka by name, terrible as Hidimva himself. And having slain that fierce cannibal, Bhima that foremost of smiters, went with all his brothers to the capital of Drupada. And, O Krishna, as thou hadst acquired Rukmini the daughter of Bhishmaka, even so Savyasāchin, while residing there, obtained me! O slayer of Madhu, Arjuna won me in the *Sayamvara*, having performed a feat difficult of achievement by others and having fought also with the assembled kings!

"'Thus, O Krishna, afflicted with numerous griefs and in great distress, am I living, with Dhaumya at our head, but deprived of the company of the adorable Kunti! Why do these that are gifted with strength and possessed of the prowess of

the lion, sit indifferently, beholding me thus afflicted by enemies so despicable? Suffering such wrongs at the hands of wicked and evil-doing foes of small strength, am I to burn in grief so long? Born I was in a great race, coming into the world in an extraordinary way! I am also the beloved wife of the Pāndavas, and the daughter-in-law of the illustrious Pāndu! The foremost of women and devoted to my husbands, even I, O Krishna, was seized by the hair, O slayer of Madhu, in the sight of the Pāndavas, each of whom is like an Indra himself!'

"Saying this the mild-speeched Krishnā hid her face with her soft hands like the buds of lotus, and began to weep. And the tears of Pānchāli begot of grief washed her deep, plump and graceful breasts crowned with auspicious marks. And wiping her eyes and sighing frequently she said these words angrily and in a choked voice:—'Husbands, or sons, or friends, or brothers, or father, have I none! Nor have I thee, O thou slayer of Madhu, for ye all, beholding me treated so cruelly by inferior foes, sit still unmoved! My grief at Karna's ridicule is incapable of being assuaged! On four grounds I deserve to be ever protected by thee, O Keçava, *viz*, our relationship, thy respect (for me), our friendship, and thy lordship (over me)!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "In that assembly of heroes Vāsudeva then spake unto the weeping Draupadi as follows:—'O fair lady, the wives of those with whom thou art angry, shall weep even like thee, beholding their husbands dead on the ground, weltering in blood and their bodies covered with the arrows of Vivatsu! Weep not, lady, for I will exert to the utmost of my power for the sons of Pāndu! I promise thou shalt (once more) be the Queen of kings! The heavens might fall, or the Himavat might split, the earth might be rent, or the waters of the ocean might dry up, but my words shall never be futile!' Hearing these words of Achyuta in reply, Draupadi looked obliquely at her third husband (Arjuna). And, O mighty king, Arjuna said unto Draupadi, 'O thou of beautiful coppery eyes, grieve not! O illustrious one, it shall be even as the slayer of Madhu hath said! It can never be otherwise, O beautiful one!'

"Dhrishtadyumna said, 'I will slay Drona, Sikhandi will slay the grand-father. And Bhimasena will slay Duryodhana, and Dhananjaya will slay Karna. And, O sister, assisted by Rāma and Krishna, we are invincible in battle by even the slayer himself of Vritra—what are the sons of Dhritarāshtra?'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "After these words had been spoken, all the heroes there turned their faces towards Vāsudeva, who then in their midst began to speak as follows."

Thus ends the twelfth Section in the Arjunāvigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XIII.

(*Arjunāvigamana Parva continued.*)

"Vāsudeva said. 'O lord of earth, if I had been present at Dwārakā, then, O king, this evil would not have befallen thee! And, O irrepressible one, coming unto the gambling-match, even if uninvited by the son of Amvikā (Dhritarāshtra), or Duryodhana, or by the other Kauravas, I would have prevented the game from taking place, by showing its many evils, summoning to my aid Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and Vāhlika! O exalted one, for thy sake I would have told the son of Vichitraviryya,—*O foremost of monarchs, let thy sons have nothing to do with dice!*—I would have shown the many evils (of dice) through which thou hast fallen into such distress and the son of Virasena was formerly deprived of his kingdom! O king, unthought-of evils befall a man from dice! I would have described how a man once engaged in the game continueth to play (from desire of victory). Women, dice, hunting and drinking to which people become addicted in consequence of temptation, have been regarded as the four evils that deprive a man of prosperity. And those versed in the *Shāstras* are of opinion that evils attend upon all these. They also that are addicted to dice know all its evils. O thou of mighty arms, appearing before the son of Amvikā, I would have pointed out that through dice men in a day lose their possessions, and fall into distress, and are deprived of their untasted wealth, and exchange harsh words! O perpetuator of the Kuru race, I

would have pointed out these and other attendant evils! If he had accepted my words thus addressed, the welfare of the Kurus as also Virtue itself would both have been secured! And, O foremost of kings, if he had rejected my gentle counsels offered as medicine, then, O best of the Bharata race, I would have compelled him by force! And if those who wait at his court, professing to be his friends but in reality his foes, had supported him, then I would have slain them all, along with those gamblers there present! O Kauravya, it is owing to my absence from the *Anartta* country at that time that thou hast fallen into such distress begot of dice! O thou best of Kurus, O son of Pāndu, on arriving at Dwārakā I learnt from Yuyudhāna all about thy calamity! And, O foremost of kings, directly I heard it, with a heart sore agitated by grief, have I speedily come here wishing to see thee, O king! Alas! bull of the Bharata race, ye have all fallen into dire distress! I see thee with thy brothers plunged in misfortune!'"

Thus ends the thirteenth Section in the Arjunāvigamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XIV.

(*Arjunāvigamana Parva continued.*)

"Yudhishthira said. 'O Krishna, why wert thou absent (from the Anartta country)? And, O descendant of the Vrishni race, while thou wert away, where didst thou dwell? And what didst thou do while out of thy kingdom?'

"Krishna said, 'O bull of the Bharata race, I had gone for the purpose of destroying the (airranging) city of Sālwa. And, O foremost of the Kauravas, listen to the reasons I had for so doing! The heroic son of Damaghosa, the well-known king Siçupāla of mighty arms and great energy, was slain by me, O best of Bhāratas, at thy *Rājasuya* sacrifice, because that wicked one could not from anger bear to see the first worship offered to me! Hearing that he had been slain, Sālwa, burning with fierce anger, came to Dwārakā, while, O Bhārata, it was empty, myself being away, residing here! And having arrived there on a car made of precious

metals and hence called the *Sauva*, he had an encounter with the youthful princes of the Vrishni race—those bulls of that line —and fought with them mercilessly. And slaughtering many youthful Vrishnis of heroic valor, the wicked one devastated all the gardens of the city. And, O thou of mighty arms, he said,—Where is that wretch of the Vrishni race, Vāsudeva, the evil-souled son of Vasudeva? I will humble in battle the pride of that person so eager for fight! Tell me truly, O *Anarttas*! I will go there where he is. And after killing that slayer of Kansa and Kesi, will I return! By my weapon I swear that I will not return without slaying him!—And exclaiming repeatedly,—*Where is he? Where is he?* the lord of the Saubha rusheth to this place and that, desirous of encountering me in battle! And Sālwa also said,—Impelled by wrath for the destruction of Siçupāla I shall today send to the mansion of Yama that trecherous miscreant of mean mind!—And, O king, he further said,—That Janārddana shall I slay, who, wretch that he is, hath killed my brother king Siçupāla, my brother who was but a boy of tender years, and who was slain not on the field of battle but unprepared as he was!—Having, O great king, wailed thus, and having, O son of the Kuru race, abused me thus, he rose into the sky on his car of precious metals capable of going anywhere at will! On returning (to my kingdom) I heard what, O Kauravya, the evil-minded and wicked king of Mārtika had said regarding myself! And, O descendant of the Kuru race, I was agitated with wrath, and, O king, having reflected upon everything, I set my heart upon slaying him! And learning, O Kauravya, of his oppression of the Anarttas, of his abuse of myself, and of his excessive arrogance, I resolved upon the destruction of that wretch! And, O lord of earth, I accordingly set out (from my city), for slaying the (lord of) the Saubha. And searching him here and there I found him in an island in the midst of the ocean! Then, O king, blowing my conch called the *Pānchajanya* obtained from the sea, and challenging Sālwa to combat, I stood for the fight! At that instant I had an encounter with numerous Dānavas, all of whom, however, I subdued and prostrated on the ground, O mighty

armed one, it was owing to this affair that I could not then come (unto thee)! As soon as I heard of the unfair game at dice at Hāstinapura, I have come here desirous of seeing ye who have been plunged in distress!'"

Thus ends the fourteenth Section in the Arjunāvigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XV.

(*Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.*)

"Yudhishthira said, 'O illustrious Vāsudeva of mighty arms, tell thou in detail of the death of the lord of Saubha.—My curiosity hath not been appeased by thy narration.'

"Vāsudeva said, 'O mighty-armed king, hearing that the son of Srutasravas (Siçupāla) had been slain by me, Sālwa, O best of the Bharata race, came to the city of Dwārāvati! And, O son of Pāndu, the wicked king, stationing his forces in array, invested that city around, and above. And stationing himself in the upper regions, the king began his fight with the city. And that encounter commenced with a thick shower of weapons from all sides. And, O bull of the Bharata race, the city at that time was well furnished on all sides, according to the science (of fortifications), with penons, and arches, and combatants, and walls and turrets, and engines, and miners, and streets barricaded with spiked wood-works, and towers and edifices on gate-ways well-filled with provisions, and offensive weapons, and engines for hurling burning brands and fires, and vessels of deer-skins (for carrying water), and trumpets, tabors, and drums, lances and forks, and *Sataghnis*, and plough-shares, rockets, balls of stone, and battle-axes and other weapons, and shields embossed with iron, and engines for hurling balls and bullets and hot liquids! And the city was also well-defended by numerous cars, and, O tiger among Kurus, by Gada and Shāmva and Uddhava and others, and by warriors of prowess tried in battle, all well-born and capable of encountering any foe! And these all placing themselves on commanding posts, aided by cavalry and standard-bearers, began to defend the town, And Ugrasena and Uddhava and

others, to prevent carelessness, proclaimed throughout the city that nobody should drink. And all the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, well-knowing that they would be slain by Sālwa if they behaved carelessly, remained sober and watchful. And the police soon drove out of the city all mimes and dancers and singers of the Anartta country. And all the bridges over rivers were destroyed, and boats forbidden to ply, and the trenches (around the city) were spiked with poles at the bottom. And the land around the city for full two miles was rendered uneven, and holes and pits were dug thereon, and combustibles were secreted below the surface. Our fort, O sinless one, is naturally strong and always well-defended and filled with all kinds of weapons! And in consequence of the preparations made, our city was more prepared than ever to meet the foe. And, O chief of the Bhāratas, in consequence of all this, the city looked like that of Indra himself! And, O king, at the time of Sālwa's approach, nobody could either enter or leave the town of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas without presenting the sign that had been agreed upon. And all the streets of the town and the open spaces were filled with numerous elephants and horses! And, O thou of mighty arms, the combatants were all especially gratified with allowances and wages, and rations, and weapons, and dresses! And amongst the combatants there was none who was not paid in gold, and none who was not paid at all, and none who was not somehow obliged, and none who was not of tried valour! And, O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, it was thus that Dwārakā, abounding in well-ordered arrangements, was defended by Ahuka (Ugrasena)!"

Thus ends the fifteenth Section in the Arjunāvigamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XVI.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

"Vāsudeva continued, 'O king of kings, Sālwa, the lord of Saubha, came towards our city with an immense force consisting of infantry, cavalry and elephants! And the army

headed by king Sālwa, consisting of four kinds of forces, occupied a level ground commanding a copious water-supply. And forsaking cemeteries and temples dedicated to the gods, and sacred trees, and grounds covered by anthills, that host occupied every other place. And the roads (leading to the city) were blocked up by the divisions of the army, and the secret entrances also were all blocked up by the enemy's camp. And, O Kauravya, like unto the lord of birds (Garuda), the ruler of Saubha rushed towards Dwārakā, bringing with him, O bull among men, his host equipped with all kinds of arms, skilled in all weapons, consisting of a dense display of cars and elephants and cavalry, abounding in banners, and well-paid and well-fed foot-soldeirs possessed of great strength and bearing every mark of horoism and furnished with wonderful chariots and bows. And beholding the army of Sālwa approach, the youthful princes of the Vrishni race resolved to encounter it, sallying out of the city. And, O king, Chārudeshna, Sāmva, and the mighty warrior Pradyumna, O descendant of the Kuru race, sallied out, ascending on their chariots, and clad in mail, and decked in ornaments, with colors flying, resolved to encounter the mighty and countless host of Sālwa! And Sāmva taking up his bow, eagerly attacked on the field of battle Kshemavriddhi, the commander of Sālwa's forces and his chief counsellor also! And, O thou foremost of Bhāratas, the son of Jāmbavati then began to shower arrows in a continuous stream even as Indra showereth down rain! And, O mighty king, then Kshemavriddhi the commander of Sālwa's forces, bore that shower of arrows, immovable as the Himavat! And, O foremost of kings, Kshemavriddhi, on his part, discharged at Sāmva a mightier volley of shafts, aided by his powers of illusion! And dispersing by counter-illusion that discharge inspired by illusion, Sāmva showered on his (adversary's) car a thousand arrows! Then pierced by the shafts of Sāmva and overwhelmed therewith, Kshemavriddhi, the commander of the hostile host, left the field by the help of his fleet steeds! And when the wicked general of Sālwa had left the field, a mighty Daitya called Vegavat rushed at my son! And, O best of monarchs, thus

attacked, the heroic Sāmva, that perpetuator of the Vrishni race, bore that onset of Vegavat, keeping his ground. And, O son of Kunti, the heroic Sāmva, of prowess incapable of being baffled, whirling a quickly-going mace, hurled it speedily at Vegavat! And, O king, struck with that mace, Vegavat fell down on the ground, like a weather-beaten and faded lord of the forest of decayed roots! And on that heroic Asura of mighty energy being slain with the mace, my son entered within that mighty host and began to fight with all. And, O great king, a well-known Dānava named Vivindya, a mighty warrior weilding a large and powerful bow, encountered Chārudeshna! And, O monarch, the encounter between Chārudeshna and Vivindhya was as fierce as that in days of yore between Vritra and Vāsava! And enraged with each other, the combatants pierced each other with their arrows, uttering loud roars like unto two powerful lions! Then the son of Rukmini fixed on his bow-string a mighty weapon possessing the splendour of fire or the sun, and capable of destroying all foes, having first vivified it with incantations! Then, O monarch, that mighty warrior, my son, fired with wrath, challenged Vivindhya, and discharged the weapon at him. And the Dānava, struck with that weapon, fell down on the ground a lifeless corpse! And beholding Vivindhya slain, and the whole host waver, Sālwa advanced again on his beautiful car capable of going everywhere. And, O king of mighty arms, beholding Sālwa on that beautiful car of his, the combatants of Dwārakā wavered with fear! But, O thou of the Kuru race, Pradyumna sallied out, and, O great king, bidding the Anarttas be of good cheer, said,—Waver ye not, and staying behold me fight! Even I shall, by main force, repell that car with Sālwa on it! Ye Yādavas, this day, I shall with my weapons like unto serpents, discharged from my bow with my hand destroy this host of the lord of Saubha! Be of good cheer, ye all! Fear not! The lord of Saubha will be slain to day! Attacked by me, the wretch will meet with destruction together with his car!—O son of Pāndu, upon Pradyumna speaking thus with cheerful heart, the Yādava host, O hero, remained on the field, and began to fight cheerfully!"

Thus ends the sixteenth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XVII.

(*Arjunābhigamana Parva continued*).

"Vāsudeva continued, 'O bull of the Bhārata race, having spoken thus unto the Yādavas, the son of Rukmini (Pradyumna) ascended his golden car. And the car he rode was drawn by excellent steeds in mail. And over it stood a standard bearing the figure of a *Makara* with gaping mouth and fierce as Yama. And with his steeds, more flying than running on the ground, he rushed against the foe. And the hero equipped with quiver and sword, with fingers cased in leather, twanged his bow possessed of the spendour of the lightning, with great strength, and transfering it from hand to hand, as if in contempt of the enemy, spread confusion among the Dānavas and other warriors of the city of Saubha. And as he sat in contempt of the foe, and continuously slew the Dānavas in battle, no one could mark the slightest interval between his successive shafts. And the color of his face changed not, and his limbs trembled not. And people only heard his loud leonine roars indicative of wonderful valor. And the aquatic monster with mouth wide open, that devourer of all fishes, placed on the golden flag-staff of that best of cars, stuck terror into the hearts of Sālwa's warriors. And, O king, Pradyumna the mower of foes rushed with speed against Sālwa himself so desirous of an encounter! And, O perpetuator of the Kuru race, braved by the heroic Pradyumna in that mighty battle, the angry Sālwa could ill bear the challenge! And that conqueror of hostile cities, Sālwa, maddened by anger, descended from his beautiful car of unchecked speed, resolved to encounter Pradyumna. And the people beheld the fight between Sālwa and the foremost of Vrishni heroes, which was even like unto the encounter between Vāsava with Vali. And, O hero, mounting on his beautiful car decked with gold and furnished with flags and flagstaffs, and quivers, the illustrious and mighty Sālwa began to discharge his arrows at Pradyumna! Pradyumna also by the energy of

his arms, overwhelmed Sāwla in the combat by a thick shower of arrows. The king of Saubha, however, thus attacked in battle by Pradyumna, endured him not, but discharged at my son arrows that were like blasing fire. But the mighty Pradyumna parried off that arrowy shower. Beholding this, Sālwa rained on my son other weapons of blasing spendour. Then, O foremost of monarchs, pierced by the shafts of Sālwa, the son of Rukmini discharged without loss of time an arrow that was capable of entering the vitals of a foe in fight. And that winged shaft shot by my son, piercing Sālwa's mail, entered his heart,—whereupon he fell down in a swoon. And beholding the heroic king Sālwa fall down deprived of sense, the foremost of the Dānavas fled away, rending the ground beneath their feet. And, O lord of the earth, the army of Sālwa sent up exclamations of *Oh!* and *Alas!*, seeing their king, the lord of Saubha, drop down bereft of sense! And, O son of the Kuru race, regaining his senses, the mighty Sālwa rose and all of a sudden discharged his arrows on Pradyumna. Then the heroic and mighty-armed Pradyumna, sorely pierced by his adversary about his throat, was enfeebled on his car. And, O mighty king, wounding the son of Rukmini, Sālwa sent up a shout like unto the roar of a lion, and filling the entire earth with it! And, O Bhārata, when my son became senseless, Sālwa, without losing a moment, again discharged at him other shafts difficult to bear. And pierced with numberless arrows and deprived of his senses, Pradyumna, O chief of the Kuru race, became motionless on the field of battle!'"

Thus ends the seventeenth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XVIII.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

"Vāsudeva continued, 'O king, afflicted with the arrows of Sālwa, when Pradyumna became senseless, the Vrishnis who had come to the fight were all disheartened and filled with grief! And the combatants of the Vrishni and Andhaka races burst into exclamations of *Oh!* and *Alas!*, while great

joy was felt by the enemy. And beholding him thus deprived of sense, his trained charioteer the son of Dāruka, soon carried him off the field by the help of his fleet steeds. The car had not gone far when that best of warriors regained his senses, and taking up his bow addressed his charioteer, saying, —O son of the *Suta* tribe, what hast thou done? Why dost thou go leaving the field of battle? This is not the custom of the Vrishni heroes in battle! O son of a Suta, hast thou been bewildered at the sight of Sālwa in that fierce encounter? Or hast thou been disheartened, beholding the fight? O! tell me truly thy mind!—The charioteer answered,—O son of Janārddana, I have not been confounded, nor hath fear taken possession of me. On the other hand, O son of Keçava, the task, I ween, of vanquishing Sālwa is difficult for thee! Therefore, O hero, I am slowly retiring from the field. This wretch is stronger than thou art! It behoveth a charioteer to protect the warrior on the car, however brave, when he is deprived of his senses! O thou gifted with length of days, thou shouldst always be protected by me, even as it behoveth thee to protect me! Thinking that the warrior on the car should always be protected (by his charioteer), I am carrying thee away! Further, O thou of mighty arms, thou art alone, while the Dānavas are many. Thinking, O son of Rukmini, that thou art not equal to them in the encounter, I am going away!—'

"Vāsudeva continued, 'When the charioteer had spoken thus, he, O Kauravya, who hath the *makara* for his mark, replied unto him, saying,—Turn the car! O son of Dāruka, never do so again; never, O Suta, turn thou from the fight, while I am alive! He is no son of the Vrishni race who forsaketh the field, or slayeth the foe fallen at his feet and crying *I am thine*!, or killeth a woman, a boy, or an old man, or a warrior in distress, deprived of his car or with his weapons broken! Thou art born in the race of charioteers and trained to thy craft! And, O son of Dāruka, thou art acquainted with the customs of the Vrishnis in battle! Versed as thou art with all the customs of the Vrishnis in battle, do thou, O Suta, never again fly from the field as thou hast done!

What will the irrepressible Mādhava, the elder brother of Gada, say to me when he heareth that I have left the field of battle in bewiderment, or that I have been struck on the back—a run-away from the combat! What will the elder brother of Keçava, the mighty-armed Valadeva, clad in blue and inebriate with wine, say, when he returneth? What also, O Suta, will that lion among men, the grand-son of Shini (Sātyaki), that great warrior, say on hearing that I have forsaken the fight? And, O charioteer, what will the ever-victorious Sāmva, the irrepressible Chārudeshna, and Gada, and Sārana, and Akrura also of mighty arms, say unto me? What also will the wives of the Vrishni heroes, when they meet together, say of me who had hitherto been considered as brave and well-conducted, respectable and possessed of manly pride? They will even say, *This Pradyumna is a coward who cometh here, leaving the great battle! Fie on him!* They will never say, *Well done!* Ridicule, with exclamations of *Fie!* is to me or persons like me, O Suta, more than death! Therefore, do thou never again leave the field of battle! Reposing the charge on me, Hari the slayer of Madhu, hath gone to the sacrifice of the Bharata lion (Yudhishthira)! Therefore, I cannot bear to be quiet now! O Suta, when the brave Kritavarman was sallying out to encounter Sālwa, I prevented him, saying, *I will resist Sālwa. Do thou stay!* For honoring me the son of Hridikā desisted! Having left the field of battle, what shall I say unto that mighty warrior when I meet him? When that irrepressible one of mighty arms—the holder of the conch, the discus, and the mace—returneth, what shall I say unto him of eyes like lotus leaves? Sātyaki, and Valadeva, and others of the Vrishni and Andhaka races always boast of me! What shall I say unto them? O Suta, having left the field of battle, and with wounds of arrows on my back while being carried away by thee, I shall, by no means, be able to live! Therefore, O son of Dāruka, turn the car speedily, and never do so again, even in times of the greatest danger! I do not, O Suta, think life worth much, having fled from the field like a coward, and my back pierced with the arrows (of the enemy)! Hast thou ever seen

me, O son of a Suta, fly in fear from the field of battle like a coward? O son of Dāruka, it behoved thee not to forsake the battle, while my desire of fight was not yet gratified! Do thou, therefore, go back to the field!—'"

Thus ends the eighteenth Section in the Arjunāvigamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XIX.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued).

"Vāsudeva continued, 'Thus addressed, the son of the Suta race replied in haste unto Pradyumna, that foremost of all endued with strength, in these sweet words:—O son of Rukmini, I fear not to guide the horses on the field of battle, and I am acquainted also with the customs of the Vrishnis in war! It is not otherwise in the least! But, O thou blest with length of days, those that guide the car are taught that the warrior on the car is, by all means, to be protected by his charioteer! Thou wert also much afflicted! Thou wert much wounded by the arrows shot by Sālwa. Thou wert also deprived of thy senses, O hero! Therefore is it that I retired from the field! But, O chief of the Sātwatas, now that thou hast regained thy senses without much ado, do thou, O son of Keçava, witness my skill in guiding the horses! I have been begotten by Dāruka, and I have been duly trained! I will now penetrate into the celebrated array of Sāwla, without fear!—'

"Vāsudeva continued, 'Saying this, O hero, the charioteer, pulling the reins, began to lead the horses with speed towards the field of battle. And, O king, struck with the whip and pulled by the reins, those excellent steeds seemed to be flying in the air, performing various beautiful motions, now circular, now similar, now dissimilar, now to the right, now to the left. And, O king, those steeds, understanding, as it were, the intention of Dāruka's son endued with such lightness of hand, burned with energy, and seemed to go without touching the ground with their feet! And that

bull among men wheeled round Sālwa's host so easily that they who witnessed it wondered exceedingly. And the lord of Saubha, unable to bear that manuvre of Pradyumna, instantly sent three shafts at the charioteer of his antagonist! The charioteer, however, without taking any note of the force of those arrows, continued to go along the right. Then the lord of Saubha, O hero, again discharged at my son by Rukmni, a shower of various kinds of weapons! But that slayer of hostile heroes, the son of Rukmini, showing with a smile his lightness of hand, cut all those weapons off ere thy reached him. Finding his arrows cut off by Pradyumna, the lord of Saubha, having recourse to the dreadful illusion natural to *Asuras*, began to pour a thick shower of arrows. But cutting into pieces those powerful Daitya weapons shot at him in mid-career by means of his *Brahma* weapon, Pradyumna discharged winged shafts of other kinds. And these delighting in blood, warding off the shafts of the Daitya, pierced his head, bosom, and face. And at those wounds Sālwa fell down senseless. And on the mean-minded Sālwa falling down, afflicted with Pradyumna's arrows, the son of Rukmini aimed another arrow at him, capable of destroying every foe. And beholding that arrow worshipped by all the Dāsārhas, and flaming like fire and fatal as a venomous snake, fixed on the bow-string, the firmament was filled with exclamations of *Oh*! and *Alas*! Then all the celestials with Indra and the lord of treasures (Kuvera) at their head, sent Nārada and the god of wind endued with the speed of the mind. And these two approaching the son of Rukmini delivered unto him the message of the celestials, saying,—O hero, king Sālwa is not to be slain by thee! Do thou draw back the arrow. He is unslayable by thee in fight! There breatheth not a person who cannot be killed by that arrow! O thou of mighty arms, the Creator hath ordained his death at the hands of Krishna the son of Devaki! Let this be not falsified!—Thereupon, with a glad heart, Pradyumna withdrew that best of arrows from his excellent bow and deposited it back in his quiver. And then, O foremost of kings, the mighty Sālwa, afflicted with the arrows of Pradyumna, rose disheartened, and speedily went away. Then, O king of kings, the wicked Sālwa,

thus afflicted by the Vrishnis, mounted on his car of precious metals, and leaving Dwārakā skudded through the skies!'"

Thus ends the nineteenth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XX.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

"Vāsudeva said, 'When Sālwa had left the city of the Anarttas, I returned to it, O king, on the completion of thy great *Rājasuya* sacrifice! On my arrival I found Dwārakā shorn of its splendour, and, O great monarch, there were not heard sounds of Vedic recitation or sacrifical offerings. And the excellent damsels were all destitute of ornaments, and the gardens were devoid of beauty. And alarmed by the aspect, I asked the son of Hridikā, saying,—Why is it that the men and women of the city of the Vrishnis are so woe-begone, O tiger among men?—O thou best of kings, thus asked, the son of Hridikā (Kritavarman) related to me in detail the invasion of the city by Sālwa, and his (subsequent) departure from it. And, O thou foremost of Bhāratas, hearing all, even then I made up my mind to slay Sālwa. And encouraging the citizens, O best of Bhāratas, I cheerfully addressed king Ahuka, and Anakdundhuvin, and the chief heroes of the Vrishni race, saying,—Do ye, O bulls among the Yādavas, stay in the city, taking every care, and know that I go to slay Sālwa! I return not to the city of Dwārāvati without slaying him. I will again come to ye having compassed the destruction of Sālwa together with his car of precious metals. Do ye strike up the sharp and middle and flat notes of the Dundhuvi so dreadful to foes! —And, O thou bull of the Bharata race, thus adequately encouraged by me, those heroes cheerfully said unto me,—Go and slay the enemies!—And thus receiving the benedictions of those warriors with glad hearts, and causing the Brāhmanas to utter auspicious words and bowing down to the best of the regenerate ones, and to Siva also, I set out on my car unto which were yoked the horses *Saivya*, and *Sugriva*, filling all sides with the clatter (of my wheels) and blowing that best of

conches, the *Pānchajanya*! And, O king, O tiger among men, accompanied by my redoubted and victorious army consisting of the four kinds of forces, so persevering in battle, I set out! And leaving many countries, and mountains crowned with trees, and pieces of water, and streams, I at last arrived at the country of Mārtikavarta. It is there, O thou tiger among men, that I heard that Sālwa was coursing on his car of precious metals near the ocean, and I followed in his pursuit. And, O thou slayer of thy foes, having reached the main, Sālwa on his car of costly metals was in the midst of the deep heaving with billows! And on seeing me from a distance, O Yudhishthira, that one of wicked soul himself challenged me repeatedly to the fight. And many arrows capable of piercing to the quick discharged from my bow reached not his car. And at this I was wroth! And, O king, that essentially sinful wretch of a Daitya's son, of irrepressible energy, on his part began to shoot thousands upon thousands of arrows in torrents! And, O Bhārata, he rained shafts upon my soldiers and upon my charioteer and upon my steeds! But without thinking of the shafts, we continued the conflict. Then the warriors following Sālwa poured on me straight arrows by thousands. And the Asuras covered my horses and my car and Dāruka with arrows capable of piercing the very vitals. And, O hero, I could not at that time see either my horses, or my car, or my charioteer Dāruka! And I with my army was covered with weapons. And, O son of Kunti, superhumanly skilled in weapons, I also let fly from my bow arrows by tens of thousands, inspiring them with *mantras*! But as that car of costly metals was in the sky full two miles off, it could not, O Bhārata, be seen by my troops. They could, therefore, only remaining on the field of battle look on like spectators in a place of amusement, cheering me on by shouts loud as the roar of the lion, and also by the sounds of their clapping. And the tinted arrows shot by the fore-part of my hand penetrated into the bodies of the Dānavas like biting insects. And then arose cries in the car of precious metals from those that were dying of the wounds inflicted by those sharp arrows and falling into the waters of the mighty ocean. And the Dānavas deprived of

their arms and necks, and wearing the form of *Kavandas*, *—fell, sending up tremendous roars. And as they fell they were devoured by animals living in the waters of the ocean. And then I powerfully blew the *Pānchajanya* obtained from the waters and graceful as the lotus-stalk and white as milk or the *Kunda* † flower or the moon or silver. And seeing his soldiers fall, Sālwa the possessor of the car of precious metals began to fight with the help of illusion. And then he began to ceaselessly hurl at me maces, and ploughshares, and winged darts, and lances, and javelins, and battle-axes, and swords, and arrows blazing like javelins, and thunderbolts, and nooses, and broadswords, and bullets from barrels, and shafts, and axes, and rockets. And permitting them to come towards me, I soon destroyed them all by counter-illusion. And on his illusion being rendered ineffectual, he began the contest with mountain-peaks. And, O Bhārata, then there was darkness and light alternately, and the day was now fair, and now gloomy, and now hot, and now cold. And there was a perfect shower of coals, and ashes, and weapons. And creating such illusion the enemy faught with me. And ascertaining it I destroyed his illusion by counter-illusion. And in due time I showered arrows all around. And then, O mighty king, the dome of heaven blazed as with an hundred suns, and, O son of Kunti, with an hundred moons, and thousands and tens of thousands of stars! And then none could ascertain whether it was day or night, or distinguish the points of the horizon. And, becoming bewildered, I fixed on my bow-string the weapon called *Prajnāstra*. And, O son of Kunti, the weapon went like unto flakes of pure cotton blown away by the winds! And a great fight then took place, calcutated to make the down on one's body stand on end. And, O best of monarchs, having regained light, I again faught with the enemy!"

Thus ends the twentieth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

---

* A headless trunk supposed to prowl about battle-fields, and classed in the popular estimation with spirits of the lower order.—T.

† A kind of Jasmine.

Section XXI.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

" Vāsudeva said, 'O thou tiger among men, my great enemy, king Sālwa, thus encountered by me in battle, again ascended the sky. And, O mighty monarch, inspired with the desire of victory, that wicked one hurled at me *Sataghnis*, * and mighty maces, and flaming lances, and stout clubs, and swords. And as the weapons came along the sky, I speedily resisted them with my swift arrows, and cut them in two or three pieces before they came at me. And then there was a great noise in the welkin. And Sālwa covered Dāruka, and my steeds, and my car also with hundreds and thousands of straight shafts. Then, O hero, Dāruka, evidently about to faint, said unto me,—Afflicted with the shafts of Sālwa I stay in the fiield, because it is my duty to do so. But I am incapable of doing so (any longer). My body hath become weak!—Hearing these piteous words of my charioteer, I looked at him, and found the driver wounded with arrows. Nor was there a spot on his breast or the crown of his head, or his body, or his arms which was not, O thou foremost of the sons of Pāndu, covered with shafts! And blood flowed profusely from his wounds inflicted by arrows, and he looked like unto a mountain of red chalk after a heavy shower. And, O thou of mighty arms, seeing the charioteer with the reins in his hands thus pierced and enfeebled by the shafts of Sālwa in the field of battle, I cheered him up!

" 'And, O Bhārata, about this time, a certaiu person, having his home in Dwārakā quickly coming to my car, addressed me like a friend, delivering to me, O hero, a message from Ahuka! He seemed to be one of Ahuka's followers. And sadly and in a voice choked in sorrow, know, O Yudhishthira, he said these words:—O warrior, Ahuka, the lord of Dwārakā hath said these words unto thee! O Keçava hear what thy

---

* Some kind of destructive engine capable of killing hundreds of warriors at a time. Some suppose it to have been a kind of catapults or canon.

father's friend sayeth: *O son of the Vrishni race, O thou irrepressible one, in thy absence to-day Sālwa, coming to Dwārakā, hath by main force killed Vasudeva! Therefore, no need of battle any more. Cease, O Janārddana? Do thou defend Dwārakā! This is thy principal duty!*—Hearing these words of his, my heart became heavy, and I could not ascertain what I should do and what I should not. And, O hero, hearing of that great misfortune, I mentally censured Sātyaki, and Valadeva, and also that mighty warrior Pradyumna. Having reposed on them the duty of protecting Dwārakā and Vasudeva, I had gone, O son of the Kuru race, to effect the destruction of Sālwa's city. And in a sorrowful heart, I asked myself,—*Doth that destroyer of foes, the mighty-armed Valadeva, live? And Sātyaki, and the son of Rukmini, and Chārudeshna possessed of prowess, and Sāmba and others?*—For, O thou tiger among men, these living, even the bearer himself of the thunderbolt could by no means destroy Sura's son (Vasudeva)! And thought I, *It is plain that Vasudeva is dead and equally plain that the others with Valadeva at their head have been deprived of life.*—This was my certain conclusion. And, O mighty king, thinking of the destruction of these all, I was overwhelmed with grief! And it was in this state of mind that I encountered Sālwa afresh. And now I saw, O great monarch, Vasudeva himself falling from the car of precious metals! And, O warrior, I swooned away! And, O king of men, my sire seemed like unto Yayāti, after the loss of his merit, falling towards the earth from heaven! And like unto a luminary whose merit hath been lost saw I my father falling, his head-gear foul and flowing loosely, and his hair and dress disordered. And then the bow *Sārngá* dropped from my hand, and, O son of Kunti, I swooned away! I sat down on the side of the car. And, O thou descendant of the Bharata race, seeing me deprived of consciousness on the car, and as if dead, my entire host exclaimed *Oh!* and *Alas!* And my prone father with out-stretched arms and lower limbs, appeared like a dropping bird. And him thus falling, O thou of mighty arms, O hero, the hostile warriors bearing in their hands

lances and axes struck grievously! And (beholding this) my heart trembled! And soon regaining my consciousness, O warrior, I could not see in that mighty contest either the car of costly metals, or the enemy Sālwa, or my old father! Then I concluded in my mind that it was certainly illusion. And recovering my senses, I again began to discharge arrows by hundreds.' "—

Thus ends the twenty-first Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XXII.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

"Vāsudeva continued, 'Then, O thou foremost of the Bharata race, taking up my beautiful bow, I began to cut off with my arrows the heads of the enemies of the celestials, from off that car of costly metals! And I began to discharge from the *Shārnga* many well-looking arrows of the forms of snakes, capable of going at a great height and possessing intense energy. And, O perpetuator of the Kuru race, I could not then see the car of costly metals, for it had vanished, through illusion! I was then filled with wonder! That host of Dānavas then, O Bhārata, of frightful visages and hair, set up a loud howl while I was waiting for it. In that fierce battle I then, with the object of destroying them, fixed on my bow-string the weapon capable of piercing the foe, if but his sound is audible. Upon this, their shouts ceased. But those Dānavas that had sent up that shout were all slain by those shafts of mine blazing as the Sun himself, and capable of striking at the knowledge of sound alone. And after the shout had ceased at one place, O mighty king, another yell proceeded from another quarter. Thither also I sent my shafts. In this way, O Bhārata, the Asuras began to send up yells in all the ten quarters, above and across. These were all slain by me, *viz*, those that were in the skies and that were invisible, with arrows of diverse forms, and celestial weapons inspired with *mantras*. Then, O hero, that car of precious metals capable of going any where at will, bewildering my eyes, reappeared at Prāgjyotisha!

And then the destroying Dānavas of fierce forms suddenly drowned me with a mighty shower of rocks. And, O thou foremost of monarchs, torrents of rocks falling upon me covered me up, and I began to grow like an ant-hill (with its summits and peaks)! And covered along with my horses and chrioteer and flagstaffs, with crags on all sides, I disappeared from sight altogether. Then those foremost of heroes of the Vrishni race who were of my army were struck with panic, and on a sudden began to fly in all directions. And beholding me in that plight, O king, the heaven, the firmament, and the earth were filled with exclamations of *Oh*! and *Alas!* And then, O monarch, my friends filled with sorrow and grief began to weep and wail with heavy hearts! And delight filled the hearts of the enemies as dole those of them that were not such. And, O thou who never waverest, I heard of this after I had defeated the foe! And then weilding the thunderbolt, that favorite (weapon) of Indra, capable of riving stones, I destroyed that entire mass of crags! But my steeds, afflicted with the weight of the stones and almost on the point of death, began to tremble. And beholding me, all my friends rejoiced again even as men rejoice on seeing the sun rise in the sky, dispersing the clouds. And seeing my horses almost in their last gasp for breath, afflicted with that load of stones, my charioteer said unto me in words suitable to the occasion,—O thou of the Vrishni race, behold Sāwla the owner of the car of precious metals sitting (yonder)! Do not disregard him! Do thou exert thyself! Do thou abandon thy mildness and consideration for Sālwa. Slay Sālwa, O thou of mighty arms! O Keçava, do not let him live! O hero, O thou destroyer of those that are not thy friends (enemies), an enemy should be slain with every exertion! Even a weak enemy who is under the feet of a man endued with strength, should not be disregarded by the latter: what (shall I say) of one that dareth us to the fight? Therefore, O thou tiger among men, putting forth every exertion, slay him, O lord, O thou foremost of the Vrishni race! Do thou not delay again! This one is not capable of being vanquished by milder measures. And he cannot in my opinion be thy friend who is fighting thee and who devastated Dwārakā!—O Kaunteya, hearing such

words of my charioteer, and knowing that what he said was true, I directed my attention to the fight (afresh), with the view of slaying Sāwla and destroying the car of costly metals! And, O hero, saying unto Dāruka, *Stay a moment*, I fixed on my bow-string my favorite weapon of fire, blazing and of celestial origin, of irresistible force, and incapable of being baffled, bursting with energy, capable of penetrating into everything, and of great splendour! And saying— *Destroy the car of precious metals together with all those enemies that are in it*,—I launched with the might of my arms and in wrath with *mantras*, the great powerful discus *Sudarçana*, which reduceth to ashes in battle Yakshas and Rākshasas and Dānavas and kings born in impure tribes, sharp-edged like the razor, and without stain, like unto Yama the destroyer, and incomparable, and which killeth enemies. And rising into the sky, it seemed like a second sun of exceeding effulgence at the end of the *Yuga*. And approaching the town of *Saubha* whose splendour had disappeared, the discus went right through it, even as a saw divideth a tall tree. And cut in twain by the energy of the *Sudarçana* it fell like the city of *Tripura* shaken by the shafts of Maheçwara. And after the town of *Sāubha* had fallen, the discus came back into my hands. And taking it up I once more hurled it with force, saying,—*Go thou unto Sālwa*—. The discus then cleft Sālwa in twain who in that fierce conflict was at the point of hurling a heavy mace. And with its energy it set the foe ablaze. And after that brave warrior was slain, the disheartened Dānava women fled in all directions, exclaiming *Oh!* and *Alas*! And taking my chariot in front of the town of *Saubha* I cheerfully blew my conch and gladdened the hearts of my friends. And beholding their town, high as the peak of the Meru, with its palaces and gate-ways utterly destroyed, and all ablaze, the Dānavas fled in fear. And having thus destroyed the town of *Saubha* and slain Sālwa, I returned to the Anarttas and delighted my friends. And, O king, it is for this reason that I could not come to the city named after the elephant (Hastināpur), O destroyer of hostile heroes! O warrior, if I had come, Suyo-

dhana would not have been alive or the match at dice would not have taken place. What can I do now? It is difficult to confine the waters after the dam is broken!"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Having addressed the Kaurava thus, that foremost of male persons, of mighty arms, the slayer of Madhu, possessed of every grace, saluting the Pāndavas, prepared for departure. And the mighty-armed hero reverentially saluted Yudhishthira the just, and the king in return and Bhima also smelt the crown of his head. And he was embraced by Arjuna, and the twins saluted him with reverence. And he was duly honored by Dhaumya, and worshipped with tears by Draupadi. And causing Subhadrā and Abhimanyu to ascend his golden car, Krishna mounted it himself, worshipped by the Pāndavas. And consoling Yudhishthira, Krishna set out for Dwārakā on his car resplendant as the sun and unto which were yoked the horses *Saivya* and *Sugriva*. And after he of the Dasārha race had departed, Dhrishtadyumna, the son of Prishata, also set out for his own city, taking with him the sons of Draupadi. And the king of Chedi, Dhrishtaketu also, taking his sister * with him set out for his beautiful city of Suktimati, after bidding farewell to the Pāndavas. And, O Bhārata, the Kaikeyas also, with the permission of Kunti's son possessed of immesurable energy, having reverentially saluted all the Pāndavas, went away. But the Brāhmanas and the Vaiçyas and the dwellers of Yudhishthira's kingdom though repeatedly requested to go, did not leave the Pāndavas. O foremost of kings, O bull of the Bharata race, the multitude that surrounded those high-sould ones in the forest of Kāmyaka, looked extraordinary. And Yudhishthira, honoring those high-minded Brāhmanas, in due time ordered his men, saying, '*Make ready the cars.*'"

Thus ends the twenty-second Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

---

* *Karenumati* the wife of Nakula.—*T.*

SECTION XXIII.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana continued. "After the chief of the Dāsārhas had departed, the heroic Yudhishthira, and Bhima, and Arjuna, and the twins, each looking like unto Siva, and Krishnā, and their priest, ascending costly cars unto which were yoked excellent steeds, together went into the forest. And at the time of going they distributed *Nishkas* of gold and cloths and kine unto Brāhmanas versed in *Cikshā* * and *Akshara* † and *mantras*. And twenty attendants followed them equipped with bows, and bow-strings, and blazing weapons, and shafts, and arrows and engines of destruction. And taking the princess's clothes and the ornaments, and the nurses and the maid-servants, Indrasena speedily followed the princes on a car. And then approaching the best of Kurus, the high-minded citizens walked round him. And the principal Brāhmanas of Kurujāngala cheerfully saluted him. And together with his brothers, Yudhishthira the just on his part saluted them cheerfully. And the illustrious king stopped there a little, beholding that concourse of the inhabitants of Kurujāngala. And the illustrious bull among the Kurus felt for them as a father feeleth for his sons, and they too felt for the Kuru chief even as sons feel for their father! And that mighty concourse, approaching the Kuru hero, stood around him. And, O king, affected with bashfulness, and with tears in their eyes, they all exclaimed, 'Alas, O lord! Alas, O Dharma!' And they said, 'Thou art the chief of the Kurus, and the king of us thy subjects! Where dost thou go, O just monarch, leaving all these citizens and the inhabitants of the country, like a father leaving his sons? Fie on the cruel-hearted son of Dhritarāshtra! Fie on the evil-minded son of Suvala! Fie on Karna! For, O foremost of monarchs, those wretches ever wish such evil unto thee who art firm in virtue! Having thyself established the unrivalled city of Indraprastha, of the splendour of Kai-

---

* Vedic Pronunciation.—*T.*

† Vedic orthography.—*T.*

lāsa itself, where dost thou go, leaving it, O illustrious and just king, O achiever of extraordinary deeds! O illustrious one, leaving that peerless palace built by Maya, which possesseth the splendour of the palace of the celestials themselves, and is like unto a celestial illusion, ever guarded by the gods, where dost thou go, O son of Dharma?' And Vibhatsu knowing the ways of virtue, pleasure, and profit, said unto them in a loud voice, 'Living in the forest the king intendeth to take away the good name of his enemies! O ye with the regenerate ones at your head, versed in virtue and profit, do ye approaching the ascetics separately and inclining them to grace, represent unto them what may be for our supreme good!' Upon hearing these words of Arjuna, the Brāhmanas and the other orders, O king, saluting him cheerfully walked round that foremost of virtuous men! And bidding farewell unto the son of Prithā, and Vrikodara, and Dhananjaya, and Yājnaseni, and the twins, and commanded by Yudhishthira, they returned to their respective abodes in the kingdom, with heavy hearts."

Thus ends the twenty-third Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XXIV.

(*Arjunābhigamana Parva continued*).

Vaisampāyana said. "After they had departed, Yudhishthira the virtuous son of Kunti, unwavering in his promises, addressed all his brothers, saying, 'We shall have to dwell in the solitary forest for these twelve years. Search ye, therefore, in this mighty forest for some spot abounding in birds and deer and flowers and fruits, beautiful to behold, and auspicious, and inhabited by virtuous persons, and where we may dwell pleasantly for all these years!' Thus addressed by Yudhishthira, Dhananjaya replied unto the son of Dharma, after reverencing the illustrious king as if he were his spiritual preceptor. And Arjuna said, 'Thou hast respectfully waited upon all the great and old *Rishis*. There is nothing unknown to thee in the world of men. And, O bull of the Bharata race, thou

hast always waited with reverence upon Brāhmanas including Dwaipāyana and others, and Nārada of great ascetic merit, who, with senses under control, ever goeth to the gates of all the worlds, from the world of the gods unto that of Brahmā, including that of the Gandharvas and Apsarās! And thou knowest, without doubt, the opinions of the Brāhmanas, and, O king, their powers also! And, O monarch, thou knowest what is calculated to do us good! And, O great king, we will live wherever thou likest! Here is this lake, full of sacred water, called *Dwitavana,* * abounding with flowers, and delightful to look at, and inhabited by many species of birds. If, O king, it pleaseth thee, here should we like to dwell these twelve years! Thinkest thou otherwise?' Yudhishthira replied, 'O Pārtha, what thou hast said recommendeth itself to me! Let us go to that sacred and celebrated and large lake called *Dwaitavana!*'"

Vaisampāyana continued, "Then the virtuous sons of Pāndu, accompanied by numerous Brāhmanas, all went to the sacred lake called *Dwaitavana.* And Yudhishthira was surrounded by numerous Brāhmanas some of whom sacrificed with fire and some without it, and some of whom, devoted to the study of the Vedas, lived upon alms or were of the class called *Vānaprasthas.* And the king was also surrounded by hundreds of *Mahātmas* crowned with ascetic success and of rigid vows. And those bulls of the Bharata race, the sons of Pāndu, setting out with those numerous Brāhmanas, entered the sacred and delightful woods of *Dwaita.* And the king saw that mighty forest covered on the close of summer with *Shālas,* and palms, and mangoes, and *Madhukas,* and *Nipas,* and *Kadamvas,* and *Sarjjas,* and *Arjunas,* and *Karnikāras,* many of them covered with flowers. And flocks of peacocks and *Dātyuhas* and *Chakaras* and *Varhins* and

* The word *Dwaitavanam* in the text does not mean the forest called *Dwaita,* but a lake of that name, *vanam* being water. The forest was evidently named after the lake. *Punyajanochitam* is an incorrect reading for *Punyajalochitam.* We prefer to follow Nilakantha who expressly corrects the reading in his commentary.—*T.*

Kokilas, seated on the tops of the tallest trees of that forest, were pouring forth their mellifluous notes. And the king also saw in that forest mighty herds of gigantic elephants huge as the hills, with temporal juice trickling down in the season of rut, accompanied by herds of she-elephants. And approaching the beautiful Bhogavati (Saraswati), the king saw many ascetics crowned with success in the habitations, in that forest, of virtuous men of sanctified souls clad in barks of trees and bearing matted locks on their heads. And descending from their cars, the king—that foremost of virtuous men—with his brothers and followers entered that forest like Indra of immeasurable energy entering heaven. And crowds of *Chāranas* and *Siddhas,* desirous of beholding the monarch devoted to truth, came towards him. And the dwellers of that forest stood surrounding that lion among kings possessed of great intelligence. And saluting all the *Siddhas,* and saluted by them in return as a king or a god should be, that foremost of virtuous men entered the forest with joined hands, accompanied by all those foremost of regenerate ones. And the illustrious and virtuous king, saluted in return by those virtuous ascetics that had approached him, sat down in their midst at the foot a mighty tree decked with flowers, like his father (Pāndu) in days before. And those chiefs of the Bharata race, *viz,* Bhima and Dhananjaya and the twins and Krishnā and their followers, all fatigued, leaving their vehicles, sat themselves down around that best of kings. And that mighty tree bent down with the weight of creepers, with those five illustrious bowmen who had come there for rest sitting under it, looked like a mountain with (five) huge elephants resting on its side."

Thus ends the twenty-fourth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XXV.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "Having fallen into distress, those princes thus obtained at last a pleasant habitation in that forest. And there in those woods abounding with *Shāla* trees and washed by the Saraswati, they who were like so many Indras, began to sport themselves. And the illlustrious king, that bull of the Kuru race, set himself to please all the *Yatis* and *Munis* and the principal Brāhmanas in that forest, by offerings of excellent fruits and roots. And their priest Dhaumya endued with great energy, like unto a father to those princes, began to perform the sacrifical rites of *Ishti* and *Paitreya* for the Pāndavas residing in that great forest. And there came, as a guest, unto the abode of the accomplished Pāndavas living in the woods after loss of their kingdom, the old Rishi Mārkandeya, possessed of intense and abundant energy. And that bull of the Kuru race, the high-souled Yudhishthira, possessed of unrivalled strength and prowess, paid his homage unto that great *Muni* reverenced by celestials and *Rishis* and men, and possessed of the splendour of blazing fire. And that illustrious and all-knowing *Muni*, of unrivalled energy, beholding Draupadi and Yudhishthira and Bhima and Arjuna, in the midst of the ascetics, smiled, recollecting Rāma in his mind. And Yudhishthira the just, apparently grieved at this, asked him, saying, 'All these ascetics are sorry for seeing me here. Why is it that thou alone smilest, as if in glee, in the presence of these?' Mārkandeya replied, 'O child, I too am sorry and do not smile in glee! Nor doth pride born of joy fill my heart! Beholding to-day this thy calamity, I recollect Rāma, the son of Daçaratha, devoted to truth! Even that Rāma, accompanied by Lakshmana, dwelt in the woods at the command of his father. O son of Prithā, I beheld him in days of old ranging with his bow the top of the *Rishyamuka* hills! The illustrious Rāma was like unto Indra, the lord of Yama himself, and the slayer of Namuchi! Yet that sinless one had to dwell

in the forest at the command of his father, accepting it as his duty. The illustrious Rāma was equal unto Shakra in prowess, and invincible in battle. And yet he had to range the forest renouncing all pleasures! Therefore, should no one act unrighteously, saying,—*I am mighty!* Kings Nābhāga and Bhagiratha and others, having subjugated by truth this world bounded by the seas, (finally) obtained, O child, all the regions hereafter. Therefore, should no one act unrighteously, saying, —*I am mighty!* And, O exalted of men, the virtuous and truthful king of Kāçi and Karusha was called a mad dog for having renounced his territories and riches! Therefore, should no one act unrighteously, saying,—*I am mighty!* O best of men, O son of Prithā, the seven righteous Rishis, for having observed the ordinance prescribed by the Creator himself in the Vedas, blaze in the firmament.* Therefore, should no one act unrighteously, saying, *I am mighty*! Behold, O king, the mighty elephants, huge as mountain cliffs and furnished with tusks, transgress not, O exalted of men, the laws of the Creator! Therefore, should none act unrighteously, saying, *Might is mine!* And, O foremost of monarchs, behold all the creatures acting according to their species, as ordained by the Creator! Therefore, should none act unrighteously, saying, *Might is mine*! O son of Prithā, in truth, and virtue, and proper behaviour, and modesty, thou hast surpassed all creatures, and thy fame and energy are as bright as fire or the Sun! Firm in thy promises, O illustrious one, having passed in the woods thy painful exile, thou wilt again, O king, snatch from the Kauravas thy blazing prosperity with the help of thy own energy!' "

Vaisampāyana continued. " Having spoken these words unto Yudhishthira (seated) in the midst of the ascetics with friends, the great Rishi, having also saluted Dhaumya and all the Pāndavas, set out in a northerly direction! "

The constellation of seven stars blazing in the firmament is supposed to be the seven Rishis Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, &c. In fact, each planet or star is some great spirit so transformed for his merits. This is an idea often occuring in the sacred books of the Aryas.—*T.*

Thus ends the twenty-fifth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XXVI.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "While the illustrious sons of Pāndu continued to dwell in the *Dwaita* woods, that great forest became filled with Brāhmanas. And the lake within that forest, ever resounding with Vedic recitations, became sacred like a second region of Brahmā. And the sounds of the *Yajus*, the *Richs*, the *Sāmas*, and other words uttered by the Brāhmanas, were exceedingly delightful to hear. And the Vedic recitations of the Brāhmanas mingling with the twangs of bows of the sons of Prithā, produced a union of the Brāhmana and Kshatriya customs that was highly beautiful. And one evening the Rishi Vaka of the *Dālvya* family addressed Yudhishthira the son of Kunti seated in the midst of the Rishis, saying, 'Behold, O Chief of the Kurus, O son of Prithā, the *homa* time is come of these Brāhmanas devoted to ascetic austerities, the time when the (sacred) fires have all been lit up! These all, of rigid vows, protected by thee, are performing the rites of religion in this sacred region! The descendants of Bhrigu and Angiras, along with those of Vaçishta and Kaçyapa, the illustrious sons of Agastya, the offspring of Atri all of excellent vows, in fact, all the foremost Brāhmanas of the whole world, are now united with thee! Listen, O son of Prithā, O son of the Kuru race born of Kunti, thyself with thy brothers, to the words I speak to thee! As fire aided by the wind consumeth the forest, so *Brahma* energy mingling with *Kshatriya* energy, and *Kshatriya* might mingling with *Brahma* power, might, when they gathered force, consume all enemies! O child, he should never desire to be without Brāhmanas who wisheth to subdue this and the other world for length of days! Indeed, a king slayeth his enemies having obtained a Brāhmana conversant with religion and worldly affairs and freed from passion and folly. King Vali cherishing his subjects practised those duties that lead to salva-

tion, and knew not of any other means in this world than Brāhmanas! It was for this that all the desires of Virochana's son, the *Asura* (Vali), were ever gratified, and his wealth was ever inexhaustible. Having obtained the whole earth through the aid of the Brāhmanas, he met with destruction when he began to practise wrongs on them! This earth with her wealth never adoreth long as her lord a Kshatriya living without a Brāhmana! The earth, however, girt by the sea, boweth unto him who is ruled by a Brāhmana and taught his duties by him! Like an elephant in battle without his driver, a Kshatriya destitute of Brāhmanas decreaseth in strength! The Brāhmana's sight is without compare, and the Kshatriya's might also is unparalleled. When these combine, the whole earth itself cheerfully yieldeth to such a combination. As fire becoming mightier with the wind consumeth straw and wood, so kings with Brāhmanas consume all foes! An intelligent Kshatriya, in order to gain what he hath not, and increase what he hath, should take counsel of Brāhmanas! Therefore, O son of Kunti, for obtaining what thou hast not and increasing what thou hast, and spending what thou hast on proper objects and persons, keep thou with thee a Brāhmana of reputation, of a knowledge of the Vedas, of wisdom and experience! O Yudhishthira, thou hast ever highly regarded the Brāhmanas. It is for this that thy fame is great and blazeth in the three worlds!' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Then all those Brāhmanas who were with Yudhishthira worshipped Vaka of the Dālvya race, and having heard him praise Yudhishthira became highly pleased. And Dwaipāyana and Nārada and Jāmadagnya and Prithuçravas; and Indradyumna and Bhālluki and Kritachetas and Sahasrapāt; and Karnaçravas and Munja and Lavanāçwa and Kāçyapa; and Hārita and Sthulakarna and Agniveçya and Shaunaka; and Kritavāk and Suvāk and Vrihadaçwa and Vibhāvasu; and Urdharetas and Vrishāmitra and Suhotra and Hotravāhana; these and many other Brāhmanas of rigid vows then adored Yudhishthira like Rishis adoring Purandara in heaven!"

Thus ends the twenty-sixth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XXVII.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "Exiled to the woods the sons of Prithā with Krishnā seated in the evening, conversed with one another afflicted with sorrow and grief. And the handsome and well-informed Krishnā, dear unto her lords and devoted to them, thus spake unto Yudhishthira:—'The sinful, cruel, and wicked-minded son of Dhritarāshtra certainly feeleth no sorrow for us, when, O king, that evil-hearted wretch having sent thee with myself into the woods dressed in deer-skins feeleth no regret! The heart of that wretch of evil deeds must surely be made of steel when he could at that time address thee, his virtuous eldest brother, in words so harsh! Having brought thee who deservest to enjoy every happiness and never such woe, into such distress, alas, that wicked-minded and sinful wretch joyeth with his friends! O Bhārata, when dressed in deer-skin thou hadst set out for the woods, only four persons, O monarch, *viz*, Duryodhana, Karna, the evil-minded Shakuni, and Dusçāsana that bad and fierce brother of Duryodhana, did not shed tears! With the exception of these, O thou best of the Kurus, all other Kurus, filled with sorrow, shed tears from their eyes! Beholding this thy bed and recollecting what thou hadst before, I grieve, O king, for thee who deservest not woe and hast been brought up in every luxury! Remembering that seat of ivory in thy court, decked with jewels, and beholding this seat of *kusa* grass, grief consumeth me, O king! I saw thee, O king, surrounded in thy court by kings! What peace can my heart know in not beholding thee such now? I beheld thy body, effulgent as the sun, decked with sandal paste! Alas, grief depriveth me of my senses in beholding thee now besmeared with mud and dirt! I saw thee before, O king, dressed in silken clothes of pure white! But I now behold thee dressed in rags? Formerly, O king, pure food of every kind was carried from thy house on plates of gold for Brāhmanas by thousands! And, O king, food also of the best kind was formerly given

by thee unto ascetics both houseless and living in domesticity! Formerly, living in thy mansion thou hadst ever filled with food of every kind plates by thousands, and worshipped the Brāhmanas gratifying every wish of theirs! What peace, O king, can my heart know in not beholding all this now? And, O great king, these thy brothers, endued with youth and decked with ear-rings, were formerly fed by cooks with food of the sweetest flavor and dressed with skill! Alas, O king, I now behold them all, so undeserving of woe, living in the woods and upon what the woods may yield! My heart, O king, knoweth no peace! Thinking of this Bhimasena living in sorrow in the woods, doth not thy anger blaze up, even though it is time? Why doth not thy anger, O king, blaze up upon beholding the illustrious Bhimasena who ever performeth everything unaided, so fallen into distress, though deserving of every happiness? Why, O king, doth not thy anger blaze up on beholding that Bhima living in the woods who was formerly surrounded with numerous vehicles and dressed in costly apparel? This exalted personage is ready to slay all the Kurus in battle. He beareth, however, all this sorrow, only because he waiteth for the fulfilment of thy promise! This Arjuna, O king, though possessed of two hands, is equal, for the lightness of his hand in discharging shafts, to (Kartavirya) Arjuna of a thousand arms! He is even (to foes), like unto Yama himself at the end of the *Yuga*! It was by the prowess of his weapons that all the kings of the earth were made to wait upon the Brāhmanas at thy sacrifice! Beholding that Arjuna—that tiger among men worshipped by both the celestials and the Dānavas—so anxious, why, O king, dost thou not feel indignant? I grieve, O Bhārata, that thy wrath doth not blaze up at sight of that son of Pṛithā in exile, that prince who deserveth not such distress and who hath been brought up in every luxury! Why doth not thy wrath blaze up at sight of that Arjuna in exile, who, on a single car, hath vanquished celestials and men and serpents? Why, O king, doth not thy wrath blaze up at sight of that Arjuna in exile who, honored with offerings of cars and vehicles of various forms and horses and elephants, forcibly took from the kings

of the earth their treasures, who is the chastiser of all foes, and who at one impetus can throw full five hundred arrows? Why, O king, doth not thy wrath blaze up at sight of Nakula in exile, who, so fair and able-bodied and young, is the foremost of all swordsmen? Why, O king, dost thou pardon the foe, O Yudhishthira, at sight of Mādri's son, the handsome and brave Sahadeva in exile? Why doth not thy anger blaze up, O king, at sight of both Nakula and Sahadeva overwhelmed with grief, though so undeserving of distress? Why also, O king, dost thou pardon the foe at sight of myself in exile who, born in the race of Drupada and, therefore, the sister of Dhrishtadyumna, am the daughter-in-law of the illustrious Pāndu and the devoted wife of heroes? Truly, O thou best of the Bhāratas, thou hast no anger, else why is it that thy mind is not moved at sight of thy brothers and myself (in such distress)? It is said that there is no Kshatriya in the world who is bereft of anger. I now behold in thee, however, a refutation of the proverb! That Kshatriya, O son of Prithā, who discovereth not his energy when the opportunity cometh, is ever disregarded by all creatures! Therefore, O king, thou shouldst not extend thy forgiveness to the foe. Indeed, with thy energy, without doubt, thou mayst slay them all! So also, O king, that Kshatriya who is not appeased when the time for forgiveness cometh, becometh unpopular with every creature and meeteth with destruction both in this and the other world!'"

Thus ends the twenty-seventh Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XXVIII.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

"Draupadi continued, 'On this subject, the ancient story of the conversation between Prahlāda and Vali the son of Virochana, is quoted as an example. One day Vali asked his grand-father Prahlāda, the chief of the Asuras and the Dānavas, possessed of great wisdom and well-versed in the mysteries of the science of duty, saying,—O father, is forgive-

ness meritorious or might and energy such ? I am puzzled as regards this: O father, enlighten me who ask thee this! O thou conversant with all duties, tell me truly which of these is meritorious! I will strictly obey whatever thy command may be!—Thus asked (by Vali), his wise grand-father, conversant with every conclusion, replied upon the whole subject unto his grand-son who had sought at his hands the resolution of his doubts. And Prahlāda said,—Know, O child, these two truths with certainty, *viz*, that might is not always meritorious and forgiveness also is not always meritorious! He that forgiveth always suffereth many evils. Servants and strangers and enemies always disregard him. No creature ever bendeth down unto him. Therefore it is, O child, that the learned applaud not a constant habit of fergiveness! The servants of an ever-forgiving person always disregard him, and contract numerous faults. These mean-minded men also seek to deprive him of his wealth. Vile-souled servants also themselves appropriate his vehicles and clothes and ornaments and apparel and beds and seats and food and drink and other articles of use. They do not also, at the command of their master, give unto others the things they are directed to give. Nor do they ever worship their master with that respect which is their master's due. Disregard in this world is worse than death. O child, sons and servants and attendants and even strangers speak harsh words unto the man who always forgiveth. Persons, disregarding the man of an ever-forgiving temper, even desire his wife, and his wife also, from ignorance, becometh ready to act as she willeth. And servants also that are ever fond of pleasure, if they do not receive even slight punishments from their master, contract all sorts of vices, and the wicked ever injure such a master. These and many other demerits attach to those that are ever-forgiving!

"'Listen now, O son of Virochana, to the demerits of those that are never-forgiving! The man of wrath who, surrounded by darkness, always inflicteth, by help of his own energy, various kinds of punishments on persons whether they deserve them or not, is necessarily seprated from his friends in consequence of that energy of his. Such a man is hated by both

relatives and strangers. Such a man, because he insulteth others, suffereth loss of wealth and reapeth disregard and sorrow and hatred and confusion and enemies. The man of wrath, in consequence of his ire, inflicteth punishments on men and obtaineth (in return) harsh words. He is divested of his prosperity soon and even of life, not to say, of friends and relatives. He that puteth forth his might both upon his benefactor and his foe, is an object of alarm to the world, like a snake that hath taken shelter in a house, to the inmates thereof. What prosperity can he have who is an object of alarm to the world? People always do him an injury when they find a hole. Therefore, should men never exhibit might in excess nor forgiveness on all occasions. One should put forth his might and show his forgiveness on proper occasions. He that becometh forgiving at the proper time and harsh and mighty also at the proper time, obtaineth happiness both in this world and the other.

"'I shall now indicate the occasions in detail of forgiveness, as laid down by the learned, and which should ever be observed by all. Hearken unto me as I speak! He that hath done thee a service, even if he is guilty of a grave wrong unto thee, recollecting his former service shouldst thou forgive that offender. Those also that have become offenders from ignorance and folly should be forgiven, for learning and wisdom are not always easily attainable by man. They that having offended thee knowingly, plead ignorance, should be punished, even if their offences be trivial. Such crooked men should never be pardoned. The first offence of every creature should be forgiven. The second offence, however, should be punished, even if it be trivial. If, however, a person commiteth an offence unwillingly, it hath been said that examining his plea well by a judicious enquiry, he should be pardoned. Humility may vanquish might, humility may vanquish weakness. There is nothing that humility may not accomplish. Therefore, humility is truly fiercer (than it seemeth)! One should act with reference to place and time, and taking note of his own might or weakness. Nothing can succeed that hath been undertaken without reference to place and time. Therefore, do thou ever wait for place and

time! Sometimes offenders should be forgiven from fear of the people. These have been declared to be times of forgiveness. And it hath been said that on occasions besides these, might should be put forth against trangressors.—'

"Draupadi continued, 'I, therefore, regard, O king, that the time hath come for thee to put forth thy might! Unto those Kurus, the covetous sons of Dhritarāshtra who injure us always, the present is not the time for forgiveness! It behoveth thee to put forth thy might. The humble and forgiving person is disregarded; while those that are fierce persecute others. He, indeed, is a king who hath recourse to both, each according to its time!'"

Thus ends the twenty-eighth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XXIX.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said, 'Anger is the slayer of men and is again their prosperor. Know this, O thou possessed of great wisdom, that anger is the root of all prosperity and all adversity. O thou beautiful one, he that suppresseth his anger earneth prosperity. That man, again, who always giveth way to anger, reapeth adversity from his fierce anger. It is seen in this world that anger is the cause of destruction of every creature. How then can one like me indulge his anger which is so destructive of the world? The angry man commiteth sin; the angry man killeth even his preceptors. The angry man insulteth even his superiors in harsh words. The man that is angry faileth to distinguish between what should be said and what should not. There is no act that an angry man may not do, no word that an angry man may not utter. From anger a man may slay one that deserveth not to be slain, and may worship one that deserveth to be slain. The angry man may even send his own soul to the regions of Yama. Beholding all these faults, the wise control their anger, desirous of obtaining high prosperity both in this and the

other world. It is for this that they of tranquil souls have banished wrath. How can one like us indulge in it then? O daughter of Drupada, reflecting upon all this, my anger is not excited! One that acteth not against a man whose wrath hath been up, rescueth himself as also others from great fear. In fact, he may be regarded to be the physician of the two (*viz*, himself and the angry man). * If a weak man persecuted by others, foolishly becometh angry towards men that are mightier than he, he then becometh himself the cause of his own destruction. And in respect of one who thus deliberately throweth away his life, there are no regions hereafter to gain. Therefore, O daughter of Drupada, it hath been said that a weak man should always suppress his wrath. And the wise man also who though persecuted suffereth not his wrath to be roused, joyeth in the other world, having passed his persecutor over in indifference. It is for this reason hath it been said that a wise man, whether strong or weak, should ever forgive his persecutor even when the latter is in straits. It is for this, O Krishnā, that the virtuous applaud them that have conquered their wrath. Indeed, it is the opinion of the virtuous that the honest and forgiving man is ever victorious. Truth is more beneficial than untruth; and gentle than cruel behaviour. How can one like me, therefore, even for the purpose of slaying Duryodhana, exhibit anger which hath so many faults and which the virtuous banish from their souls? They that are regarded by the learned of foresight, as possessed of (true) force of character, are certainly those who are wrathful in outward show only. Men of learning and of true insight call him to be possessed of force of character who by his wisdom can suppress his risen wrath. O thou of fair hips, the angry man seeth not things in their true light. The man that is angry seeth not his way nor respecteth persons. The angry man killeth even those that deserve not to be killed. The man of wrath slayeth even his preceptors. Therefore, the man possessing force of character should ever banish wrath to a distance. The man that is overwhelmed

* Nilkantha would explain this as meaning "Himself and others."

with wrath acquireth not with ease generosity, dignity, courage, skill, and other attributes belonging to real force of character. A man by forsaking anger can exhibit proper energy, whereas, O wise one, it is highly difficult for the angry man to exhibit his energy at the proper time! The ignorant * always regard anger as equivalent to energy. Wrath, however, hath been given to man for the destruction of the world. The man, therefore, who wisheth to behave properly, must ever forsake anger. Even one who hath abandoned the excellent virtues of his own order, it is certain, never indulgeth in wrath (if he behaveth properly). † If fools, of minds without light, transgress in every respect, how, O faultless one, can one like me transgress (like them)? ‡ If amongst men there were not persons equal unto the Earth in forgiveness, there would be no peace among men but continued strife caused by wrath. If the injured return their injuries, if one chastised by his superiors were to chastise his superiors in return, the consequence would be the destruction of every creature, and sin also would prevail in the world. If the man who hath ill speeches from another returneth those speeches afterwards; if the injured man returneth his injuries; if the chastised person chastiseth in return; if fathers slay sons, and sons, fathers; and if husbands slay wives, and wives, husbands; then, O Krishnā, how can birth take place in a world where anger prevaileth so! For, O thou of handsome face, know that the birth of creatures is due to peace! If the king also, O Draupadi, giveth way to wrath, his subjects soon meet with destruction. Wrath, therefore, hath for its consequence the destruction and the distress of the people. And because it is

* The Bengal editions read *apanditai*. Nilakantha, however, adhering to *Pandita* would explain it as used ironically. This is certainly ingenious. We prefer the Bengal reading.

† The sense of the second line of this *Sloka* is very obscure. We have followed Nilakantha.

‡ We do not follow Nilakantha in taking the *Anindite* of the text as a locative singular connected with *atikrama*. We prefer to take it as a vocative singular addressed to Draupadi.

seen that there are in the world men who are forgiving like the Earth, it is therefore that creatures derive their life and enjoy prosperity. O beautiful one, one should forgive, under every injury. It hath been said that the continuation of species is due to man being forgiving. He, indeed, is a wise and excellent person who hath conquered his wrath and who showeth forgiveness even when insulted, oppressed, and angered by a strong person. The man of power who controleth his wrath, hath (for his enjoyment) numerous everlasting regions; while he that is angry, is called foolish, and meeteth with destruction both in this and the other world. O Krishnā, the illustrious and forgiving *Kāçyapa* hath, in this respect, sung the following verses in honor of men that are ever forgiving:— Forgiveness is virtue; forgiveness is sacrifice; forgiveness is the Vedas; forgiveness is the *Sruti.** He that knoweth this is capable of forgiving everything. Forgiveness is *Brahma*;† forgiveness is Truth;‡ forgiveness is stored ascetic merit; forgiveness protecteth the ascetic merit of the future; forgiveness is asceticism; forgiveness is holiness; and by forgiveness is it that the universe is held together. Persons that are forgiving attain to the regions obtainable by those that have performed meritorious sacrifices, or those that are well-conversant with the *Vedas*, or those that have high ascetic merit. Those that perform Vedic sacrifices $ as also those that perform the meritorious rites of religion obtain other regions. Men of forgiveness, however, obtain those much-adored regions that are in the world of Brahmā. Forgiveness is the might of the mighty; forgiveness is Sacrifice; forgiveness is quiet of mind. How, O Krishnā, can one like us abandon forgiveness, which is such, and in which are established *Brahma*, and Truth, and Wisdom, and the worlds? The man of wisdom should ever forgive, for when he is capable of forgiving everything, he

---

* *Sruti* here expresses the same sense as the *Vedas*. Literally, it is *audition* as opposed to *Smriti* which is *tradition*.

† Used in the sense of 'the collective body of Brāhmanas'.

‡ The highest virtue, equivalent to Godhead.

$ Sacrifices are specially ordained in the *Yajus*.

attaineth to *Brahma.* * This world belongeth to those that are forgiving; the other world is also theirs. The forgiving acquire honors here, and a state of blessedness hereafter. Those men that ever conquer their wrath by forgiveness, obtain the higher regions. Therefore hath it been said that forgiveness is the highest virtue.—These are the verses sung by Kāçyapa in respect of those that are ever-forgiving. Having listened, O Draupadi, to these verses in respect of forgiveness, contain thyself! Give not way to thy wrath! Our grand-sire the son of Shāntanu will worship peace; Krishna the son of Devaki will worship peace; the preceptor (Drona) and Vidura called *Kshatri* will both speak of peace; Kripa and Sanjaya also will preach peace. And Somadatta and Yuyutshu and Drona's son and our grandsire Vyāsa, every one of them speaketh always of peace. Ever urged by these towards peace, the king (Dhritarāshtra) will, I think, return us our kingdom. If, however, he yieldeth to temptation, he will meet with destruction. O lady, a crisis hath come in the history of the Bhāratas for plunging them into calamity! This hath been my certain conclusion from sometime before! Suyodhana deserveth not the kingdom. Therefore hath he been unable to acquire forgiveness. I, however, deserve the sovereignty, and therefore is it that forgiveness hath taken possession of me. Forgiveness and gentleness are the qualities of the self-possessed. They represent eternal virtue. I shall, therefore, truly adopt those qualities!'"

Thus ends the twenty-ninth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XXX.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

"Draupadi said, 'I bow down unto *Dhātri* and *Vidhātri* † who have thus clouded thy sense! Regarding the burden

---

* The highest state of Godhead.

† *Dhātri* is God; *Vidhātri*, the embodiment of acts, which are supposed to determine the course of one's life. Or, simply, the Creator and the Ordainer of everything in the universe.

(thou art to bear) thou thinkest differently from the ways of thy fathers and grand-fathers! Influenced by acts men are placed in different situations of life. Acts, therefore, produce consequences that are inevitable: emancipation is desired from mere folly. It seemeth that man can never attain prosperity in this world by virtue, gentleness, forgiveness, straight-forwardness and fear of censure! If this were not so, O Bhārata, this insufferable calamity would never have overtaken thee who art so undeserving of it, and these thy brothers of great energy! Neither in those days of prosperity nor in these days of thy adversity, thou, O Bhārata, hath ever known anything so dear to thee as virtue, which thou hast even regarded as dearer to thee than life! That thy kingdom is for virtue alone, that thy life also is for virtue alone, is known to Brāhmanas and thy superiors and even the celestials! I think thou canst abandon Bhimasena and Arjuna and these twin sons of Mādri along with myself, but thou canst not abandon virtue! I have heard that the king protecteth virtue; and virtue, protected by him, protecteth him (in return)! I see, however, that virtue protecteth thee not! Like the shadow pursuing a man, thy heart, O tiger among men, with singleness of purpose, ever seeketh virtue. Thou hast never disregarded thy equals, and inferiors and superiors! Obtaining even the entire world, thy pride never increased! O son of Prithā, thou ever worshippest Brāhmanas, the gods, and the *Pritris*, with *Swāhās* and *Swādhās*, * and other forms of worship! O son of Prithā, thou hast ever gratified the Brāhmanas by fulfilling every wish of theirs! *Yatis* and *Sannyāsins* † and mendicants of domestic lives have always been fed in thy house from off plates of gold where I have distributed (food) amongst them. Unto the *Vānaprasthas* ‡ thou always givest gold and food. There is nothing in thy house thou mayst not give unto the Brāhmanas! In the *Viswadeva* sacrifice that is, for thy peace, performed in thy house, the things consecrated are first offered

---

* Both are particular *Mantras* of the Vedas.

† Orders of ascetics.

‡ Order of ascetics not living in domesticity.

unto guests and all creatures, while thou livest thyself with what remaineth (after distribution)! *Ishtis, Paçubandhas,* sacrifices for obtaining fruition of desires, the religious rites of (ordinary) domesticity, *Pāka* sacrifices, and sacrifices of other kinds, are ever performed in thy house. Even in this great forest, so solitary and haunted by robbers, living in exile, divested of thy kingdom, thy virtue hath sustained no diminution! The *Aswamedha,* * the *Rājasuya,* the *Pundarika,* † the *Gosava,* ‡ these grand sacrifices requiring large gifts have all been performed by thee! O monarch, impelled by a perverse sense during that dire hour of a losing match at dice, thou didst yet stake and lose thy kingdom, thy wealth, thy weapons, thy brothers, and myself! Simple, gentle, liberal, modest, truthful, how, O king, could thy mind be attracted to the vice of gambling? I am almost deprived of my sense, O king, and my heart is overwhelmed with grief, beholding this thy distress, and this thy calamity! An old history is cited as an illustration for the truth that men are subject to the will of God and never to their own wishes! The Supreme Lord and Ordainer of all ordaineth everything in respect of the weal and woe, the happiness and misery, of all creatures, even prior to their births, guided by the acts of each, which are even like a seed (destined to sprout forth into the tree of life). O hero amongst men, as a wooden doll is made to move its limbs by the wire-puller, so are creatures made to work by the Lord of all. O Bhārata, like space that covereth every object, God, pervading every creature, ordaineth its weal or woe. Like a bird tied with a string, every creature is dependant on God. Every one is subject to God and none else. No one can be his own ordainer. Like a pearl on its string, or a bull held fast by the cord passing through its nose, or a tree fallen from the bank into the middle of the stream, every creature followeth the command of the Creator, because imbued with His Spirit and because established in Him. And

* The Horse-sacrifice.

† The Elephant-sacrifice.

‡ The Cow-sacrifice.

man himself, dependent on the Universal Soul, cannot pass a moment independently. Enveloped in darkness, creatures are not masters of their own weal or woe. They go to heaven or hell, urged by God Himself. Like light straws dependent on strong winds, all creatures, O Bhārata, are dependent on God! And God himself, pervading all creatures and engaged in acts right and wrong, moveth in the universe, though none can say—*This is God!* This body with its physical attributes * is only the means by which God—the Supreme Lord of all-maketh (every creature) to reap fruits that are good or bad. Behold the power of illusion that hath been spread by God, who confounding with his illusion, maketh creatures slay their fellows! Truth-knowing Munis behold these differently. They appear to them in a different light, even like the rays of the Sun (which to ordinary eyes are only a pencil of light, while to eyes more penetrating seem fraught with the germs of food and drink). † Ordinary men behold the things of the earth otherwise. It is God who makeeth them all, adopting different processes in their creation and destruction. And, O Yudhishthira, the Selfcreate Grandsire, Almighty God, spreading illusion, slayeth his creatures by the instrumentality of his creatures, as one may break a piece of inert and senseless wood with wood, or stone with stone, or iron with iron! And the Supreme Lord, according to his pleasure, sporteth with his creatures, creating and destroying them, like a child with his toy (of soft earth). O king, it doth seem to me that God behaveth towards his creatures like a father or mother unto them. Like a vicious person, He seemeth to bear himself towards them in anger! Beholding superior and well-behaved and modest persons persecuted, while the sinful are happy, I am sorely troubled! Beholding this thy distress and the prosperity of Suyodhana, I do not speak highly of the Great Ordainer who suffereth such inequality! O sir, what fruits doth the Great Ordainer reap by granting prosperity to Dhrita-

---

* *Kshetrasangitam* means literally "called *Kshetra.*" *Kshetra*, however, is a collection of attributes, most of which are physical.

† So Nilakantha. *Vide* Yudhishthira's hymn to the Sun on page.

rāshtra's son who transgresseth the ordinances, who is crooked and covetous, and who injureth virtue and religion! If the act done pursueth the doer and none else, then certainly it is God himself who is stained with the sin of every act. If, however, the sin of an act done doth not attach to the doer, then (individual) might (and not God) is the true cause of acts, and I grieve for those that have no might!"

Thus ends the thirtieth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XXXI.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said, 'Thy speech, O Yājnaseni, is delightful and smooth and full of excellent phrases. We have listened to it (carefully). Thou speakest, however, the language of atheism! O princess, I never act, solicitous of the fruits of my actions! I give away, because it is my duty to give; I sacrifice, because it is my duty to sacrifice! O Krishnā, I accomplish to the best of my power whatever a person living in domesticity should do, regardless of the fact whether those acts have fruits or not. O thou of fair hips, I act virtuously, not from the desire of reaping the fruits of virtue, but of not transgressing the ordinances of the Veda, and beholding also the conduct of the good and wise! My heart, O Krishnā, is naturally attracted towards virtue. The man who wisheth to reap the fruits of virtue is a trader in virtue. His nature is mean and he should never be counted amongst the virtuous. Nor doth he ever obtain the fruits of his virtues! Nor doth he of sinful heart, who having accomplished a virtuous act doubteth in his mind, obtain the fruits of his act, in consequence of that scepticism of his! I speak unto thee, under the authority of the Vedas, * which constitute the highest proof in such matters, that never shouldst thou doubt virtue! The man that doubteth virtue is destined to take his birth in the brute species. The man of weak understanding who doubteth

---

* *Ativādāt* (ablative) equivalent to *Vedaikaprāmānyāt*. So Nilakantha.

religion or virtue or the words of the Rishis, is precluded from regions of immortality and bliss, like Sudras from the Vedas! O intelligent one, if a child born of a good race studieth the Vedas and beareth himself virtuously, royal sages of virtuous behaviour regard him as an aged sage (notwithstanding his years)! The sinful wretch, however, who doubteth religion and transgresseth the scriptures, is regarded as lower even than Sudras and robbers! Thou hast seen with thy own eyes the great ascetic Mārkandeya of immeasurable soul come to us! It is by virtue alone that he hath acquired immortality in the flesh. Vyāsa, and Vaçishta, and Maitreya, and Nārada, and Lomaça, and Shuka, and other Rishis have all, by virtue alone, become of pure souls! Thou beholdest them with thy own eyes as furnished with prowess of celestial asciticism, competent to curse or bless (with effect), and superior to the very gods! O sinless one, these all, equal to the celestials themselves, behold with their eyes what is writ in the Vedas, and describe virtue as the foremost duty! It behoveth thee not, therefore, O amiable Queen, to either doubt or censure God or act, with a foolish heart! The fool that doubteth religion and disregardeth virtue, proud of the proof derived from his own reasoning, regardeth not other proofs and holdeth the Rishis who are capable of knowing the future as present as mad men. The fool regardeth only the external world capable of gratifying his senses, and is blind to everything else. He that doubteth religion hath no expiation for his offence. That miserable wretch is full of anxiety and acquireth not regions of bliss hereafter. A rejecter of proofs, a slanderer of the interpretation of the Vedic scriptures, a transgressor urged by lust and covetousness, that fool goeth to hall. O amiable one, he, on the other hand, who ever cheriseth religion with faith, obtaineth eternal bliss in the other world. The fool who cherisheth not religion, transgressing the proofs offered by the Rishis, never obtaineth prosperity in any life, for such transgression of the scriptures. It is certain, O handsome one, that with respect to him who regardeth not the words of the Rishis or the conduct of the virtuous as proof, neither this nor the other world existeth. Doubt not, O Krishnā, the ancient religion

that is practised by the good and framed by Rishis of universal knowledge and capable of seeing all things! O daughter of Drupada, religion is the only raft for those desirous of going to heaven, like a ship to merchants desirous of crossing the ocean. O thou faultless one, if the virtues that are practised by the virtuous had no fruits, this universe then would be enveloped in infamous darkness. No one then would pursue salvation, no one would seek to acquire knowledge, not even wealth; but men would live like beasts. If asceticism, the austerities of celebate life, Sacrifices, study of the Vedas, charity, honesty,—these all were fruitless, men would not have practised virtues, generation after generation. If acts were all fruitless, a dire confusion would ensure. For what then do Rishis and gods and Gandharvas and Rākshasas, who are all independent of human canditions, cherish virtue with such affection? Knowing it for certain that God is the giver of fruits in respect of virtue, they practise virtue in this world. This, O Krishnā, is the eternal (source of) prosperity! When the fruits of both knowledge and asceticism are seen, virtue and vice cannot be fruitless. Call to thy mind, O Krishnā, the circumstances of thy own birth as thou hast heard of them, and recall also the manner in which Dhrishtadyumna of great prowess was born! These, O thou of sweet smiles, are the best proofs (of the fruits of virtue)! They that have their minds under control, reap the fruits of their acts and are content with little. Ignorant fools are not content with even the much they get (here), because they have no happiness born of virtue to acquire in the world hereafter. The fruitfulness of virtuous acts ordained in the Vedas, as also of all transgressions, the origin and destruction of acts, are, O beautiful one, mysteries to even the gods! These are not known to anybody and everybody. Ordinary men are ignorant in respect of these.*

---

* We adopt the reading *Naitāni vedā &c.* and not the reading without the negative particle. The following verse also begining with *Api kalpa &c.* is, we regard, an interpolation. Nilakantha spends much ingenuity in explaining the sense, adopting the second line as genuine, but we think he is in error.

The gods keep up the mystery, for the illusion covering the conduct of the gods is unintelligible. Those regenerate ones that have destroyed all aspirations, that have built all their hopes on vows and asceticism, that have burnt all their sins and have acquired minds where quiet and peace and holiness dwell, understand all these. Therefore, though thou mayst not see the fruits of virtue, thou shouldst not yet doubt religion or the gods. Thou must perform sacrifices with a will, and practise charity without insolence. Acts in this world have their fruits, and virtue also is eternal. Brahmā himself told this unto his (spiritual) sons, as testified to by Kaçyapa. Let thy doubt, therefore, O Krishnā, be dispelled like mist. Reflecting upon all this, let thy scepticism give way to faith. Slander not God, who is the lord of all creatures. Learn how to know Him. Bow down unto Him. Let not thy mind be such. And, O Krishnā, never disregard that Supreme being through whose grace, mortal man by piety, acquireth immortality!' "

Thus ends the thirty-first Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XXXII.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

"Draupadi said, 'I do not ever disregard or slander religion, O son of Prithā! Why should I disregard God the lord of all creatures? Afflicted with woe, know me, O Bhārata, to be only raving! I will once more indulge in lamentations: listen to me with attention! O persecuter of all enemies, every conscious * creature should certainly act in this world. It is only the immobile, and not other creatures, that may live without acting. The calf, immediately after its birth, sucketh the mother's teat. Persons feel pain in consequence of incantations performed with their statues. † It seemeth, therefore,

---

* *Jānatā.* We do not prefer the reading *Jātena*, by a creature that *is born.*

† *Chhāyopasevanāt* a technical term so explained by Nilakantha. The argument is not very clear.

O Yudhishthira, that creatures derive the character of their lives from their acts of former lives. Amongst mobile creatures man differeth in this respect that he aspireth, O bull of the Bharata race, to affect his course of life in this and the other world by means of his acts. Impelled by the inspiration of a former life, all creatures visibly (reap) in this world the fruits of their acts. Indeed, all creatures live according to the inspiration of a former life, even the Creator and the Ordainer of the universe, like a crane that liveth on the water (untaught by any one). If a creature acteth not, its course of life is impossible. In the case of a creature, therefore, there must be action and not inaction. Thou also shouldst act, and not incur censure by abandoning action. Cover thyself up, as with an armour, with action. There may or may not be even one in a thousand who truly knoweth the utility of acts or work. One must act for protecting as also increasing his wealth; for if without seeking to earn, one continueth to only spend, his wealth, even if it were a hoard huge as the Himavat, would soon be exhausted. All the creatures in the world would have been exterminated, if there were no action. If also acts bore no fruits, creatures would never have multiplied. It is even seen that creatures sometimes perform acts that have no fruits, for without acts the course of life itself would be impossible. Those persons in the world who believe in Destiny, and those again who believe in Chance, are both the worst among men. Those only that believe in the efficacy of acts are laudable. He that lieth at ease, without activity, believing in Destiny alone, is soon destroyed like an unburnt earthen pot in water. So also he that believeth in Chance, *i.e*, sitteth inactive though capable of activity, liveth not long, for his life is one of weakness and helplessness. If any person accidentally acquireth any wealth, it is said he deriveth it from Chance, for no one's effort hath brought about the result. And, O son of Prithā, whatever of good fortune a person obtaineth in consequence of religious rites, that is called Providential. The fruit, however, that a person obtaineth by acting himself, and which is the direct result of those acts of his, is regarded as proof of Personal ability. And, O best of

men, know that the wealth one obtaineth spontaneously and without cause is said to be a spontaneous acquisition. * Whatever is thus obtained by Chance, by Providential dispensation, Spontaneously, or as the result of one's acts, is, however, the consequence of the acts of a former life. And God, the Ordainer of the universe, judging according to the acts of former lives, distributeth among men their portions in this world. Whatever acts, good or bad, a person performeth, know, that they are the result of God's arrangements agreeably to the acts of a former life. This body is only the instrument in the hands of God, for doing the acts that are done. Itself inert, it doth as God urgeth it to do. O son of Kunti, it is the Supreme Lord of all who maketh all creatures do what they do. The creatures themselves are inert. O hero, man, having first settled some purpose in his mind, accomplisheth it, himself working with the aid of his intelligence. We, therefore, say that man is himself the cause (of what he doeth). O bull among men, it is impossible to number the acts of men, for mansions and towns are the result of man's acts. Intelligent men know, by help of their intellect, that oil may be had from sesame, curds from milk, and that food may be cooked by means of igniting fuel. They know also the means for accomplishing all these. And knowing them, they afterwards set themselves, with proper appliances, to accomplish them. And creatures support their lives by the results achieved in these directions by their own acts. If a work is executed by a skilled workman it is executed well. From differences (in characteristics) another work may be said to be that of an unskilful hand. If a person were not, in the matter of his acts, himself the cause thereof, then sacrifices would not bear any fruits in his case, nor would any body be a disciple or a master. It is because a person is himself the cause of his work that he is applauded when he achieveth success. So the doer is censured if he faileth. If man were not himself the cause of his acts, how would all this be justified? Some

* Such as obtaining a jewel while in search of a lost coin of the lowest value. This is Nilakantha's happy illustration.

say that everything is the result of Chance, others, that everything is the result of Providential dispensation; others again, that this is not so, but that everything which is supposed to be the result of Destiny or Chance is the result of the good or the bad acts of former lives.* It is seen that possessions are obtained from Chance as also from Destiny. Something being from Destiny and something from Chance, something is obtained by Exertion. In the acquisition of his objects, there is no fourth cause in the case of man. Thus say those that are acquainted with truth and skilled in knowledge.† If, however, God himself were not the giver of good and bad fruits, then amongst creatures there would not be any that was miserable. If the effect of former acts be a myth, then all purposes for which man would work should be successful. They, therefore, that regard the three alone (mentioned above) as the doors of all success and failure in the world, (without regarding the acts of former life), are dull and inert like the body itself.‡ For all this, however, a person should act. This is the conclusion of Manu himself. The person that doth not act, certainly succumbeth. O Yudhishthira, the man of action in this world generally meeteth with success. The idle, however, never achieve success. If success becometh impossible, then should one seek to remove the difficulties that bar his way to success. And, O king, if a person worketh (hard), his debt (to the gods) is cancelled (whether he achieveth success or not). The person that is idle and lieth at his length, is overcome by adversity; while he that is active and skilful is sure to reap success and enjoy prosperity. Intelligent persons engaged in acts with confidence in themselves, regard all who are diffident as doubting and unsuccessful. The confident and faithful, however, are regarded by them as successful. At this moment misery hath overtaken us. If, however, thou betakest to action, that misery will certainly be removed. If thou meetest failure, then that will furnish

---

Adriçyam, as explained by Nilakantha, is the good or the bad acts of a former life.

† Banter.

‡ The word in the text is *Atmā*. It means here body. So Nilakantha. Otherwise it would have no sense.

a proof unto thee and Vrikodara and Vivatshu and the twins (that ye are unable to snatch the kingdom from the foe). The acts of others, it is seen, are crowned with success. It is probable that ours also will be successful. How can one know beforehand what the consequence will be? Having exerted thyself, thou wilt know what the fruit of thy exertions will be. The tiller tilleth with the plough the soil and soweth the seeds thereon. He then siteth silent, for the clouds (after that) are the cause that would help the seeds to grow into plants. If, however, the clouds favor him not, the tiller is absolved from all blame. He saith unto himself,—What others do I have done. If, notwithstanding this, I meet with failure, no blame can attach to me.—Thinking so, he containeth himself and never indulgeth in self-reproach. O Bhārata, no one should despair, saying,—Oh, I am acting, yet success is not mine!—For there are two other causes, besides exertion, towards success. Whether there be success or failure, there should be no despair, for success in acts dependeth upon the union of many circumstances. If one important element is wanting, success doth not become commensurate, or doth not come at all. If, however, no exertion is made, there can be no success. Nor is there anything to applaud in the absence of all exertion. The intelligent, aided by their intelligence, and according to their full might, bring place, time, means, auspicious rites, for the acquisition of prosperity. With carefulness and vigilance should one set himself to work, his chief guide being his prowess. In the union of qualities necessary for success in work, prowess seemeth to be the chief. When the man of intelligence seeth his enemy superior to him in many qualities, he should seek the accomplishment of his purposes by means of the arts of conciliation and proper appliances. He should also wish evil unto his foe and his banishment. Without speaking of mortal man, if his foe were even the ocean or the hills, he should be guided by such motives. A person by his activity in searching for the holes of his enemies, dischargeth his debt to himself as also to his friends. No man should ever disparage himself, for the man that disparageth himself never earneth high prosperity. O Bhārata, success in

this world is attainable on such conditions! In fact, success in the world is said to depend on acting according to time and circumstances. My father formerly kept a learned Brāhmana with him. O bull of the Bharata race, he said all this unto my father. Indeed, these instructions as to duty, uttered by Vrihaspati himself, were first taught to my brothers? It was from them that I heard these afterwards while in my father's house. And, O Yudhishthira, while at intervals of business, I went out (of the inner apartments) and sat on the lap of my father, that learned Brāhmana used to recite unto me these truths, sweetly consoling me therewith!' "

Thus ends the thirty-second Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XXXIII.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "Hearing these words of Yājnaseni, Bhimasena, sighing in wrath, approached the king and addressed him, saying, 'Walk, O monarch, in the customary path trod by good men (before thee) in respect of kingdoms! What do we gain by living in the asylum of ascetics, thus deprived of virtue, pleasure, and profit? It is not by virtue, nor by honesty, nor by might, but by unfair dice, that our kingdom hath been snatched by Duryodhana. Like a weak offal-eating jackal snatching the prey from mighty lions, he hath snatched away our kingdom! Why, O monarch, in obedience to the trite merit of sticking to a promise, dost thou suffer such distress, abandoning that wealth which is the source of both virtue and enjoyments? It was for thy carelessness, O king, that our kingdom protected by the wielder of the *Gāndiva* and, therefore, incapable of being wrested by Indra himself, was snatched from us in our very sight! It was for thee, O monarch, that, ourselves living, our prosperity was snatched away from us like a fruit from one unable to use his arms, or like kine from one incapable of using his legs! Thou art faithful in the acquisition of virtue. It was to please thee, O Bhārata, that we have suffered ourselves to be overwhelmed with such

dire calamity! O bull of the Bharata race, it was because we were subject to thy control that we are thus tearing the hearts of our friends and gratifying our foes! That we did not, in obedience to thee, even then slay the sons of Dhritarāshtra, is an act of folly on our part that grieveth me sorely! This thy abode, O king, in the woods, like that of any wild animal, is what a man of weakness alone would submit to. Surely, no man of might would ever lead such a life! This thy course of life is approved neither by Krishna, nor Vivatshu, nor by Abhimanyu, nor the Srinjayas, nor myself, nor by the sons of Mādri! Afflicted with thy vows, thy cry is *Religion! Religion*! Hast thou from despair been deprived of thy manliness? Cowards alone, unable to win back their prosperity, cherish despair, which is fruitless and destructive of one's purposes. Thou hast ability and eyes. Thou seest that manliness dwelleth in us. It is because thou hast adopted a life of peace that thou feelest not this distress! These Dhārtarāshtras regard us who are forgiving, as really incompetent. This, O king, grieveth me more than death in battle. If we all die in fair fight without turning our backs on the foe, even that would be better than this exile, for then we should obtain regions of bliss in the other world! Or, if, O bull of the Bharata race, having slain them all, we acquire the entire earth, that would be prosperity worth the trial! We who ever adhere to the customs of our order, who ever desire grand achievements, who wish to avenge our wrongs, have this for our bounden duty. Our kingdom wrested from us, if we engage in battle, our deeds when known to the world will procure for us fame and not slander! And that virtue, O king, which tortureth one's own self and friends, is really no virtue. It is rather a vice producing calamities. Virtue is sometimes also the weakness of men. And though such a man might ever be engaged in the practice of virtue, yet both virtue and profit forsake him, like pleasure and pain forsaking a person that is dead. He that practiseth virtue for virtue's sake always suffereth. He can scarcely be called a wise man, for he knoweth not the purposes of virtue, like a blind man incapable of perceiving the solar light. He that regardeth his

wealth to exist for himself alone, scarcely understandeth the purposes of wealth. He is really like a servant that tendeth kine in a forest. He again that pursueth wealth too much without pursuing virtue and enjoyments, deserveth to be censured and slain by all men. He also that ever pursueth enjoyments without pursuing virtue and wealth, loseth his friends and virtue and wealth also. Destitute of virtue and wealth, such a man, indulging in pleasure at will, at the expiration of his period of indulgence, meeteth with certain death, like a fish when the water in which it liveth hath been dried up. It is for these reasons that they that are wise are ever careful of both virtue and wealth, for a union of virtue and wealth is the essential requisite of pleasure, as fuel is the essential requisite * of fire. Pleasure hath always virtue for its root, and virtue also is united with pleasure. Know, O monarch, that both are dependent on each other, like the ocean and the clouds, the ocean causing the clouds and the clouds filling the ocean. The joy that one feeleth in consequence of contact with objects of touch or of possession of wealth, is what is called pleasure. It existeth in the mind, having no corporeal existence that one can see. He that wisheth (to obtain) wealth, seeketh for a large share of virtue to crown his wish with success. He that wisheth for pleasure, seeketh wealth, (so that his wish may be realised). Pleasure, however, yieldeth nothing in its turn. One pleasure cannot lead to another, being its own fruit; as ashes may be had from wood, but nothing from those ashes in their turn. And, O king, as a fowler killeth the birds we see, so doth sin slay the creatures of the world. He, therefore, who misled by pleasure or covetousness, beholdeth not the nature of virtue, deserveth to be slain by all, and becometh wretched both here and hereafter. It is evident, O king, that thou knowest that pleasure may be derived from the possession of various objects of enjoyment. Thou also well knowest their ordinary states, as well as the

* The word in the text is *Prakriti*, literally, that which aids the manifestation of anything and without which that object's manifestation would be impossible.

great changes they undergo. At their loss or disappearance occasioned by decrepitude or death, ariseth what is called distress. That distress, O king, hath now overtaken us. The joy that ariseth from the five senses the intellect and the heart being directed to the objects proper to each, is called pleasure. That pleasure, O king, is, as I think, one of the best fruits of our actions.

"'Thus, O monarch, one should regard virtue, wealth and pleasure one after another. One should not devote himself to virtue alone, nor regard wealth as the highest object of his wishes, nor pleasure, but should ever pursue all three. The scriptures ordain that one should seek virtue in the morning, wealth at noon, and pleasure in the evening. The scriptures also ordain that one should seek pleasure in the first portion of life, wealth in the second, and virtue in the last.* And, O thou foremost of speakers, they that are wise and fully conversant with proper division of time, pursue all three,—virtue, wealth, and pleasure,—dividing their time duly! O son of the Kuru race, whether independence of these (three), or their possession is the better for those that desire happiness, should be settled by thee after careful thought. And thou shouldst then, O king, unhesitatingly act either for acquiring them, or abandoning them all. For he who liveth wavering between the two doubtingly, leadeth a wretched life. It is well known that thy behaviour is ever regulated by virtue. Knowing this, thy friends counsel thee to act. Gift, sacrifice, respect for the wise, study of the Vedas, and honesty,—these, O king, constitute the highest virtue, and are efficacious both here and hereafter. These virtues, however, cannot be attained by one that hath no wealth, even if, O tiger among men, he may have infinite other accomplishments. The whole universe, O king, dependeth upon virtue. There is nothing higher than virtue. And virtue, O king, is attainable by one that hath plenty of wealth. Wealth cannot be earned by leading a mendicant life, nor by a life of feebleness. Wealth, however, can be earned by intelligence directed by virtue. In thy case,

* This *sloka* does not occur in every text.

O king, begging, which is successful with Brāhmanas, hath been forbiddden. Therefore, O bull amongst men, strive for the acquisition of wealth by exerting thy might and energy. Neither mendicancy, nor the life of a Sudra is what is proper for thee. Might and energy constitute the virtue of the Kshatriya in especial. Adopt thou, therefore, the virtue of thy order and slay thy enemies. Destroy the might of Dhritarashtra's sons, O son of Prithā, with my and Arjuna's aid! They that are learned and wise say that sovereignty is virtue. Acquire sovereignty, therefore, for it behoveth thee not to live in a state of inferiority! Awake, O king, and understand the eternal virtues (of thy order)! By birth thou belongest to an order whose deeds are cruel and are a source of pain to man. Cherish thy subjects and reap the fruit thereof. That can never be a reproach. Even this, O king, is the virtue * ordained by God himself for the order to which thou belongest! If thou fallest away therefrom, thou wilt make thyself ridiculous. Deviation from the virtues of one's own order is never applauded. Therefore, O thou of the Kuru race, making thy heart what it ought to be, agreeably to the order to which thou belongest, and casting away this course of feebleness, summon thy energy and bear thy weight like one that beareth it manfully. No king, O monarch, could ever acquire the sovereignty of the earth or prosperity or affluence by means of virtue alone. Like a fowler earning his food in the shape of swarms of little easily-tempted game, by offering them some attractive food, doth one that is intelligent acquire a kingdom, by offering bribes unto low and covetuous enemies. † Behold, O bull among kings, the Asuras, though elder brothers in possession of power and affluence, were all vanquished by the gods through strategem. Thus, O king, everything belongeth to

---

* It is difficult to correctly render the word *Dharma* into English. The word has many meanings. In the whole passage it is sometimes used in the sense of *Virtue*, and sometimes in that of *Duty*. With this key in his possession, the reader will not, we are sure, be confounded in correctly understanding the whole of this passage.

† The words of the text here are employed in a double sense. The original, therefore, is tersor than the translation.

those that are mighty. And, O mighty-armed one, slay thy foes, having recourse to strategem. There is none equal unto Arjuna in wielding the bow in battle. Nor is there anybody that may be equal unto me in wielding the mace. Strong men, O monarch, engage in battle depending on their might, and not on the force of numbers nor on information of the enemy's plans procured through spies. Therefore, O son of Pāndu, exert thy might! Might is the root of wealth. Whatever else is said to be its root is really not such. As the shade of the tree in winter goeth for nothing, so without might everything else becometh fruitless. Wealth should be spent by one who wisheth to increase his wealth, after the manner, O son of Kunti, of scattering seeds on the ground. Let there be no doubt then in thy mind! Where, however, wealth that is more or even equal is not to be gained, there should be no expenditure of wealth. For investments of wealth are like the ass' scratching, pleasurable at first but painful afterwards. Thus, O king of men, the person who throweth away like seeds a little of his virtue in order to gain a larger measure of virtue, is regarded as wise. Beyond doubt, it is as I say. They that are wise alienate the friends of the foe that owneth such, and having weakened him by causing those friends to abandon him thus, they then reduce him to subjection. Even they that are strong engage in battle depending on their courage. One cannot by even continued efforts (uninspired by courage) or by the arts of conciliation, always conquer a kingdom. * Sometimes, O king, men that are weak, uniting in large numbers, slay even a powerful foe, like bees killing the despoiler of the honey by force of numbers alone. (As regards thyself), O king, like the sun that sustaineth as well as slayeth creatures by his rays, adopt thou the ways of the sun. To protect one's kingdom and cherish the people duly, as done by our ancestors, O king, is, it hath been heard by us, a kind of asceticism mentioned even in the Vedas. † By asceticism, O king, a Kshatriya cannot acquire such regions of blessedness

* Literally, "Win over a people."

† *Purānam* is very often used in this sense.

as he can by fair fight whether ending in victory or defeat! Beholding, O king, this thy distress, the world hath come to the conclusion that light may forsake the Sun and grace the the Moon! And, O king, good men, separately as well as assembling together, converse with one another, applauding thee and blaming the other. * There is this moreover, O monarch, *viz*, that both the Kurus and the Brāhmanas, assembling together, gladly speak of thy firm adherence to truth, in that thou hast never, from ignorance, from meanness, from covetousness, or from fear, uttered an untruth. Whatever sin, O monarch, a king committeth in acquiring dominion, he consumeth it all afterwards by means of sacrifices distinguished by large gifts. Like the Moon emerging from the clouds, the king is purified from all sins by bestowing villages on Brāhmanas and kine by thousands! Almost all the citizens as well as the inhabitants of the country, young or old, O son of the Kuru race, praise thee, O Yudhishthira! This also, O Bhārata, the people are saying amongst each other, *viz*, that as milk in a bag of dog's hide, as the Vedas in a Sudra, as truth in a robber, as strength in a woman, so is sovereignty in Duryodhana. Even women and children are repeating this, as if it were a lesson they seek to commit to memory. O repressor of foes, thou hast fallen into this state along with ourselves! Alas, *we* also are lost with thee for this calamity of thine! Therefore, ascending on thy car furnished with every implement, and making the superior Brāhmanas utter benedictions on thee, march thou with speed, even this very day, upon Hastināpura, in order that thou mayst be able to give unto Brāhmanas the spoils of victory. Surrounded by thy brothers, who are firm wielders of the bow, and by heroes skilled in weapons and like unto snakes of virulent poison, set thou out even like the slayer of Vritra surrounded by the Marutas! And, O son of Kunti, as thou art powerful, grind thou with thy might thy weak enemies, like Indra grinding the Asuras; and snatch thou from Dhritarāshtra's son the prosperity he enjoyeth! There is no mortal that can bear the touch of the

* Duryodhana.

shafts furnished with the feathers of the vulture and resembling snakes of virulent poison, that would be shot from the *Gāndiva!* And, O Bhārata, there is not a warrior, nor an elephant, nor a horse, that is able to bear the impetus of my mace when I am angry in battle! Why, O son of Kunti, should we not wrest our kingdom from the foe, fighting with the aid of the Srinjayas and Kaikeyas, and the bull of the Vrishni race? Why, O king, should we not succeed in wresting the (sovereignty of the) earth that is now in the hands of the foe, if, aided by a large force, we do but strive?'"

Thus ends the thirty-third Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XXXIV.

(*Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.*)

Vaisampāyana said. "Thus addressed by Bhimasena, the high-sould king Ajātaçatru * firmly devoted to truth, mustering his patience, after a few moments said these words;—'No doubt, O Bhārata, all this is true! I cannot reproach thee for thy torturing me thus by piercing me with thy arrowy words! From my folly alone hath this calamity come against you! I sought to cast the dice desiring to snatch from Dhritarāshtra's son his kingdom with the sovereignty. It was therefore that that cunning gambler—Suvala's son—played against me on behalf of Suyodhana. † Shakuni, a native of the hilly country, is exceedingly artful. Casting the dice in the presence of the assembly, unacquainted as I am with artifices of any kind, he vanquished me artfully. It is therefore, O Bhimasena, that we have been overwhelmed with this calamity. Beholding the dice favorable to the wishes of

---

* Literally, one having no enemy. Yudhishthira is often called by this name, from his exceptional good nature and disinclination to give offence to anybody.

† Duryodhana. Yudhishthira from his repugnance to use the word *dur* implying *evil* or bad, used to call his cousin Suyodhana, *i.e*, a combatant fighting fairly.

Shakuni in odds and evens,* I could have controlled my mind. Anger, however, driveth off a person's patience. O child, the mind cannot be kept under control when it is influenced by hauteur, vanity, or pride. I do not reproach thee, O Bhimasena, for the words thou usest. I only regard that what hath befallen us was pre-ordained. When king Duryodhana the son of Dhritarāshtra, coveting our kingdom, plunged us into misery and even slavery, then, O Bhima, it was Draupadī that rescued us! When summoned again to the assembly for playing once more, thou knowest as well as Arjuna what Dhritarāshtra's son told me, in the presence of all the Bhāratas, regarding the stake for which we were to play. His words were, *O prince Ajātaçatru, (if vanquished), thou shalt have, with all thy brothers, to dwell, to the knowledge of all men, for twelve years in the forest of thy choice, passing the thirteenth year in secrecy! If during the latter period, the spies of the Bhāratas, hearing of thee, succeed in discovering thee, thou shalt have again to live in the forest for the same period, passing once more the last year in secrecy! Reflecting upon this, pledge thyself to it. As regards myself, I promise truly in this assembly of the Kurus, that if thou canst pass this time confounding my spies and undiscovered by them, then, O Bhārata, this kingdom of the five rivers is once more thine! We also, O Bhārata, if vanquished by thee, shall, all of us, abandoning all our wealth, pass the same period, according to the same rules.*—Thus addressed by the prince, I replied unto him in the midst of all the Kurus,—*So be it*! The wretched play then commenced. We were vanquished and have been exiled. It is for this that we are wandering miserably over different woody regions abounding with discomforts. Suyodhana, however, still dissatisfied, gave himself up to

---

* *Ayuja* and *yuja*. It is difficult to exactly ascertain the kind of play that was in vogue then. One throw, however, was sufficient to determine the winning or the losing of the stake.

anger, and urged * the Kurus as also all those under his sway to express their joy at our calamity. Having entered into such an agreement in the presence of all good men, who dareth break it for the sake of a kingdom on earth? For a respectable person, I think, even death itself is lighter than the acquisition of soverignty by an act of transgression. At the time of the play, thou hadst desired to burn my hands. Thou wert prevented by Arjuna, and accordingly didst only squeeze thy own hands.† If thou couldst do what thou hadst desired, could this calamity befall us? Conscious of thy prowess, why didst thou not, O Bhima, say so before we entered into such an agreement? Overwhelmed with the consequence of our pledge, and the time itself having passed, what is the use of thy addressing me these harsh words? O Bhima, this is my great grief that we could not do any thing even beholding Draupadi persecuted in that way. My heart burneth as if I have drunk some poisonous liquid. Having, however, given that pledge in the midst of the Kuru heroes, I am unable to violate it now. Wait, O Bhima, for the return of our better days, like the scatterer of seeds waiting for the harvest! When one that hath been first injured, succeedeth in revenging himself upon his foe at a time when the latter's enmity hath borne fruits and flowers, he is regarded to have accomplished a great thing by his prowess. Such a brave person earneth undying fame. Such a man obtaineth great prosperity. His enemies bow down unto him, and his friends gather round him, like the celestials clustering round Indra for protection. But know, O Bhima, my promise can never be untrue! I regard virtue as superior to life itself and a blessed state of celestial existence.‡ Kingdom, sons, fame, wealth,—all these do not come up to even a sixteenth part of truth!'"

---

* The word in the text is *Udyojayāmāsa*, literally, *urged*. But for what? Nilakantha explains it as meaning "appointed" in different offices of trust in those occupied by Yudhishthira's men. Rather far-fetched.

† The word *Parigha* in the text implies, as Nilakhantha explains, arms like unto the weapon so called.

‡ *Amritāt* (ablative) not immortality.

Thus ends the thirty-fourth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XXXV.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

"Bhima said, 'O king, unsubstantial as thou art like froth, unstable like a fruit (falling when ripe), dependent on time, and mortal, having entered into an agreement in respect of Time, which is infinite and immeasurable, passing quickly like a shaft or a stream, and carrying everything before it, like Death itself, how canst thou regard it as available by thee? How can he, O son of Kunti, wait whose life is shortened every moment, even like a quantity of collyrium that is lessened each time a grain is taken up by the needle? He only whose life is unlimited or who knoweth with certitude what the period of his life is, and who knoweth the future as if it were before his eyes, can, indeed, wait for the arrival of (an expected) time. If we wait, O king, for thirteen years, that period, shortening our lives, will bring us nearer to death. Death is sure to overtake every creature having a corporeal existence. Therefore, we should strive for the possession of our kingdom before we die. He that faileth to achieve fame, by failing to chastise his foes, is like an unclean thing. He uselessly weighteth the earth like a brute, and perisheth ingloriously.* The man who, destitute of strength and courage, chastiseth not his foes, liveth in vain. I regard such a one as low-born. Thy hands can rain gold: thy fame spreadeth over the whole earth; slaying thy foes, therefore, in battle, enjoy thou the wealth acquired by the might of thy arms! O repressor of all foes, O king, if a man slaying his injurer, goeth the very day into hell, that hell becometh heaven to him. O king, the pain one feeleth in having to suppress his wrath is more burning than fire itself. Even now I burn with it and cannot sleep in the day or the night. This son of Prithā, called Vivatshu, is foremost in drawing the bow-string. He

---

* *Bhumi-vardhana* is explained by Nilakantha as one uselessly burthening the earth.

certainly burneth with grief, though he liveth here like a lion in his den. This one that desireth to slay * without aid all wielders of the bow on earth, represseth the wrath that riseth in his breast, like a mighty elephant. Nakula, Sahadeva, and old Kunti—that mother of heroes, are all dumb, desiring to please thee! And all our friends along with the Srinjayas equally desire to please thee. I alone, and Prativindhya's mother † speak unto thee, burning with grief! Whatever I speak unto thee is agreeable to all of them, for all of them, plunged in distress, eagerly wish for battle. O father, O monarch, what more wretched calamity can overtake us than that our kingdom should be wrested from us by weak and contemptible foes and enjoyed by them? O king, from the weakness of thy disposition thou feelest shame in violating thy pledge. But, O slayer of foes, no one applaudeth thee for thus suffering such pain in consequence of the kindliness of thy disposition! Thy intellect, O king, seeth not the truth, like that of a foolish and ignorant person of high birth who hath committed the words of the Vedas to memory without understanding their sense. ‡ Thou art kind like a Brāhmana! How hast thou been born in the Kshatriya order? They that are born in the Kshatriya order are generally of crooked hearts. Thou hast heard (recited) the duties of kings, as promulgated by Manu, fraught with crookedness and unfairness and precepts opposed to tranquility and virtue. Why dost thou then, O king, forgive the wicked sons of Dhritarāshtra? Thou hast intelligence, prowess, learning, and high birth. Why dost thou then, O tiger among men, act, in respect of thy duties, like a huge snake that is destitute of motion? § O son of Kunti, he that desireth to conceal us,

---

* *Abhimanute*, slay. Nilakantha rightly explains the sense by a quotation from the *Vrihadāranyaka*.

† Draupadi, Prativindhya being Yudhishthira's son by her.

‡ *Anuvākahatā* is explained by Nilakantha as without knowledge of meaning.

§ *Pitha sarpavat*. So Nilakantha. It may also mean a cripple moved on a wheeled vehicle. *Pitha* is a stool or seat, and *Sarpa* from *Srip*, to move.

only wisheth to conceal the mountains of Himavat by means of a handful of grass. O son of Prithā, known as thou art over the whole earth, thou wilt not be able to live unknown, like the sun that can never course through the sky unknown to men! Like a large tree, in a well-watered region with spreading branches and flowers and leaves, or like Indra's elephant, how will Jishnu live unknown? How also will these children, the brothers Nakula and Sahadeva, equal unto a couple of young lions, both live in secret? How, O son of Prithā, will Krishnā—the daughter of Drupada—a princess and mother of heroes, of virtuous deeds and known over all the world, live unknown? Me also, O king, everybody knoweth from my boyhood. I do not see how I can live unknown. As well might the mountains of Meru be sought to be concealed. Then, again, many kings had been expelled by us from their kingdoms. These kings and princes will all follow the bad son of Dhritarāshtra, for robbed and exiled by us, they have not still become friendly to us. Desiring to do good unto Dhritarāshtra, they will certainly seek to injure us. They will certainly set against us numerous spies in disguise. If these discover us and report their discovery, a great danger will overcome us. We have already lived in the woods full thirteen months. Regard them, O king, for their length as thirteeen years. The wise have said that a month is a substitute for a year, like the potherb * that is regarded as a substitute for the *Soma*. Or, (if thou breakest thy pledge) O king, thou mayst free thyself from this sin by offering good savoury food to a quiet bull carrying sacred burdens. Therefore, O king, resolve thou to slay thy enemies. There is no virtue higher than battle for every Kshatriya!' "

Thus ends the thirty-fifth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

---

* *Putikā*, a kind of vegetable much eaten by the lower classes. The native physicians regard it as invested with many invigorating virtues.

Section XXXVI.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "Hearing these words of Bhima, Yudhishthira the son of Kunti—that tiger among men and slayer of all foes—began to sigh heavily, and reflect in silence. And he thought within himself, 'I have heard recited the duties of kings, also all truths about the duties of the different orders. He is said to observe those duties truly who keepeth them before his eyes, so as to regulate his conduct both in the present and the future. Knowing as I do the true course of virtue, which, however, is so very difficult of being known, how can I forcibly grind virtue down like grinding the mountains of Meru?' Having reflected so for a moment, and settled what he should do, he replied unto Bhima as follows without allowing him another word:—

'O thou of mighty arms, it is even so as thou hast said! But, O thou foremost of speakers, listen now to another word I say! Whatever sinful deeds, O Bhima, one seeketh to achieve, depending on his courage alone, become always a source of pain! But, O thou of mighty arms, whatever is begun with deliberation, with well-directed prowess, with all appliances, and much previous thought, is seen to succeed! The gods themselves favor such designs! Hear me about what proud of thy might, O Bhima, and led away by thy restlessness, thou thinkest should be immmediatly begun! Bhuriçravas, Shala, the mighty Jalasandha, Bhishma, Drona, Karna, the mighty son of Drona, Dhritarāshtra's sons—Duryodhana and others—so difficult of being vanquished, are all accomplished in arms and ever ready for battle with us. Those kings and chiefs of the earth also who have been injured by us, have all adopted the side of the Kauravas, and bound by ties of affection to them. O Bhārata, they are engaged in seeking the good of Duryodhana and not of us! With full treasures and aided by large forces, they will certainly strive their best in battle. All the officers also of the Kuru army together with their sons and relatives, have been honored

by Duryodhana with wealth * and luxuries. Those heroes are also much regarded by Duryodhana. This is my certain conclusion that they will sacrifice their lives for Duryodhana in battle. Although the behaviour of Bhishma, Drona, and the illustrious Kripa, is the same towards us as towards them, yet, O thou of mighty arms, this is my certain conclusion that inorder to pay off the royal favors they enjoy, they will throw away their very lives, than which there is nothing dearer, in battle. All of them are masters of celestial weapons, and devoted to the practice of virtue. I think they are incapable of being vanquished even by gods led by Vāsava himself. There is again amongst them that mighty warrior—Karna —impetuous, and ever wrathful, master of all weapons, and invincible, and encased in impenetrable mail. Without first vanquishing in battle all those foremost of men, unaided as thou art, how canst thou slay Duryodhana? O Vrikodara, I cannot sleep, thinking of the lightness of hand of that *Suta's* son, who, I regard, is the foremost of all wielders of the bow!' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words of Yudhishthira, the impetuous Bhima became alarmed, and forebore from speaking anything. And while the sons of Pāndu were thus conversing with each other, there came to that spot the great ascetic Vyāsa the son of Satyavati. And as he came, the sons of Pāndu worshipped him duly. Then that foremost of all speakers, addressing Yudhishthira, said, 'O Yudhishthira, O thou of mighty arms, knowing by spiritual insight what is passing in thy heart, I have come to thee, O thou bull among men! The fear that is in thy heart, arising from Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and Karna, and Drona's son, and prince Duryodhana, and Dusçasana, I will dispell, O slayer of all foes, by means of an act enjoined by the ordinance! Hearing it from me, accomplish it thou with patience, and having accomplished it, O king, quell this fever of thine soon.'

"That foremost of speakers then, the son of Parāçara, tak-

---

* *Mātrā*, wealth. (*Vide* Wilson's *Dict.*) It may also mean 'every requisite.'

ing Yudhishthira into a corner, began to address him in words of deep import, saying, 'O thou best of the Bhāratas, the time is come for thy prosperity, when, indeed, Dhananjaya—that son of Prithā—will slay all thy foes in battle. Uttered by me and like unto Success personified, accept from me this knowledge called *Pratismriti* that I impart to thee, knowing thou art capable of receiving it. Receiving it (from thee) Arjuna will be able to accomplish his desire. And let Arjuna, O son of Pāndu, go unto Mahendra, and Rudra, and Varuna, and Kuvera, and Yama, for receiving weapons from them! He is competent to behold the gods for his asceticism and prowess. He is even a Rishi of great energy, the friend of Nārāyana; ancient, eternal, a god himself, invincible, ever successful, and knowing no deterioration. Of mighty arms, he will achieve mighty deeds, having obtained weapons from Indra, and Rudra, and the Lokapālas! And, O son of Kunti, think also of going from this to some other forest that may, O king, be fit for thy abode! To reside in one place for any length of time is scarcely pleasant. In thy case, it might also be productive of anxiety to the ascetics. And as thou maintainest numerous Brāhmanas versed in the Vedas and the several branches thereof, continued residence here might exhaust the deer of this forest, and be destructive of the creepers and plants.' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Having addressed him thus, that illustrious and exalted ascetic—Vyāsa of great wisdom—acquainted with the mysteries of the world, then imparted unto the willing Yudhishthira the just, who had meanwhile purified himself, that foremost of sciences. And bidding farewell unto the son of Kunti, Vyāsa disappeared then and there. The virtuous and intelligent Yudhishthira, however, having obtained that knowledge, carefully retained it in his mind and always recited it on proper occasions. Glad of the advice given him by Vyāsa, the son of Kunti then, leaving the woods *Dwaitavana*,* went to the forest of *Kāmyaka* on the banks of the Saraswati. And, O king, numerous Brāhmanas of

* The word *Vana* in this compound means lake, not forest or woods.

ascetic merit and versed in the science of orthoepy and orthography, followed him like the Rishis following the chief of the celestials. And arrived at *Kāmyaka,* those illustrious bulls amongst the Bhāratas took up their residence there along with their friends and attendants. And possessed of energy, those heroes, O king, lived there for some time, devoted to the exercise of the bow and hearing all the while the chanting of the Vedas. And they went about those woods every day in search of deer, armed with pure * arrows. And they duly performed all the rites in honor of the *Pitris,* the celestials, and the Brāhmanas."

Thus ends the thirty-sixth Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XXXVII.

(Arjunābhigamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "After sometime, Yudhishthira the just, remembering the command of the *Muni* (Vyāsa), and calling unto himself that bull among men—Arjuna—possessed of great wisdom, addressed him in private. Taking hold of Arjuna's hands, with a smiling face and in gentle accents, that chastiser of all foes—the virtuous Yudhishthira—apparently after reflecting for a moment, spake these words in private unto Dhananjaya :—'O Bhārata, the whole † science of arms dwelleth in Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and Karna, and Drona's son. They fully know all sorts of *Brāhma,* and celestial, and human, and *Vāyavya* ‡ weapons, together with the modes of using and warding them off. All of them are conciliated and honored and gratified by Dhritarāshtra's son who behaveth unto them as one should behave unto his

---

* The word is *Suddhai* (instrumental). Lit. Pure, *i. e.* unsteeped in poison.

† *Chatushpāda.* Lit. Four divisions, *ie,* whole or entire.

‡ There is a different reading here. Some editions read *Sayatnam,* which appears to be the true reading. Nilakantha explaines *Yatna* to mean the methods of taking up and holding as well as using.

preceptor. Towards all his warriors Dhritarāshtra's son behaveth with great affection; and all the chiefs honored and gratified by him, seek his good in return. Thus honored by him, they will not fail to put forth their might. The whole earth, besides, is now under Duryodhana's sway, with all the villages and towns, O son of Prithā, and all the seas and woods and mines! Thou alone art our sole refuge! On thee resteth a great burden! I shall, therefore, O chastiser of all foes, tell thee what thou art to do now! I have obtained a science from Krishna-Dwaipāyana. Used by thee, that science will expose the whole universe to thee! O child, attentively receive thou that science * from me, and in due time (by its aid) attain thou the grace of the celestials! And, O bull of the Bharata race, devote thyself to fierce asceticism! Armed with the bow and sword, and cased in mail, betake thyself to ascetic austerities and good vows, and go thou northwards, O child, without giving way to anybody. O Dhananjaya, all celestial weapons are with Indra. The celestials, from fear of Vritra, imparted at the time all their might to Shakra. Gathered together in one place, thou wilt obtain all those weapons! Go thou unto Shakra, he will give thee all his weapons. Taking the vow set thou out this very day in order to behold Purandara!"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Having said this, the exalted Yudhishthira the just, imparted that science unto Arjuna. And the elder brother having communicated with due rites the knowledge unto his heroic brother with speech, and body and mind under perfect control, commanded him to depart. And at command of Yudhishthira, the strong-armed Arjuna, taking up the *Gāndiva* as also his inexhaustible quivers, and accoutred in mail and gauntlets and finger-protectors made of the skin of the guana, and having poured oblations into the fire and made the Brāhmanas to utter benedictions after gifts, set out (from *Kāmyaka*) with the object of beholding Indra. And armed with the bow, the hero, at the time of setting out heaved a sigh and cast a look upwards for achiev-

* *Brāhmana* (instrumental). Lit. *mantra;* here, science.

ing the death of Dhritarāshtra's sons. And beholding Kunti's son thus armed and about to set out, the Brāhmanas and *Siddhas* and invisible spirits addressed him, saying, 'O son of Kunti, obtain thou soon what thou wishest!' And the Brāhmanas also, uttering benedictions, said, 'Achieve thou the object thou hast in view! Let victory be truly thine!' And beholding the heroic Arjuna, of thighs stout as the trunks of the *Sāla*, about to set out taking away with him the hearts of all, Krishnā addressed him saying, 'O thou strong-armed one, let all that Kunti had desired at thy birth, and let all that thou desirest, be accomplished, O Dhananjaya! Let no one amongst us be ever again born in the order of Kshatriyas! I always bow down unto the Brāhmanas whose mode of living is mendicancy! This is my great grief that the wretch Duryodhana beholding me in the assembly of princes mockingly called me a *cow!* * Besides this, he told me in the midst of that assembly many other hard things! But the grief I experience at parting with thee is far greater that any I felt at those insults! Certainly, in thy absence, thy brothers will while away their waking hours in repeatedly talking of thy heroic deeds! If, however, O son of Prithā, thou stayest away for any length of time, we shall derive no pleasure from our enjoyments or from wealth! Nay, life itself will be distasteful to us! O son of Prithā, our weal and woe, life and death, our kingdom and prosperity, are all dependent on thee! O Bhārata, I bless thee, let success be thine! O sinless one, this thy (present) task thou wilt be able to achieve even against powerful enemies! O thou of great strength, go thou to win success with speed! Let dangers be not thine! I bow to *Dhātri* and *Vidhātri!* I bless thee! Let prosperity be thine! And, O Dhananjaya, let *Hri, Sree, Kirti, Dhriti, Pushti, Umā, Lakshmi, Saraswati,* † all protect thee on thy way, for thou ever worshippest thy elder brother and ever obeyest his commands! And,

---

* *i.e.* enjoyable by many.

† These are all female deities. They belong to the class called *Mātrikās.*

O bull of the Bharata race, I bow to the Vasus, the Rudras, the Adityas, the Marutas, the Viswadevas, and the Sādhyas, for procuring thy welfare! And, O Bhārata, be thou safe from all spirits of mischief belonging to the sky, the earth, and the heaven, and from such other spirits generally!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Krishnā the daughter of Yajnasena, having uttered these benedictions, ceased. The strong-armed son of Pāndu then, having walked round his brothers and round Dhaumya also, and taking up his handsome bow, set out. And all creatures began to leave the way that Arjuna of great energy and prowess, urged by the desire of beholding Indra, took. And that slayer of foes passed over many mountains inhabited by ascetics, and then reached the sacred Himavat the resort of the celestials. And the high-souled one reached that sacred mountain in one day, for like the winds, he was gifted with the speed of the mind, in consequence of his ascetic austerities. And having crossed the Himavat, as also the Gandhamādana, he passed over many uneven and dangerous spots, walking night and day without fatigue. And having reached *Indrakila*, Dhananjaya stopped for a moment. And then he heard a voice in skies, saying, 'Stop!' And hearing that voice, the son of Pāndu cast his glances all around. And Arjuna, capable of using his left with skill equal to that of his right hand, then beheld before him an ascetic under the shade of a tree, blazing with *Brāhma* brilliancy, of a tawny color, with mattled locks, and thin. And the mighty ascetic, beholding Arjuna stop at that place, addressed him, saying, 'Who art thou, O child, arrived hither with bow and arrows, and cased in mail, and accoutred in scabbard and gauntlet, and (evidently) wedded to the customs of the Kshatriya? There is no need of weapons here. This is the abode of peaceful Brāhmanas devoted to ascetic austerities without anger or joy. There is no use for the bow here, for there is no dispute in this place of any kind. Therefore, throw away, O child, this bow of thine. Thou hast obtained a pure state of life by coming here! O hero, there is no man who is like thee in energy and prowess!' That Brāhmana thus addressed Arjuna, with a smiling face, re-

peatedly. But he succeeded not in moving Arjuna firmly devoted to his purpose. The regenerate one, glad at heart, smilingly addressed Arjuna once more, saying, 'O slayer of foes, blest be thou! I am Shakra: ask thou the boon thou desirest!' Thus addressed, that perpetuator of the Kuru race, the heroic Dhananjaya bending his head and joining his hands, replied unto him of a thousand eyes, saying, 'Even this is the object of my wishes: grant me this boon: O illustrious one. I desire to learn from thee all the weapons!' The chief of the celestials then, smiling, replied unto him cheerfully, saying, 'O Dhananjaya, when thou hast reached this region, what need is there of weapons? Thou hast already obtained a pure state of life! Ask thou for the regions of bliss that thou desirest!' Thus addressed, Dhananjaya replied unto him of a thousand eyes, saying, 'I desire not regions of bliss, nor objects of enjoyment, nor the state of a celestial; what talkest thou of happiness? O chief of the celestials, I do not desire the prosperity of all the gods. Having left my brothers behind me in the forest, and without avenging myself on the foe, shall I incur the opprobrium for all ages, of all the world?' Thus addressed, the slayer of Vritra, worshipped of the worlds, consoling him with gentle words, spake unto the son of Pāndu, saying, 'When thou art able to behold the three-eyed, trident-bearing Shiva, the lord of all creatures, it is then, O child, that I will give thee all the celestial weapons! Therefore, strive thou to obtain the sight of the highest of the gods; for it is only after thou hast seen him, O son of Kunti, that thou wilt obtain all thy wishes!' Having spoken thus unto Fālguna, Sakra disappeared then and there, and Arjuna, devoting himself to asceticism, remained at that spot."

Thus ends the thirty-seventh Section in the Arjunābhigamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XXXVIII.

(*Kairāta Parva.*)

Janamejaya said. "O illustrious one, I desire to hear in detail the history of the acquisition of weapons by Arjuna of spotless deeds! O tell me how that tiger among men—Dhananjaya of mighty arms and possessed of great energy—entered that solitary forest without fear. And, O thou foremost of those acquainted with the Veda, what also did Arjuna do while dwelling there? How also were the illustrious Sthānu * and the chief of the celestials gratified by him? O thou best of regenerate ones, I desire to hear all this under thy favor. Thou art omniscient; thou knowest all about the gods and all about men! O Brāhmana, the battle that took place of old between Arjuna—that foremost of smiters never defeated in battle—and Bhava was highly extraordinary and without a parallel. It maketh one's hair stand on end to hear of it. Even the hearts of those lions among men—the brave sons of Prithā—trembled, in consequence of wonder and joy and a sense of their own inferiority. O tell me in full what else Arjuna did! I do not see even the most trivial thing in Jishnu that is censurable. Therefore, recite to me in full the history of that hero!"

Vaisampāyana said. "O tiger among Kurus, I shall recite to thee that narration, excellent and extensive and unrivalled, in connection with the illustrious hero. O sinless one, hear in detail the particulars about Arjuna's meeting with the three-eyed god of gods, and his contact with the illustrious god's person!

"At Yudhishthira's command, Dhananjaya of immeasurable prowess set out (from Kāmyaka) to obtain a sight of Shakra the chief of the celestials and of Shankara the god of gods. And the strong-armed Arjuna of great might set out, armed with his celestial bow and a sword with golden hilt, for the success of the object he had in view, northwards, towards the summit of the Himavat. And, O king, that first

---

* Mahādeva.

of all warriors in the three worlds, the son of Indra, with a calm mind, and firmly adhering to his purpose, then devoted himself, without the loss of any time, to ascetic austerities. And he entered, all alone, that terrible forest abounding with thorny plants and trees and flowers and fruits of various kinds, and inhabited by winged creatures of various species, and swarming with animals of diverse kinds, and resorted to by *Siddhas* and *Chāranas*. And when the son of Kunti entered that forest destitute of human beings, sounds of conches and drums began to be heard in the heavens. And a thick shower of flowers fell upon the earth, and the clouds spreading over the firmament caused a thick shade. Passing over those difficult and woody regions at the foot of the great mountains, Arjuna soon reached the breast of the Himavat; and staying there for sometime began to shine in his brilliancy. And he beheld there numerous trees with expanding verdure, resounding with the melodious notes of winged warblers. And he saw there rivers with currents of the hue of the *lapis lazuli*, broken by fierce eddies here and there, and echoing with the notes of swans and ducks and cranes. And the banks of those rivers resounded with the mellifluous strains of the male *kokila* and the notes of peacocks and cranes. And the mighty warrior, beholding those rivers of sacred and pure and delicious water and their charming banks, became highly delighted. And the delighted Arjuna of fierce energy and high soul then devoted himself to rigid austerities in that delightful and woody region. Clad in rags made of grass and furnished with a black deer-skin and a stick, he commenced to eat withered leaves fallen upon the ground. And he passed the first month, by eating fruits at the interval of three nights; and the second by eating at the interval of six nights; and the third by eating at the interval of a fortnight. When the fourth month came that best of the Bhāratas—the strong-armed son of Pāndu—began to subsist on air alone. With arms upraised and leaning upon nothing and standing on the tips of his toes, he continued his austerities. And the illustrious hero's locks, in consequence of frequent bathing, took the hue of lightning or the

lotus. Then all the great Rishis went together unto the god of the *Pināka,* * for representing unto him about the fierce asceticism of Prithā's son. And bowing unto that god of gods, they informed him of Arjuna's austerities, saying, 'This son of Prithā possessed of great energy is engaged in the most difficult of ascetic austerities on the breast of the Himavat. Heated with his asceticism, the earth is smoking all round. O god of gods, we do not know what his object is for which he is engaged in these austerities. He, however, is causing us pain. It behoveth thee to prevent him!' Hearing these words of those *Munis* with souls under perfect control, the lord of all creatures—the husband of Umā—said, 'It behoveth you not to indulge in any grief on account of Fālguna! Return ye all cheerfully and with alacrity to the places whence ye have come! I know the desire that is in Arjuna's heart. His wish is not for heaven, nor for prosperity, nor for long life! And I will accomplish, even this day, all that is desired by him!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "The truth-speaking Rishis, having heard these words of Mahādeva, became delighted, and returned to their respective abodes."

Thus ends the thirty-eighth Section in the Kairāta of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XXXIX.

(Kairāta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "After all those illustrious ascetics had gone away, that wielder of the *Pināka* and cleanser of all sins—the illustrious Hara—assuming the form of a *Kirāta,* † resplendant as a golden tree, and with a huge and stalwart form like a second *Meru,* and taking up a handsome bow and a number of arrows resembling snakes of virulent poison, and

* The name of Mahādeva's bow.

† A hunter ranging in woods. These *Kirātas* formed a separate class by themselves. They were low-castes almost beyond the pale of Hindu society.

looking like an embodiment of fire, came quickly down on the breast of Himavat. And the handsome god of gods was accompanied by Umā in the guise of a Kirāta woman, and also by a swarm of merry spirits of various forms and attire, and by thousands of women in the form and attire of Kirātas. And, O king, that region suddenly blazed up in beauty, in consequence of the arrival of the god of gods in such company. And soon enough a solemn stillness pervaded the place. The sounds of springs, and water-courses, and of birds suddenly ceased. And as the god of gods approached Prithā's son of blameless deeds, he beheld a wonderful sight, even that of a Dānava named Muka seeking in the form of a boar to slay Arjuna. And Fālguna, at sight of the enemy seeking to slay him, took up the *Gāndiva* and a number of arrows resembling snakes of virulent poison. And stringing his bow and filling the air with its twang, he addressed the boar and said, 'I have come here, but done thee no injury! As thou seekest to slay me, I shall certainly send thee to the abode of Yama!' And beholding that firm wielder of the bow—Fālguna—about to slay the boar, Shankara in the guise of a *Kirāta* suddenly bade him stop, saying, 'This boar like the mountain of *Indrakila* in hue hath been aimed at by me first!' Fālguna, however, disregarding these words, struck the boar. The *Kirāta* also of blazing splendour, let fly an arrow like flaming fire and resembling the thunderbolt at the same object. And the arrows thus shot by both fell at the same instant of time upon the wide body of Muka hard as adamant. And the two shafts fell upon the boar with a loud sound, even like that of Indra's thunder-bolt and the thunder of the clouds falling together upon the breast of a mountain. And Muka, thus struck by two shafts which produced numerous arrows resembling snakes of blazing mouths, yeilded up his life, assuming once more his terrible Rākhasa form. Jishnu— that slayer of all foes— then beheld before him that person, of form blazing as gold, and attired in the dress of a Kirāta and accompanied by many women. And beholding him, the son of Kunti with a joyous heart addressed him smilingly and said, 'Who art thou that thus wanderest in these solitary woods, surrounded by

women? O thou of the splendour of gold, art thou not afeared of this terrible forest? Why, again, didst thou shoot the boar that was first aimed at by me? This *Rākshasa* that came hither, listlessly or with the object of slaying me, had been first aimed at by me! Thou shalt not, therefore, escape from me with life! Thy behaviour towards me is not consistent with the customs of the chase. Therefore, O mountaineer, I will take thy life!' Thus addressed by the son of Pāndu, the *Kirāta*, smiling, replied unto him capable of wielding the bow with his left hand, in soft words, saying, 'O hero, thou needst not be anxious on my account! This forest land is proper abode for us who always dwell in the woods! Respecting thyself, however, I may inquire, why thou hast selected thy abode here amid such difficulties! We, O ascetic, have our habitation in these woods abounding in animals of all kinds. Why dost thou, so delicate and brought up in luxury and possessed of the splendour of fire, dwell alone in such a solitary region?' Arjuna said, 'Depending on the *Gāndiva* and arrows blazing like fire, I live in this great forest, like a second *Pāvaki.* * Thou hast seen how this monster—this terrible Rākshasa—that came hither in the form of an animal, hath been slain by me!' The Kirāta replied, 'This Rākshasa, first struck with the shafts shot from my bow, was killed and sent to the regions of Yama by *me.* He was first aimed at by me. And it is with my shot that he has been deprived of life. Proud of thy strength, it behoveth thee not to impute thy own fault to others. Thou art thyself in fault, wretch, and, therefore, shalt not escape from me with life! Stay thou: I will shoot at thee shafts like thunderbolts! Strive thou also and shoot, to the best of thy power, thy arrows at me!' Hearing these words of the *Kirāta*, Arjuna became angry, and attacked him with arrows. The Kirāta, however, with a glad heart received all those shafts upon himself, repeatedly saying, 'Wretch, wretch, shoot thou thy best arrows capable of piercing into the very vitals!' Thus addressed, Arjuna began to shower his arrows on him.

* *Kārtikeya* the son *Pāvaka* (god of fire), generallessimo of the gods.

Both of them then became angry and, engaging in fierce conflict, began to shoot at each other showers of arrows, each resembling a snake of virulent poison. And Arjuna rained a perfect shower of arrows on the Kirāta. Shankara, however, bore that downpour on him with a cheerful heart. But the wielder of the *Pināka*, having borne that shower of arrows for a moment, stood unwounded, immovable like a hill. Dhananjaya, beholding his arrowy shower become futile, wondered exceedingly, repeatedly saying, 'Excellent! Excellent! Alas, this mountaineer of delicate limbs, dwelling on the heights of Himavat, beareth, without wavering, the shafts shot from the Gāndiva! Who is he? Is he Rudra himself, or some other god, or a Yaksha, or an Asura? The gods sometimes do descend on the heights of the Himavat. Except the god who wieldeth the *Pināka*, there is none else that can bear the impetuosity of the thousands of arrows shot by me from the *Gāndiva*! Whether he is a god or a Yaksha, in fact, any body except Rudra, I shall soon send him, with my shafts, to the regions of Yama.' Thus thinking, Arjuna, with a cheerful heart, began, O king, to shoot arrows by hundreds, resembling in splendour the rays of the sun. That downpour of shafts, however, the illustrious Creator of the worlds—the wielder of the trident—bore with a glad heart, like a mountain bearing a shower of rocks. Soon, however, the arrows of Fālguna were exhausted. And noticing this fact, Arjuna became greatly alarmed. And the son of Pāndu then began to think of the illustrious god Agni who had before, during the burning of the *Khāndava*, given him a couple of inexhaustible quivers. And he began to think, 'Alas, my arrows are all exhausted! What shall I shoot now from my bow? Who is this person that swalloweth my arrows? Slaying him with the end of my bow, as elephants are killed with lances, I shall send him to the domains of the mace-bearing Yama.' The illustrious Arjuna then, taking up his bow and dragging the *Kirāta* with his bow-string, struck him some fierce blows that descended like thunderbolts. When, however, that slayer of hostile heroes—the son of Kunti—commenced the conflict with the end of the bow, the mountaineer snatched

from his hands that celestial bow. And beholding his bow snatched from him, Arjuna took up his sword, and wishing to end the conflict, rushed at his foe. And then the Kuru prince, with the whole might of his arm, struck that sharp weapon upon the head of the *Kirāta*, a weapon that was incapable of being resisted even by solid rocks. But that first of swords, at touch of the Kirāta's crown, brake into pieces. Fālguna then commenced the conflict with trees and stones. The illustrious god in the form of the huge-bodied *Kirāta*, however, bore that shower of trees and rocks with patience. The mighty son of Prithā then, his mouth smoking with wrath, struck the invincible god in the form of a *Kirāta*, with his clenched fists blows that descended like thunderbolts. The god in the *Kirāta* form returned Fālguna's blows with fierce blows resembling the thunder-bolts of Indra. And in consequence of that conflict of blows between the son of Pāndu and the *Kirāta*, there arose in that place loud and frightful sounds. That terrible conflict of blows, resembling the conflict of yore between Vritra and Vāsava, lasted but for a moment. The mighty Jishnu clasping the *Kirāta* began to press him with his breast, but the Kirāta, possessed of great strength, pressed the insensible son of Pāndu with force. And in consequence of the pressure of their arms and of their breasts, their bodies began to emit smoke like char-coal in fire. The great god then, smiting the already smitten son of Pāndu, and attacking him in anger with his full might, deprived him of his senses. Then, O Bhārata, Fālguna, thus pressed by the god of gods, with limbs, besides, bruised and mangled, became incapable of motion and was almost reduced to a ball of flesh. And struck by the illustrious god, he became breathless and, falling down on earth without power of moving, looked like one that was dead. Soon, however, he regained consciousness, and, rising from his prostrate position, with body covered with blood, became filled with grief. Mentally prostrating himself before the gracious god of gods, and making a clay image of that deity, he worshipped it with offerings of floral garlands. Beholding, however, the garland that he had offered to the clay image of Bhava decking the crown

of the *Kirāta*, that best of Pāndu's sons became filled with joy and regained his ease. And he prostrated himself thereupon at the feet of Bhava, and the god also was pleased with him. And Hara, beholding the wonder of Arjuna and seeing that his body had been emaciated with ascetic austerities, spake unto him in a voice deep as the roaring of the clouds, saying, 'O Fālguna, I have been pleased with thee for thy act without a parallel! There is no Kshatriya who is equal to thee in courage, and patience! And, O sinless one, thy strength and prowess are almost equal to mine! O mighty-armed one, I have been pleased with thee! Behold me, O bull of the Bharata race! O large-eyed one! I will grant thee eyes (to see me in my true form)! Thou wert a Rishi before! Thou wilt vanquish all thy foes, even the dwellers of heaven! I will, as I have been pleased with thee, grant thee an irresistible weapon. Soon shalt thou be able to wield that weapon of mine!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Fālguna then beheld him —Mahādeva—that god of blazing splendour—that wielder of the Pināka—that one who had his abode on the mountains (of Kailāsa)—accompanied by Umā. Bending down on his knee and bowing with his head, that conqueror of hostile cities—the son of Prithā—worshipped Hara and inclined him to grace. And Arjuna said, 'O *Kaparddin*, O chief of all gods, O destroyer of the eyes of Bhaga, O god of gods, O Mahādeva, O thou of blue throat, O thou of matted locks, I know thee for the Cause of all causes, O thou of three eyes, O lord of all! Thou art the refuge of all the gods! This universe hath sprung from thee! Thou art incapable of being vanquished by the three worlds of the celestials, the Asuras, and men! Thou art Shiva in the form of Vishnu, and Vishnu in the form of Shiva! Thou hadst destroyed of old the great sacrifice of Daksha! O Hari, O Rudra, I bow to thee! Thou hast an eye on thy forehead! O Sharva, O thou that rainest objects of desire, O bearer of the trident, O wielder of the Pināka, O Surya, O thou of pure body, O Creator of all, I bow to thee! O lord of all created things, I worship thee to obtain thy grace! Thou art the lord of the *Ganas*, the source of

universal blessing, the Cause of the cause of the universe! Thou art beyond the foremost of male beings, thou art the highest, thou art the subtlest, O Hara! O illustrious Shankara, it behoveth thee to pardon my fault! It was even to obtain a sight of thyself that I came to this great mountain, which is dear to thee and which is the excellent abode of ascetics! Thou art worshipped of all the worlds! O lord, I worship thee to obtain thy grace! Let not this rashness of mine be regarded as a fault—this combat in which I was engaged with thee from ignorance! O Shankara, I seek thy protection! Pardon me all I have done!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Endued with great might, the god whose sign was the bull, taking into his the handsome hands of Arjuna, smilingly replied unto him, saying, 'I have pardoned thee!' And the illustrious Hara, cheerfully clasping Arjuna with his arms, once more consoling Arjuna said as follows."

Thus ends the thirty-ninth Section in the Kairāta of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XL.

(Kairāta Parva continued.)

"Mahādeva said, 'Thou wert in thy former life Nara the friend of Nārāyana! In Vadari wert thou engaged in fierce ascetic austerities for several thousands of years! In thee as well as in Vishnu—that first of male beings—dwelleth great might! Ye both, by your might, hold the universe! O lord, taking up that fierce bow whose twang resembled the deep roar of the clouds, thou, as well as Krishna, hadst chastised the Dānavas during the coronation of Indra! Even this Gāndiva is that bow, O son of Prithā, fit for thy hands! O foremost of male beings, I snatched it from thee, helped by my powers of illusion! This couple of quivers, fit for thee, will again be inexhaustible, O son Prithā! And, O son of the Kuru race, thy body will be free from pain and disease. Thy prowess is incapable of being baffled! I have been pleased with thee! And, O first of male beings, ask thou of me the boon

that thou desirest! O chastiser of all foes, O giver of proper respect (to those deserving of it), not even in heaven is there any male being who is equal to thee, nor any Kshatriya who is thy superior!'

"Arjuna said, 'O illustrious god having the bull for thy sign, if thou wilt grant me my desire, I ask of thee, O lord, that fierce celestial weapon wielded by thee and called *Brahmaçira*—that weapon of terrible prowess which destroyeth, at the end of the *Yuga* the entire universe—that weapon by help of which, O god of gods, I may, under thy grace, obtain victory in the terrible conflict which shall take place between myself (on one side), and Karna and Bhishma and Kripa and Drona (on the other)—that weapon by which I may consume in battle Dānavas and Rākshasas and evil spirits and Piçāchas and Gandharvas and Nāgas—that weapon which when hurled with *Mantras* produceth darts by thousands and fierce-looking maces and arrows like snakes of virulent poison, and by means of which I may fight with Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and Karna of ever abusive tongue! O illustrious destroyer of the eyes of Bhaga, even this is my foremost desire, *viz*, that I may be able to fight with them and obtain success!'

"Bhava replied, 'O powerful one, I will give thee that favorite weapon of mine called the *Pāçupata*! O son of Pāndu, thou art capable of holding, hurling, and withdrawing it! Neither the chief himself of the gods, nor Yama, nor the king of the Yakhas, nor Varuna, nor Vāyu, knoweth it. How could men know anything of it! But, O son of Prithā, this weapon should not be hurled without adequate cause; for if hurled at any foe of little might, it may destroy the whole universe. In the three worlds with all their mobile and immobile creatures, there is none who is incapable of being slain by this weapon. And it may be hurled by the mind, by the eye, by words, and by the bow!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words, the son of Prithā purified himself. And approaching the lord of the universe, with rapt attention, he said, 'Instruct me!' Mahādeva then imparted unto that best of Pāndu's sons the knowledge of that weapon looking like the embodiment of Yama, toge-

ther with all the mysteries about hurling and withdrawing it. And that weapon thence began to wait upon Arjuna as it did upon Shankara the lord of Umā. And Arjuna also gladly accepted it. And at that moment the whole earth, with its mountains and woods and trees and seas and forests and villages and towns and mines, trembled. And the sounds of conches and drums and trumpets by thousands began to be heard. And at that moment hurricanes and whirlwinds began to blow. And the gods and the Dānavas beheld that terrible weapon in its embodied form stay by the side of Arjuna of immeasurable energy. And whatever of evil there had been in the body of Fālguna of immeasurable energy, was all dispelled by the touch of the three-eyed deity. And the three-eyed-god then commanded Arjuna, saying, 'Go thou into heaven!' Arjuna then, O king, worshipping the god with bent head, gazed at him, with joined hands. Then the lord of all the dwellers of heaven, the deity of blazing splendour having his abode on mountain-breasts, the husband of Umā, the god of passions under complete control, the source of all blessings, Bhava, gave unto Arjuna, that foremost of men, the great bow called *Gāndiva* destructive of Dānavas and Piçāchas. And the god of gods, then leaving that blessed mountain with snowy plateaus and vales and caves, favorite resort of sky-ranging great Rishis, went up, accompanied by Umā, into the skies, in the sight of that foremost of men."

Thus ends the fortieth Section in the Kairāta of the Vana Parva.

Section XLI.

(Kairāta Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "The wielder of the Pināka, having the bull for his sign, thus disappeared in the very sight of the gazing son of Pāndu, like the sun setting in the sight of the world. Arjuna, that slayer of hostile heroes, wondered much at this, saying, 'O, I have seen the great god of gods! Fortunate, indeed, I am, and much favored, for I have both beheld and touched with my hand the three-eyed Hara, the

wielder of the Pināka, in his boon-giving form! I shall win success. I am already great. My enemies have already been vanquished by me. My purposes have been already achieved.' And while the son of Prithā, endued with immeasurable energy, was thinking thus, came to that place Varuna the god of waters, handsome and of the splendour of the *lapis lazuli*, accompanied by all kinds of aquatic creatures, and filling all the points of the horizon with a blazing effulgence. And accompanied by Rivers both male and female, and Nāgas, and Daityas, and Sādhyas, and inferior deities, Varuna, the controller and lord of all aquatic creatures, arrived at that spot. And there came also the lord Kuvera, of body resembling pure gold, seated on his car of great splendour, and accompanied by numerous Yakshas. And the lord of treasures, possessed of great beauty, came there to see Arjuna, illuminating the firmament with his effulgence. And there came also Yama himself, of great beauty, the powerful destroyer of all the worlds, accompanied by those lords of the creation—the Pitris—both embodied and disembodied. And the god of justice, of inconceivable soul, the son of Surya, the destroyer of all creatures, with the mace in hand, came there on his car, illuminating the three worlds with the regions of the Guhyakas, the Gāndharvas, and the Nāgas, like a second Surya as he riseth at the end of the Yuga. Having arrived there, they beheld from the effulgent and variegated summits of the great mountain Arjuna engaged in ascetic austerities. And there came in a moment the illustrious Shakra also, accompanied by his queen, seated on the back of (the celestial elephant) Airāvata, and surrounded also by all the deities. And in consequence of the white umbrella being held over his head, he looked like the moon amid fleecy clouds. And eulogised by Gandharvas, and Rishis endued with wealth of asceticism, the chief of the celestials alighted on a particular summit of the mountain, like a second sun. Then Yama, possessed of great intelligence, and fully conversant with virtue, who had occupied a summit on the south, in a voice deep as that of the clouds, said these auspicious words:—'Arjuna, behold us, the protectors of the worlds, arrive here! We will grant thee (spiri-

tual) vision, for thou deservest to behold us! Thou wert in thy former life a Rishi of immeasurable soul, known as Nara of great might. At the command, O child, of Brahmā, thou hast been born among men! O sinless one, by thee shall be vanquished in battle the highly virtuous grandsire of the Kurus—Bhishma of great energy—who is born of the Vasus! Thou shalt also defeat all the Kshatriyas of fiery energy commanded by the son of Bharadwāja in battle. Thou shalt also defeat those Dānavas of fierce prowess that have been born amongst men, and those Dānavas also that are called Nivātakavachas. And, O son of the Kuru race, O Dhananjaya, thou shalt also slay Karna of fierce prowess, who is even a portion of my father Surya, of energy celebrated throughout the worlds. And, O son of Kunti, O smiter of all foes, thou shalt also slay all the portions of celestials and Dānavas and the Rākshasas that have been incarnate on earth! And slain by thee, these shall attain to the regions earned by them according to their acts. And, O Fālguna, the fame of thy achievements will last for ever in the world: thou hast gratified Mahādeva himself in conflict! Thou shalt, with Vishnu himself, lighten the burden of the earth! O, accept this weapon of mine —the mace I wield—incapable of being baffled by any body! With this weapon thou wilt achieve great deeds!"

Vaisampāyana continued. "O Janamejaya, the son of Prithā then received from Yama that weapon duly, along with the *Mantras* and rites, and the mysteries of hurling and withdrawing it! Then Varuna the lord of all aquatic creatures, blue as the clouds, from a summit he had occupied on the west, uttered these words:—'O son of Prithā, thou art the foremost of Kshatriyas, and engaged in Kshatriya practices. O thou of large coppery eyes, behold me! I am Varuna the lord of waters! Hurled by me, my nooses are incapable of being resisted. O son of Kunti, accept of me these *Vāruna* weapons along with the mysteries of hurling and withdrawing them! With these, O hero, in the battle that ensued of yore on account of Tārakā (the wife of Vrihaspati), thousands of mighty Daityas were seized and tied! Accept them of me! Even if Yama himself be thy foe, with these in thy hands,

he will not be able to escape from thee! When thou wilt, armed with these, range over the field of battle, the land, beyond doubt, will be destitute of Kshatriyas!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "After both Varuna and Yama had given away their celestial weapons, the lord of treasures having his home on the heights of Kailāsa, then spake:—'O son of Pāndu, O thou of great might and wisdom, I too have been pleased with thee! And this meeting with thee giveth me as much pleasure as a meeting with Krishna! * O wielder of the bow with the left hand, O thou of mighty arms, thou wert a god before, eternal (as other gods)! In ancient *Kalpas*, thou hadst every day gone through ascetic austerities along with us! O best of men, I grant thee celestial vision! O thou of mighty arms, thou wilt defeat even invincible Daityas and Dānavas! Accept of me also, without loss of time, an excellent weapon! With this thou wilt be able to consume the ranks of Dhritarāshtra. Take then this favorite weapon of mine called *Antardhāna*. Endued with energy and prowess and spendour, it is capable of sending the foe to sleep. When the illustrious Shankara slew Tripura, even this was the weapon which he shot and by which many mighty Asuras were consumed! O thou of invincible prowess, I take it up for giving it to thee! Endued with the dignity of the Meru, thou art competent to hold this weapon!'

"After these words had been spoken, the Kuru prince Arjuna, endued with great strength, duly received from Kuvera that celestial weapon. Then the chief of the celestials, addressing Prithā's son of white deeds in sweet words, said, in a voice deep as that of the clouds or the kettle-drum, 'Thou mighty-armed son of Kunti, thou art an ancient god! Thou hast already achieved the highest success, and acquired the status of a god! But, O repressor of foes, thou hast yet to accomplish the purposes of the gods! Thou must ascend to heaven! Therefore, prepare thou, O hero of great splendour! My own car with Mātali as charioteer will soon descend on the earth. Taking thee, O Kaurava, to heaven, I will grant thee there all my celestial weapons!'

* *Ajita*=Krishna.

"Beholding those protectors of the worlds assembled together on the heights of Himavat, Dhananjaya the son of Kunti wondered much. Endued with great energy, he then duly worshipped the assembled *Lokapālas*, with words, water, and fruits! The celestials then returning that worship, went away. And the gods, capable of going everywhere at will, and endued with the speed of the mind, returned to the places whence they had come.

"That bull among men—Arjuna—having obtained weapons thus, was filled with pleasure. And he regarded himself as one whose desires had been fulfiled and who was crowned with success."

Thus ends the forty-first Section in the Kairāta of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XLII.

(Indralokagamana Parva.)

Vaisampāyana said. "After the Lokapālas had gone away, Arjuna—that slayer of all foes—began to think, O monarch, of the car of Indra! And as Gudākesha gifted with great intelligence was thinking of it, the car endued with great effulgence and guided by Mātali, came dividing the clouds and illuminating the firmament and filling the entire welkin with its rattle deep as the roar of mighty masses of clouds. Swords, and missiles of terrible forms, and maces of frightful description, and winged darts of celestial splendour, and lightnings of the brightest effulgence, and thunderbolts, and *Tutāgudās** furnished with wheels and worked with atmospheric expansion and producing sounds loud as the roar of great masses of clouds, were on that car. And there were also on that car fierce and huge-bodied *Nāgas* with fiery mouths, and heaps of stones white as the fleecy clouds. And the car was drawn by ten

---

* Evidently canon. There are other passages in the *Mahābhārata* pointing to this engine of destruction being known to the Hindus of this period, if, indeed, the whole passage is not an interpolation.

thousand horses of golden hue, endued with the speed of the wind. And furnished with powers of illusion, the car was drawn with such speed that the eye could hardly mark its progress. And Arjuna saw on that car the flag-staff called *Vaijayanta*, of blazing effulgence, resembling in hue the emerald or the dark-blue lotus, and decked with golden ornaments, and straight as the bamboo. And beholding a charioteer decked in gold seated on that car, the mighty-armed son of Prithā regarded it as belonging to the celestials. And while Arjuna was occupied with his thoughts regarding the car, the charioteer Mātali, bending himself after descending from the car, addressed him, saying, 'O lucky son of Shakra, Shakra himself wisheth to see thee! Ascend thou without loss of time this car that hath been sent by Indra! The chief of the immortals, thy father—that god of an hundred sacrifices—hath commanded me, saying,—*Bring the son of Kunti hither. Let the gods behold him!*—And Shakra himself, surrounded by the celestials and Rishis and Gandharvas and Apsaras, waiteth to behold thee! At the command of the chastiser of Pāka, therefore, ascend thou with me from this to the region of the celestials! Thou wilt return after obtaining weapons!'

"Arjuna replied, 'O Mātali, mount thou without loss of time this excellent car, a car that cannot be attained even by hundreds of Rājasuya and Horse sacrifices! Even kings of great prosperity, who have performed great sacrifices distinguished by large gifts (to Brāhmanas), even gods and Dānavas are not competent to ride this car. He that hath not ascetic merit is not competent to even see or touch this car, far less to ride on it. O blessed one, after thou hast ascended it, and after the horses have become still, I will ascend it, like a virtuous man stepping into the high-road of honesty!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Mātali the charioteer of Shakra, hearing these words of Arjuna, soon mounted the car and controlled the horses. Arjuna then, with a cheerful heart, purified himself by a bath in the Ganges. And the son of Kunti then duly repeated (inaudibly) his customery prayers. He then, duly and according to the ordinance, gratified the *Pitris* with oblations of water. And, lastly, he commenced to

invoke the Mandara *—that king of mountains—saying, 'O mountain, thou art ever the refuge of holy, heaven-seeking *Munis* of virtuous conduct and behaviour. It is through thy grace, O mountain, that Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas attain heaven, and their anxieties gone, sport with the celestials! O king of mountains, O mountain, thou art the asylum of *Munis*, and thou holdest on thy breast numerous sacred shrines! Happily have I dwelt on thy heights! I leave thee now, bidding thee farewell! Oft have I seen thy table-lands and bowers, thy springs and brooks, and the sacred shrines on thy breast! I have also eaten the savoury fruits growing on thee, and have slaked my thirst with draughts of perfumed water oozing from thy body! I have also drunk the water of thy springs, sweet as *Amrita* itself. O mountain, as a child sleepeth happily on the lap of his father, so have I, O king of mountains, O exalted one, sported on thy breast echoing with the notos of Apsaras and the chaunting of the Vedas! O mountain, every day have I lived happily on thy table-lands! Thus having bidden farewell to the mountain, that slayer of hostile heroes —Arjuna—blazing like the Sun himself, ascended the celestial car. And the Kuru prince, gifted with great intelligence, with a glad heart coursed through the firmament on that celestial car effulgent as the sun and of extraordinary achievements. And after he had become invisible to the mortals of the earth, † he beheld thousands of cars of extraordinary beauty. And in that region there was no sun or moon or fire to give light, but it blazed in light of its own, generated by virtue and ascetic merit. And those brilliant regions that are seen from the earth in the form of stars, like lamps (in the sky)—so small in consequence of their distance,

* The mountain which served as the churning pole during the churning of the ocean by the gods and the Asuras. Its geographical situation is difficult to ascertain. From the invocation of Arjuna, it would appear to be some peak connected with the mountain chains of the Himalayas.

† *Bhumichārinām* for *Dharmachārinām* is unquestionably the better reading.

though very large—were beheld by the son of Pāndu, stationed in their respective places, full of beauty and effulgence, and blazing with splendour all their own.* And there he beheld royal sages crowned with ascetic success, and heroes who had yielded up their lives in battle, and those that had acquired heaven by their ascetic austerities, by hundereds upon hundreds. And there were also Gandharvas, of bodies blazing like the sun, by thousands upon thousands, as also Guhyakas and Rishis and numerous tribes of Apsaras. And beholding those self-effulgent regions, Fālguna became filled with wonder, and made enquiries of Mātali. And Mātali also gladly replied unto him, saying, 'These, O son of Prithā, are virtuous persons, stationed in their respective places. It is these whom thou hast seen, O exalted one, as stars, from the earth !' Then Arjuna saw standing at the gates of (Indra's region) the handsome and ever-victorious elephant—Airāvata—furnished with four tusks, and resembling the mountain of Kailāsa with its summits. And coursing along that path of the *Siddhas*, that foremost of the Kurus and the sons of Pāndu, sat in beauty like Māndhātā—that best of kings. Endued with eyes like lotus leaves, he passed through the region set apart for virtuous kings. And the celebrated Arjuna having thus passed through successive regions of heaven, at last beheld *Amarāvati* the city of Indra."

Thus ends the forty-second Section in the Indralokagamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XLIII.

(Indralokagamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "And the city of Indra which Arjuna saw was delightful and was the resort of *Siddhas* and *Chāranas*. And it was adorned with the flowers of every season, and with sacred trees of all kinds. And he beheld also the celestial gardens called *Nandana*—the favorite resort of

* Passages such as these furnish occasional glimpses of the astronomical knowledge of the ancient Hindus.

Apsaras. And fanned by the fragrant breezes charged with the farina of sweet-scented flowers, the trees with their load of celestial blossoms seemed to welcome him amongst them. And the region was such that none could behold it who had not gone through ascetic austerities, or who had not poured libations on fire. It was a region for the virtuous alone, and not for those who had turned their back on the field of battle. And none were competent to see it who had not performed sacrifices or observed rigid vows, or who were without a knowledge of the Vedas, or who had not bathed in sacred waters, or who were not distinguished for sacrifices and gifts. And none were competent to see it who were disturbers of sacrifices, or who were low, or who drank intoxicating liquors, or who were violators of their preceptors' bed, or who were eaters of (unsanctified) meat, or who were wicked. And having beheld those celestial gardens resounding with celestial music, the strong-armed son of Pāndu entered the favorite city of Indra. And he beheld there celestial cars by thousands, capable of going everywhere at will, stationed in proper places. And he saw tens of thousands of such cars moving in every direction. And fanned by pleasant breezes charged with the perfumes of flowers, the son of Pāndu was praised by Apsaras and Gandharvas. And the celestials then, accompanied by the Gandharvas and Siddhas and great Rishis, cheerfully reverenced Prithā's son of white deeds. Benedictions were poured upon him, accompanied by the sounds of celestial music. The strong-armed son of Prithā then heard around him the music of conches and drums. And praised all around, the son of Prithā then went, at the command of Indra, to that large and extensive starry way called by the name of *Suravithi.* * There he met with the *Sādhyas,* the *Viçwas,* the *Marutas,* the twin *Aswins,* the *Adityas,* the *Vasus,* the *Rudras,* the *Brahmarshis* of great splendour, and numerous royal sages with Dilipa at their head, and Tumvuru and

* *Vipulum nakshatra-mārgam.* Lit., large starry way. Probably, the Milky way. *Suravithi* also is, lit., the celestial way or road of the celestials.

Nārada, and that couple of Gandharvas known by the names of Hāhā and Huhu. And the Kuru prince—that chastiser of foes—having met and duly saluted them, last of all beheld the chief of the celestials—the god of an hundred sacrifices. Then the strong-armed son of Prithā, alighting from the car, approached the lord himself of the gods—his father—that chastiser of Pāka. * And a beautiful white umbrella furnished with a golden staff was held over the chief of the celestials. And he was fanned with a *Chāmara* perfumed with celestial scents. And he was eulogised by many Gandharvas headed by *Viçwāvasu* and others, by bards and singers, and by foremost Brāhmanas chaunting *Rig* and *Yaju* hymns. And the mighty son of Kunti, approaching Indra, saluted him by bending his head to the ground. And Indra thereupon embraced him with his round and plump arms. And taking his hand, Shakra made him sit by him on a portion of his own seat, that sacred seat which was worshipped by gods and Rishis. And the lord of the celestials—that slayer of hostile heroes—smelt the head of Arjuna bending in humility, and even took him upon his lap. And seated on Shakra's seat at the command of that god of a thousand eyes, Prithā's son of immeasurable energy began to blaze in splendour like a second Indra. And moved by affection, the slayer of Vritra, consoling Arjuna, touched his beautiful face with his own perfumed hands. And the wielder of the thunderbolt, patting and rubbing gently again and again with his own hands which bore the marks of the thunderbolt the handsome and large arms of Arjuna which resembled a couple of golden columns and which were hard in consequence of drawing the bow-string and shooting arrows, began to console him. And the slayer of Vritra—the god of a thousand eyes—eying his son of curly locks smilingly and with eyes expanded with delight, seemed scarcely to be gratified. The more he gazed, the more he liked to gaze on. And seated on one seat, the father and

* This word is variously explained. We adhere to the supposition that *Pāka* was an Asura slain by Indra. Nilakantha has a learned note on it, though he ends by supposing that *Pāka* was an Asura.

son enhanced the beauty of the assembly, like the sun and moon beautifying the firmament together on the fourteenth day of the dark fortnight. And a band of Gandharvas headed by Tumvuru, skilled in music sacred and profane, * sang many verses in melodious notes. And Ghritāchi and Menakā and Rambhā and Purvachitti and Swayamprabhā and Urvaçi and Misrakeçi and Dandagauri and Varuthini and Gopāli and Sahajanyā and Kumbhayoni and Prajāgarā and Chitrasenā and Chitralekhā and Sahā and Madhuraswanā,—these and others by thousands, possessed of eyes like lotus leaves, who were employed in enticing the hearts of persons practising rigid austerities, danced there. And possessing slim waists and fair large hips, they began to perform various evolutions, shaking their deep bosoms, and casting their glances around, and exhibiting other attractive attitudes capable of stealing the hearts and resolutions and minds † of the spectators."

Thus ends the forty-third Section in the Indralokagamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XLIV.

(Indrâlokagamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "The gods and the Gandharvas then, understanding the wishes of Indra, procured an excellent *Arghya* and reverenced the son of Prithā in a hurry. And giving water to wash both his feet and face, they caused the prince to enter the palace of Indra. And thus worshipped, Jishnu continued to live in the abode of his father. And the son of Pāndu continued all the while to acquire celestial weapons, together with the means of withdrawing them. And he received from the hands of Shakra his favorite weapon of irresistible force, *viz*, the thunder-bolt, and those other weapons also, of tremendous roar, *viz*, the lightnings of heaven, whose

---

* *Gita* is profane music, while *Samä* is sacred music. So Nilakantha.

† *Chetas*, *Buddhi*, and *Manas*: Nilakantha explains the first as *Alochanātmikā*, the second as *Addhavasāyātmikā*, and the last as *Sankalpa-vikalpātmikā*. In the present connection, we think, he is right.

flashes are inferable from the appearance of clouds and (the dancing of) peacocks. * And the son of Pāndu, after he had obtained those weapons, recollected his brothers. At the command of Indra, however, he lived for full five years in heaven, surrounded by every comfort and luxury.

"After sometime, when Arjuna had obtained all the weapons, Indra addressed him in due time, saying, 'O Son of Kunti, learn thou music and dancing from Chitrasena ! Learn the instrumental music that is current among the celestials and which existeth not in the world of men, for, O son of Kunti, it will be to thy benefit !' And Purandara gave Chitrasena as a friend unto Arjuna. And the son of Prithā lived happily and in peace with Chitrasena. And Chitrasena instructed Arjuna all the while in music vocal and instrumental and in dancing. But the active Arjuna obtained no peace of mind, remembering the unfair play at dice of Shakuni the son of Suvala, and thinking with rage of Dusçāsana and his death. When, however, his friendship with Chitrasena had ripened fully, he at times learned the unrivalled dance and music practised among the Gandharvas. And at last, having learnt various kinds of dances and diverse species of music both vocal and instrumental, that slayer of hostile heroes obtained no peace of mind, remembering his brothers and mother Kunti."

Thus ends the forty-fourth Section in the Indralokagamana of the Vana Parva.

---

* The word in the text is *açani*, which is the thunder-bolt. A distinction, however, is always made between Indra's thunder-bolt and the thunder of the clouds. The latter is sometimes spoken of as lightning. In fact, wherever *vajra* and *açani* occur together, Nilakantha would explain them as "the thunder of Indra" and "the thunder or lightning of the clouds." A popular belief was extant among the ancient Hindus to the effect that whenever clouds appeared in the sky out of season, and peacocks danced, lightning must have fallen somewhere.

SECTION XLV.

(Indralokagamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "One day, knowing that Arjuna's glances were cast upon Urvaçi, Vāsava, calling Chitrasena to himself, addressed him in private, saying, 'O king of Gandharvas, I am pleased: go thou as my messenger to that foremost of Apsarās Urvaçi, and let her wait upon that tiger among men—Fālguna. Tell her, saying these words of mine,—As through my instrumentality Arjuna hath learnt all the weapons and other arts, worshipped by all, so shouldst thou make him conversant with the arts of acquitting one's self in female company.—' Thus addressed by Indra, the chief of the Gandharvas, in obedience to that command of Vāsava, soon went to Urvaçi—that foremost of Apsarās. And as he saw her, she recognised him and delighted him by the welcome she offered and the salutations she gave. And seated at ease he then smilingly addressed Urvaçi, who also was seated at ease, saying, 'Let it be known, O thou of fair hips, that I come hither despatched by the one sole lord of heaven, who asketh of thee a favor. He who is known amongst gods and men for his many inborn virtues, for his grace, behaviour, beauty of person, vows, and self-control; who is noted for might and prowess, and respected by the virtuous, and ready-witted; who is endued with genius and splendid energy, is of a forgiving temper, and without malice of any kind; who hath studied the four Vedas with their branches, and the *Upanishads*, and the Purānas also; who is endued with devotion to his preceptors and with intellect possessed of the eight attributes;* who by his abstinence, ability,

---

* (1) *Animā*, the power of reducing one's self infinitessimally, (2) *Laghimā*, the power of reaching the *ne plus ultra* of lightness,—(3) *Prāpti*, the capacity of going anywhere, (4) *Prākāmyam*, the fitness of attaining the fruition of every desire, (5) *Mahimā*, the power of changing shape at will, (6) *Içitwa*, lordship, (7) *Vaçitwa*, the capacity of subduing everybody, (8) *Kāmāvasāiyitā*, the power of realising every wish.

origin, and age, is alone capable of protecting the celestial regions like Maghavat himself; who is never boastful; who showeth proper respect to all; who beholdeth the minutest things as clearly as if those were gross and large; who is sweet-speeched; who showereth diverse kinds of food and drink on his friends and dependents; who is truthful, worshipped of all, eloquent, handsome, and without pride; who is kind to those devoted to him, and universally pleasing and dear to all; who is firm in promise; and who is equal to even Mahendra and Varuna in respect of every desirable attribute, *viz.* Arjuna is known to thee. O Urvaçi, know thou that that hero is to be made to taste the joys of heaven! Commanded by Indra, let him to day obtain thy feet! Do this, O amiable one, for Dhananjaya is inclined to thee!'

"Thus addressed, Urvaçi of faultless features assumed a smiling face, and receiving the words of the Gandharva with high respect, answered with a glad heart, saying, 'Hearing of the virtues that should adorn men, as unfolded by thee, I would bestow my favors upon any one who happened to possess them. Why should I not, then, choose Arjuna for a lover? At the command of Indra, and for my friendship for thee, and moved also by the numerous virtues of Fālguna, I am already under the influence of the god of love. Go thou, therefore, to the place thou desirest. I shall gladly go to Arjuna!'"

Thus ends the forty-fifth Section in the Indralokagamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XLVI.

(*Indralokagamana Parva continued.*)

Vaisampāyana said. "Having thus sent away the Gandharva successful in his mission, Urvaçi of luminous smiles, moved by the desire of possessing Fālguna, took a bath. And having performed her ablutions, she decked herself in charming ornaments and splendid garlands of celestial odour. And inflamed by the god of love, and her heart pierced through and through

by the shafts shot by Manmatha * keeping in view the beauty of Arjuna, and her imagination wholly taken up by the thoughts of Arjuna, she mentally sported with him on a wide and excellent bed laid over with celestial sheets. And when the twilight had deepened and the moon was up, that Apsarā of high hips set out for the mansions of Arjuna. And in that mood, and with her crisp, soft, and long braids decked with bunches of flowers, she looked extremely beautiful. With her beauty and grace, and the charm of the motions of her eye-brows and of her soft accents, and her own moon-like face, she seemed to tread, challenging the moon himself. And as she proceeded, her deep, finely tapering bosoms, decked with a chain of gold and adorned with celestial unguents and smeared with fragrant sandal paste, began to tremble. And in consequence of the weight of her bosoms, she was forced to slightly stoop forward at every step, bending her waist exceedingly beautiful with three folds. And her loins of faultless shape, the elegant abode of the god of love, furnished with fair and high and round hips, and wide at their lower part as a hill, and decked with chains of gold, and capable of shaking the saintship of anchorets, being decked with thin attire, appeared highly graceful. And her feet with fair suppressed ankles, and possessing flat soles and straight toes of the color of burnished copper and dorsa high and curved like tortoise backs and marked by the wearing of ornaments furnished with rows of little bells, looked exceedingly handsome. And exhilarated with a little liquor which she had taken, and excited by desire, and moving in diverse attitudes, and expressing a sensation of delight, she looked more handsome than usual. And though heaven abounded with many wonderful objects, yet when Urvaçi proceeded in this manner, the *Siddhas* and *Chāranas* and Gandharvas regarded her to be the handsomest object they had cast their eyes upon. And the upper half of her body clad in an attire of fine texture and cloudy hues, she

* The god of love or lust. He has various names. Unlike the Cupid of Greek mythology, the Hindu Cupid is a grown-up person, owning a wife called Rati. He is popularly represented also as the son of Krishna.

looked resplendent like a digit of the moon in the firmament shrouded by fleecy clouds. And endued with the speed of the winds or the mind, she of luminous smiles soon reached the mansion of Fālguna the son of Pāndu. And, O best of men, Urvaçi of beautiful eyes, having arrived at the gate of Arjuna's abode, sent word through the keeper in attendance. And (on receiving permission), she soon entered that brilliant and charming palace. But, O monarch, upon beholding her at night in his mansion, Arjuna with a fear-stricken heart, stepped up to receive her with respect. And as soon as he saw her, the son of Prithā, from modesty, closed his eyes. And saluting her, he offered the Apsarā such worship as is offered unto a superior. And Arjuna said, 'O thou foremost of the foremost of the Apsarās, I reverence thee by bending my head down! O lady, let me know thy commands! I wait upon thee as thy servant!'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Hearing these words of Fālguna, Urvaçi became deprived of her senses. And she soon represented unto Arjuna all that had passed between her and the Gandharva Chitrasena. And she said, 'O best of men, I shall tell thee all that hath passed between me and Chitrasena, and why I have come hither! On account of thy coming here, O Arjuna, Mahendra had convened a large and charming assembly, in which celestial festivities were held. Unto that assembly came, O best of men, the Rudras and the Adityas and the Aswins and the Vasus. And there came also numbers of great Rishis and royal sages and Siddhas and Chāranas and Yakshas and great Nāgas. And, O thou of expansive eyes, the members of the assembly resplendant as fire or the sun or the moon, having taken their seats according to rank, honor, and prowess, O son of Shakra, the Gandharvas began to strike the *Vinas* and sing charming songs of celestial melody. And, O perpetuator of the Kuru race, the principal Apsarās also commenced to dance! Then, O son of Prithā, thou hadst looked on me only with a stead-fast gaze. When that assembly of the celestials brake, commanded by thy father the gods went away to their respective places. And the principal Apsarās also went away to their abodes,

and others also, O slayer of foes, commanded by thy father and obtaining his leave! It was then that Chitrasena was sent to me by Shakra, and arriving at my abode, O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, he addressed me, saying,—O thou of the fairest complexion, I have been sent unto thee by the chief of the celestials! Do thou something that would be agreeable to Mahendra and myself and to thyself also! O thou of fair hips, seek thou to please Arjuna, who is brave in battle even like Shakra himself, and who is always possessed of magnanimity.—Even these, O son of Prithā, were his words! Thus, O sinless one, commanded by him and thy father also, I come to thee in order to wait upon thee, O slayer of foes! My heart hath been attractted by thy virtues, and I am already under the influence of the god of love! And, O hero, even this is my wish, and I have cherished it for ever!' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "While in heaven, hearing her speak in this strain, Arjuna was overcome with bashfulness. And shutting his ears with his hands, he said, 'O blessed lady, fie on my sense of hearing, when thou speakest thus to me! For, O thou of beautiful face, thou art certainly equal in my estimation unto the wife of a superior! Even as Kunti of high fortune, or Sachi the queen of Indra, art thou to me, O auspicious one: of this there is no doubt. That I had gazed particularly at thee, O blessed one,is true. There was a reason for it. I shall truly tell it to thee: listen, O thou of luminous smiles! In the assembly I gazed at thee with eyes expanded in delight, thinking—*Even this blooming lady is the mother of the Paurava race.* O blessed Apsarā, it behoveth thee not to entertain other feelings towards me, for thou art superior to my superiors, being the parent of my race.'

"Hearing these words of Arjuna, Urvaçi answered, saying, 'O son of the chief of the celestials, we Apsarās are free and unconfined in our choice! It behoveth thee not, therefore, to esteem me as thy superior! The sons and grand-sons of Puru's race, that have come hither in consequence of ascetic merit, do all sport with us, without incurring any sin. Relent,

therefore, O hero, it behoveth thee not to send me away. I am burning with desire. I am devoted to thee. Accept me, O thou giver of proper respect.'

"Arjuna replied, 'O beautiful lady of features perfectly faultless, listen, I truly tell thee! Let the four directions and the transverse directions, let also the gods listen! O sinless one, as Kunti, or Mādri, or Shachi, is to me, so art thou, the parent of my race, an object of reverance to me. Return, O thou of the fairest complexion: I bend my head unto thee, and prostrate myself at thy feet. Thou deservest my worship, as my own mother; and it behoveth thee to protect me as a son.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Thus addressed by Pārtha, Urvaçi was deprived of her senses by wrath. Trembling with rage, and contracting her brows, she cursed Arjuna, saying,—'Since thou disregardest a woman come to thy mansion at the command of thy father and of her own motion—a woman, besides, who is pierced by the shafts of *Kāma*, therefore, O Pārtha, thou shalt have to pass thy time among famales unregarded, and as a dancer, and destitute of manhood, and scorned as a eunuch.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "Having cursed Arjuna thus, Urvaçi's lips still quivered in wrath, herself breathing heavily all the while. And she soon returned to her own abode. And that slayer of foes, Arjuna also sought Chitrasena without loss of time. And having found him, he told him all that had passed between him and Urvaçi in the night. And he told Chitrasena everything as it had happened, repeatedly referring to the curse pronounced upon him. And Chitrasena also represented everything unto Shakra. And Harivāhana, calling his son unto himself in private, and consoling him in sweet words, smilingly said, 'O thou best of beings, having obtained thee, O child, Prithā hath today become a truly blessed mother. O mighty-armed one, thou hast now vanquished even Rishis by thy patience and self-control. But, O giver of proper respect, the curse that Urvaçi hath denounced on thee will be to thy benefit, O child, and stand thee in good stead. O sinless one, ye will have on earth to pass the thirteenth

year (of your exile), unknown to all. It is then that thou shalt suffer the curse of Urvaçi. And having passed one year as a dancer without manhood, thou shalt regain thy power on the expiration of the term.'

"Thus addressed by Shakra, that slayer of hostile heroes, Fālguna, experienced great delight and ceased to think of the curse. And Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu sported in the regions of heaven with the Gandharva Chitrasena of great celebrity.

"The desires of the man that listeneth to this history of the son of Pāndu never run after lustful ends. The foremost of men, by listening to this account of the awfully pure conduct of Fālguna the son of the lord of the celestials, become void of pride and arrogance and wrath and other faults, and ascending to heaven, sport there in bliss."

Thus ends the forty-sixth Section in the Indralokagamana of the Vana Parva.

Section XLVII

(*Indralokagamana Parva continued.*)

Vaisampāyana said. "One day, the great Rishi Lomaça in course of his wanderings, went to the abode of Indra, desirous of beholding the lord of the celestials. And the great Muni, having approached the chief of the gods, bowed to him, respectfully. And he beheld the son of Pāndu occupying half the seat of Vāsava. And worshipped by the great Rishis, that foremost of Brāhmanas sat on an excellent seat at the desire of Shakra. And beholding Arjuna seated on Indra's seat, the Rishi began to think as to how Arjuna who was a Kshatriya had attained to the seat of Shakra himself. What acts of merit had been performed by him and what regions conquered by him (by ascetic merit), that he had obtained a seat that was worshipped by the gods themselves? And as the Rishi was employed with these thoughts, Shakra, the slayer of Vritra, came to know of them. And having known them, the lord of Shachi addressed Lomaça with a smile and

said, 'Listen, O *Brahmarshi*, about what is now passing in thy mind! This one is no mortal, though he hath taken his birth among men. O great Rishi, the mighty-armed hero is even my son born of Kunti. He hath come hither, in order to acquire weapons for some purpose. Alas! dost thou not recognise him as an ancient Rishi of the highest merit? Listen to me, O Brāhmana, as I tell thee who he is, and whatfor he hath come to me! Those ancient and excellent Rishis who were known by the names of Nara and Nārāyana are, know, O Brāhmana, none else than Hrishikeça and Dhananjaya. And those Rishis, celebrated throughout the three worlds, and known by the names of Nara and Nārāyana have, for the accomplishment of a certain purpose, been born on earth—that region for the acquisition of virtue. That sacred asylum which even gods and illustrious Rishis are not competent to behold, and which is known throughout the worlds by the name of Vadari, and situate by the source of the Ganges which is worshipped by the Siddhas and the Chāranas, was the abode, O Brāhmana, of Vishnu and Jishnu. Those Rishis of blazing splendour have, O *Brahmarshi*, at my desire, been born on earth, and endued with mighty energy, will lighten the burden thereof. Besides this, there are certain Asuras known as Nivātakavachas, who, proud of the boon they have acquired, are employed in doing us injuries. Boastful of their strength, they are even now planning the destruction of the gods, for, having received a boon, they no longer regard the gods. Those fierce and mighty Dānavas live in the nether regions. Even all the celestials together are incapable of fighting with them. The blessed Vishnu—the slayer of Madhu—he, indeed, who is known on earth as Kapila, and whose glance alone, O exalted one, destroyed the illustrious sons of Sagara, when they approached him with loud sounds in the bowels of the earth,—that illustrious and invincible Hari is capable, O Brāhmana, of doing us a great service. Either he or Pārtha or both may do us that great service, without doubt. Verily as the illustrious Hari had slain the Nāgas in the great lake, he, at sight alone, is capable of slaying those Asuras called the Nivātakavachas, along with their followers. But the slayer

of Madhu should not be urged when the task is insignificant. A mighty mass of energy that he is, if it swelleth to increasing proportions, it may consume the whole universe. This Arjuna also is competent to encounter them all, and the hero having slain them in battle, will go back to the world of men. Go thou at my request to the earth. Thou wilt behold the brave Yudhishthira living in the woods of Kāmyaka. And from me tell thou the virtuous Yudhishthira of unbaffled prowess in battle, that he should not be anxious on account of Fālguna, for that hero will return to earth a thorough master of weapons, for without sanctified prowess of arms, and without skill in weapons, he would not be able to encounter Bhishma and Drona and others in battle. Thou wilt also represent unto Yudhishthira that the illustrious and mighty-armed Gudākeça, having obtained weapons, hath also mastered the science of celestial dancing and music both instrumental and vocal. And thou wilt also tell him,—O king of men, O slayer of foes, thyself also, accompanied by all thy brothers, should see the various sacred shrines. For having bathed in different sacred waters, thou wilt be cleansed from thy sins, and the fever of thy heart will abate. And then thou wilt be able to enjoy thy kingdom, happy in the thought that thy sins have been washed off.—And, O foremost of Brāhmanas, endued with ascetic power, it behoveth thee also to protect Yudhishthira during his wanderings over the earth. Fierce Rākshasas ever live in mountain fastnesses and rugged steppes. Protect thou the king from those cannibals.'

"After Mahendra had spoken thus unto Lomaça, Vibhatshu also reverently addressed that Rishi, saying, 'Protect thou ever the son of Pāndu. O best of men, let the king, O great Rishi, protected by thee, visit the various places of pilgrimage, and give away unto Brāhmanas in charity.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "The mighty ascetic Lomaça, having answered both saying, 'So be it,' set out for the earth, desirous of arriving at Kāmyaka. And having arrived at those woods, he beheld that slayer of foes and son of Kunti, king Yudhishthira the just, surrounded by ascetics and his younger brothers."

Thus ends the forty-seventh Section in the Indralokagamana of the Vana Par va.

SECTION XLVIII.

(Indralokagamana Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said. "These feats of Prithā's son endued with immeasurable energy, were certainly marvellous. O Brāhmana, what did Dhritarāshtra of great wisdom say, when he heard of them?"

Vaisampāyana said. "Amvikā's son, king Dhritarāshtra, having heard of Arjuna's arrival and stay at Indra's abode, from Dwaipāyana, that foremost of Rishis, spake unto Sanjaya, saying, 'O charioteer, dost thou know in detail the acts of the intelligent Arjuna, of which I have heard from beginning to end? O charioteer, my wretched and sinful son is even now engaged in a policy of the most vulgar kind. Of wicked soul, he will certainly depopulate the earth. That illustrious person whose words even in jest are true, and who hath Dhananjaya to fight for him, is sure to win the three worlds. Who that is even beyond the influence of Death and Decay will be able to stay before Arjuna, when he will scatter his barbed and sharp-pointed arrows whetted on stone? My wretched sons, who have to fight with the invincible Pāndavas, are, indeed, all doomed. Reflecting day and night, I see not the warrior amongst us that is able to stay in battle before the wielder of the *Gāndiva.* If Drona, or Karna, or even Bhishma, advance against him in battle, a great calamity is likely to befall the earth. But even in that case, I see not the way to our success. Karna is kind and forgetful. The preceptor Drona is old, and the teacher (of Arjuna.) Arjuna, however, is wrathful, and strong, and proud, and of firm and steady prowess. As all these warriors are invincible, a terrible fight will take place between them. All of them are heroes skilled in weapons and of great reputation. They would not wish for the sovereignty of the

world, if it was to be purchased by defeat. * Indeed, peace will be restored only on the death of these or of Fālguna. The slayer of Arjuna, however, existeth not, nor doth one that can vanquish him. Oh, how shall that wrath of his which hath myself for its object be pacified! Equal unto the chief of the celestials, that hero gratified Agni at *Khāndava*, † and vanquished all the monarchs of the earth on the occasion of the great *Rājasuya*. O Sanjaya, the thunder-bolt falling on the mountain-top, leaveth a portion unconsumed; but the shafts, O child, that are shot by Kiriti ‡ leave not a rack behind. As the rays of the sun heat this mobile and immobile universe, so will the shafts shot by Arjuna's hands scorch my sons. It seemeth to me that the *Chamus* $ of the Bhāratas, terrified at the clatter of Arjuna's chariot-wheels, are already broken through in all directions. Vidhātri hath created Arjuna as an all-consuming Destroyer. He stayeth in battle as a foe, vomitting and scattering swarms of arrows. Who is there that will defeat him?'"

Thus ends the forty-eighth Section in the Indralokagamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XLIX.

(*Indralokagamana Parva continued.*)

"Sanjaya said. 'That which hath been uttered by thee, O king, with respect to Duryodhana is all true. Nothing that thou hast said, O lord of earth, is untrue. The Pāndavas

---

* A different reading occurs here;—*Vāncchantyaparājitās* for *na vāncheran parājitās*, which last we have adopted. If the first reading were accepted, the sense would be "all of them wish for the sovereignty of the world *undefeated* in battle." This is certainly not so emphatic as the other form.

† By assisting at its conflagration against the whole celestial host.

‡ From *Kirita*, crown. Arjuna was so called from the crown he always wore in battle. He received it in gift from Indra, his father.

$ A division of an army. All these terms have been explained in the *Adi Parva*.

of immeasurable energy have been filled with wrath at the sight of Krishnā—their wedded wife of pure fame—brought in the midst of the assembly. Hearing also those cruel words of Dusçāsana and Karna, they have been so incensed, O king, that they will not, I ween, forgive (the Kurus) on any account.* I have heard, O king, how Arjuna hath gratified in battle by means of his bow the god of gods—Sthānu of eleven forms. The illustrious lord of all the gods—Kaparddin himself—desirous of testing Fālguna, fought with him, having assumed the guise of a *Kirāta.* And there it was that the *Lokapālas,* in order to give away their weapons unto that bull of the Kuru race, showed themselves unto him of undeteriorating prowess. What other man on earth, except Fālguna, would strive to have a sight of these gods in their own forms? And, O king, who is there that will weaken in battle Arjuna, who could not be weakened by Maheswara himself possessed of eight forms? Thy sons, having dragged Draupadi, and thereby incensed the sons of Pāndu, have brought this frightful and horrifying calamity over themselves. Beholding Duryodhana showing both his thighs unto Draupadi, Bhima said with quivering lips,—*Wretch! those thighs of thine will I smash with my fierce-descending mace, on the expiration of thirteen years.*†—All the sons of Pāndu are the foremost of smiters; all of them are of immeasurable energy; all of them are well versed in every kind of weapons. For these, they are incapable of being vanquished even by the gods. Incensed at the insult offered to their wedded wife, Prithā's sons, urged by wrath, will, I ween, slay all thy sons in battle.'

"Dhritarāshtra said. 'O charioteer, what mischief hath been done by Karna uttering those cruel words to the sons of Pāndu! Was not the enmity sufficient that was provoked by bringing Krishnā into the assembly? How can my wicked

---

* Some editions read *Jugupsyanti* for *Kshamsyanti,* which last we take to be the true reading.

† We have left out the word *durdyutadevinas,* which means "desirous of victory by means of unfair gambling," only to avoid circumlocution in Bhima's threat.

sons live, whose eldest brother and preceptor walketh not in the path of righteousness? Seeing me void of eye-sight, and incapable of exerting myself actively, my wretched son, O charioteer, believeth me to be a fool, and listeneth not to my words. Those wretches also that are his counsellors, *viz.*, Karna and Sauvala and others, always pander to his vices, as he is incapable of understanding things rightly. The shafts that Arjuna of immeasurable prowess may lightly shoot, are capable of consuming all my sons, leave alone those shafts that he will shoot, impelled by anger. The arrows urged by the might of Arjuna's arms, and shot from his large bow, and inspired with *mantras* capable of converting them into celestial weapons, can chastise the celestials themselves. He who hath for his counsellor and protector and friend that smiter of sinful men—the lord of the three worlds—Hari himself—encountereth nothing that he cannot conquer. This, O Sanjaya, is most marvellous in Arjuna that, as we have heard, he hath been clapsed by Mahādeva in his arms. That also which Fālguna, assisted by Dāmodara, did of old towards helping Agni in the conflagration of *Khāndava*, hath been witnessed by all the world. When, therefore, Bhima and Pārtha* and Vāsudeva of the Sātwata race become enraged, surely my sons along with their friends and the Sauvalas are all unequal to fight with them.'"

Thus ends the forty-ninth Section in the Indralokagamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION L.

(Indralokagamana Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said. "Having sent the heroic sons of Pāndu into exile, these lamentations, O *Muni*, of Dhritarāshtra were perfectly futile. Why did the king permit his foolish son Duryodhana to thus incense those mighty warriors, the sons

---

* Grammatically, this the name by which every one of the three sons of Prithā may be called. This name, however, by way of distinction was bestowed on both Arjuna (as here) and Yudhishthira.

of Pāndu? Tell us now, O Brāhmana, what was the food of the sons of Pāndu, while they lived in the woods? Was it of the wilderness, or was it the produce of cultivation?"

Vaisampàyana said. "Those bulls among men, collecting the produce of the wilderness and killing the deer with pure arrows, first didicated a portion of the food to the Brāhmanas, and themselves ate the rest. For, O king, while those heroes wielding large bows lived in the woods, they were followed by Brāhmanas of both classes, *viz.*, those worshipping with fire and those worshipping without it. And there were ten thousand illustrious *Snātaka* Brāhmanas, all conversant with the means of salvation, whom Yudhishthira supported in the woods. And killing with arrows *Rurus** and the black deer and other kinds of clean animals of the wilderness, he gave them unto those Brāhmanas. And no one that lived with Yudhishthira looked pale or ill, or was lean or weak, or was melancholy or terrified. And the chief of the Kurus —the virtuous king Yudhishthira—maintained his brothers as if they were his sons, and his relatives, as if they were his uterine brothers. And Draupadi of pure fame fed her husbands and the Brāhmanas, as if she was their mother; and last of all took her food herself. And the king himself wending towards the east, and Bhima, towards the south, and the twins, towards the west and the north, daily killed with bow in hand the deer of the forest, for the sake of meat. And it was thus that the Pāndavas lived for five years in the woods of *Kāmyaka*, in anxiety at the absence of Arjuna, and engaged all the while in study and prayers and sacrifices."

Thus ends the fiftieth Section in the Indralokagamana of the Vana Parva.

---

* A kind of deer.

Section LI.

(Indralokagamana Parva continued.)

Vaisampāyana said. "That bull among men—Dhritarāshtra—the son of Amvikā, having heard of this wonderful way of life—so above that of men—of the sons of Pāndu, was filled with anxiety and grief. And overwhelmed with melancholy and sighing heavily and hot, that monarch, addressing his charioteer Sanjaya, said, 'O charioteer, a moment's peace I have not, either during the day or the night, thinking of the terrible misbehaviour of my sons arising out of their past gambling, and thinking also of the heroism, the patience, the high intelligence, the unbearable prowess, and the extraordinary love unto one another, of the sons of Pāndu. Amongst the Pāndavas, the illustrious Nakula and Sahadeva, of celestial origin and equal unto the chief himself of the celestials in splendour, are invincible in battle. They are firm in the wielding of weapons, capable of shooting at a long distance, resolute in battle, of remarkable lightness of hand, of wrath that is not easily quelled, possessed of great steadiness, and endued with activity. Possessed of the prowess of lions and unbearable as the Aswins themselves, when they will come to the field of battle with Bhima and Arjuna in front, I see, O Sanjaya, that my soldiers will all be slain without a remnant. Those mighty warriors of celestial origin, unrivalled in battle by anybody, filled with rage at the remembrance of that insult to Draupadi, will show no forgiveness. The mighty warriors of the Vrishnis also, and the Pānchālas of great energy, and the sons of Prithā themselves, led by Vāsudeva of unbaffled prowess, will blast my legions. O charioteer, all the warriors on my side assembled together, are not competent to bear the impetus of the Vrishnis alone when commanded by Rāma and Krishna. And amongst them will move that great warrior Bhima of terrible prowess, armed with his iron mace held on high and capable of slaying every hero. And high above the din will be heard the twang of the *Gāndiva* loud as the thunder of heaven. The impetus of

Bhima's mace and the loud twang of the Gāndiva are incapable of being stood against by any of the kings on my side. It is then, O Sanjaya, that obedient as I have been to the voice of Duryodhana, I shall have to call back the rejected counsels of my friends—counsels that I should have attended to in time.'

"Sanjaya said. 'This hath been thy great fault, O king, *viz.*, that though capable, thou didst not, from affection, prevent thy son from doing what he hath done. The slayer of Madhu, that hero of unfading glory, hearing that the Pāndavas had been defeated at dice, soon went to the woods of *Kāmyaka* and consoled them there. And Draupadi's sons also headed by Dhrishtadyumna, and Virāta, and Dhrishtaketu, and those mighty warriors, the Kekayas, all went there. All that was said by these warriors at the sight of Pāndu's sons defeated at dice, was learnt by me through our spies. I have also told thee all, O king. When the slayer of Madhu met the Pāndavas, they requested him to become the charioteer of Fālguna in battle. Hari himself, thus requested, answered them, saying—*So be it.* And even Krishna himself, beholding the sons of Prithā dressed in deer skins, became filled with rage, and addressing Yudhishthira, said,—That prosperity which the sons of Prithā had acquired at Indraprastha, and which, unobtainable by other kings, was beheld by me at the *Rajaswya* sacrifice, at which, besides, I saw all kings, even those of the Vangas and Angas and Paundras and Odras and Cholas and Dravidas and Andhakas, and the chiefs of many islands and countries on the sea-board as also of frontier states, including the rulers of the Sinhalas, the barbarous *mlechchhas*, the natives of Lankā, and all the kings of the West by hundreds, and all the chiefs of the sea-coast, and the kings of the Pahlavas and the Daradas and the various tribes of the Kirātas and Yavanas and Shakas and the Hārahunas and Chinas and Tukhāras and the Saindhavas and the Jāgudas and the Ramathas and the Mundas and the inhabitants of the kingdom of women and the Tanganas and the Kaikeyas and the Mālavas and the inhabitants of Kāçmira, afraid of the prowess of your weapons, present in obedience to your invitation, performing various offices,—that prosperity, O king, so unstable and

waiting at present on thy foe, I shall restore to thee, depriving thy foe of his very life. I shall, O chief of the Kurus, assisted by Rāma and Bhima and Arjuna and the twins and Akrura and Gada and Shāmva and Pradyumna and Ahuka and the heroic Dhrishtadyumna and the son of Shiçupāla, slay in battle in course of a day Duryodhana and Karna and Dusçāsana and Suvala's son and all others who may fight against us. And thou shalt, O Bhārata, living at Hāstinapura along with thy brothers, and snatching from Dhritarāshtra's party the prosperity they are enjoying, rule this earth.—Even these, O king, were Krishna's words unto Yudhishthira, who, on the conclusion of Krishna's speech, addressed him in that meeting of heroes and in the hearing of all those brave warriors headed by Dhrishtadyumna, saying, —O Janārddana, I accept these words of thine as truth. O thou of mighty arms, do thou, however, slay my enemies along with all their followers on the expiry of thirteen years. O Keçava, promise this truly unto me. I promised in the presence of the king to live in the forest as I am now living.—Consenting to these words of king Yudhishthira the just, his counsellers headed by Dhrishtadyumna soon pacified the incensed Keçava with sweet words and expressions suitable to the occasion. And they also said unto Draupadi of pure deeds in the hearing of Vāsudeva himself, these words:—O lady, in consequence of thy anger, Duryodhana shall lay down his life. We promise it, O thou of the fairest complexion. Therefore, grieve no more. O Krishnā, those that mocked thee, beholding thee won at dice, shall reap the fruit of their act. Beasts of prey * and birds shall eat their flesh, and mock them thus. Jackalls and vultures will drink their blood. And, O Krishnā, thou shalt behold the bodies of those wretches that dragged thee by the hair, prostrate on the earth, dragged and eaten by carnivorous animals. They also that gave thee pain and disregarded thee, shall lie on the earth destitute of their heads, and the earth herself shall drink their blood.—These

* *Mrigadvijās;* a different reading is *Vrikadvijās*, "wolves and birds."

and other speeches of various kinds were uttered there, O king, by those bulls of the Bharata race. All of them are endued with energy and bravery, and marked with the marks of battle. On the expiration of the thirteenth year, those mighty warriors, chosen by Yudhishthira and headed by Vāsudeva, will come (to the field of battle). Rāma and Krishna and Dhananjaya and Pradyumna and Shāmva and Yuyudhāna and Bhima and the sons of Mādri and the Kaikeya princes and the Pānchāla princes, accompanied by the king of Matsya,—these all, illustrious and celebrated and invincible heroes, with their followers and troops, will come. Who is there that, desiring to live, will encounter these in battle, resembling angry lions of erect manes?'

"Dhritarāshtra said. 'What Vidura told me at the time of the game at dice, —*If thou seekest, O king, to vanquish the Pāndavas (at dice), then certainly a terrible blood-shed ending in the destruction of all the Kurus will be the result,* —I think, O charioteer, is about to be realised. As Vidura told me of old, without doubt a terrible battle will take place, as soon as the pledged period of the Pāndavas expireth.'"

Thus ends the fifty-first Section in the Indralokagamana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LII.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva.)

Janamejaya said. "When the high-souled Pārtha had gone to Indra's region for obtaining weapons, what did Yudhishthira and the other sons of Pāndu do?"

Vaisampāyana said. "When the high-souled Pārtha had gone to Indra's region for obtaining weapons, those bulls of the Bharata race continued to dwell with Krishnā in (the woods of) *Kāmyaka.* One day, those foremost of the Bhāratas, afflicted with grief, were seated with Krishnā on a clean and solitary sward. Grieving for Dhananjaya, overwhelmed with sorrow, their voices were choked with weeping. Tortured by Dhananjaya's absence, grief afflicted them equally. And, filled with sorrow at their separation from Arjuna and at the loss of their

kingdom, the mighty-armed Bhima among them addressed Yudhishthira, saying, 'That bull of the Bharata race, Arjuna, O great king, on whom depend the lives of Pāndu's sons, and on whose death the Pānchālas as also ourselves with our sons and Sātyaki and Vāsudeva are sure to die, hath gone away at thy behest. What can be sadder than this that the virtuous Vibhatsu hath gone away at thy command, thinking of his many griefs? Depending upon the might of that illustrious hero's arms, we regard our foes as already vanquished in battle, and the whole earth itself as already acquired by us. It was for the sake of that mighty warrior that I refrained from sending to the other world all the Dhārtarāshtras along with the Sauvalas, in the midst of the assembly. Gifted with might of arms, and supported by Vāsudeva, we have to suppress the wrath that hath been roused in us, because thou art the root of that wrath. Indeed, with Krishna's help, slaying our foes headed by Karna, we are able to rule the entire earth (thus) conquered by our own arms. Endued with manliness, we are yet overwhelmed with calamities, in consequence of thy gambling vice, while the foolish sons of Dhritarāshtra are growing stronger with the tributes (gathered from dependent kings). O mighty monarch, it behoveth thee to keep in view the duties of the Kshatriya. O great king, it is not the duty of a Kshatriya to live in the woods. The wise are of opinion that to rule is the foremost duty of a Kshatriya. O king, thou art conversant with Kshatriya morality. Do not, therefore, deviate from the path of duty. Turning away from the woods, let us, summoning Pārtha and Janārddana, slay, O king, the sons of Dhritarāshtra, even before the twelve years are complete. O illustrious monarch, O king of kings, even if these Dhārtarāshtras be surrounded by soldiers in array of battle, I shall send them to the other world by dint of might alone. I shall slay all the sons of Dhritarāshtra along with the Sauvalas, indeed, Duryodhana, and Karna, and any one else that will fight with me. And after I shall have slain all our foes, thou mayst come back unto the woods. By acting thus, O king, no fault will be thine. (Or if any sin be thine), O repressor of foes, O mighty monarch, washing

it off, O sire, by various sacrifices, we may ascend a superior heaven. Such a consummation may come to pass, if our king proveth not unwise or procrastinating. Thou art, however, virtuous. Verily the deceitful should be destroyed by deceit. To slay the deceitful by deceit, is not regarded as sinful. O Bhārata, it is also said by those versed in morality that one day and night is, O great prince, equal unto a full year. The Veda text also, O exalted one, is often heard, signifying that a year is equivalent to a day when passed in the observance of certain difficult vows. O thou of unfading glory, if the Vedas are an authority with thee, regard thou the period of a day and something more as the equivalent of thirteen years. O repressor of foes, this is the time to slay Duryodhana with his adherents. Else, O king, he will beforehand bring the whole earth obedient to his will. O foremost of monarchs, all this is the result of thy addiction to gambling. We are on the verge of destruction already, in consequence of thy promise of living one year undiscovered. I do not find the country where, if we live, the wicked-minded Suyodhana may not be able to trace us by his spies. And finding us out, that wretch will again deceitfully send us into such exile in the woods. Or if that sinful one beholdeth us emerge, after the expiry of the pledged period of non-discovery, he will again invite thee, O great king, to dice, and the play will once more begin. Summoned once more, thou wilt again efface thyself at dice. Thou art not skilled at dice, and when summoned at play, thou wilt be deprived of thy senses. Therefore, O mighty monarch, thou wilt have to lead a life in the woods again. If, O mighty king, it behoveth thee not to make us wretched for life, observe thou fully the ordinance of the Vedas, (which inculcateth that) verily the deceitful ought to be slain by deceit. If I but have thy command, I would go (to Hastināpura) and, even as fire falling upon a heap of grass consumeth it, would slay Duryodhana, putting forth my utmost might. It behoveth thee, therefore, to grant me the permission.' "

Vaisampāyana continued. "Thus addressed by Bhima, king Yudhishthira the just smelt the crown of that son of Pāndu, and pacifying him said, 'O mighty-armed one, without doubt,

thou wilt, assisted by the wielder of the *Gāndiva*, slay Suyodhana at the expiry of the thirteenth year. But, O son of Prithā, as for thy assertion—*O lord, the time is complete*,—I cannot dare tell an untruth, for untruth is not in me. O son of Kunti, without the help of fraud, wilt thou kill the wicked and irrepressible Duryodhana, with his allies.'

"While Yudhishthira the just was speaking unto Bhima thus, there came the great and illustrious Rishi Vrihadaçwa before them. And beholding that virtuous ascetic before him, the righteous king worshipped him according to the ordinance, with the offering of *Madhuparka*. * And when the ascetic was seated and refreshed, the mighty-armed Yudhishthira sat by him, and looking up at the former, addressed him thus in exceedingly piteous accents :—

'O holy one, summoned by cunning gamblers skilled at dice, I have been deprived of wealth and kingdom through gambling. I am not an adept at dice, and am unacquainted with deceit. Sinful men, by unfair means, vanquished me at play. They even brought into the public assembly my wife dearer unto me than life itself. And defeating me a second time, they have sent me to distressful exile in this great forest, clad in deerskins. At present I am leading a distressful life in the woods in grief of heart. Those harsh and cruel speeches they addressed me on the occasion of that gaming match, and the words of my afflicted friends relating to the match at dice and other subjects, are all stored up in my remembrance. Recollecting them I pass the whole night in (sleepless) anxiety. Deprived also (of the company) of the illustrious wielder of the *Gāndiva*, on whom depend the lives of us all, I am almost deprived of life. Oh, when shall I see the sweet-speeched and large-hearted Vibhatsu so full of kindness and activity, return to us, having obtained all weapons! Is there a king on this earth who is more unfortunate than myself? Hast thou ever seen or heard of anysuch before? To my thinking, there is no man more wretched than I am.'"

---

* The usual ingredients are honey, curd, clarified butter, sugar, and milk, in a small cup of some metal.

"Vrihadaçwa said, 'O great king, O son of Pāndu, thou sayest,—*There is no person more miserable than I am.*—O sinless monarch, if thou wilt listen, I will relate unto thee the history of a king more wretched than thyself.'"

Vaisampāyana continued. "And thereupon the king said unto the ascetic, 'O illustrious one, tell me, I desire to hear the history of the king who had fallen into such a condition.'

"Vrihadaçwa said. 'O king, O thou that never fallest off, listen attentively with thy brothers! I will narrate the history of a prince more miserable than thyself. There was a celebrated king among the Nishadhas, named Virasena. He had a son named Nala, versed in (the knowledge of) virtue and wealth. It hath been heard by us that that king was deceitfully defeated by Pushkara, and afflicted with calamity, he dwelt in the woods with his spouse. And, O king, while he was living in the forest, he had neither slaves nor cars, neither brothers nor friends with him. But thou art surrounded by thy heroic brothers like unto the celestials, and also by foremost regenerate ones like unto Brahmā himself. Therefore, it behoveth thee not to grieve.'

"Yudhishthira said, 'I am anxious to hear in detail, O thou foremost of eloquent men, the history of the illustrious Nala. It behoveth thee therefore to relate it unto me.'"

Thus ends the fifty-second Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LIII.

(*Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.*)

"Vrihadaçwa said. 'There was a king named Nala, the son of Virasena. And he was strong, and handsome, and well-versed in (the knowledge of) horses, and possessed of every desirable accomplishment. And he was at the head of all the kings, even like the lord of the celestials. And, exalted over all, he resembled the sun in glory. And he was the king of the Nishadhas, intent on the welfare of the Brāhmanas, versed in the Vedas, and possessed of heroism. And he was truth-telling, and fond of dice, and the master of a mighty

army.* And he was the beloved of men and women, and of great soul and subdued passions. And he was the protector (of all), and the foremost of bowmen, and like unto Manu himself. And like him, there was among the Vidharbhas (a king named) Bhima, of terrible prowess, heroic, and well-affected towards his subjects, and possessed of every virtue. (But withal) he was childless. And with a fixed mind, he tried his utmost for obtaining issue. And, O Bhārata, there came unto him (once)a *Brahmarshi* named Damana. And, O king of kings, desirous of having offspring, Bhima, versed in morality, with his queen gratified that illustrious Rishi by a respectful reception. And Damana, well-pleased, granted unto the king and his consort a boon in the form of a jewel of a daughter, and three sons possessed of lofty souls and great fame. (And they were called respectively) Damayanti, and Dama and Dānta, and the illustrious Damana. And the three sons were possessed of every accomplishment and terrible mien and fierce prowess. And the slender-waisted Damayanti, in beauty and brightness, in good name and grace and luck, became celebrated all over the world. And on her attaining to age, hundreds of hand-maids, and female slaves, decked in ornaments, waited upon her like *Sachi*† herself. And Bhima's daughter of faultless features, decked in every ornament, shone in the midst of her hand-maids, like the luminous lightning of the clouds. And the large-eyed damsel was possessed of great beauty like that of *Sree*‡ herself. And neither among celestials, nor among Yakshas, nor among men was any body possessed of such beauty, seen or heard of before. And the beautiful maiden filled with gladness the hearts of even the gods. And that tiger among men, Nala also had not his peer in the (three) worlds; for in beauty he was like *Kandarpa*$ himself in his embodied form. And moved

* The word in the text is *Akshauhini*, which means a large force consisting of 1,09,350 foot, 65,610 horse, 21,870 chariots, and 27,870 elephants.

† The queen of heaven, Indra's wife.

‡ *Lakshmi.*

$ The god of love.

by admiration, (the heralds) again and again celebrated the praises of Nala before Damayanti and those of Damayanti before the ruler of the Nishadhas. And repeatedly hearing of each other's virtues, they conceived an attachment towards each other not begot of sight; and that attachment, O son of Kunti, began to grow in strength. And then Nala was unable to control the love that was in his bosom. And he began to pass much of his time in solitude in the gardens adjoining the inner apartments (of his palace). And there he saw a number of swans furnished with golden wings, wandering in those woods. And from among them he caught one with his hands. And thereupon the sky-ranging one said unto Nala,—Deserve I not to be slain by thee, O king. I will do something that is agreeable to thee. O king of the Nishadhas, I will speak of thee before Damayanti in such a way that she will not ever desire to have any other person (for her lord).—Thus addressed, the king liberated that swan. And those swans then rose on their wings and went to the country of the Vidharbhas. And on arriving at the city of the Vidharbhas, the birds alighted before Damayanti, who beheld them all. And Damayanti in the midst of her maids, beholding those birds of extraordinary appearance, was filled with delight, and strove without loss of time to catch those coursers of the skies. And the swans at this, before that bevy of beauties, fled in all directions. And those maidens there pursued the birds, each (running) after one. And the swan after which Damayanti ran, having led her to a secluded spot, addressed her in human speech, saying,—O Damayanti, there is a king amongst the Nishadhas named Nala. He is equal unto the Aswins in beauty, not having his peer among men. Indeed, in comeliness, he is like unto Kandarpa himself in his embodied form. O fair-complexioned one, O thou of slender waist, if thou becomest his wife, thy existence and this thy beauty may be of purpose. We have, indeed, beheld celestials, and Gandharvas, and Nāgas, and Rākshasas, and men, but never saw we before any one like Nala. Thou also art a jewel among thy sex, as Nala is the prime among men. The union of the best with the best

is happy.—Thus addressed by the swan, Damayanti, O monarch, replied unto him there, saying,—Do thou speak thus unto Nala also.—Saying, *So be it*—to the daughter of Vidharbha, the oviparous one, O king, returned to the country of the Nishadhas, and related everything unto Nala.' "

Thus ends the fifty-third Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LIV.

(*Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.*)

"Vrihadaçwa said. 'O Bhārata, hearing those words of the swan, Damayanti thenceforth lost all peace of mind on account of Nala. And heaving frequent sighs, she was filled with anxiety, and became melancholy and pale-faced and lean. And with her heart possessed by the god of love, she soon lost color, and with her upturned gaze and moods of abstraction, looked like one demented. And she lost all inclination for beds and seats and objects of enjoyment. And she ceased to lie down by day or night, always weeping with exclamations of *Oh!* and *Alas!*. And beholding her uneasy and fallen into that condition, her hand-maids represented, O king, the matter of her illness unto the ruler of Vidharbha by indirect hints. And king Bhima, hearing of this from the hand-maids of Damayanti, regarded the affair of his daughter to be serious. And he asked himself,—Why is it that my daughter seemeth to be so ill now?—And the king, reflecting by himself that his daughter had attained to puberty, concluded that Damayanti's *Swayamvara* should take place. And the monarch, O exalted one, (invited) all the rulers of the earth, saying,—*Ye heroes, Know that Damayanti's Swayamvara is at hand!* And all the kings, hearing of Damayanti's *Swayamvara* came unto Bhima, agreeably to his message, filling the earth with the clatter of their cars, the roar of their elephants, and the neighing of their horses, and accompanied with their fine-looking battalions decked in ornaments and graceful garlands. And the mighty-armed Bhima paid

due reverence unto those illustrious monarchs. And duly honored by him, they took up their quarters there.

"'And at this juncture, those foremost of celestial Rishis, possessed of great splendour, of great wisdom and great vows —namely, Nārada and Parvata,—having arrived in course of their wanderings at the regions of Indra, entered the mansion of the lord of the immortals, receiving proper worship. And Maghavat, having worshipped them reverentially, inquired after their undisturbed peace and welfare as regards all respects. And Nārada said,—O lord, O divine one, peace attendeth us in every respect. And, O Maghavat, peace attendeth also, O exalted one, the kings of the whole world.—'

"Vrihadaçwa continued, 'Hearing the words of Nārada, the slayer of Vala and Vritra said,—Those righteous rulers of earth who fight renouncing all desire of life, and who meet death when their time is come by means of weapons, without flying from the field,—theirs is this region, everlasting unto them and granting all desires, even as it is to me. Where be those Kshatriya heroes? I do not see those kings approach (now) who are my favorite guests.—Thus addressed by Sakra, Nārada replied,—Listen, O Maghavat, why thou seest not the kings (now)! The ruler of the Vidharbhas hath a daughter —the celebrated Damayanti. In beauty she transcendeth all the women of the earth. Her *Swayāmvara*, O Shakra, will take place shortly. Thither are going all the kings and princes from all directions. And all the lords of earth desire to have that pearl of the earth,—desire to have her eagerly, O slayer of Vala and Vritra.—And while they were talking thus, those foremost of the immortals, the *Lokapālas* with Agni among them, appeared before the lord of the celestials. And all of them heard the words of Nārada fraught with grave import. And as soon as they heard them, they exclaimed in rapture,—*We also will go there.*—And, O mighty monarch, accompanied by their attendants and mounted on their (respective) vehicles, they set out for the country of the Vidharvas, whither (had gone) all the kings. And, O son of Kunti, the high-souled king Nala also, hearing of that concourse of kings, set out with a cheerful heart, full of Damayanti's love. And (it

came to pass) that the gods saw Nala on the way treading on the earth. And his form owing to its beauty was like that of the god of love himself. And beholding him resplendent as the sun, the *Lokapālas* were filled with astonishment at his wealth of beauty, and abandoned their intention. And, O king, leaving their cars in the sky, the dwellers of heaven alighted from the welkin, and spake unto the ruler of the Nishadhas, saying,—O foremost of monarchs ruling the Nishadhas, O Nala, thou art devoted to truth. Do thou help us. O best of men, be thou our messenger.—'"

Thus ends the fifty-fourth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

Section LV.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"Vrihadaçwa continued.—'O Bhārata, Nala pledged his word to the celestials, saying,—*I will do it.*—And then approaching these, he asked with folded hands,—Who are ye? And who also is he that desireth me to be his messenger? And what, further, shall I have to do for you? O tell me truly!—When the king of the Nishadhas had spoken thus, Maghavat replied, saying,—Know us as the immortals come hither for Damayanti's sake. I am Indra, this one is Agni, this, the lord of waters, and this, O king, is even Yama the destroyer of the bodies of men. Do thou inform Damayanti of our arrival, saying,—The guardians of the world, (consisting of) the great Indra and the others, are coming to the assembly, desirous of beholding (the Swayamvara). The gods—Sakra and Agni and Varuna and Yama desire to obtain thee. Do thou, therefore, choose one of them for thy lord.—Thus addressed by Sakra, Nala said with joined hands,—I have come here with the self-same object. It behoveth you not to send me (on this errand). How can a person who is himself under the influence of love bring himself to speak thus unto a lady on behalf of others? Therefore, spare me, ye gods!—The gods, however, said,—O ruler of the Nishadhas, having promised first, saying,—*I will*,—why wilt thou not act accord-

ingly now? O ruler of the Nishadhas, tell us this without delay.—'

"Vrihadaçwa continued. 'Thus addressed by those celestials, the ruler of Nishadha spake again, saying,—Those mansions are well-guarded. How can I hope te enter them?—Indra replied,—Thou shalt be able to enter.—And, saying *So be it*,—Nala thereupon went to the palace of Damayanti. And having arrived there, he beheld the daughter of the king of Vidharbha, surrounded by her hand-maids, blazing in beauty, and excelling in symmetry of form, of limbs exceedingly delicate, of slender waist and fair eyes. And she seemed to rebuke the light of the moon by her own splendour. And as he gazed on that lady of sweet smiles, Nala's love increased, but desirous of keeping his truth, he suppressed his passion. And at the sight of Naishadha, overpowered by his effulgence, those first of women sprang up from their seats in amazement. And filled with wonder (at his sight), they praised Nala in gladness of heart. And without saying anything, they mentally paid him homage: *Oh, what beauty! Oh, what comeliness! Oh, what gentleness belongeth to this high-souled one! Who is he? Is he some god or Yaksha or Gandharva?* And those foremost of women, confounded by Nala's splendour, and from bashfulness, could not accost him at all in speech. And Damayanti, although herself struck with amazement, smilingly addressed the warlike Nala, who also gently smiled at her, saying,—What art thou, O thou of faultless features, that hast come here awakening my love? O sinless one, O hero of celestial form, I am anxious to know who thou art that hast come hither. And why hast thou come hither? And how is it that thou hast not been discovered by any one, considering that my apartments are well-guarded and the king's mandates are stern.—Thus addressed by the daughter of the king of the Vidharvas, Nala replied,—O beauteous lady, know that my name is Nala. I come here as the messenger of the gods. The celestials—Sakra, Agni, Varuna, and Yama, desire to have thee. O beautiful lady, do thou choose one of them for thy lord. It is through their power that I have entered here unperceived, and it is for this

reason that none saw me on my way or obstructed my entrance. O gentle one, I have been sent by the foremost of the celestials even for this object. Hearing this, O fortunate one, do what thou pleasest.—' "

Thus ends the fifty-fifth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LVI.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

" Vrihadaçwa said. 'Damayanti, having bowed down unto the gods, thus addressed Nala with a smile,—O king, love me with proper regard, and command me what I shall do for thee. Myself and what else of wealth is mine, are thine. Grant me, O exalted one, thy love in full trust. O king, the language of the swans is burning me. It is for thy sake, O hero, that I have caused the kings to meet. O giver of proper honor, if thou forsake me who adore thee, for thy sake will I resort to poison, or fire, or water, or the rope.— Thus addressed by the daughter of the king of the Vidharbhas, Nala answered her, saying,—With the *Lokapālas* present, choosest thou a man? Do thou turn thy heart to those high-souled lords, the creators of the worlds, unto the dust of whose feet I am not equal. Displeasing the gods, a mortal cometh by death. Save me, O thou of faultless limbs! Choose thou the all-excelling celestials. By accepting the gods, do thou enjoy spotless robes, and celestial garlands of variagated hues, and excellent ornaments. What woman would not choose as her lord Hutāça—the chief of the celestials, who compressing the earth swalloweth it? What woman would not choose him as her lord the dread of whose mace induceth all creatures to tread the path of virtue? And what woman would not choose as her lord the virtuous and high-souled Mahendra, the lord of the celestials, the chastiser of Daityas and Dānavas? Or if thou couldst choose in thy heart Varuna amongst the *Lokapālas*, do so unhesitatingly. O accept this friendly advice!—Thus addressed by Naishadha, Damayanti, with eyes bathed in tears begot of grief, spake

thus unto Nala,—O lord of earth, bowing to all the gods, I choose thee for my lord. Truly do I tell thee this.—The king, who had come as the messenger of the gods, replied unto the trembling Damayanti standing with folded hands,—O amiable one, do as thou pleasest. Having given my pledge, O blessed one, unto the gods in especial, how can I, having come on others' mission, dare seek my own interest? If seeking my own interest consist with virtue, I will seek it, and do thou also, O beauteous one, act accordingly.—Then Damayanti of luminous smiles slowly spake unto king Nala, in words choked with tears,—O lord of men, I see a blameless way, by which no sin whatever will attach unto thee. O king, do thou, O foremost of men, come to the *Swayamvara* in company with all the gods headed by Indra. There, O monarch, in the presence of the *Lokapālas* will I, O tiger among men, choose thee,—at which no blame will be thine.—Thus addressed, O monarch, by the daughter of Vidharva, king Nala returned to where the gods were staying together. And beholding him approach, those great gods, the *Lokapālas*, eagerly asked him about all that had happened, saying,—Hast thou, O king, seen Damayanti of sweet smiles? What hath she said unto us all? O sinless monarch, tell us everything.—Nala answered,—Commanded by you, I entered Damayanti's palace furnished with lofty portals guarded by veteran warders bearing wands. And as I entered, no one perceived me, by virtue of your power, except the princess. And I saw her hand-maids, and they also saw me. And, O exalted of celestials, seeing me, they were filled with wonder. And as I spake unto her of you, the fair-faced maiden, her will fixed on me, * O ye best of the gods, chose me (for her spouse). And the maiden said,—*Let the gods, O tiger among men, come with thee to the Swayamvara. I will, in their presence, choose thee. At this, O thou of mighty arms, no blame will attach to thee.*—This is all, ye gods, that took place, as I have

* The word in the text is *Gatasankalpā*=will fixed (on me). The Rev. H. H. Milman renders it "bereft of reason", evidently a mistake in such a connection.

said. Finally, everything rests with you, ye foremost of celestials.'—"

Thus ends the fifty-sixth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Pa rva.

SECTION LVII.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"Vrihadaçwa continued. 'Then at the sacred hour of the holy lunar day of the auspicious season, king Bhima summoned the kings to the *Swayamvara*. And hearing of it, all the lords of earth smit with love, speedily came thither, desirous of (possessing) Damayanti. And the monarchs entered the amphitheatre decorated with golden pillars and a lofty portal arch, like mighty lions entering the mountain wilds. And those lords of earth decked with fragrant garlands and polished ear-rings hung with jewels, seated themselves on their several seats. And that sacred assembly of kings, graced by those tigers among men, resembled the *Bhogavati** swarming with the Nāgas, or a mountain cavern with tigers. And their arms were robust, and resembling iron maces, and well-shaped, and graceful, and looking like five-headed snakes. And graced with beautiful locks and fine noses and eyes and brows, the countenances of the kings shone like stars in the firmament. And (when the time came), Damayanti of beauteous face, stealing the eyes and hearts of the princes by her dazzling light, entered the hall. And the glances of those illustrious kings were rivitted to those parts of her person where they had chanced to fall first, without moving at all. And when, O Bhārata, the names of the monarchs were proclaimed, the daughter of Bhima saw five persons all alike in appearance. And beholding them seated there, without difference of any kind in form, doubt filled her mind, and she could not ascertain which of them was king Nala. And at whomsoever (among them) she looked, she regarded to

---

* The nether region, called also *Pātāla*.

be the king of the Nishadhas. And filled with anxiety, the beauteous one thought within herself,—Oh, how shall I distinguish the celestials, and how discern the royal Nala!—And thinking thus, the daughter of Vidharbha became filled with grief. And, O Bhārata, recollecting the marks belonging to the celestials, of which she had heard, she thought,—Those attributes of the celestials, of which I have heard from the aged, do not pertain to any of these deities present here upon earth.—And revolving the matter long in her mind, and reflecting upon it repeatedly, she decided upon seeking the protection of the gods themselves. And bowing down unto them with mind and speech, with folded hands she addressed them trembling,—Since I heard the speech of the swans, I chose the king of the Nishadhas as my lord. For the sake of truth, O, let the gods reveal him to me. And as in thought or word I have never swerved from him, O, let the gods, for the sake of that truth, reveal him to me. And as the gods themselves have destined the ruler of the Nishadhas to be my lord, O, let them, for the sake of that truth, reveal him to me. And as it is for paying homage unto Nala that I have adopted this vow, for the sake of that truth, O, let the gods reveal him unto me. O, let the exalted guardians of the worlds assume their own proper forms, so that I may know the righteous king.—Hearing these piteous words of Damayanti, and ascertaining her fixed resolve, and fervent love for the king of the Nishadhas, the purity of her heart and her inclination and regard and affection for Nala, the gods did as they had been adjured, and assumed their respective attributes as best they could. And thereupon she beheld the celestials unmoistened with perspiration, with winkless eyes, and unfading garlands, unstained with dust, and staying without touching the ground. And Naishadha stood revealed by his shadow, his fading garlands, himself stained with dust and sweat, resting on the ground with winksome eyes. And, O Bhārata, discerning the gods and the virtuous Nala, the daughter of Bhima chose Naishadha according to her troth. And the large-eyed damsel then bashfully caught the hem of his garment and placed round his neck a floral wreath of exceeding grace. And when that fair-

complexioned maiden had thus chosen Nala far her husband, the kings suddenly broke out into exclamations of *Oh*! and *Alas*! And, O Bhārata, the gods and the great Rishis in wonder cried—*Excellent*! *Excellent*!, applauding the king the while. And, O Kauravya, the royal son of Virasena, with heart filled with gladness, comforted the beauteous Damayanti, saying,—Since thou, O blessed one, hast chosen a mortal in the presence of the celestials, know me for a husband ever obedient to thy command. And, O thou of sweet smiles, truly do I tell thee this that as long as life continueth in this body of mine, I will remain thine and thine alone.—Damayanti also, with folded hands, paid homage unto Nala in words of like import. And the happy pair beholding Agni and the other gods, mentally sought their protection. And after the daughter of Bhima had chosen Naishadha as her husband, the *Lokapālas* of exceeding effulgence, with pleased hearts, bestowed on Nala eight boons. And Sakra, the lord of Sachi, bestowed on Nala the boon that he should be able to behold his godship in sacrifices and that he should attain to blessed regions thereafter. And Hutāçana bestowed on him the boon of his own presence whenever Naishadha wished, and regions also bright as himself. And Yama granted him subtle taste in food as well as pre-eminence in virtue. And the lord of waters granted Nala his own presence whenever he desired, and also garlands of celestial fragrance. And thus each of them bestowed upon him a couple of boons. And having betowed these the gods went to heaven. And the kings also, having witnessed with wonder Damayanti's selection of Nala, returned delighted whence they came. And on the departure of those mighty monarchs, the high-souled Bhima, well-pleased, celebrated the wedding of Nala and Damayanti. And having stayed there for a time according to his desire, Naishadha—that best of men—returned to his own city with the permission of Bhima. And having attained that pearl of a woman, the virtuous king, O monarch, began to pass his days in joy, like the slayer of Vala and Vritra in the company of Sachi. And resembling the sun in glory, the king, full of gladness, began to rule his subjects

righteously, and gave them great satisfaction. And like unto Yayāti the son of Nahusha, that intelligent monarch celebrated the horse sacrifice and many other sacrifices with abundant gifts to Brāhmanas. And like unto a very god, Nala sported with Damayanti in romantic woods and groves. And the high-minded king begat upon Damayanti a son named Indrasena, and a daughter named Indrasenā. And celebrating sacrifice, and sporting (with Damayanti) thus, the king ruled the earth abounding in wealth.' "

Thus ends the fifty-seventh Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LVIII.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"Vrihadaçwa said, 'When the blazing guardians of the worlds were returning after the daughter of Bhima had chosen Naishadha, on their way they met Dwāpara with Kali approaching towards them. And seeing Kali, Sakra the slayer of Vala and Vritra, said,—O Kali, say, whither art thou going with Dwāpara?—And thereupon Kali replied unto Sakra,—Going to Damayanti's *Swayamvara*, will I obtain her (for my wife), as my heart is fixed upon that damsel.—Hearing this, Indra said with a smile,—That *Swayamvara* is already ended. In our sight she hath chosen Nala for her husband.—Thus answered by Sakra, Kali, that vilest of the celestials, filled with wrath, addressing all those gods spake,—Since in the presence of the celestials she hath chosen a mortal for her lord, it is meet that she should undergo a heavy doom!—Upon hearing these words of Kali, the celestials answered,—It is with our sanction that Damayanti hath chosen Nala. What damsel is there that would not choose king Nala endued with every virtue? Well-versed in all duties, always conducting himself with rectitude, he hath studied the four Vedas together with the Purānas that are regarded as the fifth. Leading a life of harmlessness unto all creatures, he is truth-telling, and firm in his vows, and in his house the gods are ever gratified by sacrifices held according to the

ordinance. In that tiger among men—that king resembling a *Lokapāla*,—is truth, and forbearance, and knowledge, and asceticism, and purity, and self-control, and perfect tranquility of soul. O Kali, the fool that wisheth to curse Nala bearing such a character, curseth himself, and destroyeth himself by his own act. And, O Kali, he that seeketh to curse Nala crowned with such virtues, sinketh into the wide bottomless pit of hell rife with torments.—Having said this to Kali and Dwāpara, the gods went to heaven. And when the gods had gone away, Kali said unto Dwāpara,—I am ill able, O Dwāpara, to suppress my anger. I shall possess Nala, deprive him of his kingdom, and he shall no more sport with Bhima's daughter. Entering the dice it behoveth thee to help me.—' "

Thus ends the fifty-eighth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

Section LIX.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

" Vrihadaçwa said. 'Having made this compact with Dwāpara, Kāli came to the place where the king of the Nishadhas was. And always watching for a hole, he continued to dwell in the country of the Nishadhas for a long time. And it was in the twelfth year that Kali saw a hole. For one day, after answering a call of nature, Naishadha touching water said his twilight prayers, without having previously washed his feet. And it was through this (omission) that Kali entered his person. And having possessed Nala, he appeared before Pushkara, and addressed him, saying,—Come and play at dice with Nala. Through my assistance thou wilt surely win at the play. And defeating king Nala and acquiring his kingdom, do thou rule the Nishadhas.—Thus exhorted by Kali, Pushkara went to Nala. And Dwāpara also approached Pushkara, becoming the principal die called *Vrisha*.* And

---

* Most editions read, "Kali also, becoming" &c. The true reading, however, must be "Dwāpara also, becoming" &c., as otherwise the compact between Kali and Dwāpara would remain unfulfilled.

appearing before the warlike Nala, that slayer of hostile heroes, Pushkara, repeatedly said,—Let us play together with dice.—Thus challenged in the presence of Damayanti, the lofty-minded king could not long decline it. And he accordingly fixed the time for the play. And possessed by Kali, Nala began to lose, in the game, his stakes in gold, and silver, and cars with the teams thereof, and robes. And maddened at dice, no one amongst his friends could succeed in dissuading that repressor of foes from the play that went on. And thereupon, O Bhārata, the citizens in a body, with the chief councillors, came thither to behold the distressed monarch and make him desist. And the charioteer coming to Damayanti spake to her of this, saying,—O lady, the citizens and officers of the state wait at the gate. Do thou inform the king of the Nishadhas that the citizens have come here, unable to bear the calamity that hath befallen their king conversant with virtue and wealth.—Thereupon Bhima's daughter, overwhelmed with grief and almost deprived of reason by it, spake unto Nala in choked accents,—O king, the citizens with the councillors of state, urged by loyalty, stay at the gate desirous of beholding thee. It behoveth thee to grant them an interview.—But the king, possessed by Kali, uttered not a word in reply unto his queen of graceful glances, uttering thus her lamentations. And at this, those councillors of state as also the citizens, afflicted with grief and shame, returned to their homes, saying,—*He liveth not.* And, O Yudhishthira, it was thus that Nala and Pushkara gambled together for many months, the virtuous Nala being always worsted.' "

Thus ends the fifty-ninth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

Section LX.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

" Vrihadaçwa said, 'Bhima's daughter, the cool-headed Damayanti, seeing the righteous king maddened and deprived of his senses at dice, was filled, O king, with alarm and grief. And she thought the affair to be a serious one with the king.

And apprehensive of the calamity that threatened Nala, yet seeking his welfare and at last understanding that her lord had lost everything, she said unto her nurse and maid-servant Vrihatsenā of high fame, intent upon her good, dexterous in all duties, faithful and sweet-speeched, these words,—O Vrihatsenā, go thou and summon the councillors in the name of Nala, and tell them also what of wealth and other things hath been lost and what remaineth.—The councillors then, hearing of Nala's summons, said,—This is fortunate for us!*—and approached the king. And when the subjects in a body had (thus) come a second time, the daughter of Bhima informed Nala of it. But the king regarded her not. Finding her husband disregarding her words, Damayanti, filled with shame, returned to her apartments. And hearing that the dice were uniformly unfavorable to the virtuous Nala, and that he had lost everything, she again spake unto her nurse, saying,—O Vrihatsenā, go thou again in Nala's name to bring hither, O blessed one, the charioteer Vārshneya. The matter at hand is very serious.†—And Vrihatsenā, hearing those words of Damayanti, caused Vārshneya to be summoned by trusty servants. And the blameless daughter of Bhima, acquainted with conduct suitable to time and place, addressing soft words, said according to the occasion,—Thou knowest how the king hath always behaved towards thee. He is now in difficulty, and it behoveth thee to assist him. The more the king loseth to Pushkara, the greater becometh his ardour for the play. And as the dice fall obedient to Pushkara, it is seen that they are adverse to Nala in the matter of the play. And absorbed in the play, he heedeth not the words of his friends and relatives, nor even those of mine. I do not think, however, that in this the high-souled Naishadha is to blame,

---

* *Api no bhāgadheyam*—"this is lucky or fortunate for us," as rendered here. I do not know from what text the Rev. H. H. Milman translates. His rendering—"our own fate is now in peril" is certainly an error, unless, of course, his text is different.

† The text is *Mahat kāryamupasthitam.* Milman renders it "great the deed must now be done." This is evidently a mistake.

inasmuch as the king regardeth not my words, being absorbed in play. O charioteer, I seek thy protection. Do my behest. My mind misgiveth me. The king may come to grief. Yoking Nala's favorite horses endued with the fleetness of the mind, do thou take these twins (my son and daughter) on the car, and hie thou to Kundina. Leaving the children there with my kindred, as also the car and the horses, either stay thou there, or go to any other place as it listeth thee.—Vārshneya the charioteer of Nala then reported in detail these words of Damayanti unto the chief officers of the king. And having settled (the matter) in consultation with them, and obtaining their assent, O mighty monarch, the charioteer started for Vidharbha, taking the children on that car. And leaving there the boy Indrasena and the girl Indrasenā, as also that best of cars and those steeds, the charioteer, with a sad heart grieving for Nala, bade farewell unto Bhima. And wandering for some time, he arrived at the city of Ayodhyā. And there he appeared with a sorrowful heart before king Rituparna, and entered the service of that monarch as charioteer.'"

Thus ends the sixtieth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXI.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"Vrihadaçwa said. 'After Vārshneya had gone away, Puskhara won from the righteous Nala the latter's kingdom and what else of wealth he had. And unto Nala, O king, who had lost his kingdom, Pushkara laughingly said,—Let the play go on. But what stake hast thou now? Damayanti only remaineth; all else of thine hath been won by me. Well, if thou likest, that Damayanti be our stake now.—Hearing these words of Pushkara the virtuous king felt as if his heart would burst in rage, but he spake not a word. And gazing at Pushkara in anguish, king Nala of great fame took all the ornaments off every part of his body. And attired in a single piece of cloth, his body uncovered, renouncing all his wealth, and enhancing the grief of friends the king set

out. And Damayanti, clad in one piece of cloth, followed him behind as he was leaving the city. And coming to the outskirts of the city, Nala stayed there for three nights with his wife. But Pushkara, O king, proclaimed through the city that *he that should show any attention to Nala, would be doomed to death.* And on account of these words of Pushkara, and knowing his malice towards Nala, the citizens, O Yudhisthira, no longer showed him hospitable regards. And unregarded though deserving of hospitable regards, Nala passed three nights in the outskirts of the city, living on water alone. And afflicted with hunger, the king went away in search of fruits and roots, Damayanti following him behind. And in agony of famine, after many days, Nala saw some birds with plumage of golden hue. And thereupon the mighty lord of the Nishadhas thought within himself.—These will be my banquet today and also my wealth.—And then he covered them with his wearing cloth,—when bearing up that garment of his, the birds rose up to the sky. And beholding Nala nude, and melancholy, and standing with face towards the ground, those rangers of the sky addressed him, saying,—O thou of small sense, we are even those dice. We had come hither wishing to take away thy cloth, for it pleased us not that thou shouldst depart even with thy cloth on.—And finding himself deprived of his attire, and knowing also that the dice were departing (with it), the virtuous Nala, O king, thus spake unto Damayanti,—O faultless one, they through whose anger I have been despoiled of my kingdom, they through whose influence, distressed and afflicted with hunger, I am unable to procure sustenance, they for whom the Nishadhas offered me not any hospitality, they, O timid one, are carrying off my cloth, assuming the form of birds. Fallen into this dire disaster, I am afflicted with grief and deprived of my senses. I am thy lord,—do thou, therefore, listen to the words I speak for thy good. These many roads lead to the southern country, passing by (the city of) Avanti and the Rikshavat mountains. This is that mighty mountain called Vindhya, yon, the river Payoshni running seawards, and yonder are the asylums of the ascetics, furnished with various fruits and

roots. This road leadeth to the country of the Vidharbhas—and that, to the country of the Koçalas. Beyond these roads to the south is the southern country.—Addressing Bhima's daughter, O Bhārata, the distressed king Nala spake those words unto Damayanti over and over again. Thereupon afflicted with grief, in voice choked with tears, Damayanti spake unto Naishadha these piteous words,—O king, thinking of thy purpose, my heart trembleth, and all my limbs become faint. How can I go, leaving thee in the lone woods, despoiled of thy kingdom and deprived of thy wealth, thyself without a garment on, and worn with hunger and toil? When in the deep woods, fatigued and afflicted with hunger, thou thinkest of thy former bliss, I will, O great monarch, soothe thy weariness. In every sorrow there is no physic equal unto the wife, say the physicians. It is the truth, O Nala, that I speak unto thee.—Hearing those words of his queen, Nala replied,—O slender-waisted Damayanti, it is even as thou hast said. To a man in distress, there is no friend or medicine that is equal unto a wife. But I do not seek to renounce thee,—wherefore, O timid one, dost thou dread this? O faultless one, I can forsake myself, but thee I cannot forsake.—Damayanti then said,—If thou dost not, O mighty king, intend to forsake me, why then dost thou point out to me the way to the country of the Vidharbhas? I Know, O king, that thou wouldst not desert me. But, O lord of earth, considering that thy mind is distracted, thou mayst desert me. O best of men, thou repeatedly pointest out to me the way, and it is by this, O god-like one, that thou enhancest my grief. If it is thy intention that I should go to my relatives, then, if it pleaseth thee, both of us will wend to the country of the Vidharbhas. O giver of honors, there the king of the Vidharbhas will receive thee with respect. And honored by him, O king, thou shalt live happily in our home.—'"

Thus ends the sixty-first Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXII.

(*Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.*)

"'Nala said,—Surely, thy father's kingdom is as my own. But thither I will not, by any means, repair in this extremity. Once I appeared there in glory, increasing thy joy. How can I go there now in misery, augmenting thy grief?—'

"Vrihadaçwa continued. 'Saying this again and again unto Damayanti, king Nala, wrapped in half a garment, comforted his blessed wife. And both attired in one cloth and wearied with hunger and thirst, in course of their wanderings, at last they came to a sheltered shed for travellers. And arrived at this place, the king of the Nishadhas sat down on the bare earth, with the princess of Vidharbha. And wearing the same piece of cloth (with Damayanti), and dirty, and haggard, and stained with dust, he fell asleep with Damayanti on the ground in weariness. And suddenly plunged in distress, the innocent and delicate Damayanti with every mark of good fortune, fell into a profound slumber. And, O monarch, while she slept, Nala, with heart and mind distraught, could not slumber calmly as before. And reflecting on the loss of his kingdom, the desertion of his friends, and his distress in the woods, he thought within himself,—What availeth my acting thus? And what if I act not thus? Is death the better for me now? Or should I desert my wife? She is truly devoted to me, and suffereth this distress for my sake. Separated from me, she may perchance wander to her relatives. Devoted as she is to me, if she stayeth with me, distress will surely be hers; while it is doubtful, if I desert her. On the other hand, it is not unlikely that she may even have happiness at sometime.—Reflecting upon this repeatedly, and thinking of it again and again, he concluded, O monarch, that the desertion of Damayanti was the best course for him. And he also thought,—Of high fame and auspicious fortune, and devoted to me her husband, she is incapable of being injured by any one on the way, on account of her energy.—Thus his mind that was influenced by the wicked Kali, dwelling upon Damayanti, was made

up for deserting her. And then thikning of his own want of clothing, and of her being clad in a single garment, he intended to cut off for himself one half of Damayanti's attire. And he thought,—How shall I divide this garment, so that my beloved one may not perceive?—And thinking of this, the royal Nala began to walk up and down that shed. And, O Bhārata, pacing thus to and fro, he found a handsome sword lying near the shed, unsheathed. And that repressor of foes, having, with that sword cut off one half of the cloth, and throwing the instrument away, left the daughter of Vidharbha insensible in her sleep and went away. But his heart failing him, the king of the Nishadhas returned to the shed, and seeing Damayanti (again), burst into tears. And he said,—Alas! that beloved one of mine whom neither the god of wind nor the sun had seen before, even she sleepeth to-day on the bare earth, like one forlorn. Clad in this severed piece of cloth, and lying like one distracted, how will the beauteous one of luminous smiles behave when she awaketh? How will the beautiful daughter of Bhima, devoted to her lord, all alone, and separated from me, wander through these deep woods inhabited by beasts and serpents? O blessed one, may the Adityas, and the Vasus, and the twin Aswins together with the Marutas, protect thee, thy virtue being thy best guard!—And addressing thus his dear wife peerless on earth in beauty, Nala strove to go, reft of reason by Kali. Departing and still departing, king Nala returned again and again to that shed, dragged away by Kali but drawn back by love. And it seemed as though the heart of the wretched king was rent in twain, and like a swing, he kept going out from the cabin and coming back into it. At length after lamenting long and piteously, Nala stupefied and bereft of sense by Kali, went away, forsaking that sleeping wife of his. Reft of reason through Kali's touch, and thinking of his conduct, the king departed in sorrow, leaving his wife alone in that solitary forest.' "

Thus ends the sixty-second Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXIII.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"Vrihadaçwa said. 'O king, after Nala had gone away, the beauteous Damayanti, now refreshed, timorously awoke in that lonely forest. And, O mighty monarch, not finding her lord Naishadha, afflicted with grief and pain, she shrieked aloud in fright, saying,—O lord! O mighty monarch! O husband! dost thou desert me! Oh, I am lost and undone,—frightened in this desolate place. O illustrious prince, thou art truthful in speech, and conversant with morality. How hast thou, then, having pledged thy word, deserted me asleep in the woods? Oh, why hast thou deserted thy accomplished wife, ever devoted to thee, particularly one that hath not wronged thee, though wronged thou hast been by others? O king of men, it behoveth thee to act faithfully, according to those words thou hadst spoken unto me before in the presence of the guardians of the worlds. O bull among men, that thy wife liveth even a moment after thy desertion of her, is only because mortals are decreed to die at the appointed time. O bull among men, enough of this joke! O irrepressible one, I am terribly frightened. O lord, show thyself. I see thee! I see thee, O king! Thou art seen, O Naishadha. Hiding thyself behind those shrubs, why dost thou not reply unto me? It is cruel of thee, O great king, that seeing me in this plight and so lamenting, thou dost not, O king, approach and comfort me. I grieve not for myself nor for anything else. I only grieve to think how thou wilt pass thy days alone, O king. In the evening oppressed with hunger and thirst and fatigue, underneath the trees, how will it fare with thee when thou seest me not?—And then Damayanti, afflicted with anguish and burning with grief, began to rush hither and thither, weeping in woe. And now the helpless princess sprang up, and now she sank down in stupor; and now she shrank in terror, and now she wept and wailed aloud. And Bhima's daughter devoted to her husband, burning in anguish, and sighing evermore, and faint, and weeping,

exclaimed,—That being through whose imprecation the afflicted Naishadha suffereth this woe, shall bear grief that is greater than ours. May that wicked being who hath brought Nala of sinless heart to this, lead a more miserable life, bearing greater ills!—

"'Thus lamenting, the crowned consort of the illustrious (king) began to seek her lord in those woods, inhabited by beasts of prey. And the daughter of Bhima, wailing bitterly, wandered hither and thither like a maniac, exclaiming,—*Alas! Alas! Oh king!* And as she was wailing loudly like a female osprey, and grieving and indulging in piteous lamentations unceasingly, she came near a gigantic serpent. And that huge and hungry serpent thereupon suddenly seized Bhima's daughter, who had come near and was moving about within its range. And folded within the serpent's coils and filled with grief, she still wept, not for herself but for Naishadha. And she said,—O lord, why dost thou not rush towards me, now that I am seized, without anybody to protect me, by this serpent in these desert wilds? And, O Naishadha, how will it fare with thee when thou rememberest me? O lord, why hast thou gone away, deserting me today in the forest? Freed from thy curse, when thou wilt have regained thy mind and senses and wealth, how will it be with thee when thou thinkest of me?* O Naishadha, O sinless one, who will soothe thee when thou art weary, and hungry, and fainting, O tiger among kings?—And while she was wailing thus, a certain huntsman ranging the deep woods, hearing her lamentations, swiftly came to the spot. And beholding the large-eyed one† in the coils of the serpent, he rushed towards it and cut off its head with his sharp weapon. And having

---

* It would seem that the line, "Why hast thou gone away, leaving me in the woods," &c. is an interpolation. It does not occur in all texts. The Rev. H. H. Milman omits it properly. To connect the line "*çāpān-mukta*" &c. with the next line beginning with *çrāntasya* &c., would be nonsense.

† This is an adjective, or rather adjectival substantive, referring to *Damayanti*. The Rev. H. H. Milman makes it qualify "serpent", which is only a careless mistake.

struck the reptile dead,* the huntsman set Damayanti free. And having sprinkled her body with water and fed and comforted her, O Bhārata, he addressed her, saying,—O thou with eyes like those of a young gazelle, whose art thou? And why also hast thou come into the woods? And, O beauteous one, how hast thou fallen into this extreme misery?—And thus accosted, O monarch, by that man, Damayanti, O Bhārata, related unto him all that had happened. And beholding that beautiful woman clad in half a garment, with deep bosom and round hips, and limbs delicate and faultless, and face resembling the full moon, and eyes graced with curved eye-lashes,† and speech sweet as honey, the hunter became inflamed with desire. And afflicted by the god of love, the huntsman began to soothe her in a winning voice and soft words. And as soon as the chaste and beauteous Damayanti, beholding him, understood his intentions, she was filled with fierce wrath and seemed to blaze up in anger. But the wicked-minded wretch, burning with desire, became wroth, and attempted to employ force upon her, who was unconquerable as a flame of blazing fire. And Damayanti already distressed upon being deprived of husband and kingdom, in that hour of grief beyond utterance, cursed him in anger, saying,—Since‡ I have never even thought of any other person than Naishadha, therefore let this mean-minded wretch subsisting on chase fall down lifeless.—And as soon as she said this, the hunter fell down lifeless upon the ground, like a tree consumed by fire.'"

Thus ends the sixty-third Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

---

* *Nirvicheshtam* is lit. "moveless". Milman renders it, "the unresisting serpent." This is a mistake, the word being really a *predicative* adjective in the text.

† *Arālapakshma-nayanā*=eyes with curved eye-lashes, not, as Milman renders it, "eyes with brows dark-arching". *Pakshma* is the eyelashes. *Vide* Wilson's *Dict.*

‡ *Yathāham.* A different reading is *Yadyaham*="*If*" &c.

SECTION LXIV.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"Vrihadaçwa continued.—'Having destroyed that wild-beast hunter, Damayanti of eyes like lotus leaves, went onwards through that fearful and solitary forest ringing with the chirp of crickets. And it abounded with lions, and leopards, and *Rurus*, and tigers, and buffalos, and bears, and deer. And it swarmed with birds of various species, and was infested by thieves and *mlechchha* tribes. And it contained *Shālas*, and bamboos, and *Dhavas*, and *Açwathwas*, and *Tindukas*, and *Ingudas*, and *Kinçukas*, and *Arjunas*, and *Nimvas*, and *Tiniças*, and *Sālmalas*, and *Jamvus*, and mango trees, and *Lodhras*, and the catechu, and the cane, and *Padmakas*, and *Amalakas*, and *Plakshas*, and *Kadamvas*, and *Udumvaras*, and *Vadaris*, and *Vilwas*, and banians, and *Piyālas*, and palms, and date-trees, and *Haritakas*, and *Vibhitakas*. And the princess of Vidharbha saw many mountains containing ores of various kinds, and groves resounding with the notes of winged choirs, and many glens of wondrous sight, and many rivers and lakes and tanks, and various kinds of birds and beasts. And she saw numberless snakes and goblins and *Rākshasas* of grim visage, and pools and tanks, and hillocks, and brooks and fountains of wonderful appearance. And the princess of Vidharbha saw there herds of buffalos, and boars and bears, as well as serpents of the wilderness. And safe in virtue and glory and good fortune and patience, Damayanti wandered through those woods alone, in search of Nala. And the royal daughter of Bhima, distressed only at her separation from her lord, was not terrified at aught in that fearful forest. And, O king, seating herself down upon a stone, and filled with grief, and every limb of hers trembling with sorrow on account of her husband, she began to lament thus:—O king of the Nishadhas, O thou of broad chest and mighty arms, whither hast thou gone, O king, leaving me in this lone forest? O hero, having performed the *Açwamedha* and other sacrifices, with gifts in profusion (unto the Brāhmanas),

why hast thou, O tiger among men, played false with me alone? O best of men, O thou of great splendour, it behoveth thee, O auspicious one, to remember what thou hadst declared before me, O bull among kings! And, O monarch, it behoveth thee also to call to mind what the sky-ranging swans spake in thy presence and in mine! O tiger among men, the four Vedas in all their extent, with the Angas and the Upāngas, well-studied, on one side, and one single truth on the other, (are equal), therefore, O slayer of foes, it behoveth thee, O lord of men, to make good what thou didst formerly declare before me! Alas, O hero! O warrior! O Nala! O sinless one! being thine, I am about to perish! In this dreadful forest, Oh! wherefore dost thou not answer me? This terrible lord of the forest, of grim visage and gaping jaws, and famishing with hunger, filleth me with fright! Doth it not behove thee to deliver me? Thou didst use to say always,—*Save thee there existeth not one dear unto me.*—O blessed one, O king, do thou now make good thy words so oft spoken before! And, O king, why dost thou not return an answer to thy beloved wife bewailing and bereft of sense, although thou lovest her, being loved in return? O king of earth, O respected one, O repressor of foes, O thou of large eyes, why dost thou not regard me, emaciated, and distressed, and pale, and discolored, and clad in half a piece of cloth, and alone, and weeping, and lamenting like one forlorn, and like unto a solitary doe separated from the herd? O illustrious sovereign, it is I, Damayanti, devoted to thee, who, alone in this great forest, address thee! Wherefore, then, dost thou not reply unto me? Oh, I do not behold thee today on this mountain, O chief of men, O thou of noble birth and character and every limb possessed of grace!* In this terrible forest,

---

* The Rev. H. H. Milman regards this sentence to be interrogative, which, I fear, it is not. To take it as such would be unquestionably more poetic, but the succeeding sentence then would be out of place. Having said, "Do I not see thee" &c., it would be inconsistent of Damayanti to say, "Whom shall I ask" &c.

haunted by lions and tigers, O king of the Nishadhas, O foremost of men, O enhancer of my sorrows, (wishing to know) whether thou art lying down, or sitting, or standing, or gone, whom shall I ask, distressed and woe-striken on thy account, saying—*Hast thou seen in these woods the royal Nala?* Of whom shall I in this forest enquire after the departed Nala, handsome, and of high soul, and the destroyer of hostile arrays? * From whom shall I to-day hear the sweet words, *viz., That royal Nala, of eyes like lotus-leaves, whom thou seekest, is even here.—?* Yonder cometh the forest-king, that tiger of graceful mein, furnished with four teeth and prominent cheeks. Even him will I ask fearlessly.—Thou art the lord of all animals, and of this forest the king! Know me for Damayanti, the daughter of the king of the Vidharbhas, and the wife of Nala, destroyer of foes, and the king of the Nishadhas. Distressed and woe-striken, I am seeking my husband, alone in these woods. Do thou, O king of beasts, comfort me (with news of Nala), if thou hast seen him. Or, O lord of the forest, if thou cannot speak of Nala, do thou, then, O best of beasts, devour me, and free me from this misery. Alas! hearing my plaintive appeal in the wilderness, this king of beasts (heedeth me not but) hieth to the crystal river that rolleth towards the sea. † Let me, then, for tidings of the king, ask this king of mountains, this high and sacred hill, crested with innumerable heaven-kissing and many-hued and beauteous peaks, and abounding in various ores, and decked with gems of diverse kinds, and rising like a banner over this broad forest, and ranged by lions and tigers and elephants and boars and bears and stags, and echoing all around with (the notes of) winged creatures of various species, and adorned with *Kinsukas* and *Açokas* and *Vakulas* and *Punnāgas*, with blossoming *Karnikāras*, and *Dhavas* and *Plakshas*, and with streams haunted by water-

* Some editions read, *Konu me kathayedadya* &c. The variation is slight.

† There are some slight variations in the reading of the second half of this *Sloka*. They are not of much consequence.

fowls of every kind, and abounding in crested summits. O sacred one! O best of mountains! O thou of wondrous sight! O celebrated hill! O refuge (of the distressed)! O highly auspicious one! I bow to thee, O pillar of the earth! Approaching, I bow to thee. Know me for a king's daughter, and a king's daughter-in-law, and a king's consort, of name Damayanti. That lord of earth who ruleth the Vidharbhas, that mighty warrior—king Bhima by name,—who protecteth the four orders, is my sire. That best of kings celebrated the *Rājasuya* * and *Açwamedha* sacrifices, with profuse gifts to the Brāhmanas. Possessed of beautiful and large eyes, distinguished for devotion to the Vedas, of unblemished character, truth-telling, devoid of guile, gentle, endued with prowess, lord of immense wealth, versed in morality, and pure, he having vanquished all his foes, effectually protecteth the inhabitants of Vidharbha. Know me, O holy one, for his daughter, thus come to thee. That best of men—the celebrated ruler of the Nishadhas—known by the name of Virasena of high fame, was my father-in-law. The son of that king, heroic and handsome and possessed of energy incapable of being baffled, who ruleth well the kingdom which hath descended to him from his father, is named Nala. Know, O mountain, that of that slayer of foes, called also *Punyasloka*, possessed of the complexion of gold, and devoted to the Brāhmanas, and versed in the Vedas, and gifted with eloquence,—of that righteous and *Soma*-quaffing and Fire-adoring king, who celebrateth sacrifices and is liberal and warlike and who adequately chastiseth (criminals), I am the innocent spouse—the chief of his queens—standing before thee. Despoiled of prosperity, and deprived of (the company of my) husband, without a protector, and afflicted with calamity, hither have I come, O best of mountains, seeking my husband. Hast thou, O foremost of mountains, with thy hundreds of peaks towering (into the sky), seen king Nala in this frightful forest? Hast thou seen my husband, that ruler of the Nishadhas,

* Some texts read *Vājapeya* for *Rājasuya*. The former is a sacrifice less splendid than the latter.

the illustrious Nala, with the tread * of a mighty elephant, endued with intelligence, long-armed, and of fiery energy, possessed of prowess and patience and courage and high fame? Seeing me bewailing alone, overwhelmed with sorrow, wherefore, O best of mountains, dost thou not to-day soothe me with thy voice, as thy own daughter in distress? O hero, O warrior of prowess, O thou versed in every duty, O thou adhering to truth, O lord of earth, if thou art in this forest, then, O king, discover thyself unto me! Oh, when shall I again hear the voice of Nala, gentle and deep as that of the clouds, that voice, sweet as *Amrita*, of the illustrious king, calling me *Vidharbha's daughter*, with accents distinct, and holy, and musical as the chaunting of the Vedas, † and rich, and soothing all my sorrows. O king, I am frightened. Do thou, O virtuous one, comfort me!—

"'Having addressed that foremost of mountains thus, Damayanti then went in a northerly direction. And having proceeded three days and nights, that best of women came to an incomparable woody asylum of ascetics, resembling in beauty a celestial grove. And the charming asylum she beheld was inhabited and adorned by ascetics like Vaçishtha and Bhrigu and Atri, self-denying and strict in diet, with minds under control, endued with holiness, some living on water, some on air, and some on (fallen) leaves, with passions in check, eminently blessed, seeking the way to heaven, clad in barks of trees and deer-skins, and with senses subdued. And beholding that asylum inhabited by ascetics, and abound-

---

* *Gajendra-vikrâma. Vikrama* here means "tread", and not "prowess" as Milman renders it. It simply implies "of majestic tread," the elephant being regarded so by Hindu poets. The root of *vikrama* is *krama*, to take a step. Both *Gajendragāmini* and *Gajendra-vikrama* in this sense are very usual.

† *Amnāya-sārinim* is lit., "in imitation of the Vedas". Nilakantha, in his love for spiritual interpretations, explains this as meaning "truthful as the Vedas," which is rather far-fetched.

ing in herds of deer and monkeys, Damayanti was cheered. And that best of women, the innocent* and blessed Damayanti, with graceful eye-brows, and long tresses, with lovely hips and deep bosom, and face graced with fine teeth, † and with fine black and large eyes, in her brightness and glory entered that asylum. And saluting those ascetics grown old in practising austerities, she stood in an attitude of humility. And the ascetics living in that forest, said, *Welcome!* And those men of ascetic wealth, paying her due homage, said,—Sit thee down, and tell us what we may do for thee.—And that best of women replied unto them, saying,—Ye sinless and eminently blessed ascetics, is it well with your austerities, and sacrificial fire, and religious observances, and the duties of your own order? And is it well with the beasts and birds of this asylum?—And they answered,—O beauteous and illustrious lady, prosperity attendeth us in every respect. But, O thou of faultless limbs, tell us who thou art, and what thou seekest. Beholding thy beauteous form and thy bright splendour, we have been amazed. Cheer up and mourn not. Tell us, O blameless and blessed one, art thou the presiding deity of this forest, or of this mountain, or of this river?—Damayanti replied unto those ascetics, saying,—O Brāhmanas, I am not the goodess of this forest, or of this mountain, or of this stream. O Rishis of ascetic wealth, know that I am a human being. I will relate my history in detail. Do ye listen to me! There is a king—the mighty ruler of the Vidharbhas—Bhima by name. O foremost of regenerate ones, know that I am his daughter. The wise ruler of the Nishadhas, Nala by name, of great celebrity, heroic, and ever

---

* *Tapaswini* is lit. one leading an ascetic course of life. It very often means, however, innocent, or helpless. I prefer to take it in this sense, instead of regarding it as used in the sense of Damayanti leading an ascetic life in her search after Nala, (as some of the Bengali translators have chosen to understand it).

† *Sudwijānanā*. *Dwija* in this connection means *tooth*, *ie.* something that is twice-born.

victorious in battle, and learned, is my husband. Engaged in the worship of the gods, devoted to the twice-born ones, the guardian of the line of Nishadha, of mighty energy, possessed of great strength, truthful, conversant with all duties, wise, unwavering in promise, the crusher of foes, devout, serving the gods, graceful, the conqueror of hostile towns, that foremost of kings, Nala by name, equal in splendour unto the lord of celestials, the slayer of foes, possessed of large eyes, and a face resembling the full moon, is my husband. The celebrater of great sacrifices, versed in the Vedas and their branches, the destroyer of enemies in battle, and like unto the sun and the moon in splendour, is he. That king devoted to truth and religion was summoned to dice by certain deceitful persons of mean mind and uncultured soul and of crooked ways, and skilful in gambling, and was deprived of wealth and kingdom. Know that I am the wife of that bull among kings, known to all by the name of Damayanti, anxious to find out my (missing) lord. In sadness of heart am I wandering among woods, and mountains, and lakes, and rivers, and tanks, and forests, in search of that husband of mine—Nala, skilled in battle, high-souled, and well-versed in the use of weapons. O, hath king Nala, the lord of the Nishadhas, come to this delightful asylum of your holy selves? It is for him, O Brāhmanas, that I have come to this dreary forest full of terrors and haunted by tigers and other beasts. If I do not see king Nala within a few days and nights, I shall seek my good by renouncing this body. Of what use is my life without that bull among men? How shall I live afflicted with grief on account of my husband?—

"'Unto Bhima's daughter Damayanti, thus lamenting forlorn in that forest, the truth-telling* ascetics replied, saying, —O blessed and beauteous one, we see by ascetic power that the future will bring happiness to thee, and that thou wilt soon behold Naishadha. O daughter of Bhima, thou wilt behold Nala the lord of the Nishadhas, the slayer of foes,

* Some texts read *Satyadarçinas* for *Satyavādinas*. *Truth-seeing* or *prophetic* is certainly more in keeping with the spirit of the passage.

and the foremost of the virtuous, freed from distress. And, O blessed lady, thou wilt behold the king—thy lord—freed from all sins, and decked with all kinds of gems, and ruling the self-same city, and chastising his enemies, and striking terror into the hearts of foes, and gladdening the hearts of friends, and crowned with every blessing.—

"'Having spoken unto that princess—the beloved queen of Nala—the ascetics with their sacred fires and asylum vanished from sight. And beholding that mighty wonder, the daughter-in-law of king Virasena, Damayanti of faultless limbs, was struck with amazement. And she asked herself,—Was it a dream that I saw? What an occurrence hath taken place! Where are all those ascetics? And where is that asylum? Where, further, is that delightful river of sacred waters—the resort of diverse kinds of fowls? And where, again, are those charming trees decked with fruits and flowers?—* And after thinking so for sometime, Bhima's daughter, Damayanti of sweet smiles, melancholy and afflicted with grief on account of her lord, lost the color of her face (again). And going to another part of the wood, she saw an *açoka* tree. And approaching that first of trees in the forest, so charming with blossoms and its load of foliage, and resounding with the notes of birds, Damayanti, with tears in her eyes and accents choked in grief, began to lament, saying,—Oh, this graceful tree in the heart of the forest, decked in flowers, looketh beautiful, like a charming king of hills. O beauteous *açoka*, do thou speedily free me from grief.† Hast thou seen king Nala, the slayer of foes and the beloved husband of Damayanti, freed

* There is a slight variation in the reading of this *sloka* beginning with *kwa*. For *nānādwijanishevitā*, some texts read *nadidwijanishevitā*; and in the second line for *nadi te cha nagā &c.*, some texts read *punnyā te cha nagā &c.*

† Here is a play upon words in the original that cannot be rendered into any tongue not derived from Sanskrit. The pith of the passage is *O Açoka*, make me *viçokā!* *Viçokā*=freed from grief. The meaning also may be said to hinge upon the etymology of *açoka*, implying "without grief" or "freed from grief."

from fear and grief and obstacles? Hast thou seen my beloved husband, the ruler of the Nishadhas, clad in half a piece of cloth, with delicate skin,—that hero afflicted with woe and who hath come into this wilderness? O *Açoka* tree, do thou free me from grief! O *Açoka*, vindicate thy name, for *Açoka* meaneth *destroyer of grief.** And going round that tree thrice, with an afflicted heart, that best of women, Bhima's daughter, entered a more terrible part of the forest. And wandering in quest of her lord, Bhima's daughter beheld many trees and streams and delightful mountains, and many beasts and birds, and caves, and precipices, and many rivers of wonderful appearance. And as she proceeded, she came upon a broad way where she saw with wonder a body of merchants, with their horses and elephants, landing on the banks of a river, full of clear and cool water, and lovely and charming to behold, and broad, and covered with bushes of canes, and echoing with the cries of cranes and ospreys and *Chakravākas*, and abounding in tortoises and alligators and fishes, and studded with innumerable islets. And as soon as she saw that caravan, the beauteous and celebrated wife of Nala, wild like a mainac, oppressed with grief, clad in half a garment, lean and pale and smutted, and with hair covered with dust, drew near and entered into its midst. And beholding her, some fled in fear, and some became extremly anxious, and some cried aloud, and some laughed at her, and some hated her. And some, O Bhārata, felt pity for and even addressed her, saying,—O blessed one, who art thou, and whose? What seekest thou in the woods? Seeing thee here we have been terrified. Art thou human? Tell us truly, O blessed one, if thou art the goddess of this wood, or of this mountain, or of the points of the heaven. We seek thy protection. Art thou a female *Yaksha*, or a female *Rākshasa*, or a celestial damsel? O thou of faultless features, do thou bless us wholly and protect us! And, O blessed one, do thou so act that this caravan may soon go hence in prosperity and that the welfare of all of us may be secured!—Thus

* *Vide* note in Page 192.

addressed by that caravan, the princess Damayanti, devoted to her husband and oppressed by the calamity that had befallen him, answered, saying,—O leader of the caravan, ye merchants, ye youths, old men, and children, and ye that compose this caravan, know me for a human being! I am the daughter of a king, and the daughter-in-law of a king, and the consort also of a king, eager for the sight of my lord! The ruler of the Vidharbhas is my father, and my husband is the lord of the Nishadhas, named Nala. Even now I am seeking that unvanquished and blessed one. If ye have chanced to see my beloved one, king Nala, that tiger among men, that destroyer of hostile hosts, O, tell me quick!—Thereupon the leader of that great caravan, named Shuchi, replied unto Damayanti of faultless limbs, saying,—O blessed one, listen to my words! O thou of sweet smiles, I am a merchant, and the leader of this caravan. O illustrious lady, I have not seen any man of the name of Nala. In this extensive forest uninhabited by men, there are only elephants and leopards and buffalos, and tigers and bears and other animals. Except thee, I have not met with any man or woman here, so help us now Maṇibhadra,—the king of Yakshas!*—Thus addressed by them, she asked those merchants as well as the leader of the host, saying,—It behoveth ye to tell me whither this caravan is bound.—The leader of the band said,—O daughter of a great king, for purposes of profit this caravan is bound direct for the city of Suvāhu, the truth-telling† ruler of the Chedis!—'"

Thus ends the sixty-fourth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

---

* Maṇibhadra, the chief of Yakshas (next to Kuvera) is the tutelary deity of travellers and caravans passing through woods and mountains.

† A different reading is *Satya-darçinas.*

SECTION LXV.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"Vrihadaçwa said. 'Having heard the words of the leader of that caravan, Damayanti of faultless limbs proceeded with that caravan itself, anxious to behold her lord. And after having proceeded for many days the merchants saw a large lake fragrant with lotuses in the midst of that dense and terrible forest. And it was beautiful all over, and exceedingly delightful, (with banks) abounding in grass and fuel and fruits and flowers. And it was inhabited by various kinds of fowls and birds, and full of water that was pure and sweet. And it was cool and capable of captivating the heart. And the caravan, worn out with toil, resolved to halt there. And with the permission of their leader, they spread themselves around those beautiful woods. And that mighty caravan finding it was evening halted at that place. And (it came to pass that) at the hour of midnight when everything was hushed and still and the tired caravan had fallen asleep, a herd of elephants in going towards a mountain stream to drink of its water befouled by their temporal juice, saw that caravan as also the numerous elephants belonging to it. And seeing their domesticated fellows, the wild elephants infuriate and with the temporal juice trickling down, rushed impetuously at the former, with the intention of killing them. And the force of the rush of these elephants was hard to bear, like the impetuosity of peaks loosened from mountain summits rolling towards the ground. The rushing elephants found the forest paths to be all blocked up, for the goodly caravan was sleeping obstructing the paths around that lake of lotuses. And the elephants, all of a sudden, began to crush the men lying insensible on the ground. And uttering cries of *Oh!* and *Alas!* the merchants, blinded by sleep, fled, in order to escape that danger, to copses and woods for refuge.*

---

* For *Mahato-bhayāt* some texts *Vahavo-abhavan.* The former reading, however, is to be preferred.

And some were slain by the tusks, and some by the trunks, and some by the legs of those elephants.* And innumerable camels and horses were killed, and crowds of men on foot, running in fright, killed one another.† And uttering loud cries some fell down on the ground, and some in fear climbed on trees, and some dropped down on uneven ground. And, O king, thus accidentally attacked by that large herd of elephants, that goodly caravan suffered a great loss. [And there arose a tremendous uproar calculated to frighten the three worlds.—Lo ! a great fire hath broken out ! Rescue us ! Do ye speedily fly away ! Why do ye fly ? Take the heaps of jewels scattered around ! All this wealth is a trifle ! I do not speak falsely.—I tell you again, (exclaimed some one) think on my words O ye distracted ones !—With such exclamations they ran about in fright.—And Damayanti awoke in fear and anxiety, while that terrible slaughter was raging there. And beholding that slaughter capable of awakening the fear of all the worlds, and which was so unforeseen, the damsel of eyes like lotus leaves rose up, wild with fright, and almost out of breath. And those of the caravan that had escaped unhurt, met together, and asked one another,—Of what deed of ours is this the consequence ? Surely, we have failed to worship the illustrious Manibhadra, and likewise the exalted and graceful Vaisravana the king of the Yakshas ! Perhaps, we have not worshipped the deities that cause calamities, or, perhaps, we have not paid them the first homage. Or, perhaps, this evil is the certain consequence of the birds (we saw) ! Our stars are not unpropitious. From what other cause, then, hath this disaster come ?—Others, distressed and bereft of wealth and relatives, said,—That maniac-like woman

---

* For *Gajais* (pl. instrumental) some texts read *Narās*. The meaning is almost the same, the difference being only one of grammatical construction.

† For *Nihatoshtrāçwavahulās* some texts read *Gogajoshtrāçwavahulā* for *Padātijanasankulās*, *Padātinarasankulā*. In the second line of the *Sloka* also, there is a slight variation. The sense in either case is almost the same.

who came amongst this mighty caravan, in guise that was strange and scarcely human, alas, it is by her that this dreadful illusion had been pre-arranged. Of a certainty, she is a terrible Rākshasa or a Yaksha or a Piçācha woman. All this evil is her work, what need of doubts? If we again see that wicked destroyer of merchants, that giver of innumerable woes, we shall certainly slay that injurer of ours, with stones, and dust, and grass, and wood, and cuffs.—And hearing these dreadful words of the merchants, Damayanti, in terror and shame and anxiety, fled into the woods apprehensive of evil. And reproaching herself, she said,—Alas! fierce and great is the wrath of God on me! Peace followeth not in my track. Of what misdeed is this the consequence? I do not remember that I did ever so little a wrong to any one, in thought, word, or deed. Of what deed, then, is this the consequence? Certainly, it is on account of the great sins I had committed in a former life, that such calamity hath befallen me, *viz*, the loss of my husband's kingdom, his defeat at the hands of his own kinsman, this separation from my lord and my son and daughter, this my unprotected state, and my presence in this forest abounding in innumerable beasts of prey!] *—

"'The next day, O king, the remnant of that caravan left the place, bewailing the destruction that had overtaken them and lamenting for their dead brothers and fathers and sons and friends. And the princess of Vidharbha began to lament, saying,—Alas! What misdeed have I perpetrated! The crowd of men that I obtained in this lone forest, hath been destroyed by a herd of elephants, surely as a consequence of my ill luck. Without doubt, I shall have to suffer misery for a long time. I have heard from old men that no person dieth ere his time; it is for this that my miserable self hath not been trodden to death by that herd of elephants. Nothing that

---

* The whole of this passage beginning with "And" in the eighth line of page 196 and enclosed within brackets does not occur in every text. It bears, however, every mark of genuineness, and I have not accordingly omitted it.

befalleth men is due to anything else than Destiny,* for even in my childhood I did not commit any such sin in thought, word, or deed, whence might come this calamity. Methinks, I suffer this severance from my husband through the potency of those celestial *Lokapālas*, who had come to the *Swyamvara* but whom I disregarded for the sake of Nala!—Bewailing thus, O tiger among kings, that excellent lady, Damayanti, devoted to her husband, went, oppressed with grief and (pale) as the autumnal moon, with those Brāhmanas versed in the Vedas that had survived the slaughter of the caravan. And departing speedily, towards evening the damsel came to the mighty city of the truth-telling Suvāhu, the king of the Chedis. And she entered that excellent city, clad in half a garment. And the citizens saw her as she went, overcome with fear, and lean, and melancholy, her hair dishevelled, and soiled with dust, and maniac-like. And beholding her enter the city of the king of the Chedis, the boys of the city, from curiosity, began to follow her. And surrounded by them, she came before the palace of the king. And from the terrace the queen-mother saw her surrounded by the crowd. And she said to her nurse,—Go and bring that woman before me! She is forlorn and is being vexed by the crowd. She hath fallen into distress and standeth in need of succour. I find her beauty to be such that it illumineth my house. The fair one, though looking like a maniac, seemeth a very *Sree* with her large eyes!—Thus commanded, the nurse went out and dispersing the crowd brought Damayanti to that graceful terrace. And struck with wonder, O king, she asked Damayanti, saying,—Afflicted though thou art with such distress, thou ownest a beautiful form! Thou shinest like lightning in the midst of the clouds. Tell me who thou art, and whose! O thou possessed of celestial splendour, surely, thy beauty is not human, bereft though thou art of ornaments! And although thou art helpless yet thou art unmoved under the outrage of these men!—Hearing these words of the nurse, the daughter of Bhima said,—Know that I am a female belonging to the human species and devot-

*As depending upon the acts of past lives, for *daiva* includes *prāchtana*.

ed to my husband. I am a serving-woman, of good lineage. I live wherever I like, subsisting on fruits and roots, and without a companion, and stay where evening overtaketh me. My husband is the owner of countless virtues, and was ever devoted to me. And I also, on my part, was deeply attached to him, following him like his shadow. It chanced that once he became desperately engaged at dice. Defeated at dice, he came alone into the forest. I accompanied my husband into the woods, comforting the hero clad in a single piece of cloth and maniac-like and overwhelmed with calamity. Once on a time for some cause, that hero, afflicted with hunger and thirst and grief, was forced to abandon that sole piece of covering in the forest. Destitute of garment and maniac-like and deprived of his senses as he was, I followed him, myself in a single garment. Following him, I did not sleep for nights together. Thus passed many days, until at last while I was sleeping, he cut off half of my cloth, and forsook me who had done him no wrong. I am seeking my husband, but unable to find him who is of hue like the filaments of the lotus, without being able to cast my eyes on that delight of my heart, that dear lord who owneth my heart and resembleth the celestials in mien, day and night do I burn in grief!—

"'Unto Bhima's daughter thus lamenting with tearful eyes, and afflicted and speaking in accents choked in grief, the queen-mother herself said,—O blessed damsel, do thou stay with me. I am well pleased with thee. O fair lady, my men shall search for thy husband. Or, perhaps, he may come here of his own accord in course of his wanderings. And, O beautiful lady, residing here thou wilt regain thy (lost) lord!—Hearing these words of the queen-mother, Damayanti replied,—O mother of heroes, I may stay with thee on certain conditions! I shall not eat the remnants of any dish, nor shall I wash anybody's feet, nor shall I have to speak with other men. And if anybody shall seek me (as a wife or mistress) he should be liable to punishment at thy hands. And, further, should he solicit me over and over again, that wicked one should be punished with death. This is the vow I have made. I intend to have an interview with those Brāhmanas that will set out to search

for my husband.—If thou canst do all this, I shall certainly live with thee! If it is otherwise, I cannot find it in my heart to reside with thee.—The queen-mother answered her with a glad heart, saying,—I will do all this. Thou hast done well in adopting such a vow!—' "

" Vrihadaçwa continued, 'O king, having spoken so unto the daughter of Bhima, the queen-mother, O Bhārata, said to her daughter named Sunandā,—O Sunandā, accept this lady like a goddess as thy *Sairindhri*!* Let her be thy companion, as she is of the same age with thee. Do thou, with heart free from care, always sport with her in joy.—And Sunandā cheerfully accepted Damayanti and led her to her own apartments accompanied by her associates. And treated with respect, Damayanti was satisfied, and she continued to reside there without anxiety of any kind, for all her wishes were duly gratified. "

Thus ends the sixty-fifh Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXVI.

(*Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.*)

" Vrihadaçwa said. 'O monarch, having deserted Damayanti, king Nala saw a mighty conflagration that was raging in that dense forest. And in the midst of that conflagration, he heard the voice of some creature, repeatedly crying aloud,—O righteous Nala, come hither.—And answering,—Fear not,—he entered into the midst of the fire and beheld a mighty *Nāga* lying in coils. And the Nāga with joined hands, and trembling, spake unto Nala, saying,—O king, know that I

---

* A *Sairindhri* was a serving woman of a superior order retained more as a companion than a maid-servant. She would undertake no kind of menial labor, the offices employing her being the making of floral wreaths, the preparation of sandal paste, the binding of braids, and generally to attend to the toilette of the queen or her daughter. Regarding food and treatment, serving women of this class were better treated, in fact, almost as equals. They were like the bed-chamber women of the royal house-holds of Europe.

am a snake, Karkotaka by name! I had deceived the great Rishi Nārada of high ascetic merit, and by him have I been cursed in wrath, O king of men, even in words such as these:—*Stay thou here like an immobile thing, until one Nala taketh thee hence. And, indeed, on the spot to which he will carry thee, there shalt thou be freed from my curse!* It is for that curse of his that I am unable to stir one step. I will instruct thee in respect of thy welfare. It behoveth thee to deliver me. I will be thy friend. There is no snake equal to me. I will be light in thy hands. Taking me up, do thou speedily go hence!—Having said this, that prince of snakes became as small as the thumb. And taking him up, Nala went to a spot free from fire. And having reached an open where there was no fire, Nala intended to drop the serpent, upon which Karkotaka again addressed him, saying,—O king of the Nishadhas, proceed thou yet, counting a few steps of thine, meanwhile, O mighty-armed one, I will do thee great good!—And as Nala began to count his steps, the snake bit him at the tenth step.* And, lo! as he was bit, his form speedily underwent a change. And beholding his change of form, Nala was amazed. And the king saw the snake also assume his own form. And the snake Karkotaka, comforting Nala, spake unto him,—I have deprived thee of thy beauty, so that people may not recognise thee. And, O Nala, he by whom thou hast been deceived and cast into distress, shall dwell in thee tortured by my venom. And, O monarch, as long as he doth not leave thee, he will have to dwell in pain in thy body with every limb filled with my venom. And, O ruler of men, I have saved thee from the hands of him who from anger and hate deceived thee, perfectly innocent though thou art and undeserving of wrong! And, O tiger among men, through my grace, thou shalt have

---

* When Nala began to count his steps, he began to say, *one, two, &c., ten.* The Sanskrit word for ten in *daça* which again is equivalent to *bite* (in the imperative). The snake felt a delicacy in biting the king without being commanded to do so. And hence his bite at the tenth step. Even thus Nilakantha.

(no longer) any fear from animals with fangs, from enemies, and from Brāhmanas also versed in the Vedas, O king! Nor shalt thou, O monarch, feel pain on account of my poison. And O foremost of kings, thou shalt be ever victorious in battle! This very day, O prince, O lord of the Nishadhas, go to the delightful city of Ayodhya, and present thyself before Rituparna skilled in gambling, saying, *I am a charioteer, Vāhuka by name.* And that king will give thee his skill in dice for thy knowledge of horses. Sprung from the line of Ikswāku, and possessed of prosperity, he will be thy friend. When thou wilt be an adept at dice, thou shalt then have prosperity. Thou wilt also meet with thy wife and thy children, and regain thy kingdom. I tell thee this truly. Therefore, let not thy mind be occupied by sorrow. And, O lord of men, when thou shouldst desire to behold thy proper form, thou shouldst remember me, and wear this garment! Upon wearing this, thou shalt get back thy own form!—And saying this, that Nāga then gave unto Nala two pieces of celestial cloth. And, O son of the Kuru race, having thus instructed Nala, and presented him with the attire, the king of snakes, O monarch, made himself invisible there and then!'"

Thus ends the sixty-sixth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

Section LXVII.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"Vrihadaçwa said. 'After the snake had vanished, Nala, the ruler of the Nishadhas, proceeded, and on the tenth day entered the city of Rituparna. And he approached the king, saying,—My name is Vāhuka. There is no one in this world equal to me in managing steeds. My counsel also should be sought in matters of difficulty and in all affairs of skill. I also surpass others in the art of cooking. In all those arts that exist in this world, and also in everything difficult of accomplishment, I will strive to attain success. O Rituparna, do thou maintain me!—And Rituparna replied,—O Vāhuka, stay with me! May good betide thee! Thou wilt even per-

form all this. I have always particularly desired to be driven fast. Do thou concert such measures that my steeds may become fleet! I appoint thee the superintendent of my stables. Thy pay shall be ten thousand (coins). Both Vārshneya and Jivala shall always be under thy direction. Thou wilt live pleasantly in their company. Therefore, O Vāhuka, stay thou with me!—'

"Vrihadaçwa continued. 'Thus addressed by the king, Nala began to dwell in the city of Rituparna, treated with respect, and with Vārshneya and Jivala as his companions. And residing there, the king (Nala), remembering the princess of Vidharva, recited every evening the following *sloka,—Where lieth that helpless one afflicted with hunger and thirst and worn with toil, thinking of that wretch? And upon whom also doth she now wait?* And once as the king was reciting this in the night, Jivala asked him saying,—O Vāhuka, whom dost thou lament thus daily? I am curious to hear it. O thou blest with length of days, whose spouse is she whom thou thus lamentest?—Thus questioned, king Nala answered him, saying,—A certain person devoid of sense had a wife well-known to many. That wretch was false in his promises. For some reason that wicked person was separated from her. Separated from her, that wretch wandered about oppressed with woe, and burning with grief he resteth not by day or night. And at night, remembering her, he singeth this *sloka.* Having wandered over the entire world, he hath at last found a refuge, and undeserving of the distress that hath befallen him, he passeth his days, thus remembering his wife. When calamity had overtaken this man, his wife followed him into the woods. Deserted by that man of little virtue, her life itself is in danger. Alone, without knowledge of ways, ill able to bear distress, and fainting with hunger and thirst, the girl can hardly protect her life. And, O friend, she hath been deserted by that man of small fortune and having little sense, in the wide and terrible forest, ever abounding in beasts of prey!—

"'Thus remembering Damayanti, the king of the Nishadhas continued to live unknown in the abode of that monarch!'"

Thus ends the sixty-seventh Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXVIII.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"Vrihadaçwa said. 'After Nala, despoiled of his kingdom, had, with his wife, become a bondsman, Bhima with the desire of seeing Nala, sent out Brāhmanas to search for him. And giving them profuse wealth, Bhima, enjoined them, saying,—Do ye search for Nala, and also for my daughter Damayanti! He who achieveth this task, *viz*, ascertaining where the ruler of the Nishadhas is, bringeth him and my daughter hither, will obtain from me a thousand kine, and fields, and a village resembling a town. Even if failing to bring Damayanti and Nala here, he that succeeds in learning their whereabouts, will get from me the wealth represented by a thousand kine.—Thus addressed, the Brāhmanas cheerfully went out in all directions, seeking Nala and his wife in cities and provinces. But Nala or his spouse they found not anywhere. Until at length searching in the beautiful city of the Chedis, a Brāhmana named Sudeva, during the time of the king's prayers, saw the princess of Vidharbha in the palace of the king, seated with Sunandā. And her incomparable beauty was slightly perceptible, like the brightness of a fire enveloped in curls of smoke. And beholding that lady of large eyes, soiled and emaciated, he decided her to be Damayanti, coming to that conclusion from various reasons. And Sudeva said,—As I saw her before, this damsel is even so at present. O, I am blest, by casting my eyes on this fair one, like *Sree* herself delighting all the worlds! Resembling the full moon, of unchanging youth,* of well-rounded breasts, illumining all sides by her splendour, possessed of large eyes like beautiful lotuses, like unto Kāma's

---

* The word in the text as *çyama* which means a damsel always appearing sixteen. So Nilakantha. Others say that it means a woman having a body warm in winter and cool in summer and having also a a slender waist, together with many other virtues.

Rati herself, the delight of all the worlds like the rays of the full Moon, O, she looketh like a lotus stalk transplanted by adverse fortune from the Vidharbha lake and covered with mire in the process. And oppressed with grief on account of her husband, and malancholy, she looketh like the night of the full moon when Rāhu hath swallowed that luminary, or like a stream whose current hath dried up. Her plight is very much like that of a ravaged lake with the leaves of its lotuses crushed by the trunks of elephants, and with its birds and fowls affrighted by the invasion. Indeed, this girl, of a delicate frame, and of lovely limbs, and deserving to dwell in a mansion decked with gems, is (now) like an uprooted lotus-stalk scorched by the Sun. Endued with beauty and generosity of nature, and destitute of ornaments though deserving of them, she looketh like the Moon 'new bent in heaven' but covered with black clouds. Destitute of comforts and luxuries, separated from loved ones and friends, she liveth in distress, supported by the hope of beholding her lord. Verily, the husband is the best ornament of a woman however destitute of ornaments. Without her husband beside her, this lady, though beautiful, shineth not. It is a hard feat achieved by Nala in that he liveth without succumbing to grief, though separated from such a wife. Beholding this damsel, possessed of black hair and of eyes like lotus-leaves, in woe though deserving of bliss, even my heart is pained! Alas! when shall this girl graced with auspicious marks and devoted to her husband, crossing this ocean of woe, regain the company of her lord, like Rohini* regaining the Moon's? Surely, the king of the Nishadhas will experience in regaining her the delight that a king deprived of his kingdom experienceth in regaining his kingdom. Equal to her in nature and age and extraction, Nala deserveth the daughter of Vidharbha, and this damsel of black eyes also deserveth him. It behoveth me to comfort the queen of that hero of immeasurable prowess and endued with energy and might, (since) she is so eager of beholding her husband. I will console this afflicted girl

* Rohini is the wife of the Moon.

of face like the full Moon, and suffering distress that she had never before endued, and ever meditating on her lord.—'

"Vrihadaçwa continued. 'Having thus reflected on these various circumstances and signs, the Brāhmana, Sudeva, approached Damayanti, and addressed her, saying,—O princess of Vidharbha, I am Sudeva, the dear friend of thy brother! I have come here, seeking thee, at the desire of king Bhima. Thy father is well, and also thy mother, and thy brothers. And thy son and daughter, blessed with length of days, are living in peace. Thy relatives, though alive, are almost dead on thy account, and hundreds of Brāhmanas are ranging the world in search of thee!—'

"Vrihadaçwa continued. 'O Yudhishthira, Damayanti recognising Sudeva, asked him respecting all her relatives and kindred one after another. And, O monarch, oppressed with grief, the princess of Vidharbha began to weep bitterly, at the unexpected sight of Sudeva, that foremost of Brāhmanas and the friend of her brother. And, O Bhārata beholding Damayanti weeping, and conversing in private with Sudeva, Sunandā was distressed, and going to her mother informed her, saying,—*Sairindhri* is weeping bitterly in the presence of Brāhmana. If thou like, satisfy thyself! And thereupon the mother of the king of the Chedis, issuing from the inner apartments of the palace, came to the place where the girl (Damayanti) was with that Brāhmana. Then calling Sudeva, O king, the queen-mother asked him,—Whose wife is this fair one, and whose daughter? How hath this lady of beautiful eyes, been deprived of the company of her relatives and of her husband as well? And how also hast thou come to know this lady fallen into such a plight? I wish to hear all this in detail from thee. Do thou truly relate unto me who am asking thee about this damsel of celestial beauty!—Then, O king, thus addressed by the queen-mother, Sudeva, that best of Brāhmanas, sat at his ease, and began to relate the true history of Damayanti!'"

Thus ends the sixty-eighth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXIX.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

" 'Sudeva said,—There is a virtuous and illustrious ruler of the Vidharvas, Bhima by name. This blessed lady is his daughter, and widely known by the name of Damayanti. And there is a king ruling the Nishadhas, named Nala the son of Virasena. This blessed lady is the wife of that wise and righteous monarch. Defeated at dice by his brother, and despoiled of his kingdom, that king, accompanied by Damayanti, went away without the knowledge of any one. We have been wandering over the whole earth in search of Damayanti. And that girl is at last found in the house of thy son. No woman existeth that is her rival in beauty. Between the eye-brows of this ever-youthful damsel, there is an excellent mole from birth, resembling a lotus. Noticed by us (before) it seems to have disappeared, covered (as her forehead is) with (a coat of) dust even like the Moon hid in clouds. Placed there by the Creator himself as an indication of prosperity and wealth, that mole is visible faintly, like the cloud-covered lunar crescent of the first day of the lighted fortnight. And covered as her body is with dust, her beauty hath not disappeared. Though careless of her person, it is still manifest, and shineth like gold. And this girl—goddess-like—capable of being identified by this form of hers and that male, hath been discovered by me as one discovereth a fire that is covered, by its heat !—'

" 'O king, hearing these words of Sudeva, Sunandā washed the dust that covered the mole between Damayanti's eye-brows. And thereupon it became visible like the Moon in the sky, just emerged from the clouds. And seeing that mole, O Bhārata, Sunandā and the queen-mother began to weep, and embracing Damayanti stood silent for a while. And the queen-mother, shedding tears as she spoke, said in gentle accents,—By this thy mole, I find that thou art the daughter of my sister. O beauteous girl, I and thy mother are both daughters of the high-souled Sudāman, the ruler of the

Daçārnas. She was bestowed upon king Bhima, and I on Viravāhu. I witnessed thy birth at our father's palace in the country of the Daçārnas. O beautiful one, my house is to thee even as thy father's. And this wealth, O Damayanti, is thine as much as mine !—At this, O king, Damayanti bowing down to her mother's sister with a glad heart, spake unto her these words,—Unrecognised, I have still lived happily with thee, every want of mine satisfied and myself cared for by thee ! And happy as my stay hath been, it would, without doubt, be happier still. But, mother, I have long been an exile. It behoveth thee, therefore, to grant me permission (to depart). My son and daughter, sent to my father's palace, are living there. Deprived of their father, and of their mother also, how are they passing their days stricken with sorrow ! If thou wishest to do what is agreeable to me, do thou, without loss of time, order a vehicle for I wish to go to the Vidharbhas !—At this, O king, the sister of (Damayanti's) mother, with a glad heart, said, *So be it.* And the queen-mother, with her son's permission, O chief of the Bhāratas, sent Damayanti in a handsome litter carried by men, protected by a large escort and provided with food and drink and garments of the first quality. And soon enough she reached the country of the Vidharbhas. And all her relatives, rejoicing (in her arrival) received her with respect. And seeing her relatives, her children, both her parents, and all her maids, to be well, the illustrious Damayanti, O king, worshipped the gods and Brāhmanas according to the most superior method. And the king, rejoiced at beholding his daughter, gave unto Sudeva a thousand kine and much wealth and a village. And, O king, having spent that night at her father's mansion and recovered from fatigue, Damayanti addressed her mother, saying,—O mother, if thou wishest me to live, I tell thee truly, do thou endeavour to bring Nala, that hero among men !—Thus addressed by Damayanti, the venerable queen became filled with sorrow. And bathed in tears, she was unable to give any answer. And beholding her in that plight, all the inmates of the inner apartments broke out into exclamations of *Oh!* and *Alas!* and began to cry bitterly. And

then the queen addressed the mighty monarch Bhima, saying,—Thy daughter Damayanti mourneth on account of her husband. Nay, banishing away all bashfulness, she hath herself, O king, declared her mind to me, Let thy men strive to find out (Nala) the righteous !—Thus informed by her, the king sent the Brāhmanas under him in all drrections, saying, *Exert ye to discover Nala!* And those Brahmanas, commanded by the ruler of the Vidharvas (to seek Nala), appeared before Damayanti and told her of the journey they were about to undertake. And Bhima's daughter spake unto them saying,—Do ye cry in every realm, and in every assembly,—*O beloved gambler, where hast thou gone, cutting off half of my garment, and deserting thy dear and devoted wife asleep in the forest? And that girl, as commanded by thee, stayeth expecting thee, clad in half a piece of cloth and burning with grief! O king, O hero, relent towards and answer her who incessantily weepeth for that grief!* This and more ye will say, so that he may be inclined to pity me. Assisted by the wind, fire consumeth the forest. (Further, ye will say that) *the wife is always to be protected and maintained by the husband. Why then, good as thou art and acquainted with every duty, hast thou neglected both the duties? Possessed of fame and wisdom, and lineage, and kindness, why hast thou been unkind? I fear, this is owing to the loss of my good luck! Therefore, O thou tiger among men, have pity on me, O bull among men! I have heard it from thee that kindness is the highest virtue!* Speaking so, if anybody answereth you, that person should by all means, be known, and ye should learn who he is, and where he dwelleth. And ye foremost of regenerate ones, do ye bring me the words of him who hearing this speech of ye will chance to answer ye! Ye should also act with such care that no one may know the words ye utter to be at my command, nor that ye will come back to me! And ye should also learn whether the man that answers is wealthy, or poor, or destitute of power, in fact all about him!—'

"'Thus instructed by Damayanti, O king, the Brāhmanas set out in all directions in search of Nala overtaken with such disaster. And the Brāhmanas, O king, searched for him in

cities and kingdoms and villages, and asylums of ascetics, and places inhabited by cow-herds. And, O monarch, wherever they went they recited the speeches that Damayanti had directed them to do.' "

Thus ends the sixty-ninth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXX.

(*Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.*)

" Vrihadaçwa said. 'After a long time had passed away, a Brāhmana named Parnāda returned to the city (of the Vidarbhas), and said unto the daughter of Bhima,—O Damayanti, seeking Nala, the king of Nishadhas, I came to the city of Ayodhyā, and appeared before Bhangāsuri! And, O best of women, I repeated those words of thine in the presence of the blessed Rituparna. But hearing them neither that ruler of men, nor his courtiers, answered anything although I uttered them repeatedly. Then, after I had been dismissed by the monarch, I was accosted by a person in the service of Rituparna, named Vāhuka. And Vāhuka is the charioteer of that king, of unsightly appearance and possessed of short arms. And he is skilful in driving with speed, and well acquainted with the art of cookery. And sighing frequently, and weeping again and again, he inquired about my welfare and afterwards said these words,—Chaste women, although fallen into distress, yet protect themselves, and thus certainly secure heaven. Although they may be deserted by their lords, they do not yet become angry on that account, for women that are chaste lead thin lives, encased in the armour of virtuous behaviour. It behoveth her not to be angry, since he that deserted her was overwhelmed with calamity, and deprived of every bliss. A beauteous and virtuous woman should not be angry with one that was deprived by birds of his garment while striving to procure sustenance and who is being consumed with grief. Whether treated well or ill, such a wife should never indulge in ire, beholding her husband in that plight,—despoiled of kingdom and destitute of prosperity,

oppressed with hunger and overwhelmed with calamity!—Hearing these words of his, I have speedily come here. Thou hast now heard all. Do what thou thinkest proper, and inform the king of it!

"'O king, having heard these words of Parnāda, Damayanti with tearful eyes came to her mother, and spake unto her in private,—O mother, king Bhima should not, by any means, be made acquainted with my purpose. In thy presence will I employ that best of Brāhmanas, Sudeva! If thou desirest my welfare, act in such a way that king Bhima may not know my purpose. Let Sudeva without delay go hence to the city of Ayodhya, for the purpose of bringing Nala, O mother, having performed the same auspicious rites by virtue of which he had speedily brought me into the midst of friends!—With these words, after Parnāda had recovered from fatigue, the princess of Vidarbha worshipped him with profuse wealth, and also said,—When Nala will come here, O Brāhmana, I will bestow on thee wealth in abundance again! Thou hast done me immense service which none else, indeed, can do me, for, (owing to that service of thine) O thou best of the regenerate ones, I shall speedily regain my (lost) lord!—And thus addressed by Damayanti, that high-minded Brāhmana comforted her, uttering benedictory words of auspicious import, and then went home, regarding his mission to have been successful. And after he had gone away, Damayanti oppressed with grief and distress, calling Sudeva, addressed him, O Yudhishthira, in the presence of her mother, saying,—O Sudeva, go thou to the city of Ayodhyā, straight as a bird, and tell king Rituparna living there, these words;—Bhima's daughter, Damayanti will hold another *Swayamvara*. All the kings and princes are hieing thither. Calculating the time, I find that the ceremony will take place tomorrow. O repressor of foes, if it is possible for thee, go thither without delay! Tomorrow, after the sun hath risen, she will choose a second husband, as she doth not know whether the heroic Nala liveth or not!—And addressed by her, O monarch thus, Sudeva set out. And he said unto Rituparna, all that he had been directed to say.'"

Thus ends the seventieth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXI.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

Vrihadaçwa continued. 'Having heard the words of Sudeva, king Rituparna, soothing Vāhuka with gentle words, said,—O Vāhuka, thou art well-skilled in training and guiding horses. If it pleases thee, I intend to go to Damayanti's *Swayamvara* in course of a single day !—Thus addressed, O son of Kunti, by that king, Nala felt his heart to be bursting in grief. And the high-souled king seemed toburn in sorrow. And he thought within himself,—Perhaps, Damayanti in doing this is blinded by sorrow. Or, perhaps, she hath conceived this magnificient scheme for my sake. Alas, cruel is the deed that the innocent princess of Vidarbha intends to do, having been deceived by my sinful and low self of little sense. It is seen in the world that the nature of woman is inconstant. My offence also hath been great; perhaps she is acting so because she hath no longer any love for me owing to my separation from her.* Indeed, that girl of slender waist, afflicted with grief on my account and with despair, will not certainly do any thing of the kind, when, especially, she is the mother of offspring (by me). However, whether this is true or false, I shall ascertain with certitude by going thither. I will, therefore, accomplish Rituparna's and my own purpose also.—Having resolved thus in his mind, Vāhuka, with heart in sorrow, spake unto king Rituparana, with joined hands, saying,—O monarch, I bow to thy behest, and, O tiger among men, I will go to the city of the Vidarbhas in a single day, O king! Then, O monarch, at the command of the royal son of Bhan-

---

* There is a substantial difference of reading here. The reading I prefer is *Vivāsādgatasouhridā*—her love (for me) extinguished (or lost) owing to separation. This naturally follows the king's exclamation about the inconstancy of woman. The other reading is *Vivasā gatā-souhridā*, the first word meaning "without self-control."

gāsura, Vāhuka went to the stables and began to examine the horses. And repeatedly urged by Rituparna to make haste, Vāhuka after much scrutiny and careful deliberation, selected some steeds that were lean-fleshed yet strong and capable of a long journey and endued with energy and strength, of high breed and docility, free from inauspicious marks, with wide nostrils and swelling cheeks, free from faults as regards the ten hairy curls, born in (the country of) Sindhu, and fleet as the winds. And seeing those horses, the king said somewhat angrily,—What is this, that thou wishest to do ? Thou shouldst not jest with us. How can these horses of mine, weak in strengh and breath, carry us ? And how shall we be able to go this long way by help of these ?—Vāhuka replied,—Each of these horses bears one curl on his forehead, two on his temples, four on his sides, four on his chest, and one on his back.* Without doubt, these steeds will be able to go to the country of the Vidarbhas. If, O king, thou thinkest of choosing others, point them out and I shall yoke them for thee !—Rituparna rejoined,—O Vāhuka, thou art versed in the science of horses, and art also skilful (in guiding them.) Do thou speedily yoke those that thou thinkest to be able ! Thereupon the skilful Nala yoked unto the car four excellent steeds of good breed that were, besides, docile and fleet. And after the steeds had been yoked, the king without loss of time mounted upon the car, when those best of horses fell down upon the ground on their knees. Then, O king, that foremost of men, the blessed king Nala began to soothe those horses endued with energy and strength. And raising them up with the reins, and making the charioteer Vārshneya sit on the car, he prepared to set out with great speed. And those best of steeds, duly urged by Vāhuka, rose to the sky, confounding the occupant of the vehicle. And beholding those steeds gifted with the speed of the wind thus drawing the car, the blessed king of Ayodhyā was exceedingly amazed. And noticing the rattle of the car and also the management of the

* Some texts omit this *Sloka*. It is, however, noticed by Nilakantha who explains this, counting in all twelve curls.

steeds, Vārshneya reflected upon Vāhuka's skill in guiding horses. And he thought,—Is he Mātali, the charioteer of the king of the celestials? I find the same magnificient indications in the heroic Vāhuka. Or, hath Salihotra versed in the science of horses taken this human shape so beautiful? Or, is it king Nala the reducer of hostile towns that hath come here? Or, it may be that this Vāhuka knoweth the science that Nala knoweth, for I perceive that the knowledge of Vahuka is equal to that of Nala. Further, Vāhuka and Nala are of the same age. This one, again, may not be Nala of high prowess, but somebody of equal knowledge. Illustrious persons, however, walk this earth in disguise in consequence of misfortune, or agreeably to the ordinance of the scriptures. That this person is of unsightly appearance need not change my opinion; for Nala, I think, may even be despoiled of his personal features. In respect of age this one equals Nala. There is difference, however, in personal appearance. Vāhuka, again, is endued with every accomplishment. I think, therefore, he is Nala. Having thus reasoned long in his mind, O mighty monarch, Vārshneya, the (former) charioteer of the righteous Nala, became absorbed in thought. And that foremost of kings Rituparna, also, beholding the skill of Vāhuka in equestrian science, experienced great delight, along with his charioteer Vārshneya. And thinking of Vāhuka's application and ardour and the manner of his holding the reins, the king felt exceedingly glad.' "

Thus ends the seventy-first Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXII.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

" Vrihadaçwa said. 'Like a bird coursing through the sky, Nala soon crossed rivers and mountains, and woods, and lakes. And while the car was coursing thus, that conqueror of hostile cities, the royal son of Bhangāsura, saw his upper garment drop down on the ground. And as soon as his garment had dropped down, the high-minded monarch, without loss

of time, told Nala,—I intend to recover it. O thou of profound intelligence, restrain these steeds endued with exceeding swiftness until Vārshneya bringeth back my garment! —Thereupon Nala replied unto him,—Thy sheet is dropped down far away. We have travelled one *yojana** thence. Therefore, it is incapable of being recovered.—After Nala had addressed him thus, O king, the royal son of Bhangāsura came upon a *Vibhitaka* tree with fruits in a forest. And seeing that tree, the king hastily said to Vāhuka,—O charioteer, do thou also behold my high proficiency in calculation! All men do not know every thing. There is no one that is versed in every knowledge. Knowledge in its entirety is not found in any one person. O Vāhuka, the leaves and fruits of this tree that are lying on the ground respectively exceed those that are on it by one hundred and one. The two branches of the tree have fifty millions of leaves, and two thousand and ninety five fruits. Do thou examine these two branches and all their boughs!—Thereupon staying the car, Vāhuka addressed the king, saying,—O crusher of foes, thou takest credit to thyself in a matter which is beyond my perception. But, O monarch, I will ascertain it by the direct evidence of my senses, by cutting down the *Vibhitaka.* O king, when I actually count, it will no longer be matter of speculation. Therefore, in thy presence, O monarch. I will hew down this Vibhitaka! I do not know whether it be or be not (as thou hast said). In thy presence, O ruler of men, I will count the fruits and leaves. Let Vārshneya hold the reins of the horses for a while.—Unto the charioteer the king replied,—There is no time to lose.—But Vāhuka answered with humility,—Stay thou a short space, or, if thou art in a hurry, go then, making Vārshneya thy charioteer. The road lies direct and even.—And at this, O son of the Kuru race, soothing Vāhuka, Rituparna said,—O Vāhuka, thou art the only charioteer, there is none other in this world! And, O thou versed in horse-lore, it is through thy help that I expect to go to the Vidarbhas! I place

* About nine miles. Some say, it is only 5 miles, or, even 4 miles and a half. *Vide* Wilson's *Dict.*

myself in thy hands. It behoveth thee not to cause any obstacle ! And, O Vāhuka, whatever thy wish I will grant it if taking me to the country of the Vidarbhas, today thou makest me see the sun rise !—At this, Vāhuka answered him, saying,—After having counted (the leaves and fruits of the) *Vibhitaka*, I shall proceed to Vidarbha, do thou agree to my words ! Then the king reluctantly told him,—Count. And on counting the leaves and fruits of a portion of this branch, thou wilt be satisfied of the truth of my assertion !—And thereupon Vāhuka speedily alighted from the car, and felled that tree. And struck with amazement upon finding the fruits, after calculation, to be what the king had said, he addressed the king, saying,,—O monarch, this thy power is wonderful ! I desire, O prince, to know the art by which thou hast ascertained all this !—And at this, the king, intent upon proceeding speedily, said unto Vāhuka,—Know that I am proficient at dice besides being versed in numbers !—And Vāhuka said unto him,—Impart unto me this knowledge, and, O bull among men, take from me my knowledge of horses !—And king Rituparna, having regard to the importance of the act that depended upon Vāhuka's good-will, and tempted also by the horse-lore (that his charioteer possessed), said.—So be it. As solicited by thee, receive this science of dice from me, and, O Vāhuka, let my equine science remain with thee in trust !—And saying this, Rituparna imparted unto Nala the science (he desired). And Nala upon becoming acquainted with the science of dice, Kali came out of his body, incessantly vomitting from his mouth the virulent poison of Karkotaka ! And when Kali, afflicted (by Damayanti's curse), came out (of Nala's body) the fire of that curse also left Kali. Indeed, long had been the time for which the king had been afflicted by Kali, as if he were of unregenerate soul. And freed from the poison, Kali regained his native form. And Nala the ruler of the Nishadhas, in wrath, was bent upon cursing Kali, when the latter, frightened, and trembling, said with joined hands,—control thy wrath, O king ! I will render thee illustrious ! Indrasena's mother had formerly cursed me in anger when she had been deserted by thee ! Ever

since that time undergoing sore affliction I resided in thee, O mighty monarch, O unconquered one, miserably and burning night and day with the venom of the prince of snakes ! I seek thy protection ! If thou dost not curse me who am affrighted and seek thy protection, then those men that will attentively recite thy history, shall be even free from fear on my account ! —And thus addressed by Kali, king Nala controlled his wrath. And thereupon the frightened Kali speedily entered into the *Vibhitaka* tree. And while Kali was conversing with Naishadha, he was invisible to others. And delivered from his afflictions, and having counted the fruits of that tree, the king, filled with great joy and high energy, mounted on the car and proceeded with energy, urging those fleet horses. And from the touch of Kali the *Vibhitaka** tree from that hour fell into disrepute. And Nala, with a glad heart, began to urge those foremost of steeds which sprang into the air once and again like creatures endued with wings. And the illustrious monarch drove (the car) in the direction of the Vidarbhas. And after Nala had gone far away, Kali also returned to his abode. And abondoned by Kali, O king, that lord of earth, the royal Nala, became freed from clamity though he did not assume his native form.' "

Thus ends the seventy-second Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXIII.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

" Vrihadaçwa said. 'After Rituparna of prowess incapable of being baffled had, in the evening, arrived at the city of the Vidarbhas, the people brought unto king Bhima the tidings (of his arrival). And at the invitation of Bhima, the king (of Ayodhya) entered the city of Kundina, filling with the rattle of his car all the ten points, direct and transverse, of the horizon. And the steeds of Nala that were in that city heard that sound, and hearing it they became delighted as

* *Terminalia belerica.* Its fruits do not serve any purpose.

they used to be in the presence of Nala himself. And Damayanti also heard the sound of that car driven by Nala, like the deep roar of the clouds in the rainy season. And hearing that loud sound she wondered much. And both the daughter of Bhima and the steeds (of Nala) regarded the clatter of that car to be like that which they used to hear in days of yore when king Nala himself urged his own steeds. And the peacocks on the terraces, and the elephants in the stables, and the horses also, all heard the rattle of Rituparna's car. And hearing that sound, so like the roar of the clouds, the elephants and the peacocks, O king, began to utter their cries, facing that direction, and filled with delight such as they experience when they hear the actual roar of the clouds. And Damayanti said,—Because the rattle of this car filling the whole earth, gladdens my heart, it must be king Nala (that has come). If I do not see Nala, of face bright as the moon, that hero with countless virtues, I shall certainly die! If I am not clasped to-day in that hero's thrilling embrace, I shall certainly cease to be! If Naishadha with voice deep as that of the clouds doth not come to me to-day, I shall enter into a pyre of golden brilliance. If that foremost of kings, powerful as a lion, and gifted with the strength of an infuriate elephant, doth not present himself before me, I shall certainly cease to live. I do not remember a single untruth in him, or a single wrong done by him to others. Never hath he spoken an untruth even in jest! Oh, my Nala is exalted and forgiving and heroic and munificent and superior to all other kings, and faithful to his marriage vow* and like unto a eunuch in respect of other females. Night and day dwelling upon his pefections, my heart, in absence of that dear one, is about to burst in grief!—'

"'Thus bewailing as if devied of sense, Damayanti, O Bhārata, ascended the terrace (of her mansion) with the desire of seeing the righteous Nala. And in the yard of the

---

* *Raho-anceechānuvartee. Rahas*, acts of privacy; *anceechānuvartin*, one that does not behave like a low person. The sense is that Nala never, in contravention of his marriage vows, enjoyed other women.

central mansion she beheld king Rituparna on the car with Vārshneya and Vāhuka. And Vārshneya and Vāhuka, descending from that excellent vehicle, unyoked the steeds, and kept the vehicle itself in a proper place. And king Rituparna also, descending from the car, presented himself before king Bhima possessed of terrible prowess. And Bhima received him with great respect, for in the absence of a proper occasion, a great person cannot be had (as a guest)* And honored by Bhima, king Rituparna looked about him again and again, but saw no traces of the *Swyamvara*. And the ruler of the Vidarbhas, O Bhārata, approaching Rituparna, said,—Welcome! What is the occasion of this thy visit?—And king Bhima asked this without knowing that Rituparna had come to obtain the hand of his daughter. And king Rituparna, of unbaffled prowess and gifted with intelligence, saw that there were no other kings or princes. Nor did he hear any talk relating to the *Swayamvara*, nor saw any concourse of Brāhmanas. And at this, the king of Koçala reflected awhile and at length said,—I have come here to pay my respects to thee!—And king Bhima was struck with astonishment, and reflected upon the (probable) cause of Rituparna's coming, having passed over an hundred *yojanas*. And he reflected,—That passing by other sovereigns, and leaving behind him innumerable countries, he should come simply to pay his respects to me is scarcely the reason of this arrival. What he assigneth to be the cause of his coming appeareth to be a trifle. However, I shall learn the true reason in the future.—And although king Bhima thought so, he did not dismiss Rituparna summarily, but said unto him again and again,—Rest, thou art weary!—And honored thus by the

---

* The *half-sloka* beginning with *Akasmät* &c. forms, I suspect, the first line of the 21st *sloka* (as rendered here), otherwise. if it is regarded as the 1st line of the 22nd, it would have no meaning. It should be observed also that *Streemantram* is evidently a mis-reading for *çrimantam*. To what desperate expedients are editors reduced to give a sense to passages that become quite intelligible by a little transposition!

pleased Bhima, king Rituparna was satisfied, and with a delighted heart, he went to his appointed quarters followed by the servants of the royal household.'

"Vrihadaçwa continued. 'And, O king, after Rituparna had gone away with Vārshneya, Vāhuka took the car to the stables. And there freeing the steeds, and tending them according to rule, and soothing them himself, sat down on a side of the car. Meanwhile, the princess of Vidarbha, Damayanti, afflicted with grief, having beheld the royal son of Bhangāsura, and Vārshneya of the *Suta* race, and also Vāhuka in that guise, asked herself,—Whose is this car-rattle? It was loud as that of Nala, but I do not see the ruler of the Nishadhas! Certainly, Vārshneya hath learnt the art from Nala, and it is for this that the rattle of the car driven by him hath been even like that of Nala! Or, is Rituparna equally skilled with Nala so that the rattle of his car seemeth to be like that of Nala?—And reflecting thus, O monarch, the blessed and beauteous girl sent a female messenger in search of Naishadha.' "

Thus ends the seventy-third Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXIV.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"'Damayanti said,—O Keçini, go thou and learn who that charioteer is that sitteth by the car, unsightly and possessed of short arms! O blessed one, O faultless one, approaching him, cautiously and with soft words, make thou the usual inquries of courtesy and learn all particulars truly. Having regard to the feeling of satisfaction my mind experienceth, and the delight my heart feeleth, I am greatly afraid this one is king Nala himself. And, O faultless one, having inquired after his welfare, thou shalt speak unto him the words of Parnāda. And, O beauteous one, understand the reply he may make thereto!—Thus instructed, that female-messenger, going cautiously, while the blessed Damayanti watched from the terrace, addressed Vāhuka in these words,—O foremost

of men, thou art welcome! I wish thee happiness! O bull among men, hear now the words of Damayanti! When did ye all set out, and with what object have ye come hither! Tell us truly, for the princess of Vidarbha wisheth to hear it!—Thus addressed, Vāhuka answered,—The illustrious king of Koçala had heard from a Brāhmana that a second *Swyamvara* of Damayanti would take place. And hearing it, he hath come here, by the help of excellent steeds fleet as the wind and capable of going an hundred *yojanas*. I am his charioteer.—Keçini then asked,—Whence doth the third among you come, and whose (son) is he? And whose son art thou, and how hast thou come to do this work? Thus questioned, Vāhuka replied,—He (of whom thou inquirest) was the charioteer of the virtuous Nala, and known to all by the name of Vārshneya. After Nala had, O beauteous one, left his kingdom, he came to the son of Bhangāsura! I am skilled in horse-lore, and have, therefore, been appointed as charioteer. Indeed, king Rituparna hath himself chosen me as his charioteer and cook!—At this Keçini rejoined,—Perhaps Vārshneya knoweth where king Nala hath gone, and O Vāhuka, he may also have spoken to thee (about his master)!—Vāhuka then said,—Having brought hither the children of Nala of excellent deeds, Vārshneya went away whither he listed. He doth not know where Naishadha is. Nor, O illustrious one, doth any body else know Nala's whereabouts; for the king (in calamity) wandereth over the world in disguise and despoiled of (his native) beauty! Nala's self only knoweth Nala, and she also that is his second self. Nala never discovereth his marks of indentity anywhere.—Thus addressed, Keçini returned,—the Brāhmana that had before this gone to Ayodhya, had repeatedly said these words suitable to female lips,—*O beloved gambler, where hast thou gone, cutting off half my piece of cloth, and deserting me—his dear and devoted wife asleep in the woods? And she herself, as commanded by him, waiteth expecting him, clad in half a garment and burning day and night in grief! O king, O hero, do thou relent towards her that weepeth ceaselessly for that calamity, and do thou give her an answer! O illustrious one, do thou speak the words agreeable unto her,*

for the blameless one panteth to hear them! Hearing these words of the Brāhmana thou didst formerly give a reply! The princess of Vidarbha again wisheth to hear the words thou didst then say!—'

"Vrihadaçwa continued. 'O son of the Kuru race, hearing these words of Keçini, Nala's heart was pained, and his eyes became filled with tears. And repressing his sorrow, the king, who was burning in grief, said again these words, in accents choked with tears,—*Chaste women, though overtaken by calamity, yet protect themselves, and thereby secure heaven! Women that are chaste, deserted by their lords, never become angry, but continue to live, cased in virtue's mail. Deserted by one fallen into calamity, bereft of sense, and despoiled of bliss, it behoveth her not to be angry! A virtuous lady should not be angry with one that was deprived by birds of his garment while striving to procure sustenance and who is burning in misery! Whether treated well or ill she should never be angry, seeing her husband in that plight, despoiled of his kingdom, bereft of prosperity, oppressed with hunger, and overwhelmed with calamity!*—And, O Bhārata, while speaking thus, Nala, oppressed with grief, could not restrain his tears, but began to weep! And thereupon Keçini went back to Damayanti, and acquainted her with everything about that conversation as well as that outburst of grief!'"

Thus ends the seventy-fourth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

Section LXXV.

(*Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.*)

"Vrihadaçwa said. 'Hearing everything, Damayanti became oppressed with grief, and suspecting the person to be Nala, said unto Keçini,—O Keçini, go thou again, and examine Vāhuka, and staying in silence at his side mark thou his conduct! And, O beauteous one, whenever he happens to do anything skilful, do thou observe well his acts while

accomplishing it !* And, O Keçini, whenever he may ask water or fire, with the view of offering him obstruction thou shalt be in no hurry to give it. And marking everything about his behaviour come thou and tell me ! And whatever of human or superhuman† thou seest in Vāhuka, together with anything else, should all be reported unto me !—And thus addressed by Damayanti, Keçini went away, and having marked the conduct of that person versed in horse-lore, she came back. And she related unto Damayanti all that had happened, indeed, everything of human and superhuman that she had witnessed in Vāhuka. And Keçini said,—O Damayanti, a person of such control over the elements ‡ I have never before seen or heard! Whenever he cometh to a low passage, he never stoopeth down, but seeing him, the passage itself groweth in height so that he may pass through it easily! And at his approach, impassable narrow holes open wide. King Bhima had sent various kinds of meat—of diverse animals, for Rituparna's food. And many vessels had been placed there for washing the meat. And as he looked upon them those vessels became filled (with water). And having washed the meat, as he set himself to cook, he took up a handful of grass and held it in the sun, when fire blazed up all on a sudden ! Beholding this marvel, I have come hither amazed! Further, I have witnessed in him another great wonder ! O beauteous one, he touched fire and was not burnt ! And at his will, water falling floweth in a stream ! And, I have witnessed another greater wonder still. He took up some flower,

---

* There is a difference of reading here : for *karanāntatra* some texts erad *kāuçalāntatra* which seems to be the true reading. I have accordingly followed it. The Pandits of the Maharajah of Burdwan have followed it. In the second line also, for *lakshayantee* some read *sanlakshethas.* This, however, is hardly a variance.

† This line begining with *nimittam* and ending with *mānusham* does not occur in every text.

‡ The word in the text is *çuchyupachāras* compounded of *çuchi* and *upachāras.* Nilakantha explains this to mean, as he puts it, *jalasthalaçudhyādiparas*, which is substantially as I have put it, "with power over the elements."

and began to press them slowly with his hands. And pressed by his hand, the flowers did not lose their original forms, but, on the contrary, became gayer and more odorous than before. Having beheld these wonderful thing I have come hither with speed!—"

"Vrihadaçwa continued. 'Hearing of these acts of the virtuous Nala, and discovering him from his behaviour, Damayanti considered him as already recovered. And from these indications suspecting that Vāhuka was her husband, Damayanti once more weepingly addressed Keçini in soft words, saying,—O beauteous one, go thou once more, and bring from the kitchen without Vāhuka's knowledge some meat that hath been boiled and dressed (by him)! Thus commanded, Keçini, ever bent on doing what was agreeable to Damayanti, went to Vāhuka, and taking some hot meat came back without loss of time. And Keçini gave that meat, O son of the Kuru race, unto Damayanti! And Damayanti who had formerly often partaken of meat dressed by Nala, tasted the meat that was brought by her hand-maid. And she thereupon decided Vāhuka to be Nala and wept aloud in grief of heart. And, O Bhārata, overwhelmed with grief, and washing her face, she sent her two children with Keçini. And Vāhuka, who was the king in disguise, recognising Indrasenā with her brother, advanced hastily, and embracing them, took them up on his lap. And taking up his children like unto the children of the celestials, he began to weep aloud in sonorous accents, his heart oppressed with great sorrow. And after having repeatedly betrayed his agitation, Naishadha suddenly left the childern, and addressed Keçini, saying,—O fair damsel, these twins are very like my own children! Beholding them unexpectedly, I have shed tears! If thou comest to me frequently people may think evil, for we are guests from other land. Therefore, O blessed one, go at thy ease!—'"

Thus ends the seventy-fifth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXVI.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"Vrihadaçwa said. 'Beholding the agitation of the virtuous and wise Nala, Keçini returned unto Damayanti and related everything unto her. And thereupon Damayanti with a sorrowful heart and eager to behold Nala, again despatched Keçini to her mother, asking her to say on her behalf,—Suspecting Vāhuka to be Nala, I have tried him in various ways. My doubt now only relates to his appearance. I intend to examine him myself. O mother, either let him enter the palace, or give me permission to go to him. And arrange this with the knowledge of my father or without it!—And thus addressed by Damayanti, that lady communicated unto Bhima the intention of his daughter, and upon learning it the king gave his consent. And, O bull of the Bharata race, having obtained the consent both of her father and mother, Damayanti caused Nala to be brought to her apartments. And as soon as he saw Damayanti unexpectedly, king Nala was overwhelmed with grief and sorrow, and bathed in tears. And that best of women Damayati also, upon beholding king Nala in that condition, was sorely afflicted with grief. And, O monarch, herself clad in a piece of red cloth, and wearing matted locks, and covered with dirt and dust, Damayanti then addressed Vāhuka, saying,—O Vāhuka, hast thou ever seen any person acquainted with duty, who hath gone away, deserting his sleeping wife in the forest? Who except the virtuous Nala, could go away, deserting in the woods, his dear and unoffending wife overcome with fatigue? Of what offence was I guilty in the eyes of that monarch since my early youth that he should go away deserting me in the woods while overcome with sleep? Why should he whom I formerly chose in preference to the gods themselves abandon his ever-devoted and loving wife who had become the mother also of his children? Before the fire, and in presence also of the celestials, he had taken my hand, vowing,—*Verily I will be thine!* Oh, where was that vow when he deserted me?—O repressor

of foes, while Damayanti was saying all this, tears begot of sorrow began to flow plentifully from her eyes! And beholding her thus afflicted with grief, Nala also, shedding tears from his eyes black as those of the gazelle with extremities of reddish hue, said,—O timid one, neither the loss of my kingdom nor my desertion of thee was my act! Both were due to Kali! And, O foremost of virtuous women, lamenting for me day and night, and overcome with sorrow, since thou hadst in the woods cursed Kali, he began to dwell in my body, burning in consequence of thy curse! Indeed, burning with thy curse, he lived within me like fire within fire! O blessed girl, that our sorrows might terminate, that wretch have I overcome by my observances and austerities! The sinful wretch hath already left me, and it is for this that I have come hither! My presence here, O fair lady, is for thy sake! I have no other object! But, O timid one, can any other woman, forsaking her loving and devoted husband, ever choose a second lord like thee? At the command of the king, messengers are ranging this entire earth, saying,—*Bhima's dauhgter will, of her own accord, choose a second husband worthy of her!* Immediately on hearing this, the son of Bhangāsura hath arrived here!—Hearing these lamentations of Nala, Damayanti, affrighted and trembling, said with joined hands,—It behoveth thee not, O blessed one, to suspect any fault in me! O ruler of the Nishadhas, passing over the celestials themselves, I chose thee as my lord! It was to bring thee hither that the Brāhmanas had gone out in all directions, even to all the sides of the horizon, singing my words in the form of ballads! At last, O king, a learned Brāhmana named Parnāda had found thee in Koçala in the palace of Rituparna! When thou hadst returned a fit answer to those words of his, it was then, O Naishadha, that I devised this scheme to recover thee! Except thee, O lord of earth, there is no one in this world, who in one day can clear, O king, an hundred *yojanas* with horses! O monarch, touching thy feet I can swear truly that I have not, even in thought, committed any sin! May the all-witnessing Air that courseth through this world, take my life, if I have committed

any sin! May the Sun that ever courseth through the sky take my life, if I have committed any sin! May the Moon, that dwelleth within every creature as a witness, take my life, if I have committed any sin! Let the three gods that sustain the triple worlds in their entirety, declare truly, or let them forsake me to-day!—And thus addressed by her, the Wind-god said from the sky,—O Nala, I tell thee truly that she hath done no wrong! O king, Damayanti, well guarding the honor of thy family, hath enhanced it! Of this we are the witnesses, as we have been her protectors for these three years! It is for thy sake that she hath devised this unrivalled scheme, for, excepting thee, none on earth is capable of travelling in a single day an hundred *yojanas*! O monarch, thou hast obtained Bhima's daughter, and she hath also obtained thee! Thou needst not entertain any suspicion but be united with thy partner!—And after the Wind-god had said this, a floral shower fell there and the celestial kettle-drum began to play, and auspicious breezes began to blow. And beholding those wonders, O Bhārata, king Nala, the repressor of foes, cast away all his doubts in respect of Damayanti. And then that lord of earth, remembering the king of serpents, wore that pure garment and regained his native form. And beholding her righteous lord in his own form, Bhima's daughter of faultless limbs embraced him, and began to weep aloud. And king Nala also embraced Bhima's daughter devoted to him, as before, and also his children, and experienced great delight. And burying her face in his bosom, the beauteous Damayanti of large eyes began to sigh heavily, remembering her griefs. And overwhelmed with sorrow, that tiger among men stood for some time, clasping the dust-covered Damayanti of sweet smiles. And, O king, the queen-mother then, with a glad heart, told Bhima all that had passed between Nala and Damayanti! And the mighty monarch answered,—Let Nala pass this day in peace, to-morrow I shall see him after his bath and prayers, with Damayanti by his side!—And, O king, they passed that night pleasantly, in relating to each other the past incidents of their life in the forest. And with hearts filled with joy, the princess of Vidharbha and Nala began to

pass their days in the palace of king Bhima, intent upon making each other happy. And it was in the fourth year (after the loss of his kindom) that Nala was reunited with his wife, and all his desires gratified, once more experienced the highest bliss. And Damayanti rejoiced exceedingly in having recovered her lord even as fields of tender plants on receiving a shower. And Bhima's daughter, thus recovering her lord, obtained her wish, and blazed forth in beauty,—her weariness gone, her anxieties dispelled and herself swelling with joy, even like a night that is graced by the bright disc of the moon.' "

Thus ends the seventy-sixth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXVII.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

" Vrihadaçwa said. 'Having passed that night, king Nala, decked in ornaments and with Damayanti by his side, presented himself in due time before the king. And Nala saluted his father-in-law with becoming humility, and after him the fair Damayanti paid her respects to her father. And the exalted Bhima, with great joy, received him as a son, and honoring him duly along with his devoted wife, comforted them in proper words. And duly accepting the homage rendered unto him, king Nala offered his father-in-law his services as became him. And seeing Nala arrived, the citizens were in great joy. And there arose in the city a loud uproar of delight. And the citizens decorated the city with flags and standards and garlands of flowers. And the streets were watered and decked in floral wreaths and other ornaments. And at their gates the citizens piled flowers, * and their temples and shrines were all adorned with flowers. And Rituparna heard that Vāhuka had already been united with Damayanti. And the king was glad to hear of all this. And calling unto him king Nala, he asked his forgiveness. And the intelligent Nala also

* This was an auspicious ceremony.

asked Rituparna's forgiveness, showing diverse reasons. And that foremost of speakers versed in the truth, king Rituparna, after being thus honored by Nala, said, with a countenance expressive of wonder, these words unto the ruler of the Nishadhas,—By good fortune it is that regaining the company of thy own wife, thou hast obtained happiness! O Naishadha, while dwelling in disguise at my house, I hope I did not wrong thee in any way, O lord of earth! If knowingly or unknowingly I have done thee any wrong, it behoveth thee to forgive me!—Hearing this, Nala replied,—Thou hast not, O monarch, done me ever so little an injury! And if thou hast, it hath not awakened my ire, for, surely, thou shouldst be forgiven by me! Thou wert formerly my friend, and, O ruler of men, thou art also related to me! Henceforth I shall find greater delight in thee! O king, with all my desires gratified, I lived happily in thy abode, in fact more happily there than in my own house! This thy horse-lore is in my keeping! If thou wishest, O king, I will make it over to thee!—Saying this, Naishadha gave unto Rituparna that science, and the latter took it with the ordained rites. And, O monarch, the royal son of Bhangāsura, having obtained the mysteries of equestrian science and having given unto the ruler of the Nishadhas the mysteries of dice, went to his own city, employing another person for his charioteer. And, O king, after Rituparna had gone, king Nala did not stay long in the city of Kundina!'"

Thus ends the seventy-seventh Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXVIII.

(*Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.*)

"Vrihdaçwa said. 'O son of Kunti, the ruler of the Nishadhas, having dwelt for a month (at Kundina), set out from that city with Bhima's permission and accompanied by only a few followers for the country of the Nishadhas. With a single car white in hue, sixteen elephants, fifty horse, and six hundred infantry, that illustrious king, causing the earth itself to tremble, entered (the country of the Nishadhas) without

loss of a moment and swelling with rage. And the mighty son of Virasena, approaching his brother Pushkara, said unto him,—We will play again, for I have earned vast wealth! Let Damayanti and all else that I have be my stake, and let, O Pushkara, thy kingdom be thy stake! Let the play begin again! This is my certain determination. Blessed be thou, let us stake all we have along with our lives! Having won over and acquired another's wealth or kingdom, it is a high duty, says the ordinance, to stake it when the owner demands. Or, if thou dost not relish play with dice, let the play with weapons begin! O king, let me or thyself have peace by a single combat. That this ancestral kingdom should, under all circumstances and by any means, be recovered, there is the authority of sages for holding. And, O Pushkara, choose thou one of these two things,—gambling with dice or bending the bow in battle!—Thus addressed by Naishadha, Pushkara, sure of his own success, laughingly answered that monarch, saying,—O Naishadha, it is by good fortune that thou hast earned wealth (again) to stake. It is by good fortune also that Damayanti's ill-luck hath at last come to an end! And, O king, it is by good fortune that thou art still alive with thy wife, O thou of mighty arms! It is evident that Damayanti, adorned with this wealth of thine that I will win, will wait upon me like an Apsarā in heaven upon Indra! O Naishadha, I daily recollect thee and am even waiting for thee, since I derive no pleasure from gambling with those that are not connected with me in blood! Winning over to-day the beauteous Damayanti of faultless features, I shall regard myself fortunate, indeed, since she it is that hath ever dwelt in my heart!—Hearing these words of that incoherent braggart, Nala in anger desired to cut off his head with a scimitar. With a smile however, though his eyes were red in anger, king Nala said,—Let us play. Why do you speak so now? Having vanquished me, you can say anything you like.—Then the play commenced between Pushkara and Nala. And, blessed be thou, Nala at a single throw won his wealth and treasures back along with the life of his brother that also had been staked. And the king, having won, smilingly said unto

Pushkara.—This whole kingdom without a thorn in its side is now undisturbedly mine! And, O worst of kings, thou canst not now even look at the princess of Vidarbha! With all thy family, thou art now, O fool, reduced to the position of her slave! But my former defeat at thy hands was not due to any act of thine! Thou knowest it not, O fool, that it was Kali who did it all! I shall not, therefore, impute to thee the faults of others. Live happily as thou choosest, I grant thee thy life! I also grant thee thy portion (in the paternal kingdom) along with all necessaries! And, O hero, without doubt, my affection towards thee is now the same as before! My fraternal love also for thee will never know any diminution! O Pushkara, thou art my brother, live thou for an hundred years!—'

"'And Nala of unbaffled prowess, having comforted his brother thus, gave him permission to go to his own town, having embraced him repeatedly. And Pushkara himself, thus comforted by the ruler of the Nishadhas, saluted that righteous king, and adressed him, O monarch, saying these words with joined hands,—Let thy fame be immortal, and live thou happily for ten thousand years, thou who grantest me, O king, both life and refuge!—And entertained by the king, Pushkara dwelt there for a month and then went to his own town accompanied by a large force and many obedient servants and his own kindred, his heart filled with joy. And that bull among men all the while blazed forth in beauty of person like a scond sun. And the blessed ruler of the Nishadhas, having established Pushkara and made him wealthy and freed him from troubles, entered his richly decorated palace. And the ruler of the Nishadhas, having entered his palace, comforted the citizens. And all the citizens and the subjects from the country horripilated in joy. And the people headed by the officers of state said with joined hands,—O king, we are truly glad to-day throughout the city and the county! We have obtained to-day our ruler, like the gods their chief of an hundred sacrifices!—'"

Thus ends the seventy-eighth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXIX.

(Nalopākhyāna Parva continued.)

"Vrihadaçwa said. 'After the festivities had commenced in the city that was full of joy and without anxiety of any kind, the king with a large force brought Damayanti (from her father's home). And her father too, that slayer of hostile heroes, Bhima of terrible prowess and immeasurable soul, sent his daughter, having honored her duly. And upon the arrival of the princess of Vidharbha accompanied by her son and daughter, king Nala began to pass his days in joy like the chief of the celestials in the gardens of Nandana. And the king of undying fame, having regained his kingdom and becoming illustrious among the monarchs of the island of Jamvu, * began once more to rule it. And he duly performed numerous sacrifices with abundant gifts to Brāhmanas. O great king, thou also wilt, with thy kindred and relatives, so blaze forth in effulgence soon! For, O foremost of men, it was thus that that subjugator of hostile cities, king Nala, had fallen into distress along with his wife, in consequence, O bull of Bharata race, of dice! And, O lord of earth, Nala had suffered such dire woe all alone and recovered his prosperity, whereas thou, O son of Pāndu, with heart fixed on virtue, art sporting in joy in this great forest, accompanied by thy brothers and Krishnā! When thou art also, O monarch, mixing daily with blessed Brāhmanas versed in the Vedas and their branches, thou hast little cause for sorrow! This history, besides, of the Nāga Karkotaka, of Damayanti, of Nala, and of that royal sage Rituparna, is destructive of evil.† And, O thou of unfading glory, this history, destructive of the influence of Kali, is capable, O king, of comforting persons like thee when they listen to it! And reflecting upon the uncertainty (of success) of human exertion, it

---

* The peninsula of India is frequently called in the *Purānas* the "Island of Jamvu." It is supposed to be the central division of the world, there being six other divisions.

† This *Sloka* does not occur in every text.

behoveth thee not to joy or grieve at prosperity or adversity!* Having listened to this history, be comforted, O king, and yield not to grief! It behoveth thee not, O great king, to pine under calamity. Indeed, men of self-possession, reflecting upon the caprice of destiny and the fruitlessness of exertion, never suffer themselves to be depressed. They that will repeatedly recite this high history of Nala, and they that will hear it recited, will never be touched by adversity. He that listeneth to this old and excellent history, hath all his purposes crowned with success and, without doubt, obtaineth fame, besides sons and grand-sons and animals, a high position among men, and health, and joy. And, O king, the fear also that thou entertainest, *viz*; *Some one skilled in dice will summon me*, I will for once dispel. O thou of invincible prowess, I know the science of dice in its entirety! I am gratified with thee; take this lore, O son of Kunti, I will tell it unto thee!"

Vaiçampāyana continued. "King Yudhishthira then, with a glad heart, said unto Vrihadaçwa, 'O illustrious one, I desire to learn the science of dice from thee!' The Rishi then gave his dice-lore unto the high-souled son of Pāndu, and having given it unto him, that great ascetic went to the sacred waters of *Açawçira* for a bath.

"And after Vrihadaçwa had gone away, Yudhishthira of firm vows heard from Brāhmanas and ascetics that came to him from various directions and from places of pilgrimage and mountains and forests that Arjuna of high intelligence and capable of drawing the bow with his left hand, was still engaged in the austerest of ascetic penances, living upon air alone. And he heard that the mighty-armed Pārtha was engaged in such fierce asceticism that none else before him had ever been engaged in such penances. And Dhananjaya the son of Prithā, engaged in ascetic austerities with regulated vows and fixed mind and observing the vow of perfect silence, was, he heard, like the blazing god of justice himself in his embodied form. And, O king, (Yudhishthira) the son of

* This *Sloka* also does not occur in every text.

Pāndu hearing that his dear brother Jaya, the son of Kuntī, was engaged in such asceticism in the great forest, began to grieve for him. And with a heart burning in grief, the eldest son of Pāndu, seeking consolation in that mighty forest, held converse with the Brāhmanas possessed of various knowledge who were living with him there."

Thus ends the seventy-ninth Section in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXX.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva.)

Janamejaya said. "O holy one, after my great-grandfather Pārtha had gone away from the woods of Kāmyaka, what did the sons of Pāndu do in the absence of that hero capable of drawing the bow with his left hand? It seemeth to me that that mighty bowman and vanquisher of armies was their refuge, as Vishnu is of the celestials. How did my heroic grandsires pass their time in the forest, deprived of the company of that hero, who resembled Indra himself in prowess and never turned his back in battle?"

Vaiçampāyana said. "After Arjuna of unbaffled prowess had gone away from Kāmyaka, the sons of Pāndu, O son, were filled with sorrow and grief. And the Pāndavas with cheerless hearts very much resembled pearls unstrung from a wreath, or birds shorn of their wings. And without that hero of white deeds that forest looked like the *Chaitraratha* woods when deprived of the presence of Kuvera. And, O Janamejaya, those tigers among men—the sons of Pāndu—deprived of the company of Arjuna, continued to live in Kāmyaka in perfect cheerlessness. And, O chief of the Bharata race, those mighty warriors endued with great prowess slew with pure arrows various kinds of sacrificial animals for the Brāhmanas. And those tigers among men and repressors of foes, daily slaying those wild animals and sanctifying them properly, offered them unto the Brāhmanas. And it was thus, O king, that those bulls among men afflicted with sorrow lived there with cheerless hearts after Dhananjaya's departure. The

princess of Pānchāla in particular, remembering her third* lord, addressed the anxious Yudhishthira and said, 'That Arjuna who with two hands rivals the thousand-armed Arjuna (of old), alas, without that foremost of the sons of Pāndu, this forest doth not seem at all beautiful in my eyes! Without him, wherever I cast my eyes this earth seems to be forlorn! Even this forest with its blossoming trees and so full of wonders, without Arjuna seems not so delightful as before! Without him who is like a mass of blue clouds (in hue),† who hath the prowess of an infuriate elephant,‡ and whose eyes are like the leaves of the lotus, this Kāmyaka forest doth not seem beautiful to me! Remembering that hero capable of drawing the bow with his left hand, and the twang of whose bow sounds like the roar of thunder, I cannot feel any happiness, O king!' And, O monarch, hearing her lament in this strain, that slayer of hostile heroes, Bhimasena, addressed Draupadi in these words, 'O blessed lady of slender waist, the agreeable words thou utterest delight my heart like the quaffing of nectar! Without him whose arms are long and symmetrical and stout and like unto a couple of iron maces and round and marked by the scars of the bowstring and graced with the bow and sword and other weapons and encircled with golden bracelets and like unto a couple of five-headed snakes, without that tiger among men the sky itself seemeth to be without the Sun! Without that mighty-armed one relying upon whom the Pānchālas and the Kuravas fear not the sternly-exerting ranks of the celestials themselves, without that illustrious hero relying upon whose arms we all regard our

---

* The word in the text is *madhyamām* (accusative) meaning *middle*, because Arjuna was the third of the Pāndavas, having two above him and two below him. Sometimes, however, Bhima is called the *madhyama* or middle Pāndava, *madhyama* in that connection meaning *second*.

† The word is *nilāmbuda-chaya-prakshyam*. Some texts read *nilāmbuda-sama-prakshyam*. The difference is hardly material.

‡ *Matta-mātanga-vikramam*. As I have explained elsewhere, I am not sure that I have correctly rendered the word here. The sense may be "with tread like that of the infuriate elephant." In either sense, this may be a consistent adjective of Arjuna.

foes as already vanquished and the earth itself as already acquired, without that Fālguna I cannot obtain any peace in the woods of Kāmyaka! The different directions also appear to me to be empty and enveloped in thick gloom. The earth also, wherever I cast my eyes, appears to be empty!'

"After Bhima had concluded, Nakula the son of Pāndu, with voice choked in tears, said, 'Without him whose extraordinary deeds on the field of battle constitute the talk of even the gods, without that foremost of warriors, what pleasure can we have in the woods? Without him who having gone towards the north had vanquished mighty Gandharva chiefs by hundreds, and who, having obtained numberless handsome horses of the *Tittiri* and *Kalmāsha* species all endued with the speed of the wind, presented them from affection unto his brother the king, on the occasion of the great *Rājasuya* sacrifice, without that dear and illustrious one, without that terrible warrior born after Bhima, without that hero equal unto a god, I do not desire to live in the Kāmyaka woods any longer!'

"After Nakula's lamentations, Sahadeva said, 'He who having vanquished mighty warriors in battle won wealth and virgins and brought them unto the king on the occasion of the great *Rājasuya* sacrifice, that hero of immeasurable splendour who having vanquished single-handed the assembled Yādavas in battle, ravished Subhadrā with the consent* of Vāsudeva, he who, having invaded the dominions of the illustrious Drupada, gave, O Bhārata, unto the preceptor Drona his tuition fee,—beholding, O king, that Jishnu's bed of grass empty in our asylum, my heart refuses consolation! A migration from this forest is what, O repressor of foes, I would prefer, for without that hero this forest cannot be delightful!'"

Thus ends the eightieth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

---

* Some texts read *sadmani* (loc. sing) house, which would have no meaning. The ravishment really took place with Vāsudeva's consent, and not from or in his "house."

SECTION LXXXI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said. "Hearing these words of his brothers as also of Krishnā, all of whom were anxious on account of Dhananjaya, king Yudhishthira the just became melancholy. And at that time he saw (before him) the celestial Rishi Nārada blazing with *Brāhmya** beauty and like unto a fire flaming up in consequence of a sacrificial libation. And beholding him come, king Yudhishthira with his brothers stood up and duly worshipped the illustrious one. And endued with blazing energy, the handsome chief of the Kuru race, surrounded by his brothers, shone like the god of an hundred sarifices encircled by the celestials. And Yājnaseni in obedience to the dictates of morality adhered† to her lords the sons of Prithā, like Sāvitri to the Vedas or the rays of the Sun to the peak of Meru. And the illustrious Rishi Nārada, accepting that worship, comforted the son of Dharma in proper terms. And, O sinless one, addressing the high-souled king Yudhishthira the just, the Rishi said, 'Tell me, O foremost of virtuous men, what is it that thou seekest and what can I do for thee!' At this, the royal son of Dharma, bowing with his brothers unto Nārada, who was the revered of the celestials, told him with joined hands, 'O thou that art highly blessed and worshipped by all the worlds, when thou art gratified with me, I regard all my wishes, in consequence of thy grace, as already filled, O thou of excellent vows! If, O sinless one, I with my brothers deserve thy favor, it behoveth thee, O best of Munis, to dispel the doubt that is in my mind! It behoveth thee to tell me in detail what merit is his that goeth round the

---

* *Brāhmya*, lit., what appertains to a *Brāhmana*, or, which is the same thing, what appertains to *Brahma*, the Supreme Being. This adjective is frequently used in respect of Rishis and Munis.

† The words in the text are *najahau*, lit., "did not abandon." *Sāvitri* is regarded as the mother of the Vedas. In the *Purānas* she is also regarded as the wife of Brahmā.

world, desirous of beholding the sacred waters and shrines* that are on it!'

"Nārada said, 'Listen, O king, with attention, to what the intelligent Bhishma had heard before from Pulastya! Formerly, O blessed one, that foremost of virtuous men, Bhishma, while in the observance of the *pitrya*† vow, lived, O king, in the company of Munis in a delightful and sacred region, near the source of the Ganges, that is resorted to by the celestial Rishis and Gandharvas and the celestials themselves! And while living there, the resplendent one gratified with his oblations the *pitris*, the gods, and the Rishis according to the rites inculcated in the scriptures. And once on a time while the illustrious one was engaged in his silent recitations,‡ he beheld Pulastya—that best of Rishis, of wonderful appearance. And beholding that austere ascetic blazing with beauty, he was filled with great delight and exceeding wonder. And, O Bhārata, that foremost of virtuous men, Bhishma, then worshipped that blessed Rishi according to the rites of the ordinance. And purifying himself and with rapt attention, he approached that best of Brahmarshis, with the *Argkya* on his head. And uttering aloud his name, he said,—O thou of excellent vows, blessed be thou, I am Bhishma thy slave! At sight of thee, I am freed from all my sins!—And saying this, that foremost of virtuous men, Bhishma, restraining his speech, stood, O Yudhishthira, in silence and with joined hands! And beholding Bhishma that foremost of the Kurus, reduced and emaciated by the observance of vows and the study of the Vedas, the Muni became filled with joy.'"

---

* The words are *Tirtha-tatparas*. A *tirtha*, as explained in the *Adi-Parva*, is a region of sacred water. There can be no *tirtha* without a piece of water, it matters little whether it is an arm of the sea or a river or a lake or even a tank.

† The vow called *pitrya* was one in honor of the deceased ancestors. It consisted of continued fasts and daily oblations according to the ordinance.

‡ *Yapa*, lit., silent prayers, or, rather, silent recitation of some particular *mantra*.

Thus ends the eighty-first Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXXII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

'Pulastya said.—O thou of excellent vows, I have been much gratified with thy humility, thy self-control, and thy truth, thou blessed one versed in morality! O sinless one, it is for this virtue of thine which thou hast acquired from regard to thy ancestors, that I have been gratified with thee and thou hast, O son, obtained a sight of my person! O Bhishma, my eyes can penetrate into everything. Tell me what I may do for thee! O sinless one, O thou foremost of the Kuru race, I will grant thee whatever thou mayst ask me!—

'Bhishma said.—O highly blessed one, when thou who art worshipped by the three worlds hast been gratified with me, and when I have obtained a sight of thy exalted self, I regard myself as already crowned with success! But, O thou foremost of virtuous persons, if I have deserved thy favor, I will tell thee my doubts and it behoveth thee to dispel them! O holy one, I have some religious doubts in respect of *tirthas*. Speak of these to me in detail, I desire to hear thee! O thou that resemblest a celestial himself, what is his merit, O regenerate Rishi, who goeth round the whole earth (visiting shrines)! O tell me this with certainty!—

'Pulastya said.—O son, listen with attention, I will tell thee of the merit which attaches to *tirthas* and which constitutes the refuge of the Rishis! He whose hands and feet and mind and knowledge and asceticism and acts are under wholesome control, enjoyeth the fruits of *tirthas*.* He who has ceased to

---

* I think Nilkantha rightly explains this passage. According to him, knowledge under control is equivalent to a determination of not using it for injuring others; asceticism under control is equal to ascetic merit without a sense of pride; acts under control being equivalent to freedom from sin. When, however, he explains feet under control to mean a refusal to go into sinful territories, I think he only shows his ingenuity, and his inveterate predilection for a needless subordination of the expressions of the poet to purely Brahmanical ideas, although I think it

accept gifts, he that is contented, he that is free from pride enjoys the fruits of *tirthas.* He that is without sin, he that acts without purpose,* he that eats light, he that has his senses under control, he that is free from every sin, enjoys the fruits of *tirthas.* O king, he that is free from anger, he that adhereth to truth, he that is firm in his vows, he that regardeth all creatures as his own self, enjoyeth the fruits of *tirthas.* In the Vedas the Rishis have declared in due order the sacrifices and also their fruits here and hereafter truly. O lord of earth, those sacrifices cannot be accomplished by him that is poor, for those sacrifices require various materials and diverse things in large measures! These, therefore, can be performed by kings or sometimes by other men of prosperity and wealth. O lord of men, that rite, however, which men without wealth, without allies, singly, without wife and children, and destitute of means, are capable of accomplishing, and the merit of which is equal unto the sacred fruits of sacrrfices, I will now declare unto thee, thou best of warriors! O thou best of the Bharata race, sojourns in *tirthas,* which are meritorious and which constitute one of the high mysteries of the Rishis, are even superior to sacrifices! He is a poor man who having gone to a *tirtha* hath not fasted for three nights, who hath not given away gold, and who hath not distributed kine. Indeed, one acquireth not, by the performance of the *Agnishtoma* and other sacrifices distinguished by large gifts, that merit which one acquireth by a sojourn to a *tirtha.* In the world of men, there is that *tirtha* of the God of gods, celebrated over the three worlds by the name of *Pushkara.*† One that sojourneth there becometh equal unto that deity.

---

is just probable that he is correct. I think it might as well mean a refusal to tread on sacred ground.

* To act with a definite purpose is fraught with no merit. To give because it is a virtue and would aid in the acquisition of heaven is like trading in virtue. This doctrine is elaborated in the *Bhagavat-gitá'* where it is laid down in a more direct form that man should be virtuous because it is his duty to be so and not for the sake of the reward promised to virtue. *Vide* also Yudhishthira's words to Draupadi, p.—89

† Some texts read *Pushkaram nämavikhyätam mahabhagas samäviçet,* for *Pushkaram tirthamäsadya mahabhaga samobhävet,* which appears to be the true reading.

O high-souled son of the Kuru race, during the two twilights and mid-day, there is the presence of hundred thousand millions of *tirthas* in *Pushkara*. The Adityas, the Vasus, the Rudras, the Sādhyas, the Maruts, the Gandharvas, and the Apsaras are ever present, O exalted one, in *Pushkara*. It was there, O king, that the gods, the Daityas, and the *Brahmarshis*, having performed ascetic devotions there, obtained great merit and finally attained to god-hood.

Men of self-control, by even thinking mentally of Pushkara, are cleansed from their sins, and regarded in heaven. O king, the illustrious grandsire having the lotus for his seat, had dwelt with great pleasure in this *tirtha*. O blessed one, it was in Pushkara that the gods with the Rishis having acquired of old great merit, finally obtained the highest success. The person who, devoted to the worship of the gods and the *pitris*, batheth in this *tirtha*, obtaineth, it hath been said by the wise, merit that is equal to ten times that of the horse-sacrifice. Having gone to the Pushkara woods, he that feedeth even one Brāhmana, becometh happy here and hereafter, O Bhishma, for that act. He that supporteth himself on vegetables and roots and fruits, may, with pious regard and without disrespect, give even such fare to a Brāhmana. And, O best of kings, the man of wisdom, even by such a gift, will acquire the merit of a horse-sacrifice. Those illustrious persons among Brāhmanas or Kshatriyas or Vaiçyas or Sudras that bathe in Pushkara are freed from the obligation of rebirth. That man in especial who sojourneth to Pushkara on the full moon of the month of *Kārtika*, acquireth everlasting regions in the abode of Brahmā. He that thinketh with joined hands, morning and evening, of the Pushkaras, practically batheth, O Bhārata, in every *tirtha*. Whether a a male or a female, whatever sins one may commit since birth, are all destroyed as soon as one batheth in Pushkara. As the slayer of Madhu is the foremost of all the celestials, so is Pushkara, O king, the foremost of all *tirthas*. A man by residing with purity and regulated vows, for twelve years in Pushkara, acquireth the merit* of all the sacrifices, and

* There is a substantial difference of reading in this *Sloka*. For

goeth to the abode of Brahmā. The merit of one who performeth the *Agni-hotra* for a full one hundred years, is equal to that of him who resideth for the single month* of *Kārtika* in Pushkara. There are three white hillocks and three springs known from the remotest times, we do not know why, by the name of the Pushkaras. It is difficult to go to Pushkara; it is difficult to undergo ascetic austerities at Pushkara; it is difficult to give away at Pushkara; and it is difficult to live at Pushkara.

Having dwelt for twelve nights at Pushkara with regulated diet and vows, and having walked round (the place), one must go to *Jamvu-mārga*. One that goeth to *Jamvu-mārga* which is resorted to by the celestials, the Rishis, and the *Pitris*, acquireth the merit of the horse-sacrifice and the fruition of all his wishes. The man that resideth there for five nights, hath his soul cleansed from all sins. He never sinketh into hell, but acquireth high success. Leaving Jamvumārga one must go to *Tandulikāçrama*. He that goeth there never sinketh into hell but ascendeth to the abode of Brahmā. He that goeth to the lake of Agastya and occupieth himself with the worship of the *Pitris* and the celestials, fasting for three nights, acquireth, O king, the fruit of the *Agnishtoma*. Going thither, he that liveth on vegetables or fruits, acquireth the status called *Kaumāra*. One should next proceed to the beautiful asylum of Kanwa, which is worshipped by the whole world. That sacred wood characterised by holiness, existeth, O bull of the Bharata race, from very remote times. As soon as one entereth it, he is freed from all his sins. He who with regulated diet and vows worshippeth

---

Kratun (acc. pl.), some texts read *Ritun*. It is noticed by Nilakantha. *Ritun* means the *seasons*. Nilakantha explains it as *Samvatsarātmaka-prajāpati-sāyujyam*. He also quotes the *Srutis* in his support, which, indeed, do say, that "the seasons or the year are *Prajāpatis*, and the latter is the seasons and the year." I incline, however, to the supposition that *Kratun* is the correct reading.

* The word in the text is *Kārtiki*. It may mean both the month of *Kārtika* and the day of full moon of that month.

the *Pitris* and the gods there, obtaineth the fruit of a sacrifice that is capable of bestowing the fruition of all one's desires. Having walked round this asylum, one must then go to the spot where Yayāti fell.* He that goeth thither, acquireth the merit of a horse-sacrifice. One must then go to *Mahākāla* with regulated diet and senses subdued. And having bathed in the *tirtha* called *Koti*, one obtaineth the merit of a horse-sacrifice. A virtuous man should next proceed to the *tirtha* of Sthānu, the husband of Umā, known over the three worlds by the name of *Bhadravata*. That best of men who goeth to *Bhadravata*, beholdeth Içāna† and obtaineth the fruit of a gift of a thousand kine. And through the grace of Mahādeva, he acquireth the status of *Gānapatya*‡ blessed with prosperity and peace and high grace. Having arrived then at *Narmadā*, that river celebrated over the three worlds, and given oblations of water to the *Pitris* and the gods, one acquireth the fruit of the horse-sacrifice. He that goeth into the Southern ocean, practising the Brahmacharya mode of life, and with senses subdued, acquireth the fruit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice, and ascendeth to heaven. Having arrived at *Charmanwati*, with regulated diet and senses subdued, one acquireth, at the command of Rantideva, the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. One must then go, O virtuous chief of warriors,§ to *Arvuda*, the son of Himavat, where there was a hole through the earth in days of yore. There is the asylum

---

* *Vide Adi Parva*, p 264.

† A name of Siva.

‡ The status of *Gānapatya* is that of one who is an attendant of Siva. I render *asapatnam* (lit., *foelessness*) as *peace*.

§ Most editions end this *Sloka* with the word *Yudhishthira* (in the vocative case). The whole of the section, however, represents the speech of Pulastya to Bhishma, which Nārada is reciting to Yudhishthira. The *sloka*, therefore, as usually read, is evidently an instance of editorial carelessness. I have no hesitation in changing *Yudhishthira* into *Yudhāmvara* although, I must confess, I have not met with this reading in any of the texts I have consulted, including some manuscripts.

of Vaçishta, celebrated over the three worlds. Having resided for one night, one obtaineth the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. He that, leading a Brahmacharya mode of life, batheth in the *tirtha* called *Pingā*, obtaineth, O tiger among kings, the merit of the gift of an hundred *Kapilā** kine. One must next go, O king, to that excellent *tirtha* called *Prabhāsa*. There Hutāçana† is always present in his own person. He, the friend of Pavana, O hero, is the mouth of all the gods. The man that with subdued and sanctified soul batheth in that *tirtha*, obtaineth merit greater than that of the *Agnishtoma* or *Atirātra* sacrifices. Proceeding next to the spot where the Saraswati mingleth with the sea, one obtaineth the fruit of the gift of a thousand kine and heaven also, besides, O bull of the Bharata race, blazing forth for all time like Agni himself. He that with subdued soul batheth in the *tirtha* of the king of waters, and giveth oblations of water unto the *Pitris* and the gods, living there for three nights, blazeth forth like the Moon, and obtaineth also the fruit of the horse-sacrifice. One should next proceed, O best of the Bhāratas, unto the *tirtha* known by the name of *Varadāna*, where (the Rishi) Durvāsas had given a boon unto Vishnu.‡ A man by bathing in Varadāna obtaineth the fruit of the gift of a thousand kine. One should next proceed with subdued senses and regulated diet to *Dwāravati*, where by bathing in *Pindāraka*, one obtaineth the fruit of the gift of gold in abundance. O blessed one, it is wonderful to relate that in that *tirtha*, to this day, coins with the mark of the lotus, and lotuses also with the mark of the trident, are seen, O repressor of heroes! And, O bull among men, the presence of Mahādeva is there. Arriving then, O Bhārata, at the

---

* A cow with auspicious marks and giving milk whenever required is called *Kapilā*.

† *Hutāçana* is Agni, so called because of the libations (of clarified butter) that he eats, he being the mouth through which the other gods take their food.

‡ This *Sloka* also ends with "Yudhishthira" in the vocative case. *Vide* the last note in page 243.

spot where the *Sindhu* mingleth with the sea, one should with subdued soul bathe in that *tirtha* of Varuna. And bathing there and giving oblations of water to the *Pitris*, the Rishis, and the gods, one acquireth, O bull of the Bharata race, the region of Varuna, and blazeth forth in effulgence of his own. Men of wisdom say that by worshipping the god known by the name of *Shankukarneçwara*, one acquireth ten times the merit of the horse-sacrifice. O bull of the Bharata race, having walked round that *tirtha*, one should, O thou foremost of the Kurus, go to that *tirtha* celebrated over the three worlds and known by the name of *Drimi*.* That *tirtha* cleanseth from every sin, and it is there that the gods including Brahmā worship Maheçwara. Having bathed there and worshipped Rudra surrounded by the other gods, one is freed from all sins since birth. It was there, O best of men, that *Drimi* was adored by all the gods. Bathing there, O best of men, one obtaineth the fruit of the horse-sacrifice. O thou of great intelligence, Vishnu the creator of the universe, after slaying the Daityas and Dānavas, went thither to purify himself. O virtuous one, one should next proceed to *Vasudhārā* adored by all. By an only sojourn to that *tirtha*, one acquireth the fruit of the horse-sacrifice. And, O thou best of the Kurus, by bathing there with subdued soul and rapt attention, and giving oblations of water unto the gods and the *Pitris*, one ascendeth unto the rigion of Vishnu and is adored there. In that *tirtha*, O bull of the Bharata race, there is a sacred lake of the Vasus. By bathing there and drinking of its water, one becometh regarded of the Vasus. There is a celebrated *tirtha* of the name of *Sindhuttama*, which destroyeth every sin. O best of men, by bathing there, one acquireth the fruit of the gift of gold in abundance. By arriving at *Bhadratungā* with sanctified soul and purity of conduct, one acquireth the region of Brahmā and a high state of blessedness. There is then the *tirtha* of the *Kumārikās* of Indra, that is much resorted to by the *Siddhas*. O best of men, by bathing there, one obtaineth the region

* Some texts read *Damī*.

of Indra. In *Kumārika* there is another *tirtha* called *Renukā*, which is also resorted to by the *Siddhas*. A Brāhmana by bathing there would become as bright as the Moon. Proceeding next to the *tirtha* called the *Panchanada*, with subdued sense and regulated diet, one obtaineth the fruit of the five sacrifices that have been mentioned one after another in the scriptures. Then, O king, one should go to the excellent region of *Bhimā*. O best of the Bhāratas, by bathing in the *tirtha* there that is called *Yoni*, a man (in his next birth) becometh, O king, the son of a goddess, bearing ear-rings decked with pearls, and obtaineth also the merit of the gift of an hundred thousand kine. Proceeding next to *Srikunda* celebrated over the three worlds and worshipping the Grandsire, one obtaineth the fruit of the gift of a thousand kine. O virtuous one, one should then go to the excellent *tirtha* called *Vimala*, where to this day may be seen fishes of golden and silver hues. By bathing there, one soon acquireth the region of Vāsava, and his soul being cleansed from every sin, he attaineth to a high state of blessedness. Proceeding next to *Vitastā* and giving oblations of water unto the *Pitris* and the gods, a man, O Bhārata, obtaineth the fruit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice. That sin-destroying *tirtha* known by the name of *Vitatsā*, is situate in the country of the Kāçmrīas and is the abode of the Nāga Takshaka. Bathing there, a man certainly obtaineth the fruit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice, and his soul cleansed from every sin, he attaineth to a high state of blessedness. One should next proceed to *Vadavā* celebrated over the three worlds. Bathing there with due rites in the evening, one should offer rice boiled in butter and milk, according to the best of his might, unto the deity of seven flames. Men of wisdom say that a gift made here in honor of the *Pitris*, becometh inexhaustible. The Rishis, the *Pitris*, the gods, the Gandharvas, several tribes of Apsaras, the Guhyakas, the Kinnaras. the Yakshas, the Siddhas, the Vidyādharas, men, Rākshasas, Daityas. Rudras, and Brahmā himself, O king, having with subdued senses accepted a course of austerities for a thousand years inorder to move Vishnu to grace, cooked rica in milk and butter and gratified Keçeva with oblations,

each offered with seven *Richs.** And, O king, the gratified Keçava thereupon conferred on them the eight-fold atributes called *Aiçwaryya* † and other objects that they desired. And having bestowed upon them these, that god disappeared in their sight like lightning in the clouds. And it is for this, O Bhārata, that that *tirtha* became known by the name of *Saptacharu.* ‡ And if one offereth *Charu* there to the seven-flamed deity, he obtaineth merit superior to that of the gift of an hundred thousand kine, to that of an hundred Rājasuya sacrifices, as also of an hundred horse-sacrifices. Leaving *Vadavā*, O king, one should then proceed to *Raudrapada*, and beholding Mahādeva there one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice. Proceeding then, with subdued soul and leading a Brahmacharya mode of life, to *Manimat*, and residing there for one night, one acquireth, O king, the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. One should then go, O king, to *Devikā* celebrated over the whole world. It was there, O bull of the Bharata race, that, as heard by us, the Brāhmanas first sprang into existence. There also is the region of the holder of the trident,—a region that is celebrated over the world. Having bathed in *Devikā* and worshipped Maheçwara by offering him, to the best of one's might, rice boiled in milk and butter, a man obtaineth, O bull of the Bharata race, the merit of a sacrifice that is capable of filling every desire. There also is another *tirtha* of Rudra, called *Kāmākhya*, which is much resorted to by the gods. Bathing there, a man speedily obtaineth success. By touching also the waters of *Yajana*, *Yājana*, *Brahmavāluka*, and *Pushpāmva*, one becometh free from sorrow in after life. The learned have said that the sacred *tirtha* of *Devika*, the resort of the gods and the Rishis, is five *Yojanas* in length and half a *Yojana*

---

* Mantras of the *Rig Veda.*

† *Sapta* is seven, and *charu*, rice boiled in milk and butter; so called, (as explained above) because of oblations of *charu*, each offered with *seven Richs.*

‡ It is difficult to assign a meaning to this word. It may mean either *rabbits* or *spots of the moon.*

in breadth. One should then, in due order, proceed, O king, to *Dirghasatra*. There the gods with Brahmā at there head, the *Siddhas*, and the greatest Rishis, with regulated vows and the recitation and acceptance of the preliminary pledge, perform the long-extending sacrifice. O king, by going only to *Dirghasatra*, O repressor of foes, one obtaineth merit that is superior, O Bhārata, to that of either the Rājasuya or the horse-sacrifice. One should next proceed with subdued senses and regulated diet to *Vinaçanā*, where *Saraswati* disappearing on the breast of Meru, re-appeareth at *Chamasa*, *Shivodveda*, and *Nāgodveda* Bathing in *Chamasodveda*, one obtaineth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. Bathing in *Shivodveda*, one acquireth the merit ofthe gift of a thousand kine. And bathing in *Nāgodveda*, one obtaineth the region of the Nāgas. One should proceed next to the inaccessible *tirtha* of *Shaçayāna*, where the cranes, O Bhārata, disappearing in the form of *çaças*,* re-appear every year in the month of *Kārtika*, and bathe, O blessed chief of the Bharata race, in the *Saraswati*. Bathing there, O tiger among men, one blazeth forth like the Moon, and obtaineth, O bull of the Bharata race, the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. One should next proceed, O thou of the Kuru race, to *Kumārakoti*, with subdued senses, and bathing there, worship the gods and the *Pitris*. By doing this, one obtaineth the merit of the gift of ten thousand kine, and raiseth all his ancestors to higher regions. One should next, O virtuous one, proceed with subdued soul to *Rudrakoti*, where in olden days, O king, ten million of Munis had assembled. And, O king, filled with great joy at the prospect of beholding Mahādeva, the Rishis assembled there, each saying, *I will first behold the god! I will first behold the god!** And, O king, in order to prevent disputes amongst those Rishis of subdued souls, the Lord of *Yoga*, by help of his *Yoga* powers, multiplied himself into ten million forms, and stood before every one of them.

---

* The word used in the text is, *Vrishava-dhwajam*, meaning one whose mark (or vehicle) is the bull. This is a common name of Mahādeva.

And every one of those Rishis said,—*I have seen him first!* And gratified, O king, with the deep devotion of those Munis of subdued souls, Mahādeva granted them a boon, saying, *From this day your righteousness shall grow!* And, O tiger among men, one that bathes, with a pure mind, in Rudrakotī obtains the merit of the horse-sacrifice and delivers his ancestors. One should next proceed, O king, to that highly sacred and celebrated region where the Saraswati mingles with the Sea. Thither, O king, the gods with Brahmā at their head and Rishis with wealth of asceticism repair for adoring Keçeva on the fourteenth day of the lighted fortnight of the month of Chaitra. Bathing there, O tiger among men, one obtaineth the merit of giving away gold in abundance, and his soul being cleansed from every sin, he ascendeth to the region of Brahmā. It is there, O king, that the Rishis have completed many a sacrifice! By a sojourn to that spot one obtains the merit of the gift of a thousand kine!—' "

Thus ends the eighty-second Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXXIII.

(*Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.*)

" 'Pulastya said.—One should next proceed, O king, to the adored Kurukshetra at sight of which all creatures are freed from their sins. He is freed from all sins who constantly sayeth—*I will live in Kurukshetra!* The very dust of Kurukshetra, convyed by the wind, leadeth a sinful man to a blessed course (in after life). They that dwell in Kurukshetra which lieth to the south of the Saraswati and the north of the Drishadwati, are said to dwell in heaven. O hero, one should reside there, O thou foremost of warriors,*

---

* The word *Yudhishthira* occurs in the text. A Pundit suggests to me that instead of meaning the eldest son of Pāndu, the word here may be an adjective implying "firm or steady in battle". This certainly is ingenious, for it may apply very well to Bhishma to whom of course, the whole speech of Pulastya is addressed, Nārada being only the repeater of that speech to the eldest son of Pandu.

for a month! There, O lord of earth, the gods with Brahmā at their head, the Rishis, the Siddhas the Chāranas, the Gandharvas, the Apsaras, the Yakshas, and the Nāgas, often repair, O Bhārata, to the highly sacred Brahmakshetra! O foremost of warriors, the sins of one that desireth to repair to Kurukshetra even mentally are all destroyed, and he finally goeth into the region of Brahmā.* O son of the Kuru race, by repairing to Kurukshetra in a pious frame of mind, one obtaineth the fruit of the Rājasuya and horse sacrifices! By saluting next the Yaksha called Mankanaka, that mighty gate-keeper (of Kuvera), one obtaineth the fruit of giving away a thousand kine. O virtuous king, one should next repair to the excellent region of Vishnu, where Hari is always present! Bathing their and bowing down unto Hari the Creator of the three worlds, one obtaineth the fruit of the horse-sacrifice and repaireth to the abode of Vishnu! One should next repair to Pāriplava that *tirtha* celebrated over the three worlds. (Bathing there,) O Bhārata, one obtaineth merit that is greater than that of the *Agnistoma* and the *Atiratra* sacrifices! Repairing next to the *tirtha* called Prithivi, one obtaineth the fruit of the gift of a thousand kine. The sojourner to *tirtha*s shoud next, O king, proceed to Shālukini, and bathing there in the Daçāçwamedha one obtaineth the merit of ten horse-sacrifices! Proceeding next to Sarpadevi, that excellent *tirtha* of the Nāgas, one obtaineth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice and attaineth to the region of the Nāgas. O virtuous one, one should next proceed to Tarantuka, the gate-keeper, and residing there for one night one obtaineth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Proceeding next with subdued senses and regulated diet to Panchanada and bathing in the *tirtha* there called Koti, one obtaineth the fruit of the horse-sarifice. Proceeding then

---

* *Brahmaloka.* Wherever this word occurs, it may either mean "the region of Brahma," or, "the state of Brahma." As the fruits of pilgrimages (as recited by Pulastya) are furthest removed from the *spiritual*, I have thought it proper not to take this one expresion, amongst a thousand others, in a spiritual sense.

to the *tirtha* of the twin Açwins, one obtaineth personal beauty. O virtuous one, one should next proceed to the excellent *tirtha* called Vārāha, where Vishnu formerly stood in the form of a boar. Bathing there, one obtaineth, O foremost of men, the merit of the horse-sacrifice! One should next, O king, repair to the *tirtha* called Soma in Jayanti. Bathing there, one obtaineth the merit of the Rājasuya sacrifice! By bathing in Ekahansa, a man obtaineth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. O king, a sojourner to *tirthas* repairing to Kritaçaucha obtaineth the lotus-eyed deity (Vishnu) and perfect purity of soul. One should next proceed to Munjavata, that spot sacred to the illustrious Sthānu! Residing there without food for one night, one obtaineth the status called *Gānapatya*. There, O king, is the celebrated *tirtha* called Yakshini. O king, repairing to that *tirtha* and bathing there, one obtaineth the fruition of all his desires. O bull of the Bharata race, that *tirtha* is regarded as the gate of Kurukshetra. The sojourner to *tirthas* should, with concentrated soul, walk round it. Equal unto the Pushkaras, it was created by the high-souled Rāma the son of Jamadagni. Bathing there, and worshipping the Pitris and the gods, one obtaineth, O king, the merit of the horse-sacrifice and becometh successful in everything. The sojourner of *tirthas* should next repair with concentrated soul to the Rāmahrdas. There, O king, the heroic Rama of resplendent energy, exterminating the Kshatriyas by his might, dug five lakes and filled them, O tiger among men, with the blood of his victims, as heard by us. And having filled those lakes with Kshatriya blood, Rāma offered oblations of blood to his sires and grandsires. Gratified (with the oblations) those Rishis then addressed Rāma and said,—O Rāma, O Rāma, O thou of great good fortune, we have been gratified with thee, O thou of the Bhrigu race, for this thy regard for the Pitris, and thy prowess, O exalted one! Blessed be thou, ask thou the boon thou choosest! What is it that thou desirest, O thou of great splendour!—Thus addressed (by them), Rāma, that foremost of smiters, said with joined hands these words unto the Pitris stationed in the firmament.—If ye have been gratified with me,

if I have deserved your favor, I desire this favor of the Pitris, *viz*, that I may have pleasure again in ascetic austerities! Let me also, through your power, be freed from the sin I have committed by exterminating, from wrath, the Kshatriya race! Let also my lakes become *tirthas* celebrated over the world!—The Pitris, hearing these blessed words of Rāma, were highly gratified, and filled with joy they answered him, saying,—Let thy asceticism increase in consequence of thy regard for the Pitris! Thou hast exterminated the Kshatriyas, from wrath. Freed art thou already from that sin, for they have perished as a consequence of their own misdeeds! Without doubt, these lakes of thine will become *tirthās*. And he who, bathing in these lakes, offereth oblations of the water thereof to the Pitris, the latter, gratified with him, will grant him desires difficult of fulfilment in the world, as also eternal heaven!—O king, having granted him these boons, the Pitris joyfully saluted Rāma of the Bhrigu race and disappeared there and then. It was thus that the lakes of the illustrious Rāma of the Bhrigu race became sacred. Leading a Brahmacharya mode of life and observing sacred vows, one should bathe in the lakes of Rāma. Bathing therein and worshipping Rāma, one obtaineth, O king, the merit of gift of gold in abundance! Proceeding next, O son of the Kuru race, to Vançamulaka, a sojourner to *tirthās*, by bathing there raiseth, O king, his own race! O best of the Bharatas, arriving next at the *tirtha* called Kāyaçodhana, and bathing there, one purifieth, without doubt, his own body, and proceedeth with purified body to blessed regions of unrivalled excellence. One should next repair, O virtuous one, to that *tirtha*, celebrated over the three worlds, called Lokodhava, were formerly Vishnu of great prowess had created the worlds. Arriving at that *tirtha* which is adored by the three worlds one earneth, O king, by bathing there, numerous worlds for himself. Repairing next with subdued soul to the *tirtha* called Sree, one acquires, by bathing there and worshipping the Pitris and the gods, high prosperity. Leading a Brahmacharya mode of life and with concentrated soul, one should proceed next to the *tirtha* called Kapilā. Bathing there and worshipping

one's own Pitris and the gods, a man earneth the fruit of the gift of a thousand Kapilā kine. Repairing next to the *tirtha* called Surya and bathing there with subdued soul and worshipping the Pitris and the gods, fasting all the while, one obtaineth the fruit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice and goeth (finally) to the region of the Sun. The sojourner to *tirtha* by proceeding next to Go-bhavana and bathing there obtaineth the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. O son of the Kuru race, the sojourner to *tirtha* by repairing then to the *tirtha* called Shankhini and bathing in the Devi *tirtha* that is there, obtaineth high prowess. O king, one should then proceed to the *tirtha* called Tarandaka situate in the Saraswati and belonging to the illustrious chief of the Yakshas who is one of the gate-keepers (of Kuvera). O king, bathing there, one obtaineth the fruit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. O virtuous king, one should next repair to the *tirtha* called Brahmāvarta Bathing in Brahmāvarta, one ascendeth to the abode of Brahmā. O king, one should then repair to that excellent *tirtha* called Sutirtha. There the Pitris are ever present along with the gods. One should bathe there and worship the Pitris and the gods. By so doing, one obtaineth the merit of the horse sacrifice and goeth (finally) into the region of the Pitris. It is for this, O virtuous one, that Sutirtha situate in Amvumati is regarded as so excellent. And, O thou best of the Bharata race, having bathed in the *tirtha* of Kāçiçwara,* one becometh freed from all diseases and is adored in the abode of Brahmā. There in that *tirtha* is another called Mātri. One that bathes in Matri *tirtha* hath a large progeny and obtaineth, O king, great prosperity! One should next proceed with subdued sense and regulated diet to the *tirtha* called Shitavana. And, O great king, it hath been seen that one merit of that *tirtha*, which rarely belongs to any other, is that one by only going thither obtain-

---

* A name of *Shiva*. The *tirtha* of *Kāçiçwara* is Beneras (otherwise called *Kāçi*). The four succeeding *tirthas* are all in Kaçi and exist to this day, being known by these very names.

eth holiness. By casting off his hair in that *tirtha*, one acquireth, O Bhārata, great sanctity! There in that *tirtha* is another called Shwāvillomāpaha, where, O tiger among men, and chief of the Bharata race, learned Brāhmanas that sojourn to *tirtha* obtain great satisfaction by a dip into its waters! Good Brāhmanas, O king, by casting off their hair in that *tirtha* acquire holiness by *Prānāyāma*† and finally attain to a high state. There, O king, in that *tirtha* is also another called Daçāçwamedhika. Bathing there, O tiger among men, one attains to a high state. One should next proceed, O king, to the celebrated *tirtha* called Mānusha where, O king, a number of black antelopes afflicted by the hunter's arrows, plunging into its waters, were transformed into human beings! Bathing in that *tirtha* leading a Brahmacharya mode of life and with concentrated soul, a man becomes freed from all his sins and is adored in heaven. Distant by a croça, O king, to the east of Mānusha there is a river celebrated by the name of Apagā that is resorted to by the Siddhas. The man that offereth there the çyamāka grain in honor of the gods aed the Pitris acquireth great religious merit. And if one Brāhmana is fed there, it becomes equivalent to feeding ten million of Brāhmanas. Having bathed in that *tirtha* and worshipped the gods and the Pitris and resided there for one night, a man obtaineth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. One should then repair, O king, to that excellent region of Brahmā which, O Bhārata, is known on earth by the name of Brahmodumvara. Bathing in the tank of the seven Rishis that is there, O bull among men, with pure mind and subdued soul, as also in the *tirtha* called Kedāra of the high-sould Kapila, and beholding Brahmā who is there, one's soul being purified from all sins one goeth to the abode of Brahmā. Proceeding next to the inaccessible *tirtha* called Kedāra of Kapishtala, and burning one's sins there by ascetic penances, one acquireth the power of disappearance at will. One should next proceed, O king, to the celebrated

---

* A process of *Yoga* by which the five intercorporal airs *viz*, *Prāna*, *Apana*, *Samāna*, *Udāna*, and *Vyāna*, are controlled by the will.

tirtha called Saraka, and beholding Mahādeva there on the fourteenth day of the dark fortnight, one obtaineth all his wishes and goeth also into heaven. O son of the Kuru race, in Saraka and Rudrakoti as also in the well and the lakes that are there, thirty million of *tirtha* are present. There in that *tirtha*, O chief of the Bharatas, is another called Ilāspada. Bathing there and worshipping the gods and the Pitris, one never sinketh into hell but obtaineth the fruit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice. Repairing next to Kindāna and Kinjapya, one acquireth, O Bhārata, the merit of giving away in measureless abundance and the infinite recitation of prayers. Repairing next to the *tirtha* called Kalaçi and bathing there devoutly and with the senses under control, a man obtaineth the fruit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. To the east of Saraka, O chief of the Kurus,there is an auspicious *tirtha*, known by the name of Ambājanma, of the high-souled Nārada. He that bathes there, O Bhārata, obtaineth, after death, at the command of Nārada, various unrivalled regions. One should next proceed, on the tenth day of the lighted fortnight, to the *tirtha* called Pundarika. Bathing there, O king, one obtaineth the merit of the Pundarika sacrifice. One should next proceed to the *tirtha* called Tripistapa that is known over the three worlds. There in that *tirtha* is the sacred and sin-destroying river called Baitarani. Bathing there and adoring the god known by the mark of the bull and holding the trident in his hand, one's soul being purified from every sin one attaineth to the highest state. One should next proceed, O king, to the excellent *tirtha* called Falakivana. There in that *tirtha* the gods, O monarch, having been present, had performed their ascetic austerities extending for many thousand years! One should then proceed to the Dhrishadwati. Bathing there and worshipping the gods, one obtaineth, O Bhārata, merit that is superior to that of both the *Agnishtoma* and the *Atirātra* sacrifices. O chief the Bharatas, bathing in that *tirtha* called Sarvadeva, a man obtaineth, O king, the merit of the giving away a thousand kine. Bathing next in the *tirtha* called Pānikhāta and worshipping all the gods, a man obtaineth merit that

is superior to that of both the *Agnishtoma* and the *Atirātra* sacrifices, besides acquiring that of the Rājasuya sacrifice and finally going into the region of the Rishis. One should next proceed, O virtuous one, to that excellent *tirtha* called Miçraka. There, O tiger among kings, it hath been heard by us that the high-souled Vyasa, for the sake of the Brāhmanas, hath mixed all the *tirtha*. He, therefore, that bathes in Miçraka really bathes in all the *tirtha*. One should next proceed with subdued senses and regulated diet, to the *tirtha* called Vyasavana. Bathing in the *tirtha* called Manojava that is there one obtaineth the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. Proceeding next to the Devi *tirtha* that is in Madhuvati, one that bathes there and worships the gods and the Pitris obtains at the command of the Goddess the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. Proceeding with regulated diet, he that bathes in the confluence of the Kauçiki and the Drishadwati, becometh free from all his sins. One should next proceed to Vyasasthali where Vyasa of great intelligence, burning with grief for his son, had resolved to cast off his body but was cheered again by the gods. Proceeding to that spot of Vyasa, one obtaineth the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. O son of the Kuru race, proceeding next to the well called Kindatta, he that throweth into it a measure* of sesame, is freed from all his debts and obtaineth high success. Bathing in the *tirtha* called Vedi, one obtaineth the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. There are two other celebrated *tirtha* called Ahas and Sudina. Bathing there, O tiger among men, one goeth to the region of the Sun. One should next proceed to the *tirtha* called Mrigadhuma that is celebrated throughout the three worlds. One should bathe there, O king, in Gangā. Bathing there and worshipping Mahādeva, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice. Bathing next in the Devi *tirtha*, one obtaineth the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. One should then proceed to Vāmanaka celebrated over the three worlds. Bathing there in Vishnupada

* The word is *Prastha*. It is equal to forty-eight double handfulls. *Vide*. Wilsons Dic.

and worshipping Vāmana,* one's soul being purified from every sin, one goeth to the abode of Vishnu. Bathing next in Kulampuna, one sanctifieth his own race. Proceeding then to the Pavana-hrada,† that excellent *tirtha* of the Maruts, and bathing there, O king and tiger among men, one becometh adored in the region of the Wind-god. Bathing in the Amara-hrada‡ and worshipping with devotion the chief of the celestials, one becometh adored in heaven and courseth, seated on an excellent car, in the company of the immortals. O best of great men, bathing next with due rites in the *tirtha* called Shālisurya, of Shālihotra, one obtaineth the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. O best of the Bhāratas, there is a *tirtha* called Sreekunja in the Saraswati. Bathing there, O best of men, one obtaineth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. O son of the Kuru race, one should next repair to Naimishakunja. O king, the Rishis engaged in ascetic austerities in the woods of Naimisha had, in days of old, taking the vow of pilgrimage, gone to Kurukshetra. There, on the banks of the Saraswati, O chief of the Bhāratas, a woody tope was made, which might serve for a resting spot for themselves, and which was highly gratifying to them. Bathing in the Saraswati there, one obtaineth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. One should next proceed, O virtuous one, to the excellent *tirtha* called Kanyā. Bathing there one obtaineth the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. One should next proceed to the excellent *tirtha* of Brahmā. Bathing there, a person, of the (three) inferior orders, obtaineth the status of a Brāhmana, and if one be a Brāhmana, his soul being purified from every sin, he attaineth to the highest

---

* Lit. *dwarf*. Vishnu himself took his birth in the womb of *Aditi*, the mother of the gods, in the form of a dwarf, to effect the destruction of the Asura, Vali.

† The lake of *Pavana*, the wind-god. I have left such expressions as they are, so that the scholar and the antiquary may not feel additional difficulty in identifying them.

‡ The celestial lake. I have not translated the word for the above reason.

state. One should then, O best of men, proceed to the excellent *tirtha* called Soma. Bathing there, O king, one obtaineth the region of Soma. One should next proceed, O king, to the *tirtha* called Sapta-sāraswata, where the celebrated Rishi, Mankanaka, had obtained ascetic success. O king, it hath been heard by us that in days of old Mankanaka having cut his hand with the pointed blade of the Kuça grass, there flowed from his wound vegetable juice (instead of blood). And beholding vegetable juice flow from his wound, the Rishi began to dance with wonder-expanded eyes. And as the Rishi danced, all the mobile and immobile creatures also, overwhelmed with his prowess, began to dance with him. Then, O king, the gods with Brahmā at their head and Rishis endued with the wealth of asceticism, moved by the act of Mankanaka, represented the matter to Mahādeva, saying,—It behoveth thee, O god, to act in such a way that this Rishi may not dance!—Thus addressed, Mahādeva, with heart filled with joy, approached the dancing Rishi, and moved by the desire of doing good to the gods, said,—O great Rishi, O virtuous one, why dost thou dance? O bull among Munis, what can be the reason of this thy present joy?—The Rishi answered, —O best of Brāhmanas, I am an ascetic that tread the path of virtue. Dost thou not behold, O Brāhmana, that vegetable juice floweth from the wound in my hand? Filled with great joy at sight of this, I am dancing!—Addressing the Rishi blinded by emotion, the god laughingly said,—O Brāhmana, I do not wonder at this. Behold me!—Having said this, O best of men, Mahādeva, O sinless king, pressed his thumb by the tip of his own finger. And, lo, from the wound thus inflicted, there came out ashes white as snow! And beholding this, O king, that Muni became ashamed and fell at the feet of the god. And believing that there was nothing better and greater than the god Rudra, he began to adore him in these words:—

O holder of the trident, thou art the refuge of the celestials and the Asuras, of, indeed, the universe! By thee have been created the three worlds with their mobile and immobile beings? It is thou again that swallowest everything at the

end of the *Yuga*. Thou art incapable of being known by the gods themselves, far less by me! O sinless one, the gods with Brahmā at their head are all displayed in thee. Thou art all, the Creator himself and the Ordainer of the worlds! It is by thy grace that all the gods sport without anxiety or fear!—And adoring Mahādeva thus, the Rishi also said,—O God of gods, grant me thy grace, so that my asceticism may not diminish!—Then that god of cheerful soul answered the regenerate Rishi, saying,—Let thy asceticism, O Brāhmana, increase a thousand fold through my grace! And, O great Muni, I shall dwell with thee in this thy asylum! Bathing in Saptasāraswata, they that will worship me, shall be able to attain everything here and hereafter! And, without doubt, they shall all attain to the *Sāraswata* region in the end! —Having said this, Mahādeva disappeared then and there.

After visiting Sāraswata, one should proceed to Auçanasa,* celebrated over the three worlds. There, O Bhārata, the gods with Brahmā at their head, and Rishis endued with wealth of asceticism, and the illustrious Kārtikeya, were ever present during two twilights and the mid-day, impelled by the desire of doing good to Bhārgava.† There in that *tirtha* is another called Kapālamochana, which cleanseth from every sin. O tiger among men, bathing there one is cleansed from every sin. One should then proceed to the *tirtha* called Agni. Bathing there, O bull among men, one obtaineth the regions of Agni and raiseth his own race (from lower regions). There in that *tirtha* is another, O chief of the Bhāratas, that belongeth to Viçwāmitra. Bathing there, O best of men, one obtaineth the status of a Brāhmana. Proceeding next to Brahmayonī in purity of body and with subdued soul, one obtaineth, O tiger among men, by bathing there, the abode of Brahmā, and sanctifieth, without doubt, his own race to the seventh generation up and down. One should next proceed, O king, to that *tirtha* celebrated over the three worlds, which is called

* From *Uçanas*, one of the many names of the great Sukrāchārya, the spiritual preceptor of the Asuras.

† Uçanas of the Bhrigu race.

Prithudaka, belonging to Kārtikeya. One should bathe there and occupy himself in the worship of the *Pitris* and the gods. Whatever of evil hath been committed, knowingly or unknowingly, by man or woman, impelled by human motives, is all destroyed, O Bhārata, by a bath in that *tirtha*. Bathing there, one obtaineth too the merit of the horse-sacrifice and heaven also. The learned have said that Kurukshetra is holy; that holier than Kurukshetra is the Saraswati; that holier than the Saraswati are all the *tirthas* together; and that holier than all the *tirthas* together is Prithudaka. He that engaged in the recitation of prayers casteth off his body at Prithudaka, which is the best of all *tirthas*, becometh an immortal.* It hath been sung by Sanatkumāra and by the high-souled Vyāsa, and it is in the Vedas also, that one should, O king, sojourn to Prithudaka, with subdued soul. O son of the Kuru race, there is no *tirtha* which is superior to Prithudaka. Without doubt, that *tirtha* is purifying, holy, and sin-destroying. O best of men, it hath been said by learned persons that men, however sinful, by bathing in Prithudaka, go to heaven. O best of the Bhāratas, there in that *tirtha* is another called Madhusrava. Bathing there, O king, one obtaineth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. One should then proceed, O king, to that celebrated and sacred *tirtha* where the Saraswati uniteth with the Arunā. One that batheth there, having fasted for three nights, is cleansed of even the sin of slaying a Brāhmana, and obtaineth also merit that is superior to that of either the *Agnishtoma* or the *Atirātra* sacrifice, and rescueth his race to the seventh generation up and down. There in that *tirtha* is another, O perpetuator of the Kuru race, that is called Ardhakila. From compassion for the Brāhmanas, that *tirtha* was made by Darbhi in days of old. Without doubt, by vows, by investiture of the sacred thread, by fasts, by rites, and by *Mantras*, one becometh a

* There is a difference of reading here. For *na tasya maranam bhavet*, some texts read *na tamçwo maranam tapet*. Nilakantha explains this as meaning that he who has said his prayers at Kurukshetra has nothing to grieve for, if he dies the day after.

Brāhmana. O bull among men, it hath been seen, however, by learned persons of old that even one destitute of rites and *Mantras*, by only bathing in that *tirtha* becometh learned and endued with the merit of vows. Darbhi had also brought hither the four oceans. O best of men, one that batheth here, never meeteth with distress hereafter, and obtaineth also the merit of giving away four thousand kine. One should next repair, O virtuous one, to the *tirtha* called Shatasahasraka. Near to this is another called Sāhasraka. Both are celebrated, and one that batheth in them, obtaineth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Fasts and gifts there multiply a thousand-fold.* One should next proceed, O king, to the excellent *tirtha* called Renukā. One should bathe there and worship the *Pitris* and the gods. By this, cleansed from every sin, he obtaineth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. Bathing next in the *tirtha* called Vimochana with passions and senses under control, one is cleansed from all the sins generated by the acceptance of gifts. With senses under control and practising the Brahmacharya mode of life, one should next repair to the woods of Panchavati. By a sojourn thither, one earneth much virtue and becometh adored in the regions of the virtuous. One should next procceed to the *tirtha* of Varuna called Taijasa, blazing in effulgence of its own. There in that *tirtha* is the lord of Yoga, Sthānu himself, having for his vehicle the bull. He that sojourneth there, obtaineth success by worshipping the god of gods. It was there that the gods with Brahmā at their head and Rishis endued with wealth of asceticism, installed Guha as the generalissimo of the celestials. To the east of that *tirtha* is another, O perpetuator of the Kuru race, that is called Kuru *tirtha*. With senses under control and leading a Brahmacharya mode of life, he that bathes in *Kuru-tirtha*, becometh cleansed of all his sins and obtaineth the region of Brahmā. With subdued senses and regulated diet, one should next proceed to Sargadwāra.† Sojourning thither,

* One fast or one gift would be equivalent to a thousand fasts or a thousand gifts.

† Lit., "the gate of heaven," probably, a mountain-pass leading to trans-Himalayan regions.

one obtaineth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice and goeth to the abode of Brahmā. The pilgrim should then, O king, proceed to the *tirtha* called Anaraka. Bathing there, O king, one never meeteth with distress hereafter. There, O king, Brahmā himself with the other gods having Nārāyana at their head, is ever present, O tiger among men! And, O royal son of the Kuru race, the wife also of Rudra is present there! Beholding the goddess, one never meeteth with distress hereafter. There in that *tirtha*, O king, is also (an image of) Viçweçwara, the lord of Umā. Beholding the god of gods there, one is cleansed of all his sins. Beholding also (the image of) Nārāyana, from whose navel had sprung the lotus, one blazeth forth, O royal repressor of all foes, and goeth to the abode of Vishnu. O bull among men, he that batheth in the *tirtha*s of all the gods, is exempted from every sorrow and blazeth forth like the Moon. The pilgrim should next proceed, O king, to Swastipura. By walking around that place, one obtaineth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Arriving next at the *tirtha* called Pāvana, one should offer oblations to the *Pitris* and the gods. By this, he obtaineth, O Bhārata, the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. Near to that is Gangā-hrada, and another, O Bhārata, called Kupa. Thirty millions of *tirthas*, O king, are present in that Kupa. Bathing there, O king, a person obtaineth heaven. Bathing also in the Gangā-hrada and adoring Maheçwara, one obtaineth the status of Gānpatya and rescueth his own race! One should next proceed to Sthānuvata, celebrated over the three worlds. Bathing there, O king, one obtaineth heaven. One should then proceed to Vadaripāchana the asylum of Vaçishtha. Having fasted there for three nights, one should eat jujubes. He that liveth on jujubes for twelve years, and he that fasteth at the *tirtha* for three nights, acquire merit that is equal. Arriving then at Indramārga, O king, and fasting there for a day and night, the pilgrim becometh adored in the abode of Indra. Arriving next at the *tirtha* called Ekarātra, the person that stayeth there for one night, with regulated vows, and refraining from untruth, becometh adored in the abode of Brahmā. One should next go, O king, to the asylum of

Aditya—that illustrious god who is a mass of effulgence. Bathing in that *tirtha* celebrated over the three worlds, and worshipping the god of light, one goeth to the region of Aditya and rescueth his own race. The pilgrim then, O king, bathing in the *tirtha* of Soma, obtaineth, without doubt, the region of Soma. One should next proceed, O virtuous one, to the most sacred *tirtha* of the illustrious Dadhicha, that sanctifying *tirtha*, which is celebrated over the whole world. It was here that Angiras, that ocean of ascetic austerities, belonging to the Sāraswata race, was born. Bathing in that *tirtha*, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice, and, without doubt, gaineth also residence in the region of Saraswati. With subdued senses and leading a Brahmacharya mode of life, one should next proceed to Kanyāçrama. Residing there for three nights, O king, with subdued senses and regulated diet, one obtaineth an hundred celestial damsels and goeth also to the abode of Brahmā. One should next, O virtuous one, proceed to the *tirtha* called Sannihati. Sojourning thither, the gods with Brahmā at their head and Rishis endued with wealth of asceticism earn much virtue. Bathing in Saraswati during a solar eclipse, one obtaineth the merit of an hundred horse-sacrifices, and any sacrifice that one may perform there produceth merit that is eternal. Whatever *tirthas* exist on earth or in the firmament, all the rivers, lakes, smaller lakes, springs, tanks, large and small, and spots sacred to particular gods, without doubt, all come, O tiger among men, month after month, and mingle with Sannihati, O king of men! And it is because that all other *tirthas* are united together here, that this *tirtha* is so called.* Bathing there and drinking of its water, one becometh adored in heaven. Listen now, O king, to the merit acquired by that mortal who performeth a *Shraddha* on the day of new moon during a solar eclipse. The person that performeth a *Shraddha* there after having bathed in that *tirtha*, obtaineth the merit that one earneth by properly celebrating a thousand horse-sacrifices. Whatever sins a man or woman committeth, are, without doubt, all

---

* *Sannihati* lit. implies a union or adjacence of many objects.

destroyed as soon as one batheth in that *tirtha*. Bathing there, one also ascendeth to the abode of Brahmā on a lotus-colored car. Bathing next in *Koti-tirtha*, after having worshipped the Yaksha door-keeper, Machakruka, one obtaineth the merit of giving away gold in abundance. Near to this, O best of the Bhāratas, is a *tirtha* called Gangā-hrada. One should bathe there, O virtuous one, with subdued soul and leading a Brahmacharya mode of life. By this, one obtaineth merit that is greater than that of the Rājasuya and horse-sacrifices. The *tirtha* called Naimisha is productive of good on earth; Pushkara is productive of good in the regions of the firmament; Kurukshetra, however, is productive of good in respect of all the three worlds.* Even the dust of Kurukshetra, carried by the wind, leadeth sinful men to a highly blessed state. They that reside in Kurukshetra, which lieth to the north of the Drishadwati and the south of the Saraswati, really reside in heaven. *I will go to Kurukshetra, I will dwell in Kurukshetra,*—he that uttereth these words even once, becometh cleansed of all sins. The sacred Kurukshetra which is worshipped by Brahmarshis, is regarded as the sacrificial alter of the celestials.† Those mortals that dwell there, have nothing to grieve for at any time. That which lieth between Taruntuka and Arantuka and the lakes of Rāma and Machakruka is Kurukshetra. It is also called Samantapanchaka and is said to be the northern sacrificial altar of the Grandsire.—'

---

* Nilakantha adds a long note to this. He inclines to the belief that *Kurukshetra* implies(in this passage)Kāçi or Benares. He quotes numerous authorities, to prove that the incidents of Kuruksehtra, as described in this and the preceding *slokas*, all appertain to Kāçi. At any rate, it is evident that many of the *slokas* commencing from this are repetitions of earlier *slokas* of this very section. (*Vide* p—249) There is authority for holding that the fruits of a sojourn to Naimisha are confined to the blessings of this earth. What is meant by Pushkara being productive of good in the regions of the firmament, is that a sojourn there leadeth to ascension, in after life, to such regions as those of the Sun, the Moon, &c.

† The word in the text is *Brahmavedi*. This very word occurs in one of the *Brāhmanas* of the Vedas.

Thus ends the eighty-third Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXXIV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"'Pulastya said.—Then, O great king, one should proceed to the excellent *tirtha* of Dharma, where the illustrious god of Justice had practised highly meritorious austerities. And it is for this that he made the spot a sacred *tirtha* and rendered it celebrated by his own name. Bathing there, O king, a virtuous man with concentrated soul certainly sanctifieth his family to the seventh generation. * One should then repair, O king, to the excellent Jnānapāvana. Sojourning thither, one obtaineth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice, and goeth to the region of the Munis. Then, O monarch, a man should repair to the Saugandhika-vana. There dwell the celestials with Brahmā at their head, Rishis endued with wealth of asceticism, the Siddhas, the Chāranas, the Gandharbhas, the Kinnaras and the great serpents. As soon as one entereth these woods, he is cleansed of all his sins. Then, O king, should one repair to the sacred goddess Saraswati, known there as the goddess Plakshā, that best of streams and foremost of rivers. There should one bathe in the water issuing from an ant-hill. (Bathing there and) worshipping the Pitris and the gods, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice. There existeth a rare *tirtha* called Içānādhyushita, lying from the ant-hill at the distance of six throws of a heavy stick.† As seen in the Purānas, O tiger among men, bathing there a man obtaineth the merit of giving away a thousand Kapilā kine and of the horse-sacrifice. Sojourning next, O foremost of men, to Sugandhā, and Satakumbhā and Pancha-yakshā, a man becometh adored in heaven. Repairing to another *tirtha* there, called Triçulakhāta, one should bathe and set himself to worship

---

* *Asaptamam* lit., to seven generations. The meaning, however, is seven proceeding and seven succeeding generations.

† Shamyā is a wooden club used in a sacrifice.

the Pitris and the gods. Doing so, without doubt, one obtaineth, after death, the status of *Gānapatya*. One should next proceed, O king, to the excellent spot of the Goddess celebrated over the three worlds by the name of Sākamvari. There, for the space of a thousand celestial years, she of excellent vows, month after month, had subsisted upon herbs, O king of men! And attracted by their reverence for the Goddess, many Rishis with wealth of asceticism, came thither, O Bhārata, and were entertained by her with herbs. And it is for this that they bestowed on her the name of Sākamvari. O Bhārata, the man who arriveth at Sākamvari, with rapt attention and leading a Brahmacharya mode of life and passeth three nights there in purity and subsisting on herbs alone, obtaineth, at the will of the goddess, the merit of him that liveth upon herbs for twelve years. Then should one proceed to the *tirtha* called Suvarna, famed through the three worlds. There in days of old, Vishnu had paid his adorations to Rudra, for his grace, and obtained also many boons difficult of acquisition even by the gods. And, O Bhārata, the gratified destroyer of Tripura said,—O Krishna, thou shalt, without doubt, be much beloved in the world, and the foremost of everything in the universe!—Sojourning thither, O king, and worshipping the deity having the bull for his mark, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice as also the status of *Gānapatya*. One should next proceed to the *tirtha* of Dhumāvati. Fasting there for three nights, one obtaineth, without doubt, all the wishes cherished by him. To the southern half of this spot of the Goddess, there is, O king, a *tirtha* called Rathāvarta. One should, O virtuous one, go up to that place, with a devout heart, and having his senses under control! By this, through the grace of Mahādeva, one attaineth to an exalted state. After walking round the place, one should, O bull of the Bhārata race, proceed to the *tirtha* named Dhārā, which, O thou of great wisdom, washeth off all sins! Bathing there, O tiger among men, a man is freed from every sorrow. One should then repair, O virtuous one, after bowing to the great mountain (Himavat), to the source of the Ganges, which is, without doubt, like the gate of heaven,

There should one, with concentrated soul, bathe in the *tirtha* called Koti. By this, one obtaineth the merit of the Pundarika sacrifice, and delivereth his race. Residing one night there, one acquireth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. By offering oblations of water duly to the gods and the Pitris, at Saptagangā, Trigangā and Shakrāvarta, (which are all there,) becometh adored in the regions of the virtuous. Bathing next at Kanakhala, and fasting there for three nights, a person reapeth the merit of the horse-sacrifice and goeth to heaven. Then, O lord of men, the pilgrim should repair to Kapilāvata. Fasting for one night there, he obtaineth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. O king, there is a *tirtha* of the illustrious Kapila, king of the Nāgas, that is celebrated, O thou best of Kurus, over all the worlds! Bathing there at the *Nāga-tirtha* one obtaineth, O king, the merit of giving away a thousand Kapilā kine. One should next repair to the excellent *tirtha* of Sāntanu, called Lalitikā. Bathing there, O king, one never sinketh into distress (hereafter). The man that bathes at the confluence of the Gangā and the Yamunā obtains the merit of ten horse-sacrifices, and also rescues his race. One should next, O king, sojourn to Sugandha, celebrated over the world. By this, cleansed of every sin, he becometh adored in the abode of Brahmā. Then, O lord of men, the pilgrim should repair to Rudrāvarta. Bathing there, one ascendeth to heaven. Bathing at the confluence of the Ganges and the Saraswati, a person obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice and also ascendeth to heaven. Proceeding next to Bhadrakarneçwara and worshipping the gods duly, one, without sinking into distress, becometh adored in heaven. Then, O lord of men, the pilgrim should proceed to the *tirtha* called Kuvjāmraka. By this he obtaineth the merit of giving away a thousand kine, and heaven also. Then, O king, the pilgrim should go to the Arundhativata. Proceeding thither with concentrated soul and practising the Brahmacharya vows, one that batheth in Sāmudraka and fasteth for three nights, obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice and of giving away a thousand kine, and also rescueth his race. One should next proceed to Brahmāvarta, with concentrated

soul and practising the Brahmacharya vows. By this, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice, and goeth to the region of Soma. The man that proceedeth to the Yamunā-prabhava, (the source of the Yamunā) and batheth there, obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice and is worshipped in heaven. Arriving at Darvisankramana, that *tirtha* which is worshipped of the three worlds, a person obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice and goeth to heaven. Repairing next to Sindhu-prabhava (the sourse of the Indus) which is worshipped by Siddhas and Gandharbhas, and staying there for five nights, one obtaineth the merit of giving away gold in abundance. Proceeding next to the inaccessible *tirtha* called Vedi, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice and ascendeth to heaven. Then, O Bhārata, should one proceed to Rishikulya and Vāçistha. By visiting the latter, all orders attain to Brhāmanhood. Repairing to Rishikulyā and bathing there, and living a month upon herbs, and worshipping the gods and Pitris, one is cleansed of all his sins, and obtaineth the region of the Rishis. Proceeding next to Bhrigutunga a person acquireth the merit of the horse-sacrifice. Repairing then to Virapramoksha, one is freed from every sin. Proceeding then to the *tirtha* of Krittikā and Maghā, one, O Bhārata, obtaineth merit superior to that of the *Agnishtoma* and *Atirātra* sacrifices. The man who, repairing to the excellent *tirtha* called Vidya, batheth there in the evening, obtaineth proficiency in every kind of knowledge. One should next reside for one night at Mahāçrama capable of destroying every sin, taking a single meal. By this, one obtains many auspicious regions, and delivers ten preceding and ten succeeding generations of his race. Dwelling next for a month of Mahālaya, and fasting there for three nights,* one's soul is cleansed of all sins and one acquires the merit of giving

* The words in the text are *Shashtha-kāla*, *i.e.* six half-days or three full days. This, according to Sanskrit idiom (still preserved in Bengali) is called *trirātra*, equivalent in English to *three-nights*, but really meaning, *three days* or 72 hours.

away gold in abundance.* Proceeding next to Vetasikā worshipped by the Grand-sire, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice and the state of Uçanas.† Sojourning next to the *tirtha* called Sundarikā, worshipped by the Siddhas, one obtains personal beauty as witnessed by the ancients. Proceeding next to Brāhmani, with subdued senses and observing the Brahmacharya vow, a person ascendeth to the region of Brahmā on a lotus-hued car. One should repair next to the sacred Naimisha, worshipped by the Siddhas. There dwelleth for aye Brahmā with the gods. By only purposing to sojourn to Naimisha, half one's sins are destroyed; by entering it, he is cleansed of all his sins. The pilgrim of subdued senses should stay at Naimisha for a month; for, O Bhārata, all the *tirthas* of the earth are at Naimisha! Bathing there, with restrained senses and regulated fare, one obtains, O Bhārata, the merit of the cow-sacrifice, and also sanctifies, O best of the Bharatas, his race for seven generations both upwards and downwards. He who renounceth his life at Naimisha by fasting, enjoyeth happiness in the heavenly regions. Even this is the opinion of the wise. O foremost of kings, Naimisha is ever sacred and holy. Proceeding next to Gangôdveda, and fasting there for three nights, a man obtaineth the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice, and becometh like unto Brahmā himself. Sojourning next to the Saraswati, one should offer oblations unto the gods and the Pitris. By this, one certainly enjoyeth bliss in the regions called Sāraswata. Then should one wend to Vāhudā, with subdued soul and observing the Brahmacharya vow. Residing there for one night, one becometh adored in heaven, and obtaineth also, O Kaurava, the merit of the *Devasatra* sacrifice. Then should one repair to the holy Kshiravati, frequented by holier men. By worshipping the gods and the Pitris there, one obtains the merit of the *Vajapeya* sacrifice. Proceeding next to Vimalāçoka, with

---

* There is a difference of reading here. I have followed the text of the Roy Press, edited by Pandit Kalivara Vedantavagisha.

† The words are *auçanasim gatim*, explained by Nilkantha as *Sukratwam.*

subdued soul and observing the Brahmacharya vow, and residing there for one night, one is adored in heaven. One should next proceed to the excellent Gopratāra in the Sarayu, whence Rāma, O king, with all his attendants and animals, renouncing his body, ascended to heaven in consequence of the efficacy of the *tirtha* alone. Bathing in that *tirtha*, O Bhārata, one's soul, through Rāma's grace, and by virtue of his own deeds, being cleansed of all sins, one becometh adored in heaven, O Bhārata! Proceeding next, O son of the Kuru race, to the Rāma *tirtha* on the Gomati, and bathing there, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice, and sanctifieth also his own race. There, O bull of the Bharata race, is another *tirtha* called Satasahasrika. Bathing there, with restrained senses and regulated diet, a person reapeth, O bull of the Bhārata race, the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Then should one, O king, sojourn to the unrivalled *tirtha* called Bharthristhāna. By this, a person obtains the merit of the horse-sacrifice. Bathing next in the *tirtha* called Koti, and worshipping Kārtikeya, a man reapeth, O king, the merit of giving away a thousand kine, and acquireth great energy. Proceeding next to Vārānasi, and worshipping the god having the bull for his mark, after a bath in the Kapilāhrada, one obtaineth the merit of the Rājasuya sacrifice. Repairing then, O perpetuator of the Kuru race, to the *tirtha* called Avimukta, and beholding there the god of gods, the pilgrim, from such sight alone, is immediately cleansed of even the sin of slaying a Brāhmana. By renouncing one's life there, one obtaineth deliverance. Arriving next, O king, at the rare *tirtha* called Mārkandeya celebrated over the world and situated at the confluence of the Ganges, a person obtainteh the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice, and delivereth his race. Sojourning next to Gayā, with subdued senses and observing the Brahmacharya vow, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice and also rescueth his race. There in that *tirtha* is the Akshaya-vata,*

* Lit., *eternal banian*. To this day the priests of Gaya show this tree. There is, however, another *akshayavata* in Allahabad. It is

celebrated over the three worlds. Whatever is offered there to the Pitris is said to become inexhaustible. Bathing there at the Mahānadi, and offering oblations to the gods and the Pitris, a man acquireth eternal regions, and also rescueth his race. Proceeding then to Brahma-sara that is adorned by the woods of Dharma, and passing one night there, a man attaineth to the region of Brahmā. In that lake, Brahmā had raised a sacrificial pillar. By walking round this pillar, a person acquireth the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice. One should next, O mighty monarch, sojourn to Dhenuka celebrated over the world. Staying there for one night, and giving away sessame and kine, one's soul being cleansed from every sin, one ascendeth, without doubt, to the region of Soma. There, O king, on the mountains, the cow called Kapilā used to range with her calf. There is little doubt of this, for, O Bhārata, the hoof-marks of that cow and her calf are seen there to this day!* Bathing in these hoof-prints, O foremost of monarchs, whatever sin a man may have incurred is, O Bhārata, washed away! Then should one go to Gridhravata, the spot conscerated to the trident-bearing god. Approaching the deity having the bull for his mark, one should rub himself with ashes. If a Brāhmana, he obtains the merit of observing the twelve year's vow, and if belonging to any of the other orders, he is freed from all his sins. One should next proceed to the Udyanta mountain, resounding with melodious notes. There, O bull of the Bharata race, is still seen the foot-print of Sāvitri. The Brāhmana of rigid vows, who sayeth his morning, noon, and

---

within the fort of the capital of the North-West Provinces, and is under the ground. To this day those that go to Allahabad perform the *Srāddhas* of their ancestors in the subterranean chambers within the fort. Two branches, each of about 4 cubits in length, shooting from a thick stem of about a cubit is all that are shown of this eternal banian, under whose spreading branches the great Ramachandra had performed the *Srāddha* of Daçaratha.

* There is a difference of reading here, and in the two following lines. The meaning, however, is substantially the same.

evening prayers there, obtaineth the merit of performing that service for twelve years. There, O bull of the Bharata race, is the famous Yônidwāra. Repairing thither, a person becometh exempted from the pain of rebirth. The person that stayeth at Gayā during both the dark and lighted fortnights, certainly sanctifieth, O king, his own race up and down to the seventh generation! One should wish for many sons so that even one may go to Gayā, or celebrate the horse-sacrifice, or offer a *nila** bull. Then, O king, the pilgrim should proceed to Falgu. By this, he obtains the merit of the horse-sacrifice, and acquires great success. O king, one should repair then, with subdued soul, to Dharmaprishtha.† There, O foremost of warriors, dwelleth Dharma for aye! Drinking of the water of a well which is there, and purifying one's self by a bath, he that offers oblations to the gods and the Pitris is cleansed of all his sins and ascends to heaven. There in that *tirtha* is another of the great Rishi Matanga of soul under complete control. By entering that beautiful asylum capable of soothing fatigue and sorrow, one earneth the merit of the *Gavāyana* sacrifice, and by touching (the image of) Dharma which is there, one obtaineth the fruit of the horse-sacrifice. One should next go, O king, to the excellent *tirtha* called Brahmasthāna. Approaching Brahmā, that bull among male beings, who is there, one acquires, O mighty monarch, the merit of the Rājasuya and horse-sacrifices. The pilgrim should then repair to Rājagriha, O king of men! Bathing there, one liveth (in heaven) as happily as (the Rishi) Kākshivat. After purifying himself, one should partake there of the offerings daily made unto the Yakshinī. By this, one is freed from the sin of even slaying a Brāhmana, through the Yakshini's grace. Proceeding next to Manināga, one obtains the merit of giving away a thousand kine. O Bhārata, he that eateth anything belonging to the *tirtha* of Manināga, if bitten by a venomous snake, doth not succumb to its poison! Residing

---

* Lit. *blue*. A bull, however, is called *nila* whose face and tail are of ash color, hoofs and horns white, and other parts red.

† Some texts read *Dharmaprastha*.

there for one night, one is cleansed of all his sins. Then should one proceed to the favorite wood of the Brahmarshi Goutama. There bathing in the lake of Ahalya, one attaineth to an exalted state. Beholding next the image of Sree, one acquireth great prosperity. There in that *tirtha* is a well celebrated over the three worlds. Bathing in it, one obtains the merit of the horse-sacrifice. There also existeth a well sacred to the royal Rishi Janaka, which is worshipped by the gods. Bathing in that well, one ascendeth to the region of Vishnu. Then should one repair to Vinaçana that destroys every sin. By a sojourn thither, one obtaineth the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice, and goeth also to the region of Soma. Proceeding next to Gandaki which is produced by the waters of every *tirtha*, a person acquireth the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice, and ascendeth also to the solar region. Proceeding next to the Viçālā, that river celebrated over the three worlds, one obtaineth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice and ascendeth also to heaven. Repairing then, O virtuous one, to the woody seat of ascetics that is called Adhivanga, one obtains, without doubt, great happiness amongst the Guhyakas. Proceeding next to the river Kampanā, visited by the Siddhas, one obtaineth the merit of the *Pundirika* sacrifice, and ascendeth also to heaven. Arriving then, O lord of earth, at the stream called Māheçwari, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice and also rescueth his own race. Repairing next to the tank of the celestials, one earneth immunity from misfortune, and also the merit of the horse-sacrifice. One should next go to Somapada, with subdued soul and leading a Brahmacharya mode of life. Bathing in Māheçwarapada that is there, one reapeath the merit of the horse-sacrifice. There in that *tirtha*, O bull of the Bhārata race, it is well known that ten million of *tirthas* exist together! A wicked Asura in the shape of a tortoise had, O foremost of monarchs, been carrying it away when the powerful Vishnu recovered it from him! There in that *tirtha* should one perform his ablutions, for by this he acquireth the merit of the *Pundirika* sacrifice and ascendeth also to the region of Vishnu. Then, O best of kings, should one proceed to the place of Nārāyana, where, O Bhārata, Nārāyana is

ever present and dwelleth for aye! There the gods with Brahmā at their head, Rishis endued with wealth of asceticism, the Adityas, the Vasus, and the Rudras, all adore Janārddana! In that *tirtha*, Vishnu of wonderful deeds hath become known as Sālagrāma. Approaching the eternal Vishnu, that lord of the three worlds, that giver of boons, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice, and goeth to the region of Vishnu. There in that place, O virtuous one, is a well capable of destroying every sin. The four seas are ever present in that well. He that bathes in it, O king, will have immunity from misfortune. Beholding (the image of) the boon-giving, eternal, and fierce Mahādeva who is there, one shineth, O king, like the moon emerged from the clouds. Bathing then in Jātismara, with pure mind and subdued senses, one acquireth, without doubt, the recollections of his former life. Proceeding then to Māheçwarapura, and worshipping the god having the bull for his mark, fasting the while, one obtaineth, without doubt, the fruition of all his desires. Repairing then to Vāmana that destroys every sin, and beholding the god Hari, one acquireth exemption from every misfortune. One should next sojourn to the asylum of Kuçika that is capable of removing every sin. Repairing then to the river Kauçiki that cleanseth from even great sins, one should bathe in it. By this one obtaineth the merit of the Rājasuya sacrifice. One should next, O foremost of kings, proceed to the excellent woods of Champaka. By spending there one night, one acquireth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Arriving next at Jyeshthilā, that *tirtha* of rare worth, and passing one night there, one reapeth the fruit of the gift of a thousand kine. Beholding there (the image of) Viçweçwara of great splendour, with his consort the goddess, a person obtaineth, O bull among men, the region of Mitrāvaruna. By fasting there for three nights, a man acquireth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. By visiting Kanyā-samvedya, with senses restrained and regulated fare, one acquireth, O bull among men, the region of Manu the lord of creation. Rishis of rigid vows have said that he that giveth away rice or maketh any gift at the *tirtha* called Kanyā, rendereth such gift eternal. Arriving next at Nischirā

celebrated over the three worlds, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice, and goeth to the region of Vishnu. O king, those that give away at the confluence of the Niçchirā, ascend to the blessed region of Brahmā. There in that *tirtha* is the asylum of Vaçishta that is known over the three worlds. Bathing there, one obtaineth the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice. Proceeding next to Devakuta that is resorted to by celestial Rishis, one acquireth the merit of the horse-sacrifice, and also delivereth his race. Then should one, O king, go to the lake of the Muni Kauçika, where Kauçika's son, Viçwāmitra, obtained high success! Bathing there, a person acquireth the merit of the *Vājapeyā* sacrifice. There, O hero, at Kauçika, should one reside for a month, O bull of the Bhārata race! By a month's residence there, one reapeth the merit of the horse-sacrifice. He that resideth at that best of *tirthas* called Mahā-hrada, enjoys immunity from misfortune, and also obtains the merit of giving away gold in abundance. Beholding next Kārtikeya who dwelleth at Virāçrama, a man certainly reapeth the fruit of the horse-sacrifice. Proceeding then to Agnidhārā celebrated over the three worlds, and beholding there after a bath the eternal and boon-giving Vishnu, that god of gods, one obtaineth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. Proceeding next to the Grand-sire's tank near the monarch of mountains, and bathing in it, a man obtains the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. Falling from the Grand-sire's tank, is that world-sanctifying (stream), celebrated over the three worlds, called Kumāra Dhārā. Bathing there, one regardeth himself as having all his purposes fulfilled. Fasting in that *tirtha* for three days, one is even cleansed from the sin of slaying a Brāhmana. The pilgrim should next, O virtuous one, proceed to the peak of the great goddess Gauri, famed over the three worlds. Ascending it, O best of men, one should approach Stana-kunda. By touching the waters of Stanakunda, a person obtaineth the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice. Bathing in that *tirtha* and worshipping the gods and the Pitris, one acquireth the merit of the horse-sacrifice and also ascendeth to the region of Indra. Arriving next at the well of Tāmrāruna, that is frequented by the gods, one

acquireth, O lord of men, the merit that attches to human-sacrifice. Bathing next at the confluence of the Kirtikā with the Kauciki and the Arunā, and fasting there for three nights, a man of learning is cleansed of all his sins. Proceeding next to the *tirtha* called Urvasi, and then to Somāçrama, a wise man, by bathing next at Kumbhakarnāçrama, becometh adored in the world. The anicients knew that by touching the waters of Kokāmukha, with steady vows and leading a Brahmacharya mode of life, the memory of one's former life is revived. Arriving next with speed to the river called Nandā, a regenerate one becometh freed from all his sins, and ascendeth, with soul under control, to Indra's region. Proceeding next to the island called Rishava, that is destructive of cranes, and bathing in the Saraswati, an individual blazeth forth in heaven. Proceeding next to the *tirtha* called Auddālaka frequented by *Munis*, and bathing there, one is cleansed of all his sins. Repairing next to the sacred *tirtha* called Dharma that is visited by Brahmarshis, one acquireth the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice and becometh respected in heaven. Proceeding next to Champā, and bathing in the Bhāgirathi, he that sojourneth to Dandāparna, acquireth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Then should one proceed to the sacred Lalitikā that is graced by the presence of the virtuous. By this, one acquireth the merit of the Rājasuya sacrifice and is regarded in heaven.—' "

Thus ends the eighty-fourth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXXV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"'Pulastya said.—Arriving next at the excellent *tirtha* called Samvedya in the evening, and touching its waters, one surely obtaineth knowledge. Created a *tirtha* in days of yore by Rāma's energy, he that proceedeth to Lohittya, obtaineth the merit of giving away gold in abundance. Proceeding next to the river Karotoyā, and fasting there for three nights, a man acquireth the merit of the horse-sacrifice. Even

this is the injunction of the Creator himself. It hath been said by the wise, O king, that if a person sojourneth to the spot where Gangā mingleth with the sea, he reapeth merit which is ten times that of the horse-sacrifice. Crossing over to the opposite bank of Gangā, he that batheth there, having resided for three nights, is, O king, cleansed from all his sins. One should next proceed to the Vaitarani capable of destroying every sin. Arriving next at the *tirtha* named Viraja, one shineth like the moon, and sanctifying his race rescueth it, and is himself cleansed of all his sins. He that bathes in Viraja further reapeth the merit of giving away a thousand kine besides sanctifying his line. Residing with purity at the confluence of the Sona and the Jyotirathi, and offering oblations of water to the gods and the Pitris, a man reapeth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. Touching next the waters of the Vansagulma constituting the sources of both the Sona and Narmadā, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice. Sojourning next to the *tirtha* called Rishava in Koçalā, O lord of men, and fasting there for three nights, one earneth the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice, and of the gift of a thousand kine, and also delivereth his race. Arriving at Koçalā, a man should bathe in the *tirtha* named Kāla. By this, one surely obtaineth the merit of giving away one and ten bulls. By bathing in Pushpavati and fasting there, O king, for three nights, one sanctifieth his own race, besides earning the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. Then, O foremost of the Bharata race, by bathing in the *tirtha* called Vadarikā, one obtaineth long life, and also goeth to heaven. Arriving next at Champā, and bathing in the Bhāgirathi, and seeing Danda, one earneth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Then should one go to the sacred Lapetikā, graced by the presence of the pious. By so doing one reapeth the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice and also becometh regarded by the gods. Proceeding next to the mountain called Mahendra, inhabited (of yore) by Jāmadagnya, and bathing in Rāma's *tirtha*, a person acquireth the merit of the horse-sacrifice. Here is Matanga's *tirtha* called Kedāra, O son of the Kuru race! Bathing in it, O foremost of the

Kurus, a man obtaineth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Going to the mountain Sree, one should touch the waters of the stream that is there, By worshipping there the god having the bull for his mark, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice. On the mauntain Sree dwelleth happily the effulgent Mahādeva with the goddess, as also Brahmā with the other gods. By bathing in the lake of Deva, with purity and restrained mind, one obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice, and also attaineth to the highest success.

Proceeding next to the mountain Rishabha in Pāndya, worshipped by the gods, one obtains the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice and rejoices in heaven. One should next proceed to the river Kāveri, frequented by Apsarās. Bathing there, O monarch, one obtaineth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Touching next the waters of the *tirtha* called Kanyā on the shores of the sea, one is cleansed from every sin. Proceeding next to Gokarna celebrated over the three worlds, and which is situate, O best of kings, in the midst of the deep, and is reverenced by all the worlds, and where the gods headed by Brahmā, and Rishis endued with wealth of asceticism, and spirits and Yakshas and Piçāchas, and Kinnaras and the great Nāgas, and Siddhas and Chāranas and Gandharbhas, and men and Pannagas, and Rivers and Seas and Mountains, worship the lord of Umā, one should worship Içāna, fasting there for three nights. By this, one acquireth the merit of the horse-sacrifice, and the status of *Gānapatya*. By staying there for twelve nights, one's soul is cleansed of all sins. One should next proceed to the *tirtha* known as Gāyatri celebrated over the three worlds. Staying there for three nights, one acquireth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. A strange phenomenon is seen to occur there in respect of Brāhmanas, O lord of men! If a Brāhmana, whether born of a Brāhmani or any other woman, reciteth the *Gāyatri* there, the recitation becomes rythmatic and musical, while, O king, a person who is not a Brāhmana cannot adequately hymn it at all! Proceeding next to the inaccessible tank of the Brāhmana Rishi Samvarta, one acquireth personal beauty, and prosperity. Repairing next

to Venā, he that offers oblations of water to the gods and the Pitris, obtains a car drawn by peacocks and cranes. Sojourning next to the Godāvari, ever frequented by the Siddhas, one earneth the merit of the cow-sacrifice, and goeth to the excellent region of Vāsuki.* Bathing next at the confluence of the Vennā, one obtains the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice. By a dip next at the confluence of Varadā, one acquires the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Arriving next at Brahmasthāna, one that stayeth there for three nights acquireth the merit of giving away a thousand kine, and also ascendeth to heaven. Coming next to Kuçaplavana, with subdued soul and leading a Brahmacharya mode of life, and staying there for three nights, he that bathes in it obtains the merit of the horse-sacrifice. Bathing next at the romantic Deva-hrada that is supplied by the waters of the Krishnā-Vennā, and also in the Jātismara-hrada, one acquireth the memory of one's former life. It was there that the chief of the celestials celebrated an hundred sacrifices and ascended to heaven. By a visit only to that spot, one acquireth the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. Bathing next in the Sarvadeva-hrada, a person obtaineth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Proceeding next to the highly sacred tank called Payoshini that best of waters, he that offers oblations of water to the gods and the Pitris acquires the merit of the gift of a thousand kine. Arriving next at the sacred forest of Dandaka, a person should bathe (in the waters) there. By this, O king, one at once obtains, O Bhārata, the merit of giving away a thousand kine! Proceeding next to the asylum of Sarabhanga and that of the illustrious Suka, one acquireth immunity from misfortune, besides sanctifying his race. Then should one proceed to Surpāraka, where Jamadagni's son had formerly dwelt. Bathing in that *tirtha* of Rāma, one acquaireth the merit of giving away gold in abundance. Bathing next in the Saptagodāvara, with subdued sense and regulated diet,

* A different reading is, *Vāyulokancha gachhati*—goeth to the region of Vāyu (Wind-god).

one earneth great merit, and goeth also to the region of the celestials. Proceeding next to Devahrada, with subdued sense and regulated diet, a man obtaineth the merit of the *Deva-satra* sacrifice. One should proceed next to the forest of Tungaka, with subdued senses and leading a Brahmacharya mode of life. It was here that in olden days the Muni Sāraswata taught the Vedas to the ascetics. When the Vedas had been lost (in consequence of the Munis having forgotten them), Angirasa's son, seated at ease on the upper garments of the Munis (duly spread out), pronounced distinctly and with emphasis the word *Om*. And at this, the ascetics again recollected all that they had learnt before. It was there that the Rishis and the gods Varuna, Agni, Prajāpati, Nārāyana also called Hari, Mahādeva, and the illustrious Grandsire of great splendour, appointed the resplendent Bhrigu to officiate at a sacrifice. Gratifying Agni by libations of clarified butter poured according to the ordinance, the illustrious Bhrigu once more performed the *Agnyādhāna* sacrifice for all those Rishis, after which both they and the gods went away to their respective homes one after another. One who enters the forest of Tungaka, is, O best of kings, male or female, cleansed of every sin ! There in that *tirtha*, O hero, one should reside for a month, with subdued senses and regulated diet ! By this, O king, one ascendeth to the region of Brahmā, and delivereth also his race! Arriving next at Medhāvika, one should offer oblations of water to the gods and the Pitris. By this, one acquires the merit of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice, and also memory and intellect. There in that *tirtha* is the mountain known over the whole world and called Kālanjara. Bathing in the celestial lake that is there, one acquires the merit of giving away a thousand kine. He that, O king, after a bath, offereth oblations (to the gods and the Pitris) on the Kālanjara mountain, is, without doubt, regarded in heaven. Proceeding next, O monarch, to the river Mandākini capable of destroying all sins and which is on that best of mountains called Chitrakuta, he that bathes there and worships the gods and the Pitris, obtains the merit of the horse-sacrifice, and attains to an exalted state

One should next, O virtuous one, proceed to the excellent *tirtha* called Bhartristhāna, where, O king, ever dwells the celestial generalissimo Kārtikeya. By a journey only to that spot, a person, O foremost of kings, attaineth to success! Bathing next at the *tirtha* called Koti, one earneth the merit of giving away a thousand kine. Having walked round Koti, one should proceed next to Jyeshthasthāna. Beholding Mahādeva, who is there, one shineth like the moon. There, O mighty monarch, is a celebrated well, O bull of the Bharata race! There in that well, O foremost of warriors, are the four seas! He that bathes there, O foremost of kings, and with subdued soul worships the gods and the Pitris, cleansed of all his sins, attaineth to an exalted state. Then, O mighty king, should one proceed to the great Sringaverapura, where, O foremost of kings, formerly Rāma, Daçaratha's son, had crossed (the Gangā)! Bathing in that *tirtha*, one, O mighty-armed one, is cleansed of all his sins! Bathing, with subdued senses and leading a Brahmacharya mode of life, in Gangā, one is cleansed of every sin, and obtains also the merit of the *Vājapeya* sacrifice. One should next proceed to the place called Mayuravata, consecrated to Mahādeva of high intelligence. Beholding there the god, bowing down to him, and walking round the spot, one acquireth, O Bhārata, the *Gānapatya* status! Bathing in Gangā at that *tirtha*, one is cleansed of all his sins. Then, O king, should one proceed to Prayāga, whose praises have been sung by Rishis and where dwell the gods with Brahmā at their head, the Directions with their presiding deities, the Lokapālas, the Siddhas, the Pitris adored by the worlds, the great Rishis—Sanatkumāra and others, stainless Brahmarshis—Angiras and others, —the Nāgas, the Suparnas, the Siddhas, the Snakes, the Rivers, the Seas, the Gandharbhas, the Apsaras, and the lord Hari with Prajāpati. There in that *tirtha* are three fiery caverns between which Gangā, that foremost of *tirthas*, rolleth rapidly. There in that region also the world-purifying daughter of the Sun, Yamunā, celebrated over the three worlds, uniteth with Gangā. The country between Gangā and Yamunā is regarded as the *mons veneris* of the world, and Prayāga as the

foremost point of that region. The *tirthas* Prayāga, Pratisthāna, Kamvala, Açwatara and Bhagabat are the sacrificial platforms of the Creator. There, in those places, O foremost of warriors, the Vedas and the Sacrifices, in embodied forms, and the Rishis endued with wealth of asceticism, adore Brahmā. And there the gods and rulers of territories also celebrate their sacrifices. The learned, however, say that of all these *tirthas*, O exalted one, Prayāga is the most sacred, in fact, the foremost of all *tirthas* in the three worlds! By going to that *tirtha*, by singing its praises, or by taking a little earth from it, one is cleansed from every sin. He that bathes in that confluence celebrated over the world, acquires all the merits of the Rājasuya and the horse-sacrifices. This sacrificial place is worshipped by the gods themselves. If a man giveth there ever so little, it increaseth, O Bhārata, a thousandfold! O child, let not the texts of the Veda, nor the opinions of men dissuade thy mind from the desire of dying at Prayāga. O son of the Kuru race, the wise say that six hundred million and ten thousand *tirthas* exist at Prayāga! Bathing in the confluence of Gangā and Yamunā, one obtains the merit that attaches to the four kinds of knowledge and the merit also of those that are truthful. There at Prayāga is the excellent *tirtha* of Vāsuki, called Bhogabati. He that batheth in it, obtaineth the merit of the horse-sacrifice. There also in Gangā is the *tirtha* famed over the three worlds, called Rāmaprapatana; which confereth the merit of ten horse-sacrifices, O son of the Kuru race! Wherever may a person bathe in Gangā, he carneth merit equal to that of a sojourn to Kurukshetra. An exception, however, is made in favor of Kanakhala, while the merit attaching to Prayāga is the greatest. Having committed an hundred sins, he that bathes in Gangā, hath all his sins burnt off by the waters thereof, even as fuel is consumed by fire.* It hath been said that in the *Satya yuga*, all the *tirthas* were sacred; in the *Tretā*, Pushkara alone was

* Another reading is *Gangāpastularāçimivānala*—"the waters of the Ganges (in respect of his sins) are like fire in regard to a heap of cotton."

such; in the *Dwāpara*, Kurukshetra; and in the *Kali yuga*, Gangā alone is sacred! In Pushkara, one should practise austerities; in Mahālaya, one should give away; in the Malaya mountains, one should ascend the funeral pyre; and in Bhrigutunga, one should renounce his body by foregoing food. Bathing in Pushkara, in Kurukshetra, in Gangā, and in the confluence (of Gangā and Yamunā), one sanctifieth seven generations of his race up and down. He that reciteth the name of Gangā is purified; while he that beholdeth her, receiveth prosperity; while he that bathes in her and drinks of her waters, sanctifieth seven generations of his race up and down. As long, O king, as one's bones lie in contact with the waters of Gangā, so long doth he live regarded in heaven, even as one liveth in heaven in consequence of the merit he earneth by pious sojourns to sacred *tirthas* and holy spots! There is no *tirtha* that is like unto Gangā, there is no god like unto Keçava, and there is none superior to Brāhmanas,—this hath been said even by the Grandsire! O great king, the region through which Gangā flows should be regarded as a pious asylum, and a spot of land that is on Gangā's shores, should be regarded as one favorable to the attainment of ascetic success!

This truthful description (of the *tirthas*) one should recite only unto the regenerate ones, unto those that are pious, unto one's son and friends and disciples and dependents! This narrative, without a rival, is blessed and holy, and leadeth to heaven. Holy and entertaining and sanctifying, it is productive of merit and high worth. Destructive of every sin, it is a mystery that the great Rishis cherish with care. By reciting it in the midst of Brāhmanas, one is cleansed of every sin, and ascends to heaven. This description of *tirthas* is auspicious and heaven-giving and sacred; ever blessed as it is, it destroys one's enemies; foremost of all accounts, it sharpens the intellect. By reading this narrative the sonless obtain sons, the destitute obtain riches, a person of the royal order conquereth the whole earth, the Vaiçya cometh by wealth, the Sudra obtaineth all his desires, and the Brāhmana crosseth the ocean (of the world). Purifying himself, he that listens

daily to the merits of the different *tirthas*, recollects the incidents of many previous births, and rejoices in heaven! Of the *tirthas* that have been recited here, some are easily accessible, while others are difficult of access. But he that is inspired with the desire of beholding all *tirthas*, should sojourn to them even in imagination. Desirous of obtaining merit, the Vasus, and the Sāddhas, the Adityas, the Māruts, the Açwins, and the Rishis equal unto celestials, all bathed in these *tirthas!* Do thou also, O thou of the Kuru race, observing the ordinance as explained by me, sojourn with subdued senses, to these *tirthas*, increasing thy merit, O thou of excellent vows! Men of piety and learning are able to visit these *tirthas*, by reason of their purified senses, their belief in Godhead, and their acquaintance with the Vedas! He that doth not observe vows, he that hath not his soul under control, he that is impure, he that is a thief, and he that is of crooked mind, doth not, O Kauravya, bathe in *tirthas!* Thou art ever observant of virtue, and art of puro character! By thy virtue, O virtuous one, thou hast always gratified thy father and thy grandfather, and great-grand-fathers, and the gods with Brahmā at their head, and the Rishis also, O thou versed in virtue! Thou who resemblest Vāsava, thou wilt, O Bhishma, attain to the region of the Vasus, and also eternal fame on earth!—'

"Nārada continued. 'Having cheerfully spoken thus, the illustrious Rishi Pulāstya, well-pleased, bidding Bhishmā farewell, disappeared there and then. And Bhishma also, O tiger among men, well understanding the true import of the *Shāstras*, wandered over the world at the command of Pulastya. Thus, O thou blessed one, did Bhishma end at Prayāga his highly meritorious sojourn to the *tirthas*, capable of destroying all sins! The man that ranges the earth in accordance with these injunctions, obtains the highest fruit of an hundred horse-sacrifices and earns salvation hereafter. Thou wilt, O son of Prithā, obtain merit consisting of the eight attributes, even like that which Bhishmā the foremost of the Kurus had obtained of yore. And as thou wilt lead these ascetics to those *tirthas*, thy merit will be much greater. Those *tirthas* are infested by Rākshasas, and no one, save thyself, O

son of the Kuru race, can go there! Rising early he that reciteth this narrative by the celestial Rishi on the subject of the *tirthas*, becometh free from all sins! Those foremost of Rishis,—Vālmiki, and Kāçyapa, and Atreya, and Kundajathara, and Viçwāmitra, and Gautama, and Asita, and Devala, and Mārkandeya, and Gālava, and Bharadwāja, and Vaçishtha, and the *Muni* Uddālaka, and Saunaka, with his son, and Vyāsa, that best of ascetics, and Durvāsas that foremost of *Munis*, and Jāvāli of great austerities,—all these illustrious Rishis endued with wealth of asceticism, are staying in expectation of thee! With these, O mighty king, do thou meet by visiting these *tirthas!* And, O illustrious monarch, a great Rishi of immeasurable energy, Lomaça by name, will come to thee! Do thou follow him, and me, and by turns visit these *tirthas*, O thou virtuous one! By this, thou wilt acquire great fame, like king Mahābhisha! O tiger among kings, even as the virtuous Yayāti and king Pururavas, dost thou blaze forth with thy own virtue! Like king Bhāgiratha and the illustrious Rāma, dost thou shine among kings even as the Sun himself! And thou art, O great king, celebrated (in the world) even as Manu, or Ikshwāku, or the highly famous Puru, or Vainya! And as in days of yore the slayer of Vritra, after burning all his foes, ruled the three worlds, his mind freed from anxiety, so wilt thou rule thy subjects, after slaying all thy enemies! And, O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, having conquered the earth according to the customs of thy order, thou wilt obtain renown by thy virtue, even like Kārttaviryāryuna!"

Vaisamyāyana continued, "O great king, having comforted the monarch thus, the illustrious Rishi Nārada, bidding farewell to the king, disappeared there and then! And the virtuous Yudhishthira, reflecting upon the subject, began to recite unto the ascetics the merit attaching to *tirthas!*"

Thus ends the eighty-fifth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXXVI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vāisampāyana continued. "Having ascertained the opinion of his brothers, and of the intelligent Nārada, king Yudhishthira, addressing Dhaumya, who was like unto the Grandsire himself, said,—'I have, for the acquisition of arms, sent away that tiger among men, Jishnu, whose prowess is incapable of being baffled, and who is possessed of long arms and immeasurable intelligence! O thou of ascetic wealth, that hero is devoted to me, endued with ability, and well-skilled in weapons, and like unto the exalted Vāsudeva himself! I know them both, Krishna and Arjuna, those detroyers of enemies, O Brāhmana, endued with prowess, even as the puissant Vyāsa knoweth them! I know Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya to be none else than Vishnu himself, possessed of the six attributes. * And this is also what Nārada knoweth, for he hath always spoken so unto me! I also know them to be the *Rishis* Nara and Nārāyana! Knowing him to possess the ability, I have sent him (on the mission)! Not inferior unto Indra and fully competent (for the task), I have sent that son of a god to see the lord of the celestials and obtain weapons from him. Bhishma and Drona are *Atirathas*;† Kripa and the son of Drona are invincible; these mighty warriors have been installed by Dhritarāshtra's son in the command of his army. All these are versed in the Vedas, are heroic, and possessed of the

---

* The word is *Triyugau* (in the dual number). Nilakantha explains this so, although he supposes it might as well mean, "those that have been incarnate in pairs in the three *Yugas*." The grammatical construction of the words (in the sense taken by me) is "*Trini Yugāni Yugalāni shadaiçwaryyāni bhaga samgāni* &c."

† An *Atiratha* is a warrior fighting on a big car and competent to fight at the same time with a very large number of warriors. A *Mahāratha* is slightly inferior to an *Atiratha*. Here, however, it is used in the sense of a great and mighty car-warrior. M. Davies is not accurate when he renders *Mahāratha* (in his *Bhagavat-gita*) as "he of the great car."

knowledge of every weapon. Endued with great strength, these always desire to encounter Arjuna in fight! And Karna also of the *Suta* caste is a mighty warrior versed in celestial weapons! In respect of the impetus of his weapons, he is endued with the strength of the Wind-god! Himself like a flame of fire, the arrows (proceeding from him) constitute its tongues! The slaps of his left hand cased in leathern fence constitute the crackling of that flame. The dust of the battle-field is its smoke. Urged by the sons of Dhritarāshtra even as the wind urgeth the fire, Karna like unto the all-consuming fire at the end of the *Yuga* that is sent by Death himself, will, without doubt, consume my troops like unto a heap of straw! Only that mighty mass of clouds called Arjuna, aided by Krishna like unto a powerful wind, with celestial weapons representing its fierce lightning; the white steeds, the rows of white cranes coursing underneath; and the unbearable Gāndiva, the rainbow ahead, is capable of extinguishing the blazing flame represented by Karna, by means of its arrowy showers let off with unflagging steadiness.* That conqueror of hostile cities, Vibhatsu, will, without doubt, succeed in obtaining from Indra himself all the celestial weapons with their fulness and life. Alone he is equal, I think, unto them all! Otherwise† it is impossible (for us) to vanquish in fight all those foes, who have attained to eminent success in all their purposes! We shall behold Arjuna that repressor of foes, fully equipped with celestial weapons, for Vibhatsu, hav-

---

* The passage comparing Karna to a flame of fire and Arjuna to a mass of clouds is an instance of the highly ornate imagery of the Ayran bard. The diction is not at all turgid like the English rendering. Sanskrit admitting of the formation of compounds without the necessity of repeating the connecting particles, is peculiarly adapted to such descriptions. The reader has not to stay even once for catching the sense. It is impossible to render the dignity and harmony of the original in any language not directly derived from the Sanskrit.

† *Alam* is explained by Nilakantha as equivalent to *Jetum paryyáptas*, *i.e*, "sufficient to vanquish, " or, as I have rendered it, "equal" or "fully equal." The *tu* in the second line is explained by the same scholiast as "otherwise."

ing once undertaken a task, never, droopeth under its weight! Without that hero, however, that best of men, ourselves, with Krishnā cannot be at rest in Kāmyaka! Therefore, do thou mention some other wood that is sacred and delightful, and abounds in food and fruits, and that is inhabited by men of pious practices;—where we may pass some time, expecting the warlike Arjuna of unbaffled prowess, like the *Chātaka** in expectation of gathering clouds! Do thou tell us of some asylums open to the regnerate ones, and lakes and streams and beautiful mountains! O Brāhmana, deprived of Arjuna, I do not like to stay in this wood of Kāmyaka! We wish to go somewhere else!"

Thus ends the eighty-sixth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXXVII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said. "Beholding the Pāndavas afflicted with anxiety and depressed in spirits, Dhaumya, who resembled Vrihaspati, spake thus, comforting them. 'O bull of the Bharata race, O sinless one, listen to me as I mention certain sacred asylums and regions and *tirthas* and mountains, that are approved of by Brāhmanas! O king, listening to me as I speak, thyself with the daughter of Drupada and thy brothers, wilt, O lord of men, be relieved from grief! And, O son of Pāndu, by hearing only of these places, thou wilt acquire merit! And by visiting them thou wilt obtain merit a hundred times greater, O best of men! First, O king, I will, so far as I

---

* *Vrishttikāmā ivāmvudam.* Most of the Bengali translators have rendered it as "like men in expection of rain-drops waiting for the clouds," which is certainly a very prosaic idea. *Vrishtikāmas* is another name for the bird called *Chātaka*, which is popularly supposed to drink nothing but rain-drops with beaks upraised. Its long, shrill note, with a touch of the pathetic, may be heard in summer, resembling the cry—*Fatik jal - Fatik jal*, *i.e*, "a drop of clear water!"—"a drop of clear water!" The idea of the *Chātaka* in expectation of the clouds is very common in Indian poetry.

recollect, speak of the beautiful eastern country, much regarded, O Yudhishthira, by royal Rishis! In that direction, O Bhārata, is a place called Naimisha which is regarded by the celestials. There, in that region, are several sacred *tirthas* belonging to the gods. There also is the sacred and beautiful Gomati which is adored by celestial Rishis, and there also is the sacrificial region of the gods, and the sacrificial stake* of Surya. In that quarter also is that best of hills called Gayā, which is sacred and much regarded by royal ascetics. There, on that hill, is the auspicious lake called Brahmasara which is adored by celestial Rishis. It is for this that the ancients say that one should wish for many sons, so that even one among them may visit Gayā, celebrate the horse-sacrifice, or give away a *nila*† bull, and thereby deliver ten generations of his race, up and down. There, O monarch, is a great river, and a spot called Gayaçira.‡ In Gayaçira is a banian, which is called by the Brāhmanas the *Eternal*$ banian, for the food that is offered there to the Pitris, becometh eternal, O exalted one! The great river that floweth by the place is known by the name of Phalgu, and its waters are all sacred. And, O bull among the Bharatas, there also, in that place, is the Kauçiki, whose basin abounds in various fruits and roots, and where Viçwāmitra endued with wealth of asceticism acquired Brāhmanhood. Towards that direction also is the sacred Gangā, on whose banks Bhagiratha celebrated many sacrifices with profuse gifts (to Brāhmanas). They say that in the country of Pānchāla, there is a wood called Utpalā, where Viçwāmitra of Kucika's race had performed sacrifices with his son, and where beholding the relics of Viçwāmitra's superhuman power, Rama, the son of Jamadagnī, recited the praises of his ancestry. At Kāmyaka Kuçika's son had quaffed the *Soma* juice with Indra. Then abandoning

---

* The word in the text is, *Sāmitra*, which is a stake to which beasts intended for sacrifice are tethered.

† *Vide* note *ante*. p.272.

‡ *Gaya-çira* is lit. the head of Gaya. Gaya was an Asura slain by Vishnu. As a boon to the dying Asura, Vishnu granted that the spot where the Asura fell, should be a holy *tirtha*.

$ *Vide* note *ante*, p.270.

the Kshatriya order, he began to say—*I am a Brāhmana!*— In that quarter, O hero, is the sacred confluence of Gangā and Yamunā which is celebrated over the world. Holy, and sin-destroying, that *tirtha* is much regarded by the Rishis. It is there that the soul of all things, the Grandsire, had, in olden days, performed his sacrifice, and it is for this, O chief of the Bharata race, that the place hath come to be called Prayāga.* In this direction, O foremost of kings, lieth the excellent asylum of Agastya, O monarch, and the forest called Tāpasa, decked by many ascetics. And there also is the great *tirtha* caled Hiranyavinda on the Kālanjara hills, and that best of mountains called Agastya, which is beautiful, sacred, and auspicious. In that quarter, O descendant of the Kuru race, is the mountain called Mahendra, sacred to the illustrious Rāma of the Bhrigu race. There, O son of Kunti, the Grandsire performed sacrifices of yore. There, O Yudhishthira, the sacred Bhāgirathi entereth a lake,† and there also, O king, is that sacred river known by the name of the merit-bestowing Brahmaçālā, whose banks are inhabited by persons whose sins have been washed away, and whose sight alone produceth merit. In that direction also lieth the high-souled Mātanga's excellent asylum, called Kedāra, which is sacred and auspicious and celebrated over the world. And there also is the mountain called Kundoda, which is so delightful and abounding in fruits and roots and waters, and where the king of the Nishadhas (Nala) had slaked his thirst and rested for a while. In that quarter also is the delightful Deva-vana which is graced by ascetics. There also are the rivers Vāhudā and Nandā on the mountain's crest. O mighty king, I have described unto thee all the *tirthas* and sacred spots in the Eastern quarter! Do thou now hear of the sacred *tirthas*, and rivers and mountains, and holy spots in the other three quarters!"

Thus ends the eighty-seventh Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

---

* Lit, the place of sacrifice.

† This lake, Nilakantha says, is called *Manikarnikā*.

SECTION LXXXVIII

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Dhaumya continued. 'Listen, O Bhārata, I shall now narrate to thee in detail, according to my knowledge, the sacred *tirthas* of the south! In that quarter lieth the sacred and auspicious river Godāvari, full of water, abounding in groves, and frequented by ascetics! In that direction also are the rivers Venā and Bhimarathi, both capable of destroying sin and fear, and abounding in birds and deer, and graced with abodes of ascetics! In that region also, O bull of the Bharata race, is the *tirtha* of the royal ascetic, Nriga, *viz.*, the river Payoshni, which is delightful and full of waters and visited by Brāhmanas. There the illustrious Mārkandeya, of high ascetic merit sang the praises in verse of king Nriga's line! We have heard respecting the sacrificing king Nriga that which really took place while he was performing a sacrifice in the excellent *tirtha* called Vārāha on the Payoshni. In that sacifice Indra became intoxicated with quaffing the *Soma*, and the Brāhmanas, with the gifts they received! The waters of the Payoshni, taken up (in vessel), or flowing along the ground, or conveyed by the wind, can cleanse a person from whatever sins he may commit till the day of his death. Higher than heaven itself, and pure, and created and bestowed by the trident-bearing god, there in that *tirtha* is an image of Mahādeva, beholding which a mortal goeth to the region of Siva. Placing on one scale Gangā and the other rivers with their waters, and on the other, the Payoshni, the latter, in my opinion, would be superior to all the *tirthas* together, in point of merit! Then, O foremost of the Bharata race, on the mountain called Varuna-srotasa is the sacred and auspicious wood of Māthara, abounding in fruits and roots, and containing a sacrificial stake. Then, O king, it is said that in the region on the north of the Praveni, and about the sacred asylum of Kanwa, are many woody retreats of ascetics. And, O child, in the *tirtha* called Surpāraka are two sacrificial platforms of the illustrious Jamadagni, called Pāshāna and Punaschandrā, O Bhārata! And, O son of Kunti, in that

spot is the *tirtha* called Açoka abounding with woody retreats of ascetics. And, O Yudhishthira, in the country of the Pandyas are the *tirthas* named Agastya and Vāruna! And, O bull among men, there, amongst the Pandyas, is the *tirtha* called the Kumāris. Listen, O son of Kunti, I shall now describe Tāmraparni! In that asylum the gods had undergone penances impelled by the desire of obtaining salvation. In that region also is the lake of Gokarna which is celebrated over the three worlds, hath an abundance of cool waters, and is sacred, auspicious, and capable, O child, of producing great merit. That lake is extremely difficult of access to men of unpurified souls. Near to that *tirtha* is the sacred asylum of Agastya's disciple, the mountain Devasabha, which abounds in trees and grass, and fruits and roots. And there also is the Vaiduryya mountain, which is delightful and abounding in gems and capable of bestowing great merit. There on that mountain is the asylum of Agastya abounding in fruits and roots and water.

'I shall now, O lord of men, describe the sacred spots, and asylums, and rivers and lakes belonging to the Surāshtra country! O Yudhishthira, the Brāhmaṇas say that on the sea-coast is the Chamasodvedana, and also Prabhāsa,—that *tirtha* which is much regarded by the gods. There also is the *tirtha* called Pindāraka, frequented by ascetics and capable of producing great merit. In that region is a mighty hill named Ujjayanta, which conduceth to speedy success. Regarding it the celestial *Rishi* Nārada of great intelligence hath recited an ancient *sloka*. Do thou listen to it, O Yudhishthira! By performing auterities on the sacred hill of Ujjayanta in Surāshtra, that abounds in birds and animals, a person becometh regarded in heaven. There also is Dwārāvati, producing great merit, where dwelleth the slayer of Madhu, who is the Ancient one in embodied form, and eternal Virtue! Brāhmanas versed in the Vedas, and persons acquainted with the philosophy of the soul say that the illustrious Krishna is eternal Virtue. Govinda is said to be the purest of all pure things, the righteous of the righteous, and the auspicious of the auspicious. In all the three worlds, He of eyes like lotus leaves is the God of gods, and is eternal. He is the pure soul and the active principle of

life, is the Supreme *Brahma* and the lord of all ! That slayer Madhu, Hari of inconceivable soul, dwelleth there !' "

Thus ends the eighty-eighth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION LXXXIX.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Dhaumya continued. 'I shall decribe to thee those sacred spots capable of producing merit that lie on the west, in the country of the Anarttas.* O Bhārata, there flows in a westward course the sacred river Narmadā, graced by *Priyāngu* and mango trees, and engarlanded with thickets of canes ! All the *tirthas* and sacred spots, and rivers and woods and foremost of mountains, that are in the three worlds, all the gods with the Grandsire, along with the Siddhas, the Rishis and the Chāranas, O best of the Kurus, always come, O Bhārata, to bathe in the sacred waters of the Narmadā ! And it hath been heard by us that the sacred asylum of the Muni Viçravas, had stood there, and that there was born the lord of treasures, Kuvera, having men for his vehicles ! There also is that foremost of hills, the sacred and auspicious Vaiduryya peak, abounding with trees that are green and which are always graced with fruits and flowers ! O lord of the earth, on the top of that mountain is a sacred tank decked with full blown lotuses and resorted to by the gods and the Gandharbhas ! Many are the wonders, O mighty monarch, that may be seen on that sacred mountain which is like unto heaven itself, and which is visited by celestial Rishis. There, O subjugator of hostile cities, is the sacred river called Viçwāmitra belonging to the royal sage of that name and which abounds, O king, in many sacred *tirthas !* It was on the banks of this river, that Yayāti the son of Nahusha fell (from heaven) among the virtuous, and obtained once more the eternal regions of the righteous. Here also are the well-known lake called *Punya,* the mountain called Maināka, and that other mountain called

---

* Another reading is *Vṛiṇaishu*, in the country of the Avantis.

Asita abounding in fruits and roots. And here also is the sacred ayslum of Kakshasena, and, O Yudhishthira, the asylum of Chyavana also which is famed over every country, O son of Pāndu! In that spot, O exalted one, men attain to (ascetic) success without severe austerities. Here also, O mighty king, is the region called Jamvumārga, inhabited by birds and deer, and which constitutes the retreat of ascetics with souls under control, O thou foremost of those that have subdued their senses! Next lie the exceedingly sacred Ketumālā, and Medhyā ever graced with ascetics, and, O lord of earth, Gangādwāra, and the well-known woods of Saindhabha which are sacred and inhabited by the regenerate ones. There also is the celebrated tank of the Grandsire, called Pushkara, the favorite abode of the Vaikhānasas,* and Siddhas and Rishis. Moved by the desire of obtaining its protection, the Creator sang this verse at Pushkāra, O chief of the Kurus and foremost of virtuous men! *If a person of pure soul purposes a sojourn to the Pushkaras in imagination even, he becometh purged from all his sins and rejoiceth in heaven!*"

Thus ends the eighty-ninth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XC.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Dhaumya continued. 'O tiger among kings, I shall now describe those *tirthas* and sacred spots that lie to the north! Do thou, O exalted one, listen to me attentively! By hearing this narration, O hero, one acquireth a reverential frame of mind, which conduceth to much good! In that region is the highly sacred Saraswati abounding in *tirthas* and with banks easy of descent. There also, O son of Pāndu, is the ocean-going and impetuous Yamunā, and the *tirtha* called Plakshāvatarana, productive of high merit and prosperity. It was there that the regenerate ones having performed the *Sāraswa-*

---

* *Vaikhānasas* are those ascetics that have entered into pure contemplation, renouncing all acts and rites.

ta sacrifice, bathed on the completion thereof. There also, O sinless one, is the well-known celestial *tirtha* called Agniçiras, which is productive of great merit. There king Sahadeva had celebrated a sacrifice measuring out the ground by a throw of the *Camyā*.* It is for this reason, O Yudhishthira, that Indra sang the praises of Sahadeva in verse! Those verses are still current in this world, being recited by the regenerate ones. *On the Yamunā Sahadeva worshipped the sacrificial fire, with gifts in hundred thousands to Brāhmanas!* There the illustrious king, the imperial Bharata, performed five and thirty horse-sacrifices. O child, we have heard that Swarabhanga of yore used to fully gratify the desires of the regenerate ones! There in this region is his celebrated asylum productive of great merit! In that region also, O son of Prithā, is the river Saraswati, which is ever worshipped by the good, where, in days of yore, the Vālikhilyas, O great king, performed sacrifices! In that region also, O Yudhishthira, is the well-known river Driçadwati, which is productive of great merit. Then, O chief of men, are Nagrodhākhya, and Pānchālya, and Punyākhya, and Dalbhyaghosha, and Dalbhya, which are, O son of Kunti, the sacred asylums, in the world, of illustrious Anandayaças of excellent vows and great energy, and which are celebrated over the three worlds! Here also, O lord of men, the illustrious Etāvarna and Avavarna, versed in the Vedas, learned in Vedic lore, and proficient in the knowledge of Vedic rites, performed meritorious sacrifices, O chief of the Bharata race! There also is Viçākhayupa to which, in days of yore, came the gods with Varuna and Indra, and practised ascetic austerities. And therefore is that spot so eminently sacred! Here also is Palāçaka, where the great and illustrious and highly blessed Rishi Jamadagni performed sacrifices! There all the principal rivers in their embodied forms, taking their respective waters, stood surrounding that best of sages! And there also, O monarch, Vibhāvasu (Fire) himself, beholding that high-souled one's initiation, sang the following *sloka*:—*The*

---

* See note—*ante*.

Rivers coming to the illustrious Jamadagni while sacrificing unto the gods, gratified the Brāhmanas with offerings of honey! O Yudhishthira, the spot where Gangā rusheth past, cleaving the foremost of mountains which is frequented by Gandharvas and Yakshas and Rākshas and Apsaras, and inhabited by hunters, and Kinnaras, is called Gangā-dwāra. O king, Sanatkumāra regardeth that spot visited by Brahmarshis, as also the *tirtha* Kanakhala (that is near to it), as sacred. There also is the mountain named Puru which is resorted to by great Rishis and where Pururavas was born, and Bhrigu practised ascetic austerities. For this it is, O king, that that asylum hath become known as the great peak of Bhrigutunga. Near that peak is the sacred and extensive Vadari, that highly meritorious asylum, famed over the three worlds, of him, O bull of the Bharata race, who is the Present, the Past, and the Future, who is called Nārāyana and the lord Vishnu, who is eternal and the best of male beings, and who is pre-eminently illustrious. Near Vadari, the cool current of Gangā was formerly warm, and the banks there were overspread with golden sands. There the gods and Rishis of high fortune and exceeding effulgence, approaching the divine lord Nārāyana, always worship him! The entire universe with all its *tirthas* and holy spots is there where dwelleth the divine and eternal Nārāyana, the Supreme soul, for he is Merit, he is the supreme *Brahma*, he is *tirtha*, he is the ascetic retreat, he is the First, he is the foremost of gods, and he is the great Lord of all creatures. He is eternal, he is the great Creator, and he is the highest state of blessedness! Learned persons versed in the scriptures attain to great happiness by knowing Him. In that spot are the celestial Rishis, the Siddhas, and, indeed, all the Rishis, where dwelleth the slayer of Madhu, that primeval Deity and mighty Yogin! Let no doubt enter thy heart that that spot is the foremost of all holy spots! These, O lord of earth, are the *tirthas* and sacred spots on earth, these that I have recited, O best of men! These all are visited by the Vasus, the Sāddhyas, the Adityas, the Maruts, the Açwins, and the illustrious Rishis resembling the celestials themselves. By

sojourning, O son of Kunti, to those places, with the Brāhmanas and ascetics that are with thee and with thy blessed brothers, thou wilt be freed from anxiety!'"

Thus ends the ninetieth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XCI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued. "O son of the Kuru race, while Dhaumya was speaking thus, there arrived at the spot the Rishi Lomaça of great energy. And the king, who was the eldest of Pāndu's sons, with his followers and those Brāhmanas sat round the highly righteous one, like the celestials in heaven sitting round Sakra. And having received him duly, Yudhishthira the just inquired after the reason of his arrival, and the object also of his wanderings. Thus asked by Pāndu's son, the illustrious ascetic, well-pleased, replied in sweet words, delighting the Pāndavas.—'Travelling at will, O Kaunteya, over all the regions, I came to Sakra's abode, and saw there the lord of the celestials! There I saw thy heroic brother capable of wielding the bow with his left hand, seated on the same seat with Sakra. And beholding Pārtha on that seat, I was greatly astonished, O tiger among men! And the lord of the celestials then said unto me,—*Go thou unto the sons of Pāndu!* At the request, therefore, of Indra as also of the high-souled son of Prithā have I come hither with speed, desiring to see thee with thy younger brothers! O child, I will relate what will please thee highly, O son of Pāndu! Do thou listen to it, O king, with Krishnā and the Rishis that are with thee! O bull of the Bharata race, Pārtha hath obtained from Rudra that incomparable weapon for the acquisition of which thou hadst sent him to heaven! That fierce weapon, known by the name of *Brahma-çira* which arose after *Amrita*, and which Rudra had obtained by means of ascetic austerities, hath been acquired by Arjuna, together with the *Mantras* for hurling and withdrawing it, and the rites of expiation and revival. And, O Yudhish-

thira, Arjuna of immeasurable prowess hath also acquired *Vajras* and *Dandas* and other celestial weapons from Yama and Kuvera and Varuna and Indra, O son of the Kuru race! And he hath also thoroughly learnt music, both vocal and instrumental, and dancing, and the proper recitation of the *Sāma* (Veda) from Viçwāvasu's son! And having thus acquired weapons and mastered the *Gāndharva Veda*, thy third brother Vibhatsu liveth happily (in heaven)! Listen to me, O Yudhishthira, for I shall now deliver to thee the message of that foremost of celestials! He hath commanded me saying,—*Thou wilt, no doubt, go to the world of men! O best of Brāhmanas, tell thou Yudhishthira these words of mine! Soon will thy brother Arjuna come to thee, having acquired arms and accomplished a great deed for the celestials that is incapable of being accomplished by themselves! Do thou meanwhile devote thyself to ascetic austerities, with thy brothers! There is nothing superior to asceticism, and it is by asceticism that a person achieveth great results! And, O bull of the Bhārata race, well do I know that Karna is endued with great ardour and energy and strength and prowess that is incapable of being baffled. Well do I know that, skilled in fierce conflict, he hath not his rival in battle; that he is a mighty bowman, a hero deft in the use of fierce weapons, and cased in the best of mail. Well do I know that that exalted son of Aditya resembleth the son of Maheçwara himself! Well do I also know the high natural prowess of the broad-shouldered Arjuna! In battle Karna is not equal unto even a sixteenth part of Prithā's son! And as for the fear of Karna which is in thy heart, O repressor of foes, I shall dispel it when Savyasāchi will have left heaven. And as regards thy purpose, O hero, to set out on a sojourn to tirthas, the great Rishi Lomaça will, without doubt, speak unto thee! And whatever that regenerate Rishi will relate unto thee touching the merits of asceticism and tirthas, thou shouldst receive with respect and not otherwise!—*'"

Thus ends the ninety-first Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XCII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça continued. 'Listen now, O Yudhishthira, to what Dhananjaya hath said!—Cause my brother Yudhishthira to attend to the practice of virtue which leadeth to prosperity! Endued with wealth of asceticism, thou art conversant with the highest morality, with ascetic austerities of every kind, with the eternal duties of kings blessed with prosperity, and the high and sanctifying merit that men obtain from *tirthas!* Persuade thou the sons of Pāndu to acquire the merit attaching to *tirthas!* Do thou with thy whole soul persuade the king to visit the *tirthas* and give away kine!—This is what Arjuna said unto me! Indeed, he also said,—Let him sojourn to all the *tirthas*, protected by thee! Thou wilt also protect him from Rākshasas, and watch over him in inaccessible regions and rugged mountain breasts. And as Dadhicha had protected Indra, and Angiras had protected the Sun, so do thou, O best of regenerate ones, protect the sons of Kunti from Rākshasas! Along the way are many Rākshasas, huge as mountain cliffs. But protected by thee, these will not be able to approach the sons of Kunti!—Obedient to the words of Indra and at the request of Arjuna also, protecting thee from dangers, I shall wander with thee! Before this, O son of the Kuru race, I have twice visited the *tirthas!* With thee I shall repair to them for the third time! O Yudhishthira, Manu and other royal *Rishis* of meritorious deeds had undertaken journeys to *tirthas!* Indeed, a sojourn to them is capable of dispelling all fear, O king! They that are crooked-minded, they that have not their souls under control, they that are illiterate and perverse, do not, O Kauravya, bathe in *tirthas!* But thou art ever of a virtuous disposition and conversant with morality and firm in thy promises! Thou wilt surely be able to free thyself from the world! For, O son of Pāndu, thou art even as King Bhagiratha, or Gaya, or Yayāti, or any one, O son of Kunti, that is like them!'

"Yudhishthira answered, 'I am so overwhelmed with

delight, O Brāhmana, that I cannot find words to answer thee! Who can be more fortunate than he who is remembered even by the lord of the celestials? Who can be more fortunate than he who hath been favored with thy company, who hath Dhananjaya for a brother, and who is thought of by Vāsava himself? As to thy words, O illustrious one, in respect of a sojourn to the *tirthas*, my mind had already been made up at the words of Dhaumya! O Brāhmana, I shall start, at whatever hour thou mayst be pleased to appoint, on the proposed sojourn to *tirthas*. Even this is my firm resolve!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued. "Lomaça then said unto Yudhishthira, who had made up his mind to start on the proposed sojourn,—'O mighty king, be thou light as regards thy retinue, for by this thou wilt be able to go more easily!'

"Yudhishthira then said. 'Let those mendicants and Brāhmanas and *Yogis* that are incapable of bearing hunger and thirst, the fatigues of travel and toil, and the severity of winter, desist! Let those Brāhmanas also desist that live on sweetmeats, and they also that desire cooked viands and food that is sucked or drunk as well as meat! And let those also remain behind that are dependent on cooks! Let those citizens that have followed me from motives of loyalty, and whom I have hitherto kept on proper stipends, repair to king Dhritarāshtra! He will give them their allowances in due time. If, however, that king refuses to grant them proper allowances, the king of the Pānchālas will, for our satisfaction and welfare, give them these!' "

Vaicampāyana continued. "And thereupon oppressed with grief, the citizens and the principal Brāhmanas and Yotis set out for Hastināpura. And out of affection for Yudhishthira the just, the royal son of Amvikā received them properly, and gratified them with proper allowances. And the royal son of Kunti, with only a small number of Brāhmanas, abode for three nights at Kāmyaka, cheered by Lomaça!"

Thus ends the ninety-second Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XCIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said. "Those Brāhmanas then, that had been dwelling (with him) in the woods, beholding the son of Kunti about to set out (on the pious sojourn), approached him, O king, and said, 'Thou art about to set out, O king, on thy sojourn to the sacred *tirthas*, along with thy brothers and accompanied by the illustrious Rishi Lomaça! O king, it behoveth thee, O son of Pāndu, to take us with thee! Without thee, we shall not be able, O son of the Kuru race, to visit them at any time! Surrounded by dangers and difficult of access, they are infested by beasts of prey! These *tirthas*, O lord of men, are inaccessible to persons in small parties! Foremost of all wielders of the bow, thy brothers are ever brave! Protected by your heroic selves, we also would sojourn to them! Permit us to acquire, O lord of earth, through thy grace, the blessed fruit of *tirthas*! Protected by thy energy, let us, O king, be cleansed of all our sins by visiting those *tirthas* and, purified by baths therein! Bathing in those *tirthas*, thou also, O Bhārata, wilt acquire without doubt the regions difficult of acqusition that Kārttaviryya and Ashtaka, the royal sage Lomapāda and the imperial and heroic Bharata only had earned! In thy company, O king, we desire to behold Prabhāsa and other *tirthas*, Mahendra and other hills, Gangā and other rivers, and Plakshā and other gigantic trees! If, O lord of men, thou hast any regard for the Brāhmanas, do thou our bidding! Thou wilt surely have prosperity from this! O thou of mighty arms, the *tirthas* are infested by Rākshasas that ever obstruct ascetic penances. It behoveth thee to protect us from them! Protected by Lomaça and taking us with thee, sojourn thou into all the *tirthas* spoken of by Dhaumya and the intelligent Nārada as also all those that have been spoken of by the celestial Rishi Lomaça endued with great ascetic wealth, and be thou, by this, cleansed of all thy sins!'

"Thus addressed respectfully by them, the king—that

bull amongst the sons of Pāndu—surrounded by his heroic brothers headed by Bhima, with tears of joy in his eyes, said unto all those ascetics, 'Let it be so!' With the permission then of Lomaça, as also of his priest Dhaumya, that foremost of Pāndu's sons with soul under complete control, resolved, along with his brothers and Drupada's daughter of faultless features, to set out. Just at this time, the blessed Vyāsa as also Parvata and Nārada, all endued with high intelligence, came to Kāmyaka for seeing the son of Pāndu. Beholding them, king Yudhishthira worshipped them with due rites. And worshipped by the monarch thus, those blessed ones, addressing Yudhishthira, said, 'O Yudhishthira, O Bhima, and ye twins, banish all evil thoughts from your minds! Purify your hearts and then set out for the *tirthas!* The Brāhmanas have said that the (observance of) regulations in respect of the body are called earthly vows, while efforts to purify the heart, so that it may be free from evil thoughts, are called spiritual vows. O king, the mind that is free from all evil thoughts is highly pure! Purifying yourselves, therefore, harbouring only friendly feelings for all, behold ye the *tirthas!* Observing (earthly) vows in respect of your bodies, and purifying your minds by spiritual vows, obtain ye the fruits, as recited, of sojourns to *tirthas!*'

"Saying 'So be it,' the Pāndavas with Krishnā, caused those celestial and human Rishis to perform the usual propitiatory ceremonies. And those heroes, having worshipped the feet of Lomaça and Dwaipāyana and Nārada and the celestial Rishi Parvata, O king, and accompanied by Dhaumya as also the ascetics that had been residing with them in the woods, set out on the day, following the full moon of *Agrahāyana*, in which the constellation *Pushyā* was ascendant. Dressed in barks and hides, and with matted locks on head, they were all cased in impenetrable mail and armed with swords. And, O Janamejaya, the heroic sons of Pāndu, with quivers and arrows and scimitars and other weapons, and accompanied by Indrasena and other attendants with fourteen and one cars, a number of cooks, and servants of other classes, set out with faces turned towards the east!"

Thus ends the ninty-third Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XCIV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said. 'O best of celestial Rishis, I do not think that I am without merits! Yet am I afflicted with so much sorrow that there never was a king like me! I think, however, that my enemies are destitute of good qualities and even destitute of morality. Yet why, O Lomaça, do they prosper in this world?'

"Lomaça said. 'Grieve not ever, O king, O son of Prithā, that sinful men should often prosper in consequence of the sins they commit! A man may be seen to prosper by his sins, obtain good therefrom and vanquish his foes. Destruction, however, overtakes him to the roots. O king, I have seen many Daityas and Dānavas prosper by sin but I have also seen destruction overtake them! O exalted one, I have seen all this in the righteous age of yore. The gods practised virtue, while the Asuras abandoned it. The gods visited the *tirthas*, while the Asuras did not visit them. And at first the sinful Asuras were possessed with pride. And pride begat vanity, and vanity begat wrath. And from wrath arose every kind of evil propensities, and from these latter, sprang shamelessness. And in consequence of shamelessness, good behaviour disappeared from among them. And because they had become shameless and destitute of virtuous propensities and good conduct and virtuous vows, forgiveness and prosperity and morality forsook them in no time. And prosperity then, O king, sought the gods, while adversity sought the Asuras. And when the Daityas and the Dānavas, deprived of sense by pride, were possessed by adversity, Kali also sought to possess them. And, O son of Kunti, overwhelmed with pride, and destitute of rites and sacrifices, and devoid of reason and feeling, and their hearts full of vanity, destruction overtook them soon! And covered with infamy, the Daityas were soon exterminated, The gods, however, who were virtuous

in their practices, sojourning to the seas, the rivers, the lakes, and the holy spots, cleansed themselves of all sins, O son of Pāndu, by means of ascetic penances and sacrifices and gifts and blessings, and obtained prosperity as the consequence. And because the gods always performed sacrifices and holy deeds, abandoning every practice that was evil, and visited the *tirthas*, as the consequence thereof they acquired great good fortune. Guided by this, O king, do thou also, with thy brothers, bathe in *tirthas*, for then thou wilt obtain prosperity once more! Even this is the eternal road! And, O monarch, as king Nriga and Shivi and Auçinara and Bhagiratha and Vasumanas and Gaya and Puru and Pururavas, by practising ascetic penances and visiting *tirthas* and touching sacred waters and beholding illustrious ascetics, obtained fame and sanctity and merit and wealth, so wilt thou also obtain prosperity that is great! And as Ikshwāku with his sons, friends and followers, as Muchukunda and Māndhārti and king Marutta, as the gods through power of asceticism, and the celestial Rishis also, had all obtained fame, so wilt thou also obtain great celebrity. The sons of Dhritarāshtra, on the other hand, enslaved by sinfulness and ignorance, will, without doubt, be soon exterminated like the Daityas!"

Thus ends the ninety-fourth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section XCV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaicampāyana said. "The heroic sons of Pāndu, accompanied by their followers, proceeding from place to place, at last arrived at Naimisha. O king, reaching the Gomati then, the Pāndavas bathed in the sacred *tirtha* of that stream, and having performed their ablutions there, they gave away, O Bhārata, both kine and wealth! And repeatedly offering oblations of water, O Bhārata, to the gods, the Pitris, and the Brāhmanas, in the *tirthas* called Kanyā, Açwa, and Go, and staying (as directed) in Kālakoti and the Vishaprastha hills, the Kauravas then, O king, reached Vāhudā and performed their

ablutions in that stream. Proceeding next, O lord of earth, to the sacrificial region of the gods known by the name of Prayāga, they bathed in the confluence of Gangā and Yamunā, and residing there practised ascetic penances of great merit. And the Pāndavas, of truthful promises, bathing in that *tirtha*, cleansed themselves of every sin. The sons of Pāndu then, O king of the Bharata race, accompanied by those Brāhmanas, proceeded to the *tirtha* called Vedi, sacred to the Creator and adored by the ascetics. Residing there for some time and gratifying the Brāhmanas with fruits and roots of the wilderness and clarified butter, those heroes began to practise ascetic penances of great merit. They then proceeded to Mahidhara consecrated by that virtuous royal sage Gaya of unrivalled splendour. In that region is the hill called Gayaçira, as well as the delightful river called Mahānadi, with fine banks graced by bushes of canes. On that celestial hill of holy peaks is a sacred *tirtha* called Brahmasara which is much adored by ascetics. There on the banks of that lake had dwelt of yore the eternal god himself of justice, and it was thither that the illustrious Rishi Agastya had repaired to behold that deity! It is from that lake that all the rivers take their rise, and there in that *tirtha*, Mahādeva, the wielder of the *Pināka*, is present for aye. Arriving at that spot, the heroic sons of Pāndu practised the vow that is known by the name of the *Chāturmāsya*, according to all the rites and ordinances of the great sacrifice called *Rishiyajna*. It is there that that mighty tree called the Eternal banian stands. Any sacrifice performed there produces merit that is eternal. In that sacrificial platform of the gods producing eternal merit, the Pāndavas began to fast with concentrated souls. And there came unto them Brāhmanas by hundreds, endued with wealth of asceticism. And those Brāhmanas also all performed the *Chāturmāsya* sacrifice according to the rites inculcated by the Rishis. And there in that *tirtha*, those Brāhmanas old in knowledge and ascetic merit and fully versed in the Vedas, that constituted the court of the illustrious sons of Pāndu, talked in their presence upon various subjects of sacred import. And it was in that place

that the learned, vow-observing, and sacred Shamatha, leading, besides, a life of celebacy, spake unto them, O king, of Gaya the son of Amurttaraya! And Shamatha said, 'Gaya the son of Amurttaraya was one of the foremost of royal sages. Listen to me, O Bhārata, as I recite his meritorious deeds! It was here, O king, that Gaya had performed many sacrifices distinguished by the enormous quantities of food (that were distributed) and the profuse gifts that were given away (unto Brāhmanas.) Those sacrifices, O king, were distinguished by mountains in hundreds and thousands of cooked rice, lakes of clarified butter, and rivers of curds in many hundreds, and streams of richly-dressed curries in thousands. Day after day were these got ready and distributed amongst all comers, while, over and above this, Brāhmanas and others, O king, received food that was clean and pure. During the conclusion also (of every sacrifice) when gifts were dedicated to the Brāhmanas, the chaunting of the Vedas reached the heavens. And so loud, indeed, was the sound of the Vedic *Mantras* that nothing else, O Bhārata, could be heard there! Those sacred sounds, O king, filled the earth, the points of the horizon, the sky, and heaven itself! Even these were the wonders that persons noticed on those occasions. And gratified with the excellent viands and drinks that the illustrious Gaya provided, men, O bull of the Bharata race, went about singing these verses!—*In Gaya's great sacrifice, who is there today, amongst creatures, that still desireth to eat? There are yet twenty five mountains of food there after all have been fed! What the royal sage Gaya of unmeasurable splendour hath achieved in his sacrifice was never achieved by men before nor will be by any in future. The gods have been so surfeited by Gaya with clarified butter that they are not able to take anything that any body else may offer. As sand grains on earth, as stars in the firmament, as drops showered by rain-charged clouds, cannot ever be counted by anybody, so can none count the gifts in Gaya's sacrifice!*

"'O son of the Kuru race, many times did king Gaya perform sacrifices of this description, here, by the side of this Brahmasara!'"

Thus ends the ninety-fifth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XCVI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said. "After this, the royal son of Kunti, who was ever distinguished for his profuse gifts unto Brāhmanas, proceeded to the asylum of Agastya and took up his abode in Durjayā. It was here that that foremost of speakers, king Yudhishthira, asked Lomaça as to why Agastya had slain Vātāpi there. And the king also enquired after the extent of that man-destroying Daitya's prowess, and the reason also of the illustrious Agastya's wrath being excited against that Asura.

"Thus questioned, Lomaça said, 'O son of the Kuru race, there was in the city called Manimati, in days of yore, a Daitya named Ilwala, whose younger brother was Vātāpi. One day that son of Diti addressed a Brāhmana endued with ascetic merit, saying, 'O holy one, grant me a son equal unto Indra!' The Brāhmana, however, did not grant the Asura a son like Indra. And at this, the Asura was inflamed with wrath against the Brāhmana. And from that day, O king, the Asura Ilwala became a destroyer of Brāhmanas. And endued with power of illusion, the angry Asura transformed his brother into a ram. And Vātāpi also, capable of assuming any form at will, would immediately assume the shape of a ram. And the flesh of that ram, after being properly dressed, was offered to Brāhmanas as food. And after they had eaten of it, they were slain. For whomsoever Ilwala summoned with his voice, he would come back to Ilwala, even if he had gone to the abode of Yama, in re-emodied form endued with life, and show himself to Ilwala. And so having transformed the Asura Vātapi into a ram and properly cooked his flesh and feeding Brāhmanas thereon, he would summon Vātāpi. And the mighty Asura Vātāpi, that foe of Brāhmanas, endued with great strength and power of illusion, hearing, O king, those sounds uttered with a loud voice by Ilwala, and ripping open

the flanks of the Brāhmana would come laughingly out, O lord of earth! And it was thus, O monarch, that the wicked-hearted Daitya Ilwala, having fed Brāhmanas, frequently took away their lives.

"'Meanwhile, the illustrious Agastya beheld his deceased ancestors hanging in a pit with heads downwards. And he asked those personages thus suspended in that hole, saying, *What is the matter with you!*—Thus questioned, those utterers of *Brahma* replied,—It is even for offspring!—And they also told him,—We are your ancestors! It is even for offspring that we stay suspended in this pit! If, O Agastya, thou canst beget us a good son, we may then be saved from this hell and thou also wilt obtain the blessed state of those having offspring!—Endued with great energy and observant of truth and morality, Agastya replied, saying,—Ye Pitris, I will accomplish your desire! Let this anxiety of yours be dispelled!—And the illustrious Rishi then began to think of perpetuating his race. But he saw not a wife worthy of him on whom he himself could take his birth in the form of a son. The Rishi accordingly, taking those parts that were regarded as highly beautiful, from creatures possessing them created therewith an excellent woman. And the Muni, endued with great ascetic merit, thereupon gave that girl created for himself to the king of the Vidharbhas who was then undergoing ascetic penances for obtaining offspring. And that blessed girl of sweet face (thus disposed of) then took her birth (in Vidarbha's royal line) and, beautiful as the effulgent lightning, her limbs began to grow day by day. And as soon as that lord of earth—the ruler of the Vidarbhas—saw her ushered into life, he joyfully communicated the intelligence, O Bhārata, unto the Brāhmanas! And the Brāhmanas thereupon, O lord of earth, blessed the girl and they bestowed upon her the name Lopāmudrā. And possessed of great beauty, she began, O monarch, to grow quickly, like unto a lotus in the midst of water or the effulgent flame of a fire. And when the girl grew and attained to puberty, an hundred virgins decked in ornaments and an hundred maids waited in obedience upon her blessed self. And surrounded by those hundred maids and

virgins, she shone in their midst, endued as she was with bright effulgence, like Rohini in the firmament amid an inferior multitude of stars. And possessed as she was of good behaviour and excellent manners, none dared ask for her hand even when she attained to puberty, through fear of her father the king of the Vidharbhas. And Lopāmudrā devoted to truth and surpassing the Apsarās even in beauty, gratified her father and relatives by means of her conduct. And her father, beholding his daughter—the princess of Vidarbha—attain to puberty, began to reflect in his mind, saying,—To whom should I give this daughter of mine?' "

Thus ends the ninety-sixth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XCVII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça continued. 'When Agastya thought that girl to be competent for the duties of domesticity, he approached that lord of earth—the ruler of the Vidarbhas—and addressing him, said,—I solicit thee, O king, to bestow thy daughter Lopāmudrā on me!—Thus addressed by that Muni, the king of the Vidarbhas swooned away. And though unwilling to give the Muni his daughter, he dared not yet refuse. And that lord of earth then, approaching his queen, said,—This Rishi is endued with great energy. If angry, he may consume me with the fire of his curse. O thou of sweet face, tell me what is thy wish!—Hearing these words of the king, she uttered not a word. And beholding the king along with the queen afflicted with sorrow, Lopāmudrā approched them in due time and said,—O monarch, it behoveth thee not to grieve on my account! Bestow me on Agastya, and, O father, save thyself by giving me away!—And at these words of his daughter, O monarch, the king gave away Lopāmudrā unto the illustrious Agastya with due rites! And obtaining her as wife, Agastya addressed Lopāmudrā, saying,—Cast thou away these costly robes and ornaments!—And at these words of her lord, that large-eyed damsel of thighs tapering as the stem of the *Rambhā* cast away her

handsome and costly robes of fine texture. And casting them away, she dressed herself in rags and barks and deer-skins, and became her husband's equal in vows and acts. And proceeding then to Gangādwāra, that illustrious and best of Rishis began to practise the severest penances along with his helpful wife. And Lopāmudrā herself, well-pleased, began to serve her lord from the deep respect that she bore him. And the exalted Agastya also began to manifest great love for his wife.

"'After a considerable time, O king, the illustrious Rishi one day beheld Lopāmudrā, blazing in ascetic splendour, come up after the bath in her season. And pleased with the girl for her services, her purity, and self control, as also with her grace and beauty, he summoned her for marital intercourse. The girl, however, joining her hands, bashfully but lovingly addressed the Rishi, saying,—The husband, without doubt, weddeth the wife for offspring. But it behoveth thee, O Rishi, to show that love to me which I have for thee! And it behoveth thee, O regenerate one, to approach me on a bed like to that which I had in the palace of my father! I also desire that thou shouldst be decked in garlands of flowers and other ornaments, and that I should approach thee adorned in those celestial ornaments that I like! Othewise, I cannot approach thee, dressed in these rags dyed in red! Nor, O regenerate Rishi, is it sinful to wear ornaments (on such an occasion)! —Hearing these words of his wife, Agastya replied,—O blessed girl, O thou of slender waist, I have not wealth like to what thy father hath, O Lopāmudrā!—She answered, saying,—Thou who art endued with wealth of asceticism, art certainly able to bring hither within a moment, by ascetic power, everything that exists in the world of men!—Agastya said,—It is even so as thou hast said! That, however, would waste my ascetic merit. O, bid me do that which may not lessen my ascetic merit!—Lopāmudrā then said,—O thou endued with wealth of ascetism, my season will not last long. I do not desire, however, to approach thee otherwise. Nor do I desire to diminish thy (ascetic) merit in any way. It behoveth thee, however, to do as I desire, without injuring thy virtue!—

"'Agastya then said,—O blessed girl, if this be the resolve that thou hast settled in thy heart, I will go out in quest of wealth! Meanwhile, stay thou here as it pleaseth thee!—'"

Thus ends the ninety-seventh Section in the Tirth-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION XCVIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça continued. 'Agastya then, O son of the Kuru race, went to king Srutarvan who was regarded as richer than other kings, to beg for wealth. And that monarch, learning of the arrival of the pot-born Rishi on the frontiers of his kingdom, went out with his ministers and received the holy man with respect. And the king, duly offering the *Arghya* in the first instance, submissively and with joined hands enquired then after the reason of the Rishi's arrival. And Agastya answered, saying,—O lord of earth, know that I have come to thee, desirous of wealth. Give me a portion according to thy ability and without doing injury to others!—'

"Lomaça continued. 'The king, then, representing unto the Rishi the equality of his expenditure and income, said,—O learned one, take thou from my possessions the wealth thou pleasest!—Beholding, however, the equality of that monarch's expenditure with income, the Rishi who always saw both sides with equal eyes, thought that if he took anything under the circumstances, his act would result in injury to creatures. Taking, therefore, Srutarvan with him, the Rishi went to king Vradhnaçwa. The latter, hearing of their arrival on his frontiers, received them duly. And Vradhnaçwa also offered them the *Arghyas* and water to wash their feet. And the monarch, with their permission, then enquired after the reason of their coming. And Agastya said,—O lord of earth, know that we have come to thee, desirous of wealth! Give us what thou canst, without doing any injury to others!—'

"Lomaça continued. 'That monarch then represented unto them the equality of his expenditure and income, and said,—Knowing this, take ye what ye desire!—The Rishi, however,

who saw both sides with equal eyes, beholding the equality of that monarch's income with expenditure, thought that if he took anything under the circumstances, his act would result in injury to all creatures. Agastya and Srutarvan, with king Vradhnaçwa then went to Purukutsa's son, Trasadasyu, of enormous wealth. The high-souled Trasadasyu, learning of their arrival on the confines of his kingdom went out, O king, and received them well. And that best of monarchs in Ikshākus' line, having worshipped all of them duly, enquired after the reason of their arrival. And Agastya answered,—O lord of earth, know that we have all come to thee, desirous of wealth! Give us what you can, without injuring others!—'

"Lomaça continued. 'That monarch then, represented unto them the equality of his income with expenditure, and said, —Knowing this, take ye what ye desire!—Beholding, however, the equality of that monarch's expenditure with income, the Rishi who saw both sides with equal eyes thought that if he took anything under the circumstances, his act would result in injury to all creatures. Then, O monarch, all those kings, looking at one another, together spake unto the Rishi, saying,—O Brāhmana, there is a Dānava of name Ilwala who, of all persons on earth, is possessed of enormous wealth! Let us all approach him today and beg wealth of him!—'

"Lomaça continued. 'This suggestion, O king, of begging wealth of Ilwala appeared to them to be proper. And, O monarch, all of them went together to Ilwala after this!'"

Thus ends the ninety-eighth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section XCIX.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said. 'When Ilwala learnt that those kings along with the great Rishi had arrived on the confines of his domain, he went out with his ministers and worshipped them duly. And that prince of Asuras received them hospitably, entertaining them, O son of the Kuru race, with well-dressed meat supplied by his brother Vātāpi (transformed into a ram.) Then

all those royal sages, beholding the mighty Asura Vātāpi, who had been transformed into a ram thus cooked for them, became sad and cheerless and were nearly deprived of themselves. But that best of Rishis—Agastya—addressing those royal sages, said,—Yield ye not to grief: I will eat up the great Asura!—And the mighty Rishi then sat himself down on an excellent seat, and the prince of Asuras, Ilwala, began to distribute the food smilingly. And Agastya ate up the whole of the meat supplied by Vātāpi (transformed into a ram). And after the dinner was over, Ilwala began to summon his brother. But thereupon a quantity of air alone came out of the illustrious Rishi's stomach, with a sound that was as loud, O child, as the roar of the clouds. And Ilwala repeatedly said,—Come out, O Vātāpi!—Then that best of Munis—Agastya—bursting out in laughter, said, —How can he come out? I have already digested that great Asura.—And beholding his brother already digested, Ilwala became sad and cheerless, and joining his hands, along with his ministers, addressing the Rishi (and his companions,) said,—What for have ye come hither, and what can I do for you?—And Agastya smilingly answered Ilwala, saying,—We know thee, O Asura, to be possessed of great power and also enormous wealth! These kings are not very wealthy, while my need also of wealth is great. Give us what thou canst, without injuring others.—Thus addressed, Ilwala saluted the Rishi and said,—If thou canst say what it is that I mean to give, then will I give you at all!—Hearing this, Agastya said,—O great Asura, thou hast even purposed to give unto each of these kings ten thousand kine and as many gold coins. And unto me thou hast purposed to give twice as much, as also a car of gold and a couple of horses fleet as thought! If thou enquirest now, thou wilt soon learn that yon car is made of gold!—Thereupon, O son of Kunti, Ilwala made enquiries and learnt that the car he had intended to give away was really a golden one. And the Daitya then, with a sad heart, gave away much wealth and that car, unto which were yoked two steeds called Virāva and Surāva. And those steeds, O Bhārata, took those kings and Agastya and all that wealth to the asylum of Agastya within

the twinkling of an eye. And those royal sages then, obtaining Agastya's permission, went away to their respective cities. And Agastya also (with that wealth) did all that his wife Lopāmudrā had desired. And Lopāmudrā then said,—O illustrious one, thou hast now accomplished all my wishes! Beget thou a child on me that shall be possessed of great energy!—And Agastya replied unto her, saying,—O blessed and beauteous one, I have been much gratified with thy conduct! Listen thou unto me as regards the proposal I make in respect of thy offspring! Wouldst thou have a thousand sons, or a century of sons each equal to ten, or ten sons each equal to an hundred, or only one son who may vanquish a thousand?—Lopāmudrā answered,—Let me have one son equal unto a thousand, O thou endued with wealth of ascetism! One good and learned son is preferable to many evil ones.—'

"Lomaça continued. 'Saying—So be it,—that pious Muni thereupon knew his devout wife of equal behaviour. And after she had conceived, he retired into the forest. And after the Muni had gone away, the fœtus began to grow for seven years. And after the seventh year had expired, there came out of the womb the highly learned Dridasyu, blazing, O Bhārata, in his own splendour! And that great Brāhmana and illustrious ascetic, endued with mighty energy, took his birth as the Rishi's son, coming out of the womb as if repeating the Vedas with the *Upanishads* and the *Angas*. Endued with great energy while yet a child he used to carry loads of sacrificial fuel into the asylum of his father, and was thence called *Idhmavāha* (carrier of sacrificial wood). And the Muni, beholding his son possessed of such virtues, became highly glad.

And it was thus, O Bhārata, that Agastya begat an excellent son in consequence of which his ancestors, O king, obtained the regions they desired. And it is from that time that this spot hath become known on earth as the asylum of Agastya. Indeed, O king, this is the asylum graced with numerous beauties, of that Agastya who had slain Vātāpi of Prahrāda's race. The sacred Bhāgirathi, adored by gods and Gandharvas gently runneth by, like a breeze-shaken penon in the welkin. Yonder also she floweth over craggy crests descending

lower and lower, and looketh like an affrighted she-snake lying along the hilly slopes. Issuing out of the matted locks of Mahādeva, she passeth along, flooding the southern country and benefiting it like a mother, and ultimately mingleth with the ocean as if she were his favorite bride. Bathe ye as ye like in this sacred river, ye sons of Pandu! And behold there, O Yudhishthira, the *tirtha* of Bhrigu that is celebrated over the three worlds and adored, O king, by great Rishis! Bathing here, Rāma (of Bhrigu's race) regained his might, which had been taken away from him (by Daçaratha's son). Bathing here, O son of Pāndu, with thy brothers and Krishnā, thou wilt certainly regain that energy of thine that hath been taken away by Duryodhana, even as Rāma regained his that had been taken away by Daçaratha's son in hostile encounter.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued: "At these words of Lomaça, Yudhishthira bathed there with his brothers and Krishnā, and offered oblations of water, O Bhārata, to the gods and the Pitris. And, O bull among men, after Yudhishthira had bathed in that *tirtha*, his body blazed forth in brighter effulgence, and he became invincible in respect of all foes. The son of Pāndu then, O king, asked, Lomaça, saying, 'O illustrious one, what for had Rāma's energy and might been taken away? And how also did he regain it? O exalted one, I ask thee, tell me everything.'

"Lomaça said. 'Listen, O king, to the history of Rāma (the son of Daçaratha) and Rāma of Bhrigu's line gifted with intelligence. For the destruction of Rāvana, O king, Vishnu, in his own body, took his birth as the son of the illustrious Daçaratha. We saw in Ayodhyā that son of Daçaratha after he had been born. It was then that Rāma of Bhrigu's line, the son of Richika by Renukā, hearing of Rāma the son of Daçaratha—of spotless deeds—went to Ayodhyā, impelled by curiosity, and taking with him that celestial bow so fatal to the Kshatriyas, for ascertaining the prowess of Daçaratha's son. And Daçaratha, hearing that Rāma of Bhrigu's race had arrived on the confines of his domains, sent his own son Rāma to receive the hero with respect. And beholding Daçaratha's son approach and stand before him with ready weapons, Rāma

of Bhrigu's line smilingly addressed him, O son of Kunti, saying,—O king, O exalted one, string, if thou canst, with all thy might, this bow which in my hands was made the intsrument of destroying the Kshatriya race !* Thus addressed, Dacaratha's son answered,—O illustrious one, it behoveth thee not to insult me thus ! Nor am I, amongst the regenerate classes, deficient in the virtues of the Kshatriya order! The descendants of Ikshwāku in especial never boast of the prowess of their arms!—Then unto Daçaratha's son who said so, Rāma of Bhrigu's line replied,—A truce to all crafty speech, O king ! Take this bow! —At this, Rāma the son of Daçaratha, took in anger from the hands of Rāma of Bhrigu's line that celestial bow that had dealt death to the foremost of Kshatriyas. And, O Bhārata, the mighty hero smilingly stringed that bow without the least exertion, and with its twang loud as the thunder rattle, affrighted all creatures. And Rāma the son of Daçaratha then, addressing Rāma of Bhrigu's race, said,—Here, I have stringed this bow ! What else, O Brāhmana shall I do for thee ?—Then Rāma the son of Jamadagni gave unto the illustrious son of Dacaratha a celestial arrow and said,—Placing this on the bow-string, draw to thy ear, O hero !—'

" Lomaça continued. 'Hearing this, Daçaratha's son blazed up in wrath and said,—I have heard what thou hast said, and even pardoned thee ! O son of Bhrigu's race, thou art full of vanity ! Through the Grandsire's grace thou hast obtained energy that is superior to that of the Kshatriyas! And it is for this that thou insultest me ! Behold me now in my native form : I give thee sight ! Then Rāma of Bhrigu's race beheld in the body of Daçaratha's son the Adityas with the Vasus, the Rudras, the Sādhyas with the Marutas, the Pitris, Hutaçana, the stellar constellations and the planets, the Gandharvas, the Rākshasas, the Yakshas, the Rivers, the *Tirthas*, those eternal Rishis identified with *Brahmā* and called the Vālikhilyas, the celestial Rishis, all the Seas and

---

The word in the text is *Krita-kālam*. This is explained by Nilakantha as equivalent to " made by me the engine of death." The root *Kri*, the same commentator points out, means " to slay."

Mountains, the Vedas with the Upanishads and *Vashats* and the Sacrifices, the *Sāmas* in their living form, the Science of weapons, O Bhārata, and the Clouds with rain and lightning, O Yudhishthira! And the illustrious Vishnu then shot that shaft. And at this the earth was filled with sounds of thunder, and burning meteors, O Bhārata, began to flash through the welkin. And showers of dust and rain fell upon the surface of the earth. And whirlwinds and frightful sounds convulsed everything, and the earth herself began to quake. And shot by the hand of Rāma, that shaft, confounding by its energy the other Rāma, came back blazing into Rāma's hands. And Bhārgava who had thus been deprived of his senses, regaining conciousness and life, bowed unto Rāma—that manifestation of Vishnu's power. And commanded by Vishnu, he proceeded to the mountains of Mahendra. And thenceforth that great ascetic began to dwell there, in terror and shame. And after the expiration of a year, the Pitris, beholding Rāma dwelling there deprived of energy, his pride quelled, and himself sunk in affliction said unto him,—O son, having approached Vishnu, thy behaviour twoards him was not proper! He deserveth for aye worship and respect in the three worlds! Go, O son, to that sacred river which goeth by the name of Vadhusarā! Bathing in all the *tirthas* of that stream thou wilt regain thy energy! There in that river is the *tirtha* called Diptoda where thy grandsire Bhrigu, O Rāma, in the celestial age had practised ascetic penances of great merit!—Thus addressed by them, Rama, O son of Kunti, did what the Pitris bade him, and obtained back at this *tirtha*, O son of Pāndu, the energy he had lost! Even this, O child, was what befell Rāma of spotless deeds in days of yore, after he had, O king, met Vishnu(in the form of Daçaratha's son)!"

Thus ends the ninety-ninth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION C.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said. 'O best of regenerate ones, I desire again to hear of the achievements in detail of Agastya—that illustrious Rishi endued with great intelligence!'

"Lomaça said. 'Listen now, O king, to the excellent and wonderful and extraordinary history of Agastya, as also, O monarch, about the prowess of that Rishi of immeasurable energy! There were in the Krita age certain tribes of fierce Dānavas that were invincible in battle. And they were known by the name of Kālakeyas and were endued with terrible prowess. Placing themselvss under Vritra and arming themselves with diverse weapons they pursued the celestials with Indra at their head in all directions. The gods then all resolved upon the destruction of Vritra, and went with Indra at their head to Brahmā. And beholding them standing before him with joined hands, Parameshthi addressed them all and said,—Everything is known to me, ye gods, about what ye seek! I shall indicate now the means by which ye may slay Vritra! There is a high-souled and great Rishi known by the name of Dadhicha. Go ye all together unto him and solicit of him a boon! With well-pleased heart, that Rishi of virtuous soul will even grant you the boon. Desirous as ye are of victory, go ye all together unto him and tell him,—*For the good of the three worlds, give us thy bones!* Renouncing his body, he will give you his bones! With these bones of his, make ye a fierce and powerful weapon to be called *Vajra*, endued with six sides and terrible roar and capable of destroying even the most powerful enemies. With that weapon will he of an hundred sacrifices slay Vritra. I have now told you all. See that all this is done speedily!—Thus addressed by him, the gods with the Grandsire's leave (came away), and with Nārāyana at their head proceeded to the asylum of Dadhicha. That asylum was on the other bank of the river Saraswati and covered with diverse treers and creepers. And it resounded with the hum of bees as if they

were reciting *Sāmas*. And it also echoed with the melodious notes of the male *Kokila* and the *Chakora*. And buffalos and boars and deer and *Chamaras* wandered there at pleasure freed from the fear of tigers. And elephants with the juice trickling down from rent temples, plunging in the stream, sported with the she-elephants and made the entire region resound with their roars. And the place also echoed with the loud roars of lions and tigers, while at intervals might be seen those grisly monarchs of the forest lying streched in caves and glens and beautifying them with their presence. And such was the asylum, like unto heaven itself, of Dadhicha, that the gods entered. And there they beheld Dadhicha looking like the sun himself in splendour and blazing in grace of person like the grandsire himself. And the celestials saluted the feet of the Rishi and bowed unto him and begged of him the boon that the grandsire had bade them do, Then Dadhicha. well-pleased, addressing those foremost of celestials, said,—Ye celestials, I will do what is for your benefit! I will even renounce this body of mine myself!—And that foremost of men with soul under control, having said this, suddenly renounced his life. The gods then took the bones of the deceased Rishi as directed. And the celestials, glad at heart, went to Twashtri (the celestial Artificer) and spake to him of the means of victory. And Twashtri, hearing those words of theirs, became filled with joy, and constructed (out of those bones) with great attention and care the fierce weapons called *Vajra*. And having manufactured it, he joyfully addressed Indra, saying,—With this foremost of weapons, O exalted one, reduce that fierce foe of the gods to ashes! And having slain the foe, rule thou happily the entire domain of heaven, O chief of the celestials, with those that follow thee.—And thus addressed by Twahstri, Purandara took the *Vajra* from his hands, joyfully and with proper respect."

Thus ends the hundredth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said. 'Armed with the *Vajra* then, and supported by celestials endued with great might, Indra then approached Vritra, who was then occupying the entire earth and the heaven. And he was guarded on all sides by huge-bodied Kālakeyas with upraised weapons resembling gigantic mountains with towering peaks. And the encounter that took place between the gods and the Dānavas lasted for a short while and was, O chief of the Bhāratas, terrific in the extreme, appalling as it did the three worlds. And loud was the clash of swords and scimitars upraised and warded off by heroic hands in course of that fierce encounter. And heads (severed from trunks) began to roll from the firmament to the earth like fruits of the palmyra palm falling upon the ground, loosened from their stalks. And the Kāleyas armed with iron-mounted bludgens and cased in golden mail ran against the gods, like moving mountains on conflagration. And the gods, unable to stand the shock of that impetuous and proudly advancing host, brake and fled from fear. And Purandara of a thousand eyes, beholding the gods flying in fear and Vritra growing in boldness, became deeply dejected. And the foremost of gods, Purandara, himself, agitated with the fear of the Kāleyas, without losing a moment, sought the exalted Nārāyana's refuge. And the eternal Vishnu beholding Indra so depressed, enhanced his might by imparting unto him a portion of his own energy. And when the celestials beheld that Sakra was thus protected by Vishnu, each of them imparted unto him his own energy. And the spotless Brahmarshis also imparted their energies unto the chief of the celestials. And favored thus by Vishnu and all the gods and by the high-blessed Rishis also, Sakra became mightier than before. And when Vritra learnt that the chief of the celestials had been filled with the might of others, he sent forth some terrific roars. And at these roars of his, the earth, the directions, the firmament, heaven, and the mountains all began to tremble, And the chief of the celestials,

deeply agitated on hearing that fierce and loud roar, was filled with fear, and desiring to slay the Asura soon, hurled, O king, the mighty *Vajra!* And struck with Indra's *Vajra* the great Asura decked in gold and garlands fell headlong, like the great mountain Mandara hurled of yore from Vishnu's hands. And although the prince of Daityas was slain, yet Sakra in panic ran from the field, desiring to take shelter in a lake, thinking that the *Vajra* itself had not been hurled from his hands and regarding that Vritra himself was still alive. The celestials, however, and the great Rishis became filled with joy, and all of them began to cheerfully chaunt the praises of Indra. And mustering together, the celestials began to slay the Dānavas, who were dejected at the death of their leader. And struck with panic at sight of the assembled celestial host, the afflicted Dānavas fled to the depths of the sea. And having entered the fathomless deep, teeming with fishes and crocodiles, the Dānavas assembled together and began to proudly conspire for the destruction of the three worlds. And some amongst them that were wise in inferences suggested courses of action, each according to his judgment. In course of time, however, the dreadful resolution arrived at by those conspiring sons of Diti, was that they should, first of all, compass the destruction of all persons possessed of knowledge and ascetic virtue.—The worlds are all supported by asceticism, therefore, they said,—Lose no time for the destruction of asceticism. Compass ye without delay the destruction of those on earth that are possessed of ascetic virtues, that are conversant with duties and the ways of morality, and that have a knowledge of *Brahmā*; for when these are destroyed, the universe itself will be destroyed.—And all the Dānavas, having arrived at this resolution for the destruction of the universe, became highly glad. And thenceforth they made the ocean—that abode of Varuna—with billows high as hills, their fort, from which to make their sallies.'"

Thus ends the hundred and first Section in the *Tirtha-yātrā* of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'The Kāleyas then, having recourse to that receptacle of waters which is the abode of Varuna, began their operations for the destruction of the universe. And during the darkness of the night those angry Daityas bagan to devour the Munis they found in woody retreats and sacred spots. And those wicked wretches devoured in the asylum of Vaçishtha Brāhmanas to the number of an hundred and eighty, besides nine other ascetics. And, proceeding to the asylum of Chyavana that was inhabited by many Brāhmanas, they devoured a century of Brāhmanas that lived upon fruits and roots alone. And they began to do all this during the darkness of the night, while they entered the depths of the sea by day. And they slew a full score of Brāhmanas of subdued souls and leading a Brahmacharya mode of life and living upon air and water alone, in the retreat of Bharadwāja. And it was thus that those Dānavas, the Kāleyas, intoxicated with prowess of arms and their lives nearly run out, gradually invaded all the asylums of the Rishis during the darkness of the night, slaughtering numerous Brāhmanas. And, O best of men, although the Dānavas behaved in this way towards the ascetics in woody retreats, yet men failed to discover anything of them. And every morning people saw the dead bodies of Munis emaciated with frugal diet, lying on the ground. And many of those bodies were without flesh and without blood, without marrow and without entrails, and with limbs separated from one another. And here and there lay on the ground heaps of bones like masses of conch shells. And the earth was scattered over with the (sacrificial) contents of broken jars and shattered laddles for pouring labations of clarified butter, and with the sacred fires kept with care by the ascetics. And the universe afflicted with the terror of the Kāleyas, being destitute of Vedic studies and *Vashats* and sacrificial festivals and religious rites, became entirely cheerless. And, O king, when men began to perish in this way, the survivers,

afflicted with fear, fled for their lives in all directions. And some fled to caverns and some behind mountain-streams and springs, and some through fear of death, died without much ado. And some who were brave and mighty bowmen cheerfully went out and took great trouble in tracking the Dānavas. Unable, however, to find them out, for the Asuras had sought refuge in the depths of the sea, these brave men came back to their homes gratified with the search. And, O lord of men, when the universe was being thus destroyed, and when sacrificial festivals and religious rites had been suspended, the gods became deeply afflicted. And gathering together with Indra in their midst, they began, from fear, to take counsel of one another. And repairing unto the exalted and increate Nārāyana—that unvanquished god of Vaikuntha—the celestials sought his protection. And bowing unto that slayer of Madhu, the gods addressed him, saying,—O lord, thou art the creator, the protector, and the slayer, of ourselves as well as of the universe! It is thou who hast created this universe with its mobile and immobile creatures! O thou of eyes like lotus-leaves, it was thou who in days of yore hadst for the benefit of all creatures, raised from the sea the sunken earth, assuming the form of a boar! And, O best of male beings, assuming also the form of half-man and half-lion, thou hadst slain in days of yore that ancient Daitya of mighty prowess known by the name of Hiranya-kaçipu! And that other great Asura also, Vali by name, was incapable of being slain by any one. Assuming the form of a dwarf, thou hadst exiled him from the three worlds! O lord, it was by thee that that wicked Asura, Jambha by name, who was a mighty bowman and who always obstructed sacrifices, was slain! Achievements like these, which cannot be counted, are thine! O slayer of Madhu, we who have been afflicted with fear, have thee for our refuge! It is for this, O god of gods, that we inform thee of our present troubles! Protect the worlds, the gods, and Sakra also, from a terrible fear.—'"

Thus ends the hundred and second Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"'The celestials said,—Through thy favor it is that all born beings of the four kinds increase. And they being created, propitiate the dwellers of heaven by offerings made to the gods and the manes of departed forefathers. Thus it is that people, protected by thee and free from trouble, live depending on one another, and (so) increase. Now this peril hath befallen the people,—We do not know by whom are Brāhmanas being killed during the night. If the Brāhmanas are destroyed, the earth itself will meet with destruction, and if the earth cometh to an end, heaven also will cease to exist. O mighty-armed one, O lord of the universe! we beseech thee (to act so) that all the worlds, protected by thee, may not come to an end, so it may please thee.—

"'Vishnu said.—Ye gods! to me is known the reason of the destruction of the born beings. I shall speak of it to you; listen with minds free from tribulation! There exists an exceedingly fierce host, known by the name of Kālakeyas. They, under the lead of Vritra, were devastating the whole universe. And when they saw that Vritra was slain by the sagacious Indra endowed with a thousand eyes, they, to preserve their lives, entered into the ocean,—that abode of Varuna. And having entered the ocean, abounding in sharks and crocodiles, they at night kill the saints at this spot, with the view of exterminating the people. But they cannot be slain, as they have taken shelter within the sea. Ye should, therefore, think of some expedient to dry up the ocean. Who save Agastya is capable of drying up the sea? And without drying up the ocean, these (demons) cannot be assailed by any other means. —Hearing these words of Vishnu, the gods took the permission of Brahmā, who lives at the best of all regions, and went to the hermitage of Agastya. Then they beheld the high-souled Agastya, the son of Varuna, of resplendent mien, and waited upon by saints, even as Brahmā is waited upon by celestials. And approaching him, they addressed the son of the Mitra and

Varuṅa, at the hermitage, magnanimous, and unswerving, and looking like an embodiment of pious works piled together; and glorified him by reciting his deeds. The deities said,—'Thou wert formerly the refuge of the gods, when they were oppressed by Nahusha. Thorn of the world that he was, he was thrown down from his throne of heaven—from the celestial regions. Vindhya, the foremost of all mountains, suddenly began to increase his height, from a wrathful competition with the Sun, (i.e. to rival him in altitude). But he hath ceased to increase, as he was unable to disobey thy command. And when darkness had covered the world, the born beings were harassed by Death, but having obtained thee for a protector, they attained the utmost security. Whenever we are beset by perils, thy reverence is always our refuge; for this reason it is that we solicit a boon from thee; as thou ever grantest the boon solicited (of thee).—"'

Thus ends the hundred and third Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CIV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said,—'O great saint! I am desirous of hearing in detail why it was that Vindhya, made senseless with wrath, suddenly began to increase his bulk.'

"Lomaça said.—'The Sun between his rising and setting used to revolve round that monarch of mountains—the great Meru of golden lustre. And seeing this, the mountain Vindhya spake to Surya saying,—As thou every day goest round Meru and honorest him by thy circumambulations, do thou even the same by me, O maker of light!—Thus addressed, the Sun replied to the great mountain, saying,—I do not of my own will honor this mountain by my circumambulations. By those who have built this universe, hath that path been assigned to me!—Thus addressed, the mountain suddenly began to increase from wrath, desirous, O chastiser of foes! of obstructing the path of the Sun and the Moon. And all the assembled gods came to Vindhya, the mighty king of mountains, and tried to

dissuade him from his course. But he heeded not what they said. And then all the assembled gods went to the saint, living in the hermitage, engaged in the practice of austerities, and the very best of persons devoted to virtue; and stated all that had happened to Agastya, possessed of exceeding marvellous power.

"'The gods said,—This king of hills, Vindhya, giving way to wrath, is stopping the path of the Sun and the Moon, and also the course of the stars. O foremost of Brāhmanas! O thou great in gifts! excepting thyself, there is none who can prevent him; therefore do thou make him desist.—Hearing these words of the gods, the Brāhmana came to the mountain. And he with his wife, having arrived there, came near Vindhya and spake to him, saying,—O thou best of mountains! I wish to have a path given to me by thee, as, for some purpose, I shall have to go to the southern region. Until my return, do thou wait for me. And, when I have returned, O king of mountains, thou mayst increase in bulk as much as thou pleasest,—And, O slayer of foes! having made this compact with Vindhya, up to the present day Varuna's son doth not return from the southern region. Thus have I, asked by thee, narrated to thee why Vindhya doth not increase in bulk, by reason of the power of Agastya! Now, O king! hear how the Kāleyas were killed by the gods, after they had obtained their prayer from Agastya.

"'Having heard the words of the gods, Agastya theson of Mitra and Varuna, said,—Wherefore are ye come? What boon do ye solicit from me?—Thus addressed by him, the deities then spake to the saint, saying,—This deed we ask thee to achieve, *viz.*, to drink up the great ocean, O magnanimous (saint)! Then we shall be able to slay those enemies of the gods, known by the name of Kāleyas, together with all their adherents!—Having heard the words of the gods, the saint said,—Let it be so,—I shall do even what ye desire, and that which will conduce to the great happiness of men.—Having said this, he then proceeded to the ocean—the lord of rivers,—accompanied by sages, ripe in the practice of penances, and also by the deities, O thou who leadst an excellent life! And men and snakes, celestial

choristers and Yakshas and Kinnaras followed the magnanimous saint,—desirous of witnessing that wonderful event. Then they came up all together near to the sea, of awful roar, dancing, as it were, with its billows, bounding with the breeze, and laughing with masses of froth, and stumbling at the caves, and thronged with diverse kinds of sharks, and frequented by flocks of various birds. And the deities accompanied by Agastya and celestial choristers and huge snakes and highly-gifted saints, approached the immense watery waste.'"

Thus ends the hundred and fourth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'That blessed saint, the son of Varuna, having reached the sea, spake unto the assembled gods and the saints gathered together; saying,—I surely am going to drink up the ocean—that abode of the god of waters. Be ye quickly ready with those preparations which it devolves upon you to make.—Having spoken these few words, the unswerving offspring of Mitra and Varuna, full of wrath, began to drink up the sea, while all the worlds stood observing (the deed). Then the gods, together with Indra, seeing how the sea was being drunk up, were struck with mighty amazement, and glorified him with laudatory words, saying,—Thou art our protector, and the Providence itself for men,—and also the creator of the worlds. By thy favor, the universe with its gods may possibly be saved from havoc.—And the magnanimous one, glorified by the gods,—while the musical instruments of celestial choristers were playing all round, and while celestial blossoms were showered upon him—rendered waterless the wide ocean. And seeing the wide occan rendered devoid of water, the host of gods was exceedingly glad; and, taking up choice weapons of celestial forgery, fell to slaying the demons with courageous hearts. And they, assailed by the magnanimous gods, of great strength, and swift of speed, and roaring loudly, were unable to withstand the onset of their

fleet and valorous (foes)—those residents of the heavenly regions, O descendant of Bharata! And those demons, attacked by the gods, bellowing loudly, for a moment carried on a terrible conflict. They had been in the first instance burnt by the force of penances performed by the saints, who had matured their selves; therefore, the demons, though they tried to the utmost, were at last slaughtered by the gods. And decked with brooches of gold, and bearing on their persons ear-rings and armlets, the demons, when slain, looked beautiful indeed, like *palāsa* trees when full of blossoms. Then, O best of men! a few—the remnant of those that wers killed of the Kāleya race, having rent asunder the goddess, Earth, took refuge at the bottom of the nether regions. And the gods, when they saw that the demons were slain, with diverse speeches, glorified the mighty saint, and spake the following words,—O thou of mighty arms, by thy favor men have attained a mighty blessing, and the Kāleyas, of ruthless strength, have been killed by thy power, O creator of beings! Fill the sea (now), O mighty-armed one; give up again the water drunk up by thee.—Thus addressed, the blessed and mighty saint replied,—That water in sooth hath been digested by me. Some other expedient, therefore, must be thought of by you, if ye desire to make an endeavour to fill the ocean.—Hearing this speech of that saint of matured soul, the assembled gods were struck with both wonder and sadness, O great king! And thereupon, having bidden adieu to each other, and bowed to the mighty saint, all the born beings went their way. And the gods, with Vishnu, came to Brahmā. And having held consultation again, with the view of filling up the sea, they all, with joined hands, spake about replenishing it.'"

Thus ends the hundred and fifth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CVI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'Them gathered together, Brahmā, the grandfather of men, (thus) addressed,—Go ye, O gods! whither your pleasure may lead you, or your desire conduct you. It will take a long course of time for the ocean to resume its wonted state; the occasion will be furnished by the agnates of the great king Bhagiratha.—Hearing the words of the (universal) grandfather (Brahmā), all the foremost gods went their way, biding the day (when the ocean was to be filled again.)'

"Yudhishthira said.—'What was that occasion, O Saint? And how did the agnates of (Bhagiratha furnish the same)? And how was the ocean refilled by the interferance of Bhagiratha? O Saint, who deemst thy religious practices as thy only treasure! O thou of the priestly class! I wish to hear all this (account) of the achievements of the king, narrated in detail by thyself.'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Thus addressed by the magnanimous and virtuous king, he, the chief of men of the priestly class, narrated the achievements of the high-souled (king), Sagara."

"Lomaça said.—'There was born in the family of the Ikshwāku tribe, a ruler of the earth named Sagara, endued with beauty, and strength. And that same (king) of a dreaded name was sonless, O descendant of Bharata! And he carried havoc through the tribes of the Haihayas and the Tālajanghas; brought under subjection the whole of the military caste; (and so) ruled over his own kingdom. And, O most praiseworthy of the descendants of Bharata! O chief of the Bharata race! he had two wives, proud of their beauty and of their youth, —one a princess of the Vidarbha race, and the other of the royal line of Sivi. And, O chief of kings! that same ruler of men, betook himself to the mountain Kailāsa, accompanied by both his wives, and with the desire of having a son, became engaged in the practice of exceedingly austere penances.

And being engaged in the practice of rigid austerities, and (also) employed in the comtemplation known by the name of Yoga, he obtained the sight of the magnanimous god, with three eyes—the slayer of the demon called Tripurā; the worker of blessings (for all beings); the (eternally) existent one; the ruling Being; the holder of the Pināka bow; carrying in his hand his (well-known weapon),—the trident; the god of three eyes; the repository of (eternal) peace; the ruler of all those that are fierce; capable of assuming very many forms; and the lord of the goddess Umā. And that same ruler of men, of mighty arms, soon as he beheld the god—that giver of boons—fell down at his feet, with both his queens, and preferred a prayer to have a son. And the god Siva, well-pleased with him, spake (thus) to that most righteous of the rulers of men, attended by his two wives, saying,—O lord of men! considering the (astrological) moment at which thou hast preferred thy prayer to me, sixty thousand sons, O foremost of choicemen! valorous and characterised by exceeding pride, will be born in one of thy two wives (here). But they all, O ruler of the earth! shall perish together. In the other wife, (however), will be born a single valiant son, who will perpetuate thy race.—Having said this to him, the god Rudra (Siva) vanished from sight at that very spot, and that same king Sagara now came (back) to his own abode, accompanied by his two wives, exceedingly delighted at heart (for what had happened) then. And, O most praiseworthy of the sons of Manu! [i.e. men], there the two lotus-eyed wives of him—the princess of Vidarbha and the princess of Sivi—came (erelong) to be with child. And afterwards, on the due day, the princess of Vidarbha brought forth (something) of the shape of a gourd; and the princess of Sivi gave birth to a boy as beautiful as a god. Then the ruler of the earth made up his mind to throw away the gourd,—when he heard (proceeding) from the sky a speech (uttered) in a grave and solemn voice,—O king! do thou not be guilty of this hasty act; thou shouldst not abandon thy sons. Take out the seeds from the gourd and let them be preserved with care in steaming vessels partly filled with clarified butter, Then thou wilt get, O scion of Bharata's

race! sixty thousand sons. O ruler of men! the great god (Siva) hath spoken that thy sons are to be born in this manner. Let not therefore thy mind be turned away therefrom.—' "

Thus ends the hundred and sixth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CVII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'O most righteous of kings! when he heard these words (proceeding) from the sky, he had faith therein, and did all that he was directed to do, O chief of the men of Bharata's race! Then the ruler of men took separately each one of the seeds and then placed these divisions (of the gourd) in vessels filled with clarified butter. And intent on the preservation of his sons, he provided a nurse for every (receptacle). Then after a long time there arose sixty thousand exceedingly powerful sons of that same king—gifted with unmeasured strength. They were born, O ruler of earth! to that saint-like king, by Rudra's favor. And they were terrible; and their acts were ruthless. And they were able to ascend and roam about in the sky; and being numerous themselves, despised every body, including the gods. And they would chase even the gods, the Gandharvas, and the Rākshasas and all the born beings, being themselves valiant and addicted to fight. Then all people, harassed by the dull headed sons of Sagara, united with all the gods, went to Brahmā as their refuge. And them addressed the blessed grandfather of all beings (Brahmā),—Go ye your way, ye gods, together with all these men. In a not very long space of time, there will come about, O gods! a great and exceedingly terrible destruction of Sagara's sons, caused by the deed perpetrated by them.—Thus addressed, those same gods, and men, O lord of the sons of Manu! bade adieu to the grandfather, and went back to whence they had come. Then, O chief of Bharata's race! after the expiry of very many days, the mighty king Sagara accepted the conse-

cration for performing the rites of a horse-sacrifice. And his horse began to roam over the world, protected by his sons. And when the horse reached the sea, waterless and frightful to behold, —although the horse was guarded with very great care—it (suddenly) vanished at the very spot (it stood upon). Then, O respected sir! those same sons of Sagara imagined the same fine horse to have been stolen; and returning to their father, narrated how it had been stolen out of sight. And thereupon he addressed them, saying,—Go ye and search for the horse in all the cardinal points.—Then, O great king! by this command of their father, they began to search for the horse in all the cardinal points, and throughout the whole surface of the earth. But all those sons of Sagara, all mutually united, could not find the horse, nor the person who had stolen it. And coming back then, they with joined palms (thus addressed) their father, (standing) before him,—O Protector of men! O Ruler of the earth! O king! by thy command, the whole of this world, with its hills and its forest tracts, with its seas, and its woods, and its islands, with its rivulets and rivers and caves, hath been searched through by us. But we cannot find either the horse, or the thief who had stolen the same.—And hearing the words, that same king became senseless with wrath, and then told them all, carried away by Destiny,—Go ye all, may ye never return! Search ye again for the horse. Without that sacrificial horse, ye must never return, my boys!—' "

"'And those same sons of Sagara, accepted this command of their father, and once more began to search through the entire world. Now these heroes saw a rift on the surface of the earth. And having reached this pit, the sons of Sagara began to excavate it. And with spades and pickaxes they went on digging the sea, making the utmost efforts. And that same abode of Varuna (namely the ocean), being thus excavated by the united sons of Sagara and rent and cut on all sides round, was placed in a condition of the utmost distress. And the demons and snakes and Rākshasas and various (other) animated beings began to utter distressful cries, while being killed by Sagara's sons. And hundreds and thousands of animated beings were beheld with severed heads and separated trunks and with

their skins and bones and joints rent asunder and broken. Thus they went on digging the ocean, which was the abode of Varuna, and an exceedingly long space of time expired in this work, but still the horse was not found. Then, O lord of earth! towards the north-eastern region of the sea, the incensed sons of Sagara dug down as far as the lower world, and there they beheld the horse, roaming about on the surface of the ground. And they saw the magnanimous Kapila, who looked like a perfect mass of splendour. And having beheld him shining with his brightness, just as the fire shineth with its flames, they, O king! seeing the horse, were flushed with delight. And they being incensed, sent forward by their fate, paid no heed to the presence of the magnanimous Kapila, and ran forward with a view to seize the horse. Then, O great king! Kapila, the most righteous of saints,—he whom the great sages name as Kapila Vāsudeva —assumed a fiery look, and the mighty saint shot flames towards them, and thereby burnt down the dull-headed sons of Sagara. And Nārada, whose practice of austerities was very great, when he beheld them reduced to ashes, came to Sagara's side, and gave the information to him. And when the king learnt this terrible news which proceeded from the mouth of the saint, for nearly an hour he remained sad, and then he bethought himself of what Siva had said. Then sending for Asuman, the son of Asamanjas, and his own grandson, he, O chief of Bharata's race! spake the following words:—Those same sixty thousand sons, of unmeasured strength, having encountered Kapila's wrath, have met their death on my account. And, O my boy of stainless character! thy father also hath been forsaken by me, in order to the discharge of my duty (as a king), and I being desirous of doing good to my subjects.'

"Yudhishthira said.—'O saint, whose sole wealth consists in religious practices! tell me for what reason, Sagara the foremost of kings, abandoned his own-begotten son, endued with valor—an act so difficult (for all other men).'

"Lomaça said.—'A son was born to Sagara, known by the name of Asamanjas,—he who was given birth to by the princ-

ess of Sivi. And he used to seize by the throat the feeble children of the townsmen, and threw them while screaming into the river. And thereupon the townsmen, overwhelmed with terror and grief, met together, and all standing with joined palms, besought Sagara in the following way,—O great king! thou art our protector from the dreaded peril of attack from a hostile force. Therefore it is proper for thee to deliver us from the frightful danger proceeding from Asamanjas.—And the most righteous of the rulers of men, having heard this frightful news from his subjects, for nearly an hour remained sad and then spake to his ministers, saying, —This day from the city let my son Asamanjas be driven forth. If ye wish to do what will be acceptable to me, let this be quickly done.—And, O protector of men! those same ministers, thus addressed by the king, performed in a hurry exactly what the king had commanded them to do. Thus have I narrated to thee how the magnanimous Sagara banished his son, with a view to the welfare of the residents of the town. I shall now fully narrate to thee what Ansuman of the powerful bow was told by Sagara. Listen to me!

"'Sagara said.—O my boy! sore am I at heart for having abandoned thy father, on account of the death of my sons, and also on being unsuccessful in getting back the horse. Therefore, O grandson! harassed with grief and confounded with the obstruction to my religious rites as I am, thou must bring back the horse and deliver me from hell.—Thus addressed by the magnanimous Sagara, Ansuman went with sorrow to that spot where the earth had been excavated. And by that very passage he entered into the sea, and beheld the illustrious Kapila and that same horse. And having beheld that ancient saint, most righteous of his order, looking like a mass of light, he bowed with his head to the ground, and informed him of the reason of his visit." Then, O great king! Kapila was pleased with Ansuman, and that saint of a virtuous soul told him to ask for a favor from him. And he in the first place prayed for the horse, for the purpose of using it in the sacrifice; in the second place he prayed for the purification of his fathers. Then the mighty chief of saints, Kapila spake, to him, saying,

I shall grant thee everything that thou desirest, O stainless (prince)! May good luck be thine! In thee are fixed (the virtues of) forbearance, and truth, and righteousness. By thee hath Sagara had all his desires fulfilled. Thou art (really) a son to thy father! And by thy ability the sons of Sagara will go to heaven (i. e. will be delivered from the consequences of their unhallowed death). And the son of thy son, with a view to purify the sons of Sagara, will obtain the favour of the great god Siva, (by means of practising great austerities), and will (thus) bring (to this world) the river that floweth in three (separate) streams—(Gangā), O chief of men! May good luck be thine! Take thou with thee the sacrificial horse. Finish, my lad! the sacrificial rites of the magnanimous Sagara! —Thus addressed by the illustrious Kapila, Ansuman took the horse with him, and came back to the sacrificial yard of the mighty-minded Sagara. Then he fell prostrate at the feet of the high-souled Sagara, who smelt him on the head* and narrated all the events to him,—all that had been seen and heard by him,—and likewise the destruction of Sagara's sons. He also announced that the horse had been brought back to the sacrificial yard. And when king Sagara heard of this, he no more grieved on account of his sons. And he praised and honered Ansuman, and finished those same sacrificial rites. His sacrifice finished, Sagara was greeted honorably by all the gods; and he converted the sea, Varuna's dwelling-place,into a son of himself. And the lotus-eyed (King Sagara) having ruled his kingdom for a period of exceeding length, placed his grandson on the throne, (full of) responsibilities, and then ascended to heaven. And Ansuman likwise, O great king! virtuous in soul, ruled over the world as far as the edge of the sea, following the foot-prints of his father's father. His son was named Dilipa, versed in virtue. Upon him placing the duties of his sovereign post, Ansuman likewise departed this life. And then when Dilipa heard what an awful fate had overtaken his forefathers, he was sorely

* A mode of endearment that prevailed among the ancient Hindus, and corresponds to the kissing of the forehead among the people of Western Europe.

grieved, and thought of the means of raising them. And the ruler of men made very great efforts towards the descent of Gangā (to the mortal world). But although trying to the utmost of his power, he could not bring about what he so much wished. And a son was born to him, known by the name of Bhagiratha, beauteous, and devoted to a virtuous life, and truthful, and free from feelings of malice. And Dilipa anointed him as king, and betook himself to the forest life. And, O best of all the scions of Bharata's race! that same king (Dilipa), addicted himself to a successful course of austerities, and at the end of a (sufficient) period, from the forest departed to heaven.'"

Thus ends the hundred and seventh Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CVIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'That same king, of a powerful bow, standing at the head of the surrounding kings, (i.e. the occupant of an impirial throne), of a powerful car, (i.e. possessing every great fighting power), became the delight of the eyes and the soul of all the world. And he of the powerful arm came to learn how his forefathers had met an awful end from Kapila of mighty soul, and how they had been unable to attain the region of gods. And he with a sorrowful heart made over his kingly duties to his minister, and, O lord of men! for practising austerities, went to the side of the snowy Mountain (the Himālayas). And, O most praiseworthy of men, desirous of extinguishing his sins by leading an austere life, (and thereby) obtaining the favour of the (goddess) Gangā, he visited that foremost of mountains—Himālaya. And he beheld it adorned with peaks of diverse forms full of mineral earth; besprinkled on all sides with drops from clouds which were resting themselves upon the breeze; beautified with rivers and groves and rocky spurs, looking like (so many) palaces (in a city); attended upon by lions and tigers that had concealed themselves in its caves and pits; and also inhabited by birds of checkered forms,

which were uttering diverse sounds, such as the Bhringarājas, and ganders, and Dātyuhas, and water-cocks, and peacocks, and birds with an hundred feathers, and Jivanjivakas, and black birds, and Chakoras of eyes furnished with black corners, and the birds that love their young. And he saw the mountain abounding in lotus plants growing in delightful reservoirs of water. And the cranes rendered it charming with their sounds; and the Kinnaras and the celestial nymphs were seated on its stony slabs. And the elephants occupying the cardinal points had everywhere rubbed its trees with the end of their tusks; and the demi-gods of the Vydyādhara class frequented the hill. And it was full of various gems, and was also infested by snakes bearing terrible poison, and of glowing tongues. And the mountain at places looked like (massive) gold, and elsewhere it resembled a silvery (pile), and at some places it was like a (sable) heap of collyrium. Such was the snowy hill where the king now found himself. And that most praiseworthy of men at that spot betook himself to an awfully austere course of life. And for one thousand years his subsistence was nothing but water, fruits and roots. When, however, a thousand years according to the calculation of gods had elapsed, then the great river Gangā, having assumed a material form, manifested to him her (divine) self.

"'Ganga said,—O great king! what dost thou desire of me? And what must I bestow on thee? Tell me the same, O most praiseworthy of men! I shall do as thou mayst ask me. —Thus addressed, the king then made his reply to Gangā, the daughter of the snowy Hill, saying,—O grantress of boons! O great river! my father's fathers, while searching for the horse, were sent by Kapila to the abode of the god of death. And those same sixty thousand sons of Sagara of mighty soul, having met with the majestic Kapila, perished (to a soul) in an instant of time. Having thus perished, there hath been no place for them in the region of heaven. O great river! so long as thou dost not besprinkle those same bodies with thy water, there is no salvation for these same Sagara's sons. O blessed goddess! carry thou my forefathers,

Sagara's sons, to the region of heaven. O great river! on their account am I beseeching thee forsooth.—'

"Lomaça said.—'Gangā, the goddess saluted by the world, having heard these words of the king, was well pleased, and spake to Bhagiratha the following words,—O great king! I am prepared to do what thou dost ask me: there is no doubt therein. But when I shall descend from the sky to the earth, the force of my fall will be difficult to sustain. O protector of men! in the three worlds there exists none who is able to sustain the same, excepting Siva, the most praiseworthy of gods, the great Lord with the throat of sable blue. O (prince) of a powerful arm! obtain the favour, by practising austerities, of that same Siva—giver of boons. That same god will sustain my descent upon his head. Thy desire he will fulfil,—the desire namely to be of service to thy fathers.—O king! then the great king Bhagiratha having heard the same, went to the Kailāsa hill, and betaking himself to a severe course of penances, at the expiration of a certain length of time, obtained the favour of that worker of blessings, (Siva). And, O protector of men! that same best of men, inorder that his forefathers might have a place in heaven secured to them, received from that very Siva the fulfilment of his wish, namely the wish that the descending Gangā might be sustained."'

Thus ends the hundred and eighth Section in the tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CIX.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'The blessed God having heared what Bhagiratha had said, and with a view to do what was agreeable to the residents of heaven, replied to the king, saying,—So let it be. O most righteous of the protectors of men, O (prince) of a powerful arm! for thy sake I shall sustain the river of the gods, when she will take her descent from the sky,—she who is pure and blessed and divine.—O (king) of a mighty arm! saying this, he came to the snowy mountain, surrounded,

by his attendants, of awful mien, and with uplifted weapons of diverse forms. And standing there, he said to Bhagiratha, the most praiseworthy of men,—O (prince) of a powerful arm! do thou pray to the river, the daughter of the king of mountains. I shall sustain that most praiseworthy of rivers, when she falls down from the third region of the world (heaven).—Having heard these words uttered by Siva, the king became devout (in heart), made obeisance, and directed his thoughts towards Gangā. Then the delightful (river), of pure water, in being so thought of by the king, and seeing that the great lord (Siva) was standing (to receive her fall), came down all of a sudden from the sky. And seeing that she had taken her leap from the sky, the gods, together with the mighty saints, the Gandharvas, the snakes, and the Yakshas, assembled there as spectators. Then came down from the sky Gangā, the daughter of the snowy mountain. And her whirlpools were raging, and she was teeming with fishes and sharks. And her sustained, O king! Siva—her who was like a girdle to the sky and looked like a wreath of pearls placed on the wide forehead of Siva. O king! she directing her course towards the sea, separated herself into three streams; and her water was bestrewn with piles of froth, which looked like so many rows of (white) ganders. And crooked and tortuous in the movements of her body, at places; and at others stumbling as it were; and covered with foam as with a robe; she went forward like a woman drunk. And elsewhere, by virtue of the roar of her waters, she uttered loud sounds. Thus assuming very many different aspects, when she fell from the sky, and reached the surface of the earth, she said to Bhagiratha,—O great king! show me the path that I shall have to take. O lord of the earth! for thy sake have I descended to the earth.—Having heard these words, king Bhagiratha directed his course towards the spot where lay those bodies of the mighty Sagara's sons, in order that, O most praiseworthy of men! the holy water might flood (the same). Having achieved the task of sustaining Gangā, Siva, saluted by men, went to Kailāsa, the most praiseworthy of mountains, accompanied by the celestials. And the protector of men (Bhagiratha), accompanied by Gangā,

reached the sea; and the sea, that abode of Varuna, was quickly filled. And the king adopted Gangā as a daughter of himself, and at that spot offered libations of water to the manes of his forefathers: thus was his heart's wish fulfilled. Thus asked by thee, I have narrated the whole story, how Gangā, running in three streams, was brought down to the earth for filling the sea; how the mighty saint had drunk up the sea for a particular reason; and how, O lord! Vātāpi, the slayer of Brahmanas, was destroyed by Agastya.'"

Thus ends the hundred and ninth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CX.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"O chief the Bharata race! then the son of Kunti went at a slow pace to the two rivers Nandā and Aparanandā, which had the virtue destroying the dread of sin. And the protector of men having reached the healthy hill Hemakuta, beheld there very many strange and inconceivable sights. There the utterance of words caused the gathering of clouds, and thousand volleys of stones. And people at its sight, were struck sad, and were unable to ascend the hill.* There the winds blew for aye, and the heavens always poured down rains; and likewise the sounds of the recitation of the sacred writ were heard, yet no body was seen. In the evening and in the morning, would be seen the blessed fire that carries offerings to the gods. And there flies would bite and interrupt the practice of austerities. And there a sadness would overtake the soul, and people would become sick. The son of Pāndu, having observed very many strange circumstances of this character, again addressed his questions to Lomaça with reference to these wonderful things.

"Lomaça said.—'O slayer of foes! O king! I am going to tell thee as we heard it before; do thou attend to the same with intent mind. In this peak of Rishava, there was once a saint known by that name. And his life had lasted for

---

* The text is very obscure at this place.

many hundred years. And he was devoted to penances, and was greatly resentful. And he, forsooth, for having been spoken to by others, from wrath addressed the hill thus,—Whoever should utter any words here, thou must throw stones at him, and thou must call up the winds to prevent him from making any noise.—This was what the saint spake. And so at this place, soon as a man utters any words, he is forbidden by a roaring cloud. O king! thus these deeds were performed by that great saint, and from wrath he also forbade other acts. O king! tradition says that when the gods of yore had come to the Nandā, suddenly came over (there) a number of men to look at the celestials. Those same gods at whose head stood Indra, did not, however, like to be seen; and so they rendered this spot inaccessible, by rasing obstructions in the from of hills. And from that day forward, O Kunti's son! men could not cast their eyes at any time on what looked like a hill,* for less could they ascend the same. This big mountain is incapable of being seen by one who hath not led an austere life, nor can such a one ascend it. Therefore, O son of Kunti! keep thou thy tongue under control. Here at that time all those gods performed the best sacrificial rites, O Bharata's son! even up to this day these marks thereof may be seen. This grass here hath the from of the sacred *kusa* grass: the ground here seemth to be overspread with the sacred grass; and, O lord of men! many of these trees here look like the posts for tying the sacrificial beasts. O Bharata's son! still the Gods and saints have residence here; and their sacred fire is observed in the morning and in the evening. Here if one bathes, his sin is forthwith destroyed, O Kunti's son! O most praiseworthy of the race of Kuru! do thou, therefore, perform thy ablutions, together with thy younger brothers. Then after having washed thyself in the Nandā, thou wilt repair to the river Kausiki,—the spot where the most excellent and severest form of penances was practiced by Viswāmitra.—Then the king with his attendants, having washed his body there, proceed-

* The text here is very obscure.

ed to the river Kausiki, which was pure and delightful and pleasant with cool water.

"Lomaça said,—'This is the pure divine river by name Kausiki, O chief of Bharata's race! and this is the delightful hermitage of Viçwāmitra, conspicuous here. And this is hermitage, with a holy name, belonging to Kāsyapa of mighty soul; whose son was Rishyasringa, devoted to penances, and of passions under control. He by force of his penances caused Indra to rain; and that god, the slayer of the demons Vala and Vritra, dreading him, poured down rain during a drought. That powerful and mighty son of Kāsyapa was born of a hind. He worked a great marvel in the territory of Lomapāda. And when the crops had been restored, king Lomapāda gave his daughter Sāntā in marriage to him; as the sun gave in marriage his daughter Sāvitri.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'How was the son of Kāsyapa, Rishyasringa, born of a hind? And how was he endowed with holiness, being the issue of a reprehensible sexual connexion? And for what reason was Indra, the slayer of the demons Vala and Vritra, afraid of that same sagacious boy, and poured down rain during a period of drought? And how beautiful was that princess Sāntā, pure in life, she who allured the heart of him, when he had turned himself into a stag? And since the royal saint Lomapāda is said to have been of a virtuous disposition, why was it that in his territory, Indra, the chastiser of the demon Pāka, had withheld rain? O holy saint! all this in detail, exactely as it happened, thou wilt be pleased to narrate to me, for I am desirous of hearing the deeds of Rishyasringa's life.'

"Lomaça said.—'Hear how Rishyasringa, of dreaded name, was born as a son to Vibhāndaka, who was a saint of the Brāhmana caste, who had cultured his soul by means of religious austerities, whose seed never failed in causing generation ,and who was learned and bright like the Lord of beings. And the father was highly honored, and the son was possessed of a mighty spirit, and, though a boy, was respected by aged men. And that son of Kāçyapa, Vibhāndaka, having proceeded to a big lake, devoted himself to the practice of penances. And that

same saint, comparable to a god, laboured for a long period. And once while he was washing his mouth in the waters, he beheld the celestial nymph Urvasi,—whereupon came out his seminal fluid. And, O king! a hind at that time lapped it up along with the water that she was drinking, being athirst; and from this cause she became with child. That same hind had really been a daughter of the gods, and had been told of yore by the holy Brahmā, the creator of the worlds,—Thou shalt be a hind; and when in that form, thou shalt give birth to a saint,thou shalt then be freed. —As Destiny would have it, and as the word of the creator would not be untrue, in that same hind was born his (Vibhāndaka's) son a mighty saint.—And Rishyasringa, devoted to penances, always passed his days in the forest. O king! there was a horn on the head of that magnanimous saint, and for this reason did he come to be known at the time by the name of Rishyasringa. And excepting his father, not a man had ever before been seen by him; therefore his mind, O protector of men! was entirely devoted to the duties of a continent life. At this very period, there was a ruler of the land of Anga, known by the name of Lomapāda, who was a friend of Daçaratha. We have heard that he from love of pleasure had been guilty of a falsehood towards a Brāhmana. And that same ruler of the world had at the time been shunned by all persons of the priestly class. And he was without a ministering priest (to assist him in his religious rites). And the god of a thousand eyes (Indra) suddenly abstained from giving rain in his territory;—so that his people began to suffer. And, O lord of the earth! he questioned a number of Brāhmanas, devoted to penances, of cultivated minds, and possessed of capabilities, with reference to the matter of rain being granted by the lord of gods, saying,—How may the heavens grant us rain? Think of an expedient (for this purpose).—And those same cultured men, being thus questioned, gave expression to their respective views. And one among them—the best of saints—spake to that same king, saying—O lord of kings! the Brāhmanas are angry with thee. Do same act (therefore) for appeasing them. O ruler of the

earth! send for Rishyasringa, the son of a saint, resident of the forest, knowing nothing of the female sex, and always taking a delight in simplicity. O king! if he, great in the practice of penances, should show himself in thy territory, forthwith rain would be granted by the heavens; herein I have no doubt at all.—And, O king! having heard these words, Lomapāda made attonement for his sins. And he went away; and when the Brāhmanas had been appeased, returned again. And seeing the king returned, the people were again glad at heart. Then the king of Anga convened a meeting of his ministers,proficient in giving counsel. And he took great pains in order to settle some plan for s ecuring a visit from Rishyasringa. And, O unswerving (prince)! with those ministers, who were versed in branches of knowledge, and exceedingly proficient in worldly matters, and had a thorough training in practical affairs, he at last settled a plan (for gaining his object). And then he sent for a number of courtesans,—women of the town, clever in everything. And when they came, that same ruler of the earth spake to them, saying—Ye lovely women! ye must find some means to allure, and obtain the confidence of, the son of the saint—Rishyasringa, whom ye must bring over to my territory.—And those same women, on the one hand afraid of the anger of the king, and on the other, dreading a curse from the saint, became sad and confounded, and declared the business to be beyond their power. One, however, among them—a hoary woman, thus spake to the king,—O great king! him whose wealth solely consists in penances, I shall try to bring over here. Thou wilt, however, have to procure for me certain things, in connection with the plan. In that case, I may be able to bring over the son of the saint—Rishyasringa.—Thereupon the king gave an order that all that she might ask for should be procured. And he also gave a good deal of wealth and jewels of various kinds. And then, O Lord of the earth, she took with herself a number of women endowed with beauty and youth, and went to the forest without delay.' "

Thus ends the hundred and tenth Section in the Tirthayātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'O descendant of Bharata! she in order to compass the object of the king, prepared a floating hermitage, both because the king had ordered so, and also because it exactly accorded with her plan. And the floating hermitage, containing artificial trees adorned with various flowers and fruits, and surrounded by diverse shrubs and creeping plants, and capable of furnishing choice and delicious fruits, was exceedingly delightful, and nice, and pleasing, and looked as if it had been created by magic. Then she moored the vessel at no great distance from the hermitage of Kaçyapa's son, and sent emissaries to survey the place where that same saint habitually went about. And then she saw an opportunity; and, having conceived a plan in her mind, sent forward her daughter, a courtezan by trade, and of smart sense. And that clever woman went to the vicinity of the religious man, and arriving at the hermitage beheld the son of the saint.

"'The courtezan said,—I hope, O saint! that it is all well with the religious devotees. And I hope that thou hast a plentiful store of fruits and roots; and that thou takest delight in this hermitage. Verily I come here now to pay thee a visit. I hope the practice of austerities among the saints is on the increase. I hope that thy father's spirit hath not slakened and that he is well pleased with thee. O Rishyasringa of the priestly caste! I hope thou prosecutest the studies proper for thee.—

"'Rishyasringa said,—Thou art shining with lustre, as if thou wert a (mass) of light. And I deem thee worthy of obeisance. Verily I shall give thee water for washing thy feet, and such fruits and roots also as may be liked by thee; for this is what my religion hath prescribed to me. Be thou pleased to take at thy pleasure thy seat on a mat made of the sacred grass, covered over with a black deer-skin, and made pleasant and comfortable to sit upon. And where is thy hermitage?

O Brāhmana! thou resemblest a god in thy mien. What is the name of this particular religious vow, which thou seemst to be observing now?—

"'The courtezan said,—O son of Kāçyapa! on the other side of yonder hill, which covers the space of three Yojanas, is my hermitage—a delightful place. There, not to receive obeisance is the rule of my faith; nor do I touch water for washing my feet. I am not worthy of obeisance from persons like thee; but I must make obeisance to them. O Brāhmana! this is the religious observance to be practised by me, namely, that thou must be clasped in my arms.

"'Rishyasringa said,—Let me give thee ripe fruits, such as gallnuts, myrobalans, *Karushas*, *Ingudas* from sandy tracts, and Indian figs. May it please thee to take a delight in them.!—'

"Lomaça said,—'She however threw aside all those edible things, and then gave him unsuitable things for food. And these were exceedingly nice and beautiful to see, and were very much acceptable to Rishyasringa. And she gave him garlands of an exceedingly fragrant scent, and beautiful and shining garments to wear, and first-rate drinks; and then played and laughed and enjoyed herself. And she at his sight played with a ball, and while thus employed, looked like a creeping plant broken in two. And she touched his body with her own, and repeatedly clasped Rishyasringa in her arms. Then she bent and brake the flowery twigs from trees, such as the Sāla, the Açoka, and the Tilaka. And overpowered with intoxication, assuming a bashful look, she went on tempting the great saint's son. And when she saw that the heart of Rishyasringa had been touched, she repeatedly pressed his body with her own and, casting glances, slowly went away, under the pretext that she was going to make offerings on the fire. On her departure, Rishyasringa became overpowered with love, and lost his sense. And his mind turned constanly to her; and felt itself vacant. And he began to sigh, and seemed to be in great distress. At that moment appeared Vibhāndaka, Kāsyapa's son,—he whose eyes were tawny like those of a lion, whose body was covered with hair down to the

tip of the nails, who was devoted to studies proper for his caste, and whose life was pure and passed in religious meditation. He came up and saw that his son was seated alone, pensive and sad, his mind upset, and sighing again and again, with upturned eyes. And Vibhāndaka spake to his distressed son, saying,—My boy! why is it that thou art not hewing the logs for fuel. I hope thou hast performed the ceremony of burnt offering today. I hope thou hast polished the sacrificial ladles and spoons, and brought the calf to the milch cow whose milk furnisheth materials for making offerings on the fire. Verily thou art not in thy wonted state, O son! Thou seemst to be pensive, and to have lost thy sense. Why art thou so very sad today? Let me ask thee, who hath been to this placetoday—?"'

Thus ends the hundred and eleventh Section in the Tirtha yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"'Rishyasringa said,—Here came today a religious student, with a mass of hair on his head. And he was neither short nor tall. And he was of a spirited look, and a golden complexion, and endued with eyes large as lotuses; and he was shining and graceful as a god. And rich was his beauty, blazing like the Sun; and he was exceedingly fair, with eyes graceful and black. And his twisted hair was blueblack and neat and long and of a fragrant scent and tied up with strings of gold. And a beautiful ornament was shining on his neck, which looked like lightning in the sky. And under the throat he had two balls of flesh, without a single hair upon them, and of an exceedingly beautiful form. And his waist was slender to a degree, and his navel, neat; and smooth also was the region about his ribs. Then again there shone a golden string from under his cloth, just like this waist-string of mine. And there was something on his feet, of a wonderful shape, which give forth a jingling sound. Upon his wrists likewise was tied a pair of ornaments that made a similar sound, and looked just like

this rosary here. And when he walked, his ornaments uttered a jingling sound like those uttered by delighted ganders upon a sheet of water. And he had on his person garments of a wonderful make: these clothes of mine are by no means beautiful like those. And his face was wonderful to behold; and his voice was calculated to gladden the heart; and his speech was pleasant like the song of the male blackbird. And while listening to the same I felt touched to my inmost soul. And as a forest in the midst of the varnal season, assumes a grace only when it is swept over by the breeze, so, O father! he of an excellent and pure smell, looks beautiful when fanned by the air. And his massy hair is neatly tied up, and remains adhering to the head and forehead, evenly sundered in two. And his two eyes seemed to be covered with wonderful Chakravāka birds of an exceedingly beautiful form. And he carried upon his right palm a wonderful globular fruit, which reaches the ground and again and again leaps up to the sky in a strange way. And he beats it and turns himself round and whirls like a tree moved by the breeze. And when I looked at him, O father! he seemed to be a son of the celestials, and my joy was extreme, and my pleasure unbounded. And he clasped my body, and took hold of my matted hair, and bent down my mouth, and, mingling his mouth with my own, uttered a sound that was exceedingly pleasant. And he doth not care for water for washing his feet, nor for these fruits offered by me; and he told me that such was the religious observance practised by him. And he gave unto me a number of fruits. And those fruits were tasted by me: these here are not equal to them in taste. They have not got any rind nor any stone within them, like these. And he of a noble form gave me to drink water of an exceedingly fine flavour; and having drunk it, I experienced great pleasure; and the ground seemed to be moving under my feet. And these are the garlands beautiful and fragrant and twined with silken threads, that belong to him. And he, bright with fervent peity, having scattered these garlands here, went back to his own hermitage. His departure hath saddened my heart; and my frame seems to be in a

burning sensation! And my desire is to go to him as soon as I can, and to have him every day walk about here. O father, let me this very moment go to him. Pray, what is that religious observance which is being practised by him? As he of a noble piety is practising penances, so I am desirous to live the same life with him. My heart is yarning after similar observances. My soul will be in torment if I see him not.—"'

Thus ends the hundred and twelfth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"'Vibhāndaka said.—Those are, O son! Rākshas. They walk about in that wonderfully beautiful form. Their strength is unrivalled and their beauty great. And they always meditate obstruction to the practice of penances. And, O my boy, they assume lovely forms, and try to allure by diverse means. And those fierce beings hurled the saints, the dwellers of the woods, from blessed regions (won by their pious deeds). And the saint who hath control over his soul, and who is desirous of obtaining the regions where go the righteous, ought to have nothing to do with them. And their acts are vile and their delight is in causing obstruction to those who practise penances; (therefore) a pious man should never look at them. And, O son! those were drinks unworthy to be drunk, being as they were spirituous liquors consumed by unrighteous men. And these garlands also, bright and fragrant and of various hues are not intended for saints.—Having thus forbidden his son by saying that those were wicked demons, Vibhāndaka went in quest of her. And when by three days search he was unable to trace where she was, he then came back to his own hermitage. In the meanwhile, when the son of Kāsayapa had gone out to gather fruits, then that very courtezan had come again to tempt Rishyasringa in the manner described above. And soon as Rishyasringa had her in sight, he was glad, and hurriedly rushing towards him,

said,—Let us go to thy hermitage before the return of my father.—Then, O king! those same courtezans by contrivance made the only son of Kāçyapa enter their bark, and unmoored the vessel. And by various means they went on delighting him, and at length came to the side of Anga's king. And having taken that floating vessel of an exceedingly white tent, from the water, and having placed it within sight of the hermitage, he similarly prepared a beautiful forest, known by the name of the *Floating hermitage.* The king, however, kept that only son of Vibhāndaka within that part of the palace destined for the females, when of a sudden he beheld that rain was poured by the heavens and that the world began to be flooded with water. And Lomapāda, the desire of his heart fulfilled, bestowed his daughter Sāntā on Rishyasringa in marriage. And with a view to appease the wrath of his father, he ordered kine to be placed. and fields to be ploughed, by the road that Vibhāndaka was to take, in order to come to his son. And the king also placed plentiful cattle and stout cowherds, and gave the latter the following order:—

"'When the great saint Vibhāndaka should enquire of you about his son, ye must join your palms and say to him that these cattle, and these ploughed fields belong to his son, and that ye are his slaves, and that ye are ready to obey him in all that he might bid.—Now the saint, whose wrath was fierce, came to his hermitage, having gathered fruits and roots, and searched for his son. But not finding him, he became exceedingly wroth. And he was tortured with anger, and suspected it to be the doing of the king. And therefore he directed his course towards the city of Champā, having made up his mind to burn the king, his city, and his whole territory. And on the way he was fatigued and hungry, when he reached those same settlements of cowherds, rich with cattle. And he was honored in a suitable way by those cowherds, and there spent the night in a manner befitting a king. And having received very great hospitality from them, he asked them, saying,—To whom, O cowherds, do ye belong?—Then they all came up to him

and said,—All this wealth hath been provided for thy son.—At different places he was thus honored, and listened to similar pleasing words; whereat his anger was greatly appeased. And he entered the city and had a meeting with the king of Anga. And he was honored by that best of men, and saw his son, who looked like the god Indra in heaven. And he also beheld there his daughter-in-law, Sāntā, locking like lightning issuing from a (cloud). And having seen the hamlets and the cowpens provided for his son, and having also beheld Sāntā, his great resentment was appeased. And, O king of men ! Vibhāndaka, expressed great satisfaction with that very ruler of the earth. And the great saint, whose power rivalled that of the sun and the god of fire, placed there his son, and thus spake,—Soon as a son is born to thee, and having performed all that is agreeable to the king, to the forest must thou come without fail.—And Rishyasringa did exactly as his father had said, and went back to the place where his father was. And, O king of men! Sāntā obediently waited upon him, as in the firmament the star Rāhini waits upon the moon, or as the fortunate Arundhati waits upon Vaçistha, or as Lopāmudrā waits upon Agastya. And as Damayanti was an obedient wife to Nala, or as Sachi is to the god who holdeth the thunderbolt in his hand, or as Indrasenā, Nārāyana's daughter, was always obedient to Mudgala, so did Sāntā wait affectionately upon Rishyasringa, when he lived in the wood. This is the holy hermitage which belonged to him. Beautifying the great lake here, it bears a holy fame. Here perform thy ablutions, and have thy desire fulfilled. And having purified, thyself, direct thy course towards other holy spots.'"

Thus ends the hundred and thirteenth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CXIV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then, O Janamejaya, the son of Pāndu started from the river Kauçiki, and repared in succession to all the sacred shrines. And, O protector of men! he came to the sea where the river Gangā falls into it; and there in the centre of five hundred rivers, he performed the holy ceremony of a plunge. Then, O ruler of the earth! accompanied by his brothers, the valiant prince proceeded by the shore of the sea towards the land where the Kalinga tribes dwell.'

"Lomaça said.—'This is the land, O Kunti's son! where the Kalinga tribes dwell. Through it passeth the river Vaitarani, on the banks whereof even the god of virtue performed religious rites, having first placed himself under the protection of the celestials. Verily this is the northern bank, inhabited by saints, suitable for the performance of riligious rites, beautified by a hill, and frequented by persons of the regenerate caste. This spot (in holiness) rivals the path whereby a virtuous man, fit for going to heaven, repairs to the region inhabited by gods. And verily at this spot in former times, other saints likewise worshipped the immortals by the performance of religious rites. And at this very spot it was that the god Rudra, O king of kings! seized the sacrificial beast and exclaimed,—This is my share!—O chief of the descendants of Bharata! then when the beast was carried away by Siva, the gods spake to him,saying,—Cast not a covetuous glance at the property of others, disregarding all the righteous rules.—Then they addressed words of glorification of a pleasing kind to the god Rudra. And they satisfied him by offering a sacrifice, and paid him suitable honors. Thereupon he gave up the beast, and went by the path trodden by the gods. Thereupon what happened to Rudra, learn from me, O Yudhishthira! Influenced by the dread of Rudra, the gods set apart for evermore, the best allotment out of all shares, such as was fresh and not stale (to be appropriated by that god),

Whosoever performs his ablutions at this spot, while reciting this ancient story, beholds with his mortal eyes the path that leads to the region of the gods."

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then all the sons of Pāndu and likewise the daughter of Drupada—all of whom were the favored of Fate,—descended to the river Vaitarani, and made libations to the manes of their fathers.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O Lomaça! how great must be the force of a pious deed! Having taken my bath at this spot in a proper form, I seem to touch no more the region inhabited by mortal men! O saint of a virtuous life, I am beholding all the regions. And this is the noise of the magnanimous dwellers of the wood, who are reciting their audible prayers.'

"Lomaça said,—'O Yudhishthira! the place whence this noise comes and reaches thy ears is at the distance of three hundred thousand Yojanas, to be sure. O Lord of men! rest thou quiet and utter no word. O king! this is the divine forest of the Self-existent one, which hath now come to our view. There, O king! Viçvakarmā of a dreaded name performed religious rites. On the mighty occasion of that sacrifice, the Self-existent one made a gift of this entire earth with all its hilly and forest tracts, to Kaçyapa, by way of gratuity, for ministering as a priest. And then, O Kunti's son! soon as that goddess—Earth, was given away, she became sad at heart, and wrathfully spake the following words to that great lord, the ruler of the worlds,—O mighty god! it is unworthy of thee to give me away to an ordinary mortal. And this act of gift on thy part will come to nothing; (for) here am I going to descend into the bottom of the nether world.—Then when the blessed saint Kaçyapa beheld the goddess, Earth, despondent and sad, he, O protector of men! performed a propitiatory act calculated to appease her wrath. And then, O Pandu's son! the Earth was pleased with his pious deed. And she uprose again from within the waters, and showed herself in the form of a sacred altar. This, O king! is the spot which distinctly manifests the form of an altar. O great monarch! ascend over it, and thou wilt gain valour and strength,

And, O king! this is the very altar which reaches as far as the sea, and rests itself upon its bosom. May good luck be thine! do thou mount hereupon, and of thyself cross the sea. And while thou this day mountst upon it, I shall administer the ceremony for averting all evil from thee; for this altar here, soon as it gets a mortal's touch, at once enters within the sea. *Salutation to the god who protects the universe! Salutation to thee that art beyond the universe! O Lord of gods! vouchsafe thy presence in this sea.* O Pāndu's son! thus must thou recite the following words of truth, and while so reciting, thou must quickly ascend this altar,—*The god of fire, and the sun, and the organ of generation, and water, and goddesses, and the seed of Vishnu, and the navel of nectar. The god of fire is the organ that generated thee (ocean); the earth is thy body; Vishnu deposited the seed that caused thy being; and thou art the navel of nectar.* Thus, O Pandu's son! the words of truth must be audibly recited, and while so reciting, one must plunge into the lord of rivers. O most praiseworthy of Kunti's sons! otherwise this lord of waters, of divine birth, this vast storehouse of the waters (of the earth), should not be touched, O son of Kunti! even with the end of a sacred grass."'

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then when the ceremony for averting evil had been completed in his behalf, the magnanimous Yudhishthira went into the sea, and having performed all the saint had bid, repaired to the skirts of the Mahendra hill, and spent the night at that spot."

Thus ends the hundred and fourteenth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"The protector of the earth spent there a single night, and with his brothers, paid the highest honors to the religious men. And Lomaça made him acquainted with the names of all of them, such as the Bhrigus, the Angiras, the Vaçishthas, and the Kaçyapas,

And the royal saint paid a visit to them all, and made obeisance to them with joined palms. And then he asked the valiant Akritavrana, who was a follower of Parasurāma.—'When will the revered Parasurāma show himself to the religious men here? It is my desire on that occasion to obtain a sight of that descendant of Bhrigu.'

"Akritavrana said,—'Thy journey to this spot is already known to Rāma, whose soul spontaneously knows everything. And Rāma is in every way well pleased with thee, and he will show himself readily to thee. And the saints who practise penances here are permitted to see him on the fourteenth and the eighth day of the lunar course. On the morrow at the end of this very night there will set in the fourteenth day of the lunar course. On that occasion thou wilt have a sight of him, clad in a sable deer skin, and wearing his hair in the form of a matted mass.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast been a follower of the mighty Rāma, Jamadagni's son; thou must, therefore, have been the eye-witness of all the deeds achieved by him in former days. I, therefore, request thee to narrate to me how the members of the military caste were vanquished by Rāma on the field of battle, and what the original cause of those conflicts was?'

"Akritavrana spake,—'With pleasure shall I recite to thee that excellent story, O Bharata's son, O chief of kings,—the story of the god-like deeds of Rāma, the son of Jamadagni, who traced his origin to Bhrigu's race. I shall also relate the achievements of the great ruler of the Haihaya tribe. That king, Arjuna by name, the mighty lord of the Haihaya tribe, was killed by Rāma. He, O Pandu's son, was endowed with a thousand arms; and by the favour of Dattātreya, he likewise had a celestial car made of gold. And, O protector of the earth! his rule extended over the entire animated world, wheresoever located on this earth. And the car of that mighty monarch could proceed everywhere in an unobstructed course. And grown resistless by virtue of a granted boon, he, ever mounted on that car, trampled upon gods and Yakshas and saints on all sides round. And all the born

beings, wheresoever placed, were harassed by him. Then the celestials and the saints of a rigidly virtuous life, met together, and thus spake to Vishnu the god of gods, the slayer of demons, and possessed of prowess that never failed, saying,—O blessed and revered lord! for the purpose of preserving all the born beings, it is necessary that Arjuna should be killed by thee.—And the mighty ruler of the Haihaya tribes placing himself on his celestial car, affronted Indra, while that deity was enjoying himself with Sachi, his queen. Then, O Bharata's son, the blessed and the revered god (Vishnu) held a consultation with Indra, with a view to destroy Kritavirya's son. And on that occasion, all that was for the good of the world of beings, was communicated by the lord of gods; and the blessed god worshipped by the world, to do all that was necessary, went to the delightful Vadari wood, which was his own chosen retreat for practising penances. At this very time there lived on the earth a mighty monarch in the land of Kànyakuvja,—a sovereign whose military force was exceeding great. And his name of Gādhi was famous in the world. He, however, betook himself to a forest life. And while dwelling in the midst of the wood, there was born to him a daughter beautiful as a nymph of heaven. And Richika the son of Bhrigu asked for her to be united with himself in marriage. And then Gādhi spake to that Brāhmana, who led a rigidly austere life, saying,—There is a certain family custom in our race: it hath been founded by my ancestors of a bygone age. And, O most excellent of the sacerdotal caste! be it known to thee that the intending bridegroom must offer a dowry consisting of a thousand fleet steeds, whose color must be brown, and every one of whom must possess a single sable ear. But, O Bhrigu's son! a reverend saint like thee cannot be asked to offer the same. Nor can my daughter be refused to a magnanimous saint of thy (exalted) rank.—Thereupon Richika said,—I will give thee a thousand fleet steeds, brown in hue, and possessing a single sable ear: let thy daughter be given in marriage to me.—'

"Akritavrana spake,—'Thus having given his word, O king! he went and said to Varuna,—Give me a thousand

fleet steeds brown in color, and each with one black ear. I want the same as dowry for my marriage.—To him Varuna forthwith gave a thousand steeds. Those steeds had issued out of the river Gangā; hence the spot hath been named, *The horse's landing-place.* And in the city of Kānyakuvja, the daughter of Gādhi, Satyavati by name was given in marriage; and the gods themselves were of the party of the bride. Richika, the most excellent of the sacerdotal caste, thus procured a thousand steeds, and had a sight of the dwellers of heaven, and won a wife in the proper form. And he enjoyed himself with that girl of a slender waist, and thus gratified all the wishes and desires that he ever had. And when the marriage had been celebrated, O king! his father Bhrigu came on a visit, to see him and his wife; and he was glad to see his praiseworthy son. And the husband and wife together paid their best respects to him, who was worshipped by all the gods. And when he had seated himself, they both with joined palms, stood near him, in order that they might do his bidding. And then the revered saint, Bhrigu, glad at heart, thus spake to his daughter-in-law, saying,—O lovely daughter! ask for a boon; I am ready to grant thee any object of thy wish.—And thereupon she asked for his favour in this, that a son might be born both of herself and her mother. And he vouchsafed the favour thus asked for.

"'Bhrigu spake.—During the days that your season lasts, thou and thy mother must take a bath, with the ceremony for bringing forth a male child. And ye two must then separatly embrace two different trees,—she a Peepal tree, and thou a fig tree. And, O dutiful girl! here are two pots of rice and milk, prepared by me with the utmost care, I having ransacked the whole universe to find the drugs, the essence whereof hath been blended with this milk and rice. It must be taken as food with the greatest care.—And, saying this, he vanished from sight.—The two ladies, however, made an interchange, both in the matter of the pots of rice, and likewise as regard the trees (to be embraced by each). Then after the lapse of very many days, the revered saint, once more came.—And he came, knowing (what had happened),

by his attribute of divine knowledge. Then Bhrigu, possessed of mighty strength, spake to Satyavati, his daughter-in-law, saying,—O dutiful girl! O my daughter of a lovely brow! the wrong pot of rice thou tookst as food,—and it was the wrong tree which was embraced by thee. It was thy mother who deluded thee. A son will be born of thee, who, though of the priestly caste, will be of a character fit for the military order; while a mighty son will be born of thy mother, who, though by birth a Kshatriya, will assume a life suitable to the sacerdotal order. And his power will be great, and he will walk on the path trodden by righteous men.—Then she entreated her father-in-law again and again, saying,—Let not my son be of this character: but let my grandson be such.—And, O Pāndu's son! he replied, 'So let it be! and thus he was pleased to grant her prayer. Then she brought forth on the expected day, a son by name Jamadagni. And this son of Bhrigu was endowed with both splendour and grace. And he grew in years and in strength, and excelled the other saints in the proficiency of his Vaidik lore. O chieftain of Bharata's race, to him, rivalling in lustre the author of light (the sun), came spontaneously and without instruction the knowledge of the entire military art, and of the fourfold missile arms.—" '

Thus ends the hundred and fifteenth Section in the tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXVI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"'Akritavrana spake.—Jamadagni devoted himself to the study of the Veda and the practice of sacred penances, and became famous for his great austerities. Then he pursued a methodical course of study and obtained a mastery over the entire Veda. And, O king! he paid a visit to Presenajit, and solicited the hand of Renukā in marriage. And this prayer was granted by the king. And the delight of Bhrigu's son, having thus obtained Renukā for his wife, took his resi-

dence with her in a hermitage, and began to practise penances, being assisted by her. And four boys were born of her, with Rāma for the fifth. And although the youngest, Rāma was superior to all in merit. Now once upon a time, when her sons had gone out for the purpose of gathering fruits, Renukā, who led a pure and austere life, went out to bathe. And, O king! while returning home, she happened to cast her glance towards the king of Marttikāvata, known by the name of Chittraratha. The king was in the water with his wives, and, wearing on his breast a lotus wreath, was engaged in sport. And beholding his magnificent form, Renukā was inspired with desire. And this unlawful desire she could not control; but became polluted within the water, and came back to the hermitage frightened at heart. Her husband readily perceived what state she was in. And mighty and powerful and of a wrathful turn of mind, when he beheld that she had been giddy, and that the lustre of chastity had abandoned her, he reproached her by crying out 'Fie!' At that very moment came in the eldest of Jamadagni's sons, Rumanvān; and then Shushena, and then, Vasu, and likewise, Viçwāvasu. And the, mighty saint directed them all one by one to put an end to the life of their mother. They, however, were quite confounded, and lost heart. And they could not utter a single word. Then he in ire cursed them. And on being cursed, they lost their sense, and suddenly became like inanimate objects, and comparable in conduct to beasts and birds. And then Rāma, the slayer of hostile heroes, came to the hermitage, last of all. Him the mighty-armed Jamadagni, of great austerities, addressed, saying, —Kill this wicked mother of thine, without compunction, O my son.—Thereupon Rāma immediately took up an axe and therewith severed his mother's head. Then, O great king! the wrath of Jamadagni, of mighty soul, was at once appeased; and well pleased, he spake the following words,—Thou hast, my boy! performed at my bidding this difficult task, versed in virtue as thou art. Therefore, whatsoever wishes there may be in thy heart, I am ready to grant them all. Do thou ask me!—Thereupon Rāma solicited that his mother might be restored to life, and that he might not be haunted

by the remembrance of this cruel deed, and that he might not be affected by any sin, and that his brothers might recover their former state, and that he might be unrivalled on the field of battle, and that he might obtain long life. And, O Bharata's son! Jamadagni, whose penances were the most rigid, granted all those desires of his son. Once, however, O lord! when his sons had gone out as before, the valorous son of Kritavirya, the lord of the country near the shore of the sea, came up to the hermitage. And him arrived at that hermitage, the wife of the saint received hospitably. He, however, intoxicated with a warrior's pride, was not at all pleased with the reception accorded to him, and by force and in defiance of all resistance, seized and carried off from that hermitage the calf of the cow whose milk supplied the sacred butter, not heeding the loud lowing of the cow. And he wantonly pulled down the large trees of the wood. When Rāma came home, his father himself told him all that had happened. Then when Rāma saw how the cow was lowing for its calf, resentment arose in his heart. And he rushed towards Kritavirya's son, whose last moments had drawn nigh. Then the descendant of Bhrigu, the exterminater of hostile heroes! put forth his valour on the field of battle, and with sharpened arrows of a flattened tip, which were shot from a beautiful bow, cut down Arjuna's arms, which numbered a thousand, and were massive like (wooden) bolts for barring the door. He, already touched by the hand of death, was overpowered by Rāma, his foe. Then the kinsmen of Arjuna, their wrath excited against Rāma, rushed at Jamadagni in his hermitage, while Rāma was away. And they slew him there; for although his strength was great, yet, being at the time engaged in penances, he would not fight. And while thus attacked by his foes, he repeatedly shouted the name of Rāma in a helpless and piteous way. And, O Yudhishthira! the sons of Kārtyavirya shot Jamadagni with their arrows, and having thus chastised their foe, went their way. And when they had gone away, and when Jamadagni had breathed his last, Rāma, the delight of Bhrigu's race, returned to the hermitage, bearing in his arms, fuel for religious rites,

And the hero beheld his father who had been put to death. And grieved exceedingly, he began to bewail the unworthy fate that had laid his father low.—' "

Thus ends the one hundred and sixteenth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXVII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

" 'Rāma spake,—The blame is mine, O father! that like a stag in the wood, thou hast been shot dead with arrows, by those mean and stupid wretches—the sons of Kārtavirya. And, O father! virtuous and unswerving from the path of righteousness and inoffensive to all animated beings as thou wert, how came it to be permitted by Fate that thou shouldst die in this way? What an awful sin must have been committed by them, who have killed thee with hundreds of sharpened shafts, although thou wert an aged man, and engaged in penances at the time, and absolutely averse to fight with them! With what face will those shameless persons speak of this deed of theirs to their friends and servants, viz.,—that they have slain an unassisted and unresisting virtuous man?—O protector of men! thus he, great in penances, bewailed much in a piteous manner, and then performed the obsequies of his departed sire. And Rāma, the conqueror of hostile cities, cremated his father on the funeral pile, and vowed, O scion of Bharata's race! the slaughter of the entire military caste. And of exceeding strength in the field of battle, and possessed of valour suited to a heroic soul, and comparable to the god of death himself, he took up his weapon in wrathful mood, and single-handed put Kārtavirya's sons to death. And, O chieftain of the military caste! Rāma, the leader of all capable of hitting their foes, thrice smote down all the Kshatriya followers of Kārtyavirya's sons. And seven times did that powerful lord exterminate the military tribes of the earth. In the tract of land called Samanta-panchaka five lakes of blood were made by him. There the mightiest scion of Bhrigu's race offered libations to his

forefathers—the Bhrigus. And Richika appeared to him in a visible form, and spake to him words of counsel. Then the son of Jamadagni, of a dreaded name, performed a mighty sacrifice, and gratified the lord of the celestials, and bestowed the earth to the ministering priests. And, O protector of human beings, he raised an altar made of gold, ten Vyāmas* in breadth and nine in height, and made a gift of the same to the magnanimous Kaçyapa. Then at Kaçyapa's bidding, the Brāhmanas divided the altar into a number of shares, and thus they became reputed as the Khāndavāyanas (share-takers). And the exterminater of the military race possessed of immense strength, bestowed the earth upon the high-souled Kaçyapa, and then became engaged in penances of an exceedingly severe form. He now dwells in this Mahendra—monarch of hills. Thus did hostilities arise between him and the members of the military caste,—all of them who dwelt on this earth; and Rāma endowed with immense strength in this way subdued the entire world.' "

Vaiçampāyana spake.—"Then on the fourteenth day of the moon, the mighty-souled Rāma at the proper hour showed himself to those members of the priestly caste and also to the virtuous king (Yudhishthira) and his younger brothers. And, O king of kings! that lord together with his brothers, worshipped Rāma, and, O most righteous of the rulers of men! the very highest honors were paid by him to all those members of the twice-born class. And after worshipping Jamadagni's son, and having received words of praise from him, at his direction he spent the night on the Mahendra hill, and then started on his journey towards the southern regions. "

Thus ends the hundred and seventeenth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

---

* A Vyāma is equal to about two yards.

SECTION CXVIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana spake.—"The magnanimous monarch pursued his journey, and at different spots on the shore of the sea visited the various bathing places, all sacred and pleasant and frequented by men of the sacerdotal caste. And, O son of Parikshit! he in proper form took his bath in them, together with his younger brothers, and then went to an excellent river, the holiest of all. There also the magnanimous king took his plunge, and offered libations to his forefathers and the gods, and distributed riches to the leaders of the twice-born class. Then he went to the Godāvari, a river that falls directly into the sea. There he was freed from his sins. And he reached the sea in the Dravira land, and visited the holy spot passing under Agastya's name, which was exceedingly sacred and exceptionally pure. And the valiant king visited the feminine sacred spots. Here he listened to the story of that well-known feat which was achieved by Arjuna, chief of all wielders of the bow, and which was beyond the power of human beings to perform. And here he was praised by the highest members of the saintly class, and the son of Pāndu experienced the greatest delight. And, O protector of the earth! the ruler of the world, accompanied by Krishnā bathed in those holy spots, and speaking of Arjuna's valour in laudatory terms, delightfully spent his time in the place. Then he gave away thousands of cows at those holy spots on the shore of the sea; and with his brothers narrated well pleased how Arjuna had made a gift of kine. And he, O king! visited one by one those holy places on the shore of the sea and many other sacred spots, and thus fulfilled his heart's desire, till he came to the holiest of all, known by the name of Surpāraka. Then having crossed a certain tract on the shore of the sea, he reached a forest celebrated on earth. There the deities had practised asceticism in former days, and likewise virtuous rulers of men had performed sacrificial rites. There he, possessed of long

and lusty arms, beheld the celebrated altar of Richika's son, who was the foremost of all wielders of the bow. And the altar was girt round by hosts of ascetics, and was fit to be worshipped by persons of a virtuous life. Then the king beheld the holy and delightful shrines of all the gods, and of the Vasus, and of the hosts of winds, and of the two celestial physicians, and of Yama, son of the Sun, and of the lord of riches, and of Indra, and of Vishnu, and of the lord Creator, and of Siva, and of the Moon, and of the author of day, and of the lord of waters, and of the host of Sādhyas, and of Brahmā, and of the forefathers, and of Rudra together with all his followers, and of the goddess of learning, and of the host of Siddhas, and of many other immortal holy gods besides. And in those shrines the king observed various fasts, and gave away large quantities of gems. He plunged his body in all the holy spots, and then came again to Surpāraka. And he by that same landing-place of the sea again proceeded with his uterine brothers, and came over to the holy spot Prabhāsha, whose fame hath been spread by mighty Brāhmanas throughout the world. There he, possessed of a pair of large red eyes, washed himself with all his younger brothers, and offered libations to the forefathers and the celestial hosts; and so did Krishnā and all those Brāhmanas together with Lomaça. For twelve days he subsisted upon air and water. And he performed ablutions for days and nights, and surrounded himself with fires kindled on all sides. Thus that greatest of all virtuous men engaged himself in asceticism. While he was acting thus, information reached both Valarāma and Krishna that the king was practising penances of a most austere form ; and these two leaders of the entire Vrishni tribe accompanied with troops, came to Yudhishthira of Ajamirha's race. And when the Vrishnis beheld that the sons of Pāndu lay down on the ground, their bodies besmeared all over with dirt, and when they beheld the daughter of Drupada in a sad state, their grief was great, and they could not refrain from breaking into loud lamentations. Then the king, whose courage was such that misfortune never could cast him down, cordially met Rāma and Krishna

and Shāmva, Krishna's son, and the grand-son of Sini, and other Vrishnis, and paid honors to them in a suitable form. And they also in return paid honors to all the sons of Prithā, and were similarly honored by Pāndu's sons. And they seated themselves round about Yudhisthira, as round Indra, O king! are seated the celestial hosts. And highly pleased, he recounted to them all the machinations of his adverseries, and how also he had resided in the forest, and how Arjuna had gone to Indra's abode inorder to learn the science of arms.—all this he related with a gladdened heart. And they were happy to learn all this news from him; but when they saw the Pāndavas so exceedingly lean, the majestic and magnanimous Vrishnis could not forbear shedding tears, which spontaneously gushed from their eyes on account of the agony they felt."

Thus ends the hundred and eighteenth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXIX.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said.—"O thou of ascetic wealth! when the sons of Pāndu and the Vrishnis reached the holy spot Prabhāsha, what did they do, and what conversation was held there by them, for all of them were of mighty souls, proficient in all the branches of science, and both the Vrishnis and the sons of Pāndu held one another in friendly estimation?"

Vaiçampāyana said. "When the Vrishnis reached the holy spot Prabhāsa, the sacred landing-place on the coast of the sea, they surrounded the sons of Pāndu and waited upon them. Then Valarāma, resembling in hue the milk of the cow and the Kunda flower and the moon and silver and the lotus root, and who wore a wreath made of wild flowers, and who had the plough-share for his arm, spake to the lotus-eyed one, saying,—O Krishna, I do not see that the practice of virtue leads to any good, or that unrighteous practices can cause evil, since the magnanimous Yudhishthira is in this miserable state, with matted hair, a resident of the wood, and for his garment wearing the bark of trees. And Duryodhana is now

ruling the earth, and the ground doth not yet swallow him up. From this, a person of limited sense would believe a vicious course of life is preferable to a virtuous one. When Duryodhana is in a flourishing state, and Yudhishthira robbed of his throne, is suffering thus, what should people do in such a matter,—this is the doubt that is now perplexing all men. Here is this lord of men sprung from the god of virtue, holding fast to a righteous path, strictly truthful and of a liberal heart,—this son of Prithā would give up his kingdom and his pleasure but would not swerve from the righteous path, in order to thrive. How is it that Bhishma and Kripa and the Brāhmana Drona and the aged king, the senior member of the house, are living happily, after having banished the sons of Prithā? Fie upon the vicious-minded leaders of Bharata's race! What will that sinner, the chieftain of the earth, say to the departed forefathers of his race, when the wretch will meet them in the world to come? Having hurled from the throne his inoffensive sons, will he be able to declare that he had treated them in a blameless way? He doth not now see with his mind's eye how he hath become so sightless, and on account of what act he hath grown blind among the kings of this entire earth. Is it not because he hath banished Kunti's son from his kingdom *? I have no doubt that Vichitravirya's son, when he with his sons perpetrated this inhuman act, beheld on the spot where dead bodies are burnt, flowering trees of a golden hue. Verily he must have asked them, when those stood before him with their shoulders projected forward towards him, and with their large red eyes staring at him, and he must have listened to their evil advice, since he fearlessly sent away Yudhishthira to the forest, who had all his weapons of war with him, and was borne company by his younger brothers. This Bhima here, whose voracious appetite is like that of a wolf's, is able to destroy with the sole strength of his powerful arms, and without the help of any weapons of war, a majestic array of hostile troops. The forces in the field of battle were utterly unmanned

* Text obscure.

on hearing his war-cry. And now the strong one is suffering from hunger and thirst, and is emaciated with toilsome journeys. But when he will take up in his hand arrows and diverse other weapons of war, and meet his foes in the field of battle, he will then remember the sufferings of this exceedingly miserable forest-life, and kill his enemies to a man: of a certainty do I anticipate this. There is not throughout whole world a single soul who can boast of strength and prowess equal to his. And his body, alas! is emaciated with cold, and heat and winds. But when he will stand up for fight, he will not leave a single man out of his foes. This powerful hero, who is a very great warrior when mounted on a car—this Bhima, of appetite rivalling a wolf's, conquered single-handed all the rulers of men in the east, together with those who followed them in battle; and he returned from those wars safe and uninjured. And that same Bhima, miserably dressed in the bark of trees, is now leading a wretched life in the woods. This powerful Sahadeva vanquished all the kings in the south, those lords of men who had gathered on the coast of the sea,—look at him now in an anchorite's dress. Valiant in battle Nakula vanquished single-handed the kings who ruled the regions towards the west,—and he now walks about the wood, subsisting on fruits and roots, with a matted mass of hair on the head, and his body besmeared all over with dirt. This daughter of a king, who is a great soldier when mounted on a car, took her rise from beneath the altar, during the pomp of sacrificial rites. She hath been always accustomed to a life of happiness: how is she now enduring this exceedingly miserable life in this wood! And the son of the god of virtue,—virtue which stands at the head of all the three pursuits of life—and the son of the wind-god and also the son of the lord of celestials, and those two sons of the celestial physicians;—being the sons of all those gods and always accustomed to a life of happiness, how are they living in this wood, deprived of all comforts! When the son of virtue met with defeat, and when his wife, his brothers, his followers, and himself were all driven forth, and Duryodhana began to flourish, why did not the earth subside with all its hills?'—'"

Thus ends the hundred and nineteenth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXX.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Sātyaki spake, 'O Rāma! this is not the time of lamentation; let us do that which is proper and suited to the present occasion, although Yudhishthira doth not speak a single word. Those who have persons to look after their welfare, do not undertake anything of themselves; they have others to do their work; as Saivya and others did for Yayāti. Likewise, O Rāma! those who have appointed funtionaries to undertake their work on their own responsibility, are the leaders of men; they may be said to have real patrons, and they meet with no difficulty, like helpless beings. How is it that when the sons of Prithā have for their patrons these two men, Rāma and Krishna and the two others, Pradyumna and Sāmva, together with myself,—these patrons being able to protect all the three worlds,—how is it that the son of Prithā is living in the wood with his brothers? It is fit that this very day the army of the Dāsārhas should march out, variously armed and with checkered mails. Let Dhritarāshtra's sons be overwhelmed with the forces of the Vrishnis, and let them go with their friends to the abode of the god of death. Let him alone who wields the bow made of the horn (Krishnā), thou alone, if roused, wouldst be able to surround even the whole of this earth. I ask thee to kill Dhritarāshtra's son with all his men, as the great Indra, the lord of the gods killed Vritra. Arjuna, the son of Prithā, is my brother, and also my friend, and also my preceptor, and is like the second self of Krishna. It is for this that men desire for a worthy son, and that a preceptor seeks a pupil who would contradict him not. It is for this that the time is come for that excellent work, which is the best of all tasks and difficult to perform. I shall baffle all Duryodhana's volleys of arms by my own excellent weapons, I shall overpower all in the field of battle, I shall in my wrath

cut off his head with my excellent shafts, little inferior to snakes and poison and fire. And with the keen edge of my sword, I shall forcibly sever his head from the trunk, in the field of battle: then I shall kill all his followers, and Duryodhana, and all of Kuru's race. O son of Rohini! let the followers of Bhima look at me with joy at their heart, when I shall take up the weapons of war in the field of battle, and when I shall go on slaying all the best fighting men on the side of the Kurus, as at the end of time fire will burn vast heaps of straw. Kripa and Drona and Vikarna and Karna are not able to bear the keen arrows shot by Pradyumna. I know the power of Arjuna's son,—he conducts himself like the son of Krishna in the field of battle. Let Sāmva chastise by the force of his arms Dusçāsana; let him destroy by force Dusçāsana and his charioteer and his car. In the field of battle when the son of Jāmavati becomes irresistible in fight, there is nothing which can withstand his force. The army of the demon Samvara was speedily routed by him when only a boy. By him was killed in fight Açvachakra, whose thighs were round, and whose muscular arms were of exceeding length. Who is there that would be able to go forward to the car of Sāmva, who is great in fight, when mounted on a car? As a mortal coming under the clutches of death can never escape; so who is there that once coming under his clutches in the field of battle, is able to return again with his life? The son of Vāsudeva will burn down by the volleys of his fiery shafts all the hostile troops, and those two warriors, Bhishma and Drona,—who are great on a car, and Somadatta surrounded by all his sons. What is there in all the worlds including the gods, which Krishna cannot encounter on an equal footing, when he takes up the weapons of war, wields in his hands excellent arrows, arms himself with his disc, and thus becomes unrivalled in fight? Then let Aniruddha also take up in his hand his buckler and sword, and let him cover the surface of the earth with Dhritarāshtra's sons, their heads separated from their trunks, their bodies devoid of all consciousness, as in sacrificial rites the altar is overspread with sacred grass placed upon the same. And Gada, and Ulmuka, and Vāhuka, and Bhānu and Nitha, and

the young Nishatha valiant in battle, and Sārana, and Chārudeshna, irresistable in war,—let them perform feats befitting their race. Let the united army of the Sātvatas and Suras, together with the best soldiers of the Vrishnis, the Bhojas, and the Andhakas, kill those sons of Dhritarāshtra in the field of battle, and let them swell their expanded fame throughout the world. Then let Abhimanyu rule the world, so long as this most excellent of virtuous men, the magnanimous Yudhishthira, may be engaged in fulfilling his vow,—the vow that was accepted and declared by him, the most righteous of Kuru's race, on the occasion of the famous play at dice. Afterwards the virtuous king will protect the earth, all his foes defeated in battle by shafts which will be discharged by us. Then there will remain no sons of Dhritarāstra on earth,—nor the son of the charioteer (Karna). This is the most important work for us to do, and this will surely lead to fame.'

"Krishna spake.—'O scion of the race of Madhu! no doubt what thou sayest is true; we accept thy words, O thou of courage that is never weak! But this bull of the Kuru race (Yudhishthira) would never accept the sovereignty of the earth, unless it were won by the prowess of his own arms. Neither for the sake of pleasure, nor from fear, nor from covetousness, would Yudhishthira ever renounce the rules of his caste; nor would these two heroes, who are mighty, when mounted on a car—Bhima and Arjuna; nor the twin brothers; nor Krishnā, the daughter of Drupada. He possessing the appetite of a wolf (Bhima), and the winner of riches (Arjuna), are both unrivalled in fight throughout the world. And why should not this king rule over the entire world, when he hath the two sons of Mādri to espouse his cause? The high-souled ruler of Pānchāla together with the Kekaya king, and we also, should put forth our united strength,—and then would the enemies of Yudhishthira be annihilated.'

"Yudhishthira spake.—'It is not strange that thou shouldst speak thus, O scion of Madhu's race! But to me truth seems to be the first consideration, above that of my sovereign power itself. But it is Krishna alone who precisely knoweth

what I am; and it is I alone who precisely know what Krishna (really) is. O thou endued with valour! O scion of Madhu's race! soon as he will perceive that the time is come for feats of bravery, then, O most valiant of Sini's race, he also of beautiful hair (Krishna) will defeat Suyodhana. Let the brave men of the Dasārha race go back today. They are my patrons; and the foremost of human beings, they have visited me here. O ye of immesurable strength! never fall off from the path of virtue. I shall see you again, when ye will be happily gathered together.'

"Then after mutual greeting and obeisance to seniors, and having embraced the youthful, those valiant men of the Yadu race, and the sons of Pāndu separated. And the Yadus returned to their home; and the Pāndavas continued their journey to the sacred spots. Then having parted with Krishna, the virtuous king, accompanied by his brothers and servants, and also by Lomaça, went to the sacred river Payoshni. Its fine landing-place was constructed by the king of Vidarbha. And he began to dwell on the banks of the Payoshni, whose waters were mingled with the distilled Soma juice. There the high-souled Yudhishthira was greeted with excellent laudatory terms by numerous leaders of the twice-born class, who were delighted to see him there."

Thus ends the hundred and twentieth Section in the tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CXXI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça spake.—'O king! when king Nriga performed a sacrifice here, he gratified Indra, the demolisher of hostile cities, by offering the Soma juice. And Indra was refreshed and was very much pleased. Here the gods together with Indra, and the protectors of all born beings, celebrated sacrifices of various kinds on a large scale, and paid abundant gratuities to the ministering priests. Here king Amurtta-rayasa, the lord of the world, satisfied Indra, the holder of the thunderbolt, by the offer of the Soma juice, when

seven horse-sacrifices were performed by that king. The articles which in other sacrificial rites are uniformly made of the timber wood and of earth, were all made of gold in the seven sacrifices performed by him. And it is said that in all those rites, seven sets of stakes, rings for the sacrificial stakes, pots, ladles, utensils, spoons—were prepared by him. On each sacrificial stake, seven rings were fastened at the top. And, O Yudhishthira! the celestials together with Indra, themselves erected the sacrificial stakes of shining gold, which had been prepared for his sacred rites. In all those magnificent sacrifices instituted by Gaya the protector of the earth, Indra was delighted by drinking the Soma juice, and the ministering priests were gratified with the gratuities paid to them. And the priests obtained untold wealth counted out to them. And as the sand-grains of the earth, or as the stars in the sky, or as the raindrops when it raineth, cannot be counted by any one, so the wealth Gaya gave away was incapable of being counted by figures. So untold was the wealth, O great king! that was given to the ministering priests in all those seven sacrifices. Even the above-mentioned objects might be counted by figures, but the gratuities bestowed by him, whose largesses exceeded all that was known before, were not capable of being counted by figures. And images of the goddess of speech were made of gold by the sculptor of the gods;—and the king gratified the members of the sacerdotal caste, who had arrived from all the cardinal points, by making presents to them of those images of gold. O protector of men! when the high-souled Gaya performed his sacrificial rites, he erected sacrificial piles at so many different spots, that but little space was left on the surface of the earth. And, O scion of Bharata's race! he by that sacred act attained the regions of Indra. Whoever should bathe in the river Payoshni, would go to the regions attained by Gaya. Therefore, O lord of kings! O unswerving prince! thou and thy brothers should bathe in this river: then, O protector of the earth, thou wilt be freed from all thy sins.'"

Vaiçampāyana said,—"O most praiseworthy of men!

Yudhishthira with his brothers performed ablutions in the Payoshni river. Then, O sinless prince! the powerful monarch togther with his brothers, journeyed to the hill of sapphires and the great river, Narmadā. The blessed saint Lomaça there recounted to him all the delightful holy spots and all the sacred shrines of the celestials. Then he with his brothers visited those places, according to his desire and convenience. And at various places Brāhmanas by thousands received gifts from him.

"Lomaça spake.—'O son of Kunti! one who visits the Sapphire hill and plunges his body in the river Narmadā, attains the regions inhabited by the celestials and kings. O most praiseworthy of men! this period is the junction between the Tretā and the Kali age, O Kunti's son! This is the period when a person gets rid of all his sins. O respected sir! this is the spot where Saryāti performed sacrificial rites, wherein Indra appeared in a visible form and drank the Soma juice, with the two celestial physicians. And Bhrigu's son of severe austerities conceived anger towards the great Indra; and the mighty Chyavana paralysed Indra; and for his wife obtained the princess, Sukanyā.'

"Yudhishthira spake.—'How was the chastiser of the demon Pāka, the god possessed of the six attributes, paralysed by Chyavana? And for what reason did the mighty saint conceive wrath towards Indra? And how, O Brāhmana! did he raise the celestial physicians to the rank of the drinkers of Soma? All this, precisely as it happened, thy venerable self will be pleased to recount to me.'"

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-first Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça spake.—'A son was born to the great saint Bhrigu, Chyavana by name. And he, of an exceedingly resplendent form, began to practise austerities by the side of yonder lake. And, O Pāndu's son! O protector of men! he, of mighty

energy, assumed the posture called *Vira*, quiet and still like an inanimate post, and for a long period, remained at the same spot of ground. And he was turned into an ant-hill, covered over with creepers. And after the lapse of a long period, crowds of ants enveloped him. And covered all over with ants, the sagacious saint looked exactly like a heap of earth. And he went on practising austerities, enveloped on all sides with that ant-hill. Now after the lapse of a long space of time, that ruler of the earth, Saryāti by name, for amusement visited this pleasant and excellent lake. With him were four thousand females, all espoused by him, and, O son of Bharata's race! also his only daughter endowed with beautiful brows, named Sukanyā. She, surrounded by her maids, and decked out with jewels fit for the celestials, while walking about, approached the ant-hill where Bhrigu's son was seated. And surrounded by her maids, she began to amuse herself there, viewing the beautiful scenery, and looking at the lofty trees of the wood. And she was handsome and in the prime of youth; and she was amorous and bent on frolick. And she began to break the twigs of the forest trees bearing blossoms. And Bhrigu's son endued with intelligence beheld her wandering like lightning, without her maids, and wearing a single piece of cloth, and decked with ornaments. And seeing her in the lone forest, that ascetic of exceeding effulgence was inspired with desire. And that regenerate *rishi* possessing ascetic energy, who had a low voice, called the auspicious one,—but she heard him not. Then seeing the eyes of Bhrigu's son from the ant-hill, Sukanyā, from curiosity and losing her sense, said—*What is this?*—and with thorns pierced the eyes (of the *rishi*). And on his eyes being pierced by her, he felt exceeding pain and became wroth. And (from anger) he obstructed the calls of nature of Saryāti's forces. And on their calls of nature being obstructed, the men were greatly afflicted. And seeing this state of things, the king asked,—Who is it that hath done wrong to the illustrious son of Bhrigu, old, and ever engaged in austerities, and of wrathful temper? Tell me quick if ye know it.—The soldiers (thereupon) answered him, saying,—We do not know whether any one hath

done wrong to the *rishi*. Do thou, as thou list, make a searching enquiry into the matter.—Thereupon that ruler of earth, using (as he saw occasion) both menace and conciliation, asked his friends (about the circumstance.) But they too did not know anything. Seeing that the army was distressed owing to obstruction of the calls of nature, and also finding her father agrieved, Sukanyā said,—Roving in the forest, I lighted in the ant-hill here upon some brilliant substance. Thereupon, taking it for a glow-worm, I neared it, and pierced it (with thorns).—Hearing this, Saryāti immediately came to the ant-hill, and there saw Bhrigu's son, old both in years and austerities. Then the lord of earth, with joined hands, besought (the ascetic), saying,—It behoveth thee to forgive what my daughter through ignorance and greenness, hath done unto thee.—Chyavana, the son of Bhrigu, addressed the monarch, saying,—Disregarding me, this one, filled with pride, hath pierced my eyes. Even her, O king, endued with beauty, and who was bereft of her senses by ignorance and temptation,—even thy daughter would I have for my bride. I tell thee truly, on this condition alone will I forgive thee.—'

"Lomaça said,—'Hearing the words of the sage, Saryāti, without pausing, bestowed his daughter on the high-souled Chyavana. Having received the hand of that girl, the holy one was pleased with the king. And having won the *rishi's* grace, the king went to his city, accompanied by his troops. And the faultless Sukanyā also having obtained that ascetic for her husband, began to tend him, practising penances, and observing the ordinance. And that one of a graceful countenance, and void of guile, worshipped Chyavana, and also ministered unto guests and the sacred fire.' "

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-second Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'Once on a time, O king, those celestials, namely, the twin Açwins happened to behold Sukanyā, when

she had (just) bathed, and when her person was bare. And seeing that one of excellent limbs, and like unto the daughter of the lord of celestials, the nose-born Açwins neared her, and addressed her, saying,—O thou of shapely thighs, whose daughter art thou? And what doest thou in this wood? O auspicious one, O thou of excellent grace, we desire to know this,—do thou therefore tell us.—Thereupon she replied bashfully unto those foremost of celestials,—Know me as Saryāti's daughter, and Chyavana's wife.—Thereat the Açwins again spake unto her, smiling,—What for, O fortunate one, hath thy father bestowed thee on a person who is verging on death? Surely, O timid girl, thou shinest in this wood like lightning. Not in the regions of the celestials themselves, O girl, have our eyes lighted on thy like. O damsel, unadorned and without gay robes as thou art, thou beautifiest this wood exceedingly. Still, O thou of faultless limbs, thou canst not look so beautiful, when (as at present) thou art soiled with mud and dirt, as thou couldst, if decked with every ornament and wearing gorgeous apparel. Why, O excellent wench, in such plight servest thou a decrepit old husband, and one that hath become incapable of realising pleasure and also of maintaining thee, O thou of luminous smiles? O divinely beautiful damsel, do thou, forsaking Chyavana, accept one of us for husband. It behoveth thee not to spend thy youth fruitlessly.—

"'Thus addressed, Sukanyā answered the celestials, saying,—I am devoted to my husband, Chyavana: do ye not entertain any doubts (regarding my fidelity).—Thereupon they again spake unto her,—We two are the celestial physicians of note. We will make thy lord young and graceful. Do thou then select one of us—viz., ourselves and thy husband—for thy partner. Promising this, do thou, O auspicious one, bring hither thy husband.—O king, agreeably to their words, she went to Bhrigu's son, and communicated to him what the two celestials had said. Hearing her message, Chyavana said unto his wife,—Do thou so.—Having received the permission of her lord, (she returned to the celestials) and said,—Do ye so.—Then hearing her words, viz.,—'Do ye

so,—they spake unto the king's daughter,—Let thy husband enter into water.—Thereat Chyavana, desirous of obtaining beauty, quickly entered into water. The twin Açwins also, O king, sank into the sheet of water. And the next moment they all came out of the tank in surpassingly beautiful forms, and young, and wearing burnished ear-rings. And all possessed of the same appearance, pleasing to behold, addressed her, saying,—O fortunate one, do thou choose one of us for spouse. And, O beauteous one, do thou select him for lord who may please thy fancy.—Finding, however, all of them of the same likeness, she deliberated; and at last ascertaining the identity of her husband, even selected him.

"'Having obtained coveted beauty and also his wife, Chyavana, of exceeding energy, well pleased, spake these words unto the nose-born celestials,—Since at your hands, an old man, I have obtained youth, and beauty, and also this wife of mine, I will, well-pleased, make you quaffers of the Soma juice in the presence of the lord of celestials himself. This I tell you truly.—Hearing this, highly delighted, the twins ascended to heaven; and Chyavana and Sukanyā began to pass their days happily, even like celestials.'"

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-third Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CXXIV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said. 'Now the news came to Saryāti that Chyavana had been turned into a youth. And well pleased he came, accompanied by his troops, to the hermitage of the son of Bhrigu. And he saw Chyavana and Sukanyā, like two children sprung from celestials, and his joy and that of his wife were as great as if the king had conquered the entire world. And the ruler of earth together with his wife was received honorably by that saint. And the king seated himself near the ascetic, and entered into a delightful conversation of an auspicious kind. Then, O king! the son of Bhrigu spake to the king these words of a soothing nature,—I shall, O king, officiate, at a

religious ceremony to be performed by thee: let the requisite articles, therefore, be procured.—Thereat, that protector of earth, Saryāti, experienced the very height of joy, and, O great king, he expressed his approbation of the proposal made by Chyavana. And on an auspicious day, suitable for the commencement of a sacrificial ceremony, Saryāti ordered the erection of a sacrificial shrine of an excellent description, and splendidly furnished with all desirable things. There Chyavana, the son of Bhrigu, officiated for the king as his priest. Now listen to me relating the wonderful events which happened at that spot. Chyavana took up a quantity of the Soma juice, inorder that he might offer the same to the two Açwins, who were physicians to the celestials. And while the saint was taking up the intended offering for those celestial twins, Indra pronounced his interdiction, saying.—These Açwins, both of them, in my opinion have no right to receive an offering of the Soma juice. They are the physicians of the celestials in heaven,—this vocation of theirs hath disentitled them (in the matter of Soma).—Thereupon Chyavana said,—These two are of mighty enterprise, possessed of mighty souls, and uncommonly endued with beauty and grace. And they, O Indra! have converted me into an eternally youthful person, even like unto a celestial. Why shouldst thou and the other celestials have a right to the distilled Soma juice, and not they? O lord of the celestials, O demolisher of hostile twins! be it known to thee that the Açwins also rank as gods.—At this, Indra spake, saying,—These two practise the healing art,—so they are but servants. And assuming forms at their pleasure, they roam about in the world of mortal beings. How can they then rightfully claim the juice of the Soma?—'

"Lomaça spake.—'When these very identical words were spoken again and again by the lord of celestials, the son of Bhrigu, setting Indra at naught, took up the offering he had intended to make. And as he was about to take up an excellent portion of the Soma juice with the object of offering it to the two Açwins, the destroyer of the demon, Vala, (Indra) observed his act, and thus spake unto him,—If thou take

up the Soma with a view to offer it to those celestials, I shall hurl at thee my thunderbolt of awful form, and superior to all the weapons that exist.—Thus addressed by Indra, the son of Bhrigu, cast at Indra a smiling glance, and took up in due form a goodly quantity of the Soma juice, to make an offering to the Açwins. Then Sachi's lord hurled at him the thunderbolt of awful form. And as he was about to launch it, his arm was paralysed by Bhrigu's son. And having paralysed his arm, Chyavana recited sacred hymns, and made offerings on the fire. His object gained, he now attempted so destroy that celestial. Then by the virtue of that saint's ascetic energy, an evil spirit came into being, —a huge demon, Mada by name, of great strength and gigantic proportions. And his body was incapable of being measured either by demons or by gods. And his mouth was terrible, and of huge size, and with teeth of sharpened edge. And one of his jaws rested on the earth, and the other stretched to heaven. And he had four fangs, each extending as far as one hundred Yojanas. And his other fangs were extended to the distance of ten Yojanas, and were of a form resembling towers on a palace, and which might be likened to the ends of spears. And his two arms were like unto hills, and extended ten thousand Yojanas, and both were of equal bulk. And his two eyes resembled the sun and the moon; and his face rivalled the conflagration at the universal dissolution. And he was licking his mouth with his tongue, which, like lightning, knew no rest. And his mouth was open, and his glance was frightful, and it seemed as if he would forcibly swallow up the world. The demon rushed at the celestial by whom an hundred sacrifices had been performed. And his intent was to devour that deity. And the world resounded with the loud and frightful sounds uttered by the Asura.'"

Thus ends the one hundred and twenty-fourth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CXXV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça spake,—'When the god who had performed an hundred sacrifices (Indra) beheld the demon Mada of a frightful face, coming towards him with open mouth, his intention being to devour him, and looking like the god of death himself, while his own arms remained paralysed, he through fear repeatedly licked the corners of his mouth. Then the lord of the celestials, tortured with fright, spake to Chyavana, saying,—O Bhrigu's son! O Brāhmana! verily I tell thee, as truth itself, that from this day forward the two Açwins will be entitled to the Soma juice. Be merciful to me! Thy undertaking can never come to naught. Let this be the highest rule. And I know, O saint of the sacerdotal caste! that thy work can never come to nothing. These two Açwins will have a right to drink the Soma juice, since thou hast made them entitled to the same. And, O Bhrigu's son! I have done this but to spread the fame of thy powers, and my object was to give thee an occasion for displaying thy powers. My other object was that the fame of the father of this Sukanyā here might spread everywhere. Therefore be merciful to me; let it be as thou wishest.—Being thus addressed by Indra, the wrath of Chyavana of mighty soul was quickly appeased, and he set free the demolisher of hostile cities (Indra). And the powerful saint, O king! distributed Mada (*literally*, intoxication), and put it piecemeal in drinks, in women, in gambling, and in field sports, even this same Mada who had been created repeatedly before. Having thus cast down the demon Mada, and gratified Indra with a Soma draught, and assisted king Saryāti in worshipping all the gods together with the two Açwins, and also spread his fame for power over all the worlds, the best of those endued with speech passed his days happily in the wood, in the company of Sukanyā, his loving wife. This is his lake, shining, O king! and resounding with the voice of birds. Here must thou together with thy uterine brothers, offer liba-

tions of water to thy forefathers and the gods. And, O ruler of earth! O scion of Bharata's race! having visited it, and Sikatāksha also, thou shalt repair to the Saindhava wood, and behold a number of small artificial rivers. And, O great king, O scion of Bharata's race! thou shalt touch the waters of all the holy lakes, and, reciting the hymns of the god Sthānu (Siva), meet with success in every undertaking. For this is the junction, O most praiseworthy of men, of the two ages of the world, viz., Dwāpara and Tretā. It is a time, O Kunti's son! capable of destroying all the sins of a person. Here do thou perform ablutions, for the spot is able to remove all the sins of an individual. Yonder is the Archika hill,—a dwelling-place for men of cultured minds. Fruits of all the seasons grow here at all times, and the streams run for ever. It is an excellent place, fit for the celestials. And there are the holy cairns of diverse forms, set up by the celestials. O Yudhishthira! this is the bathing-spot belonging to the Moon. And the saints are in attendance here on all sides round,—they are the dwellers of the wood, and the Vālakhilyas, and the Pāvakas, who subsist on air only. These are three peaks, and three springs. Thou mayst walk round them all, one by one: then thou mayst wash thyself at pleasure. Sāntanu, O king! and Sunaka, the sovereign of men, and both Nara and Nārāyana have attained everlasting regions from this place. Here did the gods constantly lie down, as also the forefathers, together with the mighty saints. In this Archika hill, they all carried on austerities. Sacrifice to them, O Yudhishthira! Here did they as also the saints eat rice cooked in milk, O protector of men! And here is the Yamunā, of an exhaustless spring. Krishna here engaged himself in a life of penances, O Pāndu's son! O thou that draggest the dead bodies of thy foes! the twin brothers, and Bhimasena, and Krishnā, and all of us will accompany thee to this spot. O lord of men, this is the holy spring that belongeth to Indra. Here the creative and the dispensing deity, and Varuna also rose upwards, and here too they dwelt, O king! observing forbearance, and possessed of the highest faith. This excellent and propitious hill is fit

for persons of a kindly and candid disposition. This is that celebrated Yamunā, O king! frequented by hosts of mighty saints, the scene of diverse religious rites, holy, and destructive of the dread of sin. Here did Māndhātā himself, of a mighty bow, perform sacrificial rites for the gods; and so did Somaka, O Kunti's son! who was the son of Sahadeva, and a most excellent maker of gifts.' "

Thus ends the one hundred and twenty-fifth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXVI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said,—'O great Brāhmana, how was that tiger among kings, Māndhātā, Yuvanāçwa's son, born—even he who was the best of monarchs, and celebrated over the three worlds? And how did he of unmeasured lustre attain the very height of regal power, since all the three worlds were as much under his subjection, as they are under that of Vishnu of mighty soul? I am desirous of hearing all this, in connection with the life and achievements of that sagacious monarch. I should also like to hear how his name of Māndhātā originated, —belonging as it did to him who rivalled in lustre Indra himself;—and also how he of unrivalled strength was born; for thou art skilled in the art of narrating events.'

"Lomaça said.—'Hear with attention, O king! how the name of Māndhātā belonging to that monarch of mighty soul hath come to be celebrated throughout all the worlds. Yuvanāçwa, the ruler of the earth, was sprung from Ikshvāku's race. That protector of the earth performed many sacrificial rites noted for magnificent gifts. And that most excellent of all virtuous men performed a thousand times the ceremony of sacrificing a horse. And he also performed other sacrifices of the highest order, wherein he made abundant gifts. But that saintly king had no son. And he of mighty soul and rigid vows made over to his ministers the duties of the state, and became a constant resident of the woods. And he of cultured soul devoted himself to the pursuits enjoined

in the sacred writ. And once upon a time, that protector of men, O king! had observed a fast. And he was suffering from the pangs of hunger and his inner soul seemed parched with thirst. And (in this state) he entered the hermitage of Bhrigu. On that very night, O king of kings! the great saint who was the delight of Bhrigu's race, had officiated in a religious ceremony, with the object that a son might be born to Saudyumni. O king of kings! at that spot stood a large jar filled with water, consecrated with the recitation of sacred hymns, and which had been previously deposited there. And the water was endued with the virtue that the wife of Saudyumni would by drinking the same bring forth a god-like son. Those mighty saints had deposited the jar on the altar and had then gone to sleep, having been fatigued by keeping up the night. And as Saudyumni passed them by, his palate was dry, and he was suffering greatly from thirst. And the king was very much in need of water to drink. And he entered that hermitage and asked for drink. And becoming fatigued, he cried in a feeble voice, proceeding from a parched throat, which resembled the weak inarticulate utterance of a bird. And his voice reached no body's ears. Then the king beheld the jar filled with water. And he quickly ran towards it, and having drunk the water, put the jar down. And as the water was cool, and as the king had been suffering greatly from thirst, the draught of water relieved the sagacious monarch and appeased his thirst. Then those saints together with him of ascetic wealth, awoke from sleep; and all of them observed that the water of the jar had gone. Thereupon they met together and began to enquire as to who might have done it. Then Yuvanāçva truthfully admitted that it was his act. Then the revered son of Bhrigu spake unto him, saying,—It was not proper. This water had an occult virtue infused into it, and had been placed there with the object that a son might be born to thee. Having performed severe austerities, I infused the virtue of my religious acts into this water, that a son might be born to thee. O saintly king of mighty valour and physical strength! a son would have been born to thee, of

exceeding strength and valour, and strengthened by austerities, and who would have sent by his bravery even Indra to the abode of the god of death. It was in this manner, O king! that this water had been prepared by me. By drinking this water, O king, thou hast done what was not at all right. But it is impossible now for us to turn back the accident which hath happened. Surely what thou hast done must have been the fiat of Fate. Since thou, O great king, being athirst hast drunk water prepared with sacred hymns, and filled with the virtue of my religious labors, thou must bring forth out of thy own body a son of the character described above. To that end we shall perform a sacrifice for thee, of wonderful effect, so that, valorous as thou art, thou wilt bring forth a son equal to Indra. Nor will thou experience any trouble on account of the labour pains.—Then when one hundred years had passed away, a son shining as the sun pierced the left side of that king endowed with a mighty soul, and came forth. And the son was possessed of mighty strength. Nor did Yuvanāçva die,—which itself was strange. Then Indra of mighty strength came to pay him a visit. And the deities enquired of the great Indra,—What is to be sucked by this boy?—Then Indra introduced his own forefinger into his mouth. And when the wielder of the thunder-bolt said,—He will suck me,—the dwellers of heaven together with Indra christened the boy Māndhātā, (*literally*. Me he shall suck). Then the boy having tasted the fore-finger extended by Indra, became possessed of mighty strength, and he grew thirteen cubits, O king. And O great king! the whole of sacred learning together with the holy science of arms, was acquired by that masterful boy, who gained all that knowledge by the simple and unassisted power of his thought. And all at once, the bow, celebrated under the name of Ajagava and a number of shafts made of horn, together with an impenetrable coat of mail, came to his possession on the very same day, O scion of Bharata's race! And he was placed on the throne by Indra himself, and he conquered the three worlds in a righteous way; as Vishnu did by his three strides. And the wheel of the car of that mighty king was irresitible in its course (throughout the

world). And the gems of their own accord came into the possession of that saintly king. This is the tract of land, O lord of earth, which belonged to him. It abounds in wealth. He performed a number of sacrificial rites of various kinds, in which abundant gratuities were paid to the priests. O king! he, of mighty force and unmeasured lustre, having erected sacred piles, and performed splendid pious deeds, attained the position of sitting at Indra's side. That sagacious king of unswerving piety sent forth his fiat, and simply by its virtue conquered the earth, together with the sea—that source of gems—and all the cities (of the earth), O great king! The sacrificial grounds prepared by him were to be found all over the earth on all sides round,—not a single spot, but was marked with the same. O great king! the mighty monarch is said to have given away to the Brāhmanas ten thousand Padmas* of kine. When there was a drouth, which continued for twelve consecutive years, the mighty king caused rain to come down for the growth of crops, paying no heed to Indra, the wielder of the thunderbolt, who remained staring (at his disregard of himself). The mighty ruler of the Gāndhāra land, born in the lunar dynasty of kings, who was terrible like a roaring cloud, was slain by him, who wounded him sorely with his shafts. O king! he of cultured soul protected the four orders of people, and by him of mighty force the worlds were kept from harm, by virtue of his austere and righteous life. This is the spot where he, lustrous like the sun, sacrificed to the gods. Look at it: here it is, in the midst of the field of the Kurus, situated in a tract, the holiest of all. O protector of earth! requested by thee, have I thus narrated to thee the great life of Māndhātā, and also the way in which he was born; which was a birth of an extraordinary kind.' "

Vaiçāmpayana spake.—" O scion of Bharata's race! Kunti's son, thus addressed by the mighty saint, Lomaça, immediately put fresh questions to him, with regard to Somaka."

---

* A *Padma* is equal to one hundred crores.

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-sixth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXVII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira spake.—'O best of speakers! what was the extent of power and strength possessed by king Somaka? I am desirous of hearing an exact account of his deeds and of his power.'

"Lomaça spake.—'O Yudhishthira! there was a virtuous king, Somaka by name. He had one hundred wives, O king, all suitably matched to their husband. He took great care, but could not suceed in getting a single son from any one of them, and a long time elapsed during which he continued a sonless man. Once on a time, when he had become old, and was trying every means to have a son, a son was born to him, Jantu by name, out of that century of women. And, O ruler of men! all the mothers used to sit, surrounding their son, and every one giving him such objects as might conduce to his enjoyment and pleasure. And it came to pass that one day an ant stung the boy at his hip. And the boy screamed loudly, on account of the pain caused by the sting. And forthwith the mothers were exceeding distressed to see how the child had been stung by the ant. And they stood around him, and set up cries. Thus there arose a tumultuous noise. And that scream of pain suddenly reached (the ears of) the sovereign of the earth, when he was seated in the midst of his ministers, with the family priest at his side. Then the king sent for information as to what it was about. And the royal usher explained to him precisely what the matter was with reference to his son. And Somaka got up together with his ministers, and hastened towards the female apartments. And on coming there, O subjugator of foes! he soothed his son. And having done so and coming out from the female apartments, the king sat down with his family priest and ministers.

"'Somaka then spake thus.—Fie on having only a single son! I had rather be a sonless man. Considering how con-

stantly liable to disease are all organized beings, to have an only son is but a trouble. O Brāhmana! O my lord! with the view that I might have many sons born to me, this century of wives hath been wedded by me, after inspection, and after I had satisfied myself that they would prove suitable to me. But issue they have none. Having tried every means, and put forth great efforts, they have borne this single son, Jantu. What grief can be greater than this? O most excellent of the twice-born caste! I am grown old in years, and so are my wives too. And yet this only son is like the breath of their nostrils, and so he is to me also. But is there any ceremony, by celebrating which one may get an hundred sons? (And if there is one such), tell me whether it is great or small, and easy or difficult to perform.—

"'The family priest said.—There is a ceremony, by virtue of which a man may get a century of sons. If thou art able to perform it, O Somaka! then I shall explain it to thee.—

Somaka spake.—Whether it be a good or an evil deed, the ceremony by which an hundred sons may be born, may be taken by thee as already performed. Let thy blessed self explain it to me.—

"'The family priest thereupon said.—O king! let me set on foot a sacrifice, and thou must sacrifice thy son, Jantu, in it. Then on no distant date, a century of handsome sons will be born to thee. When Jantu's fat will be put into the fire as an offering to the gods, the mothers will take a smell of that smoke, and bring forth a number of sons, valorous and strong. And Jantu also will once more be born as a self-begotten son of thine, in that very (mother); and on his back there will appear a mark of gold.—'"

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-seventh Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXVIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"'Somaka said.—O Brahmāna! whatever is to be performed, do precisely as it may be necessary. As I am desirous of having a number of sons, I shall do all that may be prescribed by thee.—'

"Lomaça said.—'Then the priest officiated in the sacrifice, in which Jantu was offered as the victim. But the mothers in pity forcibly snatched the son and took him away. And they cried,—We are undone.—And they were smitten with torturing grief, and they caught hold of Jantu by his right hand, and wept in a piteous way. But the officiating priest held the boy by the right hand and pulled him. And like female ospreys they screamed in agony; but the priest dragged the son, killed him and made a burnt offering of his fat in the proper form. And, O delight of the race of Kuru! while the fat was being made an offering of, the agonised mothers smelt its smell, and of a sudden fell to the ground (and swooned away). And then all those lovely women became with child. And, O lord of men! O scion of Bharata's race! when ten months had passed, a full century of sons was born to Somaka, begotten on all those women. And, O monarch of the earth! Jantu became the eldest, and was born of his former mother. And he became the most beloved to the women,—not so were their own sons. And on his back there was that mark of gold; and of that century of sons, he was also superior in merit. Then that family priest of Somaka departed this life; as also Somaka after a certain time. Now he beheld that the priest was being grilled in a terrible hell. And thereupon he questioned him,—Why art thou, O Brāhmana! being grilled in this hell?—Then the family priest, exceedingly scorched with fire, spake to him, saying.—This is the outcome of my having officiated in that sacrifice of thine.—O king, hearing this, the saintly king thus spake to the god who meteth out punishments to departed souls,—I shall enter here. Set free

my officiating priest: this revered man is being grilled by hell-fire on my account alone.—

"'Dharmarāja thereat answered thus,—One cannot enjoy or suffer for another person's acts. O best of speakers! these are the fruit of thy acts; see it here.—

"Somaka spake.—Without this Brāhmana here, I desire not to go to the blessed regions. My desire is to dwell in company with this very man, either in the abode of the gods, or in hell, for, O Dharmarāja! my deed is identical with what hath been done by him, and the fruit of our virtuous or evil deed must be the same for both of us.—

"'Dharmarāja spake.—O king! if this is thy wish, then taste with him the fruit of that act, for the same period that he must do. After that, thou shalt go to the blessed regions.—'

"Lomaça said.—'The lotus-eyed king did all that exactly in the way prescribed to him. And when his sins were worked out, he was set free, together with the priest. O king! fond of the priest as he was, he won all those blessings to which he had entitled himself by his meritorious acts, and shared everything with the family priest. This is his hermitage, which looketh lovely before of our eyes. Any one would attain the blessed regions, if he should spend six nights here controlling his passions. O king of kings! O leader of the tribe of Kurus! here, free from excitement, and self-controlled, we must spend six nights. Be thou ready, therefore.'"

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-eighth Section in the tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXIX.

(Tirtha-yātrā Pārva continued.)

"Lomaça spake.—'Here, O king! the lord of born beings himself performed a sacrifice in former times,—the ceremony called Ishtikrita, which occupied one thousand years. And Amvarisha, son of Nābhāga, sacrificed near the Yamunā river. And having sacrificed there, he gave away ten *Padmas* (of gold coins) to the attendant priests; and he obtained the

highest success by his sacrifices and austerities. And, O Kunti's son! this is the spot where that sovereign of the entire earth,—Nahusha's son, Yayāti of unmeasured force, and who led a holy life, performed his sacrificial rites. He competed with Indra and performed his sacrifice here. Behold how the ground is studded with places for the sacrificial fires of various forms, and how the earth seems to be subsiding here under the pressure of Yayāti's pious works. This is the Sami tree, which hath got but a single leaf; and this is a most excellent lake. Behold these lakes of Parasurāma, and the hermitage of Nārāyana. O protector of earth! this is the path which was followed by Richika's son, of unmeasured energy, who roamed over the earth, practising the Yoga rites in the river Raupyā. And, O delight of the tribe of Kurus! hear what a Pisācha woman (she-goblin), who was decked with pestles for her ornaments, said (to a Brāhmana woman), as I was reciting here the table of genealogy. (She said),—Having eaten curd in Yugandhara, and lived in Achyutasthala, and also bathed in Bhutilaya, thou shouldst live with thy sons. Having passed a single night here, if thou wilt spend the second, the events of the night will be different from those that have happened to thee in the day-time.—O most righteous of Bharata's race! today we shall spend the night at this very spot. O scion of Bharata's race! this is the threshold of the field of the Kurus. O king! at this very spot, the monarch Yayāti, son of Nahusha, performed sacrificial rites, and made gifts of an abundance of gems. And Indra was pleased with those sacred rites. This is an excellent holy bathing-place, on the river Yamunā, known as Plakshāvatarana (descent of the banian tree). Men of cultured minds call it the entrance to the region of heaven. O respected sir! here, after having performed sacrificial rites of the Sāraswata kind, and making use of the sacrificial stake for their pestle, the highest order of saints perform the holy plunge prescribed at the end of a sacred ceremony. O monarch! king Bharata here performed sacrificial rites. To celebrate the horse-sacrifice, he here set free the horse who was the intended victim. That monarch had won the sovereignty

of the earth by righteousness. The horses he let go more than once were of a colour checkered with black. O tiger among men! it was here that Mārutta sheltered by Samvartta, leader of saints, succeeded in performing excellent sacrifices. O sovereign of kings! having taken his bath at this spot, one can behold all the worlds, and is purified from his evil deeds. Do thou, therefore, bathe at this spot.'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then that most praiseworthy of Pāndu's sons, there bathed with his brothers, while the mighty saints were uttering laudatory words to him. And he addressed the following words to Lomaça,—'O thou whose strength lieth in truthfulness! by virtue of this pious act, I behold all the worlds. And from this place, I behold that most praise-worthy of Pandu's sons, Arjuna, the rider of white steeds.'

"Lomaça said.—'It is even so, O thou of powerful arms! The saints of the highest order thus behold all the regions. Behold this holy Saraswati here, thronged by persons who look upon her as their sole refuge. O most praiseworthy of men! having bathed here, thou wilt be free from all thy sins. O Kunti's son! here the celestial saints performed sacrificial rites of the Sāraswata kind; and so did the saints and the royal saints. This is the altar of the lord of beings, five Yojanas in extent on all sides round. And this is the field of the magnanimous Kurus, whose habit it was to perform sacrifices.'"

Thus ends the hundred and twenty-ninth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXX.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'O son of Bharata's race! if mortals breathe their last at this spot, they go to heaven. O king! thousands upon thousands of men come to this place to die. A blessing was pronounced on this spot by Daksha, when he was engaged in a sacrifice here, (in these words), —Those men that shall die at this spot, shall win a place in heaven.—Here is the beautiful and sacred river, Saraswati,

full of waters; and here, O lord of men, is the spot known as Vinaçana, or the place where the Saraswati disappeared. Hear is the gate of the kingdom of the Nishadas, and it is from hatred to them that the Saraswati entered into the earth, inorder that the Nishadhas might not see her. Here too is the sacred region of Chamashodbheda, where the Saraswati once more becomes visible to men. And here she is joined by other sacred rivers running seawards. O conqueror of foes, here is the sacred spot known by the name of Shindhu,—where Lopāmudrā accepted the great sage Agastya as her lord. And, O thou whose effulgence is like unto that of the sun, here is the sacred *tirtha* called Prabhāsa, the favored spot of Indra, and which removeth all sins. Yonder is visible the region of Vishnupada. And here is the delightful and sacred river, Vipāshā. From grief for the death of his sons, the great sage Vaçishta had thrown himself into this stream, after binding his limbs. And when he rose from the water, lo! he was unfettered. Look, O king, with thy brothers at the sacred region of Kāçmeera, frequented by holy sages. Here, O scion of Bharata's race, is the spot, where a conference took place between Agni and the sage Kāçyapa, and also between Nahusa's son and the sages of the north. And, O great prince, yonder is the gate of the Manasarovara. In the midst of this mountain, a gap hath been opened by Rāma. And here, O prince of prowess incapable of being baffled, is the well-known region of Vātikakhanda, which, although adjacent to the gate of Videha, lieth on the north of it. And, O bull among men, there is another very remarkable thing connected with this place,—namely, that on the waning of every *yuga*, the god Siva, having the power to assume any shape at will, may be seen with Umā and his followers. In yonder lake also people desirous of securing welfare to their family, propitiate with sacrifices the holder of the great bow Pināka, in the month of Chaitra. And persons of devotion having passions under control, performing their ablutions in this lake, become free from sins, and, without doubt, attain to the holy regions. Here is the sacred *tirtha* called Ujjānaka, where the holy sage Vaçishtha with his wife Arundhati and also the sage Yavakri

obtained tranquility. Yonder is the lake Kuçavān, where grow the lotuses called Kuçeçaya, and here also is the sacred hermitage of Rukmini, where she attained peace, after conquering that evil passion, anger. I think, O prince, that thou hast heard something about that mass of meditations, Bhrigutunga. There, O king, before thee is that lofty peak. And, O foremost of kings, yonder is Vitastā, the sacred stream that absolveth men from all sins. The water of this stream is extremely cool and limpid, and it is largely frequented by the great sages. O prince, behold the holy rivers, Jalā and Upajalā, on either side of the Jamunā. By performing a sacrifice here, king Uçinara surpassed in greatness Indra himself. And, O descendant of Bharata, desirous of testing Uçinara's merit and also of bestowing boons on him, Indra and Agni presented themselves at his sacrificial ground. And Indra assuming the shape of a hawk, and Agni, that of a pigeon, came unto that king. And the pigeon in fear of the hawk, fell upon the king's thigh, seeking his protection.'"

Thus ends the hundred and thirtieth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXXI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"'The hawk said,—All the kings of the earth represent thee as a pious ruler. Wherefore, O prince, hast thou then stooped to perpetrate a deed not sanctioned by the ordinance? I have been sore afflicted with hunger. Do thou not withhold from me that which hath been appointed by the Deity for my food, under the impression that thereby thou servest the interests of virtue,—whereas in reality, thou wilt forsake it, (by committing thyself to this act).—Thereupon, the king said,—O best of the feathered race, afflicted with fear of thee, and desirous of escaping from thy hands, this bird, all in a flurry, hath come unto me, asking for life. When this pigeon hath in such a manner sought my protection, why dost thou not see that the highest merit is even in my not surrendering it unto thee? And it is

trembling with fear, and is agitated, and is seeking its life from me. It is therefore certainly blameworthy to forsake it. He that slayeth a Brāhmana, he that slaughtereth a cow—the common mother of all the worlds—and he that forsaketh one seeking for protection, are equally sinful.—Thereat the hawk replied,—O lord of earth, it is from food that all beings derive their life, and it is food also that nourisheth and sustaineth them. A man can live long even after forsaking what is most dear to him, but he cannot do so, after abstaining from food. Being deprived of food, my life, O ruler of men, will surely leave this body, and will attain to regions unknown to such troubles. But at my death, O pious king, my wife and children will surely perish, and by protecting this single pigeon, O prince, thou dost not protect many lives. The virtue that standeth in the way of another virtue, is certainly no virtue at all, but in reality is an unrighteous act. But, O king, whose prowess consisteth in truth, that virtue is worthy of the name, which is not conflicting. After instituting a comparison between opposing virtues, and weighing their comparative merits, one, O great prince, ought to espouse that which is not opposing. Do thou, therefore, O king! striking a balance between virtues, adopt that which preponderates.—At this, the king said,—O best of birds, as thou speakest words fraught with much good, I suspect thee to be *Suparna*, the monarch of birds. I have not the least hesitation to declare that thou art fully conversant with the ways of virtue. As thou speakest wonders about virtue, I think that there is nothing connected with it, that is unknown to thee. How canst thou then consider the forsaking of one, seeking for help, as virtuous? Thy efforts in this matter, O ranger of the skies, have been in quest of food. Thou canst, however, appease thy hunger with some other sort of food even more copious. I am perfectly willing to procure for thee any sort of food that to thee may seem most grateful, even if it be an ox, or a boar, or a deer, or a buffalo.—Thereupon the hawk said,—O great king, I am not desirous of eating (the flesh of) a boar or an ox or the various species of beasts. What have I to do with any

other sort of food? Therefore, O bull among the Kshatriyas, leave to me this pigeon, whom Heaven hath today ordained for my food. O ruler of earth, that hawks eat pigeons is the eternal provision. O prince, do not for support embrace a plantain tree, not knowing its want of strength.—The king said, —O ranger of the skies, I am willing to bestow on thee this rich province of my race, or any other thing that to thee may seem desirable. With the sole exception of this pigeon, which hath approached me, craving my protection, I shall be glad to give unto thee anything that thou mayst like. Let me know what I shall have to do for the deliverance of this bird. But this I shall not return to thee on any condition whatever.—

"'The hawk said,—O great ruler of men, if thou hast conceived an affection for this pigeon, then cut off a portion of thine own flesh, and weigh it in a balance, against this pigeon. And when thou hast found it equal (in weight) to the pigeon, then do thou give it unto me, and that will be to my satisfaction.—Then the king replied,—This request of thine, O hawk, I consider as a favor unto me, and, therefore, I will give unto thee even my own flesh, after weighing it in a balance.—'

"Lomaça said.—'Saying this, O mighty son of Kunti, the highly virtuous king cut off a portion of his own flesh, and placed it in a balance, against the pigeon. But when he found that the pigeon exceeded his flesh in weight, he once more cut off another portion of his flesh, and added it to the former. But when portion after portion had been repeatedly added to weigh against the pigeon, and no more flesh was left on his body, he mounted the scale himself, utterly devoid of flesh.

"'The hawk then said,—I am Indra, O virtuous king, and this pigeon is Agni, the carrier of the sacrificial clarified butter. We had come unto thy sacrificial ground, desirous of testing thy merit. Since thou hast cut off thy own flesh from thy body, thy glory shall be resplendent, and shall surpass that of all others in the worlds. As long as men, O king, shall speak of thee, so long shall thy glory endure, and thou shalt inhabit the holy regions.—Saying this to the king, Indra ascended to

heaven. And the virtuous king, Uçinara, after having filled heaven and earth with the merit of his pious deeds, ascended to heaven in a radient shape. Behold, O king, the residence of that noble-hearted monarch. Here, O king, are seen holy sages and gods, together with virtuous and high-souled Brāhmanas.' "

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-first Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXXII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'See here, O lord of men, the sacred hermitage of Swetaketu, son of Uddālaka, whose fame as an expert in the sacred *mantras*, is so widely spread on earth. This hermitage is graced with cocoanut trees. Here Swetaketu beheld the goddess Saraswati in her human shape, and spake unto her, saying,—May I be endowed with the gift of speech !—In that *yuga*, Swetaketu, the son of Uddālaka, and Ashtāvakra, the son of Kahoda, who stood to each other in the relation of uncle and nephew, were the best of those conversant with the sacred lore. These two Brāhmanas, of matchless energy, and who bore unto each other the relationship of uncle and nephew, went into the sacrificial ground of king Janaka, and there defeated Vandin in a controversy. Worship, O son of Kunti, with thy brothers, the sacred hermitage of him who had for his grandson Ashtāvakra, who, even when a mere child, had caused Vandin to be drowned in a river, after having defeated him in a (literary) contest.'

"Yudhishtira said.—'Tell me, O Lomaça, all about the power of this man, who had in that way defeated Vandin. Why was he born as *ashtāvakra*, (crooked in eight parts of his body) ?

"Lomaça said.—'The sage Uddālaka had a disciple named Kahoda, of subdued passions, and entirely devoted to the service of his preceptor, and who had continued his studies long. The Brāhmana had served his tutor long, and his preceptor, recognising his service, gave him his own daughter, Sujātā, in marriage, as well as a mastery over the Sāstras,

And she became with child, radiant as fire. And the embryo addressed his father while employed in reading,—O father, thou hast been reading the whole night, but (for all that) thy reading doth not seem to me correct. Even in my fetal state, I have, by thy favor, become versed in the Sastras and the Vedas with their several branches. I say, O father, that what proceeds from thy mouth, is not correct.—Thus insulted in the presence of his disciples, the great sage in anger cursed his child while in the womb, saying,—Because thou speakest thus even while in the womb, therefore thou shalt be crooked in eight parts of thy body. The child was accordingly born crooked, and the great sage was ever after known by the name of Ashtāvakra. Now, he had an uncle named Swetaketu, who was of the same age with himself. Afflicted by the growth of the child in the womb, Sujātā, desirous of riches, conciliating her husband who had no wealth, told him in private,—How shall I manage, O great sage, the tenth month of my pregnancy having come ? Thou hast no substance whereby I may extricate myself from the exegencies, after I have been delivered.—Thus addressed by his wife, Kahoda went unto king Janaka, for riches. He was there defeated in a controversy by Vandin, well versed in the science of arguments, and (in consequence) was emersed into water. And hearing that his son-in-law had been defeated in a controversy by Vandin, and caused to be drowned by him, Uddālaka spake unto his daughter Sujātā, saying,—Thou shalt keep it a secret from Ashtāvakra.—She accordingly kept her counsel,—so that Ashtāvakra when born had heard nothing about the matter. And he regarded Uddālaka as his father and Swetaketu as his brother. And when Ashtāvakra was in his twelfth year, Swetaketu one day saw the former seated on his father's lap. And thereat he pulled him by the hand, and on Ashtāvakra beginning to cry, he told him,—It is not the lap of thy father.—This cruel communication went direct into Ashtāvakra's heart and it pained him sorely. And he went home and asked his mother saying,—Where is my father ?—Thereupon Sujātā, who was greatly afflicted (by this question), and apprehending a curse, told him all that had happened. And having heard all, the

Brāhmana at night said unto his uncle Swetaketu,—Let us go unto the sacrifice of king Janaka, wherein many wonderful things are to be seen. There we shall listen to the controversy between the Brāhmanas, and shall partake of excellent food. Our knowledge also will increase. The recitation of the sacred Vedas is sweet to hear, and is fraught with blessings.—Then they both, uncle and nephew, went unto the splendid sacrifice of king Janaka. And on being driven from the entrance, Ashtāvakra met the king, and addressed him in the following words.'"

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-second Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CXXXIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"'Ashtāvakra said,—When no Brāhmana is met with on the way, the way belongeth to the blind, the deaf, women, carriers of burden, and the king respectively. But when a Brāhmana is met on the way, it belongeth to him alone.—Thereupon the king said,—I give thee privilege to enter. Do thou, therefore, go in by whatever way thou likest. No fire ever so small is to be slighted. Even Indra himself boweth down unto the Brāhmanas.—At this, Ashtāvakra said,—We have come, O ruler of men, to witness thy sacrificial ceremony, and our curiosity, O king, is very great. And we have come here as guests. We want the permission of thy warder (to enter). And, O son of Indradyumna, we have come, desirous of seeing the sacrifice, and to meet with king Janaka, and speak with him. But thy warder lets us, and for this our anger burneth us like fever.—The warder said,—We carry out the orders of Vandin. Listen to what I have to say. Lads are not permitted to enter here, and it is only the learned old Brāhmanas that are allowed to enter in.—Ashtāvakra said,—If this be the condition, O warder, that the door is open to those only that are old, then we have a right to enter. We are old, and we have observed sacred vows, and are in possession of energy proceeding from the Vaidic lore. And we have served our

superiors and subdued our passions,—and have also won proficiency in knowledge. It is said that even boys are not to be slighted,—for a fire small though it be, burneth on being touched. —The warder replied,—O young Brāhmana, consider that thou art a boy, and therefore recite the verse demonstrating the existence of the Supreme Being, and adored by the divine sages, and which although composed of one letter, is yet multifarious. Make no vain boast. Learned men are really very rare. Ashtāvakra said,—True growth cannot be inferred from the mere development of the body, as the growth of the knots of the Sālmali tree cannot signify its age. That tree is called full-grown which although slender and short, beareth fruits. But that which doth not bear fruits, is not considered as grown.—The warder said,—Boys receive instruction from the old, and they also in time grow old. Knowledge certainly is not attainable in a short time. Wherefore then, being a child, dost thou talk like an old man ?—Then Ashtāvakra said,—One is not old because his head is gray. But the gods regard him as old who, although a child in years, is yet possessed of knowledge. The sages have not laid down that a man's merit consists in years, or gray hair, or wealth, or friends. To us he is great who is versed in the Vedas. I have come here, O porter, desirous of seeing Vandin in the court. Go and inform king Janaka, who hath a garland of lotuses on his neck, that I am here. Thou shalt to-day see me enter into a dispute with the learned men, and defeat Vandin in a controversy. And when others have been silenced, the Brāhmanas of matured learning and the king also with his principal priests, bear witness to the superior or the inferior quality of my attainments.—The warder said,—How canst thou, who art but in thy tenth year, hope to enter into this sacrifice, into which learned and educated men only are admitted? I shall, however, try some means for thy admittance. Do thou also try thyself.—Ashtāvakra said,—O king, O foremost of Janaka's race, thou art the paramount sovereign, and all power reposeth in thee. In times of old, king Yayāti was the celebrater of sacrifices,—and in the present age, thou it is that art the performer thereof. We have heard that the learned Vandin, after defeating (in controversy) men

expert in discussion, causeth them to be drowned by faithful servants employed by thee. Hearing this, I have come before these Brāhmanas, to expound the doctrine of the unity of the Supreme Being. Where is now Vandin? Tell me,—so that I may approach him, and destroy him, even as the sun destroyeth the stars.—Thereupon the king said,—Thou hopest, O Brāhmana, to defeat Vandin, not knowing his power of speech. Can those who are familiar with his power, speak as thou dost? He hath been sounded by Brāhmanas versed in the Vedas. Thou hopest to defeat Vandin, only because thou knowest not his powers (of speech). Many a Brāhmana hath waned before him, even as the stars, before the sun. Desirous of defeating him, people proud of their learning, have lost their glory on appearing before him, and have retired from his presence, without even venturing to speak with the members of the assembly.—Ashtāvakra said,—Vandin hath never entered into disputation with a man like myself, and it is for this only that he looketh upon himself as a lion, and goeth about roaring like one. But to-day meeting me, he will lie down dead, even like a cart on the highway, whose wheels have been deranged.—The king said,—He alone is a truly learned man who understandeth the significance of the thing that hath thirty divisions, twelve parts, twenty-four joints, and three hundred and sixty spokes.—Ashtāvakra said,—May that ever-moving wheel that hath twenty-four joints, six naves, twelve peripheries, and sixty spokes, protect thee! * The king said,—Who amongst the gods beareth those two which go together like two mares (yoked to a car), and swoop like hawks, and to what also do they give birth?—Ashtāvakra said,—May God, O king, forefend the presence of these two † in thy house; yea, even in the house of thine enemies. He

* This wheel is the wheel of Time,—i. e., measured according to the soalar, lunar, and astral revolutions.

The import of Ashtāvakra's reply is this,—May the meritorious deeds performed at proper times during the revolution of this wheel of Time, protect thee.

† Thunder and lightning or misery and death.

who appeareth, having for his charioteer the wind, * begeteth them, and they also produce him.—Thereupon the king said,—What is it that doth not close its eyes even while sleeping; what is it that doth not move, even when born; what is it that hath no heart; and what doth increase even in its own speed?—Ashtāvakra said,—It is a fish † that doth not close its eye-lids, while sleeping; and it is an egg ‡ that doth not move when produced; it is stone$ that hath no heart; and it is a river¶ that increases in its own speed.—

"'The king said,—It seemeth, O possessor of divine energy, that thou art no human being. I consider thee not a boy, but a matured man: there is no other man who can compare with thee in the art of speech. I therefore give thee admittance. There is Vandin.—' "

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-third Section in the tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXXIV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"'Ashtāvakra said,—O king, O leader of fierce legions, in this assembly of monarchs of unrivalled power, who have met together, I am unable to find out Vandin, chief of the controversialists. But I am searching for him, even as one doth for a swan on a vast expanse of water. O Vandin, that regardest thyself as the foremost of controversialists, when thou wilt engage with me in staking, thou wilt not be able to flow like the current of a river. I am like a full-flaming fire. Be silent before me, O Vandin! Do not awaken a sleeping tiger. Know that thou shalt not escape unstung, after trampling on the head of a venemous snake, licking the corners of its mouth with its tongue, and who hath been hurt

---

* Cloud, or the mind.

† The male being that is ever conscious.

‡ The mundane egg.

$ The soul that has renounced connection with the body.

¶ The heart of a *Yogi*.

by thy foot. That weak man, who, in pride of strength, attempts to strike a blow at a mountain, only gets his hands and nails hurt, but no wound is left on the mountain itself. As the other mountains are inferior to the Maināka, and as calves are inferior to the ox, so are all other kings of the earth inferior to the lord of Mithilā. And as Indra is the foremost of celestials, and as the Gangā is the best of rivers, so thou alone art, O king, the greatest of monarchs. O king, cause Vandin to be brought into my presence.—'

"Lomaça said,—'Saying this, O Yudhishthira, wroth with Vandin, Ashtāvakra thus thundered in the assembly, and addressed him in these words,—Do thou answer my questions, and I shall answer thine.—Thereat Vandin said,—One only fire blazeth forth in various shapes; one only sun illumineth this whole world; one only hero, Indra, the lord of celestials, destroyeth enemies; and one only Yama is the sole lord of the Pitris.*—Ashtāvakra said,—The two friends, Indra and Agni, ever move together; the two celestial sages are Nārada and Parvata; twins are the Açwineekumāras; two is the number of the wheels of a car; and it is as a couple that husband and wife live together, as ordained by the Deity.†—Vandin said,—Three kinds of born beings are pro-

---

* Ashtāvakra comes to Janaka's sacrifice with the object of proving the unity of the Supreme Being. Vandin avails himself of various systems of Philosophy, to combat his opponent. He begins with the Buddhistic system. The form of the dialogue is unique in literature, being that of enigmas; and the latent meaning is in a queer way hid under the appearance of puerile and heterogenious combinations of things.

Vandin opens the controversy by saying that as the number of each of these is *one*, so *one* only intellect is the lord, leader and guide of the senses.

† There is a Vedic revelation that two birds live together on a tree as friends;—one of these eats the fruits, and the other looks at the former. From this it is manifest that *two* are the lords, leaders and guides of the senses. That there is a second faculty, besides the intellect, is also proved by the fact that in sleep, when the intellect is inactive, that faculty continues in action; for if it were not so, we could not remember having slept, nor connect the state after awaking with that preceeding sleep. Accord.

duced by acts; the three Vedas together perform the sacrifice, Vājapeya; at three different times, the Adhwaryus commence sacrificial rites; three is the number of worlds; and three also are the divine lights.*—Ashtāvakra said,—Four are the Açramas of the Brāhmanas; the four orders perform sacrifices; four are the cardinal points; four is the number of letters; and four also, as is ever known, are the legs of a cow.†—Vandin said,—Five is the number of fires; five are the feet of the metre called *Punkti*; five are the sacrifices; five locks, it is said in the Vedas, are on the heads of the Apsaras; and five sacred rivers are known in the world.‡—Ashtāvakra said,—Six cows, it is asserted by some, are paid as a gratuity on the occasion of establishing the sacred fire; six are the seasons belonging to the wheel of time; six is the number of the senses; six stars constitute the constellation *Kirtikā*; and six, it is found in all the Vedas, is the number of the Sādyaska sacrifices.$—Vandin said,—Seven is the number of the domesticated animals; seven are the wild animals; seven metres are used in completing a sacrifice; seven are the *rishis*; seven forms of paying homage are extent (in the world); and

---

ingly, by citing the number *two*, Ashtāvakra asserts that besides intellect, there is another faculty—consciousness, that these *two* are jointly the lords, leaders and guides of the senses, and that they act together as Indra and Agni, &c.

* By citing the number *three*, Vandin means to say that as it is Acts that produce the *three* kinds of born beings, &c., so Acts are supreme, and that everything else, be it intellect alone, or intellect and consciousness together, is subservient to Acts.

† Ashtāvakra here advances the thesis that even if Acts be supreme, still when the *(fourth)* or Supreme Being becomes manifest to the soul, it stands in no further need of Acts.

‡ By bringing in the *quinquennial* series, Vandin wishes to assert that the *five* senses are competent to cognise their respective objects, and that besides these senses and their objects, there is neither any other sense to perceive, nor any other object of perception. He also cites the authority of the Veda, according to which the *Apsarās*, or consciousness, have *five* "locks" on their heads—i. e. *five* objects of perception.

$ Besides the five senses, Ashtāvakra contends for an additional sense, namely the Mind, and accordingly cites the number *six*.

seven, it is known, are the strings of the *Vinā*.*—Ashtāvakra said,—Eight are the bags containing a hundredfold; eight is the number of the legs of the Sarava, which preyeth upon lions; eight Vasus, as we hear, are amongst the celestials; and eight are the angles of a *yupa* (stake), in all sacrificial rites.† Vandin said,—Nine is the number of the *mantras* used in kindling the fire in sacrifices to the *Pitris*; nine are the appointed functions in the processes of creation; nine letters compose the foot of the metre, Vrihati; and nine also is ever the number of the figures (in calculation).‡—Ashtāvakra said,—Ten is said to be the number of cardinal points, entering into the cognition of men in this world; ten times hundred make up a thousand; ten is the number of months, during which women bear; and ten are the teachers of true knowledge, and ten, the haters thereof, and ten again are those capable of learning it.¶—Ashtāvakra said,—Eleven are the objects enjoyable by beings; eleven is the number of the *yupas*; eleven are the changes of the natural state pertaining to those having life; and eleven are the Rudras among the

---

* Vandin admits the existence of the six senses, but says that the soul experiences happiness and misery through those, as well as through the *intellect*.

† Ashtāvakra advances an eighth element, namely the *knowledge of the ego*.

‡ Each of the three qualities, (existence, foulness, and ignorance) of *Prakriti* (the passive or material cause of the world), mixing with each of the three corresponding qualities of *Pradhāna* (the active or spiritual cause of the world) in various proportions, produces the mundane order of things. Thus is proved the eternity of *Prakriti* or nature, and is also established the doctrine of duality.

¶ Prakriti does not really create. It is the Supreme Being, who through the medium of Illusion coming in contact with the *ten* organs (*viz.*, the five locomotive organs, and the five organs of sense), makes manifest the system of things. Prakriti, therefore, has no real existence,—her existence is only apparent in the real existence of the Soul.

gods in heaven.*—Ashtāvakra said,—Twelve months compose the year; twelve letters go to the composition of a foot of the metre called *Jagati*; twelve are the minor sacrifices; and twelve, according to the learned, is the number of the Adityas.†—Vandin said,—The thirteenth lunar day is considered the most auspicious; thirteen islands exist on earth‡—'

"Lomaça said.—'Having proceeded thus far, Vandin stopped. Thereupon Ashtāvakra supplied the latter half of the *sloka*. Ashtāvakra said,—Thirteen sacrifices are presided over by Keçi; and thirteen are devoured by *Atichchhandas*, (the longer metres) of the Veda.$—And seeing Ashtāvakra speaking, and the Suta's son silent, and pensive, and with head downcast, the assembly broke into a loud uproar. And when the tumult thus arose in the splendid sacrifice performed by king Janaka, the Brāhmanas well pleased, and with joined hands, approached Ashtāvakra, and began to pay him homage.

---

* *Yupas* (stakes) mean here, *feelings*, etc., which keep men bound to the world. *Rudras* are those who make others cry.

Vandin means to say that the soul is not essentially free from the fetters of happiness and misery arising from the eleven objects of perception. "In this world all men are subject to happiness and misery. We also hear that there are *Rudras* in heaven."

† The Supreme Soul unaffected by happiness and misery really exists,—but His existence is not susceptible of being proved,—nor can the ignorant ever perceive Him. Men attain that condition through these *twelve*, *viz.*, virtue, truth, self-restraint, penances, good-will, modesty, forgiveness, exemption from envy, sacrifice, charity, concentration, and control over the senses.

‡ According to some, endeavours to attain emancipation can be successful not in this world, but in the world of Brahmā. Others say that, to that end, a special *Yuga* is necessary. By bringing forward the objects numbering *thirteen*, Vandin advances the opinion that, virtue, &c., are not sufficient for purposes of emancipation, but that suitable time and place are also essential.

$ Ashtāvakra concludes by citing the same number *thirteen*. The soul, which is essentially unaffected, becomes subject to happiness and misery, through the *thirteen*, *viz.*, the ten organs of locomotion and sense, and intellect, mind, and egoism. But Atichhandas, i. e. those that have surmounted ignorance, namely, the twelve, virtue, &c. destroy those thirteen, and that is emancipation.

"'Thereupon Ashtāvakra said,—Before this, this man, defeating the Brāhmanas in controversy, used to cast them into water. Let Vandin to-day meet with the same fate. Seize him and drown him in water.—Vandin said,—O Janaka, I am the son of king Varuna. Simultanously with thy sacrifice, there also hath commenced a sacrifice extending over twelve years. It is for this that I have despatched the principal Brāhmanas thither. They have gone to witness Varuna's sacrifice. Lo! there they are returning. I pay homage to the worshipful Ashtāvakra, by whose grace to-day I shall join him who hath begot me.—

"'Ashtāvakra said,—Defeating the Brāhmanas either by words or subtlety, Vandin had cast them into the waters of the sea. (That Vedic truth which he had suppresssd by false arguments), have I to-day rescued by the dint of my intellect. Now let candid men judge. As Agni, who knoweth the character of both the good and the bad, leaveth unscorched by his heat the bodies of those whose designs are honest, and is thus partial to them, so good men judge the assertions of boys, although lacking the power of speech, and are favorably disposed towards them. O Janaka, thou hearest my words as if thou hast been stupefied in consequence of having eaten the fruit of the Sleshmātaki tree. Or flattery hath robbed thee of thy sense,—and for this it is that although pierced by my words as an elephant (by the hook), thou heedest them not.—

"'Janaka said,—Listening to thy words, I take them to be excellent and superhuman. Thy form also standeth manifest as superhuman. As thou hast to-day defeated Vandin in discussion, I place even him at thy disposal.—Ashtāvakra said,—O king, Vandin remaining alive, will not serve any purpose of mine. If his father be really Varuna, let him be drowned in the sea.—Vandin said,—I am King Varuna's son. I have no fear (therefore) in being drowned. Even at this moment, Ashtāvakra shall see his long-lost sire, Kahoda.—'

"Lomaça said,—'Then rose before Janaka all the Brāhmanas, after having been duly worshipped by the magnanimous Varuna. Kahoda said,—It is for this, O Janaka, that men pray

for sons, by performing meritorious acts. That in which I had failed hath been achieved by my son. Weak persons may have sons endued with strength; dunces may have intelligent sons; and the illiterate may have sons possessed of learning.—Vandin said,—It is with thy sharpened axe, O monarch, that even Yama severeth the heads of foes. May prosperity attend thee! In this sacrifice of king Janaka, the principal hymns relating to the *Uktha* rites are being chaunted, and the Soma juice also is being adequately quaffed. And the gods themselves, in person, and with cheerful hearts, are accepting their sacred shares.—'

"Lomaça said,—'When in enhanced splendour, the Brāhmanas had risen up, Vandin, taking king Janaka's permission, entered into the waters of the sea. And then Ashtāvakra worshipped his father, and he himself also was worshipped by the Brāhmanas. And having thus defeated the Suta's son,* Ashtāvakra returned to his own excellent hermitage, in company with his uncle. Then in the presence of his mother, his father addressed him, saying,—(O son), do thou speedily enter into this river, Samangā.—And accordingly, he entered (into the water). (And as he plunged beneath the water), all his (crooked) limbs were immediately made straight. And from that day that river came to be called, Samangā, and she became invested with the virtues of purifying (sins). He that shall bathe in her, will be freed from his sins. Therefore, O Yudhishthira, do thou with thy brothers and wife descend to the river, and perform thy ablutions. O Kunti's son, O scion of the Ajamida race, living happily and cheerfully at this place together with thy brothers and the Brāhmanas, thou wilt perform with me other acts of merit, being intent upon good deeds.'"

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-fourth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

---

* *Su* means, *excellent*, and *uta*, *sacrifice*. The compound accordingly means,—*A performer of excellent sacrifices*. It is an appellation of Varuna.

Section CXXXV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'Here, O king, is visible the river Samangā, whose former name was Madhuvilā; and yonder is the spot named Kardamila, the bathing-place of Bharata. The lord of Sachi, when fallen into misery in consequence of having slain Vrittra, became freed from his sin, by performing his ablutions in this Samangā. Here, O bull among men, is the spot where the Maināka mountain hath sunk into the interior of the earth; and it is hence called *Vinaçana*. For obtaining sons, here Aditi in days of yore had cooked that celebrated food, (presided over by the Supreme Being). O ye bulls among men, ascend this lofty mountain, and put an end to your inglorious misery unworthy to be uttered. Here, O king, before thee is the Kanakhala range, the favorite resort of sages. And yonder is the mighty river Gangā. Here, in ancient times, the holy sage Sanatkoomara attained ascetic success. O scion of the Ajamida race, by performing thy ablutions here in this river, thou wilt be freed from all thy sins. O son of Kunti, do thou together with thy ministers, touch (the waters of) this lake called Punya, and this mountain Bhrigutunga, and also (the waters of) these two rivers, called Tushnigangā. Here, O Kunti's son, appeareth the hermitage of the sage Sthulaçiras. Resign here thy anger and sense of self-importance. There, O son of Pandu, is seen the beautiful hermitage of Raivya, where perished Bharadwāja's son, Javakri, profound in Vedic lore.'

"Yudhishthira said.—'How did the mighty sage, Javakri, son of the ascetic Bharadwāja, acquire profundity in the Vedas? And how also did he perish? I am anxious to hear all this, just as it happened. I take delight in listening to the narration of the deeds of god-like men.'

"Lomaça said,—'Bharadwāja and Raivya were two friends. And they dwelt here, ever taking the greatest pleasure in each other's company. Now, Raivya had two sons, named Arvāvashu and Parāvasu. And, O Bharata's son, Bharadwāja;

had an only son, named Yavakri. Raivya and his two sons were versed in the Vedas, while Bharadwāja practised asceticism. But, O son of Bharata, from their very boyhood, the friendship subsisting between those two was unequalled. O sinless one, the high-spirited Yavakri finding that his father, who practised asceticism, was slighted by the Brāhmanas, while Raivya with his sons was greatly respected by them, was overwhelmed with sorrow, and became sore aggrieved. Thereupon, O son of Pāndu, he entered upon severe austerities, for (obtaining) a knowledge of the Vedas. And he exposed his body to a flaming fire. By thus practising the most rigid austerities, he caused anxiety in the mind of Indra. Then Indra, O Yudhishthira, went unto him and addressed him, saying,—Wherefore, O sage, hast thou become engaged in practising such rigid austerities?—Yavakri said,—O thou adored of celestial hosts, I am practising severe penances, because I wish that such a knowledge of the Vedas as hath never been acquired by any Brāhmana whatever, may be manifest unto me. O conquerer of Pāka, these endeavours of mine have been for Vaidic lore. O Kauçika, by the force of my asceticism, I purpose to obtain all sorts of knowledge. O lord, a knowledge of the Vedas as learnt through teachers, is acquired in a long time. Therefore, (with the view of attaining in a short time a proficiency in the Vedas), I have put forth these high endeavours.—Indra said,—O Brāhmana sage, the way that thou hast adopted is not the proper way. What for, O Brāhmana, wilt thou destroy thyself? Go and learn from the lips of a preceptor.—'

"Lomaça said,—'O son of Bharata, having said this, Sakra went way, and Yavakri of immeasurable energy, once more directed his attention to asceticism. O king, we have heard that carrying on severe austerities, he again greatly agitated Indra. And the god Indra, slayer of Vala, again came unto that great sage, who was engaged in austere penances; and forbade him, saying,—Thou art striving with the object that Vaidic lore may be manifest unto thee as well as unto thy father; but thy exertions can never be successful. Nor is this act of thine well-advised,—Yavakrita said,—O lord of the celes-

tials, if thou wilt not do for me what I want, I shall, observing stricter vows, practise still severer penances. O lord of celestials! know that if thou do not fulfil all my desires, I shall then cut off my limbs and offer them as a sacrifice into a blazing fire.—'

"Lomaça said,—'Knowing the determination of that high-souled sage, the sagacious Indra reflected, and hit upon some expedient to dissuade him. Then Indra assumed the juise of an ascetic Brāhmana, aged hundreds of years, and infirm, and suffering from consumption. And he fell to throwing up a dam with sands, at that spot of the Bhāgirathi to which Yavakri used to descend for performing ablutions. Because Yavakrita, chief of the Brāhmanas, paid no heed to Indra's words, the latter began to fill the Gangā with sands. And without cessation, he threw handfuls of sand into the Bhāgirathi, and began to construct the dam, attracting the notice of the sage. And when that bull among the sages, Yavakrita, saw Indra thus earnestly engaged in constructing the dam, he broke into laughter, and said the following words,—What art thou engaged in, O Brāhmana; and what is thy object? Why dost thou, for nothing, make this mighty endeavour?—Indra said,—I am trying, O my son, to dam the Gangā, so that there may be a commodious passage. People experience considerable diffculty in crossing and recrossing (the river) by boat.—Yavakrita said,—O thou of ascetic wealth, thou canst not dam up this mighty current. O Brāhmana, desist from what is impracticable, and take up something that is practicable.—Indra said,—O sage, I have imposed on myself this heavy task, even as, for obtaining a knowledge of the Vedas, thou hast begun these penances, which can never be fruitful.—Yavakrita said,—If, O chief of the celestials, these efforts of mine be fruitless, even as those of thy own, then, O lord of heavenly hosts, be thou pleased to do for me what is practicable. Vouchsafe unto me boons, whereby I may excel other men.—'

"Lomaça said.—'Then Indra granted boons, as was prayed for by the mighty ascetic. Indra said,—As thou desirest, the Vedas will be manifest unto thee, yea,—even unto thy father,

And all thy other desires will also be fulfilled. Return home, O Yavakrita.—

"'Having thus obtained the objects of his desire, Yavakrita came unto his father and said,—The Vedas, O father, will be manifest unto thee as well as unto myself; and I have obtained boons whereby we shall excel all men.—Thereat Bharadwāja said,—O my son, as thou hast obtained the objects of thy desire, thou wilt be proud. And when thou art puffed up with pride, and hast also become uncharitable, destruction will soon overtake thee. O my son, there is an anecdote extant, narrated by the gods. In ancient times, O son, there lived a sage, named Vāladhi, possessed of great energy. And in grief for the death of a child, he practised the severest penances, to have a child that should be immortal. And he obtained a son even as he desired. But the gods though very favorably disposed (towards him), did not yet make his son immortal like unto the gods. They said,—On no condition whatever can a mortal being be made immortal. Thy son's life however shall depend on some instrumental cause.—Thereupon, Vāladhi said,—O chiefs of the celestials, these mountains have been existing eternally; and indestructible as they are, be they the instrumental cause of my son's life.—Afterwards a son was born to the sage, named Medhāvi. And he was of a very irritable temper. And hearing of (the incidents of his birth), he grew haughty, and began to insult the sages. And he ranged over the earth, doing mischief to the Munis, And one day, meeting with the learned sage Dhanushāksha endued with energy, Medhāvi maltreated him. Thereupon, the former cursed him, saying,—Be thou reduced to ashes.—Medhāvi, however, was not reduced to ashes. Then Dhanushāksha caused the mountain which was the instrumental cause of Medhāvi's life, to be shattered by buffalos. And the boy perished, with the destruction of the instrumental cause of his life. And embracing his dead son, Medhāvi's father began to bewail his fate. Now hear from me, O my son, the song which was chaunted by the sages conversant with the Vedas, when they found the sage mourning. *A mortal on no condition whatever can overcome what hath been ordained by Fate. Lo!*

Dhanushāksha succeeded in shattering even the mountain by buffalos. Thus young ascetics become puffed up with pride, for having obtained boons, and perish in a short time. Be thou not one of them. This Raivya, O my son, is possessed of great energy, and his two sons are like him. Therefore, be thou vigilant,—so as never to approach him. O my son, Raivya is a great ascetic of an irritable temper. When angry, he can do thee harm.—Yavakrita said,—I shall do as thou biddest me, O father, do thou not by any means entertain anxiety for that. Raivya deserveth my regard even as thou, my father.—Having replied unto his father in these sweet words, Yavakri, fearing nothing and nobody, began to delight in wantonly offending other Munis.—'"

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-fifth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXXVI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said,—'One day in the month of Chaitra, while fearlessly wandering at large, Yavakri approached the hermitage of Raivya. And, O son of Bharata, in that beautiful hermitage, adorned with trees bearing blossoms, he happened to behold the daughter-in-law of Raivya, sauntering about like a Kinnara woman. And having lost his senses through passion, Yavakri shamelessly spake unto the bashful maiden, saying,—Be thou attached unto me.—Thereupon, knowing his nature, and afraid of a curse, as well as thinking of Raivya's power, she went unto him, saying,—I agree.—Then, O son of Bharata, taking him in private, she kept him chained. O conquerer of foes, returning to his hermitage, Raivya found his daughter-in-law, Parāvasu's wife, in tears. O Yudhishthira, thereat consoling her with sweet words, he enquired of her as to the cause of her grief. Thereupon, the beautiful damsel told him all that Yavakri had said unto her, and what she also had cleverly said unto him. Hearing of this gross misbehaviour of Yavakri, the mind of the sage flamed up, and he waxed exceeding wroth. And being thus seized

with passion, the great sage of a highly irascible temper, tore off a matted lock of his hair, and with chaste *mantras* offered it as a sacrifice on the sacred fire. At this, there sprang out of it a female exactly resembling his daughter-in-law, And then he plucked another matted lock of his hair, and again offered it as a sacrifice into the fire. Thereupon sprang out of it a demon, terrible to behold, and having fierce eyes. Then those two spake unto Raivya, saying—What shall we do ?—Thereat, the angry sage said unto them,—Go and kill Yavakri.—Then, saying,—We shall do (as thou biddest)—they two went away with the intention of slaying Yavakri. And with her charms, the female whom the large-hearted sage had created, robbed Yavakri of his sacred water-pot. Then with his uplifted spear the demon flew at Javakri, when he had been deprived of his water-pot and rendered unclean. And seeing the demon approach with uplifted spear for the purpose of slaying him, Yavakri rose up all on a sudden and fled towards a tank. But finding it devoid of water, he hurried towards all the rivers. But they too were all dried up. And being obstructed again and again by the fierce demon, holding the spear, Yavakri in fright attempted to enter into the *Agnihotra* room of his father. But there, O king, he was repulsed by a blind Sudra warder, and he remained at the door, grasped by the man. And, finding Yavakri thus grasped by the Sudra, the demon hurled his spear at him, and thereupon he fell down dead, pierced in the heart, After slaying Yavakri, the demon went back to Raivya, and, with the permission of that sage, began to live with the female.' "

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-sixth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXXVII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

" Lomaça said,—'O son of Kunti, Bharadwāja returned to his hermitage, after performing the ritual duties of the day, and having collected the sacrificial fuel. And because his

son had been slain, the sacrificial fires, which used to welcome him everyday, did not on that day come forward to welcome him. And marking this change in the *Agnihotra*, the great sage asked the blind Sudra warder seated there, saying,—Why is it, O Sudra, that the fires rejoice not at sight of me? Thou too dost not rejoice, as is thy wont. Is it all well with my hermitage? I hope that my son of little sense, had not gone to the sage Raivya. Answer speedily, O Sudra, all these questions of mine. My mind misgiveth me.—The Sudra said,—Thy son of little sense, had gone to the sage Raivya, and therefore it is that he lieth prostrate (on the ground), having been slain by a powerful demon. Being attacked by the Rākshasa, holding a spear, he attempted to force his way into this room, and I thereupon barred his way with my arms. Then desirous of having water in an unclean state, as he stood hopeless, he was slain by the vehement Rākshasa, carrying a spear in his hand.—On hearing from the Sudra of this great calamity, Bharadwāja, sorely afflicted with grief, began to lament, embracing his dead son. And he said,—O my son, it is for the good of the Brāhmanas that thou didst practise penances, with the intention that the Vedas unstudied by any Brāhmana whatever, might be manifest unto thee. Thy behaviour towards the Brāhmanas had always been for their good, and thou hadst also been innocent in regard to all creatures. But, alas! (at last) thou didst lapse into rudeness. I had prohibited thee, O my son, from visiting the residence of Raivya; but, alas! to that very hermitage, (destructive to thee) as the god of death himself, Yama, didst thou repair. Evil-minded is that man, who, knowing that I am an old man, and also that (Yavakri) was my only son, had given way to wrath. It is through the agency of Raivya that I have sustained the loss of my child. Without thee, O my son, I shall give up my life, the most precious thing in the world. In grief for the death of my son, I renounce my life; but this I say that Raivya's eldest son shall in a short time kill him, although he be innocent. Blessed are those to whom children have never been born, for they lead a happy life, without having to experience the grief (incident to the death of a

child). Who in this world can be more wicked than those who from affliction, and deprived of their sense by sorrow consequent upon the death of a child, curse even their dearest friends! I found my son dead, and, therefore, have cursed my dearest friend. Ah! what second man can there be in this world, destined to suffer so huge a misfortune!—Having thus lamented long, Bharadwāja cremated his son, and then himself entered into a full-blazing fire.'"

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-seventh Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXXVIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'At that very time, the mighty king, Vrihadyumna, of high fortune, who was the *Yajamāna** of Raivya, commenced a sacrifice. And the two sons of Raivya, Arvāvasu and Parāvasu, were engaged by that intelligent monarch, to assist him in the performance of the ceremony. And, O son of Kunti, taking the permission of their father, they two went to the sacrifice, while Raivya with Parāvasu's wife remained in the hermitage. And it came to pass that one day, desirous of seeing his wife, Parāvasu returned home alone, And he met his father in the wood, wrapped in the skin of a black antelope. And the night was far advanced and dark; and Parāvasu, blinded by drowsiness in that deep wood, mistook his father for a straggling deer. And mistaking him for a deer, Parāvasu, for the sake of personal safety, unintentionally killed his father. Then, O son of Bharata, after performing the funeral rites (of his father), he returned to the sacrifice, and there addressed his brother, saying,—Thou wilt never be able to perform this task unassisted. I, again, have killed our father, mistaking him for a deer. O brother, for me do thou observe a vow, prescribed in the case of killing a Brāhmana. O Muni, I shall be able to perform this work (sacrifice), without any assistant.—Arvāvasu said,—Do thou then thyself officiate at this sacrifice of the gifted

* The employer of priests at a sacrifice.

Vrihadyumna; and for thee will I, bringing my senses under perfect control, observe the vow prescribed in the case of slaying a Brāhmana.—'

"Lomaça said.—'Having observed the vow relative to the killing of a Brāhmana, the sage Arvāvasu came back to the sacrifice. Seeing his brother arrive, Parāvasu, in accents choked with delight, addressed Vrihadyumna, saying,—O king, see that this slayer of a Brāhmana enter not into thy sacrifice, nor look at it. Even by a glance, the killer of a Brāhmana can, without doubt, do thee harm.—O lord of men, immediately on hearing this, the king ordered his attendants (to turn out Arvāvasu). O king, on being driven out by the king's attendants, and repeatedly addressed by them—*O slayer of a Brāhmana.* Arvāvasu more than once cried,—It is not I that have killed a Brāhmana.—Nor did he own that he had observed the vow, for his own sake. He said that his brother had committed the sin, and that he had freed him therefrom. Having said this in anger, and been reprimanded by the attendants, the Brāhmana sage of austere penances, retired in silence into the woods. There betaking himself to the severest penances, the great Brāhmana sought the protection of the Sun. Thereupon, the revelation teaching the *mantra* relative to the worship of the Sun, became manifest unto him, and that eternal deity who obtaineth his share (of the sacrificial butter) first, appeared before him in an embodied form.'

"Lomaça said.—'The celestials, O king, were well pleased with Arvāvasu for his acts. And they made him to be engaged as the chief priest in the sacrifice (of Vrihadyumna), and Parāvasu to be dismissed from it. Then Agni and the other celestials (of their own accord) bestowed boons on Arvāvasu. And he also prayed that his father might be restored to life. He further prayed that his brother might be absolved from his sin; that his father might have no recollection of his having been slain; that Bharadwāja and Yavakrita might both be restored to life; and that the solar revelation might attain celebrity (on earth). Then the gods said,—*So be it,*—and conferred on him other boons also. Thereat, O Yudhish-

thira, all of these persons regained their life. Yavakrita now addressed Agni and the other deities, saying,—I had obtained a knowledge of all the Vedas, and also practised penances. How came it then, O chiefs of the immortals, that Raivya succeeded in killing me in that way?—Thereupon the gods said,—O Yavakrita, never act again as thou hast done. What thou askest about is quite possible, for thou hadst learnt the Vedas without exertion, and without the help of a preceptor. But this man (Raivya), bearing various troubles, had satisfied his protector by his conduct, and obtained (from the latter) the excellent Vedas through great exertions and in a long time.—'

"Lomaça said,—'Having said this to Javakri, and restored all those to life, the celestials with Indra at their head, ascended to heaven. Here, O Yudhishthira, is the sacred hermitage of that sage embellished with trees bearing blossoms and fruits at all seasons. O tiger among kings, dwelling at this spot, thou wilt be delivered from all thy sins.'"

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-eighth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXXXIX.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said.—'O descendant of Bharata, O king, now hast thou left behind the mountains, Uçiravija, Maināka and Sweta, as well as the Kāla hills. O son of Kunti, O bull among the descendants of Bharata, here flow before thee the seven Gangās. This spot is pure and holy. Here Agni blazeth forth without intermission. No son of Manu is able to obtain a sight of this wonder. Therefore, O sons of Pandu, concentrate your mind, inorder that ye may intently behold these *tirthas*. Now wilt thou see the play-ground of the gods, marked with their footprints, as we have passed the mountain Kāla. We shall now ascend that white rock—the mountain Mandara, inhabited by the Yaksha Mānibhadra and Kuvera, king of the Yakshas. O king, at this place eighty thousand fleet Gandharbas, and four times as many Kimpurushas and

Yakshas of various shapes and forms, holding various weapons, attend upon Mānibhadra, king of the Yakshas. In these regions their power is very great. And in speed they are even as the wind. They can, without doubt, displace even the lord of the celestials from his seat. Protected by them, and also watched over by the Rākshasas, these mountains have been rendered inaccessible. Therefore, O son of Prithā, do thou concentrate thy thoughts. Besides these, O son of Kunti, here are fierce ministers of Kuvera and his Rākshasa kindred. We shall have to meet them, and, therefore, O Kunti's son, gather up thy energies. O king, the mountain Kailāça is six *yojanas* in height. It contains a gigantic Jujube tree. And, O son of Kunti, numberless gods and Yakshas and Rākshasas and Kinnaras and Nāgas and Suparnas and Gandharbas pass this way, in going towards Kuvera's palace. O king, protected by me, as well as by the might of Bhimasena, and also in virtue of thy own asceticism and self-command, do thou to-day mix with them. May king Varuna, and Yama conqueror of battles, and Gangā, and Yamunā, and this mountain, and the Maruts, and the twin Aswins, and all rivers and lakes, vouchsafe thy safety. And, O effulgent one, mayst thou have safety from all the celestials, and the Asuras, and the Vasus. O Goddess, Gangā, I hear thy roar from this golden mountain, sacred to Indra. O goddess of high fortune, in these mountainous regions, protect the king, worshipped by all of the Ajamida race. O daughter of the mountain (Himālaya), this king is about to enter into these mountainous regions. Do thou, therefore, confer thy protection upon him.'

"Having thus addressed the river, Lomaça bade Yudhishthira, saying,—'Be thou careful.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'This confusion of Lomaça is unprecedented. Therefore, protect ye Krishnā, and be not careless. Lomaça knows this place to be certainly difficult of access. Therefore, do ye practise here the utmost cleanliness.'"

Vaiçampāyana said,—"He next addressed his brother Bhima of vast prowess, saying, 'O Bhimasena, do thou protect Krishnā carefully. Whether Arjuna be near or away, Krishnā in times of danger ever seeketh protection from thee alone.'

"Then the high-souled monarch approached the twins, Nakula and Sahadeva, and after smelling their heads, and rubbing their persons, with tears said unto them,—'Do not fear. Proceed, however, with caution.'"

Thus ends the hundred and thirty-ninth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXL.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said,—'O Vrikodara, there are mighty and powerful invisible spirits at this place. We shall, however, pass it, through the merit of our asceticism and *Agnihotra* sacrifices. O son of Kunti, do thou, therefore, restrain thy hunger and thirst by collecting thine energies, and also, O Vrikodara, have recourse to thy strength and cleverness. O Kunti's son, thou hast heard what the sage (Lomaça) had said regarding mount Kailaça. Ascertain, therefore, after deliberation, how Krishnā will pass the spot. Or, O mighty Bhima of large eyes, do thou return from hence, taking with thee Sahadeva, and all our charioteers, cooks, servants, cars, horses, and the Brāhmanas worn out with travel, while I together with Nakula and the sage Lomaça of severe austerities proceed, subsisting on the lightest fare and observing vows. Do thou, in expectation of my return, cautiously wait at the source of the Gangā, protecting Draupadi till I come back.'

"Bhima replied,—'O descendant of Bharata, although this blesssed princess hath been sore afflicted by toil and distress, yet she easily proceedeth, in the hope of beholding him of the white steeds (Arjuna). Thy dejection also is already very great at not seeing the high-souled Arjuna, who never retreateth from fight. O Bhārata, it is superfluous then to say that if thou seest neither myself nor Sahadeva nor Krishnā, thy dejection will certainly increase. The Brāhmanas had better return with our servants, charioteers, cooks and whomsoever else thou mayst command. I never shall leave thee in these rugged and inaccessible mountainous regions, infested by Rākshasas. And, O tiger among men, also this

princess of high fortune, ever devoted to her lords, desireth not to return without thee. This Sahadeva is always devoted to thee: he too will never retrace his steps. His disposition is known to me. O king, O mighty monarch, we are all eager to behold Savya-sāchin, and, therefore, will we all go together. If we are unable to go over this mountain in our cars, abounding as it doth in defiles, well, we would go on foot. Trouble thyself not, O king,—I shall carry Pānchāla's daughter, wherever she will be incapable of walking. O king, I have decided upon this. Therfore let not thy mind be distracted. I shall also carry over inaccessible tracts those tender-bodied heroes, the twins, the delight of their mother, wherever they will be incapable of proceeding.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'May thy strength increase, O Bhima, as thou speakest thus, and as thou boldly undertakest to carry the illustrious Pānchāli and these twins. Blessed be thou! Such courage dwelleth not in any other individual. May thy strength, fame,merit, and reputation increase! O long-armed one, as thou offerest to carry Kr'shnā and our brothers the twins, exhaustion and defeat never be thine!'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then the charming Krishnā said with a smile, 'O descendant of Bharata, I shall be able to go, and, therefore, be thou not anxious on my account.'

"Lomaça said,—'Access to the mountain, Gandhamādana, is only to be obtained by the dint of asceticism. Therefore, O son of Kunti, shall we all practise austerities, O king. Nakula, Sahadéva, Bhimasena, thou and myself, shall then see him of the white steeds, O Kunti's son.'"

Vaicampāyana said.—"O king, thus conversing together, they saw with delight the extensive domains of Suvāhu, situated on the Himālaya, abounding in horses and elephants, densely inhabited by the Kirātas and the Tanganas, crowded by hundreds of Pulindas, frequented by the celestials, and rife with wonders. King Suvāhu, the lord of the Poolindas, cheerfully received them at the frontiers of his dominions, paying them proper respect. Having been thus received with honor, and having dwelt comfortably at this place, they started for the mountain Himālaya, when the sun shone brightly in

the firmament. And, O king, having entrusted to the care of the lord of the Pulindas all their servants—Indrasena and the others,—and the cooks and the stewards, and Draupadi's accoutrements, and every thing else, those mighty charioteers, the sons of the Kurus, endued with great prowess, set out from that country, and began to proceed cautiously with Krishnā,—all of them cheerful in the expectation of beholding Arjuna.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O Bhimasena, O Pānchāli, and ye twins, hearken unto my words. The acts done (by a person) in a former birth do not perish, (without producing their effects). Behold ! even we have become rangers of the wilderness. Even to see Dhananjaya, exhausted and distressed as we are, we have to bear each other, and pass through impracticable places. This burneth me, even as fire doth a heap of cotton. O hero, I do not see Dananjaya at my side. I reside in the wood with my younger brothers, anxious of beholding him. This thought, as also the memory of that grave insult offered to Yājnaseni, consume me. O Vrikodara, I do not see the invincible Pārtha, of strong bow and incomparable energy, and who is the immediate elder of Nakula. For this, O Vrikodara, I am miserable. In order to see that hero, Dhananjaya, firm in promise, for these five years have I been wandering in various *tirthas*, and beautiful forests and lakes, and yet I do not meet him. For this, O Vrikodora, I am miserable. I do not see the long-armed Gudakeça, of dark blue hue, and leonine gait. For this, O Vrikodara, I am miserable. I do not see that foremost of the Kurus, accomplished in arms, skilful in fight, and matchless among bowmen. For this, O Vrikodara, I am miserable. Distressed as I am, I do not see that son of Prithā, Dhananjanyā, born under the influence of the star Falguni; ranging amidst foes even like Yama at the time of the universal dissolution; possessed of the prowess of an elephant with the temporal juice trickling down; endued with leonine shoulders; not inferior to Sakra himself in prowess and energy; elder in years to the twins; of white steeds; unrivalled in heroism; invincible; and weilding a strong bow. For this, O Vrikodora, I am miser-

able. And he is always of a forgiving temper,—yea, even when insulted by the meanest individual. And he conferreth benefit and protection to the righteous; but to that tortuous person who by craft attempts to do him mischief, Dhananjaya is like unto virulent poison, albeit that one were Sakra himself. And the mighty Vibhatsu of inmeasurable soul and possessing great strength, showeth mercy and extendeth protection even to a foe when fallen. And he is the refuge of us all, and he crusheth his foes in fight. And he hath the power to collect any treasure whatever, and he ministereth unto our happiness. It was through his prowess that I had owned formerly measureless precious jewels of various kinds, which at present Sujodhana hath usurped. It was by his might, O hero, that I had possessed before that palatial amphitheatre embellished with all manner of jewels, and celebrated throughout the three worlds. O Pāndu's son, in prowess, Falguna is like unto Vāsudeva, and in fight he is invincible and unrivalled, even like unto Kārtyavirya. Alas! I see him not, O Bhima. In might, that conqueror of foes goeth in the wake of the invincible and most powerful Sankarshana (Valarāma) and Vāsudeva. In strength of arms, and spirit, he is like unto Purandara himself. And in swiftness, he is even as the wind, and in grace, as the moon, and in ire, he is the eternal Death himself. O mighty-armed one, with the object of beholding that warlike tiger among men, shall we repair to the Gandhamādana mountain, where is the hermitage of Nara and Nārāyana at the site of the celebrated Jujube tree, and which is inhabited by the Yakshas. We shall see that best of mountains. And, practising severe austerities, only on foot we shall sojourn to Kuvera's beautiful lake guarded by Rākshasas. That place cannot be reached by vehicles, O Vrikodara. Neither can cruel, or avaricious, or irascible people attain to that spot, O Bharata's son. O Bhima, in order to see Arjuna, thither shall we repair, in company with Brāhmanas of strict vows, girding on our swords, and wielding our bows. Those only that are impure, meet with flies, gadflies, mosquitoes, tigers, lions, and reptiles, but the pure never come across them. Therefore, regulating our fare, and

restraining our senses, we shall sojourn to the Gandhamādana, desirous of seeing Dhananjaya.'"

Thus ends the hundred and fortieth Section in the tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXLI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Lomaça said,—'O sons of Pāndu, ye have seen many a mountain, and river, and town, and forest, and beautiful *tirtha*; and have touched with your hands the sacred waters. Now this way leads to the celestial mountain Mandara; therefore, be ye attentive, and composed. Ye will now repair to the residence of the celestials, and the divine sages of meritorious deeds. Here, O king, flows the mighty and beautiful river (Alakanandā) of holy water, adored by hosts of celestials and sages, and tracing its source to (the site of) the Jujube tree. It is frequented and worshipped by high-souled Vaihāyasa Vālakhilyas, and Gandharbas of mighty souls. Accustomed to sing the Sāma hymns, the sages,—Marichi, Pulaha, Bhrigu and Angiras, chaunt them at this spot. Here the lord of celestials performeth with the Maruts his daily prayers; and the Sādhyas and the Açwins attend on him. The sun, the moon, and all the luminaries, with the planets, resort to this river, alternately by day and by night. O highly fortunate monarch, that protector of the world, Mahādeva, having a bull for his mark, received on his head the fall of the waters of this river, at the source of the Gangā. O children, approach this goddess of the six attributes, and bow down before her, with concentrated minds.'

"Hearing the words of the high-souled Lomaça, the sons of Pāndu reverentially worshipped the river (Gangā), flowing through the firmament. And, after having adored her, the pious sons of Pāndu resumed their journey, accompanied by the sages. And it came to pass that those best of men beheld at a distance some white object of vast proportions, even like the Meru, and stretching on all sides. And knowing that Pāndu's sons were intent upon asking (him), Lomaça

versed in speech, said, 'Hear, O sons of Pāndu! O best of men, what thou seest before thee, of vast proportions, like unto a mountain, and beautiful as the Kailāça cliff, is a collection of the bones of the mighty Daitya, Naraka. Being placed on a mountain, it looketh like one. The Daitya was slain by that Supreme Soul, the eternal God Vishnu, for the good of the lord of celestials. Aiming at the possession of Indra's place, by the force of austerities and Vaidic lore, that mighty-minded (demon) had practised austere penances for ten thousand years. And on account of his asceticism, as also of the force and might of his arms, he had grown invincible, and always harassed (Indra). And, O sinless one, knowing his strength and austerities, and observance of religious vows, Indra became agitated and was overwhelmed with fear. And mentally he thought of the eternal deity Vishnu. And thereat the graceful lord of the universe, who is present everywhere, appeared and stood before him manifest. And the sages and celestials, began to propitiate Vishnu with prayers. And in his presence, even Agni of the six attributes and of blazing beauty, being overpowered by his effulgence, became shorn of radience. And seeing before him the God Vishnu, the chief of the celestials, who weilds of thunder-bolt, bowing with head bent down, readily apprised Vishnu of the source of his fear. Thereupon Vishnu said,—I know, O Sakra, that thy fear proceedeth from Naraka, that lord of the Daityas. By the merit of his successful ascetic acts, he aimeth at Indra's position. Therefore, for pleasing thee, I shall certainly sever his soul from his body, although he hath achieved success in asceticism. Do thou, O lord of celestials, wait for a moment.—Then the exceedingly powerful Vishnu depri ved (Naraka) of his senses (by striking him) with his hand. And he fell down on the earth, even like the monarch of mountains struck by (thunder). He was thus slain by a miracle, and his bones lie gathered at this spot. Here also is manifest another deed of Vishnu's. Once the whole Earth having been lost, and sunk into the nether regions, she was lifted up by him, in the shape of a boar having a single tusk.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'O worshipful one, relate in particular

how Vishnu, the lord of the celestials, raised up the earth sunk an hundred *yojanas*? In what manner also was that support of all created things—the goddess Earth of high fortune—who dispenseth blessings, and bringeth forth all sorts of corn, rendered stable? Through whose power had she sunk an hundred Yojanas below, and under what circumstances was exhibited this greatest exploit of the SupremeBeing? O chief of the twice-born race, I wish to hear all about it in detail as it happened. Certainly, it is known to thee.'

"Lomaça said.—'O Yudhishthira, listen to all at length,' as I relate the story, which thou hast asked me (to narrate). O child, in days of yore, there was (once) a terrible time in the Krita Yuga, when the eternal and primeval Deity assumed the duties of Yama. And, O thou that never fallest off, when the God of gods began to perform the functions of Yama, there died not a creature, while the births were as usual. Then there began to multiply birds, and beasts, and kine, and sheep, and deer, and all kinds of carnivorous animals. O tiger among men and vanquisher of foes, then the human race also increased by thousands and by tens of thousands, even like unto (a current of) water. And, O my son, when the increase of population had been so frightful, the Earth oppressed with the excessive burden, sank down for an hundred Yojanas. And suffering pain in all her limbs, and being deprived of her senses by excessive pressure, the Earth in distress sought the protection of Nārāyana, the foremost of the gods. The Earth spake, saying,—It is by thy favor, O possessor of the six attributes, that I had been able to remain so long in my position. But I have been overcome with burden, and now I cannot hold myself any longer. It behoveth thee, O adorable one, to relieve this load of mine. I have sought thy protection, O lord; and do thou, therefore, extend unto me thy favor.—Hearing these words of hers, the eternal lord, possessor of the six attributes, complacently said, in words uttered in distinct letters. Vishnu said,—Thou needst not fear, O afflicted Earth, the bearer of all treasures. I shall act so, that thou mayst be made light.—'

"Lomaça said,—'Having thus dismissed the Earth, who hath

the mountains for her ear-rings, he suddenly became turned into a boar with one tusk, and of exceeding effulgence. Causing terror with his glowing red eyes, and emitting fumes from his blazing lustre, he began to swell in magnitude in that region. O hero, then holding the Earth with his single radiant tusk, that being who pervadeth the Vedas, raised her up an hundred *yojanas*. And while she was being thus raised, there ensued a mighty agitation. And all the celestials, together with the sages of ascetic wealth, became agitated. And heaven, and the firmament, and also the Earth, were filled with exclamations of *Oh!* and *Alas!* And neither the celestials nor men could rest in peace. Then countless celestials together with the sages, went to Brahmā, who was seated, burning as it were in his (own) lustre. Then approaching Brahmā, the lord of the celestials, and the witness of the acts of all beings, they with joined hands spake the following words,—O lord of celestials, all created beings have become agitated, and the mobile and immobile creatures are restless,—yea, O lord of the celestials, even the oceans, are found to be vexed. And this whole earth hath gone down an hundred *yojanas*. What is the matter? And by whose influence is it that the whole universe is in ferment? May it please thee to explain it unto us without delay, for we are all bewildered.—Thereupon Brahmā replied,—Ye immortals! do ye not entertain fear of the Asuras, in any matter or place. Hearken, ye celestials, to the reason to which all this commotion is owing! This agitation in the heavens hath been produced by the influence of that illustrious Being, who is omnipresent, eternal, and the never-perishing Soul. That Supreme Soul, Vishnu, hath lifted up the Earth, who had entirely sunk down an hundred *yojanas*. This commotion hath taken place in consequence of the Earth being raised up. Know ye this and dispell your doubts.—The celestials said,—Where is that Being who with pleasure raiseth up the Earth? O possesser of the six attributes, mention unto us the place. Thither shall we repair.—Brahmā said,—Go ye. May good betide you! Ye will find him resting in the Nandana (gardens). Yonder is visible the glorious and worshipful Suparna (Gaduda),

After having raised the Earth, the Supreme Being, from whom the worlds become manifest, flameth even in the shape of a boar, like unto the all-consuming fire at the universal dissolution. And on his breast is really to be seen the gem, Srivatsa. (Go) and behold that Being knowing no deterioration.—'

"Lomaça said,—'Then the celestials, placing the grand-sire at their head, came to that infinite Soul,—and having listened to his praise, bade him adieu and went back to whence they had come.' "

Vaiçampāyana said.—"O Janamejaya, having heard this story, all the Pāndavas without delay and with alacrity, began to preceed by the way pointed out by Lomaça."

Thus ends the hundred and forty-second Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXLIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"O king, then those foremost of bowmen, of immeasurable prowess, holding bows stringed at full stretch, and equipped with quivers and arrows, and wearing finger-protectors made of the guana-skin, and with their swords on, proceeded with Pānchāli towards the Gandhamādana, taking with them the best of Brāhmanas. And on their way they saw various lakes, and rivers, and mountains, and forests, and trees of wide-spreading shade on mountain summits, and places abounding in tress bearing flowers and fruits in all seasons, and frequented by celestials and sages. And restraining their senses within their inner self, and subsisting on fruits and roots, the heroes passed through rugged regions, craggy and difficult of passage, beholding many and various kinds of beasts. Thus those high-souled ones entered the mountain inhabited by the sages, the Siddhas, and the celestials, and frequented by the Kinnaras, and the favorite region of the Gandharbas and the Apsarās. And, O lord of men, as those mighty heroes were entering the mountain Gandhamādana, there arose a violent wind, attended with a heavy shower. And owing to this, mighty clouds of

dust, bearing lots of dry leaves, rose, and all on a sudden covered earth, air and firmament. And when the heavens had been covered with dust, nothing could be perceived; neither could they (the Pāndavas) speak to one another. And with eyes enveloped with darkness, and pushed by the wind carrying particles of rock, they could not see one another. And there began to arise mighty sounds proceeding from the trees, and also from those breaking down incessantly under the force of the wind, and falling to the ground. And distracted by gusts of the wind, they thought,—'Are the heavens falling down; or the earth and the mountains being rent?' And afraid of the wind, they felt about with their hands, and took shelter under the wayside trees, and ant-hills, and in caverns. Then holding his bow, and supporting Krishnā, the mighty Bhimsena stood under a tree. And Yudhishthira the just with Dhaumya crept into the deep wood. And Sahadeva carrying the sacred fire with him, took shelter under a rock. And Nakula, together with Lomaça, and other Brāhmanas of great asceticism, stood in a fright, each under a tree. Then when the wind had abated and the dust subsided, there came down a shower in torrents. There also arose a loud rattling noise, like unto the thunder hurled; and quick-flashing lightning began to play gracefully upon the clouds. And being helped on by the swift wind, showers of rain poured down without intermission, filling all sides round. And, O lord of men, all around there began to flow many rivers covered with foam and turbid with mud; and these, bearing volumes of water spread over with frothy rafts, rushed down with tremendous roar, uprooting trees. And afterwards when that sound had ceased, and the air had resumed its calmness, and the waters had subsided, and the sun had arisen, they (each of them) cautiously came out of their coverts, and met together, O descendant of Bharata. And then the heroes started for the mountain Gandhamādana."

Thus ends the hundred and forty-third Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CXLIV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" When the high-souled sons of Pāndu had proceeded only two miles, Draupadi unaccustomed to travel on foot, sank down. Weary and afflicted as she was, the poor daughter of Pānchāla became faint, on account of the hailstorm, and also of her extreme delicacy. And trembling with faintness, the black-eyed one supported herself on her thighs, with her plump arms, becoming (her graceful form). And thus resting for support on her thighs resembling the trunk of an elephant, and which were in contact with each other, she suddenly dropped upon the ground, trembling like a plantain tree. And finding that the beautiful one was falling down like a twisted creeper, Nakula ran forward and supported her. And he said,—'O king, this black-eyed daughter of Pānchāla, being weary, hath fallen down upon the ground. Do thou, therefore, tend her, O son of Bharata. Undeserving as she is of misery, this lady of slow pace hath been subject to great hardships, and she is also worn out with the fatigues of the journey. O mighty king, do thou, therefore, comfort her.'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Having heard these words of Nakula, the king as also Bhima and Sahadeva, became sore afflicted, and hastily ran towards her. And finding her weak, and her countenance pale, the pious son of Kunti began to lament in grief, taking her on his lap. Yudhishthira said,—'Accustomed to ease, and deserving to sleep in well-protected rooms, on beds spread over with fine sheets, how doth this beautiful one sleep prostrate on the ground! Alas! on my account (alone), the delicate feet and the lotus-like face of this one deserving of all excellent things, have contracted a dark-blue hue. O what have I done! Fool that I am, having been addicted to dice, I have been wandering in the forest, full of wild beasts, taking Krishnā in my company. This large-eyed one had been bestowed by her father, the king of the Drupadas, in the hope that the blessed girl would be

happy, by obtaining the sons of Pāndu for her lords. It is on account of my wretched self, that without obtaining any thing hoped for, she sleepeth prostrate on the ground, tried with hardships, sorrow and travel.' "

Vaiçampāyana said.—" While king Yudhishthira the just was lamenting thus, Dhaumya with all the other principal Brāhmanas came to the spot. And they began to console him and to honor him with blessings. And they recited *mantras* capable of dispelling Rākshasas, and (to that end) also performed rites. And on the *mantras* being recited by the great ascetics, inorder to the restoration of (Pānchāli's) health, Pānchāli, frequently touched by the Pāndavas with their soothing palms, and fanned by cool breezes surcharged with particles of water, felt ease, and gradually regained her senses. And finding that exhausted poor lady restored to her senses, the sons of Prithā, placing her on a deer-skin, caused her to take rest. And taking her feet of red soles, bearing auspicious marks, the twins began to press them gently with their hands, scarred by the bow-string. And Yudhishthira the just, the foremost of the Kurus, also comforted her, and addressed Bhima in the following words,—'O Bhima, there yet remain many mountains (before us), rugged, and inaccessible because of snow. How, O long-armed one, will Krishnā pass over them ?' Thereupon Bhima said,—'O king, I myself shall carry thee, together with this princess and these bulls among men, the twins; therefore, O king of kings, resign not thy mind unto despair. Or, at thy bidding, O sinless one, Hidimvā's son, the mighty Ghatotkacha, who is capable of ranging the skies, and who is like unto me in strength, will carry us all.' "

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then with Yudhishthira's permission, Bhima thought of his Rākshasa son. And no sooner was he thought of by his father, than the pious Ghatotkacha made his appearance; and saluting the Pāndavas and the Brāhmanas, stood with joined hands. And they also carressed him of mighty arms. He then addressed his father, Bhimasena of dreadful prowess, saying,—'Having been thought of by thee, I have come here with speed, in order to serve thee. Do thou, O long-armed one, command me. I shall certainly be able to

perform whatever thou biddst.' Hearing this, Bhimasena hugged the Rākshasa to his breast."

Thus ends the hundred and forty-fourth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXLV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said,—'O Bhima, let this mighty and heroic Rākshasa chief, thy legitimate son, devoted to us, and truthful, and conversant with virtue, carry (his) mother (Draupadi) without delay. And, O possessor of dreadful prowess, depending on the strength of thy arms, I shall reach the Gandhamādana, unhurt, together with Pānchāla's daughter.'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing the words of his brother, that tiger among men, Bhimasena, commanded his son, Ghatotkacha, the repressor of foes, saying,—'O invincible son of Hidimvā, this thy mother hath been sorely tired. Thou art, again, strong and capable of going wherever thou likest. Do thou, therefore, O ranger of the skies, carry her. May prosperity attend thee! Taking her on thy shoulders, thou shalt go in our company, adopting a course not far overhead,—so that thou mayst not render her uneasy.' Thereat, Ghatotkacha said,—'Even single-handed, I am able to carry Yudhishthira the just, and Dhaumya, and Krishnā, and the twins,—and what wonder then that I shall to-day carry them, when I have others to assist me? And, O sinless one, hundreds of other heroic (Rākshasas), capable of moving through the sky, and of assuming any shape at will, will together carry you all with the Brāhmanas.'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Saying this, Ghatotkacha carried Krishnā in the midst of the Pāndavas, and the other (Rākshashas) also began to carry the Pāndavas. And by virtue of his native energy, Lomaça of incomparable effulgence moved along the path of the Siddhas, like unto a second sun. And at the command of the lord of the Rākshasas, those Rākshasas of terrific prowess began to proceed, bearing all the

other Brāhmanas, and beholding many a romantic wood. And they proceeded towards the gigantic jujube tree. And carried by the Rākshasas of great speed, proceeding at a rapid pace, the heroes passed over long-extending ways quickly, as if over short ones. And on their way they saw various tracts crowded with *Mlechchha* people, and containing mines of diverse gems. And they also saw hillocks teeming with various minerals, thronged with Vidyādharas, inhabited on all sides by monkeys and Kinnaras, and Kimpurushas, and Gandharbas, and filled with peacocks, and *chamaras*, and apes, and *rurus*, and bears, and *gavayas*, and buffalos, and intersected with a network of rivulets, and inhabited by various birds and beasts, and beautified by elephants, and abounding in trees and enraptured birds. After having thus passed many countries, and also the Uttarakurus, they saw that foremost of mountains, the Kailāça, containing many wonders. And by the side of it, they beheld the hermitage of Nara and Nārāyana, with celestial trees bearing flowers and fruits in all seasons. And they also beheld that beautiful jujube of round trunk. And it was fresh; and of deep shade; and of excellent beauty; and of thick, soft and sleek foliage; and healthful; and having gigantic boughs; and wide-spreading; and of incomparable lustre; and bearing full-grown, tasteful, and holy fruits dropping honey. And this celestial tree was frequented by hosts of mighty sages, and was always inhabited by various birds maddened with animal spirits. And it grew at a spot devoid of mosquitoes and gad-flies, and abounding in fruits and roots and water, and covered with green grass, and inhabited by the celestials and the Gandharbas, and of smooth surface, and naturally healthful, and beauteous, and cool, and of delicate feel. Having reached that (tree), together with those bulls among Brāhmanas, the high-souled ones gently alighted from the shoulders of the Rākshasas. Then in company with those bulls among the twice-born ones, the Pāndavas beheld that romantic asylum presided over by Nara and Nārāyana; devoid of gloom; and sacred; and untouched by the solar rays; and free from those rubs, *viz.*, hunger, and thirst, heat and cold; and removing (all)

sorrow; and crowded with hosts of mighty sages; and adorned with the grace proceeding from the Vedas, Sāman, Rich, and Yajus; and, O king, inaccessible to men who have renounced religion; and beautified with offerings, and *homas*; and sacred; and well-swept and daubed; and shining all around with offerings of celestial blossoms; and spread over with altars of sacrificial fire, and sacred laddles and pots; and graced with large water-jars, and baskets; and the refuge of all beings; and echoing with the chaunting of the Vedas; and heavenly; and worthy of being inhabited; and removing fatigue; and attended with splendour; and of incomprehensible merit; and majestic with divine qualities. And the hermitage was inhabited by hosts of great sages, subsisting on fruits and roots; and having their senses under perfect control; and clad in black deer-skins; and effulgent like unto the Sun and Agni; and of souls magnified by asceticism; and intent on emancipation; and leading the Vāna Prastha mode of life; and of subdued senses; and identified with the Supreme Soul; and of high fortune; and reciting Vaidic hymns. Then having purified himself and restrained his senses, that son of Dharma, the intelligent Yudhishthira of exceeding energy, accompanied by his brothers, approached those sages. And all the great sages endued with supernatural knowledge, knowing Yudhishthira arrive, received him joyfully. And those sages engaged in the recitation of the Vedas, and like unto fire itself, after having conferred blessings on Yudhishthira, cheerfully accorded him fitting reception. And they gave him clean water and flowers and fruits and roots. And Yudhishthira the just received with regard the things gladly offered for his reception by the great sages. And then, O sinless one, Pandu's son together with Krishnā and his brothers, and thousands of Brāhmanas versed in the Vedas and the Vedāngas, entered into that holy hermitage, like unto the abode of Sakra, and pleasing the mind with heavenly odours, and resembling heaven itself, and attended with beauty. There the pious (Yudhishthira) beheld the hermitage of Nara and Nārāyana, beautified by the Bhāgirathi, and worshipped by the gods and the celestial sages,

And seeing that hermitage inhabited by the Brahmarshis, and containing fruits dropping honey, the Pāndavas were filled with delight. And having reached that place, the high-souled ones began to dwell with the Brāhmanas. And there beholding the holy lake Vinda, and the mountain Maināka, of golden summits, and inhabited by various species of birds, the magnanimous ones lived happily and with joy. And there the sons of Pāndu together with Krishnā took pleasure in ranging excellent and captivating woods, shining with flowers of every season; beauteous on all sides with trees bearing blown blossoms; and bending down with the weight of fruits; and attended by numerous male *kokilas*; and of glossy foliage; and thick; and having cool shade; and lovely to behold. And they took delight in beholding diverse beautiful lakes of limpid water, and shining all around with lotuses and lilies. And there, O lord, the balmy breeze, bearing pure fragrance, blew gladdening all the Pāndavas, together with Krishnā. And hard by the gigantic jujube, the mighty sons of Kunti saw the Bhāgirathi of easy descent, and cool, and furnished with fresh lotuses, and having stairs made of rubies, and corals, and graced with trees, and scattered over with celestial flowers, and gladsome to the mind. And at that spot, frequented by celestials and sages, and extremely inaccessible, they, after having purified themselves, offered oblations unto the *pitris* and the gods and the *rishis*, in the sacred waters of the Bhāgirathi. Thus those bulls among men, the heroic perpetuators of the Kuru race, began to reside there with the Brāhmanas, offering oblations, and practising meditation. And those tigers among men, the Pāndavas, of god-like appearance, felt delight in witnessing the various amusements of Draupadi."

Thus ends the hundred and forty-fifth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CXLVI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"There observing cleanliness, those tigers among men dwelt for six nights, in expectation of beholding Dhananjaya. And it came to pass that all of a sudden there blew a wind from the north-east, and brought a celestial lotus of a thousand petals, and effulgent as the sun. And Pānchāli saw that pure and charming lotus of unearthly fragrance, brought by the wind and left on the ground. And having obtained that excellent and beautiful lotus, that blessed one became exceedingly delighted, O king; and addressed Bhimasena in the following words,—'Behold, O Bhima, this most beautiful unearthly flower, having within it the very source of fragrance. It gladdeneth my heart, O repressor of foes. This one I shall present to Yudhishthira the just. Do thou, therefore, procure others for my satisfaction,—inorder that I may carry them to our hermitage in the Kāmyaka. If, O Prithā's son, I have found grace with thee, do thou then procure others of this species in large numbers. I wish to carry them to our hermitage.' Having said this, the blameless lady of beautiful glances approached Yudhishthira the just, taking the flower. And knowing the desire of his beloved queen, that bull among men, Bhima of great strength, also set out, in order to gratify her. And intent upon fetching the flowers, he began to procced at a rapid pace, facing the wind, in the direction from which the flower had come. And taking the bow, inlaid with gold on the back, as also arrows like unto venomous snakes, he proceeded as a lion in anger, or an elephant in rut. And all beings gazed at him, holding a mighty bow and arrows. And neither exhaustion, nor languor, neither fear, nor confusion ever possessed the son of Prithā and the offspring of Vāyu (wind). And desirous of pleasing Draupadi, the mighty one, free from fear or confusion, ascended the peak, depending on the strength of his arms. And that slayer of foes began to range that beautiful peak covered with trees, creepers and shrubs; and of black

rocky base; and frequented by Kinnaras; and variegated with minerals, plants, beasts, and birds of various hues; and appearing like an upraised arm of the Earth adorned with an entire suit of ornaments. And that one of matchless prowess proceeded, fixing his look at the slopes of the Gandhamādana,—beautified with flowers of every season—and revolving various thoughts in his mind, and with his ears, eyes and mind rivetted to the spots resounding with the notes of male *kokilas*, and ringing with the hum of black bees. And like an elephant in rut raging mad in a forest, that one of mighty prowess smelt the rare odour proceeding from the flowers of every season. And he was fanned by the fresh breeze of the Gandhamādana, bearing the perfumes of various blossoms, and cooling like unto a father's touch. On his fatigue being removed, the down on his body stood on end. And (in this state), that repressor of foes, for the flowers began to survey all the mountain, inhabited by Yakhas, and Gandharbas, and celestials, and Brahmarshis. And brushed by the leaves of the *Saptachchhada* tree, besmeared in fresh red, black and white minerals, he looked as if decorated with lines of holy unguents drawn by fingers. And with clouds stretching at its sides, the mountain seemed dancing with outspread wings. And on account of the trickling waters of springs, it appeared to be decked with necklaces of pearls. And it contained romantic caverns, and groves, and cascades, and caves. And there were excellent peacocks dancing to the jingling of the bangles of Apsarās. And its rocky surface was worn away by the end of the tusks of the elephants presiding over the cardinal points. And with the waters of rivers falling down, the mountain looked as if its clothes were getting loosened. And that graceful son of the wind-god playfully and cheerfully went on, pushing away by his force countless intertwisted creepers. And stags in curiosity gazed at him, with the grass in their mouth. And not having experienced fear (ever before), they were unalarmed, and did not flee away. And being engaged in fulfiling the desire of his love, the youthful son of Pāndu, stalwart; and of splendour like unto the hue of gold; and

having a body strong as a lion's; and treading like a mad elephant; and possessing the force of a mad elephant; and having coppery eyes, like unto those of a mad elephant; and capable of checking a mad elephant, began to range the romantic sides of the Gandhamādana, with his beautiful eyes uplifted; and displaying, as it were, a novel type of beauty. And the wives of Yakshas and Gandharbas, sitting invisible by the side of their husbands, stared at him, turning their faces, and with various motions. Intent upon gratifying Draupadi exiled unto the woods, as he was ranging the beautiful Gandhamādana, he remembered the many and various woes caused by Duryodhana. And he thought,—'Now that Arjuna hath sojourned to heaven, and that I too have come away to procure the flowers, what will our brother Yudhishthira do at present? Surely, from affection, and doubting their prowess, that foremost of men, Yudhishthira, will not let Nakula and Sahadeva (come in search of us). How, again, can I obtain the flowers soon?' Thinking thus, that tiger among men proceeded in amain like unto the king of birds, his mind and sight fixed on the delightful sides of the mountain. And having for his provisions on the journey the words of Draupadi, the mighty son of Pāndu, Vrikodara Bhima, endued with strength and the swiftness of the wind, with his mind and sight fixed on the blooming slopes of the mountain, proceeded speedily, making the earth tremble with his tread, even as doth a hurricane at the equinox; and frightening herds of elephants; and grinding lions and tigers, and deer; and uprooting and smashing large trees; and tearing away by force plants and creepers, like unto an elephant ascending higher and higher the summit of a mountain; and roaring fiercely even as a cloud attended with thunder. And awakened by that mighty roaring of Bhima, tigers came out of their dens, while other rangers of the forest hid themselves. And the coursers of the skies sprang up (on their wing) in fright. And herds of deer hurriedly ran away. And bears left the trees (and fled). And lions forsook their dens. And the mighty lions were roused from their slumber. And the buffalos stared. And the elephants in fright, leaving that

wood, ran to more extensive forests, in company with their mates. And the boars, and the deer, and the lions, and the buffalos, and the tigers, and the jackals, and the *gavayas* of the wood, began to cry in herds. And the ruddy geese, and the gallinules, and the ducks, and the *kārandavas*,* and the *plavas*,† and the parrots, and the male *kokilas*, and the herons in confusion flew in all directions; while some proud elephants urged by their mates, as also some lions and elephants in rage, flew at Bhimsena. And as they were distracted at heart through fear, these fierce animals discharging urine and dung, set up loud yells with gaping mouths. Thereupon the illustrious and graceful son of the wind-god, the mighty Pāndava, depending upon the strength of his arms, began to slay one elephant with another elephant, and one lion with another lion; while he despatched the others with slaps. And on being struck by Bhima, the lions, and the tigers, and the leopards, in fright gave loud cries, and discharged urine and dung. And after having destroyed these, the handsome son of Pāndu, possessed of mighty strength, entered into the forest, making all sides resound with his shouts. And then the long-armed one saw on the slopes of the Gandhamādana a beautiful plantain tree spreading over many a *yoyana*. And like unto a mad lion, that one of great strength proceeded in amain towards that tree, breaking down various plants. And that foremost of strong persons—Bhima—uprooting innumerable plantain trunks equal in height to many palm-trees (placed one above another), cast them on all sides with force. And that highly powerful one, haughty like a male lion, sent up shouts. And then he encountered countless beasts of gigantic size, and stags, and monkeys, and lions, and buffalos, and aquatic animals. And what with the cries of these, and what with the shouts of Bhima, even the beasts and birds that were at a distant part of the wood, became all frightened. And hearing those cries of beasts and birds, myriads of aquatic fowls suddenly rose up on

* A sort of ducks.

† A sort of ducks.

wetted wings. And seeing these fowls of water, that bull among the Bhāratas proceeded in that direction ; and saw a vast and romantic lake. And that fathomless lake was, as it were, being fanned by the golden plantain trees on the coast, shaken by the soft breezes. And immediately descending into that lake abounding in lilies and lotuses, he began to sport lustily like unto a mighty maddened elephant. Having thus sported there for a long while, he of immeasurable effulgence ascended, in order to penetrate with speed into that forest filled with trees. Then the Pāndava winded with all his might his loud-blowing shell. And striking his arms with his hands, the mighty Bhima made all the points of heaven resound. And filled with the sounds of the shell, and with the shouts of Bhimasena, and also with the reports produced by the striking of his arms, the caves of the mountain seemed as if they were roaring. And hearing those loud arm-strokes, like unto the crashing of thunder, the lions that were slumbering in the caves, uttered mighty howls. And being terrified by the yelling of the lions, the elephants also, O Bhārata, sent forth tremendous roars, which filled the mountain. And hearing those sounds emitted, and knowing also Bhimasena to be his brother, the ape Hanumāna, the chief of monkeys, with the view of doing good to Bhima, obstructed the path leading to heaven. And thinking that he (Bhima) should not pass that way, (Hanumāna) lay across the narrow path, beautified by plantain trees, obstructing it for the sake of the safety of Bhima. With the object that Bhima might not come by curse or defeat, by entering into the plantain wood, the ape Hanumāna of huge body lay down amidst the plantain trees, being overcome with drowsiness. And he began to yawn, lashing his long tail, raised like unto the pole consecrated to Indra, and sounding like thunder. And on all sides round, the mountain by the mouths of caves emitted those sounds in echo, like a cow lowing. And as it was being shaken by the reports produced by the lashing of the tail, the mountain with its summits tottering, began to crumble all around. And overcoming that roaring of mad elephants, the sounds of his tail spread over the varied slopes of the mountain,

"On those sounds being heard, the down of Bhima's body stood on end; and he began to range that plantain wood, in search of the source of those sounds. And that one of mighty arms saw the monkey-chief in the plantain wood, on an elevated rocky base. And he was hard to be looked at, even as the lightning-flash; and of coppery hue like that of the lightning-flash; and endued with the voice of the lightning-flash; and quick-moving as the lightning-flash; and having his short fleshy neck supported on his shoulders; and with his waist slender in consequence of the fullness of his shoulders. And his tail covered with long hair, and a little bent at the end, was raised like unto a banner. And (Bhima) saw Hanumāna's head furnished with small lips, and coppery face and tongue, and red ears, and brisk eyes, and bare white incisors sharpened at the edge. And his head was like unto the shining moon; adorned with white teeth within the mouth; and with mane scattered over, resembling a heap of *açoka* flowers. And amidst the golden plantain trees, that one of exceeding effulgence was lying like unto a blazing fire, with his radiant body. And that slayer of foes was casting glances with his eyes reddened with intoxication. And the intelligent Bhima saw that mighty chief of monkeys, of huge body, lying like unto the Himālaya, obstructing the path of heaven. And seeing him alone in that mighty forest, the undaunted athletic Bhima, of long arms, approached him with rapid strides, and uttered a loud shout like unto the thunder. And at that shout of Bhima, beasts and birds became all alarmed. The powerful Hanumāna, however, opening his eyes partially, looked at him (Bhima) with disregard, with eyes reddened with intoxication. And then smilingly addressing him, Hanumāna said the following words,—Ill as I am, I was sleeping sweetly. Why hast thou awakened me? Thou shouldst show kindness to all creatures, as thou hast reason. Belonging to the animal species, we are ignorant of virtue. But being endued with reason, men show kindness towards creatures. Why do then reasonable persons like thee commit themselves to acts contaminating alike body, speech, and heart; and destructive of virtue? Thou

knowest not what virtue is, neither hast thou taken council of the wise. And therefore it is thatfrom ignorance, and childishness thou destroyest the lower animals. Say, who art thou, and what for hast thou come to this forest devoid of humanity and human beings? And, O foremost of men, tell thou also, whither thou wilt go to-day. Further it is impossible to proceed. Yonder hills are inaccessible. O hero, save the passage obtained by the practise of asceticism, there is no passage to that place. This is the path of the celestials: it is ever impassable by mortals. Out of kindness, O hero, do I dissuade thee. Do thou hearken unto my words. Thou canst not proceed further from this place. Therefore, O lord, do thou desist. O chief of men, to-day every way thou art welcome to this place. If thou think it proper to accept my words, do thou then, O best of men, rest here, partaking of fruits and roots, sweet as ambrosia, and do not have thyself destroyed for naught.' "

Thus ends the hundred and forty-sixth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXLVII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" O repressor of foes, hearing these words of the intelligent monkey-chief, the heroic Bhima answered,—'Who art thou? And why also hast thou assumed the shape of a monkey? It is a Kshatriya—one of a race next to the Brāhmanas—that asketh thee. And he belongeth to the Kuru race and the lunar stock, and was borne by Kunti in her womb, and is one of the sons of Pāndu, and is the offspring of the wind-god, and is known by the name of Bhimasena.' Hearing these words of the Kuru hero, Hanumāna smiled,—and that son of the wind-god (Hanumāna) spake unto that offspring of the wind-god (Bhimsena), saying,—'I am a monkey. I will not allow thee the passage thou desirest. Better desist and go back. Do thou not meet with destruction.' At this, Bhimasena replied,—'Destruction or anything else do I not ask thee about, O monkey. Do thou give me way. Arise! Do

not came by grief at my hands.' Hanumāna said,—'I have no strength to rise: I am suffering from illness. If go thou must, do thou go by overleaping me.' Bhima said,—'The Supreme Soul void of the properties pervadeth a body all over. Him knowable alone by knowledge, I cannot disregard. And, therefore, will I not overleap thee. If I had not known Him from whom become manifest all creatures, I would have leapt over thee and also the mountain,—even as Hanumāna had bounded over the ocean.' Thereupon Hanumāna said,—'Who is that Hanumāna, who had bounded over the ocean? I ask thee, O best of men. Relate, if thou canst.' Bhima replied,—'He is even my brother, excellent with every perfection, and endued with intelligence and strength both of mind and body. And he is the illustrious chief of monkies, renowned in the Rāmāyana. And for Rāma's queen, that king of the monkeys even with one leap had crossed the ocean extending over an hundred *yoyanas*. That mighty one is my brother. I am equal unto him in energy, strength, and prowess, and also in fight. And able am I to punish thee. So arise. Either give me passage, or witness my manhood to-day. If thou do not my bidding, I shall send thee to the abode of Yama."'

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then knowing him (Bhima) to be intoxicated with strength, and proud of the might of his arms, Hanumāna, slighting him at heart, said the following words,—'Relent thou, O sinless one. In consequence of age, I have no strength to get up. From pity for me, do thou go, moving aside my tail.' Being thus addressed by Hanumāna, Bhima, proud of the strength of his arms, took him for one wanting in energy and prowess, and thought within himself,—'Taking fast hold of the tail, will I send this monkey destitute of energy and prowess, to the region of Yama.' Thereat, with a smile he slightingly took hold of the tail with his left hand; but could not move that tail of the mighty monkey. Then with both arms he pulled it, resembling the pole reared in honor of Indra. Still the mighty Bhima could not raise the tail with both his arms. And his eye-brows were contracted up, and his eyes rolled, and his face was contracted into

wrinkles, and his body was covered with sweat; and yet he could not raise it. And, when after having striven, the illustrious Bhima had failed in raising the tail, he approached the side of the monkey, and stood with a bashful countenance. And bowing down, Kunti's son, with joined hands, spake these words,—'Relent thou, O foremost of monkeys; and forgive me for my harsh words. Art thou a Siddha, or a god, or a Gandharba, or a Guhyaka? I ask thee out of curiosity. Tell me who thou art that hast assumed the shape of a monkey, if it be not a secret, O long-armed one, and if I can well hear it. I ask thee as a disciple, and, O sinless one, seek thy refuge.' Thereupon Hanumāna said,—'O repressor of foes, even to the extent of thy curiosity to know me, shall I relate all at length. Listen, O son of Pāndu! O lotus-eyed one, I was begot by the wind-god—that life of the world—upon the wife of Keçari. I am a monkey, by name Hanumāna. All the mighty monkey-kings, and monkey-chiefs used to wait upon that son of the Sun, Sugriva, and that son of Sakra, Vāli. And, O repressor of foes, a friendship subsisted between me and Sugriva, even as between the wind and fire. And for some cause, Sugriva, driven out by his brother, for a long time dwelt with me at the Hriçyamukha. And it came to pass that the mighty son of Daçaratha—the heroic Rama,—who is Vishnu's self in the shape of a human being—took his birth in this world. And in company with his queen and brother, taking his bow, that foremost of bowmen, with the view of compassing his father's welfare, began to reside in the Dandaka forest. And from Janasthāna, that mighty Rākshasa monarch—the wicked Rāvana—carried away his (Rama's) queen by strategem and force, deceiving, O sinless one, that foremost of men, through the agency of the Rākshasa, Māricha, who assumed the form of a deer marked with gem-like and golden spots.'"

Thus ends the hundred and forty-seventh Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXLVIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Hanumāna said,—'And after his wife was carried away, that descendant of Raghu, while searching with his brother for his queen, met on the summit of that mountain, with Sugriva, chief of the monkeys. Then a friendship was contracted between him and the high-souled Rāghaba. And the latter, having slain Vāli, installed Sugriva in the kingdom. And having obtained the kingdom, Sugriva sent forth monkeys by hundreds and by thousands in search of Sitā. And, O best of men, I too with innumerable monkeys set out towards the south in quest of Sitā, O mighty-armed one. Then a mighty vulture, Sampāti by name, communicated the tidings that Sitā was in the abode of Rāvana. Thereupon, with the object of securing success unto Rāma, I all of a sudden bounded over the main, extending for an hundred *yojanas*. And, O chief of the Bhāratas, having by my own prowess crossed the ocean—that abode of sharks and crocodiles, I saw in Rāvana's residence, the daughter of king Janaka, Sitā, like unto the daughter of a celestial. And having interviewed that lady, Vaidehi, Rāma's beloved, and burnt the whole of Lankā with its towers, and ramparts, and gates, and, proclaimed my name there, I returned. Hearing every thing from me, the lotus-eyed Rāma at once ascertained his course of action, and having for the passage of his army constructed a bridge across the deep, crossed it, followed by myriads of monkeys. Then by his prowess Rāma slew those Rākshasas in battle, and also Rāvana,—the oppressor of worlds—together with his Rākshasa followers. And having slain the king of the Rākshasas, with his brother, and sons, and kindred, he installed in the kingdom in Lankā the Rākshasa chief Bibhishana, pious, and reverent, and kind to devoted dependants. Then Rāma recovered his wife even like the lost Vaidic revelation. Then Raghu's son, Rāma, with his devoted wife, returned to his own city, Ayodhyā, inaccessible to enemies; and that lord of men began to dwell there. Then that

foremost of kings, Rāma, was established in the kingdom. Thereafter I asked a boon of the lotus-eyed Rāma, saying,—O slayer of foes, Rama, may I live as long as the history of thy deeds remaineth extant on earth!—Thereupon he said,—So be it.—O repressor of foes, O Bhima, through the grace of Sitā also, here all excellent objects of entertainment are supplied to me, who ever abide at this place. Rāma reigned ten thousand and ten hundred years. Then he ascended to his own abode. Ever since, here Apsarās and Gandharbas delight me, singing for aye the deeds of that hero, O sinless one. O son of the Kurus, this path is impassable to mortals. For this, O Bhārata, as also with the view that none might defeat or curse thee, have I obstructed thy passage to this path trod by the immortals. This is one of the paths to heaven, for the celestials: mortals cannot pass this way. But the lake in search of which thou hast come, lieth even in that direction.'"

Thus ends the hundred and forty-eighth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CXLIX.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed, the powerful Bhimasena of mighty arms, affectionately, and with a cheerful heart, bowed unto his brother, Hanumāna, the monkey-chief, and said in mild words,—'None is more fortunate than I am; now have I seen my elder brother. It is a great favor shown unto me; and I have been well-pleased with thee. Now I wish that thou mayst fulfil this desire of mine. I desire to behold, O hero, that incomparable form of thine, which thou at that time hadst had, in bounding over the main—that abode of sharks and crocodiles. Thereby I shall be satisfied, and also believe in thy words.' Thus addressed, that mighty monkey said with a smile,—'That form of mine neither thou, nor any one else can behold. At that age, the state of things was different,—and doth not exist at present. In the Krita age, the state of things was one; and in the Tretā, another; and in the Dwāpara, another,

Diminution is going on in this age; and I have not that form now. The ground, rivers, plants, and rocks, and Siddhas, gods, and celestial sages conform to Time, in harmony with the state of things in the different Yugas. Therefore, do not desire to see my former shape, O perpetuator of the Kuru race, I am conforming to the tendency of the age. Verily, Time is irresistible.' Bhimasena said,—'Tell me of the duration of the different Yugas, and of the different manners and customs, and of virtue, pleasure and profit, and of acts, and energy, and of life and death in the different Yugas.' Thereupon Hanumāna said,—'O child, that Yuga is called Krita when the one eternal religion was extant. And in that best of Yugas, every one had religious perfection, and, therefore, there was no need of religious acts. And then virtue knew no deterioration; nor did people decrease. It is for this that this age is called Krita (perfect). But in time the Yuga hath come to be considered as an inferior one. And, O child, in the Krita age, there were neither gods, nor demons, nor Gandharbas, nor Yakshas, nor Rākshasas, nor Nāgas. And there was no buying and selling. And the Sāma, the Rich, and the Yajus did not exist. And there was no manual labor. And then the necessaries of life were obtained only by being thought of. And the only merit was in renouncing the world. And during that Yuga, there was neither disease, nor decay of the senses. And there was neither malice, nor pride, nor hypocrisy, nor discord, nor ill-will, nor cunning, nor fear, nor misery, nor envy, nor covetuousness. And for this, that prime refuge of Yogis, even the Supreme Brahm, was attainable to all. And Nārāyaya wearing a white* hue was the soul of all creatures. And in the Krita Yuga, the distinctive characteristics of Brāhmanas, Kshatriyas, Vaiçyas, and Sudras

* The four complexions which one after another are said to have been worn by Nārāyana, probably refer to the successive tribes that poured into India in ancient times. For instance, Nārāyana wearing in the Krita Yuga a white hue, may allude in a latent way to the fact that the first incomers—the Aryans—were white-skinned. This supposition, at any rate, gives a meaning to a passage that is otherwise meaningless.

were natural, and these ever stuck to their respective duties. And then Brahm was the sole refuge, and their manners and customs were naturally adapted to the attainment of Brahm, and the object of their knowledge was the sole Brahm, and all their acts also had reference to Brahm. In this way all the orders attained merit. And one uniform Soul was the object of their meditation; and there was only one *mantra* (the word *Om*), and there was one ordinance. And although of different characteristics, all of them followed a single Veda; and they had one religion. And according to the divisions of time, they led the four modes of life, without aiming at any object,—and so they attained emancipation. The religion consisting in the identification of self with Brahm indicates the Krita Yuga. And in the Krita Yuga, the virtue of the four orders is throughout entire in four-fold measure. Such is the Krita Yuga devoid of the three qualities. Do thou also hear from me of the character of the Tretā Yuga. In this age, sacrifices are introduced, and virtue decreaseth by a quarter. And Nārāyana (who is the Soul of all creatures) assumeth a red color. And men practise truth, and devote themselves to religion and religious rites. And thence sacrifices and various religious observances come into existence. And in the Tretā Yuga people begin to devise means for the attainment of an object; and they attain it through acts and gifts. And they never deviate from virtue. And they are devoted to asceticism, and to the bestowal of gifts. And the four orders adhere to their respective duties; and perform rites. Such are the men of the Tretā Yuga. In the Dwāpara Yuga, religion decreaseth by one half. And Nārāyana weareth a yellow hue. And the Veda becometh divided into four parts. And then some men retain (the knowledge of) the four Vedas, and some, of three Vedas, and some of one Veda, while others do not know even the Richs. And on the Shāstras becoming thus divided, acts become multiplied. And largely influenced by passion, people engage in asceticism and gifts. And from their incapacity to study the entire Veda, it becomes divided into several parts. And in consequence of intellect having decreased, few are estab-

lished in truth. And when people fall off from truth, they become subject to various diseases; and then lust, and natural calamities ensue. And afflicted with these, people betake themselves to penances. And some celebrate sacrifices, desiring to enjoy the good things of life, or attain heaven. On the coming of the Dwāpara Yuga, men become degenerated, in consequence of impiety. O son of Kunti, in the Kali Yuga a quarter only of virtue abideth. And in the beginning of this iron age, Nārāyana weareth a black hue. And the Vedas, and the institutes, and virtue, and sacrifices, and religious observances, fall into desuetude. And (then) reign *iti*,* and disease, and lassitude, and anger and other deformities, and natural calamities, and anguish, and fear of scarcity. And as the Yugas wane, virtue waxeth weak. And as virtue waxeth weak, creatures degenerate. And as creatures degenerate, their natures undergo deterioration. And the religious acts performed at the waning of the Yugas, produce contrary effects. And even those that live for several Yugas, conform to their changes. O repressor of foes, as regards thy curiosity to know me, I say this,—Why should a wise person be eager to know a superfluous matter? (Thus), O long-armed one, have I narrated in full what thou hadst asked me about regarding the characteristics of the different Yugas. Good betide thee! Do thou return.' "

Thus ends the hundred and forty-ninth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CL.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Bhimasena said,—'Without beholding thy former shape, I will never go away. If I have found favor with thee, do thou then show me thine own shape.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Being thus addressed by Bhima, the monkey with a smile showed him that form of his in

---

* *Iti* means these six things, unfavorable to crops;—excessive rain, drought, rats, locusts, birds, and a neighbouring hostile king.

which he had bounded over the main. And wishing to gratify his brother, Hanumāna assumed a gigantic body And (both) in length and in breadth his body increased exceedingly. And that monkey of immeasurable effulgence stood there, covering the plantain wood furnished with trees, and elevating himself to the height reached by the Vindhya. And the monkey, having attained his lofty and gigantic body like unto another mountain, furnished with coppery eyes, and sharp teeth, and a face marked by frown, lay covering all sides, and lashing his long tail. And that son of the Kurus —Bhima—beholding that gigantic form of his brother, wondered, and the hairs of his body repeatedly stood on end. And beholding him like unto the sun in splendour, and unto a golden mountain, and also unto the blazing firmament, Bhima closed his eyes. Thereupon Hanumāna addressed Bhima with a smile, saying,—'O sinless one, thou art capable of beholding my size up to this extent. I can, however, go on swelling my size as long as I wish. And, O Bhima, amidst foes, my size increaseth exceedingly, by its own energy.'"

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Witnessing that dreadful and wonderful body of Hanumāna, like unto the Vindya mountain, the son of the wind-god became bewildered. Then with his down standing erect, the noble-minded Bhima, joining his hands, replied unto Hanumāna staying (there),—'O lord, by me have been beheld the vast dimensions of thy body. Do thou (now), O highly powerful one, decrease thyself by thy own power. Surely I cannot look at thee, like unto the sun arisen, and of immeasurable (power), and irrepressible, and resembling the mountain Maināka. O hero, to-day this wonder of my heart is very great,—that thou remaining by his side, Rāma should have encountered Rāvana personally. Depending on the strength of thy arms, thou wert capable of instantly destroying Lankā, with its warriors, and horses, elephants and chariots. Surely, O son of the wind-god, there is nothing that is incapable of being achieved by thee; and in fight, Rāvana together with his followers was no match for thee single-handed.'"

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by Bhima,

Hanumāna, the chief of monkeys, answered in affectionate words uttered in solemn accents,—'O mighty-armed one, O Bhārata, it is even as thou sayest. O Bhimasena, that worst of Rākshasas was no match for me. But if I had slain Rāvana —that thorn of the worlds—the glory of Raghu's son would have been obscured;—and for this it is that I had left him alone. By slaying that lord of the Rākshasas together with his followers, and bringing back Sitä unto his own city, that hero hath established his fame among men. Now, O highly wise one, being intent on the welfare of thy brothers, and protected by the wind-god, do thou go along a fortunate and auspicious way. O foremost of the Kurus, this way will lead thee to the Saugandhika wood. (Proceeding in this direction), thou wilt behold the gardens of Kuvera, guarded by Yakshas and Rākshasas. Do thou not pluck the flowers (there) personally by thy own force; for the gods deserve regard specially from mortals. O best of the Bharata race, the gods confer their favor (upon men), (being propitiated) by offerings, and *homas*, and reverential salutatious, and recitation of *mantras*, and veneration, O Bhārata. Do thou not, therefore, act with rashness, O child; and do thou not deviate from the duties of thy order. Sticking to the duties of thy order, do thou understand and follow the highest morality. Without knowing duties and serving the old, even persons like unto Vrihaspati cannot understand profit and religion. One should ascertain with discrimination those cases in which vice goeth under the name of virtue, and virtue goeth under the name of vice,—(cases) in which people destitute of intelligence become perplexed. From religious observances proceedeth merit; and in merit are established the Vedas; and from the Vedas sacrifices come into existence; and by sacrifices are established the gods. The gods are maintained by the (celebration of) sacrifices prescribed by the Vedas and the religious ordinances; while men maintain themselves by (following) the ordinances of Vrihashpati and Uçanas and also by these avocations, by which the world is maintained,—serving for wages, (receiving) taxes, merchandise, agriculture, and tending kine and sheep. The world subsisteth itself by professions. The (study of the)

three Vedas, and agriculture, and trade, and government constitute, it is ordained by the wise, the professions of the twice-born ones; and each order maintaineth itself by following the profession prescribed for it. And when these callings are properly pursued, is the world maintained with ease. If, however, people do not righteously lead their lives, the world becometh lawless, in consequence of the want of Vaidic merit, and government. And if people do not resort to (their) prescribed vocations, they perish,—but by regularly following the three professions, they bring about religion. The religion of the Brāhmanas consisteth in the knowledge of the soul, and the hue of that order alone is universally the same. The celebration of sacrifices, and study, and the bestowal of gifts are well-known to be the three duties common (to all these orders). Officiating at sacrifices, teaching, and the acceptance of gifts are the duties of a Brāhmana. To rule (the subjects) is the duty of the Kshatriya; and to tend (cattle), that of the Vaiçya; while to serve the twice-born orders is said to be duty of the Sūdra. (The Sūdras)cannot beg alms, or perform *homas*, or observe vows; and they must dwell in the habitation of their masters. Thy avocation, O son of Kunti, is that of the Kshatriya, which is to protect (the subjects). Do thou carry out thy own duties, in an humble spirit, restraining thy senses: That king alone can govern, who taketh counsel of experienced men, and is helped by honest, intelligent and learned ministers; but a king who is addicted to vices, meeteth with defeat. Then only is the order of the world secured, when the king duly punisheth and conferreth favors. Therefore it is necessary to ascertain through spies the nature of the hostile country, its fortified places, and the allied force of the enemy, and their prosperity and decay, and the way in which they retain the adhesion of the powers they have drawn to their side. Spies are among the important auxiliaries of the king; and tact, deplomacy, prowess, chastisement, favor, and cleverness, lead to success. And success is to be attained through these, either in seperation, or combined,—namely, conciliation, gift, sowing dissensions, chastisement, and slight. And, O

chief of the Bhāratas, polity hath for its root deplomacy; and deplomacy also is the main qualification of spies. And polity, if well-judged, conferreth success. Therefore, in matters of polity the counsels of Brāhmanas should be resorted to. And in secret affairs, these should not be consulted,—namely, a woman, a sot, a boy, a covetuous person, a mean-minded individual, and he that betrayeth signs of insanity. Wise men only should be consulted, and affairs are to be despatched through officers that are able. And polity must be executed through persons that are friendly; but dunces should in all affairs be excluded. In matters religious, pious men; and in matters of gain, wise men; and in guarding females, eunuchs; and in all crooked affairs, crooked men, must be employed. And the propriety or impropriety of the resolution of the enemy, as also their strength or weakness, must be ascertained through one's own as well as hostile spies. Favor should be shown to honest persons that have prudently sought protection; but lawless and disobedient individuals should be punished. And when the king justly punisheth and showeth favor, the dignity of the laws is well maintained. O son of Prithā, thus have I expounded unto thee the hard duties of kings difficult to comprehend. Do thou with equanimity observe these, as prescribed for thy order. The Brāhmanas attain heaven through merit, mortification of the senses, and sacrifice. The Vaiçyas attain excellent state through gifts, hospitality, and religious acts. The Kshatriyas attain the celestial regions by protecting and chastising the subjects, uninfluenced by lust, malice, avarice, and anger. If kings justly punish (their subjects), they go to the place whither repair meritorious persons.'"

Thus ends the hundred and fiftieth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then contracting that huge body of his, which he had assumed at will, the monkey with his

arms again embraced Bhimasena. And, O Bhārata, on Bhima being embraced by his brother, his fatigue went off, and all (the powers of his body) as also his strength were restored. And having gained great accession of strength, he thought that there was none equal to him in physical power. And with tears in his eyes, the monkey from affection again addressed Bhima in choked utterance, saying,—'O hero, repair to thy own abode. May I be incidentally remembered by thee in thy talk! O best of Kurus, do not tell anyone that I abide here. O thou of great strength, the most excellent of the wives of the gods and the Gandharbas resort to this place,—and the time of their arrival is nigh. My eyes have been blessed (by seeing thee). And, O Bhima, having felt a human being by coming in contact with thee, I have been put in mind of that son of Raghu, who was Vishnu himself under the name of Rāma; and who delighted the heart of the world; and who was as the sun in regard to the lotus-face of Sitā, and also to that darkness—Rāvana. Therefore, O heroic son of Kunti,let not thy interview with me be fruitless. Do thou with fraternal feeling ask of me a boon, O Bhārata. If this be thy wish, that going to Vāranāvata, I may destroy the insignificant sons of Dhritarashtra,—even this will I immediately do. Or if this be thy wish, that that city may be grinded by me with rocks; or that I may bind Duryodhana and bring him before thee, even this will I do to-day, O thou of mighty strength.'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing those words of that high-souled one, Bhimasena with a cheerful heart answered Hanumāna, saying,—'O foremost of monkeys, I take all this as already performed by thee. Good betide thee, O mighty-armed one! I ask of thee this,—be thou well-pleased with me. O powerful one, on thy having become our protector, the Pāndavas have found help. Even by thy prowess shall we conquer all foes.' Thus addressed, Hanumāna said unto Bhimasena,—'From fraternal feeling and affection, I will do good unto thee, by diving into the army of thy foes copiously furnished with arrows and javelins. And, O highly powerful one, O hero, when I shall give leonine roars, then shall I

with my own, add force to thy shouts. Remaining on the flag-staff of Arjuna's car, will I emit fierce shouts that will damp the energy of thy foes. Thereby ye will slay them easily.' Having said this unto Pāndu's son, and also pointed him out the way, Hanumāna vanished at that spot."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-first Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"When that foremost of monkeys had gone a way, Bhima—the best of strong men—began to range the huge Gandhamādana along that path. And he went on, thinking of Hanumāna's body and splendour unrivalled on earth, and also of the greatness and dignity of Daçaratha's son. And proceeding in search of the place filled with lotuses of that kind, Bhima beheld romantic woods, and groves, and rivers, and lakes graced with trees bearing blossoms, and flowery woodlands varieagated with various flowers. And, O Bhārata, he beheld herds of mad elephants, besmeared with mud, resembling masses of pouring clouds. And that graceful one went on with speed, beholding by the wayside woods wherein there stood with their mates deer of quick glances, holding the grass in their mouths. And fearless from prowess, Bhimasena, as if invited by the breeze-shaken trees of the forest ever fragrant with flowers, bearing delicate coppery twigs, plunged into the mountainous regions inhabited by buffalos, bears, and leopards. And on the way, he passed by lotus-lakes haunted by maddened black-bees, and having romantic descents and woods, and on account of the presence of lotus-buds, appearing as if they had joined their hands (before Bhima). And having for his provisions on the journey the words of Draupadi, Bhima went on with speed, his mind and sight fixed on the blooming slopes of the mountain. And when the sun passed the meridian, he saw in the forest scattered over with deer, a mighty river filled with fresh golden lotuses. And being crowded with swans and Kārandavas,

andgraced with Chakravākas, the river looked like a garland of fresh lotuses put on by the mountain. And in that river that one of great strength found the extensive assemblage of Saugandhika lotuses, effulgent as the rising sun, and delightful to behold, And beholding it, Pāndu's son mentally thought that his object had been gained, and also mentally presented himself before his beloved, worn out by exile."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-second Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLIII.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having reached that spot, Bhimasena saw in the vicinity of the Kailāça cliff, that beautiful lotus-lake surrounded by lovely woods, and guarded by the Rākshasas. And it sprang from the cascades contiguous to the abode of Kuvera. And it was beautiful to behold, and was furnished with a wide-spreading shade, and abounded in various trees and creepers, and was covered with green lilies. And this unearthly lake was filled with golden lotuses, and swarmed with diverse species of birds. And its banks were beautiful and devoid of mud. And situated on the rocky elevation, this expanse of excellent water was exceedingly fair. And it was the wonder of the world, and healthful, and of romantic sight. In that lake the son of Kunti saw the water, of ambrosial taste, and cool, and light, and clear, and fresh; and the Pāndava drank of it profusely. And that unearthly receptacle of waters was covered with celestial Saugandhika lotuses, and was also spread over with beautiful varieagated golden lotuses of excellent fragrance having graceful stalks of lapis luzulis. And swayed by swans and Kārandavas, these lotuses were scattering fresh farina. And this lake was the sporting region of the high-souled Kuvera, the king of the Yakshas. And it was held in high regard by the Gandharbas, the Apsarās, and the celestials. And it was frequented by the celestial sages and the Yakshas and the Kimpurushas and the Rākshasas and the Kinnaras; and it was well-protected

by Kuvera. And soon as he beheld that river and that unearthly lake, Kunti's son, Bhimasena of mighty strength became exceedingly delighted. And agreeably to the mandate of their king, hundreds and thousands of Rākshasas, named Krodhavaçās, were guarding that lake, wearing uniforms and armed with various weapons. And as that repressor of foes, Kunti's son—the heroic Bhima of dreadful prowess, clad in deer-skins, and wearing golden armlets, and equipped with weapons, and girding on his sword, was fearlessly proceeding, with the view of gathering the lotuses, those (Rākshasas) saw him, and immediately began to address each other, shouting forth,—'It behoveth you to enquire for the errand on which this foremost of men, clad in deer-skins, and equipped with arms, hath come.' Then they all approached the effulgent Vrikodara of mighty arms, and asked,—'Who art thou? Thou shouldst answer our question. We see thee in the guise of an ascetic, and yet armed with weapons. O thou of mighty intelligence, do thou unfold unto us the object with which thou hast come (hither).'"

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-third Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLIV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Bhimā said,—'I am the son of Pāndu, and next by birth to Yudhishthira the just, and my name is Bhimasena. O Rākshasas, I have come with my brothers to the jujube named Viçālā. At that place, Pānchāli saw an excellent Saugandhika lotus, which, of a certainty, was carried thither by the wind from this region. She wisheth to have those flowers in abundance. Know ye, ye Rākshasas, that I am engaged in fulfiling the desire of my wedded wife of faultless features, and have come hither to procure the flowers.' Thereat the Rākshasas said,—'O foremost of men, this spot is dear unto Kuvera, and it is his sporting region. Men subject to death cannot sport here. O Vrikodara, the celestial sages, and the Yakshas, and the gods, taking the permission of the

chief of the Yakshas, drink of this lake, and sport herein. And, O Pāndava, the Gandharbas and the Apsarās also divert themselves in this lake. That wicked person who, disregarding the lord of treasures, unlawfully attempteth to sport here, without doubt, meeteth with destruction. Disregarding him, thou seekest to take away the lotuses from this place by main force. Why then dost thou say that thou art the brother of Yudhishthira the just? First taking the permission of the lord of Yakshas, do thou drink of this lake and take away the flowers. If thou dost not do this, thou shalt not be able even to glance at a single lotus.' Bhimasena said,—'Ye Rākshasas, I do not see the lord of wealth here. And even if I did see that mighty king, I would not beseech him. Kshatriyas never beseech (any body). This is the eternal morality; and I by no means wish to forsake the Kshatriya morality. And, further, this lotus-lake hath sprung from the cascades of the mountain: it hath not been excavated in the mansion of Kuvera. Therefore, it belongeth equally to all creatures with Vaiçravana. In regard to things of such a nature, who goeth to beseech another?' "

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Having said this unto the Rākshsas, the mighty-armed and exceedingly unforbearing Bhimasena of great strength, plunged into the lotus-lake. Thereat that powerful one was forbidden by the Rākshasas, saying,—'Do not do this;' and they from all sides began to abuse him in anger. But slighting these Rākshasas, that mighty one of dreadful prowess plunged (further and further). Now they all prepared for opposing him. And with eyes rolling, they upraised their arms, and rushed in wrath at Bhimasena, exclaiming,—'Seize him!' 'Bind him!' 'Hew him!' 'We shall cook Bhimsena, and eat him up!' Thereupon that one of great force, taking his ponderous and mighty mace inlaid with golden plates, like unto the mace of Yama himself, turned towards those, and then said, 'Stay!' 'Stay!' At this, they darted at him with vehemence, brandishing lances, and axes, and other weapons. And wishing to destroy Bhima, the dreadful and fierce Krodhavaçās surrounded Bhima on all sides. But that one, being endued with strength, was be-

gotten by Vāyu in the womb of Kunti; and he was heroic, and energetic, and the slayer of foes, and ever devoted to virtue and truth, and incapable of being vanquished by enemies through prowess. Accordingly this high-souled Bhima defeating all the manuvres of the foes, and breaking their arms, killed on the banks of the lake more than an hundred, commencing with the foremost. And then witnessing his prowess, and strength, and the force of his skill, and also the might of his arms; and unable to bear (the onset), those prime heroes all of a sudden fled on all sides in bands.

"Beaten and pierced by Bhimasena, those Krodhavaçās quitted the field of battle, and in confusion quickly fled towards the Kailāca cliff, supporting themselves in the sky. Having thus by the exercise of his prowess defeated those hosts, even as Sakra had defeated the armies of Daityas and Dānavas, he (Bhima), now that he had conquered the enemy, plunged into the lake and began to gather the lotuses, with the object of gaining his purpose. And as he drank of the waters, like unto nectar, his energy and strength were again fully restored, and he fell to plucking and gathering Saugandhika lotuses of excellent fragrance. On the other hand, the Krodhavaçās, being driven by the might of Bhima, and exceedingly terrified, presented themselves before the lord of wealth, and gave an exact account of Bhima's prowess and strength in fight. Hearing their words, the god (Kuvera) smiled and then said,—'Let Bhima take for Krishnā as many lotuses as he likes. This is already known to me.' Thereupon taking the permission of the lord of wealth, those (Rākshasas) renouncing anger, went to that foremost of the Kurus, and in that lotus-lake beheld Bhima alone, disporting in delight."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-fourth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLV.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then, O best of the Bhāratas, Bhima began to collect those rare, unearthly, variegated and fresh flowers in abundance.

"And it came to pass that a high and violent wind, piercing to the touch, and blowing about gravels, arose, protending battle. And frightful meteors began to shoot, with thundering sounds. And being enveloped by darkness, the sun became pale, his rays being obscured. And on Bhima displaying his prowess, dreadful sounds of explosion rang through the sky. And the earth began to tremble, and dust fell in showers. And the points of the heavens became reddened. And beasts and birds began to cry in shrill tones. And every thing became enveloped in darkness; and nothing could be distinguished. And other evil omens besides these happened there. Witnessing these strange phenomena, Dharma's son, Yudhishthira, the foremost of speakers, said,—'Who is it that will overcome us? Ye Pāndavas, who take delight in battle; good betide you! Do ye equip yourselves. From what I see, I infer that the time for the display of our prowess hath drawn nigh.' Having said this, the king looked around. Then not finding Bhima, that repressor of foes, Dharma's son—Yudhishthira—enquired of Krishnā and the twins standing near regarding his brother, Bhima, the doer of dreadful deeds in battle, saying. 'O Pānchāli, is Bhima intent upon performing some great feat, or hath that one delighting in daring deeds already achieved some brave deed? Portending some great danger, these omens have appeared all around, indicating a fearful battle.' When Yudhishthira had said this, his beloved queen, the high-minded Krishnā of sweet smiles, answered him, inorder to remove his anxiety,—'O king, that Saugandhika lotus which to-day had been brought by the wind I had out of love duly shewn unto Bhimsena; and I had also said unto that hero,—If thou canst find many of this species, procuring even all of them, do thou return speedily.—

O Pāndava, that mighty-armed one, with the view of gratifying my desire, may have gone towards the north-east, to bring them.' Having heard these words of hers, the king said unto the twins,—'Let us together follow the path taken by Vrikodara. Let the Rākshasas carry those Brāhmanas that are fatigued and weak. O Ghatotkacha, O thou like unto a celestial, do thou carry Krishnā. I am convinced and it is plain that Bhima hath dived into the forest; for it is long since he hath gone, and in speed he resembleth the wind, and in clearing over the ground, he is swift like unto Vinatā's son, and he will even leap into the sky, and alight at his will. O Rākshasas, we shall follow him through your prowess. He will not at first do any wrong to the Siddhas versed in the Vedas.' O best of the Bhāratas, saying,—So be it.—Hidimvā's son and the other Rākshasas who knew the quarter where the lotus-lake of Kuvera was situated, started cheerfully with Lomaça, bearing the Pāndavas, and many of the Brāhmanas. Having shortly reached that spot, they saw that romantic lake covered with Saugandhikas and other lotuses, and surrounded by beautiful woods. And on its shores they beheld the high-souled and vehement Bhima, as also the slaughtered Yakshas of large eyes, with their bodies, eyes, arms and thighs smashed, and their heads crushed. And on seeing the high-souled Bhima, standing on the shore of that lake in an angry mood, and with steadfast eyes, and biting his lip, and stationed on the shore of the lake with his mace upraised by his two hands, like unto Yama with his mace in his hand at the time of the universal dissolution, Yudhishthira the just embraced him again and again, and said in sweet words, 'O Kaunteya, what hast thou done? Good betide thee! If thou wishest to do good unto me, thou shouldst never again commit such a rash act,—nor offend the gods.' Having thus instructed the son of Kunti, and taken the flowers, those god-like ones began to sport in that very lake. At this instant, the huge-bodied warders of the gardens, equipped with rocks for weapons, presented themselves at the spot. And seeing Yudhishthira the just and the great sage Lomaça and Nakula and Sahadeva and also the

other foremost of Brāhmanas, they all bowed themselves down in humility. And being pacified by Yudhishthira the just, the Rākshasas became satisfied. And with the knowledge of Kuvera, those foremost of Kurus for a short time dwelt pleasantly at that spot on the slopes of the Gandhamādana, expecting Arjuna."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-fifth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLVI.

(Tirtha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Once on a time Yudhishthira, while living at that place, addressed Krishnā, his brothers, and the Brāhmanas, saying,—'By us have been attentively seen one after another sacred and auspicious *tirthas*, and woods delightful to behold, which had ere this been visited by the celestials and the high-souled sages, and which had been worshipped by the Brāhmanas. And in various sacred asylums we have performed ablutions with Brāhmanas, and have heard from them the lives and acts of many sages, and also of many royal sages of yore, and other pleasant stories. And with flowers and water have the gods been worshipped by you. And with offerings of fruits and roots as available at each place we have gratified the *pitris*. And with the high-souled ones have we performed ablutious in all sacred and beautiful mountains and lakes, and also in the highly sacred ocean. And with the Brāhmanas we have bathed in the Ilā, and in the Saraswati, and in the Sindhu, and in the Yamunā, and in the Narmadā, and in various other romantic *tirthas*. And having passed the source of the Gangā, have we seen many a lovely hill, and the Himālaya mountain, inhabited by various species of birds, and also the jujube named Viçālā, where there is the hermitage of Nara and Nārāyana. And (finally) we have beheld this unearthly lake, held in veneration by the Siddhas, the gods and the sages. In fact, O foremost of Brāhmanas, we have one by one carefully seen all celebrated and sacred spots in company with the high-souled Lomaça. Now, O Bhima, how

shall we repair to yon sacred abode of Vaiçravana, inhabited by the Siddhas? Do thou think of the means of entering (the same).'"

Vaicampāyana said.—"When that king of kings had said this, an aerial voice spake, saying,—'Thou wilt not be able to go to that inaccessible spot. By this very way, do thou repair from this region of Kuvera to the place whence thou hadst come,—even to the hermitage of Nara and Nārāyana, known by the name of Vadari. Thence, O Kaunteya, thou wilt repair to the hermitage of Vrishaparvā, abounding in flowers and fruits, and inhabited by the Siddhas and the Chāranas. Having passed that, O Pārtha, thou wilt sojourn to the hermitage of Arshnisena, and from thence thou wilt behold the abode of Kuvera.' Just at this moment the breeze became fresh, and gladsome, and cool, and redolent of unearthly fragrance; and it showered blossoms. And on hearing the celestial voice from the sky, they all were amazed,—more specially those earthly *rishis* and the Brāhmanas. On hearing this mighty marvel, the Brāhmana Dhaumya, said,—'This should not be gainsaid. O Bhārata, let this be so.' Thereupon, king Yudhishthira obeyed him. And having returned to the hermitage of Nara and Nārāyana, he began to dwell pleasantly, surrounded by Bhimsena and his other brothers and Pānchāli and the Brāhmanas."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-sixth Section in the Tirtha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CLVII.

(Jatāsura-badha Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus dwelling with the Brāhmanas in that best of mountains, in expectation of Arjuna's return, when the Pāndavas had grown confident, and when all those Rākshasas together with Bhima's son had departed, one day while Bhimasena was away, a Rākshasa all of a sudden carried off Yudhishthira the just, and the twins, and Krishnā. That Rākshasa (in the guise of a Brāhmana) had constantly remained in the company of the Pāndavas, alleging that he was

a high-class Brāhmana, skilled in counsel, and versed in all the *Shāstras*. His object was to possess himself of the bows, the quivers and the other martial implements belonging to the Pāndavas; and he had been watching for an opportunity of ravishing Draupadi. And that wicked and sinful one was named Jatāsura. And, O king of kings, Pāndu's son (Yudhishthira) had been supporting him, but knew not that wretch, like unto a fire covered with ashes.

"And once on a day while that repressor of foes, Bhimasena, was out ahunting, he (the Rākshasa), seeing Ghatotkacha and his followers scatter in different directions, and seeing those vow-observing great *rishis*, of ascetic wealth, viz., Lomaça and the rest, away, for bathing and collecting flowers, assumed a different form, gigantic, and monstrous, and frightful; and having secured all the arms (of the Pāndavas), as also Draupadi, that wicked one fled away, taking the three Pāndavas. Thereupon that son of Pāndu, Sahadeva, extricated himself with exertion, and by force snatched the sword named Kauçika from the grasp of the enemy, and began to call Bhimasena, taking the direction in which that mighty one had gone. And on being carried off, Yudhishthira the just addressed him (that Rākshasa), saying,—'O stupid one, thy merit decreaseth (even by this act of thine). Dost thou not pay heed unto the established order of nature? Whether belonging to the human race, or to the lower orders, all pay regard to virtue,—more specially the Rākshasas. Virtue hath its beginning in the Rākshasas. In the first instance, they knew virtue better than others. Having considered all these, thou ought to adhere to virtue. O Rākshasa, the gods, the *pitris*, the Siddhas, the *rishis*, the Gandharbas, the brutes, and even the worms and ants depend for their lives on men; and thou too liveth through that agency. If prosperity attendeth the human race, thy race also prospereth; and if calamities befall the former, even the celestials suffer grief. Being gratified by offerings, do the gods thrive. O Rākshasa, we are the guardians governors and protectors of kingdoms. If kingdoms become unprotected, whence can proceed prosperity and happiness? Unless there be offence, a Rākshasa should not violate a king,

O man-eating one, we have committed no wrong ever so little. Living on *vighasa*, we serve the gods and others to the best of our power. And we are ever intent upon bowing down to our superiors and Brāhmanas. A friend, and one confiding, and he whose food hath been partaken of, and he that hath afforded shelter, should never be injured. Thou hadst lived in our place happily, being duly honored. And, O evil-minded one, having partaken of our food, how canst thou carry us off? And as thy acts are so improper, and as thou hast grown in age without deriving any benefit, and as thy propensities are evil, so thou deservest to die for nothing, and for nothing wilt thou die to-day. And if thou beest really evil-disposed, and devoid of all virtue, do thou render us back our weapons, and ravish Draupadi after fight. But if through stupidity thou must do this deed, then in the world thou wilt only reap demerit, and infamy. O Rākshasa, by doing violence to this female of the human race, thou hast drunk poison, after having shaken the vessel.' Thereupon, Yudhishthira made himself ponderous to the Rākshasa. And being oppressed with the weight, he could not proceed rapidly as before. Then addressing Draupadi, Nakula and Sahadeva, Yudhishthira said,—'Do ye not entertain any fear of this wretched Rākshasa. I have checked his speed. The mighty-armed son of the wind-god may not be far away; and on Bhima coming up at the next moment, the Rākshasa will not live.' O king, staring at the Rākshasa bereft of sense, Sahadeva addressed Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, saying,—'What can be more meritorious for a Kshatriya than to fall in fight, or defeat a foe? O repressor of foes, we will fight, and either this one will slay us, or we shall slay him, O mighty-armed one. Verily this is the place and time, O king. And, O thou of unfailing prowess, the time hath come for the display of our Kshatriya virtue. It behoveth us to attain heaven either by gaining victory, or being slain. If the sun sets to-day, the Rākshasa living, then, O Bhārata, I will not any more say that I am a Kshatriya. Ho! Ho! Rākshasa, stay! I am Pāndu's son, Sahadeva. Either, after having killed me, carry off this lady, or being slain, lie senseless here.'

"Madri's son Sahadeva was speaking thus, when Bhima-

sena made his appearance, with a mace in his hand, like unto Vāsava himself, weilding the thunder-bolt. And there he saw his two brothers and the noble-minded Draupadi (on the shoulders of the demon), and Sahadeva on the ground rebuking the Rākshasa, and also that stupid Rākshasa himself deprived of sense by Fate, going round in different directions through bewilderment caused by Destiny. And finding his brothers and Draupadi being carried off, Bhima of mighty strength was fired with wrath, and addressed the Rākshasa saying,—'I had ere this found thee out for a wicked wight from thy scrutiny of our weapons; but as I had no apprehension of thee, so I had not slain thee at that time. Thou wert in the disguise of a Brāhmana,—nor didst thou say anything harsh unto us. And thou didst take delight in pleasing us. And thou also didst not do us wrong. And, furthermore, thou wert our guest. How could I, therefore, slay thee, who wert thus innocent of offence, and who wert in the disguise of a Brahmana? He that knowing such a one to be even a Rākshasa, slayeth him, repaireth to hell. Further, thou canst not be killed before the time cometh. Surely today thou hast reached the fullness of thy time, inasmuch as thy mind hath been thus turned by the wonder-performing Fate towards carrying off Krishnā. By committing thyself to this deed, thou hast swallowed up the hook fastened to the line of Fate. So like unto a fish in water, whose mouth hath been hooked, how canst thou live to-day? Thou shalt not have to repair whither thou hadst intended to go, or whither thou hadst already gone mentally; but thou shalt go whither hath repaired Vaka and Hidimva.'

"Thus addressed by Bhima, the Rākshasa in alarm put them down; and being forced by Fate, approached for fight. And with his lips trembling in anger he spake unto Bhima, saying, 'Wretch! I have not been bewildered: I had been delaying for thee. To-day will I offer oblations of thy blood to those Rākshasas who, I had heard, have been slain by thee in fight.' Thus addressed, Bhima as if bursting with wrath, like unto Yama himself at the time of the universal dissolution, rushed towards the Rākshasa, licking

the corners of his mouth, and staring at him as he struck his own arms with the hands. And seeing Bhima waiting in expectation of fight, the Rākshasa also darted towards him in anger, like unto Bali towards the wielder of the thunder-bolt, repeatedly gaping, and licking the corners of his mouth. And when a dreadful wrestling ensued between those two, both the sons of Mādri, waxing exceeding wroth, rushed forward; but Kunti's son, Vrikodora, forbade them with a smile and said, 'Witness ye! I am more than a match for this Rākshasa. By my own self, and by my brothers, and by my merit, and by my good deeds, and by my sacrifices, do I swear that I shall slay this Rākshasa.' And after this was said, those two heroes—the Rākshasa and Vrikodara—challenging each other, caught each other by the arms. And they not forgiving each other, then there ensued a conflict between the infuriated Bhima and the Rākshasa, like unto that between a god and a demon. And repeatedly uprooting trees, those two of mighty strength struck each other, shouting and roaring like two masses of clouds. And those foremost of athletes, each wishing to kill the other, and rushing at the other with vehemence, broke down many a gigantic tree by their thighs. Thus that encounter with trees, destructive of plants, went on like unto that between the two brothers —Vāli and Sugriva—desirous of the possesaion of a single woman. Brandishing trees for a moment, they (the combatants) struck each other with them, shouting incessantly. And when all the trees of the spot had been pulled down and crushed into fibres by them endeavouring to kill each other, then, O Bhārata, those two of mighty strength, taking up rocks, began to fight for a while, like unto a mountain and a mighty mass of clouds. And not suffering each other, they fell to striking each other with hard and large crags, resembling vehement thunder-bolts. Then from strength defying each other, they again darted at each other, and grasping each other by their arms, began to wrestle like unto two elephants. And next they administered each other fierce blows. And then those two mighty ones began to make chattering sounds by knashing their teeth. And at length, having clenched his fist like a

five-headed snake, Bhima with force dealt a blow on the neck of the Rākshasa. And when struck by the fist of Bhima, the Rākshasa had become faint, Bhimasena stood, catching hold of that exhausted one. And then the god-like mighty-armed Bhima, lifted him with his two arms, and dashing him with force on the ground, the son of Pandu smashed all his limbs. And striking him with his elbow, he severed from his body, the head furnished with bitten lips, and rolling eyes, like unto a fruit from its stem. And Jatāsura's head being severed by Bhimasena's might, fell besmeared with gore, and having bitten lips. Having slain Jatāsura, Bhima presented himself before Yudhishthira; and the foremost Brāhmanas began to eulogise him (Bhima), even as the Maruts (eulogize) Vāsava."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-seventh Section in the Jatāsura-badha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLVIII.

(Yaksha-yudha Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"On that Rākshasa having been slain, that lord—the royal son of Kunti—returned to the hermitage of Nārāyana and began to dwell there. And once on a time, remembering his brother Jaya (Arjuna), Yudhishthira summoned all his brothers, together with Draupadi, and said these words,—'We have passed these four years peacefully ranging the woods. It hath been appointed by Vibhatsu that about the fifth year he will come to that monarch of mountains, the excellent cliff Sweta, ever graced with festivities held by blooming plants, and maddened Kokilas, and black bees, and peacocks, and Chātakas; and inhabited by tigers, and boars, and buffalos, and Gavayas, and deer, and ferocious beasts; and sacred; and lovely with blown lotuses of (respectively) an hundred and a thousand petals, and blooming lilies and blue lilies; and frequented by the celestials and the Asuras. And we also, eagerly anxious of meeting him on his arrival, have made up our minds to repair thither. Pārtha of unrivalled prowess had appointed with me, saying,—I shall

remain abroad for five years, with the object of learning military scence.—In that place like unto the region of the gods, shall we behold the wielder of Gāndiva, arrive after having obtained the weapons.' Having said this, the Pāndāva summoned the Brāhmanas, and the sons of Prithā having gone round the ascetics of rigid austerities, and thereby pleased them, informed them of the matter mentioned above. Thereupon the Brāhmanas gave their assent, saying,—'This shall be attended by prosperity and welfare. O foremost of the Bhāratas, these troubles shall result in happiness. O pious one, gaining the earth by the Khatriya virtue, thou shalt govern it.' Then in obedience to these words of the ascetics, that repressor of foes, Yudhishthira, set out with his brothers and those Brāhmanas, followed by the Rākshasas, and protected by Lomaça. And that one of mighty energy, and of staunch vows, with his brothers, at places went on foot, and at others were carried by the Rākshasas. Then king Yudhishthira, apprehending many troubles, proceeded towards the north, abounding in lions and tigers and elephants. And beholding on the way the mountain Maināka, and the base of the Gandhamādana, and that rocky mass Sweta, and many a crystal rivulet higher and higher up the mountain, he reached on the seventeeth day the sacred slopes of the Himālayas. And, O king, not far from the Gandhamādana, Pāndu's sons beheld on the sacred slopes of the Himavān covered with various trees and creepers the holy hermitage of Vrishaparvā surrounded by blossoming trees growing near the cascades. And when those repressors of foes, the sons of Pāndu, had recovered from fatigue, they went to the royal sage, the pious Vrishaparvā, and greeted him. And that royal sage received with affection those foremost of Bhāratas, even as his own sons. And those repressors of foes passed there seven nights, duly regarded. And when the eighth day had come, taking the permission of that sage celebrated over the worlds, they prepared to start on their journey. And having one by one introduced unto Vrishaparvā those Brāhmanas, who duly honored, had remained in his charge as friends; and having also entrusted the high-souled

Vrishaparvā with their remaining robes, the sons of Pāndu, O king, left in the hermitage of Vrishaparvā their sacrificial vessels together with their ornaments and jewels. And wise, and pious, and versed in every duty, and having a knowledge of the past as well as the future, that one gave instructions unto those best of the Bhāratas, as unto his own sons. Then taking his permission those high-souled ones set out towards the north. And as they set out the magnanimous Vrishaparvā followed them to a certain distance. Then having entrusted the Pāndavas unto the care of the Brāhmanas, and instructed and blessed them, and given directions concerning their course, Vrishaparvā of mighty energy retraced his steps.

"Then Kunti's son, Yudhishthira of unfailing prowess together with his brothers, began to proceed on foot along the mountain path, inhabited by various kinds of beasts. And having dwelt at the mountain slopes, densely overgrown with trees, Pāndu's son on the fourth day reached the Sweta mountain, like unto a mighty mass of clouds, abounding in streams, and consisting of a mass of gold and gems. And taking the way directed by Vrishaparvā, they reached one by one the intended places, beholding various mountains. And over and over they passed with ease many inaccessible rocks, and exceedingly impassable caves of the mountain. And Dhaumya, and Krishnā, and the Pārthas, and the mighty sage Lomaça went on in a body, and none grew tired. And those highly fortunate ones arrived at the sacred and mighty mountain resounding with the cries of birds and beasts, and covered with various trees and creepers, and inhabited by monkeys, and romantic, and furnished with many lotus-lakes, and having marshes and extensive forests. And then with their down standing erect, they saw the mountain Gandhamādana—the abode of Kimpurushas—frequented by Siddhas and Chāranas, and ranged by Vidydāharas and Kinnaris, and inhabited by herds of elephants, and thronged with lions and tigers, and resounding with the roars of Saravas, and attended by various beasts. And the warlike sons of Pāndu gradually entered into the forest of the Gandhamādana, like unto the Nandana gardens, delightful to the mind and heart, and worthy of being in-

habited, and having beautiful groves. And as those heroes entered with Draupadi, and the high-soulded Brāhmanas, they heard notes uttered by the mouths of birds, exceedingly sweet, and grateful to the ear, and causing delight, and dulcet, and broken by reason of excess of animal spirits. And they saw various trees bending under the weight of fruits in all seasons, and bright with flowers in all seasons,—such as mangos, and hog-plums, and Bhavyas, and pomegranates, and citrons, and jacks, and Lakuchas, and plantains, and aquatic reeds, and Pārāvatas, and Champakas, and lovely Kadamvas, and Vilwas, and wood-appples, and rose-apples, and Kāçmaris, and jujubes, and figs, and glomerous figs, and banians, and Aswaththas, and Khirikas, and Bhallātakas, and Amlakas, and Bibhitakas, and Ingudas, and Karamardas, and Tindukas of large fruits,—these and many others on the slopes of the Gandhamādana, clustered with sweet and nectarine fruits. And besides these, they beheld Champakas, and Açokas, and Ketakas, and Vakulas, and Punnāgas, and Saptaparnas, and Karnikāras, and Pātalas, and beautiful Kutajas, and Mandāras, and lotuses, and Pārijatas, and Kovidāras, and Devadārus, and Sālas, and palmyra palms, and Tamālas, and Pippalas, and Sālmalis, and Kinçukas, and Singsapās, and Saralas. And these were inhabited by Chakoras, and wood-peckers, and Chātakas, and various other birds, singing in sweet tones pleasing to the ear. And they saw lakes beautiful on all sides with acquatic birds, and covered all around with Kumudas, and Pundarikas, and Kokanadas, and Utpalas, and Kalhāras, and Kamalas, and thronged on all sides with drakes, and ruddy geese, and ospreys, and gulls, and Kārandavas, and Plavas, and swans, and cranes, and shags, and other acquatic birds. And those foremost of men saw those lotus-lakes beautified with assemblages of lotuses, and ringing with the sweet hum of bees, glad, and drowsy on account of having drunk the intoxicating honey of lotuses, and reddened with the farina falling from the lotus-cups. And in the groves they beheld with their hens peacocks, maddened with desire caused by the notes of cloud-trumpets; and those wood-loving glad peacocks drowsy with desire, were dancing, spreading in dalli-

ance their gorgeous tails, and were crying in melodious notes. And some of the peacocks were sporting with their mates on Kutaja trees covered with creepers. And some sat on the boughs of the Kutajas, spreading their gorgeous tails, and looking like crowns worn by the trees. And in the glades they beheld the graceful Sindhuvaras like unto the darts of Cupid. And on the summits of the mountain, they saw blooming Karnikāras bearing blossoms of a golden hue, appearing like ear-rings of excellent make. And in the forest they saw blossoming Kuruvakas, like unto the shafts of Cupid, which smitteth one with desire and maketh him uneasy. And they saw Tilakas appearing like unto beauty-spots painted on forehead of the forest. And they saw mango trees graced with blossoms hummed over by black bees, and serving the purpose of Cupid's shafts. And on the slopes of the mountain there were diverse blossoming trees, looking lovely, some bearing flowers of a golden hue, and some, of the hue of the forest-conflagration, and some, red, and some, sable, and some, green like unto lapises. And besides these there were ranges of Sālas, and Tamālas, and Pātalas, and Vakula trees, like unto garlands put on by the summits of the mountain. Thus gradually beholding on the slopes of the mountain many lakes, looking transparent like crystal, and having swans of white plumage, and resounding with the cries of cranes, and filled with lotuses and lilies, end furnished with waters of delicious feel ; and also beholding fragrant flowers, and lucious fruits, and romantic lakes, and captivating trees, the Pāndavas penetrated into the forest with eyes expanded with wonder. And (as they proceeded) they were fanned by the breezes of balmy feel, and perfumed by Kamalas and Utpalas and Kalhāras and Pundarikas. Then Yudhishthira pleasantly spake unto Bhima saying,—'Ah! O Bhima, beautiful is this forest of the Gundhamādana. In this romantic forest there are various unearthly blossoming wild trees and creepers, furnished with foliage, and fruits, and flowers, and crowded with the male Kolilas. Here there are no thorny trees, nor are there any trees that do not flower. On these slopes of the Gandhamādana, all the trees are of sleek foliage and fruits. And behold how these lotus-lakes furnished with full-

blown lotuses, and ringing with the hum of black bees, are being agitated by elephants with their mates. Behold another lotus-lake girt with lines of lotuses, like unto a second Sree in an embodied form wearing garlands. And in this excellent forest there are beautiful ranges of woods, rich with the aroma of various blossoms, and hummed over by the black bees. And, O Bhima, behold on all sides the excellent sporting grounds of the celestials. By coming here, we have attained extra-human state, and been blessed. O Pārtha, on these slopes ef the Gandhamādana, yon beautiful blossoming trees, being embraced by creepers with blossoms at their tops, look lovely. And, O Bhima, hark unto the notes of the peacocks crying with their hens on the mountain slopes. And birds such as Chakoras, and Satapatras, and maddened Kokilas, and parrots, are alighting on these excellent flowering trees. And sitting on the twigs, myriads of Jivajivakas of scarlet, yellow and red hues are looking at one another. And the cranes are seen near the spots covered with green and reddish grass, and also by the side of the cascades. And those birds, Bhringarājas, and Upachakras, and herons are pouring forth their notes charming to all creatures. And, lo! with their mates, these elephants furnished with four tusks, and white as lotuses, are agitating that large lake of the hue of lapises. And from many cascades, torrents high as several palmyra palms (placed upon one another) are rushing down from the cliffs. And many argent minerals, splendid, and of the effulgence of the sun, and like unto autumnal clouds, are beautifying this mighty mountain. And in some places there are minerals of the hue of the collyrium, and in some those like unto gold, and in some, yellow orpiment, and in some, vermillion, and in some, caves of red arsenic like unto the evening clouds, and in some, red chalk of the hue of the rabbit, and in some, minerals like unto white and sable clouds; and in some, those effulgent as the rising sun,—these minerals of great lustre beautify the mountain. O Pārtha, as was said by Vrishaparvā, the Gandharbas and the Kimpurushas, in company with their loves, are visible on the summits of the mountain. And, O Bhima, there

are heard various songs of appropriate measures, and also Vaidic hymns, charming to all creatures. Do thou behold the sacred and graceful celestial river Mahagangā, with swans, resorted to by sages and Kinnaras. And, O repressor of foes, see this mountain having minerals, rivulets, and beautiful woods, and beasts, and snakes of diverse shapes and an hundred heads, and Kinnaras, Gandharbas and Apsaras.'"

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having attained excellent state, those valiant and warlike repressors of foes with Draupadī and the high-souled Brāhmanas were exceedingly delighted at heart, and they were not satiated by beholding that monarch of mountains. Thereafter they saw the hermitage of the royal sage Arshtishena, furnished with flowers, and trees bearing fruits. Then they went to Arshtishena versed in all duties, of rigid austerities, skelton-like, and having muscles bare."

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-eighth Section in the Yaksha-yudha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLIX.

(Yaksha-yudha Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having approached that one, whose sins had been consumed by asceticism, Yudhishthira announced his name, and gladly greeted him, bending his head. And then Krishnā, and Bhima, and the devout twins, having bowed down their heads unto the royal sage, stood (there), surrounding him. And that priest of the Pāndavas, the virtuous Dhaumya, also duly approached that vow-observing sage. And by his prophetic eye that virtuous Muni had already known (the identity of) those foremost of the Kurus, the sons of Pāndu, and he said unto them,—'Be ye seated.' And that one of rigid austerities, after having duly received that chief of the Kurus, when the latter with his brothers had seated himself enquired after his welfare saying,—'Dost thou not turn thy inclination unto untruth? And art thou intent upon virtue? And, O Pārtha, hath not thy attention to thy father and thy mother diminished? Are all thy superiors, and the aged, and those versed in the Vedas, honored by thee? And,

O Prithā's son, dost thou not turn thy inclination unto sinful acts? And dost thou, O best of the Kurus, properly know (how) to perform meritorious acts, and to eschew wicked deeds? Dost thou not exalt thyself? And are pious men gratified, being honored by thee? And even dwelling in the woods, dost thou follow virtue alone? And, O Pārtha, doth not Dhaumya grieve at thy conduct? Dost thou follow the customs of thy ancestors, by charity, and religious observances, and ascetism, and purity, and candour, and forgiveness? And dost thou go along the way taken by the royal sages? On the birth of a son in their (respective) lines, the Pitris in their regions, both laugh and grieve, thinking,—Will the sinful acts of this son of ours harm us, or will his meritorious deeds conduce to our welfare?—He conquereth both the worlds that payeth homage unto his father, and mother, and preceptor, and Agni, and fifthly, the soul.' Yudhishthira said,—'O worshipful one, those duties that have been mentioned by thee are excellent. To the best of my power I duly and properly discharge them.'

"Arçhtishena said,—'During the Parvas* sages subsisting (respectively) on air and water come unto this best of mountains, ranging through the air. And on the summits of the mountain are seen amorous Kimpurushas with their paramours, mutually attached unto each other; as also, O Pārtha, many Gandharbas ane Apsaras clad in white silk vestments; and lovely-looking Vidyādharas, wearing garlands; and mighty Nāgas, and Suparnas, and Uragas, and others. And on the summits of the mountain are heard, during the Parvas, sounds of kettle-drums, and tabors, and shells, and Mridangas. O foremost of the Bhāratas, even by staying here, ye shall hear those sounds; do ye by no means feel inclined to repair thither. Further, O best of the Bharata race, it is impossible to proceed beyond this. That place is the sporting-region of the celestials. There is no access thither for mortals. O Bhārata, at this place all creatures bear ill-will to, and the Rākshasas

* A name given to certain days in the lunar month, as the full and change of the moon, and the 8th and 14th of each half month.

chastise, that man who committeth aggression ever so little. Beyond the summit of this Kailāça cliff, is seen the path of the celestial sages. If any one through impudence goeth beyond this, the Rākshasas slay him with iron darts and other weapons. There, O child, during the Parvas, he that goeth about on the shoulders of men, even Vaiçravana, is seen in pomp and grandeur surrounded by the Apsarās. And when that lord of all the Rākshasas is seated on the summit, all creatures behold him like unto the sun arisen. O best of the Bhāratas, that summit is the sporting-garden of the celestials, and the Dānavas, and the Siddhas, and Vaiçravana. And during the Parvas, as Tumburu entertaineth the Lord of treasures, the sweet notes of his song are heard all over the Gandhamādana. O child, O Yudhishthira, here during the Parvas, all creatures see and hear marvels like this. O Pāndavas, till ye meet with Arjuna, do ye stay here, partaking of lucious fruits, and the food of the Munis. O child, as thou hast come hither, do thou not betray any impertinence. And, O child, after living here at thy will and diverting thyself as thou listest, thou wilt at length rule the earth, having conquered it by the force of thy arms.' "

Thus ends the hundred and fifty-ninth Section in the Yaksha-yudha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLX.

(Yaksha-yudha Parva continued.)

Yanamejaya said.—" How long did my great grand-sires, the high-souled sons of Pāndu, of matchless prowess, dwell in the Gandhamādana mountain ? And what did those exceedingly powerful ones gifted with manliness, do ? And what was the food of those high-souled ones, when those heroes of the worlds dwelt (there) ? O excellent one, do thou relate all about this. Do thou describe the prowess of Bhimasena, and what that mighty-armed one did in the mountain Himālaya. Surely, O best of Brāhmanas, he did not fight again with the Yakshas. And did they meet with Vaiçravana ? Surely, as Arshtishena said, the lord of wealth cometh thither. All this, O

thou of ascetic wealth, I desire to hear in detail. Surely, I have not yet been fully satisfied by listening unto their acts."

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having heard from that one of incomparable energy, (Arstishena), that advice conducive to their welfare, those foremost of the Bhāratas began to behave always accordingly. Those best of men, the Pāndavas, dwelt upon the Himavān, partaking of the food eaten by the Munis, and lucious fruits, and the flesh of deer killed with unpoisoned shafts, and various kinds of pure honey. Living thus, they passed the fifth year, listening to various stories told by Lomaça. O Lord, saying,—I shall be present when occasion ariseth,—Ghatotkacha together with all the Rākshasas, had ere this already gone away. Those magnanimous ones passed many months in the hermitage of Arshtishena, witnessing many marvels. And as the Pāndavas were sporting there pleasantly, there came to see them some complacent vow-observing Munis and Chāranas of high fortune, and pure souls. And those foremost of the Bharata race conversed with them on unearthly topics. And it came to pass that when several days had passed, Suparna all of a sudden carried off an exceedingly powerful and mighty Nāga, living in the large lake. And thereupon that mighty mountain began to tremble, and the gigantic trees, to break. And all the creatures and the Pāndavas witnessed that wonder. Then from the brow of that excellent mountain, the wind brought before the Pāndavas various fragrant and fair blossoms. And the Pāndavas, and the illustrious Krishnā together with their friends saw those unearthly blossoms of five hues. And as the mighty-armed Bhimasena was seated at ease upon the mountain, Krishnā addressed him, saying,—'O best of the Bharata race, in the presence of all the creatures, these flowers of five hues, carried by the force of the wind raised by Suparna, are falling in amain on the river Açwarathā. In Khāndava thy high-souled brother firm in promise had baffled Gandharbas and Nāgas and Vāsava himself, and slain fierce Rākshasas, and also obtained the bow Gāndiva. Thou also art of exceeding prowess, and the might of thy arms is great, and irrepressible, and unbearable, like unto the might of Sakra.

O Bhimasena, terrified with the force of thy arms, let all the Rākshasas betake themselves to the ten cardinal points, leaving the mountain. Then will thy friends be freed from fear and affliction, and behold the auspicious summit of this excellent mountain furnished with variegated flowers. O Bhima, I have for long cherished this thought in my mind,—that protected by the might of thy arms, I shall see that summit.'

"Thereupon, like a high-mettled bull that hath been struck, Bhimasena, considering himself as censured by Draupadi, could not bear (that). And that Pāndava of the gait of a lion or a bull, and graceful, and generous, and having the splendour of gold, and intelligent, and strong, and proud, and sensitive, and heroic, and furnished with red eyes, and broad-shouldered, and gifted with the strength of mad elephants, and having leonine teeth and a broad neck, and tall like a young Sāla tree, and high-souled, and graceful in every limb, and of neck having the whirls of a shell, and mighty-armed, took up his bow plaited at the back with gold, and also his sword. And haughty like unto a lion, and resembling a maddened elephant, that strong one rushed towards that cliff, free from fear or affliction. And all the creatures saw him equipped with bows and arrows, approachsng like a lion or a maddened elephant. And free from fear or affliction, the Pāndava, taking his mace, proceeded to that monarch of mountains, causing the delight of Draupadi. And neither exhaustion, nor fatigue, nor lassitude, nor the malice (of others), affected that son of Prithā and the wind-god. And having arrived at a rugged path affording passage to one individual only, that one of great strength ascended that terrible summit high as several palmyra-palms (placed upon one another). And having ascended that summit, and thereby gladdened Kinnaras, and great Nāgas, and Munis, and Gandharbas, and Rākshasas, that foremost of the Bharata race, gifted with exceeding strength, descried the abode of Vaiçravana, adorned with golden and crystal palaces, surrounded on all sides by golden walls having the splendour of all gems, furnished with gardens all around, higher than a mountain peak, beautiful with ramparts and towers, and adorned with door-ways and

gates and rows of pennons. And the abode was graced with dallying damsels dancing around, and also with pennons wafted by the breeze. And with bent arms supporting himself on the end of his bow, he stood beholding with eagerness the city of the lord of treasures. And gladdening all creatures, there was blowing a breeze, carrying all perfumes, and of balmy feel. And there were various beautiful and wonderful trees of diverse hues, resounding with diverse dulcet notes. And at that place the foremost of the Bhāratas surveyed the place of the Lord of the Rākshasas, scattered with heaps of gems, and adorned with variegated garlands. And renouncing all care of life, the mighty-armed Bhimsena stood motionless like a rock, with his mace and sword and bow in his hands. Then he blew his shell, making the down of adversaries stand erect; and twanging his bow-string, and striking his arms with the hands, he unnerved all the creatures. Thereat with their down standing erect, Yakshas and Rākshasas began to rush towards the Pāndava, in the direction of those sounds. And taken by the arms of Yakshas and Rākshasas, flamed maces and clubs and swords and spears and javelins and axes. And when, O Bhārata, the fight ensued between the Rākshasas and Bhima, the latter by arrows cut off the darts, javelins and axes of those possessing great powers of illusion. And he of exceeding strength with arrows pierced the bodies of the roaring Rākshasas,—both of those that were in the sky, and of those that remained on the earth. And Bhima of exceeding strength was deluged with the mighty sanguine rain sprung from the bodies of the Rākshasas with maces and clubs in their hands, and flowing on all sides from their persons. And the bodies and heads of the Yakshas and Rākshasas were seen to be struck off by the weapons discharged by the might of Bhima's arms. And then all the creatures saw the graceful Pāndava densely surrounded by the Rākshasas, like unto the Sun enveloped by clouds. And even as the sun surrounds everything with his rays, that mighty-armed and strong one of unfailing prowess, covered all with his arrows destroying foes. And although menacing and uttering yells, the Rākshasas did not see Bhima embarassed. Thereupon, with their bodies mangled,

the Yakshas afflicted by the fear of Bhimasena began to utter frightful sounds of distress, throwing their mighty weapons. And terrified at that weilder of a strong bow, they fled towards the southern quarter, forsaking their maces and spears and swords and clubs and axes. And then there stood, holding in his hands, darts and maces, the broad-chested and mighty-armed friend of Vaiçravana, the Rākshasa named Manimān. And that one of great strength began to display his masterdom and manliness. And seeing them forsake the fight, he addressed them with a smile,—'Going to Vaiçravana's abode, how will ye say unto that lord of wealth, that numbers have been defeated by a single mortal in battle ?' Having said this unto them, that Rākshasa, taking in his hands clubs and jevelins and maces, set out, and rushed towards the Pāndava. And as he was rushing in amain like a maddened elephant, Bhimasena pierced his sides with three choice arrows. And the mighty Manimān, on his part, in wrath taking and flourishing a tremendous mace, hurled it at Bhimasena. Thereupon Bhimasena beset with innumerable shafts sharpened on stones, that mighty mace in the sky, dreadful, and like unto the lightning flash. But on reaching the mace those shafts were baffled; and although discharged with force by that adept at hurling the mace, still they could not stay its career. Then the mighty Bhima of dreadful prowess, baffled his (the Rākshasa's) discharge, by resorting to his skill in mace-fighting. In the meanwhile, the intelligent Rākshasa had discharged a terrible iron club, furnished with a golden haft. And that club, belching forth flames, and emitting tremendous roars, all of a suddden pierced Bhima's right arm and then fell to the ground. On being severely wounded by that club, that bowman, Kunti's son, of immeasurable prowess, with eyes rolling in ire, took up his mace. And having taken that iron mace, inlaid with golden plates, which caused the fear of foes, and brought on their defeat, he darted it with speed towards the mighty Manimān, menacing (him) and uttering shouts. Then Manimān, on his part, taking his huge and blazing dart, with great force discharged it at Bhima, uttering loud shouts. Thereat

breaking the dart with the end of his mace, that mighty-armed one skilled in mace-fighting, speedily rushed to slay him, as Gadura (rusheth) to slay a serpent. Then all of a sudden, advancing ahead in the field, that mighty-armed one sprang into the sky, and brandishing his mace, hurled it with shouts. And like unto the thunder-bolt hurled by Indra, that mace like a Pest, with the speed of the wind destroyed the Rākshasa and then fell to the ground. Then all the creatures saw that Rākshasa of terrible strength slaughtered by Bhimā, even like a bull slain by a lion. And the surviving Rākshasas seeing him slain on the ground, went towards the east, uttering frightful sounds of distress."

Thus ends the hundred and sixtieth Section in the Yaksha-yudha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXI.

(Yaksha-yudha Parva continued.)

Vaicampāyana said.—" Hearing various sounds resounding in the caves of the mountain, and not seeing Bhimasena, Kunti's son, Ajātaçatru, and the twin sons of Mādri, and Dhaumya, and Krishnā, and all the Brāhmanas, and the friends (of the Pāndavas), were filled with anxiety. Thereupon, entrusting Draupadi to the charge of Arstishena, and equipped in their arms, those valiant and mighty charioteers together began to ascend the summit of the mountain. And having reached the summit, those repressors of foes and mighty bowmen and powerful charioteers, as they were looking about, saw Bhima, and those huge Rākshasas, of mighty strength and courage, weltering in a state of unconsciousness, having been struck down by Bhima. And holding his mace and sword and bow, that mighty-armed one looked like Maghavān, after he had slain the Dānava hosts. Then on seeing their brother, the Pāndavas, who had attained excellent state, embraced him and sat down there. And with those mighty bowmen, that summit looked grand like heaven graced by those foremost of celestials, the highly fortunate Lokapālas. And seeing the abode of Kuvera, and the Rākshasas,

lying slain on the ground, the king addressed his brother who was seated, saying,—'Either it be through rashness, or through ignorance, thou hast, O Bhima, committed a sinful act. O hero, as thou art leading the life of an anchoret, this slaughter without cause is unlike thee. Acts, it is asserted by those versed in duties, as are calculated to displease a monarch, ought not to be committed. But thou hast, O Bhimasena, committed a deed which will offend even the gods. He that disregarding profit and duty, turneth his thoughts to sin, must, O Pārtha, reap the fruit of his sinful actions. However, if thou seekest my good, never again commit such a deed.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said this to his brother Vrikodara, the virtuous, highly energetic and firm-minded son of Kunti, Yudhishṭhira, versed in the particulars of (the science of) profit, ceased, and began to reflect on that matter.

" On the other hand, the Rākshasas that had survived those slain by Bhima fled in a body towards the abode of Kuvera. And they of exceeding fleetness having speedily reached Vaiçravana's abode, began to utter loud cries of distress, being afflicted with the fear of Bhima. And, O king, bereft of their weapons, and exhausted, and with their mail besmeared with gore, and with dishevelled hair, they spake unto Kuvera, saying,—'O lord, all thy foremost Rākshasas fighting with maces, and clubs, and swords, and lances, and barbed darts, have all been slain. O lord of treasures, a mortal, trespassing into the mountain, hath single-handed, slaughtered all thy Krodhavaçā Rākshasas assembled together. And, O lord of wealth, there lie the foremost of the Yakshas and Rākshasas senseless and dead, having been struck down: and we have been let off through his favor. And thy friend, Manimān, also hath been slain. All this hath been done by a mortal. Do thou what is proper, after this.' Having heard this, that lord of all the Yaksha hosts waxing wroth, with eyes reddened in anger, exclaimed, 'What!' And hearing of Bhima's second (act of) agression, that lord of treasures—the king of the Yakshas—was filled with wrath, and said, 'Yoke' (the horses). Thereat, unto a car of the hue of dark clouds, and high as a mountain-

summit, they yoked steeds having golden garlands. And on being yoked unto the car, those excellent horses of his, graced with every noble quality, and furnished with the ten auspicious curls of hair, and having energy and strength, and adorned with various gems, and looking splendid, as if desirous of speeding like the wind, began to neigh at each other the neighing emittted at (the hour of) victory. And that divine and effulgent king of the Yakshas set out, being eulogised by the celestials and Gandharbas. And a thousand foremost Yakshas of reddened eyes and golden lustre, and having huge bodies, and gifted with great strength, equipped with weapons, and girding on their swords, followed that high-souled lord of treasures. And coursing through the firmament, they (the steeeds) arrived at the Gandhamādana, as if drawing forward the sky with their fleetness. And with their down standing erect, the Pāndavas saw that large assemblage of horses maintained by the lord of wealth, and also the high-souled and graceful Kuvera himself, surrounded by the Yaksha hosts. And seeing those mighty charioteers, the sons of Pāndu, possessed of great strength, equipped with bows and swords, Kuvera also was delighted ; and he was pleased at heart, keeping in view the task of the celestials. And like unto birds, they, (the Yakshas) gifted with extreme celerity, alighted on the summit of the mountain, and stood before them (the Pāndavas), with the lord of treasures at their head. Then, O Bhārata, seeing him pleased with the Pāndavas, the Yakshas and the Gandharbas stood there, free from agitation. Then thinking themselves as having transgressed, those high-souled and mighty charioteers—the Pāndavas—having bowed down unto that lord, the giver of wealth, stood surrounding the lord of treasures with joined hands. And the lord of treasures sat on that excellent seat—the elegant Pushpaka—constructed by Viçwakarmā, painted with diverse colors. And by thousands Yakshas and Rākshasas, some having huge frames, and some, ears resembling pegs, and by hundreds Gandharbas and hosts of Apsarā's sat in the presence of that one seated, even as the celestials sit surrounding him of an hundred sacrifices. And wearing a beautiful golden garland on his

head, and holding in his hands his noose and sword and bow, Bhima stood, gazing at the lord of wealth. And Bhimasena did not feel depression either on having been wounded by the Rākshas, or even in that plight seeing Kuvera arrive.

"And that one going about on the shoulders of men, on seeing Bhima stand desirous of fight, with sharpened shafts, said unto Dharma's son.—'O Pārtha, all the creatures know thee as engaged in their good. Do thou, therefore, with thy brothers fearlessly dwell on this summit of the mountain. And, O Pāndava, be thou not agry with Bhima. These Yakshas and Rākshas had already been slain by Destiny: thy brother hath been the instrument merely. And it is not necessary to feel shame for this act of impudence that hath been committed. This destruction of the Rākshasas had been foreseen by the gods. I entertain no anger towards Bhimasena. Rather, O foremost of the Bharata race, I am pleased with him; nay,—even before coming here, I had been gratified with this deed of Bhima.'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having spoken this unto the king, (Kuvera) said unto Bhimasena,—'O child, O best of the Kurus, I do not mind this. O Bhima, as inorder to please Krishnā, thou hast, disregarding the gods and me also, committed this rash act,—namely, the destruction of the Yakshas and the Rākshasas,—depending on the strength of thy arms, I am well-pleased with thee. O Vrikodara, to-day I have been freed from a terrible curse. For some offence, that prime Rishi—Agastya—had cursed me in anger. Thou hast delivered me by this act (of thine). O Pāndu's son, my disgrace had ere this been fated. No offence, therefore, in any way, attacheth unto thee, O Pāndava.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'O divine one, why wast thou cursed by the high-souled Agastya? O god, I am curious to hear as to the occasion of that imprecation. I wonder that at that very moment, thou together with thy forces and attendants wast not consumed by the ire of that intelligent one.'

"Thereupon the lord of treasures said,—'At Kuçasthali, O king, once there was held a conclave of the gods. And surrounded by grim-visaged Yakshas, numbering three hundred

Mahā-padmas, carrying various weapons, I was repairing to that place. And on the way, I saw that foremost of sages—Agastya—engaged in the practise of severe austerities on the banks of the Yamunā, abounding in various birds and graced with blossoming trees. And, O king, immediately on seeing that mass of energy, flaming, and brilliant as fire, seated with upraised arms, facing the Sun, my friend, the graceful lord of the Rākshasas, Manimān, from stupidity, foolishness, hauteur and ignorance discharged his excrement on the crown of that Maharshi. Thereupon, as if burning all the cardinal points by his wrath, he said unto me,—Since, O lord of treasures, in thy very presence, disregarding me, this thy friend hath thus affronted me, he together with thy forces shall meet with destruction at the hands of a mortal. And, O wicked-minded one, thou also, being distressed on account of thy fallen soldiers, shalt be freed from thy sin, on beholding that mortal. But if they follow thy behests, their (the soldiers) powerful sons shall not come by this dreadful curse.—This curse I had received formerly from that foremost of Rishis. Now, O mighty king, have I been delivered by thy brother, Bhima.' "

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-first Section in the Yaksha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXII.

(Yaksha-yuddha Parva continued.)

"The lord of treasures said,—'O Yudhishthira, patience, ability, (appropriate) time and place, and prowess—these five lead to success in human affairs. O Bhārata, in the Krita Yuga, men were patient and able in their respective occupations, and they knew how to display prowess. And, O foremost of the Kshatriyas, a Kshatriya that is endued with patience, and that understandeth the propriety regarding place and time, and that is versed in all moral regulations, can alone govern the world for a long time,—nay, in all transactions, he that behaveth thus, acquireth, O hero, fame in this world, and excellent state in the next. And, by having displayed his

prowess at the proper place and time, Sakra with the Vasus hath obtained the dominion of heaven. He that from anger cannot see his fall, and he that being natuarally wicked and evil-minded, followeth evil, and he that knoweth not the propriety relative to acts, meet with destruction both in this world and the next. The exertions of that stupid person become fruitless, who is not conversant with the expediency regarding time and acts, and he meeteth with destruction both in this world and the next. And the object of that wicked and deceitful person is vicious, who, aiming at masterdom of every kind, committeth some rash act. O best of men, this Bhimasena is fearless, and ignorant of duties, and haughty, and of the sense of a child, and unforbearing. Do thou, therefore, check him. Repairing again to the hermitage of the pious sage Arshtishena, do thou reside there during the dark fortnight, without fear or anxiety. O lord of men, deputed by me, all the Gandharbas residing at Alakā, as also those dwelling in this mountain, will, O mighty-armed one, protect thee, and these best of the Brāhmanas. And, O king, O prime of virtuous men, knowing that Vrikodara hath come hither out of rashness, do thou check him. Henceforth, O monarch, beings living in the forest will meet with you, wait upon you and always protect you all. And ye foremost of men, my servants will always procure for you various meats and drinks of delicious flavour. And, O son, Yudhishthira, even as by reason of being the offspring of spiritual intercourse, Jishnu is entitled to the protection of Mahendra, and Vrikodara, of the wind-god, and thou, of Dharma, and the twins possessed of strength, of the Açwins, so ye all are entitled to my protection. That one next by birth to Bhimasena, Fālguna, versed in the science of profit, and all moral regulations, is well in heaven. And, O child, those perfections that are recognised in the world as leading to heaven, are established in Dhananjaya even from his very birth. And self-restraint, and charity, and strength, and intelligence, and modesty, and fortitude, and excellent energy—even all these are established in that majestic one of maginficent soul. And, O Pāndava, Jishnu never

committeth any shameful act through poverty of spirit. And in the world, none ever say that Pārtha hath uttered an untruth. And, O Bhārata, honored by the gods, the Pitris, and the Gandharbas, that enhancer of the glory of the Kurus is learning the science of weapons in Sakra's abode. And, O Pārtha, in heaven, he that with justice had brought under his subjection all the rulers of the earth, even that exceedingly powerful, and highly energetic monarch, the grand-sire of thy father, Sāntanu himself, is well-pleased with the behaviour of that wielder of the Gāndiva—the foremost of his race. And, O king, abiding in Indra's regions, he who on the banks of the Yamuna had worshipped the gods, the Pitris, and the Brāhmanas, by celebrating seven grand horse sacrifices, that great grand-sire of thine, the emperor Sāntanu of severe austerities, who hath attained heaven, hath enquired of thy welfare.'"

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having heard these words of the disponser of wealth, the Pāndavas were well-pleased with them. Then lowering his club and mace and sword and bow, that foremost of the Bhāratas bowed down unto Kuvera. And that giver of protection, the lord of treasures, seeing him prostrate, said,—'Be thou the destroyer of the pride of foes, and the enhencer of the delight of friends. And ye oppressors of enemies, do ye live in our romantic region. The Yakshas will not cross your desires. Gudākeça, after having acquired mastery over weapons, will come back soon. Bidden adieu by Maghavān himself, Dhananjaya will join you.'

"Having thus instructed Yudhishthira of excellent deeds, the lord of the Guhyakas vanished from that best of mountains. And thousands upon thousands of Yakshas and Rākshasas followed him in vehicles spread over with chekered cushions, and decorated with various jewels. And as the horses proceeded towards the abode of Kuvera, a noise arose as of birds flying in the air. And the chargers of the lord of treasures speedily coursed through the sky, as if drawing forward the firmament, and devouring the air.

"Then at the command of the lord of wealth, the dead bodies of the Rākshasas were removed from the summit of

the mountain. As the intelligent Agastya had fixed this period as the limit of the (duration of) his curse, so being slain in conflict, the Rākshasas were freed from the imprecation. And being honored by the Rākshasas, the Pāndavas for several nights dwelt pleasantly in those habitations."

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-second Section in the Yaksha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXIII.

(Yaksha-yuddha Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then, O repressor of foes, at sunrise, having finished his daily devotions, Dhaumya came unto the Pāndavas, with Arshtishena. And having bowed down unto the feet of Arshtishena and Dhaumya, they with joined hands paid homage unto all the Brāhmanas. Then Dhaumya, taking Yudhishthira's right hand, said these words, looking at the east,—'O mighty monarch, this king of mountains—Mandara—lieth vast, covering the earth up to the ocean. O Pāndava, Indra and Vaiçravana preside over this point graced with woods and forests and mountains. And, O child, the intelligent sages versed in every duty, say, that this (region) is the abode of Indra and king Vaiçravana. And the twice-born ones, and the sages versed in duties, and the Siddhas, and the Sādhyas, and the celestials, pay their adorations unto the Sun as he riseth from this point. And that lord of all living beings, king Yama, conversant with duty, presideth over yond southern region whither come the spirits of the departed. And this is Sanyamana, the abode of the lord of the departed spirits, sacred, and wonderful to behold, and crowned with prime prosperity. And the intelligent ones call that monarch of mountains (by the name of) Asta. Having, O king, arrived at this, the Sun ever abideth by the truth. And king Varuna protects all creatures, abiding in this king of mountains, and also the vasty deep. And, O highly fortunate one, there illumining the northern regions, lieth the puissant Mahāmeru, auspicious, and the refuge of those knowing Brahma, where is the court of Brahmā, and remaining where

that soul of all creatures, Prajāpati, hath created all that is mobile and immobile. And the Mahāmeru is the auspicious and healthy abode even of the seven mind-born sons of Brahmā, of whom Daksha was the seventh. And, O child, here it is that the seven celestial *rishis* with Vaçistha at their head rise and set. Behold that excellent and bright summit of the Meru, where seateth the great-sire (Brahmā) with the celestials happy in self-knowledge. And next to the abode of Brahmā is visible the region of him who is said to be the really primal Cause of the origin of all creatures, even that prime lord, god Nārāyana, having neither beginning nor end. And, O king, that auspicious place composed of all energies even the celestials cannot behold. And the region of the high-souled Vishnu, by its native splendour, exceeding in effulgence the sun or fire, cannot be beheld by the gods, or the Dānavas. And the region of Nārāyana lieth resplendent to the east of the Meru, where, O child, that lord of all creatures, the self-create primal Cause of the universe, having manifested all beings, looketh splendid of his excellent grace. O child, not to speak of the Maharshis—even Brahmarshis have no access to that place. And, O best of the Kurus, it is the Yatis only who have access to it. And, O Pandu's son, (at that place) luminaries cannot shine by Him; there that lord of in conceivable soul alone shineth transcendental. There by reverence, and severe austerities, Yatis inspired by virtue of pious practises, attain Nārayana Hari. And, O Bhārata, repairing thither, and attaining that universal Soul —the self-create and eternal god of gods, high-souled ones, of Yoga success, and free from ignorance and pride have not to return to this world. O highly fortunate Yudhishthira, this region is without beginning, or deterioration, or end; for it is the very essence of that god. And, O son of the Kurus, the Sun and the Moon every day go round this Meru, coursing in an opposite direction. And, O sinless one, O mighty monarch, the other luminaries also go round this king of mountains in the self-same way. Thus the worshipful Sun who dispelleth darkness, goeth round this (mountain), obscuring other luminaries. Then having set, and passed the evening, that Maker

of day—the Sun taketh a northerly course. Then again nearing the Meru, the divine Sun (ever) intent on the good of all beings, again courseth, facing the east. And in this way, the divine Moon also together with the stars goeth round this mountain, dividing the month unto several sections, by his arrival at the Parvas. Having thus unerringly coursed round the mighty Meru, and, nourished all creatures, the Moon again repaireth unto the Mandara. In the same way, that destroyer of darkness—the divine Sun—also moveth on this unobstructed path, animating the universe. When, desirous of causing dew, he repaireth to the south, then there ensueth winter to all creatures. Then the sun, turning back from the south, by his rays draweth up the energy from all creatures both mobile and immobile. Thereupon, men become subject to perspiration, fatigue, drowsiness and lassitude; and living beings always feel disposed to slumber. Thence returning through unknown regions, that divine effulgent one causeth shower, and thereby reviveth beings. And having by the comfort caused by the shower, wind, and warmth, cherished the mobile and the immobile, the powerful Sun resumeth his former course. O Pārtha, ranging thus, the Sun unerringly turneth on the wheel of Time, influencing created things. His course is unceasing: he never resteth, O Pāndava. Withdrawing the energy of all beings, he again rendereth it back. O Bhārata, dividing time into day and night, and Kalā, and Kāshthā, that lord, the Sun, dealeth life and motion to all created things.' "

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-third Section in the Yaksha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLIV.

(Yaksha-yuddha Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Dwelling in that best of mountains, those high-souled ones observing excellent vows, felt themselves attracted (to that place), and diverted themselves, eager to behold Arjuna. And multitudes of Gandharbas and Maharshis gladly visited those energetic ones, possessing

prowess, of chaste desires, and being the foremost of those endued with truth and fortitude. And having arrived at that excellent mountain furnished with trees bearing blossoms, those mighty charioteers were exceedingly delighted, even as the Maruts, on arriving at the celestial regions. And experiencing great exhilaration, they lived (there), seeing the slopes and summits of that mighty mountain, filled with flowers, and resonant with the cries of peacocks and cranes. And on that beautiful mountain they beheld lakes filled with lotuses, and having their shores covered (with trees), and frequented by drakes, and Kārandavas and swans. And the flourishing sporting-regions, graceful on account of the various flowers, and abounding in gems, was capable of captivating that king—the dispenser of wealth (Kuvera). And always ranging (there), those foremost of ascetics (the Pāndavas) were incapable of conceiving (the siginificance of) that Summit, furnished with mighty trees, and masses of wide-spreading clouds. And, O great hero, owing to its native splendour, and also on account of the brilliance of the annual plants, there was no difference there between night and day. And staying in that mountain, remaining in which the Sun of unrivalled energy cherisheth the mobile and immobile things, those heroes and foremost of men beheld the rising and the setting of the Sun. And having seen the rising and the setting points of the Sun, and the rising and the setting mountain, and all the cardinal points, as well as the entervening spaces ever blazing with the rays of the Dispeller of darkness, those heroes, in expectation of the arrival of that mighty charioteer firm in truth, became engaged in reciting the Vedas, practising the daily rituals, chiefly discharging the religious duties, exercising sacred vows, and abiding by the truth. And saying,—'Let us even here experience delight by joining without delay Arjuna accomplished in arms,' those highly blessed Pārthas became engaged in the practise of *Yoga*. And beholding romantic woods on that mountain, as they always thought of Kiriti, every day and night appeared unto them even as a year. From that very moment joy had taken leave of them, when, with Dhaumya's permission, the high-

souled Jishnu, matting his hair, departed (for the woods). So, how could they, absorbed in his contemplation experience happiness there? They had become overwhelmed with grief ever since the moment when at the command of his brother, Yudhishthira, Jishnu of the tread of a mad elephant had departed from the Kāmyaka forest. O Bhārata, in this way, on that mountain those descendants of Bhārata passed a month with difficulty, thinking of him of the white steeds, who had gone to Vāsava's abode, for learning arms. And Arjuna, having dwelt for five years in the abode of him of a thousand eyes, and having from that lord of the celestials obtained all the celestial weapons,—such as those of Agni, of Varuna, of Soma, of Vāyu, of Vishnu, of Indra, of Paçupatī, of Brahmā, of Parameshthi, of Prajāpati, of Yama, of Dhātā, of Savitā, of Tashtā, and of Vaiçravana; and having bowed down to and gone round him of an hundred sacrifices, and taken his (Indra's) permission, cheerfully came to the Gandhamādana."

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-fourth Section in the Yaksha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

Section CLXV.

(Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"And it came to pass that once on a day as those mighty charioteers were thinking of Arjuna, seeing Mahendra's car, yoked with horses, of the effulgence of lightning, arrive all on a sudden, they were delighted. And driven by Mātali, that blazing car, suddenly illuminating the sky, looked like smokeless flaming tongues of fire, or a mighty meteor embosomed in clouds. And seated in that car appeared Kiriti, wearing garlands and new-made ornaments. Then Dhananjaya possessing the prowess of the wielder of the thunderbolt, alighted on that mountain, blazing in beauty. And that intelligent one decked in a diadem and garlands, having alighted on the mountain, first bowed down at the feet of Dhaumya, and then at those of Ajātaçatru. And he also paid homage unto Vrikodara's feet; and the twins also bowed

down unto him. Then going to Krishnā, and having cheered her, he stood before his (elder) brother in humble guise. And on meeting with that matchless one, they were exceedingly delighted. And he also meeting with them rejoiced exceedingly, and began to eulogise the king. And seeing before them that car driving in which the slayer of Namuchi had annihilated seven phalanxes of Diti's offspring, the magnanimous Pārthas went round it. And being highly pleased, they offered excellent worship unto Mātali, as unto the lord of the celestials himself. And then the son of the Kuru king duly enquired of him after the health of all the gods. And Mātali also greeted them. And having instructed the Pārthas even as a father doth his sons, he ascended that incomparable car, and returned to the lord of the celestials.

"And when Mātali had gone away, that foremost of the royal race,—Sakra's son—the high-souled destroyer of all foes, made over unto his love—the mother of Sutasoma—beautiful precious gems, and ornaments having the splendour of the sun, which had been presented to him by Sakra. Then, sitting in the midst of those foremost of the Kurus, and those best of the Brāhmanas, effulgent like unto fire or the sun, he began to relate all as it had happened, saying,—'In this way, I have learnt weapons from Sakra, Vāyu, and the manifest Siva; and all the celestials with Indra also have been pleased with me, on account of my good beheavour, and concentration.'

"After having briefly narrated unto them his sojourn in heaven, Kiriti of spotless deeds agreeably slept that night with the two sons of Mādri."

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-fifth Section in the Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXVI.

(Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then when the night had been spent, Dhananjaya, together with his brothers, paid homage unto Yudhishthira the just. And, O Bhārata, at this moment,

proceeding from the celestials there arose mighty and tremendous sounds of all musical instruments, and the rattling of car-wheels, and the tolling of bells. And thereat all the beasts and beasts of prey and birds emitted separate cries. And from all sides in cars resplendent as the sun, hosts of Gandharbas and Apsaras began to follow that repressor of foes, the lord of the celestials. And ascending a car yoked with steeds, decorated with burnished gold, and roaring like clouds, that king of the celestials, Purandara, blazing in beauty came unto the Pārthas. And having arrived (at that place), he of a thousand eyes descended from his car. And soon as Yudhishthira the just saw that high-souled one, he together with his brothers, approached that graceful king of the immortals. And in accordance with the ordinance that generous one duly worshipped him of immeasurable soul, in consonance with his dignity. And then Dhananjaya possessed of prowess, having bowed down unto Purandara, stood before the lord of the celestials in humble guise, like unto a servant. And seeing the sinless Dananjaya having ascetic merit, bearing clotted hair, stand in humility before the lord of celestials, Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, of great energy, smelt (the crown) of his head. And beholding Fālguna (in that attitude) he was exceedingly glad; and by worshipping the king of the celestials, he experienced the highest bliss. Then unto that strong-minded monarch, swimming in felicity, the intelligent lord of the celestials, Purandara, spake, saying,—'Thou shalt rule the earth, O Pāndava. Blessed be thou! Do thou, O Kunti's son, again repair unto Kāmyaka.'

"That learned man who for a year leading the Brahmācharya mode of life, subduing his senses and observing vows, peruseth with rapt attention this meeting of Sakra with the Pāndavas, liveth an hundred years free from disturbances, and enjoying happiness."

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-sixth Section in the Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

Section CLXVII.

(Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"When Sakra had gone to his proper place, Vibhatsu together with his brothers and Krishnā, paid homage unto the son of Dharma. Then smelling the crown of the head of that Pāndava, who was thus paying homage, (Yudhishthira) in accents faltering on account of joy, addressed Arjuna, saying,—'O Arjuna, how hast thou passed this period in heaven? And how hast thou obtained the weapons,—and how also hast thou gratified the lord of the celestials? And, O Pāndava, hast thou adequately secured the weapons? Have the lord of the celestials and Rudra gladly granted thee the weapons? And how hast thou beheld the divine Sakra, and the wilder of Pināka? And how hast thou obtained the weapons? And in what manner didst thou worship (them)? And what service hadst thou done unto that repressor of foes, the worshipful one of an hundred sacrifices, that he had said unto thee,—By thee have I been gratified—? All this, O highly effulgent one, I wish to hear in detail. And, O sinless one, the manner in which thou didst please Mahādeva and the king of the celestials and, O repressor of foes, the service thou hadst done to the wielder of the thunderbolt,—do thou, O Dhananyaya, relate all this in detail.'

"Arjuna said,—'O mighty monarch, listen how I duly beheld him of an hundred sacrifices and the divine Sankara also. O grinder of foes, O king, having acquired that science which thou hadst directed me (to learn), I at thy command went to the forest, for practising penances. From Kāmyaka repairing to the Bhrigutunga, I spent there one night, being engaged in austerities. And it came to pass that on the next day I saw a certain Brāhmana. And he asked me, saying,—O son of Kunti, whither wilt thou go?—Thereupon, O descendant of the Kurus, I truly related unto him everything. And, O best of kings, having heard the true account, the Brāhmana became well-pleased with me, and, O king, praised me. Then, O

Bhārata, pleased with me, he said,—O Bhārata, be thou engaged in austerities. By performing penances, thou wilt in a short time behold the lord of the celestials.—And according to his advice, I ascended the Himavān, and, O mighty king, began to practise penances, (the first) month subsisting on fruits and roots. I spent the second month, subsisting on water. And, O Pāndava, in the third month I totally abstained from food. And in the fourth month I remained with upraised arms. And a wonder it is that I did not lose any strength. And it came to pass that when the first day of the fifth month had been spent, there appeared before me a being wearing the form of a boar, turning up the earth with his mouth, stamping at the ground with his feet, rubbing the earth with his breast, and momentarily going about in a frightful manner. And him followed a great being in the guise of a hunter furnished with the bow, arrows, and the sword, and surrounded by females. Thereupon, taking my bow and the two inexhaustible quivers, I pierced with shafts that terrible and frightful creature. And simultaneously (with me) that hunter also drawing a strong bow, more severely struck at (the animal), as if shaking my mind. And, O king. he also said unto one,—Why hast thou, transgressing the rules of hunting, hit the animal first hit at by me? With these sharpened shafts will I destroy thy pride. Stay!—Then that mighty-bodied one holding the bow rushed at me. And with volleys of mighty shafts, he covered me entirely, even as a cloud covereth a mountain with showers. Then, on my part, I covered him with a mighty discharge of arrows. Thereupon, with steady arrows having their points aflame, and inspired with Mantras, I pierced him even as (Indra) riveth a mountain with a thunder-bolt. Then his person began to be multiplied an hundred fold and a thousand fold. At this, I pierced all his bodies with shafts. Then again all those forms became one, O Bhārata. Thereat I struck at it. Next, he now assumed a small body with a huge head, and now a huge body with a small head. And, O king, he then assumed his former person, and approached me for fight. And, O foremost of the Bharata

race, when in the encounter I failed to overwhelm him with arrows, I fixed the mighty weapon of the wind-god. But I failed to discharge it at him, and this was a wonder. And when that weapon thus failed of effect, I was struck with amazement. However, O king, exerting myself more vigorously, I again covered that being with a mighty multitude of shafts. Then taking Sthunākarna, and Vāruna, and Salava, and Açmavarsha weapons, I assailed him, profusely showering shafts. But, O king, he instantly sallowed up even all these weapons of mine. And when all those (weapons) had been swallowed up, I discharged the weapon presided over by Brahmā. And then the blazing arrows issuing from that weapon were heaped upon him all around, and being thus heaped over by that mighty weapon discharged by me, he increased (in bulk). Then all the world became oppressed with the energy begot of the weapon hurled by me, and the firmament and all the points of the sky became illumined. But that one of mighty energy instantly baffled even that weapon. And, O monarch, when that weapon presided over by Brahmä had been baffled, I was possessed with terrible fear. Thereupon immediatelly holding even my bow and the two inexhaustible quivers, I shot at that being, but he swallowed up all those weapons. And when all the weapons had been baffled and swallowed up, there ensued a wrestling between him and myself. And we encountered each other first with blows and then with slaps. But incapable of overcoming that being, I fell down stupified on the ground. Thereupon, O mighty king, with a laugh, that wonderful being at my sight vanished at that spot together with the women. Having accomplished this, O illustrious monarch, that divine one assumed another and unearthly form, (clad in) wonderful raiment. And renouncing the form of a hunter, that divine lord of the gods, resumed his own unearthly appearance, and that mighty god stood (there). Then appeared before me with Umā that manifest divine one, having the bull for his mark, weilding the Pināka, bearing serpents, and capable of assuming many forms. And, O repressor of foes, advancing towards me, standing even then in the field ready for conflict, that wielder of the trident

addressed me, saying,—I am well-pleased with thee.—Then that divine one held up my bow and the couple of quivers furnished with inexhaustible shafts, and returned them unto me, saying,—Do thou ask some boon, O Kunti's son. I am well-pleased with thee. Tell me, what I shall do for thee. And, O hero, express the desire that dwelleth in thy heart. I will grant it. Except immortality alone, tell me as to the desire that is in thy heart.—Thereat with my mind intent on the acquisition of arms, I inly bowed down unto Siva, and said,—O divine one, if thou beest favorably disposed towards me, then I wish to have this boon,—I wish to learn all the weapons that are with thy god-head.—Then the god Tramvaka said unto me,—I will give. O Pāndava, my own weapon Raudra shall attend upon thee.—Thereupon, Mahādeva well-pleased, granted unto me the mighty weapon, Pāçupata. And having granted that eternal weapon, he also said unto me,—This must never be hurled at mortals. If discharged at any person of small energy, it would consume the universe. Shouldst thou (at any time) be hard pressed, thou mayst discharge it. And, when all thy weapons have been completely baffled, thou mayst hurl it.—Then when he having the bull for his mark had been thus gratified, there stood manifest by my side that celestial weapon, of resistless force, capable of baffling all weapons, and destructive of foes, and the hewer of hostile forces, and unrivalled, and difficult to be borne even by the celestials, the demons, and the Rākshasas. Then at the command of that god, I sat me down there. And in my very sight the god vanished from the spot.'"

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-seventh Section in the Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha in the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXVIII.

(Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha Parva continued.)

"Arjuna said,—'O Bhārata, by the grace of that god of gods, the Supreme Soul—Tramvaka—I passed the night at that place. And having passed the night, when I had finished

the morning rituals, I saw that foremost of the Brāhmanas whom I had seen before. And unto him I told all as it had happened, O Bhārata,—namely, that I had met the divine Mahādeva. Thereupon, O king of kings, well-pleased, he said unto me,—Since thou hast beheld the great god, incapable of being beheld by any one else, soon wilt thou mix with Vaivaswata and the other Lokpālas, and the lord of the celestials; and Indra too will grant thee weapons.—O king, having said this unto me, and having embraced me again and again, that Brāhmana, resembling the Sun, went away whither he listed. And, O slayer of foes, it came to pass that on the evening of that day, refreshing the whole world, there began to blow a pure breeze. And in my vicinity, on the base of the Himālaya mountain, fresh, fragrant, and fair flowers began to bloom. And on all sides there was heard charming symphony and captivating hymns relating to Indra. And before the lord of the celestials, hosts of Apsarās and Gandharbas chaunted various songs. And, ascending celestial cars, there approached the Māruts, and the followers of Mahendra, and the dwellers of heaven. And afterwards, Marutvan, together with Sachi and all the celestials, appeared on the scene, in cars yoked with horses elegantly adorned. And at this very moment, O king, he that goeth about on the shoulders of men, manifested himself unto me, in excellent grace. And I saw Yama seated on the south,—and Varuna and the lord of the celestials at their respective regions. And, O foremost of men, O mighty monarch, they, after having cheered me, said,—O Savyasāchin, behold us—the Lokpālas—seated. In order to the performance of the task of the gods, thou hast obtained a sight of Sankara. Do thou now receive weapons from us, seated around.—Thereupon, O lord, having bowed down unto those foremost of the celestials, with regard, I duly accepted those mighty weapons. And then they recognised me as one of their own. Afterwards the gods repaired to the quarter from whence they had come. And that lord of the celestials, the divine Maghavān too, having ascended his glorious chariot, said,—O Phālguna, thou shalt have to repair unto the celestial regions, O Dhananjaya, even before this thy arrival,

I had known that thou wouldst come hither. Then have I, O best of the Bhāratas, manifested myself unto thee. As formerly thou hadst performed thy ablutions in the various *tirthas*, and now hadst performed severe austerities, so thou wilt be able to repair unto the celestial regions, O Pāndava. Thou wilt, however, again have to practise extreme penances, for thou shouldst at any rate sojourn to heaven. And at my command, Mātali shall take thee to the celestial regions. Thou hast already been recognised by the celestials, and the celestial sages of high souls.—Thereupon I said unto Sakra,—O divine one, be thou favorable unto me. With the view of learning arms, do I beesech thee that thou mayst be my preceptor.—At this, Indra said,—O child, having learnt weapons, thou wouldst perform terrible deeds,—and with this object, thou desirest to obtain the weapons. However, obtain thou the arms, as thou desirest.—Then, I said,—O slayer of foes, I never would discharge these celestial weapons at mortals, except when all my other arms should have been baffled. Do thou, O lord of the celestials, grant me the celestial weapons, —(so that) I may hereafter obtain the regions attainable by warriors.—Indra said,—O Dhananjaya, it is to try thee that I have said such words unto thee. Having been begot of me, this speech of thine well becometh thee. Do thou, O Bhārata, repairing unto my abode, learn all the weapons of Vāyu, of Agni, of the Vasus, of Varuna, of the Maruts, of the Sāddhas, of Brahmā, of the Gandharbas, of the Uragas, of the Rākshasas, of Vishnu, and of the Nairitas; and also all the weapons that are with me, O perpetuator of the Kuru race.—Having said this unto me, Sackra vanished at the very spot.—Then, O king, I saw the wonderful, and sacred celestial car yoked with steeds, arrive, conducted by Mātali. And when the Lokapālas had gone away, Mātali said unto me,—O thou of mighty splendour, the lord of the celestials is desirous of seeing thee. And, O mighty-armed one, do thou acquire competence, and then perform thy task. Come and behold the regions attainable by merit, and come unto heaven even in this frame. O Bhārata, the thousand-eyed lord of the celestials, wisheth to see thee.—Thus addressed by Mātali, I, taking the leave of the

mountain Himālaya, and having gone round him, ascended that excellent car. And then the exceedingly generous Mātali, versed in equine lore, drove the steeds, gifted with the speed of thought or the wind. And when the chariot began to move, that charioteer looking at my face as I was seated steadily, wondered, and said these words,—To-day this appeareth unto me strange and unprecedented, that being seated in this celestial car, thou hast not been jerked ever so little. O foremost of the Bharata race, I have ever remarked that at the first pull by the steeds, even the lord of the celestials himself geteth jerked. But all the while that the car had moved, thou hast been sitting unshaken. This appeareth unto me as transcending even the power of Sakra.—

"'Having said this, O Bhārata, Mātali soared to the sky, and showed me the abodes of the celestials and their palaces. Then the chariot yoked with steeds coursed upwards. And the celestials and the sages began to worship (that car), O prime of men. And I saw the regions moving anywhere at will, and the splendour also of the highly energetic Gandharbas. Apsarās, and celestial sages. And Sakra's charioteer—Mātali—at once showed me Nandana, and other gardens and groves belonging to the celestials. Next I beheld Indra's abode, Amarāvati, adorned with jewels, and trees yielding any sort of fruit that is desired. There the Sun doth not shed heat, nor doth heat or cold or fatigue there affect (one), O king. And, O great monarch, the celestials feel neither sorrow, nor poverty of spirit, nor weakness, nor lassitude, O grinder of foes. And, O ruler of men, the celestials and the others have neither anger nor covetuousness. And, O king, in the abodes of the celesals, the beings are ever contented. And there the trees ever (bear) verdant foliage, and fruits, and flowers; and the various lakes are furnished with the fragrance of lotuses. And there the breeze is cool, and delicious, and fragrant, and pure, and inspiring. And the ground is variegated with all kinds of gems, and adorned with blossoms. And there were seen innumerable beautiful beasts, and in the air innumerable rangers of the sky. Then I saw the Vasus, and the Rudras, and the Sāddhyas with the Maruts, and the Adi-

tyas, and the two Açwins; and I worshipped them. And they conferred their benison on me, granting me strength and prowess, and energy, and celebrity, and (skill in) arms, and victory in battle. Then, entering that romantic city adored by the Gandharbas and the celestials, with joined hands I stood before the thousand-eyed lord of the celestials. Thereupon, that best of bestowers gladly offered unto me half of his seat; and Vāsava also with regard touched my person. And, O Bhārata, with the view of acquiring arms and learning weapons, I began to dwell in heaven, together with the gods and the Gandharbas of generous souls. And Viçwāvan's son, Chitrasena, became my friend. And he, O king, imparted unto me the entire Gandharba (science). And, O monarch, I happily lived in Sakra's abode, well cared for, having all my desires gratified, learning weapons, listening to the notes of songs, and the clear sounds of musical instruments, and beholding the foremost of Apsarās dance. And without neglecting to study the arts, which I learnt properly, my attention was specially fixed on the acquisition of arms. And that lord of a thousand eyes was pleased with that purpose of mine. Living thus in heaven, O king, I have passed this period.

"'And when I had acquired proficiency in weapons, and gained his confidence, that one having for his vehicle the horse (Uchaiçravā), (Indra), patting me on the head with his hand, said these words,—Now even the celestials themselves cannot conquer thee,—what shall I say of imperfect mortals residing on earth? Thou hast become incomprehensible in strength, irrepressible, and incomparable in fight.—Then with the hair of his body standing on end, he again accosted me, saying,—O hero, in fighting with weapons, none is equal unto thee. And, O perpetuator of the Kuru race, thou art ever watchful, and dexterous, and truthful, and of subdued senses, and the protector of the Brāhmanas, and adept in weapons, and warlike. And, O Pārtha, together with (a knowledge of) the five modes of using (them), thou hast obtained five and ten weapons; and, therefore, there existeth none who is thy peer. And thou hast perfectly learnt the discharge (of those weapons), and (their) withdrawal, and (their) re-discharge and re-

withdrawal, and the *prāyaçhitya** connected (with them). and also their revival, in case of their being baffled. Now, O repressor of foes, hath the time arrived for thy paying the preceptor's fee. Do thou promise to pay the fee: then I shall unfold unto thee what thou wilt have to perform—Thereat, O king, I said unto the ruler of the celestials,—If it be in my power to do the work, do thou consider it as already accomplished by me.—O king, when I had said these words, Indra with a smile said unto me,—Nothing is there in the three worlds that is not in thy power (to achieve). My enemies, those Dānavas, named, Nivāta-Kavachas dwell in the womb of the ocean. And they number thirty-millions, and are notorious, and all of equal forms and strength and splendour. Do thou slay them there, O Kunti's son; and that will be thy preceptor's fee.—

"'Saying this, he gave unto me the highly resplendent celestial car, conducted by Mātali, furnished with hair resembling the down of peacocks. And on my head he set this excellent diadem. And he gave me ornaments for my body, like unto his own. And he granted unto me the impenetrable mail—the best of its kind, and easy to the touch; and fastened unto the Gāndiva this durable string. Then I set out, ascending that splendid chariot, riding on which in days of yore, the lord of the celestials had vanquished Vali—that son of Virochana. And, O ruler of men, startled by the rattling of the car, all the celestials, approached (there), taking me to be the king of the celestials. And seeing me, they asked,—O Phālguna,—What art thou going to do ?—And I told them as it had fallen out,—and said,—I shall even do this in battle. Ye that are highly fortunate, know that I have set out, desirous of slaying the Nivāta-Kavachas. O sinless ones, do ye bless me.—Thereupon, they began to eulogise me, even as they (eulogise) the god Purandara. And they said,—Riding on this car, Maghavā had conquered in battle Samvara, and Namuchi, and Vala, and Vritra, and Prahrada, and Naraka. And mounted on this car also Maghavā had conquered in battle many

* The power to revive inoffensive beings slain by any weapon.

thousands, and millions, and hundreds of millions of Daityas. And, O Kaunteya, thou also, riding on this car, by thy prowess shalt conquer the Nivāta Kavachas in conflict, even as did the self-possessed Maghavān in days of yore. And here is the best of shells: by this also thou shalt defeat the Dānavas. And by this it is that the high-souled Sakra had conquered the worlds.—Saying this, the gods offered (unto me) this shell, Devadatta, sprung in the deep; and I accepted it for the sake of victory. And at this moment, the gods fell to extoolling me. And inorder to be engaged in action, I proceeded to the dreadful abode of the Dānavas, furnished with the shell, the mail, and arrows, and taking my bow.' "

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-eighth Section in the Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXIX.

(Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha Parva continued.)

"Arjuna continued,—'Then at places eulogised by the Maharshis, I (proceeded, and at length) beheld the ocean—that inexhaustible lord of waters. And like unto flowing cliffs were seen on it heaving billows, now meeting together, and now rolling away. And there (were seen) all around barks by thousands filled with gems. And there were seen *Timingilas*, and tortoises, and *Timitimingilas*, and *Makaras* like unto rocks submerged in water. And on all sides round thausands of shells sunk in water appeared like stars in the night covered by light clouds. And thousands upon thousands of gems were floating in heaps, and a violent wind was blowing about in whirls,—and this was wonderful to behold. And having beheld that excellent lord of all waters with powerful tides, I saw at a short distance the city of the demons filled with the Dānavas. And even there, eftsoons entering underneath the earth, Mātali skilled in guiding the car, sitting fast on the chariot, drove it with force; and he dashed on, frightening that city with the rattling of his chariot. And hearing that rattling of the chariot, like unto the rumbling of the clouds in the sky, the Dānavas, thinking me to be the lord of the celestials, became agitated.

And thereupon they all, frightened at heart, stood, holding in their hands bows, and arrows, and swords, and javelins, and axes, and maces, and clubs. Then, having made arrangements for the defence of the city, the Dānavas, with minds alarmed, shut the gates,—so that nothing could be discovered. Thereupon, taking my shell, Devadatta, of tremendous roars, I again and again winded it, with exceeding cheerfulness. And filling all the firmament, those sounds produced echoes. Thereat mighty beings were terrified and hid (themselves). And then, O Bhārata, all of them adorned with ornaments, those offspring of Diti—the Nivāta-Kavachas—made their appearance by thousands, donning on diverse mail, and taking in their hands various weapons, and equipped with mighty iron javelins and maces and clubs and hatchets and sabres and discs and *Sataghnis* and *Bhushundis* and variegated and ornamented swords. Then, after deliberating much as to the course of the car, Mātali began to guide the steeds on a (piece of) level ground, O foremost of the Bhāratas. And owing to the swiftness of those fleet coursers conducted by him, I could see nothing,—and this was strange. Then the Dānavas there began to sound thousands of musical instruments dissonant and of odd shapes. And at those sounds, fishes by hundreds and by thousands, like unto hills, having their senses bewildered by that noise, fled suddenly. And with mighty force flew at me the demons, discharging sharpened shafts by hundreds and by thousands. And then, O Bhārata, there ensued a dreadful conflict between me and the demons, calculated to extinguish the Nivāta-Kavachas. And there came to the mighty battle the Devarshis, and the Dānāvarshis, and the Brahmarshis, and the Siddhas. And desirous of victory, the Munis eulogised me with the same sweet speeches that (they had eulogised) Indra with, at the war (which took place) for the sake of Tārā.' "

Thus ends the hundred and sixty-ninth Section in the Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

Section CLXX.

(*Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha Parva continued.*)

"Arjuna continued,—'Then, O Bhārata, vehemently rushed at me in battle in a body all the Nivāta-Kavachas, equipped with arms. And obstructing the course of the car, and shouting loudly, those mighty charioteers, hemming me in on all sides, covered me with showers of shafts. Then other demons of mighty prowess, with darts and hatchets in their hands, began to throw at me spears and axes. And that mighty discharge of darts, with numerous maces and clubs incessantly hurled, fell upon my car. And other dreadful and grim-visaged smiters among the Nivāta-Kavachas, furnished with bows and sharpened weapons, ran at me in fight. And in the conflict, shooting from the Gāndiva sundry swift arrows coursing straight, I pierced each (of them) with ten. And they were driven back by those stone-whetted shafts of mine. Then on my steeds being swiftly driven by Mātali, they began to display various movements with the speed of the wind. And being skilfully guided by Mātali, they began to trample upon the sons of Diti. And although the steeds yoked unto that mighty chariot numbered hundreds upon hundreds, yet being deftly conducted by Mātali, they began to move, as if they were only a few. And by their tread, and by the rattling of the chariot-wheels, and by the vollies of my shafts, the Dānavas began to fall by hundreds. And others accoutred in bows, being deprived of life, and having their charioteers slain, were carried about by the horses. Then, covering all sides and directions, all (the Dānavas) skilled in striking, entered into the contest with various weapons,—and thereat my mind became afflicted. And I witnessed (this instance of) the marvellous prowess of Mātali,—viz.,—that he guided those fiery steeds with ease. Then, O king, in the conflict, with diverse fleet weapons I pierced by hundreds and by thousands (demons) bearing arms. And, O slayer of foes, seeing me thus range the field putting forth every exertion, the heroic charioteer of Sakra was well-pleased. And oppressed by those

steeds and that car, some (of them) met with annihilation; and others desisted from fight; while (other) Nivāta-Kavachas, challenged by us in battle, and being harassed with shafts, offered opposition unto me, by (discharging) mighty showers of arrows. Thereupon, with hundreds and thousands of sundry fleet weapons inspired with the *Mantras* relating to Brahma's weapon, I swifty began to burn them. And being sore pressed by me, those mighty Asuras waxing wroth, afflicted me together, by pouring torrents of clubs, and darts, and swords. Then, O Bhārata, I took up that favorite weapon of the lord of the celestials,—Māghava by name, prime and of fiery energy. And by the energy of that weapon, I cut into a thousand pieces the *Tomaras*, together with the swords, and the tridents hurled by them. And having cut off their arms, I in ire pierced them each with ten shafts. And in the field, arrows were shot from the Gāndiva, like unto rows of black-bees; and this Mātali admired. And their shafts also showered upon me; but those powerful (arrows) I cut off with my shafts. Then on being struck, the Nivāta-Kavachas again covered me on all sides with a mighty shower of arrows. And having neutralised the force of the arrows by excellent swift and flaming weapons capable of baffling arms, I pierced them by thousands. And blood began to flow from their torn frames, even as in the rainy season waters run down from the summits of mountains. And on being wounded by my fleet and straight-coursing shafts of the touch of Indra's thunder-bolt, they became greatly agitated. And their bodies were pierced at hundreds of places; and the force of their arms diminished. Then the Nivāta-Kavachas faught me by (the help of) illusion.'"

Thus ends the hundred and seventieth Section in the Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXI.

(Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha Parva continued.)

"Arjuna said,—'Then with rocks of the proportions of trees, there commenced a mighty shower of crags; and this exercised

me exceedingly. And in that high encounter, I crushed (those crags) by swift-speeding showers of arrows, issuing from Mahendra's weapon, like unto the thunder-bolt itself. And when the rocks had been reduced to powder, there was generated fire; and the rocky dust fell like unto masses of flames. And when the showers of crags had been repelled, there happened near me a mightier shower of water, having currents of the proportions of an axle. And falling from the welkin, those thousands of powerful torrents covered the entire firmament and the directions and the cardinal points. And on account of the pouring of the shower, and of the blowing of the wind, and of the roaring of the Daityas, nothing could be perceived. And touching heaven and the entire earth, and incessantly falling on the ground, the showers bewildered me. Thereupon, I discharged that celestial weapon which I had learnt from Indra—even the dreadful and flaming Viçoshana; and by that the water was dried up. And, O Bhārata, when the rocky shower had been destroyed, and the watery shower had been dried up, the Dānavas began to spread illusions of fire and wind. Then by aquous appliances I extinguished the flames; and by a mighty rock-issuing arm, resisted the fury of the winds. And when these had been repelled, the Dānavas, irrepressible in battle, O Bhārata, simultaneously created various illusions. And there happened a tremendous down-erecting shower of rocks and dreadful weapons of fire and wind. And that illusory downpour afflicted me in fight. And then on all sides there appeared a dense and thick darkness. And when the world had been enveloped in deep and dense darkness, the steeds turned away, Mātali fell off, and from his hand the golden lash fell to the earth. And, O foremost of the Bhāratas, being frightened, he again and again cried,—Where art thou?—And when he had been stupified, a terrible fear possessed me. And then in a hurry, he spake unto me, saying,—O Pārtha, for the sake of nectar, there had taken place a mighty conflict between the gods and the demons. I had seen that (encounter), O sinless one. And on the occasion of the destruction of Samvara, there had occurred a dreadful and mighty contest. Nevertheless, I

had acted as charioteer to the lord of the celestials. In the same way, on the occasion of the slaying of Vritra, the steeds had been conducted by me. And I had also beheld the high and terrific encounter with Virochana's son, and, O Pāndava, with Vala, and with Prahrada, and with others also. In these exceedingly dreadful battles, I had been present; but, O Pāndu's son, never (before) had I lost my senses. Surely, the Great-father hath ordained the destruction of all creatures; for this battle cannot be for any other purpose than the destruction of the universe.—Having heard these words of his, pacifying my perturbation by my own effort,—I will destroy the mighty energy of the illusion spread by the Danāvas—quoth I unto the terrified Mātali.—Behold the might of my arms, and the power of my weapons and of the bow, Gāndiva. To-day, even by (the help of) illusion-creating arms, will I dispell this deep gloom and also this horrible illusion of theirs. Do not fear, O charioteer. Pacify thyself.—Having said this, O lord of men, I created for the good of the celestials, an illusion of arms capable of bewildering all beings. And when (their) illusion had been dispelled, some of the foremost amongst the Asuras, of unrivalled prowess, again spread diverse kinds of illusion. Thereupon, now (the world) displayed itself, and now it was devoured by darkness; and now the world disappeared from view, and now it was submerged under water. And when it had brightened up, Mātali, sitting in front of the car, with the well-conducted steeds began to range that hair-erecting field. Then the fierce Nivāta-Kavachas assailed me. And finding opportunity, I began to send them to the mansion of Yama. Thereupon, in that conflict then raging, calculated to annihilate the Nivāta-Kavachas, on a sudden I could not see the Dānavas concealed by illusion.'"

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-first Section in the Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

Section CLXXII.

(Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha Parva continued.)

" Arjuna continued.—'Remaining invisible, the Daityas began to fight by the help of illusion. And I too faught with them, resorting to the energy of invisible weapons. And the shafts duly discharged from the Gāndiva, began to sever their heads at those different places where they were (respectively) stationed. And thus assailed by me in the conflict, the Nivāta-Kavachas, all on a sudden withdrawing the illusion, entered into their own city. And when the Daityas had fled, and when all had become visible, I there discovered hundreds and thousands of the slain. And there I saw by hundreds their shivered weapons, and ornaments, and limbs, and mail. And the horses could not find room for moving from one pace to another; and on a sudden with a bound, they fell to coursing in the sky. Then remaining invisible, the Nivāta-Kavachas covered the entire welkin with masses of crags. And, O Bhārata, other dreadful Dānavas, entering into the entrails of the earth, took up horses' legs and chariot-wheels. And as I was fighting, they, hard besetting my horses, with rocks attacked me together with (my) car. And with the crags that had fallen, and with others that were falling, the place where I was, seemed to be a mountain cavern. And on myself being covered with crags, and on the horses being hard pressed, I became sore distressed,—and this was marked by Mātali. And on seeing me afraid, he said unto me,—O Arjuna, Arjuna! be thou not afeared: send that weapon, the thunder-bolt.—O lord of men, hearing those words of his, I then discharged that favorite weapon of the king of the celestials—the dreadful thunder-bolt. And inspiring the Gāndiva with *mantras*, I, aiming at the locality of the crags, shot sharpened iron shafts of the touch of the thunder-bolt. And sent by the thunder, those adamantine arrows entered into all those illusions, and into the midst of those Nivāta-Kavachas. And slaughtered by the vehemence of the thunder, those Dānavas resembling cliffs, fell to the earth together in masses. And entering amongst those Dānavas that had carried away

the steeds of the car into the interior of the earth, the shafts sent them unto the mansion of Yama. And that quarter was completly covered with the Nivata-Kavachas that had been killed or baffled, comparable unto cliffs, and lying scattered like crags. And then no injury appeared to have been sustained either by the horses, or by the car, or by Mātali, or by me,—and this seemed strange. Then, O king, Mātali addressed me smiling,—Not in the celestials themselves, O Arjuna, is seen the prowess that is seen in thee.—And when the Dānava hosts had been destroyed, all their females began to bewail in that city, like unto cranes in autumn. Then with Mātali I entered that city, terrifying with the rattling of my car the wives of the Nivāta-Kavachas. Thereupon, seeing those ten thousand horses like unto peacocks (in hue), and also that chariot resembling the sun, the women fled in swarms. And like unto (the sounds of) rocks falling on a mountain, sounds arose of the (falling) ornaments of the terrified dames. (At length), the panic-stricken wives of the Daityas entered into their respective golden palaces variegated with innumerable jewels.

"'Beholding that excellent city, superior to the city of the celestials themselves, I asked Mātali, saying,—Why do not the celestials reside in such (a place)? Surely, this appeareth superior to the city of Purandara.—Thereat, Mātali said,—In days of yore, O Pārtha, even this was the city of our lord of the celestials. Afterwards the celestials were driven from hence by the Nivāta-Kavachas. Having performed the most rigid austerities, they had gratified the Great,-father and had asked (and obtained) the boons,—namely, that they might reside here, and that they might be free from danger in wars with the gods. Then Sakra addressed the Self-create lord, saying,—Do thou, O lord, desirous of our own welfare, do what is proper.—Thereupon, O Bhārata, in this matter the Lord commanded (Indra), saying,—O slayer of foes, in another body, even thou shalt be (the destroyer of the Dānavas).—Then, in order to their slaughter, Sakra rendered unto thee those weapons. The gods had been unable to slay these, who have been slain by thee. O Bhārata, in the fullness of time, hadst thou come hither, inorder to destroy them; and thou hast done so, O foremost

of men, with the object that the demons might be killed, Māhendra had conferred on thee the excellent prime energy of these weapons.—'

"Arjuna continued,—'After having destroyed the Dānavas, and also subdued that city, with Mātali I again went to that abode of the celestials.'"

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-second Section in the Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXIII.

(Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha Parva continued.)

"Arjuna continued,—'Then while returning, I happened to descry a mighty unearthly city, moving at will, and having the effulgence of fire or the sun. And that city contained various trees composed of gems, and sweet-voiced feathered ones. And furnished with four gates, and gate-ways, and towers, that impregnable (city) was inhabited by the Paulomas and the Kālakanjas. And it was made of all sorts of jewels, and was unearthly, and of wonderful appearance. And it was covered with trees of all kinds of gems, bearing fruits and flowers. And it contained exceedingly beautiful unearthly birds. And it always swarmed throughout with cheerful Asuras, wearing garlands, and bearing in their hands darts, two-edged swords, maces, bows, and clubs. And, O king, on seeing this wonderful city of the Daityas, I asked Mātali saying,—What is this that looketh so wonderful?—Thereat, Mātali replied,—Once on a time a Daitya's daughter, named Pulomā, and a mighty female of the Asura order, Kālakā by name, practised severe austerities for a thousand celestial years. And at the end of their austerities, the Self-create conferred on them boons. And O king of kings, they received, these boons,—that their offspring might never suffer misfortune; that they might be incapable of being destroyed even by the gods, the Rākshasas and the Pannagas; and that they might obtain a highly effulgent and surpassingly fair aerial city, furnished with all manner of gems, and invincible even by the celestials, the Maharshis, the Yakshas, the Gandharbas, the Pannagas, the

Asuras, and the Rākshasas. O best of the Bhāratas, this is that unearthly aerial city devoid of the celestials, which is moving about, having been created for the Kālakeyas, by Brahmā himself. And this city is furnished with all desirable objects, and is unknown to grief or disease. And, O hero, celebrated under the name of Hiranyapura, this mighty city is inhabited by the Paulomas and the Kālakanjas; and it is also guarded by those mighty Asuras. And, O king, unslayable by any of the gods, there they dwell cheerfully, free from anxiety, and having all their desires gratified, O foremost of kings. Formerly, Brahmā had destined their destruction at the hands of mortals. Do thou, O Pārtha, in fight, compass with that weapon—the thunder-bolt—the destruction of the mighty and irrepressible Kālakanjas.—'

"Arjuna continued,—'O lord of men, learning that they were incapable of being destroyed by the celestials and the Asuras, I cheerfully said unto Mātali,—Do thou speedily repair into yond city. With weapons, will I compass the annihilation of the haters of the lord of the celestials. Surely, there exist no wicked haters of the gods who ought not to be slain by me.—Thereupon, Mātali took me to the vicinity of Hiranyapura, on the celestial chariot yoked with steeds. And seeing me, those sons of Diti, wearing various kinds of attire and ornaments, and accoutred in mail, flew at me with a mighty rush. And those foremost of the Dānavas, of exceeding prowess, in wrath attacked me with arrows and *bhallas*, and clubs, and two-edged swords, and *tomaras*. Thereat, O king, resorting to my strength of lore, I resisted that great volley of weapons. by a mighty shower of shafts; and also confounded them in conflict by ranging around in my car. And being bewildered, the Dānavas began to push each other down. And having been confounded, they rushed at one another. And with flaming arrows, I severed their heads by hundreds. And hard pressed by me, the offspring of Diti, taking shelter within (their) city, soared with it to the firmament, resorting to the illusion proper to the Dānavas. Thereupon, O son of the Kurus, covering the way of the Daityas, with a mighty discharge of shafts I,

obstructed their course. Then by virtue of the bestowal of the boon, the Daityas supported themselves easily on that sky-ranging unearthly aerial city, going anywhere at will, and like unto the sun. And now (the city) entered unto the earth, and now it rose upwards; and at one time it went in a crooked way, and at another time it submerged into water. At this, O repressor of foes, I assailed that mighty city, going anywhere at will, and resembling Amarāvati. And, O best of the Bhāratas, I attacked the city containing those sons of Diti, with multitudes of shafts, displaying celestial weapons. And battered and broken by the straight-coursing iron shafts shot by me, that city of the Asuras, O king, fell to the earth. And they also, wounded by my iron arrows having the speed of the thunder, began, O monarch, to go about, being urged by Destiny. Then ascending to the sky, Mātali, as if falling in front, swiftly descended to the earth, on that chariot of solar resplendence. Then, O Bhārata, environed me sixty-thousand cars belonging to those wrathful ones eager to battle with me. And with sharpened shafts graced with feathers of the vulture, I destroyed those (cars). At this, thinking,—These our hosts are incapable of being vanquished by mortals,—they became engaged in the conflict, like unto the surges of the sea. Thereupon, I gradually began to fix (on the string) unearthly weapons. At this, thousands of weapons (shot) by those wonderfully-warring charioteers, by degrees opposed my unearthly arms, and in the field I saw hundreds and thousands of mighty (demons) ranging on their cars, in various manoeuvers. And being furnished with variegated mail, and standards, and dinerse ornaments, they delighted my mind. And in the conflict I could not afflict them by showers of shafts, but they did afflict me. And being afflicted by those innumerable ones, equipped in weapons and skilled in fight, I was pained in that mighty encounter, and a terrible fear seized me. Thereupon, collecting (my energies) in fight, I (bowed down) unto that god of gods—Rudra,—and saying,—May welfare attend on all beings!—I fixed that mighty weapon, which, celebrated under the name of Raudra, is the destroyer of all foes. Then I beheld a male person having three heads, fresh

eyes, three faces and six arms. And his hair was flaming like fire or the sun. And, O slayer of foes, for his dress, he had mighty serpents, putting out their tongues. And seeing, O best of the Bhāratas, the dreadful and eternal Raudra, I, being free from fear, set it on the Gāndiva; and, bowing unto the three-eyed Sarva of immeasurable energy, let go (the weapon), with the object of vanquishing those foremost of the Dānavas, O Bhārata. And, O lord of men, soon as it had been hurled, there appeared on the scene by thousands forms of deer, and of lions, and of tigers, and of bears, and of buffalos, and of serpents, and of kine, and of Sarabhas, and of elephants, and of apes in multitudes, and of bulls, and of boars, and of cats,and of dogs, and of spectres, and of all the Bhurundas, and of vultures, and of Gadudas, and of *Chamaras*, and of leopards, and of mountains, and of seas, and of celestials, and of sages, and of all the Gandharbas, and of ghosts with the Yakshas, and of the haters of the gods, (Asuras), and of the Guhyakas in the field, and of the Nairitas, and of elephant-mouthed sharks, and of owls, and of beings having the forms of fishes and horses, and of beings bearing swords and various other weapons, and of Räkshasas weilding maces and clubs. And on that weapon being hurled, all the universe became filled with these as well as many others wearing various shapes. And again and again wounded by beings of various sights, with (pieces of) flesh, fat, bones, and marrow on their persons,—some having three heads, and some, four tusks, and some, four mouths, and some, four arms,—the Dānavas met with destruction. And, then, O Bhārata, in a moment I slew all those Dānavas, with other swarms of arrows, composed of the quintessence of stone, flaming like fire or the sun, and possessed of the force of the thunder-bolt. And, seeing them hewn by the Gāndiva, and deprived of life, and thrown from the sky, I again bowed unto that god—the Destroyer of Tripurā. And, seeing those adorned with unearthly ornaments, crushed by that weapon—the Raudra,—the charioteer of the celestials experienced the greatest delight. And having witnessed the accomplishment of that unbearable feat incapable of being achieved even by the

celestials themselves, Mātali, the charioteer of Sakra, paid homage unto me; and well-pleased, with joined hands, said these words,—The feat that hath been achieved by thee, is incapable of being borne even by the gods, nay,—in battle, the lord of the celestials himself cannot perform this deed. This sky-coursing mighty city incapable of being destroyed by the gods and the Asuras hast thou, O hero, crushed by thy own prowess and by the energy of thy asceticism.—And when that aerial city had been destroyed, and when the Dānavas also had been slain, their wives, uttering cries of distress, like unto Kurari birds, with hair dishevelled, came out of the city. And, bewailing for their sons and brothers and fathers, they fell on the ground and cried with distressful accents. And on being deprived of their lords, they beat their breasts, their garlands and ornaments fallen off. And that city of the Dānavas in appearance like unto the city of the Gandharbas, filled with lamentations, and striken with dole and distress, and bereft of grace even like unto a lake deprived of (its) elephants, or like unto a forest deprived of its trees, and (deprived of its) masters, looked no longer beautiful,—but it vanished, like a cloud-constructed city. And when I had accomplished the task, eftsoons from the field Mātali took me of delighted spirits, unto the abode of the lord of the celestials. And having slain those mighty Asuras, and destroyed Hiranyapura, and having also killed the Nivāta-Kavachas, I came unto Indra. And, O exceedingly resplendent one, as it had fallen out, Mātali related in detail unto Devendra that entire achievement of mine. And with the Maruts, hearing of the destruction of Hiranyapura, of the neutralisation of the illusion, and of the slaughter of the highly powerful Nivāta-Kavachas in fight, the prosperous thousand-eyed divine Purandara was well-pleased, and exclaimed,—Well done! Well done!—And the king of the celestials together with the celestials, cheering me again and again, said these sweet words,—By thee hath been achieved a feat incapable of being achieved by the gods and the Asuras. And, O Pārtha, by slaying my mighty enemies, thou hast paid the preceptor's fee. And, O Dhananjaya, thus in battle shalt thou always remain calm, and discharge the weapons unerringly. And

there shall not stand thee in fight celestials, and Dānavas, and Rākshasas, and Yakshas, and Asuras, and Gandharbas, and birds, and serpents. And, O Kaunteya, by conquering it even by the might of thy arms, Kunti's son, Yudhishthira, will rule the earth.—'"

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-third Section in the Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXIV.

(Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha Parva continued.)

"Arjuna continued,—'Then firmly confident, the sovereign of the celestials considering me as his own, pertinently said these words unto me wounded by cleaving shafts,—All the celestial weapons, O Bhārata, are with thee,—so no man on earth will by any means be able to overpower thee. And, O son, when thou art in the field, Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and Karna, and Sakuni, together with other Kshetriyas shall not amount unto one sixteenth part of thee.—And the lord Maghavan granted me this golden garland, and this shell—Devadatta—of mighty roars, and also this celestial mail impenetrable and capable of protecting the body. And Indra himself set on my (head) this diadem. And Sakra presented me these unearthly apparel, and unearthly ornaments, elegant and rare. In this manner, O king, (duly) honored, I delightfully dwelt in Indra's sacred abode, with the children of the Gandharbas. Then, well-pleased, Sakra together with the celestials, addressed me, saying,—O Arjuna, the time hath come for thy departure; thy brothers have thought of thee.—Thus, O Bhārata, remembering the dissensions arising from that gambling, did I, O king, pass these five years in the abode of Indra. Then have I (come and) seen thee surrounded by our brothers on the summit of this lower range of the Gandhamādana.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'O Dhananjaya, by fortune it is that the weapons have been obtained by thee; by fortune it is that the master of the immortals hath been adored by thee, O repressor of foes; by fortune it is that the divine Sthānu together with the goddess had become manifest unto

thee, and been gratified by thee in battle, O sinless one; by fortune it is that thou hadst met with the Lokapālas, O best of the Bhāratas; O Pārtha, by fortune it is that we have prospered; and by fortune it is that thou hast come back. To-day I consider as if the entire earth engarlanded with cities hath already been conquered,—and as if the sons of Dhritarāshtra have already been subdued. Now, O Bhārata, I am curious to behold those celestial weapons wherewith thou hadst slain the powerful Nivāta-Kavachas.'

"Thereat Arjuna said,—'Tomorrow in the morning thou wilt see all the celestial weapons with which I had slain the fierce Nivāta-Kavachas.'"

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thus having related (the facts touching) his arrival, Dhananjaya passed that night there, together with all his brothers."

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-fourth Section in the Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

Section CLXXV.

(Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"And when the night had been passed, Yudhishthira the just arose, and together with his brothers, performed the necessary duties. He then spake unto Arjuna, that delight of his mother, saying,—'O Kaunteya, do thou show (me) those weapons with which thou hadst vanquished the Dānavas.' Thereat, O king, the exceedingly powerful Dhananjaya, the son of Pāndu, duly practising extreme purity, showed those weapons, O Bhārata, which had been given unto him by the celestials. Dhananjaya seated on the earth as (his) chariot, which had the mountain for its pole, the base of the mountain for its axle, and the cluster of beautiful-looking bamboo-trees for its socket-pole looked resplendent with that celestial armour of great lustre and then taking his bow Gandiva and the conchshell given to him by the gods, the grandly-looking son of Kunti, of long arms, commenced to exhibit those celestial weapons in order. And as those celestial weapons had been set, the Earth being op-

pressed with the feet (of Arjuna), began to tremble with (its) trees; and the rivers and the mighty main became vexed; and the rocks were riven; and the air was hushed. And the sun did not shine; and fire did not flame; and by no means did the Vedas of the twice-born ones shine. And, O Janamejaya, the creatures peopling the interior of the earth, on being afflicted, rose and surrounded the Pāndava, trembling with joined hands, and contorted countenances. And being burnt by those weapons, they besought Dhananjaya (for their lives). Then the Brahmarshis, and the Siddhas, and the Maharshis, and the mobile beings—all these appeared (on the scene). And the foremost Devarshis, and the celestials, and the Yakshas, and the Rakshas, and the Gandharbas, and the feathered tribes, and the (other) sky-ranging beings,—all these appeared (on the scene). And the Great-sire, and all the Lokapālas, and the divine Mahādeva, came thither, together with their followers. Then, O great king, bearing unearthly variegated blossoms, Vāyu (the wind-god) fell to strewing them around the Pāndava. And sent by the celestials, the Gandharbas chaunted various ballads; and, O monarch, hosts of the Apsarās danced (there). At such a moment, O king, sent by the celestials, Nārada arrived (there) and addressed Pārtha in these sweet words,—O Arjuna, Arjuna, do thou not discharge the celestial weapons. These should never be discharged when there is no object (to hit). And when there *is* an object (present), they should also by no means be hurled, unless one is sore pressed; for, O son of the Kurus, to discharge the weapons (without occasion), is fraught with great evil. And, O Dhananjaya, being duly kept as thou hast been instructed, these powerful weapons will doubtless conduce to thy strength, and happiness. But if they are not properly kept, they, O Pāndava, will become the instrument for the destruction of the three worlds. So, thou shouldst not act in this way again. O Ajātaçatru, thou too wilt behold even these weapons, when Pārtha will use them for grinding (thy) enemies in battle.'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having prevented Pārtha, the immortals with others that had come there, went to the

(respective) places whence they had come, O foremost of men. And, O Kauravya, after they had all gone, the Pāndavas began to dwell pleasantly in that same forest, together with Krishnā."

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-fifth Section in the Nivāta-Kavacha-yuddha of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXVI.

(The Ajagara Parva.)

Janamejaya said.—"When that prime among heroes, having been accomplished in arms, had returned from the abode of the slayer of Vritra, what then did Prithā's sons do in company with the warlike Dhananjaya?"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"In company with that hero equal unto Indra—Arjuna—those foremost of men sported in the pleasure-gardens of the lord of treasures, (situated) in those woods on that romantic and excellent mountain. And surveying those peerless, and various pleasure-grounds filled with diverse trees, that chief of men—Kiriti—ever intent upon arms, ranged at large, bow in hand. And having through the grace of king Vaiçravana, obtained a residence, those sons of a sovereign cared not for the presperity of men. And, O king, that period of their (lives) passed peacefully. And having Pārtha in their company, they spent four years there even like a single night. And as the Pāndavas lived in the wood, these four years) and the former six, numbering ten, passed smoothly with them.

"Then having seated themselves before the king, the vehement son of the Wind-God, with Jishnu and the heroic twins, like unto the lord of the celestials, earnestly addressed the king in these beneficial and pleasant words,—'It is only to render thy promise effectual and to advance thy interests, that, O king of the Kurus, forsaking the forest, we do not go to slay Sujodhana together with all his followers. Although deserving of happiness, yet have we been deprived of happiness. And this is the eleventh year that (in this state) we have been living (in the forest). And hereafter, deluding that one of evil

mind and character, shall we easily live out the period of non-discovery. And at they mandate, O monarch, free froom apprehension, we have been ranging the woods, having relinquished our honor. Having been tempted by our residence in the vicinity, they (our enemies) will not believe that we have removed to a distant realm. And after having lived there undiscovered for a year, and having wreaked our revenge on that wicked wight, Sujodhana with his followers, we shall easily root out that meaneast of men, slaying him and regaining our kingdom. Therefore, O Dharmarāja, do thou descend unto the earth. For, O king, if we dwell in this region like unto heaven itself, we shall forget our sorrows. In that case, O Bhārata, thy fame like unto a fragrant flower shall vanish from the mobile and the immobile worlds. By gaining that kingdom of the Kuru chiefs, thou wilt be able to attain (great glory), and to perform various sacrifices. This that thou art receiving from Kuvera, thou wilt, O foremost of men, be able to attain at any time. Now, O Bhārata, turn thy mind towards the punishment and destruction of foes that committed wrongs. O king, the wielder of the thunder-bolt himself is incapable of standing thy prowess. And intent upon thy welfare, he having Suparna for his mark (Krishna), and also the grandson of Sini (Sātyaki), never experience pain, even when engaged in encounter with the gods, O Dharmarāja. And (Arjuna) is peerless in strength, and so am I too, O best of kings. And as Krishna together with the Yādavas is intent upon thy welfare, so am I also, O foremost of monarchs, and the heroic twins accomplished in war. And encountering the enemy, we, having for our main object the attainment by thee of wealth and prosperity, will destroy them.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Then having learnt that intention of theirs, the magnanimous and excellent son of Dharma, versed in religion and profit, and of immeasurable prowess, went round Vaiçravana's abode. And Yudhishthira the just, after bidding adieu unto the palaces, the rivers, the lakes, and all the Rākshasas, looked towards the way by which (he) had come (there). And then looking at the mountain also, the high-souled and pure-minded one besought

that best of mountains, saying,—'O foremost of mountains, may I together with my friends, after having finished my task, and slain my foes, and regained my kingdom, see thee again, carrying on austerities with subdued soul.'—And this also he determined on. And in company with his younger brothers and the Brāhmanas, the lord of the Kurus proceeded even along that very road. And Ghatotkacha with his followers began to carry them over the mountain cascades. And as they started the great sage Lomaça, advising them even as a father doth his son, with a cheerful heart, went unto the sacred abode of the dwellers of heaven. Then advised also by Arshtishena, those first of men—the Pārthas—went along beholding romantic *tirthas* and hermitages, and other mighty lakes."

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-sixth Section in the *Ajagara* of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXVII.

(Ajagara Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" When they had left their happy home in the beautiful mountain abounding in cascades, and having birds, and the elephants of the eight quarters, and the supernatural attendants of Kuvera, (as dwellers there of) all happiness forsook those foremost men of Bharata's race. But afterwards on beholding Kuvera's favourite mountain—Kailāsa, appearing like clouds, the delight of those preeminent heroes of the race of Bharata, again became very great. And those foremost of heroic men, equipped with scimitars and bows, proceeded contentedly, beholding elevations and defiles, and dens of lions and craggy causeways and innumerable water-falls and lowlands, in different places, as also other great forests inhabited by countless deer and birds and elephants. And they came upon beautiful wood-lands and rivers and lakes and caves and mountain caverns; and these frequently by day and by night became the dwelling place of those great men. And having dwelt in all sorts of inaccessible places and crossing Kailasa of inconceivable grandeur they reached the excellent and surpassingly

beautiful hermitage of Vrishaparba. And meeting with king Vrishaparba and received by him they became free from depression and then they accurately narrated in detail to Vrishaparba the story of their sojourn in the mountains. And having pleasantly passed one night in his sacred abode, frequented by gods and Maharshis those great warriors proceeded smoothly towards the jujube tree called Viçālā, and took up their quarters there. Then all those magnanimous men, having reached the place of Nārāyana, continued to live there, bereft of all sorrow, at beholding Kuvera's favourite lake, frequented by gods and Siddhas. And viewing that lake, those foremost of men, the sons of Pāndu traversed that place, renouncing all grief even as immaculate Brāhman rishis (do) on attaining a habitation in the Nandana gardens. Then all those warriors having in due course happily lived at Badari for one month, proceeded towards the realm of Suvāhu, king of the Kirātas, by following the same track by which they had come. And crossing the difficult Himālayan regions, and the countries of China, Tukhāra, Darada and all the climes of Kulinda, rich in heaps of jewels, those warlike men reached the capital of Suvāhu. And hearing that those sons and grandsons of kings had all reached his kingdom, Suvāhu elated with joy, advanced (to meet them). Then the best of the Kurus welcomed him also. And meeting with king Suvāhu, and being joined by all their charioteers with Visoka at their head, and by their attendants, Indrasena and others and also by the superintendents and servants of the kitchen they stayed there comfortably for one night. Then taking all the chariots and chariot-men, and dismissing Ghatotkacha together with his followers, they next repaired to the monarch of mountains in the vicinity of the Yamuna. In the midst of that mountain-abounding in water-falls, and having grey and orange coloured slopes and summits covered with a sheet of snow, those warlike men having then found the great forest of Viçākhayupa, like unto the forest of Chaitraratha, and inhabited by wild boars and various kinds of deer and birds, made it their home. Addicted to hunting as their chief occupation, the sons of Prithā peacefully dwelt

in that forest for one year. There, in a cavern of the mountain, Vrikodara, with a heart afflicted with distraction and grief, came across a snake of huge strength, distressed with hunger and looking fierce like Death itself. At this crisis Yudhishthira, the best of pious men, became the protector of Vrikodara, and he of infinite puissance, extricated Bhima whose whole body had been fast griped by the snake with its folds. And the twelfth year of their sojourn in forests having arrived, those scions of the race of Kuru, blazing in effulgence, and engaged in asceticism, and always devoted principally to the practice of archery, repaired cheerfully from that Chaitraratha like forest to the borders of the desert, and desirous of dwelling by the Sarasvati they went there, and from the banks of that river they reached the lake of Dwaitabana. Then, seeing them enter Dwaitabana the dwellers of that place engaged in asceticism, religious ordinances, and self-restraining exercises and in deep and devout meditation, and subsisting on things ground with stone (for want of teeth), having procured grass-mats and water-vessels, advanced to meet them. The holy fig, the rudraksha, the rohitaka, the cane and the jujube, the catechu, the sirisa, the bel and the inguda and the karira and pilu and sami trees grew on the banks of the Sarasvati. Wandering about with contentment in (the vicinity of) the Sarasvati which was as it were the home of the celestials, and the favourite (resort) of Yakshas and Gandharbas and Maharshis, those sons of kings lived there in happiness.

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-seventh Section in the Ajagara of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXVIII.

(Ajagara Parva continued.)

Janamejayā said.—How was it, O sage! that Bhima, of mighty prowess, and possessing the strength of ten thousand elephants, was stricken with panic at (the sight of) that snake? Thou hast described him, that slayer of his enemies, as dismayed and appalled with fear, even him, who by fighting

at the lotus lake (of *Kuvera*) became the destroyer of Yakshas and Rākshasas and who, in proud defiance, invited to a single combat, Pulastya's son, the dispenser of all riches. I desire to hear this (from you); great indeed is my curiosity.

Vaiçampayana continued.—O king, having reached king Vrishaparva's hermitage, while those fearful warriors were living in various wonderful woods, Vrikodara roaming at pleasure, with bow in hand, and armed with a scimitar, found that beautiful forest, frequented by gods and Gandharbas. And then he beheld (some) lovely spots in the Himālayan mountains, frequented by Devarshis and Siddhas, and inhabited by hosts of Apsarās, and which resounded here and there with (the warbling of) birds—the *chakora*, the *Chakrabaka*, the *Jibajibaka*, the cuckoos and the *Bhringaraja*, and which abounded with shady trees, soft with the touch of snow, and pleasing to the eye and mind, and bearing perennial fruits and flowers. And he beheld mountain streams with waters glistening like the lapis lazuli, and with ten thousand snow-white ducks and swans and with forests of *deodar* trees forming (as it were) a trap for the clouds; and with *tunga* and *kaliyaka* forests, interspersed with yellow-sandal trees. And he, of mighty strength, in the pursuit of the chase, roamed in the level and desert tracts of the mountain, piercing his game with unpoisoned arrows. In that forest, the famous and mighty Bhimasena, possessing the strength of a hundred elephants, killed (many) large wild-boars, with the force (of his arms). And endowed with terrible prowess and mighty strength, and powerful as the lion or the tiger, and capable of resisting a hundred men, and having long arms, and possessing the stregth of a hundred elephants, he killed many antelopes and wild boars and buffaloes. And here and there, in that forest he pulled out trees by the roots, with great violence, and brake them too, causing the earth and the woods and the (surrounding) places to resound. And then, shouting and trampling on the tops of mountains, and causing the earth to resound with his roars, and striking his arms, and uttering his warcry, and slapping and clapping his hands, Bhimasena, exempt

from decay, and ever-proud and without fear, again and again leaped about in those woods. And on hearing the shouts of Bhimasena, powerful lions and elephants of huge strength left their lairs, in fright. And in that same forest, he fearlessly strolled about in search of game; and like the denizens of the woods, that most valiant of men, the mighty Bhimasena, wandered on foot in that forest. And he penetrated the vast forest, shouting strange whoops, and terrifying all creatures, endowed with strength and power. And then being terrified, the snakes hid (themselves) in caves, but he overtaking them with promptitude, pursued them slowly. Then the mighty Bhimasena, like unto the Lord of the Celestials, saw a serpent of colossal proportions, lying in one of the mountain fastnesses and covering the (entire) cave with its body and causing one's hair to stand on end (from fright). It had its huge body stretched like a hillock, and it possessed gigantic strength, and its body was speckled with spots and it had a turmeric-like (yellow) colour, and a deep copper coloured mouth of the form of a cave supplied with four teeth; and with glaring eyes, it was constantly licking the corners of its mouth. And it was the terror of all animated beings and it looked like the very image of the Destroyer Yama; and with the hissing noise of its breath it lay as if rebuking (an incomer). And seeing Bhima draw so near to him the serpent, all on a sudden, became greatly enraged, and by the two arms, that goat-devouring snake violently seized Bhimasena in his gripe. Then, by virtue of the boon that had been received by the serpent, Bhimasena with his body in the serpent's gripe, instantly lost all consciousness. Unrivalled by that of others, the might of Bhimasena's arms equalled the might of ten thousand elephants combined. But Bhima, of great prowess, being thus vanquished by the snake, trembled slowly, and was unable to exert himself. And that one of mighty arms and of leonine shoulders, though possessed of the strength of ten thousand elephants, yet, seized by the snake, and overpowered by virtue of the boon, lost all strength. He struggled furiously to extricate himself, but did not succeed in any wise baffling this (snake)."

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-eight Section in the Ajagara of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXIX.

(*Ajagara Parva continued.*)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"And the powerful Bhimasena, having thus come under the power of the snake, thought of its mighty and wonderful prowess; and said unto it,—'Be thou pleased to tell me, O snake, who thou art. And, O foremost of reptiles, what wilt thou do with me? I am Bhimasena, the son of Pāndu, and next by birth to Yudhishthira the just. And endued as I am with the strength of ten thousand elephants, how hast thou been able to overpower me? In fight have been encountered and slain by me innumerable mane-bearing lions, and tigers, and buffaloes, and elephants. And, O best of serpents, mighty Rākshas, and Piçachas, and Nāgas, are unable to stand the force of my arms. Art thou possessed of any magic; or hast thou received any boon, that although exerting myself, I have been overcome by thee? Now I have been convinced that the strength of men is false, for, O serpent, by thee hath such mighty strength of me been baffled.'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"When the heroic Bhima of noble deed had said this, the snake caught him, and coiled him all around with his huge body. Having thus subdued that mighty-armed one, and freed his plump arms alone, the serpent spake these words,—By good fortune it is that, myself being hungry, after a long time the gods have to-day destined thee for my food; for life is dear unto every embodied being. I should relate unto thee the way in which I have come by this snake-form. Hear, O best of the pious, I have fallen into this plight on account of the wrath of the Maharshis. Now desirous of getting rid of the curse, I will narrate unto thee all about it. Thou hast, no doubt, heard of the royal sage, Nahusha. He was the son of Ayu, and the perpetuator of the line of thy ancestors. Even I am thāt one. For having affronted the Brāhmanas I by (virtue of) Agastya's

malediction have come by this condition. Thou art my agnate, and lovely to behold,—so thou shouldst not be slain by me,—yet I shall to-day devour thee! Do thou behold the dispensation of Destiny! And be it a buffalo, or an elephant, none coming within my reach at the sixth division of the day, can O best of men, escape. And, O best of the Kurus, thou hast not been taken by an animal of the lower order, having strength alone,—but this (hath been so) by reason only of the boon I have received. As I was falling rapidly from Sakra's throne placed on the front of his palace, I spake unto that worshipful sage (Agastya),—Do thou free me from this curse. Thereat filled with compassion, that energetic one said unto me,—O king, thou shalt be freed after the lapse of some time. Then I fell to the earth (as a snake); but my recollection (of former life) did not renounce me. And although it be so ancient, I still recollect all that was said. And the sage said unto me,—That person who conversant with the relation subsisting between the soul and the supreme Being, shall be able to answer the questions put by thee, shall deliver thee. And, O king, taken by thee, strong beings superior to thee, shall immediately lose their strength.—I heard these words of those compassionate ones, who felt attached unto me. And then the Brāhmanas vanished. Thus, O highly effulgent one, having become a serpent, I, doing exceedingly sinful acts, live in unclean hell, in expectation of the (appointed) time. The mighty-armed Bhimasena addressed the serpent, saying,—I am not angry O mighty snake,—nor do I blame myself. Since in regard to happiness and misery, men sometimes possess the power of bringing and dismisssng them, and sometimes do not,—therefore one should not fret one's mind. Who can baffle destiny by self-exertion? I deem destiny to be supreme, and self-exertion to be of no avail. Smitten with the stroke of Destiny, the prowess of my arms lost, behold me to-day fallen unto this condition without palpable cause. But to-day I do not so much grieve for my own self being slain, as I do for my brothers deprived of their kingdom, and exiled into the forest. This Himalaya is inacessible, and abounds with the Yakshas and the Rakshas. And searching

me about, they will be distracted. And hearing that I have been killed (my brothers) will forego all exertions, for they firm in promise have hitherto been controlled by my harsh speech, I being desirous of gaining the kingdom. Or the intelligent Arjuna (alone) being versed in every lore, and incapable of being overcome by gods and Rakshas, and Gandharbas, will not be afflicted with grief. That mighty-armed and exceedingly powerful one is able single-handed to speedily pull down from his place even the king of the celestials. What shall I say of the deceitfully gambling son of Dhritarashtra detested of all men, and filled with haughtiness and ignorance ! And I also grieve for my poor mother affectionate to her sons,—who is ever solicitous for our greatness in a larger measure than is attained by our enemies. O serpent, the desires that forlorn one had in me will all be fruitless in consequence of my destruction. And gifted with manliness, the twins—Nakula and Sahadeva—following their elder brother (me), and always protected by the strength of my arms, will owing to my destruction be depressed, and be deprived of their prowess, and be striken with grief. This is what I think. In this way Vrikodara lamented profusely. And being bound by the body of the snake, he could not exert himself.

"On the other hand, Kunti's son Yudhishthira, (seeing) and reflecting on dreadful ill omens, became alarmed. Terrified by the blaze of the points of the horizon, jackals stationing themselves on the right of that hermitage, set up frightful and inauspicious yells. And ugly Vartikas of dreadful sight, having one wing, one eye, and one leg, were seen to vomit blood, facing the sun. And wind began to blow dryly, and violently, attracting grits. And to the right all the beasts and birds began to cry. And in the rear, the black crows cried,—'Go !' Go !' And momentarily his (Yudhishthira's) right arm began to twitch, and his chest and left leg, shook (of themselves). And indicating evil his left eye contracted spasmodicelly. Thereupon O Bharata, the intelligent Yudhishthira the just, inferring some great danger (to be imminent), asked Draupadi,

saying,—Where is Bhima.' Thereat Pānchali said that Vrikodara had long gone out. Hearing this, that mighty-armed king set out with Dhaumya, after having said unto Dhananjaya. 'Thou shouldst protect Draupadi.' And, he also directed Nakula and Sahadava to protect the Brahmanas. And issuing from the hermitage, that lord, Kunti's son, following the footprints of Bhimasena, began to search for him in that mighty forest. And on coming to the east, he found mighty leaders of elephant-herds (slain), and saw the earth marked with Bhima's (foot) prints. Then seeing thousands of deer, and hundreds of lions lying in the forest, the king ascertained his course. And on the way were scattered trees pulled down by the wind caused by the thighs of that hero endued with the speed of the wind, as he rushed after the deer. And proceeding guided by those marks, to a spot filled with dry winds, and abounding in leafless vegetables, and brackish, and devoid of water, and covered with thorny plants, and scattered over with gravel, stumps and shrubs, and difficult of access and uneven, and dangerous, he saw in a mountain-cavern his younger brother motionless, caught in the folds of that foremost of snakes."

Thus ends the hundred and seventy-ninth Section in the Ajagara of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXX.

(Ajagara Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Yudhishthira finding his beloved brother coiled by the body of the serpent, said these words,—'O son of Kunti, how hast thou come by this misfortune ! And who is this best of serpents, having a body like unto a mountain mass ?' Bhimasena said,—'O worshipful one, this mighty being hath caught me for food ! He is the royal sage Nahusha living in the form of a serpent.' Yudhishthira said,—'O long-lived one, do thou free my brother of immeasurable prowess: we will give thee some other food, which will appease thy hunger.' The serpent said,—'I have got for diet even this son of a king, come to my mouth, of

himself. Do thou go away. Thou shouldst not stay here. (If thou remainest here) thou too shalt be my fare tomorrow. O mighty-armed one, this is ordained in respect of me, that he that cometh unto my place, becometh my food, and thou too art in my quarter. After a long time have I got thy younger brother as my food; I will not let him off; neither do I like to have any other (food).' Thereat Yudhishthira said,—'O serpent, whether thou art a god, or a demon, or an *Uraga*, do thou tell me truly, it is Yudhishthira that asketh thee! Wherefore, O snake, hast thou taken Bhimasena? By obtaining which, or by knowing what, wilt thou receive satisfaction, O snake! And what food shall I give thee? And how mayst thou free him?' The serpent said,—'O sinless one, I was thy ancestor, the son of Ayu, and fifth in descent from the Moon. And I was a king celebrated under the name of Nahusa. And by sacrifices and asceticism and study of the Vedas and self-restraint and prowess, I had acquired a permanent dominion over the three worlds. And when I had obtained such dominion, haughtiness possessed me. And thousands of Brāhmanas were engaged in carrying my chair. And intoxicated by supremacy, I insulted those Brahmanas. And, O lord of the earth, by Agastya have I been reduced to this pass! Yet, O Pāndava, to this day the memory (of my former birth) hath not forsaken me! And, O king, even by the favor of that high-souled Agastya, during the sixth division of the day have I got for meal thy younger brother. Neither will I set him free, nor do I wish for any other food. But if to-day thou answerest the questions put by me, then, I shall deliver thy brother Vrikodara!' At this, Yudhishthira said,—'O serpent, ask whatever thou listest! I shall, if I can, answer thy questions with the view of gratifying thee, O snake! Thou knowest fully what should be known by Brāhmanas. Therefore, O king of snakes, hearing (thee) I shall answer thy queries!'

"The serpent said,—'O Yudhishthira, say,—Who is a Brahmana, and what should be known? By thy speech I infer thee to be highly intelligent.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'O foremost of serpents, he, it is

asserted by the wise, in whom are seen truth, charity, forgiveness, good conduct, benevolence, observance of the rites of his order and mercy, is a Brāhmana. And, O serpent, that which should be known is even the supreme *Brahm*, in which is neither happiness nor misery,—and attaining which, (beings) are not affected with misery. And what is thy opinion ?'

"The serpent said,—'O Yudhishthira, truth, charity, forgiveness, benevolence, benignity, kindness, and the Veda* which worketh the benefit of the four orders, which is the authority in matters of religion, and which is true, are seen even in the Sudra. As regards the object to be known, and which thou allegest is without both happiness andmisery, I do not see any such that is devoid of these.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'Those characterestics that are present in a Sudra, do not exist in a Brāhmana; nor do those that are in a Brahmana exist in a Sudra. And a Sudra is not a Sudra by birth alone,—nor a Brahmana, a Brahmana by birth alone. He, it is said by the wise, in whom are seen those virtues, is a Brahmana. And people term him a Sudra in whom those qualities do not exist, (even though he be a Brāhmana by birth). And, again, as for thy assertion that the object to be known (as asserted by me) doth not exist, because nothing exists that is devoid of both (happiness and misery), such indeed is the opinion, O serpent, that nothing exists that is without (them) both. But as in cold, heat doth not exist, nor in heat, cold, so can there not exist an object in which both (happiness and misery) cannot exist ?'

"The serpent said,—'O king, if thou recognise him as a Brāhmana by characterestics, then, O long-lived one, the distinction of caste becometh futile as long as conduct doth not come into play.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'In human society, O mighty and highly intelligent serpent, it is difficult to ascertain one's caste, because of promiscuous intercourse among the four orders. This is my opinion. Men belonging to all the orders (promis

* Inasmuch as the rites performed by the Sudras have their origin in the Vedas,

cuously) beget offspring upon women of all the orders. And of men, speech, sexual intercourse, birth and death are common. And to this the *Rishis* have borne testimony, by using at the beginning of a sacrifice, such expressions as,—*of what caste soever we may be, we celebrate the sacrifice.* Therefore, those that are wise have asserted that character is the chief requisite, and needful. The natal ceremoney of a person is performed, before division of the umbilical cord. His mother then acts as Savitri and his father officiates as priest. He is considered as a Sudra as long as he is not initiated in the Vedas. Doubts having arisen on this point, O prince of serpents, the Svāyambhuba Manu has declared, that the mixed castes are to be regarded as better than the (other) classes, if, having gone through the ceremonies of purification, the latter do not comform to the rules of good conduct, O excellent snake! Whosoever now conforms to the rules of pure and virtuous conduct, him have I, erenow, designated as a Brahmana. The serpent replied,—'O Yudhishthira, thou art acquainted with all that is fit to be known, and having listened to thy words, how can I (now) eat up thy brother Vrikodara!'"

Thus ends the hundred and eightieth Section in the Ajagara of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXXI.

(Ajagara-Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said,—'In this world, you are so learned in the Vedas and Vedangas; tell me (then), what one should do to attain salvation?'

"The serpent replied,—O scion of Bharata's race, my belief is that the man who bestows alms on proper objects, speaks kind words, and tells the truth, and abstains from doing injury to any creature, goes to heaven.'

"Yudhishthira enquired,—'Which, O snake, is the higher of the two, truth or alms-giving? Tell me also the greater or less importance of kind behaviour and of doing injury to no creature.'

"The snake replied,—'The relative merits of these virtues,—truth, almsgiving, kind speech and abstention from injury to any creature,—are known (measured) by their objective gravity (utility). Truth is (sometimes) more praiseworthy than some acts of charity; some of the latter again are more commendable than true speech. Similary, O mighty king, and lord of the earth, abstention from doing injury to any creature is seen to be more important than good speech and *vice versa*. Even so it is, O king, depending on effects. And now, if thou hast anything else to ask, say it all, I shall enlighten thee!' Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O snake, how the incorporeal being's translation to heaven, its perception by the senses and its enjoyment of the immutable fruits of its actions (here below), can be comprehended.' The snake replied,—'By his own acts, man is seen to attain to one of the three conditions of human existence, of heavenly life, or of birth in the lower animal kingdom. Among these, the man who is not slothful, who injures no one and who is endowed with charity and other virtues, goes to heaven, after leaving this world of men. By doing the very contrary, O king, people are again born as men or as lower animals. O my son, it is particularly said in this connection, that the man who is swayed by anger and lust and who is given to avarice and malice, falls away from his human state and is born again as a lower animal, and the lower animals too are ordained to be transformed into the human state; and the cow, the horse and other animals are observed to attain to even the divine state* O my son, the sentient being, reaping the fruits of his actions, thus transmigrates through these conditions; but the regenerate and wise man, reposes his soul in the everlasting Supreme Spirit. The embodied spirit, enchained by Destiny and reap-

* More literally, the state of the gods. It may appropriately be remarked here that the ordinary Hindu gods, of the post-Vedic period, like the gods of Ancient Greece and Italy, were simply a class of superhuman beings, distinctly contra-distinguished from the Supreme Spirit, the *paramātman* or *parabrahma*. After death, a virtuous man was supposed to be transformed into one of these so-called gods.

ing the fruits of its own actions, thus undergoes birth after birth; but he that has lost touch of his actions, is conscious of the immutable destiny of all born beings.*

"Yudhishthira asked,—'O snake, tell me truly and without confusion, how that (dissociated) spirit becomes cognisant of sound, touch, form, flavour, and taste. O great-minded one, dost thou not perceive them, simultaneously by the senses? Do thou, O best of snakes, answer all these queries!' The snake replied,—'O long-lived one, the thing called *Atman* (spirit), betaking itself to a corporeal tenement and manifesting itself through the organs of sense, becomes duly cognisant of perceptible objects. O prince of Bharata's race, know that the senses, the mind, and the intellect, assisting the soul in its perception of objects, are called *Karanas*. O my son, the eternal spirit, going out of its sphere, and aided by the mind, acting through the senses,—the receptacles of all perceptions—successively perceives these things (sound, form, flavour &c). O most valiant of men, the mind of living creatures is the cause of all perception, and, therefore, it cannot be cognisant of more than one thing simultaneously. That spirit, O foremost of men, betaking itself to the space between the eyebrows, sends the high and low intellect to different objects. What the *Yogins* perceive after the action of the intelligent principle, by that is manifested the action of the soul.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me the distinguishing characteristics of the mind and the intellect. The knowledge of it is ordained as the chief duty of persons meditating on the Supreme Spirit.'

"The snake replied,—'Through illusion, the soul becomes subservient to the intellect. The intellect, though known to be subservient to the soul, becomes (then) the director of the latter. The intellect is brought into play by acts of perception; the mind is self-existent. The intellect does not cause the sensations (as of pain, pleasure &c), but the mind does. This,

* This is the well known and popular doctrine of transmigration of souls.

my son, is the difference between the mind and the intellect. You too are learned in this matter, what is your opinion?'

"Yudhishthira said,—'O most intelligent one, you have fine intelligenc and you know all that is fit to be known. Why do you ask me that question? You knew all and you performed such wonderful deeds and you lived in Heaven. How could then illusion overpower you? Great is my doubt on this point.' The snake replied,—'Prosperity intoxicates even wise and valiant men. Those who live in luxury, (soon) lose their reason. So, I too, O Yudhishthira, overpowered by the infatuation of prosperity, have fallen from my high estate, and having recovered my self-consciousness, am enlightening thee thus! O victorious king, thou hast done me a good turn. By conversing with thy pious self, my painful curse has been expiated. In days of yore, while I used to sojourn in heaven, in a celestial chariot, revelling in my pride, I did not think of anything else. I used to exact tribute from *Brahmarshis devas*,* Yakshas, Gandharbas, Rakshasas, Pannagas and all other dwellers of the three worlds. O lord of earth, such was the spell of my eyes, that on whatever creature, I fixed them, I instantly destroyed his power. Thousands of *Brahmarshis* used to draw my chariot. This delinquency, O king, was the cause of my fall from my high prosperity. Among them, Agastya was one day drawing my conveyance, and my feet came in contact with his body; Agastya then pronounced (this curse) on me, in anger, "Ruin seize thee, do thou become a snake." So, losing my glory, I fell down from that excellent car, and while falling, I beheld myself turned into a snake, with head downwards. I thus implored that Brahmana,—May this curse be extinguished, O adorable one! You ought to forgive one who has been so foolish from infatuation.—Then he kindly told me this, as I was being hurled down (from heaven),—The virtuous king Yudhishthira will save thee from this curse, and when, O

* Commonly, translated as gods; more properly, celestial beings. See note at foot of page, 533.

king, this horrible sin of pride will be extinguished (in thee); thou shalt attain salvation.—And I was struck with wonder on seeing (this) power of his austere virtues; and, therefore, have I questioned thee about the attributes of the Supreme Spirit and of Brahmanas. Truth, charity, self-restraint, penance, abstention from doing injury to any creature, and constancy in virtue, these, O king, and not his race or family connections, are the means, by which a man must always secure salvation. May this brother of thine, the mighty Bhimasena, meet with good luck, and may happiness abide with thee! I must go to Heaven again.' "

Vaiçampayana continued.—"So saying, that king—Nahusha—quitted his serpentine form, and assuming his celestial shape he went back to Heaven, and the glorious and pious Yudhishthira, too, returned to his hermitage with Dhaumya and his brother Bhima. Then the virtuous Yudhishthira narrated all that, in detail, to the Brahmanas who had assembled (there). On hearing that, his three brothers and all the Brahmanas and the renowned Draupadi too were covered with shame. And all those excellent Brahmanas desiring the welfare of the Pandavas, admonished Bhima for his foolhardiness, telling him not to attempt such things again, and the Pāndavas too were greatly pleased at seeing the mighty Bhima out of danger, and continued to live there pleasantly."

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-first Section in the Ajagara of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXXII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"While they were dwelling at that very place, there set in the season of the rains, the season that puts an end to the hot weather and is delightful to all animated beings. Then the black clouds, rumbling loudly, and covering the heavens and the cardinal points, ceaselessly rained during day and night. These clouds counted by hundreds and by thousands, and they looked like domes in the rainy season,

From the earth disappeared the effulgence of the sun ; its place was taken by the stainless lustre of the lightning ; the earth became delightful to all, being overgrown with grass, with gnats and reptiles in their joy ; it was bathed with rain, and possessed with calm. When the waters had covered all, it could not be known whether the subsoil was all even or uneven ;—whether there were rivers, or trees, or hills. At the end of the hot season, the rivers added a beauty to the woods, being themselves full of agitated waters, flowing with great force and resembling serpents in the hissing sounds they made. The boars, the stags, and the birds, while the rain was falling upon them, began to utter sounds of various kinds which could be heard within the forest tracts. The *Chātakas*, the peacocks, and the host of male *Kokilas*, and the excited frogs, all ran about in joy. Thus while the Pāndavas were roaming about in deserts and sandy tracts, the happy season of rain, so various in aspect and resounding with clouds, passed away. Then set in the season of autumn, thronged with ganders and cranes, and full of joy; then the forest tracts were overrun with grass ; the river-water turned limpid ; the firmament and stars shone brightly. And the autumn, thronged with beasts and birds, was joyous and pleasant for the magnanimous sons of Pāndu. Then were seen nights, that were free from dust and cool with clouds, and beautified by myriads of planets and stars, and the moon. And they beheld rivers and ponds adorned with lilies and white lotuses, full of cool water, and pleasant. And while roving by the river Saraswati, whose banks resembled the firmament itself and were overgrown with canes, and which abounded with sacred baths, their joy was great. And those heroes who wielded powerful bows, were specially glad to see the pleasant river Saraswati, with its limpid waters full to the brim. And, O Janamejaya, the holiest night, that of the full moon in the month of Kārtika in the season of autmn, was spent by them while dwelling there ! And the sons of Pāndu, the best of the descendants of Bharata, spent that auspicious juncture with righteous and magnanimous saints, devoted to penance. And as soon as the dark fortnight set in immediately after, the sons of Pāndu

entered the forest named the Kāmyaka, accompanied by Dhananjaya and their charioteers and cooks."

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-second Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXXIII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"O son of Kuru, they,—Yudhishthira and others,—having reached the forest of Kāmyaka, were hospitably received by hosts of saints, and lived together with Krishnā. And while the sons of Pāndu were dwelling in security in that place, many Brahmanas came to wait upon them. And a certain Brahmana said,—'He, the beloved friend of Arjuna, of powerful arms and possessed of self-control, descendant of Sura, of a lofty intellect, will come ; for, O ye foremost of the descendants of Kuru, Hari knows that ye have arrived here. For, Hari has always a longing for your sight, and always seeks your welfare. And Mārkandeya, who has lived very many years devoted to great austerities, given to study and penance, will erelong come and meet with ye.'—And the very moment that he was uttering these words, there was beheld Krishna, coming thitherward upon a car unto which were yoked the horses Saivya and Sugriva,—he the best of those that ride on cars, accompanied by Satyabhāmā, as Indra by Sachi the daughter of Puloman. And the son of Devaki came, desirous to see those most righteous of the descendants of Kuru. And the sagacious Krishna, having alighted from the car, prostrated himself, with pleasure in his heart, before the virtuous king, in the prescribed way, and also before Bhima, that foremost of powerful men. And he paid his respects to Dhaumya, while the twin brothers prostrated themselves to him. And he embraced Arjuna of the curly hair ; and spoke words of solace to the daughter of Drupada. And the descedant of the chief of the Dasārha tribe, that chastiser of foes, when he saw the beloved Arjuna come near him, having seen him after a length of time, clasped him again and again. And so too, Satyabhāmā also, the beloved consort of Krishna,

embraced the daughter of Drupada, the beloved wife of the sons of Pāndu. Then those sons of Pāndu, accompanied by their wife and priests, paid their respects to Krishna, whose eyes resembled the white lotus, and surrounded him on all sides. And Krishna, when united with Arjuna the son of Prithā, the winner of riches and the terror of the demons, assumed a beauty comparable to that of Siva, the magnanimous lord of all created beings, when he, the mighty lord, is united with Kārtikeya (his son). And Arjuna, who bore a circlet of crowns on his head, gave an account of what had happened to him in the forest, to Krishna, the elder brother of Gada. And Arjuna asked, saying,—'How is Subhadrā, and that same Abhimanyu ?'—And Krishna, the slayer of Madhu, having paid his respects in the prescribed form to the son of Prithā, and to the priest, and seating himself with them there, spoke to king Yudhishthira, in words of praise. And he said, —'O king, Virtue is preferable to the winning of kingdoms ; it is, in fact, practice of austerities! By you, who have obeyed with truth and candour what your duty prescribed, have been won both this world and that to come! First you have studied, while performing religious duties ; having acquired in a suitable way the whole science of arms, having won wealth by pursuing the methods prescribed for the military caste, you have celebrated all the time-honored sacrificial rites. You take no delight in sensual pleasures; you do not act, O lord of men, from motives of enjoyment, nor do you swerve from virtue from greed of riches ; it is for this, you have been named the Virtuous King, O son of Pirthā! Having won kingdoms and riches and means of enjoyment, your best delight has been charity and truth and practice of austerities, O king, and faith and meditation and forbearance and patience ! When the population of Kuru-jāngala, beheld Krishnā outraged in the assembly hall, who but yourself could brook that conduct, O Pandu's son, which was so repugnant both to virtue and usage ! No doubt, you will, before long, rule over men in a praiseworthy way, all your desires being fulfilled. Here are we prepared to chastise the Kurus, soon as the stipulation made by you is fully

performed!'—And Krishna, the foremost of the Dasārha tribe, then said to Dhaumya and Bhima and Yudhishthira, and the twins and Krishnā,—'How fortunate that by your blessing, Arjuna, the bearer of the coronet, has arrived, after having acquired the science of arms!'—And Krishna, the leader of the Dasārha tribe, accompanied by friends, likewise spoke to Krishnā, the daughter of Yajnasena, saying,—'How fortunate that you are united, safe and secure, with Arjuna, the winner of riches!'—And Krishna also said,—'O Krishnā, O daughter of Yajnasena, those same sons of yours, are devoted to the study of the science of arms, are well-behaved, and always conduct themselves on the pattern, O Krishnā, of their righteous friends! Your father and your uterine brothers proffer them a kingdom and territories; but the boys find no joy in the house of Drupada, or in that of their maternal uncles. Safely proceeding to the land of the Anartas, they take the greatest delight in the study of the science of arms. Your sons enter the town of the Vrishnis and take an immediate liking to the people there. And as you would direct them to conduct themselves, or as the respected Kunti would do, so does Subhadrā direct them in a watchful way. Perhaps, she is still more careful of them. And, O Krishnā, as Rukmini's son is the preceptor of Aniruddha, of Abhimanyu, of Sunitha, and of Bhanu; so is he the preceptor and the refuge of your sons also! And prince Abhimanyu, a good preceptor, would unceasingly give them lessons in the wielding of maces and swords and bucklers, in missiles and in the arts of driving cars and of riding horses,—valiant as they are. And he, the son of Rukmini, having bestowed a very good training upon them, and having taught them the art of using various weapons in a proper way, takes satisfaction at the valorous deeds of your sons, and of Abhimanyu, O daughter of Drupada! And when your sons go out, in pursuit of (out door) sports, each one of them is followed thither by cars and horses and vehicles and elephants.'—And Krishna said to the virtuous king Yudhishthira,—'The fighting men of the Dasārha tribe, and the Kukuras, and the Andhakas—let these, O king, place themselves at thy

command—let them perform what thou desirest them. O lord of men, let the army of the tribe of Madhus, (resistless) like the wind, with their bows, and led by Balarāma whose weapon is the plough,—let that army, equipped (for war), consisting of horsemen and foot soldiers, and horses and cars and elephants, prepare to do your bidding, O son of Pāndu! Drive Duryodhana, the son of Dhritarashtra, the vilest of sinful men, together with his followers and his hosts of friends, to the path betaken by the lord of Saubha, the son of the Earth! You, O ruler of men, are welcome to stick to that stipulation which was made in the assembly-hall,—but let the city of Hastinā be made ready for you, when the hostile force has been slain by the soldiers of the Dasārha tribe! Having roamed at your pleasure in all those places where you may desire to go, having got rid of your grief and freed from all your sins,—you will reach the city of Hastinā,—the well-known city situated in the midst of a fine territory!'—Then the magnanimous king, having been acquainted with these views, thus clearly set forth by Krishna, that best of men, and having applauded the same, and having deliberated, thus spoke with joined palms unto Keçava,—'O Keçava, no doubt, thou art the refuge of the sons of Pāndu; for the sons of Prithā have their protector in thee! When the time will come, there is no doubt that thou wilt do all the work just mentioned by thee; and even more than the same! As promised by us, we will spend all the twelve years in lonely forests. O Keçava, having in the prescribed way completed the period for living unrecognised, the sons of Pāndu will take refuge in thee. This should be the intention of those that associate with thee, O Krishna! The sons of Pāndu swerve not from the path of truth; for the sons of Prithā, with their charity and their piety, with their people and their wives, and with their relations, have their protector in thee!' "

Vaiçampāyana said.—" O descendant of Bharata, while Krishna, the descendant of the Vrishnis and the virtuous king, were thus talking, there appeared then the saint Mārkandeya, grown grey in the practice of penance. And he had seen many

thousand years of life, was of a pious soul, and devoted to great austerities. Signs of old age he had none; and deathless he was, and endued with beauty and generosity and many good qualities. And he looked like one only twenty-five years old. And when the aged saint, who had seen many thousand years of life, came, all the Brāhmanas paid their respects to him and so did Krishna together with Pāndu's sons. And when that wisest saint, thus honored, took his seat in a friendly way, Krishna addressed him, in accordance with the views of the Brahmanas and of Pāndu's sons, thus,—

'The sons of Pāndu, and the Brahmanas assembled here, and the daughter of Drupada, and Satyabhāmā, likewise myself, are all anxious to hear your most excellent words, O Mārkandeya! Propound to us the holy stories of events of bygone times, and the eternal rules of righteous conduct by which are guided Kings and Women and Saints!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"When they had all taken their seats, Nārada also, the divine saint, of purified soul, came on a visit to Pāndu's sons. Him also, then, of great soul, all those foremost men of superior intellects, honored in the prescribed form, by offering water to wash his feet, and the well-known oblation, called the *Arghya*. Then the godlike saint Nārada, learning that they were about to hear the speech of Mārkandeya, expressed his assent to the arrangement. And he, the deathless, knowing what would be opportune, said smilingly,—'O saint of the Brahmana caste, speak what you were about to say unto the sons of Pāndu!'—Thus addressed, Mārkandeya, devoted to great austerities, replied, 'Wait a moment. A great deal will be narrated.' Thus addressed, the sons of Pāndu, together with those twice-born ones, waited a moment; looking at that great saint, (bright) as the mid-day sun."

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Pāndu's son, the king of the Kuru tribe, having observed that the great saint was willing to speak, questioned him, with a view to suggest topics to speak upon, saying, 'You who are ancient (in years), know the deeds of gods and demons, and illustrious saints, and of all the royal ones. We consider you as worthy of being wor-

shipped and honored; and we have long yearned after your company. And here is this son of Devaki, Krishna, who has come to us on a visit. Verily, when I look at myself, fallen away from happiness, and when I contemplate the sons of Dhritarashtra, of evil life, flourishing in every way, the idea arises in me that it is *man* who does all acts, good or bad; and that it is *he* that enjoys the fruit the acts bring forth. How then is God the agent? And, O best of those that are proficient in the knowledge of God, how is it that men's actions follow them? Is it in this world? Or, is it in some subsequent existence? And, O best of righteous men among the twice-born, in what way is an embodied, animated being joined by his good and evil deeds that seek him out? Is it after death? Or, is it in this very world? And, O descendant of Bhrigu, is what we experience in this world the result of the acts of this very life? Or, will the acts of this life bear fruit in the world to come? And where do the actions of an animated being who is dead find their resting place?'

"Markendeya said,—'O best of those that can speak, this question befits thee, and is just what should be! Thou knowest all that there is to know. But thou art asking this question, simply for the sake of form. Here I shall answer thee: listen to me with an attentive mind as to how in this world and in that to come, a man experienceth happiness and misery. The lord of born beings, himself sprung first of all, and created, for all embodied beings, bodies which were stainless, pure, and obedient to virtuous impulses, O wisest of the descendants of Kuru! The ancient men had all their desires fulfilled, were given to praise-worthy courses of life, were speakers of truth, godly, and pure. All were equal to the gods, could ascend to the sky at their pleasure, and could come back again; and all went about at their pleasure. And they had their death and their life also under their own control; and they had few sufferings; had no fear; and had their wishes fulfilled; and they were free from trouble; could visit the gods and the magnanimous saints; knew by heart all righteous rules; were self-controled and free from envy. And they lived many thousand years; and had many thousand sons. Then in course of time they

came to be restricted to walk solely on the surface of the earth, overpowered by lust and wrath, dependent for subsistence upon falsehood and trick, overwhelmed by greed and senselessness. Then those wicked men, when disembodied, on account of their unrighteous and unblessed deeds, went to hell in a crooked way. Again and again, they were grilled, and, again and again they began to drag their miserable existence in this wonderful world. And their desires were unfulfilled, their objects unaccomplished, and their knowledge became unavailing. And their senses were paralysed and they became apprehensive of everything and the cause of other people's sufferings. And they were generally marked by wicked deeds, and born in low families, they became wicked and afflicted with diseases, and the terror of others. And they became short-lived and sinful, and they reaped the fruit of their terrible deeds. And coveting everything, they became godless and indifferent in mind, O son of Kunti! The destiny of every creature after death is determined by his acts in this world. Thou hast asked me where this treasure of acts of the sage and the ignorant remain, and where they enjoy the fruit of their good and evil deeds! Do thou listen to the regulations on this suject! Man with his subtle original body created by God, lays up a great store of virtue and vice. After death he quits his frail (outer) body and is immediatelly born again in another order of beings. He never remains non-existent for a single moment. In his new life, his actions follow him invariably as his shadow, and fructifying makes his destiny happy or miserable. The wise man, by his spiritual insight, knows all creatures to be bound to an immutable destiny by the destroyer, and incapable of resisting the fruition of his actions in good or evil fortune. This, O Yudhishthira, is the doom of all creatures steeped in spiritual ignorance. Do thou now hear of the perfect way attained by men of high spiritual perception! Such men are of high ascetic virtue, and are versed in all profane and holy writ, deligent in performing their religious obligations, and addicted to truth. And they pay due homage to their preceptors and superiors and practise *Yoga*, are forgiving, continent, and energetic, and

pious-born, and are generally endowed with every virtue. By the conquest of the passions, they are subdued in mind, by practising *yoga* they become free from disease, and from the absence of fear and sorrow, they are not troubled (in mind). In course of birth, mature or immature, or while ensconced in the womb, in every condition, they, with spiritual eyes, recognize the relation of their souls to the supreme Spirit. Those great-minded *Rishis*, of positive and intuitive knowledge, passing through this arena of actions, return again to the abode of the celestials. Men, O king, attain what they have, in consequence of the grace of the gods, of Destiny, or of their own actions. Do thou not think otherwise. O Yudhishthira, I regard that as the highest good which is regarded so in this world. Some attain happiness in this world, but not in the next; others do so in the next, but not in this. Some, again, attain happiness in this as well as in the next world; and others neither here nor in the next world. Those that have immense wealth, shine every day with well-decorated persons. O slayer of mighty foes, being addicted to carnal pleasures, they enjoy happiness only in this world, but not in the next. But those who are engaged in spiritual meditation and the study of the Vedas, who are diligent in asceticism, and who impair the vigor of their bodies by performing their duties, who have subdued their passions, and who refrain from killing any animated being, those men, O slayer of thy enemies, attain happiness in the next world, but not in this! Those who first live a pious life, and virtuously acquire wealth in due time, and then marry and perform sacrifices, attain bliss both in this and the next world. Those foolish men again who do not acquire knowledge, nor are engaged in asceticism or charity or increasing their species; or in encompassing the pleasures and enjoyments of this world, attain bliss neither in this nor in the next world. But all of ye are proficient in knowledge and possessed of great power and strength and celestial vigor. For the extermination (of the wicked) and for serving the purposes of the gods, ye have come from the other world and have taken your births in this! Ye, who are so valiant, and engaged in asceticism, self-

restraining exercises, and religious ordinances, and fond of exertion, after having performed great deeds and gratified the gods and *Rishis* and the *Pitris*, ye will at last in due course attain by your own acts the Supreme region—the abode of all virtuous men ! O ornament of Kuru's race, may no doubts cross thy mind on account of these thy sufferings, for this affliction is for thy good !'"

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-third Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXXIV.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampayana continued.—"Then the sons of Pandu said to the high-souled Markandeya,—'We long to hear of the greatness of the Brahmanas; do thou tell us of it !' Thus asked, the revered Markandeya, of austere virtue and high spiritual energy, and proficient in all departments of knowledge, replied,—'A strong-limbed, handsome young prince of the race of the Haihayās, a conqueror of hostile cities, (once) went out hunting. And (while) roaming in the wilderness of big trees and thickets of grass, he descried, at no great distance from him, a *Muni* with the skin of a black antelope for his upper garment, and killed him for a deer. Pained at what he had done, and his senses paralysed with grief, he repaired to the presence of the more distinguished of the Haihayā chiefs. The lotus-eyed prince related to them the particulars. On hearing the account, O my son, and beholding the body of the *Muni* who subsisted on fruits and roots, they were sorely afflicted in mind. And they all set out enquiring here and there as they proceeded, as to whose son the *Muni* might be. And they soon after reached the hermitage of Arishtanemi, son of Kasyapa. And saluting that great *Muni*, so constant in austerity, they all remained standing, while the *Muni*, on his part, busied himself about their reception. And they said unto the illustrious *Muni*,—By a freak of destiny, we have ceased to merit thy welcome: indeed, we have killed a Brahmana !—And the regenerate *Rishi* said

to them,—How hath a Brāhmana come to be killed by ye, and say where may he be? Do ye all witness the power of my ascetic practices!—And they, having related every thing to him as it had happened, went back, but found not the body of the dead *Rishi* on the spot (where they had left it). And having searched for him, they returned, ashamed and bereft of all perception, as in a dream. And then, O thou conqueror of hostile cities, the *Muni* Tārkshya addressed them, saying,—Ye princes, can *this* be the Brāhmana of your killing? *This* Brāhmana, endowed with occult gifts from spiritual exercises, is, indeed, my son!' Seeing that *Rishi*, O lord of the earth, they were struck with bewilderment. And they said,—What a marvel! How hath the dead come to life again! Is it the power of his austere virtue by which he hath revived again? We long to hear this, O Brāhmana, if, indeed, it can be divulged!—To them, he replied,—Death, O lords of men, hath no power over us! I shall tell ye the reason briefly and intelligibly. We perform our own secred duties; therefore have we no fear of death; we speak well of Brāhmanas, but never any ill of them; therefore hath death no terror for us. Regaling our guests with food and drink, and our dependents with plenty of food, we ourselves (then) partake of what is left; therefore are we not afraid of death. We are peaceful and austere and charitable and forbearing and fond of visiting sacred shrines, and we live in sacred places; therefore, have we no fear of death. And we live in places inhabited by men who have great spiritual power; therefore hath death no terror for us. I have briefly told ye all! Return ye now all together, cured of all worldly vanity. Ye have no fear of sin!—Saying *amen*, O foremost scion of Bharata's race, and saluting the great *Muni*, all those princes joyously returned to their country.' "

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-fourth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

Section CLXXXV.

(*Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.*)

"Mārkandeya continued,—'Do ye again hear from me the glory of the Brāhmanas! It is said that a royal sage of the name of Vainya was once engaged in performing the horse-sacrifice, and that Atri desired to go to him for alms. But Atri subsequently gave up his desire of wealth, from religious scruples. After much thought, he of great power, became desirous of living in the woods, and calling his wife and sons together, addressed them thus,—Let us attain the highly tranquil and complete fruition of our desires. May it, therefore, be agreeable to ye to repair quickly to the forest, for a life there is fraught with great merit.—His wife, arguing from motives of virtue also, then said to him,—Hie thee to the illustrious prince Vainya, and beg of him vast riches! Asked by thee, that royal sage, engaged in sacrifice, will give thee wealth. Having (gone there), O regenerate *Rishi*, and received from him vast wealth, thou canst distribute it among thy sons and servants, and then thou canst go whithersoever thou pleasest. This, indeed, is the highest virtue, as instanced by men conversant with religion,—Atri replied,—I am informed, O virtuous one, by the high-souled Gautama, that Vainya is a pious prince, devoted to the cause of truth; but there are Brāhmanas (about his person) who are jealous of me; and as Gautama hath told me this, I do not venture to go there, for, (while) there, if I were to advise what is good and calculated to secure piety and the fulfilment of one's desires, they would contradict me with words unproductive of any good. But I approve of thy counsel and will go there; Vainya will give me kine and hoards of riches.—'

"Mārkandeya continued,—'So saying, he, of great ascetic merit, hastened to Vainya's sacrifice, and reaching the sacrificial altar and making his obeisance to the king, and praising him with well-meaning speeches, he spoke these words,—Blessed art thou, O king! Ruling over the earth, thou art the foremost of sovereigns! The *Munis* praise thee, and

besides thee there is none so versed in religious lore!—To him, the *Rishi* Gautama, of great ascetic merit then indignantly replied, saying,—Atri, do not repeat this nonsense again. (It seems) thou art not in thy proper senses. In this world of ours, Mahendra, the lord of all created beings (alone) is the foremost of all sovereigns!—Then, O great prince, Atri said to Gautama,—As Indra, the lord of all creatures, ruleth over our destinies, so doth this king! Thou art mistaken. It is thou who hast lost thine senses, from want of spiritual perception!—Gautama replied,—I know I am not mistaken; it is thou who art labouring under a misconception in this matter. To secure the king's countenance, thou art flattering him in (this) assembly of the people. Thou dost not know what the highest virtue is, nor dost thou feel the need for it. Thou art like a child steeped in ignorance, for what then hast thou become (so) old in years?—'

"Mārkandeya continued,—'While those two men were thus disputing in the presence of the *Munis*, who were engaged in Vainya's sacrifice, the latter enquired,—What are these women quarreling for? Who gave them admittance to Vainya's court? What is the matter with them, that makes them talk so vociferously?—Then, the very pious Kāsyapa, learned in all religious lore, approaching the disputants, asked them what was the matter. And then Gautama, addressing that assembly of great *Munis*, said,—Listen, O great Brahmanas, to the point in dispute between us. Atri hath said that Vainya is the ruler of our destinies; great is our doubt on this point.—'

"Markadeya continued,—'On hearing this, the great-minded *Munis* went instantly to Sanatkumara who was well versed in religion, to clear their doubt. And then he of great ascetic merit, having heard the particulars from them, addressed them these words, full of religious meaning. And Sanatkumara said,—As fire assisted by the wind burneth down forests, so a Brāhmana's energy in unison with a Kshatriya's or a Kshatriya's joined with a Brāhmana's, destroyeth all enemies. The sovereign is the distinguished giver of laws and the protector of his subjects. He is (a protector of

created beings) like Indra, (a propounder of morals) like Sukra, (a counsellor) like Vrihaspati, and (hence he is also called) the ruler of men's destinies. Who does not think it proper to worship the individual of whom such terms as 'preserver of created beings,' 'royal,' 'emperor,' 'Kshatriya (or saviour of the earth)' 'lord of earth,' 'ruler of men,' are applied in praise? The king is (also) styled the 'prime cause (of social order, as being the promulgator of laws),' the victorious in wars,' (and therefore, preserver of the peace), 'the watchman,' 'the contented,' 'the lord,' 'the guide to salvation,' 'the easily victorious' 'the Vishnu-like,' 'of effective wrath,' 'the winner of battles' and 'the cherisher of the true religion.' The *Rishis*, fearful of sin, entrusted (the temporal) power to the Kshatriyas. As, among the gods in heaven, the Sun dispeleth darkness by his own refulgence, so doth the king completely root out sin from this earth. Therefore is the king's greatness reduced from the evidences of the sacred books, and we are bound to pronounce for that side which hath spoken in favour of the king.—'

"Mārkandeya continued,—' Then that illustrious prince, highly pleased with the victorious party, joyfully said to Atri, who had praised him erewhile,—O regenerate *Rishi*, thou hast made and styled me the greatest and most excellent of men here, and compared me to the gods; therefore, shall I give thee vast and various sorts of wealth. My impression is that thou art omniscent. I give thee, O well-dressed and well-adorned one, an hundred millions of gold coins and also ten *bhāras* of gold.—Then Atri, of high austere virtues and great spiritual powers, thus welcomed (by the king), accepted all the gifts without any breach of propriety, and returned to his home. And then giving his wealth to his sons and subduing his self, he cheerfully repaired to the forest with the object of performing penances.' "

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-fifth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXXVI.

(Markandeya-Samāsya Parva continued.)

"Markandeya continued,—'O thou conqueror of hostile cities, in this connection Saraswati too, when interrogated by that intelligent *Muni* Tārkshya, had said (this). Do thou listen to her words! Tārkshya had asked, saying,—Excellent lady, what is the best thing for a man to do here below, and how must he act so that he may not deviate from (the path of) virtue. Tell me all this, O beautiful lady, so that instructed by thee, I may not fall away from the path of virtue; When and how must one offer oblations to the (sacred) fire and when must he worship so that virtue may not be compromised? Tell me all this, O excellent lady, so that I may live without any passion, craving, or desire, in this world.—'

"Mārkandeya continued,—'Thus questioned by that cheerful *Muni* and seeing him eager to learn and endued with high intelligence, Saraswati addressed these pious and beneficial words to the Brāhmana Tārkshya.

" 'Saraswati said,—He who is engaged in the study of the Vedas, and with sanctity and equanimity perceives the supreme Godhead in his proper sphere, ascends the celestial regions and attains supreme beatitude with the Immortals. Many large, beautiful, pelluicd and sacred lakes are there, abounding with fish, flowers, and golden lilies. They are like shrines and their very sight is calculated to assuage grief. Pious men, distinctively worshipped by virtuous well adorned golden-complexioned Apsarās, dwell in contentment on the attain shores of those lakes. He who giveth cows (to Brahmanas) eth the highest regions; by giving bullocks he reacheth the solar regions, by giving clothes he getteth to the lunar world, and by giving gold he attaineth to the state of the Immortals. He who giveth a beautiful cow with a fine calf, and which is easily milked and which doth not run away, is (destined) to live for as many years in the celestial regions as there are hair in the body of that animal. He who giveth a fine, strong, powerful,' young bullock, capable of drawing the plough and

bearing burdens, reacheth the regions attained by men who give ten cows. When a man bestoweth a well caprisoned *kapili* cow, with a brazen milk-pail and with money given afterwards, that cow becoming, by its own distinguished qualities, a giver of every thing, reacheth the side of the man who gave her away. He who giveth away cows, reapeth innumerable fruits of his action, measured by the hair on the body of that animal. He also saveth (from perdition) in the next world his sons and grand-sons and ancestors to the seventh generation. He who presenteth to a Brāhmana, sesamum made up in the form of a cow, having horns made of gold, with money besides, and a brazen milk-pail, subsequently attaineth easily to the regions of the Vasus. By his own acts man descends into the darksome lower regions, infested by evil spirits (of his own passions) like a ship tossed by the storm in the high seas; but the gift of kine (to Brāhmanas) saves him in the next world. He who giveth his daughter in marriage, in the *Brāhma* from, who bestoweth gifts of land on Brāhmanas and who duly maketh other presents, attaineth to the regions of Purandara. O Tārkshya, the virtuous man who is constant in presenting obtations to the sacred fire for seven years, sanctifieth by his own action seven generations up and down.

" 'Tārkshya said,—O beautiful lady, explain to me who ask thee, the rules for the maintenance of the sacred fire as inculcated in the Vedas. I shall now learn from thee the time-honored rules for perpetually keeping up the sacred fire.—' "

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-sixth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXXVII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

"Then Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu said to the Brāhmana Mārkandeya,—'Do thou now narrate the history of the Vaivaswata Manu!'

"Mārkandeya replied,—'O king, O foremost of men, there was a powerful and great *Rishi* of the name of Manu. He was

the son of Vivaswān and was equal unto Brahmā in glory. And he far excelled his father and grand-father in strength, in power, in fortune, as also in religious austerities. And standing on one leg and with uplifted hand, that lord of men did severe penance in the jujube forest called Visālā. And there with head downwards, and with steadfast eye, he practised this rigid and severe penance for ten thousand years. And one day, whilst he was practising austerities there with wet clothes on, and matted hair on head, a fish approaching the banks of the Chirini, addressed him thus :—Worshipful sir, I am a helpless little fish, I am afraid of the large ones ; therefore, do thou, O great devotee, think it worth thy while to protect me from them ; especially, as this fixed custom is well established amongst us, that the strong fish always prey upon the weak ones. Therefore, do thou think it fit to save me from being drowned in this sea of terrors ! I shall requite thee for thy good offices.—On hearing these words from the fish, the Vaivaswata Manu was everpowered with pity, and he took out the fish from the water with his own hands. And the fish which had a body glistening like the rays of the moon when taken out of the water, was put back in an earthen water-vessel. And thus reared, that fish, O king, grew up in size, and Manu tended it carefully like a child. And after a long while, it became so large in size, that there was no room for it in that vessel. And then seeing Manu (one day), it again addressed these words to him ;—Worshipful sir, do thou appoint some better habitation for me.—And then the adorable Manu, the conqueror of hostile cities, took it out of that vessel and carried it to a large tank and placed it there. And there again the fish grew for many a long year. And although the tank was two *Yojanas* in length and one *Yojana* in width, even there, O lotus-eyed son of Kunti and ruler of men, was no room for the fish to play about ! And beholding Manu, it said again,—O pious and adorable father, take me to the Gangā, the favourite spouse of the Ocean, so that I may live there ; or, do as thou listest. O sinless one, as I have grown to this great bulk, by thy favour, I shall do thy bidding cheerfully.—Thus

asked, the upright and continent, and worshipful Manu took the fish to the river Gangā, and he put it into the river with his own hands. And there, O conqueror of thy enemies, the fish again grew for some little time, and then beholding Manu, it said again,—O lord, I am unable to move about in the Gangā on account of my great body; therefore, worshipful sir, do thou please take me quickly to the sea!—O son of Prithā, Manu then taking it out of the Gangā, carried it to the sea and consigned it there. And despite its great bulk, Manu transported it easily and its touch and smell were also pleasant to him. And when it was thrown into the sea by Manu, it said these words to him with a smile:—O adorable being, thou hast protected me with special care; do thou now listen to me as to what thou shouldst do in the fulness of time! O fortunate and worshipful sir, the dissolution of all this mobile and immobile world is nigh at hand. The time for the purging of this world is now ripe. Therefore, do I now explain what is well for thee! The mobile and the immobile divisions of the creation, those that have the power of locomotion, and those that have it not, of all these the terrible doom hath now approached. Thou shalt build a strong and massive ark and have it furnished with a long rope. On that must thou ascend, O great *Muni*, with the seven Rishis and take with thee all the different seeds which were enumerated by regenerate Brāhmanas in days of yore, and separately and carefully must thou preserve them therein. And whilst there, O beloved of the *Munis*, thou shalt wait for me, and I shall appear to thee like a horned animal, and thus, O ascetic, shalt thou recognise me! And I shall now depart, and thou shalt act according to my instructions, for, without my assistance, thou canst not save thyself from that fearful flood.—Then Manu said unto the fish,—I do not doubt all that thou hast said, O great one! Even so shall I act!—And giving instructions to each other, they both went away. And Manu, then, O great and powerful king and conqueror of thy enemies, procured all the different seeds, as directed by the fish, and set sail in an excellent vessel on the surging sea. And then, O lord

of the earth, he bethought himself of that fish. And the fish too, O conqueror of thy enemies and foremost scion of Bharata's race, knowing his mind, appeared there with horns on its head. And then, O tiger among men, beholding in the ocean that horned fish, emerging like a rock, in the form of which he had been before apprised, he lowered the ropy noose on its head. And fastened by the noose, the fish, O king and conqueror of hostile cities, towed the ark with great force through the salt waters. And it conveyed them in that vessel on the roaring and billow-beaten sea. And, O conqueror of thy enemies and hostile cities, tossed by the tempest on the great ocean, the vessel reeled about like a drunken harlot. And neither land, nor the four cardinal points of the compass, could be distinguished. And there was water everywhere, and the waters covered the heaven and the firmanent also. And, O bull of Bharata's race, when the world was thus flooded, none but Manu, the seven *Rishis*, and the fish, could be seen. And, O king, the fish diligently dragged the boat through the flood for many a long year. And then, O descendant of Kuru and ornament of Bharata's race, it towed the vessel towards the highest peak of the Himavat. And, O Bhārat, the fish then told those on the vessel to tie it to that peak of the Himavat. And hearing the words of the fish, they immediately tied the boat on that peak of the mountain. And, O son of Kunti and ornament of Bharata's race, know that that high peak of the Himavat is still called by the name of *Naubandhana* (the harbour). Then the fish addressing the associated *Rishis*, told them these words:—I am Brahmā, the Lord of all creatures; there is none greater than myself. Assuming the shape of a fish, I have saved ye from this cataclysm. Manu will create (again) all beings,—gods, *Asuras*, and men, and all those divisions of creation which have the power of locomotion and which have it not. By practising severe austerities, he will acquire this power, and with my blessing, illusion will have no power over him.—'

"'So saying, the fish vanished instantly. And the Vaivaswata Manu himself became desirous of creating the world,

In this work of creation, illusion overtook him and he therefore practised great asceticism. And endowed with ascetic merit, Manu, O ornament of Bharata's race, again set about his work of creating all beings, in proper and exact order. This story which I have narrated to thee and the hearing of which destroyeth all sin, is celebrated as the Legend of the Fish. And the man who listeneth every day to this primeval history of Manu, attaineth happiness and all other objects of desire, and goeth to heaven.' "

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-seventh Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXXVIII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

"Then the virtuous king Yudhishthira in all humility, again enquired of the illustrious Mārkandeya, saying,—'O great *Muni*, thou hast seen many thousands of ages pass away. In this world there is none so long-lived as thou ! O best of those that have attained the knowledge of the Supreme Spirit, there is none equal to thee in years, except the great-minded Brahmā living in the most exalted place. Thou, O Brāhmana, worshippest Brahmā at the time of the great dissolution of the universe, when this world is without sky and without the gods and *Dānavas*. And when that cataclysm ceaseth and the Grand-sire awaketh, thou alone, O regenerate *Rishi*, beholdest Brahmā duly re-create the four orders of beings, after having filled the cardinal points with air and consigned the waters to their proper place. Thou, O great Brāhmana, hast worshipped in his presence the great Lord and Grandsire of all creatures, with soul rapt in meditation and entirely swallowed up in Him ! And, O Brāhmana, thou hast, many a time, witnessed with thy eyes, the primeval acts of creation, and plunged in severe ascetic austerities, thou hast also surpassed the *Vedhasas* themselves ! Thou art esteemed as one who is nearest to Nārāyana, in the next world. Many a time, in days of yore, hast thou beheld the Supreme Creator of the universe, with eyes of spiritual abstraction and

renunciation, having first opened thy pure and lotus-like heart—the only place where the multiform Vishnu of universal knowledge may be seen! It is for this, O learned *Rishi*, by the grace of God, neither all destroying Death, nor dotage that causeth the decay of the body, hath any power over thee! When neither the sun, nor the moon, nor fire, nor earth, nor air, nor sky remains, when all the world being destroyed looketh like one vast ocean, when the gods and *Asuras* and the great *Uragas* are annihilated, and when the great-minded Brahmā, the Lord of all creatures, taking his seat on a lotus flower, sleepeth there, then thou alone remainest to worship him! And, O best of Brāhmanas, thou hast seen all this that occurred before, with thy own eyes. And thou alone hast witnessed many things by thy senses, and never in all the worlds hath there been anything unknown to thee! Therefore, do I long to hear thy discourse explaining the causes of things!'

"Mārkandeya replied,—'Indeed, I shall explain all, after having bowed down to that Self-existent, primordial male Being, who is eternal and undeteriorating and inconceivable, and who is at once vested and divested of attributes. O tiger among men, this Janārdana attired in yellow robes is the grand Mover and Creator of all, the Soul and Framer of all things, and the Lord of all! He is also called the Great, the Incomprehensible, the Wonderful, and the Immaculate. He is without beginning and without end, pervades all the world, is Unchangeable and Undeteorating. He is the Creator of all, but is himself Increate, and is the Cause of all power. His knowledge is greater than that of all the gods together. O best of kings and pre-eminent of men, after the dissolution of the universe, all this wonderful creation again comes into life. Four thousand years have been said to constitute the *Krita Yuga*. Its dawn also, as well as its eve, hath been said to comprise four hundred years. The *Tretā Yuga* is said to comprise three thousand years, and its dawn, as well as its eve, is said to comprise three hundred years. The *Yuga* that comes next is called *Dwāpara*, and it hath been computed to consist of two thousand years, Its dawn, as well as its eve, is

said to comprise two hundred years. The next *Yuga*, called *Kali*, is said to comprise one thousand years, and its dawn, as well as eve, is said to comprise one hundred years. Know, O king, that the duration of the dawn is the same as that of the eve of a *Yuga*. And after the *Kali Yuga* is over, the *Krita Yuga* comes again. A cycle of the *Yugas* then comprises a period of twelve thousand years. A full thousand of such cycles would constitute a *day* of Brahmā. O tiger among men, when all this universe is withdrawn and ensconced within its home the Creator himself, that disappearance of all things is called by the learned to be Universal Destruction. O bull of the Bharata race, towards the end of the last-mentioned period of one thousand years, *i. e.*, when the period wanted to complete a cycle is short, men generally become addicted to falsehood in speech. O son of Prithā, then sacrifices and gifts and vows, instead of being performed by principals are suffered to be performed by representatives! Brāhmanas then perform acts that are reserved for the Sudras, and the Sudras betake to the acquisition of wealth. Then Kshatriyas also betake themselves to the practice of religious acts. In the *Kali* age, the Brāhmanas also abstain from sacrifices and the study of the Vedas, are divested of their staff and deer-skin, and in respect of food, become omnivorous. And, O son, the Brāhmanas in that age also abstain from prayers and meditation, while the Sudras betake themselves to these! The course of the world looketh contrary, and, indeed, these are the signs that foreshadow the Uuniversal Destruction. And, O lord of men, numerous *Mleccha* kings then rule over the earth! And those sinful monarchs, addicted to false speech, govern their subjects on principles that are false. The *Andhas*, the *Sakas*, the *Pulindās*, the *Yavans*, the *Kāmvojās*, the *Vālhikas*, and the *Abhiras*, then become, O best of men, possessed of bravery and the sovereignty of the earth. This, O tiger among men, becometh the state of the world during the eve, O Bhārata, of the *Kali* age! Not a single Brāhmana then adhereth to the duties of his order. And the Kshatriyas and the Vaiçyas also, O monarch, follow practices contrary to those that are proper for their own orders. And men

become short-lived, weak in strength, energy, and prowess; and endued with small might and diminutive bodies, they become scarcely truthful in speech. And the human population dwindles away over large tracts of country, and the regions of the earth, North and South, and East and West, become crowded with animals and beasts of prey. And during this period, they also that utter *Brahma*, do so in vain. The Sudras address Brāhmanas, saying, *Bho*, while the Brāhmanas address Sudras, saying, *Respected sir*. And, O tiger among men, at the end of the *Yuga*, animals increase enormously. And, O king, odors and perfumes do not then become so agreeable to our sense of scent, and, O tiger among men, the very tastes of things do not then so well accord with our organs of taste as at other periods! And, O king, women then become mothers of numerous progeny, endued with low statures, and destitute of good behaviour and good manners. And they also make their very mouths serve the purposes of the organ of procreation. And famine ravages the habitations of men, and the highways are infested by women of ill fame, while females in general, O king, become at such periods hostile to their lords and destitute of modesty!* And, O king, the very kine at such periods yield little milk, while the trees, sat over with swarms of crows, do not produce many flowers and fruits. And, O lord of the earth, the regenerate classes, tainted with the sin of slaying Brāhmanas, accept gifts from monarchs that are addicted to falsehood in speech. And filled with covetousness and ignorance, and bearing on their persons the outward symbols of religion, set out on eleemosynary rounds, afflicting the people of the Earth. And people leading domestic lives, afeared of the burden of taxes, become deceivers, while Brāhmanas, falsely assuming the garb of ascetics, earn wealth by trade, with nails and hair unpared and uncut. And, O tiger among men, many of the twice-born classes become, from avarice of wealth, religious mendicants of the *Brahma-*

---

* I have followed Nilkantha in his interpretation of the words *Sivaçulās* and *Keçaçulās*. All the vernacular translators have followed the same commentator.—*T.*

chārin order. And, O monarch, men at such periods, behave contrary to the *modes* of life to which they betake; and addicted to intoxicating drinks and capable of violating the beds of their preceptors, their desires are all of this world, pursuing matters ministering to the flesh and the blood. And, O tiger among men, at such periods the asylums of ascetics become full of sinful and audacious wretches ever applauding lives of dependence. And the illustrious chastiser of Pāka never showers rain according to the seasons, and the seeds also that are scattered on earth, do not, O Bhārata, all sprout forth. And men, unholy in deed and thought, take pleasure in envy and malice. And, O sinless one, the earth then becometh full of sin and immorality. And, O lord of the earth, he that becometh virtuous at such periods, doth not live long. Indeed, the earth becometh reft of virtue in every shape. And, O tiger among men, the merchants and traders then, full of guile, sell large quantities of articles with false weights and measures. And they that are virtuous do not prosper; while they that are sinful, prosper exceedingly. And virtue then loseth her strength, while sin becometh all powerful. And men that are devoted to virtue become poor and short-lived; while they that are sinful become long-lived and win prosperity. And in such times, people behave sinfully even in places of public amusement in cities and towns. And men always seek the accomplishment of their ends by means that are sinful. And having earned fortunes that are really small, they become intoxicated with the pride of wealth. And, O monarch, many men, at such periods, strive to rob the wealth that hath from trust been deposited with them in secrecy. And wedded to sinful practices, they shamelessly declare—*there is nothing in deposit.* And beasts of prey and other animals and fowl may be seen to lie down in places of public amusement in cities and towns, as well as in sacred edifices. And, O king, girls of seven or eight years of age do then conceive, while boys of ten or twelve years beget offspring. And in their sixteenth year, men are overtaken with decrepitude and decay, and the period of life itself is soon outrun. And, O king, when men become so short-lived, mere youths

act like the aged; while all that is observable in youths may be noticed in the old. And women, given up to impropriety of conduct and marked by evil manners, decieve even the best of husbands and forget themselves with menials and slaves, and even with animals. And, O king, even women that are wives of heroes, seek the companionship of other men and forget themselves with these, during the life time of their husbands.

"'O king, towards the end of those thousands of years constituting the four *Yugas*, and when the lives of men become so short, a drought occurs extending for many years. And then, O lord of the Earth, men and creatures, endued with small strength and vitality, becoming hungry, die by thousands. And then, O lord of men, seven blazing Suns, appearing in the firmament, drink up all the waters of the Earth that are in rivers or seas. And, O bull of the Bharata race, then also everything of the nature of wood and grass that is wet or dry, is consumed and reduced to ashes. And then, O Bhārata, the fire called *Samvartaka*, impelled by the winds, appeareth on the Earth that hath already been dried to cinders by the seven Suns. And then that fire, penetrating through the Earth and making its appearance in the nether regions also, begetteth great terror in the hearts of the gods, the *Dānavas*, and the *Yakshas*. And, O lord of the Earth, consuming the nether regions as also everything upon this Earth, that fire destroyeth all things in a moment. And that fire called *Samvartaka*, aided by that inauspicious wind, consumeth this world extending for hundreds and thousands of *Yojanas*. And that lord of all things, that fire, blazing forth in effulgence, consumeth this Universe with gods and *Asuras* and *Gandharvas*, and *Yakshas* and Snakes and *Rākshasas*. And there rise in the sky deep masses of clouds, looking like herds of elephants, and decked with wreaths of lightning that are wonderful to behold. And some of those clouds are of the hue of the blue lotus; and some, of that of the water lily; and some resemble in tint the filaments of the lotus, and some are purple. And some are yellow as turmeric, and some of the hue of the crow's egg. And some are bright

as the petals of the lotus, and some red as vermillion. And some resemble palatial cities in shape, and some herds of elephants. And some are of the form of lizards, and some of crocodiles and sharks. And, O king, the clouds that gather in the sky on the occasion are terrible to behold, and wreathed with lightnings, roar frightfully. And those vapoury masses, charged with rain, soon cover the entire welkin. And, O king, those masses of vapour then flood with water the whole Earth with her mountains and forests and mines. And, O bull among men, urged by the Supreme Lord, those clouds, roaring frightfully, soon flood the entire surface of the Earth. And pouring in a great quantity of water and filling the whole Earth, they quench that terrible and inauspicious fire (of which I have already spoken to thee). And urged by the illustrious Lord, those clouds, filling the Earth with their downpour, shower incessantly for twelve years. And then, O Bhārata, the Ocean oversteps his continents, the mountains sunder in fragments, and the Earth sinks under the increasing flood. And, then moved on a sudden by the impetus of the wind, those clouds wander along the entire expanse of the firmament and disappear from the view. And, then, O ruler of men, the Self-create Lord—the first Cause of everything—having his abode in the lotus, drinketh those terrible winds, and goeth to sleep, O Bhārata!

'And then when the Universe becomes one dread expanse of water, when all mobile and immobile creatures have been destroyed, when the gods and the *Asuras* cease to be, when the *Yakshas* and the *Rākshasas* are no more, when man is not, when trees and beasts of prey have disappeared, when the firmament itself has ceased to exist, I alone, O lord of Earth, wander in affliction. And, O best of kings, wandering over that dread expanse of water, my heart becometh afflicted in consequence of my not beholding any creature! And, O king, wandering without cessation, through that flood, I become fatigued, but obtain I no resting place! And some time after I behold in that expanse of accumulated waters a vast and wide-extending banian tree, O lord of Earth! And I then behold, O Bhārata, seated on a couch,

O king, overlaid with a celestial bed and attached to a far extended bough of that banian, a boy, O great king, of face fair as the lotus or the moon, and of eyes, O ruler of men, large as the petals of full blown lotus! And at this sight, O lord of Earth, wonder filled my heart. And I asked myself,—How doth this boy alone sit here when the world itself hath been destroyed?—And, O king, although I have full knowledge of the Past, the Present, and the Future, still I failed to learn anything of this by means of even ascetic meditation. Endued with the lustre of the *Atasi** flower, and decked with the mark of *Sreevatsa*,† he seemed to me to be like the abode of *Lakshmi* herself. And that boy, of eyes like the petals of the lotus, having the mark of *Sreevatsa*, and possessed of blazing effulgence, then addressed me in words highly pleasant to the ear, saying,—O sire, I know thee to be fatigued and desirous of rest! O Mārkendeya of Bhrigu's race, rest thou here as long as thou wishest! O best of *Munis*, entering within my body, rest thou there! That hath been the abode assigned to thee by me. I have been gratified with thee!—Thus addressed by that boy, a sense of total disregard possessed me in respect both of my long life and state of manhood.‡ Then that boy suddenly opened his mouth, and as fate would have it, I entered his mouth, deprived of the power of motion. But, O king, having suddenly entered into the stomach of that boy, I beheld there the whole Earth teeming with cities and kingdoms. And, O best of men, while wandering through the stomach of that illustrious one, I beheld the Gangā, the Satudru, the Sitā, the Yamunā, and the Kauçiki; the Charmanwati, the Vetravati,; the Chandrabhāgā, the Saraswati, the Sindhu, the Vipaçā, and the Godāvari; the Vaswokasārā, the Nalini, and the Nar-

---

* An Indian flower of bright-blue color.

† A mark of Vishnu, said to be a curl of hair on the breast. *Vide* Wilson's Dict.

‡ Nilkantha explains that this disregard for both life and manhood arose from the words—I have been gratified with thee!—spoken by a mere boy.

madā; the Tāmrā, and the Vennā also of delightful current and sacred waters; the Suvennā, the Krishna-Vennā, the Irāmā, and the Mahānadi; the Vitastā, O great king, and that large river the Cāvery; the Sone also, O tiger among men, the Viçalyā, and the Kimpunā also. I beheld all these and many other rivers that are on the Earth! And, O slayer of foes, I also beheld there the Ocean inhabited by alligators and sharks, that mine of gems, that excellent abode of waters! And I beheld there the firmament also, decked with the Sun and the Moon, blazing with effulgence, and possessed of the lustre of fire or the Sun. And I beheld there, O king, the Earth also, graced with woods and forests. And, O monarch, I beheld there many Brāhmanas also, engaged in various sacrifices; and the Kshatriyas engaged in doing good to all the orders; and the Vaiçyas employed in pursuits of agriculture; and the Sudras devoted to the service of the regenerate classes. And, O king, while wandering through the stomach of that high-souled one, I also beheld the Himavat and the mountains of Hemakuta. And I also saw Nishādha, and the mountains of Sweta abounding in silver. And, O king, I saw there the mountains of Gandhamādana, and, O tiger among men, also Mandara and the huge mountains of Nila. And, O great king, I saw there the golden mountains of Meru, and also Mahendra, and those excellent mountains called Vindhya. And I beheld there the mountains of Malaya and of Pāripātra also. These and many other mountains that are on Earth were all seen by me in his stomach. And all these were decked with jewels and gems. And, O monarch, while wandering through his stomach, I also beheld lions and tigers and boars, and, indeed, all other animals that are on Earth, O great king! And, O tiger among men, having entered his stomach, as I wandered around, I also beheld the whole tribe of the gods with their chief Sakrā, the Sadhyās, the Rudras, the Adityas, the Guhyakas, the Pitris, the Snakes and the Nāgas, the feathery tribes, the Vasus, the Aswins, the Gandharvas, the Apsaras, the Yakshas, the Rishis, the hordes of the Daityas and the Dānavas, and the Nāgas also, O king, and the sons of Singhikā, and all other-

enemies of the gods; indeed, what else of mobile and immobile creatures may be seen on Earth, were all seen by me, O monarch, within the stomach of that high-souled one. And, O lord, living upon fruits I dwelt within his body for many centuries, wandering over the entire Universe that is there. Never did I yet, O king, behold the limits of his body. And when, O lord of Earth, I failed to measure the limits of that high-souled one's body even though I wandered within him continuously in great anxiety of mind, I then, in thought and deed, sought the protection of that boon-giving and pre-eminent Deity, duly acknowledging his superiority! And when I had done this, O king, I was suddenly projected (from within his body) through that high-souled one's open mouth by means, O chief of men, of a gust of wind! And, O king, I then beheld, seated on the branch of that very banian that same Being of immeasurable energy, in the form of a boy with the mark of *Sreevatsa* (on his breast), having, O tiger among men, swallowed up the whole Universe! And that boy of blazing effulgence and bearing the mark of *Sreevatsa* and attired in yellow robes, gratified with me, smilingly addressed me, saying,—O Mārkendeya, O best of *Munis*, having dwelt for some time within my body, thou hast been fatigued! I shall, however, speak unto thee!—And as he said this to me, within that very moment I acquired a new sight, in consequence of which I beheld myself to be possessed of true knowledge and emancipated from the illusions of the world! And, O child, having witnessed the inexhaustible prowess of that Being of immeasurable energy, I then worshipped his revered and well-shaped feet with soles bright as burnished copper, and well-decked with toes of mild red hue, having placed them carefully on my head! And joining my palms in humility and approaching him with reverence, I beheld that Divine Being who is the Soul of all things and whose eyes are like the petals of the lotus. And having bowed unto him with joined hands, I addressed him, saying,—I wish to know thee, O Divine Being, as also this high and wonderful illusion of thine! O illustrious one, having entered into thy body through thy mouth, I have been

held the entire Uniuverse in thy stomach! O Divine Being, the gods, the *Dānavas* and the *Rākshasas*, the *Yakshas*, the *Gandharvas* and the *Nāgas*, indeed, the whole Universe mobile and immobile, are all within thy body! And though I have ceaselessly wandered through thy body at a quick pace, through thy grace, O God, my memory faileth me not! And, O great Lord, I have come out of thy body at thy desire but not at mine! O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, I desire to know thyself who art free from all faults! Why dost thou stay here in the form of a boy, having swallowed up the entire Universe! It behoveth thee to explain all this to me! Why, O sinless one, is the entire Universe within thy body? How long also, O chastiser of foes, wilt thou stay here? Urged by a curiosity that is not improper for a Brāhmana, I desire, O Lord of all the gods, to hear all this from thee, O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, with every detail and exactly as all happens, for all I have seen, O Lord, is wonderful and inconceivable!—And thus addressed by me, that Deity of deities, of blazing effulgence and great beauty, that foremost of all speakers, consoling me properly, spoke unto me these words.' "

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-eighth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXXXIX.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya continued.—'The Deity then said,—O Brāhmana, the gods even do not know me truly! As, however, I have been gratified with thee, I will tell thee how I created the Universe! O regenerate *Rishi*, thou art devoted to thy ancestors and hast also sought my protection! Thou hast also beheld me with thy eyes, and thy ascetic merit also is great! In ancient times I called the waters by the name of *Nāra*; and because the waters have ever been my *ayana* or home, therefore have I been called *Nārāyana* (the *water-homed*). O best of regenerate ones, I am *Nārāyana*, the Source of all things, the Eternal, the Unchangeable. I am the Creator of all things, and the Destroyer also of all, I am Vishnu, I am

Brahmā, and I am Sakra the chief of the gods. I am king Vāiçravana, and I am Yama the lord of the deceased Spirits. I am Siva, I am Shoma, and I am Kaçyapa the lord of created things. And, O best of regenerate ones, I am he called *Dhātri*, and he also that is called *Vidhātri*, and I am Sacrifice embodied. Fire is my mouth, the Earth my feet, and the Sun and the Moon are my eyes; the Heaven is the crown of my head, the Firmament and the cardinal points are my ears; the waters are born of my sweat. Space with the cardinal points are my body, and the Air is in my mind. I have performed many hundreds of sacrifices with gifts in profusion. I am always present in the sacrifices of the gods; and they that are cognisant of the Vedas and officiate therein, make their offerings to me. On Earth the Kshatriya chiefs that rule over men, in performing their sacrifices from desire of obtaining heaven, and the Vaiçyas also in performing theirs from desire of winning those happy regions, all worship me at such times and by those ceremonials. It is I who, assuming the form of Shesha, support (on my head) this Earth bounded by the four seas and decked by Meru and Mandara. And, O regenerate one, it is I who, assuming the form of a boar, had raised in days of yore this Earth sunk in water. And, O best of Brāhmanas, it is I who, becoming the fire that issues out of the *Equine mouth*, drink up the waters (of the ocean) and create them again. In consequence of my energy, from my mouth, my arms, my thighs, and my feet gradually sprung Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Sudras. It is from me that the *Rig*, the *Sāma*, the *Yajus*, and the *Atharvan* Vedas spring, and it is in me that they all enter when the time cometh. Brāhmanas devoted to asceticism, they that value Peace as the highest attribute, they that have their souls under complete control, they that are desirous of knowledge, they that are freed from lust and wrath and envy, they that are unwedded to things of the Earth, they that have their sins completely washed away, they that are possessed of gentleness and virtue, and are divested of pride, they that have a full knowledge of the Soul, all worship me with profound meditation, I am the flame

known as *Samvartaka*, I am the Wind called by that name, I am the Sun wearing that appellation, and I am the fire that hath that designation. And, O best of Brāhmanas, those things that are seen in the firmament as stars, know them to be the pores of my skin. The oceans—those mines of gems and the four cardinal points, know, O Brāhmana, are my robes, my bed, and my home. By me have they been distributed for serving the purposes of the gods. And, O best of men, know also that lust, wrath, joy, fear, and the over-clouding of the intellect, are all different forms of myself. And, O Brāhmana, whatever is obtained by men by the practice of truth, charity ascetic austerities, and peace and harmlessness towards al creatures, and such other handsome deeds, is obtained because of my arrangements. Governed by my ordinance, men wander within my body, their senses overwhelmed by me. They move not according to their will but as they are moved by me. Regenerate Brāhmanas that have thoroughly studied the Vedas, that have tranquillity in their souls, they that have subdued their wrath, obtain a high reward by means of their numerous sacrifices. That reward, however, is unattainable by men that are wicked in their deeds, overwhelmed by covetousness, mean and disreputable, with souls unblessed and impure. Therefore, must thou know, O Brāhmana, that this reward which is obtained by persons having their souls under control and which is unobtainable by the ignorant and the foolish,—this which is attainable by asceticism alone,—is productive of high merit. And, O best of men, at those times when virtue and morality decreaseth and sin and immorality increaseth, I create myself into new forms. And, O *Muni*, when fierce and malicious Daityas and Rākshasas, that are incapable of being slain by even the foremost of the gods, are born on Earth, I then take my birth in the families of virtuous men, and assuming a human body restore tranquillity by exterminating all evils. Moved by my own *māyā*. I create gods and men, and Gandharvas and Rākshasas, and all immobile things, and then destroy them all myself (when the time cometh), For the preservation of rectitude and morality I assume a human form and when the season

for action cometh I again assume forms that are inconceivable. In the *Krita* age I become white, in the *Tretā* age I become yellow, in the *Dwīpara* I become red, and in the *Kali* age I become dark in hue. In the *Kali* age, the proportion of immorality becometh three-fourths, (a fourth only being that of morality). And when the end of the *Yuga* cometh, assuming the fierce form of Death, alone I destroy all the three worlds with their mobile and immobile existences. With three steps I cover the whole Universe: I am the Soul of the Universe, I am the source of all happiness; I am the humbler of all pride; I am omnipresent; I am Infinite; I am the Lord of the senses; and my prowess is great. O Brāhmana, alone do I set agoing the wheel of Time; I am formless; I am the Destroyer of all creatures; and I am the cause of all efforts of all my creatures. O best of *Munis*, my soul completely pervadeth all my creatures, but, O foremost of all regenerate ones, no one knoweth me. It is me that the pious and the devoted worship in all the worlds. O regenerate one, whatever of pain thou hast felt within my stomach, know, O sinless one, that all *that* is for thy happiness and good fortune. And whatever of mobile and immobile objects thou hast seen in the world, everything hath been ordained by my Soul which is the Spring of all existence. The Grandsire of all creatures is half my body; I am called Nārāyana, and I am the bearer of the conch-shell, the discus and the mace. O regenerate *Rishi*, for a period measured by a thousand times the length of the four *Yugas*, I who am the Universal Soul sleep overwhelming all creatures in insensibility. And, O best of regenerate *Rishis*, I stay here thus for all time, in the form of a boy though I am old, until Brahmā waketh up. O foremost of Brāhmanas, gratified with thee, I who am *Brahma* have repeatedly granted thee boons, O thou who art worshipped by regenerate *Rishis*! Beholding one vast expanse of water and seeing that all mobile and immobile creatures have been destroyed, thou wert afflicted with melancholy. I know this, and it is for this that I showed thee the Universe (within my stomach). And while thou wert within my body, beholding there the entire

Universe, thou wert filled with wonder and deprived of thy senses. O regenerate *Rishi*, it is for this that thou wert speedily brought out by me through my mouth. I have (now) told thee of that Soul which is incapable of being comprehended by the gods and the *Asuras*. And as long as that great ascetic, the holy Brahmā, doth not awake, thou, O regenerate *Rishi*, canst happily and trustfully dwell here. And when that Grandsire of all creatures awaketh up, I will then, O best of Brāhmanas, alone create all creatures endued with bodies, the firmament, the earth, light, the atmosphere, water, and, indeed, all else of mobile and immobile creatures (that thou mayst have seen) on the earth !—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Having said so unto me, that wonderful Deity vanished, O son, from my sight! I then beheld this varied and wondrous creation start into life. O king, O thou foremost of the Bharata race, I witnessed all this, so wonderful, O thou foremost of all virtuous men, at the end of the *Yuga*! And that Deity, of eyes large as lotus leaves, seen by me, in days of yore, is *this* tiger among men, this Janārddana who hath become thy relative! It is in consequence of the boon granted to me by this one that memory doth not fail me, that the period of my life, O son of Kunti, is so long, and death itself is under my control! This is that ancient and supreme Lord Hari of inconceivable soul, who hath taken his birth as Krishna of the Vrishni race, and who, endued with mighty arms, seemeth to sport in this world! This one is *Dhātri* and *Vidhātri*, the Destroyer of all, the Eternal, the bearer of the *Sreevatsa* mark on his breast, the Lord of the Lord of all creatures, the highest of the high, called also *Govinda*! Beholding this foremost of all gods, this ever-victorious Being attired in yellow robes, this chief of the Vrishni race, my recollection cometh back to me! This Mādhava is the father and mother of all creatures! Ye bulls of the Kuru race, seek ye the refuge of this Protector!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed, the sons of Prithā, and those bulls among men—the twins, along with Draupadi, all bowed down unto Janārddana. And that tiger among men, deserving of every respect, thus revered by the

sons of Pāndu, then consoled them all with words of great sweetness."

Thus ends the hundred and eighty-ninth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXL.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Yudhishthira, the son of Kunti, once more asked the great *Muni* Mārkandeya about the future course of the government of the Earth.

"And Yudhishthira said,—'O thou foremost of all speakers, O *Muni* of Bhrigu's race, that which we have heard from thee about the destruction and re-brith of all things at the end of the *Yuga*, is, indeed, full of wonder! I am filled with curiosity, however, in respect of what may happen in the *Kali* age. When morality and virtue will be at an end, what will remain there? What will be the prowess of men in that age, what their food, and what their amusements? What will be the period of life at the end of the *Yuga*? What also is the limit, having attained which the *Krita* age will begin anew? Tell me all in detail, O *Muni*, for all that thou narratest is varied and delightful.'

"Thus addressed, that foremost of *Munis* began his discourse again, delighting that tiger of the Vrishni race and the sons of Pandu as well. And Mārkandeya said.—'Listen, O monarch, to all that hath been seen and heard by me, and to all, O king of kings, that hath been known to me by intuition, from the grace of the God of gods! O bull of the Bharata race, listen to me as I narrate the future history of the world during the sinful age. O bull of the Bharata race, in the *Krita* age, everything was free from deceit and guile and avarice and covetousness; and morality, like a bull, was among men, with all the four legs complete. In the *Tretā* age, sin took away one of these legs, and morality had three legs. In the *Dwāpara*, sin and morality are mixed half and half; and accordingly morality is said to have two legs only. In the dark age (of *Kali*), O thou best of the Bharata race,

morality, mixed with three parts of sin, liveth by the side of men. Accordingly, morality then is said to wait on men, with only a fourth part of itself remaining. Know, O Yudhishthira, that the period of life, the energy, the intellect, and the physical strength of men decrease in every *Yuga*! O Pāndu, the Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Sudras, (in the *Kali* age) will practise morality and virtue deceitfully, and men in general will deceive their fellows by spreading the net of virtue. And men with false reputation of learning will, by their acts, cause Truth to be contracted and concealed. And in consequence of the loss of truth, the lives of men will become short. And in consequence of the shortness of their lives, they will not be able to acquire much knowledge. And in consequence of the littleness of their knowledge, they will have no wisdom. And for this, covetousness and avarice will overwhelm them all. And wedded to avarice and wrath and ignorance and lust, men will entertain animosities towards one another, desiring to take one another's lives. And Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaçyas with their virtue contracted, and divested of asceticism and truth, will all be reduced to an equality with the Sudras. And the lowest orders of men will rise to the position of the intermediate ones, and those in intermediate stations will, without doubt, descend to the level of the lowest ones. Even such, O Yudhishthira, will become the state of the world, at the end of the *Yuga*. Of robes, those will be regarded the best that are made of flax, and of grain, the *Paspalum frumentacea** will be regarded the best. Towards this period men will regard their wives as their (only) friends. And men will live on fish, and milk goats and sheep for cows will be extinct. And towards that period, even they that are always observant of vows, will become covetous. And opposed to one another, men will, at such a time, seek one another's lives; and divested of *Yapa*, people will become atheists and thieves. And they will even dig the banks of streams

---

* The word in the text is *Kora-dushakás*, supposed by Wilson to be the *Paspalum frumentacea* (*vide* Dict.)—*T*.

with their spades and sow grains thereon. And even those places will prove barren for them at such a time. And those men who are devoted to ceremonial rites in honor of the deceased and of the gods, will be avaricious and will also appropriate and enjoy what belongs to others. The father will the enjoy what belongs to the son; and the son, what belongs to the father. And those things will also be enjoyed by men in such times, the enjoyment of which hath been forbidden in the scriptures. And the Brāhmanas, speaking disrespectfully of the Vedas, will not practise vows, and their understandings clou led by the science of disputation, they will no longer perform sacrifices and the *Homa*. And deceived by the false science of reasons, they will direct their hearts towards everything mean and low. And men will till low lands for cultivation and employ cows, and calves that are one year old, in drawing the plough and carrying burthens. And sons having slain their sires and sires having slain their sons will incur no opprobrium. And they will frequently save themselves from anxiety by such deeds, and even glory in them. And the whole world will be filled with *mleccha* behaviour ahd notions, and ceremonies and sacrifices will cease, and joy will be nowhere and general rejoicings will disappear And men will rob the possessions of helpless persons, of those that are friendless, and of widows also. And possessed of small energy and strength, without knowledge, and addicted to avarice and folly and sinful practices, men will accept with joy the gifts made by wicked people with words of contempt. And, O son of Kunti, the kings of the earth, with hearts wedded to sin, without knowledge, and always, boastful of their wisdom, will challenge one another from desire of taking one another's life. And the Kshatriyas also towards such a period will become the thorns of the earth. And filled with avarice, and swelling with pride and vanity, and unable and unwilling to protect (their subjects), they will take pleasure in inflicting punishments only. And attacking and repeating their attacks upon the good and the honest, and feeling no pity for the latter even when they will cry in grief, the Kshatriyas will, O Bhārata, rob these of their

wives and wealth. And no one will ask for a girl (for purposes of mariage) and no one will give away a girl (for such purposes), but the girls will themselves choose their lords, when the end of the *Yugā* comes. And the kings of the earth, with souls steeped in ignorance, and discontented with what they have, will, at such a time, rob their subjects by every means in their power. And without doubt the whole world will be *mlecchified.** And, when the end of the *Yuga* comes, the right hand will deceive the left; and the left, the right.† And men with false reputation of learning will contract Truth, and the old will betray the senselessness of the young and the young will betray the dotage of the old. And cowards will have the reputation of bravery, and the brave will be cheerless like cowards. And, towards the end of the *Yuga* men will cease to trust one another. And full of avarice and folly, the whole world will have but one kind of food.‡ And sin will increase and prosper, while virtue will fade and cease to flourish. And Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas will disappear, leaving, O king, no remnants of their orders. And all men, towards the end of the *Yuga*, will become members of one common order, without distinction of any kind. And sires will not forgive sons and sons will not forgive sires. And, when the end approaches, wives will not wait upon and serve their husbands. And, at such a time, men will seek those countries where wheat and barley from the staple food. And, O monarch, both men and women will become perfectly free in their behaviour, and will

---

* The word in the text is *mlecchi-bhutam.* The Sanskrit grammar affords a great facility for the formation of verbs from substantives. *Mlecchify* may be hybrid, but it correctly and shortly signifies what is meant by the Sanskrit word.—*T.*

† Nilkantha would explain this as meaning that "even uterine brothers and other relatives will deceive one another." The literal rendering would be "Even hands will deceive each other."—*T.*

‡ Distinctions of food there will be none. A different reading is noticeable. For *Jagat* some texts read *Yugam.* The meaning then is, "All kinds of conveyances will have but one sort of animals to draw them." The reading, however, is erroneous.—*T*

not tolertate one another's acts. And, O Yudhishthira, the whole world will be *mlecchified*. And men will cease to gratify the gods by offerings of the *Srāddha*. And no one will listen to the words of others, and no one will be regarded as a preceptor by another. And, O ruler of men, intellectual darkness will envelope the whole earth, and the life of man will then be measured by sixteen years, on attaining to which age death will ensue. And girls of five or six years of age will bring forth children and boys of seven or eight years of age will become fathers. And, O tiger among kings, when the end of the *Yuga* will come, the wife will never be content with her husband, nor the husband with his wife. And the possessions of men will never be much, and people will falsely bear the marks of religion, and jealousy and malice will fill the world. And no one will, at that time, be a giver (of wealth or anything else) in respect to any one else. And the inhabited regions of the earth will be afflicted with dearth and famine, and the highways will be filled with lustful men and women of evil repute. And, at such a time, the women will also entertain an aversion towards their husbands. And without doubt all men will adopt the behaviour of the *mlecchas*, become omnivorous without distinction, and cruel in all their acts, when the end of the *Yuga* will come. And, O thou foremost of the Bharatas, urged by avarice, men will, at that time, deceive one another when they sell and purchase. And without a knowlege of the ordinance, men will perform ceremonies and rites, and, indeed, behave as listeth them, when the end of the *Yuga* comes. And when the end of the *Yuga* comes, urged by their very dispositions, men will act cruelly, and speak ill of one another. And people will, without compunction, destroy trees and gardens. And men will be filled with anxiety as regards the means of living. And, O king, overwhelmed with covetousness, men will kill Brāhmanas and appropriate and enjoy the possessions of their victims. And the regenerate ones, oppressed by Sudras, and afflicted with fear, and crying *Oh* and *Alas*, will wander over the earth without anybody to protect them. And when men will begin to slay one an-

other, and become wicked and fierce and without any respect for animal life, then will the *Yuga* come to end. And, O king, even the foremost of the regenerate ones, afflicted by robbers, will, like crows, fly in terror and with speed, and seek refuge, O perpetuator of the Kuru race, in rivers and mountains and inaccessible regions. And always oppressed by bad rulers with burthens of taxes, the foremost of the regenerate classes, O lord of the earth, will, in those terrible times, take leave of all patience and do improper acts by becoming even the servants of Sudras. And Sudras will expouned the scriptures, and Brāhmanas will wait upon and listen to them, and settle their course of duty accepting such interpretations as their guides. And the low will become the high, and the course of things will look contrary. And renouncing the gods, men will worship bones and other relics deposited within walls. And, at the end of the *Yuga*, the Sudras will cease to wait upon and serve the Brāhmanas. And in the asylums of great *Rishis*, and the schools and colleges of Brāhmanas, and in places sacred to the gods and sacrificial compounds, and in sacred tanks, the earth will be disfigured with tombs and walls containing bony relics and not graced with temples dedicated to the gods. These all will take place at the end of the *Yuga*, and know that these are the signs of the end of the *Yuga*. And when men become fierce and destitute of virtue and carnivorous and addicted to intoxicating drinks, then doth the *Yuga* come to end. And, O monarch, when flowers will be begot within flowers, and fruits within fruits, then will the *Yuga* come to end. And the clouds will pour rain unseasonably, when the end of the *Yuga* approaches. And, at that time, ceremonial rites of men will not follow one another in due order, and the Sudras will quarrel with the Brāhmanas. And the earth will soon be full of *mlecchas*, and the Brāhmanas will fly in all directions for fear of the burthen of taxes. And all distinctions between men will cease as regards conduct and behaviour, and afflicted with honorary tasks and offices, people will fly to woody retreats, subsisting on fruits and roots. And the world will be so afflicted, that rectitude of conduct

will cease to be exhibited anywhere. And disciples will set at naught the instructions of preceptors, and seek to even injure them. And preceptors, impoverished for wealth, will be disregarded by men. And friends and relatives and kinsmen will perform friendly offices for the sake of the wealth only that is possessed by a person. And, when the end of the *Yuga* comes, every body will be in want. And all the points of the horizon will be ablaze, and the stars and stellar groups will be destitute of brilliancy, and the planets and planetary conjunctions will be inauspicious. And the course of the winds will be confused and agitated, and innumerable meteors will flash through the sky, foreboding evil. And the Sun will appear with six others of the same kind. And all around there will be din and uproar, and everywhere there will be conflagrations. And the Sun, from the hour of his rising to that of setting, will be enveloped by *Rāhu*. And the deity of a thousand eyes will shower rain unseasonably. And, when the end of the *Yuga* comes, crops will not grow in abundance. And the women will always be sharp in speech and pitiless and fond of weeping. And they will never abide by the commands of their husbands. And, when the end of the *Ynga* comes, sons will slay fathers and mothers. And women, living uncontrolled, will slay their husbands and sons.* And, O king, when the end of the *Yuga* comes, *Rāhu* will swallow the Sun unseasonably. And fires will blaze up on all sides. And travellers, unable to obtain food and drink and shelter even when they ask for these, will lie down on the wayside, refraining from urging their solicitations. And, when the end of the *Yuga* comes, crows and snakes and vultures and kites and other animals and birds will utter frightful and dissonant cries. And, when the end of the *Yuga* comes, men will cast away and neglect their friends and

* The word in the text is *apāçritās*. Women ought never to be free. In childhood, they are to be under the protection of fathers; in youth, under that of their husbands; and in old age, under that of their sons. I have rendered *Sudayishyanti* into *slay*. It may also mean, torment or oppress.

relatives and attendants. And, O monarch, when the end of *Yuga* comes, men abandoning the countries and directions and towns and cities of their occupation, will seek for new ones, one after another. And people will wander over the Earth, uttering—*Oh father,—Oh son,* and such other frightful and rending cries.

"'And when those terrible times will be over, the creation will begin anew. And men will again be created and distributed into the four orders beginning with Brāhmanas. And, about that time, in order that men may increase, Providence,* according to its pleasure, will once more become propitious. And then when the Sun, the Moon, and Vrihaspati † will, with the constellation *Pushya* ‡ enter the same sign, the *Krita* age will begin again. And the clouds will commence to shower seasonably, and the stars and stellar conjunctions will become auspicious. And the planets, duly revolving in their orbits, will become exceedingly propitious. And all around, there will be prosperity and abundance and health and peace. And commissioned by Time, a Brāhmana of the name of *Kalki* will take his birth. And he will glorify Vishnu$ and possess great energy, great intelligence, and great prowess. And he will take his birth in a town of the name of *Sambhala* in an auspicious Brāhmana family. And vehicles and weapons, and warriors and arms, and coats of mail will be at his disposal as soon as he will think of them. And he will be the king of kings, and ever victorious with the strength of virtue. And he will restore order and peace in this world crowded with creatures and contradictory in its course.¶ And that blazing Brāhmana of mighty intellect, having appeared, will destroy all

---

* The word in the text is *Daiva*. It may mean *Chance, Destiny* or *Godlike power or energy*. I prefer to understand it in the last sense.—*T.*

† The planet Jupiter.—*T.*

‡ *Pushyā* is the eighth lunar asterism consisting of three stars, of which one is the Cancer. (*vide* Wilson's Dict).—*T.*

$ *Vishnu-yaçā*, the nominative form of *Vishnu-yaças*. Grammatically it qualifies *Kalki*. Elsewhere it is said that *Kalki* will take his birth in the family of a Brāhmana of name *Vishnu-yaças*.

¶ *Sankula* means both crowded and contradictory.—*T.*

things. And he will be the Destroyer of all, and will set in a new *Yuga*. And surrounded by Brāhmanas, that Brāhmana will exterminate all the *mlecchas* wherever those low and despicable persons may take refuge.' "

Thus ends the hundred and nineticth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXLI.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Having exterminated the thieves and robbers, *Kalki* will, at a great Horse-sacrifice, duly give away this Earth to the Brāhmanas. And having established anew the blessed rectitude ordained by the Self-create, *Kalki* of sacred deeds and illustrious reputation will enter a delightful forest. And the people of this Earth will imitate his conduct. And when the Brāhmanas will have exterminated the thieves and robbers, there will be prosperity everywhere (on Earth). And as the countries of the Earth will one after another be subjugated, that tiger among Brāhmanas, *Kalki*, having placed deer-skins and lances and tridents there, will roam over the Earth, adored by foremost Brāhmanas and showing his regard for them, and engaged all the while in slaughtering thieves and robbers. And he will exterminate the thieves and robbers amid heart-rending cries of—*Oh father!—Oh mother!—Oh son!* and the like. And, O Bhārata, when sin will thus have been rooted out and virtue will flourish on arrival of the *Krita* age, men will once more betake themselves to the practice of religious rites. And in the age that will set in, *viz.*, the *Krita*, well-planted gardens, and sacrificial compounds, and large tanks, and schools and colleges for the cultivation of Brāhmanic lore, and ponds and temples will re-appear everywhere. And the ceremonials and rites of sacrifices will also begin to be performed. And the Brāhmanas will become good and honest. And the regenerate ones, devoted to ascetic austerities, will become *Munis*. And the asylums of ascetics which had before been filled with wicked wretches will once more be homes of men

devoted to truth.* And men in general will begin to honor and practice truth. And all seeds, sown on earth, will grow, and, O monarch, every kind of crop will grow in every season. And men will devotedly practice charity and vows and observances. And the Brāhmanas, devoted to meditation and sacrifices, will be of virtuous soul and always cheerful. And the rulers of the Earth will govern their kingdoms virtuously. And, in the *Krita* age, the Vaiçyas will be devoted to the practices of their order. And the Brāhmanas will be devoted to their six-fold duties (of study, teaching, performance of sacrifices on their own account, officiating at sacrifices performed by others, charity, and acceptance of gifts). And the Kshatriyas will be devoted to feats of prowess. And Sudras will be devoted to the service of the three (higher) orders.

"'These, O Yudhishthira, are the courses of the *Krita*, the *Tretā*, the *Dwāpara*, and the succeeding age! I have now narrated to thee everything. I have also told thee, O son of Pāndu, the periods embraced by the several *Yugas*, as generally known. I have now told thee everything appertaining to both the past and the future, as narrated by *Vāyu* in the *Purāna* (which goes by his name and) which is adored by the *Rishis*. Immortal as I am, I have many a time beheld and otherwise ascertained the courses of the world. Indeed, all I have seen and felt I have now told thee! And, O thou of unfading glory, listen now with thy brothers to something else I will presently tell thee, for clearing thy doubts about religion! O thou foremost of virtuous men, thou shouldst always fix thy soul on virtue, for, O monarch, a person of virtuous soul obtaineth bliss both here and hereafter. And, O sinless one, listen to the auspicious words that I will now speak to thee! *Never do thou humiliate a Brāhmana, for a Brāhmana, if angry, may, by his vow, destroy the three worlds!*'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of Mārkandeya, the royal head of the Kurus, endued with intelli-

---

* This *Sloka* is really difficult. Many of the Bengali translators have not caught the true meaning. I have followed Nilkantha.—*T.*

gence and possessed of great lustre, spoke these words of great wisdom.—'O *Muni*, if I am to protect my subjects, to what course of conduct should I adhere? And how should I behave so that I may not fall away from the duties of my order?'

"Mārkandeya, hearing this, answered,—'Be merciful to all creatures, and devoted to their good. Love all creatures, scorning none. Be truthful in speech, humble, with passions under complete control, and always devoted to the protection of thy people. Practise virtue and renounce sin, and worship thou the *Pitris* and the gods. And whatever thou mayst have done from ignorance or carelessness, wash them off and expiate them by charity. Renouncing pride and vanity, be thou possessed of humility and good behaviour. And subjugating the whole Earth, rejoice thou and let happiness be thine. This is the course of conduct that accords with virtue. I have recited to thee all that *was* and all that *will be* regarded as virtuous. There is nothing appertaining to the past or the future that is unknown to thee! Therefore, O son, take not to heart this present calamity of thine. They that are wise are never overwhelmed when they are persecuted by *Time*. O thou of mighty arms, the very dwellers of heaven cannot rise superior to Time! Time afflicteth all creatures. O sinless one, let not doubt cross thy mind regarding the truth of what I have told thee, for, if thou sufferest doubt to enter thy heart, thy virtue will suffer diminution! O bull of the Bharata race, thou art born in the celebrated family of the Kurus. Thou shouldst practise that which I have told thee, in thought, word, and deed.'

"Yudhishthira answered. 'O thou foremost of the regenerate ones, at thy command I will certainly act according to all the instructions thou hast given me, and which, O lord, are all so sweet to the ear! O foremost of Brāhmanas, avarice and lust I have none, and neither fear nor pride nor vanity. I shall, therefore, O lord, follow all that thou hast told me!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having listened to the words of the intelligent Mārkandeya, the sons of Pāndu, O king,

along with the wielder of the bow called *Sārnga*, and all those bulls among Brāhmanas, and all others that were there, became filled with joy. And having heard those blessed words appertaining to olden times, from Mārkandeya gifted with wisdom, their hearts were filled with wonder."

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-first Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXLII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said.—"It behoveth thee to narrate to me in full the greatness of Brāhmanas even as the mighty ascetic Mārkandeya had expounded it to the sons of Pāndu!"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"The eldest son of Pāndu had asked Mārkandeya, saying,—'It behoveth thee to expound to me the greatness of Brāhmanas.' Mārkandeya answered him, saying, 'Listen, O king, to the behaviour of the Brāhmanas in days of old.'

"And Mārkandeya continued,—'There was a king, of name Parikshit, in Ayodhyā and beloning to the race of Ikshāku. And once upon a time Parikshit went ahunting. And riding alone on a horse, as he pursued a deer, the animal led him to a great distance (from the habitations of men). And fatigued by the distance he had ridden, and afflicted with hunger and thirst, he beheld in that part of the country whither he was led, a dark and dense forest. And the king, beholding that forest, entered it. And seeing a delightful tank within the forest, both the rider and the horse bathed in it. And refreshed by the bath and placing before his horse some stalks and fibres of the lotus, the king sat by the side of the tank. And while he was lying by the side of the tank he heard certain sweet strains of music. And hearing those strains, he reflected,—I do not see here the foot-prints of man. Whose and whence then these strains?—And the king soon beheld a maiden of great beauty gathering flowers, singing all the while. And the maiden soon came before the king. And the king thereupon asked her,—Blessed

one, who art thou and whose?—And she replied,—I am a maiden.—And the king said,—I ask thee to be mine.—And the maiden answered,—Give me a pledge, for then only I can be thine, else not.—And the king then asked about the pledge. And the girl answered,—Thou wilt never make me cast my eyes on water.—And the king saying,—So be it, married her. And king Parikshit, having married her, sported (with her) in great joy, and sat with her in silence. And while the king was staying there, his troops reached that spot. And those troops, beholding the monarch, stood surrounding him. And cheered by the presence of his troops, the king entered a handsome vehicle, accompanied by his (newly) wedded wife. And having arrived at his capital, he began to live with her in privacy. And persons that were even near enough to the king could not obtain any interview with him. And the minister-in-chief enquired of those females that waited upon the king, asking,—What do ye do here?—And those women replied,—We behold here a female of unrivalled beauty. And the king sporteth with her, having married her with a pledge that he would never show her water.—And hearing those words, he caused an artificial forest to be created, consisting of many trees with abundant flowers and fruits. And he caused to be excavated within that forest and towards one of its sides a large tank. And placed in a secluded spot and full of water that was sweet as *Amrita*, it was well covered with a net of pearls. And approaching the king one day in private, he addressed the king, saying,—This is a fine forest without water. Sport thou here joyfully!—And the king, at those words of his minister, entered that forest with that adorable wife of his. And the king sported with her in that delightful forest. And afflicted with hunger and thirst, and fatigued and spent, the king beheld a bower of *Mādhavi* creepers.* And entering that bower with his dear one, the king beheld a tank full of water that was transparent and bright as nectar. And beholding that tank, the king sat on

* An Indian creeper of the order of *Gærtnera racemosa*. It bears large white flowers of much fragrance.—*T.*

its bank with her. And the king told his adorable wife,—Cheerfully do thou plunge into this water!—And she, hearing those words, plunged into the tank. But having plunged into the water, she appeared not above the surface. And as the king searched, he failed to discover any trace of her. And the king ordered the waters of the tank to be baled out. And thereupon he beheld a frog sitting at the mouth of a hole. And the king was enraged at this, and promulgated an order, saying,—Let frogs be slaughtered everywhere in my dominions! Whoever wishes to have an interview with me must come before me with a tribute of dead frogs.—And accordingly, when frogs began to be terribly slaughtered on all sides, fear entered the hearts of all the frogs. And the affrighted frogs represented all that happened, unto their king. And the king of the frogs, assuming the garb of an ascetic, came before king Parikshit. And having approached the monarch, he said,—O king, give not thyself up to wrath! Be inclined to grace! It behoveth thee not to slay the innocent frogs!—Here occurs a couple of *Slokas*. (They are these:)—O thou of unfading glory, slay not the frogs! Pacify thy wrath! The prosperity and ascetic merits of those that have their souls steeped in ignorance, suffer diminution! Pledge thyself not to be angry with the frogs! What need hast thou to commit such sin! What purpose will be served by slaying the frogs?*—Then King Parikshit whose soul was filled with woe on account of the death of her that was dear to him, answered the chief of the frogs who had spoken to him thus, saying,—I will not forgive the frogs. On the other hand, I will slay them! By these wicked wretches hath my dear one been swallowed up! The frogs, therefore, always deserve to be killed by me! It behoveth thee not, O learned one, to intercede on their behalf! And hearing these words

* The whole section is a *prose* account The narrator, Mārkendeya, here quotes a couple of *Slokas*. The word *dhanodreka* in the first *Sloka* is explained by Nilkantha to mean "prosperity and ascetic merit." '*Avijānatām* evidently means, "of the ignorant." The ignorance, however, is with respect to spiritual things. The construction of the second line of the second *Sloka* is peculiar.—*T.*

of Parikshit, the king of the frogs, with his senses and mind much pained, said—Be inclined to grace, O king! I am the king of the frogs, of name Ayu. She who was thy wife is my daughter of the name of Suçobhanā. This, indeed, is an instance of her bad conduct. Before this, many kings were deceived by her.—The king thereupon told him,—I desire to have her. Let her be granted to me by thee!—The king of the frogs thereupon bestowed his daughter upon Parikshit, and addressing her, said,—Wait upon and serve the king.—And having spoken these words to his daughter, he also addressed her in wrath, saying,—Since thou hast deceived many kings, for this untruthful behaviour of thine, thy offspring will prove disrespectful to Brāhmanas!—But having obtained her, the king became deeply enamoured of her in consequence of her companionable virtues. And feeling that he had, as it were, obtained the sovereignty of the three worlds, he bowed down to the king of the frogs and reverenced him in due form, and then, with utterance choked in joy and tears, said,—I have been favoured, indeed!—And the king of the frogs, obtaining the leave of his daughter, returned to the place from which he had come. And sometime after the king begot three sons upon her. And those sons were named Sala, and Dala, and Vala. And sometime after, their father, installing the eldest of them of all on the throne, and setting his heart on asceticism, retired into the forest. And one day Sala, while out ahunting, beheld a deer and pursued it, on his car. And the prince said to his charioteer,—Drive thou fast.—And the charioteer, thus addressed, replied unto the king, saying,—Do not entertain such a purpose. This deer is incapable of being caught by thee. If, indeed, *Vāmi* horses had been yoked to thy car, then couldst thou have taken it.—Thereupon the king addressed his charioteer, saying,—Tell me all about *Vāmi* horses, otherwise I will slay thee!—Thus addressed, the charioteer became dreadfully alarmed. And he was afeared of the king and afeared of Vāmdeva's curse, and told not the king anything. And the king then, lifting up his scimitar, told him,—Tell me soon, else I will slay thee.—At last afeared of the king, the charioteer

said,—The *Vāmi* horses are those belonging Vāmadeva; they are fleet as the mind.—And unto his charioteer who had said so, the king said,—Repair thou to the asylum of Vāmadeva.—And reaching the asylum of Vāmadeva, the king said unto that *Rishi*,—O holy one, a deer struck by me is flying away. It behoveth thee to make it capable of being seized by me by granting me thy pair of *Vāmi* horses.—The *Rishi* then answered him, saying,—I give thee my pair of *Vāmi* horses. But after accomplishing thy object, my *Vāmi* pair should be soon returned.—The king then, taking those steeds and obtaining the leave of the *Rishi*, pursued the deer, having yoked the *Vami* pair unto his car. And after he had left the asylum, he spoke unto his charioteer, saying,—These jewels of steeds the Brāhmanas do not deserve to possess. These should not be returned to Vāmdeva.—Having said this and seized the deer, he returned to his capital and placed those steeds within the inner apartments of the palace.

"'Meanwhile the *Rishi* reflected,—The prince is young. Having obtained an excellent pair of animals, he is sporting with it in joy without returning it to me. Alas, what a pity it is!—And reflecting in this strain, the *Rishi* said unto a disciple of his, after the expiration of a month,—Go, O Atreya, and say to the king that if he has done with the *Vāmi* steeds, he should return them unto thy preceptor.—And the disciple Atreya, thereupon repairing to the king, spoke unto him as instructed. And the king replied, saying,—This pair of steeds deserves to be owned by kings. The Brāhmanas do not deserve to possess jewels of such value. What business have Brāhmanas with horses? Return thou contentedly!—And Atreya, thus addressed by the king, returned and told his preceptor all that had happened. And hearing this sad intelligence, Vāmadeva's heart was filled with wrath. And repairing in person to the king, he asked him for his steeds. And the king refused to give the *Rishi* what the latter asked. And Vāmadeva said,—O lord of Earth, give me thou my *Vāmi* horses! By them hast thou accomplished a task which was almost incapable of being accomplished by thee!

By transgressing the practices of Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas, subject not thyself, O king, to death by means of the terrible noose of Varuna!—And hearing this, the king answered,—O Vāmadeva, this couple of excellent, well-trained, and docile bulls are fit animals for Brāhmanas! O great *Rishi*, (take them and) go with them wherever thou likest! Indeed, the very Vedas carry persons like thee!—Then Vāmadeva said,—O king, the Vedas do, indeed, carry persons like us. But that is in the world hereafter. In this world, however, O king, animals like these carry me and persons like me as also all others!—At this the king answered,—Let four asses carry thee, or four mules of the best kind, or even four steeds endued with the speed of the wind. Go thou with these. This pair of *Vāmi* horses, however, deserves to be owned by Kshatriyas. Know thou, therefore, that these are not thine!—At this, Vāmadeva said,—O king, terrible vows have been ordained for the Brāhmanas. If I have lived in their observance, let four fierce and mighty Rākshasas of terrible mien and iron bodies, commanded by me, pursue thee with desire of slaying, and carry thee on their sharp lances, having cut up thy body into four parts!—Hearing this, the king said,—Let those, O Vāmadeva, that know thee as a Brāhmana that in thought, word, and deed, is desirous of taking life, at my command, armed with bright lances and swords, prostrate thee with thy disciples before me!—Then Vāmadeva answered,—O king, having obtained these my *Vāmi* steeds, thou hadst said,—*I will return them.*—Therefore, give me back my *Vāmi* steeds so that thou mayst be able to protect thy life!—Hearing this, the king said,—Pursuit of deer hath not been ordained for the Brāhmanas. I do not punish thee, however, for thy untruthfulness. From this day, too, obeying all thy commands I will, O Brāhmana, attain to regions of bliss!—Vāmadeva then said,—A Brāhmana cannot be punished in thought, word, or deed. That learned person who by ascetic austerities succeedeth in knowing a Brāhmana to be so, faileth not to attain to prominence in this world.—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'After Vāmadeva had said this, there arose, O king, (four) Rākshasas of terrible mien, And

as they, with lances in their hands, approached the king for slaying him, the latter cried aloud, saying,—If, O Brāhmana, all the descendants of of Ikshāku's race, if (my brother) Dala, if all these Vaiçyas, acknowledge my sway, even then I will not yield up the *Vāmi* steeds to Vāmadeva, for these men can never be virtuous!—And while he was uttering those words, those Rākshasas slew him, and the lord of Earth was soon prostrated on the ground. And the Ikshākus, learning that their king had been slain, installed Dala on the throne. And the Brāhmana Vāmadeva, thereupon going to the kingdom (of the Ikshāsus), addressed the new monarch, saying,—O king, it hath been declared in all the sacred books that persons should give away unto Brāhmanas If thou fearest sin, O king, give me now the *Vāmi* steeds without delay.—And hearing these words of Vāmadeva, the king in anger spoke unto his charioteer, saying,—Bring me an arrow from those I have kept, which is handsome to behold and tempered with poison, so that pierced by it Vāmadeva may lie prostrate in pain, torn by the dogs!—Hearing this, Vāmadeva answered,—I know, O king, that thou hast a son of ten years of age, called Senajita, begotten upon thy queen. Urged by my word, slay thou that dear boy of thine without delay by means of thy frightful arrows!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'At these words of Vāmadeva, O king, that arrow of fierce energy, shot by the monarch, slew the prince in the inner apartments. And hearing this, Dala said there and then,—Ye people of Ikshāku's race, I will do ye good! I shall slay this Brāhmana today, grinding him with force! Bring me another arrow of fierce energy. Ye lords of Earth, behold my prowess now!—And at these words of Dala, Vāmadeva said,—This arrow of terrible mien and tempered with poison, that thou aimest at me, thou shalt not, O ruler of men, be able to aim nor even to shoot!—And thereupon the king said,—Ye men of Ishāku's race, behold me incapable of shooting the arrow that hath been taken up by me! I fail to compass the death of this Brāhmana! Let Vāmadeva who is blessed with a long life live!—Then Vāmadeva said,—Touching thy queen with this arrow,

thou mayst purge thyself of this sin (of attempting to take the life of a Brāhmana)!—And king Dala did as he was directed. And the queen then addressed the *Muni* and said,—O Vāmadeva, let me be able to duly instruct this wretched husband of mine from day to day, imparting unto him words of happy import; and let me always wait upon and serve the Brāhmanas, and by this acquire, O Brāhmana, the sacred rerigons hereafter!—And hearing these words of the queen, Vāmadeva said,—O thou of beautiful eyes, thou hast saved this royal race! Beg thou an incomparable boon! I will grant thee whatever thou mayst ask! And, O thou faultless one, rule thou, O princess, these thy kinsmen and this great kingdom of the Ikshākus!—And hearing these words of Vāmadeva, the princess said,—This, O holy one, is the boon I seek, *viz.*, that my husband may now be freed from his sin, and that thou mayst be employed in thinking of the weal of his son and kinsmen! This is the boon that I ask, O thou foremost of Brāhmanas!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Hearing these words of the queen, that *Muni*, O thou foremost of the Kuru race, said,—So be it.—And thereupon king Dala became highly glad and gave unto the *Muni* his *Vāmi* steeds, having bowed down unto him with reverence.'"

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-second Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXLIII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"The *Rishis*, the Brāhmanas, and Yudhishthira then asked Mārkandeya, saying,—'How did the *Rishi* Vaka become so long-lived?'

"Thus asked by them, Mārkandeya answered,—'The royal sage Vaka is a great ascetic and endowed with long life. Ye need not enquire into the reason of this.'

"Hearing this, O Bhārata, the son of Kunti, king Yudhishthira the just, along with his brothers, then asked Mārkandeya, saying,—'It hath been heard by us that both Vaka and

Dālvya are of great souls and endowed with immortality, and that those *Rishis*, held in universal reverence, are the friends of the chief of the gods. O holy one, I desire to listen to the (history of the) meeting of Vaka and Indra that is full of both joy and woe. Narrate thou that history unto us succintly.'

"Mārkandeya said.—'When that horrible conflict between the gods and the Asuras was over, Indra became the ruler of the three worlds. The clouds showered rain copiously. And the dwellers of the world had abundance of harvests, and were excellent in disposition. And devoted to virtue, they always practised morality and enjoyed peace. And all persons, devoted to the duties of their respective orders, were perfectly happy and cheerful. And the slayer of Vala, beholding all the creatures of the world happy and cheerful, became himself filled with joy. And he of an hundred sacrifices, the chief of the gods, seated on the back of his elephant Airāvatā, surveyed his happy subjects. And he cast his eyes on delightful asylums of *Rishis*, on various auspicious rivers, towns full of prosperity, and villages and rural regions in the enjoyment of plenty. And he also cast his eyes upon kings devoted to the practice of virtue and well-skilled in ruling their subjects. And he also looked upon tanks and reservoirs and wells and lakes and smaller lakes all full of water and adored by best of Brāhmanas in the observance, besides, of various excellent vows. And then descending on the delightful Earth, O king, the god of an hundred sacrifices proceeded towards a blessed asylum teeming with animals and birds, situate by the side of the sea, in the delightful and auspicious region of the East on a spot overgrown with abundance of vegetation. And the chief of the gods beheld Vaka in that asylum. And Vaka also, beholding the ruler of the Immortals, became highly glad. And he worshipped Indra by presenting him with water to wash his feet, a carpet to sit upon, the usual offerings of the *Arghya*, and fruits and roots. And the boon-giving slayer of Vala, the divine ruler of those that know not old age, being seated at his ease, asked Vaka the following question,—O sinless *Muni*, thou hast lived for an

hundred years! Tell me, O Brāhmana, what the sorrows are of those that are immortal!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Hearing this, Vaka answered, saying,—Life with persons that are disagreeable, separation from those that are agreeable and beloved, companionship with the wicked,—these are the evils which they that are immortal have to bear. The death of sons and wives, of kinsmen and friends, and the pain of dependance on others, are some of the greatest of evils. (These may all be noticed in a deathless life).* There is no more pitiable sight in the world, as I conceive, than that of men destitute of wealth being insulted by others. The acquisition of family dignity by those that have it not, the loss of family dignity by those that have it, unions and disunions,†—these all are noticeable by those that lead deathless lives. How they that have no family dignity ‡ but have prosperity, win what they have not,—all this, O god of an hundred sacrifices, is before thy very eyes! What can be more pitiable than the calamities and reverses sustained by the gods, the *Asuras*, the *Gandharvas*, men, the Snakes, and the *Rākshasas*? They that have been of good families suffer afflictions in consequence of their subjection to persons that are ill-born, and the poor are insulted by the rich. What can be more pitiabe than these? Innumerable examples of such contradictory dispensations are seen in the world. The foolish and the ignorant are cheerful and happy, while the learned and the wise suffer misery! Plentiful instances of misery and woe are seen among men, in this world! (They that lead deathless lives are destined to behold all these and suffer on that account.)$—'

"'Indra then said,—O thou of great good fortune, tell me

---

* Some such omission must be supplied to make the sense intelligible.—*T.*

† The words in the text are *Samyoga* and *Viproyogá*. None of the commentators touch these words. The sense is obscure.—*T.*

‡ The printed texts read *Akulānām Samriddhānām.*—*T.*

$ Some such words are necessary to make the connection obvious.—*T.*

again, what the joys are of those persons that lead deathless lives,—joys that are adored by gods and *Rishis*!*—'

"'Vaka answered,—If without having to associate with a wicked friend, a man cooks scanty vegetables in his own house at the eighth or the twelfth part of the day, there can be nothing happier than that.† He in whose case the day is not counted is not called voracious. And, O Maghavan, happiness is even his in whose house scanty vegetables are cooked! Earned by his own efforts, without having to depend upon any one, he that eateth even fruits and vegetables in his own house is entitled to respect. He that eateth in another's house the food given to him in contempt, even if that food be rich and sweet, doth what is despicable. This, therefore, is the opinion of the wise that fie on the food of that mean wretch who like a dog or a *Rākshasa* eateth at another's house. If after treating guests and servants and offering food to the *Pitris*, a good Brāhmana eateth what remains, there can be nothing happier than that. There is nothing sweeter or more sacred, O thou of an hundred sacrifices, than that food which such a person takes after serving the guest with the first portion thereof. Each mouthful (of rice) that the Brāhmana eats after having served the guest, produces merit equal to what attaches to the gift of a thousand kine. And whatever sins such a one may have committed in his youth are all washed away of a certainty. The water in the hands of the Brāhmana that hath been fed and honored with a pecuniary gift (after the feeding is over), when touched with water (sprinkled by him that feeds), instantly purges off all the sins of the latter!—'

---

* The Maharajah of Burdwan makes *Devarshi-ganashevita* an adjective of *Mahābhāga*. He has, of course, omitted the accusative particle. Every other printed edition, however, reads *Devarshi-ganashevitam*, There can, therefore, be no option but to take it as an adjective of *Sukham*.

† They, therefore, that lead deathless lives can enjoy this bliss from day to day for ever.

"'Speaking of these and various other things with Vaka, the chief of the gods went away to Heaven.*'"

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-third Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXLIV.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then the sons of Pāndu again addressed Mārkandeya, saying,—'Thou hast told us of the greatness of Brāhmanas. We desire now to hear of the greatness of the royal Kshatriyas!' Thus addressed by them, the great *Rishi* Mārkandeya spoke,—'Listen now to the greatness of the royal Kshatriyas! A certain king of the name of Suhotra belonging to the Kuru race, went on a visit to the great *Rishis*. And as he was returning from that visit, he beheld king Shivi, the son of Uçinara, seated on his car. And as each came before the other, each saluted the other as best befitted his age. And each regarding himself as the equal of the other in respect of qualities, refused to give the way to the other. And at this juncture Nārada appeared there, and beholding what had happened, the celestial *Rishi* asked,—Why is it that ye both stand here, blocking each other's way?—And thus questioned, both of them spoke to Nārada, saying,—O holy one, do not speak so! The sages of old have declared that the way should be given to one who is

---

* It is difficult to understand how all that Vaka says can be an answer to Indra's question. The chief of the gods enquires—What are the joys of those that lead deathless lives? Vaka breaks away unto a confused rigmarole about the merits of independence and the religious merit of entertaining guests and servants. All the printed editions have the passage as rendered here. I have examined some Bengal manuscripts. These do not differ from the printed editions. Let the ingenious reader find out for himself the relavancy of the answer to the question. The supposition may be hazarded that this passage has undergone some change at the hands of the *amenuenses*. Minute research might be able to throw light on the point. I have, therefore, rendered the whole passage exactly as it stands.—*T.*

superior, or to him that is abler. We, however, that stand blocking each other's way, are equal to each other in every respect. Judged properly, there is no superiority or inferiority amongst us.—Thus addressed by them, Nārada recited three *slokas*. (They are these:)—O thou of the Kuru race, he that is wicked behaveth wickedly even unto him that is humble; he also that is humble, behaveth with humility and honesty unto him that is wicked! He that is honest behaveth honestly even towards the dishonest. Why should he not behave honestly towards him that is honest? He that is honest regardeth the service that is done to him, as if it were an hundred times greater than it is. Is this not current amongst the gods themselves? Certainly it is the royal son of Uçinara who is possessed of goodness that is greater than thine. One should conquer the mean by charity; the untruthful by truth, the man of wicked deeds by forgiveness; and the dishonest by honesty. Both of ye are large-hearted. Let one amongst ye stand aside, according to the indication of the above *slokas*.—And having said so, Nārada became silent. And hearing what Nārada had said, the king of the Kuru race, walking round Shivi, and praising his numerous achievements, gave him the way and went on in his course. It was even thus that Nārada had described the high blessedness of the royal Kshatriyas.' "

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-fourth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXLV.

(*Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.*)

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Listen now to another story. One day as king Yayāti the son of Nahusha was sitting on his throne, surrounded by the citizens, there came unto him a Brāhmana desirous of soliciting wealth for his preceptor. And approaching the king, the Brāhmana said,—O king, I beg of thee wealth for my preceptor according to my covenant!—And the king said,—O holy one, tell me what thy covenant is,—And thereupon the Brāhmana said,—

O king, in this world when men are asked for alms they entertain contempt for him that asketh it! I, therefore, ask thee, O king, with what feelings wilt thou give me what I ask and upon which I have set my heart!—And the king replied, saying,—Having given away anything, I never boast of it. I never also listen to solicitations for things that cannot be given. I listen, however, to prayers for things that can be given, and giving them away I always become happy! I will give thee a thousand kine. The Brāhmana that asks me for a gift is always dear to me. I am never angry with the person that begs of me, and I am never sorry for having given away anything!—And the Brāhmana then obtained from the king a thousand kine and went away.'"

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-fifth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXLVI.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The son of Pāndu again addressed the *Riski* and said,—'Speak thou unto us of the high fortune of royal Kshatriyas!' And Mārkandeya said,—'There were two kings of the name of Vrishadarbha and Seduka. And both of them were conversant with morals and with weapons of attack and defence. And Seduka knew that Vrishadharva had from his boyhood an unuttered vow that he would give no other metal unto Brāhmanas save gold and silver. And once on a time a Brāhmana, having completed his study of the Vedās, came unto Seduka, and uttering a benediction upon him begged of him wealth for his preceptor, saying,—Give me a thousand steeds!—And thus addressed, Seduka said unto him,—It is not possible for me to give thee this for thy preceptor! Therefore, go thou unto king Vrishadharva, for, O Brāhmana, he is a highly virtuous king. Go and beg of him! He will grant thy request. Even this is his unuttered vow!—Hearing these words, that Brāhmana went to Vrishadarbha and begged of him a thousand steeds. And the king, thus solicited, struck the Brāhmana with a whip. And thereupon

the Brāhmana said,—Innocent as I am, why dost thou attack me thus ?—And the Brāhmana was on the point of cursing the king, when the latter said,—O Brāhmana, dost thou curse him that doth not give thee what thou askest ? Or, is this behaviour proper for a Brāhmana ?—And the Brāhmana said,—O king of kings, sent unto thee by Seduka, I came before thee for alms ! Instructed by him I begged of thee !—And hearing this, the king said,—I will give thee now whatever tribute may come to me before the morning is expired. How, indeed, can I send away the man empty-handed who hath been whipped by me !—And having said this, the king gave unto that Brāhmana the entire proceeds of that day. And that was more than the value of a thousand horses.' "

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-sixth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsya of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXLVII.

(Markandeya-Samāsya Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said,—'One day it was resolved by the gods that they should descend on the Earth and try the goodness and virtue of king Shivi the son of Uçinara. And addressing each other—*Well*—Agni and Indra came to the Earth. And Agni took the form of a pigeon flying away from Indra who pursued him in the form of a hawk. And that pigeon fell upon the lap of king Shivi who was seated on an excellent seat. And the priest, thereupon addressing the king, said,—Afeared of the hawk and desirous of saving its life, this pigeon hath come to thee for safety ! The learned have said that the falling of a pigeon upon one's body forebodeth a great danger. Let the king that understands omens give away wealth for saving himself from the danger indicated !—And the pigeon also addressed the king and said,—Afeared of the hawk and desirous of saving my life I have come to thee for protection ! I am a *Muni*. Having assumed the form of a pigeon I come to thee as a seeker of thy protection. Indeed, I seek thee as my life ! Know me as one possessed of Vedic lore, as one leading the *Brahmacharya* mode of life,

as one possessed also of self-control and ascetic virtues! And know me, further, as one that has never spoken disagreeably unto his preceptor, as one possessed of every virtue, indeed, as one that is sinless! I repeat the Vedas, I know their prosody; indeed, I have studied all the Vedas letter by letter! I am not a pigeon. Oh, do not yield me up to the hawk. The giving up of a learned and pure Brāhmana can never be a good gift!—And after the pigeon had said so, the hawk addressed the king and said,—Creatures do not come into the world in the same particular order. In the order of creation, thou mayst, in a former birth, have been begotten by this pigeon. It is not proper for thee, O king, to interfere with my food by protecting this pigeon (even though he might have been thy father).—And thus addressed, the king, said,—Hath any one, before this seen birds thus speak the pure speech of man? Knowing what this pigeon sayeth, and this hawk also, how can we act today according to virtue? He that giveth up an affrighted creature seeking protection, unto its foe, doth not obtain protection when he is in need of it himself. Indeed, the very clouds do not shower rain seasonably for him, and the seeds may scatter do not grow for him. He that giveth up an afflicted creature seeking protection, unto its foe, hath to see his offspring die in childhood. The ancestor of such a person can never dwell in heaven; indeed, the very gods decline to accept the libations of clarified butter poured by him into the fire. He that giveth up an affrighted creature seeking protection, unto its foe, is struck with the thunder-bolt by the gods with Indra at their head. Of a narrow soul, the food that he eateth is unsanctified, and he falleth from heaven very soon. O hawk, let the people of the Shivi tribe place before thee a bull cooked with rice instead of this pigeon! And let them also carry to the place where thou livest in joy, meat in abundance!—And hearing this, the hawk said.—O king, I do not ask for a bull, nor, indeed, any other meat, nor meat more than that of this pigeon! It hath been given to me by the gods. This creature, therefore, is my food today in consequence of its death that hath been ordained. Therefore, O monarch, give it up to me!—Thus

addressed by the hawk, the king said,—Let my men see and carefully carry the bull to thee with every limb entire. Let that bull be the ransom of this creature afflicted with fright. And let it be carried to thee before my eyes. Oh, slay not this pigeon! I will yield up my very life, yet I would not give up this pigeon! Dost thou not know, O hawk, that this creature looketh like a Sacrifice with the *Soma* juice! O blessed one, cease to take so much trouble after it! I cannot, by any means, yield up the pigeon to thee! Or, O hawk, if it pleasest thee, command me to do some such thing which I may do for thee, which may be agreeable to thee, and upon doing which the men of the Shivi tribe may yet in joy bless me in terms of applause! I promise thee that I will do what thou mayst bid me do!—And at this appeal of the king, the hawk said,—O king, if thou givest me as much flesh as would be equal to the weight of the pigeon, cutting it off thy right thigh, then can the pigeon be properly saved by thee, then wouldst thou do what would be agreeable to me and what the men of the Shivi tribe would speak of in terms of praise!—And the king agreed to this. And he cut off a piece of flesh from his right thigh and weighed it with the pigeon. But the pigeon weighed heavier. And thereupon the king cut off another piece of his flesh, but the pigeon still weighed heavier. And then the king cut off pieces of flesh from all parts of his body and placed them on the scale. But the pigeon still weighed heavier. And then the king himself ascended the scale. And he felt no grief at this. And beholding this, the hawk disappeared there and then, having said,—(The pigeon hath been) *Saved!*—And the king asked the pigeon, saying,—I ask thee, O pigeon, let the Shivis know who the hawk is! None but the Lord of the Universe could do as he did! O holy one, answer thou this question of mine!—And the pigeon then said,—I am the smoke-bannered *Agni* called also Vaiçwānara! The hawk is none other than Shachi's lord armed with the thunder-bolt. O son of Suratha, thou art a bull among men! We came to try thee! These pieces of flesh, O king, that thou hadst cut off with thy sword from thy body for saving me, have

caused gashes in thy body. I will make these marks auspicious and handsome. And they will be of the color of gold and emit a sweet perfume. And earning great fame and respected by the gods and the *Rishis*, thou shalt long rule these subjects of thine. And a son will spring from thy flank who shall be called *Kapātaroman*. O king, thou shalt obtain this son of the name of *Kapotroman* from out of thy own body. And thou wilt behold him become the foremost of the Saurathas, blazing with renown, possessed of bravery and great personal beauty!—' "

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-seventh Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXLVIII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" And the son of Pāndu once more addressed Mārkandeya, saying,—'Tell us again of the great good fortune of kings!' And Mārkandeya said,—'There came unto the Horse-sacrifice of king Ashtaka of Viçwamitra's race, many kings. And there came unto that sacrifice the three brothers also of that king, *viz.*, Pratarddana, Vasumanas, and Shivi the son of Uçinara. And after the sacrifice was completed, Ashtaka was proceeding on his car along with his brothers, when they all beheld Nārada coming that way. And they saluted the celestial *Rishi* and said unto him,—Ride thou on this car with us.—And Nārada, saying *So be it*, mounted on the car. And one among those kings, having gratified the holy and celestial *Rishi* Nārada, said,—O holy one, I desire to ask thee something.—And the *Rishi* said,—Ask!—And the person, thus permitted, said,—All four of us are blessed with long lives and have, indeed, every virtue. We shall, therefore, be permitted to go to a certain heaven and dwell there for a long period. Who amongst us, however, O king, shall fall down first? Thus questioned, the *Rishi* said,—This Ashtaka shall first come down.—And thereupon the inquirer asked,—For what cause?—And the *Rishi* answered,—I lived for a few days in the abode of Ashtaka. He carried me (one

day) on his car out of the town. And there I beheld thousands of kine distinguished from one another by difference of hue. And beholding those kine I asked Ashtaka whose were they. And Ashtaka answered me, saying,—*I have given away these kine.*—By this answer he gave expression to his own praise. It is for this answer of his that Ashtaka shall have to come down. —And after Nārada had said so, one of them again enquired, saying—Three of us then will stay in heaven. Amongst us three, who shall fall down first ? And the *Rishi* answered,—Pratarddana !—And the inquirer asked,—For what cause ?—And the *Rishi* answered,—I lived for some days in the abode of Pratarddana also. And he carried me on his car one day. And while doing so, a Brāhmana asked him, saying—*Give me a horse !*—And Pratarddana replied,—*After returning I will give thee one !*—And thereupon the Brāhmana said,—*Let it be given to me soon !*—And as the Brāhmana spoke those words, the king gave unto him the steed that had been yoked on the right-hand wheel of the car. And there came unto him another Brāhmana desirous of obtaining a steed. And the king having spoken to him in the same way, gave him the steed that had been yoked on the left wheel of his car. And having given away the horse unto him, the king proceeded on his journey. And then there came unto the king another Brāhmana desirous of obtaining a horse. And the king soon gave him the horse on the left front of his car, unyoking the animal. And having done so, the king proceeded on his journey. And then there came unto the king another Brāhmana desirous of obtaining a horse. And the king said unto him,—*Returning, I will give thee a horse !*—But the Brāhmana said,—*Let the steed be given to me soon !*—And the king gave him the only horse he had. And seizing the yoke of the car himself, the king began to draw it. And as he did so, he said,—*There is now nothing for the Brāhmanas.* The king had given away, it is true, but he had done so with detraction. And for that speech of his, he shall have to fall down from heaven.—And after the *Rishi* had said so, of the two that remained, one asked,—Who amongst us two shall fall down ?—And the *Rishi* answered,—Vasumanas. And

the inquirer asked,—For what reason ?—And Nārada said,—In course of my wanderings I arrived at the abode of Vasumanas. And at that time the Brāhmanas were performing the ceremony of *Swastivāchana* for the sake of a flowery car.* And I approached the king's presence. And after the Brāhmanas had completed the ceromony, the flowery car became visible to them. And I praised that car, and thereupon the king told me,—*Holy one, by thee hath this car been praised ! Let this car, therefore, be thine !* And after this I went to Vasumanas another time when I was in need of a (flowery) car. And I admired the car, and the king said.—*It is thine !*—And I went to the king a third time and admired the car again. And even then the king, exhibiting the flowery car to the Brāhmanas, cast his eyes on me, and said,—*O holy one, thou hast praised the flowery car sufficiently.* And the king only said these words, without making me a gift of that car. And for this he will fall down from heaven.—'

" 'And one among them then said,—Of the one who is to go with thee, who will go and who will fall down ?—And Nārada answered,—Shivi will go, but I will fall down !—For what reason ?—asked the inquirer. And Nārada said,—I am not the equal of Shivi. For one day a Brāhmana came unto Shivi and addressing him, said,—O Shivi, I come to thee for food !—And Shivi replied unto him, saying,—What shall I do ? Let me have thy orders!—And the Brāhmana answered,—This thy son known by the name of Vrihadgarbha should be killed. And, O, cook him for my food !—And hearing this, I waited to see what would follow. And Shivi then killed his son and cooking him duly and placing that food in a vessel and taking it upon his head, he went out in search of the

---

* The ceremony of *Swastivāchana* is described to be "a religious rite, preparatory to any important observance, in which the Brāhmanas strew boiled rice on the ground, and invoke the blessings of the gods on the ceremony about to commence." (*Vide* Wilson's Dict).—*T.*

A flowery car was, probably, one of celestial make that the kings, procured from heaven by performing costly rites and ceremonies. These were sometimes exhibited to the people, and privious to their exhibition, the ceremony of *Swastivächana* was performed.—*T.*

Brāhmana. And while Shivi was thus seeking for the Brāhmana, some one told him,—The Brāhmana thou seekest, having entered thy city, is setting fire to thy abode. And he is also setting fire, in wrath, to thy treasury, thy arsenal, the apartments of the females and thy stables for horses and elephants!—And Shivi heard all this without change of color, and entering his city spoke unto the Brāhmana,—O holy one, the food has been cooked.—And the Brāhmana, hearing this, spoke not a word. And from surprise he stood with down-cast looks. And Shivi, with a view to gratify the Brāhmana, said,—O holy one, eat thou this!—And the Brāhmana, looking at Shivi for a moment, said,—Eat it thyself!—And thereupon Shivi said,—Let it be so.—And Shivi cheerfully taking the vessel from his head desired to eat it. And thereupon the Brāhmana caught hold of Shivi's hand and addressing him, said,—Thou hast conquered wrath. There is nothing that thou canst not give unto the Brāhmanas!—And saying this, that Brāhmana adored Shivi. And then, as Shivi cast his eyes before him, he beheld his son standing like a child of the gods, decked in ornaments and yielding a fragrance from his body. And the Brāhmana, having accomplished all this, made himself invisible. And it was Vidhātri himself who had thus come in that guise to try that royal sage. And after Vidhātri had disappeared, the counsellors addressed the king, saying,—Thou knowest everything. For what didst thou do all this?—And Shivi answered,—It was not for fame nor for wealth, nor from desire of acquiring objects of enjoyment that I did all this. This course is not sinful. It is for this that I do all this. The path which is trodden by the virtuous is laudable. My heart always inclineth towards such a course.—This high instance of Shivi's blessedness I know, and I have, therefore, narrated it duly!—'"

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-eighth Section in the Mārkandeya Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CLXLIX.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"The sons of Pāndu and those *Rishis* then asked Mārkandeya,—Is there anybody that is blessed with a longer life than thou ?' And Mārkandeya answered them, saying,—'There is, without doubt, a royal sage of the name of Indradyumna. And his virtue having diminished, he fell from heaven, crying,—My achievements are lost!—And he came unto me and asked,—Dost thou know me ?—And I answered him, saying,—From our anxiety to acquire religious merit we do not confine ourselves to any home. We live but for a night in the same village or town. A person like us, therefore, cannot possibly know thy pursuits. The fasts and vows we observe render us weak in body and unable to follow any worldly pursuits on our own behalf. Hence, one like us cannot possibly know thee!—He then asked me,—Is there any one who is longer-lived than thou ?—I answered him, saying,—There liveth on the Himavat an owl of the name of Prāvārakarna. He is older than I. He may know thee. That part of the Himavat where he dwelleth is far off from here.—And at this, Indradyumna became a horse and carried me to where that owl lived. And the king asked the owl, saying,—Dost thou know me ?—And the owl seemed to reflect for a moment and then said unto the king,—I do not know thee.—And the royal sage Indradyumna thereupon asked the owl,—Is there any one who is older than thou ?—And thus asked, the owl answered, saying—There is a lake of the name of Indradyumna. In that lake dwelleth a crane of the name of Nādijangha. He is older than we. Ask thou him.—And at this, king Indradyumna, taking both myself and the owl went to that lake where the crane Nādijangha dwelt. And that crane was asked by us,—Dost thou know this king Indradyumna ?—And the crane thereupon seemed to reflect a little and then said,—I do not know king Indradyumna.—And the crane was asked by us,—Is there any one who is older

than thou ?—And he answered us, saying,—There dwelleth in this very lake a tortoise of the name of Akupāra. He is older than I. He may know something of this king. Therefore, enquire ye of Akupāra.—And then that crane gave information to the tortoise, saying,—It is intended by us to ask thee something. Please come to us.—And hearing this, the tortoise came out of the lake to that part of the bank where we all were. And as he came there, we asked him, saying,—Dost thou know this king Indradyumna ?—And the tortoise reflected for a moment. And his eyes were filled with tears and his heart was much moved. And he trembled all over and was nearly deprived of his senses. And he said with joined hands,—Alas, do I not know this one ? He had planted the sacrificial stake a thousand times at the time of kindling the sacrificial fire. This lake was excavated by the feet of the cows given away by this king unto the Brāhmanas on the completion of the sacrifice. I have lived here ever since.—And after the tortoise had said all this, there came from the celestial regions a car. And an aerial voice was heard which said, addressing Indradyumna,—Come thou and obtain the place thou deservest in heaven ! Thy achievements are great ! Come thou cheerfully to thy place !—Here also are certain *slokas* : The report of virtuous deeds spreadeth over the Earth and ascendeth to heaven. As long as that report lasts so long is the doer said to be in heaven. The man whose evil deeds are bruited about, is said to fall down and live, as long as that evil report lasts, in the lower regions. Therefore, should man be virtuous in his acts if he is to gain Heaven. And he should seek refuge in virtue, abandoning a sinful heart.—'

" 'And hearing these words, the king said,—Let the car stay here as long as I do not take these old persons to the places whence I brought them. And having brought me and the owl Prāvārakarna to our respective places, he went away, riding on that car, to the place that was fit for him. Long-lived as I am, I witnessed all this.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" It was thus that Mārkandeya had narrated all this unto the sons of Pāndu. And after Mārkandeya had finished, the sons of Pāndu said,—Blessed be

thou ! Thou hadst acted properly in causing king Indradyumna who had fallen from Heaven to regain his sphere ! And Mārkandeya answered them, saying,—Devaki's son Krishna also had thus raised the royal sage Nriga who had sunk in hell and caused him to regain Heaven !' "

Thus ends the hundred and ninety-ninth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CC.

(*Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.*)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" King Yudhishthira, hearing from the illustrious Mārkandeya the story of the royal sage Indradyumna's regaining of Heaven, again asked the *Muni*, saying, —O great *Muni*, tell me in what condition should a man practise charity in order to gain admission into the regions of Indra ? Is it by practicing charity while leading a domestic mode of life, or in boyhood, or in youth, or in old age ? O tell me about the respective merits reaped from the practice of charity in these different stages of life ?'

" Mārkandeya said.—' Life that is futile is of four kinds. Charity also that is futile is of sixteen kinds. His life is in vain who hath no son; and his also who is out of the pale of virtue ; and his too who liveth on the food of others ; and lastly, his who cooketh for himself without giving therefrom unto the *Pitris*, the gods, and the guests, and who eateth of it before these all. The gift to one that has fallen away from the practice of virtuous vows, as also the gift of wealth that has been earned wrongly, are both in vain. The gift to a fallen Brāhmana, that to a thief, that also to a preceptor that is false, is in vain. The gift to an untruthful man, to a person that is sinful, to one that is ungrateful, to one that officiates at sacrifices performed by all classes of people residing in a village, to one that sells the Vedas,* to a Brāhmana that cooks for a Sudra, to one that by birth is a Brāhmana but

---

* A man is said to sell the Vedas who lectures on the Vedas taking fees from the hearers.

who is destitute of the occupations of his order, is in vain. The gift to one that has married a girl after the accession of puberty, to females, to one that sports with snakes, and to one that is employed in menial offices, is also in vain. These sixteen kinds of gifts are productive of no merit. That man who, with mind clouded with darkness, giveth away from fear or anger, enjoyeth the merit of such gift while he is in the womb of his mother. The man who (under other circumstances) maketh gifts unto the Brāhmanas, enjoyeth the fruit thereof while he is in old age. Therefore, O king, the man who wishes to win the way of heaven, should, under all conditions, make gifts unto *Brāhmanas* of everything that he wishes to give away.'

"Yudhishthira said.—'By what means do Brāhmanas, who accept gifts from all the four orders, save others as well as themselves ?'

"Mārkandeya said.—'By *Japa*,* and *Mantras*,† and *Homa*,‡ and the study of the Vedas, the Brāhmanas construct a Vedic boat $ wherewith thy save both others and themselves. The gods themselves are gratified with that man who gratifieth the Brāhmanas. Indeed, a man may attain Heaven at the command of a Brāhmana. Thou wilt, O king, without doubt ascend to regions of everlasting bliss, in consequence of thy worship of the *Pitris* and the gods, and thy reverence for the Brāhmanas, even though thy body is filled with pleghmatic humours and withal so dull and inert ! He that desires virtue and Heaven should adore the Brāhmanas. One should feed Brāhmanas with care on occasions of *Srāddhas*, although those among them that are cursed or fallen should be excluded. They also should be carefully excluded that are either excessively fair or excessively black, that have diseased nails, that are lepers, that are deceitful, that are

---

* *Japa* is the silent recitation of paticular *Mantras*.

† *Mantras* are particular formulæ of worship. They are for the most part rythmic compositions, believed to be of great efficacy.

‡ The *Homa* is that sacrificial rite which consists of pouring libations of clarified butter into fire.

$ *Vedamayi naw*. Lit. a boat made of the Vedas.

born in bastardy of widows or of women having husbands alive; and they also that support themselves by the profession of arms. That *Srāddha* which is censurable, consumeth the performer thereof like fire consuming fuel. If they that are to be employed in *Srāddhas* happen to be dumb, blind, or deaf, care should be taken to employ them along with Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas. O Yudhishthira, listen now unto whom thou shouldst give! He that knoweth all the Vedas should give only to that able Brāhmana who is competent to rescue both the giver and himself, for he, indeed, is to be regarded as able who can rescue both the giver and himself. O son of Prithā, the sacred fires do not receive such gratification from libations of clarified butter, from offerings of flowers and of sandal and other perfumed pastes, as from the entertainment of guests. Therefore, do thou strive to entertain guests, O son of Pāndu! O king, they that give unto guests water to wash their feet, butter to rub over their (tired) legs, light during the hours of darkness, food, and shelter, have not to go before Yama! The removal (after worship) of the flowery offerings unto the gods, the removal of the remnants of a Brāhmana's feast, waiting (upon a Brāhmana) with perfumed pastes, and the shampooing of a Brāhmana's limbs, are, each of them, O foremost of kings, productive of greater merit than the gift of kine! A person, without doubt, rescueth himself by the gift of a *Kapilā* cow. Therefore, should one give away a *Kapilā* cow decked with ornaments unto Brāhmanas. O thou of the Bharata race, one should give unto a person of good lineage and conversant with the Vedas; unto a person that is poor; unto one leading a domestic mode of life but burdened with wife and children; unto one that daily adoreth the sacred fire; and unto one that hath done thee no service. Thou shouldst always give unto such persons but not to them that are in affluence. What merit is there, O thou foremost of the Bharata race, by giving unto one that is affluent? One cow must be given unto one Brāhmana. A single cow must not be given unto many. For if the cow so given away (unto many) be sold, the giver's family is lost for three generations. Such a gift

would not assuredly rescue the giver nor the Brāhmana that takes it. He who giveth eighty *Ratis* of pure gold, earneth the merit of giving away an hundred pieces of gold for ever. He that giveth away a strong bull capable also of drawing the plough, is certainly rescued from all difficulties and finally goeth to Heaven. He that giveth away land unto a learned Brāhmana, hath all his desires fulfilled. The tired traveller, with weakened limbs and feet besmeared with dust, asks for the name of him that may give him food. There are men who answer him by telling him the name. That wise man who informs these toil-worn ones of the name of the person who may give them food, is, without doubt, regarded as equal in merit unto the giver himself of food. Therefore, abstaining from other kinds of gift, give thou food. There is no merit (arising out of gifts) that is so great as that of giving food. The man that according to the measure of his might gives well-cooked and pure food unto the Brāhmanas, acquires, by that act of his, the companionship of *Prajāpati* (Brahmā). There is nothing superior to food. Therefore, food is regarded as the first and foremost of all things (to be given away). It hath been said that food itself is *Prajāpati*. And *Prajāpati* is regarded as the Year. And the Year is Sacrifice. And everything is established in Sacrifice, for it is from Sacrifice that all creatures, mobile and immobile, take their origin. For this reason, it hath been heard by us, is food the foremost of all things. They that give away lakes and large pieces of water, and tanks and wells, and shelter, and food, and they that have sweet words for all, have not to hear the admonitions of Yama. With him who gives rice, and wealth earned by his labor, unto a Brāhmana of good behaviour, the Earth is satisfied. And the she poureth upon him showers of wealth. The giver of food walketh first, after him the speaker of truth and he that giveth unto persons that do not solicit. But the three go to the same place.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Hearing all this, Yudhishthira, along with his younger brothers, impelled by curiosity, again asked the high-souled Mārkandeya, saying,—O great *Muni*, what is the remoteness of Yama's region from that

of men? What is its measurement? How also do men pass it over? And by what means? O, tell me all this!'

"Mārkandeya said,—'O king, O thou foremost of virtuous men, this question of thine appertains to a great mystery. It is sacred and much applauded by the *Rishis*. Appertaining as it also does to virtue, I will speak of it to thee! The distance of Yama's region from the abode of men is, O king, eighty-six thousand *Yojanas*! The way is over space, without water, and very terrible to behold! Nowhere on that road is the shade of a tree, nowhere any water, and nowhere any resting place in which the traveller, when fatigued, may rest for some moments. And men and women and all on earth that have life, are forcibly led along this way by the messengers of Yama, those creatures that obey the mandates of the grim king. And they, O king, that have given horses and other good conveyances unto Brāhmanas, proceed along this way on those animals and vehicles. And they that have given umbrellas proceed along this way with umbrellas warding off the sun's rays. And they that have given food, proceed without hunger, while they that have not given food proceed afflicted, with hunger. And they that have given robes proceed along this way attired in robes, while they that have given none, proceed naked. And they that have given gold proceed in happiness, themselves decked in ornaments. And they that have given land, proceed with every desire completely gratified. And they that have given grain proceed without being afflicted with any want. And they that have given houses, proceed happily on cars. And those men that have given drink proceed with cheerful hearts, unafflicted with thirst. And they that have given lights proceed happily, lighting the way before them. And they that have given kine, proceed along the way happily, freed from all their sins. And they that have fasted for a month, proceed on cars drawn by swans. And they have fasted for six nights, proceed on cars drawn by peacocks. And, O son of Pāndu, he that fasteth three nights upon only one meal without a second during this interval, goeth into a region free from disease and anxiety. And water hath this excellent property

that it produceth happiness in the region of Yama. And they that give water find for themselves a river there of the name of Pushpodakā. And the givers of water on the earth drink cool and ambrosial draughts from that stream. And they that are of evil deeds have puss ordained for them. Thus, O great king, that river serveth all purposes. Therefore, O king, adore thou duly these Brāhmanas (that are with thee)! Weak in limbs owing to the way he has walked, and besmeared with the dust of the high-road, the traveller enquireth for the name of him who giveth food, and cometh in hope to his house. Adore thou him with reverend attention, for he, indeed, is a guest, and he is a Brāhmana. The gods with Indra at their head follow him as he proceedeth. And if he is adored, the gods with Indra become gratified, and if he is not adored, the celestials with their chief become cheerless. Therefore, O thou foremost of kings, worship thou these Brāhmanas duly. I have thus spoken to thee upon an hundred subjects. What dost thou desire to hear from me again ?'

"Yudhishthira said.—'O master, conversant as thou art with virtue and morality, I desire to repeatedly listen to thee as thou speakest on sacred subjects appertaining to virtue and morals.'

"Mārkandeya said.—'O king, I will now speak on another sacred subject appertaining to eternal interests and capable of washing off all sins. Listen thou with rapt attention! O thou foremost of the Bharatas, merit equal to that of giving away a *Kapilā* cow in (the *tirtha* called) *Jeshtha-Pushkarā* arises from washing the feet of Brāhmanas. As long as the earth remains wet with water which a Brāhmana hath touched with his feet, so long do *Pitris* drink water off cups made of lotus-leaves. If the guest is welcomed (with enquiries about his welfare), the deities of fire become glad; and if he is offered a seat, it is the god of an hundred sacrifices, who is gratified. If his feet are washed, it is the *Pitris* who are delighted; and if he is fed, it is *Prajāpati* that is pleased. One should, with collected soul, give a cow when (during her throes) the feet and head of

her calf are visible. Before her delivery is complete, a cow with her calf in the air in course of falling from the uterus to the earth, is to be regarded as equal to the Earth herself. (He, therefore, that giveth away such a cow, reapeth the merit of giving away land). And he that giveth away such a cow, is adored in heaven for as many thousands of *Yugas* as there are bristles on the bodies of the animal and her young one together. And, O Bhārata, he that, having accepted a thing in gift, giveth it away immediately unto a person that is virtuous and honest, reapeth very great merit. Without doubt, he repeath the fruit of giving away the whole Earth to her utmost limits and with her oceans and seas and caves, her mountains and forests and woods. That Brāhmana who eateth in silence from off a plate, keeping his hands between his knees, succeedeth in rescuing others. And those Brāhmanas that abstain from drink and who are never spoken of by others as having any faults and who daily read the *Samhitās*, are capable of rescuing others. Libations of butter and edible offerings should all be presented to a Brāhmana who is learned in the Vedas. And as libations of clarified butter poured into fire never go in vain, so gifts to virtuous Brāhmanas learned in the Vedas can never go in vain. The Brāhmanas have anger for their weapon; they never fight with arms of iron and steel. Indeed, the Brāhmanas slay (their foes) with anger like Indra slaying the Asuras with his thunder-bolt.

This prelection appertaining to virtue and morality is now over. Hearing this, the *Munis* of the forest of *Naimisha* were filled with delight. And those ascetics were also freed from grief and fear and anger by listening to it. And they were also purged of all their sins in consequence of this. And, O king, those human beings that listen to it become freed from the obligation of rebirth.'

"Yudhishthira said.—'O thou of great wisdom, what purification is there by which a Brāhmana may always keep himself pure? I desire to hear of it from thee, O thou foremost of all virtuous men!'

"Mārkandeya answered,—'There are three kinds of purity

viz, purity in speech, purity in deed, and purity achieved by use of water. He that has recourse to these three different kinds of purity, attains, without doubt, to heaven. That Brāhmana who adoreth the goddess *Sandhyā** in the morning and the evening, and who recites meditatively the sacred goddess *Gāyatri*† who is the mother of the Vedas, sanctified by the latter, is freed from all his sins; and even if he accepts in gift the entire Earth with her oceans, he doth not, on that account, suffer the least unhappiness.‡ And those planets in the sky including the sun that may be inauspicious and hostile towards him, soon become auspicious and favorable towards him in consequence of these acts of his. While those stars that are auspicious and favorable, become more auspicious and more favorable in consequence of such conduct of his. And terrible Rākshasas subsisting on animal food, of gigantic and fierce mien, all become unable to prevail over a Brāhmana who practiseth these purifications.

---

* Lit. That portion of time which connects the night with day, and the day with night. Hence there are two *Sandhyās*, although sometimes the period connecting the forenoon with the afternoon is also called the middle *Sandhyā*. A rigid Brāhmana must say his prayers during these three times. These periods of time, however, are personified each into a goddess. The prayers said during morning, and evening, are said to be in adoration of the goddess *Sandhyā*.—*T.*

† The *Gāyatri* is a *mantra* of great sanctity. It is regarded as the mother of the Vedas, and their very essence. Its efficacy is superior to that of anything. No Brāhmana can repeat the *Gāyatri* in the presence and hearing of a Sudra. The goddess, (for this *mantra* has been personified) would then be profaned. So great is the force of early instruction that the present translator who is a Brāhmana feels some hesitation in publishing for miscellaneous gaze those holy words. As the earliest form of adoration, the *Gāyatri*, perhaps, is holier and purer in idea than any the present translator has come across. A literal translation of the *Gāyatri* is appended :—

"*Om*, the Earth, the Firmament, the Heaven : I meditate on the adorable effulgence of the God who created them and who guideth our intellect !"—*T.*

‡ It is not everybody who can accept a gift without sin. To accept a gift and yet not incur sin would require especial ability.—*T.*

The Brāhmanas are even like blazing fires. They incur no fault in consequence of teaching, of officiating at sacrifices, and of accepting gifts from others. Whether the Brāhmanas be cognisant of the Vedas or ignorant of them, whether they be pure or impure. they should never be insulted, for Brāhmanas are like fires. As the fire that blazeth up in the place set apart for the cremation of the dead is never regarded impure on that account so the Brāhmana, be he learned or ignorant, is always pure. He is a very god and superior god! Cities that are adorned with walls and gates and palaces one after another, lose their beauty if they are bereft of Brāhmanas. That, indeed, O king, is a city where Brāhmanas accomplished in the Vedas, duly observing the duties of their order, and possessed of learning and ascetic merit, reside. O son of Prithā, that spot be it a wood or pasture land, where learned Brāhmanas reside, hath been called a city. And that place, O king, becometh a *thirtha* also. By approaching a king that offereth protection as also a Brāhmana possessed of ascetic merit, and by offering worship unto both, a man may purge off his sins immediately. The learned have said that ablutions in the sacred *thirthas*, recitation of the names of holy ones, and converse with the good and virtuous, are all acts worthy of applause. They that are virtuous and honest always regard themselves as sanctified by the holy companionship of persons like themselves and by the water of pure and sacred converse. The carrying of three staves,* the vow of silence, matted hair on head, the shaving of the crown, covering one's person with barks and deer-skins, the practice of vows, ablutions, the worship of fire, abode in the woods, emaciating the body,—all these are useless if the heart be not pure. The indulgence of the six senses is easy, if purity be not sought in the objects of enjoyment. Abstinence, however, which of itself is difficult, is scarcely easy without purity of

---

* Supposed to be symbolical of one's control on thoughts, words, and deeds. Three staves tied together are to this day carried by a particular order of mendicants.—*T.*

the objects of enjoyment. O king of kings, among the six senses, the mind alone that is easily moved is the most dangerous! Those high-souled persons that do not commit sins in word, deed, heart and soul, are said to undergo ascetic austerities, and not they that suffer their bodies to be wasted by fasts and penances. He that hath no feeling of kindness for relatives cannot be free from sin, even if his body be pure. That hard-heartedness of his is the enemy of his asceticism. Asceticism, again, is not mere abstinence from the pleasures of the world. He that is always pure and decked with virtues, he that practises kindness all his life, is a *Muni*, even though he may lead a domestic life. Such a man is purged of all his sins. Fasts and other penances cannot destroy sins however much they may weaken and dry up the body that is made up of flesh and blood. The man whose heart is without holiness, suffereth torture only by undergoing penances in ignorance of their meaning. He is never freed from sin by such acts. The fire he worshippeth doth not consume his sins. It is in consequence of holiness and virtue alone that men attain to regions of blessedness and fasts and vows become efficacious. Subsistence on fruits and roots, the vow of silence, living upon air, the shaving of the crown, abandonment of a fixed home, the wearing of matted locks on the head, lying under the canopy of heaven, daily fasts, the worship of fire, immersion in water, and lying on the bare ground,—these alone cannot produce such a result. They only that are possessed of holiness succeed, by knowledge and deeds, to conquer disease, decrepitude and death, and acquire a high status. As seeds that have been scorched by fire do not sprout forth, so the pains that have been burnt by knowledge cannot affect the soul. This inert body, that is only like a block of wood when destitute of soul, is, without doubt, short-lived like froth in the ocean. He that obtaineth a view of his soul, the soul that resideth in every body, by help of one or half a rythmic line (of the Vedas) hath no more need for anything. Some obtaining a knowledge of identity with the Supreme Soul from but two letters (of the Vedas) and some from hundreds and thousands of rythmic

lines, acquire salvation, for the knowledge of one's identity with the Supreme Soul is the sure indication of salvation. The men of old, distinguished for their knowledge, have said that neither this world nor that hereafter nor bliss can be his who is disturbed by doubts. A belief of one's identity with the Supreme Soul is the indication of salvation. He that knoweth the true meaning of the Vedas, understandeth their true use. Such a man is affrighted at the Vedic ritual like a man at sight of a forest conflagration. Giving up dry disputation, have recourse to *çruti* and *smriti*, and seek thou, with the aid of thy reason, the knowledge of the undecaying One that is without a second. One's search (after this knowlede) becometh futile from defect of means. Therefore, should one carefully strive to obtain that knowledge by aid of the Vedas. The Vedas are the Supreme Soul; they are His body; they are the Truth. The soul that is bounded by the animal organism is incompetent to know Him in whom all the Vedas merge. That Supreme Soul, however, is capable of being known by the pure intellect. The existence of the gods as stated in the Vedas, the efficacy of acts, and the capacity for action of beings furnished with bodies, are noticeable in every *Yuga*. Independence of these and annihilation are to be sought from purity of the senses. Therefore, the suspension of the functions of the senses is the true fasting. One may attain to heaven by asceticism; one may obtain objects of enjoyment by the practice of charity and may have his sins purged off by ablutions in *thirthas*. But complete emancipation cannot be had except by Knowledge.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Thus addressed, O great king, by the *Rishi*, Yudhishthira of great fame then said,—'O holy one, I desire to listen to the rules about that charity which is meritorious.'

" Mārkandeya said.—'O great king, O Yudhishthira, the rules about charity which thou wishest to hear from me are always highly regarded by me. Listen now to the mysteries of charity as expounded in the *çruti* and the *smritis*! A man that performs a *çrāddha* in the conjunction called *Gaja-cchāyā* at a place that is fanned by the leaves of the *Açwattha* tree, enjoys

the fruits thereof, O Yudhishthira, for an hundred thousand *kalpas*! O king, he that giveth food to a person who is dying of hunger, and he who, founding a home of charity, establisheth there a person to look after all comers, are both crowned with the merits of all the sacrifices. He that giveth away a horse at a *tirtha* where the current of the river runneth in a direction opposite to its general course, reapeth merit that is inexhaustible. The guest that comes to one's house for food is none other than Indra himself. If he is entertained with food, Indra himself conferreth on the host merit that is inexhaustible. As men cross seas by vessels, so are the givers mentioned above saved from all their sins. So what is given unto Brāhmanas, produceth, like gift of curds, inexhaustible merits. A gift on particular lunations produceth merit that is twice as much as a gift on other days. That in a particular season produceth merit ten times greater than in other seasons. That in a particular year produceth merit an hundred times greater than in other years. And lastly, a gift on the last day of the last month of the year produceth merit that is inexhaustible. A gift also that is made while the Sun is on the solstitial points, one again that is made on the last days of the Sun's path through Libra, Aries, Gemini, Virgo, and Pisces, a gift again during eclipses of the Moon and the Sun, produce merit that is inexhaustible. The learned have also said that gifts made during the seasons produce merit that is ten times,—those made during the change of seasons, an hunred times,—and those made during the days when *Rāhu* is visible, a thousand times,—greater than what is produced by gifts at other times; while a gift made on the last day of the Sun's course through Libra and Aries produces merit that knows no diminution. O king, no one can enjoy landed possessions unless he giveth away land, and no one can go on cars and vehicles unless he giveth away these. Indeed, a person on rebirth obtaineth the fruition of whatever objects he hath in view at the time of making a gift to a Brāhmana. Gold hath sprung from Fire: the Earth from Vishnu; and the cows from the Sun. He, therefore, that giveth away gold, land, and kine, attaineth all the

regions of Agni, Vishnu, and the Sun. There is nothing so eternal as a gift. Where, therefore, in the three worlds is anything that is more auspicious? It is for this, O king, that they who have great intelligence say that there is nothing higher and greater in the three worlds than gift!"

Thus ends the two hundredth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCI.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having, O great king, heard from the illustrious Mārkandeya the history of the attainment of heaven by the royal sage Indradyumna, Yudhishthira, that bull of the Bharata race, once more asked that sinless *Muni* endued with great ascetic merit and long life, saying,—'Thou knowest, O virtuous one, the entire host of the gods, the *Dānavas*, and the *Rākshasas!* Thou art acquainted also with various royal genealogies, and many eternal dynasties of *Rishis!* O best of Brāhmanas, there is nothing in this world that thou dost not know! Thou knowest also, O *Muni*, many delightful stories about men, Snakes, and *Rākshasas*; about gods, *Gandharvas*, and *Yakshas*; and about *Kinnaras* and *Apsaras!* I desire now to hear from thee, O best of Brāhmanas, as to why Kuvalāçwa—that unvanquished king of Ikshāku's race—changed his name, assuming another, *viz.*, *Dhundhumāra!* O thou best of Bhrigu's line, I desire to know in detail why the name of Kuvalāçwa of great intelligence underwent such a change!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed by Yudhishthira, the great *Muni* Mārkandeya, O Bhārata, then began the history of Dhundhumara!"

Mārkandeya said.—'O royal Yudhishthira, listen to me, I will tell thee all! This story of Dhundhumāra is a moral one. Listen to it, then! Listen now, O king, to the story of how the royal Kuvalāçwa of Ikshāku's race came to be known as Dhundhumāra! O son, O Bhārata, there was a celebrated *Rishi* of the name of Utanka, And, O thou of the Kuru race,

Utanka had his asylum in a delightful wilderness. And, O great king, the *Rishi* Utanka underwent ascetic austerities of the severest kind. And the lord Utanka underwent those penances for numberless years with the object of obtaining the favors of Vishnu. And gratified with his penances, that illustrious Lord presented himself before Utanka. And beholding the Deity, the *Rishi* in all humility began to gratify him with many hymns. And Utanka said,—O thou of great effulgence, all creatures with the gods, *Asuras*, and human beings, all things that are mobile or immobile, even *Brahmā* himself, the Vedas, and all things that are capable of being known, have, O Lord, been created by thee! The firmament is thy head, O God, and the sun and the moon are thy eyes! And, O unfading One, the winds are thy breath, and fire is thy energy! The directions of the horizon constitute thy arms, and the great ocean thy stomach! And, O God, the hills and mountains constitute thy thighs, and the sky thy hips, O slayer of Madhu! The Earth constitutes thy feet, and the plants, the bristles on thy body. And, O Lord, Indra and Shoma and Agni and Varuna, indeed, all the gods, the *Asuras*, and the great Snakes, all wait upon thee with humility, adoring thee with various hymns! O Lord of the Universe, all created things are pervaded by thee! The great *Rishis* of high energy and ever plunged in ascetic meditation, always adore thee! When thou art gratified, the Universe is in peace; and when thou art angry, terror pervadeth every soul. Thou art, O Lord, the great dispeller of all terrors, and thou art the One Supreme male Being! Thou art the cause of happiness of both gods and human beings! And, O Lord, by three steps of thine thou hadst covered the three worlds! And it was by thee that the *Asuras* in the height of their power were destroyed! It is owing to thy prowess, O God, that the celestials obtained peace and happiness! And, O thou of great effulgence, it was thy anger that humbled great *Daitya* chiefs. Thou art the Creator and the Destroyer of all creatures in the world! It is by adoring thee that the gods have obtained happiness!—It was thus, O Yudhishthira, that the high-souled Utanka praised the

Lord of the senses. And Vishnu, therefore, said unto Utanka,—I am gratified with thee! Ask thou the boon that thou desirest!—And Utanka said,—This, indeed, hath been a great boon to me, in that I have been able to behold Hari, that eternal Being, that divine Creator, that Lord of the Universe!—Thus addressed, Vishnu said,—I am gratified with this absence of all desire on thy part and with thy devotion, O thou best of men! But, O Brāhmana, O regenerate one, thou shouldst of a certainty accept some boon from me!—Thus requested by Hari to accept a boon, Utanka then, O thou best of the Bharatas, with joined hands begged a boon, saying,—O illustrious one, O thou of eyes like lotus-leaves, if thou hast been gratified with me, then let my heart always rest on Virtue, Tuth, and self-content! And, O Lord, let my heart always turn to thee in devotion!—And hearing these words of Utanka, the holy one said,—O regenerate one, all this shall happen to thee through my grace! And there will also appear in thee, a *yoga* power endued with which thou shalt achieve a great thing for the dwellers of Heaven as also for the triple world. Even now a great *Asura* of the name of Dhundhu is undergoing ascetic penances of fierce austerity with the object of destroying the triple world. Hear now as to who will slay that *Asura*. O son, there will appear a king of invincible energy and great prowess. And he will be born in the race of Ikshāku and will be known by the name of Vrihadasçwa. And Vrihadaçwa will have a son of the name of Kuvalāçwa endued with great holiness and self-control and celebrity. And that best of kings will be furnished with *yoga* power springing from me. And urged and commanded by thee, O regenerate *Rishi*, that king will be the slayer of the *Asura* Dhundhu.—And having said these words unto that Brāhmana, Vishnu disappeared there and then.'"

Thus ends the hundred and first Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'O king, after the death of Ikshāku, a highly virtuous king of the name of *Saçāda*, ascending on the throne of Ayodhyā ruled this Earth. And from *Saçāda* was descended Kukutstha of great energy. And Kukutstha had a son of name Anenas. And Anenas had a son of name Prithu. And Prithu had a son of name Viçwagaçwa. And from Viçwagaçwa sprang Adri. And from Adri sprang Yuvanāçwa and from Yuvanāçwa sprang Srāvastha. And it was by this Srāvastha that the city called *Srāvasthi* was built. And from Srāvastha was descended Vrihadaçwa. And from Vrihadaçwa sprang Kuvalāçwa. And Kuvalāçwa had twentyone thousand sons. And all these sons were fierce and powerful and skilled in learning. And Kuvalāçwa excelled his father in every quality. And when the time came, his father Vrihadaçwa installed him—the brave and highly virtuous Kuvalaçwa—on the throne. And having thus made over the royal dignity to his son, that slayer of foes—king Vrihadaçwa of great intelligence—retired into the woods for asceticism.'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'O king, when the royal sage Vrihadaçwa was about to retire into the woods, that best of Brāhmanas—Utanka—heard of it. And Utanka who was possessed of great energy and immeasurable soul, approached that foremost of all wielders of weapons and best of men. And approaching him, the *Rishi* began to persuade him to give up asceticism. And Utanka said,—O king, to protect (the people) is thy duty. It behoveth thee to do that duty of thine. Let us be freed from all anxiety through thy grace! Possessed as thou art of a great soul, protected by thee, the Earth will be freed from all dangers. Therefore, it behoveth thee not to retire into the woods! Great merit attaches to the act of protecting people in this world. Such merit can never be acquired in the woods. Let not thy heart, therefore, turn to this course. The merit, O great king, that was acquired in days of old by great royal sages by protecting

their subjects was so great that nothing equal to it could be seen! The king should always protect his subjects. It behoveth thee, therefore, to protect thy people. O lord of Earth, I cannot (at present) perform my ascetic devotions peacefully! Close to my asylum there is a sea of sands known by the name of *Ujjālaka*. And it occupies a level country and is without any water. And it extends many *yojanas* in length and breadth. And in that desert dwells a chief of the *Dānavas* called Dhundhu by name. And Dhundhu is the son of Madhu and Kaitabha, and is fierce and terrible and possessed of great prowess. And endued with immeasurable energy, that *Dānava*, O king, dwelleth under the ground. And, O king, it behoveth thee to retire into the woods, having first slain that *Asura*. And that *Asura* is now lying still in the observance of an ascetic penance of great austerity. And, O king, the object he hath in view is the destruction of the celestials as also of the three worlds. And, O king, having obtained a boon from the Grandsire of all the creatures, that *Asura* hath become incapable of being slain by the gods and *Daityas* and *Rākshasas* and *Gandharvas*. Slay thou him, O king, and blessed be thou, and let not thy heart turn to any other course! By slaying him thou wilt, without doubt, achieve a great thing. And thou wilt also obtain eternal and undying fame. And, O king, when at the end of every year that wicked *Asura* lying covered with sands wakes up and begins to breathe, then the whole Earth with her mountains, forests, and woods begins to tremble. And his breath raiseth up clouds of sands, and shroudeth the very sun. And for seven days continually the Earth trembles all over, and sparks and flames of fire mixed with smoke spread far around. And for all this, O king, I cannot rest in peace in my asylum. Slay thou him, O king, for the good of the world. Indeed, when that *Asura* is slain, the triple world will be in peace and happiness. That thou art competent, O king, to slay that *Asura* I fully believe. Thy energy will be enhanced by Vishnu with the addition of his own. In days of old, O king, Vishnu gave this boon that the king who should slay this fierce and great *Asura* would be pervaded by the invincible

energy of Vishnu himself. Bearing that invincible *Vaishnava* energy in thyself, slay thou, O great king, that *Daitya* of fierce prowess! Possessed as Dhundhu is of mighty energy, no one, O king, that is endued with small energy himself will be capable of consuming him even if he were to strive for an hundred years.—'"

Thus ends the two hundred and second Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCIII.

(*Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.*)

"Mārkandeya said,—'Thus addressed by Utanka, that unvānquished royal sage, with joined hands, O thou foremost of the Kuru race, replied unto Utanka, saying,—This visit of thine, O Brāhmana, will not be in vain! This my son, O holy one, known by the name of Kuvalāçwa is endued with steadiness and activity. In prowess also he is unequalled on Earth. Without doubt, he will accomplish all this that is agreeable to thee, aided by all his brave sons endued with arms like unto iron maces! Give me leave to retire, O Brāhmana, for I have now given up my weapons!—Thus addressed by the king, that *Muni* of immeasurable energy replied unto him, saying,—So be it.—And the royal sage Vrihadaçwa then, having commanded his son to obey the behest of the high-souled Utanka, saying,—Let it be done by thee,—himself retired into an excellent forest.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'O holy one, O thou possessed of the wealth of asceticism, who was this *Daitya* of great energy? Whose son and whose grandson was he? I desire to know all this! O thou possessed of the wealth of asceticism, I had never heard of this mighty *Daitya* before! I desire to know all this truly, O holy one, and with all particulars in detail, O thou of great wisdom and ascetic wealth!'

"Mārkandeya said.—'O monarch, know everything as it happened, O ruler of men, as I narrate the particulars truly, O thou of great wisdom! When the world became one broad expanse of water and creatures mobile and immobile were

destroyed, when O bull of the Bharata race, the entire creation came to its end, He who is the Source and Creator of the Universe, *viz.*, the Eternal and unfading Vishnu, He who is called by *Munis* crowned with ascetic success as the Supreme Lord of the Universe, that Being of great holiness, then lay in *Yoga* sleep on the wide hood of the Snake Shesha of immeasurable energy. And the Creator of the Universe, that highly-blessed and holy Hari knowing no deterioration, lay on the hood of that Snake, encircling the whole Earth. And as the Deity lay asleep on that bed, a lotus, endued with great beauty and effulgence equal unto that of the Sun, sprang from his navel. And from that lotus possessed of effulgence like unto the Sun's, sprang the Grandsire Brahmā, that Lord of the worlds, who is the four Vedas, who hath four forms and four faces, who is invincible in consequence of his own energy, and who is endued with mighty strength and great prowess. And as the Lord Hari of wondrous frame, possessed of great lustre and decked with a crown and the *Kaustubha* gem and attired in purple silk, lay stretched for many a *Yojana* on that excellent bed furnished by by the hood of the Snake, itself extending far and wide, blazing, O king, in his beauty and the lustre of his own body like a thousand Suns concentrated in one mass, He was beheld, sometime after, by two *Dānavas* of great prowess named Madhu and Kaitabha. And beholding Hari (in that posture) and the Grandsire with eyes like lotus leaves seated on that lotus, both Madhu and Kaitabha wonderd much. And they began to terrify and alarm Brahmā of immeasurable prowess. And the illustrious Brahmā, alarmed by their continued exertions, trembled on his seat. And at his trembling, the stalk of the lotus on which he was seated, began to tremble. And when the lotus-stalk trembled, Keçava awoke. And awaking from his slumbers, Govinda beheld those *Dānavas* of mighty energy. And beholding them, the Deity said unto them,—Welcome, ye mighty ones! I am gratified with ye! Therefore, I will grant ye excellent boons!—And thereupon both those proud and mighty *Dānavas*, O king, laughingly replied unto Hrishikeça, saying,—Ask boons of us, O Divine

one! O thou that art the Supreme Deity, we are disposed to grant thee a boon! Indeed, we will grant thee a boon! Therefore, ask thou of us anything that cometh to thy mind! —Thus addressed by them, the Holy one spoke,—Ye brave ones, I will accept a boon from ye! There *is* a boon that I desire! Both of ye are possessed of mighty energy! There is no male person like unto any of ye! O ye of unbaffled prowess, submit ye to be slain by me! Even this is what I desire to accomplish for the good of the world!—At these words of the Deity, both Madhu and Kaitabha said,—We have never before spoken an untruth; no, not even in jest; what shall we say of other occasions? O thou foremost of male Beings, know that we have ever been firm in truth and morality! In strength, in form, in beauty, in virtue, in asceticism, in charity, in behaviour, in goodness, in self-control, there is no one equal unto any of us! A great danger, O Keçava, hath approached us. Accomplish thou, therefore, what thou hast said. No one can prevail over Time! But, O Lord, there is one thing that we desire to be done by thee! O thou best and foremost of all Deities, thou must slay us at a spot that is absolutely uncovered! And, O thou of excellent eyes, we also desire to become thy sons! This is the boon that we desire, know then, O chief of the gods! Let not that, O Deity, be false which thou hadst at first promised to us!—The Holy one then replied unto them saying,—Yes! I will do as ye desire! Everything will be as ye wish!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Then Govinda began to reflect, but uncovered space found he none. And when he could not discover any spot that was uncovered, on Earth or in the sky, that foremost Deity then beheld his thighs to be absolutely uncovered. And there, O king, the illustrious Deity cut off the heads of Madhu and Kaitabha with his keen-edged discus!'"

Thus ends the two hundred and third Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCIV.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya said.—'The illustrious Dhundhu, O king, was the son of Madhu and Kaitabha. And possessed of great energy and prowess, he underwent ascetic penances of great austerity. And he had stood erect on one leg, and had reduced his body to a mass of only veins and arteries. And Brahmā, gratified with him, gave him a boon. And the boon he had asked of the Lord *Prajāpati* was in these words,—Let no one among the gods, the *Dānavas*, the *Yakshas*, the Snakes, the *Gandharvas*, and the *Rākshas*, be capable of slaying me! Even this is the boon that I ask of thee!—And the Grandsire replied unto him, saying,—Let it be as thou wishest. Go thy way!—And thus addressed by the Grandsire, the *Dānava* placed the feet of the Deity on his head. And having thus touched with reverence the Deity's feet, he went away. And possessed of mighty energy and prowess, Dhundhu, having obtained that boon, hastily approached Vishnu, remembering the death of his fathers at the hands of that Deity. And the wrathful Dhundhu, having vanquished the gods with the *Gandharvas*, began to distress all the celestials with Vishnu at their head. At last, O bull of the Bharata race, that wicked-souled *Asura*, arriving at a sea of sands known by the name of Ujjālaka, began to distress, to the utmost of his might, the asylum of Utanka. And endued with fierce energy, Dhundhu the son of Madhu and Kaitabha, lay in his subterranean cave underneath the sands, in the observance of fierce ascetic austerities with the object of destroying the triple world. And while the *Asura* lay breathing near the asylum of Utanka—that *Rishi* possessed of the splendour of fire,—king Kuvalāçwa with his troops, accompanied by the Brāhmana Utanka as also by all his sons, set out for that region, O bull of the Bharata race! And after that grinder of foes—the royal Kuvalāçwa—had set out, accompanied by his twentyone thousand sons all of whom were exceedingly powerful, the illustrious Lord Vishnu filled

him with his own energy at the command of Utanka and impelled by the desire of benefiting the triple world. And while that invincible hero was proceeding on his way, a loud voice was heard in the sky repeating the words—This fortunate and unslayable one will become the destroyer of Dhundhu today.—And the gods began to shower upon him celestial flowers. And the celestial kettle-drums began to sound their music although none played upon them. And during the march of that wise one, cool breezes began to blow. And the chief of the celestials poured gentle showers wetting the dust on the roads. And, O Yudhishthira, the cars of the celestials could be seen high over the spot where the mighty *Asura* Dhundhu was. And the gods and *Gandharvas* and great *Rishis*, urged by curiosity, came there to behold the encounter between Dhundhu and Kuvalāçwa. And, O thou of the Kuru race, filled by Nārāyana with his own energy, king Kuvalāçwa, aided by his sons, soon surrounded that sea of sands. And the king ordered that wilderness to be excavated. And after the king's sons had excavated that sea of sands for seven days it was then that they could see the mighty Dhundhu. And, O bull of the Bharata race, the huge body of that *Asura* lay within those sands, effulgent in its own energy like the Sun himself. And Dhundhu, O king, was lying, covering the western region of the desert. And endued with the blazing splendour of the fire that appeareth at the end of the *Yuga*, the *Asura*, O tiger among kings, was then lying asleep. And surrounded on all sides by the sons of Kuvalāçwa, the *Dānava* was assaulted with sharp-pointed shafts and maces and heavy and short clubs and axes and clubs with iron spikes and darts and bright and keen-edged swords. And thus assaulted, the mighty *Dānava* rose from his recumbent posture in wrath. And enraged, the *Asura* began to swallow those various weapons that were hurled at him. And he vomited from his mouth fiery flames like unto those of the fire called *Samvarta* that appeareth at the end of the *Yuga*. And by those flames of his, the *Asura* consumed all the sons of the king. And, O tiger among men, like the Lord Kapila of old consuming the sons of king Sagara, the infuriate *Asura*

overwhelming the triple world with the flames vomited from his mouth, achieved that wonderful feat in a moment. And, O thou best of the Bharatas, when all those sons of king Kuvalāçwa were consumed by the fire emitted by the *Asura* in wrath, the monarch, possessed as he was of mighty energy, then approached the *Dānava* who was like unto a second Kumbhakarna of mighty energy come to the encounter after waking from his slumbers. And from the body of the king, O monarch, then began to flow a mighty and copious stream of water. And that stream soon extinguished, O king, the fiery flames emitted by the *Asura*. And, O great king, the royal Kuvalāçwa, filled with *Yoga* force, having extinguished those flames by the water that issued from his body, then consumed that *Daitya* of wicked prowess with the celebrated weapon called *Brahma* for relieving the triple world of its fears. And the royal sage Kuvalāçwa, having consumed that great *Asura* —that foe of the celestials and slayer of all enemies—by means of that weapon, became like unto a second chief of the triple world. And the high-souled king Kuvalāçwa, having slain the *Asura* Dhundhu, became from that day known by the name of *Dhundhumāra*. And from that time he came to be regarded as invincible in battle. And the gods and the great *Rishis* who had come to witness that encounter were so far gratified with him that they addressed him, saying,—Ask thou a boon of us!—And thus solicited by the gods, the king bowed to them. And filled with joy, the king said unto them, with joined hands, these words:—Let me be always able to give wealth unto superior Brāhmanas! Let me be invincible as regards all foes! Let there be friendship between myself and Vishnu! Let me have no ill-feeling towards any creature! Let my heart always turn to virtue! And let me (finally) dwell in heaven for ever!—And the gods and the *Rishis* and Utanka, hearing this, were exceedingly gratified and all of them said,—Let it be as thou wishest!—And, O king, having also blessed him with many other speeches, the gods and the great *Rishis* then went away to their respective abodes. And, O Yudhishthira, after the slaughter of all his sons, king Kuvalāçwa had still three sons left. And, O thou

of the Bharata race, they were called Dridâçwa, and Kapilâçwa, and Chandrâçwa. And it is from them, O king, that the illustrious line of kings belonging to Ikshâku's race, all possessed of immeasurable prowess, hath sprung.

" 'It was thus, O best of kings, that that great *Daitya* of the name Dhundhu, the son of Madhu and Kaitabha, was slain by Kuvalâçwa. And it was for this also that that king came to be called by the name of *Dhundhumâra.** And, indeed, the name he assumed was no empty one but was literally true.

" 'I have now told thee all that thou hadst asked me, *viz.*, all about that person in consequence of whose act the story of Dhundhu's death hath become famous. He that listeneth to this holy history connected with the glory of Vishnu, becometh virtuous and obtaineth children. By listening to this story on particular lunations, one becometh blessed with long life and great good fortune. And freed from every anxiety one ceaseth to have any fear of disease.' '

Thus ends the two hundred and fourth Section in the Mârkandeya-Samâsyâ of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCV.

(*Mârkandeya-Samâsyâ Parva continued.*)

Vaiçampâyana said.—" O thou foremost of the Bharata race, king Yudhishthira then asked the illustrious Mârkandeya a difficult question about morality, saying,—'I desire to hear, O holy one, about the high and excellent virtue of women! I desire to hear thee, O Brâhmana, discourse about the subtile truths of morality. O regenerate *Rishi*, O best of men, the Sun, the Moon, the Wind, the Earth, the Fire, the father the mother, the preceptor,—these and other objects ordained by the the gods, O holy one of Bhrigu's line, appear to us as Deities embodied! These all that are reverend ones are worthy of our best regard. So also is the woman who adoreth one lord! The worship that chaste wives offer unto their

---

* The slayer of Dhundhu.

husbands appeareth to me to be fraught with great difficulty! O adorable one, it behoveth thee to discourse to us of the high and excellent virtue of chaste wives—of wives, who restraining all their senses and keeping their hearts under complete control, regard their husbands as veritable gods! O holy and adorable one, all this appears to me to be exceedingly difficult of accomplishment. O regenerate one, the worship that sons offer to their mothers and fathers, and that wives offer to their husbands, both seem to me to be highly difficult. I do not behold anything that is more difficult than the severe virtue of chaste women. O Brāhmana, the duties that women of good behaviour discharge with care, and the conduct that is pursued by good sons towards their fathers and mothers appear to me to be most difficult of performance! Those women that are each devoted to but one lord, they that always speak the truth, they that undergo a period of gestation for full ten months,—there is nothing, O Brāhmana, that is more difficult than what is done by these! O worshipful one, women bring forth their offspring, with great hazard to themselves and great pain, and rear their children, O bull among Brāhmanas, with great affection! Those persons also who, being always engaged in acts of cruelty and thereby incurring general hatred, succeed yet in doing their duties, accomplish what, in my opinion, is exceedingly difficult. O regenerate one, tell me the truths of the duties of the Kshatriya order. It is difficult, O twice-born one, for those high-souled ones to acquire virtue who by the duties of their order are obliged to do what is cruel. O holy one, thou art capable of answering all questions. I desire to hear thee discourse on all this! O thou foremost of Bhrigu's race, I desire to listen to all this, waiting respectfully on thee, O thou of excellent vows!'

"Mārkandeya said.—O thou foremost of the Bharata race, I will discourse to thee on all this truly, however difficult of answer thy question may be. Listen to me, therefore, as I speak unto thee! Some regard the mother as superior, and some the father. The mother, however, that bringeth forth and reareth up offspring doth what is more difficult. Fathers

also, by ascetic penances, by worship of the gods, by adorations addressed to them, by bearing cold and heat, by incantations and other means, desire to have children. And having by these painful expedients obtained children that are so difficult of acquisition, they then, O hero, are always anxious about the future of their sons. And, O Bhārata, both the mother and the father desire to see in their sons fame and achievements and prosperity and offspring and virtue. That son is virtuous who realises these hopes of his parents. And, O great king, that son with whom the father and the mother are gratified, achieveth eternal fame and eternal virtue both here and hereafter! As regards women again, neither sacrifices nor *çraddhas*, nor fasts, are of any efficacy. By serving their husbands only they can win heaven. O king, O Yudhishthira, remembering this alone, listen thou with attention to the fixed duties of chaste women.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and fifth Section in the Mārkandeya Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCVI.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'There was, O Bhārata, a virtuous ascetic of the name of Kauçika. And endued with wealth of asceticism and devoted to the study of the Vedas, he was a very superior Brāhmana. And that best of Brāhmanas had studied all the Vedas with the *Angas* and the *Upanishads*. And one day he was reciting the Vedas at the foot a tree. And at that time there sat on the top of that tree a female crane. And that she-crane happened at that time to befoul the Brāhmana's body. And beholding that crane, the Brāhmana became very angry and thought of doing her an injury. And as the Brāhmana cast his angry glances upon the crane and thought also of doing her an injury, she fell down on the ground. And beholding the crane thus fallen from the tree and insensible in death, the Brāhmana was much moved by pity. And the regenerate one began.

to lament the dead crane, saying,—Alas, I have done a bad deed, urged by anger and malice !—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Having repeated these words many times, that learned Brāhmana entered a village for procuring alms. And, O bull of the Bharata race, in course of his eleemosynary round among the houses of persons of good lineage, the Brāhmana entered one such house that he knew from before. And as he entered the house, he said,—*Give.* And he was answered by a female with the word,—*Stay.* And while the housewife was engaged, O king, in cleaning the vessel from which alms are given, her husband, O thou best of the Bharatas, suddenly entered the house, very much afflicted with hunger. The chaste housewife beheld her husband, and disregarding the Brāhmana, gave her lord water to wash his feet and face and also a seat. And after that the black-eyed lady, placing before her lord savoury food and drink, humbly stood beside him, desirous of attending to all his wants. And, O Yudhishthira, that obedient wife used every day to eat the remnants of her husband's plate. And always conducting herself in obedience to the wishes of her lord, that lady ever regarded her husband as a god. And in thought, word, and deed, that lady never regarded her husband otherwise. And all her heart's affections inclined towards her lord, and accordingly she was always busied in serving her lord. Of virtuous and holy behaviour and skilful in all domestic duties and attentive to all her relatives, she always did what was agreeable and beneficial to her husband. And she also, with rapt senses, attended to the worship of the gods and the wants of guests and servants and her mother-in-law and father-in-law.

"'And while that lady of handsome eyes was still engaged in waiting upon her lord, she beheld that Brāhmana waiting for alms. And beholding him, she remembered that she had asked him to wait. And remembering all this, she felt abashed. And then that chaste woman possessed of great fame, took something for alms and went out, O thou foremost of the Bharatas, for giving it unto that Brāhmana. And when she came before him, the Brāhmana said,—O best of women,

O blessed one, I am surprised at thy conduct! Having requested me to wait, saying,—*Stay*, thou didst not dismiss me!—'

"Mārkandeya cotinued.—O lord of men, beholding that Brāhmana filled with wrath and blazing with his energy, that chaste woman began to conciliate him and said,—O learned one, it behoveth thee to forgive me! My husband is my Supreme God. He came hungry and tired and was being served and waited upon by me!—Hearing this, the Brāhmana said,—With thee Brāhmanas are not worthy of superior regard! Exaltest thou thy husband above them? Leading a domestic life, dost thou disregard Brāhmanas? Indra himself boweth down unto them, what shall I say of men on Earth! Proud woman, dost thou not know it, hast thou never heard it, that the Brāhmanas are like fire and may consume the entire Earth?—At these words of that Brāhmana, the woman answered,—I am no she-crane, O regenerate *Rishi!* O thou that art endued with wealth of asceticism, cast off this anger of thine! Enraged as thou art, what canst thou do to me with these angry glances of thine? I do not disregard Brāhmanas. Endued with great energy of soul, they are like unto the gods themselves. But, O sinless one, this fault of mine it behoveth thee to forgive! I know the energy and high dignity of Brāhmanas that are possessed of wisdom. The waters of the ocean have been made brackish and undrinkable by the wrath of the Brāhmanas. I know also the energy of *Munis* of souls under complete control and endued with blazing ascetic merit. The fire of their wrath to this day hath not been extinguished in the forest of Dandaka. It was for his having disregarded the Brāhmanas that the great *Asura*—the wicked and evil-minded Vātāpi was digested when he came in contact with Agastya. It hath been heard by us that the powers and merits of high-souled Brāhmanas are great. But, O Brāhmana, as regenerate ones of high-souls are great in wrath, so are they equally great in forgiveness! Therefore, O sinless one, it behoveth thee to forgive me in the matter of this my offence! O Brāhmana, my heart inclineth to that merit which springeth from the

service of my husband, for I regard my husband as the highest among all the gods! O best of Brāhmanas, I practice that virtue which consists in serving my husband whom I regard as the highest Deity. Behold, O regenerate one, the merit that attaches to the service of one's husband! I know that thou hast burnt a she-crane with thy wrath! But, O best of regenerate ones, the anger that a person cherishes is the greatest of foes which that person hath! The gods know him for a Brāhmana who hath cast off anger and passion. The gods know him for a Brāhmana who always speaketh the truth here, who always gratifieth his preceptor, and who though injured himself never returneth the injury. The gods know him for a Brāhmana who hath his senses under control, who is virtuous and pure and devoted to the study of the Vedas, and who hath mastery over anger and lust. The gods know him for a Brāhmana who, cognisant of morals and endued with mental energy, is catholic in religion and looketh upon all as equal unto himself. The gods know him for a Brāhmana who studies himself and teaches others, who performs sacrifices himself and officiates at the sacrifices of others, and who gives away to the best of his means. The gods know that bull among the regenerate ones for a Brāhmana who, endued with liberality of soul, practiseth the *Brahmacharya* vow and is devoted to study; in fact, who is vigilantly devoted to the study of the Vedas. Whatever conduceth to the happiness of the Brāhmanas is always recited before these. Ever taking pleasure in Truth, the hearts of such men never find joy in untruth. O thou best of regenerate ones, it hath been said that the study of the Vedas, tranquillity of soul, simplicity of behaviour, and repression of the senses, constitute the eternal duties of the Brāhmana. Those cognisant with virtue and morals have said that truth and honesty are the highest virtue. Virtue that is eternal is difficult of being understood. But whatever it is, it is based on Truth. The ancients have declared that virtue dependeth on *çruti*. But, O foremost of regenerate ones, virtue as exposed in *çruti* appears to be of various kinds. It is, therefore, too subtile of comprehension. Thou, O holy one, art cognisant of virtue;

pure, and devoted to the study of the Vedas. I think, however, O holy one, that thou dost not know what virtue in reality is! Repairing to the city of Mithilā, enquire thou of a virtuous fowler their, if, indeed, O regenerate one, thou art not really acquainted with what constitutes the highest virtue! There liveth in Mithilā a fowler who is truthful and devoted to the service of his parents and who hath his senses under complete control! Even he will discourse to thee on virtue! Blessed be thou, O best of regenerate ones, if thou likest, repair thither. O faultless one, it behoveth thee to forgive me if what I have said be unpalatable, for they that are desirous of acquiring virtue are incapable of injuring women!—

"'At these words of the chaste woman, the Brāhmana replied, saying,—I am gratified with thee! Blessed be thou, my anger hath subsided, O beautiful one! The reproofs uttered by thee will be of the highest advantage to me! Blessed be thou, I shall now go, and accomplish what is so conducive, O handsome one, to my benefit!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Dismissed by her, Kauçika—that best of regenerate ones—left her house, and reproaching himself returned to his own abode.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and sixth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCVII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'Continually reflecting upon that wonderful discourse of the woman, Kauçika began to reproach himself and looked very much like a guilty person. And meditating on the subtile ways of morality and virtue, he said to himself,—I should accept with reverence what the lady hath said and should, therefore, repair to Mithilā. Without doubt there dwelleth in that city a fowler of soul under complete control and fully acquainted with the mysteries of virtue and morality. This very day will I repair unto that one endued with wealth of asceticism for enquiring

of him about virtue.—His faith in her assured by her knowledge of the death of the she-crane and the excellent words of virtuous import she had uttered, Kauçika thus reflecting with reverence upon all she had said, set out for Mithilā, filled with curiosity. And he traversed many forests and villages and towns and at last reached Mithilā that was ruled over by Janaka. And he beheld the city to be adorned with the flags of various creeds. And he beheld that beautiful town to be resounding with the noise of sacrifices and festivities. And furnished with splendid gate-ways, it abounded with palatial residences. And protected by walls on all sides, it had many splendid buildings to boast of. And that delightful town was also filled with innumerable cars. And its streets and roads were many and well-laid and many of them were lined with shops. And it was full of horses and cars and elephants and warriors. And the citizens were all in health and joy and they were always engaged in festivities. And having entered that city, that Brāhmana beheld there many other things. And there the Brāhmana enquired about the virtuous fowler and was answered by some twice-born persons. And repairing to the place indicated by those regenerate ones, the Brāhmana beheld the fowler seated in a butcher's yard. And the ascetic fowler was then selling venison and buffalo meat. And in consequence of the large concourse of buyers gathered round that fowler, Kauçika stood at a distance. But the fowler, apprehending that the Brāhmana had come to him, suddenly rose from his seat and went to that secluded spot where the Brāhmana was staying. And having approached him there, the fowler said,—I salute thee, O holy one! Welcome art thou, O thou best of Brāhmanas! I am the fowler. Blessed be thou! Command me as to what I may do for thee! The words that the chaste woman said unto thee, *viz.*, *Repair thou to Mithilā*, are known to me. I also know for what purpose thou hast come hither!—Hearing these words of the fowler that Brāhmana was filled with surprise. And he began to reflect inwardly, saying,—This, indeed, is the second marvel that I see!—The fowler then said unto the Brāhmana, saying,—Thou art now standing in

a place that is scarcely proper for thee. O sinless one, if it pleasest thee, let us go to my abode, O holy one !—'

" Mārkandeya continued.—'*So be it*,—said the Brāhmana unto him gladly. And thereupon, the fowler proceeded towards his home with the Brāhmana walking before him. And entering his abode that looked delightful, the fowler reverenced his guest by offering him a seat. Bnd he also gave him water to wash his feet and face. And accepting these, that best of Brāhmanas sat at his ease. And he then addressed the fowler, saying,—It seems to me that this profession doth not befit thee. O father, I deeply regret that thou shouldst follow such a cruel trade !—At these words of the Brāhmana, the fowler said,—This profession is that of my family, myself having inherited it from my sires and grandsires. O regenerate one, grieve not for me owing to my adhering to the duties that belong to me by birth ! Discharging the duties ordained for me before-hand by the Creator, I carefully serve my superiors and the old, O thou best of Brāhmanas ! I always speak the truth, never envy others ; and give to the best of my power. I live upon what remaineth after serving the gods, guests, and those that depend on me ! I never speak ill of anything small or great. O thou best of Brāhmanas, the actions of a former life always follow the doer. In this world there are three principal professions, *viz.*, agriculture, rearing of cattle, and trade. As regards the other world, the three Vedas, knowledge, and the science of morals are efficacious. Service (of the other three order) hath been ordained to be the duty of the Sudra. Agriculture hath been ordained for the Vaiçyas, and fighting for the Kshatriyas, while the practice of the *Brahmacharya* vow, asceticism, recitation of *mantras*, and truthfulness have been ordained for the Brāhmanas. Over subjects adhering to their proper duties, the king should rule virtuously ; while he should set those thereto that have fallen away from the duties of their order. Kings should ever be feared because they are the lords of their subjects. They restrain those subjects of theirs that fall away from their duties as they restrain the motions of the deer by means of their shafts. O regenerate *Rishi*, there

existeth not in the kingdom of Janaka a single subject that followeth not the duties of his birth. O thou best of Brāhmanas, all the four orders here rigidly adhere to their respective duties. King Janaka punisheth him that is wicked, even if he be his own son; but never doth he inflict pain on him that is virtuous. With good and able spies employed under him, he looketh upon all with impartial eyes. Prosperity, and kingdom, and capacity to punish, belong, O thou best of Brāhmanas, to the Kshatriyas! Kings desire high prosperity through practice of the duties that belong to them. The king is the protector of all the four orders. As regards myself, O Brāhmana, I always sell pork and buffalo meat without slaying those animals myself. I sell meat of animals, O regenerate *Rishi*, that have been slain by others! I never eat meat myself; never go to my wife except in her season; I always fast during the day, and eat, O regenerate one, in the night! Even though the behaviour of his order be bad, a person may yet be himself of good behaviour. So also a person may become virtuous although he may be a slayer of animals by profession! It is in consequence of the sinful acts of kings that virtue decreaseth greatly, and sin beginneth to prosper. And when all this taketh place, the subjects of the kingdom begin to decay. And it is then, O Brāhmana, that ill-looking monsters, and dwarfs, and hunch-backed and large-headed wights, and men that are blind or deaf or those that have paralysed eyes or are destitute of the power of procreation, begin to take their birth. It is from the sinfulness of kings that their subjects suffer numerous mischiefs. But this our king Janaka casteth his eyes upon all his subjects virtuously, and he is always kind unto them who, on their part, ever adhere to their respective duties. Regarding myself I always with good deeds please those that speak well, as also those that speak ill, of me. Those kings that live in the observance of their own proper duties, who are always engaged in the practice of acts that are good and honest, who are of souls under complete control and who are endued with readiness and alacrity, may not depend upon anything else for supporting their power. Gift of food to the best of one's

power, endurance of heat and cold, firmness in virtue, and a regard and tenderness for all creatures,—these attributes can never find place in a person, without an innate desire being present in him of separating himself from the world.* One should avoid falsehood in speech, and should do good without solicitation. One should never cast off virtue from lust, from wrath, or from malice. One should never joy immoderately at a good turn or grieve immoderately at a bad one. One should never feel depressed when overtaken by poverty, nor when so overtaken abandon the path of virtue. If at any time one doth what is wrong, he should never do its like again. One should always urge his soul to the doing of that which he regardeth as beneficial. One should never return wrong for wrong, but should act honestly by those that have wonged him. That wretched man who desireth to do what is sinful, slayeth himself. By doing what is sinful, one only imitates them that are wicked and sinful. Disbelieving in virtue they that mock the good and the pure, saying—*there is no virtue*—undoubtedly meet with destruction. A sinful man swelleth up like a leather bag puffed up with wind. The thoughts of these wretches filled with pride and folly are feeble and unprofitable. It is the heart, the inner soul, that discovereth the fool like the sun that discovereth forms during the day. The fool cannot always shine in the world by means of self-praise. The learned man, however, even if he be destitute of beauty, displayeth his lustre by refraining from speaking ill of others and well of himself. No example, however, can be met with, in this world, of a person shining brilliantly on account of attributes to be found in him in their reputed measure. If one repenteth for a wrong done by him, that repentance washeth off his sin.† The resolu-

* The word in the text is *Tyagā*. It literally means, abandonment As a technical term in the Hindu Scriptures, it means abandonment of worldly things, or, rather self-denial as regards the pleasures and enjoyments of the world.

† The reader cannot fail to be struck with this doctrine in the mouth of a Hindu teacher. This and one or two texts further down would seem to indicate that some of the cardinal doctrines of Christianity

tion of never doing it again saveth him from future sin, even as, O thou best of Brāhmanas, he may save himself from sin by any of those expiations ordained in the scriptures! Even this, O regenerate one, is the *çruti* that may be seen in respect of virtue! He that, having before been virtuous, committeth a sin, or committeth it unknowingly, may destroy that sin. For virtue, O Brāhmana, driveth off the sins that men commit from ignorance. A man, after having committed a sin, should cease to regard himself any longer as a man. No man can conceal his sins. The gods behold what one does, also the Being that is within every one.* He that with piety and without detraction hideth the faults of the honest and the wise, like holes in his own attire, surely seeketh his salvation. If a man seeketh redemption after having committed a sin, without doubt he is purged of all his sins and looketh pure and resplendant like the moon emerged from the clouds. A man that seeketh redemption is washed of all his sins, even as the sun, upon rising, dispelleth all darkness. O best of Brāhmanas, it is temptation that constitutes the basis of sin. Men that are ignorant, commit sin, yielding to temptation alone. Sinful men generally cover themselves with a virtuous exterior, like wells whose mouths are covered by long grass. Outwardly they seem to possess self-control and holiness, and indulge in preaching virtuous texts which, in their mouth, are of little meaning. Indeed, everything may be noticed in them, except conduct that is truly virtuous!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'At these words, O best of men, of the fowler, that Brāhmana endued with great wisdom, then asked the fowler, saying,—How shall I know

---

were not altogether unknown to the moral teachers of Aryan India. This and the other passages, therefore, might yield some inference of value to those engaged in settling the date of the *Mahābhārata*.

* The word in the text are *swasyaivāntarapurusha* composed of *swasya*, *antara*, and *purusha*. Literally, they mean the *purusha* (being) that is within one's own self. The *monitor within* would not be a bad rendering.

what is virtuous conduct? Blessed be thou, I desire to hear this, O thou foremost of virtuous men, from thee! Therefore, O thou of exalted soul, tell me all about it truly!—Hearing these words, the fowler replied, saying,—O best of Brāhmanas, Sacrifice, Gift, Asceticism, the Vedas, and Truth,—these five holy things are ever present in conduct that is called virtuous. Having subjugated lust and wrath, pride, avarice, and crookedness, they that take pleasure in virtue because it is virtue are regarded as really virtuous and worthy of the approbation of persons that are virtuous. These persons who are devoted to sacrifices and study of the Vedas have no independent behaviour. They follow only the practices of the honest and the good. This, indeed, is the second attribute of the virtuous. Waiting upon superiors, Truth, freedom from anger, and Gift, these four, O Brāhmana, are inseparably connected with behaviour that is virtuous. For the reputation that a person acquires by setting his heart on virtuous behaviour and adhering to it rigidly is incapable of acquisition except by practising the four virtues named above. The essence of the Vedas is Truth; the essence of Truth is self-control, and the essence of self-control is abstention from the pleasures of the world. These all are to be noticed in behaviour that is virtuous. They that follow those deluded fools that mock the forms of faith prevailing among men, are dragged into destruction for walking in such a sinful path. They, however, that are virtuous and engaged in the observance of vows, who are devoted to the *çrutis* and the virtue of abstention from the pleasures of the world, they, in fact, who tread in virtue's path and follow the true religion, they that are obedient to the mandates of their preceptors, and who reflect upon the sense of the scriptures with patience and carefulness,—it is *these* that are said to be possessed of behaviour that is virtuous; and it is these, O Brāhmana, that are said to properly guide their higher intelligence! Forsaking those that are atheists, those that transgress virtue's limits, those that are of wicked souls, those that live in sinfulness, betake thou to knowledge, reverencing those that are virtuous! Lust and temptation are even like sharks

in the river of life, whose waters are the five senses. Do thou cross over to the other side of this river in the boat of patience and resignation, avoiding the shoals of corporeal existence (repeated births in this world). The supreme virtue consisting in the excercise of the intelligent principle and abstraction, when gradually superadded to virtuous conduct, becomes beautiful like dye on white fabrics. Truthfulness and abstention from doing injury to any one, are virtues highly beneficial to all creatures. Of these, the latter is a cardinal virtue, and is based on truth. Our mental faculties have their proper play when their foundation is laid in truth, and in the exercise of virtue, truth is of the highest value. Purity of conduct is the characteristic of all good men. Those that are distinguished for holy living, are good and virtuous. All creatures follow the principles of conduct which are innate in their nature. The sinful being who has no control over self, acquire lust, anger and other vices. It is the immemorial rule that virtuous actions are those that are founded on justice, and it is also ordained by holy men that all iniquitous conduct is sin. Those who are not swayed by anger, pride, haughtiness and envy, and those who are quiet and straight-forward, are men of virtuous conduct. Those who are deligent in performing the rites enjoined in the three *Vedas*, who are wise, and of pure and virtuous conduct, who exercise self-restraint and are full of attention to their superiors, are men of virtuous conduct. The actions and conduct of such men of great power, are very difficult of attainment. They are sanctified by the purification of their own actions, and consequently sin in them dies out of itself. This virtue of good conduct is wonderful, ancient, immutable and eternal; and wise men observing this virtue with holiness, attain to heaven. Those men who believe in the existence of the Deity, who are free from false pride, and versed in holy writ, and who respect regenerate (twice-born) men, go to heaven. Among holy men, virtue is differentiated in three ways—that great virtue which is inculcated in the *Vedas*, the other which is inculcated in the *dharmashastras* (the minor scriptures), and virtuous conduct. And virtuous

conduct is indicated by acquisition of knowledge, pilgrimage to sacred places, truthfulness, forbearance, purity and straight—forwardness. Virtuous men are always kind to all creatures, and well disposed towards regenerate men, they abstain from doing injury to any creature, and are never rude in speech. Those good men who know well the consequences of the fruition of their good and evil deeds, are commended by virtuous men. Those who are just and good-natured, and endowed with virtue, who wish well of all creatures, who are steadfast in the path of virtue, and have conquered heaven, who are charitable, unselfish and of unblemished character, who succour the distress of the afflicted, and are learned and respected by all, who practise austerities, and are kind to all creatures, are commended as such by the virtuous. Those who are charitably disposed attain prosperity in this world, as also the regions of bliss (here-after). The virtuous man when solicited for assistance by good men bestows alms on them by straining himself to the utmost, even to the deprivation of the comforts of his wife and servants. Good men having an eye to their own welfare, as also virtue and the ways of the world, act in this way and thereby grow in virtue through eternal ages. Good persons possessing the virtues of truthfulness, abstention from doing injury to any one, rectitude, abstention from evil towards any one, want of haughtiness, modesty. resignation, self-restraint, absence of passion, wisdom, patience, and kindness towards all creatures, and free from malice and lust, are the witnesses of the world. These three are said to constitute the perfect way of the virtuous; viz.—a man must not do wrong to any body, he must bestow alms, and must always be truthful. Those high-souled good men of virtuous conduct, and settled convictions, who are kind to all and are full of compassion, depart with contentment from this world to the perfect way of virtue. Freedom from malice, forbearance, peace of mind, contentment, pleasant speech, renunciation of desires and anger, virtuous conduct, and actions regulated according to the ordinances of holy writ, constitute the perfect way of the virtuous. And those who are constant in virtue, follow these rules of

virtuous conduct, and having reached the pinnacle of knowledge, and discriminating between the various phases of human conduct, which are either very virtuous or the reverse, they escape from the great danger.* Thus, O great Brahmana, having introduced the subject of virtuous conduct, have I described to thee all this, according to my own knowledge, and to what I have heard on the subject."

Thus ends the two hundred and seventh Section in the Mārkandeya Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCVIII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued—the pious fowler "O Yudhishthira, then said to that Brahmana. 'Uundoubtedly my deeds are very cruel, but O Brāhmana, Destiny† is all-powerful and it is difficult to evade the consequences of our past actions.‡ And this is the *karmik* evil ¶ arising out of sin committed in a former life. But, O Brāhmana, I am always assiduous in eradicating the evil. The Deity takes away life, the executioner acts only as a secondary agent. And we, O good Brāhmana, are only such agents in regard to our *karma*. Those animals that are slain by me, and whose meat I sell, also acquire *karma*; because (with their meat), gods and guests and servants are regaled with dainty food, and the *mānes* of our ancestors are propitiated. It is said authoritatively that herbs and vegetables, deer, birds and wild animals constitute the food of all creatures. And, O Brāhmana, King Sibi the son of Uçinara, of great forbearance attained to heaven, which is hard to reach, by giving away his own flesh. And in days of yore, O Brāhmana, two thousand animals used to be killed

---

* That of rebirth presumably.

† More properly providence, or the state of existence ordained by the Creator.

‡ i. e. actions performed in a previous state of existence.

¶ The evil tendencies which are inborn. They being supposed to be the result of the *karma* or the aggregate of actions of a former existence.

every-day in the kitchen of king Rantideva ; and in the same manner two thousand cows were killed every day ; and O best of regenerate beings, King Rantideva acquired unrivalled reputation by distributing food with meat every day. For the performance of the four-monthly rites, animals ought to be sacrificed daily. 'The sacred fire is fond of animal-food,' this saying has come down to us. And at sacrifices animals are invariably killed by regenerate Brāhmanas, and these animals being purged of sin, by incantation of hymns, go to heaven. If O Brāhmana, the sacred fire had not been so fond of animal food in ancient times, it could never have become the food of any one. And in this matter of animal food this rule has been laid down by *munis*:—Whoever partakes of animal food after having first offered it duly and respectfully to the gods and the *manes* of his ancestors, is not polluted by the act. And such a man is not at all considered to have partaken of animal food ; even, as a Brahmacharin having intercourse with his wife during the menstrual period, is nevertheless considered to be a good Brāhmana. Having considered the propriety and impropriety of this matter, this rule has been laid down. King Saudasa, O Brahman. when under a curse, often used to prey upon men ; what is thy opinion on this matter ? And, O good Brāhmana, knowing this to be my own proper occupation, I do not give it up, and knowing this to be the consequence of my own actions, I obtain my livelihood from this profession. The forsaking of one's own occupation is considered, O Brāhmana to be a sin, and the act of sticking to one's own profession is without doubt a meretorious act. The *Karma* of a former existence never forsakes any creature. And in determining the various consequences of one's *karma*, this rule was not lost sight of by the Creator. A person having his being under the influence of evil *karma*, must always consider how he can atone for his *karma*, and extricate himself from an evil doom. And the evil *karma* may be expiated in various ways. Accordingly, O good Brāhmana, I am charitable, truthful, assiduous in attending on my superiors, full of respect towards regenerate Brāhmanas, devoted to virtue, and free from pride and (idle) excessive talk. Agri-

culture is considered to be a praise-worthy occupation, but it is well-known that even there, great harm is done to animal-life; and in the operation of digging the earth with the plough, numberless creatures lurking in the ground, as also various other forms of animal-life are destroyed. Dost thou not think so? O good Brāhmana, *Vrihi* and other so-called seeds of rice are all living organisms. What is thy opinion on this matter? Men, O Brāhmana, hunt wild animals and kill them and partake of their meat, they also cut up trees and herbs; but O Brāhmana, there are numberless living organisms in trees and in fruits, as also in water; dost thou not think so? This whole creation, O Brāhmana, is full of animal life, sustaining itself with food derived from living organisms. Dost thou not mark that fish preys upon fish, and that various species of animals prey upon other species, and that there are species the members of which prey upon each other? Men O Brāhmana, while walking about hither and thither, kill numberless creatures lurking in the ground by trampling on them, and even men of wisdom and enlightenment destroy animal-life in various ways, even while sleeping or reposing themselves. What hast thou to say to this? The earth and the air are all swarming with living organisms, which are unconsciously destroyed by men from mere ignorance. Is not this so? The commandment that people should not do harm to any creature, was ordained of old by men, who were ignorant of the true facts of the case. For, O Brāhmana, there is not one man on the face of the earth, who is free from the sin of doing injury to any creature. After full consideration, the conclusion is (irresistible), that there is not a single man who is free from the sin of doing injury to animal-life. Even the sages, O good Brāhmana, whose vow is not to do harm to any creature, do injure animal life. Only, on account of greater heedfulness, the harm is less. Men of noble birth and great qualities perpetrate wicked acts in defiance of all, of which they are not at all ashamed. Good men acting in an examplary way are not commended by other good men; nor are bad men acting in a contrary way praised by their wicked compeers; and friends are not agreeable to friends, albeit endowed with

high qualities ; and foolish pedantic men cry down the virtues of their preceptors. This reversal of the natural order of things, O good Brāhmana, is seen everywhere in this world. What is thy opinion as to the virtuousness or otherwise of this state of things ? There is much that can be said of the goodness or badness of our actions. But whoever is addicted to his own proper occupation surely acquires great reputation*

Thus ends the two hundred and eighth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCIX.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued.—O Yudhishthira, the virtuous fowler, eminent in piety, then skilfuly† addressed himself again to that foremost of Brāhmanas, saying,—It is the dictum of the aged that the ways of righteousness are subtle, diverse and infinite. When life is at stake and in the matter of marriage, it is proper to tell an untruth. Untruth sometimes leads to the triumph of truth, and the latter dwindles into untruth. Whichever conduces most to the good of all creatures is considered to be truth. Virtue is thus perverted; mark thou its subtle ways. O best of virtuous men, man's actions are either good or bad, and he undoubtedly reaps their fruits. The ignorant man having attained to an abject state, grossly abuses the gods, not knowing that it is the consequence of his own evil *karma*. The foolish, the designing, and the fickle, O good Brāhmana, always attain the very reverse of happiness, or, misery. Neither learning, nor good morals, nor personal exertion can save them. And if the fruits of our exertion were not dependent on any thing else, people would attain the object of their desire, by simply striving to attain it. It is seen, that able intelligent and diligent persons are baffled in their efforts, and do not attain the fruits of their actions. On the other hand, persons who are always active in injuring others and in practising decep-

---

* Approbation, more correctly.

† With specious arguments, rather.

tion on the world, lead a happy life. There are some who attain prosperity without any exertion. And there are others. who with the utmost exertion, are unable to achieve their dues. Miserly persons with the object of having sons born to them worship the gods, and practise severe austerities, and these sons having remained in the womb for ten months, at length turn out to be very in-famous scions of their race ; and others begotten under the same auspices, decently pass their lives in luxury with hordes of riches and grain, accumulated by their ancestors. The diseases from which men suffer, are undoubtedly the result of their own *karma*. They then behave like small deer at the hands of hunters, and they are racked with mental troubles. And, O Brāhmana. as hunters intercept the flight of their game, the progress of those diseases is checked by able and skilful physicians with their collections of drugs. And, O best of the cherishers of religion, thou hast observed that those that have it in their power to enjoy (the good things of earth), are prevented from doing so from the fact of their suffering from chronic bowel-complaints, and that many others that are strong and powerful, suffer from misery, and are enabled with great difficulty to obtain a livelihood; and that every man is thus helpless, overcome by misery and illusion, and again and again tossed and overpowered by the powerful current of his own actions (*karma*). If there were absolute freedom of action, no creature would die, none would be subject to decay, or await his evil doom; and every body would attain the object of his desire. All persons desire to distance their neighbours (in the race of life), and they strive to do so to the utmost of their power; but the result turns out otherwise. Many are the persons born under the influence of the same star and the same auspicies of good luck; but a great diversity is observable in the maturity of their actions. No person, O good Brāhmana, can be the dispenser of his own lot. The actions done in a previous existence are seen to fructify in our present life. It is the immemorial tradition that the soul is eternal and everlasting, but the corporeal frame of all creatures is subject to destruction here (below). When there-

fore life is extinguished, the body only is destroyed, but the spirit, wedded to its actions, travels elsewhere.'

The Brāhmana replied,—'O best of those versed in the doctrine of *karma*, and in the delivery of discourses, I long to know accurately how the soul becomes eternal. The fowler replied,—The spirit dies not, there being simply a change of tenement. They are mistaken, who foolishly say that all creatures die. The soul betakes itself to another frame, and its change of habitation is called its death. In the world of men, no man reaps the consequences of another man's *karma*. Whatever one does, he is sure to reap the consequences thereof; for the consequences of the *karma* that is once done, can never be obviated. The virtuous become endowed with great virtues, and sinful men become the perpetrators of wicked deeds. Men's actions follow them; and influenced by these, they are born again. The Brāhmana enquired,—'why does the spirit take its birth. and why does its nativity become sinful or virtuous, and how, O good man, does it come to belong to a sinful or virtuous race?' The fowler replied. This mystery seems to belong to the subject of procreation, but I shall briefly describe to you, O good Brāhmana, how the spirit is born again with its accumulated load of *karma*, the righteous in a virtuous, and the wicked in a sinful nativity. By the performance of virtuous actions it attains to the state of the gods, and by a combination of good and evil, it acquires the human state, by indulgence in sensuality and similar demoralising practices* it is born in the lower species of animals, and by sinful acts, it goes to the infernal regions. Afflicted with the miseries of birth and death and dotage, man is fated to rot here below from the evil cosequences of his own actions. Passing through thousands of births as also the infernal regions, our spirits wander about, secured by the fetters of their own *karma*. Animate beings become miserable in the next world, on account of these actions done by themselves, and from the

---

**Mohaniyais* in the original, which means practices whose tendency is to keep us in illusion or forgetfulness of the higher spiritual nature of man.

reaction of those miseries, they assume lower births. And then they accumulate new stores of actions, and they consequently suffer misery over again, like sickly men partaking of unwholesome food. And although they are thus afflicted. they consider themselves to be happy and at ease. And consequently their fetters are not loosened, and new *karma* arises and suffering from diverse miseries they turn about in this world like a wheel. If, casting off their fetters, they purify themselves by their actions, and practise austerities and religious meditation, then, O best of Brāhmanas, they attain the Elysian regions by these numerous acts. And by casting off their fetters and by the purification of *karma*, men attain those blissful regions where misery is unknown to those who go there. The sinful man who is addicted to vices, never comes to the end of his course of iniquities. Therefore must we strive to do what is virtuous, and forbear from doing what is unrighteous. Whoever with a heart full of gratefulness and free from malice, strives to do what is good, attains wealth, virtue, happiness and heaven (hereafter). Those who are purified of sin, wise, forbearing, constant in righteousness, and self-restrained, enjoy continuous felicity in this as well as the next world. Man must follow the standard of virtue of the good and in his acts imitate the example of the righteous. There are virtuous men, versed in holy writ and learned in all departments of knowledge. Man's proper duty consists in his following his own proper avocations, and such being the case, these latter do not become confused and mixed up. The wise man delights in virtue and lives by righteousness. And, O good Brāhmana, such a man with the wealth of righteousness which he thereby acquires, waters the roots of the plant* in which he finds most virtue. The virtuous man acts thus and his mind is calmed. He is pleased with his friends in this world and he also attains happiness hereafter. Virtuous people, O good man, acquire dominion over all and the pleasures of beauty, flavour, sound and touch according to their desire. These are known to be the

* That particular form of righteousness which is most congenial to him. Here is a confusion of metaphors.

rewards of virtue. But the man of enlightened vision, O great Brāhmana, is not satisfied with reaping the fruits of righteousness. Not content with that, he with the light of spiritual wisdom that is in him, becomes indifferent to pain and pleasure; and the vices of the world influence him not. Of his own free will, he becomes indifferent to worldly pursuits, but he forsakes not virtue. Observing that everything worldly is evanescent, he tries to renounce everything, and not counting on mere chance, he devises means for the attainment of salvation.Thus does he renounce the pursuits of the world, shuns the ways of sin, becomes virtuous, and at last attains salvation. Spiritual wisdom is the prime requisite of man for salvation; resignation and forbearance are its roots. By this means he attains all the objects of his desire. By subduing the senses and by means of truthfulness and forebearance, he attains, O good Brāhmana, the supreme asylum of Brahma." The Brāhmana again enquired,—O thou most eminent in virtue and constant in the performance of thy religious obligations, you talk of senses; what are they; how may they be subdued; and what is the good of subduing them; and how does a creature reap the fruits thereof? O pious man, I long to acquaint myself with the truth of this matter.

Thus ends the two hundred and ninth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

Section CCX.

(*Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.*)

Mārkandeya continued,—"Hear, O king Yudhishthira, what the virtuous fowler thus interrogated by that Brāhmana said to him in reply. The fowler said,—Men's minds are at first bent on the acquisition of knowledge. That acquired, O good Brāhmana, they indulge their passions and desires, and for that end, they labour and set about tasks of great magnitude and indulge in their much-desired pleasures of beauty, flavour &c. Then follows fondness, then envy, then avarice and then extinction of all spiritual light. And when men are thus influenced by avarice, and overcome by envy and

fondness,* their intellect ceases to be guided by righteousness and they practise the very mockery of virtue. Practising virtue with hypocrisy, they are content to acquire wealth by dishonorable means, and with the wealth thus acquired, the intelligent principle in them becomes enamoured of those evil ways, and they are filled with a desire to commit sins. And when O good Brāhmana, their friends and men of wisdom remonstrate with them, they are ready with specious answers, which are neither sound nor convincing. From their being addicted to evil ways they are guilty of a three-fold sin. They commit sin in thought, in word, as also in action.† Addicted to wicked ways all their good qualities die out, and these men of wicked deeds cultivate the friendship of men of similar character, and consequently they suffer misery in this world as well as in the next. The sinful man is of this nature, and now hear of the man of virtue. He discerns these evils by means of his spiritual insight, and is able to discriminate between happiness and misery, and is full of respectful attention to men of virtue, and from practising virtues, his mind becomes inclined to righteousness." The Brāhmana replied,—"Thou hast given a true exposition of religion which none else is able to expound. Thy spiritual power is great and thou dost appear to me to be like a great *Rishi*. The fowler replied. The great Brāhmanas are worshipped with the same honours as our ancestors and they are always propitiated with offerings of food before others. Wise men in this world do what is pleasing to them with all their heart. And I shall, O good Brāhmana, describe to thee what is pleasing to them, after having bowed down to Brāhmanas as a class. Do thou learn from me the Brāhmic philosophy. This whole universe unconquerable‡ everywhere, and abounding in great elements, is Brahm, and there

* For their sinful course of life ?

† This conception of a three-fold character of sin is at once so lofty and beautiful. This as also some other passages in this chapter are by no means singular.

‡ Whose mystery can not be fathomed or sounded ?

is nothing higher than this. The earth, air, water, fire and sky* are the great elements. And form, flavour, sound, touch and taste are their characteristic properties. These latter too have their properties which are also correlated to each other. And of the three qualities, they are gradually characterised by each, in order of priority. The sixth property is consciousness which is called the mind. The seventh is intelligence and after that comes egoism; and then the five senses, then the soul, then the moral qualities called *satwa*, *rajas* and *tamas*† These seventen are said to be the unknown or incomprehensible qualities. I have described all this to thee, what else dost thou wish to know?

Thus ends the two hundred and tenth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXI.

(*Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.*)

Mārkandeya continued,—" O Bharata, the Brahmana, thus interrogated by the virtuous fowler resumed again this discourse so pleasing to the mind. The Brāhmana said,—'O best of the cherishers of religion, it is said that there are five great elements, do thou describe to me in full the properties of any one of the five.' The fowler replied,—The earth, water, fire, air and sky‡ all have properties interlapping each other. I shall describe them to thee. The earth, O Brāhmana, has five qualities, water four, fire three, and the air and sky together three also. Sound, touch, form, flavour and taste these five qualities belong to earth, and sound, touch, form and taste, O austere Brāhmana, have been described to thee as the properties of water, and sound, touch and form are the three

---

* Ether or ethereal space?

† Spiritnul wisdom, worldliness. and spiritual ignorance are the respective manifestations of these three qualities.

‡ I am inclined to think that the Sanscrit names of these five elements should better be translated as solids, liquids, physical forces as light heat &c gases and ether. The usal names are misleading and do not mean what the Sanscrit writer very probably intended.

properties of fire, and air has two properties sound and touch, and sound is the property of sky. And, O Brāhmana, these fifteen properties inherent in five elements, exist in all substances of which this universe is composed. And they are not opposed to one another, they exist, O Brāhmana, in proper combination. When this whole universe is thrown into a state of confusion then every corporeal being in the fulness of time, assumes another *corpus*. It arises and perishes in due order. And there are present the five elementary substances of which all the mobile and immobile world is composed. Whatever is perceptible by the senses, is called *vyakta* (knowable or comprehensible) and whatever is beyond the reach of the senses and can only be perceived by guesses, is known to be *avyakta* (not *vyakta*). When a person engages in the discipline of self-examination, after having subdued the senses which have of their own proper objective play in the external conditions of sound, form &c., then he beholds his own spirit pervading the universe, and the universe reflected in itself. He who is wedded to his previous *karma*, although skilled in the highest spiritual wisdom, is congnisant only of his soul's objective existence, but the person whose soul is never affected by the objective conditions around, is never subject to ills, owing to its absorption in the elementary spirit of Brahm.* When a person has overcome the dominion of illusion, his manly virtues consisting of the essence of spiritual wisdom, turn to the spiritual enlightenmentwhich illumines the intelligence of sentient beings. Such a person is styled by the omnipotent, intelligent Spirit as one who is without beginning and without end, self-existent, immutable, incorporeal and incomparable. This, O Brāhmana, that thou hast enquired of me is only the result of self-discipline. And this self-discipline can only be acquired by subduing the senses. It can not be otherwise. Heaven and hell are both dependent on our senses. When sub-

* It is perhaps superfluous to remark here that according to Hindus, when a person attains *moksha* or the height of spiritual light and salvation whether in life or after death he becomes one with the Deiety and his powers become like those of the Supreme Spirit.

dued, they lead to heaven, when indulged in, they lead to perdition. This subjugation of the senses is the highest means of attaining spiritual light. Our senses are at the (cause) root of our spiritual advancement, as also at the root of all our spiritual degradation. By indulging them a person undoubtedly contracts vices, and by subduing these, he attains salvation. The self-restrained person who acquires mastery over the six senses inherent in our nature, is never tainted with sin, and consequently evil has no power over him. Man's corporeal self has been compared to a chariot, his soul to a charioteer and his senses to horses, A dexterous man drives about without confusion, like a quiet charioteer with well-broken horses. That man is an excellent driver, who knows how to patiently wield the reins of those wild horses,—the six senses inherent in our nature, When our senses become un-governable like horses on the high road, we must patiently rein them in; for with patience, we are sure to get the better of them. When a man's mind is over-powered by any one of these senses running wild, he loses his reason, and becomes like a ship tossed by storms upon the high ocean. Men are deceived by illusion in hoping to reap the fruits of those six things, whose effects are studied by persons of spiritual insight, who thereby reap the fruits of their clear perception."

Thus ends the two hundred and eleventh Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsya Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued,—"O Bharata, the fowler having expounded these abstruse points, the Brahmana with great attention again enquired of him about these subtle topics. The Brāhmana said 'Do thou truly describe to me, who now duly ask thee, the respective virtues of the three qualities of *sattwa rajas* and *tamas*. The fowler replied,—'Very well, I shall tell thee what thou hast asked. I shall describe separately their respective virtues, do thou listen. Of them *tamas* is

characterised by illusion (spiritual), *rajas* incites (men to action),* *sattwa* is of great grandeur, and on that account, it is said to be the greatest of them.

He who is greatly under the influence of spiritual ignorance, who is foolish, senseless and given to dreaming, who is idle, unenergetic and swayed by anger and haughtiness, is said to be under the influence of *tamas.* And O Brāhmana *rishi,* that excellent man who is agreeable in speech, thoughtful, free from envy, industrious in action from an eager desire to reap its fruits, and of warm temperament, is said to be under the influence of *rajas.* And he who is resolute, patient, not subject to anger, free from malice and is not skilful in action from want of a selfish desire to reap its fruits, wise and forbearing, is said to be under the influence of *sattwa.* When a man endowed with the *sattwa* quality, is influenced by worldliness, he suffers misery ; but he hates worldliness when he realises its full significance. And then a feeling of indifference to worldly affairs begins to influence him. And then his pride decreases and uprightness becomes more prominent, and his conflicting moral sentiments are reconciled. And then self-restraint in any matter becomes unnecessary. A man O Brāhmana, may be born in the Sudra caste, but if he is possessed of good qualities, he may attain the state of a *Vaisya* and similarly that of a *kshatriya,* and if he is stedfast in rectitude, he may even become a Brāhmana. I have described to thee these virtues, what else dost thou wish to learn ?

Thus ends the two hundred and twelfth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXIII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

The Brāhmana enquired,—'How is it that the fire (vital force) in combination with the earthly element (matter), becomes the corporeal (tenement of living creatures), and how

* Worldliness, or actions tending to material prosperiety or advancement.

does the vital air (the breath of life) according to the nature of its seat (the muscles and nerves) excites to action (the corporeal frame) ?' Mārkandeya said,—"This question, O Yudhishthira, having been put to the Brāhmana by the fowler, the latter, in reply, said to that high-minded Brāhmana." (The fowler said) the vital spirit manifesting itself in the seat of consciousness, causes the action of the corporeal frame. And the soul being present in both of them acts (through them). The past, the present and the future are inseparably associated with the soul. And it is the highest of a creature's possessions; it is of the essence of the Supreme Spirit and we adore it. It is the animating principle of all creatures, and it is the eternal *purusha* (spirit). It is great and it is the intelligence and the *ego*, and it is the subjective seat of the various properties of elements. Thus while seated here (in a corporeal frame) it is sustained in all its relations external or internal (to matter or mind) by the subtle ethereal air called *Prāna*, and thereafter, each creature goes its own way by the action of another subtle air called *samāna*. And this latter transforming itself into *apāna* air, and supported by the heat of the stomach carries the refuse matter of the body, urine &c., to the kidneys and intestines. That same air is present in the three elements of effort, exertion and power, and in that condition it is called *Udana* air by persons learned in psychical science, and when manifesting itself by its presence at all the junctional points of the human system, it is known by the name of *vyāna*. And the internal heat is diffused over all the tissues of our system, and supported by these kinds of air, it transforms our food and the tissues and the humours of our system. And by the coalition of Prāna and other airs, a reaction (combination) ensues, and the heat generated thereby is known as the internal heat of the human system which causes the digestion of our food. The *Prāna* and the *apāna* air are interposed within the *samāna* and the *udāna* air. And the heat generated by their coalition causes the growth of the body (consisting of the seven substances, bones, muscles &c.) And that portion of its seat extending to as far as the rectum is called *apāna*; and from that

arteries arise in the five airs* *prana* &c. The *prāna* air, acted on by the heat strikes against the extremity of the *apāna* region and then recoiling, it reacts on the heat. Above the navel is the region of undigested food, and below it the region digestion. And the *prāna* and all other airs of the system are seated in the navel. The arteries issuing from the heart run upwards, and downwards, as also in oblique directions; they carry the best essence of our food, and are acted upon by the ten *prāna* airs. This is the way by which patient Yogins who have overcome all difficulties, and who view things with an impartial and equal eye, with their souls seated in the brain, find the Supreme Spirit, The *prāna* and the *apāna* airs are thus present in the body of all creatures. Know that the spirit is embodied in corporeal disguise, in the eleven allotropous conditions (of the animal system), and that though eternal, its normal state is apparently modified by its accompaniments,—even like the fire purified in its pan,—eternal, yet with its course altered by its surroundings; and that the divine thing which is kindred with the body is related to the latter in the same way as a drop of water to the sleek surface of a lotus-leaf on which it rolls. Know that *sattwa, rajas,* and *tamas* are the attributes of all life and that life is the attribute of spirit, and that the latter again is an attribute of the Supreme Spirit. Inert, insensible matter is the seat of the living principle, which is active in itself and induces activity in others. That thing by which the seven worlds are incited to action is called the most high by men of high spiritual insight. Thus in all these elements, the eternal spirit does not show itself, but is perceived by the learned in spiritual science, by reason of their high and keen preception. A pure minded person, by purification of his heart, is able to destroy the good and evil effects of his actions, and attains eternal beatitude by the enlightenment of his inward spirit. That state of peace and purification of heart is likened to the state of a person who in a cheerful state of mind sleeps

* Gases would probably be a more correct translation. But something subtler than gases is meant.

soundly, or to the brilliance of a lamp trimmed by a skilful hand. Such a pure-minded person living on spare diet perceives the Supreme Spirit reflected in his own, and by practising concentration of mind in the evening and small hours of morning, he beholds the Supreme Spirit which has no attributes, in the light of his heart, shining like a dazzling lamp, and thus he attains salvation. Avarice and anger must be subdued by all means, for this act constitutes the most sacred virtue that people can practise and is considered to be the means by which men can cross over to the other side of this sea of affliction and trouble. A man must preserve his righteousness from being overcome by the evil consequences of anger, his virtues from the effects of pride, his learning from the effects of vanity, and his own spirit from illusion. Leniency is the best of virtues, and forbearance the best of powers, the knowledge of our spiritual nature is the best of all knowledge, and truthfulness is the best of all religious obligations. The telling of truth is good, and the knowledge of truth may also be good, but what conduces to the greatest good of all creatures, is known as the highest truth. He whose actions are performed not with the object of securing any reward or blessing, who has sacrificed all to the requirements of his renunciation, is a real *Sanyasin** and is really wise. And as communion with Brahma can not be taught to us even by our spiritual preceptor,—he only giving us a clue to the mystery—renunciation of things of the material world is called *Yoga*. We must not do harm to any creature and must live in terms of amity with all, and in this our present existence, we must not avenge ourselves on any creature. Self-abnegation,† peace of mind, renunciation ‡ of hope, and

---

* One who has renounced the world with the object of engaging solely in the service of the Deity.

† This is one of those sanscrit ideas which can not be accurately translated into English. One is said to be *akinchana* when he does not think or say that this or that worldly thing is his own, when he feels that he has no permanent or abiding interest in the things of earth. The mental state of such a man is what is meant here.

‡ Not exactly hope, but hope of reward for his actions. The men-

equanimity, these are the ways by which spiritual enlightenment can always be secured ; and the knowledge of self (one's own spiritual nature) is the best of all knowledge. In this world as well as hereafter, renouncing all worldly desires and assuming a stolid indifference, wherein all suffering is at rest, people should fulfill their religious duties with the aid of their intelligence. The *Muni* who desires to obtain *moksha* (salvation), which is very difficult to attain, must be constant in austerities, forbearing, self-restrained, and must give up that longing foudness which binds him to the things of earth. They call these the attributes of the Supreme Spirit,—The *gunas* (qualities, attributes) that we are conscious of, reduce themselves to *agunas* (non-gunas) in Him; He is not bound by anything, and is perceptible only by the expansion and development of our spiritual vision; as soon as the illusion of ignorance is dispelled, this supreme unalloyed beatitude is attained. By foregoing the objects of both pleasure and pain and by renouncing the feelings which bind him to the things of earth, a man may attain Brahm (supreme spirit or salvation). O good Brāhmana, I have now briefly explained to thee all this, as I have heard. What else dost thou wish to know.

Thus ends the two hundred and thirteenth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsya of the Vana Parva.

Section CCXIV.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya said,—When O Yudhishthira, all this mystery of salvation was explained to that Brāhmana, he was highly pleased and he said addressing the fowler,—'All this that thou hast explained, is rational, and it seems to me that there is nothing in connection with the mysteries of religion, which thou dost not know.' The fowler replied,—O good and great Brāhmana, thou shalt perceive with thine own eyes,

---

tal state of a person who does his duty without looking or hoping for any reward here or hereafter.

all the virtue that I lay claim to, and by reason of which I have attained this blissful state. Rise, worshipful sir, and quickly enter this inner apartment. O virtuous man, it is proper that thou shouldst see my father and my mother.' Mārkandeya continued—Thus aderessed the Brāhmana went in, and beheld a fine beautiful mansion. It was a magnificent house divided in four suites of rooms, admired by gods and looking like one of their palaces; it was also furnished with seats and beds, and was redolent with excellent perfumes. His revered parents clad in white robes, having finished their meals, were seated at ease. The fowler beholding them prostated himself before them with his head at their feet. His aged parents then addressed him thus,—Rise, O man of piety, rise, may righteousness shield thee, we are much pleased with thee for thy piety; mayst thou be blessed with a long life, and with knowledge, high intelligence, and fulfilment of thy desires. Thou art a good and dutiful son, for, we are constantly and seasonably looked after by thee, and even amongst the celestials thou hast not another divinity* to worship. By constantly subduing thyself, thou hast become endowed with the self-restraning powers of Brāhmanas and all thy grand-sires and ancestors are constantly pleased with thee for thy self-restraining virtues, and for thy piety towards us. In thought, word or action thy attention to us never flags, and it seems that at present thou hast no other thought in thy mind (save as to how to please us). As Rāma, the son of Jamadagni, laboured to please his aged parents, so hast thou, O son, done to please us, and even more. Then the fowler introduced the Brāhmana to his parents, and they received him with the usul salutation of welcome,† and the Brāhmana accepting their welcome, enquired if they, with their children and servants, were all right at home, and if they were always enjoying good health at that time (of life). The aged couple replied,—'At home

* Amongst Hindus, parents are, looked upon as a sort of divinity. To them are due the honours which are due to the Great Maker of all beings.

† Swagatam is literally well-met.

O Brāhmana, we are all right, with all our servants. Hast thou, adorable Sir, reached this place without any difficulty?' Mārkandeya continued,—"The Brāhmana replied,—'Yes, I have' then the fowler addressing himself to the Brāhmana said to him. These my parents, worshipful Sir, are the idols, that I worship, whatever is due to the gods, I do unto them. As the thirtythree gods with Indra at their head are worshipped by all men, so are these aged parents of mine worshipped by me. As Brāhmanas exert themselves for the purpose of procuring offerings for their gods, so do I act with diligence for these two (idols of mine). These my father and mother, O Brāhmana, are my supreme gods, and I seek to please them always with offerings of flowers, fruits and gems. To me they are like the three sacred fires mentioned by the learned; and O Brāhmana, they seem to me to be as good as sacrifices, or the four *Vedas*. My five life-giving airs,* my wife and children and friends are all for them (dedicated to their service). And with my wife and children I always attend on them. O good Brāhmana, with my own hands I assist them in bathing, and also wash their feet, and give them food, and I say to them only what is agreeable, leaving out what is unpleasant. I consider it to be my highest duty to do what is agreeable to them even though it be not strictly justifiable. And, O Brāhmana I am always diligent in attending on them. The two parents, the sacred fire, the soul and the spiritual preceptor, these five, O good Brāhmana are worthy of the highest reverence from a person who seeks prosperity. By serving them properly, one acquires the merit of perpetually keeping up the sacred fire. And it is the eternal and invariable duty of all house-holders.

Thus ends the two hundred and fourteenth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

---

* See ante, page 656.

Section CCXV.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued,—"The virtuous fowler, having introduced his (both) parents to that Brāhmana as his highest *gurus*, again spoke to him as follows,—'Mark thou the power of this virtue of mine, by which my inner spiritual vision is extended. For this, thou wast told by that self-restrained, truthful lady, devoted to her husband, 'Hie thee to Mithilā; for, there lives a fowler who will explain to thee, the mysteries of religion.' The Brāhmana said,—'O pious man so constant in fulfilling thy religions obligations, bethinking myself of what that truthful good-natured lady so true to her husband, hath said, I am convinced that thou art really endowed with very high qualities.' The fowler replied.—I have no doubt, my lord, that what that lady so faithful to her husband, said to thee about me, was said with full knowledge of the facts. I have, O Brāhmana, explained to thee all this as a matter of favour. and now, good Sir, listen to me. I shall explain what is good for thee. O good Brāhmana, of irreproachable character, thou hast wronged thy father and thy mother, for thou hast left home without their permission, for the purpose of learning the *Vedas*. Thou hast not acted properly in this matter, for thy ascetic and aged parents have become entirely blind from grief at thy loss. Do thou return home to console them. May this virtue never forsake thee. Thou art high minded, of ascetic merit, and always devoted to thy religion, but all these have become useless to thee. Do thou without delay return to console thy parents. Do have some regard for my words and do not act otherwise; I tell thee what is good for thee, O Brāhmana *Rishi*; Do thou return home this very day.' The Brāhmana replied'—'This that thou hast said, is undoubtedly true, mayst thou, O pious man, attain prosperity; I am much pleased with thee.' The fowler said,—O good Brāhmana as thou practisest with assiduousness those divine, ancient, and eternal virtues which are so difficult of attainment by even pure-minded persons, thou appearest (to me) like a divine be-

ing, return to the side of thy father and mother and be quick and diligent in honouring thy parents; for, I do not know if there is any virtue higher than this. The Brāhmana replied,—'By a piece of singular good luck have I arrived here, and by a piece of similar good luck have I thus been associated with thee. It is very difficult to find out in our midst, a person who can so well expound the mysteries of religion ; there is scarcely one man among thousands, who is well-versed in the science of religion. I am very glad, O great man, to have secured thy friendship, mayst thou be prosperous. I was on the point of falling into hell, but was extricated by thee. It was destined to be so, for thou didst (unexpectedly) come in my way. And O great man, as the fallen King Yayati was saved by his virtuous grandsons (daughter's sons), so have I now been saved by thee. According to thy advice, I shall honour my father and my mother ; for, a man with an impure heart can never expound the mysteries of sin and righteousness. As it is very difficult for a person born in the Sudra class to learn the mysteries of the eternal religion, I do not consider thee to be a Sudra. There must surely be some mystery in connection with this matter. Thou must have attained the Sudra's estate by reason of the fruition of thine own past *karma*. O magnanimous man, I long to know the truth about this matter. Do thou tell it to me with attention and according to thy own inclination.

The fowler replied,—'O good Brāhmana, Brāhmanas are worthy of all respect from me. Listen, O sinless one, to this story of a previous existence of mine. O son of an excellent Brāhmana, I was formerly a Brāhmana, well-read in the *Vedas*, and an accomplished student of the *Vedangas*. Through my own fault have I been degraded to my present state. A certain king, accomplished in the science of *dhanurveda* (science of archery) was my friend ; and from his companionship, O Brāhmana, I too became skilled in archery ; and one day, the king in company with his ministers, and followed by his best warriors went out on a hunting expedition. He killed a large number of deer, near a hermitage. I too, O good Brāhmana discharged a terrible arrow, And a *Rishi* was wounded

by that arrow with its head bent out. He fell down upon the ground, and screaming loudly said,—'I have harmed no one, what sinful man has done this!' And, my lord, taking him for a deer, I went up to him and saw that he was pierced through the body by my arrow. On account of this wicked deed, I was sorely grieved (in mind). And then I said to that *rishi* of severe ascetic merit, who was loudly crying, lying upon the ground,—'I have done this unwittingly, O *Rishi*.' And also said to the *Muni* 'Do thou think it proper to pardon all this transgression.' But, O Brāhmana, the *Rishi*, lashing himself into fury, said to me,—'Thou shalt be born as a cruel fowler in the Sudra class.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and fifteenth Section in the Mārkandeya Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

Section CCXVI.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

The fowler continued,—Thus cursed by that *Rishi*, I sought to propitiate him with these words,—'Pardon me, O *Muni*, I have done this wicked deed unwittingly. It behoves thee to pardon all that. Do thou, worshipful sir, soothe yourself'. The *Rishi* replied,—the curse that I have pronounced can never be falsified, this is certain. But from kindness towards thee, I shall do thee a favour. Though born in the Sudra class, thou shalt remain a pious man, and thou shalt undoubtedly honour thy parents; and by honouring them thou shalt attain great spiritual perfection; thou shalt also remember the events of thy past life and shalt go to heaven; and on the expiation of this curse, thou shalt again become a Brāhmana. O best of bipeds, thus, of old, was I cursed by that *Rishi* of severe power, and thus was he propitiated by me. Then O good Brāhmana, I extricated the arrow from his body, and took him into the hermitage, but he was not deprived of his life, (recovered). O good Brāhmana I have thus described to thee, what happened to me of old, and also how I can go to heaven here-after.' The Brāhmana said,—O thou of great intelligence, all men are thus subject to happi-

ness or misery, thou shouldst not therefore grieve for that. In obedience to the customs of thy (present) race thou hast pursued these wicked ways, but thou art always devoted to virtue and versed in the ways and mysteries of the world. And, O learned man, these being the duties of thy profession, the stain of evil *karma* will not attach to thee. And after dwelling here for some little time, thou shalt again become a Brāhmana; and even now, I consider thee, to be a Brāhmana, there is no doubt about this. For, the Brāhmana who is vain and haughty, who is addicted to vices and wedded to evil and degrading practices, is like a Sudra. On the other hand, I consider a Sudra who is always adorned with these virtues,—righteousness, self-restraint, and truthfulness,—as a Brāhmana. A man becomes a Brāhmana by his character, By his own evil *karma* a man attains an evil and terrible doom, O good man, I believe that sin in thee has now died out. Thou must not grieve for this, for men like thee, who are so virtuous and learned in the ways and mysteries of the world can have no cause for grief.'

The fowler replied,—'The bodily afflictions should be cured with medicines, and the mental ones with spiritual wisdom. This is the power of knowledge. Knowing this, the wise should not behave like boys. Men of low intelligence are over powered with grief at the occurrence of something which is not agreeable to them, or non-occurrence of something which is good or much-desired. Indeed all creatures are subject to this characteristic (of grief or happiness). It is not merely a single creature or class that is subject to misery. Cognisant of this evil, people quickly mend their ways, and if they perceive it at the very outset they succeed in curing it altogether. Whoever grieves for it, only makes himself uneasy. Those wise men whose knowledge has made them happy and contented, and who are indifferent to happiness and misery alike, are really happy. The wise are always contented and the foolish always discontented. There is no end to discontent, and contentment is the highest happiness. People who have reached the perfect way, do not grieve, they are always conscious of the final destiny of all creatures. One must not give way to

discontent,* for it is like a virulent poison. It kills persons of undeveloped intelligence, just as a child is killed by an enraged snake. That man has no manliness whose energies have left him, and who is over-powered with perplexity when an occasion for the exercise of vigour presents itself. Our actions are surely followed by their consequences. Whoever merely gives himself up to passive indifference (to worldly affairs) accomplishes no good. Instead of murmering one must try to find out the way by which he can secure exemption from (spiritual) misery; and the means of salvation found, he must then free himself from sensuality. The man who has attained a high state of spiritual knowledge is always conscious of the great deficiency (instablity) of all matter. Such a person keeping in view the final doom (of all), never grieves. I too, O learned man, do not grieve; I stay here (in this life) biding my time. For this reason, O best of men, I am not perplexed (with doubts).' The Brāhmana said,—'Thou art wise and high in spiritual knowledge and vast is thy intelligence. Thou who art versed in holy writ, art content with thy spiritual wisdom, I have no cause to find fault with thee. Adieu, O best of pious men, mayst thou be prosperous, and may righteousness shield thee, and mayst thou be assiduous in the practice of virtue !"

Mārkandeya continued,—" The fowler said to him, 'Be it so.' And the good Brāhmana walked round him† and then departed. And the Brāhmana returning home was duly assiduous in his attention to his old parents. I have thus, O pious Yudhishthira, narrated in detail to thee this history full of moral instruction, which thou, my good son, didst ask me to recite,—the virtue of women's devotion to their husbands, and that of filial piety. Yudhishthira replied,—'O most pious Brāhmana and best of *Munis*, thou hast related to me this good and wonderful moral story; and listening to thee,

---

* *Vishada* in the original. It means discontent. But here it means more a mixture of discontent perplexity and confusion than mere discontent.

† A form of Hindu etiquette at parting.

O learned man, my time has glided away like a moment; but, O adorable sir, I am not as yet satiated with hearing this moral* discourse.

Thus ends the two hundred and sixteenth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXVII.

(*Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.*)

Vaiçampayana continued,—The virtuous king Yudhishthira having listened to this excellent religious discourse, again addressed himself to the *Rishi* Mārkandeya saying,—'Why did the fire-god hide himself in water in olden times, and why did Angiras, of great splendour, officiating as fire-god, use to convey† oblations during his dissolution. There is but one fire, but according to the nature of its action, it is seen to divide itself into many. O worshipful sir, I long to be enlightened on all these points,—how the *Kumara* ‡ was born, how he came to be known as the son of Agni (the fire-god) and how he was begotten by Rudra of Ganga and Krittika; O noble scion of Bhrigu's race, I desire to learn all this accurately as it happened. O great *Muni,* I am filled with great curiosity. Markandeya replied,—'In this connection, this old story is cited by the learned, as to how the carrier of oblations (the fire-god) in a fit of rage, sought the waters of the sea inorder to perform a penance, and how the adorable Angira transforming himself into the fire-god, destroyed darkness and distressed the world with his scorching rays. In olden times. O long armed hero, the great Angira performed a wonderful penance in his hermitage, he even excelled the fire-god, the carrier

---

* It is so very difficult to translate the word *dharma,* religion and morals were invariably associated with each other in ancient Hindu mind.

† Angi or fire was supposed to convey the oblations offered by men to the Gods.

‡ *Kumara* means a boy, hence a prince. Here Kartika the war-god is meant.

of oblations, in splendour and in that state he illumined the whole universe. At that time the fire-god was also performing a penance and was greatly distressed by his (Angira's effulgence. He was greatly depressed, but did not know what to do. Then that adorable god thought within himself, 'Brahma has created another fire-god for this universe. As I have been practising austerities, my services as the presiding deity of fire have been dispensed with ; and then he considered how he could reestablish himself as the god of fire. He beheld the great *Muni* giving heat to the whole universe like fire, and approached him slowly with fear. But Angira said to him,—'Do thou quickly re-establish yourself as the fire animating the universe, thou art well-known in the three stable worlds, and thou wast first created by Brahma to dispel darkness. Do thou, O destroyer of darkness, quickly occupy thine own proper place.' Agni replied,—'My reputation has been injured now in this world, and thou art become the fire-god, and people will know thee, and not me, as fire. I have relinquished my god-hood of fire, do thou become the primeval fire and I shall officiate as the second or *prajapatyaka* fire' Angira replied,—"Do thou become the fire-god and the destroyer of darkness and do thou attend to thy sacred duty of clearing the people's way to heaven,* and do thou, O lord, make me speedily thy first child.' Mārkandeya continued,—Hearing these words of Angira, the fire-god did as desired, and, O king, Angira had a son named Vrihaspati. Knowing him to be the first son of Angira by Agni, the gods, O Bharata, came and enquired about the mystery. And thus asked by the gods he then, enlightened them and the gods then accepted the explanation † of Angiras. In this connection, I shall describe to thee various sorts of fire of great refulgence, which are here variously known in the *Brāhmanas* ‡ by their respective uses.

---

* By carrying their oblations to the Gods.

† The Maharaja of Burdwan translates it thus :—The Gods then accepted the request of Angira that his son might become their guru or spiritual adviser. The latter part of this chapter is rather un-intelligible.

‡ Portions of the Vedas.

Thus ends the two hundred and seventeenth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXVIII.

(*Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.*)

Mārkandeya continued,—O ornament of Kuru's race, he (Angira) who was the third son of Brahma had a wife of the name of Subha. Do thou hear of the children he had by her. His son Vrihaspati, O king was very famous, large-hearted and of great bodily vigour, his genius and learning were profound, and he had a great reputation as a councillor. Bhanumati was his first-born daughter. She was the most beautiful of all his children. Angira's second daughter was called Raga, she was so named because she was the object of all creature's love.* Siniwali was the third daughter of Angira. Her body was of such slender make, that she was visible at one time and invisible at another; and for this reason she was likened to Rudra's daughter. Archismati was his fourth daugher, she was so named from her great refulgence. And his fifth daughter was called Havismati, so named from her accepting Havis or oblations. The sixth daughter of Angiras was called Mahismati the pious. O keen-witted being, the seventh daughter of Angira is known by the name of Mahamati, she is always present at sacrifices of great splen dour, and that worshipful daughter of Angira, whom they call unrivalled, and without portion' and about whom people utter the words *kuhu kuhu* in wonder, is known by the name of Kuhu.

Thus ends the two hundred and eighteenth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXIX.

(*Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.*)

Mārkandeya continued,—Vrihaspati had a wife (called Tara) belonging to the lunar world. By her, he had six sons

---

* *Raga* means love.

partaking of the energy of fire, and one daughter. The fire in whose honour oblations of clarified butter are offered at the *Paurnamasa* and other sacrifices, was a son of Vrihaspati called Sanju; he was of great ascetic merit. At the *chaturmasya* (four-monthly) and *aswamedha* (horse) sacrifices, animals are offered first in his honour, and this powerful fire is, indicated by numerous flames. Sanju's wife was called Satya, she was of matchless beauty, and she sprang from *dharma* (righteousness) for the sake of truth. The blazing fire was his son, and he had three daughters of great religious merit. The fire which is honored with the first oblations at sacrifices is his first son called Bharadwaja. The second son of Sanju is called Bharata in whose honour oblations of clarified butter are offered with the sacrifical ladle (called *Sruk*) at all the full moon (*paurnamasya*) sacrifices. Besides these, there are three daughters of whom Bharata is the senior. He had a son named Bharata and a daughter called Bharati. The Bharata fire is the son of the Prajapati Bharata *Agni* (fire). And, O ornament of Bharata's race, because he is greatly honoured, he is also called 'the great.' Vira is Bharadwaja's wife, she gave birth to Vira. It is said by the Brāhmanas that he is worshipped like *Soma* (with the same hymns) with offerings of clarified butter. He is joined with *Soma* in the secondary oblation of clarified butter and is also called Rathaprabhu Rathadhwana and Kumbhareta. He begat a son named Siddhi by his wife Sarayu, and enveloped the sun with his splendour; and from being the presiding genius of the fire sacrifice he is ever mentioned in the hymns in praise of fire. And the fire *nischyabana* praises the earth only, he never suffers in reputation splendour and prosperity. The sinless fire Satya blazing with pure flame is his son. He is free from all taint and is not defiled by sin, and is the regulator of time. That fire has another name Nishkriti, because he accomplishes the Nishkriti (relief) of all blatant creatures here. When properly worshipped he vonchsafes good fortune. His son is called *Swana*, who is the generator of all diseases, he inflicts severe sufferings on people for which they cry aloud. and moves in the intelligence of the whole universe And the

other fire (Vrihaspati's third son) is called Viswajit by men of spiritual wisdom ; The fire which is known as the internal heat by which the food of all creatures is digested, is (the fourth son of Vrihaspati) known through all the worlds, O Bharata by the name of Viswabhuk. He is self-restrained, of great religions merit, and is a Brahmacharin, and he is worshipped by Brāhmanas at the paka-sacrifices. The sacred river Gomati was his wife and by him all religious-minded men perform their rites. And that terrible water-drinking sea-fire called Vadava (is the fifth son of Vrihaspati). This Brahmic fire has a tendency to move upwards and hence it is called Urdhabhag, and is seated in the vital air called *prana*. The sixth son is called the great Swishtakrit; for by him oblations become *swishta* (*su* excellently, and *ishta*, offered) and the *udagdhara* oblation is always māde in his honour, And when all creatures are calmed the fire called Manyauti becomes filled with fury. This inexorably terrible and highly irascible fire is the daughter of Vrihaspati, and is known as Swaha and is present in all matter. (By the respective influences of the three qualities of *swata*, *rajas* and *tamas* swaha had three sons,)* by the first she had a son who was equalled by none in heaven in personal beauty, and from this fact he was surnamed by the gods as the† kama-fire. (By reason of the second) she had a son called the Amogha or invincible fire, the destroyer of his enemies in battle. Assured of success he curbs his anger and is armed with a bow and seated on a chariot and adorned with wreaths of flowers. (from the action of the third quality she had a son) the great Uktha (the means of salvation) praised by (a kin to) three *Ukthas*‡ He is the ori-

---

* The portions within brackets are not in the original. They are necessary to explain what follows. I have only followed the commentator and other translators, in supplying the ellipses parenthetically.

† Kama is a name of the god love Indian Cupid.

‡ The body the exciting cause of our actions is an *uktha*, the soul the vivifier of the body is the second *uktha*, and the Supreme Spirit the inciter of the soul is the third *uktha*.

ginator of the great word$ and is therefore known as the Samaswasa or the means of rest (salvation).

Thus ends the two hundred and nineteenth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXX.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsya Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued,—He (Uktha) performed a severe penance lasting for many years, witn the view of heaving a pious son equal unto Brahma in reputation. And when the invocation was made with the *vyahriti* hymns and with the aid of the five sacred fires,—Kasyapa, Vasishta, Prana the son of Prana, Chyabana the son of Angira, and Suvarchaka.—there arose a very bright energy (force) full of the animating (creative) principle, and of five different colours. Its head was of the colour of the blazing fire, its arms were bright like the sun, and its skin and eyes were golden-coloured and its feet, O Bharata were black. Its five colours were given to it by those five men by reason of their great penance. This celestial being is therefore described as appertaining to five men, and he is the progenitor of five tribes. After having performed a penance for ten thousand years, that being of great ascetic merit, produced the terrible fire appertaining to the *pitris* (manes of ancestors) inorder to begin the work of creation, and from his head and mouth respectively he created Vrihat and Rathantara (day and night) who quickly steal away (life &c.) He also created Siva from his navel, Indra from his might and wind and fire from his soul, and from his two arms sprang the hymns *Udatta* and *Anudatta.* He also produced the mind, and the five senses, and other creatures. Having created these, he produced the five sons of the *Pitris.* Of these Pranidhi was the son of Vrihadratha, Vrihadhatha the

---

* The Word of God.

son of Kasyapa. Bhanu was the good son of Chyavana, Saurava the son of Suvarchaka and Anudātta the son of Prāna. These twentyfive beings are reputed (to have been created by him). Tapa also created fifteen other gods who obstruct sacrifices.*—They are Subhima, Bhima, Atibhima, Bhimavala and Avala; Sumitra, Mitravān, Mitrajna, Mitravardhana and Mitradharman,† and Sura-pravira, Vira, Suveça, Suravarchas and Surahantri. These gods are divided into three classes of five each. Located here in this world, they destroy the sacrifices of the gods in heaven; they frustrate their objects and spoil their oblations of clarified butter. They do this only to spite the sacred fires carrying oblations to the gods. If the officiating priests are careful, they place the oblations in their honour outside of the sacrificial altar. To that particular place where the sacred fire may be placed, they cannot go. They carry the oblations of their votaries by means of wings. When appeased by hymns, they do not frustrate the sacrificial rites. Vrihaduktha, another son of Tapa, belongs to the Earth. He is worshipped here in this world by pious men performing *Agnihotra* sacrifices. Of the son of Tapa who is known as Rathantara, it is said by officiating priests that the sacrificial oblation offered in his honour is offered to Mitravinda. The celebrated Tapa was thus very happy with his sons.

Thus ends the two hundred and twentieth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

---

* In Hindu Mythology there are no gods who destroy sacrifices. It is only the *Asuras* who do so.

The Burdwan translator renders this passage,—"Fifteen other gods belonging to western nations or *Asuras*." It is noticeable that the beings that were denounced as *Asuras* by the Hindus were worshipped as gods (*Asuras*) by the followers of Zaratustra (Zaroaster).

† In connections with the names of these Mitra-gods it is to be remembered that Mitra was the name of the principal god of the ancient Persians.

Section CCXXI.

(Mārkandeya-Samasya Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued.—The fire called Bharata was bound by severe rules of asceticism. Pushtimati is another name of this fire; for when he is satisfied he vonchsafes *pushti* (development) to all creatures, and for this reason he is called *Bharata* (or the Cherisher). And that other fire, by name Siva, is devoted to the worship of Sakti (the forces or the presding deity of the forces of Nature), and because he always relieves the sufferings of all creatures afflicted with misery, he is called Siva (the giver of good). And on the acquisition of great ascetic wealth by Tapa, an intelligent son named Purandara was born to inherit the same. Another son named Usmā was also born. This fire is observed in the vapour of all matter. A third son Manu was born. He officiated as Prajāpati. The Brāhmanas who are learned in the Vedas, then speak of the exploits of the fire Sambhu. And after that the bright Avasathya fire of great effulgence is spoken of by the Brāhmanas. Tapa thus created the five Urjaskara fires, all bright as gold. These all share the *Soma* drink in Sacrifices. The great sun-god when fatigued (after his day's labours) is known as the Praçānta fire. He created the terrible *Asuras* and various other creatures of the earth. Angira too created the *Prajapati* Bhānu, the son of Tapa. He is also called Vrihadbhānu (the great Bhānu) by Brāhmanas learned in the Vedas. Bhānu married Suprajā, and Vrihadbhānu the daughter of Surya (the sun-god). They gave birth to six sons; do thou hear of their progeny. The fire who gives strength to the weak is called Valada (or the giver of strength). He is the first son of Bhānu, and that other fire who looks terrible when all the elements are in a tranquil state is called the Manjuman fire; he is the second son of Bhānu. And the fire in whose honour oblations of clarified butter are enjoined to be made here at the *Darça* and *Paurnamāsa* sacrifices, and who is known as Vishnu in this world, is

(the third son of Bhānu) called Angira or Dhritimān. And the fire to whom with Indra, the *Agrayana* oblation is enjoined to be made is called the Agrayana fire. He is the (fourth) son of Bhānu· The fifth son of Bhānu is Agraha who is the source of the oblations which are daily made for the performance of the *Chaturmāsya* (four-monthly) rites. And Stuva is the sixth son of Bhānu. Niçā was the name of another wife of that Manu who is known by the name of Bhānu. She gave birth to one daughter, the two Agni-Shomas, and also five other fire-gods. The resplendent fire-god who is honoured with the first oblations in company with the presiding deity of the clouds is called Vaiçwānara. And that other fire who is called the lord of all the worlds is Viswapati—the second son of Manu. And the daughter of Manu is called Swistakrit, because by oblations unto her one acquires great merit. Though she was the daughter of Hiranyakaçipu, she yet became his wife for her evil deeds. She, is however, one of the Prajapatis. And that other fire which has its seat in the vital airs of all creatures, and animates their bodies, is called Sannihita. It is the cause of our perceptions of sound and form. That divine spirit whose course is marked by black and white stains, who is the supporter of fire, and who though free from sin is the accomplisher of tainted *karma*, whom the wise regard as a great *Rishi*, is the fire Kapila—the propounder of the *Yoga* systeem called Sānkhya. The fire through whom the elementary spirits always receive the offerings called *Agra* made by other creatures at the performance of all the peculiar rites in this world is called Agrani. And these other bright fires famous in the world, were created for the rectification of the *Agnihotra* rites when marred by any defects. If the fires interlap each other by the action of the wind, then the rectification must be made with the *Ashtakapāla* rites in honour of the fire Suchi. And if the southern fire comes in contact with the two other fires, then rectification must be made by the performance of the *Ashtakapāla* rites in honour of the fire Viti. If the fires in their place called Nibeça come in contact with the fire called Dabagni, then

the *Ashtakapāla* rites must be performed in honour of the fire Suchi for rectificatiou. And if the perpetual fire is touched by a woman in her monthly course, then for rectification the *Ashtakapāla* rites must be performed in honour of the fire called Dasyuman. If at the time of the performance of the *Agnihotra* rites the death of any creature is spoken of, or if animals die, then rectification must be made with the performance of the *Ashtakapāla* rites in honour of the Suraman fire. The Brāhmana, who while suffering from a disease, is unable to offer oblations to the sacred fire for three nights, must make amends for the same by performing the *Ashtakapāla* rites in honour of the northern fire. He who has performed the *Darça* and the *Paurnamāsa* rites must make the rectification with the performance of the *Ashtakapāla* rites in honour of the Patikrit fire. If the fire of a lying-in room comes in contact with the perpetual sacred fire, then rectification must be made with the performance of the *Ashtakapāla* rites in honour of the Agniman fire.

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-first Section in the Mārkandeya Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

Section CCXXII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued.—'Muditā, the favorite wife of the fire Saha, used to live in water. And Saha who was the regent of the earth and sky begat in that wife of his a highly sacred fire called Advuta. There is a tradition amongst learned Brāhmanas that this fire is the ruler and inner soul of all creatures. He is worshipful, resplendent and the lord of all the great *Bhutas* here. And that fire, under the name of Grihapati, is ever worshipped at all sacrifices and conveys all the oblations that are made in this world. That great son of Saha—the great Adbhuta fire—is the soul of the waters and the prince and regent of the sky and the lord of everything great. His (son) the Bharata fire consumes the dead bodies of all creatures. His first son Kratu is

known as Niyata at the performance of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice. That powerful prime fire (Saha) is always missed by the gods, because when he sees Niyata approaching him he hides himself in the sea from fear (of contamination). Searching for him in every direction, the gods could not (once) find him out; and on beholding Atharvan the fire said to him,—O valiant being, do thou carry the oblations for the gods ! I am disabled from want of strength. Attaining the state of the red-eyed fire, do thou condescend to do me this favour !—Having thus advised Atharvan, the fire went away to some other place. But his place of concealment was divulged by the finny tribe. Upon them the fire denounced this curse in anger,—You shall be the food of all creatures in various ways.—And then that carrier of oblations spoke unto Atharvan (as before). Though entreated by the gods, he did not agree to continue carrying their oblations. He then became insensible and instantly gave up the ghost.* And leaving his material body, he entered into the bowels of the Earth. Coming into contact with the Earth, he created the different metals. Force and scent arose from his puss; the *Deodār* pine from his bones ; glass from his phlegm ; the *Marakata* jewel from his bile ; and the black iron from his liver. And all the world has been embellished with these three substances (wood, stone and iron). The clouds were made from his nails, and corals from his veins. And, O king, various other metals were produced from his body. Thus leaving his material body, he remained absorbed in (spiritual) meditation. He was roused by the penance of Bhrigu and Angira. The powerful fire thus gratified with penance, blazed forth intensely. But on beholding the *Rishi* (Atharvan), he again sought his watery refuge. At this extinction of the fire, the whole world was frightened, and sought the protection of Atharvan, and the gods and others began to worship him. Atharvan rummaged the whole sea in the presence of all those beings eager with expectation, and finding out the fire, himself began the work of creation. Thus in olden times the fire was destroyed

* Body, in the original.

and called back to life by the adorable Atharvan. But now he invariably carries the oblations of all creatures. Living in the sea and travelling about various countries, he produced the various fires mentioned in the *Vedas*.

The river Indus, the five rivers (of the Panjab), the Sone, the Devikā, the Saraswati, the Gangā, the Satakumbha, the Sarayu, the Gandaki, the Charmanwati, the Mahi, the Medhyā, the Medhātithi, the three rivers Tāmrāvati, the Vetravati, and the Kausiki; the Tamasā, the Narmadā, the Godāvari, the Vennā, the Upavennā, the Bhimā, the Vadawā, the Bhārati, the Suprayogā, the Kāveri, the Murmurā, the Tungavennā, the Krishnavennā, and the Kapilā, these rivers, O Bhārata, are said to be the mothers of the fires! The fire called Adbhuta had a wife of the name of Priyā, and Vibhu was the eldest of his sons by her. There are as many different kinds of *Soma-sacrifices* as the number of fires mentioned before. All this race of fires, first born of the spirit of Brahmā, sprang also from the race of Atri. Atri in his own mind conceived these sons, desirous of extending the creation. By this act, the fires came out of his own Brāhmic frame. I have thus narrated to thee the history of the origin of these fires. They are great, resplendent, and unrivalled in power, and they are the destroyers of darkness. Know that the powers of these fires are the same as those of the Adbhuta fire as related in the Vedas! For all these fires are one and the same. This adorable being,—the first-born fire,—must be considered as one. For like the *Yotishtoma* sacrifice he came out of Angira's body in various forms. I have thus described to thee the history of the great race of Angi (fires) who when duly worshipped with the various hymns, carry the oblations of all creatures to the gods!

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-second Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

Section CCXXIII.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued,—O sinless scion of Kuru's race, I have described to thee the various branches of the race of Agni! Listen now to the story of the birth of the intelligent Kartikeya! I shall tell thee of that wonderful and famous and highly energetic son of the Adbhuta fire begotten of the wives of the *Brahmarshis*! In ancient times the gods and *Asuras* were very active in destroying one other. And the terrible *Asuras* always succeeded in defeating the gods. And Purandara, (Indra) beholding the great slaughter of his armies by them and anxious to find out a leader for the celestial host, thought within himself,—I must find out a mighty person who observing the ranks of the celestial army shattered by the *Dānavas* will be able to reorganise it with vigour.—He then repaired to the Mānasa mountains and was there deeply absorbed in thoughts of that nature, when he heard the heart-rending cries of a woman to the effect—May some one come quick and rescue me, and either indicate a husband for me, or be my husband himself!—Puran dara said to her,—Do not be afraid, lady!—And having said these words, he saw Keçin (an *Asura*) adorned with a crown and mace in hand, standing even like a hill of metals at a distance and holding that lady by the hand. Vāsava addressed then that *Asura*, saying,—Why art thou bent on behaving insolently to this lady? Know that I am the god who wields the thunderbolt! Refrain thou from doing any violence to this lady!—To him Keçin replied,—Do thou, O Sakra, leave her alone! I desire to possess her. Thinkest thou, O slayer of Pāka, that thou shalt be able to return home with thy life?—With these words Keçin hurled his mace for slaying Indra. Vāsava cut it up in its course with his thunder-bolt. Then Keçin, furious with rage, hurled a huge mass of rock at him. Beholding that, he of a hundred sacrifices rent it asunder with his thunder-bolt, and it fell down upon the ground. And Keçin himself was wounded by that falling mass of roc k,

Thus sorely afflicted, he fled leaving the lady behind. And when the *Asura* was gone, Indra said to that lady,—Who and whose wife art thou, O lady with a beautiful face, and what has brought thee here?—

Thus ends the two hundred and twentythird Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsya of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXIV.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

The lady replied,—I am a daughter of Prajāpati (the lord of all creatures, Brahmā) and my name is Devasenā. My sister Daityasenā has ere this been ravished by Keçin. We two sisters with our maids habitually used to come to these Mānasa mountains for pleasures with the permission of Prajāpati. And the great *Asura* Keçin used daily to pay his court to us. Daityasenā, O conqueror of Pāka,* listened to him, but I did not. Daityasenā was, therefore, taken away by him, but, O illustrious one, thou hast rescued me with thy might! And now, O Lord of the celestials, I desire that thou shouldst select an invincible husband for me!—To this Indra replied.—Thou art a cousin of mine, thy mother being a sister of my mother Dākshāyani, and now I desire to hear thee relate thine own prowess! The lady replied,—O hero with long arms, I am *Avalā* (weak) but my husband must be powerful. And by the potency of my father's boon, he will be respected by gods and *Asuras* alike. Indra said,—O blameless creature, I wish to hear from thee, what sort of power thou wishest thy husband to possess!—The lady replied,—That manly and famous and powerful being dovoted to Brahmā, who is able to conquer all the celestials, *Asuras, Yakshas, Kinnaras, Uragas, Rākshasas* and the evil-minded *Daityas* and to subdue all the worlds with thee, shall be my husband.—

Mārkandeya continued,—On hearing her speech, Indra

---

* *Avalā* is a common name for women. It means one who has no *vala* or strength or power. The word is also used as an adjective.

was grieved and deeply thought within himself,—There is no husband for this lady, answering to her own description.—And that god adorned with Sun-like effulgence, then perceived the Sun rising on the Udaya hill,* and the great Soma (Moon) gliding into the Sun. It being the time of the new Moon, he of a hundred sarifices, at that *Raudra*† moment, observed the gods and *Asuras* fighting on the Sunrise hill. And he saw that the morning twilight was tinged with red clouds. And he also saw that the abode of Varuna had become blood-red. And he also observed Agni conveying oblations offered with various hymns by Bhrigu, Angira and others, and entering the disc of the Sun. And he further saw the twenty four *Parvans* adoring the Sun, and the terrible Soma also present in the Sun under such surroundings. And observing this union of the Sun and the Moon and that fearful conjunction of theirs, Sakra thought within himself,—This terrific conjunction of the Sun and the Moon forebodeth a fearful battle on the morrow. And the river Sindhu (Indus) too is flowing with a current of fresh blood, and the jackals with fiery faces are crying to the Sun. This great conjunction is fearful and full of energy. This union of the Moon (Soma) with the Sun and Agni is very wonderful. And if Soma giveth birth to a son now, that son may become the husband of this lady. And Agni also hath similar surroundings now, and he too is a god. If he too begetteth a son, that son may become the husband of this lady.—With these thoughts that illustrious celestial repaired to the regions of Brahmā, taking Devasena ‡ with him. And saluting the Grandsire he said unto him,—Do thou appoint a renowned warrior as husband of this lady. —Brahmā replied,—O slayer of *Asuras*, it shall be as thou hast intended! The issue of that union will be mighty and

---

* According to the Hindus, the Sun rises from and sets behind two hills respectively. He rises from the *Udaya* or Sun-rise hill and sets behind the *Asta* or Sun-set hill.

† *Raudra*—belonging to Rudra the god of fury, violence, war, &c.

‡ *Devasenā* literally means the celestial army. This fable seems to be an allegorical representation of the attempts made by Indra to procure a leader for the celestial host.

powerful accordingly. That powerful being will be the husband of this lady and the joint leader of thy forces with thee!—Thus addressed, the lord of the celestials and the lady bowed unto him and then repaired to the place where those great Brāhmanas, the powerful celestial *Rishis*—Vaçishta and others, lived. And with Indra at their head, the other gods also, desirous of drinking the Soma beverage, repaired to the sacrifices of those *Rishis* to receive their respective shares of the offerings. Having duly performed the ceremonies with the bright blazing fire, those great-minded persons offered oblations to the celestials. And the *Adbhuta* fire, that carrier of oblations, was invited with *mantras*. And coming out of the Solar disc, that lordly fire duly repaired thither, restraining speech. And, O chief of Bharata's race, that fire entering the sacrificial fire that had been ignited and unto which various offerings were made by the *Rishis* with recitations of hymns, took them with him and made them over to the dwellers of Heaven. And while returning from that place, he observed the wives of those high-souled *Rishis* sleeping at their ease on their respective beds. And those ladies had a complexion beautiful like that of an altar of gold, spotless like moon-beams, resembling fiery flames, and looking like blazing stars. And seeing those wives of the illustrious Brāhmanas with eager eyes, his mind became agitated and he was smitten with their charms. Restraining his heart he considered it improper for him to be thus agitated. And he said unto himself,—The wives of these great Brāhmanas are chaste and faithful and beyond the reach of other people's desires. I am filled with a desire to possess them. I cannot lawfully cast my eyes upon them nor ever touch them when they are not filled with desire. I shall, therefore, gratify myself daily with only looking at them by becoming their *Gārhapatya* (house-hold) fire.—

Mārkandeya continued,—The *Adbhuta* fire, thus transforming himself into a house-hold one, was highly gratified with seeing those gold-complexioned ladies and touching them with his flames. And influenced by their charms he dwelt there for a long time giving them his heart and

filled with an intense love for them. And baffled in all his efforts to win the hearts of those Brāhmana ladies, and his own heart tortured by love, he repaired to a forest with the certain object of destroying himself. A littlewhile before, Swāhā, the daughter of Daksha, had bestowed her love on him. That excellent lady had been endeavouring for a long time to detect his weak moments; but that blameless lady did not succeed in finding out any weakness in the calm and collected fire-god. But now that the god had betaken himself to a forest, actually tortured by the pangs of love, she thought within herself,—As I too am distressed with love, I shall assume the guise of the wives of the seven *Rishis*, and in that disguise I shall seek the fire-god so smitten with their charms. This done, he will be gratified and my desire too will be satisfied.—

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-fourth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXV.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued,—O lord of men, the beautiful Sivā endowed with great virtues and an unspotted character was the wife of Angirā (one of the seven *Rishis).* That excellent lady (Swāhā), at first assuming the disguise of Sivā, sought the presence of Agni unto whom she said,—O Agni, I am tortured with love for thee! Do thou think it fit to woo me! And if thou dost not accede to my request, know that I shall commit self-destruction. I am Sivā the wife of Angirā. I have come here according to the advice of the wives of the other *Rishis,* who have sent me here after due deliberation.—

Agni replied,—How didst thou know that I was tortured with love and how could the others—the beloved wives of the seven *Rishis,* of whom thou hast spoken, know this?—

Swāhā replied,—Thou art always a favourite with us, but we are afraid of thee. Now having read thy mind by well-known signs, they have sent me to thy presence. I have come

here to gratify my desire. Be thou quick, O Agni, to encompass the object of thy desire. My sisters-in-law are awaiting me, I must return soon.—

Mārkandeya continued,—Then Agni, filled with great joy and delight, married (Swāhā in the guise of) Sivā, and that lady joyfully cohabiting with him, held the *semen virile* in her hands. And then she thought within herself that those who would observe her in that disguise in the forest, would cast an unmerited slur upon the conduct of those Brāhmana ladies in connection with Agni. Therefore, to prevent this, she should assume the disguise of a bird, and in that state the more easily get out of the forest.

Mārkandeya continued,—Then assuming the disguise of a winged creature, she went out of the forest and reached the White mountain begirt with clumps of heath and other plants and trees, and guarded by seven-headed strange serpents with poison in their very looks, and abounding with Rākshasas, male and female, Piçāchas, terrible spirits, and various kinds of birds and animals. That excellent lady quickly ascending a peak of those mountains, threw that *semen* into a golden lake. And then assuming successively the forms of the wives of the high-souled seven *Rishis*, she continued to dally with Agni. But on account of the great ascetic merit of Arundhati and her devotion to her husband (Vaçista), she was unable to assume *her* form. And, O chief of Kuru's race, the lady Swāhā on the first lunar day threw six times into that lake the *semen* of Agni. And thrown there, it produced a male child endowed with great power. And from the fact of its being regarded by the *Rishis* as *cast off*, the child born therefrom came to be called by the name of *Skanda*. And the child had six faces, twelve ears, as many eyes, hands, and feet, one neck and one stomach. And it first assumed a form on the second lunar day, and it grew to the size of a little child on the third. And the limbs of Guha were developed on the fourth day. And being surrounded by masses of red clouds flashing forth lightning, it shone like the Sun rising in the midst of a mass of red clouds. And seizing the terrific and immense bow which was

used by the destroyer of the *Asura* Tripura for the destruction of the enemies of the gods, that mighty being uttered such a terrible roar that the three worlds with their mobile and immobile divisions became struck with awe. And hearing that sound which seemed like the rumbling of masses of big clouds, the great *Nāgas* Chitra and Airāvata were shaken with fear. And seeing them unsteady, that lad shining with Sun-like refulgence held them with both his hands. And with a dart in (another) hand, and with a stout, red-crested, big cock fast secured in another, that long-armed son of Agni began to sport about making a terrible noise. And holding an excellent conch-shell with two of his hands, that mighty being began to blow it to the great terror of even the most powerful creatures. And striking the air with two of his hands, and playing about on the hill-top, the mighty Mahāsena of unrivalled prowess, looked as if he were on the point of devouring the three worlds, and shone like the bright Sun-god at the moment of his ascension in the heavens. And that being of wonderful prowess and matchless strength, seated on the top of that hill, looked on with his numerous faces directed towards the different cardinal points, and observing various things, he repeated his loud roars. And on hearing those roars various creatures were prostrate with fear. And frightened and troubled in mind, they sought his protection. And all those persons of various orders who then sought the protection of that god are known as his powerful Brāhmana followers. And rising from his seat, that mighty god allayed the fears of all those people, and then drawing his bow, he discharged his arrows in the direction of the White mountain. And with those arrows the hill Krauncha, the son of Himavat, was rent asunder. And that is the reason why swans and vultures now migrate to the Sumeru mountains. The Krauncha hill, sorely wounded, fell down uttering fearful groans. And seeing him fallen, the other hills too began to scream. And that mighty being of unrivalled prowess, hearing the groans of the afflicted, was not at all moved, but himself uplifting his mace, yelled forth his war-whoop. And that high-souled being then

hurled his mace of great lustre and quickly rent in twain one of the peaks of the White mountain. And the White mountain being thus pierced by him, was greatly afraid of him and dissociating himself from the Earth fled with the other mountains. And the Earth was greatly afflicted and bereft of her ornaments on all sides. And in this distress, she went over to Skanda and once more shone with all her might. And the mountains too bowed down to Skanda and came back and stuck into the earth. And all creatures then celebrated the worship of Skanda on the fifth day of the lunar month.

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-fifth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

Section CCXXVI.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsya Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued,—When that powerful, high-souled, and mighty being was born, various kinds of fearful phenomena occurred. And the nature of males and females, of heat and cold, and of such other pairs of contraries, was reversed. And the planets, the cardinal points, and the firmament became radiant with light and the Earth began to rumble very much. And the *Rishis* even, seeking the welfare of the world, while they observed all these terrific prodigies on all sides, began with anxious hearts to restore tranquillity in the universe. And those who used to live in that Chaitra-ratha forest, said,—This very miserable condition of ours hath been brought about by Agni cohabiting with the six wives of the seven *Rishis*.—Others again who had seen the goddess assume the disguise of a bird, said,—This evil hath been brought about by a bird.—No one ever imagined that Swāhā was the authoress of that mischief. But having heard that the (new born) male child was hers, she went to Skanda and gradually revealed to him the fact that she was his mother. And those seven *Rishis*, when they heard that a son of great power had been born (to them), divorced their six wives with the exception of the adorable Arundhati, because all the dwellers of that forest protested that those six persons had been instrumental in

bringing forth the child. Swāhā too, O king, said again and again to the seven *Rishis*, saying,—Ye ascetics, this child is mine, your wives are not its mothers !—

The great *Muni* Viswāmitra had, after the conclusion of the sacrifice of the sevn *Rishis*, followed unseen the god of fire, while the latter was tortured with lust. He, therefore, knew everything as it happened and he was the first to seek the protection of Mahāsena. And he offered divine prayers to Mahāsena, and all the thirteen auspicious rites appertaining to childhood, such as the natal and other ceremonies, were all performed by the great *Muni* in respect of that child. And for the good of the world, he promulgated the virtues of the six-faced Skanda, and performed ceremonies in honor of the cock, the goddess *Sakti*, and the first followers of Skanda. And for this reason he became a great favourite of the celestial youth. That great *Muni* then informed the seven *Rishis* of the transformations of Swāhā and told them that their wives were perfectly innocent. But though thus informed, the seven *Rishis* abandoned their spouses unconditionally.—

Mārkandeyu continued,—The celestials having heard of the prowess of Skanda, all said to Vāsava,—O Sakra, do thou kill Skanda without delay, for his prowess is unbearable. And if thou dost not exterminate him, he will conquer the three worlds with ourselves, and overpowering thee, himself become the mighty lord of the celestials !—Perplexed in mind !—Sakra replied unto them,—This child is endowed with great prowess. He can himself destroy the Creator of the Universe, in battle putting forth his might. I venture not, therefore, to do away with him.—To this the gods replied,—Thou hast no manliness in thee, in that thou talkest in this manner. Let the great Mothers of the Universe repair to day to Skanda. They can muster at will any degree of energy. Let them kill this child.—It shall be so,—The Mothers replied,—And then they went away. But on beholding that he was possessed of great might they became despirited, and considering that he was invincible, they sought his protection and said unto him,—Do thou, O

mighty being, become our (adopted) son!—We are full of affection for thee and desirous of giving thee suck! Lo, the milk oozes from our breasts!—On hearing these words, the mighty Mahāsena became desirous of sucking their breasts, and he received them with due respect and acceded to their request. And that mightiest of mighty creatures then beheld his father Agni coming towards him. And that god who is the doer of all that is good, was duly honoured by his son, and in company with the Mothers, he stayed there by the side of Mahāsena to tend him. And that lady amongst the Mothers who was born of Anger,* with a spike in hand kept watch over Skanda, even like a mother guarding her own offspring. And that irascible daughter of the Blood Sea, who lived herself on blood, hugged Mahāsena in her breast and nursed him like a mother. And Agni, transforming himself into a trader with a goat's mouth and followed by numerous children began to gratify that child of his with toys in that mountain abode of his.

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty sixth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXVII.

(*Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.*)

Mārkandeya continued,—The planets with their satellites, the *Rishis* and the Mothers, Agni and numerous other blazing countries, and many other dwellers of heaven of terrible mien, waited on Mahāsena along with the Mothers. And the illustrious sovereign of the gods, desirous of victory but believing successto be doubtful, mounted his elephant Airāvata and attended by the other gods advanced towards Skanda. That mighty being followed by all the celestials was armed with his thunder-bolt. And with the object of slaying Mahāsena, he marched rapidly, with that terrible celestial army of great splendour, sounding their shrill war-cry and furnished with various sorts of standards, with warriors encased in vari-

---

* Anger personified is a deity.

ous armour and armed with numerous bows and riding on various animals. When Mahāsena beheld the gloriously decked Sakra, attired in his best clothes, advancing with the determination of slaying him, he (too on his part) advanced to meet that chief of the celestials. O Pārtha, the mighty Vāsava, the lord of the celestials, then uttered a loud shout, to encourage his warriors, and marching rapidly with the view of killing Agni's son, and praised by Tridasas* and great *Rishis*, he at length reached the abode of Kārtikeya. And then he shouted out with the other gods ; and Guha too in response to this, uttered a fearful war-cry resembling the roaring of the sea. On hearing that noise, the celestial army behaved like an agitated sea, and was stunned and fixed to the spot. And that son of Pāvaka (the fire-god) beholding the gods come near to him with the object of killing him, was filled with wrath, and gave out rising flames of fire from within his mouth. And these flames destroyed the celestial forces struggling on the ground. Their heads, their bodies, their arms and riding animals were all burnt in that conflagration, and they appeared all on a sudden like stars displaced from their proper spheres. Thus afflicted, the gods renounced all allegiance to the Wielder of the thunder-bolt, and sought the protection of Pāvaka's son ; and thus peace was again secured. When he was thus forsaken by the gods, Sakra hurled his thunder-bolt at Skanda. It pierced him on the right side ; and, O great king, it passed through the body of that high-souled being. And from being struck with the thunder-bolt, there arose from Skanda's body another being—a youth with a club in hand, and adorned with a celestial amulet. And because he was born on account of the piercing of the thunder-bolt, he was named Visākha. And Indra, when he beheld that another person looking like the fierce destroying fire-god had come into being, was frightened out of his wits, and besought the protection of Skanda, with the palms of

* Another name of the gods, so named from their having only three stages of life,—viz., infancy, childhood, and youth—and being exempt from the fourth—old age.

his hands joined together (as a mark of respect). And that excellent being Skanda, bade him renounce all fear, with his army. The gods were then transported with joy, and their bands too struck up."

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-seventh Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXVIII.

(*Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.*)

Mārkandeya continued,—"Now hear of those terrible and curious-looking followers of Skanda. A number of male children came into being when Skanda was struck with the thunder-bolt,—those terrific creatures that steal (spirit away) little children, whether born, or in the womb. And a number of female children too of great strength were born to him. Those children adopted Visākha as their father. That adorable and dexterous Bhadrasākha, having a face like that of a goat, was at the time (of the battle) surrounded by all his sons and daughters whom he guarded carefully in the presence of the great mothers. And for this reason the inhabitants of this earth call Skanda the father of *Kumāras* (little children). Those persons who desire to have sons born to them, worship in their places the powerful Rudra in the form of the fire-god, and Umā in the form of Swāhā. And by that means they are blessed with sons. The daughters begotten by the fire-god, Tapa went over to Skanda, who said to them, 'What can I do for you?' Those girls replied,—'Do us this favour,—by thy blessing, may we become the good and respected mothers of all the world!' He replied 'Be it so.' And that liberal-minded being repeated again and again, 'Ye shall be divided into separate classes of Sivas and Asivas.'* And the mothers then departed, having first established Skanda's son-ship. Kāki, Halimā, Mālini, Vrinhilā, Aryā, Palālā and Vaimitrā, these were the seven mothers of Sisu. They had a powerful, red-eyed, terrific, and very turbulent son, named Sisu born by the

---

* i. e. good and evil spirits.

blessing of Skanda. He was reputed as the eighth hero, born of the mothers of Skanda. But he is also known as the ninth, when that being with the face of a goat, is included. Know that the sixth face of Skanda was like that of a goat. That face, O king, is situated in the middle of the six, and is regarded constantly by the mothers. That head by which Bhadrasākha created the divine energy, is reputed to be the best of all his heads. O ruler of men, these various wonderful events happened on the fifth day of the bright half of the lunar month, and on the sixth, a very fierce and terrific battle was fought at that place."

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-eighth Section in the Mārkandeya Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXIX.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued.—"Skanda was adorned with a golden amulet and wreath, and wore a crest and a crown of gold; his eyes were golden-coloured, and he had a set of sharp teeth; he was dressed in a red garment, and looked very handsome; he had a splendid appearance, and was endowed with all good characteristics and was the favourite of the three worlds. He granted boons (to people who sought them), and was brave, youthful, and adorned with bright ear-rings. Whilst he was reposing himself, the goddess of fortune, looking like a lotus and assuming a personal embodiment, rendered her allegiance to him. When he became thus possessed of good fortune, that famous and delicate-looking creature appeared to all like the moon at its full. And high-minded Brāhmanas worshipped that mighty being, and the *Maharshis* (great rishis) then said as follows to Skanda, 'O thou born of the golden egg, mayst thou be prosperous and mayst thou become an instrument of good to the universe! O best of the gods, although thou wast born only six nights (days) ago, the whole world has owned allegiance to thee (within this short time), and thou hast also allayed their fears, therefore do thou become the Indra (lord) of the three worlds and remove their cause of aprehension,' Skanda replied,—

'You gentlemen of great ascetic wealth, (tell me) what Indra does with all these worlds, and how that sovereign of the celestials, protects the hosts of gods unremittingly.' The *Rishis* replied,—'Indra is the giver of strengah, power, children and happiness to all creatures, and when propitiated, that Lord of the Celestials bestows on all the objects of their desire. He destroys the wicked and fulfils the desires of the righteous; and that Destroyer of Vala assigns to all creatures their various duties. He officiates for the sun and the moon in places where there is no sun or moon: he even when occasion requires it, acts for (serves the purposes of) fire, air, earth and water. These are the duties of Indra: his capacities are immense. Thou too art mighty; therefore, great hero, do thou become our Indra.'

"Sakra said,—'O mighty being, do thou make us happy, by becoming our lord. Excellent being, thou art worthy of the honour; therefore shall we anoint thee this very day.'

"Skanda replied,—'Do thou continue to rule the three worlds, with self-possession, and with thy heart bent on conquest. I shall remain thy humble servant. I covet not thy sovereignty.'

"Sakra replied,—'Thy prowess is unrivalled, O hero,—do thou therefore vanquish the enemies of the gods. People have been struck with wonder at thy prowess. More especially as I have been bereft of my powers, and defeated by thee, now if I were to act as Indra, I should not command the respect of all creatures, and they would be busy in bringing about dissensions between us; and then, my lord, they would become the partisans of one or other of us. And when they formed themselves into two distinct factions, war as before would be the result of that defection. And in that war, thou wouldst undoubtedly defeat me without difficulty, and thyself become the lord of all the worlds.'

"Skanda replied.—'Thou, O Sakra, art my sovereign, as also of the three worlds; mayst thou be prosperous! Tell me if I can obey any commands of thine.'

"Indra replied,—'At thy bidding, O powerful being, I shall continue to act as Indra. And if thou hast said this deliberately and in earnest, then hear me how thou canst

gratify thy desire of serving me. Do thou, O mighty being, take the leadership of the celestial forces accordingly.'

"Skanda replied,—'Do thou anoint me as leader, for the destruction of the Dānavas, for the good of the Celestials, and for the well-being of cows and Brāhmanas.'"

Mārkandeya continued,—"Thus anointed by Indra and all other gods, and honoured by the *Maharshis*, he looked grand at that moment. The golden umbrella* held (over his head) looked like a halo of blazing fire. That famous god, the Conqueror of Tripura—himself fastened the celestial wreath of gold, of Viswakarma's manufacture, round his neck. And, O great man and conqueror of thine enemies, that worshipful god with the emblem of the bull, had gone there previously with Pārvati. He honoured him with a joyous heart. The fire-god is called Rudra by Brāhmanas, and from this fact Skanda is called the son of Rudra. The White mountain was formed from discharges of Rudra's *semen virile*, and the sensual indulgences of the fire-god with the Krittikās took place on that same White mountain. And as Rudra was seen by all the dwellers of heaven to heap honours on the excellent Guha (Skanda), he was for that reason reputed as the son of Rudra. This child had his being by the action of Rudra entering into the constitution of the fire-god, and for this reason, Skanda came to be known as the son of Rudra. And, O Bharata, as Rudra, the fire-god, Swāhā, and the six wives (of the seven rishis) were instrumental to the birth of the great god Skanda, he was for that reason reputed as the son of Rudra.

"That son of the fire-god was clad in a pair of clean red cloths, and thus he looked grand and resplendent like the Sun peeping forth from behind a mass of red clouds. And the red cock given to him by the fire-god, formed his ensign; and when perched on the top of his chariot, it looked like the image of the all-destroying fire. And the presiding deity of the power which conduces to the victory of the gods, and which is the director of the exertions of all creatures, and constitutes their glory, prop and refuge, advanced before him. And a mys-

* One of the ensigns of royalty in Hindustan.

terious charm entered into his constitution—the charm which manifests its powers on the battle-field. Beauty, strength, piety, power, might, truthfulness, rectitude, devotion to Brāhmanas, freedom from illusion or perplexity, protection of followers, destruction of foes, and care of all creatures, these, O lord of men, are the inborn virtues of Skanda. Thus anointed by all the gods, he looked pleased and complacent; and dressed in his best style, he looked beautiful like the moon at its full. The much-esteemed incantation of Vedic hymns, the music of the celestial band, and the songs of gods and *Gandharvas* then rang on all sides. And surrounded by all the well-dressed *Apsaras*, and many other gay and happy-looking *Pisāchas* and hosts of gods, that anointed (by gods) son of Pāvaka sported himself in all his grandeur. To the dwellers of heaven, the anointed Mahāsena appeared like the Sun rising after extinction of darkness. And then the celestial forces looking up to him as their leader, surrounded him on all sides in thousands. That adorable being followed by all creatures then assumed their command, and praised and honoured by them, he encouraged them in return.

"The Performer of a thousand sacrifices then thought of Devasenā, whom he had rescued before. And considering that this being (Skanda) was undoubtedly destined to be the husband of this lady by Brahmā himself, he had her brought there, dressed in her best apparel. And the vanquisher of Vala then said to Skanda,—'O foremost of gods, this lady was, even before thy birth, destined to be thy bride by that Self-existent Being.* Therefore do thou duly accept her lotus-like beautiful right hand with invocation of the (marital) hymns.' Thus told, he duly married her. And Vrihaspati learned in hymns performed the necessary prayers and oblations. She who is called Shashthi, Lakshmi, Asā, Sukhapradā, Sinivāli, Kuhu, Satvritti and Aparājitā, is known among men as Devasenā the wife of Skandā. When Skanda became united to Devasenā in indissoluble bonds of matrimony, then the goddess of prosperity in her own per-

* Brahmā.

sonal embodiment began to serve him with deligence. As Skanda attained celebrity on the fifth lunar day, that day is called *Sripanchami* (or the auspicious fifth day) and as he attained his object on the sixth, that lunar day is considered to be of great moment."

Thus ends the two hundred and twenty-ninth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXX.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsya Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued,—" Those six ladies—the wives of the seven rishis—when they learned that good fortune had smiled on Mahāsena and that he had been made leader of the celestial forces,* repaired to his camp. Those virtuous ladies of high religious merit had been disowned by the *Rishis*. They lost no time in visiting that leader of the celestial forces and then addressed him thus,—'We, O son, have been cast out by our god-like husbands, without any cause. Some people spread the rumour that we gave birth to thee. Believing in the truth of this story, they became greatly indignant, and banished us from our sacred places. It behoves thee now to save us from this infamy. We desire to adopt thee as our son, so that, O mighty being, eternal bliss may be secured to us by thy favour. Do thou thus repay the obligation thou owest to us.'

"Skanda replied,—'O ladies of faultless character, do ye accordingly become my mothers. I am your son and ye shall attain all the objects of your desire.' "

Mārkandeya continued,—" Then Sakra having expressed a wish to say something to Skanda, the latter enquired 'What is it?' Being told by Skanda to say it out, Vāsava said, —'The lady Abhijit, the younger sister of Rohini, being jealous of her seniority, has repaired to the woods to perform austerities. And I am at a loss to find out a substitute for

---

* Deva-senā-pati in the original. It may mean either the pati (leader) of the senā (forces) of devas (gods) or the pati (husband) of Devasenā.

the fallen star. May good luck attend on thee, do thou consult with Brahmā (for the purpose of filling up the room) of this great asterism. Dhanishtha and other asterisms were created by Brahmā, and Rohini used to serve the purpose of one such; and consequently their number was full.' And in accordance with Sakra's advice, Krittikā was assigned a place in the heavens, and that star presided over by *Agni* shines as if with seven heads. Vinatā also said to Skanda,—'Thou art as a son to me, and entitled to offer me the funeral cakes (at my funeral obsequies). I desire, my son, to live with thee always.'

"Skanda replied,—'Be it so, all honour to thee! Do thou guide me with a mother's affection, and honoured by thy daughter-in-law, thou shalt always live with me.'"

Mārkandeya continued,—"Then the great mothers spoke as follows to Skanda, 'We have been described by the learned as the mothers of all creatures. But we desire to be thy mothers, do thou honour us.'

"Skanda replied,—Ye are all as mothers to me, and I am your son. Tell me what I can do to please you.'

"The mothers replied,—'The ladies(Brāhmi, Maheswari &c.) were appointed as mothers of the world in by-gone ages. We desire, O great god, that they be dispossessed of that dignity, and ourselves installed in their room, and that we, instead of them, be worshipped by the world. Do thou now restore to us those of our progeny, of whom we have been deprived, by them on thy account.'

"Skanda replied,—'Ye shall not recover those that have been once given away, but I can give you other offspring if ye like.'

"The mothers replied,—'We desire that living with thee and assuming different shapes we be able to eat up the progeny of those mothers and their guardians. Do thou grant us this favour.'

"Skanda said,—'I can grant you progeny, but this topic on which ye have just now dilated is a very painful one. May ye be prosperous! All honour to you, ladies, do ye vouchsafe to them your protecting care.'

"The mothers replied,—'We shall protect them, O Skanda, as thou desirest. Mayst thou be prosperous! But, O mighty being, we desire to live with thee always.'

"Skanda replied,—'So long as children of the human kind do not attain the youthful state in the sixteenth year of their age, ye shall afflict them with your various forms, and I too shall confer on you a fierce inexhaustible spirit. And with that ye shall live happily, worshipped by all.'"

Mārkandeya continued,—"And then a fiery powerful being came out of the body of Skanda for the purpose of devouring the progeny of mortal beings. He fell down upon the ground, senseless and hungry. And bidden by Skanda, that genius of evil assumed a terrific form. Skandapasmara is the name by which it is known among good Brāhmanas. Vinatā is called the terrific Sakuni *graha* (spirit of evil). She who is known as Putanā Rākshasi by the learned, is the *graha* called Putanā; that fierce and terrible-looking *Rākshasi* of an hideous appearance is also called the *pisāchi* Sitā Putanā. That fierce-looking spirit is the cause of abortion in women. Aditi is also known by the name of Revati: her evil spirit is called Raivata, and that terrible *graha* also afflicts children. Diti, the mother of the Daityas (*Asuras*), is also called Mukhamandikā, and that terrible creature is very fond of the flesh of little children. Those male and female children, O Kaurava, who are said to have been begotten by Skanda, are also spirits of evil, and they destroy the fetus in the womb. They (the Kumāras) are known as the husbands of those very ladies, and children are seized unawares by these cruel spirits. And, O king, Suravi who is called the mother of the bovine kind by the wise, is bestridden by the evil spirit Sakuni, who in company with her, devours children on this earth. And Saramā, the mother of dogs, also habitually kills human beings while still in the womb. She who is the mother of all trees has her abode in a *karanja* tree. She grants boons and has a placid countenance and is always favourably disposed towards all creatures. Those persons who desire to have children, bow down to her, who is seated in a *karanja* tree. These eighteen evil spirits fond of meat and wine, and others of the same

kind, invariably take up their abode in the lying-in-room for ten days. Kadru introduces herself in a subtle form into the body of a pregnant woman, and there she causes the destruction of the fetus, and the mother is made to give birth to a *Naga* (serpent). And that mother of the Gandharbas takes away the fetus, and for this reason, conception in woman turns out to be abortive. The mother of the *Apsaras* removes the fetus from the womb, and for this reason such conceptions are said to be stationary by the learned. The daughter of the divinity of the Blood Sea is said to have nursed Skanda,—she is worshipped under the name of Lohitayani on Kadamva trees. Arya acts the same part among female beings, as Rudra does among male ones. She is the mother of all children and is distinctively worshipped for their welfare. These that I have described are the evil spirits presiding over the destinies of young children, and until children attain their sixteenth year, these spirits exercise their influence for evil, and after that, for good. The whole body of male and female spirits that I have now described are always denominated by men as the spirits of Skanda. They are propitiated with burnt offerings, ablutions, unguents, sacrifices and other offerings, and particularly by the worship of Skanda. And, O king, when they are honoured and worshipped with due reverence, they bestow on men whatever is good for them, as also valour and long life. And now having bowed down to Maheswara, I shall describe the nature of those spirits who influence the destinies of men after they have attained their sixteenth year.

"The man who beholds gods, while sleeping, or in a wakeful state, soon turns mad, and the spirit under whose influence these hallucinations take place, is called the celestial spirit. When a person beholds his dead ancestors while he is seated at ease, or lying in his bed, he soon loses his reason, and the spirit which causes this illusion of sensible perception, is called the ancestral spirit. The man who shows disrespect to the Siddhas, and who is cursed by them in return, soon runs mad, and the evil influence by which this is brought about, is called the Siddha spirit. And the spirit by whose influence

a man smells sweet odour, and becomes cognisant of various tastes (when there are no odoriferous or tasteful substances about him) and soon becomes demented, is called the Rākshasa spirit. And the spirit by whose action celestial musicians (Gandharvas) blend their existence into the constitution of a human being, and make him run mad in no time, is called the Gandharva spirit. And that evil spirit by whose influence men are always tormented by *Pisāchas*, is called the Paisacha spirit. When the spirit of Yakshas enters into the system of a human being by some accident, he loses his reason immediately, and such a spirit is called the Yaksha spirit. The man who loses his reason on account of his mind being demoralised with vices, runs mad in no time, and his illness must be remedied according to methods prescribed in the Sashtras. Men also run mad from perplexity, from fear, as also on beholding hideous sights. The remedy lies in quieting their minds. There are three classes of spirits, some are frolicsome, some are gluttonous, and some sensual. Until men attain the age of three score and ten, these evil influences continue to torment them, and then fever becomes the only evil spirit that afflicts sentient beings. These evil spirits always avoid those who have subdued their senses, who are self-restrained, of cleanly habits, god-fearing and free from laziness and contamination. I have thus described to thee, O king, the evil spirits that mould the destinies of men. Thou who art devoted to Maheswara art never troubled by them."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirtieth Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXXI.

(Mārkandeya-Samāsyā Parva continued.)

Mārkandeya continued,—"When Skanda had bestowed these powers, Swāhā appeared to him and said,—'Thou art my natural son,—I desire that thou shalt grant exquisite happiness to me.'

"Skanda replied,—'What sort of happiness dost thou wish to enjoy?'

"Swāhā replied,—'O mighty being, I am the favourite daughter of Daksha, by name Swāhā; and from my youthful days I have been in love with Hutasana (the fire-god); but that god, my son, does not understand my feelings. I desire to live for ever with him (as his wife).'

"Skanda replied,—'From this day, lady, all the oblations that men of virtuous character who swerve not from the path of virtue, will offer to their gods or ancestors with incantation of purifying hymns by Brāhmanas, shall always be offered (through Agni) coupled with the name of Swāhā, and thus, excellent lady, wilt thou always live associated with Agni, the god of fire.'"

Mārkandeya continued,—"Thus addressed and honoured by Skanda, Swāhā was greatly pleased; and associating with her husband Pāvaka, (the fire-god), she honoured him in return.

"Then Brahmā, the lord of all creatures, said to Mahāsena, 'Do thou go and visit thy father Mahādeva, the conqueror of Tripurā. Rudra coalescing with Agni (the fire-god), and Umā, with Swāhā, have combined to make thee invincible for the well-being of all creatures. And the *semen* of the high-souled Rudra cast into the reproductive organ of Umā was thrown back upon this hill, and hence the twin Mujika and Minjikā came into being. A portion of it fell into the Blood Sea, another portion, into the rays of the Sun, another, upon the earth,—and thus was it distributed in five portions. Learned man ought to remember that these thy various and fierce-looking followers living on the flesh of animals, were produced from that *semen*' 'Be it so,' so saying, the high-souled Mahāsena with fatherly love, honoured his father Maheswara"

Mārkandeya continued,—"Men who are desirous of acquiring wealth, should worship those five classes of spirits with the sun-flower, and for alleviation of diseases also, worship must be rendered to them. The twin Minjikā and Minjika begotten by Rudra must always be respected by persons desiring the welfare of little children; and persons who desire to have children born to them must always worship those female

spirits who live on human flesh and are produced in trees. Thus all *Pisāchas* are said to be divided into innumerable classes. And now, O king, listen to the origin of the bells and standards of Skanda. Airāvata (Indra's elephant) is known to have had two bells of the name of Vaijayanti, and the keen-witted Sakra had them brought to him, and personally gave them to Guha. Visakha took one of those bells and Skanda the other. The standared of both Kārtikeya and Visakha were of a red colour. That mighty god Mahāsena was pleased with the toys that had been given to him by the gods. Surrounded by hosts of gods and *Pisāchas*, and seated on the Golden Mountains, he looked splendid in all the grandeur of prosperity. And that mountain covered with fine forests, also looked grand in his companionship, just as the Mandara hill abounding with excellent caves shines with the rays of the Sun. The White mountain was adorned with whole tracts of woodland covered with blossoming Santanaka flowers and with forests of Karabira, Pārijāta, Jabā and Asoka trees,—as also with wild tracts overgrown with Kadamva trees; and it abounded with herds of celestial deer and flocks of celestial birds. And the rumbling of clouds serving the purpose of musical instruments sounded like the murmur of an agitated sea, and celestial Gandharvas and Apsaras began to dance. And there arose a great sound of joy from the merriment of all creatures. Thus the whole world with Indra himself seemed to have been transferred to the White mountain. And all the people began to observe Skanda with satisfaction in their looks, and they did not at all feel tired with doing so."

Mārkandeya continued,—"When that adorable son of the fire-god was anointed as leader of the celestial army, that grand and happy lord, Hara (Mahādeva) riding with Pārvati in a chariot shining with sun-like refulgence, repaired to a place called Bhadravata. His excellent chariot was drawn by a thousand lions and managed by Kala. They passed through blank space, and seemed as if they were about to devour the sky; and striking terror into the hearts of all creatures in the mobile and immobile divisions of the world, those maned

beasts flitted through the air, uttering fearful growls. And that lord of all animals (Mahādeva) seated in that chariot with Umā, looked like the sun with flashes of lightning illuminating masses of clouds begirt with Indra's bow (Rain-bow). He was preceded by that adorable lord of riches riding on the backs of human beings with his attendant Guhyakas riding in his beautiful car Pushpaka. And Sakra too riding on his elephant Airāvata and accompanied by other gods, brought up the rear of Mahādeva, the granter of boons, marching in this way at the head of the celestial army. And the great Yaksha Amogha with his attendants—the Jambhaka Yakshas and other Rākshasas decorated with garlands of flowers—obtained a place in the right wing of his army; and many gods of wonderful fighting powers, in company with the Vasus and the Rudras, also marched with the right division of his army. And the terrible-looking Yama too in company with Death marched with him, followed by hundreds of terrible Diseases; and behind him was carried the terrible sharp-pointed, well-decorated trident of Siva, called Vijaya. And Varuna, the adorable lord of waters, with his terrible *pāsa*,* and surrounded by numerous aquatic animals, marched slowly with the trident. And the trident Vijaya was followed by the Pattisa† of Rudra guarded by maces, balls, clubs and other excelleut weapons. And the *Pattisa*, O king, was followed by the bright umbrella of Rudra and the water-vessel and by the *Maharshis*; and on its right side the bright sceptre worshipped by the gods looked beautiful in its progress in the company of Bhrigu, Angira and others. And behind all these rode Rudra in his white chariot, reassuring the gods with the exhibition of his powers. And rivers and lakes and seas, Apsaras *Rishis*, Celestials, Gandharvas and serpents, stars, planets, and the children of gods, as also many women, followed him in his train. These handsome-looking ladies proceeded scattering flowers all around; and the clouds marched, having made

* A kind of missile.

† Another kind of weapon.

their obeisance to that god (Mahādeva) armed with the Pināka bow. And some of them held a white umbrella over his head, and Agni (the fire-god) and Vāyu (the god of winds) busied themselves with two hairy fans (emblems of royalty). And, O king, he was followed by the glorious Indra accompanied by the *Rajarshis*, and singing the praise of that god with the emblem of the bull. And Gauri, Vidya, Gandhari, Keçini, and the lady called Mitra in company with Savitri, all proceeded in the train of Pārvati, as also all the Vidyas (presiding deities of all branches of knowledge) that were created by the learned. The Rākshasa spirit who delivers to different battalions the commands which are implicitly obeyed by Indra and other gods, advanced in front of the army as standard-bearer. And that foremost of Yakshas, by name Pingala, the friend of Rudra, who is always busy in places where corpses are burned, and who is agreeable to all people, marched with them merrily, at one time going ahead of the army, and falling behind again at another;—his movements being uncertain. Virtuous actions are the offerings with which the god Rudra is worshipped by mortals. He who is also called Siva, the omnipotent god, armed with the Pināka bow, is Maheswara. He is worshipped in various forms.

"The son of Krittikā, the leader of the celestial army, respectful to Brāhmanas, surrounded by the celestial forces, also followed that lord of the gods. And then Mahādeva said these weighty words to Mahāsena, 'Do thou carefully command the seventh army corps of the celestial forces.'

"Skanda replied,—'Very well, my lord! I shall command the seventh army corps. Now tell me quickly if there is anything else to be done.'

"Rudra said,—'Thou shalt always find me in the field of action. By looking up to me and by devotion to me shalt thou attain great welfare.'"

Mārkandeya continued—"With these words Maheswara received him in his embrace, and then dismissed him. And, O great king, after the dismissal of Skanda, prodigies of various kinds occured to disturb the equanimity of the gods.

"The firmament with the stars was in a blaze, and the whole

universe in a state of utter confusion. The earth quaked and gave forth a rumbling sound, and darkness overspread the whole world. Then observing this terrible catastrophy, Sankara with the estimable Umā, and the celestials with the great *Maharshis,* were much exercised in mind. And when they had fallen into this state of confusion, there appeared before them a fierce and mighty host armed with various weapons, and looking like a mass of clouds and rocks. Those terrible and countless beings, speaking different languages directed their movements towards the point where Sankara and the Celestials stood. They hurled into the ranks of the celestial army flights of arrows in all directions, masses of rock, maces, *sataghnis,** *prasas*† and *parighas.* ‡ The celestial army was thrown into a state of confusion by a shower of these terrible weapons and their ranks were seen to waver. The Dānavas made a great havoc by cutting up their soldiers, horses, elephants, chariots and arms. And the celestial troops then seemed as if they were about to turn their backs upon the enemy. And numbers of them fell, slain by the *Asuras,* like large trees in a forest burned in a conflagration. Those dwellers of heaven fell with their heads, separated from their bodies, and having none to lead them in that fearful battle, they were slaughtered by the enemy. And then the god Purandara (Indra), the slayer of Vala, observing that they were unsteady and hard pressed by the *Asuras,* tried to rally them with this speech,—'Do not be afraid, ye heroes, may success attend upon your efforts! Do ye all take up your arms, and resolve upon manly conduct, and ye will meet with no more misfortune, and defeat these wicked and terrible-looking Dānavas. May ye be successful! Do ye fall upon the Dānavas with me.'

"The dwellers of heaven were reassured on hearing this speech from Sakra; and under his leadership, they again rushed against the Dānavas. And then the thirty-three

---

* A weapon which kills a hundred people.

† A kind of missile.

‡ A kind of hammer made of iron.

crores of gods and all the powerful Maruts and the Sādhyas with the Vasus returned to the charge. And the arrows which they angrily discharged against the enemy drew a large quantity of blood from the bodies of the Daityas and of their horses and elephants. And those sharp arrows passing through their bodies fell upon the ground, looking like so many snakes falling from the sides of a hill. And, O king, the Daityas pierced by those arrows fell fast on all sides, looking like so many detached masses of clouds. Then the Dānava host, struck with panic at that charge of the celestials on the field of battle, wavered at that shower of various weapons. Then all the gods loudly gave vent to their joy, with arms ready to strike; and the celestial bands too struck up various airs. Thus took place that encounter, so fearful to both sides; for all the battle-field was covered with blood and strewn with the bodies of both gods and *Asuras*. But the gods were soon worsted all on a sudden, and the terrible Dānavas again made a great havoc of the celestial army. Then the *Asura* drums struck up and their shrill bugles were sounded; and the Dānava chiefs yelled their terrific war-cry.

"Then a powerful Dānava, taking a huge mass of rock in his hands, came out of that terrible Daitya army. He looked like the Sun peering forth from amongst a mass of dark clouds. And, O king, the celestials, beholding that he was about to hurl that mass of rock at them, fled in confusion. But they were pursued by Mahisha, who hurled that hillock at them. And, O lord of the world, by the falling of that mass of rock, ten thousand warriors of the celestial army were crushed to the ground and breathed their last. And this act of Mahisha struck terror into the hearts of the gods, and with his attendant Dānavas he fell upon them like a lion attacking a herd of deer. And when Indra and the other celestials observed that Mahisha was advancing to the charge, they fled, leaving behind their arms and colours. And Mahisha was greatly enraged at this, and he quickly advanced towards the chariot of Rudra; and reaching near, he seized its pole with his hands. And when Mahisha in a fit of rage had thus seized the chariot of Rudra, all the Earth began to groan

and the great *Rishis* lost their senses. And Daityas, of huge proportions, and looking like (dark) clouds, were boisterous with joy, thinking that victory was assured to them. And although that adorable god (Rudra) was in that plight, yet he did not think it worth his while to kill Mahisha in battle: he remembered that Skanda would deal the death-blow to that evil-minded *Asura*. And the fiery Mahisha, contemplating with satisfaction the prize (the chariot of Rudra) which he had secured, sounded his war-cry, to the great alarm of the gods and the joy of the Daityas. And when the gods were in that fearful predicament, the mighty Mahāsena, burning with anger, and looking grand like the Sun, advanced to their rescue. And that lordly being was clad in blazing red and decked with a wreath of red flowers. And cased in armour of gold, he rode in a gold-coloured chariot bright as the Sun and drawn by chestnut horses. And at his sight the army of the Daityas was suddenly dispirited on the field of battle. And, O great king, the mighty Mahāsena discharged a bright *Sakti*, for the destruction of Mahisha. That missile cut off the head of Mahisha, and he fell upon the ground and died. And his head, massive as a hillock, falling on the ground, barred the entrance to the country of the Northern Kurus, extending in length for sixteen *yojanas*, though at present the people of that country pass easily by that gate.

"It was observed both by the gods and the Dānavas that Skanda hurled his *sakti* again and again on the field of battle, and that it returned to his hands, after killing thousands of the enemy's forces. And the terrible Dānavas fell in large numbers by the arrows of the wise Mahāsena. And then a panic seized them, and the followers of Skanda began to slay and eat them up by thousands and drink their blood. And they joyously exterminated the Dānavas in no time, just as the Sun destroys darkness, or as fire destroys a forest, or as the winds drive away the clouds. And in this manner the famous Skanda defeated all his enemies. And the gods came to congratulate him, and he, in turn, paid his respects to Maheswara. And that son of Krittikā, looked grand like

the Sun in all the glory of his effulgence. And when the enemy was completely defeated by Skanda, and when Maheswara left the battle-field, Purandara embraced Mahāsena and said to him,—'This Mahisha, who was made invincible by the favour of Brahmā, hath been killed by thee. O best of warriors, the gods were like grass to him. O strong-limbed hero, thou hast removed a thorn from the side of the celestials. Thou hast killed in battle hundreds of Dānavas equal in valour to Mahisha, who were all hostile to us, and who used to harass us before. And thy followers too have devoured them by hundreds. Thou art, O mighty being, invincible in battle like Umā's lord! And this victory shall be celebrated as thy first achievement, and thy fame shall be undying in the three worlds. And, O strong-armed god, all the gods will yield their allegiance to thee.' Having spoken thus to Mahāsena, the husband of Sachi left the place, accompanied by the gods and with the permission of the adorable three-eyed god (Siva). And Rudra returned to Bhadravata, and the celestials too returned to their respective abodes. And Rudra spoke, addressing the gods—'Ye must render allegiance to Skanda just as ye do unto me.' And that son of the fire-god, having killed the Dānavas, hath conquered the three worlds in one day, and he hath been worshipped by the great *Rishis!* The Brāhmana who with due attention readeth this story of the birth of Skanda, attaineth to great prosperity in this world and the companionship of Skanda hereafter."

Yudhishthira said,—"O good and adorable Brāhmana, I wish to know the different names of that high-souled being, by which he is celebrated throughout the three worlds."

Vaiçampāyana continued,—Thus addressed by the Pāndava in that assembly of *Rishis*, the worshipful Mārkandeya of high ascetic merit replied,—"'Agneya,(1) Skanda,(2) Diptakirti, (3) Anāmaya, (4) Mayuraketu, (5) Dharmātman, (6)

---

(1) Son of *Agni*.
(2) Cast off.
(3) Of blazing fame.
(4) Always hale.
(5) Peacock-bannered.
(6) The virtuous souled.

Bhuteça, (7) Mahishārddana, (8) Kāmaj it, (9) Kāmada,(10) Kānta,(11) Satyabāka,(12) Bhoobaneçwara,(13) Shiçu, (14) Shighra,(15) Shuchi,(16) Chanda,(17) Dipta-varna,(18) Shubhānana,(19) Amogha,(20) Anagha,(21) Raudra,(22) Priya,(23) Chandrānana(24) Dipta-sacti,(25) Praçāntātman,(26) Bhadrakrit,(27) Kutamohana, (28) Shashthipriya, (29) Pavitra, (30) Mātrivatsala, (31) Kanyā-bhatri, (32) Vibhakta, (33) Swāheya,(34) Revati-suta,(35) Prabhu,(36) Netā,(37) Vishākha,(38) Naigameya,(89) Suduschara(40) Suvrata,(41) Lalita,(42) Vālakridanaka-priya,(43) Khachārin,(44) Brahmachārin,(45) Sura, (46) Sadavanodbhava,(47) Viçwāmitra-priya,(48) Devasenāpriya,(49) Vāsudeva-priya,(50) and Priya-krit,(51)—these are the divine names of Kārtikeya. Whoever repeateth them, undoubtedly secureth fame, wealth, and salvation."

Mārkandeya continued,—" O valiant scion of Kuru's race, I shall now with due devotion pray to that unrivalled, mighty, six-faced, and valiant Guha who is worshipped by gods and *Rishis*, enumerating his other titles of distinction: do thou listen to them.—Thou art devoted to *Brahma*, begotten of *Brahma*, and versed in the mysteries of *Brahma*. Thou art called *Brahmesaya*, and thou art the foremost of those who are possessed of *Brahma*. Thou art fond of *Brahma*,

---

(7) The Lordof all creatures. (8) The slayer of *Mahishá*. (9) The subjugator of desires. (10) The fulfiller of desires. (11) The handsome. (12) The truthful in speech. (13) The Lord of the universe. (14) The child. (15) The quick. (16) The pure. (17) The fiery. (18) The bright-complexioned. (19) Of beautiful face. (20) Incapable of being baffled. (21) The sinless. (22) The terrible. (23) The favorite. (24) Of face like the moon. (25) The wielder of the blazing lance. (26) Of tranquil soul. (27) The doer of good. (28) The charmer of even the wicked. (29) The favorite of *Shashti*. (30) The holy. (31) The reverencer of his mother. (32) The protector of virgins. (33) Diffused over the universe. (34) The son of *Swāhā*. (35) The child of *Revati*. (36) The Lord. (37) The leader. [38] Reared up by *Visākhā*. [39] Sprung from [the Veda. [40] Difficult of propitiation. [41] Of excellent vows. [42] The beautiful. [43] Fond of toys. [44] The ranger of skies. [45] The chaste. [46] The brave. [47] Born in a forest of heath. [48] The favorite of *Viçwāmitra*. [49] The lover of *Deva-senā*. [50] The beloved of *Vāsudeva*. (51) The doer of agreeable things.

thou art austere like the Brāhmanas and versed in the great mystery of *Brahma* and the leader of the Brāhmanas. Thou art *Swāhā*, thou art *Swadhā*, and thou art the holiest of the holy, and art invoked in hymns and celebrated as the six-flamed fire. Thou art the year, thou art the six seasons, thou art the months, the (lunar) half-months, the (solar) declinations, and the cardinal points of space. Thou art lotus-eyed. Thou art possessed of a lily-like face. Thou hast a thousand faces and a thousand arms. Thou art the ruler of the universe, thou art the great Oblation, and thou art the animating spirit of all the gods and the *Asuras*. Thou art the great leader of armies. Thou art *Prachanda* (furious), thou art the Lord, and thou art the great master and the conqueror of thine enemies. Thou art *Sahasrabhu* (multiform), *Sahasratusti* (a thousand times content), *Sahasrabhuk* (devourer of everything), and *Sahasrapat* (of a thousand legs), and thou art the Earth itself. Thou art possessed of infinite forms and thousand heads and great strength. According to thine own inclinations, thou hast appeared as the son of Gangā, Swāhā, Mahi, or Krittikā. O six-faced god, thou dost play with the cock and assume different forms according to thy will. Thou art Daksha, Soma, the Māruts, Dharma, Vāyu, the prince of mountains, and Indra, for all time. Thou art mighty, the most eternal of all eternal things, and the lord of all lords. Thou art the progenitor of Truth, the destroyer of Diti's progeny (*Asuras*), and the great conqueror of the enemies of the celestials. Thou art the personation of virtue and being thyself vast and minute, thou art acquainted with the highest and lowest points of virtuous acts, and the mysteries of *Brahma*. O foremost of all gods and high-souled lord of the Universe, this whole creation is overspread with thy energy! I have thus prayed to thee according to best of my power. I salute thee who art possessed of twelve eyes and as many hands. Thy remaining attributes transcend my powers of comprehension!'

The Brāhmana who with due attention readeth this story of the birth of Skanda, or relateth it unto Brāhmanas, or heareth it narrated by regenerate men, attaineth to wealth,

long life, fame, children, as also victory, prosperity and contentment, and the companionship of Skanda."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-first Section in the Mārkandeya-Samāsyā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXXII.

(*Draupadi-Satyabhāmā Samvāda.*)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After those Brāhmanas and the illustrious sons of Pāndu had taken their seats, Draupadi and Satyabhāmā entered the hermitage. And with hearts full of joy, the two ladies laughed merrily and seated themselves at their ease. And, O king, those ladies, who always spake sweetly to each other, having met after a long time, began to talk upon various delightful topics arising out of the stories of the Kurus and the Yadus. And the slender-waisted Satyabhāmā —the favorite wife of Krishna and the daughter of Satrājit— then asked Draupadi in private, saying,—'By what behaviour is it, O daughter of Drupada, that thou art able to rule the sons of Pāndu—those heroes eudued with strength and beauty and like unto the *Lokapālas* themselves? Beautiful lady, how is it that they are so obedient to thee and are never angry with thee? Without doubt the sons of Pāndu, O thou of lovely features, are ever submissive to thee and watchful to do thy bidding! Tell me, O lady, the reason of this! Is it practice of vows, or asceticism, or incantations, or drugs at the time of the bath (in season), or the efficacy of science, or the influence of youthful appearance, or the recitation of particular formulæ, or *Homa*, or collyreum and other medicaments? Tell me now, O princess of Panchāla, of that blessed and auspicious thing by which, O Krishnā, Krishna may ever be obedient to me!'

"When the celebrated Satyabhāmā, having said this, ceased, the chaste and blessed daughter of Drupada answered her, saying.—'Thou askest me, O Satyabhāmā, of the practices of women that are wicked. How can I answer thee, O lady, about the course that is pursued by wicked females? It doth not become thee, lady, to pursue thy

questions, or doubt me, after this, for thou art endued with intelligence and art the favorite wife of Krishna. When the husband learns that his wife is addicted to incantations and drugs, from that hour he beginneth to dread her like a serpent ensconced in his sleeping chamber. And can a man that is troubled with fear have peace, and how can one that hath no peace have happiness? A husband can never be made obedient by his wife's incantations. We hear of painful diseases being transmitted by enemies. Indeed, they that desire to slay others, send poison in the shape of customary gifts, so that the man that taketh the powders so sent, by tongue or skin, is, without doubt, speedily deprived of life. Women have sometimes caused dropsy and leprosy and decrepitude and impotence and idiotcy and blindness and deafness in men. These wicked women, ever treading in the path of sin, do sometimes (by these means) injure their husbands. But the wife should never do the least injury to her lord. Hear now, O illustrious lady, of the behaviour I adopt towards the high-souled sons of Pāndu! Keeping aside vanity, and controlling desire and wrath, I always serve with devotion the sons of Pāndu with their wives. Restraining jealousy, with deep devotion of heart, without a sense of degradation at the services I perform, I wait upon my husbands. Ever fearing to utter what is evil or false, or to look or sit or walk with impropriety, or cast glances indicative of the feelings of the heart, do I serve the sons of Prithā—those mighty warriors blazing like the Sun or fire, and handsome as the moon, those heroes endued with fierce energy and prowess, and capable of slaying their foes by a glance of the eye. Celestial, or man, or Gandharva, young or decked with ornaments, wealthy or comely of person, none else my heart liketh. I never bathe or eat or sleep till he that is my husband hath bathed or eaten or slept,—till, in fact, our attendants have bathed, eaten, or slept. Whether returning from the field, the forest, or the town, hastily rising up I always salute my husband with water and a seat. I always keep the house and all house-hold articles and the food that is to be taken well-ordered and clean. Carefully do I keep the rice, and serve

the food at the proper time. I never indulge in angry and fretful speech, and never imitate women that are wicked. Keeping idleness at a distance I always do what is agreeable. I never laugh except at a jest, and never stay for any length of time at the house-gate. I never stay long in places for answering calls of nature, nor in pleasure-gardens attached to the house. I always refrain from laughing loud and indulging in high passion, and from everything that may give offence. Indeed, O Satyabhāmā, I always am engaged in waiting upon my lords. A seperation from my lords is never agreeable to me. When my husband leaveth home for the sake of any relative, then renouncing flowers and fragrant paste of every kind, I begin to undergo penances. Whatever my husband drinketh not, whatever my husband eateth not, whatever my husband enjoyeth not, I ever renounce. O beautiful lady, decked in ornaments and ever controlled by the instructions imparted to me, I always devotedly seek the good of my lord. Those duties that my mother-in-law had told me of in respect of relatives, as also the duties of alms-giving, of offering worship to the gods, of oblations to the deceased, of boiling food in pots on auspicious days for offer to ancestors and guests, of reverence and service to those that deserve our regards, and all else that is known to me, I always discharge day and night, without idleness of any kind. Having with my whole heart recourse to humility and approved rules, I serve my meek and truthful lords ever observant of virtue, regarding them as poisonous snakes capable of being excited at a trifle. I think that to be eternal virtue for women which is based upon a regard for the husband. The husband is the wife's god, and he is her refuge. Indeed, there is no other refuge for her. How can, then, the wife do the least injury to her lord? I never, in sleeping or eating or adorning my person, act against the wishes of my lord, and always guided by my husbands, I never speak ill of my mother-in-law. O blessed lady, my husbands have become obedient to me in consequence of my diligence, my alacrity, and the humility with which I serve my superiors! Personally do I wait every day with food and drink and clothes upon the reverend and truth-

ful Kunti—that mother of heroes. Never do I show any preference for myself over her in matters of food and attire, and never do I reprove in words that princess equal unto the Earth herself in forgiveness. Formerly, eight thousand Brāhmanas were daily fed in the palace of Yudhishthira from off plates of gold. And eighty thousand Brāhmanas also of the *Snātaka* sect leading domestic lives were entertained by Yudhishthira with thirty serving maids assigned to each. Besides these, ten thousand *yotis* with the vital seed drawn up, had their pure food carried unto them in plates of gold. All these Brāhmanas that were utterers of the *Veda*, I used to worship duly with food, drink, and raiment taken from stores only after a portion thereof had been dedicated to the Viswadevas.* The illustrious son of Kunti had an hundred thousand well-dressed serving-maids with bracelets on arms and golden ornaments on necks, and decked with costly garlands and wreaths and gold in profusion, and sprinkled with sandle paste. And adorned with jewels and gold, they were all skilled in singing and dancing. O lady, I knew the names and features of all those girls, as also what they ate and what they wore, and what they did not. Kunti's son of great intelligence had also an hundred thousand maid-servants who daily used to feed guests, with plates of gold in their hands. And while Yudhishthira lived in Indraprastha, an hundred thousand horses and an hundred thousand elephants used to follow in his train. These were the possessions of Yudhishthira while he ruled the earth. It was I, however, O lady, who regulated their number and framed the rules to be observed in respect of them; and it was I who had to listen to all complaints about them. Indeed, I knew everything about what the maid-servants of the palace and other classes of attendants, even the cow-herds and the

* The word in the text is *Agrahāra*, which, as Nilkāntha explains, means here, 'That which is first taken from a heap after the dedication of a portion to the *Viswadevas*.' What Draupadi means to say 'is, that she always took care to feed those Brahmanas with food *first* taken from the stores, without, in fact, having taken anything therefrom for the use of anybody else.

shepherds of the royal establishment, did or did not. O blessed and illustrious lady, it was I alone amongst the Pāndavas who knew the income and expenditure of the king and what their whole wealth was. And those bulls among the Bhāratas, throwing upon me the burden of looking after all those that were to be fed by them, would, O thou of handsome face, pay their court to me. And this load, so heavy and incapable of being borne by persons of evil heart, I used to bear day and night, sacrificing my ease, and all the while affectionately devoted to them. And while my husbands were engaged in the pursuit of virtue, I only supervised their treasury inexhaustible like the ever-filled receptacle of Varuna. Day and night bearing hunger and thirst, I used to serve the Kuru princes, so that my nights and days were equal to me. I used to wake up first and go to bed last. This, O Satyabhāmā, hath ever been my charm for making my husbands obedient to me! This great art hath ever been known to me for making my husbands obedient to me. Never have I practised the charms of wicked women, nor do I ever wish to practise them!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of virtuous import uttered by Krishnā, Satyabhāmā, having first reverenced the virtuous princess of Pānchāla, answered, saying, —'O princess of Panchāla, I have been guilty! O daughter of Yajnasena, forgive me! Among friends, conversations in jest arise naturally and without premeditation!' "

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-second Section in the Draupadi-Satyabhāmā samvāda of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXXIII.

(Draupadi-Satyabhāmā samvāda Parva continued.)

"Draupadi said,—'I shall now indicate to thee for attracting the heart of thy husband a way that is free from deceit. By adopting it duly, dear friend, thou wilt be able to withdraw thy lord from other females. In all the worlds, including that of the celestials, there is no god equal, O Satyabhāmā, unto the husband! When gratified with

thee, thou mayst have (from thy husband) every object of desire; when angry, all these may be lost. It is from her husband that the wife obtaineth offspring, and various articles of enjoyment. It is from thy husband that thou mayst have handsome beds and seats, and robes and garlands, and perfumes, and great fame, and heaven itself hereafter. One cannot obtain happiness here by means that are easy. Indeed, the woman that is chaste, obtains weal with woe. Always adore Krishna, therefore, with friendship and love and physical sufferings.* And do thou also act in such a way, by offering handsome seats and excellent garlands and various perfumes and prompt service, that he may be devoted to thee, thinking—*I am truly loved by her!* Hearing the voice of thy lord at the gate, rise thou up from thy seat and stay in readiness within the room. And as soon as thou seest him enter thy chamber, worship him by promptly offering him a seat and water to wash his feet. And even when he commands a maid-servant to do anything, get thou up and do it thyself. Let Krishna understand this temper of thy mind and know that thou adorest him with all thy heart. And, O Satyabhāmā, whatever thy lord speaketh before thee, do not blab of it, even if it may not deserve concealment,—for if any of thy co-wives were to speak of it unto Vāsudeva, he might be irritated with thee. Feed thou by every means in thy power those that are dear and devoted to thy lord and always seek his good. Thou shouldst, however, always keep thyself aloof from those that are hostile to and against thy lord and seek to do him injury, as also from those that are addicted to deceit. Foregoing all excitement and carelessness in the presence of men, conceal thy inclinations by observing silence, and thou shouldst not stay or converse in private even with thy sons Pradyumna and Sāmva. Thou shouldst form attachments with only such females as are high-born and sinless and devoted

* The word is *prīti-karmanā* in the instrumental. Nilkantha rightly explains it to mean "physical sufferings." The *Pandits* of the Maharajah of Burdwan have rendered it "dress and ornaments."

to their lords, and thou shouldst always shun women that are wrathful, addicted to drinks, gluttonous, theivish, wicked, and fickle. Behaviour such as this is reputable and productive of prosperity; and while it is capable of neutralising hostility, it also leadeth to heaven. Therefore, worship thou thy husband, decking thyself in costly garlands and ornaments and smearing thyself with unguents and excellent perfumes.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-third Section in the Draupadi-Satyabhāmā samvāda of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXXIV.

(Draupadi-Satyabhāmā samvāda Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"The slayer of Madhu then, Keçava called also Janārddana, having conversed on various agreeable themes with the illustrious sons of Pāndu and with those Brāhmanas that were headed by Mārkandeya, and having bade them farewell, mounted his car and called for Satyabhāmā. And Satyabhāmā then, having embraced the daughter of Drupada, addressed her in these cordial words expressive of her feelings towards her:—'O Krishnā, let there be no anxiety, no grief, for thee! Thou hast no cause to pass thy nights in sleeplessness, for thou wilt surely obtain back the earth subjugated by thy husbands, who are all equal unto the gods! O thou of black eyes, women endued with such disposition and possessed of such auspicious marks, can never suffer misfortune long! It hath been heard by me that thou shalt with thy husbands, certainly enjoy this earth peacefully and freed from all thorns! And, O daughter of Drupada, thou, shalt certainly behold the earth ruled by Yudhishthira, after the sons of Dhritarāshtra have been slain and their hostlity avenged! Thou wilt soon behold those wives of the Kurus, who, deprived of sense by pride, laughed at thee while on thy way to exile, themselves reduced to a state of hoplessness and despair! Know them all, O Krishnā, that did thee any injury while thou wert afflicted, to have already

gone to the abode of Yama! Thy brave sons Prativindhya, and Sutasoma, and Srutakarman by Arjuna, and Satānika by Nakula, and Srutasena begot by Sahadeva, are well, and have become skilled in weapons. Like Abhimanyu, they are all staying at Dwārāvati, delighted with the place. And Subhadrā also, cheerfully and with her whole soul, looketh after them like thee, and like thee joyeth in them and deriveth much happiness from them. Indeed, she grieveth in their griefs and joyeth in their joys. And the mother of Pradyumna also loveth them with her whole soul. And Keçava with his sons Bhānu and others watcheth over them with especial affection. And my mother-in-law is ever attentive in feeding and clothing them. And all the Andhakas and Vrishnis, including Rāma and others, regard them with affection. And, O beautiful lady, their affection for thy sons is equal unto what they feel for Pradyumna.'

"Having said these agreeable and truthful and delightful and cordial words, Satyabhāmā desired to go to Vāsudeva's car. And the wife of Krishna then walked round the queen of the Pāndavas. And having done so, the beautiful Satyabhāmā mounted the car of Krishna. And the chief of the Yādavas, comforting Draupadi with a smile and causing the Pāndavas to return, set out for his own city, with swift horses (yoked unto his car)."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-fourth Section in the Draupadi-Satyabhāmā samvāda of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXXV.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva.)

Janamejaya said.—"While those foremost of men—the sons of Prithā—were passing their days in the forest exposed to the inclemencies of the winter, the summer, the wind and the sun, what did they do, O Brāhmana, after they had reached the lake and woods going by the name of Dwaita?"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"After the sons of Pāndu had arrived at that lake, they chose a residence that was removed from the habitations of men. And they began to roam through de-

lightful woods and over charming mountains and picturesque river-valleys. And after they had taken up their residence there, many venerable ascetics endued with Vedic lore often came to see them. And those foremost of men always received those *Veda*-knowing *Rishis* with great respect. And one day there came unto the Kaurava princes a certain Brāhmana who was well-known on earth for his powers of speech. And having conversed with the Pāndavas for a while, he went away as pleased him to the court of the royal son of Vichitravirya. Received with respect by that chief of the Kurus, the old king, the Brāhmana took his seat; and asked by the monarch, began to talk of the sons of Dharma, Pavana, and Indra, and of the twins, all of whom having fallen into severe misery, had become emaciated and reduced owing to exposure to wind and sun. And that Brāhmana also talked of Krishnā who was overwhelmed with suffering and who then had become perfectly helpless, although she had heroes for her lords. And hearing the words of that Brāhmana, the royal son of Vichitrāvirya became afflicted with grief, at the thought of those princes of royal lineage then swimming in a river of sorrow. His inmost soul afflicted with sorrow, and trembling all over with sighs, he quieted himself with a great effort, remembering that everything had arisen from his own fault. And the monarch said,—'Alas, how is it that Yudhishthira who is the eldest of my sons, who is truthful and pious and virtuous in his behaviour, who hath not a foe; and who had formerly slept on beds made of soft *Ranku* skins, sleepeth now on the bare ground! Alas, wakened formerly by *Sutas* and *Māghadas* and other singers with his praises melodiously recited every morning, that prince of the Kuru race, equal unto Indra himself, is now waked from the bare ground towards the small hours of the night by a multitude of birds! How doth Vrikodara, reduced by exposure to wind and sun and filled with wrath, sleep, in the presence of the princess of Pānchāla, on the bare ground, unfit as he is to suffer such lot! Perhaps also, the intelligent Arjuna, who is incapable of bearing pain, and who though obedient to the will of Yudhishthira, yet feeleth himself to

be pierced over all by the remembrance of his wrongs, sleepeth not in the night! Beholding the twins and Krishnā and Yudhishthira and Bhima plunged in misery, Arjuna without doubt, sigheth like a serpent of fierce energy and sleepeth not from wrath in the night! The twins also, who are even like a couple of blessed celestials in heaven, sunk in woe though deserving of bliss, without doubt pass their nights in restless wakefulness, restrained (from avenging their wrongs) by virtue and truth! The mighty son of the Wind-god, who is equal to the Wind-god himself in strength, without doubt sigheth and restraineth his wrath, being tied through his elder brother in the bonds of truth! Superior in battle to all warriors, he now lieth quiet on the ground, restrained by virtue and truth, and burning to slay my children, he bideth his time. The cruel words that Dusçāsana spoke after Yudhishthira had been deceitfully defeated at dice, have sunk deep into Vrikodara's heart, and are consuming him, like a burning bundle of straw consuming a faggot of dry wood! The son of Dharma never acteth sinfully; Dhananjaya also always obeyeth him; but Bhima's wrath, in consequence of a life of exile, is increasing like a conflagration assisted by the wind! That hero, burning with rage such as that, squeezeth his hands and breatheth hot and fierce sighs, as if consuming therewith my sons and grandsons! The wielder of the *Gāndiva* and Vrikodara, when angry, are like Yama and Kāla themselves: scattering their shafts, which are like unto thunder-bolts, they exterminate in battle the ranks of the enemy! Alas, Duryodhana, and Sakuni, and the *Suta's* son, and Dusçāsana also of wicked soul, in robbing the Pāndavas of their kingdom by means of dice, seem to behold the hony alone without marking the terrible fall! A man having acted rightly or wrongly, expecteth the fruit of those acts. The fruit, however, confounding him, paralyses him fully. How can man, thereof, have salvation? If the soil is properly tilled, and the seed sown thereon, and if the god (of rain) showereth in season, still the crop may not grow. This is what we often hear. Indeed, how could this saying be true unless, as I think, it be that everything here is de-

pendent on Destiny? The gambler Sakuni hath behaved deceitfully towards the son of Pāndu, who ever acteth honestly. From affection for my wicked sons I also have acted similarly. Alas, it is owing to this that the hour of destruction hath come for the Kurus! Or, perhaps, what is inevitable must happen! The wind, impelled or not, will move. The woman that conceives will bring forth. Darkness will be dispelled at dawn, and day disappear at evening! Whatever may be earned by us or others, whether people spend it or not, when the time cometh, those possessions of ours do bring on misery. Why then do people become so anxious about earning wealth? If, indeed, what is acquired is the result of fate, then should it be protected so that it may not be divided, nor lost little by little, nor permitted to flow out at once, for if unprotected, it may break into an hundred fragments. But whatever the character of our possessions, our acts in the world are never lost. Behold what the energy of Arjuna is, who went into the abode of Indra from the woods! Having mastered the four kinds of celestial weapons, he hath come back into this world! What man is there who having gone to heaven in his human form wisheth to come back? This would never have been but because he seeth innumerable Kurus to be at the point of Death, afflicted by Time! The bowman is Arjuna, capable of wielding the bow with his left hand as well! The bow he wieldeth is the *Gāndiva* of fierce impetus. He hath, besides, those celestial weapons of his! Who is there that would bear the energy of these three?'

"Hearing these words of the monarch, the son of Suvala, going unto Duryodhana, who was then sitting with Karna, told them everything in private. And Duryodhana, though possessed of little sense, was filled with grief at what he heard."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-fifth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXXVI.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing those words of Dhritarāshtra, Sakuni, when the opportunity presented, aided by Karna, spoke unto Duryodhana these words:—'Having exiled the heroic Pāndavas by thy own prowess, O Bhārata, rule thou this earth without a rival, like the slayer of Samvara ruling the heaven! O monarch, the kings of the east, the south, the west, and the north, have all been made tributary to thee! O lord of earth, that blazing Prosperity which had before paid her court to the sons of Pāndu, hath now been acquired by thee along with thy brothers! That blazing Prosperity, O king, which we not many days ago saw with heavy hearts in Yudhishthira at Indraprastha, is today seen by us to be owned by thee, she having, O mighty-armed monarch, been snatched by thee from the royal Yudhishthira by force of intellect alone! O slayer of hostile heroes, all the kings of the earth are now living in subjection to thee, awaiting thy commands, as they did before under Yudhishthira, awaiting his! O monarch, the goddess Earth with her boundless extent and girth of seas, with her mountains and forests, and towns and cities and mines, and decked with woodlands and hills, is now thine! Adored by the Brāhmanas and worshipped by the kings, thou blazest forth, O king, in consequence of thy prowess, like the Sun among the gods in heaven! Surrounded by the Kurus, O king, like Yama by the Rudras, or Vāsava by the Maruts, thou shinest, O monarch, like the Moon among the stars! Let us, therefore, O king, go and look at the sons of Pāndu—them who are now divested of prosperity, them who never obeyed commands, them who never owed thee subjection! It hath been heard by us, O monarch, that the Pāndavas are now living on the banks of the lake called *Dwaitavana*, with a multitude of Brāhmanas, having the wilderness for their home. Go thither, O king, in all thy prosperity, scorching the sons of Pāndu with a sight of thy glory, like

the Sun scorching everything with his hot rays! Thyself a sovereign and they divested of sovereignty, thyself in prosperity and they divested of it, thyself possessing affluence and they in poverty, behold now, O king, the sons of Pāndu. Let the sons of Pāndu behold thee like Yayāti the son of Nahusha, accompanied by a large train of followers and enjoying bliss that is great. O king, that blazing Prosperity which is seen by both one's friends and foes, is regarded as well-bestowed! What happiness can be more complete than that which he enjoyeth who while himself in prosperity, looketh upon his foes in adversity, like a person on the hill-top looking down upon another crawling on the earth? O tiger among kings, the happiness that one derives from beholding his foes in grief, is greater than what one may derive from the acquisition of offspring or wealth or kingdom! What hapiness will not be his who, himself in affluence, will cast his eyes on Dhananjaya attired in barks and deer-skins? Let thy wife dressed in costly robes look at the woeful Krishnā clad in barks and deer-skins, and enhance the latter's griefs! Let the daughter of Drupada reproach herself and her life, divested as she is of wealth, for the sorrow that she will feel upon beholding thy wife decked in ornaments will be far greater than what she had felt in the midst of the assembly (when Dusçāsana had dragged her there)!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having thus spoken unto the king, Karna and Sakuni both remained silent, O Janamejaya, after their discourse was over."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-sixth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXXVII.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having heard these words of Karna, king Duryodhana became highly pleased. Soon after, however, the prince became melancholy and addressing the speaker said,—'What thou tellest me, O Karna, is always before my mind! I shall not, however, obtain permission to re-

pair to the place where the Pāndavas are residing. King Dhritarāshtra is always grieving for those heroes. Indeed, the king regardeth the sons of Pāndu to have become more powerful than before, in consequence of their ascetic austerities. Or, if the king understands our motives, he will never, having regard to the future, grant us permission, for, O thou of great effulgence, we can have no other business in the woods of *Dwaitavana* than the destruction of the Pāndavas in exile! Thou knowest the words that Kshatri spoke to me, to thyself, and to the son of Suvala, at the time of the match at dice! Reflecting upon all those words as also upon all those lamentations (that he and others indulged in), I can not make up my mind as to whether I should or should not go! I shall certainly be highly pleased if I cast my eyes on Bhima and Fālguna passing their days in pain with Krishnā in the woods. The joy that I may feel in obtaining the sovereignty of the entire Earth is nothing to that which will be mine upon beholding the sons of Pāndu attired in barks of trees and deer-skins. What joy can be greater, O Karna, than what will be mine upon beholding the daughter of Drupada dressed in red rags in the woods? If king Yudhishthira and Bhima the son of Pāndu behold me graced with great affluence, then only I shall have attained the great end of my life! I do not, however, see the means by which I may repair to those woods, by which, in fact, I may obtain the king's permission to go thither! Contrive thou, therefore, some skilful plan, with Suvala's son and Dusçāsana, by which we may go to those woods! I also, making up my mind today as to whether I should go or not, approach the presence of the king tomorrow. And when I shall be sitting with Vishma—that best of the Kurus—thou wilt, with Sauvala, propose the pretext which thou mayst have contrived. Hearing then the words of Bishma and of the king, on the subject of our journey, I will settle everything, beseeching our grandfather!'

"Saying 'So be it,' they then all went away to their respective quarters. And as soon as the night had passed away, Karna came to the king. And coming to him, Karna

smilingly spoke unto Duryodhana, saying, 'A plan hath been contrived by me. Listen to it, O lord of men! Our herds are now waiting in the woods of *Dwaitavana* in expectation of thee! Without doubt, we may all go there under the pretext of supervising our cattle-stations, for, O monarch, it is proper that kings should frequently repair to their cattle-stations. If this be the motive put forth, thy father, O prince, will certainly grant thee permission!' And while Duryodhana and Karna were thus conversing about the pretext of seeing the cattle-stations, Sakuni the king of Gāndhāra, laughingly addressed them and said, 'This plan, free from difficulties, was what I also saw for going thither! The king will certainly grant us permission, or even send us thither of his own accord! Our herds are now all waiting in the woods of *Dwaitavana* expecting thee! Without doubt, we may all go there, under the pretext of supervising our cattle-stations!'

"They then all three laughed together, and gave their hands unto one another. And having arrived at that conclusion, they went to see the chief of the Kurus."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-seventh Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXXVIII.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"They then all saw king Dhritarāshtra, O Janamejaya, and having seen him, enquired after his welfare, and were, in return, asked about their welfare! Then a cow-herd named Samanga, who had been instructed before-hand by them, approaching the king, spoke unto him of the cattle. Then the son of Rādhā and Sakuni, O king, addressing Dhritarāshtra, that foremost of monarchs, said, 'O Kaurava, our cattle-stations are now in a delightful place. The time for their tale as also for marking the calves hath come. And, O monarch, this also is an excellent season for thy son to go ahunting! It behoveth thee, therefore, to grant permission to Duryodhana to go thither!'

"Dhritarāshtra replied, 'The chase of the deer, as also the examination of cattle, is very proper, O child! I think, indeed, that the herdsmen are not to be trusted. But we have heard that those tigers among men, the Pāndavas, are now staying in the vicinity of those cattle-stations. I think, therefore, ye should not go thither yourselves! Defeated by decietful means, they are now living in the deep forest in great suffering. O Rādheya, they are mighty warriors, and naturally able, they are now devoted to ascetic austerities. King Yudhishthira will not suffer his wrath to be awakened, but Bhimasena is naturally passionate. The daughter of Yajnasena is Energy's self. Full of pride and folly, ye are certain to give offence. Endued with ascetic merit, she will certainly consume you! Or, perhaps, those heroes, armed with swords and other weapons and filled with wrath, may consume you with the fire of their weapons! Or, if from force of numbers, ye seek to injure them in any respect, that will be a highly improper act, although, as I think, ye will never be able to succeed. The mighty-armed Dhananjaya hath lived for sometime in the abode of Indra, and having obtained celestial weapons hath returned thence to the forest. While unaccomplished in arms, Vivatsu had subjugated the whole earth before. A mighty warrior as he is and accomplished in arms now, will he not be able to slay you all? Or, if in obedience to my words, ye behave carefully having repaired thither, ye will not be able to live happily there in consequence of the anxiety ye will feel owing to a state of continued trustlessness. Or, some soldier of yours may do some injury to Yudhishthira, and that unpremeditated act will be ascribed to your fault. Therefore, let some faithful men proceed there for the work of tale! I do not think it is proper for thee, O Bhārata, to go thither thyself!'

"Sakuni said,—'The eldest of the sons of Pāndu is cognisant of morality. He pledged in the midst of the assembly, O Bhārata, that he would live for twelve years in the forest. The other sons of Pāndu are all virtuous and obedient to Yudhishthira. And Yudhishthira himself, the son of Kunti, will never be angry with us. Indeed, we desire very much

to go on a hunting expedition, and will avail of that opportunity for supervising the tale of our cattle. We have no mind to see the sons of Pāndu. We will not go to that spot where the Pāndavas have taken up their residence, and consequently no exhibition of misconduct can possibly arise on our part.'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed by Sakuni, that lord of men, Dhritarāshtra, granted permission, but not very willingly, to Duryodhana and his counsellors to go to the place. And permitted by the monarch, the Bhārata prince born of Gāndhāri started, accompanied by Karna and surrounded by a large host. And he was also accompanied by Dusçāsana and Suvala's son of great intelligence and by many other brothers of his and by ladies in thousands. And as the mighty-armed prince started for beholding the lake that was known by the name of *Dwaitavana*, the citizens (of Hastinā), also accompanied by their wives, began to follow him to that forest. Eight thousand cars, thirty-thousand elephants, nine-thousand horses, and many thousands of foot-soldiers, and carriages and shops and pavilions and traders and bards and men trained in the ways of the chase by hundreds and thousands followed the prince. And as the king started, followed by this large concourse of people, the uproar that was caused there resembled, O king, the deep tumult of the raging winds in the rainy season. And reaching the lake of *Dwaitavana* with all his followers and vehicles, king Duryodhana took up his quarters at the distance of four miles from it."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-eighth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXXXIX.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"King Duryodhana then, moving from forest to forest, at last approached the cattle-stations, and encamped his troops. And his attendants, selecting a well-known and delightful spot that abounded with water and

trees and that possessed every convenience, constructed an abode for him. And near enough to the royal residence they also erected separate abodes for Karna and Sakuni and the brothers of the king. And the king beheld his cattle by hundreds and thousands, and examining their limbs and marks supervised their tale. And he caused the calves to be marked and took note of those that required to be tamed. And he also counted those kine whose calves had not yet been yeaned. And completing the task of tale by marking and counting every calf that was three years old, the Kuru prince, surrounded by the cow-herds, began to sport and wander cheerfully. And the citizens also and the soldiers by thousands began to sport, as best pleased them, in those woods, like the celestials. And the herds-men, well-skilled in singing and dancing and instrumental music, and virgins decked in ornaments, began to minister to the pleasures of Dhritarāshtra's son. And the king surrounded by the ladies of the royal household began to cheerfully distribute wealth and food and drinks of various kinds amongst those that sought to please him, according to their deserts.

"And the king, attended by all his followers, began also to slay hyenas and buffalos and deer and gayals and bears and boars all around. And the king, piercing by his shafts those animals by thousands in the deep forest, caused the deer to be caught in the more delightful parts of the woods. Drinking milk and enjoying, O Bhārata, various other delicious articles, and beholding, as he proceeded, many delightful forests and woods swarming with bees inebriate with floral hony and resounding with the notes of the peacock, the king at last reached the sacred lake of *Dwaitavana*. And the spot which the king reached swarmed with bees inebriate with floral honey, and echoed with the mellifluous notes of the blue-throated jay, and was shaded by *Saptacchadas* and *Punnāgas* and *Vakulas*. And the king graced with high prosperity proceeded thither like the thunder-wielding chief himself of the celestials. And, O thou best of the Kuru race, king Yudhishthira the just, endued with high intelligence, was then, O monarch, residing in the vicinity of that

lake at will and celebrating with his wedded wife the daughter of Drupada the diurnal sacrifice called *Rājarshi*, according to the ordinance sanctioned for the celestials and persons living in the wilderness. And, O monarch, having reached that spot, Duryodhana commanded his men by thousands, saying, 'Let pleasure-houses be constructed soon.' Thus commanded, those doers of the king's behests replying unto the Kuru chief, saying, 'So be it,' went towards the banks of the lake for constructing pleasure-houses. And as the picked soldiers of Dhritarāshtra's son, having reached the region of the lake, were about to enter the gates of the wood, a number of Gandharvas appeared and forbade them to enter. For, O monarch, the king of the Gandharvas, accompanied by his followers, had come thither before-hand, from the abode of Kuvera. And the king of the Gandharvas had also been accompanied by the several tribes of Apsarās as also by the sons of the celestials. And intent upon sport, he had come to that place for merriment, and occupying it, had closed it against all comers. And the attendants of the (Kuru) king, finding the lake closed by the king of the Gandharvas, went back, O monarch, to where the royal Duryodhana was. And Duryodhana having heard these words, despatched a number of his warriors difficult of being subjugated in battle, commanding them to drive away the Gandharvas. And those warriors who formed the vanguard of the Kuru army, hearing these words of the king, went back to the lake of Dwaitavana and, addressing the Gandharvas, said, 'The mighty king Duryodhana—the son of Dhritarāshtra—is coming hither for sport. Stand ye aside, therefore!' Thus addressed by them, O king, the Gandharvas laughed and replied unto those men in these harsh words:—'Your wicked king Suyodhana must be destitute of sense. How else could he have thus commanded us that are dwellers of heaven, as if, indeed, we were his servants? Without forethought, ye also are doubtless on the point of death; for senseless idiots as ye are, ye have dared to bring us his message! Return ye soon to where that king of the Kurus is, or else go this very day to the abode of Yama.' Thus addressed by the Gandharvas, the advanced guard of

the king's army ran back to the place where the royal son of Dhritarāshtra was."

Thus ends the two hundred and thirty-ninth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXL.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Those soldiers then, O king, all went back to Duryodhana and repeated to him every word that the Gandharvas had said. And, O Bhārata, finding that his soldiers had been opposed by the Gandharvas, Dhritarāshtra's son, endued with energy, was filled with rage. And the king addressed his soldiers, saying, 'Punish these wretches who desire to oppose my will, even if they have come hither to sport, accompanied by all the celestials with him of an hundred sacrifices !' And hearing these words of Duryodhana, the sons and officers of Dhritarāshtra, all endued with great strength, as also warriors by thousands, began to arm themselves for battle. And filling the ten sides with loud leonine roars and crushing all those Gandharvas that had been guarding the gates, they entered the forest. And as the Kuru soldiers entered the forest, other Gandharvas came up and forbade them to advance. And though gently forbidden by the Gandharvas to advance, the Kuru soldiers, without regarding them in the least, began to enter that mighty forest. And when those rangers of the sky found that the Dhārtarāshtra warriors along with their king could not be stopped by words, they all went to *their* king Chitrasena and represented everything unto him. And when Chitrasena the king of the Gandharvas learnt everything, he became filled with rage, and alluding to the Kurus, commanded his followers, saying, 'Punish these wretches of wicked behaviour.' And, O Bhārata, when the Gandharvas were so commanded by Chitrasena, they rushed, weapons in hand, towards the Dhārtarāshtra ranks. And beholding the Gandharvas impetuously rushing towards them with upraised weapons, the Kuru warriors precipitately fled in all

directions in the very sight of Duryodhana. And beholding the Kuru soldiers all flying from the field with their backs to the foe, the heroic Rādheya alone fled not. And seeing the mighty host of the Gandharvas rushing towards him, Rādheya checked them by a perfect shower of arrows. And the *Suta's* son, owing to his extreme lightness of hand, struck hundreds of Gandharvas with *Kshurapras* and arrows and *Bhallas* and various weapons made of bones and steel. And that mighty warrior, causing the heads of numerous Gandharvas to roll down within a short time, made the ranks of Chitrasena to yell in anguish. And although they were slaughtered in great numbers by Karna endued with great intelligence , yet the Gandharvas returned to the charge by hundreds and thousands. And in consequence of the swarms of Chitrasena's warriors rushing impetuously to the field, the earth itself became soon covered by the Gandharva host. Then king Duryodhana, and Sakuni the son of Suvala, and Dusçāsana, and Vikarna, and other sons of Dhritarāstra, seated on cars the clatter of whose wheels resembled the roars of Gadura, returned to the charge, following the lead of Karna, and began to slaughter that host. And desirous of supporting Karna, these princes invested the Gandharva army, with a large number of cars and a strong body of horse. Then the whole of the Gandharva host began to fight with the Kauravas. And the encounter that took place between the contending hosts was fierce in the extreme and might make one's hair stand on end. The Gandharvas at last, afflicted with the shafts of the Kuru army, seemed to be exhausted. And the Kauravas beholding the Gandharvas so afflicted, sent up a loud sound.

"And seeing the Gandharva host yielding to fear, the angry Chitrasena sprang from his seat, resolved to exterminate the Kuru army. And conversant with various modes of warfare, he waged on the fight, aided by his weapons of illusion. And the Kaurava warriors were then all deprived of their senses by the illusion of Chitrasena. And then, O Bhārata, it seemed that every warrior of the Kuru army was fallen upon and surrounded by ten Gandharvas. And

attacked with great vigor, the Kuru host was greatly afflicted: and struck with panic, O king, all of them that liked to live, fled from the field. But while the entire Dhārtarāshtra host broke and fled, Karna the offspring of the Sun stood there, O king, immovable as a hill. Indeed, Duryodhana and Karna and Sakuni the son of Suvala, all fought with the Gandharvas, although every one of them was much wounded and mangled in the encounter. All the Gandharvas then, desirous of slaying Karna, rushed together by hundreds and thousands towards Karna. And those mighty warriors, desirous of slaying the *Suta's* son, surrounded him on all sides, with swords and battle-axes and spears. And some cut down the yoke of his car, and some his flagstaff, and some the shaft of his car, and some his horses, and some his charioteer. And some cut down his umbrella, and some the wooden fender round his car, and some the joints of his car. It was thus that many thousands of Gandharvs, together attacking his car, broke it into minute fragments. And while his car was thus attacked, Karna leaped therefrom with sword and shield in hand, and mounting on Vikarna's car, urged the steeds for saving himself."

Thus ends the two hundred and fortieth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXLI.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"After that great warrior Karna had been routed by the Gandharvas, the whole of the Kuru army, O monarch, fled from the field in the very sight of Dhritarāshtra's son. And beholding all his troops flying from the field of battle with their back to the foe, king Duryodhana refused to fly. Seeing the mighty host of the Gandharvas rushing towards him, that repressor of foes poured down upon them a thick shower of arrows. The Gandharvas, however, without regarding that arrowy shower, and desirous also of slaying him, surrounded that car of his. And by means of their arrows, they cut off

into fragments the yoke, the shaft, the fenders, the flag-staff, the three-fold bamboo poles, and the principal turret of his car. And they also slew his charioteer and horses, hacking them to pieces. And when Duryodhana, deprived of his car, fell on the ground, the strong-armed Chitrasena rushed towards him and seized him in such a way that it seemed his life itself was taken. And after the Kuru king had been seized, the Gandharvas, surrounding Dusçāsana, who was seated on his car, also took him prisoner. And some Gandharvas seized Vivingçati and Chitrasena, and some Vinda and Anuvinda, while others seized all the ladies of royal household. And the warriors of Duryodhana, who were routed by the Gandharvas, joining those who had fled first, approached the Pāndavas (who were living in the vicinity.) And after Duryodhana had been made captive, the vehicles, the shops, the pavilions, the carriages, and the draught animals, all were made over to the Pāndavas for protection. And those soldiers said, 'The mighty-armed son of Dhritarāshtra possessed of great strength and handsome mein, is being taken away captive by the Gandharvas! Ye sons of Prithā, follow them! Dusçāsana, Durvishaha, Durmukha, and Durjaya, are all being led away as captives in chains by the Gandharvas, as also all the ladies of the royal household!'

"Crying thus, the followers of Duryodhana, afflicted with grief and melancholy, approached Yudhishthira, desirous of effecting the release of the king. Bhima then answered those old attendants of Duryodhana, who, afflicted with grief and melancholy, were thus soliciting (the aid of Yudhishthira), saying, 'What we should have done with great efforts, arraying ourselves in line of battle, supported by horses and elephants hath, indeed, been done by the Gandharvas! They that came hither for other purposes, have been overtaken by consequences they had not foreseen! Indeed, this is the result of the evil counsels of a king who is fond of deceitful play! It hath been heard by us that the foe of a person who is powerless, is overthrown by others. The Gandharvas have, in an extraordinary way, illustrated before our eyes the truth of

this saying! It seems that there is still fortunately some person in the world who is desirous of doing us good, who hath, indeed, taken upon his own shoulders our pleasant load, although we are sitting idly! The wretch had come hither to cast his eyes on us,—himself in prosperity while ourselves are sunk in adversity and emaciated by ascetic austerities and are exposed to wind, cold, and heat. They that imitate the behaviour of that sinful and wreched Kaurava, are now beholding his disgrace!* He that had instructed Duryodhana to do this, had certainly acted sinfully. That the sons of Kunti are not wicked and sinful, I tell it before you all!'

"And while Bhima the son of Kunti was speaking thus in a voice of sarcasm, king Yudhishthira told him, 'This is not the time for cruel words!'"

Thus ends the two hundred and forty-first Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXLII.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said, 'O child, why dost thou use language such as this, towards the frightened Kurus, who are now in adversity and who have come to us, solicitious of protection? O Vrikodara, disunions and disputes do take place amongst those that are connected in blood. Hostilities such as these do go on. But the honor of the family is never suffered to be interfered with. If any stranger seeketh to insult the honor of a family, they that are good never tolerate such insult coming from the stranger. The wicked-souled king of the Gandharvas knoweth that we are living here for sometime. Yet disregarding us, he hath done this deed which is so disagreeable to us! O exalted one, from this forcible seizure of Duryodhana and from this insult to the ladies of our house by a stranger, our family honor is being destroyed! Therefore, ye tigers among men, arise and arm yourselves without delay for rescuing those that have sought our protec-

* This is an allusion to Karna and others.—T.

tion and for guarding the honor of our family! Ye tigers among men, let Arjuna and the twins and thyself also that art brave and unvanquished, liberate Suyodhana, who is even now being taken away a captive! Ye foremost of warriors, these blazing cars furnished with golden flagstaffs and every kind of weapons, belonging to Dhritarāshtra's sons, are ready here. With Indrasena and other charioteers skilled in arms, for guiding them, ride ye on these ever-furnished cars of deep rattle! And riding on these, exert ye with activity for fighting with the Gandharvas to liberate Duryodhana! Even an ordinary Kshatriya (amongst those that are here), would to the height of his power, protect one that hath come hither for refuge! What then, O Vrikodara, shall I say of thee? Entreated for assistance in such words as—*O hasten to my aid!*—who is there (amongst those standing around me) that is high-souled enough to assist even his foe, beholding him seeking shelter with joined hands? The bestowal of a boon, sovereignty, and the birth of a son, are sources of great joy. But, ye sons of Pāndu, the liberation of a foe from distress is equal to all the three put together! What can be a source of greater joy to you than that Suyodhana sunk in distress seeketh his very life as depending on the might of your arms? O Vrikodara, if the vow in which I am engaged had by this been over, there is little doubt that I would myself have run to his aid! Strive thou by all means, O Bhārata, to liberate Suyodhana by the arts of conciliation! If, however, the king of the Gandharvas cannot be managed by the arts of conciliation, then must thou try to rescue Suyodhana by lightly skrimishing with the foe. But if the chief of the Gandharvas do not let the Kurus off even then, they must be rescued by crushing the foe by all means! O Vrikodara, this is all I can tell thee now, for my vow hath been begun and is not ended yet!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued. "Hearing these words of Ajātaçatru, Dhananjaya pledged himself, from respect for those commands of his superior to liberate the Kauravas. And Arjuna said, 'If the Gandharvas do not set the Dhārtarāshtras free peacefully, the Earth shall this day drink the

blood of the king of the Gandharvas!' And hearing that pledge of the truth-speaking Arjuna, the Kauravas then, O king, regained (the lost) tenour of their minds."

Thus ends the two hundred and forty-second Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXLIII.

(Ghosha yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said. " Hearing the words of Yudhishthira, those bulls among men, headed by Bhimasena, rose up with faces beaming in joy. And those mighty warriors, O Bhārata, then began to case themselves in impenetrable mail that were besides variegated with pure gold, and arm themselves with celestial weapons of various kinds. And the Pāndavas thus cased in mail, and mounted on those chariots furnished with flagstaffs and, armed with bow and arrows, looked like blazing fires. And those tigers among warriors, riding upon those well-furnished cars drawn by fleet horses, proceeded to that spot without losing a moment. And beholding those mighty warriors—the sons of Pāndu—thus proceeding together (for the liberation of Duryodhana), the Kuru army sent forth a loud shout. And soon did those rangers of the sky flushed with victory, and those impetuous warriors, the sons of Pāndu, fearlessly encountered each other in that forest. The Gandharvas were flushed with success, and beholding the four brave sons of Pāndu coming to battle seated on their cars, they all turned back towards the advancing combatants. And the dwellers of the Gandhamādana, beholding the Pāndavas looking like the blazing guardians of the world provoked to ire, stood arrayed in order of battle. And, O Bhārata, in accordance with the words of king Yudhishthira of great wisdom, the encounter that took place was a skirmish. But when Arjuna—that persecutor of foes—saw that the foolish soldiers of the king of Gandharvas could not be made to understand what was good for them by means of a light skrimish, he addressed those invincible rangers of the skies in a conciliatory tone and said, 'Leave ye my brother king Suyodhana!' Thus

addressed by the illustrious son of Pāndu, the Gandharvas, laughing aloud, replied unto him, saying, 'O child, there is but one in the world whose behests we obey, and living under whose rule we pass our days in happiness : O Bhārata, we always act as that one only person commandeth us ! Besides that celestial chief, there is none that can command us !' Thus addressed by the Gandharvas, Dhananjaya, the son of Kunti, replied unto them, saying, 'This contact with other peoples's wives and this hostile encounter with human beings are acts that are both censurable in the king of the Gandharvas and not proper for him. Therefore, leave ye these sons of Dhritarāshtra all endued with mighty energy! And liberate ye also these ladies, at the command of king Yudhishthira the just! If, ye Gandharvas, ye do not set the sons of Dhritarāshtra free peacefully, I shall certainly rescue Suyodhana (and his party) by exerting my prowess.' And speaking unto them thus, Prithā's son Dhananjaya, capable of wielding the bow with his left hand also, then rained a shower of sharp-pointed sky-ranging shafts upon those rangers of the firmament. Thus attacked, the mighty Gandharvas then encountered the sons of Pāndu with a show of arrows equally thick, and the Pāndavas also replied by attacking those dwellers of heaven. And the battle then, O Bhārata, that raged between the active and agile Gandharvas and the impetuous son of Pāndu was fierce in the extreme!"

Thus ends the two hundred and forty-third Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXLIV.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said. "Then those Gandharvas decked in golden garlands and accomplished in celestial weapons, showing their blazing shafts, encountered the Pāndavas from every side. And as the sons of Pāndu were only four in number and the Gandharvas counted by thousands, the battle that ensued appeared to be extraordinary. And as the cars of Karna and Duryodhana had formerly been broken into an

hundred fragments by the Gandharvas, so were the cars of the four heroes attempted to be broken. But those tigers among men began to encounter with thick showers of arrows thousands upon thousands of Gandharvas rushing towards them. Those rangers of skies endued with great energy, thus checked on all sides by that arrowy down-pour, succeeded not in even coming near to the sons of Pāndu. Then Arjuna whose ire had been provoked, aiming at the angry Gandharvas, prepared to hurl against them his celestial weapons. And in that encounter, the mighty Arjuna, by means of his *Agneya* weapon, sent ten hundreds of thousands of Gandharvas to the abode of Yama. And that mighty bowman, Bhima also, that foremost of all warriors in battle, slew, by means of his sharp arrows, Gandharvas by hundreds. And the mighty sons of Mādri also, battling with vigor, encounted hundreds of Gandharvas, O king, and slaughtered them all. And as the Gandharvas were being thus slaughtered by the mighty warriors with their celestial weapons, they rose up to the skies, taking with them the sons of Dhritarāshtra. But Dhananjaya the son of Kunti, beholding them rise up to the skies, surrounded them on every side by a wide net of arrows. And confined within that arrowy net like birds within a cage, they showered in wrath upon Arjuna maces and darts and broad-swords. But Arjuna who was conversant with the most efficacious weapons, soon checked that shower of maces and darts and broad-swords, and in return began to mangle the limbs of his foes by means of his crescent-shaped arrows. And heads and legs and arms began to drop down from above resembling a shower of stones. And at that sight, the foe was struck with panic. And as the Gandharvas were being slaughtered by the illustrious son of Pāndu, they began to shower from the skies a heavy down-pour of shafts upon Arjuna, who was on the surface of the earth. But that chastiser of foes, Arjuna endued with mighty energy, checked that shower of arrows by means of his own weapons, and began, in return, to wound them. Then Arjuna of the Kuru race shot his well-known weapons called *Sthunākarna*, *Indrajāla*, *Saura*, *Agneya*, and *Saumya*. And the Gandharvas,

consumed by the fiery weapons of Kunti's son, began to suffer heavily, like the sons of Diti, while being scorched by Sakra's thunderbolt. And when they attacked Arjuna from above, they were checked by his net of arrows. And while they attacked him from all sides on the surface of the earth, they were checked by his crescent-shaped arrows. And beholding the Gandharvas put in fear by Kunti's son, Chitrasena rushed, O Bhārata, at Dhananjaya, armed with a mace. And as the king of the Gandharvas was rushing at Arjuna from above with that mace in hand, the latter cut with his arrows that mace wholly made of iron into seven pieces. And beholding that mace of his cut into many pieces by Arjuna of great activity, with his arrows, Chitrasena, by means of his science, concealed himself from the view of the Pāndava and began to fight with him. The heroic Arjuna, however, by means of his own celestial weapons checked all the celestial weapons that were aimed at him by the king of the Gandharvas. And when the chief of the Gandharvas saw that he was checked by the illustrious Arjuna with those weapons of his, he entirely disappeared from sight by help of his powers of illusion. And Arjuna, observing that the chief of the Gandharvas was striking at him concealed from sight, attacked his assailant with celestial weapons inspired with proper *Mantras*. And the multiform Dhananjaya, filled with wrath, prevented the disapearance of his foe by means of his weapon known by the name of *Sabda-bheda*. And assailed with those weapons by the illustrious Arjuna, his dear friend the king of the Gandharvas, showed himself unto him. And Chitrasena said,—'Behold in me thy friend battling with thee!' And beholding his friend Chitrasena exhausted in the battle, that bull among the sons of Pāndu withdrew the weapons he had shot. And the other sons of Pāndu, beholding Arjuna withdraw his weapons, checked their flying steeds and the impetus of their weapons, and withdrew their bows. And Chitrasena and Bhima and Arjuna and the twins, enquiring about one another's welfare, sat awhile on their respective cars."

Thus ends the two hundred and forty-fourth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CCXLV.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said, "Then that mighty bowman of blazing splendour, Arjuna, smilingly said unto Chitrasena in the midst of the Gandharva host, 'What purpose dost thou serve, O hero, in punishing the Kauravas? O, why also hath Suyodhana with his wives been thus punished?'

"Chitrasena replied, 'O Dhananjaya, without stirring from my own abode I became acquainted with the purpose of the wicked Duryodhana and the wretched Karna in coming hither. That purpose was even this: knowing that ye are exiles in the forest and suffering great afflictions as if ye had none to take care of you, himself in prosperity, this wretch entertained the desire of beholding you plunged in adversity and misfortune! They came hither for mocking you and the illustrious daughter of Drupada. The lord of the celestials also, having ascertained this purpose of theirs, told me,—Go thou and bring Duryodhana hither in chains along with his counsellors. Dhananjaya also with his brothers should always be protected by thee in battle, for he is thy dear friend and disciple!—At these words of the lord of the celestials I came hither speedily. This wicked prince hath also been put in chains. I will now proceed to the region of the celestials, whither I will lead this wicked wight at the command of the slayer of Pāka!'

"Arjuna answered, saying, 'O Chitrasena, if thou wishest to do what is agreeable to me, set Suyodhana free, at the command of king Yudhishthira the just, for he is our brother!'

"Chitrasena said, 'This sinful wretch is always full of vanity. He deserveth not to be set free. O Dhananjaya, he hath deceived and wronged both king Yudhishthira the just and Krishnā. Yudhishthira the son of Kunti as yet knoweth not the purpose on which the wretch came hither. Let the king, therefore, do what he desires after knowing everything!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued, "After this, all of them went

to the king Yudhishthira the just. And going unto the king, they represented unto him everything about Duryodhana's conduct. And Ajātaçatru, hearing everything that the Gandharvas said, liberated all the Kauravas and applauded the Gandharvas. And the king said, 'Fortunate it is for us that though gifted with great strength ye did not yet slay the wicked son of Dhritarāshtra along with all his counsellors and relatives! This, O sire, hath been an act of great kindness done to me by the Gandharvas! The honor also of my family is saved by liberating this wicked wight! I am glad at seeing you all. Command me what I am to do for you! And having obtained all your wishes, return ye soon whence ye came!'

"Thus addressed by the intelligent son of Pāndu, the Gandharvas became well-pleased and went away with the Apsaras. And the lord of the celestials then, coming to that spot, revived those Gandharvas that had been slain in the encounter with the Kurus, by sprinkling the celestial *Amrita* over them. And the Pāndavas also, having liberated their relatives along with the ladies of the royal household, and having achieved that difficult feat (the defeat of the Gandharva host), became well-pleased. And those illustrious and mighty warriors, worshipped by the Kurus along with their sons and wives, blazed forth in splendour, like flaming fires in the sacrificial compound. And Yudhishthira then addressing the liberated Duryodhana in the midst of his brothers, from affection told him these words:—'O child, never again do such a rash act! O Bhārata, a rash wight never cometh by happiness! O son of the Kuru race, blessed be thou with all thy brothers! Go back to thy capital as pleases thee, without yielding thyself to despondency or cheerlessness!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued. "Thus dismissed by the son of Pāndu, king Duryodhana then saluted king Yudhishthira the just, and overwhelmed with shame, and his heart rent in twain, mechanically set out for his capital, like one destitute of life. And after the Kaurava prince had left, the brave Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, along with his brothers, was

worshipped by the Brāhmanas, and surrounded by those Brāhmanas endued with the wealth of asceticism, like Sakra himself by the celestials, he began to pass his days happily in the woods of Dwaitá."

Thus ends the two hundred and forty-fifth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXLVI.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Janameyaya said. "After his defeat and capture by the foe and his subsequent liberation by the illustrious sons of Pāndu by force of arms, it seemeth to me that the entry of the proud, wicked, boastful, vicious, insolent, and wretched Duryodhana, ever engaged in insulting the sons of Pāndu and bragging of his own superiority, into Hastināpura, must have been exceedingly difficult. Describe to me in detail, O Vaiçampāyana, the entry into the captial, of that prince overwhelmed with shame and unmanned by grief!"

Vaiçampāyana said. "Dismissed by king Yudhishthira the just, Dhritarāshtra's son Suyodhana, bending his head down in shame and afflicted with grief and melancholy, set out slowly. And the king, accompanied by his four kinds of forces, proeeeded towards his city, his heart rent in grief and filled with thoughts of his overthrow. Leaving his vehicles along the way in a region that abounded in grass and water, the king encamped on a delightful piece of ground as pleased him best, with his elephants and cars and cavalry and infantry stationed all around. And as king Duryodhana was seated on an elevated bedstead endued with the effulgence of fire, himself looking like the moon under an eclipse, towards the small hours of the morning, Karna, approaching him, said, 'Fortunate it is, O son of Gāndhāri, that thou art alive! Fortunate it is, that we have once more met! By good luck it is, that thou hast vanquished the Gandharvas capable of assuming any from at will! And, O son of the Kuru race, it is by good luck alone, that I am enabled to see thy brothers—mighty warriors all—come off victorious from

that encounter, having subjugated their foes! As regards myself, assailed by all the Gandharvas, I fled before thy eyes; unable to rally our flying host! Assailed by the foe with all his might, my body mangled with their arrows, I sought safety in flight. This, however, O Bhārata, seemeth to me to be a great marval that I behold you all come safe and sound in body, with your wives, troops and vehicles, out of that superhuman encounter! O Bhārata, there is no other man in this world who can achieve what thou, O king, hast achieved in battle today with thy brothers.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued. "Thus addressed by Karna, king Duryodhana replied unto the ruler of the Angas in a voice choked with tears."

Thus ends the two hundred and forty-sixth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXLVII.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Duryodhana said,—'O Rādheya, thou knowest not what hath happened. Therefore, I do not resent thy words. Thou thinkest the hostile Gandharvas to have been vanquished by me with my own energy. O thou of mighty arms, my brothers, indeed, had, for a long time, aided by me, fought with the Gandharvas. The slaughter, indeed, on both sides was great. But when those brave Gandharvas, resorting to their powers of illusion, ascended the skies and began to fight with us thence, our encounter with them then ceased to be an equal one. Defeat then was ours and even captivity along with our attendants and counsellors and children and wives and troops and vehicles. And afflicted with sorrow, we were being taken by them through the skies. It was then that some soldiers of ours and some brave officers repaired in grief unto the sons of Pāndu—those heroes that never refuse succour to those that ask for it. And having gone to them, they said,—Here is king Duryodhana, the son of Dhritarāshtra, who with his younger brothers and friends and wives is being led away a captive by the Gandharvas along the sky. Blest be ye! Liber-

ate the king along with the women of the royal household! Suffer no insult to be offered unto all the ladies of the Kuru race.—And when they had spoken thus, the eldest of Pàndu's sons, who is endued with a virtuous soul, then conciliated his brothers and commanded them to liberate us. Then those bulls among men, the Pāndavas, overtaking the Gandharvas, solicited our release in soft words, although fully able to effect it by force of arms. And when the Gandharvas, addressed in such conciliatory words, refused to set us at liberty, then Arjuna, and Bhima, and the twins endued with mighty energy, shot showers of arrows at the Gandharvas. Then the Gandharvas, abandoning the fight, fled through the sky, dragging our melancholy selves after them, themselves filled with joy. Then we beheld a net-work of arrows spread all around by Dhananjaya, who was also shooting celestial weapons upon the foe. And seeing the points of the horizon covered by Arjuna with a thick net-work of sharp arrows, his friend the chief of the Gandharvas, showed himself. And Chitrasena and Arjuna, embracing each other, enquired after each other's welfare. And the other sons of Pāndu also embraced the chief of the Gandharvas and were embraced by him. And enquiries of courtesy passed between them also. And the brave Gandharvas then abandoning their weapons and mail, mingled in a friendly spirit with the Pāndavas. And Chitrasena and Dhananjaya worshippped each other with regard.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and forty-seventh Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXLVIII.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Duryodhana said,—'That slayer of hostile heroes, Arjuna, then approaching Chitrasena, smilingly addressed him in these manly words :—O hero, O foremost of the Gandharvas, it behoveth thee to set my brothers at liberty. They are incapable of being insulted as long as the sons of Pāndu are alive!—Thus addressed by the illustrious son of

Pāndu, the chief of the Gandharvas, O Karna, disclosed unto the Pāndavas the object we had in view in proceeding to that place, *viz*, that we came there for casting our eyes on the sons of Pāndu with their wife all plunged in misery! And while the Gandharva was disclosing those counsels of ours, overwhelmed with shame I desired the Earth to yield me a crevice, so that I might disappear there and then. The Gandharvas then, accompanied by the Pāndavas, went to Yudhishthira, and, disclosing unto him also our counsels, made us over, bound as we were, to him. Alas, what greater sorrow could be mine than that I should thus be offered as a tribute unto Yudhishthira, in the very sight of the women of our house-hold, myself in chains and plunged in misery, and under the absolute control of my enemies! Alas, they, who have ever been persecuted by me, they, unto whom I have ever been a foe, released me from captivity, and, wretch that I am, I am indebted to them for my life. If, O hero, I had met with my death in that great battle, that would have been far better than that I should have obtained my life in this way. If I had been slain by the Gandharvas, my fame would have spread over the whole earth, and I should have obtained auspicious regions of eternal bliss in the heaven of Indra. Listen to me therefore, ye bulls among men, as to what I intend to do now! I will stay here foregoing all food, while ye all return home, Let all my brothers also go to Hastināpura. Let all our friends, including Karna, and all our relatives headed by Dusçāsana, return now to the capital. Insulted by the foe, I myself will not repair thither. I who had before wrested from the foe his respect, I who had always enhanced the respect of my friends, have now become a source of sorrow unto friends and of joy unto enemies! What shall I now say unto the king, going to the city named after the elephant? What will Bhishma and Drona, Kripa and Drona's son, Vidura and Sanjaya, Vālhika and Somadatti and other reverened seniors,—what will the principal men of the other orders and men of independent professions, say to me, and what shall I say unto them in reply? Having hitherto stayed

over the heads of my enemies, having hitherto trod upon their breasts, I have fallen away from my position! How shall I ever speak with them? Insolent men, having obtained prosperity and knowledge and affluence, are seldom blest for any length of time, like myself puffed up with vanity. Alas, led by folly I have done a highly improper and wicked act, for which, fool that I am, I have fallen into such distress! Therefore will I perish by starving, life having become insupportable to me! Relieved from distress by the foe, what man of spirit is there who can drag on his existence? Proud as I am, shorn of manliness, the foe hath laughed at me, for the Pāndavas possessed of prowess have looked at me plunged in misery!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued. "While giving way to such reflections, Duryodhana spoke unto Dusçāsana thus:—'O Dusçāsana, listen to these words of mine, O thou of the Bharata race! Accepting this installation that I offer thee, be thou king in my place! Rule thou the wide earth protected by Karna and Suvala's son! Like Indra himself looking after the Maruts, cherish thou thy brothers in such a way that they may all confide in thee! Let thy friends and relatives depend on thee like the gods depending on him of an hundred sacrifices! Always shouldst thou bestow pensions on Brāhmanas, without idleness, and be thou ever the refuge of thy friends and relatives! Like Vishnu looking after the celestials, thou shouldst always look after all consanguinous relatives! Thou shouldst also ever cherish thy superiors! Go, rule thou the earth, gladdening thy friends and reproving thy foes!' And clasping his neck, Duryodhana said, 'Go!' Hearing these words of his, Dusçāsana in perfect cheerlessness and overwhelmed with great sorrow, his voice choked in tears, said, with joined hands and bending his head, unto his eldest brother, 'Relent!' And saying this he fell down on the earth with a heavy heart. And afflicted with grief, that tiger among men, shedding his tears on the feet of his brother, again said, 'This will never be! The earth may spilt, the vault of heaven may break into pieces, the sun may cast off his splendour, the moon may abandon

his coolness, the wind may forsake its speed, the Himavat may be moved from its site, the waters of the ocean may dry up, and fire may abandon its heat, yet I, O king, may never rule the earth without thee!' And Dusçāsana repeatedly said, 'Relent, O king! Thou alone shall be king in our race for an hundred years!' And having spoken thus unto the king, Duscāsana began to weep melodiously, catching, O Bhārata, the feet of his eldest brother deserving of worship from him.

"And beholding Dusçāsana and Duryodhana thus weeping, Karna in great grief approached them both and said, 'Ye Kuru princes, why do ye thus yield to sorrow like ordinary men, from senselessness? Mere weeping can never ease a sorrowing man's grief. When weeping can never remove one's griefs, what do you gain by thus giving way to sorrow? Summon patience to your aid, and do not gladden the foe by such conduct. O king, the Pāndavas only did their duty in liberating thee! They that reside in the dominions of the king, should always do what is agreeable to the king. Protected by thee, the Pāndavas are residing happily in thy dominion. It behoveth thee not to indulge in such sorrow like an ordinary person! Behold, thy uterine brothers are all sad and cheerless at seeing thee resolved to put an end to thy life by foregoing food! Blest be thou! Rise up and come to thy city and console these thy uterine brothers!'"

Thus ends the two hundred and forty-eighth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCXLIX.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Karna continued,—'O king, this conduct of thine today appeareth to be childish. O hero, O slayer of foes, what is to be wondered at in this, that the Pāndavas liberated thee when thou wert vanquished by the foe? O son of the Kuru race, those that reside in the territories of the king, especially those (amongst them) that lead the profession of arms,

should always do what is agreeable to the king, whether they happen to be known to their monarch or unknown to him! It happeneth often that foremost men who crush the ranks of the hostile host, are vanquished by them, and are rescued by their own troops! They that, leading the profession of arms, reside in the king's realm, should always combine and exert to the best of their power, for the king. If, therefore, O king, the Pāndavas, who live in thy territories, have liberated thee, what is there to be regretted at in this? That the Pāndavas, O best of kings, did not follow thee when thou didst march forth to battle at the head of thy troops, has been an improper act on their part. They had before this come under thy power, becoming thy slaves. They are, therefore, bound to aid thee now, being endued with courage and might and incapable of turning away from the field of battle. Thou art enjoying all the rich possessions of the Pāndavas. Behold them yet alive, O king! They have not resolved to die, foregoing all food! Blest be thou! Rise up, O king! It behoveth thee not to indulge in great sorrow long. O king, it is the certain duty of those that reside in the king's realm to do what is agreeable to the king! Where should the regret be in all this? If thou, O king, dost not act according to my words, I shall stay here, employed in reverentially serving thy feet! O bull among men, I do not desire to live, deprived of thy company! O king, if thou resolvest to slay thyself by foregoing food, thou wilt simply be an object of laughter with other kings!"

Vasçampāyana continued. "Thus addressed by Karna, king Duryodhana, firmly resolved to leave the world, desired not to rise from where he sat."

Thus ends the two hundred and forty-ninth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CCL.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said. "Beholding king Duryodhana, incapable of putting up with an insult, seated with the resolution of giving up life by foregoing food, Sakuni, the son of Suvala, said, 'Thou hast heard, O son of the Kuru race, what Karna hath said! His words are, indeed, fraught with wisdom. Why wouldst thou, abandoning from foolishness the high prosperity that I won for thee, cast off thy life today, O king, yielding to silliness? If seemeth to me today that thou hast never waited upon the old. He that cannot control sudden accession of joy or grief, is lost even though he may have obtained prosperity, like an unburnt earthen vessel in water. That king who is entirely destitute of courage, who hath no spark of manliness, who is the slave of procrastination, who always acts with indiscretion, and who is addicted to sensual pleasures, is seldom respected by his subjects. Benefitted as thou hast been, whence is this unseasonable grief of thine? Do not undo this graceful act done by the sons of Prithā, by indulging in such grief! When thou shouldst joy, and reward the Pāndavas, thou art grieving, O king! Indeed, this behaviour of thine is inconsistent. Be cheerful: do not cast away thy life; but remember thou with a pleased heart the good they have done thee! Give back unto the sons of Prithā their kingdom, and win thou both virtue and renown by such conduct. By acting in this way, thou mayst be grateful. Establishing brotherly relations with the Pāndavas by being their friend, and making them thy friends, give them their paternal kingdom, for then thou wilt be happy!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued. "Hearing these words of Sakuni, and seeing the brave Dusçāsana lying prostrate before him unmanned by fraternal love, the king raised Dusçāsana and, clasping him in his well-rounded arms, smelt his head from affection. And hearing these words of Karna and Sauvala, king Duryodhana lost heart more than ever, and overwhelmed with shame, utter despair overtook his soul. And hearing

all that his friends said, he answered with sorrow,' I have nothing more to do with virtue, wealth, friendship, affluence, sovereignty, and enjoyments. Do not obstruct my purpose, but leave me all of you. I am firmly resolved to cast away my life by foregoing food. Return to the city, and treat my superiors there respectfully.'

"Thus addressed by him, they replied unto that royal grinder of foes, saying, 'O monarch, the course that is thine, is also ours, O Bhārata. How can we enter the city without thee ?'"

Vaiçampāyana continued. "Though addressed in all manner of ways by his friends and counsellors and brothers and relatives, the king wavered not from his purpose. And the son of Dhritarāshtra, in accordance with his purpose, spread *Kuça* grass on the earth, and, purifying himself by touching water, sat down upon that spot. And clad in rags and *Kuça* grass, he set himself to observe the highest vow. And stopping all speech, that tiger among kings, moved by the desire of going to heaven, began to pray and worship internally, suspending all external intercourse.

"Meanwhile the fierce Daityas and the Dānavas who had been defeated of old by the celestials and been dwelling in the nether regions, having ascertained Duryodhana's purpose, and knowing that if the king died, their party would be weakened, commenced a sacrifice with fire, for summoning Duryodhana to their presence. And *mantra*-knowing persons then commenced, with the help of formulæ declared by Vrihaspati and Uçanas, those rites that are indicated in the *Atharva* Veda and the *Upanishad*, and which are capable of being achieved by *mantras* and prayers. And Brāhmanas of rigid vows, well-versed in the Vedas and their branches, began, with rapt soul, to pour libations of clarified butter and milk into the fire, uttering *mantras*. And after those rites were ended, a strange goddess, O king, with mouth wide-open, arose (from the sacrificial fire), saying, 'What am I to do ?' And the Daityas, with well-pleased hearts, commanded her, saying, 'Bring thou hither the royal son of Dhritarāshtra, who is even now observing the vow of

starvation for getting rid of his life.' Thus commanded, she went away, saying, 'So be it.' And she went within the twinkling of an eye to that spot where Suyodhana was. And taking up the king, she came back to the nether regions. And having brought him thus within a moment, she apprised the Dānavas of it. And the Dānavas, beholding the king brought into their midst in the night, united together, and all of them with well-pleased hearts and eyes expanded in delight addressed these flattering words to Duryodhana."

Thus ends the two hundred and fiftieth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLI.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"The Dānavas said,—'O Suyodhana, O great king, O perpetuator of the race of Bharata, thou art ever surrounded by heroes and illustrious men. Why hast thou, then, undertaken to do such a rash act as the vow of starvation? The suicide ever sinketh into hell, and becometh the subject of calumnious speech. Nor do intelligent persons like thee ever set their hands to acts that are sinful and opposed to their best interests and striking at the very root of their purposes. Restrain this resolve of thine, therefore, O king, which is destructive of morality, profit, and happiness, of fame, prowess, and energy, and which enhanceth the joy of foes. O exalted king, know the truth, the celestial origin of thy soul, and the make of thy body, and then summon thou patience to thy aid. In days of old, O king, we had obtained thee, by ascetic austerities from Maheçwara. The upper part of thy body is wholly made of an assemblage of *Vajras*, and is, therefore, invulnerable to weapons of every description, O sinless one. The lower part of thy body, capable of captivating the female heart by its comeliness, was made of flowers by the Goddess herself—the wife of Mahādeva. Thy body is thus, O best of kings, the creation of Maheçwara himself and his Goddess. Therefore, O tiger among kings, thou art of celestial origin, not human. Other

brave Kshatriyas of mighty energy headed by Bhagadatta, and all acquainted with celestial weapons, will slay thy foes. Therefore, let this grief of thine cease. Thou hast no cause for fear. For aiding thee, many heroic Dānavas have been born on the earth. Other Asuras will also possess Bhishma and Drona and Karna and others. Possessed by those Asuras, these heroes will cast away their kindness and fight with thy foes. Indeed, when the Dānavas will enter their hearts and possess them completely, flinging all affections to a distance and becoming hard-hearted, these warriors will strike every body opposed to them in battle, without sparing sons, brothers, fathers, friends, disciples, relatives, even children and old men. Blinded by ignorance and wrath, and impelled by that destiny which hath been ordained by the Creator, these tigers among men, with hearts steeped in sin, will, O thou foremost of the Kurus, depopulate the earth by hurling and shooting all kinds of weapons, with great manliness and strength and always addressing one another boastfully with words such as these,—*Thou shalt not escape from me today with life!*—And those illustrious sons of Pāndu also, five in number, will fight with these. And, endued with mighty strength and favored by the Fates, they will compass the destruction of these. And, O king, many Daityas and Rākshasas also that have been born in the Kshatriya order, will fight with great prowess in battle with thy foes, using maces and clubs and lances and various weapons of a superior kind. And, O hero, with respect to the fear that is in thy heart arising from Arjuna, we have already settled the means for slaying Arjuna. The soul of the slain Naraka hath assumed the form of Karna. Recollecting his former hostility, he will encounter both Keçava and Arjuna. And that mighty warrior and foremost of smiters, proud of his prowess, will vanquish Arjuna in battle as also all thy enemies. The wielder of the thunder-bolt, knowing all this, and desirous of saving Arjuna, will in disguise take away from Karna his ear-rings and coat of mail. We also have for that reason appointed hundreds upon hundreds and thousands upon thousands of Daityas and Rākshasas, *viz*, those that

are known by the name of *Samsaptakas.** These celebrated warriors will slay the heroic Arjuna. Therefore, grieve not, O king. Thou wilt rule the whole earth, O monarch, without a rival. Do not yield to despondency. Conduct such as this does not suit thee. O thou of the Kuru race, if thou diest, our party becometh weak. Go thou, O hero, and let not thy mind be directed to any other course of action. Thou art ever our refuge, as, indeed, the Pāndavas are the refuge of the gods.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued. " Having addressed him thus, those Daityas embraced that elephant among kings, and those bulls among the Dānavas cheered that irrepressible one like a son. And, O Bhārata, pacifying his mind by soft speech, they permitted him to depart, saying,—'Go and attain victory!' And when they had given leave to the mighty-armed one, that very goddess carried him back to the spot where he had sat down, intent upon putting an end to his life. And having set that hero down and paid him homage, the goddess vanished, taking the king's permission. O Bhārata, when she had gone, king Duryodhana considered all (that had happened) as a dream. He then thought within himself,—'I shall defeat the Pāndavas in battle.' And Suyodhana thought that Karna and the Samçaptaka army were both able (to destroy) and intent upon destroying that slayer of foes, Pārtha. Thus, O bull of the Bhārata race, was strengthened the hope of the wicked-minded son of Dhritarāshtra, of conquering the Pāndavas. And Karna also, his soul and faculties possessed by the inmost soul of Naraka, had at that time cruelly determined to slay Arjuna. And those heroes—the Samçaptakas also—having their sense possessed by the Rākshasas, and influenced by the qualities of emotion

---

* *Lit.* Soldiers that have sworn to conquer or die. A full *Akshauhini* of these soldiers was owned by Krishna, who gave them to Duryodhana, to fight for him. The story of Krishna's offering to Duryodhana the choice between these soldiers on the one side, and himself sworn not to fight, but only to aid with his counsels, on the other, is given in full in the *Udyoga* Parva. Duryodhana, from folly, accepted the former, who were all slain by Arjuna.

and darkness, were desirous of slaying Fālguna. And, O king, others, with Bhishma, Drona, and Kripa at their head, having their faculties influenced by the Dānavas, were not so affectionate towards the sons of Pāndu as they had been. But king Suyodhana did not tell any one of this.

"When the night passed away, Karna, that offspring of the Sun, with joined hands, smilingly addressed these wise words to king Duryodhana,—'No dead man conquereth his foes : it is when he is alive that he can see his good. Where is the good of the dead person; and, O Kauraveya, where, his victory? Therefore, this is no time for grief, or fear, or death.' And having with his arms embraced that mighty-armed one, he further said,—'Rise up, O king! Why dost thou lie down? Why dost thou grieve, O slayer of foes? Having afflicted thy enemies by thy prowess, why dost thou wish for death? Or (perhaps) fear hath possessed thee at sight of Arjuna's prowess. I truly promise unto thee that I will slay Arjuna in battle. O lord of men, I swear by my weapon that when the three and ten years shall have passed away, I will bring the sons of Prithā under thy subjection.' Thus addressed by Karna, and because of the words of the Daityas and the supplications made by them (his brothers), Suyodhana rose up. And having heard those words of the Daityas, that tiger among men, with a firm resolve in his heart, arrayed his army, abounding in horses and elephants and cars and infantry. And, O monarch, immensly swarming with white umbrellas, and pennons, and white *Chāmaras*, and cars, and elephants, and foot-soldiers, that mighty army, as it moved like the waters of Gangā, looked graceful like the firmament, at a season when the clouds have been dispersed and the signs of autumn have been but partially developed. And, O foremost of kings, eulogised like a monarch by the best of the Brāhmanas blessing with victory, that lord of men, Suyodhana, Dhritarāstra's son, receiving honors paid with innumerable joined palms, and flaming in exceeding splendour, went in the front, accompanied by Karna, and that gambler, the son of Suvala. And all his brothers with Dusçāsana at their head, and Bhuriçrava, and Somadatta, and the mighty king

Bahlika, followed that lion among kings on his way, with cars of various forms, and horses, and the best of elephants. And, O prime among monarchs, in a short time, those perpetuators of the Kuru race entered their own city."

Thus ends the two hundred and fifty-first Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLII.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said.—" When the high-souled sons of Prithā were living in the forest, what did those foremost of men and mighty archers—the sons of Dhritarāshtra—do? And what did the offspring of the Sun, Karna, and the mighty Sakuni, and Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa? It behoveth thee to relate this unto me. "

Vaiçampāyana said.—" When, O mighty king, in this manner the Pāndavas had gone, leaving Suyodhana, and when, having been liberated by Pāndu's sons, he had come to Hastināpura, Bhishma said these words to the son of Dhritarāshtra,—'O child, I had told thee before, when thou wert intent upon going to the hermitage that thy journey did not please me. But thou didst do so. And as a consequence, O hero, wert thou forcibly taken captive by the enemy, and wert delivered by the Pāndavas versed in morality. Yet art thou not ashamed! Even in the presence of thee, O son of Gāndhāri, together with thy army, did the Suta's son, struck with panic, fly from the battle of the Gandharvas, O king. And, O foremost of kings, O son of the monarch! while thou with thy army wert crying distressfully, thou didst witness the prowess of the high-souled Pāndavas, and also, O mighty-armed one, of the wicked son of the Suta, Karna. O best of kings, whether in the science of arms, or heroism, or morality, Karna, O thou addicted to virtue, is not a fourth part of the Pāndavas. Therefore, for the welfare of this race, the conclusion of peace is, I think, desirable with the high-souled Pāndavas.'

"Having been thus addressed by Bhishma, Dhritarāshtra's

son, the king, laughed a good deal, and then suddenly sallied out with the son of Suvala. Thereupon, knowing that he was gone, those mighty bowmen with Karna and Dusçāsana at their head, followed the highly powerful son of Dhritarāshtra. And seeing them gone, Bhishma, the grandfather of the Kurus, hung down his head from shame, and then, O king, went to his own quarters. And, O mighty monarch, when Bhishma had left, that lord of men, Dhritarāshtra's son, came there again, and began to consult with his counsellors: 'What is it that is good for me? What remaineth to be done? And how can we most effectively bring about the good that we shall discuss today?' Karna said, 'O Kuru's son, Duryodhana, do thou lay to heart the words that I say! Bhishma always blameth us, and praiseth the Pāndavas. And from the ill-will he beareth towards thee, he hateth me also. And, O lord of men, in thy presence he ever crieth me down. I shall never, O Bhārata, bear those words that Bhishma hath said in thy presence in relation to this matter, extolling the Pāndavas, and censuring thee, O repressor of foes! Do thou, O king, enjoin on me, together with servants, forces, and cars: I shall, O monarch, conquer the earth furnished with mountains and woods and forests. The earth had been conquered by the four powerful Pāndavas. I shall, without doubt, conquer it for thee single-handed. Let that wretch of the Kuru race, the exceedingly wicked-minded Bhishma, see it,—he who villifies those that do not deserve censure, and praises those that should not be praised! Let him this day witness my might, and blame himself. Do thou, O king, command me! Victory shall surely be thine,—by my weapon, O monarch, I swear this before thee!'

"O king, O bull of the Bhārata race, hearing those words of Karna, that lord ef men, experiencing the highest delight, spake unto Karna, saying,—'I am blessed! I have been favored by thee,—since thou, endued with great strength, art ever intent on my welfare. My life hath borne fruit today. As thou, O hero, intendest to subdue all our enemies, repair thou! May good betide thee! Do thou command me (what I am to do)!' O subduer of foes, having been thus addressed

by Dhritarāshtra's intelligent son, Karna ordered all the necessaries for the excursion. And on an auspicious lunar day, at an auspicious moment, and under the influence of a star presided over by an auspicious deity, that mighty bowman, having been honored by the twice-born ones, and been bathed with auspicious and holy substances, and also worshipped by speech, set out, filling with the rattle of his car the three worlds, with their mobile and immobile objects."

Thus ends the two hundred and fifty-second Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLIII.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then, O bull among the Bhāratas, that mighty bowman, Karna, surrounded by a large army, beseiged the beautiful city of Drupada. And he, after a hard conflict, brought that hero under subjection, and, O best of monarchs, made Drupada contribute silver and gold and gems, and also pay tribute. And, O foremost of kings, having subdued him, (Karna) brought under subjection those princes that were under him (Drupada), and made them pay tribute. Then going to the north, he subdued the sovereigns (of that quarter); and having effected the defeat of Bhagadatta, Rādha's son ascended that mighty mountain Himavat, all along fighting his foes. And ranging all sides, he conquered and brought under subjection all the kings inhabiting the Himavat, and made them pay dues. Then descending from the mountain and rushing to the east, he reduced the Angas, and the Bangas, and the Kalingas, and the Mandikas, and the Mithilas, and the Magadhas, and the Karkakhandas; and also included with them the Avaçiras, Yodhyas, and the Ahikshatras. Having (thus) conquered the eastern quarter, (Karna) then presented himself before Batsa-bhumi. And having taken Batsa-Bhumi, he reduced Kevali, and Mrittikāvati, and Mohana, and Pattana, and Tripurā, and Koçala,—and compelled all these to pay tribute. Then going to the south,

Karna vanquished the mighty charioteers (of that quarter); and in Dākshinātya, the Suta's son entered into conflcit with Rukmi. After having faught dreadfully, Rukmi spake to the Suta's son, saying,—'O foremost of monarchs, I have been pleased with thy might and prowess. I shall not do thee wrong: I have (only) fulfiled the vow of a Kshatriya. Gladly will I give thee as many gold coins as thou desirest.' Having met with Rukmi, Karna repaired to Pāndya and the mountain Sri. And by fighting, he made Karala, king Nila, Venudāri's son, and other best of kings living in the southern direction, pay tribute. Then going to Siçupāla's son the son of the Suta defeated him, and that highly powerful one also brought under his sway all the neighbouring rulers. And, O bull of the Bhārata race, having subjugated the Avantis, and concluded peace with them, and having met with the Vrishnis, he also conquered the west. And, having come to the quarter of Varuna, he made all the Javana and Varvara kings pay tribute. And, having conquered the entire earth—east, west, north and south—that hero without any ado brought under subjection all the nations of the Mlechchhas, the mountaineers, the Bhadras, the Rohitakas, the Agneyas, and the Mālavas. And, having conquered the mighty charioteers, headed by the Nagnajitas, the Suta's son brought the Saçakas and theYavanas under his sway. Having thus conquered and brought under his subjection the whole world, the mighty charioteer and tiger among men came (back) to Hastināpura. That lord of men, Dhritarāshtra's son, accompanied by his father and brothers and friends, came to that mighty bowman, who had arrived, and duly paid homage unto Karna crowned with martial merit. And the king proclaimed his feats, saying,—'What I have not received from either Bhishma, or Drona, or Kripa, or Vāhlika, I have received from thee. May good betide thee! What need of speaking at length! Hear my words, O Karna! In thee, O chief of men, I have my refuge, O mighty-armed one. O tiger among men, without doubt, all the Pāndavas and the other kings crowned with prosperity, come not to a sixteenth part of thee. Do thou, O mighty bowman, O Karna, see

Dhritarāshtra, and the illustrious Gāndhārī, as the bearer of the thunder-bolt did Aditi.'

"Then, O king, there arose in the city of Hastināpura a clamour, and sounds of *Oh !* and *Alas !* And, O lord of men, some of the kings praised him (Karna), while others censured him, while others, again, remained silent. Having thus, O foremost of monarchs, in a short time conquered this earth furnished with mountains and forests and skies, and with oceans and fields, and filled with high and low tracts, and emporiums and cities, and replete also with islands, O lord of earth; and brought the monarchs under subjection,—and having gained imperishable wealth, the Suta's son appeared before the king. Then, O repressor of foes, entering into the interior of the palace, that hero saw Dhritarāshtra with Gāndhārī. O tiger among men, that one conversant with morality took hold of his feet even like a son. And Dhritarāshtra embraced him affectionately, and then dismissed him. Ever since that time, O monarch, O Bhārata, king Duryodhana and Sakuni, the son of Suvala, thought that Pritha's sons had already been defeated in battle by Karna."

Thus ends the two hundred and fifty-third Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLIV.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" O king, O lord of men, that slayer of hostile heroes, the Suta's son, said these words to Duryodhana,—'O Kauravya Duryodhana, do thou lay unto thy heart the words that I shall tell thee ; and, O repressor of foes, after having heard my words, it behoveth thee to act accordingly every way. Now, O best of monarchs, O hero, hath the earth been rid of foes. Do thou rule her even like the mighty-minded Sakra himself, having his foes destroyed.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Having been thus addressed by Karna, the king again spake unto him, saying,—'O bull among men, nothing whatever is unattainable to him who hath thee for refuge, and to whom thou art attached, and

on whose welfare thou art entirely intent. Now, I have a purpose, which do thou truly listen to. Having beheld that foremost of sacrifices, the mighty Rājasuya, performed by the Pāndavas, a desire hath sprung up in me (to celebrate the same). Do thou, O Suta's son, fulfil this desire of mine!' Thus addressed, Karna spake thus unto the king,—'Now that all the rulers of the earth have been brought under thy subjection, do thou summon the principal Brāhmanas, and, O best of Kurus, duly procure the articles required for the sacrifice. And, O repressor of foes, let Ritwijas as prescribed, and versed in the Veda, celebrate thy rites according to the ordinance, O king. And, O bull of the Bharata race, let thy great sacrifice also, abounding in meats and drinks, and grand with parts, commence.'

"O king, having been thus addressed by Karna, Dhritarāshtra's son summoned the priest, and spake unto him these words,—'Do thou duly and in proper order celebrate for me that best of sacrifices, the Rājasuya, furnished with excellent *Dakshinās*.' Thus accosted, that best of Brāhmanas spake unto the king, saying,—'O foremost of the Kauravas, while Yudhishthira is living, that best of sacrifices cannot be performed in thy family, O prime of kings! Further, O monarch, thy father, Dhritarāshtra, endued with long life, liveth. For this reason also, O best of kings, this sacrifice can not be undertaken by thee. There is, O lord, another great sacrifice, resembling the Rājasuya. Do thou, O foremost of kings, celebrate that sacrifice. Listen to these words of mine! All these rulers of the earth, who have, O king, become tributary to thee, will pay thee tribute in gold both pure and impure. Of that gold, do thou, O best of monarchs, now make the (sacrificial) plough, and do thou, O Bhārata, plough the sacrificial compound with it. At that spot let there commence, O foremost of kings, with due rites, and without any disturbance, the sacrifice, sanctified with *mantras* and abounding in edibles. The name of that sacrifice worthy of virtuous persons, is Vaishnava. No person save the ancient Vishnu hath performed it before. This mighty sacrifice vies with that best of sacrifices—the Rājasuya itself. And,

further, it liketh us,—and it is also for thy welfare (to celebrate it.) And, moreover, it is capable of being celebrated without any disturbance. (By undertaking this), thy desire will be fulfiled.'

"Having been thus addressed by those Brāhmanas, Dhritarāshtra's son, the king, spake these words to Karna, his brothers, and the son of Suvala, 'Beyond doubt, the words of the Brāhmanas are entirely liked by me. If they are relished by you also, express it without delay.' Thus appealed, they all said unto the king, 'So be it.'—Then the king one by one appointed persons to their respective tasks; and desired all the artisans to construct the (sacrificial) plough.—And, O best of kings, all that had been commanded to be done, was gradually executed."

Thus ends the two hundred and fifty-fourth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

Section CCLV.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued. "Then all the artisans, the principal counsellors, and the highly wise Vidura said unto Dhritarāshtra's son,—'All the preperations for the excellent sacrifice have been made, O king; and the time also hath come, O Bhārata. And the exceedingly precious golden plough hath been constructed.' Hearing this, O monarch, that best of kings, Dhritarāshtra's son, commanded that prime among sacrifices to be commenced. Then commenced that sacrifice sanctified by *mantras*, and abounding in edibles; and the son of Gāndhāri was duly initiated according to the ordinance. And Dhritarāshtra, and the illustrious Vidura, and Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and Karna, and the celebrated Gāndhāri experienced great delight. And, O foremost of kings, (Duryodhana) despatched swift messengers to invite the princes and the Brāhmanas. And mounting fleet vehicles they went to the (respective) directions assigned to them. Then to a certain messenger on the point of setting out, Dusçāsana said,—'Go thou speedily to the woods of

Dwaita; and in that forest duly invite the Brāhmanas and those wicked persons, the Pāndavas.' Thereupon, he repaired thither, and bowing down to all the Pāndavas, said,—'Having acquired immense wealth by his native prowess, that best of kings and foremost of Kurus, Duryodhana, O monarch, is celebrating a sacrifice. Thither are going from various directions the kings and the Brāhmanas. O king, I have been sent by the high-souled Kaurava. That king and lord of men, Dhritarāshtra's son, invites you. It behoveth you, therefore, to witness the delightful sacrifice of that monarch.'

"Hearing these words of the messenger, that tiger among kings, the royal Yudhishthira, said,—'By good luck it is that that enhancer of the glory of his ancestors, king Suyodhana, is celebrating this best of sacrifices. We should certainly repair thither; but we cannot do so now; for till (the completion of) the thirteenth year, we shall have to observe our vow.' Hearing this speech of Yudhishthira the just, Bhima said these words—'Then will king Yudhishthira the just go thither when he will cast him (Duryodhana) into the fire kindled by weapons. Do thou say unto Suyodhana,—*When, after the expiration of the thirteenth year, that lord of men, the Pāndava, will, in the sacrifice of battle, pour upon the Dhārtarāshtras, the clarified butter of his ire, then will I come!*—'But the other Pāndavas, O king, did not say anything unpleasant. The messenger (on his return) related unto Dhritarāshtra's son all as it had fallen out. Then there came to the city of Dhritarāshtra many foremost of men,—lords of various countries, and highly virtuous Brāhmanas. And duly received in order according to the ordinance, those lords of men experienced great delight and were all well-pleased. And that foremost among monarchs—Dhritarāshtra—surrounded by all the Kauravas, experienced the height of joy, and spake unto Vidura, saying,—'Do thou, O Kshatta, speedily so act that all persons in the sacrificial compound may, served with food, be refreshed and satisfied!' Thereupon, O repressor of foes, assenting to that order, the learned Vidura versed in morality, cheerfully entertained all the orders in proper measure with meat and beverages to eat and drink, and

fragrant garlands and various kinds of attire. And having constructed pavilions (for their accommodation), that hero and foremost of kings, duly entertained the princes and the Brāhmanas by thousands, and also bestowing upon them wealth of various kinds, bade them farewell. And having dismissed all the kings, he entered Hastināpura, surrounded by his brothers, and in company with Karna and Suvala's son."

Thus ends the two hundred and fifty-fifth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLVI.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"While, O great king, Duryodhana was entering (the city), the panegyrists eulogized that prince of unfailing prowess. And others also eulogized that mighty bowman and foremost of kings. And sprinkling over him fried paddy and sandal paste, the citizens said,—'By goodluck it is, O king, that thy sacrifice hath been completed without obstruction!' And some, more reckless of speech, that were present there, said unto that lord of earth,—'Surely this thy sacrifice cannot be compared with Yudhishthira's: nor doth this come up to a sixteenth part of that (sacrifice).' Thus spake unto that king some that were reckless of consequences. His friends, however, said,—'This sacrifice of thine hath surpassed all others. Yayāti, and Nahusha, and Māndhātā, and Bharata, having been sanctified by celebrating such a sacrifice, have all gone to heaven.' Hearing such agreeable words from his friends, that monarch, O bull of the Bharata race, well-pleased, entered the city and finally his own abode. Then, O king, worshipping the feet of his father and mother and of others headed by Bhishma, Drona and Kripa, and of the wise Vidura, and worshipped in turn by his younger brothers, that delighter of brothers sat down upon an excellent seat, surrounded by the latter. And the Suta's son rising up, said,—By good luck it is, O foremost of the Bhārata race, that this mighty sacrifice of thine hath been brought to a close! When, however, the sons of Prithā shall have been slain in

battle and thou wilt have completed the *Rājasuya* sacrifice, once again, O lord of men, shall I honor thee thus!' Then that mighty king, the illustrious son of Dhritarāshtra, replied unto him,—'Truly hath this been spoken by thee! When, O foremost of men, the wicked-minded Pāndavas have been slain, and when also the grand *Rājasuya* hath been celebrated by me, then thou shalt again, O hero, honor me thus! And having said this, O Bhārata, the Kaurava embraced Karna, and began, O mighty king, to think of the *Rœjasuya*, that foremost of sacrifices. And that best of kings also addressed the Kurus around him, saying,—'When shall I, ye Kauravas, having slain all the Pāndavas, celebrate that costly and foremost of sacrifices, the *Rājasuya!*' Then spake Karna unto him, saying,—'Hear me, O elephant among kings! So long as I do not slay Arjuna, I shall not allow any one to wash my feet, nor shall I taste meat. And I shall observe the *Asura* vow* and whoever may solicit me (for any thing), I never shall say—*I have it not.*' When Karna had thus vowed to slay Fālguna in battle, those mighty charioteers and bowmen, the sons of Dhritarāshtra, sent up a loud cheer; and Dhritarāshtra's sons thought that the Pāndavas had already been conquered! Then that chief of kings, the graceful Duryodhana, leaving those bulls among men, entered his apartment, like the lord Kuvera entering the gardens of Chaitraratha. And all those mighty bowmen also, O Bhārata, went to their respective quarters.

"Meanwhile those mighty bowmen, the Pāndavas, excited by the words the messenger had spoken, became anxious, and they did not (from that time) experience the least happiness. Intelligence, further, O foremost of kings, had been brought by spies regarding the vow of the Suta's son to slay Vijaya. Hearing this, O lord of men, Dharma's son became exceedingly anxious. And considering Karna of the impenetrable mail to be of wonderful prowess, and remembering all their

---

* The vow of the Asuras was (according to the Burdwan Pundits) never to drink wine. It is more rational to suppose that Karna swears to give up the refined manners and practices of the Aryas and adopt those of the Asuras till the consummation of his cherished desire.

woes, he knew no peace. And that high-souled one, filled with anxiety, made up his mind to abandon the woods about Dwaitavana abounding in ferocious animals.

"Meanwhile the royal son of Dhritarāshtra began to rule the earth, along with his heroic brothers as also with Bhishma and Drona and Kripa. And with the assistance of the Suta's son crowned with martial glory, Duryodhana remained ever intent on the welfare of the rulers of the earth, and he worshipped the foremost of Brāhmanas by celebrating sacrifices with profuse gifts. And that hero and subduer of foes, O king, was engaged in doing good to his brothers, concluding for certain in his mind that giving and enjoying are the only use of riches."

Thus ends the two hundred and fifty-sixth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLVII.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said,—"After having delivered Duryodhana, what did the mighty sons of Pāndu do in that forest? It behoveth thee to tell me this!"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Once on a time, as Yudhishthira lay down at night in the Dwaita woods, some deer, with accents choked in tears, presented themselves before him in his dreams. To them standing with joined hands, their bodies trembling all over, that foremost of monarchs said, —'Tell me what ye wish to say! Who are ye? And what do ye desire?' Thus accosted by Kunti's son—the illustrious Pāndava, those deer, the remnant of those that had been slaughtered, replied unto him, saying, 'We are, O Bhārata, those deer that are still alive after them that have been slaughtered. We shall be exterminated quite. Therefore, do thou change thy residence! O mighty king, all thy brothers are heroes, conversant with weapons; they have thinned the ranks of the rangers of the forest. We few—the remnant,—O mighty-minded one, remain like seed. By thy favor, O king of kings, let us increase.' Seeing these deer, which remained like

seed after the rest had been destroyed—trembling and afflicted with fear, Yudhishthira the just was greatly affected with grief. And the king, intent on the welfare of all creatures, said unto them,—'So be it. I shall act as ye have said!' Awaking after such a vision, that excellent king, moved by pity towards the deer, thus spake unto his brothers assembled there,—'Those deer that are alive after them that have been slaughtered, accosted me at night, after I had awaked, saying,—*We remain like the cues of our lines. Blest be thou! Do thou have compassion on us!*—And they have spoken truly. We ought to feel pity for the dwellers of the forest. We have been feeding on them for a year together and eight months! Let us, therefore, again (repair) to the romantic Kāmyaka, that best of forests abounding in wild animals, situated at the head of the desert, near lake Trinavindu. And there let us pleasantly pass the rest of our time.' Then, O king, the Pāndavas versed in morality, swiftly departed (thence), accompanied by the Brāhmanas and all those that lived with them, and followed by Indrasena and other retainers. And proceeding along roads walked (by travellers), furnished with excellent corn and clear water, they at length beheld the sacred asylum of Kāmyaka endued with ascetic merit. And as pious men enter the celestial regions, those foremost of the Bharata race, the Kauravas, surrounded by those bulls among Brāhmanas, entered that forest."

Thus ends the two hundred and fifty-seventh Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLVIII.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Dwelling in the woods, O bull of the Bharata race, the high-souled Pāndavas spent one and ten years in a miserable plight. And although deserving of happiness, those foremost of men, brooding over their circumstances, passed their days miserably, living on fruits and roots. And that royal sage, the mighty-armed Yudhishthira, reflecting that the extremity of misery that

had befallen his brothers, was owing to his own fault, and remembering those sufferings that had arisen from his act of gambling, could not sleep peacefully. And he felt as if his heart had been pierced with a lance. And remembering the harsh words of the Suta's son, the Pāndava, repressing the venom of his wrath, passed his time in humble guise, sighing heavily. And Arjuna and both the twins and the illustrious Draupadi, and the mighty Bhima—he that was strongest of all men—experienced the most poignant pain in casting their eyes on Yudhishthira. And, thinking that a short time only remained (of their exile), those bulls among men, influenced by rage and hope and by resorting to various exertions and endeavours, made their bodies assume almost different shapes.

"After a little while, that mighty ascetic, Vyāsa, the son of Satyavati, came there to see the Pāndavas. And seeing him approach, Kunti's son, Yudhishthira, stepped forward, and duly received that high-souled one. And having gratified Vyāsa by bowing down unto him, Pāndu's son of subdued senses, after the *Rishi* had been seated, sat down before him, desirous of listening to him. And beholding his grandsons lean and living in the forest on the produce of the wilderness, that mighty sage, moved by compassion, said these words, in accents choked in tears,—'O mighty-armed Yudhishthira, O thou best of virtuous persons, those men that do not perform ascetic austerities never attain great happiness in this world. People experience happiness and misery by turns; for surely, O bull among men, no man ever enjoyeth unbroken happiness. A wise man endued with high wisdom, knowing that life hath its ups and downs, is neither filled with joy nor with grief. When happiness cometh, one should enjoy it: when misery cometh, one should bear it, as a sower of crops must bide his season. Nothing is superior to asceticism: by asceticism one acquireth mighty fruit. Do thou know, O Bhārata, that there is nothing that asceticism cannot achieve. Truth, sincerity, freedom from anger, justice, self-control, restraint of the faculties, immunity from malice, guilelessness, sanctity,

and mortification of the senses,—these, O mighty monarch, purify a person of meritorious acts. Foolish persons addicted to vice and bestial ways, attain to brutish births in after life and never enjoy happiness. The fruit of acts done in this world, is reaped in the next. Therefore, should one restrain his body by asceticism and the observance of vows. And, O king, free from guile and with a cheerful spirit, one should, according to his power, bestow gifts, after bowing down to the recipient and paying him homage. A truth-telling person attaineth a life devoid of trouble, A person void of anger attaineth sincerity, and one free from malice acquireth supreme contentment. A person who hath subdued his senses and his inner faculties, never knoweth tribulation ; nor is a person of subdued senses affected by sorrow at sight of other's prosperity. A man who giveth every one his due, and a bestower of boons, attain happiness, and come by every object of enjoyment; while a man free from envy reapeth perfect ease. He that honoreth those to whom honor is due, attaineth birth in an illustrious line ; and he that hath subdued his senses, never cometh by misfortune. A man whose mind followeth good, after having paid his debt to nature, is on that account, born again endued with a righteous mind.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'O eminently virtuous one, O mighty sage, of the bestowal of gifts and the observance of asceticism, which is of greater efficacy in the next world, and which, harder to practise ?'

"Vyāsa said,—'There is nothing, O child, in this world harder to practise than charity. Men greatly thirst after wealth, and wealth also is gotten with difficulty. Nay, renouncing even dear life itself, heroic men, O magnanimous one, enter into the depths of the sea and the forest for the sake of wealth. For wealth, some betake themselves to agriculture and the tending of kine, and some enter into servitude. Therefore, it is extremely difficult to part with wealth that is obtained with such trouble. Since nothing is harder to practise than charity, therefore, in my opinion, even the bestowal of boons is superior to every thing. Specially is this to be borne in mind that well-gotten gains

should, in proper time and place, be given away to pious men. But the bestowal of ill-gotten gains can never rescue the giver from the evil of rebirth. It hath been declared, O Yudhishthira, that by bestowing, in a pure spirit, even a slight gift in due time and to a fit recipient, a man attaineth inexhaustible fruit in the next world. In this connection is instanced the old story regarding the fruit obtained by Mudgala, for having given away only a *Drona** of corn.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and fifty-eighth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLIX.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said,—'Why did that high-souled one give away a *Drona* of corn? And, O eminently pious one, to whom and in what prescribed way did he give it? Do thou tell me this! Surely, I consider the life of that virtuous person as having borne fruit with whose practices the possessor himself of the six attributes, witnessing everything, was well-pleased.'

"Vyāsa said,—'There lived, O king, in Kurukshetra a virtuous (sage) Mudgala by name. And he was truthful, and free from malice, and of subdued senses. And he used to lead the *Sila* and *Unchha* modes of life.† And although leading life like a pigeon, yet that one of mighty austerities entertained his guests, celebrated the sacrifice called *Ishtikrita*, and performed other rites. And that sage together with his son and wife, ate for a fortnight, and during the other fortnight led the life of a pigeon, collecting a *drona* of corn. And celebrating the *Darça* and *Paurnamāsa* sacrifices, that one devoid of guile, used to pass his days by taking the food that remained after the deities and the

---

* A very small measure.

† Picking up for support (1) ears of corn and (2) individual grains, left on the field by husbandmen after they have gathered and carried away the sheafs, are called the *Sila* and the *Unchcha* modes of life.

guests had eaten. And on auspicious lunar days, that lord of the three worlds, Indra himself, accompanied by the celestials, used, O mighty monarch, to partake of the food offered at his sacrifice. And that one, having adopted the life of a *Muni*, with a cheerful heart entertained his guests also with food on such days. And as that high-souled one distributed his food with alacrity, the remainder of the *drona* of corn increased as soon as a guest appeared. And by virtue of the pure spirit in which the sage gave away, that food of his increased so much that hundreds upon hundreds of learned Brāhmanas were fed with it.

"'And, O king, it came to pass that having heard of the virtuous Mudgala observant of vows, the *Muni* Durvāsā, having space alone for his covering,* his accoutrements worn like that of a maniac, and his head bare of hair, came there, uttering, O Pāndava, various insulting words. And having arrived there, that best of *Munis* said unto the Brāhmana,—Know thou, O foremost of Brāhmanas, that I have come hither seeking for food.—Thereupon Mudgala said unto the sage,—Thou art welcome !—And then offering to that maniac of an ascetic affected by hunger, water to wash his feet and mouth, that one observant of the vow of feeding guests, respectfully placed before him excellent fare. Affected by hunger, the frantic *Rishi* completely exhausted the food that had been offered unto him. Thereupon, Mudgala furnished him again with food. Then having eaten up all that food, he besmeared his body with the unclean remainder and went away as he had come. In this manner, during the next season, he came again and ate up all the food supplied by that wise one leading the *Unchha* mode of life. Thereupon, without partaking any food himself, the sage Mudgala again became engaged in collecting corn, following the *Unchha* mode. Hunger could not disturb his equanimity. Nor could anger, or guile, or a sense of degradation, or agitation, enter into the heart of that best of Brāhmanas leading the *Unchha* mode of life along with his son and

* Naked.

his wife. In this way, Durvāsā, having made up his mind, during successive seasons presented himself for six several times before that best of sages living according to the *Unchha* mode; yet that *Muni* could not perceive any agitation in Mudgala's heart; and he found the pure heart of that pure-souled ascetic always pure. Thereupon, well-pleased, the sage addressed Mudgala, saying,—There is not another guileless and charitable being like thee on earth. The pangs of hunger drive away to a distance the sense of righteousness and deprive people of all patience. The tongue, loving delicacies, attracteth men towards them. Life is sustained by food. The mind, moreover, is fickle, and it is hard to keep it in subjection. The concentration of the mind and of the senses surely constitutes ascetic austerities. It must be hard to renounce in a pure spirit a thing earned by painstaking. Yet, O pious one, all this hath been duly achieved by thee! In thy company we feel obliged and gratified. Self-restraint, fortitude, justice, control of the senses and of faculties, mercy, and virtue, all these are established in thee. Thou hast by thy deeds conquered the different worlds and have thereby obtained admission into paths of beatitude. Ah! even the dwellers of heaven are proclaiming thy mighty deeds of charity. O thou observant of vows, thou shalt go to heaven even in thine own body!—

"'Whilst the *Muni* Durāvsā was speaking thus, a celestial messenger appeared before Mudgala, upon a car yoked with swans and cranes, hung with a net-work of bells, scented with divine fragrance, painted picturesquely, and possessed of the power of going everywhere at will. And he addressed the Brāhmana sage, saying,—O sage, do thou ascend into this chariot earned by thy acts. Thou hast attained the fruit of thy asceticism!—"

"'As the messenger of the gods was speaking thus, the sage told him,—O divine messenger, I desire that thou mayst describe unto me the attributes of those that reside there? What are their austerities, and what their purposes? And, O messenger of the gods, what constitutes happiness in heaven; and what are the disadvantages thereof? It is declared by

virtuous men of good lineage that friendship with pious people is contracted by only walking with them seven paces. O lord, in the name of that friendship, I ask thee! Do thou, without hesitation, tell me the truth, and that which is good for me to know. Having heard thee, I shall, according to thy words, ascertain the course I ought to follow.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and fifty-ninth Section in the Ghosha yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLX.

(Ghosha-yātrā Parva continued.)

" 'The messenger of the gods said,—O great sage, thou art of simple understanding; since, having secured that celestial bliss which bringeth great honor, thou art still deliberating like an unwise person. O *Muni*, that region which is known as heaven, existeth there above us. Those regions tower high, and are furnished with excellent paths, and are, O sage, always ranged by celestial cars. Atheists, and untruthful persons, those that have not practised ascetic austerities and those that have not performed great sacrifices, cannot repair thither. Only men of virtuous souls, and those of subdued spirits, and those that have their faculties in subjection, and those that have controlled their senses, and those that are free from malice, and persons intent on the practice of charity, and heroes, and men bearing marks of battle, after having, with subdued senses and faculties, performed the most meritorious rites, attain those regions, O Brāhmana, capable of being obtained only by virtuous acts, and inhabited by pious men! There, O Maudgalya, are established separately myriads of beautiful, shining, and resplendent worlds bestowing every object of desire, owned by those celestial beings,—the gods, the Sādhyas, and the Vaiçwas, the great sages, the Yāmas, and the Dhāmas, and the Gandharvas and the Apsaras. And there is that monarch of mountains—the golden Meru—extending over a space of thirty-three thousand *Yojanas*. And there, O Mudgala, are the sacred gardens of the celestials, with Nandana at their head, where

sport persons of meritorious acts. And neither hunger, nor thirst, nor lassitude, nor fear, nor anything that is disgusting or inauspicious is there. And all the odours of that place are delightful, and all the breezes delicious to the touch. And all the sounds there are captivating, O sage, to the ear and the heart. And neither grief, nor decrepitude, nor labor, nor repentance also is there. That world, O *Muni*, obtained as the fruit of one's own acts, is of this nature. Persons repair thither by virtue of their meritorious deeds. And the persons of those that dwell there look resplendent, and this, O Maudgalya, solely by virtue of their own acts, and not owing to the merits of fathers or mothers. And there is neither sweat, nor stench, nor excreta, nor urine. And, there, O *Muni*, dust doth not besoil one's garments. And their excellent garlands, redolent of divine fragrance, never fade. And, O Brāhmana, they yoke such cars as this (that I have brought). And, O mighty sage, devoid of envy and grief and fatigue and ignorance and malice, men who have attained heaven, dwell in those regions happily. And, O bull among *Munis*, higher and higher over such regions, there are others endued with higher celestial virtues. Of these, the beautiful and resplendent regions of Brahmā are the foremost. Thither, O Brāhmana, repair *Rishis* that have been sanctified by meritorious acts. And there dwell certain beings named *Ribhus*. They are the gods of the gods themselves. Their regions are supremely blessed, and are adored even by the deities. These shine by their own light, and bestow every object of desire. They suffer no pangs that women might cause, do not possess worldly wealth, and are free from guile. The *Ribhus* do not subsist on oblations, nor yet on ambrosia. And they are endued with such celestial forms that they cannot be perceived by the senses. And these eternal gods of the celestials do not desire happiness for happiness' sake, nor do they change at the revolution of a *Kalpa*. Where, indeed, is their decrepitude or dissolution? For them there is neither ecstasy, nor joy, nor happiness. They have neither happiness nor misery. Wherefore should they have anger or aversion then, O Muni? O Maudgalya,

their supreme state is coveted even by the gods. And that crowning emancipation, hard to attain, can never be acquired by people subject to desire. The number of those deities is thirty-three. To their regions repair wise men, after having observed excellent vows, or bestowed gifts according to the ordinance. Thou also hast easily acquired that success by thy charities. Do thou, thy effulgence displayed by virtue of thy ascetic austerities, enjoy that condition obtained by thy meritorious acts! Such, O Brāhmana, is the bliss of heaven containing various worlds!—

"'—Thus have I described unto thee the blessings of the celestial regions. Do thou now hear from me some of the disadvantages thereof. That in the celestial regions a person, while reaping the fruit of the acts he hath already performed, cannot be engaged in any others, and that he must enjoy the consequences of the former until they are completely exhausted, and, further, that he is subject to fall after he hath entirely exhausted his merit, form, in my opinion, the disadvantages of heaven. The fall of a person whose mind hath been steeped in happiness, must, O Mudgala, be pronounced as a fault. And the discontent and regret that must follow one's stay at an inferior seat after one hath enjoyed more auspicious and brighter regions, must be hard to bear! And the consciousness of those about to fall is stupified, and also agitated by emotions. And as the garlands of those about to fall fade away, fear invadeth their hearts. These mighty drawbacks, O Maudgalya, extend even to the regions themselves of Brahmā. In the celestial regions, the virtues of men who have performed righteous acts, are countless. And, O *Muni*, this is another of the attributes of the fallen that, by reason of their merits, they take birth among men. And then they attain to high fortune and happiness. If one, however, cannot acquire knowledge here, he cometh by an inferior birth. The fruit of acts done in this world are reaped in the next. This world, O Brāhmana, hath been declared to be one of acts; the other, as one of fruit. Thus have I, O Mudgala, asked by thee, described all this unto thee! Now, O pious one, with thy favor, we shall easily set out with speed.—'

"Vyāsa continued,—'Having heard this speech, Maudgalya began to reflect in his mind. And having deliberated well, that best of *Munis* spake thus unto the celestial messenger,—O messenger of the gods, I bow unto thee! Do thou, O sire, depart in peace! I have nothing to do with either happiness, or heaven having such prominent defects. Persons who enjoy heaven suffer, after fall, huge misery and extreme regret in this world! Therefore, I do not desire heaven! I shall seek for that unfailing region repairing whither people have not to lament, or to be pained, or agitated. Thou hast described unto me these mighty defects belonging to the celestial regions. Do thou now describe unto me a region free from faults!—Thereupon the celestial messenger said,—Above the abode of Brahmā, there is the supreme seat of Vishnu, pure, and eternal, and luminous, known by the name of *Para Brahma*. Thither, O Brāhmana, cannot repair persons who are addicted to the objects of the senses; nor can those subject to arrogance, covetousness, ignorance, anger, and envy, go to that place. It is only those that are free from affection, and those free from pride, and those free from conflicting emotions, and those that have restrained their senses, and those given to contemplation and *Yoga*, that can repair thither!—Having heard these words, the *Muni* bade farewell to the celestial messenger, and that virtuous one leading the *Unchha* mode of life, assumed perfect contentment. And then praise and dispraise became equal unto him; and a brick-bat, stone, and gold assumed the same aspect in his eyes. And availing himself of the means of attaining *Brahma*, he became always engaged in meditation. And having obtained power by means of knowledge, and acquired excellent understanding, he attained that supreme state of emancipation which is regarded as Eternal. Therefore, thou also, O Kunti's son, ought not to grieve. Deprived thou hast truly been of a flourishing kingdom, but thou wilt regain it by thy ascetic austerities. Misery after happiness, and happiness after misery revolve by turns round a man even like the points of a wheel's circumference round the axle. After the thirteenth year hath passsed away, thou wilt, O thou

of immeasurable might, get back the kingdom possessed before thee by thy father and grand-father. Therefore, let the fever of thy heart depart!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Having said this to Pāndu's son, the worshipful Vyāsa went back to his hermitage for the purpose of performing austerities."

Thus ends the two hundred and sixtieth Section in the Ghosha-yātrā of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXI.

(Draupadi-harana Parva.)

Janamejaya said.—"While the high-souled Pāndavas were living in those woods, delighted with the pleasant converse they held with the *Munis*, and engaged in distributing the food they obtained from the sun, with various kinds of venison to Brāhmanas and others that came to them for edibles till the hour of Krishnā's meal, how, O great *Muni*, did Duryodhana and the other wicked and sinful sons of Dhritarāshtra, guided by the counsels of Dusçāsana, Karna and Sakuni, deal with them? I ask thee this! Do thou, worshipful sir, enlighten me!"

Vaiçampāyana said.—" When, O great king, Duryodhana heard that the Pāndavas were living as happily in the woods as in a city, he longed, with the artful Karna Dusçāsana and others, to do them harm. And while those evil-minded persons were employed in concerting various wicked designs, the virtuous and celebrated ascetic Durvāsā, following the bent of his own will, arrived at the city of the Kurus with ten thousand disciples. And seeing the irascible ascetic arrived, Duryodhana and his brothers welcomed him with great humility, self-abasement and gentleness. And himself attending on the *Rishi* as a menial, the prince gave him a right worshipful reception. And the illustrious *Muni* stayed there for a few days, while king Duryodhana, fearful of his imprecations, attended on him deligently by day and night. And sometimes the *Muni* would say—'I am hungry, O king, give me some food quickly!' And sometimes he would go

out for a bath and, returning at a late hour, would say,—'I shall not eat anything today as I have no appetite,' and so saying would disappear from his sight. And sometimes, coming all on a sudden, he would say,—'feed us quickly!' And at other times, bent on some mischief, he would awake at midnight and having caused his meals to be prepared as before, would carp at them and not partake of them at all. And trying the prince in this way for a while, when the *Muni* found that king Duryodhana was neither angered nor annoyed, he became graciously inclined towards him. And then, O Bhārata, the intractable Durvāsā said unto him, —'I have power to grant thee boons! Thou mayst ask of me whatever lies nearest to thy heart! May good fortune be thine! Pleased as I am with thee, thou mayst obtain from me anything that is not opposed to religion and morals!'

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of the great ascetic, Suyodhana felt himself to be inspired with new life. Indeed, it had been agreed upon between himself and Karna and Dusçāsana as to what the boon should be that he would ask of the *Muni* if the latter were pleased with his reception. And the evil-minded king, bethinking himself of what had previously been decided, joyfully solicited the following favour, saying,—'The great king Yudhishthira is the eldest and the best of our race! That pious wight is now living in the forest with his brothers. Do thou, therefore, once become the guest of that illustrious one even as, O Brāhmana, thou hast with thy disciples been mine for sometime! If thou art minded to do me a favour, do thou go unto him at a time when that delicate and excellent lady, the celebrated princess of Panchāla, after having regaled with food the Brāhmanas, her husband and herself, may lie down to rest!' The *Rishi* replied,—'Even so shall I act for thy satisfaction!' And having said this to Suyodhana, that great Brāhmana, Durvāsā, went away in the very same state in which he had come. And Suyodhana regarded himself to have attained all the objects of his desire. And holding Karna by the hand he expressed great satisfaction. And Karna, too, joyfully addressed the king in the company of his brothers, saying,—'By a piece

of singular good luck, thou hast fared well and attained the objects of thy desire! And by good luck it is that thy enemies have been immersed in a sea of dangers that is difficult to cross! The sons of Pāndu are now exposed to the fire of Durvāsā's wrath! Through their own fault they have fallen into an abyss of darkness.'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"O king, expressing their satisfaction in this strain, Duryodhana and others, bent on evil machinations, returned merrily to their respective homes."

Thus ends the two hundred and sixty-first Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"One day, having previously ascertained that the Pāndavas were all seated at their ease and that Krishnā was reposing herself after her meal, the sage Durvāsā, surrounded by ten thousand disciples, repaired to that forest. The illustrious and upright king Yudhishthira, seeing that guest arrived, advanced with his brothers to receive him. And joining the palms of his hands and pointing to a proper and excellent seat, he accorded the *Rishi* a fit and respectful welcome. And the king said unto him,—'Return quick, O adorable sir, after performing thy diurnal ablutions and observances!' And that sinless *Muni*, not knowing how the king would be able to provide a feast for him and his disciples, proceeded with the latter to perform his ablutions. And that host of *Munis*, of subdued passions, went into the stream for performing their ablutions. Meanwhile, O king, the excellent princess Draupadi, devoted to her husbands, was in great anxiety about the food (to be provided for the *Munis*). And when after much anxious thought she came to the conclusion that means there were none for providing a feast, she inwardly prayed to Krishna the slayer of Kansa. And the princess said,—'Krishna, O Krishna of mighty arms, O son of Devaki, whose power is inexhaustible, O Vāsudeva, O lord of the Universe, who dispellest the diffi-

culties of those that bow down to thee, thou art the soul, the creator and the destroyer of the Universe! Thou, O lord, art inexhaustible and the saviour of the afflicted! Thou art the preserver of the Universe and of all created beings! Thou art the highest of the high, and the spring of the mental perceptions called *Akuti* and *Chiti*!* O Supreme and Infinite being, O giver of all good, be thou the refuge of the helpless! O primordial Being, incapable of being conceived by the soul or the mental faculties or otherwise, thou art the ruler of all and the lord of Brahmā! I seek thy protection! O god, thou art ever kindly disposed towards those that take refuge in thee! Do thou cherish me with thy kindness! O thou with a complexion dark as the leaves of the blue lotus, and with eyes red as the corola of the lily, and attired in yellow robes with, besides, the bright *Kaustuva* gem in thy bosom, thou art the beginning and the end of the creation, and the great refuge of all! Thou art the Supremest light and essence of the Universe! Thy face is directed towards every point! They call thee the Supreme germ and the depositary of all treasures! Under thy protection, O Lord of the gods, all evils lose their terror! As thou hadst protected me before from Dusçāsana, do thou extricate me now from this difficulty!'

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"The great and sovereign God, and Lord of the earth, of mysterious movements, the lord Keçava who is ever kind to dependants, thus adored by Krishnā, and perceiving her difficulty, instantly repaired to that place, leaving the bed of Rukmini who was sleeping by his side. Beholding Vāsudeva, Draupadi bowed down to him in great joy and informed him of the arrival of the *Munis* and every other thing. And having heard everything, Krishna said unto her,—'I am very much afflicted with hunger, do thou give me some food without delay, and then thou mayst go about thy work!' At these words of Keçava, Krishnā became

* Both these words are of doubtful meaning. It seems they are employed in the *Vedas* to denote the faculties of knowledge and the moral sense respectively.—*T.*

confused, and replied unto him, saying,—'The sun-given vessel remains full till I finish my meal! But as I have already taken my meal to-day, there is no food in it now!' Then that lotus-eyed and adorable being said unto Krishnā, —'This is no time for jest, O Krishnā! I am much distressed with hunger, go thou quickly to fetch the vessel and show it to me!' When Keçava, that ornament of the Yadu race, had the vessel brought unto him with such persistence, he looked into it and saw a particle of rice and vegetable sticking at its rim. And swallowing it he said unto her,—'May it please the god Hari, the soul of the Universe, and may that god who partaketh at sacrifices, be satiated with this!' Then the long-armed Krishna, that soother of miseries, said unto Bhima-sena,—'Do thou speedily invite the *Munis* to dinner!' Then, O good king, the celebrated Bhima-sena, quickly went to invite to the repast all those *Munis*, Durvāsā and others, who had gone to the nearest stream of transparent and cool water to perform their ablutions. Meanwhile, those ascetics, having plunged into the river, were rubbing their bodies and observing that they all felt their stomachs to be full. And coming out of the stream, they began to stare at one another. And turning towards Durvāsā, all those ascetics observed,—'Having bade the king to make our meals ready, we have come hither for a bath. But how, O regenerate *Rishi*, can we eat anything now, for our stomachs seem to be full to the throat. The rapast hath been uselessly prepared for us! What is the best thing to be done now?' Durvāsā replied.—'By spoiling the repast, we have done a great wrong to that royal sage, king Yudhishthira! Would that the Pāndavas destroyed us not, looking down upon us with angry eyes! I know the royal sage Yudhishthira to be possessed of great ascetic power! Ye Brāhmanas, I am afraid of men that are devoted to Hari! The high-souled Pāndavas are all religious men, learned, warlike, diligent in ascetic austerities and religious observances, devoted to Vāsudeva, and always observant of rules of good conduct. If provoked, they can consume us with their wrath as fire doth a bale of cotton. Therefore, ye disciples, do ye all run away quickly without seeing them (again)!'

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"All those Brāhmanas, then advised by their ascetic preceptor, became greatly afraid of the Pāndavas, and fled away in all directions. Then Bhima-sena, not beholding those excellent *Munis* in the celestial river, made a search after them here and there at all the landing places. And learning from the ascetics of those places that they had run away, he came back and informed Yudhishthira of what had happened. Then all the Pāndavas, of subdued senses, expecting them to come, remained awaiting their arrival for some time. And Yudhishthira said,—coming in the dead of night, the *Rishi* will deceive us! Oh, how can we escape from this difficulty created by the fates!' Seeing them absorbed in such reflections and breathing long deep sighs at frequent intervals, the illustrious Krishna suddenly appeared to them and addressed them these words.—'Knowing, ye sons of Prithā, your danger from that wrathful *Rishi*, I was implored by Draupadi to come, and (therefore) have I come here speedily! But now ye have not the least fear from the *Rishi* Durvāsā. Afraid of your ascetic powers, he hath made himself scarce ere this. Virtuous men never suffer. I now ask your permission to let me return home. May you always be prosperous!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing Keçava's words, the sons of Prithā, with Draupadi, became easy in mind. And cured of their fever (of anxiety), they said unto him,—'As persons drowning in the wide ocean, safely reach the shore by means of a boat, so have we, by thy aid, O lord Govinda, escaped from this inextricable difficulty! Do thou now depart in peace, and may prosperity be thine!' Thus dismissed, he repaired to his capital and the Pāndavas too, O blessed lord, wandering from forest to forest, passed their days merrily with Draupadi. Thus, O king, have I related to thee the story which thou hadst asked me to repeat. And it was thus that the machinations of the wicked sons of Dhritarāshtra about the Pāndavas in the forest, were frustrated."

Thus ends the two hundred and sixty-second Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXIII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—" Those great warriors of the race of Bharata sojourned like the immortals in the great forest of Kāmyaka, employed in hunting and pleased with the sight of numerous wild tracts of country and wide reaches of woodland, gorgeous with flowers blossoming in season. And the sons of Pāndu, each like unto Indra and the terror of his enemies, dwelt there for some time. And one day those valiant men, the conquerors of their foes, went about in all directions, in search of game for feeding the Brāhmanas in their company, leaving Draupadi alone at the hermitage, with the permisson of the great ascetic Trinavindu, resplendent with ascetic grandeur, and of their spiritual guide Dhaumya. Meanwhile, the famous king of Sindhu, the son of Briddhakshatra was, with a view to matrimony, proceeding to the kingdom of Sālwa, dressed in his best royal apparel and accompanied by numerous princes. And the prince halted in the woods of Kāmyaka. And in that secluded place, he found the beautiful Draupadi, the beloved and clebrated wife of the Pāndavas, standing at the threshold of the hermitage. And she looked grand in the superb beauty of her form, and seemed to shed a lustre on the woodland around, like lightning illuminating masses of dark clouds. And they who saw her asked themselves,—'Is this an *Apsarā*, or a daughter of the gods, or a celestial phantom ?, And with this thought, their hands also joined together, they stood gazing on the perfect and faultless beauty of her form. And Jayadratha the king of Sindhu and the son of Vriddhakshatra, struck with amazement at the sight of that lady of faultless beauty, was seized with an evil intention. And inflamed with desire, he said to the prince named Kotika,—'Whose is this lady of faultless form ? Is she of the human kind ? I have no need to marry if I can secure this exquisitely beautiful creature. Taking her with me I shall go back to my abode. Go, sir, and enquire who she is and whence she has come and why also hath that delicate being

come into this forest beset with thorns! Will this ornament of womankind, this slender-waisted lady of so much beauty, endued with handsome teeth and large eyes, accept me as her lord? I shall certainly regard myself successful, if I obtain the hand of this excellent lady! Go, Kotika, and enquire who her husband may be!' Thus asked, Kotika wearing a *Kundala*, jumped out of his chariot and came near her, as a jackal approacheth a tigress, and spake unto her these words."

Thus ends the two hundred and sixty-third Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXIV.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Kotika said.—'Excellent lady, who art thou that standst alone, leaning on a branch of the *Kadamva* tree, at this hermitage and looking grand like a flame of fire blazing at night time, and fanned by the wind? Exquisitely beautiful as thou art, how is it that thou feelest not any fear in these forests? Methinks thou art a goddess, or a *Yakshi*, or a *Dānavi* or an excellent *Apsarā*, or the wife of a *Daitya*, or a daughter of the *Naga* king, or a *Rākshasi*, or the wife of Varuna, or of Yama, or of Soma, or of Kuvera, who, having assumed a human form, wanderest in these forests! Or, hast thou come from the mansions of *Dhātri*, or of *Vidhātri*, or of *Savitri*, or of *Vibhu*, or of *Sakra*? Thou dost not ask us who we are, nor do we know who protects thee here! Respectfully do we ask thee, good lady, who is thy powerful father, and, O, do tell us truly the names of thy husband, thy relatives, and thy race, and tell us also what thou doest here! As for us, I am king Suratha's son whom people know by the name of Kotika, and that man with eyes large as the petals of the lotus, sitting on a chariot of gold, like the sacrificial fire on the altar, is the warrior known by the name of Kshemankara, king of Trigarta. And behind him is the famous son of the king of Kulinda, who is even now gazing on thee! Armed with a mighty bow and endued with large eyes, and decorated with flowery wreaths, he always liveth on the breasts of mountains,

That dark and handsome young man, the scourge of his enemies, standing at the edge of that tank, is the son of Suvala of the race of Ikshwāku! And if, O excellent lady, thou hast ever heard the name of Jayadratha the king of Sauviras, even he is there at the head of six thousand chariots, with horses and elephants and infantry, and followed by twelve Sauvira princes as his standard-bearers, named Angāraka, Kunjara, Guptaka, Satrunjaya, Srinjaya, Suprabiddha, Prabhankara, Bhramara, Ravi, Sura, Pratāpa and Kuhana, all mounted on chariots drawn by chesnut horses and every one of them looking like the fire on the sacrificial altar. The brothers also of that king, *viz*, the powerful Valāhaka, Anika, Vidārana and others, are among his followers. These strong-limbed and noble youths are the flower of the Sauvira chivalry. The king is journeying in the company of these his friends, like Indra surrounded by the Maruts. O fine-haired lady, do tell us that are unacquainted (with these matters), whose wife and whose daughter thou art!"

Thus ends the two hundred and sixty-fourth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXV.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"The princess Draupadi, thus questioned by that ornament of Sivi's race, moved her eyes gently, and letting go her hold of the *Kadamva* branch and arranging her silken apparel, she said,—I am aware, O prince, that it is not proper for a person like me to address you thus, but as there is not another man or woman here to speak with thee and as I am alone here just now, let me, therefore, speak! Know, worthy sir, that being alone in this forest here, I should not speak unto thee, remembering the usages of my sex. I have learned, O Saivya, that thou art Suratha's son, whom people know by the name of Kotika! Therefore, on my part, I shall now tell thee of my relations and renowned race. I am the daughter of king Drupada, and people know me by the name of Krishnā, and I have accepted,

as my husbands, five persons of whom you may have heard while they were living atKshāndava-prastha. Those noble persons, *viz*, Yudhishthira, Bhima-sena, Arjuna, and the two sons of Mādri, leaving me here and having assigned unto themselves the four points of the horizon, have gone out on a hunting excursion! The king hath gone to the east, Bhima-sena towards the south, Arjuna to the west, and the twin brothers towards the north! I think it is time for those excellent warriors to return home! Therefore, do ye now alight and dismiss your carriages so that ye may depart after receiving a due welcome from them! The high-souled son of Dharma is fond of guests and will surely be delighted to see you!' Having addressed Saivya's son in this way, the daughter of Drupada, with face beautiful as the moon, remembering well her husband's character for hospitality, entered her spacious cottage."

Thus ends the two hundred and sixty-five Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXVI.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" O Bhārata, Kotikākhya related to those princes who had been waiting, all that had passed between him and Krishnā. And hearing *Kotikākhya's* words, Jayadratha said to that scion of the race of Sivi,—'Having listened only to her speech, my heart has been lovingly inclined towards that ornament of womankind! Why, therefore, hast thou returned (thus unsuccessfully)! I tell thee truly, O thou of mighty arms, that having once seen this lady, other women now seem to me like so many monkeys! Having looked at her, she has captivated my heart! Do tell me, O Saivya, if that excellent lady is of the human kind!' Kotika replied,—'This lady is the famous princess Krishnā, the daughter of Drupada, and the celebrated wife of the five sons of Pāndu. She is the much-esteemed and beloved and chaste wife of the sons of Prithā. Taking her with thee, do thou proceed towards Sauvira!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued,—" Thus addressed, the evil-mind-

ed Jayadratha the king of Sindhu, Sauvira and other countries, said,—'I must see Draupadi.' And with six other men, he entered that solitary hermitage, like a wolf entering the den of a lion. And he said unto Krishnā,—'Hail to thee, excellent lady! Are thy husbands well and those, besides, whose prosperity thou always wishest!' Draupadi replied,—'Kunti's son king Yudhishthira of the race of Kuru, his brothers, myself, and all those of whom thou hast enquired, are well. Is everything right with thy kingdom, thy government, thy exchequer, and thy army? Art thou, as sole ruler, governing with justice the rich countries of Saivya, Sivi, Sindhu and others that thou hast brought under thy sway? Do thou, O prince, accept this water for washing thy feet. Do thou also take this seat. I offer thee fifty animals for thy train's breakfast. Besides these, Yudhishthira himself, the son of Kunti, will give thee porcine deer, and *Nanku* deer, and does, and antelopes, and *Saravas*, and rabbits, and *Ruru* deer, and bears, and *Samvara* deer and gayals and many other animals, besides wild boars and buffalos and other animals of the quadruped tribe. Hearing this, Jayadratha replied, saying,—'All is well with me. By offering to provide our breakfast, thou hast in a manner actually done it. Come now and ride my chariot and be completely happy! For it becomes not thee to have any regard for the miserable sons of Prithā who are living in the woods, whose energies have been parlaysed, whose kingdom hath been snatched and whose fortunes are at the lowest ebb. A woman of sense like thee doth not attach herself to a husband that is poor. She should follow her lord when he is in prosperity but abandon him when in adversity. The sons of Pāndu have for ever fallen away from their high state, and have lost their kingdom for all time to come. Thou hast no need, therefore, to partake of their misery from any regard for them. Therefore, O thou of beautiful hips, forsaking the sons of Pāndu, be happy by becoming my wife, and share thou with me the kingdoms of Sindhu and Sauvira!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Hearing these frightful words of the king of Sindhu, Krishnā retired from that place, her

face furrowed into a frown owing to the contraction of her eye-brows. And disregarding his words from supreme contempt, the slender-waisted Krishnā reprovingly said unto the king of Sindhu,—'Speak not thus again! Art thou not ashamed? Be on thy guard!' And that lady of irreproachable character, anxiously expectiing the return of her husbands, began with long-winded speecles, to beguile him completely."

Thus ends the two hundred and sixty-sixth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXVII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"The daughter of Drupada, though naturally handsome, was suffused with crimson arising from a fit of anger. And with eyes inflamed and eye-brows bent in wrath, she reproved the ruler of the Suviras, saying,—'Art thou not ashamed, O fool, to use such insulting words in respect of those celebrated and terrible warriors, each like unto Indra himself, and who are all devoted to their duties and who never waver in fight with even hosts of *Yakshas* and *Rākshasās*? O Sauvira, good men never speak ill of learned persons devoted to austerities and endued with learning, no matter whether they live in the wilderness or in houses. It is only wretches that are mean as thou who do so. Methinks there is none in this assemblage of Kshatriyas, who is capable of holding thee by the hand to save thee from falling into the pit thou openest under thy feet! In hoping to vanquish king Yudhishthira the just, thou really hopest to separate, stick in hand, from a herd roaming in Himālayan valleys its leader, huge as a mountain peak and with the temporal juice trickling down its rent temples. From childish folly thou art kicking up into wakefulness the powerful lion lying asleep, in-order to pluck the hair from off his face! Thou shalt, however, have to run away when thou seest Bhimasena in wrath! Thy courting a combat with the furious Jishnu may be likened to thy kicking up a mighty, terrible, full-grown, and furious lion asleep in a mountain cave! Thencoe unter thou seekest-

with those two excellent youths—the younger Pāndavas—is like unto the act of a fool that wantonly trampleth on the tails of two venomous black cobras with bifurcated tongues! The bamboo, the reed, and the plantain bear fruit only to perish and not to grow in size any further. Like also the crab that conceiveth for her own destruction, thou wilt lay hands upon me who am protected by these mighty heroes!'

"Jayadratha replied,—'I know all this, O Krishnā, and I am well aware of the prowess of those princes! But thou canst not frighten us now with these threats! We, too, O Krishnā, belong by birth to the seventeen high clans, and are endowed with the six royal qualities.* We, therefore, look down upon the Pāndavas as inferior men! Therefore, do thou, O daughter of Drupada, ride this elephant or this chariot quickly, for thou canst not baffle us with thy words alone; or, speaking less boastfully, seek thou the mercy of the king of the Sauviras!'

Draupadi replied.—'Though so powerful, why doth the king of Sauvira yet consider me so powerless! Well-known as I am, I cannot, from fear of violence, demean myself before that prince! Even Indra himself cannot abduct her for whose protection Krishna and Arjuna would together follow riding in the same chariot! What shall I say, therefore, of a weak human being! When Kiriti, that slayer of foes, riding on his car, will, on my account, enter thy ranks, striking terror into every heart, he will consume everything around like fire consuming a stack of dry grass in summer! The war-like princes of the Andhaka and the Vrishni races, with Janārddana at their head, and the mighty bowmen of the Kaikeya tribe, will all follow in my wake with great ardour. The terrible arrows of Dhananjaya, shot from the string of the *Gāndiva* and propelled by his arms, fly with great force through the air, roaring like the very clouds. And when thou wilt behold Arjuna shooting from the *Gāndiva* a thick mass

* "The six acts of a king, in his military character; or, peace, war, marching, halting, sowing dissension, and seeking protection." *Wilson's Dict.*

of mighty arrows like unto a flight of locusts, then wilt thou repent of thine own folly! Bethink thyself of what thou wilt feel when that warrior armed with the *Gāndiva*, blowing his conch-shell and with gloves reverberating with the strokes of his bowstring, will again and again pierce thy breast with his shafts! And when Bhima will advance towards thee, mace in hand, and the two sons of Mādri range in all directions, vomitting forth the venom of their wrath, thou wilt then experience pangs of keen regret that will last for ever. As I have never been false to my worthy lords even in thought, so by that merit shall I now have the pleasure of beholding thee vanquished and dragged by the sons of Prithā. Thou canst not, cruel as thou art, frighten me by seizing me with violence, for as soon as those Kuru warriors will espy me they will bring me back to the woods of Kāmyaka.'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then that lady of large eyes, beholding them ready to lay violent hands on her, rebuked them and said,—'Defile me not by your touch!' And in great alarm she then called upon her spiritual adviser Dhaumya. Jayadratha, however, seized her by her upper garment, but she pushed him with great vigor. And pushed by the lady, that sinful wretch fell upon the ground like a tree severed from its roots. Seized, however, once more by him with great violence, she began to pant for breath. And dragged by the wretch, Krishnā at last ascended his chariot having worshipped Dhaumya's feet. And Dhaumya then addressed Jayadratha and said,—'Do thou, O Jayadratha, observe the anicient custom of the Kshatriyas! Thou canst not carry her off, without having vanquished those great warriors! Without doubt, thou shalt reap the painful fruits of this thy despicable act, when thou encounterest the heroic sons of Pāndu with Yudhishthira the just at their head!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said these words Dhaumya, entering into the midst of Jayadratha's infantry, began to follow that renowned princess who was thus being crrried away by the ravisher."

Thus ends the two hundred and sixty-seventh Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXVIII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Meanwhile those foremost of bowmen on the face of the earth, having wandered separately and ranged in all directions, and having slain plenty of deer and buffalos, at length met together. And observing that great forest, which was crowded with hosts of deer and wild beasts, resounding with the shrill cries of birds, and hearing the shricks and yells of the denizens of the wilderness, Yudhishthira said unto his brothers,—'These birds and wild beasts, flying towards that direction which is illuminated by the sun, are uttering dissonant cries and displaying an intense excitement. All this only shows that this mighty forest hath been invaded by hostile intruders. Without a moment's delay let us give up the chase. We have no more need of game. My heart aches and seems to burn! The soul in my body, overpowering the intellect, seems ready to fly out. As a lake rid by Gadura of the mighty snake that dwells in it, as a pot drained of its contents by thirsty men, as a kingdom reft of king and prosperity, even so doth the forest of Kāmyaka seem to me!' Thus addressed, those heroic warriors drove towards their abode, on great cars of handsome make and drawn by steeds of the *Saindhava* breed exceedingly fleet and possessed of the speed of the hurricane. And on their way back, they beheld a jackal yelling hideously on the wayside towards their left. And king Yudhishthira, regarding it attentively, said unto Bhima and Dhananjaya,—'This jackal that belongs to a very inferior species of animals, sneaking to our left, speaketh a language which plainly indicates that the sinful Kurus, disregarding us, have commenced to oppress us by resorting to violence.' "

"After the sons of Pāndu had given up the chase and said these words, they entered the grove which contained their hermittage. And there they found their beloved one's maid, the girl Dhātreyikā, sobbing and weeping. And Indrasena then, quickly alighting from the chariot and advancing with hasty

steps towards her, questioned her, O king, in greater distress of mind, saying,—'What makes thee weep thus, lying on the ground, and why is thy face so woe-begone and colourless?—I hope no cruel wretches have done any harm to the princess Draupadi possessed of incomparable beauty and large eyes and who is the second self of every one of those bulls of the Kuru race? So anxious hath been Dharm's son that if the princess hath entered the bowels of the earth or hath soared to heaven or dived into the bottom of the ocean, he and his brothers will go thither in pursuit of her! Who could that fool be that would carry away that priceless jewel belonging to the mighty and ever-victorious sons of Pāndu, those grinders of foes, and which is dear unto them as their own lives? I don't know who the person could be that would think of carrying away that princess who hath such powerful protectors and who is even like a walking embodiment of the hearts of the sons of Pāndu? Piercing whose breast will terrible shafts stick to the ground today? Do not weep for her, timid girl, for know thou that Krishnā will come back this very day, and the sons of Prithā, having slain their foes, will again be united with Yāgnaseni!' Thus addressed by him, Dhātreyikā, wiping her beautiful face, replied unto Indrasena the charioteer, saying,—'Disregarding the five Indra like sons of Pāndu, Jayadratha hath carried away Krishnā by force! The track pursued by him hath not yet disappeared, for the broken branches of trees have not yet faded. Therefore, turn your cars and follow her quickly, for the princess cannot have gone far by this! Ye warriors possessed of the prowess of Indra, putting on your weighty armours of handsome make, and taking up your costly bows and quivers, speed ye in pursuit of her, lest' overpowered by threats or violence and losing her senses and the colour of her cheeks, she yields herself up to an undeserving wight, even as one poureth forth, from the sacrificial ladle, the sanctified oblation on a heap of ashes! O, see that the clarified butter is not poured into an unigniting fire of paddy chaff; that a garland of flowers is not thrown away in a cemetery! O, take care that the *Soma* juice of a sacrifice is not licked up by a

dog through the carelessness of the officiating priests! O, let not the lily be rudely torn by a jackal roaming for its prey in the impenetrable forest! O, let no inferior wight touch with his lips the bright and beautiful face of your wife, fair as the beams of the moon and adorned with the finest nose and the hansomest eyes, like a dog licking clarified butter kept in the sacrificial pot! Do ye speed in this track and let not time steal a march on you!'

"Yudhishthira said,—'Retire, good woman, and control thy tongue! Speak not in this way before us! Kings or princes, whoever are infatuated with the possession of power, are sure to come to grief!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"With these words, they departed, following the track pointed out to them, and frequently breathing deep sighs like the hissing of snakes, and twanging the strings of their large bows. And then they observed a cloud of dust raised by the hoofs of the steeds belonging to Jayadratha's army. And they also saw Dhaumya in the midst of the ravisher's infantry, exhorting Bhima to quicken his steps. Then those princes (the sons of Pāndu), with hearts undepressed, bade him be of good cheer and said unto him,—'Do thou return cheerfully!' And then they rushed towards that host with great fury, like hawks swooping down on their prey. And possessed of the prowess of Indra, they had been filled with fury at the insult offered to Draupadi. But at sight of Jayadratha and of their beloved wife seated on his car, their fury knew no bounds. And those mighty bowmen, Bhima, and Dhananjaya, and the twin brothers and the king, called out to Jayadratha to stop, upon which the enemy was so bewildered as to lose their knowledge of directions."

Thus ends the two hundred and sixty-eighth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXIX.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"The hostile Kshatriyas, incensed at sight of Bhimasena and Arjuna, sent up a loud shout in the forest. And the wicked king Jayadratha, when he saw the standards of those bulls of the Kuru race, lost his heart, and addressing the resplendant Yāgnaseni seated on his car, said,—'Those five great warriors, O Krishnā, that are coming, are, I believe, thy husbands! As thou knowest the sons of Pāndu well, do thou, O lady of beautiful tresses, describe them one by one to us, pointing out which of them rideth which car!' Thus addressed, Draupadi replied,—'Having done this violent deed calculated to shorten thy life, what will it avail thee now, O fool, to know the names of those great warriors, for, now that my heroic husbands are come, not one of ye will be left alive in battle! However, as thou art on the point of death and hast asked me, I will tell thee everything, this being consistent with the ordinance. Beholding king Yudhishthira the just with his younger brothers, I have not the slightest anixiety or fear from thee! That warrior at the top of whose flagstaff two handsome and sonorous tabours called *Nanda* and *Upananda* are constantly played upon,—he, O Sauvira chief, hath a correct knowledge of the morality of his own acts. Men that have attained success always walk in his train. With a complexion like that of pure gold, possessed of a prominent nose and large eyes, and endued with a slender make, that husband of mine is known among people by the name of Yudhishthira the son of Dharma and the foremost of the Kure race That virtuous prince of men granteth life to even a foe that yields. Therefore, O fool, throwing down thy arms and joining thy hands, run to him for thy good, to seek his protection! And that other man whom thou seest with long arms and tall as the full-grown *Sāla* tree, seated on his chariot, biting his lips, and contracting his forehead so as to bring the two eyebrows together, is he,—my husband Vrikodara! Steeds of the

noblest breed, plump and strong, well-trained and endued with great might, draw the cars of that warrior! His achievements are superhuman. He is known, therefore, by the name of *Bhima* on earth! They that offend him are never suffered to live. He never forgeteth a foe! On some pretext or other, he wreaketh his vengeance. Nor is he pacified even after he has wreaked a signal vengeance! And there, that foremost of bowmen, endued with intelligence and renown, with senses under complete control and reverence for the old,—that brother and disciple of Yudhishthira—is my husband Dhananjaya! Virtue he never forsaketh, from lust or fear or anger! Nor doth he ever commit a deed that is cruel! Endued with the energy of fire and capable of withstanding every foe, that grinder of enemies is the son of Kuntī. And that other youth, versed in every question of morality and profit, who ever dispelleth the fears of the affrighted, who is endued with high wisdom, who is considered as the handsomest person in the whole world, and who is protected by all the sons of Pāndu, being regarded by them as dearer to them than their own lives for his unflinching devotion to them, is my husband Nakula possessed of great prowess! Endued with high wisdom and having Sahadeva for his second, possessed of exceeding lightness of hand, he fighteth with the sword, making dexterous passes therewith. Thou, foolish man, shalt witness today his performances on the field of battle, like unto those of Indra amid the ranks of Daityas! And that hero skilled in weapons, and possessed of intelligence and wisdom, and intent on doing what is agreeable to the son of Dharma, that favorite and youngest-born of the Pāndavas, is my husband Sahadeva! Heroic, intelligent, wise, and ever wrathful, there is not another man equal unto him in intelligence or in eloquence amid assemblies of the wise! Dearer to Kunti than her own soul, he is always mindful of the duties of Kshatriyas, and would much sooner rush into fire or sacrifice his own life than say anything that is opposed to religion and morals. When the sons of Pāndu will have killed thy warriors in battle, then wilt thou behold thy army in the miserable plight of a ship on the sea, wrecked with its freight of jewels

on the back of a whale. Thus have I described unto thee the prowess of the sons of Pāndu, disregarding whom in thy foolishness, thou hast acted so ! If thou escapest unscathed from them, then, indeed, thou wilt have obtained a new lease of life !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Then those five sons of Prithā, each like unto Indra, filled with wrath, leaving the panic-striken infantry alone, who were imploring them for mercy, rushed furiously upon the charioteers, attacking them on all sides and darkening the very air with the thick shower of arrows they shot. "

Thus ends the two hundred and sixty-ninth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXX.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Meanwhile, the king of Sindhu was giving orders to those princes saying,—'Halt,' 'Strike', 'March quick', and the like. And on seeing Bhima, Arjuna, and the twin brothers of Yudhishthira, the soldiers sent up a loud shout on the field of battle. And the warriors of the Sivi, Sauvira, and Sindhu tribes, at the sight of those powerful heroes looking like fierce tigers, lost heart. And Bhimasena, armed with a mace made entirely of *Saikya* iron and embossed with gold, rushed towards the Saindhava monarch doomed to death. But Kotikākhya, speedily surrounding Vrikodara with an array of mighty charioteers, interposed between and separated the combatants. And Bhima, though assailed with numberless spears and clubs and iron arrows hurled at him by the strong arms of hostile heroes, did not waver for one moment. On the other hand, he killed, with his mace, an elephant with its driver and fourteen foot-soldiers fighting in the front of Jayadratha's car. And Arjuna also, desirous of capturing the Sauvira king, slew five hundred brave mountaineers fighting in the van of the Sindhu army. And in that encounter, the king himself slew in the twinkling of an eye, an hundred of the best warriors of the Sau-

viras. And Nakula too, sword in hand, jumping out of his chariot, scattered in a moment, like a tiller sowing seeds, the heads of the combatants fighting in the rear. And Sahadeva from his chariot began to fell, with his iron shafts, many warriors fighting on elephants, like birds dropped from the boughs of a tree. Then the king of Trigarta, bow in hand, descending from his great chariot, killed the four steeds of the king with his mace. But Kunti's son, king Yudhishthira the just, seeing the foe approach so near, and fighting on foot, pierced his breast with a crescent-shaped arrow. And that hero, thus wounded in the breast, began to vomit blood, and fell down upon the ground beside Prithā's son, like an uprooted tree. And king Yudhishthira the just, whose steeds had been slain, taking the opportunity, descended with Indrasena from his chariot and mounted that of Sahadeva. And the two warriors, Kshemankara and Mahāmuksha, singling out Nakula, began to pour on him from both sides, a perfect shower of keen-edged arrows. The son of Mādri, however, succeeded in slaying, with a couple of long shafts, both those warriors, who had been pouring on him an arrowy shower like clouds in the rainy season. Then Suratha, the king of Trigarta, well-versed in elephant-charges, approaching the front of Nakula's chariot, caused it to be dragged by the elephant he rode. But Nakula, little daunted at this, leaped out of his chariot, and securing a coign of vantage, stood, shield and sword in hand, immovable as a hill. Thereupon Suratha, wishing to slay Nakula at once, urged towards him his huge and infuriate elephant with trunk upraised. But when the beast came near, Nakula with his sword severed from his head both trunk and tusks. And that mail-clad elephant, uttering a frightful roar, fell headlong upon the ground, crushing its riders by the fall. And having achieved this daring feat, the heroic son of Mādri, getting up on Bhimasena's car, obtained a little rest. And Bhima too, seeing prince Kotikākhya rush to the encounter, cut off the head of his charioteer with a horse-shoe arrow. That prince did not even perceive that his driver was killed by his strong-armed adversary, and his horses, no longer restrained by a driver, ran about on the

battle-field in all directions. And seeing that prince without a driver turn his back, that foremost of smiters, Bhima the son of Pāndu, went up to him and slew him with a bearded dart. And Dhananjaya also cut off with his sharp crescent-shaped arrows, the heads, as well as the bows, of all the twelve Sauvira heroes. And that great warrior killed in battle, with his arrows, the leaders of the Ikshwākus, and the hosts of Sivis and Trigartas and Saindhavas. And a great many elephants with their colours, and chariots with standards, were seen to fall by the hand of Arjuna. And heads without trunks, and trunks without heads, lay covering the entire field of battle. And dogs, and herons, and ravens, and crows, and falcons, and jackals, and vultures, feasted on the flesh and blood of warriors slain on that field. And when Jayadratha the king of Sindhu saw that his warriors were slain, he became terrified and anxious to run away, leaving Krishnā behind. And in that general confusion, the wretch, setting down Draupadi there, fled for his life, pursuing the same forest path by which he had come. And king Yudhishthira the just, seeing Draupadi with Dhaumya walking before, caused her to be taken up on a chariot by the heroic Sahadeva, the son of Mādri. And when Jayadratha had fled away, Bhima began to mow down with his iron-arrows such of his followers as were running away, striking each trooper down after naming himself. But Arjuna, perceiving that Jayadratha had run away, exhorted his brother to refrain from slaughtering the remnant of the Saindhava host. And Arjuna said,—'I do not find on the field of battle Jayadratha, through whose fault alone we have experienced this bitter misfortune. Seek him out first, and may success crown thy efforts! What is the good of thy slaughtering these troopers? Why art thou bent upon this unprofitable business?'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Bhimasena, thus exhorted by Arjuna of great wisdom, turning to Yudhishthira, replied, saying,—'As a great many of the enemy's warriors have been slain and as they are flying in all directions, do thou, O king, now return home, taking with thee Draupadi and the twin brothers and the high-souled Dhaumya, and console the

princess after getting back to our asylum! That foolish king of Sindhu I shall not let alone as long as he lives, even if he find a shelter in the infernal regions or is backed by Indra himself!' And Yudhishthira replied, saying,—'O thou of mighty arms, remembering (our sister) Dusçalā and the celebrated Gāndhāri, thou shouldst not slay the king of Sindhu, even though he is so wicked!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words, Draupadi was greatly excited. And that highly intelligent lady in her excitement said to her two husbands, Bhima and Arjuna, with indignation mixed with modesty,—'If you care to do what is agreeable to me, you must slay that mean and despicable wretch, that sinful, foolish, infamous, and contemptible chief of the Saindhava clan! That foe who forcibly carries away a wife, and he that wrests a kingdom, should never be forgiven on the battle-field, even though they should supplicate for mercy!' Thus admonished, those two valiant warriors went in search of the Saindhava chief. And the king taking Krishnā with him, returned home, accompanied by his spiritual adviser. And on entering the hermitage, he found it was laid over with seats for the ascetics and crowded with their disciples and graced with the presence of Mārkandeya and other Brāhmanas. And while those Brāhmanas were gravely bewailing the lot of Draupadi, Yudhishthira endued with great wisdom joined their company, with his brothers. And beholding the king thus come back after having defeated the Saindhava and the Suvira host and recovered Draupadi, they were all elated with joy. And the king took his seat in their midst. And the excellent princess Krishnā entered the hermitage with the twin brothers.

"Meanwhile Bhima and Arjuna, learning the enemy was full two miles ahead of them, urged their horses to greater speed in pursuit of him. And the mighty Arjuna performed a wonderful deed, killing the horses of Jayadratha, although they were full two miles ahead of him. Armed with celestial weapons and undaunted by difficulties, he achieved this difficult feat with arrows inspired with *mantras*. And then the two warriors, Bhima and Arjuna, rushed towards the

terrified king of Sindhu, whose horses had been slain and who was alone and perplexed in mind. And the latter was greatly grieved on seeing his steeds slain. And beholding Dhananjaya do such a daring deed, and intent on running away, he followed the same forest track by which he had come. And Fālguna, seeing the Saindhava chief so active in his flight, overtook him and addressed him, saying,—'Possessed of so little manliness, how couldst thou dare to take away a lady by force? Turn round, O prince! It is not meet that thou shouldst run away! How canst thou act so, leaving thy followers in the midst of thy foes?' Although addressed by the sons of Prithā thus, the monarch of Sindhu did not even once turn round. And then bidding him do what he chose, the mighty Bhima overtook him in an instant, but the kind Arjuna entreated him not to kill that wretch."

Thus ends the two hundred and seventieth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

Section CCLXXI.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Jayadratha flying for his life, upon beholding those two brothers with upraised arms, was sorely grieved and bolted off with speed and without confusion. But the mighty and indignant Bhimasena, descending from his chariot, ran after him thus fleeing, and seized him by the hair of his head. And holding him high up in the air, Bhima thrust him on the ground with violence. And seizing the prince by the head, he knocked him about. And when the wretch recovered consciousness, he groaned aloud, and wanted to get up on his legs. But that hero endued with mighty arms kicked him on the head. And Bhima pressed him on the breast with his knees as well as with his fists. And the prince thus belaboured, soon became insensible. Then Fālguna dissuaded the wrathful Bhimasena from inflicting further chastisement on the prince, by reminding him of what Yudhishthira had said regarding (their sister) Dusçalā. But Bhima replied, saying,—'This sinful wretch hath done a cruel injury to Krishnā, who never can

bear such treatment! He, therefore, deserveth to die at my hands! But what can I do? The king is always overflowing with mercy, and thou, too, art constantly putting obstacles in my way from a childish sense of virtue!' Having said these words, Vrikodara, with his crescent-shaped arrow, shaved the hair of the prince's head, leaving five tufts in as many places. Jayadratha uttered not a word at this. Then Vrikodara, addressing the foe, said,—'If thou wishest to live, listen to me, O fool! I shall tell thee the means to attain that wish! In public assemblies and in open courts, thou must say,—*I am the slave of the Pāndavas.*—On this condition alone, I will pardon thee thy life! This is the customary rule of conquest on the field of battle.'—Thus addressed and treated, king Jayadratha said to that mighty and fierce warrior who always looked awful,—'Be it so!' And he was trembling and senseless and begrimed with dust. Then Arjuna and Vrikodara, securing him with chains, thrust him into a chariot. And Bhima himself mounting that chariot, and accompanied by Arjuna, drove towards the hermitage. And approaching Yudhishthira seated there, he placed Jayadratha in that condition before the king. And the king, smiling, told him to set the Sindhu prince at liberty. Then Bhima said unto the king,—'Do thou tell Draupadi, that this wretch hath become the slave of the Pāndavas.' Then his eldest brother said unto him affectionately,—'If thou hast any regard for us, do thou set this wretch at liberty!' And Draupadi too, reading the king's mind, said,—'Let him off! He hath become a slave of the king's, and thou, too, hast disfigured him by leaving five tufts of hair on his head!' Then that crest-fallen prince, having obtained his liberty, approached king Yudhishthira and bowed down unto him. And seeing those *Munis* there, he saluted them also. Then the kind-hearted king Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, beholding Jayadratha in that condition, almost supported by Arjuna, said unto him,—'Thou art a freeman now! I emancipate thee! Now go away and be careful not to do such things again! Shame to thee! Thou hadst intended to take away a lady by violence, even though thou art so mean and powerless! What other wretch, save thee, would

think of acting thus ?' Then that foremost king of Bharata's race eyed with pity that perpetrator of wicked deeds, and believing that he had lost his senses, said,—'Mayst thy heart grow in virtue ! Never set thy heart again on immoral deeds ! Thou mayst depart in peace now with thy charioteers, cavalry, and infantry.' Thus addressed by Yudhishthira, the prince, O Bhārata, was over-powered with shame, and bending down his head, he silently and sorrowfully wended his way to the place where the Gangā debouches on the plains. And imploring the protection of the god of three eyes, the consort of Umā, he did severe penance at that place. And the three-eyed god, pleased with his austerities, deigned to accept his offerings in person. And he also granted him a boon. Do thou listen, O monarch, how the prince received that boon ! Jayadratha, addressing that god, asked the boon,—'May I be able to defeat in battle all the five sons of Pāndu on their chariots !' The god, however, told him,—'This cannot be.' And Maheçwara said,—'None can slay or conquer them in battle ! Save Arjuna, however, thou shalt be able to only check them (once) on the field of battle ! The heroic Arjuna with mighty arms, is the god incarnate styled *Nara*. He practised austerities of old in the *Vadari* forest. The god Nārāyana is his friend. Therefore, he is unconquerable of the very gods. I myself have given him the celestial weapon called *Pāçupata*. From the regents also of all the ten cardinal points, he hath acquired the thunder-bolt and other mighty weapons. And the great god Vishnu who is the Infinite Spirit, the Lord Preceptor of all the gods, is the Supreme Being without attributes, and the Soul of the Universe, and existeth pervading the whole creation. At the termination of a cycle of ages, assuming the shape of the all-consuming fire, he consumed the whole Universe with mountains and seas and islands and hills and woods and forests. And after the destruction of the *Nāga* world also in the subterranean regions in the same way, vast masses of many-colored and loud-pealing clouds, with streaks of lightning spreading along the entire welkin, appeared on high. Then pouring down water in torrents thick as axles of cars, and filling the space everywhere, these extinguished that all-consuming

fire! When at the close of four thousand Yugas the Earth thus became flooded with water, like one vast sea, and all mobile and immobile creatures were hushed in death, and the sun and the moon and the winds were all destroyed, and the Universe was denuded of planets and stars, the Supreme Being called Nārāyana, unknowable by the senses, adorned with a thousand heads and as many eyes and legs, became desirous of rest. And the serpent *Sesha*, looking terrible with his thousand hoods, and shining with the splendour of ten thousand suns, and white as the *Kunda* flower or the moon or a string of pearls or the white lotus or milk or the fibres of a lotus-stalk, served for his couch. And that adorable and omnipotent God thus slept on the bosom of the deep, enveloping all space with nocturnal gloom. And when his creative faculty was excited, he awoke and found the Universe denuded of everything. In this connection, the following *sloka* is recited respecting the meaning of *Nārāyana*. *Water was created by (the Rishi) Nara, and it formed his corpus; therefore, do we hear it styled as Nāra. And because it formed his Ayana (resting-place), therefore is he known as Nārāyana.* As soon as that everlasting Being was engaged in meditation for the re-creation of the Universe, a lotus flower instantaneously came into existence from his navel, and the four-faced Brahmā came out of that navel-lotus. And then the Grandsire of all creatures, seating himself on that flower and finding that the whole Universe was a blank, created in his own likeness, and from his will, the (nine) great *Rishis*, *Marichi* and others. And these in their turn, observing the same thing, completed the creation, by creating *Yakshas*, *Rākshasas*, *Piçāchas*, reptiles, men, and all mobile and immobile creatures. The Supreme Spirit hath three conditions. In the form of Brahmā, he is the Creator, and in the form of Vishnu, he is the Preserver, and in his form as Rudra, he is the Destroyer of the Universe! O king of Sindhu, hast thou not heard of the wonderful achievements of Vishnu, described to thee by the *Munis* and the Brāhmanas learned in the *Vedas*? When the world was thus reduced to one vast sea of water, with only the heavens above, the Lord, like a fire-fly at night-time

during the rainy season, moved about hither and thither in search of stable ground, with the view of rehabilitating his creation, and became desirous of raising the Earth submerged in water. *What shape shall I take to rescue the Earth from this flood ?*—So thinking and contemplating with divine insight, he bethought himself of the shape of a wild boar fond of sporting in water. And assuming the shape of a sacrificial boar shining with effulgence and instinct with the *Vedas* and ten *Yojanas* in length, with pointed tusks and a complexion like dark clouds, and with a body huge as a mountain, and roaring like a conglomeration of clouds, the Lord plunged into the waters, and lifted up the Earth with one of his tusks, and replaced it in its proper sphere. At another time, the mighty Lord, assuming a wonderful form with a body half lion, half man, and squeezing his hands, repaired to the court of the ruler of the *Daityas*. That progeniter of the *Daityas*, the son of *Diti*, who was the enemy of the (gods), beholding the Lord's peculiar form, burst out into a passion and his eyes became inflamed with rage. And Hiranya-kaçipu, the war-like son of Diti and the enemy of the gods, adorned with garlands and looking like a mass of dark clouds, taking up his trident in hand and roaring like the clouds, rushed on that Being half lion, half man. Then that powerful king of wild beasts, half man, half lion, taking a leap in the air, instantly rent the *Daitya* in twain by means of his sharp claws. And the adorable lotus-eyed Lord of great effulgence, having thus slain the *Daitya* king for the well-being of all creatures, again took his birth in the womb of *Aditi* as son of Kaçyapa. And at the expiration of a thousand years she was delivered of that superhuman conception. And then was born that Being, of the hue of rain-charged clouds, with bright eyes and of dwarfish stature. And he had the ascetic's staff and water-pot in hand, and was marked with the emblem of a curl of hair on the breast. And that adorable Being wore matted locks and the sacrificial thread, and he was stout and handsome and resplendent with lustre. And that Being, arriving at the sacrificial enclosure of Vali, king of the *Dānavas*, entered the sacrificial assembly with the aid of

Vrihaspati. And beholding that dwarf-bodied Being, Vali was well pleased and said unto him,—I am glad to see thee, O Brāhmana! Say, what is it that thou wantest from me?—Thus addressed by Vali, the dwarf-god replied with a smile, saying,—I accept thy offer! Do thou, O lord of the *Dānavas*, give me three paces of ground!—And Vali consented to give what that Brāhmana of infinite power asked. And while measuring with his paces the space he sought, Hari assumed a wonderful and extraordinary form. And with only three paces he instantly covered this illimitable world. And then that everlasting God, Vishnu, gave it away unto Indra. This history which has just been related to thee, is celebrated as the *Incarnation of the Dwarf*. And from him, all the gods had their being, and after him the world is said to be *Vaishnava*, or pervaded by Vishnu. And for the destruction of the wicked and the preservation of religion, even He hath taken his birth among men in the race of the Yadus. And the adorable Vishnu is styled Krishna. These, O king of Sindhu, are the achievements of the Lord whom all the worlds worship and whom the learned describe as without beginning and without end, unborn and Divine! They call Him, The unconquerable Krishna with conchshell, discus, and mace, Adorned with the emblem of a curl of hair, Divine, Clad in silken robes of yellow hue, and The best of those versed in the art of war. Arjuna is protected by Krishna the possessor of these attributes. That glorious and lotus-eyed Being of infinite power, that slayer of hostile heroes, riding in the same chariot with Prithā's son, protecteth him! He is, therefore, invincible: the very gods cannot resist his power, still less can one with human attributes vanquish the son of Prithā in battle! Therefore, O king, thou must let him alone! Thou shalt, however, be able to vanquish for a single day only, the rest of Yudhishthira's forces along with thine enemies—the four sons of Pāndu!"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said these words unto that prince, the adorable Hara of three eyes, the destroyer of all sins, the consort of Umā, and lord of wild beasts, the destroyer of (Daksha's) sacrifice, the slayer of Tripura, and

He that had plucked out the eyes of Bhaga, surrounded by his dwarfish and hunch-backed and terrible followers having frightful eyes and ears and uplifted arms, vanished, O tiger among kings, from that place with his consort Umā! And the wicked Jayadratha also returned home, and the sons of Pāndu continued to dwell in the forest of Kāmyaka."

Thus ends the two hundred and seventy-first Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said.—" What did those tigers among men, the Pāndavas, do, after they had suffered such misery in consequence of the ravishment of Draupadi ?"

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Having defeated Jayadratha and rescued Krishnā, the virtuous king Yudhishthira took his seat by the side of that best of *munis*. And among those foremost of ascetics who were expressing their grief upon hearing of Draupadi's misfortune, Yudhishthira, the son of Pāndu, addressed Mārkandeya, saying,—'O adorable Sire, amongst the gods and the ascetics, thou art known to have the fullest knowledge of both the past as well as the future. A doubt existeth in my mind, which I would ask thee to solve! This lady is the daughter of Drupada: she hath issued from the sacrificial altar and hath not been begotten of the flesh; and she is highly blessed and is also the daughter-in-law of the illustrious Pāndu. I incline to think that Time, and human Destiny that dependeth on our acts, and the Inevitable which in respect of all creatures, can never be warded off, are all-powerful! (If it were not so), how could such a misfortune afflict this wife of ours so faithful and virtuous, like a false accusation of theft against an honest man? The daughter of Drupada hath never committed any sinful act, nor hath she done anything that is not commendable: on the contrary, she hath assiduously practised the highest virtues towards Brāhmanas. And yet the foolish king Jayadratha had carried her away by force! In consequence of this act of violence

on her, that sinful wretch hath his hair shaved off his head and sustained also, with all his allies, defeat in battle. It is true we have rescued her after slaughtering the troops of Sindhu. But the disgrace of this ravishment of our wife during our hours of carelessness, hath stained us, to be sure. This life in the wilderness is full of miseries. We subsist by chase; and though dwelling in the woods, we are obliged to slay the denizens thereof that live with us! This exile also that we suffer is due to the act of deceitful kismen! Is there any one who is more unfortunate than I am? Hast thou ever seen or heard of such a one before?' "

Thus ends the two hundred and seventy-second Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXIII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'O bull of the Bharata race, even Rāma suffered unparalleled misery, for the evil-minded Rāvana, king of Rākshasas, having recourse to deceit, and overpowering the vulture Jatāyu, forcibly carried away his wife Sitā from his asylum in the woods. Indeed, Rāma, with the help of Sugriva, brought her back, constructing a bridge across the sea, and consuming Lankā with his keen-edged arrows.'

"Yudhishthira said.—'In what race was Rāma born and what was the measure of his might and prowess? Whose son also was Rāvana and for what was it that he had any misunderstanding with Rāma? It behoveth thee, O illustrious one, to tell me all this in detail; for I long to hear the story of Rāma of great achievements;'

"Mārkandeya said.—'Listen, O prince of Bharata's race, to this old history exactly as it happened! I will tell thee all about the distress suffered by Rāma together with his wife. There was a great king named Aja sprung from the race of Ikshwāku. He had a son named Daçaratha who was devoted to the study of the Vedas and was ever pure. And Daçaratha had four sons conversant with morality and profit, known by the names, respectively, of Rāma, Lakshmana, Satrughna, and

the mighty Bharata. And Rāma had for his mother Kauçalyā, and Bharata had for his mother Kaikeyi, while those scourges of their enemies, Lakshmana and Satrughna, were the sons of Sumitrā. And Janaka was the king of Videha, and Sitā was his daughter. And Tashtri himself created her, desiring to make her the beloved wife of Rāma. I have now told thee the history of both Rāma's and Sita's birth. And now, O king, I will relate unto thee the birth of Rāvana. That Lord of all creatures and Creator of the Universe, viz.,—the Self-create Prajāpati himself—that god possesst of great ascetic merit—is the grandfather of Rāvana. And Prajāpati hath a favorite son called Pulastya, born of his will. And Pulastya hath a mighty son called Vaiçravana begotten of a cow. But his son, leaving his father, went to his grandfather. And, O king, angered at this, his father then created a second self of himself. And with half of his ownself that regenerate one became born as Viçravā for wreaking vengenance on Vaiçravana. But the grandsire, pleased with Vaiçravana, gave him immortality, and sovereignty of all the wealth of the Universe, the guardianship of one of the cardinal points, the friendship of Içāna, and a son named Nalakuvara. And he also gave him for his capital Lankā, which was guarded by hosts of Rākshasas, and also a chariot called *Pushpaka* capable of going everywhere according to the will of the rider. And the kingship of the *Yakshas* and the sovereignty over sovereigns were also his.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and seventy-third Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

Section CCLXXIV.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said.—'The *Muni* named Viçravā, who was begotten of half the soul of Pulastya, in a fit of passion, began to look upon Vaiçravana with great anger. But, O monarch, Kuvera, the king of the Rākshasas, knowing that his father was angry with him, always sought to please him. And, O best of Bharata's race, that king of kings living in Lankā

and borne upon the shoulders of men, sent three Rākshasa women to wait upon his father. Their names, O king, were Pushpotkatā, Rākā, and Mālini. And they were skilled in singing and dancing and were always assiduous in their attentions on that high-souled *Rishi*. And those slender-waisted ladies vied with one another, O king, in gratifying the *Rishi*. And that high-souled and adorable being was pleased with them and granted them boons. And to every one of them, he gave princely sons according to their desire. Two sons—those foremost of Rākshasas named Kumvakarna and the ten-headed Rāvana,—both unequalled on earth in prowess, were born to Pushpotkatā. And Mālini had a son named Vibhishana, and Rākā had twin children named Khara and Surpanakhā. And Vibhishana surpassed them all in beauty. And that excellent person was very pious and assiduously performed all religious rites. But that foremost of Rākshasas, he with ten heads, was the eldest of them all. And he was religious, and energetic, and possessed of great strength and prowess. And the Rākshasa Kumvakarna was the most powerful in battle, for he was fierce and terrible and a thorough master of the arts of illusion. And Khara was proficient in archery, and hostile to the Brāhmanas, subsisting as he did on flesh. And the fierce Surpanakhā was a constant source of trouble to the ascetics. And the warriors, learned in the Vedas and diligent in ceremonial rites, all lived with their father in the *Gandhamādana*. And there they beheld Vaiçravana seated with their father, possessed of riches and borne on the shoulders of men. And seized with jealousy, they resolved upon performing penances. And with ascetic penances of the most severe kind, they gratified Brahmā. And the ten-headed Rāvana, supporting life by means of air alone, and surrounded by the five sacred fires, and absorbed in meditation, remained standing on one leg for a thousand years. And Kumvakarna with head downwards, and with restricted diet, was constant in austerities. And the wise and magnanimous Vibhishana, observing fasts and subsisting only on dry leaves and engaged in meditation, practised severe austerities for as long a period. And Khara and Surpanakhā, with cheerful hearts, protected and attended on them while

they were performing those austerities. And at the close of a thousand years, the invincible Ten-headed, cutting off his own heads, offered them as offerings to the sacred fire. And at this act of his, the Lord of the Universe was pleased with him. And then Brahmā, personally appearing to them, bade them desist from those austerities and promised to grant boons unto every one of them. And the adorable Brahmā said,—I am pleased with you, my sons ! Cease now from these austerities and ask boons of me ! Whatever your desires may be, they, with the single exception of that of immortality, will be fulfiled ! As thou hast offered thy heads to the fire from great ambition, they will again adorn thy body as before, according to thy desire. And thy body will not be disfigured and thou shalt be able to assume any form according to thy desire and become the conqueror of thy foes in battle. There is no doubt of this !—Thereupon Rāvana said,—May I never experience defeat at the hands of *Gandharvas,* celestials, *Kinnaras, Asuras, Yakshas, Rākshasas,* serpents, and all other creatures !—Brahmā said,—From those thou hast named, thou shalt never have cause of fear : except from men (thou shalt have no occasion for fear). Good betide thee ! So hath it been ordained by me !—'

" Mārkandeya said,—'Thus addressed, the Ten-headed (Rāvana) was highly gratified, for on account of perverted understanding, the man-eating one slighted human beings. Then the great Grandsire addressed Kumvakarna as before. His reason being clouded by darkness, he asked for long-lasting sleep. Saying,—It shall be so—Brahmā then addressed Vibhishana,—O my son, I am much pleased with thee ! Ask any boon thou pleasest !—Thereupon, Vibhishana replied,—Even in great danger, may I never swerve from the path of righteousness, and though ignorant, may I, O adorable Sire, be illumined with the light of divine knowledge !—And Brahmā replied,—O scourge of thy enemies, as thy soul inclines not to unrighteousness although born in the *Rākshasa* race, I grant thee immortality !—'

" Mārkandeya continued,—'Having obtained this boon, the ten-headed Rākshasa defeated Kuvera in battle and obtained

from him the sovereignty of Lankā. That adorable Being, leaving Lankā and followed by Gandharvas, Yakshas, Rakshas, and Kinnaras, went to live on mount Gandhamādana. And Rāvana forcibly took from him the celestial chariot called *Pushpaka*. And upon this Vaiçravana cursed him, saying,—This chariot shall never carry thee: it shall bear him who will slay thee in battle! And as thou hast insulted me, thy elder brother, thou shalt soon die!—

'The pious Vibhishana, O king, treading in the path followed by the virtuous, and possessed of great glory, followed Kuvera. That adorable Lord of wealth, highly pleased with his younger brother, invested him with the command of the Yaksha and Rākshasa hosts. On the other hand, the powerful and man-eating *Rākshasas* and *Piçāchas*, having assembled together, invested the ten-headed Rāvana with their sovereignty. And Rāvana capable of assuming any form at will, and terrible in prowess, and capable also of passing through the air, attacked the gods and the *Daityas* and wrested from them all their valuable possessions. And as he had terrified all creatures, he was called *Rāvana*. And Rāvana, capable of mustering any measure of might, inspired the very gods with terror.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and seventy-fourth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXV.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'Then the *Brahmarshis*, the *Siddhas*, and the *Devarshis*, with *Havyavāha* as their spokesman, sought the protection of Brahmā. And Agni said,—That powerful son of Viçravā, the Ten-headed, cannot be slain on account of thy boon! Endued with great might, he oppresseth in every possible way the creatures of the earth. Protect us, therefore, O adorable one! There is none save thee, to protect us!—'

'Brahmā said.—O Agni, *he* cannot be conquered in battle by either the gods or the *Asuras!* I have already ordained

that which is needful for that purpose. Indeed, his death is near! Urged by me, the four-headed God hath already been incarnate for that object. Even Vishnu, that foremost of smiters, will achieve that object!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Then the grandsire also addressed Sakra in their presence, saying,—Be thou, with all the celestials, born on earth! And beget ye on monkeys and bears heroic sons possessed of great strength and capable of assuming any form at will, as allies of Vishnu!—And at this, the gods, the *Gandharvas*, and the *Dānavas* quickly assembled to take counsel as to how they should be born on earth according to their respective parts. And in their presence the boon-giving god commanded a *Gandharvi*, by name Dundubhi, saying,—Go there for accomplishing this object!—And Dundubhi, hearing these words of the grandsire, was born in the world of men as the hunch-backed *Mantharā*. And all the principal celestials, with Sakra and others, begot offspring upon the wives of the foremost of monkeys and bears. And those sons equalled their sires in strength and fame. And they were capable of splitting mountain peaks and their weapons were stones and trees of the *Sāla* and the *Tāla* spicies. And their bodies were hard as adamant, and they were possessed of very great strength. And they were all skilled in war and capable of mustering any measure of energy at will. And they were equal to a thousand elephants in might, and they resembled the wind in speed. And some of them lived wherever they liked, while others lived in forests. And the adorable Creator of the Universe, having ordained all this, instructed *Mantharā* as to what she would have to do. And Mantharā, quick as thought, understood all his words, and went hither and thither ever engaged in fomenting quarrels.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and seventy-fifth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXVI.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said.—'O adorable one, thou hast described to me in detail the history of the birth of Rāma and others. I wish to learn the cause of their exile. Do thou, O Brāhmana, relate why the sons of Daçaratha—the brothers Rāma and Lakshmana—went to the forest with the famous princess of Mithilā.'

"Mārkandeya said.—'The pious king Daçaratha, ever mindful of the old, and assiduous in religious ceremonies, was greatly pleased when these sons were born. And his sons gradually grew up in might and they became conversant with the *Vedas* together with all their mysteries, and with the science of arms. And when, after having gone through the *Brahmacharya* vows, the princes were married, king Daçaratha became happy and highly pleased. And the intelligent Rāma, the eldest of them all, became the favorite of his father, and greatly pleased the people with his charming ways. And then, O Bhārata, the wise king, considering himself old in years, took counsel with his virtuous ministers and spiritual advisers for installing Rāma as regent of the kingdom. And all those great ministers were agreed that it was time to do so. And, O scion of Kuru's race, king Daçaratha was greatly pleased to behold his son,—that enchancer of Kauçalyā's delight—possessed of eyes that were red, and arms that were sinewy. And his steps were like those of a wild elephant. And he had long arms, and high shoulders, and black and curly hair. And he was valiant, and glowing with splendour, and not inferior to Indra himself in battle. And he was well-versed in holy writ and was equal unto Vrihaspati in wisdom. An object of love with all the people, he was skilled in every science. And with senses under complete control, his very enemies were pleased to behold him. And he was the terror of the wicked and the protector of the virtuous. And possessed of intelligence and incapable of being baffled, he was victorious over all and never vanquished by any. And, O descendant of Kuru's race,

beholding his son—that enchancer of Kauçalyā's joy—king Daçaratha became highly pleased. And reflecting on Rāma's virtues, the powerful and mighty king cheerfully addressed the family priest, saying,—Blessed be thou, O Brāhmana! This night of the *Pushya* constellation will bring in a very auspicious conjunction. Let, therefore, materials be collected and let Rāma also be invited. This *Pushya* constellation will last till tomorrow. And Rāma, therefore, should be invested by me and my ministers as prince-regent of all my subjects!—

'Meanwhile Mantharā (the maid of Kaikeyi), hearing these words of the king, went to her mistress, and spoke unto her as was suited to the occasion.—And she said,—Thy great ill-luck, O Kaikeyi, hath this day been proclaimed by the king! O unlucky one, mayst thou be bitten by a fierce and enraged snake of virulent poison! Kauçalyā, indeed, is fortunate, as it is her son that is going to be installed on the throne. Where, indeed, is thy prosperity, when thy son obtaineth not the kingdom?—'

'Hearing these words of her maid, the slender-waisted and beautiful Kaikeyi put on all her ornaments, and sought her husband in a secluded place. And with a joyous heart, and smiling pleasantly, she addressed these words to him with all the blandishments of love,—O king, thou art always true to thy promises. Thou didst promise before to grant me an object of my desire. Do thou fulfil that promise now and save thyself from the sin of an unredeemed pledge!—The king replied, saying,—I will grant thee a boon. Ask thou whatever thou wishest! What man undeserving of death shall be slain today and who that deserves death is to be set at liberty? Upon whom shall I bestow wealth today, or whose wealth shall be confiscated? Whatever wealth there is in this world save what belongeth to Brāhmanas is mine! I am the king of kings in this world, and the protector of all the four classes! Tell me quickly, O blessed lady, what that object is upon which thou hast set thy heart!—Hearing these words of the king, and tying him fast to his pledge, and conscious also of her power over him, she addressed him in these words,—I desire that Bharata be the recepient of that investiture which

thou hast designed for Rāma, and let Rāma go into exile living in the forest of *Dandaka* for fourteen years as an ascetic with matted locks on head and robed in rags and deer-skins !—Hearing these disagreeable words of cruel import, the king, O chief of the Bharata race, was sorely afflicted and became utterly speechless ! But the mighty and virtuous Rāma, learning that his father had been thus solicited, went into the forest, so that the king's truth might remain inviolate. And, blessed be thou, he was followed by the auspicious Lakshmana —that foremost of bowmen, and his wife Sitā, the princess of Videha and daughter of Janaka. And after Rāma had gone into the forest, king Daçaratha took leave of his body, agreeably to the eternal law of time. And knowing that Rāma was not near, and that the king was dead, queen Kaikeyi, causing Bharata to be brought before her, addressed him in these words, —Daçaratha hath gone to heaven, and both Rāma and Lakshmana are in the forest ! Take thou this kingdom which is so extensive and whose peace there is no rival to disturb.—Thereupon the virtuous Bharata replied unto her, saying,—Thou hast done a wicked deed, having slain thy husband and exterminated this family, from lust of wealth alone ! Heaping infamy on my head, O accursed woman of our race, thou hast, O mother, attained this thy object !—And having said these words, the prince wept aloud. And having proved his innocence before all the subjects of the realm, he set out in the wake of Rāma, desiring to bring him back. And placing Kauçalyā and Sumitrā and Kaikeyi in vehicles at the van of his train, he proceeded with a heavy heart, in company with Satrughna. And he was accompanied by Vaçishtha and Vāmadeva and other Brāhmanas by thousands, and by the people of the cities and the provinces, desiring to bring back Rāma. And he saw Rāma with Lakshmana, living on the mountains of *Chitrakuta*, with bow in hand and decked with the ornaments of ascetics. Bharata, however, was dismissed by Rāma, who was determined to act according to the words of his father. And returning, Bharata ruled at Nandigrāma, keeping before him, his brother's shoes. And Rāma fearing a repetition of intrusion by the people of Ayodhyā, en-

tered into the great forest towards the asylum of Sarabhanga. And having paid his respects to Sarabhanga, he entered the forest of *Dandaka* and took up his abode on the banks of the beautiful river *Godāvari*. And while living there, Rāma was inveigled into hostilities with Khara, then dwelling in Janasthāna, on account of Surpanakhā. And for the protection of the ascetics, the virtuous scion of Raghu's race slew fourteen thousand Rākshasas on earth. And having slain those mighty Rākshasas, Khara and Dushana, the wise descendant of Raghu once more made that sacred forest free from danger.

'And after those Rākshasas had been slain, Surpanakhā with mutilated nose and lips, repaired to Lankā—the abode of her brother (Rāvana). And when that Rākshasa woman, senseless with grief and with dry blood-stains on her face, appeared before Rāvana, she fell down at his feet. And beholding her so horridly mutilated, Rāvana became senseless with wrath, and grinding his teeth, sprung up from his seat. And dismissing his ministers, he enquired of her in private, saying, —Blessed sister, who hath made thee so, forgetting and disregarding me? Who is he that having got a sharp-pointed spear, hath rubbed his body with it? Who is he that sleepeth in happiness and security, after placing a fire close to his head? Who is he that hath trodden upon a vengeful snake of virulent poison? Who, indeed, is that person who standeth with his hand thrust into the mouth of the maned lion?—Then flames of wrath burst forth from his body, like those that are emitted at night from the hollows of a tree on fire. His sister then related unto him the prowess of Rāma and the defeat of the Rākshasas with Khara and Dushana at their head. Informed of the slaughter of his relatives, Rāvana, impelled by Fate, remembered Māricha for slaying Rāma. And resolving upon the course he was to follow, and having made arrangements for the government of his capital, he consoled his sister, and set out on an aerial voyage. And crossing the *Trikuta* and the *Kāla* mountains, he beheld the vast receptacle of deep waters —the abode of the *Makaras*.* Then crossing the Ocean, the

* Huge fabulous aquatic animals.

ten-headed Rāvana reached *Gokarna*—the favorite resort of the illustrious god armed with the trident. And there Rāvana met with his old friend Māricha, who, from fear of Rāma himself, had adopted an ascetic mode of life.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and seventy-sixth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXVII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said,—'Beholding Rāvana come, Māricha received him with a respectful welcome, and offered him fruits and roots. And after Rāvana had taken his seat, and rested himself awhile, Māricha, skilled in speech, sat beside Rāvana and addressed him who was himself as eloquent in speech, saying,—Thy complexion hath assumed an unnatural hue : is it all right with thy kingdom, O king of the Rākshasas ? What hath brought thee here ? Do thy subjects continue to pay thee the same allegiance that they used to pay thee before ? What business hath brought thee here ? Know that it is already fulfiled even if it be very difficult of fulfilment !—Rāvana, whose heart was agitated with wrath and humiliation, informed him briefly of the acts of Rāma and the measures that were to be taken. And on hearing his story, Māricha briefly replied to him, saying,—Thou must not provoke Rāma, for I know his strength ! Is there a person who is capable of withstanding the impetus of his arrows ? That great man hath been the cause of my assuming my present ascetic life. What evil-minded creature hath put thee up to this course calculated to bring ruin and destruction on thee ?—To this Rāvana indignantly replied, reproaching him thus :—If thou dost not obey my orders, thou shalt surely die at my hands.—Māricha then thought within himself,—When death is inevitable, I shall do his bidding ; for it is better to die at the hands of one that is superior !—Then he replied to the lord of the Rākshasas, saying,—I shall surely render thee whatever help I can !—Then the ten-headed Rāvana said unto him,—Go and tempt Sitā, assuming the shape of a deer with

golden horns and a golden skin! When Sitā will observe thee thus, she will surely send away Rāma to hunt thee. And then Sita will surely come within my power, and I shall forcibly carry her away. And then that wicked Rāma will surely die of grief at the loss of his wife. Do thou help me in this way!—

"'Thus addressed, Māricha performed his obsequies (in anticipation) and with a sorrowful heart, followed Rāvana, who was in advance of him. And having reached the hermitage of Rāma of difficult achievements, they both did as arranged before-hand. And Rāvana appeared in the guise of an ascetic with head shaven, and adorned with a *Kundala* and a treble staff. And Māricha appeared in the shape of a deer. And Māricha appeared before the princess of Videha in that guise. And impelled by fate, she sent away Rāma after that deer. And Rāma, with the object of pleasing her, quickly took up his bow, and leaving Lakshmana behind to protect her, went away in pursuit of that deer. And armed with his bow and quiver and scimitar, and his fingers encased in gloves of *Iguana* skin, Rāma went in pursuit of that deer, after the manner of Rudra following the stellar deer* in days of yore. And that Rākshasa enticed away Rāma to a great distance by appearing before him at one time and disappearing from his view at another. And when Rāma at last knew who and what that deer was, *viz.*, that he was a *Rākshasa*, that illustrious descendant of Raghu's race took out an infallible arrow and slew that Rākshasa in the disguise of a deer. And struck with Rāma's arrow, the Rākshasa, imitating Rāma's voice, cried out in great distress, calling upon Sitā and Lakshmana. And when the princess of Videha heard that cry of distress, she was for running towards the quarter from whence the cry came. Then Lakshmana said to her,—Timid lady, thou hast no cause of fear! Who is so powerful as

---

* *Tārā-mrigam.* Formerly Prajāpati, assuming the form of a deer, followed his daughter from lust, and Rudra, armed with a trident, pursued Prajāpati and struck off his head. That deer-head of Prajāpati severed from the trunk, became the star, or rather constellation, called *Mrigaçiras.*—*T.*

to be able to smite Rāma ? O thou of sweet smiles, in a moment thou wilt behold thy husband Rāma !—Thus addressed, the chaste Sitā, from that timidity which is natural to women, became suspicious of even the pure Lakshmana, and began to weep aloud. And that chaste lady, devoted to her husband, harshly reproved Lakshmana, saying,—The object which thou, O fool, cherishest in thy heart, shall never be fulfiled ! I would rather kill myself with a weapon or throw myself from the top of a hill or enter into a blazing fire than live with a sorry wretch like thee, forsaking my husband Rāma, like a tigress under the protection of a jackal !—

'When the good-natured Lakshmana, who was very fond of his brother, heard these words, he shut his ears (with his hands) and set out on the track that Rāma had taken. And Lakshmana set out without casting a single glance on that lady with lips soft and red like the *Bimba* fruit. Meanwhile, the Rākshasa Rāvana, wearing a genteel guise though wicked at heart, and like unto a fire enveloped in a heap of ashes, showed himself there. And he appeared there in the disguise of a hermit, for forcibly carrying away that lady of blameless character. The virtuous daughter of Janaka, seeing him come, welcomed him with fruits and roots and a seat. Disregarding these and assuming his own proper shape, that bull among Rākshasas began to reassure the princess of Videha in these words,—I am, O Sitā, the king of the Rākshasas, known by the name of Rāvana! My delightful city known by the name of Lankā, is on the other side of the great ocean ! There among beautiful women, thou wilt shine with me ! O lady of beautiful lips, forsaking the ascetic Rāma, do thou become my wife !—Janaka's daughter of beautiful lips, hearing these and other words in the same strain, shut her ears and replied unto him, saying,—Do not say so ! The vault of heaven with all its stars may fall down, the Earth itself may be broken into fragments, fire itself may change its nature by becoming cool, yet I cannot forsake the descendant of Raghu ! How can a she-elephant, who hath lived with the mighty leader of a herd with rent temples, forsake him and live with a hog ? Having once tasted the sweet wine prepared from honey

or flowers, how can a woman, I fancy, relish the wretched arrack from rice ?—Having uttered these words, she entered the cottage, her lips trembling in wrath and her arms moving to and fro in emotion. Rāvana, however, followed her thither and intercepted her further progress. And rudely scolded by the Rākshasa, she swooned away. But Rāvana seized her by the hair of her head, and rose up into the air. Then a huge vulture of the name of Jatāyu living on a mountain peak, beheld that helpless lady thus weeping and calling upon Rāma in great distress while being carried away by Rāvana.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and seventy-seventh Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

Section CCLXXVIII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said.—'That heroic king of the vultures, Jatāyu, having Sampāti for his uterine brother and Aruna himself for his father, was a friend of Daçaratha's. And beholding his daughter-in-law Sitā on the lap of Rāvana, that ranger of the skies rushed in wrath against the king of the Rākshasas. And the vulture addressed Rāvana, saying,—Leave the princess of Mithilā: leave her, I say! How canst thou, O Rākshasa, ravish her when I am alive ? If thou dost not release my daughter-in-law, thou shalt not escape from me with life !—And having said these words, Jatāyu began to tear the king of the Rākshasas with his talons. And he mangled him in a hundred different parts of his body by striking him with his wings and beaks. And blood began to flow as copiously from Rāvana's body as water from a mountain-spring. And attacked thus by that vulture desirous of Rāma's good, Rāvana, taking up a sword, cut off the two wings of that bird. And having slain that king of the vultures, huge as a mountain-peak shooting forth above the clouds, the Rākshasa rose high in the air with Sitā on his lap. And the princess of Videha, wherever she saw an asylum of ascetics, a lake, a river, or a tank, threw down an ornament of hers. And beholding on the top of a mountain five foremost of monkeys,

that intelligent lady threw down amongst them a broad piece of her costly attire. And that beautiful and yellow piece of cloth fell, fluttering through the air, amongst those five foremost of monkeys like lightning from the clouds. And that Rākshasa soon passed a great way through the firmament like a bird through the air. And soon the Rākshasa beheld his delightful and charming city of many gates, surrounded on all sides by high walls and built by Viçwakrit himself. And the king of the Rākshasas then entered his city known by the name of Lankā, accompanied by Sitā.

"'And while Sitā was being carried away, the intelligent Rāma, having slain the great deer, retraced his steps and saw his brother Lakshmana (on the way). And beholding his brother, Rāma reproved him, saying,—How couldst thou come hither, leaving the princess of Videha in a forest that is haunted by the Rākshasas?—And reflecting on his own enticement to a great distance by that Rākshasa in the guise of a deer and on the arrival of his brother (leaving Sitā alone in the asylum), Rāma was filled with agony. And quickly advancing towards Lakshmana while reproving him still, Rāma asked him, —O Lakshmana, is the princess of Videha still alive? I fear she is no more!—Then Lakshmana told him everything about what Sitā had said, especially that unbecoming language of hers subsequently. With a burning heart, Rāma then ran towards the asylum. And on the way he beheld a vulture, huge as a mountain, lying in the agonies of death. And suspecting him to be a Rākshasa, the descendant of the Kakutstha race, along with Lakshmana, rushed towards him, drawing with great force his bow to a circle. The mighty vulture, however, addressing them both, said,—Blessed be ye, I am the king of the vultures, and friend of Daçaratha!—Hearing these words of his, both Rāma and his brother put aside their excellent bows, and said,—Who is this one that speaketh the name of our father in these woods?—And then they saw that creature to be a bird destitute of two wings. And that bird then told them of his own overthrow at the hands of Rāvana for the sake of Sitā. Then Rāma enquired of the vulture as to the way Rāvana had taken. The vulture answered him

by a nod of the head and then breathed his last. And having understood from the sign the vulture had made that, Rāvana had gone towards the south, Rāma, reverencing his father's friend, caused his funeral obsequies to be duly performed. Then those chastisers of foes, Rāma and Lakshmana, filled with grief at the abduction of the princess of Videha, took a southerly path through the Dandaka woods, beholding along their way many uninhabited asylums of ascetics, scattered over with seats of *Kuça* grass and umbrellas of leaves and broken water-pots, and abounding with hundreds of jackals. And in that great forest, Rāma along with Sumitrā's son beheld many herds of deer running in all directions. And they heard a loud uproar of various creatures like what is heard during a fast-spreading forest conflagration. And soon they beheld a headless Rākshasa of terrible mein. And that Rākshasa was dark as the clouds and huge as a mountain, with shoulders broad as those of a *Sāla* tree, and with arms that were gigantic. And he had a pair of large eyes on his breast, and the opening of his mouth was large and was placed on his capacious belly. And the Rākshasa seized Lakshmana by the hand, without any difficulty. And seized by the Rākshasa, the son of Sumitrā, O Bhārata, became utterly confounded and helpless. And casting his glances on Rāma, that headless Rākshasa began to draw Lakshmana towards that part of his body where his mouth was. And Lakshmana in grief addressed Rāma, saying,—Behold my plight! The loss of thy kingdom, and then the death of our father, and then the abduction of Sitā, and finally this disaster that hath overwhelmed me! Alas, I shall not behold thee return with the princess of Videha to Koçala and seated on thy ancestral throne as the ruler of the entire Earth! They only that are fortunate will behold thy face, like unto the moon emerged from the clouds, after thy coronation bath in water sanctified with *Kuça* grass and fried paddy and black pease!*—And the intelli-

* It would seem that the water used in the coronation-bath was poured on the head, after the scattering of *Kuça* grass, fried paddy, and back pease all around.—*T.*

gent Lakshmana uttered those and other lamentations in the same strain. The illustrious descendant, however, of Kakutstha's race, undaunted amid danger, replied unto Lakshmana, saying,—Do not, O tiger among men, give way to grief! What is this thing when I am here? Cut thou off his right arm and I shall cut off his left.—And while Rāma was still speaking so, the left arm of the monster was severed by him, cut off with a sharp scimitar, as if, indeed, that arm were a stalk of the *Tila corn.** The mighty son of Sumitrā then, beholding his brother standing before him, struck off with his sword the right arm also of that Rākshasa. And Lakshmana also began to repeatedly strike the Rākshasa under the ribs, and then that huge headless monster fell upon the ground and expired quickly. And then there came out from the Rākshasa's body a person of celestial make. And he showed himself to the brothers, staying for a moment in the skies, like the Sun in his effulgence in the firmament. And Rāma skilled in speech, asked him, saying,—Who art thou? Answer *me* who enquire of thee! Whence could such a thing happen? All this seems to me to be exceedingly wonderful!—Thus addressed by Rāma, that being replied unto him, saying,—I am, O prince, a Gandharva of the name of Viçwāvasu! It was through the curse of a Brāhmana that I had to assume the form and nature of a Rākshasa. As to thyself, O Rāma, Sitā hath been ravished by king Rāvana who dwelleth in Lankā. Repair thou unto Sugriva who will give thee his friendship. There, near enough to the peak of *Rishyamuka* is the lake known by the name of *Pampā* of sacred water and abounding with swans and cranes. There dwelleth, with four of his counsellors, Sugriva, the brother of the monkey-king Vāli decked with a garland of gold. Repairing unto him, inform him of thy cause of sorrow. In plight very much like thy own, he will render thee assistance. This is all that we can say. Thou wilt, without doubt, see the daughter of Janaka! Without doubt,

---

* *Tilakāndam*—probably, a reed of a particular kind. I have adhered, however, to the grammatical meaning.

Rāvana and others are known to the king of the monkeys !—Having said these words, that celestial being of great effulgence made himself invisible, and those heroes, both Rāma and Lakshmana, wondered much.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and seventy-eighth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXIX.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said.—'Afflicted with grief at the abduction of Sitā, Rāma had not to go much further before he came upon Pampā—that lake which abounded with lotuses of various kinds. And fanned by the cool, delicious, and fragrant breezes in those woods, Rāma suddenly remembered his dear spouse. And, O mighty monarch, thinking of that dear wife of his, and afflicted at the thought of his separation from her, Rāma gave way to lamentations. The son of Sumitrā then addressed him, saying,—O thou that givest proper respect to those that deserve it, despondency such as this should not be suffered to approach thee, like illness that can never touch an old man leading a regular life! Thou hast obtained information of Rāvana and of the princess of Videha! Liberate her now with exertion and intelligence! Let us now approach Sugriva, that foremost of monkeys, who is even now on the mountain-top! Console thyself, when I, thy disciple and slave and ally, am near!—And addressed by Lakshmana in these and other words of the same import, Rāma regained his own nature and attended to the business before him. And bathing in the waters of *Pampā* and offering oblations therewith unto their ancestors, both those heroic brothers, Rāma and Lakshmana, set out (for *Rishyamuka*). And arriving at *Rishyamuka* which abounded with fruits and roots and trees, those heroes beheld five monkeys on the top of the mountain-peak. And seeing them approach, Sugriva sent his counsellor, the intelligent Hanumān, huge as the Himavat-mountains, to receive them. And the brothers, having first exchanged words with Hanumān, approached

Sugriva. And then, O king, Rāma made friends with Sugriva. And when Rāma informed Sugriva of the object he had in view, Sugriva showed him the piece of cloth that Sitā had dropped among the monkeys, while being carried away by Rāvana. And having obtained from him those credentials, Rāma himself installed Sugriva—the foremost of monkeys—in sovereignty of all the monkeys of Earth. And Rāma also pledged himself to slay Vāli in battle. And, O king, Sugriva also pledged himself to bring back Sitā. And having come to that understanding and placing the fullest confidence in each other, they all repaired to *Kishkindhyā*, desirous of battle (with Vāli). And arriving at *Kishkindhyā*, Sugriva sent forth a loud roar deep as that of a cataract. And unable to bear that challenge, Vāli was for coming out, (but his wife) Tārā stood in his way, saying,—Himself endued with great strength, the way in which Sugriva is roaring, showeth, I ween, that he hath found assistance! It behoveth thee not, therefore, to go out!—Thus addressed by her, that king of the monkeys, the eloquent Vāli, decked in a golden garland, replied unto Tārā of face beautiful as the moon,* saying,—Thou understandest the voice of every creature. Tell me after reflection whose help it is that this brother in name only of mine hath obtained!—Thus addressed by him, Tārā endued with wisdom, and possessed of the effulgence of the moon, answered her lord after a moment's reflection, saying,—Listen, O monarch of all the monkeys! That foremost of bowmen endued with great might, Rāma the son of Daçaratha, whose spouse hath been ravished, hath made an alliance offensive and defensive with Sugriva! And his brother the intelligent Lakshmana also of mighty arms, the unvanquished son of Sumitrā, standeth beside him for the success of Sugriva's object. And Mainda and Dwivida, and Hanumān the son of *Pavana*,† and Jāmbhubān the king of the bears, are beside Sugriva as his

---

* *Tārām tārādhipānanām.* It is impossible to show in a translation the harmony and alliterative collocation of the Sanskrit. Lit.—"Of face like that of the lord of the stars."—*T.*

† There are many names by which the Wind-god is known.

counsellors. All these illustrious ones are endued with great strength and intelligence. And these all, depending upon the might and energy of Rāma, are prepared for thy destruction! —Hearing these words of hers that were for his benefit, the king of the monkeys disregarded them altogether. And filled with jealousy, he also suspected her to have set her heart on Sugriva! And addressing Tārā in harsh words, he went out of his cave, and coming before Sugriva who was staying by the side of the mountains of Mālyavat, he spoke unto him thus, —Frequently vanquished before by me, fond as thou art of life, thou art allowed by me to escape with life owing to thy relationship with me! What hath made thee wish for death so soon?—Thus addressed by Vāli, Sugriva, that slayer of foes, as if addressing Rāma himself for informing him of what had happened, replied unto his brother in these words of grave import:—O king, robbed by thee of my wife and my kingdom also, what need have I of life? Know that it is for this that I have come!—Then addressing each other in these and other words of the same import, Vāli and Sugriva rushed to the encounter, fighting with *Sāla* and *Tāla* trees and stones. And they struck each other down on the earth. And leaping high into the air, they struck each other with their fists. And mangled by each other's nails and teeth, both of them were covered with blood. And the two heroes shone on that account like a pair of blossoming *Kinçukas.** And as they fought with each other, no difference (in aspect) could be observed so as to distinguish them. Then Hanumān placed on Sugriva's neck a garland of flowers. And that hero thereupon shone with that garland on his neck, like the beautiful and huge peak of *Mālya* with its cloudy belt. And Rāma recognising Sugriva by that sign, then drew his foremost of huge bows, aiming at Vāli as his mark. And the twang of Rāma's bow resembled the roar of an engine. And Vāli, pierced in the heart by that arrow, trembled in fear. And Vāli, his heart having been pierced through, began to vomit forth blood. And he then beheld standing before him Rāma

* Called also *Palāça.*

with Sumitrā's son by his side. And reproving that descendant of Kakutstha's race, Vāli fell down on the ground and became senseless. And Tārā then beheld that lord of hers possessed of the effulgence of the moon, lying prostrate on the bare earth. And after Vāli had been thus slain, Sugriva regained possession of Kishkindhyā, and along with it, of the widowed Tārā also of face beautiful as the Moon. And the intelligent Rāma also dwelt on the beautiful breast of the Mālyavat hills for four months, duly worshipped by Sugriva all the while.

"'Meanwhile Rāvana excited by lust, having reached his city of Lankā, placed Sitā in an abode, resembling *Nandana* itself, within a forest of *Açokas* that looked like an asylum of ascetics. And the large-eyed Sitā passed her days there in distress, living on fruits and roots, practising ascetic austerities with fasts, attired in ascetic garb, and waning thin day by day, thinking of her absent lord. And the king of the *Rākshasas* appointed many *Rākshasa* women armed with bearded darts and swords and lances and battle-axes and maces and flaming brands, for guarding her. And some of these had two eyes, and some three. And some had eyes on their foreheads. And some had long tongues and some had none. And some had three breasts, and some had only one leg. And some had three matted braids on their heads, and some had only one eye. And these and others of blazing eyes and hair stiff as the camel's, stood beside Sitā surrounding her day and night most watchfully. And those *Piçācha* women of frightful voice and terrible aspect always addressed that large-eyed lady in the harshest tones. And they said,—Let us eat her up, let us mangle her, let us tear her into pieces,—her, that is, that dwelleth here disregarding our lord!—And filled with grief at the separation from her lord, Sitā drew a deep sigh and answered those *Rākshasa* women, saying,—Reverend ladies, eat me up without delay! I have no desire to live without that husband of mine, of eyes like lotus-leaves and locks wavy, and blue in hue! Truly I will, without food and without the least love of life, emaciate my limbs, like a she-snake (hybernating) within a *Tāla* tree. Know this for certain that I will never

seek the protection of any other person than the descendant of Raghu. And knowing this, do what ye think fit !—And hearing these words of hers, those *Rākshasis* with dissonant voice went to the king of the *Rākshasas*, for representing unto him all she had said. And when those *Rākshasis* had gone away, one of their number known by the name of Trijatā, who was virtuous and agreeable in speech, began to console the princess of Videha. And she said,—Listen, O Sitā ! I will tell thee something ! O friend, believe in what I say ! O thou of fair hips, cast off thy fears, and listen to what I say ! There is an intelligent and old chief of the *Rākshasas* known by the name of Avindhya. He always seeketh Rāma's good and hath told me these words for thy sake !—*Reassuring and cheering her, tell Sitā in my name, saying,—Thy husband the mighty Rāma is well and is waited upon by Lakshmana. And the blessed descendant of Raghu hath already made friends with Sugriva, the king of the monkeys, and is ready to act for thee ! And, O timid lady, entertain thou no fear on account of Rāvana, who is censured by the whole world, for, O daughter, thou art safe from him on account of Nalakuvara's curse !* Indeed, this wretch had been cursed before for his having violated his daughter-in-law, Rambhā. This lustful wretch is not able to violate any woman by force. Thy husband will soon come, protected by Sugriva and with the intelligent son of Sumitrā in his train, and will soon take thee away hence ! O lady, I have had a most terrible dream of evil omen, indicating the destruction of this wicked-minded wretch of Pulastya's race ! This night-wanderer of mean deeds is, indeed, most wicked and cruel. He inspireth terror in all by the defects of his nature and the wickedness of his conduct. And deprived of his sense by Fate, he challengeth the very gods. In my vision I have seen every indication of his down-fall. I have seen the Ten-headed, with his crown shaven and body besmeared with oil, sunk in mire, and the next moment dancing on a chariot drawn by mules. I have seen Kumbhakarna and others, perfectly naked and with crowns shaven, decked with red wreaths and unguents, and running towards the southern direction. Vibhishana alone, with um-

brella over his head, and graced with a turban, and with body decked with white wreaths and unguents, I beheld ascending the summit of the White hill. And I saw four of his counsellors also, decked with white wreaths and unguents, ascending the summit of that hill along with him. All this bodeth that these alone will be saved from the impending terror. The whole earth with its oceans and seas will be enveloped with Rāma's arrows. O lady, thy husband will fill the whole earth with his fame. I also saw Lakshmana, consuming all directions (with his arrows) and ascending on a heap of bones and drinking thereon honey and rice boiled in milk. And thou, O lady, hast been beheld by me running towards a northerly direction, weeping and covered with blood and protected by a tiger! And, O princess of Videha, soon wilt thou find happiness, being united, O Sitā, with thy lord, that descendant of Raghu, accompanied by his brother!—Hearing these words of *Trijatā*, that girl with eyes like those of a young gazelle, once more began to entertain hopes of a union with her lord. And when at last those fierce and cruel *Piçācha* guards came back, they saw her sitting with *Trijatā* as before.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and seventy-ninth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXX.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'And while the chaste Sitā was dwelling there afflicted with melancholy and grief on account of her lord, attired in mean garb, with but a single jewel (on the marital thread on her wrist), and incessantly weeping, seated on a stone, and waited upon by Rākshasa women, Rāvana, afflicted by the shafts of the god of desire, came to see her and approached her presence. And inflamed by desire, that conquerer in battle of the gods, the *Dānavas*, the *Gandharvas*, the *Yakshas*, and the *Kimpurushas*, attired in celestial robes and possessing handsome features, decked with

jewelled ear-rings, and wearing a beautiful garland and crown, entered the *Açoka* woods, like an embodiment of the vernal season. And dressed with care, Rāvana looked like the *Kalpa* tree in Indra's garden. But though adorned with every embellishment, that hero inspired only awe, like a beautified banian in the midst of a cemetery. And that night-wanderer, having approached the presence of that slender-waisted lady, looked like the planet Saturn in the presence of *Rohini*.* And smitten with the shafts of the god of the flowery emblem,† he accosted that fair-hipped lady then affrighted like a helpless doe, and told her these words :—Thou hast, O Sitā, shown thy regard for thy lord too much ! O thou of delicate limbs, be merciful unto me ! Let thy person be embellished now (by these maids in waiting). O excellent lady, accept me as thy lord ! And, O thou of the most beautiful complexion, attired in costly robes and ornaments, take thou the first place among all the women of my household ! Many are the daughters of the celestials and also of the *Gandharvas* that I possess ! I am lord also of many *Dānava* and *Daitya* ladies ! One hundred and forty millions of *Piçāchas*, twice as many man-eating Rākshasas of terrible deeds, and thrice as many *Yakshas*, do my bidding ! Some of these are under the sway of my brother who is the lord of all treasures ! In my drinking-hall, O excellent lady of beautiful thighs, *Gandharvas* and *Apsaras* wait on me as they do on my brother ! I am, again, the son of that regenerate *Rishi* Viçravas himself of high ascetic merit. I am renowned, again, as the fifth Regent of the Universe !‡ And,

---

* Saturn, or more properly, *Sani*, is represented in Hindu mythology as a grim monster, while the constellation called *Rohini* is supposed to be a beautiful female owned as wife by the moon.—*T.*

† *Pushpaketu*, *Kāma*, *Kandarpa*, are some of the names by which the Hindu Cupid is known. Owing to the abundance of synonyms in Sanskrit, the same idea is capable of being repeated without the ear being at all displeased within the course of these few lines : the expression, "afflicted with the shafts of the god of desire" occurs thrice, but each time in different form.—*T.*

‡ There are four principal ones, according to the four cardinal directions. Rāvana was, in consideration of his power, looked upon as the fifth.—*T.*

O beautiful lady, of food and edibles and drinks of the very best kind, I have as much as the Lord himself of the celestials! Let all thy troubles consequent on a life in the woods cease! O thou of fair hips, be my Queen, as Mandodari herself!—Thus addressed by him, the beautiful princess of Videha, turning away and regarding him as something less than a straw,* replied unto that wanderer of the night. And at that time the princess of Videha, that girl of beautiful hips, had her deep and compact bosom copiously drenched by her inauspicious tears shed ceaselessly. And she who regarded her husband as her god, answered that mean wretch, saying,—By sheer ill-luck it is, O king of the Rākshasas, that I am obliged to hear such words of grievous import spoken by thee! Blessed be thou, O Rākshasa fond of sensual pleasures, let thy heart be withdrawn from me! I am the wife of another, ever devoted to my husband, and, therefore, incapable of being possessed by thee! A helpless human being that I am, I cannot be a fit wife for thee! What joy can be thine by using violence towards an unwilling woman? Thy father is a wise Brāhmana, born of Brahmā and equal unto that Lord himself of the creation! Why dost thou not, therefore, thyself being equal to a Regent of the Universe, observe virtue? Disgracing thy brother, that king of the *Yakshas*, that adorable one who is the friend of Maheçwara himself, that lord of treasures, how is it that thou feelest no shame?—Having said these words, Sitā began to weep, her bosom shivering in her agitation, and covering her neck and face with her garments. And the long and well-knit braid, black and glossy, falling from the head of the weeping lady, looked like a black snake. And hearing these cruel words uttered by Sitā, the foolish Rāvana, although thus rejected, addressed Sitā once

* It is a matter of some surprise that almost all the Bengalee translators have misunderstood the expression,—*Trinamantaratas Kritwā*, although it is almost a proverb. Even the Burdwan Pundits, who are generally very careful, have not been correct. There is no difference of reading to be observed in any of the texts. The erroneous rendering to which I allude is,—*Hiding her face behind the grass.—T.*

more, saying,—O lady, let the god having the *Makara* for his emblem burn me sorely. I will, however, on no account, O thou of sweet smiles and beautiful hips, approach thee, as thou art unwilling! What can I do to thee that still feelest a regard for Rāma who is only a human being and, therefore, our food?—Having said these words unto that lady of faultless features, the king of the Rākshasas made himself invisible then and there and went away to the place he liked. And Sitā, surrounded by those Rākshasa women, and treated with tenderness by *Trijatā*, continued to dwell there in grief.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and eightieth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXXI.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'Meanwhile the illustrious descendant of Raghu, along with his brother, hospitably treated by Sugriva, continued to dwell on the breast of the *Mālyavat* hill, beholding every day the clear blue sky. And one night, while gazing from the mountain-top on the bright moon in the cloudless sky, surrounded by planets and stars and stellar bodies, that slayer of foes was suddenly awakened (to a remembrance of Sitā) by the cold breezes fragrant with the perfumes of the lily, the lotus and other flowers of the same species. And the virtuous Rāma, dejected in spirits at the thought of Sitā's captivity in the abode of the Rākshasa, addressed the heroic Lakshmana in the morning saying,—Go, Lakshmana, and seek in Kishkindhyā that ungrateful king of the monkeys, who understands well his own interest and is even now indulging in dissipation, that foolish wretch of his race whom I have installed on a throne and to whom all apes and monkeys and bears own allegiance, that fellow for whose sake, O mighty-armed perpetuator of Raghu's race, Vāli was slain by me with thy help in the woods of Kishkindhyā! I regard that worst of monkeys on earth to be highly ungrateful; for, O Lakshmana, that wretch hath now forgotten me who am sunk in such distress. I think he is

unwilling to fulfil his pledge, disregarding, from dulness of understanding, one who hath done him such services! If thou findest him luke-warm and lolling in sensual joys, thou must then send him, by the path Vāli hath been made to follow, to the common goal of all creatures! If, on the other hand, thou seest that foremost of monkeys deligent in our cause, then, O descendant of Kakutstha, shouldst thou bring him hither with thee! Be quick, and delay not!—Thus addressed by his brother, Lakshmana ever attentive to the behests and welfare of his superiors, set out taking with him his handsome bow with string and arrows. And reaching the gates of Kishkindhyā, he entered the city unchallenged. And knowing him to be angry, the monkey-king advanced to receive him. And with his wife, Sugriva the king of the monkeys, with a humble heart, joyfully received him with due honors. And the dauntless son of Sumitrā then told him what Rāma had said. And having heard everything in detail, O mighty monarch, Sugriva the king of the monkeys, with his wife and servants, joined his hands, and cheerfully said unto Lakshmana, that elephant among men, these words:—I am, O Lakshmana, neither wicked, nor ungrateful, nor destitute of virtue! Hear as to the efforts I have made for finding out Sita's place of captivity! I have despatched diligent monkeys in all directions. All of them have stipulated to return within a month. They will, O hero, search the whole Earth with her forests and hills and seas, her villages and towns and cities and mines. Only five nights are wanting to complete that month, and then thou wilt, with Rāma, hear tidings of great joy!—

"'Thus addressed by that intelligent king of the monkeys, the high-souled Lakshmana became appeased, and he, in his turn, worshipped Sugriva. And accompanied by Sugriva, he returned to Rāma on the breast of the Mālyavat hill. And approaching him, Lakshmana informed him of the beginning already made in respect of his undertaking. And soon thousands of monkey-chiefs began to return, after having carefully searched the three quarters of the Earth, *viz.*, the North, the East, and the West. But they that had gone towards the

South did not make their appearance. And they that came back represented to Rāma, saying that although they had searched the whole Earth with her belt of seas, yet they could not find either the princess of Videha or Rāvana. But that descendant of Kakutstha's race, afflicted at heart, managed to live yet, resting his hopes (of hearing Sitā's tidings) on the great monkeys that had gone towards the South.

"'After the lapse of two months, several monkeys, seeking with haste the presence of Sugriva, addressed him, saying,—O king, that foremost of monkeys, the son of *Pavana*, as also Angada, the son of Vāli, and the other great monkeys whom thou hadst despatched to search the southern region, have come back and are pillaging that great and excellent orchard called *Madhuvana*, which was always guarded by Vāli and which hath been well guarded by thee also after him!—Hearing of this act of liberty on their part, Sugriva inferred the success of their mission, for it is only servants that have been crowned with success that can act in this way. And that intelligent and foremost of monkeys communicated his suspicions to Rāma. And Rāma also, from this, guessed that the princess of Mithilā had been seen. Then Hanumān and the other monkeys, having refreshed themselves thus, came towards their king, who was then staying with Rāma and Lakshmana. And, O Bhārata, observing the gait of Hanumān and the color of his face, Rāma was confirmed in the belief that Hanumān had really seen Sitā. Then those successful monkeys with Hanumān at their head, duly bowed unto Rāma and Lakshmana and Sugriva. And Rāma then, taking up his bow and quiver, addressed those monkeys, saying,—Have ye been successful? Will ye impart life unto me? Will ye once more enable me to reign in Ayodhyā after having slain my enemy in battle and rescued the daugher of Janaka? With the princess of Videha unrescued, and the foe unslain in battle, I dare not live, robbed of wife and honor!—Thus addressed by Rāma, the son of *Pavana* replied unto him, saying—I bring thee good news, O Rāma; for Janaka's daughter hath been seen by me. Having searched the southern region with all its hills, forests, and mines, for sometime, we became very weary,

At length we beheld a great cavern. And having beheld it, we entered that cavern which extended over many *Yojanas*. It was dark and deep and overgrown with trees and infested by worms. And having gone a great way through it, we came upon sun-shine and beheld a beautiful palace. It was, O Rāghava, the abode of the *Dāitya* Maya. And there we beheld a female ascetic named *Prabhāvati* engaged in ascetic austerities. And she gave us food and drink of various kinds. And having refreshed ourselves therewith and regained our strength, we proceeded along the way shown by her. At last we came out of the cavern and beheld the briny sea, and on its shores, the *Sahya*, the *Malaya*, and the great *Dardura* mountains. And ascending the mountains of *Malaya*, we beheld before us the vast ocean.* And beholding it we felt sorely grieved in mind. And dejected in spirits and afflicted with pain and famishing with hunger, we despaired of returning with our lives. Casting our eyes on the great ocean extending over many hundreds of *Yojanas* and abounding with whales and alligators and other aquatic animals, we became anxious and filled with grief. We then sat together, resolved to die there of starvation. And in course of conversation we happened to talk of the vulture Jatāyu. Just then we saw a bird huge as a mountain, of frightful form, and inspiring terror into every heart, like a second son of *Vinatā*.† And coming upon us unawares for devouring us, he said,—Who are ye that are speaking thus of my brother *Jatāyu ?* I am his elder brother, by name Sampāti, and am the king of birds. Once upon a time, we two, with the desire of outstripping each other, flew towards the sun. My wings got burnt, but those of Jatāyu were not. That was the last time I saw my beloved brother Jatāyu the king of vultures! My wings burnt, I fell down upon the top of this great mountain, where I still am !—When he finished speaking, we informed him of the death of his brother, in a few words, and also of this calamity that hath befallen

* Abode of Varuna, in the original.

† *Garuda.*

thee! And, O king, the powerful Sampāti hearing this unpleasant news from us, was greatly afflicted and again enquired of us, saying,—Who is this Rāma and why was Sitā ravished and how was Jatāyu slain? Ye foremost of monkeys, I wish to hear everything in detail!—We then informed him of everything about this calamity of thine and of the reason also of our vow of starvation. That king of birds then urged us (to give up our vow) by these words of his:—Rāvana is, indeed, known to me. Lankā is his capital. I behold it on the other side of the sea in a valley of the *Trikuta* hills! Sitā must be there. I have little doubt of this!—Hearing these words of his, we rose up quickly and began, O chastiser of foes, to take counsel of one another for crossing the ocean! And when no one dared to cross it, I, having recourse to my father,* crossed the great ocean, which is a hundred *Yojanas* in width. And having slain the Rākshasi on the waters, I saw the chaste Sitā within Rāvana's harem, observing fasts and ascetic austerities, eager to behold her lord, with matted locks on head, and body besmeared with filth, and lean, and melancholy, and helpless. Recognising her as Sitā by these unusual signs, and approaching that worshipful lady while alone, I said,—I am, O Sitā, an emissary of Rāma and a monkey begotten by *Pavana!** Desirous of having a sight of thee, hither have I come travelling through the skies! Protected by Sugriva, that monarch of all the monkeys, the royal brothers Rāma and Lakshmana are in peace! And Rāma, O lady, with Sumitrā's son, hath enquired of thy welfare! And Sugriva also, on account of his friendship (with Rāma and Lakshmana), enquireth of thy welfare. Followed by all the monkeys, thy husband will soon be here. Confide in me, O adorable lady: I am a monkey and not a *Rākshasa*!—Thus addressed by me, Sitā seemed to meditate for a moment and then replied to me, saying,—From the words of *Avindhya*, I know that thou art Hanumān! O mighty-armed one, Avindhya is an old and respected *Rākshasa*! He told me that Sugriva is surrounded by counsellors like thee. Thou mayst depart now!

---

* *Pavana* the god of wind.

—And with these words she gave me this jewel as a credential. And, indeed, it was by means of this jewel that the faultless Sitā had been able to support her existence. And the daughter of Janaka further told me, as a token from her, that by thee, O tiger among men, a blade of grass (inspired with *Mantras* and thus converted into a fatal weapon) had once been shot at a crow while ye were on the breast of the mighty hill known by the name of *Chitrakuta*! All this she said as evidence of my having met her and hers being really the princess of Videha. I then caused myself to be seized by Rāvana's soldiers, and then set fire to the city of Lankā!—

"'Hearing these words of his, Rāma then duly worshipped that messenger of good tidings who had come back (after all those adventures).'".

Thus ends the two hundred and eighty-first Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXXII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'It was to the breast of that very hill where Rāma was seated with those foremost of monkeys that great monkey chiefs, at the command of Sugriva, began to flock together. The father-in-law of Vāli, the illustrious Sushena, accompanied by a thousand crores of active apes, came to Rāma. And those two foremost of monkeys, endued with mighty energy, *viz*,. Gaya and Gavaya, each accompanied by a hundred crores of monkeys, showed themselves there. And, O king, Gavākshya also of terrible mien and endued with bovine tail, showed himself there, having collected sixty thousand crores of monkeys. And the renowned Gandhamādana, dwelling on the mountains of the same name, collected a hundred thousand crores of monkeys. And the intelligent and mighty monkey known by the name of Panasa mustered together fifty-two crores of monkeys.*

---

* There is a difference of reading here. Some texts read *fifty-seven.*

And that foremost and most illustrious of monkeys named Dadhimukha of mighty energy mustered a large army of monkeys possessed of terrible prowess. And Jāmvavān showed himself there with a hundred thousand crores of black bears of terrible deeds and faces having the *Tilaka* mark.* And these and many other chiefs of monkey-chiefs, countless in number, O king, came there for aiding Rāma's cause. And endued with bodies huge as mountain-peaks and roaring like lions, loud was the uproar that was heard there made by those monkeys running restlessly from place to place. And some of them looked like mountain-peaks, and some looked like buffalos. And some were of the hue of autumnal clouds and the faces of some were red as vermillion. And some rose high, and some fell down, and some cut capers, and some scattered the dust, as they mustered together from various directions. And that monkey army, vast as the sea at full tide, encamped there at Sugriva's bidding. And after those foremost of monkeys had mustered from every direction, the illustrious descendant of Raghu, with Sugriva by his side, set out in an auspicious moment of a very fair day under a lucky constellation, accompanied by that host arrayed in order of battle, as if for the purpose of destroying all the worlds. And Hanumān the son of the Wind-god was in the van of that host, while the rear was protected by the fearless son of Sumitrā. And surrounded by the monkey-chiefs, those princes of Raghu's house with fingers cased in *iguana* skin, shone, as they went, like the Sun and the Moon in the midst of the planets. And that monkey host armed with stones and *Shāla* and *Tāla* trees, looked very much like a far-extending field of corn under the morning sun. And that mighty army, protected by Nala and Nila and Angada and Krātha and Mainda and Dwivida, marched forth for achieving the purpose of Rāghava. And encamping successively, without interruption of any kind, on wide and healthy tracts and valleys abounding with fruits and roots and water and honey and meat, the monkey host at last reached the shores of the briny sea. And like unto a second ocean, that mighty army with its countless colors,

* A difference of reading is observable here.—*T.*

having reached the shores of the sea, took up its abode there. Then the illustrious son of Daçaratha, addressing Sugriva amongst all those foremost monkeys, spoke unto him these words that were suited to the occasion :—This army is large. The ocean also is difficult to cross. What contrivance, therefore, commends itself to thee for crossing the ocean ?—At these words, many vain-glorious monkeys answered,—We are fully able to cross the sea.—This answer, however, was not of much use, as all could not avail of that means. Some of the monkeys proposed to cross the sea in boats, and some in rafts of various kinds. Rāma, however, conciliating them all, said,—This cannot be. The sea here is a full hundred *Yojanas* in width. All the monkeys, ye heroes, will not be able to cross it. This proposal, therefore, that ye have made, is not consonant to reason. Besides, we have not the number of boats necessary for carrying all our troops. How, again, can one like us raise such obstacles in the way of the merchants ? Our army is very large. The foe will make a great havoc if a hole is detected. Therefore, to cross the sea in boats and rafts doth not recommend itslf to me. I will, however, pray to the Ocean for the necessary means. Foregoing food, I will lie down on the shore. He will certainly show himself to me. If, however, he doth not show himself, I will chastise him then by means of my great weapons that are more blazing than fire itself and are incapable of being baffled !—Having said these words, both Rāma and Lakshmana touched water* and duly laid themselves down on a bed of *Kuça* grass on the sea-shore. The divine and illustrious Ocean then, that lord of male and female rivers, surrounded by acquatic animals, appeared unto Rāma in a vision. And addressing Rāma in sweet accents, the genius of the Ocean, surrounded by countless mines of gems, said,—O son of Kauçalyā, tell me what aid, O bull among men, I am to render thee ! I also have sprung from the race of Ikshwāku† and am, therefore, a relative of

---

* As a purificatory ceremony, called the *Achāmana*. To this day, no Hindu can perform any ceremony without going through the *Achamana* in the first instance.—*T.*

† Tradition represents the sons of king *Sagara* of the Ikshwāku race as the excavator of the ocean. Hence the ocean is called *Sāgara*.

thine !—Rāma replied unto him, saying,—O lord of rivers male and female, I desire thee to grant me a way for my troops, passing along which I may slay the Ten-necked (*Rākshasa*), that wretch of Pulastya's race ! If thou dost not grant the way I beg of thee, I will then dry thee up by means of my celestial arrows inspired with *mantras* !—And hearing these words of Rāma, the genius of Varuna's abode, joining his hands, answered in great affliction,—I do not desire to put any obstacle in thy way. I am no foe of thine ! Listen, O Rāma, to these words, and having listened, do what is proper ! If, at thy command, I grant a way for the passage of thy army, others then, from strength of their bows, will command me to do the same ! In thy army there is a monkey of the name of Nala, who is a skilful mechanic. And endued with great strength, Nala is the son of *Tashtri*, the divine artificer of the Universe. And whether it is wood, or grass, or stone, that he will throw into my waters, I will support the same on my surface, and thus wilt thou have a bridge (over which to pass) !—And having said these words, the genius of the Ocean disappeared. And Rāma awaking, called Nala unto him and said,—Build thou a bridge over the sea ! Thou alone, I am sure, art able to do it !—And it was by this means that the descendant of Kakutstha's race caused a bridge to be built that was ten *Yojanas* in width and a hundred *Yojanas* in length. And to this day that bridge is celebrated over all the world by the name of *Nala's bridge.* And having completed that bridge, Nala, of body huge as a hill, came away at the command of Rāma.

"'And while Rāma was on this side of the ocean, the virtuous Vibhishana, the brother of the king of the *Rākshasas*, accompanied by four of his counsellors, came unto Rāma. And the high-souled Rāma received him with due welcome. Sugriva, however, feared, thinking he might be a spy. The son of Raghu, meanwhile, perfectly satisfied (with Vibhishana) in consequence of the sincerity of his exertions and the many indications of his good conduct, worshipped him with respect. And he also installed Vibhishana in the sovereignty of all the *Rākshasas*, and made him his own junior counsellor

and a friend of Lakshmana's. And it was under Vibhishana's guidance, O king, that Rāma with all his troops crossed the great ocean by means of that bridge in course of a month. And having crosssed the ocean and arrived at Lankā, Rāma caused its extensive and numerous gardens to be devastated by his monkeys. And while Rāma's troops were there, two of Rāvana's counsellors and officers, named Suka and Sārana, who had come as spies, having assumed the shape of monkeys, were seized by Vibhishana. And when those wanderers of the night assumed their real *Rākshasa* forms, Rāma showed them his troops and dismissed them quietly. And having quartered his troops in those woods that skirted the city, Rāma then sent the monkey Angada endued with great wisdom as his envoy to Rāvana.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and eighty-second Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXXIII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'Having quartered his army in those groves abounding with food and water and with fruits and roots, the descendant of Kakutstha began to watch over them with care. Rāvana, on the other hand, planted in his city many engines constructed according to the rules of military science. And his city, naturally impregnable on account of its strong ramparts and gate-ways, had its seven trenches, that were deep and full of water to the brim and that abounded with fishes and sharks and alligators, made more impregnable still by means of pointed stakes of *Khadira* wood. And the ramparts, heaped with stones, were made impregnable by means of catapults. And the warriors (who guarded the walls) were armed with earthen pots filled with venomous snakes, and with resinous powders of many kinds. And they were also armed with clubs and fire-brands and arrows and lances and swords and battle-axes,

And they had also *Sataghnis**, and stout maces steeped in wax.† And at all the gates of the city were planted movable and immovable encampments manned by large numbers of infantry supported by countless elephants and horses. And Angada, having reached one of the gates of the city, was made known to the king of the *Rākshasas*. And he entered the town without suspicion or fear. And surrounded by countless crores of Rākshasas, that hero shone in his beauty like the Sun himself in the midst of masses of clouds. And having approached the hero of Pulastya's race in the midst of his counsellors, the eloquent Angada saluted the king and began to deliver Rāma's message in these words: —That descendant of Raghu, O king, who ruleth at Koçala and whose renown hath spread over the whole world, sayeth unto thee these words suited to the occasion. Accept thou that message and act according to it!—Provinces and towns, in consequence of their connection with sinful kings incapable of controlling their souls, are themselves polluted and destroyed. By the violent abduction of Sitā, thou alone hast injured me! Thou, however, wilt become the cause of death to many unoffending persons. Possessed of power and filled with pride, thou hast, before this, slain many *Rishis* living in the woods, and insulted the very gods. Thou hast slain also many great kings and many weeping women. For those transgressions of thine, retribution is about to overtake thee! I will slay thee with thy counsellors. Fight and show thy courage!‡ O wanderer of the night, behold the power of my bow, although I am but a man! Release Sitā the daughter of Janaka! If thou dost not release her, I shall make the Earth divested of all *Rākshasas* with my keen-edg-

* *Lit.* an engine killing a hundred. Perhaps, some kind of rude cannon.—*T.*

† Perhaps, brands or torches steeped in wax, intended to be thrown in a burning state amongst the foe. Readers of Indian history know how Lord Lake was repulsed from Bhurtpore by means of huge bales of cotton, steeped in oil, rolled from the ramparts of that town, in a burning state, towards the advancing English.—*T.*

‡ *Lit.* Be a *Purusha* (male)! *Manhood* would not be appropriate in connection with a *Rakshasa*.—*T.*

ed arrows!—Hearing these defiant words of the envoy, king Rāvana bore them ill, becoming sensless with wrath. And thereupon four Rākshasas, skilled in reading every sign of their master, seized Angada like four hawks seizing a tiger. With those Rākshasas, however, holding him fast by his limbs, Angada leaped upwards and alighted on the palace terrace. And as he leaped up with great force, those wanderers of the night fell down upon the earth, and bruised by the violence of the fall, had their ribs broken. And from the golden terrace on which he had alighted, he took a downward leap. And overleaping the walls of Lankā, he alighted to where his comrades were. And approaching the presence of the lord of Koçala and informing him of everything, the monkey Angada endued with great energy retired to refresh himself, dismissed with due respect by Rāma.

"'The descendant of Raghu then caused the ramparts of Lankā to be broken down by a united attack of all those monkeys endued with the speed of the wind. Then Lakshmana, with Vibhishana and the king of the bears marching in the van, blew up the southern gate of the city that was almost impregnable. Rāma then attacked Lankā with a hundred thousand crores of monkeys, all possessed of great skill in battle, and endued with reddish complexions like those of young camels. And those crores of greyish bears with long arms, and legs, and huge paws, and generally supporting themselves on their broad haunches, were also urged on to support the attack. And in consequence of those monkeys leaping up and leaping down and leaping in transverse directions,* the Sun himself, his bright disc completely shaded, became invisible for the dust they raised. And the citizens of Lankā beheld the walls of their town assume all over a tawny hue, covered by monkeys of complexions yellow as the ears of paddy, and grey as *Siriska* flowers, and red as the rising Sun, and white as flax or hemp. And the Rākshasas, O king, with their wives and elders, were struck with wonder at that sight. And the monkey warriors began to pull down pillars made of

* The prefix *ni* as opposed to *ut* means (as the Burdwan Pundits have rightly rendered) "in a transverse direction."—*T.*

precious stones and the terraces and tops of palatial mansions. And breaking into fragments the propellors* of catapults and other engines, they began to cast them about in all directions. And taking up the *Sataghnis* along with the discs, the clubs, and the stones, they threw them down into the city with great force and loud noise. And attacked thus by the monkeys, those Rākshasas that had been placed on the wall to guard them, fled precipitately by hundreds and thousands.

" 'Then hundreds and thousands of Rākshasas of terrible mien, and capable of assuming any form at will, came out at the command of the king. And pouring a perfect shower of arrows and driving the denizens of the forest, those warriors, displaying great prowess, adorned the ramparts. And soon those wanderers of the night, looking like masses of flesh, and of terrible mien, forced the monkeys to leave the walls. And mangled by the enemy's lances, numerous monkey-chiefs fell down from the ramparts, and crushed by the falling columns and gateways, numerous Rākshasas also fell down to rise no more. And the monkeys and the brave Rākshasas that commenced to eat up the foe, struggled, seizing one another by the hair, and mangling and tearing one another with their nails and teeth. And the monkeys and the Rākshasas roared and yelled frightfully, and while many of both parties were slain and fell down to rise no more, neither side gave up the contest. And Rāma continued all the while to shower a thick downpour of arrows like the very clouds. And the arrows he shot, enveloping Lankā, killed large numbers of Rākshasas. And the son of Sumitrā too, that mighty bowman incapable of being fatigued in battle, naming particular Rākshasas stationed on the ramparts, slew them with his clothyard shafts. And then the monkey host, having achieved success, was withdrawn at the command of Rāma, after it had thus pulled down the fortifications of Lankā and made all objects within the city capable of being aimed at by the beseiging force.†' "

---

* Lit. horns, *i. e.* the posts and pistons that propel the heavy stones.

† *Pratyavahāra* is the withdrawal of a force from active operations, or a suspension of hostilities for giving rest to the troops.—*T.*

Thus ends the two hundred and eighty-third Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXXIV.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'And while those troops (thus withdrawn) were reposing themselves in their quarters, many little *Rākshasas* and *Piçāchas* owning Rāvana as their leader, penetrated amongst them. And among these were *Parvana, Patana, Jambha, Khara, Krodha-vasa, Hari, Praruja, Aruja, Praghasa,* and others. And as these wicked ones were penetrating (the monkey host) in their invisible forms, Vibhishana, who had the knowledge thereof, broke the spell of their invisibility. And once seen, O king, by the powerful and long-leaping monkeys, they were all slain and prostrated on the earth deprived of life. And unable to endure this, Rāvana marched out at the head of his troops. And surrounded by his terrible army of *Rākshasas* and *Piçāchas,* Rāvana who was conversant with the rules of warfare like a second *Uçanas,* invested the monkey host, having disposed his troops in that array which is named after Uçanas himself. And beholding Rāvana advancing with his army disposed in that array, Rāma, following the mode recommended by Vrihaspati, disposed his troops in counter array for opposing that wanderer of the night. And coming up quickly, Rāvana began to fight with Rāma. And Lakshmana singled out Indrajit, and Sugriva singled out Virupākshya. And Nikharvata fought with Tāra, and Nala with Tunda, and Patuça with Panasa. And each warrior, advancing up to him whom he regarded as his match, began to fight with him on that field of battle, relying on the strength of his own arms. And that encounter, so frightful to timid persons, soon became terrible and fierce* like that between the gods and the *Asuras* in days of old. And Rāvana covered Rāma with a shower

---

* Lit. horripilating.—*T.*

of darts and lances and swords, and Rāma also afflicted Rāvana with his whetted arrows of iron furnished with the sharpest points. And in the same way, Lakshmana smote the contending Indrajit with arrows capable of penetrating into the most vital parts, and Indrajit also smote Sumitrā's son with an arrowy shower. And Vibhishana showered upon Prahasta, and Prahasta showered upon Vibhishana, without any regard for each other, a thick downpour of winged arrows furnished with the sharpest points. And thus between those mighty warriors there came about an encounter of celestial weapons of great force, at which the three worlds with their mobile and immobile creatures were sorely distressed.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and eighty-fourth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXXV.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said.—'Then Prahasta, suddenly advancing up to Vibhishana and uttering a loud yell, struck him with his mace. But though struck with that mace of terrible force, the mighty-armed Vibhishana of great wisdom, without wavering in the least, stood still as the mountains of Himavat. Then Vibhishana, taking up a huge and mighty javelin furnished with a hundred bells, inspired it with *mantras* and hurled it at the head of his adversary. And by the impetuosity of that weapon rushing with the force of the thunderbolt, Prahasta's head was severed off, and he thereupon looked like a mighty tree broken by the wind. And beholding that wanderer of the night, Prahasta, thus slain in battle, Dhumrāksha rushed with great impetuosity against the monkey-host. And beholding the soldiers of Dhumrāksha, looking like the clouds and endued with terrible mien, advancing up towards them, the monkey-chiefs suddenly broke and fled. And seeing those foremost of monkeys suddenly give way, that tiger among monkeys, Hanumān, the son of Pavana, began to advance. And beholding the son of Pavana staying still on the field of battle, the retreating monkeys, O king, one

and all quickly rallied. Then mighty and great and fearful was the uproar that arose there in consequence of the warriors of Rāma and Rāvana rushing against each other. And in that battle which raged terribly, the field soon became miry with blood. And Dhumrāksha afflicted the monkey-host with volleys of winged shafts. Then that vanquisher of foes, Hanumān the son of Pavana, quickly seized that advancing leader of the Rākshasas. And the encounter that took place between that monkey and the Rākshasa hero, each desirous of defeating the other, was fierce and terrible, like that of Indra and Prahlāda (in days of yore). And the Rākshasa struck the monkey with his maces and spiked clubs, while the monkey struck the Rākshasa with trunks of trees unshorn of their branches. Then Hanumān the son of Pavana slew in great wrath that Rākshasa along with his charioteer and horses and broke his chariot also into pieces. And beholding Dhumrāksha, that foremost of Rākshasas, thus slain, the monkeys, abandoning all fear, rushed against the Rākshasa army with great valor. And slaughtered in large numbers by the victorious and powerful monkeys, the Rākshasas became dispirited and fled in fear to Lankā. And the surviving wreck of the Rākshasa army, having reached the city, informed king Rāvana of everything that had happened. And hearing from them that Prahasta, and that mighty archer Dhumrāksha, had both, with their armies, been slain by the powerful monkeys, Rāvana drew a deep sigh, and springing up from his excellent seat, said,—The time is come for Kumbhakarna to act.—And having said this, he awoke, by means of various loud-sounding instruments, his brother Kumbhakarna from his deep and prolonged slumbers. And having awaked him with great efforts, the Rākshasa king, still afflicted with anxiety, addressed the mighty Kumbhakarna and said unto him when seated at his ease on his bed, having perfectly recovered consciousness and self-possession, these words:—Thou, indeed, art happy, O Kumbhakarna, that canst enjoy profound and undisturbed repose, unconscious of the terrible calamity that hath overtaken us! Rāma with his monkey-host hath crossed the Ocean by a bridge and, disregarding us all, is waging a

terrible war (against us). I have stealthily brought away his wife Sitā the daughter of Janaka, and it is to recover her that he hath come hither, after having made a bridge over the great Ocean. Our great kinsmen also, Prahasta and others, have already been slain by him. And, O scourge of thy enemies, there is not another person, save thee, that can slay Rāma! Therefore, O warrior, putting on thy armour, do thou set out this very day for the purpose of vanquishing Rāma and his followers! The two younger brothers of Dushana, *viz.*, Vajravega and Pramāthin, will join thee with their forces!—And having said this unto the mighty Kumbhakarna, the *Rākshasa* king gave instructions to Vajravega and Pramāthin as to what they should do. And accepting his advice, those two warlike brothers of Dushana quickly marched out of the city, preceded by Kumbhakarna.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and eighty-fifth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXXVI.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said.—'Then Kumbhakarna set out from the city, accompanied by his followers. And soon he beheld the victorious monkey troops encamped before him. And passing them by with the object of seeking out Rāma, he beheld the son of Sumitrā standing at his post, bow in hand. Then the monkey warriors, speedily advancing towards him, surrounded him on all sides. And then they commenced to strike him with numberless large trees. And many amongst them fearlessly began to tear his body with their nails. And these monkeys began to fight with him in various ways approved by the laws of warfare. And they soon overwhelmed that chief of the Rākshasas with a shower of terrible weapons of various kinds. And attacked by them thus, Kumbakarna only laughed at them and began to eat them up. And he devoured those foremost of monkeys known by the names of Chala, and Chandachala, and Vajravāhu. And beholding that fearful act of the Rākshasa, other monkeys were frightened and set

up a loud wail of fear. And hearing the screams of those monkey-leaders, Sugriva boldly advanced towards Kumbhakarna. And that high-souled king of the monkeys swiftly approaching the Rākshasa, violently struck him on the head with the trunk of a *Sāla* tree. And though the high-souled Sugriva always prompt in action broke that *Sāla* tree on thee head of Kumbhakarna, he failed to make any impression on that Rākshasa. And then, as if roused from his torpor by that blow, Kumbhakarna stretching forth his arms seized Sugriva by main force. And beholding Sugriva dragged away by the Rākshasa, the heroic son of Sumitrā, that delighter of his friends, rushed towards Kumbhakarna. And that slayer of hostile heroes, Lakshmana, advancing towards Kumbhakarna, discharged at him an impetuous and mighty arrow furnished with golden wings. And that arrow, cutting through his coat of mail and penetrating into his body, passed through it outright and struck into the earth, stained with the Rākshasa's blood. Kumbhakarna then, having his breast thus bored through, released the king of the monkeys. And taking up a huge mass of stone as his weapon, the mighty warrior Kumbhakarna then rushed towards the son of Sumitrā, aiming it at him. And as the Rākshasa rushed towards him, Lakshmana cut off his upraised arms by means of a couple of keen-edged shafts furnished with heads resembling razors. But as soon as the two arms of the Rākshasa were thus cut off, double that number of arms soon appeared on his person. Sumitrā's son, however, displaying his skill in weapons, soon, by means of similar arrows, cut off those arms also, each of which had seized a mass of stone. At this, that Rākshasa assumed a form enormously huge and furnished with numerous heads and legs and arms. Then the son of Sumitrā rived, with a *Brahma* weapon, that warrior looking like an assemblage of hills. And rent by means of that celestial weapon, that mighty Rākshasa fell on the field of battle like a huge tree with spreading branches suddenly consumed by heaven's thunderbolt. And beholding Kumbhakarna endued with great activity and resembling the great *Asura* Vritra himself, deprived of life and prostrated on the field of battle, the Rākshasa warriors

fled in fear. And beholding the Rākshasa warriors running away from the field of battle, the younger brother of Dushana, rallying them, rushed in great wrath upon the son of Sumitrā. Sumitrā's son, however, with a loud roar, received with his winged shafts both those wrathful warriors, Vajravega and Pramāthin, rushing towards him. The battle then, O son of Prithā, that took place between those two younger brothers of Dushana on the one hand and the intelligent Lakshmana on the other, was exceedingly furious and made the bristles of the spectators stand on end. And Lakshmana overwhelmed the two Rākshasas with a perfect shower of arrows. And those two Rākshasa heroes, on the other hand, both of them excited to fury, covered Lakshmana with an arrowy hail. And that terrible encounter between Vajravega and Pramāthin, and the mighty-armed Lakshmana lasted for a short while. And Hanumān the son of Pavana, taking up a mountain peak, rushed towards one of the brothers, and with that weapon took the life of the Rākshasa Vajravega. And that mighty monkey Nala also, with a large mass of rock, crushed Pramāthin, that other younger brother of Dushana. The deadly struggle, however, between the soldiers of Rāma and Rāvana, rushing against one another, instead of coming to an end even after this, raged on as before. And hundreds of Rākshasas were slain by the denizens of the forest, while many of the latter were slain by the former. The loss, however, in killed, of the Rākshasas, was far greater than that of the monkeys.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and eighty-sixth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXXVII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said.—'Learning that Kumbhakarna had, with his followers, fallen in battle, as also that great warrior Prahasta, and Dhumrāksha too of mighty energy, Rāvana then addressed his heroic son Indrajit, saying,—O slayer of

foes, slay thou in battle Rāma and Sugriva and Lakshmana! My good son, it was by thee that this blazing fame of mine had been acquired by vanquishing in battle that wielder of the thunder-bolt, the thousand-eyed Lord of *Sachi*! Having the power of appearing and vanishing at thy will, slay thou, O smiter of foes, my enemies, by means, O thou foremost of all wielders of weapons, of thy celestial arrows received as boons (from the gods)! Rāma and Lakshmana and Sugriva are incapable of enduring the bare touch of thy weapons. What shall I say, therefore, of their followers? The cessation of hostilities which could not be brought about by either Prahasta or Kumbhakarna in battle, be it thine, O mighty-armed one, to bring about! Slaying my enemies with all their army by means of thy keen-edged shafts, enhance my joy today, O son, as thou didst once before, by vanquishing *Vāsava*!—Thus addressed by him, Indrajit said.—So be it,—and encased in mail, he quickly ascended his chariot, and proceeded, O king, towards the field of battle. And then that bull amongst *Rākshasas*, loudly announcing his own name, challenged Lakshmana endued with auspicious marks, to a single combat. And Lakshmana, thus challenged, rushed towards that *Rākshasa*, with his bow and arrows, and striking terror into his adversary's heart by means of the flapping of his bowstring on the leathern case of his left hand. And the encounter that took place between those warriors that defied each other's prowess and each of whom was desirous of vanquishing the other, and both of whom were conversant with celestial weapons, was terrible in the extreme. But when the son of Rāvana found that he could not by his arrows gain any advantage over his adversary, that foremost of mighty warriors mustered all his energy. And Indrajit then began to hurl at Lakshmana with great force numberless javelins. The son of Sumitrā, however, cut them into fragments by means of his own keen-edged arrows. And those javelins, thus cut into pieces by the keen-edged arrows of Lakshmana, dropped down upon the ground. Then the handsome Angada the son of Vāli, taking up a large tree, rushed impetuously at Indrajit and struck him with it on the head,

Undaunted at this, Indrajit of mighty energy sought to smite Angada with a lance. Just at that juncture, however, Lakshmana cut into pieces the lance taken up by Rāvana's son. The son of Rāvana then took up a mace and struck on the left flank that foremost of monkeys, the heroic Angada, who was then staying close beside him. Angada the powerful son of Vāli, little recking that stroke, hurled at Indrajit a mighty *Sāla* stem. And hurled in wrath by Angada for the destruction of Indrajit, that tree, O son of Prithā, destroyed Indrajit's chariot along with his horses and charioteer. And thereupon jumping from his horseless and driverless car, the son of Rāvana disappeared from sight, O king, by aid of his powers of illusion. And beholding that *Rākshasa* abundantly endued with powers of illusion, disappear so suddenly, Rāma proceeded towards that spot and began to protect his troops with care. Indrajit, however, with arrows obtained as boons from the gods, began to pierce both Rāma and the mighty Lakshmana in every part of their bodies. Then the heroic Rāma and Lakshmana both continued to contend with their arrows against Rāvana's son who had made himself invisible by his powers of illusion. But Indrajit continued to shower in wrath all over those lions among men his keen-edged shafts by hundreds and thousands. And seeking that invisible warrior who was ceaselessly showering his arrows, the monkeys penetrated into every part of the firmament, armed with huge masses of stone. Them as well as the brothers, however, the invisible *Rākshasa* began to afflict with his shafts. Indeed, the son of Rāvana, concealing himself by his powers of illusion, furiously attacked the monkey host. And the heroic brothers Rāma and Lakshmana, pierced all over with arrows, dropped down on the ground like the Sun and the Moon fallen down from the firmament.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and eighty-seventh Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXXVIII.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'Beholding both the brothers Rāma and Lakshmana prostrate on the ground, the son of Rāvana tied them in a net-work of those arrows of his which he had obtained as boons. And tied by Indrajit on the field of battle by means of that arrowy net, those heroic tigers among men resembled a couple of hawks immured in a cage. And beholding these heroes prostrate on the ground pierced with hundreds of arrows, Sugriva with all the monkeys, stood surrounding them on all sides. And the king of the monkeys stood there, accompanied by Sushena and Mainda and Dwivida and Kumuda and Angada and Hanumān and Nila and Tāra and Nala. And Vibhishana, having achieved success in another part of the field, soon arrived at that spot, and roused those heroes from insensibility, awaking them by means of the weapon called *Prajnā.** Then Sugriva soon extracted the arrows from their bodies. And by means of that most efficacious medicine called *Viçalyā,* † applied with celestial *mantras,* those human heroes regained their consciousness. And the arrows having been extracted from their bodies, those mighty warriors in a moment rose from their recumbent posture, their pains and fatigue thoroughly alleviated. And beholding Rāma the descendant of Ikshwāku's race, quite at his ease, Vibhishana, O son of Prithā, joining his hands, told him these words :— O chastiser of foes, at the command of the king of the *Guhyakas,* a *Guhyaka* hath come from the White mountains,

---

* This weapon could restore an insensible warrior to consciousness, as the *Sanmohana* weapon could deprive one of consciousness.—*T.*

† *Viçalyá*—a medicinal plant of great efficacy in healing cuts and wounds. It is still cultivated in several parts of Bengal. A medical friend of the present writer tested the efficacy of the plant known by that name and found it to be much superior to either gallic acid or tannic acid in stopping blood.—*T.*

bringing with him this water!* O great king, this water is a present to thee from Kuvera,—so that all creatures that are invisible, may, O chastiser of foes, become visible to thee! This water laved over the eyes will make every invisible creature visible to thee, as also to any other person to whom thou mayst give it!—Saying—*So be it*,—Rāma took that sacred water, and sanctified his own eyes therewith. And the high-minded Lakshmana also did the same. And Sugriva and Jāmbavān and Hanumān and Angada and Mainda and Dwivida and Nila and many other foremost of the monkeys laved their eyes with that water. And thereupon it exactly happened as Vibhishana had said, for, O Yudhishthira, soon did the eyes of all these become capable of beholding things that could not be seen by the unassisted eye!†

"'Meanwhile, Indrajit, after the success he had won, went to his father. And having informed him of the feats he had achieved, he speedily returned to the field of battle and placed himself at the van of his army. The son of Sumitrā then, under Vibhishana's guidance, rushed towards that wrathful son of Rāvana coming back, from desire of battle, to lead the attack. And Lakshmana, excited to fury and receiving a hint from Vibhishana‡ and desiring to slay Indrajit who had not completed his daily sacrifice, smote with his arrows that warrior burning to achieve success. And desirous of van-

---

* *Rājarāja* is lit., the king of kings. That title, however, exclusively belongs to *Kuvera*, the Regent of the North and friend of Siva and elder brother of Rāvana. The *Guhyakas* occupy, in Hindu mythology, a position next only to that of the gods, and superior to that of the *Gandharvas* who are the celestial choristers. The White mountain is another name of *Kailāça*, the peak where Siva has his abode.—*T.*

† *Atindriyāni*—capable of grasping things that are ordinarily not objects of the senses. *Ati-atitam* as explained by Nilakantha.—*T.*

‡ I have followed Nilakantha in interpreting *Kritasanjnas* to mean "receiving a hint or suggestion." It is well known that Indrajit, before he came out for battle, used to perform a sacrifice called *Nikumbhilā*. This made him incapable of defeat. This particular day, however, he had not been able to complete his sacrifice. Vibhishana knew this, and gave the necessary hint to Lakshmana, who availed of the information by quickly despatching his heroic adversary.—*T.*

quishing each other, the encounter that took place between them was exceedingly wonderful, like that (in days of yore) between the lord of the celestials and Prahrāda.* And Indrajit pierced the son of Sumitrā with arrows penetrating into his very vitals. And the son of Sumitrā also pierced Rāvana's son with arrows of fiery energy. And pierced with Lakshmana's arrows, the son of Rāvana became senseless with wrath. And he shot at Lakshmana eight shafts fierce as venomous snakes. Listen now, O Yudhishthira, as I tell thee how the heroic son of Sumitrā then took his adversary's life by means of three winged arrows possessed of the energy and effulgence of fire! With one of these, he severed from his body that arm of his enemy which had grasped the bow. With the second he caused that other arm which had held the arrows, to drop down on the ground. With the third that was bright and possessed of the keenest edge, he cut off his head decked with a beautiful nose and bright with ear-rings. And shorn of arms and head, the trunk became fearful to behold. And having slain the foe thus, that foremost of mighty men then slew with his arrows the charioteer of his adversary. And the horses then dragged away the empty chariot into the city. And Rāvana then beheld that car without his son on it. And hearing that his son had been slain, Rāvana suffered his heart to be overpowered with grief. And under the influence of extreme grief and affliction, the king of the Rākshasas suddenly cherished the desire of killing the princess of Mithilā. And seizing a sword, the wicked Rākshasa hastily ran towards that lady staying within the *Açoka* wood longing to behold her lord. Then Avindhya, beholding that sinful purpose of the wicked wretch, appeased his fury. Listen, O Yudhishthira, to the reasons urged by Avindhya! The wise Rākshasa said,—Placed as thou art on the blazing throne of an empire, it behoveth thee not to slay a woman! Besides, this woman is already slain, considering that she is a captive in thy power! I think, she would not be slain if only her body were destroyed. Slay thou her husband! *He* being

* A great Asura, the grand-father of Vali and father of Virochana.

slain, she will be slain too! Indeed, not even he of an hundred sacrifices (Indra) is thy equal in prowess! The gods with Indra at their head, have repeatedly been affrightened by thee in battle!—With these and many other words of the same import, Avindhya succeeded in appeasing Rāvana. And the latter did, indeed, listen to his counsellor's speech. And that wanderer of the night then, resolved to give battle himself, sheathed his sword, and issued orders for preparing his chariot.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and eighty-eighth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXXXIX.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said.—'The Ten-necked (Rāvana), excited to fury at the death of his beloved son, ascended his car decked with gold and gems. And surrounded by terrible Rākshasas with various kinds of weapons in their hands, Rāvana rushed towards Rāma, fighting with numerous monkey-chiefs. And beholding him rushing in wrath towards the monkey army, Mainda and Nila, and Nala and Angada, and Hanumān and Jāmvavān, surrounded him with all their troops. And those foremost of monkeys and bears began to exerminate, with trunks of trees, the soldiers of the Ten-necked (Rāvana), in his very sight. And beholding the enemy slaughtering his troops, the Rākshasa king, Rāvana, possessed of great powers of illusion, began to put them forth. And forth from his body began to spring hundreds and thousands of Rākshasas armed with arrows and lances and double-edged swords in hand. Rāma, however, with a celestial weapon, slew all those Rākshasas. The king of the Rākshasas then once more put forth his powers of illusion. The Ten-faced, producing from his body numerous warriors resembling, O Bhārata, both Rāma and Lakshmana, rushed towards the two brothers. And then those Rākshasas, hostile to Rāma and Lakshmana, and armed with bows and arrows, rushed towards Rāma. And beholding

that power of illusion put forth by the king of the *Rākshasas*, that descendant of Ikshwāku's race, the son of Sumitrā, addressed Rāma in these heroic words :—Slay those *Rākshasas*, those wretches with forms like thy own !—And Rāma, thereupon, slew those and other *Rākshasas* of forms resembling his own. And at that time Mātali, the charioteer of Indra, approached Rāma on the field of battle, with a car effulgent as the Sun and unto which were yoked horses of a tawny hue. And Mātali said,—O son of Kakutstha's race, this excellent and victorious car, unto which have been yoked this pair of tawny horses, belongeth to the Lord of celestials ! It is on this excellent car, O tiger among men, that Indra hath slain in battle hundreds of *Daityas* and *Dānavas* ! Therefore, O tiger among men, do thou, riding on the car driven by me, quickly slay Rāvana in battle ! Do not delay in achieving this !—Thus addressed by him, the descendant of Raghu's race, however, doubted the truthful words of Mātali, thinking,—This is another illusion produced by the *Rākshasas* !—Vibhishana then addressed him, saying,—This, O tiger among men, is no illusion of the wicked Rāvana ! Ascend thou this chariot quickly, for this, O thou of great effulgence, belongeth to Indra !—The descendant of Kakutstha then cheerfully said unto Vibhishana,—So be it,—and riding on that car, rushed wrathfully upon Rāvana. And when Rāvana too rushed against his antagonist, a loud wail of woe was set up by the creatures of the Earth, while the celestials in heaven sent forth a leonine roar accompanied by beating of large drums. The encounter then that took place between the Ten-necked *Rākshasa* and that prince of Raghu's race, was fierce in the extreme. Indeed, that combat between them hath no parallel elsewhere. And the *Rākshasa* hurled at Rāma a terrible javelin looking like Indra's thunder-bolt and resembling a Brāhmana's curse on the point of utterance.* Rāma, however,

* According to both Vyāsa and Válmiki, there is nothing so fierce as a Brāhmana's curse. The very thunder-bolt of Indra is weak compared to a Brāhmana's curse. The reason is obvious. The thunder smites the individual at whom it may be aimed. The curse of the Brāhmana smites the whole race, whole generations, whole countries.—*T.*

quickly cut into fragments that javelin by means of his sharp arrows. And beholding that most difficult feat, Rāvana was struck with fear. But soon his wrath was excited and the Ten-necked hero began to shower on Rāma whetted arrows by thousands and tens of thousands and countless weapons of various kinds, such as rockets and javelins and maces and battle-axes and darts of various kinds and *Sataghnis* and *whetted shafts.* And beholding that terrible form of illusion displayed by the Ten-necked *Rākshasa,* the monkeys fled in fear in all directions. Then the descendant of Kakutstha, taking out of his quiver an excellent arrow furnished with handsome wings and golden feathers and a bright and beautiful head, inspired it into a *Brahma* weapon. And beholding that excellent arrow inspired by Rāma with proper *mantras* into a *Brahmá* weapon, the celestials and the *Gandharvas* with Indra at their head, began to rejoice. And the gods and the *Dānavas* and the *Kinnaras* were led by the display of that *Brahma* weapon to regard the life of their *Rākshasa* foe as almost closed. Then Rāma shot that terrible weapon of unrivalled energy, destined to compass Rāvana's death, and resembling the curse of a Brāhmana on the point of utterance. And as soon, O Bhārata, as that arrow was shot by Rāma from his bow drawn to a circle, the *Rākshasa* king with his chariot and charioteer and horses blazed up, surrounded on all sides by a terrific fire. And beholding Rāvana slain by Rāma of famous achievements, the celestials, with the *Gandharvas* and the *Chāranas,* rejoiced exceedingly. And deprived of universal dominion by the energy of the *Brahma* weapon, the five elements forsook the illustrious Rāvana.* And consumed by the *Brahma* weapon, the physical ingredients of Rāvana's

---

* *Bhrançitas sarvalokeshu*—lit., fallen away from all the worlds or regions. The meaning, however, is plain, *viz.*, that Rávana was deprived of his universal dominion. *Pancha-bhutāni*—the five elements, *viz.*, *Earth*, *Water*, *Fire*, *Air*, and *Space.* These left Rávana, *i. e.* took leave of him and separated from one another. What is called *life*, is, according to Hindu physiology, a combination of these five elemental existences.—*T.*

body, his flesh and blood, were all reduced to nothingness,—so that the ashes even could not be seen.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and eighty-ninth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXL.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said.—'Having slain Rāvana, that wretched king of the Rākshasas and foe of the celestials, Rāma with his friends and Sumitrā's son, rejoiced exceedingly. And after the Ten-necked (Rākshasa) had been slain, the celestials with the *Rishis* at their head, worshipped Rāma of mighty arms, blessing him and uttering the word *Jaya** repeatedly. And all the celestials and the *Gandharvas* and the denizens of the celestial regions gratified Rāma of eyes like lotus-leaves, with hymns and flowery showers. And, having duly worshipped Rāma, they all went away to those regions whence they had come. And, O thou of unfading glory,† the firmament at that time looked as if a great festival were being celebrated.

'And having slain the Ten-necked Rākshasa, the lord Rāma of world-wide fame, that conqueror of hostile cities, bestowed Lankā on Vibhishana. Then that old and wise counsellor (of Rāvana) known by the name of Avindhya, with Sitā walking before him but behind Vibhishana who was at the front, came out of the city. And with great humility, Avindhya said unto the illustrious descendant of Kakutstha,—O illustrious one, accept thou this goddess, Janaka's daughter of excellent conduct !—Hearing these words, the descendant of Ikshwāku's race of alighted from his excellent chariot and beheld Sitā bathed in tears. And beholding that beautiful lady seated within her vehicle, afflicted with grief, besmeared with filth, with matted locks on head, and attired

---

* It is a sacred word, standing as a symbolical representation of various scriptures and certain modes of worship.—*T.*

† *Achutya*—lit. the undeteriorating one.—*T.*

in dirty robes, Rāma, afraid of the loss of his honor, said unto her,—Daughter of Videha, go whithersoever thou likest! Thou art now free! What should have been done by me, hath been done! O blessed lady, owning me for thy husband, it is not meet that thou shouldst grow old in the abode of the *Rākshasa!* It is for this that I have slain that wanderer of the night! But how can one like us, acquainted with every truth of morality, embrace even for a moment a woman that had fallen into others' hands? O princess of Mithilā, whether thou art chaste or unchaste, I dare not enjoy thee, now that thou art like sacrificial butter lapped by a dog!—Hearing these cruel words, that adorable lady suddenly fell down in great affliction of heart, like a plantain tree severed from its roots. And the color that was suffusing her face in consequence of the joy she had felt, quickly disappeared, like watery particles on a mirror blown thereon by the breath of the mouth. And hearing those words of Rāma, all the monkeys also with Lakshmana became still as dead. Then the divine and pure-souled Brahmā of four faces, that Creator of the Universe himself sprung from a lotus, showed himself on his car to Raghu's son. And Sakra and Agni and Vāyu, and Yama and Varuna, and the illustrious Lord of the *Yakshas*, and the holy *Rishis*, and king Daçaratha also in a celestial and effulgent form and on a car drawn by swans, showed themselves. And then the firmament, crowded with celestials and *Gandharvas*, became as beautiful as the autumnal welkin spangled with stars. And rising up from the ground, the blessed and famous princess of Videha, in the midst of those present, spoke unto Rāma of wide chest, these words:—O prince, I impute no fault to thee, for thou art well acquainted with the behaviour that one should adopt towards both men and women. But hear thou these words of mine! The ever-moving Air is always present within every creature! If I have sinned, let him forsake my vital forces! If I have sinned, Oh, then let Fire, and Water, and Space, and Earth, like Air (whom I have already invoked), also forsake my vital forces! And as, O hero, I have never, even in my dreams, cherished the image of any other person, so be thou my

lord as appointed by the gods !—And after Sitā had spoken, a sacred voice, resounding through the whole of that region, was heard in the skies, gladdening the hearts of the high-souled monkeys. And the Wind-god was heard to say,—O son of Raghu, what Sitā hath said is true ! I am the god of Wind. The princess of Mithilā is sinless ! Therefore, O king, be united with thy wife !—And the god of Fire said,—O son of Raghu, I dwell within the bodies of all creatures ! O descendant of Kakutstha, the princess of Mithilā is not guilty of even the minutest fault !—And Varuna then said,—O son of Raghu, the humours in every creature's body derive their existence from me ! I tell thee, let the princess of Mithilā be accepted by thee !—And Brahmā himself then said,—O descendant of Kakutstha, O son, in thee that art honest and pure and conversant with the duties of royal sages, this conduct is not strange. Listen, however, to these words of mine ! Thou hast, O hero, slain this enemy of the gods, the *Gandharvas*, the *Nāgas*, the *Yakshas*, the *Dānavas*, and the great *Rishis !* It was through my grace that he had hitherto been unslayable of all creatures. And, indeed, it was for some reason that I had tolerated him for sometime ! The wretch, however, abducted Sitā for his own destruction. And as regards Sitā, I protected her through Nalakuvara's curse. For that person had cursed Rāvana of old, saying, that if he ever approached an unwilling woman, his head should certainly split into a hundred fragments. Let no suspicion, therefore, be thine ! O thou of great glory, accept thy wife ! Thou hast, indeed, achieved a mighty feat for the benefit of the gods, O thou that art of divine effulgence !—And, last of all, Daçaratha said,—I have been gratified with thee, O child ! Blest be thou, I am thy father Daçaratha ! I command thee to take back thy wife, and rule thy kingdom, O thou foremost of men !—Rāma then replied,—If thou art my father, I salute thee with reverence, O king of kings ! I shall, indeed, return, at thy command, to the delightful city of Ayodhyā !—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Thus addressed, his father, O bull of the Bharata race, gladly answered Rāma, the corners

of whose eyes were of a reddish hue, saying,—Return to Ayodhyā and rule thou that kingdom ! O thou of great glory, thy fourteen years (of exile) have been complete.—Thus addressed by Daçaratha, Rāma bowed to the gods, and saluted by his friends, he was united with his wife, like the Lord of the celestials with the daughter of Puloman. And that chastiser of foes then gave a boon to Avindhya. And he also bestowed both riches and honors on the *Rākshasa* woman named *Trijatā*. And then Brahmā with all the celestials having Indra at their head, said unto Rāma,—O thou that ownest Kauçalyā for thy mother, what boons after thy heart shall we grant thee ?—Rāma, thereupon, prayed them to grant him firm adherence to virtue and invincibility in respect of all foes. And he also asked for the restoration to life of all those monkeys that had been slain by the *Rākshasas*. And after Brahmā had said,—So be it,—those monkeys, O king, restored to life, rose up from the field of battle. And Sitā too, of great good fortune, granted unto Hanumān a boon, saying,—Let thy life, O son, last as long as (the fame of) Rāma's achievements ! And, O Hanumān of yellow eyes, let celestial viands and drinks be ever available to thee through my grace !—

'Then the celestials with Indra at their head all disappeared in the very sight of those warriors of spotless achievements. And beholding Rāma united with the daughter of Janaka, the charioteer of Sakra, highly pleased, addressed him in the midst of friends, and said these words,—O thou of prowess that can never be baffled, thou hast dispelled the sorrows of the celestials, the *Gandharvas*, the *Yakshas*, the *Asuras*, the *Nāgas*, and human beings ! As long, therefore, as the Earth will hold together, so long will all creatures with the celestials, the *Asuras*, the *Gandharvas*, the *Yakshas*, the *Rākshasas*, and the *Pannagas*, speak of thee !—And having said these words unto Rāma, Mātali worshipped that son of Raghu, and having obtained the leave of that foremost of all wielders of weapons, he went away on that same chariot of solar effulgence. And Rāma also, with Sumitrā's son and Vibhishana, and accompanied by all the monkeys with Sugriva at their head, placing Sitā in the van and having made

arrangements for the protection of Lankā, recrossed the ocean by the same bridge. And he rode on that beautiful and sky-ranging chariot called the *Pushpaka* that was capable of going everywhere at the will of the rider. And that subduer of passions was surrounded by his principal counsellors in order of precedence. And arriving at that part of the sea-shore where he had formerly lain himself down, the virtuous king, with all the monkeys, pitched his temporary abode. And the son of Raghu then, bringing the monkeys before him in due time, worshipped them all, and gratifying them with presents of jewels and gems, dismissed them one after another. And after all the monkey-chiefs, and the apes with bovine tails, and the bears, had gone away, Rāma re-entered Kishkindhyā with Sugriva. And accompanied by both Vibhishana and Sugriva, Rāma re-entered Kishkindhyā riding on the *Pushpaka* car and showing the princess of Videha the woods along the way. And having arrived at Kishkindhyā, Rāma, that foremost of all smiters, installed the successful Angada as prince-regent of the kingdom. And accompanied by the same friends as also by Sumitrā's son, Rāma proceeded towards his city along the same path by which he had come. And having reached the city of Ayodhyā, the king despatched Hanumān thence as envoy to Bharata. And Hanumān, having ascertained Bharata's intentions from external indications, gave him the good news (of Rāma's arrival). And after the son of Pavana had come back, Rāma entered Nandigrāma. And having entered that town, Rāma beheld Bharata besmeared with filth and attired in rags and seated with his elder brother's sandals placed before him. And being united, O bull of the Bharata race, with both Bharata and Satrughna, the mighty son of Raghu, along with Sumitrā's son, began to rejoice exceedingly. And Bharata and Satrughna also, united with their eldest brother, and beholding Sitā, both derived great pleasure. And Bharata then, after having worshipped his returned brother, made over to him, with great pleasure, the kingdom that had been in his hands as a sacred trust. And Vaçishtha and Vāmadeva then together installed that hero in the sovereignty (of Ayodhyā)

at the eighth *Muhurta** of the day under the asterism called *Sravanā*. And after his installation was over, Rāma gave leave to well-pleased Sugriva the king of the monkeys, along with all his followers, and also to rejoicing Vibhishana of Pulastya's race, to return to their respective abodes. And having worshipped them with various articles of enjoyment, and done everything that was suitable to the occasion, Rāma dismissed those friends of his with a sorrowful heart. And the son of Raghu then, having worshipped that *Pushpaka* chariot, joyfully gave it back unto Vaiçravana. And then assisted by the celestial *Rishi* (Vaçishtha), Rāma performed on the banks of the *Gomati* ten Horse-sacrifices without obstruction of any kind and with treble presents† unto Brāhmanas.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and ninetieth Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXLI.

(Draupadi-harana Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said.—'It was thus, O mighty-armed one, that Rāma of immeasurable energy had suffered of old such excessive calamity in consequence of his exile in the woods! O tiger among men, do not grieve, for, O chastiser of foes, thou art a *Kshatriya*! Thou too treadest in the path in which strength of arms is to be put forth,—the path that leadeth to tangible rewards.‡ Thou hast not even a particle of sin.

---

* *Abhijit* is, lit. the eighth *muhurta* of the day, a *muhurta* being equal to an hour of 48 minutes, *i. e.* the thirtieth part of a whole day and night. The *Vaishnava* asterism is, as explained by Nilakantha, the *Sravanā*.—*T.*

† *Jāruthyā* is explained by Arjuna Misra to mean, "Presents to Brahmanas three times as large as usual." Nilakantha has a learned note in course of which he suggests various meanings, although he supports Arjuna Misra's interpretation in the main.—*T.*

‡ *Deepta-nirnaye*— is explained by Nilakantha to mean, *Pratyaksha-fale*, *i. e.* something in which the fruits are visible.—*T.*

Even the celestials with Indra at their head, and the *Asuras*, have to tread in the path that is trod by thee! It was after such affliction that the wielder of the thunder-bolt, aided by the *Maruts*, slew *Vritra*, and the invincible *Namuchi*, and the *Rākshasi* of long tongue! He that hath assistance, always secureth the accomplishment of all his purposes! What is that which cannot be vanquished in battle by him that hath Dhananjaya for his brother? This Bhima also, of terrible prowess, is the foremost of mighty persons. The heroic and youthful sons of Madravati, again, are mighty bowmen. With allies such as these, why dost thou despair, O chastiser of foes? These are capable of vanquishing the army of the wielder himself of the thunder-bolt with the *Maruts* in the midst. Having these mighty bowmen of celestial forms for thy allies, thou, O bull of the Bharata race, art sure to conquer in battle all thy foes! Behold, this Krishnā the daughter of Drupada, forcibly abducted by the wicked-minded Saindhava from pride of strength and energy, hath been brought back by these mighty warriors after achieving terrible feats! Behold, king Jayadratha was vanquished and lay powerless before thee! The princess of Videha was rescued with almost no allies by Rāma, after the slaughter in battle of the Ten-necked Rākshasa of terrible prowess! Indeed, the allies of Rāma (in that contest) were monkeys and black-faced bears, creatures that were not even human! Think of all this, O king, in thy mind! Therefore, O foremost of Kurus, grieve not for all (that hath occured), O bull of the Bharata race! Illustrious persons like thee never indulge in sorrow, O smiter of foes!"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"It was thus that the king was comforted by Mārkandeya. And then that high-souled one, casting off his sorrows, once more spoke unto Mārkandeya."

Thus ends the two hundred and ninety-first Section in the Draupadi-harana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXLII.

(Pativratā-māhātmya Parva.)

"Yudhishthira said,—'O mighty sage, I do not so much grieve for myself or these my brothers or the loss of my kingdom as I do for this daughter of Drupada. When we were afflicted at the game of dice by those wicked-souled ones, it was Krishnā that delivered us. And she was forcibly carried off from the forest by Jayadratha. Hast thou ever seen or heard of any chaste and exalted lady that resembleth this daughter of Drupada ?' "

"Mārkandeya said,—'Listen, O king, how the exalted merit of chaste ladies, O Yudhishthira, was completely obtained by a princess named Sāvitri. There was a king among the Madras, who was virtuous and highly pious. And he always ministered unto the Brāhmanas, and was high-souled and firm in promise. And he was of subdued senses and given to sacrifices. And he was the foremost of givers, and was able, and beloved by both citizens and the rural population. And the name of that lord of Earth was Açwapati. And he was intent on the welfare of all beings. And that forgiving (monarch) of truthful speech and subdued senses was without issue. And when he got old, he was stricken with grief at this. And with the object of raising offspring, he observed rigid vows and began to live upon frugal fare, having recourse to the *Brahmacharya* mode of life, and restraining his senses. And that best of kings, (daily) offering ten thousand oblations to the fire, recited *mantras* in honor of *Sāvitri*,* and ate temperately at the sixth hour. And he passed eighteen years practising such vows. Then when the eighteen years were full, *Sāvitri* was pleased (with him). And, O king, issuing with great delight, in embodied form, from the *Agni-hotra* fire, the goddess showed herself to the king. And intent on conferring boons, she spake these words unto the monarch,—I have been gratified, O king, with thy *Brahmacharya* practices,

---

* Also called *Gāyatri*, the wife of Brahmā.—*T.*

thy purity, and self-restraint, and observance of vows, and all thy endeavours, and veneration! Do thou, O mighty king, O Açwapati, ask for the boon that thou desirest! Thou ought, however, by no means show any disregard for virtue.—Thereat Açwapati said,—It is with the desire of attaining virtue that I have been engaged in this task. O goddess, may many sons be born unto me worthy of my race! If thou art pleased with me, O goddess, I ask for this boon. The twice-born ones have assured me that great merit lieth in having offspring! —*Sāvitri* replied,—O king, having already learnt this thy intention, I had spoken unto that lord, the Grand-sire, about thy sons. Through the favor granted by the Self-create, there shall speedily be born unto thee on earth a daughter of great energy. It behoveth thee not to make any reply. Well-pleased, I tell thee this at the command of the Grand-sire!—'

"Mārkandeya said.—'Having accepted *Sāvitri's* words and said,—*So be it!*—the king again gratified her and said,—May this happen soon!—On *Sāvitri* vanishing away, the monarch entered his own city. And that hero began to live in his kingdom, ruling his subjects righteously. And when some time had elasped, that king, observant of vows, begat offspring on his eldest queen engaged in the practice of virtue. And then, O bull of the Bharata race, the embryo in the womb of the princess of Mālava increased like the lord of stars in the heavens during the lighted fortnight. And when the time came, she brought forth a daughter furnished with lotus-like eyes. And that best of monarchs joyfully performed the usual ceremonies on her behalf. And as she had been bestowed with delight by the goddess *Sāvitri* by virtue of the oblations offered in honor of that goddess, both her father, and the Brāhmanas named her *Sāvitri*. And the king's daughter grew up like unto *Sree* herself in an embodied form. And in due time, that damsel attained her puberty. And beholding that graceful maiden of slender waist and ample hips, and resembling a golden image, people thought,—We have received a goddess.—And overpowered by her energy, none could wed that girl of eyes like lotus-leaves, and possessed of a burning splendour.'

'And it came to pass that once on the occasion of a

parva,* having fasted and bathed her head, she presented herself before the (family) deity and caused the Brāhmanas to offer oblations with due rites to the sacrificial fire. And taking the flowers that had been offered to the god, that lady, beautiful as *Sree* herself, went to her high-souled sire. And having reverenced the feet of her father, and offering him the flowers she had brought, that maiden of exceeding grace, with joined hands, stood at the side of the king. And seeing his own daughter resembling a celestial damsel arrived at puberty, and unsought by people, the king became sad. And the king said,—Daughter, the time for bestowing thee is come! Yet none asketh me. Do thou (therefore) thyself seek for a husband equal to thee in qualities! That person who may be desired by thee should be notified to me by thee. Do thou choose for thy husband as thou listest. I shall bestow thee with deliberation. Do thou, O auspicious one, listen to me as I tell thee the words which I heard recited by the twice-born ones. The father that doth not bestow his daughter cometh by disgrace. And the husband that knoweth not his wife in her season meeteth with disgrace. And the son that doth not protect his mother when her husband is dead, also suffereth disgrace. Hearing these words of mine, do thou engage thyself in search of a husband. Do thou act in such a way that we may not be censured by the gods!—'

"Mārkandeya said.—'Having said these words to his daughter and his old counsellors, he instructed the attendants to follow her, saying,—*Go!* Thereat, bashfully bowing down unto her father's feet, the meek maid went out without hestitation, in compliance with the words of her sire. And ascending a golden car, she went to the delightful asylums of the royal sages, accompanied by her father's aged counsellors. There, O son, worshipping the feet of the aged ones, she gradually began to roam over all the woods. Thus the king's daughter, distributing wealth in all sacred regions, ranged the various places belonging to the foremost of the twice-born ones.'"

---

* A holy day; a festival; generally, some auspicious lunar day.—*T.*

Thus ends the two hundred and ninety-second Section in the Pativratā-māhātmya of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXLIII.

(Pativratā-māhātmya Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya continued.—'On one occasion, O Bhārata, when that king, the lord of the Madras, was seated with Nārada in the midst of his court, engaged in conversation, Sāvitri, accompanied by the king's counsellors, came to her father's abode after having visited various sacred regions and asylums. And beholding her father seated with Nārada, she worshipped the feet of both by bending down her head. And Nārada then said,—Whither had this thy daughter gone? And, O king, whence also doth she come? Why also dost thou not bestow her on a husband, now that she hath arrived at the age of puberty?—Açwapati answered, saying, —Surely, it was on this very business that she had been sent and she returneth now (from her search). Do thou, O celestial sage, listen, even from her, as to the husband she hath chosen for herself!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—Then that blessed maid, commanded by her father with the words,—*Relate everything in detail,*—regarded those words of her sire as if they were those of a god, and spoke unto him thus,—There was, amongst the Sālwas, a virtuous Kshatriya king known by the name of Dyumatsena. And it came to pass that in course of time he became blind. And that blind king possessed of wisdom had an only son. And it so happened that an old enemy dwelling in the vicinity, taking advantage of the king's mishap, deprived him of his kingdom. And thereupon the monarch, accompanied by his wife bearing a child on her breast, went into the woods. And having retired into the forest, he adopted great vows and began to practise ascetic austerities. And his son, born in the city, began to grow in the hermitage. That youth, fit to be my husband, I have accepted in my heart for my lord!—At these words of hers, Nārada said,—Alas, O king, Sāvitri hath committed a great

wrong, since, not knowing, she hath accepted for her lord this Satyavān of excellent qualities! His father speaketh the truth and his mother also is truthful in her speech. And it is for this that the Brāhmanas have named the son *Satyavān.** In his childhood he took great delight in horses, and used to make horses of clay. And he used also to draw pictures of horses. And for this that youth is sometimes called by the name of *Chitrāçwa.*†—The king then asked,—And is prince Satyavān, who is devoted to his father, endued with energy and intelligence and forgiveness and courage ?—Nārada replied, saying,—In energy Satyavān is like unto the Sun, and in wisdom like unto Vrihaspati ! And he is brave like unto the lord of the celestials, and forgiving like unto the Earth herself !—Açwapati then said,—And is the prince Satyavān liberal in gifts and devoted to the Brāhmanas ? Is he handsome and magnanimous and lovely to behold ?—Nārada said,—In bestowal of gifts according to his power, the mighty son of Dyumatsena is like unto Sankriti's son Rantideva. In truthfulness of speech and devotion unto Brāhmanas, he is like Civi the son of Uçinara. And he is magnanimous like Yayāti, and beautiful like the Moon. And in beauty of person he is like either of the twin Açwins. And with senses under control, he is meek, and brave, and truthful ! And with passions in subjection, he is devoted to his friends, and free from malice, and modest, and patient. Indeed, briefly speaking, they that are possessed of great ascetic merit and are of exalted character say that he is always correct in his conduct and that honor is firmly seated on his brow.—Hearing this, Açwapati said,—O reverend sage, thou tellest me that he is possessed of every virtue ! Do thou now tell me his defects if, indeed, he hath any !—Nārada then said,—He hath one only defect that hath overwhelmed all his virtues ! That defect is incapable of being conquered by even the greatest efforts. He hath only one defect, and no other. Within a year from this day, Satyavān, endued with a short life, will cast off his

---

* The truthful..—*T.*

† One that draws pictures of horses.—*T.*

body!—Hearing these words of the sage, the king said,—Come, O Sāvitri, go thou and choose another for thy lord, O beautiful damsel! That one great defect (in this youth) existeth, covering all his merits. The illustrious Nārada honored by even the gods, sayeth, that Satyavān shall have to cast off his body within a year, his days being numbered!—At these words of her father, Sāvitri said,—The die can fall but once; a daughter can be given away but once; and once only can a person say, *I give away!* These three things can each take place only once! Indeed, with a life short or long, possessed of virtues or bereft of them, I have, for once, selected my husband. Twice I shall not select. Having first settled a thing mentally, it is expressed in words, and then it is carried out into practice. Of this my mind is an example!—Nārada then said,—O best of men, the heart of thy daughter Sāvitri wavereth not! It is not possible by any means to make her swerve from this path of virtue! In no other person are those virtues that dwell in Satyavān. The bestowal of thy daughter, therefore, is approved by me!—The king said,—What thou hast said, O illustrious one, should never be disobeyed, for thy words are true! And I shall act as thou hast said, since thou art my preceptor!—Nārada said,—May the bestowal of thy daughter Sāvitri be attended with peace! I shall now depart. Blessed be all of ye!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Having said this, Nārada rose up into the sky and went to heaven. On the other hand, the king began to make preparations for his daughter's wedding!' "

Thus ends the two hundred and ninety-third Section in the Pativratā-māhātmya of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXLIV.

(Pativratā-māhātmya Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said.—'Having pondered over these words (of Nārada) about his daughter's marriage, the king began to make arrangments about the nuptials. And summoning all the old Brāhmanas, and *Ritwijas* together with the

priests, he set out with his daughter on an auspicious day. And arriving at the asylum of Dyumatsena in the sacred forest, the king approached the royal sage on foot, accompanied by the twice-born ones. And there he beheld the blind monarch of great wisdom seated on a bed of *Kuça* grass spread under a *Sāla* tree. And after duly reverencing the royal sage, the king in an humble speech introduced himself. Thereupon, offering him the *Arghya*, a seat, and a cow, the monarch asked his royal guest —*Wherefore is this visit ?*—Thus addressed, the king disclosed everything about his intention and purpose with reference to Satyavān. And Açwapati said,—O royal sage, this beautiful girl is my daughter named Sāvitri. O thou versed in morality, do thou, agreeably to the customs of our order, take her from me as thy daughter-in-law !—Hearing these words, Dyumatsena said,—Deprived of kingdom, and taking up our abode in the woods, we are engaged in the practice of virtue as ascetics with regulated lives. Unworthy of a forest life, how will thy daughter, living in the sylvan asylum, bear this hardship ?—Açwapati said,—When my daughter knoweth, as well as myself, that happiness and misery come and go (without either being stationary), such words as these are not fit to be used towards one like me ! O king, I have come hither, having made up my mind ! I have bowed to thee from friendship : it behoveth thee not, therefore, to destroy my hope ! It behoveth thee not, also, to disregard me who, moved by love, have come to thee ! Thou art my equal and fit for an alliance with me, as, indeed, I am thy equal and fit for an alliance with thee ! Do thou, therefore, accept my daughter for thy daughter-in-law and the wife of the good Satyavān ! —Hearing these words, Dyumatsena said,—Formerly I had desired an alliance with thee. But I hesitated, being subsequently deprived of my kingdom. Let this wish, therefore, that I had formerly entertained, be accomplished this very day. Thou art, indeed, a welcome guest to me !—

'Then summoning all the twice-born ones residing in the hermitages of that forest, the two kings caused the union to take place with due rites. And having bestowed his daughter with suitable robes and ornaments, Açwapati went back to

his abode in great joy. And Satyavān, having obtained a wife possessed of every accomplishment, became highly glad, while she also rejoiced exceedingly upon having gained the husband after her own heart. And when her father had departed, she put off all her ornaments, and clad herself in barks and cloths dyed in red. And by her services and virtues, her tenderness and self-denial, and by her agreeable offices unto all, she pleased everybody. And she gratified her mother-in-law by attending to her person and by covering her with robes and ornaments. And she gratified her father in-law by worshipping him as a god and controlling her speech. And she pleased her husband by her honied speeches, her skill in every kind of work, the evenness of her temper, and by the indications of her love in private. And thus, O Bhārata, living in the asylum of those pious dwellers of the forest, they continued for some time to practise ascetic austerities. But the words spoken by Nārada were present night and day in the mind of the sorrowful Sāvitri.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and ninety-fourth Section in the Pativratā-māhātmya of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXLV.

(Pativratā-māhātmya Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said.—'At length, O king, after a long time had passed away, the hour that had been appointed for the death of Satyavān arrived. And as the words that had been spoken by Nārada were ever present in the mind of Sāvitri, she counted the days as they passed. And having ascertained that her husband would die on the fourth day following, the damsel fasted day and night, observing the *Trirātra* vow. And hearing of her vow, the king became exceedingly sorry and rising up soothed Sāvitri and said these words,—This vow that thou hast begun to observe, O daughter of a king, is exceedingly hard; for it is extremely difficult to fast for three nights together!—And hearing these words, Sāvitri said,—Thou needst not be sorry, O father! This vow I shall be able to observe! I have for certain under-

taken this task with perseverance; and perseverance is the cause of the successful observance of vows.—And having listened to her, Dyumatsena said,—I can by no means say unto thee, *Do thou break thy vow.* One like me should, on the contrary, say,—*Do thou complete thy vow!*—And having said this to her, the high-minded Dyumatsena stopped. And Sāvitri continuing to fast, began to look (lean) like a wooden doll. And, O bull of the Bharata race, thinking that her husband would die on the morrow, the woe-stricken Sāvitri, observing a fast, spent that night in extreme anguish. And when the sun had risen about a couple of hands, Sāvitri thinking within herself *To-day is that day,*—finished her morning rites, and offered oblations to the flaming fire. And bowing down unto the aged Brāhmanas, and her father-in-law, and mother-in-law, she stood before them with joined hands, concentrating her senses. And for the welfare of Sāvitri, all the ascetics dwelling in that hermitage, uttered the auspicious benediction that she should never suffer widowhood. And Sāvitri immersed in contemplation accepted all those words of the ascetics, mentally saying,—*So be it!*—And the king's daughter, reflecting on those words of Nārada, remained, expecting the hour and the moment.

Then, O best of the Bharatas, well-pleased, her father-in-law and mother-in-law said these words unto the princess seated in a corner,—Thou hast completed the vow as prescribed. The time for thy meal hath now arrived; therefore, do thou what is proper!—Thereat Sāvitri said,—Now that I have completed the purposed vow, I will eat when the Sun goes down. Even this is my heart's resolve and this my vow!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'And when Sāvitri had spoken thus about her meal, Satyavān, taking his axe upon his shoulders, set out for the woods. And at this, Sāvitri said unto her husband,—It behoveth thee not to go alone! I will accompany thee. I cannot bear to be separated from thee!—Hearing these words of hers, Satyavān said,—Thou hast never before repaired to the forest. And, O lady, the forest paths are hard to pass! Besides, thou hast been re-

duced by fast on account of thy vow. How wouldst thou, therefore, be able to walk on foot?—Thus addressed, Sāvitrī said,—I do not feel languor because of the fast, nor do I feel exhaustion. And I have made up my mind to go. It behoveth thee not, therefore, to prevent me!—At this, Satyavān said,—If thou desirest to go, I will gratify that desire of thine. Do thou, however, take the permission of my parents, so that I may be guilty of no fault!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Thus addressed by her lord, Sāvitri of high vows saluted her father-in-law and mother-in-law and addressed them, saying,—This my husband goeth to the forest for procuring fruits. Permitted by my reverend lady-mother and father-in-law, I will accompany him. For today I cannot bear to be separated from him. Thy son goeth out for the sake of the sacrificial fire and for his reverend superiors. He ought not, therefore, to be dissuaded. Indeed, he could be dissuaded if he went into the forest on any other errand. Do ye not prevent me! I will go into the forest with him. It is a little less than a year that I have not gone out of the asylum. Indeed, I am extremely desirous of beholding the blossoming woods!—Hearing these words, Dyumatsena said,—Since Sāvitri hath been bestowed by her father as my daughter-in-law, I do not remember that she hath ever spoken any words couching a request. Let my daughter-in-law, therefore, have her will in this matter. Do thou, however, O daughter, act in such a way that Satyavān's work may not be neglected!—'

"Mārkandeya continued,—'Having received the permission of both, the illustrious Sāvitri, departed with her lord, in seeming smiles although her heart was racked with grief. And that lady of large eyes went on, beholding picturesque and delightful woods inhabited by swarms of peacocks. And Satyavān sweetly said unto Sāvitri,—Behold these rivers of sacred currents and these excellent trees* decked with flowers!

* The word in the original is *Naga*, lit. anything immovable, hence a hill or a tree. The Burdwan Pundits take it to mean a hill. The adjective *puspitān* however, would point the other way.—*T.*

—But the faultless Sāvitri continued to watch her lord in all his moods, and recollecting the words of the celestial sage, she considered her husband as already dead. And with heart cleft in twain, that damsel, replying to her lord, softly followed him expecting that hour.*' "

Thus ends the two hundred and ninety-fifth Section in the Pativratā-māhātmya of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXLVI.

(Pativratā-māhātmya Parva continued.)

" Mārkandeya said.—'The powerful Satyavān then, accompanied by his wife, plucked fruits and filled his wallet with them. And he then began to fell branches of trees. And as he was hewing them, he began to perspire. And in consequence of that exercise his head began to ache. And afflicted with toil, he approached his beloved wife, and addressed her, saying,—O Sāvitri, owing to this hard exercise my head acheth, and all my limbs and my heart also are afflicted sorely! O thou of restrained speech, I think myself unwell. I feel as if my head is being pierced with numerous darts. Therefore, O auspicious lady, I wish to sleep, for I have not the power to stand. Hearing these words, Sāvitri quickly advancing, approached her husband, and sat down upon the ground, placing his head upon her lap. And that helpless lady, thinking of Nārada's words, began to calculate the (appointed) division of the day, the hour, and the moment. The next moment she saw a person clad in red attire, his head decked with a diadem. And his body was of large proportions and effulgent as the sun. And he was of a darkish hue, had red eyes, carried a noose in his hand, and was dreadful to behold. And he was standing beside Satyavān and was steadfastly gazing at him. And seeing him, Sāvitri gently placed her husband's head on the ground, and rising suddenly, with a trembling heart,

---

* The meaning is that Sāvitri's heart being divided into two parts, with one of these she held converse with her husband, and with the other thought of the approaching hour of his death.—*T.*

spake these words in distressful accents,—Seeing this thy superhuman form, I take thee to be a deity. If thou will, tell me, O chief of the gods, who thou art and what also thou intendst to do!—Thereat, Yama replied,—O Sāvitri, thou art ever devoted to thy husband, and thou art also endued with ascetic merit. It is for this reason that I hold converse with thee. Do thou, O auspicious one, know me for Yama. This thy lord Satyavān, the son of a king, hath his days run out. I shall, therefore, take him away binding him in this noose. Know this to be my errand!—At these words Sāvitri said,—I had heard that thy emissaries come to take away mortals, O worshipful one! Why then, O lord, hast thou come in person?—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Thus addressed by her, the illustrious lord of the *Pitris*, with a view to oblige her, began to unfold to her truly all about his intentions. And Yama said,—This prince is endued with virtues and beauty of person, and is a sea of accomplishments. He deserveth not to be borne away by my emissaries. Therefore is it that I have come personally.—Saying this, Yama by main force pulled out of the body of Satyavān, a person of the measure of the thumb, bound in noose and completely under subjection. And when Satyavān's life had thus been taken out, the body, deprived of breath, and shorn of lustre, and destitute of motion, became unsightly to behold. And binding Satyavāna's vital essence,* Yama proceeded in a southerly direction. Thereupon, with heart overwhelmed in grief, the exalted Sāvitri, ever devoted to her lord and crowned with success in respect of her vows, began to follow Yama. And at this, Yama said,—Desist, O Sāvitri! Go back, and perform the funeral obsequies of thy lord! Thou art freed from all thy obligations to thy lord. Thou hast come as far as it is possible to come.—Sāvitri replied,—Whither my husband is being carried, or whither he goeth of his own accord, I will follow him thither. This is the eternal custom. By

* In the original *Prāna*, lit. life, or rather something in consequence of which life is sustained.

virtue of my aceticism, of my regard for my superiors, of my affection for my lord, of my observance of vows, as well as of thy favor, my course is unimpeded. It hath been declared by wise men endued with true knowledge that by walking only seven paces with another, one contracteth a friendship with one's companion.* Keeping that friendship (which I have contracted with thee) in view, I shall speak to thee something. Do thou listen to it. They that have not their souls under control, acquire no merit by leading the four successive modes of life, *viz.*—celebacy with study, domesticity, retirement into the woods, and renunciation of the world. That which is called religious merit is said to consist of true knowledge. The wise, therefore, have declared religious merit to be the foremost of all things, and not the passage through the four successive modes. By practising the duties of even one of these four modes agreeably to the directions of the wise, *we* have attained to true merit, and, therefore, we do not desire the second or the third mode, *viz*, celebacy with study or renunciation. It is for this again that the wise have declared religious merit to be the foremost of all things.†—Hearing

---

* The brevity of the original can scarcely be exhibited in translation. In the original the expression is, *Sāptāpadam maitram, i. e. friendship is seven-paced..—.T.*

† These two *slokas* are difficult to understand and are almost in the nature of enigmas. But for the aid I have derived from Nilakantha, I could never have understood the meaning. *Anātmavanta* means, as usual, persons not having their souls under control. By *Dharmam* in the first line is meant the duties of domesticity ; by *Vâsam*, dwelling in the preceptor's abode in celebacy and study, *i. e*, the *Brahmacharya* mode of life ; by *Pariçramam*, or, as some texts read, *Pratiçrayas*, renunciation of the world, *i. e. Sannyāsam.* In the second line *Dharmam* means true religious merit, and *Vijnānam* (the word, however, occurs in the fourth case) is meant true knowledge. *Tam mārgam* in the second line of the second *sloka* means " that path. " *i. e.* the path of true knowledge ; and *dwitiyam* and *tritiyam* in the last half of the last line, mean the *second* and the *third* of the modes of life as enumerated in the first half of the first line of the first *sloka.* It is needless to say for that *Vané* (in the locative case) I read *Vanam* (in the accusative), although if the locative is accepted, *three*, and not four, modes of life would be spoken of, with-

these words of hers, Yama said,—Do thou desist! I have been pleased with these words of thine couched in proper letters and accents, and based on reason. Do thou ask for a boon! Except the life of thy husband, O thou of faultless features, I will bestow on thee any boon that thou mayst solicit! —Hearing these words, Sāvitri said,—Deprived of his kingdom and bereft also of sight, my father-in-law leadeth a life of retirement in our sylvan asylum. Let that king through thy favor attain his eye-sight, and become strong like either fire or the Sun!—Yama said,—O thou of faultless features, I grant thee this boon! It will even be as thou hast said! It seems that thou art fatigued with thy journey. Do thou desist, therefore, and return! Suffer not thyself to be weary any longer! —Sāvitri said,—What weariness can I feel in the presence of my husband? The lot that is my husband's is certainly mine also. Whither thou carriest my husband, thither will I also repair! O chief of the celestials, do thou again listen to me! Even a single interview with the pious is highly desirable; friendship with them is still more so. And intercourse with the virtuous can never be fruitless. Therefore, one should live in the company of the righteous!—Yama said,—These words that thou hast spoken, so fraught with useful instruction, delight the heart and enhance the wisdom of even the learned. Therefore, O lady, solicit thou a second boon, except the life of Satyavān!—Sāvitri said,—Sometime before, my wise and intelligent father-in-law was deprived of his kingdom. May that monarch regain his kingdom. And may that superior of mine never renounce his duties! Even this is the second boon that I solicit!—Then Yama said,—The king shall soon

---

out the meaning being at all affected. Nilakantha very ingeniously points out the connection of this speech with Sāvitri's own position. What she says in effect to Yama is that as she has attained to the path of true knowledge by leading a life of domesticity, the king of the *Pitris* should not sever her from her husband and thus impede her in the acquisition of religious merit by pointing out to her some *other* mode of life in the absence of her lord. It should be remarked that almost all the vernacular translators, the Burdwan Pundits included, have failed to understand the passage correctly.—*T.*

regain his kingdom. Nor shall he ever fall off from his duties. Thus, O daughter of a king, have I fulfilled thy desire. Do thou now desist! Return! Do not take any further trouble!—Sāvitri said,—Thou hast restrained all creatures by thy decrees, and it is by thy decrees that thou takest them away, not according to thy will. Therefore it is, O god, O divine one, that people call thee *Yama*!* Do thou listen to the words that I say! The eternal duty of the good towards all creatures is never to injure them in thought, word, and deed, but to bear them love and give them their due. As regards this world, everything here is like this (husband of mine). Men are destitute of both devotion and skill. The good, however, show mercy to even their foes when these seek their protection.—Yama said,—As water to the thirsty soul, so are these words uttered by thee to me! Therefore, do thou, O fair lady, if thou will, once again ask for any boon except Satyavān's life!—At these words Sāvitri replied,—That lord of earth, my father, is without sons. That he may have an hundred sons begotten of his loins, so that his line may be perpetuated, is the third boon I would ask of thee!—Yama said,—Thy sire, O auspicious lady, shall obtain an hundred illustrious sons, who will perpetuate and increase their father's race! Now, O daughter of a king, thou hast obtained thy wish. Do thou desist! Thou hast come far enough.—Sāvitri said,—Staying by the side of my husband, I am not conscious of the length of the way I have walked. Indeed, my mind rusheth to yet a longer way off. Do thou again, as thou goest on, listen to the words that I will presently utter! Thou art the powerful son of Vivaswat. It is for this that thou art called *Vaivaswat* by the wise. And, O lord, since thou dealest out equal law unto all created things, thou hast been designated the *lord of justice!* One reposeth not, even in one's own-self, the confidence that one doth in the righteous. Therefore, every one wisheth particularly for intimacy with the righteous. It is goodness of heart alone that inspireth the confidence of all creatures. And it is for this that people reply parti-

* One that governs by ordinances or decrees.—*T.*

cularly on the righteous.—And hearing these words, Yama said,—The words that thou utterest, O fair lady, I have not heard from any one save thee! I am highly pleased with this speech of thine. Except the life of Satyavān, solicit thou, therefore, a fourth boon, and then go thy way!—Sāvitri then said,—Born of me and of Satyavān's loins, begotten by both of us, let there be a century of sons possessed of strength and prowess and capable of perpetuating our race! Even this is the fourth boon that I would beg of thee!—Hearing these words of hers, Yama replied,—Thou shalt, O lady, obtain a century of sons, possessed of strength and prowess, and causing thee great delight. O daughter of a king, let no more weariness be thine! Do thou desist! Thou hast already come too far!—Thus addressed, Sāvitri said,—They that are righteous always practise eternal morality! And the communion of the pious with the pious is never fruitless! Nor is there any danger to the pious from those that are pious. And verily it is the righteous who by their truth make the sun move in the heavens. And it is the righteous that support the earth by their austerities! And, O king, it is the righteous upon whom both the past and the future depend! Therefore, they that are righteous are never cheerless in the company of the righteous. Knowing this to be the eternal practice of the good and righteous, they that are righteous continue to do good to others without expecting any benefit in return. A good office is never thrown away on the good and virtuous. Neither interest nor dignity suffereth any injury by such an act. And since such conduct ever adheres to the righteous, the righteous often become the protectors of all!—Hearing these words of hers, Yama replied,—The more thou utterest such speeches that are pregnant with great import, full of honied phrases, instinct with morality, and agreeable to the mind, the more is the respect that I feel for thee! O thou that art so devoted to thy lord, ask for some incomparable boon!—Thus addressed, Sāvitri said,—O bestower of honors, the boon thou hast already given me is incapable of accomplishment without union with my husband. Therefore, among other boons, I ask for this, may this Satyavān be restored to life! Deprived

of my husband, I am as one dead! Without my husband, I do not wish for happiness. Without my husband, I do not wish for heaven itself. Without my husband I do not wish for prosperity. Without my husband I cannot make up my mind to live! Thou thyself hast bestowed on me the boon, namely, of a century of sons: yet thou takest away my husband! I ask for this boon,—May Satyavān be restored to life, for by that thy words will be made true.—'

"Mārkandeya continued,—'Thereupon saying,—*So be it*,—Vivaswat's son, Yama, the dispenser of justice, untied his noose, and with cheerful heart said these words to Sāvitri,—Thus, O auspicious and chaste lady, is thy husband freed by me! Thou wilt be able to take him back free from disease. And he will attain to success! And along with thee, he will attain a life of four hundred years. And celebrating sacrifices with due rites, he will achieve great fame in this world. And upon thee Satyavān will also beget a century of sons. And these Kshatriyas with their sons and grandsons will all be kings, and will always be famous in connection with thy name. And thy father also will beget an hundred sons on thy mother Mālavi. And under the name of the *Mālavas*, thy Kshatriya brothers, resembling the celestials, will be widely known along with their sons and daughters!—And having bestowed these boons on Sāvitri and having thus made her desist, the lord of the *Pitris* went to his own abode. And having obtained her lord, Sāvitri, after Yama had gone away, went back to the spot where her husband's ash-colored corpse lay. And seeing her lord on the ground, she approached him, and taking hold of him, she placed his head on her lap and herself sat down on the ground. Then Satyavān regained his cosciousness, and affectionately eyeing Sāvitrī again and again, like one come home after a sojourn in a strange land, he addressed her thus,—Alas, I have slept long! Wherefore didst thou not awake me? And where is that same sable person that was dragging me away?—At these words of his, Sāvitri said,—Thou hast, O bull among men, slept long on my lap! That restrainer of creatures, the worshipful Yama, hath gone away. Thou art refreshed, O

blessed one, and sleep hath forsaken thee, O son of a king! If thou art able, rise thou up! Behold, the night is deep!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Having regained consciousness, Satyavān rose up like one who had enjoyed a sweet sleep, and seeing every side covered with woods, said,—O girl of slender waist, I came with thee for procuring fruits. Then while I was cutting wood, I felt a pain in my head. And on account of that intense pain about my head I was unable to stand for any length of time, and, therefore, I lay on thy lap and slept. All this, O auspicious lady, I remember. Then, as thou didst embrace me, sleep stole away my senses. I then saw that it was dark all around. In the midst of it I saw a person of exceeding effulgence. If thou knowest everything, do thou then, O girl of slender waist, tell me whether what I saw was only a dream or a reality!—Thereupon, Sāvitri addressed him, saying,—The night deepens: I shall O prince, relate everything unto thee on the morrow. Arise, arise, may good betide thee! And, O thou of excellent vows, come and behold thy parents! The sun hath set a long while ago and the night deepens. These rangers of the night, having frightful voices, are walking about in glee. And sounds are heard, proceeding from the denizens of the forest treading through the woods. These terrible shrieks of jackals that are issuing from the south and the east make my heart tremble (in fear)!—Satyavān then said,—Covered with deep darkness, the wilderness hath worn a dreadful aspect. Thou wilt, therefore, not be able to discern the track, and consequently wilt not be able to go!—Then Sāvitri replied,—In consequence of a conflagration having taken place in the forest today a withered tree standeth aflame, and the flames being stirred by the wind are discerned now and then. I shall fetch some fire and light these faggots around. Do thou dispel all anxiety. I will do all (this) if thou darest not go, for I find thee unwell. Nor wilt thou be able to discover the way through this forest enveloped in darkness. Tomorrow when the woods become visible, we will go hence, if thou please! If, O sinless one, it is thy wish, we shall pass this night even here!—At these words of hers, Satyavān

replied,—The pain in my head is off; and I feel well in my limbs. With thy favour, I wish to behold my father and mother. Never before did I return to the hermitage after the proper time had passed away. Even before it is twilight my mother confineth me within the asylum. Even when I come out during the day, my parents become anxious on my account, and my father searcheth for me, together with all the inhabitants of the sylvan asylums. Before this, moved by deep grief, my father and mother had rebuked me many a time and often, saying,—*Thou comest having tarried long!* I am thinking of the pass they have today come to on my account; for, surely, great grief will be theirs when they miss me. One night before this, the old couple, loving me dearly, wept from deep sorrow and said unto me,—*Deprived of thee, O son, we cannot live for even a moment! As long as thou livest, so long, surely, we also will live! Thou art the crutch of these blind ones; on thee doth perpetuity of our race depend! On thee also depend our funeral cake, our fame, and our descendants!* My mother is old, and my father also is so. I am surely their crutch. If they see me not in the night, what, oh, will be their plight! I hate that slumber of mine for the sake of which my unoffending mother and my father have both been in trouble, and I myself also, placed as I am in such rending distress! Without my father and mother, I cannot bear to live. It is certain that by this time my blind father, his mind disconsolate with grief, is asking every one of the inhabitants of the hermitage about me! I do not, O fair girl, grieve so much for myself as I do for my sire, and for my weak mother ever obedient to her lord! Surely, they will be afflicted with extreme anguish on account of me. I hold my life so long as they live. And I know that they should be maintained by me and that I should do only what is agreeable to them!—'

"Mārkandeya continued.—'Having said this, that virtuous youth who loved and revered his parents, afflicted with grief, held up his arms and began to lament in accents of woe. And seeing her lord overwhelmed with sorrow, the virtuous Sāvitri wiped away the tears from his eyes and said,—If I

have observed austerities, and have given away in charity, and have performed sacrifice, may this night be for the good of my father-in-law, mother-in-law and husband! I do not remember having told a single falsehood, even in jest. Let my father-in-law and mother-in-law hold their lives by virtue of that truth!—Satyavān said,—I long for the sight of my father and mother! Therefore, O Sāvitri, proceed without delay. O beautiful damsel, I swear by my own self that if I find any evil to have befallen my father and mother, I will not live. If thou hast any regard for virtue, if thou wishest me to live, if it is thy duty to do what is agreeable to me, proceed thou to the hermitage!—The beautiful Sāvitri then rose, and tying up her hair, raised her husband in her arms. And Satyavān having risen, rubbed his limbs with his hands. And as he surveyed all around, his eyes fell upon his wallet. Then Sāvitri said unto him,—Tomorrow thou mayst gather fruits. And I shall carry thy axe for thy ease.—Then hanging up the wallet upon the bough of a tree, and taking up the axe, she reapproached her husband. And that lady of beautiful thighs, placing her husband's left arm upon her left shoulder, and embracing him with her right arm, proceeded with elephantine gait. Then Satyavān said,—O timid one, by virtue of habit, the (forest) paths are known to me. And, further, by the light of the mooon between the trees, I can see them. We have now reached the same path that we took in the morning for gathering fruits. Do thou, O auspicious one, proceed by the way that we had come: thou needst not any longer feel dubious about our path. Near that tract overgrown with *Palāça* trees, the way diverges into two. Do thou proceed along the path that lies to the north of it. I am now well and have got back my strength. I long to see my father and mother!—Saying this, Satyavān hastily proceeded towards the hermitage.'"

Thus ends the two hundred and ninety-sixth Section in the Pativratā-māhātmya of the Vana Parva.

Section CCLXLVII.

(Pativratā-māhātmya Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya said,—'Meanwhile the mighty Duymatsena, having regained his sight, could see everything. And when his vision grew clear he saw everything around him. And, O bull of the Bharata race, proceeding with his wife Saivyā to all the (neighbouring) asylums in search of his son, he became extremely distressed on his account. And that night the old couple went about searching in asylums, and rivers, and woods, and floods. And whenever they heard any sound, they stood raising their heads, anxiously thinking that their son was coming, and said,—O yonder cometh Satyavān with Sāvitri !—And they rushed hither and thither like maniacs, their feet torn, cracked, wounded, and bleeding, pierced with thorns and *Kuça* blades. Then all the Brāhmanas dwelling in that hermitage came unto them, and surrounding them on all sides, comforted them, and brought them back to their own asylum. And there Dyumatsena with his wife, surrounded by aged ascetics, was entertained with stories of monarchs of former times. And although that old couple, desirous of seeing their son, was comforted, yet recollecting the youthful days of their son, they became exceedingly sorry. And afflicted with grief, they began to lament in piteous accents, saying,—Alas, O son, alas, O chaste daughter-in-law, where are ye?—Then a truthful Brāhmana of the name of Suvarchas spake unto them, saying,—Considering the austerities, self-restraint, and behaviour of his wife Sāvitri, there can be no doubt that Satyavān liveth!—And Gautama said,—I have studied all the *Vedas* with their branches, and I have acquired great ascetic merit. And I have led a celebate existence, practising also the *Brahmacharya* mode of life. I have gratified Agni and my superiors. With rapt soul I have also observed all the vows; and I have, according to the ordinance, frequently lived upon air alone. By virtue of this ascetic merit, I am cognisant of all the doings of others. Therefore, do thou take it for certain that

Satyavān liveth.—Thereupon his diciple said,—The words that have fallen from the lips of my preceptor can never be false. Therefore, Satyavān surely liveth.—And the *Rishis* said,—Considering the auspicious marks that his wife Sāvitri beareth and all of which indicate immunity from widowhood, there can be no doubt that Satyavān liveth !—And Varadwāja said,—Having regard to the ascetic merit, self-restraint, and conduct of his wife Sāvitri, there can be no doubt that Satyavān liveth.—And Dālbhya said,—Since thou hast regained thy sight, and since Sāvitri hath gone away after completion of the vow, without taking any food, there can be no doubt that Satyavān liveth.—And Apastamba said,—From the manner in which the voices of birds and wild animals are being heard through the stillness of the atmosphere on all sides, and from the fact also of thy having regained the use of thy eyes, indicating thy usefulness for earthly purposes once more, there can be no doubt that Satyavān liveth.—And Dhaumya said,—As thy son is graced with every virtue, and as he is the beloved of all, and as he is possessed of marks betokening a long life, there can be no doubt that Satyavān liveth.—'

"Mārkandeya continued,—'Thus cheered by those ascetics of truthful speech, Dyumatsena pondering over those points, attained a little ease. A little while after, Sāvitri with her husband Satyavān reached the hermitage during the night and entered it with a glad heart. The Brāhmanas then said,—Beholding this meeting with thy son, and thy restoration to eye-sight, we all wish thee well, O lord of earth. Thy meeting with thy son, thy sight of thy daughter-in-law, and thy restoration to sight—constitute a threefold prosperity which thou hast gained. What we all have said must come to pass: there can be no doubt of this. Henceforth thou shalt rapidly grow in prosperity.—Then, O Prithā's son, the twice-born ones lighted a fire and sat themselves down before king Dyumatsena. And Saivyā, and Satyavān, and Sāvitri who stood apart, their hearts free from grief, sat down with the permission of them all. Then, O Pārtha, seated with the monarch, those dwellers of the woods, actuated by curiousity, asked the king's son, saying,—Why didst thou not, O illus-

trious one, come back earlier with thy wife? Why hast thou come so late in the night? What obstacle prevented thee? We do not know, O son of a king, why thou hast caused such alarm to us, and to thy father and mother. It behoveth thee to tell us all about this.—Thereupon, Satyavān said,—With the permission of my father, I went to the woods with Sāvitri. There, as I was hewing wood in the forest, I felt a pain in my head. And in consequence of the pain, I fell into a deep sleep. This is all that I remember. I had never slept so long before. I have come so late at night, in order that ye might not grieve (on my account). There is no other reason for this.—Gautama then said,—Thou knowest not then the cause of thy father's sudden restoration to sight. It, therefore, behoveth Sāvitri to relate it. I wish to hear it (from thee), for surely thou art conversant with the mysteries of good and evil. And, O Sāvitri, I know thee to be like the goddess *Sāvitri** herself in splendour. Thou must know the cause of this. Therefore, do thou relate it truly! If it should not be kept a secret, do thou unfold it unto us!—At these words of Gautama, Sāvitri said,—It is as ye surmise. Your desire shall surely not be unfulfiled. I have no secret to keep. Listen to the truth then! The high-souled Nārada had predicted the death of my husband. Today was the appointed time. I could not, therefore, bear to be separated from my husband's company. And after he had fallen asleep, Yama, accompanied by his messengers, presented himself before him, and tying him, began to take him away towards the region inhabited by the *Pitris*. Thereupon I began to praise that august god, with truthful words. And he granted me five boons, of which do ye hear from me! For my father-in-law I have obtained these two boons, *viz*,—his restoration to sight as also to his kingdom. My father also hath obtained an hundred sons. And I myself have obtained an hundred sons. And my husband Satyavān hath obtained a life of four hundred years. It was for the sake of my husband's life that I had observed that vow. Thus have I narrated unto you in detail

* The progenitrix of the *Vedas*.

the cause by which this mighty misfortune of mine was afterwards turned into happiness.—The *Rishis* said,—O chaste lady of excellent disposition, observant of vows and endued with virtue, and sprung from an illustrious line by thee hath the race of this foremost of kings, which was overwhelmed with calamities, and was sinking in an ocean of darkness, been rescued.—'

"Mārkandeya continued,—'Then having applauded and reverenced that best of women, those *Rishis* there assembled bade farewell to that foremost of kings as well as to his son. And having saluted them thus, they speedily went, in peace with cheerful hearts, to their respective abodes.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and ninety-seventh Section in the Pativratā-māhātmya of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXLVIII.

(Pativratā-māhātmya Parva continued.)

"Mārkandeya continued,—'When the night had passed away, and the solar orb had risen, those ascetics, having performed their morning rites, assembled together. And although those mighty sages again and again spake unto Dyumatsena of the high fortune of Sāvitri, yet they were never satisfied. And it so happened, O king, that there came to that hermitage a large body of people from Sālwa. And they brought tidings of the enemy of Dyumatsena having been slain by his own minister. And they related unto him all that had happened, *viz*, how having heard that the usurper had been slain with all his friends and allies by his minister, his troops had all fled, and how all the subjects had become unanimous (in behalf of their legetimate king), saying,—Whether possessed of sight or not, even he shall be our king! —And they said,—We have been sent to thee in consequence of that resolve. These cars of thine, and this army also consisting of four kinds of forces, have arrived for thee! Good betide thee, O king! Do thou come! Thou hast been proclaimed in the city. Do thou for ever occupy the station belonging to thy father and grand-father!—And beholding

the king possessed of sight and able-bodied, they bowed down their heads, their eyes expanded with wonder. Then having worshipped those old Brāhmanas dwelling in the hermitage and honored by them in return, the king set out for his city. And surrounded by the soldiers, Saivyā also, accompanied by Sāvitri, went in a vehicle furnished with shining sheets and borne on the shoulders of men. Then the priests with joyful hearts installed Dyumatsena on the throne with his high-souled son as prince-regent. And after the lapse of a long time, Sāvitri gave birth to a century of sons, all warlike and unretreating from battle, and enhancing the fame of Sālwa's race. And she also had a century of highly powerful uterine brothers borne unto Açwapati, the lord of the Madras, by Mālavi. Thus, O son of Prithā, did Sāvitri raise from a pitiable plight to high fortune, herself, and her father and mother, her father-in-law and mother-in-law, as also the race of her husband. And like that gentle lady Sāvitri, the auspicious daughter of Drupada, endued with excellent character, will rescue you all!'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Thus exhorted by that high-souled sage, the son of Pāndu, O king, with his mind free from anxiety, continued to live in the forest of Kāmyaka. The man that listeneth with reverence to the excellent story of Sāvitri, attaineth to happiness, and success in everything, and never meeteth with misery!"

Thus ends the two hundred and ninety-eighth Section in the Pativratā-māhātmya of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCLXLIX.

(Kundalāharana Parva .)

Janamejaya said.—"What, O Brāhmana, was that great fear entertained by Yudhishthira in respect of Karna, for which Lomaça had conveyed to the son of Pāndu a message of deep import from Indra in these words,—*That intense fear of thine which thou dost never express to any one, I will remove after Dhananjaya goeth from hence?* And, O

best of ascetics, why was it that the virtuous Yudhishthira never expressed it to any one ? "

Vaiçampāyana said.—" As thou askest me, O tiger among kings, I will relate that history unto thee ! Do thou listen to my words, O best of the Bhāratas ! After twelve years (of their exile) had passed away and the thirteenth year had set in, Sakra, ever friendly to the sons of Pāndu, resolved to beg of Karna (his ear-rings). And, O mighty monarch, ascertaining this intention of the great chief of the celestials about (Karna's) ear-rings, Surya, having effulgence for his wealth, went unto Karna. And, O foremost of kings, while that hero devoted to the Brāhmanas and truthful in speech was lying down at night at his ease on a rich bed overlaid with a costly sheet, the effulgent deity, filled with kindness and affection for his son, showed himself, O Bhārata, unto him in his dreams. And assuming from ascetic power the form of a handsome Brāhmana versed in the *Vedas*, Surya sweetly said unto Karna, these words for his benefit.—'O son, do thou, O Karna, listen to these words of mine, O thou foremost of truthful persons ! O mighty-armed one, I tell thee today from affection, what is for thy great good ! With the object, O Karna, of obtaining thy ear-rings, Sakra, moved by the desire of benefiting the sons of Pāndu, will come unto thee, disguised as a Brāhmana ! He, as well as all the world, knoweth thy character, *viz.*, that when solicited by pious people, thou givest away but never takest in gift ! Thou, O son, givest unto Brāhmanas wealth or any other thing that is asked of thee and never refusest anything to anybody. Knowing thee to be such, the subduer himself of Pāka will come to beg of thee thy ear-rings and coat of mail. When he beggeth the ear-rings of thee, it behoveth thee not to give them away, but to gratify him with sweet speeches to the best of thy power. Even this is for thy supreme good ! While asking thee for the ear-rings, thou shalt, with various reasons, repeatedly refuse Purandara who is desirous of obtaining them, offering him, instead, various other kinds of wealth, such as gems and women and kine, and citing various precedents.*

* In the original, *nidarçana.*—*T.*

If thou, O Karna, givest away thy beautiful ear-rings born with thee, thy life being shortened, thou wilt meet with death! Arrayed in thy mail and ear-rings, thou wilt, O bestower of honors, be incapable of being slain by foes in battle! Do thou lay to heart these words of mine! Both these jewelled ornaments have sprung from *Amrita*. Therefore, they should be preserved by thee, if thy life is at all dear to thee.' "

"Hearing these words, Karna said,—'Who art thou that tellest me so, showing me such kindness? If it pleaseth thee, tell me, O illustrious one, who thou art in the guise of a Brāhmana!'—The Brāhmana thereupon said,—'O son, I am he of a thousand rays! Out of affection, I point out to thee the path! Act thou according to my words, as it is for thy great good to do so!' Karna replied,—'Surely, this itself is highly fortunate for me that the god himself of splendour addresses me today, seeking my welfare. Listen, however, to these words of mine! May it please thee, O bestower of boons, it is only from affection that I tell thee this! If I am dear to thee, I should not be dissuaded from the observance of my vow! O thou that art possest of the wealth of effulgence, the whole world knoweth this to be my vow that, of a verity, I am prepared to give away life itself unto superior Brāhmanas! If, O best of all rangers of the sky, Sakra cometh to me, disguised as a Brāhmana, to beg for the benefit of the sons of Pāndu, I will, O chief of the celestials, give him the ear-rings and the excellent mail, so that my fame which hath spread over the three worlds may not suffer any diminution! For persons like us, it is not fit to save life by a blameworthy act. On the contrary, it is even proper for us to meet death with the approbation of the world and under circumstances bringing fame. Therefore, will I bestow upon Indra the ear-rings with my coat of mail. If the slayer himself of Vala and Vritra cometh to ask for the ear-rings for the benefit of the sons of Pāndu, that will conduce to my fame, leading at the same time to *his* infamy! O thou possessed of splendour, I wish for fame in this world, even if it is to be purchased with life itself; for they that

have fame enjoy the celestial regions, while they that are destitute of it are lost. Fame keepeth people alive in this world even like a mother, while infamy killeth men even though they may move about with bodies undestroyed. O lord of the worlds, O thou possessed of the wealth of effulgence, that fame is the life of men is evidenced by this ancient *sloka* sung by the Creator himself,—*In the next world it is fame that is the chief support of a person, while in this world pure fame lengthens life.* Therefore, by giving away my ear-rings and mail with both of which I was born, I will win eternal fame! And by duly giving away to Brāhmanas according to the ordinance, by offering up my body (as a gift to the gods) in the sacrifice of war,* by achieving feats difficult of performance, and by conquering my foes in fight, I will acquire nothing but renown. And by dispelling on the field of battle the fears of the affrighted that may beg for their lives, and relieving old men and boys and Brāhmanas from terror and anxiety, I will win excellent fame and the highest heaven. My fame is to be protected with the sacrifice of even my life. Even this, know thou, is my vow! By giving away such a valuable gift to Maghavān disguised as a Brāhmana, I will, O god, acquire in this world the most exalted state.' "

Thus ends the two hundred and ninety-ninth Section in the Kundalāharana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCC.

(Kundalāharana Parva continued.)

"Surya said,—'Never do, O Karna, anything that is harmful to thyself and thy friends, thy sons, thy wives, thy father, and thy mother! O thou best of those that bear life, people desire renown (in this world) and lasting fame in heaven, without wishing to sacrifice their bodies. But as thou desirest

---

* War or rather battle is frequently spoken of as a *yajna* or sacrifice, directly leading to heaven, so far of course as they are concerned that fall in fight with heroism.—*T.*

undying fame at the expense of thy life, she will, without doubt, snatch away thy life! O bull among men, in this world, the father, the mother, the son, and other relatives are of use only to him that is alive. O tiger among men, as regards kings, it is only when they are alive that prowess can be of any use to them. Do thou understand this! O thou of exceeding splendour, fame is for the good of those only that are alive! Of what use is fame to the dead, whose bodies have been reduced to ashes? One that is dead cannot enjoy renown. It is only when one is alive that one can enjoy it. The fame of one that is dead is like a garland of flowers around the neck of a corpse. As thou reverest me, I tell thee this for thy benefit, because thou art a worshipper of mine! They that worship me are always protected by me. That also is another reason for my addressing thee thus! Thinking, again, O mighty-armed one, that *this one revereth me with great reverence*,—I have been inspired with reverence for thee! Do thou, therefore, act according to my words! There is, besides, some profound mystery in all this, ordained by fate. It is for this, that I tell thee so. Do thou act without mistrust of any kind! O bull among men, it is not fit for thee to know this which is a secret to the very gods. Therefore, I do not reveal that secret unto thee. Thou wilt, however, understand it in time. I repeat what I have already said. Do thou, O Rādhā's son, lay my words to heart! When the wielder of the thunder-bolt asketh thee for them, do thou never give him thy ear-rings! O thou of exceeding splendour, with thy handsome ear-rings, thou lookest beautiful, even like the Moon himself in the clear firmament, between the *Viçākha* constellations! Do thou know that fame availeth only the person that is living. Therefore, when the lord of the celestials will ask thee for the ear-rings, thou shouldst, O son, refuse him! Repeating again and again answers fraught with various reasons, thou wilt, O sinless one, be able to remove the eagerness of the lord of the celestials for the possession of the ear-rings. Do thou, O Karna, alter Purandara's purpose by urging answers fraught with reason and grave import and adorned with sweetness

and suavity. Thou dost always, O tiger among men, challenge him that can draw the bow with his left hand, and the heroic Arjuna also will surely encounter thee in fight. But when furnished with thy ear-rings, Arjuna will never be able to vanquish thee in fight even if Indra himself come to his assistance. Therefore, O Karna, if thou wishest to vanquish Arjuna in battle, these handsome ear-rings of thine should never be parted with to Sakra.' "

Thus ends the three hundredth Section in the Kundalāharana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCI.

(Kundalāharana Parva continued.)

"Karna said,—'As thou, O lord of splendour, knowest me for thy worshipper, so also thou knowest that there is nothing which I cannot give away in charity, O thou of fiery rays! Neither my wives, nor my sons, nor my own self, nor my friends, are so dear to me as thou, on account of the veneration I feel for thee, O lord of splendour! Thou knowest, O maker of light, that high-souled persons bear a loving regard for their dear worshippers. *Karna revereth me and is dear to me. He knoweth no other deity in heaven,*—thinking this thou hast, O lord, said unto me what is for my benefit. Yet, O thou of bright rays, again do I beseech thee with bended head, again do I place myself in thy hands. I will repeat the answer I have already given. It behoveth thee to forgive me! Death itself is not fraught with such terrors for me as untruth! As regards especially the Brāhmanas, again, I do not hesitate to yield up my life even for them! And, O divine one, respecting what thou hast said unto me of Fālguna the son of Pāndu, let thy grief born of thy anxiety of heart, O lord of splendour, be dispelled touching him and myself; for I shall surely conquer Arjuna in battle! Thou knowest, O deity, that I have great strength of weapons obtained from Jāmadagnya and the high-souled Drona. Permit me now, O foremost of celestials, to observe my vow, so that unto him of the thunderbolt coming to beg of me, I may give away even my life!'

"Surya said,—'If, O son, thou givest away thy ear-rings to the wielder of the thunder-bolt, O thou of mighty strength, thou shouldst also, for the purpose of securing victory, speak unto him, saying,—*O thou of a hundred sacrifices, I shall give thee the ear-rings under a condition.*—Furnished with the ear-rings, thou art certainly incapable of being slain by any being. Therefore it is, O son, that desirous of beholding thee slain in battle by Arjuna, the destroyer of the Dānavas desireth to deprive thee of thy ear-rings. Repeatedly adoring with truthful words that lord of the celestials, *viz*, Purandara armed with weapons incapable of being frustrated, do thou also beseech him, saying,—*Give me an infallible dart capable of slaying all foes, and I will, O thousand-eyed deity, give thee the ear-rings with the excellent coat of mail !*—On this condition shouldst thou give the ear-rings unto Sakra. With that dart, O Karna, thou wilt slay thy foes in battle; for, O mighty-armed one, that dart of the chief of celestials doth not return to the hand that hurleth it, without slaying enemies by hundreds and by thousands!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said this, the thousand-rayed deity suddenly vanished away. The next day, after having told his prayers,* Karna related his dream unto the Sun. And Vrisha related unto him the vision he had seen, and all that had passed between them in the night. Thereupon, having heard everything, that enemy of Swarbhānu,† that lord, the resplendent and divine Surya, said unto him with a smile,—'It is even so!' Then Rādhā's son, that slayer of hostile heroes, knowing all about the matter, and desirous of obtaining the dart, remained in expectation of Vāsava."

Thus ends the three hundred and first Section in the Kundalāharana of the Vana Parva.

---

* In the original, *yapa*, *i. e.* silently repeating certain *mantras*.—*T.*

† *Rāhu*.—*T.*

SECTION CCCII.

(Kundalāharana Parva continued.)

Janamejaya said.—" What was that secret which was not revealed to Karna by the deity of warm rays ? Of what kind also were those ear-rings, and of what sort was that coat of mail ? Whence, too, was that mail and those ear-rings ? All this, O best of men, I wish to hear ! O thou possessed of the wealth of asceticism, do tell me all this !"

Vaiçampāyana said.—" I will, O monarch, tell thee that secret which was not ravealed by the deity possessed of the wealth of effulgence. I will also describe unto thee those ear-rings and that coat of mail. Once on a time, O king, there appeared before Kuntibhoja a Brāhmana of fierce energy and tall stature, bearing a beard and matted locks, and carrying a staff in his hand. And he was agreeable to the eye, and of faultless limbs, and seemed to blaze forth in splendour. And he was possessed of a yellow-blue complexion like that of honey. And his speech was mellifluous, and he was adorned with ascetic merit and a knowledge of the *Vedas*. And that person of great ascetic merit, addressing king Kuntibhoja, said,—'O thou that art free from pride, I wish to live as a guest in thy house feeding on the food obtained as alms from thee ! Neither thy followers, nor thou thyself, shall ever act in such a way as to produce my displeasure ! If, O sinless one, it liketh thee, I would then live in thy house thus ! I shall leave thy abode when I wish, and come back when I please. And, O king, no one shall offend me in respect of my food or bed.' —Then Kuntibhoja spake unto him these words cheerfully,— 'Be it so, and more.' And he again said unto him,—'O thou of great wisdom, I have an illustrious daughter named Prithā. And she beareth an excellent character, is observant of vows, chaste, and of subdued senses. And she shall attend on thee and minister unto thee with reverence. And thou wilt be pleased with her disposition !'—And having said this to that Brāhmana and duly paid him homage, the king went to his daughter Prithā of large eyes, and spake thus unto her,—'O

child, this eminently pious Brāhmana is desirous of dwelling in my house! I have accepted his proposal, saying,—*So be it*, relying, O child, on thy aptitude and skill in ministering unto Brāhmanas. It, therefore, behoveth thee to act in such a manner that my words may not be untrue. Do thou give him with alacrity whatever this reverend Brāhmana possessed of ascetic merit and engaged in the study of the Vedas, may want. Let everything that this Brāhmana asketh for be given to him cheerfully. A Brāhmana is the embodiment of pre-eminent energy: he is also the embodiment of the highest ascetic merit. It is in consequence of the virtuous practices of Brāhmanas that the sun shineth in the heavens. It was for their disregard of Brāhmanas that were deserving of honor that the mighty *Asura* Vātāpi, as also Tālajangha, was destroyed by the curse of the Brāhmanas. For the present, O child, it is a highly virtuous one of that order that is entrusted to thy keep! Thou shouldst always tend this Brāhmana with concentrated mind. O daughter, I know that from childhood upwards, thou hast ever been attentive to Brāhmanas, and superiors, and relatives, and servants, and friends, to thy mothers and myself. I know thou bearest thyself well, bestowing proper regard upon everyone. And, O thou of faultless limbs, in the city or the interior of my palace, on account of thy gentle behaviour, there is not one, even among the servants, that is dissatisfied with thee. I have, therefore, thought thee fit to wait upon all Brāhmanas of wrathful temper. Thou art, O Prithā, a girl and hast been adopted as my daughter! Thou art born in the race of the Vrishnis, and art the favorite daughter of Sura. Thou wert, O girl, given to me gladly by thy father himself. The sister of Vasudeva by birth, thou art (by adoption) the foremost of my children. Having promised me in these words,—*I will give thee my first-born*,—thy father gladly gave thee to me while thou wert yet in thy infancy. It is for this reason that thou art my daughter. Born in such a race and reared in such a race, thou hast come from one happy state to another, like a lotus transferred from one lake to another. O auspicious girl, women, specially they that are of mean extraction, although they may with difficulty

be kept under restraint, become in consequence of their unripe age, generally deformed in character. But thou, O Prithā, art born in a royal race, and thy beauty also is extraordinary. And then, O girl, thou art endued with every accomplishment. Do thou, therefore, O damsel, renouncing pride and haughtiness and a sense of self-importance, wait upon and worship the boon-giving Brāhmana, and thereby attain, O Prithā, to an auspicious state ! By acting thus, O auspicious and sinless girl, thou wilt surely attain to auspiciousness ! But if on the contrary, thou stirrest up the anger of this best of the twice-born ones, my entire race will be consumed by him !' "

Thus ends the three hundred and second Section in the Kundalāharana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCIII.

(Kundalāharana Parva continued.)

"Kunti said,—'According to thy promise, I will, O king, with concentrated mind, serve that Brāhmana. O foremost of kings, I do not say this falsely. It is my nature to worship Brāhmanas. And, as in the present case, my doing so would be agreeable to thee, even this would be highly conducive to my welfare. Whether that worshipful one cometh in the evening, or in the morning, or at night, or even at midnight, he will have no reason to be angry with me ! O foremost of kings, to do good by serving the twice-born ones, observing all thy commands, is what I consider to be highly profitable to me, O best of men ! Do thou, therefore, O foremost of monarchs, rely on me ! That best of Brāhmanas, while residing in thy house, shall never have cause for dissatisfaction. I tell thee truly. I shall, O king, be always attentive to that which is agreeable to this Brāhmana, and which is fraught also with good to thee, O sinless one ! I know full well that Brāhmanas that are eminently virtuous, when propitiated, can bestow salvation, and when displeased, are capable of bringing about destruction upon the offender. Therefore, I shall please this foremost of Brāhmanas. Thou wilt not, O monarch, come to any grief from that best of regenerate persons, owing

to any act of mine. In consequence of the transgressions of monarchs, Brāhmanas, O foremost of kings, become the cause of evil to them, as Chyavana had become, in consequence of the act of Sukanyā. I will, therefore, O king, with great regularity, wait upon that best of Brāhmanas, according to thy instructions in that respect!' And when she had thus spoken at length, the king embraced and cheered her, and instructed her in detail as to what should be done by her. And the king said,—'Thou shalt, O gentle maid, act even thus, without fear, for my good as also thy own, and for the good of thy race also, O thou of faultless limbs!' And having said this, the illustrious Kuntibhoja, who was devoted to the Brāhmanas, made over the girl Prithā to that Brāhmana, saying,—'This my daughter, O Brāhmana, is of tender age and brought up in luxury. If, therefore, she transgresses at any time, do thou not take that to heart! Illustrious Brāhmanas are never angry with old men, children, and ascetics, even if these transgress frequently. In respect of even a great wrong, forgiveness is due from the regenerate. The worship, therefore, O best of Brāhmanas, that is offered to the best of one's power and exertion, should be acceptable!' Hearing these words of the monarch, the Brāhmana said,—'So be it!' Thereupon, the king became highly pleased and assigned unto him apartments that were white as swans or the beams of the moon. And in the room intended for the sacrificial fire, the king placed a brilliant seat especially constructed for him. And the food and other things that were offered unto the Brāhmana were of the same excellent kind. And casting aside idleness and all sense of self-importance, the princess addressed herself with right good will to wait upon the Brāhmana. And the chaste Kunti, endued with purity of conduct, went thither for serving the Brāhmana. And duly waiting upon that Brāhmana as if he were a very god, she gratified him highly."

Thus ends the three hundred and third Section in the Kundalāharana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCIV.

(Kundalāharana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"And that maiden of rigid vows, O mighty monarch, by, with a pure heart, serving that Brāhmana of rigid vows, succeeded in gratifying him. And, O foremost of kings, saying,—'I will come back in the morning,'—that best of Brāhmanas sometimes came in the evening or in the night. Him, however, the maiden worshipped at all hours with sumptuous food and drink and bed. And as day after day passed away, her attentions to him, in respect of food and seat and bed, increased instead of undergoing any diminution. And, O king, even when the Brāhmana reproved her, finding fault with any of her arrangements, or addressed her in harsh words, Prithā did not do anything that was disagreeable to him. And on many occasions the Brāhmana came back after the appointed hour had long passed away. And on many occasions (such as the depth of night) when food was hard to procure, he said,—'Give me food!' But on all those occasions, saying,—'All is ready,'—Prithā held before him the fare. And even like a disciple, a daughter, or a sister, that blameless gem of a girl with a devoted heart, O king, gratified that foremost of Brāhmanas. And that best of Brāhmanas became well-pleased with her conduct and ministrations. And he received those attentions of hers, valuing them rightly. And, O Bhārata, her father asked her every morning and evening, saying,—'O daughter, is the Brāhmana satisfied with thy ministrations?' And that illustrious maiden used to reply, —'Exceedingly well!' And thereupon, the high-souled Kuntibhoja experienced the greatest delight. And when after a full year that best of ascetics was unable to find any fault whatever in Prithā, who was engaged in ministering unto him; well-pleased he said unto her,—'O gentle maid, I have been well-pleased with thy attentions, O beautiful girl! Do thou, O blessed girl, ask even for such boons as are difficult of being obtained by men in this world, and obtaining which, thou mayst surpass in fame all the women in this world!' At these words of his, Kunti said,—'Everything hath already been done

in my behalf, since thou, O chief of those that are versed in the *Vedas*, and my father also, have been pleased with me! As regards the boons, I consider them as already obtained by me, O Brāhmana!' The Brāhmana thereupon said,—'If, O gentle maid, thou dost not, O thou of sweet smiles, wish to obtain boons from me, do thou then take this *mantra* from me for invoking the celestials! Any one amongst the celestials whom thou mayst invoke by utterring this *mantra*, will appear before thee and be under thy power. Willing or not, by virtue of this *mantra*, that deity in gentle guise, and assuming the obedient attitude of a slave, will become subject to thy power!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed, that faultless maiden could not, O king, from fear of a curse, refuse for the second time compliance with the wishes of that best of the twice-born ones. Then, O king, that Brāhmana imparted unto that girl of faultless limbs those *mantras* which are recited in the beginning of the *Atharvan Veda*. And, O king, having imparted unto her those *mantras*, he said unto Kuntibhoja,—'I have, O monarch, dwelt happily in thy house, always worshipped with due regard and gratified by thy daughter. I shall now depart.' And saying this, he vanished there and then. And beholding that Brāhmana vanish there and then, the king was struck with amazement. And the monarch then treated his daughter Prithā with proper regard."

Thus ends the three hundred and fourth Section in the Kundalāharana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCV.

(Kundalāharana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"When that foremost of Brāhmanas had gone away on some other errand, the maiden began to ponder over the virtue of those *mantras*. And she said to herself,—'Of what nature are these *mantras* that have been bestowed on me by that high-souled one? I shall without delay test their power.' And as she was thinking in this way, she suddenly perceived indications of the approach of her season. And her season having arrived while she was yet

unmarried, she blushed in shame. And it came to pass that as she was seated in her chamber on a rich bed, she beheld the solar orb rising in the east. And both the mind and the eyes of that maiden of excellent waist became rivetted fast upon the solar orb. And she gazed and gazed on that orb without being satiated with the beauty of the morning Sun. And she suddenly became gifted with celestial sight. And then she beheld that god of divine form accoutred in mail and adorned with ear-rings. And at sight of the god, O lord of men, she bacame curious as to the (potency of the) *mantras.* And thereupon that maiden resolved to invoke him. And having recourse to *prānāyāma,** she invoked the Maker of day. And thus invoked by her, O king, the Maker of day speedily presented himself. And he was of a yellowish hue like honey, and was possessed of mighty arms. And his neck was marked with lines like those of a conch-shell. And furnished with armlets, and decked with a diadem, he came smiling, and illumining all the directions. And it was by *Yoga* power that he divided himself in twain, one of which continued to give heat, and the other appeared before Kunti. And he addressed Kunti in words that were exceedingly sweet, saying,—'O gentle maiden, over-powered by thy *mantras,* I come hither obedient to thee. Subject as I am to thy power, what shall I do, O queen? Tell me, for I shall do whatever thou mayst command!' Hearing these words of the deity, Kunti said,—'O worshipful one, go thou back to the place thou hast come from! I invoked thee from curiosity alone. Pardon me, O worshipful one!' Surya then said,—'O damsel of slender waiste, I will, even as thou hast said, return to the place I have come from! Having called a celestial, it is not, however, proper to send him away in vain. Thy intention, O blessed one, it is to have from Surya a son furnished with a coat of mail and ear-rings, and who in point of prowess would be

* Suspension of breath according to certain defined rules. This is a kind of *Yoga* for fixing the mind, and withdraw it from all external surroundings. The two twilight prayers of a Brāhmana, in fact, many of the religious rites, cannot be performed without the *Prānāyāma.*—*T.*

beyond compare in this world! Do thou, therefore, O damsel of elephantine gait, surrender thy person to me! Thou shalt then have, O lady, a son after thy wish! O gentle girl, O thou of sweet smiles, I will go back after having known thee! If thou do not gratify me today by obeying my word, I shall in anger curse thee, thy father, and that Brāhmana also. For thy fault, I will surely consume them all. And I shall inflict condign punishment on that foolish father of thine that knoweth not this transgression of thine, and on that Brāhmana also, who hath bestowed the *mantras* on thee without knowing thy disposition and character! Yonder are all the celestials in heaven, with Purandara at their head, who are looking at me with derisive smiles at my being deceived by thee, O lady! Look at those celestials, for thou art now possessed of celestial sight! Before this I have endued thee with celestial vision, in consequence of which thou couldst see me!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thereupon the princess beheld the celestials standing in the firmament, each in his proper sphere, even as she saw before her that highly resplendent deity furnished with rays, *viz.* Surya himself. And beholding them all, the girl became frightened and her face was suffused with blushes of shame. And then she addressed Surya, saying, —'O lord of rays, go thou back to thy own region.* On account of my maidenhood, this outrage of thine is fraught with woe to me! It is only one's father, mother, and other superiors, that are capable of giving away their daughter's body. Virtue I shall never sacrifice, seeing that in this world the keeping of their persons inviolate is deemed as the highest duty of women, and is held in high regard! O thou possessed of wealth of splendour, it is only to test the power of my *mantras* that I have, from mere chlidishness, summoned thee. Considering that this hath been done by a girl of tender years, it behoveth thee, O lord, to forgive her!' Then Surya said,—'It is because I consider thee a girl that, O Kunti, I am speaking to thee so mildly. To one that is not so I would not concede this. Do thou, O Kunti, surrender

* In the original, *Vimānam*, *i. e.* a car.—*T.*

thyself! Thou shalt surely attain happiness thereby. Since, O timid maiden, thou hast invoked me with *mantras*, it is not proper for me to go away without any purpose being attained, for, if I do so, I shall then, O thou of faultless limbs, be the object of laughter in the world, and, O beauteous damsel, a bye-word with all the celestials. Do thou, therefore, yield to me! By that thou shalt obtain a son even like myself, and thou shalt also be much praised in all the worlds.'"

Thus ends the three hundred and fifth Section in the Kundalāharana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCVI.

(Kundalāharana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—'Although that noble girl addressed him in various sweet words, yet she was unable to dissuade that deity of a thousand rays. And when she failed to dissuade the dispeller of darkness, at last from fear of a curse, she reflected, O king, for a long time!—'How may my innocent father, and that Brāhmana also, escape the angry Surya's curse for my sake? Although energy and asceticism are capable of destroying sins, yet even honest persons, if they be of unripe age, should not foolishly court them. By foolishly acting in that way I have today been placed in a frightful situation. Indeed, I have been placed entirely within the grasp of this deity. Yet how can I do what is sinful by taking it on myself to surrender my person to him?'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Afflicted with fear of a curse, and thinking much within herself, an utter stupefaction of the senses came upon her. And she was so confounded that she could not settle what to do. Afraid, on the one hand, O king, of the reproach of friends if she obeyed the deity, and, on the other, of his curse if she disobeyed him, the damsel at last, O foremost of kings, said these words unto that god, in accents tremulous with bashfulness,—'O god, as my father and mother and friends are still living, this violation of duty on my part should not take place. If, O god, I commit this unlawful act with thee, the reputation of this

race shall be sacrificed in this world on my account. If thou, however, O thou foremost of those that impart heat, deem this to be a meritorious act, I shall then fulfil thy desire even though my relatives may not have bestowed me on thee ! May I remain chaste after having surrendered my person to thee ! Surely, the virtue, the reputation, the fame, and the life of every creature are established in thee !' Hearing these words of hers, Surya replied,—'O thou of sweet smiles, neither thy father, nor thy mother, nor any other superior of thine, is competent to give thee away ! May good betide thee, O beauteous damsel ! Do thou listen to my words ! It is because a virgin desireth the company of every one, that she hath received the appellation of *Kanyā*, from the root *kama* meaning to desire. Therefore, O thou of excellent hips and the fairest complexion, a virgin is, by nature, free in this world. Thou shalt not, O lady, by any means be guilty of any sin by complying with my request. And how can I, who am desirous of the welfare of all creatures, commit an unrighteous act ? That all men and women should be bound by no restraints, is the law of nature. The opposite condition is the perversion of the natural state. Thou shalt remain a virgin after having gratified me. And thy son shall also be mighty-armed and illustrious !' Thereupon, Kunti said,—'If, O dispeller of darkness, I obtain a son from thee, may he be furnished with a coat of mail and ear-rings, and may he be mighty-armed and endued with great strength !' Hearing these words of hers, Surya answered,—'O gentle maiden, thy son shall be mighty-armed and decked with ear-rings and a celestial coat of mail. And both his ear-rings and coat of mail will be made of *Amrita*, and his coat will also be invulnerable.' Kunti then said,—'If the excellent mail and ear-rings of the son thou wilt beget on me, be, indeed, made of *Amrita*, then, O god, O worshipful deity, let thy purpose be fulfiled ! May he be powerful, strong, energetic, and handsome, even like thee, and may he also be endued with virtue !' Surya then said,—'O princess, O excellent damsel, these ear-rings had been given to me by Aditi. O timid lady, I will bestow them, as also this excellent mail, on thy son !'—

Kunti then said,—'Excellent well, O worshipful one! If my son, O lord of light, become so, I will, as thou sayest, gratify thee!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Hearing these words of hers, Surya said,—'So be it!" And that ranger of the skies, that enemy of Swarbhānu, with soul absorbed in *Yoga*, entered into Kunti, and touched her on the navel. At this, that damsel, on account of Surya's energy, became stupified. And that reverend lady then fell down on her bed, deprived of her senses. Surya then addressed her, saying—'I will now depart, O thou of graceful hips! Thou shalt bring forth a son who will become the foremost of all wielders of weapons. At the same time thou shalt remain a virgin!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Then, O foremost of kings, as the highly effulgent Surya was about to depart, that girl bashfully said unto him,—'So be it!' And it was thus that the daughter of king Kuntibhoja, importuned by Surya, had, after soliciting a son from him, fallen down stupified on that excellent bed, like a broken creeper. And it was thus that that deity of fierce rays, stupifying her, entered into her by virtue of *Yoga* power, and placed his ownself within her womb. The deity, however, did not sully her by deflowering her in the flesh. And after Surya had gone away, that girl regained her consciousness."

Thus ends the three hundred and sixth Section in the Kundalāharana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCVII.

(Kundalāharana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" It was, O lord of earth, on the first day of the lighted fortnight during the tenth month of the year that Prithā conceived a son like the lord himself of the stars in the firmament. And that damsel of excellent hips, from fear of her friends, concealed her conception, so that no one knew her condition. And as the damsel lived entirely in the apartments assigned to the maidens and carefully concealed her condition, except her nurse no one knew the truth,

And in due time that beauteous maiden, by the grace of that deity, brought forth a son resembling a very god. And even like his father, the child was equipped in a coat of mail, and decked with brilliant ear-rings. And he was possessed of leonine eyes and shoulders like those of a bull. And no sooner was the beauteous girl delivered of a child, than she consulted with her nurse and placed the infant in a commodious and smooth box made of wicker work and spread over with soft sheets and furnished with a costly pillow. And its surface was laid over with wax, and it was encased in a rich cover. And with tears in her eyes, she carried the infant to the river Açwa, and consigned the basket to its waters. And although she knew it to be improper for an unmarried girl to bear offspring, yet from parental affection, O foremost of kings, she wept piteously. Do thou listen to the words Kunti weepingly uttered, while consigning the box to the waters of the river Açwa! 'O child, may good betide thee at the hands of all that inhabit the land, the water, the sky, and the celestial regions! May all thy paths be auspicious! May no one obstruct thy way! And, O son, may all that come across thee have their hearts divested of hostility towards thee! And may that lord of waters, Varuna, protect thee in water! And may the deity that rangeth the skies completely protect thee in the sky! And may, O son, that best of those that impart heat, *viz.*, Surya, thy father, and from whom I have obtained thee as ordained by Destiny, protect thee everywhere! And may the *Adityas* and the *Vasus*, the *Rudras* and the *Sādhyas*, the *Viçwadevas* and the *Maruts*, and the cardinal points with the great Indra and the regents presiding over them, and, indeed, all the celestials, protect thee in every place! Even in foreign lands I shall be able to recognise thee, by this mail of thine! Surely, thy sire, O son, the divine Surya possest of the wealth of splendour, is blessed, for he will with his celestial sight behold thee going adown the current! Blessed also is that lady who will, O thou that art begotten by a god, take thee for her son, and who will give thee suck when thou art thirsty! And what a lucky dream hath been dreamt by her that will adopt thee

for her son, thee that art endued with solar splendour, and furnished with celestial mail, and adorned with celestial ear-rings, thee that hast expansive eyes resembling lotuses, a complexion bright as burnished copper or lotus leaves, a fair forehead, and hair ending in beautiful curls! O son, she that will behold thee crawl on the ground, begrimmed with dust, and sweetly uttering inarticulate words, is surely blessed! And she also, O son, that will behold thee arrive at thy youthful prime, like a maned lion born in Himālayan forests, is surely blessed!'

"O king, having thus bewailed long and piteously, Prithā laid the basket on the waters of the river Açwa. And the lotus-eyed damsel, afflicted with grief on account of her son and weeping bitterly, with her nurse cast the basket at dead of night, and though desirous of beholding her son often and again, returned, O monarch, to the palace, fearing lest her father should come to know of what had happened. Meanwhile, the basket floated from the river Açwa to the river Charmanwati, and from the Charmanwati it passed to the Yamunā, and so on to the Gangā. And carried by the waves of the Gangā, the child contained in the basket came to the city of Champā ruled by a person of the *Suta* tribe. Indeed, the excellent coat of mail and those ear-rings made of *Amrita* that were born with his body, as also the ordinance of Destiny, kept the child alive."

Thus ends the three hundred and seventh Section in the Kundalāharana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCVIII.

(Kundalāharana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"And it came to pass that at this time a *Suta* named Adhiratha, who was a friend of Dhritarāshtra, came to the river Gangā, accompanied by his wife. And, O king, his wife named Rādhā was unparalleled on earth for beauty. And although that highly blessed dame had made great endeavours to obtain a son, yet she had failed, O repressor of foes, to obtain one. And on coming to the river Gangā, she beheld a box drifting along the current. And

containing articles capable of protecting from dangers and decked with unguents, that box was brought before her by the waves of the Jānhavi. And attracted by curiosity, the lady caused it to be seized. And she then related all unto Adhiratha of the charioteer caste. And hearing this, Adhiratha took away the box from the water-side, and opened it by means of instruments. And then he beheld a boy resembling the morning Sun. And the infant was furnished with golden mail, and looked exceedingly beautiful with a face decked in ear-rings. And thereupon the charioteer, together with his wife, was struck with such astonishment that their eyes expanded in wonder. And taking the infant on his lap, Adhiratha said unto his wife,—'Ever since I was born, O timid lady, I had never seen such a wonder. This child that hath come to us must be of celestial birth. Surely, sonless as I am, it is the gods that have sent him unto me!' Saying this, O lord of earth, he gave the infant to Rādhā. And thereat, Rādhā adopted, according to the ordinance, that child of celestial form and divine origin, and possest of the splendour of the filaments of the lotus and, furnished with excellent grace. And duly reared by her, that child endued with great prowess began to grow up. And after Karna's adoption, Adhiratha had other sons begotten by himself. And seeing the child furnished with bright mail and golden earrings, the twice-born ones named him Vasusena. And thus did that child endued with great splendour and immeasurable prowess become the son of a charioteer, and come to be known as Vasusena and Vrisha. And Prithā learnt through spies that her own son clad in celestial mail was growing up amongst the Angas as the eldest son of a charioteer (Adhiratha). And seeing that in process of time his son had grown up, Adhiratha sent him to the city named after the elephant. And there Karna put up with Drona, for the purpose of learning arms. And that powerful youth contracted a friendship with Duryodhana. And having acquired all the four kinds of weapons from Drona, Kripa, and Rāma, he became famous in the world as a mighty bowman. And after having contracted a friendship with Dhritarāshtra's son, he became

intent on injuring the sons of Prithā. And he was always desirous of fighting with the high-souled Fālguna. And, O king, ever since they first saw each other, Karna always used to challenge Arjuna, and Arjuna, on his part, used to challenge him. This, O foremost of kings, was, without doubt, the secret known to the Sun, *viz.*, begot by himself on Kunti, Karna was being reared in the race of the *Sutas*. And beholding him decked with his ear-rings and mail, Yudhishthira thought him to be unslayable in fight, and was exceedingly pained at it. And when, O foremost of monarchs, Karna after rising from the water, used at mid-day to worship the effulgent Surya with joined hands, the Brāhmanas used to solicit him for wealth. And at that time there was nothing that he would not give away to the twice-born ones. And Indra, assuming the guise of a Brāhmana, appeared before him (at such a time) and said,—'Give me !' And thereupon Rādhā's son replied unto him,—'Thou art welcome !' "

Thus ends the three hundred and eighth Section in the Kundalāharana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCIX.

(Kundalāharana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—" And when the king of the celestials presented himself in the guise of a Brāhmana, beholding him, Karna said,—' Welcome !' And not knowing his intention, Adhiratha's son addressed the Brāhmana, saying,—'Of a necklace of gold, and beauteous damsels, and villages with plenty of kine, which shall I give thee ?' Thereupon the Brāhmana replied,—'I ask thee not to give me either a necklace of gold, or fair damsels, or any other agreeable object. To those do thou give them that ask for them. If, O sinless one, thou art sincere in thy vow, then wilt thou, cutting off (from thy person) this coat of mail born with thy body, and these ear-rings also, bestow them on me ! I desire, O chastiser of foes, that thou mayst speedily give me these ; for this one gain of mine will be considered as superior to every other gain !' Hearing these words, Karna said,—'O

Brāhmana, I will give thee homestead land, and fair damsels, and kine, and fields; but my mail and ear-rings I am unable to give thee!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Although thus urged with various words by Karna, still, O chief of the Bharata race, that Brāhmana did not ask for any other boon. And although Karna sought to pacify him to the best of his power, and worshipped him duly, yet that best of Brāhmanas did not ask for any other boon. And when that foremost of Brāhmanas did not ask for any other boon, Rādhā's son again spake unto him with a smile,—'My mail, O regenerate one, hath been born with my body, and this pair of ear-rings hath arisen from *Amrita*. It is for these that I am unslayable of all the worlds. Therefore, I cannot part with them. Do thou, O bull among Brāhmanas, accept from me the entire kingdom of the earth, rid of enemies and full of prosperity! O foremost of regenerate ones, if I am deprived of my ear-rings, and the mail born with my body, I shall be liable to be vanquished by foes!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"When the illustrious slayer of Pāka refused to ask for any other boon, Karna with a smile again addressed him, saying,—'O god of gods, even before this, I had recognised thee, O Lord! O Sakra, it is not proper for me to confer on thee any unprofitable boon, for thou art the very lord of the celestials! On the contrary, being as thou art the Creator and lord of all beings, it is thou that shouldst confer boons on me! If, O god, I give thee this coat of mail and ear-rings, then I am sure to meet with destruction, and thou shalt also undergo ridicule! Therefore, O Sakra, take my ear-rings and excellent mail in exchange for something conferred by thee on me! Otherwise, I will not bestow them on thee!' Thereupon Sakra replied,—'Even before I had come to thee, Surya had known of my purpose; and, without doubt, it is he that hath unfolded everything unto thee! O Karna, be it as thou wishest! O son, except the thunder-bolt alone, tell me what it is that thou desirest to have!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of Indra,

Karna was filled with delight. And seeing that his purpose was about to be accomplished, he approached Vāsava, and intent upon obtaining a dart incapable of being baffled, he addressed Indra, saying,—'Do thou, O Vāsava, in exchange for my coat of mail and ear-rings, give me a dart incapable of being baffled, and competent to destroy hosts of enemies when arrayed in order of battle!' Thereupon, O ruler of earth, fixing his mind for a moment on the dart (for bringing it there), Vāsava thus spake unto Karna,—'Do thou give me thy ear-rings, and the coat of mail born with thy body, and in return take this dart on these terms! When I encounter the *Daityas* in battle, this dart that is incapable of being baffled, hurled by my hand, destroyeth enemies by hundreds, and cometh back to my hand after achieving its purpose. In thy hand, however, this dart, O son of a *Suta*, will slay only one powerful enemy of thine. And having achieved that feat, it will, roaring and blazing, return to me!' Thereat Karna said,—'I desire to slay in fierce fight even one enemy of mine, who roareth fiercely and is hot as fire, and of whom I am in fear!' At this, Indra said,—'Thou shalt slay such a roaring and powerful foe in battle. But that one whom thou seekest to slay, is protected by an illustrious personage. Even He whom persons versed in the *Vedas* call '*the invincible Boar*', and '*the incomprehensible Nārāyana*,' even that Krishna himself, is protecting him!' Thereupon Karna replied,—'Even if this be so, do thou, O illustrious one, give me the dart incapable of being baffled,—so that I may therewith slay one only powerful foe! I shall, on my part, bestow on thee my mail and ear-rings, cutting them off my person. Do thou, however, grant that my body, thus wounded, may not be unsightly!' Hearing this, Indra said,—'As thou, O Karna, art bent upon observing the truth, thy person shall not be unsightly, nor shall any scar remain on it. And, O thou best of those that are graced with speech, O Karna, thou shalt be possessed of the complexion and energy of thy father himself. And if, maddened by wrath, thou hurlest this dart, while there are still other weapons with thee, and when thy life also is not in imminent peril,

it will fall even on thyself!' Karna answered,—'As thou directest me, O Sakra, I shall hurl this *Vāsavi* dart only when I am in imminent peril! Truly I tell thee this!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thereupon, O king, taking the blazing dart, Karna began to peel off his natural mail. And beholding Karna cutting his own body, the entire host of celestials and men and *Dānavas* set up a leonine roar. And Karna betrayed no contortions of face while peeling his mail. And beholding that hero among men thus cutting his body with an weapon, smiling ever and anon, celestial kettle-drums began to be played upon and celestial flowers began to be showered on him. And Karna cutting off the excellent mail from off his person, gave it to Vāsava, still dripping. And cutting off his ear-rings also from off his ears, he made them over to Indra. And it is for this feat that he came to be called *Karna*.* And Sakra, having thus beguiled Karna but made him famous in the world, thought with a smile that the business of the sons of Pāndu had already been completed. And having done all this, he ascended to heaven. And hearing that Karna had been beguiled, all the sons of Dhritarāshtra became distressed and shorn of pride. And the sons of Prithā, on the other hand, learning that such plight had befallen the son of the charioteer, were filled with joy."

Janamejaya said.—"Where were those heroes, the sons of Pāndu, at that time? And from whom did they hear this welcome news? And what also did they do, when the twelfth year of their exile passed away? Do thou, O illustrious one, tell me all this!"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having defeated the chief of the Saindhavas, and rescued Krishnā, and having outlived the entire term of their painful exile in the woods, and having listened to the ancient stories about gods and *Rishis* recited by Mārkandeya, those heroes among men returned from their asylum in Kāmyaka to the sacred Daitavana, with all their cars, and followers, and accompanied by their charioteers, their kine, and the citizens who had followed them."

---

* One that hath peeled off the skin of his body.—*T.*

Thus ends the three hundred and ninth Section in the Kundalāharana of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCX.

(Araneya Parva.)

Janamejaya said.—" Having felt great affliction on account of the abduction of their wife and having rescued Krishnā thereafter, what did the Pāndavas next do ? "

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Having felt great affliction on account of the abduction of Krishnā, king Yudhishthira of unfading glory, with his brothers, left the woods of Kāmyaka and returned to the delightful and picturesque Dwaitavana abounding in trees and containing delicious fruits and roots. And the sons of Pāndu with their wife Krishnā began to reside there, living frugally on fruits and practising rigid vows. And while those repressors of foes, the virtuous king Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, and Bhimasena, and Arjuna, and those other sons of Pāndu born of Mādri, were dwelling in Dwaitavana, practising rigid vows, they underwent, for the for the sake of a Brāhmana, great trouble, which, however, was destined to bring about their future happiness. I will tell thee all about the trouble which those foremost of Kurus underwent while living in those woods, and which in the end brought about their happiness. Do thou listen to it ! Once on a time, as a deer was butting about, it chanced that the two sticks for making fire and a churning staff belonging to a Brāhmana devoted to ascetic austerities, stuck fast into its antlers. And, thereupon, O king, that powerful deer of exceeding fleetness with long bounds, speedily went out of the hermitage, taking those articles away. And, O foremost of Kurus, seeing those articles of his thus carried away, the Brāhmana, anxious on account of his *Agnihotra,* quickly came before the Pāndavas. And approaching without loss of time Ajātaçatru seated in that forest with his brothers, the Brāhmana, in great distress, spake these words,—'As a deer was butting about, it happened, O king, that my fire-sticks and churning staff which had been placed against a large

tree stuck fast to its antlers. And, O king, that powerful deer of exceeding fleetness hath speedily gone out of the hermitage with long bounds, taking those articles away. Tracking that powerful deer, O king, by its foot-prints, do ye, ye sons of Pāndu, bring back those articles of mine,—so that my *Agni-hotra* may not be stopped!' Hearing these words of the Brāhmana, Yudhishthira became exceedingly concerned. And the son of Kunti taking up his bow sallied out with his brothers. And putting on their corselets and equipped with their bows, those bulls among men, intent upon serving the Brāhmana, swiftly sallied out in the wake of the deer. And descrying the deer at no great distance, those mighty warriors discharged at it brabed arrows and javelins and darts, but the sons of Pāndu could not pierce it by any means. And as they struggled to pursue and slay it, that powerful deer became suddenly invisible. And losing sight of the deer, the noble-minded sons of Pāndu, fatigued and disappointed and afflicted with hunger and thirst, approached a banian tree in that deep forest, and sat down in its cool shade. And when they had sat down, Nakula, stricken with sorrow and urged by impatience, addressed his eldest brother of the Kuru race, saying,—'In our race, O king, virtue hath never been sacrificed, nor hath there been loss of wealth from insolence. And being asked, we have never said to any creature, *Nay!* Why then in the present case have we met with this disaster?'"

Thus ends the three hundred and tenth Section in the Araneya of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCXI.

(Araneya Parva continued.)

"Yudhishthira said.—'There is no limit to calamities. Nor is it possible to ascertain either their final or efficient cause. It is the Lord of justice alone who distributeth the fruits of both virtue and vice.' Thereupon Bhima said, —'Surely, this calamity hath befallen us, because I did not slay the *Prātikāmin* on the very spot, when he dragged Krishnā

as a slave into the assembly.' And Arjuna said,—'Surely, this calamity hath befallen us because I resented not those biting words piercing the very bones, uttered by the *Suta's* son!' And Sahadeva said,—'Surely, O Bhārata, this calamity hath befallen us because I did not slay Sakuni when he defeated thee at dice!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then king Yudhishthira addressed Nakula saying,—'Do thou, O son of Mādri, climb this tree and look around the ten points of the horizon. Do thou see whether there is water near us or such trees as grow on watery grounds! O child, these thy brothers are all fatigued and thirsty.' Thereupon saying,—'So be it,' Nakula speedily climbed up a tree, and having looked around, said unto his eldest brother,—'O king, I see many a tree that groweth by the water-side, and I hear also the cries of cranes. Therefore, without doubt, water must be somewhere here?' Hearing these words, Kunti's son Yudhishthira, firm in truth, said,—'O amiable one, go thou and fetch water in these quivers!' Saying,—'So be it,' at the command of his eldest brother Nakula quickly proceeded towards the place where there was water and soon came upon it. And beholding a crystal lake inhabited by cranes, he desired to drink of it, when he heard these words from the sky,—'O child, do not commit this rash act! This lake hath already been in my possession. Do thou, O son of Mādri, first answer my questions, and then drink of this water and take away (as much as thou requirest).' Nakula, however, who was exceedingly thirsty, disregarding these words, drank of the cool water, and having drunk of it, dropped down dead. And, O repressor of foes, seeing Nakula's delay, Yudhishthira the son of Kunti said unto Sahadeva the heroic brother of Nakula,—'O Sahadeva, it is long since our brother,—he who was born immediately before thee, hath gone from hence! Do thou, therefore, go and bring back thy uterine brother, together with water.' At this, Sahadeva, saying, 'So be it,' set out in that direction; and coming to the spot, beheld his brother lying dead on the ground. And afflicted at the death of his brother, and suf-

fering severely from thirst, he rushed towards the water, when these words were heard by him,—'O child, do not commit this rash act! This lake hath already been in my possession. First answer my questions, and then drink of the water and take away as much as thou mayst require.' Sahadeva, however, who was extremely thirsty, disregarding these words, drank of the water, and having drunk of it, dropped down dead. Then Yudhishthira the son of Kunti said unto Vijaya,—'It is long since, O Vibhatsu, that thy two brothers have gone, O repressor of foes! Blessed be thou! Do thou bring them back, together with water. Thou art, O child, the refuge of us all when plunged in distress!' Thus addressed, the intelligent Gudākeça, taking his bow and arrows and also his naked sword, set out for that lake of waters. And reaching that spot, he whose car was drawn by white steeds beheld those tigers among men, his two younger brothers who had come to fetch water, lying dead there. And seeing them as if asleep, that lion among men, exceedingly aggrieved, raised his bow and began to look around that wood. But he found none in that mighty forest. And, being fatigued, he who was capable of drawing the bow by his left hand as well, rushed in the direction of the water. And as he was rushing (towards the water), he heard these words from the sky,—'Why dost thou approach this water? Thou shalt not be able to drink of it by force. If thou, O Kaunteya, can answer the questions I will put to thee, then only shalt thou drink of the water and take away as much as thou requirest, O Bhārata!' Thus forbidden, the son of Prithā said,—'Do thou forbid me by appearing before me! And when thou shalt be sorely pierced with my arrows, thou wilt not then again speak in this way!' Having said this, Pārtha covered all sides with arrows inspired by *mantras*. And he also displyed his skill in shooting at an invisible mark by sound alone. And, O bull of the Bharata race, sorely afflicted with thirst, he discharged barbed darts and javelins and iron arrows, and showered on the sky innumerable shafts incapable of being baffled. Thereupon, the invisible Yaksha said,—'What need of all this trouble, O son of Prithā? Do

thou drink only after answering my questions! If thou drink, however, without answering my questions, thou shalt die immediately after.' Thus addressed, Prithā's son Dhananjaya capable of drawing the bow with his left hand as well, disregarding those words, drank of the water, and immediately after dropped down dead. And (seeing Dhananjaya's delay) Kunti's son Yudhishthira addressed Bhimasena, saying,—'O repressor of foes, it is a long while that Nakula, and Sahadeva, and Vibhatsu have gone to fetch water, and they come not yet, O Bhārata! Good betide thee! Do thou bring them back, together with water!' Thereupon saying,—'So be it,' Bhimasena set out for that place where those tigers among men, his brothers, lay dead. And beholding them, Bhima, afflicted though he was with thirst, was exceedingly distressed. And that mighty-armed hero thought all that to have been the act of some Yaksha or Rākshasa. And Prithā's son Vrikodara thought,—'I shall surely have to fight today. Let me, therefore, first appease my thirst.' Then that bull of the Bharata race rushed forward with the intention of drinking. Thereupon the Yaksha said,—'O child, do not commit this rash act! This lake hath already been in my possession. Do thou first answer my questions, and then drink and take away as much water as thou requirest!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed by that Yaksha of immeasurable energy, Bhima, without answering his questions, drank of the water. And as soon as he drank, he fell down dead on the spot. Then thinking that his brothers had left him long since, Yudhishthira waited for some time. And the king said unto himself again and again,—'Why is it that the two sons of Mādri are delaying? And why doth the wielder also of the *Gāndiva* delay? And why doth Bhima too, endued with great strength, delay? I shall go to search for them!' And resolved to do this, the mighty-armed Yudhishthira then rose up, his heart burning in grief. And that bull among men, the royal son of Kunti, thought within himself,—'Is this forest under some malign influence? Or, is it infested by some wicked beast? Or, have they all fallen, in consequence of having disregarded some mighty being?

Or, not finding water in the spot whither those heroes had first repaired, they have spent all this time in search through the forest ? What is that reason for which those those bulls among men do not come back ?' And speaking in this strain, that foremost of monarchs, the illustrious Yudhishthira, entered into that mighty forest where no human sound was heard and which was inhabited by deer and bears and birds, and which was adorned with trees that were bright and green, and which echoed with the hum of the black-bee and the notes of winged warblers. And as he was proceeding along, he beheld that beautiful lake which looked as if it had been made by the celestial artificer himself. And it was adorned with flowers of a golden hue and with lotuses and *Sindhuvāras.* And it abounded with canes and *Ketakas* and *Karaviras* and *Pippalas.* And fatigued with toil, Yudhishthira saw that tank and was struck with wonder."

Thus ends the three hundred and eleventh Section in the Araneya of the Vana Parva.

Section CCCXII.

(Araneya Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Yudhishthira saw his brothers, each possessed of the glory of Indra himself, lying dead like the Regents of the world dropped from their spheres at the end of the *Yuga.* And beholding Arjuna lying dead, with his bow and arrows dropped on the ground, and also Bhimasena and the twins motionless and deprived of life, the king breathed a hot and long sigh, and was bathed in tears of grief. And beholding his brothers lying dead, the mighty-armed son of Dharma, with heart racked in anxiety, began to lament profusely, saying,—'Thou hadst, O mighty-armed Vrikodara, vowed, saying,—*I shall with mace smash the thighs of Duryodhana in battle !*—O enhancer of the glory of the Kurus, in thy death, O mighty-armed and high-souled one, all that hath become fruitless now ! The promises of men may be ineffectual; but why have the words of the gods uttered in respect of thee been thus fruitless ? O Dhananjaya, while thou wert

in thy mother's lying-in-room, the gods had said,—*O Kunti, this thy son shall not be inferior to him of a thousand eyes!* —And in the northern Pāripātra mountains, all beings had sung, saying,—*The prosperity (of this race), robbed by foes, will be recovered by this one without delay. No one will be able to vanquish him in battle, while there will be none whom he will not be able to vanquish.* Why then hath that Jishnu endued with great strength, been subject to death? Oh, why doth that Dhananjaya, relying on whom we had hitherto endured all this misery, lie on the ground, blighting* all my hopes! Why have those heroes, those mighty sons of Kunti, Bhimasena and Dhananjaya, come under the power of the enemy,—those who themselves always slew their foes, and whom no weapons could resist! Surely, this vile heart of mine must be made of adamant, since, beholding these twins lying today on the ground, it doth not split! Ye bulls among men, versed in holy writ and acquainted with the properties of time and place, and endued with ascetic merit, ye who duly performed all sacred rites, why lie ye down, without performing acts deserving of you? Alas, why lie ye insensible on the earth, with your bodies unwounded, ye unvanquished ones, and with your bows untouched?' And beholding his brothers sweetly sleeping there as (they usually did) on mountain slopes, the high-souled king, overwhelmed with grief and bathed in sweat, came to a distressful condition. And saying,—*It is even so,*—that virtuous lord of men, immersed in an ocean of grief, anxiously proceeded to ascertain the cause (of that catastrophe). And that mighty-armed and high-souled one, acquainted with the divisions of time and place, could not settle his course of action. Having thus bewailed much in this strain, the virtuous Yudhishthira, the son of *Dharma* or *Tapa*, restrained his soul and began to reflect in his mind as to who had slain those heroes. 'There are no strokes of weapons upon these, nor is any one's foot-print here. The being must be mighty, I ween, by whom my brothers have been slain. Earnestly shall I ponder

* *Samhritya*—killing.—*T.*

over this, or, let me first drink of the water, and then know all. It may be that the habitually crooked-minded Duryodhana hath caused this water to be secretly placed here by the king of the Gāndhāras. What man of sense can trust that wicked wight of evil passions with whom good and evil are alike? Or, perhaps, this may be an act of that wicked-souled one through secret messengers of his.' And it was thus that that highly intelligent one gave way to diverse reflections. He did not believe that water to have been tainted with poison, for though dead, no corpse-like pallor was on them. 'The color on the faces of these my brothers hath not faded!' And it was thus that Yudhishthira thought. And the king continued,—'Each of these foremost of men was like unto a mighty cataract. Who, therefore, save Yama himself who in due time bringeth about the end of all things, could have baffled them thus?' And having concluded this for certain, he began to perform his ablutions in that lake. And while he descended into it, he heard these words from the sky, uttered by the Yaksha,—'I am a crane, living on tiny fish. It is by me that thy younger brothers have been brought under the sway of the lord of departed spirits. If thou, O prince, answer not the questions put by me, even thou shalt number the fifth corpse. Do not, O child, act rashly! This lake hath alrealy been in my possession. Having answered my questions first, do thou, O Kunti's son, drink and carry away (as much as thou requirest)!' Hearing these words, Yudhishthira said,—'Art thou the foremost of the Rudras, or of the Vasus, or of the Maruts? I ask, what god art thou? This could not have been done by a bird! Who is it that hath overthrown the four mighty mountains, viz., the Himavat, the Pāripātra, the Vindhya, and the Malaya? Great is the feat done by thee, thou foremost of strong persons! Those whom neither gods, nor *Gandharvas*, nor *Asuras*, nor *Rākshasas* could endure in mighty conflict, have been slain by thee! Therefore, exceedingly wonderful is the deed done by thee! I do not know what thy business may be, nor do I know thy purpose. Therefore, great is the curiosity and fear also that have taken possession of me! My mind is

greatly agitated, and as my head also is aching, I ask thee, therefore, O worshipful one, who art thou that stayest here?' Hearing these words, the Yaksha said,—'I am, good betide thee, a Yaksha, and not an amphibious bird. It is by me that all these brothers of thine, endued with mighty prowess, have been slain!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these accursed words couched in harsh syllables,* Yudhishthira, O king, approaching the Yaksha who had spoken them, stood there. And that bull among the Bhāratas then beheld that Yaksha of unusual eyes and huge body, tall like a palmyra-palm and looking like fire or the Sun, and irresistible and gigantic like a mountain, staying on a tree, and uttering a loud roar deep as that of the clouds. And the Yaksha said,—'These thy brothers, O king, repeatedly forbidden by me, would forcibly take away water. It is for this that they have been slain by me! He that wisheth to live, should not, O king, drink this water! O son of Prithā, act not rashly! This lake hath already been in my possession. Do thou, O son of Kunti, first answer my questions, and then take away as much as thou likest!' Yudhishthira said,—'I do not, O Yaksha, covet what is already in thy possession! O bull among male beings, virtuous persons never approve that one should applaud his own self. (Without boasting, I shall, therefore, answer thy questions, according to my intelligence). Do thou ask me!' The Yaksha then said,—'What is it that maketh the Sun rise? Who keep him company? Who causeth him to set? And in whom is he established?' Yudhishthira answered,—'*Brahmā* maketh the Sun rise: the gods keep him company: *Dharma* causeth him to set: and he is established in truth.'† The Yaksha asked,—'By what doth one

* Lit. letters.—*T.*

† Behind the plain and obvious meanings of the words employed both in the question and the answer, there is a deeper signification of a spiritual kind. I think Nilakantha has rightly understood the passage. By *Aditya*, which of course commonly means the *Sun*, is indicated the *unpurified soul* (from *adattè çabdādin indriādivis* &c.,) The first question,

become learned? By what oath he attain what is very great? How can one have a second? And, O king, how can one acquire intelligence?' Yudhishthira answered,—'It is by the (study of the) *Srutis* that a person becometh learned: it is by ascetic austerities that one acquireth what is very great: it is by intelligence that a person acquireth a second: and it is by serving the old that one becometh wise.'* The Yaksha asked,—'What constituteth the divinity of the Brāhmanas? What even is their practice that is like that of the pious? What also is the human attribute of the Brāhmanas? And what practice of theirs is like that of the impious?' Yudhishthira answered,—'The study of the *Vedas* constitutes their divinity: their asceticism constitutes behaviour that is like that of the pious: their liability to death is their human attribute: and slander is their impiety.' The Yaksha asked,—'What constitues the divinity of the Kshatriyas? What even is their practice that is like that of the pious? What is their human attribute? And what practice of theirs is like that of the impious?' Yudhishthira answered,—'Arrows and weapons

---

then, becomes,—'Who is it that exalteth the unpurified soul?' The act of exaltation implies a raising of the soul from its earthly connections. The answer to this is, '*Brahmā*, *i. e.*, *Veda* or self-knowledge.' The second question is—'What are those that keep company with the soul during its progress of purification?' The answer is, 'Self-restraint and other qualities, which are all of a god-like or divine nature.' The third question is,—'Who lead the soul to its place (state) of rest?' The answer is, '*Dharma*, *i. e.* rectitude, morality, and religious observances.' It is often asserted that one must pass through the observances (*Karma*) before attaining to a state of Rest or Truth or Pure Knowledge. The last question is,—'On what is the soul established?' The answer, according to all that has been previously said, is 'Truth or Pure Knowledge.' For the soul that is emancipated from and raised above all carnal connections, is no longer in need of observances and acts (*Karma*) but stays unmoved in True Knowledge (*Jnāna*).—*T.*

* Nilakantha explains both *Dhriti* and *Dwitiya* in a spiritual sense. There is no need, however, of a spiritual explanation here. By *Dhriti* is meant steadiness of intelligence; by *Dwitiya* lit. a second. What Yudhishthira says is that a steady intelligence serves the purposes of a helpful companion.—*T.*

are their divinity: celebration of sacrifices is that act which is like that of the pious: liability to fear is their human attribute; and refusal of protection is that act of theirs which is ike that of the impious.' The Yaksha asked,—'What is that which constitutes the *Sāma* of the sacrifice? What the *Yajus* of the sacrifice? What is that which is the refuge of a sacrifice? And what is that which sacrifice cannot do without?' Yudhishthira answered,—'Life is the *Sāma* of the sacrifice: the mind is the *Yajus* of the sacrifice: the *Rich* is that which is the refuge of the sacrifice; and it is *Rich* alone which sacrifice cannot do without.'* The Yaksha asked,—'What is of the foremost value to those that cultivate? What of the foremost value to those that sow? What of the foremost value to those that wish for prosperity in this world? And what of the foremost value to those that bring forth?' Yudhishthira answered,—'That which is of the foremost value to those that cultivate is rain: that of the foremost value to those that sow is seed: that of the foremost value to those that desire prosperity is the cow: and that of the foremost value to those that bring forth is offspring.'† The Yaksha asked,—'What person, enjoy-

---

* Nilakantha explains this correctly, as I imagine, by supposing that by 'sacrifice' is meant the spiritual sacrifice for the acquisition of pure knowledge. In the objective sacrifice which one celebrates, the *Sāma*, the *Yajus*, and the *Rich mantras* are all necessary. In the subjective sacrifice for the acquisition of true knowledge, life and mind are as necessary as the *mantras* from the *Sāma* and the *Yajus Vedas* in an objective one. And as no objective sacrifice can do without the *Richs*, being principally dependant on them, so the subjective sacrifice for acquiring true knowledge can never do without prayerfulness, which, I imagine, is represented as the *Richs*. To understand this passage thoroughly would require an intimate acquaintance with the ritual of a sacrifice like the *Agnishtoma* or any other of that kind.—*T.*

† Some texts read *āpatatam* for *āvapatām*. If the former be the correct reading, the meaning would be—'What is the best of things that fall?' Nilakantha explains both *āvapatām* and *nivapâtam* in a spiritual sense. By the first he understands—'They that offer oblations to the gods,' and by the second,—'They that offer oblations to the *Pitris*.' The necessity of a spiritual interpretation, however, is not very apparent.—*T.*

ing all the objects of the senses, endued with intelligence, regarded by the world and liked by all beings, though breathing, doth not yet live?' Yudhishthira answered,—'He that doth not offer anything to these five, *viz.*,—gods, guests, servants, *pitris*, and himself, though endued with breath, is not yet alive.' The Yaksha asked,—'What is weightier than the earth itself? What is higher than the heavens? 'What is fleeter than the wind? And what is more numerous than grass?' Yudhishthira answered,—'The mother is weightier than the earth: the father is higher than the heavens: the mind is fleeter than the wind: and our thoughts are more numerous than grass.' The Yaksha asked,—'What is that which doth not close its eyes while asleep? What is that which doth not move after birth? What is that which is without heart? And what is that which swells with its own impetus?' Yudhishthira answered,—'A fish doth not close its eyes while asleep: an egg doth not move after birth: a stone is without heart: and a river swelleth with its own impetus.' The Yaksha asked,—'Who is the friend of the exile? Who is the friend of the house-holder? Who is the friend of him that ails? And who is the friend of one about to die?' Yudhishthira answered,—'The friend of the exile in a distant land is his companion: the friend of the house-holder is the wife: the friend of him that ails is the physician: and the friend of him about to die is charity.' The Yaksha asked,—'Who is the guest of all creatures? What is the eternal duty? What, O foremost of kings, is *amrita*? And what is this entire Universe?' Yudhishthira answered,—'*Agni* is the guest of all creatures: the milk of kine is *amrita*: *Homa* (therewith) is the eternal duty: and this Universe consists of air alone.'* The Yaksha asked,—'What is that which sojourneth alone? What is that which is re-born after its birth? What is the remedy against cold? And what is the largest field?' Yudhishthira answered,—'The Sun sojourneth alone: the moon takes birth anew: fire is the remedy

* Yudhishthira has the authority of the *çrutis* for saying that the onepervading element of the universe is *air*.—*T.*

against cold: and the Earth is the largest field.' The Yaksha asked,—'What is the highest refuge of virtue? What of fame? What, of heaven?' And what, of happiness?' Yudhishthira answered,—'Liberality is the highest refuge of virtue: gift, of fame: truth, of heaven: and good behaviour, of happiness.' The Yaksha asked,—'What is the soul of man? Who is that friend bestowed on man by the gods? What is man's chief support? And what also is his chief refuge?' Yudhishthira answered,—'The son is a man's soul: the wife is the friend bestowed on man by the gods: the clouds are his chief support: and gift is his chief refuge.' The Yaksha asked,—'What is the best of all laudable things? What is the most valuable of all his possessions? What is the best of all gains? And what is the best of all kinds of happiness?' Yudhishthira answered,—'The best of all laudable things is skill: the best of all possessions is knowledge: the best of all gains is health: and contentment is the best of all kinds of happiness.' The Yaksha asked,—'What is the highest duty in the world? What is that virtue which always beareth fruit? What is that which, if controlled, leadeth not to regret? And who are they with whom an alliance cannot break?' Yudhishthira answered,—'The highest of duties is to refrain from injury: the rites ordained in the *Three (Vedàs)* always bear fruit: the mind, if controlled, leadeth to no regret: and an alliance with the good never breaketh.' The Yaksha asked,—'What is that which, if renounced, maketh one agreeable? What is that which, if renounced, leadeth to no regret? What is that which, if renounced, maketh one wealthy? And what is that which, if renounced, maketh one happy?' Yudhishthira answered,—'Pride, if renounced, maketh one agreeable: wrath, if renounced, leadeth to no regret: desire, if renounced, maketh one wealthy: and avarice, if renounced, maketh one happy.' The Yaksha asked,—'For what doth one give away to Brāhmanas? For what to mimes and dancers? For what to servants? And for what to kings?' Yudhishthira answered,—'It is for religious merit that one giveth away to Brāhmanas: it is for fame that one giveth away to mimes and dancers: it

is for supporting them that one giveth away to servants; and it is for obtaining relief from fear that one giveth to kings.' The Yaksha asked,—'With what is the world enveloped? What is that owing to which a thing cannot discover itself? For what are friends forsaken? And for what doth one fail to go to heaven?' Yudhishthira answered,—'The world is enveloped with darkness. Darkness doth not permit a thing to show itself. It is from avarice that friends are forsaken. And it is connection with the world for which one faileth to go to heaven.' The Yaksha asked,—'For what may one be considered as dead? For what may a kingdom be considered as dead? For what may a *Srāddha* be considered as dead? And for what, a sacrifice?' Yudhishthira answered,—'For want of wealth may a man be regarded as dead. A kingdom for want of a king may be regarded as dead. A *Srāddha* that is performed with the aid of a priest that hath no learning may be regarded as dead. And a sacrifice in which there are no gifts to Brāhmanas is dead.' The Yaksha asked,—'What constitutes *the* way? What hath been spoken of as water? What, as food? And what, as poison? Tell us also what is the proper time of a *Srāddha*, and then drink and take away as much water as thou likest!' Yudhishthira answered,—'They that are good constitute *the* way.* Space hath been spoken of as water.† The cow is food.‡ A request is poison. And a Brāhmana is regarded as the proper

---

* The word used in the question is *dik*, lit., direction. Obviously, of course, it means in this connection *way*. Yudhishthira answers that the way which one is to tread along is that of the good.—*T.*

† The *çrutis* actually speak of space as water. These are questions to test Yudhishthira's knowledge of the Vedic cosmogony.—*T.*

‡ The *çrutis* speak of the cow as the only food, in the following sense. The cow gives milk. The milk gives butter. The butter is used in *Homa*. The *Homa* is the cause of the clouds. The clouds give rain. The rain makes the seed to sprout forth and produce food. Nilakantha endeavours to explain this in a spiritual sense. There is, however, no need of such explanati on here.—*T.*

time of a *Srāddha.** I do not know what thou mayst think of all this, O Yaksha?' The Yaksha asked,—'What hath been said to be the sign of asceticism? And what is true restraint? What constitutes forgiveness? And what is shame?' Yudhishthira answered,—'Staying in one's own religion is asceticism: the restraint of the mind is of all restraints the true one: forgiveness consists in enduring enmity; and shame, in withdrawing from all unworthy acts.' The Yaksha asked,—'What, O king, is said to be knowledge? What, tranquillity? What constitutes mercy? And what hath been called simplicity?' Yudhishthira answered,—'True knowledge is that of Divinity. True tranquillity is that of the heart. Mercy consists in wishing happiness to all. And simplicity is equanimity of heart.' The Yaksha asked,—'What enemy is invincible? What constitutes an incurable disease for man? What sort of a man is called honest and what dishonest?' Yudhishthira answered,—'Anger is an invincible enemy. Covetousness constitutes an incurable disease. He is honest that desires the weal of all creatures, and he is dishonest who is unmerciful.'—The Yaksha asked,—'What, O king, is ignorance? And what is pride? What also is to be understood by idleness? And what hath been spoken of as grief?' Yudhishthira answered,—'True ignorance consists in not knowing one's duties. Pride is a consciousness of one's being himself an actor or sufferer in life. Idleness consists in not discharging one's duties, and ignorance is grief.' The Yaksha asked,—'What hath steadiness been said by the *Rishis* to be? And what, patience? What also is a real ablution? And what is charity?' Yudhishthira answered,—'Steadiness consists in one's staying in one's own religion, and true patience consists in the subjugation of the senses. A true bath consists in washing the mind clean of all impurities, and charity consists in protecting all creatures.' The Yaksha asked,—'What man should be regarded as learned, and who should be called an atheist? Who also is to be

* What Yudhishthira means to say is that there is no especial time for a *srâddha*. It is to be performed whenever a good and able priest may be secured.—*T.*

called ignorant, what is called desire, and what are the sources of desire? And what is envy?' Yudhishthira answered,—'He is to be called learned who knoweth his duties. An atheist is he who is ignorant, and so also he is ignorant who is an atheist. Desire is due to objects of possession, and envy is nothing else than grief of heart.' The Yaksha asked,—'What is pride, and what hypocracy? What is the grace of the gods, and what is wickedness?' Yudhishthira answered,—'Stolid ignorance is pride. The setting up of a religious standard is hypocracy. The grace of the gods is the fruit of our gifts, and wickedness consists in speaking ill of others.' The Yaksha asked,—'Virtue, profit, and desire are opposed to one another. How could things thus antagonistic to one another exist together?' Yudhishthira answered,—'When a wife and virtue agree with each other, then all the three thou hast mentioned may exist together.' The Yaksha asked, —'O bull of the Bharata race, who is he that is condemned to everlasting hell? It behoveth thee to soon answer the question that I ask!' Yudhishthira answered,—'He that summoneth a poor Brāhmana promising to make him a gift and then tells him that he hath nothing to give, goeth to everlasting hell. He also must go to everlasting hell who imputes falsehood to the *Vedas*, the scriptures, the Brāhmanas, the gods, and the ceremonies in honor of the *Pitris*. He also goeth to everlasting hell who though in possession of wealth, never giveth away nor enjoyeth himself from avarice, saying, he hath none.' The Yaksha asked,—'By what, O king, birth, behaviour, study, or learning, doth a person become a Brāhmana? Tell us with certitude!' Yudhishthira answered,—'Listen, O Yaksha! It is neither birth, nor study, nor learning, that is the cause of *Brāhmanhood*. Without doubt, it is behaviour that constitutes it. One's behaviour should always be well-guarded, especially by a Brāhmana. He who maintaineth his conduct unimpaired, is never impaired himself. He, however, whose conduct is lost, is lost himself. Professors and pupils, in fact, all who study the scriptures, if addicted to wicked habits, are to be regarded as illiterate wretches. He only is learned who performeth his religious duties. He

even that hath studied the four Vedas is to be regarded as a wicked wretch scarcely distinguishable from a Sudra (if his conduct be not correct). He only who performeth the *Agnihotra* and hath his senses under control, is called a Brāhmana!' The Yaksha asked,—'What doth one gain that speaketh agreeable words? What doth he gain that always acteth with judgment? What doth he gain that hath many friends? And what he, that is devoted to virtue?'—Yudhishthira answered, —'He that speaketh agreeable words becometh agreeable to all. He that acteth with judgment obtaineth whatever he seeketh. He that hath many friends liveth happily. And he that is devoted to virtue obtaineth a happy state (in the next world).' The Yaksha asked,—'Who is truly happy? What is most wonderful? What is *the* path? And what is *the* news? Answer these four questions of mine, and let thy dead brothers revive!' Yudhishthira answered,—'O amphibious creature, a man who cooketh in his own house, on the fifth or the sixth day, scanty vegetables, but who is not in debt and who stirreth not from home, is truly happy. Day after day countless creatures are going to the abode of Yama; yet those that remain behind believe themselves to be immortal. What can be more wonderful than this? Argument leads to no certain conclusion: the *çrutis* are different from one another: there is not even one *Rishi* whose opinion can be accepted as infallible: the truth about religion and duty is hid in caves: therefore, that alone is *the* path along which the great have trod. This world full of ignorance is like a pan. The sun is fire, the days and nights are fuel. The months and the seasons constitute the wooden laddle. Time is the cook that is cooking all creatures in that pan (with such aids); this is *the* news.' The Yaksha asked,—'Thou hast, O repressor of foes, truly answered all my questions! Tell us now who is truly a man, and what man truly possesseth every kind of wealth.' Yudhishthira answered,—'The report of one's good action reacheth heaven and spreadeth over the earth. As long as that report lasteth, so long is a person called a man. And that person to whom the agreeable and the disagreeable, weal and woe, the past and the future, are the same, is said to possess every kind of wealth.' The

Yaksha said,—'Thou hast, O king, truly answered who is a man, and what man possesseth every kind of wealth. Therefore, let one only amongst thy brothers, whom thou mayst wish, get up with life!' Yudhishthira answered,—'Let this one that is of darkish hue, whose eyes are red, who is tall like a large *Sāla* tree, whose chest is broad and arms long, let this Nakula, O Yaksha, get up with life!' The Yaksha rejoined,—'This Bhimasena is dear unto thee, and this Arjuna also is one upon whom all of you depend! Why, then, O king, dost thou wish a step-brother to get up with life? How canst thou, forsaking Bhima whose strength is equal to that of ten thousand elephants, wish Nakula to live? People said that this Bhima was dear to thee. From what motive then dost thou wish a step-brother to revive? Forsaking Arjuna the might of whose arm is worshipped by all the sons of Pāndu, why dost thou wish Nakula to revive?' Yudhishthira said,—'If virtue is sacrificed, he that sacrificeth it, is himself lost. So virtue also cherisheth the cherisher. Therefore, taking care that virtue, by being sacrificed, may not sacrifice us, I never forsake virtue. Abstention from injury is the highest virtue, and is, I ween, even higher than the highest object of attainment. I endeavour to practise that virtue. Therefore, let Nakula, O Yaksha, revive! Let men know that the king is always virtuous! I will never depart from my duty. Let Nakula, therefore, revive! My father had two wives, Kunti and Mādri. Let both of them have children. This is what I wish. As Kunti is to me, so also is Mādri. There is no difference between them in my eye. I desire to act equally towards my mothers. Therefore, let Nakula live?' The Yaksha said,—'Since abstention from injury is regarded by thee as higher than both profit and pleasure, therefore, let all thy brothers live, O bull of the Bharata race!'"

Thus ends the three hundred and twelfth Section in the Aaraneya of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCXIII.

(Araneya Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then, agreeably to the words of the Yaksha, the Pāndavas rose up ; and in a moment their hunger and thirst left them. Thereupon Yudhishthira said, 'I ask thee that art incapable of being vanquished and that standest on one leg in the tank, what god art thou, for I cannot take thee for a Yaksha! Art thou the foremost of the Vasus, or of the Rudras, or the chief of the Maruts? Or, art thou the lord himself of the celestials, the weilder of the thunder-bolt? Each of these my brothers is capable of fighting an hundred thousand warriors; and I see not the warrior that can slay them all! I see also that their senses have been refreshed, as if they have sweetly awaked from slumber. Art thou a friend of ours, or even our father himself?' At this the Yaksha replied,—'O child, I am even thy father, the Lord of justice, possessed of great prowess! Know, O bull of the Bharata race, that I came hither desirous of beholding thee! Fame, truth, self-restraint, purity, candour, modesty, steadiness, charity, austerities, and *Brahmacharya*, these are my body! And abstention from injury, impartiality, peace, penances, sanctity, and freedom from malice are the doors (through which I am accessible). Thou art always dear to me! By good luck thou art devoted to the five ;* and by good luck also thou hast conquered the six.† Of the six, two appear in the first part of life; two in the middle part thereof; and the remaining two at the end, in order to make men repair to the next world. I am, good betide thee, the Lord of justice! I came hither to test thy merit. I am well-pleased to witness thy harmlessness ; and, O sinless one, I will confer boons on

---

* That is, tranquillity of mind, self-restraint, abstention from sensual pleasures, resignation, and *Yoga* meditation.—*T.*

† That is, hunger, thirst, sorrow, bluntness of moral feeling, decrepitude, and death.—*T.*

thee. Do thou, O foremost of kings, ask of me boons! I shall surely confer them, O sinless one! Those that revere me, never come by distress!' Yudhishthira said,—'Yon deer is carrying away the Brāhmana's fire-sticks. Therefore, the first boon that I shall ask, is,—May that Brāhmana's adorations to *Agni* be not interrupted!' The Yaksha said,—'O Kunti's son endued with splendour, it was I who for examining thee, was carrying away, in the guise of a deer, that Brāhmana's fire-sticks!' "

Vaicampāyana continued.—" Thereupon that worshipful one said,—'I give thee this boon! Good betide thee! O thou that art like unto an immortal, ask thou a fresh boon!' Yudhishthira said,—'We have spent these twelve years in the forest; and the thirteenth year is come. May no one recognise us, as we spend this year somewhere!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Thereat that worshipful one replied,—'I give this boon unto thee!' And then reassuring Kunti's son having truth for prowess, he also said,—'Even if, O Bhārata, ye range this (entire) earth in your proper forms, no one in the three worlds shall recognise you. Ye perpetuator of the Kuru race, through my grace, ye will spend this thirteenth year, secretly and unrecognised, in Virāta's kingdom! And every one of you will be able at will to assume any form he likes! Do ye now present the Brāhmana with his fire-sticks. It was only to test you that I carried them away in the form of a deer! O amiable Yudhishthira, do thou ask for another boon that thou mayst like! I will confer it on thee. O foremost of men, I have not yet been satisfied by granting boons to thee! Do thou, my son, accept a third boon that is great and incomparable! Thou, O king, art born of me, and Vidura of a portion of mine!' Thereat Yudhishthira said,—'It is enough that I have beheld thee with my senses, eternal God of gods as thou art! O father, whatever boon thou wilt confer on me I shall surely accept gladly! May I, O lord, always conquer covetuousness and folly and anger, and may my mind be ever devoted to charity, truth, and ascetic austerities!' The Lord of justice said,—'Even by nature, O Pāndava, hast thou been endued with these quali-

ties: for thou art the Lord of justice himself! Do thou again attain what thou askest for!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Having said these words, the worshipful Lord of justice, who is the object of contemplation of all the worlds, vanished there; and the high-souled Pāndavas after they had slept sweetly, were united with one another. And their fatigue dispelled, those heroes returned to the hermitage, and gave back that Brāhmana his fire-sticks. That man who peruseth this illustrious and fame-enhancing story of the revival (of the Pāndavas), and the meeting of father and son (Dharma and Yudhishthira), obtaineth perfect tranquillity of mind, and sons and grand-sons, and also a life extending over a hundred years! And the mind of that man that layeth this story to heart, never delighteth in unrighteousness, or in disunion among friends, or misapropriation of other persons' property, or staining other people's wives, or in foul thoughts!"

Thus ends the three hundred and thirteenth Section in the Araneya of the Vana Parva.

SECTION CCCXIV.

(Araneya Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Commanded by the Lord of justice to thus spend in disguise the thirteenth year of non-discovery, the high-souled Pāndavas, observant of vows and having truth for prowess, sat before those learned and vow-observing ascetics that from regard were dwelling with them in their exile in the forest. And with joined hands they said these words, with the intention of obtaining permission to spend the thirteenth year in the manner indicated. And they said, 'Ye know well that the sons of Dhritarāshtra have by deceit deprived us of our kingdom, and have also done us many other wrongs! We have passed twelve years in the forest in great affliction. The thirteenth year only, which we are to spend unrecognised, yet remaineth. It behoveth you to permit us now to spend this year in concealment! Those rancorous enemies of ours, Suyodhana, the wicked-minded

Karna, and Suvala's son, should they discover us, would do mighty wrong to the citizens and our friends! Shall we all, with the Brāhmanas, be again established in our own kingdom?' Having said this, that pure-spirited son of Dharma, king Yudhishthira, overwhelmed with grief and with accents choked in tears, swooned away. Thereupon the Brāhmanas, together with his brothers, began to cheer him up. Then Dhaumya spake unto the king these words fraught with mighty meaning,—'O king, thou art learned and capable of bearing privation, art firm in promise, and of subdued senses! Men of such stamp are not overwhelmed by any calamity whatever. Even the high-souled gods themselves have wandered over various places in disguise, for the purpose of overcoming foes. Indra for the purpose of overcoming his foes, dwelt in disguise in the asylum of Giriprastha, in Nishadha and thus attained his end. Before taking his birth in the womb of Aditi, Vishnu for the purpose of destroying the *Daityas* passed a long time unrecognised, assuming the form of the *Horse-necked.* Then how disguising himself in the form of a dwarf, he by his prowess deprived Vali of his kingdom, hath been heard by thee! And thou hast also heard how Hutāçana, entering into water and remaining in concealment, achieved the purpose of the gods. And, O thou versed in duty, thou hast heard how Hari with the view of overcoming his foes, entered into Sakra's thunder-bolt, and lay concealed there. And, O sinless one, thou hast heard of the office the regenerate *Rishi* Aurva at one time performed for the gods, remaining concealed in his mother's womb. And, O child, living in concealment in every part of the earth, Vivaswat, endued with excellent energy, at last entirely burnt up all his foes. And living disguised in the abode of Daçaratha, Vishnu of dreadful deeds slew the Ten-necked one in battle. Thus remaining in disguise in various places, high-souled persons have before this conquered their enemies in battle.' Thus cheered by these words of Dhaumya, the virtuous Yudhishthira, relying on his own wisdom and also that acquired from the scriptures, regained his composure. Then that foremost of strong persons, the mighty-armed Bhimasena

endued with great strength, encouraging the king greatly, spake these words,—'Looking up to thy face (for permission), the wielder of the *Gāndiva*, acting according to his sense of duty, hath not yet, O king, shown any rashness! And although fully able to destroy the foe, Nakula and Sahadeva of dreadful prowess have been ever prevented by me! Never shall we swerve from that in which thou wilt engage us! Do thou tell us what is to be done! We shall speedily conquer our enemies!' When Bhimasena had said this, the Brāhmanas uttered benedictions on the Bhāratas, and then obtaining their permission, went to their respective quarters. And all those foremost of *Yatis* and *Munis* versed in the Vedas, exceedingly desirous of again beholding the Pāndavas, went back to their homes. And accompanied by Dhaumya, those heroes, the five learned Pāndavas, equipped in bows, set out with Krishnā. And each versed in a separate science, and all proficient in *mantras* and cognisant of when peace was to be concluded and when war was to be waged, those tigers among men, about to enter upon a life of non-recognition, the next day proceeded for a *Kros* and then sat themselves down with the view of taking counsel of each other."

Thus ends the three hundred and fourteenth Section in the Araneya of the Vana Parva.

FINIS VANA PARVA.

Mahābhārata. English.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYAÑA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

LIBRARY OF PRINCETON
JUN 28 1918
THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY

Published and distributed chiefly *gratis*

BY

PROTAP CHANDRA ROY.

VIRATA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHARATA PRESS.

No. 367, UPPER CHITPORE ROAD.

1886.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

VIRATA PARVA.

Pāndava-Praveça Parva.

	PAGE.
Yudhishthira's consultation with his brothers and Draupadi.	1
Yudhishthira's desire of entering the service of Virāta as a gambler	2
Bhima's desire of serving Virāta as a cook ...	3
Arjuna's ditto of serving ditto as a dancing-master in the inner apartments	4
Nakula's ditto of serving ditto askeeper of the steeds	5
Sahadeva's ditto of serving ditto as keeper of the kine	6
Draupadi's ditto of serving Virāta's wife as her *Sairindhri*	ib
Dhaumya's advice to Yudhishthira and his brothers regarding the bearing of persons living in palaces	7
Dhaumya performs the rites of departure ...	11
Dhaumya takes leave of the Pāndavas ...	ib
Indrasena and other servants set out for Dwārakā	ib
The Pāndavas set out for Virāta's city ...	ib
The Pāndavas keep their weapons on a *Çami* tree	12
They assume new names for holding secret converse	13
Yudhishthira's hymn to Durgā	14
Durgā's boon to Yudhishthira	16
Yudhishthira presents himself to Virāta ...	17
Gives his name as Kanka and is accepted as a courtier	18
Bhima approaches Virāta as a cook, giving his name as Vallava, and is accepted	19
Draupadi enters Virāta's city and is accepted as a *Sairindhri* by the queen	20
Sahadeva approaches Virāta and is accepted as the keeper of the king's kine	23

PAGE.

Arjuna approaches Virāta dressed as a eunuch and is accepted as dancing-master to the royal maidens 24
Nakula approaches the king and is accepted as keeper of the king's steeds 26

Samaya-Pālana Parva.

The festival in honor of Brahmā 28
Bhima encounters the athlete Jimuta and slays him ib
Virāta rewards Bhima 30

Kichaka-badha Parva.

Kichaka beholds Draupadi and is smitten with her charms 31
Kichaka accosts Draupadi ... ... ib
Draupadi mildly reproves Kichaka 33
Kichaka renews his suit 34
Draupadi's indignant reply ... ... ib
Kichaka conspires with Sudeshnā for getting Draupadi in his power ... ... 35.
Sudeshnā sends Draupadi to Kichaka's abode on a pretended errand 36
Draupadi invokes Surya and Surya commands a *Rākshasa* to wait invisibly on Draupadi ... ... ib
Kichaka attempts to use force on Draupadi ... 37
Draupadi's escape and Kichaka's overthrow by the invisible *Rākshasa* ... ... ib
Kichaka pursues Draupadi and kicks her in the presence of Virāta and his courtiers 38
Draupadi's lament at this ... ... ib
Yudhishthira sends away Draupadi to the inner apartments 39
Draupadi visits Bhima at night 41
Bhima's lament 42
Draupadi's lament 44
Bhima consoles Draupadi 50
Bhima's promise to slay Kichaka 53
Draupadi's pretended assignation with Kichaka ... 54
Bhima encounters Kichaka at night in the dancing-hall 56

PAGE.

They fight 57
Bhima slays Kichaka and reduces him to a formless mass of flesh 58
The Upakichakas desire to burn Draupadi with Kichaka's corpse 60
Draupadi invokes her lords for help 61
Bhima rushes, tree in hand, against the Upakichakas and slays them 62
Draupadi comes back to Virāta's palace ... 63
Virāta's fears ... ... ib
Draupadi's meeting with Vrihannalā ... ... ib
Sudeshnā asks her to leave her service ... 64
She promises to do so within a few days ... ib

Go-harana Parva.

The spies of Duryodhana carry news of Kichaka's death to Hastināpura 66
Duryodhana's resolve to renew the search ... 67
Karna counsels the same ... ... ib
Drona recommends peace 68
Bhishma does the same 69
Kripa's speech 72
Suçarman's proposal for invading Virāta's dominions 74
Duryodhana accepts the proposal and makes arrangements accordingly 75
News reaches Virāta of the seizure of his kine ... 76
Virāta makes preparations for setting out ... ib
The four sons of Pāndu follow Virāta 77
The fight between the Matsyas and the Trigartas ... 78
Virāta taken captive by Suçarman 81
Bhima rescues Virāta, vanquishing Suçarman ... 83
Suçarman taken prisoner by Bhima 84
Yudhishthira sets Suçarman free 85
Virāta's gratitude to the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Seizure of Virāta's kine in the north by the Kurus 87
News is brought to Uttara of this ... ... ib
Uttara's want of a charioteer 88

PAGE.

Draupadi praises Vrihannalā's skill in driving cars... 89
Uttarā requests Vrihannalā to act as her brother's charioteer 91
Uttara sets out with Vrihannalā 93
Uttara's panic at sight of the Kuru army ... 94
Uttara jumps down from the car and runs away ... 95
Arjuna seizes Uttara and takes him up on the car... 96
The doubts of the Kurus at sight of this act ... ib
Arjuna assures Uttara 97
Arjuna and Uttara proceed towards the *Çami* tree ... ib
Drona's speech at sight of evil omens ... ... ib
Arjuna and Uttara having reached the *Çami* tree, the former askes the latter to climb it for weapons ... 99
Uttara climbs up the tree 100
Uttara's enquiries regarding the weapons he sees ... 101
Arjuna answers Uttara 104
Arjuna discloses himself to Uttara ... ... ib
Arjuna's ten names and their meanings ... 105
Uttara recovers from his fright and agrees to drive Arjuna's car in battle 106
Arjuna's explanation of his disguise as a eunuch ... 107
Arjuna invokes his weapons 108
They promise to obey his call ... ... ib
Arjuna invokes his own celestial banner ... 109
It comes at his call ... ... ib
Drona calls the attention of the Kuru chiefs to various evil omens 111
Duryodhana's justification of the invasion ... 112
His surmises regarding the approaching warrior ... 113
Duryodhana urges his army to fight 114
Karna accuses Drona of secretly favoring the Pāndavas ib
Karna brags of his own prowess 116
Kripa's reply to Karna 117
Açwathāman's speech in reply to Karna's brag ... 120
Bhishma's conciliatory speech 123
Duryodhana asks Drona's forgiveness 124
Bhishma's calculation of the period of concealment 125

PAGE.

Bhishma advises peace with the Pāndavas ... 126
Duryodhana's refusal to give back the kingdom ... ib
Bhishma arrays the troops in four divisions ... ib
Arjuna sets the kine free 129
Commencement of the battle 130
Arjuna slays Sangrāmajit the brother of Karna ... 132
The first encounter between Arjuna and Karna ... ib
Karna takes to flight 133
The general encounter and Arjuna's heroism ... 134
Arjuna points out to Uttara the different Kuru heroes by their special marks 137
The arrival of the celestials and others in their invisible forms for beholding the battle 138
Arjuna's encounter with Kripa 141
Kripa defeated and taken away 143
Arjuna's encounter with Drona ... ... ib
Drona worsted in the conflict 148
Açwathāman rushes against Arjuna ... ... ib
Açwathāman worsted in the conflict 150
Arjuna's second encounter with Karna ... ... ib
Karna's flight 152
Arjuna directs Uttara to take him before Bhishma ib
Uttara's fright 153
Arjuna assures Uttara ... ... ib
Arjuna makes a terrible havoc among the Kurus ... 156
Bhishma's rush against Arjuna 158
The fierce encounter between Bhishma and Arjuna 159
Bhishma worsted and taken away by his charioteer 161
Duryodhana rushes against Arjuna 162
Duryodhana's flight 163
Arjuna bitterly rebukes Duryodhana ... ... ib
Duryodhana turns back and is aided by the Kuru chiefs 164
Arjuna shoots the weapon called *Sanmohana* ... ib
The Kuru warriors fall asleep 165
Uttara takes off the garments of Duryodhana, Drona, Kripa, Karna, and Açwathāman ... ... ib
Arjuna's car freed from the press ... ... ib

PAGE.

The Kurus awake 165
Bhishma counsels a cessation of the fight ... 166
The Kurus retreat towards Hastināpura ... ib
Arjuna smashes Duryodhana's crown into fragments by an arrow ... ... ib
The missing soldiers of the Kurus appear before Arjuna and are set free 167
Arjuna advises Uttara not to discover the Pāndavas to king Virāta ... ... ib
Arjuna's banner goes up to the sky 168
Arjuna re-disguises himself as Vrihannalā and becomes Uttara's charioteer ... ... ib
Uttara sends messengers in advance with news of the victory 169
Virāta's alarm and anxiety upon hearing that Uttara had gone out against the Kurus 170
The king commands his generals to set out in aid of Uttara ib
Yudhishthira consoles Virāta ... ... ib
Messengers bring intelligence of the defeat of the Kurus 171
The king's joy and preparations for receiving Uttara ib
Virāta's desire to gamble 172
Yudhishthira's repeated praise of Vrihannalā during the play ... ... ib
Yudhishthira struck by Virāta with a die ... 173
Draupadi holds a vessel of water for receiving the blood that falls from Yudhishthira's nose ... ... ib
Uttara and Virhannalā at the gate of the palace ... ib
The king commands both to enter ... ... ib
Yudhishthira whispers to the warder not to admit Vrihannalā ... ... ib
Uttara worships the feet of his father 174
Beholding Kanka's wound and humiliation, Uttara asks his father to propitiate Kanka ... ... ib
Virāta propitiates Kanka ... ... ib
Uttara ascribes the victory to the aid of a celestial youth 175
Virāta's desire to behold his benefactor ... 176
The Pāndavas with Draupadi throw off their disguise 177

PAGE.

Virāta's surprise and anger at beholding Yudhishthira on the throne ... ... ib
Arjuna's speech ... ... ib
Arjuna points out to Virāta the different Pāndavas 179
Uttara also points them out 180
Uttara describes Arjuna's prowess and heroism ... ib
Virāta's joy at the discovery 181
Virāta offers the Pāndavas his kingdom ... 182
Virāta's offer of bestowing Uttarā upon Arjuna ... ib
Arjuna's refusal ... ... ib
Arjuna's reasons for the refusal ... ... ib
Arjuna accepts the princess on behalf of his son Abhimanyu ib
The arrival of Drupada, Krishna, and the Yādavas at Virāta's capital 183
The marriage of Abhimanyu with Uttarā ... 184
Gifts by both Virāta and Yudhishthira... ... ib

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

VIRĀTA PARVA.

SECTION I.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva.)

Om! After having bowed down to Nārāyana, and Nara the most exalted of male beings, and also to the goddess Saraswati, must the word *Jaya* be uttered.

Janamejaya said.—" How did my great-grandfathers, afflicted with the fear of Duryodhana, pass their days undiscovered in the city of Virāta ? And, O Brāhmana, how did the highly blessed Draupadi, stricken with woe, devoted to her lords, and ever adoring the Deity,* spend her days unrecognised ?"

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Listen, O lord of men, how thy great-grandfathers passed the period of non-discovery in the city of Virāta ! Having in this way obtained boons from the god of Justice, that best of virtuous men, Yudhishthira, returned to the asylum and related unto the Brāhmanas all that had happened. And having related everything unto them, Yudhishthira restored to that regenerate follower of his the churning staff and the fire-sticks he had lost. And, O Bhārata, the son of the god of Justice, the royal Yudhisthira of high soul, then called together all his younger brothers and addressed them, saying,—'Exiled from our kingdom, we have passed twelve years. The thirteenth year, hard to spend, hath now come. Do thou, therefore, O Arjuna the son of Kunti, select some spot where we may pass our days undiscovered by our enemies !'

---

* *Brahma-Vādini*—Nilakantha explains this as *Krishna-kirtana-çilā.—T.*

"Arjuna replied,—'Even by virtue of Dharma's boon, we shall, O lord of men, range about undiscovered by men. Still, for purposes of residence, I shall mention some spots that are both delightful and secluded. Do thou select some one of them. Surrounding the kingdom of the Kurus, are many countries, beautiful and abounding in corn, such as Pānchāla, Chedi, Matsya, Curasena, Pattachchara, Daçārna, Navarāshtra, Malla, Cālva, Yugandhara, Surāshtra, Avanti, and the spacious Kuntirāshtra. Which of these, O king, wouldst thou choose, and where, O foremost of monarchs, shall we spend this year?'

"Yudhishthira said,—'O thou of mighty arms, it is even so. What that adorable Lord of all creatures hath said must become true! Surely, after consulting together, we must select some delightful, auspicious, and agreeable region for our abode, where we may live free from fear. The aged Virāta, king of the Matsyas, is virtuous and powerful and charitable, and is liked by all. And he is also attached to the Pāndavas. Even in the city of Virāta, O child, we shall, O Bhārata, spend this year, entering his service. Tell me, ye sons of the Kuru race, in what capacities ye will severally present yourselves before the king of the Matsyas!'

"Arjuna said,—'O god among men, what service wilt thou take in Virāta's kingdom? O righteous one, in what capacity wilt thou reside in the city of Virāta? Thou art mild, and charitable, and modest, and virtuous, and firm in promise. What wilt thou, O king, afflicted as thou art with calamity, do? A king is ill qualified to bear trouble like an ordinary person. How wilt thou overcome this great calamity that has overtaken thee?'

"Yudhishthira replied,—'Ye sons of the Kuru race, ye bulls among men, hear what I shall do on appearing before king Virāta. Presenting myself as a Brāhmana, Kanka by name, skilled in dice and fond of play, I shall become a courtier of that high-souled king. And moving upon boards beautiful pawns made of ivory, of blue and yellow and red and white hue, by means of black and red dice, I shall entertain the king with his courtiers and friends. And while I shall continue to thus please the king, nobody will succeed in discovering me.

And should the monarch ask me, I shall say,—*Formerly I was the bosom friend of Yudhishthira.* I tell you that it is thus that I shall pass my days (in the city of Virāta). What office wilt thou, O Vrikodara, fill in the city of Virāta ?' "

Thus ends the first Section in the Pāndava-praveça of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION II.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva continued.)

" Bhima said,—'I intend to present myself before the lord of Virāta as a cook bearing the name of Vallava. I am skilled in the culinary art, and I shall prepare curries for the king ; and excelling all those skilful cooks that had hitherto dressed his food, I shall gratify the monarch. And I shall carry mighty loads of wood. And witnessing that mighty feat, the monarch will be pleased. And, O Bhārata, beholding such superhuman feats of mine, the servants of the royal household will honor me as a king. And I shall have entire control over all kinds of viands and drinks. And commanded to subdue powerful elephants and mighty bulls, I will do as bidden. And if any combatants will fight with me in the lists, then will I vanquish them, and thereby entertain the monarch. But I shall not take the life of any of them. I shall only bring them down in such way that they may not be killed. And on being asked as regards my antecedents I shall say that—*Formerly I was the wrestler and cook of Yudhishthira.* Thus shall I, O king, maintain myself !'

" Yudhishthira said,—'And what office will be performed by that mighty descendant of the Kurus, Dhananjaya the son of Kunti, that foremost of men possessed of long arms, invincible in fight, and before whom, while he was staying with Krishna, the divine Agni himself desirous of consuming the forest of Khāndava had formerly appeared in the guise of a Brāhmana ? What office will be performed by that best of warriors, Arjuna, who proceeded to that forest and gratified Agni, vanquishing on a single car and slaying huge *Nāgas* and *Rākshasas,* and who married the sister of Vāsuki himself the king of the *Nāgas* ? Even as the sun is the foremost of all heat-giving bodies,

as the Brāhmana is the best of all bipeds, as the cobra is the foremost of all serpents, as Fire is the first of all things possessed of energy, as the thunder-bolt is the foremost of all weapons, as the humped bull is the foremost of all animals of the bovine breed, as the ocean is the foremost of all watery expanses, as clouds charged with rain are the foremost of all clouds, as Dhritarāshtra is the first of all *Nāgas,* as Airāvata is the foremost of all elephants, as the son is the foremost of all beloved objects, and lastly, as the wife is the best of all firiends, so, O Vrikodara, is the youthful Gudākeça the foremost of all bowmen! And, O Bhārata, what office will be performed by the wielder of the *Gāndiva, viz,* Vibhatsu, whose car is drawn by white horses, and who is not inferior to Indra or Vāsudeva himself? What office will be performed by Arjuna who, dwelling for five years in the abode of the thousand-eyed deity shining in celestial lustre, acquired by his own energy the science of superhuman arms with all celestial weapons, and whom I regard as the tenth *Rudra,* the thirteenth *Aditya,* the ninth *Vasu,* and the tenth *Graha,* whose arms, symmetrical and long, have the skin hardened by constant strokes of the bow-string and the cicatrices on which resemble those on the humps of bulls,—that foremost of warriors who is as Himavat among mountains, the ocean among expanses of water, Cakra among celestials, Havyavāh (Fire) among the Vasus, the tiger among beasts, and Garuda among feathery tribes!'

"Arjuna replied,—'O lord of the Earth, I will declare myself as one of the neuter sex. O monarch, it is, indeed, difficult to hide the marks of the bow-string on my arms. I will, however, cover both my cicatrized arms with bangles. Wearing brilliant rings on my ears and conch-bangles on my wrists, and causing a braid to hang down from my head, I will, O king, appear as one of the third sex, Vrihannalā by name. And living as a female, I will (always) entertain the king and the inmates of the inner apartments by reciting stories. And, O king, I will also instruct the women of Virāta's palace in singing and delightful modes of dancing, and in musical instruments of diverse kinds. And I will also recite the various excellent acts of men and thus conceal myself, O son of Kunti, by counter-

feiting disguise. And, O Bhārata, should the king enquire, I will say that *I lived as a waiting maid of Draupadi in Yudhishthira's palace.* And, O foremost of kings, concealing myself by this means, as fire is concealed by ashes, I will pass my days agreeably in the palace of Virāta !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Having said this, Arjuna, that best of men and foremost of virtuous persons, became silent. Then the king addressed another brother of his."*

Thus ends the second Section in the Pādava-praveça of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION III.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva continued.)

" Yudhishthira said,—'Tender, and possessed of a graceful presence, and deserving of every luxury as thou art, what office wilt thou, O heroic Nakula, discharge while living in the dominions of that king ? Tell me all about it !'

" Nakula said,—'Under the name of Granthika, I will become the keeper of the horses of king Virāta. I have a thorough knowledge (of this work) and am skilful in tending horses. Besides, the task is agreeable to me, and I possess great skill in training and treating horses ; and horses are ever dear to me as they are to thee, O king of the Kurus ! At my hands even colts and mares become docile ; these never become vicious in bearing a rider or drawing a car.† And those persons in the city of Virāta that may enquire of me, I will, O bull of the Bharata race, say,—*Formerly I was employed by Yudhishthira in the charge of his horses.* Thus disguised, O king, I will spend my days delightfully in the city of Virāta. No one will be able to discover me as I will gratify the monarch thus !'‡

---

* This speech of Vaiçampāyana is not included in some texts within the second Section. To include it, however, in the third, is evidently a mistake.—*T.*

† The *sloka* commencing with *Adushta* and ending with *ratheshu cha* does not occur in texts except those of Bengal.—*T.*

‡ A difference of reading is observable here. The sense, however, is the same.—*T.*

" Yudhishthira said,—'How wilt thou, O Sahadeva, bear thyself before that king ? And what, O child, is that which thou wilt do in order to live in disguise ?'

" Sahadeva replied,—'I will become a teller of the kine of Virāta's king. I am skilled in milking kine and taking their tale, as well as in taming their fierceness. Passing under the name of Tantripāl, I will perform my duties deftly. Let thy heart's fever be dispelled. Formerly I was frequently employed after thy kine, and, O lord of earth, I have a particular knowledge of that work ! And, O monarch, I am well acquainted with the nature of kine, as also with their auspicious marks and other matters relating to them ! I can also discriminate bulls with auspicious marks, the scent of whose urine may make even the barren bring forth. Even thus will I live, and I always take delight in work of this kind. Indeed, no one will then be able to recognise me, and I will moreover gratify the monarch.'

" Yudhishthira said,—'This is our beloved wife dear to us than our lives ! Verily, she deserveth to be cherished by us like a mother, and regarded like an elder sister. Unacquainted as she is with any kind of womanly work, what office will Krishnā, the daughter of Drupada, perform ? Delicate and young, she is a princess of great repute. Devoted to her lords, and eminently virtuous, alas, how will she live ? Since her birth, she hath enjoyed only garlands and perfumes and ornaments and costly robes !'

" Draupadi replied,—'There is class of persons called *Sairindhris,** who enter the services of others. Other females, however, (that are respectable) do not do so. Of this class there are some. I will give myself out as a *Sairindhri,* skilled in dressing hair. And, O Bhārata, on being questioned by the king, I will say that I served as a waiting-woman of Draupadi in Yudhishthira's house-hold. I will thus pass my days in disguise. And I will serve the famous Sudeshnā, the wife of the king. Surely, obtaining me she will cherish me (duly) ! Do not grieve so, O king !'

" Yudhishthira said,—'O Krishnā, thou speakest well. But

---

* An independent female artisan working in another persons's house. —*Wilson.*

O fair girl, thou wert born in a respectable family. Chaste as thou art, and always engaged in observing virtuous vows, thou knowest not what is sin! Do thou, therefore, conduct thyself in such a way that sinful men of evil hearts may not be gladdened by gazing at thee!' "

Thus ends the third Section in the Pāndava-praveça of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION IV.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva continued.)

" Yudhishthira said,—'Ye have already said what offices ye will respectively perform! I also, according to the measure of my sense, have said what office I will perform. Let our priest, accompanied by our charioteers and cooks, repair to the abode of Drupada, and there maintain our *Agnihotra* fires. And let Indrasena and the others, taking with them the empty cars, speedily proceed to Dwārāvati. Even this is my wish. And let all these maid-servants of Draupadi go to the Pānchālas, with our charioteers and cooks. And let all of them say,—*We do not know where the Pāndavas have gone leaving us at the lake of Dwaitavana.*' "

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Having thus taken counsel of one another and told one another the offices they would discharge, the Pāndavas sought Dhaumya's advice. And Dhaumya also gave them advice in the following words. And Dhaumya said,—'Ye sons of Pāndu, the arrangements ye have made regarding the Brāhmanas, your friends, cars, weapons, and the (sacred) fires, are excellent! But it behoveth thee, O Yudhishthira, and Arjuna specially, to make provision for the protection of Draupadi! Ye kings, ye are well acquainted with the characters of men. Yet whatever may be your knowledge, friends may from affection be permitted to repeat what is already known. Even this is subservient to the eternal interests of virtue, pleasure, and profit. I shall, therefore, speak to you something. Mark ye! To dwell with a king is, alas, difficult! I shall tell you, ye princes, how ye may reside in the royal household, avoiding every fault. Ye Kauravas, honorably or otherwise, ye will have

to pass this year in the king's palace, undiscovered by those that know you. Then in the fourteenth year, ye will live happily. O son of Pāndu, in this world, that cherisher and protector of all beings, the king, who is the Deity in an embodied form, is as a great fire sanctified with all the *mantras !** One should present himself before the king, after having obtained his permission at the gate. No one should keep contact with royal secrets. Nor should one desire a seat which another may covet. He who doth not, regarding himself to be a favorite, occupy (the king's) car, or couch, or seat, or vehicle, or elephant, is alone worthy of dwelling in a royal household. He that sits not upon a seat the occupation of which is calculated to raise alarm in the minds of malicious people, is alone worthy of dwelling in a royal household. No one should, unasked, offer counsel (to a king). Paying homage in season unto the king, one should silently and respectfully sit beside the king, for kings take umbrage at babblers, and disgrace lying counsellors. A wise person should not contract friendship with the king's wife, nor with the inmates of the inner apartments, nor with those that are objects of royal displeasure. One about the king should do even the most unimportant act with the king's knowledge. Behaving thus with a sovereign, one doth not come by harm. Even if an individual attain the highest office, he should, as long as he is not asked or commanded, consider himself as born blind, having regard to the king's dignity; for those repressers of foes, the rulers of men, do not forgive even their sons and grandsons and brothers when these happen to tamper with their dignity. Kings should be served with regardful care, even as *Agni* or any other god; and he that is disloyal to his sovereign, is certainly destroyed by him. Renouncing anger, and pride, and negligence, it behoveth a man to follow the course directed by the monarch. After carefully deliberating on all things, a person should set forth before the king those topics that are both profitable and pleasant; but should a subject be profitable without being pleasant, he should

---

* Some of the Bengal texts read *Sarvaçastramaya* for *Sarvamantramaya*. The former is evidently incorrect.—*T.*

still communicate it, despite its disagreeableness. It behoveth a man to be well-disposed towards the king in all his interests; and not to indulge in speech that is alike unpleasant and profitless. Always thinking—*I am not liked by the king*—one should banish negligence, and be intent on bringing about what is agreeable and advantageous to him. He that swerveth not from his place, he that is not friendly to those that are hostile to the king, he that striveth not to do wrong to the king, is alone worthy to dwell in a royal household. A learned man should sit on either the king's right or the left, for behind him is the place appointed for armed guards, and to sit before him is always interdicted. Let none, when the king is engaged in doing anything (in respect of his servants), come forward pressing himself zealously before others, for even if very poor such conduct would still be inexcusable.* It behoveth no man to reveal to others any lie the king may have told, inasmuch as the king bears ill will to those that report his falsehoods. Kings also always disregard persons that regard themselves as learned. No man should be proud, thinking—*I am brave*, or, *I am intelligent*, but a person obtains the good graces of a king and enjoys the good things of life, by behaving agreeably to the wishes of the king. And, O Bhārata, obtaining things agreeable, and wealth also which is so hard to acquire, a person should always do what is profitable as well as pleasant to the king. What man that is respected by the wise can even think of doing mischief to one whose ire is a great impediment and whose favor is productive of mighty fruits? No one should move his lips, arms, and thighs, before the king. A person should speak and spit before the king only mildly.

---

* This is a very difficult *sloka*. Nilakantha adopts the reading *Sanjayet*. The Bengal editions read *Sanjapet*. If the latter be the correct reading, the meaning then would be,—"Let none talk about what transpires in the presence of the king, for those even that are poor regard it as a grave fault." The sense, evidently, is that the occurrences in respect of a king which one witnesses should not be divulged. Even they that are powerless regard such divulgence of what occurs in respect of them as an insult to them and, therefore, inexcusable —*T*.

In the presence of even laughable objects, a man should not break out into loud laughter, like a maniac; nor should one show (unseasonable) gravity, by containing himself to the utmost. One should smile modestly, to show his interest (in what is before him). He that is ever mindful of the king's welfare, and is neither exhilarated by reward nor depressed by disgrace, is alone worthy of dwelling in a royal household. That learned courtier who always pleaseth the king and his son with agreeable speeches, succeedeth in dwelling in a royal household as a favorite. The favorite courtier who having lost the royal favor for just reason does not speak evil of the king, regains prosperity. The man who serveth the king or liveth in his domains, if sagacious, should speak in praise of the king, both in his presence and absence. The courtier who attempts to obtain his ends by employing force on the king, cannot keep his place long and incurs also the danger of death. None should, for purposes of self-interest, open communications with the king's enemies.* Nor should one distinguish himself above the king in matters requiring ability and talents. He that is always cheerful, and strong, and brave, and truthful, and mild, and of subdued senses, and who followeth his master like his shadow, is alone worthy to dwell in a royal household. He that, on another being entrusted with a work, cometh forward, saying,—*I will do this*—is alone worthy of living in a royal household. He that, on being entrusted with a task, either within the king's dominion, or out of it, never feareth to undertake it, is alone fit to reside in a royal household. He that, living away from his home, doth not remember his dear ones, and who undergoeth (present) misery in expectation of (future) happiness, is alone worthy of dwelling in a royal household. One should not dress like the king, nor should one indulge in loud laughter in the king's presence, nor should one disclose royal secrets. By acting thus one may win royal favor. Commissioned to a task, one should not touch bribes, for by such

* The Bengal editions read *Râjnâ* in the instrumental case; hence the difficulty of explaining *Samvadèt*. Following a manuscript text of a Pandit of my acquaintance I read *Râjnas* in the genitive.—*T.*

appropriation, one becometh liable to fetters or death. The robes, ornaments, cars, and other things which the king may be pleased to bestow, should always be used, for, by this, one winneth the royal favor. Ye children, controlling your minds, do ye spend this year, ye sons of Pāndu, behaving in this way! Regaining your own kingdom, ye may live as ye please!'

"Yudhishthira said,—'We have been taught by thee! Blessed be thou! There is none that could say so to us, save our mother Kunti, and Vidura of great wisdom! It behoveth thee to do all that is necessary now for our departure, and for enabling us to come safely through this woe, as well as for our victory over the foe!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed by Yudhishthira, Dhaumya, that best of Brāhmanas, performed according to the ordinance the rites ordained in respect of departure. And lighting up their fires, he offered, with *mantras*, oblations on them for the prosperity and success of the Pāndavas, as also for their reconquest of the whole world. And walking round those fires and round the Brāhmanas of ascetic wealth, the six set out, placing Yājnaseni in their front. And when those heroes had departed, Dhaumya, that best of ascetics, taking their sacred fires, set out for the Pānchālas. And Indrasena, and others already mentioned, went to the Yādavas, and looking after the horses and the cars of the Pāndavas passed their time happily and in privacy."

Thus ends the fourth Section in the Pāndava-praveça of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION V.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Girding on their swords, and equipped with finger-protectors made of *iguana* skins and with various weapons, those heroes proceeded in the direction of the river Kālindi. And those bowmen desirous of (speedily) recovering their kingdom, hitherto living in inaccessible hills and forest fastneses, now terminated their forest life and proceeded to the southern bank of that river. And those mighty warriors

endued with great strength and hitherto leading the lives of hunters by killing the deer of the forest, passed through Yakrilloma and Curasena, leaving behind, on their right, the country of the Pānchālas, and on their left, that of the Daçārnas. And those bowmen, looking wan and wearing beards and equipped with swords, entered Matsya's dominions leaving the forest, giving themselves out as hunters. And on arriving at that country, Krishnā addressed Yudhishthira, saying,—'We see footpaths here, and various fields. From this it appears that Virāta's metropolis is still at a distance. Pass we here what part of the night is still left, for great is my fatigue!'

"Yudhishthira answered,—'O Dhananjaya of Bhārata's race, do thou take up Pānchāli and carry her. Just on emerging from this forest, we arrive at the city.'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thereupon like the leader of a herd of elephants, Arjuna speedily took up Draupadi, and on coming to the vicinity of the city, let her down. And on reaching the city, Kunti's son (Yudhishthira), addressed Arjuna, saying,—'Where shall we deposit our weapons, before entering the city? If, O child, we enter it with our weapons about us, we shall thereby surely excite the alarm of the citizens. Further, thy tremendous bow, the *Gāndiva*, is known to all men, so that people will, without doubt, recognise us soon! And if even one of us is discovered, we shall, according to promise, have to pass another twelve years in the forest!'

"Arjuna said,—'Hard by yon cemetery and near that inaccessible peak is a mighty *Sami* tree, throwing about its gigantic branches and difficult to ascend. Nor is there any human being, I think, who, O Pāndu's son, will espy us depositing our arms at that place! That tree is in the midst of an out-of-the-way forest abounding in beasts and snakes, and is in the vicinity of a dreary cemetery. Stowing away our weapons on that *Sami* tree, let us, O Bhārata, go to the city, and live there, free from anxiety!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having, O bull of the Bhārata race, spoken thus to king Yudhishthira the Just, Arjuna prepared to deposit the weapons (on the tree). And that bull among the Kurus, Arjuna, then loosened the string of the large and dread-

ful *Gāndiva*, ever producing a thundering twang, and always destructive of hostile hosts, and with which he had conquered, on a single car, gods and men and *Nāgas* and swelling provinces. And the warlike Yudhishthira, that represser of foes, unfastend the undecaying string of that bow with which he had defended the field of Kurukshetra. And the illustrious Bhimasena unstrung that bow, by means of which that sinless one had vanquished in fight the Pānchālas and the lord of Sindhu, and with which, during his career of conquest, he had, single-handed opposed innumerable foes, and hearing whose twang which was like unto the roar of the thunder or the splitting of a mountain, enemies always fly (in panic) from the field of battle. And that son of Pāndu, of coppery complexion and mild speech and endued with great prowess in the field, and who was called Nakula in consequence of his unexampled beauty in the family, then unfastened the string of that bow with which he had conquered all the regions of the west. And the heroic Sahadeva also, possessed of a mild disposition, then untied the string of that bow with which he had subjugated the countries on the south. And with their bows, they put together their long and flashing swords, their precious quivers, and their arrows sharp as razors. And Nakula ascended the tree, and deposited on it the bows and the other weapons. And he tied them fast on those parts of the tree which he thought would not break, and where the rain would not penetrate. And the Pāndavas hung up a cropse (on the tree), knowing that people smelling the stench of the corpse would say—*here sure, is a dead body*, and avoid the tree from a distance. And on being asked by the shepherds and cowherds regarding the corpse, those repressers of foes said unto them,—'This is our mother, aged one hundred and eighty years. We have hung up her dead body, in accordance with the custom observed by our forefathers.' And then those resisters of foes approached the city. And for purposes of non-discovery Yudhishthira kept these (five) names for himself and his brothers respectively, *viz.*,—Jaya, Jayanta, Vijaya, Jayatsena, and Jayatvala. Then they entered the great city, with the view of passing undiscovered the thirteenth year in that kingdom, agreeably to the promise (to Duryodhana)."

Thus ends the fifth Section in the Pāndava-praveça of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION VI.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" And while Yudhishthira was on his way to the delightful city of Virāta, he began to praise mentally the divine Durgā, the Supreme Goddess of the Universe, born of the womb of Yasodā, and fond of the boons bestowed on her by Nārāyana, sprung from the race of the cowherd Nanda, and the giver of prosperity, the enhancer (of the glory) of (a worshipper's) family, the terrifier of Kansa, and the destroyer of *Asuras*,—her who ascended the skies when dashed (by Kansa) on a stony platform, the sister of Vāsudeva,—her that is always decked in celestial garlands and attired in celestial robes,—the Goddess armed with scimitar and shield, and always rescuing worshippers sunk in sin like a cow in the mire, worshippers, that is, who in hours of distress call upon that eternal giver of blessings for relieving them of their burdens. And the king, desirous with his brothers of obtaining a sight of the Goddess, invoked her and began to praise her by reciting various names derived from (approved) hymns. And Yudhishthira said,—'Salutations to thee, O giver of boons, O thou that art identical with Krishna, O maiden, O thou that hadst observed the vow of *Brahmacharya*, O thou of body bright as the newly-risen Sun, O thou of face beautiful as the full moon! Salutations to thee, O thou of four hands and four faces, O thou of fair round hips and deep bosom, O thou that wearest bangles made of emeralds and sapphires, O thou that bearest excellent bracelets on thy upper arm! Thou shinest, O Goddess, as Padmā the consort of Nārāyana! O thou that rangest the etherial regions, thy true form and thy *Brahmacharya* are both of the purest kind! Sable as the black clouds, thy face is beautiful as that of *Sankarshana*! Thou bearest two large arms long as a couple of poles raised in honor of Indra! In thy (six) other arms thou bearest a vessel, a lotus, a bell, a noose, a bow, a large discus, and various other weapons! Thou art the

only female in the universe that possessest the attribute of purity! Thou art decked with a pair of well-made ears graced with excellent rings! O Goddess, thou shinest with a face that challengeth the moon in beauty! With an excellent diadem and beautiful braid, with robes made of the bodies of snakes, and with also the brilliant girdle round thy hips, thou shinest like the Mandara mountain encircled with snakes! Thou shinest also with peacock-plumes standing erect on thy head, and thou hast sanctified the celestial regions by adopting the vow of perpetual maiden-hood! It is for this, O thou that hast slain the *Buffalo-Asura,** that thou art praised and worshipped by the gods for the protection of the three worlds! O thou foremost of all deities, extend to me thy grace, show me thy mercy, and be thou the source of blessings to me! Thou art *Jayā* and *Vijayā*, and it is thou that givest victory in battle! Grant me victory, O Goddess, and give me boons also at this hour of distress! Thy eternal abode is on Vindhya—that foremost of mountains! O *Kāli*, O *Kāli*, thou art the great *Kāli* ever fond of wine and meat and animal sacrifice! Capable of going every where at will, and bestowing boons on thy devotees, thou art ever followed in thy journeys by Brahmā and the other gods! By them that call upon thee for the relief of their burdens, and by them also that bow to thee at day break on Earth, there is nothing that cannot be attained in respect either of offspring or wealth! And because thou rescuest people from difficulties whether when they are afflicted in the wilderness or sinking in the great ocean, it is for this that thou art called *Durgā*† by all! Thou art the sole refuge of men when attacked by robbers or while afflicted in crossing streams and seas or in wildernesses and forests! Those men that remember thee are never prostrated, O great Goddess!

---

* *Mahishāsura*, the son of Jambhāsura. Durga had to fight for many many years before she could slay this formidable *Asura*. The story occurs in the *Mârkandeya Purāna*. To this day, Bengal, during the great Durgà festival in Autumn, the goddess is represented as slaying Jambhásura's son.—*T*.

† Literally, one that rescues from difficulty.—*T*.

Thou art Fame, thou art Prosperity, thou art Steadiness, thou art Success, thou art the Wife, thou art men's Offspring, thou art Knowledge, and thou art the Intellect! Thou art the two Twilights, the Night, Sleep, Light—both solar and lunar, Beauty, Forgiveness, Mercy, and every other thing. Man's fetters, ignorance, loss of children and loss of wealth, disease, death, and fear, thou dispellest worshipped by thy devotees! I, who have been deprived of my kingdom, seek thy protection! And as I bow to thee with bended head, O Supreme Goddess, grant me protection, O thou of eyes like lotus leaves! And be thou as boon-giving Truth unto us that are acting according to the Truth! And, O Durgā, kind as thou art unto all that seek thy protection, and affectionate unto all thy devotees, grant me protection!'

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus praised by the son of Pāndu, the Goddess showed herself unto him. And approaching the king, she addressed him in these words,—'O mighty-armed king, listen, O Lord, to these words of mine! Having vanquished and slain the ranks of the Kauravas through my grace, victory in battle will soon be thine! Thou shalt again lord it over the entire Earth, having made thy dominions destitute of thorns! And, O king, thou shalt also, with thy brothers, obtain great happiness! And through my grace, joy and health will be thine! And they also in the world who will recite my attributes and achievements will be freed from their sins, and gratified, I will bestow upon them kingdom, length of days, beauty of person, and offspring! And they, O king, who will invoke me, after thy manner, in exile or in the city, in the midst of battle or of dangers from foes, in forests or in inaccessible deserts, in seas or mountain fastnesses, there is nothing that they will not obtain in this world! And ye sons of Pāndu, he will achieve success in every business of his that will listen to, or himself recite with devotion, this excellent hymn! And through my grace neither the Kuru spies, nor those that dwell in the country of the Matsyas, will succeed in recognising you all as long as ye reside in Virāta's city!' And having said these words unto Yudhishthira, that chastiser of foes, and having arranged for the protection of the sons of Pāndu, the Goddess disappeared there and then."

Thus ends the sixth Section in the Pāndava-praveça of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION VII.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Then tying up in his cloth dice made of gold and set with *lapis lazuli*, and holding them below his arm-pit, king Yudhishthira,—that illustrious lord of men—that high-souled perpetuator of the Kuru race, regarded by kings, irrepressible in might, and like unto a snake of virulent poison,—that bull among men, endued with strength and beauty and prowess, and possessed of greatness, and resembling in form a celestial though now like unto the sun enveloped in dense clouds, or fire covered with ashes, first made his appearance when the famous king Virāta was seated in his court. And beholding with his followers that son of Pāndu in his court, looking like the moon hid in clouds and possessed of a face beautiful as the full moon, king Virāta addressed his counsellors and the twice-born ones and the charioteers and the Vaiçyas and others, saying,—'Enquire ye who it is, so like a king, that looketh on my court for the first time! He cannot be a Brāhmana. Methinks he is a man of men, and a lord of earth. He hath no slave, nor car, nor elephant with him, yet he shineth like a very Indra. The marks on his person indicate him to be one whose coronal locks have undergone the sacred investiture. Even this is my belief. He approacheth me without any hesitation, even as an elephant in rut approacheth an assemblage of lotuses!'

" And as the king was indulging in these thoughts, that bull among men, Yudhishthira came before Virāta and addressed him, saying,—'O great king, know me for a Brāhmana who, having lost his all, hath come to thee for the means of subsistence! I desire, O sinless one, to live here beside thee acting under thy commands,* O lord!' The king then, well-pleased, replied unto him, saying,—'Thou art welcome! Do thou then accept the appointment thou seekest!' And having appointed

---

* *Kāmachara* is explained by Nilakantha thus, although in other places it bears quite a different meaning —*T*.

that lion among kings in the post he had prayed for, king Virāta addressed him with a glad heart, saying,—'O child, I ask thee from affection. From the dominions of what king dost thou come hither? Tell me also truly what is thy name and family, and what thou hast a knowledge of.'

"Yudhishthira said,—'My name is Kanka, and I am a Brāhhmana belonging to the family known by the name of *Vaiyāghra.* I am skilled in casting dice, and formerly I was a friend of Yudhishthira!'

"Virāta replied,—'I will grant thee whatever boon thou mayst desire! Do thou rule the Matsyas,—I shall remain in submission to thee! Even cunning gamblers are liked by me. Thou, on the other hand, art like a god, and deservest a kingdom!'

"Yudhishthira said,—'My first prayer, O lord of earth, is that I may not be involved in any dispute (on account of dice) with low people. Further, a person defeated by me (at dice) shall not be permitted to retain the wealth (won by me). Let this boon be granted to me through thy grace!'

"Virāta replied,—'I shall certainly slay him who may happen to displease thee, and should he be one of the twice-born ones, I shall banish him from my dominions. Let the assembled subjects listen! Kanka is as much lord of this realm as I myself! Thou (Kanka) shalt be my friend, and shalt ride the same vehicles as I. And there shall also be at thy disposal apparel in plenty, and various kinds of viands and drinks. And thou shalt look into my affairs both internal and external. And for thee all my doors shall be open. When men out of employ or of straitened circumstances will apply to thee, do thou at all hours bring their words unto me, and I will surely give them whatever they desire. No fear shall be thine as long as thou residest with me!'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having thus obtained an interview with Virāta's king, and received from him boons, that heroic bull among men, began to live happily, highly regarded by all. Nor could any one discover him as long as he lived there."

Thus ends the seventh Section in the Pāndava-praveça of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION VIII.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Then another endued with dreadful strength and blazing in beauty, approached king Virāta, with the playful gait of the lion. And holding in hand a cooking laddle and a spoon, as also an unsheathed sword of sable hue and without a spot on the blade, he came in the guise of a cook illumining all around him by his splendour like the sun discovering the whole world. And attired in black and possessed of the strength of the king of mountains, he approached the king of the Matsyas and stood before him. And beholding that king-like person before him, Virāta addressed his assembled subjects, saying,—'Who is that youth, that bull among men, with shoulders broad like those of a lion, and so exceedingly beautiful? That person, never seen before, is like Surya! Revolving the matter in my mind, I cannot ascertain who he is. Nor can I, with even serious thought, guess the intention of that bull among men (in coming here). Beholding him, it seems to me that he is either the king of the Gandharvas, or Purandara himself! Do ye ascertain who it is that standeth before my eyes! Let him have quickly what he seeks!' Thus commanded by king Virāta, his swift-footed messengers went up to the son of Kunti and informed that younger brother of Yudhishthira of everything the king had said. Then the high-souled son of Pāndu, approaching Virāta, addressed him in words that were not unsuited to his object, saying,—'O foremost of kings, I am a cook, Vallava by name. I am skilled in dressing dishes. Do thou employ me in the kitchen!'

" Virāta said,—'I do not believe, O Vallava, that cooking is thy office! Thou resemblest the deity of a thousand eyes; and in grace and beauty and prowess, thou shinest, among these all, as a king!'

" Bhima replied,—'O king of kings, I am thy cook and servant. In the first place, it is not curries only of which I have a knowledge, O monarch, although king Yudhishthira always used in days gone by to taste my dishes! For, O lord of earth,

I am also a wrestler ! Nor is there one that is equal to me in strength ! And engaging in fight with lions and elephants, I shall, O sinless one, always contribute to thy entertainment !'

" Virāta said,—'I will even grant thee boons. Thou wilt do what thou wishest, as thou describest thyself skilled in it. I do not, however, think that this office is worthy of thee, for thou deservest this (entire) earth girt round by the sea ! But do as thou list. Be thou the superintendent of my kitchen, and thou art placed at the head of those who have been appointed there before by me !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—'Thus appointed in the kitchen, Bhima soon became the favorite of king Virāta. And, O king, he continued to live there, unrecognised by the other servants of Virāta as also by other people ! "

Thus ends the eighth Section in the Pāṇḍava-praveça of the Virāṭa Parva.

Section IX.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Binding her black, soft, fine, long and faultless tresses with crisped ends into a knotted braid, Draupadi of black eyes and sweet smiles, throwing it upon her right shoulders, concealed it by her cloth. And she wore a single piece of black and dirty though costly cloth. And dressing herself as a *Sairindhri*, she began to wander hither and thither in seeming affliction. And beholding her wandering, men and women came to her hastily and addressed her, saying,—'Who are you ? And what do you seek ?' And she replied,—'I am a king's *Sairindhri*. I desire to serve any one that will maintain me !' But beholding her beauty and dress, and hearing also her speech that was so sweet, the people could not take her for a maid-servant come in search of subsistence. And it came to pass that while looking this way and that from the terrace, Virāta's beloved queen, daughter of the king of Kekaya, saw Draupadi. And beholding her forlorn and clad in a single piece of cloth, the queen addressed her, saying,—'O beautiful one, who are you, and what do you seek ?' Thereupon, O foremost

of kings, Draupadi answered her, saying,—'I am a *Sairindhri*. I will serve any body that will maintain me !'—Then Sudeshnā said,—'What you say (regarding your profession) can never be compatible with so much beauty ! (On the contrary) you might well be the mistress of servants both male and female ! Your heels are not prominent, and your thighs touch each other. And your intelligence is great, and your navel deep, and your words solemn. And your great toes, and bust, and hips, and dorsa, and toe-nails, and palms are all well-developed. And your palms, soles, and face, are ruddy. And your speech is sweet even as the voice of the swan. And your hair is beautiful, and your bust shapely, and you are possessed of the highest grace. And your hips and bust are plump. And like a Kashmerean mare you are furnished with every auspicious mark. And your eye-lashes are (beautifully) bent, and your nether lip is like the ruddy gourd. And your waist is slender, and your neck bears lines that resemble those on the conch. And your veins are scarcely visible. Indeed your countenance is like the full moon, and your eyes resemble the leaves of the autumnal lotus, and your body is fragrant as the lotus itself. Verily, in beauty you resemble *Çrī* herself whose seat is the autumnal lotus. Tell me, O beautiful damsel, who thou art ! Thou canst never be a maid-servant. Art thou a *Yakshi*, a goddess, a *Gandharvi*, or an *Apsarā* ? Art thou the daughter of a celestial, or art thou a female *Nāga* ? Art thou the guardian goddess of some city, a *Vidyādhari*, or a *Kinnari*,—or art thou *Rohini* herself ? Or, art thou Alamvushā, or Miçrakeçī, or Pundarikā, or Mālinī, or the queen of Indra, or of Varuna ? Or, art thou the spouse of Viçwakarman, or of the creative Lord himself ? Of these goddesses who art renowned in the celestial regions, who art thou, O graceful one ?'

"Draupadi replied,—'O auspicious lady, I am neither a goddess nor a *Gandharvi*, nor a *Yakshi*, nor a *Rākshasi*. I am a maid-servant of the *Sairindhri* class. I tell thee this truly. I know to dress the hair, to pound (fragrant substances) for preparing unguents, and also to make beautiful and variegated garlands, O beauteous lady, of jasmines and lotuses and blue lilies and *Champakas* ! Formerly I served Krishna's favorite

queen Satyabhāma, and also Krishnā, the wife of the Pāndavas and the foremost beauty of the Kuru race. I wander about alone, earning good food and dress; and as long as I get these, I continue to live in the place where they are obtainable. Draupadi herself called me Mālinī (maker of garlands).'

"Hearing this, Sudeshnā said,—'I would keep thee upon my head itself, if the doubt did not cross my mind that the king himself would be attracted towards thee with his whole heart. Attracted by thy beauty, the females of the royal household and my maids are looking at thee! What male person then is there that can resist thy attractions? The very trees in my palace seem to pay thee homage! What man, therefore, will be able to resist thy attractions? Surely, O thou of well-rounded hips, O damsel of exquisite charms, beholding thy form of superhuman beauty, king Virāta is sure to forsake me, and will turn to thee with his whole heart! O thou of faultless limbs, O thou that art endued with large eyes casting quick glances, he upon whom thou wilt look with desire is sure to be stricken! O thou of sweet smiles, O thou that possessest a faultless form, he that will behold thee constantly, will surely catch the flame. Even as a person that climbs up a tree for compassing his own destruction, even as the crab conceives for her own ruin, I may, O thou of sweet smiles, bring destruction on myself by harbouring thee!'

"Draupadi replied,—'O fair lady, neither Virāta nor any other person will be able to have me, for my five youthful husbands, who are *Gandharvas* and sons of a *Gandharva* king of exceeding power, always protect me! None can do me a wrong! It is the wish of my *Gandharva* husbands that I should serve only such persons as will not give me to eat food already partaken of by another, or tell me to wash their feet. Any man that attempts to have me like any common woman, meeteth with death that very night. No one can succeed in having me, for, O beautiful lady, O thou of sweet smiles, those beloved *Gandharvas* possessed of great energy and mighty strength always protect me secretly!'

"Sudeshnā said,—'O thou that bringest delight to the heart, if it is as thou sayest, I will take thee into my household.

Thou shalt not have to touch food that hath been partaken of by another, or to wash another's feet!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Thus addressed by Virāta's wife, O Janamejaya, Krishnā ever devoted to her lords, began to live in that city. Nor could any one ascertain who in reality she was! "

Thus ends the ninth Section in the Pāndava-praveça of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION X.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Then clad in a cowherd's dress, and speaking the dialect of cowherds, Sahadeva came to the cow-pen of Virāta's city. And beholding that bull among men, who was shining in splendour, the king was struck with amazement. And he directed his men to summon Sahadeva. And when the latter came, the king addressed him, saying,—'To whom dost thou belong? And whence dost thou come? And what work dost thou seek? I have never seen thee before. O bull among men, tell me truly all about thee!'

" Having come before the king, that afflicter of foes, Sahadeva, answered in accents deep as the roar of the clouds,—'I am a Vaiçya, Arishtanemi by name. I was employed as a cowherd in the service of those bulls of the Kuru race, the sons of Pāndu. O foremost of men, I intend now to live beside thee, for I do not know where those lions among kings, the sons of Prithā, are! I cannot live without service, and, O king, I do not like to enter into the service of any one else save thee!'

" Hearing these words, Virāta said,—'Thou must either be a Brāhmana or a Kshatriya. Thou lookest as if thou wert the lord of the entire earth surrounded by the sea. Tell me truly, O thou that mowest down thy foes! The office of a Vaiçya is not fit for thee! Tell me from the dominions of what king thou comest, and what art thou knowest, and in what capacity thou wouldst remain with us, and also what pay thou wouldst accept!'

" Sahadeva answered,—'Yudhishthira, the eldest of the five

sons of Pāndu, had (one division of kine numbering) eight hundred and ten thousand, and another, ten thousand, and another, again, twenty thousand, and so on. I was employed in keeping those cattle. People used to call me Tantripāla. I know the present, the past, and the future of all kine living within ten *Yojanas*, and whose tale has been taken! My merits were known to that illustrious one, and the Kuru king Yudhishthira was well-pleased with me. I am also acquainted with the means which aid kine in multiplying within a short time, and by which they may enjoy immunity from disease. All these arts are known to me! I can also single out bulls having auspicious marks for which they are worshipped of men, and by smelling whose urine, the barren may conceive!'

"Virāta said,—'I have a hundred thousand kine divided into distinct herds. All those, together with their keepers, I place in thy charge! Henceforth my beasts will be in thy keep;'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then, O king, undiscovered by that monarch, that lord of men, Sahadeva, maintained by Virāta, began to live happily. Nor did any one else (besides his brothers) recognise him."

Thus ends the tenth Section in the Pāndava-praveça of the Virāta Parva.

Section XI.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Next appeared at the gate of the ramparts another person of enormous size and exquisite beauty, decked in the ornaments of women, and wearing large ear-rings and beautiful conch-bracelets overlaid with gold. And that mighty-armed individual with long and abundant hair floating about his neck, resembled an elephant in gait. And shaking the very earth with his tread, he approached Virāta and stood in his court. And beholding the son of the great Indra, shining with exquisite lustre and having the gait of a mighty elephant,—that grinder of foes having his true form concealed in disguise, entering the council-hall and advancing towards the monarch, the king addressed all his courtiers, saying,

'Whence doth this person come? I have never heard of him before.' And when the men present spake of the newcomer as one unknown to them, the king wonderingly said,—'Possest of great strength, thou art like unto a celestial, and young and of darkish hue, thou resemblest the leader of a herd of elephants! Wearing conch-bracelets overlaid with gold, a braid, and ear-rings, thou shinest yet like one amongst those that riding on chariots wander about equipped with mail and bow and arrows and decked with garlands and fine hair! I am old and desirous of relinquishing my burden. Be thou like my sons, or rule thou like myself all the Matsyas! It seemeth to me that such persons as thou can never be of the neuter sex!'

"Arjuna said,—'I sing, dance, and play on instruments. I am proficient in dance and skilled in song. O lord of men, assign me unto (the princess) Uttarā. I will be dancing-master to the royal maiden. As to how I have come by this form, what will it avail thee to hear the account which will only augment my pain? Know me, O king of men, to be Vrihannalā, a son or daughter without father or mother!'

"Virāta said,—'O Vrihannalā, I give thee what thou desirest! Instruct my daughter, and those like her, in dancing. To me, however, this office seemeth unworthy of thee! Thou deservest (the dominion of) the entire earth girt round by the ocean!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"The king of the Matsyas then tested Vrihannalā in dancing, music, and other fine arts, and consulting with his various ministers forthwith caused him to be examined by women. And learning that his impotency was of a permanent nature, he sent him to the maidens' apartments. And there the mighty Arjuna began giving lessons in singing and instrumental music to the daughter of Virāta, her friends, and her waiting-maids, and soon won their good graces. And in this manner the self-possessed Arjuna lived there in disguise, partaking of pleasures in their company, and unknown to the people within or without the place."

Thus ends the eleventh Section in the Pāndava-praveça of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XII.

(Pāndava-praveça Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" After a while, another powerful son of Pāndu was seen making towards king Virāta in haste. And as he advanced, he seemed to every one like the solar orb emerged from the clouds. And he began to observe the horses around. And seeing this, the king of the Matsya's said to his followers,—'I wonder whence this man, possessed of the effulgence of a celestial, cometh. He looks intently at my steeds. Verily, he must be proficient in horse-lore. Let him be ushered into my presence quickly. He is a warrior and looks like a god!' And that destroyer of foes then went up to the king and accosted him, saying,—'Victory to thee, O king, and blest be ye! As a trainer of horses, I have always been highly esteemed by kings. I will be a clever keeper of thy horses.' Virāta said,—'I will give thee vehicles, wealth, and spacious quarters. Thou shalt be the manager of my horses. But first tell me whence thou comest, whose thou art, and how also thou happenest to come here! Tell us also all the arts thou art master of.' Nakula replied,—'O mower of enemies, know that Yudhishthira is the eldest brother of the five sons of Pāndu. I was formerly employed by him to keep his horses. I am acquainted with the temper of steeds, and know perfectly the art of breaking them. I know also how to correct vicious horses, and all the methods of treating their diseases. No animal in my hands becometh weak or ill. Not to speak of horses, even mares will never in my hands be found to be vicious. People called me Granthika by name and so did Yudhishthira, the son of Pāndu.' Virāta said,—'Whatever horses I have, I consign to thy care even from today. And all the keepers of my horses and all my charioteers will from today be subordinate to thee! If this suits thee, say what remuneration is desired by thee! But, O thou that resemblest a celestial, the office of equery is not worthy of thee. For thou lookest like a king and I esteem thee much! Thy appearance here hath pleased me as much as if Yudhishthira himself were here! Oh,

how does that blameless son of Pāndu dwell and divert himself in the forest, now destitute of servants as he is!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"That youth, like unto a chief of the *Gandharvas*, was treated thus respectfully by the delighted king Virāta. And he conducted himself there in such a manner as to make himself dear and agreeable to all in the palace. And no one recognized him while living under Virāta's protection. And it was in this manner that the sons of Pāndu, the very sight of whom had never been fruitless, continued to live in the country of the Matsyas. And true to their pledge, those lords of the earth bounded by her belt of seas passed their days of incognito with great composure notwithstanding their poignant sufferings."

Thus ends the twelfth Section in the Pāndava-praveça of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XIII.

(Samayapālana Parva.)

Janamejaya said.—" While living thus disguised in the city of the Matsyas, what did those descendants of the Kuru race endued with great prowess, do, O regenerate one ?"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hear, O king, what those descendants of Kuru did while they dwelt thus in disguise in the city of the Matsyas, worshipping the king thereof! By the grace of the sage Trinavindu and of the high-souled Lord of justice, the Pāndavas continued to live unrecognised by others in the city of Virāta. O lord of men, Yudhishthira, as courtier, made himself agreeable to Virāta and his sons as also to all the Matsyas. An adept in the mysteries of the dice, the son of Pāndu caused them to play at dice according to his pleasure and made them sit together in the dice-hall like a row of birds bound in a string. And that tiger among men, king Yudhishthira the just, unknown to the monarch, distributed among his brothers, in due proportion, the wealth he won from Virāta. And Bhimasena, on his part, sold to Yudhishthira for price meat and viands of various kinds which he obtained from the king. And Arjuna distributed among all his brothers the

proceeds of worn-out cloths which he earned in the inner apartments of the palace. And Sahadeva, too, who was disguised as a cowherd, gave milk, curds, and clarified butter to his brothers. And Nakula also shared with his brothers the wealth the king gave him, satisfied with his management of the horses. And Draupadi, herself in a pitiable condition, looked after all those brothers and behaved in such a way as to remain unrecognized. And thus ministering unto one another's wants, those mighty warriors lived in the capital of Virāta as hidden from view as if they were once more in their mother's womb. And those lords of men, the sons of Pāndu, apprehensive of danger from the son of Dhritarāshtra, continued to dwell there in concealment, watching over their wife Draupadi. And after three months had passed away, in the fourth, the grand festival in honor of the divine Brahmā which was celebrated with pomp in the country of the Matsyas, came about. And there came to witness that festival, athletes from all quarters by thousands, like hosts of celestials to the abode of Brahmā or of Civa. And they were endued with huge bodies and great prowess, like the demons called *Kālakhanjas*. And elated with their prowess and proud of their strength, they were highly honoured by the king. And their shoulders and waists and necks were like those of lions, and their bodies were very clean, and their hearts were quite at ease. And they had many a time won success in the lists in the presence of kings. And amongst them there was one who towered above the rest, and challenged them all to a combat. And there was none that dared approach him as he proudly stalked in the arena. And when all the athletes stood sad and dispirited, the king of the Matsyas made him fight with his cook. And urged by the king, Bhima made up his mind reluctantly, for he could not openly disobey the royal behest. And that tiger among men then entered the spacious arena, pacing with the careless steps of a tiger, having previously worshipped the king. And the son of Kunti then girded up his lions to the great delight of the spectators. And Bhima then summoned to the combat that athlete known by the name of Jimuta, who was like unto the Asura Vritra and whose prowess was widely known. And both of them were possessed

of great courage and both were endued with terrible prowess. And they were like a couple of infuriate and huge-bodied elephants, each sixty years old. And those brave tigers among men then cheerfully engaged in a wrestling combat, desirous of vanquishing each other. And terrible was the encounter that took place between them, like the clash of the thunder-bolt against the stony mountain breast. And both of them were exceedingly powerful and extremely delighted at each other's strength. And desirous of vanquishing each other, each stood eager to take advantage of his adversary's lapse. And both were greatly delighted and both looked like infuriate elephants of prodigious size. And various were the modes of attack and defence that they exhibited with their clenched fists.* And each dashed against the other and flung his adversary to a distance. And each cast the other down and pressed him close to the ground. And each got up again and squeezed the other in his arms. And each shoved the other violently off his place by boxing him on the breast. And each caught the other by the legs and whirling him round threw him down on the ground. And they slapped each other with their palms that struck as hard as the thunderbolt. And they also struck each other with their outstretched fingers, and stretching them out like spears thrust the nails into each other's body. And they gave each other violent kicks. And they struck knee against knee and head against head, producing the crash of one stone against another. And in this manner that furious combat between those warriors raged on without weapons, sustained mainly by the power of their arms and their physical and mental energy, to the infinite delight of the concourse of spectators. And all the people, O king, took deep interest in that encounter of those powerful wrestlers who fought like Indra and the Asura Vritra. And they cheered both of them with loud acclamations of applause. And the broad-chested and long-armed experts in wrestling then pulled and

---

* *Krita*—attack; *pratikrita*—warding it off; *Sankata*—clenched. Some texts read *Sankatakais*. The meaning then would be "cased in gauntlets."—*T.*

pressed and whirled and hurled down each other and struck each other with their knees, expressing all the while their scorn for each other in loud voices. And they began to fight with their bare arms in this way, which were like spiked maces of iron. And at last the powerful and mighty-armed Bhima, the slayer of his foes, shouting aloud, seized the vociferous athlete by the arms, even as the lion seizes the elephant, and taking him up from the ground and holding him aloft, began to whirl him round, to the great astonishment of the assembled athletes and the people of Matsya. And having whirled him round and round a hundred times till he was insensible, the strong-armed Vrikodara dashed him to death on the ground. And when the brave and renowned Jimuta was thus killed, Virāta and his friends were filled with great delight. And in the exuberance of his joy, the noble-minded king rewarded Vallava then and there with the liberality of Kuvera. And killing numerous athletes and many other men possessed of great bodily strength, he pleased the king very much. And when no one could be found there to encounter him in the lists, the king made him fight with tigers and lions and elephants. And the king also made him battle with furious and powerful lions in the harem for the pleasure of the ladies. And Arjuna, too, pleased the king and all the ladies of the inner apartments by singing and dancing. And Nakula pleased Virāta, that best of kings, by showing him fleet and well-trained steeds that followed him wherever he went. And the king, gratified with him, rewarded him with ample presents. And beholding around Sahadeva a herd of well-trained bullocks, Virāta, that bull among men, bestowed upon him also wealth of diverse kinds. And, O king, Draupadi, distressed to see all those warriors suffer pain, sighed incessantly. And it was in this way that those eminent persons lived there in disguise, rendering services unto king Virāta."

Thus ends the thirteenth Section in the Samayapālana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XIV.

(Kichaka-badha Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Living in such disguise, those mighty warriors, the sons of Prithā, passed ten months in Matsya's city. And, O monarch, although herself deserving to be waited upon by others, the daughter of Yajnasena, O Janamejaya, passed her days in extreme misery, waiting upon Sudeshnā. And residing thus in Sudeshnā's apartments, the princess of Pānchāla pleased that lady as also the other females of the inner apartments. And it came to pass that as the year was about to expire, the redoubtable Kichaka, the commander of Virāta's forces, chanced to behold the daughter of Drupada. And beholding that lady endued with the splendour of a daughter of the celestials, treading the earth like a goddess, Kichaka, afflicted with the shafts of Kāma, desired to possess her. And burning with desire's flame, Virāta's general came to Sudeshnā (his sister) and smilingly addressed her in these words,—'This beauteous lady had never before been seen by me in king Virāta's abode ! This damsel maddens me with her beauty, even as new wine maddens one with its fragrance. Tell me, who is this graceful and captivating lady possessed of the beauty of a goddess, and whose she is, and whence she hath come. Surely, grinding my heart she hath reduced me to subjection. It seems to me that (save her) there is no other medicine for my illness ! O, this fair hand-maid of thine seemeth to me to be possessed of the beauty of a goddess ! Surely, one like her is ill suited to serve thee ! Let her rule over me and whatever is mine ! O, let her grace my spacious and beautiful palace, decked with various ornaments of gold, full of viands and drinks in profusion, with excellent plates, and containing every kind of plenty, besides elephants and horses and cars in myriads !' And having consulted with Sudeshnā thus, Kichaka went to the princess Draupadi, and like a jackal in the forest accosting a lioness, spake unto Krishnā these words in a winning voice,—'Who and whose art thou, O beautiful one ? And, O thou of beautiful face, whence hast

thou come to the city of Virāta? Tell me all this, O fair lady! Thy beauty and gracefulness are of the very first order, and the comeliness of thy features is unparalleled! With its loveliness thy face shineth ever like the resplendent moon! O thou of fair eye-brows, thy eyes are beautiful and large like lotus-petals! Thy speech also, O thou of beautiful limbs, resembles the notes of the *kokila!* O thou of fair hips, never before in this world have I beheld a woman possessed of beauty like thine, O thou of faultless features! Art thou Lakshmi herself having her abode in the midst of lotuses, or, art thou, O slender-waisted one, she called *Bhuti?** Or, which amongst these—*Hrī*, *Çrī*, *Kīrti*, and *Kānti*,—art thou, O thou of beautiful face? Or, possessed of beauty like Rati's, art thou she who sporteth in the embraces of the god of love? O thou that possessest the fairest of eye-brows, thou shinest beautifully even like the lovely light of the moon! Who is there in the whole world that will not succumb to the influence of desire beholding thy face? Endued with unrivalled beauty and celestial grace of the most attractive kind, that face of thine is even like the Moon in full, its celestial effulgence resembling his radiant rays, its smiles resembling his soft light, and its eye-lashes looking like the spots on his disc? Both thy bosoms, so beautiful and well-developed and endued with unrivalled gracefulness and deep and well-rounded and without any space between them, are certainly worthy of being decked with garlands of gold! Resembling in shape the beautiful buds of the lotus, these thy breasts, O thou of fair eye-brows, are even as the whips of Kāma that are urging me forward, O thou of sweet smiles! O damsel of slender waist, beholding that waist of thine marked with four wrinkles, and measuring but a span, and slightly stooping forward because of the weight of thy breasts, and looking on those graceful hips also of thine broad as the banks of a river, the incurable fever of desire, O beauteous lady, afflicteth me sore! The flaming fire of desire, fierce as a forest-conflagration, and

---

* *Bhuti*, *Hrī*, *Crī*, *Kīrti*, and *Kânti* are respectively the feminine embodiments of Prosperity, Modesty, Beauty, Fame, and Loveliness.

fanned by the hope my heart cherisheth of a union with thee, is consuming me intensely! O thou of exceeding beauty, quench thou that flaming fire kindled by Manmatha, for union with thee is a rain-charged cloud, and the surrender of thy person the shower that cloud may drop! O thou of face resembling the moon, the fierce and maddening shafts of Manmatha, whetted and sharpened by the desire of a union with thee, piercing this heart of mine in their impetuous course, have penetrated into its core! O black-eyed lady, those impetuous and cruel shafts are maddening me beyond endurance! It behoveth thee to relieve me from this plight by surrendering thyself to me and favoring me with thy embraces! Decked in beautiful garlands and robes, and adorned with every ornament, sport thou, O sweet damsel, with me to thy fill! O thou of the gait of an elephant in rut, deserving as thou art of happiness though deprived of it now, it behoveth thee not to dwell here in misery! Let unrivalled weal be thine! Drinking various kinds of charming and delicious and ambrosial wines, and sporting at thy pleasure in the enjoyment of diverse objects of delight, do thou, O blessed lady, attain auspicious prosperity! This beauty of thine and this the prime of thy youth, O sweet lady, are now without their use! For, O beauteous and chaste damsel, endued with such loveliness, thou dost not shine, like a graceful garland lying unused and unworn! I will forsake all my old wives! Let them, O thou of sweet smiles, become thy slaves! And I also, O fair damsel, will stay by thee as thy slave, ever obedient to thee, O thou of the handsomest face!' Hearing these words of his, Draupadi replied,—'A female servant of low extraction, employed in the despicable office of dressing hair, in desiring me, O *Suta's* son, thou desirest one that deserves not that honor. Then, again, I am the wife of others. Therefore, good betide thee, this conduct of thine is not proper. Do thou remember the precept of morality, *viz.*, that persons should take delight only in their wedded wives! Thou shouldst not, therefore, by any means bend thy heart to adultery. Surely, abstention from improper acts is ever the duty of those that are good! Overcome by ignorance, sinful men, under the influence

of desire come by either extreme infamy or dreadful calamity!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed by the *Sairindhri*, the wicked Kichaka without any control over his senses and overcome by lust, although aware of the numerous evils of fornication, evils condemned by everybody and sometimes leading to the destruction of life itself,—then spoke unto Draupadi,—'It behoveth thee not, O beauteous lady, O thou of graceful features, thus to disregard me who am, O thou of sweet smiles, under the power of Manmatha on thy account! If now, O timid one, thou disregardst me who am under thy influence and who speak to thee so fair, thou wilt, O black-eyed damsel, have to repent of it afterwards! O thou of graceful eye-brows, the real lord of this entire kingdom, O slender-waisted lady, is myself! It is me depending upon whom the people of this realm live! In energy and prowess I am unrivalled on earth! There is no other man on earth who rivals me in beauty of person, in youth, in prosperity, and in the possession of excellent objects of enjoyment! Why is it, O auspicious lady, that having it in thy power to enjoy here every object of desire, and every luxury and comfort without its equal, thou preferest servitude? Becoming the mistress of this kingdom which I shall confer on thee, O thou of fair face, accept me, and enjoy, O beauteous one, all excellent objects of desire!' Addressed in these accursed words by Kichaka, that chaste daughter of Drupada answered him thus reprovingly,—'Do not, O son of a *Suta*, act so foolishly and do not throw away thy life! Know that I am protected by my five husbands! Thou canst not have me. I have Gandharvas for my husbands. Enraged, they will slay thee! Therefore, do thou not bring destruction on thyself! Thou intendst to tread along a path that is incapable of being trod by men. Thou, O wicked one, art even like a foolish child that standing on one shore of the Ocean intends to cross over to the other. Even if thou enterest into the interior of the earth, or soarest into the sky, or rushest to the other shore of the Ocean, still thou wilt have no escape from the hands of those sky-ranging offspring of gods, capable of grinding all foes. Why dost thou today, O Kichaka, solicit me so persistently,

even as a sick person wisheth for the night that will put a period to his existence? Why dost thou desire me, even like an infant lying on its mother's lap wishing to catch the moon? For thee that thus solicitest their beloved wife, there is no refuge either on earth or in sky! O Kichaka, hast thou no sense which leads thee to seek thy good and by which thy life may be saved?' "

Thus ends the fourteenth Section in the Kichaka-badha of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XV.

(Kichaka-badha Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Rejected thus by the princess, Kichaka, afflicted with maddening lust and forgetting all sense of propriety, addressed Sudeshnā, saying,—'Do thou, O Kekaya's daughter, so act that thy *Sairindhri* may come into my arms! Do thou, O Sudeshnā, adopt the means by which that damsel of the gait of an elephant may accept me! O Sudeshnā, I am dying of absorbing desire!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing his profuse lamentations, that gentle lady, the intelligent queen of Virāta, was touched with pity. And having taken counsel with her own self and reflected on Kichaka's purpose and on the anxiety of Krishnā, Sudeshnā addressed the *Suta's* son in those words,—'Do thou, on the occasion of some festival, procure viands and wines for me! I shall then send my *Sairindhri* to thee on the pretence of bringing wine. And when she will have repaired thither, do thou in solitude, free from interruption, humour her as thou likest. Thus soothed, she may incline her mind to thee.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed, he went out of his sister's apartments. And he soon procured wines well filtered and worthy of a king. And employing skilled cooks, he prepared many and various kinds of choice viands and delicious drinks and many and various kinds of meat of different degrees of excellence. And when all this had been done, that gentle lady, Sudeshnā, as previously counselled by Kichaka, desired her *Sai-*

rindhri to repair to Kichaka's abode, saying,—'Get up, O *Sairindhri*, and repair thou to Kichaka's abode to bring wine, for, O beauteous lady, I am afflicted with thirst!" Thereupon the *Sairindhri* replied,—'O princess, I shall not be able to repair to Kichaka's apartments! Thou thyself knowest, O Queen, how shameless he is. O thou of faultless limbs, O beauteous lady, in thy palace I shall not be able to lead a lustful life, becoming faithless to my husbands! Thou rememberest, O gentle lady, O beautiful one, the conditions I had set down before entering thy house! O thou of tresses ending in graceful curls, the foolish Kichaka afflicted by the god of desire, will, on seeing me, offer me insult! Therefore, I will not go to his quarters! Thou hast, O princess, many maids under thee! Do thou, good betide thee, send one of them! For, surely, Kichaka will insult me!' Sudeshnā said,—'Sent by me, from my abode, surely he will not harm thee!' And having said this, she handed over to her a golden vessel furnished with a cover. And filled with apprehensions, and weeping, Draupadi mentally prayed for the protection of the gods, and set out for Kichaka's abode for fetching wine. And she said,—'As I do not know any other persons save my husbands, by virtue of that Truth let Kichaka not be able to overpower me although I may approach his presence!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"And that helpless damsel then adored Surya for a moment. And Surya, having considered all that she urged, commanded a *Rākshasa* to protect her invisibly. And from that time the *Raksha* began to attend upon that blameless lady under every circumstance. And beholding Krishnā in his presence like a frightened doe, the *Suta* rose up from his seat, and felt the joy that is felt by a person wishing to cross to the other shore, when he obtains a boat."

Thus ends the fifteenth Section in the Kichaka-badha of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XVI.

(Kichaka-badha Parva continued.)

"Kichaka said,—'O thou of tresses ending in beautiful curls, thou art welcome ! Surely, the night that is gone hath brought me an auspicious day, for I have got thee today as the mistress of my house ! Do what is agreeable to me ! Let golden chains, and conchs, and bright ear-rings made of gold, manufactured in various countries, and beautiful rubies and gems, and silken robes and deer-skins, be brought for thee ! I have also an excellent bed prepared for thee ! Come, sitting upon it do thou drink with me the wine prepared from the honey-flower !' Hearing these words, Draupadi said,—'I have been sent to thee by the princess for taking away wine. Do thou speedily bring me wine, for she told me that she is exceedingly thirsty !' At this, Kichaka said,—'O gentle lady, others will carry what the princess wants !' And saying this, the *Sutā's* son caught hold of Draupadi's right arm. And at this, Draupadi exclaimed,—'As I have never, from intoxication of the senses, been unfaithful to my husbands even at heart, by that Truth, O wretch, I shall behold thee dragged and lying powerless on the ground !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Seeing that large-eyed lady reproving him in that strain, Kichaka suddenly seized her by the end of her upper garment as she attempted to run away. And seized with violence by Kichaka, the beautiful princess, unable to tolerate it, and with frame trembling in wrath, and breathing quickly, dashed him to the ground. And dashed to the ground thus, the sinful wretch tumbled down like a tree whose roots had been cut. And having thrown Kichaka down on the ground when the latter had seized her, she, trembling all over, rushed to the court, where king Yudhishthira was, for protection. And while she was running with all her speed, Kichaka (who followed her), seizing her by the hair, and bringing her down on the ground, kicked her in the very presence of the king ! Thereupon, O Bhārata, the *Rākshasa* that had been appointed by Surya to protect Draupadi, gave Kichaka a shove with a force

mighty as that of the wind. And overpowered by the force of the *Rākshasa*, Kichaka reeled and fell down senseless on the ground, even like an uprooted tree. And both Yudhishthira and Bhimasena who were seated there, beheld with wrathful eyes that outrage on Krishnā by Kichaka. And desirous of compassing the destruction of the wicked Kichaka, the illustrious Bhima knashed his teeth in rage. And his forehead was covered with sweat, and terrible wrinkles appeared thereon. And a smoky exhalation shot forth from his eyes, and his eye-lashes stood on end. And that slayer of hostile heroes pressed his forehead with his hands. And impelled by rage, he was on the point of starting up with speed. Thereat king Yudhishthira, apprehensive of discovery, squeezed his thumbs and commanded Bhima to forbear. And Bhima, who then looked like an infuriate elephant eyeing a large tree, was thus forbidden by his elder brother. And the latter said,—'Lookest thou, O cook, for trees for fuel ? If thou art in need of faggots, then go out and fell trees !' And the weeping Draupadi of fair hips, approaching the entrance of the court, and seeing her melancholy lords, desirous yet of keeping up the disguise duty-bound by their pledge, with eyes burning in ire, spake these words unto the king of the Matsyas,—'Alas, the son of a *Suta* hath kicked today the proud and beloved wife of those whose foe can never sleep in peace even if four kingdoms intervene between him and them ! Alas, the son of a *Suta* hath kicked today the proud and beloved wife of those truthful personages who are devoted to Brāhmanas and who always give away without asking any thing in gift. Alas, the son of a *Suta* hath kicked today the proud and beloved wife of those the sounds of whose kettle-drums and the twangs of whose bow-strings are ceaselessly heard ! Alas, the son of a *Suta* hath kicked today the proud and beloved wife of those who are possessed of abundant energy and might, and who are liberal in gifts and proud of their dignity ! Alas, the son of a *Suta* hath kicked today the proud and beloved wife of those who, if they had not been fettered by the ties of duty, could destroy this entire world ! Where, alas, are those mighty warriors today who, though living in disguise, have always granted protection unto

those that solicit it? Oh, why do those heroes today, endued as they are with strength and possessed of immeasurable energy, quietly suffer, like eunuchs, their dear and chaste wife to be thus insulted by a *Suta's* son? Oh, where is that wrath of theirs, that prowess, and that energy, when they quietly bear their wife to be thus insulted by a wicked wretch? What can I (a weak woman) do, when Virāta, deficient in virtue, coolly suffereth my innocent self to be thus wronged by a wretch? Thou dost not, O king, act like a king towards this Kichaka! Thy behaviour is like that of a robber, and doth not shine in a court. That I should thus be insulted in thy very presence, O Matsya, is highly improper! Oh, let all the courtiers here look at this violence of Kichaka! Kichaka is ignorant of duty and morality, and Matsya also is equally so! These courtiers also that wait upon such a king are destitute of virtue!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" With these and other words of the same kind, the beautiful Krishnā with tearful eyes rebuked the king of the Matsyas. And hearing her, Virāta said,—'I do not know what your dispute has been out of our sight. Not knowing the true cause, how can I show my discrimination?' Then the courtiers, having learnt everything, applauded Krishnā, and they all exclaimed,—'Well done!' 'Well done!' and censured Kichaka. And the courtiers said,—'That person who owneth this large-eyed lady having every limb of hers endued with beauty, for his wife, possesseth what is of exceeding value and hath no occasion to indulge in any grief. Surely, such a damsel of transcendent beauty and limbs perfectly faultless is rare among men! Indeed, it seems to us that she is a goddess!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"And while the courtiers, having beheld Krishnā (under such circumstances), were applauding her thus, Yudhishthira's forehead, from ire, became covered with sweat. And that bull of the Kuru race then addressed that princess, his beloved spouse, saying,—'Stay not here, O *Sairindhri*; but retire to the apartments of Sudeshnā! The wives of heroes bear affliction for the sake of their husbands, and undergoing toil in ministering unto their lords, they at last attain to regions where their husbands may go. Thy

Gandharva husbands, effulgent as the Sun, do not, I imagine, consider this as an occasion for manifesting their wrath, inasmuch as they do not rush to thy aid! O *Sairindhri*, thou art ignorant of the timeliness of things, and it is for this that thou weepest as an actress, besides interrupting the play in Matsya's court. Retire, O *Sairindhri*: the Gandharvas will do what is agreeable to thee. And they will surely dispel thy woe and take the life of him that hath wronged thee!' Hearing these words, the *Sairindhri* replied,—'They of whom I am the wedded wife are, I ween, extremely kind! And as the eldest of them all is addicted to dice, they are liable to be oppressed by all!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"And having said this, the fair-hipped Krishnā, with dishevelled hair and eyes red in anger, ran towards the apartments of Sudeshnā. And in consequence of having wept long, her face looked beautiful like the lunar disc in the firmament, emerged from the clouds. And beholding her in that condition, Sudeshnā asked,—Who, O beauteous lady, hath insulted thee? Why, O amiable damsel, dost thou weep? Who, O gentle one, hath done thee wrong? Whence is this thy grief?' Thus addressed, Draupadi said,—'As I went to bring wine for thee, Kichaka struck me in the court, in the very presence of the king, as if in the midst of a solitary wood!' Hearing this, Sudeshnā said,—'O thou of tresses ending in beautiful curls, as Kichaka, maddened by lust, hath insulted thee that art incapable of being possessed by him, I shall cause him to be slain if thou wishest it!' Thereupon Draupadi answered,—'Even others will slay him,—even they whom he hath wronged! I think it is clear that he will have to go to the abode of Yama this very day!' "

Thus ends the sixteenth Section in the Kichaka-badha of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XVII.

(Kichaka-badha Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Thus insulted by the *Suta's* son, that illustrious princess, the beautiful Krishnā, eagerly wishing for the destruction of Virāta's general, went to her quarters. And Drupada's daughter of dark hue and slender waist then performed her ablutions. And washing her body and clothes with water, Krishnā began to ponder weepingly on the means of dispelling her grief. And she reflected, saying,—'What am I to do? Whither shall I go? How can my purpose be effected?' And while she was thinking thus, she remembered Bhima, and said to herself,—'There is none else, save Bhima, that can today accomplish the purpose on which my heart is set!' And afflicted with great grief, the large-eyed and intelligent Krishnā possessed of powerful protectors then rose up at night, and leaving her bed speedily proceeded towards the quarters of Bhimasena, desirous of beholding her lord. And possessed of great intelligence, the daughter of Drupada entered her husband's quarters, saying,—'How canst thou sleep while that wretched commander of Virāta's forces, who is my foe, yet liveth, having perpetrated today *that* (foul act)?' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then the chamber within which Bhima slept breathing hard like a lion, filled with the beauty of Drupada's daughter and of the high-souled Bhima, blazed forth in splendour. And Krishnā of sweet smiles, finding Bhimasena in the cooking apartments, approached him with the eagerness of a three-year old cow, brought up in the woods, approaching a powerful bull, in her first season, or of a she-crane living by the water side approaching her mate in the paring season. And the princess of Pānchāla then embraced the second son of Pāndu, even as a creeper embraces a huge and mighty *Çāla* on the banks of the Gomati. And embracing him with her arms, Krishnā of faultless features awaked him as a lioness awaketh a sleeping lion in a trackless forest. And embracing Bhimasena even as a she-elephant embraceth her mighty mate, the faultless Pānchāli addressed him, in voice

sweet as the sound of a *Vīnā* emitting the *Gāndhāra* note. And she said,—'Arise, arise ! Why dost thou, O Bhimasena, lie down as one dead ? Surely, he that is not dead, never suffereth a wicked wretch that hath disgraced his wife, to live !' And then awakened by the princess, Bhima of mighty arms, then rose up, and sat upon his couch overlaid with a rich bed. And he of the Kuru race then addressed the princess—his beloved wife, saying,—'For what purpose hast thou come hither in such a hurry ? Thy color is gone and thou lookest lean and pale ! Tell me everything in detail ! I must know the truth. Whether it be pleasurable or painful, agreeable or disagreeable, tell me all ! Having heard everything, I shall apply the remedy. I alone, O Krishnā, am entitled to thy confidence in all things, for it is I who deliver thee from perils again and again ! Tell me quickly what is thy wish, and what the purpose is that is in thy view, and return thou to thy bed before others awake !' "

Thus ends the seventeenth Section in the Kichaka-badha of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XVIII.

(Kichaka-badha Parva continued.)

" Draupadi said,—'What grief hath she not who hath Yudhishthira for her husband ? Knowing all my griefs, why dost thou ask me ? The *Prātikāmin* dragged me to the court in the midst of an assembly of courtiers, calling me a slave ! That grief, O Bhārata, consumeth me ! What other princess like me, save Draupadi, would live having suffered such intense misery ? Who else, save myself, could bear such second insult as the wicked Saindhava offered me while residing in the forest ? Who else of my position, save myself, could live, having been kicked by Kichaka in the very sight of the wicked king of the Matsyas ? Of what value is life, O Bhārata, when thou, O son of Kunti, dost not think me miserable although I am afflicted with such woes ? That vile and wicked wretch, O Bhārata, known by the name of Kichaka, who is the brother-in-law of king Virāta and the commander

of his forces, every day, O tiger among men, addresses me who am residing in the palace as a *Sairindhrī*, saying,—*Do thou become my wife !*—Thus solicited, O slayer of foes, by that wretch deserving to be slain, my heart is bursting like a fruit ripened in season. Censure thou that elder brother of thine addicted to execrable dice, through whose act alone I have been afflicted with such woe ! Who else, save him that is a desperate gambler, would play, giving up kingdom and everything including even self, in order to lead a life in the woods ? If he had gambled morning and evening for many years together, staking *nishkas* by thousands and other kinds of substantial wealth, still his silver, and gold, and robes, and vehicles, and teams, and goats, and sheep, and multitudes of steeds and mares and mules, would not have sustained any diminution. But now deprived of prosperity by the rivalry of dice, he sits dumb like a fool, reflecting on his own misdeeds. Alas, he who, while sojourning, was followed by ten thousand elephants adorned with golden garlands, now supports himself by casting dice ! That Yudhishthira who at Indraprastha was adored by kings of incomparable prowess by hundreds of thousands, that mighty monarch in whose kitchen a hundred thousand maid-servants, plate in hand, used every day to feed numerous guests day and night, that best of liberal men, who gave (every day) a thousand *nishkas*, alas, even he, overwhelmed with woe in consequence of gambling which is the root of all evil, now supporteth himself by casting dice ! Bards and encomiasts by thousands, decked with ear-rings set with brilliant gems, and gifted with melodious voice, used to pay him homage morning and evening ! Alas, that Yudhishthira, who was daily waited upon by a thousand sages of ascetic merit, versed in the *Vedas* and having every desire gratified, as his courtiers,—that Yudhishthira who maintained eighty-eight thousands of domestic *Snātakas* with thirty maid-servants assigned unto each, as also ten thousand *yatis* not accepting anything in gift and with vital seed drawn up,—alas, even that mighty king now liveth in such guise ! That Yudhishthira who is without malice, who is full of kindness, and who giveth every creature his due, who hath all these excellent attributes, alas,—even he now liveth in

such guise ! Possessed of firmness and unbaffled prowess, with heart disposed to give every creature his due, king Yudhishthira, moved by compassion, constantly maintained in his kingdom the blind, the old, the helpless, the parentless and all others in his dominions in such distress ! Alas, that Yudhishthira, becoming a dependant and a servant of Matsya, a caster of dice in his court, now calls himself Kanka ! He unto whom, while residing at Indraprastha, all the rulers of earth used to pay timely tribute,—alas, even he now begs for subsistence at another's hands ! He to whom the kings of the earth were in subjection,—alas, even that king, having lost his liberty, liveth in subjection to others ! Having, like the sun, dazled the entire earth by his energy, that Yudhishthira, alas, is now a courtier of king Virāta ! O Pāndu's son, that Pāndava who was respectfully waited upon in court by kings and sages, behold him now waiting upon another ! Alas, beholding Yudhishthira a courtier sitting beside another and breathing adulatory speeches to that other, who can help being afflicted with grief ? And beholding the highly wise and virtuous Yudhishthira, undeserving as he is of serving others, actually serving another for sustenance, who can help being afflicted with grief ? And, O hero, that Bhārata who was worshipped in court by the entire earth, do thou now, O Bhārata, behold him worshipping another ! Why then, O Bhārata, dost thou not regard me as one afflicted with diverse miseries, like one forlorn and immersed in a sea of sorrow ?' "

Thus ends the eighteenth Section in the Kichaka-badha of the Virāta Parva.

Section XIX.

(Kichaka-badha Parva continued.)

"Draupadi said,—'This, O Bhārata, that I am going to tell thee is another great grief of mine ! Thou shouldst not blame me, for I tell thee this from sadness of heart. Who is there whose grief is not enhanced at sight of thee, O bull of the Bharata race, engaged in the ignoble office of a cook, so entirely beneath thee and calling thyself as one of *Vallava* caste ?

What can be sadder than this, that people should know thee as Virāta's cook, Vallava by name, and, therefore, one that is sunk in servitude? Alas, when thy work of the kitchen over, thou humbly sittest beside Virāta, calling thyself as Vallava the cook, then despondency seizeth my heart! When that king of kings in joy maketh thee fight with elephants, and the woman of the inner apartments (of the palace) laugh all the while, then I am sorely distressed! When thou fightest in the inner apartments, with lions, tigers, and buffalos, the princess Kaikeyi looking on, then I almost swoon away! And when Kaikeyi and those maid-servants, leaving their seats, come to assist me and find that instead of suffering any injury in limbs mine is only a swoon, the princess speaks unto her women, saying,—*Surely, it is from affection and the duty begot of intercourse that this lady of sweet smiles grieveth for the exceedingly powerful cook when he fights (with the beasts)! Sairindhri is possessed of great beauty, and Vallava also is eminently handsome. The heart of woman is hard to know, and they, I fancy, are deserving of each other. It is, therefore, likely that the Sairindhri invariably weepeth (at such times) on account of her connection with her lover. And, then, they both have entered this royal family at the same time!*—And speaking such words she always upbraideth me. And beholding me wroth at this, she suspects me to be attached to thee! When she speaketh thus, great is the grief that I feel! Indeed, on beholding thee, O Bhima of terrible prowess, afflicted with such calamity, sunk as I already am in grief on account of Yudhishthira, I do not desire to live! That youth who on a single car had vanquished all celestials and men, is now, alas, the dancing-master of king Virāta's daughters! That Prithā's son of immeasurable soul, who had gratified Agni in the forest of Khāndava, is now living in the inner apartments (of a palace) like fire hid in a well! Alas, that bull among men, Dhananjaya, who was ever the terror of foes, is now living in a guise that is despised by all! Alas, he whose mace-like arms have been cicatrized in consequence of the strokes of his bow-string, alas, that Dhananjaya is passing his days in grief, covering his wrists with bracelets of conchs! Alas,

that Dhananjaya the twang of whose bow-string and the sound of whose leathern fences made every foe tremble, now entertains only gladdened women with his songs! Oh, that Dhananjaya whose head was formerly decked with a diadem of solar splendour, is now wearing braids ending in unsightly curls! O Bhima, beholding that terrible bowman, Arjuna, now wearing braids and in the midst of women, my heart is stricken with woe! That high-souled hero who is master of all the celestial weapons, and who is the repository of all the sciences, now weareth ear-rings (like one of the third sex)! That youth whom kings of incomparable prowess could not overpower in fight, even as the waters of the mighty ocean cannot overleap their continents, is now the dancing-master of king Virāta's daughters and waits upon them in disguise! O Bhima, that Arjuna the clatter of whose car-wheels caused the entire earth with her mountains and forests, her mobile and immobile things, to tremble, and whose birth dispelled all the sorrows of Kunti, that exalted hero, that younger brother of thine, O Bhimasena, now maketh me weep for him! Beholding him coming towards me, decked in golden ear-rings and other ornaments, and wearing on the wrists bracelets of conchs, my heart is afflicted with despondency! And Dhananjaya who hath not a bowman equal unto him on earth in prowess, now passeth his days in singing, surrounded by women! Beholding that son of Prithā who in virtue, heroism, and truth, was the admired of the world, now living in the guise of a woman, my heart is afflicted with sorrow! When I behold, like an elephant with rent temples surrounded by she-elephants, the godlike Pārtha in the music-hall in the midst of females, waiting before Virāta the king of the Matsyas, then I lose all sense of directions! Surely, my mother-in-law doth not know Dhananjaya to be afflicted with such extreme distress. Nor doth she know that descendant of the Kuru race, Ajātaçatru, addicted to disastrous dice, to be sunk in misery! O Bhārata, beholding the youngest of you all, Sahadeva, superintending the kine, in the guise of a cow-herd, I grow pale! Always thinking of Sahadeva's plight, I cannot, O Bhimasena, obtain sleep,—what speak you of rest? I do not know, O mighty-armed one, what sin Sahadeva may have

committed for which that hero of unbaffled prowess suffereth such misery! O foremost of the Bhāratas, beholding that beloved brother of thine, that bull among men, employed by Matsya in looking after his kine, I am filled with woe! Seeing that hero of proud disposition gratifying Virāta, by living at the head of his cow-herds, attired in robes dyed in red, I am attacked with fever! My mother-in-law always applauds the heroic Sahadeva as one possessed of nobility, excellent behaviour, and rectitude of conduct. Ardently attached to her sons, the weeping Kunti stood, embracing Sahadeva, while he was about to set out (with us) for the great forest. And she addressed me, saying,—*Sahadeva is bashful and sweet-speeched, and virtuous! He is also my favorite child! Therefore, O Yājnaseni, tend him in the forest day and night! Delicate and brave, devoted to the king, and always worshipping his elder brother, do thou, O Pānchāli, feed him thyself!*—O Pāndava, beholding that foremost of warriors, Sahadeva, engaged in tending kine, and sleeping at night on calf-skins, how can I bear to live? He, again, who is crowned with the three attributes of beauty, arms, and intelligence, is now the superintendent of Virāta's steeds! Behold the change brought on by time! Granthika (Nakula), at sight of whom hostile hosts fled from the field of battle, now traineth horses in the presence of the king, driving them with speed! Alas, I now see that handsome youth wait upon the gorgeously-decked and excellent Virāta the king of the Matsyas, and display horses before him! O son of Prithā, afflicted as I am with all these hundred kinds of misery on account of Yudhishthira, why dost thou, O chastiser of foes, yet deem me happy? Listen now to me, O son of Kunti, as I tell thee of other woes far surpassing these! What can be sadder to me than that miseries so various as these should emaciate me even while ye all are alive?' "

Thus ends the nineteenth Section in the Kichaka-badha of the Virāta Parva.

Section XX.

(Kichaka-badha Parva continued.)

"Draupadi said,—'Alas, on account of that desperate gambler, I am now under Sudeshnā's command, living in the palace in the guise of a *Sairindhri*! And, O chastiser of foes, behold the plight of poignant woe which I, a princess, am now in! I am living in expectation of the close of this stated period.* The extreme of misery, therefore, is mine! Success of purpose, victory, and defeat, as regards mortals, are transitory. It is in this belief that I am living in expectation of the return of prosperity to my husbands! Prosperity and adversity revolve like a wheel. It is in this belief that I am living in expectation of the return of prosperity to my husbands? That cause which bringeth on victory, may bring defeat as well. I live in this hope. Why dost thou not, O Bhimasena, regard me as one dead? I have heard that persons that give may beg; that they who slay may be slain; and that they who overthrow others may themselves be overthrown by foes. Nothing is difficult for Destiny and none can over-ride Destiny. It is for this that I am awaiting the return of favorable fortune. As a tank, once dried, is filled up once again, so, hoping for a change for the better, I await the return of prosperity. When one's business that hath been well provided for is seen to be frustrated, a truly wise person should never strive for bringing back good fortune. Plunged as I am in sorrow, asked or unasked by thee to explain the purpose of these words spoken by me, I shall tell thee everything. Queen of the sons of Pāndu and daughter of Drupada, who else, save myself, would wish to live, having fallen into such a plight? O repressor of foes, this misery, therefore, that hath overtaken me, hath really humiliated the entire Kuru race, the Pānchālas, and the sons of Pāndu! Sur-

---

* What Draupadi means is that instead of passing her days in joy and happiness, instead of being able to wish time to be stationary with her, she is obliged, in consequence of her misery, to wish time to pass off quickly.—*T.*

rounded by numerous brothers and fathers-in-law and sons, what other woman having such cause for joy, save myself, would be afflicted with such woe ? Surely, I must, in my childhood, have committed some act highly offensive to *Dhātri*, through whose displeasure, O bull of the Bharata race, I have been visited with such consequences ! Mark, O son of Pāndu, the palo ur that hath come over my complexion, which not even a life in the woods fraught as it was with extreme misery, could bring about ! Thou, O Prithā's son, knowest what happiness, O Bhima, was formerly mine ! Even I, who was such, have now sunk into servitude ! Sorely distressed, I can find no rest ! That the mighty-armed and terrible bowman, Dhananjaya the son of Prithā, should now live like a fire that hath been put out, maketh me think of all this as attributable to Destiny ! Surely, O son of Prithā, it is impossible for men to understand the destinies of creatures (in this world). I, therefore, think this downfall of yours as something that could not be averted by forethought. Alas, she who hath you all that resemble Indra himself to attend to her comforts—even she, so chaste and exalted, hath now to attend to the comforts of others, of others that are by far her inferiors in rank ! Behold, O Pāndava, my plight ! It is what I do not deserve ! Ye are alive, yet behold this inversion of order that time hath brought ! She who had the whole Earth to the verge of the sea under her control, is now under the control of Sudeshnā and living in fear of her ! She who had dependants to walk both before and behind her, alas, now herself walketh before and behind Sudeshnā ! This, O Kaunteya, is another grief of mine that is intolerable ! O, listen to it ! She who had never, save for Kunti, pounded unguents even for her own use, now, good betide thee, poundeth sandal (for others) ! O Kaunteya, behold these hands of mine which were not so before !' Saying this, she showed him her hands marked with corns. And she continued,—'She who had never feared Kunti herself nor thee and thy brothers, now standeth in fear before Virāta as a slave, anxious of what that king of kings may say unto her regarding the proper preparation of the unguents, for Matsya liketh not sandal pounded by others !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Relating her woes thus, O

Bhārata, unto Bhimasena, Krishnā began to silently weep, casting her eyes on Bhima! And then, with words choked in tears, and sighing repeatedly, she addressed Bhima in these words, powerfully stirring his heart,—'Signal, O Bhima, must have been my offence of old unto the gods,—for, unfortunate as I am, I am yet alive, when, O Pāndava, I should die!' "

Vaiçampayāna continued.—"Then that slayer of hostile heroes, Vrikodara, covering his face with those delicate hands of his wife marked with corns, began to weep. And that mighty son of Kunti, holding the hands of Draupadi in his, shed copious tears. And afflicted with great woe, he spoke these words."

Thus ends the twentieth Section in the Kichaka-badha of the Virāta Parva.

Section XXI.

(Kichaka-badha Parva continued.)

"Bhima said,—'Fie on the might of my arms and fie on the *Gāndiva* of Fālguna, inasmuch as thy hands, red before, have now become covered with corns! I would have caused a carnage in Virāta's court but for the fact that Kunti's son eyed me (by way of forbidding it.) Or, like a mighty elephant, I would, without ado, have crushed the head of Kichaka intoxicated with the pride of sovereignty. When, O Krishnā, I beheld thee kicked by Kichaka, I conceived at that instant a wholesale slaughter of the Matsyas. Yudhishthira, however, forbade me by a glance, and, O beauteous lady, understanding his intention I have kept quiet! That we have been deprived of our kingdom, that I have not yet slain the Kurus, that I have not yet taken the heads of Suyodhana, and Karna, and Suvala's son Cakuni, and the wicked Dusçāsana,—these acts and omissions, O lady, are consuming every limb of mine. The thought of those abides in my heart like a javelin implanted in it! O thou of graceful hips, do not sacrifice virtue and, O noble-hearted lady, subdue thy wrath! If king Judhishthira hear from thee such rebukes, he will surely put an end to his life! If also Dhananjaya and the twins hear thee speak thus, even they will renounce life! And

if these, O slender-waisted maiden, give up life, I also shall not be able to bear my own! In olden days Sarjāti's daughter, the beautiful Sukanyā, followed into the forest Chyavana of Bhrigu's race, whose mind was under complete control, and over whom, while engaged in ascetic meditation, the ants had built a hill. Thou mayst have heard that Indrasenā also who in beauty was like unto *Nārāyani* herself, followed her husband aged a thousand years. Thou mayst also have heard that Janaka's daughter, Sitā, the princess of Videha, followed her lord while living in dense woods. And that lady of graceful hips, Ramā's beloved wife, afflicted with calamities and persecuted by the Rākshasa, at length regained the company of Rama. Lopāmudrā also, O timid one, endued with youth and beauty, followed Agastya, renouncing all the objects of enjoyment unattainable by men. And the intelligent and faultless Sāvitri also followed the heroic Satyavān the son of Dyumatsena, alone into the world of Yama! Even like these chaste and beautiful ladies that I have named, thou, O blessed girl, bloomest with every virtue! Do thou spend a short while more that is measured by even a half month! And when the thirteenth year is complete, thou wilt (again) become the Queen regnant of a king!' Hearing these words, Draupadi said,—'Unable, O Bhima, to bear my griefs, it is from grief alone that I have shed these tears! I do not censure Yudhishthira! Nor is there any use in dwelling on the past. O Bhima of mighty strength, come quickly forward to the work of the hour! O Bhima, Kaikeyi, jealous of my beauty, always pains me by her endeavours to prevent the king from taking a fancy to me! And understanding this disposition of hers, the wicked-souled Kichaka of immoral ways, constantly solicits me himself! Angry with him for this, but then suppressing my wrath, I answer that wretch deprived of sense by lust, saying,—*O Kichaka, protect thyself! I am the beloved queen and wife of five Gandharvas. Those heroes in wrath will slay thee that art so rash!*—Thus addressed, Kichaka of wicked soul replies unto me, saying,—*I have not the least fear of the Gandharvas, O Sairindhri of sweet smiles! I will slay a hundred thousand Gandharvas encountering them in battle! Therefore, O timid one, do thou*

consent!—Hearing all this, I again addressed the lust-afflicted Suta, saying,—*Thou art no match for those illustrious Gandharvas! Of respectable parentage and good disposition, I ever adhere to virtue and never wish for the death of any one. It is for this that thou livest, O Kichaka!*—At this, that wight of wicked soul burst out into a loud laughter. And it came to pass that Kaikeyi previously urged by Kichaka, and moved by affection for her brother, and desirous of doing him a good turn, despatched me to him, saying,—*Do thou, O Sairindhri, fetch wine from Kichaka's quarters!* On beholding me the *Suta's* son at first addressed me in sweet words, and when that failed, he became exceedingly enraged, and intended to use violence. Understanding the purpose of the wicked Kichaka, I speedily rushed towards the place where the king was. Felling me on the ground the wretch then kicked me in the very presence of the king himself and before the eyes of Kanka and many others, including charioteers, and royal favorites, and elephant-riders, and citizens. I rebuked the king and Kanka again and again. The king, however, neither prevented Kichaka, nor inflicted any chastisement on him. The principal ally of king Virāta in war, the cruel Kichaka reft of virtue is loved by both the king and the queen. O exalted one, brave, proud, sinful, adulterous, and engrossed in all objects of enjoyment, he earneth immense wealth (from the king), and robs the possessions of others even if they cry in distress! And he never walketh in the path of virtue, nor doeth he any virtuous act. Of wicked soul, and vicious disposition, haughty and villainous, and always afflicted by the shafts of Kāma, though replused repeatedly, if he sees me again, he will outrage me! I shall then surely renounce my life! Although striving to acquire virtue, (on my death) your highly meritorious acts will come to naught! Ye that are now obeying your pledge, ye will lose your wife! By protecting one's wife, one's offspring are protected, and by protecting one's offspring, one's own self is protected. And it is because one begets one's own self in one's wife that the wife is called *Jāyā** by the wise. The husband

---

* *Jâyate asyās*—*i. e.* She from whom one is born.—*T.*

also should be protected by the wife, thinking,—*How else will he take his birth in my womb?*—I have heard it from Brāhmanas expounding the duties of the several orders, that a Kshatriya hath no other duty than subduing enemies. Alas, Kichaka kicked me in the very presence of Yudhishthira the just, and also of thyself, O Bhimasena of mighty strength! It was thou, O Bhima, that didst deliver me from the terrible Jatāsura! It was thou also that, with thy brothers, didst vanquish Jayadratha! Do thou now slay this wretch also who hath insulted me! Presuming upon his being a favorite of the king, Kichaka, O Bhārata, hath enhanced my woe! Do thou, therefore, smash this lustful wight even like an earthen pot dashed upon a stone! If, O Bhārata, to-morrow's sun sheds his rays upon him who is the source of many griefs of mine, I shall, surely, mixing poison (with some drink), drink it up,—for I never shall yield to Kichaka! Far better it were, O Bhima, that I should die before thee!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Having said this, Krishnā, hiding her face in Bhima's breast, began to weep. And Bhima, embracing her, consoled her to the best of his power. And having abundantly consoled that slender-waisted daughter of Drupada by means of words fraught with grave reason and sense, he wiped with his hands her face flooded with tears. And thinking of Kichaka, and licking with his tongue the corners of his mouth, Bhima, filled with wrath, thus spake to that distressed lady. "

Thus ends the twenty-first Section in the Kichaka-badha of the Virāta Parva.

Section XXII.

(Kichaka-badha Parva continued.)

" Bhima said,—'I will, O timid one, do even as thou sayest. I will presently slay Kichaka with all his friends. O Yājnaseni of sweet smiles, to-morrow evening, renouncing sorrow and grief, manage to have a meeting with Kichaka! The dancing-hall that the king of the Matsyas hath caused to be erected is used by the girls for dancing during the day.

These repair, however, to their homes at night. There in that hall, is an excellent and well-placed wooden bed-stead. Even there I will make him see the spirits of his deceased grandsires! But, O beautiful one, when thou holdest converse with him, thou must manage it so that others may not espy thee!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having thus conversed with each other, and shed tears in grief, they waited for the dawn of that night with painful impatience. And when the night had passed away, Kichaka, rising in the morning, went to the palace, and accosted Draupadi, saying,—'Throwing thee down in the court I kicked thee in the presence of the king. Attacked by my mighty self, thou couldst not obtain protection. This Virāta is in name only the king of the Matsyas. Commanding the forces of this realm, it is I who am the real lord of the Matsyas. Do thou, O timid one, accept me cheerfully! I shall become thy slave! And, O thou of graceful hips, I will immediately give thee a hundred *nishkas*, and engage a hundred male and a hundred female servants (to tend thee), and will also bestow on thee cars yoked with she-mules. O timid lady, let our union take place!' Draupadi replied,—'O Kichaka, know even this is my condition! Neither thy friends nor thy brothers should know thy union with me. I am in terror of detection by those illustrious Gandharvas! Promise me this, and I yield to thee!' Hearing this, Kichaka said,—'I will, O thou of graceful hips, do even as thou sayest! Afflicted by the god of love, I will, O beauteous damsel, alone repair to thy abode for union with thee, O thou of thighs round and tapering as the trunks of the plantain,—so that those Gandharvas, effulgent as the sun, may not come to know of this act of thine!' Draupadi said,—'Do thou, when it is dark, go to the dancing-hall erected by the king of the Matsyas where the girls dance during the day, repairing to their respective homes at night. The Gandharvas do not know that place. We shall then, without doubt, escape all censure!'"

Vaiçāmpāyana continued.—"Reflecting on the subject of her conversation with Kichaka, that half a day seemed to Krishnā as long as a whole month. And the stupid Kichaka also, not knowing that it was Death that had assumed the form

of a *Sairindhri*, returning home, experienced the greatest delight. And deprived of sense by lust, Kichaka became speedily engaged in embellishing his person with unguents and garlands and ornaments. And while he was doing all this, thinking of that damsel of large eyes, the day seemed to him to be without an end. And the beauty of Kichaka, who was about to forsake his beauty for ever, seemed to heighten, like the wick of a burning lamp about to expire. And reposing the fullest confidence in Draupadi, Kichaka, deprived of his senses by lust, and absorbed in the contemplation of the expected meeting, did not even perceive that the day had departed. Meanwhile, the beautiful Draupadi approaching her husband Bhima of the Kuru race, stood before him in the kitchen. And that lady with tresses ending in beautiful curls then spake unto him, saying,—'O chastiser of foes, even as thou hadst directed, I have given Kichaka to understand that our meeting will take place in the dancing-hall. Alone will he come at night to the empty hall. Slay him there, O thou of mighty arms! Do thou, O son of Kunti, repair to that dancing-hall, and take the life, O Pāndava, of Kichaka, that son of a *Suta*, intoxicated with vanity! From vanity alone, that son of a *Suta* slights the Gandharvas! O best of smiters, lift him up from the earth even as Krishna had lifted up the *Nāga* (Kāliya) from the Yamunā.* O Pāndava, afflicted as I am with grief, wipe thou my tears, and, blessed be thou, protect thy own honor and that of thy race!'"

"Bhima said,—'Welcome, O beauteous lady! Except the glad tidings thou bringest me, I need, O thou of exceeding beauty, no other aid whatever! The delight that I feel, O thou of great beauty, on hearing from thee about my coming encounter with Kichaka, is equal to what I felt in slaying Hidimva! I swear unto thee by Truth, by my brothers, and by morality, that I will slay Kichaka even as the lord of the celestials slew Vritra. Whether secretly or openly I will crush Kichaka, and if the Matsyas fight for him, then I will surely slay them

* Some texts read, *Vilwam nāgaivodhara*—i. e. 'As an elephant lifts up a *vela* fruit.'

too ! And slaying Duryodhana afterwards, I shall win back the earth. Let Yudhishthira the son of Kunti continue to pay homage unto the king of Matsya !' Hearing these words of Bhima, Draupadi said,—'Inorder that, O lord, thou mayst not have to renounce the truth already pledged to me, do thou, O hero, slay Kichaka in secret !' Bhima replied,—'I shall, O timid one, do even as thou sayest ! Even to-day I shall slay Kichaka together with his friends ! Unknown to others during the darkness of the night, I shall, O faultless lady, crush, even as an elephant crusheth a *vela* fruit, the head of the wicked Kichaka who wisheth for what is unattainable by him !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Repairing first to the place of assignation at night, Bhima sat down, disguising himself. And he waited there in expectation of Kichaka, like a lion lying in wait for a deer. And Kichaka, having embellished his person as he chose, came to the dancing-hall at the appointed time in the hope of meeting Pānchāli. And thinking of the assignation, he entered the chamber. And having entered that hall enveloped in deep gloom, that wretch of wicked soul came upon Bhima of incomparable prowess, who had come a little before, and who was waiting in a corner. And as an insect approacheth towards a flaming fire, or as a puny animal, towards a lion, Kichaka approached Bhima lying down on the bed, burning in anger at the thought of the insult offered to Krishnā, as if he were the Suta's Death. And having approached Bhima, Kichaka, possest by lust, and his heart and soul filled with ecstacy, smilingly said,—'O Thou of pencilled eye-brows, to thee I have already given many and various kinds of wealth from the stores earned by me, as well as a hundred maids and many fine robes, and also a mansion with an inner apartment adorned with beauteous and lovely and youthful maid-servants and embellished by every kind of sports and amusements ! And having set all those apart for thee, I have speedily come hither. And all of a sudden, women have begun to praise me, saying,—*There is not in this world another person like unto thee in beauty and dress !*'—Hearing this, Bhima said—'It is well that thou art handsome, and it is well that thou praisest thyself. I think, however, that thou hadst never before this such pleasurable

touch! Thou hast an acute touch, and knowest the ways of gallantry! Skilled in the art of love-making, thou art a favorite with women. There is none like thee in this world!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Saying this, that son of Kunti, the mighty-armed Bhima of terrible prowess, suddenly rose up, and laughingly said,—'Thy sister, O wretch, shall to-day behold thee dragged by me to the ground, like a mighty elephant, huge as a mountain, dragged to the ground by a lion! Thyself slain, *Sairindhri* will live in peace, and we, her husbands, will also live in peace!' Saying this, the mighty Bhima seized Kichaka by the hairs of his head which were adorned with garlands. And thus seized with force by the hair, that foremost of mighty persons, Kichaka, quickly freed his hair, and grasped the arms of Bhima. And then between those lions among men fired with wrath, between that chief of the Kichaka clan, and that best of men, there ensued a hand-to-hand encounter, like that between two powerful elephants for a female elephant in the season of spring, or like that which happened in days of yore between those lions among monkeys, the brothers Vāli and Sugriva. And both equally infuriate and both eager for victory, both those combatants raised their arms resembling snakes furnished with five hoods, and attacked each other with their nails and teeth, wrought up to a frenzy of wrath. Impetuously assailed by the powerful Kichaka in that encounter, the resolute Bhima did not waver a single step. And locked in each other's embraces and dragging each other, they fought on like two mighty bulls. And having nails and teeth for their weapons, the enconunter between them was fierce and terrible like that of two furious tigers. And felling each other down by means of their arms, and seizing each other in fury, they encountered each other like a couple of elephants with rent temples. And the mighty Bhima then seized Kichaka, and Kichaka, that foremost of strong persons, threw Bhima down with violence. And as those mighty combatants fought on, the crash of their arms produced a loud noise that resembled the clatter of splitting bamboos. Then Vrikodara, throwing Kichaka down by main force within the room, began to toss him about furiously even as a hurricane tosseth a tree. And

attacked thus in battle by the powerful Bhima, Kichaka grew weak, and began to tremble. For all that, however, he tugged at the Pāndava to the best of his power. And attacking Bhima, and making him waver a little, the mighty Kichaka struck him with his knees and brought him down to the ground. And overthrown by the powerful Kichaka, Bhima quickly rose up, like Yama himself with mace in hand. And thus that powerful *Suta* and the Pāndava, intoxicated with strength and challenging each other, grappled with each other at midnight in that solitary place. And as they roared at each other in wrath, that excellent and strong edifice began to shake every moment. And slapped on the chest by the mighty Bhima, Kichaka fired with wrath moved not a single pace. And bearing for a moment only that onslaught incapable of being borne on earth, the *Suta*, overpowered by Bhimā's might, became enfeebled. And seeing him waning weak, Bhima endued with great strength forcibly drew Kichaka towards his breast, and began to press him hard. And breathing hard again and again in wrath, that best of victors, Vrikodara, forcibly seized Kichaka by the hair. And having seized Kichaka, the mighty Bhima began to roar like a hungry tiger that hath killed a large animal. And finding him exceedingly exhausted, Vrikodara bound him fast with his arms, as one binds a beast with a cord. And then Bhima began for a long while, to whirl the senseless Kichaka, who began to roar frightfully like a broken trumpet.* And in order to pacify Krishnā's wrath, Vrikodara grasped Kichaka's throat with his arms and began to squeeze it. And assailing with his knees the waist of that worst of the Kichakas, all the limbs of whose body had been broken into fragments and whose eye-lids were closed, Vrikodara slew him, as one would slay a beast. And beholding Kichaka entirely motionless, the son of Pāndu began to roll him about on the ground. And Bhima then said,—'Slaying this wretch who had intended to violate our wife,—this thorn in the side of *Sairindhri*, I am freed from the debt I owed to my

---

* *Veri* means poth a *kettle-drum* and a *trumpet*. The latter however conveys a better meaning here.—*T*.

brother, and have attained perfect peace! And having said this, that foremost of men, with eyes red in wrath, relinquished his hold of Kichaka, whose dress and ornaments had been thrown off his person, whose eyes were rolling, and whose body was yet trembling. And that foremost of mighty persons squeezing his own hands, and biting his lips in rage, again attacked his adversary and thrust his arms and legs and neck and head into his body like the wielder of the *Pināka* reducing into a shapeless mass the deer, which form Sacrifice had assumed in order to escape his ire. And having crushed all his limbs, and reduced him into a ball of flesh, the mighty Bhimasena showed him unto Krishnā. And endued with mighty energy, that hero then addressed Draupadi, that foremost of all women, saying,—'Come, O princess of Pānchāla, and see what hath become of that lustful wretch!' And saying this, Bhima of terrible prowess began to press with his feet the body of that wicked wight. And lighting a torch then, and showing Draupadi the body of Kichaka, that hero addressed her, saying,—'O Thou of tresses ending in beautiful curls, those that solicit thee endued as thou art with an excellent disposition and every virtue, are slain by me even as this Kichaka hath been, O timid one!' And having accomplished that difficult task so highly agreeable to Krishnā, —having, indeed, slain Kichaka and thereby pacified his wrath, Bhima bade farewell to Krishnā the daughter of Drupada, and quickly went back to the kitchen. And Draupadi also, that best of women, having caused Kichaka to be slain, had her grief removed and experienced the greatest delight. And addressing the keepers of the dancing-hall, she said,—'Come ye and behold! Kichāka who had lusted after other people's wives lieth down here, slain by my Gandharva husbands!' And hearing these words, the guards of the dancing-hall, soon came by thousands to that spot, torches in hand. And repairing to that room, they beheld the lifeless Kichaka thrown on the ground, drenched with blood. And beholding him without arms and legs, they were filled with grief. And as they gazed at Kichaka, they were struck with amazement. And seeing that superhuman act, *viz.*,—the overthrow of Kichaka, they said,—'Where is his

neck, and where are his legs?' And beholding him in this plight, they all concluded that he had been killed by a Gandharva."

Thus ends the twenty-second Section in the Kichaka-badha of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XXIII.

(Kichaka-badha Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then all the relatives of Kichaka, arriving at that place, beheld him there and began to wail aloud, surrounding him on all sides. And beholding Kichaka with every limb mangled, and lying like a tortoise dragged to dry ground from the water, all of them were overcome with exceeding fright and the bristles of their bodies stood on end. And seeing him crushed all over by Bhima, like a Dānava by Indra, they proceeded to take him outside, for performing his funeral obsequies. And then those persons of the *Suta* clan thus assembled together espied Krishnā of faultless limbs hard by, who stood reclining on a pillar. And all the Kichakas assembled there, exclaimed,—'Let this unchaste woman be slain for whom Kichaka hath himself lost his life! Or, without slaying her here, let us cremate her with him that had lusted after her,—for it behoveth us to accomplish in every way what is agreeable to that deceased son of a *Suta!*' And then they addressed Virāta, saying,—'It is for her sake that Kichaka hath lost his life. Let him, therefore, be cremated along with her! It behoveth thee to grant this permission!'—Thus addressed by them, king Virāta, O monarch, knowing full well the prowess of the *Sutas*, gave his assent to the *Çairindhri's* being burnt along with the *Suta's* son. And at this, the Kichakas, approaching the frightened and stupefied Krishnā of lotus-like eyes, seized her with violence. And binding that damsel of slender-waist and placing her upon the bier, they set out with great energy towards cemetery. And, O king, while thus forcibly carried towards the cemetery by those sons of the *Suta* tribe, the blameless and chaste Krishnā living under the protection of her lords, then wailed aloud for the help of her hus-

bands, saying,—'Oh, let Jaya, and Jayanta, and Vijaya, and Jayatsena, and Jayadvala, listen to my words! The *Sutas* are taking me away! Let those illustrious Gandharvas endued with speed of hand, the clatter of whose cars is loud and the twang of whose bowstrings in the midst of the mighty conflict are heard like the roar of thunder, listen to my words,—the *Sutas* are taking me away!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Hearing those sorrowful words and lamentations of Krishnā, Bhima, without a moment's reflection started up from his bed, and said,—'I have heard, O *Sairindhri*, the words thou hast spoken! Thou hast, therefore, O timid lady, no more fear at the hands of the *Sutas*!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Having said this, the mighty-armed Bhima, desirous of slaying the Kichakas, began to swell his body. And carefully changing his attire, he went out of the palace by a wrong egress. And climbing over a wall by the aid of a tree, he proceeded towards the cemetery whither the Kichakas had gone. And having leapt over the wall, and gone out of the excellent city, Bhima impetuously rushed to where the *Sutas* were. And, O monarch, proceeding towards the funeral pyre he beheld a large tree, tall as a palmyra-palm, with gigantic shoulders and withered top. And that slayer of foes, grasping with his arms that tree measuring ten *Vyāmas*, uprooted it, even like an elephant, and placed it upon his shoulders. And taking up that tree with trunk and branches, and measuring ten *Vyāmas*, that mighty hero rushed towards the *Sutas*, like Yama himself, mace in hand. And by the impetus of his rush,* banians and peepals and *Kinçukas* falling down on earth lay in clusters. And beholding that Gandharva approach them like a lion in fury, all the *Sutas* trembling with fear and greatly distressed, became panic-struck. And they addressed each other, saying,—'Lo, the powerful Gandharva cometh hither, filled with rage, and with an upraised tree in hand! Let *Sairindhri*, therefore. from whom this danger of ours hath arisen be set free!'—And beholding the tree that had been uprooted by Bhimasena, they set Draupadi free and

* Lit. force of his thighs.—*T*.

ran breathlessly towards the city. And seeing them run away, Bhima, that mighty son of the Wind-god, despatched, O foremost of kings, by means of that tree, a hundred and five of them unto the abode of Yama, like the wielder of the thunderbolt slaying the Dānavas. And setting Draupadi free from her bonds, he then, O king, comforted her. And that mighty-armed and irrepressible Vrikodara, the son of Pāndu, then addressed the distressed princess of Pānchāla with face bathed in tears, saying,—'Thus, O timid one, are they slain that wrong thee without cause! Return, O Krishnā, to the city! Thou hast no longer any fear; I myself will go to Virāta's kitchen by another route!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"It was thus, O Bhārata, that a hundred and five of those Kichakas were slain. And their corpses lay on the ground, making the place look like a great forest overspread with uprooted trees after a hurricane. Thus fell those hundred and five Kichakas! And including Virāta's general slain before, the slaughtered *Sutas* numbered one hundred and six. And beholding that exceedingly wonderful feat, men and women were assembled together, filled with astonishment. And the power of speech, O Bhārata, was suspended in every one."

Thus ends the twenty-third Section in the Kichaka-badha of the Virāta Parva.

Section XXIV.

(Kichaka-badha Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"And beholding the *Sutas* slain, the citizens went to the king, and represented unto him what had happened, saying,—'O king, those mighty sons of the *Sutas* have all been slain by the Gandharvas! Indeed, they lie scattered on the earth like huge peaks of mountains riven by thunder. *Sairindhri* also, having been set free, returneth to thy palace in the city! Alas, O king, if *Sairindhri* cometh, thy entire kingdom will be endangered! *Sairindhri* is endued with great beauty; the Gandharvas also are exceedingly powerful. Men again, without doubt, are naturally sensual! Devise, there-

fore, O king, without delay, such means that in consequence of wrongs done to *Sairindhri*, thy kingdom may not meet with destruction!' Hearing those words of theirs, Virāta, that lord of hosts, said unto them,—'Do ye perform the last rites of the *Sutas!* Let all the Kichakas be burnt in one blazing pyre with gems and fragrant unguents in profusion!' And filled with fear, the king then addressed his queen Sudeshnā, saying,—'When *Sairindri* comes back, do thou tell her these words from me,—*Blessed be thou, O fair-faced Sairindhrī! Go thou whithersoever thou likest! The king hath been alarmed, O thou of graceful hips, at the defeat already experienced at the hands of the Gandharvas! Protected as thou art by the Gandharvas, I dare not personally say all this to thee! A woman, however, cannot offend, and it is for this that I tell thee all this through a woman!*'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus delivered by Bhimasena after the slaughter of the *Sutas*, the intelligent and youthful Krishnā relieved from all her fears, washed her limbs and clothes in water, and proceeded towards the city, like a doe frightened by a tiger. And beholding her, the citizens, O king, afflicted with the fear of the Gandharvas, fled in all directions. And some of them went so far as to shut their eyes. And then, O king, at the gate of the kitchen, the princess of Pānchāla saw Bhimasena staying like an infuriate elephant of gigantic proportions. And looking upon him with wonder-expanded eyes, Draupadi by means of words intelligible to them alone, said,—'I bow unto that prince of the Gandharvas, who hath rescued me!' At these words of hers, Bhima said,—'Hearing these words of hers in obedience to whom those persons were hitherto living in the city, they will henceforth range here, regarding themselves as freed from the debt.'"*

Vaicampāyana continued.—"Then she beheld the mighty-armed Dhananjaya, in the dancing-hall instructing king Virāta's daughters in dancing. And issuing with Arjuna from

---

* What Bhima says is this,—'The Gandharvas, your husbands, are always obedient to thee! If they have been able to do thee a service, they have only repaid a debt.—*T.*

the dancing-hall, all those damsels came to Krishnā who had arrived there, and who had been persecuted so sorely, all innocent though she was. And they said,—'By good luck, it is, O *Sairindhri*, that thou hast been delivered from thy dangers! By good luck it is that thou hast returned safe. And by good luck also it is that those *Sutas* have been slain that had wronged thee, innocent though thou art!' Hearing this, Vrihannalā said,—'How hast thou, O *Sairindhri*, been delivered? And how have those sinful wretches been slain? I wish to learn all this from thee exactly as it fell out! *Sairindhri* replied, —'O blessed Vrihannalā, always passing thy days happily in the apartments of the girls, what concern hast thou with *Sairindhri's* fate to say? Thou hast no grief to bear that *Saidhri* hath to bear! It is for this, that thou askest me thus, distressed as I am, in ridicule!' Thereat Vrihannalā said,—'O blessed one, Vrihannalā also hath unparalleled sorrows of her own! She hath become as low as a brute. Thou dost not, O girl, understand this. I have lived with thee, and thou too hast lived with us! When, therefore, thou art afflicted with misery, who is it that will not, O thou of beautiful hips, feel it? But no one can completely read another's heart. Therefore it is, O amiable one, that thou knowest not my heart!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then Draupadi, accompanied by those girls entered the royal abode, desirous of appearing before Sudeshnā. And when she came before the queen, Virāta's wife addressed her at the command of the king, saying,—'Do thou, O *Sairindhri*, speedily go whithersoever thou likest! The king, good betide thee, hath been filled with fear at this discomfiture at the hands of the Gandharvas! Thou art, O thou of graceful eye-brows, young, and unparalleled on earth in beauty! Thou art, besides, an object of desire with men. The Gandharvas, again, are exceedingly wrathful!' Thereat *Sairindhri* said,—'O beauteous lady, let the king suffer me to live here for only thirteen days more! Without doubt, the Gandharvas also will be highly obliged at this. They will then convey me hence and do what would be agreeable to Virāta. Without doubt, the king, by doing this, with his friends, reap great benefit.' "

Thus ends the twenty-fourth Section in the Kichaka-badha-of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XXV.

(Go-harana Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"At the slaughter of Kichaka and his brothers, people, O king, thinking of this terrible feat, were filled with surprise. And in the city and the provinces it was generally bruited about that 'for bravery the king's Vallava and Kichaka were both mighty warriors. The wicked Kichaka, however, had been an oppressor of men and a dishonorer of other people's wives. And it was for this that that wicked wight of sinful soul had been slain by the Gandharvas.' And it was thus, O king, that people began to speak, from province to province, of the invincible Kichaka, that slayer of hostile ranks.

"Meanwhile, the spies employed by Dhritarāshtra's son, having searched various villages and towns and kingdoms and done all that they had been commanded to do and completed their examination, in the manner directed, of the countries indicated in their orders, returned to Nāgapura, gratified with at least one thing that they had learnt.* And seeing Dhritarāshtra's son king Duryodhana of the Kuru race seated in his court with Drona and Karna and Kripa, with the high-souled Bhishma, his own brothers, and those great warriors—the Trigartas, they addressed him, saying,—'O lord of men, great hath been the care always bestowed by us in the search after the sons of Pāndu in that mighty forest! Searched have we through the solitary wilderness abounding with deer and other animals and overgrown with trees and creepers of diverse kinds! Searched have we also in arbours of matted woods and plants and creepers of every species, but we have failed in discover-

---

* *Krita-krityā.* Nilakantha explains this to mean "imagining themselves to have achieved success in their mission," for having learnt of Kichaka's death, they could readly divine the presence of the Pāndavas there. This is too far-fetched and does not at all agree with the spirit of their report to Duryodhana below. And then the same word occurs in the very last line of the Section. I take it that in both places the word has been used in the same sense.—*T.*

ing the track by which Prithā's sons of irrepressible energy may have gone. Searched have we in these and other places for their foot-prints! Searched have we closely, O king, on mountain tops and in inaccessible fastnesses, in various kingdoms and provinces teeming with people, in encampments and cities; no trace have we yet found of the sons of Pāndu! Good betide thee, O bull among men, it seems that they have perished without leaving a mark behind! O foremost of warriors, although we followed in the track of those warriors, yet, O best of men, we soon lost their foot-prints and do not know their present residence. O lord of men, for some time we followed in the wake of their charioteers. And making our inquiries duly, we truly ascertained what we desired to know. O slayer of foes, the charioteers reached Dwārāvati without the sons of Prithā among them. O king, neither the sons of Pāndu, nor the chaste Krishnā, are in that city of the Yādavas. O bull of the Bharata race, we have not been able to discover either their track or their present abode. Salutations to thee, they are gone for good! We are acquainted with the disposition of the sons of Pāndu and know something of the feats achieved by them. It behoveth thee, therefore, O lord of men, to give us instructions, O monarch, as to what we should next do in the search after the sons of Pāndu! O hero, listen also to these agreeable words of ours, promising great good to thee! King Matsya's charioteer, Kichaka of wicked soul, by whom the Trigartas, O monarch, were repeatedly vanquished and slain with mighty force, now lieth low on the ground with all his brothers, slain, O monarch, by invisible Gandharvas during the hours of darkness, O thou of unfading glory! Having heard this delightful news about the discomfiture of our enemies, we have been exceedingly gratified, O Kauravya! Do thou now ordain what should next be done!' "

Thus ends the twenty-fifth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XXVI.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having listened to these words of his spies, king Duryodhana reflected inwardly for sometime and then addressed his courtiers, saying,—'It is difficult to ascertain the course of events definitely. Discern ye all, therefore, whither the sons of Pāndu have gone. Of this thirteenth year which they are to pass undiscovered by us all, the greater part hath already expired. What remains is by much the smaller. If, indeed, the sons of Pāndu can pass undiscovered what remains of this year, devoted to the vow of truth as they are, they will then have fulfilled their pledge. They will then return like mighty elephants with temporal juice trickling down, or like snakes of virulent poison. Filled with wrath, they will, without doubt, be inflicters of terrible chastisement on the Kurus. It behoveth ye, therefore, to make such efforts without loss of time as may induce the sons of Pāndu, acquainted as they are with the proprieties of time, and staying as they now are in painful disguise, to re-enter the woods suppressing their rage. Indeed, adopt ye such means as may remove all causes of quarrel and anxiety from the kingdom, making it tranquil and foeless and incapable of sustaining a diminution of territory.' Hearing these words of Duryodhana, Karna said,—'Let other spies, abler and more cunning, and capable of accomplishing their object, quickly go hence, O Bhārata! Let them, well disguised, wander through swelling kingdoms and populous provinces, prying into assemblies of the learned and delightful retreats of ascetics! In the inner apartments of palaces, in shrines and holy spots, in mines and diverse other regions, the sons of Pāndu should be searched after with well-directed eagerness. Let the sons of Pāndu who are living in disguise be searched after by well-skilled spies in large numbers, devoted to their work, themselves well-disguised, and all well acquainted with the objects of their search. Let the search be made on the banks of rivers, in holy regions, in villages and towns, in retreats of ascetics, in delightful mountains and mountain

caves.' When Karna ceased, Douryodhana's second brother Dusçāsana, wedded to a sinful disposition, then addressed his eldest brother and said,—'O monarch, O lord of men, let those spies only in whom we have confidence, receiving their rewards in advance, once more go after the search. This and what else hath been said by Karna have our fullest approval. Let all the spies engage in the search according to the directions already given. Let these and others engage in the search from province to province according to approved rules. It is my belief, however, that the track the Pāndavas have followed or their present abode or occupation will not be discovered. Perhaps, they are closely concealed ; perhaps, they have gone to the other side of the ocean ; or, perhaps, proud as they are of their strength and courage, they have been devoured by wild beasts; or, perhaps, having been overtaken by some unusual danger, they have perished for eternity. Therefore, O prince of the Kuru race, dispelling all anxieties from thy heart, achieve what thou wilt, always acting according to thy energy!' "

Thus ends the twenty-sixth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XXVII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaicampāyana said.—" Endued with mighty energy and possessed of great discernment, Drona then said,—'Persons like the sons of Pāndu never perish nor undergo discomfiture. Brave and skilled in every science, intelligent and with senses under control, virtuous and grateful and obedient to the virtuous Yudhishthira, ever following in the wake of their eldest brother who is conversant with the conclusions of policy and virtue and profit, who is attached to them as a father, and who strictly adhereth to virtue and is firm in truth,—persons like them that are thus devoted to their illustrious and royal brother, who, gifted with great intelligence, never injureth any body and who in his turn himself obeyeth his younger brothers, never perish in this way. Why, then, should not (Yudhishthira) the son of Prithā, possessing a knowledge of policy, be able

to restore the prosperity of brothers such as these that are so obedient and devoted and high-souled ? It is for this that they are carefully waiting for the arrival of their opportunity. Men such as these never perish. This is what I see by my intellect. Do, therefore, quickly and without loss of time, what should now be done, after proper reflection. And let also the abode which the sons of Pāndu with souls under control as regards every purpose of life, are to occupy, be now settled. Heroic and sinless and possessed of ascetic merit, the Pāndavas are difficult to be discovered (within the period of non-discovery). Intelligent and possessed of every virtue, devoted to truth and versed in the principles of policy, endued with purity and holiness, and the embodiment of immeasurable energy, the son of Prithā is capable of consuming (his foes) by a glance alone of his eye. Knowing all this, do what is proper. Let us, therefore, once more search after them, sending Brāhmanas and *Chāranas,* ascetics crowned with success, and others of this kind who may have a knowledge of those heroes !' "

Thus ends the twenty-seventh Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XXVIII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Then that grandsire of the Bhāratas, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, conversant with the *Vedas,* acquainted with the proprieties of time and place, and possessing a knowledge of every duty of morality, after the conclusion of Drona's speech, applauded the words of the preceptor and spake unto the Bhāratas, for their benefit, these words consistent with virtue, expressive of his attachment to the virtuous Yudhishthira, rarely spoken by men that are dishonest, and always meeting with the approbation of the honest. And the words that Bhishma spake were thoroughly impartial and worshipped by the wise. And the grandsire of the Kurus said,—'The words that the regenerate Drona acquainted with the truth of every affair hath uttered, are approved by me. I have no hesitation in saying so. Endued with every auspicious

mark, observant of virtuous vows, possessed of Vedic lore, devoted to religious observances, conversant with various sciences, obedient to the counsels of the aged, adhering to the vow of truth, acquainted with the proprieties of time, observant of the pledge they have given (in respect of their exile), pure in their behaviour, ever adhering to the duties of the Kshatriya order, always obedient to Keçava, high-souled, possessed of great strength, and ever bearing the burthens of the wise, those heroic ones can never wither under misfortune. Aided by their own energy, the sons of Pāndu who are now leading a life of concealment in obedience to virtue, will surely never perish. It is even this that my mind surmiseth. Therefore, O Bhārata, I am for employing the aid of honest counsel in our behaviour towards the sons of Pāndu. It would not be the policy of any wise man to cause them to be discovered now by means of spies.* Of that only which we should do unto the sons of Pāndu, I shall say, reflecting with the aid of the intellect. Know that I shall say nothing from ill will to thee. People like me should never give such counsels to him that is dishonest, for only counsels (like those I would give) should be offered unto them that are honest. Counsels, however, that are evil, should under no circumstances be offered. He, O child, that is devoted to truth and obedient to the aged, he, indeed, that is wise, while speaking in the midst of an assembly, should under all circumstances speak the truth, if the acquisition of virtue be an object with him. I should, therefore, say that I think differently from all those people here, in respect of the abode of Yudhishthira the just in this the thirteenth year of his exile. The rulers, O child, of the city or the province where king Yudhishthira resides cannot have any misfortune. Chairtable and liberal and humble and modest must the people be of

---

* This is a very difficult *sloka*. I am not sure that I have understood it aright. Both Nilakantha and Arjuna Misra are silent. Instead of depending, however, on my own intelligence, I have consulted several friends who have read the "Mahābhârata" through. The grammatical structure is easy. The only difficulty consists in the second half of the *sloka*. The meaning, however, I have given is consistent with the tenour of Bhishma's advice.—*T*

the country where king Yudhishthira resides. Agreeable in speech, with passions under control, observant of truth, cheerful, healthy, pure in conduct, and skilful in work must the people be of the country where king Yudhishthira resides. The people of the place where Yudhishthira is, cannot be envious, or malicious, or vain, or proud, but must all adhere to their respective duties. Indeed, in the place where Yudhishthira resides, Vedic hymns will be chaunted all around, sacrifices will be performed, the last full libations will always be poured,* and gifts to Brāhmanas will always be in profusion. There the clouds, without doubt, pour abundant rain, and furnished with good harvests, the country will ever be without fear. There the paddy will not be without grain, fruits will all be juicy, floral garlands will not be without fragrance, and the conversation of men will always be full of agreeable words. There where king Yudhishthira resides, the breezes will be delecious, the meetings of men will always be friendly, and cause of fear there will be none. There kine will be plentiful, without any of them being lean-fleshed or weak, and milk and curds and butter both savoury and nutritious. There where king Yudhishthira resides, every kind of corn will be full of nutrition, and every edible full of flavour. There where king Yudhishthira resides, the objects of all the senses, *viz.*,—taste, touch, smell, and hearing, will be endued with excellent attributes. There where king Yudhishthira resides, the sights and scenes will all be gladdening. And the regenerate ones of that place will be virtuous, and steady in observing their respective duties. Indeed, in the country where the sons of Pāndu may have taken up their abode during this the thirteenth year of their exile, the people will all be contented and cheerful, pure in conduct and without misery of any kind. Devoted to gods and guests and the worship of these with their whole soul, they will be fond of giving away, and filled with great energy, they will all be observant of eternal Virtue. There where king Yudhishthira resides, the people, eschewing all that is evil, will be desirous of achieving only what is good. Always observant

* Indicating the unobstructed completion of the sacrifice.—*T.*

of sacrifices and pure vows, and hating untruth in speech, the people of the place where king Yudhishthira may reside will always be desirous of obtaining what is good, auspicious and beneficial. There where Yudhishthira resides, the people will certainly be desirous of achieving what is good, and their hearts will always incline towards virtue, their vows, besides, being agreeable and they themselves being ever engaged in the acquisition of religious merit. O child, that son of Prithā in whom are intelligence and charity, the highest tranquillity and undoubted forgiveness, modesty and prosperity, and fame and great energy and simplicity and a love for all creatures, is incapable of being found out (now that he hath concealed himself) even by Brāhmanas, let alone ordinary persons! The wise Yudhishthira is living in close disguise in regions whose characteristics I have described. Regarding his excellent mode of life, I dare not say anything more. Reflecting well upon all this, do without loss of time what thou mayst think to be beneficial, O prince of the Kuru race, if, indeed, thou hast any faith in me!' "

Thus ends the twenty-eighth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XXIX.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Then Saradwata's son, Kripa, said,—'What the aged Bhishma hath said concerning the Pāndavas is reasonable, suited to the occasion, consistent with virtue and profit, agreeable to the ear, fraught with sound reason, and worthy of him. Listen also to what I would say on this subject! It behoveth thee to ascertain the track they have followed and their abode also by means of spies,* and to adopt that policy which may bring about thy welfare! O child, he that is solicitous of his welfare should not disregard even an ordinary foe. What shall I say, then, O child, of the Pāndavas

* The word *tirtha* here means, as Nilakantha rightly explains, spies, and not holy spots.—*T.*

who are thorough masters of all weapons in battle! When, therefore, the time cometh for the reappearance of the high-souled Pāndavas, who, having entered the forest,* are now passing their days in close disguise, thou shouldst ascertain thy strength both in thy own kingdom and in those of other kings! Without doubt, the return of the Pāndavas is at hand. Their promised term of exile over, the illustrious and mighty sons of Prithā, endued with immeasurable prowess, will come hither bursting with energy! Do thou, therefore, in order to conclude an advantageous treaty with them, have recourse to sound policy and address thyself to increase thy forces and improve thy treasury! O child, ascertaining all these, reckon thou thy own strength in respect of all thy allies weak and strong.† Ascertaining the efficiency, and weakness, and indifference of thy forces, as also who amongst them are well affected and who disaffected, we should either fight the foe or treat with him. Having recourse to the arts of conciliation, disunion, chastisement, bribery, presents, and fair behaviour, attack thy foes, and subdue the weak by might, and win over thy allies and troops by soft speeches. When thou hast (by these means) strengthened thy army and filled thy treasury, entire success will be thine! When thou hast done all this, thou wilt be able to fight with powerful enemies that may present themselves, let alone the sons of Pāndu deficient in troops and animals of their own. By adopting all these expedients according to the customs of thy order, thou wilt, O foremost of men, attain enduring happiness in due time!' "

---

* *Satram* is explained by Nilakantha to mean here "false disguise." I think, however, such an interpretation to be far-fetched. It evidently means "forest,"—the use of *praviçteshu* in connection with it almost settles the point.—*T.*

† This *sloka* is not correctly printed in any of the texts that I have seen. The reading that I adopt is that the second word is the participle of the root *budh* and not the instrumental of *buddhi*; the last word, again, of the second line, is compounded of *valavatsu* and *avaleshu* instead of (as printed in many books) *valavatswavaleshu.* Any other reading would certainly be incorrect. I have not consulted the Bombay text,—*T.*

Thus ends the twenty-ninth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XXX.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Discomfited before, O monarch, many a time and oft by Matsya's *Suta* Kichaka aided by the Matsyas and the Sālwyas, the mighty king of the Trigartas, Suçarman, who owned innumerable cars, regarding the opportunity to be a favorable one, then spoke the following words without losing a moment. And, O monarch, forcibly vanquished along with his relatives by the mighty Kichaka, king Suçarman, eyeing Karna askance, spoke these words unto Duryodhana :—'My kingdom hath, many a time, been forcibly invaded by the king of the Matsyas. The mighty Kichaka was that king's generalissimo. Crooked and wrathful and of wicked soul, of prowess famed over all the world, sinful in deeds and highly cruel, that wretch, however, hath been slain by the Gandharvas. Kichaka dead, king Virāta, shorn of pride and his refuge gone, will, I imagine, lose all courage. I think we ought now to invade that kingdom, if it please thee, O sinless one, as also the illustrious Karna and all the Kauravas! The accident that hath happened, is, I imagine, a favorable one for us. Let us, therefore, repair to Virāta's kingdom abounding in corn. We will appropriate his gems and other wealth of diverse kinds, and let us go shares with each other as regards his villages and kingdom. Or, invading his city by force, let us carry off by thousands his excellent kine of various species. Uniting, O king, the forces of the Kauravas and the Trigartas, let us lift his cattle in droves. Or, uniting our forces well, we will check his power by forcing him to sue for peace. Or, destroying his entire host, we will bring Matsya under subjection. Having brought him under subjection by just means, we will live in our kingdom happily, while thy power also will, without doubt, be enhanced!'—Hearing these words of Suçarman, Karna addressed the king, saying,—'Suçarman hath spoken well; the opportunity is favorable and promises to be profitable

to us. Therefore, if it please thee, O sinless one, let us, drawing up our forces in battle array and marshalling them in divisions, speedily set out! Or, let the expedition be managed as Saradwata's son Kripa, the preceptor Drona, and the wise and aged grandsire of the Kurus may think. Consulting with each other, let us, O lord of earth, speedily set out to attain our end! What business have we with the sons of Pāndu, destitute as they are of wealth, might, and prowess? They have either disappeared for good, or have gone to the abode of Yama! We will, O king, repair without anxiety to Virāta's city, and plunder his cattle and other wealth of diverse kinds!' "

Vaiçampyāyana continued.—" Accepting these words of Karna the son of Surya, king Duryodhana speedily commanded his brother Dusçāsana born immediately after him, and always obedient to his wishes, saying,—'Consulting with the elders, array without delay, our forces! We will, with all the Kauravas, go to the appointed place. Let also the mighty warrior, king Suçarman, accompained by a sufficient force with vehicles and animals, set out with the Trigartas for the dominions of Matsya! And let Suçarman proceed first, carefully concealing his intention. Following in their wake, we will set out the day after in close array, for the prosperous dominions of king Matsya! Let the Trigartas, however, suddenly repair to the city of Virāta, and coming upon the cowherds, seize that immense wealth (of kine). We also, marching in two divisions, will seize thousands of excellent kine furnished with auspicious marks!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then, O lord of earth, those warriors, the Trigartas, accompained by their infantry of terrible prowess, marched towards the south-eastern direction, intending to wage hostilities with Virāta from the desire of seizing his kine. And Suçarman set out on the seventh day of the dark fortnight for seizing the kine. And then, O king, on the eighth day following of the dark fortnight, the Kauravas also, accompained by all their troops, began to seize the kine by thousands. "

Thus ends the thirtieth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XXXI.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"O mighty king, entering into king Virāta's service, and dwelling in disguise in his excellent city, the high-souled Pāndavas of immeasurable prowess, completed the promised period of non-discovery. And after Kichaka had been slain, that slayer of hostile heroes, the mighty king Virāta, began to rest his hopes on the sons of Kunti. And it was on the expiry of the thirteenth year of their exile, O Bhārata, that Suçarman seized Virāta's cattle by thousands. And when the cattle had been seized, a herdsman of Virāta came with great speed to the city, and saw his sovereign the king of Matsya seated on the throne in the midst of wise councillors, and those bulls among men, the sons of Pāndu, and surrounded by brave warriors decked with ear-rings and bracelets. And appearing before that enhancer of his dominions—king Virāta seated in court—the herdsman bowed down unto him, and addressed him, saying,—'O foremost of kings, defeating and humiliating us in battle along with our friends, the Trigartas are seizing thy cattle by hundreds and by thousands. Do thou, therefore, speedily rescue them ! Oh, see that they are not lost to thee !'—Hearing these words, the king arrayed for battle the Matsya force abounding in cars and elephants and horses and infantry and standards. And kings and princes speedily put on, each in its proper place,* their shining and beautiful armour worthy of being worn by heroes. And Virāta's beloved brother, Satānika, put on a coat of mail made of adamantine steel, adorned with burnished gold. And Madirākshya, next in birth to Satānika, put on a strong coat of mail plaited with gold† and capable of resisting every weapon. And the coat of mail that the king himself of the Matsyas put on was invulnerable and decked with a hundred suns, a hundred

---

* *Bhāgasas* lit. each in its proper place. It may also mean, "according to their respective divisions."—*T.*

† *Kalyāna-patalam* is explained by Nilakantha to mean *suvarna-patrāchchhāditam.*—*T.*

circles, a hundred spots, and a hundred eyes. And the coat of mail that Suryadatta* put on was bright as the sun, plaited with gold, and broad as a hundred lotuses of the fragrant *(Kahlāra)* species. And the coat of mail that Virāta's eldest son, the heroic Sankha, put on was impenetrable and made of burnished steel, and decked with a hundred eyes of gold. And it was thus that those god-like and mighty warriors by hundreds, furnished with weapons, and eager for battle, each donned his corselet. And then they yoked unto their excellent cars of white hue steeds equipped in mail. And then was hoisted Matsyā's glorious standard on his excellent car decked with gold and resembling the sun or the moon in its efflulgence. And other Kshatriya warriors also raised on their respetcive cars gold-decked standards of various shapes and devices. And king Matsya then addressed his brother Satānika born immediately after him, saying,—'Kanka and Vallava and Tantripāla and Dāmagranthi of great energy will, as it appears to me, fight, without doubt. Give thou unto them cars furnished with banners and penons and let them case their persons in beautiful coats of mail that should be both invulnerable and easy to wear. And let them also have weapons. Bearing such martial forms and possessed of arms resembling the trunks of mighty elephants, I can never persuade myself that they cannot fight.' Hearing these words of the king, Satānika, O monarch, immediately ordered cars for those sons of Prithā, *viz.*,—the royal Yudhishthira, and Bhima, and Nakula, and Sahadeva. And commanded by the king, the charioteers, with cheerful hearts and keeping loyalty in view, very soon got cars ready (for the Pāndavas). And those repressers of foes then donned those beautiful coats of mail, invulnerable and easy to wear, that Virāta had ordered for those heroes of spotless fame. And mounted on cars yoked with good steeds, those smiters of hostile ranks, those foremost of men, the sons of Prithā, set out with cheerful hearts. Indeed, those mighty warriors skilled in fight, those bulls of the Kuru race and sons of Pāndu, those four heroic brothers possessed of prowess

* One of the generals of Virāta.—*T.*

incapable of being baffled, mounting on cars decked with gold, together set out, following Virāta's wake. And infuriate elephants of terrible mien, full sixty years of age, with shapely tusks and rent temples and juice trickling down and looking (on that account) like clouds pouring rain, and mounted by trained warriors skilled in fight, followed the king like unto moving hills. And the principal warriors of Matsya who cheerfully followed the king had eight thousand cars, a thousand elephants, and sixty thousand horses. And, O bull among the Bhāratas, that force of Virāta, O king, as it marched forth marking the footprints of the cattle looked exceedingly beautiful. And on its march that foremost of armies owned by Virāta, crowded with soldiers armed with strong weapons, and abounding in elephants, horses and cars, looked really splendid."

Thus ends the thirty-first Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XXXII.

(Go-hārana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Marching out of the city, those heroic smiters, the Matsyas, arrayed in order of battle, overtook the Trigartas when the sun had passed the meridian. And both excited to fury and both desirous of having the kine, the mighty Trigartas and the Matsyas, irrepressible in battle, sent up loud roars. And then the terrible and infuriate elephants ridden over by the skilful combatants of both sides, were urged on with spiked clubs and hooks. And the encounter, O king, that took place when the sun was low in horizon, between the infantry and cavalry and chariots and elephants of both parties, was, like unto that of old between the gods and the *Asuras*, terrible and fierce and capable of making one's hair stand on end and calculated to increase the population of Yama's kingdom. And as the combatants rushed against one another, smiting and slashing, thick clouds of dust began to rise, so that nothing could be discovered. And covered with the dust raised by the contending armies, birds began to drop down on the

earth. And the sun himself disappeared behind the thick cloud of arrows shot and the firmament looked bright as if with myriads of the fireflies. And shifting their bows, the staves of which were decked with gold, from one hand to another, those heroes began to strike each other down, discharging their arrows right and left. And cars encountered cars, and foot-soldiers fought with foot-soldiers, and horsemen, with horsemen, and elephants, with mighty elephants. And they furiously encountered one another with swords and axes and bearded darts and javelins and iron clubs. And although, O king, those mighty-armed warriors furiously assailed one another in that conflict, yet neither party succeeded in prevailing over the other. And severed heads, some with beautiful noses, some with upper lips deeply gashed, some decked with ear-rings, and some divided with wounds about the well-trimmed hair, were seen rolling on the ground covered with dust. And soon the field of battle was overspread with the limbs of Kshatriya warriors cut off by means of arrows and lying like trunks of *Sāla* trees. And scattered over with heads decked in ear-rings, and sandal-besmeared arms looking like the bodies of snakes, the field of battle became exceedingly beautiful. And as cars encountered cars, and horsemen encountered horsemen, and foot-soldiers engaged with foot-soldiers, and elephants met with elephants, the frightful dust soon became drenched with torrents of blood. And some amongst the combatants began to swoon away, and the warriors began to fight reckless of considerations of humanity, friendship, and relationship. And both their course and sight obstructed by the arrowy shower, vultures began to alight on the ground. But although those strong-armed combatants furiously faught with one another, yet the heroes of neither party succeeded in routing their antagonists. And Sātānika having slain a full hundred of the enemy and Viçālāksha full four hundred, both those mighty warriors penetrated into the heart of the great Trigarta host. And having entered into the thick of the Trigata host, those famous and mighty heroes began to deprive their antagonists of their senses by causing a closer conflict to set in—a conflict, that is, in which the combatants seized one another by the hair and tore one

another with their nails.* And eyeing the point where the cars of the Trigartas had been mustered in strong numbers, those heroes at last directed their attack towards it. And that foremost of car-warriors, king Virāta also, with Suryadatta in his van and Madirāksha in his rear, having destroyed in that conflict five hundred cars, eight hundred horses, and five warriors on great cars, displayed various skilful manœuvres on his car in that field of battle. And at last the king came upon the ruler of the Trigartas mounted on a golden chariot. And those high-souled and powerful warriors, desirous of fighting, rushed roaring against each other like two bulls in a cow-pen. Then that bull among men, irrepressible in battle, Suçarmān the king of the Trigartas, challenged Matsya to a single combat on cars. Then those warriors excited to fury rushed against each other on their cars and began to shower their arrows upon each other like clouds pouring torrents of rain.† And enraged with each other, those fierce warriors, both skilled in weapons, both wielding swords and darts and maces, then moved about (on the field of battle) assailing each other with whetted arrows. Then king Virāta pierced Suçarman with ten shafts and each of his four horses also with five shafts. And Suçarman also, irrepressible in battle and conversant with fatal weapons, pierced king Matsya with fifty whetted shafts. And then, O mighty monarch, in consequence of the dust on the field of battle, the soldiers of both Suçarmān and Matsya's king could not distinguish one another."

Thus ends the thirty-second Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

---

* Some differences of reading are noticeable here; for *Yaçaswinau* some texts read *Manaswinau*, and for *Vāhusamravdhau*-*Vāhusanrambhāt*; and for *Nakhā-nakhi—Rathā-rathi.—T.*

† Some texts read *Ghanâbiva* for *Ghanâiva*. The latter is unquestionably better in form.—*T.*

SECTION XXXIII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Then, O Bhārata, when the world was enveloped in dust and the gloom of night, the warriors of both sides, without breaking the order of battle, desisted for a while.* And then, dispelling the darkness, the moon arose illumining the night and gladdening the hearts of the Kshatriya warriors. And when everything became visible, the battle once more began. And it raged on so furiously that the combatants could not distinguish one another. And then Trigarta's lord, Suçarman, with his younger brother, and accompanied by all his cars, rushed towards the king of Matsya. And descending from their cars, those bulls among Kshatriyas, the (royal) brothers, mace in hand, rushed furiously towards the cars of the foe. And the hostile hosts fiercely assailed each other with maces and swords and scimitars and battle-axes and bearded darts, with keen edges and points of excellent temper. And the lord of the Trigartas, king Suçarman, having by his energy oppressed and defeated the whole army of the Matsyas, impetuously rushed towards Virāta himself endued with great energy. And the two brothers, having severally slain Virāta's two steeds and his charioteer, as also those soldiers that protected his rear, took him captive alive, when deprived of his car. And afflicting him sorely, like a lustful man afflicting a defenceless damsel, Suçarman placed Virāta on his own car, and speedily rushed out of the field. And when the powerful Virāta, deprived of his car, was taken captive, the Matsyas, harassed sorely by the Trigartas, began to fly in fear in all directions. And beholding them panic-stricken, Kunti's son Yudhishthira addressed that subduer of foes, the mighty-armed Bhima, saying,—'The king of the Matsyas hath been taken

---

* The word in the original is *Muhurta* equal to 48 minutes. Nilakantha points out very ingeniously that the night being the seventh of the dark fortnight, the moon would not rise till after 14 *Dandas* from the hour of sunset, a *Danda* being equal to 24 minutes. A *Murhurta*, therefore, implies, not 48 minutes exactly, but *some time.—T.*

by the Trigartas. Do thou, O mighty-armed one, rescue him, —so that he may not fall under the power of the enemy! As we have lived happily in Virāta's city, every desire of ours gratified, it behoveth thee, O Bhimasena, to discharge that debt (by liberating the king)!' Thereat Bhimasena replied,— 'I will liberate him, O king, at thy command! Mark the feat I achieve (today) in battling with the foe, relying solely on the might of my arms! Do thou, O king, stay aside, along with our brothers, and witness my prowess today! Uprooting this mighty tree of huge trunk looking like a mace, I will rout the foe.'"

Vaiçampāyana continued—"Beholding Bhima cast his eyes on that tree like a mad elephant, the heroic king Yudhishthira the just spake unto his brother, saying,—'Do not, O Bhima, commit such a rash act! Let the tree stand there. Thou must not achieve such feats in a super-human manner by means of that tree, for if thou dost, the people, O Bhārata, will recognise thee and say,—*This is Bhima!*—Take thou, therefore, some human weapon such as a bow (and arrows), or a dart, or a sword, or a battle-axe! And taking, therefore, O Bhima, some weapon that is human, liberate thou the king without giving anybody the means of knowing thee truly! The twins endued with great strength will defend thy wheels. Fighting together, O child, liberate the king of the Matsyas!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed, the mighty Bhimasena endued with great speed, quickly took up an excellent bow and impetuously shot from it a shower of arrows thick as the down-pour of a rain-charged cloud. And Bhima then rushed furiously towards Suçarman of terrible deeds, and addressing Virāta with the words—*O good king!**—said unto the lord of the Trigartas,—*Stay! Stay!*—And seeing Bhima like unto Yama himself in his rear, saying,—*Stay! Stay! Do thou witness this mighty feat,—this combat that is at hand!*—that bull among warriors, Suçarman, seriously

---

* *Sama Vikshyainam.* Nilakantha explains *Sama* as a word spoken by Bhima for assuring the captive Virāta, and *Vikshya* as "assuring" or "consoling by a glance." Perhaps, this is right.—*T.*

considered (the situation), and taking up his bow turned back, along with his brothers. Within the twinkling of an eye, Bhima destroyed those cars that sought to oppose him. And soon again hundreds of thousands of cars and elephants and horses and horsemen and brave and fierce bowmen were overthrown by Bhima in the very sight of Virāta. And the hostile infantry also began to be slaughtered by the illustrious Bhima mace in hand. And beholding that terrible onslaught, Suçarman, irrepressible in fight, thought within himself,—'My brother seems to have already succumbed in the midst of this mighty host! Is my army going to be annihilated?' And drawing his bow-string to his ear Suçarman then turned back and began to shoot keen-edged shafts incessantly. And seeing the Pandavas return to the charge on their cars, the Matsya warriors of that mighty host, urging on their steeds, shot excellent weapons for grinding the Trigarta soldiery. And Virāta's son also, exceedingly exasperated, began to perform prodigies of valor. And Kunti's son Yudhishthira slew a thousand (of the foe) and Bhima showed the abode of Yama unto seven thousand. And Nakula sent seven hundred (to their last account) by means of his shafts. And the powerful Sahadeva also, commanded by Yudhishthira, slew three hundred brave warriors. And having slain such numbers, that fierce and mighty warrior, Yudhishthira, with weapons upraised, rushed against Suçarman. And rushing impetuously at Suçarman, that foremost of car-warriors, king Yudhishthira, assailed him with vollies of shafts. And Suçarman also, in great rage, quickly pierced Yudhishthira with nine arrows, and each of his four steeds with four arrows. Then, O king, Kunti's son Bhima of quick movements, approaching Suçarman crushed his steeds. And having slain also those soldiers that protected his rear, he dragged from the car his antagonist's charioteer to the ground. And seeing the king of Trigarta's car without a driver, the defender of his car-wheels, the famous and brave Madirāksha speedily came to his aid. And thereat, leaping down from Suçarman's car, and securing the latter's mace, the powerful Virāta ran in pursuit of him. And though old, he moved on the field, mace in hand, even like a lusty youth. And beholding Suçarman fly, Bhima

addressed him, saying,—'Desist, O prince! This flight of thine is not proper! With this prowess of thine, how couldst thou wish to carry off the cattle by force? How also, forsaking thy followers, dost thou droop so amidst foes?' Thus addressed by Prithā's son, the mighty Suçarman, that lord of countless cars, saying unto Bhima,—'*Stay! Stay!*'—suddenly turned round and rushed at him. Then Bhima the son of Pāndu, leaping down from his car, as he alone could do,* rushed forward, with great coolness, desirous of taking Suçarman's life. And desirous of seizing Trigarta's king advancing towards him, the mighty Bhimasena rushed impetuously towards him, even like a lion rushing at a small deer. And advancing impetuously, the mighty-armed Bhima seized Suçarman by the hair, and lifting him up in wrath, dashed him down on the ground. And as he lay crying in agony, the mighty-armed Bhima kicked him at the head, and placing his knee on his breast dealt him severe blows. And sorely afflicted with that kicking, the king of Trigarta became senseless. And when the king of the Trigartas, deprived of his car, had thus been seized, the whole Trigarta army stricken with panic, broke and fled in all directions. And the mighty sons of Pāndu, endued with modesty and observant of vows and relying on the might of their own arms, after having vanquished Suçarman, and rescued the kine as well as other kinds of wealth, and having thus dispelled Virāta's anxiety, stood together before that monarch. And Bhimasena then said,—'This wretch given to wicked deeds doth not deserve to escape me with life. But what can I do? The king is so lenient!' And then taking Suçarman by the neck as he was lying on the ground insensible and covered with dust, and binding him fast, Prithā's son Vrikodara placed him on his car, and went to where Yudhishthira was staying in the midst of the field. And Bhima then showed Suçarman unto the monarch. And beholding Suçarman in that plight, that tiger among men, king Yudhishthira, smilingly addressed Bhi-

* The adjective *Bhima-sankācas* is explained by Nilakantha in this sense, quoting the celebrated simile of Vālmiki, "रामरावणयोर्युद्धं रामरावणयोरिव।"

ma—that ornament of battle,—saying,—'Let this worst of men be set free !' Thus addressed, Bhima spoke unto the mighty Suçarman, saying,—'If, O wretch, thou wishest to live, listen to these words of mine ! Thou must say in every court and assembly of men,—*I am a slave !* On this condition only I will grant thee thy life ! Verily, this is the law about the vanquished.'—Thereupon his elder brother affectionately addressed Bhima, saying,—'If thou regardest us as an authority, liberate this wicked wight ! He hath already become king Virāta's slave !' And turning then to Suçarman, he said,—'Thou art freed ! Go thou a free man, and never act again in this way !' "

Thus ends the thirty-third Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XXXIV.

(*Go-harana Parva continued.*)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Thus addressed by Yudhishthira, Suçarman was overwhelmed with shame and hung down his head. And liberated (from slavery), he went to king Virāta, and having saluted the monarch, took his departure. And the Pāndavas also, relying on the might of their own arms, and endued with modesty, and observant of vows, having slain their enemies and liberated Suçarman, passed that night happily on the field of battle. And Virāta gratified those mighty warriors, the sons of Kunti, possessed of super-human prowess, with wealth and honors. And Virāta said,—'All these gems of mine are now as much mine as yours. Do ye, according to your pleasure, live here happily. And ye smiters of foes in battle, I will bestow on you damsels decked with ornaments, wealth in plenty, and other things that ye may like ! Delivered from perils today by your prowess, I am now crowned with victory ! Do ye all become the lords of the Matsyas !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" And when the king of the Matsyas had addressed them thus, those descendants of the Kurus with Yudhishthira at their head, joining their hands, severally replied unto him, saying,—'We are well-pleased with

all that thou hast said, O monarch! We, however, have been much gratified that thou hast today been freed from thy foes!' Thus answered, that foremost of kings, Virāta the lord of the Matsyas, again addressed Yudhishthira, saying,—'Come! We will install thee in the sovereignty of the Matsyas. And we will also bestow on thee things that are rare on earth and are objects of desire, for thou deservest everything at our hands! O foremost of Brāhmanas of the *Vaiyāghra* order, I will bestow on thee gems and kine and gold and rubies and pearls. I bow unto thee! It is owing to thee that I once more behold today my sons and my kingdom! Afflicted and threatened as I had been with disaster and danger, it is through thy prowess that I have not succumbed to the foe!' Then Yudhishthira again addressed Matsya, saying,—'Well-pleased are we with the delightful words that thou hast spoken. Mayst thou be ever happy by always practising humanity towards all creatures! Let messengers now, at thy command, speedily repair into the city, in order to communicate the glad tidings to our friends, and proclaim thy victory!' Hearing these words of his, king Matsya ordered the messengers, saying,—'Do ye repair to the city and proclaim my victory in battle. And let damsels and courtezans, decked in ornaments, come out of the city with every kind of musical instruments.' Hearing this command uttered by king Matsya, the men, laying the mandate on their head, all departed with cheerful hearts. And having repaired to the city that very night, they proclaimed at the hour of sunrise the victory of the king about the city gates."

Thus ends the thirty-fourth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XXXV.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"When the king of the Matsyas, anxious of recovering the kine, had set out in pursuit of the Trigartas, Duryodhana with his counsellors invaded the dominions of Virāta. And Bhishma, and Drona, and Karna, and Kripa acquainted with the best of weapons, and Açwa-

thāman, and Suvala's son, and Dusçāsana, O lord of men, and Vivingçati, and Vikarna, and Chitrasena endued with great energy, and Durmukha, and Dussaha,—these and many other great warriors, coming upon the Matsyas, speedily drove off the cowherds of king Virāta, and forcibly took away the kine. And the Kauravas, surrounding all sides with a multitude of cars, seized sixty thousands of kine. And loud was the yell of woe set up by the cowherds smitten by those warriors in that terrible conflict. And the chief of the cowherds, greatly affrighted, speedily mounted on a chariot and set out for the city, bewailing in affliction. And entering the city of the king, he proceeded to the palace, and speedily alighting from the chariot, got in for relating (what had happened.) And beholding the proud son of Matsya, named Bhuminjaya, he told him everything about the seizure of the royal kine. And he said,—'The Kauravas are taking away sixty thousand kine. Rise, therefore, O enhancer of the kingdom's glory, for bringing back thy cattle! O prince, if thou art desirous of achieving (the kingdom's) good, set out thyself without loss of time! Indeed, the king of the Matsyas left thee in the empty city. The king (thy father) boasteth of thee in court, saying,—*My son, equal unto me, is a hero and is the supporter of (the glory of) my race! My son is a warrior skilled in arrows and weapons and always possessed of great courage!*—Oh, let the words of that lord of men be true! O chief of herd-owners, bring thou back the kine after vanquishing the Kurus, and consume thou their troops with the terrific energy of thy arrows! Do thou, like a leader of elephants rushing at a herd, pierce the ranks of the foe with straight arrows of golden wings, discharged from thy bow! Thy bow is even like a *Vinā*. Its two ends represent the ivory pillows; its string, the main chord; its staff, the finger-board; and the arrows shot from it, musical notes. Do thou strike in the midst of the foe that *Vinā* of masculine sound.* Let thy steeds, O lord, of silvery hue,

* To understand the comparison would require in the reader a knowledge of the mechanism of the Indian *Vinā*. Briefly, the *Vinā* consists of a bamboo of about 3 cubits attached to two gourds towards its ends.

be yoked unto thy car, and let thy standard be hoisted, bearing the emblem of the golden lion. Let thy keen-edged arrows endued with wings of gold, shot by thy strong arms, obstruct the path of those kings and eclipse the very sun ! Vanquishing all the Kurus in battle like unto the wielder of the thunder-bolt defeating the *Asuras*, return thou again to the city, having achieved great renown ! Son of Matsya's king, thou art the sole refuge of this kingdom, as that foremost of victorious warriors, Arjuna, is of the sons of Pāndu ! Even like Arjuna of his brothers, thou art, without doubt, the refuge of those dwelling within these dominions ! Indeed, we, the subjects of this realm, have our protector in thee !' "

Vaicampāyana continued.—" Thus addressed by the cowherd in the presence of females, in words breathing courage, the prince indulging in self-commendation within the female apartments, spoke these words."

Thus ends the thirty-fifth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XXXVI.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

"Uttara said,—'Firm as I am in the use of the bow, I would set out this very day in the track of the kine if only some one skilled in the management of horses became my charioteer. I do not, however, know the man who may be my charioteer ! Look ye, therefore, without delay, for a charioteer fit for me that am prepared for starting. My own charioteer was slain in the great battle that was fought from day to day for a whole month or at least for eight and twenty nights. As soon as I get another person conversant with the management of steeds, I will immediately set out, hoisting high my own

---

Along the bamboo which serves the purpose of a finger-board, is a main chord and several thinner wires. All these pass over a number of frets, two and a half heptachords, representing the total compass of the instrument. The wires rest towards their ends on two pieces of ivory called *Upādhānas* in Sanskrit or *Swāris* in Urdu.—*T.*

standard. Penetrating into the midst of the hostile army abounding with elephants and horses and chariots, I will bring back the kine, having vanquished the Kurus who are feeble in strength and weak in weapons. Like a second wielder of the thunder-bolt terrifying the Dānavas, I will bring back the kine this very moment, affrighting in battle Duryodhana and Bhishma and Karna and Kripa and Drona with his son, and other mighty-bowmen assembled for fight. Finding none (to oppose), the Kurus are taking away the kine. What can I do when I am not there ? The assembled Kurus shall witness my prowess today. And they shall say unto one another,—'Is it Arjuna himself who is opposing us ?' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having heard these words spoken by the prince, Arjuna, fully acquainted with the import of everything, after a little while cheerfully spake in private unto his dear wife of faultless beauty, Krishnā the princess of Pānchāla,—Drupada's daughter of slender make sprung from the (sacrificial) fire and endued with the virtues of truthfulness and honesty and ever attentive to the good of her husbands. And the hero said,—'Do thou, O beauteous one, at my request say unto Uttara without delay,—*this Vrihannalā was formerly the accomplished and resolute charioteer of Pāndu's son (Arjuna). Tried in many a great battle, even he will be thy charioteer !*' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words uttered by the prince over and over again in the midst of the women, Pānchāli could not quietly bear those allusions to Vibhatsu. And bashfully stepping out from among the women, the poor princess of Pānchāla gently spake unto him these words,—'The handsome youth, looking like a mighty elephant, and known by the name of Vrihannalā, was formerly the charioteer of Arjuna. A disciple of that illustrious warrior, and inferior to none in use of the bow, he was known to me while I was living with the Pāndavas. It was by him that the reins were held of Arjuna's excellent steeds when Agni consumed the forest of Khāndava. It was with him as charioteer that Pārtha conquered all creatures at Khāndavaprastha. In fact, there is no charioteer equal unto him.'

"Uttara said,—'Thou knowest, O *Sairindhri*, this youth. Thou knowest what this one of the neuter sex may or may not be. I cannot, however, O blessed one, myself request Vrihannalā to hold the reins of my horses !'

"Draupadi said,—'Vrihannalā, O hero, will, without doubt, obey the words of thy younger sister*—that damsel of graceful hips ! If he consent to be thy charioteer, thou wilt, without doubt, return, having vanquished the Kurus and rescued thy kine !'

" Thus addressed by the *Sairindhri*, Uttara spake unto his sister,—'Go thyself, O thou of faultless beauty, and bring Vrihannalā hither !' And despatched by her brother, she hastily repaired to the dancing-hall where that strong-armed son of Pāndu was staying in disguise !' "

Thus ends the thirty-sixth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XXXVII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Thus despatched by her elder brother, the far-famed daughter of king Matsya, adorned with a golden necklace, ever obedient to her brother, and possessed of a waist slender as that of the wasp,† endued with the splendour of Lakhsmi herself,‡ decked with the plumes of the peacock, of slender make and graceful limbs, her hips encircled by a zone of

---

* Some read *kaniasi* for *yaviasi*. Both words are the same, and mean the same thing.—*T.*

† *Vedi-vilagna-madhyā.*—*Vedi* in this connection means a wasp and not, as explained by Mallinātha in his commentary on the *Kumār Sambhava*, a sacrificial platform. I would remark *en passim* that many of the most poetic and striking adjectives in both the *Raghu* and the *Kumāra* of Kālidāsa are borrowed unblushingly from the *Rāmāyana* and the *Mahābhārata.*—*T.*

‡ *Padma-patrābha-nibhā* may also mean—"of the splendour of the gem called *Marakata.*" Nilakantha, however, shows that this would militate against the adjective *Kanakojwalatwacham* below.—*T.*

pearls, her eye-lashes slightly curved, and her form endued with every grace, hastily repaired to the dancing-hall, like a flash of lightning rushing towards a mass of dark clouds.* And the faultless and auspicious daughter of Virāta, of fine teeth and slender waist, of thighs close unto each other and each like the trunk of an elephant, her person embellished with an excellent garland, sought the son of Prithā like a she-elephant seeking her mate. And like unto a precious gem or the very embodiment of the prosperity of Indra, of exceeding beauty and large eyes, that charming and adored and celebrated damsel saluted Arjuna. And saluted by her, Pārtha asked that maiden of close thighs and golden complexion, saying,—'What brings thee hither, O damsel decked in a necklace of gold! Why art thou in such a hurry, O gazelle-eyed maiden! Why is thy face, O beauteous lady, so cheerless? Tell me all this without delay!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Beholding, O king, his friend, the princess of large eyes (in that plight), her friend (Arjuna) cheerfully enquired of her (in these words) the cause of her arrival there and then. And having approached that bull among men, the princess, standing in the midst of her female attendants, and displaying proper modesty,† addressed him, saying,—'The kine of this realm, O Vrihannalā, are being driven away by the Kurus, and it is to conquer them that my brother will set out bow in hand! Not long ago his own charioteer was slain in battle, and there is none equal unto the one slain that can act as my brother's charioteer! And unto him striving to obtain a charioteer, *Sairindhri*, O Vrihannalā, hath spoken about thy skill in the management of steeds. Thou wert formerly the favorite charioteer of Arjuna, and it was with

---

* The princess being of the complexion of burnished gold and Arjuna dark as a mass of clouds, the comparison is exceedingly appropriate. The Vaishnava poets of Bengal never tire of this simile in speaking of Rādhā and Krishna in the groves of Vrindāvana.—*T.*

† The word in the original is *pranayam*, lit. *love*. Nilakantha, however, explains it as meaning *modesty*, *humility*. I think Nilakantha is right. The relations between Arjuna and the princess were like those between father and daughter.—*T.*

thee that that bull among the sons of Pāndu had alone subjugated the whole earth! Do thou, therefore, O Vrihannalā, act as the charioteer of my brother! (By this time) our kine have surely been driven away by the Kurus to a great distance. Requested by me if thou dost not act up to my words, I, who am asking this service of thee out of affection, will give up my life!' Thus addressed by his friend of graceful hips, that oppressor of foes, endued with immeasurable prowess, went into the prince's presence. And like unto a she-elephant running after her young one, the princess possessed of large eyes followed that hero advancing with hasty steps like unto an elephant with rent temples. And beholding him from a distance, the prince himself said,—'With thee as his charioteer, Dhananjaya the son of Kunti had gratified *Agni* at the Khāndava forest and subjugated the whole world! The *Sairindhri* hath spoken of thee to me. She knoweth the Pāndavas. Do thou, therefore, O Vrihannalā, hold, as thou didst, the reins of my steeds, desirous as I am of fighting with the Kurus and rescuing my vaccine wealth! Thou wert formerly the beloved charioteer of Arjuna, and it was with thee that that bull among the sons of Pāndu had alone subjugated the whole earth!' Thus addressed, Vrihannalā replied unto the prince, saying,—'What ability have I to act as a charioteer in the field of battle? If it is song or dance or musical instruments or such other things, I can entertain thee therewith, but where is my skill for becoming a charioteer?'

"Uttara said,—'O Vrihannalā, be thou a singer or a dancer, hold thou (for the present), without loss of time, the reins of my excellent steeds, mounting upon my car!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Although that oppressor of foes, the son of Pāndu, was acquainted with everything, yet in the presence of Uttarā, he began to make many mistakes for the sake of fun. And when he sought to put the coat of mail on his body by raising it upwards, the large-eyed maidens, beholding it, burst out into a loud laughter. And seeing him quite ignorant of putting on armour, Uttara himself equipped Vrihannalā with a costly coat of mail. And casing his own person in an excellent armour of solar effulgence, and hoisting his standard bear-

ing the figure of a lion, the prince caused Vrihannalā to become his charioteer. And with Vrihannalā to hold his reins, the hero set out, taking with him many costly bows and a large number of beautiful arrows. And his friend Uttarā and her maidens then said unto Vrihannalā,—'Do thou, O Vrihannalā, bring for our dolls, (when thou comest back) various kinds of good and fine cloths after vanquishing the Kurus assembled for battle and of whom Bhishma and Drona are the foremost!' Thus addressed, Pārtha the son of Pāndu, in a voice deep as the roar of the clouds, smilingly said unto that bevy of fair maidens,—'If this Uttara can vanquish those mighty warriors in battle, I will certainly bring excellent and beautiful cloths!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said these words, the heroic Arjuna urged the steeds towards the Kuru army over which floated innumerrable flags. Just, however, as they were starting, elderly dames and maidens, and Brāhmanas of rigid vows, beholding Uttara seated on his excellent car with Vrihannalā as charioteer and under that great banner hosited on high, walked round the car to bless the hero. And the women said,—'Let the victory that Arjuna treading like a bull had achieved of old on the occasion of burning the forest of Khāndava, be thine, O Vrihannalā, when thou encounterest the Kurus today with prince Uttara by thee!' "

Thus ends the thirty-seventh Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XXXVIII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having issued forth from the city, the dauntless son of Virāta addressed his charioteer, saying,—'Proceed whither the Kurus are! Defeating the assembled Kurus who have come hither from desire of victory, and quickly rescuing my kine from them, I will return to the capital!' At these words of the prince, the son of Pāndu urged those excellent steeds. And endued with the speed of the wind and decked with necklaces of gold, those steeds, urged by that lion among men, seemed to fly through the air. And they

had not proceeded far when those smiters of foes, Dhananjaya and the son of Matsya, sighted the army of the powerful Kurus. And proceeding towards the cemetery, they came upon the Kurus and beheld their army arrayed in order of battle.* And that large army of theirs looked like the vasty sea or a forest of innumerable trees moving through the sky. And then was seen, O best among the Kurus, the dust raised by that moving army which reached the sky and obstructed the sight of all creatures. And beholding that mighty host abounding in elephants, horses and chariots, and protected by Karna and Duryodhana and Kripa and Cāntanu's son, and that intelligent and great bowman Drona, with his son (Açwathāman), the son of Virāta, agitated with fear and the bristles on his body standing on their ends, thus spake unto Pārtha,—'I dare not fight with the Kurus. See, the bristles on my body have stood on their ends! I am incapable of battling with this countless host of the Kurus, abounding with heroic warriors, that are extremely fierce and difficult of being vanquished even by the celestials! I do not venture to penet rate into the army of the Bhāratas consisting of terrible bowmen and abounding in horses and elephants and cars and foot-sol diers and banners. My mind is too much perturbed by the very sight of the foe on the field of battle on which stand Drona and Bhishma, and Kripa, and Karna, and Vivingçati, and Açwathāman and Vikarna, and Saumadatti, and Vāllika, and the heroic king Duryodhana also—that foremost of car-warriors, and many other splendid bowmen, all skilled in battle! My bristles have stood on their ends and I am fainting with fear at the very sight of these smiters,—the Kurus arrayed in order of battle!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"And the low-minded and foolish Uttara, out of folly alone, began to bewail (his fate) in the presence of the high-spirited (Arjuna) disguised (as his

---

* This *sloka* is not correctly printed in any of the texts that I have seen. The Burdwan Pundits read *tat-samipe* for *tat-çamim*, This, I think, is correct, but then *äsasäda* in the singular when the other verbs are all dual seems to be incorrect. The poet must have used some other verb in the dual for *äsasäda*.—*T.*

charioteer), in these words,—'My father hath gone out to meet the Trigartas taking with him his whole army, leaving me in the empty city. There are no troops to assist me ! Alone and a mere boy who hath not undergone much exercise in arms, I am unable to encounter these innumerable warriors all skilled in weapons ! Do thou, therefore, O Vrihannalā, cease to advance !' '

"Vrihannalā said,—'Why dost thou look so pale through fear and enhance the joy of thy foes ? As yet thou hast done nothing on the field of battle with the enemy ! It was thou that hadst ordered me, saying,—*Take me towards the Kauravas !* I will, therefore, take thee thither where those innumerable flags are ! I will certainly take thee, O mighty-armed one, into the midst of the hostile Kurus, prepared to fight as they are for the kine like hawks for meat. I would do this even if I regarded them to have come hither for battling for a much higher stake such as the sovereignty of the earth ! Having, at the time of setting out, talked before both men and women so highly of thy manliness, why wouldst thou desist from the fight ? If thou shouldst return home without recapturing the kine, brave men and even women, when they meet together, will laugh at thee (in derision) ! As regards myself, I cannot return to the city without having rescued the kine, applauded as I have been so highly by the *Sairindhri* in respect of my skill in driving cars ! It is for those praises by the *Sairindhri* and for those words of thine also (that I have come) ! Why should *I* not, therefore, give battle to the Kurus ! (As regards thyself), be thou still !' "

"Uttara said,—'Let the Kurus rob the Matsyas of all their wealth ! Let men and women, O Vrihannalā, laugh at me ! Let my kine perish, let the city be a desert ! Let me stand afeared before my father ! Still there is no need of a battle !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Saying this, that much affrighted prince decked in ear-rings jumped down from his car, and throwing down his bow and arrows began to flee, sacrificing honor and pride. Vrihannalā, however, exclaimed,—'This is not the practice of the brave, this flight of a Kshatriya from the field of battle ! Even death in battle is better than flight from fear !'—Having said this, Dhananjaya the son of

Kunti, coming down from that excellent car, ran after that prince thus running away, his own long braid and pure red garments fluttering in the air. And some soldiers, not knowing that it was Arjuna who was thus running with his braid fluttering in the air, burst out into laughter at the sight. And beholding him thus running, the Kurus began to argue,—'Who is this person, thus disguised like fire concealed in ashes? He is partly a man and partly a woman. Although bearing a neuter form, he yet resembleth Arjuna! His are the same head and neck, and his the same arms so like unto a couple of maces! And this one's gait also is like unto his! He can be none else than Dhananjaya! Like *Indra* among the celestials, is Dhananjaya among men! Who else in this world, than Dhananjaya, would alone come against us? Virāta left a single son of his in the empty city. He hath come out from childishness and not from true heroism. It is Uttara who must have come out of the city, having, without doubt, made as his charioteer Arjuna the son of Prithā, now living in disguise! It seems that he is now flying away in panic at sight of our army. And without doubt, Dhananjaya runneth after him to bring him back!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Beholding the disguised son of Pāndu, the Kauravas, O Bhārata, began to indulge in these surmises, but they could not come to any definite conclusion. Meanwhile, Dhananjaya, hastily pursuing the retreating Uttara, seized him by the hair within a hundred steps. And seized by Arjuna, the son of Virāta began to lament most woefuly like one in great affliction, and said,—'Listen, O good Vrihannalā, O thou of handsome waist! Turn thou quickly the course of the car! He that liveth meeteth with prosperity! I will give thee a hundred coins of pure gold, and eight *lapis lazuli* of great brightness, set with gold, and one chariot furnished with a golden flagstaff and drawn by excellent steeds, and also ten elephants of infuriate prowess. Do thou, O Vrihannalā, set me free!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed, that tiger among men laughingly dragged Uttara towards the car who was almost deprived of his senses and who was uttering these words of lamentation. And the son of Prithā then addressed

the affrighted prince who had nearly lost his senses, saying,—'If, O chastiser of foes, thou dost not venture to fight with the enemy, come thou and hold the reins of the steeds as I fight with the foe! Protected by the might of my arms, penetrate thou yon formidable and invincible array of cars guarded by heroic and mighty warriors. Fear not, O chastiser of foes, thou art a *Kshatriya* and the foremost of royal princes! Why dost thou, O tiger among men, succumb in the midst of the foe? I shall surely fight with the Kurus and recover thy kine, penetrating into this formidable and inaccessible array of cars. Be thou my charioteer, O best of men, *I* will fight with the Kurus!' Thus speaking unto Uttara the son of Virāta, Vibhatsu, heretofore unconquered in battle, for a while comforted him. And then the son of Prithā, that foremost of smiters, raised on the car that fainting and reluctant prince stricken with fear!"

Thus ends the thirty-eighth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XXXIX.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Beholding that bull among men seated on the car in the habit of a person of the third sex, driving towards the *Çami* tree, having taken (the flying) Uttara up, all the great car-warriors of the Kurus with Bhishma and Drona at their head, became affrighted at heart, suspecting the comer to be Dhananjaya. And seeing them so dispirited, and marking also the many wonderful portents, that foremost of all wielders of arms, the preceptor Drona, son of Bharadwāja, said, —'Violent and hot are the winds that blow, showering gravels in profusion! The sky also is overcast with a gloom of ashy hue! The clouds present the strange sight of being dry and waterless. Our weapons also of various kinds are coming out of their cases. The jackals are yelling hideously affrighted at the conflagrations on all sides.* The horses too are shedding tears,

* Some texts read *Diptāsya* for *Diptāyām.—T.*

and our banners are trembling though moved by none. Such being the inauspicious indications seen, a great danger is at hand! Stay ye with vigilance! Protect ye your own selves and array the troops in order of battle! Stand ye, expecting a terrible slaughter, and guard ye well the kine! This mighty bowman, this foremost of all wielders of weapons, this hero that hath come in the habit of a person of the third sex, is the son of Prithā! There is no doubt of this.' Then addressing Bhishma, the preceptor continued,—'O offspring of a river, apparelled as a woman, this is *Kiriti*, called after a tree, the son of the enemy of the mountains, and having on his banner the sign of the devastator of the gardens of Lankā's lord! Vanquishing us, he will surely take away the kine today!* This chastiser of foes is the valiant son of Prithā surnamed *Savyasāchin*. He doth not desist from conflict even with the gods and demons combined. Put to great hardship in the forest he cometh in wrath. Taught by even Indra himself, he is like unto Indra in battle! Therefore, ye Kauravas, I do not see any one here who can withstand him! It is said that the lord *Mahādeva* himself, disguised in the attire of a hunter, was gratified by this son of Prithā in battle on the mountains of Himavat.' Hearing these words, Karna said,—'You always censure us by speaking of the virtues of *Fālguna*. Arjuna, however, is not equal to even a full sixteenth part of myself or of Duryodhana!' And Duryodhana said,—'If this be

---

* This *sloka* does not occur in every text. This is a typical illustration of the round-about way, frequently adopted by Sanskrit writers, of expressing a simple truth. The excuse in the present instance consists in Drona's unwillingness to identify the solitary hero with Arjuna, in the midst of all his hearers. *Nadija* is an exclamation referring to Bhishma, the son of the river *Gangâ*. *Lankeça-vanäri-ketu* is simply "ape-bannered," or, as rendered in the text, "having the devastator of the gardens of Lanka's lord for the sign of his banner." *Nagâhvaya* is "named after a tree," for Arjuna is the name of an Indian tree. *Nagâri-sunu* is "Indra's son,"—Indra being the foe of mountains, for formerly it was he who cut off the wings of all mountains and compelled them to be stationary. He failed only in the case of Mainăka the son of Himavat.—*T.*

Pārtha, O Rādheya, then my purpose hath already been fulfilled, for then, O king, if traced out, the Pāndavas shall have to wander for twelve years again ! Or, if this one be any other person in a eunuch's garb, I will soon prostrate him on the earth with keen-edged arrows.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"The son of Dhritarāshtra, O chastiser of foes, having said this, Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and Drona's son, all applauded his manliness ! "

Thus ends the thirty-ninth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XL.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having reached that *Sami* tree, and having ascertained Virāta's son to be exceedingly delicate and inexperienced in battle, Pārtha addressed him, saying,—'Enjoined by me, O Uttara, quickly take down (from this tree) some bows that are there ! For these bows of thine are unable to bear my strength, my heavy weight when I shall grind down horses and elephants, and the stretch of my arms when I seek to vanquish the foe ! Therefore, O Bhuminjaya, climb thou up this tree of thick foliage, for in this tree are tied the bows and arrows and banners and excellent coats of mail of the heroic sons of Pāndu, *viz*, Yudhishthira and Bhima and Vibhatsu and the twins ! There also is that bow of great energy, the *Gāndiva* of Arjuna, which singly is equal to many thousands of other bows and which is capable of extending the limits of a kingdom. Large like a palmyra tree, able to bear the greatest stress, the largest of all weapons, capable of obstructing the foe, handsome, and smooth, and broad, without a knot, and adorned with gold, it is stiff and beautiful in make and beareth the heaviest weight ! And the other bows also that are there, of Yudhisthira and Bhima and Vibhatsu and the twins, are equally mighty and tough !' "

Thus ends the fortieth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XLI.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

"Uttara said,—'It hath been heard by us that a corpse is tied in this tree! How can I, therefore, being a prince by birth, touch it with my hands? Born in the *Kshatriya* order, and the son of a great king, and always observant of *mantras* and vows, it is not becoming in me to touch it! Why shouldst thou, O Vrihannalā, make me a polluted and unclean bearer of corpses, by compelling me to come in contact with a corpse?'

"Vrihannalā said,—'Thou shalt, O king of kings, remain clean and unpolluted! Do not fear: there are only bows in this tree and not corpses! Heir to the king of the Matsyas, and born in a noble family, why should I, O prince, make thee do such a reproachable deed?'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Thus addressed by Pārtha, Virāta's son, decked in ear-rings, alighted from the car, and climbed up that *Sami* tree reluctantly. And staying on the car, Dhananjaya, that slayer of enemies, said unto him,—'Speedily bring thou down those bows from the top of the tree!' And cutting off their wrappings first and then the ropes with which they were tied, the prince beheld the *Gāndiva* there along with four other bows. And as they were untied, the splendour of those bows radiant as the sun, began to shine with great effulgence like unto that of the planets about the time of their rising. And beholding the forms of those bows, so like unto sighing snakes, he became afflicted with fear and in a moment the bristles of his body stood on their ends. And touching those large bows of great splendour, Virāta's son, O king, thus spake unto Arjuna!'"

Thus ends the forty-first Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XLII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

"Uttara said,—'To what warrior of fame doth this excellent bow belong, on which are a hundred golden bosses and which hath such radiant ends? Whose is this excellent bow of good sides and easy hold, on the staff of which shine golden elephants of such brightness? Whose is this excellent bow, adorned with three scores of *Indragopakas** of pure gold, placed on the back of the staff at proper intervals? Whose is this excellent bow, furnished with three golden suns of great effulgence, blazing forth with such brilliancy? Whose is this beautiful bow which is variegated with gold and gems, and on which are golden insects set with beautiful stones? Whose are these arrows furnished with wings around, numbering a thousand, having golden heads, and cased in golden quivers? Who owneth these large shafts, so thick, furnished with vulturine wings, whetted on stone, yellowish in hue, sharp-pointed, well-tempered, and entirely made of iron? Whose is this sable quiver† bearing five images of tigers, which holdeth shafts intermined with boar-eared arrows altogether numbering ten? Whose are these seven hundred arrows, long and thick, capable of drinking (the enemy's) blood, and looking like the crescent-shaped moon?‡ Whose are these gold-crested arrows, whetted on stone, the lower halves of which are well-furnished with wings of the hue of parrots' feathers, and the upper halves, of well-tempered steel?§ Whose is this excellent sword, irresistible, and terrible to adversaries, with the mark of a toad on it,

---

* Indian insects of a particular kind.—*T.*

† Most editions read *chàpas* which is evidently wrong. The correct reading is *âvàpas*, meaning quiver. The Bardwan Pandits give this latter reading.—*T.*

‡ Some texts read *chandrârgha-darçanàs.* The correct reading is *chandrârdha-darçanàs.*—*T.*

§ Most editions read *hema-punkha* and *çilaçita* in the instrumental plural: the correct reading is their nominative plural forms.—*T.*

and pointed like a toad's head ?* Cased in a variegated sheath of tiger-skin, whose is this large sword of excellent blade and variegated with gold and furnished with tinkling bells ? Whose is this handsome scimitar of polished blade and golden hilt ? Manufactured in the country of the *Nishadhas*, irresistible, incapable of being broken, whose is this sword of polished blade cased in a scabbard of cow-skin ? Whose is this beautiful and long sword, sable in hue as the sky, mounted with gold, well-tempered, and cased in a shealth of goat-skin ? Who owneth this heavy, well-tempered, and broad sword, just longer than the breadth of thirty fingers, polished by constant clash with others' weapons, and kept in a case of gold, bright as fire ? Whose is this beautiful scimitar of sable blade, covered with golden bosses, capable of cutting through the bodies of adversaries, whose touch is as fatal as that of a venomous snake, which is irresistible and exciteth the terror of foes! Asked by me, O Vrihannalā, do thou answer me truly! Great is my wonder at the sight of all these excellent objects!' "

Thus ends the forty-second Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XLIII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

"Vrihannalā said,—'That about which thou hast first enquired is Arjuna's bow, of world-wide fame, called *Gāndiva*, capable of devastating hostile hosts. Embellished with gold, this *Gāndiva*, the highest and largest of all weapons, belonged to Arjuna. Alone equal unto a hundred thousand weapons, and always capable of extending the confines of kingdoms, it is with this that Pārtha vanquisheth in battle both men and celestials. Worshipped by the gods, the *Dānavas*, and the *Gandharvas*, for ever and ever, and variegated with excellent colors, this large and smooth bow is without a knot or stain anywhere. Brahmā, held it first for a thousand years. Afterwards Prajāpati held it

---

* *Sâyaka* means here, as explained by Nilkantha, a sword, and not a shaft.—*T.*

for five hundred and three years. After that, Cakra, for five and eighty years. And then Soma held it for five hundred years. And after that, *Varuna* held it for a hundred years. And finally Pārtha, surnamed *Çwetavāhana*,* hath held it for five and sixty years.† Endued with great energy and of high celestial origin, this is the best of all bows. Adored among gods and men, it hath a handsome form. Pārtha obtained this beautiful bow from Varuna. This other bow of handsome sides and golden handle is Bhima's, with which that son of Prithā, that charstiser of foes, had conquered the whole of the eastern regions. This other excellent bow of beautiful shape, adorned with images of *Indragopakas*, belongeth, O Virāta's son, to king Yudhishthira! This other weapon with golden suns of blazing splendour shedding a dazzling effulgence around, belongeth to Nakula. And this bow adorned with golden images of insects and set also with gems and stones, belongeth to that son of Mādri who is called Sahadeva. These winged arrows, thousand in number, sharp as razors and destructive as the poison of snakes, belong, O Virāta's son, to Arjuna! When shooting them in battle against foes, these swift arrows blaze forth more brilliantly and become inexhaustible! And these long and thick shafts resembling the lunar crescent in shape, keen-edged and capable of thinning the enemy's ranks, belong to Bhima. And this quiver bearing five images of tigers, full of yellowish shafts whetted on stone and furnished with golden wings, belongs to Nakula. This is that quiver of the intelligent son of Mādri, with which he had conquered in battle the whole of the western regions. And these arrows, all effulgent as the sun, painted all over with various colors, and capable of destroying enemies by thousands, are those of Sahadeva. And these short and well-tempered and thick shafts, furnished with long feathers and golden heads, and consisting of three knots, belong to king Yudhishthira. And this

---

* From the color of his steeds.—*T.*

† Nilakantha spends much learning and ingennuity in making out that sixty five years in this connection means thirty-two years of ordinary human computation.—*T.*

sword with blade long and carved with the image of a toad and head shaped as a toad's mouth, strong and irresistible, belongeth to Arjuna. Cased in a sheath of tiger-skin, of long blade, handsome and irresistible, and terrible to adversaries, this sword belongeth to Bhimasena. Of excellent blade and cased in a well-painted sheath, and furnished with a golden hilt, this handsome sword belongeth to the wise Kaurava—Yudhishthira the just. And this sword of strong blade, irresistible and intended for various excellent modes of fight and cased in a sheath of goat-skin, belongeth to Nakula. And this huge scrimitar, cased in a sheath of cow-skin, strong and irresistible, belongeth to Sahadeva.' "

Thus ends the forty-third Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XLIV.

(*Go-harana Parva continued.*)

" Uttara said,—'Indeed, these weapons adorned with gold, belonging to the light-handed and high-souled Pārthas, look exceedingly beautiful ! But where are that Arjuna the son of Prithā, and Yudhishthira of the Kuru race, and Nakula and Sāhadeva, and Bhima-sena, the son of Pāndu ? Having lost their kingdom at dice, the high-souled Pāndavas, capable of destroying all foes, are no longer heard of. Where also is Draupadi, the princess of *Pānchāla,* famed as the gem among women, who followed the sons of Pāndu after their defeat at dice to the forest ?'

" Arjuna said,—'I am Arjuna, called also Pārtha. Thy father's courtier is Yudhishthira, and thy father's cook Vallava is Bhimasena, the groom of horses is Nakula, and Sahadeva is in the cow-pen. And know thou that the *Sairindhri* is Draupadi, for whose sake the Kichakas have been slain !'

" Uttara said,—'I would believe all this if thou canst enumerate the ten names of Pārtha, previously heard by me !'

" Arjuna said,—'I will, O son of Virāta, tell thee my ten names. Listen thou and compare them with what thou hadst heard before. Listen to them with close attention and

concentrated mind. They are *Arjuna, Fālguna, Jishnu, Kiritin, Çwetavāhana, Vibhatsu, Vijaya, Krishna, Savyasāchin*, and *Dhananjaya.*'

"Uttara said,—'Tell me truly why art thou called Vijaya, and why Cwetavāhana! Why art thou named Kiritin, and why Arjuna and Fālguna and Jishnu and Krishna and Vibhatsu, and for what art thou Dhananjaya! I have heard before about the origin of the several names of that hero, and can put faith in thy words if thou canst tell me all about them.'

"Arjuna said,—'They called me Dhananjaya because I lived in the midst of wealth, having subjugated all the countries and taking away their treasures. They called me Vijaya because when I go out to battle with invincible kings, I never return (from the field) without vanquishing them. I am called Cwetavāhana because when battling with the foe white horses decked in golden armour are always yoked unto my car. They call me Fālguna because I was born on the breast of the Himavat on a day when the constellation *Uttara Fālguna* was on the ascendant. I am named Kiritin from a diadem, resplendent like the sun, having been placed of old on my head by Indra during my encounter with the powerful *Dānavas.* I am known as Vibhatsu among gods and men for my never having committed a detestable deed on the battle-field. And since both of my hands are capable of drawing the *Gāndiva,* I am known as Savyasāchin among gods and men. They call me Arjuna because my complexion is very rare within the four boundaries of the earth and because also my acts are always stainless. I am known among human beings and celestials by the name of Jishnu, because I am unapproachable, incapable of being kept down, a tamer of adversaries and son of the slayer of Pāka. And Krishna, my tenth appellation, was given to me by my father, out of affection towards a black-skinned boy of great purity.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"The son of Virāta then, approaching nearer, saluted Pārtha and said,—'My name is Bhuminjaya, and I am also called Uttara. It is by good luck, O Pārtha, that I behold thee! Thou art welcome, O Dhananjaya! O thou with red eyes, and arms that are mighty and

each like unto the trunk of an elephant, it behoveth thee to pardon what I said unto thee from ignorance. And as wonderful and difficult have been the feats achieved by thee before, my fears have been dispelled, and indeed, the love I bear to thee is great!' "

Thus ends the forty-fourth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XLV.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

"Uttara said,—'O hero, mounting on this large car with myself as driver, which division of the (hostile) army wouldst thou penetrate? Commanded by thee, I would drive thee thither!'

"Arjuna said,—'I am pleased with thee, O tiger among men! Thou hast no cause of fear! I will rout all thy foes in battle, O great warrior! And, O thou of mighty arms, be at thy ease! Accomplishing great and terrible feats in the melee, I will fight with thy foes! Tie quickly all those quivers to my car, and take (from among those) a sword of polished blade and adorned with gold!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of Arjuna, Uttara cast off all inactivity. And he speedily alighted from the tree, bringing with him Arjuna's weapons. Then Arjuna addressed him, saying,—'Yes, I will fight with the Kurus and recover thy kine! Protected by me, the top of this car will be to thee as a citadel! The passages and alleys and other divisions of this car will be the streets and edifices of that fortified city. These my arms will be its ramparts and gate-ways. This treble pole and this my quiver will constitute defensive works inaccessible to the foe. This my banner—single and grand—will it not alone be equal unto those of thy city? This my bowstring will constitute the catapults and cannon for vomiting forth missiles on the besieging host. My exited wrath will make that fortress formidable, and the clatter of my car-wheels—will it not resemble the kettle-drums of thy capital? Ridden by myself wielding the *Gāndiva*, this

car will be incapable of being vanquished by the hostile host. O son of Virāta, let thy fear be dispelled !' "

"Uttara said,—'I am no longer afraid of these. I know thy steadiness in battle, which is even like unto that of Keçava or Indra himself! But reflecting on this, I am continually bewildered! Foolish as I am, I am incapable of arriving at a certain conclusion! By what distressful circumstances could *a person of such handsome limbs and auspicious signs become deprived of manhood*! Indeed, thou seemest to me to be Mahādeva, or Indra, or the chief of the Gandharvas, dwelling in the guise only of one of the third sex!' "

"Arjuna said,—'I tell thee truly that I am only observing this vow for a whole year agreeably to the behest of my elder brother. O thou of mighty arms, I am not truly one of the neuter sex, but I have adopted this vow of eunuchism from subservience to another's will and from desire of religious merit! O prince, know me now to have completed my vow!'

"Uttara said,—'Thou hast conferred a great favor on me today, for I now find that my suspicion was not altogether unfounded! Indeed, such a person as thou, O best of men, cannot be of the neuter sex! I have now an ally in battle! I can now fight with the celestials themselves! My fears have been dispelled. What shall I do? Command me now! Trained in driving cars by a learned preceptor I will, O bull among men, hold the reins of thy horses that are capable of breaking the ranks of hostile cars! Know me, O bull among men, to be as competent a charioteer as Dāruka of Vāsudeva, or Mātali of Cakra. The horse that is yoked unto the right-hand pole (of thy car) and whose hoofs as they light on the ground are scarcely visible when running, is like unto *Sugriva* of Krishna. This other handsome horse, the foremost of his race, that is yoked unto the left pole, is, I regard, equal in speed to *Meghapushpa*. This (third) beautiful horse, clad in golden mail, yoked unto the rear-pole on the left, is, I regard, *Saivya's* equal in speed but superior in strength. And this (fourth) horse, yoked to the rear-pole on the right, is regarded as superior to *Valāhaka* in both speed and strength. This car is worthy of bearing on the field of battle a bowman like thee,

and thou also art worthy of fighting on this car! This is what I think!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then Arjuna, endued with great energy, took off the bracelets from his arms and wore on his hands a pair of beautiful gloves embroidered with gold. And he then tied his black and curling locks with a piece of white cloth. And seated on that excellent car with face turned to the east, the mighty-armed hero, purifying his body and concentrating his soul, recalled to his mind all his weapons. And all the weapons came, and addressing the royal son of Prithā, said,—'We are here, O illustrious one! We are thy servants, O son of Indra! And bowing down unto them, Pārtha received them into his hands and replied unto them, saying,—'Dwell ye all in my memory!'—And obtaining all his weapons, the hero looked cheerful. And quickly stringing his bow, the *Gāndiva*, he twanged it. And the twang of that bow was as loud as the collision of two mighty hills. And dreadful was the sound that filled the earth, and violent was the wind that blew on all sides. And thick was the shower of fallen meteors* and all sides were envoloped in gloom. And the birds began to totter in the skies, and large trees began to shake. † And loud as the burst of the thunder, the Kurus knew from that sound that it was Arjuna that drew with his hands the string of his best of bows from his car. And Uttara said,—'Thou, O best of Pāndavas, art alone! These mighty car-warriors are many! How wilt thou vanquish in battle all these that are skilled in every kind of weapons? Thou, O son of Kunti, art without a follower, while the Kauravas have many! It is for this, O thou of mighty arms, that I stay beside thee, stricken with fear!' Bursting out into loud laughter, Pārtha said unto him, 'Be not afraid! O hero, what friendly follower had I while fighting with the mighty *Gandharvas* on the occasion of the *Ghosha-yātrā*? Who was my ally while engaged in the

---

* Some texts read,—"*One* large meteor fell."—*T.*

† In some editions read,—*Bhrànta-dhwajam* for *Bhrànta-dwijam*, and *Mahà-hradam* for *Mahà-drumam*. The meaning would then be,—"The banners (of the hostile army) began to tremble on the sky, and large lakes were agitated."—*T.*

terrific conflict at *Khāndava* against so many celestials and *Dānavas*? Who was my ally when I fought, on behalf of the lord of the celestials, against the mighty *Nivātakavachas* and the *Paulomas*? And who was my ally, O child, while I encountered in battle innumerable kings at the *Swayamvara* of the princess of Pānchāla? Trained in arms by the preceptor Drona, by Cakra, and Vaiçravana, and Yama, and Varuna, and Agni, and Kripa, and Krishna of Madhu's race, and by the wielder of the *Pināka* (Civa), why shall I not fight with these? Drive thou my car speedily, and let thy heart's fever be dispelled!'"

Thus ends the forty-fifth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XLVI.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Making Uttara his charioteer, and circumambulating the *Çami* tree, the son of Pāndu set out taking all his weapons with him. And that mighty car-warrior set out with Uttara as the driver of his car, having taken down that banner with the lion's figure and deposited it at the foot of the *Çami* tree. And he hoisted on that car his own golden banner bearing the figure of an ape with a lion's tail, which was a celestial illusion contrived by Viswakarman himself. For as soon, indeed, as he had thought of that gift of Agni, the latter, knowing (his wish), ordered those superhuman creatures (that usually sat there) to take their place in that banner. And furnished with a beautiful flag of handsome make, with quivers attached to it, and adorned with gold, that excellent flag-staff of celestial beauty then quickly fell from the firmament on his car.* And beholding that banner arrived on his

---

* Some texts read *Mahāratham* (incorrectly) for *hiranmayam*. Indeed, *Mahāratham* would give no meaning in this connection. The incomplete edition of the Roy Press under the auspices of the Principal of the Calcutta Sanskrit College abounds with such incorrect readings and misprints.—*T.*

car, the hero circumambulated it (respectfully). And then the ape-bannered Vibhatsu, the son of Kunti, called also Cweta-vāhana, with fingers cased in leathern fences of the *Iguāna* skin, and taking up his bow and arrows, set out in a northerly direction. And that grinder of foes, possessed of great strength, then forcibly blew his large conch-shell of thundering sound, capable of making the bristles of foes to stand on their ends. And at the sound of that conch, those steeds endued with swiftness dropped down on the ground on their knees. And Uttara also, greatly affrighted, sat down on the car. And thereupon the son of Kunti took the reins himself, and raising the steeds, placed them in their proper positions. And embracing Uttara, he encouraged him also, saying,—'Fear not, O foremost of princes! Thou art, O chastiser of foes, a *Kshatriya* by birth! Why, O tiger among men, dost thou become so dispirited in the midst of foes! Thou must have heard before the blare of many conches and the note of many trumpets, and the roar also of many elephants in the midst of ranks arrayed for battle. Why art thou, therefore, so dispirited and agitated and terrified by the blare of this conch, as if thou wert an ordinary person?'

"Uttara said,—'Heard have I the blare of many a conch and many a trumpet and the roar of many of an elephant stationed in battle-array, but never have I heard before the blare of such a conch! Nor have I ever before seen a banner like this! Never before have I heard also the twang of a bow such as this! Truly, sir, with the blare of this conch, the twang of this bow, the superhuman cries of the creatures stationed on this banner, and the rattle of this car, my mind is greatly be-wildered. My perception of the directions also is confused, and my heart is painfully afflicted. The whole firmament seemeth to me to have been covered by this banner, and everything seemeth to be hidden from my view! My ears also have been deafened by the twang of the *Gāndiva!*' *

* The Roy Press edition adds here a line which looks very much like an interpolation.—T.

"Arjuna said,—'Firmly stand thou on the car, pressing thy feet on it, and tightly catch hold of the bridles, for I will blow the conch again.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Arjuna then blew his conch again, that conch which filled foes with grief and enhanced the joy of friends. And the sound was so loud that it seemed to split hills and mountains, and pierce mountain-caves and the cardinal points. And Uttara once again sat down on the car, clinging to it in fear. And with the blare of the conch and the rattle of the car-wheels, and the twang of the *Gāndiva*, the earth itself seemed to tremble. And beholding Uttara's fright, Dhananjaya began to comfort him again.' "

"Meanwhile, Drona said,—'From the rattle of this car, and from the manner in which the clouds have enveloped the sky and the earth itself trembles, this warrior can be none else than *Savyasāchin*. Our weapons do not shine, our steeds are dispirited, and our fires, though fed with fuel, do not blaze up. All this is ominous. All our animals are setting up a frightful howl, gazing towards the sun. The crows are perching on our banners. All this is ominous. Yon vultures and kites on our right portend a great danger! That jackal also, running through our ranks, waileth dismally. Lo, it hath escaped unstruck. All this portends a heavy calamity. The bristles also, of ye all, are on their ends. Surely, this forebodes a great destruction of Kshatriyas in battle. Things endued with light are all pale; beasts and birds look fierce; and there are to be witnessed many terrific portents indicative of the destruction of Kshatriyas. And these omens forebode great havoc among ourselves. O king, thy ranks seem to be confounded by these blazing meteors, and thy animals look dispirited and seem to be weeping. Vultures and kites are wheeling all around thy troops. Thou shalt have to repent upon beholding thy army afflicted by Pārtha's arrows. Indeed, our ranks seem to have been already vanquished, for none is eager to go to fight. All our warriors are pale of face, and almost deprived of their senses. Sending the kine ahead, we should stand here, ready to strike, with all our warriors arrayed in order of battle!' "

And thus ends the forty-sixth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XLVII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"King Duryodhana then, on the field of battle, said unto Bhishma, and unto Drona—that tiger among warriors, and unto Kripa—that mighty car-warrior, these words: 'Both myself and Karna had said this unto the preceptors.* I refer to the subject again, for I am not satisfied with having said it once. Even this was the pledge of the sons of Pāndu that if defeated (at dice) they would reside to our knowledge in countries and woods for twelve years, and one more year unknown to us. That thirteenth year, instead of being over, is yet running. Vibhatsu, therefore, who is still to live undiscovered, hath appeared before us. And if Vibhatsu hath come before the term of exile is at end, the Pāndavas shall have to pass another twelve years in the woods. Whether it is due to forgetfulness (on their part) induced by desire of dominion, or whether it is a mistake of ours, it behoveth Bhishma to calculate the shortness or excess (of the promised period). When an object of desire may or may not be attained, a doubt necessarily attaches to one of the alternatives, and what is decided in one way often ends differently.† Even moralists are puzzled in

---

* The true reading is *Achārya* in the dual number, meaning the Drona and Kripa. Some texts read the word in the singular form. Nilakantha notices both these readings, but prefers the dual to the singular.—T.

† The meaning is rather doubtful. Duryodhana seems to say that "the hostile appearance of Arjuna has been an act of imprudence on his part. The Pāndavas, after the expiry of the thirteenth year, would claim their kingdom. I, Duryodhana, may or may not accede to their demand. When, therefore, it was not certain that Arjuna would be refused by me, his hostile appearance is unwise. He has come sure of victory, but he may yet be defeated.—*T.*

judging of their own acts.* As regards ourselves, we have come hither to fight with the Matsyas and to seize their kine stationed towards the north. If, meanwhile, it is Arjuna that hath come, what fault can attach to us? We have come hither to fight against the Matsyas on behalf of the Trigartas; and as numerous were the acts represented unto us of oppression committed by the Matsyas, it was for this that we promised aid to the Trigartas who were overcome with fear. And it was agreed between us that they should first seize, on the afternoon of the seventh lunar day, the enormous wealth of kine that the Matsyas have, and that we should, at sunrise of the eighth day of the moon, seize these kine when the king of the Matsyas would be pursuing those first seized. It may be that the Trigartas are now bringing away the kine, or, being defeated, are coming towards us for negotiating with the king of the Matsyas. Or, it may be, that having driven the Trigartas off, the king of the Matsyas, at the head of his people and his whole army of fierce warriors, appeareth on the scene and advanceth to make night-attacks upon us. It may be that some one leader among them, endued with mighty energy, is advancing for vanquishing us, or, it may be that the king himself of the Matsyas is come. But be it the king of the Matsyas or Vibhatsu, we must all fight him. Even this hath been our pledge. Why are all these foremost of car-warriors,—Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and Vikarna and Drona's son,—now sitting on their cars, panic-stricken? At present there is nothing better than fighting. Therefore, make up your minds. If for the cattle we have seized, an encounter takes place with

---

* The sense seems to be that when moralists even are puzzled in judging of the propriety or otherwise of their acts, it can easily be imagined that the Pāndavas, however virtuous, have, in the matter of this their appearance, acted wrongly, for, after all, the thirteenth year may not have really been over as believed by them. Or, it may mean, that, as regards *our* presence here, *we* have not acted imprudently when even moralists cannot always arrive at right conclusions. It seems that for this, Duryodhana proceeds to justify that presence in the following sentences.—*T*.

the divine wielder himself of the thunder-bolt or even with Yama, who is there that will be able to reach Hastināpura ?* Pierced by the shafts (of the foe), how will the foot-soldiers, in flying through the deep forest with their backs on the field, escape with life, when escape for the cavalry is doubtful ?' Hearing these words of Duryodhana, Karna said,—'Disregarding the preceptor, make all arrangements ! He knoweth well the intentions of the Pāndavas and striketh terror into our hearts ! I see that his affection for Arjuna is very great. Seeing him only coming, he chaunteth his praises. Make ye such arrangements that our troops may not break. Everything is in confusion for Drona's having only heard the neigh of (Arjuna's) steeds. Make ye such arrangements that these troops, come to a distant land in this hot season, and in the midst of this mighty forest, may not fall into confusion and be subjugated by the foe ! The Pāndavas are always the especial favourites of the preceptor. The selfish Pāndavas have stationed Drona amongst us. Indeed, he betrayeth himself by his speech. Who would ever extol a person upon hearing the neigh only of his

---

* This *sloka* is really capable of many meanings. Besides the one given in the text, another meaning may be this.—"If these kine be snatched from us by even the wielder of the thunder-bolt or by Yama himself, who is there that will be able to return to Hastināpura ?" (Overwhelmed with shame none will be able to do so.) If this be correct, then "these arrows" in the next line would mean—"these *my* arrows," for Duryodhana threatens to slay all back-sliders. With his usual ingenuity Nilakantha comes forward to explain the passage in altogether a different sense. The meaning he suggests is,—"After we have brought away the kine, if it be the wielder of the thunder-bolt or Yama himself with whom our fight taketh place, who is there that will not be able to reach our city ?" (Every one shall, when we have such warriors as Bhishma and Drona, &c., amongst us.) In this case, the whole meaning lies in *ko hāstinapuram vrajet* which, grammatically, becomes *ko ha asti (yo) na puram vrajet*, *ha* being only an expletive. What Duryodhana says in the next line would then be—"If notwithstanding such assured safety, any do go away, with these *my* arrows, &c.... ..." These two *slokas* in succession are a good exercise for a student of Sanskrit having an ingenious turn of mind.—*T.*

steeds? Horses always neigh, whether walking or standing; the winds blow at all times; and Indra also always showereth rain. The roar of the clouds may frequently be heard. What hath Pārtha to do with these, and why is he to be praised for these? All this (on Drona's part), therefore, is due only to either the desire of doing good to Arjuna or to his wrath and hatred towards us. Preceptors are wise, and sinless, and very kind to all creatures. They, however, should never be consulted at times of peril. It is in luxurious palaces, and assemblies and pleasure-gardens, that learned men, capable of making speeches, seem to be in their place. Performing many wonderful things in the assembly, it is there that learned men find their place, or even there where sacrificial utensils and their proper placing and washing are needed.* In a knowledge of the lapses of others, in studying the characters of men, in the science of horses and elephants and cars, in treating the diseases of asses and camels and goats and sheep and kine, in planning buildings and gateways, and in pointing out the defects of food and drink, the learned are truly in their own sphere. Disregarding learned men that extol the heroism of the foe, make ye such arrangements that the foe may be destroyed! Placing the kine securely, array the troops in order of battle. Place guards in proper places so that we may fight the foe.'"

Thus ends the forty-seventh Section of the Go-harna of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION XLVIII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

"Karna said,—'I behold all these blessed ones,† looking as if alarmed and panic-struck and unresolved and unwilling to

---

* *Ijyāstra*—Sacrificial utensils, and *Upasandhāna*—placing them properly and washing them clean. Thus Nilakantha.—*T.*

† The word in the text is *āyushmatās* (in the accusative plural), literally meaning—"blessed with long life." It is a form of speech commonly used in addressing affectionately both superiors and inferiors.—*T.*

fight. If he that is come is the king of the Matsyas or Vibhatsu, even I will resist him as the bank resists the swelling sea. Shot from my bow, these straight and flying arrows, like gliding snakes, are all sure of aim! Discharged by my light hands, these keen-edged arrows furnished with golden wings shall cover Pārtha all over, like locusts shrouding a tree. Strongly pressed by these winged arrows, the bow-string will cause these my leathern fences to produce sounds that will be heard to resemble those of a couple of kettle-drums. Having been engaged in ascetic austerities for the (last) eight and five years, Vibhatsu will strike me but mildly in this conflict, and the son of Kunti having become a Brāhmana endued with good qualities, hath thus become a fit person to quietly receive shafts by thousands shot by me! This mighty bowman is, indeed, celebrated over the three worlds. I, too, am, by no means, inferior to Arjuna, that foremost of human beings. With golden arrows furnished with vulturine wings shot on all sides, let the firmament seem today to swarm with fire-flies. Slaying Arjuna in battle, I will discharge today that debt, difficult of repayment, but promised of old by me unto Dhritarāshtra's son! What man is there, even amongst all the gods and the *Asuras*, that will endure to stand in the teeth of the straight arrows shot from my bow? Let my flying arrows, winged and depressed at the middle, present the spectacle of the coursing of fire-flies through the welkin! Hard though he be as Indra's thunder-bolt and possessed of the energy of the chief of the celestials, I will surely grind Pārtha even as one afflicts an elephant by means of burning brands. A heroic and mighty car-warrior* as he is, and the foremost of all wielders of weapons, I shall seize the unresisting Pārtha, even like Gadura seizing a snake. Irresistible like fire, and fed by the fuel of swords, darts, and arrows, the blazing Pāndava fire that consumeth foes, will be extinguished even by myself who am like unto a mighty cloud incessantly dropping an arrowy shower,—the multitude of cars (I will lead) constituting its

* The word used in the text is *Atirâtham* in the accusative form, the foremost of all car-warriors, superior to even a *Mahârathas*.—*T.*

thunder, and the speed of my horses, the wind in advance! Discharged from my bow, my arrows like venomous snakes will pierce Pārtha's body, like serpents penetrating through an ant-hill. Pierced with well-tempered and straight shafts endued with golden wings and great energy, behold ye today the son of Kunti decked like a hill covered with *Karnikāra* flowers! Having obtained weapons from that best of ascetics—the son of Jamadagni, I would, relying on their energy, fight with even the celestials. Struck with my javelin, the ape stationed on his banner-top shall fall down today on the ground, uttering terrible cries. The firmament will today be filled with the cries of the (super-human) creatures stationed in the flag-staff of the foe, and afflicted by me, they will fly away in all directions! I shall today pluck up by the roots the long-existing dart in Duryodhana's heart by throwing Arjuna down from his car. The Kauravas will today behold Pārtha with his car broken, his horses killed, his valour gone, and himself sighing like a snake. Let the Kauravas, following their own will, go away taking this wealth of kine; or, if they wish, let them stay on their cars and witness my combat!' "

Thus ends the forty-eighth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section XLIX.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

"Kripa said,—'O Rādheya, thy crooked heart always inclineth to war. Thou knowest not the true nature of things; nor dost thou take into account their after-consequences. There are various kinds of expedients* inferrible from the scriptures. Of these, a battle hath been regarded, by those acquainted with the past, as the most sinful. It is only when time and place are favorable that military operations can lead to success. In

---

* Some texts read *Māyā* for *nayās*. The meaning then would be—"of all deceitful contrivances &c. ... ..." A battle, however, can hardly be called a *deceitful* contrivance. Hence, the more approved reading is *Nayās*.—*T.*

the present instance, however, the time being unfavorable, no good results will be derived. A display of prowess in proper time and place becometh beneficial. It is by the favorableness or otherwise (of time and place) that the opportuneness of an act is determined. Learned men can never act according to the ideas of a car-maker.* Considering all this, an encounter with Pārtha is not advisable for us.† Alone he saved the Kurus (from the *Gandharvas*) and alone he satiated Agni! Alone he led the life of a *Brahmachārin* for five years (on the breast of the Himavat). Taking up Subhadrā on his car, alone he challenged Krishna to single combat. Alone he fought with Rudra who stood before him as a forester. It was in this very forest that Pārtha rescued Krishnā while she was being taken away (by Jayadratha). It is he alone that hath, for five years, studied the science of weapons under Indra. Alone vanquishing all foes he hath spread the fame of the Kurus. Alone that chastiser of foes vanquished in battle Chitra-sena, the king of the *Gandharvas* and in a moment his invincible troops also. Alone he overthrew in battle the fierce *Nivāta-kavachas* and the *Kālakhanchas*, that were both incapable of being slain by the gods themselves. What, however, O Karna, hath been achieved by thee single-handed like any of the sons of Pāndu, each of whom had alone subjugated many lords of earth? Even Indra himself is unfit to encounter Pārtha in battle! He, therefore,

---

* Some texts read *Bhāram* for *Bhàvam*. The meaning then would be —"Depending on (the words of a) car-maker they that are learned never engage in any act." This would be a remark in depreciation of Karna's proud speech. As another meaning, Nilkantha suggests that there may not be any depreciatory allusion to Karna, for what Kripa (according to this third interpretation) says is that—"Placing weight on the words of a car-maker, they that are learned never engage in any act, it being well-known that car-makers always extol their wares highly, saying (as Nilkantha adds)—'This is a very superior car on which you may fight the very gods.' What man is there of any sense who would take the car-maker at his word and actually go to fight with the gods?" This is an instance of Nilkantha's ingenuity and nothing else.—*T.*

† Some read *Te* for *Nas*. The latter, however, is undoubtedly the correct reading.—*T.*

that desireth to fight with Arjuna should take a sedative.* As to thyself, thou desirest to take out the fangs of an angry snake of virulent poison by streching forth thy right hand and extending thy forefinger. Or, wandering alone in the forest thou desirest to ride an infuriate elephant and go to a town without a hook in hand. Or, rubbed over with clarified butter and dressed in silken robes, thou desirest to pass through the midst of a blazing fire fed with fat and tallow and clarified butter. Who is there that would, binding his own hands and feet and tying a huge stone unto his neck, cross the ocean swimming with his bare arms? What manliness is there in such an act? O Karna, he is a fool that would, without skill in weapons and without strength, desire to fight with Pārtha who is so mighty and skilled in weapons? Dishonestly deceived by us and liberated from thirteen years' exile, will not the illustrious hero annihilate us?† Having ignorantly come to a place where Pārtha lay concealed like fire hidden in a well, we have, indeed, been exposed to a great danger. But irresistible though he be in battle, we should fight against him. Let, therefore, our troops, clad in mail, stand here arrayed in ranks and ready to strike. Let Drona and Duryodhana and Bhishma and thyself and Drona's son, and ourselves, all fight with the son of Prithā. Do not, O Karna, act so rashly as to fight alone! If we, six car-warriors, be united, we can then be a match for and fight with that son of Prithā who is resolved to fight and who is as fierce as the wielder of the thunder-bolt. Aided by our troops arrayed in ranks, ourselves—great bowmen—standing carefully will fight with Arjuna even as the *Dānavas* encounter Vāsava in battle!'"

---

* The Burdwan Pundits read this line differently. For *âçamsaté* they read *âçamsasé*, and for *Kartyavyam tasya bheshajam* they read *kartumuttama tejasà*. This is evidently unpoetic, although the grammar would not be at fault for then the line would be connected with the next two. I think the Burdwan Pundits, who are generally correct, have shown very little taste in this instance.—*T.*

† Some editions read—*Sinha pàça-vinirmukta &c... ...karishyati* for *vinirmukto &c. ... ...mahamanà.* The difference in meaning is unimportant.—*T.*

Thus ends the forty-ninth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION L.

(*Go-harana Parva continued.*)

"Aswathāman said,—'The kine, O Karna, have not yet been won, nor have they yet crossed the boundary (of their owner's dominions), nor have they yet reached Hāstinapura. Why dost thou, therefore, boast thyself? Having won numerous battles, and acquired enormous wealth, and vanquished hostile hosts, men of true heroism speak not a word of their prowess. Fire burneth mutely, and mutely doth the sun shine. Mutely also doth the Earth bear creatures both mobile and imobile. The Self-existent hath sanctioned such offices for the four orders that having recourse to them each may acquire wealth without being censurable. A Brāhmana, having studied the *Vedas*, should perform sacrifices himself, and officiate at the sacrifices of others. A Kshatriya, depending upon the bow, should perform sacrifices himself but should never officiate at the sacrifices of others. A Vaisya, having earned wealth, should cause the rites enjoined in the *Vedas* to be performed for himself. A Sudra should always wait upon and serve the other three orders. As regards those that live by practising the profession of fowlers and vendors of meat, thay may earn wealth by expedients fraught with deceit and fraud.* Always acting according to the dictates of the scriptures, the exalted sons of Pāndu acquired the sovereignty of the whole earth, and they always act respectfully towards their superiors even if the latter prove hostile to them. What Ksha-

---

* This line is differently read in different editions. The reading I prefer is—*Vanchanā-yoga-vidhibhirvaitamsim vrittimāsthitās*—which I have accordingly rendered into English. Some read *Vandanā-yoga-vidhibhirvaitasim vrithimāsthitas.* If this be accepted, the line would then be connected with the preceding half *sloka* about the conduct of the Sudra, and would mean—"having recourse to means fraught with adulation and behaving like the cane (which never standeth erect)."—*T.*

triya is there that expresses delight at having obtained a kingdom by means of dice, like this wicked and shameless son of Dhritarāshtra? Having acquired wealth in this way by deceit and fraud like a vendor of meat, who that is wise would boast of it? In what single combat didst thou vanquish Dhananjaya, or Nakula, or Sahadeva, although thou hast robbed them of their wealth? In what battle didst thou defeat Yudhishthira, or Bhima that foremost of strong men? In what battle was Indraprastha conquered by thee? When also was that battle fought in which Krishnā was won by thee? What thou hast done, however, O thou of wicked deeds, is to drag that princess to court while she was ill and had but one raiment on! Thou hast cut the mighty root, delicate as the sandal, of the Pāndava tree!* Actuated by desire of wealth, when thou madest the Pāndavas act as slaves, rememberest thou what Vidura said? We see that men and others, even insects and ants, show forgiveness according to their powers of endurance. The son of Pāndu, however, is incapable of forgiving the sufferings of Draupadī. Surely, Dhananjaya cometh here for the destruction of the sons of Dhritarāshtra. It is true, affecting great wisdom,

---

* This is rather a difficult *Sloka* to understand. The Burdwan Pundits understand it to mean that "as a covetous man cuts down a sandal tree (regardless of the fragrance that tree sheds while standing, and just for the purpose of immediate profit), so thou, O Karna, hast cut the roots of the Pāndava tree (for a very temporary object, *viz*, the satisfaction of spite or of the desire of wealth, regardless of the benefits that tree might have afforded thee and thy patron if left uninterfered with). Nilakantha proposes a different meaning and supposes that the "root" of the Pándava tree means something diffrent. In the *Adi Parva* it has been said that "Yudhishthira is like a tree... ... ...whose roots are Krishna, *Brahma*, and the Brāhmanas." Further, that learned commentator would explain *chandanam* as an adjective qualifying *mulam*, and meaning "delicate," while *Sārārthi* is connected with the succeeding half *sloka*. The remark, therefore, of Karna's having cut the delicate root of the Pandava tree alludes to the abandonment of all virtue and religion by Karna and his patron in consequence of the deceit with which they had robbed the Pāndavas of their possessions. This is very probably the correct meaning.—*T.*

thou art for making speeches, but will not Vibhatsu, that slayer of foes, exterminate us all? If it be gods, or *Gandharvas*, or *Asuras*, or *Rākshasas*, will Dhananjaya the son of Kunti desist to fight from panic? Inflamed with wrath, upon whomsoever he will fall, even him he will overthrow like a tree under the weight of Gadura! Superior to thee in prowess, in bowmanship equal unto the lord himself of the celestials, and in battle equal unto Vāsudeva himself, who is there that would not praise Pārtha? Counteracting celestial weapons with celestial, and human weapons with human, what man is a match for Arjuna? Those acquainted with the scriptures declare that a disciple is no way inferior to a son, and it is for this that the son of Pāndu is a favorite of Drona. Employ thou the means now which thou hadst adopted in the match at dice,—the same means, *viz*, by which thou hadst subjugated Indraprastha, and the same means by which thou hadst dragged Krishnā to the assembly! This thy wise uncle, fully conversant with the duties of the *Kshatriya* order—this deceitful gambler Cakuni the prince of Gāndhāra, let *him* fight now! The *Gāndiva*, however, doth not cast dice such as the *Krita* or the *Dwāpara*,* but it shooteth upon foes blazing and keen-edged shafts by myriads. The fierce arrows shot from the *Gāndiva*, endued with great energy and furnished with vulturine wings,† can pierce even mountains. The destroyer of all, named Yama, and Vāyu, and the horse-faced Agni, leave some remnant behind, but Dhananjaya inflamed with wrath never doth so.‡ As thou hadst, aided by thy uncle, played at dice in the assembly, so do thou fight in this battle protected by Suvala's son. Let the preceptor, if he chooses, fight; I shall not however, fight with Dhananjaya. We are to fight with

---

* Names of *two* out of the *four* dice used in play.—*T.*

† Some texts read *áçivishopamā* for *Gārdhapatrās sutejanās.* The difference of meaning is scarcely of much consequence.—*T.*

‡ There is a difference of reading here. Some texts read, *Antakas Camano Mrityus*, others (as the Burdwan edition) *Antakas Pavano Mrityus.* The reading, however, I prefer is *Antakas Camano Vàyus.* The first reading is evidently objectionable. The second is equally so for placing *Pavanas* between two words that are connected intimately.—*T.*

the king of the Matsyas if, indeed, he cometh in the track of the kine!'"

Thus ends the fiftieth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LI.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

"Bhishma said,—'Drona's son observeth well, and Kripa, too, observeth rightly. As for Karna, it is only out of regard for the duties of the Kshatriya order that he desireth to fight. No man of wisdom can blame the preceptor. I, however, am of opinion that fight we must, considering both the time and the place. Why should not that man be bewildered who hath five adversaries effulgent as five suns, who are heroic combatants and who have just emerged from adversity? Even they that are conversant with morality are bewildered in respect of their own interests. It is for this, O king, that I tell thee this, whether my words be acceptable or not! What Karna said unto thee was only for raising our (drooping) courage. As regards thyself, O preceptor's son, forgive everything! The business at hand is very grave! When the son of Kunti hath come, this is not the time for quarrel! Everything should now be forgiven by thyself and the preceptor Kripa. As light in the sun, so doth the mastery of all weapons reside in you! As beauty is never separated from *Chandramas*, so are the *Vedas* and the *Brāhma* weapon both established in you. It is often seen that the four *Vedas* dwell in one object and *Kshatriya* attributes in another. We have never heard of these two dwelling together in any other person than the preceptor of the Bharata race and his son. Even this is what I think. In the *Vendāntas*, in the *Purānas*, and in old histories, who, save Jāmadagni, O king, would be Drona's superior? A combination of the *Brāhma* weapon with the *Vedas*,—this is never to be seen anywhere else. O preceptor's son, do thou forgive! This is not the time for disunion! Let all of us, uniting, fight with Indra's son who hath come! Of all the calamities of an army that have been enumerated by men of

wisdom, the worst is disunion among the leaders!' Açwathāman said,—'O bull among men, these thy just observations need not be uttered in our presence: the preceptor, however, filled with wrath, had spoken of Arjuna's virtues.* The virtues of even an enemy should be admitted, while the faults of even one's preceptor may be pointed out: therefore, one should, to the best of his power, declare the merits of a son or a diciple!'

"Duryodhana said,—'Let the preceptor grant his forgiveness and let peace be restored! If the preceptor be at one with us, whatever should be done (in view of the present emergency) would seem to have been already done.' "†

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then, O Bhārata, Duryodhana assisted by Karna and Kripa, and the high-souled Bhishma pacified Drona.‡

"Drona said,—'Appeased I have already been at the words first spoken by Bhishma the son of Cāntanu! Let such arrangements be made that Pārtha may not be able to approach Duryodhana in battle. And let such arrangements be made that king Duryodhana may not be captured by the foe, in consequence either of his rashness or want of judgment.§ Arjuna hath not, to be sure, revealed himself before the expiry of the term of

---

* Most of the vernacular translators have misunderstood this passage. What Açwatthâman says is—"Thou needest not, O Bhishma, tell us all this, for we are fully alive to the importance of the truths you have uttered. The fact, however, of Drona's having spoken thus of Arjuna is due to his wrath at the deceitful ways of prince Duryodhana." This, therefore, is an acknowledgment on Açwatthâman's part of the justness of Bhishma's remarks and, at the same time, an apologetic justfication of Drona for the latter's praise of Arjuna at a time when such praise tended to dishearten the troops.—*T.*

† There is a difference of reading here. For *tadvrittam çeshakâritam* some texts read *na kritam çeshakāritám.* This last should be taken as an interrogative, and the sense would remain unaltered.—*T.*

‡ Some editions read the adjective "high-souled" in connection with "Kripa."—*T.*

§ The reading of the incomplete annotated Roy press edition is very faulty here. For *nopasarpati sangaré* it reads *nàyam paçyati sainikān* which gives no meaning. Then again an entire line is omitted, *viz, yatha Duryodhano raja na gacchedwishatám vaçam.*—*T.*

exile. Nor will he pardon this act (of ours) today, having only recovered the kine. Let such arrangements, therefore, be made that he may not succeed in attacking Dhritarāshtra's son and defeating our troops. Like myself (who am doubtful of the completion of the period of exile) Duryodhana also had said so before. Bearing it in mind, it behoveth the son of Gangā to say what is true.' "*

Thus ends the fifty-first Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

"Bhishma said,—'The wheel of time revolves with its divisions, *viz*, with *Kalās* and *Kāsthas* and *Muhartas* and days and fortnights and months and constellations and planets and seasons and years.† In consequence of their fractional excesses and the deviations also of the heavenly bodies, there is an increase of two months in every five years. It seems to me that calculating this wise, there would be an excess of five months and twelve nights in thirteen years. Everything, therefore, that the sons of Pāndu had promised, hath been exactly fulfilled by them. Knowing this to be certain, Vibhatsu hath made his appearance. All of them are high-souled and all fully conversant with the meanings of the scriptures. How would they deviate from virtue that have Yudhishthira for their guide? The sons of Kunti do not yield to temptation. They have achieved a difficult feat. If they had coveted the possession of their kingdom by unfair means, then those descendants of the Kuru race would have sought to display their prowess at the time of the match at dice. Bound in bonds of virtue,

---

* It is impossible to note all the differences of reading that come under one's observation if only he keeps open before him four or five texts, for there are very few *slokas* of any text that occur in exactly the same form in another text. I have noted only the more important of the discrepancies.—*T.*

† A *kalà* is a lunar digit ; a *kàsthà* is a thirtieth part of a *kàlà*, and a *muhurta* is an hour of 48 minutes.—*T.*

they did not deviate from the duties of the Kshatriya order. He that will regard them to have behaved falsely will surely meet with defeat ! The sons of Prithā would prefer death to falsehood. When the time, however, comes, those bulls among men—the Pāndavas—endued with energy like that of Cakra, do not give up what is theirs even if it is defended by the wielder himself of thunderbolt. We shall have to oppose in battle the foremost of all wielders of weapons. Therefore, let such advantageous arrangements as have the sanction of the good and the honest be now made without loss of time so that our possessions may not be appropriated by the foe. O king of kings, O Kaurava, I have never seen a battle in which one of the parties could say,—*we are sure to win.* Here especially it is Dhananjaya that hath come! When a battle occurs, there must be victory or defeat, prosperity or adversity. Without doubt, a party to a battle must have either of the two. Therefore, O king of kings, whether a battle be now proper or not, consistent with virtue or not, make thy arrangements soon, for Dhananjaya is at hand !'

"Duryodhana said,—'I will not, O grandsire, give back the Pāndavas their kingdom ! Let every preparation, therefore, for battle be made without delay !'

"Bhishma said,—'Listen to what I regard as proper if it pleases thee ! I should always say what is for thy good, O Kaurava ! Proceed thou towards the capital, without loss of time, taking with thee a fourth part of the army. And let another fourth march, escorting the kine. With half the troops we will fight the Pāndava. Myself and Drona, and Karna and Aswathāman and Kripa will resolutely withstand Vibhatsu, or the king of the Matsyas, or Indra himself, if he approach. Indeed, we will withstand any of these like the bank withstanding the surging sea !' "*

Vaiçampāyana continued,—" These words spoken by the

* I prefer to read *kritanischayâs* to *kritanischayam.* If the latter be the correct reading, which is very doubtful, it would refer to Vibhatsu, or the king of the Matsyas, or to Catakratu. In the last line also, *aham* is evidently incorrect. The true reading is *Vayam* (we) and the succeeding verb is plural and not singular as many texts read.—*T*

high-souled Bhishma were acceptable to them, and the king of the Kauravas acted accordingly without dela y. And having sent away the king and then the kine, Bhishma began to array the soldiers in order of battle. And addressing the preceptor, he said,—'O preceptor, stand thou in the centre, and let Aswathāman stand on the left, and let the wise Kripa son of Saradwata, defend the right wing, and let Karna of the *Suta* caste, clad in mail, stand in the van. I will stand in the rear of the whole army, protecting it from that point.' "

Thus ends the fifty-second Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section LIII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"After the Kauravas, O Bhārata, had taken their stand in this order, Arjuna, filling the air with the rattle and din of his car, advanced quickly towards them. And the Kurus beheld his banner-top and heard the rattle and din of his car as also the twang of the *Gāndiva* stretched repeatedly by him. And noting all this, and seeing that great car-warrior—the wielder of the *Gāndiva*—come, Drona spoke thus,—'That is the banner-top of Pārtha which shineth at a distance, and this is the noise of his car, and that is the ape that roareth frightfully.* Indeed, that ape striketh terror in the troops. And there stationed on that excellent car, the foremost of car-warriors draweth that best of bows, the *Gāndiva*, whose twang is as loud as the thunder. Behold, these two shafts coming together fall at my feet, and two others pass off barely touching my ears. Completing the period of exile and having achieved many wonderful feats, Pārtha saluteth me and whispereth in my ears. Endued with wisdom and beloved of his relatives, this Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu, is, indeed, beheld by us after a long time, blazing with beauty and grace! Possessed of car and arrows, furnished with handsome fences and quiver and conch and banner and coat of mail,

---

* Some texts read *esha ghoro rathasyājau* for *esha ghoshas sa rathajas*. The difference of meaning is scarcely of much consequence.—*T.*

decked with diadem and scimitar and bow, the son of Prithā shineth like the blazing *(Homa)* fire surrounded with sacrificial laddles and fed with sacrificial butter!' "*

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Beholding the Kurus ready for battle, Arjuna addressing Matsya's son in words suitable to the occasion said,—'O charioteer, restrain thou the steeds at such a point whence my arrows may reach the enemy. Meanwhile let me see where, in the midst of this army, is that vile wretch of the Kuru race! Disregarding all these, and singling out that vainest of princes, I will fall upon his head, for upon the defeat of that wretch the others will regard themselves as defeated. There standeth Drona, and there after him his son! And there are those great bowmen—Bhishma and Kripa and Karna. I do not see, however, the king here! I suspect that anxious to save his life, he retreateth by the southern road, taking away with him the kine! Leaving this array of car-warriors, proceed to the spot where Suyodhana is. There will I fight, O son of Virāta, for there the battle will not be fruitless! Defeating him I will come back, taking away the kine!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed, that son of Virāta restrained the steeds with an effort and turning them by a pull at the bridle from the spot where those bulls of the Kuru race were, urged them on towards the place where Duryodhana was. And as Arjuna went away leaving that thick array of cars, Kripa,† guessing his intention, addressed his own comrades, saying,—'This Vibhatsu desireth not to take up his stand at a spot remote from the king. Let us quickly fall upon the flanks of the advancing hero.‡ When inflamed

* For once I find the reading of the Roy Press edition better than that of other texts and I accordingly adopt it. It reads *çikhi vritas srugbhirivâjyasiktas* for *çikhi ghritasrugbhirivàvasiktas*. *Srug* means a sacrificial laddle (for pouring clarified butter); *ghrita-srug*, therefore, is tautologicial. Then again. *âjyasiktas* is very plain, meaning "fed with butter" or, rather, "poured over with butter." But what is *ghrita-srugbhirivâvasiktas*? If it has any meaning, it is scarcely poetical.—*T.*

† Some editions read *Drona*.—T.

‡ To seize the *pârshni* of a car is, to attack it from the sides or fall upon its flanks. The adverb *javena* (quickly) may qualify *abhiyàsyatās*. I prefer, however, to take it as qualifying *grahishyāmas*.—T.

with wrath, none else, unassisted, can encounter him in battle save the deity of a thousand eyes, or Krishna the son of Devaki!* Of what use to us would the kine be or this vast wealth also, if Duryodhana were to sink, like a boat, in the *Pārtha* sea!'† Meanwhile Vibhatsu, having proceeded towards that division of the army, announced himself speedily by name, and covered the troops with his arrows thick as locusts. And covered with those countless shafts shot by Pārtha, the hostile warriors could not see anything, the earth itself and the sky becoming overwhelmed therewith. And the soldiers who had been ready for the fight were so confounded that none could even fly from the field. And beholding the light-handedness of Pārtha they all applauded it mentally. And Arjuna then blew his conch which always made the bristles of the foe stand erect. And twanging his best of bows, he urged the creatures on his flagstaff to roar more frightfully. And at the blare of his conch and the rattle of his car-wheels, and the twang of the *Gāndiva*, and the roar of the superhuman creatures stationed on his flagstaff, the earth itself began to tremble. And shaking their upraised tails and lowing together, the kine turned back, proceeding along the southern road.' "

Thus ends the fifty-third Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

---

* A *half-sloka* is inserted here in some texts which looks like an interpolation. It is *āchàryyādvā saputràccha Bharadwājānmahārathāt* meaning "or the preceptor with his son, *viz.* that great car-warrior Bharadwāja's son." If the speaker be Drona, such self-praise would be absurd. If, again, the speaker be Kripa, it would not be in keeping with the whole tenor of his address.—T.

† Almost every edition has a reading of its own, as regards this line. The correct reading, I apprehend, is *Duryodhana Parthajale yadi nauiriva majjati.* The Roy Press edition adds two syllables to the second foot and thus forgets even metre in correcting the reading.—T.

SECTION LIV.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having disorganised the hostile host by force, and recovered the kine, that foremost of bowmen, desirous of fighting again, proceeded towards Duryodhana. And beholding the kine running wild towards the city of the Matsyas, the foremost warriors of the Kurus regarded Kiritin to have already achieved success. And all on a sudden they fell upon Arjuna who was advancing towards Duryodhana. And beholding their countless divisions firmly arrayed in order of battle with countless banners waving over them, that slayer of foes, addressing the son of the king of the Matsyas, said,—'Urge on, to the best of their speed, by this road, these white steeds decked with golden bridles! Strive thou well, for I would approach this crowd of Kuru lions.* Like an elephant desiring an encounter with another, the *Suta's* son of wicked soul eagerly desireth a battle with me. Take me, O prince, to him who hath grown so proud under the patronage of Duryodhana!' Thus addressed, the son of Virāta, by means of those large steeds endued with the speed of the wind and furnished with golden armour, broke that array of cars and took the Pāndava into the midst of the battle-field. And seeing this, those mighty car-warriors, Chitrasena and Sangrāmajit and Satrusaha and Jaya, desirous of aiding Karna, rushed, with arrows and long shafts,† towards the advancing hero of Bharata's race. Then that foremost of men, inflamed with wrath, began to consume by means of fiery arrows shot from his bow, that array of cars belonging to those bulls among the Kurus, like a tremendous conflagration consuming a forest. Then, when the battle began to rage furiously, the Kuru hero, Vikarna, mount-

---

* Some editions read *āsādaye-ayam* for *āsâdyé-aham*. The latter is undoubtedly the correct reading, for the former is ungrammatical, *ayam* being a masculine pronominal adjective incapable of qualifying *Kuru-singhavrindam* which is neuter.—T.

† Some texts read *Vigâdais* for *Vipâthais*. The latter seems to be preferable.—T.

ed on his car, approached that foremost of car-warriors, Pārtha the younger brother of Bhima,—showering upon him terrible shafts thick and long.* Then cutting Vikarna's bow furnished with a tough string and horns overlaid with gold, Arjuna cut off his flagstaff. And Vikarna, beholding his flagstaff cut off, speedily took to flight. And after Vikarna's flight, Satruntapa, unable to repress his ire, began to afflict Pārtha, that obstructer of foes and achiever of superhuman feats, by means of a perfect shower of arrows.† And drowned, as it were, in the midst of the Kuru-array, Arjuna, pierced by that mighty car-warrior,—king Satruntapa—pierced the latter in return with five and then slew his car-driver with ten shafts. And pierced by that bull of the Bharata race with an arrow capable of cleaving the thickest coat of mail, Satruntapa fell dead on the field of battle, like a tree from a mountain-top torn up by the wind. And those brave bulls among men, mangled in battle by that braver bull among men, began to waver and tremble like mighty forests shaken by the violence of the wind that blows at the time of the universal dissolution. And struck in battle by Pārtha the son of Vāsava, those well-dressed heroes among men—those givers of wealth endued with the energy of Vāsava—defeated and deprived of life, began to measure their lengths on the ground, like full-grown Himalyan elephants clad in mails of black steel decked with gold. And like unto a raging fire consuming a forest at the close of summer, that foremost of men, wielding the *Gāndiva*, began to range the field in all directions, slaying his foes in battle thus. And as the wind rangeth at will, scattering masses of clouds and fallen leaves in the season of spring, so did that foremost of car-warriors—Kiritin—range in that

---

* Some editions read *Atiratha* making it an adjective of Vikarna. This is certainly erroneous. The correct reading is *Atiratham* qualifying *Pärtham*. Then again *Kuru-praviram* should be *Kuru-praviras*. It should evidently qualify Vikarna who fought on the Kuru side. Throughout this section Drona and Aswatthāman and Kripa and others have all been styled *Kuru-praviras*.—T.

† Some texts read *Pärthamamrishyamana* for *kopamamrighyamâna*. The former is incorrect,—T.

battle, scattering all his foes before him. And soon slaying the red steeds yoked unto the car of Sangrāmajit the brother of Vikartana's son, that hero decked in diadem and endued with great vigor then cut off his antagonist's head by a crescent-shaped arrow. And when his brother was slain, Vikartana's son of the *Suta* caste, mustering all his prowess, rushed at Arjuna, like a huge elephant with out-stretched tusks,* or like a tiger at a mighty bull. And the son of Vikartana quickly pierced the son of Pāndu with twelve shafts and all his steeds also in every part of their bodies and Virāta's son too in his hand. And rushing impetuously against Vikartana's son who was suddenly advancing against him, Kiritin attacked him fiercely, like Gadura of variegated plumage swooping down upon a snake. And both of them were foremost of bow-men, and both were endued with great strength, and both capable of slaying foes. And seeing that an encounter was imminent between them, the Kauravas, anxious to witness it, stood aloof as lookers-on. And beholding the offender Karna, the son of Pāndu, excited to fury, and glad also at having him, soon made him, his horses, his car, and car-driver invisible by means of a frightful shower of countless arrows. And the warriors of the Bharatas headed by Bhishma, with their horses, elephants, and cars, pierced by Kiritin and rendered invisible by means of his shafts, their ranks also scattered and broken, began to wail aloud in grief. The illustrious and heroic Karna, however, counteracting with numberless arrows of his own those shafts shot by Arjuna's hand, soon burst forth in view with bow and arrows like a blazing fire. And then there arose the sound of loud clapping of hands, with the blare of conchs and trumpets and kettle-drums made by the Kurus while they applauded Vikartana's son who filled the atmosphere with the sound of his bowstring flapping against his fence. And beholding Kiritin filling the air with the twang of the *Gāndiva*, and the

* *Dantau* in the dual is explained by Nilakantha as meaning, "mountain summits," Arjuna and Uttara being compared thus. This ingenuity, however, is worthless, considering that *maharshabham* in the next breath is singular. *Pragrihya dantau*, therefore, would mean, as the Burdwan Pundits think, "stretching out(his) two tusks."—T.

upraised tail of the monkey that constituted his flag, and the terrible creatures yelling furiously from the top of his flagstaff, Karna sent forth a loud roar. And afflicting, by means of his shafts, Vikartana's son along with his steeds, car, and car-driver, Kiritin impetuously poured an arrowy shower on him, casting his eyes on the grandsire and Drona and Kripa. And Vikartana's son also poured upon Pārtha a heavy shower of arrows like a rain-charged cloud. And the diadem-decked Arjuna also covered Karna with a thick down-pour of keen-edged shafts. And the two heroes stationed on their cars, creating clouds of keen-edged arrows in a combat carried on by means of countless shafts and weapons, appeared to the spectators like the sun and the moon covered by clouds. And the light-handed Karna, unable to bear the sight of the foe, pierced the four horses of the diadem-decked hero with whetted arrows, and then struck his car-driver with three shafts, and his flag-staff also with three. Thus struck, that grinder of all adversaries in battle, that bull of the Kuru race, Jishnu wielding the *Gāndiva*, like a lion awaked from slumber, furiously attacked Karna by means of straight-going arrows. And afflicted by the arrowy shower (of Karna), that illustrious achiever of superhuman deeds soon displayed a thick shower of arrows in return. And he covered Karna's car with countless shafts like the sun covering the different worlds with his rays. And like a lion attacked by an elephant, Arjuna, taking some keen crescent-shaped arrows from out of his quiver and drawing his bow to his ear, pierced the *Suta's* son on every part of his body. And that grinder of foes pierced Karna's arms and thighs and head and forehead and neck and other principal parts of his body with whetted shafts endued with the impetuosity of the thunder-bolt and shot from the *Gāndiva* in battle. And mangled and afflicted by the arrows shot by Pārtha the son of Pāndu, Vikartana's son, quitted the van of battle, and quickly took to flight, like one elephant vanquished by another.' "

Thus ends the fifty-fourth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section LV.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"After the son of Rādhā had fled from the field, other warriors headed by Duryodhana, one after another, fell upon the son of Pāndu with their respective divisions. And like the shore withstanding the fury of the surging sea, that warrior withstood the rage of that countless host rushing towards him, arrayed in order of battle and showering clouds of arrows. And then that foremost of car-warriors, Kunti's son Vibhatsu of white steeds, rushed towards the foe, evolving celestial weapons the while. And Pārtha soon covered all the points of the horizon with countless arrows shot from the *Gāndiva*, like the sun covering the whole earth with his rays. And amongst those that fought on cars and horses and elephants, and amongst the mail-clad foot-soldiers, there was none that had on his body a space of even two fingers breadth unwounded with sharp arrows. And for his dexterity in applying celestial weapons, and for the training of the steeds and the skill of Uttara, and for the coursing of his weapons, and his prowess and light-handedness, people began to regard Arjuna as the fire that blazeth forth during the time of the universal dissolution for consuming all created things. And none amongst the foe could cast his eyes on Arjuna who shone like a blazing fire of great effulgence. And mangled by the arrows of Arjuna, the hostile ranks looked like newly-risen clouds on the breast of a hill reflecting the solar rays, or like groves of *Açoka* trees resplendant with clusters of flowers.* Indeed, afflicted by the arrows of Pārtha, the soldiers looked like these, or like a beautiful garland whose flowers gradually wither and drop away. And the all-pervading wind bore on its wings in the sky the torn flags and umbrellas of the hostile host. And afrighted at the havoc amongst their own ranks, the steeds fled in all directions, freed from their yokes by means of Pārtha's arrows

---

* Some read *cchannâni vahuças çubhais* for *fullâni kusumais çubhais.*

and dragging after them broken portions of cars. And the elephants, struck on their ears and ribs and tusks and nether lips and other delicate parts of the body, began to drop down on the battle-field. And the earth, bestrewn in a short time with the corpses of elephants belonging to the Kuravas, looked like the sky overcast with masses of black clouds. And as that fire of blazing flames at the end of the *Yuga* consumeth all perishable things of the world, both mobile and immobile, so did Pārtha, O king, consume all foes in battle! And by the energy of his weapons and the twang of his bow, and the preternatural yells of the creatures stationed on his flagstaff, and the terrible roar of the monkey, and by the blast of his conch, that mighty grinder of foes, Vihbatsu, struck terror into the hearts of all the troops of Duryodhana. And the strength of every hostile warrior, seemed, as it were, to be levelled to the dust at the very sight of Arjuna. And unwilling to commit the daring act of sin of slaying them that were defenceless, Arjuna suddenly fell back and attacked the army from behind by means of clouds of keen-edged arrows proceeding towards their aims like hawks let off by fowlers. And he soon covered the entire welkin with clusters of blood-drinking arrows. And as the (infinite) rays of the powerful sun, entering a small vessel, are contracted within it for want of space, so the countless shafts of Arjuna could not find space for their expansion even within the vast welkin. Foes were able to behold Arjuna's car, when near, only once, for immediately after, they were with their horses sent to the other world. And as his arrows unobstructed by the bodies of foes always passed through them, so his car, unimpeded by hostile ranks, always passed through the latter. And, indeed, he began to toss about and agitate the hostile troops with great violence like the thousand-headed Vāsuki sporting in the great ocean. And as Kiritin incessantly shot his shafts, the noise of his bow-string, transcending every sound, was so loud that the like of it had never been heard before by created beings. And the elephants crowding the field, their bodies pierced with (blazing) arrows with small intervals between, looked like black clouds coruscated with solar rays. And ranging in all directions and shooting (arrows) right and left, Arjuna's bow

was always be seen drawn to a perfect circle. And the arrows of the wielder of the *Gāndiva* never fell upon anything except the aim, even as the eye never dwelleth on anything that is not beautiful. And as the track of a herd of elephants marching through the forest is made of itself, so was the track made of itself for the car of Kiritin. And struck and mangled by Pārtha, the hostile warriors thought that—*Verily, Indra himself, desirous of Pārtha's victory, accompanied by all the immortals is slaying us!* And they also regarded Vijaya, who was making a terrible slaughter around, to be none else than Death himself who, having assumed the form of Arjuna, was slaying all creatures. And the troops of the Kurus, struck by Pārtha, were so mangled and shattered that the scene looked like the deed of Pārtha himself and could compare with nothing else save what was observable in Pārtha's combats. And he severed the heads of foes, even as reapers cut off the tops of deciduous herbs. And the Kurus all lost their energy owing to the terror begot of Arjuna. And tossed and mangled by the Arjuna gale, the forest of Arjuna's foes reddened the earth with purple secretions. And the dust mixed with blood, uplifted by the wind, made the very rays of the sun redder still. And soon the sun-decked sky became so red that it looked very much like the evening. Indeed, the sun ceaseth to shed his rays as soon as he sets, but the son of Pāndu ceased not to shoot his shafts. And that hero of inconceivable energy overwhelmed, by means of his celestial weapons, all the great bowmen of the enemy although they were possessed of great prowess. And Arjuna then shot three and seventy arrows of sharp points at Drona, and ten at Dussaha, and eight at Drona's son, and twelve at Dusçāsana, and three at Kripa the son of Caradwat. And that slayer of foes pierced Bhishma the son of Cāntanu with six arrows, and king Duryodhana with a hundred. And, lastly, he pierced Karna in the ear with a bearded shaft. And when that great bowman Karna, skilled in all weapons, was thus pierced, and his horses and car and car-driver were all destroyed, the troops that supported him began to break. And beholding those soldiers break and give way, the son of Virāta, desirous of knowing Pārtha's purpose, addressed him on the field of

battle, and said,—'O Pārtha, standing on this beautiful car, with myself as charioteer, towards which division shall I go? For, commanded by thee, I would soon take thee thither!'

"Arjuna replied,—'O Uttara, yonder auspicious warrior whom thou seest cased in coat of tiger skin and stationed on his car furnished with a blue flag and drawn by red steeds, is Kripa! There, that is the van of Kripa's division! Take me thither! I shall show that great bowman my swift-handedness in archery. And that warrior whose flag beareth the device of an elegant water-pot worked in gold, is the preceptor Drona—that foremost of all wielders of weapons! He is always an object of regard with me as also with all bearers of arms! Do thou, therefore, circumambulate that great hero cheerfully! Let us bend our heads there, for that is eternal virtue! If Drona strike my body first, then shall I strike him, for then he will not be able to resent it. There, close to Drona, that warrior whose flag beareth the device of a bow, is the preceptor's son, the great car-warrior Açwatthāman, who is always an object of regard with me as also with every bearer of arms! Do thou, therefore, stop again and again, while thou comest by his car! There, that warrior who stayeth on his car, cased in golden mail and surrounded by a third part of the army consisting of the most efficient troops, and whose flag beareth the device of an elephant in a ground of gold, is the illustrious king Duryodhana the son of Dhritarāshtra! O hero, take before him this thy car that is capable of grinding hostile cars! This king is difficult of being vanquished in battle and is capable of grinding all foes! He is regarded as the first of all Drona's disciples in lightness of hand. I shall, in battle, show him my superior swiftness in archery! There, that warrior whose flag beareth the device of a stout chord for binding elephants, is Karna the son of Vikartana, already known to thee! When thou comest before that wicked son of Rādhā, be thou very careful, for he always challength me to an encounter! And that warrior whose flag is blue and beareth the device of five stars with a sun (in the centre), and who, endued with great energy, stayeth on his car holding a huge bow in hand and wearing excellent fences, and over whose head is an

umbrella of pure white, who standeth at the head of a multitudinous array of cars with various flags and banners, like the sun in advance of masses of black clouds, and whose mail of gold looks bright as the sun or the moon, and who with his helmet of gold striketh terror into my heart, is Bhishma the son of Cāntanu and the grandsire of us all! Entertained with regal splendour by Duryodhana, he is very partial and well-affected towards that prince. Let him be approached last of all, for he may, even now, be an obstacle to me! While fighting with him, do thou carefully guide the steeds!' Thus addressed by him, Virāta's son, O king, guided Savyasāchin's car with great alacrity towards the spot where Kripa stood anxious to fight."

Thus ends the fifty-fifth Section of the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LVI.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Viçampāyana said.—"And the ranks of those fierce bowmen, the Kurus, looked like masses of clouds in the rainy season drifting before a gentle wind. And close (to those ranks of foot-soldiers) stood the enemey's horse ridden by terrible warriors.* And there were also elephants of terrible mien, looking resplendent in beautiful armour, ridden by skilled combatants and urged on with iron crows and hooks. And, O king, mounted on a beautiful car, Cakra came there accompanied by the celestials,—the *Vicwas*, and the *Maruts*. And crowded with gods, *Yakshas*, *Gandharvas*, and *Nagas*, the firmament looked as resplendent as it does when bespangled with the planetary constellations in a cloudless night.† And the celestials came there, each on his own car, desirous of beholding the efficacy

---

* Some editions read *prahārinas* for *prahāribhis*. The grammar then would certainly be faulty. In fact, the instrumental plural is the correct reading. *Prahārin* literally means a smiter, hence a skilled or fierce combatant.—*T*,

† Some texts read *Tadeva* for *Taddeva*, which is absurd, and again *Grahānamiva mandalam* for *Grahairiva Nabhasthalam*. I have, of course, adopted the latter reading which is really poetic.—*T*.

of their weapons in human warfare, and for witnessing also the fierce and mighty combat that would take place when Bhishma and Arjuna would meet.* And embellished with gems of every kind and capable of going everywhere at the will of the rider, the heavenly car of the lord of the celestials, whose roof was upheld by a hundred thousand pillars of gold with (a central) one made entirely of jewels and gems, was conspicuous in the clear sky. And there appeared on the scene three and thirty gods with Vāsava (at their head), and (many) *Gandharvas* and *Rākshasas* and *Nāgas* and *Pitirs*, together with the great *Rishis*. And seated on the car of the lord of the celestials, appeared the effulgent persons of king Vasumanas and Valākshas and Supratarddana, and Ashtaka and Civi and Yayāti and Nahusha and Gaya, and Manu and Puru and Raghu and Bhānu and Kriçāçwa and Sagara and Nala.† And there shone in splendid array, each in its proper place, the cars of Agni and Iça and Soma and Varuna and Prajāpati and Dhātri and Vidhātri and Kuvera and Yama, and Alamvusha and Ugrasena and others, and of the *Gandharva* Tumburu. And all the çelestials and the *Siddhas*, and all the foremost of sages came there to behold the encounter between Arjuna and the Kurus. And the sacred fragrance of celestial garlands filled the air like that of blossoming woods at the advent of spring. And the red and reddish umbrellas and robes and garlands and *chamaras*, of the gods as they were stationed there looked exceedingly beautiful.‡ And the dust of the earth soon disappeared and (celestial) effulgence lit up everything. And redolent of divine perfumes, the breeze began to soothe the combatants. And the firmament seemed ablaze and exceedingly beautiful, decked with already arrived and arriving cars of handsome and various make, all illumined with diverse sorts of jewels, and brought thither by the foremost of the celestials. And surrounded by the celestials, and wearing a garland of lotuses and lilies, the powerful

---

* Some texts read *Kripārjuna-samâgama* for *Bhishmârjuna-samâgama*. Kripa was certainly an inferior warrior compared with Bhishma.—*T.*

† In some editions, *Kshupa* for *Puru* and *Calas* for *Nalas*.—*T.*

‡ Some texts read *Ratnâni* for *Raktâraktâni*. The latter is preferable.—*T.*

wielder of the thunder-bolt looked exceedingly beautiful on his car. And the slayer of Vala, although he steadfastly gazed at his son on the field of battle, was not satiated with such gazing."

And thus ends the fifty-sixth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LVII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Beholding the army of the Kurus arrayed in order of battle, that descendant of the Kuru race, Pārtha, addressing Virāta's son, said,—'Do thou proceed to the spot where Kripa the son of Caradwat is, going by the southern side of that car whose flag is seen to bear the device of a golden altar !' "

Vaiçampayana continued.—"Hearing these words of Dhananjaya, the son of Virāta urged, without a moment's delay, those steeds of silvery hue decked in golden armour. And making them adopt, one after another, every kind of the swifter paces, he urged those fiery steeds resembling the moon in color. And versed in horse-lore, Uttara, having approached the Kuru host, turned back those steeds endued with the speed of the wind. And skilled in guiding vehicles, the prince of Matsya, sometimes wheeling about, and sometimes proceeding in circular mazes, and sometimes turning to the left, began to bewilder the Kurus. And wheeling round, the intrepid and mighty son of Virāta at last approached the car of Kripa, and stood confronting him. Then announcing his own name, Arjuna powerfully blew that best of conchs called *Devadatta,** of loud blare. And blown on the field of battle by the mighty Jishnu, the blare of that conch was heard like the splitting of a moun-

---

* Schlegel, in his version of the *Bhagavad-gitá* renders this word as "Theodotes," calling the conch of Krishna as "Gigantea," of Bhima, "Arundinea," of Yudhishthira, "Tirumphatrix," of Nakula, "Dulcisona," and lastly, of Sahadeva, "Gemmiflorea," the corresponding Sanskrit names being *Pánchajanya*, *Paundra*, *Anantavijaya*, *Sughosha* and *Manipushpaka*. Though these renderings have all been approved by Wilson, yet they look very pedantic in an English version.—*T.*

tain. And seeing that the conch did not break into a hundred fragments when blown by Arjuna, the Kurus with all their warriors began to applaud it highly. And having reached the very heavens, that sound came back and was heard even like the crash of the thunder-bolt hurled by Maghavat on the mountain breast. Thereupon that heroic and intrepid and mighty car-warrior, Caradwat's son Kripa, endued with strength and prowess, waxing wroth at Arjuna, and unable to bear that sound, and eager for fight, took up his own sea-begotten conch and blew it vehemently. And filling the three worlds with that sound, that foremost of car-warriors took up a large bow and twanged the bow-string powerfully. And those mighty car-warriors, equal unto two suns, standing opposed to each other, shone like two masses of autumnal clouds. Then Caradwat's son quickly pierced Pārtha, that slayer of hostile heroes, with ten swift and whetted arrows capable of entering into the very vitals. And Prithā's son also, on his part, drawing that foremost of weapons, the *Gāndiva*, celebrated over the world, shot innumerable iron arrows, all capable of penetrating into the very core of the body. Thereupon Kripa, by means of whetted shafts, cut into hundreds and thousands of fragments, those blood-drinking arrows of Pārtha before they could come up. Then that mighty car-warrior, Pārtha also, in wrath, displaying various manœvres, covered all sides with a shower of arrows. And covering the entire welkin with his shafts, that mighty warrior of immeasurable soul, the son of Prithā, enveloped Kripa with hundreds of shafts. And sorely afflicted by those whetted arrows resembling flames of fire, Kripa waxed wroth, and quickly afflicting the high-souled Pārtha of immeasurable prowess with ten thousand shafts, set up on the field of battle a loud roar. Then the heroic Arjuna quickly pierced the four steeds of his adversary with four fatal arrows shot from the *Gāndiva*, sharp and straight, and furnished with golden wings.* And pierced by means of

* An entire line that is read here in some texts seems to be an interpolation. I have accordingly omitted it. It is *dhanurâdâya vivyâdha Pârtham daçabhirâçugais.—T.*

those whetted arrows resembling flames of fire, those steeds suddenly reared themselves, and in consequence Kripa reeled off his place. And seeing Gautama thrown off his place, that slayer of hostile heroes, the descendant of the Kuru race, out of regard for his opponent's dignity, ceased to discharge his shafts at him. Then regaining his proper place, Gautama quickly pierced Savyasāchin with ten arrows furnished with feathers of the *Kanka* bird. Then with a crescent-shaped arrow of keen-edge, Pārtha cut off Kripa's bow and leathern fences. And soon Pārtha cut off Kripa's coat of mail also by means of arrows capable of penetrating the very vitals, but he did not wound his person. And divested of his coat of mail, his body resembled that of a serpent which hath in season cast off its slough. And as soon as his bow had been cut off by Pārtha, Gautama took up another and stringed it in a trice. And, strange to say, that bow of his was also cut off by Kunti's son, by means of straight shafts. And in this way that slayer of hostile heroes, the son of Pāndu, cut off other bows as soon as they were taken up, one after another, by Caradwat's son. And when all his bows were thus cut off, that mighty hero hurled, from his car, at Pāndu's son, a javelin like unto the blazing thunder-bolt. Thereupon, as the gold-decked javelin came whizzing through the air with the flash of a meteor, Arjuna cut it off by means of ten arrows. And beholding his dart thus cut off by the intelligent Arjuna, Kripa quickly took up another bow and almost simultaneously shot a number of crescent-shaped arrows. Pārtha, however, quickly cut them into fragments by means of ten keen-edged shafts. And endued with great energy, the son of Prithā then, inflamed with wrath on the field of battle, discharged three and ten arrows whetted on stone and resembling flames of fire. And with one of these he cut off the yoke of his adversary's car, and with four pierced his four steeds, and with the sixth he severed the head of his antagonist's car-driver from off his body. And with three that mighty car-warrior pierced, in that encounter, the tripple bamboo pole of Kripa's car, and with two his two wheels. And with the twelfth arrow he cut off Kripa's flagstaff. And with the thirteenth Fālguna,

who was like Indra himself, as if smiling in derision, pierced Kripa in the breast. Then with his bow cut off, his car broken, his steeds slain, his car-driver killed, Kripa leapt down and taking up a mace quickly hurled it at Arjuna. But that heavy and polished mace hurled by Kripa was sent back along its course, struck by means of Arjuna's arrows. And then the warriors (of Kripa's division), desirous of rescuing the wrathful son of Caradwat, encountered Pārtha from all sides and covered him with their arrows. Then the son of Virāta, turning the steeds to the left, began to perform the circuitous evolution called *Yamaka* and thus withstood all those warriors. And those illustrious bulls among men, taking Kripa with them who had been deprived of his car, led him away from the vicinity of Dhananjaya the son of Kunti."

Thus ends the fifty-seventh Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LVIII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" After Kripa had thus been taken away, the invincible Drona of red steeds, taking up his bow to which he had already stringed an arrow, rushed towards Arjuna of white steeds. And beholding at no great distance from him the preceptor advancing on his golden car, Arjuna, that foremost of victorious warriors, addressing Uttara, said,—'Blessed be thou, O friend, carry me before that warrior on whose high banner-top is seen a golden altar resembling a long flame of fire and decked with numerous flags placed around, and whose car is drawn by steeds that are red and large, exceedingly handsome and highly trained, of face pleasant and quiet mien, and like unto corals in color and with faces of coppery hue, for that warrior is Drona with whom I desire to fight! Of long arms and endued with mighty energy, possessed of strength and beauty of person, celebrated over all the worlds for his prowess, resembling Uçanas himself in intelligence and Vrihaspati in knowledge of morality, he is conversant with the four *Vedas* and devoted to the practice

of *Brahmacharya* virtues. O friend, all the celestial weapons together with the mysteries of their withdrawal, and the entire science of weapons, always reside in him! Forgiveness, self-control, truth, abstention from injury, rectitude of conduct,—these and countless other virtues always dwell in that regenerate one. I desire to fight with that highly blessed one on the field! Therefore, take me before the preceptor and carry me thither, O Uttara!' "

Vaicampāyana continued.—" Thus addressed by Arjuna, Virāta's son urged his steeds decked with gold towards the car of Bharadwāja's son. And Drona also rushed towards the impetuously advancing Pārtha the son of Pāndu,—that foremost of car-warriors,—like an infuriate elephant rushing towards an infuriate compeer. And the son of Bharadwāja then blew his conch whose blare resembled that of a hundred trumpets. And at that sound the whole army became agitated like the sea in a tempest. And beholding those excellent steeds red in hue mingling in battle with Arjuna's steeds of swan-like whiteness endued with the speed of the mind, all the spectators were filled with wonder. And seeing on the field of battle those car-warriors—the preceptor Drona and his disciple Pārtha —both endued with prowess, both invincible, both well-trained, both possessed of great energy and great strength, engaged with each other, that mighty host of the Bharatas began to tremble frequently. And that mighty car-warrior Pārtha, possessed of great prowess and filled with joy upon reaching Drona's car on his own, saluted the preceptor. And that slayer of hostile heroes, the mighty-armed son of Kunti, then addressed Drona in an humble and sweet tone, saying,—'Having completed our exile in the woods, we are now desirous of avenging our wrongs. Ever invincible in battle, it doth not behove thee to be angry with us! O sinless one, I will not strike thee unless thou strikest me first. Even this is my intention. It behoveth thee to act as thou choosest.' Thus addressed, Drona discharged at him more than twenty arrows. But the light-handed Pārtha cut them off before they could reach him. And at this, the mighty Drona, displaying his lightness of hand in the use of weapons, covered Pārtha's car with a

thousand arrows. And desirous of angering Pārtha, that hero of immeasurable soul then covered his steeds of silvery whiteness with arrows whetted on stone and winged with the feathers of the *Kanka* bird. And when the battle between Drona and Kiritin thus commenced, both of them discharging in the encounter arrows of blazing splendour, both well-known for their achievements, both equal to the wind itself in speed, both conversant with celestial weapons, and both endued with mighty energy, began, shooting clouds of arrows, to bewilder the royal Kshatriyas. And all the warriors that were assembled there were filled with wonder at sight of all this. And they all admired Drona who quickly shot clouds of arrows, exclaiming,—*Well done! Well done! Indeed, who else, save Fālguna, is worthy of fighting with Drona in battle? Surely, the duties of a Kshatriya are stern, for Arjuna fighteth with even his own preceptor!* And it was thus that they who stood on the field of battle said unto one another. And inflamed with ire, those mighty-armed heroes standing before each other, and each incapable of overcoming the other, covered each other with arrowy showers. And Bharadwāja's son, waxing wroth, drew his large and unconquerable bow plaited on the back with gold, and pierced Fālguna with his arrows. And discharging at Arjuna's car innumerable whetted arrows possessed of solar effulgence, he entirely shrouded the light of the sun. And that great car-warrior of mighty arms, violently pierced Prithā's son with keen-edged shafts, even as the clouds shower upon a mountain. Then taking up that foremost of bows, the *Gāndiva*, destructive of foes and capable of withstanding the greatest strain, the impetuous son of Pāndu cheerfully discharged countless shafts of various kinds adorned with gold, and that powerful warrior also baffled in a moment Drona's arrowy shower by means of those shafts shot from his own bow. And at this the spectators wondered greatly. And the handsome Dhananjaya, the son of Prithā, ranging on his car, displayed his weapons on all sides at the same time. And the entire welkin, covered with his arrows, became one wide expanse of shade. And at this Drona became invisible like the sun enveloped in mist. And shrouded by

those excellent arrows on all sides, Drona looked like a mountain on fire. And beholding his own car completely enveloped by the arrows of Prithā's son, Drona, that ornament of battle, bent his terrible and foremost of bows whose noise was as loud as that of the clouds. And drawing that first of weapons, which was like unto a circle of fire, he discharged a cloud of keen-edged shafts. And then there were heard on the field loud sounds like the splitting of bamboos set on fire. And that warrior of immeasurable soul, shooting from his bow arrows furnished with golden wings, covered all sides, shrouding the very light of the sun. And those arrows with knots well peeled off,* and furnished with golden wings, looked like flocks of birds in the sky. And the arrows discharged by Drona from his bow, touching one another at the wings, appeared like one endless line in the sky. And those heroes, thus discharging their arrows decked with gold, seemed to cover the sky with showers of meteors. And furnished with feathers of the *Kanka* bird, those arrows looked like rows of cranes ranging in the autumnal sky. And the fierce and terrible encounter that took place between the illustrious Drona and Arjuna resembled that between Vritra and Vāsava of old. And discharging arrows at each other from bows drawn at their fullest stretch, they resembled two elephants assailing each other with their tusks. And those wrathful warriors—those ornaments of battle—fighting strictly according to established usage, displayed in that conflict various celestial weapons in due order. Then that foremost of victorious men, Arjuna, by means of his keen shafts resisted the whetted arrows shot by that best of preceptors. And displaying before the spectators various weapons, that hero of terrible prowess covered the sky with various kinds of arrows. And beholding that

* The arrows used in ancient warfare in India were of various kinds. Some were of iron or steel heads attached to sticks of reed or bamboo. Some consisted entirely of iron or steel. The feathers of vultures and various other birds were used for increasing their celerity. Both the reed and the bamboo consist of *parvas* or knots. If these knots were well peeled off, the stick would be straight as a roller. Hence *Nataparva* or *ānataparva* means—' with knots well-peeled off." To avoid periphrasis, I have generally rendered this word as "straight."—*T.*

tiger among men, Arjuna, endued with fierce energy and intent upon striking him, that foremost of warriors and best of preceptors (from affection) began to fight with him playfully by means of smooth and straight arrows. And Bharadwāja's son fought on with Fālguna, resisting with his own the celestial weapons shot by the former. And the fight that took place between those enraged lions among men, incapable of bearing each other, was like unto the encounter between the gods and the *Dānavas*. And the son of Pāndu repeatedly baffled with his own, the *Aindra*, the *Vāyavya*, and the *Agneya* weapons that were shot by Drona. And discharging keen shafts, those mighty bowmen, by their arrowy showers, completely covered the sky and made a wide expanse of shade. And then the arrows shot by Arjuna, falling on the bodies of hostile warriors, produced the crash of the thunder-bolt. And, O king, elephants, cars, and horses, bathed in blood, looked like *Kinçuka* trees crowned with flowers. And in that encounter between Drona and Arjuna, beholding the field covered with arms decked with bangles, and gorgeously-attired car-warriors, and coats of mail variegated with gold, and with banners lying scattered all about, and with warriors slain by means of Pārtha's arrows, the Kuru host became panic-stricken. And shaking their bows capable of bearing much strain, those combatants began to shroud and weaken each other with their shafts. And, O bull of the Bharata race, the encounter that took place between Drona and Kunti's son was dreadful in the extreme, and resembled that between Vali and Vāsava. And staking their very lives, they began to pierce each other with straight arrows shot from their fully-stretched bowstrings. And a voice was heard in the sky applauding Drona, and saying,—'Difficult is the feat performed by Drona, inasmuch as he fighteth with Arjuna,—that grinder of foes, that warrrior endued with mighty energy, of firm grasp, and invincible in battle,—that conqueror of both celestials and *Daityas*, that foremost of all car-warriors.' And beholding Pārtha's infallibility, training, fleetness of hand, and the range also of Arjuna's arrows, Drona became amazed. And, O bull of the Bharata race, lifting up his excellent bow, the *Gāndiva*, the unforbear-

ing Pārtha drew it now with one hand and now with another and shot an arrowy shower. And beholding that shower resembling a flight of locusts, the spectators wonderingly applauded him, exclaiming,—'Excellent!—'Excellent!' And so ceaselessly did he shoot his arrows that the very air was unable to penetrate the thick array. And the spectators could not perceive any interval between the taking up of the arrows, and letting them off. And in that fierce encounter characterised by lightness of hand in the discharge of weapons, Pārtha began to shoot his arrows more quickly than before. And then all at once hundreds and thousands of straight arrows fell upon Drona's car. And, O bull of the Bharata race, beholding Drona completely covered by the wielder of the *Gāndiva* with his arrows, the Kuru army set up exclamations of *'Oh!'* and *'Alas!'* And Maghavat, together with those *Gandharvas* and *Apsaras* that had come there, applauded the fleetness of Pārtha's hand. And that mighty car-warrior, the preceptor's son, then resisted the Pāndava with a mighty array of cars. And although enraged with Arjuna, yet Açwathāman mentally admired that feat of the high-souled son of Prithā. And waxing wroth, he rushed towards Pārtha, and discharged at him an arrowy shower like a heavy down-pour by the clouds. And turning his steeds towards Drona's son, Pārtha gave Drona an opportunity to leave the field. And thereupon the latter, wounded in that terrible encounter, and his mail and banner gone, sped away by the aid of swift horses."

Thus ends the fifty-eighth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section LIX.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then, O mighty king, Drona's son rushed to an encounter with Arjuna in battle. And beholding him rush to the conflict like a hurricane, showering shafts like a rain-charged cloud, Prithā's son received him with a cloud of arrows. And terrible was the encounter between

them, like that between the gods and the *Dānavas*. And they shot arrows at each other like Vritra and Vāsava. And the welkin being enveloped on all sides with arrows, the sun was completely hidden, and the air itself was hushed. And, O conqueror of hostile cities, as they assailed and struck each other, loud sounds arose as of bamboos on fire. And, O king, Açwathāman's horses being sorely afflicted by Arjuna, they became bewildered and could not ascertain which way to go. And as Prithā's son ranged on the field, the powerful son of Drona, finding an opportunity, cut off the string of the *Gāndiva* with an arrow furnished with a horse-shoe head. And beholding that extraordinary feat of his, the celestials applauded him highly. And exclaiming,—'Well done'—'Well done!'—Drona and Bhishma, and Karna, and that mighty warrior Kripa, all applauded that feat of his greatly. And the son of Drona, drawing his excellent bow, pierced with his shafts, furnished with the feathers of the *Kanka* bird, the breast of Pārtha, that bull among warriors. Thereupon, with a loud laughter, the mighty-armed son of Prithā attached a strong and fresh string to the *Gāndiva*. And moistening his bowstring with the sweat that stood on his forehead resembling the crescent moon,* Prithā's son advanced towards his adversary, even as an infuriate leader of a herd of elephants rusheth at another elephant. And the encounter that took place between those two matchless heroes on the field of battle was exceedingly fierce and made the bristles of the spectators stand on their ends. And as those heroes endued with mighty energy fought on, like two mighty elephants, the Kurus beheld them with wonder. And those brave bulls among men assailed each other with arrows of snaky forms and resembling blazing fires. And as the couple of quivers belonging to the Pāndava was inexhaustible, that hero was able to remain on the field immovable as a mountain. And as Açwathāman's arrows, in

---

* *Ardhachandramàvrityā* is explained by Nilakantha thus. The Burdwan Pundits explain it as meaning—"half wheeling his car." It is difficult to decide which of these is correct. I choose to follow Nilakantha who is a safe guide as regards such passages.—*T.*

consequence of his ceaseless discharge in that conflict, were quickly exhausted, it was for this that Arjuna prevailed over his adversary. Then Karna, drawing his large bow with great force, twanged the bowstring. And thereupon arose loud exclamations of *'Oh!'* and *'Alas!'* And Prithā's son, casting his eyes towards the spot where that bow was twanged, beheld before him the son of Rādhā. And at that sight his wrath was greatly excited. And inflamed with ire, and desirous of slaying Karna, that bull of the Kuru race stared at him with rolling eyes. And, O king, beholding Pārtha turn away from Açwathāman's side, the Kuru warriors discharged thousands of arrows on Arjuna. And the mighty-armed Dhananjaya, that conqueror of foes, leaving Drona's son, all of a sudden rushed towards Karna. And rushing towards Karna, with eyes reddened in anger, the son of Kunti, desirous of a single combat with him, said these words!"

Thus ends the fifty-ninth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LX.

(*Go-harana Parva continued.*)

"Arjuna said,—'The time, O Karna, hath now come for making good thy loquacious boast in the midst of the assembly, *viz*, that there is none equal to thee in fight! To-day, O Karna, contending with me in terrible conflict, thou shalt know thy own strength, and shalt no longer disregard others! Abandoning good breeding, thou hadst uttered many harsh words, but this that thou endeavorest to do, is, I think, exceedingly difficult. Do thou now, O Rādhā's son, contending with me in the sight of the Kurus, make good what thou hadst said before in disregard of myself!* Thou who hadst witnessed Pānchāla's princess outraged by villains in the midst of the court, do thou now reap the fruit of that act of thine! Fettered by the bonds of morality before, I desisted from

---

* Some texts read *māmanāsàdya* for *màmanàdritya*. The difference in meaning is scarcely of much consequence.—*T.*

vengeance then. Behold now, O son of Rādhā, the fruit of that wrath in the conflict at hand! O wicked wight, we have suffered much misery in the forest for full twelve years! Reap thou today the fruits of our concentrated vengeance! Come, O Karna, cope with me in battle! Let these thy Kaurava warriors witness the conflict!' Hearing these words, Karna replied,—'Do thou, O Pārtha, accomplish in deed what thou sayst in words! The world knows that thy words verily exceed thy deeds! That thou hadst foreborne formerly was owing to thy inability to do anything. If we witness thy prowess even now, we may acknowledge its truth. If thy past forbearance was due to thy having been bound by the bonds of morality, truly thou art equally bound now although thou regardest thyself free! Having, as thou sayst, passed thy exile in the woods in strict accordance with thy pledge, and being therefore weakened by practising an ascetic course of life, how canst thou desire a combat with me now! O Prithā's son, if Cakra himself fight on thy side, still I would feel no anxiety in putting forth my prowess! Thy wish, O son of Kunti, is about to be gratified! Do thou fight with me now, and behold my strength!' Hearing this, Arjuna said,—'Even now, O Rādhā's son, thou hadst fled from battle with me, and it is for this that thou livest although thy younger brother hath been slain! What other person, save thee, having beheld his younger brother slain in battle would himself fly from the field, and boast as thou dost, amid good men and true?' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said these words unto Kārna, the invincible Vibhatsu rushed at him and charged a volley of shafts capable of penetrating through a coat of mail. But that mighty car-warrior, Karna, received with great alacrity that discharge with an arrowy shower of his own, heavy as the down-pour of the clouds. And that fierce volley of arrows covered all sides and severally pierced the steeds and arms and leathern fences of the combatants. And incapable of putting up with that assault, Arjuna cut off the strings of Karna's quiver by means of a straight and sharp arrow. Thereupon taking out from his quiver another arrow, Karna pierced the Pāṇḍava in the hand, at which the latter's hold of

the bow was loosened. And then the mighty-armed Pārtha cut off Karna's bow into fragments. And Karna replied by hurling a dart at his adversary, but Arjuna cut it off by means of his arrows. And then the warriors that followed the son of Rādhā rushed in crowds at Arjuna, but Pārtha sent them all to the abode of Yama by means of arrows shot from the *Gāndiva.* And Vibhatsu slew the steeds of Karna by means of sharp and tough arrows shot from the bow-string drawn to the ear, and deprived of life they dropped down on the ground. And taking another sharp and blazing arrow endued with great energy, the mighty son of Kunti pierced the breast of Karna. And that arrow, cleaving through his mail, penetrated into his body. And at this, Karna's vision was obscured and his senses left him. And regaining consciousness, he felt a great pain, and leaving the combat fled in a northerly direction. And at this the mighty car-warrior Arjuna, and Uttara, both began to address him with contumely."

Thus ends the sixtieth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section LXI.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having defeated Vikartana's son, Arjuna said unto the son of Virāta,—'Take me towards that division where yonder device of a golden palmyra is seen. There our grandfather, Cāntanu's son, like unto a celestial, waiteth, desirous of an encounter with me.' Thereupon, beholding that mighty host thronged with cars and horses and elephants, Uttara, sorely pierced with arrows, said,—'O hero, I am no longer able to guide thy excellent steeds! My spirits droop and my mind is exceedingly bewildered. All the directions seem to be whirling before my eyes in consequence of the energy of the celestial weapons used by thee and the Kurus. I have been deprived of my senses by the stench of fat and blood and flesh. Beholding all this, from terror my mind is, as it were, cleft in twain.* Never

---

* Some editions read *tava chaiva prapaçyatas* for *tràsāçhchaiva prapaçyatas.* The latter is unquestionably better.—*T.*

before had I beheld such a muster of heroes in battle. And at the flapping of fences,* and the blare of conchs, the leonine roars made by the warriors, and the shrieks of elephants, and the twang of the *Gāndiva* resembling the thunder, I have, O hero, been so stupified that I have been deprived of both hearing and memory! And, O hero, beholding thee incessantly drawing to a circle, in course of the conflict, the *Gāndiva* which resembleth a circle of fire, my sight faileth me and my heart is rent asunder.† And seeing thy fierce form in battle, like that of the wielder of the *Pināka* while inflamed with wrath, and looking also at the terrible arrows shot by thee, I am filled with fear.‡ I fail to see when thou takest up thy excellent arrows, when thou fixest them on the bow-string, and when thou lettest them off. And though all this is done before my eyes, yet, deprived of my senses, I do not see it! My spirits are drooping, and the earth itself seems to be swiming before me. I have no strength to hold the whip and the reins!' Hearing these words, Arjuna said,—'Do thou not fear! Assure thyself! Thou also hast, on the field of battle, performed, O bull among men, wonderful feats! Blessed be thou, thou art a prince and born in the illustrious line of Matsya! It behoveth thee not to feel dispirited in chastising thy foes! Therefore, O prince, stationed on my car, muster all thy fortitude and hold the reins of my steeds, O slayer of foes, when I once more engage in battle!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said this unto Virāta's son, that best of men and foremost of car-warriors, the mighty-armed Arjuna, again addressed the son of Virāta, saying,—'Take me without delay to the van of Bhishma's division! I will cut off his very bow-string in the battle! Thou shalt behold today the celestial weapons of blazing beauty, shot by me, look like flashes of lightning disporting amid the clouds

* The true reading is *Godhāghātena* and not *Gadāghātena* or *Gadāpātena*. *Godhā* is the fence worn by archers, made of *Iguāna* skin.—*T.*

† For *Gāndivancha prapaçyatas* some editions read *Gāndivancha prakarshatā* which is evidently wrong.—*T.*

‡ Some editions read *Vyayacchatastava bhujam* for *Vyāyacchatas çavān ghorān.* The latter is undoubtedly preferable.—*T.*

in the sky! The Kauravas shall behold the gold-decked back of my *Gāndiva* today, and assembled together the foe shall dispute, saying,—*By which hand of his, the right or the left, doth he shoot?** And I shall cause a dreadful river (of death) to flow today towards the other world with blood for its waters and cars for its eddies, and elephants for its crocodiles. I shall today, with my straight arrows, extirpate the *Kuru*-forest having hands and feet and heads and backs and arms for the branches of its trees. Alone, bow in hand, vanquishing the Kuru host, a hundred paths shall open before me like those of a forest in conflagration. Struck by me, thou shalt today behold the Kuru army moving round and round like a wheel (unable to fly off the field). I shall show thee today my excellent training in arrows and weapons! Stay thou on my car firmly, whether the ground be smooth or uneven. I can pierce with my winged arrows even the mountains of *Sumeru* that stand touching the very heavens! I slew of old, at Indra's command, hundreds and thousands of *Pāulomas* and *Kālakhanjas* in battle! I have obtained my firmness of grasp from Indra, and my lightness of hand from *Brahman*, and I have learnt various modes of fierce attack and defence amid crowds of foes from *Prajāpati*. I vanquished, on the other side of the great ocean, sixty thousands of car-warriors—all fierce archers—residing in *Hiranyapura*. Behold, now I defeat the multitudinous host of the Kurus, like a tempest scattering a heap of cotton. With my fiery arrows I shall today set the *Kuru*-forest to fire, having banners for its trees, the foot-soldiers for its shrubs, and the car-warriors for its beasts of prey. Like unto the wielder of the thunder-bolt overthrowing the *Dānavas*, alone I shall, with my straight arrows, bring down from the chambers of their cars the mighty warriors of the Kuru army stationed therein and struggling in the conflict to the best of their power. I have obtained from *Rudra* the *Raudra*, from *Varuna* the *Vāruna*, from Agni the *Agneya*,

* The correct reading is *Swidasyati*, although, as some editions read, *Swidasyatas* (in the genitive singular) would not be ungrammatical.—*T.*

from the god of Wind the *Vāyava*, and from Cakra the thunderbolt and other weapons. I shall certainly exterminate the fierce *Dhārtarāshshtra*-forest though protected by many leonine warriors.Therefore, O Virāta's son, let thy fears be dispelled !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus assured by Savyasāchin, the son of Virāta penetrated into that fierce array of cars protected by Bhishma. The son of the river, however, of fierce deeds, cheerfully withstood the mighty-armed hero advancing from desire of vanquishing the heroes in battle. Jishnu then, confronting Bhishma, cut off his standard clean off at the roots by shooting a gold-decked arrow pierced by which it fell to the ground. And at this, four mighty warriors, Dusçāsana and Vikarna and Dussaha and Vivingçati, skilled in weapons and endued with great energy, and all decked with handsome garlands and ornaments, rushed towards that terrible bowman. And advancing towards Vibhatsu—that fierce archer, these all encompassed him around. Then the heroic Dusçāsana pierced the son of Virāta with a crescent-shaped arrow and he pierced Arjuna, with another arrow in the breast. And Jishnu, confronting Dusçāsana, cut off by means of a sharp-edged arrow furnished with vulturine wings his adversary's bow plaited with gold, and then pierced his person in the breast by means of five arrows. And afflicted by the arrows of Pārtha, Dusçāsana fled, leaving the combat. Then Vikarna, the son of Dhritarāshtra, pierced Arjuna—that slayer of hostile heroes, by means of sharp and straight arrows furnished with vulturine wings. But the son of Kunti within a moment hit him also in the forehead with straight shafts. And pierced by Arjuna, he fell down from his car. And at this, Dussah, supported by Vivingçati, covered Arjuna with a cloud of sharp arrows, impelled by the desire of rescuing his brother. Dhananjaya, however, without the least anxiety, pierced both of them almost at the same instant of time by means of a couple of keen-edged arrows and then slew the steeds of both. And thereupon both those sons of Dhritarāshtra, deprived of their steeds and their bodies mangled, were taken away by the warriors behind them who had rushed forward with other cars, Then the unvan-

quished Vibhatsu, the mighty son of Kunti, decked with diadem and sure of aim, simultaneously attacked all sides with his arrows."

Thus ends the sixty-first Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LXII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then, O thou of the Bharata race, all the great car-warriors of the Kurus, united together, began to assail Arjuna to the best of their might from all sides. But that hero of immeasurable soul completely covered all those mighty car-warriors with clouds of arrows, even as the mist covereth the mountains. And the roars of huge elephants, and the neighing of steeds, and the sounds of cymbals and conchs, mingling together, produced a loud uproar.* And penetrating through the bodies of elephants† and horses as also through steel coats of mail, the arrows shot by Pārtha fell by thousands. And shooting shafts with the utmost celerity, the son of Pāndu seemed in that contest to resemble the blazing sun of an autumnal midday. And afflicted with fear, the car-warriors began to leap down from their cars and the horse-soldiers from horse-back, while the foot-soldiers began to fly in all directions. And loud was the clatter made by Arjuna's shafts as they cleft the coats of mail belonging to mighty warriors, made of steel, silver, and copper. And the field was soon covered with the corpses of warriors mounted on elephants and horses, all mangled by the shafts of Pārtha.‡

---

* The Roy Press edition reads *Mahàvegais* for *Mahánāgais*. The former is simply ridiculous.—*T.*

† The same text reads *Narāçwa* &c., for *Nāgâçwa &c.* The former is evidently incorrect, for "the steel coats of mail" referred to immediately after mean coats of mail worn by the men.—*T.*

‡ The second foot of the second line of this *sloka* is variously read. Some texts read *çirobhis patitāirapi*, and others *çilâvânâttajivitās*. The correct reading, as I apprehend, is that given by the Burdwan Pundits. It is *Párthàvānaprapiditais* qualifying *çarirais* in the first line.—*T.*

And then it seemed as if Dhananjaya, bow in hand, was dancing on the field of battle.* And sorely affrighted at the twang of the *Gāndiva* resembling the noise of the thunder, many were the combatants that fled from that terrible conflict. And the field of battle was bestrewn with severed heads decked with turbans and ear-rings and necklaces of gold. And the earth looked beautiful by being scattered all over with human trunks mangled by shafts, and arms having bows in their grasp and hands decked with ornaments. And, O bull of the Bharata race, in consequence of heads cut off by whetted shafts ceaselessly falling on the ground, it seemed as if a shower of stones fell from the sky. And that Pārtha who had passed three and ten years in seclusion, that Pāndava of formidable prowess, displaying his fierceness, now ranged the field of battle, pouring the terrible fire of his wrath upon the sons of Dhritarāshtra. And beholding the fierce prowess of Arjuna who thus scorched the hostile host, the Kuru warriors, in the very presence of Duryodhana, became dispirited and ceased to fight! And, O Bhārata, having struck terror into that host and routed those mighty car-warriors, that foremost of victors, Arjuna, ranged on the field. And the son of Pāndu then created on the field of battle a dreadful river of blood, with waving billows, like unto the river of death that is created by Time at the end of the *Yuga*, having the disheveled hair of the dead and the dying for its floating moss and straw,† with bows and arrows for its boats, fierce in the extreme, and having flesh and animal juices for its mire.‡ And coats of mail and turbans floated thick on its surface. And elephants constituted its alligators and the cars its rafts.§ And marrow and fat and blood constituted its current. And it was calculated to strike terror into the hearts of the spectators.

---

* Some texts add half a line here; it is evidently an interpolation.—*T.*

† Some read *Asthi-çaivâla* &c. for *keça-caivàla* &c.—*T.*

‡ In some texts, *Keça-çaivālacādvalām* for *Màngsa-çonita-karddamām.* *çonita* here would mean animal juices of all kinds.—*T.*

§ The Burdwan Pundits read *Nāga-nakrām Rathodwipām* for *Nāga-kurmām-mahadwipām.* The former is undoubtedly better.—*T.*

And dreadful to behold, and fearful in the extreme, and resounding with the yells of ferocious beasts, keen-edged weapons constituted its crocodiles. And *Rākshasas* and other cannibals haunted it from one end to the other. And strings of pearls constituted its ripples, and various excellent ornaments, its bubbles. And having swarms of arrows for its fierce eddies and steeds for its tortoises, it was incapable of being crossed. And the mighty car-warriors constituted its large islands, and it resounded with the blare of conchs and the sound of drums. And the river of blood that Pārtha created was incapable of being crossed. Indeed, so swift-handed was Arjuna that the spectators could not perceive any interval between his taking up an arrow, and fixing it on the bow-string, and letting it off by a stretch of the *Gāndiva!*"

Thus ends the sixty-second Section of the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LXIII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Then while a great havoc was being made among the Kurus, Cāntanu's son, Bhishma, the grandsire of the Bharatas, rushed at Arjuna, taking up an excellent bow adorned with gold, and many arrows also of keen points and capable of piercing into the very vitals of the foe and afflicting him sorely. And in consequence of a white umbrella being held over his head, that tiger among men looked beautiful like unto a hill at sun-rise. And the son of Gangā, blowing his conch cheered the sons of Dhritarāshtra, and wheeling along his right came upon Vibhatsu and impeded his course. And that slayer of hostile heroes, the son of Kunti, beholding him approach, received him with a glad heart, like a hill receiving a rain-charged cloud. And Bhishma, endued with great energy, pierced Pārtha's flag-staff with eight arrows of great impetuosity like unto sighing snakes. And those arrows reaching the flag-staff of Pāndu's son, struck the blazing ape and those creatures also stationed in the banner-top.

And then the son of Pāndu, with a mighty javelin of sharp edge cut off Bhishma's umbrella which instantly fell on the ground. And then the light-handed son of Kunti struck his adversary's flag-staff also with many shafts, and then his steeds and then the couple of drivers that protected Bhishma's flanks. And unable to bear this, Bhishma, though cognisant of the Pāndava's might, covered Dhananjaya with a powerful celestial weapon. And the son of Pāndu, of immeasurable soul, hurling in return a celestial weapon at Bhishma, received him like a hill receiving a deep mass of clouds. And the encounter that took place between Pārtha and Bhishma, was fierce and terrible like that between Vali and Vāsava of old. And all the Kaurava warriors with their troops stood as lookers-on. And in that conflict between Bhishma and the son of Pāndu, shafts striking against shafts shone in the air like fire-flies in the season of rains. And, O king, in consequence of Pārtha's shooting arrows with both his right and left hands, the bent *Gāndiva* seemed like a continuous circle of fire. And the son of Kunti then covered Bhishma with hundreds of sharp and keen-edged arrows, like a cloud covering the mountain-breast with its heavy down-pour. And Bhishma baffled with his own arrows that arrowy shower, like the bank resisting the swelling sea, and covered the son of Pāndu in return. And those warriors, cut into a thousand pieces in battle, fell fast in the vicinity of Fālguna's car. And then there was a down-pour, from the car of Pāndu's son, of arrows furnished with golden wings, and ranging through the sky like a flight of locusts. And Bhishma again repelled that arrowy shower with hundreds of whetted shafts shot by him. And then the Kauravas exclaimed,—'Excellent! Excellent!—Indeed, Bhishma hath performed an exceedingly difficult feat inasmuch as he hath fought with Arjuna! Dhananjaya is mighty and youthful,* and dexterous and swift of hand! Who else, save Bhishma, the son of Cāntanu, or Krishna the son of Devaki, or the mighty son of Bharadwāja, the foremost of preceptors, is able to bear the impetus of Pārtha in battle?' And repelling weapons with

* Some editions read *Tu Rana Daksha* for *Tàrunas Dâkshas* &c.—*T.*

weapons, those two bulls of the Bharata race, both endued with great might, fought on playfully and infatuated the eyes of all created beings. And those illustrious warriors ranged on the field of battle, using the celestial weapons obtained from *Prajāpati*, and *Indra*, and *Agni*, and the fierce *Rudra*, and *Kuvera*, and *Varuna*, and *Yama* and *Vāyu*, And all beings were greatly surprised, upon beholding those warriors engaged in combat. And they all exclaimed,—'*Bravo Pārtha of long arms! Bravo Bhishma! Indeed, this application of celestial weapons that is being witnessed in the combat between Bhishma and Pārtha is rare among human beings!*' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus raged that conflict with weapons between those warriors conversant will all weapons. And when that conflict of celestial weapons ceased, then commenced a conflict with arrows. And Jishnu, approaching his opponent, cut off with an arrow sharp like a razor the gold-decked bow of Bhishma. Within the twinkling of the eye, however, Bhishma, that mighty-armed and great car-warrior, took up another bow and stringed it. And inflamed with wrath, he showered upon Dhananjaya a cloud of arrows. And Arjuna, too, endued with great energy, rained upon Bhishma innumerable sharp-pointed and keen-edged arrows. And Bhishma also shot clouds of arrows upon Pāndu's son. And conversant with celestial weapons and engaged in shooting at each other arrows of keen points, no distinction, O king, could then be perceived between those illustrious warriors. And that mighty car-warrior, Kunti's son crowned with a diadem, and the heroic son of Cāntanu, obscured the ten directions with their arrows. And the Pāndava covered Bhishma, and Bhishma also covered the Pāndava, with clouds of shafts. Ad, O king, wonderful was this combat that took place in this world of men. And the heroic warriors that protected Bhishma's car, slain by the son of Pāndu, fell prostrate, O monarch, beside the car of Kunti's son. And the feathery arrows of Cetavāhana, shot from the *Gāndiva*, fell in all directions as if with the object of making a wholesale slaught-

er of the foe. And issuing forth from his car, those blazing arrows furnished with golden wings looked like rows of swans in the sky. And all the celestials with Indra, stationed in the firmament, gazed with wonder upon another celestial weapon hurled with great force by that wonderful archer, Arjuna. And beholding that wonderful weapon of great beauty, the mighty *Gandharva*, Chitrasena, highly pleased, addressed the lord of celestials, saying,—'Behold these arrows shot by Pārtha coursing through the sky in one continuous line! Wonderful is the dexterity of Jishnu in evolving this celestial weapon! Human beings are incapable of shooting such a weapon, for it does not exist among men! How wonderful again is this concourse of mighty weapons existing from days of old! No interval can be perceived between his taking up the arrows, fixing them on the bow-string, and letting them off by stretching the *Gándiva*. The soldiers are incapable of even looking at the son of Pāndu, who is like unto the midday sun blazing in the sky! So also none venture to look at Bhishma, the son of Gangā! Both are famous for their achievements, and both are of fierce prowess. Both are equal in feats of heroism, and both difficult of being vanquished in battle!'

'Thus addressed by the *Gandharva* about that combat between Pārtha and Bhishma, the lord of the celestials, O Bhārata, paid proper respect unto both by a shower of celestial flowers. Meanwhile Bhishma the son of Cāntanu assailed Arjuna on the left side, while that drawer of the bow with either hands was on the point of piercing him. And at this Vibhatsu, laughing aloud, cut off, with an arrow of keen edge and furnished with vulturine wings, the bow of Bhishma, that hero of solar effulgence. And then Dhananjaya the son of Kunti pierced Bhishma in the breast with ten shafts although the latter was contending with all his prowess. And sorely afflicted with pain, Gangā's son of mighty of arms and irresistible in battle, stood for a long time leaning on the pole of his car. And beholding him deprived of consciousness, the driver of his car-steeds, calling to mind the instructions about protecting the warrior when in a swoon, led him away for safety."

Thus ends the sixty-third Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LXIV.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"After Bhishma had fled, leaving the van of battle, the illustrious son of Dhritarāshtra hoisting high his flag approached Arjuna, bow in hand and setting up a loud roar.* And with a spear-headed shaft shot from his bow stretched to the ear, he pierced on the forehead that terrible bowman of fierce prowess, Dhananjaya, ranging amidst the foes. And pierced with that keen shaft† of golden point on the forehead, that hero of famous deeds looked resplendant, O king, like unto a beautiful hill with a single peak. And cut by that arrow, the warm life-blood gushed out profusely from the wound. And the blood trickling down his body shone beautifully like a wreath of golden flowers.‡ And struck by Duryodhana with the shaft, the swift-handed Arjuna of unfailing strengh, swelling with rage, pierced the king in return, taking up arrows that were endued with the energy of snakes of virulent poison. And Duryodhana of formidable energy attacked Pārtha, and Pārtha also, that foremost of heroes, attacked Duryodhana. And it was thus that those foremost of men, both born in the race of Ajamida, struck each other alike in the combat. And then (seated) on an infuriate elephant huge as a mountain and supported by four cars, Vikarna rushed against Jishnu the son of Kunti. And beholding that huge elephant advancing with speed, Dhananjaya struck him on the head between the temples with an iron arrow of great impetus shot from the bow-string stretched to the ear. And like the thunderbolt hurled by Indra splitting a mountain,

---

* Some editions read *utsritya* for *ucchritya*. The former is evidently incorrect. Also *swayam vigrihya* for *Dhanurvigrihya*. The latter is undoubtedly preferable.—*T*.

† In some texts *susamhitena* for *susamçitena*. The former is incorrect. —*T*.

‡ A material difference of reading is observable in the second line of this *sloka*. I have adopted the reading of the Burdwan Pundits.—*T*.

that arrow furnished with vulturine wings, shot by Pārtha, penetrated, up to the very feathers, into the body of that elephant huge as a hill. And sorely afflicted by the shaft, that lord of the elephant species began to tremble, and deprived of strength fell down on the ground in intense anguish, like the peak of a mountain riven by thunder. And that best of elephants falling down on the earth, Vikarna suddenly alighting in great terror, ran back full eight hundred paces and ascended on the car of Vivinçati. And having slain with that thunder-like arrow that elephant huge as a mighty hill and looking like a mass of clouds, the son of Prithā smote Duryodhana in the breast with another arrow of the same kind. And both the elephant and the king having thus been wounded, and Vikarna having broken and fled along with the supporters of the king's car, the other warriors, smitten with the arrows shot from the *Gāndiva*, fled from the field in panic. And beholding the elephant slain by Pārtha, and all the other warriors running away, Duryodhana, the foremost of the Kurus, turning away his car precipitately fled in that direction where Pārtha was not. And when Duryodhana was fast running away in alarm, pierced by that arrow and vomitting forth blood, Kiritin, still eager for battle and capable of enduring every enemy, thus censured him from wrath,—'Sacrificing thy great fame and glory, why dost thou fly away, turning thy back? Why are not those trumpets sounded now, as they were when thou hadst set out from thy kingdom? Lo, I am an obedient servant of Yudhisthira, myself being the third son of Prithā, standing here for battle! Turn back, show me thy face, O son of Dhritarāshtra, and bear in thy mind the behaviour of kings! The name *Duryodhana* bestowed on thee before is rendered meaningless! When thou runnest away, leaving the battle, where is thy persistence in battle? Neither before nor behind do I behold thy body-guards, O Duryodhana! O foremost of men, fly thou away and save thy life which is dear from the hands of Pāndu's son!' "

Thus ends the sixty-fourth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section LXV.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Thus summoned to battle by the illustrious hero, Dhritarāshtra's son turned back stung by those censures, like an infuriate and mighty elephant pricked up by a hook. And stung by those reproaches and unable to bear them, that mighty and brave car-warrior endued with great swiftness, turned back on his car, like a snake that is trampled under foot. And beholding Duryodhana turn back with his wounds, Karna, that hero among men, decked with a golden necklace, stopped the king on the way and soothing him, himself proceeded along the north of Duryodhana's car to meet Pārtha in battle. And the mighty-armed Bhishma also, the son of Cāntanu, turning back his steeds decked with gold, enormous in size and of tawny hue, rushed, bow in hand, for protecting Duryodhana from Pārtha's hands. And Drona and Kripa and Vivinçati and Dusçāsana and others also, quickly turning back, rushed forward with speed with drawn bows and arrows fixed on the bow-strings, for protecting Duryodhana. And beholding those divisions advance towards him like the swelling surges of the ocean, Dhananjaya, the son of Prithā, quicky rushed at them like a crane rushing at a descending cloud. And with celestial weapons in their hands, they completely surrounded the son of Prithā and rained on him from all sides a perfect shower of shafts, like clouds showering on the mountain-breast a heavy downpour of rain. And warding off with weapons all the weapons of those bulls among the Kurus, the wielder of the *Gāndiva* who was capable of enduring all foes, evolved another irresistible weapon obtained from Indra, called *Sanmohana.** And entirely covering the cardinal and other directions with sharp and keen-edged arrows furnished with beautiful feathers, that mighty

* A difference of reading is observable here. For *Aindram* some editions read *Aindra*. I have adopted the former reading ; if the latter be correct, it would be an adjective of *Gāndiva-dhanwan*. The weapon called *sanmohana* stupified the senses of all.—*T*

hero stupified their senses with the twang of the *Gāndiva*. And once more, taking up with both his hands that large conch of loud blare, Pārtha, that slayer of foes, blew it with force and filled the cardinal and other points, the whole earth, and the sky, with that noise. And those foremost of the Kuru heroes were all deprived of their senses by the sound of that conch blown by Pārtha. And all of them stood still, their bows, from which they were never separated, dropping down from their hands. And when the Kuru army became insensible, Pārtha calling to mind the words of Uttarā, addressed the son of the Matsya king, saying,—'O best of men, go thou among the Kurus, so long as they remain insensible, and bring away the white garments of Drona and Kripa, and the yellow and handsome ones of Karna, as also the blue ones of the king and Drona's son. Methinks, Bhishma is not stupified, for he knoweth how to counteract this weapon of mine. So, pass thou on, keeping his steeds to thy left; for those that are sensible should thus be avoided!' Hearing these words, the illustrious son of Matsya, giving up the reins of the steeds, jumped down from the car and taking off the garments of the warriors, came back to his place. And the son of Virāta then urged the four handsome steeds with flanks adorned with golden armours. And those white steeds, urged on, took Arjuna away from the midst of the battle-field and beyond the array of the infantry bearing standards in their hands. And Bhishma, beholding that best of men thus going away, struck him with arrows. And Pārtha too, having slain Bhishma's steeds, pierced him with ten shafts. And abandoning Bhishma on the field of battle, having first slain his car-driver, Arjuna with a good-looking bow in hand, came out of that multitude of cars, like the sun emerging from the clouds. And Dhritarāshtra's son, that foremost of heroes among the Kurus, recovering his senses, saw the son of Prithā standing like the lord of the celestials, alone on the battle-field. And he said in a hurry (unto Bhishma),—'How hath this one escaped from thee? Do thou afflict him in such a way that he may not escape.' And at this, Cāntanu's son, smiling, said unto him, —'Where had been this sense of thine, and where had been thy

prowess too, when thou hadst been in a state of unconsciousness, renouncing thy arrows and handsome bow ? Vibhatsu is not addicted to the commission of atrocious deeds : nor is his soul inclined to sin. He renounceth not his principles even for the sake of the three worlds. It is for this only that all of us have not been slain in this battle ! O thou foremost of Kuru heroes, go back to the city of the Kurus, and let Pārtha also go away, having conquered the kine. Do thou never foolishly throw away thy own good. Indeed, that which leadeth to one's welfare ought to be accomplished.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Having listened to the words of the grandsire that tended to his own welfare, the wrathful king Duryodhana, no longer eager for battle, drew a deep sigh and became silent. And reflecting that the advice of Bhishma was beneficial and seeing that the *Arjuna*-fire increasing in ferocity, the other warriors also, desirous of protecting Duryodhana, resolved to return. And beholding those foremost of Kuru heroes departing for their city, Dhananjaya the son of Prithā, with a cheerful heart followed them for a while, desirous of addressing and worshipping them.* And having worshipped the aged grandsire—the son of Cāntanu, as also the preceptor Drona, and having saluted with beautiful arrows Drona's son and Kripa and other venerable ones among the Kurus, the son of Prithā broke into fragments Duryodhana's crown decked with precious gems, with one other arrow. And having saluted all the venerable and brave warriors thus, he filled the three worlds with the twang of the *Gāndiva*, And suddenly blowing his conch called *Devadatta*, the hero pierced the hearts of all his foes. And having humbled the hostile host, he looked resplendent on his car decked with a handsome flag. And beholding the Kurus depart, Kiritin cheerfully said unto Matsya's son,—'Turn back thy steeds: thy kine have been recovered : the foe is going away and do thou also return to

* A material difference of reading is observable here. Some editions read *âvāshyamano-anunayam muhurtam vâcho-avravit sampârihritya bhuyas.* The Burdwan Pundits read *âvâshamâno-anuyâyau muhurtam sampujayanstatra Kurupravirân.* The latter seems to be preferable, although the former would not be unintelligible.—*T.*

thy city with a cheerful heart!' And the celestials also, having witnessed that most wonderful encounter between Fālguna and the Kurus, were highly delighted, and went to their respective abodes, reflecting upon Pārtha's feats."

Thus ends the sixty-fifth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LXVI.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having vanquished the Kurus in battle, that one with eyes like those of a bull brought back that profuse wealth of Virāta. And while the Dhārtarāshtrāns, after their rout, were going away, a large number of Kuru-soldiers issuing out of the deep forest appeared with slow steps before Pārtha, their hearts afflicted with fear. And they stood before him with joined palms and with hair dishevelled. And fatigued with hunger and thirst, arrived in a foreign land, insensible with terror, and confused in mind, they all bowed, down unto the son of Prithā and said,—'*We are thy slaves!*"*

"Arjuna said,—'Welcome, blessed be ye! Go ye away! Ye have no cause of fear. I will not take the lives of them that are afflicted! Ye have my assurance of protection!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of assurance, the assembled warriors greeted him with benedictions in praise of his achievements and fame and wishing him long life. And the Kuravas were unable to confront Arjuna while after routing the foe he proceeded towards the city of Virāta, like an elephant with rent temples. And having routed the whole army of the Kurus like a violent wind scattering the clouds, that slayer of foes, Pārtha, regardfully addressing the prince of Matsya, said,—'It is known to thee alone, O child, that the sons of Prithā are all living with thy father! Do not eulogise them upon entering thy city, for then the king

---

*. Literally,—"What are we to do?" The stereotyped expression, however, means —"we await thy commands," or "we are thy slaves.' —*T.*

of the Matsyas may hide himself in fear.* On the other hand, entering thy city, do thou proclaim in the presence of thy father that the deed is thy own, saying,—*By me hath the army of the Kurus been vanquished and by me have the kine been recovered from the foe !'*

"Uttara said,—'The feat thou hast achieved is beyond my power ! I do not possess the ability to achieve it ! I shall not, however, O Savyasāchin, discover thee to my father, as long as thou wilt not tell me to do it !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having vanquished the hostile army and wrested the whole of that wealth from the Kurus, Jishnu returned again to the cemetery and having approached the same *Cami* tree stood there with body mangled by the arrows of the enemy. Then that terrible monkey blazing like fire ascended into the sky with those other creatures in the flag-staff. And the illusion created (by Viçwakarman) melted away and Uttara's own banner bearing the device of a lion was set up on the car again. And having replaced the arrows and quivers of those foremost of the Kuru princes, and also that other weapon the (*Gandiva*) which enhances the fierceness of a battle, the illustrious prince of Matsya set out for the city with a glad heart, having Kiritin as his charioteer. And having achieved an exceedingly mighty feat and slain the foe, Pārtha also, that slayer of foes, binding his hair into a braid as before, took the reins from Uttara's hands. And that illustrious hero entered the city of Virāta, with a cheerful heart, rehabilitating himself as Vrihannalā the car-driver of Uttara."

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"When all the Kuravas, utterly routed and vanquished, set out in a dejected mood for Hastināpura, Fālguna, on his way back, addressed Uttara, saying,—'O prince, O hero of mighty arms, seeing the kine escorted in advance of us by the cowherds, we shall enter Virāta's metropolis in the afternoon, having tended the steeds with drink and a bath. Let the cowherds, despatched by thee,

* The word used in all the texts is *Pranaçyet*, literally "lost." The sense, however, seems to be that of "hiding" or, "concealing."—*T.*

speedily repair to the city with the good news and proclaim thy victory!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Agreeably to Arjuna's words, Uttara speedily ordered the messengers, saying,—'Go ye and proclaim the king's victory! The foe hath been routed, and the kine have been recovered!' And the Matsya and the Bharata princes having thus consulted together, re-approached the same *çami* tree. And gratified with the victory they had won, and arrived at the foot of the *çami* tree, they wore on their persons and took up on their car the ornaments and robes they had left there. And having vanquished the whole hostile army and recovered the whole of the wealth from the Kurus, the heroic son of Virāta returned to the city with Vrihannalā as his car-driver."

Thus ends the sixty-sixth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

Section LXVII.

(*Go-harana Parva continued.*)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having speedily recovered his wealth, Virāta owning a large army entered his city with a cheerful heart, accompanied by the four Pāndavas.* And having vanquished the *Trigartas* in battle and recovered all the kine, that mighty monarch, along with the sons of Prithā, looked resplendent and blazed forth in beauty. And as the brave king, that enhancer of the joys of friends, was seated on his throne, all his subjects headed by the Brāhmanas stood before him.† And worshipped by them, the king of the Matsyas, at the head of his army, saluted the Brāhmanas and his subjects in return and dismissed them cheerfully. And Virāta, the king of the Matsyas owning a large army, enquired

---

* In some editions *dhanancha vahu jitwâçu* for *dhananchâpi vijitwâçu.* The latter is more melodious. The difference of meaning is hardly of much consequence.—*T.*

† Some editions add a line here that looks like an interpolation. It is *Upâsânchakrire sarve sahapârthais parantapâs*, and means—"all the brave warriors along with the Pārthas began to adore him."—*T.*

after Uttara, saying,—'Where hath Uttara gone?' And the women and the maidens of the palace and the other females living in the inner apartments, joyfully* said unto him, —'Our kine having been seized by the Kurus, Bhuminjaya incensed at this and from excess of bravery hath issued forth alone, with only Vrihannalā as his second, for vanquishing the six mighty car-warriors, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, and Kripa, and Karna, and Duryodhana, and Drona, and Drona's son who have all come with the Kuru army!†' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Then king Virāta, hearing that his brave son had gone forth with only one car and with Vrihannalā as his car-driver, became filled with grief, and addressing his chief counsellors, said,—'Without doubt, the Kauravas and other lords of earth, learning the defeat of the Trigartas, will never keep their ground. Therefore, let those of my warriors that have not been wounded by the *Trigartas* go out, accompanied by a mighty force, for the protection of Uttara!' And saying this, the king speedily despatched, for the sake of his son, horses and elephants and cars and a large number of foot-soldiers, accoutred and decked with various kinds of weapons and ornaments. And it was thus that Virāta the king of the Matsyas owning a large army, quietly ordered out a large division consisting of four kinds of troops. And having done this, he said,—'Learn ye, without loss of time, whether the prince liveth still or not! I myself think that he who hath got a person of the neuter sex for his car-driver is not alive!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Then king Yudhishthira the just smilingly said unto the afflicted king Virāta,—'If, O monarch, Vrihannalā hath been his charioteer, the foe will never be able to take away thy kine today! Protected by that charioteer, thy son will be able to vanquish in battle all the lords of earth allied with the Kurus, indeed, even the gods and the *Asuras* and the *Siddhas* and the *Yakshas* together!' "

---

* In some texts *tatsarvam* for *sanhrishtās*. I have adopted the latter reading.—*T*.

† For *niryâtas Prithivinjayas* some texts read *nirgatas Prithivipate*. The latter reading is evidently incorrect.—*T*.

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Meanwhile, the swift-footed messengers despatched by Uttara, having reached Virāta's city, gave tidings of the victory. And the minister-in-chief then informed the king of everything, *viz*, the great victory that had been won, the defeat of the Kurus, and the expected arrival of Uttara. And he said,—'All the kine have been brought back, the Kurus have been defeated, and Uttara, that slayer of foes, is well with his car-driver.' Then Yudhishthira said,—'By good luck it is that the kine have been recovered and the Kurus routed. I do not, however, regard it strange that thy son should have vanquished the Kurus, for his victory is assured that hath Vrihannalā for his charioteer!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Hearing of the victory of his son possessed of immeasurable might, king Virāta became so glad that the bristles of his body stood erect. And having made presents of raiments unto the messengers, he ordered his ministers, saying,—'Be the highways decorated with flags, and let all the gods and goddesses be worshipped with flowery offerings. And let princes and brave warriors, and musicians and harlots decked in ornaments, march out to receive my son! And let the bellman, speedily riding an intoxicated elephant, proclaim my victory at places where four roads meet. And let Uttarā, too, in gorgeous attire and surrounded by virgins and chaunters of eulogies,* go forth to receive my son!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having listened to these words of the king, all the citizens with auspicious things in hand, and many amongst them with cymbals and trumpets and conchs, and beautiful women attired in gorgeous robes, and reciters of auspicious and sacred hymns, accompanied by encomiasts and minstrels, and drummers and other kinds of muscians issued forth from the city of the mighty Virātā to welcome Uttara of immeasurable prowess! And having despatched troops and maidens and courtezans decked in ornaments, the wise king of the Matsyas cheerfully said these

---

* Some texts read *kumāribhirvanhibhis* and some *kumāribhirvahvibhis*. The true reading, I apprehend, is *Kumāribhirvandibhis* which I have adopted.—*T*.

words:—'O *Sairindhri*, fetch the dice! And, O Kanka, let the play commence!' The son of Pāndu replied, saying,—'We have heard it said that one whose heart is filled with joy should not play with a cunning gambler. I do not, therefore, dare gamble with thee that art so transported with joy! I am ever desirous of doing what is for thy good. Let the play, however, commence, if it pleases thee!'

"Virāta said,—'My female slaves and kine, my gold and whatsoever other wealth I have, nothing of all this shalt thou be able to protect today even if I do not gamble.' Kanka said in reply,—'O monarch, O bestower of honors, what business hast thou with gambling which is attended with numerous evils? Gambling is fraught with many evils; it should, therefore, be shunned. Thou mayst have seen or at least heard of Yudhisthira the son of Pāndu. He lost his extensive and prosperous kingdom and his god-like brothers at dice!* For this, I am averse to gambling. But if thou likest, O king, I will play!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"While the play was going on, Matsya said unto the son of Pāndu,—'Lo, the Kuravas that are so formidable have been vanquished in battle by my son!' Upon this, the illustrious king Yudhisthira said,—'Why should not he conquer that hath Vrihannalā for his charioteer?'

"Thus addressed, king Matsya became angry and said unto Pāndu's son,—'Thou wretch of a Brāhmana, dost thou compare one of the neuter sex with my son! Hast thou no knowledge of what is proper and what improper for one to say? Without doubt, thou disregardst me! Why should not my son vanquish all those with Bhishma and Drona as their leaders? O Brāhmana, for friendship only I pardon thee this thy offence! Thou must not, however, say so again if thou wishest to live!'

"Yudhishthira said,—'There where Bhishma and Drona and Drona's son and the son of Vikartana and Kripa and king Duryodhana and other royal and mighty car-warriors are assembled, or there where Indra himself is surrounded by

---

* The word *rājyam* is repeated in some texts in the beginning of the second line. The correct reading is *dyute*.—*T.*

the Maruts, what other person than Vrihannalā can fight, encountering them all! None hath been, none will be, his equal in strength of arms! Indeed, it is Vrihannalā only whose heart is filled with joy at sight of a terrible conflict! It is he who had vanquished the celestials and the *Asuras* and human beings fighting together! With such a one for his ally, why should not thy son conquer the foe!' Virāta said,—'Repeatedly forbidden by me, thou dost not yet restrain thy tongue! If there is none to punish, no one would practise virtue!'"

Vaiçamyāyana continued.—"Saying this, the king inflamed with anger forcibly struck Yudhisthira in the face with a die, and reproached him angrily, saying,—'Let it not occur again!' And having been violently struck, blood began to flow from his nose. But the son of Prithā held it in his hands before it fell on the ground. And the virtuous Yudhishthira then glanced at Draupadi who was standing by his side. Ever obedient to the wishes of her lord, the faultless Draupadi, understanding his meaning, and bringing a golden vessel filled with water, received the blood that flowed from his nose. Meanwhile, Uttara, entertained with sweet perfumes of diverse kinds and decked with floral chaplets, slowly entered the city, received with respect by the citizens, the women, and the people of the provinces. And approaching the gate of palace he sent the news of his arrival to his father. And the porter then, approaching the king, said,—'Thy son Uttara waiteth at the gate with Vrihannalā as his companion!' And the Matsya king, with a cheerful heart, said unto him,—'Do thou usher both, as I am very anxious to see them?' Then Yudhishthira, the king of the Kurus, gently whispered unto the ears of the warder,—'Let Uttara enter alone; Vrihannalā must not come in. Such is the vow of that hero of mighty arms that whoever causeth a wound on my person or sheddeth my blood except in battle, shall not live! Inflamed with rage he will never bear patiently to see me bleeding, but will slay Virāta even now with his counsellors and troops and steeds.'"

Thus ends the sixty-seventh Section of the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LXVIII.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Then Bhuminjaya, the eldest son of the king, entered, and having worshipped the feet of his father, approached Kanka. And he beheld Kanka covered with blood, and seated on the ground at one end of the court, and waited upon by the *Sairindhri.* And seeing this, Uttara asked his father in a hurry, saying,—'By whom, O king, hath this one been struck ? By whom hath this sinful act been perpetrated ?'

" Virāta said,—'This crooked Brāhmana hath been struck by me. He deserveth even more than this. When I was praising thee, he praised that person of the third sex.'

" Uttara said,—'Thou hast, O king, committed an improper act ! Do thou speedily propitiate him so that the virulent poison of a Brāhmana's curse may not consume thee to thy roots !'

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Having heard the words of his son, Virāta, that enhancer of the limits of his kingdom, began to soothe Kunti's son, who was like unto a fire hid in ashes, for obtaining his forgiveness. And unto the king desirous of obtaining his pardon the Pāndava replied,—'O king, I have long ago forgiven it ! Anger I have none. Had this blood from my nostrils fallen on the ground, then, without doubt, thou, O monarch, wouldst have been destroyed with thy kingdom ! I do not, however, blame thee, O king, for having struck an innocent person ! For, O king, they that are powerful generally act with unreasoning severity !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"When the bleeding had stopped, Vrihannalā entered (the council-room) and having saluted both Virāta and Kanka, stood silent. And the king, having appeased the chief of the Kurus, began to praise in Savyasāchin's hearing, Uttara who had returned from the battle. And the king said,—'O enhancer of the joys of Kekaya's princess, in thee have I truly a son ! I never had nor shall have, a son that is equal to thee ! How, indeed, couldst thou, O child, encounter that Karna who leaveth not a single mark unhit amongst even a thousand that he may aim at all at once ! How

couldst thou, O child, encounter that Bhishma who hath no equal in the whole world of men? How also couldst thou, O child, encounter Drona, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, that preceptor of the Vrishnis and the Kauravas twice-born one who may be regarded as the preceptor of all the Kshatriyas? How couldst thou meet in battle the celebrated Açwathāman? How couldst thou, O child, encounter that Duryodhana, that prince who is capable of piercing even a mountain with his mighty arrows? My foes have all been thrashed! A delicious breeze seems to blow around me! And since thou hast recovered in battle the whole of my wealth that had been seized by the Kurus, it seems that all those mighty warriors were struck with panic. Without doubt, thou, O bull amongst men, hast routed the foe and snatched away from them my wealth of kine, like his prey from a tiger.' "

Thus ends the sixty-eighth Section in the Go-harana of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LXIX.

(Go-harana Parva continued.)

"Uttara said,—'The kine have not been recovered by me, nor have the foe been vanquished by me! All that hath been accomplished by the son of a deity. Capable of striking like a thunder-bolt, that youth of celestial origin, beholding me running away in fear, stopped me and himself mounted on my car. It was by him that the kine have been recovered and the Kauravas vanquished! The deed, O father, is that hero's and not mine! It was he that repulsed with arrows Kripa and Drona, and Drona's son of powerful energy,* and the

* Many texts most erroneously read *shadrathān* for *viryavān*. The Burdwan Pundits adopt the latter reading. That the first is incorrect may be seen from the fact that Kripa, Drona, Drona's son, Karna, and Bhishma make *five* and not *six*. If Duryodhana in the next line be included to make up the number, the grammar would be faulty. Then again these very texts read *Duryodhanam Vikarnancha* &c., thus making the number *seven*.—*T*.

Suta's son and Bhishma. That mighty hero then spoke unto the affrighted prince Duryodhana* who was running away like the leader of a herd of elephants, these words.—'O prince of the Kuru race, I do not see that thou art safe by any means even at Hastināpura! Protect thy life by putting forth thy might! Thou shalt not escape me by flight! Therefore, make up thy mind for fight! If victorious, the sovereignty of the earth will be thine, or, if slain, heaven itself will be thine!' Thus addressed, king Duryodhana—that tiger among men,—sighing on his car like a snake turned back, surrounded by his counsellors, and showering arrows endued with the speed and force of thunderbolts. Beholding all this, venerable sire, my thighs began to quake. Then that celestial youth pierced with his arrows the Kuru army consisting of leonine warriors. And having pierced and afflicted that crowd of cars, that youth, stout as the lion, laughed at them and robbed them of their clothes and attires. Indeed, the six great car-warriors of the Kurus were vanquished by that hero alone, even like herds of animals ranging in the forest by a single tiger in rage.'

"Virāta said,—'Where is that mighty-armed and famous youth of celestial origin,—that hero who recovered in battle my wealth that had been seized by the Kurus? I am anxious to behold and worship that mighty warrior of celestial origin who hath saved thee and my kine also!'

"Uttara replied,—'That mighty son of a deity disappeared there and then. I think, however, that he will show himself either to-morrow or the day after!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Virāta, that owner of a large army, remained ignorant of the son of Pāndu who was thus described unto him by Uttara, and who was living in the palace in disguise. And permitted by the high-souled Virāta, Pārtha presented with his own hands the garments he had brought, unto Virāta's daughter. And the beautiful Uttarā,

---

* The reading *Duryodhanam Vikarnancha* &c. is erroneous. The Burdwan Pundits read very correctly *Duryodhanancha samare* &c. I have adopted the latter reading.—*T.*

obtaining those new and costly clothes of diverse kinds, became highly glad, along with the son of the Matsya king."

Thus ends the sixty-ninth Section in the Go-harana of Virāta Parva.

SECTION LXX.

(Vaivāhika Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then, on the third day, attired in white robes after a bath, and decked in ornaments of all kinds, those great car-warriors, the five Pāndava brothers, having accomplished their vow, and with Yudhishthira at their head, looked resplendent as they entered the palace-gate like five intoxicated elephants. And having entered the council-hall of Virāta, they took their seats on the thrones reserved for kings, and shone brilliantly like fires on the sacrificial altar. And after the Pāndavas had taken their seats, Virāta, that lord of earth, came there for holding his council and discharging other royal offices. And beholding the illustrious Pāndavas blazing like fires, the king reflected for a moment. And then, filled with wrath, the Matsya king spoke unto Kanka seated there like a celestial and looking like the lord of the celestials surrounded by the Maruts. And he said,—'A player at dice, thou wert employed by me as a courtier! How couldst thou occupy the royal seat, thus attired in handsome robes and ornaments ?' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of Virātā, O king, and desirous of jesting with him, Arjuna smilingly said in reply,—'This person, O king, deserveth to occupy the same seat with Indra himself! Devoted to the Brāhmanas, acquainted with the *Vedas*, indifferent to luxury and carnal enjoyments, habitually performing sacrifices, steady in vows, this one, indeed, is the very embodiment of virtue! The foremost of all persons endued with energy and superior to every body on earth in intelligence, devoted to asceticism, he is conversant with various weapons. No other person among the mobile and immobile creatures of the three worlds possesseth or will ever possess such knowledge of weapons. And there is

none even amongst the gods, or *Asuras*, or men, or *Rākshasas*, or *Gandharvas*, or *Yaksha* chiefs, or *Kinnaras*—or mighty *Uragas*, who is like him! Endued with great foresight and energy, beloved by the citizens and inhabitants of the provinces, he is the mightiest of car-warriors amongst the sons of Pāndu. A performer of sacrifices, devoted to morality, and of subdued passions, like unto a great *Rishi*, this royal sage is celebrated over all the worlds! Possessed of great strength and great intelligence, able, and truthful, he hath all his senses under complete control. Equal unto Indra in wealth and Kuvera in hoarding, he is the protector of the worlds like unto *Manu* himself of mighty prowess! Endued with great might, he is even such! Kind unto all creatures he is no other than the bull of the Kuru race, king Yudhishthira the just! The achievements of this king resemble the sun himself of blazing effulgence. And his fame hath travelled in all directions like the rays of that luminary. And like the rays following the risen sun of blazing effulgence, ten thousand swift elephants followed him, O king, when he dwelt among the Kurus! And, O king, thirty thousand cars decked in gold and drawn by the best steeds, also used to follow him then! And full eight hundred bards adorned with ear-rings set with shining gems, and accompanied by minstrels, recited his praises in those days, like the *Rishis* adoring Indra! And, O king, the Kuravas and other lords of earth always waited upon him like slaves, as the celestials upon Kuvera! This eminent king, resembling the bright-rayed sun, made all lords of earth pay-tribute unto him like persons of the agricultural class.* And eighty-eight thousands of high-souled *Snātakas* depended for their subsistence upon this king practising excellent vows.†

---

* The line beginning with *Vaiçyāniva &c.* is read variously. The reading I have adopted is *Mahābhāgo vivaswāniva raçmimān.* The Burdwan text reads for these words *Mahārājo vivaçān swavaçānapi.* If the latter reading be adopted, the meaning would be,—"this great king made all the lords of earth, weak or strong, pay &c., &c."—*T.*

† Some texts read *sucharitavratas* for *sucharitavratam.* If the former be adopted, it would qualify *Rājānam.*—*T.*

This illustrious lord protected the aged and the helpless, the maimed and the blind, as his sons. And he ruled over his subjects virtuously. Steady in morality and self-control, capable of restraining his anger, bountiful, devoted to the Brāhmanas, and truthful, this one is the son of Pāndu! The prosperity and prowess of this one afflict king Suyodhana with his followers including Karna and Suvala's son. And, O lord of men, the virtues of this one are incapable of being enumerated! This son of Pāndu is devoted to morality and always abstains from injury! Possessed of such attributes, doth not this bull among kings, this son of Pāndu, deserve, O monarch, to occupy a royal seat?' "

Thus ends the seventieth Section in the Vaivāhika of the Virāta Parva.

SECTION LXXI.

(Vaivāhika Parva continued.)

"Virāta said,—'If this one, indeed, be the Kuru king Yudhisthira the son of Kunti, which amongst these is his brother Arjuna, and which, the mighty Bhima? Which of these is Nakula, and which Sahadeva, and where is the celebrated Draupadi? After their defeat at dice, the sons of Prithā have not been heard of by any one!' "

"Arjuna said,—'Even this one, O king, who is called Vallava and is thy cook, is that Bhima of mighty arms and terrible prowess and furious impetus. It was he who slew the furious *Rākshasas* on the mountains of *Gandhamādana* and procured for Krishnā celestial flowers of great fragrance. Even he is that *Gandharva*, who slew the Kichakas of wicked soul, and it was he who killed tigers and bears and boars in the inner apartments of thy palace. He who had been the keeper of thy horse is that slayer of foes called Nakula, and this one is Sahadeva, the keeper of thy kine! Both these sons of Mādri are great car-warriors. Possessed of great fame and beauty of person, these two bulls of the Bharata race, attired in handsome robes and decked in excellent ornaments, are a match for a thousand great car-warriors! And even this lady of

eyes like lotus petals and slender waist and sweet smiles is Drupada's daughter, thy wife's *Sairindhri*, for whose sake, O king, the Kichakas were slain! I am, O king, Arjuna who, it is evident thou hast heard, is that son of Prithā, who is Bhima's junior and the senior of the twins! We have, O king, happily passed in thy abode the period of non-discovery, like infants in the womb!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"After Arjuna had pointed out those heroes—the five Pāndavas, the son of Virāta then spoke of Arjuna's prowess. And Uttara once again identified the sons of Prithā. And the prince said,—'That one whose complexion is bright like that of pure gold, who is stout like a full-grown lion, whose nose is so prominent, whose eyes are large and expansive, and whose face is broad and of coppery hue, is the king of the Kurus! And behold, that one whose tread is like that of an infuriate elephant, whose complexion is like that of heated gold, whose shoulders are broad and expanded, and whose arms are long and thick, is Vrikodara! And he who stands by his side, that youth of darkish hue, who is like unto a leader of a herd of elephants, whose shoulders are broad like those of a lion, whose tread is like that of a mighty elephant, and whose eyes are large and expansive like lotus-leaves, is Arjuna, that foremost of bowmen! And lo, close to the king, are those foremost of men, the twins, like unto Vishnu and Indra, and who have no equals, in the world of men, in beauty, might, and behaviour! And close by them, behold, standeth Krishnā, beautiful as gold, like unto the very embodiment of light, possessing the complexion of the blue lotus, like unto a celestial damsel, and resembling the living embodiment of *Lakshmi* herself!' "

Vaiçampāpana continued.—"Then Virāta's son began to describe the prowess of Arjuna, saying,—'Even this one is he that slew the foe, like unto a lion devastating a flock of deer! Even he ranged through crowds of hostile cars, slaying their best of car-warriors! By him was slain a huge, infuriate, elephant by means of a single arrow! Pierced by him, that huge beast having its flanks adorned with an armour of gold, fell down piercing the earth with his tusks! By him have the

kine been recovered and the Kauravas vanquished in battle! My ears have been deafened by the blare of his conch! It was by this hero of fierce deeds that Bhishma and Drona, along with Duryodhana, were vanquished. That achievement is his, and not mine!' "*

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Hearing these words of his, the mighty king of the Matsyas, considering himself guilty of having offended Yudhishthira, said unto Uttara in reply,—'I think the time hath come for me to propitiate the son of Pāndu. And, if thou likest, I shall bestow my daughter Uttarā upon Arjuna!'

" Uttara said,—'Worthy of our adorations and worship and respect, the time hath come for worshipping the illustrious sons of Pāndu who deserve to be worshipped by us!'

" Virāta said,—'When brought under the foe's subjection in battle, it was Bhimasena that rescued me! My kine also have been recovered by Arjuna! It is through the might of their arms that we have obtained victory in battle! Such being the case, all of us, with our counsellors, shall propitiate Yudhishthira the son of Kunti! Blessed be thou, with all thy brothers, O bull among the sons of Pāndu! If, O king, we have ever said or done anything in ignorance to offend thee, it behoveth thee to forgive us! The son of Pāndu is virtuous!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then the high-souled Virāta, delighted greatly, approached king Yudhishthira and made an alliance with him, and offered him his whole kingdom together with the sceptre and treasury and metropolis. And addressing all the Pāndavas, and especially Dhananjaya, the mighty king of the Matsyas repeatedly said,—'By good luck it is that I see you!' And having again and again embraced Yudhishthira and Bhima and the sons of Mādri, and smelt their heads, Virāta, that owner of a large army, was not satiated with gazing at them. And being highly pleased, he said unto king Yudhishthira,—'By good luck it is that I see

* The Burdwan Pundits exclude this *sloka* although it bears all the marks of genuineness. Without it, the speech of Uttara would be incomplete.—*T.*

you safe from woods! By good luck it is that ye have accomplished with difficulty the period of exile, undiscovered by those wicked wights! I make over my entire kingdom to the sons of Prithā, and what else I have. Let the sons of Pāndu accept these without the slightest hesitation! And let Dhananjaya, called also Savyasāchin, accept the hand of Uttarā; for that best of men is fit to be her lord!' Thus addressed, king Yudhishthira the just cast a look upon Dhananjaya the son of Prithā. And looked at by his brother, Arjuna said unto the Matsya king,—'O monarch, I accept thy daughter as my daughter-in-law! An alliance of this kind between the Matsyas and the Bharatas is, indeed, desirable!' "

Thus ends the seventy-first Section in the Vaivāhika of the Virāta Parva.

Section LXXII.

(Vaivāhika Parva continued.)

"Virāta said,—'Why, O best among the Pāndavas, dost thou not wish to accept as wife this my daughter that I bestow upon thee?'

"Arjuna said,—'Residing in thy inner appartments, I had occasion always to behold thy daughter, and she too, alone or in company, trusted me as her father. Well versed in singing and dancing, I was liked and regarded by her, and, indeed, thy daughter always regardeth me as her protector! O king, I lived for one whole year with her though she had attained the age of puberty! Under these circumstances, thyself or other men may, not without reason, entertain suspicions against her or me! Therefore, O king, myself who am pure, and have my senses under control, beg of thee, O monarch, thy daughter for my daughter-in-law! Thus do I attest her purity! There is no difference between a daughter-in-law and a daughter, as also between a son and one's own self. By adopting this course, therefore, her purity will be proved. I am afraid of slanderous and false accusations! I accept, therefore, O king, thy daughter Uttarā for my daughter-in-law! Surpassing all in knowledge of weapons, resembling a celestial

youth in beauty, my son, the mighty-armed Abhimanyu, is the favorite nephew of Vāsudeva the wielder of the discus! He, O king, is fit to be thy son-in-law and the husband of thy daughter!'

"Virāta said,—'It behoveth that best of the Kuru, Dhananjaya the son of Kunti, who is so virtuous and wise, to say this! O son of Prithā, do thou carry out what thou thinkest should be done after this! He that hath Arjuna for the father of his son-in-law, hath all his desires gratified!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"The monarch having said this, Yudhishthira the son of Kunti gave his assent to what was thus agreed upon between the Matsya king and Arjuna. And O Bhārata, the son of Kunti sent invitations to Vāsudeva and to all his friends and relatives, and Virāta also did the same. And then, after the expiry of the thirteenth year, the five Pāndavas took up their abode in one of Virāta's towns called *Upaplavya*. And Vibhatsu, the son of Pāndu, brought over Abhimanyu and Janārddana, and also many people of the Daçārha race from the Ānarta country. And the king of Kāçi, and also Saivya, being very friendly to Yudhisthira, arrived there, each accompanied by an *Akshauhini* of troops. And the mighty Yagnasena also, with the heroic sons of Draupadi and the unvanquished Cikhandi, and that foremost of all wielder of weapons, the invincible Dhrishtadyumna came there with another *Akshauhini* of troops. And all the kings that came were not only lords of *Akshauhinies*, but performers of sacrifices with gifts in profusion to Brāhmanas, conversant with the *Vedas*, endued with heroism, and ready to die in battle! And beholding them arrived, that foremost of virtuous men, the king of the Matsyas, adored them duly, and entertained their troops and servants and carriers of burdens. And he was highly pleased to bestow his daughter upon Abhimanyu. And after the kings had come there from different parts of the country, there came Vāsudeva decked in floral garlands, and Halāyudha, and Kritavarman the son of Hridikā, and Yuyudhāna the son of Satyaka, and Anādhristi and Akrura, and Cāmva and Niçatha. And these repressers of foes came there bringing with them Abhimanyu and his mother. And Indrasena and others, having lived at Dwārikā for one whole year, came

there, bringing with them the well-adorned cars of the Pāndavas. And there came also ten thousand elephants and ten thousand cars, and hundred millions of horse and hundred billions of foot soldiers, and innumerable Vrishni and Andhaka and Bhoja warriors of great energy, in the train of that tiger among the Vrishnis, Vāsudeva of great effulgence. And Krishna gave unto each of the illustrious sons of Pāndu numerous female slaves, and gems and robes. And then the nuptial festival set in between the families of the Matsya king and the Pāndavas. And then conchs and cymbals and horns and drums and other musical instruments, appointed by the Pāndavas, began to play in the palace of Virāta. And deer of various kinds and clean animals by hundreds were slain. And wines of various kinds and intoxicating juices of trees were profusely collected. And mimes and bards and encomiasts and ministrels, versed in singing and legendary lore, waited upon the kings, and chaunted their praises and genealogies. And the matrons of the Matsyas of symmetrical bodies and limbs, and wearing ear-rings of pearls and gems, headed by Sudeshnā, came to the place where the marriage knot was to be tied. And amongst those beautiful females of fair complexions and excellent ornaments, Krishnā was the foremost in beauty and fame and splendour. And they all came there, leading forth the princess Uttarā decked in every ornament and resembling the daughter of the great Indra himself. And then Dhananjaya the son of Kunti accepted Virāta's daughter of faultless limbs on behalf of his son by Subhadrā. And that great king, Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, who stood there like Indra, also accepted her as his daughter-in-law. And having accepted her, the son of Prithā, with Janārddana before him, caused the nuptial ceremonies to be performed of the illustrious son of Subhadrā. And Virāta then gave him (as dowry) seven thousand steeds endued with the speed of the wind and two hundred elephants of the best kind and much wealth also. And duly pouring libations of clarified butter on the blazing fire, and paid homage unto the twice-born ones, Virāta offered to the Pāndavas his kingdom, army, treasury, and his own self. And after the marriage had taken place, Yudhishthira the son of Dharma gave away unto the Brāhm-

anas all the wealth that had been brought by Krishna of unfading glory. And he also gave away thousands of kine, and diverse kinds of robes, and various excellent ornaments, and vehicles, and beds, and delicious viands of various kinds, and cordial drinks of diverse species. And the king also made gifts of land unto the Brāhmanas with due rites, and also cattle by thousands. And he also gave away thousands of steeds and much gold and much wealth of other kinds, unto persons of all ages. And, O bull of the Bharata race, the city of the Matsya king, thronged with men cheerful and well-fed, shone brightly like a great festival!"

Thus ends the seventy-second Section in the Vaivāhika of the Virāta Parva.

FINIS VIRATA PARVA.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

Published and distributed chiefly *gratis*

BY

PROTĀP CHANDRA ROY.

UDYOGA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHĀRATA PRESS.

No. 367, UPPER CHITPORE ROAD.

1886.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

PREFACE.

The *Virāta* which constitutes the fourth of the Eighteen *Parvas* of Vyāsa's great epic has just been finished. The same Hari that took care of the distressed Pāndavas during their period of concealment, the same Vāsudeva that protected them from the wiles of Dhritarāshtra's wicked son and enabled those bulls among men to emerge from obscurity into the first dawn of returning prosperity, with the powerful ruler of the Matsyas as their ally and old Drupada at the head of his heroic sons and the lion of Madhu's race and other valiant heroes of the Vrishni, the Andhaka, and the Bhoja tribes, all ready to succour them in the impending conflict, the same Nārāyana at whose name danger flieth away, has in his kindness enabled me also to complete this portion of my self-imposed task ! Let not the reader imagine that with the completion of the *Virāta*, the progress that has been achieved is encouraging. Like the Pāndavas who, notwithstanding the allies they had in their natural friends, had to make grand preparations yet before they could achieve success on the field, I also, notwithstanding the aid I have received, shall have to make ampler preparations before success can be mine. May the princes and chiefs of India respond to my solicitations as cheerfully as did their prototypes of the *Dwāpara* age to those of Yudhishthira !

Figure apart, the *Udyoga* is an extensive *Parva*, about as large as the *Adi*. If I can complete it, about a third of the whole epic will be completed. As yet I have seen no discouraging signs. There is not a country on the face of the civilised globe where this publication is unknown. I have also been fortunate enough to win the sympathy and good wishes of many friends of literature and many eminent *savans* of both Europe and America. My countrymen also appreciate the usefulness of the undertaking. There is no reason on earth why the work, gigantic though it be, should not be completed. I believe the charity of my country to be inexhaustible, and I have never, on that account, regarded my prospective resources to be inconsiderable. With these few words I introduce the fifth *Parva*, the book which describes the preparations of both branches of the Kuru race for the grand conflict on the plains of Kurukshetra, and which abounds with other matters replete with interest for almost every class of readers.

Calcutta:
No, 367, Upper Chitpore Road.

PROTAP CHANDRA ROY,
Secy. to the Dātarya Bhārata Kāryālaya.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

UDYOGA PARVA.

Sainyodyoga Parva.

	PAGE.
The conclave of kings in Virāta's court... ...	1
Krishna's speech to the kings regarding the course to be pursued on behalf of Yudhishthira... ...	2
Krishna's proposal of sending an envoy to Duryodhana for soliciting the surrender of Yudhishthira's kingdom	3
Valadeva's speech approving the embassy to Duryodhana and justifying the latter's conduct	ib
Sātyaki's indignant reply	5
Drupada's speech approving the embassy to Duryodhana and suggesting the despatch of envoys to other courts for military assistance	7
Krishna's approval of Drupada's suggestion ...	8
The march of kings to Virāta's city for espousing the Pāndava cause	9
The ditto of ditto to Hastināpura for espousing Duryodhana's cause	ib
Drupada sends his priest to the Kuru court ...	ib
Drupada's instructions to the priestly envoy ...	10
Dhananjaya and Duryodhana both set out for Dwārakā for soliciting Krishna's aid	11
Duryodhana reacheth Dwārakā first but Arjuna is seen first	12
Krishna gives the first choice to Arjuna ...	ib
Arjuna chooses Krishna pledged not to fight ...	13
Duryodhana chooses the Nārāyani army ...	ib
Valarāma refuses aid to both sides	ib
Duryodhana goes to Kritavarman and is given an *Akshauhini* of troops	ib

PAGE.

Krishna's promise to drive Arjuna's car in the impending battle 14
Calya sets out of his city with a large army for joining the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Unknown to him, Duryodhana pays him extraordinary honors on his way 15
Duryodhana discovers himself to Calya and the latter promises to aid him in the battle ... ... ib
Calya visits the Pāndava camp at Upaplavya ... ib
Calya tells Yudhishthira how he was deceived by Duryodhana 17
Yudhishthira's proposal to Calya about the latter's driving Karna's car in his encounter with Arjuna, and depressing Karna on the occasion by skilful speeches ib
Calya's promise to Yudhishthira to do his bidding ... ib
The story of Indra's sufferings for the sin of Brāhmanicide 18
Indra restored to his glory 40
Calya's departure from the Pāndava camp ... 42
The arrival of kings at Upaplavya for aiding Yudhishthira ib
The ditto of ditto at Hastināpura for aiding Duryodhana 43

Sanjaya-yāna Parva.

The arrival of Drupada's priest at the Kuru court... 44
His speech to Dhritarāshtra and his court ... ib
Bhishma's speech expressing his joy at the reappearance of the Pāndavas and his praise of Arjuna ... 46
Karna's insolent interruption of Bhishma ... ib
Dhritarāshtra pacifies Bhishma 47
He dismisses Drupada's priest saying that he would send Sanjaya to the Pāndava camp ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's instructions to Sanjaya... ... ib
Sanjaya sets out for Upaplavya 51
He sees Yudhisthira and addresses him ... ib
Yudhishthira accosts Sanjaya 52
Sanjaya's preliminary speech 54
Sanjaya delivers Dhritarāshtra's message appealing to Yudhishthira to observe peace 55

PAGE.

Yudhishthira's speech in reply concluding with asking back his kingdom 57
Sanjaya's speech in praise of inaction 60
Yudhishthira's speech in reply 62
Krishna's speech in ridicule of inaction... ... 65
Krishna's survey of Duryodhana's conduct towards the Pāndavas 68
Sanjaya's desire to depart 70
Yudhishthira's final directions to him and the messages he conveys through him to the Kuru leaders by name 71
Yudhishthira's alternative of getting back Indraprastha or fighting Duryodhana 75
Continuation of Yudhishthira's speech... ... 76
Sanjaya's return to Hastināpura 77
Dhritarāshtra questions Sanjaya regarding the latter's visit to the Pāndavas 78
Sanjaya's reply censuring Dhritarāshtra's conduct ... ib

Prajāgara Parva

Dhritarāshtra in his anxiety sends for Vidura ... 81
Vidura's arrival ... ... ib
Vidura's highly instructive speech to Dhritarāshtra 82
Dhritarāshtra presses Vidura to continue his discourse 91
Continuation of Vidura's discourse ... ... ib
Dhirtarāshtra's praise of Vidura's discourse ... 97
Continuation of Vidura's discourse ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's question about what constitutes respectability of birth 105
Vidura's answer ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra seeketh further consolation ... 108
Continuation of Vidura's discourse ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the causes that shorten the allotted period of human life 111
Vidura's answer and continuation of discourse on other matters ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra bids Vidura to continue his discourse 120
Vidura continues his discourse ... ... ib

PAGE.

Dhritarāshtra's inability to abandon his vicious sons 121
Continuation of Vidura's discourse ... ... ib

Sanatsujāta Parva.

Dhritarāshtra urges Vidura to continue his discourse 130
Vidura names Sanatsujāta as the proper person for resolving the king's doubts ... ... ib
Vidura thinks of Sanatsujāta and Sanatsujāta's arrival 131
Vidura asks Sanatsujāta to explain the king's doubt ib
Sanatsujāta's doctrine of death 132
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the efficacy of religious acts 134
Sanatsujāta's answer ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the nature of the Supreme Soul's action and happiness if the universe be nothing else than the Supreme Soul 135
Sanatsujāta's answer 136
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the efficacy of virtue and vice ib
Sanatsujāta's answer ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the several blessed regions in their order 137
Sanatsujāta's answer ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's questions about *mauna* ... 139
Sanatsujāta's answer 140
Dhritarāshtra's enquiry about the efficacy of the *Vedas* ib
Sanatsujāta's answer ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's enquiry about the different kinds of ascetic austerities 141
Sanatsujāta's answer ... ... ib
The faults that stain asceticism 142
Dhritarāshtra's question about the number of godheads 145
Sanatsujāta's answer ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's enquiry about *Brahmacharya* ... 150
Sanatsujāta's answer ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's enquiry about the nature of *Brahma* 152
Sanatsujāta's answer 154
Continuation of Sanatsujāta's discourse ... ib
Continuation of ditto 157

Yānasandhi Parva.

PAGE.

The Kurus assemble in their court to hear Sanjaya 166
Sanjaya delivers the message of the Pāndavas ... 167
Bhishma's speech to Duryodhana identifying Nara and Nārāyana with Arjuna and Krishna 178
Bhishma's ridicule of Karna 180
Drona urges Dhritarāshtra to accept Bhishma's counsels 181
Dhritarāshtra's enquiries about Yudhishthira's preparations ib
Sanjaya's answer ... ... ib
Sanjaya's swoon 182
Sanjaya describes the preparations of the Pāndavas ib
Dhritarāshtra's lament and fear of Bhima ... 185
Continuation of the king's lament 190
Ditto of ditto 191
Sanjaya rebukes the king for the latter's behaviour towards the Pāndavas 193
Duryodhana's speech in commendation of his own valor and of the warriors on his side 194
Duryodhana questions Sanjaya about Yudhishthira's doings 199
Sanjaya's answer ... ... ib
Duryodhana questions Sanjaya about Arjuna's steeds 200
Sanjaya's answer ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires of Sanjaya about Yudhishthira's allies 201
Sanjaya's answer ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's despair 203
Duryodhana comforts his father by mentioning his allies ib
Dhritarāshtra urges his son to desist from hostilities and give back to the Pāndavas their kingdom ... 205
Duryodhana's brag of depending upon his own prowess alone in provoking the Pāndavas 206
Dhritarāshtra gives up Duryodhana as one lost ... ib
Dhritarāshtra questions Sanjaya about Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya... 207
Sanjaya's answer ... ... ib

PAGE.

Dhritarāshtra's anxiety at the thought of Arjuna's prowess 210
Duryodhana's brag about his own prowess and valor 211
Karna's boast 213
Bhishma's ridicule of Karna 214
Karna's pledge not to fight till Bhishma's fall ... ib
Karna leaves the court 215
Duryodhana's boast ... ... ib
Vidura's speech... 216
Vidura's story about the fowler and his net ... 218
Dhritarāshtra exhorts his son to make peace ... 220
Dhritarāshtra questions Sanjaya about the final words of Arjuna 221
Sanjaya's answer ... ... ib
The court breaks ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's desire to question Sanjaya in secret about the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Sanjaya's refusal to answer him except in the presence of others 223
Gāndhāri and Vyasa are introduced into the court by Vidura ... ... ib
Sanjaya enlightens the king as to who Krishna really is. 224
Discourse between Dhritarāshtra and Sanjaya on the attributes of Krishna 225
Duryodhana's refusal to make peace 226
Gāndhāri's curse on Duryodhana ... ... ib
Continuation of Sanjaya's discourse about Krishna 227
Dhritarāshtra's lament at his inability to behold Vāsudeva 229

Bhagavat-yāna Parva.

Janamejaya enquires about the doings of the Pāndavas after Sanjaya's departure ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's speech to Krishna 230
Krishna's willingness to go to the Kuru court for negotiating a peace 235
Yudhishthira agrees to the proposal 236

PAGE.

Krishna's speech to Yudhishthira ending with a request to the king for collecting everything needed for battle 237
Bhima's speech (fraught with mildness) to Krishna 240
Krishna's banter of Bhima... 241
Bhima's reply 243
Krishna's explanations 245
Arjuna's speech to Krishna 246
Krishna's answer 248
Nakula's speech to Krishna 249
Sahadeva's speech to Krishna 251
Sātyaki's speech to ditto ... ... ib
Krishnā's speech to Krishna 252
Arjuna's second address to Vāsudeva 255
Krishna sets out for the Kuru court 256
Yudhishthira's final instructions to Krishna on the way 258
Krishna meets certain *Rishis* on the way ... 260
The omens when Krishna sets out 261
Dhritarāshtra's desire to honor Krishna ... 263
Bhishma's approval of Dhritarāshtra's desire ... 264
Dhritarāshtra's speech to Vidura about his intended treatment of Krishna ... ... ib
Vidura rebukes Dhritarāshtra for his insincerity ... 266
Duryodhana's desire of not giving anything to Krishna 267
Bhishma's rebuke of Duryodhana 268
Duryodhana's proposal about imprisoning Krishna... ib
Dhritarāshtra's affliction on hearing the proposal ... ib
Vāsudeva's arrival at the city of the Kurus ... 269
Krishna enters Dhritarāshtra's palace, is accosted by the Kurus, and accosts them all ... ... ib
Krishna goes to Vidura's abode 270
Krishna's visit to Prithā 271
Prithā's lament and enquiry about her sons ... ib
Prithā's messages to her sons 277
Krishna comforts Prithā 278
Krishna enters Duryodhana's court 280
Krishna asked to eat at Duryodhana's abode ... 281
Krishna's refusal and its reason ... ... ib

PAGE.

Krishna's exhortation to Duryodhana 356
Bhishma's address to ditto 361
Drona's ditto to ditto 362
Vidura's ditto to ditto ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's address to ditto ... ... ib
Bhishma and Drona again address Duryodhana ... 363
Duryodhana's reply to Keçava 364
Krishna's indignation 367
Dusçāsana's insolence 368
Duryodhana leaves the court 369
Krishna's counsel to the Kurus to bind Duryodhana ib
Dhritarāshtra sends for Gāndhāri 371
Gāndhāri comes to the court ... ... ib
Duryodhana brought back to court by Vidura ... 372
Gāndhāri's address to Duryodnana ... ... ib
Duryodhana again leaves the court 375
Duryodhana's consultation with Cakuni, &c., for imprisoning Krishna 376
Sātyaki reports the fact to Krishna ... ... ib
Krishna laughs to scorn the threat of imprisonment 377
Dhritarāshtra rebukes Duryodhana 378
Vidura ridicules Duryodhana upon the impossibility of the feat ... ... ib
Keçava shows his universal form in the Kuru court 380
Keçava leaves the Kuru court 381
The disappearance of the *Rishis* ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's last words to Keçava 382
Keçava's last words to Dhritarāshtra ... ... ib
Keçava proceeds to the abode of Prithā ... ib
Prithā's message to Yudhishthira urging him to observe the duties of his order 383
The story of Vidulā and her son recited by Prithā 385
The story of Vidulā continued 389
The story of ditto continued 393
The story of ditto continued 397
Prithā's messages to Arjuna and others ... 399
Krishna takes Prithā's leave for departing ... 401

PAGE.

Krihna leaves the Kuru city with Karna on his car 401
Bhishma and Drona again address Duryodhana for peace ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires of Sanjaya as to what passed between Krishna and Karna when the two left Hastināpura on the same car 406
Sanjaya reports the conversation between Krishna and Karna ... ... ib
Krishna discloses to Karna the secret of his birth and urges him to come over to the Pāndavas ... 407
Karna's answer... 409
Karna's comparison of the great battle to a sacrifice 412
Karna's appeal to Krishna about the place of battle 415
Krishna's forecast of what would happen in the battle ib
Karna's dream... 419
Vidura visits Prithā after the departure of Krishna 421
Prithā's desire to see Karna and enlighten him as regards his birth 423
Prithā's visit to Karna 424
Prithā's proposal to Karna... 425
Surya urges Karna to do Prithā's bidding ... ib
Karna's answer to Prithā ... ... ib
Keçava recites to Yudhishthira and others all that had happened at Hastināpura 428

Sainya-niryāna Parva.

Yudhishthira's consultations with his brothers about the selection of a generalissimo for his army ... 438
Sahadeva proposes Virāta 439
Nakula proposes Drupada ... ... ib
Arjuna proposes Dhrishtadyumna 440
Bhima proposes Cikhandin... ... ... ib
Yudhishthira asks Krishna to name the person ... 441
Krishna names Dhrishtadyumna 442
The march of the Pāndava army to Kurukshetra ... ib
Yudhishthira encamps on Kurukshetra ... 444

PAGE.

Duryodhana urges Karna, Cakuni, and Dusçāsana to make preparations for battle 446
Duryodhana's preparations 450
Duryodhana elects Bhishma as the generalissimo of his forces 453
Acceptance of the command by Bhishma ... 454
Bhishma's installation in the command ... 455
Yudhishthira selects seven leaders for his seven *Akshauhinis* of troops 456
Dhananjaya made the leader of the seven leaders ... 457
Krishna is vested with the supreme command ... ib
Valarāma comes to the Pāndava court... ... ib
Valarāma's refusal to side any of parties ... ib
Valarāma starts on a pilgrimage 458
Arrival of Rukmi into the Pāndava camp ... ib
Rukmi's offer to aid the Pāndavas 460
Arjuna's refusal to accept Rukmi's aid... ... ib
Rukmi offers aid to Duryodhana 461
Duryodhana refuses it ... ... ib
Discourse between Sanjaya and Dhritarāshtra on the influence of Destiny on human actions ... ... ib

Ulukābhigamana Parva.

Duryodhana summons Uluka unto him... ... 463
Duryodhana instructs Uluka to visit the Pāndava camp ib
Duryodhana's insulting message through Uluka to Yudhishthira ... ... ib
The story of the mice and the cat ... ... ib
Duryodhana's message to Vāsudeva 466
Duyodhana's message to Bhimasena 467
Ditto's ditto to Nakula ... ... ib
Ditto's ditto to Sahadeva ... ... ib
Ditto's ditto to Virāta and Drupada ... ... ib
Ditto's ditto to Dhrishtadyumna 468
Ditto's ditto to Cikhandidin ... ... ib
Ditto's message to Dhananjaya ... ... ib
Uluka reaches the Pāndava camp 472

PAGE.

Uluka repeats th e message to Yudhishthira ... 473
Uluka repeats the message to Arjuna 474
Bhima's wrath and Uluka asked by Krishna to depart in peace 476
Uluka repeats his message to Arjuna ... ... ib
Bhimasena's answer to Duryodhana's messages ... 477
Sahadeva's answer 478
Arjuna pacifies Bhima ... ... ib
Arjuna's pithy reply to Duryodhana ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's answer to Duryodhana 479
Krishna's answer 480
Arjuna's second message to Duryodhana ... ib
Bhishmasena's second message to ditto... ... 482
Nakula's ditto to ditto 483
Sahadeva's ditto to ditto ... ... ib
Virāta and Drupada's ditto to ditto ... ... ib
Cikhandin's ditto to ditto ... ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna's ditto to ditto ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's last words to Uluka ... ... ib
Uluka leaves the Pāndava camp with Yudhishthira's permission ... ... ib
Uluka communicates to Duryodhana the answers of the Pāndavas 484
Duryodhana gives the order for arraying his troops... ib
Yudhishthira moves his army ... ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna selects particular warriors of his army for pitting them against particular warriors of the Kaurava army ... ... ib

Rathātiratha-sankhyāna Parva.

Dhritarāshtra enquires of Sanjaya as to what his sons did after Arjuna's vow to slaughter Bhishma ... 485
Bhishma's tale of *Rathas* and *Atirathas* &c. in the Kaurava army 486
Continuation of the tale of *Rathas* and *Atirathas* in the Kaurava army 488
Continuation of ditto in ditto 489

PAGE.

Bhishma names Karna as an *Ardha-Ratha* ... 493
Karna's wrath ... ... ib
Karna's pledge of not fighting till Bhishma's overthrow 494
Bhishma's reply ... ... ib
Duryodhana pacifies Bhishma 496
The tale of *Rathas* and *Atirathas* &c., in the Pāndava army ... ... ib
Ditto of ditto continued 499
Ditto of ditto continued 501

Amvopākhyana Parva.

Duryodhana enquires of Bhishma the reason of the latter's refusal to strike Cikhandin 502
The self-choice of the daughters of the king of Kāçi 503
Bhishma ravishes the maidens in view of the kings ib
Defeat of all the kings by Bhishma 504
The eldest daughter Amvā informs Bhishma of her pre-engagement with Calwa... 505
Dismissed by Bhishma Amvā repairs to Calwa ... ib
Calwa's refusal to accept Amvā ... ... ib
Amvā leaves Calwa's city ... ... ib
Amvā repairs to an asylum of ascetics 508
Her resolution to practise ascetic austerities ... ib
The ascetics dissuade her 509
Amvā meets with her maternal grandfather Hotravāhana 510
Hotravāhana advises her to see Jamadagni's son Rāma ib
Arrival of Rāma's friend Akritavrana to the asylum 521
Amvā introduced to Akritavrana ... ... ib
Akritavrana indicates Bhishma as the person upon whom Amvā's vengeance should fall 513
Arrival of Rāma at that asylum 514
Hotravāhana introduces Amvā to Rāma ... ib
Amvā gives her history to Rāma 515
Rāma's pledge to slay Bhishma if the latter refused to take the maiden 517
Arrival of Rāma at the banks of the Saraswati ... ib
Bhishma goes out to receive Rāma 518

PAGE.

Rāma urges Bhishma to take the maiden ... 518
Bhishma's refusal and its reason ... ... ib
Bhishma's speech to Rāma indicating his desire to quell Rāma's pride 519
Rāma summons Bhishma to fight indicating Kurukshetra as the field 521
Bhishma accepts the challenge ... ... ib
Rāma and Bhishma meet on Kurukshetra ... 522
Gangā comes to Bhishma and urges him not to fight ib
Bhishma's refusal to obey her 523
The commencement of the encounter between Rāma and Bhishma ... ... ib
Rāma made insensible 526
Bhishma's self-reproach for striking his preceptor ... ib
Continuation of the battle... ... ... ib
Bhishma made insensible 527
Bhishma removed from the field by his charioteer... ib
Bhishma regains his senses and comes back to the encounter ... ... ib
Rāma is overthrown from his car 528
Rāma regains consciousness ... ... ib
Continuation of battle 529
Bhishma baffles Rāma's fiery darts ... ... ib
Continuation of battle 530
Bhishma's charioteer slain 531
Rāma continues to strike Bhishma ... ... ib
Bhishma overthrown from his car ... ... ib
The Vasus support him in mid-air ... ... ib
Gangā holds the reins of Bhishma's steeds ... ib
Gangā dissmised by Bhishma ... ... ib
Bhishma renews the combat 532
Rāma reft of consciousness ... ... ib
Alarming omens ... ... ib
Rāma rises up and renews the combat... ... ib
The Vasus appear to Bhishma in a dream and put him in remembrance of the *Praçwāpa* weapon ... 533
The last day's encounter 534

PAGE.

Bhishma resolves to use the *Praçwāpa* weapon ... 535
A din of celestial voices in the sky ... ... ib
Nārada dissuades Bhishma from using the *Praçwāpa* weapon ... ... ib
Rāma's ancestors appear on the scene and urge him to desist from the fight 536
Rāma refuses to obey them ... ... ib
They come to Bhishma 537
Bhishma's refual to obey them ... ... ib
They return to Rāma and make him desist ... ib
Rāma acknowledges his defeat and tells Amvā to do as she pleased... 538
Rāma's departure from Kurukshetra ... ... ib
Amvā devotes herself to ascetic penances ... 539
Gangā curses Amvā 540
Mahādeva appears to Amvā and gives her the boon she asked, *viz*, change of sex in next life ... 542
Amvā ascends the funeral pyre uttering her wish to be born in next life as a man for the destruction of Bhishma 542
A daughter is born to king Drupada by his first wife 543
Drupada and his wife conceal the sex of the child... ib
Drupada's daughter (repesented as a son) is married to king Hiranyavarman's daughter 544
Hiranyavarman informed by his daughter of the imposture 545
Hiranyavarman's resolution to punish Drupada for the imposture ... ... ib
Embassies from and to Hiranyavarman ... ib
Hiranyavaraman marches with a large army against Drupada ... ... ib
Drupada's daughter Cikhandinin enters a forest for self-destruction 548
She meets a *Yaksha* named Sthunākarna ... 549
The *Yaksha's* promise to serve her ... ... ib
The exchange of sexes 550
Cikhandi's return to his father's city ... ... ib

PAGE.

Hiranyavarman sends witnessess to ascertain Cikhandin's true sex 551
Hiranyavarman retires with his army from the vicinity of Drupada's city ... ... ib
Kuvera discovers Sthuna's folly and curses him to remain a woman till Cikhandin's death 552
Duryodhana enquires of Bhishma and Drona &c., as to the period within which each of them could annihilate the Pāndava army 554
Bhishma mentions a month's time as the period ... 555
Drona does the same ... ... ib
Kripa mentions two months ... ... ib
Açwatthāman mentions ten nights ... ... ib
Karna mentions five days ... ... ib
Bhishma ridicules Karna ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's enquires of Arjuna as to the period within which he could annihilate the Kaurava army 556
Arjuna mentions a second as the time within which he could achieve the feat 557
The march of the Kaurava army to the field ... ib
The march of the Pāndava army to the field ... 559

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

UDYOGA PARVA.

SECTION I.

(Sainyodyoga Parva.)

Om! Having bowed down to Nārāyana, and Nara the most exalted of male beings, and also to the goddess Saraswati, must the word *Jaya* be uttered.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then those valiant descendants of Kuru, who belonged to the same party (with Virāta), having joyfully celebrated the nuptials of Abhimanyu and rested themselves that night, presented themselves at dawn, well pleased, in the presence chamber of Virāta. And the presence chamber of the king of the Matsyas was full of riches, and variegated with choice gems and precious stones, with seats methodically arranged, adorned with garlands, and filled with fragrance. And those mighty monarchs of men all came to that place. And on the seats in front sat the two kings Virāta and Drupada. And the revered and aged rulers of the earth, and Valarāma and Krishna along with their father, all sat there. And close to the king of Pānchāla was seated the great hero of the race of Cini, together with the son of Rohini. And side by side with the king of the Matsyas sat Krishna and Yudhisthira, and all the sons of king Drupada, and Bhima and Arjuna, and the two sons of Mādri, and Pradyumna and Cāmba, both valiant in battle, and Abhimanyu with Virāta's sons. And those princes, the sons of Draupadi, rivalling their fathers in valour, strength, grace, and prowess, sat upon excellent seats inlaid with gold. And when those mighty heroes wearing shining ornaments and robes had sat them-

selves down, that gorgeous assembly of kings looked beautiful like the firmament spangled with resplendent stars. And those valiant men, assembled together, having conversed with one another upon various topics, remained for some time in a pensive mood, with their eyes fixed upon Krishna. And at the end of their talk, Krishna drew their attention to the affairs of the Pāndavas. And those powerful kings together listened to Krishna's speech, pregnant and lofty. And Krishna said.—'It is known to you all, how this Yudhishthira was deceitfully defeated at dice by the son of Suvala, and how he was robbed of his kingdom, and how a stipulation was made by him concerning his exile in the forest. And capable as they were of conquering the earth by force, the sons of Pāndu remained firm in their plighted faith. And accordingly for six and seven years these incomparable men accomplished the cruel task imposed upon them. And this last, the thirteenth year, was exceedingly hard for them to pass. Yet unrecognised by any one they have passed it, as known to you, suffering unendurable hardships of various kinds. This is known to you all. These illustrious men have spent the thirteenth year, employed in the menial service of others. This being so, it is for you to consider what will be for the good of both Yudhishthira and Duryodhana, and what, as regards the Kurus and the Pāndavas, will be consistent with the rules of righteousness and propriety and what will meet with the approbation of all. The virtuous king Yudhishthira would not unrighteously covet even the celestial kingdom. But righteously he would accept the rule even of a single village. How the sons of Dhritarāshtra fraudulently robbed him of his paternal kingdom, and how he hath passed a life of unendurable hardships, are known to all the kings assembled here. The sons of Dhritarāshtra are incapable of overcoming by strength Arjuna the son of Prithā. Nevertheless, king Yudhishthira and his friends have no other desire than the good of Dhritarāshtra's sons. These brave sons of Kunti, and the two sons of Mādri, ask for only what they themselves, achieving victory in battle, had won from the defeated kings. You no doubt, know full well how those enemies of the Pāndavas—with the object of possessing themselves

of the kingdom, endeavoured by various means to destroy them, when they were yet mere boys. So wicked and rancorous they were. Consider, how grasping they are and how virtuous Yudhishthira is. Consider also the relationship that exists between them. I beseech you all to consult together and also think separately. The Pāndavas have always had a regard for truth. They have fulfilled their promise to the very letter. If now treated wrongfully by the sons of Dhritarāshtra they would slay them all though banded together. They have friends who, on being informed of their unworthy treatment at the hands of others, would stand by them, engaged in fight with their persecutors, and willingly slay them even if they should lose their own lives for it. If you suppose them to be too few to be capable of winning a victory over their enemies, you must know that banded together and followed by their friends, they would, no doubt, try their utmost to destroy those enemies. What Duryodhana thinks is not exactly known, nor what he may do. When the mind of the other side is not known, what opinion can be formed by you as to what is best to be done? Therefore, let a person, virtuous and honest and of respectable birth, and wary,—an able ambassador, set out to beseech them mildly for inducing them to give half the kingdom to Yudhishthira!' Having listened to the speech of Krishna, marked by prudence and a regard for virtue and showing a pacific and impartial spirit, his elder brother then addressed the assembly, bestowing high encomiums on the words of the younger brother."

SECTION II.

"Valadeva said,—'You have all listened to the speech of him who is the elder brother of Gada, characterised as it is by a sense of virtue and prudence, and salutary alike to Yudhishthira and king Duryodhana. These valiant sons of Kunti are ready to give up half their kingdom, and they make this sacrifice for the sake of Duryodhana. The son of Dhritarāshtra, therefore, should give up half of the kingdom, and should rejoice and be exceedingly happy with us that the

quarrel can be so satisfactorily settled. These mighty persons having obtained the kingdom would, no doubt, be pacified and happy, provided the opposite party behave well. For them to be pacified will redound to the welfare of men. And I should be well pleased if somebody from here, with the view of pacifying both the Kurus and the Pāndavas, should undertake a journey and ascertain what is in the mind of Duryodhana and explain the views of Yudhishthira. Let him respectfully salute Bhishma the heroic scion of Kuru's race, and the magnanimous son of Vichitravirya, and Drona along with his son, and Vidura, and Kripa, and the king of Gāndhāra, along with the *Suta's* son. Let him also pay his respects to all the other sons of Dhritarāshtra, to all who are renowned for strength and learning, devoted to their proper duties, heroic, and conversant with the signs of the times. When all these persons are gathered together and when also the elderly citizens are assembled, let him speak words full of humility and likely to serve the interests of Yudhishthira. At all events, let them not be provoked, for they have taken possession of the kingdom with a strong hand. When Yudhishthira had his throne, he forgot himself by engaging in gambling and was dispossessed by them of his kingdom. This valiant Kuru, this descendant of Ājmida, Yudhishthira, though not skilled in dice and though dissuaded by all his friends, challenged the son of the king of Gāndhāra, an adept at dice, to the match. There were then at that place thousands of dice-players whom Yudhishthira could defeat in a match. Taking, however, no notice of any of them, he challenged Suvala's son of all men to the game, and so he lost. And although the dice constantly went against him, he would still have Cakuni alone for his opponent. Competing with Cakuni in the play, he sustained a crushing defeat. For this, no blame can attach to Cakuni. Let the messenger make use of words characterised by humility, words intended to conciliate Vichitravirya's son. The messenger may thus bring round Dhritarāshtra's son to his own views. Do not seek war with the Kurus; address Duryodhana in only a conciliatory tone. The object may possibly fail to be gained

by war, but it may be gained by conciliation, and by this means also it may be gained enduringly!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"While that valiant scion of Madhu's race was even continuing his speech, the gallant son of the race of Cini suddenly rose up and indignantly condemned the words of the former by these words of his."

SECTION III.

"Sātyaki said,—'Even as a man's heart is, so doth he speak! Thou art speaking in strict conformity with the nature of thy heart. There are brave men, and likewise those that are cowards. Men may be divided into these two well-defined classes. As upon a single large tree there may be two boughs one of which beareth fruits while the other doth not, so from the self-same line of progenitors may spring persons that are imbecile as well as those that are endowed with great strength. O thou bearing the sign of a plough on thy banner, I do not, in sooth, condemn the words thou hast spoken, but I simply condemn those, O son of Madhu, who are listening to thy words! How, indeed, can he who unblushingly dares attach even the slightest blame to the virtuous king Yudhishthira be permitted to speak at all in the midst of this assembly? Persons clever in the game of dice challenged the magnanimous Yudhishthira unskilled as he is in play, and confiding in them he was defeated! Can such persons be said to have virtuously won the game? If they had come to Yudhishthira while playing in his house with his brothers and defeated him there, then what they would have won would have been righteously won. But they challenged Yudhishthira who was bound in conscience to follow the rules observed by the military caste,* and they won by a trick. What is there in this conduct of theirs that is righteous? And how can this Yudhishthira here, having performed to the utmost the stipulations entered into by

---

* Every member of the Kshatriya order is bound to respond to a challenge at dice as for a single combat.—*T.*

way of stakes in the play, freed from the promise of a sojourn in the forest, and therefore entitled to his ancestral throne, humble himself ? Even if Yudhishthira coveted other people's possessions still it would not behove him to beg! How can they be said to be righteous and not intent on usurping the throne when, although the Pāndavas have lived out their sojourn of concealment unrecognised, they still say that the latter had been recognised ? They were besought by Bhishma and the magnanimous Drona, but they would not yet consent to give back to the Pāndavas the throne that belongeth to them by right of birth. The means with which I would beseech them would be sharp arrows. I shall fight and with a strong hand force them to prostrate themselves at the feet of the illustrious son of Kunti. If, however, they do not fall at the feet of the wise Yudhishthira, then they and their partisans must go to the regions of Yama. When Yuyudhāna (myself) is enraged and resolved to fight, they, to be sure, are unequal to withstand his impetus, as mountains are unable to resist that of the thunderbolt! Who can withstand Arjuna in fight, or him who hath the discus for his weapon in battle, or myself as well ? Who can withstand the unapproachable Bhima ? And who, having regard for his life, would come near the twin brothers who firmly grasp their bows and resemble the death-dealing Yama in intelligence ? Who would approach Dhrishtadyumna the son of Drupada, or these five sons of the Pāndavas who have added lustre to Draupadi's name, rivalling their fathers in valour, equal to them in every respect, and full of martial pride ; or him of the powerfull bow, Subhadrā's son, irresistible by even the gods themselves ; or Gada, or Pradyumna, or Cāmva, resembling Yama or the thunderbolt or fire ? We shall slay Dhritarāshtra's son and Cakuni and Karna in battle, and place the Pāndava on the throne ! There is no sin in slaying them that are bent on slaying us ; but to be a beggar before foes is both impious and infamous ! I ask you to be diligent in doing that which is heartily desired by Yudhishthira. Let Pāndu's son get back the kingdom resigned by Dhritarāshtra ! Either

Yudhishthira should get back his kingdom this very day or all our enemies shall lie down on the earth, slain by me!'"

SECTION III.

"Drupada said,—'O mighty-armed one, it will, without doubt, be even as thou hast said! Never will Duryodhana give up the kingdom by peaceful means, and Dhritarāshtra, who doats on his son, will follow him in his wish. And so will Bhishma and Drona from imbecility, and Karna and Cakuni from folly. The words of Valadeva commend themselves to my judgment; the course pointed out by him should, indeed, be followed by a man who desires peaceful settlement. But Duryodhana should never be addressed in mild words. Vicious by nature, he, I believe, cannot be brought to reason by mildness. In respect of an ass, mildness is in place; but in respect of animals of the bovine species, severity should be resorted to. If any one were to speak mild words to Duryodhana, vicious by nature that wicked wight would consider the speaker to be an imbecile person. If a mild course is adopted towards him, the fool will think that he has won. Let us do even this, let us make preparations; let us send word to our friends that they may collect an army for us. Let speedy messengers go to Calya, and Dhrishtaketu, and Jayatsena, and the prince of the Kekayas. Duryodhana also, on his part, will send word to all the kings. Right-minded persons, however, respond to the request of those that first beseech them. Therefore, I ask you to make haste in first preferring your suit to these rulers of men. Meseems that a great undertaking is awaiting us. Quickly send word to Calya, and to the kings under him, and to king Bhagadatta of immeasurable valour residing on the eastern sea-coast, and to the fierce Hārdikya, and Āhuka, and the king of the Mallas of powerful understanding, and Rochamāna. Let Vrihanta be summoned and king Senāvindu, and Vāhlika and Munjakeça, and the ruler of the Chedis, and Supārçva, and Suvāhu; and that great hero, Paurava; and also the kings of the Cakas, the Pahlavas, and the Daradas, and Surāri, and Nadija, and king Karnaveshta,

and Nila, and the valiant king Viradharman ; and Durjaya, and Dantavakra, and Rukmi, and Janamejaya ; and Ashāda, and Vāyuvega, and king Purvapāli ; and Bhuritejas, and Devaka, and Ekalavya with his sons; and also the kings of the Kārusha race, and the valiant Kshemamurti, and the kings of the Kāmboja and the Richika tribes, and of the western sea-coast ; and Jayātsena, and the king of Kāshi, and the rulers of the land of the five rivers, and the proud son of Krātha, and the rulers of the mountain regions, and Jānaki, andSuçarman, and Manimān, and Potimatsyaka, and the valiant Dhrishta-ketu, and the ruler of the kingdom of Pānçu ; and Paundra, and Dandadhāra, and the brave Vrihatsena ; and Aparājita, and Nishāda and Crenimat and Vasumat ; and Vrihadvala of great strength, and Vāhu the conqueror of hostile cities ; and the warlike king Samudrasena with his son ; and Udbhava, and Kshemaka, and king Vātadhāna ; and Crutāyus, and Dridhāyus, and the gallant son of Cālwa ; and the king of the Kalingas, and Kumāra, unconquerable in battle !* Speedily send word to these. This is what recommends itself to me. And let this my priest, a learned Brāhmana, be sent, O king, to Dhritarāshtra ! Tell him the words he is to say and what Duryodhana should be told ; and how Bhishma is to be addressed, and how Drona, that best of car-warriors !' "

SECTION IV.

"Krishna said,—'These words are worthy of the chief of the Somaka tribe, and are calculated to promote the interests of Pāndu's son of immeasurable strength. As we are desirous of adopting a politic course, this is, no doubt, our first duty ; a man acting otherwise would be a great fool. But our relationship to both the Kurus and the Pāndus is equal, howsoever these two parties may behave with each other. Both you and we have been invited here on the occasion of a marriage. The marriage having now been celebrated, let us go home, well-pleased. You are the

* These names are variously given in various texts.—*T.*

foremost of kings, both in years and learning; and here we all, no doubt, are as if your pupils. Dhritarāshtra has always entertained a great respect for you; and you are also a friend of the preceptors Drona and Kripa. I, therefore, ask you to send a message (to the Kurus) in the interests of the Pāndavas. We all resolve even upon this that you should send a message (unto them). If that chief of the Kuru race should make peace on equitable terms, then the brotherly feelings between the Kurus and the Pāndus will sustain no injury. If, on the other hand, the son of Dhritarāshtra should wax haughty and from folly refuse to make peace, then, having summoned others, summon us too. The holder of *Gāndiva* then will be fired with wrath and the dull-headed and wicked Duryodhana, with his partisans and friends, will meet his fate.'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"King Virāta, then, having honored Krishna, sent him home with his followers and relatives. And after Krishna had set out for Dwārakā, Yudhishthira and his followers, with king Virāta, began to make preparations for war. And Virāta and his relatives sent word to all the monarchs, and king Drupada also did the same. And at the request of those lions of the Kuru race, as also of the two kings of the Matsyas and the Pānchālas, many lords of the earth, possessed of great strength, came to that place with cheerful hearts. And when the sons of Dhritarāshtra heard that the Pāndavas had collected a large army, they also assembled many rulers of the earth. And, O king, at that time the whole land became thronged with the rulers of the earth who were marching to espouse the cause of either the Kurus or the Pāndavas. And the land was full of military bands composed of four kinds of forces. And from all sides the forces of those heroes began to pour in. And the goddess Earth with her mountains and forests seemed to tremble beneath their tread. And the king of the Pānchālas, having consulted the wishes of Yudhishthira, despatched to the Kurus his own priest, who was old both in years and understanding.'"

SECTION V.

"Drupada said,—'Of beings those that are endowed with life are superior. Of living beings those that are endowed with intelligence are superior. Of intelligent creatures men are superior. Of men the twice-born are superior. Of the twice-born, students of the *Veda* are superior. Of students of the *Veda* those of cultured understanding are superior. Of cultured men practical persons are superior. And finally, of practical men those knowing the Supreme Being are superior. You, it seems to me, are at the very top of those that are of cultured understanding. You are distinguished both for age and learning. You are equal in intellect to either Cukra or Vrihaspati the son of Angiras. You know what kind of man the chief of the Kuru race is, and what kind of man also is Yudhishthira the son of Kunti. It was with Dhritarāshtra's knowledge that the Pāndavas were deceived by their opponents. Though instructed by Vidura he yet follows his son! Cakuni advisedly challenged Yudhishthira to a gambling match although the latter was unskilled in gambling while the former was an adept in it! Unskilled in play, Yudhishthira was guileless and firm in following the rules of the military order. Having thus cheated the virtuous king Yudhishthira, they will, by no means, voluntarily yield up the kingdom. If you speak words of righteousness unto Dhritarāshtra, you will certainly gain the hearts of his fighting men. Vidura also will make use of those words of yours and will thus alienate the hearts of Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and others. When the officers of state are alienated and the fighting men are backward, the task of the enemy will be to gain back their hearts. In the meantime the Pāndavas will, with ease and with their whole hearts, address themselves in preparing the army and in collecting stores. And when the enemy's adherents are estranged, and while you are hanging about them, they will surely not be able to make adequate preparations for war. This course seems expedient in this wise. On your meeting with Dhritarāshtra it is possible that Dhritarāshtra

may do what you say. And as you are virtuous, you, therefore, must act virtuously towards them. And to the compassionate, you must descant upon the various hardships that the Pāndavas have endured. And you must estrange the hearts of the aged persons by discoursing upon the family usages which were followed by their forefathers. I do not entertain the slightest doubt in this matter. Nor need you be apprehensive of any danger from them, for you are a Brāhmana, versed in the *Vedas*; and you are going thither as an ambassador, and more especially, you are an aged man. Therefore, I ask you to set out without delay towards the Kauravas with the object of promoting the interests of the Pāndavas, timing your departure under the (astrological) combination called *Pushyā* and at that part of the day called *Jaya*.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus instructed by the magnanimous Drupada, the virtuous priest set out for the city called after the elephant. And that learned man, well-versed in the principles of the science of politics, started with a following of disciples towards the Kurus for the sake of promoting the welfare of Pāndu's sons.' "

SECTION VI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having despatched the priest to the city called after the elephant, they sent messengers to the kings of various countries. And having sent messengers to other places, the Kuru hero Dhananjaya, that bull among men and son of Kunti, himself set out for Dwārakā. And after Krishna, and Valadeva the descendant of Madhu, had both departed for Dwārakā with all the Vrishnis, the Andhakas, and the Bhojas, by hundreds, the royal son of Dhritarāshtra had, by sending secret emissaries, furnished himself with information of all the doings of the Pāndavas. And learning that Krishna was on his way, the prince went to the city of Dwārakā by means of fine horses possessing the speed of the wind, and taking with him a small number of troops. And on that very day the son of Kunti

and Pāndu, Dhananjaya, also speedily arrived at the beautiful city of the Ānarata land. And the two scions of the Kuru race, those tigers among men, on arriving there saw that Krishna was asleep, and drew near him as he lay down. And as Krishna was sleeping, Duryodhana entered the room, and sat down on a fine seat at the head of the bed. And after him entered that wearer of the diadem the magnanimous Arjuna. And he stood at the back of the bed, bowing and joining his hands. And when the descendant of Vrishni, Krishna, awoke, he first cast his eyes on Arjuna. And having asked them as to the safety of their journey, and having fitly bestowed his greetings upon them, the slayer of Madhu questioned them as to the occasion of their visit. Then Duryodhana addressed Krishna, with a cheerful countenance, saying,—'It behoveth you to lend me your help in the impending war. Arjuna and myself are both equally your friends. And, O descendant of Madhu, you also bear the same relationship to both of us. And today, O slayer of Madhu, I have been the first to come to you. Right-minded persons take up the cause of him who comes first to them. This is how the ancients acted. And, O Krishna, you stand at the very top of all right-minded persons in this world, and are always respected. I ask you to follow the rule of conduct observed by right-minded men!' Thereat Krishna replied,—'That you have come first, O king, I do not in the least doubt. But, O king, the son of Kunti, Dhananjaya, has been first *beheld* by me. On account of your first arrival, and on account of my having beheld him first, I shall, no doubt, lend my assistance, O Suyodhana, to both. But it is said that those who are junior in years should have the first choice. Therefore, Dhananjaya the son of Kunti, is entitled to the first choice. There is a large body of cowherds numbering ten crores, rivalling me in strength and known as the Nārāyanas, all of whom are able to fight in the thick of battle. These soldiers, irresistible in battle, shall be sent to one of you, and I alone, resolved not to fight on the field, and laying down my arms, will go to the other. You may, O son of Kunti, first select whichever of

these two commends itself to you. For, according to law, you have the right to the first choice !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Thus addressed by Krishna, Dhananjaya the son of Kunti selected Keçava who was not to fight on the battle-field, even Nārāyana himself, the slayer of foes, increate, born among men at his own will,—the foremost of all Kshatriyas and above all the gods and the *Dānavas*. And Duryodhana selected for himself that entire army (composed of the Nārāyanas). And, O descendant of Bharata, having obtained those troops numbering thousands upon thousands, he was exceedingly delighted, although he knew that Krishna was not on his side. And having secured that army possessed of terrible prowess, Duryodhana went to the son of Rohini, of great strength, and explained to him the object of his visit. That descendant of Cura in reply addressed the following words to Dhritarāshtra's son,—'Thou shouldst remember, O tiger among men, all that I said at the marriage ceremony celebrated by Virāta! O thou delighter of the race of Kuru, for thy sake I then contradicted Krishna and spoke against his opinions. And again and again I alluded to the equality of our relationship to both the parties. But Krishna adopted not the views I then expressed; nor can I separate myself from Krishna for even a single moment. And seeing that I cannot act against Krishna, even this is the resolution formed by me, *viz.*, that I will fight neither for Kunti's sons nor for you! And, O bull of the Bharatas, born as thou art in Bharata's race that is honored by all the kings, go and fight in accordance with the rules of propriety !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Thus addressed, Duryodhana embraced that hero wielding a plough for his weapon of battle, and although knowing that Krishna had been taken away from his side, he yet regarded Arjuna as already vanquished. And the royal son of Dhritarāshtra then went to Kritavarman. And Kritavarman gave him a body of troops numbering an *Akshauhini*. And surrounded by that military host, terrible to behold, the Kaurava marched forth delighting his friends. And after Duryodhana had departed, the Creator of the world,

Krishna, clad in yellow attire, addressed Kiritin, saying,—'For what reason is it that you have selected me who will not fight at all ?' "

"Thereupon Arjuna answered,—'I question not that you are able to slay them all. I also am alone capable of slaying them, O best of men! But you are an illustrious person in the world; and this renown will accompany you. I also am a suitor for fame; therefore, you have been selected by me. It hath been always my desire to have you for driving my car. I, therefore, ask you to fulfil my desire cherished for a long time.'

" Vasudeva's son thereupon said,—'It beseems thee well, O Kunti's son, that thou measurest thyself with me! I will act as thy charioteer; let thy wish be fulfilled.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then with a glad heart, Kunti's son, accompanied by Krishna as well as by the flower of the Daçārha race, came back to Yudhishthira.' "

SECTION VII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—" O king, having learnt the news from the messengers, Calya, accompanied by a large body of troops and by his sons, all of whom were mighty in battle, was coming to the Pāndavas. His encampment covered an area of one and a half *Yojana*, so large was the force owned by that best of men. He was the master, O king, of an *Akshauhini* and had great prowess and valour. And there were in his army heroes bearing armour of various colors, with diverse kinds of banners and bows and ornaments and cars and animals, all wearing excellent garlands, and various robes and ornaments. And many foremost of Kshatriyas were the leaders of his troops, dressed and decorated in the manner of their native land by hundreds and thousands. And he proceeded by slow marches, giving rest to his troops, towards the place where the Pāndava was. And the creatures of the earth felt oppressed and the earth trembled under the tread of his troops. And king Duryodhana, hearing that that magnanimous and mighty hero was on his way, hastened towards him and paid him

honors, O best of the Bharata race! And he caused finely decorated palaces of entertainment to be constructed at different spots for his reception, on beautiful sites, and whither many artists were directed to entertain the guests. And those pavilions contained garlands and meat and the choicest viands and drinks, and wells of various forms, capable of refreshing the heart, and tanks of various forms, and edibles, and roomy apartments. And arriving at those pavilions, and waited upon like a very god by the servants of Duryodhana located at different spots, Calya reached another house of entertainment resplendent as a retreat of the celestials. And there, greeted with choice creature-comforts fit for beings superior to man, he deemed himself superior even to the lord himself of the gods and thought meanly of Indra as compared with himself. And that foremost of Kshatriyas, well-pleased, asked the servants, saying,—'Where are those men of Yudhishthira, who have prepared these places of refreshment? Let those men who made these be brought to me. I deem them worthy of being rewarded by me. I must reward them, let it so please the son of Kunti!' The servants, surprised, submitted the whole matter to Duryodhana. And when Calya was exceedingly pleased, and ready to grant even his life, Duryodhana, who had remained concealed, came foward and showed himself to his maternal uncle. And the king of the Madras saw him and understood that it was Duryodhana who had taken all that trouble to receive him. And Calya embraced Duryodhana and said,—'Accept something that you may desire!'

"Duryodhana thereupon said,—'O thou auspicious one, let thy word be true, grant me a boon! I ask thee to be the leader of all my army!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"And hearing this, Calya said, —'Be it so! What else is to be done?' And the son of Gāndhāri repeated again and again,—'It is done!' And Calya said,—'O Duryodhana, O best of men, go to thy own city. I shall proceed to pay a visit to Yudhishthira, the subduer of foes. O king, I shall speedly come back, O ruler of men! That best of men, Pāndu's son Yudhishthira, must, by all means, be visited by me!' And hearing this, Duryodhana

said,—'O king, O ruler of the earth, having seen the Pāndava, come speedily back! I depend entirely upon thee, O king of kings! Remember the boon that thou hast granted me!' And Calya answered,—'Good betide thee! I shall come speedily back. Repair to thy own city, O protector of men!' And then those two kings, Calya and Duryodhana, embraced each other. And having thus greeted Calya, Duryodhana came back to his own city. And Calya went to inform the sons of Kunti of that proceeding of his. And having reached Upaplavya, and entered the encampment, Calya saw there all the sons of Pāndu. And the mighty-armed Calya, having met the sons of Pāndu, accepted as usual water for washing his feet, and the customary gifts of honor including a cow. And the king of the Madras, that slayer of foes, first asked them how they were, and then with great delight embraced Yudhishthira, and Bhima, and Arjuna, and the sons of his sister the two twin-brothers. And when all had sat down, Calya spoke to Yudhishthira, the son of Kunti, saying,—'O tiger among kings, O thou delighter of the race of Kuru, is it all well with thee? O best of victors, how fortunately hast thou spent the term of thy residence in the wilderness! O king, O lord of monarchs, it was an exceedingly hard task that thou hast performed by dwelling in the wilderness together with thy brothers and this noble lady here! An awfully difficult task again was that sojourn of thine,—the period of concealment,—which task also thou hast performed. O descendant of Bharata, for one pulled down from a throne it is nothing but hardship that awaits him. Where is there any happiness for him, O king! O afflicter of thy foes, in compensation for all this vast misery wrought by Dhritarāshtra's son, thou wilt attain to proportional happiness after having killed thy foes! O great king, O lord of men, the ways of the world are known to thee! Therefore, O my son, thou art never guided by avarice in any of thy dealings! O descendant of Bharata, do thou tread on the foot-prints of ancient saintly kings! My son, Yudhishthira, be steady in the path of liberality, and self-abnegation, and truth! And, O royal Yudhishthira, mercy and self-control,

and truth and universal sympathy, and everything wonderful in this world, are to be found in thee! Thou art mild, munificent, religious, and liberal, and thou regardest virtue as the highest good! O king, many are the rules of virtue that prevail amongst men, and all those are known to thee! O my son, O afflicter of foes, thou knowest in fact every thing relating to this world, O king! O best of Bharata's race, how lucky it is that thou hast come out of this difficulty of thine! How lucky, O king, O formost of monarchs, O lord, it is that I see thee, so virtuous a soul, a treasure-house of righteousness, freed with thy followers from this!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then, O descendant of Bharata, the king spoke of his meeting with Duryodhana and gave a detailed account regarding that promise of his and that boon granted by himself. And Yudhishthira said,—'O valiant king, it has been well done by thee that being pleased at heart thou hast plighted thy truth to Duryodhana. But, good betide thee, O ruler of the earth, I ask thee to do one thing only. O king, O best of men, thou wilt have to do it solely for my sake, though it may not be proper to be done, O valiant one! Hear, what I submit to thee, O great king. Thou art equal to Krishna on the field of battle. When, O best of kings, the single combat between Karna and Arjuna will take place, I have no doubt thou wilt have to drive Karna's car. On that occasion, if thou art inclined to do good to me, thou must protect Arjuna, O king! Thou must likewise so act that the *Suta's* son Karna, may be dispirited and the victory may be ours. Improper it no doubt is; but, O my uncle, for all that thou must do it!' Calya said,—'Good betide thee! listen, O son of Pāndu! Thou tellst me to so act that the vile son of the *Suta* may be dispirited in fight. To be sure, I shall be his charioteer on the field, for he always considers me equal to Krishna. O tiger-like descendant of Kuru, I shall certainly speak to him, when desirous of fighting on the field of battle, words contradictory and fraught with harm to him, so that bereft of pride and valour, he may be easily slain by his antagonist. This I tell thee truly. Asked by thee to do it, this I am determined to do, O my son! Whatever

else I may be able to bring about, I shall do for thy good. Whatever troubles were suffered by thee together with Draupadi on the occasion of the game at dice,—the rude inhuman words uttered by the *Suta's* son, the misery inflicted by the *Asura* Jata and by Kichaka, O illustrious one, all the miseries experienced by Draupadi, like those formerly experienced by Damayanti,—will all, O hero, end in joy! Thou shouldst not be aggrieved at this; for Destiny is all-powerful in this world; and, O Yudhishthira, high-minded persons have to endure miseries of various kinds, nay, even the gods themselves, O king, have suffered misfortunes! O king, O descendant of Bharata, it is narrated that the high-minded Indra, the chief of the celestials, had to endure together with his wife very great misery, indeed!'"

SECTION VIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O foremest of monarchs, I wish to know how it was that great and unparalleled misery had to be endured by the illustrious Indra together with his queen.'"

"Calya said,—'Listen, O king, to me as I relate this ancient story of the events of former days,—how, O descendant of Bharata, misery befel Indra and his wife! Once Twashtri, the lord of creatures and the foremost of celestials, was engaged in practising rigid austerities. And it is said that from antipathy to Indra he created a son having three heads. And that being of universal form possessed of great lustre hankered after Indra's seat. And possessed of those three awful faces resembling the sun, the moon, and the fire, he read the *Vedas* with one mouth, drank wine with another, and looked with the third as if he would absorb all the cardinal points. And given to the practice of austerities, and mild, and self-controlled, he was intent upon a life of religious practices and austerities. And his practice of austerities, O subduer of foes, was rigid and terrible and of an exceedingly severe character. And beholding the austerities, courage, and truthfulness of this one possessed of immeasurable energy, Indra became anxious, fearing lest that being should take his place. And Indra reflected,—

How may he be made to addict himself to sensual enjoyments; how may he be made to cease his practice of such rigid austerities? For were the three-headed being to wax strong, he would absorb the whole universe!—And it was thus that Indra pondered in his mind; and, O best of Bharata's race, endued with intelligence, he ordered the celestial nymphs to tempt the son of Twashtri. And he commanded them, saying,—Be quick, and go without delay, and so tempt him that the three-headed being may plunge himself into sensual enjoyments to the utmost extent. Furnished with captivating hips, array yourselves in voluptuous attires, and decking yourselves in charming necklaces, do ye display gestures and blandishments of love. Endued with loveliness, do ye, good betide you, tempt him and alleviate my dread. I feel restless in my heart, O lovely damsels. Avert, ye ladies, this awful peril that hangs over me!—'

'Then the Nymphs said,—O Indra, O slayer of Vala, we shall so endeavour to allure him that thou wilt have to fear nothing at his hands. That very receptacle of austerities, sitting now as if scorching everything with his eyes, O god, we are going together to tempt. We shall try to bring him under our control, and to put an end to your fears.—'

"Calya continued,—'Commanded by Indra, they then went to the three-headed being. And arriving there, those lovely damsels tempted him with various gestures of love, displaying their fine figures. But engaged in the practice of exceedingly severe austerities, although he looked at them, yet he was not influenced by desire. Of subdued senses, he was like the ocean, full to the brim, in gravity. And the nymphs, after having tried their best, came back to Indra. And they all with joined hands spoke to the lord of the celestials, saying,—O lord, that unapproachable being is incapable of being disturbed by us. O highly gifted being, thou mayst do what now may seem proper to thee!—The high-minded Indra honored the nymphs and then dismissed them, reflecting, O Yudhishthira, solely upon other means of destroying his foe. And endued with intelligence, he fixed upon a contrivance for destroying the three-headed being. And he said,—Let me today hurl my thunderbolt at

him. By this means he will speedily be killed. Even a strong person should not overlook a rising foe, contemptible though he may be.—And thus reflecting upon the lessons inculcated in treatises of learning, he was firmly resolved upon slaying that being. Then Indra, enraged, hurled at the three-headed being his thunderbolt which looked like fire and was terrible to behold, and which inspired dread. And forcibly struck by that thunderbolt, he was slain and fell down as falls on the earth the loosened summit of a hill. And beholding him slain by the thunder-bolt, and lying down huge as a hill, the chief of the celestials found no peace, and felt as if scorched by the effulgent appearance of the dead; for though slain, he had a blazing and effulgent appearance and looked like one alive. And, strange to say, though lifeless, his heads seemed to be alive as they were beheld lying low on the field. And exceedingly afraid of that lustre, Indra remained plunged in thought. And at that time, O great king, bearing an axe on his shoulder, a carpenter came to the forest and approached the spot where lay that being. And Indra, the lord of Cachi, who was afraid, saw the carpenter come there by chance. And the chastiser of Pāka said unto him immediately,—Do this my behest. Quickly cut off this one's heads.—The carpenter thereupon said,—His shoulders are broad : this axe will not be able to cut them off. Nor shall I be able to do what is condemned by righteous persons.—And Indra said,—Do not fear, quickly do what I say. At my command thy axe shall equal the thunderbolt.—The carpenter said,—Whom am I to take thee to be who hast done this frightful deed today? This I wish to learn, tell me the exact truth!—And Indra said,—O carpenter, I am Indra, the chief of the gods. Let this be known to thee. Do thou act just as I have told thee. Do not hesitate, O carpenter!—The carpenter said,—O Indra, how is it that thou art not ashamed of this thy inhuman act? How is it that thou hast no dread of the sin of slaying a Brāhmana, after having slain this son of a saint?—Indra said,—I shall afterwards perform some religious ceremony of a rigorous kind to purify myself from this taint. This was a powerful enemy of mine

whom I have killed with my thunderbolt. Even now I am uneasy, O carpenter. I, indeed, dread him even now. Do thou quickly cut of his heads! I shall bestow my favor upon thee. In sacrifices, men will give thee the head of the sacrificial beast as thy share. This is the favor I confer on thee. Do thou quickly perform what I desire!—'

"Calya said,—'Hearing, this, the carpenter, at the request of the great Indra, immediately severed the heads of the three-headed being by means of his axe. And when the heads were cut off, out flew therefrom a number of birds, *viz.*, partridges, quails, and sparrows. And from the mouth wherewith he used to recite the *Vedas* and to drink the *Soma* juice, out came partridges in quick succession. And, O king, O son of Pāndu, from the mouth with which he used to look at the cardinal points as if absorbing them all, a number of quails came forth. And from that mouth of the three-headed being which used to drink wine, out flew a number of sparrows and hawks. And the heads having been cut off, Indra was freed from his trepidation, and went to heaven, glad at heart. And the carpenter also went back to his house. And the slayer of *Asuras*, having killed his foe, considered his object gained. Now when the lord of creatures, Twashtri, heard that his son had been slain by Indra, his eyes became red with ire, and he spoke the following words:—Since Indra hath killed my son who had committed no offence at all, who was constantly engaged in the practice of austerities, who was merciful, possessed of self-control, and of subdued passions, therefore, for the destruction of Indra, I will create Vritra! Let the worlds behold what power I possess, and how mighty is the practice of austerities! Let that inhuman, wicked-minded lord of the gods also witness the same!—And saying this, that enraged one, famous for his austerities, washed his mouth with water, made offerings on the fire, created the terrible Vritra, and spake to him, saying,—O destined slayer of Indra, grow in might even from the strength of my austere rites! —And that *Asura* grew in might, towering towards the firmament, and resembling the sun or fire. And he asked,—Risen like the doomsday sun, what am I to do?—Kill Indra!—

was the reply. And then he departed towards the celestial regions. And next ensued a great fight between Vritra and Indra both fired with wrath. And there took place a terrible combat, O best of Kuru's race ! And the heroic Vritra seized the celestial lord who had performed a hundred sacrifices. And filled with wrath, he whirled Indra and threw him into his mouth. And when Indra was swallowed up by Vritra, the terrified senior gods, possessed of great might, created *Jrimbhika** to kill Vritra. And as Vritra yawned and his mouth opened, the slayer of the *Asura* Vala contracted the different parts of his body, and came out from within Vritra's mouth. And thenceforth the yawn attaches itself to the living breath of animated beings in the three worlds. And the gods rejoiced at the egress of Indra. And once again commenced the terrible fight between Vritra and Indra, both full of ire. And it was waged for a long while, O best of Bharata's race. And when Vritra, inspired with the mighty spirit of Twashtri and himself endowed with strength, got the upper hand in fight, Indra turned back. And on his retreat, the gods became exceedingly distressed. And all of them together with Indra were overpowered by the might of Twashtri. And they all consulted with the saints, O descendant of Bharata. And they deliberated as to what was proper to be done, and were overwhelmed with dread. And seated on the top of the Mandara mountain, and bent on killing Vritra, they inly bethought themselves of Vishnu, the indestructible One.' "

SECTION IX.

" 'Indra said.—This whole indestructible universe, O gods, hath been pervaded by Vritra ! There is nothing that can be equal to the task of opposing him. I was capable of yore, but now I am incapable. What, good betide you, can I do ? I believe him to be unapproachable. Powerful and magnanimous, possessing immeasurable strength in fight, he would be able to swallow up all the three worlds with the gods, the

* The *Asura* through whose influence creatures yawn.—*T.*

Asuras, and the men. Therefore, hear ye dwellers of heaven this is my resolution. Proceeding to the abode of Vishnu, in company with that high-souled Being must we consult, and ascertain the means of slaying this ruthless wretch.—'

"Calya continued.—'Indra having thus spoken, the gods with that host of *Rishis* repaired to the mighty god Vishnu to place themselves under the protection of that protecter of all. And afflicted with the dread of Vritra, they said unto the Supreme Lord of the deities,—Thou hadst in former times covered the three worlds with three steps! Thou hadst procured the ambrosial food, O Vishnu, and destroyed the *Asuras* in battle! Thou didst bind the great *Asura* Vali and hadst raised Indra to the throne of heaven! Thou art the Lord of the gods, and this entire universe is pervaded by thee. Thou art the God, the mighty Deity, saluted by all persons! Be thou the refuge of all the celestials together with Indra, O best of gods! The whole universe, O slayer of *Asuras*, hath been pervaded by Vritra!—And Vishnu said,—I am no doubt bound to do what is for your good. I shall, therefore, tell you of a contrivance whereby he may be annihilated. Do you with the *Rishis* and the *Gandharvas* repair to the place where that bearer of a universal form is, and adopt towards him a conciliatory policy. You will thus succeed in overthrowing him. By virtue of my power, victory, ye gods, will be won by Indra, for, remaining invisible, I shall enter into his thunder-bolt, that best of weapons! O foremost of gods, depart ye with the *Rishis* and the *Gandharvrs!* Let there be no delay in effecting a peace between Indra and Vritra!—'

"Calya continued,—'When he had thus spoken, the *Rishis* and the celestials placed Indra at their head, and uniting together, went away. And all those mighty beings with Indra approached and beheld Vritra glowing and resplendent as if scorching the ten points, and swallowing all the three worlds, and resembling the sun or the moon. And then the *Rishis* came up to Vritra and spoke to him in conciliatory terms, saying,—O thou unconquerable being, the whole of this universe hath been pervaded by thy energy! Thou art not able however to overpower Indra, O best of mighty beings! A long period hath

now elapsed since you two began to fight. All beings, with the gods and the *Asuras*, and men, are suffering from the effects of the fight. Let there be eternal friendship between thee and Indra. Thou shalt be happy and shalt dwell eternally in Indra's regions!—And the mighty Vritra, having heard the words of the saints, bowed his head unto them. And the *Asura* (thus) spoke,—What you, O highly-gifted beings and also all these *Gandharvas*, are saying, I have heard! Ye stainless beings, hear also what I have got to say. How can there be peace between us two, Indra and myself? How can there be friendship, ye gods, between two hostile powers?—The *Rishis* said,—Friendship among righteous persons happens at a single meeting. It is a desirable object. Thereafter will happen what is fated to be. The opportunity of forming friendship with a righteous person should not be sacrificed. There fore, the frendship of the righteous should be sought. The friendship of the righteous is (like) excellent wealth, for he that is wise would give advice when it is needed. The friendship of a good person is of great use; therefore, a wise person should not desire to kill a righteous one. Indra is honored by the righteous, and is the refuge of magnanimous persons, being veracious, and unblameable, and knows what virtue is, and is possessed of a refined judgment. Let there be eternal friendship between thee and Indra, as described above. In this way, have faith (in him); let not thy heart be differently inclined.—'

"Calya said,—'Hearing these words of the great *Rishis*, the illustrious *Asura* spoke to them,—No doubt, the *Rishis*, endued with supernatural powers, are to be respected by me. Let what I am going to say, ye gods, be performed in its entirety; then I shall do everything that (these) best of Brahmanas have said to me. Ye lords of the Brāhmana race, ordain so that I may not be killed either by what is dry, or wet; either by stone, or by wood; either by a weapon fit for close fight, or by a missile; either in the day-time, or at night; either by Indra himself, or by the gods! On those terms eternal peace with Indra would be acceptable to me!—Very good!—was what the *Rishis* told him, O best of Bharata race!

Thus peace having been concluded, Vritra was very much pleased. And Indra also became pleased, though constantly occupied with the thought of killing Vritra. And the chief of the deities passed his time in search of a loophole, uneasy (in mind). And on a certain day when it was evening and the hour awful, Indra caught sight of the mighty *Asura* on the coast of the sea. And he bethought himself of the boon that was granted to the illustrious *Asura*, saying,—This is the awful evening time; it is neither day, nor night; and this Vritra, my enemy, who hath stripped me of my all, must undoubtedly be killed by me. If I do not kill Vritra, this great and mighty *Asura* of gigantic frame, even by deceit, it will not go well with me!—And as Indra thought of all this, bearing Vishnu in mind, he beheld at that instant in the sea a mass of froth as large as a hill. And he said,—This is neither dry, nor wet, nor is it a weapon; let me hurl it at Vritra. Without doubt, he will die immediately!—And he threw at Vritra that mass of froth blended with the thunderbolt. And Vishnu, having entered within that froth, put an end to the life of Vritra. And when Vritra was killed, the cardinal points were free from gloom; and there also blew a pleasant breeze; and all beings were much pleased. And the deities with the *Gandharvas*, and *Yakshas*, and *Rākshasas*, with the great snakes and saints, glorified the mighty Indra with various laudatory hymns. And saluted by all beings, Indra spoke words of encouragement to all. And his heart was glad as also that of every one of the gods, for having killed the foe. And knowing the nature of virtue, he worshipped Vishnu, the most praiseworthy of all objects in the worlds. Now when the mighty Vritra, terrible to the gods, was killed, Indra became overpowered by falsehood, and he became exceedingly sad; and he was also overpowered by the sin of Brāhmanicide on account of having killed the three-headed son of Twashtri. And he betook himself to the confines of the worlds, and became bereft of his senses and consciousness. And overpowered by his own sins, he could not be recognized. And he lay concealed in water, just like a writhing snake. And when the lord of celestials, oppressed with the dread of Brāh-

manicide, had vanished from sight, the earth looked as if a havoc had passed over it. And it became treeless, and its woods withered; and the course of rivers was interrupted; and the reservoirs lost all their water; and there was distress among animals on account of cessation of rains. And the deities and all the great *Rishis* were in exceeding fear; and the world had no king, and was overtaken by disasters. Then the deities and the divine saints in heaven, separated from the chief of the gods, became terrified, and wondered who was to be their king. And nobody had any inclination to act as the king of the gods.' "

SECTION X.

"Calya said,—'Then all the *Rishis* and the superior gods said,—Let the handsome Nahusha be crowned as king of the gods. He is powerful, and renowned, and devoted to virtue evermore!—And they all went and said to him,—O lord of the earth, be thou our king!—And Nahusha, intent on his welfare, spoke to those gods and saints accompanied by the progenitors (of mankind),—I am feeble; I am not capable of protecting you; it is a powerful person who should be king; it is Indra who hath always been possessed of strength.—And all the gods, led by the saints, spoke again to him,—Aided by the virtue of our austerities, rule thou the kingdom of heaven. There is no doubt that we have all our respective fears. Be crowned, O lord of monarchs, as the king of heaven. Whatever being may stand within thy sight, whether he be a god, an *Asura*, a *Yaksha*, a saint, a *Pitri*, or a *Gandharva*, thou shalt absorb his power and (thereby) wax strong. Always placing virtue before (all other things), be thou the ruler of the worlds. Protect also the Brāhmana saints and the gods in heaven!—Then, O lord of monarchs, Nahusha was crowned king in heaven. And placing virtue before (everything else), he became the ruler of all the worlds. And though always of a virtuous disposition, yet when he obtained that precious boon and the kingdom of heaven, Nahusha assumed a sensual turn of mind,

And when Nahusha became the king of the gods, he surrounded himself with celestial nymphs, and with damsels of celestial birth, and took to enjoyments of various kinds, in the *Nandana* groves, on mount Kailāsa, on the breast of Himavat, on Mandara, the White hill, Sahya, Mahendra, and Malaya, as also upon seas and rivers. And he listened to various divine narratives that captivated both the ear and the heart, and to the play of musical instruments of different sorts, and to sweet vocal strains. And Viswāvasu and Nārada and bevies of celestial nymphs and bands of Gandharvas and the six Seasons in living shapes, attended upon the king of the gods. And fragrant breezes, refreshingly cool, blew round him. And while that wretch was thus enjoying himself, on one occasion the goddess who was the favorite queen of Indra came in his sight. And that vicious soul, having looked at her, said to the courtiers,—Why doth not this goddess, the queen of Indra, attend upon me? I am the monarch of the gods, and also the ruler of the worlds. Let Cachi make haste and visit me in my house!—Saddened at hearing this, the goddess said to Vrihaspati,—Protect me, O Brāhmana, from this Nahusha. I come to you as my refuge. You always say, O Brāhmana, that I have got on my person all the auspicious marks, being the fovorite of the divine king; that I am chaste, devoted to my lord, and destined never to become a widow. All this about me you have said before. Let your words be made true. O possessor of great powers, O lord, you never spoke words that were vain. Therefore, O best of Brāhmanas, this that you have said ought to be true!—Then Vrihaspati said to the queen of Indra who was beside herself through fear, —What thou hast been told by me will come to be true, be sure, O goddess! Thou shalt see Indra, the lord of the gods, who will soon come back here. I tell thee truly, thou hast no fear from Nahusha: I shall soon unite thee with Indra. —Now Nahusha came to hear that Indra's queen had taken refuge with Vrihaspati, the son of Angiras. And at this, the king became highly enraged.'"

SECTION XI.

"Calya said,—'Seeing Nahusha enraged, the gods led by the saints said unto him, who was now their king of awful mien,—O king of gods, quit thy wrath. When thou art in wrath, O lord, the Universe, with its *Asuras* and *Gandharvas*, its *Kinnaras*, and great snakes, quaketh! Quit this wrath, thou righteous being! Persons like thee do not put themselves out. That goddess is another person's wife. Be pacified, O lord of gods! Turn back thy inclination from the sin of outraging another's wife. Thou art the king of gods, prosperity to thee! Protect thy subjects in all righteousness!—So addressed, he heeded not the saying, rendered senseless by lust. And the king spoke to the gods, in allusion to Indra,—Ahalyā of spotless fame, the wife of a saint, was outraged by Indra while her husband was alive. Why did ye not prevent him? Many were the deeds of inhumanity, of unrighteousness, of deceit, committed by Indra in former times. Why did ye not prevent him? Let the goddess do my pleasure; that would be her permanent good. And so the same evermore will redound to your safety, ye gods!—'

'The gods said,—We shall bring to thee the queen of Indra even as thou hast laid thy command, O lord of heaven! Quit this wrath, thou valiant soul! Be pacified, O lord of gods!—'

"Calya continued,—'Thus having spoken to him, the gods with the saints went to inform Vrihaspati and the queen of Indra of the sad news. And they said,—We know, O foremost of Brāhmanas, that the queen of Indra hath betaken herself to thy house, for protection, and that thou hast promised her protection, O best of divine saints! But we the gods and *Gandharvas* and saints, beseech thee, O thou of great lustre, to give up the queen of Indra to Nahusha. Nahusha, the king of gods, of great effulgence, is superior to Indra. Let her, that lady of choice figure and complexion, choose him as her lord!—Thus addressed, the goddess gave vent to tears; and sobbing audibly, she moaned in piteous accents.

And she spoke to Vrihaspati,—O best of divine saints, I do not desire Nahusha to be my lord. I have betaken myself to thy protection, O Brāhmana! Deliver me from this great peril!—

'Vrihaspati said,—My resolution is this,—I shall not abandon one that hath sought my protection. O thou of unblamable life, I shall not abandon thee, virtuous as thou art and of a truthful disposition! I do not desire to do an improper act, especially as I am a Brāhmana, knowing what righteousness is, having a regard for truth, and aware also of the precepts of virtue. I shall never do it. Go your ways, ye best of gods! Hear what hath formerly been sung by Brahmā with regard to the matter at hand,—He that delivereth up to a foe a person terrified and asking for protection, obtaineth no protection when he himself is in need of it. His seed doth not grow at seed-time and rain doth not come to him in the season of rains. He that delivereth up to a foe a person terrified and asking for protection, never succeedeth in anything that he undertaketh; senseless as he is, he droppeth paralysed from heaven; the gods refuse offerings made by him. His progeny die an untimely death and his forefathers always quarrel (among themselves). The gods with Indra at their head dart the thunderbolt at him.—Knowing it to be so, I shall not deliver up this Cachi here, the queen of Indra, famous in the world as his favorite consort. O ye best of gods, what may be for both her good and mine I ask you to do! Cachi I shall never deliver up!—'

"Calya continued,—'Then the gods and the Gandharvas said these words to the preceptor of the gods,—O Vrihaspati, deliberate upon something that may be conformable to sound policy!—Vrihaspati said,—Let this goddess of auspicious looks ask for time from Nahusha in order to make up her mind to his proposal. This will be for the good of Indra's queen, and of us as well. Time, ye gods, may give rise to many impediments. Time will send time onward.* Nahusha is proud and powerful by virtue of the boon granted to him!—'

---

* *i. e.* we do not know what is next in the chapter of accidents.—*T.*

" Calya continued,—'Vrihaspa ti having spoken so, the gods, delighted, then said,—Well hast thou said, O Brāhmana! This is for the good of all the gods. It is no doubt so. Only, let this goddess be propitiated.—Then the assembled gods, led by *Agni*, with a view to the welfare of all the worlds, spoke to Indra's queen in a quiet way. And the gods said,—Thou art supporting the whole universe of things mobile and immobile. Thou art chaste and true; go thou to Nahusha. That vicious being, lustful after thee, will shortly fall; and Indra, O goddess, will get the sovereignty of the gods!—Ascertaining this to be the result of that deliberation, Indra's queen, for attaining her end, went bashfully to Nahusha of awful mien. The vicious Nahusha also, rendered senseless by lust, saw how youthful and lovely she was, and became highly pleased.' "

SECTION XII.

Calya said,—'Now then Nahusha, the king of the gods, looked at her and said,—O thou of sweet smiles, I am the Indra of all the three worlds. O thou of beautiful thighs and fair complexion, accept me as thy lord!—That chaste goddess, thus addressed by Nahusha, was terrified and quaked like a plantain-stalk at a breezy spot. She bowed her head to Brahmā, and joining her hands spoke to Nahusha, the king of the gods, of awful mien,—O lord of the deities, I desire to obtain time. It is not known what hath become of Indra, or where he is. Having enquired into the truth regarding him, if, O lord, I obtain no news of him, then I shall visit thee; this I tell thee for truth!—Thus addressed by Indra's queen, Nahusha was pleased. And Nahusha said,—Let it be so, O lady of lovely hips, even as thou art telling me. Thou wilt come, after having ascertained the news. I hope thou wilt remember thy plighted truth!—Dismissed by Nahusha, she of auspicious looks stepped out; and that famous lady went to the abode of Vrihaspati. And, O best of kings, the gods with *Agni* at their head, when they heard her words, deliberated, intent upon what would promote the interests of Indra. And they then joined the powerful Vishnu, the God of gods. And skilled in making

speeches, the uneasy gods spoke the following words to him,—Indra, the lord all of the gods, hath been overpowered by the sin of Brāhmanicide. Thou, O lord of the gods, art the first-born, the ruler of the universe, and our refuge! Thou hadst assumed the form of Vishnu for the protection of all beings. When Vritra was killed through thy energy, Indra was overwhelmed by the sin of Brāhmanicide. O best of all the gods, prescribe the means of setting him free! —Having heard these words of the gods, Vishnu said,—Let Indra offer sacrifice to me. Even I shall purify the holder of the thunderbolt. The chastiser of Pāka, having performed the holy horse-sacrifice, will fearlessly regain his dignity as lord of the gods. And the wicked-minded Nahusha will be led to destruction by his evil deeds. For a certain period, ye gods, ye must be patient, being vigilant at the same time!—Having heard these words of Vishnu, words that were true, and pleasant like ambrosia to their ears, the gods, with their preceptor, and with the *Rishis*, proceeded to that spot where Indra was, uneasy with fear. And there, O king, was performed a great horse-sacrifice, capable of removing the sin of Brāhmanicide, for the purification of the high-minded and great Indra. And the lord of the gods, O Yudhishthira, divided the sin of Brāhmanicide among trees and rivers and mountains and the earth and women. And having distributed it thus among those beings, and parted with it, Indra was free from fever. And rid of his sin, he came to himself. And at that place, the slayer of the *Asura* Vala, quaked when he looked at Nahusha, before whom all animated beings felt cowed, and who was unapproachable by virtue of the boon the *Rishis* had granted to him. And the divine husband of Cachi vanished from sight once again. And invisible to all beings, he wandered biding his time. And Indra having disappeared, Cachi, fell into grief. And exceedingly miserable, she bewailed,—Alas! O Indra! If ever I have made a gift, or made offerings to the gods, or have propitiated my spiritual guides, if there is any truth in me, then I pray that my chastity may remain inviolate. I bow myself to this goddess Night, holy, pure, running her course during this the northern

journey of the sun,* let my desire be fulfilled!—Saying this, she, in a purified condition of body and soul, worshipped the goddess Night. And in the name of her chastity and truth she had recourse to divination.† And she asked,—Show me the place where the king of the gods is. Let truth be verified by truth!—And it was thus that she addressed the goddess of Divination.' "

SECTION XIII.

" Calya said,—'Then the goddess of Divination stood near that chaste and beautiful lady. And having beheld that goddess, youthful and lovely, standing before her, Indra's queen, glad at heart, paid respects to her and then said,—I desire to know who thou art, O thou of lovely face!—And Divination said,—I am Divination, O goddess, come near thee. Since thou art truthful, therefore, O high-minded lady, do I appear in thy sight. Since thou art devoted to thy lord, employed in controlling thyself, and engaged in the practice of religious rites, I shall show thee the god Indra, the slayer of Vritra. Quickly come after me, so may good betide thee! Thou shalt see that best of gods!—Then Divination proceeded and the divine queen of Indra went after her. And she crossed the heavenly groves, and many mountains; and then having crossed the Himavat mountains, she came to its northern side. And having reached the sea, extending over many *yojanas*, she came upon a large island covered with various trees and plants. And there she saw a beautiful lake, of heavenly appearance, covered with birds, eight hundred miles in length, and as many in breadth. And upon it, O descendant of Bharata, were full-blown lotuses of heavenly appearance, of five colours, hummed round by bees, and counting by thousands. And in the middle of that lake, there was a large and beautiful assemblage of lotuses having in its midst a large white lotus standing

---

* *i. e.* passage of the sun from the winter to the summer solstice.—*T.*

† Divination was practised by reference to the stars in the might.—*T.*

on a lofty stalk. And penetrating into the lotus-stalk, along with Cachi, she saw Indra there who had entered into its fibres. And seeing her lord lying there in a minute form, Cachi also assumed a minute form, as did the goddess of Divination too. And Indra's queen began to glorify him by reciting his celebrated deeds of yore. And thus glorified, the divine Purandara spoke to Cachi,—For what purpose hast thou come? How also have I been found out?—Then the goddess spoke of the acts of Nahusha. And she said,—O performer of a hundred sacrifices, having obtained the sovereignty of the three worlds, powerful and haughty and of a vicious soul, he hath commanded me to visit him, and the cruel wretch hath even assigned me a definite time. If thou wilt not protect me, O lord, he will bring me under his power. For this reason, O Indra, have I come to thee in alarm. O thou of powerful arms, slay the terrible Nahusha of vicious soul! Discover thyself, O slayer of *Daityas* and *Dānavas*! O lord, assume thy own strength and rule the celestial kingdom!—'"

SECTION XIV.

"Calya said,—'Thus addressed by Cachi, the illustrious god said to her again,—This is not the time for putting forth valour. Nahusha is stronger than I am. O beautiful lady, he hath been strengthened by the *Riskis* with the merits of offerings to the gods and the *Pitris*. I shall have recourse to policy now. Thou wilt have to carry it out, O goddess! O lady, thou must do it secretly and must not disclose it to any person. O lady of a beautiful waist, going to Nahusha in private, tell him,—O lord of the Universe, thou must visit me mounted on a nice vehicle borne by *Rishis*. In that case I shall be pleased and shall place myself at thy disposal!—This shouldst thou tell him!—And thus addressed by the king of the gods, his lotus-eyed consort expressed her consent and went to Nahusha. And Nahusha, having seen her, smilingly addressed her, saying,—I welcome thee, O lady of lovely thighs! What is thy pleasure, O thou of sweet

smiles! Accept me, O lady of propitious looks, me who am devoted to thee! What is thy will, O spirited dame! I shall do thy wish, O lady of propitious looks and slender waist! Nor needst thou be bashful, O thou of lovely hips! Have trust in me. In the name of truth I swear, O goddess, that I shall do thy bidding!—'

'Cachi said,—O lord of the Universe, I want the time that thou hast assigned to me. Thereafter, O lord of the gods, thou shalt be my husband. I have a wish. Attend and hear, O king of the gods! What it is I shall say, O king, so that thou mayst do what I like. This is an indulgence that I ask from thy love for me. If thou grantest it, I shall be at thy disposal. Indra had horses for carrying him, and elephants, and cars. I want thee to have, O king of the gods, a novel vehicle, such as never belonged to Vishnu, or Rudra, or the *Asuras*, or the *Rākshasas*, O lord! Let a number of highly dignified *Rishis*, united together, bear thee in a palanquin! This is what commends itself to me. Thou shouldst not liken thyself to the *Asuras* or the gods! Thou absorbest the strength of all by thy own strength as soon as they look at thee! There is none so strong as to be able to stand before thee!—'

" Calya continued,—'Thus addressed, Nahusha was very much pleased. And the lord of the deities said to that lady of faultless features,—O lady of the fairest complexion, thou hast spoken of a vehicle never heard of before. I like it exceedingly, O goddess! I am in thy power, O thou of lovely face! He cannot be a feeble person who employeth *Rishis* for bearing him. I have practised austerities, and am mighty. I am the lord of the past, the present, and the future. The Universe would be no more if I were in a rage. The whole Universe is established in me. O thou of sweet smiles, the gods, and *Asuras*, and *Gandharvas*, and *Kinnaras*, and snakes, and *Rākshasas*, are together unable to cope with me when I am in a rage. Whomsoever I gaze upon I divest him of his energy. Therefore, thy request I shall no doubt fulfil, O goddess! The seven *Rishis*, and also the regenerate *Rishis*, shall carry me. See our greatness and splendour, O lady of lovely complexion!—'

"Calya continued,—'Having thus addressed that goddess of lovely face, and having dismissed her thus, he harnessed to his heavenly car a number of saints devoted to the practice of austerities. A disregarder of Brāhmanas, endued with power, and intoxicated with pride, capricious, and of vicious soul, he employed those saints to carry him. Meanwhile dismissed by Nahusha, Cachi went to Vrihaspati and said,—But little remaineth of the term assigned by Nahusha to me. Be compassionate unto me who respect thee so, and quickly find out Indra!—'

'The illustrious Vrihaspati then said to her,—Very good; thou needst not, O goddess, fear Nahusha of vicious soul! Surely, he shall not long retain his power. The wretch, in fact, is already gone, being regardless of virtue and because, O lovely dame, of his employing the great saints to carry him! And I shall perform a sacrifice for the destruction of this vicious wretch, and I shall find out Indra. Thou needst not fear. Fare thee well!—And Vrihaspati of great power then kindled a fire in the prescribed form, and put the very best offerings upon it in order to ascertain where the king of the gods was. And having put his offerings, O king, he said to the fire,—Search out Indra!—And thereupon that revered god, the eater of burnt offerings, assumed of his own accord a wonderful feminine form and vanished from sight at that very spot. And endued with the speed of the mind, he searched everywhere, mountains and forests, earth and sky, and came back to Vrihaspati within the twinkling of the eye. And Agni said,—O Vrihaspati, nowhere in these places do I find the king of the gods. The waters alone remain to be searched. I am always backward to enter the waters. I have no ingress therein, O Brāhmana! What am I to do for thee?—The preceptor of the gods then said to him,—O illustrious god, do thou enter the waters!—'

'Agni said,—I cannot enter the waters. Therein it is extinction that awaits me. I place myself in thy hand, O thou of great effulgence! Mayst thou fare well! Fire rose from water, the military caste rose from the priestly caste; and iron had its origin in stone. The power of these, which can penetrate

all other things, hath no operation upon the sources from which they sprang !—' "

SECTION XV.

" 'Vrihaspati said.—'Thou art the mouth, O Agni, of all the gods! Thou art the carrier of sacred offerings. Thou, like a witness, hast access to the inner souls of all creatures. The poets call thee single, and again, three-fold. O eater of burnt offerings, abandoned by thee the Universe would forthwith cease to be. The Brāhmanas bowing to thee, win with their wives and sons an eternal region, the reward of their own meritorious deeds. O Agni, it is thou who art the bearer of sacred offerings. Thou, O Agni, art thyself the best offering. In a sacrificial ceremony of the supreme order, it is thee that they worship with incessant gifts and offerings. O bearer of offerings, having created the three worlds, thou, when the hour cometh, consumeth them in thy enkindled form. Thou art the mother of the whole Universe; and thou again, O Agni, its termination. The wise call thee identical with the clouds and with the lightning; flames issuing from thee, support all creatures. All the waters are deposited in thee; so is this entire world. To thee, O purifier, nothing is unknown in the three worlds. Every body taketh kindly to his progenitor; do thou enter the waters without fear. I shall render thee strong with the eternal hymns of the *Veda*!—Thus glorified, the bearer of burnt offerings, that best of poets, well-pleased, spoke laudable words to Vrihaspati. And he said,—I shall show Indra to thee! This I tell thee for truth!—'

" Calya continued,—'Then Agni entered the waters, including seas and tiny ponds, and came to that reservoir where, O best of Bharata's race, while searchiug the lotus flowers, he saw the king of the gods lying within the fibres of a lotus-stalk. And soon coming back, he informed Vrihaspati how Indra had taken refuge in the fibres of a lotus-stalk, having assumed a minute form. Then Vrihaspati, accompanied by the gods, the saints, and the *Gandharvas*, went and glorified the slayer of

Vala by referring to his former deeds. And he said,—O Indra, the great *Asura* Namuchi was killed by thee; and those two *Asuras* also of terrible strength, *viz*, Camvara and Vala! Wax strong, O performer of a hundred sacrifices, and slay all thy foes! Rise, O Indra! Behold, here are assembled the gods and the saints! O great Indra, O lord, by slaying *Asuras*, thou hast delivered the worlds. Having got the froth of waters, strengthened with Vishnu's energy, thou formerly slew Vritra. Thou art the refuge of all creatures and art adorable. There is no being equal to thee. All the creatures, O Indra, are supported by thee. Thou didst build the greatness of the gods. Deliver all, together with the worlds, and assume thy strength, O great Indra!—And thus glorified, Indra increased little by little; and having assumed his native form, he waxed strong and spoke to the preceptor Vrihaspati standing before. And he said,—What business of yours yet remaineth; the great *Asura*, son of Twashtri, hath been killed; and Vritra also, whose form was exceedingly big and who destroyed the worlds!—'

'Vrihaspati said,—The human Nahusha, a king, having obtained the throne of heaven by virtue of the power of the divine saints, is giving us exceeding trouble!—'

'Indra said,—How hath Nahusha obtained the throne of heaven, difficult to get? What austerities did he practise? How great is his power, O Vrihaspati!—'

'Vrihaspati said,—The gods having been frightened, wished for a king of heaven, for thou hadst given up the high dignity of heaven's ruler. Then the gods, the *Pitris* of the universe, the saints, and the principal *Gandharvas*, all met together, O Indra, and went to Nahusha and said,—Be thou our king, and the defender of the Universe!—To them said Nahusha,—I am not able; fill me with your power and with the virtue of your austerities!—So told, the deities strengthened him, O king of the gods! And thereupon Nahusha became a person of terrible strength, And becoming thus the ruler of the three worlds, he hath put the great saints in harness, and the wretch is thus journeying from world to world. Mayst thou never see Nahusha who is terrible! He emitteth poison from his eyes, and

absorbeth the energy of all. All the gods are exceedingly frightened; they go about concealed and do not cast a glance at him !—'

"Calya continued,—'While that best of Angiras's race was thus speaking, there came that guardian of the world, Kuvera, and also Yama the son of Surya, and the old god Soma, and Varuna. And arrived there they said to the great Indra,—How lucky that the son of Twashtri hath been killed, and Vritra also! How lucky, O Indra, that we are beholding thee safe and sound, while all thy enemies have been killed !—Indra received all those guardians of the worlds, and with a glad heart greeted them in proper form with a view to request them in connection with Nahusha. And he said,—Nahusha of terrible mien is the king of the gods; therein lend me your assistance !—They replied,—Nahusha is of awful mien; his sight is poison; we are afraid of him, O god! If thou overthrowest Nahusha, then we should be entitled to our shares of sacrificial offerings, O Indra !—Indra said,—Let it be so. You, and the ruler of the waters, and Yama, and Kuvera, shall this day be crowned along with me! Aided by all the gods, let us overthrow the foe Nahusha of terrible gaze !—Then Agni also said to Indra,—Give me a share in sacrificial offerings. I also shall lend you my assistance! —Indra said to him,—O Agni, thou also shalt get a share in great sacrifices,—there will be a single share (in such) for both Indra and Agni !—'

"Calya continued,—'Thus did the illustrious lord Indra, the chastiser of Pāka, the giver of boons, bestow, after deliberation, upon Kuvera the sovereignty over the Yakshas, and all the wealth of the world; upon Yama, the sovereignty over the *Pitris*; and upon Varuna, that over the waters.'"

SECTION XVI.

"Calya said,—'Now when the great Indra, the intelligent chief of the gods, was deliberating with the guardians of the world and other deities upon the means of slaying Nahusha, there appeared at that spot the venerable ascetic

Agastya. And Agastya honored the lord of the gods and said,—How fortunate that thou art flourishing after the destruction of that being of universal form, as also that of Vritra! And how fortunate, O Purandara, that Nahusha hath been hurled from the throne of heaven! How fortunate, O slayer of Vala, that I behold thee with all thy enemies killed!—'

'Indra said,—Hath thy journey hither been pleasant, O great saint! I am delighted to see thee! Accept from me water for washing thy feet and face, as also the *Arghya* and the cow!—'

"Calya continued,—'Indra, well-pleased, began to question that best of saints and greatest of Brāhmanas when he was seated on a seat after receiving due honors, thus,—O revered saint, O best of Brāmhanas, I wish to have it recited by thee how Nahusha of vicious soul was hurled from heaven!—'

'Agastya said,—Listen, O Indra, to the pleasant narrative how the wicked and vicious Nahusha, intoxicated with pride of strength, hath been hurled from heaven. The pure-spirited Brāhmanas and celestial saints, while carrying him, weary with toil, questioned that vicious one, O best of victors, saying,—O Indra, there are certain hymns of the *Vedas*, directed to be recited while sprinkling the cows. Are they authentic or not?—Nahusha, who had lost his senses by the operation of the dark principle,* told them that they were not authentic. The saints then said,—Thou art tending towards unrighteousness; thou takest not to the righteous path. The great saints have formerly said that they are authentic!—Agastya continued,—Then he began to wrangle with the saints, O Indra! And incited by his vicious soul, he touched me on my head with his foot. At this, O lord of Cachi, he became divested of power and of good looks. Then, as the was agitated and overpowered with fear, I spoke to him,—Since thou hast pronounced as spurious the unexceptionable hymns of the *Veda* which have been recited by Brāhmana saints, and since thou hast touched my head with thy foot, and since thou, O ignorant wretch, hast turned these unapproachable saints, equal

* *Tamasa.—T.*

to Brahmā, into animals for carrying thee, therefore, O wretch, be divested of thy lustre, and hurled headlong, fall thou from heaven, the effect of all thy good deeds being exhausted! For ten thousand years, thou shalt, in the form of an enormous snake, roam over the earth! When that period is full, thou mayst come back to heaven!—Thus hath that wretch been hurled from the throne of heaven, O represser of foes! How fortunate, O Indra, that we are flourishing now! That thorn of the Brāhmanas hath been killed. O lord of Cachi, repair thou to heaven, protect the worlds, subdue thy senses, subdue thy foes, and be glorified by the great saints!—'

"Calya continned,—'Then, O ruler of men, the gods, and the bands of great saints were exceedingly pleased. And so also were the *Pitris*, the *Yakshas*, the snakes, the *Rakshasas*, the *Gandharvas*, and all the bands of celestial nymphs. And the tanks, the rivers, the mountains, and the seas also were highly pleased. And all came up and said,—How fortunate, O slayer of foes, that thou art flourishing! How fortunate that the intelligent Agastya hath killed the vicious Nahusha! How fortunate that that vile individual hath been turned into a snake to roam over the earth!—' "

SECTION XVII

"Calya said,—'Then Indra, glorified by the bands of *Gandharvas* and celestial nymphs, mounted on Airāvata, the king of elephants, characterised by auspicious marks. And the illustrious Agni, and the great saint Vrihaspati, and Yama, and Varuna, and Kuvera the lord of riches, accompanied him. And the lord Cakra, the slayer of Vritra, then went to the three worlds surrounded by the gods together with the *Gandharvas* and the celestial nymphs. And the performer of a hundred sacrifices, the king of the deities, was thus united with his queen. And he began to protect the worlds with exceeding gladness. And the great lord Indra became satisfied and granted a boon to the Atharvāngiras Vrihaspati. And Indra said,—There will be a name in the *Veda*, of *Atharvāngiras*; for this is an example; thou wilt also get a share in sacri-

fices.—And having honored Atharvāngiras thus, the great lord Indra, the performer of a hundred sacrifices, parted with him, O great king! And he honored all the deities and all the saints endued with wealth of asceticism. And, O king, Indra, well-pleased, governed the people virtuously. Thus was misery endured by Indra with his wife. And with the view of slaying his foes, even he had to pass a period in concealment. Thou shouldst not take it to heart that thou, O king of kings, hast suffered with Draupadi as also with thy high-minded brothers in the great forest. O king of kings, O descendant of Bharata, O delighter of Kuru's race, thou wilt get back thy kingdom in the same way as Indra got his, after having killed Vritra. The vicious Nahusha, that enemy of Brāhmanas, of vile mind, was overthrown by the curse of Agastya, and reduced to nothing for endless years. Similarly, O slayer of foes, thy enemies, Karna and Duryodhana and others, of vicious souls, will quickly be destroyed. Then, O hero, thou wilt enjoy the whole of this earth, as far as the sea, with thy brothers and this Draupadi. This story of the victory of Indra, equal to the *Veda* in its sacred character, should be listened to by a king desirous of victory and when his forces have been arrayed in order of battle. Therefore, O best of victors, I am reciting it to thee for thy victory, O Yudhishthira! High-souled persons attain prosperity when they are glorified. O Yudhishthira, the destruction of high-souled *Kshatriyas* is at hand by reason of the crimes of Duryodhana, and through the might also of Bhima and Arjuna. He who readeth this story of Indra's victory with a heart full of religious faith, is cleansed of his sins, attaineth a region of bliss, and obtaineth joy both in this world and the next. He hath no fear of his foes; he never becometh a sonless man; never encountereth any peril whatever, and enjoyeth long life. Everywhere victory declareth for him, and he knoweth not what defeat is!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"O best of Bharata's race, the king, that best of righteous men, thus encouraged by Calya, honored him in proper form. And Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, of powerful arms, having heard the words of Calya,

spoke to the king of the Madras the following words:—'There is no doubt that thou wilt act as the charioteer of Karna. Thou must damp the spirits of Karna then by recounting the praises of Arjuna!'

"Calya said.—'Let it be so! I shall do just as thou tellest me. And I shall do for thee anything else that I may be able to do.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then Calya, the king of the Madras, bade farewell to the sons of Kunti. And that handsome man then went with his army to Duryodhana, O represser of foes!"

SECTION XVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—" Then Yuyudhāna, the great hero of the Sātwata race, came to Yudhishthira with a large army of foot, and horse, and cars, and elephants. And his soldiers of great valour, come from various lands, bore various weapons of war, and heroic in look, they beautified the Pāndava army. And that army looked splendid by reason of battle-axes, and missiles, and spears, and lances, and mallets, and clubs, and staves, and cords, and stainless swords, and daggers, and arrows of various kinds, all of the best temper. And the army, beautified by those weapons, and resembling in colour the cloudy sky, assumed an appearance like to a mass of clouds with lightning-flashes in its midst. And the army counted an *Akshauhini* of troops. And when absorbed in the troops of Yudhishthira, it entirely disappeared, as doth a small river when it enters the sea. And similarly, the powerful chief of the Chedis, Dhrishtaketu, accompanied by an *Akshauhini*, came to the sons of Pāndu of immeasurable strength. And the king of Magadha, Jayatsena of great strength, brought with him for Yudhishthira an *Akshauhini* of troops. And similarly Pandya, accompanied by troops of various kinds who dwelt on the coast-land near the sea, came to Yudhishthira the king of kings. And, O king, when all these troops had assembled, his army, finely dressed and exceedingly

strong, assumed an appearance pleasant to the eye. And the army of Drupada also was beautified by valiant soldiers who had come from various lands, and also by his mighty sons. And similarly Virāta, the king of the Matsyas, a leader of troops, accompanied by the king of the hilly regions, came to Pāndu's sons. And for the high-souled sons of Pāndu there were thus assembled from various directions, seven *Akshauhinis* of trooops, bristling with banners of various forms. And eager to fight with the Kurus, they gladdened the hearts of the Pāndavas. And in the same way king Bhagadatta, gladdening the heart of Dhritarāshtra's son, gave an *Akshauhini* of troops to him. And the unassailable mass of his troops, crowded with Chins and Kirātas, all looking like figures of gold, assumed a beauty like to that of a forest of *Karnikāra* trees. And so the valiant Bhuriçravas, and Calya, O son of Kuru, came to Duryodhana, with an *Akshauhini* of troops each. And Kritavarman, the son of Hridika, accompanied by the Bhojas, the Andhas, and the Kukuras, came to Duryodhana with an *Akshauhini* of troops. And the body of his troops composed of those mighty soldiers, who wore on their persons garlands of many-coloured flowers, loooked as graceful as a number of sportive elephants that have passed through a wood. And others led by Jayadratha, the dwellers of the land of Sindhusauvira, came in such force that the hills seemed to tremble under their tread. And their force, counting an *Akshauhini*, looked like a mass of clouds moved by the wind. And Sudakshina, the king of the Kāmbojas, O ruler of men, accompanied by the Yavanas and Cakas, came to the Kuru chief with an *Akshauhini* of troops. And the body of his troops that looked like a flight of locusts, meeting with the Kuru force, was absorbed and disappeared in it. And similarly came king Nila, the resident of the city of Māhishmati, with mighty soldiers from the southern country, who carried weapons of a pretty make. And the two kings of Avanti, accompanied by a mighty force, brought to Duryodhana, each a separate *Akshauhini* of troops. And those tigers among men, the five royal brothers, the princes of Kekaya, hastened to Duryodhana with

an *Akshauhini* of troops, and gladdened his heart. And from the illustrious kings of other quarters there came, O best of Bharata's race, three large divisions of troops. And thus Duryodhana had a force which numbered eleven *Akshauhinis* all eager to fight with the sons of Kunti, and bristling with banners of various forms. And, O descendant of Bharata, there was no space in the city of Hastināpura even for the principal leaders of Duryodhana's army. And for this reason the land of the five rivers, and the whole of the region called *Kurujāngala*, and the forest of *Rohitaka* which was uniformly wild, and *Ahichlatrā*, and *Kālakuta*, and the banks of the Gangā, and Varanā, and Vātadhāna, and the Yāmuna hill—the whole of this extensive tract—full of abundant corn and wealth, was entirely overspread with the army of the Kauravas. And that army, so arranged, was beheld by the priest who had been sent by the king of the Pānchālas to the Kurus."

SECTION XIX.

(Sanjaya-yāna Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Then Drupada's priest, having approached the Kaurava chief, was honored by Dhritarāshtra as also by Bhishma and Vidura. And having first told the news of the welfare of the Pāndavas, he enquired about the welfare of the Kauravas. And he spoke the following words in the midst of all the leaders of Duryodhana's army,—'The eternal duties of kings are known to you all! But though known, I shall yet recite them as an introduction to what I am going to say. Both Dhritarāshtra and Pāndu are known to be sons of the same father. There is no doubt that the share of each to the paternal wealth should be equal. The sons of Dhritarāshtra obtained the paternal wealth. Why did not the sons of Pāndu at all receive their paternal portion? Ye are aware how formerly the sons of Pāndu did not receive their paternal property which was all usurped by Dhritarāshtra's sons. The latter endeavoured in various ways to remove the sons of Pāndu from their path by employment even of murderous contrivances; but as their destined

terms of life had not wholly run out, the sons of Pāndu could not be sent to the abode of Yama. Then again, when those high-souled princes had carved out a kingdom by their own strength, the mean-minded sons of Dhritarāshtra, aided by Suvala's son, robbed them of it by deceit. This Dhritarāshtra gave his sanction even to that act as hath been usual with him. And for thirteen years they were then sent to sojourn in the great wilderness. In the council-hall, they had also been subjected to indignities of various kinds, along with their wife, valiant though they were. And great also were the sufferings that they had to endure in the woods. Those virtuous princes had also to endure unspeakable woes in the city of Virāta,—such as are endured only by vicious men when their souls transmigrate into the forms of inferior beings. Ye best of Kuru's race, overlooking all these injuries of yore they desire nothing but a peaceful settlement with the Kurus! Remembering their behaviour, and that of Duryodhana also, the latter's friends should entreat him to consent to peace! The heroic sons of Pāndu are not eager for war with the Kurus. They desire to get back their own without involving the world in ruin. If Dhritarāshtra's son assigns a reason in favor of war, that can never be a proper reason. The sons of Pandu are more powerful. Seven *Akshauhinis* of troops have been collected on behalf of Yudhisthira, all eager to fight with the Kurus, and they are now awaiting his word of command. Others there are, tigers among men, equal in might to a thousand *Akshauhinis*, such as Sātyaki and Bhimasena, and the twin brothers of mighty strength. It is true that these eleven divisions of troops are arrayed on one side. But these are balanced on the other by the mighty-armed Dhananjaya of manifold form. And as Kiritin exceeds in strength even all these troops together, so also doth Vasudeva's son of great effulgence and powerful intellect. Who is there that would fight, in view of the magnitude of the opposing force, the valour of Arjuna, and the wisdom of Krishna? Therefore, I ask you to give back what should be given, as dictated by morality and compact! Do not let the opportunity pass!"

SECTION XX.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having heard his words, Bhishma, senior in wisdom, and endued with great effulgence, paid honors to him, and then spoke words suitable to the occasion. And he said,—'How fortunate that they are all well, with Krishna! How fortunate that they have procured aid, and that they are inclined to a virtuous course! How fortunate that those scions of Kuru's race desire peace with their cousins. There is no doubt that what thou hast said is true. Thy words, however, are exceedingly shrap,—the reason, I suppose, being that thou art a Brāhmana. No doubt, the sons of Pāndu were much harassed both here and in the woods. No doubt, by law they are entitled to get all the property of their father. Arjuna, the son of Prithā, is strong, trained in weapons, and is a great car-warrior. Who, in sooth, can withstand in battle Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu? Even the wielder himself of the thunderbolt cannot,—other bowmen are hardly worth mention. My belief is that he is a match for all the three worlds!' And while Bhishma was thus speaking, Karna wrathfully and insolently interrupted his words, and looking at Duryodhana, said,—'There is no creature in the world, O Brāhmana, who is not informed of all these facts. What is the good of repeating them again and again? On behalf of Duryodhana, Cakuni formerly won in a game of dice. Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu went to the woods according to a stipulation. He is now paying no regard to that stipulation, but confident of aid from the Matsyas and the Pānchālas, he wisheth to get back his ancestral throne. O learned man, Duryodhana would not yield even a single foot of land if thou appealest to his fears, but if justice requires, he would give up the whole earth even to a foe! If they wish to get back their ancestral throne, they should pass the specified period of time in the forest as had been stipulated. Afterwards let them live as the dependants of Duryodhana, safe and sound. From dull-headedness, however,

let them not turn their mind towards an absolutely unrighteous course. If, nevertheless, abandoning the path of virtue, they desire war, then when they encounter in battle these praiseworthy Kurus, they will remember these my words!'

"Bhishma said,—'What is the use of thy talking, O Rādhā's son! Thou shouldst remember that occasion when Prithā's son, single-handed, overpowered in battle six car-warriors! If we do not act as this Brāhmana hath said, to be sure, we shall be slain by him in battle!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then Dhritarāshtra pacified Bhishma with words of entreaty, rebuked the son of Rādhā, and spoke the following words,—'What Bhishma, Cāntanu's son, hath said is salutary for us as also for the Pāndavas, and likewise for the whole Universe! I shall, however, after deliberation, send Sanjaya to the sons of Pāndu. So thou needst not wait. Go thou to the son of Pāndu this very day.' The Kaurava chief then honored Drupada's priest and sent him back to the Pāndavas. And summoning Sanjaya to the council-hall, he addressed him in the following words."

SECTION XXI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'They say, O Sanjaya, that the Pāndavas have arrived at Upaplavya. Go thou and enquire after them. Thou must greet Ajātaçatru in the following words, —By good luck it is that (emerged from the woods) thou hast reached such a city!—And to all of them thou must say, O Sanjaya, these words,—Are ye well, having spent that harassing period of sojourn, ye who were unworthy of such harassment?—In no time will they be appeased towards us, for though treated treacherously (by foes), yet are they righteous and good. In no case, O Sanjaya, have I ever met with any untruthfulness on the part of the Pāndavas. For by their own valour they had won all their prosperity, and (yet) were ever dutiful to me! Though I scrutinized their conduct, I could never find fault with them,—no, not even a single fault for which we might blame them! They always act mindful of virtue and wealth; they never give way to love of sensual

enjoyments, or cold, or hunger, or thirst; they subdue sleep and laziness and wrath and joy and heedlessness. The sons of Prithā, mindful of both virtue and wealth, are ever pleasant to all. On proper occasions they part with their wealth to friends. Friendship with them never loses its ardour on account of length of time; for they bestow honors and wealth on every one according to his deserts. Not a soul in the race of Ājamida ever entertains hatred for them excepting this vile, capricious, dull-headed Duryodhana, and excepting also the still more mean-minded Karna. These two always enhance the energy of those high-souled ones who have been divested of both friends and happiness. Enterprising, and brought up in every indulgence, Duryodhana reckons all that to be well done. It is childish on Duryodhana's part to think that it is possible to rob the Pāndavas of their just share so long as they are alive. It is wise to yield his due to him, before the war,—to him whose steps are followed by Arjuna and Krishna and Bhima and Sātyaki and the two sons of Mādri and the warriors of the Srinjaya race. That wielder of the *Gāndiva*, Savyasāchin, seated on his car, would alone be able to devastate the whole world. And likewise the victorious and high-souled Krishna, the lord of the three worlds, incapable of defeat, is able to do the same. What mortal would stand before him who is the one worthiest person in all the worlds and who sows about his multitude of arrows that roar like the clouds, covering all sides, like flights of swiftly coursing locusts? Alone on his car, holding the *Gāndiva*, he had conquered the Northern region as also the Kurus of the North, and brought away with him all their wealth. He converted the men of the Drāvida land into a portion of his own army. It was Fālguna, the wielder of the *Gāndiva*, who defeating in the *Khāndava* woods, all the gods together with Indra, made offerings to Agni, enhancing the honor and fame of the Pāndavas. Of all wielders again of the mace, there is none equal to Bhima; and there is none also who is so skilful a rider of elephants. On car, they say, he yields not to even Arjuna; and as to might of arms, he is equal to ten thousand elephants. Well-trained and active, he who hath

again been rendered bitterly hostile, would in anger consume the Dhārtarāshtras in no time. Always wrathful, and strong of arms, he is not capable of being subdued in battle by even Indra himself. Of great heart, and strong, and endued with great lightness of hand, the two (twin) brothers, sons of Mādrī, carefully trained by Arjuna, would leave not a foe alive, like to a pair of hawks preying upon large flocks of birds. This our army, so full, to tell thee the truth, will be nowhere when it will encounter them. In their midst will be Dhrishtadyumna, endued with great activity,—one who is regarded as one of the Pāndavas themselves. The chief of the Somaka tribe, with his followers, is, I have heard, so devoted to the cause of the Pāndavas that he is ready to lay down his very life for them. Who would be able to withstand Yudhishthira who hath the best of the Vrishni tribe (Krishna) for his leader? I have heard that Virāta the chief of the Matsyas, with whom the Pāndavas had lived for some time and whose wishes were fulfilled by them, old in years, is devoted, along with his sons, to the Pāndava cause, and hath become an adherent of Yudhishthira. Deposed from the throne of the Kekaya land, and desirous of being reinstated thereon, the five mighty brothers from that land, wielding mighty bows, are now following the sons of Prithā with a view to fight. All who are valiant among the lords of the earth have been brought together and are devoted to the Pāndava cause. I hear that they are all bold, worthy, and respectful,—they who have allied themselves to the virtuous king Yudhishthira from feelings of attachment to him. And many warriors dwelling on hills and inaccessible fastnesses, and many that are high in lineage and old in years, and many *Mleccha* tribes also wielding weapons of various kinds, have been assembled together and are devoted to the cause of the Pāndavas. And there hath come Pandya also, who, hardly inferior to Indra on the field of battle, is followed when he fights by numberless warriors of great courage. Remarkably heroic and endued with prowess and energy that have no parallel, he is devoted to the Pāndava cause. That same Sātyaki who, I have heard, obtained weapons from Drona and Arjuna

and Krishna and Kripa and Bhishma, and who is said to be equal to the son of Krishna,* is devotedly attached to the Pāndava cause. And the assembled kings of the Chedi and the Kārusha tribes have all taken the part of the Pāndavas with all their resources. That one in their midst who, having been endued with blazing beauty, shone like the sun, whom all persons deemed unassailable in battle and the very best of all drawers of the bow on earth, was slain by Krishna in a trice, by help of his own great might, and counting for naught the bold spirit of all the Kshatriya kings. Keçava cast his eye on that Ciçupāla and smote him, enhancing the fame and honor of the sons of Pāndu. It was the same Ciçupāla who was highly honored by those kings at whose head stood the king of the Kārusha tribe. Then the other kings, deeming Krishna unassailable when seated on his car drawn by *Sugriva* and other steeds, left the chief of the Chedis and ran away like small animals at sight of a lion. And it was thus that he who from audacity had sought to oppose and encounter Krishna in a combat hand to hand, was slain by Krishna and lay down lifeless, resembling a *Karnikāra* tree uprooted by a gale. O Sanjaya, O son of Gavalgana, what they have told me of the activity of Krishna in the cause of Pāndu's sons, and what I remember of his past achievements, leave me no peace of mind! No foe whatsoever is capable of withstanding them, who are under the lead of that lion of the Vrishni tribe. My heart is trembling with fear upon learning that the two Krishnas,† are seated on the self-same car! If my dull-headed son forbear to fight with those two, then may he fare well,—else those two will consume the race of Kuru as Indra and Upendra consume the *Daitya* hosts! Dhananjaya is, I conceive, equal to Indra, and the greatest of the Vrishni race, Krishna, is the Eternal Vishnu himself! The son of Kunti and Pāndu, Yudhishthira, is virtuous and brave and eschews deeds that bring on shame. Endued with

---

* The great hero Praddyumna the son of Krishna by Rukmini.—*T.*

† Both Arjuna and Vāsudeva were so called on account of the complexion of their skins.—*T.*

great energy, he hath been wronged by Duryodhana. If he were not high-minded, he would in wrath burn the Dhārtarāshtras. I do not so much dread Arjuna or Bhima or Krishna or the twin brothers as I dread the wrath of the king, O *Suta*, when his wrath is excited! His austerities are great; he is devoted to *Brahmacharya* practices. His heart's wishes will certainly be fulfilled. When I think of his wrath, O Sanjaya, and consider how just it is, I am filled with alarm! Go thou speedily on a car, despatched by me, where the troops of the king of the Panchālas are encamped. Thou wilt ask Yudhishthira about his welfare. Thou wilt repeatedly address him in affectionate terms. Thou wilt also meet Krishna, O child, him who is the chief of all brave men and who is endued with a magnanimous soul! Him also thou wilt ask on my part as to his welfare, and tell him that Dhritarāshtra is desirous of peace with Pandu's sons! O *Suta*, there is nothing that Yudhishthira the son of Kunti would not do at the bidding of Krishna. Keçava is as dear to them as their own selves. Possessed of great learning, he is ever devoted to their cause. Thou wilt also enquire about the welfare of all the assembled sons of Pāndu and the Srinjayas and Sātyaki and Virāta and all the five sons of Draupadi, professing to be a messenger from me. And whatsoever also thou mayst deem to be opportune, and beneficial for the Bharata race, all that, O Sanjaya, thou must say in the midst of those kings,—everything, in sooth, that may not be unpalatable or provocative of war!'"

SECTION XXII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having heard these words of king Dhritarāshtra, Sanjaya went to Upaplavya to see the Pāndavas of immeasurable strength. And having approached king Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, he made obeisance to him first and then spoke. And the son of Gavalgana, by name Sanjaya and by caste a *Suta*, cheerfully spoke unto Ajātaçatru,—'How lucky, O king, that I see you hale, attended by friends, and little inferior to the great Indra. The aged and wise

king Dhritarāshtra the son of Ambikā, hath enquired about your welfare. I hope Bhimasena is well, and that Dhananjaya, that foremost of the Pāndavas, and these two sons of Mādri, are well. I hope the princess Krishnā also, the daughter of Drupada, is well,—she who never swerves from the path of truth, that lady of great energy, that wife of heroes! I hope she is well with her sons,—she in whom are centered all your dearest joys and whose welfare you constantly pray for!'

"Yudhishthira said,—'O Sanjaya, son of Gavalgana, hath thy journey here been safe? We are pleased with thy sight. I ask thee in return how thou art. I am, O learned man, in excellent health with my younger brothers. O *Suta*, after a long while do I now receive news of the aged king of the Kurus, that descendant of Bharata! Having seen thee, O Sanjaya, I feel as if I have seen the king himself, so pleased I am! Our aged grandsire endued with great energy and the highest wisdom and always devoted to the practices of his own order, is that same Bhishma, the descendant of Kuru, O sire, in health? I hope he still retains all his former habits. I hope the high-souled king Dhritarāshtra the son of Vichitravirya is in health with his sons. I hope the great king Vāhlika the son of Prātipa, endued with great learning, is also in health. I hope, O sire, that Somadatta is in health, and Bhuriçravās, and Satyasandha, and Cala, and Drona with his son, and the Brāhmana Kripa. I hope all those mighty bowmen are free from disease. O Sanjaya, all those greatest and best of bow-men, endued with the highest intelligence and versed in letters, and occupying the very top of those who wield weapons, have attached themselves to the Kurus. I hope those bowmen receive their honors due. I hope they are free from disease. How happy are they in whose kingdom dwells the mighty and handsome bowman, the well-behaved son of Drona! I hope Yuyutsu, the highly intelligent son of Dhritarāshtra by his *Vaisyā* wife is in health. I hope, O sire, the adviser Karna, whose counsels are followed by the dull-headed Suyodhana, is in health. I hope the aged ladies, the mothers of the Bharata race, and the kitchen-maidens, the bondmaids, the daughters-in-law, the

boys, the sisters' sons and the sisters, and the daughters'-sons, of Dhristarāshtra's house are all free from trouble. O sire, I hope the king still allows their former subsistence to the Brāhmanas. I hope, O Sanjaya, Dhritarāshtra's son hath not seized those gifts to the Brāhmanas that I had made. I hope Dhritarāshtra with his sons meets in a spirit of forbearance any overbearing conduct on the part of the Brāhmanas. I hope he never neglects to make provision for them,—*that* being the sole highway to heaven. For this is the excellent and clear light that hath been provided by the Creator in this world of living beings. If like dull-headed persons, the sons of Kuru do not treat the Brāhmanas in a forbearing spirit, wholesale destruction will overtake them. I hope king Dhritarāshtra and his son try to provide for the functionaries of state. I hope there are no enemies of theirs who, disguised as friends, are conspiring for their ruin. O sire, I hope none of these Kurus talk of our having committed any crimes? I hope Drona and his son and the heroic Kṛipa do not talk of our having been guilty in any way? I hope all the Kurus look up to king Dhritarāshtra and his sons as the protectors of their tribe. I hope when they see a horde of robbers, they remember the deed of Arjuna, the leader in all fields of battle. I hope they remember the arrows shot from the *Gāndiva*, which course through the air in a straight path, impelled onwards by the stretched bowstring in contact with the fingers of his hand, and making a noise loud as that of the thunder! I have not seen the warrior that excels or even rivals Arjuna who can shoot by a single effort of his hand sixty-one whetted and keen-edged shafts furnished with excellent feathers. Do they remember Bhima also, who, endued with great activity, causeth hostile hosts arrayed in battle to tremble in dread, like an elephant with rent temples agitating a forest of reeds? Do they remember the mighty Sahadeva the son of Mādri, who in Dantakura conquered the Kalingas, shooting arrows by both the left and the right hand? Do they remember Nakula, who, O Sanjaya, was sent, under your eye, to conquer the Sivis and the Trigartas, and who brought the Western region under

my power? The disgrace that was theirs when under evil counsels they came to the woods of *Dwaitāvana* on pretence of taking the tale of their cattle and where those wicked ones having been overpowered by their enemies were afterwards liberated by Bhimasena and Arjuna, myself protecting the rear of Arjuna (in the fight that ensued) and Bhima protecting the rear of the sons of Mādri, and the wielder of the *Gāndiva* coming out unharmed from the press of battle having made a great slaughter of the hostile host,—do they remember *that?* It is not by a single good deed, O Sanjaya, that happiness can here be attained, when by all our endeavours we are unable to win over the son of Dhritarāshtra!' "

SECTION XXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'It is even so as thou hast said, O son of Pāndu! Dost thou enquire about the welfare of the Kurus and the foremost ones among them? Free from illness of every kind and in the possession of excellent spirits are those foremost ones among the Kurus about whom, O son of Prithā, thou enquirest! Know, O son of Pāndu, that about Dhritarāshtra's son, there are certainly righteous and aged men, as also men that are sinful and wicked. Dhritarāshtra's son would make gifts even to his enemies; it is not likely, therefore, that he should withdraw the donations made to the Brāhmanas. It is customary with you, Kshatriyas, to follow a rule fit for butchers, that leads you to do harm to those that bear no ill-will to you; but the practice is not good. Dhritarāshtra with his sons would be guilty of the sin of intestine dissension were he, like a bad man, to bear ill-will towards you who are righteous. He does not approve (this injury done to you); he is exceedingly sorry for it; he grieves at his heart—the old man—O Yudhishthira,—for, having communicated with the Brāhmanas, he hath learnt that provoking intestine dissensions is the greatest of all sins. O king of men, they remember thy prowess on the field, and that of Arjuna who taketh the lead in the field of battle. They remember Bhima wielding his mace when the sound of the

conch-shell and the drum rises to the highest pitch. They remember those mighty car-warriors, the two sons of Mādri, who on the field of battle career in all directions, shooting incessant showers of shafts on hostile hosts, and who know not what it is to tremble in fight. I believe, O king, that that which Futurity hath in store for a particular person cannot be known, since thou, O son of Pāndu, who art endowed with all the virtues, hast had to suffer trouble of such unendurable kind! All this, no doubt, O Yudhishthira, thou wilt again make up by help of your intelligence. The sons of Pāndu, all equal to Indra, would never abandon virtue for the sake of pleasure. Thou, O Yudhishthira, wilt so make it up by thy intelligence that they all, *viz*, the sons of Dhritarāshtra and Pāndu, and the Srinjayas, and all the kings who have been assembled here, will attain peace! O Yudhishthira, hear what thy sire Dhritarāshtra, having consulted with his ministers and sons, hath spoken to me! Be attentive to the same!'"

SECTION XXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Here are met the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas, and Krishna, and Yuyudhāna and Virāta. O son of the *Suta* Gavalgana, tell us all that Dhritarāshtra hath directed thee to say!'

"Sanjaya said,—'I greet Yudhishthira, and Vrikodara, and Dhananjaya, and the two sons of Mādri, and Vāsudeva the descendant of Cura, and Sātyaki, and the aged ruler of the Pānchālas, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata! Let all listen to the words I say from a desire for the welfare of the Kurus! King Dhritarāshtra, eagerly welcoming the chance of peace, hastened the preparation of my car for this journey here. Let it be acceptable to king Yudhishthira with his brothers and sons and relations! Let the son of Pāndu prefer peace! The sons of Prithā are endowed with every virtue, with steadiness and mildness and candour. Born in a high family, they are humane, liberal, and loath to do any act which would bring on shame. They know what is proper to be

done. A base deed is not befitting you, for you are so high-minded, and have such a terrible following of troops! If you committed a sinful act, it would be a blot on your fair name, as a drop of collyrium on a white cloth. Who would knowingly be ever guilty of an act, which would result in universal slaughter, which would be sinful and lead to hell,—an act consisting in the destruction (of men),—an act the result of which, whether it be victory or defeat, is of the self-same value? Blessed are they that have served their relative's cause! They are the true sons and friends and relatives (of Kuru's race) who would lay down life, life which is liable to be abused by misdeeds, inorder to ensure the welfare of the Kurus! If you, ye sons of Prithā, chastise the Kurus, by defeating and slaying all your foes,—that subsequent life of yours would be equivalent to death, for what, in sooth, is life after having killed all your kinsfolk? Who, even if he were Indra himself with all the gods on his side, would be able to defeat you who are aided by Keçava and Chekitāna, and Sātyaki, and are protected by Dhrishtadyumna's arms? Who again, O king, can defeat in battle the Kurus who are protected by Drona and Bhishma, and Açwathāman, and Calya, and Kripa and Karna with a host of Kshatriya kings? Who, without loss to himself, is able to slay the vast force assembled by Dhritarāshtra's son? Therefore it is, that I do not see any good either in victory or in defeat. How can the sons of Prithā, like base persons of low lineage, commit an act of unrighteousness? Therefore, I appease, I prostrate myself before, Krishna and the aged king of the Pānchālas. I betake myself to you as my refuge, with joined hands, so that both the Kurus and the Srinjayas may be benefited. It is not likely that either Krishna or Dhananjaya will not act up to these my words. Either of them would lay down his life, if besought (to do so)! Therefore, I say this for the success of my mission. This is the desire of the king and his counsellor, Bhishma, that there may be confirmed peace between you (and the Kurus)!' "

SECTION XXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What words from me, O Sanjaya, hast thou heard, indicative of war, that thou apprehendest war? O sire, peace is preferable to war. Who, O charioteer, having got the other alternative, would wish to fight? It is known to me, O Sanjaya, that if a man can have every wish of his heart without having to do anything, he would hardly like to do anything even though it might be of the least troublesome kind, far less would he engage in war. Why should a man ever go to war? Who is so cursed by the gods that he would elect war? The sons of Prithā, no doubt, desire their own happiness, but their conduct is ever marked by righteousness and conducive to the good of the world. They desire only that happiness which results from righteousness. He that fondly followeth the lead of his senses, and is desirous of obtaining happiness and avoiding misery, betaketh himself to action which in its essence is nothing but misery. He that hankers after pleasure causeth his body to suffer; one free from such hankering knoweth not what misery is.* As an enkindled fire, if more fuel be put upon it, blazeth forth again with augmented force, so desire is never satiated with the acquisition of its object but gaineth force like enkindled fire when clarified butter is poured upon it. Compare all this abundant fund of enjoyment which king Dhritarāshtra hath with what we possess! He that is unfortunate never winneth victories. He that is unfortunate enjoyeth not the voice of music. He that is unfortunate doth not enjoy garlands and scents; nor can one that is unfortunate enjoy cool and fragrant unguents; and finally he that is unfortunate weareth not fine clothes. If this were not so, we would never have been driven from the Kurus! Although, however, all this is true, yet none but an unwise person would cherish desire, for desire when

* The Burdwan Pundits give a different reading that does not seem to be correct. For *yathā pramukto na karoti duskham* they read *yathā prayuktonukaroti duskham*. The latter is not certainly so neat as the former.—*T.*

cherished torments the heart. The king being himself in trouble seeketh protection in the might of others. This is not wise. Let him, however, receive from others the same behaviour that he displays towards them. The man who casteth a burning fire at mid-day in the season of spring in a forest of dense underwood, hath certainly, when that fire blazeth forth by aid of the wind, to grieve for his lot if he wisheth to escape. O Sanjaya, why doth king Dhritarāshtra now bewail, although he hath all this prosperity? It is because he had followed at first the counsels of his wicked son of vicious soul, addicted to crooked ways and confirmed in folly! Duryodhana disregarded the words of Vidura, the best of his well-wishers, as if the latter were hostile to him. King Dhritarāshtra desirous solely of satisfying his sons, would knowingly enter upon an unrighteous course. Indeed, on account of his fondness for his son, he would not pay heed to Vidura who, out of all the Kurus, is the wisest and best of all his well-wishers,, possessing vast learning, clever in speech, and righteous in act. King Dhritarāshtra is desirous of satisfying his son who, while himself seeking honors from others, is envious and wrathful, who transgresses the rules for the acquisition of virtue and wealth, whose tongue is foul, who always follows the dictates of his wrath, whose soul is absorbed in sensual pleasures, and who, full of unfriendly feelings to many, obeys no law, and whose life is evil, heart implacable, and understading vicious. For such a son as this, king Dhritarāshtra knowingly abandoned virtue and pleasure. Even then, O Sanjaya, when I was engaged in that game of dice I thought that the destruction of the Kurus was at hand, for when speaking those wise and excellent words Vidura obtained no praise from Dhritarāshtra. Then, O charioteer, did trouble overtake the Kurus when they disregarded the words of Vidura. So long as they had placed themselves under the lead of his wisdom, their kingdom was in a flourishing state. Hear from me, O charioteer, who the counsellors now are of the covetous Duryodhana! They are Dusçāsana, and Cakuni the son of Suvala, and Karna the *Suta's* son! O son of Gavalgana, look at this folly of his! So I do not see, though I think about it, how there can be prosperity for the

Kurus and the Srinjayas when Dhritarāshtra hath taken the throne from others, and the far-seeing Vidura hath been banished elsewhere! Dhritarāshtra with his sons is now looking for an extensive and undisputed sovereignty over the whole world. Absolute peace is, therefore, unattainable. He regardeth that to be his own which he hath already got. When Arjuna taketh up his weapons in fight, Karna believeth him capable of being withstood. Formerly there took place many great battles. Why could not Karna then be of any avail to them. It is known to Karna and Duryodhana and Drona and the grandsire Bhishma, as also to many other Kurus, that there is no wielder of the bow, comparable to Arjuna. It is known to all the Kurus, and to all the assembled rulers of the earth, how the sovereignty was obtained by Duryodhana although that represser of foes, Arjuna, was alive! Pertinaciously doth Dhritarāshtra's son believe that it is possible to rob the sons of Pāndu of what is their own, although he knoweth, having himself gone to the place of fight, how Arjuna comported himself when he had nothing but a bow four cubits long for his weapon of battle. Dhritarāshtra's sons are alive simply because they have not as yet heard the twang of the stretched *Gāndiva.* Duryodhana believeth his object already gained, so long as he beholdeth not the wrathful Bhima! O sire, even Indra would forbear to rob us of our sovereignty as long as Bhima, and Arjuna, and the heroic Nakula, and the patient Sahadeva are alive! O charioteer, the old king with his son still entertains the notion that his son will not perish, O Sanjaya, on the field of battle, consumed by the fiery wrath of Pāndu's sons! Thou knowest, O Sanjaya, what misery we have suffered! For my respect to thee, I would forgive them all! Thou knowest what transpired between ourselves and those sons of Kuru. Thou knowest how we comported ourselves towards Dhritarāshtra's son. Let the same state of things still continue, I shall seek peace, as thou counsellest me to do! Let me have Indraprastha for my kingdom! Let this be given to me by Duryodhana, the chief of Bharata's race!'"

SECTION XXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'O Pāndava, the world hath heard thy conduct being righteous. I see it also to be so, O son of Prithā! Life is transient, and may end in great infamy; considering this, thou shouldst not perish! O Ajātaçatru, if without war, the Kurus will not yield thy share, I think, it is better far for thee to live upon alms in the kingdom of the Andhakas and the Vrishnis than obtain sovereignty by war! Since this mortal existence is for only a short period, and greatly liable to blame, subject to constant suffering, and unstable, and since it is never comparable to a good name, therefore, O Pāndava, never perpretrate a sin! These are the desires, O ruler of men, which adhere to mortal man and are an obstruction to a virtuous life! Therefore, a wise man should before-hand kill them all and thereby gain a strainless fame in the world, O son of Prithā! The thirst after wealth is but like a fetter in this world; the virtue of those that seek it is sure to suffer. He is wise who seeketh virtue alone; desires being increased, a man must suffer in his temporal concerns, O sire, placing virtue before all other concerns of life, a man shineth like the sun when its splendour is great. A man devoid of virtue, and of vicious soul, is overtaken by ruin, although he may obtain the whole of this earth. Thou hast studied the *Veda*, lived the life of a saintly Brāhmana, hast performed sacrificial rites, made donations to Brāhmanas! Ever remembering the highest position (attainable by beings), thou hast also devoted thy soul for years and years to the pursuit of pleasure! He who, devoting himself excessively to the pleasures and joys of life, never employeth himself in the practice of religious meditation, must be exceedingly miserable. His joys forsake him after his wealth is gone and his strong instincts goad him on towards his wonted pursuit of pleasure. Similarly, he who, never having lived a continent life, forsaketh the path of virtue and commiteth sin, hath no faith in the existence of a world to come. Dull as he is after death he hath torment (for his lot). In the world

to come, whether one's deeds be good or evil, those deeds are, in no case, annihilated. Deeds, good and evil, precede the agent (in his journey to the world to come); the agent is sure to follow in their path. Your work (in this life) is celebrated by all as comparable to that food, savoury and dainty, which is proper to be offered with reverence to the Brāhmanas—the food which is offered in religious ceremonies with large donations (to the officiating priests)!* All acts are done, so long as this body lasts, O son of Prithā! After death, there is nothing to be done. And thou hast done mighty deeds that will do good to thee in the world to come, and that are admired by righteous men. There (in the next world) one is free from death and decrepitude, and fear, and hunger and thirst, and all that is disagreeable to the mind; there is nothing to be done in that place, unless it be to delight one's senses. Of this kind, O ruler of men, is the result of our deeds! Therefore, do not from desire act any longer in this world. Do not, O Pāndu's son, betake to action in this world and thereby attain whether hell or heaven for ever.† Having abandoned all acts, thou shouldst not, however, take leave of truth and sobriety and candour and humanity. Thou mayst perform the *Rājasuya* and the *Aswamedha* sacrifices, but do not approach again the vicinity of action which in itself is sin! If after such a length of time ye sons of Prithā you now give way to hate, and commit the sinful deed, in vain for virtue's sake did ye dwell for years and years in the woods in such misery! It was in vain that you went to exile, after parting with all your

---

* This portion seems to be rather obscure. But the purport appears to be that the life of Yudhishthira is of the same holy and pure and blessed character which attaches to the ceremony of feeding Brāhmanas on an auspicious occasion when gifts are made to the priestly class. In the eye of an orthodox Hindu, the feeding of Brāhmanas assumes a highly holy character, and the provider of the food is supposed to acquire an immeasurable amount of religious merit.

† I am not sure that I have rendered these *slokas* correctly. The original is very obscure. I have, of course, followed Nilakantha. What Sanjaya says in effect to Yudhishthira is that hell being torment and heaven only conducive to sensual joy, *Moksha* or *Nirvân* is better.—*T.*

army; for this army was entirely in your control then. And these persons who are now assisting you, have been always obedient to you,—this Krishna, and Sātyaki, and Virāta of the golden car, of Matsya land, with his son at the head of martial warriors. All the kings, formerly vanquished by you would have espoused your cause at first. Possessed of mighty resources, dreaded by all, having an army, and followed behind by Krishna and Arjuna, you might have slain your foremost of foes on the field of fight. You might have (then) brought low Duryodhana's pride. O Pāndava, why have you allowed your foes to grow so powerful? Why have you weakened your friends? Why have you sojourned in the woods for years and years? Why are you now desirous of fighting, having let the proper opportunity slip? An unwise or an unrighteous man may win prosperity by the path of fight; but a wise and a righteous man, were he from pride to betake to fight (against his better instincts), doth only fall away from a prosperous path. O Prithā's sons, your understanding inclines not to an unrighteous course. From wrath you never committed a sinful act. Then what is the cause, and what the reason, for which you are now intent to do this deed, against the dictates of wisdom? Wrath, O mighty king, is a bitter drug, though it has nothing to do with disease; it brings on a disease of the head, robs one of his fair fame, and leads to sinful acts; it is drunk up (controlled) by those that are righteous and not by those that are unrighteous! I ask you to drink it up and to desist from war. Who would incline himself to wrath which leads to sin? Forbearance would be more beneficial to you than love of enjoyments where Bhishma would be slain, and Drona with his son, and Kripa, and Somadatta's son, and Vikarna and Vivingçati, and Karna and Duryodhana. Having slain all these, what bliss may that be, O Prithā's son, which you will get? Tell me *that!* Even having won the entire sea-girt earth, you will never be free from decrepitude and death, pleasure and pain, bliss and misery! Knowing all this, do you *not* be engaged in war. If you are desirous of taking this course, because your councellors desire the same, then give up (everything) to them, and run away. You

shoud not fall away from this path which leads to the region of the gods!'"

SECTION XXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Without doubt, O Sanjaya, it is true that righteous deeds are the foremost of all our acts, as thou sayst! Thou shouldst, however, censure me having first ascertained whether it is virtue or vice that I practice. When vice assumes the aspects of virtue, and virtue itself wholly seemeth as vice, and virtue again appears in its native form, they that are learned should discriminate it by means of their intellects. So again virtue and vice, which are both eternal and absolute, exchange their aspects during seasons of distress. One should follow without deviation the duties prescribed for the order to which he belogns by birth. Know, O Sanjaya, that duties in seasons of distress are otherwise! When his means of living are totally gone, the man, that is destitute should certainly desire those other means by which he may be able to discharge the sanctioned duties of his order. One that is not destitute of his means of living, as also one that is in distress, are, O Sanjaya, both to be blamed if they act as if the state of each were otherwise. When the Creator hath ordained expiation for those Brāhmanas who, without wishing for self-destruction, betake themselves to acts not sanctioned for them, this proves that people may, in seasons of disress, betake to acts not ordained for the orders to which they belong. And, O Sanjaya, thou shouldst regard as worthy them that adhere to the practices of their own order in usual times as also those that do not adhere to them in seasons of distress, though thou shouldst censure them that act otherwise in usual times while adhereing to their ordained practices during times of distress. As regards men desiring to bring their minds under control, when *they* endeavour to acquire a knowledge of self, the practices that are ordained for the best, *viz*, the Brāhmanas, are equally ordained for them. As regards those, however, that are not Brāhmanas and that do not endeavour to

acquire a knowledge of self, those practices should be followed by them that are ordained for their respective orders in seasons of distress or otherwise. Even that is the path followed by our fathers and grandfathers before us and those also that had lived before them. As regards those that are desirous of Knowledge and avolding to acts, even these also hold the same view and regard themselvs as orthodox. I do not, therefore, think that there is any other path.* Whatsoever wealth there may be in this earth, whatsoever there may be among the gods, or whatsoever these may be unattainble by them,—the region of the Prajāpatis, or heaven, or the region of Brahmā himself, I would not, O Sanjaya, seek it by unrighteous means! Here is Krishna, the giver of virtue's fruits, who is clever, politic, intelligent, who has waited upon the Brāhmanas, who knows everything, and counsels various mighty kings! Let the celebrated Krishna say whether I should be consurable if I dismiss all idea of peace, or whether if I fight, I should be abandoning the duties of my caste, for Krishna seeketh the welfare of both sides! This Sātyaki, these Chedis, the Andhakas, the Vrishnis, the Bhojas, the Kukuras, the Srinjayas, adopting the counsels of Krishna, slay their foes and delight their friends. The Vrishnis and the Andhakas, at whose head stands Ugrasena, led by Krishna, have become like Indra, high-spirited, devoted to truth, mighty, and happy. Vabhru the king of Kāçi, having obtained Krishna that fructifier of wishes, as his brother, and upon whom Krishna showers all the blessings of life as the clouds upon all earthly creatures when the hot season is over, hath attained the highest prosperity! O sire, so great is this Krishna! Him you must know as the great judge of the propriety or otherwise

---

* These seven *slokas* are very difficult. I have followed Nilakantha in translating them. It must be conceded that that learned commentator has displayed considerable skill in finding out the meaning. I am more than convinced that Nilakantha has correctly understood the whole passage. It is needless to say that all the vernacular translators, including the Burdwan Pundits, have made a mess of the whole thing. Any reader may see that the Bengalee translations of this passage are wholly unmeaning.—*T.*

of all acts. Krishna is dear to us, and is the most illustrious of men. I never disregard what Krishna sayeth.' "

SECTION XXVIII.

"Krishna said,—'I desire, O Sanjaya, that the sons of Pāndu may not be ruined; that they may prosper, and obtain their wishes. Similarly, I pray for the prosperity of king Dhritarāshtra whose sons are many. For evermore, O Sanjaya, my desire hath been that I should say to them nothing else than that they should make peace. I desire for peace because I know that peace would be acceptable to king Dhritarāshtra. I also deem it proper for the sons of Pāndu. A peaceaful disposition of an exceedingly rare character hath been displayed by Pāndu's son in this matter. When Dhritarāshtra and his sons, however, are so covetous, I do not see why hostility should not run high? Thou canst not pretend, O Sanjaya, to be more versed than I am or Yudhishthira is in the niceties of right and wrong. Then why dost thou speak words of reproach with reference to the conduct of Yudhishthira who is enterprising, mindful of his own duty, and thoughtful from the very beginning of the welfare of his family, agreeably to the injunction (of treatises of morality)? With regard to the topic at hand, the Brāhmanas have held opinions of various kinds. Some say that success in the world to come depends upon work. Some declare that work should be shunned and that salvation is attainable by knowledge. The Brāhmanas know this that though one may have a knowledge of eatable things yet his hunger will not be appeased unless he actually eats. Those branches of knowledge that help the doing of work, bear fruit, but not the others; for the fruit of work is of occular demonstration. A thirsty person drinks water, and by that act his thirst is allayed. This result proceeds, no doubt, from work. Therein lies the efficacy of work. If any one thinks that something else is better than work, I deem him weak, and his words meaningless. In the other world, it is by virtue of work that the gods flourish. It is by work that Wind blows. It is by virtue of work that the sleepless Surya rises

every day and becomes the cause of day and night; and Soma passes through the months and the fortnights and the combinations of constellations. Fire is kindled of itself and burns by virtue of work, doing good to mankind. The sleepless goddess Earth, by force sustains this very great burden. The sleepless rivers, giving satisfaction to all (organised) beings, carry their waters with speed. The sleepless Indra, possessed of a mighty force, pours down rain, resounding the heaven and the cardinal points. Desirous of being the greatest of the gods, he led a life of austerities such as a holy Brāhmana leads. Indra gave up pleasure, and all things agreeable to the heart. He sedulously cherished virtue and truth, and self-control, and forbearance, and impartiality, and humanity. It was by work that he attained a position the highest (of all). Following the above course of life, Indra attained the high sovereignty over the gods. Vrihaspati, intently and with self-control, led in a proper manner that life of austerities which Brāhmana leads. He gave up pleasure and controlled his senses and thereby attained the position of the preceptor of the celestials. Similarly, the Constellations in the other world, by virtue of work, and the *Rudras*, the *Adityas*, the *Vasus*, king Yama, and Kuvera; and the *Gandharvas*, the *Yakshas*, and the celestial nymphs all attained their present position by work. In the other world, the saints shine, following a life of study, austerity, and work (combined). Knowing, O Sanjaya, that this is the rule followed by the best of Brāhmanas, and Kshatriyas, and Vaiçyas, and thou being one of the wisest men,—why art thou making this endeavour on behalf of those sons of Kuru? Thou must know that Yudhishthira is constantly engaged in the study of the *Veda*. He is inclined to the horse-sacrifice, and the *Rājasuya*. Again, he rides horses and elephants, is arrayed in armour, mounts a car, and takes up the bow and all kinds of weapons. Now, if the sons of Prithā can see a course of action not involving the slaughter of the sons of Kuru, they would adopt it. Their virtue would then be saved; and an act of religious merit also would be achieved by them, even if they would have then to force Bhima to follow a conduct marked

by humanity. On the other hand, if in doing what their forefathers did, they should meet with death under inevitable destiny, then in trying their utmost to discharge their duty such death would even be worthy of praise. Supposing thou approvest of peace alone, I should like to hear what thou mayst have to say to this question,—Which way doth the injunction of religious law lie, *viz*, whether it is proper for a king to fight or not?—Thou must, O Sanjaya, take into thy consideration the division of the four castes, and the scheme of respective duties allotted to each. Thou must hear what course of action the Pāndavas are going to adopt. Then mayst thou praise or censure, just as it may please thee! A Brāhmana should study, offer sacrifices, make donations, and sojourn to the best of all holy places on the earth; he should teach, minister as a priest in sacrifices offered by others worthy of such help, and accept gifts from persons who are known. Similarly, a Kshatriya should protect the people in accordance with the injunctions of the law, deligently practise the virtue of charity, offer sacrifices, study the whole *Veda*, take a wife, and lead a virtuous householder's life. If possessed of a virtuous soul, and if he practises the holy virtues, he may easily attain the region of the Supreme Being. A Vaiçya should study, and deligently earn and accumulate wealth by means of commerce, agriculture, and the tending of cattle. He should so act as to please the Brāhmanas and the Kshatriyas, be virtuous, do good works, and be a householder. The following are the duties declared for a Cudra from the olden times. He should serve the Brāhmanas, and submit to them; should not study; sacrifices are forbidden to him; he should be diligent and constantly enterprising in doing all that is for his good. The king protects all these with (proper) care, and sets all the castes to perform their respective duties. He should not be given to sensual enjoyments. He should be impartial, and treat all his subjects on an equal footing. The king should never obey the dictates of such desires as are opposed to righteousness. If there be somebody who is more praiseworthy than he, who is well known and gifted with all the virtues, he should instruct his subjects to see him. A bad

(king), however, would not understand this. Growing strong, and inhuman and becoming a mark for destiny's wrath, he would cast a covetous eye on the riches of others. Then comes war, for which purpose came into being weapons, and armour, and bows. Indra invented these contrivances, for putting the *Dasyas* to death. He also contrived armours, and weapons, and bows. Religious merit is acquired by putting the *Dasyas* to death. Many awful evils have manifested themselves, on account of the Kurus having been unrighteous, and unmindful of law and religion. This is not right, O Sanjaya! Now, king Dhritarāshtra with his son, hath unreasonably seized what lawfully belonged to Pāndu's son. He minds not the immemorial law observable by kings. All the Kurus are following in his wake. A theif who steals wealth unseen and one who forcibly seizes the same, in open day-light, are both to be condemned, O Sanjaya! What is the difference between them and Dhritarāshtra's son? From avarice he regards that to be righteous which he intends to do following the dictates of his wrath. The share of the Pāndavas is, no doubt, fixed. Why should that share of ours be seized by that fool! This being the state of things, it would be praiseworthy for us to be even killed in fight. A paternal kingdom is preferable to sovereignty received from a stranger. These time-honored rules of law, O Sanjaya, thou must propound to the Kurus, in the midst of the assembled kings,—I mean those dull-head fools who have been assembled together by Dhritarāshtra's son, and who are already under the clutches of Death. Look once more at that vilest of all their acts,—the conduct of the Kurus in the council-hall! That those Kurus at whose head stood Bhishma did not interfere when the beloved wife of the sons of Pāndu, daughter of Drupada, of fair fame, pure life, and conduct worthy of praise, was seized while weeping, by that slave of lust! The Kurus all, including young and old, were present there. If they had then prevented that indignity offered to her, then I should have been pleased with Dhritarāshtra's behaviour. It would have been for the final good of his sons also. Dusçāsana forcibly took Krishnā into the midst of the public hall wherein were seated her fathers-

in-law! Carried there, expecting sympathy, she found none to take her part, except Vidura! The kings uttered not a word of opposition, solely because they were a set of imbeciles. Vidura alone spoke words of opposition, from a sense of duty,—words conceived in righteousness addressed to that man (Duryodhana) of little sense. Thou didst not, O Sanjaya, then say what law and morality were, but now thou comest to instruct the son of Pāndu! Krishnā, however, having repaired to the hall at that time, made everything right, for like a vessel in the sea, she rescued the Pāndavas as also herself, from that gathering ocean (of misfortunes)! Then in that hall, while Krishnā stood, the charioteer's son addressed her in the presence of her fathers-in-law, saying,—O daughter of Drupada, thou hast no refuge. Better betake thyself as a bond-woman to the house of Dhritarāshtra's son. Thy husbands, being defeated, no longer exist. Thou hast a loving soul; choose some one else for thy lord!—This speech, proceeding from Karna, was a wordy arrow, sharp, cutting all hopes, hitting the tenderest parts of the organization, and frightful. It buried itself deep in Arjuna's heart. When the sons of Pāndu were about to adopt the garments made of the skins of black deer, Dusçāsana spoke the following pungent words:—These all are mean ennuchs, ruined, and damned for a lengthened time!—And Cakuni the king of the Gāndhāra land, spoke to Yudhishthira at the time of the game of dice the following words by way of a trick:—Nakula hath been won by me from you: what else have you got? Now you had better stake your wife Draupadi. —You know, O Sanjaya, all these words of an opprobrious kind which were spoken at the time of the game of dice. I desire to go personally to the Kurus, in order to settle this difficult matter. If without injury to the Pāndava cause I succeed in bringing about this peace with the Kurus, an act of religious merit, resulting in very great blessings, will then have been done by me; and the Kurus also will have been extricated from the meshes of death. I hope that when I shall speak to the Kurus words of wisdom, resting on rules of righteousness, words fraught with sense and free from a tendency to inhumanity, Dhritarāshtra's son will in my presense pay

heed to them. I hope that when I arrive, the Kurus will pay me due respect. Else thou mayst rest assured that those vicious sons of Dhritarāshtra, already scorched by their own vicious acts, will be burnt up by Arjuna and Bhima equipped for fight. When Pāndu's sons were defeated (at the play), Dhritarāshtra's son spoke to them words that were harsh and rude. But when the time will come, Bhima will, no doubt, take care to remind Duryodhana of those words. Duryodhana is a big tree of evil passions; Karna is its trunk; Cakuni is its branches; Dusçāsana forms its abundant blossoms and fruits; (while) the wise king Dhritarāshtra is its roots. Yudhishthira is a big tree of righteousness; Arjuna is its trunk; and Bhima its branches; the sons of Mādri are its abundant flowers and fruits; and its roots are myself and religion and religious men. King Dhritarāshtra with his sons constitutes a forest, while, O Sanjaya, the sons of Pāndu are its tigers. Do not, oh, cut down the forest with its tigers, and let not the tigers be driven away from the forest. The tiger, out of the woods, is easily slain; the wood also that is without a tiger is easily cut down. Therefore, it is the tiger that protects the forest and the forest that shelters the tiger. The Dhārtsrāshtras are as creepers, while, O Sanjaya, the Pāndavas are *çāla* trees. A creeper can never flourish unless it hath a large tree round which to twine. The sons of Prithā are ready to wait upon Dhritarāshtra as, indeed, those repressers of foes are ready for war. Let king Dhritarāshtra now do what may be proper for him to do. The virtuous and high-souled sons of Pāndu, though competent to engage in fight, are yet now in peace (with their cousins). O learned man, represent all this truly (to Dhritarāshtra)!' "

SECTION XXIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'I bid thee fare-well, O divine ruler of men! I will now depart, O son of Pāndu! Let prosperity be thine! I hope I have not, carried away by the feelings of my heart, given utterance to anything offensive? I would also bid fare-well to Janārddana, to Bhima and Arjuna, to the sons of

Mādri, to Sātyaki, and to Chekitāna, and take my departure! Let peace and happiness be yours! Let all the kings look at me with eyes of affection!'

"Yudhishthira said,—'Permitted by us, O Sanjaya, take your departure! Peace to thee! O learned man, thou never thinkest ill of us. Both they and we know thee to be a person of pure heart in the midst of all in the court (of the Kurus)! Besides being an ambassador now, O Sanjaya, thou art faithful, beloved by us, of agreeable speech and excellent conduct, and well-affected towards us. Thy mind is never clouded, and even if addressed harshly thou art never moved to wrath. O *Suta*, thou never utterest harsh and cutting words, or those that are false or bitter! We know that thy words, free from malice, are always fraught with morality and grave import. Amongst envoys thou art the most dear to us. Besides thee, there is another who may come here, and that is Vidura. Formerly we always used to see thee. Thou art, indeed, a friend to us as dear as Dhananjaya! Proceeding hence, O Sanjaya, with all speed, thou shouldst wait upon those Brāhmanas of pure energy and devoted to study according to the *Brahmacharya* mode,—those, namely, that are well-born and endued with every virtue. Those Brahmanas again that are devoted to the study of the *Vedas* while leading lives of mendicancy, those ascetics that habitually dwell in the woods, as also the aged ones of other classes, should all be addressed by thee in my name, O Sanjaya, and then their welfare should be enquired into by thee! O *Suta*, repairing unto the priest of king Dhritarāshtra as also unto his preceptors and *Ritwijs*, thou shouldst address them and enquire after their welfare. Even amongst them that are, though not well-born, at least aged, endued with energy, and possessed of good behaviour and strength, who remembering speak of us and practise according to their might even the least virtue, should first be informed of my peace, O Sanjaya, and then shouldst thou enquire after their welfare! Thou shouldst also enquire after the welfare of those that live in the kingdom carrying on trade, and those that live there filling important offices of state. Our beloved preceptor Drona, who is fully versed in

morality, who is our counsellor, who had practised the *Brāhmacharya* vow for mastering the *Vedas*, who once again hath made the science of weapons full and complete, and who is always graciously inclined towards us, should be greeted by thee in our name. Thou shouldst also enquire into the welfare of Açwathāman, endued with great learning, devoted to the study of the *Vedas*, leading the *Brahmacharya* mode of life, possessed of great activity, and like unto a youth of the *Gandharva* race, and who, besides, hath once again made the science of weapons full and complete! Thou must also, O Sanjaya, repair to the abode of Kripa the son of Cwaradwat, that mighty car-warrior and foremost of all persons having a knowledge of self, and repeatedly saluting him in my name touch his feet with thy hand. Thou shouldst also, touching his feet, represent me unto that foremost of the Kurus, Bhishma, in whom are bravery, and abstention from injury, and asceticism, and wisdom and good behaviour, and Vedic learning, and great excellence, and firmness. Saluting him, thou must represent me as hale unto also the wise, venerable, and blind king (Dhritarāshtra), who, possessed of great learning and revering the old, is the leader of the Kurus. Thou shouldst also, O Sanjaya, enquire, O sire, about the welfare of the eldest of Dhritarāshtra's sons, Suyodhana, who is wicked and ignorant and deceitful and vicious, and who now governs the entire world. Thou shouldst also enquire about the welfare of even the wicked Dusçāsana, that mighty bowman and hero among the Kurus, who is the younger brother of Duryodhana and who possesses a character like that of the elder brother. Thou shouldst, O Sanjaya, also salute the wise chief of the Vālhikas, who always cherishes no other wish save that there should be peace among the Bharatas. I think thou shouldst also worship that Somadatta who is endued with numerous excellent qualities, who is wise and possesses a merciful heart, and who from his affection for the Kurus always controls his anger towards them. The son of Somadatta is worthy of the greatest reverence among the Kurus. He is my friend and is a brother to us. A mighty bowman and the foremost of car-warriors, he is worthy in all respects. Thou shouldst, O Sanjaya, enquire after his

welfare along with that of his friends and councillors. Others there are of youthful age, and of consideration amongst the Kurus, who bear a relationship to us like that of sons, grandsons, and brothers. Unto each of these thou must speak words which thou mayst consider suitable, enquiring, O *Suta*, after his welfare. Thou must also enquire about the welfare of those kings that have been assembled by Dhritarāshtra's son for fighting with the Pāndavas, *viz*, the Kekayas, the Vasātis, the Cālwakas, the Amvashthas, and the leading Trigartas, and of those endued with great bravery that have come from the East, the North, the South, and the West, and of those that have come from the hilly countries, in fact, of all amongst them that are not cruel and that lead good lives. Thou shouldst also represent unto all those persons who ride on elephants, and horses and cars, and who fight on foot,—that mighty host composed of honorable men,—that I am well, and then thou must enquire about their own welfare. Thou must also enquire about the welfare of those that serve the king in the matter of his revenue or as his door-keepers, or as the leaders of his troops, or as the accountants of his income and outlay, or as officers constantly occupied in looking after other important concerns! Thou must, O sire, also enquire about the welfare of Dhritarāshtra's son by his Vaisyā wife,—that youth who is one of the best of the Kuru race,—who never falls into error, who possesseth vast wisdom, who is endued with every virtue, and who never cherishes a liking for this war! Thou shouldst also ask about the welfare of Chitrasena who is unrivalled in the tricks of dice; whose tricks are never detected by others, who plays well, who is well-versed in the art of handling the dice, and who is unconquerable in play but not in fight! Thou must also, O sire, enquire about the welfare of Cakuni the king of the Gāndhāras, that native of the hilly country who is unrivalled in deceitful games at dice, who enhances the pride of Dhritarāshtra's son, and whose understanding naturally leads to falsehood! Thou must also equire about the welfare of Karna the son of Vikartana, that hero who is ready to vanquish, alone and unassisted, mounted on his car, the Pāndavas whom no one dares assail in battle, that Karna

who is unparalleled in deluding those that are already deluded! Thou must also enquire about the welfare of Vidura, O sire, who alone is devoted to us, who is our instructor, who reared us, who is our father and mother and friend, whose understanding finds obstruction in nought, whose ken reaches far, and who is our counsellor! Thou must also salute all the aged dames and those who are known to be possessed of merit, and those who are like mothers to us, meeting them gathered together in one place! Thou must tell them, O Sanjaya, these words at first,—Ye mothers of living sons, I hope your sons comport themselves towards you in a kindly, considerate, and worthy way!—Thou must then tell them that Yudhishthira is doing well with his sons. Those ladies, O Sanjaya, who are like our wives, thou must ask as to their welfare also, addressing them in these words,—I hope you are well-protected. I hope your fair fame hath suffered no injury. I hope you are dwelling within your abodes blamelessly and carefully. I hope you are comporting yourselves towards your fathers-in-law in a kindly, praiseworthy, and considerate way. You must steadily adopt such a conduct for yourselves as will help you to win your husbands' favor!—Those young ladies, O Sanjaya, who bear a relationship to us like that of our daughters-in-law, who have been brought from high families, who are possessed of merit, and who are mothers of children,—thou must meet them all and tell them that Yudhihthira sends his kindly greetings to them. Thou must, O Sanjaya, embrace the daughters of our house, and must ask them about their welfare on my behalf. Thou must tell them,—May your husbands be kindly and agreeable; may you be agreeable to your husbands; may you have ornaments and clothes and perfumery and cleanliness; may you be happy and have at command the joys of life; may your looks be pretty and words pleasant!—Thou must ask, O sire, the women of the house as to their welfare. Thou must also represent unto the maid-servants and man-servants there may be of the Kurus, and also the many hump-backed and lame ones among them, that I am doing well, and thou must then ask them about their welfare. Thou

must tell them,—I hope Dhritarāshtra's son still vouchsafes the same kindly treatment to you. I hope he gives you the comforts of life.—Thou must also represent unto those that are defective in limb, those that are imbecile, the dwarfs to whom Dhritarāshtra gives food and raiment from motives of humanity, those that are blind, and all those that are aged, as also to the many that have the use only of their hands being destitue of legs, that I am doing well, and that I ask them regarding their welfare, addressing them in the following words,—Fear not, nor be dispirited on account of your unhappy lives so full of suffering; no doubt, sins must have been committed by you in your former lives. When I shall check my foes, and delight my friends, I shall satisfy you by gifts of food and clothes!—Thou shouldst also, O sire, at our request, enquire after the welfare of those that are masterless and weak, and of those that vainly strive to earn a living, and of those that are ignorant, in fact, of all those persons that are in pitiable circumstances. O charioteer, meeting those others that, coming from different quarters, have sought the protection of the Dhārtarāshtras, and in fact, all who deserve our greetings, thou shouldst also enquire about their welfare and peace. Thou shouldst also enquire about the welfare of those who have come to the Kurus of their own accord or who have been invited, as also of all the ambassadors arrived from all sides, and then represent unto them that I am well. As regards the warriors that have been obtained by Dhritarāshtra's son, there are none equal to them on earth. Virtue, however, is eternal, and virtue is my power for the destruction of my enemies! Thou shouldst, O Sanjaya, also represent unto Suyodhana the son of Dhritarāshtra the following:—*That desire of thine which torments thy heart, the desire, viz., of ruling the Kurus without a rival, is very unreasonable! It hath no justification. As for ourselves, we will never act in such a way as to do anything that may be disagreeable to thee! O foremost of heroes among the Bharatas, either give me back my own Indraprastha or fight with me!*"

SECTION XXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O Sanjaya, the righteous and the unrighteous, the young and the old, the weak and the strong, are all under the control of the Creator. It is that Supreme Lord who imparteth knowledge to the child and childishness to the learned, according to his own will. If Dhritarāshtra ask thee about our strengh, tell him everything truly, having cheerfully consulted with every one here and ascertained the truth. O son of Gavalgana, repairing unto the Kurus, thou wilt salute the mighty Dhritarāshtra, and touching his feet, enquire after his welfare speaking in our name. And when seated in the midst of the Kurus, tell him from us,—*The sons of Pāndu, O king, are living happily in consequence of thy prowess! It was through thy grace, O represser of foes, that those children of tender years had obtained a kingdom! Having first bestowed a kingdom on them, thou shouldst not now be indifferent to them for destruction then would overtake them!* The whole of this,* O Sanjaya, is not fit to be owned by one person! Tell him again, from us,—*O sire, we wish to live united! Do not suffer thyself to be vanquished by foes!*—Thou shouldst again, O Sanjaya, bending thy head, in my name salute the grandsire of the Bharatas, Bihshma, the son of Cāntanu. Having saluted our grandsire, he should then be told,—*By thee, when Çāntanu's race was about to be extinct, it was revived. Therefore, O sire, do that according to thy own judgment by which thy grandsons may all live in amity with one another!*—Thou shouldst then address Vidura also, that adviser of the Kururs, saying,—*Counsel peace, O amiable one, from desire of doing good unto Yudhishthira!* Thou shouldst address the unforbearing prince Duryodhana also, when seated in the midst of the Kurus, beseeching him again and again, saying,—The insults thou hadst offered to the innocent and helpless Draupadi in the midst of the

* Meaning this kingdom that Dhritarāshtra owns. Such absolute use of pronominal adjectives and substantives is very frequent in terse and compact *slokas.*—*T.*

assembly, we will quietly bear, simply because we have no mind to see the Kurus slain. The other injuries also, both before and after that, the sons of Pāndu are quietly bearing although they are possessed of might to avenge them. All this, indeed, the Kauravas know. O amiable one, thou hadst even exiled us dressed in deer-skins. We are bearing that also because we will not see the Kurus slain. Dusçāsana, in obedience to thee, had dragged Krishnā, disregardig Kunti. That act also will be forgiven by us. But, O chastiser of foes, we must have our proper share of the kingdom. O bull among men, turn thy coveting heart from what belongeth to others. Peace then, O king, will be amongst our gladdened selves. We are desirous of peace; give us even a single province of the empire. Give us even Kuçasthala, Vrikasthala, Mākandi, Vāranāvata, and for the fifth any other that thou likest! Even this will end the quarrel! O Suyodhana, give unto thy five brothers at least five villages!—O Sanjaya, O thou of great wisdom, let there be peace between us and our cousins! Tell him also,—Let brothers follow brothers, let sires unite with sons! Let the Pānchālas mingle with the Kurus in merry laughter. That I may see the Kurus and the Pānchālas whole and sound is what I desire. O bull of the Bharata race, with cheerful hearts let us make peace! O Sanjaya, I am equally capable of war and peace. I am prepared to acquire wealth as well as to earn virtue! I am fit enough for severity as for softness!'"

SECTION XXXI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Dismissed with salutations by the Pāndava, Sanjaya set out for (Hastināpura) having executed all the commands of the illustrious Dhritarāshtra. Reaching Hastināpura he quickly entered it, and presented himself at the gate of the inner apartments of the palace. Addressing the porter, he said,—'O gate-keeper, say unto Dhritarāshtra that I, Sanjaya, have just arrived, coming from the sons of Pāndu! Do not delay. If the king be awake, then only shouldst thou say so, O keeper, for I like

to enter having first apprised him of my arrival. In the present instance I have something of very great importance to communicate.' Hearing this, the keeper went to the king and addressed him, saying,—'O lord of earth, I bow to thee! Sanjaya is at thy gates, desirous of seeing thee! He cometh, bearing a message from the Pāndavas. Issue your commands, O king, as to what he should do!'

"The king said,—'Tell Sanjaya that I am happy and hale. Let him enter. Welcome to Sanjaya. I am always ready to receive him. Why should he stay outside whose admission is never forbidden?' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Then, with the king's permission, having entered that spacious apartment, the *Suta's* son, with joined hands, aproached the royal son of Vichitravirya who was protected by many wise, valiant, and righteous persons, and who was then seated on his throne. And Sanjaya addressed him, saying,—'I am Sanjaya, O king! I bow unto thee! O chief of men, proceeding hence I found the sons of Pāndu. After having paid his salutations to thee, Pāndu's son, the intelligent Yudhishthira, enquired of thy welfare. And well-pleased, he also enquireth after thy sons, and asketh thee whether thou art happy with thy sons and grandsons and friends and counsellors and, O king, all those that depend upon thee!'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O child, giving my blessings to Ajātaçatru, I ask thee, O Sanjaya, whether that king of the Kauravas, Prithā's son, is well with his sons and brothers and counsellors!'

"Sanjaya said,—'Pāndu's son is well with his counsellors. He desires possession of that which he formerly had as his own. He seeketh virtue and wealth without doing anything that is censurable, possesseth intelligence and vast learning, and is, besides, far-sighted and of excellent disposition. With that son of Pāndu, abstention from injury is even superior to virtue, and virtue superior to the accumulation of wealth. His mind, O Bhārata, is always inclined to happiness and joy, and to such courses of action as are virtuous and conducive to the higher ends of life. Even like a doll pulled this way and that

by threads, man (in this world) moveth, swayed by a force not his own. Beholding the sufferings of Yudhishthira, I regard the force of destiny to be superior to the effect of human exertion. Beholding again thy unworthy deeds, which, besides being highly sinful and unspeakable, are sure to terminate in misery, it seemeth to me that one of thy nature winneth praise only so long as his able foe bideth his time. Renouncing all sin, even as a serpent casteth off its worn-out slough which it cannot any longer retain, the heroic Ajātaçatru shineth in his natural perfection, leaving his load of sins to be borne by thee!* Consider, O king, thy own acts which are contrary to both religion and profit, and to the behaviour of those that are righteous. Thou hast, O king, earned a bad repute in this world, and wilt reap misery in the next! Obeying the counsells of thy son thou hopest to enjoy this doubtful property, keeping them aloof!† This unrighteous deed is loudly bruited about in the world. Therefore, O foremost of the Bharatas, this deed is unworthy of thee! Calamity overtaketh him who is deficient in wisdom, or who is of low birth, or who is cruel, or who cherisheth hostility for a long time, or who is not steady in Kshatriya virtues, or is devoid of energy, or is of a bad disposition, in fact, him who hath such marks. It is by virtue of luck that a person taketh his birth in a good race, or becometh strong, or famous, or versed in various lore, or possesseth the comforts of life, or becometh capable of subduing his senses, or discriminating virtue and vice that are always linked together. What person is there who, attended upon by foremost of counsellors, possessed of intelligence, capable of discriminating between virtue and vice in times of distress, not destitute of the rituals of religion, and retaining the use of all his faculties, would commit cruel deeds? These counsellors, ever devoted to thy work, wait here, united

---

* The *Vedas* declare that he who by his wrongful acts maketh a virtuous man his enemy, taketh upon himself his enemy's sins. Sanjaya alludes to this well-known belief in this part of his discourse.—*T.*

† What Sanjaya means by 'doubtful property' is the empire of the Kurus, the retention of which by Dhritaráshtra is doubtful. *Them* refers to the sons of Pāndu. *Vide* note in page 76.—*T.*

together. Even this is their firm determination, (*viz*, that the Pāndavas are not to get back their share). The destruction of the Kurus, therefore, is certain to be brought about by force of circumstance. If, provoked by thy offences, Yudhishthira wisheth for misery to thee, then the Kurus will be destroyed prematurely, while, imparting all his sins to thee, the blame of that deed will be thine in this world. Indeed, what else is there save the will of the gods, for Arjuna the son of Prithā leaving this world ascended to the very heavens and was honored there very greatly. This proves that individual exertion is nothing. There is no doubt as to this.* Seeing that the attributes of high birth, bravery, &c., depended for their development or otherwise on acts, and beholding also prosperity and adversity and stability and instability (in persons and their possessions), king Vali, in his search after causes, having failed to discover a beginning (in the chain of acts of former lives one before another,) regarded the eternal Essence to be the cause of everything. The eye, the ear, the nose, the touch, and the tongue,—these are the doors of a person's knowledge. If desire be curbed, these would be gratified of themselves. Therefore, cheerfully and without repining should one control the senses. Others there are that think differently. They hold that if a person's acts are well applied, these must produce the desired result. Thus the child begot by the act of the mother and the father grows when duly tended with food and drink. Men in this world become subject to love and hate, pleasure

* This *sloka* seems to be rather obscure. The Burdwan Pundits have made a mess of it as also of the four succeeding ones. Babu Kali Prasanna Singha's translation looks much better, though the translator in endeavouring to find the meaning has supplied, after Nilakantha's way, long imaginative ellipses. The meaning, as I understand, seems to be,—"When Arjuna was permitted to ascend to heaven in his human-frame and receive such divine honors while there, all this proves the inutility of human acts and the dependence of everything on the will of the gods, for apparently Arjuna had *done* nothing to merit such treatment." I do not think that Nilakantha is correct in endeavouring to make the particle *tathá* do service for an entire clause that he supplies.—*T.*

and pain, praise and blame. A man is praised when he behaves honestly. Thee I blame, since these dissensions of the Bharatas (whose root thou art) will surely bring about the destruction of innumerable lives. If peace be not concluded, then through thy fault Arjuna will consume the Kurus like a blazing fire consuming a heap of dried grass. O ruler of men, thou alone of all the world, yielding to thy son whom no restraints can bind, hadst regarded thyself as crowned with success and abstained from avoiding dispute at the time of the match at dice! Behold now the fruit of that (weakness of thine)! O monarch, by rejecting advisers that are faithful and accepting those that deserve no confidence, this extensive and prosperous empire, O son of Kuru, thou art unable to retain owing to thy weakess! Wearied by my fast journey and very much fatigued, I solicit thy permission to go to bed now, O lion of men, for to-morrow morning will the Kurus, assembled together in the council hall, hear the words of Ajātaçatru!'"

SECTION XXXII.

Prajāgara Parva.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"King Dhritarāshtra endued with great wisdom (then) said to the orderly in-waiting,—'I desire to see Vidura. Bring him here without delay.'—Despatched by Dhritarāshtra, the messenger went to *Kshattri* and said,—'O thou of great wisdom, our lord the mighty king, desireth to see thee!' Thus addressed, Vidura (set out and) coming to the palace, spoke unto the orderly,—'Apprise Dhritarāshtra of my arrival.' Thereupon the orderly went to Dhritarāshtra, and said,—'O foremost of kings, Vidura is here at thy command! He wisheth to behold thy feet. Command me as to what he is to do.' Thereupon Dhritarāshtra said,—'Let Vidura of great wisdom and foresight enter! I am never unwilling or unprepared to see Vidura!' The orderly then went out and spoke unto Vidura, 'O *Kshāttri*, enter the inner apartments of the wise king. The king says that he is never unwilling to see thee!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having entered Dhritarāsh-

tra's chamber, Vidura said with joined hands unto that ruler of men who was then plunged in thought,—O thou of great wisdom, I am Vidura, arrived here at thy command! If there is anything to be done, here I am, command me!' Dhritarāshtra said,—'O Vidura, Sanjaya hath come back. He hath gone away after rebuking me. To-morrow he will deliver in the midst of the court, Ajātaçatru's message! I have not been able to-day to ascertain what the message is of the Kuru hero! Therefore, my body is burning, and that hath produced sleeplessness! Tell us what may be good for a person that is sleepless and burning! Thou art, O child, versed in both religion and profit! Ever since, Sanjaya hath returned from the Pāndavas, my heart knoweth no peace. Filled with anxiety about what he may deliver, all my senses have been disordered!'

"Vidura said,—'Sleeplessness overtaketh a thief, a lustful person, him that hath lost all his wealth, him that hath failed to achieve success, and him also that is weak and hath been attacked by a strong person! I hope, O king, that none of these grave calamities have overtaken thee! I hope thou dost not grieve, coveting the wealth of others?'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I desire to hear from thee words that are beneficial and fraught with high morality! In this race of royal *Rishis* thou alone art reverenced by the wise!' Vidura replied,—'King (Yudhishthira), graced with every virtue, is worthy of being the sovereign of the three worlds; yet, O Dhritarāshtra, however worthy of being kept by thy side, he was exiled by thee! Thou art, however, possessed of qualities which are the very reverse of those possessed by him! Although virtuous and versed in morality, thou hast yet no right to a share in the kingdom owing to thy loss of sight! In consequence of his inoffensiveness and kindness, his righteousness, love of truth and energy, and his remembering the reverence that is due to thee, Yudhishthira patiently bears innumerable wrongs. Having bestowed on Duryodhana and Suvala's son and Karna, and Dusçāsana the management of the empire, how canst thou hope for prosperity? He that is not severed from the high ends of life by the aid of self-knowledge, exertion, forbearance, and steadi-

ness in virtue, is called wise. These again are the marks of a wise man, *viz.*, adherence to acts worthy of praise and rejection of what is blameable, faith, and reverence. He whom neither anger, nor joy, nor pride, nor false modesty, nor stupefaction, nor vanity, can draw away from the high ends of life, is considered as wise. He whose intended acts, and proposed counsels remain concealed from foes, and whose acts become known only after they have been done, is considered wise. He whose purposed actions are never obstructed by heat or cold, fear or attachment, prosperity or adversity, is considered wise. He whose judgment dissociated from desire, followeth both virtue and profit, and who disregarding pleasure chooseth such ends as are serviceable in both worlds, is considered wise. They that exert to the best of their might, and act also to the best of their might, and disregard nothing as insignificant, are called wise. He that understandeth quickly, listeneth patiently, pursueth his objects with judgment and not from desire, and spendeth not his breath on the affairs of others without being asked, is said to possess the foremost mark of wisdom. They that do not strive for objects that are unattainable, that do not grieve for what is lost and gone, that do not suffer their minds to be clouded amid calamities, are regarded to possess intellects endued with wisdom. He who striveth, having commenced anything, till it is completed, who never wasteth his time, and who hath his soul under control, is regarded wise. They that are wise, O bull of the Bharata race, always delight in honest deeds, do what tendeth to their happiness and prosperity, and never sneer at what is good. He who exulteth not at honors, and grieveth not at slights, and remaineth cool and unagitated like a lake in the course of *Gangā*, is reckoned as wise. That man who knoweth the nature of all creatures (*viz*, that everything is subject to destruction), who is cognisant also of the connections of all acts, and who is proficient in the knowledge of the means that men may resort to (for attaining their objects), is reckoned as wise. He who speaketh boldly, can converse on various subjects, knoweth the science of argumentation, possesseth genius, and can interpret the meaning of what is writ in books, is reckoned as wise, He whose studies are regulated

by reason, and whose reason followeth the scriptures, and who never abstaineth from paying respect to those that are good, is called a wise man. He, on the other hand, who is ignorant of scripture yet vain, poor yet proud, and who resorteth to unfair means for the acquisition of his objects, is a fool. He who, forsaking his own, concerneth himself with the objects of others, and who practiseth deceitful means for serving his freinds, is called a fool. He who wisheth for those things that should not to be desired, and forsaketh those that may legitimately be desired, and who beareth malice to those that are powerful, is regarded to be a foolish soul. He who regardeth his foe as his friend, who hateth and beareth malice to his friend, and who committeth wicked deeds, is said to be a person of foolish soul. O bull of the Bharata race, he who divulgeth his projects, doubteth in all things, and spendeth a long time in doing what requireth a short time, is a fool. He who doth not perform the *Çrādha* for the *pitris*, nor worshippeth the deities, nor acquireth noble-minded friends, is said to be a person of foolish soul. That worst of men who entereth a place uninvited, and talketh much without being asked, and reposeth trust on untrustworthy wights, is a fool. That man who being himself guilty casteth the blame on others, and who though impotent giveth vent to anger, is the most foolish of men. That man who, without knowing his own strength and dissociated from both virtue and profit, desireth an object difficult of acquisition, without again adopting adequate means, is said to be destitute of intelligence. O king, he who punisheth one that is undeserving of punishment, payeth homage to persons without their knowledge, and waiteth upon misers, is said to be of little sense. But he that, having attained immense wealth and prosperity or acquired (vast) learning, doth not bear himself haughtily, is reckoned as wise. Who, again, is more heartless than he who, though possessed of affluence, eateth himself and weareth excellent robes himself without distributing his wealth among his dependents? While one person committeth sins many reap the advantage resulting therefrom; (yet in the end) it is the doer alone to whom the sin attacheth while those that enjoy the fruit escape unhurt. When a bowman shooteth an

arrow, he may or may not succeed in slaying even a single person, but when an intelligent individual applieth his intelligence (viciously) it may destroy an entire kingdom with the king. Discriminating the *two* by means of the *one*, bring under thy subjection the *three* by means of *four*, and also conquering the *five* and knowing the *six*, and abstaining from the *seven*, be happy !* Poison slayeth but one person, and a weapon also but one ; wicked counsels, however, destroy an entire kingdom, with king and subjects. Alone one should not partake of any savoury viand, nor alone reflect on concerns of profit, nor alone go upon a journey, nor alone remain awake among sleeping companions. That Being who is One, without a second, and whom, O king, thou hast not been able to comprehend, is Truth's self, and the Way to heaven, even like a boat in the ocean ! There is one only defect in forgiving persons, and not another; that defect is that people take a forgiving person to be weak. That defect, however, should not be taken into consideration, for forgiveness is a great power. Forgiveness is a virtue of the weak, and an ornament of the strong. Forgiveness subdueth (all) in this world; what is there that forgiveness cannot achieve ? What can a wicked person do unto him who carrieth the sabre of forgiveness in his hand ? Fire falling on a grassless ground is extinguished of itself. An unforgiving individual defileth himself with many enormities. Righteousness is the one highest good ; and forgiveness is the one supreme peace ; knowledge is one supreme contentment ; and benevolence, one sole happiness. Even as a serpent devoureth animals living in holes, the earth devoureth these two, *viz*, a king who is incompetent to fight, and a Brahmana who doth not sojourn to holy places. A man may attain renown in this world by doing two things, *viz*, by refraining from harsh speech, and by disregarding those that are wicked. O tiger among men, these two have not a will of their own, *viz*, those women who covet

* By *one* is meant the *intellect ;* by *two*, right and wrong ; by *three*, friend, stronger, and foe ; by *four*, conciliation, gift, disunion, and severity ; by *five*, the five senses ; by *six*, treaty, war, &c. ; and by *seven*, women, dice, hunting, harshness of speech, drinking, severity of punishment, and waste of wealth.—*T.*

men simply because the latter are coveted by others of their sex, and that person who worships another simply because the latter is worshipped by others. These two are like sharp thorns afflicting the body, *viz*, the desires of a poor man, and the anger of the impotent. These two persons never shine because of their incompatible acts, *viz*, a house-holder without exertion, and a beggar busied in schemes. These two, O king, live (as it were) in a region higher than heaven itself, *viz*, a man of power endued with forgiveness, and a poor man that is charitable. Of things honestly got, these two must be looked upon as misuse, *viz*, making gifts to the unworthy and refusing the worthy. These two should be thrown into the water, tightly binding weights to their necks, *viz*, a wealthy man that doth not give away, and a poor man that is proud. These two, O tiger among men, can pierce the orb itself of the sun, *viz*, a mendicant accomplished in *Yoga*, and a warrior that hath fallen in open fight. O bull of the Bharata race, persons versed in the *Vedas* have said that men's means are good, middling, and bad. Men also, O king, are good, indifferent, and bad. They should, therefore, be respectively employed in that kind of work for which they may be fit. These three, O king, cannot have wealth of their own, *viz*, the wife, the slave, and the son, and whatever may be earned by them would be his to whom they belong. Great fear springeth from these three crimes, *viz*, theft of others' property, outrage on others' wives, and breach with friends. These three, besides being destructive to one's ownself, are the gates of hell, *viz*, lust, anger, and covetousness. Therefore, every one should renounce them. These three should never be forsaken even in imminent danger, *viz*, a follower, one who seeks protection, saying,—*I am thine*, and lastly one who hath come to your abode. Verily, O Bhārata, liberating a foe from distress, alone amounteth in point of merit, to these three taken together, *viz*, conferring a boon, acquiring a kingdom, and obtaining a son! Learned men have declared that a king, although powerful, should never consult with these four, *viz*, men of small sense, men that are procrastinating, men that are indolent, and men that are flatterers. O sire,

crowned with prosperity and leading the life of a householder, let these four dwell with thee, *viz*, old consanguineous relatives, high-born persons fallen into adversity, poor friends, and issueless sisters! On being asked by the chief of the celestials, Vrihaspati, O mighty king, declared four things capable of fructifying or occurring within a single day, *viz*, the resolve of the gods, the comprehensions of intelligent persons, the humility of learned men, and the destruction of the sinful. These four that are calculated to remove fear, bring on fear when they are improperly performed, *viz*, the *Agni-hotra*, the vow of silence, study, and sacrifice (in general). O bull of the Bharata race, these five fires, should be worshipped with regard by a person, *viz*, father, mother, fire (proper), soul, and preceptor. By serving these five, men attain great fame in this world, *viz*, the gods, the *Pitris*, men, beggars, and guests. These five follow thee wherever thou goest, *viz*, friends, foes, those that are indifferent, dependents, and those that are entitled to maintenance. Of the five senses belonging to man, if one springeth a leak, then from that single hole runneth out all his intelligence, even like water running out from a perforated leathern vessel. These six faults should be avoided by a person who wisheth to attain prosperity, *viz*, sleep, drowsiness, fear, anger, indolence and procrastination. These six should be renounced like a splitting vessel in the sea, *viz*, a preceptor that cannot expound the scriptures, a priest that is illiterate, a king that is unable to protect, a wife that speaketh disagreeable words, a cow-herd that doth not wish to go to the fields, and a barber that wisheth to renounce a village for the woods. Verily, these six qualities should never be forsaken by men, *viz*, truth, charity, diligence, benevolence, forgiveness, and patience. These six are instantly destroyed, if neglected, *viz*, kine, service, agriculture, a wife, learning, and the wealth of a *Çudra*. These six forget those who have bestowed obligations on them, *viz*, educated disciples, their preceptors; married persons, their mothers; persons whose desires have been gratified, women; they who have achieved success, them who had rendered aid; they who have crossed a river, the boat (that carried them over); and patients that have been

cured, their physicians. Health, unindebtedness, living at home, companionship with good men, certainty as regards the means of livelihood, and living without fear, these six, O king, conduce to the happiness of men. These six are always miserable, *viz*, the envious, the malicious, the discontented, the irascible, the ever-suspicious, and those depending upon the fortunes of others. These six, O king, comprise the happiness of men, *viz*, acquirement of wealth, uninterrupted health, a beloved and a sweet-speeched wife, an obedient son, and knowledge that is lucrative. He that succeedeth in gaining the mastery of the *six** that are always present in the human heart, being thus the master of his senses, never committeth sin and, therefore, never suffereth calamity. These six may be seen to subsist upon other six, *viz*, thieves upon persons that are careless; physicians on persons that are ailing; women, upon persons suffering from lust; priests, upon them that sacrifice; a king, upon persons that quarrel; and lastly, men of learning, upon them that are without it. A king should renounce these seven faults that are productive of calamity, in as much as they are able to effect the ruin of even monarchs firmly established: these are women, dice, hunting, drinking, harshness of speech, severity of punishment, and misuse of wealth. These eight are the immediate indications of a man devoted to destruction, *viz*, hating the Brāhmanas, disputes with Brāhmanas, appropriation of a Brāhmana's possessions, taking the life of a Brāhmana, taking a pleasure in reviling Brāhmanas, grieving to hear the praises of Brāhmanas, forgetting them on ceremonious occasions, and giving vent to spite when they ask for anything. These trangressions a wise man should understand, and understanding, eschew. These eight, O Bhārata, are the very cream of happiness, and these only are attainable here, *viz*, meeting with friends, accession of immense wealth, embracing a son, union for intercourse, conversation with friends in proper times, the advancement of persons belonging to one's own party, the acquisition of what had been anticipated, and respect in society. These eight qualities glorify a man,

* Lust, anger, grief, confusion of intellect, pride, and vanity.—*T.*

viz, wisdom, high birth, self-restraint, learning, prowess, moderation in speech, gift according to one's power, and gratitude. This house hath nine doors, three pillars, and five witnesses. It is presided over by the soul. That learned man who knoweth all this is truly wise! O Dhritarāshtra, these ten do not know what virtue is, *viz*, the intoxicated, the inattentive, the raving, the fatigued, the angry, the starving, the hasty, the covetuous, the frightened, and the lustful. Therefore, he that is wise must eschew the company of these. In this connection is cited the old story about what transpired between Sudhanwan and (Prahlāda) the chief of the *Asuras* in relation to the latter's son. That king who renounceth lust and anger, who bestoweth wealth upon proper recipients, and is discriminating, learned, and active, is regarded as an authority by all men. Great prosperity attends upon that king who knoweth how to inspire confidence in others, who inflicteth punishment on those whose guilt hath been proved, who is acquainted with the proper measure of punishment, and who knoweth when mercy is to be shown. He is a wise person who doth not disregard even a weak foe; who proceedeth with intelligence in respect of a foe, anxiously watching for an opportunity; who doth not desire hostilities with persons stronger than himself; and who displayeth his prowess in season. That illustrious person who doth not grieve when a calamity hath already come upon him, who exerteth with all his senses collected, and who patiently beareth misery in season, is certainly the foremost of persons, and all his foes are vanquished. He who doth not live away from home uselessly, who doth not make friends with sinful persons, who never outrageth another's wife, who never betrayeth arrogance, and who never committeth a theft or showeth ingratitude or indulgeth in drinking, is always happy. He who never boastfully striveth to attain the three objects of human pursuit, who when asked, telleth the truth, who quarreleth not even for the sake of friends, and who never becometh angry though slighted, is reckoned as wise. He who beareth not malice towards others but is kind to all, who, being weak, disputeth not with others, who speaketh not arrogantly, and forgiveth a quarrel, is praised

everywhere. That man who never assumeth a haughty mien, who never censureth others praising himself the while, and never addresseth harsh words to others forgetting himself, is ever loved by all. He who raketh not up old hostilities, who behaveth neither arrogantly nor with too much humility, and who even when distressed never committeth an improper act, is considered by respectable men a person of good conduct. He who exulteth not at his own happiness, nor delighteth in another's misery, and who repenteth not after having made a gift, is said to be a man of good nature and conduct. He who desireth to obtain a knowledge of the customs of different countries, of also the languages of different nations, and of the usages of different orders of men, knoweth at once all that is high and low: and wherever he may go, he is sure to gain an ascendancy over even those that are good. The intelligent man who relinquisheth pride, folly, insolence, sinful acts, disloyalty towards the king, crookedness of behavior, enmity with many, and also quarrels with men that are drunk, mad, and wicked, is the foremost of his species. The very gods bestow prosperity upon him who daily practiseth self-restraint, purification, auspicious rites, worship of the gods, expiatiory ceremonies, and other rites of universal observance, The acts of that learned man are well conceived and well applied who formeth matrimonial alliances with persons of equal position and not with those that are inferior, who placeth those before him that are more qualified, and who talketh, behaveth and maketh friendships with persons of equal position. He who eateth frugally after dividing the food amongst his dependants, who sleepeth little after working much, and who when solicited giveth away even unto his foes, hath his soul under control, and calamities always keep themselves aloof from him. He whose counsels are well kept and well carried out into practice, and whose acts in consequence thereof are never known by others to injure men, succeedeth in securing even his most trifling objects. He who is intent upon abstaining from injury to all creatures, who is truthful, gentle, charitable, and pure in mind, shineth greatly among his kinsmen like a precious gem of the purest ray having its

origin in an excellent mine. That man who feeleth shame even though his faults be not known to any save himself, is highly honoured among all men. Possessed of a pure heart and boundless energy and abstracted within himself, he shineth in consequence of his energy like the very sun. King Pāndu consumed by a (Brāhmana's) curse, had five sons born unto him in the woods that are like five Indras. O son of Ambikā, thou hast brought up those children and taught them everything. They are obedient to thy commands ! Giving them back their just share of the kingdom, O sire, filled with joy, be thou happy with thy sons ! Then, O monarch, thou shalt inspire confidence in both the gods and men !' "

SECTION XXXIII.

" Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me what may be done by a person that is sleepless and burning with anxieties, for thou alone amongst us, O child, art versed in both religion and profit ! Advise me wisely, O Vidura ! O thou of magnanimous heart, tell me what thou deemest to be beneficial for Ajātaçatru and what productive of good to the Kurus ! Apprehending future evils, I look back only on my previous guilt : I ask thee with anxious heart ! O learned one, tell me what is exactly in Ajātaçatru's mind !'

"Vidura said,—'Even if unasked, one should speak truly, whether his words be good or bad, hateful or pleasing, unto him whose defeat one doth not wish. I shall, therefore say, O king, what is for the good of the Kurus. I shall say what is both beneficial and consistent with morality. Listen to me ! Do not, O Bhārata, set thy heart upon means of success that are unjust and improper. A man of intelligence must not grieve if any purpose of his doth not succeed notwithstanding the application of fair and proper means. Before one engageth in an act, one should consider the competence of the agent, the nature of the act itself, and its purpose, for all acts are dependent on these. Considering these one should begin an act, and not take it up on a sudden impulse. He that is wise should either do an act or desist from it fully con-

sidering his own ability, the nature of the act, and the consiquences also of success. The king who knoweth not proportion or measure as regards territory, gain, loss, treasury, population, and punishment, cannot retain his kingdom long. He, on the other hand, who is acquainted with the measures of these as prescribed in treatises, being necessarily possessed of the knowledge of religion and profit, can retain his kingdom. A king should not act improperly, thinking that the kingdom has been already his, for tyranny destroyeth kingly prosperity as old age killeth beauty. A fish from temptation devoureth an iron hook concealed within fine meat, without considering the nature of the act or its consequences. He who seeketh prosperity taketh only that which can be taken and which when taken may be digested and may become finally beneficial. He who plucketh unripe fruits from a tree faileth to obtain their savoury juice and spoileth their seeds. He, on the other hand, who plucketh a ripe fruit in season not only enjoyeth its juice but also other fruits to be reproduced from the seeds. As the bee collecteth honey without destroying the flowers, so should a king take taxes from his subjects without injuring them. One should pluck flowers whithout uprooting the plants, even like a dealer in flowers and not like a preparer of charcoal. What will happen to me if I do it, and what will happen to me if I omit to do it,—having considered this, one should either act or omit to act. Those acts in which individual exertion proves fruitless, should not be commenced. As women do not wish to have eunuchs for husbands, so people do not desire to have him for a ruler whose favour is fruitless and anger impotent. The man that is wise speedily taketh up, without waiting, such acts as are productive of mighty fruits, even though the labor necessary to complete them be very little. The king that looketh on all with sincere and loving eyes, inspireth affection in all his subjects even if he sitteth in silence. Let not the tree bear fruit though covered with blossoms; and even if it should fructify, let it be difficult of ascent; and even if the fruit be unripe let it show itself as ripe. It is by acting in this way that a king is never weakened. Men are always well disposed

towards him who pleaseth all in four ways, *viz*, with heart, eyes, words, and acts. He who is an object of fear to all creatures as a hunter is to beasts of chase, loseth his ascendancy even if he winneth the whole sea-girt earth. As the wind, coming in contact therewith, scattereth a mass of clouds, so a man addicted to evil practices destroyeth by his own acts the kingdom he obtaineth from his ancestors. The earth full of wealth and swelling with prosperity enhanceth the prosperity of that king who practiseth righteousness which is practised by the good from the remotest days. On the other hand, as regards of a king who relinquishing morality practiseth unrighteousness, the earth contracteth in penury like a piece of leather cast into the fire. That energy which is spent in grinding a hostile kingdom should be utilised in looking after one's own kingdom. Virtuously should a kingdom be acquired and virtuously should it be governed; for the prosperity that hath virtue for its foundation, being won, is never lost, nor hath its possessor ever to forsake it. One should extract truths from the ravings of the maniac and the prattlings of children, like gold from stone. A wise man should learn good behaviour, good words, and good acts from every side, like a leader of the *Çila* mode of life picking grains of corn from the field that have been abandoned by the reapers. Kine see through scent, Brāhmanas through the *Vedas*, kings through spies, and other men through eyes. The cow that is difficult to milk is greatly tormented; whereas that one which is easy to milk hath, O king, nothing to suffer. Anything that bendeth without being heated, is never heated; the wood that bendeth of itself is never bent with force. A wise man following this example humbleth himself before one stronger than himself; and he that bendeth before a stronger person boweth down, in fact, unto Indra. Living creatures depend upon the clouds; kings upon ministers; women have husbands for their protectors; and the Brāhmanas have the *Vedas* for their refuge. Virtue is preserved by truthfulness; learning by application; beauty by cleansing the body; high lineage by good character. Corn is preserved by measure; horses, by exercise; kine by constant care; and women, by

tattered clothes. Mere lineage, I think, in the case of one whose behaviour is not good, should command no respect. Even persons that are of low birth should be regarded as respectable if their conduct be so. He that is envious of another's wealth, beauty, might, high lineage, happiness, good fortune, and honors, suffereth a disease that is incurable. He who is afraid of comitting improper acts, or of omitting to do what is proper, or of prematurely divulging his projects, should never take that which intoxicates. Pride of learning, of wealth, and of alliances,—these intoxicate men of little sense, while they that are wise always restrain them. Unrighteous persons who may by chance be requested by the righteous to do something for them, regard themselves, after doing very little, as righteous, even though they are widely known as unrighteous. The fact, however, is that the righteous alone are the refuge of the righteous, as, indeed, of those that have controlled their souls, and of those that are wicked. The wicked can never be the refuge of the righteous. One attired in excellent robes prevaileth over an assembly; an owner of kine, over the desire of eating sweets; a possessor of vehicles, over roads; but he that is righteous in behaviour prevaileth over everything. Good behaviour is essential to a man; he that loseth it gaineth nothing by life, wealth, and friends. O bull of the Bharata race, meat prevaileth in the food of the opulent, clarified butter in that of the middle classes; and oil in that of the poor. The food, however, that the poor take is more savoury; for hunger, which is rare among the wealthy, lendeth it relish. It is generally seen in this world that men in the enjoyment of prosperity have no capacity for eating, while the poor, O king, can digest chips of wood! Men of the lower orders are afraid of injury to their lives; those of the middle classes, of death; and good men, of insult. Intoxication of wealth is much more censurable than wine; for a man intoxicated with prosperity can never be brought to his senses unless he meeteth with a fall. As the stars are affected by the planets, so is this world affected by the senses when they are directed, uncontrolled, to their respective objects. Like the moon during the lighted fortnight, calamities in-

crease in respect of him who is vanquished by the five senses in their natural state which ever lead him towards action. He who wisheth to control his counsellors before controlling his own self, or to subdue his adversaries before controlling his counsellors, at last succumbs, deprived of strength. He, therefore, who first subdueth his own self regarding it as a foe, never faileth to subdue his counsellors and adversaries at last. Great prosperity waiteth upon him who hath subdued his senses, or controlled his soul, or who is capable of punishing all offenders, or who acteth with judgment, or who is blessed with patience. One's body, O king, is one's car; the soul within is the driver; and the senses are its steeds. Drawn by those excellent steeds when well-trained, he that is wise, pleasantly performeth the journey of life, awake and in peace. As horses that are unbroken and incapable of being controlled, always lead an uuskilful driver to destruction in the course of the journey, so one's senses, unsubdued, lead only to destruction. The inexperienced wight who, led by his unsubdued senses, hopeth to extract evil from good and good from evil, necessarily confoundeth misery with happiness. He who, forsaking religion and profit, followeth the lead of his senses, loseth, without delay, prosperity, life, wealth, and wife. He who is the master of riches but not of his senses, certainly loseth his riches in consequence of his want of mastery over his senses. One should seek to know one's self by means of one's own self, controlling one's mind, intellect, and senses, for one's self is one's own friend as, indeed, it is one's own foe. That man who hath conquered self by means of self, hath his self for a friend, for one's self is ever one's friend or foe. Desire and anger, O king, break through wisdom, just as large fish break through a net of thin chords. He who, in this world, regarding both religion and profit, seeketh to acquire the means of success, winneth happiness, possessing all he had sought. He who, without subduing his five inner foes of mental origin, wisheth to vanquish other adversaries, is, in fact, overpowered by the latter. It is seen that many evil-minded kings, owing to want of mastery over their senses, are ruined by acts of their own, occasioned by lust of territory. As

fuel that is wet burneth with that which is dry, so a sinless man is punished equally with the sinful in consequence of constant association with the latter. Therefore, should friendship with the sinful be avoided. He that, from ignorance, faileth to control his five soaring foes having five distinct objects, is overwhelmed by calamities. Guilelessness and simplicity, purity and contentment, sweetness of speech and self-restraint, truth and steadiness,—these are never the attributes of the wicked. Self-knowledge and steadiness, patience and devotion to virtue, competence to keep counsels and charity,—these, O Bhārata, never exist in inferior men. Fools seek to injure the wise by false reproaches and evil speech. The consequence is that by this they take upon themselves the sins of the wise while the latter are freed from their sins by forgiveness. In malice lieth the strength of the wicked; in the criminal code, the strength of kings; in attentions to the weak, that of women; and in forgiveness that of the virtuous. To control speech, O king, is said to be most difficult! It is not easy to hold a long conversation uttering words full of meaning and delightful to the hearers. Well-spoken speech is productive of many beneficial results; and ill-spoken speech, O king, is the cause of evils! A forest pierced by arrows or cut down by hatchets may again grow, but one's heart wounded and censured by ill-spoken words never recovereth. Weapons such as arrows, bullets, and bearded darts, can be easily extracted from the body, but a wordy dagger plunged deep into the heart is incapable of being taken out. Wordy arrows are shot from the mouth; smitten by them one grieveth day and night. A learned man should not shoot such arrows, for do they not touch the very vitals of others? He to whom the gods ordain defeat hath his senses taken away and it is for this that he stoopeth to ignoble deeds. When the intellect becometh dim and destruction is nigh, wrong, looking like right, firmly sticketh to the heart. Thou dost not clearly see it, O bull of the Bharata race, that that clouded intellect hath now possessed thy sons in consequence of their hostility to the Pāndavas. Endued with every auspicious mark and deserving to rule the three worlds, Yudhishthira is

obedient to thy commands! Let him, O Dhritarāshtra, rule the earth! To the exclusion of all thy sons Yudhishthira is the foremost of all thy heirs. Endued with energy and wisdom, and acquainted with the truths of religion and profit, Yudhishthira, that foremost of righteous men, hath, O king of kings, suffered much misery out of kindness and simplicity and in order to preserve thy glory!'"

SECTION XXXIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O thou of great intelligence, tell me again words such as these, consistent with religion and profit. My thirst for hearing them is not quenched. What thou sayest is charming!'"

"Vidura said,—'Ablution in all the holy spots and kindness to all creatures,—these two are equal. Perhaps, kindness to all creatures surpasseth the former. O master, show kindness unto all thy sons, for by that winning great fame in this world thou wilt have heaven hereafter. As long as a man's good deeds are spoken of in this world, so long, O tiger among men, is he glorified in heaven. In this connection is cited an old history about the conversation between Virochana and Sudhanwan, both suitors for Keçini's hand. Once on a time, O king, a maiden of the name of Keçini, unrivalled for beauty, moved by the desire of obtaining a good husband, resolved to choose her lord in *Swayamvara*. Then one of the sons of Diti, Virochana by name, went to that spot, desirous of obtaining the maiden. Beholding that chief of the *Daityas*, Keçini addressed him, saying,—Are Brāhmanas superior, O Virochana, or are the sons of Diti superior? And why also should not Sudhanwan sit on the sofa?—Virochana said,—Sprung from Prajāpati himself, we, O Keçini, are the best and at the top of all creatures, and this world is ours without doubt! Who are the gods and who the Brāhmanas?—Keçini said,—We will, O Virochana, stay here in this very pavilion. Sudhanwan will come here on the morrow, and let me see both of you sitting together!—Virochana said,—O amiable and timid girl, I will do what thou sayest! Thou

wilt behold Sudhanwan and myself met together in the morning!—'

"Vidura continued,—'When the night had passed away and the solar disc had risen, Sudhanwan, O best of kings, came to that place where, O master, Virochana was waiting with Keçini. And Sudhanwan saw there both Prahrāda's son and Keçini. And beholding the Brāhmana arrived, Keçini, O bull of the Bharata race, rising up from hers offered him a seat, water to wash his feet, and the *Arghya*. And asked by Virochana (to share his seat) Sudhanwan said,—O son of Prahrāda, I touch thy excellent golden seat! I cannot, however, suffer myself to be regarded as thy equal, and sit on it with thee!—Virochana said,—A piece of wooden plank, an animal skin, or a mat of grass or straw,—these only, O Sudhanwan, are fit for thee! Thou deservest not, however, the same seat with me!—Sudhanwan said,—Father and son, Brāhmanas of equal age and equal learning, two Kshatriyas, two Vaiçyas, and two Cudras, can sit together on the same seat. Except these, no others can sit together. Your father used to pay his regards to me, taking a seat lower than that occupied by me! Thou art a child, brought up in every luxury at home and understandest nothing!—Virochana said,—Staking all the gold, kine, horses, and every other kind of wealth that we have among the *Asuras*, let us, O Sudhanwan, ask them this question that are able to answer.—Sudhanwan said,—Let alone your gold, kine, and horses, O Virochana! Making our lives the forfeit, we will ask them this question that are competent!—Virochana said,—Wagering our lives where shall we go? I will not appear before any of the gods and never before any among men!—Sudhanwan said,—Having wagered our lives, we will approach thy father, for he, Prahrāda, will never say an untruth even for the sake of his son!—'

"Vidura continued,—'Having thus laid a wager, Virochana and Sudhanwan, both moved by rage, proceeded to that place where Prahrāda was. And beholding them together, Prahrāda said,—These two who had never before been companions are now seen together, coming hither by the same road, like two

angry snakes. Have ye now become companions,—ye who were never companions before? I ask thee, O Virochana, has there been friendship between thee and Sudhanwan?—Virochana said,—There is no friendship between me and Sudhanwan. On the other hand, we have both wagered our lives. O chief of the *Asuras*, I shall ask thee a question, do not answer it untruly!—Prahrāda said,—Let water, and honey and curds, be brought for Sudhanwan. Thou deservest our worship, O Brāhmana! A white and fat cow is ready for thee!—Sudhanwan said,—Water, and honey and curds, have been presented to me on my way hither. I shall ask thee a question, Prahrāda! Answer it truly! Are Brāhmanas superior, or is Virochana superior?—Prahrāda said,—O Brāhmana, this one is my only son! Thou also art present here in person! How can one like us answer a question about which ye two have quarreled?—Sudhanwan said,—Give unto thy son thy kine and other precious wealth that thou mayst have, but, O wise one, thou shouldst declare the truth when we two are disputing about it!—Prahrāda said,—Where doth that misuser of his tongue live, O Sudhanwan, who answereth not, truly or falsely, a question that is put to him? I ask thee this!—Sudhanwan said,—The person that misuseth his tongue hath that night for his which a wife passeth who beholdeth her husband sleeping in the arms of a co-wife, or which cometh upon a person who hath lost at dice, or which is his who is weighted down with an unbearable load of anxieties. Such a man hath also to stay starving outside the city-gates, his admission barred. Indeed, he that giveth false evidence is destined to always see his foes. He that speaketh a lie on account of an animal, casteth from heaven five of his sires in the ascending order. He that speaketh a lie on account of a cow, casteth from heaven ten of his ancestors. A lie on account of a horse causeth the downfall of a hundred, and a lie on account of a human being, the downfall of a thousand of one's sires in the ascending order. An untruth on account of gold ruineth the members of one's race both born and unborn, while an untruth for the sake of land ruineth everything. Therefore, never speak an untruth for the sake of

land !*—Prahrāda said,—Angiras is superior to myself, and Sudhanwan is superior to thee, O Virochana ! The mother also of Sudhanwan is superior to thy mother ; therefore, thou, O Virochana, hath been vanquished by Sudhanwan ! This Sudhanwan is now the master of thy life ! But, O Sudhanwan, I wish that thou shouldst grant Virochana his life !—Sudhanwan said,—Since, O Prahrāda, thou hast preferred virtue and hast not, from temptation, said an untruth, I grant thy son his life that is dear ! So here is thy son Virochana, O Prahrāda, granted by me to thee ! He shall, however, have to wash my feet in the presence of the maiden Keçini !—'

"Vidura continued,—'For these reasons, O king of kings, it behoveth thee not to say an untruth for the sake of land ! Saying an untruth from affection for thy son, O, hurry not to destruction with all thy children and counsellors ! The gods do not protect men, taking up clubs in their hands after the manner of herdsmen. Unto them, however, they wish to protect, they grant intelligence. There is no doubt that one's objects meet with success in proportion to the attention he directs to righteousness and morality. The *Vedas* never rescue from sin a deceitful person living by falsehood. On the other hand, they forsake him while he is on his death-bed,† like newly fledged birds forsaking their nests. Drinking, quarrels, enmity with large numbers of men, connubial disputes, intestine dissensions, disloyalty to the king, sexual brawls,—

---

* Some idea of the extreme terseness of passages like these in the original may be had from the following word for word reproduction :— "Upon an animal-lie five are ruined ; ten are ruined upon a cow-lie ; hundred are ruined upon a horse-lie ; thousand upon a man-lie ; born and unborn are ruined upon a lie for gold being spoken ; and every thing is ruined upon an earth-lie. An earth-lie should never be spoken !'" Such linguistic or philological reproductions, however, of whatever value to specialists, would generally be unintelligible to the majority of readers. I have accordingly expanded the passages a little.—*T.*

† For *Anta-kāle* some texts read *Alpa-kāle.* The former reading (which I adopt) is unquestionably more poetic, even if *Alpa-kāle* here can have any meaning.—*T.*

these and all paths that are sinful, should, it is said, be avoided. A palmist, a thief turned into a merchant, a fowler, a physician, an enemy, a friend, and a mime,—these seven are incompetent as witnesses. An *Agnihotra* performed from motives of pride, abstention from speech practised from similar motives, study and sacrifice from the same motives, —these four, of themselves innocent, become terrible when practised unduly. One that setteth fire to a dwelling house, an administerer of poison, a pander, a vendor of the *Soma* juice, a maker of arrows, an astrologer, one that injureth friends, an adulterer, one that causeth abortion, a violater of his preceptor's bed, a Brāhmana addicted to drink, one that is sharp-speeched, a raker of old sores, an athiest, a reviler of the *Vedas*, a taker of bribes, one whose investiture with the sacred thread has been delayed beyond the prescribed age, one that secretly slayeth cattle, and one that slayeth him who prayeth for protection,—these all are reckoned as equal in turpitude to slayers of Brāhmanas. Gold is tested by fire; a well-born person, by his deportment; an honest man, by his conduct. A brave man is tested during a season of panic; he that is self-controlled, in times of poverty; and friends and foes, in times of calamity and danger. Decrepitude destroyeth beauty; hope, patience; death, life; envy, righteousness; anger, prosperity; companionship with the low, good behaviour; lust, modesty; and pride, everything. Prosperity taketh its birth in good deeds, groweth in consequence of activity, driveth its roots deep in consequence of skill, and acquireth stability owing to self-control. Wisdom, good lineage, self-control, acquaintance with the scriptures, prowess, absence of garrulity, gift to the extent of one's power, and gratefulness,—these eight qualities shed a lustre upon their possessor. But, O sire, there is one endowment which alone can cause all these attributes to come together. The fact is, when the king honoreth a particular person, the royal favor can cause all these attributes to shed their lustre (on the favorite.) Those eight, O king, in the world of men are indications of heaven. Of the eight (mentioned below) four are inseparably connected with the good, and four others are always followed by the

good. The first four which are inseparably connected with the good, are sacrifice, gift, study, and asceteism, while the other four that are always followed by the good, are self-restraint, truth, simplicity, and abstention from injury to all.

" 'Sacrifice, study, gift, asceticism, truth, forgiveness, mercy, and contentment constitute the eight different paths of righteousness. The first four of these may be practised from motives of pride, but the last four can exist only in those that are truly great. That is no assembly where there are no old men, and they are not old who do not declare what morality is. That is not morality which is separated from truth, and that is no truth which is fraught with deceit. Truth, beauty, acquaintance with the scriptures, knowledge, high birth, good behaviour, strength, wealth, bravery, and capacity for varied talk,—these ten are of heavenly origin. A sinful person, by commiting sin, is overtaken by evil consequences. A virtuous man, by practising virtue, reapeth great happiness. Therefore, a man should, rigidly resolved, abstain from sin. Sin, repeatedly perpetrated, destroyeth intelligence; and the man who hath lost intelligence repeatedly committeth sin. Virtue, repeatedly practised, enhanceth intelligence; and the man whose intelligence hath increased, repeatedly practiseth virtue. The virtuous man, by practising virtue, wendeth to regions of blessedness. Therefore, a man should, firmly resolved, practise virtue. He that is envious, he that injureth others deeply, he that is cruel, he that constantly quarreleth, he that is deceitful, soon meeteth with great misery for practising these sins. He that is not envious and is possessed of wisdom, by always doing what is good, never meeteth with great misery. On the other hand, he shineth everywhere. He that draweth wisdom from them that are wise, is really learned and wise. And he that is wise, by attending to both virtue and profit, succeedeth in attaining to happiness. Do that during the day which may enable thee to pass the night in happiness; and do that during eight months of the year which may enable thee to pass the season of rains happily. Do that during youth which may ensure a happy old age; and do that during thy whole life here which may enable thee to live happily hereafter. The

wise applaud that food which hath been digested, that wife whose youth hath passed away, that hero who hath gained a battle, and that ascetic who hath been crowned with success. The hole that is sought to be stopped by wealth acquired wrongfully, remaineth unstopped, while new ones appear in other places. The preceptor controlleth them whose souls are under their own control ; the king controlleth persons that are wicked; while they that sin secretly have their controller in Yama the son of Vivaswat. The greatness of *Rishis*, of rivers, of river-banks, of high-souled men, and of woman's wickedness, cannot be conceived. O king, he that is devoted to the worship of the Brāhmanas, he that giveth away, he that behaveth righteously towards his relatives, and the Kshatriya that behaveth nobly, rule the earth for ever. He that is possessed of bravery, he that is possessed of learning, and he that knows how to protect others,—these three are always able to pluck flowers of gold from the earth. Of acts, those accomplished by intelligence are first; those accomplished by the arms, second; those by the thighs,* bad; and those by bearing weights upon the head, the very worst. Reposing the cares of thy kingdom on Duryodhana, on Cakuni, on the foolish Dusçāsana, and on Karna, how canst thou hope for prosperity? Possessed of every virtue, the Pāndavas, O bull of the Bharata race, depend on thee as their father. O, repose thou on them as thy sons!'"

SECTION XXXV.

"Vidura said,—'In this connection is cited the old story of the discourse between the son of Atri and the deities called *Sāddhyas* as heard by us. In days of old the deities known by the name of *Sāddhyas* questioned the highly wise and great *Rishi* of rigid vows (the son of *Atri*), while the latter was wandering in the guise of one depending on eleemosynary charity for livelihood. The *Sāddhyas* said,—We are, O great *Rishi*, deities known as *Sāddhyas*. Beholding thee, we are

* Secret means, as explained by Nilkantha.—*T*

unable to guess who thou art! It seemeth to us, however, that thou art possessed of intelligence and self-control in consequence of acquaintance with the scriptures. It, therefore, behoveth thee to discourse to us in magnanimous words fraught with learning!—The mendicant *Rishi* answered,—Ye immortals, it hath been heard by me that untying all the knots in the heart by the aid of tranquillity, and mastery over all the passions, and observance of true religion, one should regard both the agreeable and the disagreeable like his own self. One should not return the slanders or reproaches of others, for the pain only that is felt by him who beareth silently, consumeth the slanderer; and he that beareth, succeedeth also in appropriating the virtues of the slanderer. Indulge not in slanders and reproaches. Do not humiliate and insult others. Quarrel not with friends. Abstain from companionship with those that are vile and low. Be not arrogant and ignoble in conduct. Avoid words that are harsh and fraught with anger. Harsh words burn and scorch the very vitals, bones, heart, and sources of life, of men. Therefore, he that is virtuous, should always abstain from harsh and angry words. That worst of men, of harsh and wrathful speech, who pierceth the vitals of others with wordy thorns, beareth hell in his tongue, and should ever be regarded as a dispenser of misery to men. The man that is wise, pierced by another's wordy arrows, sharp-pointed and blazing like fire or the sun, should, even if deeply wounded and burning with pain, bear them patiently, remembering that the slanderer's merits become his. He that waiteth upon one that is good or upon one that is wicked, upon one that is possessed of ascetic merit or upon one that is a thief, soon taketh his color from that companion of his, like a cloth from the dye in which it is soaked. The very gods desire his company who, stung with reproach, returneth it not himself nor causeth others to return it, or who, struck himself, doth not himself return the blow nor causeth others to do it, and who wisheth not the slightest injury to him that injureth him. Silence, it is said, is better than speech; if speak you must, then it is better to say the truth; if truth is to be said, it is better to say what is agreeable: and if what is agreeable is to

be said, then it is better to say what is consistent with morality. A man becometh exactly like him with whom he liveth, or like him whom he regardeth, or like that which he wisheth to be. One is freed from those things from which one abstaineth, and if one abstaineth from everything, he hath not to bear even the least misery. Such a man neither vanquisheth others nor is vanquished by others. He never injureth nor opposeth others. He is unmoved by praise or blame. He neither grieveth nor joyeth. That man is regarded as the first of his species who wisheth for the prosperity of all and never setteth his heart on the misery of others, who is truthful in speech, humble in behaviour, and hath all his passions under control. That man is regarded as middling who never consoleth others by saying what is not true ; who giveth having promised ; and who keepeth an eye over the weaknesses of others. These, however, are the indications of a bad man, *viz*, incapacity to be controlled, liability to be afflicted by dangers, openness to give way to wrath, ungratefulness, inability to become another's friend, and wickedness of heart. He also is the worst of men who is dissatisfied with any good that may come to him from others, who is suspicious of his own self, and who driveth away from himself all his (true) friends. He that desireth prosperity to himself should wait upon them that are good, and at times upon them that are indifferent, but never upon them that are bad. He that is wicked earneth wealth, it is true, by putting forth his strength, by constant effort, by intelligence, and by prowess ; but he can never win honest fame, nor can he acquire the virtues and deportment of families that are high (in any of which he may be born).'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'The gods, they that regard both virtue and profit without swerving from either, and they that are possessed of great learning, expres a liking for high families. I ask thee, O Vidura, this question,—what are those families that are called high ?'

"Vidura said,—'Asceticism, self-restraint, the *Vedas*, knowledge, sacrifices, pure marriages, and gifts of food,—those families in which *these* seven exist or are practised duly, are

regarded as high. Theirs are high families who deviate not from the right course, whose deceased ancestors are never pained (by witnessing the wrong-doing of their descendants), who cheerfully practise all the virtues, who desire to enhance the pure fame of the line in which they are born, and who avoid every kind of falsehood. Families that are high fall off and become low owing to the absence of sacrifices, impure marriages, abandonment of the *Vedas*, and insults offered to Brāhmanas. High families fall off and become low owing to their members disregarding or speaking ill of Brāhmanas, or to the misappropriation, O Bhārata, of what had been deposited with them by others. Those families that are possessed of members, wealth, and kine, are not regarded as families if they be wanting in good manners and conduct, while families wanting in wealth but distinguished by manners and good conduct are regarded as such and win great reputation. Therefore, should good manners and conduct be cherished with care, for, as regards wealth, it cometh or goeth. He that is wanting in wealth is not really wanting, but he that is wanting in manners and conduct is really wanting. Those families that abound in kine and other cattle and the produce of the field, are not really worthy of regard and fame if they be wanting in manners and conduct. Let none in our race be a fomenter of quarrels, none serve a king as minister, none steal the wealth of others, none provoke intestine dissensions, none be deceitful or false in behaviour, and none eat before serving the *Rishis*, the gods, and guests. He in our race who slayeth Brāhmanas, or entertaineth feelings of aversion towards them, or impedeth or otherwise injureth agriculture, doth not deserve to mix with us. Straw (for a seat), ground (for sitting upon), water (to wash the feet and face), and, fourthly, sweet words,—these are never wanting in the houses of the good. Virtuous men devoted to the practice of righteous acts, when desirous of entertaining (guests), have these things ready for being offered with reverence. As the *Syandana** tree, O king, though thin, is competent to bear weights which timbers of other trees

---

* *Dolbergia ougeinensis.—T.*

(much thicker) cannot, so they that belong to high families are always able to bear the weight of great cares which ordinary men cannot. He is no friend whose anger inspireth fear, or who is to be waited upon fearfully. He, however, on whom one can repose confidence as on a father, is a true friend. Other friendships are nominal connections. He that beareth himself as a friend, even though unconnected by birth or blood, is a true friend, a real refuge, and a protector. He whose heart is unsteady, or who doth not wait upon the aged, or who is of a restless disposition, cannot make friends. Success (in the attainment of objects) forsaketh the person whose heart is unsteady, or who hath no control over his mind; or who is a slave of his senses, like swans forsaking a tank whose waters have dried up. They that are of weak minds suddenly give way to anger and are gratified without cause, even like clouds that are so inconstant. The very birds of prey abstain from touching the dead bodies of those who, having been served and benefited by friends, show ingratitude to the latter. Beest thou poor or beest thou rich, thou shouldst worship thy friends. Until also some service is asked, the sincerity or otherwise of friends cannot be known. Sorrow killeth beauty; sorrow killeth strength; sorrow killeth the understanding; and sorrow bringeth on disease. Grief, instead of helping the acquisition of its object, drieth up the body, and maketh one's foes glad. Therefore, do not yield to grief. Men repeatedly die and are reborn; repeatedly wither and grow; repeatedly ask and are asked; repeatedly lament and are lamented. Happiness and misery, plenty and want, gain and loss, life and death, are shared by all in due order. Therefore, he that is self-controlled should neither joy nor repine. The six senses are always restless. Through those amongst them that predominate, one's understanding escapeth in proportion to the strength they assume, like water from a pot through its holes.'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'King Yudhishthira who is like a flame of fire, has been deceived by me. He will surely exterminate in battle all my wicked sons! Everything, therefore, seems to me to be fraught with danger, and my mind is

full of anxiety. O thou of great intelligence, tell me such words as may dispell my anxiety!'

"Vidura said,—'O sinless one, in nothing else than knowledge and asceticism, in nothing else than restraining the senses, in nothing else than complete abandonment of avarice, do I see thy good! Fear is dispelled by self-knowledge; by asceticism one winneth what is great and valuable; by waiting upon superiors learning is acquired; and peace is gained by self-restraint. They that desire salvation without having acquired the merit attainable by gifts, or that which is attainable by practising the ritual of the *Vedas*, sojourn through life, freed from anger and aversion. The happiness that may be derived from a judicious course of study, from a battle fought virtuously, from ascetic austerities performed rigidly, always increaseth at the end. They that are no longer in peace with their relatives, obtain no sleep even if they have recourse to well-made beds. Nor do they, O king, derive any pleasure from women or the laudatory hymns of bards and eulogists. Such persons can never practise virtue. Happiness can never be theirs in this world. Honors can never be theirs, and peace hath no charms for them. Counsels that are for their benefit please them not. They never acquire what they have not, nor succeed in retaining what they have. O king, there is no other end for such men save destruction. As milk is possible in kine, asceticism in Brāhmanas, and inconstancy in women, so fear is possible from relatives. Numerous thin threads of equal length, collected together, are competent to bear, from strength of numbers, the constant rolling of the shuttle-cock over them. The case is even so with relatives that are good. O bull of the Bharatā race, separated from one another, burning brands produce only smoke; but brought together they blaze forth into a powerful flame. The case is even so, O Dhritarāshtra, with relatives. They, O Dhritarāshtra, who tyrannise over Brāhmanas, women, relatives, and kine, soon fall off their stalks like fruits that are ripe. A tree that stands singly, though gigantic and strong and deep-rooted, hath its trunk soon smashed and twisted by a mighty wind. Those trees, however, that stand erect, growing close together, are com-

petent to resist winds more violent still, owing to mutual dependence. Thus he that is single, however endowed with all the virtues, is regarded by foes as capable of being vanquished like an isolated tree by the wind. Relatives again, in conseqence of mutual dependence and mutual aid, grow together, like lotus stalks in a lake. These must never be slain, *viz*, Brāhmanas, kine, relatives, children, women, those whose food is eaten, and those also that yeild asking for protection. O king, without wealth no good quality can show itself in a person. If, however, thou art in health, thou canst achieve thy good, for he is dead who is unhealthy and ill. O king, anger is a kind of bitter, pungent, acrid, and hot drink, painful in its consequences. It is a kind of headache not born of any physical illness. They that are unwise can never swallow it up. Do thou, O king, swallow it up and obtain peace! They that are tortured by disease have no liking for enjoyments, nor do they desire any happiness from wealth. The sick, however, filled with sorrow, know not what happiness is or what the enjoyments of wealth are. Beholding Draupadi won at dice, I told thee before, O king, these words,—*They that are honest avoid deceit in play. Therefore, stop Duryodhana!*—Thou didst not, however, act according to my words. That is not strength which is opposed to softness. On the other hand, strength mixed with softness constitutes true policy which should ever be pursued. That prosperity which is dependent on crookedness alone is destined to be destroyed. That prosperity, however, which depends on both strength and softness, descends to sons and grandsons intact. Let, therefore, thy sons cherish the Pāndavas, and the Pāndavas also cherish thy sons. O king, let the Kurus and the Pāndavas, both having same friends and same foes, live together in happiness and prosperity! Thou art, today, O king, the refuge of the sons of Kuru. Indeed, the race of Kuru, O Ājamida, is dependent on thee! O sire, preserving thy fame unsullied, cherish thou the children of Prithā afflicted as they are with the sufferings of exile! O descendant of Kuru, make peace with the sons of Pāndu! Let not thy foes discover thy holes! They all, O god among men, are

devoted to truth ! O king of men, withdraw Duryodhana from his ways !' "

SECTION XXXVI.

" Vidura said,—'O son of Vichitravirya, Manu the son of the Self-create, hath, O king, spoken of the following seven and ten kinds of men as those that strike empty space with their fists, or seek to bend the vapoury bow of Indra in the sky, or desire to catch the intangible rays of the sun. These seven and ten kinds of foolish men are as follows :—he who seeketh to control a person that is incapable of being controlled ; he who is content with small gains ; he who humbly pays court to enemies ; he who seeks to restrain women ; he who asketh him for gifts who should never be asked ; he who boasteth, having done anything ; he who, born in a high family, perpetrateth an improper deed ; he who being weak always wageth hostilities with one that is powerful ; he who talketh to a person listening scoffingly ; he who desireth to have that which is unattainable ; he who, being a father-in-law, jesteth with his daughter-in-law ; he who boasteth, having his alarms dispelled by his daughter-in-law ; he who scattereth his own seeds in another's field ; he who speaketh ill of his own wife ; he who having received anything from another sayeth that he doth not remember it ; he who, having given away anything in words in holy places, boasteth at home when asked to make good his words ;* and he who striveth to prove the truth of what is false. The messengers of Yama, with nooses in hand, drag those persons to hell. One should behave towards another just as that other behaveth towards him. Even this is consistent with policy. One should behave deceitfully towards him that behaveth deceitfully, and honestly towards him that is honest in his behaviour. Old age killeth beauty ; patience,

---

* Hindoo pilgrims freqently give away lands and money at holy shines which gifts, however, are not completed till the givers return home and execute deeds in the case of land and acterally pay over in the case of morables.—*T.*

hope; death, life; the practice of virtue, worldly enoyments; lust, modesty; companionship with the wicked, good behaviour; anger, prosperity; and pride, everything.'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Man hath been spoken of in all the *Vedas* as having hundred years for the period of his life. For what reason then, do not all men attain the alloted period?'

"Vidura said,—'Excess of pride, excess in speech, excess in eating, anger, the desire of enjoyment, and intestine dissensions,—these, O king, are six sharp swords that cut off the period of life allotted to creatures. It is these which kill men, and not death. Knowing this, blessed be thou!

"'He who appropriates to himself the wife of one who hath confided in him, he who violates the bed of his preceptor, that Brāhmana, O Bhārata, who becomes the husband of a *Çudra* woman or drinks wines, he who commands Brāhmanas or becometh their master or taketh away the lands that support them, and he who taketh the lives of those who yeild asking for protection, are all guilty of the sin of slaying Brāhmanas. The *Vedas* declare that contact with these require expiation. He that accepts the teachings of the wise, he that is acquainted with the rules of morality, he that is liberal, he that eateth having first dedicated the food to the gods and *Pitris*, he that envieth none, he that is incapable of doing anything that injureth others, he that is grateful, truthful, humble, and learned, succeedeth in attaining to heaven.

"'They are abundant, O king, that can always speak agreeable words. The speaker, however, is rare, as also the hearer, of words that are disagreeable but medicinal. That man who, without regarding what is agreeable or disagreeable to his master but keeping virtue alone in view, sayeth what is unpalatable but medicinal, truly addeth to the strength of the king. For the sake of the family a member may be sacrificed; for the sake of the village, a family may be sacrificed; for the sake of a kingdom a village may be sacrificed; and for the sake of one's soul, the whole earth may be sacrificed. One should protect his wealth in view of the calamities that may overtake him; by his wealth one should protect his wives and by

both his wealth and wives one should protect his own self. From very olden times it hath been seen that gambling provoketh quarrels. Therefore, he that is wise, should not resort to it even in jest. O son of Pratipa, at the time of that gambling match I told thee, O king,—*This is not proper.* But, O son of Vichitravirya, like medcine to a sick man, those words of mine were not agreeable to thee! O king, thou desirest to vanquish the sons of Pāndu who are even as peacocks of variegated plumage by means of thy sons who are all as crows! Forsaking lions thou art for protecting jackals! O king, when the time cometh thou wilt have to grieve for all this. That master, O sire, who doth not give vent to his displeasure with devoted servants zealously pursuing his good, enlisteth the confidence of his servants. In fact, the latter adhere to him even in distress. By confiscating the grants to one's servants or stoping their pay, one should not seek to amass wealth, for even affectionate counsellors, deprived of their means of life and enjoyment, turn against him and leave him (in distress). Reflecting first on all intended acts and adjusting the wages and allowances of servants with his income and expenditure, a king should make proper alliances, for there is nothing that cannot be accomplished by alliances. That officer who fully understanding the intentions of his royal master dischargeth all duties with alacrity, and who respectable himself and devoted to his master always telleth what is for his master's good, and who is fully acquainted with the extent of his own might and with that also of those against whom he may be employed, should be regarded by the king as his second self. That servant, however, who commanded (by his master) disregardeth the latter's injunctions, and who enjoined to do anything refuseth to submit, proud as he is of his own intelligence and given to arguing against his master, should be got rid of without the least delay. Men of learning say that a servant should be endued with these eight qualities, *viz*, absence of pride, ability, absence of procrastination, kindness, cleanliness, incorruptibility, birth in a family free from the taint of disease, and weightiness of speech. No man should

confidently enter an enemy's house after dusk even with notice. One should not at night lurk in the yard of another's premises, nor should one seek to enjoy a woman to whom the king himself might make love. Never set thyself against the conclusion to which a person hath arrived who keepeth low company and who is in the habit of consulting all he meeteth. Never tell him,—*I do not believe thee*,—but assigning some reason send him away on a pretext. A king who is exceedingly merciful, a woman of lewd character, the servant of a king, a son, a brother, a widow having an infant son, one serving in the army, and one that hath suffered great losses, should never engage in pecuniary transactions of lending or borrowing. These eight qualities shed a lustre on men, *viz*, wisdom, high lineage, acquaintance with scriptures, self-restraint, prowess, moderation in speech, gift to the extent of one's power, and gratefulness. These high qualities, O sire, are necessarily brought together by one only endowment. When the king favors a person, that incident (of royal favor) bringeth on all the others and holdeth them together.* He that performeth ablutions winneth these ten, *viz*, strength, beauty, a clear voice, capacity to utter all the alphabetical sounds, delicacy of touch, fineness of scent, cleanliness, gracefulness, delicacy of limbs, and beautiful women. He that eateth sparingly winneth these six, *viz*, health, long life, and ease; his progeny also becometh healthy, and nobody reproacheth him with gluttony. One should not give shelter to these in his house, *viz*, one that always acteth improperly, one that eateth much, one that is hated by all, one that is exceedingly deceitful, one that is cruel, one that is ignorant of the proprieties of time and place, and one that dresseth indecently. A person, however distressed, should never solicit for alms a miser, or one that speaketh ill of others, or one that is unacquainted with the scriptures, or a dweller in the woods, or one that is cunning, or one that

* The sense seem to be that a royal favorite is necessarily invested with the eight qualities named, and the latter, in the case of such a person, instead of king natural are only accidental attributes. Nilkantha takes it to be a covert allusion to the impropriety of trusting Karna.—*T.*

doth not regard persons worthy of regard, or one that is cruel, or one that habitually quarrels with others, or one that is ungrateful. A person should never wait upon these six worst of men, *viz*, one that is a *foe*,* one that always errs, one that is wedded to falsehood, one that is wanting in devotion to the gods, one that is without affection, and one that always regards himself competent to do everything. One's purposes depend (for their success) on means; and means are dependent again on the nature of the purposes (sought to be accomplished by them). They are intimately connected with each other so that success depends on both. Begetting sons and rendering them independent by making some provision for them, and bestowing maiden daughters on eligible persons, one should retire to the woods, and desire to live as a *Muni*. One should, for obtaining the favors of the Supreme Being, do that which is for the good of all creatures as also for his own happiness, for it is this which is the root of the success of all one's objects. What anxiety hath he for a livelihood that hath intelligence, energy, prowess, strength, alacrity, and perseverance?

" 'Behold what the evils are of a rupture with the Pāndavas which would sadden the very gods with Cakra! These are, first, enmity between them that are all thy sons; secondly, a life of continued anxiety; thirdly, the loss of the fair fame of the Kurus; and lastly, the joy of those that are thy enemies! The wrath of Bhishma, of thine, O thou of the splendour of Indra, of Drona, and of king Yudhishthira, will consume the whole world like a comet of large proportions falling transversely on the earth! Thy century of sons and Karna and the sons of Pāndu can together rule the vast earth with her belt of seas. O king, the Dhārtarāshtras constitute a forest of which the Pāndavas are, I think, tigers. O, do not cut down that forest with its tigers! O, let not the

* *Sānklishta-karmānam* is explained by Nilkantha to mean *foe*. There are *Six* kinds of foes, *viz*, he that setteth fire to one's dwelling, he that giveth poison, he that appoaching another with evil intent weapon in hand, he that robbeth one of one's wealth, he that robbeth one of ones friend, and lastly he that ravisheth one' wife.—*T*.

tigers be dri ven from that forest! There can be no forest without tigers, and no tigers without a forest. The forest shelters the tigers and the tigers gaurd the forest!

"'They that are sinful never seek so much to ascertain the good qualities of others as to ascertain their faults. He that desires the highest success in all matters connected with worldly profit, should from the very beginning practise virtue, for true profit is never separated from heaven. He whose soul hath been dissociated from sin and firmly fixed on virtue, hath understood all things in their natural and adventitious states. He that followeth virtue, profit, and desire, in proper seasons, obtaineth, both here and hereafter, a combination of all three. He that restraineth the force of both anger and joy, and never, O king, loseth his senses under calamities, winneth prosperity. Listen to me, O king! Men are said to have *five* different kinds of strength. Of these, the strength of arms is regarded to be of the most inferior kind. Blessed be thou, the acquisition of good counsellors is regarded as the second kind of strength. The wise have said that the acquisition of wealth is the third kind of strength. The strength of birth, O king, which one naturally acquireth from one's sires and grandsires, is regarded as the fourth kind of strength. That, however, O Bhārata, by which all these are won, and which is the foremost of all kinds of strength, is called the strength of the intellect. Having provoked the hostitily of a person who is capable of inflicting great injury on a fellow creature, one should not gather assurance from the thought that one liveth at a distance from the other. Who that is wise can place his trust on women, kings, serpents, his own master, enemies, enjoyments, and period of life? There are no physicians nor medicines for him that hath been struck by the arrow of wisdom. In the case of such a person neither the *mantras* of *homa*, nor auspicious ceremonies, nor the *mantras* of the *Atharva Veda*, nor any of the antidotes of poison, are of any efficacy. Serpents, fire, lions, and consanguineous relatives,—none of these, O Bhārata, should be disregarded by a man, for all these are possessed of great power. Fire is a thing of great energy in this world. It lurketh in wood,

and never consumeth it till it is ignited by others. That very fire, when brought out by friction, consumeth by its energy not only the wood in which it lurked but also an entire forest and many other things. Men of high lineage are just like fire in energy. Endued with forgiveness, they betray no outward symptoms of wrath and are quiet like fire in wood. Thou, O king, with thy sons, art possessed of the virtue of creepers, and the sons of Pāndu are regarded as *Çāla* trees. A creeper never groweth unless there is a large tree to twine round. O king, O son of Ambikā, thy son is as a forest. O sire, know that the Pāndavas are the lions of that forest. Without its lions the forest is doomed to destruction, and lions also are doomed to destruction without the forest (to shelter them).

SECTION XXXVII.

Vidura said,—'The heart of a young man, when an aged and venerable person cometh to his house (as a guest), soareth aloft. By advancing forward and saluting him, he getteth it back.* He that is self-controlled, first offering a seat, and bringing water and causing his guest's feet to be washed and making the usual enquiries of welcome, should then speak of his own affairs, and taking everything into consideration, offer him food. The wise have said that that man liveth in vain in whose dwelling a Brāhmana conversant with *mantras* doth not accept water, honey and curds, and kine, from fear of being unable to appropriate them or from the miserliness and unwillingness with which the gifts are made. A physician, a maker of arrows, one that hath given up the vow of *Brahmacharya* before it is complete, a thief, a crooked-minded man, a Brāhmana that drinks, one that causeth miscarriage, one that liveth by serving in the army, and one that selleth the *Vedas*, when arrived as a guest, however undeserving he may be of even the offer of water, should be regarded (by a house-holder) as

---

* The sense seems to be that the heart of a young householder on such occasions is in a flutter. He obtaineth no peace till he is able to accord a proper reception to the venerable guest.—*T.*

exceedingly dear. A Brāhmana should never be a seller of salt, of cooked food, curds, milk, honey, oil, clarified butter, sessame, meat, fruits, roots, potherbs, dyed cloths, all kinds of perfumery, and treacle. He that never giveth way to anger, he that regardeth pieces of mud, stone, and gold as all of the same value, he that is superior to grief, he that is no longer in need of friendship and quarrels, he that disregardeth both praise and blame, and he that standeth aloof from both what is agreeable and disagreeable like one perfectly withdrawn from the world, is a real *Yogin* of the *Bhikshu* order. That virtuous ascetic liveth on rice growing wild, or roots, or potherbs, who hath his soul under control, who carefully keepeth his fire for worship, and dwelling in the woods is always regardful of guests, is, indeed, the foremost of his brotherhood. Having wronged an intelligent person, one should never gather assurance from the fact that one liveth at a distance from the person wronged. Long are the arms which intelligent persons have by which they can return wrongs for wrongs done to them. One should never put trust on him who should not be trusted, nor put too much trust on him who should be trusted, for the danger that ariseth from one's having reposed trust on another cutteth off one's very roots. One should renounce envy, protect one's wives, give to others what is their due, and be agreeable in speech. One should be sweet-tongued and pleasant in his address as regards one's wives, but should never be their slave. It hath been said that wives that are highly blessed and virtuous, worthy of worship and the ornaments of their homes, are really embodiments of domestic prosperity. They should, therefore, be protected particularly. One should devolve the overlooking of his inner apartments on his father; of the kitchen, on his mother; of the kine, on somebody he looks upon as his own self; but as regards agriculture, one should overlook it himself. One should look after guests of the trader caste through his servants, and those of the Brāhmana caste through his sons. Fire hath its origin in water; Kshatriyas in Brāhmanas; and iron in stone. The energy of these (*i. e.* fire, Kshatriyas, and iron,) can affect all things but is neutralised

as soon as the things come in contact with their progenitors. Fire lieth concealed in wood without showing itself externally. Good and forgiving men born of high families and endued with fiery energy do not betray any outward symptoms of what is within them. That king whose counsels cannot be known by either outsiders or those about him, but who knoweth the counsels of others through his spies, enjoyeth his prosperity long. One should never speak of what one intends to do. Let anything thou doest in respect of virtue, profit, and desire, be not known till it is done. Let counsels be not divulged. Ascending on the mountain-top or on the terrace of a palace, or proceeding to a wilderness bald of trees and plants, one should, in secresy, mature his counsels. O Bhārata, neither a friend who is without learning, nor a learned friend who hath no control over his senses, deserveth to be a repositary of state secrets. O king, never make one thy minister without examining him well, for a king's finances and the keeping of his counsels both depend on his minister. That king is the foremost of rulers whose ministers know his acts in respect of virtue, profit, and desire, only after they are done. The king whose counsels are kept close, without doubt commandeth success. He that from ignorance committeth acts that are censurable, loseth his very life in consequence of the untoward results of those acts. The doing of acts that are praise-worthy is always attended with ease. Omission to do such acts leadeth to repentance. As a Brāhmana without having studied the *Vedas* is not fit to officiate at a *Çrāddha* (in honor of the *Pitris*), so he that hath not heard of the six (means for protecting a kingdom) deserveth not to take part in political deliberations. O king, he that hath an eye upon increase, decrease, and surplus, he that is conversant with the six means and knoweth also his own self, he whose conduct is always applauded, bringeth the whole earth under subjection to himself. He whose anger and joy are productive of consequences, he who overlooketh personally what should be done, he who hath his treasury under his own control, bringeth the whole earth under subjection to himself. The king should be content with the name he wins and the

umbrella that is held over his head. He should divide the wealth of the kingdom among those that serve him. Alone he should not appropriate everything. A Brāhmana knoweth a Brāhmana, the husband understandeth the wife, the king knoweth the minister, and monarchs know monarchs. A foe that deserveth death, when brought under subjection, should never be set free. If one be weak, one should pay court to one's foe that is stronger even if the latter deserve death ; but one should kill that foe as soon as one commandeth sufficient strength, for, if not killed, dangers soon arise from him. One should, with an effort, control his wrath against the gods, kings, Brāhmanas, old men, children, and those that are helpless. He that is wise should avoid unprofitable quarrels such as fools only engage in. By this one winneth great fame in this world and avoideth misery and unhappiness. People never desire him for a master whose grace is fruitless and whose wrath goes for nothing, like women never desiring him for a husband who is a eunuch. Intelligence doth not exist for the acquisition of wealth, nor is idleness the cause of adversity; the man of wisdom only knoweth, and not others, the cause of the diversities of condition in this world. The fool, O Bhārata, always disregardeth those that are eminent in years, conduct, and knowledge, in intelligence, wealth, and lineage. Calamities soon come upon them that are of wicked disposition, devoid of wisdom, envious, or sinful, foul-tongued, and wrathful. Absence of deceitfulness, gift, observance of the established rules of intercourse, and speech well-controlled, bring all creatures under subjection. He that is without deceitfulness, he that is active, grateful, intelligent, and guileless, even if his treasury be empty, obtaineth friends, counsellors, and servants. Intelligence, tranquillity of mind, self-control, purity, absence of harsh speech, and unwillingness to do anything disagreeable to friends,—these seven are regarded as the fuel of prosperity's flame. That wretch who doth not give to others their due, who is of wicked soul, who is ungrateful, and shameless, should, O king, be avoided. The guilty person who provoketh another about him that is innocent, cannot sleep peacefully at night like a person

passing the night with a snake in the same room. They, O Bhārata, who upon being angry endanger one's possessions and means of acquisition, should always be propitiated like the very gods. Those objects that depend upon women, careless persons, men that have fallen away from the duties of their caste, and those that are wicked in disposition, are all doubtful of success. They sink helplessly, O king, like a raft made of stone, who have a woman, a deceitful person, or a child, for their guide. They that are competent in the general principles of work though not in particular kinds of work, are regarded by me as learned and wise, for particular kinds of work are subsidiary.* That man who is highly spoken of by swindlers, mimes, and women of ill fame, is more dead than alive. Forsaking those mighty bowmen of immeasurable energy, *viz*, the sons of Pāndu, thou hast, O Bhārata, devolved on Duryodhana, the cares of a mighty empire. Thou shalt, therefore, soon see that swelling affluence fall off like king Vali fallen off from the three worlds!' "

SECTION XXXVIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Man is not the disposer of either his prosperity or adversity. He is like a wooden doll moved by strings. Indeed, the Creator hath made man subject to Destiny. Go on telling me, I am attentive to what thou sayest!'

"Vidura said,—'O Bhārata, by speaking words out of season even Vrihaspati himself incurreth reproach and the charge of ignorance. One becometh agreeable by gift, another by sweet words, a third by the force of incantations and drugs. He, howerer, that is naturally agreeable always remaineth so. He that is hated by another is never regarded by that other

---

* The sense seems to be rather obscure. What Vidura, I think, means is this :—He that is versed in the art of war is certainly a warrior, although he may not know how to fight in a hilly country. Fighting in a hilly country is only *particular* mode of warfare. The general knowledge of the warrior would (Vidura thinks) help him very soon to master the particular mode.—*T.*

as honest or intelligent or wise. One attributeth everything good to him one loveth and everything evil to him one hateth. O king, as soon as Duryodhana was born I told thee,—*Thou shouldst abandon this one son, for by abandoning him thou wouldst secure the prosperity of thy century of sons, and by keeping him, destruction would overtake thy hundred sons!* That gain should never be regarded highly which leadeth to loss. On the other hand, that loss even should be regarded highly which would bring on gain. That is no loss, O king, which bringeth on gain. That, however, should be reckoned as loss which is certain to bring about greater losses still. Some become eminent in consequence of good qualities; others become so in consequence of wealth. Avoid them, O Dhritarāshtra, that are eminent in wealth but destitute of good qualities!'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'All that thou sayest is approved by the wise and is for my future good! I dare not, however, abandon my son. It is well-known that where there is righteousness there is victory!'

"Vidura said,—'He that is graced with every virtue and is endued with humility, is never indifferent to even the minutest sufferings of living creatures. They, however, that are ever employed in speaking ill of others, always strive with activity in quarreling with one another and in all matters calculated to give pain to others. There is sin in accepting gifts from, and danger in making gifts to, them whose very sight is inauspicious and whose companionship is fraught with danger. They that are quarrelsome, covetous, shameless, deceitful, are known as unrighteous, and their companionship should always be avoided. One should also avoid those men that are endued with similar faults of a grave nature. When the occasion that caused the friendship is over, the friendship of those that are low, the beneficial results of that connection, and the happiness also derivable from it, all come to an end. They then strive to speak ill of their (late) friend and endeavour to inflict loss on him, and if the loss they sustain be even very small, for all that, they, from want of self-control, fail to enjoy peace. He that is learned, examining everything skilfully and reflecting well, should, from a distance, avoid the friendship of vile and

wicked-minded persons such as these. He that succoureth his poor and wretched and helpless relatives, obtaining children and animals, enjoyeth prosperity that knoweth no end. They that desire their own benefit should always succour their relatives. By every means, therefore, O king, do thou seek the growth of thy race. Prosperity will be thine, O monarch, if thou behavest well towards all thy relatives! Even relatives that are destitute of good qualities should be protected, O bull of the Bharata race! How much more, therefore, should they be protected that are endued with every virtue and are humbly expectant of thy favors? Favor thou the heroic sons of Pāndu, O monarch, and let a few villages be assigned to them for their maintenance! By acting thus, O king, fame will be thine in this world! Thou art old; thou shouldst, therefore, control thy sons! I should say what is for thy good. Know me as one that wishes well to thee! He that desireth his own good should never quarrel, O sire, with his relatives! O bull of the Bharata race, happiness should ever be enjoyed with one's relatives and not without them! To eat with one another, to talk with one another, and to love one another, are what relatives should always do. They should never quarrel. In this world it is relatives that rescue and relatives that sink (relatives). Those amongst them that are righteous rescue, while those that are unrighteous sink (their brethren). O king, be thou O giver of honors, righteous in thy conduct towards the sons of Pāndu. Surrounded by them thou wouldst be unconquerable by thy foes. If a relative shrinks in the presence of a prosperous relative like a deer at sight of a hunter armed with arrows, then the prosperous relative hath to take upon himself all the sins of the other. O best of men, repentance will be thine (for this thy inaction at present) when in future thou wilt hear of the death of either the Pāndavas or thy sons! O, think of all this! When life itself is unstable, one should in th every beginning avoid that act in consequence of which one would have to indulge in regrets having entered the chamber of woe.—It is not true that no person has been guilty of an offence except Bhārgava. It is seen, however, that a just notion of

consequences is present in all persons of intelligence. Thou art an aged scion of Kuru's race. If Duryodhana inflicted these wrongs on the sons of Pāndu, it is thy duty, O king of men, to undo them all! Reinstating them in their position, thou wilt, in this world, be cleansed of all thy sins and be, O king of men, an object of worship with even those that have their souls under control! Reflecting on the well-spoken words of the wise according to their consequences, he that engageth in acts never loseth fame. The knowledge imparted by even men of learning and skill is imperfect, for that which is sought to be inculcated is ill understood, or, if understood, is not accomplished in practice. That learned person who never doth an act the consequences of which are sin and misery, always groweth (in prosperity). The person, however, of wicked soul who from folly pursueth his sinful course commenced before, falleth into a slough of deep mire. He that is wise should ever keep in view the (following) six conduits by which counsels become divulged, and he that desireth success and a long dynasty should ever guard himself from those six. They are intoxication, sleep, inattention to spies set over one by another, one's own demeanour as dependent on the workings of one's own heart, confidence reposed on a wicked counsellor, and unskilful envoys. Knowing these six doors (through which counsels are divulged), he that keepeth them shut while pursuing the attainment of virtue, profit, and desire, succeedeth in standing over the heads of his foes. Without an acquaintance with the scriptures and without waiting upon the old, neither virtue nor profit can be known (or won) by persons blessed even with the intelligence of Vrihaspati. A thing is lost if cast into the sea; words are lost if addressed to one that listens not; the scriptures are lost on one that hath not his soul under control; and a libation of clarified butter is lost if poured over the ashes left by a fire that is extinguished. He that is endued with intelligence maketh friendships with those that are wise, having first examined by the aid of his intelligence, repeatedly searching by his understanding, and using his ears, eyes, and judgment. Humility killeth obloquy; prowess removeth failure; forgiveness always con-

quereth anger ; and auspicious rites destroy all indications of evil. One's lineage, O king, is tested by his objects of enjoyment, place of birth, house, behaviour, food, and dress. When an object of enjoyment is available, even he that hath attained emancipation is not unwilling to enjoy it: what again need be said of him that is yet wedded to desire ? A king should cherish a counsellor that worshippeth persons of wisdom, is endued with learning, virtue, agreeable appearance, friends, sweet speech, and a good heart. Whether of low or high birth, he who doth not transgress the rules of polite intercourse, who hath an eye on virtue, who is endued with humility and modesty, is superior to a hundred persons of high birth. The friendship of those two persons never cooleth whose hearts, secret pursuits, and pleasures, and acquirements, accord in every respect. He that is intelligent should avoid an ignorant person of wicked soul like a pit whose mouth is covered with grass, for friendship with such a person can never last. The man of wisdom should never contract friendship with those that are proud, ignorant, fierce, rash, and fallen off from righteousness. He that is grateful, virtuous, truthful, large-hearted, and devoted, he that hath his senses under control, preserveth his dignity, and never forsaketh a friend, should be desired for a friend. The withdrawal of the senses from their respective objects is equivalent to death itself.* Their excessive indulgence again would ruin the very gods. Humility, love of all creatures, forgiveness, and respect for friends, —these, the learned have said, lengthen life. He who with a firm resolution striveth to accomplish by a virtuous policy purpose that have once been frustrated, is said to possess real manhood. That man attaineth all his objects who is conversant with remedies to be applied in the future, who is firmly resolved in the present, and who could anticipate in the past how an act begun would end. That which a man pursueth in word, deed, and thought, winneth him for its own ; therefore, one should always seek that which is for his good. Effort after securing what is good, the proprieties

* *i. e. not* ordinarily desired, and difficult of practice.—*T.*

of time, place, and means, acquaintance with the scriptures, activity, straight-forwardness, and frequent meetings with those that are good,—these bring about prosperity. Perseverance is the root of prosperity, of gain, and of what is beneficial. The man that pursueth an object with perseverance and without giving it up in vexation, is really great, and enjoyeth happiness that is unending. O sire, there is nothing more conducive of happiness and nothing more proper for a man of power and energy as forgiveness in every place and at all times. He that is weak should forgive under all circumstances: He that is possessed of power should show fogiveness from motives of virtue. And he to whom the success or failure of his objects is the same, is naturally forgiving. That pleasure the pursuit of which doth not injure one's virtue and profit, should certainly be pursued to one's fill. One should not, however, act like a fool by giving free indulgence to his senses. Prosperity never resides in one who suffers himself to be tortured by grief, who is addicted to evil ways, who denies Godhead, who is idle, who hath not his senses under control, and who is divested of exertion. The man that is humble, and who from humility is modest, is regarded as weak and persecuted by persons of misdirected intelligence. Prosperity never approacheth from fear the person that is excessively liberal, that giveth away without measure, that is possessed of extraordinary bravery, that practiseth the most rigid vows, and that is very proud of his wisdom. Prosperity doth not reside in one that is highly accomplished, nor in one that is without any accomplishment. She doth not desire a combination of all the virtues nor is she pleased with the total absence of all virtues. Blind, like a mad cow, Prosperity resides with some one who is not remarkable. The fruits of the *Vedas* are ceremonies performed before the *(homa)* fire; the fruits of an acquaintance with the scriptures are goodness of disposition and conduct. The fruits of woman are the pleasures of intercourse and offspring; and the fruits of wealth are enjoyment and gift. He that performeth acts tending to secure his prosperity in the other world with wealth acquired sinfully, never reapeth the fruits of those acts in the other

world, in consequence of the sinfulness of the acquisitions (spent for the purpose). In the midst of deserts or deep woods or inaccessible fastnesses, amid all kinds of dangers and alarms, or in view of deadly weapons upraised for striking him, he that hath strength of mind entertaineth no fear. Exertion, self-control, skill, carefulnesss, steadiness, memory, and commencement of acts after mature deliberation,—know that these are root of prosperity. Austerities constitute the strength of ascetics ; the *Vedas* are the strength of those conversant with them ; in envy lieth the strength of the wicked; and in forgiveness, the strength of the virtuous. These eight, *viz*, water, roots, fruits, milk, clarified butter, (what is done at) the desire of a Brahmana, (or at) the command of a preceptor, and medicine, are not destructive of a vow. That which is antagonistic to one's own self, should never be applied in respect of another. Briefly, even this is virtue. Other kinds of virtue there are, but these proceed from caprice. Anger must be conquered by forgivenes; and the wicked must be conquered by honesty ; the miser must be conquered by liberality, and falsehood must be conquered by truth. One should not place trust on a woman, a swindler, an idle person, a coward, one that is fierce, one that boasts of his own power, a thief, an ungrateful person, and an athiest. Achievements, period of life, fame, and power—these four always expand in the case of him that respectfully saluteth his superiors and waiteth upon the old. Do not set thy heart after those objects which cannot be acquired except by very painful exertion or by sacrificing righteousness, or by bowing down to an enemy. A man without knowledge is to be pitied ; an act of intercourse that is not fruitful is to be pitied ; the people of a kingdom that are without food are to be pitied; and a kingdom without a king is to be pitied. The roads constitute the source of pain and weakness to embodied creatures ; the rains, of hills and mountains ; absence of enjoyment, of women ; and wordy arrows, of the heart. The scum of the *Vedas* is want of study ; of Brāhmanas, absence of vows ; of the Earth, the Vālhikas ;*

* They inhabited that province of the Punjab which is now called *Sindh*. They were an immoral race, very sinful in their conduct.—*T*.

of man, untruth; of the chaste woman, curiosity; of women, exile from home. The scum of gold is silver; of silver, tin; of tin, lead; and of lead, useless dregs. One cannot conquer sleep by lying down; women by desire; fire by fuel; and wine by drinking. His life is, indeed, crowned with success who hath controlled his friends by gifts, his foes in battle, and wife by food and drink. They who have thousands live. They who have hundreds also live. O Dhritarāshtra, forsake desire. There is none who cannot manage to live by some means or other! The paddy, wheat, gold, animals, and women there are on earth cannot all satiate even one person. Reflecting on this, they that are wise never grieve for want of universal dominion. O king, I again tell thee, adopt an equal behaviour towards thy children, *i. e.* towards the sons of Pāndu and thy own sons!'"

SECTION XXXIX.

"Vidura said,—'Worshipped by the good and abandoning pride that good man who pursueth his objects without outstepping the limits of his power, soon succeedeth in winning fame, for they that are good, when gratified with a person, are certainly competent to bestow happiness on him. He that forsaketh of his own accord even a great object owing to its being fraught with unrighteousness, liveth happily, casting off all woes, like a snake that hath cast off its slough. A victory gained by an untruh, deceitful conduct towards the king, and insincerity of intentions expressed before the preceptor,—these three are each equal to the sin of slaying a Brāhmana. Excessive envy, death, and boastfulness, are the causes of the destruction of prosperity. Carelessness in waiting upon the preceptor, haste, and boastfulness, are the three enemies of knowledge. Idleness, inattention, confusion of the intellect, restlessness, gatherings for killing time, haughtiness, pride, and covetousness,—these seven constitute, it is said, the faults of students in the pursuit of learning. How can they that desire pleasure have knowledge? Students, again, engaged in the pursuit of learning, cannot have pleasure. Votaries of

pleasure must give up knowledge, and votaries of knowledge must give up pleasure. Fire is never gratified with fuel (but can consume any measure thereof). The great ocean is never gratified with the rivers it receives (but can receive any number of them). Death is never gratified with even the entire body of living creatures (but can go on killing more). A beautiful woman is never gratified with any number of men (she may have). O king, hope killeth patience; *Yama* killeth growth; anger killeth prosperity; miserliness killeth fame; absence of tending killeth cattle; one angry Brāhmana destroyeth a whole kingdom. Let goats, brass, silver, honey, antidotes of poison,* birds, Brāhmanas versed in the *Vedas*, old relatives, and men of high birth sunk in poverty, be always present in thy house. O Bhārata, Manu hath said that goats, bulls, sandal, lyres, mirrors, honey, clarified butter, iron, copper, conch-shells, the stony-image of *Vishnu* with gold within,† and *gorochanā*,‡ should always be kept in one's house for the worship of the gods, Brāhmanas, and guests, for all these objects are auspicious. O sire, I would impart to thee another sacred lesson productive of great fruits and which is the highest of all teachings, *viz*, virtue should never be forsaken from desire, fear, or temptation, nay, not for the sake of life itself! Virtue is everlasting; pleasure and pain are transitory; life is, indeed, everlasting, but its particular phases are transitory. Forsaking those which are transitory, betake thyself to that which is everlasting, and let contentment be thine, for contentment is the highest of all acquisitions. Behold, illustrious and mighty kings, having ruled lands abounding with wealth and corn, have become the victims of the universal Destroyer, leaving behind their kingdoms and vast sources of enjoyment. The son brought up with anxious care, when

---

* Lit. drugs that suck up poison.—*T.*

† Globose pieces of black stone containing gold within. These abound in the river Gandak, and are hence are called *Gandakiçilâ*.—*T.*

‡ A bright yellow pigment prepared from the urine of the cow, or as some believe, from its dung, or, according to some, formed in its head. It is used as a dye.—*T.*

dead, is taken up and carried away by men (to the burning ground). With dishevelled hair and crying piteously they then cast the body into the funeral pyre as if it were a piece of wood. Others enjoy the deceased's wealth, while birds and fire feast on the elements of his body. With two only he goeth to the other world, *viz*, his merits and his sins which keep him company. Throwing away the body, O sire, relatives, friends, and sons retrace their steps, like birds abandoning trees without blossoms and fruits. The person cast into the funeral pyre is followed only by his own acts. Therefore should men, carefully and gradually, earn the merit of righteousness. In the world above this, and also in that below this, there are regions of great gloom and darkness. Know, O king, that those are regions where the senses of men are exceedingly afflicted. Oh, let not any of those places be thine! Carefully listening to these words, if thou canst act according to them, thou wilt obtain great fame in this world of men, and fear will not be thine here or hereafter! O Bhārata, the soul is spoken of as a river; religious merit constitutes its sacred baths; truth, its waters; self-control, its banks; kindness, its waves. He that is righteous purifieth himself by a bath therein, for the soul is sacred, and the absence of desire is the highest merit. O king, life is a river whose waters are the five senses, and whose crocodiles and sharks are desire and anger. Making self-control thy boat, cross thou its eddies which are represented by reapeated births. Worshipping and gratifying friends that are eminent in wisdom, virtue, learning, and years, he that asketh their advice about what he should do and should not do, is never misled. One should restrain one's lust and stomach by patience; one's hands and feet by one's eyes; one's eyes and ears by one's mind; and one's mind and words by one's acts. That Brāhmana who never omitteth to perform his ablutions, who always weareth his sacred thread, who always attendeth to the study of the *Vedas*, who always avoideth food that is unclean,* who telleth the truth and

* Or rather food defiled by the touch of, or offered by, a fal (excasted) person."—*T*.

performeth acts in honor of his preceptor, never falleth off from the region of *Brahma*. Having studied the *Vedas*, poured libations on the fire performed sacrifices, protected subjects, sanctified his soul by drawing weapons for protecting kine and Brāhmanas, and died on the field of battle, the Kshatriya attaineth to heaven. Having studied the *Vedas*, and distributed in proper time his wealth among Brāhmanas, Kshatriyas, and his own dependents, and smelt the sanctified smoke of the three kinds of fires, the Vaiçya enjoyeth heavenly bliss in the other world. Having properly worshipped Brāhmanas, Kshatriyas, and Vaiçyas in due order, and having burnt his sins by gratifying them, and then peacefully casting off his body, the Cudra, enjoyeth the bliss of heaven. The duties of the four orders are thus set forth before thee! Listen now to the reason of my speech as I disclorse it! Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu is falling off from the duties of the Kshatriya order. Place him, therefore, O king, in a position to discharge the duties of kings!'

Dhritarāshtra said,—'It is even so as thou always teachest me! O amiable one, my heart also inclineth that very way of which thou tellest me! Although, however, I incline my mind towards the Pāndavas even as thou teachest me to do, yet as soon as I come in contact with Duryodhana it turneth off in a different way. No creature is able to transgress Destiny. Indeed, Destiny, I think, is certain to take its course. Individual exertion is futile!' "

SECTION XL.

(Sanat-sujāta Parva.)

"Dritarāshtra said,—'If there is anything still left unsaid by thee, O Vidura, say it then as I am ready to listen to thee! Thy discourse is, indeed, charming!'

"Vidura said,—'O Dhritarāshtra, O thou of the Bharata race, that ancient and eternal *Rishi* Sanat-sujāta who, leading a life of perpetual celebacy, hath said that there is no Death,—that foremost of all intelligent persons,—will expound

to thee all the doubts* in thy mind, both expressed and unexpressed !'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Dost thou not know what that eternal *Rishi* will say unto me? O Vidura, do thou say it if, indeed, thou hast that degree of wisdom !'

"Vidura said,—'I am born in the *Cudra* order and, therefore, do not venture to say more than what I have already said.† The understanding, however, of that *Rishi* leading a life of celebacy, is regarded by me to be eternal. He that is a Brāhmana by brith, by discoursing on even the profoundest mysteries, never incurreth the censure of the gods. It is for this alone that I do not discourse to thee upon the subject.‡'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Vidura, how with this body of mine I can meet with that ancient and eternal one!' "

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Then Vidura began to think of that *Rishi* of rigid vows. And knowing that he was thought of, the *Rishi*, O Bhārata, showed himself there! Vidura then received him with the rites prescribed by the ordinance. And when, having rested awhile, the *Rishi* was seated at his ease, Vidura addressed him, saying,—'O illustrious one, there is a doubt in Dhritarāshtra's mind which is incapable of being explained by me. It behoveth thee, therefore, to expound it, so that listening to thy discourse this chief of men may cross over all his sorrows, and so that gain and loss, what is agreeable and what disagreeable, decrepitude and death, fright and jealousy, hunger and thirst, pride and prosperity, dislike, sleep, lust and wrath, and decrease and growth, may all be borne by him !' "

SECTION XLI.

Vaicampāyana said.—"Then the illustrious and wise king Dhritarāshtra, having applauded the words spoken by Vidura, questioned Sanat-sujāta in secret, desirous of obtaining the

---

* Some texts have *Hridaya-sançrayán* for *Hridaya-sançayán*. If the former reading be preferred, the meaning would be—"Everything *attached* to or *in* thy heart.—*T.*

† A *Cudra* cannot discourse on the mysteries of *Brahma*.

‡ *Tasmánnaitadvravimi* is better than *Tasmádetadvravimi*.—*T.*

highest of all knowledge. And the king questioned the *Rishi*, saying,—O Sanat-sujāta, I hear that thou art of opinion that there is no Death. The gods and the *Asurās*, however, practised ascetic austerities in order to avoid death. Of these two opinions then, which is true?'

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'Death is avoided by particular acts; the other opinion is—there is no death; thou hast asked me which of these is true. Listen to me, O king, as I discourse to thee on this, so that thy doubts may be removed. Know, O Kshatriya, that both of these are true! The learned are of opinion that death results from ignorance. I say that Ignorance is death, and so the absence of ignorance (Knowledge*) is immortality! It is from ignorance that the *Asuras* became subject to defeat and death, and from the absence of ignorance that the gods have attained to the condition of *Brahma*. Death doth not devour creatures like a tiger; its shape itself is unascertainable. Besides this form of death some imagine *Yama* to be death. This, however, is due to the weakness of the mind. The pursuit of *Brahma* or self-knowledge is immortality. That (imaginary) god (Yama) holdeth his sway in the region of the *Pitris*, being the source of bliss to the virtuous and woe to the sinful. It is at his command that death in the form of wrath, ignorance, and covetousness, ariseth among men. Swayed by pride men always walk in unrighteous paths. None amongst them succeeds in attaining to his real nature. Their understandings clouded and themselves swayed by the passions, they cast off their bodies† and repeatedly fall into hell. They are always followed by their senses.‡ It is for this that ignorance receives the name of death. Those men that desire the fruits of work, when the time cometh for enjoying those fruits, proceed to heaven, casting off their

---

* Ignorance of Self-knowledge; Knowledge here means the knowledge of Self.—*T.*

† *Lit.*—"Sent thither from here."—*T.*

‡ *Deva-anu* or *anu-devā* is explained by Nilkantha to mean the senses or passions.—*T.*

bodies. Hence they cannot avoid death.* Embodied creatures, from inability to attain the knowledge of *Brahma*, and from their connection with earthly enjoyments, are obliged to sojourn in a round of re-births, up, down, and around. The natural inclination of man towards pursuits that are unreal is alone the cause of the senses being led to error. The soul that is constantly affected by the pursuit of objects that are unreal, remembering only that with which it is always employed, worshippeth only earthly enjoyments that surround it. The desire of enjoyments first killeth men. Lust and wrath soon follow it behind. These three, *viz*, the desire of enjoyments, lust, and wrath, lead foolish men to death. They, however, that have conquered their souls, succeed by self-restraint, to escape death. He that hath conquered his soul without suffering himself to be excited by his soaring desires, killeth these, regarding them as of no value, by the aid of self-knowledge. Ignorance, assuming the shape of Yama cannot devour that learned man who killeth his desires in this manenr. That man who followeth his desires is destroyed along with his desires. He, however, that can forsake desire, can certainly drive away all kinds of woe. Desire is, indeed, ignorance and darkness and hell in respect of all creatures, for swayed by it they lose their senses. As intoxicated persons in walking along a street reel towards ruts and holes, so men under the influence of desire, misled by unreal joys, run towards destruction. What can death do to a person whose soul hath not been confounded or misled by desire? For him death hath no terrors like a tiger made of straw. Therefore, O Kshatriya, if the existence of desire which is ignorance is to be destroyed, no wish, not even the slightest one, is either to be regarded or pursued. That soul which is in thy body,—associated as it is with wrath and covetousness and filled with ignorance,—that is death! Knowing that death arises in this way, he that relies on Knowledge entertaineth no fear of death. Indeed, as the body is destroyed when

* For when the merits of work are exhausted, fall and re-birth are inevitable as the *Crutis* declare.—*T.*

brought under the influence of death, so death itself is destroyed when it comes under the influence of Knowledge.'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'The *Vedas* declare the emancipation-procuring capacity of those highly sacred and eternal regions that are said to be obtainable by the regenerate classes by prayers and sacrifices. Knowing this, why should not a learned person have recourse to (religious) acts?'*

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'Indeed, he that is without knowledge proceedeth thither by the path indicated by thee, and the *Vedas* also declare that thither are both bliss and emancipation. But he that regardeth the material body to be self, if he succeeds in renouncing desire, at once attaineth to emancipation (or *Brahma*). If, however, one seeketh emancipation without renouncing desire, one must have to proceed along the (prescribed) route of action, taking care to destroy the chances of his retracing the routes that he once passeth over.'†

---

* The question that Dhritaràshtra asks is easy enough. The *Rishi* having applauded knowledge and its efficacy in procuring emancipation, the king asks, if knowledge is of such efficacy, what then is the value of work, *i. e* prayers and sacrifices as ordained in the *Vedas?* *Ijyayâ* is the instrumental of *Ijyâ* meaning sacrifices, prayers, religious rites, and ceremonies. *Paràrtham* is explained by Nilkantha to mean *Moksha-prâpakatwam*, *i. e.* capacity to lead to emancipation. It should be noted here that the Hindu idea of emancipation is not bliss enjoyed by a conscious Self but freedom from the obligation of re-birth and work. Mere work, as such, implies pain and misery, and the Supreme Soul *(Para-Brahma)* is without action and attributes. Although other kinds of emancipation are spoken of in other systems of philosophy, yet the emancipation that forms the subject of these queries and answers is freedom of this kind.—*T.*

† The *Rishi* answers,—Yes, work does, indeed, lead to the emancipate state, and in the regions of which thou speakest there are both bliss and emancipation. *(Arthajàta* is explained by Nilkantha to mean *Bhoga-mokshàkhya-prayojana-sàmànyam).* The second line is elliptical, the construction being *Paràtmà aniha (sàn) param ayāti ; (anyathā-tu) mārgena mârgân nihatya param (prayàti.) Parātmā* is explained by Nilkantha to mean one who regards the material body to be Self. In the succeeding *Slokas* the *Rishi* uses the word *dehin* which, in this connection, is the same as *dehābhimānin.* The *Rishi's* answer is,—The materialist, by renouncing desire, attaineth to the state of the Supreme Soul,

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Who is it that urgeth that Unborn and Ancient One? If, again, it is He that is all this Universe in consequence of His having entered everything, (without desire as He is) what can be His action, or His happiness? O learned person, tell me all this truly!*'

---

i. e. emancipation. The sense seems to be that by renouncing desire, both action and attributes are lost. The state, therefore, of such a soul is one of inaction, or perfect quietude and the absence of attributes, which is exactly the state of the Supreme Soul. If, again, emancipation be sought without extinguishing desire, *i. e.* by the aid of work (prayers and sacrifices), it is to be attained "by extinguishing paths by a path", *i. e* the seeker is to proceed along a definite or prescribed or ordained route, taking care that the portions of the route he once passes over may not have to be *re-trodden* by him. Work, as explained in a subsequent *Sloka*, leadeth, it is true, to regions of bliss and emancipation, but that state is transitory, for when the merit is extinguished, the state that was attained in consequence of it, is extinguished, and the person, falling off, has to recommence action. If, therefore, *permanent* emancipation is to be attained, the obligation of re-commencing work must be got rid of, *i. e.* care must be taken that the portions of the route once passed over may not have to be *re-trodden.—T.*

* Apparently this question of Dhritarāshtra is not connected with what precedes. The connection, however, is intimate, and the question flows as a corollary from the *Rishi's* last answer. The *Rishi* having said that the ordinary soul, by a certain process (*i. e.* renunciation of desire), attains to the state of the Supreme Soul, Dhritarāshtra infers that, *vice versa*, it is the Supreme Soul that becomes the ordinary soul, for (as Nilkantha puts it in the phraseology of the *Nâya* school) things different cannot become the same, and unless things are similar, they cannot become the same. Applying this maxim of the *Nâya*, it is seen that when the ordinary soul becomes the Supreme Soul, these are *not* different, and, therefore, the Supreme Soul it is that becomes the ordinary soul. Under this impression Dhritarashtra asks,—Well, if it is the Supreme Soul that becomes the ordinary soul, who is it that urgeth the Supreme Soul to become so? And if all this (universe) be, indeed, that Soul in consequence of the latter pervading and entering into everything, then divested of desire as the Supreme Soul is, where is the possibility of its *action* (action or work being the direct consequence of desire)? If it is answered that the universe is the Deity's *lilâ* (mere *sport*, as some schools of philosophy assert) then, as every sport is ascribable to some motive of happiness, what can be the happiness of the Deity who, as presupposed, is without desire?—*T.*

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'There is great objection in *completely* identifying (as here) two that are different. Creatures always spring from the union of Conditions (with what in Its essence is without Conditions). This view doth not detract from the supremacy of the Unborn and Ancient One. As for men, they also originate in the union of Conditions. All this that appears is nothing but that everlasting Supreme Soul. Indeed, the universe is created by the Supreme Soul Itself undergoing transformations. The *Vedas* do attribute this power (of self-transformation) to the Supreme Soul. For the identity, again, of the power and its possessor, both the *Vedas* and others are the authority.'*

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'In this world, some practise virtue, and some renounce work (adopting what is called *Sannyāsa Yoga*). (Respecting those that practise virtue) I ask,—is virtue competent to destroy vice, or is it itself destroyed by vice ?'

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'The fruits of virtue and of (perfect) inaction are both serviceable in that respect (*i. e.* for procuring emancipation). Indeed, both are sure means for the attainment of emancipation. The man, however, that is wise, achieveth success by Knowledge (inaction). On the other hand, the materialist accquireth merit (by action) and (as the conse-

---

* The *Rishi* answers—There is great objection in admitting the *complete* or *essential* identity of things different, *i. e.* the ordinary soul and Supreme Soul being different, their identity cannot be admitted. As regards creatures, they flow continually from *Anādi-yoga*, *i. e.* the union of the Supreme Soul (which in itself is Unconditioned) with the conditions of space, time, &. c ; *i. e.* there is this much of identity, therefore, between the ordinary and the Supreme Soul but not a *complete* or *essential* identity. It is also in conseqence of this that the superiority of the Supreme Soul is not lost (the opposite theory would be destructive of that superiority). The favorite analogy of the thinkers of this school for explaining the connection of the Supreme Soul with the universe is derived from the connection of *Akāça* with *Ghatàkāça*, *i. e.* space absolute and unconditioned and space as confined by the limits of a vessel. The latter has a name, is moved when the vessel is moved, and is limited in area ; while space itself, of which the vessel's space forms a part, is absolute and unconditioned, immovable, and unlimited.—*T.*

quence thereof) emancipation. He hath also (in course of his pursuit) to incur sin. Having obtained again fruits of both virtue and vice which are transitory, (heaven having its end as also hell in respect of the virtuous and the sinful), the man of action becometh once more addicted to action as the consequence of his own previous virtues and vices. The man of action, however, who possesseth intelligence, destroyeth his sins by his virtuous acts. Virtue, therefore, is strong, and hence the success of the man of action.'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, according to their gradation, of those eternal regions that are said to be attainable, as the fruits of their own virtuous acts, by regenerate persons engaged in the practice of virtue. Speak unto me of other regions also of a similar kind! O learned person, I do not wish to hear of actions (towards which man's heart naturally inclineth however interdicted or sinful they may be)!'

"Sanat-sujāta said,— 'Those regenerate persons that take pride in their *Yoga* practices, like strong men in their own strength, departing hence, shine in the region of *Brahma*. Those regenerate persons that pridefully exert in performing sacrifices and other *Vedic* rites, as the fruit of that knowledge which is theirs in consequence of those acts, freed from this world proceed to that region which is the abode of the deities. There are others again, conversant with the *Vedas*, who are of opinion that the performance of the sacrifices and rites (ordained by the *Vedas*) is obligatory, (their non-performance being sinful). Wedded to external forms though seeking the development of the inner self (for they practise these rites for only virtue's sake and not for the accomplishment of particular aims), these persons should not be regarded very highly (although some respect should be theirs).* Wherever, again food and drink worthy of a Brāhmana are abundant like grass and reeds in a spot during the rainy season, there should the

* The first *three Slokas* dispose of the cases of *Yogins* possessing a knowledge of Self, who have renounced desire but are not without vanity. These three *Slokas* treat of the superior, middling, and inferior kinds of *Yogins*.—*T*.

Yogin seek for his livelihood (without afflicting the householder of scanty means); by no means should he afflict his own self by hunger and thirst. In a place where there may be both inconvenience and danger to one for one's aversion to disclose one's superiority, he that doth not proclaim his superiority is better than he that doth. The food offered by that person who is not pained at the sight of another disclosing his superiority and who never eateth without offering the prescribed share to Brāhmanas and guests, is approved by the righteous. As a dog oftentimes devoureth its own evacuations to its injury, so those *Yogins* devour their own vomit who procure their livelihood by disclosing their pre-eminence. The wise know him for a Brāhmana who living in the midst of kindred wishes his religious practices to remain always unknown to them. What other Brāhmana deserveth to know the Supreme Soul that is unconditioned, without attributes, unchangeable, one and alone, and without duality of any kind? In consequence of such practices, a Kshatriya can know the Supreme and behold *it* in his own soul. He that regardeth the Soul to be the acting and feeling Self,—what sins are not committed by that thief who robbeth the soul of its attributes? A Brāhmana should be without exertion, should never accept gifts, should win the respect of the righteous, should be quiet, and though conversant with the *Vedas* should seem to be otherwise, for then only may he attain to knowledge and know *Brahma*. They that are poor in earthly but rich in heavenly wealth and sacrifices, become unconquerable and fearless, and they should be regarded as embodiments of *Brahma*. That person even, in this world, who (by performing sacrifices) succeedeth in meeting with the very gods that bestow all kinds of desirable objects (on performers of sacrifices), is not equal to him that knoweth *Brahma*, for the performer of sacrifices hath to undergo exertion (while he that knoweth *Brahma* attaineth to Him without such exertion). He is said to be really honored who, destitute of actions, is honored by the deities.*

---

* The *Crutis* expressly declare that he that winneth esteem by sacrifices, is no better than a sacrificial animal for the gods.—*T.*

He should never regard himself as honored who is honored by others. One should not, therefore, grieve when one is not honored by others. People act according to their nature just as they open and shut their eyelids; and it is only the learned that pay respect to others. The man that is respected should think so.* They again, in this world, that are foolish, apt to sin, and adepts in deceit, never pay respect to those that are worthy of respect. On the other hand, they always show disrespect to such persons. The world's esteem and asceticism (practices of a *Muni*), can never exsist together. Know that this world is for those that are candidates for esteem, while the other world is for those that are devoted to asceticism. Here, in this world, O Kshatriya, happiness (the world's esteem) resides in worldly prosperity. The latter, however, is an impediment (to heavenly bliss). Heavenly prosperity, on the other hand, is unattainable by one that is without true wisdom.† The righteous say that there are various kinds of gates, all difficult of being guarded, for giving access to the last kind of prosperity. These are truth, uprightness, modesty, self-control, purity (of mind and conduct), and knowledge (of the *Vedas*). These six are destructive of vanity and ignorance.' "‡

SECTION XLII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'What is the object of asceticism *(mauna)?* Of the two kinds of *mauna*, (*viz*, the restraining of speech and meditation), which is approved by thee? O learned one, tell me the true aspect of *mauna!* Can a person of learning by that *mauna* attain to a state of quietude

---

* *i. e*, ascribe the respect that is paid to him to the very nature of those that pay that respect, or to their learning, but never to his own fitness for winning respect.—*T.*

† *Cri* (worldly prosperity) is here contrasted with *Brāhmi Cri* (heavenly prosperity) or the prosperity that is represented by knowledge of the *Vedas.*—*T.*

‡ For *Shanmūnamoha pratibandhakāni* some texts read *Yathā na mohapratibodhanāni.* If the latter reading be adopted, the sense would substantially be the same.—*T.*

and emancipation *(mauna)*? O *Muni*, how also is asceticism *(mauna)* to be practised here ?'*

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'Since the Supreme Soul cannot be penetrated by both the *Vedas* and the mind, it is for this that that Soul itself is called *mauna*. That from which both the *Vedic* syllable *Om* and this one (ordinary sounds) have arisen, —*that* One, O king, is displayed as the Word.'†

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Is he that knoweth both the *Rich* and the *Yajus Vedas*, is he that knoweth the *Sāma Veda*, sullied or not by sins when he committeth sins ?'

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'I tell thee truly that the man that

---

* The word *mauna* in these two lines is successively used in very different senses. Grammatically, *mauna* is a derivative of *muni*, meaning the state, or condition, or practices of a *muni* or one devoted to ascetic austerities. As the condition or practices of a *muni*, it necessarily means "listening to words of wisdom, reflection, and (*Yoga*) meditation." It also means the restraining of speech or the vow of silence as observed by ascetics of a certain class. The *Sloka* is made up of altogether five questions. I have retained the word *mauna* in the translation in order to give the reader unacquained with Sanskrit an idea of the frame of the questions.—*T.*

† It is difficult to conceive how what the *Rishi* says can be an answer to the questions put by Dhritarāshtra. The subject is evidently treated in a mystical way that is beyond ordinary comprehension. Nilakantha professes to explain the passage in a note of some length. According to him, the first sentence spoken by the *Rishi* disposes of the four first questions. If (he says) *Para-Brahma* (or the Supreme Soul) itself be *mauna*, then the object of asceticism or *mauna* is to attain to *that* which is beyond the reach of language and the mind, and secondly, true *mauna* must consist *not* in the mere restraining of speech but the absolute restraint of all the senses *and* the mind. Thirdly, the aspect, form, or nature of *mauna* must necessarily be the loss of all consciousness of both the objective and the subjective and the concentration of consciousness on *Brahma* alone. Fourthly, when such a state is reached, *Brahma* (or quietude and emancipation) is reached. The last sentence of the *Rishi's* answer is explained by Nilakantha thus :—*Brahma* is the Vedic syllable *Om* representing the gross, the subtile, and the Cause. *Mauna* is attainable by the gradual merging of the gross in the subtile, and the subtile in the Cause, and the Cause in *Brahma* itself. Mysticism such as this is intelligible only to the initiates.—T.

hath not restrained his senses is not rescued from his sinful acts by either the *Sāma* or the *Rich*, or the *Yajus Veda!* The *Vedas* never rescue from sin the deceitful person living by deceit. On the other hand, like new-fledged birds forsaking their nest, the *Vedas* forsake such a person at the end.'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O thou that hast restrained thy senses, if, indeed, the *Vedas* are not competent to rescue a person without the aid of virtue, whence then is this delusion of the Brāhmanas that the *Vedas* are always destructive of sins?'

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'O magnanimous one, this universe hath sprung from that Supreme Soul by the union of Conditions respecting name, form, and other attributes. The *Vedas* also, pointing it out duly, declare the same and inculcate that the Supreme Soul and the universe are different and not identical. It is for attaining to that Supreme Soul that asceticism and sacrifices are ordained, and it is by these two that the man of learning earneth virtue. Destroying sin by virtue, his soul is enlightened by knowledge. The man of knowledge, by the aid of knowledge, attaineth to the Supreme Soul. Otherwise, he that coveteth the four objects of human pursuit,* taking with him all that he doth here, enjoyeth their fruits hereafter, and (as those fruits are not everlasting) cometh back to the region of action (when the enjoyment is over). Indeed, the fruits of ascetic austerities performed in this world have to be enjoyed in the other world (as regards those persons who have not obtained the mastery of their souls). As regards those Brāhmanas employed in ascetic practices (who have the mastery of their souls) even *these* regions are capable of yielding fruits.'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O Sanat-sujāta, how can ascetic austerities, which are all of the same kind, be sometimes successful and sometimes unsuccessful? Tell us this in order that we may know it!'

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'That asceticism which is not stained by (desire and other) faults is said to be capable of procuring

---

* *Dharma*, *Artha*, *Kāma*, and *Moksha*.—T.

emancipation, and is, therefore, successful, while the asceticism that is stained by vanity and want of true devotion is regarded unsuccessful. All thy inquiries, O Kshatriya, touch the very root of asceticism. It is by asceticism that they that are learned know *Brahma* and win immortality !'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I have listened to what thou hast said about asceticism unstained by faults, and by which I have succeeded in knowing an eternal mystery. Tell me now, O Sanat-sujāta, about asceticism that is stained by faults !'

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'O king, the twelve including anger, as also the thirteen kinds of wickedness, are the faults of asceticism that is stained. Anger, lust, avarice, ignorance of right and wrong, discontent, cruelty, malice, vanity, grief, love of pleasure, envy, and speaking ill of others, are generally the faults of human beings. These twelve should always be avoided by men. Any one amongst these can singly effect the destruction of men, O bull among men. Indeed, every one of these wait for opportunities in respect of men like a hunter expectant of opportunities in respect of deer. Assertion of one's own superiority, desire of enjoying other's wives, humiliating others from excess of pride, wrathfullness, fickleness, and refusing to maintain those worthy of being maintained,—these six acts of wickedness are always practised by sinful men defying all dangers here and hereafter. He that regards the gratification of lust to be one of life's aims, he that is exceedingly proud, he that grieves having given away, he that never spends money, he that persecutes his subjects by exacting hateful taxes, he that delights in the humiliation of others, and he that hates his own wives,—these seven are others that are also called wicked. Righteousness, truth (abstention from injury and truthfulness of speech), self-restraint, asceticism, delight in the happiness of others, modesty, forbearance, love of others, sacrifices, gifts, perseverance, knowledge of the scriptures,—these twelve constitute the practices of Brāhmanas. He that succeeds in acquiring these twelve, becomes competent to sway the entire earth. He that is endued with three, two, or even one, of these, should be regarded as possessed of heavenly prosperity. Self-restraint,

renunciation, and knowledge of Self,—in these are emancipation. Those Brāhmanas that are endued with wisdom say that these are attributes in which truth predominates. Self-restraint is constituted by eighteen virtues. Breaches and non-observance of ordained acts and omissions, falsehood, malice, lust, wealth, love of (sensual) pleasure, anger, grief, thirst, avarice, deceit, joy in the misery of others, envy, injuring others, regret, aversion from pious acts, forgetfulness of duty, calumniating others, and vanity,—he that is freed from these (eighteen) vices is said by the righteous to be *self-restrained.* The eighteen faults (that have been enumerated) constitute what is called *mada* or pride. Renunciation is of six kinds. The reverse of those six again are faults called *mada.* (The faults, therefore, that go by the name of *mada* are eighteen and six). The six kinds of renunciation are all commendable. The third only is difficult of practice, but by that all sorrow is overcome. Indeed, if that kind of renunciation be accomplished in practice, he that accomplishes it overcomes all the pairs of contraries* in the world.

" 'The six kinds of renunciation are all commendable. (They are these:—) The first is never experiencing joy on occasions of prosperity. The second is the abandonment of sacrifices, prayers, and pious acts. That which is called the third, O king, is the abandonment of desire, or withdrawing from the world. Indeed, it is in consequence of this third kind of renunciation that a person is said to be above description. That is renunciation of desire which is evidenced by the abandonment of all objects of enjoyment (without enjoying them) and not their abandonment after having enjoyed them to the fill nor by abandonment after acquisition, nor by abandonment only after one has become incompetent to enjoy from loss of appetite. (The fourth kind of renunciation consists in this:) One should not grieve nor suffer his self to be afflicted by grief when one's actions fail notwithstanding one's possession of all the virtues and all kinds of wealth. Or, when anything dis-

* Such as heat and cold, pleasure and pain, &c.—T.

agreeable happens, one feeleth no pain. The fifth kind of renunciation consists in not soliciting even one's sons, wives, and others that may all be very dear. The sixth kind consists in giving away to a deserving person who solicits and which act of gift is always productive of merit. By these again, one acquires the knowledge of Self.* As regards this last attribute, it involves eight qualities. These are truth, meditation, distinction of subject and object, capacity for drawing inferences, withdrawal from the world, never taking what belongeth to others, the practice of *Brahmacharya* vows (abstinence), and non-acceptance (of gifts).

"'So also the attribute of *mada* (the opposite of *dama* or self-restraint) hath faults which have all been indicated (in the scriptures). These faults should be avoided. I have spoken (to thee) of renunciation and self-knowledge. And as self-knowledge hath eight virtues, so the want of it hath eight faults. Those faults should be avoided. O Bhārata, he that is liberated from his five senses, mind, the past and the future, becomes happy.† O king, let thy soul be devoted to truth; all the worlds are established on truth; indeed, self-control, renunciation, and self-knowledge are said to have truth for their foremost attribute. Avoiding (these) faults, one should practise asceticism here. The Ordainer hath ordained that truth alone should be the vow of the righteous. Asceticism that is dissociated from these faults and endued with these virtues becomes the source of great prosperity. I have now briefly told thee about that sin-destroying and sacred subject which thou hadst asked me and which is capable of liberating a person from birth, death, and decrepitude!'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'With *Akhyana (Parānas)* as their fifth, the *Vedas* declare the Supreme Soul to be this universe

---

* The word used is *apramādin* which is employed in this particular sense here as in *sloka* 22 *supra*.—T.

† Happiness is his who prevaileth over these four, *i. e.* the senses, the mind, the past and the future. A person is said to prevail over the past and the future when neither the past nor the future can move him in the least.—*T.*

consisting of mobile and immobile things. Others regard four God-heads; and others three; others again regard two; and others only one; and others regard *Brahma* alone as the sole existent object, (there being nothing else possessing a separate existence). Amongst these, which should I know to be really possessed of the knowledge of *Brahma*!'*

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'There is but one *Brahma* which is Truth's self. It is from ignorance of that One that god-heads have been conceived to be diverse. But who is there, O king, that hath attained to Truth's self or *Brahma*? Man regardeth himself wise without knowing that One object of knowledge, and from desire of happiness is engaged in study and the

---

* The question that Dhritarāshtra asks briefly alludes to nearly all the theories current in the principal schools of Hindu philosophy in respect of the Supreme Soul. *Bhuishtham* is explained by Nilkantha as *Nàmâdi-prapanchât-adhikatamam bhumâkhyam param Brahma*, *i. e* the Supreme or *Brahma* called *Bhu* or *Bhuma* which is superior to the visible universe originating in the conditions of name, &. c. *Janas* is explained as the universe consisting of mobile and immobile things. Six different opinions are cited in the question. The first is that which is taught by the *Vedas* and the *Purânas* (regarded as the fifth *Veda)* and is to the effect that that which is called the Supreme Soul is this univere of mobile and immobile things. The latter has a real existence and is identical with the Supreme Soul in so far as the Supreme Soul, by itself undergoing transformations, has become diverse. The second opinion is that of the sect called the *Chaturvedins* who hold that there are *four* Godheads or existences independent of one another. These are the *Carira-purusha*, the *Cchandas-purusha*, the *Veda-purusha*, and the *Mahâpurusha*. The third is the opinion of the sect called the *Trivedins* who hold that there are three Godheads or independent existences named the *Kshara*, the *Akshara*, and the *Uttama*. The fourth sect called the *Dwivedins* believe in the existence of two Godheads or independent existences named the universe *(Prapancha)* or *Cabda-Brahma* and the Deity and or *Para-Brahma*. According to these, the universe is distinct from the Deity. The fifth sect called the *Ekavedins* hold that there is but One *Brahma* and He is this *Prapancha* or universe. They differ from the sect first named in this: the first sect hold *Brahma* to be this universe; the *Ekavedins* hold that this universe is *Brahma*. The sixth sect called the *Anrichs* hold that there is nothing but *Brahma*. With the last the *Prapancha* is unreal.—T.

practices of charity and sacrifices.* They that have deviated from Truth *(Brahma)* entertain purposes corresponding (with their state) and hence, relying on the truth of Vedic texts, perform sacrifices. Some perform (or attain the object of) sacrifices by the mind (meditation); some, by words (recitation of particular prayers, or *Yapa)*; and some, by acts (actual consummation of the *Yatishtoma* and other costly rites). The person, however, who seeketh *Brahma* through Truth, obtaineth his desired objects at once. When, however, one's purposes become abortive (through absence of knowledge of Self), one should adopt vows of silence and such like called *Dikshāvrata.* Indeed, *Dikshā* cometh from the root *Diksh* meaning the observance of vows. As regards those that have knowledge of Self, with them Truth is the highest object of pursuit.

" 'The fruits of knowledge are visible; asceticism yieldeth fruits hereafter. A Brāhmana who (without knowledge and asceticism) hath only read much should only be known as a great reader. Therefore, O Kshatriya, never think that one can be a *Brāhmana (Brahma*-knowing) by only reading the scriptures. He, on the other hand, should be known by thee to be possessed of the knowledge of *Brahma* who doth not deviate from Truth. O Kshatriya, the verses that were recited by Atharvan and a conclave of great sages, in days of old, are known by the name of *Cchandas.* They are not to be regarded as acquainted with the *Cchandas* who have only read the *Vedas* through without having attained to the knowledge of Him who is to be known through the *Vedas.* The *Cchandas,* O best of men, become the means of obtaining *Brahma* independently and without the neccessity of anything foreign. They cannot be regarded as acquainted with the *Cchandas* who are acquainted only with the modes of sacrifice enjoined in the *Vedas.* On the other hand, having waited upon those that are acquainted with the *Vedas,* have not the righteous attained to the Object that is knowable by

* Literally,—"Gift, study, and sacrifice,—all this proceeds from desire of happiness." In order to make the connection more obvious, I have rendered the passage freely.—T.

the *Vedas?* There is none who hath truly caught the sense of the *Vedas* or there may be some who have, O king, caught the sense. He that hath only read the *Vedas* doth not know the Object knowable by them. He, however, that is established in Truth knoweth the Object knowable by the *Vedas.* Amongst those faculties which lead to a perception of the body as the acting agent, there is none by which true knowledge may be acquired. By the mind alone one cannot acquire the knowledge of Self and Not-self. Indeed, he that knoweth Self knoweth also what is Not-self. He, on the other hand, that knoweth only what is Not-self, doth not know Truth. He, again, that knoweth the proofs knoweth also that which is sought to be proved. But what that Object in its nature is (which is sought to be proved) is not known to either the *Vedas* or those that are acquainted with the *Vedas.* For all that, however, those Brāhmanas that are (truly) acquainted with the *Vedas* succeed in obtaining a knowledge of the Object knowable (by the *Vedas)* through the *Vedas.** As the branch of a particular tree is sometimes resorted to for pointing out the lunar digit of the first day of the lighted fort-

---

* These two *Slokas* (53, and 54) are very difficult. The words *Vedam*, and *Vedān*, and *Vedyam*, have been used in very different senses successively. Some scholars are of opinion that a translator's task would be accomplished if only he gives a mere "linguistic reproduction," leaving the reader, if he is so disposed, to find out the meaning. Linguistic reproductions, however, of such passages are absolutely impossible, for the simple reason that the grammatical is not very often the true meaning of the words employed. The necessity, therefore, of taking the commentators for one's guide becomes apparent. Earnest reflection has convinced me that Nilakantha has correctly explained these *Slokas.* His interpretation involves no self-contradiction and is well consistent with the entire *Sanat-sujātiya* doctrine. I have accordingly adopted it.

Vedānām (*sloka.* 53) is explained as *Ahankārādinām achetanānām ; Vedyena* (the instrumental of *Vedyam),* as *Chetasā* ; *Vedam*, Self ; and *Vedyam*, Not-self. In the second line of *sl.* 53, *Vedam* and *Vedyam* are also used for Self and Not-self. In 54, *Vedān* is explained as *pramānāni* ; the *Vedyam* following it, as *prameyam.* In the second line, the accusative *Vedam* is explained as Self or the *ātmā.* I apend below a

night, so the *Vedas* are used for indicating the highest attributes of the Supreme Soul. I know him to be a *Brāhmana* (possessing a knowledge of *Brahma)* who expoundeth the doubts of others having himself mastered all his own doubts, and who is possessed of the knowledge of Self. One cannot find what the Soul is by seeking in the East, the South, the West, the North, or in the subsidiary directions, or horizontally. Very rarely can it be found in him who regardeth this body to be Self. Beyond the conception of even the *Vedas*, the man of *Yoga* meditation only can behold the Supreme. Completely restraining all thy senses and thy mind also, seek thou that *Brahma* which is known to reside in thy own Soul! He is not a *Muni* who practiseth only *Yoga* meditation; nor he who liveth only in the woods, (having retired from the world). He, however, is a *Muni* and is superior to all who knoweth his own nature.* In consequence of one's being able to expound every object *(Vyākaranāt)*, one is said to be endued with universal knowledge *(Vaiyākaranas)*; and, indeed, the science itself is called *Vyākarana* owing to its being able to expound every object to its very root (which is *Brahma)*. The man who beholdeth all the regions as present before his eyes is said to be possessed of universal knowledge. He that stayeth in Truth and knoweth *Brahma* is said to be a *Brāhmana*, and a *Brāhmana* possesseth universal knowledge.

---

linguistic version of the passage, taking the words in their ordinary grammatical sense.

"There is no one who truly knoweth the *Vedas*; the contents only of the *Vedas* would not help one to know the *Vedas* or the great Object of knowledge. He that truly knoweth the *Vedas* knoweth also the Object knowable by them. He again, that knoweth only the sacrifices and rites enjoined by the *Veda* doth not know truth (or *Brahma)*. He that truly knoweth the *Vedas* knoweth also the Object knowable by them. Those, however, that are merely acquainted with contents of the *Vedas*, are ignorant of that object quite as much as the books themselves called the *Vedas* (which are without life)."

* The speaker here wishes to show the superiority of Knowledge to ascetic austerities or *Yoga* meditation. "Knoweth his own nature" is explained by Nīlakantha to mean "knoweth his own origin and the connection of the universe with the Supreme Soul."—T.

A *Kshatriya* also, that practises such virtues, may behold *Brahma*. He may also attain to that high state by ascending step by step according to what is indicated in the *Vedas*! Knowing it (for certain), I tell thee this!'"

SECTION XLIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Excellent, O Sanat-sujāta, as this thy discourse is, treating of the attainment of *Brahma* and the origin of the universe,* I pray thee, O celebate *Rishi*, go on telling me words such as these, that are unconnected with objects of worldly desire† and are, therefore, rare among men!'

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'That *Brahma* about which thou askest me with such joy is not to be attained soon. After (the senses have been restrained and) the will hath been merged in the pure intellect,‡ the state that succeeds is one of utter absence of worldly thought.¶ Even that is knowledge (leading to the attainment of *Brahma*). It is attainable only by practising *Brahmacharya*.§

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Thou sayest that the knowledge of

---

* *Viswarupàm* is explained by Nilakantha to mean *Viswa-prakàçikàm*, *i. e.* that which "unfolds the universe" or explains its origin and and course.—*T.*

† *Paràm hi kàmena* is explained to mean *Vishaya-vārtā-hinā*, the particle *hi* being only an expletive. *Kàma* is used here for the object of *Kāma*, and *parām* in the sense of separated or dissociated.—*T.*

‡ *Budhau viline manasi.* The word *manas* as used in Hindu philosophy to signify the faculties of conation. (The commentator explains it as *Sāmkalpātmakas manas*). The merging of the will in the pure intellect (*Budhi*) means, as I apprehend, abstraction from all worldly objects for *Yoga* meditation.—*T.*

¶ *Prachintyā*—the absence of *chintā* or (worldly) thoughts. (*Pragatam chintyam Yasyàm.*—*T.*

§ *Brahmacharya*—*i. e.* study and meditation in the house of the preceptor, or living with the preceptor. The *Rishi* wishes to declare that the particular state of mind he describes as fit for the reception of *Brahma*, in order to be reached, requires *Sàdhan* (practice) under the guidance of a competent preceptor.—*T.*

Brahma dwelleth of itself in the mind,* being only *discovered* by *Brahmacharya*;† that, dwelling in the mind, it requires for its manifestation no efforts (such as are necessary for work),‡ being manifested (of itself) during the seeking|| (by means of *Brahmacharya*). How then is the immortality associated with the attainment of *Brahma* attained ?'§

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'Though residing in and inherent to the mind, the knowledge of *Brahma* is still *unmanifest*. It is by the aid of the pure intellect and *Brahmacharya* that that knowledge is made manifest. Indeed, having attained to that knowledge *Yogins* forsake this world. It is always to be found among eminent preceptors. I shall now discourse to thee on that knowledge.'$

---

* *Sanātanim* is explained as signifying natural, or residing of itself, or inhering in. Its Sanskrit equivalent is *nitya-siddhām.—T.*

† Brahmacharyena *siddhàm—discovered*, made manifest, by Brahmacharya.—*T.*

‡ *Anârambhâm* is explained as *Karmabat-ārambha-ayogyām*, *i. e.* not requiring efforts such as are necessary for *work.—T.*

|| *Kârya-kâle—i. e.* during the seeking or act of making it manifest.—*T.*

§ Dhritarāshtra's question is not unintelligible. What he wants to know is that if the knowledge of Brahma (as may be implied from the first answer of the *Rishi)* dwells of itself in the mind, being only made manifest by Brahmacharya, what then is the use of Brahmacharya ? Nobody strives to win that which is already his. The knowledge of Brahma, therefore, being already *in* the mind (inherent to it by nature), what is the use of Brahmacharya which simply makes that knowledge manifest ? When people *strive*, therefore, to obtain that knowledge, it seems that it does not dwell in the mind naturally. *How* then is it obtained ? *what* are those means ?—*Immortality associated with the attainment of Brahma.*—The question would remain substantially the same if instead of this periphrasis it were simply—how then is Brahma (or a knowledge of Brahma) obtained ?—T.

$ *Avyaktā-vidyàm* : *avyakta* or *un*-manifest means *Brahma*. *Purânim* is the same as *Sanâtanim* explained before. *Siddhām* is used in the same sense here as in the previous *Slokas*. The *Rishi's* answer is,—Yes, the knowledge of *Brahma* doth dwell in the mind. It is not discovered or manifested except by the pure intellect and Brahmacharya. Hence the use of Brahmacharya. No other means are necessary. *Pure intellect*—Intellect in which the will has been merged.—*T.*

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'What should be the nature of that *Brahmacharya* by which the knowledge of *Brahma* might be attained without much difficulty? O regenerate one, tell me this!'

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'They who, residing in the abodes of their preceptors and winning their good will and friendship, practise *Brahmacharya* austerities, become even in this world the embodiments of *Brahma*, and casting off their bodies are united with the Supreme Soul.* They that in this world desirous of obtaining the state of *Brahma*, subdue all desires, endued as they are with righteousness, succeed in dissociating the Soul from the body like a blade projected from a clump of heath. The body, O Bhārata, is created by these, *viz*, the father and the mother; the (new) birth, however, that is due to the preceptor's instructions is sacred, free from decrepitude, and immortal. Discoursing upon *Brahma* and granting immortality, he who wraps all persons with (the mantle of) truth, should be regarded as father and mother; and bearing in mind the good he does, one should never do him any injury.† A disciple must habitually salute his preceptor with respect, and with purity (of body and mind) and well-directed attention, must betake to study. He must not consider any service as mean and must not harbour anger. Even this is the first step of *Brahmacharya*.‡ The practices of that disciple who acquires knowledge by observing the duties ordained for one of his class are regarded also as the first step of *Brahmacharya*.$ A

---

* *Yonim*—abode (in the accusative). *Garve bhutwā*—winning cordial friendship. *Cāstrakārās*—lit. authors of scriptures. The *çrutis* declare the identity of these with *Brahma*. *Paramam yogam yānti*—obtain the highest of all unions, *i. e.* become united with or are absorbed in the Supreme Soul.—*T.*

† *Ritam kurvan* is explained by Nilkantha to mean *Brahma vāchā āviskurvan.*—*T.*

‡ Nilakantha explains *çuchi* as having performed his ablutions, and *apramatta* as always attentive in the service of the preceptor.—*T.*

$ *Cishya-vritti*—the duties ordained for a disciple. This is explained

disciple should, with his very life and all his possessions, in thought, word, and deed, do all that is agreeable to the preceptor. This is regarded as the second step of *Brahmacharya.* He should behave towards his preceptor's wife and also son in the same way as towards his preceptor himself. This also is regarded as the second step of *Brahmacharya.* Bearing well in mind what has been done to him by the preceptor, and understanding also its object, the disciple should, with a delighted heart, think—*I have been taught and made great by him* ! This is the third step of *Brahmacharya.** Without requiting the preceptor by payment of the final gift, a wise disciple must not betake to another mode of life; nor should he say or even think of in his mind—*I make this gift.* This is the fourth step of *Brahmacharya.*† He attaineth the first step of (aknowledge of *Brahma* which is) the object of *Brahmacharya* by aid of time; the second step, through the preceptor's prelections; the third, by the power of his own understanding; and, finally, the fourth, by discussion.‡ The learned have said that *Brahmacharya,* which is constituted by the twelve virtues, those *Yoga* practices which are called the *Angas,* and perseverance in *Yoga* meditation called *Valam,* is crowned with success in consequence of the preceptor's aid and the union of *Brahma* and Work.§ Whatever wealth

---

by Nilkantha to mean maintaining himself by alms without being a burden to the preceptor."

* *Bhāvita* is explained by Nilakantha to mean *Vardhita.* Better—"taught *and* made great."—*T.*

† There can be no question that the suffix *nich* in *bhāshayeta* is *not* used in a *causal* sense as correctly explained by Nilakantha. The Burdwan Pundits, by taking the suffix as used in a causal sense, have mistaken the meaning by supposing that the disciple is directed not to do anything to make the preceptor express his satisfaction with the final fee.—*T.*

‡ Nilakantha explains *Kāla, i. e. time,* as indicative of the gradaul growth or maturity of the understanding, and *Cāstrena* as discussion with fellow students.—*T*

§ *Angam*—The several postures of sitting called *āsana,* and also the regulation, by constant practice, of the five vital airs called *Prāna, Apāna, Samāna, Udāna, Vyāna,* are designated the *Angas.* These constitute the physical part of *Yoga* practices. *Valam* is explained by

a disciple, thus engaged, may earn, should all be given to the preceptor. It is thus that the preceptor obtaineth his highly praise-worthy livelihood. And thus also should the disciple behave towards the preceptor's son. Thus stationed (in *Brahmacharya)*, the disciple thriveth by all means in this world and obtaineth numerous progeny and fame. Men also from all directions shower wealth upon him ; and many people come to his abode for practising *Brahmacharya*. It is through *Brahmacharya* of this kind that the celestials attained to their divinity, and sages, highly blessed and of great wisdom, have obtained the region of *Brahma*. It is by this that the *Gandharvas* and the *Apsaras* acquired such personal beauty, and it is through *Brahmacharya* that Surya riseth to make the day. Like seekers of the philosopher's stone* when they obtain the object of their search, those mentioned above (the celestials and others), on completing this *Brahmacharya*, derive great happiness in consequence of being able to have whatever they desire. He, O king, who, devoted to the practice of ascetic austerities, betaketh himself to *Brahmacharya* in its entirety and thereby purifieth his body, is truly wise, for by this he becometh like a child (free from all evil passions) and triumpheth over death at last. Men, O Kshatriya, by Work, however pure, obtain only worlds that are perishable; he, however, that is blessed with Knowledge, attaineth, by the aid of that Knowledge, to *Brahma* which is everlasting. There is no other path (than Knowledge or the attainment of *Brahma)* leading to emancipation.'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'The existence of *Brahma*, thou sayest, a wise man perceiveth in this own soul. Now, is *Brahma* white, or red, or black, or blue, or purple ? Tell me what the true form and color of the Omnipresent and Eternal *Brahma* is :'

Nilakantha to mean *Yoge nitya Udyama*. *Brahmárthayogena* means the union of *Brahma* and *Artha*, *i. e.* the ordinances of the *Vedas* which lead to *Brahma* through work. The sense of the passage, therefore, is that *Brahmacharya* becomes successful through the preceptor explaining by his teachings the ordinances of the *Vedas*.—T.

* *Rasaveda* is a fabulous gem of the name of "Chintāmani" which is supposed to yield whatever the owner requires.—T.

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'Indeed, *Brahma* (as perceived) may appear as white, red, black, brown, or bright. But neither on the earth, nor in the sky, nor in the waters of the ocean, is there anything like it. Neither in the stars, nor in lightning, nor in the clouds, is its form to be seen ; nor is it visible in the atmosphere, nor in the deities, nor in the moon, nor in the sun. Neither in the *Rich*, nor among the *Yajus*, nor among the *Atharvans*, nor in the pure *Sāmans*, is it to be found. Verily, O king, it is not to be found in *Rathantara* or *Vārhadratha*, nor in great sacrifices. Incapable of being compassed and lying beyond the reach of the limited intellect, even the universal Destroyer, after the Dissolution, is himself lost in it. Incapable of being gazed at, it is subtile as the edge of the razor, and grosser than mountains. It is the basis upon which everything is founded ; it is unchangeable ; it is this visible universe (omnipresent) ; it is vast ; it is delightful ; creatures have all sprung from it and are to return to it. Free from all kinds of duality, it is manifest as the universe, and all-pervading. Men of learning say that it is without any change except in the language used to describe it. They are emancipated that are acquainted with That in which this universe is established.' "

SECTION XLIV.

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'Sorrow, anger, covetousness, lust, ignorance, laziness, malice, self-importance, continuous desire of gain, affection, jealousy, and evil speech,—these twelve, O monarch, are grave faults that are destructive of men's lives. Each of these, O monarch, wait for opportunities to seize mankind. Afflicted by them, men lose their senses and commit sinful acts. He that is covetous, he that is fierce, he that is harsh of speech, he that is garrulous, he that is given to nursing anger, he that is boastful,—these six of wicked disposition, on obtaining wealth, can not treat others with courtesy. He that regardeth sensual gratification as the aim of life, he that is self-conceited, he that boasteth having made a gift, he that never spendeth, he that is weak in mind, he

that is given to self-admiration, and he that hateth his own wife,—these seven are counted as wicked men of sinful habits. Righteousness, truth, asceticism, self-restraint, contentment, modesty, renunciation, love of others, gift, acquaintance with the scriptures, patience, and forgiveness,—these twelve are the practices of a *Brāhmana*. He that doth not fall off from these twelve, may sway the entire earth. He that is endued with three, or two, or even one, of these, doth never regard anything as his own to the exclusion of others. Self-restraint, renunciation, and knowledge,—in these reside emancipation. These are the attributes of *Brahmanas* endued with wisdom and regarding *Brahma* as the highest of all objects of attainment. True or false, it is not laudable for a *Brahmana* to speak ill of others; they that do this have hell for their abode. *Mada* hath eighteen faults which have not yet been enumerated by me. They are ill-will towards others,* throwing obstacles in the way of virtuous acts, detraction, falsehood in speech, lust, anger, dependence, speaking ill of others, finding out the faults of others for report, waste of wealth, quarrel, insolence, cruelty to living creatures, malice, ignorance, disregard of those that are worthy of regard, loss of the sense of right and wrong, and always seeking to injure others. A wise man, therefore, should not give way to *mada*, for the accompaniments of *mada* are censurable. Friendship is said to possess six indications. Firstly, friends delight in the prosperity of friends, and secondly, are distressed at their adversity. If any one asketh for anything which is dear to his heart but which should not be asked for, a true friend surely giveth away even that. Fourthly, a true friend who is of a righteous disposition, when asked, can give away his very prosperity, his beloved sons, and even his own wife. Fifthly, a friend should not dwell in the house of a friend on whom he may have bestowed everything, but should enjoy what he earneth himself. Sixthly, a friend stoppeth not to sacrifice his own good (for his friend). The man of wealth who seeketh to acquire those

---

* *Lokadeshya*—Nilakantha explains this as equivalent to "taking away of others' wives."—*T.*

good qualities, and who becometh charitable and righteous, restraineth his five senses from their respective objects. Such restraint of the senses is asceticism. When it groweth in degree, it is capable of winning regions of bliss hereafter (unlike Knowledge which leadeth to success even here). They that have fallen off from patience (and are incapable, therefore, of attaining to Knowleedge) acquire such asceticism in consequence of the purpose they entertain, *viz*, the attainment of bliss in the high regions hereafter. In consequence of his ability to grasp that Truth *(Brahma)* from which sacrifices flow, the *Yogin* is capable of performing sacrifices by the mind. Another performeth sacrifices by Words *(Yapa)* and another by Work. Truth *(Brahma)* resides in him who knoweth *Brahma* as vested with attributes. It dwelleth more completely in him who knoweth *Brahma* as divested of attributes. Listen now to something else from me. This high and celebrated philosophy should be taught (to disciples). All other systems are only a farrago of words. The whole of this (universe) is established in this *Yoga* philosophy. They that are acquainted with it are not subject to death. O king, one can not, by Work, however well accomplished, attain to Truth (*Brahma*). The man that is destitute of Knowledge, whether he poureth *homa* libations or performeth sacrifices, can never, by Work, O king, attain to immortality (emancipation). Nor doth he enjoy great happiness at the end. Restraining all the external senses and alone, one should seek *Brahma*. Giving up Work, one should not exert even mentally. One should also (while thus engaged) avoid experiencing joy at praise or anger at blame. O Kshatriya, by conducting himself in this way according to the successive steps indicated in the *Vedas*, one may, even here, attain to *Brahma*. This, O learned one, is all that I tell thee!'"

SECTION XLV.

"Sanat-sujāta said,—'The primary Seed (of the universe), called *Mahadyaças*, is destitute of accidents, is pure Knowledge, and blazeth with effulgence. It leadeth the senses, and it is in consequence of that Seed that *Surya* shineth. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).* It is in consequence of that Seed (which is Joy's self) that *Brahma* becomes capable of Creation, and it is through it that *Brahma* increaseth in expansion. It is that Seed which entering into luminous bodies giveth light and heat. Without deriving its light and heat from any other thing, it is Self-luminous, and is an object of terror to all luminous bodies. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).† The body, composed

---

* *Cukra* is explained as "the seed or the prime cause of the origin of the universe;" *mahat* stands separately, meaning "divested of accidents." I render *upādhi* as "accidents" or, "conditions," though, perhaps, there is no English equivalent for the word. What is meant by an *upādhi* is an attribute or quality attaching to a particular object and concealing its real nature, very much like a disguise. The example ordinarily cited is that of the crystal and the red flower. The redness of the former in consequence of the latter's reflection is an *upadhi* of the former. *Brahma*, as such, is without the conditions of time, space, the vital airs, the senses, &c. *Jyotis* is explained as "pure Knowledge." *Devās* is often used as signifying the "senses." It occurs also in other forms such as *anu Devás*, or, *Devās anu*. *Tadvai devä upasate* literally rendered is—"the senses *follow* it." *Surya* is regarded by Nilakantha to be used here figuratively, meaning "*Brahma* vested with conditions, *i. e. Içwara* (of the Sānkhya system) endued with the capacity of producing the universe." *Bhagavantam* (the accusative of *Bhagavat*) is explained as "endued with all the attributes of *Içwara*."—*T.*

† *Cukra* here is used in the sense of "Pure Joy," for the primary Seed is, as the *çrutis* declare, "Pure Joy." The first half of the first line, therefore, means that "*Brahma* which is totally divested of conditions, when it comes in contact with that Joy, becomes capable of creation." "*Entering into luminous bodies giveth heat;*"—this idea occurs in almost the same form in the *Bhagavad-gitā*. "*Is a terror to them*," *i. e.*, these work in their ordained spheres from fear of *Içwara*.—*T.*

of the five grosser elements that are themselves sprung from the five subtiler ones,—the latter, in their turn, originating in one homogeneous substance called *Brahma*,—is upheld (realised) in consciousness by both the creature-Soul endued with life and *Içwara*. (These two, during sleep and the universal dissolution, are deprived of consciousness). *Brahma*, on the other hand, which is never reft of consciousness, and which is the Sun's Sun, upholdeth both these two and also the Earth and the Heaven. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).* That Seed upholdeth the two gods, the Earth and the Heaven, the Directions, and the whole Universe. It is from that Seed that the directions (points of the compass) and rivers spring, and the vast seas also have derived their origin. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye). The body is like a car destined to destruction. Its acts, however, are undying. Tied to the wheels of that

---

* Reduced to prose order, the first half of the first line would stand as *Salilasya madhye adbhyas apas*, &c. *Apas* (the accusative of *ap*) literally means water. As, however, there are five elements of which *ap* is one and these all are mentioned in the same breath, the practice is very frequent of naming only *one* of the five (whichever it may be as a representative of *all* the five together. *Apas*, therefore, here signifies the body, or the living organism made of *ap* and the other elements. *Adbhyas* (the ablative of *ap*) signifies also water, *i. e*, water *and* the four others. The distinction, therefore, between the two words as used here is that *ap* signifies the body as made of the five grosser elements, while the other word signifies the same five elements in their subtile state of existence. The former class of elements are called *Bhuts*' and the latter, *Mahābhuts*. *Salilā* also means water, *i. e*, (as Nilkantha correctly explains) "*Brahma* as a homogeneous whole" as regards its ingredients. *Ubhau devau* means lit. the two gods, *i. e.*, the creature-Soul and the Superior Soul or *Içwara*. (The creature-Soul becomes *Içwara* and *Içwara* also becomes the creature-Soul). What is meant by both living beings and *Içwara* holding the body in consciousness, is not very plain. Probably, this means that the body is unreal and exists only in consciousness as regards both living creatures and *Içwara* who when vested with conditions transforms himself into the former. The existence of the Objective world is denied by this school of philosophers, everything with it being only Subjective.—*T*.

car (which are represented by the acts of past lives), the Senses that are as steeds lead, through the region of consciousness, the man of wisdom towards that Increate and Unchangeable One. That Eternal One, endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).* The form of that One can not be displayed by any comparison. None ever beholdeth Him by the eye. They that know Him by the rapt faculties, the mind, and the heart, become freed from death. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye). The stream of illusion is terrible; guarded by the gods it hath twelve fruits. Drinking of its waters and beholding many sweet things in its midst, men swim along it too and fro. This stream flows from that Seed. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).† Destined to sojourn to and fro, the creature-Soul, having reflected, enjoyeth (in the other world) only half of the fruits of his acts. It is that creature-Soul which is *Içwara*. Pervading everything (in the universe), it is *Içwara* that hath ordained sacrifices. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).‡ Souls divested of accidents, resorting to *Avidyā* which

---

* The senses leading a wise man towards the Supreme Being, evidently means that the senses, when subdued, assist one's progress towards Divinity. It is possible for every Soul vested with conditions to cast off, by *Yoga*, those conditions and attain to an unconditioned existence which is *Brahma*.—*T*.

† The twelve which are afloat on the stream of life or *Avidyā* (Ignorance) are, *Chitta*, *Smarana*, *Crotra*, *Cravana*, *Vāk*, *Vachana*, *Cāvda*, *Viyat*, *Prāna*, *Cwasana*, *Samskàra*, and *Sukrita*. As far as one can understand these, there seems to be no order or principle of connection in the enumeration.—*T*.

‡ The necessity of such a theory is apparent. Work can be performed only in this world, the fruits whereof are enjoyable hereafter. If all the fruits of one's work here are exhausted by enjoyment in the other world, the necessity of returning is over, for then every soul would be emancipated. Hence, *all* the fruits of work are not exhausted. A portion remains, in consequence of which souls have to return to this world and commence work anew in consequence of the balances to their credit with which they are re-born. *Bhramara* is explained as "a wandering Soul," and *madhu* is typical of "the fruits of work."—*T*.

is like unto a tree of golden foliage, assume accidents and take births in different orders according to their propensities. That Eternal One endued with Divinity (in Whom all those Souls are united) is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).* Accidents (which coming in contact with *Brahma* make the latter assume many forms) raise the universe in its Fulness from that *Brahma* which is Full. Those accidents also, in their Fulness, arise from *Brahma* in its Fulness. When one succeeds in dispelling all accidents from *Brahma* which is ever Full, that which remains is *Brahma* in its Fulness. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).† It is from that Seed that the five elements

---

* *Hiranya* is explained as *Haran-çila*, *i. e.* "diverting one away from the true end which is *Brahma*." *Açwatha* is explained as *na cwo-api vartate i. e.* very transitory or ephemeral. The doctrine that is laid down here is the well-known one of the Vedantists. It is *Icwara* when vested with conditions that becomes the creature-Soul. Originally without wings, *i. e.* without conditions, it assumes conditions or wings here *i. e.* in this atmosphere or region of *Avidyā ;* and when conditions have been fully assumed, re-births take place in different orders according to the perdominance of particular propensities. The fact is, in this school of philosophy, it is believed that when the *linga carira* is destroyed, a subtile body is assumed in which all the constituent elements of the *linga carira*, *i. e*, vital airs, the will, the intellect, and the ten senses, exist in what is called *Tanmātra*, *i. e.* as abstract capacities alone dissociated from their grosser forms. That subtile existence also is destroyed by *Yoga*, and the process of destruction goes on till nothing like *Upādhi* remains, till, in fact, the absolute and unconditioned state, which is complete emancipation or *Brahma*, is attained. This *chit*-Soul or those that are divested of grosser *Upādhis* and are, therefore, almost akin to *Brahma*, notwithstanding such divestment, are not yet freed from the abstract capacities. According as a particular capacity predominates, the canine, the bovine, the human, &c., the *chit* is re-born as a dog, a bull, a man, &c.—*T.*

† What the *Rishi* says here is briefly this :—If it is *Brahma* that becomes *Jiva* or living creatures, when vested with *Upādhi*, the question then that arises is,—Is *Brahma* in its entirety vested with *Upādhi*, or are its parts so vested ? If it is *Brahma* in its entirety that is so vested, the consequence would be only one living creature and not many, because One, under such circumstances, cannot apparently be diversed. If, however, the visible plurality arises from the parts of *Brahma* com-

have arisen, and it is in it that the power resideth for controlling them. It is from that Seed that both the consumer and the consumed (called *Agni* and *Soma)* have sprung, and it is in it that the living organism with the senses rest. Everything should be regarded to have sprung from it. That Seed called in the *Vedas* THAT *(Tad)*, we are unable to describe. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).* The vital air called *Apāna* is swallowed up by the air called *Prāna*; *Prāna* is swallowed up by the Will, and the Will by the Intellect, and the Intellect by the Supreme Soul. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).† The Supreme Soul (endued with four legs called respectively Waking, Dream, profound Sleep, and *Turiya)*, like unto a swan, treading above, doth not put forth one leg that is hid deep. Unto him that beholdeth that leg *(viz, Turiya)* as put forth for the purpose of guiding the other three, both death and emancipation are the same. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).‡ Of the measure of

---

ing in contact with *Upādhis*, the consequence would be the admission of the divisibility of *Brahma* when the *Crutis* declare that "It is not divisible; it has no parts; it is always whole and full." These difficulties are got over by the supposition that while *Brahma* is whole and full, the *Upādhis* (diverse in number and proportion) oper as so many mirrors for catching so many reflections of *Brahma*. The plurality of the universe, therefore, in no way interferes with the wholeness or fulness of *Brahma*. Regarding the *Upādhis* themselves, they also have no existence separate from or independent of *Brahma*, or, as put in the text, *Purnāt purnāni chakrire*, thus harmonising with the declarations of the *Crutis*, *viz.*, "Everything is *Brahma*. There is nothing but *Brahma*. *Brahma* alone is everything."

Regarding the different meanings of *Purnāni* used in the text, there are sufficient indications in the text of the translation above.—*T.*

* *Vāyu* used symbollically for *all* the five elements. *Atatās* is lit. "spread," hence, "resting upon."—*T.*

† This is intelligible only to those that are familiar with *Yoga* practices. *Chandramas* and *Aditya* are used figuratively for the Will and the Intellect.—*T.*

‡ This is, perhaps, one of the most difficult *Slokas* of all in this

the thumb, ever Full, and different from this external organism, coming in contact with the vital airs, the Will, the Intellect, and the ten senses, it moveth to and fro. That Supreme Controller, worthy of reverential hymns, capable of everything when vested with accidents, and the prime Cause of everything, is manifest as Knowledge in creature-Souls. Fools alone do not behold Him. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).* Among individuals there are those that have obtained the mastery of their minds, and those that have not. Yet in all men the Supreme Soul may be seen equally. Indeed, it resideth equally in him that is emancipate and in him that is not, with only this difference that they that are emancipate obtain honey flowing in a thick jet. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).† When one maketh life's sojourn, having attained to the knowledge of Self and Not-self, then it matters little whether his *Agni-hotra* is performed or not. O monarch, let not thy words discover any abjectness. The Supreme Soul hath another name, *viz*, Pure Knowledge. They only that have restrained their minds obtain Him. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).‡ Even such is He. Illustrious and Full, all living creatures are

---

section. I have rendered it freely because a literal version would be thoroghly unintelligible. It should be observed here that the foot, called *Turiya*, of *Brahma*, is that state of knowledge which *Yogins* only arrive at. When reached, the past and the future become as present. Distance also is annihilated. *Satatam* is equivalent to *Vyāptam*; and *Urddhāya* (dative in the sense of purpose or object) is explained as *Pādatrayāya, teshām parichālanāya.—T.*

* *Of the measure of the thumb;* by this is intended that the abode of the Supreme Soul is the *heart* which is of that measure. *Purusha* is full. *Anukalpam* (accusative) means "capable of everything when vested with attributes," or, as Nilakantha says, *Upādhimanu sarvakāryeshu.—T.*

† *Maddhya* (adjective of *Madhu) Utsam* means "a honeyed jet." The sense is that they that are emancipate know him more completely and derive great joy from such knowledge.—*T.*

‡ *Ubhau lokau* is Self and Not-Self, or Soul and Not-Soul. *Vyāpya* is *Jnatvā* or *Prakācya.—T.*

swallowed up in Him. He that knoweth that embodiment of Fulness attaineth to his object (emancipation) even here. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye). That which flieth away streching forth thousands of thousands of wings, yea, if endued with the speed of the mind, must yet come back to the central Spirit within the living organism. (That in which the most distant things reside)—that Eternal One endued with Divinity—is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).* His form cannot be an object of sight. They only that are of pure hearts can behold Him. When one seeketh the good of all, succeedeth in controlling his mind, and never suffereth his heart to be affected by grief, then is he said to have purified his heart. Those again that can abandon the world and all its cares, become immortal. (That Supreme Soul which is undying),—that Eternal One endued with Divinity—is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye). Like serpents concealing themselves in holes, there are persons who following the dictates of their preceptors or by their own conduct conceal their vices from scrutiny's gaze. They that are of little sense are deceived by these. In fact, bearing themselves outwardly without any impropriety, these deceive their victims for leading them to hell. (Him, therefore, who may be attained by companionship with persons of the very opposite class),—that Eternal One endued with Divinity—is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).† He that is emancipate thinks,—This transitory organism can never make me liable to joy and grief and the other attributes inhering to it: nor can there be, in my case, anything like death and birth: and, further, when *Brahma*, which hath no opposing force to contend against and which is alike in all times and all places, constitutes the resting-place of both realities and unrealities, how can emancipation be mine?

---

* *Madhye* is *Carirasya madhye*, and *Madhyame* is *Madhyasthe, Paramecware.*—*T.*

† This distinctly alludes to a class of preceptors who while outwardly professing purity of behavior, were addicted to dark and unholy practices.—*T.*

It is I alone that am the origin and the end of all causes and effects.—(Existing in the form of I or Self) that Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye).* The *Brahma*-knowing person, who is equal unto *Brahma* itself, is neither glorified by good acts nor defiled by bad ones. It is only in ordinary men that acts, good or bad, produce different results. The person that knoweth *Brahma* should be regarded as identical with *Amrita* or the state called *Kaivalya* which is incapable of being affected by either virtue or vice. One should, therefore, disposing his mind in the way indicated, attain to that essence of sweetness *(Brahma)*. That Eternal One endued with Divinity is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye). Slander grieveth not the heart of the person that knoweth *Brahma*, nor the thought—*I have not studied (the Veda)*, or, *I have not performed my Agni-hotra.* The knowledge of *Brahma* soon imparteth to him that wisdom which they only obtain who have restrained their minds. (That *Brahma* which freeth the Soul from grief and ignorance)—that Eternal One endued with Divinity—is beheld by *Yogins* (by their mental eye). He, therefore, that beholdeth his own Self in everything, hath no longer to grieve, for they only have to grieve who are employed in diverse other occupations of the world. As one's purposes (of appeasing thirst &c.), may be served in a well as in a large reservoir of vast expanse, so the various purposes of the *Vedas* may all be derivable by him that knoweth the Soul.† Dwelling in the

---

* *Asatkritas* is explained by Nilakantha as meaning *Sukha-duskha-jarā-maranādi-dharma-van.—T.*

† This is a rather difficult *Sloka*, corresponding, almost word for word, with *Sloka* 46, Chap. II, of the *Bhagavad-gitā*. It is somewhat strange that none of the European or Indian translators of the *Gitā*, while particularly noticing *Sloka* 46 of Chap. II, has referred to the existence of *Sloka* 26 of this Section of the *Udyoga*. The *Gitā* has a whole host of clever commentators and no wonder that various interpretations should be suggested of such a passage. Of all these, Sridhara's explanation appears to me to be the best and easiest and consistent with both grammar and rhetoric. I am disposed to understand *Sloka* 26 here

heart, and of the measure of the thumb, that illustrious One—the embodiment of Fulness—is not an object of sight.* Unborn he moveth, awake day and night. He that knoweth Him, becometh both learned and full of joy. *I* am called the mother and father. *I* am again the son. Of all that is, of all that was, and of all that will be, *I* am the Soul.† O Bhārata, *I* am the old grandsire, *I* am the father, *I* am the son. Ye are staying in my soul, yet ye are not mine, nor am *I* yours! The Soul is the cause of my birth and procreation. *I* am the warp and woof of the universe. That upon which *I* rest is indestructible. Unborn I move, awake day and night. It is *I* knowing whom one becometh both learned and full of joy. Subtiler than the subtile, of excellent eyes, capable of looking into both the past and the future, *Brahma* is awake in every creature. They that know Him know that that Universal Father dwelleth in the heart of every created thing!'"

SECTION XLVI.

(Yānasandhi Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Thus conversing with Sanat-sujāta and the learned Vidura, the king passed that night. And

---

in the same sense, and accordingly I have rendered it above. Nilakantha interprets it in a wholly different way. The meaning he suggests is,—The *Vedas* contain many things. He that knows his Soul may easily seize from within them their essence, just as a man who is athirst or who wants to bathe need only take a small quantity of water from a reservoir of wide expanse. The meaning that Mr. K. T. Telang, the learned metrical translator of the *Gitā*, suggests (with diffidence though) is,—"a man can find in the *Vedas* the means of accomplishing various desires of one class, as he can find in a large reservoir the means of accomplishing various desires of another class." This is scarcely satisfactory.—*T.*

* In this *Sloka*, *Brahma* is described as both with and without attributes, for the *Crutis* declare,—"He hath attributes, and yet He hath no attributes."—*T.*

† *Nāsti*—what is not, *i. e*, both the past and the future, as explained by Nilakantha.—*T.*

after the night had passed away, all the princes and chiefs, entered the court hall with joyous hearts and desirous of seeing the *Suta* (who had returned). And anxious to hear the message of the Pārthas fraught with virtue and profit, all the kings with Dhritarāshtra at their head, went to that beautiful hall. Spotlessly white and spacious, it was adorned with a golden floor. And effulgent as the moon and exceedingly beautiful, it was sprinkled over with sandal water. And it was spread over with excellent seats made of gold and wood, and marble and ivory. And all the seats were wrapped with excellent covers. And Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and Calya, and Kritavarman and Jayadratha, and Aswathāman and Vikarna, and Somadatta and Vālhika and Vidura of great wisdom and Yuyutsu the great car-warrior,—all these heroic kings in a body, O bull among the Bharatas, having Dhritarāshtra at their head, entered that hall of great beauty. And Dusçāsana and Chitrasena, and Cakuni the son of Suvala, and Durmukha and Dussaha, and Karna and Uluka and Vivinçati,—these also, with Duryodhana the wrathful king of the Kurus at their head, entered that hall, O monacrh, like the celestials forming the train of Cakra himself. And filled with these heroes possessed of arms like maces of iron, that hall looked, O king, like a mountain-cave filled with lions. And all these mighty bowmen endued with great energy and blazing with solar effulgence, entering the hall, seated themselves on those beautiful seats. And after all those kings, O Bhārata, had taken their seats, the orderly-in-wating announced the arrival of the *Suta's* son, saying,—'Yonder cometh the car that was despatched to the Pāndavas! Our envoy hath returned quickly, by the aid of well-trained steeds of the *Sindhu* breed!' And having approached the place with speed and alighted from the car, Sanjaya adorned with ear-rings entered that hall full of high-souled kings. And the *Suta* said,—'Ye Kauravas, know that having gone to the Pāndavas I am just returning from them! The sons of Pāndu offer their congratulations to all the Kurus according to the age of each. Having offered their respects in return, the sons of Prithā have saluted the aged ones, and those that are equal to them in years, and those also that are

younger, just as each should, according to his years, be saluted. Listen, ye kings, to what I, instructed before by Dhritarāshtra, said to the Pāndavas, having gone to them from this place!' "

SECTION XLVII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I ask thee, O Sanjaya, in the presence, O child, of these kings, what words were said by the illustrious Dhananjaya of might that knoweth no diminution,—that leader of warriors,—that destroyer of the lives of the wicked?'

"Sanjaya said,—'Let Duryodhana listen to the words which the high-souled Arjuna, eager for fight, uttered, with Yudhishthira's sanction and in the hearing of Keçava! Fearless (in battle) and conscious of the might of his arms, the heroic Kiritin, eager for fight, spoke thus unto me in the presence of Vāsudeva,—Do thou, O *Suta*, say unto Dhritarāshtra's son, in the presence of all the Kurus, and also in the hearing of that *Suta's* son of foul tongue and wicked soul, of little sense, stupid reason, and numbered days, who always desires to fight with me, and also in the hearing of those kings assembled for battling with the Pāndavas, and do thou see that all the words now uttered by me are heard well by that king with his counsellors!—O monarch, (continued Sanjaya), even as the celestials eagerly listen to the words of their chief armed with the thunderbolt, so did the Pāndavas and the Crinjayas listen to those words of grave import uttered by Kiritin! Even these are the words spoken by Arjuna the wielder of *Gāndiva*, eager for the fight and with eyes red as the lotus,—If Dhritarāshtra's son doth not surrender to king Yudhishthira of the Ājamida race his kingdom, then (it is evident) there must be some sinful act committed before by the sons of Dhritarāshtra, whose consequences are yet unreaped by them, for it can be nothing else when they desire battle with Bhimasena and Arjuna, and the Aswins and Vāsudeva, and Cini's son and Dhrishtadyumna infallible in arms, and Cikhandin, and Yudhisthira who is like Indra himself and who can consume heaven

and earth by merely wishing them ill! If Dhritarāshtra's son desireth war with these, then are all the aims of the Pāndavas accomplished! Do not, therefore, propose peace for the sons of Pāndu, but have war if thou likest. That bed of woe in the woods which was Yudhishthira's when that virtuous son of Pāndu lived in exile, Oh, let a more painful bed than that, on the bare earth, be now Duryodhana's and let him lie down on it as his last, deprived of life! Win thou over those men that were ruled by the wicked Duryodhana of unjust conduct to the side of Pāndu's son endued with modesty and wisdom and asceticism and self-restraint and valor and might regulated by virtue! Endued with humility and righteousness, with asceticism and self-restraint and with valour regulated by virtue, and always speaking the truth, our king, though afflicted by numerous deceptions, hath forgiven all and hath patiently borne great wrongs. When the eldest son of Pāndu, of soul under proper control, will indignantly dart at the Kurus his terrible wrath accumulated for years, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. As a blazing fire burning all around consumeth dry grass in the hot season, so will Yudhishthira, inflamed with wrath, consume the Dhārtarāshtra host by a glance alone of his eye. When Dhritarāshtra's son will behold Bhimasena, that wrathful Pāndava of terrific impetus, stationed on his car, or mace in hand, vomitting the venom of his wrath, then will Duryodhana repent for this war. Indeed, when he will behold Bhimasena who always fighteth in the van, accoutred in mail, scarcely capable of being looked at even by his own followers, felling hostile heroes and devastating the enemy's ranks like *Yama* himself, then will the exceedingly vain Duryodhana recollect these words. When he will behold elephants, looking like mountain peaks, felled by Bhimsena, blood flowing from their broken heads like water from broken casks, then will Dhritarāshtra's son repent for this war. When falling upon the sons of Dhritarāshtra the fierce Bhima of terrible mien, mace in hand, will slaughter them like a huge lion falling upon a herd of kine, then will Duryodhana repent for this war. When the heroic Bhima undaunted even in situations of great danger and skilled in weap-

ons,—when that grinder of hostile hosts in battle,—mounted on his car and alone, will crush by his mace crowds of superior cars and entire ranks of infantry, seize by his nooses strong as iron the elephants of the hostile army, and mow down the Dhārtarāshtra host like a sturdy woodsman cutting a forest down with an axe, then will Dhritarāshtra's son repent for this war. When he will behold the Dhārtarāshtra host consumed like a hamlet full of straw-built huts by fire, or a field of ripe corn by lightning,—indeed, when he will behold his vast army scattered, its leaders slain, and the men running with their backs towards the field afflicted with fear, and all the warriors humbled to the dust, being scorched by Bhimasena with the fire of his weapons,—then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When Nakula, that warrior of wonderful feats, that foremost of all car-warriors, dexterously shooting arrows by hundreds, will mangle the car-warriors of Duryodhana, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. Accustomed to enjoy all the comforts and luxuries of life, when Nakula, recollecting that bed of woe on which he had slept for a long time in the woods, will vomit the poison of his wrath like an angry snake, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. Ready to lay down their very lives, the (allied) monarchs, O *Suta*, urged to battle by king Yudhishthira the just, will furiously advance, on their resplendent cars, against the (hostile) army. Beholding this, the son of Dhritarāshtra will certainly have to repent. When the Kuru prince will behold the five heroic sons (of Draupadi), children in years but not in acts, and all well-versed in arms, rush, reckless of their lives, against the Kauravas, then will that son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When bent upon carnage Sahadeva, mounted on his car of noiseless wheels and motion incapable of being obstructed, and set with golden stars and drawn by well-trained steeds, will make the heads of monarchs roll on the field of battle with volleys of arrows,—indeed, beholding that warrior skilled in weapons seated on his car in the midst of that frightful havoc, turning now to the left and now to the right and falling upon the foe in all directions,—then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. Indeed, when the modest but

mighty Sahadeva, skilled in battle, truthful, conversant with all the ways of morality, and endued with great activity and impetuousness, will fall upon the son of Gāndhāra in fierce encounter and rout all his followers, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When he will behold the sons of Draupadi, those great bowmen, those heroes skilled in weapons and well-versed in all the ways of car-fight, dart at the foe like snakes of virulent poison, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When that slayer of hostile heroes, Abhimanyu skilled in arms like Krishna himself, will overpower the foe showering upon them like the very clouds a thick downpour of arrows, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. Indeed, when he will behold that son of Subhadrā, a child in years but not in energy, skilled in weapons and like unto Indra himself, falling like Death's self upon the ranks of the foe, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When the youthful *Prabhadrakas*, endued with great activity, well-versed in battle, and possessed of the energy of lions, will overthrow the sons of Dhritarāshtra with all their troops, then will Duryodhana repent for this war. When those veteran car-warriors Virāta and Drupada will assail, at the head of their respective divisions, the sons of Dhritarāshtra and their ranks, then will Duryodhana repent for this war. When Drupada, skilled in weapons, and seated on his car, desirous of plucking the heads of youthful warriors, will wrathfully strike them off with arrows shot from his bow, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When that slayer of hostile heroes, Virāta, will penetrate into the ranks of the foe, grinding all before him with the aid of his *Matsya* warriors of cool courage, then will the son Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When he will behold in the very van the eldest son of the Matsya king, of cool courage and collected mien, seated on his car and accoutred in mail in behalf of the Pāndavas, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. I tell thee truly that when that foremost of Kaurava heroes, the virtuous son of Cāntanu, will be slain in battle by Cikhandin, then all our foes, without doubt, will perish. Indeed, when, overthrowing numerous car-warriors, Cikhandin, seated on his

own well-protected car, will proceed towards Bhishma, crushing multitudes of (hostile) cars by means of his own powerful steeds, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When he will behold Dhristadyumna unto whom Drona hath imparted all the mysteries of the science of weapons, stationed in splendour in the very van of the Crinjaya ranks, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent. Indeed, when that leader of the Pāndava host, of immeasurable prowess and capable of withstanding the rush of any force, will proceed to attack Drona in battle, crushing with his arrows the Dhārtarāshtra ranks, then will Duryodhana repent for this war. What enemy can withstand him who hath, for fighting in his van, that lion of the Vrishni race, that chief of the Somakas, who is modest and intelligent, mighty and endued with great energy, and blessed with every kind of prosperity ?* Say also this (unto Duryodhana),—Do not covet (the kingdom). We have chosen, for our leader, the dauntless and mighty car-warrior Sātyakin the grandson of Cini, skilled in weapons and having none on earth as his equal. Of broad chest and long arms, that grinder of foes, unrivalled in battle, and acquainted with the best of weapons,—the grandson of Cini, skilled in arms and perfectly dauntless, is a mighty car-warrior wielding a bow of full four cubits' length. When that slayer of foes, that chief of the Cinis, urged by me, will shower like the very clouds his arrows on the foe, completely overwhelming their leaders with that downpour, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When that illustrious warrior of long arms and firm grasp of the bow musters his resolution for fight, the foe then, like kine smelling the scent of the lion, fly away from him before even commencing the encounter. That illustrious warrior of long arms and firm grasp of the bow is capable of splitting the very hills and destroying the entire universe. Practised in weapons, skilled (in battle), and endued with exceeding lightness of hand, he shineth on the field of battle like the Sun himself in the sky. That lion of the Vrishni race, that scion of Yadu's line, of superior training, hath di-

* Sātyaki.—T.

verse wonderful and excellent weapons. Indeed, Sātyaki is possessed of a knowledge of all those uses of weaons that are said to be highly excellent. When he will behold in battle the golden car of Sātyaki of Madhu's race, drawn by four white steeds, then will that wretch of uncontrolled passions, the son of Dhritarāshtra, repent. When also he will behold my terrible car endued with the effulgence of gold and bright gems, drawn by white steeds and furnished with the banner bearing the device of the ape and guided by Keçava himself, then will that wretch of uncontrolled passions repent. When he will hear the fierce twang produced by the constant stretch of the bow-string with fingers cased in leathern fence,—that terrible twang, loud as the rolling of the thunder, of my bow *Gāndiva* wielded by me in the midst of the great battle,—then will that wicked wretch, the son of Dhritarāshtra, repent, beholding himself abandoned by his troops flying away like kine from the field of battle in all directions overwhelmed by the darkness created by my arrowy downpour. When he will behold innumerable keen-edged arrows furnished with beautiful wings and capable of penetrating into the very vitals, shot from the string of *Gāndiva*, like fierce and terrible flashes of lightning emitted by the clouds, destroying enemies by thousands, and devouring numberless steeds and elephants clad in mail, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When he will behold the arrows shot by the enemy turned off or turned back struck by my shafts or cut to pieces pierced transversely by my arrows, then will the foolish son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When broad-headed arrows shot by my hands will strike off the heads of youthful warriors like birds* picking off fruits from tree-tops, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When he will behold excellent warriors of his falling down from their cars, and elephants and steeds rolling on the field, deprived of life by my arrows, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When he will behold

---

* *Dwija* or "twice born" means any oviparous animal, as a bird, a snake, a fish. Here the word means "birds," and not, as some explain, the "twice-born Brahmanas."—T.

his brothers, before even fairly coming within the range of the enemy's weapons, die all around, without having achieved anything in battle, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When pouring my blazing shafts incessantly, I will, like Death himself with mouth wide open, destroy on all sides multitudes of cars and foot-soldiers, then will that wretch repent. When he will behold his own troops, covered with the dust raised by my car wandering in all directions, torn to peices by *Gāndiva* and reft of sense, then will that wretch repent. When he will behold his whole army running away in fear on all directions, mangled in limbs, and bereft of sense; when he will behold his steeds, elephants, and foremost of heroes slain; when he will see his troops thirsty, struck with panic, wailing aloud, dead and dying, with their animals exhausted, and hair, bones and skulls lying in heaps around like half-wrought works of the Creator, then will that wretch repent. When he will behold on my car, *Gāndiva*, and Vāsudeva, and the celestial conch *Pānchajannya*, myself, my couple of inexhaustible quivers, and my conch called *Devadatta*, as also my white steeds, then will the son of Dhritarāshtra repent for this war. When I will consume the Kauravas, like *Agni* consuming innumerable wicked souls assembled together at the time of ushering in another *Yuga* at the end of the last one, then will Dhritarāshtra with all his sons repent. When the wicked-hearted and the wrathful son of Dhritarāshtra will be deprived of prosperity with brothers and army and followers, then, reft of pride and losing heart and trembling all over, will that fool repent. One morning when I had finished my water-rites and prayers, a Brāhmana spoke unto me these pleasant words,—O Pārtha, thou shalt have to execute a very difficult task; O Savyasāchin, thou shalt have to fight with thy foes! *Either Indra riding on his excellent steed and thunder-bolt in hand will walk before thee slaying thy foes in battle, or Krishna, the son of Vasudeva, will protect thee from behind riding on his car drawn by the steeds headed by Sugriva!*—Relying on those words, I have, in this battle, passing over Indra the weilder of the thunder-bolt, preferred Vāsudeva as my ally. That Krishna

hath been obtained by me for the destruction of those wicked ones! I see the hand of the deities in all this! The person whose success is only wished for by Krishna without the latter's actually taking up arms in his behalf, is certain to prevail over all enemies, even if these be the celestials with Indra at their head, while anxiety there is none if they be human.* He that wisheth to conquer in battle that foremost of heroes, Vasudeva's son Krishna endued with great energy, wisheth to cross by his two arms alone the great ocean of wide expanse and immeasurable water. He that wisheth to split by a slap of his palm the high Kailāsa mountain, is not able to do the slightest damage to the mountain although his hand only with its nails is sure to wear away. He that would conquer Vāsudeva in battle, would, with his two arms, extinguish a blazing fire, stop the Sun and the Moon, and plunder by force the *Amrita* of the gods,—that Vāsudeva, *viz*, who, having mowed down in battle by main force all the royal warriors of the Bhoja race, had carried off on a single car Rukmini of great fame for making her his wife and in whom was afterwards born Praddyumna of high soul! It was this favorite† of the gods, who, having speedily smashed the Gāndhāras and conquered all the sons of Nagnajit, forcibly liberated from confinement king Sudarçana of great energy. It was he that slew king Pāndya by striking his breast‡ against his, and mowed down the Kalingas in battle. Burnt by him, the city of Vārānasi remained for many years without a king. Incapable of being defeated by others, Ekalavya the king of the Nishādas always used to challenge this one to battle; but slain by Krishna he lay dead like the Asura *Jambha* violently thrashed on a hillock. It was Krishna who, having Valadeva for his second, slew Ugrasena's wicked son seated in court in the midst of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, and then gave unto

---

* Many texts ommit this *Sloka*.—*T*.

† *Lalāma* in the sense of "beautiful" or "charming" is confined by many authorities to the neuter gender. It ought to be connected, therefore, with the personal pronoun *Ayam*, and not with *Sudarçanam*.—*T*.

‡ Some texts read *Kapāte nijaghāna* meaning "slew in the city of Kapāta."—*T*.

Ugrasena the kingdom. It was Krishna who fought with king Cālva, the lord of Saubha, fearless in consequence of his powers of illusion and stationed in the skies, and it was he who at the gate of Saubha caught with his hands the fierce *Çataghni** (hurled by Saubha's lord). What mortal is able to bear his might. The *Asuras* had a city named *Prāgyotisha* which was formidable, inaccessible and unbearable. It was there that the mighty Naraka, the son of the Earth, kept the jewelled ear-rings of Aditi, having brought them by force. The very gods who, fearless of death, assembled together with Cakra at their head, were incapable of conquering him. Beholding Keçava's prowess, and might, and weapon that is irresistible, and knowing also the object of his birth, the gods employed him for the destruction of those *Asuras*. Vāsudeva, too, endued with all the divine attributes that ensure success, agreed to undertake that exceedingly difficult task. In the city of *Nirmochana* that hero slew six thousand *Asuras*, and cutting into pieces innumerable keen-edged shafts, he slew Mura and hosts of Rākshasas, and then entered that city. It was there that an encounter took place between the mighty Naraka and Vishnu of immeasurable strength. Slain by Krishna, Naraka lay lifeless there like a *Karnikāra* tree uprooted by the wind. Having slain the Earth's son Naraka, and also Mura, and recovered those jewelled ear-rings, the learned Krishna of unparalleled prowess come back, adorned with beauty and undying fame. Having witnessed his terrible feats in that battle, the gods then and there granted him boons, saying, *Fatigue will never be thine in fight; neither the firmament nor the waters shall stop thy course: nor shall weapons penetrate thy body!* And Krishna, at all this, regarded himself amply rewarded. Immeasurable, and possessed of great might, in Vāsudeva are ever all the virtues! And yet the son of Dhritarāshtra seeketh to vanquish that unbearable Vishnu of infinite energy, for that wretch often thinks of

---

* This is the ancient *Indian* rocket. It is so called probably from its ability to kill a hundred warriors at a time. Some have even supposed it to represent a rudecannon.—T.

imprisoning him. Krishna, however, beareth all this for our sake only. That wretch seeketh to create a sudden disunion between Krishna and myself. How far, however, he is capable of taking away the affection of Krishna from the Pāndavas, he will see on the field of battle. Having bowed down unto Cāntanu's son, and also Drona with his son, and the unrivalled son of Caradwat, I shall fight for regaining our kingdom. The god of justice himself will bring destruction on that sinful man, I am sure, who will fight with the Pāndavas! Deceitfully defeated at dice by those wretches, ourselves of royal birth had to pass twelve years in great distress in the forest and one long year in a state of concealment. When those Pāndavas are still alive, how shall the sons of Dhritarāshtra rejoice, possessing rank and affluence? If they vanquish us in fight, aided by the very gods headed by Indra, the practice then of vice would be better than virtue, and surely there would be nothing like righteousness on earth. If man is affected by his acts, if we be superior to Duryodhana, then, I hope that, with Vāsudeva as my second, I shall slay Duryodhana with all his kinsmen. O lord of men, if the act of robbing us of our kingdom be wicked, if these our own good deeds be not fruitless, then, beholding both this and that, it seems to me that the overthrow of Duryodhana is certain. Ye Kauravas, ye will see it with your eyes that, if they fight, the sons of Dritarāshtra shall certainly perish! If they act otherwise instead of fighting then they may live; but in the event of a battle ensuing, none of them will be left alive! Slaying all the sons of Dhritarāshtra along with Karna, I shall surely wrest the whole of their kingdom. Do ye, meanwhile, whatever ye think best, and enjoy also your wives and other sweet things of life! There are, with us, many aged *Brāhmanas* versed in various sciences, of amiable behaviour, well-born, acquainted with the cycle of the year, engaged in the study of astrology, capable of understanding with certainty the motions of planets and the conjunctions of stars as also of explaining the mysteries of fate and answering questions relating to the future, acquainted with the signs of the Zodiac, and versed with the occurrences of every hour, who

are prophesying the great destruction of the Kurus and the Srinjayas, and the ultimate victory of the Pāndavas, so that Yudhishthira who never made an enemy already regardeth his objects fulfilled in consequence of the slaughter of his foes! And Janārddana also, that lion among the Vrishnis, endued with the knowledge of the invisible future, without doubt, beholdeth all this. And I also, with unerring foresight, myself behold that future, for that foresight of mine, acquired of old, is not obstructed! The sons of Dhritarāshtra, if they fight, will not live! My bow, *Gāndiva*, yawneth without being handled; my bowstring trembleth without being streched; and my arrows also, issuing from my quiver's mouth, are again and again seeking to fly. My bright scimitar issueth of itself from its sheath like a snake quitting his own decayed slough; and on the top of my flagstaff are heard terrific voices—*When shall thy car be yoked, O Kiritin!*—Innumerable jackals set up hideous howls at night, and *Rākshasas* frequently alight from the sky; deer and jackals and peacocks, crows and vultures and cranes, and wolves and birds of golden plumage, follow in the rear of my car when my white steeds are yoked unto it! Single-handed, I can despatch, with arrowy showers, all warlike kings, to the regions of Death. As a blazing fire consumeth a forest in the hot season, so, exhibiting diverse courses, I will hurl those great weapons called *Sthunā-karna*, *Pāçupata*, and *Brāhma*, and all those that Cakra gave me, all of which are endued with fierce impetuosity. And with their aid, setting my heart on the destruction of those monarchs, I will leave no remnant of those that come to the field of battle. I will rest, having done all this. Even this is my chief and decided resolve. Tell them this, O son of Gavalgani! Look at the folly of Duryodhana! O *Suta*, they that are invincible in battle even if encountered with the aid of the very gods headed by Indra,—even against them that son of Dhritarāshtra thinketh of warring! But so let it be even as the aged Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, and Kripa, and Drona with his son, and Vidura endued with great wisdom, are saying! May the Kuravas all live long!—'"

Section XLVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"In the midst, O Bhārata, of all those assembled kings, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu then said these words unto Duryodhana,—'Once on a time, Vrihaspati and Cukra went to Brahman. The Maruts also with Indra, the Vasus with Agni, the Ādityas, the Sādhyas, the seven celestial *Rishis*, the *Gandharva* Viçwāvasu, and the beautiful tribes of the Apsaras, all approached the ancient Grandsire. And having bowed down unto that Lord of the universe, all those dwellers of heaven sat around him. Just then, the two ancient deities, the *Rishis* Nara and Nārāyana, as if drawing unto themselves by their own energy the minds and energies of all who were present there, left the place. Thereupon Vrihaspati asked Brahman, saying,—*Who are these two that leave the place without worshipping thee? Tell us, O Grandsire, who they are!*—Thus asked, Brahman said,—These two, endued with ascetic merit, blazing with effulgence and beauty, illuminating both the earth and the heaven, possessed of great might, and pervading and surpassing all, are Nara and Nārāyana, dwelling now in the region of *Brahman*, having arrived from the other world. Endued with great might and prowess, they shine in consequence of their own asceticism. By their acts they always contribute to the joy of the world. Worshipped by the gods and the Gandharvas, they exist only for the destruction of *Asuras!*—'

"Bhishma continued.—'Having heard these words, Cakra went to the spot where those two were practising ascetic austerities, accompanied by all the celestials and having Vrihaspati at their head. At that time the dwellers of heaven had been very much alarmed in consequence of a war raging between themselves and the *Asuras*. And Indra asked that illustrious couple to grant him a boon. Thus solicited, O best of the Bharata race, those two said,—*Name thou the boon.*—Upon this Cakra said unto them,—*Give us your aid!*—They then said unto Cakra,—*We will do what thou wishset!*—And then it was with their aid that Cakra subsequently

vanquished the *Daityas* and the *Dānavas*. The chastiser of foes, Nara, slew in battle hundreds and thousands of Indra's foes among the *Paulomas* and the *Kālakanjas*. It was this Arjuna who, riding on a whirling car, severed in battle, with a broad-headed arrow, the head of the *Asura* Jambha while the latter was about to swallow him. It was he who afflicted (the *Daitya* city of) Hiranyapura on the other side of the ocean, having vanquished in battle sixty thousands of Nivāta-kavachas. It was this conqueror of hostile towns, this Arjuna of mighty arms, that gratified Agni, having vanquished the very gods with Indra at their head. And Nārāyana also hath, in this world, destroyed in the same way numberless other *Daityas* and *Dānavas*. Even such are those two of mighty energy that are now seen united with each other. It hath been heard by us that the two heroic and mighty car-warriors, Vāsudeva and Arjuna, that are now united with each other, are those same ancient gods, the divine Nara and Nārāyana! Amongst all on earth they are incapable of being vanquished by the *Asuras* and the gods headed by Indra himself. That Nārāyana is Krishna, and that Nara is Fālguna. Indeed, they are one Soul born in twain. These two, by their acts, enjoy numerous eternal and inexhaustible regions, and are repeatedly born in those worlds when destructive wars are neccessary. For this reason their mission is to fight. Even this is what Nārada, conversant with the *Vedas*, had said unto the Vrishnis. When thou, O Duryodhana, wilt see Keçava with conch-shell and discus, and mace in hand, and that terrible wielder of the bow, Arjuna, armed with weapons, when thou wilt behold those eternal and illustrious ones, the two Krishnas seated on the same car, then wilt thou, O child, remember these my words! Why should not such danger threaten the Kurus when thy intellect, O child, hath fallen off from both profit and virtue? If thou heedest not my words, thou shalt then have to hear of the slaughter of many, for all the Kuravas accept thy opinion!* Thou art alone in holding as true

* I think the reading *tavaiva* is a mistake for *tadeva*. If this correction were made, the meaning would be more significant. The

the opinion, O bull of the Bharata race, of only three persons, *viz*, Karna a low-born *Suta's* son cursed by Rāma, Cakuni the son of Suvala, and thy mean and sinful brother Dusçāsana !'

"Karna said,—'It behoveth thee not, O blessed grandsire, to use such words towards me, for I have adopted the duties of the *Kshatriya* order without falling off from those of my own! Besides, what wickedness is there in me? I have no sin known to any one of Dhritarāshtra's people! I have never done any injury to Dhritarāshtra's son; on the other hand, I will slay all the Pāndavas in battle! How can they that are wise make peace again with those that have before been injured? It is always my duty to do all that is agreeable to king Dhritarāshtra, and especially to Duryodhana, for he is in possession of the kingdom!'"

Vaiçampayana continued.—"Having listened to these words of Karna, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, addressing king Dhritarāshtra, again said,—'Although this one often boasteth, saying, —*I shall slay the Pāndavas*,—yet he is not equal to even a sixteenth part of the high-souled Pāndavas! Know that the great calamity that is about to overtake thy sons of wicked souls, is the act of this wretched son of a *Suta!* Relying upon him, thy foolish son Suyodhana hath insulted those heroes of celestial descent, those chastisers of all foes! What, however, is that difficult feat achieved by this wretch before that is equal to any of those achieved of old by every one of the Pāndavas? Beholding in the city of Virāta his beloved brother slain by Dhananjaya who displayed such prowess, what did this one then do? When Dhananjaya, rushing against all the assembled Kurus, crushed them and took away their robes, was this one not there then? When thy son was being led away as a captive by the *Gandharvas* on the

---

sense then would be—"Even that is the opinion regardfully accepted by all the Kurus!" The contrast also of this with what follows would then be very pointed, and Duryodhana's folly in listening to the counsels of only *three* persons would appear more strongly. As, however, none of the printed editions have *tadeva*, I have followed the reading I have found without correcting it.—T.

occasion of the tale of the cattle, where was this son of a *Suta* then who now belloweth like a bull? Even there, it was Bhima, and the illustrious Pārtha, and the twins, that encountered the *Gandharvas* and vanquished them! Ever boastful, and always unmindful of both virtue and profit, these, O bull of the Bharata race, are the many false things, blessed be thou, that this one uttereth!'

"Having heard these words of Bhishma, the high-souled son of Bharadwāja, having paid due homage unto Dhritarāshtra and the assembled kings, spoke unto him these words, —'Do that, O king, which the best of the Bharatas, Bhishma, hath said! It behoveth thee not to act according to the words of those that are covetous of wealth. Peace with the Pāndavas, before the war breaks out, seems to be the best. Everything said by Arjuna and repeated here by Sanjaya, will, I know, be accomplished by that son of Pāndu, for there is no bowman equal unto him in the three worlds!' Without regarding, however, these words spoken by both Drona and Bhishma, the king again asked Sanjaya about the Pāndavas. From that moment, when the king returned not a proper answer to Bhishma and Drona, the Kuravas gave up all hopes of life."

SECTION XLIX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'What did that Pāndava-king, the son of Dharma, say, O Sanjaya, after hearing that a large force hath been assembled here for gladdening us? How also is Yudhishthira acting, in view of the coming strife, O *Suta*? Who amongst his brothers and sons are looking up to his face, desirous of receiving his orders? Provoked as he is by the deceptions of my wicked sons, who again are dissuading that king of virtuous behaviour and conversant with virtue, saying,—*Have peace?*'"

"Sanjaya said,—'All the Pānchālas along with the other sons of Pāndu are looking up to Yudhishthira's face, blessed be thou, and he too is restraining them all. Multitudes of cars belonging to the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas are coming in separate bodies for gladdening Yudhishthira the son of

Kunti ready to march to the field of battle. As the sky brightens up at the advent of the rising sun, so the Pānchālas are rejoicing at their union with Kunti's son of blazing splendour and risen like a flood of light. The Pānchālas, the Kekayas, and the Matsyas, along with the very herdsmen that attend on their kine and sheep, are rejoicing and gladdening Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu. Brāhmani and Kshatriyā girls, and the very daughters of the Vaiçyas, in large numbers, are coming in playful mood for beholding Pārtha accoutred in coat of mail !'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell us, O Sanjaya, of the forces of Dhrishtadyumna, as also of the Somakas, and of all others, with which the Pāndavas intend to fight with us !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—" Thus interrogated, in the midst of the Kurus and in their very hall, the son of Gāvalgani became thoughtful for a moment and seemed to draw repeatedly deep and long sighs. And suddenly he fell down in a swoon without any apparent reason. Then, in that assembly of kings, Vidura said loudly,—'Sanjaya, O great king, hath fallen down on the ground senseless, and cannot utter a word, bereft of sense and his intellect clouded !'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—' Without doubt, Sanjaya, having seen those mighty car-warriors, the sons of Kunti, hath his mind filled with great anxiety in consequence of those tigers among men.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having recovered consciousness, and being comforted, Sanjaya addressed king Dhritarāshtra in the midst of that concourse of Kurus in that hall, saying,—'Indeed, O king of kings, I saw those great warriors, the sons of Kunti, thinned in body in consequence of the restraint in which they had lived in the palace of the king of the Matsyas. Hear, O king, with whom the Pāndavas will contend against you ! With that hero Dhrishtadyumna as their ally, they will fight against you ! With that personage of virtuous soul, who never forsaketh truth through anger or fear, temptation or the sake of wealth, or disputation ; and who is, O king, a very authority in matters of religion, himself being the best of those that practise virtue ;—with

him who hath never made an enemy, the sons of Pāndu will fight against you! He unto whom no one on earth is equal in might of arms, and who wielding his bow had brought all kings under subjection, and who vanquished of old the people of Kāçi and Anga and Magadha, as also the Kalingas;—with that Bhima-sena will the sons of Pāndu fight against you! Indeed, he through whose might the four sons of Pāndu quickly alighted on the earth, having issued forth from the (burning) house of lac; that son of Kunti, Vrikodara, who became the means of their rescue from the cannibal Hidimva; that son of Kunti, Vrikodara, who became their refuge when the daughter of Yajnasena was being ravished by Jayadratha; indeed, with that Bhima who rescued the assembled Pāndavas from the conflagration at *Vāranāvata*; even with him (as their ally) will they fight against you. He who for the gratification of Krishnā slew the *Krodhavasas*, having penetrated the rugged and terrible mountains of *Gandhamādana*, he to whose arms hath been imparted the might of ten thousand elephants, with that Bhimasena (as their ally) the Pāndavas will fight against you. That hero who, for the gratification of *Agni*, with Krishna only for his second, bravely vanquished of yore Purandara in fight; he who gratified by combat that God of gods, the trident-bearing lord of Umā—*Mahādeva* himself having the mountains for his abode; that foremost of warriors who subjugated all the kings of the earth; with that Vijaya (as their ally) the Pāndavas will encounter you in battle. That wonderful warrior Nakula, who vanquished the whole of the western world teeming with *Mlecchas*, is present in the Pāndava camp. With that handsome hero, that unrivalled bowman, that son of Mādri, O Kauravya, the Pāndavas will fight against you! He who vanquished in battle the warriors of Kāçi, Anga, and Kalinga,—with that Sahadeva will the Pāndavas encounter you in battle! He who in energy hath for his equals only four men on earth, *viz*, Açwathāman and Dhrishtaketu and Rukmi and Pradyumna,—with that Sahadeva youngest in years, that hero among men, that gladdener of Mādri's heart,—with him, O king, will you have a destructive battle! She who, while

living of yore as the daughter of the king of Kāçi, had practised the austerest penances; she who, O bull of the Bharata race, desiring even in a subsequent life to compass the destruction of Bhishma, took her birth as the daughter of Pānchāla, and accidently became afterwards a male; who, O tiger among men, is conversant with the merits and demerits of both sexes; that invincible prince of Pānchāla who encountered the Kalingas in battle, with that Cikhandin skilled in every weapon, the Pāndavas will fight against you. She whom a *Yaksha* for Bhishma's destruction metamorphosed into a male, with that formidable bowman the Pāndavas will fight against you! With those mighty bowmen, brothers all, those five *Kekaya* princes, with those heroes clad in mail, will the Pāndavas fight against you! With that warrior of long arms, endued with great activity in the use of weapons, possessed of intelligence and prowess incapable of being baffled, with that Yuyudhāna the lion of the Vrishni race, will you have to fight! He who had been the refuge of the high-souled Pāndavas for a time, with that Virāta ye will have an encounter in battle! The lord of Kāçi, that mighty car-warrior who ruleth in Vārānasi, hath become an ally of theirs; with him will the Pāndavas fight against you! The high-souled sons of Draupadi, children in years but invincible in battle, and unapproachable like snakes of virulent poison, with them will the Pāndavas fight against you! He that in energy is like unto Krishna and in self-restraint unto Yudhishthira, with that Abhimanyu will the Pāndavas fight against you! That warlike son of Cicupāla, Dhristaketu of great fame, who in energy is beyond compare and who when angry is incapable of being withstood in battle, with that king of the *Chedis* who has joined the Pāndavas at the head of an *Akshauhini* of his own, will the sons of Pāndu fight against you. He that is the refuge of the Pāndavas even as Vāsava is of the celestials, with that Vāsudeva will the Pāndavas fight against you. He also, O bull of Bharata race, Carabha the brother of the king of the *Chedis*, who again is united with Karakarça,—with both these will the Pāndavas fight against you. Sahadeva the son of Jarāsandha, and Jayatsena, both

unrivalled heroes in battle, are resolved upon fighting for the Pāndavas. And Drupada too, possessed of great might, and followed by a large force, and reckless of his life, is resolved to fight for the Pāndavas. Relying upon these and other kings by hundreds, of both the Eastern and the Northern countries, king Yudhishthira the just is prepared for battle.' "

SECTION L.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'All these named by thee are, indeed, endued with great courage, but all of them together are equal to Bhima singly. My fear, O child, from the wrathful Bhima is, indeed, very great, like that of a fat* deer from an enraged tiger! I pass all my nights in sleeplessness, breathing deep and hot sighs, afeared of Vrikodara, O child, like an animal of any other species afeared of the lion! Of mighty arms, and in energy equal unto Cakra himself, I see not in this whole army even one that can withstand him in battle. Exceedingly wrathful and firm in animosity, that son of Kunti and Pāndu smileth not even in jest, is mad with rage, casteth his glances obliquely, and speaketh in a voice of thunder. Of great impetuosity and great courage, of long arms and great might, he will not, in battle, leave even one of my foolish sons alive! Indeed, Vrikodara, that bull among the Kurus, whirling his mace in battle, will, like a second Yama mace in hand, slay all my sons who are afflicted by a heavy calamity! Even now I see that terrible mace of his, with eight sides, made of steel, and adorned with gold, uplifted like a Brāhmana's curse!† As a lion of developed strength among a flock of deer, Bhima will range among my troops! He only (amongst his brothers) always displayed his strength cruelly towards my sons! Eating

---

* Lit.—"a deer of the larger species."—*T.*

† It is difficult to guess what is really meant by *Brahma-danda-mivodyatam.* Vaçishta, it is said, by uplifting this *Brahma-danda,* frustrated all the weapons, human, *Asura,* and celestial, hurled at him by *Viçwāmitra* during his *Kshatriya* existence. (*Rāmāyana—Adi-kanda).* Lit. it may mean the Brāhmana's thin staff of bamboo branch. Possibly this was supposed to possess miraculous powers.—T.

voraciously, and endued with great impetuosity, from his very childhood he hath been behaving inimically towards my children! My heart trembleth (to remember) that even in their childhood, Duryodhana and other sons of mine, while fighting with him (sportively), were always ground down by the elephant-like Bhima. Alas, my sons have always been oppressed by his might, and it is that Bhima of terrible prowess that hath been the cause of this rupture! Even now I behold Bhima, mad with rage, fighting in the very van, and devouring the whole of my host consisting of men, elephants, and steeds! Equal unto Drona and Arjuna in weapons, his speed equal unto the velocity of the wind, and in wrath like unto Maheçwara himself, who is there, O Sanjaya, that would slay that wrathful and terrible hero in battle? I think it to be a great gain that my sons were not even then slain by that slayer of enemies who is endued with such energy! How can a human being withstand the impetuosity of that warrior in battle who slew *Yakshas* and *Rākshasas* before of terrible might? O Sanjaya, even in his childhood he was never completely under my control. Injured by my wicked sons, how can that son of Pāndu come under my control now? Cruel and extremely wrathful, he would break but not bend. Of oblique glances and contracted eye-brows, how can he be induced to remain quiet? Endued with heroism, of incomparable might and fair complexion, tall like a palmyra-tree, and in height taller than Arjuna by the span of the thumb, the second son of Pāndu surpasseth the very steeds in swiftness and elephants in strength, speaketh in indistinct accents, and possesseth eyes having the hue of honey. As regards form and might, even such was he in his very boyhood as I truly heard long before from the lips of Vyāsa! Terrible and possessed of cruel might, when angry he will destroy in battle with his iron mace cars and elephants and men and horses. By acting against his wishes, that foremost of smiters who is ever wrathful and furious hath before been, O child, insulted by me! Alas, how will my sons bear that mace of his which is straight, made of steel, thick, of beautiful sides, adorned with gold, capable of slaying a hundred, and producing a

terrible sound when hurled at the foe? Alas, O child, my foolish sons are desirous of crossing that inaccessible ocean constituted by Bhima, which is really shoreless, without a raft on it, immeasurable in depth, and full of currents impetuous as the course of arrows! Fools in reality though boasting of their wisdom, alas, my children do not listen to me even though I cry out! Beholding only the honey they do not see the terrible fall that is before them!* They that will rush to battle with Death himself in that human shape are certainly doomed to destruction by the Supreme Ordainer like animals within the lion's view. Full four cubits in length, endued with six sides and great might, and having also a deadly touch, when he will hurl his mace from the sling, how shall my sons, O child, bear its impetus? Whirling his mace and breaking therewith the heads of (hostile) elephants, licking with his tongue the corners of his mouth and drawing long breaths, when he will rush with loud roars against mighty elephants, returning the yells of those infuriate beasts that might rush against him, and when entering the close array of cars he will slay, after taking proper aim, the chief warriors before him, what mortal of my party will escape from him looking like a blazing flame? Crushing my forces and cutting a passage through them, that mighty-armed hero, dancing with mace in hand, will exhibit the scene witness during the universal Dissolution at the end of the *Yuga*. Like an infuriate elephant crushing trees adorned with flowers, Vrikodara will, in battle, furiously penetrate the ranks of my sons. Depriving my cars of their warriors, drivers, steeds, and flag-staffs, and afflicting all warriors fighting from cars and the backs of elephants, that tiger among men will, O Sanjaya, like the impetuous current of *Gangā* throwing down diverse trees standing on its banks, crush in battle the troops of my sons! Without doubt, O Sanjaya, afflicted by the

* This figure is very often used by ancient writers. Honey was collected by a class of persons who had to roam over mountain-breasts, their steps being guided by solitary bees on the wing, and deaths by fall were frequent.—T.

fear of Bhimasena, my sons and their dependants and all the allied kings will fly in different directions. It was this Bhima who, having entered of old, with Vāsudeva's aid, the innermost apartments of Jarāsandha, overthrew that king endued with great energy. That lord of Magadha, the mighty Jarāsandha, having fully brought under his subjection the goddess Earth, oppressed her by his energy. That the Kuravas in consequence of Bhishma's prowess, and the Andhakas and the Vrishnis in consequence of their policy, could not be subjugated by him was due only to their good fortune. What could be more wonderful than that the heroic son of Pāndu, of mighty arms and without any weapon, having approached that king, slew him in a trice ? Like a venomous snake whose poison hath accumulated for years, Bhima will, O Sanjaya, vomit in battle the poison of his wrath upon my sons ! Like the foremost of the celestials, the great Indra, smiting the Dānavas with his thunder-bolt, Bhimasena will, mace in hand, slay all my sons ! Incapable of being withstood or resisted, of fierce impetus and prowess, and with eyes of a coppery hue, I behold even now that Vrikodara falling upon my sons ! Without mace or bow, without car or coat of mail, fighting with his bare arms only, what man is there that could stand before him ? Bhishma, the regenerate Drona, and Kripa the son of Caradwat,—these are as much acquainted as I myself with the energy of the intelligent Bhima. Acquainted with the practice of those that are noble, and desirous of death in battle, these bulls among men* will take their stand in the van of our army. Destiny is everywhere powerful, especially in the case of a male person,† for beholding the victory of the Pāndavas in battle, I do not yet restrain my sons ! These mighty bowmen of mine, desirous of treading in that ancient track leading up to heaven, will lay down their lives in battle,

* Bhishma, Drona, Kripa, &c.—T.

† There is a current adage among the Hindus, of probably very ancient date, saying the very same thing. It is to this effect,—"the destiny of a male person, and the disposition of women, are not known to the very gods, let alone men !"—T.

taking care, however, of earthly fame! O child, my sons are the same to these mighty bowmen as the Pāndavas are to them, for all of them are grandsons of Bhishma and disciples of Drona and Kripa! O Sanjaya, the little acceptable services that we have been able to do unto these three venerable ones, will certainly be repaid by them owing to their own noble dispositions! It is said that death, in battle, of a Kshatriya who taketh up arms and desireth to observe Kshatriya practices is, indeed, both good and meritorious. I weep, however, for all those that will fight with the Pāndavas! That very danger hath now come which was foreseen by Vidura at the outset. It seems, O Sanjaya, that wisdom is incapable of dispelling woe; on the other hand, overwhelming woe it is that dispelleth wisdom! When the very sages, that are emancipated from all worldly concerns and that behold, standing aloof, all the affairs of the universe, are affected by prosperity and adversity, what wonder is there that *I* should grieve, I who have my affections fixed on a thousand things such as sons, kingdom, wives, grandsons, and relatives? What good can possibly be in store for me on the accession of such a frightful danger? Reflecting on every circumstance, I see the certain destruction of the Kurus! That match at dice seems to be the cause of this great danger of the Kurus! Alas, this sin was committed from temptation by the foolish Duryodhana desirous of wealth! I believe all this to be the untoward effect of fleet Time that bringeth on everything! Tied to the wheel of Time like its periphery I am not capable of flying away from it. Tell me, O Sanjaya, where shall I go? What shall I do, and how shall I do it? These foolish Kuravas will all be destroyed, their Time having come! Helplessly shall I have to hear the wailings of women when my century of sons will all be slain! Oh, how may death come upon me! As a blazing fire in the summer season, when urged by the wind, consumeth dry grass, so will Bhima, mace in hand, and united with Arjuna, slay all on my side!'"

SECTION LI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'He whom we have never heard to speak a falsehood, he who hath Dhananjaya to fight for him, may have the sovereignty of even the three worlds! Reflecting from day to day I do not find the warrior who may, on his car, advance in battle against the wielder of *Gāndiva*. When that wielder of *Gāndiva* will shoot winged arrows and *Nālikas** and shafts capable of piercing the breasts of warriors, there is no rival of his in battle. If those bulls among men, those heroes,—Drona and Karna,—those foremost of mighty men, versed in weapons and invincible in battle, withstand him, the result may be very doubtful, but I am sure that the victory will not be mine. Karna is both compassionate and heedless, and the preceptor is aged and hath affection for his pupil. Pārtha, however, is able and mighty, of firm grasp (of the bow) and indefatigable. Terrible will be the encounter between them, without resulting in any one's defeat. Conversant with weapons and endued with heroism, all of them have earned great fame. They may relinquish the very sovereignty of the gods but not the chance of winning victory. There would be peace, without doubt, upon the fall either of these two (Drona and Karna) or of Fālguna. There is none, however, who can either slay or vanquish Arjuna! Alas, how may his wrath that hath been excited against my foolish sons be pacified! Others there are acquainted with the use of weapons, that conquer or are conquered; but it is heard that Fālguna always conquereth. Three and thirty years have passed away since the time when Arjuna, having invited Agni, gratified him at Khāndava, vanquishing all the celestials. We have never heard of his defeat anywhere. O child, like the case of Indra, victory is always that Arjuna's

---

* A *Nálika*, from its description as given in other places, would appear to have been some kind of musket. Here, however, it seems that a *Nālika* was some species of arrow, unless *asyatas Nàlikàn* means "shooting muskets." I am not sure what kind of weapon a *Nálika* really was.—*T.*

who hath for his car-driver in battle Hrishikeça endued with the same character and disposition. We hear that the two Krishnas on the same car and the stringed *Gāndiva*,—these three forces,—have been united together! As regards ourselves, we have not a bow of that kind, or a warrior like Arjuna, or a car-driver like Krishna! The foolish followers of Duryodhana are not aware of this! O Sanjaya, the blazing thunder-bolt falling on the head leaveth something undestroyed, but the arrows, O child, shot by Kiritin leave nothing undestroyed! Even now I behold Dhanajaya shooting his arrows and committing a havoc around, picking off heads from bodies with his arrowy shower! Even now I behold the arrowy conflagration, blazing all around, issuing from *Gāndiva*, consuming in battle the ranks of my sons! Even now it seemeth to me that, struck with panic at the rattle of Savyasāchin's car, my vast army consisting of diverse forces is running away in all directions! As a tremendous conflagration, wandering in all directions, of swelling flames and urged by the wind, consumeth dry leaves and grass, so will the great flame of Arjuna's weapons consume all my troops! Kiritin, appearing as a foe in battle, will vomit innumerable arrows and become irresistible like all-destroying Death urged forward by the Supreme Ordainer. When I will constantly hear of evil omens of diverse kinds happening in the homes of the Kurus, and around them and on the field of battle, then will destruction, without doubt, overtake the Bharatas!' "

SECTION LII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Endued with great prowess and eager for victory, even as the sons themselves of Pāndu are so are their followers who are all resolved to sacrifice their lives and determined to win victory! Even thou, O son, hast told me of my mighty enemies, *viz.* the kings of the Pānchālas, the Kekayas, the Matsyas, and the Māgadhas! He, again, who at his will can bring under his subjection all the three worlds with Indra at their head, even that Creator of the universe, the mighty Krishna, is bent on giving victory to the

Pāndavas. As regards Sātyaki, he acquired in no time the whole science of arms from Arjuna. That scion of Cini's race will stand on the battle-field, shooting his shafts like husbandmen sowing seeds! The prince of Pānchāla, Dhrishtadyumna, that mighty car-warrior of cruel deeds, acquainted with all superior weapons, will fight with my host! Great is my fear, O child, from the wrath of Yudhishthira, from the prowess of Arjuna, and from the twins and Bhimasena. When those lords of men will, in the midst of my army, spread their superhuman net of arrows, I fear my troops will not come out of it! It is for this, O Sanjaya, that I weep! That son of Pāndu, Yudhishthira, is handsome, endued with great energy, highly blessed, possessed of *Brahma* force, intelligent, of great wisdom, and virtuous soul. Having allies and counsellors, united with persons ready for battle, and possessing brothers and fathers-in-law who are all heroes and mighty car-warriors, that tiger among men, the son of Pāndu, is also endued with patience, capable of keeping his counsels, compassionate, modest, of prowess incapable of being baffled, possessed of great learning, with soul under proper control, ever waiting upon the aged, and of subdued senses. Possessed thus of every accomplishment, he is like unto a blazing fire. What fool, doomed to destruction and deprived of sense, will jump, moth-like, into that blazing and irresistible *Pāndava* fire? Alas, I have behaved deceitfully towards him. The king, like unto a fire of long flames, will destroy all my foolish sons in battle without leaving any alive! I, therefore, think that it is not proper to fight with them! Ye Kauravas, be ye of the same mind! Without doubt, the whole race of Kuru will be destroyed, in case of hostilities being waged! This appears to me very clearly, and if we act accordingly, my mind may have peace! If war with them doth not seem beneficial to you, then we will strive to bring about peace! Yudhishthira will never be indifferent when he sees us distressed, for he censures me only as the cause of this unjust war!'"

SECTION. LIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'It is even so, O great king, as thou, O Bhārata, sayest! On the event of a battle, the destruction of the Kshatriyas by means of *Gāndiva* is certain! This, however, I do not understand, how when thou art always wise and especially acquainted with the prowess of Savyasāhchin, thou followest yet the counsels of thy sons! Having, O bull of the Bharata race, injured the sons of Prithā from the very beginning, having, in fact, committed sins repeatedly, this is not, O great king, the time (to grieve)!* He that occupies the position of a father and a friend, if he is always watchful and of good heart, should seek the welfare (of his children); but he that injures, can not be called a father! Hearing of the defeat of the Pāndavas at dice, thou hadst, O king, laughed like a child, saying—*This is won, this is acquired!*—When the harshest speeches were addressed to the sons of Prithā, thou didst not then interfere, pleased at the prospect of thy sons winning the whole kingdom. Thou couldst not, however, then see before thee the inevitable fall! The country of the Kurus, including the region called *Jāngala*, is, O king, thy paternal kingdom. Thou hast, however, obtained the whole earth won by those heroes. Won by the strength of their arms, the sons of Prithā made over to thee this extensive empire. Thou thinkest, however, O best of kings, that all this was acquired by thee! When thy sons, seized by the king of the *Gandharvas*, were about to sink in a shoreless sea without a raft to save them, it was Pārtha, O king, that brought them back. Thou hadst, like a child, repeatedly laughed, O monarch, at the Pāndavas when they were defeated at dice and were going into exile! When Arjuna poureth a shower of keen

---

* I am not sure that I have understood this *Sloka* correctly. I have followed the Burdwan Pundits in interpreting it. Nilakantha suggests a different meaning. *Naisha kālas* is explained by him as—*Esha kālas —eshā kalanā budhis—tava naiva sthāsyati*, *i. e.*, "This frame of mind will not last," or "thy mind will not be always so." To explain *Kālas* as *Kalanā* seems to me to be very far-fetched, indeed.—*T*

arrows, the very oceans dry up, let alone beings of flesh and blood! Fālgoona is the foremost of all shooters; *Gāndiva* is the foremost of all bows; Keçava is the foremost of all beings; the *Sudarçana* is the foremost of all weapons; and of cars, that furnished with the banner bearing the blazing ape on it is the foremost. That car of his, bearing all these and drawn by white steeds, will, O king, consume us all in battle like the upraised wheel of Time! O bull of the Bharata race, his is even now the whole earth and he is the foremost of all kings, who hath Bhima and Arjuna to fight for him! Beholding thy host sinking in despair when smitten by Bhima, the Kauravas headed by Duryodhana will all meet with destruction! Struck with the fear of Bhima and Arjuna, thy sons, O king, and the kings following them, will not, O lord, be able to win victory! The Matsyas, the Pānchālas, the Kekayas, the Cālwas and the Curasenas, all decline to pay thee homage now, and all disregard thee. Acquainted with the energy of that wise king, all of them, however, have joined that son of Prithā, and for their devotion to him they are always opposed to thy sons! He that, by his evil deeds, afflicted the sons of Pāndu who are all wedded to virtue and undeserving of destruction, he that hateth them even now,—that sinful man, O monarch, who is none else than thy son,—should, with all his adherents, be checked by all means! It behoveth thee not to bewail in this strain! Even this was said by myself as well as by the wise Vidura at the time of the match at dice! These thy lamentations in connection with the Pāndavas, as if thou wert a helpless person, are, O king, all useless!'"

SECTION LIV.

"Duryodhana said,—'Fear not, O king! Nor shouldst thou grieve for us! O monarch, O lord, we are quite able to vanquish the foe in battle! When the Pārthas had been exiled to the woods, there came unto them the slayer of Madhu with a vast army in battle array and capable of crushing hostile kingdoms. And there also came unto them the Kekayas, and Dhrishtaketu, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's

race, and numerous other kings in their train. And all those great car-warriors were assembled in a place not far from *Indraprastha.* And having assembled together they censured thee and all the Kurus. And, O Bhārata, all those warriors with Krishna at their head paid their homage unto Yudhishthira clad in deer-skin and seated in their midst. And all those kings then suggested to Yudhishthira that he should take back the kingdom. And all of them desired to slay thee with all thy followers. And hearing of all this, O bull of the Bharata race, I addressed Bhishma and Drona and Kripa, struck with fear, O king, at the prospect of the ruin that threatened our kindred. And I said unto them,—I think the Pāndavas will not abide by the agreement made by them; Vāsudeva desireth our utter extinction. I think also that with the exception of Vidura all of you will be slain, although the chief of the Kurus, Dhritarāshtra, conversant with morality, will not be included in the slaughter! O sires, effecting our complete destruction, Janārddana wisheth to bestow upon Yudhsihthira the entire kingdom of the Kurus! What should be done? Shall we surrender, or fly, or shall we fight the foe giving up every hope of life? If, indeed, we stand up against them, our defeat is certain, for all the kings of the earth are under Yudhishthira's command! The people of the realm are all annoyed with us, and all our friends also are angry with us. All the kings of the earth are speaking ill of us, and especially all our friends and relatives. There can be no fault in our surrender, for from time immemorial, the weaker party is known to conclude peace. I grieve, however, for that lord of men, my blind father, who may, on my account, be overtaken by woe and misery that is endless! [It is known to thee, O king, even before this, that thy other sons were all opposed to the foe for pleasing me only!*] Those mighty car-warriors, the sons

* This is evidently an interpolation. Duryodhana addresses this sentence to his father. Its place, however, is extremely akward, considering that the prince is repeating a conversation that he at one time had with Bhishma, Drona, Kripa, &c. All the printed texts have this *Sloka.* I am sure, it is misplaced.—*T.*

of Pāndu, will, indeed, avenge their wrongs by destroying the whole race of king Dhritarāshtra with all his counsellors!—(It was thus that I addressed them then, and) seeing me afflicted by great anxiety and my senses tortured, Drona and Bhishma and Kripa and Drona's son then addressed me, saying,—Fear not, O represser of foes, for if the foe wage hostilities with us, they will not be able to vanquish us when we take the field! Every one of us is singly capable of vanquishing all the kings of the earth! Let them come! With keen-edged arrows we will curb their pride! Inflamed with anger upon the death of his father, this Bhishma (amongst us) in days of old had conquered all the kings of the earth, on a single car. O Bhārata, his wrath excited, that best of the Kurus smote numberless ones amongst them, whereupon, from fear, they all surrendered to this Devavrata, seeking his protection. That Bhishma, united with us, is still capable of vanquishing the foe in battle! Let thy fears, therefore, O bull of the Bharata race, be all dispelled!—'

"Duryodhana continued,—'Even this was the resolve then formed by these heroes of immeasurable energy! The whole earth was formerly under the foe's command. Now, however, they are incapable of vanquishing us in battle, for our enemies, the sons of Pāndu, are now without allies and destitute of energy. O bull of the Bharata race, the sovereignty of the earth now resteth in me, and the kings also, assembled by me, are of the same mind* with me in weal or woe! Know thou, O best of the Kuru race, that all these kings, O slayer of foes, can, for my sake, enter into the fire or the sea! They are all laughing at thee, beholding thee filled with grief and indulging in these lamentations like one out of his wits, and affrighted at the praises of the foe! Every one amongst these kings is able to withstand the Pāndavas! Indeed, sire, every one regardeth himself; let thy fears, therefore, be despelled!† even Vasava himself is not capable of vanquishing my vast host! The Self-create Brahman himself, if desirous of slay-

---

* *Ekārthas* is, lit. "Of the same purpose."—*T.*

† The sense seems to be—"Do not show thy abjectness in this way."

ing it, cannot annihilate it! Having given up all hopes of a town, Yudhishthira craveth only five villages, affrighted, O lord, at the army I have assembled and at my power! The belief thou entertainest in the prowess of Vrikodara the son of Kunti, is unfounded. O Bhārata, thou knowest not the extent of my prowess! There is none on earth equal to me in an encounter with the mace. None have ever surpassed me in such an encounter, nor will any surpass me! With devoted application and undergoing many privations, I have lived in my preceptor's abode. I have completed my knowledge and exercises there. It is for this that I have no fear either of Bhima or of others! When I humbly waited upon Sankarshana (my preceptor), blessed be thou, it was his firm conviction that Duryodhana hath no equal in the mace! In battle I am Sankarshana's equal, and in might there is none superior to me on earth! Bhima will never be able to bear the blow of my mace in battle! A single blow, O king, that I may wrathfully deal unto Bhima will certainly, O hero, bear him without delay to the abode of Yama! O king, I wish to see Vrikodara mace in hand! This hath been my long-cherished desire! Struck in battle with my mace, Vrikodara the son of Prithā will fall dead on the ground, his limbs shattered! Smitten with a blow of my mace, the mountains of *Himavat* may spilt into a hundred thousand fragments. Vrikodara himself knoweth this truth, as also Vāsudeva and Arjuna, that *there is no one equal to Duryodhana in the use of the mace.* Let thy fears, therefore, caused by Vrikodara be dispelled, for I will certainly slay him in fierce conflict! Do not, O king, give way to melancholy! And after I have slain him, numerous car-warriors of equal or superior energy, will, O bull among the Bharatas, speedily throw Arjuna down! Bhishma, Drona, Kripa and Drona's son, Karna and Bhuriçravas, Calya the king of *Prāgjyotish* and Jayadratha the king of the Sindhus,—every one of these, O Bhārata, is singly capable of slaying the Pāndavas! When united together, they will, within a moment, send him to the abode of Yama! There, indeed, is no reason why the united army of all the kings will be incapable of vanquishing Dhananjaya singly. A hundred

times shrouded by innumerable arrows shot by Bhishma and Drona and Drona's son and Kripa, and deprived of strength, Pārtha will have to go unto Yama's abode! Our grandsire born of *Ganga* is, O Bhārata, superior to Cāntanu himself! Like unto a regenerate saint, and incapable of being withstood by the very celestials, he took his birth amongst men. There is no slayer of Bhishma, O king, on earth, for his father, gratified, gave him the boon—*Thou shalt not die except when it is thy own wish!* And Drona took his birth in a water-pot from the regenerate saint Bharadwāja. And from Drona hath taken his birth his son having a knowledge of the highest weapons. And this the foremost of preceptors, Kripa also, hath taken his birth from the great *Rishi* Gautama. Born in a clump of heath, this illustrious one, I think, is incapable of being slain. Then again, O king, the father, mother and maternal uncle of Açwathāman,—these three,—are not born of woman's womb! I have that hero also on my side. All these mighty car-warriors, O king, are like unto celestials, and can, O bull of the Bharata race, inflict pain on Cakra himself in battle! Arjuna is incapable of even looking at any one of these singly. When united together, these tigers among men will certainly slay Dhananjaya! Karna also, I suppose, is equal unto Bhishma and Drona and Kripa! O Bhārata, Rāma himself had told him,—*Thou art equal unto me!* Karna had two ear-rings born with him, of great brilliance and beauty; for Cachi's gratification Indra begged them of that represser of foes, in exchange, O king, for an infallible and terrible dart! How would Dhananjaya, therefore, escape with life from Karna who is protected by that dart! My success, therefore, O king, is as certain as a fruit held fast in my own grasp! The utter defeat also of my foes is already bruited about on earth! This Bhishma, O Bhārata, killeth every day ten thousand soldiers. Equal unto him are these bowmen, Drona, Drona's son, and Kripa! Then, O represser of foes, the ranks of the *Sançaptaka** warriors have

* The *Sançaptakas* were soldiers who swore to conquer or die. They would, on no account, turn their backs on the battle-field.—*T.*

made this resolution,—*Either we will slay Arjuna or that ape-bannered warrior will slay us!* There are other kings also, who firm in their resolve of slaying Savyasāchin, regard him as unequal to themselves. Why dost thou then apprehend danger from the Pāndavas? When Bhimasena will be slain, O Bhārata, who else (amongst them) will fight? Tell me this, O represser of foes, if thou knowest any amongst the foe! The five brothers, with Dhrishtadyumna and Sātyaki,—these seven warriors of the enemy, O king, are regarded as their chief strength. Those, however, amongst us, that are our chief warriors, are Bhishma, Drona, Kripa, Drona's son, Karna, Somadatta, Vāhlika, and Calya the king of Prāgjyotisha, the two kings (Vinda and Anuvinda) of Avanti, and Jayadratha; and then, O king, thy sons Duçāsana, Durmukha, Dussaha, Crutāyu, Chitrasena, Purumitra, Vivinçati, Cala, Bhuriçravas, and Vrikarna! O king, I have assembled one and ten *Akshauhinis!* The army of the enemy is less than mine, amounting only to seven *Akshauhinis.* How then can I be defeated? Vrihaspati hath said that *an army which is less by a third ought to be encountered.* My army, O king, exceedeth that of the foe by a third! Besides, O Bhārata, I know that the enemy hath many defects, while mine, O lord, are endued with many good virtues! Knowing all this, O Bhārata, as also the superiority of my force and the inferiority of the Pāndavas, it behoveth thee not to lose thy senses!'

"Having said this, O Bhārata, that conqueror of hostile chiefs, Duryodhana, asked Sanjaya again, anxious to know more about of the doings of the Pāndavas."

SECTION LV.

"Duryodhana said,—'Having obtained, O Sanjaya, an army numbering seven *Akshauhinis*, what is Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, with the other kings in his company, doing in view of the war?'

"Sanjaya said,—'Yudhishthira, O king, is very cheerful in view of the battle. And so also are Bhimasena and Arjuna,

The twins also are perfectly fearless. Desirous of making an experiment of the *mantras* (obtained by him), Vibhatsu the son of Kunti, yoked his celestial car illuminating all the directions. Accoutred in mail, he looked like a mass of clouds charged with lightning. After reflecting for a while, he cheerfully addressed me, saying,—*Behold, O Sanjaya, these preliminary signs! We will certainly conquer!*—Indeed, what Vibhatsu said unto me appeared to me to be true!'

"Duryodhana said,—'Thou rejoicest to applaud those sons of Prithā defeated at dice! Tell us now what sort of steeds are yoked unto Arjuna's car and what sort of banners are set up on it.'

"Sanjaya said,—'O great king, the celestial artificer called Tashtri or Bhaumana, aided by Cakra and Dhātri, created forms of diverse kinds and great beauty for Arjuna's car! And displaying divine illusion they placed on his flagstaff those celestial forms, large and small, of great value. And at Bhimasena's request, Hanumat the son of the Wind-god, will also place his own image on it. And Bhaumana has, in its creation, had recourse to such illusion that that banner covers, both perpendicularly and laterally, an area of one *Yojana*, and even if trees stand in its way, its course cannot be impeded. Indeed, even as Cakra's bow of diverse colors is exhibited in the firmament and nobody knows of what it is made, so hath that banner been centrived by Bhaumana, for its form is varied and ever varying. And as a column of smoke mixed with fire riseth up, covering the sky and displaying many bright hues and elegant shapes, so doth that banner contrived by Bhaumana rear its head. Indeed, it hath no weight, nor is it capable of being obstructed. And unto that car are a century of excellent celestial steeds of white hue and endued with the speed of the mind, all presented by Chitrasena (the king of the *Gandharvas*). And neither on earth, O king nor in the sky, nor in heaven, their course can be impeded. And formerly a boon hath been granted to the effect that their number would always remain full how often so ever they might be slain. And unto Yudhishthira's car are yoked large steeds of equal energy and white in hue like ivory. And

unto Bhimasena's car are yoked coursers endued with the speed of the wind and the splendour of the seven *Rishis*. And steeds of sable bodies and backs variegated like the wings of the *Tittiri* bird, all presented by his gratified brother Fālguna, and superior to those of the heroic Fālguna himself, cheerfully bear Sahadeva. And Nakula of Ājmida's race, the son of Mādri, is borne, like Indra the slayer of Vitra, by excellent steeds presented by the great Indra himself, all mighty as the wind and endued with great speed. And excellent steeds of large size, equal unto those of the Pāndavas themselves in age and strength, endued with great swiftness and of handsome make, and all presented by the celestials, carry those youthful princes, the sons of Subhadrā and Draupadi!'"

SECTION LVI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Whom hast thou, O Sanjaya, seen to have, from affection, arrived there, and who will, in behalf of the Pāndavas, fight my son's forces?'

"Sanjaya said,—'I have seen Krishna, the foremost of the Andhakas and the Vrishnis, arrived there, and Chekitāna, as also Sātyaki otherwise called Yuyudhāna. And those two mighty car-warriors, proud of their strength and famed over all the world, have joined the Pāndavas, each with a separate *Akshauhini* of troops. And Drupada, the king of the Pānchālas, surrounded by his ten heroic sons—Satyajit and others—headed by Dhrishtadyumna, and well protected by Cikhandin, and having furnished his soldiers with every necessary, hath come there with a full *Akshauhini*, desirous of honoring Yudhishthira. And that lord of earth, Virāta, with his two sons Sankha and Uttara, as also with those heroes Suryadatta and others—headed by Madirāksha and surrounded by one *Akshauhini* of troops, hath, thus accompanied by brothers and sons, joined the son of Prithā. And the son of Jarāsandha the king of Maghadha, and Dhristaketu the king of the Chedis, have separately come there, each accompanied by an *Akshauhini* of troops. And the five brothers of Kekaya, all having purple flags, have, joined the Pāndavas, surrounded by an

Akshauhini of troops. These, numbering to this extent, have I seen assembled there, and these, on behalf of the Pāndavas, will encounter the Dhārtarāshtra host! That great car-warrior, Dhrishtadyumna, who is acquainted with human, celestial, *Gāndharva* and *Asura* arrays of battle, leadeth that host. O king, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu has been assigned to Cikhandin as his share. And Virāta with all his Matsya warriors will support Cikhandin. The mighty king of the Madras hath been assigned to the eldest son of Pāndu as his share, though some are of opinion that those two are not well matched. Duryodhana with his sons and his century of brothers, as also the rulers of the East and the South, have been assigned to Bhimasena as his share. Karna the son of Vikartana, and Jayadratha the king of the *Sindhus*, have been assigned to Arjuna as his share. And those heroes also on the earth who are incapable of being withstood and who are proud of their might, have been accepted by Arjuna as his share. And those mighty bowmen, the five royal brothers of Kekaya, will put forth their strength in battle, accepting the Kekaya warriors (on Dhritarāshtra's side) as antagonists. And in their share are included the Mālavas also, and the Cālwakas, as also the two famous warriors of the Trigarta host who have sworn to conquer or die.* And all the sons of Duryodhana and Dusçāsana, as also king Vrihadvala, have been assigned to Subhadra's son as his share. And those great bowmen, the sons of Draupadi, having cars furnished with gold-embroidered banners, all headed by Dhrishtadyumna, will, O Bhārata, advance against Drona. And Chekitāna on his car desireth to encounter Somadatta in single combat on his, while Sātyaki is anxious to battle against the Bhoja chief Kritavarman. And the heroic son of Mādri, Sahadeva, who setteth up terrible roars in battle, hath intended to take as his share thy brother-in-law, the son of Suvala. And Nakula also, the son of Madravati, hath intended to take as his share the deceitful Uluka and the tribes of the Sāraswatas. As for all the other

* The word used is *Samsaptaka*, *i. e.* a warrior who swears to conquer or die but never to turn his back on the field.—*T.*

kings of the earth, O monarch, who will go to battle, the sons of Pāndu have, by naming them, distributed them in their own respective shares. Thus hath the Pāndava host been distributed into divisions. Do thou now, without delay, with thy sons, act as thou thinkest best!'"

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Alas, all my foolish sons addicted to deceitful dice, are already dead when it is the mighty Bhima with whom they desire an encounter in the field of battle! All the kings of the earth too, consecrated by Death himself for sacrifice, will rush to the *Gāndiva* fire like so many moths! Methinks my host is already put to flight by those illustrious warriors injured before by me! Who, indeed, shall follow to battle my warriors whose ranks will be broken by the sons of Pāndu in the encounter? All of them are mighty car-warriors, possessed of great bravery, of famous achievements, endued with great prowess, equal unto the sun or the fire in energy, and all victorious in battle! Those that have Yudhishthira for their leader, the slayer of Madhu for their protector, the heroic Savyasāchin and Vrikodara for their warriors, and Nakula, and Sahadeva, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, and Sātyaki, and Drupada, and Dhrishtaketu with his son, and Uttamaujas, and the unconquerable Yudhāmanyu of the Pānchālas, and Cikhandin, and Kshatradeva, and Uttara the son of Virāta, and the Kācayas, the Chedis, the Matsyas, the Srinjayas, Vabhru the son of Virāta, the Pānchālas, and the Prabhadrakas, for fighting for them, those, indeed, from whom Indra himself cannot, if they are unwilling, snatch this earth, —those heroes, cool and steady in fight, who can split the very mountains—alas, it is with them that are endued with every virtue and possessed of superhuman prowess that this wicked son of mine, O Sanjaya, desireth to fight, disregarding me even though I am crying myself hoarse!'

"Duryodhana said,—'Both the Pāndavas and ourselves are of the same race; both they and we crawl on the same earth! Why then dost thou think that victory will declare itself for only the Pāndavas! Bhishma, Drona, Kripa, the unconquerable Karna, Jayadratha, Somadatta, and Açwathāman,—all mighty bowmen and endued with great energy,—are incapable

of being vanquished by Indra himself united with the celestials! What sayst thou then, O father, of the Pāndavas? All these noble and heroic kings of the earth, bearing weapons, O father, are quite capable, for my sake, of withstanding the Pāndavas, while the latter are not capable of even gazing at my troops! I am powerful enough to encounter in battle the Pāndavas with their sons. O Bhārata, all those rulers of the earth who are anxious for my welfare will certainly seize all the Pāndavas like a herd of young deer by means of a net! I tell thee, in consequence of our crowds of cars and nets of arrows, the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas will all be routed!'"

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O Sanjaya, this my son speaketh like a mad man, for he is incapable of vanquishing in battle Yudhishthira the just! This Bhishma truly knoweth the might of the famous, powerful, virtuous, and high-souled Pāndavas and their sons, for he doth not wish a battle with those illustrious ones! But tell me again, O Sanjaya, of their movements! Tell me, who are inciting those illustrious and mighty bowmen endued with great activity like priests enkindling *(homa)* fires with liabations of clarified butter!'

"Sanjaya said,—'O Bhārata, Dhrishtadyumna is always urging the Pāndavas to war, saying,—Fight, ye best among the Bharatas! Do not entertain the least fear! All those rulers of the earth who, courted by Dhritarāshṭra's son, will come to that fierce encounter marked by showers of weapons,—indeed, I alone will encounter all those angry kings assembled together with their relatives, like a whale seizing little fishes from the water.* Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and Karna and Drona's son and Calya and Suyodhana,—them all I will withstand like the bank resisting the swelling sea! Unto him saying thus, the virtuous king Yudhishthira said,—The Pānchālas and the Pāndavas wholly depend upon thy prowess and steadiness! Rescue us safely from the war! I know, O mighty-armed one that thou art firm in the duties of the *Kshatriya* order! Thou art, indeed, quite competent to alone smite the Kauravas! When the latter, eager for fight, will stand before us, what

* *Salilāt*,—The use of the ablative here is peculiar to Sanskrit.—*T.*

thou, O represser of foes, wilt arrange, will certainly be for our good! Even this is the opinion of those acquainted with the scriptures that the hero who, displaying his prowess, rallieth those that after the rout run away from the battle-field, seeking for protection, is to be bought with a thousand! Thou, O bull among men, art brave, mighty, and powerful! Without doubt, thou art that deliverer of those that are overpowered with fear on the field of battle!—And when the righteous Yudhishthira the son of Kunti said this, Dhrishtadyumna fearlessly addressed me in these words,—Go thou, O *Suta*, without delay, and say unto all those that have come to fight for Duryodhana, say unto the Kurus of the *Pratipa* dynasty with the Vālhikas, the son of Caradwata, and Karna and Drona, and Drona's son, and Jayadratha, and Duçāsana, and Vikarna, and king Duryodhana, and Bhishma,—*Do not suffer yourselves to be slain by Arjuna, who is protected by the celestials. Before that happens, let some good man approach Yudhishthira and entreat that son of Pāndu, that best of men, to accept the kingdom (surrendered by them) without delay. There is no warrior on the earth like unto Savyasāchin, son of Pāndu, of prowess incapable of being baffled. The celestial car of the holder of Gāndiva is protected by the very gods. He is incapable of being vanquished by human beings. Do not, therefore, bend your mind to war!*—'"

SECTION LVII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu is endued with *Kshatriya* energy and leadeth the *Brahmacharya* mode of life from his very youth. Alas, with him these foolish sons of mine desire to fight, disregarding me that am thus bewailing! I ask thee, O Duryodhana, O foremost of the Bharata race, desist from hostility! O chastiser of foes, under any circumstances, war is never applauded! Half the earth is quite enough for the maintenance of thyself and all thy followers! Give back unto the sons of Pāndu, O chastiser of foes, their proper share! All the Kuravas deem even this to be consistent with justice that thou shouldst

make peace with the high-souled sons of Pāndu! Reflect thou, O son, and thou wilt find that this thy army is for thy own death! Thou understandest not this from thy own folly! I myself do not desire war, nor Vāhlika, nor Bhishma, nor Drona, nor Açwathāman, nor Sanjaya, nor Somadatta, nor Cala, nor Kripa, nor Satyavrata, nor Purumitra, nor Jaya, nor Bhuriçravas,—in fact, none of these desireth war! Indeed, those warriors upon whom the Kauravas, when afflicted by the foe, will have to rely, do not applaud war! O child, let that be acceptable to thee! Alas, thou dost not seek it of thy own will, but it is Karna and the evil-minded Dusçāsana and Cakuni the son of Suvala that are leading thee to it!'

"Duryodhana said,—'I challenge the Pāndavas to battle, without depending upon thyself, Drona, or Açwathāman, or Sanjaya, or Vikarna, or Kāmvoja, or Kripa, or Vāhlika, or Satyavrata, or Purumitra, or Bhuriçravas, or others of thy party! But, O bull among men, only myself and Karna, O sire, are prepared to celebrate the sacrifice of battle with all the neccessary rites, making Yudhishthira the victim! In that sacrifice, my car will be the altar; my sword will be the smaller laddle, my mace, the larger one, for pouring libations; —my coat of mail will be the assembly of spectators; my four steeds will be the officiating priests; my arrows will be the blades of *Kuça* grass; and fame will be the clarified butter! O king, performing, in honor of Yama, such a sacrifice in battle the ingredients of which will all be furnished by ourselves, we will return victoriously, coverd with glory after having slain our foes! Three of us, O sire, *viz*, myself and Karna and my brother Dusçāsana,—will slay the Pāndavas in battle! Either I, slaying the Pāndavas, will sway this Earth, or the sons of Pāndu, having slain me, will enjoy this Earth! O king, O thou of unfading glory, I would sacrifice my life, kingdom, wealth, every thing, but would not be able to live side by side with the Pāndavas! O venerable one, I will not surrender to the Pāndavas even that much of land which may be covered by the sharp point of a needle!'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I now abandon Duryodhana for ever! I nevertheless grieve for you all, ye kings, that will follow

this fool who is about to proceed to Yama's abode! Like tigers among a herd of deer, those foremost of smiters—the sons of Pāndu,—will smite down your principal leaders assembled for battle! Methinks, the Bhārata host, like a helpless woman, will be afflicted and crushed and hurled to a distance by Yuyudhāna of long arms! Adding to the strength of Yudhishthira's army which without him was already sufficient, Cini's son will take up his stand on the field of battle and scatter his arrows like seeds on a cultivated field! And Bhimasena will take up his position in the very van of the combatants, and all his soldiers will fearlessly stand in his rear as behind a rampart. Indeed, when thou, O Duryodhana, wilt behold elephants, huge as hills, prostrated on the ground with their tusks disabled, their temples crushed and bodies dyed with gore,—in fact, when thou wilt see them lying on the field of battle like riven hills, then, affraid of a contact with him, thou wilt remember these my words! Beholding thy host consisting of cars, steeds, and elephants, consumed by Bhimasena and presenting the spectacle of a wide-spread conflagration's track, thou wilt remember these my words! If ye do not make peace with the Pāndavas, a heaving calamity will be yours! Slain by Bhimasena with his mace, ye will rest in peace! Indeed, when thou wilt see the Kuru host levelled to the ground by Bhima like a large forest torn up by the roots, then wilt thou remember these my words!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said this unto all those rulers of the earth, the king, addressing Sanjaya again, asked him as follows."

SECTION LVIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me O thou of great wisdom, what the high-souled Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya said! I am anxious to hear from thee all about this.'"

"Sanjaya said,—'Listen, O king, as I tell thee the state in which I found Krishna and Dhananjaya! I will also, O Bhārata, tell thee what those heroes said! O king, with looks bent down and hands joined together, and with senses

well restrained, I entered the inner apartments for conferring with those gods among men ! Neither Abhimanyu nor the twins can repair to that place where the two Krishnas and Draupadi and the lady Satyabhāmā are. There I beheld those chastisers of foes, exhilarated with *Bassia* wine, their bodies smeared with sandal paste and decked with flowery garlands. Attired in excellent robes and adorned with celestial ornaments, they sat on a golden dais decked with numerous gems and spread over with carpets of diverse texture and hue. And I beheld Keçava's feet resting upon Arjuna's lap while those of the high-souled Arjuna rested upon the laps of Krishnā and Satyabhāmā. Pārtha then pointed out to me (for a seat) a foot-stool made of gold. Touching it with my hand, I seated myself down on the ground. And when he withdrew his feet from the footstool, I beheld auspicious marks on both his soles. These consisted of two longitudrinal limes running from heel to fore-toe. O sire, endued with black complexions, of high statures, and erect like *Çāla* trunks, beholding those youthful heroes both seated on the same seat, a great fear seized me ! They seemed to me to be Indra and Vishnu seated together, though Duryodhana of dull sense koweth it not, in consequence of his reliance on Drona and Bhishma and on the loud vaunts of Karna ! That very moment I was convinced that the wishes of Yudhishthira the just who had those two for obeying his orders were certain to succeed. Hospitably entertained with food and drink, and honored with other courtesies, I conveyed to them thy message, placing my joined hands on my head. Then Pārtha, removing Keçava's auspicious foot from his lap with his hand scarred by the flappings of the bowstring, urged him to speak. Sitting up erect like *Indra's banner*, adorned with every ornamet, and resembling Indra himself in energy, Krishna then addressed me. And the words which that best of speakers said were sweet, charming, and mild, though awful and alarming to the sons of Dhritarāshtra. Indeed, the words uttered by Krishna who alone is fit to speak, were of correct emphasis and accent, and pregnant with meaning, though heart-rending in the end ! And Vāsudeva said,—O Sanjaya, say thou these words

unto the wise Dhritarāshtra and in the hearing of that foremost of the Kurus, Bhishma—and also of Drona having first saluted at our request, O *Suta*, all the aged ones and having enquired after the welfare of the younger ones! *Do ye celebrate diverse sacrifices, making presents unto the Brāhmanas, and rejoice ye with your sons and wives, for a great danger threatens ye! Do ye give away wealth unto deserving persons, beget desirable sons, and do agreeable offices to those that are dear to thee, for king Yudhishthira is eager for victory! While I was at a distance, Krishnā weepingly invoked me, saying—Oh Govinda! O Govinda!—That debt, accumulating with time, hath not yet been paid off by me! Ye have provoked hostilities with that Savyasāchin who hath for his bow the invincible Gāndiva of fiery energy and who hath me for his help-mate! Who, even if he were Purandara himself, would challenge Pārtha having me for his help-mate, unless, of course, his span were full! He that is capable of vanquishing Arjuna in battle is, indeed, able to uphold the Earth with his two arms, to consume all created things in anger, and hurl the celestials from Heaven! Among celestials, Asuras, and men, among Yakshas, Gandharvas, and Nāgas, I do not find the person that can encounter Arjuna in battle. That wonderful story which is heard of an encounter in the city of Virata between a single person on one side and innumerable warriors on the other, is sufficient proof of this! That ye all fled in all directions being routed in the city of Virāta by that son of Pāndu singly, is sufficient proof of this! Might, prowess, energy, speed, lightness of hand, indefatigableness, and patience are not to be found in any one ele save Pārtha!*—Thus spoke Hrishikeça cheering up Pārtha by his words and roaring like raincharged clouds in the firmament.* Having heard these words of Keçava, the diadem-decked Arjuna of white steeds spoke to the same purpose.'"

---

* I have avoided an useless periphrasis for the sake of brevity. *Pākaçāsana* does not mean *Indra* here but clouds: and *Samayavarshin* means "of the rainy season," not like those of autumn which produce nothing but empty roars.—*T.*

SECTION LIX.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having heard these words of Sanjaya, the monarch endued with the eye of wisdom took that speech into his consideration as regards its merits and demerits. And having counted in detail the merits and demerits as far as he could, and having exactly ascertained the strength and weakness of both parties, the learned and intelligent king ever desirous of victory to his sons then began to compare the power* of both sides. And having at last ascertained that the Pāndavas were endued with strength and energy both human and divine, and that the Kurus were much weaker, Dhritarāshtra said unto Duryodhana,—'This anxiety, O Duryodhana, always filleth me! Indeed, it doth not leave me! Truly, it seemeth that I behold it with my eyes! This conviction is not a matter of inference! All created beings show great affection for their offspring, and do, to the best of their power, what is agreeable and beneficial to them. This is generally to be seen also in the case of benefactors. They that are good always desire to return the good done to them and to do what is highly agreeable to their benefactors. Remembering what was done to him at Khāndava, Agni will, no doubt, render aid to Arjuna in this terrible encounter between the Kurus and the Pāndavas. And from parental affection, *Dharma* and other celestials, duly invoked, will come together to the aid of the Pāndavas. I think that to save them from Bhishma and Drona and Kripa, the celestials will be filled with wrath resembling the thunderbolt in its effects. Endued with energy and well-versed in the use of weapons, those tigers among men, the sons of Prithā, when united with the celestials, will be incapable of being even gazed upon by human warriors! He who hath the irresistible, excellent, and celestial *Gāndiva* for his bow; he who hath a couple of celestial quivers obtained from Varuna, large, full of shafts, and inexhaustible; he on whose banner, that like smoke

---

* *Cakti* implies energy, pluck, and wisdom of counsel.—*T.*

is unobstructed in its action, is stationed the monkey-image of celestial origin; whose car is unequalled on the earth girt by four seas, and the rattle of which as heard by men is like the roar of the clouds and which like the rolling of the thunder frightens the foe; he whom the whole world regards as superhuman in energy; he whom all the kings of the earth know to be the vanquisher of the very gods in battle; he that taketh up five hundred arrows at a time and in the twinkling of the eye, shooteth them, unseen by others, to a great distance; that son of Prithā and tiger among car-warriors and chastiser of foes, whom Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and Drona's son and Calya the king of the Madras and, in fact, all impartial persons, regard as incapable of being vanquished by even earthly kings of superhuman prowess, when ready for fight; who shooteth at one strech full five hundred arrows, and who is equal unto Kārtavirya in strength of arms; that great bowman, Arjuna, equal unto Indra or Upendra in prowess,—I behold that great warrior committing a great havoc in this terrible battle! O Bhārata, reflecting on this day and night, I am unhappy and sleepless, through anxiety for the welfare of the Kurus! A terrible destruction is about to overtake the Kurus! If there is nothing but peace for ending this quarrel, I am for peace with the Pārthas and not for war! O child, I always deem the Pāndavas mightier than the Kurus!"

SECTION LX.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing-these words of his father, the passionate son of Dhritarāshtra, inflamed with great wrath, again said these words,—'Thou thinkest the Pārthas having the celestials for their allies, are incapable of being vanquished. Let this thy fear, O best of kings, be dispelled! The gods attained to their divinity for absence of desire, of envy, of covetousness, and of enmity, as also for their indifference to all worldly affairs. Formerly, Dwaipāyana-Vyāsa, and Nārada of great ascetic austerities, and Rāma the son of Jamadagni, told us this. The gods never, like human beings, engage in work, O bull of the Bharata race, from desire, or wrath, or

covetousness, or envy! Indeed, if Agni, or Vāyu, or Dharma, or Indra, or the Açwins had ever engaged in work from worldly desire, then the sons of Prithā could never have fallen into distress! Do not, therefore, by any means, indulge in such anxiety, because the gods, O Bhārata, always set their eyes on affairs worthy of themselves. If, however, envy or lust becomes noticeable in the gods in consequence of their yielding to desire, then, according to what has been ordained by the gods themselves, such envy or lust can never prevail. Charmed by me, Agni will be instantly extinguished, even if he blazes up all around for consuming all creatures! The energy with which the gods are endued is, indeed, great. But know, O Bhārata, that mine is greater than that of the gods! If the Earth herself cleaves in twain, or mountain crests split, I can re-unite them, O king, by my incantations before the eyes of all! If for the destruction of this universe of animate and inanimate, mobile and immobile creatures, there happeneth a terrific tempest or stony shower of loud roar, I can always, from compassion for created beings, stop it before the eyes of all! When the waters are solidified by me, even cars and infantry can move over them! It is I who set agoing all the affairs of both gods and *Asuras!* Unto whatever countries I go with my *Akshauhinis* on any mission, my steeds move whithersoever I desire! Within my dominions there are no fearful snakes, and protected by my incantations creatures within my territories are never injured by others that are frightful. The very clouds, O king, pour, as regards those dwelling in my dominions, showers as much as they desire and when they desire! All my subjects, again, are devoted to religion and are never subject to calamities* of season. The Açwins, Vāyu, Agni, Indra with the Maruts, and Dharma will not venture to protect my foes. If these had been able to protect by their might my adversaries, never would the sons of Prithā have fallen into such distress for three and ten years! I tell thee

* *Itayas* (the plural of *Iti*) are the six calamities of husbandry, *viz*, innundation, drought, locusts, rats, birds, and foreign invasions.—*T.*

truly that niether gods, nor *Gandharvas*, nor *Asuras*, nor *Rākshasas*, are capable of saving him who hath incurred my displeasure ! I have never before been baffled as regards the reward or punishment that I intended to bestow or inflict on friend or foe ! If ever, O represser of foes, I said,—*this is to be*,—that hath always *been !* People, therefore, have always known me as a *speaker of truth !* All persons can bear witness to this my greatness, the fame of which hath spread all around. I mention this, O king, for thy information and not from pride ! Never had I, O king, praised myself before, for to praise one's own self is mean ! Thou wilt hear of the defeat of the Pāndavas and the Matsyas, the Pānchālas and the Kekayas, of Sātyaki and Vāsudeva, at my hands ! Indeed, as rivers, on entering the ocean, are entirely lost in it, so the Pāndavas with all their followers, on approaching me, will all be annihilated ! My intelligence is superior, my energy is superior, my prowess is snperior, my knowledge is superior, my resources are superior by far to those of the Pāndavas ! Whatever knowledge of weapons is in the grandsire, in Drona, and Kripa, and Calya, and Cala, exist in me as well !'

"Having said these words, O Bhārata, Duryodhana, that represser of foes, again asked Sanjaya in order to ascertain the proceedings of Yudhishthira bent upon war."*

SECTION LXI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Without much minding Dhritarāshtra the son of Vichitravirya who was about to ask of Pārtha, Karna said unto Dhritarāshtra's son these words, cheering up the spirit of the assembled Kurus. Coming to know of the false pretence† under which I obtained the *Brahma* weapon of old from Rāma, the latter told me,—*When thy hour will come thy memory will fail thee in respect of this weapon !*—Even for so great an offence I was cursed so lightly by that great

* This *sloka* is explained variously. Nilakantha suggests a meaning that is very far-fetched. I prefer to understand it in this way.—T.

† When Karna went to Rāma to study the science of weapons, he told a lie, *viz.*, that he was a *Brāhmana.—T.*

Rishi, my preceptor! That great *Rishi* of fierce energy is capable of consuming even the entire Earth with her seas! By attention and personal bravery, I appeased his heart. I have that weapon with me still, and my period is not yet run! I am, therefore, fully competent (to win victory)! Let the responsibility be mine! Having obtained the favour of that *Rishi*, I will slaying within the twinkling of the eye the Pānchālas, the Kārushas, the Matsyas, and the sons of Prithā with their sons and grandsons, bestow on thee numerous regions won by my weapons! Let the grandsire and Drona and all the kings stay with thee! *I* will slay the sons of Prithā, marching forth with the cheif warriors of *my* army! Let that task be mine!'—Unto him speaking thus, Bhishma said,—'What sayest thou, O Karna? Thy intellect is clouded at the approach of thy hour! Knowest thou not, O Karna, that when the chief is slain the sons of Dhritarāshtra will all be slain? Having heard of the feat achieved by Dhananjaya, with Krishna only as his ally, at the burning of the Khāndava forest, it behoveth thee with thy friends and relatives to restrain thy mind! The dart that the illustrious and adorable chief of the celestials, the great Indra, gave thee, thou wilt see, will be broken and reduced to ashes when struck by Keçava with his discus! That other shaft of serpentine mouth that shineth (in thy quiver) and is respectfully worshipped by thee with flowery garlands, will, O Karna, when struck by the son of Pāndu with his shafts, perish with thee! O Karna, the slayer of Vāna and Bhumi's son (Naraka), Vāsudeva himself, who hath, in the thickest of battle slain foes equal and even superior to thee,—protecteth the diadem-decked Arjuna!'

"Karna said,—'Without doubt, the chief of the Vrishnis is even so! Further, I admit, that that high-souled one is even more than that! Let, however, the grandsire listen to the effect of the bit of harsh speech that he hath uttered! I lay down my weapons! The grandsire will henceforth behold me in court only and not in battle! After thou hast become quiet, the rulers of the earth will behold my prowess in this world!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said this, that great bowman (Karna), leaving the court, went to his own abode. Bhishma, however, O king, addressing Duryodhana in the midst of the Kurus, and laughing aloud, said,—'How truly doth the *Suta's* son keep his promise! Why, having repeatedly given his pledge, saying,—*The kings of Avanti and Kalinga, Jayadratha, and Chediddhaja and Vālhika standing as spectators, I will slay hostile warriors by thousands and tens of thousands,*—how will he discharge that obligation? Having distributed his divisions in counter array and scattering heads by thousands, behold the havoc committed by Bhimasena!* Indeed, that moment when, representing himself as a *Brāhmana* unto the holy and blameless Rāma, Vikartana's son obtained that weapon, that vile wretch lost both his virtue and asceticism!'—O king of kings, when Bhishma said this after Karna had gone away giving up his weapons; Duryodhana, that foolish son of Vichitravirya's son, addressed Cāntanu's son in these words."

SECTION LXII.

"Duryodhana said,—"The sons of Prithā are all as other men, and are, in fact, of earthly birth as other men. Why then dost thou think that they are sure to win victory? Both ourselves and they are equal in energy, in prowess, in age, in

---

* These three *Slokas* (15, 16, 17) are scarcely easy, and no wonder that the Bengali translators have differed in interpreting it. There can be no doubt, however, that the Burdwan Pundits have understood the passage correctly. The first line of Bhishma's speech is evidently ironical. The *aham* (*sloka* 16) is *not* Bhishma, but a quotation of Karna's oft-repeated boast. If *aham* were Bhishma, the whole succeeding Section in which Duryodhana says that he does not rely on Bhishma and others for winning success would be unmeaning. The whole difficulty disappears on transposing the apostrophe about Bhima's committing a great havoc *after* the conclusion of *sloka* 16 as I have done above. Not that such transposition is absolutely necessary, but without it the connection would be a little less obvious. *Chediddhaj* is not the youthful ruler of the Chedis—the son of Cisupála—but some other warrior, it seems, belonging to the Kuru party.—*T.*

intelligence, in knowledge of the scriptures, in weapons, in the art of war, in lightness of hand, and in skill. All of us are of the same species, all being men by brith. How then, O grandsire, dost thou know that victory will be theirs? I do not seek the accomplishment of my aims by relying upon thee, or Drona, or Kripa, or Vālhika, or upon the other kings! Myself, and Karna the son of Vikartana, and my brother Dusçāsana, will slay in battle the five sons of Pāndu by whetted arrows! Then shall we, O king, gratify *Brāhmanas* by performing great sacrifices of diverse kinds, with abundant *Dakshinās*, and by gifts of kine, and horses and wealth! When my troops will drag by the aid of their mighty arms the Pāndavas in battle like hunters dragging a herd of deer by a net or whirlpools drawing a crewless boat, then the sons of Pāndu, beholding us their foe supported by crowds of cars and elephants, will give up their pride, and not they alone but Keçava also!'—Hearing this, Vidura said,—'Venerable persons of certain knowledge say that in this world Self-restraint is highly beneficial. In the case of a Brāhmāna especially, it is his duty. He whose Self-restraint followeth charity, asceticism, knowledge, and study of the *Vedas*, always winneth success, forgiveness, and the fruit of his gifts.* Self-restraint enhanceth energy, and is an excellent and holy attribute. Freed from sin and his energy increased by Self-restraint, one acquireth even *Brahma* through it. People are always afeard of those that are without Self-restraint as if the latter were very *Rākshasas*. And it is for keeping these under check that the Self-Existent created the *Kshatriyas!* It hath been said that Self-restraint is an excellent vow for all the four modes of life. I regard those attributes as its indications which owe their origin to Self-restraint. Those indications

---

* This is a very difficult *sloka*. Nilakantha, however, explains it correctly. All the Bengalee translators have misinterpreted it ludicrously. The *tasya* with which the *sloka* begins requires a *yasya* before the second line, and this elipsis being supplied, the meaning becomes clear. What is meant by Self-restraint following charity, asceticism, &c., is Self-restraint existing along with these qualities.—*T.*

are forgiveness, firmness of mind, abstention from injury, an equal regard for all things, truthfulness of speech, simplicity, control over the senses, patience, softness of speech, modesty, steadiness, liberality, mildness, contentment, and faith. He that hath Self-restraint casteth off lust, avarice, pride, wrath, sleep, boastfulness, self-esteem, malice, and sorrow. Purity and the absence of crookedness and fraud, are the distinctive marks of a man of Self-restraint. He that is not covetous, that is satisfied with a little, that regardeth not objects provoking lust, and that is as grave as the ocean, is known as a man of Self-restraint. He that is well-behaved, of a good disposition and a contented soul, that knoweth his own Self and is possessed of wisdom, winneth great regard here and attaineth to a blissful state hereafter. Possessed of mature wisdom, he that hath no fear of other creatures and whom other creatures fear not, is said to be the foremost of men. Seeking the good of all, he is a universal friend, and no one is made unhappy by him. Endued with gravity like that of the ocean and enjoying contentment in consequence of his wisdom, such a man is always calm and cheerful. Regulating their conduct according to the acts practised by the righteous of olden times and before their eyes, they that are Self-restrained, being devoted to peace, rejoice in this world! Or, abandoning Work because contented in consequence of Knowledge, such a person, with his senses under control, moveth quietly in this world, waiting for the inevitable hour and absorption into *Brahma!* And as the track of feathery creatures in the sky is incapable of being perceived, so the path of a sage enjoying contentment in consequence of Knowledge is not visible.* Abandoning the world he that betaketh himself, in pursuit of emancipation, to the *Sannyāsa* mode of life, hath bright and eternal regions assigned to him in heaven!'"

---

* The sense seems to be that having abandoned Work such a person does not leave tangible marks behind him for others to see and follow.

SECTION. LXIII.

"Vidura said,—'We have heard, O sire, from old men, that once on a time a fowler spread his net on the ground for catching feathery denizens of the air. And in that net were ensnared at the same time two birds that lived together. And taking the net up, the two winged creatures soared together into the air. And seeing them soar into the sky, the fowler, without giving way to despair, began to follow them in the direction they flew. Just then an ascetic living in a hermitage (close by), who had finished his morning prayers, saw the fowler running in that manner hoping still to secure the feathery creatures. And seeing that tenant of the earth quickly pursuing those tenants of the air, the ascetic, O Kauravya, addressed him in this *Sloka*,—

O fowler, it appears very strange and wonderful to me that thou that art a treader of the earth pursuest yet a couple of creatures that are tenants of the air!—

The fowler said,—These two, united together, are taking away my snare. There, however, where they will quarrel they will come under my control.—'

"Vidura continued,—'The two birds, doomed to death, soon after quarreled. And when the foolish pair quarreled, they both fell on the earth. And when, ensnared in the meshes of death, they began to contend angrily against each other, the fowler approached unperceived and seized them both. Even thus those kinsmen who fall out with one another for the sake of wealth fall into the hands of the enemy like the birds I have cited, in consequence of their quarrel. Eating together, talking together, asking after one another's welfare, and meeting together,—these are the duties of kinsmen and not contention under any circumstances. Those kinsmen, that with loving hearts wait on the old, become unconquerable like a forest guarded by lions. While those, O bull of the Bharata race, that having won enormous riches nevertheless behave like mean-minded men, always contribute to the prosperity of their foes! Kinsmen, O Dhritarāshtra, O bull of

the Bharata race, are like charred brands, which blaze up when united but only smoke when disunited ! I will now tell thee something else that I saw on a mountain breast. Having listened to that also, do, O Kauravya, what is for thy best ! Once on a time we repaired to the Northern mountain accompanied by some hunters and a number of Brāhmanas fond of discoursing on charms and medicinal plants. That Northern mountain, *Gandhamādana*, looked like a grove, overgrown as its breast was on all sides with trees and plants. And blazing with diverse kinds of medicinal herbs, it was inhabited by *Siddhas* and *Gandharvas*. And there we all saw a quantity of honey, of a bright yellow colour and of the measure of a jar, placed on an inaccessible precipice of the mountain. That honey, which was Kuvera's favourite drink, was guarded by snakes of virulent poison. And it was such that a mortal drinking of it would win immortality, a sightless man obtain sight, and an old man would become a youth. It was thus that those Brāhmanas conversant with sorcery spoke about that honey. And the hunters, seeing that honey, desired, O king, to obtain it. And they all perished in that inaccessible mountain-cave abounding with snakes. In the same way this thy son desireth to enjoy the whole earth without a rival ! He beholdeth the honey, but seeth not, from folly, the terrible fall ! It is true, Duryodhana desireth an encounter in battle with Savyasāchin, but I do not see that energy or prowess in him which may carry him safe through it. On a single car Arjuna conquered the whole earth. At the head of their hosts Bhishma and Drona and others were frightened by Arjuna and utterly routed at the city of Virāta. Remember what took place on that occasion. He forgiveth still, looking up to thy face and waiting to know what thou doest ! Drupada, and the king of the Matsyas, and Dhananjaya, when angry, will, like flames of fire urged by the wind, leave no remnant (of thy army) ! O Dhritarāshtra, take up king Yudhishthira on thy lap since both parties can, under no circumstances, have victory when they engage in battle !' "

SECTION LXIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Consider, O Duryodhana, O dear son, what I tell thee! Like an ignorant traveller thou thinkest the wrong path to be the right one, since thou art desirous of robbing the energy of the five sons of Pāndu who are even as the five elements of the universe in their subtile form upholding all mobile and immobile things!* Without the certain sacrifice of thy life thou art unable to vanquish Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, who is the foremost of all virtuous persons in this world! Alas, like a tree defying the mighty tempest, thou chafest at Bhimasena who hath not his peer (among men, in might and who is equal unto Yama himself in battle! What man of sense would encounter in battle the wielder of *Gāndiva*, who is the foremost of all wielders of weapons as Meru among mountains? What man is there whom Dhristadyumna the prince of Pānchāla cannot overthrow, shooting his arrows among the foe like the chief of the celestials hurling his thunder-bolt? That honored warrior among the Andhakas and the Vrishnis, the irresistible Sātyaki, ever engaged in the good of the Pāndavas, will also slaughter thy host! What man of sense, again, would encounter the lotus-eyed Krishna who, as regards the measure of his energy and power, surpasseth the three worlds? As regards Krishna, his wives, kinsmen, relatives, his own soul, and the whole earth, put on one scale, weigheth with Dhananjaya on the other! That Vāsudeva, upon whom Arjuna relieth, is irresistible, and that host where Keçava is, becometh irresistible everywhere! Listen, therefore, O child, to the counsels of those well-wishers of thine whose words are always for thy good! Accept thou thy aged grandsire, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, as thy guide! Listen thou to what *I* say, and what these well-wishers of the Kurus, Drona, and Kripa, and Vikarna, and king Vālhika, say! These all are as I myself! It behoveth thee to regard them as much as thou

---

* *Mahābhuta*—the elements in their subtile state.—*T.*

regardest me, since, O Bhārata, all these are conversant with morality and bear affection to thee as much as I myself! The panic and rout, before thy eyes, at the city of Virāta, of all thy troops with thy brothers, after surrender of the kine, —indeed, that wonderful story that is heard of an encounter at that city between one and many, is a sufficient proof (of the wisdom of what I say)! When Arjuna singly achieved all that, what will not the Pāndavas achieve when united together? Take them by the hand as thy brothers, and cherish them with a share of the kingdom!' "

SECTION LXV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having addressed Suyodhana thus, the highly blessed and wise Dhritarāshtra again asked Sanjaya, saying,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, what thou hast not yet said, *viz*, what Arjuna told thee after the conclusion of Vāsudeva's speech, for great is my curiosity to hear it!'

"Sanjaya said,—'Having heard the words spoken by Vāsudeva, the irresistible Dhananjaya the son of Kunti, when the opportunity came, said these words in the hearing of Vāsudeva!—O Sanjaya, our grandsire the son of Cāntanu, and Dhritarāshtra, and Drona, and Kripa, and Karna, and king Vālhika, and Drona's son, and Somadatta, and Cakuni the son of Suvala; and Dusçāsana, and Cala, and Purumitra, and Vivinçati; and Vikarna, and Chitrasena, and king Jayatsena, and Vinda and Anuvinda the two chiefs of Avanti, and Durmukha of the Kuru race; and the king of the Sindhus, and Dussaha, and Bhuriçravas, and king Bhagadatta, and king Jalasandha, and other rulers of the earth, assembled there to fight for the good of the Kauravas, are all on the eve of death! They have been assembled by Dhritarāshtra's son for being offered up as libations on the blazing Pāndava fire! In my name, O Sanjaya, enquire after the welfare of those assembled kings according to their respective ranks, paying them proper regard at the same time! Thou shouldst also, O Sanjaya, say this, in the presence of all the kings, unto Suyodhana—that foremost of all sinful men! Wrathful and

wicked, of sinful soul and exceedingly covetous, do thou, O Sanjaya, see that that fool with his counsellors hears all that I say !—And with this preface, Prithā's son Dhananjaya endued with great wisdom and possessed of large eyes with red corners, glancing at Vāsudeva, then spoke unto me these words pregnant with both virtue and profit !—Thou hast already heard the measured words spoken by the high-souled chief of the Madhu race ! Say unto the assembled kings that those are also my words ! And say this also from me, unto those kings,—*Do ye together try to act in such a way that libations may not have to be poured into the arrowy fire of the great sacrifice of battle, in which the rattle of car-wheels will sound as mantras, and the rank-routing bow will act as the ladle ! If, indeed, ye do not give up unto Yudhishthira that slayer of foes his own share in the kingdom asked back by him, I shall then, by means of my arrows, send all of you, with cavalry, infantry, and elephants, into the inauspicious regions of departed spirits !*—Then bidding adieu unto Dhananjaya and Hari of four arms and bowing unto them both, I have with great speed come hither to convey those words of grave import to thee, O thou that art endued with effulgence equal that of the very gods !' "

SECTION LXVI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"When Duryodhana the son of Dhritarāshtra showed little regard for the words spoken by Sanjaya, and when the rest remained silent, the assembled kings rose up and retired. And after all the kings of the earth had retired, king Dhritarāshtra, who always followed the counsels of his son from affection, wishing success to the assembled kings, began to enquire in secret of Sanjaya about the resolves of his own party, and of the Pāndavas who were hostile to him.* And Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me truly, O son of Gavalgani,

---

* Some think *three*, and not *two*, parties are referred to by the words *ātmanascha* &c., *viz*, "his own, of others, and of the Pāndavas." The repetion of the particle *cha* after each word would seem to favor such a construction.—*T.*

in what consists the strength and weakness of our own host! Minutely acquainted as thou art with the affairs of the Pāndavas, tell me in what lies their superiority and in what, their inferiority! Thou art fully conversant with the strength of both parties. Thou knowest all things, and art well versed in all matters of virtue and profit! Asked by me, O Sanjaya, say, which of the parties, when engaged in battle, will perish?'

"Sanjaya said,—'I will not say anything to thee in secret, O king, for then thou mayst entertain ill-feelings towards me! Bring thou hither, O Ājamida, thy father Vyāsa of high vows and thy queen Gāndhari! Conversant with morality, of keen perception, and capable of arriving at the truth, they will remove any ill-feelings thou mayst cherish against me! In their presence, O king, I will tell thee everything about the intentions of Keçava and Pārtha!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed, Dhritarāshtra caused both Gāndhari and Vyāsa to be brought there. And introduced by Vidura they entered the court without delay. And understanding the intentions of both Sanjaya and his son, Krishna-Dwaipāyana endued with great wisdom said,—'Say, O Sanjaya, unto the enquiring Dhritarāshtra everything that he desireth to know! Tell him truly all that thou knowest about Vāsudeva and Arjuna!'"

SECTION LXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Those adorable bowmen, Arjuna and Vāsudeva, who are perfectly equal unto each other in respect of their godlike nature, have taken their births of their own will.* O lord, the discus owned by Vāsudeva of abundant energy occupieth a space full five cubits in diameter, is capable also of being hurled at the foe (in forms large or small) accor-

---

* *Kāmādanyatra Sambhutau* is explained by Nilakantha as *akāmajam janma*, *i. e.* they were born not in consequence of any act of their past lives, but of their own will, and for benefiting the earth. *Sarvabhāvaya Sammitau* is "equal in their godlike nature." All the Bengalee translators have failed in correctly rendering this *sloka*.—*T.*

ding to the will of the wielder himself, and dependeth on illusion. Always conspicuous by its effulgence, it is invisible to the Kurus; and in ascertaining the strength or weakness of the Pāndavas, that discus offers the best ground. Indeed, that scion of Madhu's race, endued with great might, vanquished without an effort and in seeming playfulness the formidable Naraka and Camvara and Kansa and (Cisupāla) the chief of the Chedis! Possessed of divinity and of soul superior to everything, that most exalted of male beings can, by his will alone, bring the earth, firmament, and heaven under his control! Thou askest me repeatedly, O king, about the Pāndavas for knowing their strength and weakness! Listen now to all that in brief! If the whole universe be placed on one scale and Janārddana on the other, even then Janārddana will outweigh the entire universe! Janārddana at his pleasure can reduce the universe to ashes, but the entire universe is incapable of reducing Janārddana to ashes! Wherever there is truthfulness, wherever virtue, wherever modesty, wherever simplicity, even there is Govinda! And thither where Krishna is, success must be! That soul of all creatures, that most exalted of male beings, Janārddana, guideth, as if in sport, the entire earth, the firmament, and the heaven! Making the Pāndavas the indirect means, and beguiling the whole world, Janārddana wisheth to blast thy wicked sons that are all addicted to sin! Endued with divine attributes, Keçava, by the power of his soul, causeth the wheel of Time, the wheel of the Universe, and the wheel of the *Yuga*, to revolve incessantly!* And I tell thee truly that that glorious Being is alone the Lord of Time, of Death, and of this Universe of mobile and immobile creatures! That great ascetic *Hari*, though the Lord of the whole Universe, still betaketh himself to Work like a humble laborer that tilleth the fields! Indeed,

---

* The wheel of Time, *i. e.*, the year with its months coming in the same round. The wheel of the Universe means the birth, existence, and destruction of all things succeeding in repeated cycles. The wheel of the *Yuga* means the wheel of Work, *i. e.*, Work leading to repeated rebirths.—*T.*

Keçava beguileth all by the aid of his illusion. Those men, however, that have attained to Him are not deceived!' "

SECTION LXVIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How hast *thou*, O Sanjaya, been able to know Mādhava as the Supreme Lord of the universe? And how is it that *I* am unable to know Him as such? Tell me this, O Sanjaya!'

"Sanjaya said,—'Listen, O king! Thou hast no Knowledge, whereas *my* Knowledge hath suffered no diminution! He that is without Knowledge and is shrouded with the darkness of Ignorance, knoweth not Keçava. Aided by my Knowledge, O sire, I know the slayer of Madhu to be the union of the Gross, the Subtile, and the Cause; and that He is the Creator of all but is Himself increate; and also that, endued with Divinity, it is He from whom everything springs and it is He unto whom all things return!'*

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O son of Gavalgani, what is the nature of that Faith which thou hast in Janārddana and in consequence of which thou knowest the slayer of Madhu to be the union of the Gross, the Subtile, and the Cause?'

"Sanjaya said,—'Blessed be thou, O king, I have no regard for the illusion (that is identified with worldly pleasures) and I never practise the useless virtues (of vows and work without reliance on Him and purity of Soul)! Having obtained purity of Soul through Faith, I have known Janārddana from the scriptures.†

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O Duryodhana, seek thou the protection of Janārddana otherwise called Hrishikeça! O child, Sanjaya is one of our trustiest friends! Seek refuge with Keçava!'

"Duryodhana said,—'If the divine son of Devaki, united

---

* By Knowledge here is meant the true understanding of the *Cruti* and *Upanishad* texts—"*Tattamasi*,"—"*Tattamasi çwetaketo*,"—"*Aham Brahmāsmi*"—&c., &c.,—T.

† *i. e.*, the *Crutis* and *Upanishads*.—T.

in friendship with Arjuna, were to slay all mankind, I cannot, even then, resign myself to Keçava!'*

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'This evil-minded son of thine, O Gāndhāri, is resolved to sink in misery! Envious, wicked-souled, and vain, he setteth aside the words of all his superiors!'

"Gāndhāri said,—'Thou covetous wretch that disregardest the commands of the aged, abandoning thy father and myself and giving up prosperity and life, enhancing the joy of thy foes, and afflicting me with deep distress, thou wilt, O fool, remember thy father's words, when struck by Bhimasena thou wilt bite the dust!'

"Vyāsa said,—'Listen to me, O king! Thou, O Dhritarāshtra, art the beloved of Krishna. When Sanjaya hath been thy envoy, he will verily lead thee to thy good! He knoweth Hrishikeça,—that ancient and exalted One! If thou listenest to him with attention, he will certainly save thee from the great danger that hangs upon thee! O son of Vichitravirya, subject to wrath and joy, men are entangled in various nets! They that are not contented with their own possessions, deprived of sense as they are by avarice and desire, they repeatedly become subject to Death in consequence of their own acts, like blind men (falling into pits) when led by the blind! The path that is trod by the wise is the only one (that leadeth to *Brahma*). They that are superior, keeping that path in view, overcome death and reach the goal by it.'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, of that path without terrors by which, obtaining Hrishikeça, salvation may be mine!'

"Sanjaya said,—'A man of uncontrolled mind can by no

---

* Some commentators are for interpreting this *sloka* as indicative of a milder disposition on the part of Duryodhana. What, according to them, Duryodhana says here is,—"If Keçava slayeth all mankind &c. &c. I can not obtain him now," *i. e.*, "Even if I go to him, owing to my sinful heart I shall fail to obtain communion with him." I do not think, however, that this can be the sense, for a few lines lower down, even Gāndhāri curses him for his refusal to obey Dhritarāshtra's command. Both Dhritarāshtra and Gāndhāri take Duryodhana's reply as the very reverse of a modest one.—*T.*

means know Janārddana whose soul is under perfect command. The performance of sacrifices without controlling one's senses is even no means to that end. Renunciation of the objects of our excited senses is due to spiritual light; both spiritual light and abstention from injury arise doubtless from true wisdom. Therefore, O king, resolve to subdue thy senses with all possible vigor: let not thy intellect deviate from true knowledge; and restrain thy heart from wordly temptations that surround it. Learned Brāhmanas describe this subjugation of the senses to be true wisdom; and this wisdom is the path by which learned men proceed to their goal. O king, Keçava is not obtainable by men who have not subdued their senses. He that hath subdued his senses desireth spiritual knowledge, awakened by the knowledge of scriptures and the pleasure of *Yoga* absorption.'"

SECTION LXIX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I request thee, O Sanjaya, to tell me again of the lotus-eyed Krishna; for, by being acquainted with the import of his names, I may, O son, obtain that most exalted of male beings!'

"Sanjaya said,—'The auspicious names (of Keçava) have been previously heard by me. Of those I will tell thee as many as I know. Keçava, however, is immeasurable, being above the power of speech to describe! He is called *Vāsudeva* in consequence of his enveloping all creatures with the screen of illusion, or of his glorious splendour, or of his being the support and resting place of the gods. He is called *Vishnu* because of his all-pervading nature. He is called *Mādhava*, O Bhārata, because of his practices as a *Muni*, concentration of mind on truth, and *Yoga* absorption. He is called *Mādhusudana* because of his having slain the Asura *Madhu* and also because of his being the substance of the twenty-four objects of knowledge. Born of the *Sāttwata* race, he is called *Krishna* because he uniteth in himself what are implied by the two words *Krishi* which signifieth 'what existeth' and *na* which signifieth 'eternal peace'. He is called *Pun-*

darikāksha from *Pundarika* implying his high and eternal abode, and *Aksha* implying 'indestructible'; and he is called *Janārddana* because he striketh fear into the harts of all wicked beings. He is called *Sāttwata*, because the attribute of *Sattwa* is never dissociated from him and because also he is never dissociated from it; and he is called *Vrishabhekshana* from *Vrishabha* implying the 'Vedas' and *ikshana* implying 'eye', the union of the two signifying that the *Vedas* are his *eye*, or the *Vedas* are the *eyes* through which he may be seen. That conqueror of hosts is called *Aja*, or 'unborn', because he hath not taken his birth from any being in the ordinary way. That Supreme Soul is called *Dāmodara* because unlike the gods his effulgence is increate and his own, and also because he hath self-control and great splendour. He is called *Hrishikeça*, from *Hrishika* meaning 'eternal happiness' and *Iça* meaning 'the six divine attributes', the union signifying one having joy, happiness, and divinity. He is called *Mahāvāhu* because he upholdeth the earth and the sky with his two arms. He is called *Adhokshaja*, because he never falleth down or suffereth any deterioration, and is called *Nārāyana* from his being the refuge of all human beings. He is called *Purushottama* from *Puru* implying 'he that createth and preserveth' and *sa* meaning 'he that destroyeth', the union signifying one that createth, preserveth, and destroyeth the universe. He possesseth a knowledge of all things and, therefore, is called *Sarva*. Krishna is always in Truth and Truth is always in him, and Govinda is Truth's Truth. Therefore, he is called *Satya*. He is called *Vishnu* because of his prowess, and *Jishnu* because of his success. He is called *Ananta* from his Eternity, and *Govinda* from his knowledge of speech of every kind. He maketh the unreal appear as real and thereby beguileth all creatures. Possessed of such attributes, ever devoted to righteousness, and endued with divinity, the slayer of Madhu, that mighty-armed one incapable of decay, will come hither for preventing the slaughter of the Kurus!'"

SECTION LXX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O Sanjaya, I envy those gifted with sight who will behold before them that Vāsudeva whose body endued with great beauty shineth with effulgence, illuminating the cardinal and subsidiary points of the compass; who will give utterance to words that will be listened to with respect by the Bharatas,—words that are auspicious to the Srinjayas, acceptable by those desirous of prosperity, faultless in every respect, and unacceptable by those that are doomed to death; who is full of high resolves, eternal, possessed of unrivalled heroism; who is the bull of the Yādavas and their leader; and who is the slayer and woe-inspirer of all foes, and who is the destroyer of the fame of every enemy! The assembled Kauravas will behold that high-souled and adorable One, that slayer of foes, that chief of the Vrishnis, uttering words full of kindness, and fascinating all of my party! I will put myself in the hands of that Eternal one, that *Rishi* endued with knowledge of Self, that ocean of eloquence, that Being who is easily attainable by ascetics, that bird called *Arishta* furnished with beautiful wings, that destroyer of creatures, that refuge of the universe; that one of a thousand heads, that creator and destroyer of all things, that Ancient one, that one without beginning, middle, or end, that one of infinite achievements, that cause of the prime seed, that unborn one, that Eternity's self, that highest of the high, that creator of the three worlds, that author of gods, *Asuras*, *Nagas*, and *Rākshasas*, that foremost of all learned persons and rulers of men, that younger brother of Indra!'"

SECTION LXXI.

(Bhagavat Yāna Parva).

Janamejaya said.—"When the good Sanjaya (leaving the Pāndava camp) went back to the Kurus, what did my grandsires, the sons of Pāndu, then do? O foremost of Brāhmanas, I desire to hear all this! Tell me this, therefore!"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"After Sanjaya had gone, Yudhishthira the just addressed Krishna of the Daçārha race—that chief of all the Sāttwatas, saying,—'O thou that art devoted to friends, the time hath come for friends to show their friendship! I do not see any other person besides thee that can save us in this season of distress! Relying on thee, O Mādhava, we have fearlessly asked back our share from Duryodhana who is filled with groundless pride and his counsellors! O chastiser of foes, as thou protectest the Vrishnis in all their calamities, do thou now protect the Pāndavas also from a great danger, for they deserve thy protection!'

"The divine Krishna said,—'Here am I, O mighty-armed one! Tell me what thou desirest to say, for I will, O Bhārata, accomplish whatever thou wilt tell me!'

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast heard what the intention is of Dhritarāshtra and his son! All that Sanjaya, O Krishna, said unto me hath certainly the assent of Dhritarāshtra. Sanjaya is Dhritarāshtra's soul, and spoke out his mind. An envoy speaketh according to his instructions, for if he speaketh otherwise he deserveth to be slain. Without looking equally on all that are his, moved by avarice and a sinful heart, Dhritarāshtra seeketh to make peace with us without giving us back our kingdom. Indeed, at Dhritarāshtra's command we spent twelve years in the woods and one additional year in concealment, well believing, O lord, that Dhritarāshtra would abide firmly by that pledge of ours! That we did not deviate from our promise is well known to the *Brāhmanas* who were with us. The covetous king Dhritarāshtra, is now unwilling to observe Kshatriya virtues! Owing to affection for his son, he is for listening to the counsels of wicked men. Abiding by the counsels of Suyodhana, the king, O Janārddana, actuated by avarice and seeking his own good, behaveth untruthfully towards us! What can be more sorrowful, O Janārddana, than this, that I am unable to maintain my mother and my friends? Having the Kāsis, the Pānchālas, the Chedis, and the Matsyas, for my allies, and with thee, O slayer of Madhu, for my protector, I prayed for only five villages, *viz, Avisthala, Vrikasthala, Mākandi, Vāranāvata,*

with any other, O Govinda, as the fifth!—*Grant us*, we said, *five villages or towns, O sire, where we five may dwell in union for we do not desire the destruction of the Bharatas!*—The wicked-minded son of Dhritarāshtra, however, regarding the lordship of the world to be in him, doth not agree to even that. What can be more sorrowful than this? When a man born and brought up in a respectable family coveteth the possessions of others, that avarice of his destroyeth his intelligence; and intelligence being destroyed, shame is lost; and loss of shame leadeth to a diminution of virtue; and loss of virtue bringeth on loss of prosperity. Destruction of prosperity, in its turn, ruineth a person, for poverty is a person's death. Kinsmen and friends and Brāhmanas shun a poor man as birds avoid, O Krishna, a tree that beareth neither flowers nor fruits! Even this, O sire, is death to me that kinsmen shun me as if I were a fallen one, like the breath of life quitting a dead body! Camvara said that no condition of life could be more distressful than that in which one is always racked by the anxiety caused by the thought—*I have no meal for today, what will become of me tomorrow?*—It is said that wealth is the highest virtue and everything depends on wealth. They that have wealth are said to *live*, whereas those that are without wealth are more dead than alive. They that by violence rob a man of his wealth not only kill the robbed but destroy also his virtue, profit, and pleasure! Some men when overtaken by poverty elect death; others remove from cities to hamlets; others retire into the woods; while others again become religious mendicants to destroy their lives. Some for the sake of wealth are driven to madness; others, for wealth, live under subjection to their foes; while many others, again, for the sake of wealth, betake themselves to the servitude of others. A man's poverty is even more distressful to him than death, for wealth is the sole cause of virtue and pleasure. The natural death of a person is not much regarded, for that is the eternal path of all creatures. Indeed, none among created beings around him can transgress it. O Krishna, a man who is poor from birth is not so much distressed as one who, having once possessed great prosperity and

having been brought up in luxury, is deprived of that prosperity. Having through his own fault fallen into distress, such a person blameth the very gods with Indra and his own self. Indeed, knowledge of even the entire scriptures faileth to mitigate his pangs. Sometimes he getteth angry with his servants, and sometimes he cherisheth malice towards even his well-wishers. Subject to constant anger he loseth his very senses, and his senses being clouded, he practiseth evil deeds. Through sinfulness such a person contributeth to a fusion of castes. A fusion of castes leadeth to hell and is the foremost of all sinful acts. If he is not awakened in time, he goeth certainly, O Krishna, to hell, and, indeed, wisdom is the only thing that can awaken him, for if he obtaineth back the eye of wisdom, he is saved! When wisdom is regained, such a man turneth his attention to scriptures; and attention to scriptures aideth his virtue. Then shame becometh his best ornament. He that hath shame hath an aversion from sin, and his prosperity also increaseth; and he that hath prosperity truly becometh a man. He that is ever devoted to virtue, and hath his mind under control, and always acteth after deliberation, never inclineth towards unrighteousness and never engageth in any act that is sinful! He that is without shame and sense is niether man nor woman. He is incapable of earning religious merit, and is like a *Cudra*. He that hath shame gratifieth the gods, the *Pitris*, and even his own self; and by this he obtaineth emancipation, which, indeed, is the highest aim of all righteous persons!

" 'Thou hast, O slayer of Madhu, seen all this in me with thy own eyes! It is not unknown to thee how, deprived of kingdom, we have lived these years! We can not lawfully abandon that prosperity (which had been ours)! Even death would be preferable in our struggles to regain that prosperity! As regards that matter, O Mādhava, our first resolve is that both ourselves and the Kauravas united in peace will quietly enjoy our prosperity. Otherwise, we shall, after slaying the Kauravas, regain those provinces, although success through bloodshed is the worst of all fierce deeds! O Krishna, the destruction of even despicable foes that bear no relation-

ship with us, is improper! What shall I say then of these that are related to us so nearly? We have numerous kinsmen, and numerous also are the reverend seniors that have adopted this or the other side. The slaughter of these would be highly sinful. What good, therefore, can there be in battle? Alas, such sinful practices are the duties of the Kshatriya order! Ourselves have taken our births in that wretched order! Whether these practices be sinful or virtuous, any other than the profession of arms would be censurable for us! A *Cudra* serveth; a *Vaiçya* liveth by trade; the *Brahmanas* have chosen the wooden dish (for begging),* while *we* are to live by slaughter! A *Kshatriya* slayeth a *Kshatriya*; fishes live on fish; a dog preyeth upon a dog. Behold, O thou of the Daçārha race, how each of these followeth his peculiar virtue! O Krishna, Kali† is ever present in battle-fields; lives are lost all around. It is true, force regulated by policy is invoked; yet success and defeat are independent of the will of the combatants. The lives also of creatures are independent of their own wishes, and neither weal nor woe can be one's when the time is not come for it, O best of Yadu's race! Sometimes one man killeth many, and sometimes many united together kill one. A coward may slay a hero, and one unknown to fame may slay a hero of celebrity! Both parties can not win success, nor both be defeated. The loss, however, on both sides may be equal. If one flieth away, loss of both life and expense is his. Under all circumstances, however, war is a sin. Who in striking another is not struck himself? As regards the person, however, who is struck, victory and defeat, O Hrishikeça, are the same! It is true that defeat is not much removed from death, but his loss also, O Krishna, is not less who winneth victory! He himself may not be killed, but his adversaries will kill at least some one that is dear to him, or some others, and thus

---

* *Kapālam*—a pot, dish, or vessel, for begging, generally made of wood, or of cocoanut shells or gourd shells.—T.

† The embodiment of unrighteousness. *Vide* the story *Nala*, *infra*.

the man, O sire,* deprived of strength and not seeing before him his sons and brothers, becometh indifferent, O Krishna, to life itself! Those that are quiet, modest, virtuous, and compassionate, are generally slain in battle, while they that are wicked escape. Even after slaying one's foes, repentance, O Janārddana, possesseth the heart! He that surviveth among the foes giveth trouble, for the survivor, collecting a force, seeketh to destroy the surviving victors. In hopes of terminating the dispute, one often seeketh to exterminate the foe. Thus victory createth animosity, and he that is defeated liveth in sorrow! He that is peaceful sleepeth in happiness, giving up all thoughts of victory and defeat, whereas he that hath provoked hostility always sleepeth in misery, with, indeed, an anxious heart, as if sleeping with a snake in the same room! He that exterminates seldom winneth fame. On the other hand, such a person reapeth eternal infamy in the estimation of all! Hostilities, waged ever so long, cease not; for if there is even one alive in the enemy's family, narrators are never wanted to remind him of the past. Enmity, O Keçava, is never neutralised by enmity; on the other hand, it is fomented by enmity like fire fed by clarified butter. Therefore, there can be no peace without the annihilation of one party, for flaws may always be detected of which advantage may be taken by one side or the other. They that are engaged in watching for flaws have this vice. A confidence in one's own prowess troubleth the core of one's heart like an incurable disease. Without either renouncing that at once, or death, there can be no peace. It is true, O slayer of Madhu, that exterminating the foe by the very roots may lead to good results in the shape of great prosperity, yet such an act is most cruel! The peace that may be brought about by our renouncing the kingdom is hardly different from that death which is implied by the loss of kingdom in consequence of the designs of the enemy and the utter ruin of ourselves! We do not wish to give up the kingdom, nor do we wish to see the

* I render the vocative particle *Anga* as *sire* although it is every where a respectful address.—T.

extinction of our race. Under these circumstances, therefore, the peace that is obtained through even humiliation is the best. When those that strive for peace by all means, without of course wishing for war, find concilation fail, war becomes inevitable, and then is the time for the display of prowess. Indeed, when concilation fails, frightful results follow. The learned have noticed all this in a canine contest. First there comes the wagging of tails, then the bark, then the bark in reply, then the circumambulation, then the showing of teeth, then repeated roars, and then at last the battle. In such a contest, O Krishna, the dog that is stronger, vanquishing his antagonist, taketh the latter's meat. The same is exactly the case with men. There is no difference whatever. They that are powerful should be indifferent to and avoid disputes with the weak, for the weak always bow down. The father, the king, and he that is venerable in years, always deserve regard. Dhritarāshtra, therefore, O Janārddana, is worthy of our respect and worship. But, O Mādhava, Dhritarāshtra's affection for his son is great. Obedient to his son, he will reject our submission. What dost thou, O Krishna, think best at this juncture? How may we, O Mādhava, preserve both our interest and virtue? Whom also, besides thee, O slayer of Madhu and foremost of men, shall we consult in this difficult affair? What other friend have we, O Krishna, who like thee is so dear to us, who so seeketh our welfare, who is so conversant with the course of all actions, and who is so well acquainted with truth!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed, Janārddana replied unto Yudhishthira the just, saying,—'I will go to the court of the Kurus for the sake of both of you. If without sacrificing your interests I can obtain peace, O king, an act of great religous merit will be mine productive of great fruits! I shall have then also saved from the meshes of death the Kurus and the Srinjayas inflamed with wrath, the Pāndavas and the Dhārtarāshtras, and, in fact, this entire Earth!'

"Yudhishthira said,—'It is not my wish, O Krishna, that thou wilt go to the Kurus, for Suyodhana will never act acording to thy words, even if thou advisest him well! All the

Kshatriyas of the world, obedient to Duryodhana's command, are assembled there. I do not like that thou, O Krishna, shouldst proceed into their midst! If any mischief be done to thee, O Mādhava, let alone happiness, nothing, not even divinity, nor even the sovereignty over all the gods, will delight us!'

"The holy one said,—'I know, O monarch, the sinfulness of Dhritarāshtra's son, but by going there we will escape the blame of all the kings of the earth! Like other animals before the lion, all the kings of the earth united together are not competent to stand still before me in battle when I am angry. If, after all, they do me any injury, then I will consume all the Kurus! Even this is my intention! My going thither, O Pārthā, will not be fruitless, for if our object be not fulfilled, we shall at least escape all blame!'

"Yudhishthira said,—'Do, O Krishna, as it pleaseth thee! Blessed be thou, go then to the Kurus! I hope to behold thee return successful and prosperous! Going unto the Kurus, make thou, O Lord, such a peace that all the sons of Bharata may live together with cheerful hearts and contentedly! Thou art our brother and friend, dear to me as much as to Vibhatsu. Such hath been our intimacy with thee that we apprehend no neglect of our interests from thee! Go thou, therefore, for our good! Thou knowest us, thou knowest our antagonists, thou knowest what our purposes are, and thou knowest also what to say! Thou wilt, O Krishna, say unto Suyodhana such words as are for our benefit! Whether peace is to be established by (apparent) sin or by any other means, O Keçava, speak such words as may prove beneficial to us!'"*

---

* A difference of reading occurs here. It is noticed by Nilakantha. I prefer the reading which Nilakantha adopts. *Adharmena samjuktam sāntam* is explained by him to mean (as I have rendered) "peace by sinful means" *i. e.*, (as Nilakantha says) "peace brought about by the cession and acceptance of only five villages. This would be sinful for us, for we would then be renouncing our own inheritance to the injury of our capacity for benefiting friends, relatives, and also ourselves, by performance of large sacrifices." *Vetarat* is "or otherwise," *i. e.*, by dice, for I Yudhishthira, since Vrihadaçwa's boon, am quite competent to regain my kingdom by defeating Cakuni himself at the gaming table.—T.

SECTION LXXII.

"The holy one said,—'I have heard Sanjaya's words and now I have heard thine. I now know all about their purposes as also of thyself! Thy heart inclineth to righteousness, whereas their inclination is towards enmity. That which is obtained without war is of great value to thee. A life-long *Brahmacharya* is not, O lord of earth, the duty of a *Kshatriya*! Indeed, men of all the four orders have said that a Kshatriya should never subsist on alms! Victory or death in battle, hath been eternally ordained by the Creator. Even that is the duty of a Kshatriya. Cowardice is not applauded (in a Kshatriya)! Subsistence, O Yudhishthira, is not possible by cowardice. O thou of mighty arms, display thy prowess, and vanquish, O chastiser of foes, thy enemies! The covetous son of Dhritarāshtra, O chastiser of foes, living for a long time (with many kings) has by affection and friendship become very powerful. Therefore, O king, there is no hope* of his making peace with thee! They regard themselves strong, having Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and others with them. As long, O king, as thou, O grinder of foes, wilt behave with them mildly, they will withhold thy kingdom! Neither from compassion, nor from mildness, nor from a sense of righteousness, will the sons of Dhritarāshtra, O chastiser of foes, fulfil thy wishes! This, O son of Pāndu, is another proof that they will not make peace with thee, *viz*, that they, having pained thee so deeply by making thee put on a *Kaupina*, were not stung with remoarse! When in the very sight of the grandsire (Bhishma) and Drona and the wise Vidura, of many holy *Brāhmanas*, the king, the citizens, and all the chief Kauravas, the cruel Duryodhana, deceitfully defeating thee at dice,—thee that art charitable, mild, self-restrained, virtuous, and of rigid vows,—was not, O king, ashamed of his vile act, do not, O

---

* *Paryāya* is explained by Nilkantha to mean "expedient." The sense, however, of the passage is as I have rendered it.—T.

monarch, show any compassion for that wretch of such disposition! They deserve death at the hands of all, how much more then of thee, O Bhārata! O Bhārata, with what improper speeches did Duryodhana with his brothers, filled with gladness and indulging in many a boast, afflict thee with thy brothers! He said,—*The Pāndavas now have nothing of their own in this wide earth! Their very names and lineage are extinct! In time, which is never ending, defeat will be theirs. All their virtues having merged in me, they will now be reduced to the five elements!** While the match at dice was in progress, the wretched Duṣçāsana of most wicked soul, seizing that weeping lady by the hair dragged the princess Draupadi as if she had no protectors, to the assembly of kings, and in the presence of Bhishma and Drona and others, repeatedly called her—*cow, cow!* Restrained by thee, thy brothers of terrible prowess, bound also by the bonds of virtue, did nothing to avenge it. And after thou hadst been exiled to the woods, Duryodhana having uttered such and other cruel words, boasted amid his kinsmen. Knowing thee innocent, they that were assembled sat silent in the assembly-house weeping with choked voices. The assembled kings with the Brāhmanas did not applaud him for this. Indeed, all the courtiers present there censured him. To a man of noble descent, O grinder of foes, even censure is death. Death is even many times better than bearing a life of blame. Even then, O king, he died when, upon being censured by all the kings of the earth, he felt no shame! He whose character is so abominable may easily be destroyed even like a rootless tree standing erect on a single weak root.† The sinful and evil-minded Duryodhana deserveth death at the hands of every one, even like a serpent. Slay him, there-

---

* This is how Nilkantha explains the passage. A different meaning is suggested by the Burdwan Pundits. "Their sovereignty being merged in me, they will now have to court our subjects for a living." I cannot say that this is not the meaning, considering that *Prakriti* means "subjects."—T.

† *Praskandena* is better than *Praskundena*. The manuscripts of Western India have the former reading.—T.

fore, O killer of foes, and hesitate not in the least! It behoveth thee, O sinless one, and I like it too, that thou shouldst pay homage unto thy father Dhritarāshtra and also unto Bhishma. Going thither I will remove the doubts of all men who are still undecided as to the wickedness of Duryodhana. Thither in the presence of all kings I will enumerate all those virtues of thine that are not to be met in all men, as also all the vices of Duryodhana! And hearing me speak beneficial words pregnant with virtue and profit, the rulers of various realms will regard thee as possessed of a virtuous soul and as a speaker of truth, while at the same time they will understand how Duryodhana is actuated by avarice. I will also recite the vices of Duryodhana before both the citizens and the inhabitants of the country, before both the young and the old, of all the four orders that will be collected there. And as thou askest for peace no one will charge thee as sinful, while all the chiefs of the earth will censure the Kurus and Dhritarāshtra. And when Duryodhana will be dead in consequence of his being forsaken by all men, there will be nothing left to do. Do then what should now be done. Going unto the Kurus, I shall strive to make peace without sacrificing thy interests, and marking their inclination for war and all their proceedings, I will soon come back, O Bhārata, for thy victory! I think war with the enemy to be certain. All the omens that are noticeable by me point to that. Birds and animals set up firightful screeches and howls at the approach of dusk. The foremost of elephants and steeds are assuming horrible shapes; the very fire exhibiteth diverse kinds of terrible hues. This would never have been the case but for the fact of the world-destroying Havoc's self coming into our midst! Making ready their weapons, machines, coats of mail, and cars, elephants, and steeds, let all thy warriors be prepared for battle, and let them take care of their elephants and horses and cars. And, O king, collect everything that thou needest for the impending war! As long as he liveth, Duryodhana will by no means be able to give back unto thee, O king, that kingdom of thine which, abounding in prosperity, had before been taken by him at dice!"

Section LXXIII.

"Bhima said,—'Speak thou, O slayer of Madhu, in such a strain that there may be peace with the Kurus! Do not threaten them with war! Resenting everything, his wrath always excited, hostile to his own good, and arrogant, Duryodhana should not be roughly addressed! Do thou behave towards him with mildness! Duryodhana is by nature sinful, of heart like that of a robber, intoxicated with the pride of prosperity, hostile to the Pāndavas, without foresight, cruel in speech, always disposed to censure others, of wicked prowess, of wrath not easily to be appeased, not susceptible of being taught, of wicked soul, deceitful in behaviour, capable of giving up his very life rather than break or give up his own opinion. Peace with such a one, O Krishna, is, I suppose most difficult! Regardless of the words of even his well-wishers, destitute of virtue, loving falsehood, he always acts against the words of his counsellors and wounds their hearts. Like a serpent hid within reeds, he naturally commits sinful acts, depending on his own wicked disposition, and obedient to the impulse of wrath. What army Duryodhana hath, what his conduct is, what his nature, what his might, and what his prowess, are all well-known to thee! Before this, the Kauravas with their sons passed their days in cheerfulness, and we also with our friends rejoiced like the younger brothers of Indra with Indra himself. Alas, by Duryodhana's wrath, O slayer of Madhu, the Bharatas will all be consumed even like forests by fire at the end of the dewy season! And, O slayer of Madhu, well-known are those eighteen kings that annihilated their kinsmen, friends, and relatives! Even as, when *Dharma* became extinct, Kali was born in the race of *Asuras* flourishing with prosperity and blazing with energy, so was born Udāvarta among the Haihayas, Janamejaya among the Nipas, Vāhula among the Tālajanghas, the proud Vasu among the Krimis; Ajavindu among the Suviras, Rushardhika among the Surāshtras, Arkaja among the Valihas, Dhautamulaka among the Chinas; Hayagriva among the Videhas,

Varayu among the Mahaujasas, Vāhu among the Sundaras, Pururavas among the Diptākshas; Sahaja among the Chedis and the Matsyas, Vrishaddhaja among the Praviras, Dhārana among the Chandravatsas, Vigāhana among the Mukutas, and Sama among the Nandivegas! These vile individuals, O Krishna, sprang up, at the end of each *Yuga*, in their respective races, for the destruction of their kinsmen! So hath Duryodhana, the very embodiment of sin and the disgrace of his race, been born, at the end of the *Yuga*, amongst us the Kurus! Therefore, O thou of fierce prowess, thou shouldst address him slowly and mildly, not in keen but sweet words fraught with virtue and profit, and discoursing fully on the subject so as to attract his heart.* All of us, O Krishna, would rather in humiliation follow Duryodhana submissively, but, oh, let not the Bharatas be annihilated! O Vāsudeva, act in such a way that we may rather live as strangers to the Kurus than that the sin of bringing about the destruction of the whole race should touch them! O Krishna, let the aged grandsire and the other counsellors of the Kurus be asked to bring about brotherly feelings between brothers and to pacify the son of Dhritarāshtra! Even this is what I say! King Yudhishthira also applaudeth this, and Arjuna too is averse from war, for there is great compassion in him!'"

SECTION LXXIV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing these words from Bhima that were fraught with such mildness and that were as unexpected as if the hills had lost their weight and fire had become cold, Rama's younger brother Keçava of Cura's race and mighty arms wielding the bow called *Çārnga*, laughed aloud, and as if to stimulate Bhima by his words, like the breeze fanning a fire, addressed him who was then so overwhelmed by the impulse of kindness, saying,—'At other times, O Bhimasena, thou applaudest war only, desirous of crushing the wicked sons of Dhritarāshtra that take delight in the destruction of others! O chastiser of foes, thou dost not sleep

* I render this *Sloka* a little too freely.—T.

but wakest the whole night, sitting up face downwards! Thou often utterest frightful exclamations of wrath indicative of the storm within thy heart! Inflamed with the fire of thy own fury, thou sighest, O Bhima, with an unquiet heart like a flame of fire mixed with smoke! Withdrawing from company thou liest down breathing hot sighs, like a weak man pressed down by a heavy load! They who do not know the cause regard thee as insane! As an elephant breaking into fragments uprooted trees lying on the ground grunteth in rage while trampling them under his feet, so thou also, O Bhima, runnest on, breathing deep sighs and shaking the earth under thy tread!* Here (in this region) thou takest no delight in company but passest thy time in privacy! Night or day, nothing pleases thee so much as seclusion! Sitting apart thou sometimes laughest aloud all on a sudden, and sometimes weepest in woe, and sometimes placing thy head between thy two knees thou continuest in that posture for a long time with closed eyes! At other times, O Bhima, contracting thy brows frequently and biting thy lips, thou starest fiercely before thee! All this is indicative of wrath! At one time, thou hadst, in the midst of thy brothers, grasped the mace, uttering this oath,—*As the sun is seen rising in the east displaying his radiance, and as he truly setteth in the west journeying around Meru, so do I swear that I will certainly slay the insolent Duryodhana with this mace of mine, and this oath of mine will never be untrue!* How then doth that same heart of thine, O chastiser of foes, now follow the counsels of peace! Alas, when fear entereth thy heart, O Bhima, it is certain that the hearts of all who desire war are upset when war becometh actually imminent! Asleep or awake, thou beholdest, O son of Prithā, inauspicious omens! Perhaps, it is this for which thou desirest peace! Alas, like a eunuch, thou dost not display any sign indicative of manliness in thee! Thou art overwhelmed by panic, and it is for this that thy heart is upset! Thy heart

* I render the latter part of this *Sloka* rather freely for making the sense more clear, as the original is very elliptical.—T.

trembleth, thy mind is overwhelmed by despair, thy thighs quiver, and it is for this that thou desirest peace! The hearts of mortals, O Pārtha, are surely as inconstant as the cods of the *Çālmali* seed exposed to the force of the wind! This frame of thy mind is as strange as articulate speech in kine! Indeed, the hearts of thy brothers are about to sink in an ocean of despair like swimmers in the sea without a raft to rescue them. That thou, O Bhimasena, shouldst utter words so unexpected of thee is as strange as the shifting of a hill! Recollecting thy own deeds and the race also in which thou art born, arise, O Bhārata, yield not to grief, O hero, and be firm! Such languor, O represser of foes, is not worthy of thee, for a Kshatriya never enjoyeth that which he doth not acquire through prowess!'"

SECTION LXXV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Thus addressed by Vāsudeva, the ever-wrathful Bhima, incapable of bearing insults, was immediately awakened like a steed of high metal, and replied, without losing a moment, saying,—'O *Achyuta*, I wish to act in a particular way; thou, however, takest me in quite a different light! That I take great delight in war and that my prowess is incapable of being baffled, must, O Krishna, be wellknown to thee in consequence of our having lived together for a long time! Or, it may be, thou knowest me not, like one swimming in a lake ignorant of its depth. It is for this that thou chidest me in such unbecoming words. Who else, O Mādhava, knowing me to be *Bhimasena*, could, address me in such unbecoming words as thou dost? Therefore, I shall tell thee, O delighter of the Vrishnis, about my own prowess and unrivalled might! Although to speak of one's own prowess is always an ignoble act, yet, pierced as I am by thy unfriendly strictures, I will speak of my own might! Behold, O Krishna, these—the firmament and the earth—which are immovable, immense, and infinite, and which are the refuge of and in which are born these countless creatures! If through anger these suddenly collide like two hills

even *I*, with my arms, can keep them asunder with all their mobile and immobile populations! Behold the joints of these my mace-like arms! I find not the person who can extricate himself having once come within their grasp! The Himavat, the ocean, the mighty wielder of the thunderbolt himself, *viz*, the slayer of Vala,—even these three cannot, with all their power, extricate the person attacked by me! I will easily trample on the ground under my feet all the Kshatriyas who will come to battle against the Pāndavas! It is not unknown to thee, O *Achyuta*, with what prowess I vanquished the kings of the earth and brought them under subjection! If, indeed, thou really knowest not my prowess which is like the fierce energy of the midday sun, thou wilt then know it, O Janārddana, in the fierce *melee* of battle! Thou woundest me with thy cruel words, paining me with the pain of opening a fœtid tumour! But know me to be mightier than what I have said of myself of my own accord! On that day when the fierce and destructive havoc of battle will begin, thou wilt then see me felling elephants and car-warriors, combatants on steeds and those on elephants, and slaying in rage the foremost of Kshatriya warriors! Thou as well as others wilt see me doing all this and grinding down the foremost of combatants? The marrow of my bones hath not yet decayed, nor doth my heart tremble! If the whole world rusheth against me in wrath I do not yet feel the influence of fear! It is only for the sake of compassion, O slayer of Madhu, that I am for displaying good will to the foe! I am for quietly bearing all our injuries, lest the Bharata race be extirpated!' "

SECTION. LXXVI

"The holy one said,—'It was only through affection that I said all this, desiring to know thy mind, and not from the desire of reproaching thee, nor from pride of learning, nor from wrath, nor from desire of making a speech! I know thy magnanimity of soul, and also thy strength, and thy deeds! It is not for that reason that I reproached thee! O son of Pāndu, a thousand times greater will be the benefit confered by thee

on the Pāndava cause than that which thou thinkest thyself to be capable of confering on it! Thou, O Bhima, with thy kinsmen and friends, art exactly that which one should be that has taken his birth in a family like thine that is regarded by all the kings of the earth! The fact, however, is that they can never arrive at the truth who under the influence of doubt proceed to enquire about the consequences hereafter of virtue and vice, or about the strength and weakness of men.* For it is seen that that which is the cause of the success of a person's object becometh also the cause of his ruin. Human acts, therefore, are doubtful in their consequences. Learned men capable of judging of the evils of actions pronounce a particular course of action as worthy of being followed. It produces, however, consequences the very opposite of what were foreseen, very much like the course of the wind. Indeed, even those acts of men that are the results of deliberation and well-directed policy, and that are consistent with considerations of propriety, are baffled by the dispensations of Providence. Then again, Providential dispensations, such as heat and cold and rain and hunger and thirst, that are not the consequences of human acts, may be baffled by human exertion. Then again, besides those acts which a person is pre-ordained (as the result of the acts of past lives) to go through, one can always get rid of all other acts begun at his pleasure, as is testified by both the *Smritis* and the *Çrutis*. Therefore, O son of Pāndu, one cannot go on in the world without acting. One should, hence, engage in work knowing that one's purposes would be achieved by a combination of both Destiny and Exertion. He that engageth in acts under this belief is never pained by failure nor delighted by success. This, O Bhimasena, was the intended import of my speech. It was not intended by me that victory

---

* I have followed Nilakantha in rendering this *Sloka*. *Devamānushayordharmasya Paryāyam* &c., means "certainty about the consequences of virtue and vice hereafter and the strength and weakness of men." *Deva-dharmasya* is explained by Nilakantha to mean *Punya pāpa-phalasya*, and *Mānusha-dharmasya* as *Purushakārasya*.—T.

would be certain in an encounter with the foe! A person, when his mind is upset, should not lose his cheerfulness and must not yield either to langour or depression. It is for this that I spoke to thee in the way I did! When the morrow comes, I will go, O Pāndava, to Dhritarāshtra's presence, I will strive to make peace without sacrificing your interests! If the Kauravas make peace, then boundless fame will be mine, your purposes will be achieved, and they also will reap great benefit! If, however, the Kuravas, without listening to my words, resolve to maintain their opinion, then there will undoubtedly be a formidable war. In this war the burthen resteth on thee, O Bhimasena! That burthen should also be borne by Arjuna, while other warriors should all be led by both of you! In case of war happening, I will certainly be the driver of Vibhatsu's car, for that, indeed, is Dhananjaya's wish. and not that I myself am not desirous of fighting! It is for this that, hearing thee utter thy intention, I rekindled thy energy, O Vrikodara!"

SECTION LXXVII.

"Arjuna said,—'O Janārddana, Yudhishthira hath already said what should be said! But, O chastiser of foes, hearing what thou hast said, it seemeth to me that thou, O lord, dost not think peace to be easily obtainable either in consequence of Dhritarāshtra's covetousness or from our present weakness! Thou thinkest also that human prowess alone is fruitless, and also that without putting forth one's prowess one's purposes cannot be achieved. What thou hast said may be true, but at the same time it may not always be true! Nothing, however, should be regarded as impracticable. It is true, peace seemeth to thee to be impossible in consequence of our distressful condition, yet they are still acting against us without reaping the fruits of their acts! Peace, therefore, if properly proposed, O lord, may be concluded. O Krishna, strive thou, therefore, to bring about peace with the foe! Thou, O hero, art the foremost of all friends of both the Pāndavas and the Kurus, even as Prajāpati is of

both the gods and the *Asuras*! Accomplish thou, therefore, that which is for the good of both the Kurus and the Pāndavas! The accomplishment of our good is not, I believe, difficult for thee! If thou strivest, O Janārddana, such is this act that it will be soon effected! As soon as thou goest thither, it will be accomplished! If, O hero, thou purposest to treat the evil-minded Duryodhana in any other way, that purpose of thine will be carried out exactly as thou wishest! Whether it be peace or war with the foe that thou wishest, any wish, O Krishna, that thou mayst entertain, will certainly be honored by us! Doth not the evil-minded Duryodhana with his sons and kinsmen deserve destruction when, unable to bear the sight of Yudhishthira's prosperity and finding no other faultless expedient, that wretch, O slayer of Madhu, deprived us of our kingdom by the sinful expedient of deceitful dice? What bowman is there who, born in the Kshatriya order, and invited to combat, turneth away from the fight even if he is sure to die? Beholding ourselves vanquished by sinful means and banished to the woods, even then, O thou of the Vrishni race, I thought that Suyodhana deserved death at my hands! What thou, however, O Krishna, wishest to do for thy friends is scarcely strange, although it seems inexplicable how the object in view is capable of being effected by either mildness or its reverse! Or, if thou deemest their immediate destruction to be preferable, let it be effected soon without further deliberation! Surely, thou knowest how Draupadi was insulted in the midst of the assembly by Duryodhana of sinful soul and how also we bore it with patience! That that Duryodhana, O Mādhava will behave with justice towards the Pāndavas is what I can not believe! Wise counsels will be lost on him like seed sown on a barren soil! Therefore, do without delay what thou, O thou of the Vrishni race, thinkest to be proper and beneficial for the Pāndavas, or what, indeed, should next be done!' "

SECTION LXXVIII.

"The holy one said,—'It shall be, O thou of mighty arms, what thou, O Pāndava, sayest! I will strive to bring about that which would be beneficial to both the Pāndavas and the Kurus! Between the two kinds of acts, war and peace, the latter, O Vibhatsu, is within my power! Behold, the soil is moistened and divested of weeds by human exertion! Without rain, however, O son of Kunti, it never yieldeth crops! Indeed, in the absence of rain some speak of artificial irrigation as a means of success due to human exertion, but even then it may be seen that the water artificially let in is dried up in consequence of a providential drought. Beholding all this, the wise men of old have said that human affairs are set agoing in consequence of the co-operation of both providential and human expedients. I will do all that can be done by human exertion at its best. But I shall, by no means, be able to control what is providential!* The wicked-souled Duryodhana acteth, defying both virtue and the world. Nor doth he feel any regret in consequence of his acting in that way. Moreover, his sinful inclinations are fed by his counsellors Cakuni and Karna and his brother Dusçāsana. Suyodhana will never make peace by giving up the kingdom, without, O Partha, undergoing at our hands a wholesale destruction with his kinsmen! King Yudhishthira the just doth not wish to give up the kingdom submissively. The wicked-minded Duryodhana also will not at our solicitation surrender the kingdom. I, therefore, think that it is scarcely proper to deliver Yudhishthira's message to him. The sinful Duryodhana of Kuru's race will not, O Bhārata, accomplish the

* There is an apparent contradiction between Krishna's observation in the beginning of this speech and that which he says here. Nilakantha seems to get over this by suggesting that which Krishna means when he speaks of peace being within his power is that as envoy to the Kuru court, he is able to provoke war or make peace, much depending on his own conduct. Though this is true, yet the issue depends to some extent on providential dispensation.—*T.*

objects spoken of by Yudhishthira! If he refuse compliance he will deserve death at the hands of all. Indeed, he deserves death at my hands, as also, O Bhārata, of every one, since in your childhood he always persecuted you all, and since that wicked and sinful wretch robbed you of your kingdom and could not bear the sight of Yudhishthira's prosperity. Many a time, O Pārtha, he strove to withdraw me from thee, but I never reckoned those wicked attempts of his. Thou knowest, O thou of mighty arms, what the cherished intentions of Duryodhana are, and thou knowest also that I seek the welfare of king Yudhishthira the just. Knowing, therefore, Duryodhana's heart and what my most cherished wishes are, why then dost thou, O Arjuna, entertain such apprehensions in respect of myself like one unacquainted with everything? That grave act also which was ordained in heaven is known to thee! How then, O Pārtha, can peace be concluded with the foe? What, however, O Pāndava, is capable of being done by either speech or act, will all be done by me! Do not, however, O Pārtha, expect peace to be possible with the foe! About a year ago, on the occasion of attacking Virāta's kine, did not Bhishma, on their way back, solicit Duryodhana about this very peace so beneficial to all? Believe me, they have been defeated even then when their defeat was resolved on by thee! Indeed, Suyodhana doth not consent to part with the smallest portion of the kingdom for even the shortest period of time! As regards myself, I am ever obedient to the commands of Yudhishthira, and, therefore, the sinful acts of that wicked wretch must have again to be revolved in my mind!'"

SECTION LXXIX.

"Nakula said,—'Much hath been said, O Mādhava, by king Yudhishthira the just who is conversant with morality and endued with liberality. And thou hast heard it all! Knowing what the kings, wishes are, O Mādhava, Bhimasena also hath spoken both of peace and the might of his own arms! Thou hast heard what hath been said by Fālguna

also! As regards thy own opinion, O hero, thou hast repeatedly expressed it! Hearing first what the wishes of the enemy are, and disregarding all thou hast heard (from us), do that, O foremost of men, which thou regardest to be proper for the occasion! O Keçava, diverse are the conclusions arrived at as regards diverse matters. Success, however, O chastiser of foes, is won when a man doth that which ought to be done in view of the occasion! When a thing is settled in one way on one occasion, it becometh unsuitable when the occasion becometh different. Persons, therefore, in this world, O foremost of men, cannot stick to the same opinion throughout! While we were living in the woods, our hearts were inclined towards a particular course of action. While we were passing the period of concealment, our wishes were of one kind, and now, at the present time, O Krishna, when concealment is no longer neccessary, our wishes have become different! O thou of the Vrishni race, while we wandered in the woods, our attachment for the kingdom was not so great as now! The period of our exile having ceased, hearing, O hero, that we have returned, an army numbering full seven *Aukshauhinis* hath, through thy grace, O Janārddana, been assembled! Beholding these tigers among men, of inconcievable might and prowess, standing addrest for battle armed with weapons, what man is there that will not be struck with fear? Therefore, going into the midst of the Kurus, speak thou first words fraught with mildness and then those fraught with threats, so that the wicked Suyodhana may be agitated with fear.* What mortal man is there, of flesh and blood, who would encounter in battle Yudhishthira and Bhimasena, the invincible Vibhatsu and Sahadeva, myself, thyself, and Rāma, O Keçava, and Satyaki of mighty energy, Virāta with his sons, Drupada with his allies, and Dhrishtadyumna, O Mādhava, and the ruler of Kasi of great prowess, and Dhishtaketu the lord of the Chedis? No sooner wilt thou go there than thou wilt without doubt accomplish, O thou of mighty arms, the desired object of king Yudhishthira the just!

---

* *Navyatheta* seems to be a misreading for *Vivyatheta.—T.*

Vidura, and Bhishma, and Drona, and Vālhika, these at least, O sinless one, will understand thee when thou wouldst utter words of wisdom! They will solicit that ruler of men Dhritarāshtra, and Suyodhana of sinful dispo sition with his counsellors, to act according to thy advice! When thou, O Janārddana, art the speaker and Vidura the listener, what subject is there that cannot be rendered smooth and plain?' "

SECTION LXXX.

"Sahadeva said,—'What hath been said by the king is, indeed, eternal virtue, but thou, O chastiser of foes, shouldst act in such a way that war may certainly happen! Even if the Kuravas express their desire for peace with the Pāndavas, still, O thou of Daçārha's race, provoke thou a war with them! Having seen, O Krishna, the princess of Pānchāla brought in that plight into the midst of the assembly, how can my wrath be appeased without the slaughter of Suyodhana! If, O Krishna, Bhima and Arjuna and king Yudhishthira the just are disposed to be virtuous, abandoning virtue I desire an encounter with Duryodhana in battle!'

"Sātyaki said,—'The high-souled Sahadeva, O thou of mighty arms, hath spoken the truth! The rage I feel towards Duryodhana can be appeased only by his death! Dost thou not remember the rage thou too hadst felt upon beholding in the woods the distressed Pāndavas clad in rags and deerskins? Therefore, O foremost of men, all the warriors assembled here unanimously subscribe to what the heroic son of Mādri, fierce in battle, hath said!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"At these words of the high-souled Yuyudhāna, a leonine roar was set up by all the warriors assembled there. And all the heroes, highly applauding those words of Sātyaki, praised him, saying—'*Excellent! Excellent!*' And anxious to fight, they all began to express their joy.' "

SECTION LXXXI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing the peaceful words of the king that were fraught with both virtue and profit, king Drupada's daughter Krishnā, of long black tresses, afflicted with great grief, applauding Sahadeva and that mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, addressed Mādhava seated by his side. And beholding Bhimasena declare for peace, that intelligent lady, overwhelmed with woe and with eyes bathed in tears, said,—'O slayer of Madhu, it is known to thee, O thou of mighty arms, by what deceitful means, O righteous one, the son of Dhritarāshtra with his counsellors robbed the Pāndavas, O Janārddana, of their happiness! Thou knowest also, O thou of Daçārha's race, what message was privately delivered to Sanjaya by the king! Thou hast also heard all that was said unto Sanjaya! O thou of great effulgence, those words were even these,—*Let only five villages be granted to us, viz, Avisthala, and Vrikasthala, and Mākandi, and Vāranāvata, and for the fifth, any other!*—O thou of mighty arms, O Keçeva, even this was the message that was to have been delivered to Duryodhana and his counsellors! But, O Krishna. O thou of Daçārha's race, hearing these words of Yudhishthira endued with modesty and anxious for peace, Suyodhana hath not acted according to them! If, O Krishna, Suyodhana desireth to make peace without surrendering the kingdom, there is no necessity of going thither for making such a peace! The Pāndavas with the Srinjayas, O thou of mighty arms, are quite able to withstand the fierce Dhārtarāshtra host excited with rage! When they are no longer amenable to the arts of conciliation, it is not proper, O slayer of Madhu, that thou shouldst show them mercy! Those enemies, O Krishna, with whom peace cannot be established by either conciliation or presents, should be treated with severity by one desirous of saving his life. Therefore, O mighty-armed *Achyuta*, heavy should be the punishment that deserves to be speedily inflicted upon them by thyself aided by the

Pāndavas and the Srinjayas!* Indeed, even this would become the sons of Prithā, add to thy glory, and if accomplished, will, O Krishna, be a source of great happiness to the whole Kshatriya race! He that is covetous, whether belonging to the Kshatriya or any other order, save of course a *Brāhmana* even if most sinful, ought surely to be slain by a Kshatriya who is true to the duties of his own order. The exception in the case of a Brāhmana, O sire, is due to a Brāhmana's being the preceptor of all the other orders as also the first sharer of everything. Persons conversant with the scriptures declare, O Janārddana, that sin is incurred in slaying one that deserveth not to be slain. So there is equal sin in not slaying one that deserveth to be slain! Act thou, therefore, O Krishna, in such a way with the forces of the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas, that that sin may not touch thee! From excess of confidence in thee, O Janārddana, I will repeat what hath been said again and again! What other woman, O Keçava, is there on earth like me? I am the daughter of king Drupada, risen from amid the sacrificial altar! I am the sister of Dhrishtadyumna, and thy dear friend, O Khrishna! I have by marriage become a lady of Ājamida's race,—the daughter-in-law of the illustrious Pāndu! I am the queen of Pāndu's sons who resemble five Indras in splendour! I have, by these five heroes, five sons that are all mighty car-warriors, and that are morally to thee, O Krishna, as Abhimanyu himself! Being such, O Krishna, I was seized by the hair, dragged into the assembly and insulted in the very sight of the sons of Pāndu and in thy life-time, O Keçeva! The sons of Pāndu, the Pānchālas, and the Vrishnis being all alive, exposed to the gaze of the assembly I was treated as a slave by those sinful wretches! And when the Pāndavas beholding it all sat silent without giving way to wrath, in my heart I called upon thee, O Govinda, saying,—*Save me, O save me!*—Then the illustrious king Dhritarāshtra,

* The language of the original is more spirited than the English idiom will probably allow. "Heavy should be the penalty that deserves to be *hurled* on them," would, perhaps, be a faint reproduction of the original.—*T.*

my father-in-law, said unto me,—*Ask thou any boon, O princess of Pānchāla! Thou deservest boons and even honour at my hands!*—Thus addressed I said,—*Let the Pāndavas be free men with their cars and weapons!*—Upon this the Pāndavas, O Keçava, were freed but only to be exiled into the woods! O Janārddana, thou knowest all these sorrows of mine! Rescue me, O lotus-eyed one, with my husbands, kinsmen, and relatives, from that grief! Morally, O Krishna, I am the daughter-in-law of both Bhishma and Dhritarāshtra! Though such, I was yet forcibly made a slave! Fie to Pārtha's bowmanship, oh, fie to Bhimasena's might, since Duryodhana, O Krishna, liveth for even a moment! If I deserve any favor at thy hands, if thou hast any compassion for me, let thy wrath, O Krishna, be directed towards the sons of Dhritarāshtra!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said this, the beautiful Krishnā of eyes that were black in hue and large like lotus leaves, bathed in tears, and treading like a she-elephant, approached the lotus-eyed Krishna, and taking with her left-hand her own beautiful tresses of curly ends, deep-blue in hue and scented with every perfume, endued with every auspicious mark, and though gathered into a braid yet soft* and glossy like a mighty snake, spake these words,—'O lotus-eyed one that art anxious for peace with the enemy, thou shouldst, in all thy acts, call to thy mind these tresses of mine seized by Duçāsana's rude hands! If Bhima and Arjuna, O Krishna, have become so low as to long for peace, my aged father then with his warlike sons will avenge me in battle! My five sons also that are endued with great energy, with Abhimanyu, O slayer of Madhu, at their head, will fight with the Kuravas! What peace can this heart of mine know unless I behold Duçāsana's dark arm severed from his trunk and reduced to atoms? Thirteen long years have I passed in expectation of better times, hiding in my heart my wrath like a burning fire! And how pierced by Bhima's wordy darts that heart of mine is

---

* Nilkantha rightly explains *Mridu-samhāram* as "bound into a braid that was yet soft!" The Burdwan Pundits erroneously suppose it to be an adjective of *Uktvā* and render it—"sorrowfully."—*T.*

about to break for the mighty-armed Bhima now casteth his eye on morality!' Uttering these words with voice choked in tears, the large-eyed Krishnā began to weep aloud, with convulsive sobs and tears gushing down her cheeks. And that lady with hips full and round began to drench her close and deep bosoms by the tears she shed and that were hot as liquid fire.* The mighty-armed Keçava then spoke, camforting her in these words,—'Soon wilt thou, O Krishnā, behold the ladies of Bharata's race weep as thou dost! Even they, O timid one, will weep like thee, their kinsmen and friends being slain. They with whom, O lady, thou art angry, have their kinsmen and warriors already slain! With Bhima and Arjuna and the twins, at Yudhishthira's command and agreeably to fate and what hath been ordained by the Ordainer, I will accomplish all this! Their hour having arrived, the sons of Dhritarāshtra, if they do not listen to my words, will surely lie down on the earth becoming the food of dogs and jackalls! The mountains of Himavat might shift their site, the Earth herself might split into a hundred fragments, the firmament itself with its myriads of stars might fall down, still my words could never be futile! Cease thy tears, I swear to thee, O Krishnā, that soon wilt thou see thy husbands with their enemies slain, and with prosperity crowning them!'"

SECTION LXXXII.

"Arjuna said,—'Thou art now, O Keçava, the best friend of all the Kurus! Related with both the parties, thou art the dear friend of both! It behoveth thee to bring about peace between the Pāndavas and the sons of Dhritarāshtra! Thou, O Keçava, art competent and, therefore, it behoveth thee to bring about a reconciliation! O lotus-eyed one, proceeding hence for peace, O slayer of foes, say unto our ever-wrathful brother Suyodhana what, indeed, should be said! If the fool-

---

* *Atyusnam* is explained by Nilkantha to mean *fire*. The Burdwan Pundits have given the sense correctly, but in a very round-about way, probably for not understading correctly the meaning of this single word which is here used in a very peculiar sense.—*T*

ish Duryodhana doth not accept thy auspicious and beneficial counsels fraught with virtue and profit, he will surely then be the victim of his fate !'

"The holy one said,—'Yes, I will go to king Dhritarāshtra, desirous of accomplishing what is consistent with righteousness, what may be beneficial to us, and what also is for the good of the Kurus !' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"The night having passed away, a clear sun arose in the east. The hour called *Maitra* set in, and the rays of the sun were still mild. The month was *Kaumuda (Kārtika)* under the constellation *Revati.* It was the season of dews, autumn having departed. The earth was covered with abundant crops all around. It was at such a time that Janārddana, that foremost of mighty persons, in enjoyment of excellent health, having heard the auspicious, sacred-sounding, and sweet words of gratified Brāhmanas,* like Vāsava himself hearing the adorations of the (celestial) *Rishis,*—and having also gone through the customary acts and rites of the morning, purified himself by a bath, and decked his person with unguents and ornaments, worshipped both the sun and the fire. And having touched the tale† of a bull and reverently bowed to the Brāhmanas, walked round the sacred fire, and cast his eyes on the (usual) auspicious articles placed in view‡, Janārdana recollected Yudhishthira's words and addressed Cini's grandson Sātyaki, seated near, saying,—'Let my car be made ready and let my conch and discus along with my mace, and quivers and darts and all kinds of weapons offensive and defensive, be placed on it, for Duryodhana and Karna and Suvala's son are all of wicked souls, and foes, however con-

---

* *i. e* performing the ceremony called *Swasti-vāchana,* which consisted in making a body of Brāhmanas utter benedictions on the person performing it. It was always resorted to on the eve of every important journey. The Brāhmanas always received handsome presents of money and garments on such occasions.—*T.*

† For *Puçcha* some texts read *Prishtha*—back or hump. To this day orthodox Hindus touch a bull on the eve of a journey.—*T.*

‡ These are curds, *Siddhi* leaves, a water-pot full to the brim, a cow, the transplanted *Musa Sapienta,* mango-leaves, &. c.,.—*T.*

temptible, should never be disregarded by even a powerful person!' Understanding the wishes of Keçava the wielder of the discus and the mace, his attendants immediately addressed themselves to yoke his car. And that car resembled in effulgence the fire that shows itself at the time of the universal dissolution, and the wind itself in speed.* And it was decked with two wheels that resembled the sun and the moon in lustre. And it bore devices of moons both crescent and full, and of fishes, animals, and birds. And it was adorned with garlands of diverse flowers and with pearls and gems of various kinds all around. And endued with the splendour of the rising sun, it was large and handsome. And variegated with gems and gold, it was furnished with an excellent flagstaff bearing beautiful pennons. And well supplied with every necessary article and incapable of being resisted by the foe, it was covered with tiger-skins. And capable of robbing the fame of every foe, it enhanced the joy of the Yādavās. And they yoked unto it those excellent steeds named *Çaivya* and *Sugriva* and *Meghapushpa* and *Valāhaka*, after these had been bathed and attired in beautiful harness. And enhancing the dignity of Krishna still further, Gadura the lord of the feathery creation came and perched on the flagstaff of that car producing a terrible rattle. And Caurin then mounted on that car high as the summit of the *Meru* and producing a rattle deep and loud as the sound of the kettle-drum or the roar of the clouds, and which resembled the celestial car coursing at the will of the rider. And taking Sātyki also upon it, that best of male beings set out, filling the earth and the welkin with the rattle of his carwheels. And the sky became cloudless, and auspicious winds began to blow around, and the atmosphere freed from the dust became pure. Indeed, as Vāsudeva set out, auspicious animals

* *Akaçaga* is explained by Nilakantha to mean the Sun. To compare, however, the speed of anything, particularly that of a car, with the Sun is very singular. *Akáçaga* may also mean the wind. I have accordingly rendered it as such. Some texts have *Akáçamiva* which is erroneous, although Nilakantha tries to explain it with his usual ingenuity.—*T.*

and birds whirling by his right side began to follow him. And cranes and peacocks and swans all followed the slayer of Madhu, uttering cries of auspicious significance. The very fire, fed with *Homa* libations in accompaniment with *Mantras*, freed from smoke, blazed up cheerfully, sending forth its flames towards the right. And Vasishtha and Vāmadeva, and Bhuridyumna and Gaya, and Kratha and Cukra and Kuçika and Bhrigu, and other *Brahmarshis* and celestial *Rishis*, united together, all stood on the right side of Krishna, that delighter of the Yādavas, that younger brother of Vāsava! And thus worshipped by those and other illustrious *Rishis* and holy men, Krishna set out for the residence of the Kurus. And while Krishna was proceeding, Yudhishthira the son of Kunti followed him, as also Bhima and Arjuna, and those other Pāndavas, *viz*, the twin sons of Mādri. And the valiant Chekitāna, and Dhrishtaketu the ruler of the Chedis, and Drupada, and the king of Kāçi, and that mighty car-warrior Cikhandin, and Dhrishtadyumna, and Virāta with his sons, and the princes of Kekaya also,—all these Kshatriyas followed that bull of the Kshatriya race to honor him. And the illustrious king Yudhishthira the just, having followed Govinda to some distance, addressed him in these words in the presence of all those kings. And the son of Kunti embraced that foremost of all persons who never, from desire, or anger, or fear, or purpose of gain, committed the least wrong, whose mind was ever steady, who was a stranger to covetousness, who was conversant with morality and endued with great intelligence and wisdom, who knew the hearts of all creatures and was the lord of all, who was the God of gods, who was eternal, who was possessed of every virtue, and who bore the auspicious whirl on his breast. And embracing him the king began to indicate what he was to do!'

"Yudhishthira said,—'That lady who hath brought us up from our infancy; who is ever engaged in fasts and ascetic penances and propitiatory rites and ceremonies; who is devoted to the worship of the gods and guests; who is always engaged in waiting upon her superiors; who is fond of her sons, bearing them an affection that knows no bounds; who,

O Janārddana, is dearly loved by us; who, O grinder of foes, repeatedly saved us from the snares of Suyodhana, like a boat saving a ship-wrecked crew from the frightful terrors of the sea; and who, O Mādhava, however undeserving of woe herself, hath on our account endured countless sufferings,—should be asked about her welfare! Overwhelmed with grief on account of her sons, salute and embrace and, Oh, comfort her over and over by talking of the Pāndavas! Ever since her marriage she hath been the victim, however undeserving, of sorrow and griefs due to the conduct of her fathers-inlaw, and suffering hath been her portion! Shall I, O Krişhna, ever see the time when, O chastiser of foes, my afflictions being over, I shall be able to make my sorrowing mother happy? On the eve of our exile, from affection for her children, she ran after us in anguish, crying bitterly! But leaving her behind, we went into the woods. Sorrow doth not necessarily kill. It is possible, therefore, that she is alive, being hospitably entertained by the *Anartas*, though afflicted with sorrow on account of her sons! O glorious Krishna, salute her from me! The Kuru king Dhritarāshtra also, and all those monarchs who are senior to us in age, and Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and king Vāhlika, and Drona's son, and Somadatta, and, in fact, every one of the Bharata race, and also Vidura endued with great wisdom, that counsellor of the Kurus, of profound intellect and intimate acquaintance with morality,—should all, O slayer of Madhu, be embraced by thee!' Having, in the presence of the kings, said these words unto Keçava, Yudhishthira, with Krishna's permission, come back, having at first walked round him. Then Arjuna, proceeding a few steps further, said unto his friend, that bull among men, that slayer of hostile heroes, that invincible warrior of Daçārha's race,—'It is known to all the kings, O illustrious Govinda, that at our consultation it was settled that we should ask back the kingdom. If without insulting us, if honoring thee, they honestly give us what we demand, then, O mighty-armed one, they would please me greatly and would themselves escape a terrible danger! If, however, Dhritarāshtra's son, who always adopts improper

means, acts otherwise, then I shall surely, O Janārddana, annihilate the Kshatriya race!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"When Arjuna said these words, Vrikodara was filled with delight. And that son of Pāndu continually quivered with rage. And while still quivering with rage and the delight that filled his heart upon hearing Dhananjaya's words, he sent forth a terrible shout. And hearing that shout of his, all the bowmen trembled in fear and steeds and elephants were seen to pass urine and excreta. And having addressed Keçava then and informed him of his resolution, Arjuna with Janārddana's permission, came back, having first embraced him. And after all the kings had desisted following him, Janārddana set out with a cheerful heart on his car drawn by *Saivya*, *Sugriva*, and others. And those steeds of Vāsudeva, urged by Dāruka, coursed onwards, devouring the sky and drinking the road.* And on his way Keçava of mighty arms met with some *Rishis* blazing with *Brāhmic* lustre, standing on both sides of the road. And soon alighting from his car, Janārddana saluted them reverently. And worshipping them duly, he enquired of them, saying,—'Is there peace in all the worlds? Is virtue being duly practised? Are the other three orders obedient to the Brāhmanas?' And having duly worshipped them, the slayer of Madhu again said,—'Where have ye been crowned with success? Whither would ye go, and for what object? What also shall I do for yourselves? What has brought your illustrious selves down on the earth?' Thus addressed, Jamadagni's son, the friend of *Brahman*†—that lord of both gods and *Asuras*,—approached Govinda the slayer of Madhu, embraced him, and said,—'The celestial *Rishis* of pious deeds, and Brāhmanas of extensive acquaintance with the scriptures, and royal sages, O Dāçārha, and venerable ascetics,—these witnesses, O illustrious one, of the former feats of gods and *Asuras*,—are desirous of beholding all the Kshatriyas of the earth assembled from every side as also the counsellors sitting

* This figure seems to be peculiar to Sanskrit.—T.

† The Creator.—T.

in the assembly, the kings, and thyself the embodiment of truth, O Janārddana! O Keçava, we will go thither for beholding that grand sight! We are also anxious, O Mādhava, to listen to those words, fraught with virtue and profit, which will be spoken by thee, O chastiser of foes, unto the Kurus in the presence of all the kings! Indeed, Bhishma, and Drona, and others, as also the illustrious Vidura and thyself, O tiger among the Yādavas,—ye all will be assembled together in conclave! We desire, O Mādhava, to hear the excellent, truthful, and beneficial words that thou wilt utter and they also, O Govinda! Thou art now informed of our purpose, O thou of mighty arms! We will meet thee again! Go thither safely, O hero! We hope to see thee in the midst of the conclave, seated on an excellent seat mustering all thy energy and might!' "

SECTION LXXXIII.

Vaiçampāyana said, "O smiter of foes, when Devaki's son of mighty arms set out (for Hastināpura), ten mighty car-warriors capable of slaying hostile heroes, fully armed, followed in his train. And a thousand foot-soldiers, and a thousand horsemen, and attendants by hundreds, also formed his train, carrying, O king, provisions in abundance.' "

"Janamejaya said,—"How did the illutrious slayer of Madhu, of Daçārha's race, proceed on his journey? And what omens were seen when that hero set out?"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Listen to me as I narrate all those natural and unnatural omens that were noticed at the time when the illustrious Krishna departed (for Hastināpura)! Though there were no clouds in the sky, yet the roll of thunder accompanied by flashes of lightning was heard. And fleecy clouds in a clear sky rained incessantly in the rear! The seven large rivers including the *Sindhu* (Indus) though flowing eastwards then flowed in opposite directions! The very directions seemed to be reversed and nothing could be distinguished. Fires blazed up everywhere, O monarch, and the earth trembled repeatedly. The contents of wells and water

vessels by hundreds swelled up and ran out. The whole universe was enveloped in darkness. The atmosphere being filled with dust, neither the cardinal nor the subsidiary points of the horizon could, O king, be distinguished! Loud roars were heard in the sky without any beings being visible from whom they could emanate. This wonderful phenomenon, O king, was noticed all over the country! A south-westerly wind, with the harsh rattle of thunder, uprooting trees by thousands, crushed the city of *Hastinapura*. In those places, however, O Bhārata, through which he of Vrishni's race passed, delicious breezes blew and everything became auspicious. Showers of lotuses and fragrant flowers fell there. The very road became delightful, being free from prickly grass and thorns. At those places where he stayed, Brāhmanas by thousands glorified that giver of wealth with (laudatory) words and worshipped him with dishes of curds, *ghee*, honey, and presents of wealth. The very women, coming out on the road, strewed wild flowers of great fragrance on the person of that illustrious hero devoted to the welfare of all creatures. He then came upon a delightful spot called *Çālibhavana* which was filled with every kind of crops, a spot that was delicious and sacred, after having, O bull of the Bharata race, seen various villages abounding in beasts, and picturesque to the eye, and delightful to the heart, and after having passed through diverse cities and kingdoms. Always cheerful and of good hearts, well-protected by the Bhāratas and, therefore, free from all anxieties on account of the designs of invaders, and unacquainted with calamities of any kind, many of the citizens of Upaplavya, coming out of their town, had stood together on the way, desirous of beholding Krishna! And beholding that illustrious one resembling a blazing fire arrived at that spot, they worshipped him who deserved their worship with all the honors of a guest arrived in their abode. When at last that slayer of hostile heroes, Keçava, came to Vrikasthala, the sun seemed to redden the sky by his straggling rays of light. Alighting from his car, he duly went through the usual purificatory rites, and ordering the steeds to be unharnessed, he set himself to say his evening prayers. And Dāruka also, setting

the steeds free, tended them according to the rules of equine science, and taking off the yokes and traces, let them loose. After all this was done, the slayer of Madhu said,—'Here must we pass the night for the sake of Yudhishthira's mission ?' Ascertaining that to be his intention, the attendants soon set a temporary abode and prepared in a trice excellent food and drink. And amongst the Brāhmanas, O king, that resided in the village they that were of noble and high descent, modest, and obedient to the injunctions of the *Vedas* in their conduct, approached that illustrious chastiser of foes, Hrishikeça, and honored him with their benedictions and auspicious speeches. And having honored him of Daçārha's race that deserved honor from every one, they placed at the disposal of that illustrious personage their houses abounding in wealth. Saying unto them—'*Enough*'—the illustrious Krishna paid them proper homage, each according to his rank, and wending with them to their houses, he returned in their company to his own (tent). And feeding all the Brāhmanas with sweat-meats and himself taking his meals with them, Keçāva passed the night happily there !'

SECTION LXXXIV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Meanwhile, understanding from his spies that the slayer of Madhu had set out, Dhritarāshtra, with his hair standing erect, respectfully addressing the mighty-armed Bhishma, and Drona, and Sanjaya, and the illustrious Vidura, said these words unto Duryodhana and his counsellors,—'O scion of Kuru's race, strange and wonderful is the news that we hear. Men, women, and children, are talking of it. Others are speaking of it respectfully, and others again assembled together. Within houses where men congregate and in open spots, people are discussing it. All say that—*Dāçārha of great prowess will come hither for the sake of the Pāndavas !*—The slayer of Madhu is, by all means, deserving of honor and worship at our hands ! He is the Lord of all creatures, and on him resteth the course of everything in the universe ! Indeed, intelligence, and

prowess, and wisdom, and energy, all reside in Mādhava! Worthy of honor at the hands of all righteous persons, he is the foremost of all men, and is, indeed, eternal virtue! If worshipped, he is sure to bestow happiness; and if not worshipped he is sure to inflict misery! If that smiter of foes, Dāçārha, be gratified with our offerings, all our wishes may be obtained by us, through his grace, in the midst of the kings. O chastiser of foes, make, without loss of time, every arrangement for his reception! Let pavilions be set up on the road, furnished with every object of enjoyment! O mighty-armed son of Gāndhāri, make such arrangements that he may be gratified with thee! What doth Bhishma think in this matter?—At this, Bhishma and others, all applauding those words of king Dhritarāshtra, said,—'*Excellent.*' King Duryodhana then, understanding their wishes, ordered delightful sites to be chosen for the erection of pavilions. And many pavilions were thereupon constructed abounding with gems of every kind, at proper intervals and at delightful spots. And the king sent thither handsome seats endued with excellent qualities, beautiful girls, and scents and ornaments, and fine robes, and excellent viands, and drink of diverse quality, and fragrant garlands of many kinds. And the king of the Kurus took especial care to erect, for the reception of Krishna, a highly delightful pavilion at Vrikasthala, full of precious gems. And having made all these arrangements that were godlike and much above the capacity of human beings, king Duryodhana informed Dhritarāshtra of the same. Keçava, however, of Daçārha's race, arrived at the capital of the Kurus, without casting a single glance at all those pavilions and all those gems of diverse kinds."

SECTION LXXXV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O Vidura, Janārddana hath set out from Upaplavya! He is now staying at Vrikasthala and will come here tomorrow morning. Janārddana is the leader of the Āhukas, the foremost person amongst all the members of the Sātwata race, is high-souled, and endued with great energy

and great might. Indeed, Mādhava is the guardian and protector of the prosperous kingdom of the Vrishnis, and is the illustrious great-grandsire of even the three worlds! The Vrishnis adore the wisdom of the intelligent Krishna even as the Ādityas, the Vasus, and the Rudras adore the wisdom of Vrihaspati! O virtuous one, I will, in thy presence, offer worship unto that illustrious scion of Daçārha's race! Listen to me about that worship! I will give him sixteen cars made of gold, each drawn by four excellent and well-adorned steeds of uniform color and of the Vālhika breed. O Kaurava, I will give him eight elephants with temporal juice always trickling down and tusks as large as poles of pluoghs, capable of smiting hostile ranks, and each having eight human attendants. I will give him a century of handsome maid-servants of the cemplexion of gold, all virgins, and of man-servants I will give him as many. I will give him eighteen thousand wooden blankets, soft to the touch, all presented to us by the hill-men. I will also give him a thousand deer-skins brought from China and other things of the kind that may be worthy of Keçava. I will also give him this serene gem of the purest rays that shines day and night, for Keçava alone deserves it. This car of mine drawn by mules that makes a round of full fourteen *Yoyanas* a day, I will also give him. I will place before him every day provisions eight times greater than what is necessary for the animals and attendants that form his train. Mounted on their cars, their persons well adorned, all my sons and grandsons, save Duryodhana, will go out to receive him. And thousands of graceful and well-decked dancing girls will go out on foot to receive the illustrious Keçava. And the beautiful girls also that will go out of our town for receiving Janārddana will go out unveiled. Let all the citizens with their wives and children behold the illustrious slayer of Madhu with as much respect and devotion as they show when casting their eyes on the morning sun! Let the welkin all around, at my command, be crowded with pendants and banners, and let the road by which Keçava will come be well-watered and its dust removed. Let Dusçāsana's abode which is better than Duryodhana's be cleansed

and well adorned without delay. That mansion is graced with many beautiful buildings, is pleasant and delightful, and abounds with the wealth of all seasons. It is in that abode that all my wealth, as also Duryodhana's, is deposited. Let all that that scion of the Vrishni race deserves be given unto him!'"

SECTION LXXXVI.

"Vidura said,—'O monarch, O best of men, thou art respected by the three worlds! Thou, O Bhārata, art loved and regarded by every body! Venerable in years as thou art, what thou wilt say at this age can never be against the dictates of the scriptures or the conclusions of well-directed reason, for thy mind is ever calm! Thy subjects, O king, are well assured that like charcters on stone, light in the sun, and billows in the ocean, virtue resideth in thee permanently! O monarch, every one is honored and made happy in consequence of thy numerous virtues. Strive, therefore, with thy friends and kinsmen to retain those virtues of thine! Oh, adopt sincerity of behaviour! Do not, from folly, cause a wholesale destruction of thy sons, grandsons, friends, kinsmen, and all that are dear to thee! It is much, O king, that thou wishest to give unto Keçava as thy guest. Know, however, that Keçava deserves all this and much more, aye, the whole earth itself! I truly swear by my own soul that thou dost not wish to give all this unto Krishna either from motives of virtue or for the object of doing what is agreeable to him! O giver of great wealth, all this betrays only deception, falsehood, and insincerity! By thy external acts, O king, I know thy secret purposes! The five Pāndavas, O king, desire only five villages! Thou, however, dost not wish to give them even that. Thou art, therefore, unwilling to make peace! Thou seekest to make the mighty-armed hero of Vrishni's race thy own by means of thy wealth; in fact, by this means, thou seekest to separate Keçava from the Pāndavas! I tell thee, however, that thou art unable, by wealth, or attentions, or worship, to separate Krishna from Dhananjaya! I know the

magnanimity of Krishna. I know the firm devotion of Arjuna towards him. I know that Dhananjaya who is Keçava's life, is incapable of being given up by the latter! Save only a vessel of water, save only the washing of his feet, save only the (usual) enquiries after the welfare (of those he will see), Janārddana will not accept any other hospitality or set his eyes on any other thing! Offer him, however, O king, that hospitality which is most agreeable to that illustrious one deserving of every respect, for there is no respect that may not be offered to Janārddana! Give unto Keçava, O king, that object in expectation of which, from desire of benefiting both parties, he cometh to the Kurus! Keçava desires peace to be established between thee and Duryodhana on one side and the Pāndavas on the other. Follow his counsels, O monarch! Thou art their father, O king, and the Pāndavas are thy sons! Thou art old, and they are children in years. Behave as a father towards them that are disposed to pay thee filial regard!'"

SECTION LXXXVII.

"Duryodhana said,—'All that Vidura hath said about Krishna, hath, indeed, been truly said; for Janārddana is greatly devoted to the Pāndavas and can never be separated from them. All the diverse kinds of wealth, O foremost of kings, that are proposed to be bestowed upon Janārddana ought never to be bestowed upon him! Kecava is, of course, not unworthy of our worship, but both time and place are against it, for he (Krishna), O king, on receiving our worship, will very likely think that we are worshipping him out of fear. This is my certain conviction, O king, that an intelligent Kshatriya must not do that which may bring disgrace upon him! It is well known to me that the large-eyed Krishna deserveth the most reverential worship of the three worlds. It is quite out of place, therefore, O illustrious king, to give him anything now, for war having been decided upon, it should never be put off by hospitality!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of his, the grandsire of the Kurus spoke these words unto the royal son of

Vichitravirya.—'Worshipped or not worshipped, Janārddana never becometh angry! None, however, can treat him with disrespect, for Keçava is not contemptible. Whatever, O mighty one, he purposeth to do is incapable of being frustrated by anybody by every means in his power! Do without hesitation what Krishna of mighty arms sayeth, and bring about peace with the Pāndavas through Vāsudeva as the means! Truly, Janārddana possessed of virtuous soul will say what is consistent with religion and profit. It behoveth thee, therefore, with all thy friends, to tell him what only is agreeable to him!'

"Duryodhana said,—'O grandsire, I can, by no means, live by sharing this swelling prosperity of mine with the Pāndavas! Listen, this, indeed, is a great resolution which I have formed! I will imprison Janārddana who is the refuge of the Pāndavas! He will come here tomorrow morning; and when he is confined, the Vrishnis and the Pāndavas, aye the whole earth, will submit to me! What may be the means for accomplishing it, so that Janārddana may not guess our purpose and so that no danger also may overtake us, it behoveth thee to say!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these fearful words of his about imprisoning Krishna, Dhritarāshtra with all his counsellors was very much pained and became deeply afflicted. King Dhritarāshtra then spoke these words unto Duryodhana, —'O ruler of men, never say this again, this is not eternal virtue! Hrishikeça cometh here as an ambassador! He is, besides, related to and is dear to us! He hath done us no wrong; how then doth he deserve imprisonment!'

"Bhishma said,—'This wicked son of thine, O Dhritarāshtra, hath his hour come! He chooseth evil, not good, though entreated by his well-wishers! Thou also followest in the wake of this wicked wretch of sinful surroundings, who treadeth a thorny way setting at naught the words of his well-wishers! This exceedingly wicked son of thine, with all his counsellors, coming in contact with Krishna of unstained acts, will be destroyed in a moment! I dare not listen to the words of this sinful and wicked wretch that hath abandoned all virtue!'

"Having said this, that aged chief of the Bharata race, Bhishma of unbaffled prowess, inflamed with rage, rose and left that place."

SECTION LXXXVIII.

Vaicampāyana said.—"Rising up (from his bed) at day-dawn, Krishna went through his morning rites, and taking leave of the Brāhmanas, set out for the city (of the Kurus). And all the inhabitants of Vrikasthala, bidding farewell unto that mighty one of long arms while he was about to depart, all returned to their homes. And all the Dhārtarāshtras, except Duryodhana, attired in excellent robes, and with Bhishma, Drona, Kripa, and others, went out to meet him. And the citizens by thousands. O king, on cars of diverse kinds, and many on foot, also came out, desirous of beholding Hrishikeça. And meeting on the way Bhishma of spotless deeds, and Drona, and Dhritarāshtra's sons, he entered the city, surrounded by them all. And in honour of Krishna, the city was beautifully adorned, and the principal streets were decorated with diverse jewels and gems! And, O king, O bull of the Bharata race, on that occasion no one,—man, woman, or child,—remained indoors, so eager were the citizens for beholding Vāsudeva! And all the citizens came out and lined the streets and bent their heads down to the ground, singing eulogies in his honor, O king, when Hrishikeça entered the city and passed through it! And substantial mansions, filled with high-born ladies, seemed to be on the point of falling down on the ground in consequence of their living weight. And although Vāsudeva's steeds were endued with great speed, yet they moved very slowly through that dense mass of human beings. And that lotus-eyed grinder of foes then entered Dhritarāshtra's ash-colored palace which was adorned with numerous buildings. And having passed through the first three chambers of the palace, that chastiser of foes, Keçava, came upon the royal son of Vichitravirya. And upon that son of Daçārha's race approaching his presence, the blind monarch of great fame stood up along with Drona and Bhishma. And Kripa, and

Somadatta, and king Vālhika also,—all stood up for honoring Janārddana. And the Vrishni hero, having approached king Dhritarāshtra of great fame, worshipped him and Bhishma with proper words and without losing any time. And having offered that worship unto them acccording to established usage, Mādhava the slayer of Madhu greeted the other kings according to their years. And Janārddana then accosted the illustrious Drona and his son, and Vāhlika, and Kripa, and Somadatta. And there in that chamber lay a spacious seat of beautiful workmanship, made of gold and set with jewels. And at Dhritarāshtra's request Achyuta took that seat. And the priests of Dhritarāshtra duly offered, Janārddana a cow, honey and curds, and water. And after the rites of hospitality were over, Govinda remained there for a while, surrounded by the Kurus, laughing and jesting with them according to their relationship with him. And that illustrious grinder of foes, honored and worshipped by Dhritarāshtra, came out with the king's permission. And Mādhava, having duly greeted all the Kurus in their assembly, then went to the delightful abode of Vidura. And Vidura, having approached Janārddana of Daçārha's race thus arrived at his abode, worshipped him with every auspicious and desirable offering. And he said,—'What use, O lotus-eyed one, in telling thee of the joy I feel at this advent of thine, for thou art the inner soul of all embodied creatures!' And after the hospitable reception was over, Vidura, conversant with all the principles of morality, enquired of Govinda the slayer of Madhu about the welfare, of the Pāndavas. And that scion of Daçārha's race, that chief of the Vrishnis, unto whom the past and the future were as the present, knowing that Vidura was loved by the Pāndavas and friendly towards them, and learned, and firm in morality, and honest, and harbouring no wrath (against the Pāndavas), and wise, began to tell him everything in detail about the doings of the sons of Pāndu."*

---

* A different reading occurs in *Sloka* 26, the last but one of this section. For *Vidusho-Vrishnisattamas* some texts read *Viduro-buddhisattamas*. The latter reading seems to be ungrammatical, for if *Buddhi-*

SECTION LXXXIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Janārddana the chastiser of foes, after his meeting with Vidura, went then in the afternoon to his paternal aunt Prithā. And beholding Krishna whose countenance beamed with the effulgence of the radiant sun arrived at her abode, she encircled his neck with her arms and began to pour forth her lamentations remembering her sons. And at the sight, after a long time, of Govinda of Vrishni's race, the companion of those mighty children of hers, the tears of Prithā flowed fast. And after Krishna, that foremost of warriors, had taken his seat having first received the rites of hospitality, Prithā, with a woe-begone face and voice choked in tears addressed him, saying,—'They who from their earliest years have always waited with reverence on their superiors, they who in friendship are attached to one another, they who are endued with humility and have hearts equal to one another's, who deprived deceitfully of their kingdom had gone to seclusion however worthy of living in the midst of friends and attendants,—they who have subjugated both wrath and joy, are devoted to Brāhmanas and truthful in speech,—those children of mine who, abandoning kingdom and enjoyments and leaving my weeping self behind, had gone to the woods, plucking the very roots of my heart,—those illustrious sons of Pāndu, O Keçava, who have suffered woe however undeserving of it,—how, alas, did they live in the deep forest abounding with lions and tigers and elephants! Deprived in their infancy of their father, they were all tenderly brought up by me! How, also, did they live in the mighty forest, without seeing both their parents! From their infancy, O Keçava, the Pāndavas were waked from their beds by the music of conchs and drums and flutes! That

---

sattamas be an adjective (as it must) of *Dāçārhas* in the next *Sloka*, how is *Viduras* to be parsed ? All other adjectives in connection with Vidura here being singular, *Vidushas* is undoubtedly the correct word for *Viduras*, the latter being a nominative singular.—T.

they who, while at home, used to sleep within high palatial chambers on soft blankets and skins of the *Ranku* deer and were waked in the morning by the grunt of elephants, the neighing of steeds, the clatter of car-wheels, and the music of conchs and cymbals in accompaniment with the notes of flutes and lyres,—who, adored at early dawn with sacred-sounding hymns uttered by Brāhmanas, worshipped those amongst them that deserved such worship with robes and jewels and ornaments, and who were blessed with the auspicious benedictions of those illustrious members of the regenerate order as a return for the homage the latter received, —that they, O Janārddana, could sleep in the deep woods resounding with the shrill and dissonant cires of beasts of prey can hardly be believed, undeserving as they were of so much woe! How could they, O slayer of Madhu, who were waked from their beds by the music of cymbals and drums and conchs and flutes, with the honeyed strains of songstresses and the eulogies chaunted by bards and professional reciters,—alas, how could they be waked in the deep woods by the yells of wild beasts! He that is endued with modesty, is firm in truth, with senses under control and compassion for all creatures,—he that hath vanquished both lust and malice and always treadeth the path of the righteous, he that ably bore the heavy burthen borne by Amvarisha and Māndhātri and Yayāti and Nahusha and Bharata and Dilipa and Civi the son of Uçinara and other royal sages of old, he that is endued with an excellent character and disposition, he that is conversant with virtue and whose prowess is incapable of being baffled, he that is fit to become the monarch of the three worlds in consequence of his possession of every accomplishment, he that is the foremost of all the Kurus lawfully and in respect of learning and disposition, who is handsome and mighty-armed and hath not an enemy,—Oh, how is that Yudhishthira of virtuous soul and complexion like that of pure gold? He that hath the strength of ten thousand elephants and the speed of the wind, he that is mighty and ever wrathful amongst the sons of Pāndu, he that always doth good to his brothers and is, therefore, dear to them all, he, O slayer

of Madhu, that slew Kichaka with all his relatives, he that is the slayer of the Krodhavaças, of Hidimva, and of Vaka, he that in prowess is equal unto Cakra and in might unto the Wind-god, he that is terrible and in wrath is equal unto Mahādeva himself, he that is the foremost of all smiters,—that wrathful son of Pāndu and chastiser of foes, who, restraining his rage, might, and impatience, and controlling his soul, is obedient to the commands of his elder brother,—speak to me, O thou of the Vrishni race, of that mass of energy, that illustrious hero, that foremost of all warriors, that smiter of immeasurable valour, that Bhimasena who in aspect also justifies his name! O Janārddana, tell me how is that Vrikodara possessing arms like maces, that mighty second son of Pāndu! O Krishna, that Arjuna of two arms who always regardeth himself as superior to his name-sake of old with a thousand arms, and who at one stretch shooteth five hundred arrows, that son of Pāndu who in the use of weapons is equal unto king Kārtavirya, in energy unto Āditya, in restraint of senses unto a great sage, in forgiveness unto the Earth, and in prowess unto Indra himself,—he by whose prowess, O slayer of Madhu, the Kurus amongst all the kings of the earth have obtained this extensive empire blazing with effulgence,—he whose strength of arms is always adored by the Pāndavas,—that son of Pāndu who is the foremost of all car-warriors and whose prowess is incapable of being baffled,—he from an encounter with whom in battle no foe ever escapeth with life,—he, O Achyuta, who is the conqueror of all but who is incapable of being conquered by any,—he who is the refuge of the Pāndavas like Vāsava of the celestials,—how, O Keçava, is that Dhananjaya now, that brother and friend of thine? He that is compassionate to all creatures, is endued with modesty and acquainted with mighty weapons, is soft and delicate and virtuous,—he that is dear to me,—that mighty bowman Sahadeva, that hero and ornament of assemblies,—he, O Krishna, who is youthful in years, is devoted to the service of his brothers, and is conversant with both virtue and profit! His brothers, O slayer of Madhu, always applaud the disposition of that high-souled and well-

behaved son of mine! Tell me, O thou of the Vrishni race, of that heroic Sahadeva, that foremost of warriors, that son of Mādri who always waiteth submissively on his elder brothers and so reverentially on me! He that is delicate and youthful in years, he that is brave and handsome in person, —that son of Pāndu who is dear unto his brothers as also unto all, and who, indeed, is their very life though walking with a separate body,—he that is conversant with various modes of warfare,—he that is endued with great strength and is a mighty bowman,—tell me, O Krishna, is that dear child of mine, Nakula, who was brought up in luxury, now well in body and mind? O thou of mighty arms, shall I ever behold again that Nakula of mine, that mighty car-warrior, that delicate youth brought up in every luxury and undeserving of woe? Behold, O hero, I am alive today, even *I* who could know no peace by losing sight of Nakula for the short space of time taken up by a wink of the eye! More than all my sons, O Janārddana, is the daughter of Drupada dear to me! High-born and possessed of great beauty, she is endued with every accomplishment! Truthful in speech, she chose the company of her lords giving up that of her sons! Indeed, leaving her dear children behind, she followeth the sons of Pāndu! Waited upon at one time by a large train of servants, and adored by her husbands with every object of enjoyment, the possessor of every auspicious mark and accomplishment, how, O Achyuta, is that Draupadi now? Having five heroic husbands who are all smiters of foes and all mighty bowmen, each equal unto Agni in energy, alas, woe hath yet been the lot of Drupada's daughter! I have not for fourteen long years, O chastiser of foes, beheld the princess of Pānchāla, that daughter-in-law of mine, who herself hath been a prey to every anxiety on account of her children whom she hath not seen for that period! When Drupada's daughter endued with such a disposition doth not enjoy uninterrupted happiness, it seemeth, O Govinda, that the happiness one enjoyeth is never the fruit of one's acts! When I remember the forcible dragging of Krishnā to the assembly, then neither Vibhatshu, nor Yudhishthira, nor Bhima, nor Nakula, nor

Sahadeva becometh an object of affection to me! Never before had a heavier grief been mine than what pierced my heart when that wretch Dusçāsana, moved by wrath and covetousness, dragged Draupadi, then in her season and, therefore, clad in a single raiment, into the presence of her fathers-in-law in the assembly and exposed her to the gaze of all the Kurus! It is known that amongst those that were present, king Vālhika, and Kripa, and Somadatta, were pierced with grief at this sight. But of all present in that assembly it is Vidura whom I worship! Neither by learning nor by wealth doth one became worthy of homage! It is by disposition alone that one becomes respectable! O Krishna, endued with great intelligence and profound wisdom, the character of the illustrious Vidura, like unto an ornament (that he wears), adorns the whole world.' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Filled with delight at the advent of Govinda, and afflicted with sorrow (on account of her sons) Prithā gave expression to all her diverse griefs. And she said,—'Can gambling and the slaughter of deer which, O chastiser of foes, occupied all wicked kings of old, be a pleasant occupation for the Pāndavas? The thought consumeth me, O Keçava, that dragged into the presence of all the Kurus in their assembly by Dhritarāshtra's sons, insults worse than death were heaped on Krishnā! O chastiser of foes, the banishment of my sons from their capital and their wanderings in the wilderness,—these and various other griefs, O Janārddana, have been mine! Nothing could be more painful to me or my sons themselves, O Mādhava, than that they should have had to pass a period of concealment, shut up in a stranger's house! Full fourteen years have passed since the day when Duryodhana first exiled my sons! If misery is destructive of the fruits of sin and happiness dependent on the fruits of religious merit, then it seems that happiness may still be ours after so much misery!* I never made any

* I have rendered this *Sloka* rather freely as a literal version would be unintelligible to the general reader. Closely rendered, what Prithá says is,—"If happiness be destructive of the fruits of virtue, then &c.,' &c." The fact is, the Hindu belief is that misery exhausts the fruits of

distinction between Dhritarāshtra's sons and mine (so far as maternal affection is concerned). By that truth, O Krishna, I shall surely behold thee along with the Pāndavas safely come out of the present strife with their foes slain and themselves invested with prosperity.* Indeed, endued with such merits as the Pāndavas are, they are incapable of being defeated by their enemies! In the matter of my present sorrows, however, I blame neither myself nor Suyodhana but my father alone! Like a wealthy man giving away a sum of money in gift,† my father gave me away to Kuntibhoja! While a child playing with a ball in my hands, thy grandfather, O Keçava, gave me away to his friend the illustrious Kuntibhoja! Abandoned, O chastiser of foes, by my own father, and my fathers-in-law, and afflicted with insufferable woes, what use, O Mādhava, in my being alive? On the night of Savyasāchin's birth, in the lying-in room, an invisible voice told me—*This son of thine will conquer the whole world, and his fame will reach the very heavens! Slaying the Kurus in a great battle and recovering the kingdom, thy son Dhananjaya will, with his brothers, perform three grand sacrifices!*—I do not doubt the truth of that announcement. I bow unto *Dharma* and the Creator, and unto the ever-mighty Krishna! It is *Dharma* that upholds the creation!‡ If *Dharma* be not a myth, then, O Krishna, thou

---

sin and happiness similarly exhausts the fruit of virtue. Hence when the fruits of sin are exhausted by undergoing misery, happiness begins, and continues till the fruits of virtue are exhausted. After both are exhausted, or rather a small balance is left of both *(vide* the *Sanatsujātiya* sections, *Supra,)* men are *re-born.*—T.

* However unidiomatic may this expression be, it correctly expresses the idea of the original.—T.

† I prefer the reading *Vrittairiva* to *Dhurtairiva* although the latter is more poetical. If the latter reading be adopted, the meaning would be—"Like a gambler giving away the money he has lost." The unfeelingness of the gift, in the latter case, would be better illustrated, but then all the approved manuscripts have the former reading.—T.

‡ Nilkantha thinks that there is a vein of irony in Kunti's reverence here for Krishna. This suggestion seems to gain strength from what Kunti says in the next *Sloka.*—T.

wilt surely achieve all that the invisible voice said! Neither the loss of my husband, O Mādhava, nor the loss of wealth, nor our hostility with the Kurus, ever inflicted such rending pangs on me as that separation from my children! What peace can my heart know when I do not see before me that wielder of *Gāndiva, viz,* Dhananjaya, that foremost of all bearers of arms! I have not, for fourteen years, O Govinda, seen Yudhishthira, and Dhananjaya, and Vrikodara! Men perform the obsequies of those that are missed for a long time, taking them for dead! Practically, O Janārddana, my children are all dead to me and I am dead to them!

"'Say unto the virtuous king Yudhishthira, O Mādhava, that —*Thy virtue, O son, is daily decreasing! Act thou, therefore, in such a way that thy religious merit may not diminish!*—Fie to them that live, O Janārddana, by dependence on others! Even death is better than a livelihood gained by meanness! Thou must also say unto Dhananjaya and the ever-ready Vrikodara that—*The time for that event is come in view of which a Kshatriya woman bringeth forth a son! If you allow the time to slip without your achieving anything, then, though at present ye are respected by all the world, ye will be only doing that which would be regarded as contemptible! And if contempt touches you, I will abandon you for ever! When the time cometh, even life, which is so dear, should be laid down!*—O foremost of men, thou must also say unto Mādri's sons that are always devoted to Kshatriya customs,—*More than life itself, strive ye to win objects of enjoyment procurable by prowess, since objects won by prowess alone can please the heart of a person desirous of living according to Kshatriya customs!*—Repairing thither, O mighty-armed one, say unto that foremost of all bearers of arms, Arjuna the heroic son of Pāndu,—*Tread thou the path that may be pointed out to thee by Draupadi!*—It is known to thee, O Keçava, that when inflamed with rage, Bhima and Arjuna, each like unto the universal Destroyer himself, can slay the very gods! That was a great insult offered unto them, *viz.,* that their wife Krishnā, having been dragged into the assembly, was addressed in such humiliating terms by Dusçāsana and

Karna! Duryodhana himself hath insulted Bhima of mighty energy in the very presence of the Kuru chiefs. I am sure he will reap the fruit of that behaviour, for Vrikodara, provoked by a foe, knoweth no peace. Indeed, once provoked, Bhima forgets it not for a long while, even until that grinder of foes exterminates the enemy and his allies! The loss of kingdom did not grieve me; the defeat at dice did not grieve me! That the illustrious and beautiful princess of Pānchāla was dragged into the assembly while clad in a single raiment and made to hear bitter words grieved me most! What, O Krishna, could be a greater grief to me? Alas, ever devoted to Kshatriyā customs and endued with great beauty, the princess, while ill, underwent that cruel treatment, and though possessing powerful protectors was then as helpless as if she had none! O slayer of Madhu, having thee and that foremost of all mighty persons, Rāma, and that mighty car-warrior Praddyumna for my and my children's protectors, and having, O foremost of men, my sons the invincible Bhima and the unretreating Vijaya both alive, that I had still such grief to bear is certainly strange!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed by her, Cauri the friend of Pārtha then comforted his paternal aunt Prithā afflicted with grief an account of her sons. And Vāsudeva said,—'What woman is there, O aunt, in the world who is like thee? The daughter of king Curasena, thou art, by marriage, admitted into Ājmida's race! High-born and highly married, thou art like a lotus transplanted from one mighty lake into another! Endued with every prosperity and great good fortune, thou wert adored by thy husband! The wife of a hero, thou hast again given birth to heroic sons! Possessed of every virtue, and endued with great wisdom, it behoveth thee to bear with patience, both happiness and misery! Overcoming sleep and langour and wrath and joy and hunger and thirst, and cold and heat, thy children are always in the enjoyment of that happiness which, as heroes, should be theirs! Endued with great exertion and great might, thy sons, without affecting the comforts derivable from the senses and such as satisfy only the low and the mean, always pursue that happiness which as heroes

they should. Nor are they satisfied with little, like men having mean desires! They that are wise enjoy or suffer the acme of whatever is enjoyable or sufferable. Indeed, ordinary persons, affecting comforts that satisfy the low and the mean, desire an equable state of dulness without excitement of any kind. They, however, that are superior, desire either the acutest of human sufferings or the highest of all enjoyments that is given to man! The wise always delight in extremes. They find no pleasure betwixt; they regard the extreme only to be happiness, while that which lies between is regarded by them as misery.

"The Pāndavas with Krishnā salute thee through me! Representing themselves to be well, they have enquired after thy welfare! Thou wilt soon behold them safe and sound, with all their purposes crowned with success! Thou wilt soon see them become the lords of the whole world, with their foes slain and themselves invested with prosperity!'

"Thus comforted by him, Kunti, afflicted with grief on account of her sons but soon dispelling the darkness caused by her temporary loss of understanding, replied unto Janārdana, saying,—'Whatever, O mighty-armed one, thou, O slayer of Madhu, regardest as fit to be done, let that be done without sacrificing righteousness, O chastiser of foes, and without the least guile! I know, O Krishna, what the power of thy truth and of thy lineage is! I know also what judgment and what prowess thou bringest to bear upon the accomplishment of whatever concerns thy friends! In our race, thou art Virtue's self, thou art Truth, and thou art the embodiment of ascetic austerities! Thou art the Savior, thou art the great *Brahma*, and everything resteth on thee! What, therefore, thou hast said must be true!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Bidding her farewell and respectfully walking round her, the mighty-armed Govinda then departed for Duryodhana's mansion."

SECTION XC.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"With Prithā's leave and having walked round her, that chastiser of foes, Govinda, also called Cauri went to Duryodhana's palace that was furnished with great wealth, adorned with beautiful seats, and like unto the abode of Purandara himself. Unobstructed by the orderlies-in-waiting, that hero of great fame crossed three spacious yards insuccession and then entered that mansion looking like a mass of clouds, high as the summit of a hill, and blazing forth with beauty. And he there beheld Dhritarāshtra's son of mighty-arms seated on his throne in the midst of a thousand kings and surrounded by all the Kurus. And he also beheld there Dusçāsana and Karna and Cakuni the son of Suvala seated on their respective seats by the side of Duryodhana. And on that scion of Daçāraha's race entering the court, Dhritarāshtra's son of great fame rose up from his seat with his counsellors for honoring the slayer of Madhu. And Keçavá then greeted Dhritarāshtra's son and all his counsellors as also all the kings that were present there, according to their respective ages. And Achyuta of Vrishni's race then took his seat on a beautiful seat made of gold and overlaid with a carpet embroidered with gold. And the Kuru king then offered unto Janārddana a cow, and honey and curds, and water, and placed at his service his palaces and mansions and the whole kingdom. And then the Kuravas with all the kings there present worshipped Govinda seated on his seat and resembling the sun himself in splendour. The worship over, king Duryodhana invited him of Vrishni's race—that foremost of victors—to eat at his house. Keçava, however, did not accept the invitation. The Kuru king Duryodhana, seated in the midst of the Kurus, in a gentle voice but with deception lurking behind his words, eyeing Karna, and addressing Keçava, then said,—'Why, O Janārddana, dost thou not accept the diverse kinds of viands and drink, robes and beds, that have all been prepared and kept

ready for thee! Thou hast granted aid to both sides; thou art engaged in the good of both parties! Thou art again the foremost of Dhritarāshtra's relations and much loved by him! Thou, O Govinda, also knowest fully, in all their details, both religion and profit! I, therefore, desire to hear, O bearer of the discus and the mace, what the true reason is of this thy refusal!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"The high-souled Govinda, of eyes like lotus-leaves, then raising his mighty (right) arm, and in a voice deep as that of the clouds, replied unto the king in excellent words fraught with reasons,—words that were clear, distinct, correctly pronounced, and without a single letter dropped, saying,—'Envoys, O king, eat and accept worship only after the success of their missions. Therefore, O Bhārata, after my mission becomes successful, thou mayst entertain me and my attendants!'—Thus answered, Dhritarāshtra's son again said unto Janārddana,—'It behoveth thee not, O Keçava, to behave towards us in this way! Whether thou becomest successful or unsuccessful, we are endeavouring to please thee, O slayer of Madhu, because of thy relationship with us! It seems, however, that all our efforts, O thou of Daçārha's race, are fruitless! Nor do we see the reason, O slayer of Madhu, in consequence of which, O foremost of men, thou acceptest not the worship offered by us from love and friendship! With thee, O Govinda, we have no hostility, no war! Therefore, on reflection it will seem to thee that words such as these scarcely become thee!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed by the king, Janārddana of Daçārha's race, casting his eyes on Dhritarāshtra's son and all his counsellors, replied, saying,—'Not from desire, nor from wrath, nor from malice, nor for gain, nor for the sake of argument, nor from temptation, would I abandon virtue! One taketh another's food when that other inspireth love. One may also take another's food when one is in distress. At present, however, O king, thou hast not inspired love in me by any act of thine, nor have I myself been plunged into distress! Without any reason, O king, thou hatest, from the moment of their birth, thy dear and gentle brothers—the

Pāndavas—endued* with every virtue! This unreasonable hatred of thine for the sons of Prithā ill becometh thee! The sons of Pāndu are all devoted to virtue! Who, indeed, can do them the least injury? He that hateth them, hateth me; he that loveth them, loveth me! Know that the virtuous Pāndavas and my own self have but a common soul! He who, following the impulses of lust and wrath, and from darkness of soul, hateth and seeketh to injure one that is possessed of every good quality, is regarded as the vilest of men! That wrathful wretch of uncontrolled soul, who, from ignorance and avarice hateth his kinsmen endued with every auspicious quality, can never enjoy his prosperity long! He, on the other hand, who, by good offices, winneth over persons endued with good qualities even if he beareth aversion for them within his heart, enjoyeth prosperity and fame for ever and ever! Defiled by wickedness, all this food, therefore, deserveth not to be eaten by me! The food supplied by Vidura alone, should, I think, be eaten by me!'

"Having said this unto Duryodhana who was ever incapable of bearing anything against his own wishes, Keçava of mighty-arms then came out of that blazing palace of Dhritarāshtra's son. And the high-souled Vāsudeva of mighty arms, coming out of that mansion, directed his steps towards the abode of the illustrious Vidura. And while that mighty-armed one was staying within Vidura's abode, thither came unto him Drona, and Kripa, and Bhishma, and Vāhlika, and many of the Kauravas. And the Kuravas that came there addressed Mādhava, the heroic slayer of Madhu, saying,—'O thou of Vrishni's race, we place at thy disposal our houses with all the wealth within them!'

"The slayer of Madhu, of mighty energy, answered them, saying,—'Ye may go away! I am much honored by these your offers!' And after all the Kurus had gone away, Vidura with great care entertained that unvanquished hero of Daçārha's race with every object of desire. And Khatri then placed before the illustrious Keçava clean and savoury food in abun-

* Literally "blooming"—for the word is *Samuditán*.—T.

dance. Therewith the slayer of Madhu first gratified the Brāhmanas. Indeed, from that food he first gave a portion, along with much wealth, unto a number of Brāhmanas conversant with the *Vedas*, and then with his attendants, like Vāsava in the midst of the Maruts, he dined on what remained of that clean and savoury food supplied by Vidura."

SECTION XCI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"After Keçava had dined and refreshed, Vidura said unto him during the night,—'O Keçava, this advent of thine hath not been a well-judged one, for, O Janārddana, Dhritarāshtra's son transgresseth the rules of both profit and religion, is wicked and wrathful, insulteth others though himself desirous of honors, and disobeyeth the commands of the aged! He is, O Mādhava, a transgressor of the scriptures, ignorant and of wicked soul, already overtaken by fate, untractable, and disposed to do evil to those that seek his good! His soul is possessed by desire and lust. He foolishly regardeth himself as very wise. He is the enemy of all his true friends. Ever-suspicious, without any control over his soul, and ungrateful, he hath abandoned all virtue and is in love with sin. He is foolish, with understanding uncultivated, a slave of his senses, ever obedient to the impulses of lust and avarice, and irresolute in every act that should be done. He is endued with these and many other vices. Although thou wilt point out to him what is for his good, he will yet disregard it all, moved by pride and anger. He hath great faith in Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and Karna, and Drona's son, and Jayadratha, and, therefore, he never setteth his heart on peace. O Janārddana, Dhritarāshtra's sons, with Karna, firmly believe that the Pāndavas are incapable of even looking at Bhishma, Drona, and the others! The foolish Duryodhana of limited sight, having assembled an earthly army, regardeth, O slayer of Madhu, that his purposes are already achieved! The foolish son of Dhritarāshtra hath arrived at the conclusion that Karna, single handed, is competent to vanquish his foes! He will, therefore, never make peace! Thou, O Keçava, desirest

to establish peace and brotherly feelings between the two parties. But know that all the sons of Dhritarāshtra have come to the conclusion that they would not give unto the Pāndavas what, indeed, the latter have a right to. With those that are so resolved, thy words will certainly prove vain! Where, O slayer of Madhu, words, good or bad, are of the same effect, no wise man would spend his breath like a singer before an auditory of the deaf! As a Brāhmana before a conclave of *Chandālas*, thy words, O Mādhava, would command no respect among those ignorant and wicked wretches that have no reverence for all that deserveth reverence! Foolish as he is, as long as he hath strength, he will never obey thy counsels. Whatever words thou mayst speak to him will be perfectly futile. It doth not seem proper to me, O Krishna, that thou shouldst go into the midst of those wicked-minded wretches seated together! It doth not seem proper to me, O Krishna, that going thither thou shouldst utter words against those wicked-souled, foolish, and unrighteous wights, strong in number. In consequence of their having never worshipped the aged, in consequence of their having been blinded by prosperity and pride, and owing to the pride of youth and wrath, they will never accept the good thou mayst place before them. He hath mustered a strong force, O Mādhava, and he hath his suspicions of thyself. He will, therefore, never obey any counsel that thou mayst offer! The sons of Dhritarāshtra, O Janārddana, are inspired with the firm belief that at present Indra himself at the head of all the celestials is incapable of defeating them in battle! Efficacious as thy words always are, they will prove to be of no efficacy with persons impressed with such a conviction and who always follow the impulse of lust and wrath! Staying in the midst of his ranks of elephants and his army consisting of cars and heroic infantry, the foolish and wicked Duryodhana, with all his fears dispelled, regardeth the whole earth to have already been subjugated by him! Indeed, Dhritarāshtra's son coveteth extensive empire on the earth without any rivals! Peace, therefore, with him is unattainable. That which he hath in his possession he regardeth as unalterably his. Alas, the destruction of the earth seems to

be at hand for the sake of Duryodhana, for, impelled by fate, the kings of the earth with all the Kshatriya warriors have assembled together, desirous of battling with the Pāndavas! All those kings, O Krishna, are in enmity with thee and have all been deprived of their possessions before this by thee! Through fear of thee those heroic monarchs have joined together with Karna and made an alliance with Dhritarāshtra's sons! Reckless of their very lives, all those warriors have united with Duryodhana and are filled with delight at the prospect of fighting the Pāndavas! O hero of Daçārha's race, it doth not commend itself to me that thou shouldst enter their midst! How, O grinder of foes, wilt thou repair into the midst of those numerous enemies of thine, of wicked souls, and seated together? O thou of mighty arms, thou art, indeed, incapable of being vanquished by the very gods, and I know, O slayer of foes, thy manliness and intelligence! O Mādhava, the love I bear to thee is equal to that I bear to the sons of Pāndu! I say, therefore, these words to thee from my affection, regard, and friendship for thee! What need is there in expressing to thee the delight that has been mine at sight of thy person, for thou, O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, art the inner soul of all embodied creatures!'"

SECTION XCII.

"The holy one said,—'That, indeed, which should be said by a person of great wisdom; that, indeed, which should be said by one possessed of great foresight; that, indeed, which should be said by one like thee to a friend like me; that, indeed, which is deserving of thee, being consistent with virtue and profit, and truth; that, O Vidura, hath been said by thee, father- and mother- like, unto me! That which thou hast told me is certainly true, worthy of approbation and consistent with reason. Listen, however, with attention, O Vidura, to the reason of my advent! Well knowing the wickedness of Dhritarāshtra's son and the hostility of the Kshatriyas that have sided with him, I have still, O Vidura, come to the Kurus! Great will be the merit earned by him who

will liberate from the meshes of death the whole earth, with her elephants, cars, and steeds, overwhelmed with a dreadful calamity. If a man striving to the best of his abilities to perform a virtuous act meets with failure, I have not the least doubt that the merit of that act becomes his, notwithstanding such failure. This also is known to those that are conversant with religion and scripture that if a person having intended mentally to commit a sinful act does not actually commit it, the demerit of that act can never be his. I will sincerely endeavour, O Vidura, to bring about peace between the Kurus and the Srinjayas who are about to be slaughtered in battle! That terrible calamity (which hangs over them all) hath its origin in the conduct of the Kurus, for it is directly due to the action of Duryodhana and Karna, the other Kshatriyas only following the lead of these two. The learned regard him to be a wretch who doth not by his solicitation seek to save a friend who is about to sink in calamity! Striving to the best of his might, even to the extent of seizing him by the hair, one should seek to dissuade a friend from an improper act. In that case, he that acteth so, instead of incurring blame, reapeth praise. It behoveth Dhritarāshtra's son, therefore, O Vidura, with his counsellors, to accept my good and beneficial counsels that are consistent with virtue and profit and competent to dispel the present calamity! I will, therefore, sincerely endeavour to bring about the good of Dhritarāshtra's sons and the Pāndavas, as also of all the Kshatriyas on the face of the earth! If while endeavouring to bring about the good (of my friends) Duryodhana judgeth me wrongly, I shall have the satisfaction of my own conscience and be freed from the debt I woe to my friends! The learned do not regard him to be a friend who doth not assume the functions of an intercessor when dissensions break out between kinsmen. In order, again, that unrighteous, foolish, and inimical persons may not afterwards say that though competent still Krishna made no attempt to restrain the angry Kurus and the Pandavas from slaughtering one another, I have come here! Indeed, it is to serve both parties that I have come hither. Having striven to bring about peace, I will escape the

censure of all the kings. If after listening to my auspicious words fraught with virtue and profit, the foolish Duryodhana accepts them not, he will only invite his fate. If without sacrificing the interests of the Pāndavas I can bring about peace among the Kurus, my conduct will be regarded as highly meritorious, O high-souled one, and the Kauravas themselves will be liberated from the meshes of death! If the sons of Dhritarāshtra reflect coolly on the words I will utter,—words fraught with wisdom, consistent with righteousness, and possessed of grave import,—then that peace which is my object will be brought about and the Kuravas will also worship me (as the agent thereof). If, on the other hand, they seek to injure me, I tell thee that all the kings of the earth, united together, are no match for me, like a herd of deer incapable of standing before an enraged lion!"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said these words, that bull of the Vrishni race and delighter of the Yādavas then laid himself down on his soft bed for sleep."

SECTION XCIII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"In such conversation between those two distinguished persons, both of whom were endued with great intelligence, that night, lit with bright stars, passed away. Indeed, the night passed away against the wishes of both Vidura and Krishna,—of the illustrious Vidura who had been listening to the varied converse of Krishna fraught with virtue, profit, and desire, and made up of delightful words and syllables of agreeable import, and of Krishna himself, of immeasurable prowess, listening to discourses equal in style and character. Then at early dawn a band of chorristers and bards gifted with melodious voices awoke Kecava with sweet sounds of conchs and cymbals. And rising from bed, Janārddana of Daçārha's race, that bull amongst all the Sātwatas, went through all the customary acts of the morning. And having cleansed himself by a bath and recited the sacred *Mantras* and poured libations of clarified butter on the sacrificial fire, Mādhava decked his person and began to worship,

the rising sun. And while the unvanquished Krishna of Daçārha's race was still engaged in his morning devotions, Duryodhana and Suvala's son Cakuni came to him and said, —'Dhritarāshtra is seated in his court, with all the Kurus headed by Bhishma, and with all the kings of the earth! They are all soliciting thy presence, O Govinda, like the celestials in heaven desiring the presence of Cakra himself!'— Thus addressed, Govinda greeted them both with sweet and courteous enquiries. And when the sun had risen a little higher, Janārddana, that chastiser of foes, summoning a number of Brāhmanas, made them presents of gold and robes and kine and steeds. And after he had thus given away much wealth and taken his seat, his driver (Dāruka) came and saluted that unvanquished hero of Daçārha's race. And Dāruka soon returned with his master's large and blazing car furnished with rows of tinkling bells and harnessed with excellent steeds. And understanding that his handsome car adorned with every ornament and producing a rattle deep as the roll of mighty masses of clouds was ready, the high-souled Janārddana, that delighter of all the Yādavas, walking round the sacred fire and a band of Brāhmanas, and putting on the gem known by the name of *Kaustuva*, and blazing with beauty, surrounded by the Kurus and well-protected by the Vrishnis, mounted on it. And Vidura conversant with all the precepts of religion followed on his own car that scion of Daçārha's race, that foremost of all living creatures, that first of all persons gifted with intelligence. And Duryodhana and Suvala's son Cakuni also, on one car, followed Krishna, that chastiser of foes. And Sātyaki and Kritavarman and the other mighty car-warriors of the Vrishni race, all rode behind Krishna on cars and steeds and elephants. And, O king, the handsome cars of those heroes, adorned with gold and drawn by excellent steeds and each producing a loud rattle, as they moved forward, shone brilliantly. And Keçava endued with great intelligence and blazing with beauty soon came upon a broad street that had previously been swept and watered, and that was fit to be used by the highest of kings. And when that scion of Daçārha's race set out, cymbals began to play,

and conchs began to be blown, and other instruments also to pour forth their music. And a great number of youthful heroes, foremost in the world for heroism, and possessed of leonine prowess, proceeded, surrounding Cauri's car. And many thousands of attendants, dressed in various and strange costumes, and bearing swords and lances and axes, marched in advance of Keçava. And there were full five hundred elephants, and cars by thousands, that followed the unvanquished hero of Daçārha's race while he proceeded. And, O chastiser of foes, all the citizens of the capital, of all ages and both sexes, desirous of beholding Janārddana, came out into the streets. And the terraces and balconies of the houses were so thronged by ladies that the houses were on the point of falling down with the weight. And worshipped by the Kurus and listening to various sweet speeches, and returning the greetings of all as each deserved, Keçava went along the street, casting his eyes on all. And at last when Keçava reached the Kuru court, his attendants loudly blew their conchs and trumpets and filled the welkin with that blare. And thereupon that whole assembly of kings, of immeasurable prowess, trembled with delight at the expectation of soon setting their eyes on Krishna. And hearing the rattle of his car that resembled the deep roll of rain-charged clouds, the monarchs understood Krishna to be near, and the hair of their bodies stood erect with delight. And having reached the gate of the court, Cauri, that bull among the Sātwatas, alighting from his car that resembled the summit of Kailāsa, entered the court which looked like a mass of newly-risen clouds, and blazed forth with beauty, and resembled the very abode of the great Indra. And that illustrious hero entered the court, arm-in-arm with Vidura and Sātyaki on either side, and overshadowing with his own the splendour of all the Kurus like the sun overshadowing the radiance of lesser lights in the firmament. And before Vāsudeva sat Karna and Duryodhana, while behind him were seated the Vrishnis with Kritavarman. And Bhishma, and Drona, and others, with Dhritarāshtra, rose up from their seats for honoring Janārddana. Indeed, as soon as he of Daçārha's race came, the

illustrious blind monarch, and Drona and Bhishma, all rose up from their seats. And when that mighty ruler of men, king Dhritarāshtra, rose from his seat, those kings by thousands around him all rose up also. And at Dhritarāshtra's command, a seat, beautiful all over, and adorned with gold, had been kept there for Krishna. And after taking his seat, Mādhava smilingly greeted the king, and Bhishma, and Drona, and all other rulers, each according to his age. And all the kings of the earth, and all the Kurus also, beholding Keçava arrived in that assembly, worshipped him duly. And as that chastiser of foes, that vanquisher of hostile cities, that hero of Daçārha's race, was seated there, he beheld the *Rishis* staying in the firmament. And beholding those *Rishis* with Nārada at their head, he of Daçārha's race slowly addressed Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, saying,—'O king, the *Rishis* have come to see this earthly conclave of ours! Invite them with offers of seats and abundant courtesy, for as long as they are not seated, no one here is capable of taking his seat! Let proper worship, therefore, be speedily offered unto these *Rishis* with souls under proper control!' And beholding the *Rishis* then at the gate of the palace, Cāntanu's son quickly ordered the servants to bring seats for them. And soon enough they brought large and spacious and beautiful seats embroidered with gold and set with gems. And after the *Rishis*, O Bhārata, had taken their seats and accepted the *Arghas* offered to them, Krishna took his seat as also all the kings. And Dusçāsana gave an excellent seat to Sātyaki, while Vivingsati gave another golden one to Kritavarman. And not far from where Krishna sat, that illustrious and wrathful pair, Karna and Duryodhana, sat together on the same seat. And Cakuni the king of the Gāndharvas, surrounded by the chiefs of his country, sat there, O king, with his son beside him. And the high-souled Vidura sat on a begemmed seat covered with a white deer-skin that almost touched Krishna's seat. And all the kings in that assembly, although they gazed at Janārddana of Daçārha's race for a long while, were not, however, gratified with their gaze, like drinkers of the *Amrita*, that are never satiated with quaffing measure after

measure. And Janārddana attired in yellow and having the complexion of the *Atasi* flower, sat in the midst of that assembly like a dark gem mounted with gold. And after Govinda had taken his seat, a perfect silence ensued, for none present there spoke a single word."

SECTION XCIV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"And after all the kings had been seated and a perfect silence had ensued, Krishna possessing fine teeth and having a voice deep as that of the drum, began to speak. And Mādhava, although he addressed Dhritarāshtra, spoke in a voice deep as the roll of clouds in the rainy season, making the whole assembly hear. And he said,—"In order that, O Bhārata, peace may be established between the Kurus and the Pāndavas without a slaughter of heroes, I have come hither! Besides this, O king, I have no other beneficial words to utter. O chastiser of foes, everything that should be learned in this world is already known to thee! This thy race, O king, owing to its learning and behaviour, and owing also to its being adorned with every accomplishment, is most distinguised among all royal dynasties. Joy in the happiness of others, grief at sight of other people's misery, desire to alleviate distress, abstention from injury, sincerity, forgiveness, and truth,—these, O Bhārata, prevail amongst the Kurus!* When thy race, therefore, O king, is so noble it would be a pity if anything improper were done by any one belonging to it, and a greater pity still if it were done by thee! O chief of the Kurus, thou art the first of those that should restrain the Kurus if they behave deceitfully towards strangers or those numbering with themselves † Know,

---

* In distinguishing between *Kripā*, *Anukampā*, and *Kàrunya*, I have followed Nilakantha's explanations.—T.

† Some texts read *dhārayita* for *Vàrayitā*. The meaning then would be—"Thou art the foremost *supporter* &c., &c." *Dhārayitā* may also mean the bearer of (the) burthen (of Kuru affairs). *Vàhyeshu* and *Abhyantarishu* are explained by Nilakantha to mean *openly*, as at the match at dice, and *secretly*, as in the case of the house of lac. This is farfetched.

O thou of Kuru's race, that those wicked sons of thine headed by Duryodhana, abandoning both virtue and profit, disregarding morality, and deprived of their senses by avarice, are now acting most unrighteously towards, O bull of men, their foremost of kinsmen! That terrible danger (which threatens all) hath its origin in the conduct of the Kurus! If thou becomest indifferent to it, it will then produce a universal slaughter! If, O Bhārata, thou art willing, thou mayst be able to allay that danger even yet, for, O bull of Bharata's race, peace, I think, is not difficult of acquisition! The establishment of peace, O king, depends on thee and myself, O monarch! Set right thy sons, O thou of Kuru's race, and I will set the Pāndavas right! Whatever be thy command, O king, it behoveth thy sons with their followers to obey it! If again they live in obedience to thee, that would be the very best they could do. If thou strivest for peace by restraining thy sons, it will be to thy profit, O king, as also to the profit of the Pāndavas! Having reflected carefully, act thou thyself, O king! Let those sons of Bharata (the Pāndavas) be, O ruler of men, thy allies! Supported by the Pāndavas, O king, seek thou both religion and profit! By every exertion in thy power, thou canst not have, O king, such allies as they who are such! Protected by the illustrious sons of Pāndu, Indra himself at the head of the celestials will not be able to vanquish thee! How would it be possible then for mere earthly kings to bear thy prowess? There where Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and Karna, and Vivingçati, and Açwathāman, and Vikarna, and Somadatta, and Vāhlika, and the chief of the Sindhus, and the ruler of the Kalingas, and Sudakshina the king of the Kāmvojas, and Yudhishthira, and Bhimasena, and Savyasāchin, and the twins, and Sātyaki of mighty energy, and Yuyutsu that mighty car-warrior, are stationed, who is there, O bull of Bharata's race, of such misdirected intelligence that would fight these? If, O slayer of foes, thou hast both the Kurus and the Pāndavas at thy back, the sovereignty of the whole world and invincibility before all foes will be thine! All rulers of the earth, O monarch, that are either equal to thee or superior, will then seek alliance with thee! Protected

on all sides by sons, grandsons, fathers, brothers, and friends, thou wilt then be able to live in exceeding happiness! Keeping these before thee and treating them with kindness as in days of yore, thou, O monarch, wilt enjoy the sovereignty of the whole earth! With these as thy supporters and with the sons of Pāndu also, thou wilt, O Bhārata, be able to conquer all thy foes! Even this is thy best advantage. If, O chastiser of foes, thou art united with thy sons and kinsmen and counsellors, thou wilt enjoy the sovereignty of the whole earth won for thee by them! In battle, O great king, nothing but wholesale destruction is visible. Indeed, in the destruction of both parties, what merit dost thou see? If the Pāndavas are slaughtered in battle, or if thy own mighty sons fall, tell me, O bull of Bharata's race, what happiness wilt thou enjoy?* All of them are brave and skilled in weapons. All of them are desirous of battle, the Pāndavas as also thy sons. Oh, save them from the terrible danger that threatens them! After the battle thou wilt not behold all the Kurus or all the Pāndavas! Car-warriors slain by car-warriors, thou wilt behold the heroes of both parties reduced in numbers and strength! All the rulers of the earth, O best of kings, have been assembled together. Inflamed with wrath, they will certainly exterminate the population of the earth! Save, O king, the world! Let not the population of the earth be exterminated! O son of Kuru's race, if thou regainest thy natural disposition, the earth may continue to be peopled as now! Save, O king, these monarchs who are all of pure descent, endued with modesty and liberality and piety, and connected with one another in bonds of relationship or alliance, from the terrible danger that threatens them! Abandoning wrath and enmity, O chastiser of foes, let these kings, embracing one another in peace, eating and drinking with one another, dressed in excellent robes and decked with garlands, and doing courtesies to one another, return to their respective homes! Let the affection thou hadst for the Pāndavas be revived in thy bosom, and let it, O bull of Bharata's race, lead

* Lit. 'What wilt thou feel?'—T.

to the establishment of peace! Deprived of their father while they were infants, they were brought up by thee! Cherish them now as becomes thee, O bull of Bharata's race, as if they were thy own sons! It is thy duty to protect them. And especially is it so when they are distressed! O bull of Bharata's race, let not thy virtue and profit be both lost! Saluting and propitiating thee, the Pāndavas have said unto thee,—At thy command we have, with our followers, suffererd great misery. For these twelve years have we lived in the woods, and for the thirteenth year have we lived *incognito* in an inhabited part of the world. We broke not our pledge, firmly believing that our father also would abide by his. That we violated not our word is well known to the Brāhmanas who were with us. And as we, O bull of the Bharata race, have abided by our promise, also do thou abide by thine! Long have we suffered the greatest misery; but let us now have our share of the kingdom! Fully conversant as thou art with virtue and profit, it behoveth thee to rescue us! Knowing that our obedience is due to thee, we have quietly undergone much misery. Behave thou then unto us like a father or brother. A preceptor should behave as a preceptor towards his disciples, and as disciples we are willing to behave as such towards thee our preceptor! Act thou, therefore, towards us as a preceptor should. If we go wrong, it is the duty of our father to set us right. Therefore, set us on the way, and tread thou also the excellent path of righteousness!—Those sons of thine, O bull of the Bharata race, have also said unto these kings assembled in thy court these words:—If the members of an assembly are conversant with morality, nothing improper should be permitted by them to happen. Where, in the presence of the virtuous members of an assembly, righteousness is sought to be overpowered by unrighteousness and truth by the untruth, it is those members themselves that are vanquished and slain. When righteousness, pierced by unrighteousness, seeketh the protection of an assembly, if the arrow is not extracted, it is the members themselves that are pierced by that arrow. Indeed, in that case, righteousness slayeth the members of that assembly like a river eating away the roots of the trees

on its bank!—Judge now, O bull of the Bharata race! The Pāndavas, with their eyes turned towards righteousness and reflecting on everything, are maintaining a calm attitude, and what they have said is consistent with truth and virtue and justice. O ruler of men, what canst thou say unto them but that thou art willing to give them back their kingdom? Let these rulers of earth that are sitting here say (what the answer should be)! If it appears to thee that what I have said after reflecting well on virtue to be true, save them, O bull of the Bharata race, all these Kshatriyas from the meshes of death! Affect peace, O chief of Bharata's race, and yield not to anger! Giving unto the Pāndavas their just share of the paternal kingdom, enjoy thou then, with thy sons, O chastiser of foes, happiness and luxury, thy wishes being all crowned with success! Know that Yudhishthira always treadeth path that is trod by the righteous. Thou knowest also, O king, what the behaviour of Yudhishthira is towards thee and thy sons! Although thou hadst sought to burn him to death and hadst exiled him from human habitation, yet he came back and once more reposed confidence in thee! Again didst thou, with thy sons, banish him to Indraprashtha! While living there, he brought all the kings of the earth to subjection and yet looked to thy face, O king, without seeking to disregard thee! Although he behaved in this way, yet Suvala's son, desirous of robbing him of his dominions and wealth and possessions, applied the very efficacious means of dice! Reduced to that condition and even beholding Krishnā dragged into the assembly, Yudhishthira of immeasurable soul did not yet swerve from the duties of a Kshatriya! As regards myself, I desire, O Bhārata, thy good as also theirs! For the sake of virtue, of profit, of happiness, make peace, O king, and do not allow the Earth,s population to be slaughtered, regarding evil as good and good as evil! Restrain thy sons, O monarch, who have from covetousness proceeded too far! As regards the sons of Prithā, they are equally ready to wait upon thee in dutiful service as to fight! That which, O chastiser of foes, seems to thee to be for thy good, do thou adopt!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"All the rulers of earth there present highly applauded these words of Keçava within their hearts, but none of them ventured to say anything in the presence of Duryodhana."

SECTION XCV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing these words uttered by the high-souled Keçava, all the persons who sat in that assembly remained silent, their hair standing on end. And all the kings thought within themselves that there was no man who could dare reply to that speech. And seeing that all the kings sat silent, Jamadagni's son (addressing Duryodhana) then said these words in that assembly of the Kurus,—'Listen confidingly to my words illustrated by an example, and seek thy own good if my speech recommends itself to thee! There was a king of yore named Dambhodbhava, who was at the head of the earth. It hath been heard by us that his sovereignty extended over the whole world. And that mighty car-warrior, rising every morning after the night had passed away, called the Brāhmanas and the Kshatriyas unto himself and asked them, saying,—Be he a Cudra, a Vaiçya, a Kshatriya, or a Brāhmana, is there any one who is superior or even equal to me in battle?—And uttering these words that king wandered over the earth, intoxicated with pride and thinking of nothing else. And it so happened that certain Brāhmanas endued with high souls, conversant with the *Vedas*, and fearing nothing on earth, counselled that monarch repeatedly boasting of his prowess to curb his pride. But though forbidden by those Brāhmanas to boast in that way, the king continued to ask the Brāhmanas as before the same question day after day. And some high-souled Brāhmanas then, endued with ascetic merit and acquainted with the proofs furnished by the *Vedas*, were inflamed with anger, and addressing that proud and boastful king intoxicated with prosperity, told him,—'There are two persons who are foremost of all men and who are always victorious in battle. Thou, O king, wilt by no means be equal to them if thou seekest an encounter with

any of them !—And thus addressed by them, the king asked those Brāhmanas, saying,—Where may those two heroes be found ? In what race are they born ? What feats have they achieved ? And who are they ?—And the Brāhmanas answered him, saying,—It hath been heard by us that those two persons are ascetics, called Nara and Nārāyana. They have both taken their birth in the race of man. Go and fight with them, O king ! It is said that that illustrious pair, Nara and Nārāyana, are now practising the severest of penances in some hidden region of the mountains of Gandhamādana !—Hearing these words of the Brāhmanas, that king speedily mustered his large army consisting of six kinds of forces,* and unable to bear their reputation marched to the spot where those unvanquished ascetics were. And arrived at the rugged and frightful mountains of Gandhamādana, he began to search after those *Rishis* and at last came upon them concealed within the woods. And beholding those two best of persons emaciated with hunger and thirst, their veins swollen and visible, and themselves much afflicted with cold winds and the hot rays of the sun, he approached them, and touching their feet, enquired after their welfare. And the two *Rishis* received the king hospitably, with fruits and roots, and a seat, and water. And they then enquired after the king's business, saying,—*Let it be done !*—And thus addressed by them, the king said unto them the same words that he was in the habit of saying unto all. And he said,—The whole earth has been conquered by the might of my arms ! All my foes have been slain ! Desiring a battle with you both, I have come to this mountain. Give me this hospitality. I have been cherishing this wish from a long time !—Thus addressed, Nara and Nārāyana said,—O best of kings, wrath and covetousness have no place in this retreat ! How can a battle, therefore, be possible here ? There are no weapons here, and nothing of unrighteousness and malice ! Seek battle elsewhere. There are many Kshatriyas on earth !—'

* Cars, elephants, horse, infantry, vehicles other than cars, and warriors fighting from the backs of camels.—T.

"Rāma continued,—'Although thus addressed, the king still pressed them for giving him battle. The *Rishis*, however, continually soothed him and overlooked his importunity. King Dambhodbhava, still desirous of battle, repeatedly summoned those *Rishis* to fight. Nara, then, O Bhārata, taking up a handful of grass-blades, said,—Desirous of battle as thou art, come, O Kshatriya, and fight! Take up all thy arms, and array thy troops! I will curb thy eagerness for battle hereafter!—Dambhodbhava then said,—If, O ascetic, thou thinkest this weapon of thine fit to be used against us, I shall fight with thee though tohu mayst us that weapon, for I have come hither desirous of fighting!—Saying this, Dambhodbhava with all his troops, desirous of slaying that ascetic, covered all sides with a shower of arrows. That ascetic, however, by means of those blades of grass, baffled all those terrible shafts of the king that were capable of mangling the bodies of hostile warriors. The invincible *Rishi* then let off towards the king his own terrible weapon made of grass-blades and which was incapable of being counteracted. And highly wonderful was that which happened, for that ascetic, incapable of missing his aim, pierced and cut off, by those grass-blades alone, the eyes and ears and noses of the hostile warriors, aided also by his power of illusion! And beholding the entire welkin whitened by those grass-blades, the king fell at the feet of the *Rishi* and said,—*Let me be blessed*!—Ever inclined to grant protection unto those that sought it, Nara then, O king, said unto that monarch,—Be obedient to the Brāhmanas and be virtuous! Never do so again! O king, O tiger among monarchs, a conqueror of hostile towns, a Kshatriya mindful of the duties of his own order, should never, within even his heart, be as thou art! Filled with pride, never insult anybody on any occasion, be he inferior or superior to thee! Even such conduct would befit thee! Acquiring wisdom, abandoning covetousness and pride, controlling thy soul, restraining thy passions, practising forgiveness and humility, and becoming amiable, go, O king, and cherish thy subjects! Without ascertaining the strength and weakness of men, never insult any one under any circumstances! Blessed be thou, and with our leave, go

hence, and never again behave in this way! At our command, enquire thou always of the Brāhmanas as to what is for thy good!—The king then, worshipping the feet of those two illustrious *Rishis*, returned to his city, and from that time began to practise righteousness. Great, indeed, was that feat achieved of old by Nara! Nārāyana, again, became superior to Nara in consequence of many more qualities. Therefore, O king, before such weapons as *Kākudika*, *Çuka*, *Nāka*, *Akshi-santarjana*, *Santāna*, *Nartana*, *Ghora*, and *Asyamodaka*, are placed on the string of that best of bows called *Gāndiva*, go thou unto Dhananjaya, laying aside thy pride!* Struck with these weapons, men always yield up their lives. Indeed, these weapons have other names corresponding with the eight passions, such as lust, wrath, covetousness, vanity, insolence, pride, malice, and selfishness. Struck with them, men are confounded, and move about frantically, deprived of their senses. Under their influence persons always sleep heavily, cut capers, vomit, pass urine and excreta, weep, and laugh incessantly. Indeed, that Arjuna is irresistible in fight who hath for his friend Nārāyana—the Creator and Lord of all the worlds—fully acquainted with the course of everything!

---

* *Kākudika*—a weapon that makes car-warriors and elephant-warriors fall down senseless on the cars and elephants from which they fight. This weapon is also known by the name of *Praswāpana*. *Cuka* is that weapon which, when shot, makes steeds and elephants unable to walk, all of them being entrapped like birds in a spring. This is also known by the name of *Mohana*. *Nāka* is that weapon by which the person struck is made to behold the heavens, *i. e*, that which maddens a person and deprives him of his senses. *Akshi-santarjana* is scarcely a physical weapon, being only a *Mantra*. When recited, a mere look of the reciter makes all hostile warriors tremble in fright. *Santāna* includes the celestial weapons called *Aindra*, &.c,. It helps to create a ceaseless flow of weapons although only a single weapon is shot. *Nartana* is that weapon by which the person struck is made to dance about in a frantic way. It is also called the *Paiçācha* weapon. *Ghora*, called also the *Rākshasa*, creates a terrible havoc, or a ceaseless slaughter of hostile warriors. *Asyamodaka* is also called *Yāmya*. When shot (with the help of *Mantras*), the person struck, himself seeks death in some frightful form.—T.

Who is there in the three worlds, O Bhārata, who would venture to vanquish that hero—the ape-bannered Jishnu—who hath no equal in battle ?* Countless are the virtues that reside in Pārtha ! Janārddana again is superior to him ! Thou art thyself well acquainted with Dhananjaya the son of Kunti ! They that were Nara and Nārāyana in days of yore are now Arjuna and Keçava ! Know then, O great king, who those brave and foremost of persons are ! If thou believest in this and dost not mistrust me, adopt thou a virtuous resolution and make peace with the sons of Pāndu ! If thou regardest this as thy good, *viz*, that there should be no disunion in thy family, then make peace, O foremost of Bharata's race, and do not set thy heart upon battle ! O thou that art foremost of Kuru's line, the race to which thou belongest is highly regarded on earth ! Let that regard continue to be paid to it ! Blessed be thou, think of what conduces to thy own welfare !' ".

SECTION XCVI

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having listened to the words of Jāmadagna, the illustrious *Rishi* Kanwa also said these words unto Duryodhana in that assembly of the Kurus !

"Kanwa said,—'Brahman, the grandsire of the universe, is indestructible and eternal. Those illustrious *Rishis*, Nara and Nārāyana, are of the same character. Of all the sons of Aditi, Vishnu alone is eternal. He alone is unconquerable

---

* *Kapidhwaja*—having the image of the ape on his banner. It is always difficult to render these words introduced in the midst of a sentence without resorting to a construction that is certainly slovenly ; on the other hand, compounds in English, like *ape-bannered*, are scarcely admissible in any writing that pretends to be classical. English translators, however, from Sanskrit are often obliged to use such compounds, whether they are admissible or not, to avoid slovenliness of construction. Amongst others, I find that Mr. Davies, the learned translator of the *Bhagavadgitā*, uses this word. Professor Wilson is for using words of this kind.—T.

and indestructible, existing for ever, the Lord of all, and the possessor of divine attributes. All others, such as the sun and the moon, earth and water, wind, fire and firmament, planets and stars, are liable to destruction. All these, when the end of the universe cometh, take leave of the three worlds. They are destroyed and created, again and again. Others also, such as men and animals and birds, and creatures belonging to other orders of living existence,—indeed, all that move on this world of men,—are endued with short lives. And as regards kings, all of them, having enjoyed great prosperity, reach at last the hour of destruction and are reborn in order to enjoy the fruits of good and evil deeds. It behoveth thee then to make peace with Yudhishthira! Let the Pāndavas and the Kauravas both rule this earth! O Suyodhana, one should not think in this way, *viz,—I am strong!*—for, O bull among men, it is seen that there are persons stronger than those generally regarded strong! O son of Kuru's race, physical strength is scarcely regarded as strength by those that are really strong. As regards the Pāndavas, endued as they all are with prowess equal to that of the celestials, they also are regarded as strong!* In this connection is cited an old story as an example, the story, *viz*, of Mātali searching for a bridegroom upon whom to bestow his daughter. The king of the three worlds (Indra) hath a charioteer, named Mātali, whom he dearly loves. Unto him was born a daughter celebrated over the world for beauty. Endued with celestial beauty, that daughter of Mātali was known by the name of Gunakeçi. And, indeed, in both loveliness and symmetry of person, she far excelled other members of her sex. Knowing that the time for giving her away had come, Mātali with his wife became very anxious, thinking, O monarch, of what he was to do next. And he thought within himself,—Alas, the birth of a daughter in the families of those that are well-behaved and high-born and endued with fame and humility of character, is always attended with evil results! Daughters, when born in respectable families, always endanger the honor of three families, *viz*,

* And not the Kurus alone.—T.

their maternal and paternal families and the family into which they are adopted by marriage. Glancing with my mind's eye over the worlds of gods and men, I have searched both, but no eligible bridegroom have I found!—'

"Kanwa continued,—'And it so happened that amongst the gods, the *Daityas*, the *Gandharvas*, men, and numerous *Rishis*, none was regarded by Mātali as an eligible husband for his daughter. And having held a consultation then in the night with his wife Sudharmā, Mātali set his heart upon making a journey to the world of the *Nāgas*. And he thought within himself,—Amongst both gods and men I have not found a husband fit, in respect of beauty, for my Gunakeçi! Surely, one may be found amongst the *Nāgas!*—And saying this, he took his wife's leave and smelling the head of his daughter, Mātali entered the nether region.'"

SECTION XCVII.

"Kanwa said,—'When Mātali was wending his way he saw the great *Rishi* Nārada proceeding at his pleasure to pay a visit to Varuna (the god of the waters). And beholding Mātali, Nārada asked him, saying,—Whither dost thou go? Is it, O charioteer, on any mission of thy own, or is it at Catakratu's command, that this journey of thine is undertaken?—Thus addressed on the way by Nārada who was proceeding towards his destination, Mātali duly informed Nārada of his mission. And the *Rishi*, informed of everything, then said unto Mātali,—We will go together! As regards myself, it was to see the Lord of the waters that I was proceeding, having left the heavens. Searching the nether regions, I will tell you everything. After a good search there, we will select a bridegroom, O Mātali!—And penetrating then into the nether regions, that illustrious couple, Mātali and Nārada, beheld that Regent of the world—the Lord of the waters. And there Nārada received worship due to a celestial *Rishi*, and Mātali received that equal to what is offered to the great Indra. And both of them skilled in business, informed Varuna of their purpose, and obtainiu

his leave they began to wander in that region of the *Nāgas.* And Nārada who knew all the residents of the nether regions then began to describe in detail unto his companion all about the dwellers of the *Nāga* world.

"'And Nārada said,—Thou hast, O charioteer, seen Varuna surrounded by his sons and grandsons. Behold the dominions of the Lord of the waters! It is delightful all round and full of riches! Even this is the son, endued with great wisdom, of Varuna the Lord of the Ocean! He is much distinguished for his conduct and disposition and for his holiness. Possessed of eyes like lotus leaves, this Pushkara is, indeed, Varuna's much-loved son. Endued with great beauty and delightful to behold, he has been chosen by Soma's daughter as her husband! That daughter of Soma, equal in beauty unto a second Sree, is known by the name of Jyotsnākāli. Indeed, it is said that she had once before chosen the eldest and foremost of Aditi's sons as her lord! Behold now, O companion of the Lord of the celestials, that abode, made entirely of gold, of the wine called *Vāruni!* Indeed, having obtained that wine, the gods acquired their godheads.* These blazing weapons also of every kind that thou seest, belonged, O Mātali, to the Daityas who have been deprived of their sovereignty. These weapons are incapable of deterioration, and when hurled at the foe always return into the hand that hurleth them. Obtained by the gods as the booty of war, they require considerable mental energy to be used against foes. Here dwelt in days of yore many tribes of Rākshasas and Daityas possessed of many kinds of celestial weapons but who were all vanquished by the gods.† Behold, there in Varuna's lake is that fire of blazing flames, and that discus of Vishnu surrounded by the

---

* It is impossible to render the elegance and chastity of the original when the whole meaning depends, as here, on an etymoligical connection of the words used. The fact is, the wine called *Vàruni* is known by the name of *Surā.* The gods also are called the *Suras.* The true etymology of the word *Sura* is one having or owning *Sura.* Literally rendered, the passage would read,—"The *Suras* have attained to their state of being *Sura* owing to this *Surā.*"—T.

† I read *Nirjitās* for *Nirmitās.*—T.

lustrous splendour of mighty caloric! Behold, there lieth that knotty bow that was created for the destruction of the world! It is always protected with great vigilance by the gods, and it is from this bow that the one wielded by Arjuna hath taken its name! Endued with the strength of a hundred thousand bows, the power it assumes at the hour of battle* is indescribably great. It punishes all unpunishable wicked kings endued with the nature of *Rākshasas*. This fierce weapon was first created by Brāhman the utterer of the *Veda*. The great preceptor Cukra hath said that this weapon is a terrible one in respect of all kings.† Endued with great energy, it is held by the sons of the Lord of waters. Behold, there in the umbrella room is the mighty umbrella of the Lord of the waters! It droppeth refreshing showers like the clouds. The water dropped from this umbrella, though pure as the moon, is yet enveloped by such darkness that it cannot be seen by anybody. There, in these regions, O Mātali, innumerable are the wonders to be seen! Your business, however, will suffer if we spend more time here. We will, therefore, leave this region soon :—' "

SECTION XCVIII.

" 'Nārada continued,—Here in the very centre of the world of the Nāgas is situate the city known by the name of *Pātālam*. Celebrated over all the universe, it is worshipped by the Daityas and the Dānavas. Creatures inhabiting the earth, if brought hither by force of the water's current, shriek loudly, afflicted with fear. Here the fire known by the name of the *Asura-fire*,‡ and which is fed by water, continually blazeth forth. Held fast by the fiat of the celestials, it moveth not, regarding itself as bound and confined! It was here that the gods, having first vanquished and slain their foes, quaffed the *Amrita* and deposited the residue. It is from this place that

---

* Lit. "when the hour of *action* cometh.—T.

† I prefer to read, with the Burdwan Pundits, *Cukrena* for *Chakrena*, after *Mahat*.—T.

‡ Called also the *Vadavà-fire*.—T.

the waning and waxing of the moon are seen. It is here that that son of Aditi, the Horse-headed (Vishnu), on the recurrence of every auspicious occasion, riseth, filling at such times the universe, otherwise called *Suvarna*,* with the sound of *Vedic* hymns and *Mantras*. And because all watery forms such as the Moon and others shower their waters on this region, therefore hath this excellent region been called *Pātāla*.† It is from here that the celestial elephant Airāvata, for the benefit of the universe, taketh up cool water in order to impart it to the clouds, and it is that water which Indra poureth down as rain. Here dwell diverse kinds of aquatic animals, of various shapes such as the *Timi* and others, which subsist on the rays of the moon.‡ O charioteer, here are many kinds of creatures that die during the day, being pierced by the rays of the sun, but all of whom revive in the night, the reason being that the moon, rising here every day, laving those deceased creatures with *amrita* by means of his rays that constitue his arms, resuscitate them by that touch! Deprived of their prosperity by Vāsava, it is here that many sinful *Dānavas* live confined, defeated by him and afflicted by Time.§ It was here that the Lord of all creatures—the great Master of all created things—Mahādeva—had practiced the severest of ascetic austerities for the benefit of all creatures. Here dwell many regenerate and great *Rishis* addicted to vows called *Go* and emaciated with the recitatoin and study of the *Vedas*, and who, having suspended the vital air called *Prāna*, have attained to heaven by force of their austerities. A man is said to adopt the vow

---

* The allusion is to the incarnation of Vishnu as the *Horse-necked*. Nilakantha explains *Suvarnākhyam Jagat* to be *Veda prapancha, i. e.* the whole *Vadas* with all their contents. According to him, the sense of the passage is that Vishnu in that form swells with his own voice the *Vedic* notes chaunted by the Bráhmanas.—T.

† *Patanti Jalam sravantiti pātalam.* Thus Nilakantha.—T.

‡ *I. e.* water, which is supposed to be the rays of the moon, the moon itself, in Hindoo cosmogony, having a watery origin.—T.

§ This expression is frequently used to signify misfortune or ill-luck. One is said to be "afflicted by Time" when he is overwhelmed by misfortune or adversity.—T.

called *Go* when he sleepeth wherever he listeth, and when he subsisteth on anything that others place before him, and is clad with robes that others may supply. Here in the race of the celebrated elephant Supratika were born those best of elephants known by the names of Airāvana, Vāmana, Kumuda, and Anjana, the first being the king of his tribe. Look, O Mātali, if there be any bridegroom here that is distinguished by the possession of superior merits, for then I will go to him for respectfully soliciting him to accept thy daughter! Behold, here lieth an egg in these waters, blazing with beauty! From the comencement of the creation it is here. It moveth not, nor doth it burst. I have never heard anybody speaking of its birth or nature. Nobody knoweth who its father or mother is. It is said, O Mātali, that when the end of the world cometh, a mighty fire bursts forth from within it and spreading consumeth the three worlds with all their mobile and immobile population!—Hearing these words of Nārada, Mātāli answered him, saying,—No one here seems to me to be eligible. Let us go hence, therefore, without delay!—' "

SECTION XCIX.

" 'Nārada said,—Here is that spacious and elebrated city of cities, called Hiranyapura, belonging to the *Daityas* and *Dānavas* possessing a hundred diverse kinds of illusion. Here in these regions called Pātāla, it hath been built with great care by the divine artificer and planned by the *Dānava* Maya. Endued with great energy and heroism, many *Dānavas*, having obtained boons (from Brahman) in days of old, lived here, exhibiting a thousand different kinds of illusion. They were incapable of being vanquished by Cakra or any other celestial, that is, by either Yama, or Varuna, or the Lord of treasures (Kuvera). Here dwell, O Mātali, those *Asuras* called *Kālakhanjas* who sprang from Vishnu, and those *Rākshasas* also called *Yātudhānas* who sprang from the feet of Brahman. All of them are endued with frightful teeth, terrible impetus, the speed and prowess of the wind, and great energy depending on powers of illusion. Besides these, another class of *Dānavas*

called *Nivātakavachas* who are invincible in battle, have their abode here. Thou knowest how Cakra is unable to vanquish them. Many times, O Mātali, thou, with thy son Gomukha, and the chief of the celestials and lord of Cachi along with his son, hadst to retreat before them! Behold their homes, O Mātali, that are all made of silver and gold and well-adorned with decorations applied according to the rules of art. All those mansions are decked with *lapis lazuli* and corals, and made effulgent with the lustre of the *Arka-sphatika** and the radiance of the gem called *Vajrasāra*. And many of those palatial residences seem as if they are made of shining earth, or of those gems called *Padmarāgas*, or of bright marble, or of excellent wood. And they are also possessed of the radiance of the sun or blazing fire. And all the edifices, adorned with gems and jewels, are very high and stand close to one another. Of spacious proportions and great architectural beauty, it is impossible to say of what material these mansions are built or to describe their style of beauty. Indeed, they are exceedingly beautiful in consequence of their decorations. Behold these retreats of the *Daityas* for recreation and sport, these beds of theirs for sleep, these costly utensils of theirs set with precious stones, and these seats also for their use! Behold these hills of theirs looking like clouds, these fountains of water, these trees also that move of their own will and that yield all fruits and flowers that one may ask.† See, O Mātali, if any bridegroom may be had here;

---

* *Arka-sphatika* is sometimes employed to signify the flower called *Akanda* which is very white and which belongs to the natural order *Calotropis Gigantea*. I prefer, however, to read it as a compound, not signifying the sun and the crystal, but a gem called by that name.—T.

† *Kàmcahārinas* and *Kāmapushpaphalān*. The first word, literally rendered, would mean "moving at will." But at whose will? No doubt, Hindoo poets often speak of trees moving of their own will. But I suspect the ancient poets allude, in these instances, to sightly plants on movable tubs. I offer the suggestion for what it is worth. Similarly, *Kāmapushpaphalān*, literally meaning "yielding flowers and fruits at will," refers to those trees that yield fruits and flowers at all seasons of the year.—T.

acceptable to thee! If no one can be found, we will, if thou likest, go hence to some other part of the world!—Thus addressed, Mātali answered Nārada, saying,—O celestial *Rishi*, it behoveth me not to do anything that may be disagreeable to the dwellers of heaven! The gods and the *Dānavas*, though brothers, are ever at hostility with each other. How can I, therefore, make an alliance with those that are our enemies? Let us repair, therefore, to some other place. It behoveth me not to search among the *Dānavas!* As regards thyself, I know that thy heart is ever set on fomentingquarrels!—'"

SECTION C.

"'Nārada said,—This region belongeth to the birds all of whom possess excellent feathers. They all subsist on snakes. They never feel any fatigue in putting forth their prowess, or in making journeys, or in bearing burthens. This race, O charioteer, hath multiplied from the six sons of Gadura. They are Sumukha, Sunāman, Sunetra, Suvarchas, Suruch, and that prince of birds called Suvala. Born of Kaçyapa's line and enhancing the glory of Vinatā's race, many winged creatures, the foremost of their species, have by begetting children founded and increased a thousand dynasties of birds all endued with nobility of blood. All these creatures are endued with great prosperity, have the auspicious whirl called *Sreevatsa*, possess great wealth, and are inspired with great might. By their acts they may be said to belong to the *Kshatriya* order, but they are all without any compassion, subsisting as they do on snakes. They never attain to spiritual enlightenment in consequence of their preying on their kinsmen.* I will now enumerate the chiefs by their names, listen to me, O Mātali! This race is much regarded in consequence of the favor that is shown to it by Vishnu.† They all wor-

---

* For the snakes are the kinsmen of the birds. The former are the sons of *Kaçyapa* by his wife Kadru, while the latter are the children of the same father by his other wife Vinatā.—T.

† Gadura who is the founder of the race, beareth Vishma, and also sitteth on the flagstaff of Vishnu's car.—T.

ship Vishṇu, and Vishṇu is their protector. Vishṇu always dwelleth in their hearts, and Vishṇu is their great refuge. These then are their names:—Suvarnachuda, Nāgāçin, Dāruṇa, Chandatuṇḍaka, Anila, Anala, Viçālāksha, Kuṇḍalin, Pankajit, Vajravishkambha, Vainateya, Vāmana, Vātavega, Diçāchakshu, Nimisha, Animisha, Trirāva, Saptārava, Vālmiki, Dipaka, Daityadwipa, Saridwipa, Sārasa, Padmaketana, Sumuhka, Chitraketu, Chitravara, Anagha, Meshahrit, Kumuda, Daksha, Sarpānta, Somabhojana, Gurubhāra, Kapota, Suryanetra, Chirāntaka, Vishṇudharman, Kumāra, Pārivarha, Hari, Suswara, Madhuparka, Hemavarna, Mālaya, Mātariçwan, Niçākara, and Divākara! These sons of Gadura that I name dwell in only a single province of this region. I have mentioned those only that have won distinction by might, fame, and achievements. If thou likest none here, come, we will go hence, O Mātali! I will take thee to another region where thou mayst find an eligible husband for thy daughter!—'"

SECTION CI.

"'Nārada said,—The region where we now are is called *Rasātala* and is the seventh stratum below the Earth. Here dwelleth *Surabhi* the mother of all kine, she who was born of the *Amrita*. She always yieldeth milk which is the essence of all the best things of the earth, and which, excellent as it is and the *one* taste, springeth from the essence of the six different kinds of tastes (that are talked of). The faultless Suravi herself sprang in days of old from the mouth of the Grandsire gratified with drinking the *Amrita* and vomitting the best of things.* A single jet only of her milk, falling on the earth, created what is known as the sacred and the excellent "Milky ocean." The verge of that ocean all round is always covered with white foam resembling a belt of flowers. Those best of ascetics that are known by the name of the *Foam-drinkers* dwell around this ocean, subsisting on that foam only. They are called Foam-drinkers because they

---

* *I. e*, the cow and the Brāhmana.—T.

live, O Matali, on nothing else save that foam. Engaged in the practice of the severest of austerities, the very gods are known to fear them. From her are born four other kine, O Mātali, supporting the four quarters and, therefore, are they called the supporters of the quarters (Dikpāli). Born of Surabhi herself, she who supporteth the eastern quarter is called Surupā. She who supporteth the southern quarter is called Hansikā. That illustrious cow, O Mātali, of universal form who supporteth the western quarter ruled by Varuna is known by the name of Subhadrā. The northern quarter comprising the region of virtue, and called after Kuvera the Lord of treasures, is supported by the cow named Sarvakāmdughā. The gods, uniting with the *Asuras*, and making the Mandara mountain their pole, churned the waters of the ocean and obtained the wine called *Vāruni*, and (the goddess of Prosperity and Grace called) Laksmi, and *Amrita*, and that prince of steeds called Uchaiçravas, and that best of gems called *Kaustubha*. Those waters, O Mātali, that yielded these precious things had all been mixed with the milk of these four cows !* As regards Surabhi, the milk she yieldeth becometh *Sudhā* unto those that live on *Sudhā*, *Swadhā* unto those that live on *Swadhā*, and *Amrita* unto those that live on *Amrita*.† The couplet that was sung by the dwellers of Rasātala in days of old is still heard to be recited in the world by persons of learning. That couplet is this,—*Neither in the region of the Nāgas, nor in Swarga, nor in Vimāna, nor in Tripishtapa is residence so happy as in Rasātala !*—' "

---

* The construction of the original is so idiomatic that I have been obliged to render these two *Slokas* rather freely. A literal rendering would be so roundabout that the reader would scarcely catch the meaning.—T.

† By *Sudhā* is meant the food of the *Nāgas* ; by *Swadhā*, the food of the *Pitris* ; and by *Amrita*, the food of the gods. What these things were it is scarcely possible to guess.—T.

SECTION. CII.

"'Nārada said,—This foremost of cities that thou beholdest and which resembles the *Amarāvati* of the chief of the celestials himself, is known by the name of *Bhogavati*. It is ruled over by Vāsuki, the king of the Nāgas. That Cesha dwelleth here who in consequence of his ascetic austerities of the foremost order is able to support this earth with all her greatness. His body is like that of the White mountain. He is decked in celestial ornaments. He hath a thousand heads. His tongues are blazing like flames of fire, and he is endued with great strength. There dwell in happiness innumerable Nāgas—sons of Surasā—possessed of diverse forms and decked in ornaments of diverse kinds, bearing the signs of gems, *Swastika*, circles, and drinking vessels. All of them are endued with great strength and are by nature fierce. Some have a thousand heads, some five hundred, some hundred, and some three. And some have two heads, and some five, and some have seven faces! And all of them are possessed of huge bodies that resemble the mountains stretching over the earth. Millions and tens of millions are they, in fact, uncountable, even as regards those of them that belong to a single race! Listen, however, to me as I name a few of the more famous ones amongst them. They are Vāsuki, Takshaka, Karkotaka, Dhananjaya, Kāliya, Nahusha, Kamvala, Açwatara, Vāhyakunda, Mani, Āpurana, Khaga, Vāmana, Elāpatra, Kukura, Kukuna, Āryaka, Nandaka, Kalaça, Potaka, Kailāsaka, Pinjaraka, Airāvata, Sumanmukha, Dadhimukha, Cankha, Nanda, Upanandaka, Āpta, Kotaraka, Cikhi, Nishthuraka, Tittiri, Hastibhadra, Kumuda, Māylapindaka, the two Padmas, Pundarika, Pushpa, Mudgaraparnaka, Karavira, Pitharaka, Samvritta, Vritta, Pindāra, Vilwapatra, Mushikāda, Cirishaka, Dilipa, Cankha-çirsha, Jyotishka, Aparājita, Kauravya, Dhritarāshtra, Kuhara, Kriçaka, Virajas, Dhārana, Suvāhu, Mukhara, Jaya, Vadhira, Andha, Visundi, Virasa, and Surasa. These and many others there are amongst the sons

of Kaçyapa! See, O Mātali, if there is anybody here whom thou canst elect!—'

"Kanwa continued,—'Mātali meanwhile had been looking attentively at a person that stood by. And after Nārada had ceased speaking, the celestial charioteer with a gratified mien asked the *Rishi*, saying,—Of what race is he the delighter—that comely youth of great radiance—who standeth before Āryaka of Kauravya's line? Who is his father, and who his mother? Of what Nāga's race is he? Indeed, of what line doth he stand as a high flagstaff? In consequence of his intelligence, his patience, his beauty, and his youth, my heart, O celestial *Rishi*, hath been attracted towards him! That youth will make the best of husbands for my Gunakeçi!—'

"Kanwa continued,—'Beholding Mātali's gratification at seeing the Nāga called Sumukha, Nārada informed him of the nobility of his parentage and his feats. And he said,—Born in the race of Airāvata, this prince of Nāgas is named Sumukha. He is the favourite grandson of Āryaka and the daughter's-son of Vāmana. The father of this youth was, O Mātali, the Nāga called Chikura! Not long before was he slain by Vinatā's son!—Hearing this, Mātali became highly pleased, and addressing Nārada, the charioteer said,—This best of Nāgas is, O sire, very acceptable to me for a son-in-law! Make an endeavour to secure him, for I am highly pleased at the thought of bestowing on this Nāga, O *Muni*, my dear daughter!—'"

SECTION CIII.

"'Nārada then said,—This one is a charioteer of the name of Mātali. He is, besides, a dear friend of Cakra. Pure in conduct, he hath an excellent disposition and possesses numerous virtues. Endued with strength of mind, he hath great energy and great might. He is the friend, counsellor, and charioteer of Cakra. It has been seen in every battle that small is the difference that exists between him and Vāsava as regards prowess and strength. In all the battles

between the gods and the *Asuras*, it is this Mātali that driveth, by his mind alone, that ever-victorious and best of cars belonging to Indra which is drawn by a thousand steeds! Vanquished by Mātali by his management of the steeds, the enemies of the gods are subjugated by Vāsava by the use of his hands! Defeated beforehand by Mātali, the *Asuras* are subsequently slain by Indra! Mātali hath an excellent daughter who in beauty is unrivalled in the world. Truthful and well-behaved and possessed of every accomplishment, she is known by the name of Gunakeçi. He was carefully searching the three worlds for an eligible bride-groom. O thou that art possessed of the splendour of a celestial, thy grandson Sumukha hath become acceptable to him as a husband for his daughter. If, O best of serpents, this proposal be acceptable to thee, quickly make up thy mind, O Āryaka, to take his daughter in gift for thy grandson! As Lakshmi in Vishnu's house, or Swāhā in that of Agni, so let the slender-waisted Gunakeçi be a wife in thy race! Let Gunakeçi, therefore, be accepted by thee for thy grandson, like Cachi for Vāsava who deserveth her. Although this youth hath lost his father yet we choose him for his virtues, and for the respectability of Airāvata and thy own. Indeed, it is in consequence of Sumukha's merits, his disposition, purity, self-restraint, and other qualifications, that Mātali hath come himself, desirous of giving away his daughter unto him! It behoveth thee, therefore, to honor Mātali!—'

"Kanwa continued,—'Thus addressed by Nārada, Āryaka, beholding his grandson elected as a bridegroom and remembering the death of his son, was filled with delight and sorrow at the same time. And he then addressed Nārada and said,—How, O celestial *Rishi*, can I desire Gunakeçi for a daughter-in-law? It cannot be, O great *Rishi*, that thy words are not highly honored by me, for who is there that would not desire an alliance with the friend of Indra! I hesitate, however, O great *Muni*, in consequence of the instability of the very cause that would make that alliance lasting! O thou of great effulgence, the author of this youth's being, my son, hath been devoured by Gadura! We are afflicted with sorrow on that

account. But worse still, O lord, Vinata's son, at the time of leaving these regions, said,—*After a month I will devour this Sumukha also!*—Surely, it will happen as he hath said, for we know with whom we have to deal. At these words, therefore, of Suparna, we have become cheerless!—'

"Kanwa continued,—'Mātali then said unto Āryaka,—I have formed a plan. This thy grandson is elected by me as my son-in-law! Let this *Nāga* then, proceeding with me and Nārada, come to the Lord of heaven, the chief of the celestials, O best of *Nāgas!* I shall then endeavour to place obstacles in the way of Suparna, and as a last resource we will ascertain the period of life that hath been vouchsafed to Sumukha. Blessed be thou, O *Nāga*, let Sumuka, therefore, come with me to the presence of the Lord of the celestials!—Saying this, they took Sumukha with them, and all the four, endued with great splendour, coming to heaven, beheld Cakra the chief of the gods seated in all his glory! And it so happened that the illustrious Vishnu also, of four arms, was present there. Nārada then represented the whole story about Mātali and his choice!'

"Kanwa continued,—'Hearing all that Nārada said, Vishnu directed Purandara the Lord of the universe, saying,—Let *Amrita* be given to this youth, and let him be made immortal like the gods themselves! Let Mātali, and Nārada, and Sumukha, O Vāsava, all attain their cherished wish through thy grace!—Purandara, however, reflecting on the prowess of Vinatā's son, said unto Vishnu,—Let *Amrita* be given unto him by thee!—Thus addressed, Vishnu said,—Thou art the Lord of all mobile and immobile creatures! Who is there, O lord, that would gainsay a gift that may be made by thee! —At these words, Cakra gave unto that *Nāga* length of days. The slayer of Vala and Vritra did not make him a drinker of *Amrita*. Sumukha, having obtained that boon, became *Sumukha** (in reality) for his face was suffused with marks of joy. And having married Mātali's daughter, he cheerfully returned home. And Nārada and Āryaka also, filled with

* Lit., one that hath a beautiful or excellent face.—T.

delight at the success of their object, went away, after having worshipped the glorious chief of the celestials.' "

SECTION CIV.

"Kanwa said,—'Meanwhile, O Bhārata, the mighty Gadura heard what had happened, *viz*, the bestowal by Cakra of length of days on the *Nāga* Sumukha. And inflamed with great anger, that ranger of the firmament, Suparna, obstructing the three worlds by the hurricane caused by the flapping of his wings, quickly came to Vāsava. And Gadura said,—O illustrious one, disregarding me why hast thou interfered with my sustenance! Having granted me a boon of thy own will, why dost thou now withdraw it? The Supreme Lord of all creatures hath, from the beginning, ordained what my food is to be! Why dost thou then obstruct that ordinance? I had selected this great *Nāga* and had made an appointment in respect of time, for with the meat of his body, O god, I had intended to offer sustenance to my numerous progeny! When he, therefore, hath obtained a boon from thee and hath become unslayable by me, how can I henceforth dare kill another of his species? Dost thou sport thus, O Vāsava, as thou listest? I, however, shall have to die, as also the members of my family, and the servants whom I have engaged in my house! That will, I think, gratify thee, O Vāsava! Indeed, O slayer of Vala and Vritra, I deserve all this, nay more, since being the lord of the three worlds in might I yet consented to become the servant of another! O monarch of the three worlds, Vishnu, however, is not the only cause of my inferiority, for though, O Vāsava, I am quite thy equal yet the sovereignty of the three worlds resteth in thee, O chief of the celestials! Like thee, I also have a daughter of Daksha for my mother and Kaçyapa for my father! Like thee, I also can, without any fatigue, bear the weight of the three worlds! I have strength that is immeasurable and incapable of being resisted by any creature. In the war with the *Daityas* I also achieved grand feats. Crutaçri, and Crutasena, and Vivaswat, and Rochanāmukha, and Prasruta, and Kāla-

kāksha amongst the sons of Diti were slain by me! Perching yet on the flagstaff of thy younger brother's car, I carefully protect it in battle, and sometimes also I bear that brother of thine on my back. It is, perhaps, for this that thou disregardest me! Who else in the universe is there that is capable of bearing such heavy burthens? Who is there that is stronger than myself? Superior though I am, I yet bear on my back this younger brother of thine with all his friends! When, however, disregarding me thou hast interfered with my food, thou hast, O Vāsava, inflicted disgrace on me like this younger brother of thine that had hitherto been disgracing me by making me bear him on my back! As regards thyself, O Vishnu, amongst all those endued with prowess and strength that have been born of Aditi's womb, thou art superior in strength! Yet thee I bear without any fatigue on only one of my feathers! Think coolly then, O brother, who amongst us is stronger!—'

"Kanwa continued,—'Hearing these proud words of that bird foreshadowing danger, the bearer of the discus, provoking Tārkshya still more, said unto him,—Though so very weak, why dost thou, O Gadura, yet regard thyself strong! O oviparous creature, it ill behoveth thee to vaunt thus in our presence! The three worlds united together cannot bear the weight of my body! I myself bear my own weight and thine also! Come now, bear thou the weight of this one right arm of mine! If thou canst bear even this, thy boast would be regarded as reasonable!—Saying this, the holy one placed his arms on Gadura's shoulders. Thereupon the latter fell down, afflicted with its weight, confounded, and deprived of his senses. And Gadura felt that the weight of that one arm of Vishnu was as great as that of the entire Earth with her mountains! Endued with might infinitely greater, Vishnu, however, did not afflict him much. Indeed, Achyuta did not take his life. That ranger of the sky, afflicted then by that immense weight, gasped for breath, and began to cast off his feathers. With every limb weakened, and utterly confounded, Gadura was almost deprived of his senses. The winged off-spring of Vinatā then, thus con-

founded and almost deprived of his senses, and rendered utterly helpless, bowing unto Vishnu with bent head, feebly addressed him, saying,—O illustrious Lord, the essence of that strength which sustains the universe dwelleth in this body of thine! What wonder, therefore, that I should be crushed down to the earth by a single arm of thine stretched out at thy pleasure! It behoveth thee, O divine Lord, to forgive this winged creature that perches on thy flagstaff—this fool intoxicated with pride of strength* but now rendered utterly helpless! Thy great strength, O divine Lord, was never known to me before! It was for this that I regarded my own might to be unequalled!—Thus addressed, the illustrious Vishnu became gratified, and addressing Gadura with affection, said,—Let not thy behaviour be such again!—And saying this, Upendra threw Sumukha with the toe of his foot upon Gadura's breast. And from that time, O king, Gadura hath ever lived in friendship with that snake. It was thus, O king, that the mighty and illustrious Gadura the son of Vinatā, afflicted by the might of Vishnu, was cured of his pride!'

"Kanwa continued,—'In the same way, O son of Gāndhāri, thou livest, O son, as long as thou approachest not the heroic sons of Pāndu in battle! Who is there whom Bhima, that foremost of smiters, that mighty son of Vāyu, and Dhananjaya the son of Indra, cannot slay in battle! Vishnu himself, and Vāyu, and Cakra, and Dharma, and the Açwins,—these gods are thy enemies! Let alone an encounter with them, thou art not competent to even look at them on the field! Therefore, O prince, do not set thy heart upon war; let peace be made through the agency of Vāsudeva! It behoveth thee to save thy race thus! This great ascetic Nārada witnessed with his own eyes the incident (I have related to thee) about the greatness of Vishnu, and know that this Krishna is that bearer of the discus and the mace!'"

---

* *Valadarpavidagdhasya* (omitting the genetive suffix) is lit., "consumed with pride of strength." Some texts read *Valadarpavihinasya* which is incorrect.—T.

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of the *Rishi*, Duryodhana contracted his eyebrows and began to breathe heavily. And casting his eyes then on Rādhā's son, he burst out into a loud laughter. And setting at naught those words of the *Rishi*, that wicked wretch began to slap his thigh that resembled the trunk of an elephant. And addressing the *Rishi*, he said,—'I am, O great *Rishi*, precisely what the Creator hath made me! What is to be, must be! What also hath been ordained in my case must happen! I cannot act otherwise. What can these senseless declamations, therefore, do?*' "

SECTION CV.

Janamejaya said.—"Inseparably wedded to evil, blinded by avarice, addicted to wicked courses, resolved upon bringing destruction on his head, inspring grief in the hearts of kinsmen, enhancing the woes of friends, afflicting all his well-wishers, augmenting the joys of foes, and treading the wrong path, why did not his friends seek to restrain him, and why also did not that great friend (of Kuru's race), the holy one† with tranquil soul, or the grandsire, tell him anything from affection?"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Yes, the holy one did speak. Bhishma also spoke what was beneficial. And Nārada too said much. Listen to all that these said!"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Nārada said,—'Persons that listen to the counsels of friends are rare. Friends again are rare that offer beneficial counsels, for a friend (in need of counsel) is never there where a friend (offering counsel) is.‡

---

* There is a slight difference of reading here. The sense, however, of the passage remains unaffected.—T.

† It is doubtful who is referred to by "the holy one" here. Nilakantha supposes that *Bhagavān Pitāmahas* is Vyasa. I am inclined, with the Burdwan Pundits, to take it as unconnected with *Pitāmahas* and referring to *Krishna*. See Vaicampāyana's answer that follows.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, the listening friend seldom agrees with the counselling friend. Nilakantha, however, suggests a different meaning. It is this:—"The place occupied by a true friend is never occupied by one that professes

O son of Kuru's race, I think the words of friends ought to be listened to! Obstinacy ought to be avoided; for it is fraught with great evil. In this connection is cited an old story regarding Gālava's having met with disgrace through obstinacy. In ancient times, in order to try Viçwāmitra who was then engaged in ascetic austerities, Dharma personally came to him, having assumed the form of the *Rishi* Vaçishtha. Thus assuming, O Bhārata, the form of one of the seven *Rishis* and feigning himself hungry and desirous of eating, he came, O king, to the hermitage of Kauçika. Thereupon Viçwāmitra, struck with awe, began to cook *Charu* (which was a preparation of rice and milk and sugar.) And in consequence of the care he took in preparing that excellent food, he could not properly wait upon his guest. And it was not till after the guest had dined on the food offered by the other hermits that Viçwāmitra succeeded in approaching him with the *Charu* he had cooked and which was still steaming.—I have already dined; wait here!—were the words that the holy one said. And having said them, the holy one went away. And thereupon the illustrious Viçwāmitra, O king, waited there. And bearing that food on his head and holding it with his arms, that ascetic of rigid vows stood in his asylum, still as a post, and subsisting on air. And as he stood there, an ascetic of the name of Gālava, from motives of respect and reverence and from affection and desire of doing what was agreeable, began to wait on him. And after a hundred years had passed away, Dharma, again assuming the form of Vaçishtha, came to Kauçika from desire of eating. And beholding the great *Rishi* Viçwāmitra who was endued with high wisdom, standing there with that food on his head, himself subsisting all the while on air, Dharma accepted that food which was still warm and fresh. And having eaten that food, the god said,—*Gratified am I, O regenerate Rishi!*—And saying this, he went away. And at those words of

---

to be so." He thinks that *Surhit* means a true friend, and *Banāhu* one that does good for the sake of some expected return. My interpretation is entirely supported by the Burdwan Pundits.—T.

Dharma, Viçwāmitra, divested of *Kshatriyahood* became endued with the status of a *Brāhmana* and filled with delight.* And pleased as he was with the services and devotion of his disciple the ascetic Gālava, Viçwāmitra addressed him and said,—With my leave, O Gālava, go whithersoever thou mayst wish !—Thus commanded by his preceptor, Gālava, highly pleased, said in a sweet voice unto Viçwāmitra of great effulgence,—What final gift shall I make thee in consequence of thy services as preceptor! O giver of honors,† it is in consequence of the (final) present that a sacrifice becometh successful. The givers of such gifts obtain emancipation ! Indeed, these gifts constitute the fruit (that one enjoys in heaven). They are regarded as peace and tranquillity personified! What, therefore, shall I procure for my preceptor ? Oh, let that be said !—The illustrious Viçwāmitra knew that

---

* The story of Viçwāmtra's promotion to the status of a *Brāhmana* is highly characteristic. Engaged in a dispute with the Brāhmana *Rishi* Vaçishtha, Viçwāmitra who was a Kshatriya king (the son of Kuçika) found, by bitter experience, that Kshatriya energy and might backed by the whole science of arms, availed nothing against a Brāhmana's might. for Vaçishtha by his ascetic powers created myriads and myriads of fierce troops who inflicted a signal defeat on the great Kshatriya king. Baffled thus, Viçwāmitra retired to the breast of Himavat and paid court to Çiva. The great god appeared and Viçwāmitra begged him for the mastery of the whole science of weapons. The god granted his prayer. Viçwāmitra then came back and sought an encounter with Vaçishtha, but the latter by the aid only of his Brâhmanical (bamboo) stick baffled the fiercest weapons of Viçwàmitra, of even celestial efficacy. Humiliated and disgraced, Viçwāmitra set his heart on becoming a Brāhmana. He gave up his kingdom and retiring into the woods with his queen began to practise the severest austerities. After the expiration of ten thousand years the Creator Brahman appeared before him and addressed him as a *royal Rishi.* Dispirited at this, he devoted himself to still severer austerities. At last at Dharma's command (as here referred to) the great Kshatriya king became a *Brāhmana.* This, in the Hindoo scriptures, is the sole instance of a person belonging to a lower order becoming a Brāhmana by ascetic austerities.—T.

† Instead of *mànada*, some texts read *mànavam.* The meaning then would be—"Sacrifice with gifts maketh a man successful."—T.

he had really been conquered by Gālava by means of the latter's services, and the *Rishi*, therefore, sought to dismiss him by repeatedly saying,—*Go, Go!*—But though repeatedly commanded by Viçwāmitra to go away, Gālava still addressed him in reply, saying,—What shall I give?—And seeing this obstinacy on the part of the ascetic Gālava, Viçwāmitra felt a slight accession of anger and at last said,—Give me eight hundred steeds, every one of which should be as white as the rays of the moon, and every one of which should have one ear black. Go, now, O Gālava, and tarry not!—' "

SECTION CVI.

"Nārada said,—'Thus addressed by Viçwāmitra of great intelligence, Gālava was filled with such anxiety that he could not sit or lie down, or take his food. A prey to anxiety and regret, lamenting bitterly, and burning with remorse, Gālava grew pale, and was reduced to a skeleton. And smitten with sorrow, O Suyodhana, he indulged in these lamentations:—Where shall I find affluent friends? Where shall I find money? Have I any savings? Where shall I find eight hundred steeds of lunar whiteness? What pleasure can I have in eating? What happiness can be mine in objects of enjoyment? The very love of life is extinct in me! What need have I of life? Reparing to the other shore of the great ocean, or to the furthest verge of the earth, I will relinquish my life! Of what use can life be to me? What happiness, without severe exertion, can be his who is poor, unsuccessful, deprived of all the good things of life, and burthened with debt? Death is preferable to life as regards him who having enjoyed the wealth of friends through their friendship for himself, is unable to return their favor! The religious acts* of that man lose their efficacy who having promised to do an act fails to perform it and is thus stained with falsehood. One that is stained by falsehood cannot have

* The word used here is *Ishtāpurta*, meaning sacrifices and sacrificial rites, the dedication of tanks, planting of trees, &c.—T.

beauty, or children, or power, or influence! How, therefore, can such a one attain to a blissful state? What ungrateful man hath ever earned fame? Where, indeed, is his place, and where his happiness? An ungrateful person can never win esteem and affection. Salvation also can never be his. He that is destitute of wealth is a wretch that can scarcely be said to live. Such a wretch cannot support his kinsmen and friends.* Unable to make any return for the benefits he receiveth, he certainly meeteth with destruction. Even I am that wretch, ungrateful, destitute of resources, and stained with falsehood, for, having obtained my objects from my preceptor, I am unable to do his bidding! Having first endeavoured to the utmost, I will lay down my life! Before this, I never craved for any thing from the very gods! The deities regard me for this in sacrificial places. I will go and seek the protection of Vishnu, the divine Lord of the three worlds, of Krishna the great refuge of all who are blessed with protection! Bowing down unto him, I desire to see that highest of all ascetics, the eternal Krishna, from whom flow all those possessions and enjoyments that are owned by both gods and *Asuras!*—And while Gālava was thus lamenting, his friend Gadura the son of Vinatā, appeared in his sight. And Gaḍura, from desire of doing him good, cheerfully addressed him, saying,—Thou art a dear friend of mine. It is the duty of a friend, when himself in prosperity, to look to the accomplishment of the wishes of friends! The prosperity that I have, O Brāhmana, is constituted by Vāsava's younger brother Vishnu! Before this, I spoke to him in thy behalf and he hath been pleased to grant my wishes! Come now, we will go together! I will bear thee comfortably to the other shore of the ocean or to the furthest extremity of the earth! Come, O Gālava! Do not tarry '—' "

---

* *Tantranam* is explained by Nilakantha to mean *Kutumba-dhāranam*. Some texts read *Mantranam* meaning consultations with friends, or friendly conversation.—T.

SECTION CVII.

"Gadura said,—'O Gālava, commanded I have been by the god who is the cause of all knowledge !* I ask thee, towards which quarter shall I first take thee to see what lie there ? The eastern, the southern, the western, or the northern, towards which, O best of regenerate persons, shall I go, O Gālava ! That quarter towards which Surya the illuminator of the universe first riseth ; where, at eve, the *Sādhyas* engage in their ascetic austerities ; where that Intelligence which pervades the whole universe first springeth ;† where the two eyes of Dharma as well as he himself are stationed ;‡ where the clarified butter first poured in sacrifice subsequently flowed all around ; that quarter, O best of all regenerate persons, is the gate of Day and Time ! There the daughters of Daksha, in primeval times, gave birth to their children ! There the sons of Kaçyapa first multiplied ! That quarter is the source of all the prosperity of the gods, for it was there that Cakra was first anointed as the king of the celestials ! It was there, O regenerate *Rishi*, that both Indra and the gods underwent their ascetic penances ! It is for this, O Brāhmana, that this quarter is called *Purva* (the *first)!* And because in the earliest of times this quarter was overspread by the *Suras*, it is for this that it is called *Purva !* The gods, desirous of prosperity, performed all their religious ceremonies here ! It was here that the divine Creator of the universe first sang the *Vedas !* It was here that the *Gāyatri*

---

* For *Jnāna-yoninā* some texts read *Ajnāna-yoninā*. If the latter reading be adopted, the meaning would be—"of birth (or origin) unknown," Vishnu being ancient or eternal.—T.

† The allusion, as explained by Nilakantha, is to the origin of Intelligence in consequence of the recitation of the *Gāyatri* which is an adoration to *Sāvitri* or *Surya* as some explain. The intelligence or *Dhi* which "pervades the universe" is the gift of *Sāvitri* occasioned by the recitation of the sacred hymn every morning.—T.

‡ Nilakantha comments on a different reading. I am not sure that the reading I adopt with the Burdwan Pundits is correct.—T

was first preached by Surya unto the reciters of that sacred hymn! It was there, O best of Brāhmanas, that the *Yajurvedas* were delivered by Surya (unto Yājnavalkya)! It was here that the *Soma* juice, sanctified by boons, was first drunk in sacrifices by the *Suras!* It was here that the *Homa*-fires, gratified (by *mantras*), first drank articles of cognate origin.* It was hence that Varuna first repaired to the nether regions, and attained to all his prosperity! It was here, O bull among the twice-born, that the birth, growth, and death of the ancient Vaçishtha took place! Here first grew the hundred different branches of *Om!*† It was here that the smoke-eating *Munis* ate the smoke of sacrificial fires. It was in that region that myriads of boars and other animals were killed by Cakra and offered as sacrificial portions unto the gods! It is here that the thousand-rayed Sun, arising, consumeth, out of ire, all those that are wicked and ungrateful among men and the *Asuras*. This is the gate of the three worlds! This is the path of heaven and of felicity! This quarter is called *Purva* (East)! We will go hither, if it pleaseth thee! I shall always do what is agreeable to him who is my friend! Tell me, O Gālava, if any other quarter pleaseth thee, for we will then go there. Listen now to what I say of another quarter!' "

SECTION CVIII.

"'Gadura continued,—In days of yore, Vivaswat, having performed a sacrifice, gave this quarter away as a present *(Dakshinā)* unto his preceptor. And it is for this that this region is known by the name of *Dakshina* (south). It is here that the *Pitris* of the three worlds have their habitation

---

* These articles of cognate origin are clarified butter, milk, and other things used as libations in sacrifices.—T.

† *I. e.* the subdivisions of the *Prānava*, the mysterious *Mantra* which is the beginning of everything, were first promulgated here. Nilakantha supposes this to refer to the origin of the *Vedas*, the *Upanishads*, and the various branches of the Crutis and the Smiritis.—T.

And, O Brāhmana, it is said that a class of celestials subsisting upon smoke alone, also live there. Those celestials also that go by the name of *Viçwedevas* always dwell in this region along with the *Pitris*. Worshipped in sacrifices in all the worlds, they are equal sharers with the *Pitris*.* This quarter is called the second door of Dharma.† It is here that the periods allotted to men are calculated in *Trutis* and *Lavas*.‡ In this region always dwell the celestial *Rishis*, the *Pitriloka Rishis*, and the royal *Rishis*, in great happiness.§ Here are Religion and Truth! It is here that the acts (of persons) exhibit their fruits. This region, O best of the twice-born, is the goal of the acts of the dead.$ It is this region, O best of regenerate persons, whither all must repair. And as creatures are all overwhelmed by darkness, they cannot, therefore, come hither in bliss.¶ Here, O bull among

---

* The shares of the *Viçwedevas* are regarded as equal to those of the *Pitris*.—T.

† To this day, even among uneducated Hindus, the southern direction is called the "door of Yama." *Repair to the south*—is still a curse that is always in the lips of quarrelsome women.—T.

‡ Small divisions of time.—T.

§ The celestial *Rishis* are Nārada and others, born of Brahman's will. The *Pitriloka Rishis* are those among the *Pitris* that are devoted to ascetic austerities. The Royal *Rishis* are persons like Viçwāmitra (during the first period of his asceticism,) Dwilipa, Bhagiratha, and a thousand others amongst those Kshatriya kings that devoted themselves to rigid asceticism in their last days, having retired from the world.—T.

$ *Nigadyate* is explained by Nilakantha as *Prakāçyate* (to which he adds—*Chitraguptādibhis*, *Chitragupta* being the great accountant of Yama keeping a ledger of the good and the bad acts of all). *Avasāyinām* is explained as *Mritānām*. The Burdwan Pundits have made a mess of this *Sloka*.—T.

¶ The first compound of the second line is made up of *Vritās-stu-anavavodhena*. *Vritàs* is evidently an adjective of *sarvas* and not of *dik*. *Anavavodhena* is "by darkness or ignorance." The plain meaning is that as all creatures are (more or less) forgetful of virtue, their journey hither does not prove a happy one. The Burdwan Pundits are again in error by supposing that *Vritàs* qualifies *dik*. Nilakantha notices a different reading, which is *Kritwā-twanavavodhena*. This is not happy.—T.

regenerate persons, are* many thousands of malevolent Rākshasas in order to be seen by the sinful. Here, O Brāhmana, in the bowers on the breast of *Mandara*† and in the abodes of regenerate *Rishis*, the *Gandharvas* chaunt psalms stealing away both the heart and the intellect.‡ It was here that *Raivata* (a Daitya), hearing the *Sāma* hymns sung in a sweet voice, retired to the woods, leaving wife and friends and kingdom. In this region, O Brāhmana, Manu and Yavakrita's son together set a limit which *Surya* can never overstep.$ It was here that the illustrious descendant of Pulastya, Rāvana the king of the *Rākshasas*, undergoing ascetic austerities, solicited (the boon of) immortality from the gods. It was here that (the *Asura*) Vritra, in consequence of his wicked conduct, incurred the enmity of Cakra. It is in this region that lives of diverse forms all come and are then dissocitated into their five (constituent) elements. It is in this region, O Gālava, that men of wicked deeds rot (in tortures). It is here that the river *Vaitarani* flows, filled with the bodies of persons condemned to hell.§ Arrived here, persons attain to the extremes of happiness and misery. Reaching this region, the sun droppeth sweet waters,¶ and

---

* Literally, *created*. The sense, however, is that these are placed there for awakening terror in the breasts of the sinful.—T.

† The mountain that served as a churning staff or pole during the churning of the great ocean.—T.

‡ The word is *Gāthà*. This is explained by Nilakantha to mean songs relating to the *mantras* of the *Sāma Veda*.—T.

$ *Sàvarni* is Manu the son of *Sāvarna*. The *Sloka* refers to the southern tropical circle or solstitial line which the sun does not overstep.—T.

§ *Vaitarani* is the river that every dead spirit is to cross. Those condemned to hell find the waters of this river to be briny and putrid, while those that are virtuous find them to be *Amrita*. The condemned dead are called *Vaitaranās*.—T.

¶ When the sun reaches the sign *Karka* (Cancer) the constellation that is generally ascendant is called *Adrà*. This is the beginning of the rainy season, and the showers then dropped on the parched earth are regarded as very fruitful.—T.

thence proceeding again to the direction named after Vaçishtha, once more droppeth dew.* It was here that I once obtained (for food) a prodigious elephant battling with an enormous tortoise. It was here that the great sage *Chakradhanu* took his birth from Surya. That divine sage afterwards came to be known by the name of Kapila, and it was by him that the (sixty thousand) sons of Sagara were afflicted.† It was here that a class of Brāhmanas named *Civās*, fully mastering the *Vedas*, became crowned with (ascetic) success. Having studied all the *Vedas* they at last attained to eternal salvation. In this region is the city called Bhogavati that is ruled by Vāsuki, by the *Nāga* Takashaka and also by Airāvata. They that have to journey hither (after death) encounter here a thick gloom. And so thick is that gloom that it cannot be penetrated by either the Sun himself or by Agni. Worthy of worship as thou art, even thou shalt have to pass this road! Tell me now, if thou wishest to sojourn towards this direction. Else, listen to an account of the western direction !—' "

SECTION CIX.

" 'Gadura said,—This quarter is the favorite one of king Varuna the ruler of the ocean. Indeed, the Lord of the waters had his origin here, and it is hither that his sovereignty lieth. And since it is here that towards the day's end *(Paçchāt)* the sun dismisseth his rays that this quarter, O best of the twice-born ones, is called the west *(Paçchima)*! For ruling over all aquatic creatures and for the protection of the waters themselves the illustrious and divine Kaçyapa installed Varuna here (as the king of this region)! Quaffing all the six juices of Varuna, the moon, the dispeller of darkness, be-

---

* For *Vāçishthim* some texts read *Dhānishthim*. The meaning would remain unaltered, only the latter word would signify "the direction called after Kuvera the lord of treasures." In either case it would be the North that would be indicated.—T.

† A glance of the *Rishi* reduced the multitudinous progeny of Sagara into ashes.—T.

cometh young again in the beginning of the lighted fortnight. It was in this quarter, O Brāhmana, that the *Daityas* were routed and bound fast by the Wind-god. And afflicted by a mighty tempest and breathing hard (as they fled), they at last laid themselves down in this region to sleep (the slumber that knows no waking). Hither is that mountain called *Asta* which is the cause of the evening twilight and which (daily) receiveth the Sun lovingly turning towards it. It is from this quarter that both Night and Sleep, issuing out at the close of day, spread themselves as if for robbing all living creatures of half their allotted periods of life. It was here that Cakra, beholding (his step-mother) the goddess Diti lying asleep in a state of pregnancy, cut off the fœtus (into fortynine parts), whence sprang the (forty nine) *Māruts.* It is towards this direction that the roots of Himavat stretch towards the eternal Mandara (sunk in the ocean). By journeying for even a thousand years one cannot attain to the end of those roots.* It is in this region that Suravi (the mother of cows), repairing to the shores of the extensive lake adorned with golden lotuses, poureth forth her milk. Here in the midst of the ocean is seen the headless trunk of the illustrious Swarbhānu (Rāhu) who is always bent upon devouring both the sun and the moon.† Here is heard the loud chaunting of the *Vedas* by Suvarnaçiras who is invisible and of immeasurable energy and whose hair is eternally green.‡ It is in this region that the daughter of the *Muni* Harimedhas

---

* There is a difficulty in this *Sloka* about the word *Cāçwatam* meaning "eternal." Does it qualify *Mandaram*, or is it an adverb qualifying *Yāti?* The sense, I think, would not vary much if *Cāçwatam* is parsed either way. What the poet means by saying that the end of the roots cannot be attained by going on and on for even a thousand years is that the depth of the ocean is immeasurable. *Vide* the description of the ocean given in the beginning of the *Adi Parva.*—T.

† The head of Ráhu, which in consequence of the *Amrita* it drank is immortal, seeks to devour the sun and the moon. These attempts, in Hindoo fiction, are supposed to produce the eclipses.—T.

‡ *I. e.* who is endued with eternal youth, the marks of old age never being noticeable in him.—T.

remained transfixed in the welkin in consequence of Surya's injunction couched in the words—*Stop, stop!* Here, O Gālava, wind, and fire, and earth, and water, are all free, both day and night, from their painful sensations. It is from this region that the sun's course begins to deviate from the straight path, and it is in this direction that all the luminous bodies (the constellations) enter the solar spere. And having moved for twenty eight nights with the sun, they come out of the sun's course to move in accompaniment with the moon. It is in this region that the rivers which always feed the ocean have their sources. Here, in the abode of Varuna, are the waters of the three worlds. In this region is situate the abode of Ananta the prince of snakes. And here is the unrivalled abode also of Vishnu who is without beginning and without end.* In this region is also situate the abode of Pavana, the friend of Agni. And here too is the abode of the great *Rishi* Kaçyapa† the son of *Marichi*. The western quarter is thus narrated to thee in course of telling thee of the different points. Tell me now, O Gālava, towards which side, O best of regenerate persons, shall we go!—'"

SECTION CX.

"'Gadura said,—O Brāhmana, since this quarter saveth from sin, and since one attaineth to salvation here, it is for this saving *(Uttārana)* power that it is called the North *(Uttara)*. And, O Gālava, because the abode of all the treasures of the north streches in a line towards the east and the west, therefore is the north sometimes called the central

---

* Literally, "of the unborn and undying Vishnu."—T.

† It is popularly supposed that the Caspian lake is none else than the *Kāçyapiya Hrad* of the *Purānas*, on whose shores the great Kaçyapa is said to have lived and won ascetic success. That lake *Baikāl*, towards its east, was called *Indradyumna Sarā* seems to me to be pretty certain. In the description given of Pāndu's progress and of the *Altai* chain, called in the *Mahābhārata*, the *Cataçringa* mountain, we have a true description of the trans-Himalyan tracts.—T.

region *(madhyama)*. And, O bull among the twice-born, in this region that is superior to all, none can live that is unamiable, or of unbridled passions, or unrighteous! Hither in the asylum known by the name of *Vadari* eternally dwell Krishna who is Nārāyana's self, and Jishnu that most exalted of all male beings, and Brāhman (the Creator)! Hither on the breast of Himavat always dwelleth Maheçwara endued with the effulgence of the fire that blazeth up at the end of the *Yuga*. As *Purusha* he sporteth here with *Prakriti* (the universal mother). Except by Nara and Nārāyana, he is incapable of being seen by the diverse classes of *Munis*, the gods with Vāsava at their head, the *Gandharvas*, the *Yakshas*, and the *Siddhas*. Though invested with *Māyā*, him the eternal Vishnu alone of a thousand heads and thousand legs can behold! It was in this region that Chandramas (the moon) was installed in the sovereignty of the entire regenerate order. It was in this region, O thou foremost of all acquainted with *Brahma*, that Mahādeva first receiving her on his head afterwards gave (the sacred stream) Gangā falling from the heavens, to the world of men! It was here that the Goddess (Umā) underwent her ascetic austerities from desire of obtaining Maheçwara (as her lord)! It was in this region that Kāma, the wrath (of Civa), Himavat, and Umā, all together shone brilliantly.* It was here, on the breast of Kailāsa, O Gālava, that Kuvera was installed in the sovereignety of the *Rākshasas*, the *Yakshas*, and the *Gandharvas*. It is in this region that (Kuvera's gardens called) *Chaitraratha* lie, and it it is here that the asylum of (the *Munis* called the) *Vaikhānasas* is situate. It is here, O bull among the twice-born, that (the celestial stream called) *Mandākini*, and (the mountain) *Mandara* are to be seen. It is here that the gardens called *Saugandhi-kānana* are always guarded by the *Rākshasas*. Here are many plains covered with grassy verdure, as also the plantain forest, and those celestial trees (called the) *Santānakas*. It is in this region, O Gālava,

* *Vide* the story as given in the *Kālika Purana*, or by Kālidāsa in his "Birth of the War God."—T.

that the *Siddhas* with souls ever under control and always sporting at will, have their fit abodes abounding with every object of enjoyment. It is here that the seven *Rishis* with Arundhati may be seen. It is here that the constellation *Swāti* is to be seen, and it is here that it first rises to the view. It is in this region that the Grandsire (*Brahman*) dwelleth in the vicinity of *Yagna* (sacrifice embodied). It is in this quarter that the sun, the moon, and the other luminaries are seen to revolve regularly. It is in this region, O foremost of Brāhmanas, that those illustrious and truth-speaking *Munis* called by the name of *Dhāmā*, guard the source of the Ganges.* The origin and physical features and ascetic penances of these *Munis* are not known at all. The thousand dishes they use (for serving the food offered in hospitality) and the edibles also they create at will, are all a mystery. The man, O Gālava, that passeth beyond the point guarded by these *Munis*, is certain, O foremost of Brāhmanas, to meet with destruction. None else, O bull among Brāhmanas, save the divine Nārāyana, and the eternal Nara called also Jishnu, succeeded in passing beyond the point so guarded. It is in this region that the mountains of Kailāsa lie, the abode of *Ailavila* (Kuvera). It was here that the ten *Apsarās* known by the name of *Vidyutprabhā* had their origin. In covering, O Brāhmana, the three worlds with three steps (in the sacrifice of Vali the *Asura* king), Vishnu had covered this whole northern region; and, accordingly, there is a spot here called *Vishnupada*. And it is so called after the footprint of Vishnu caused on that occasion. Here, in this quater, at a place called Uçiravija, by the side of the golden lake, king Marutta performed, O foremost of Brāhmanas, a sacrifice! It is here that the brilliant and shining gold mines of Hima-

* The source of the Ganges is called *Gangádwāra*, and sometimes, *Gāyantikā*, It is inaccessible, and ordinary men are belived to be incapable of enduring the etxreme cold of this region. It seems that this spot was formerly guarded by a class of *Munis* who always warned away pilgrims desirous, from ignorance, of reaching it. These *Munis* were very like the monks of St Bernard.—T.

vat exhibited themselves to the illustrious and regenerate *Rishi* Jimuta. And Jimuta gave away the whole of that wealth to the Brāhmanas. And having given it away, that great *Rishi* solicited them to call it after his own name. And hence that wealth is known by the name of the *Jaimuta* gold. Here, in this region, O bull among Brāhmanas, the Regents of the worlds, O Gālava, every morning and evening, proclaim,—*What business of what person shall we do?* It is for these, O foremost of Brāhmanas, and other incidents, that the Northern is superior to all quarters! And because this region is superior *(Uttara)* to all, therefore is it called the north *(Uttara)*. The four regions have thus, O sire, been, one after another, described to thee in detail! Towards which quarter then dost thou desire to go? I am ready, O foremost of Brāhmanas, to show thee all the quarters of the earth!—' "

SECTION CXI.

" 'Gālava said,—O Garutman, O slayer of foremost snakes, O thou of beautiful feathers, O son of Vinatā, carry me, O Tārkhya, to the East where the two eyes of Dharma are first opened! O take me to that East which thou hast first described, and whither, thou hast said, the gods are always present! Thou hast said that thither both truth and virtue reside. I desire to meet all the gods. Therefore, O younger brother of Aruna, take me thither, so that I may behold the gods!—'

"Nārada continued,—'Thus addressed, the son of Vinatā replied unto that Brāhmana, saying,—Mount thou on my back!—And thereupon the *Muni* Gālava rode on the back of Gadura. And Gālava said,—Thy beauty, O devourer of snakes, as thou proceedest, seemeth to be like that of the Sun himself in the morning, that maker of the day endued with a thousand rays! And, O ranger of the skies, thy speed is so great that the very trees, broken by the storm caused by the flapping of thy wings, seem to pursue thee in thy course! Thou seemest, O tenant of the welkin, to drag by the storm caused by thy wings, the very Earth with all the waters of her oceans, and with all her mountains, woods, and

forests! Indeed, the tempest caused by the motion of thy wings seems to continually raise into mid air the waters of the sea with all their fishes and snakes and crocodiles. I see fishes possessed of similar faces, and *Timis*, and *Timingilas*; and snakes endued with human faces, all crushed (by the tempest raised by thy wings)! My ears are deafened by the roar of the deep! So stunned am I that I can neither hear nor see anything! Indeed, I have forgotten my own purpose! Slacken thy speed, O ranger of the sky, remembering the risk to a Brāhmana's life! O sire, neither the sun, nor the cardinal points, nor the welkin itself, is any longer perceptible to me! I see only a thick gloom around me. Thy body is no longer visible to me! I see only thy two eyes, O oviparous being, resembling two radiant gems! I cannot see either thy body or my own! At every step I behold the sparks of fire emitted from thy frame! Stop without delay these sparks of fire and extinguish the dazzling radiance of thy eyes! O son of Vinatā, slacken this exceeding speed of thy course! O devourer of snakes, I have no business to go with thee! Desist, O blessed one, I am unable to bear this speed of thine! I have promised to give my preceptor eight-hundred white steeds of lunar effulgence, each having one ear black in hue! I see no way, O oviparous being, of fulfilling my pledge! There is but one way that I can see, and that is to lay down my own life! I have no wealth of my own, nor any wealthy friend, nor can wealth, however immense, procure the accomplishment of my object!—'

"Nārada continued,—'Unto Gālava uttering these and many other words of abject entreaty and sorrow, the son of Vinatā, without slackening his speed, laughingly replied, saying,—Thou hast little wisdom, O regenerate *Rishi*, since thou wishest to put an end to thy own life! Death can never be brought about by one's own efforts. Indeed, Death is God himself! Why didst thou not, before this, inform me (of thy purpose)?*

* It seems that the Burdwan Pundits have misunderstood this *Sloka*. They seem to hold that Gadura is referring to Gālava's *not having expressed his fears about the journey* beforehand. There can be little doubt, however, that Gadura alludes to his friend's promise about the steeds.—T.

There are excellent means by which all this may be accomplished! Here is this mountain called Rishabha on the sea side. Resting here for sometime and refreshing ourselves with food, I will, O Gālava, return!—' "

SECTION CXII.

"Nārada said,—'Alighting then on the peak of the Rishabha, the Brāhmana and the bird beheld a Brāhmana lady of the name of Cāndili engaged there in ascetic penances. And Gadura and Gālava both saluted her by bending their heads, and worshipped her.* And thereupon the lady enquired after their welfare and gave them seats. And having taken their seats, both of them took the cooked food the lady offered them, after having first dedicated it to the gods with *Mantras*. And having taken that food, they laid themselves down on the ground and fell into a profound sleep. And Gadura from desire of leaving that place, upon awaking, found that his wings had fallen off. Indeed, he had become like a ball of flesh, with only his head and legs. And beholding him come to that plight, Gālava sorrowfully enquired, saying,—What is this condition that has overtaken thee as the consequence of thy sojourn here? Alas, how long shall we have to reside here? Hadst thou harboured any evil and sinful thought in thy mind! It cannot, I am sure, be any trivial sin of which thou hast been guilty!—Thus addressed, Gadura replied unto the Brāhmana, saying,—Indeed, O regenrate one, I entertained the thought of carrying away this lady crowned with ascetic success from this spot to where the Creator himself, the divine Mahādeva, the eternal Vishnu, and both Virtue and Sacrifice personified, live together, for (as I thought) this lady should live there! I shall now, from desire of doing myself good,

---

* Here also the Bengalee translators have fallen into an error. They seem to imagine that *Abhivādya* refers to *Suparna*, while *Abhipatya* to *Gālava*. The true construction is that both participles refer to Suparna *and* Gālava. There is no reason why Gadura should only *salute* and Gālava, *without* saluting, only worship the lady.—T.

prostrate myself before this holy lady, and pray unto her, saying,—*With a heart full of pity I had, indeed, entertained such a thought! Whether I acted rightly or wrongly, even this was the wish, evidently against thy own, that was cherished by me from my respect for thee! It behoveth thee, therefore, to grant me forgiveness, from the nobility of thy heart!*—That lady thereupon became gratified with that prince of birds and that bull of Brāhmanas. And addressing Gadura, she said,—Fear not, O thou of beautiful feathers! Resume thy wings, and cast off thy fears! I was contemned by thee, but know that I do not pardon contempt! That sinful being who would entertain contempt for me, would speedily fall away from all blissful regions! Without a single inauspicious indication about me, and perfectly blameless as I am, I have, in consequence of the purity of my conduct, attained to high (ascetic) success!*—Purity of conduct beareth virtue as its fruit. Purity of conduct beareth wealth as its fruit. It is purity of conduct that bingeth on prosperity. And it is purity of conduct that driveth away all inauspicious indications! Go thou, O blessed prince of birds, whithersoever thou wishest, from this place! Never entertain contempt for me, and take care that thou dost dot contemn women that may even be truly blameable! Thou shalt again be, as before, invested with both strength and energy!—(At these words of that lady) Gadura had his wings again, and they became even stronger than before. And then with Cāndili's leave, Gadura (with Gālava on his back) took his departure. But they failed to

---

* Some texts, notably the Burdwan one, read *Lakshanais* and *Ninditais* for '*Alakshanais*' and '*Aninditais*'! The unpronounced short *a*, never interfering with the metre, is very often an element of great ambiguity in Sanskrit poetry. The whole discussion between Pundits Içwarashandra Vidyasāgar and Tārānāth Trakavāchaspati, regarding the competence of a Brāhmana to take more than one wife of the same order, turns entirely on the presence or absence of this short *a* in a *Sloka* of Manu. In the present instance, however, it is not difficult to determine that the short *a* does *not* occur, for the meaning the Burdwan Pundits give is very farfetched and is not consistent with the speech of the lady.—T.

find the kind of steeds they were in search of. And it so happened that Viçwāmitra met Gālava on the way. And thereupon that foremost of speakers addressed Gālava in the presence of Vinatā's son and said,—O regenerate one, the time is already come when thou shouldst give me the wealth thou hadst promised me of thy own accord! I do not know what thou mayst think! I have waited so long, I will wait for some time more! Seek thou the way by which thou mayst succeed (in the matter of thy promise)!—Hearing these words, Gadura addressed the cheerless Gālava who was overwhelmed with sorrow, saying,—What Viçwāmitra said unto thee before hath now been repeated in my presence! Come, therefore, O best of Brāhmanas, we will, O Gālava, deliberate on the matter! Without giving thy preceptor the whole of the wealth (promised by thee), thou canst not even sit down!—' "

SECTION CXIII.

"Nārada said,—'Gadura then, that foremost of winged beings, adressed the cheerless Gālava and said,—Because it is created by Agni in the bowels of the earth and augmented by Vāyu, and because also the earth itself is said to be *Hiranmaya*, therefore is wealth called *Hiranya*.* And because wealth supports the world and sustains life, therefore is it called *Dhana*.† It is for serving these ends that *Dhana* (wealth) exists from the beginning in the three worlds. On that Friday when either of the two constellations—the *Purvabhādra* or the *Uttarabhādra*—is ascendant, Agni creating

---

* Agni the fire god, is sometimes called *Hiranyaretas*. Wealth (gold, silver, &c), is popularly supposed to be the creation of Agni or *Hiranyaretas*. It is augmented by Vāyu the Wind god, because he, as the friend of Agni, is regarded to be always present where his friend is. The Earth again is called *Hiranmayam*. It is for these reasons that wealth is called *Hiranya*. It is needless to say that this etymology is very fanciful. The truth is that because wealth is called *Hiranya* therefore the Earth is said to be *Hiranmaya*, and Agni, its creator, is called *Hiranyaretas*.—T.

† This etymology also is of a piece with the above.—T.

wealth by a fiat of his will, bestoweth it on mankind for the increase of Kuvera's stock.* The wealth (that is embowelled in the Earth) is guarded by (the deities called) the *Ajaikapāts* and the *Ahivradnas*,† and also by Kuvera. Exceedingly difficult of attainment, that wealth, therefore, O bull among Brāhmanas, is rarely attained. Without wealth there is no chance of thy acquisition of the (promised) steeds. Beg thou, therefore, of some king born in the race of some royal sage, who may, without oppressing his subjects, crown our suit with success ! There is a king born in the Lunar race, that is my friend. We will go to him, for he, amongst all on Earth, hath great wealth ! That royal sage is known by the name of Yayāti, and he is the son of Nahusha. His prowess is incapable of being baffled. Solicited by thee in person, and urged by me, he will give (what we seek), for he hath immense wealth, equal unto what belongeth to Kuvera the lord of treasures ! Even thus, by accepting a gift, O learned one, pay off thy debt to thy preceptor !—Talking thus and thus thinking upon what was best (to be done), Gadura and Gālava together went to king Yayāti who was then in his capital called Pratisthāna. The king received them hospitably, and gave them excellent *Argha* and water to wash their feet. And the king then asked them the cause of their advent. And thereupon Gadura answered, saying,—O son of Nahusha,

---

* This is a very difficult *Sloka*. I have adopted the explanation that Nilakantha gives. *Proshthapadabhyām* is in an instrumental dual. The first *Cukre* (locative) is "on Friday." *Dhanapatau* is explained as *Kuverasya Vriddhartham*. I have accordingly rendered it "for the increase of Kuvera's stock," although literally it should be "for Kuvera" or "for Kuvera's increase." The second *Cukra* is *Anala* or *Agni* as all lexicons give. *Chittārjitam* is literally "caused by the mind," hence, "created by a fit of the will." The fact seems to be that formerly, persons desirous of obtaining wealth propitiated Agni on such Fridays on which the two constellations of *Bhadrā* were ascendant. It was believed that Agni would then point out the place underneath which wealth lay embowelled.—T.

† These are respectively the presiding deities of the two constellations already mentioned.—T.

this ocean of asceticism, called Gālava, is my friend! He had been, O monarch, a disciple of Viçwāmitra for many thousand years. This holy Brāhmana, when commanded by Viçwāmitra (to go away whithersoever he chose), addressed his preceptor at that time, saying,—*I desire to give something as preceptor's fee!*—Knowing this one's resources to be poor, Viçwāmitra did not ask for anything. But when he was repeatedly addressed by this Brāhmana on the subject of the tutorial fee, the preceptor, under a slight accession of wrath, said,—Give me eight hundred white steeds of good pedigree and lunar radiance, and each having one ear black in hue! If, O Gālava, thou desirest to give anything to thy preceptor, let this then be given!—It was thus that Vaiçwāmitra endued with wealth of asceticism said unto him in anger. And this bull among Brāhmanas is on that account burning with great grief. Unable to fulfil that command (of his preceptor), he hath now come to take thy shelter! O tiger among men, accepting this as alms from thee, and filled once more with cheerfulness, he will, after paying his preceptor's debt, devote himself to severe ascetic penances! A royal *Rishi* as thou art, and, therefore, endued with wealth of asceticism of thy own, this Brāhmana, by giving thee a portion of his wealth of asceticism, will make thee richer in wealth of that kind! As many hairs, O lord of men, as there are on a horse's body, so may regions of bliss, O ruler of Earth, are attained by him that giveth away a horse in gift! This one is as fit to accept a gift as thou art to make a gift. Let, therefore, thy gift (in this instance) be like milk deposited in a conch shell!*—' "

---

* The meaning of this favorite simile of Sanskrit poets for illustrating the fitness of both donor and donee is this: milk is white and pure; if deposited in a conch shell, the vessel being equally white and pure, is worthy of such use.—T.

SECTION CXIV.

"Nārada said,—'Thus addressed by Suparna in excellent words fraught with truth, that performer of a thousand sacrifices, that foremost of givers, that liberal ruler of all the Kācis, the lord Yayāti, revolving those words in his mind and reflecting on them coolly, and seeing before him his dear friend Tārkshya and that bull among Brāhmanas, Gālava; and regarding the alms sought as an indication, highly praiseworthy, of (Gālava's) ascetic merit, and in view particularly of the fact that those two came to him having passed over all the kings of the Solar race, said,—Blessed is my life today, and the race also in which I am born hath, indeed, been blessed today! This very province also of mine hath equally been blessed by thee, O sinless Tārkshya!* There is one thing, however, O friend, that I desire to say unto thee, and that is, I am not so rich now as thou thinkest I was, for my wealth hath suffered a great diminution! I cannot, however, O ranger of the skies, make thy advent here a fruitless one. Nor can I venture to frustrate the hopes entertained by this regenerate *Rishi!* I shall, therefore, give him that which will acomplish his purpose! If one having come for alms, returneth disappointed, he may consume the (host's) race! O son of Vinatā, it is said that there is no act more sinful than that of saying—*I have nothing*—and thus destroying the hope of one that cometh, saying,—*Give!* The disappointed man whose hopes have been killed and object not accomplished, can destroy the sons and grandsons of the person that faileth to do him good. Therefore, O Gālava, take thou this daughter of mine, this perpetuator of four families!† In beauty she resembleth a daughter of the celestials. She is

---

* *Saphalam* is lit., "fruitful," and *tāritam* is "saved." The sense however, is that of "blessed."—T.

† These four families are her father's, her mother's, her husband's and her husband's mother's.—T.

capable of promoting every virtue. Indeed, owing to her beauty, she is always solicited (at my hands) by gods and men and *Asuras !* Let alone twice four hundred steeds each with a black ear, the kings of the earth will give away their whole kingdoms as her dower ! Take thou, therefore, this daughter of mine named Mādhavi ! My sole desire is that I may have a daughter's-son by her !—Accepting that daughter in gift, Gālava then, with Gadura, went away, saying,—*We will again see thee !* And they took that maiden with them. And Gālava's oviparous friend addressed him, saying,—The means have at last been obtained whereby the steeds may be earned !—And saying this, Gadura went away to his own abode, having obtained Gālava's permission. And after the prince of birds had gone, Gālava, with that maiden in his company, began to think of going to some one among the kings who would be able to give a (fit) dower for the maiden. And he first thought of that best of kings, Haryyaçwa of Ikshāku's race, who ruled at Ayodhyā, was endued with great energy, possessed of a large army consisting of four kinds of forces, had a well-filled treasury and abundance of corn, and who was dearly loved by his subjects, and who loved the Brāhmanas well. Desirous of offspring, he was living in quiet and peace, and engaged in excellent austerities. And the Brāhmana Gālava, repairing unto Haryyaçwa, said,—This maiden, O king of kings, will increase the family of her husband by bringing forth offspring ! Accept her from me, O Haryyaçwa, as thy wife, by giving me a dower ! I will tell thee what dower thou shalt have to give. Hearing it, settle what thou shalt do !—' "

SECTION CXV.

"Nārada said,—'That best of monarchs, king Haryyaçwa, after reflecting for a long while and breathing a long and hot sigh about the birth of a son, at last said,—Those six limbs that ought to be high are high in this maiden. Those seven again that ought to be slender are slender in her. Those three again which ought to be deep are deep in her. And,

lastly, those five that ought to be red are red in her.* It seems that she is worth being looked at by even the gods and the *Asuras*, and accomplished in all the arts and sciences.† Possessed of all auspicious indications, she will certainly bring forth many children. She is even capable of bringing forth a son who may become an emperor. Having regard to my wealth, tell me, O foremost of Brāhmanas, what should be her dower !—Gālava said,—Give me eight hundred steeds, born in a good country, of lunar whiteness, and each with one ear black in hue. This auspicious and large-eyed maiden will then become the mother of thy sons like the fire-stick becoming the genetrix of fire !—'

"Nārada continued,—'Hearing these words, that royal sage, king Haryyaçwa, filled with sorrow but blinded by lust, addressed Gālava, that foremost of *Rishis*, saying,—I have only two hundred steeds about me of the kind wanted by thee, although of other kinds, all worthy of sacrifice, I have many thousands moving about (in my dominions !) O Gālava, I desire to beget only one son upon this damsel. Kindly grant this request of mine !—Hearing these words of the king, that damsel said unto Gālava,—A reciter of *Brahma* granted me a boon that I would, after each delivery, be a maiden again. Give me away, therefore, to this king, accepting his excellent steeds.

---

* The limbs that should be "prominent" or "elevated" in order to constitute an indication of beauty or auspiciousness are variously mentioned. The general opinion seems to be that these six only, *viz*, the back of each palm, the two *dorsā*, and the two bosoms should be elevated. Another opinion would seem to indicate that the two bosoms, the two hips, and the two eyes should be so. The seven that should be delicate or slender are unanimously mentioned as the skin, the hair, the teeth, the fingers of the hand, the fingers of the feet, the waist, and the neck. The three that should be deep are the navel, the voice, and the understanding. The five that should be red are the two palms, the two outer corners of the eyes, the tongue, the nether and the upper lips, and the palate. These five also, are variously given.—T.

† *Vahudevāsuralokā*—worthy of being looked at by gods and *Asuras*. *Vahugandharvadarçanā*—accomplished in all the arts and sciences of the *Gandharvas*, such as singing, dancing, &c.—T.

In this way full eight hundred steeds may be obtained by thee from four kings in succession, and I also may have four sons. Collect thou the wealth intended for thy preceptor, in this way! Even this is what I think. It depends, however, on thee, O Brāhmana, as to how thou shouldst act!—Thus addressed by that maiden, the *Muni* Gālava said these words unto king Haryyaçwa,—O Haryyaçwa, O best of men, accept this damsel for a fourth part of the dower that I have settled, and beget only one son upon her!—Taking then that maiden and worshipping Gālava, the king in due time and place had by her a son of the kind wished for. And the son so born came to be called by the name of Vasumanas. Richer than all the wealthy kings of the earth, and resembling one of the Vasus themselves, he became a king and giver of great wealth.

"'After some time, the intelligent Gālava came back and, approaching the delighted Haryyaçwa, said unto him, —Thou hast, O king, obtained a son! Indeed, this child is like the Sun himself in splendour! The time hath come, O foremost of men, for me to go to some other king for alms!—Hearing these words, Haryyaçawa who was ever truthful in speech and steady in acts of manliness, and remembering that the balance of six hundred steeds could not be made up by him, gave Mādhavi back to Gālava. And Mādavi also, abandoning that blazing kingly prosperity, and once more becoming a maiden, followed the footsteps of Gālava. And Gālava too, saying—Let the steeds remain with thee!—then went, accompanied by the maiden, to king Divodāsa.'"

SECTION. CXVI.

"'Nārada said,—'Gālava then, addressing Mādhavi, said,—The ruler of the Kāçis is an illustrious king known by the name of Divodāsa. He is the son of Bhimasena, is endued with great prowess, and is a mighty sovereign. O blessed maiden, we are now going to him! Follow me slowly and grieve not. That ruler of men is virtuous and devoted to truth and hath his passions under control!—'

"Nārada continued,—'When the *Muni* came before that

king, he was received with due hospitality by the latter. Gālava then began to urge the monarch for begetting a child. Thus addressed, Divodāsa said,—I heard of all this before. Thou needst not speak much, O Brāhmana! I may tell thee, O best of Brāhmanas, that as soon as I heard of this matter, my heart was set upon it. This also is a mark of great honor to me that passing over all other kings thou hast come to me! Without doubt, thy object will be gained. In the matter of the steeds, O Gālava, my wealth is like that of king Haryyaçwa. I shall, therefore, beget only one royal son upon this maiden!—Hearing these words, that best of Brāhmanas gave that damsel unto the king, and the king thereupon duly wedded her. And the royal sage then sported with her as Surya with Prabhāvati, Agni with Swāhā, Vāsava with Cachi, Chandra with Rohini, Yama with Urmilā,* Varuna with Gauri, Kuvera with Riddhi, Nārayana with Laksmi, Sāgara with Jāhnavi,† Rudra with Rudrāni, the Grandsire with Saraswati, Vaçishtha's son Caktri with Adriçyanti, Vaçishtha with Arundhati (called also Akshamālā), Chyavana with Sukanya, Pulastya with Sandhyā, Agastya with the princess of Vidarbha (Lopāmudrā), Satyavat with Sāvitri, Bhrigu with Pulomā Kaçyapa with Aditi, Richika's son (Jamadagni) with Renukā, Kuçika's son (Viçwāmitra) with Haimavati, Vrihaspati with Tārā, Cukra with Cataparvā, Bhumipati with Bhumi, Pururavas with Urvaçi, Richika with Satyvati, Manu with Saraswati, Dushmanta with Cakuntalā, the eternal Dharma with Dhriti, Nala with Damayanti, Nārada with Satyavati, Jaratkāru with Jaratkāru, Pulastya with Pratichyā, Urnāyus with Menakā, Tumvuru with Rambhā, Vāsuki with Cataçirshā, Dhananjaya with Kamāri, Rāma with the princess of Videha (Sitā), or Janārddana with Rukmini. And unto king Divodāsa thus sporting with and taking delight in her, Mādhavi bore a son

---

* Some texts read *Dhumornā* for Wunita.—T.

† *Sāgara* is the Ocean personified, and *Jāhnavi* is another name for the river Gangā or Ganges. The sacred river is so called because of the *Rishi* Jahnu having once drunk her up and let her out again through his knee.—T.

named Pratarddana. And after she had borne him a son, the holy Gālava come to Divodāsa at the appointed time, and said unto him,—Let the maiden come with me, and let the steeds also (thou art to give me) remain with thee, for I desire to go elsewhere, O ruler of earth, for dower !—Thus addressed, the virtuous king Divodāsa, who was devoted to truth, thereupon gave back the maiden to Gālava at the appointed time !' "

SECTION CXVII.

"Nārada said,—'The illustrious Mādhavi, faithful to her promise, abandoning that prosperity and once more becoming a maiden, followed the footsteps of the Brāhmana Gālava. And Gālava whose heart was set upon the accomplishment of his own business, reflecting (upon what he should do next) then went to the city of the Bhojas for waiting upon king Uçinara. And arrived before that king of unbaffled prowess, Gālava addressed him, saying,—This maiden will bear thee two royal sons ! And, O king, begetting upon her two sons equal unto the Sun and the Moon, thou mayst attain all thy objects both here and hereafter ! As her dower, however, O thou that art conversant with every duty, thou shalt have to give me four hundred steeds of lunar splendour, each having one ear black of hue ! This effort of mine (for obtaining the steeds) is only on account of my preceptor, otherwise I myself have nothing to do with them ! If thou art able (to accept my terms), do as I bid thee without any hesitation ! O royal sage, thou art now childless ! Beget, O king, a couple of children ! With offspring (so begot) as a raft, save thy *Pitris* and thyself also ! O royal sage, he that hath fruit in the shape of offspring to enjoy, never falleth from heaven ! Nor hath such a person to go to that frightful hell whither the childless are destined to go !—Hearing these and other words of Gālava, king Uçinara replied unto him, saying,—I have heard what thou, O Gālava, hast said ! My heart also is inclined (to do thy bidding) ! The Supreme Ordainer, however, is all-powerful ! I have only two hundred steeds of the kind indicated by thee, O best of Brāhmanas ! Of other kinds, I

have many thousands moving about (in my dominions)! I will, O Gālava, beget only one son upon her, by treading the path that hath been trod by others (such as Haryyaçwa and Divodāsa)! I will act after their manner in the matter of the dower, O best of Brāhmanas! My wealth exists for only my subjects residing in the city and the country, and not for my own comforts and enjoyment! That king, O virtuous one, who giveth away for his own pleasure the wealth that belongeth to others, can never earn virtue or fame! Let this maiden endued with the radiance of a celestial girl be presented to me! I will accept her for begetting only one child!—Hearing these and many other words that Uçinara spoke, that best of Brāhmanas, Gālava, then applauded the monarch and gave him the maiden. And making Uçinara accept that damsel, Gālava went into the woods. And like a righteous man enjoying the prosperity (won by his deeds), Uçinara began to sport with and enjoy that damsel in valleys and dales of mountains, by fountains and falls of rivers, in mansions, delightful chambers, variegated gardens, forests and woods, agreeable places, and terraces of houses. And in due time was born unto him a son of the splendour of the morning sun, who afterwards became an excellent king celebrated by the name Civi. And after the birth of that son, the Brāhmana Gālava came to Uçinara, and taking back from him the maiden, went, O king, to see the son of Vinatā.' "

SECTION CXVIII.

"Nārada said,—'Seeing Gālava, Vinatā's son smilingly addressed him, saying,—By good luck it is, O Brāhmana, that I behold thee successful!—Gālava, however, hearing the words spoken by Gadura informed him that a fourth part of the task was still unfinished. Gadura then, that foremost of all speakers, said unto Gālava,—Do not make any endeavour (to obtain the remaining two hundred), for it will not succeed. In days of yore, Richika sought at Kānyakuvja Gādhi's daughter Satyvati for making her his wife. Thereupon Gādhi, O Gālava, addressing the *Rishi*, said,—O holy one, let

a thousand steeds of lunar brightness, each with one ear black of hue, be presented to me!—Thus requested, Richika said, —So be it!—And then wending his way to the great mart of steeds *(Açwa-tirtha)* in Varuna's abode, the *Rishi* obtained what he sought and gave them unto the king. Performing a sacrifice then of the name of *Pundarika*, that monarch gave away those steeds (as *Dakshinā)* unto the Brāhmanas. The three kings (to whom thou hadst applied) had purchased those horses from the Brāhmanas, each to the number of two hundred. The remaining four hundred, O best of Brāhmanas, while being transported over the river, were taken by the *Vitastā.** Therefore, O Gālava, thou canst never have that which is not to be had! Do thou then, O virtuous one, present unto Viçwāmitra this maiden as an equivalent for two hundred steeds, along with the six hundred (thou hast already obtained)! Thou wilt then, O best of Brāhmanas, be freed from thy grief and crowned with success!—Gālava then, saying —*So be it*,—and taking with him both the maiden and the steeds, went with Gadura in his company unto Viçwāmitra. And arrived in his presence, Gālava said,—Here are six hundred steeds of the kind demanded by thee! And this maiden is offered (as an equivalent) for the remaining two hundred! Let all these be accepted by thee! Upon this maiden have been begotten three virtuous sons by three royal sages! Let a fourth, foremost of all, be begotten upon her by thee! And thus let the number of steeds, eight hundred, be regarded by thee as full, and let me also, freed from thy debt, go and practise ascetic penances as I list!—Viçwāmitra then, beholding Gālava in the company of the bird, and that highly beautiful maiden, said,—Why, O Gālava, didst thou not give me this maiden before? Four sons then, sanctifiers of my race, would all have been mine alone! I accept this maiden of thine for begetting upon her one son! As regards the steeds,

---

* The latter half of this *Sloka* is variously read. The correct reading, I apprehend, is *Niyamānāni Santāre hritānyāsan Vitastāyā i. e*, "while transported across, were taken (down) by the (river) Vitastā"—the latter being one of the five rivers of the Punjab.—T.

let them graze in my asylum!—Saying this, Viçwāmitra of great effulgence began to pass his time happily with her. And Mādhavi bore him a son of the name of Ashtaka. And as soon as that son was born, the great *Muni* Viçwāmitra addressed him to both virtue and profit,* and gave him those (six hundred) steeds. Ashtaka then went to a city bright as the city of Soma. And Kuçika's son (Viçwāmitra) also, having made over the damsel to his disciple, himself went into the woods. And Gālava also, with (his friend) Suparna, having (in this way) succeeded in giving (his preceptor) the fee he had demanded, with a cheerful heart addressed that maiden and said,—Thou hast borne a son who is exceedingly charitable, and another who is exceedingly brave, and a third who is devoted to truth and righteousness, and yet another who is a performer of great sacrifices! O beautiful maiden, thou hast, by these sons, saved not only thy father, but four kings and myself also! Go now, O thou of slender waist!—Saying this, Gālava dismissed Gadura that devourer of snakes, and returning the maiden unto her father, went into the woods.' "

SECTION CXIX.

"Nārada said,—'King Yayāti then, desirous again of disposing of his daughter in *Swayamvara*, went to a hermitage on the confluence of the Gangā and the Yamunā, taking Mādhavi with him on a chariot, her person decked with garlands of flowers. And both Puru and Yadu followed their sister to that sacred asylum. And in that spot was assembled a vast concourse of *Nāgas* and *Yakshas* and human beings, of *Gandharvas* and animals and birds, and of

---

* This is, perhaps, too literal a version to be intelligible to the general reader. The meaning is that as soon as the son was born, the *Rishi* instructed him in the ways of virtue and profit. It mattered little whether the child was very young, for the sages could, when they pleased, at once, by a single effort of the will, communicate the whole cricle of knowledge to their disciples.—T.

dwellers of mountains and trees and forests, and of many inhabitants of that particular province. And the woods all around that asylum were filled with numerous *Rishis* resembling Brāhman himself. And while the selection had commenced of a husband, that maiden of the fairest complexion, passing over all the bridegrooms there assembled, selected the forest as her lord.* Descending from her chariot and saluting all her friends, the daughter of Yayāti went into the forest which is always sacred, and devoted herself to ascetic austerities. Reducing her body by means of fasts of various kinds and religious study and rigid vows,† she adopted the deer's mode of life. And subsisting upon soft and green

---

* *Nirdiçyamāneshu*—Lit. "while the bridegrooms were being pointed out," *i. e.* "while the selection had commenced." What usually takes place in a *Swayamvara* is this :—All the candidates for the maiden's hand sit within a palatial enclosure, apart from one another, on their respective seats. These seats are on elevated platforms called *Manchas*, with steps attached for ascent and descent. The maiden then comes out, accompanied by a bevy of beautiful female attendants, one of whom bears in her hands a plate whereon are a garland of flowers and a few auspicious articles. A male relative, generally a brother, accompanies the girl. His duty is to take the girl from one platform to another and inform her as to who the occupant is of each, till, of course, the girl places the floral wreath on the neck of a particular prince. Sometimes the duty of pointing out the princes one after another is entrusted to a bard or professional eulogist, and laudatory speeches are made by him at the foot of every *Mancha*. The interest the scene excites is exceedingly great and never flags till the selection is actually made. As the maiden turns away from a particular *Mancha*, its occupant becomes cheerless, while the face of him who is sitting next brightens up with hope. The Hindoo poets always describe with genuine feeling and great ardour the whole scene. The *Swayamvara* Canto in *Naishadha* by *Sriharsha*, and in *Raghuvança* by Kālidāsa, as specimens of poetry and descriptive power, would compare with anything in the whole range of European literature.—T.

† *Atmanas laghutām kritwā* is "reducing herself in weight," or making herself light. Nilakantha supposes that this means "making her *soul* light by abandoning the load of passions, &c.." This is certainly farfetched.—T.

grass-blades resembling the sprouts of *lapis lazuli* and which were both bitter and sweet to the taste, and drinking the sweet, pure, cool, crystal, and very superior waters of sacred mountain-streams, and wandering with the deer in forests destitute of lions and tigers, in deserts free from forest conflagrations, and in thick woods, that maiden, leading the life of a wild doe, earned great religious merit by the practice of *Brahmacharya* austerities.

" '[Meanwhile] king Yayāti, following the practice of kings before him, submitted to the influence of Time, after having lived for many thousands of years. The progeny of two of his sons—those foremost of men—Puru and Yadu, multiplied greatly, and in consequence thereof, Nahusha's son won great respect both in this and the other world. O monarch, dwelling in heaven, king Yayāti, resembling a great *Rishi*, became an object of much regard and enjoyed the highest fruits of those regions. And after many thousands of years had passed away in great happiness, on one occasion while seated among the illustrious royal sages and great *Rishis*, king Yayāti, from folly, ignorance, and pride, mentally disregarded all the gods and *Rishis*, and all human beings. Thereat the divine Cakra —the slayer of Vala—at once read his heart. And those royal sages also addressed him, saying,—*Fie, fie !*—And beholding the son of Nahusha, the questions were asked,—*Who is this person ?—What king's son is he ?—Why is he in heaven ?—By what acts hath he won success ?—Where did he earn ascetic merit ?—For what hath he been known here ?—Who knoweth him ?*—The dwellers of heaven, thus speaking of that monarch, asked one another these questions about Yayāti, that ruler of men. And hundreds of heaven's charioteers, and hundreds of those that kept heaven's gates, and of those that were in charge of heaven's seats, thus questioned, all answered, —*We do not know him !* And the minds of all were temporarily clouded, so that none recognised the king, and thereupon the monarch was soon divested of his splendour.' "

SECTION CXX.

"Nārada said,—'Removed from his place and pushed away from his seat, with heart trembling in fear, and consumed by burning remorse, with his garlands dimmed in lustre and his knowledge clouded, shorn of his crown and bracelets, with head swimming and every limb relaxed, divested of ornaments and robes, incapable of being recognised, sometimes seeing and sometimes not seeing (the other residents of heaven), filled with despair, and his understanding a perfect blank, king Yayāti fell headlong towards the earth. And before the king fell down he thought within himself,—What inauspicious and sinful thought was entertained by me in consequence of which I am hurled from my place?—And all the kings there, as also the *Siddhas* and the *Apsaras*, laughed at seeing Yayāti losing his hold and on the point of falling down. And soon, O king, at the command of the king of the gods, there came a person whose business it was to hurl down those whose merits were exhausted. And coming there, he said unto Yayāti,—Extremely intoxicated with pride, there is none whom thou hast not disregarded! In consequence of this thy pride, heaven is no longer for thee! Thou deservest not a residence here, O son of a king! Thou art not recognised here, go, and fall down!—Even thus the celestial messenger spoke unto him. Nahusha's son then said, repeating the words three times,—If fall I must, let me fall amongst the righteous!—And saying this, that foremost of persons that had won high regions by their acts, began to think of the particular region whereon he should fall. Beholding meanwhile four mighty kings, *viz*, Pratārddana, Vasumanas, Civi the son of Uçinara, and Ashtaka, assembled together in the woods of Naimisha, the king fell amonst them. And those monarchs were then engaged in gratifying the lord of the celestials by performance of the sacrifice known by the name of *Vājapeya*. And the smoke arising from their sacrificial altar reached the very gates of heaven. And the smoke that

rose thus, looked like a river connecting both the earth and the heaven. And it resembled the sacred stream Gangā while descending from heaven to earth. And smelling that smoke and guiding his course by it, Yayāti the lord of the universe descended on the earth. And the king thus fell amongst those four lions among rulers, who were all endued with great beauty, who were foremost of all performers of sacrifices, who were, indeed, his own relatives, and who resembled the four Regents of the four quarters, and looked like four mighty sacrificial fires! And thus in consequence of the exhaustion of his merits, the royal sage Yayāti fell amongst them. And beholding him blazing with beauty, those kings asked him, saying,—Who art thou? Of what race, country, or city art thou? Art thou a *Yaksha*, or a god, a *Gandharva*, or a *Rākshasa*? Thou dost not seem to be a human being? What object hast thou in view?—Thus questioned, Yayāti answered,—I am the royal sage Yayāti. Fallen am I from heaven in consequence of the exhaustion of my virtue! Having desired to fall amongst the righteous, I have fallen amongst you!—The kings then said,—O foremost of persons, may that wish of thine be realized! Accept thou our virtues and the fruits of all our sacrifices!—Yayāti replied, saying,—I am not a Brāhmana competent to accept a gift! On the other hand, I am a Kshatriya! Nor is my heart inclined towards lessening the virtues of others!—'

"Nārada continued,—'About this time Mādhavi, in course of her purposeless wanderings, came there. Beholding her, those monarchs saluted her and said,—What object hast thou in coming here! What command of thine shall we obey? Thou deservest to command us, for all of us are thy sons, O thou that art endued with wealth of asceticism!—Hearing these words of theirs, Mādhavi was filled with delight, and approaching then her father, she reverentially saluted Yayāti. And touching the heads of all her sons, that lady engaged in ascetic austerities said to her father,—Being my sons these all are thy daughter's-sons, O king of kings! They are not strangers to thee! These will save thee! The practice is not new, its origin extending to antiquity. I am thy daughter

Mādhavi, O king, living in the woods after the manner of the deer! I also have earned virtue. Take thou a moiety. And because, O king, all men have a right to enjoy a portion of the merits earned by their offspring, it is for this that they desire to have daughter's-sons! Even this was the case with thyself, O king, (when thou madest me over to Gālava)!—At these words of their mother, those monarchs saluted her, and bowing down unto also their maternal grandsire, repeated those very words in a loud, incomparable, and sweet voice, and making, as it were, the whole earth resound therewith, in order to rescue that maternal grandsire of theirs who had fallen down from heaven! And at that time Gālava also came there, and addressing Yayāti, said,—Accepting an eighth part of my ascetic austerities, ascend thou to heaven again!—'"

SECTION CXXI.

"Nārada said,—'As soon as that bull among men, king Yayāti, was recognised by those virtuous persons, he rose again to heaven, without having had to touch the surface of the earth. And he regained his celestial form and had all his anxieties utterly dispelled. And he rose again, decked with celestial garlands and robes, adorned with celestial ornaments, sprinkled with celestial scents, and furnished with heavenly attributes, and without having been compelled to touch the earth with his feet. Meanwhile, Vasumanas who was celebrated in the world for his liberality, first addressing the king, uttered these words in a loud voice,—The merit that I have won on earth by my unblameable conduct towards men of all orders, I give unto thee! Be it all thine, O king! The merit that one winneth by liberality and forgiveness, the merit that is mine in consequence of the sacrifices I have performed, let all that also be thine!—After this, Pratarddana, that bull amongst Kshatriyas, said,—Ever devoted to virtue as also to war, the fame that hath here been mine as a *Kshatriya* in consequence of the appellation *hero* (by which I am known),—be that merit thine!—After this, Civi the intelligent son of Uçinara said these sweet words,—Unto children

and women, in jest, danger, or calamity, in distress, or at dice, I have never spoken a falsehood! By that truth (which I have never sacrificed) ascend thou to heaven! I can, O king, give up all objects of desire and enjoyment, my kingdom, yea, life itself, but truth I cannot give up! By that truth, ascend thou to heaven! That truth for which Dharma, that truth for which Agni, that truth for which he of a hundred sacrifices, have each been gratified with me, by that truth ascend thou to heaven!—And lastly, the royal sage Ashtāka the offspring of Kuçika's son and Mādhavi, addressing Nāhusha's son (Yayāti) who had performed many hundreds of sacrifices, said,—I have, O lord, performed hundreds of *Pundarika*, *Gosava*, and *Vājapeya* sacrifices! Take thou the merit of these! Wealth, gems, robes,—I have spared nothing for the performance of sacrifices! By that truth ascend thou to heaven!—And that king, thereupon leaving the earth, began to ascend towards heaven, higher and higher as those daughter's-sons of his, one after another, said those words unto him. And it was thus that those kings, by their good acts, speedily saved Yayāti who had been hurled from heaven. It was thus that those daughter's sons born in four royal lines, those multipliers of their races, by means of their virtues, sacrifices, and gifts, caused their wise maternal grandfather to ascend again to heaven. And those monarchs jointly said,—Endued with the attributes of royalty, and possessed of every virtue, we are, O king, thy daughter's sons! (By virtue of our good deeds) ascend thou to heaven!—' "

SECTION CXXII.

"Nārada said,—'Sent back to heaven by those righteous kings distinguished by the liberality of their sacrificial presents, Yayāti possessed of daughter's-sons dismissed them and reached the celestial regions.* Attaining to the eternal re-

* The literal meaning of *āropita* is "caused to be ascended," or "caused to be placed;" *āsthita*, literally rendered, would be "began to reside," or "resided."—T.

gion obtained through the merit of his daughter's-sons, and adorned by his own deeds, Yayāti, bathed in a shower of various fragrant flowers and hugged by well-perfumed and delicious breezes, blazed forth with great beauty. And cheerfully received back into heaven with sounds of cymabls, he was entertained with songs and dances by various tribes of *Gandharvas* and *Asuras*. And diverse celestial and royal *Rishis* and *Chāranas* began to pay their adorations to him. And the deities worshipped him with an excellent *Argha* and delighted him with other honors. And after he had thus regained heaven and tranquillity of heart, and had once more become freed from anxiety, the Grandsire, gratifying him by his words, said,—Thou hadst earned the full measure of virtue by thy earthly deeds, and this region (that thou hadst won) was eternal, as thy deeds are in heaven !* Thou hadst, however, O royal sage, destroyed thy acquisitions by thy vanity alone,† and thereby covered the hearts of all the denizens of heaven with darkness in consequence of which none of them could recognise thee ! And since thou couldst not be recognised thou wert hurled hence ! Saved once more by the love and affection of thy daughter's-sons, thou hast once more arrived here, and regained this unchangeable, eternal, sacred, excellent, stable, and indestructible region won before by thy own deeds !—Thus addressed, Yayāti said, —O holy one, I have a doubt which, it behoveth thee, to dispel ! O Grandsire of all the worlds, it behoveth me not to ask any one else ! Great was my merit, augmented by a (virtuous) rule over my subects for many thousands of years

---

* *Chatushpādas dharmas*—Virtue with its four feet, *i. e.*, virtue in full measure, or the full measure of virtue. *Laukyena karmanā*—by earthly deeds, *i. e.*, work performed on earth or in life. The Burdwan Pundits render it as "work benefiting the world" which is certainly not the meaning here.—T.

† *Sukritena* is explained by Nilakantha to mean—"belief or sentiment that there is none equal to me in acts well-performed." This, no doubt, is the sense, but the word *Sukrita* alone does not signify so much. I think the passage is incorrect, and the right reading has yet to be determined.—T.

and won by innumerable sacrifices and gifts! How could merit (so great) be exhausted so soon in consequece of which I was hurled hence? Thou knowest, O holy one, that the regions created for me were all eternal! Why were all those regions of mine destroyed, O thou of great effulgence? —The Grandsire answered, saying,—Thy merit, augmented by a (virtuous) rule over thy subjects for many thousands of years and won by innumerable sacrifices and gifts, was exhausted by one only fault, in consequence of which thou wert hurled (from this region)! That fault, O king of kings, was thy vanity, for which thou hadst become an object of contempt with all the residents of heaven! O royal sage, this region can never be made eternal by vanity, or pride of strength, or malice, or deceitfulness, or deception! Never disregard those that are inferior, or superior, or in the middle station! There is not a greater sinner than he who is consumed by the fire of vanity! Those men that will converse upon this fall and re-ascension of thine, will, without doubt, be saved even if overtaken by calamity!—'

"Nārada continued,—'O monarch, even such was the distress into which Yayāti fell in consequence of vanity, and such the distress into which Gālava fell owing to his obstinacy! They that desire their own good should listen to friends that wish them well. Obstinacy should never be entertained, for obstinacy is always the root of ruin. For this reason, O son of Gāndhāri, forsake vanity and wrath! O hero, make peace with the sons of Pāndu! Avoid anger!* O king, that which is given away, that which is done, the austerities that are practised, the libations that are poured on fire, not one of these is ever destroyed or suffereth any diminution! None else, again, enjoyeth the fruits of these save he that is their agent.†

---

* *Samrambha* is rendered by the Burdwan Pundits as "preparation for war," which is incorrect. It means, anger or wrath, or fury, or rage, &c.,—T.

† The meaning is, "thou Duryodhana art the only person who shalt have to suffer for thy misdeeds; for the fruits of bad, as of all good acts, touch the doer only."

He that succeedeth in understanding this truly superior and excellent history that is approved by persons of great learning as well as by those that are freed from anger and lust, and that is enforced by various references to scriptures and reason, obtaineth a knowledge of virtue and profit and desire, and enjoyeth the sovereignty of the whole world !' "*

SECTION CXXIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O holy one, it is even so as thou, O Nārada, sayest! My wishes also are precisely such, but, O holy one, I have no power (to carry them out) !' "†

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"The Kuru king, having said these words unto Nārada, then addressed Krishna and said,—Thou hast, O Keçava, told me that which leadeth to heaven, is beneficial to the world, consistent with virtue, and fraught with reason ! I am not, however, O sire, independent! Duryodhana never doth what is agreeable to me ! Do thou, therefore, O mighty-armed Krishna, O best of persons, strive to persuade that foolish and wicked son of mine who disobeyeth my commands ! O mighty-armed one, he never listeneth to the beneficial words, O Hrishikeça, of Gāndhāri, or of the wise Vidura, or of other friends headed by Bhishma, all of whom seek his good ! Do thou, therefore, thyself counsel that crooked, senseless, and wicked-souled prince, of evil disposition and sinful heart ! By doing this, O Janārddana, thou shalt have done that noble act which a friend should ever do !—Thus addressed, he of Vrishni's race, conversant with all the truths of virtue and profit, approached nearer to the ever wrathful Duryodhana and said unto him these sweet words :—'O Duryodhana, O best of the Kurus, listen to these words of mine, uttered especially for thy good as also, O Bhārata, for that of thy followers ! Thou art born in a race that is distinguished

---

* *Hitam* is *Abhimatam*. *Vahudhā pradhāritam* is explained by Nilakantha to mean *Cāstrayuktyādibhis niçchitam*. *Trivargadrishtis* is one who hath obtained a sight of the *three*, *viz*, virtue, profit, and desire.—T.

† Or, rather, 'I am not the master,' so that I am powerless to do what I wish, my son being ungovernable !—T.

for its great wisdom! It behoveth thee to act righteously as I indicate! Possessed of learning and endued with excellent behaviour, thou art adorned with every excellent quality! They that are born in ignoble families, or are wicked-souled, cruel, and shameless,—they only, O sire, act in the way that seemeth acceptable to thee! In this world the inclinations of those only that are righteous seem to be consistent with the dictates of virtue and profit. The inclinations, however, of those that are unrighteous seem to be perverse, O bull of Bharata's race! The disposition that thou art repeatedly manifesting is of that preverse kind! Persistence in such behaviour is sinful, frightful, highly wicked, and capable of leading to death itself! It is, besides, causeless,* while again thou canst not, O Bhārata, adhere to it long! If, avoiding this which is productive only of woe, thou wilt achieve thy own good, if, O chastiser of foes, thou wilt escape from the sinful and disreputable deeds of thy brothers, followers, and counsellors, then, O tiger among men, make peace, O bull among the Bharatas, with the sons of Pāndu who are all endued with great wisdom and great bravery, with great exertion and great learning, and all of whom have their souls under complete control! Such conduct will be agreeable to and conduce to the happiness of Dhritarāshtra who is endued with great wisdom, the grandsire (Bhishma), Drona, the high-souled Kripa, Somadatta, the wise Vālhika, Açwatthāman, Vikarna, Sanjaya, Vivingçati, and many of thy kinsmen, O chastiser of foes, and many of thy friends also! The whole world, O sire, will derive benefit from that peace! Thou art endued with modesty, born in a noble race, hast learning and kindness of heart! Be obedient, O sire, to the commands of thy father, and also of thy mother, O bull of Bharata's race! They that are good sons always regard that to be beneficial which their father commands. Indeed, when overtaken by calamity, every one recollects the injunctions of his father! Peace with the Pāndavas, O sire, recommends itself to thy father! Let it, therefore, O chief of the Kurus, recommend

* The Pāndavas never having offended thee!—T.

itself to thee also with thy counsellors! That mortal who having listened to the counsels of friends doth not act according to them, is consumed at the end by the consequences of his disregard, like him who swalloweth the fruit called *Kimpāka!* He that from folly doth not accept beneficial counsels, unnerved by procrastination and unable to attain his object, is obliged to repent at last! He, on the other hand, who having listened to beneficial counsels accepteth them at once, abandoning his own opinion, always winneth happiness in the world! He that rejects the words of well-meaning friends regarding those words as opposed to his interest but accepts words that are really so opposed, is soon subjugated by his foes! Disregarding the opinions of the righteous, he that abideth by the opinions of the wicked, soon maketh his friends weep for him in consequence of his being plunged into distress. Forsaking superior counsellors he that seeketh the advice of inferior ones, soon falleth into great distress and succeedeth not in saving himself. That companion of the sinful who behaveth falsely and never listeneth to good friends, who honoreth strangers but hateth those that are his own, is soon, O Bhāratā, cast off by the Earth! O bull of Bharata's race, having quarrled with those heroes (the sons of Pāndu), thou seekest protection from others, *viz*, those that are sinful, incapable, and foolish! What other man is there on earth besides thee, who, disregarding kinsmen that are all mighty charioteers and each of whom resembleth Cakra himself, would seek protection and aid from strangers? Thou hast persecuted the sons of Kunti from their very birth. They have not been angry with thee, for the sons of Pāndu are certainly virtuous! Although thou hast behaved deceitfully towards the Pāndavas from their very birth, yet, O mighty-armed one, those distinguished persons have acted generously towards thee! It behoveth thee, therefore, O bull of Bharata's race, to act towards those principal kinsmen of thine with equal generosity! Do not yield thyself to the influence of wrath! O bull of Bharata's race, the exertions of the wise are always associated with virtue, profit, and desire. If, indeed, all these three cannot be attained, men follow at least virtue and profit! If again

these three are pursued separately, it is seen that they that have their hearts under control choose virtue; they that are neither good nor bad but occupy a middle station, choose profit which is always the subject of dispute; while they that are fools choose the gratification of desire! The fool that from temptation giveth up virtue and pursueth profit and desire by unrighteous means, is soon destroyed by his senses. He that seeketh profit and desire should yet practise virtue at the outset, for neither profit nor desire is (really) dissociated from virtue. O king, it hath been said that virtue alone is the cause of the three, for he that seeketh the three, may, by the aid of virtue alone, grow like fire when brought into contact with a heap of dry grass! O bull of Bharata's race, thou seeketh, O sire, by unrighteous means this extensive empire blazing with prosperity and well-known to all the monarchs of the earth! O king, he that behaveth falsely towards those that live and conduct themselves righteously, certainly cutteth down his own self like a forest with an axe! One must not seek to confound his understanding whose overthrow one doth not like, for if one's understanding is confounded one can never turn his attention to what is beneficial. One that hath his soul under control never, O Bhārata, disregardeth anybody in the three worlds,—no, not even the commonest creature, far less those bulls among men, the sons of Pāndu! He that surrendereth himself to the influence of anger loseth his sense of right and wrong. Rank growth must always be cut off. Behold, O Bhārata, this is the proof! At present, O sire, union with the sons of Pāndu is better for thee than thy union with the wicked! If thou makest peace with them, thou mayst obtain the fruition of all thy wishes! O best of kings, while enjoying the kingdom that was founded by the Pāndavas, thou seekest protection from others, disregarding the Pāndavas themselves! Reposing the cares of thy state on Dusçāsana, Durvisaha, Karna, and Suvala's son, thou desirest the continuance of thy prosperity, O Bharata! These, however, are far inferior to the Pāndavas in knowledge, in virtue, in capacity for acquiring wealth, and in prowess! Indeed, O Bhāratā, (let alone the four I have mentioned), all

these kings together, with thee at their head, are incapable of even looking at the face of Bhima when angry on the field of battle! O sire, this force consisting of all the kings of the earth is, indeed, at thy elbow! There is also Bhishma, and Drona, and this Karna, and Kripa, and Bhuriçravas, and Somadatta, and Açwatthāman, and Jayadratha! All these together are incapable of battling against Dhananjaya! Indeed, Arjuna is incapable of being vanquished in battle by even all the gods, *Asuras*, men, and *Gandharvas!* Do not set thy heart on battle! Seest thou the man in any of the royal races of the earth who having encountered Arjuna in battle can return home safe and sound? O bull of Bharata's race, what advantage is there in a universal slaughter? Show me a single man who will defeat that Arjuna by defeating whom alone victory may be thine! Who will encounter that son of Pāndu in battle who vanquished all the celestials with the *Gan-dharvas*, *Yakshas*, *Asuras*, and *Pannagas* at Khāndava-prastha? Then also the marvellous account that is heard of what happened at Virāta's city touching that encounter between one and many, is sufficient proof of this! Hopest thou to vanquish in battle the invincible, irresistible, ever-victorious, and undeteriorating Arjuna when excited with rage, that hero who gratified the God of gods, Civa himself, in fight? With myself again as his second, when that son of Prithā will rush on the field of battle against an enemy, who is there that is competent to challenge him then? Can Purandara himself do so? He that would vanquish Arjuna in battle would support the Earth on his arms, consume in rage the whole population of the Earth, and hurl the very gods from heaven! Look at thy sons, thy brothers, kinsmen, and other relatives. Let not these chiefs of Bharata's race all perish on thy account! Let not the race of Kauravas be exterminated or reduced! O king, let not people say that thou art the exterminater of thy race and the destroyer of its achievements! Those mighty car-warriors, the Pāndavas, (if peace be made) will instal thee as the *Yuvarāja*, and thy father Dhritarāshtra, that lord of men, as the sovereign of this extensive empire! Do not, O sire, disregard the prosperity

that is awaiting thee and is sure to come! Giving to the sons of Prithā half the kingdom, win thou great prosperity! Making peace with the Pāndavas and acting according to the counsels of thy friends, and rejoicing with them, thou art sure to obtain what is for thy good for ever and ever!' "

SECTION CXXIV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing, O bull of Bharata's race, these words of Keçava, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu then said unto the vindictive Duryodhana,—'Krishna hath spoken to thee, desirous of bringing about peace between kinsmen! O sire, follow those counsels, and do not yield to the influence of wrath! If thou dost not act, O sire, according to the words of the high-souled Keçava, neither prosperity, nor happiness, nor what is for thy good, wilt thou ever have! The mighty-armed Keçava, O sire, hath said unto thee what is consistent with virtue and profit. Accept thou that object, and do not, O king, exterminate the population of the earth! This blazing prosperity of the Bharatas amongst all the kings of the earth, thou wilt, during the very life of Dhritarāshtra, destroy through thy wickedness, and thou wilt also, through this arrogant disposition of thine, deprive thyself with all thy counsellors, sons, brothers, and kinsmen, of life, if, O thou foremost of Bharata's race, thou transgressest the words of Keçava, thy father, and the wise Vidura,—words that are consistent with truth and fraught with benefit to thyself! Be not the exterminator of thy race, be not a wicked man, let not thy heart be sinful; do not tread the path of unrighteousness! Do not sink thy father and mother in an ocean of grief!—After Bhishma had concluded, Drona also said these words unto Duryodhana who, filled with wrath, was then breathing heavily.—O sire, the words that Keçava hath spoken unto thee are fraught with virtue and profit! Cāntanu's son Bhishma also hath said the same. Accept those words, O monarch! Both of them are wise, endued with great intelligence, with souls under control, desirous of doing what is for thy good, and possessed of great learning. They have said

what is beneficial. Accept their words, O king! O thou that art possessed of great wisdom, act according to what both Krishna and Bhishma have said! O chastiser of foes, do not, from delusion of understanding, disregard Mādhava! They that are always encouraging thee, are unable to give thee victory! During the time of battle they will throw the burthen of hostility on others' necks! Do not slaughter the Earth's population; do not slay thy sons and brothers! Know that that host is invincible in the midst of which are Vāsudeva and Arjuna! If, O Bhārata, thou dost not accept the truthful words of thy friends Krishna and Bhishma, then, O sire, thou wilt surely have to repent! Arjuna is even greater than what Jamadagni's son hath described him to be! As regards Krishna the son of Devaki, he is incapable of being resisted by even the gods! O bull of Bharata's race, what use is there in telling thee what is really conducive to thy happiness and good? Everything hath now been said unto thee! Do what thou wishest! I do not wish to say anything more unto thee, O foremost of Bharata's race!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"After Drona had ceased, Vidura also, otherwise called Kshattri, casting his eyes on Duryodhana, said unto that vindictive son of Dhritarāshtra, —'O Duryodhana, O bull of Bharata's race, I do not grieve for thee! I grieve, however, for this old couple, *viz*, Gāndhāri and thy father! Having thee of wicked soul for their protector (of whom they will shortly be deprived), they will have to wander without anybody to look after them and deprived also of friends and counsellors, and like a pair of birds shorn of their wings! Having begotten such a wicked son who is the exterminator of his race, alas, these two will have to wander over the earth in sorrow and subsisting on alms!—After this, king Dhritarāshtra, addressing Duryodhana seated in the midst of his brothers and surrounded by all the kings, said,—'Listen, O Duryodhana, to what the high-souled Cauri hath said! Accept those words which are eternal, highly beneficial, and conducive to what is for thy highest good! With the aid of this Krishna of faultless deeds, we, amongst all the kings, are sure to have all our cherished

objects! Firmly united by Keçava, be reconciled, O sire, with Yudhishthira! Seek thou this great good of the Bharatas like unto an august ceremony of propitiation! Through Vāsudeva's agency, bind thyself closely with the Pāndavas! I think the time for that is come! Do not let the opportunity pass away! If, however, thou disregardest Keçava who from desire of achieving what is for thy good is soliciting thee to make peace, then victory will never be thine!'"

SECTION CXXV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing these words of Dhritarāshtra, both Bhishma and Drona who sympathised with the old king, again addressed the disobedient Duryodhana and said,—'As long as the two Krishnas are not accoutred in mail, as long as *Gāndiva* resteth inactive, as long as Dhaumya doth not consume the enemy's strength by pouring libations on the war-fire,* as long as that mighty bowman Yudhishthira having modesty for his ornament doth not cast angry glances on thy troops, let hostility cease! As long as that mighty bowman, Bhimasena the son Prithā, is not seen stationed in the midst of his division, let hostility cease! As long as Bhimasena, doth not, mace in hand, stalk on the field of battle, grinding (hostile) divisions, let peace be made with the Pāndavas! As long as Bhima doth not, with his hero-slaying mace, make the heads of warriors fighting from the backs of elephants roll on the field of battle like the fruits of the palmyra in the season of their ripening, let hostility cease! As long as Nakula, and Sahadeva, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race, and Virāta, and Cikhandi, and Ciçupāla's son, accoutred in mail and all well-versed in arms, do not penetrate thy ranks like huge crocodiles penetrating the waters of the deep, and pour their arrowy showers, let hostility cease! As long as fierce winged shafts do not fall upon the delicate bodies of the

---

* Dhaumya is the family priest of the Pāndavas. As such, it was his duty to perform an Atharvan rite for weakning the foes of the Pāndavas. War-fire is fire kindled for such a purpose.—T.

assembled kings, let hostility cease! As long as fierce weapons made of iron and steel, shot unerringly by mighty bowmen well-skilled in arms, endued with lightness of hand, and capable of hitting how long soever the distance, do not penetrate the breasts of warriors smeared with sandal and other fragrant unguents and adorned with golden garlands and gems, let hostility cease! Let that elephant among kings, Yudhishthira the just, receive thee with an embrace while thou salutest him bending thy head! O bull of Bharata's race, let that king distinguished for the liberality of his sacrificial presents place on thy shoulder that right arm of his the palm of which beareth the marks of the banner and the hook! Let him, with hands decked with begemmed and red fingers, pat thy back while thou art seated! Let the mighty-armed Vrikodara, with shoulders broad as those of the *Çāla* tree, embrace thee, O bull of Bharata's race, and gently converse with thee for peace! And, O king, saluted with reverence by those three, *viz*, Arjuna and the twins, smell thou their heads and converse with them affectionately! And beholding thee united with thy heroic brothers—the sons of Pāndu—let all these monarchs shed tears of joy! Let the tidings of this cordial union be proclaimed in the cities of all the kings! Let the Earth be ruled by thee with feelings of brotherly affection (in thy bosom), and let thy heart be freed from the fever (of jealousy and wrath)!'"

SECTION CXXVI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing in that assembly of the Kurus these words that were disagreeable to him, Duryodhana replied unto the mighty-armed Keçava of great fame, saying,—'It behoveth thee, O Keçava, to speak after reflecting on all circumstances! Indeed, uttering such harsh words,* thou, without any reason, findest fault with me alone, addressed regardfully, as thou always art, by the sons of Prithā, O

---

* *Vibhāshya* is explained by Nilakantha as *Parushanyuktwā*.—T.

slayer of Madhu !* But dost thou always censure me, having surveyed the strength and weakness (of both sides) ? Indeed, thyself and Kshattri, the king, the preceptor, and the grandsire, all reproach me alone and not any other monarch ! I, however, do not find the least fault in myself ! Yet all of you, including the (old) king himself, hate me ! O represser of foes, I do not, even after reflection, behold any grave fault in me, or even, O Keçava, any fault however minute ! In the match at dice, O slayer of Madhu, that was joyfully accepted† by them, the Pāndavas were vanquished and their kingdom was won by Cakuni ! What blame can be mine as regards that ? On the other hand, O slayer of Madhu, the wealth that was won from the Pāndavas then, was ordered by me to be returned unto them ! It cannot, again, O foremost of victors, be any fault of ours that the invincible Pāndavas, were defeated once again at dice and had to go to the woods ! Imputing what fault to us, do they regard us as their enemies ? And, O Krishna, though (really) weak why do the Pāndavas yet so joyfully seek a quarrel with us as if they were strong ? What have we done to them ? For what injury (done to them) do the sons of Pāndu along with the Srinjayas seek to slaughter the sons of Dhritarāshtra ? We shall not, in consequence of any fierce deed, or (alarming) word (of theirs), bow down to them in fear, deprived of our senses ! We cannot bow down to Indra himself, let alone the sons of Pāndu ! I do not, O Krishna, see the man observant of Kshatriya virtues, who can, O slayer of foes, venture to conquer us in battle ! Let alone the Pāndavas, O slayer of Madhu, the very gods are not competent to vanquish Bhishma and Kripa and Drona with Karna, in battle ! If, O Mādhava, we are, in the observance of the practices of our order, cut off in battle when our end comes, with weapons, even that will lead us to heaven !

---

* *Bhakti-vādena*, lit, "by means of regardful speeches." The sense is that "won over by the Pāndavas in consequence of the regard with which they always address thee, &c., &c.,."—T.

† *Priyābhyupagate* is explained by Nilakantha to mean *Prityā swikrite*.—T.

Even this, O Janārddana, is our highest duty as Kshatriyas, *viz*, that we should lay ourselves down on the field of battle on a bed of arrows! If, without bowing to our enemies, ours be the bed of heroes in battle, that, O Mādhava, will never grieve us! Who is there, born in a noble race and conforming to Kshatriya practices, that would from fear bow to an enemy, desirous only of saving his life ?* Those Kshatriyas that desire their own good accept regardfully this saying of Mātanga, *viz*, that (as regards a Kshatriya), *one should always keep himself erect, and never bow down, for exertion alone is manliness; one should rather break at the knots than bend.*† A person like me should only bow down to the Brāhmanas for the sake of piety, without regarding anybody else. (As regards persons other than Brāhmanas), one should, as long as one lives, act according to Mātanga's saying. Even this is the duty of Kshatriyas; even this is ever my opinion! That share in the kingdom which was formerly given them by my father shall never again, O Keçava, be obtainable by them as long as *I* live! As long, O Janārddana, as king Dhritarāshtra liveth, both ourselves and they, sheathing our weapons, O Mādhava, should live in dependence on him! Given away formerly from ignorance or fear and when I was a child and dependant on others, the kingdom, incapable, O Janārddana, of being given away again, shall not, O delighter of Vrishni's race, be obtainable by the Pāndavas! At present, O Keçava of mighty arms, as long as I live, even that much of our land which may be covered by the point of a sharp needle shall not, O Mādhava, be given by us unto the Pāndavas!"

---

* *Vrittim samikshya*—"thinking only of life" or "the means of life."—

† This saying is ascribed in the text to a *Muni* of the name of Mātanga. The institutes of Mātanga, however, have never come down to us. "At the knots,"—the figure is taken from the bamboo, which consists of knots. The space between two knots is called a *Parva*. *Aparva* means any knot which connects two *Parvas*.—T.

SECTION CXXVII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Reflecting (for a moment),* with eyes red in anger he of Daçārha's race, addressing Duryodhana in that assembly of the Kurus, then said these words:—'Wishest thou for a bed of heroes? Verily, thou shalt have it, with thy counsellors! Wait (for a short while), a great slaughter will ensue! Thou thinkest, O thou of little understanding, that thou hast committed no offence against the Pāndavas? Let the (assembled) monarchs judge! Grieved at the prosperity of the high-souled Pāndavas, thou conspiredst, O Bhārata, with Suvala's son about the gambling match! O sire, how could those virtuous, honest, and superior kinsmen of thine (otherwise) engage in such a wicked act with the deceitful Cakuni? O thou that art endued with great wisdom, gambling robbest even the good of their understanding, and as regards the wicked, disunion and dire consequences spring from it.† It was thou who hadst devised, with thy wicked counsellors, that terrible source of calamity in the form of the gambling match, without consulting with persons of righteous behaviour! Who else is there capable of insulting a brother's wife in the way thou didst, or of dragging her into the assembly and addressing her in language thou hadst used towards Draupadi? Of noble parentage and endued with excellent behaviour, and dearer to them than their very lives, the queen-consort of Pāndu's sons was treated even thus by thee! All the Kauravas know what words were addressed in their assembly by Dusçāsana unto those chastisers of foes,—the sons of Kunti,—when they were about to set out for the woods! Who is there capable of behaving so wretchedly towards his own honest kinsmen that are ever engaged in the practice

---

* For *Praçāmya* some texts (notably the Burdwan one) read *Prahāsya* meaning "laughing." *Praçāmya* is explained by Nilakantha as *Vichāryya*.—T.

† *Vyasanam*, lit, "calamities." As the causes of calamity, certain practies, such as gambling, hunting, &c, are espically called *Vyasana*. The sense here is as I have put it.—T.

of virtue, that are untainted by avarice,* and that are always correct in their behavour? Language such as becomes only those that are heartless and despicable, was frequently repeated by Karna and Duçāsana as also by thee! Thou hadst taken great pains to burn to death, at Vāranāvata, the sons of Pāndu with their mother while they were children, although that effort of thine was not crowned with success! After this the Pāndavās with their mother were obliged to live for a long while concealed in the town of Ekachakrā in the abode of a Brāhmana! With poison, with snakes and cords, thou hadst, by every means, sought for the destruction of the Pāndavas, although none of thy designs was successful. With such feelings when thou hadst always acted towards them so deceitfully, how canst thou say that thou hast not offended against the high-souled Pāndavas? Thou art not, O sinful wight, willing to give them their paternal share in the kingdom although they are begging it of thee! Thou shalt have to give it to them when divested of prosperity thou shalt be laid low! Having like a heartless wight done innumerable wrongs to the Pāndavas and behaved so deceitfully towards them, thou seekest now to appear in a different garb! Though repeatedly solicited by thy parents, by Bhishma, by Drona, and by Vidura, to make peace, thou dost not yet, O king, make peace! Great is the advantage in peace, O king, both to thyself and Yudhishthira! Peace, however, does not recommend itself to thee! To what else can it be due but thy loss of understanding? Transgressing the words of thy friends, thou canst never attain to what is for thy benefit! Sinful and desreputable is that act which thou, O king, art about to do!'"

Vaicampāyana continued.—"While he of Daçārha's race was saying this, Dusçāsana addressed the vindictive Duryodhana and said unto him these words in the midst of the Kurus:—'If, O king, thou dost not willingly make peace with the Pāndavas, verily, the Kauravas will bind thee (hand and foot) and make thee over to the son of Kunti! Bhishma, and Drona, and thy (own) father, O bull amongst men, will make

* Lit. "not avaricious."—T.

us three, *viz*, Vikartana's son, thyself, and myself, over to the Pāndavas!"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of his brother, Dhritarāshtra's son, the wicked, shameless, disobedient, disrespectful, and vain Suyodhana, breathing heavily like a great snake, rose up from his seat in anger, and disregarding Vidura, and Dhritarāshtra, and the great king Vālhika, and Kripa, and Somadatta, and Bhishma, and Drona, and Janārddana, in fact, all of them, went out of the court. And beholding that bull among men leave the court, his brothers and all his counsellors, and all the kings, followed him. And seeing Duryodhana rise and leave the court in anger with his brothers, Cāntanu's son Bhishma said,—'The enemies of that person who, abandoning both virtue and profit, followeth the impulses of wrath, rejoice on beholding him plunged into distress at no distant date! This wicked son of Dhritarāshtra, this one unacquainted with the true means (of accomplishing his objects), this fool that is falsely vain of his sovereignty, obeyeth only the dictates of wrath and avarice! I see also, O Janārddana, that the hour of all those Kshatriyas is arrived; for all those kings, from delusion, have with their counsellors followed Duryodhana!—Hearing these words of Bhishma, the lotus-eyed hero of Daçārha's race, possessed of great prowess, addressing all those (that were still there) headed by Bhishma and Drona, said,—'Even this is a great transgression of which all the elders of the Kuru race are becoming guilty, *viz*, that they do not forcibly seize and bind this wicked king in the enjoyment of sovereignty! Ye chastisers of foes, I think the time hath come for doing this! If this is done, it may still be productive of good. Listen to me, ye sinless ones! The words I will speak will soon lead to beneficial results, if, indeed, ye Bhāratas, ye accept what I say in consequence of its recommending itself to you! The wicked son, of ill-regulated soul, of the old Bhoja king, having usurped his father's sovereignty during the latter's life-time, subjected himself to death. Indeed, Kansa the son of Ugrasena, abandoned by his relatives, was slain by me in a great encounter, from desire of benefiting my kinsmen! Ourselves with our kinsmen then,

having paid due honors to Ugrasena the son of Āhuka, installed that extender of Bhoja's kingdom on the throne. And all the Yādavas and Andhakas and the Vrishnis, abandoning a single person in Kansá for the sake of their whole race, have prospered and obtained happiness! O king, when the gods and *Asuras* were arrayed for battle and weapons were upraised for striking, the Lord of all creatures, Parameshthin, said (something which applies to the case at hand). Indeed, O Bhārata, when the population of the worlds was divided into two parties* and was about to be slaughtered, the divine and holy Cause of the universe, *viz*, the Creator, said,—The *Asuras* and the *Daiteyas* with the *Dānavas* will be vanquished, and the *Adityas*, the *Vasus*, the *Rudras* and other dwellers, of heaven will be victorious. Indeed, the gods, and *Asuras*, and human beings, and *Gandharvas*, and Snakes, and *Rākshasas*, will in rage slaughter one another in this battle!—Thinking so, the Lord of all creatures, Parameshthin, commanded Dharma, saying,—Binding fast the *Daiteyas* and the *Dānavas*, make them over to Varuna!—Thus addressed, Dharma at the command of Parmeshthin, binding the *Daiteyas* and the *Dānavas*, made all of them over to Varuna. And Varuna the Lord of the waters, having bound those *Dānavas* with Dharma's noose as also with his own, keepeth them within the depths of the ocean, always guarding them carefully. Binding in the same way Duryodhana, and Karna, and Cakuni the son of Suvala, and Dusçāsana, make them over to the Pāndavas! For the sake of a family, an individual may be sacrificed. For the sake of a village, a family may be sacrificed. For the sake of a province, a village may be sacrificed. And lastly, for the sake of one's self, the whole earth may be sacrificed. O monarch, binding Duryodhana fast, make peace with the Pāndavas! O bull among Kshatriyas, let not the whole Kshatriya race be slaughtered on thy account!"

---

* *Dvidhibhuteshu* some texts have *Dighdhibhuteshu* meaning "consumed" or "burnt."—T.

SECTION CXXVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing these words of Krishna, king Dhritarāshtra lost no time in addressing Vidura who was conversant with all the dictates of virtue. And the king said,—'Go, O child, unto Gāndhāri possessed of great wisdom and foresight and bring her hither! With her I will solicit this wicked-hearted (son of mine)! If she can pacify this wicked wretch of evil heart, we may yet be able to act acording to the words of our friend Krishna! It may be that speaking words in recommendation of peace, she may yet succeed in pointing out the right path to this fool afflicted by avarice and having wicked allies. If she can dispel this great and dreadful calamity (about to be) occasioned by Duryodhana, it will then conduce to the attainment and preservation of happiness and peace for ever and ever!*—Hearing these words of the king, Vidura, at Dhritarāshtra's command, brought (thither) Gāndhāri possessed of great foresight. And Dhritarāshtra then addressed Gāndhāri and said, —'Behold, O Gāndhāri, this thy son of wicked soul, transgressing all my commands, is about to sacrifice both sovereignty and life in consequence of his lust of sovereignty! Of wicked soul and little understanding, he hath, like one of uncultivated mind, left the court, with his sinful counsellors, disregarding his superiors and setting at naught the words of his well-wishers!'"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing these words of her husband, that princess of great fame, Gāndhāri, desirous of what was highly beneficial, said these words,—'Bring hither, without loss of time, that kingdom-coveting and sick son of mine. He that is of uncultivated heart and sacrificeth both virtue and profit, doth not deserve to govern a kingdom. For all that, however, Duryodhana who is destitute of humility, hath, by

---

* *Yoga-kshema* means acquisition and preservation; hence, the attainment of happiness hitherto unattained and the preservation of what is thus attained. *Chira-ratrāya* is for ever and ever.—T.

every means, obtained a kingdom.* Indeed, O Dhritarāshtra, thou, so fond of thy son, art very much to be blamed for this, for knowing well his sinfulness thou followest yet his wisdom! That son of thine, completely possessed by lust and wrath, is now the slave of delusion,† and is, therefore, incapable, O king, of being now forcibly turned back by thee! Thou art now reaping the fruit, O Dhritarāshtra, of having made over the kingdom to an ignorant fool of wicked soul, possessed by avarice and having wicked counsellors! Why is the king indifferent (today) to that disunion which is about to take place between persons related so nearly! Indeed, beholding thee disunited with those that are thy own, thy enemies will laugh at thee! Who is there that would use violence for crossing that calamity, O king, which can be crossed over by conciliation and gift?' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Kshattri then, at Dhritarāshtra's command, and his mother's also, once more caused the vindictive Duryodhana to enter the court. Expectant of his mother's words, the prince re-entered the court, with eyes red as copper from wrath, and sighing heavily as a snake. And beholding her son who was treading in a wrong path enter the court, Gāndhāri rebuked him severely and said these words for bringing about peace.

"Gāndhāri said,—'O Duryodhana, attend, O dear son, to these words of mine that are beneficial to thee as also to all thy followers,—words that thou art competent to obey and that will conduce to thy happiness! O Duryodhana, obey thou the words of thy well-wishers, those words, *viz*, which that best of the Bharatas—thy father—and Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and Kshattri, have spoken! If thou makest peace, thou wouldst by that render homage to Bhishma, to thy father, to me, and to all thy well-wishers with Drona at their head! O thou of great wisdom, nobody, O best of the Bhara-

* *Aptam* in this *Sloka* in grammatically connected with the preceding line.—T.

† For *Mohamasthitas* some texts have *Lobhamasthitas* which would be slightly tautological.—T.

tas, succeedeth by his own desire alone in acquiring and keeping or enjoying a kingdom! One that hath not his senses under control cannot enjoy sovereignty for any length of time! He that hath his soul under control and is endued with great intelligence, can rule a kingdom! Lust and wrath wean away a man from his possessions and enjoyments. Conquering these foes first, a king bringeth the earth under his subjection! Sovereignty over men is a great thing; Those that are of wicked souls may easily desire to win a kingdom, but they are not competent to retain a kingdom (when won). He that desireth to obtain extensive empire* must bind his senses to both profit and virtue, for if the senses are restrained, the intelligence increaseth, like fire that increaseth when fed with fuel. If not controlled, these can even slay their possessor like unbroken and furious horses capable of killing an unskilful driver. One that seeketh to conquer his counsellors without conquering his own self, and conquer foes without conquering his counsellors, is soon vanquished himself and is ruined. He who conquereth his own self first, taking it for a foe, will not seek in vain to conquer his counsellors and enemies afterwards. Prosperity worshippeth greatly that person who hath conquered his senses and his counsellors, who inflicteth punishments on transgressors, who acteth after deliberation, and who is possessed of wisdom. Lust and wrath that dwell in the body are deprived of their strength by wisdom like a couple of fishes ensnared in a net with close holes. Those two in consequence of which the gods shut the gates of heaven against one who freed from worldly propensities is desirous of going thither, are excited lust and wrath. That king who knoweth well how to conquer lust and wrath and avarice and boastfulness and pride, can own the sovereignty of the whole earth. That king who is desirous of gaining wealth and virtue and vanquishing his enemies, should always be engaged in controlling his passions. Influenced by lust, or from wrath, he that behaveth deceitfully

---

* *Mahat* is lit. any great thing. Nilakantha quotes *Viqwa* to show that it is also used for empire or extensive sway.—T.

towards his own kinsmen or others, can never win many allies. Uniting thyself with those chastisers of foes—the heroic sons of Pāndu—who are all endued with geat wisdom, thou canst, O son, enjoy the earth in happiness! What Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, and that mighty car-warrior Drona, have told thee is, O son, quite true! Krishna and Dhananjaya *are* invincible! Seek thou, therefore, the protection of this mighty-armed one, this one that is not wearied by exertion, for if Keçava becometh gracious both sides will be happy! That man who is not obedient to the wishes of wise and learned friends always seeking his prosperity, only gladdeneth his enemies. O son, there is no good in battle, no virtue, no profit! How can it bring happiness then? Even victory is not always certain. Do not set thy heart, therefore, on battle! O thou of great wisdom, Bhishma and thy father, and Vālhika (formerly) gave unto the Pāndavas their share (of the kingdom) from fear, O chastiser of foes, of a disunion with them! Thou beholdest today the fruit of that (peaceful) cession in the fact of thy sovereignty of the whole earth with all its thorns removed by those heroes?* Give, O chastiser of foes, unto the son of Pāndu what is their due! If thou wishest to enjoy, with thy counsellors, even half (the empire), let their share then be given unto them! Half the earth is sufficient to yield the means of support unto thee and thy counsellors! By acting according to the words of thy well-wishers, thou wilt, O Bhārata, win great fame! A quarrel with the sons of Pāndu who are all endued with prosperity, who have their souls under complete control, who are possessed of great intelligence and have conquered their passions, will only divest thee of thy great prosperity! Dispelling the wrath of all thy well-wishers, rule thou thy kidgdom as becometh thee, giving, O bull of Bharata's race, unto the sons of Pāndu the share that belongeth to them! O son,†

---

* That thou governest today the whole earth without a rival is the direct censequence of that peaceful cession. The empire that is now ruled by thee had been won by the Pāndavas. It is they who had vanquished all rivals.—T.

† *Anga* is a vocative particle expressive of affection.—T.

persecution of the sons of Pāndu for full thirteen years hath been enough. Augmented by lust and wrath, quench (that fire) now, O thou of great wisdom! Thou that covetest the wealth of the Pāndavas art not a match* for them, nor this *Suta's* son who is exceedingly wrathful, nor this thy brother Dusçāsana! Indeed, when Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and Karna and Bhishmsena and Dhananjaya and Dhrishtadyumna will be enraged, the population of the earth will be exterminated! Under the influence of wrath, do not, O son, exterminate the Kurus! Let not the wide earth be destroyed for thy sake! Of little understanding as thou art, thou thinkest that Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and others will fight (for thee) with all their might. That will never happen, for as regards these that are endued with self-knowledge, their affection towards the Pāndavas and yourselves is equal! If for the sake of the sustenance they have obtained from the king (Dhritarāshtra)† they consent to yield up their very lives, they will not yet be able to cast angry glances upon king Yudhishthira. It is never seen in this world that men acquire wealth by avarice. Give up thy avarice then, O son, and desist, O bull of Bharata's race!"

SECTION CXXIX.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Disregarding these words of grave import spoken by his mother, Duryodhana again went away, in anger, from that place to the presence of wicked persons. And wending away from the court, the Kuru prince began to consult with Suvala's royal son Cakuni conversant with dice. And this was the resolution at which Duryodhana and Karna and Suvala's son Cakuni with Dusçāsana as their fourth

---

* *Caktas.* It may also mean "competent." The meaning then would be—"Although thou covetest &c., thou wilt yet not be competent to achieve thy desire.'"—T.

† *Rājapinda*—lit. "the king's cake or food," meaning, of course, the food or sustenance or support they have obtained from the king Dhritarāshtra.—T.

arrived :—'This Janārddana, quick in action, seeketh, with king Dhritarāshtra and Cāntanu's son, to seize us first. We, however, shall forcibly seize this tiger among men, Hrishikeça, first, like Indra forcibly seizing Virochana's son (Vali)! Hearing that this one of Vrishni's race hath been seized, the Pāndavas will lose heart and become incapable of exertion like snakes whose teeth have been broken. This mighty-armed one is, indeed, the refuge and protection* of them all. If this grantor of wishes, this bull of all the Sāttwatas, be seized, the Pāndavas with the Somakas will become depressed and incapable of exertion. Therefore, disregarding Dhritarāshtra's cries, we will seize even here this Keçava who is quick in action, and then fight the foe!'—After those sinful men of wicked souls had come to this sinful resolution, the highly intelligent Sātyaki, capable of reading the heart by signs, soon came to know of it. And because of that knowledge, he soon issued out of the court, accompanied by Hridikā's son (Kritavarman). And Sātyaki addressed Kritavarman, saying,—'Array the troops soon! And accoutred in mail and with thy troops arrayed for battle, wait thou at the entrance of the court, till I represent this matter unto Krishna unwearied by exertion!'—Saying this, that hero re-entered the court like a lion entering a mountain cave. And he (first) informed the high-souled Keçava, and then Dhritarāshtra, and then Vidura, of that resolution. And having informed them of that resolution, he laughingly said,—'These wicked men wish to commit an act here that is disapproved by the good from considerations of virtue, profit, and desire. They will, however, never be able to actually achieve it. These fools of sinful souls assembled together, these wretches overwhelmed by lust and anger and yielding themselves up to wrath and covetousness, are about to perpetrate a highly unbecoming deed.† These wretches

---

* *Carma* is lit. *shame*, or that which dispels shame, *viz*, dress or covering; hence, refuge or protection. *Varma* is a coat of mail, *i. e*, protection. Keçava is the covering and coat of mail of the Pāndavas.—T.

† *Vikurvate* is explained by Nilakantha as *Vikāram kalahākhyam kurvate.* I prefer to understand it as simply signifying "are about to do an *unbecoming* act."—T.

of little understanding and desirous of seizing the lotus-eyed, like idiots and children desiring to seize a blazing fire by means of their garments!'—Hearing these words of Sātayaki, Vidura endued with great foresight said these words unto the mighty-armed Dhritarāshtra in the midst of the Kurus:—'O king, O chastiser of foes, the hour of all thy sons is come, for they are endeavoring to perpetrate a highly infamous deed however incapable they may be of actually accomplishing it! Alas, united together they desire to vanquish this younger brother of Vāsava, and seize this lotus-eyed one! Indeed, encountering this tiger among men, this invincible and irresistible one, they will all perish like insects on a blazing fire! If this Janārddana wisheth, he can send all of them, even if they battle together, into the abode of Yama, like an enraged lion despatching a herd of elephants! He will, however, never do any such sinful and censurable act. This best of persons, of unfading glory, will never deviate from virtue!'—After Vidura had said these words, Keçava, casting his eyes on Dhritarāshtra, said in the midst of those well-meaning persons listening unto one another,—'O king, if these (wights) desire to chastise me by using violence, permit them to chastise me, O monarch, or me to chastise them, for I dare chastise all of them together that are so excited with rage! I will not, however, perpetrate any sinful and censurable act! Coveting the possessions of the Pāndavas, thy sons will lose their own! If they desire to perpetrate such a deed, Yudhishthira's object then will be (easily) accomplished, for this very day, O Bhārata, seizing these with all that follow them, I can make them over to the sons of Prithā! What is there that is difficult of attainment to me? I will not, however, O Bhārata, commit in thy presence, O great monarch, any such censurable deed that can proceed only from wrath and a sinful understanding! Let it be, O king, as this Duryodhana desireth! I give permission, O monarch, to all thy sons to do it!'

"Hearing these words (of Keçava), Dhritarāshtra addressed Vidura, saying,—'Quickly bring hither the sinful Duryodhana who is so covetous of sovereignty, with his friends,

counsellors, brothers, and followers, if, indeed, making one more effort I can bring him to the right path !'

"Thus addressed by Dhritarāshtra, Khattri once more caused the unwilling Duryodhana to enter the court with his brothers and surrounded by the kings (that followed him). King Dhritarāshtra then addressed Duryodhana surrounded by Karna and Dusçāsana and all those kings, saying,—'O wretch of accumulated sins, having for thy allies men of despicable acts, infamous is the deed that thou, uniting with sinful friends, seekest to do ! Of little understanding, thou infamy of thy race, one like thee alone can seek to do an act so infamous and disapproved by the good, however incapable it may be of being actually achieved ! Uniting with sinful allies, wishest thou to chastise this invincible and irresistible one of eyes like lotus-leaves ? Like a child wishing to have the moon, seekest thou, O fool, to do that which cannot be done by the very gods headed by Vāsava with all their strength ? Knowest thou not that Keçava who is incapable of being borne in battle by gods and men and *Gandharvas* and *Asuras* and *Uragas ?* Like the wind which none can seize with his hands, like the moon which no hand can reach, like the Earth which none can support on his head, Keçava is incapable of being seized by force !'

"After Dhritarāshtra had said these words, Vidura, (casting) his eyes on Duryodhana, addressed that vindictive son of Dhritarāshtra, saying,—'O Duryodhana, listen now to these words of mine ! At the gates of *Saubha,** that foremost of monkeys known by the name of Dwivida covered Keçava with a mighty shower of stones ! Desirous of seizing Mādhava by putting forth all his prowess and exertion, he did not yet succeed in seizing him. Seekest thou to seize that Keçava by force ? When Cauri went to Prāgyotisha, Naraka with all the *Dānavas* succeeded not in seizing him there ! Seekest thou to seize him by force ? Slaying that Naraka in battle, he brought away (from his city) a thousand damsels and married them all according to the ordinance. In the city of

* The flying city of Cālwa.—T.

Nirmochana, six thousand mighty *Asuras* failed to seize him with their nooses. Seekest thou to seize that Keçava by force? While only a child, he slew Putana and Cakuni, and O bull of Bharata's race, he held up the mountains of Govardhana (on his little finger) for protecting the kine (from a continuous rain)! He hath also slain *Arishta*, and *Dhenuka*, and *Chānura* of great strength, and *Açwarāja*, and Kansa the doer of evil! He hath slain Jarāsandha, and Vakra, and Ciçupāla of mighty energy, and Vāna, in battle, and numerous other kings also have been slain by him. Of immeasurable might, he vanquished king Varuna and also Pāvaka (Agni), and on the occasion of bringing (down from the celestial regions) the (heavenly flower called) *Pārijāta*, he defeated the lord of Cachi himself! While floating on the vasty deep he slew Madhu and Kaitabha, and in another birth he slew *Hayagriva* (Horse-necked.)* He is the maker of everything, but is himself made by none! He is the Cause of all Power! Whatever Cauri wisheth, he accomplisheth without any effort. Knowest thou not the sinless Govinda of terrible prowess and incapable of deterioration, this one resembling an angry snake of virulent poison, this mass of energy? In seeking to use violence towards Krishna endued with mighty arms and unwearied by exertion, thou wilt, with all thy followers, perish like an insect falling upon fire!"

SECTION CXXX.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"After Vidurā had said this, Keçava, that slayer of hostile divisions,† endued with great energy, addressed Dhritarāshtra's son Duryodhana and said,—'From

---

* *Swapat* is sleeping or lying down in a recumbent posture. *Ekārnava* is lit. one ocean, *i. e.* the whole Earth under water and when there was nothing but water all around. This refers to the universal deluge. The *Asura* Hayagriva was slain because of his having stolen away the *Vedas*.—T.

† *Puga* is a crowd or cluster. The meaning of the compound "slayer of crowds of foes," *i. e.* one killing hundreds at a time.—T.

delusion, O Suyodhana, thou regardest me to be alone, and it is for this, O thou of little understanding, that thou seekest to make me a captive after vanquishing me with violence! Here, however, are all the Pāndavas and all the Vrishnis and Andhakas! Here are all the *Adityas*, the *Rudras*, and the *Vasus*, with all the great *Rishis*!'—Saying this, Keçava, that slayer of hostile heroes, burst out into a loud laughter. And as the high-souled Cauri laughed, from his body that resembled a blazing fire issued myriads of gods, each of lightning effulgence, and not bigger than the thumb! And on his forehead appeared Brahman, and on his breast Rudra. And on his arms appeared the regents of the world, and from his mouth issued Agni, the *Adityas*, the *Sāddhyas*, the *Vasus*, the *Açwins*, the *Maruts* with Indra, and the *Viçwedevas*. And myriads of *Yakshas*, and *Gandharvas*, and *Rākshasas* also, of the same measure and form, issued thence. And from his two arms issued Sankarshana* and Dhananjaya. And Arjuna stood on his right, bow in hand, and Rāma stood on his left, armed with the plough. And behind him stood Bhima, and Yudhishthira, and the two sons of Mādri, and before him were all the Andhakas and the Vrishnis with Praddyumna and other chiefs bearing mighty weapons upraised. And on his diverse arms were seen the conch, the discus, the mace, the bow called *Cārnga*, the plough, the javelin, the *Nandaka*, and every other weapon, all shining with effulgence and upraised for striking. And from his eyes and nose and ears and every part of his body, issued fierce sparks of fire mixed with smoke. And from the pores of his body issued sparks of fire like unto the rays of the Sun. And beholding that awful form of the high-souled Keçava, all the kings closed their eyes with affrighted hearts, except Drona, and Bhishma, and Vidura endued with great intelligence, and the greatly blessed Sanjaya, and the *Rishis* possessed of wealth of ascetcism, for the divine Janārddana gave unto these celestial sight on the occasion. And beholding in the (Kuru) court that highly wonderful sight, celestial drums beat (in the

* Valarama, also called Rama.—T.

sky) and a floral shower fell (upon him).* And the whole Earth trembled (at the time) and the oceans were agitated. And, O bull of Bharata's race, all the denizens of the earth were filled with great wonder. Then that tiger among men, that chastiser of foes, withdrew that divine and highly wonderful and diverse-looking form of his endued with every prosperity! And arm-in-arm with Sātyaki on one side and Hridikā's son (Kritavarman) on the other, and obtaining the permission of the *Rishis*, the slayer of Madhu went out. And during the uproar that then took place, the *Rishis*, Nārada and others, vanished for repairing to their respective places. And this also was another wonderful incident that happened. And seeing that tiger among men leave the court, the Kauravas with all the kings followed him, like the gods following Indra. Cauri, however, of immeasurable soul, without bestowing a single thought on those that followed him, issued from the court, like a blazing fire mixed with smoke. And he beheld (at the gate his charioteer) Dāruka waiting with his large white car furnished with rows of tinkling bells, decked with golden ornaments, and endued with great speed, and the clatter of whose wheels resembled the roar of clouds, and which was covered all over with white tiger-skins, and unto which were harnessed his steeds Caivya (and others).† And there also appeared, mounted on his car, that favorite hero of the Vrishnis, the mighty car-warrior Kritavarman the son of Hridikā.‡ And as that chastiser of foes, Cauri, who had his car ready, was about to depart, king Dhritarāshtra addressed him once more and said,—'O grinder of foes, thou

---

* Some editions have 5 *slokas* here about Dhritarāshtra's prayer to Keçava for eye-sight in order to behold Keçava's universal form. The Burdwan text omits them properly. They are evidently an interpolation.

† Literally, "Dāruka showed himself there with &c, &c."—T.

‡ The passage, *supra*, about Krishna's issuing out of the court arm-in-arm with Sātyaki on one side and Kritavarman on the other is an interpolation. Kritavarman could not be within the court. Asked by Sātyaki to wait at the gate with his troops arrayed for battle, he was staying at the gate where he is now seen.—T.

hast seen, O Janārddana, the power I wield over my sons! Thou hast, indeed, witnessed all with thy own eyes! Nothing now is unknown to thee! Seeing me endeavour* to bring about peace between the Kurus, in fact, knowing the state (in which I am), it behoveth thee not to entertain any suspicions regarding me! O Keçava, I have no sinful feelings towards the Pāndavas. Thou knowest what words have been spoken by me to Suyodhana! The Kauravas and all the kings of the Earth also know, O Mādhava, that I have made every endeavour to bring about peace!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"The mighty-armed Janārddana then addressed Dhritarāshtra, and Drona, and the grandsire Bhishma, and Kshattri, and Vālhika, and Kripa, and said,—'Ye have yourselves witnessed all that hath happened in the assembly of the Kurus, *viz*, how the wicked Duryodhana, like an uneducated wretch left the court from anger, and how king Dhritarāshtra also describeth himself to be powerless! With the permision of you all I will now go back to Yudishthira!' —Saluting them, that bull amongst men, Cauri, then mounted his car and set out. And those heroic bulls amongst the Bharatas, those mighty bowmen, *viz*, Bhishma, Drona, and Kripa, and Kshattri, and Dhritarāshtra, and Açwatthāman, and Vikarna, and that mighty car-warrior Yuyutshu, all began to follow him. And Keçava, on his large white car furnished with rows of tinkling bells, proceeded then, in the very sight of the Kurus, to the abode of his paternal aunt (Kunti)."

SECTION CXXXI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Entering her abode and worshipping her feet, Keçava represented to her briefly all that had transpired in the assembly of the Kurus. And Vāsudeva said,—'Diverse words, worthy of being accepted and fraught with

---

* For *Yatam-inam* some texts read *Hatamānam*, meaning that "in desiring to bring about peace, I have been *disgraced* or *humiliated* (by my son rejecting my counsels)."

reasons, were said both by myself and the *Rishis*, but Duryodhana accepted them not. As regard Suyodhana and his followers, their hour is come.* With thy leave now, I will speedily repair unto the Pāndavas! What should I say unto the Pāndavas as thy instructions to them? Tell me that, O thou endued with great wisdom! I desire to hear thy words!'

"Kunti said,—'O Keçava, say unto king Yudhishthira of virtuous soul these words:—Thy virtue, O son, is decreasing greatly! Do not act vainly! O king, like a reader of the *Vedas* incapable of catching their real meaning, and, therefore, truly unlearned, thy understanding, affected by only the words of the *Vedas*, viewetth virtue alone!† Cast thy eyes on the duties of thy own order, as ordained by the Self-create! For all ruthless deeds and for the protection of the people, from his (Brahman's) arms was created the Kshatriya who is to depend upon the prowess of his own arms! Listen, an instance is cited in this connection, that hath been heard by me from the aged. In days of yore, Vaiçravana, having been gratified, made a gift of this Earth to the royal sage Muchukunda. The latter, without accepting the gift, said,—*I desire to enjoy that sovereignty which is won by prowess of arms*!—At this, Vaiçravana was highly delighted and filled with wonder. King Muchukunda then, fully observing the duties of the Kshatriya order, ruled this earth, having conquered it by the prowess of his arms. Then again, a sixth part of the virtue practised by subjects well protected by the king, is obtained, O Bhārata, by the king! The virtue again that the king himself practiseth conferreth godhead on him, while if he perpetrateth sin, he goeth to hell. The penal code, properly applied by the ruler, maketh the four orders adhere to their respective duties, and leadeth to an acquisition (by the ruler himself) of virtue,

---

* Literally, "Suyodhana's followers are all ripe under the influence of Time."—T.

† *Crotriya* is one learned in the *Vedas*. *Mandaka* is explained by Nilakantha as *Arthajnāna-çunya*. *Avipaçchit* is unlearned. *Anuvāka-hata* is lost or affected by only the words (of the *Vedas*).—T.

(profit, and salvation).* When the king properly abideth by the penal code without making any portion of it a dead letter, then that best of periods called the *Krita yuga* setteth in. Let not this doubt be thine, *viz*, whether the era is the cause of the king or the king the cause of the era, for (know this to be certain that) the king is the cause of the era !† It is the king that createth the *Krita*, the *Tretā*, or the *Dwāpara* age. Indeed, it is the king that is the cause of also the fourth *Yuga* (*viz*, the *Kali*). That king who causeth the *Krita* age to set in, enjoyeth heaven exceedingly. That king who causeth the *Tretā* age to set in, doth enjoy heaven but not exceedingly. For his causing the *Dwāpara* age to set in, a king enjoyeth heaven according to his due. The king, however, who causeth the *Kali* age to set in, earneth sin exceedingly. Thereupon that king of wicked deeds resideth in hell for countless years. Indeed, the king's sins affect the world, and the world's sins affect him. Observe thou those kingly duties of thine that befit thy ancestry. That is not the conduct of a royal sage in which thou wishest to abide ! Indeed, he that is stained by weakness of heart and adhereth to compassion, and is unsteady, never obtaineth the merit born of cherishing his subjects. That understanding according to which thou art now acting was never wished (to thee) by Pāndu, or myself, or thy grandsire, while we uttered blessings on thee before ! Sacrifice, gift, ascetic merit, and bravery, subjects and children, greatness of soul, and might, and energy,‡—these were always prayed by me for thee ! Men and gods, when duly worshipped, become gratified and always bestow long life, wealth, and children, and *Swāhā* and *Swadhā*. The mother and the

---

* *Dharmebhyas niyacchati* is literally "restricteth (the king) to virtue and the others !'—T.

† What Kunti seeks to inculcate here is that the righteousness or unrighteousness of an era depends directly on the character of the king who rules during that era. It is not true that the king is sinful because the era is sinful ; on the other hand, an era is sinful because the king is so. It always depends upon the king himself as to whether the period of his reign should be virtuous or the contrary.—T.

‡ For *Ojas*, the Burdwan Pundits read *āyus* meaning long life.—T.

father, as also the gods, always desire liberality and gift and study and sacrifice and sway over subjects for their children. Whether all this be righteous or unrighteous, you are to practise it in consequence of your very birth. (Behold, O Krishna, so far from doing all this), though born in a high race, they are yet destitute of the very means of support, and are afflicted with misery! Hungry men, approaching a brave and bountiful monarch, are gratified and live by his side. What virtue can be superior to this? A virtuous person, upon acquiring a kingdom, should in this world make all persons his own, attaching some by gift, some by force, and some by sweet words. A Brāhmana should adopt mendicancy; a Kshatriya should protect (subjects); a Vaiçya should earn wealth; and a Cudra should serve the other three. Mendicancy, therefore, is forbidden to thee! Nor is agriculture suited to thee. Thou art a Kshatriya and, therefore, the protector of all in distress. Thou art to live by the prowess of thy arms. O thou of mighty arms, recover thy paternal share of the kingdom which thou hast lost, by conciliation, or working disunion among thy foes, or gift of money, or violence, or well-directed policy! What can be a matter of greater grief than that I, deprived of friends, should live upon food supplied by others, after having brought thee forth, thou enhancer of the joys of friends? Fight, according to the practices of kings! Do not sink thy ancestors (in infamy)! With thy merit worn out, do not,' with thy younger brothers, obtain a sinful end '—' "

SECTION CXXXII.

"Kunti said,—'In this connection, O chastiser of foes, is cited an old story of the conversation between Vidulā and her son. It behoveth thee to say unto Yudhishthira anything that can be gathered from this or anything more beneficial than that!

" 'There was a high-born dame of great foresight, named Vidulā. She was famous, slightly wrathful, of crooked disposition, and devoted to Kshatriya virtues. Well-educated, she was known to all the kings of the Earth. Of great learning, she

had listened to the speeches and instructions of diverse men. And the princess Vidulā one day rebuked her own son who, after his defeat by the king of the *Sindhus*, lay prostrate with heart depressed by despair. And she said,—Thou art not my son, O enhancer of the joys of foes! Begotten thou hast not been by myself and thy father! Whence hast thou come? Without wrath as thou art, thou canst not be counted as a man! Thy features betray thee to be a eunuch! Sinkest thou in despair as long as thou livest? If thou art desirous of thy own welfare, bear thou the burthen (of thy affairs on thy shoulders)! Do not disgrace thy soul! Do not suffer it to be gratified with a little! Set thy heart on thy welfare, and be not afraid! Abandon thy fears! Rise, O coward! Do not lie down thus, after thy defeat, delighting all thy foes and grieving thy friends, and reft of all sense of honor! Little streams are filled up with only a small quantity of water. The palms of a mouse are filled with only a small quantity. A coward is soon gratified, with acquisitions that are small! Rather perish in plucking the fangs of a snake than die miserably like a dog! Put forth thy prowess even at the risk of thy life! Like a hawk that fearlessly rangeth the sky, do thou also wander fearlessly, or put forth thy prowess, or silently watch thy foes for an opportunity! Why dost thou lie down like a carcase or like one smitten by thunder! Rise, O coward, do not slumber after having been vanquished by the foe! Do not disappear from the sight of all so miserably! Make thyself known by thy deeds! Never occupy the intermediate, the low, or the lowest station! Blaze up (like a well-fed fire)!* Like a brand of *Tinduka* wood, blaze up even for a moment, but never smoulder, from desire of life, like a flameless fire of paddy chaff! It is better to blaze up for a moment than smoke for ever and ever! Let no son be born in a royal race, who is either exceedingly fierce or exceedingly mild! Repairing to the field of battle and achieving every great feat that is

* For *Urjitas* some texts read *Garjitas* which is unpoetical, if not unmeaning. *Urjitas* is literally blazing up or swelling. *Jaghanya* is low but *Adhas* seems to indicate something lower.—T

possible for man to achieve, a brave man is freed from the debt he oweth to the duties of the Kshatriya order. Such a person never disgraceth his ownself. Whether he gaineth his object or not, he that is possessed of sense never indulgeth in grief. On the other hand, such a person accomplisheth what should be next done, without caring for even his life! Therefore, O son, display thy prowess, or obtain that end which is inevitable! Why, indeed, dost thou live, disregarding the duties of thy order?* All thy religious rites, O enunch, and all thy achievements are gone! The very root of all thy enjoyments is cut off! What for then dost thou live? If fall and sink one must, he should seize the foe by the hips (and thus fall *with* the foe)! Even if one's roots are cut off, he should not yet give way to despair! Horses of high mettle put forth all their prowess for dragging or bearing heavy weights. Remembering their behaviour, muster all thy strength and sense of honor! Know also in what thy manliness consists! Exert thyself in raising that race which hath sunk in consequence of thee! He that hath not achieved a great feat forming the subject of men's conversation, only increaseth the tale of humanity! He is neither man or woman! He whose fame is not sounded in respect of charity, asceticism, truth, learning and acquisition of wealth, is only his mother's excreta. On the other hand, he that surpasseth others in learning, asceticism, wealth, prowess, and deeds, is (truly) a man! It behoveth thee not to adopt the idle, wretched, infamous, and miserable profession of mendicancy that is worthy only of a coward.† Friends never derive any happiness on obtaining that weak person for a friend at whose sight foes are delighted, who is despised by men, who is without seats and robes, who is gratified with small acquisitions, who is destitute, and who hath no courage, and is low. Alas, exiled from our kingdom, driven from home, deprived of all means of enjoyment and pleasure, and destitute of resources, we shall have to

---

* *Dharmam agratas kritwā*; Nilakantha supposes that *agratas* is used ironically for *prishthatas*. Literally, therefore, it should be "keeping thy duties at thy back," in the sense of disregarding them.—T.

† *Jalmim* is idle.—T.

perish from want of the very means of life! Misbehaving in the midst of those that are good, and the destroyer of thy race and family, by bringing thee forth, O Sanjaya, I have brought forth Kali himself in the shape of a son! Oh, let no woman bring forth such a son (as thou) that art without wrath, without exertion, without energy, and that art the joy of foes! Do not smoulder! Blaze thou up, effectively displaying thy prowess! Slay thy foes! For but a moment, for ever so small a space of time, blaze thou up on the heads of thy enemies! He is a man who cherisheth wrath and forgiveth not! He, on the other hand, who is forgiving and without wrath, is neither a man nor woman! Contentment and softness of heart, and these two, *viz*, want of exertion and fear, are destructive of prosperity! He that is without exertion never winneth what is great! Therefore, O son, free thyself, by thy own exertions, from these faults that lead to defeat and downfall! Steel thy heart and seek to recover thy own! A man is called *Purusha* because he is competent to trouble his foe *(param.)* He, therefore, who liveth like a woman is misnamed *Purusha* (man). A brave king, of mighty strength, and who moveth like a lion, may go the way of all creatures.* The subjects, however, that reside in his dominions do not yet become unhappy. That king who, disregarding his own happiness and pleasures, seeketh the prosperity of his kingdom, succeedeth soon in gladdening his counsellors and friends.'—

"'Hearing these words, the son said,—If thou dost not behold me, of what use would the whole Earth be to thee, of what use thy ornaments, of what use all the means of pleasure and even life itself?—The mother said,—Let those regions be obtained by our foes which belong to those that are low.† Let those again that are our friends go to those regions

---

* *Dishṭabhāvam gatas.*—T.

† The first word of this *sloka* is variously read. Nilakantha notices several readings, but prefers *Kimadyakānām* which he explains as "*Kim adyam, i. e. Kim bhoktavyam iti ye chintaynti teshām*, meaning the poor. He also suggests that it may mean, *Kim adya twarayā, çwa eva çatrun jeshyāma*, that is, those that are procrastinating. Some of the readings are *Hinyanindsya*, *Anādrutasya*, *Anāhatānām*, *Anādritānām*, *Nirmaryakānām*, &c.—T.

which are obtainable by persons whose souls are held in respect! Do not adopt the course of life that is followed by those wretched persons who, destitute of strength and without servants and attendants (to do their bidding) live upon the food supplied by others! Like the creatures of the earth that depend on the clouds, or the gods depending on Indra, let the Brāhmanas and thy friends all depend on thee for their sustenance! His life, O Sanjaya, is not vain on whom all creatures depend for their sustenance like birds repairing to a tree abounding with ripe fruits! The life of that brave man is, indeed, praiseworthy, through whose prowess friends derive happiness, like the gods deriving happiness through the prowess of Cakra! That man who liveth in greatness, depending on the prowess of his own arms, succedeth in winning fame in this world and a blessed state in the next!—' "

SECTION CXXXIII.

"'Vidulā said,—If, having fallen into such a plight, thou wishest to give up manliness, thou shalt then have, in no time, to tread the path that is trod by those that are low and wretched. That Kshatriya who, from desire of life, displayeth not his energy according to the best of his might and prowess, is regarded as a thief! Alas, like medicine to a dying man, these words that are fraught with grave import, and are proper and reasonable, do not make any impression on thee! It is true, the king of the Sindhus hath many followers. They are, however, all discontented. From weakness, and ignorance of proper means, they are waiting for the distress of their master (without being able to effect a deliverance for themselves by their own exertions)' As regards others (his open enemies), they will come to thee with their auxiliaries if they behold thee put forth thy prowess. Uniting with them, seek refuge now in mountain fastnesses, waiting for that season when calamity will overtake the foe, as it must, for he is not free from disease and death! By name thou art *Sanjaya* (the victorious)! I do not, however, behold any such indication in thee! Be true to thy name! Be *my* son! Oh, do not make

thy name untrue! Beholding thee while a child, a Brāhmana of great foresight and wisdom said,—*This one falling into great distress will again win greatness!*—Remembering his words, I hope for thy victory! It is for that, O son, I tell thee so, and shall tell thee again and again! That man who pursueth the fruition of his objects according to the ways of policy and for the success of whose objects other people strive cordially, is always sure to win success! *Whether what I have is gained or lost, I will not desit,*—with such a resolve, O Sanjaya, O learned one, engage in war, without withdrawing thyself from it! Camvara hath said,—there is not a more miserable state than that in which one is anxious for his food from day to day.* A state such as this hath been said to be more unhappy than the death of one's husband and sons. That which hath been called poverty is only a form of Death. As regards myself, born in a high race, I have been transplanted from one lake into another. Possessed of every auspicious thing, and worshipped by my husband, my power extended over all. Staying in the midst of friends, our friends formerly beheld me decked in costly garlands and ornaments, with body well-washed, attired in excellent robes, and myself always cheerful! When thou wilt behold both me and thy wife weakened (from want of food), thou wilt then, O Sanjaya, scarcely desire to live! Of what use will life be to thee when thou wilt behold all our servants engaged in attending on us, our preceptors and our ordinary and extraordinary priests leaving us from want of sustenance! If, again, I do not now see in thee those laudable and famous achievements in which thou wert formerly engaged, what peace can my heart know? If I have to say—*Nay*—to a Brāhmana, my heart will burst, for neither myself nor my husband ever said—*Nay*—to a Brāhmana before. We were the refuge of others, without ourselves having ever taken refuge with others! Having been such, if I have to support life by depending on another, I will surely cast off my life! Be thou our means of crossing the ocean that is difficult to cross! In the absence of boats, be

* I render this *Sloka* a little too freely.—T.

thou our boat! Make for us a place where place there is none.* Resucsitate us that are dead! Thou art competent to encounter all foes if thou dost not cherish the desire of life! If, however, thou art for adopting this mode of life that is fit only for a eunuch, then with troubled soul and depressed heart it would be better for thee to sacrifice thy life! A brave man winneth fame by slaying even a single foe. By slaying Vritra Indra became the great Indra and acquired the sovereignty of all the gods and the cup† for drinking *Soma*, and the lordship of all the worlds. Proclaiming his name in battle, challenging his foes accoutred in steel, and grinding or slaying the foremost warriors of hostile ranks, when a hero winneth far-extending fame in fair fight, his enemies then are pained and bow down unto him. They that are cowards become helpless and contribute by their own conduct to bestow every object of desire on those that are skilled and brave and that fight reckless of their lives. Whether kingdoms be overtaken by mighty ruin, or whether life itself be endangered, they that are noble never desist till they exterminate the foe within their reach. Sovereignty is either the door of heaven or *Amrita*. Regarding it as one of these, and bearing it in mind that it is now shut against thee, fall thou like a burning brand in the midst of thy foes. O king, slay thy foes in battle! Observe the duties of thy order! Let me not behold thee cheerless, O enhancer of the fears of thy foes! Let me not in dejection behold thee standing in misery, surrounded by our sorrowing selves and rejoicing foes! Rejoice, O son, and make thyself happy in the possession of wealth in the company of the daughters of the *Sauviras* and do not, in weakness of heart, be ruled over by the daughters of the *Saindhavas*! If a young man like thee, who is possessed of beauty of person, learning, and high birth, and world-wide fame, acteth in such unbecom-

---

* The Burdwan Pundits have failed to catch the meaning of *Kurushwa sthānamasthane*.—T.

† *Graham* is explained by Nilakantha to mean the cup for drinking *Soma*. Some texts read *Prahgraham* which would be tautological, for it means rule or sovereignty.—T.

ing a way like a vicious bull in the matter of bearing its burthen, then that, I think, would be equal to death itself.* What peace can my heart know if I behold thee uttering laudatory speeches in honor of others or walking (submisively) behind them? Oh, never was one born in this race that walked behind another! O son, it behoveth thee not to live as a dependant on another! I know what the eternal essence of Kshatriya virtues† is, as spoken of by the old and the older ones and by those coming late and later still! Eternal and unswerving, it hath been ordained by the Creator himself! He that hath, in this world, been born‡ as a Kshatriya in any high race and hath acquired a knowledge of the duties of that order, will never from fear or for the sake of sustenance,$ bow down to any body on earth. One should stand erect with courage and not bow down, for exertion is manliness! One should rather break in the joints than yield in this world here to anybody! A high-souled Kshatriya should always roam like an infuriate elephant. He should, O Sanjaya, bow down unto Brāhmanas only, for the sake of virtue! He should rule over all other orders, destroying all evil-doers. Possessed of allies or destitute of them, he should be so as long as he liveth!—' "

---

* None of the vernacular translators have correctly rendered this *sloka*. The Burdwan Pundits have narrowly missed the right meaning, while K. P. Singha is, as usual, ludicrously in error. The difficulty lies in *Adhuryyavat-cha Vodavye* which means, as I have rendered, on Nilakantha's authority, "like a vicious bull in the matter of his burthen."—T.

† *Kshatra-hridayam* is not the "Kshatriya heart," but the essence of Kshatriyahood, or Kshatriya virtues or duties. *Purvais* is explained by Nilakantha as "of my own lineage," and *Parais* as "of other families"; whilst *Parataraís*, according to him, means "by the aged." I cannot, however, reject the obvious meanings of these words, even for the sake of Nilakantha. *Avyaya* is literally "indestructible"; here, however, it is used in the sense of unswerving or admitting of no deviation

‡ *Ajatas* is explaind by Nilakantha as "well-born.—T.

$ Lit. "Or observing his sustenance," *i. e.* with an eye to or for the sake of sustenance.—T.

SECTION CXXXIV.

"Kunti said,—'Hearing these words of his mother, the son said,—O ruthless and wrathful mother, O thou that thinkest highly of martial heroism, thy heart is surely made of steel beat into that shape! Fie on Kshatriya practices, in accordance with which thou urgest me to battle as if I were a stranger to thee, and for the sake of which thou speakest to me—thy only son—such words as if thou wert not my mother! If thou beholdest me not, if thou art dissociated with me—thy son, of what use then would the whole Earth be to thee, of what use all thy ornaments and all the means of enjoyment, indeed, of what use would life itself be to thee?—

"'The mother said,—All the acts* of those that are wise, are (undertaken), O son, for the sake of virtue and profit! Eyeing these (virtue and profit) only, I urge thee, O Sanjaya, to battle! The fit hour hath come for exhibiting thy prowess. If at such a time thou dost not resort to action, then disrespected by the people thou wouldst do that which would be most disagreeable to me! If, O Sanjaya, thou art about to be stained with infamy and I do not (from affection) tell thee anything, then that affection, worthless and unreasonable, would be like the she-ass's for her young. Do not tread the path that is disapproved by the wise and adopted by the foolish. Great is the ignorance here. Innumerable creatures of the world have taken refuge in it. If thou, however, adoptest the behaviour of the wise, thou wilt then be dear to me.† Indeed, if thou

* For *Sarvārambhā* some texts read *Sarvāvasthā*. The sense would not be so clear if this reading were adopted.—T.

† *Avidyā* is ignorance, or non-knowledge, used in reference to the belief cherished by many that this body is the Self or Soul. Knowledge consists in believing the body to be material and destructible and separate from the Soul or Self. They who believe the body to be Self cannot cast it off for the benefit of the Soul. What the mother says to her son is,—Do not be one of these! On the other hand, be wise or adopt the behaviour of the wise, *i. e.* do not endanger thy soul for the sake of thy body, but throw away thy body, if necessary, for the sake of thy soul. A Kshatriya's soul should be noble, fearless, &c., as said before.—T.

hast recourse to virtue and profit, if with God above thou reliest upon human exertion, if thy conduct becometh like that of the good, then it is by this and not by any other means that thou wilt become dear to me !* He that taketh delight in sons and grandsons that are well-instructed, (enjoyeth a delight that is real). He, on the other hand, that taketh delight in a son who is destitue of exertion, refractory, and wicked-minded, hath not the very object accomplished for which a son is desired.† Those worst of men that never do what is proper and always do what is censurable, do not obtain happiness here or hereafter ! A Kshatriya, O Sanjaya, hath been created for battle and victory ! Whether he winneth or perisheth, he obtaineth the region of Indra ! The happiness that a Kshatriya obtaineth by reducing his foes‡ to subjection is such that the like of it doth not exist in heaven in the sacred region of Indra ! Burning with wrath, a Kshatriya of great energy, if vanquished many times, should wait desiring to vanquish his foes.$ Without either casting away his own life or slaying his foes, how can he obtain peace of mind by any other course ? He that is possessed of wisdom regardeth§ anything little as disagreeable. Unto that person to whom anything little becometh agreeable, that little (ultimately) becometh a source of pain. The man that hath not what is desirable soon becometh wretched. Indeed, he soon feeleth every want and is lost like the Gangā on entering the ocean !—'

" 'The son said,—Thou shouldst not, O mother, give ex-

---

* The 10th *sloka* is grammatically connected with the 9th. I have rendered it some what freely.—T.

† There seems to be some omission in the 11th *sloka*. Grammatically it is connected with the first half of the following *sloka*. The sense is scarcely clear. For *Yohyevasuvinitena* some texts read incorrectly *Yohyevamavinitena*. It seems to me that *Suvinitena* is used by way of contrast with *Durvinitena* that follows.—T.

‡ Many texts read *Yadi-mitrán*. I think this is erroneous. The correct reading, I apprehend, is *yadamitrán*.—T.

$ Nilakantha supposes that *Sthátavyam* should be supplied after *Jigishayā*. I have, therefore, detached 25 from 26.—T.

§ *Icchati* is explained by Nilakantha to mean *manyate*.—T.

pression to such views before thy son! Show him kindness now, staying by his side like a silent and dumb being!

"'The mother said,—Great is my gratification since thou sayest so! I who may be urged (by thee to what is my duty) am thus urged by thee! I shall, therefore, urge thee more (for doing what thou shouldst do)!* I will, indeed, honor thee then when I will behold thee crowned with complete success after the slaughter of all the Saindhavas!—

"'The son said,—Without wealth, without allies, how can success and victory be mine? Conscious of this exceedingly miserable state of mine, I have myself abstained from desire of kingdom like an evil-doer abstaining from desire of heaven! If, therefore, O thou of mature wisdom, thou seest any means (by which all this can be effected), speak fully of it to me as I ask thee, for I shall do all that thou mayst command me to do!—

"'The mother said,—Do not disgrace thy soul, O son, by anticipations of failure! Objects unattained have been attained; while those attained have been lost! The accomplishment of objects should never be sought with wrath and folly. In all acts, O son, the attainment of success is always uncertain. Knowing that success is uncertain, people still act, so that they sometimes succeed, and sometimes do not. They, however, that abstain from action, never obtain success. In the absence of exertion there is but one result, *viz*, the absence of success. There are, however, two results in the case of exertion, *viz*, the acquisition of success or its non-acquisition. He, O prince, who hath settled before-hand that all acts are uncertain in respect of their results, maketh both success and prosperity† unattainable by himself. *This will be*,—with

---

* The plain meaning of this is,—"I am glad to see thee thus urging me to do my duty, *viz*, showing thee compassion. But as thou urgest me to do what thou thinkest to be *my* duty, suffer *me* to urge *thee* also to do what *thou* shouldst do!"—T.

† Nilakantha explains that *Vridhi* here means sickness or affliction, *i. e.* one's own; and *Samridhi* is prosperity—of the foe. There is a root *Vridh* which does mean to pain or afflict, but there is no necessity of rejecting here the obvious and plain meaning of the word.—T.

such a belief should one, casting off all sloth, exert and wake up and address himself to every act. That wise king who, O son, engageth in acts, having performed all auspicious rites and with the gods and the Brāhmanas on his side, soon winneth success.* Like the Sun embracing the East, the goddess of prosperity embraceth him. I see thou hast shown thyself fit for the various suggestions and means and encouraging speeches thou hast had from me! Display (now) thy prowess! It behoveth thee to win, by every exertion, the object thou hast in view! Bring together to thy own side those that are angry (with thy foes), those that are covetous, those that have been weakened (by thy foes), those that are jealous (of thy foes), those that have been humiliated (by them), those that always challenge (them) from excess of pride, and all others of this class! By this means thou wilt be able to break the mighty host (of thy enemy) like an impetuous and fierce-rising tempest scattering the clouds! Give them (thy would-be allies) wealth before it is due, seek their good, be up and doing, and speak sweetly unto them all! They will then do thee good, and place thee at their head! When the enemy cometh to know that his foe hath become reckless of his life, then is he troubled on the latter's account as from a snake living in his chamber! If, knowing one to be powerful, one's enemy doth not strive to subjugate one, he should at least make one friendly by the application of the arts of conciliation, gift, and the like. Even that would be tantamount to subjugation. Obtaining a respite by means of the art of conciliation, one's wealth may increase. And if one's wealth increaseth, one is worshipped and sought as a refuge by one's friends. If again one is deprived of wealth, one is abandoned by friends and relatives, and (more than that) mistrusted and even despised by them! It is perfectly impossible for him to ever regain his kingdom, who, having united himself with his foe, liveth confidingly.†' "

---

* The word used is *Vridhi* which literally means increase or growth.

† *Sambhāvyate* is supposed by Nilakantha to be used here ironically.

SECTION CXXXV.

"'The mother said,—Into whatever calamity a king may fall, he should never give way to fear. Even if his heart were to burst with fear, he should not still betray it.* Beholding the king afflicted with fright, the whole kingdom, the army, the counsellors, all yield to fear, and all the subjects become disunited.† Some go and embrace the side of the enemy; others simply abandon (the king); and others again, that had before been humiliated, strive to strike. They, however, that are intimate friends wait by his side, and though desiring his welfare yet from inability (to do anything) wait helplessly like a cow whose calf hath been tethered. As friends grieve for friends that are plunged into distress, so those well-wishers also grieve upon beholding their lord plunged into grief.‡ Even thou hast many friends whom thou hadst worshipped before. Even thou hast many friends after thy heart, who feel for thy kingdom and who desire to take a share of thy calamities on themselves. Do not frighten those friends, and do not suffer them to abandon thee on beholding thee afflicted with fear! Desiring to test thy might, manliness, and understanding, and wishing also to encourage thee, I have said all this for enhancing thy energy! If thou understandest what I have said, and if all I have said appears proper and sufficient, then, O Sanjaya, muster thy patience and gird up thy loins for victory! We have a large number of treasure-houses unknown to thee. I alone know of their existence, and no other person. I will place all these at thy disposal. Thou hast also, O Sanjaya, more than one friend who sympathise with thee in thy joys and woes, and who, O hero, never retreat from the field of battle! O grinder of foes, allies such as these always play the part of faithful counsellors to a person

---

* Literally, "should not behave as if afflicted with fear."—T.

† Nilakantha explains *mahim* to be *mahisthān lokān*.—T.

‡ Kali Prosunno Singha has made a mess of this and the preceding *sloka*. The Burdwan Pundits give the sense correctly.—T.

who seeketh his own welfare and desireth to acquire what is agreeable to himself!—'

"Kunti continued,—'Hearing this speech of his mother fraught with excellent letters, words, and sense, the despair that had overtaken Sanjaya's heart left it instantly although that prince was not gifted with great intelligence. And the son said,—When I have thee that art so observant of my future welfare for my guide, I shall certainly either rescue my paternal kingdom that is sunk in water or perish (in the attempt)! During thy discourse I was almost a silent listener. Now and then only I interposed a word. It was, however, only with the view of drawing thee out so that I might hear more on the subject! I have not been satiated with thy words like a person not satiated with drinking *amrita*. Deriving support from my allies, behold, I gird up my loins for repressing my foes and obtaining victory!*—'

"Kunti continued,—'Pierced by the wordy arrows of his mother, the son roused himself like a steed of proud mettle and achieved all that his mother had pointed out. When a king is afflicted by foes and overcome with despair, his minister should make him hear this excellent history that enhanceth energy and inspireth might. Indeed, this history is called *Jaya* and should be listened to by every one desirous of victory. Indeed, having listened to it, one may soon subjugate the whole earth and grind his foes. This history causeth a woman to bring forth a son. Capable also of causing a woman to bring forth a heroic son, the woman quick with child that listeneth to it repeatedly, certainly giveth birth to a hero. The Kshatriya woman that listeneth to it bringeth forth a brave son of unbaffled prowess, one that is foremost in learning, foremost in ascetic austerities, foremost in liberality, devoted to asceticism, blazing forth with Brāhmic beauty, numberable with the good, radiant with effulgence, endued with great might, blessed, a mighty car-warrior, possessed of great in-

* These three *slokas*, representing Sanjaya's speech, I have rendered somewhat freely, as a closely literal version would not give the true spirit of the original.—T.

telligence, irresistible (in battle), ever victorious, invincible, a chastiser of the wicked, and a protector of all practisers of virtue !' "

SECTION CXXXVI.

"Kunti said,—'Say unto Arjuna, O Keçava, these words: —When thou wert brought forth in the lying-in room and when I was sitting in the hermitage surrounded by ladies, a celestial and delightful voice was heard in the skies, saying,— *O Kunti, this thy son will rival the deity of a thousand eyes! This one will vanquish in battle all the assembled Kurus! Aided by Bhima,* he will conquer the whole Earth and his fame will touch the very heavens! With Vāsudeva as his ally, he will slay the Kurus in battle and recover his lost paternal share in the kingdom! Endued with great prosperity, he will, with his brothers, perform three great sacrifices!*—O thou of unfading glory, thou knowest how steady in truth is Vibhatshu otherwise called Savyasāchin, how irresistible he is! O thou of Daçārha's race, let it be as that (celestial) voice said! If, O thou of Vrishni's race, there is anything like righteousness, those words will be true, for then, O Krishna, thou wilt thyself accomplish it all! I do not doubt what that voice said! I bow to righteousness which is superior to all. It is righteousness that supports all creatures! Thou shalt say these words unto Dhananjaya! Unto Vrikodara again, who is always ready for exertion, thou shalt say these words :—*The time hath come for that in view of which a Kshatriya lady bringeth forth a son! They that are foremost among men never become cheerless when they have hostilities to wage!*†— Thou knowest what the state of Bhima's mind is! That grinder of foes is never pacified until he exterminates his foes! Thou shalt, O Mādhava, next say unto the auspicious Krishnā

---

* Literally, "having Bhima for his second." *Udvartayishyati* is explained by Nilakantha as *Akulikarishyati.* It would, therefore, mean "trouble, annoy, or persecute."—T.

† Literally, "having obtained hostility."—T.

of great fame, that daughter-in-law of the high-souled Pāndu, who is conversant with the details of every virtue, these words: —*O thou that art highly blessed, O thou of noble parentage, O thou that art endued with great fame, that becoming behaviour which thou always showest towards my sons is, indeed, worthy of thee!*—Thou must also say unto the two sons of Mādri who are always devoted to Kshatriya virtues, these words:—*Covet ye, more than life itself, those enjoyments that are acquired by prowess! Objects won by prowess always please the heart of a person that liveth according to Kshatriya practices!* Engaged as ye are in acquiring every kind of virtue, before your very eyes the princess of Pānchāla was addressed in cruel and abusive epithets! Who is there that can forgive that insult?* The deprivation of their kingdom grieved me not. Their defeat at dice grieved me not. The very exile of my sons (into the woods) grieved me not. That the noble and fair Draupadi however, while weeping in the midst of the assembly, had to hear those cruel and insulting words is what grieveth me exceedingly! Alas, the exceedingly beautiful Krishnā, ever devoted to Kshatriya virtues, found no protector on that occasion though she was wedded to such powerful protectors! O thou of mighty arms, say unto that tiger among men, Arjuna, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, that he should always tread in the path that may be pointed out by Draupadi! Thou knowest it very well, O Keçava, that Bhima and Arjuna,—that pair of fierce and all-destroying Yamas,—are capable of making the very gods go the way of all creatures!† Is not this an insult to them that (their wife) Krishnā was dragged into the assembly? O Keçava, recall to their remembrance all those cruel and harsh words that Dusçāsana said unto Bhima in the very presence of all the warriors of Kuru's race!. Enquire (in my name) after the welfare of the Pandavas with their child-

---

* The word *Purushottama* in this *sloka*, in the case of address, refers to Krishna whom Kunti is addressing. This remark, therefore, seems to be addressed to Krishna, for being reapeated to the sons of Mādri.—T.

† I. e. "may slay the very gods."—T.

ren and Krishnā! Say unto them, O Janārddana, that I am well! Go thou on thy auspicious way, and protect my sons!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Saluting and walking round her, the mighty-armed Krishna whose gait resembled the sportive gait of the lion, then issued out of Prithā's abode. And he then dismissed those bulls among the Kurus with Bhishma at their head (who had followed him), and taking Karna upon his chariot, left (the Kuru city), accompanied by Sātyakī. And after he of Daçārha's race had departed, the Kurus assembled together and began to talk of that highly wonderful and marvellous incident connected with him.* And they said,—'Overcome with ignorance, the whole Earth hath been entangled in the meshes of death!' And they also said,—'Through Duryodhana's folly, all this is doomed to destruction!'

"Having issued out of the (Kuru) city, that foremost of persons proceeded, deliberating with Karna for a long time. And that delighter of all the Yādavas then dismissed Karna and urged his steeds to greater speed. And driven by Dāruka, those swift coursers endued with the speed of the tempest or the mind, went on as if drinking the skies. And quickly traversing a long way like fleet hawks, they reached Upaplavya very soon, bearing the wielder of *Cārnga*."

SECTION CXXXVII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing the words of Kunti, those mighty car-warriors, Bhishma and Drona, then spoke these words unto the disobedient Duryodhana.—'Hast thou, O tiger among men, heard the fierce words of grave import, excellent and consistent with virtue, that Kunti spoke in the presence of Krishna? Her sons will act according to them, especially as they are approved by Vāsudeva! O Kaurava, they will not assuredly desist, without their share of the kingdom (being given them)! Thou hast inflicted much pain on the sons of Prithā. And Draupadi also was afflicted by thee in the assem-

* *Viz*, his universal form, which he had displayed at the Kuru assembly for terrifying Duryodhana and his counsellors.—T.

bly! They were, however, bound then by the bonds of virtue, and it was for this that they tolerated that treatment. Obtaining Arjuna now, who is skilled in every weapon, and Bhima of firm resolution, and *Gāndiva* and the couple of (inexhaustible) quivers, and that car (of Arjuna), and that banner (bearing the device of the ape), and Nakula and Sahadeva both endued with great might and energy, and Vāsudeva also, as his allies, Yudhishthira will not forgive (thee)! O mighty-armed one, thou hast witnessed with thy own eyes how the intelligent Arjuna vanquished us all in battle before, in the city of Virāta! Indeed, after this, that ape-bannered (warrior) consumed in battle, taking up his fierce weapons, those *Dānavas* of terrible deeds (called) the *Nivātakavachas.* On the occasion also of the tale of cattle, (when captured by the *Gandharvas)* this Karna and all these (thy counsellors) and thyself accoutred in mail and on thy car, were all liberated (from the grasp of the *Gandharvas*) by that Arjuna! That is a sufficient proof. Therefore, O foremost of the Bharatas, with all thy brothers make peace with the sons of Pāndu! Save this whole Earth that is within Destruction's jaws! Yudhishthira is thy elder brother, virtuous in behaviour, affectionate (towards thee), sweet-speeched, and learned! Abandoning thy sinful intentions, unite thyself with that tiger among men! If Pāndu's son beholdeth thee divested of thy bow, and without the wrinkles (of rage) on thy brow, and cheerful, even that would be for the good of our race! Approaching with all thy counsellors that prince, embrace him (fraternally)! O represser of foes, salute the king respectfully as before. And let Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, the elder brother of Bhima, seize, from affection, thy saluting self with his arms! And let that foremost of smiters, Bhima, possessed of leonine shoulders and thighs and round, long, and mighty arms, embrace thee! And then let that son of Kunti, Dhananjaya, called also Pārtha, of eyes like lotus petals, and curly hair* and conch-like neck

* The word is *Gudākeça* which is explained by some commentators as the *Īça* or lord of *Gudākā* or sleep. Nilakantha, however, throws doubt on this etymology and suggests, that it probably means "curly

salute thee respectfully! Then let those tigers among men, the twin Açwins, unrivalled on earth for beauty, wait on thee with affection and reverence as on their preceptor! And let all the kings with him of Daçārha's race at their head, shed tears of joy! Abandoning thy pride, unite thyself with thy brothers! Rule thou the whole Earth, with thy brothers! Let all the kings joyfully return (to their respective homes), having embraced one another! There is no need of battle, O king of kings! Listen to the dissuasions of thy friends! In the battle (that will ensue) a great destruction of the Kshatriyas is certainly indicated! The stars are all hostile. The animals and birds have all assumed fearful aspects! Diverse portents, O hero, are visible, all indicating a slaughter of Kshatriyas! All these portents again are particularly visible in our abodes! Blazing meteors are afflicting* thy host. Our animals are all cheerless and seem, O king, to be crying! Vultures are wheeling around thy troops! Neither the city nor the palace looks as before! Jackals, setting forth ominous yells, are runing about the four quarters which are ablaze with conflagrations! Obey thou the counsels of thy father and mother as also of ourselves who are thy well-wishers! War and peace, O thou of mighty arms, are within thy control! If, O grinder of foes, thou dost not act according to the words of thy friends, thou shalt have to repent upon beholding thy army afflicted with the arrows of Pārtha! Hearing in battle the terrible yells uttered by the mighty Bhima and the twang of *Gandiva*, thou wilt remember these our words! Indeed, if what we say appears unacceptable to thee, then it will be as we say!' "†

---

haired." I am disposed to adopt this meaning. The next word is *Kamvu-griva* which means "conch-necked," *i. e.* one whose neck has three wrinkles like to the wrinkles of a conch-shell.—T.

* Literally, impeding or obstructing.—T.

† *Cushmin* is explained by Nilakantha to mean mighty or strong. The second half of the last *sloka* is not very clear. Káli Prasanna Singha, as he always does in such cases, omits it altogether. I have rendered it freely, and find that I am supported by the Burdwan Pundits.

SECTION CXXXVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Thus addressed (by them), Duryodhana, contracting the space between his eye-brows, became cheerless, and with face bent down began to cast oblique glances. And he said not a word in reply. Beholding him cheerless, those bulls among men, Bhishma and Drona, looking at each other, once more addressed him, and said (these words).

"Bhishma said,—'What can be a matter of greater grief to us than that we shall have to fight against that Yudhishthira who is devoted to the service of his superiors, destitute of envy, conversant with *Brahma*, aud truthful in speech!'

"Drona said,—'My affection for Dhananjaya is greater than that which I bear for my son Açwatthāman! There is greater reverence also and humility (towards me) in that ape-bannered hero (than in Açwathāman)! Alas, in observance of Kshatriya duties, I shall have to fight even against that Dhananjaya who is dearer to me than my son! Fie on the Kshatriya profession! That Vibhatsu who hath no other bowman in the world as his equal, hath, through my grace, acquired this superiority over all bowmen! He that hateth his friends, he that is of wicked disposition, he that denieth godhead, he that is crooked and deceitful, never obtaineth the worship of the righteous, like an ignorant person present at a sacrifice! Though dissuaded from sin, a sinful man would still wish to commit sinful acts; while he that is righteous, though tempted by sin, would not yet abandon righteousness! Though thou hast conducted thyself with falsehood and deceit towards them, the Pāndavas are still desirous of doing what is agreeable to thee! As regards thyself, O thou best of the Bharatas, all thy faults are calculated to bring about disasters on thee!

The meaning depends in a large measure on the single word *Bhavishyati*. Rendered closely, the words are, "If this my word appear contrary to thee, (then) it will be!" The singular genetive personal pronoun occuring twice in this *sloka* is a mistake. The speakers are Bhishma *and* Drona, and, therefore, the plural (or dual) form ought to have been used.—T

Thou hast been addressed by the eldest of the Kurus, by me, by Vidura, and by Vāsudeva! Thou dost not yet understand what is beneficial for thyself! *I have a large force,*—with this conviction thou desirest to pierce the Pāndava host abounding with heroes, like the current of the Gangā piercing the ocean abounding with sharks and alligators and *makaras!** Having obtained Yudhishthira's prosperity like the cast off robes or garlands of another, thou regardest it as thy own! If the son of Prithā and Pāndu stayeth even in the woods with Draupadi and surrounded by his armed brothers, who is there, in even the possession of a kingdom, that is competent to vanquish him! In the presence of even that Ailavila (Kuvera) under whose command all the *Yakshas* live as servants, Yudhishthira the just shone with splendour!† Having proceeded to Kuvera's abode and having procured wealth therefrom, the Pāndavas are now desirous of attacking thy swelling kingdom and winning sovereignty for themselves! (As regards us two), we have made gifts, poured liabations on fire, studied (the scriptures), and gratified the Brāhmanas by presents of wealth. The (allotted) periods of our life have also run out. Know that our work has been done. (As regards thyself however), giving up happiness, kingdom, friends, and wealth, great will be thy calamity if thou seekest war with the Pāndavas! How canst thou vanquish the son of Pāndu when

---

* Some texts read *ivoshnage* for *ivàrnavam*. The meaning would then be unquestionably better; *ushnage* is "in the season of rains." The sense, if this reading be adopted, would be, 'Thou desirest to cross (the Pāndava army like) the current of the Gangā during the rainy season!" Of course, the correction *vegamiva* must have to be made for *vega iva*.—T.

† *Rājanas*, the plural of *Rājan*, means here the *Yakshas* or followers of Kuvera the lord of treasures, the friend of Çiva, the elder brother of Rávana. Kuvera, therefore, is sometimes called *Rājrājeçwara* or the king of kings. The sense of the passage is that when Yudhishthira went to Kuvera's abode, he shone there more brilliantly than the lord of treasures himself having all the *Yakshas* under his control. The Burdwan Pundits explain the *sloka* correctly. Kàli Prasanna Singha, as usual, trips.—T.

Draupadi who is truthful in speech and devoted to rigid vows and austerities, prayeth for his success? How wilt thou vanquish that son of Pāndu who hath Janārddana for his counsellor, and who hath for a brother that Dhananjaya who is the foremost of wielders of weapons? How wilt thou vanquish that son of Pāndu, of severe austerities, who hath for his allies so many Brāhmanas endued with intelligence and mastery over their senses? In accordance with what a prosperity-wishing friend should do when he sees his friends sinking in an ocean of distress, I again tell thee, there is no necessity for war! Make peace with those heroes for the sake of prosperity to the Kurus! Do not court defeat, with thy sons, counsellors, and army!'"

SECTION CXXXIX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O Sanjaya, in the midst of all the princes and the servants, the slayer of Madhu took Karna upon his car and went out (of our city)! What did that slayer of hostile heroes, that one of immeasurable soul, say unto Rādhā's son? What conciliatory words did Govinda speak unto the *Suta's* son? Tell me, O Sanjaya, what those words were, mild or fierce, that Krishna possessed of a voice deep as that of newly-risen clouds during the rainy season said unto Karna?'

"Sanjaya said,—'Listen to me, O Bhārata, as I repeat in due order those words, fierce and mild, agreeable and consistent with virtue, true and beneficial, and pleasing to the heart, which the slayer of Madhu, of immeasurable soul, said unto Rādhā's son!*'

---

* The speakers in this Section are, I suspect, wrongly named. What Krishna said unto Karna was all a secret. It was known to Krishna and Karna only, and not to anybody else before the battle, for Krishna here first disclosed to Karna the secret of his birth, and Karna, although he seems to have been aware of it, urged Krishna not to divulge it to Yudhishthira as that, he thought, would prevent Yudhishthira from fighting. How could Krishna's words, therefore, be known to Sanjaya

" 'Vāsudeva said,—O son of Rādhā, thou hast worshipped many Brāhmanas fully conversant with the *Vedas*. With concentrated attention and mind free from envy thou hast also (on many an occasion) enquired of them after truth! Thou knowest, therefore, O Karna, what the eternal sayings of the *Vedas* are! Thou art also well-versed in all the subtile conclusions of the scriptures! It is said by those conversant with the scriptures that the two kinds of sons called *Kānina* and *Sahoda* that are born of a maiden have him for their father who weddeth the maiden.* Thou, O Karna, hast been born in this way. Thou art, therefore, morally the son of Pāndu! Come, be a king, according to the injunction of the scriptures!† On the side of thy father, thou hast the sons of Prithā, on the side of thy mother, thou hast the Vrishnis, (for thy kinsmen). O bull among men, know that thou hast these two for thy own! Proceeding this very day with me hence, O sire, let the Pāndavas know thee as a son of Kunti born before Yudhishthira! Thy brothers the five Pāndavas, the sons of Draupadi, and the invincible son of Subhadrā, will all embrace thy feet! All the kings and princes again that have been assembled for the Pāndava cause, and all the Andhakas and Vrishnis, will also embrace thy feet! Let queens and princesses

---

at this stage of the story? The omniscience of Sanjaya in consequence of which he knew everything about the battle that subsequently took place, was due to a boon of Vyasa. That boon was bestowed upon him sometime after Krishna's departure from Hastinā. I suspect, the real speakers in this dialogue are Vaiçampāyana and Janamejaya. Substitute Janamejaya for Dhritarāshtra and Vaiçampāyana for Sanjaya, and the anomaly noticed would disappear. All the printed and manuscript texts, however, have Dhritarāshtra and Sanjaya as the speakers. I have not, therefore, ventured to make the correction, although I am almost certain that the correction should be made.—T.

* A *Kānina* child is one born of a maiden before her marriage. A *Sahoda* is one begotten on a maiden by somebody but born after the maiden's marriage with some one else. *Vide* the different kinds of sons enumerated in the *Adi Parva*, P. 352.—T.

† *Nigrahāt*, the ablative of *Nigraha*, means *Cāsana*, *i. e.* dictate, injunction, &c. Kali Prasanna Singha misunderstands the word totally, and gives a ridiculous version of the passage.—T.

bring golden and silver and earthen jars (full of water) and deciduous herbs and all kinds of seeds and gems, and creepers, for thy installation !* During the sixth period, Draupadi also will come to thee (as a wife). Let that best of Brāhmanas, Dhaumya, of restrained soul, pour libations of clarified butter on the (sacred) fire, and let those Brāhmanas regarding all the four *Vedas* as authoritative (and who are acting as priests unto the Pāṇḍavas) perform the ceremony of thy installation !† Let the family priest of the Pāndavas who is devoted to *Vedic* rites, and those bulls among men—those brothers the five sons of Pāndu,—and the five sons of Draupadi, and the Pānchālas, and the Cnedis, and myself also, install thee as the lord of the whole Earth ! Let Dharma's son Yudhishthira, of righteous soul and rigid vows, be thy heir-presumptive, ruling the kingdom under thee ! Holding the white *chāmara* in his hand (for fanning thee), let Yudhishthira the son of Kunti ride on the same car behind thee ! After thy installation is over, let that other son of Kunti, the mighty Bhimasena, hold the white umbrella over thy head ! Indeed, Arjuna then will drive thy car furnished with a hundred tinkling bells, its sides covered with tiger skins, and with white steeds harnessed to it ! Then Nakula and Sahadeva, and the five sons of Draupadi, and the Pānchālas with that mighty car-warrior Cikhandi, will all proceed behind thee ! I myself with all the Andhakas and the Vrishnis, will walk behind thee ! Indeed, all the

---

* All these ingredients are used in ceremonies of installation to this day. When again the images of deities are bathed, these very articles are used. They are all placed in jars of water, and with proper *mantras* the water is poured over the head of the person to be installed or over the stone images of gods and goddesses to be vivified for worship. The word which I have rendered 'deciduous herbs' is *oshadhyas* (plural of *oshadhi.*) To this day the *Bunyas* of Indian bazzars sell certain articles under the name of *Sarvaushadhi Mahaushadhi.* I do not know what these are, but have seen them used in many ceremonial rites.—T.

† *Chāturvaidyas Brāhmanas* are those that regard all the four *Vedas* as authoritative. There are others that are *Trivedis*, and others *Dwivedis*, and others *Ekavedis*, and others again as *Anrichs.* *Vide Sanatsujātiya* sections, P. 145.—T.

Dāçārhas and the Daçārnas, will, O king, be numbered with thy relatives! Enjoy the sovereignty of the Earth, O thou of mighty arms, with thy brothers the Pāndavas, with *Yupas* and *homas* and auspicious rites of diverse kinds performed in thy honor! Let the Dravidas, with the Kuntalas, the Āndhras, and the Tālacharas, and let also the Chuchupās, and the Venupas, all walk before thee!* Let chaunters and panegyrists praise thee with innumerable laudatory hymns! Let the Pāndavas proclaim—*Victory to Vasusena!*† Surrounded by the Pāndavas, like the moon by the stars, rule thou the kingdom, O son of Kunti, and galdden Kunti herself! Let thy friends rejoice, and thy enemies grieve! Let there be, this very day, a brotherly union between thee and thy brothers the sons of Pāndu!—' "

SECTION CXL.

" 'Karna said,—Without doubt, O Keçava, thou hast said these words from thy love, affection, and friendship for me, as also in consequence of thy desire of doing me good, O thou of Vrishni's race! I know all that thou hast said unto me! Morally I am the son of Pāndu, as also in consequence of the injunctions of the scriptures, as thou, O Krishna, thinkest! My mother, while a maiden, bore me in her womb, O Janārddana, through her connection with *Surya!* And at the command of Surya himself, she abandoned me as soon as I was born! Even thus, O Krishna, I came into the world! Morally, therefore, I am the son of Pāndu. Kunti, however, abandoned me without thinking of my welfare! The *Suta* Adhiratha, as soon as he beheld me, took me to his home,

---

* The sense is,—"Let these move and act in obedience to thee, and having thee for their commander walking behind them!"—T.

† Vasusena is another name of Karna. In fact, that was his first name. He came to be called *Karna* in consequence of his having cut off with a weapon his natural coat of mail for giving it away to Indra who had begged it of him as alms. He is frequently also called *Rādheya* owing to his having been brought up by Rādhā the wife of the *Suta* king Adhiratha. As the adopted son of the latter, Karna is sometimes called also Adhirathi.—T.

and gave me, O slayer of Madhu, unto (his wife) Rādhā from affection. From her affection for me, Rādhā's breasts were filled with milk that very day, and she, O Mādhava, held my urine and evacuations. How can one like us, conversant with duties and ever engaged in listening to scripture, deprive her of her *Pinda ?** So also Adhiratha of the *Suta* class regardeth me as a son, and I too, from affection, always regard him as (my) father! O Mādhava, that Adhiratha, O Janārddana, from parental affection caused all the rites of infancy† to be performed on my person, according to the rules prescribed in the scriptures. It is that Adhiratha again who caused the name Vasusena to be bestowed upon me by the Brāhmanas.‡ When also I attained to youth, I married wives according to his selection. Through them have been born my sons and grandsons, O Janārddana! My heart also, O Krishna, and all the bonds of affection and love, are fixed on them! From joy or fear, O Govinda, I cannot venture to destroy those bonds even for the sake of the whole Earth or of heaps of gold! In consequence also of my connection with Duryodhana of Dhritarāshtra's race, I have, O Krishna, enjoyed

---

* The cake or ball of rice offered to one's deceased ancestors. Karna, as Rādhā's child, or as one brought up by that lady, was bound to offer her the *Pinda* after her death. The obligation of offering the *pinda* is still a sacred one. The Hindu law of inheritance, to this day, more or less in all the different schools, depends very materially on the doctrine of the *pinda*. Generally speaking, the giver of the *pinda* takes the inheritance.—T.

† These are many and various, beginning with the cutting off of the navel string.—T.

‡ Personal nomenology is not arbitrary in India among the Hindus. To this day it is the family priest, who must be a little of an astrologer, that casts the nativity of every new-born child, and bestows a name, according to certain well-known rules, on the infant in view of the constellations under which the birth takes place. Over this name, called the *Rāçi* name, the bearer has no control, although, sometimes, a different name is also bestowed for purposes of worldly intercourse, by parents and friends according to their own fancy. Marriages, sacred investitures, *çrāddhas*, and other religious rites must be performed in the *Rāçi* name. *Rāçi* is the Sanskrit word for a sign of the Ecliptic.—T.

sovereignty for thirteen years, without a thorn in my side! I have performed many sacrifices, always however in connection with persons of the *Suta* tribe! All my family rites and marriage rites have been performed in connection with *Sutas*. Obtaining me, O Krishna, Duryodhana hath, O thou of Vrishni's race, made these preparations for an armed encounter and provoked hostilities with the sons of Pāndu! And it is for this, O *Achyuta*, that in the battle (that will ensue) I, O Krishna, have been chosen as the great antagonist of Arjuna to advance against him in single combat! For the sake of death, or the ties of blood, or fear, or temptation, I cannot venture, O Janārddana, to behave falsely towards the intelligent son of Dhritarāshtra. If I do not now engage in a single combat with Arjuna, this will, O Hrishikeça, be inglorious for both myself and Pārtha! Without doubt, O slayer of Madhu, thou hast told me all this for doing me good! The Pāndavas also, obedient as they are to thee, will, without doubt, do all that thou hast said! Thou must, however, conceal this our discourse for the present, O slayer of Madhu! Therein lies our benefit, I think, O delighter of all the Yādavas! If king Yudhishthira of virtuous soul and well-controlled senses cometh to know me as the first-born son of Kunti, he will never accept the kingdom! If again, O slayer of Madhu, this mighty and swelling empire becometh mine, I shall, O represser of foes, certainly make it over to Duryodhana only! Let Yudhishthira of virtuous soul become king for ever! He that hath Hrishikeça for his guide, and Dhananjaya and that mighty car-warrior Bhima for his combatants, as also Nakula and Sahadeva and the sons of Draupadi, is fit, O Mādhava, to rule over the whole Earth! Dhrishtadyumna the prince of the Pānchālas, that mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, Uttamaujas, Yudhāmanyu the prince of the Somakas who is devoted to truth, the ruler of the Chedis, Chekitāna, the invincible Cikhandi, the Kekaya brothers all of the hue of *Indragopaka* insects,* Bhima-

* These insects appear in the rainy season, and are of a peculiar red hue. They belong to the *Coccinella* genus.—T.

sena's uncle Kuntibhoja of high soul and possessed of steeds endued with the colors of the rainbow, the mighty car-warrior Cyenajit, Cankha the son of Virāta, and thyself, O Janārddana, like an ocean,*—great is this assemblage, O Krishna, of Kshatriyas (that hath been made of Yudhishthira)! This blazing kingdom, celebrated among all the kings of the earth, is already won (by Yudhishthira).† O thou of Vrishni's race, a great Sacrifice of arms is about to be celebrated by Dhritarāshtra's son! Thou, O Janārddana, wilt be the *Upadrashtri* of that sacrifice. The office of *Adhyaryu*‡ also, O Krishna, in that sacrifice, will be thine! The ape-bannered Vibhatsua accoutred in mail will be the *Hotri*.§ (His bow) *Gāndivā* will be the sacrificial laddle, and the prowess of the warriors will be the clarified butter (that is to be consumed). The weapons called *Aindra*, *Pāçupata*, *Brāhma*, and *Sthunākarna*, applied by Arjuna, will, O Mādhava, be the *mantras* (of that sacrifice). Resembling his father, or, perhaps, excelling him in prowess, Subhadrā's son (Abhimanyu) will be the chief *Vedic* hymn to be chaunted.¶ That destroyer of elephant ranks, that utterer

---

* Nilakantha explains that this means *Nidhiriva akshayas Kàmapurakas*, *i. e.* inexhaustible like the ocean and the grantor of every wish.—T.

† The Burdwan Pundits interpret this *sloka* differently. They think that it refers to Duryodhana and is connected with what follows, and accordingly they render.—"It is true, Duryodhana hath obtained this blazing kingdom &c., &c, but a great Sacrifice &c., &c. will yet take place!"—T.

‡ *Upadrashtri* is he who overlooks and instructs all the priests employed in the sacrifice and assigns to them their duties. He takes the supreme direction in his hands. The *upadrashtri* is emblematic of the Supreme Lord. The *Adhyaryu* is a different person on whom the sacrifice rests as on a basis or foundation. In this case Krishna is both *upadrashtri* (as Supreme overlooker) and *Adhyaryu* or *Brahmā* as the supreme witness.—T.

§ The office of the *Hotri* is to take the supreme direction in the matter of pouring libations on the sacrificial fire.—T.

¶ *Gitàm stotram* is explained by Nilakantha as *Udgātrikam*. Abhimanyu is *not* described here as the *Udgātri*, for that is Bhima, *vide* the next *sloka*. He is, however, the *hymn* that is chaunted by the *Udgātri*,

of fierce roars in battle, that tiger among men, the exceedingly mighty Bhima, will be the *Udgātri* and *Prastotri** in this sacrifice. King Yudhishthira of virtuous soul, ever enjoyed in *Yupa* and *Homa*, will himself be the *Brahman* of that sacrifice.† The sounds of conchs, tabors, and drums, and the leonine roars rising high into the welkin, will be the calls upon the invited to eat.‡ The two sons of Mādri, Nakula and Sahadeva, of great fame and prowess, will be the slayers of the sacrificial animals. Rows of bright cars furnished with standards of variegated hue will, O Govinda, be stakes (for tying the animals), O Janārddana, in this sacrifice! Barbed arrows and *Nālikas*, and long shafts, and arrows with heads like calf's tooth, will play the part of spoons (wherewith to distribute the *Soma* juice),§ while *Tomaras* will be the vessels of *Soma*, and bows will be *pavitras*.¶ The swords will be *Kapālas*, the heads (of slain warriors) the *Purodāças*, and the blood of warriors the clarified butter, O Krishna, in this sacrifice.‖ The lances and bright maces (of the warriors) will

---

the hymn, *viz*, that is of great efficacy and that is supposed to be the very foundation of the merit won at a sacrifice.—T.

* Both imply almost the same function, *viz*, the chaunting of *Vedic* hymns.—T.

† The chief officiating priest who superintends the performance of the *Homa* is called *Brahman*. *Kārayishyati* is (here) *Karishyati*.—T

‡ *Subrahmanya* is the call to the invited guests to eat. Here, in this sacrifice, the guest is Death whose hunger must be appeased. These sounds will play the part of a call or warning to the guest that the feast is ready.—T.

§ *Nālikas* are capable of being identified with some kind of rude muskets. They are described as long cylinders of iron that vomited small pieces of iron. They were never used by brave warriors. The Burdwan Pundits make a mistake about the word *Vatsadanta*. It seems they do not know that it was a kind of weapon. Nilakantha expressly says *Karni-pravritayo-vatsadantāntās*.—T.

¶ *Pavitra* is a couple of *Kuça* leaves or blades, a span long, for sprinkling clarified butter. The bows, because of the weapons shot therefrom, might well be likened to *pavitras*. But why should *Tomaras* which are either iron clubs or crows or lances, be called *Soma*-vessels?—T.

‖ *Kapālas* are earthen vessels for cooking the cakes called *Purodāças*

be pokers (for stirring the sacrificial fire) and the corner stakes (for keeping the fire-wood from falling down). The disciples of Drona and Kripa the son of Caradwat will be the *Sadasyas* (assisting priests). The arrows shot by the wielder of *Gāndiva* and by (other) mighty car-warriors, and by Drona and Drona's son, will play the part of laddles for distributing the *Soma*. Sātyaki will discharge the duties of the chief assistant of the *Adhyaryu*. Of this sacrifice, Dhritarāshtra's son will be installed as the performer, while this vast army will be his wife. O thou of mighty arms, when the nocturnal rites of sacrifice will begin, the mighty Ghatotkacha will play the part of the slayer of (devoted) victims! The mighty Dhrishtadyumna, who sprang into life from the sacrificial fire having for its mouth the rites celebrated with *mantras*, will, O Krishna, be the *Dakshinā* of that sacrifice! For those harsh words, O Krishna, that I said before unto the sons of Pāndu for the gratification of Dhritrāshtra's son,—for that wicked conduct of mine,—I am consumed with repentance! When, O Krishna, thou wilt behold me slain by Arjuna, then will the *Punaçchiti** of this sacrifice commence! When the (second) son of Pāndu will drink the blood of the loudly roaring Dusçāsana, then will the *Soma*-drinking of this sacrifice have taken place! When the two princes of Pānchāla (Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandi) will overthrow Drona and Bhishma, then, O Janārddana, will this sacrifice be suspended for an interval.† When

---

offerable at sacrifices. *Purodaças* are made of clarified butter and powdered barley or other grain. Swords, therefore, are spoken of as such vessels, and the heads of slain combatants as such cakes. T.

* After the completion of a sacrifice, a second part, consisting of some subsidiary rites and ceremonies, begins. This is called *Punaçchiti*.

† *Avasānam* is really conclusion or end. Nilakantha, however, explains it here as "an interval," referring to the intervals during which there is no work in a sacrifice. However well this explanation may accord with the history of the battle as it actually occurred, there is no harm in supposing that Karna here indulges in only a guess and is not endued with prophetic vision. What harm is there, then, in supposing that Karna believes that the sacrifice wil actually terminate with the deaths of Bhishma and Drona? These two were regarded as invancible and undy-

the mighty Bhimasena will slay Duryodhana, then, O Mādhava, will this sacrifice of Dhritarāshtra's son be concluded! When the wives of Dhritarāshtra's sons and grandsons, assembled together, deprived, O Keçava, of their husbands and sons, and without protectors, will indulge in lamentations with Gāndhāri in their midst, on the field of battle haunted by dogs and vultures and other carnivorous birds, then, O Janārddana, will the final bath of this sacrifice take place!

"'—I pray to thee, O bull of the Kshatriya race, let not (these) Kshatriyas, old in learning and old in years, perish miserably, O Janārddana, for thy sake! Oh, let this swelling host of Kshatriyas perish by means of weapons on that most sacred of all spots in the three worlds, *viz*, Kurukshetra, O Keçava! O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, accomplish on this spot what thou hast in thy mind, so that, O thou of Vrishni's race, the whole Kshatriya order may attain to heaven! As long, O Janārddana, as the hills and the rivers will last, so long will the fame of these achievements last! The Brāhmanas will recite this great war of the Bharatas! The fame, O thou of Vrishni's race, that they achieve in battles is the wealth that Kshatriyas own! O Keçava, bring Kunti's son (Arjuna) before me for battle, keeping for ever this our discourse a secret, O chastiser of foes!—'"

SECTION CXLI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing these words of Karna, Keçava, that slayer of hostile heroes, spoke unto him these words smilingly:—Do not the means of winning an empire recommend themselves to thee, O Karna? Wishest thou not to rule over the whole Earth given by me to thee? The victory of the Pāndavas, therefore, is very certain. There seems to be no doubt in this! The triumphal banner of Pāndu's son, with the fierce ape on it, seems to be already set up! The divine artificer, Bhaumana, hath applied such celestial illusion (in its construction) that it standeth high, displayed like

---

ing. For these reasons I think, *Avasānam* means termination, conclusion, end, although I have adopted Nilakantha's explanation in the text.—T.

Indra's banner! Various celestial creatures of terrific shape, indicating victory, are seen on that standard! Extending for a *Yojana* upwards and all around, that beautiful standard of Arjuna, resembling fire in radiance, is never, O Karna, when set up, obstructed by hills or trees! When thou wilt behold in battle Arjuna, on his car drawn by white steeds and driven by Krishna, applying *Aindra* and *Agneya* and *Māruta* weapons, and when thou wilt hear the twang of *Gāndiva* piercing the welkin like the very thunder, then all signs of the *Krita*, the *Tretā*, and the *Dwāpara* ages will disappear (but, instead, *Kali* embodied will be present)! When thou wilt behold in battle Kunti's son, the invincible Yudhishthira, devoted to *Yapa* and *Homa* and resembling the very sun in brilliance, protecting his own mighty army and burning the army of his foes, then all signs of the *Krita*, the *Tretā*, and the *Dwāpara* ages will disappear! When thou wilt behold in battle the mighty Bhimasena dancing, after having quaffed the blood of Dusçāsana, like a fierce elephant with rent temples after having killed a mighty antagonist, then all signs of the *Krita*, the *Tretā*, and the *Dwāpara* ages will disappear! When thou wilt behold in battle Arjuna checking Drona and Cāntanu's son and Kripa and king Suyodhana, and Jayadratha of Sindhu's race, all rushing fiercely to the encounter, then all signs of the *Krita* the *Tretā*, and the *Dwāpara* ages will disappear. When thou wilt behold in battle the two mighty sons of Mādri,—those heroic car-warriors capable of breaking into pieces all hostile cars,—agitating, from the very moment when weapons will begin to clash, the army of Dhritarāshtra's sons like a couple of infuriate elephants, then all signs of the *Krita*, the *Tretā*, and the *Dwāpara* ages will disappear! Returning hence, O Karna, say unto Drona and Cāntanu's son and Kripa that the present month is a delightful one, and that food, drink, and fuel are abundant now! All plants and herbs are vigorous now, all trees are full of fruits, and flies there are none!* The roads are free from mire,

* In certain seasons flies multiply in many parts of India to such a frightful extent as to become an unbearable pest.—T

and the waters are of agreeable taste. The weather is neither very hot nor very cold and is, therefore, highly pleasant.* Seven days after, will be the day of the new moon. Let the battle commence then, for that day, it hath been said, is presided over by Indra! Say also unto all the kings that have come for battling that I will fully accomplish the desire that is cherished by them! Indeed, all the kings and princes that are obedient to the orders of Duryodhana, obtaining death by weapons, will attain to an excellent state!—'"

SECTION CXLII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing these beneficial and auspicious words of Keçava, Karna worshipped Krishna the slayer of Madhu and said these words:—Knowing (every thing), why dost thou yet, O thou of mighty arms, seek to beguile me? The destruction of the whole Earth that is at hand hath for its cause, Cakuni, and myself, and Duscāsana, and king Duryodhana the son of Dhritarāshtra. Without doubt, O Krishna, a great and fierce battle is at hand between the Pāndavas and the Kurus which will cover the earth with bloody mire! All the kings and princes following the lead of Duryodhana, consumed by the fire of weapons, will proceed to the abode of Yama! Diverse frightful visions are seen, O slayer of Madhu, and many terrible portents, and fierce disturbances also! All these omens, making the bristles (of the spectators) stand on their ends, indicate, O thou of Vrishni's race, the defeat of Dhritarāshtra's son and the victory of Yudhishthira! That

---

* All the adjectives in this *sloka* qualify *māsas*. When the month, therefore, is described as *nishpankas*, there can be no doubt that the roads are referred to. Kally Prasanna Singha erroneously supposes it to be an adjective of *toyas*. The grammar, in that case, would be incorrect. If read *Nishpanka* (without the *Visarga* which is changed into *O* by the rule of *sandhi*), the metre would be defective. The Burdwan Pandits, though right here, stumble at the next adjective and render it wrongly. *Nàtyushna-çiçiras* is, as I have rendered it, "neither very hot nor very cold.'—'T.

fierce planet of great effulgence, *Çanaiçchara* (Saturn), is afflicting the constellation called *Rohini*,* in order to afflict greatly the creatures of the Earth! The planet *Angāraka* (Mars), wheeling, O slayer of Madhu, towards the constellation *Jeshthyā*, approacheth towards *Anurādhā*, indicating a great slaughter of friends! Without doubt, O Krishna, a terrible calamity approacheth the Kurus when specially, O thou of Vrishni's race, the planet *Mahāpat* afflicteth the constellation *Chitrā!* The spot on the lunar disc hath changed its position; and *Rāhu* also approacheth towards the sun! Meteors are falling from the sky with loud noise and trembling motion! The elephants are sending forth frightful cries, while the steeds, O Mādhava, are shedding tears without taking any delight in food and drink! They have said, O thou of mighty arms, that on the appearance of these portents, a terrible calamity approacheth, productive of a great slaughter! O Keçava, amongst the steeds, elephants, and soldiers, in all the divisions of Duryodhana's army, it is seen, O slayer of Madhu, that while small is the food these take, ample is the excreta they evacuate! The wise have said that this is an indication of defeat! The elephants and steeds of the Pāndavas, O Krishna, all seem to be cheerful, while all the animals wheel along their right. This also is an indication of their success! The same animals, O Keçava, pass by the left side of Duryodhana's army; while incorporeal voices are constantly heard (over their head). All this is an indication of defeat! All auspicious birds, such as peacocks, swans, cranes, *Chātakas*, *Jivajivas*,† and large flights of *Vakas*, follow the Pāndavas, while vultures, *Kankas*, *Bakas*, hawks, *Rākshasas*, wolves, and bees, in flights and herds, follow the Kauravas! The drums in the army of Dhritarāshtra's son yield no sounds, while those of the Pāndavas, yield sounds without being struck. The wells in the midst of Duryodhana's encampment send

---

* The fourth lunar asterism consisting of probably five stars. So *Jeshthyā*, *Anurādhā* and *Chitrā* are other asterisms of a smilar nature.—T.

† A species of pheasants crying *Jiva*, *Jiva*, *i. e*, live live,—T.

forth loud roars like those of huge bulls. All this is an indication of defeat! The gods are showering flesh and blood, O Mādhava, on Duryodhana's soldiers! Vapoury edifices of great effulgence with high walls, deep trenches, and handsome porchs, are suddenly appearing in the skies (over the Kuru encampment)! A black circle surrounding the solar disc appears to the view. Both twilights at sun-rise and sun-set indicate great terrors! The jackals yell hideously! All this is an indication of defeat! Diverse birds, each having but one wing, one eye, and one leg, utter terrible cries! All this, O slayer of Madhu, indicates defeat! Fierce birds with black wings and red legs hover over the Kuru encampment at nightfall! All this is an indication of defeat! The soldiers of Duryodhana betray hatred for Brāhmanas first, and then for their preceptors, and then for all their affectionate servants. The eastern horizon (of Duryodhana's encampment) appeareth red; the southern, of the hue of weapons; and the western, O slayer of Madhu, of an earthy hue! All the quarters around Duryodhana's encampment seem, O Mādhava, to be ablaze! In the appearance of all these portents, great is the danger that is indicated!

"'—I have in a vision, O Achyuta, beheld Yudhishthira ascending with his brothers a palace supported by a thousand columns! All of them appeared with white head-gears and in white robes! And all of them appeared to me to be seated on white seats! In the midst of the same vision, thou, O Janārddana, wast beheld by me to be employed in enveloping the blood-dyed earth with weapons! Yudhishthira at the same-time, of immeaurable energy, ascending upon a heap of bones, was gladly eating buttered *pāyasa** off a golden cup! I further beheld Yudhishthira to be employed in swallowing the earth handed over to him by thee! This indicates that he will verily rule the earth. I beheld that tiger among men, Vrikodara, of fierce deeds, standing on the summit, mace in hand, and as if swallowing this earth! This plainly indicates that

* Rice boiled in milk with sugar. It is generally the last dish in a Hindu feast.—T.

he will slay all of us in fierce battle. It is known to me, O lord of the senses, that victory is there where righteousness is! I saw also Dhananjaya, the wielder of *Gāndiva*, seated on the back of a white elephant, with thee, O lord of the senses, and blazing forth with great beauty! I have no doubt, O Krishna, that ye will slay in battle all the kings headed by Duryodhana! I saw Nakula and Sahadeva and that mighty car-warrior Sātyaki adorned with white bracelets, white curasses,* white garlands, and white robes! These tigers among men were seated upon excellent vehicles borne on the shoulders of men. And I saw that umbrellas were held over the heads of all the three! Amongst the soldiers of Dhritarāshtra's son, these three, O Janārddana, were beheld by me decked with white head-gears. Know, O Keçava, that those three were Açwatthāman, Kripa, and Kritavarman of Sāttwata's race! All other kings, O Mādhava, were seen by me to have blood-red head-gears. I saw also, O thou of mighty arms, that those mighty car-warriors, Bhishma and Drona, ascending on a vehicle drawn by camels, and accompanied by myself and Dhritarāshtras's son, proceeded, O lord, to the quarter, O Janārddana, ruled by Agastya.† This indicates that we shall

---

* The word in the original is *Kanthatra*, literally anything that protects the neck. It was probably some kind of breast-plate or curass reaching high up the neck also, or probably not reaching far down the breast.—T.

† *I. e*, the southern quarter, which is Yama's own. The southern is called Agastya's quarter in consequence of a somewhat remarkable myth. It is said that at one time the mountain *Vindhya* increased his body to such an extent as to obstruct the course of the Sun. The gods were alarmed, and in their distress applied to the sage Agastya who was the preceptor of Vindhya. Agastya, who dwelt in Northern India, resolved to proceed to the south. And as he set out and reached the foot of Vindhya, the latter, beholding his venerable preceptor, bowed down his head for worshipping him. Agastya asked him to stay in that posture till he came back. And as he never came back but took up his permanent abode in the forest of Dandaka in the south, Vindhya has ever since been obliged to stay in that posture to the relief of all the creatures of the Earth.—T

soon have to proceed to Yama's abode! I have no doubt that myself and the other kings, indeed, the entire assemblage of Kshatriyas, shall have to enter into the *Gāndiva* fire!'—

"'Krishna said,—Indeed, the destruction of the Earth is at hand when my words, O Karna, do not become acceptable to thy heart! O sire, when the destruction of all creatures approacheth, wrong assuming the semblance of right leaveth not the heart!*

"'Karna said,—If, O Krishna, we come out of this great battle that will be so destructive of heroic Kshatriyas, with life, then, O thou of mighty arms, may we meet here again! Otherwise, O Krishna, we shall certainly meet in heaven! O sinless one, it seemeth to me now that there only it is possible for us to meet!'—

"Sanjaya said,—'Having spoken these words, Karna tightly pressed Mādhava to his bosom. Dismissed by Keçava, he then descended from the car. And riding on his own car decked with gold, Rādhā's son, greatly dejected, came back with us!'"

SECTION CXLIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Upon the failure of Krishna's solicitations (for peace), and after he had started for the Pāndavas from the Kurus, Kshatri approached Prithā and said these words slowly in grief:—'O mother of living children, thou knowest that my inclination is always for peace, and although I cry myself hoarse, yet Suyodhana doth not accept my words! King Yudhishthira, having the Chedis, the Pānchālas, and the Kekayas, Bhima and Arjuna, Krishna, Yuyudhāna, and the twins, for his allies, stayeth yet at Upaplavya, and from affection for kinsmen, looketh up to righteousness only, like a weak man, though he is possessed of great strength! King Dhritarāshtra here, though old in years, doth not affect peace, and intoxicated with pride of children, treadeth in a sinful path! In consequence of the wickedness of Jayadratha and Karna and Duççāsana and Suvala's son, intestine dissensions

---

* *I. e.* continues to adhere to the heart.—T.

will break out. They that behave unrighteously towards him that is righteous, verily, that sin* of theirs soon produceth its consequences! Who is there that will not be filled with sorrow at the sight of the Kurus persecuting righteousness in this way! When Keçava returneth without being able to bring about peace, the Pāndavas will certainly address themselves for battle! Thereupon, the sin of the Kurus will lead to a destruction of heroes! Reflecting on all this, I do not get sleep by day or by night!'

"Hearing these words uttered by Viḍura who always wished her sons the accomplishment of their objects,† Kunti began to sigh heavily, afflicted with grief, and began to think within herself,—'Fie to wealth, for the sake of which this great slaughter of kinsmen is about to take place! Indeed, in this war, they that are friends will sustain defeat.‡ What can be a greater grief than this that the Pāndavas, the Chedis, the Pānchālas, and the Yādavas, assembled together, will fight with the Bharatas? Verily, I behold demerit in war! (On the other hand) if we do not fight, poverty and humiliation would be ours! As regards the person that is poor, even death is beneficial (to him)! (On the other hand) the extermination of one's kinsmen is not victory!§ As I reflect

---

* *Dharmas* used ironically. Or, it may mean, conduct.—T.

† *Arthakāmena* refers here to Vidura, and is explained by Nilakantha to mean *Hitakāmena*.—T.

‡ What Kunti says is this,—War takes place between foes, and not friends. Here, it is friends between whom there will be hostilities. One side is surely to be defeated; but who are they? Are they not friends that will suffer defeat, whichever the party be?—T.

§ Kally Prasanna Singha makes a mess of this beautiful *sloka*. It is not possible that he adopts a different reading, for all the texts read this *sloka* alike. The Roy Press edition has three misprints; first *Paçya* for *pṛçye*, and *yathā* for *tathā*, and a space between *yathà* and *yuddhe*, concealing the *sandhi*, for the word is not *yuddhe* but *ayuddhe*. The contrasts are pointed, for what Kunti says is,—'In *yuddha* there is demerit, in *ayuddha* is humiliation (so far as we are concerned). Poverty, again, is worse than death; while affluence won by slaughtering kinsmen is not desirable. The Burdwan Pundits are, of course, right.—T.

on this, my heart swelleth with sorrow. The grandsire (Bhishma) the son of Cāntanu, the preceptor (Drona) who is the foremost of warriors, and Karna, having embraced Duryodhana's side, enhance my fears! The preceptor Drona, it seemeth to me, will never fight willingly against his disciples. As regards the grandsire, why will he not show some affection for the Pāndavas? There is only this sinful Karna then, of deluded understanding and ever following the deluded lead of the wicked Duryodhana, that hateth the Pāndavas! Obstinately pursuing that which injureth the Pāndavas, this Karna is again very powerful! It is this which burneth me at present. Proceeding to gratify him I will today disclose the truth and seek to draw his heart towards the Pāndavas! Pleased with me while I was living in the inner apartments of the palace of my father Kuntibhoja, the holy Durvāsas gave me a boon in the form of an invocation consisting of *mantras*. Long reflecting with a trembling heart on the strength or weakness of those *mantras* and the power also of the Brāhmana's words, and in consequence also of my disposition as a woman and my nature as a girl of unripe years, deliberating repeatedly, and while guarded by a confidential nurse and surrounded by my waiting-maids, and thinking also of how to incur no reproach, how to maintain the honor of my father, and how I myself might have an accession of good fortune without being guilty of any transgression, I at last remembered that Brāhmana and bowed to him, and having obtained that *mantra*, from excess of curiosity and from folly I summoned, during my maidenhood, the god *Surya!* He, therefore, who was held in my womb during my maidenhood,—why should not *he*,—obey my words that are certainly acceptable and beneficial to his brothers?'—And reflecting in this strain, Kunti formed an excellent resolution. And having formed that resolution she went to the sacred stream called after Bhagiratha.* And having reached the banks of *Gangā*, Prithā

* The *Ganges* or *Gangā*, brought down to the Earth by Bhagiratha of the Solar race for the salvation of his ancestors, the sixty thousand sons of king Sagara, reduced to ashes by the curse of the sage *Kapila*.—T.

heard the chaunt of *Vedic* hymns by her son endued with great kindness and firmly devoted to truth. And as Karna stood with face directed to the East and arms upraised, the helpless Kunti, for the sake of her business, stayed behind him, waiting the completion of his prayers. And that lady of Vrishni's race, that wife of Kuru's house, afflicted by the heat of the sun, began to look like a faded garland of lotuses. And at last she stood in the shade afforded by the upper garments of Karna. And Karna, of regulated vows, said his prayers until his back became heated by the rays of the sun. Then turning behind, he beheld Kunti and was filled with surprise. And saluting her in proper form and with joined palms, that foremost of virtuous persons, endued with great energy and pride, *viz*, Vrisha the son of Vikartana, bowed to her and said (the following words)!'*

SECTION CXLIV.

"Karna said,—'I am Karna the son of Rādhā and Adhiratha. For what, O lady, hast thou come here! Tell me what I am to do for thee!'

"Kunti said,—'Thou art Kunti's son, and not Rādhā's! Nor is Adhiratha thy father! Thou, O Karna, art not born in the *Suta* order! Believe what I say! Thou wert brought forth by me while a maiden. I held thee first in my womb. O son, thou wert born in the palace of Kuntirāja! O Karna, that divine Surya who blazeth forth in light and maketh everything visible, O foremost of all wielders of weapons, begat thee upon me! O irresistible one, thou, O son, wert brought forth by me in my father's abode, decked with (natural) earring's and accoutred in a (natural) coat of mail and blazing forth in beauty! That thou, without knowing thy brothers, shouldst, therefore, from ignorance, wait upon Dhritarāshtra's

---

* *Utsmayan* is explained by Nilakantha as *Udgatavismayas*. *Vrisha*, of course, is one of the many names by which Karna was known. "Until his back was heated by the rays of the sun,"—this implies that Karna said his prayers till the Sun passed the meridian.—T.

son, is not proper! It is improper in thee especially, O son! The gratification of one's fathers and one's mother who is the sole displayer of affection (for her child), hath, O son, in the matter of ascertaining the duties of men, been declared to be the highest of all duties! Acquired before by Arjuna, the prosperity of Yudhishthira hath, from avarice, been wrested by wicked persons! Snatching it back from Dhritarāshtra's sons, do thou enjoy that prosperity! Let the Kurus behold today the union of Karna and Arjuna! Beholding thee and thy brother united together in bonds of brotherly love, let those wicked persons bow down unto ye! Let Karna and Arjuna be named in the same breath as Rāma and Janārddana are! If you two are united together, what is that which cannot be accomplished in the world? O Karna, surrounded by thy brothers, thou wilt, without doubt, blaze like Brāhman himself surrounded by the gods on the platform of a great sacrifice! Endued with every virtue, thou art the first of all my relatives! Let not the epithet—*Suta's son*—attach to thee! Thou art a *Pārtha*, endued with great energy!"

SECTION CXLV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"(After Kunti had said this), Karna heard an affectionate voice issued out of the solar circle. Coming from a great distance, that voice was uttered by *Surya* himself with paternal affection. (And it said)—'The words said by Prithā are true. O Karna, act according to the words of thy mother! O tiger among men, great good will result to thee if thou fully followest those words!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Though thus addressed by his mother, and by also his father *Surya* himself, Karna's heart did not yet waver, for he was firmly devoted to truth. And he said,—'O Kshatriya lady, I cannot admit what thou hast said, *viz*, that obedience to thy commands constituteth (in my case) the highest of my duties.* O mother, I was abandoned by thee as soon as I was born! This great injury, involving risk to life itself, that thou didst me hath been

---

* *Dharmadwārm*, literally—"the gates of *Dharma*."—T.

destructive of my achievements and fame! If, indeed, I am a Kshatriya, I have, for thee, been deprived of all the rites of a Kshatriya! What enemy would have done me a greater injury? Without showing me mercy when thou shouldst have shown it, and having kept me divested of all the rites (that are obligatory in consequence of the order of my birth), thou wouldst, however, lay thy commands on me today! Thou hadst never before sought my good as a mother should. Thou addressest me today, however, desiring to do good to thyself! Who is there that would not be afraid of Dhananjaya having Krishna with him (for the driver of his car)? If, therefore, I go today unto the Pārthas, who is there that would not regard me as doing so from fright? Hitherto nobody knew me to be their brother. If, giving out on the eve of battle that I am their brother, I go to the Pāndavas, what would all the Kshatriyas say? Furnished with every object of desire, and worshipped by them with a view to make me happy, how can I render that worship of Dhritarāshtra's sons utterly futile? Having provoked hostilities with others, they always wait on me respectfully, and always bow down to me as the Vasus bow down to Vāsava! They think that aided by my might, they are capable of encountering the foe. How can I then frustrate that cherished hope of theirs? With me as their boat, they desire to cross the impassable ocean of battle! How can I then abandon them that are desirous of crossing that ocean which hath no other ferry? This is the time when all those that have been supported by Dhritarāshtra's sons should exert themselves for their masters! I shall certainly act for them, reckless of even my life! Those sinful men of unsteady heart, who, well-fed and well-furnished (with every necessary) by their masters, undo the benefit received by them when the time cometh for paying back those benefits,—verily, those sinful men, those faithless servants of kings, those thieves of their master's cakes,*—have neither this nor the other world for

* *Bhatripindāpahāri*—*Vide* note *Supra* p. There is another very expressive Urdu word current in all parts of India bearing the same sense. It is *Nimakhārām* or "untrue to (the master's) salt."—

them! I will not speak deceitfully unto thee. For the sake of Dhritarāshtra's son, I shall fight with thy sons to the best of my strength and might! I must not, however, abandon kindness and the conduct that becometh the good. Thy words, therefore, however beneficial, cannot be obeyed by me now! This thy solicitation to me will not yet be fruitless. Except Arjuna, thy other sons, Yudhishthira, Bhima, and the twins, though capable of being withstood by me in fight and capable also of being slain, shall not yet be slain by me! It is with Arjuna alone, among all the combatants of Yudhishthira, that I will fight! Slaying Arjuna in battle I shall achieve great merit, or slain by Savyasāchin I shall be covered with glory! O famous lady, the number of thy sons will never be less than five. Five it will always be either without Arjuna and with me, or with Arjuna and myself slain!'

"Hearing these words of Karna, Kunti who was trembling with grief, embraced her son who was unmoved in consequence of his fortitude, and said,—'Indeed, O Karna, even what thou sayest seemeth to be possible. The Kauravas will certainly be exterminated. Destiny is all powerful. Thou hast, however, O grinder of foes, granted to four of thy brothers the pledge of safety. Let that pledge be borne in thy remembrance during the shooting of weapons in battle!' And having told all this, Prithā also addressed Karna, saying,—'Blessed be thou, and let health be thine!'—And Karna replied unto her, saying,—'Be it so!' And they then left the spot, wending in different directions."

SECTION CXLVI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Coming back to Upaplavya from Hāstinapura, that chastiser of foes, Keçava, represented unto the Pāndavas all that had happened. And conferring with them for a long space of time, and holding repeated consultations, Cauri went to his own quarters for rest. And dismissing all the kings with Virāta and others at their head, the five brothers—the Pāndavas—when the sun had set, said their

evening prayers.* And with hearts ever fixed on Krishna, they began to think of him. And at last bringing Krishna of Daçārha's race into their midst, they began to deliberate again about what they should do. And Yudhishthira said,—'O thou of eyes like lotus petals, it behoveth thee to tell us all that thou saidst unto Dhritarāshtra's son in the assembly (of the Kurus), having gone to Nāgapura!' Vāsudeva said,—'Having gone to Nāgapura, I addressed Dhritarāshtra's son in the assembly such words as were true, seasonable, and beneficial! That wicked-minded wight did not, however, accept them!'

"Yudhishthira said,—"When Duryodhana desired to tread along the wrong path, what did the aged Kuru grandsire say, O Hrishikeça, unto that vindictive prince? What also did the highly-blessed preceptor—the son of Bharadwāja—say? And what did his parents Dhritarāshtra and Gāndhāri say? What did our junior father Kshattri, who is the foremost of all persons conversant with virtue and who is always afflicted with sorrow on account of ourselves whom he regards as his sons, say unto Dhritarāshtra's son? What also did all the kings who sat in that assembly say? O Janārddana, say it all unto us, exactly as it happened! Thou hast already told us all the disagreeable words that the two Kuru chiefs (Bhishma and Dhritarāshtra) and others in that assembly of the Kurus said unto the wicked Duryodhana who is overwhelmed with lust and covetousness and who regardeth himself wise! Those words, however, O Keçava, have flitted away from my memory! O Govinda, I desire to hear, O lord, all those words again! Act thou in such a way that the opportunity may not pass away! Thou, O Krishna, art our refuge, thou art our lord, and thou art our guide!'

"Vāsudeva said,—'Hear, O king, the words that were addressed to king Suyodhana in the midst of the assembly of the Kurus, and, O king of kings, bear them in thy mind! After my words were ended, Dhritarāshtra's son laughed aloud. Highly incensed at this, Bhishma then said,—Hear, O Duryodhana, what I say for (the preservation of) our race,

* Literally, "worshipped the evening twilight."—T

and having heard it, O tiger among kings, do what is beneficial to thy own house! O sire, O king, my father Cāntanu, was widely known in the world. I was at first his only son. A desire sprung up in his heart as to how he might obtain a second son, for the wise say that an only son is no son.—*Let not my race be extinct! How may my fame be spread!*—Even this was his desire. Knowing this to have been his desire, I procured Kāli* to become my mother, having myself made a promise highly difficult to observe, for the sake of my father as also for the sake of our race. How in consequence of that promise I could not be king and have drawn up my vital seed, are, of course, well-known to thee! (I do not grieve for that). Observing that vow of mine, behold, I am living in happiness and joy! In her, O king, was born my younger brother, that mighty-armed and handsome supporter of Kuru's race, *viz.* Vichitravirya of virtuous soul! After my father's ascension to heaven I installed Vichitravirya as ruler of the kingdom that was mine, while I placed myself under him as a servant of his. O king of kings, I then brought him suitable wives, having vanquished many assembled monarchs. Thou hast heard of it often. Sometime after I was engaged in a single combat with the (great) Rāma.† From fear of Rāma, my brother fled, the more so as his subjects deserted him.‡ During this period he became very much attached to his wives and accordingly had an attack of pthisis. Upon his death there was anarchy in the kingdom and the chief of the gods poured not a drop of rain (on the realm). The subjects then, afflicted by fear of hunger, hastened to me, and said,—Thy subjects are on the point of being exterminated! Be thou our king for the sake of our good! Dispel this drought § Blessed be thou, O perpetuator

* Otherwise called Gandhakáli, Satyavati, Matsyagandhā, *Yojanagandhā*, &c.,—T.

† Jamadagni's son who had exterminated the Kshatriya race one and twenty times; who had taught Bhishma the use of weapons; and from whom Drona had obtained many of his weapons.—T.

‡ I think Nilakantha explains this rightly. *Vipravāsita* is exiled.—T.

§ Drought, inundation, locusts, &c., are known by the name of *Iti*. Here, however, it is drought that is implied by the word.—T.

of Cāntanu's race! Thy subjects are being greatly afflicted by severe and frightful maladies. Very few of them are still alive! It behoveth thee, O son of Gangā, to save them! Dispel thee tortures! O hero, cherish thy subjects righteously! When thou art alive, let not the kingdom go to destruction!—Hearing these words of theirs uttered in a weeping tone, my heart was undisturbed! Remembering the behaviour of the good, I desired to maintain my vow. Then, O king, the citizens, my auspicious mother Kāli herself, our servants, the priests and the preceptors (of our house), and many Brāhmanas of great learning, all afflicted with great woe, solicited me to occupy the throne. And they said,—When thou art alive, shall the kingdom ruled by Pratipa (of old) go to ruin? O thou of magnanimous heart, be thou the king for our good!—Thus addressed by them, I joined my hands together and, myself filled with grief and greatly afflicted, I represented to them the vow I had made from filial respect. I repeatedly informed them that for the sake of our race I had vowed to live with vital seed drawn up and foreswearing the throne. It was especially for my mother again that I did so. I, therefore, begged them not to put me to the yoke. I again joined my hands and conciliated my mother, saying, O mother, begot by Cāntanu and being a member of Kuru's race, I cannot falsify my promise!—I repeatedly told her this! And O king, I said further,—It is for thee especially, O mother, that I took this vow! I am verily thy servant and slave, O mother, O thou that art distinguished for parental affection! —Having begged my mother and the people thus, I then solicited the great sage Vyasa for begetting children upon the wives of my brother! Indeed, O king, both myself and my mother gratified that *Rishi*. At last, O king, the *Rishi* granted our prayers in the matter of the children. And he begot three sons in all, O best of Bharata's race! Thy father was born blind, and in consequence of this congenital defect of a sense, he could not become king. The high-souled and celebrated Pāndu became king. And when Pāndu became king, his sons must obtain their paternal inheritance. O sire, do not quarrel, give them half the kingdom! When I am alive, what

other man is competent to reign ? Do not disregard my words. I only wish that there should be peace amongst you. O sire, O king, I make no distinction between thee and them (but love all of you equally) ! What I have said unto thee represents also the opinion of thy father, of Gāndhāri, and also of Vidura ! The words of those that are old should always be listened to. Do not disregard these words of mine ! Do not destroy all thou hast and the Earth also !—' "

SECTION CXLVII.

"Vāsudeva said,—'After Bhishma had said these words, Drona, always competent to speak, then addressed Duryodhana in the midst of the (assembled) monarchs and said these words that are beneficial to thee ! And he said,—O sire, as Pratipa's son Cāntanu was devoted to the welfare of his race, and as Devavrata, otherwise called Bhishma, was devoted to the welfare of his race, so was the royal Pāndu, that king of the Kurus, who was firmly devoted to truth, who had his passions under control, who was virtuous, of excellent vows, and attentive to all duties ! (Though king by right) that perpetuator of Kuru's race yet made over the sovereignty to his elder brother Dhritarāshtra endued with great wisdom, and to his younger brother *Kshattri* (Vidura). And placing this Dhritarāshtra of unfading glory on the throne, that royal son of Kuru's race went to the woods with his two wives. And that tiger among men, Vidura, with great humility, placing himself in subjection to Dhritarāshtra, began to wait on him like a slave, fanning him with the branch of a young palm. And all the subjects then, O sire, duly tendered their submission to king Dhritarāshtra just as they had done to king Pāndu himself. And having made over the kingdom to Dhritarāshtra and Vidura, that conqueror of hostile cities, Pāndu, wandered over the whole Earth. Always devoted to truth, Vidura then took charge of the finances, gifts, superintendence of the servants (of the State), and the feeding of all ; while that conqueror of hostile cities, Bhishma of mighty energy, supervised the making of war and peace and the necessity of making or with-

holding gifts to kings. When king Dhritarāshtra of great strength was on the throne, the high-souled Vidura was ever near him! Born in Dhritarāshtra's race, how dost thou venture to bring about a disunion in thy family? Uniting with thy brothers (the Pāndavas), enjoy all objects of enjoyment, O king! I do not say this to you from cowardice, nor for the sake of wealth. I am enjoying the wealth that Bhishma gave me, and not thou, O best of kings! I do not desire, O king, to have from thee my means of sustenance! Where Bhishma is, there Drona must be! Do what Bhishma hath told thee! O grinder of foes, give unto the sons of Pāndu half the kingdom! O sire, I acted as their preceptor as much as thine Indeed, even as Açwatthāman is to me, so is Arjuna of white steeds! What use is there of much declamation? Victory is there where righteousness is!—'

"Vāsudeva continued,—'After Drona of immeasurable energy had said this, the virtuous Vidura then, O king, who is devoted to truth, said these words, turning towards his father (Bhishma) and looking at his face! And Vidura said,—O Devavrata, attend to the words I speak! This race of Kuru, when it became extinct, was revived by thee! Is it for this that thou art indifferent to my lamentations now? In this our race who is this Duryodhana, its stain, whose inclinations are followed by thee although he is enslaved by avarice, and is wicked and ungrateful and deprived of his senses by lust! The Kurus will certainly be exterminated in consequence of the acts of that Duryodhana who transgresseth the commands of his father observant of virtue and profit! O great king, act thou so that the Kurus may not perish! Like a painter producing a picture, it was thou, O king, who hadst caused me and Dhritarāshtra to spring into life!* The Creator, having created creatures, destroys them again! Dot not act like him! Seeing before thy very eyes this extinction of thy race, be not indifferent to it! If, however, thy understand-

* The meaning seems to be, that do not, like a painter destroying the creations of his own pencil, destroy us now, but see that those whom thou hadst created may yet live!—T.

ing is gone in consequence of the universal slaughter that is at hand, go then to the woods, taking me and Dhritarāshtra with thee! Otherwise, binding this very day the wicked Duryodhana that hath deceit for his wisdom, rule this kingdom with the sons of Pāndu guarding it around! Relent, O tiger among kings! A great slaughter is before us of the Pāndavas, the Kurus, and of other kings of immeasurable-energy —!'

"'Having said this, Vidura ceased, his heart overflowing with sorrow. And reflecting on the matter, he began to draw repeated sighs. Then the daughter of king Suvala, alarmed at the prospect of the destruction of a whole race, said, from wrath, these words fraught with virtue and profit, to the cruel Duryodhana of wicked heart, in the presence of the assembled monarchs.—Let all the kings present in this royal assembly and let the regenerate *Rishis* that form the other members of this conclave, listen (to me) as I proclaim the guilt of thy sinful self backed by all thy counsellors!* The kingdom of the Kurus is enjoyable in due order of succession. Even this hath always been the custom of our race! Of sinful soul and exceedingly wicked in acts, thou seekest the destruction of the Kuru kingdom by thy unrighteousness. The wise Dhritarāshtra is in possession of the kingdom, having Vidura of great foresight under him (as his adviser). Passing over these two, why, O Duryodhana, dost thou, from delusion, covet the sovereignty now? Even the high-souled king and Kshattri, when Bhishma is alive, should both be subordinate to him. Indeed, this foremost of men, this offspring of Gangā, the high-souled Bhishma, in consequence of his righteousness, doth not desire the sovereignty. It is for this reason that this invincible kingdom became Pāndu's. His sons, therefore, are masters today and no others. This extensive kingdom, then, by paternal right, belongeth to the Pāndavas, and their sons and grandsons in due order. Observing the customs

---

* *Sāmītyaparicchadasya* is literally "with thy counsellers forming thy garments." Kālidāsa uses "*Senā-paricchadas*" in his *Raghuvança*, Canto I, *sloka* 19.—T.

of our race and the rule with respect to our kingdom, we must all fully accomplish that which this high-souled and wise chief of the Kurus, Devavrata, firmly adhering to truth, sayeth! Let this king (Dhritarāshtra) and Vidura also, at the command of Bhishma of great vows, proclaim the same thing! Even that isan act that should be done by those that are well-wishers (of this race)! Keeping virtue in front, let Yudhishthira thes on of Dharma, guided by king Dhritarāshtra and urged by Cāntanu's son, rule for many long years this kingdom of the Kurus lawfully obtainable by him!—' "

SECTION CXLVIII.

"Vāsudeva said,—'After Gāndhāri had said this, that ruler of men, Dhritarāshtra, then said these words unto Duryodhana in the midst of the (assembled) monarchs:—O Duryodhana, listen, O son, to what I say, and blessed be thou, do that if thou hast any respect for thy father! The lord of creatures, *Soma*, was the original progenitor of the Kuru race. Sixth in descent from Soma was Yayāti the son of Nahusha. Yayāti had five best of royal sages for his sons. Amongst them, the lord Yadu of mighty energy was the eldest-born. Younger to Yadu was Puru who was our progenitor, brought forth by Carmishthā the daughter of Vrishaparvan. Yadu, O best of the Bharatas, was born of Devayāni and, therefore, O sire, was the daughter's-son of Cukra, otherwise called Kāvya, of immeasurable energy. Endued with great strength and prowess, that progenitor of the Yādavas, filled with pride and possessed of wicked understanding, humiliated all the Kshatriyas. Intoxicated with pride of strength, he obeyed not the injunctions of his father. Invincible in battle, he insulted his father and his brothers. On this earth girt on four sides by the sea, Yadu became all powerful, and reducing all to subjection, he established himself in this city called after the elephant. His father Yayāti the son of Nahusha, enraged with him, cursed that son of his, and, O son of Gāndhāri, even expelled him from the kingdom! The angry Yayāti also cursed those brothers of Yadu who were obedient to that eldest

brother of theirs who was so proud of his strength. And having cursed these his sons, that best of kings placed on his throne his youngest son Puru who was docile and obedient to him. Thus even the eldest son may be passed over and deprived of the kingdom, and younger sons may, in consequence of their respectful behaviour to the aged, obtain the kingdom! So also, conversant with every virtue, there was my father's grandfather, king Pratipa, who was celebrated over the three worlds. Unto that lion among kings who ruled his kingdom virtuously were born three sons of great fame and resembling three gods. Of them, Devāpi was the eldest, Vālhika the next, and Cāntanu of great intelligence, who, O sire, was my grandfather, was the youngest. Devāpi, endued with great energy was virtuous, truthful in speech, and ever engaged in waiting upon his father. But that best of kings had a skin-disease.* Popular with both the citizens and the subjects of the provinces, respected by the good, and dearly loved by the young and the old, Devāpi was liberal, firmly adhering to truth, engaged in the good of all creatures, and obedient to the instructions of his father as also of the Brāhmanas. He was dearly loved by his brother Vālhika as also the high-souled Cāntanu. Great, indeed, was the brotherly love that prevailed between him and his high-souled brothers. In course of time the old and best of kings, Pratipa, caused all preparations to be made according to the scriptures for the installation of Devāpi (on the throne). Indeed, the lord Pratipa caused every auspicious preparation. The installation of Devāpi, however, was forbidden by the Brāhmanas and all aged persons amongst the citizens and the inhabitants of the provinces. Hearing that the installation of his son was forbidden, the voice of the old king became choked with tears and he began to grieve for his son. Thus though Devāpi was liberal, virtuous, devoted to truth, and loved by the subjects, yet in consequence of his skin-disease he was excluded from his inheritance. The gods do not approve of a king that is defective of a limb. Thinking of this, those bulls among Brāhmanas forbade king Pratipa to install his eldst son.

* Explained by Nilakantha as leprosy. T.

Devāpi then, who was defective of one limb, beholding the king (his father) prevented (from installimg him on the throne) and filled with sorrow on his account, retired into the woods. As regards Vālhika, abandoning his (paternal) kingdom he dwelt with his maternal uncle. Abandoning his father and brother, he obtained the highly wealthy kingdom of his maternal grandfather. With Vālhika's permission, O prince, Cāntanu of world-wide fame, on the death of his father (Pratipa), became king and ruled the kingdom. In this way also, O Bhārata, though I am the eldest, yet being defective of a limb, I was excluded from the kingdom by the intelligent Pāndu, no doubt, after much reflection. And Pāndu himself, though younger to me in age, obtained the kingdom and became king. At his death, O chastiser of foes, that kingdom must pass to his sons! When I could not obtain the kingdom, how canst thou covet it? Thou art not the son of a king and, therefore, hast no right to this kingdom. Thou, however, desirest to appropriate the property of others! The high-souled Yudhishthira is the son of a king. This kingdom is lawfully his. Of magnanimous soul, even he is the ruler and lord of this race of Kuru! He is devoted to truth, of clear perception, obedient to the counsels of friends, honest, loved by the subjects, kind to all well-wishers, master of his passions, and the cherisher of all that are good! Forgiveness, renunciation, self-control, knowledge of the scriptures, mercy to all creatures, competence to rule according to the dictates of virtue, all these attributes of royalty exist in Yudhishthira! Thou art not the son of a king and art always sinfully inclined towards thy relatives! O wretch, how canst thou succeed in appropriating this kingdom that lawfully belongeth to others? Dispelling this delusion, give half the kingdom with (a share of the) animals and other possessions! Then, O king, mayst thou hope to live for some time with thy younger brothers!—'"

SECTION CXLIX.

"Vāsudeva said,—'Though thus addressed by Bhishma, and Drona, and Vidura, and Gāndhāri, and Dhritarāshtra, that wicked wight could not yet be brought to his senses. On the other hand, the wicked Duryodhana, disregardihg them all, rose (and left the assembly) with eyes red in anger. And all the kings (invited by him), prepared to lay down their lives, followed him behind. King Duryodhana then repeatedly ordered those wicked-hearted rulers, saying,—*Today the contsellation Pushya is ascendant.—March ye (this very day) to Kurukshatra !* Impelled by Fate, those monarchs then, with their soldiers, gladly set out, making Bhishma their generalissimo. Eleven *Akshauhinis* of troops have been, O king, assembled for the Kauravas. At the head of that host shineth Bhishma with the device of the palmyra on the banner of his car. In view, therefore, of what hath happened, do now, O monarch, that which seemeth to be proper! I have told thee, O king, everything that occurred in the assembly of the Kurus,—everything, O Bhārata, that was said by Bhishma, Drona, Vidura, Gāndhāri, and Dhritarāshtra, in my presence! The arts beginning with conciliation were all, O king, employed by me from desire of establishing brotherly feelings (between yourselves and your cousins), for the preservation of this race, and for the growth and prosperity of the (Earth's) population. When conciliation failed, I employed the art of (producing) dissensions and mentioned, ye Pāndavas, all your ordinary and extraordinary feats. Indeed, when Suyodhana showed no respect for the conciliatory words (I spoke), I caused all the kings to be assembled together and endeavored to produce dissension (amongst them). Extraordinary and awful and terrible and superhuman indications, O Bhārata, were then manifested by me, O lord! Rebuking all the kings, making a straw of Suyodhana, terrifying Rādhā's son, and repeatedly censuring Suvala's son for the gambling match of Dhritarāshtra's sons, and once again endeavouring to disunite all the

kings by means both of words and intrigues, I again had recourse to conciliation. For the unity of Kuru's race and in view of the especial requirements of the business (at hand), I spoke also of gift. Indeed, I said,—Those heroes, the sons of Pāndu, sacrificing their pride, will live in dependance on Dhritarāshtra, Bhishma, and Vidura! Let the kingdom be given to thee. Let them have no power. Let it all be as the king (Dhritarāshtra), as Gangā's son (Bhishma), and as Vidura, say for thy good! Let the kingdom be thine. Relinquish but five villages (to the Pāndavas)! O best of kings, without doubt they deserve to be supported by thy father!—Though addressed thus, that wicked-souled wight would not still give you your share. I, therefore, see that chastisement, and nothing else, is now the means that should be employed against those sinful persons! Indeed, all those kings have already marched to Kurukshetra! I have now told thee everything that happened in the assembly of the Kurus. They will not, O son of Pāndu, give thee thy kingdom without battle! With death waiting before them, they have all become the cause of a universal destruction!'"

SECTION CL.

(Sainya-niryāna Parva).

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing these words of Janārddana, king Yudhishthira the just, of virtuous soul, addressed his brothers in the presence of Keçava and said,—Ye have heard all that happened in the court of the assembled Kurus! Ye have also understood the words uttered by Keçava! Ye best of men, array, therefore, my troops now in the order in which they are to fight. Here are seven *Akshauhinis* of troops assembled for our victory! Hear the names of those seven celebrated warriors that would lead those seven *Akshauhinis!* They are Drupada, and Virāta, and Dhrishtadyumna, and Cikhandi, and Sātyaki, and Chekitāna, and Bhimasena of great energy! These heroes will be the leaders of my troops. All of them are conversant with the *Vedas.* Endued with great bra-

very, all of them have practised excellent vows. Possessed of modesty, all of them are conversant with policy, and accomlished in war. Well-skilled in arrows and weapons, all of them are competent in the use of every kind of weapon. Tell us now, O Sahadeva, O son of Kuru's race, who that warrior is, conversant with all kinds of battle-array, that may become the leader of these seven and may also withstand in battle Bhishma who is like unto a fire having arrows for its flames! Give us thy own opinion, O tiger among men, as to who is fit to be our generalissimo!'

"Sahadeva said,—'Closely related to us,* sympathising with us in our distress, endued with great might, conversant with every virtue, skilled in weapons, and irresistible in battle, the mighty king of the Matsyas, Virāta, relying upon whom we hope to recover our share of the kingdom, will be able to bear in battle both Bhishma and all those mighty car-warriors!' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"After Sahadeva had said this, the eloquent Nakula then said these words:—'He that in years, in knowledge of scriptures, in perseverance, in family and birth, is respectable; he that is endued with modesty, strength, and prosperity; he that is well-versed in all branches of learning, he that studied the science of weapons with(t he sage) Bharadwāja; he that is irresistible and firmly devoted to truth; he that always challenges Drona and the mighty Bhishma; he that belongs to one of the foremost of royal houses; he that is a famous leader of hosts; he that resembles a tree of hundred branches in consequence of sons and grandsons that surround him; that king who with his wife performed, moved by wrath, the austerest of penances for the destruction of Drona; that hero who is an ornament of assemblies; that bull among monarchs who always cherishes us like a father; that father-in-law of ours, Drupada, should be our generalissimo! It is my opinion that he will be able to withstand both Drona and Bhishma rushing to battle, for that

* *Samyukta* is explained by Nilkantha thus. The Burdwan Pundits translate it erroneously.—T.

king is the friend of Angirasa's descendant (Drona) and is conversant with celestial weapons!'

"After the two sons of Mādri had thus expressed their individual opinions, Vāsava's son Savyasāchin who was equal to Vāsava himself, said these words:—'This celestial person of the hue of fire and endued with mighty arms, who sprang into life through the power of ascetic penances and the gratification of sages; who issued from the sacrificial fire-hole armed with bow and sword, accoutred in armour of steel, mounted on a car unto which were yoked excellent steeds of the best breed, and the clatter of whose car-wheels was as deep as the roar of mighty masses of clouds; this hero endued with that energy and strength, and resembling the very lion in frame of body and prowess, and possessed of leonine shoulders, arms, chest, and roar; this hero of great effulgence; this warrior of handsome brows, fine teeth, round cheeks, longarms, stout make, excellent thighs, large expansive eyes, excellent legs, and strong frame; this prince who is incapable of being penetrated by weapons of any kind, and who looks like an elephant with rent temples; this Dhrishtadyumna, truthful in speech, and with passions under control, was born for the distruction of Drona! It is this Dhrishtadyumna, I think, that will be able to bear Bhishma's arrows which strike with the vehemence of the thunder-bolt and look like snakes with blazing mouths, which resemble the messengers of Yama in speed and fall like flames of fire (consuming everything they touch), and which were borne before by Rāma alone in battle! I do not, O king, see the man except Dhrishtadyumna, who is able to withstand Bhishma of great vows. This is even what I think. Endued with great lightness of hand and conversant with all the modes of warfare, accoutred in coat of mail that is incapable of being penetrated by weapons, this handsome hero, resembling the leader of a herd of elephants, is according to my opinion, fit to be our generalissimo!'

"Bhimasena then said,—'That son of Drupada, Cikhandi, who is born for the destruction of Bhishma as is saie, O king, by the sages and *Siddhas* assembleb together, whose from on the field of battle, while displaying celestial weapons, will be

seen by men to resemble that of the illustrious Rāma himself; I see not, O king, the person who is able to pierce with weapons that Cikhandi, when he is stationed for battle on his car, accoutered in mail! Except the heroic Cikhandi, there is no other warrior who is able to slay Bhishma in single combat. It is for this, O king, that I think Cikhandi is fit to be our generalissimo!'

"Yudhishthira said,—'O sire, the strength and weakness, might and feebleness, of everything in the universe, and the intentions of every person here, are well known to the virtuous Keçava! Skilled or unskilled in weapons, old or young, let him be the leader of my forces who may be indicated by Krishna of Daçārha's race! Even he is the root of our success or defeat! In him are our lives, our kingdom, our prosperity and adversity, our happiness and misery! Even he is the Ordainer and Creator. In him is established the fruition of our desires. Let him, therefore, be the leader of our host who may be named by Krishna! Let that foremost of speakers say, for the night approacheth. Having selected our leader, worshipped our weapons (with offerings of flowers and perfumes), we will, at day-break, under Krishna's orders, march to the field of battle!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of the intelligent king Yudhishthira the just, the lotus-eyed Krishna said, eyeing Dhananjaya the while,—'O king, I fully approve of all those powerful warriors whom ye have named for becoming the leaders of thy troops! All of them are competent to withstand thy foes! Indeed, they can frighten Indra himself in great battle, let alone the covetous and wicked-minded sons of Dhritarāshtra! O thou of mighty arms, for thy good I made great efforts to prevent the battle by bringing about peace! (By that) we have been freed from the debt we owed to virtue. Fault-finding persons will not be able to reproach us for anything. The foolish Duryodhana, destitue of understanding, regardeth himself as skilled in weapons, and though really weak thinketh himself to be possessed of strength! Array thy troops soon, for slaughter is the only means by which they can be made to yield to our demands!

Indeed, the sons of Dhritarāshtra will never be able to keep their ground when they will behold Dhananjaya with Yuyudhāna as his second, and Abhimanyu, and the (five) sons of Draupadi, and Virāta, and Drupada, and the other kings of fierce prowess,—all lords of *Akshauhinis!* Our army is possessed of great strength, and is invincible and incapable of being withstood! Without doubt, it will slay the Dhārtarāshtra host! As regards our leader, I would name that chastiser of foes, Dhrishtadyumna!'"

SECTION CLI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"When Krishna had said this, all the monarchs (there) were filled with joy. And the shout sent forth by those delighted kings was tremendous. And the troops began to move about with great speed, saying,—*Draw up,' 'Draw up.'*—And the neighing of steeds and roars of elephants and the clatter of car-wheels and the blare of conchs and the sound of drums, heard everywhere, produced a tremendous din. And teeming with cars and foot-soldiers and steeds and elephants, that invincible host of the marching Pāndavas, moving hither and thither, donning their coats of mail, and uttering their war-cries, looked like the (impetuous) current of the Gangā when at its full, agitated with fierce eddies and waves. And in the van (of that host) marched Bhimasena and the two sons of Mādri encased in their coats of mail, and Subhadrā's son and the (five) sons of Draupadi and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race. And the Prabhadrakas and the Pānchālas marched behind Bhimasena. And the din made by the marching host filled with joy was like unto the roars of the deep when the tide is highest on the day of the new moon. Indeed, the tumult was such that it seemed to reach the very heavens. And capable of breaking hostile ranks, those warriors cased in armour marched thus, filled with joy. And Kunti's son, king Yudhishthira, amongst them marched, taking with him the carts and other vehicles for transport, the food-stores and fodder, the tents, carriages, and draught-cattle, the cash-chests, the machines and weapons, the

surgeons and physicians, the invalids, and all the emaciated and weak soldiers, and all the attendants and camp-followers. And the truthful Draupadi, the princess of Pānchāla, accompanied by the ladies of the house-hold, and surrounded by servants and maids, remained at Upaplavya. And causing their treasure and ladies to be guarded by bodies of soldiers some of whom were placed as permanent lines of circumvallation and some ordered to move about at a distance from this line, the Pāndavas set out with their mighty host. And having made presents of kine and gold to the Brāhmanas who walked around them and uttered blessings, the sons of Pāndu commenced the march on their cars decked with jewels. And the (five) princes of Kekaya, and Dhrishtaketu, and the son of the king of the Kāçis, and Crenimat, and Vasudāna, and the invincible Cikhandi, all hale and glad, cased in armour and armed with weapons and decked with ornaments, marched behind Yudhishthira, keeping him in their centre. And in the rear were Virāta, Yajnasena's son of the Somoka race (Dhrishtadyumna), Suçarman,* Kuntibhoja, Dhrishtadyumna's sons, forty thousand cars, five times as much cavalry, infantry ten times more numerous (than the last), and sixty thousand elephants. And Anādhrishti, and Chekitāna and Dhrishtaketu and Sātyaki, all marched, surrounding Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya. And reaching the field of Kurukshetra with their forces in battle array, those smiters, the sons of Pāndu, looked like roaring bulls. And entering the field, those chastisers of foes blew their conchs. And Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya also blew their conchs. And hearing the blare of the conch called *Pānchajanya*,† which resembled the roll of the thunder, all the warriors (of the Pāndava army) were filled with joy. And the leonine roars of those warriors endued with lightness of hand and speed of motion, mingling with the

* Some texts read *Sudharman* which seems to be correct, for Suçarman, the ruler of the Trigartas, was on the Kuru side. If, however, there was any other king of that name, the reading, as it stands, may be the true one.—T.

† The conch owned by Vāsudeva. Schlegel renders it as *Gigantea*.—T.

blare of conchs and beat of drums, made the whole earth, the welkin, and the oceans resound therewith."*

SECTION CLII.

Vaicampāyana said.—"King Yudhishthira then caused his troops to encamp on a part of the field that was level, cool,† and abounding with grass and fuel. Avoiding cemeteries,‡ temples and compounds consecrated to the deities, asylums of sages, shrines,$ and other sacred plots, Kunti's high-souled son Yudhishthira pitched his camp on a delightful, fertile, open,§ and sacred part of the plain. And rising up again after his animals had been given sufficient rest, the king set out joyously, surrounded by hundreds and thousands of monarchs. And Keçava accompanied by Pārtha began to move about, scattering numerous bodies of Dhārtarāshtra troops (planted as outposts). And Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race and that mighty car-warrior of great energy, *viz*, Yuyudhāna otherwise called Sātyaki, measured¶ the ground for the encampment. And arrived, O Bhārata, at the holy Hiranwati which flows through Kurukshetra, which was filled with sacred water, and whose bed was divested of pointed pebbles and mire, and which was regarded as an excellent *tirtha*, Keçava caused a moat to be excavated there, and for its protection stationed a

* Most editions make the one hundred and fiftieth Section conclude with the 31st *sloka*. The Burdwan edition, however, extends it so as to include the whole of Section one hundred and fiftyfirst as given here.—T.

† *Snigdha*, perhaps shady.—T.

‡ Or rather, burning grounds.—T.

$ There is no equivalent in English for *tirtha* which is a holy place having a lake, tank, or river by it. There can be no *tirtha* without a piece of sacred natural or artificial water.—T.

§ *Cuchi* is clear or pure. Here, I think, it means divested of underwood and copses ; hence open.—T.

¶ Perhaps, laid out, or prepared the plan of the encampment. The root *mà*, to measure, is used in various senses more or less connected with the original meaning.—T

sufficient number of troops with proper instructions.* And the rules that were observed in respect of the tents of the high-souled Pāndavas, were followed by Keçava in the matter of the tents he caused to be set up for the kings (that came as their allies). And, O monarch, costly tents, incapable of being attacked, apart from one another, were, by hundreds and thousands, planted for those kings on the surface of the earth, that looked like palatial residences and abounded with fuel and edibles and drinks. And there were assembled hundreds upon hundreds of skilled mechanics in receipt of regular wages, and surgeons and physicians, well-versed in their own science, and furnished with every ingredient they might need. And king Yudhishthira caused to be placed in every pavilion large quantities, high as hills, of bowstrings and bows and coats of mail and weapons, of honey and clarified butter, pounded lac, water, fodder for cattle, chaff and coals, heavy machines, long shafts, lances, battle-axes, bow-staffs, breast-plates, scimitars, and quivers. And innumerable elephants cased in plates of steel with prickles thereon, huge as hills, and capable of fighting with hundreds and thousands,† were seen there. And learning that the Pāndavas had encamped on that field, their allies, O Bhārata, with their forces and animals, began to march thither. And many kings who had practised *Brahmacharya* vows, drunk (consecrated) *Soma*, and made large presents to Brāhmanas at sacrifices, came there for the success of the sons of Pāndu."

---

* Many texts read *chādriçyam* meaning 'invisible' (leaving out the particle *cha)* and qualifying *Valam*. Some texts, however, read *chādiçya* meaning 'having commanded,' or 'having given instructions.' I think the latter reading is correct.—T.

† Fighting with hundreds and thousands *of other elephants*, as explained by Nilakantha. It may mean that these elephants were competent to fight with hundreds and thousands of foot-soldiers as well.—T.

SECTION CLIII.

Janamejaya said,—"Hearing that Yudhishthira had, with his troops, marched from desire of battle and encamped on Kurukshetra, protected by Vāsudeva, and aided by Virāta and Drupada with their sons, and surrounded by the Kekayas, the Vrishnis, and other kings by hundreds, and watched over by numerous mighty car-warriors like the great Indra himself by the *Adityas*, what measures were concerted by king Duryodhana? O high-souled one, I desire to hear in detail all that happened in Kurujāngala on that frightful occasion! The sons of Pāndu, with Vāsudeva and Virāta and Drupada and Dhrishtadyumna the Pānchāla prince and that mighty car-warrior Cikhandi and the powerful Yudhāmanyu incapable of being resisted by the very gods, might trouble the deities themselves in battle with Indra at their head! I, therefore, desire to hear in detail, O thou that art possessed of wealth of asceticism, all the acts of the Kurus and the Pāndavas as they happened!"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"When he of Daçārha's race had departed (from the Kuru court), king Duryodhana, addressing Karna and Dusçāsana and Cakuni, said these words:—'Keçava* hath gone to the sons of Prithā, without having been able to achieve his object. Filled with wrath as he is, he will surely stimulate the Pāndavas. A battle between myself and Pāndavas is much desired by Vāsudeva. Bhimasena and Arjuna are ever of the same mind with him. Yudhishthira, again, is very much under the influence of Bhimasena. Before this, Yudhishthira with all his brothers was persecuted by me. Virāta and Drupada I had waged hostilities with. Obedient to Vāsudeva both of them have become the leaders of Yudhishthira's host. The battle, therefore, that will take place will be a fierce and terrific one. Casting off all sloth, cause every preparation to be made for the encounter! Let the kings (my allies) plant their tents by hundreds and thou-

---

* The word used here is *Adhokshaja* one of the many names of Krishna, meaning 'beyond the senses' ken.'—T.

sands on Kurukshetra, all of which must be spacious, incapable of being approached by enemies, near enough to places abounding with water and fuel, in such positions that the communications thereto for sending supplies may not be stopped at any time by the foe,*—full of weapons of diverse kinds, and decked with banners and flags. Let the road from our city to the camp be made level for their march. Let it be proclaimed this very day, without loss of time, that our march will commence tomorrow !'—(Hearing these words of the king), they said,—'So be it,'—and when the morrow came, those high-souled persons did everything they had been commanded to do for the accomodation of the monarchs. And all those monarchs (meanwhile), hearing the king's command, rose up from their costly seats, filled with wrath (having the foe for its object). And they began to slowly rub their mace-like arms blazing with bracelets of gold and decked with the paste of sandal and other fragrant substances. And they also commenced, with those lotus-like hands of theirs, to wear their head-gears and lower and upper garments and diverse kinds of ornaments. And many foremost of car-warriors began to superintend the furnishing of their cars, and persons conversant with horse-lore began to harness their steeds, while those versed in matters relating to elephants began to equip those huge animals. And all those warriors began to wear diverse kinds of beautiful armour made of gold, and arm themselves with various weapons. And the foot-soldiers began to take up various kinds of arms and case their bodies in various kinds of armour decorated with gold. And, O Bhārata, the city of Duryodhana then, filled as it was with rejoicing millions, wore the bright aspect of a festive occasion. And, O king, the Kuru capital at the prospect of battle looked like the ocean on the appearance of the moon, with the vast crowds of humanity representing it waters with their eddies, the cars, elephants, and horses representing its fishes, the tumult of conchs and drums its roar, the treasure-chests

* The original compound is *Acchedyāhāramārgāni*. Nilakantha explains it correctly. The Burdwan Pundits render it wrongly.—T.

its jewels and gems, the diverse kinds of ornaments and armour its waves, the bright weapons its white foam, the rows of houses the mountains on its beach, and the roads and shops like the deep lakes of that main!"

SECTION CLIV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Recollecting the words spoken by Vāsudeva, Yudhishthira once more addressed that scion of Vrishni's race, saying,—'How, O Keçava, could the wicked Duryodhana say it? O thou of unfading glory, what should we do in view of the occasion that hath come? By acting in what way may we keep on the track of our duty?* Thou, O Vāsudeva, art acquainted with the views of Duryodhana, Karna, and Cakuni the son of Suvala! Thou knowest also what views are entertained by myself and my brothers! Thou hast heard the words uttered by both Vidura and Bhishma! O thou of great wisdom, thou hast also heard in their entirety the words of wisdom spoken by Kunti! Overlooking all these, tell us, O thou of mighty arms, after reflection, and without hesitation, that which is for our good!'†

"Hearing these words of king Yudhishthira the just that were fraught with virtue and profit, Krishna replied, in a voice deep as that of the clouds or cymbals, saying,—'Redounding to his advantage and consistent with both virtue and profit, those words that were uttered by me (in the Kuru court) found no response in the Kuru prince Duryodhana with whom deceit supplieth the place of wisdom! That wretch of wicked understanding listeneth not in the least to the counsels of Bhishma or Vidura or mine. He transgresseth everybody. He wisheth not to earn virtue, nor doth he wish for

---

* Literally, "may not fall off from the duties of our order!"—T.

† What Yudhishthira asks Vāsudeva is that without regarding the views expresed by others, Vāsudeva should advise, according to his own judgment, as to what the Pāndavas should do. His knowledge of the views entertained by all parties would greatly help him in coming to a right conclusion.—T.

fame. That wicked-souled wight, relying upon Karna, regardeth everything as already won! Indeed, Suyodhana even ordered my incarceration! Of wicked heart and sinful in his resolves, he did not, however, obtain the fruition of that wish! Neither Bhishma nor Drona said anything on that subject. Indeed, all of them follow Duryodhana, except Vidura, O thou of unfading glory! Cakuni the son of Suvala, and Karna, and Dusçāsana, all equally foolish, gave the foolish and vindictive Duryodhana much improper advice regarding thee! Indeed, what use is there in my repeating to thee all that the Kuru prince hath said? In brief, that wicked-souled wight beareth no good will towards thee! Not even in all these kings together, that form thy army, is that (measure of) sinfulness and wickedness which resideth in Duryodhana alone! As regards ourselves, we do not desire to make peace with the Kauravas by abandoning our property. War, therefore, is that which should now take place!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words uttered by Vāsudeva, all the kings (there present), O Bhārata, without saying anything, looked at Yudhishthira's face. And Yudhishthira, understanding the intention of those monarchs, said, with Bhima and Arjuna and the twins,—'*Array (the troops)!*'—And the word of command having been passed, a great uproar rose amongst the Pāndava army and all the soldiers were filled with joy. King Yudhishthira the just, however, beholding the (impending) slaughter of those that deserved not to be slain, began to sigh deeply, and addressing Bhimasena and Vijaya, said,—'That for the sake of which I accepted an exile into the woods and for which I suffered so much misery, that great calamity overtaketh us of a set purpose! That for which we strove so much leaveth us as if on account of our very striving! On the other hand, a great distress overtaketh us although we did nothing to invite it! How shall we fight with those reverend superiors (of ours) whom we on no account can slay? What kind of victory shall we achieve by slaying our preceptors of venerable age?'

"Hearing these words of king Yudhishthira the just, Savyasāchin repeated to his elder brother all those words that

Vāsudeva had said. And addressing Yudhishthira, Arjuna continued,—'Thou hast, O king, certainly understood all the words spoken by Kunti and Vidura that were repeated to thee by Devaki's son! I know it for certain that neither Vidura nor Kunti would say anything that is sinful! Besides this, O son of Kunti, we cannot withdraw without engaging in battle!'

"Hearing this speech of Savyasāchin, Vāsudeva also said unto Pārtha,—'It is even so (as thou hast said)!'—The sons of Pāndu then, O great king, made up their minds for war, and passed that night with their soldiers in great happiness."

SECTION CLV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"After that night had passed away, king Duryodhana, O Bhārata, distributed (in proper order) his eleven *Akshauhinis* of troops. And arranging his men, elephants, cars, and steeds, into three classes, *viz*, superior, middling, and inferior, the king distributed them amongst his divisions (by placing them in the van, centre, and rear of the ranks). And furnished with timber and planks for reparing the damages their cars might sustain in the press of battle, with large quivers borne on cars, with tiger-skins and other stiff leather for enveloping the sides of cars, with barbed javelins to be hurled by the hand, with quivers borne on the backs of steeds and elephants, with long-handled spears of iron used as missiles, with quivers borne on the backs of foot-soldiers, with heavy clubs of wood, with flagstaffs and banners, with long heavy shafts shot from bows, with diverse kinds of nooses and lassoes, with armour of various kinds, with short pointed clubs of wood, with oil, treacle, and sand,* with earthen pots filled with poisonous snakes,† with pulverised lac and other inflammable matter, with short spears furnished with tinkling bells, with diverse weapons of iron and machines for hurling

---

* These were heated and thrown upon the enemy.—T.

† These also were thrown into the midst of the enemy's ranks for causing confusion.—T.

hot treacle, water, and stones, with whistling clubs of hard wood, with wax and heavy mallets, with clubs of wood having iron spikes, with plough-poles and poisoned darts, with long syringes for pouring warm treacle and planks of cane,* with battle-axes and forked lances, with spiked gauntlets, with axes and pointed iron spikes, with cars having their sides covered with skins of tigers and leopards, with sharp-edged circular planks of wood, with horns, with javelins and various other weapons of attack, with axes of the *kuthāra* species and spades, with cloths steeped in oil, and with clarified butter, the diverse divisions of Duryodhana, glittering with robes embroidered with gold and decked with various kinds of jewels and gems and consisting of warriors endued with handsome persons, blazed forth like fire! And cased in coats of mail and well-skilled in weapons and accomplished in horse-lore, brave persons of good birth were employed as car-drivers. And all the cars were furnished with various weapons and drugs, and with horses having rows of bells and pearls on their heads, and with banners and flagstaffs, and with ornaments gracing their steeples and turrets, and with shields, swords, and lances, and javelins and spiked maces. And unto each of those cars were yoked four steeds of the best breed. And upon each of them were kept a hundred bows. And each car had one driver in charge of the couple of steeds in front, and two drivers in charge of the couple of steeds attached to the wheels on the two sides. And both of the last-mentioned drivers were skilled car-warriors, while the car-warrior himself was also skilled in driving steeds. And thousands of cars, thus furnished and decked with gold, and protected like fortified towns and incapable of being conquered by foes, were stationed on all sides. And the elephants also were furnished with rows of bells and pearls and decked with diverse ornaments. And on the back of each of those animals mounted seven warriors. And in consequence of such accoutrements those animals looked like hills graced with jewells. And amongst the seven, two were

* For protecting the combatants from warm water, treacle, wax, oil, and other hot liquids.—T

armed with hooks, two were excellent bowmen, two were first-rate swordsmen, and one, O king, was armed with a lance and a trident. And, O king, the army of the illustrious Kuru king teemed with innumerable infuriate elephants, bearing on their backs loads of weapons and quivers filled with arrows. And there were also thousands of steeds ridden by brave soldiers accoutered in mail, decked in ornaments, and furnished with flags. And numbering in hundreds and thousands, all those steeds were free from the habit of scratching the ground with their forefeet. And they were all well-trained, and decked with ornaments of gold, and exceedingly obedient to their riders. And of foot-soldiers there were hundreds of thousands, of diverse mien, accoutered in armour of diverse kinds and armed also with weapons of diverse species, and decked with golden ornaments. And unto each car were assigned ten elephants, and unto each elephant ten horses, and unto each horse ten foot-soldiers, as protectors. Again, a large body of troops was kept as a reserve for rallying the ranks that would be broken. And this reserve consisted of cars unto each of which were attached fifty elephants; and unto each elephant were attached a hundred horses; and unto each horse were attached seven foot-soldiers. Five hundred cars, as many elephants, (fifteen hundred horses, and two thousand five hundred foot-soldeirs) constitue a *Senā*. Ten *Senās* constitute a *Pritanā*; and ten *Pritanās*, a *Vāhini*. In common parlance, however, the words *Senā*, *Vāhini*, *Pritanā*, *Dhwajini*, *Chamu*, *Akshauhini*, and *Varuthini* are used in the same sense.

"It was thus that the intelligent Kaurava arrayed his force. Between the two sides, the total number was eighteen *Akshauhinis*. Of this, the Pāndava force consisted of seven *Akshaunis*, while the Kauravas force consisted of ten *Akshauhinis* and one more. Five times fifty men constitute a *Patti*. Three *Pattis* make a *Senāmukha* or *Gulma*. Three *Gulmas* make a *Gana*. In Duryodhana's army there were thousands and hundreds of such *Ganas* consisting of warriors capable of smiting (the foe) and longing for battle. And the mighty-armed king Duryodhana, selecting from among them brave and intelligent warriors, made them the leaders of his troops. And

placing an *Akshauhini* of troops under each of those best of men, *viz*, Kripa, Drona, Calya, Jayadratha the king of the Sindhus, Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas, Kirtavarman, Drona's son (Açwatthāman), Karna, Bhuriçravas, Cakuni the son of Suvala, and the mighty Vālhika, the king used to bring them daily before him and at all hours, and speak to them. And he repeatedly offered them worship before his very eyes. And thus appointed, all those warriors, with all their followers, became desirous of doing what was most agreeable to the king."

SECTION CLVI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Dhritarāshtra's son, accompanied by all the kings, then addressed Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, and with joined hands said these words:—'Without a commander, even a mighty army is routed in battle like a swarm of ants. The intelligence of two persons can never agree. Different commanders again are jealous of one another as regards their prowess. O thou of great wisdom, it is heard (by us) that (once on a time) the Brāhmanas, raising a standard of *kuça* grass, encountered in battle the Kshatriyas of the *Haihaya* clan endued with immeasurable energy. O grandsire, the Vaiçyas and the Cudras followed the Brāhmanas, so that all the three orders were on one side, while those bulls among the Kshatriyas were alone on the other. In the battles, however, that ensued, the three orders repeatedly broke, while the Kshatriyas, though alone, vanquished the large army that was opposed to them. Then those best of Brāhmanas enquired of the Kshatriyas themselves (as to the cause of this). O grandsire, those that were virtuous among the Kshatriyas returned the true answer to the enquirers, saying,—In battle we obey the orders of one person endued with great intelligence, while ye are disunited from one another and act according to your individual understandings!—The Brāhmanas then appointed one amongst themselves as their commander, who was brave and conversant with the ways of policy. And they then succeeded in vanquishing the Kshatriyas. Thus people always conquer

their foes in battle who appoint a skilled, brave, and sinless commander observing the good of the forces under him. As regards thee, thou art equal to Uçanas himself, and always seekest my good! Incapable of being slain, thou art, again, devoted to virtue. Be thou, therefore, our commander! Like the sun among all luminaries, like the moon unto all deciduous herbs, like Kuvera among the *Yakshas*, like Vāsava among the gods, like Meru among mountains, Suparna among birds, Kumāra among the gods, Havyavāha among Vasus, thou art amongst ourselves! Like the gods protected by Cakra, ourselves, protected by thee, will assuredly become unvanquishable by the very gods! Like Agni's son (Kumāra) at the head of the gods, march thou at our head, and let us follow thee like calves following the lead of a mighty bull!'

"Bhishma said,—'O mighty-armed one, it is even so, O Bhārata, as thou sayest! But the Pāndavas are as dear to me as ye yourselves! Therefore, O king, I should certainly seek their good as well, although I shall certainly fight for thee, having given thee a pledge (before) to that effect! I do not see the warrior on earth that is equal to me, except that tiger among men, Dhananjaya the son of Kunti! Endued with great intelligence, he is conversant with innumerable celestial weapons. That son of Pāndu, however, will never fight with me openly! With the power of my weapons I can, in a trice, destroy this universe consisting of gods, *Asuras*, *Rākshasas*, and human being! The sons of Pāndu, however, O king, are incapable of being exterminated by me.* I shall, therefore, slay every day ten thousand warriors. If, indeed, they do not slay me in battle first, I will continue to slaughter their forces thus! There is another understanding on which I may willingly become the commander of thy forces. It be-

---

* The word used is *Utsādanīyās*. Literally, it means *exterminatable*. Nilakantha explains it (with the negative particle before) as "incapable of being exterminated;" it may also mean "should not be exterminated!" It is not easy to determine from the word itself whether Bhishma denies his competence or expresses his unwillingness to slay the Pāndavas.—T.

hoveth thee to listen to that. O lord of Earth, either Karna should fight first, or I will fight first. The *Suta's* son always boasts of his prowess in battle comparing it with mine !'

"Karna said,—'As long as Gangā's son liveth, O king, I shall never fight! After Bhishma is slain, I shall fight with the wielder of *Gāndiva.*'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"After this, Dhritarāshtra's son duly made Bhishma the commander of his forces, distributing large presents. And after his installation in the command, he blazed forth with beauty. And at the king's behest, musicians cheerfully played upon drums and blew conchs by hundreds and thousands. And numerous leonine shouts were sent forth and all the animals in the camp uttered their cries together. And although the sky was cloudless, a bloody shower fell and made the ground miry. And fierce whirl-winds, and earthquakes, and roars of elephants, occurring, depressed the hearts of all the warriors. Incorporeal voices and flashes of meteoric falls were heard and seen in the welkin. And jackals, howling fiercely, foreboded great danger. And, O monarch, these and a hundred other kinds of fierce portents made their appearance when the king installed Gangā's son in the command of his troops. And after making Bhishma—that grinder of hostile hosts—his general, and having also caused by abundant gifts of kine and gold the Brāhmanas to pronounce benedictions on him, and glorified by those benedictions, and surrounded by his troops, and with Gangā's son in the van, and accompanied by his brothers, Duryodhana marched to Kurukshatra with his large host. And the Kuru king, going over the plain with Karna in his company, caused his camp to be measured out on a level part, O monarch, of that plain. And the camp, pitched on a delightful and fertile spot abounding with grass and fuel, shone like Hāstinapura itself."

SECTION CLVII.

Janamejaya said,—"When Yudhishthira heard that Bhishma the high-souled son of Gangā, the foremost of all wielders of weapons, the grandsire of the Bharatas, the head of all the kings, the rival of Vrihaspati in intellect, resembling the ocean in gravity, the mountains of Himavat in calmness, the Creator himself in nobleness, and the Sun in energy, and capable of slaying hostile hosts like the great Indra himself by showering his arrows, was installed, till his removal by death, in the command of the Kuru army on the eve of the great sacrifice of battle, terrific in its mien and capable of making one's hair stand on end, what did that mighty-armed son of Pāndu, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, say? What also did Bhima and Arjuna say? And what too did Krishna say?"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"(When news was received of this), Yudhishthira endued with great intelligence and well-acquainted with what should be done in view of dangers and calamities, summoned all his brothers and also the eternal Vāsudeva (to his presence). And that foremost of speakers then said in a mild voice,—'Make your rounds among the soldiers, and remain carefully, casing yourselves in mail! Our first encounter will be with our grandsire. Look ye for (seven) leaders for the seven *Akshauhinis* of my troops!'

"Krishna said,—'Those words of grave import, which, O bull of the Bharata race, it behoveth thee to utter on an occasion like this, have, indeed, been uttered by thee! Even this, O mighty-armed one, is what I also like! Let, therefore, that be done which should be done next. Let, indeed, seven leaders be selected for thy army!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Summoning then those warriors eager for battle, *viz*, Drupada, and Virāta, and that bull of Cini's race, and Dhrishtadyumna the prince of Pānchāla, and king Dhrishtaketu, and prince Cikhandi of Pānchāla, and Sahadeva the ruler of the Magadhas, Yudhishthira duly installed them in the commands of his seven divisions. And above them all was placed in command of all the troops that

Dhrishtadyumna who had sprung from the blazing (sacrificial) fire for the destruction of Drona. And Dhananjaya of curly hair was made the leader of all those high-souled leaders. And the handsome Janārddana endued with great intelligence, he who was the younger brother of Saṅkarshana, was made the leader of Arjuna and the driver of his steeds.

"And beholding that a very destructive battle was about to take place, there came, O king, into the Pāndava encampment, Halāyudha, accompanied by Akrura, and Gada, and Cāmva, and Uddhava, and Rukmini's son (Praddyumna), and Āhuka's sons, and Chārudeshna, and others. And surrounded and guarded by those foremost warriors of the Vrishni race resembling a herd of mighty tigers, like Vāsava in the midst of the Maruts, the mighty-armed and handsome Rāma, attired in garments of blue silk, and resembling the peak of the *Kailāsa* mountain, and endued with the sportive gait of the lion, and possessed of eyes having their ends reddened with drink, came there (at such a time). And beholding him, king Yudhishthira the just, and Keçava of great effulgence, and Prithā's son Vrikodara of terrible deeds, and (Arjuna) the wielder of *Gāndiva*, and all the other kings that were there rose from their seats. And they all offered worship unto Halāyudha as he came to that place. And the Pāndava king touched Rāma's hands with his own. And that chastiser of foes, Halāyudha, in return, accosting them all with Vāsudeva at their head, and saluting (respectfully) both Virāta and Drupada who were senior in years, sat down on the same seat with Yudhishthira. And after all the kings had taken their seats, Rohini's son, casting his eyes on Vāsudeva, began to speak. And he said,—'This fierce and terrible slaughter is inevitable. It is, without doubt, a decree of fate, and I think that it cannot be avoided. Let me hope, however, to behold all of you, with your friends, come safely out of this strife, with sound bodies and perfectly hale. Without doubt, all the Kshatriyas of the world that are assembled together have their hour come. A fierce melee covering the earth with a mire of flesh and blood is sure to take place. I said unto Vāsudeva repeatedly in private,—*O slayer of Madhu, unto*

those that bear equal relationship to us, observe thou an equal behavior! As are the Pāndavas to us, even so is king Duryodhana! Therefore, give him also some aid. Indeed, he repeatedly soliciteth it! For thy sake, however, the slayer of Madhu regarded not my words. Looking at Dhananjaya, he hath, with his whole heart, been devoted to your cause. Even this is what I certainly think, *viz*, that the victory of the Pāndavas is sure, for Vāsudeva's wish, O Bhārata, is even so! As regards myself, I dare not cast my eyes on the world without Krishna (on my side)! It is for this that I follow whatever Krishna seeketh to achieve! Both of these heroes, well-skilled in encounters with the mace, are my disciples. My affection, therefore, for Bhima is equal to that for king Duryodhana. For these reasons I shall now repair to the *tirthas* of the Saraswati for ablutions, for I shall not be able to behold with indifference the destruction of the Kauravas!'

"Having said this, the mighty-armed Rāma, obtaining the leave of the Pāndavas, and making the slayer of Madhu desist (from following him farther), set out on his journey for the sacred waters."

SECTION CLVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"About this time, there came into the Pāndava camp Bhishmaka's son, foremost among all persons of truthful resolution, and known widely by the name of Rukmi. The high-souled Bhishmaka, who was otherwise called king Hiranyaroman, was the friend of Indra. And he was the most illustrious among the descendants of Bhoja and was the ruler of the whole southern country. And Rukmi was a disciple of that lion among the Kimpurushas who was known by the name of Druma, having his abode on the mountains of Gandhamādana. And he had obtained from his preceptor the whole science of weapons with its four divisions. And that mighty-armed warrior had obtained also the bow named *Vijaya* of celestial workmanship, belonging to the great Indra, and which was equal to *Gāndiva* in energy and to also *Çārnga*

(held by Krishna). There were three celestial bows owned by the denizens of heaven, *viz*, *Gāndiva* owned by Varuna, the bow called *Vijaya* owned by Indra, and that other celestial bow of great energy said to have been owned by Vishnu. This last, *(Cārnga)*, capable of striking fear into the hearts of hostile warriors, was held by Krishna. The bow called *Gāndiva* was obtained by Indra's son (Arjuna) from Agni on the occasion of the burning of *Khāndava*, while the bow called *Vijaya* was obtained from Druma by Rukmi of great energy. Baffling the nooses of Mura and slaying by his might that *Asura*, and vanquishing Naraka the son of the Earth, Hrishikeça, while recovering the begemmed ear-rings (of Aditi), with sixteen thousand girls and various kinds of jewels and gems, obtained that excellent bow called *Çārnga*. And Rukmi, having obtained the bow called *Vijaya* whose twang resembled the roar of the clouds, came to the Pāndavas, as if inspiring the whole universe with dread. Formerly, proud of the might of his own arms, the heroic Rukmi could not tolerate the ravishment of his sister Rukmini by the intelligent Vāsudéva. He had set out in pursuit, having sworn that he would not return without having slain Janārddana. And accompanied by a large army consisting of four kinds of forces, that occupied (as it marched) a very large portion of the earth, accoutred in handsome coats of mail and armed with diverse weapons and resembling the swollen current of the Gangā, that foremost of all wielders of weapons set out in pursuit of Vāsudeva of Vrishni's race. And having come up to him of Vrishni's race who was lord and master of everything obtainable by ascetic austerities,—Rukmi, O king, was vanquished and covered with shame. And for this he returned not to (his city) Kundina. And on the spot where that slayer of hostile heroes was vanquished by Krishna, he built an excellent city named Bhojkata. And, O king, that city, filled with a large force and teeming with elephants and steeds, is widely known on the earth by that name. Endued with great energy, that hero, cased in mail and armed with bow, fences, sword, and quivers, quickly entered the Pāndava camp, surrounded by an *Akshauhini* of troops. And Rukmi

entered that vast army, under a standard effulgent as the sun, and made himself known to the Pāndavas, from desire of doing what was agreeable to Vāsudeva. King Yudhishthira, advancing a few steps, offered him worship. And duly worshipped and eulogised by the Pāndavas, Rukmi saluted them in return and rested for a while with his troops. And addressing Dhananjaya the son of Kunti in the midst of the heroes there assembled, he said,—'If, O son of Pāndu, thou art afraid, I am here to render thee assistance in the battle! The asistance I will give thee will be unbearable by thy foes! There is no man in this world who is equal to me in prowess. I will slay those foes of thine whom thou, O son of Pāndu, wilt assign to me! I will slay every one of those heroes, *viz*, Drona and Kripa, and Bhishma, and Karna. Or, let all these kings of the earth stand aside. Slaying in battle thy foes myself, I will give thee the Earth!'—And he said this in the presence of king Yudhishthira the just and of Keçava and in the hearing of the (assembled) monarchs and all others (in the camp). Then casting his eyes on Vāsudeva and Pāndu's son king Yudhishthira the just, Dhananjaya the intelligent son of Kunti smilingly but in a friendly voice said these words:—'Born in the race of Kuru, being especially the son of Pāndu, naming Drona as my preceptor, having Vāsudeva for my ally, and bearing, besides, the bow called *Gāndiva*, how can I say that I am afraid? O hero, when on the occasion of the tale of cattle, I fought with the mighty *Gandharvas*, who was there to assist me? In that terrific encounter also with the gods and *Dānavas* banded together in great numbers at *Khāndava*, who was my ally when I fought? When, again, I fought with the *Nivātakavachas* and with those other *Dānavas* called the *Kālakeyas*, who was my ally? When, again, at Virāta's city I fought with numberless Kurus, who was my ally in that battle? Having paid my respects, for battle's sake, to Rudra, Cakra, Vaiçravana, Yama, Varuna, Pāvaka, Kripa, Drona, and Mādhava, and wielding that tough celestial bow of great energy called *Gāndiva*, and accoutred with inexhaustible arrows, and armed with celestial weapons, how can a person like me, O tiger among men, say, even unto Indra armed

with the thunderbolt, such words as—I *am afraid!*—words that rob one of all his fame? O thou of mighty arms, I am not afraid, nor have I any need of assistance. Go, therefore, or stay, as it pleaseth or suiteth thee!"—Hearing these words of Arjuna, Rukmi taking away with him his army vast as the sea, repaired then, O bull of Bharata's race, to Duryodhana. And king Rukmi, repairing thither, said the same words unto Duryodhana. But that king, proud of his bravery, rejected him in same way.

"Thus, O king, two persons withdrew from the battle, *viz*, Rohini's son (Rāma) of Vrishni's race and king Rukmi. And after Rāma had set out on his pilgrimage to the *tirthas*, and Bhishmaka's son Rukmi had departed thus, the sons of Pāndu once more sat down for consulting with one another. And that conclave presided over by king Yudhishthira the just, abounding with numerous monarchs, blazed forth like the firmament bespangled with lesser luminaries with the moon in their midst!"

SECTION CLIX.

Janamejaya said.—"After the soldiers had been arrayed thus in order of battle (on the field of Kurukshetra), what, O bull among Brāhmanas, did the Kuravas then do, urged as they were by destiny itself?"

Vaiçampāyana said.—"After the soldiers, O bull of the Bharata race, had been arrayed thus in order of battle, Dhritarāshtra, O king, said these words to Sanjaya.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Come, O Sanjaya, tell me with the fullest details all that hath happened in the matter of the encamping of the Kuru and the Pāndava troops! I regard destiny to be superior, and exertion useless, for although I understand the evil consequences of war that lead only to ruin, still I am unable to restrain my son who rejoices in gambling and considers deciet to be wisdom! Understanding everything, I am not yet able to secure my own welfare. O *Suta*, my understanding is capable of seeing the defects (of measures), but when I approach Duryodhana, that understanding of mine

turneth away (from the right path)! When such is the case, O Sanjaya, that will be which must be! Indeed, the abandonment of one's body in battle is the laudable duty of every Kshatriya!'

"Sanjaya said,—'This question, O great king, that thou wishest to put, is, indeed, worthy of thee! It behoveth thee not, however, to impute the fault to Duryodhana only. Listen to me, O king, as I speak of this exhaustively! That man who cometh by evil in consequence of his own misconduct, should never impute the fault to either time or the gods. O great king, he amongst men who perpetrateth every wicked act, deserveth to be slain in consequence of his perpetrating those wicked acts. Afflicted with injuries in consequence of the match at dice, the sons of Pāndu, however, with all their counsellors quietly bore all those injuries, looking up, O best of men, to thy face alone! Hear from me fully, O king, of the slaughter that is about to take place in battle, of steeds and elephants and kings endued with immeasurable energy! Hearing patiently, O thou that art endued with great wisdom, of the destruction of the world in the fierce battle that hath been brought about, come to this conclusion and no other, *viz*, that man is never the agent of his acts right or wrong! Indeed, like a wooden machine, man is not an agent (in all he does). In this respect three opinions are entertained: some say that everything is ordained by God; some say that our acts are the result of free-will; and others say that our acts are the result of those of our past lives! Listen then, therefore, with patience, to the evil that hath come upon us!'"

SECTION CLX.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the high-sould Pāndavas, O king, had encamped by the side of the *Hiranwati*, the Kauravas also fixed their encampment. And king Duryodhana having strongly posted his troops and paid homage to all the kings (on his side) and planted out-posts and bodies of soldiers for the protection of warriors, summoned those rulers of men, *viz*, Karna and Duçāsana and Cakuni the son of Suvala, and

began, O Bhārata, to consult with them. And king Duryodhana, O Bhāratā, having (first) consulted with Karna, and (next), O monarch, with Karna and his (own) brother Dusçāsana, and Suvala's son all together, then summoned, O bull among men, Uluka and bringing him into his presence in private, told him, O king, these words:—O Uluka, O son of an adept at dice, repair thou unto the Pāndavas and the Somakas! And repairing thither, repeat these my words (unto Yudhishthira) in the hearing of Vāsudeva! That terrible battle between the Kurus and the Pāndavas which had been expected from a long time back has at last come! Those boastful words which Sanjaya brought to me in the midst of the Kurus and which thou hadst, with Vāsudeva and thy younger brothers, uttered in a deep roar,—the time, O son of Kunti, hath at last come for making them good! Do ye achieve, therefore, all which ye have pledged yourselves to achieve!—Unto the eldest son of Kunti thou must say, as my words, the following:—Virtuous as thou art, how canst thou then, with all thy brothers, with the Somakas and the Kekayas, set thy heart upon unrighteousnes? How canst thou wish the destruction of the universe when, as I think, thou shouldst be the dispeller of the fears of all creatures! O bull of Bharata's race, this *sloka* sung of old by Prahlāda when his kingdom had been wrested from him by the gods, hath been heard by us.—*Ye gods, that person whose standard of righteousness is always up but whose sins are always concealed, is said to adopt the behaviour of the cat (in the story)!*— I will here repeat to thee, O king, this excellent story recited by Nārada to my father! A wicked cat, O king, once on a time took up his abode on the banks of the Ganges, abandoning all work and with his hands upraised (after the manner of a devotee). Pretending to have purified his heart, he said unto all creatures these words for inspiring confidence in them, *viz*, —*I am now practising virtue.*—After a long time, all oviparous creatures reposed trust in him, and coming unto him all together, O monarch, they all applauded that cat. And worshipped by all feathery creatures, that devourer of feathery creatures regarded his purpose already accomplished as also the purpose of his austerities. And after some more time, the mice

went to that place. And these also all beheld him to be a virtuous person engaged in the observance of vows, and pridefully exerting himself in a grand act. And having arrived at that settled conviction, they entertained the following wish, O king!—*Many foes we have. Let this one, therefore, become our maternal uncle, and let him always protect all the old and young ones of our race!*—And going at last to the cat, all of them said,—Through thy grace we desire to roam in happiness! Thou art our gracious refuge, thou art our great friend! For this, all of us place ourselves under thy protection! Thou art always devoted to virtue, thou art always engaged in the acquisition of virtue! O thou of great wisdom, protect us, therefore, like the wielder of the thunderbolt protecting the celestials!—Thus addressed, O king, by all the mice, the cat answered them, saying,—I do not see the consistency of these two, *viz*, my ascetic pursuits and this protection (that I am called upon to grant)! I cannot avoid, however, doing good to you agreeably to your request! You all, at the same time, should always obey my words! Staying as I am in the observance of a severe vow, I am weakened by my ascetic practices. I do not, therefore, see the means of my moving from place to place. Ye all should, therefore, bear me hence every day to the river-side.—Saying—*So be it*—the mice then, O bull of Bharata's race, made over all their old and young ones to that cat. Then that sinful creature of wicked soul, feeding on mice, gradually became fat and of good complexion and strong in his limbs. And thus while the mice began to be reduced in number, the cat began to grow in energy and strength. Then all the mice, coming together, said unto one another,—Our uncle is daily growing, while we are being daily reduced (in number)!—Then a certain mouse endued with wisdom, named Dindika, said, O king, these words unto the large swarm of mice gathered there:—Go all of ye to the river-side together! I will follow ye, accompanying our uncle!—Excellent, Excellent,—they said, and applauded that one of their number. And they all did just as those words of grave import spoken by Dindika seemed to indicate. The cat, however, not knowing all this, ate up Dindika that day. All the mice then, without

losing much time, began to take counsel of one another. Then a very old mouse named Kilika said these just words, O king, in the presence of all his kinsfolk :—Our uncle is not really desirous of earning virtue! He hath, like a hyppocrite become our friend when in reality he is our enemy! Indeed, the excreta of a creature that liveth only upon fruit and roots never containeth hair or fur. Then again, while his limbs are growing, our number is decaying. Besides Dindika cannot be seen for these seven or eight days. Hearing these words, the mice ran away in all directions. And that cat also of wicked soul returned to whence he came. O thou of wicked soul, thou too art a practiser of such feline behaviour! Thou behavest towards thy kinsmen after the manner of the cat (in the story) towards the mice! Thy speech is of one kind, and thy conduct is of another. Thy (devotion to) scripture and thy peacefulness of behaviour are only for display before men! Giving up this hypocrisy, O king, adopt the practices of a Kshatriya and do all that one should do as such! Art thou not virtuous, O bull among men? Acquiring the earth by means of the prowess of thy arms, make gifts, O best of the Bharatas, unto the Brāhmanas and the spirits of thy deceased ancestors as one should. Seeking the good of that mother of thine who hath been afflicted with distress for a series of years, dry up her tears, and confer honors on her by vanquishing (thy foes) in battle! Thou hadst, with great abjectness, solicited only five villages. Even that was rejected by us, for how might we bring about a battle, how might we succeed in angering the Pāndavas, was all that we sought! Remembering that it was for thee that the wicked Vidura was driven (by us) and that we had sought to burn you all in the house of lac, be a man now! At the time of Krishna's setting out (from Upaplavya) for the Kuru court, thou hadst through him communicated this message (to us), *viz,—Here, O king, I am prepared for either war or peace!*—Know, O monarch, that the hour hath come for battle! O Yudhishthira, I have made all these preparations in view of that! What doth a Kshatriya regard as a more estimable accession (of good fortune) than battle?

Born thou hast been in the Kshatriya order. Known also thou art in the world. Having obtained weapons again from Drona and Kripa, why, O bull of the Bharata race, dost thou rely on Vāsudeva who belongeth to the same order of life as thyself* and who is not superior to thee in might!'

"'Thou must also say unto Vāsudeva in the presence of the Pāndavas these words:—For thy own sake, as also for the sake of the Pāndavas, withstand me in battle to the best of thy power! Assuming once more that form which thou hadst assumed before in the Kuru court, rush thou with Arjuna against me (on the field)! A conjuror's tricks or illusions may (sometimes) inspire fright. But as regards the person that stands armed for fight, such deceptions (instead of inspiring fright) only provoke anger! We also are competent, by our powers of illusion, to ascend to heaven or the firmament, or penetrate into the nether region, or the city itself of Indra! We also can display various forms in our own body! The great Ordainer bringeth all creatures to subjection by a fiat of his will (and never by such conjuror's tricks)! Thou always sayest, O thou of Vrishni's race, these words, *viz,—Causing the sons of Dhritarāshtra to be slain in battle, I will confer undisputed sovereignty on the sons of Prithā!*— These words of thine were brought to me by Sanjaya. Thou hadst also said,—*Know, ye Kauravas, that it is with Arjuna having me for his second ye have provoked hostilities!*— Truthfully adhering to that pledge, put forth thy energy for the Pāndavas and fight now in battle to the best of thy power! Show us that thou canst be a man! He is said to be truly alive who having ascertained (the might of his) foes inspireth grief in them by resorting to true manliness! Without any reason, O Krishna, great hath been thy fame spread in the world! It will, however, presently be known that there are many persons in the world that are really eunuchs though possessed of the signs of manhood. A slave of Kansa

---

* *Tulyayoni* is equal as regards the order of life or existence. Duryodhana here implies that Vāsudeva is a human being and not a superhuman person.—T.

especially as thou art, a monarch like me should not case himself in mail against thee !—

"'Say (next) repeatedly, from me, O Uluka, unto that stupid, ignorant, gluttonous Bhimasena, who is even like a bull though divested of horns, these words, *viz*,—O son of Prithā, a cook thou hadst become, known by the name of Vallava, in the city of Virāta ! All this evidenced my manliness ! Let not the vow thou hadst before made in the midst of the Kuru court be falsified ! Let Dusçāsana's blood be drunk if thou art able ! O son of Kunti, thou often sayest—*Speedily shall I slay Dhritarāshtra's sons in battle !*—The time for accomplishing it hath now come ! O Bhārata, thou deservest to be rewarded in cookery !* The difference, however, is very great between dressing food and fighting ! Fight now, be a man ! Indeed, thou shalt have to lie down, deprived of life, on the earth, embracing thy mace, O Bhārata ! The boast in which thou hadst indulged in the midst of the assembly is all vain, O Vrikodara !—

"'Say, O Uluka, unto Nakula, from me, these words, *viz*,—Fight now, O Bhāratā, patiently ! We desire, O Bhārata, to behold thy manliness, thy reverence for Yudhishthira, and thy hatred of myself ! Recall to thy mind the sufferings in their entirety that Krishnā suffered !—

"'Next thou must say these words of mine unto Sahadeva in the presence of the (assembled) monarchs !—Fight in battle now, to the best of power ! Remember all your woes !—

"'Say next, from me, unto both Virāta and Drupada these words, *viz*,—Since the beginning of the creation, slaves endued even with great accomplishments have never been able to fully understand their masters. Nor have affluent kings been always able to understand their slaves !† *This king deserveth no praise*,—possibly, under such a belief, ye have come against

---

* Literally "in matters affecting edibles, food, and drink !"—T.

† The sense is not very clear. It seems that Duryodhana wishes Virāta and Drupada to understand that they are his slaves ; that, as such, they do not know him sufficiently ; and that, he also, as their master, does not know them well.—T.

me! United together, fight ye, therefore, with me, for achieving my death, and accomplishing the objects ye have in view, as also those that the Pāndavas have!*—

"'Say also, from me, unto Dhrishtadyumna the prince of Pānchāla, these words, *viz*,—The hour hath now come for thee, and thou also hast come for thy hour! Approaching Drona in battle thou wilt know what is best for thee! Achieve thou the business of thy friends! Accomplish that feat† which is difficult of accomplishment!

"'Say, from me, O Uluka, unto Cikhandi these words, *viz*,—The mighty-armed Kaurava, the foremost of all bowmen, Gangā's son (Bhishma), will not slay thee, knowing thee to be only a female! Fight now without any fear! Achieve in battle what thou canst to the best of thy power! We desire to behold thy prowess!'"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Having said this, king Duryodhana laughed aloud. And addressing Uluka again, he said, 'Say once more unto Dhananjaya in the hearing of Vāsudeva these words, *viz*,—O hero, either vanquishing us rule thou this world, or vanquished by us lie thou down on the field (deprived of life)! Recalling to thy mind the sufferings occasioned by your banishment from the kingdom, the woes of your sojourn in the woods, and the afflictions of Krishnā, be a man, O son of Pāndu! That for which a Kshatriya lady bringeth forth a son is now arrived! Displaying, therefore, in battle thy might, energy, courage, manliness, and great dexterity and speed in the use of weapons, appease thy wrath! Afflicted with woe, and dispirited, and exiled (from home) for a long time, and driven from his kingdom, who is there whose heart would not break! Who is there, well-born, and brave, and uncovetous of other's wealth, that would not have his wrath excited when his kingdom descending from genera-

---

* *Tad* is explained by Nilakantha here as used for *Tashmāt*; while *Vadhārtham*, *atmārtham*, and *Pāndavārtham* are adverbs connected with the final imperative.—T.

† The slaughter of Drona, as vowed before by the prince of the Pānchālas.—T.

tion to generation is attacked ?* Realise in deeds those high words that thou saidst ! One that only boasts without being able to do anything is regarded a worthless man by those that are good. Recover thy kingdom and those possessions that are now owned by thy foes ! Even these two are the purposes which a person desirous of war hath in view. Exert, therefore, thy manliness ! Thou wert won (as a slave) at dice ! Krishnā was caused by us to be brought into the assembly ! One that regardeth himself a man should certainly display his wrath at this ! For twelve long years hadst thou been exiled from home into the woods, and one whole year hast thou passed in Virāta's service ! Remembering the pangs of banishment from the kingdom and of thy sojourn in the woods, as also those which Krishnā suffered, be thou a man ! Display thy wrath towards those that repeatedly utter harsh speeches at thee and thy brothers ! Indeed, wrath (such as that) would consist with manliness ! Let thy anger, thy might and prowess, thy knowledge, and thy lightness of hand in the use of weapons, be exhibited ! Fight, O son of Prithā, and be a man ! The incantations† in respect of all thy weapons have been performed. The field of Kurukshetra is free from mire. Thy steeds are hale and plump. Thy soldiers have received their pay. With Keçava, therefore, (as thy) second, fight (with us) ! Without encountering Bhishma as yet, why dost thou indulge in such boast ! Like a fool who without having ascended the *Gandhamādana* mountains boasts (of his would-be feat), thou, O son of Kunti, art indulging in a similar brag ! Without bragging, be a man ! Without having vanquished in battle the invincible Karna of the *Suta* race, or Calya, that

---

* It is difficult to understand what the meaning of these two *slokas* is. Is the first of these an incitement to Arjuna that he has every reason to be angry ? Is the last *sloka* also a hint that the speaker himself cannot but be angry at the attempt of the Pāndavas to attack his kingdom ? Nilakantha is not explicit—T.

† It was supposed that every weapon was presided over by a particular deity. Before use, certain *mantras* are repeated, invoking those deities to come into those weapons and do the bidding of the person shooting them. This ceremony was called *Lokabhisira* or *Nirājana*.—T.

foremost of persons, or Drona the first of all mighty warriors and equal unto the lord of Cachi in battle, how canst thou, O Pārtha, wish for thy kingdom? He that is a preceptor of both Vedic lore and bowmanship, he that hath crossed both those branches of learning, he that is foremost in battle and immovable (as a tower), he whose might knoweth no diminution, that commander of armies, Drona of great effulgence,—him, O Partha, thou wishest in vain to conquer! It is never heard that the *Sumeru* peak hath been crushed by the wind. Yet even the wind will bear away Sumeru, heaven itself will fall down on the earth, the very *Yugas* will be altered in respect of their course, if what thou hast said unto me becometh true! What man is there, desirous of life, be it Pārtha or any body else, who having approached that grinder of foes, would be able to return home with sound body? What person is there, treading upon the earth with his feet, who, encountered by Drona and Bhishma and touched with their arrows would escape from the battle with life! Like a frog having its abode in a well, why art thou not able to realise the might of this vast army of the assembled monarchs, invincible, looking like the very celestial host and protected by these lords of men as the heavenly host by the gods themselves,—protected that is, by the kings of the East, the West, the South and the North, of the Kāmbojas, the Cakas, the Khaças, the Cālwas, the Matsyas, the Kurus of the middle country, the Mlecchas, the Pulindas, the Dravidas, the Andhras, and the Kānchis,—this host of many nations, ready for battle, and resembling the uncrossable current of the Gangā? O thou of little understanding, how canst thou, O fool, venture to fight with me when stationed in the midst of my elephant-host? Thy inexhaustible quivers, thy car given thee by *Agni*, and thy celestial banner, O Pārtha, will all, O Bhārata, be tested by us in battle! Fight, O Arjuna, without brag! Why dost thou indulge in too much brag? Success in battle resulteth from the method in which it is fought. A battle is never gained by brag. If, O Dhananjaya, acts in this world succeeded in consequence of brag, all persons would then have succeeded in their objects, for who is there that is not competent to brag? I

know that thou hast Vāsudeva for thy ally. I know that thy *Gāndiva* is full six cubits long. I know that there is no warrior equal to thee. Knowing all this I retain thy kingdom yet. A man never winneth success in consequence of the attributes of lineage. It is the Supreme Ordainer alone who by his fiat maketh (things hostile) friendly* and subservient. For these thirteen years have I enjoyed sovereignty while ye were weeping. I shall continue to rule in the same way, slaying thee with thy kinsmen. Where was thy *Gāndiva* then when thou wert made a slave won at stake? Where, O Fālguna, was Bhima's might then? Your deliverance then came neither from Bhimasena armed with mace nor from Fālguna armed with *Gāndiva*, but from the faultless Krishnā. It was she, the daughter of Prishata's house, that delivered you all, sunk in slavery, engaged in occupations worthy only of the low, and working as servitors. I characterised you all as sessame seeds without kernel. That is true. For, did not Pārtha (sometime after) bear a braid when living in Virāta's city? In the cooking apartments of Virāta, Bhimasena was fatigued with doing the work of a cook. Even this, O son of Prithā, is (evidence of) my manliness? Flying from an encounter with hips and braidsand waist-bands,† thyself binding thy hair wert engaged in teaching the girls to dance! It is thus that Kshatriyas always inflict punishment on Kshatriyas! From fear of Vāsudeva, or from fear of thyself, O Fālguna, I will not give up the kingdom! Fight, with Keçava as thy ally! Neither deception nor conjuor's tricks, nor jugglery, can terrify the armed man addressed for fight. On the other hand, these provoke only his wrath. A thousand Vāsudevas, a hundred Fālgunas, approaching me whose arms and weapons never go for nothing, will surely fly away in all directions. Encounter Bhishma in combat or strike the hill with thy head,‡ or cross with the aid of thy two arms alone the vast and deep main!

---

* *Anukulāni* is lit. propitious.—T.

† Referring to Arjuna'a living in Virāta's abode as a eunuch with a braid.—T.

‡ Lit. pierce with thy head.—T.

As regards my army, it is a veritable main with Cāradwat's son as its large fish, Vivingçati as its huge snake, Bhishma as its current of immeasurable might, Drona as its unconquerable alligator, Karna and Cala and Calya its fishes and whirlpools, the ruler of the Kāmvojas its equine head emitting fire, Vrihadvala its fierce waves, Somadatta's son its whale, Yuyutsu and Durmarshana its waters, Bhagadatta its gale, Crutāyus and Hridika's son its gulfs and bays, Dusçāsana its current, Sushena and Chitrāyudha its hippopotamus and crocodile, Jayadratha its (submarine) rock, Purumitra its depth, and Cakuni its shores !* When, having plunged into this swelling ocean with its inexhaustible waves of weapons, thou wilt from fatigue be deprived of senses and have all thy relatives and friends slain, then will repentance possess thy heart ! Then also will thy heart turn away from the thought of ruling the earth like the heart of a person of impure deeds turning away from (hope of) heaven ! Indeed, for thee to win a kingdom to rule is as impossible as for one not possessed of ascetic merit to obtain heaven !—' "

SECTION CLXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having reached the Pāndava camp, the gambler's son (Uluka) presented himself before the Pāndavas, and addressing Yudhishthira said,—Thou art fully conversant with what envoys say ! It behoveth thee not, therefore, to be angry with me if I repeat those words only which Duryodhana hath instructed me to do !—

" 'Hearing this, Yudhishthira said,—Thou hast no fear, O Uluka ! Tell us, without any anxiety what are the views of the covetous Duryodhana of limited sight !—Then in the midst and presence of the illustrious and high-souled Pāndavas, of the Srinjayas, and Krishna possessed of great fame, of

---

* Bhishma is called the *Vega* of this ocean, and Dusçásana its *ogha*. But these words imply the same thing. If there is any difference, *Vega*, perhaps, is stronger than *ogha*. Vivingçati is spoken of as *Toya* and *Durmarshana* (lower down) as *oda*. I have, therefore, confined the two in one place, there being no difference between *toya* and *uda*.—T.

Drupada with his sons, of Virāta, and of all the monarchs, Uluka said these words.

"'Uluka said,—Even this is what the high-souled king Duryodhana hath in the presence of all the Kuru heroes, said unto thee! Listen to those words, O Yudhishtira! Thou wert defeated at dice, and Krishnā was brought into the assembly! At this, a person who regardeth himself a man would be justfied in giving way to wrath! For twelve years wert thou banished from home into the woods! For one whole year didst thou live in Virāta's service. Remembering the reason there is for wrath, thy exile, and the persecution of Krishnā, be a man, O son of Pandu! Though weak, Bhima yet, O Pāndava, made a vow! Let him, if able, drink the blood of Dusçāsana! Thy weapons have been properly worshipped and their presiding deities have been invoked! The field of Kurukshetra also is without mire. The roads are even. Thy steeds are well-fed. Engage in battle, therefore, on the morrow, with Keçava as thy ally! Without having yet approached Bhishma in battle, why dost thou indulge in brag? Like a fool that boasteth of his intention to ascend the mountains of Gandhamādana, thou, O son of Kunti, art indulging in a vain boast! Without having vanquished in battle the *Suta's* son (Karna) who is invincible, and Calya that foremost of mighty persons, and Drona that first of all warriors and equal unto Cachi's lord himself in combat, why, O son of Prithā, dost thou wish for sovereignty? A preceptor in both the *Vedas* and the bow, he hath reached the end of both these branches of learning. Thou desirest in vain, O son of Prithā, to vanquish that leader of troops, the illustrious Drona, who fighteth in the van, is incapale of being agitated, and whose strength knows no diminution. Never have we heard that the mountains of Sumeru have been crushed by the wind! But the wind will bear away Sumeru, heaven itself will fall down on the Earth, the very *Yugas* will be reversed, if what thou hast said unto me really taketh place! Who is there fond of life, fighting from the back of an elephant or of a horse or from a car, that would return home, (safe and sound) after having encountered that grinder of foes? What creature treading the

earth with his feet, would escape with life from battle, having been attacked by Drona and Bhishma or pierced with their terrible shafts? Like a frog living within a well, why dost thou not realise the strength of this assembled host of monarchs, which resembleth the very celestial host, and which is protected by these kings like the gods protecting theirs in heaven, and which, swarming with the kings of the East, the West, the South, and the North, with Kāmvojas, Cakas, Khaças, Cālwas, Matsayas, Kurus of the middle country, Mlecchas, Pulindas, Dravidas, Andhras, and Kānchis, indeed, with many nations all addressed for battle, is uncrossable like the swollen tide of *Ganga?* O fool of little understanding, how wilt thou fight with me while I am stationed in the midst of my elephant force?—

"'Having said these words unto king Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, Uluka, turning his face then towards Jishnu, said unto him these words:—Fight without bragging, O Arjuna! Why dost thou brag so much? Success resulteth from the application of method. A battle is never won by brag. If acts in this world, O Dhananjaya, succeeded in consequence only of brag, then all men would have succeeded in their objects, for who is there that is not competent to brag? I know that thou hast Vāsudeva for thy ally. I know that thy *Gāndiva* is full six cubits long. I know that there is no warrior equal to thee. Knowing all this, I retain thy kingdom yet! A man never winneth success in consequence of the attribute of lineage. It is the Supreme Ordainer alone who by his fiat maketh (things hostile) friendly and subservient. For these thirteen years have I enjoyed sovereignty while ye were weeping! I shall continue to rule in the same way, slaying thee with thy kinsmen! Where was thy *Gāndiva* then when thou wert made a slave won at dice? Where, O Fālguna, was Bhimasena's might then? Your deliverance then came neither from Bhimasena armed with mace, nor from Fālguna armed with *Gāndiva*, but from the faultless Krishnā. It was she, the daughter of Prishata's house, that delivered you all, sunk in slavery, engaged in occupations worthy only of the low, and working as servitors! I characterised ye as sessame seeds without kernel,

That is very true, for, did not Pārtha bear a braid while living in Virāta's city ? In the cooking apartments of Virāta, Bhimasena was fatigued with doing the work of a cook. Even this, O son of Kunti, is (evidence of) my manliness! Flying from an encounter with braids and waist-bands, thyself binding thy hair into a braid, thou wert employed in teaching the girls to dance! It is thus that Kshatriyas always inflict punishment on a Kshatriya! From fear of Vāsudeva, or from fear of thyself, O Fālguna, I will not give up the kingdom. Fight, with Keçava as thy ally! Neither deception, nor conjuror's tricks, nor jugglery, can terrify the armed man addressed for fight. On the other hand, all this provokes only his wrath! A thousand Vāsudevas, a hundred Fālgunas, approaching me whose aim and weapons never go for nothing, fly away in all directions. Encounter Bhishma in combat, or pierce the hills with thy head, or cross with the aid of thy two arms alone the vast and deep main! As regards my army, it is a veritable ocean with Caradwat's son as its large fish, Vivingçati its smaller fish, Vrihadvala its waves, Somadatta's son its whale, Bhishma its mighty force, Drona its unconquerable alligator, Karna and Calya its fishes and whirlpools, Kāmvoja its equine head vomitting fire, Jayadratha its (submarine) rock, Purumitra its depth, Durmarshana its waters, and Cakuni its shores! When having plunged into this swelling ocean with its inexhaustible waves of weapons, thou wilt from fatigue be deprived of thy senses, and have all thy relatives and friends slain, then will repentance possess thy heart! Then will thy heart turn away, O Pārtha, from the thought of ruling the Earth like the heart of a person of impure deeds turning away from (hope of) heaven. Indeed, for thee to win a kingdom to rule is as impossible as for one not possessed of ascetic merit to obtain heaven!—'"

SECTION CLXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'O monarch, provoking Arjuna still further who was like a snake of virulent poison, by means of those wordy stakes of his, Uluka once more repeated the words he

had once spoken. The Pāndavas had, before such repetition, been sufficiently provoked, but hearing those words (a second time) and receiving those censures through the gambler's son, they were provoked beyond endurance. They all stood up, and began to stretch their arms. And looking like enraged snakes of virulent poison, they began to cast their eyes on one another. And Bhimasena, with face downwards, and breathing heavily like a snake, began to glance obliquely at Keçava, directing the blood-red corners of his eyes towards him. And beholding the wind-god's son to be greatly afflicted and extremely provoked with rage, he of Daçārha's race smilingly addressed the gambler's son and said,—Depart hence without a moment's delay, O gambler's son, and say unto Suyodhana these words, *viz,—Thy words have been heard and their sense understood. Let that take place which thou desirest.*—Having said this, O best of monarchs, the mighty-armed Keçava looked once more at Yudhishthira endued with great wisdom. Then in the midst and presence of all the Srinjayas, of Krishna possessed of great fame, of Drupada with his sons, of Virāta, and all the kings (there assembled), Uluka once more repeated unto Arjuna the words he had said, provoking him still further therewith, like one angering a wrathful snake of virulent poison by means of a stake. And he also said unto all of them, *viz,* Krishna and others, those words that Duryodhana had instructed him to say. And hearing those harsh and highly disagreeable words uttered by Uluka, Pārtha was greatly agitated, and wiped the sweat off his forehead. And beholding Pārtha, O king, in that condition, that assembly of monarchs could not bear it at all. And at that insult to Krishna and the high-souled Pārtha, the mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas were greatly agitated. Though endued with great steadiness of mind, those tigers among men began to burn with anger. And Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandi and that mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, and the five Kekaya brothers, and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha, and the sons of Draupadi, and Abhimanyu, and king Dhrishtaketu, and Bhimasena endued with great prowess, and those mighty car-warriors—the twins, —jumped up from their seats, their eyes red with anger,

tossing their handsome arms decked with red sandal-paste and ornaments of gold.* Then Vrikodara the son of Kunti, understanding their gestures and hearts, sprang up from his seat. And gnashing his teeth, and licking with his tongue the corners of his mouth, and burning with rage, and squeezing his hands, and turning his eyes fiercely, said these words unto Uluka:—Ignorant fool, the words have now been heard which Duryodhana said unto thee for the object of provoking us as if we were a set of imbeciles! Hear now the words which *I* say and which *thou* art to repeat unto the inacessible Suyodhana in the midst of all the Kshatriyas and in the hearing of the *Suta's* son and the wicked-hearted Cakuni. We always seek to gratify our elder brother! It was for this, O thou of wicked behaviour, that we tolerated thy acts. Dost thou not regard this as highly fortunate for thee? It was for only the good of our race that king Yudhishthira the just, endued with great intelligence, sent Hrishikeça to the Kurus for bringing about a peace! Impelled by Fate, without doubt thou art desirous of repairing unto Yama's abode! Come, fight with us. That, however, is certainly to take place tomorrow! I have, indeed, vowed to slay thee with thy brothers! O sinful fool, do not entertain the slightest doubt, for it will be as I have vowed! The very ocean—the abode of Varuna—may all on a sudden transgress its continents. The very mountains may split. Yet my words can never be false! If Yama himself, or Kuvera, or Rudra, assisteth thee, the Pāndavas will still accomplish what they have vowed! I shall certainly drink Dusçāsana's blood according to my pleassure! And I also vow that what Kshatriya soever may then angrily approach me, even if he cometh with Bhishma himself at the van, I will send him to Yama's abode! That which I have said in the midst of a Kshatriya assembly will certainly be true! I swear this by my soul!—

"'Hearing these words of Bhimasena, the wrathful Saha-

---

* The ornaments here mentioned are *Angadas*, *Pārihāryas*, and *Keyuras*. These are all differents kinds of bracelets worn on the upper and lower arms.—T.

deva also, with eyes red in anger, said these words in the presence of the (assembled) troops,—words that become that proud hero. And he said,—Listen, O sinful one, to the words I utter and which must be repeated to thy father! A difference would never have arisen between us and the Kurus, if Dhritarāshtra had no relationship with thee! Of sinful acts and the exterminator of thy own race, thou hast been born as an embodiment of quarrel for the destruction of the whole world as also for the destruction of Dhritarāshtra's race! From our very birth, O Uluka, that sinful father of thine hath always sought to do us injury and evil. I desire to attain the opposite shore of that hostile relation. Slaying thee first before the very eyes of Cakuni, I shall then slay Cakuni himself in the sight of all bowmen!—

"'Hearing these words of both Bhima and Sahadeva, Fālguna smilingly addressed Bhima, saying,—O Bhimasena, they that have provoked hostilities with thee, cannot live! Though they may dwell happily in their homes, those fools become yet entangled in the meshes of death! O best of men, Uluka doth not deserve to be addressed harshly by thee! What fault do envoys commit, repeating as they only do what they are instructed (to say)?—And having thus addressed Bhima of terrible prowess that mighty-armed hero then addressed his heroic allies and well-wishers headed by Dhrishtadyumna, saying,—Ye have heard the words of the sinful son of Dhritarāshtra in dispraise of Vāsudeva and especially of myself! And hearing them ye have been filled with anger because ye wish us well! But through Vāsudeva's might and your endeavours, I do not reckon even all the Kshatriyas of the earth assembled together! With your permission I will now communicate to Uluka what the reply to those words is, what, indeed, he should say unto Duryodhana!—*When the morrow cometh, stationed at the head of my division the answer to these words shall I give through Gāndiva! For they that are eunuchs answer in words!*

"'Hearing this, all those best of kings applauded Dhananjaya, wondering at the ingenuity of that reply. King Yudhishthira the just then, having spoken mildly unto all the kings

each according to his age and as each deserved, said at last unto Uluka these words so that he might carry them to Duryodhana. And Yudhishthira said,—No good king should patiently bear an insult. Having so long heard what thou hadst to say, I shall now tell thee what my reply is !—

"'Having heard then, O best of Bharata's race, those words of Duryodhana, Yudhishthira, that bull of the Bharata race, with eyes exceedingly red in anger and himslf sighing like a snake of virulent poison, licking the corners of his mouth with his tongue and as if swelling with wrath, and casting his eyes on Janārddana and his own brothers, said unto Uluka these words that were fraught with both mildness and vigor. And tossing his massive arms he said unto the gambler's son,—Go, O Uluka, and say unto Duryodhana, that ungrateful, wicked-minded embodiment of hostilities, that infamous wretch of his race, these words, *viz*, O sinful wretch, thou always behavest with crookedness towards the Pāndavas! O sinful fool, he that displayeth his prowess relying on his own might and summoneth his foes (to battle) and fulfileth his own words, even he is a man of the Kshatriya order! Be thou a Kshatriya, O sinful wretch, and summon us to battle! O infamous one of thy race, do not come to battle, placing at thy head others for whom we profess respect! O Kaurava, relying on thy own might and on that of thy servants, summon the sons of Prithā to battle! Be a Kshatriya in every way! He who summoneth his foes, relying on the might of others, and incapable of receiving them himself is, indeed, a eunuch! Thou, however, thinkest highly of thyself, relying on the might of others! Being weak and unable thyself, why then dost thou roar so (in words) at us?—'

"'Krishna said,—My words also, O gambler's son, should be communicated unto Suyodhana. Let that morrow come to thee on which the battle is to take place. O thou of wicked soul, be a man! O fool, thou thinkest that Janārddana will not fight, since he hath been chosen by the Pāndavas to act only as a car-driver. Thinking so, thou art not alarmed. That, however, will not be, even for a moment. If my wrath is excited I may then consume all the kings (assembled by

thee) like a fire consuming a heap of straw. At Yudhishthira's command, however, I shall only discharge the functions of car-driver to the high-souled Fālguna of mind under complete control and who alone (amongst us two) will fight! If thou fliest beyond the limits of the three worlds, if thou sinkest into the depths of the Earth, thou shalt, even at those places, behold Arjuna's car tomorrow morning, Thou thinkest that Bhima's words have been spoken in vain! But know that Dusçāsana's blood hath already been quaffed! Know this also that although thou usest such cross and perverse words, yet neither Pārtha, nor king Yudhishthira, nor Bhimasena, nor any of the twins, regardeth thee as straw!—' "

SECTION CLXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having heard those words of Duryodhana, Gudākeça of great fame looked at the gambler's son with eyes exceedingly red. And eyeying Keçava also and tossing his massive arms, he addressed the gambler's son, saying,—He who, relying on his own strength, summoneth his foes and fighteth with them fearlessly, is spoken of as a man. He, however, who, relying on the strength of others, summoneth his foes, is an infamous Kshatriya. In consequence of his incapacity, such a one is regarded as the lowest of men. Relying on the strength of others, thou, (O Duryodhana) being a coward thyself, desirest yet, O fool, to rebuke thy foes. Having installed (Bhishma) the oldest of all the Kshatriyas, whose heart is ever bent in doing what is good, who hath all his passions under control, and who is endued with great wisdom, in the command of thy troops and made him liable to certain death, thou indulgest in brag! O thou of wicked understanding, thy object (in doing this) is fully known to us, O wretch of thy race! Thou hast done it, believing that the sons of Pāndu will not, from kindness, slay the son of Gangā! Know, however, O Dhritarāshtra's son, that I will slay that Bhishma first in the sight of all the bowmen, relying upon whose strength thou indulgest in such brag! O gamblers' son, repairing (hence) unto the Bharatas

and approaching Duryodhana the son of Dhritarāshtra, say unto him that Arjuna hath said—So be it! After this night will have passed away, the fierce encounter of arms will take place. Indeed, Bhishma of unfailing might and firmly adhering to truth hath told thee in the midst of the Kurus these words, *viz,—I will slay the army of the Srinjayas and the Çālweyas. Let that be my task. Excepting Drona I can slay the whole world. Thou needest not, therefore, entertain any fear of the Pāndavas!*—At this, thou, O Duryodhana, regardest the kingdom as thy own and thinkest that the Pāndavas have sunk into distress. Thou hast been filled with pride at this. Thou seest not, however, the danger that is in thy own self! I shall, therefore, in battle, first slay, before thy very eyes, Bhishma the eldest of the Kurus! At sunrise (tomorrow) at the head of thy troops, with standards and cars, protect ye that leader of thy forces firm in his promises. I shall, with my arrows, throw that Bhishma who is your refuge down from his car before the eyes of you all! When the morrow cometh, Suyodhana will know what it is to indulge in brag, beholding the grandsire covered with my arrows! Thou shalt, O Suyodhana, very soon see the fulfilment of that which Bhimasena in anger said, in the midst of the assembly, unto thy brother, that man of limited sight, *viz,* Dusçāsana, wedded to unrighteousness, always quarrelsome, of wicked understanding, and cruel in behaviour. Thou shalt soon see the terrible effects of vanity and pride, of wrath and harsh speeches, of cruelty and arrogance, of brag and heartlessness, of cutting words and acts, of aversion from righteousness, of sinfulness and speaking ill of others, of transgressing the counsels of the aged, of oblique sight, and of all kinds of vices! O scum of humanity, how canst thou, O fool, hope for either life or kingdom if I, having Vāsudeva for my second, give way to anger? After Bhishma and Drona will have been quieted and after the *Suta's* son will have been overthrown, thou shalt be hopeless of life, kingdom and sons! Hearing of the slaughter of thy brothers and sons, and struck mortally by Bhimasena, thou wilt, O Suyodhana, recollect all thy misdeeds!—Tell him, O gambler's son, that I do not vow

a second time. I tell thee truly that all this will be true!—Departing hence, O Uluka, say these words of mine, O sire, unto Suyodhana! It behoveth thee not to apprehend my behaviour by the light of thy own! Know the difference there is between thy conduct and mine, which is even the difference between truth and falsehood! I do not wish harm to even insects and ants. What shall I say, therefore, of my ever wishing harm to my kinsmen? O sire, it was for this that five villages only were solicited by me! Why, O thou of wicked understanding, dost thou not see the dire calamity that threatens thee? Thy soul overwhelmed with lust, thou indulgest in brag from defectiveness of understanding. It is for this also thou acceptest not the beneficial words of Vāsudeva! What need now of much talk? Fight (against us) with all thy friends! Say, O gambler's son, unto the Kuru prince who always doth what is injurious to me (these words also, *viz*,) Thy words have been heard; their sense also hath been understood. Let it be as thou wishest!—

"'O son of a king, Bhimasena then once more said these words:—O Uluka, say these words of mine unto the wicked-minded, deceitful, and unrighteous Sudyodhana, who is an embodiment of sin, who is wedded to guile, and whose behaviour is exceedingly wicked. Thou shalt have to dwell in the stomach of a vulture or in Hastināpura.* O scum of humankind, I shall assurely fulfil the vow I made in the midst of the assembly. I swear in the name of Truth! Slaying Dusçāsana in battle, I shall quaff his life-blood! Slaying also all thy (other) brothers, I shall smash thy own thighs. Without doubt, O Suyodhana, I am the Destroyer of all the sons of Dhritarāshtra, as Abhimanyu is of all the (younger) princes! I shall, by my deeds, gratify you all! Hearken once more to me. O Suyodhana, slaying thee with all thy uterine brothers, I shall strike the crown of thy head with my foot in the sight of king Yudhishthiea the just!—

* The meaning probably is that when slain by me, thou shalt either be devoured by vultures or allowed to rot in the cemetery of Hastinápura.—T.

"'Nakula, then, O king, said these words:—O Uluka, say unto Dhritarāshtra's son Suyodhana of Kuru's race that all the words uttered by him have now been heard and their sense understood. I shall, O Kauravya, do all that thou hast commanded me to do!—

"'And Sahadeva also, O monarch, said these words of grave import:—O Suyodhana, it will all be as thou wishest! Thou shalt have to repent, O great king, along with thy children, kinsmen, and counsellors, even as thou art now braging joyously in view of our sufferings!—

"'Then Virāta and Drupada, both venerable in years, said these words unto Uluka:—It is even our wish that we become slaves of a virtuous person! Whether, however, we are slaves or masters, will be known tomorrow, as also who owns what manliness!—

"'After them, Cikhandin said these words unto Uluka:—Thou must say unto king Duryodhana who is always addicted to sinfulness, these word, *viz*,—See, O king, what fierce deed is perpetrated by me in battle! I shall hurl that grandsire of thine from his car, relying upon whose prowess thou art certain of success in battle! Without doubt, I have been created by the high-souled Creator for the destruction of Bhishma! I shall assuredly slay Bhishma in the sight of all bowmen!—

"'After this, Dhrishtadyumna also said unto Uluka, the gambler's son, these words:—Say unto prince Suyodhana these my words, *viz*, *I* shall slay Drona with all his followers and friends! And I shall do a deed which none else will ever do!—

"'King Yudhishthira once more said these high words fraught with clemency, *viz*,—O monarch, I never desire the slaughter of my kinsmen! O thou of wicked understanding, it is from thy fault that all this will assuredly take place. I shall, of course, have to sanction the fulfilment of their great feats by all these (around me)! Go hence, O Uluka, without delay, or stay here, O sire, for, blessed be thou, we too are thy kinsmen!—

"'Uluka, then, O king, taking the permission of Yudhishthira the son of *Dharma*, went thither were king Suyodhana was. Thus addressed, the gambler's son carefully bearing in

mind all he had heard, returned, with Yudhishthira's permission, to the place from which he had come. And arriving there, he fully represented unto the vindictive Duryodhana all that Arjuna had charged him with. And he also faithfully communicated unto Dhritarāshtra's son the words of Vāsudeva, of Bhima, of king Yudhishthira the just, of Nakula and Virāta and Drupada, O Bhārata, and the words of Sahadeva and Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin, and the words also that were spoken (subsequently) by Keçava and Arjuna. And having listened to the words of the gambler's son, (Duryodhana), that bull of Bharata's race, ordered Dusçāsana and Karna and Cakuni, O Bhārata, and their own troops and the troops of the allies, and all the (assembled) kings, to be arrayed in divisions and be ready for battle before sunrise (next morrow). Messengers then, instructed by Karna and hastily mounting on cars and camels and mares and good steeds endued with great fleetness, quickly rode through the encampment. And at Karna's command they promulgated the order—*Array (yourselves) before sunrise tomorrow!*—'"

SECTION CLXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having listened to Uluka's words, Yudhishthira the son of Kunti moved his army headed by Dhrishtadyumna and others. And that vast army commanded by Dhrishtadyumna, consisting of four kinds of forces, *viz*, foot-soldiers and elephants and cars and cavalry, terrible, and immovable like the Earth herself, and guarded by mighty car-warriors led by Bhimasena and Arjuna, could be compared to the vast ocean lying in stillness. And at the head of that vast force was that mighty bowman, the prince of Pānchāla, invincible in battle, *viz*, Dhrishtadyumna, desirous of obtaining Drona for his antagonist. And Dhrishtadyumna began to select combatants (from his own army) for pitting them against particular warriors of the hostile force. And he gave orders unto his car-warriors, suited to their strength and courage. And he pitted Arjuna against the *Suta's* son (Karna), Bhima against Duryodhana, Dhrishtaketu against Calya, Uttamaujas

against Gautama's son (Kripa), Nakula against Kritavarman, and Yuyudhāna against the ruler of the Sindhus (Jayadratha). And he placed Cikhandhin in the van, pitting him against Bhishma. And he urged Sahadeva against Cakuni, and Chekitāna against Cala, and the five sons of Draupadi against the Trigartas. And he urged Subhadrā's son (Abhimanyu) against Vrishasena (the son of Karna) as also against all the rest of the kings, for he regarded Abhimanyu as superior to Arjuna himself in battle. And distributing his warriors thus, individually and collectively, that mighty bowman of the hue of blazing fire kept Drona for his own share. And that leader of leaders of troops, the mighty and intelligent bowman Dhrishtadyumna, having arrayed his troops duly, waited for battle with a firm heart. And having arrayed the combatants, as indicated above, of the Pāndavas, he waited, with collected mind, on the field for securing victory to the sons of Pāndu.' "*

SECTION CLXV.

(Rathātiratha-sankhyāna Parva).

"Dhritarāshtra said,—"After Fālguna had vowed the slaughter of Bhishma in battle, what did my wicked sons headed by Duryodhana do ? Alas, I already behold my father, Gangā's son, slain in battle, by that bowman of firm grasp, *viz*, Pārtha, having Vāsudeva for his ally ! And what also did that mighty bowman, that foremost of smiters, Bhishma, endued with immeasurable wisdom, say on hearing the words of Pārtha ! Having accepted also the command of the Kauravas, what did that foremost of warriors, Gangā's son of exceeding intelligence and prowess, do ?' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus questioned, Sanjaya told him everything about what that eldest one of the Kurus, Bhishma of immeasurable energy, had said.

" Sanjaya said,—'O monarch, obtaining the command, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu said these words unto Duryodhana,

---

* Sections CLX to CLXIV are in many Editions included in a separate *Parva* called "Ulukadutagamana."—T.

gladdening him greatly :—Worshipping the leader of the celestial forces, *viz*, Kumāra, armed with the lance, I shall, without doubt, be the commander of thy army today! I am well-versed in all military affairs, as also in various kinds of array. I know also how to make regular soldiers and volunteers act their parts. In the matter of marching the troops and arraying them, in encounters and withdrawing, I am as well-versed, O great king, as Vrihaspati (the preceptor of the celestials) is! I am acquainted with all the methods of military array obtaining amongst the celestials, *Gandharvas*, and human beings. With these I will confound the Pāndavas. Let thy (heart's) fever be dispelled. I will fight (the foe), duly protecting thy army and according to the rules of military) science! O king, let thy heart's fever be dispelled!—

"'Hearing these words, Duryodhana said,—O Gangā's son of mighty arms, I tell thee truly, I have no fear from even all the gods and *Asuras* united together! How much less, therefore, is my fear when thy invincible self hath become the leader of my forces, and when that tiger among men, Drona, also waiteth willingly for battle! When you two foremost of men are addrest for battle on my side, victory, nay, the sovereignty of even the celestials, cannot assuredly be unattainable by me! I desire, however, O Kaurava, to know who amongst all the warriors of the foe and my own are to be counted as *Rathas* and who *Atirathas*.* Thou, O grandsire, art well acquainted with the (prowess of the) combatants of the foe as also of ourselves!† I desire to hear this, with all these lords of earth!—

"'Bhishma said,—Listen, O son of Gāndhari, O king of kings, to the tale of *Rathas* in thy own army! Hear, O king,

---

* Both these words have techincal senses. A *Rathin* is a car-warrior capable of fighting with a certain number of hostile combatants of all the four kinds battling together. A *Mahāratha* is a car-warrior who is capable of fighting with ten thousand bowmen battling together. An *Atiratha* is a car-warrior of prowess still greater than that of a *Mahāratha*. Instead of *Rathin* the form *Ratha* is sometimes used, although it implies (ordinarily) only a car and not a car-warrior.—T.

† The form of this last sentence is not exclamatory but assertive.—T.

as to who are *Rathas* and who *Atirathas !* There are in thy army, many thousands, many millions, and many hundreds of millions of *Rathas.* Listen, however, to me as I name only the principal ones. Firstly, with thy century of uterine brothers including Dusçāsana and others, thou art one of the foremost of *Rathas !* All of you are skilled in striking, and proficient in cutting and piercing. All of you are accomplished drivers of cars while seated in the driver's box, and accomplished managers of elephants while seated on the necks of those animals. All of you are clever smiters with maces and bearded darts and swords and bucklers. Ye are accomplished in weapons, and competent in bearing burthens of responsibility. Ye all are disciples of Drona and of Kripa the son of Caradwat, in arrows and other arms. Wronged by the sons of Pāndu, these Dhartarāshtras, endued with energy, will assuredly slay in the encounter the Pānchālas irresistible in combat. Then, O foremost of the Bharatas, come I, the leader of all thy troops, who will exterminate thy foes, vanquishing the Pāndavas! It behoveth me not to speak of my own merits. I am known to thee. That foremost of all wielders of weapons, the Bhoja (chief) Kritavarman is an *Atiratha.* Without doubt, he will accomplish thy purposes in battle. Incapable of being humiliated by persons accomplished in arms, shooting or hurling his weapons to a great distance, and a severe smiter, he will destroy the ranks of the foe like the great Indra destroying the Dānavas. The ruler of the Madras, the mighty bowman Calya, is, as I think, an *Atirātha.* That warrior boasteth himself as Vāsudeva's equal, in every battle (that he fighteth). Having abandoned his own sister's sons, that best of kings, Calya, hath become thine. He will encounter in battle the *Mahārathas* of the Pāndava party, flooding the enemy with his arrows resembling the very surges of the sea. That mighty bowman Bhuriçravas the son of Somadatta, who is accomplished in arms and is one of thy well-meaning friends, is a leader of leaders of car-divisions. He will certainly make a great havoc among the combatants of thy enemies. The king of the Sindhus, O monarch, is, in my judgment, equal to two *Rathas.* That best of car-warriors will fight in battle, dis-

playing great prowess. Humiliated, O king, by the Pāndavas on the occasion of his abducting Draupadi, and bearing that humiliation in mind, that slayer of hostile heroes will fight (for thee). Having practised after that, O king, the severest austerities, he obtained a boon, highly difficult of acquisition, for encountering the Pāndavas in battle. That tiger among car-warriors, therefore, remembering his old hostility, will, O sire, fight with the Pāndavas in battle, reckless of his very life which it is so difficult to lay down,—' "

SECTION CLXVI.

" 'Bhishma said,—Sudhakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas is, in my judgment, equal to a single *Ratha*. Desiring the success of thy object, he will certainly fight with the enemy in battle. O best of kings, the Kauravas will behold the prowess of this lion among car-warriors exerted for thee to be equal to that of Indra himself in battle. As regards the car-army of this king, O monarch, those smiters of fierce impetus, the Kāmvojas, will cover a large area like a flight of locusts. Coming from (the province of) Māhishmati, Nila, accoutred in blue mail, is one of thy *Rathas*. With his car-army he will cause a great havoc among thy foes. O child,* he had hostilities with Sahadeva. O king, he will continuousally fight for thee, O thou of Kuru's race. Accomplished in battle, and of fierce energy and prowess, (the princes) Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti are both regarded as excellent *Rathas*. These two tigers among men will consume the troops of thy foes, with maces and beared darts, and swords and long shafts, and javelins, hurled from their hands. Like a couple of (elephantine) leaders sporting in the midst of their herds, these two princes, O monarch, longing for battle, will range the field, each like Yama himself. The five (royal) brothers of Trigarta are, in my judgment, all foremost of *Rathas*. The sons of Prithā provoked hostilities with them at Virāta's

---

* The word is *Mārisha*, expressive of either endearment or veneration. In the Drama, it is always used in connection with the manager of the play, called *Sūtradhāra*.—T.

city on that (well known) occasion. Like huge *Makaras*, O king, agitating the stream of the Ganges crested with high waves, they will agitate the ranks of the Pārthas in battle. All the five, O king, are *Rathas*, having Satyaratha (amongst them) as their first. Remembering the wrongs inflicted on them of old by that son of Pāndu who is Bhima's younger brother when the latter, O Bhārata, on his car drawn by white steeds was engaged, O monarch, in subjugating all the kings of the earth, they will certainly exert themselves bravely in battle. Encountering many *Mahārathas*—chief of bowmen—leaders of Kshatriyas—on the side of the Pārthas, they will certainly slay them. Thy son Lakshmana and the son also of Dusçasana—those tigers among men—are both unretreating in battle. In prime of youth, of delicate limbs, endued with great activity, those two princes, well-versed with battles and capable of leading all, those tigers among Kurus, those car-warriors, are, I think, two of our best *Rathas*. Devoted to the duties of the Kshatriya order, those two heroes will achieve great feats. Dandadhāra, O monarch, is, O bull among men, equal to a single *Ratha*. Guarded by his own soldiers, he will fight in battle for thee. Endued with great impetus and prowess, king Vrihadvala, the ruler of the Koçalas, is, in my judgment, O sire, equal to one *Ratha*. Fierce in arms, this mighty bowman, devoted to the good of the Dhārtarāshtras, will exert himself powerfully in battle, gladdening his own friends. Kripa the son of Caradwat is, O king, a leader of leaders of car-ranks. Reckless of even life which is so dear, he will consume thy foes. Born among a clump of heath as the son of that great sage *viz*, the preceptor Gautama otherwise called Caradwat, he is invincible like Kārtikeya himself. Consuming untold warriors armed with various weapons and bows, he will, O sire, roll on the field of battle like a blazing fire.—' "

SECTION CLXVII.

" 'Bhishma said,—This thy maternal uncle Cakuni is, O king, equal to a single *Ratha*. Having caused the (present)

hostilities (to break out) with the sons of Pāndu, he will fight. There is no doubt in this. His troops are irresistible when rushing to battle. Armed with various kinds of weapons in abundance, in speed they are equal to the very wind. The mighty bowman (Açatthāman) who is Drona's son surpasseth all bowmen. Acquainted with all modes of warfare, and of unbaffled weapons, he is a *Mahāratha*. Like the wielder of *Gāndiva*, the shafts of this warrior, shot from his bow, proceed in a continuous line, touching one another. If he wishes it, this *Mahāratha* is capable of consuming the three worlds. Engaged in austerities in his hermitage, he hath, by these, increased both his fury and energy. Possessed of great intelligence, he hath been favored by Drona with (the gift of all) celestial weapons. There is, however, O bull of Bharata's, race, one great defect in him, in consequence of which, O best of kings, I do not regard him either as a *Ratha* or a *Mahāratha*. This regenerate wight is exceedingly fond of living, life being very dear to him, Amongst the warriors of both armies there is no one who can be regarded as his peer. On even a single car he can annihilate the very army of the celestials. Possessed of a strong frame, he can split the very mountains by the flaps of his bowstring striking against the leathern fence on his left arm. Endued with innumerable qualities, this smiter of fierce effulgence will wander (over the field of battle), incapable of being withstood like Yamahimself mace in hand. Resembling the fire at the end of the *Yuga* as regards his fury, possessed of leonine neck, and endued with great lustre, Açwatthāman will extinguish the embers of this battle between the Bharatas.* His father (Drona) is endued with great energy, and though aged is still superior to many young men. He will achieve great feats in battle. I have no doubt of this. Staying immovably (on the field), he will consume Yudhishthira's troops. The Pāndava army will play the part of the dry grass and fuel in which that fire will originate, while the impetus of his own weapons will be the

* *Prishtham Samçamayishayati.* The expression is very doubtful. Nilakantha explains *prishtham* as *çesham.*—T.

wind for fanning it into a (mighty) flame. This bull among men is a leader of bands of car-leaders. The son of Bharadwāja will achieve fierce feats for thy good! The preceptor of all Kshatriyas of royal lineage,* the venerable professor, will exterminate the Srinjayas. Dhananjaya, however, is dear to him. This mighty bowman, therefore, remembering his own celebrated and highly meritorious services as preceptor, will never be able to slay Pārtha who is capable of achieving great feats without any trouble. O hero, Drona always boasteth of the numerous accomplishments of Pārtha. Indeed, Bhāradwāja looketh on him with greater affection than on his own son. Endued with great prowess, he can, on a single car, beat in battle, by means of his celestial weapons, all the gods, *Gandharvas*, and human beings united together. That tiger among kings, Paurava, is, O monarch, one of thy *Mahārathas*. Capable of breaking the car-ranks of hostile heroes, he, in my judgment, is one of thy foremost of car-warriors. Afflicting the ranks of the enemy at the head of his own large force, he will consume the Pānchālas like fire consuming a heap of dry grass. Possessed of true fame, prince Vrihadvala is equal to a single *Ratha*. He, O monarch, will roam amid thy enemy's troops like Death himself. His troops, O king of kings, accoutred in various kinds of mail and armed with diverse kinds of weapons, will wander on the field slaying all the warriors opposed to them. Vrishasena the son of Karna is one of thy foremost of car-warriors and is a *Mahāratha*. That foremost of mighty men will consume the troops of thy enemy. Endued with great energy, Jalasandha, O king, is one of thy foremost of *Rathas*. Born in Madhu's race, that slayer of hostile heroes is prepared to cast away his very life in battle. Skilled in battle, that mighty-armed warrior, scattering the enemy's ranks before him, will fight in battle mounted on car or from the elephant's back. That best of kings, O monarch, is, in my judgment, a *Ratha*. He, will in fierce battle, cast away, for thy sake, his very life with all his

* Lit. "whose coronal looks have undergone the sacred investiture."—T.

troops. Possessed of great prowess and acquainted with all modes of warfare, he will, O king, fight fearlessly with thy foes in battle. Never retreating from battle, brave, and resembling Yama himself, Vālhika, O king, is, in my judgment, an *Atiratha*. Rushing to the encounter he never cometh back. Indeed, he will slay hostile warriors in battle like the Wind-god himself. That router of hostile car-ranks, that car-warrior of wonderful feats in battle, that commander of thy forces, Satyavān, is, O king, a *Mahāratha*. He never cherisheth grief at the prospect of battle. Confounding those warriors that stand in the way of his car, he falleth upon them. Always displaying his prowess against the enemy, that best of men will, for thy sake, in fierce press of battle, achieve all that a good Kshatriya should. That chief of *Rākshasas*, Alamvusha of cruel deeds, is a *Mahāratha*. Remembering his old hostilities (with the Pāndavas) he will commit great execution among the foe. He is the best of *Rathas* amongst all the *Rākshasa* warriors. Possessing powers of illusion, and firm in enmity, he will wander fiercely on the field. The ruler of *Prāgjyotisha*, the brave Bhagadatta of exceeding prowess, is the foremost of those holding the elephant hook, and is skilled also in fighting from a car. 'An encounter took place between him and the wielder of *Gāndiva* for days together, O king, each desirous of victory over the other. Then Bhagadatha, O son of Gāndhari, who regarded Indra as his friend, made friend with (Indra's son) the high-souled Pāndava. Skilled in fight from the elephant's neck, this king will fight in battle like Vāsava among the celestials, fighting from his Airāvata.—' "

SECTION CLXVIII.

" 'Bhishma said,—Both the brothers Achala and Vrisha are *Rathas*. Invincible (in battle), they will slay thy foes. Endued with great strength, those tigers among men, those foremost of Gāndharas, are firm in wrath. Young and handsome, they are possessed of great strength. As regards this thy ever dear friend, this one who is always boastful of his skill in battle, this one who always urgeth thee, O king, to

fight with the Pāndavas, this vile braggart Karna the son of Surya, this one who is thy counsellor, guide, and friend, this vain wight who is destitute of sense, this Karna, is neither a *Ratha* nor an *Atiratha*. Without sense this one hath been deprived of his natural coat of mail. Alwayas kind, he hath also been deprived of his celestial ear-rings. In consequence of the curse of Rāma (his preceptor in arms) as also of the words of a Brāhmana (who cursed him on another occasion), owing also to his deprivation of the accoutrements of battle, he, in my judgment, is only half a *Ratha*. Having approached Fālguna (in battle), he will not certainly escape with life!—Hearing this, Drona, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, said,—It is even so as thou hast said. This is not untrue! He boasteth on the eve of every battle, but yet he is seen to retreat from every engagement. Kind (out of season) and blundering, it is for this that Karna, in my judgment, is only half a *Ratha*!—

"'Hearing these words, Rādhā's son, expanding his eyes in rage, and afflicting Bhishma with words resembling sharp hooks, said unto Gangā's son these words,—O grandsire, though I am innocent yet from thy aversion for me, thou manglest me thus, according to thy pleasure, with thy wordy arrows at every step. I tolerate, however, all this for the sake of Duryodhana. Indicating me as only half a *Ratha*, thou regardest me worthless, as if, indeed, I were a coward! What doubt is there in this? I do not speak an untruth when I say that thou, O Gangā's son, art an enemy of the whole universe, and especially of all the Kurus! The king, however, doth not know this! Who else is there that would thus seek to disunite and abate the energy of these kings that are all equal and that are all equally brave, as thou, from thy hatred of merit, seekest to do? O Kaurava, neither years, nor wrinkles, nor wealth, nor possession of friends, would entitle a Kshatriya to be regarded as a *Mahāratha!* It hath been said that a Kshatriya acquireth eminence only through might, as Brāhmanas acquire eminence through superiority in *mantras*, as Vaiçyas through wealth, and Cudras through age. Influenced, however, by lust and envy, and acting from ignorance,

thou hast indicated *Rathas* and *Atirathas* according only to thy own caprice! Blessed be thou, O mighty-armed Duryodhana, judge properly! Let this wicked Bhishma, who only wrongeth thee, be abandoned by thee! Thy warriors, once disunited, can with difficulty be united again. O tiger among men, thy main army, under such circumstances, can with difficulty be united; far greater will the difficulty be in uniting an army gathered from various provinces!* Behold, O Bhārata, doubt (of success) hath already arisen in the hearts of thy warriors! This Bhishma weakeneth our energy in our very presence! Where is the task of ascertaining the merits of *Rathas*, and where is Bhishma of little understanding? I alone will withstand the army of the Pāndavas. Coming in contact with me whose arrows never go for nothing, the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas will fly away in all directions like oxen when they come in contact with a tiger! Where, Oh, are battle, the press of armed encounter, good counsels, and well-expressed words, and where is Bhishma who is superannunated and of wicked soul and who is impelled by the very fates to become their victim? Alone he challengeth the whole universe! Of false vision, he regardeth none else as a man. It is true the scriptures teach that the words of the old should be listened to. That, however, doth not refer to those that are very old, for these, in my judgment, become children again. Alone I will exterminate the army of the Pāndavas! The fame, however, of such a feat will attach to Bhishma, O tiger among kings, for this Bhishma, O monarch, hath been made by thee the commander of thy forces, and the renown always attacheth to the leader and not to those that fight under him! I will not, therefore, O king, fight as long as Gangā's son liveth! After Bhishma, however, hath been laid low, I will fight with all the *Mahārathas* of the enemy united together!—

"'Bhishma said,—This burden, vast as the ocean, in the matter of Duryodhana's battle (with the Pāndavas), is ready to

---

* I render this *sloka* a little too freely, as a literal rendering will be unintelligible.—T.

be taken up by me. I have thought of it for many years. Now that the hour is come for that terrible encounter, dissensions amongst ourselves should not be created by me. It is for this, O *Suta's* son, that thou livest! Else, superannuated though I am and young in years though thou art, I would quell thy desire for battle and crush thy hope of life! (Thy preceptor) Rāma the son of Jamadagni, shooting his great weapons, could not cause me the slightest pain. What canst thou, therefore, do to me? They that are good do not approve self-praise. Infamous wretch of thy race, know that I indulge in this little boast because I am enraged. Vanquishing on a single car all the assembled Kshatriyas of the world at the self-choice of the daughters of the ruler of Kāçi, I abducted those maidens. Alone I stopped on the field of battle the rush of countless kings with their soldiers! Obtaining thee as the embodiment of strife, a great calamity is ready to overtake the Kurus! Strive then for slaying our antagoinsts. Be a man, fight with that Pārtha whom thou so often challengest. O thou of wicked understanding, I desire to see thee come out of that encounter with thy life!—'

"'King Duryodhana then of great prowess said unto Bhishma,—Cast thy eyes on me, O Gangā's son! Great is the business that is at hand! Think earnestly of how I may be most benefited! Both of you will render me great services! I desire now to hear of the best car-warriors among the enemy, that is, of those that are *Atirathas* among them and of those that are leaders of car-divisions. O Kaurava, I desire to hear of the strength and weakness of my foes, since when this night will dawn, our great battle will take place!—'"

SECTION CLXIX.

"'Bhishma said,—I have now, O king, indicated who thy *Rathas* are and who thy *Atirathas* and half *Rathas*. Listen now to the tale of *Rathas* and *Atirathas* among the Pāndavas. If thou feelest any curiosity, listen then, O king, with these monarchs, to the tale of *Rathas* in the army of the Pāndavas. The king himself, son of Pāndu and Kunti, is a mighty *Ratha*,

Without doubt, O sire, he will glide along the field of battle like a blazing fire! Bhimasena, O king, is regarded equal to eight *Rathas*. In an encounter with the mace or even with arrows, there is none equal to him. Endued with the strength of ten thousand elephants, and filled with pride, in energy he is superhuman. Those two bulls among men, the sons of Mādri, are both *Rathas*. In beauty they are equal to the twin Açiwns, and they are endued with great energy. Stationed at the head of their divisions, all of them, remembering their great sufferings, without doubt, will wander along the field like so many Indras! All of them are endued with high souls, and are tall in stature like trunks of *Çāla* trees. Taller than other men by half-a-cubit in stature, all the sons of Pāndu are hardy as lions and endued with great strength. All of them, O sire, have practised *Brahmacharya* vows and other ascetic austerities. Endued with modesty, those tigers among men are possessed of fierce strength like veritable tigers. In speed, in smiting, and in crushing (foes), all of them are more than human. All of them, on the occasion of the campaign of universal conquest, vanquished great kings, O bull of Bharata's race! No other men can wield their weapons, maces, and shafts. Indeed, O Kaurava, there are no men that can even string their bows, or uplift their maces, or shoot their arrows in battle. In speed, in hitting the aim, in eating, and in sports on the dust, they used to beat all of you even when they were children. Possessed of fierce might, they will, when they encounter this force, exterminate it in battle. A collision, therefore, with them is not desirable. Each of them can alone slay all the kings of the earth! That which happened, O great king, on the occasion of the *Rājasuya* sacrifice, happened before thy very eyes! Remembering the sufferings of Draupadi and the harsh speeches uttered after their defeat at dice, they will wander in battle like so many *Rudras*. As regards Gudākeça of reddish eyes having Nārāyana for his ally, there is not among both the armies any brave car-warrior that can be regarded as his equal. Let alone men, it hath not been heard by us that even among gods, *Asuras*, *Uragas*, *Rākshasas*, and *Yakshas*, there ever was born before, or

there ever will be born hereafter, any car-warrior like unto him! O great king, the intelligent Pārtha owneth that car which is furnished with the banner bearing the device of the ape; the driver of that car is Vāsudeva; Dhananjaya himself is the warrior who fighteth from it; his again is that celestial bow called *Gāndiva*; he owneth again those steeds fleet as the wind; his coat of mail is impenetrable and of celestial make; his two large quivers are inexhaustible; his arms are derived from the great *Indra*, *Rudra*, *Kuvera*, *Yama*, and *Varuna*; and upon his car again are those maces of frightful mien, and diverse other great weapons having the thunderbolt amongst them! What car-warrior can be regarded as his equal who, stationed on a single car, slew in battle a thousand *Dānavas* having their abode in Hiranyapura? Inflamed with wrath, possessed of great might, and of prowess incapable of being baffled, that mighty-armed warrior, while protecting his own army, will certainly exterminate thy troops! Myself and the preceptor (Drona) among the two armies, and no third car-warrior, O great king, can advance against Dhananjaya, that scatterer of arrowy showers! Pouring his shafts like the very clouds during the rainy season when propelled by mighty winds, that son of Kunti, with Vāsudeva as his second, stayeth for battle! He is skilled and young, while both of us are old and worn out!—' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of Bhishma, and recollecting with trembling hearts the old valor of the sons of Pāndu and thinking of it as if it were present before their eyes, the massive arms of the kings decked with bracelets and smeared with sandal-paste, seemed to hang down divested of might."*

---

* All the printed editions indicate Vaiçampāyana as the speaker of these words. It seems, however, to be a mistake. The tale of *Rathas* and *Atirathas* is given by Bhishma to Duryodhana. Bhishma's speech again is reported by Sanjaya to Dhritarāshtra. On the conclusion of Bhishma's speech, it is Sanjaya who must be held to resume the thread of the narrative.—T.

SECTION CLXX.

"'Bhishma said,—All the five sons of Draupadi, O monarch, are *Mahārathas*. Virāta's son Uttara is, in my judgment, one of the foremost of *Rathas*. The mighty-armed Abhimanyu is a leader of leaders of car-divisions. Indeed, that slayer of foes is equal in battle to Pārtha himself or Vāsudeva. Endued with great lightness of hand in shooting weapons, and acquainted with all modes of warfare, he is possessed of great energy and is steady in the observance of vows. Remembering the sufferings of his own father, he will put forth his prowess. The brave Sātyaki of Madhu's race is a leader of leaders of car-divisions. Foremost among the heroes of the Vrishni race, he is endued with great wrath, and is perfectly dauntless. Uttamaujas also, O king, is an excellent car-warrior in my judgment. And Yudhāmanyu, too, of great prowess, is, in my judgment, an excellent car-warrior. All those chiefs own many thousands of cars and elephants and horse, and they will fight, reckless of their very lives, from desire of doing what is agreeable to Kunti's sons. Uniting with the Pāndavas, they will, O great king, sweep through thy ranks like fire or the wind, challenging thy warriors. Invincible in battle, those bulls among men, old Virāta and old Drupada, both endued with great prowess, are, in my judgment, both *Mahārathas*. Though old in years yet both of them are devoted to the observance of Kshatriya virtues. Treading along the path that is trod by heroes, both of them will exert to the best of their might. In consequence of their relationship (to the Pāndavas) and owing also, O king, to their being endued with strength and prowess, those great bowmen devoted to pure vows have both derived additional strength from the strength of their affection. According as the cause is, all strong-armed men become, O bull of Kuru's race, heroes or cowards. Actuated by a singleness of purpose, both these kings who are powerful bowmen will lay down their very lives in causing a great massacre of thy troops to the best of their might, O slayer of foes! Fierce in battle, these distinguished heroes, these mighty bowmen, regardless, O Bhārata, of their lives, will, at the head of their respective *Akshauhinis*,

achieve great feats, justifying their relationship and the confidence that is reposed on them (by the Pāndavas).' "

SECTION CLXXI.

" 'Bhishma said,—That subjugator of hostile cities, Cikhandin the son of the king of the Pānchālas, is, O king, in my judgment, one of the foremost of Yudhishthira's *Rathās*. Having divested himself of his former sex, he will fight in battle and earn great fame, O Bhārata, among thy troops! He hath a large number of troops,—Pānchālas and Prabhadrakas,—to support him. With those crowds of cars he will achieve great feats. Dhrishtadyumna also, O Bhārata, the leader of all Yudhishthira's army, that mighty car-warrior who is also a disciple of Drona's, is, O king, in my judgment, an *Atiratha*. Afflicting all foes in battle he will singly sweep the field like the *Pināka*-bearing god himself in rage on the occasion of the Universal dissolution. Even great warriors will speak of his car-divisions, so multitudinous are they, as resembling the very ocean or that of the gods in battle! Kshattradharman the son of Dhrishtadyumna, owing to his immature years as also in consequence of his want of exercise in arms, is, in my judgment, O king, only half a *Ratha*. That relative of the Pāndavas, the mighty bowman Dhrishtaketu, the heroic son of Ciçupāla the king of the Chedis, is a *Mahāratha*. That brave ruler of the Chedis will, O king, with his son, achieve feats such as are difficult for even *Mahārathas*. Kshattradeva, that sujugator of hostile cities, who is devoted to Kshatriya virtues, is, O great king, in my judgment, one of the best *Rathas* among the Pāndavas. Those brave warriors among the Pānchālas, *viz*, Jayanta and Amitaujas and the great car-warrior Satyajit are all, O king, high-souled *Mahārathas*. They will all, O sire, fight in battle like furious elephants. Aja and Bhoja, both endued with great prowess, are both *Mahārathas*. Possessed of great might, those two heroes will fight for the Pāndavas. Both of them are endued with great lightness of hand in the use of weapons. Both of them are conversant with all modes of war-

fare, both are well skilled and possessed of firm prowess. The five Kshatriya brothers, O great king, who are difficult of being vanquished in battle and all of whom have blood-red banners, are foremost of *Rathas*. Kāçika, and Sukumāra, and Nila, and that other one, *viz*, Suryadatta, and Cankha, and he called Madirāçwa, are all, in my judgment, foremost of *Rathas*. Possessed of every qualification that renders them fit for battle, they are acquainted with all weapons, and all of them are endued with high souls. Vārdhakshemi, O king, is in my judgment a *Mahāratha*. King Chitrāyudha is in my judgment one of the best of *Rathas*. He is, besides, an ornament of battle and devotedly attached to the diadem-decked (Arjuna). Those mighty car-warriors, those tigers among men, Chekitāna and Satyadhriti, are two of the best *Rathas* of the Pāndavas in my judgment. Vyaghradatta, O monarch, and Chandrasena also, O Bhārata, are without doubt two of the best *Rathas*, as I think, of the Pāndavas. Senāvindu, O king, otherwise called Krodhahantri by name, who, O lord, is regarded as the equal of Vāsudeva or Bhimasena, will contend with great prowess in battle against your warriors. Indeed, that best of kings, ever boasting of his feats in battle, should be regarded by thee precisely as myself, Drona, and Kripa are regarded by thee! That best of men, worthy of praise, *viz*, Kāçya, is endued with great lightness of hand in the use of weapons. Indeed, that subjugator of hostile cities is known to me as equal to one *Ratha*. Drupada's son Satyajit, young in years and displaying great prowess in battle, should be regarded as equal to eight *Rathas*. Indeed, being Dhrishtadyumna's equal, he is an *Atiratha*. Desirous of spreading the fame of the Pāndavas, he will achieve great feats. Devoted to the Pāndavas and endued with great bravery, there is another great *Ratha* of the Pāndavas, *viz*, king Pāndya, that bowman* of mighty energy. The mighty bowman Dhridadhanwan is another *Mahāratha* of the Pāndavas. O subjugator of hostile cities, that foremost of Kurus, *viz*, Crenimat and king Vasudāna are both, in my judgment, *Atirathas*.—'"

---

* Some texts read *Dhurandharas* for *Dhanurdharas*.—T.

SECTION CLXXII.

"'Bhishma said,—O great king, Rochamāna is another *Mahāratha* of the Pāndavas. He will, O Bhārata, contend in battle against hostile warriors like a second celestial. That subjugator of foes, the mighty bowman Kuntibboja of great strength, the maternal uncle of Bhimasena, is in my judgment an *Atiratha*. This mighty and heroic bowman is well-versed and highly skilled in fight. Acquainted with all modes of warfare, this bull among car-warriors is regarded by me as exceedingly competent. Displaying his prowess he will fight like a second Indra against the Dānavas. Those celebrated soldiers that he owns are all accomplished in fight. Stationed on the side of Pāndavas and devoted to what is agreeable and beneficial to them, that hero will, for the sake of his sister's sons, achieve extraordinary feats. That prince of *Rākshasas* (Ghatotkacha), O king, born of Bhima and Hidimvā and endued with ample powers of illusion, is in my judgment a leader of leaders of car-divisions. Fond of battle and endued with powers of illusion, he will, O sire, fight earnestly in battle. Those heroic *Rākshasas* who are his counsellors or dependants will also fight under him.—

"'These and many other rulers of provinces, headed by Vāsudeva, have assembled for the sake of Pāndu's son. These, O king, are principally the *Rathas*, *Atirathas*, and half *Rathas* of the high-souled Pāndava, and these, O king, will lead in battle the terrible army of Yudhishthira which is protected again by that hero, the diadem-decked (Arjuna) who is even like the great Indra himself. It is with them (thus) endued with powers of illusion and fired by the desire of success that I shall contend in battle, expectant of victory or death. I shall advance against those two foremost of car-warriors, Vāsudeva and Arjuna, and bearing (respectively) *Gāndiva* and the discus, and resembling the sun and the moon as seen together in the evening. I shall, on the field of battle, encounter also those other car-warriors of Yudhishthira (whom I have mentioned) at the head of their respective troops.—

"'The *Rathas* and *Atirathas*, according to their precedence,

have now been declared by me to thee, and they also that are half *Rathas*, belonging to thee or them, O chief of the Kauravas! Arjuna and Vāsudeva and other lords of earth that may be there, all of them upon whom my eyes may fall I will withstand, O Bhārata! But, O thou of mighty arms, I will not strike or slay Cikhandin the prince of the Pānchālas even if I behold him rushing against me in battle with weapons upraised. The world knows how from desire of doing what was agreeable to my father I gave up the kingdom that had become mine and lived in the observance of the *Brahmachārya* vow. I then installed Chitrāngada in the sovereignty of the Kauravas, making at the same time the child Vichitravirya the *Yuvarāja*. Having notified my god-like vow among all the kings of the earth I shall never slay a woman or one that was a woman. It may be known to you, O king, that Cikhandin was formerly a woman. Having been born as a daughter she afterwards became a male person. I shall not, O Bhārata, fight against him. I shall certainly smite all other kings, O bull of Bharata's race, whom I may encounter in battle. I will not, however, O king, be able to slay the sons of Kunti!—' "

Section CLXXIII.

Amvopākhyana Parva.

" 'Duryodhana said,—For what reason, O chief of the Bharatas, wilt thou not slay Cikhandin even if thou beholdest him approach thee in battle as a foe* with arms upraised? Thou hadst, O mighty-armed one, formerly told me,—*I will slay the Pānchālas with the Somakas!*—O son of Gangā, tell me, O grandsire, (the reason of the present reservation)!—'

---

* The word used in the original is *ātatāyin*. There are six kinds of *ātātāyins*, *viz*, one that sets fire to your house, one that gives you poison, one that approaches you armed with a weapon, one that robs you of your wealth, one that dispossesses you of your field, and one that ravishes your wife. And *ātātāyin* deserves death even if he be a *Brāhmana*.—T.

" 'Bhishma said,—Listen, O Duryodhana, to this history, with all these lords of earth, as to why I will not slay Cikhandin even if I behold him in battle! My father Cāntanu, O king, was celebrated over all the world. O bull of the Bharata race, that king of virtuous soul paid his debt to nature in time. Observing my pledge, O chief of the Bharatas, I then installed my brother Chitrāngada on the throne of the extensive kingdom of the Kurus. After Chitrāngada's demise, obedient to the counsels of Satyavati, I installed, according to the ordinance, Vichitravirya as king. Although younger in age, yet, installed duly by me, O monarch, the virtuous Vichitravirya looked up to me in everything. Desirous of marrying him I set my heart upon procuring daughters from a suitable family. (At this time) I heard, O thou of mighty arms, that three maidens, all unrivalled for beauty, daughters of the ruler of Kāçi, by name Amvā, Amvikā, and Amvālikā, would elect husbands for themselves,* and that all the kings of the earth, O bull of Bharata's race, had been invited. Amongst those maidens Amvā was the eldest, Amvikā the second, while the princess Amvālikā, O monarch, was the youngest. Myself repairing on a single car to the city of the ruler of the Kāçis, I beheld, O thou of mighty arms, the three maidens decked in ornaments and also all the kings of the earth invited thither on the occasion. Then, O bull of Bharata's race, challenging to battle all those kings who were ready for the encounter, I caused those maidens to be taken up on my car. Indeed, having ascertained that prowess was the only dower that had been demanded for them, I took them up on my car and repeatedly said unto all the kings assembled there these words,—*Bhishma the son of Çāntanu is ravishing these maidens. Ye kings, strive ye all to the best of your power for rescuing them! By force do I take them away, ye bulls*

---

* In the *Adi Parva* I have retained the word *Swayamvara*, explaining it in a note. Later on, I have rendered it "Self-choice." Following this rendering, the personal adjective *Swayamvarás* (in this *sloka)* should be rendered "self-choosers." Neatness, however, at the expense of perspicuity, would scarcely be preferable.—T.

*among men, making you spectators of my act!**—At these words of mine, those rulers of the earth sprang up with weapons unsheathed. And they angrily urged the drivers of their cars, saying, —*Make ready the cars, Make ready the cars.*—And those monarchs sprang to the rescue, with weapons unsheathed, car-warriors on their cars resembling masses of clouds,† those fighting from elephants, on their elephants, and others on their stout and plump steeds. Then all those kings, O monarch, surrounded me on all sides with a multitudinous muster of cars. With a shower of arrows I stopped their rush on all sides and vanquished them like the chief of the celestials vanquishing hordes of *Dānavas*. Laughingly I cut down the variegated standards, decked with gold, of the advancing kings, with my blazing shafts, O bull of Bharata's race! In that combat I overthrew their steeds and elephants and car-drivers, each with a single arrow. Beholding that lightness (of hand) of mine, they desisted (from the fight) and broke. And having vanquished all those rulers of the earth, I came back to Hāstinapura. I then, O thou of mighty-arms, made over those maidens, intending them for my brother, to Satyavati and represented unto her everything I had done.—' "

SECTION CLXXIV.

" 'Bhishma said,—Then, O chief of the Bharatas, approaching my mother, that daughter of the *Dāsa* clan, and saluting that parent of heroes, I said these words:—Having vanquished all the kings, these daugthers of the ruler of the Kāçis, having prowess alone for their dower, have been ravished by me for the sake of Vichitravirya!—Then, O king, Satyavati with eyes bathed in tears, smelt my head, and joyously said,—By good luck it is, O child, that thou hast triumphed!—

---

* It is impossible to express the force of *Mishatām Vas* without the periphrasis I have adopted.—T.

† Both the Bombay and the Society's editions read *Rathairgajasankāçais* which is incorrect. The Burdwan Pundits read *meghasankāçais* which is better. I adopt this latter reading.—T.

When next with Styavati's acquiescence the nuptials approached, the eldest daughter of the ruler of the Kāçis said these words in great bashfullnes:—O Bhishma, thou art conversant with morality, and art well-versed in all our scripture! Hearing my words, it behoveth thee to do towards me that which is consistent with morality. The ruler of the Cālwas was before this mentally chosen by me as my lord. By him also, without my father's knowledge, I was privately solicited. How wouldst thou, O Bhishma, born especially as thou art in Kuru's race, transgress the laws of morality and cause one that longeth for another to live in thy abode? Knowing this, O bull of Bharata's race, and deliberating in thy mind, it behoveth thee, O mighty-armed one, to accomplish what is beneficial! O monarch, it is clear that the ruler of the Cālwas waiteth (for me). It behoveth thee, therefore, O best of the Kuurs, to permit me to depart. O mighty-armed one, be merciful to me, O foremost of righteous persons! Thou, O hero, art devoted to truth, it is well known all over the earth!—' "

SECTION CLXXV.

" 'Bhishma said,—I then laid the matter before (my mother) Kāli otherwise called Gandhavati, as also all our counsellors, and also before our periodical and ordinary priests, and then permitted, O king, the eldest of those maidens, Amvā, to depart. Permitted by me, that maiden then went to the city of the ruler of the Cālwas. And she had for her escort a number of old Brāhmanas and was also accompanied by her own nurse. And having travelled the whole distance (between Hastināpura and Cālwa's city), she approached king Cālwa and said these words:—I come, O thou of mighty-arms, expectant of thee, O high-souled one!—Unto her, however, O king, the lord of the Cālwas said in seeming laughter,—O thou of the fairest complexion, I no longer desire to make a wife of thee who wast to be wedded to another.* Therefore, O blessed one,

---

* *Anyapurvā*—betrothed to or about to be wedded to another. It is considered a disgrace to wed such a girl.—T.

go back thither into Bhishma's presence. I no longer desire thee that wast forcibly ravished by Bhishma. Indeed, when Bhishma, having vanquished the kings, took thee away, thou wentest with him cheerfully. When, having humiliated and vanquished all the kings of the earth, Bhishma took thee away, I no longer desire thee, O thou of the fairest complexion, for a wife,—thee that wast to have been wedded to another! How can a king like ourselves who is acquainted with all branches of knowledge and who lays down laws for the guidance of others, admit (into his abode) a woman who was to have been wedded to another? O blessed lady, go whithersoever thou wishest, without spending thy time in vain!—Hearing these words of his, Amvā then, O king, afflicted with the arrows of the god of love, addressed Cālwa, saying,—Say not so, O lord of the earth, for it is not so! O grinder of foes, cheerful I was not when taken away by Bhishma! He took me away by force, having routed all the kings, and I was weeping the while. An innocent girl that I am and attached to thee, accept me, O lord of the Cālwas! The abandonment (by one) of those that are attached (to him) is never applauded in the scriptures! Having solicited Gangā's son who never retreats from battle, and having at last obtained his permission, I come to thee! Indeed, the mighty-armed Bhishma, O king, desireth me not! It hath been heard by me that his action (in the matter of the ravishment) hath been for the sake of his brother. My two sisters Ambikā and Amvālikā who were abducted with me at the same time, have, O king, been bestowed by Gangā's son on his younger brother Vichitravirya! O lord of the Cālwas, I swear, O tiger among men, by touching my own head that I have never thought of any other husband than thee! I do not, O great king, come to thee as one who was to have been wedded to another! I tell thee the truth, O Cālwa, truly swearing by my soul! Take me, O thou of large eyes, me—a maiden come to thee of her own accord—one unbetrothed to another, one desirous of thy grace!—Although she spoke in this strain, Cālwa, however, O chief of the Bharatas, rejected that daughter of the ruler of the Kāçis, like a snake casting off its slough. Indeed,

although that king was earnestly solicited in diverse expressions such as these, the lord of the Cālwas still did not, O bull of the Bharata race, manifest any inclination for the girl. Then the eldest daughter of the ruler of the Kāçis, filled with anger, and her eyes bathed in tears, said these words in a voice suffocated with those indications of grief,—Cast off, O king, by thee, whithersoever I may go, the righteous will be my protectors, for truth is indestructible !—

" 'It was thus, O thou of Kuru's race, that the lord of the Cālwas rejected that maiden who addressed him in language such as this and who was sobbing in grief so tenderly. *Go, go*,—were the words that Cālwa said unto her repeatedly.—I am in terror of Bhishma, O thou of fair hips, and thou art Bhishma's capture !—Thus addresced by Cālwa destitute of foresight, that maiden issued out of his city sorrowfully and wailing like a she-osprey.—' "

SECTION CLXXVI.

" 'Bhishma said,—Issuing out of the city, Amvā reflected sorrowfully in this strain.—There is not in the whole world a young lady in such a difficulty as I ! Alas, destitute of friends, I am rejected by Cālwa also ! I cannot go back to the city named after the elephant, for I was permitted by Bhishma to leave that city, expectant of Cālwa ! Whom then shall I blame ?—Myself ?—Or, the invincible Bhishma ?—Or, that foolish father of mine who made arrangements for my self-choice ? Perhaps, it is my own fault ! Why did I not leap down before, from Bhishma's car, when that fierce battle took place, for coming to Cālwa ? That I am so afflicted now as if deprived of my senses, is the fruit of that omission of mine ! Cursed be Bhishma ! Cursed be my own wretched father of foolish understanding who had arranged prowess to be my dower, sending me out as if I were a woman (disposable) for a consideration ! Cursed be myself ! Cursed be king Cālwa himself and cursed be my Maker too ! Cursed be they through whose fault such great misery hath been mine ! Human beings always suffer what is destined for them, The cause, however,

of my present affliction is Bhishma the son of Cāntanu. I, therefore, see that at present my vengeance should fall upon him, either through ascetic austerities or battle, for he is the cause of my woe! But what king is there that would venture to vanquish Bhishma in battle?—Having settled this, she issued out of the city for repairing to an asylum of high-souled ascetics of virtuous deeds. That night she stayed there, surrounded by those ascetics. And that lady of sweet smiles told those ascetics, O, Bhārata, all that had happened to herself with the minutest details, O mighty-armed one, about her abduction, and rejection by Cālwa.

" 'There lived in that asylum an eminent Brāhmana of rigid vows. And his name was Caikhāvatya. Endued with ascetic merit of a high order, he was a preceptor in scripture and the *Arānyakas*. And the sage Caikhāvaytya of great ascetic merit addressed that afflicted maiden, that chaste girl sighing heavily in grief, and said,—If it hath been so, O blessed lady, what can high-souled ascetics residing in their (woody) retreats and engaged in penances do?—That maiden, however, O king, answered him, saying,—Let mercy be shown to me! I desire a life in the woods, having renounced the world. I will practise the severest of ascetic austerities. All that I now suffer is certainly the fruit of those sins that I committed from ignorance in my former life! I do not venture to go back to my relatives, ye ascetics, rejected and cheerless that I am, knowing that I have been humiliated by Cālwa! Ye that have washed away your sins, godlike as ye are, I desire that ye should instruct me in ascetic penance! Oh, let mercy be shown to me!—Thus addressed, that sage then comforted the maiden by examples and reasons borrowed from the scriptures. And having consoled her thus, he promised, with the other Brāhmanas, to do what she desired.' "

SECTION CLXXVII.

" 'Bhishma siad,—Those virtuous ascetics then set themselves about their usual avocations, thinking the while as to what they should do for that maiden. And some amongst them said,

—Let her be taken to her father's abode.—And some amongst them set their hearts upon reproaching ourselves. And some thought that repairing to the ruler of the Cālwas he should be solicited to accept the maiden. And some said,—No, that should not be done, for she hath been rejected by him.—And after some time had been passed thus, those ascetics of rigid vows once more said unto her,—What, O blessed lady, can ascetics with senses under control do? Do not devote thyself to a life in the woods, renouncing the world! O blessed lady, listen to these words that are beneficial to thee! Depart hence, blessed be thou, for thy father's mansion! The king thy father will do what should next be done. O auspicious one, surrounded by every comfort thou mayst live there in happiness! Thou art a woman! At present, therefore, O blessed one, thou hast no other protector save thy father! O thou of the fairest complexion, as regards a woman, she hath for her protector either her husband or her father. Her husband is her protector when she is in comfortable circumstances, but when plunged in misery she hath her father for her protector. A life in the woods is exceedingly painful, especially to one that is delicate. Thou art a princess by birth. Over this, thou art again very delicate, O beautiful damsel! O blessed lady, there are numerous discomforts and faults attaching to a life in a (woody) retreat, none of which, O thou of the fairest complexion, shalt thou have to bear in thy father's abode!—Other ascetics, beholding that helpless girl, said to her,—Seeing thee alone in deep and solitary woods, kings may court thee! Therefore, set not thy heart upon such a course!—

"'Hearing these words, Amvā said,—I am incapable of going back to my father's abode in the city of Kāçi, for without doubt I shall then be disregarded by all my relatives. Ye ascetics, I lived there, in my father's abode, during my childhood. I cannot, however, now go thither where my father is. Protected by ascetics I desire to practice ascetic austerities, so that in even future lives of mine such sore afflictions may not be mine! Ye best of ascetics, I desire, therefore, to practise ascetic austerities!—

"'Bhishma continued,—When those Brāhmanas were

thinking in this way, there came into that forest that best of ascetics, the royal sage Hotravāhana. Then those ascetics reverenced the king with worship, inquiries of welcome and courtesy, a seat, and water. And after he was seated and had rested for a while, those denizens of the forest once more began to address that maiden in the hearing of that royal sage. Hearing the story of Amvā and the king of the Kāçis, that royal sage of great energy became very anxious at heart. Hearing her speak in that strain, and beholding her (distressed), that royal sage of rigid austerities, *viz*, the high-souled Hotravāhana, was filled with pity. Then, O lord, that maternal grandsire of hers rose up with a trembling frame and causing that maiden to sit on his lap began to comfort her. He then enquired of her in detail about that distress of hers from its origin. And she thereupon represented to him minutely all that had happened. Hearing all she said, the royal sage was filled with pity and grief. And that great ascetic also settled in his mind what she should do. Trembling from agitation he addressed the afflicted maiden sunk in woe, saying,—Do not go back to thy father's abode, O blessed lady! I am the father of thy mother. I will dispell thy grief. Rely on me, O daughter! Great, indeed, must thy affliction be when thou art so emaciated! At my advice go unto the ascetic Rāma the son of Jamadagni. Rāma will dispell this great affliction and grief of thine. He will slay Bhishma in battle if the latter obeyeth not his behest. Go, therefore, unto that foremost one of Bhrigu's race, who resembleth the *Yuga* fire itself in energy! That great ascetic will place thee once more on the right track!—Hearing this, that maiden, shedding tears the while, saluted her maternal grandsire Hotravāhana with a bend of her head and addressed him, saying,—Go I will at thy command! But shall I succeed in obtaining a sight of that reverend sire celebrated over the world? How will he dispell this poignant grief of mine! And how shall I go to that descendant of Bhrigu? I desire to know all this!—

"'Hotravāhana said,—O blessed maiden, thou wilt behold Jamadagni's son Rāma who is devoted to truth and endued with great might and engaged in austere penances in the great

forest. Rāma always dwelleth in that foremost of mountains called *Mahendra*. Many *Rishis* learned in the *Vedas* and many *Gandharvas* and *Apsaras* also dwell there. Go thither, blessed be thou, and tell him these words of mine, having saluted with thy head that sage of rigid vows and great ascetic merit! Tell him also, O blessed girl, all that thou seekest! If thou namest me, Rāma will do everything for thee, for Rāma the heroic son of Jamadagni, that foremost of all bearers of arms, is a friend of mine, highly-pleased with me, and always wisheth me well!—And while king Hotravāhana was saying all this unto that maiden, thither appeared Akritavrana, a dear companion of Rāma. And on his advent those *Munis* by thousands, and the Srinjaya king Hotravāhana old in years, all stood up. And those denizens of the forest, uniting with one another, did him all the rites of hospitality. And they all took their seats, surrounding him. And filled, O monarch, with gratification and pleasure and joy, they then started various delightful, laudable, and charming subjects of discouse. And after their discourse was over that royal sage, the high-souled Hotravāhana, enquired of Akritavrana about Rāma that foremost of great sages, saying, —O thou of mighty arms, where, O Akritavrana, may that foremost of persons acquainted with the *Vedas*, *viz*, Jamadagni's son of great prowess, be seen!—Akritavrana answered him, saying,—O lord, Rāma always speaketh of thee, O king, saying,—*That royal sage of the Srinjayas is my dear friend.* —I believe Rāma will be here tomorrow morning. Thou wilt see him even here when he cometh to behold thee! As regards this maiden, for what, O royal sage, hath she come to the woods? Whose is she, and what is she to thee? I desire to know all this!—Hotravāhana said,—The favourite daughter of the ruler of the Kāçis, she is, O lord, my daughter's child! The eldest daughter of the king of the Kāçi's. she is known by the name of Amvā. Along with her two younger sisters, O sinless one, she was in the midst of her *Swayamvara* ceremonies. The names of her two younger sisters are Amvikā and Amvālikā, O thou endued with wealth of asceticism! All the Kshatriya kings of the earth were assembled together at

the city of Kāçi. And, O regenerate *Rishi*, great festivities were going on there on account of (the self-choice of) these maidens. In the midst of these, Cāntanu's son Bhishma of mighty energy, disregarding all the kings, ravished the girls. Vanquishing all the monarchs, the pure-souled prince Bhishma of Bharata's race then reached Hastināpura, and representing everything unto Satyavati, ordered his brother Vichitravirya's marriage to take place with the girls he had brought. Beholding the arrangements for those nuptials complete, this maiden, O bull among Brāhmanas, then addressed Gangā's son in the presence of his ministers and said,—I have, O hero, within my heart chosen the lord of the Cālwas to be my husband! Conversant as thou art with morality, it behoveth thee not to bestow on thy brother me whose heart is given away to another!—Hearing these words of hers, Bhishma took counsel with his ministers. Deliberating on the matter he at last, with Satyavati's consent, dismissed this maiden. Permitted thus by Bhishma, this girl gladly repaired to Cālwa the lord of *Çaubha*, and approaching him said,—Dismissed I have been by Bhishma. See that I do not fall off from righteousness! In my heart I had chosen thee for my lord O bull among kings!—Cālwa, however, rejected her, suspecting the purity of her conduct. Even she hath come to these woods sacred to asceticism, being ardently inclined to devote herself to ascetic penances! She was recognised by me from the account that was given of her parentage. As regards her sorrow, even Bhishma is considered by her to be its root! After Hotravāhana had ceased, Amvā herself said,—O holy one, it is even so as this lord of earth, this author of my mother's body, Hotrovāhana of the Srinjaya race, hath said! I cannot venture to go back to my own city, O thou that art endued with wealth of ascetcism, from shame and fear of disgrace, O great *Muni!* At present, O holy one, even this is what hath been my determination, *viz*, that that would be my highest duty which the holy Rāma, O best of Brāhmanas, might point out to me!—'"

SECTION CLXXVIII.

"'Akritavrana said,—O these two afflictions of thine, for which, O blessed lady, dost thou seek a remedy? Tell me this. If it is thy wish that the lord of *Çaubha* should be urged to wed thee, the high-souled Rāma will certainly urge him. from desire of doing thee good! Or, if thou wishest to behold Gangā's son Bhishma defeated in battle by the intelligent Rāma, Bhārgava will gratify even that wish of thine. Hearing what Srinjaya has to say, and what thou also, O thou of sweet smiles, may have to say, let that be settled this very day which should be done for thee!—Hearing these words, Amvā said,—O holy one, abducted I was by Bhishma acting from ignorance, for, O regenerate one, Bhishma knew not that my heart had been given away to Cālwa! Thinking of this in thy mind, let that be resolved upon by thee which is consistent with justice, and let steps be taken for accomplishing that resolution! Do that, O Brāhmana, which is proper to be done towards either that tiger among the Kurus, *viz*, Bhishma, singly, or towards the ruler of the Cālwas, or towards both of them! I have told thee truly about the root of my grief. It behoveth thee, O holy one, to do that which is consistent with reason!—

"'Akritavrana said,—This, O blessed lady, O thou of the fairest complexion, that thou sayest with eyes directed towards virtue, is, indeed, worthy of thee! Listen, however, to what I say! If Gangā's son had never taken thee to the city called after the elephant, then, O timid girl, Cālwa would have, at Rāma's behest, taken thee on his head! It is because Bhishma bore thee away by force that king Cālwa's suspicions have been awakened in respect of thee, O thou of slender waist! Bhishma is proud of his manliness and is crowned with success. Therefore, thou shouldst cause thy vengeance to fall upon Bhishma (and no other)!—Hearing these words of the sage, Amvā said,—O regenerate one, this desire hath been cherished by me also in my heart, *viz*, that, if possible, Bhishma should be caused by me to be slain in

battle! O thou of mighty arms, be it Bhishma or be it king Cālwa, punish that man whom thou thinkest to be guilty and through whose act I have been so miserable!—

"'Bhishma continued,—In conversation such as this, that day passed, and the night also, O best of Bharata's race, with its delicious breeze which was neither cold nor hot. Then Rāma appeared there, blazing with energy. And that sage wearing matted locks on his head and attired in deer-skins was surrounded by his disciples. And endued with magnanimous soul, he had his bow in hand. And bearing also a sword and a battle-axe, that sinless one, O tiger among kings, approached the Srinjaya king (Hotravāhana) in that forest. And the ascetics dwelling there and that king also who was endued with great ascetic merit, beholding him, all stood up and waited, O king, with joined hands. And that helpless maiden too did the same. And they all cheerfully worshipped Bhārgava with the offer of honey and curds. And worshipped duly by them, Rāma sat with them sitting around him. Then, O Bhārata, Jamadagni's son and Hotravāhana, seated thus together, began to discourse. And after their discourse was over, the sage Hotravāhana opportunely said in a sweet voice these words of grave import unto that foremost one of Bhrigu's race, *viz*, Rāma of mighty strength:—O Rāma, this is my daughter's daughter, O lord, being the daughter of the king of the Kāçis! She hath something to be done for her! Oh, listen to it duly, O thou that art skilled in all tasks!—Hearing these words of his friend, Rāma addressed that maiden, saying,—Tell me what thou hast to say!—At these words Amvā approached Rāma who resembled a blazing fire, and worshipping both his feet with her head, touched them with her two hands that resembled in radiance a couple of lotuses, and stood silently before him. And filled with grief she wept aloud, her eyes bathed in tear. And she then sought the protection of that descendant of Bhrigu who was the refuge of all distressed persons. And Rāma said,—Tell me what the grief is that is in thy heart. I will act according to thy words!—Thus encouraged, Amvā said,—O thou of great vows, O holy one, today I seek thy protection! O lord, raise me from this ocean of sorrow's mire!—'

"'Bhishma continued,—Beholding her beauty and her youthful body and its great delicacy, Rāma began to think,—*What will she say?*—And that perpetuator of Bhrigu's line, thinking inwardly of this, sat long in silence, filled with pity. He then addressed that maiden of sweet smiles again, saying,—Tell us what thou hast to say!—Thus encouraged, she represented everything truly unto Bhārgava. And Jamadagni's son, hearing these words of the princess, and having first settled what he should do, addressed that damsel of the fairest complexion, saying,—O beautiful lady, I will send word unto Bhishma, that foremost one of Kuru's race. Having heard what my behest is, that king will certainly obey it. If, however, the son of Jānhavi do not act according to my words, I will then consume him in battle, O blessed girl, with all his counsellors! Or, O princess, if thou desirest it, I may even address the heroic ruler of the Cālwas to the matter in hand.* —Hearing these words of Rāma, Amvā said,—Dismissed I was by Bhishma, O son of Bhrigu's race, as soon as he heard that my heart had previously been freely given away to the ruler of the Cālwas! Approaching then the lord of Caubha, I addressed him in language that was unbecoming. Doubtful of the purity of my conduct, he refused to accept me. Reflecting on all this with the aid of thy own understanding, it behoveth thee, O son of Bhrigu's race, to do that which should be done in view of these circumstances. Bhishma, however, of great vows is the root of this my calamity, for he brought me under his control, taking me up (on his car) with violence! Slay that Bhishma, O thou of mighty arms, for whose sake, O tiger of Bhrigu's race, overwhelmed with such distress I suffer such poignant misery!† Bhishma, O thou of Bhrigu's race, is covetous, and mean, and proud of his victory. There-

---

* The Burdwan Pundits render the first half of this 34th *sloka* wrongly. They seem to imagine that *matistatra nivartate* means—*If thy heart turneth away from Bhishma.*—T.

† The Burdwan Pundits are again in error in rendering *charāmya-priyamuttamam.* They wrongly render it—*Direfully will I avenge myself on him.* It means, however, as I have rendered it,—*I suffer poignant misery.*—T.

fore, O sinless one, thou shouldst give him his deserts. While, O lord, I was being abducted by him, even this was the desire that I cherished in my heart, *viz*, that I should cause that hero of great vows to be slain. Therefore, O sinless Rāma, gratify this desire of mine! O thou of mighty arms, slay Bhishma even as Purandara slew Vritra!—' "

SECTION CLXXIX.

" 'Bhishma said,—O lord, repeatedly urged by that maiden to slay Bhishma, Rāma replied unto that weeping girl, saying,—O daughter of Kāçi, O thou of the fairest complexion, I do not, on any account, take up arms now except for the sake of those that are conversant with the *Vedas!* Tell me, therefore, what else I can do for thee! Both Bhishma and Cālwa are, O princess, exceedingly obedient to me. Do not grieve, I will accomplish thy business! I will not, however, O beautiful lady, take up arms, except at the command of Brāhmanas! This hath been my rule of conduct!—

" '—Amvā said,—My misery, O holy one, should by any means be dispelled by thee! That misery of mine hath been caused by Bhishma. Slay him, therefore, O lord, without much delay!—

" '—Rāma said,—O daughter of Kāçi, say but the word and Bhishma, however deserving of reverence from thee, will, at my word, take up thy feet on his head!—

" '—Amvā said,—O Rāma, slay in battle that Bhishma who roareth like an *Asura*. Indeed, summoned to the encounter (by him), slay him, O Rāma, if thou wishest (to do) what is agreeable to me! It behoveth thee, besides, to make thy promise true!—

" 'Bhishma continued,—While, O king, Rāma and Amvā were talking thus with each other, the *Rishi* (Akritavrana) of highly virtuous soul said these words:—It behoveth thee not, O mighty-armed one, to desert this girl that seeketh thy protection! If summoned to battle Bhishma cometh to the encounter and sayeth—*I am vanquished*, or, if he obeyeth thy words, then that which this maiden seeketh will be

accomplished, O son of Bhrigu's race, and the words spoken by thee, O hero, will also, O lord, be made true! This also was, O great *Muni*, the vow then made by thee, O Rāma,—the vow made by thee before Brāhmanas after thou hadst conquered all the Kshatriyas,—*viz*, that thou wouldst slay in battle the person, be he a Brāhmana, a Kshatriya, a Vaiçya, or a Cudra, who would be a foe to Brāhmanas. Thou hadst further promised that as long as thou wouldst live thou wouldst not abandon those that would come to thee in fright and seek thy protection, and that thou wouldst, O Bhārgava, slay that proud warrior who would vanquish in battle all the assembled Khatiriyas of the earth! O Rāma, even Bhishma, that perpetuator of Kuru's race, hath achieved such success (over all the Kshatriyas)! Approaching him, O son of Bhrigu's race, encounter him now in battle!—

"'Rāma said,—O best of *Rishis*, I recollect that vow of mine made before. I will, however, (in the present instance), do that which conciliation may point out. The task which the daughter of Kāçi hath in her mind is a grave one, O Brāhmana! Taking this maiden with me, I will repair myself to the place where Bhishma is. If Bhishma, proud of his achievements in battle, do not obey my behest, I will then slay that arrogant wight. Even this is my fixed resolve. The arrows shot by me do not stick to the bodies of embodied creatures (but pass them through)! This is known to you from what you saw in my encounters with the Kshatriyas!—Having said this, Rāma then, along with all those utterers of *Brahma*, resolved to depart from that asylum. And that great ascetic then rose from his seat. Then all those ascetics passing that night there, performed (on the next morning) their *homa* rites and recited their prayers. And then they all set out, desirous of taking my life. And Rāma, accompanied by all those utterers of *Brahma*, then came to Kurukshetra, O monarch, with that maiden, O Bhārata, in their company. And those high-souled ascetics, with that foremost one of Bhrigu's race at their head, having arrived on the banks of the stream Saraswati quartered themselves there.'"

Section CLXXX.

"'Bhishma said,—After he had quartered there, on the third day, O king, Jamadagni's son of high vows sent a message to me, saying,—*I have come here, do what is agreeable to me!*—Hearing that Rāma of great might had come to the confines of our kingdom, I speedily went with a joyous heart to that master who was an ocean of energy. And I went to him, O king, with a cow placed in the van of my train, and accompanied by many Brāhmanas, by the (ordinary) priests (of our family), and by others, resembling the very gods in splendour, employed by us on special occasions. And beholding me arrived at his presence, Jamadagni's son of great prowess accepted the worship I offered unto him and said these words unto me.—

"'Rāma said,—Thyself divested of desire, in what frame of mind, O Bhishma, didst thou ravish, on the occasion of her self-choice, this daughter of the king of the Kāçis and again dismiss her subsequently? By thee hath this famous lady been dissociated from virtue! Touched with thy hands before, who can marry her now? Rejected she hath been by Cālwa because thou, O Bhārata, hadst abducted her? Take her, therefore, to thyself, O Bhārata, at my command! Let this daughter of a king, O tiger among men, be charged with the duties of her sex! O king, O sinless one, it is not proper that this humiliation should be hers!—

"'Seeing him plunged into sorrow (on account of the maiden) I said unto him,—O Brāhmana, I cannot by any means bestow this girl on my brother! O thou of Bhrigu's race, it was to myself that she said—*I am Çālwa's!*—And it was by me that she was permitted to go to Cālwa's city. As regards myself, even this is my firm vow that I cannot abandon Kshatriya practices from fear or pity, or avarice of wealth, or lust!—Hearing these words of mine, Rāma addressed me with eyes rolling in anger, saying,—If, O bull among men, thou dost not act according to my words, I will slay thee this very day along with all thy counsellors!—Indeed, with eyes rolling in

anger, Rāma in great wrath told me these words repeatedly. I, however, O chastiser of foes, then beseeched him in sweet words. But though beseeched by me, he did not cool. Bowing down with my head unto that best of Brāhmanas I then enquired of him the reason for which he sought battle with me. I also said,—O thou of mighty arms, while I was a child it was thou who instructedst me in the four kinds of arms.* I am, therefore, O thou of Bhrigu's race, thy disciple!—Then Rāma answered me with eyes red in anger,—Thou knowest me, O Bhishma, to be thy preceptor, and yet, O Kauravya, thou acceptest not, for pleasing me, this daughter of the ruler of the Kāçis! O delighter of the Kurus, I cannot be gratified unless thou actest in this way! O mighty-armed one, take this maiden and preserve thy race! Having been abducted by thee, she obtaineth not a husband!—Unto Rāma that subjugator of hostile cities, I replied, saying,—This cannot be, O regenerate *Rishi!* All thy labor is vain. O son of Jamadagni, remembering thy old preceptorship, I am striving, O holy one, to gratify thee! As regards this maiden, she hath been refused by me before. Knowing what the faults, productive of great evils, of the female sex are, who is there that would admit into his abode a woman whose heart is another's and who (on that account) is even like a snake of virulent poison? O thou of high-vows, I would not, even from fear of Vāsava, forsake duty! Be gracious unto me, or do me without delay that which thou hast thought proper. This *sloka* also, O thou of pure-soul, is heard in the *Purānas*, O lord, sung by the high-souled Marutta, O thou of great intelligence!—*The renunciation is sanctioned by the ordinance of a preceptor who is filled with vanity, who is destitute of the knowledge of right and wrong, and who is treading in a devious path.*—Thou art my preceptor

* The science of arms *(Dhanurveda)* classes arms under four heads, *viz*, *Mukta*, *Amukta*, *Muktāmukta*, and *Yantramukta*. A *mukta* weapon is one that is hurled from the hand, as a discus. An *amukta* is one that is not hurled from the hand, as a sword. A *muktāmukta* is one that is sometimes hurled and sometimes not, as mace. Lastly, a *Yantramukta* is one shot from a machine, as an arrow or a ball. All *mukta* weapons are *Astras*, while all *amukta* ones are called *çastras*.—T.

and it is for this that I have from love reverenced thee greatly. Thou, however, knowest not the duty of a preceptor, and it is for this that I will fight with thee. I would not slay my preceptor in battle, especially again a Brāhmana, and more especially one endued with ascetic merit. It was for this that I forgave thee. It is a well-known truth gatherable from the scriptures that he is not guilty of slaying a Brāhmana who killeth in battle a person of that order that taketh up weapons like a wretched Kshatriya and fighteth wrathfully without seeking to fly. I am a Kshatriya stationed in the practice of Kshatriya duties. One doth not incur sin, nor doth one incur any banefulness by behaving towards a person exactly as that person deserveth. When a person acquainted with the proprieties of time and place and well-versed in matters affecting both profit and virtue, feels doubtful as regards anything, he should without scruples of any kind devote himself to the acquistion of virtue which would confer the highest benefit on him. And since thou, O Rāma, in a matter connected with profit, of doubtful propriety, actest unrighteously, I would certainly fight with thee in great battle. Behold the strength of my arms and my prowess that is superhuman! In view of such circumstances, I shall certainly do, O son of Bhrigu, what I can. I shall fight with thee, O regenerate one, on the field of Kurukshetra! O Rāma of great effulgence, equip thyself as thou listest for single combat! Come and station thyself on that field of Kurukshetra where, afflicted with my shafts in great battle, and sanctified by my weapons, thou mayst obtain those regions that have been won by thee (through thy austerities). O thou of mighty arms and wealth of asceticism, there I will approach thee for battle,—thee that art so fond of battle! There, O Rāma, where in days of yore thou hadst propitiated thy (deceased) fathers (with oblations of Kshatriya blood), slaying thee there, O son of Bhrigu, I will propitiate the Kshatriyas slain by thee! Come there, O Rāma, without delay! There, O thou that art difficult of being vanquished, I will curb thy old pride about which the Brāhmanas speak! For many long years, O Rāma, thou hast boasted, saying,—*I have, single-handed, vanquished all the*

Kshatriyas of the Earth!—Listen now to what enabled thee to indulge in that boast! In those days no Bhishma was born, or no Kshatriyas like unto Bhishma! Kshatriyas really endued with valor have taken their births later on! As regards thyself, thou hast consumed only heaps of straw! The person that would easily quell thy pride of battle hath since been born! He, O mighty-armed one, is no other than myself, even Bhishma that subjugator of hostile cities! Without doubt, O Rāma, even I shall quell thy pride of battle!—'

"'Bhishma continued,—Hearing these words of mine, Rāma addressed me laughingly, saying,—By good luck it is, O Bhishma, that thou desirest to fight with me in battle! O thou of Kuru's race, even now I go with thee to Kurukshetra! I will do what thou hast said! Come thither, O chastiser of foes! Let thy mother Jānhavi, O Bhishma, behold thee dead on that plain, pierced with my shafts and become the food of vultures, crows, and other carnivorous birds! Let that goddess worshiped by *Siddhas* and *Chāranas*, that blessed daughter of Bhagiratha in the form of a river, who begat thy wicked self, weep today, O king, beholding thee slain by me and lying miserably on that plain, however undeserving she may be of seeing such a sight! Come, O Bhishma, and follow me, O proud wight always longing for battle! O thou of Kuru's race, take with thee, O bull of Bharata's line, thy cars and all other equipments of battle! —Hearing these words of Rāma that subjugator of hostile towns, I worshipped him with a bend of my head and answered him, saying,—*So be it!*—Having said all this, Rāma then went to Kurukshetra from desire of combat, and I also, entering our city, represented everything unto Satyavati. Then causing propitiatory ceremonies to be performed (for my victory), and blessed also by my mother, and making the Brāhmanas utter benedictions on me, I mounted on a handsome car made of silver and unto which, O thou of great glory, were yoked steeds white in hue! And every limb of that car was well-built, and it was exceedingly commodious and covered on all sides with tiger-skin, And it was equipped

with many great weapons and furnished with all necessaries. And it was ridden by a charioteer who was well-born and brave, who was versed in horse-lore, careful in battle, and well-trained in his art, and who had seen many encounters. And I was accoutred in a coat of mail white in hue and had my bow in hand. And the bow I took was also white in hue. And thus equipped, I set out, O best of Bharata's race! And an umbrella, white in hue, was held over my head. And, O king, I was fanned with fans that also were white in color. And clad in white, with also a white head-gear, all my adornments were white. And eulogised (with laudatory hymns) by Brāhmanas wishing me victory, I issued out of the city named after the elephant, and proceeded to Kurukshetra which, O bull of Bharata's race, was to be the field of battle! And those steeds fleet as the mind or the wind, urged by my charioteer, soon bore me, O king, to that great encounter. And arrived on the field of Kurukshetra, both myself and Rāma, eager for battle, became desirous of showing each other our prowess. And arrived within view of the great ascetic Rāma, I took up my excellent conch and blew a loud blast. And many Brāhmanas, O king, and many ascetics having their abodes in the forest, as also the gods with Indra at their head, were stationed there for beholding that great encounter. And many celestial garlands and diverse kinds of celestial music and many cloudy canopies could be noticed there. And all those ascetics who had come with Rāma, desiring to become spectators of the fight, stood all around the field. Just at this juncture, O king, my divine mother devoted to the good of all creatures appeared before me in her own form and said,—What is this that thou seekest to do? Repairing to Jamadagni's son, O son of Kuru's race, I will repeatedly solicit him, saying,—*Do not fight with Bhishma who is thy disciple!*—O son, being a Kshatriya, do not obstinately set thy heart on an encounter in battle with Jamadagni's son who is a Brāhmana!—Indeed, it was thus that she reproved me. And she also said,—O son, Rāma, equal in prowess unto Mahādeva himself, is the exterminator of the Kshatriya order! Is this not known to thee that thou

desirest an encounter with him?—Thus addressed by her, I saluted the goddess reverentially and replied unto her with joined hands, giving her, O chief of the Bharatas, an account of all that had transpired in that self-choice (of the daughters of Kāçi). I also told her everything, O king of kings, about how I had urged Rāma (to desist from the combat). I also gave her a history of all the bygone acts of the (eldest) daughter of Kāçi. My mother then, the great River, wending to Rāma, began, for my sake, to beseech that *Rishi* of Bhrigu's race. And she said unto him these words, *viz,—Do not fight with Bhishma who is thy disciple!* —Rāma, however, said unto her while she was beseeching him thus,—Go and make Bhishma desist! He doth not do my wish! It is for this that I have approached him!—' "

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Thus addressed by Rāma, Gangā, from affection for her son, came back to Bhishma. But Bhishma, with eyes rolling in anger, refused to do her bidding. Just at this time, the mighty ascetic Rāma, that foremost one of Bhrigu's race, appeared in Bhishma's sight. And then that best of twice-born ones challenged him to the encounter."

SECTION CLXXXI.

" 'Bhishma said,—I then smillingly addressed Rāma stationed for battle, saying,—Myself on my car, I do not wish to fight with thee that art on the earth! Mount on a car, O hero, and case thy body in mail, O mighty-armed one, if, indeed, O Rāma, thou wishest to fight with me in battle!—Then Rāma smilingly replied unto me on that field of battle, saying,—The Earth, O Bhishma, is my car, and the *Vedas* like good steeds are the animals that carry me! The Wind is my car-driver, and my coat of mail is constitued by those mothers of the *Vedas, (viz, Gāyatri, Sāvitri,* and *Sarasvati).* Well-covered by these in battle, O son of Kuru's race, I will fight!—Having said this, O Gāndhāri's son, Rāma of prowess incapable of being baffled, covered me on all sides with a thick shower of arrows. I then beheld Jamadagni's

son stationed on a car equipped with every kind of excellent weapons! And the car he rode was exceedingly handsome and was of wonderful appearance. And it had been created by a fiat of his will and was beautiful like a town. And celestial steeds were yoked unto it, and it was well-protected by the necessary defences. And it was decked all over with ornaments of gold. And it was well covered with tough skins all around, and bore the device of the sun and the moon. And armed with bow and equipped with a quiver, and with fingers cased in leathern fences, Akritavrana, the dear friend of Bhārgava, well-versed in the *Vedas*, did the duties of car-driver for that warrior. And he of Bhrigu's race, repeatedly summoning me to battle, saying,—*Come, come*,—gladdened my heart. And I then, myself, singly, obtained for my adversary that invincible and mighty exterminator of the Kshatriya race, *viz*, Rāma risen like the sun himself in splendour, desirous (on his part) of fighting singly! And after he had poured three showers of arrows on me, curbing my steeds I came down from my car, and placing my bow aside I proceeded on foot to that best of *Rishis*. And arriving before him I worshipped that best of Brāmhanas with reverence. And having saluted him duly, I told him these excellent words:—O Rāma, whether thou art equal or superior to me, I will fight with thee, my virtuous preceptor, in battle! O lord, bless me, wishing me victory!—

"'—Rāma, thus addressed, said,—O foremost one of Kuru's race, he that desires prosperity should act even thus! O thou of mighty arms, they that fight with warriors more eminent than themselves, have this duty to perform. O king, I would have cursed thee if thou hadst not approached me thus! Go, fight carefully and summoning all thy patience, O thou of Kuru's race! I cannot, however, wish thee victory, for I myself stand here to vanquish thee! Go, fight fairly! I am pleased with thy behaviour!—Bowing unto him I then speedily came back, and mounting on my car I once more blew my conch decked with gold. And then, O Bhārata, the combat commenced between him and me. And it lasted for many days, each of us, O king, having been desirous of van-

quishing the other. And in that battle it was Rāma who struck me first with nine hundred and sixty straight arrows furnished with vulturine wings. And with that arrowy shower, O king, my four steeds and charioteer were completely covered! Notwithstanding all this, however, I remained quiet in that encounter, accoutred in my coat of mail! Bowing unto the gods and especially unto the Brāhmanas, I then smilingly addressed Rāma stationed for battle, saying,—Although thou hast shown litte regard for me yet I have fully honored thy preceptorship! Listen again, O Brāhmana, to some other auspicious duty that should be discharged if virtue is to be earned! The *Vedas* that are in thy body, and the high status of a Brāhmana that is also in thee, and the ascetic merit thou hast earned by the severest of austerities, I do not strike at these! I strike, however, at that Kshatriyahood which thou, O Rāma, hast adopted! When a Brāhmana taketh up weapons, he becometh a Kshatriya. Behold now the power of my bow and the energy of my arms! Speedily shall I cut off that bow of thine with a sharp shaft!—Saying this I shot at him, O bull of Bharata's race, a sharp broad-headed arrow. And cutting off one of the horns of his bow with it, I caused it to drop on the ground. I then shot at Jāmadagni's car a hundred straight arrows winged with vulturine feathers. Piercing through Rāma's body and brone along by the wind, those arrows coursing through space seemed to vomit blood (from their mouths) and resembled veritable snakes. Covered all over with blood and with blood issuing out of his body, Rāma, O king, shone in battle like the Sumeru mountain with streams of liquid metal rolling down its breast, or like the *Açoka* tree at the advent of spring when covered with red bunches of flowers, or, O king, like the *Kinçuka* tree when clad in its flowery attire! Taking up then another bow, Rāma, filled with wrath, showered upon me numerous arrows of excessive sharpness, furnished with golden wings. And those fierce arrows of tremendous impetus, resembling snakes, or fire, or poison, coming at me from all sides, pierced my very vitals and caused me to tremble. Summoning all my coolness then, I addressed myself for

the encounter, and filled with rage I pierced Rāma with a hundred arrows. And afflicted with those hundred blazing shafts resembling either fire, or the sun, or looking like snakes of virulent poison, Rāma seemed to lose his senses! Filled, O Bhārata, with pity (at the sight), I stopped of my own accord and said,—*Oh, fie on battle! Fie on Kshatriya practices!*—And overwhelmed, O king, with grief, I repeatedly said,—*Alas, great is the sin committed by me through observance of Kshatriya practices, since I have afflicted with arrows my preceptor who is a Brāhmana endued with a virtuous soul!*—After that, O Bhārata, I ceased striking Jamadagni's son any longer. At this time the thousand-rayed luminary, having heated the earth with his rays, proceeded at the close of day to his chambers in the west and the battle also between us ceased.—' "

Section CLXXXII.

" 'Bhishma said,—After the battle had ceased, my charioteer, well-skilled in such operations, drew out from his own body, the bodies of my steeds, and my body as well, the arrows that stuck there. Next morning when the sun rose, the battle commenced again, my horses having (a little while before) been bathed and allowed to roll on the ground and having had their thirst slaked and thereby reinvigorated. And beholding me coming quickly to the encounter attired in coat of mail and stationed on my car, the mighty Rāma equipped his car with great care. And I myself also, beholding Rāma coming towards me from desire of battle, placed aside my bow and quickly descended from my car. Saluting Rāma I reascended it, O Bhārata, and desirous of giving battle, stood fearlessly before that son of Jamadagni. I then overwhelmed him with a thick shower of arrows, and he too covered me with an arrowy shower in return. And filled with wrath Jamadagni's son once more shot at me a number of fierce shafts of great force and blazing mouths looking like veritable snakes! And I too, O king, shooting sharp shafts by hundreds and thousands, repeatedly cut off Rāma's arrows in mid-air before

they could come at me. Then the mighty son of Jamadagni began to hurl celestial weapons at me, all of which I repelled, desirous of achieving mightier feats, O thou of strong arms, with my weapons! And loud was the din that then arose in the welkin all around. At that time I hurled at Rāma the weapon named *Vāyavya* which Rāma neutralised, O Bhārata, by the weapon called *Guhyaka*. Then I applied, with proper *mantras*, the weapon celled *Agneya*, but the lord Rāma neutralised that weapon of mine by one (of his) called *Vāruna*. And it was in this way that I neutralised the celestial weapons of Rāma, and that chastiser of foes, Rāma also, endued with great energy and acquainted with celestial weapons, neutralised the weapons shot by me. Then, O monarch, that best of Brāhmanas, the mighty son of Jamadagni, filled with wrath, suddenly wheeling to my right, pierced me in the breast. At this, O best of the Bharatas, I swooned on my best of cars. And beholding me reft of consciousness, my charioteer quickly bore me away from the field. And seeing me afflicted and pierced with Rāma's weapons and borne away drooping and in a swoon, all the followers of Rāma, including Akritavrana and others and the princess of Kāçi, filled with joy, O Bhārata, began to shout aloud! Regaining consciousness then, I addressed my charioteer, saying,—Go, to where Rāma stayeth! My pains have left me, and I am ready for battle!—Thus instructed, my charioteer soon took me to where Rāma was, with the aid of those exceedingly handsome steeds of mine that seemed to dance as they coursed (through the plain) and that were endued with the speed of the wind. And approaching Rāma then, O thou of Kuru's race, and filled with wrath, from desire of vanquishing his angry self I overwhelmed him with an arrowy shower! But Rāma, shooting three for every single one of mine, cut into fragments every one of my straight-going arrows in mid-air before any of them could reach him! And beholding those well-furnished arrows of mine by hundreds and thousands each cut off in twain by Rāma's arrows, all the followers of Rāma were filled with joy. Impelled then by the desire of slaying him I shot at Rāma the son of Jamadagni a good-looking arrow of blazing efful-

gence with Death's self sitting at its head. Struck very forcibly therewith, and succumbing to its impetus, Rāma fell into a swoon and dropped down on the ground. And when Rāma thus dropped on the ground, exclamations of *Oh* and *Alas* arose on all sides, and the whole universe, O Bhārata, was filled with confusion and alarm such as may be witnessed if the sun himself were ever to fall down from the firmament! Then all those ascetics together with the princess of Kāçi, quietly proceeded, O son of Kuru's race, with great anxiety towards Rāma. And embracing him, O Kaurava, they began to comfort him softly with the touch of their hands rendered cold by contact with water and with assurances of victory. Thus comforted, Rāma rose up and fixing an arrow to his bow he addressed me in an agitated voice, saying,—Stay, O Bhishma! Thou art already slain!—And let off by him, that arrow quickly pierced my left side in that fierce encounter. And struck therewith, I began to tremble like a tree shaken by the trempest. Slaying my horses then in that terrific combat, Rāma, fighting with great coolness, covered me with swarms of winged arrows shot with remarkable lightness of hand. At this, O mighty-armed one, I also began to shoot arrows with great lightness of hand for obstructing Rāma's arrowy shower. Then those arrows shot by myself and Rāma, covering the welkin all around, stayed even there (without falling down). And thereupon, enveloped by clouds of arrows, the very sun could not shed its rays through them. And the very wind, obstructed by those clouds, seemed to be unable to pass through them. Then in consequence of the obstructed motion of the wind, the rays of the sun, and the clash of the arrows against one another, a conflagration was caused in the welkin. And then those arrows blazed forth in consequence of the fire generated by themselves, and fell on the earth, consumed into ashes! Then Rāma, O Kaurava, filled with wrath, covered me with hundreds and thousands and tens of thousands and hundreds of thousands and hundreds of millions of arrows! And I also, O king, with my arrows resembling snakes of virulent poison, cut into fragments all those arrows of Rāma and caused them to fall down on the earth like

snakes cut into pieces. And it was thus, O best of the Bharatas, that that combat took place. When, however, the shades of evening approached, my preceptor withdrew from the fight.—' "

SECTION CLXXXIII.

" 'Bhishma said,—The next day, O bull of Bharata's race, frightful again was the combat that took place between me and Rāma when I encountered him once more. That hero of virtuous soul, conversant with celestial weapons,—the lord Rāma,—from day to day, began to use diverse kinds of celestial weapons. Regardless of life itself which is so difficult of being sacrificed, in that fierce combat, O Bhārata, I baffled all those weapons with such of mine as are capable of baffling them. And, O Bhārata, when diverse weapons were in this way neutralised and baffled by means of counter-weapons, Rāma of mighty energy began to contend against me in that battle. reckless of his own life. Seeing all his weapons baffled, the high-souled son of Jamadagni then hurled at me a fierce lance, blazing like a meteor, with flaming mouth, filling the whole world as it were with its effulgence, and resembling the dart hurled by Death himself! I, however, with my arrows cut into three fragments that blazing dart rushing against me and resembling in effulgence the sun that rises at the end of the *Yuga!* At this, breezes charged with fragrant odors began to blow (around me). Beholding that dart of his cut off, Rāma, burning with anger, hurled a dozen other fierce darts. Their forms, O Bhārata, I am incapable of describing in consequence of their great effulgence and speed. How, indeed, shall I describe their forms? Beholding those diverse-looking darts approach me from all sides like long tongues of fire and blazing forth with fierce energy like the dozen suns that arise at the time of the destruction of the universe, I was filled with fear. Seeing an arrowy net advancing against me I baffled it with an arrowy down-pour of mine, and then sent a dozen shafts by which I consumed those fierce-looking dozen darts of Rāma. Then, O king, the high-souled

son of Jamadagni showered on me numerous fierce-looking darts furnished with variegated handles decked with gold, possessed of golden wings, and resembling flaming meteors! Baffling those fierce darts by means of my shield and sword, and causing them in that combat to fall down on the ground, I then, with clouds of excellent arrows, covered Rāma's excellent steeds and his charioteer. Then that high-souled smiter of the lord of the Haihayās,* beholding those darts of mine equipped with gold-decked handles and resembling snakes emerged out of their holes, and filled with wrath at the sight, had recourse once more to celestial weapons! Then swarms of fierce and blazing arrows, looking like flights of locusts, fell upon me and overwhelmed me, my steeds, my charioteer, and my car! Indeed, O king, my car, horses, and charioteer, were covered all over with those arrows! And the yoke, shaft, wheels, and the wheel-spokes of my car, overwhelmed with that arrowy shower, at once broke. After that arrowy shower, however, was over, I also covered my preceptor with a thick shower of arrows. Thereupon that mass of *Brāhmic* merit, mangled with that arrowy downpour, began to bleed copiously and continuously. Indeed, like Rāma afflicted with my clouds of arrows I too was densely pierced with his arrows. When at last in the evening the sun set behind the western hills., our combat came to an end.—' "

SECTION CLXXXIV.

" 'Bhishma said,—Next morning, O king, when the sun rose brightly, the combat between myself and him of Bhrigu's race again commenced. Then Rāma, that foremost of smiters, stationed on his quickly-moving car, rained on me a thick down-pour of arrows like the clouds on the mountain-breast. My beloved charioteer then, afflicted by that arrowy shower,

---

* The thousand-handed Arjuna, called also Kārtaviryàrjuna, the vanquisher of Rāvana, the chief of the *Haihayā* clan of Kshatriyas having his capital at Māhishmati on the banks of the Narmadā (Nerbudā), was slain by Rāma.—T.

swerved from his place in the car, filling me with grief on his account. A total unconsciousness then came over him. And thus wounded by that arrowy down-pour he fell down upon the earth in a swoon. And afflicted as he had been by Rāma's shafts, he soon gave up his life. Then, O great king, fear entered my heart. And when, on the death of my charioteer, I was still lamenting him with heart unhinged by sorrow, Rāma began to shoot at me many death-dealing shafts. Indeed, even when endangered at the death of my charioteer I was lamenting for him, he of Bhrigu's race, drawing the bow with great strength, pierced me deep with an arrow! O king, that blood-drinking shaft, falling upon my breast, pierced me through and fell simultaneously with my person upon the earth! Then, O bull of Bharata's race, thinking I was dead, Rāma repeatedly roared aloud like the clouds and rejoiced exceedingly! Indeed, O king, when thus I fell down on the earth, Rāma, filled with joy, sent forth loud shouts along with his followers, while all the Kauravas who stood beside me and all those who came there to witness the combat were afflicted with great woe on seeing me fall. While lying prostrate, O lion among kings, I beheld eight Brāhmanas endued with the effulgence of the sun or the fire. They stood surrounding me on that field of battle and supporting me on their arms. Indeed, borne up by those Brāhmanas I had not to touch the ground. Like friends they supported me in mid-air while I was breathing heavily. And they were sprinkling me with drops of water. And bearing me up as they stood, they then, O king, repeatedly said unto me,—*Do not fear! Let prosperity be thine!*—Comforted then by those words of theirs, I quickly rose up. I then beheld my mother—that foremost of rivers—stationed on my car. Indeed, O king of the Kurus, it was that great river-goddess who had controlled my steeds in the combat (after my charioteer's fall)! Worshipping then the feet of my mother and of the spirits of my ancestors I ascended my car. My mother then protected my car, steeds, and all the implements of battle. With joined hands I entreated her to go away. Having dismissed her, I myself restrained those steeds endued with the speed of the wind,

and fought with Jamadagni's son, O Bhārata, till the close of the day! Then, O chief of the Bharatas, in course of that combat I shot at Rāma a powerful and heart-piercing arrow endued with great speed. Afflicted with that shaft, Rāma then, his bow loosened from his grasp, fell down upon the earth on his knees, reft of consciousness! And when Rāma, that giver of many thousands (of golden coins), fell, masses of clouds covered the firmament, pouring a copious shower of blood! And meteors by hundreds fell, and thunder-rolls were heard, causing everything to tremble! And suddenly *Rāhu* enveloped the blazing sun, and rough winds began to blow! And the earth itself began to tremble. And vultures and crows and cranes began to alight in joy! And the points of the horizon seemed to be ablaze and jackals began repeatedly to yell fiercely! And drums, unstruck (by human hands), began to produce harsh sounds! Indeed, when the high-souled Rāma embraced the earth, reft of consciousness, all these frightful and alarming omens of evil were seen! Then all on a sudden rising up, Rāma approached me once more, O Kaurava, for battle, forgetting everything and deprived of his senses by anger. And that mighty-armed one took up his bow endued with great strength and also a deadly arrow. I, however, resisted him successfully. The great *Rishis* then (that stood there) were filled with pity at the sight, while he, however, of Bhrigu's race was filled with great wrath. I then took up a shaft resembling the blazing fire that appears at the end of the *Yuga*, but Rāma of immeasurable soul baffled that weapon of mine. Then covered by clouds of dust, the splendour of the solar disc was dimmed, and the sun went to the western mount. And night came with its delicious and cool breezes, and then both of us desisted from the fight. In this way, O king, when evening came the fierce battle ceased, and (next day) with the reappearance of the sun it commenced again. And it lasted for three and twenty days together.—' "

SECTION CLXXXV.

"'Bhishma said,—Then, O great king, during the night, having bowed unto the Brāhmanas, the *Rishis*, the gods, and all those creatures that wander during the dark, and also all the kings of the earth, I laid myself down on my bed, and in the solitude of my room I began to reflect in the following way. —For many days hath this fierce combat of terrible consequence lasted between myself and Jāmadagni. I am unable, however, to vanquish on the field of battle that Rāma of mighty energy. If, indeed, I am competent to vanquish in battle that Brāhmana of mighty strength, *viz*, Jamadagni's son of great prowess, then let the gods kindly show themselves to me this night!—Mangled with arrows as I lay asleep, O great king, that night on my right side, towards the morning those foremost of Brāhmanas who had raised me when I had fallen down from my car and held me up and said unto me—*Do not fear*—and who had comforted me, showed themselves to me, O king, in a dream! And they stood surrounding me and said these words. Listen to them as I repeat them to thee, O perpetuator of Kuru's race!—Rise, O Gangā's son, thou needst have no fear! We will protect thee for thou art our own body! Rāma the son of Jamadagni will never be able to vanquish thee in battle! Thou, O bull of Bharata's race, wilt be the conqueror of Rāma in combat! This beloved weapon, O Bhārata, called *Praswāpa* appertaining to the lord of all creatures and forged by the divine artificer will come to thy knowledge, for it was known to thee in thy former life! Neither Rāma nor any person on earth is acquainted with it. Recollect it, therefore, O thou of mighty arms, and apply it with strength! O king, of kings, O sinless one, it will come to thee of itself! With it, O Kaurava, thou wilt be able to check all persons endued with mighty energy! O king, Rāma will not be slain outright by it. Thou shalt not, therefore, O giver of honors, incur any sin by using it! Afflicted by the force of this thy weapon the son of Jamadagni will fall asleep! Vanquishing him thus, thou wilt again awaken him in battle, O Bhishma, with that dear weapon

called *Samvodana!* Do what we have told thee, O Kauravya, in the morning, stationed on thy car. Asleep or dead, we reckon it as the same. O king, Rāma will not surely die! Apply, therefore, this *Praswāpa* weapon so happily thought of!—Having said this, O king, those foremost of Brāhmanas, eight in number and resembling one another in form and possessd of effulgent bodies, all vanished from my sight!—'"

SECTION CLXXXVI.

"'Bhishma said,—After the night passed away I awoke, O Bhārata, and thinking of my dream I was filled with great joy. Then, O Bhārata, the combat began between him and me—a combat that was fierce and unrivalled and that made the hair of all creatures stand on end. And Bhārgava poured on me an arrowy shower which I baffled with an arrowy shower of mine. Then filled with wrath at what he had seen the day before and what he saw that day, Rāma hurled at me a dart hard as Indra's thunderbolt and possessed of effulgence resembling that of Yama's mace! It came towards me like a blazing flame of fire and drinking up as it were all the quarters of that field of battle! Then, O tiger among the Kurus, it fell, O perpetuator of Kuru's line, upon my shoulder like the lightning's flame that ranges the sky! Wounded thus by Rāma, O thou of red eyes, my blood, O mighty-armed one, began to flow copiously like streams of red earth from a mountain (after a shower)! Filled with great wrath I then shot at Jamadagni's son a deadly shaft fatal as the poison of a snake. That heroic and best of Brāhmanas, struck therewith at the forehead, O monarch, then appeared as beautiful as a crested hill! Extremely angry, that hero then, changing his position and drawing the bowstring with great strength, aimed at me a terrible shaft resembling all-destructive Death himself and capable of grinding all foes! That fierce arrow fell upon my breast, hissing (through the air) like a snake. Covered with blood I fell down on the earth, O king, thus struck. Regaining consciousness, I hurled at Jamadagni's son a frightful dart effulgent as the thunder-bolt. That dart fell

upon the bosom of that foremost of Brāhmanas. Deprived of his senses at this, Rāma began to tremble all over. That great ascetic then, *viz*, his friend the regenerate Akritavrana, embraced him and with diverse words of comfort soothed him. Reassured thus, Rāma of high vows was then filled with wrath and vindictiveness. He invoked the great *Brahma* weapon. For baffling it I also used the same excellent weapon. Clashing against each other, the two weapons began to blaze forth brightly showing what happens at the end of the *Yuga!* Without being able to reach either myself or Rāma, those two weapons, O best of the Bharatas, met each other in mid-air. Then the whole welkin seemed to be ablaze and all creatures, O monarch, became highly distressed. Afflicted by the energy of those weapons, the *Rishis*, the *Gandharvas*, and the gods were all greatly pained. Then the earth with her mountains and seas and trees began to tremble, and all creatures, heated with the energy of the weapons, were greatly afflicted. The firmament, O king, became ablaze and the ten points of the horizon became filled with smoke. Creatures, therefore, that range the welkin were unable to stay in their element. When at all this the whole world with the gods, the *Asuras*, and the *Rākshasas* began to utter exclamations of woe,—*This is the time*—thought I and became desirous, O Bhārata, of speedily shooting the *Praswāpa* weapon at the command of those utterers of *Brahma* (that had appeared to me in my dream)! The *mantras* also for invoking that excellent weapon suddently came to my mind!—' "

SECTION CLXXXVII.

" 'Bhishma said,—When I had formed this resolution, O king, a din of tumultuous voices arose in the sky. And it said,—*O son of Kuru's race, do not let off the Praswāpa weapon!*—Notwithstanding this, I still aimed that weapon at Bhrigu's descendant. When I had aimed it, Nārada addressed me, saying,—Yonder, O Kauravya, stay the gods in the sky! Even they are forbidding thee today! Do not aim the *Praswāpa* weapon! Rāma is an ascetic possessed of

Brāhma merit, and he is, again, thy preceptor! Never, O Kauravya, humiliate him!—While Nārada was telling me this, I beheld those eight utterers of *Brahma* stationed in the sky. Smilingly, O king, they said unto me slowly,—O chief of the Bharatas, do even what Nārada sayeth! Even that, O best of Bharata's race, is highly beneficial to the world!—I then withdrew that great weapon called *Praswāpa*, and invoked according to the ordinance the weapon called *Brahma* in the combat. Beholding the *Praswāpa* weapon withdrawn, O lion among kings, Rāma was in a great huff, and suddenly exclaimed,—*Wretch that I am, I am vanquished, O Bhishma!*—Then Jamadagni's son beheld before him his venerable father and his father's fathers. They stood surrounding him there, and addressed him in these words of consolation,—O sire, never display such rashness again, the rashness, *viz*, of engaging in battle with Bhishma, or especially with any Kshatriya! O descendant of Bhrigu's race, to battle is the duty of a Kshatriya! Study (of the *Vedas)* and practice of vows are the highest wealth of Brāhmanas! For some reason, before this, thou hadst been ordered by us to take up weapons. Thou hadst then perpetrated that terrible and unbecoming feat.* Let this battle with Bhishma be thy very last, for enough of it thou hast already. O thou of mighty arms, leave the combat. Blessed be thou, let this be the very last instance of thy taking up the bow! O invincible one, throw thy bow aside, and practise ascetic austerities, O thou of Bhrigu's race! Behold, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu is forbidden by all the gods! They are endeavouring to pacify him, repeatedly saying,—Desist from this battle! Do not fight with Rāma who is thy preceptor! It is not proper for thee, O perpetuator of Kuru's race, to vanquish Rāma in battle! O son of Gangā, show this Brāhmana every honor on the field of battle!—As regards thee, we are thy superiors and, therefore, forbid thee! Bhishma is one of the foremost of *Vasus!* O son, it is fortunate, that thou art still alive! Cāntanu's son by Gangā—a celebrated

* *Viz*, the extermination of the whole Kshatriya order.—T.

Vasu as he is,—how can *he* be defeated by *thee*? Desist, therefore, O Bhārgava! That foremost of the Pāndavas, Arjuna, the mighty son of Indra, hath been ordained by the Self-create to be the slayer of Bhishma!—

"'Bhishma continued,—Thus addressed by his own ancestors, Rāma answered them, saying,—I cannot give up the combat. Even this is the solemn vow I have made. Before this, I never left the field, giving up battle! Ye grandsires, if you please, cause Gangā's son to desist from the fight! As regards myself, I can, by no means, desist from the combat! —Hearing these words of his, O king, those ascetics with *Richika* at their head, coming to me with Nārada in their company, told me,—O sire, desist from battle! Honor that foremost of Brāhmanas!—For the sake of Kshatriya morality I replied unto them, saying,—Even this is the vow I have taken in this world, *viz*, that I would never desist from battle turning my back, or suffer my back to be wounded with arrows! I cannot, from temptation, or distress, or fear, or for the sake of wealth, abandon my eternal duty! Even this is my fixed resolution!—Then all those ascetics with Nārada at their head, O king, and my mother Bhāgirathi, occupied the field of battle (before me). I, however, stayed quietly with arrows and bow as before, resolved to fight. They then once more turned towards Rāma and addressed him, saying,—The hearts of Brāhmanas are made of butter. Be pacified, therefore, O son of Bhrigu's race! O Rāma, O Rāma, desist from this battle, O best of Brāhmanas! Bhishma is incapable of being slain by thee, as indeed, thou, O Bhārgava, art incapable of being slain by him!—Saying these words while they stood obstructing the field, the *Pitris* caused that descendant of Bhrigu's race to place aside his weapons. Just at this time I once more beheld those eight utterers of *Brahma*, blazing with effulgence and resembling bright stars risen on the firmament. Stationed for battle as I was, they said these words unto me with great affection:—O thou of mighty arms, go unto Rāma who is thy preceptor! Do what is beneficial to all the worlds!—Beholding then that Rāma had desisted owing to the words of his well-wishers, I also, for the good of the worlds,

accepted the words of my well-wishers. Though mangled exceedingly, I still approached Rāma and worshipped him. That great ascetic Rāma then, smilingly and with great affection, said unto me,—There is no Kshatriya equal to thee on the earth! Go now, O Bhishma, for in this combat thou hast pleased me highly!—Summoning then in my presence that maiden (the daughter of Kāçi), Bhārgava sorrowfully said unto her these words in the midst of all those high-souled persons.—' "

SECTION CLXXXVIII.

" '—Rāma said,—O damsel, in the very sight of all these persons I have fought according to the best of my power and displayed my prowess! By exhibiting even the very best of weapons I have not been able to obtain any advantage over Bhishma that foremost of all wielders of weapons! I have exerted now to the best of my power and might. O beautiful lady, go whithersoever thou wishest! What other business of thine can I accomplish. Seek the protection of Bhishma himself! Thou hast no other refuge now! Shooting mighty weapons Bhishma hath vanquished me!—Having said this, the high-souled Rāma sighed and remained silent. That maiden then addressed him, saying,—O holy one, it is even so as thy holy self hath said! This Bhishma of great intelligence is incapable of being vanquished in battle by even the gods! Thou hast done my business to the best of thy exertion and power. Thou hast displayed in this battle energy incapable of being baffled and weapons also of diverse kinds. Thou hast yet been unable to obtain any advantage over Bhishma in combat. As regards myself, I will not go a second time to Bhishma. I will, however, O perpetuator of Bhrigu's race, go thither, O thou endued with wealth of asceticism, where I may (obtain the means to) myself slay Bhishma in battle!—Having said these words, that maiden went away, with eyes agitated with wrath, and thinking to compass my death she firmly resolved to devote herself to asceticism. Then that foremost one of Bhrigu's race, accompanied by those ascetics, bidding me farewell, departed, O Bhārata, for the mountains

of Mahendra whence he had come. I also, ascending my car and glorified by the Brāhmanas, entered our city and represented everything unto my mother Satyavati, everything that had transpired, and she, O great king, uttered benedictions on me. I then appointed persons endued with intelligence to ascertain the doings of that maiden. Devoted to the good of myself their well-wisher, those spies of mine with great application brought to me accounts of her course of action, her sayings and acts, from day to day. When that maiden went to the woods, resolved on ascetic austerities, even then I became melancholy, and afflicted with pain I lost my heart's tenour. Except one acquainted with *Brahma* and observant of vows that are praiseworthy owing to the austerities they involve, no Kshatriya hath ever, by his prowess, vanquished me in battle! I then, O king, humbly represented to Nārada as also to Vyasa all that the maiden did. They both told me,—O Bhishma, do not give way to sorrow on account of the daughter of Kāçi! Who is there that would venture to baffle destiny by individual exertion?—Meanwhile, O great king, that maiden, entering a cluster of retreats practised austerities that were beyond human powers (of endurance). Without food, emaciated, dry, with matted locks and begrimmed with filth, for six months she lived on air only, and stood unmoved like a street-post. And that lady possessed of wealth of asceticism, forgoing all food in consequence of the fast she kept, passed a whole year after this, standing in the waters of the *Yamunā*. Endued with great wrath, she passed the next whole year standing on her front toes and having eaten only one fallen leaf (of a tree). And thus for twelve years she made the heavens hot by her austerities. And though dissuaded by her relatives she could not by any means be weaned off (from that course of action). She then went into *Vatsabhumi* resorted to by the *Sidhas* and the *Chāranas*, and which was the retreat of high-souled ascetics of pious deeds. Bathing frequently in the sacred waters of that retreat, the princess of Kāçi roamed about according to her will.* Proceeding next

* *I. e.* led the deer's mode of life like Mādhavi the daughter of Yayāti. *Vide ante*, p. 348.—T.

(one after another) to the asylum, O king, of Nanda, and to the auspicious asylum of Uluka and to that of Chyavana, and to the spot sacred to Brahman, and to Preyāga the sacrificial platform of the gods, and to the forest sacred to the gods, and to Bhogavati, and, O monarch, to the asylum of Kuçika's son (Viçwāmitra), and to the asylum of Māndavya, and also to the asylum of Dwilipa, and to Rāmhrada, and, O Kauravya, to the asylum of Paila-Garga,* the princess of Kāçi, O king, performed ablutions in the sacred waters of all these places, observing all the while the most difficult of vows. One day my mother from the waters asked her, O Kauravya, saying,—O blessed lady, for what dost thou afflict thyself so? Tell me the truth!—Thus asked, O monarch, that faultless damsel answered her with joined hands, saying,—O thou of handsome eyes, Rāma hath been vanquished in battle by Bhishma. What other (Kshatriya) king then would venture to defeat the latter when ready with his weapons? As regards myself, I am practising the severest penances for the destruction of Bhishma. I wander over the earth, O goddess, so that I may slay that king! In all I do, O goddess, even this is the great end of my vows!—Hearing these words of hers, the Ocean-going (river Gangā) replied unto her, saying,—O lady, thou art acting crookedly! O weak girl, this wish of thine thou shalt not be able to have, O faultless one! If, O princess of Kāçi, thou observest these vows for the destruction of Bhishma, and if thou takest leave of thy body while observing them, thou shalt (in thy next birth) become a river crooked in her course and full of water during only the rains! All the bathing places along thy course will be difficult of approach, and filled during only the rains thou shalt be dry for eight months (during the year)! Full of terrible alligators, and creatures of frightful mein, thou shalt inspire fear in all creatures!—Addressing her thus, O king, my mother, that highly-blessed lady, in seeming smiles the while, dismissed the princess of Kāçi. That highly fair damsel then once more began to practise vows, foregoing all food, aye, even water, sometimes

* The Burdwan Pundits read for *Paila-Garga Aila-mārga.*—T.

for eight months and sometimes for ten months. And the daughter of the king of the Kāçis, wandering hither and thither from her passionate desire for *thirthas*, once more came back, O Kauravya, to *Vatsabhumi*. And it is there, O Bhārata, that she is known to have become a river, filled only during the rainy season, abounding with crocodiles, crooked in her course, and destitute of easy access to her waters. And, O king, in consequence of her ascetic merit only half her body became such a river in *Vatsabhumi*, while with the other half she remained a maiden as before—"

SECTION CLXXXIX.

"'Bhishma said,—Then all those asceties (that dwell in Vatsabhumi), beholding the princess of Kāçi firmly resolved on ascetic austerities, dissuaded her and enquired of her, saying,—What is thy business ?—Thus addressed, the maiden answered those ascetics old in ascetic penances, saying,—Expelled I have been by Bhishma and prevented by him from the virtue that would have been mine by living with a husband ! My observance of vows is for *his* destruction and not for the sake of regions of bliss, ye that are endued with wealth of asceticism ! Having compassed the death of Bhishma peace will be mine ! Even this is my resolve. He for whom mine hath been this state of continuous grief, he for whom I have been deprived of the region that would have been mine if I could obtain a husband, he for whom I have become neither woman nor man, without slaying in battle that son of Gangā I will not desist, ye that are endued with wealth of asceticism ! Even this that I have said is the purpose that is in my heart ! As a woman I have no longer any desire. I am, however, resolved to obtain manhood, for I will be revenged upon Bhishma ! I should not, therefore, be dissuaded by you !—Unto them she said these words repeatedly. Soon, the divine lord of Umā, bearing the trident, showed himself in his own form unto that female ascetic in the midst of those great *Rishis*. Being asked to solicit the boon she wished, she begged of the deity my defeat ! *Thou shalt slay him*,—were the words the

god said unto that lady of great force of mind. Thus assured, the maiden, however, once more said unto Rudra,—How can it happen, O god, that being a woman I shall yet be able to achieve victory in battle! O lord of Umā, as a woman, my heart is quite stilled. Thou hast, however, promised me, O lord of creatures, the defeat of Bhishma! O lord having the bull for thy mark, act in such a way that that promise of thine may become true, that encountering Bhishma the son of Cāntanu in battle I may be able to slay him!—The god of gods having the bull for his mark then said unto that maiden, —The words I have uttered cannot be false. O blessed lady, true they will be! Thou shalt slay Bhishma, and even obtain manhood. Thou shalt also remember all the incidents (of this life) even when thou shalt obtain a new body! Born in the race of Drupada, thou shalt become a *Mahāratha*, Quick in the use of weapons and a fierce warrior, thou shalt be well-skilled in battle! O blessed lady, all that I have said will be true! Thou shalt become a man at the expiration of sometime (from thy birth)!—Having said so, the god of gods, called also Kaparddin, having the bull for his mark, disappeared then and there in the very sight of those Brāhmanas. Upon this, that faultless maiden of the fairest complexion, the eldest daughter of the king of Kāçi, procuring wood from that forest in the very sight of those great *Rishis*, made a large funeral pyre on the banks of the Yamunā, and having set fire to it herself, entered that blazing fire, O great king, with a heart burning with wrath, and uttering, O king, the words,—*(I do so) for Bhishma's* destruction!—' "

Section CXC.

" 'Duryodhana said,—Tell me, O grandsire, how Cikhandin, O Gangā's son, having before been born a daughter, afterwards became a man, O foremost of warriors!—

" 'Bhishma said,—O great king, the eldest and beloved queen of king Drupada was, O monarch, childless (at first). During those years, king Drupada, O monarch, paid his adorations to the god Cankara for the sake of offspring, resolv-

ing in his mind to compass my destruction and practising the austerest of penances. And he begged Mahādeva, saying,—Let a son, and not a daughter, be born unto me! I desire, O god, a son for revenging myself upon Bhishma!—Thereupon that god of gods said unto him,—Thou shalt have a child who will be a female and male. Desist, O king, it will not be otherwise!—Returning then to his capital, he addressed his wife, saying,—O great goddess, great hath been the exertion made by me! Undergoing ascetic austerities I paid my adorations to Civa, and I was told by Cambhu that my child becoming a daughter (first) would subsequetly become a male person. And though I solicited him repeatedly yet Civa said,—*This is destiny's decree! It will not be otherwise. That which is destined must take place!*—Then that lady of great energy, the queen of king Drupada, when her season came, observing all the regulations (about purity), approached Drupada. And in due time the wife of Prishatā conceived agreeably to destiny's decree, as I was informed, O king, by Nārada. And that lady of eyes like lotus-petals continued to hold the embryo in her womb. And, O son of Kuru's race, the mighty-armed king Drupada, from parental affection, attended to every comfort of that dear wife of his. And, O Kaurava, the wife of that lord of earth, the royal Drupada who was childless, had all her wishes gratified. And in due time, O monarch, that goddess, the queen of Drupada, gave birth to a daughter of great beauty. Thereupon the strong-minded wife of that king, the childless Drupada, gave out, O monarch, that the child she had brought forth was a son! And then king Drupada, O ruler of men, caused all the rites prescribed for a male child to be performed in respect of that concealed daughter as if she were really a son. And saying that the child was a son, Drupada's queen kept her counsels very carefully. And no other man in the city save Prishata knew the sex of that child. Believing those words of that deity of unfading energy, he too concealed the sex of his child, saying, *She is a son.* And, O king, Drupada caused all the rites of infancy prescribed for a son to be performed in respect of that child, and he bestowed the name of Cikhandin on her.

I alone, through my spies and from Nārada's words knew the truth, informed as I previously was of the words of the god and of the ascetic austerities of Amvā!—' "

SECTION CXCI.

" 'Bhishma said,—Drupada, O chastiser of foes, bestowed great attention on everything in connection with that daughter of his, teaching her writing and painting and all the arts. And in arrows and weapons that child became a disciple of Drona. And the child's mother, of superior complexion, then urged the king (her husband) to find, O monarch, a wife for her as if she were a son. Then Pārshata, beholding that daughter of his to have attained the full development of youth and assured of her sex, began to consult with his queen. And Drupada said,—This daughter of mine that so enhanceth my woe hath attained her youth. Concealed, however, she hath hitherto been by me at the words of the trident-bearing diety!—The queen replied,—That, O great king, can never be untrue! Why, indeed, would be Lord of the three worlds say what would not occur? If it please thee, O king, I will speak and listen to my words. And, O son of Prishata's race, having listened to me, follow thou thy own inclination! Let the wedding of this child with a wife be caused to be performed carefully. The words of that god will be true. This is my certain belief!—Then that royal couple, having settled their resolution in respect of that affair, chose the daughter of the king of the Daçārnas as their son's wife. After this, the royal Drupada, that lion among kings, having enquired about the purity of descent of all the rulers of the earth, selected the daughter of the king of the Dacārnakas for wife to Cikhandin. He who was called king of the Daçārnakas was named Hiranyavarman; and he gave away his daughter to Cikhandin. And Hiarnyavarman, the king of the Daçārnas, was a powerful monarch incapable of being easily vanquished. Incapable of being resisted, that high-souled monarch possessed a large army. And sometime after the wedding, the daughter of Hiranyavarman, O best of monarchs, attained to her youth while the

daughter of Drupada also had attained to hers. And Cikhandin, after marriage, came back to Kāmpilya. And the former soon came to know that the latter was a woman like herself. And the daughter of Hiranyavarman, having ascertained that Cikhandin was really a woman, bashfully represented unto her nurses and companions everything about the son of that daughter of the kings of the Panchālas. Then, O tiger among kings, those nurses of the Daçārna country were filled with great grief, and sent emissaries unto their king. And those emissaries represented unto the king of the Daçārnas everything about the imposture that had taken place. And thereupon the king of the Daçārnas was filled with wrath.* Indeed, O bull of the Bharata race, Hiranyavarman hearing the news after the expiry of a few days was much afflicted with wrath. The ruler of the Daçārnakas then, filled with fierce wrath, sent a messenger to Drupada's abode. And the messenger of king Hiranyavarman, having alone approached Drupada, took him aside and said unto him in private,—The king of the Daçārnas, O monarch, deceived by thee and enraged, O sinless one, at the insult thou hast offered him, hath said these words unto thee :—*Thou hast humiliated me ! Without doubt, it was not wisely done by thee ! Thou hadst, from folly, solicited my daughter for thy daughter ! O wicked one, reap now the consequence of that act of deception ! I will now slay thee with all thy relatives and advisers ! Wait a little !—*' "

SECTION CXCII.

" 'Bhishma said,—Thus addressed, O king, by that messenger, king Drupada, like a thief caught (in the act), could not speak. He exerted himself greatly, by sending sweet-speeched emissaries of his own, instructing them to say—*This is not so,*—

---

* A *sloka* follows here beginning with *Cikhandyopi &c.* It occurs in many of the printed texts ; but is evidently an instance of misplacement. I leave it out.—T.

in order to pacify his brother.* King Hiranyavarman, however, ascertaining once again that the child of the king of the Pānchālas was really a daughter, issued out of his city without losing any time. He then sent messages unto all his powerful friends about that deception practised on his daughter and of which he had heard from the nurses with her. Then that best of kings, having mustered a large army, resolved, O Bhārata, to march against Drupada. Then, O monarch, king Hiranyavarman held a consultation with his ministers about the ruler of the Pānchālas. And it was settled among those high-souled kings that if, O monarch, Cikhandin was really a daughter, they should bind the ruler of the Pānchālas and drag him from his city, and installing another king over the Pānchālas they should slay Drupada with Cikhandin. Taking that to be the fixed resolution (of all whom he had summoned), king Hiranyavarman once more sent an envoy to the descendant of Prishata, saying,—*I will slay thee, be still!*—'

"'Bhishma continued,—King Drupada was not naturally courageous. In consequence again of that offence of his, he became filled with fear. Sending his envoys again to the ruler of the Daçārnas, king Drupada, afflicted with grief, approached his wife and took counsel with her. And possessed with great fright and with heart afflicted with grief, the king of the Pānchālas said unto his favourite wife, the mother of Cikhandin, these words:—My powerful brother, king Hiranyavarman, having mustered a large force, is coming towards me in anger. Fools that we both are, what are we now to do in respect of this our daughter? Thy son Cikhandin hath been suspected to be a daughter. Under this suspicion, Hiranyavarman with his allies and followed by his army wisheth to slay me, thinking that he hath been deceived by me! O thou of beautiful hips, tell us now what is true or false in this, O beautiful lady! O blessed lady, hearing from thee first, I will settle how to act. I am very much endangered

* One's son's or daughter's father-in-law is one's *Samvandhin*. In Bengal that word is used to signify the wife's brother. Literally, it means a relative.—T.

and this child Cikhandin also is equally so. Indeed, O queen, O lady of the fairest complexion, thou too art threatened with danger! For the relief of all, tell me who asketh thee what the truth is! O thou of beautiful hips and sweet smiles, hearing what thou hast to say I shall act suitably. Although I have been deceived by thee as to the duties I owe towards a son, yet, O beautiful lady, from kindness I will act towards you both in a suitable way. Therefore, do not fear, nor let this daughter of thine fear anything! Indeed, I have deceived the king of the Daçārnas. Tell me, O highly blessed lady, how may I act towards him so that all may yet turn up well!—Indeed, although the king knew everything, yet he addressed his wife in the presence of others in this way to proclaim his own innocence before others. His queen then answered him in the following words.—' "

SECTION CXCIII.

"'Bhishma said,—Then, O mighty-armed king, Cikhandin's mother represented unto her lord the truth about her daughter Cikhandini. And she said,—Childless, O great king, as I was, from fear of my co-wives, when Cikhandini, my daughter, was born, I represented unto you that it was a son! For thy love of me, thou also hadst corroborated it, and O bull among kings, thou hadst performed all the rites prescribed for a son in respect of this daughter of mine! Thou then didst marry her, O king, to the daughter of the king of the Daçārnas. I also approved of this act, remembering the words of the (great) god! Indeed, I did not prevent it, remembering the words of Civa,—*Born a daughter, she will become a son!* —Hearing all this, Drupada otherwise called Yajnasena, informed all his counsellors of these facts. And, O monarch, the king then took counsel with his ministers for the proper protection of his subjects (from the would-be invader). Although he had himself deceived the king of the Daçārnas, yet giving it out that the alliance he had made was proper, he began to settle his plans with undivided attention. King Drupada's city was, O Bhārata, naturally well-protected. Yet

at the advent of danger, O monarch, they began to protect it all the more carefully and adorn it (with defensive works.) The king, however, with his queen, was greatly afflicted, thinking of how a war might not take place with his brother. Reflecting on this, he began to pay his adorations to the gods. His respected wife, beholding him relying on the gods and paying his adorations to them, then addressed him, O king, and said,—Homage to the gods is productive of benefits! It is, therefore, approved by the righteous. What shall I say, again, of those that are sunk in an ocean of distress? Therefore, pay homage to those that are thy superiors, and let all the gods also be worshipped, making large presents the while (unto the Brāhmanas)! Let libations be poured on the fire for pacifying the ruler of the Daçārnas. O lord, think of the means by which, without a war, thou mayst be able to pacify thy brother! Through the grace of the gods all this will happen. For the preservation of this city, O thou of large eyes, thou hast taken counsel with thy ministers. Do all, O king, that those counsels seem to indicate, for reliance on the gods, when seconded by human exertion, always, O king, leadeth to success! If these two do not go hand-in-hand, success becometh unattainable. Therefore, with all thy advisers make such arrangements in thy city as are proper, and pay homage, O monarch, as thou pleasest, to the gods!—While husband and wife were conversing with each other thus, both filled with grief, their helpless daughter Cikhandini was filled with shame. She then reflected, saying,—It is for me that these two are plunged into grief!—Thinking so, she resolved upon putting an end to her own life. Having formed this determination, she left home, filled with heavy sorrow, and went into a dense and solitary forest that was the haunt, O king, of a very powerful *Yaksha* called Sthunākarna. From fear of that *Yaksha* man never went into that forest. And within it stood a mansion with high walls and a gate-way, plastered over with powdered earth, and rich with smoke bearing the fragrance of fried paddy. Entering that mansion, Cikhandini the daughter of Drupada, O king, began to reduce herself by foregoing all food for many days. Thereupon the *Yaksha* named

Sthuna, who was endued with kindness, showed himself unto her. And he enquired of her, saying,—For what object is this endeavour of thine? I will accomplish it, tell me without delay!—Thus asked, the maiden answered him, repeatedly saying,—Thou art unable to accomplish it!—The *Guhyaka*, however, rejoined, without a moment's delay, saying,—Accomplish it I will! I am a follower of the Lord of treasures. I can, O princess, grant boons! I will grant thee even that which cannot be given! Tell me what thou hast to say!—Thus assured, Cikhandini represented in detail everything that had happened, unto that chief of *Yakshas* called Sthuṇākarna. And she said,—My father, O *Yaksha*, will soon meet with destruction. The ruler of the Daçārnas marcheth against him in rage. That king cased in golden mail is endued with great might and great courage. Therefore, O *Yaksha*, save me, my mother, and my father! Indeed, thou hast already pledged thyself to relieve my distress! Through thy grace, O *Yaksha*, I would become a perfect man! A long as that king may not depart from my city, so long, O great *Yaksha*, show me grace, O *Guhyaka!*—' "

SECTION CXCIV.

" 'Bhishma said,—Hearing, O bull of Bharata's race, those words of Cikhandini, that *Yaksha*, afflicted by destiny, said, after reflecting in his mind, these words. Indeed, it was ordained to be so, and, O Kaurava, it was ordained for my grief! The *Yaksha* said,—Blessed lady, I will certainly do what thou wishest! Listen, however, to the condition I make. For a certain period I will give thee my manhood. Thou must, however, come back to me in due time. Pledge thyself to do so! Possessed of immense power, I am a ranger of the skies, wandering at my pleasure, and capable of accomplishing whatever I intend. Through my grace, save thy city and thy kinsmen wholly! I will bear thy womanhood, O princess! Pledge thy troth to me, I will do what is agreeable to thee!—Thus addressed, Cikhandini said unto him,—O holy one of excellent vows, I will give thee back thy manhood! O wanderer

of the night, bear thou my womanhood for a short time! After the ruler of the Daçārnas who is cased in golden mail will have departed (from my city) I will once more become a maiden and thou wilt become a man!—

"'Bhishma continued,—Having said this (unto each other), they both, O king, made a covenant, and imparted unto each other's body their sexes. And the *Yaksha* Sthuna, O Bhārata, became a female, while Cikhandini obtained the blazing form of the *Yaksha*. Then, O king, Cikhandi of Pānchāla's race, having obtained manhood, entered his city in great joy and approached his father. And he represented everything, that had happened, unto Drupada. And Drupada, hearing it all, became highly glad. And along with his wife the king recollected the words of Maheçwara. And he forthwith sent O king, a messenger unto the ruler of the Daçārnas, saying, —This my child *is* a male. Let it be believed by thee!— The king of the Daçārnakas meanwhile, filled with sorrow and grief, suddenly approached Drupada the ruler of the Pānchālas. And arrived at Kāmpilya, the Daçārna king despatched, after paying him proper honors, an envoy who was one the foremost of those conversant with the *Vedas*. And he addressed the envoy, saying,—Instructed by me, O messenger, say unto that worst of kings the ruler of the Pānchālas, these words, *viz*,—O thou of wicked understanding having selected my daughter as a wife for one who is thy daughter, thou shalt today, without doubt, behold the fruit of that act of deception.*—Thus addressed and despatched by him, O best of kings, the Brāhmana set out for Drupada's city as Daçārna's envoy. And having arrived at the city, the priest went into Drupada's presence. The king of the Pānchālas then, with Cikhandin, offered the envoy, O king, a cow and honey. The Brāhmana, however, without accepting that worship, said unto him these words that had been communicated through him by the brave ruler of the Daçārnas who was cased in golden mail. And he said,—O thou of vile behaviour, I have been deceived by thee through thy daught-

* *Avalepa* is arrogance; also, any fault or act of wickedness.—T.

er (as the means)! I will exterminate thee with thy counsellors and sons and kinsmen!—Having, in the midst of his counsellors, been made by that priest to hear those words fraught with censure and uttered by the ruler of the Daçārnas, king Drupada then, O chief of Bharata's race, assuming a mild behaviour from motives of friendship, said,—The reply to these words of my brother that thou hast said unto me, O Brāhmana, will be carried to that monarch by my envoy!—And king Drupada then sent unto the high-souled Hiranyavarman a Brāhmana learned in the *Vedas* as his envoy. And that envoy, going unto king Hiranyavarman the ruler of the Daçārnas, said unto him, O monarch, the words that Drupada had entrusted him with. And he said,—This my child is really a male. Let it be made clear by means of witnesses! Somebody has spoken falsely to thee. That should not be believed!—Then the king of the Daçārnas, having heard the words of Drupada, was filled with sorrow and despatched a number of young ladies of great beauty for ascertaining whether Cikhandin was a male or a female. Despatched by him, those ladies, having ascertained (the truth), joyfully told the king of the Daçārnas everything, *viz*, that Cikhandin, O chief of the Kurus, was a powerful person of the masculine sex. Hearing that testimony, the ruler of the Daçārnas was filled with great joy, and wending then unto his brother Drupada, passed a few days with him in gladness. And the king, rejoiced as he was, gave unto Cikhandin much wealth, many elephants and steeds and kine. And worshipped by Drupada (as long as he stayed,) the Daçārna king then departed, having rebuked his daughter. And after king Hiranyavarman the ruler of the Daçārnas had departed in joy and with his anger quelled, Cikhandin began to rejoice exceedingly. Meanwhile, sometime after (the exchange of sexes had taken place) Kuvera, who was always borne on the shoulders of human beings, in course of a journey (through the earth), came to the abode of Sthuna. Staying (in the welkin) above that mansion, the protector of all the treasures saw that the excellent abode of the *Yaksha* Sthuna was well adorned with beautiful garlands of flowers, and perfumed with fragrant

roots of grass and many sweet scents. And it was decked with canopies, and scented with incense. And it was also beautified with standards and banners. And it was filled with edibles and drink of every kind. And beholding that beautiful abode of the *Yaksha* decked all over, and filled also with garlands of jewels and gems and gold, and perfumed with the fragrance of diverse kinds of flowers, and well watered, and well swept, the lord of the *Yakshas* addressed the *Yakshas* that followed him, saying,—Ye that are endued with immeasurable prowess, this mansion of Sthuna is well-adorned! Why, however, doth not that wight of wicked understanding come to me? And since that wicked-souled one, knowing I am here, approacheth me not, therefore, some severe punishment should be inflicted on him! Even this is my wish! —Hearing these words of his, the *Yakshas* said,—O king, the royal Drupada had a daughter born unto him, of the name of Cikhandini! Unto her, for some reason, Sthuna hath given his own manhood, and having taken her womanhood upon him, he stayeth within his abode having become a woman! Bearing as he doth a feminine form, he doth not, therefore, approach thee in shame! It is for this reason, O king, that Sthuna cometh not to thee! Hearing all this, do what may be proper!—Let the car be stopped here! Let Sthuna be brought to me,—were the words that the lord of the *Yakshas* uttered, and he repeatedly said,—I will punish him! —Summoned then by the lord of the *Yakshas*, Sthuna bearing a feminine form came thither, O king, and stood before him in shame. Then, O thou of Kuru's race, the giver of wealth cursed him in anger, saying,—Ye *Guhyakas*, let the femininity of this sinful wretch remain as it is!—And the high-souled lord of the *Yakshas* also said,—Since humiliating all the *Yakshas* thou hast, O thou of sinful deeds, given away thy own sex to Cikhandini and taken from her, O thou of wicked understanding, her femininity,—since, O wicked wretch, thou hast done what hath never been done before by anybody,—therefore, from this day, thou shalt remain a woman and she shall remain a man!—At these words of his, all the *Yakshas* began to soften Vaiçravana for the sake of Sthunākarna,

repeatedly saying,—Set a limit to thy curse!—The high-souled lord of the *Yakshas* then said unto all those *Yakshas* that followed him, from desire of setting a limit to his curse, these words, *viz*,—After Cikhandin's death, ye *Yakshas*, this one will regain his own form! Therefore, let this high-souled *Yaksha* Sthuna be freed from his anxiety!—Having said this, the illustrious and divine king of the *Yakshas*, receiving due worship, departed with all his followers who were capable of traversing a great distance within the shortest space of time. And Sthuna, with that curse denounced on him, continued to live there. And when the time came, Cikhandin without losing a moment came unto that wanderer of the night. And approaching his presence he said,—I have come to thee, O holy one!—Sthuna then repeatedly said unto him,—I am pleased with thee!—Indeed, beholding that prince return to him without guile, Sthuna told Cikhandin everything that had happened. Indeed, the *Yaksha* said,—O son of a king, for thee I have been cursed by Vaiçravana. Go now, and live happily amongst men as thou choosest. Thy coming here and the arrival of Pulastya's son were, I think, both ordained from beforehand. All this was incapable of being prevented!—

"'Bhisma continued,—Thus addressed by the *Yaksha* Sthuna, Cikhandin, O Bhārata, came to his city, filled with great joy. And he worshipped with diverse scents and garlands of flowers and costly presents persons of the regenerate class and the deities and large trees and cross-ways. And Drupada the ruler of the Pānchālas, along with his son Cikhandin whose wishes had been crowned with success, and with also his kinsmen, became exceedingly glad. And the king then, O bull of Kuru's race, gave his son Cikhandin, who had been a woman, as a pupil, O monarch, to Drona. And prince Cikhandin obtained, along with yourselves, the whole science of arms with its four divisions. And (his brother) Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race also obtained the same. Indeed, all this was represented unto me, O sire, by the spies disguised as idiots and as persons without the senses of vision and hearing whom I had set upon Drupada. It is thus, O king, that that best of *Rathas*, Cikhandin the son of Drupada, having first been born

a female, subsequently became a person of the other sex. And it was the eldest daughter of the ruler of the Kāçis, celebrated by the name of Amvā, who was, O bull of Bharata's race, born in Drupada's line as Cikhandin. If he approacheth me bow in hand and desirous of fight, I will not look at him for even a moment, nor smite him, O thou of unfading glory! Even this is my vow, known over all the world, *viz*, that I will not, O son of Kuru's race, shoot weapons upon a woman, or one that was a woman before, or one bearing a feminine name, or one whose form resembleth a woman's. I will not, for this reason, slay Cikhandin. Even this, O sire, is the story that I have ascertained of Cikhandin's birth. I will not, therefore, slay him in battle even if he approacheth me weapon in hand.* If Bhishma slayeth a woman, the righteous will all speak ill of him. I will not, therefore, slay him even if I behold him waiting for battle !—'

"Sanjaya† continued,—'Hearing these words of Bhishma, king Duryodhana of Kuru's race, reflecting for a moment, thought that even that behaviour was proper for Bhishma.' "

SECTION CXCV.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the night passed away and morning came, thy sons once more, in the midst of all the troops, asked their grandsire, saying,—O son of Gangā, this army that is ready for fight, of Pāndu's son, that abounds with men, elephants, and steeds, that is crowded with *Mahārathas*, that is protected by these mighty bowmen endued with great strength, *viz*, Bhima and Arjuna and others headed by Dhrishtadyumna and all resembling the very Regents of the world, that is invincible and incapable of being withstood, that resembles the swollen sea,—this sea of warriors incapable of being agitated by the very gods in battle, in how many days, O son of Gangā, O thou of great effulgence, canst thou annihilate it, and in what time can that mighty bowman, our preceptor (Drona), in

---

* For the meaning of the word *átatāyin*, *vide* note *ante*.—T.

† Most texts have Vaiçampāyana for Sanjaya. I make the correctoin here for the reasons stated in the note *ante* p. 497.—T.

what time also the mighty Kripa, in what time Karna who taketh a pleasure in battle, and in what time that best of Brāhmanas, *viz*, the son of Drona, can each annihilate it? Ye that are in my army are all acquainted with celestial weapons! I desire to know this, for the curiosity I feel in my heart is great! O thou of mighty arms, it behoveth thee to say this to me!—

"'Bhishma said,—O foremost one of the Kurus, O lord of the earth, thou enquirest about the strength and weakness of the foe. This, indeed, is worthy of thee! Listen, O king, as I tell thee the utmost limit of my power in battle, or of the energy of my weapons, or of the might of my arms, O thou of mighty arms! As regards ordinary combatants, one should fight with them artlessly. As regards those that are possessed of powers of deception, one should fight with them aided by the ways of deception. Even this is what hath been laid down in respect of the duties of warriors. I can annihilate the Pāndava army, O blessed monarch, taking every morning ten thousand (ordinary) warriors and one thousand car-warriors as my share from day to day. Cased in mail and always exerting myself actively, I can, O Bhārata, annihilate this large force according to this arrangement as regards both number and time. If, however, stationed in battle, I shoot my great weapons that slay hundreds and thousands at a time, then I can, O Bhārata, finish the slaughter in a month.—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing these words of Bhishma, king Duryodhana then asked Drona, O monarch, that foremost one of Angirā's race, saying,—O preceptor, in what time canst thou annihilate the troops of Pāndu's son?—Thus addressed by him, Drona said smilingly,—I am old, O mighty-armed one! My energy and activity have both become weak. With the fire of my weapons I can consume the army of the Pāndavas, like Cāntanu's son Bhishma, in, I think, a month's time. Even this is the limit of my power, even this is the limit of my strength.—Then Caradwat's son Kripa said that he could annihilate the foe in two month's time. Drona's son (Açwatthāman) pledged himself to annihilate the Pāndava army in ten nights. Karna, however, acquainted as he was with weapons

of high efficacy, pledged himself to achieve that feat in five nights. Hearing the words of the *Suta's* son, the son of the ocean-going (Gangā) laughed aloud and said,—As long, O son of Rādhā, as thou encounterest not in battle Pārtha with his arrows, conch, and bow, and rushing to the combat on his car with Vāsudeva in his company, so long mayst thou think so! Why, thou art capable of saying anything, even what thou pleasest!—' "

Section CXCVI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Hearing these words (of the leaders of the Kuru army), Kunti's son Yudhishthira, summoning all his brothers, said unto them these words in private.

"Yudhishthira said,—'The spies I had placed in the army of Dhritarāshtra's son, brought me this news in the morning. Duryodhana had asked Gangā's son of great vows, saying,—O lord, in what time canst thou annihilate the troops of Pāndu's sons?—Indeed, the wicked Duryodhana was answered by him in these words, *viz,—In a month!*—Drona also declared that he can do the same feat in about the same time. Gautama (Kripa) indicated twice that period, as hath been heard by us. Drona's son acquainted with weapons of high efficacy declared the period (in his case) to be ten nights. Karna also, acquainted with weapons of high efficacy, asked in the midst of the Kurus, declared that he can complete the slaughter in five days. Therefore, I also, O Arjuna, am desirious of hearing thy words. In what time canst thou, O Fālguna, exterminate the foe?—Thus addressed by the king, Dhananjaya of curly hair, casting a look upon Vāsudeva, said these words:—All these (Bhishma and others) are high-souled (warriors), accomplished in arms, and acquainted with all modes of warfare. Without doubt, O king, they can exterminate (our forces) even thus! Let thy heart's anguish, however, be dispelled. I tell thee truly that with Vāsudeva as my ally I can, on a single car, exterminate the three worlds with even the immortals, indeed, all mobile creatures that were, are, or will be, in the twinkling of the eye. This is what I

think. That terrible and mighty weapon which the Lord of all creatures (Mahādeva) gave me on the occasion of my hand-to-hand encounter with (him in the guise of) a hunter, still existeth with me.* Indeed, O tiger among men, that weapon which the Lord of all creatures useth at the end of the *Yuga* for destroying created things, existeth in me. Gangā's son knoweth not that weapon; nor Drona; nor Gautama (Kripa); nor Drona's son, O king! How, therefore, can the *Suta's* son know it? It is not, however, proper to slay ordinary men in battle by means of celestial weapons. We shall (on the other hand) vanquish our foes in fair fight. Then these tigers among men, O king, are thy allies! All of them are well-versed in celestial weapons, and all of them are eager for battle. All of them, after their initiation in the *Vedas*, have undergone the final bath in sacrifices.† All of them are unvanquished. They are competent, O son of Pāndu, to slay in battle the army of even the celestials. Thou hast for thy allies Cikhadin, and Yuyudhāna, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race; and Bhimasena, and these twins, and Yudhāmanyu, and Uttamaujas, and Virāta and Drupada who are equal in battle unto Bhishma and Drona; and the mighty-armed Cankha, and Hidimvā's son of great might; and this latter's son Anjanparvan endued with great strength and prowess; and Cini's descendant of mighty arms and well-versed in battle, and the mighty Abhimanyu, and the five sons of Draupadi! Thou art thyself again competent to exterminate the three worlds! O thou that art endued with effulgence equal unto that of Cakra himself, I know it, O Kaurava, for it is manifest,

---

* Or, '*in* me' if the Bombay edition which has *mayi* for *mama* before *Vartate* be followed.—T.

† *Vedāntāvabhritasnātās.* *Avabhrita* is the final bath in a sacrifice. It implies the conclusion of the ceremony. Sacrifices, again, imply marriage, for none but married men are competent to perform them. What Arjuna says, therefore, is that having read the *Vedas*, they have married, got children, performed sacrifices (for the attainment of heaven), and done everything that as kings and men they should do. They are, therefore, fully prepared to lay down their lives.—T.

that that man upon whom thou mayst cast thy eyes in anger is sure to be annihilated !—' "

SECTION CXCVII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Next morning, under a cloudless sky, all the kings, urged by Dhritarāshtra's son Duryodhana, set out against the Pāndavas. And all of them had purified themselves by baths, were decked in garlands, and attired in white robes. And having poured libations on the fire and caused Brāhmanas to utter benedictions on them, they took up their weapons and raised their (respective) standards. And all of them were conversant with the *Vedas*, and endued with great bravery, and had practised excellent vows. And all of them were grantors of (other people's) wishes, and all were skilled in battle. Endued with great strength, they set out, reposing confidence on one another, and with singleness of purpose desiring to win in battle the highest regions.* And first Vinda and Anuvinda both of Avanti, and the Kekayas, and the Vālhikas, all set out with Bharadwāja's son at their head. Then came Açwatthāman, and Cāntanu's son (Bhishma), and Jayadratha of the country of the Sindhus, and the kings of the southern and the western countries and the hilly regions, and Cakuni the ruler of the Gāndhāras, and all the chiefs of the eastern and the northern regions, and the *Çakas*, the *Kirātas*, the *Yavanas*, the *Çivis*, and the *Vaçātis* with their *Mahārathas* at the heads of their respective divisions. All these great car-warriors marched in the second division. Then came Kritavarman at the head of his troops, and that mighty car-warrior, *viz*, the ruler of the Trigartas, and king Duryodhana surrounded by his brothers, and Cala, and Bhuriçravas, and Calya, and Vrihadratha the ruler of the Koçalas. These all marched in the rear, with Dhritarāshtra's sons at

---

* *Parān-lokān.* A Kshatriya, by fighting fairly, wins the highest regions of bliss hereafter. The compound may mean also "hostile warriors." With the Burdwan Pundits, however, I prefer to take it in the sense of "the highest regions."—T.

their head. And all these Dhārtarāshtras endued with great might, uniting together in proper order, and all clad in mail, took up their position at the other end of Kurukshetra. And, O Bhārata, Duryodhana caused his encampment to be so adorned as to make it look like a second Hastināpura. Indeed, O king, even those that were clever among the citizens of Hastināpura could not distinguish their city from the encampment. And the Kuru king caused inaccessible pavilions, similar to his own, to be erected by hundreds and thousands for the (other) kings (in his army). And those tents, O king, for the accomodation of the troops were well-planted on an area measuring full five *Yojanas* of that field of battle. And into those tents by thousands that were full of provisions, the rulers of the earth entered, each according to his courage and according to the strength he possessed. And king Duryodhana ordered excellent provisions to be supplied for all those high-souled kings with their troops consisting of infantry, elephants, and horse, and with all their followers. And as regards all those that subsisted upon mechanical arts and all the bards, singers, and panegyrists devoted to his cause, and vendors and traders, and prostitutes, and spies, and persons who had come to witness the battle, the Kuru king made due provision for all of them.*"

SECTION CXCVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Like Duryodhana, king Yudhishthira also, the son of Kunti and Dharma, ordered out, O Bhārata, his heroic warriors headed by Dhrishtadyumna, Indeed, he ordered that slayer of foes and commander of forces, that leader, steady in prowess, of the Chedis, the Kāçis, and the Kārushas, *viz*, Dhrishtaketu, as also Virāta, and Drupada, and Yuyudhāna, and Cikhandin, and those two mighty bowmen, those two princes of Pānchāla, *viz*, Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas, to set out. Those brave warriors, cased in handsome coats of mail and decked with golden ear-rings,

---

* Literally, "*cast his eyes daily* on all.—T.

blazed forth like fires on the sacrificial altar when fed with clarified butter. Indeed, those mighty bowmen looked resplendant like the planets in the firmament. Then that bull among men, king Yudhishthira, having duly honored all his combatants, ordered them out on the march. And king Yudhishthira ordered excellent provisions of food for those high-souled kings with their troops consisting of infantry, and elephants, and horse, and with all their followers, as also for all those that subsisted on mechanical arts. And the son of Pāndu first ordered Abhimanyu, and Vrihanta, and the five sons of Draupadi, to march with Dhrishtadyumna at their head. And he then despatched Bhima, and Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu, in the second division of his forces. And the din made by the men moving and running about for harnessing the steeds and elephants and loading the cars with implements of battle, and the shouts of the cheerful combatants, seemed to touch the very heavens.* And last of all, the king marched himself, accompanied by Virāta and Drupada and the other monarchs (on his side). And that army of fierce bowmen commanded by Dhrishtadyumna, hitherto stationed in one place, but now extended into columns† for marching, looked like the (impetuous) current of *Gangā*. Then the intelligent Yudhishthira, depending on his wisdom, disposed his divisions in a different order, confounding the sons of Dhritarāshtra. And the son of Pāndu ordered that those mighty bowmen, the (five) sons of Draupadi, and Abhimanyu, and Nakula, and Sanadeva, and all the Prabhadrakas, and ten thousand horse, and two thousand elephants, and ten thousand foot-soldiers, and five hundred cars, constituting the first irresistible division of his army, should be placed under the command of Bhimasena. And he placed in the middle division of his army Virāta, and Jayatsena, and those two mighty car-warriors, *viz*, Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas the two high-souled princes of Pānchāla, both endued with great

---

* *Bhāndam* is explained by Nilkantha to mean the trappings of horses and elephants and other implements of battle placed on cars.—T.

† *Ayani* is explained by Nilkantha as *ayanti pracharantasyām*.—T.

prowess and both armed with mace and bow. And in this middle division marched Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya. There were (placed) combatants highly accomplished in arms and burning with anger. Amongst them were steeds ridden by brave warriors, and five thousand elephants, and crowds of cars all around. And foot-soldiers in thousands, that were all brave and armed with bows, swords, and maces, marched behind them as thousands marched before them. And in that part of that sea of troops, where Yudhishthira himself was, there were stationed numerous lords of earth. And there also were thousands of elephants, and steeds by ten thousands, and cars and foot-soldiers also by thousands. And there also marched, O bull among kings, Chekitāna with his own large force, and king Dhrishtaketu the leader of the Chedis. And there also was that mighty bowman, Sātyaki, the foremost car-warrior of the Vrishnis, that mighty combatant, surrounded by hundreds and thousands of cars and leading (them to battle)! And those bulls among men, Kshatrahan and Kshatradeva, mounted on their cars, marched behind, protecting the rear. And there (in the rear) were the waggons, stalls, uniforms, vehicles, and draft animals. There also were thousands of elephants and horses by tens of thousands. And taking all the invalids and women, and all that were emaciated and weak, and all the animals carrying his treasure, and all his granaries, with the aid of his elephant-divisions, Yudhishthira marched slowly. And he was followed by Sauchitti, who steadily adhered to truth and was invicible in battle, and Crenimat, and Vasudāna, and Vibhu the son of the ruler of the Kāçis, with twenty thousand cars, a hundred million steeds of high mettle, each bearing scores of bells on its limbs, and twenty thousand smiting elephants with tusks as long as plough-shafts, all of good breed and rent temples and all resembling moving masses of clouds. Indeed, these usually walked behind those monarchs. Besides these, O Bhārata, the elephants that Yudhishthira had in his seven *Akshauhinis*, numbering seventy thousand, with juice trickling down their trunks and from their mouths, and resembling (on that account) showering clouds, also followed the king like moving hills.

"Thus was arrayed that terrible force of the intelligent son of Kunti. And relying upon that force he battled with Suyodhana the son of Dhritarāshtra. Besides those already named, other men by hundreds and thousands and tens of thousands, in divisions numbering by thousands, followed (the Pāndava army), roaring loudly. And the warriors by thousands and tens of thousands, filled with joy, beat and blew their drums by thousands and conchs by tens of thousands!"

FINIS UDYOGA PARVA.

AN APPEAL TO INDIA

ON

THE RESCUE OF ANCIENT INDIAN LITERATURE

&

THE DIFFUSION OF OLD ARYAN THOUGHT,

BEING

A SHORT HISTORY OF THE DATAVYA BHARATA KARYALAYA, ITS ORIGIN AND OPERATIONS.

Animated from my earliest days with the desire of rendering the great religious works of India easily accessible to my countrymen, in the hope of counteracting the growing scepticism and irreligion of the age, I cursed the fate that condemned me to inactivity and silence. My resources were quite disproportionate to the grandeur of my ambition. But I never lost heart. The occupation which offered me the most chance was that of a Bookseller and general Agent, and to it I betook myself. After some years of unremitting toil, I achieved a success in my business which, in the face of the keen competition of the times, I considered fair enough. I secured a competence upon which, had I liked, I might have retired. But instead of so doing, I resolved to carry out, to the extent of my means, the scheme I had always cherished. I soon commenced the publication of a version in Bengali prose of the *Mahābhārata*, the great Sanskrit epic of Vyāsa, a perfect storehouse of religious and moral instruction, imparted not by dry precepts only, but enforced by the history of living men, princes and warriors, sages and hermits, in fact, of every rank and grade of humanity. My edition consisted of 3,000 copies, and it took me a little more than seven years to complete it. The price I fixed for a copy was Rs. 42, although a little while before, certain dishonest recipients of Babu Kali Prasanna Singha's edition of the same work (Babu Kali Prasanna Singha having distributed his edition *gratis*) had sold their copies for Rs. 60 to Rs. 70 per copy in open market.

A little after my edition had been brought out, I was afflicted with a domestic calamity with the details of which I need not acquaint the reader. Suffice it to say that for some-

time I was like one demented. On the advice of friends and physicians I tried the effect of a temporary separation from old sights and scenes. But mine was no disorder of the nerves that a change of climate or scene could do me any good. Mine was a 'mind diseased,' 'a rooted sorrow to be plucked from the memory,' and I stood in need of 'some sweet oblivious antidote to cleanse the stuffed bosom of that perilous stuff which weighs upon the heart.' My purposeless wanderings were of no avail. At length, I mustered determination enough to forget my sorrows. The desire that I had all along cherished of doing something in my humble way towards counteracting the progress of irreligion by a circulation, amongst my countrymen, of the great religious works of ancient India, returned to me with renewed vigor. During my rovings about the country in quest of oblivion of sorrow, I met with various persons in humble stations in life to whom I was well known by my previous publication of the *Mahābhārata*, many of whom represented to me that my edition of the *Mahābhārata*, though cheap in all conscience, was still out of the reach of persons of their class. They regretted that no cheaper edition could be brought out to satisfy their thirst for the wisdom of their ancestors. Pondering upon all these circumstances, I retraced my way homewards. Coming back to my office I took stock and found that after the sales already effected, about one thousand copies, more or less complete, of the *Mahābhārata* I had brought out, remained in my hands unsold. I had no body to provide for in the word. My only daughter had been disposed of in marriage and she was happy with her husband who possessed a decent independence. By that time I had also made, from the profits of my concern, a sum sufficient for a humble competence for the rest of my days. Now was the time, I thought, for making an attempt towards the accomplishment of my desire to serve the world. The thousand copies of the *Mahābhārata* that I had in my hands I began to distribute *gratis* amongst my countrymen.

My ill-digested project, however, soon became a failure, I was not very discriminate in the selection of donees. My simplicity was taken advantage of by a number of persons

who represented themselves as *bona fide* poor readers who would treasure up the work, but whom I should not have trusted. These, obtaining copies from me free of charge, offered them, in their turn, for sale in the market, and obtained good prices. Experience made me wise, but the wisdom came too late. The copies I had in my hands had all been exhausted.

It was at this time that I began to mature some plan whereby the desire I cherished could be carried out, without designing persons being able to take any undue advantage. After much deliberation, I succeeded in forming a plan which when submitted to my friends was fully approved of by them. The details of this plan will appear from the sequel.

My plan being matured, I resolved to bring out a second edition of the *Mahābhārata*, wholly intended for gratuitous distribution, subject, of course, to proper restrictions. I selected the *Mahābhārata* in particular, for more reasons than one. The editions of the *Mahābhārata* brought out under the auspices of the Maharaja of Burdwan and the late Babu Kali Prasanna Singha, and distributed *gratis*, had comprised a few thousand copies utterly inadequate to satisfy the public demand. The manner also in which these copies had been distributed precluded the possibility of the great body of readers in the country being benefited to any considerable extent. It would seem, besides, that such gratuitous distribution by the Maharaja of Burdwan and Babu Kali Prasanna Singha, by its very insufficiency, had tended more to tantalize the public than allay its thirst for the ancient literature of India.

In view, therefore, of this thirst for the ancient literature of our Fatherland,—a thirst that could not but inspire feelings of pride in every patriotic bosom—feelings also that were particularly gratifying to me on account of the anxiety I felt at the growing irreligiousness of a portion of my countrymen,—I resolved to establish a permanent institution for the gratuitous distribution of the great Sanskrit works of ancient India. In this connection, as offering a ground of utility that would recommend itself more generally, I may quote Professor Max Muller. "Printing," says he, "is now the only means of saving your Sanskrit literature from inevitable des-

truction. Many books which existed one or two centuries ago, are now lost, and so it will be with the rest, unless you establish native printing presses, and print your old texts." The fruit, then, of my resolution has been the *Dātavya Bhārata Kāryālaya.* I felt, however, from the beginning that such an institution, to be successful, would require large funds. The sum I could devote to the purpose would be quite inadequate. But I was persuaded that of all countries in the world, India is pre-eminently the land of charity. The modes in which her charity exhibits itself might not be in accordance with the dictates of the political economy and moral philosophy now in vogue in the West. But of the measure of that charity and its disinterested character, there could be no question. I was persuaded that an appeal to my countrymen giving away their thousands for the accomplishment of even doubtful objects could not fail. Such an appeal was made, with what success is already before the public. For the success achieved small credit is due to me ; the credit belongs almost entirely to my countrymen.

The *Dātavya Bhārata Kāryālaya* has, within the course of the last eight years, printed and gratuitously distributed two editions of the *Mahābhārata* in Bengalee translation, each edition comprising nearly 3,000 copies. The fourth edition of the *Mahābhārata* (the third of the series for gratuitous distribution) has been commenced and will take some time before it is completed. One edition of the *Harivānça* comprising 3,000 copies, had been exhausted, The *Rāmāyana* also that was taken in hand has been completed, the text of Valmiki being published with a translation. Roughly estimated, the *Bhārata Kāryālaya* has distributed up to date nearly twelve thousand copies of the *Rāmāyana,* the *Mahābhārata,* and the *Harivança* taken together, and that number would swell to Eighteen thousand, when the fourth edition of the *Mahābhārata* will be complete. A single copy of the *Mahābhārata* consists of about 1,033 formes, octavo, demy ; a single copy of the *Harivança,* 112 formes, and a single copy of the *Rāmāyana,* 578 formes. The arithmetical result, therefore, of the operations of the *Bhārata Kāryālaya* has been

that 1,44,69,000 separate printed formes have been already gratuitously distributed and are in course of distribution.

Leaving aside the arithmetical results of the *Kāryālaya's* operations, it might fairly be presumed that the genuine demand for 18,000 copies of the sacred books of India represents a degree of interest taken by the people in the history of their past that is certainly not discouraging to patriotic hearts. As far as I am concerned, I would consider myself amply repaid if my exertions have contributed in the least towards withdrawing any portion of my countrymen and country-women from a perusal of the sensational literature of the present day, in which, under the pretence of improvement, the plots and situations of fifth-rate novels are introduced, vitiating the manly Aryan taste, and leaving no substantial instruction behind. If the publications of the *Bhārata Kāryālaya* have succeeded in withdrawing to some extent readers of this class of literature from the unhealthy excitement for which alone it is sought, and turning them to contemplate the purity of Aryan society, the immutable truths of Aryan philosophy, the chivalry of Aryan princes and warriors, the masculine morality that guides the conduct of men even in most trying situations, the bright examples of loyalty, constancy, and love, which the Aryan poet describes with a swelling heart, the end of those publications has at least been partially achieved.

Several persons of note and personages even in high rank, sympathising with the objects of the *Dātavya Bhārata Kāryālaya*, had from time to time recommended to me that the *Mahābhārata*, if translated into English, would, to quote the sentiments of the Right Honorable the Marquis of Hartington, as conveyed to me in Dr. R. Rost's letter of the 6th of October, 1882, and published at the time in nearly all the Indian newspapers, "supply a want long felt and be a real boon to the ever-increasing band of students of Indian history and archæology." These recommendations exactly falling in with the views entertained by me for some time past, were taken into earnest consideration. The ancient literature of India is our glorious inheritance. In his letter to me, Prof.

Max Muller remarks, "I expect the time will come when every educated native will be as proud of his *Mahābhārata* and *Rāmāyana* as Germans are of their *Nibelunge*, and Greeks. even modern Greeks, of their Homer." The vanity is excusable, if it were only vanity, that persuades a Hindu to seek the means of placing this splendid inheritance of his before the eyes of foreign nations, foreigners particularly who from their culture are capable of appreciating and understanding it. But such an endeavour, if successful, might not satisfy vanity alone. It is really fraught with results of the utmost importance to the cause of historical and philological research, in fact, to the cause of Knowledge in all her principal departments.

With regard to the *Mahābhārata* in particular, on which, as remarked by Oriental scholars, Aryan poets and prose writers of succeeding ages have drawn as on a national bank of unlimited resources, I was fully persuaded that the usefulness of such a translation and its gratuitous distribution in India and Europe and America would recommend itself to all right-thinking men without the need of any eloquent elaboration. I proposed, therefore, to publish an English translation of the *Mahābhārata* in monthly parts of 10 formes each, octavo, demy. Twenty-three parts have already been issued agreeably to this plan.

The present edition, it was originally intended, should consist of 1250* copies, 250 copies being intended for distribution in India, free of all charges, among the gentry, the aristocracy, and reigning chiefs, 300 among Indian officials of the higher ranks, 250 for distribution out of India, chiefly among the *savants* of Europe and America; 200 copies being reserved (as experience has taught me) for making up losses caused to recipients by negligence and in transit; the remaining 250

* This was the original plan, before the first fasciculus was issued. This number has, however, been since increased at the suggestion of R. C. Dutt, Esq, C. S., and the Editor of *Native Opinion*, Bombay, as also of other gentlemen who take a lively interest in the *Kāryālaya*. The fact is, the *Kāryālaya* is now issuing nearly 3,500 copies. The number of copies, therefore, obtainable at Rs. 12 or Rs 25, is much larger than originally intended.

copies being charged for at Rs. 50 and Rs. 65 per copy, inclusive of postal cost, Rs. 50 being payable by persons in India and Rs. 65 by those in Europe and America. Any person desirous of taking a copy, whose name may not be entered in the free list, may, if he likes, have his name registered in the list of those to whom the aforesaid 250 copies are to be supplied for Rs. 50 or Rs. 65 per copy. In cases, however, of sheer inability on the part of these, copies may even be supplied as long as available, at Rs. 12 or Rs. 25, according as the address is Indian or foreign. It is needless, however, to say that this last class of recipients must neccessarily be limited.

The time has now come for me to make a vigorous effort for funds. I cannot say that I have been disappointed in my expectations as regards the liberality of my countrymen. Although the measure of the liberality that has already been accorded to me in the matter of this the latest undertaking of the *Bhārata Kāryālaya* has undoubtedly been smaller than what had been accorded to the labors of the institution in the purely Sanskrit and vernacular departments, yet, all things considered, I cannot find fault with India and the Indians. The different Provincial administrations of India including the Secretary of State have already granted to me Rs. 16,500, and the princes and chiefs of the country, besides what they have already contributed, have promised to help me to some extent more. But all the help I have derived and all those promises if fulfilled to the letter, will not enable me to complete the English translation of the *Mahābhārata*.

Nor is the completion of the English translation of the *Mahābhārata* the only aim I have in view. To ensure permanency to the *Bhārata Kāryālaya*, so that it may be thoroughly independent of the health and life of one individual, is another aim I have in view. In order that the Society, therefore, founded by me, may continue its operations without check after I am gone and gathered to my ancestors, it is necessary to collect funds. The Biblical Societies of England are maintained from generation to generation. Liberality in these days is not limited by narrow considerations of race

and religion. India, like the rest of the world, has advanced in catholicity. Laborers in useful causes have but to convince Hindu or Mahomedan, Jaina or Sikh, Bengalee or Punjabi, Madrassi or Bombayite, of the usefulness of their undertakings. If they succeed in doing this, their projects have little fear of falling through, for want of support.

Regarding the labors of the *Bhārata Kāryālaya*, it is not for me to speak. The work performed by the Society is before the world. The press of every civilised country has reviewed it and has spoken approvingly of its extent and value. I now appeal to all India—to the appreciative portion of my country—for help in placing the *Kāryālaya* on a permanent footing. Every one amongst us can aid a useful project according to the limits of his resources and in the way best suited to him. If a prince or nobleman or a man of means, with his purse according to its length; if a peasant, with his prayers. The man of ordinary means, in whatever occupation, has it in command to assist schemes of usefulness with sympathy and bringing them to the notice of friends. Who is there that cannot, if he chooses, further the progress of humanity as typified by institutions like the *Bhārata Kāryālaya*? The poet has said that even the weakest and thinnest fibres, gathered together, may bind the infuriate elephant, and that minute rain-drops, by force of numbers, are seen to fill the largest lakes. It has been a principle with our institution never to refuse the smallest contribution. The practice may not accord with dignity—with dignity as understood by thoughtless vanity. I have, however, with contributions thus procured and thus accepted, done almost the whole of what I have already done. The result of the *Kāryālaya's* later labors represents the power of the smallest contributions pouring freely from all sides.

367, Upper Chitpore Road,
Calcutta.

PROTAP CHANDRA ROY,
Secretary,
Dātavya Bhārata Kāryālaya.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

LIBRARY OF PRINCETON
JUN 28 1918
THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY

Published and distributed, *chiefly gratis*,

BY

PROTĀP CHANDRA ROY.

BHISHMA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHĀRATA PRESS.

No. 1, Raja Gooroo Dass' Street,

Beadon Square,

1887.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

NOTICE.

Having completed the *Udyoga Parva* I enter the *Bhishma.* The preparations being completed, the battle must begin. But how dangerous is the prospect ahead ? How many of those that were counted on the eve of the terrible conflict lived to see the overthrow of the great Kuru captain ? To a *Kshatriya* warrior, however, the fiercest incidents of battle, instead of being appalling, served only as tests of bravery that opened Heaven's gates to him. It was this belief that supported the most insignificant of combatants fighting on foot when they rushed against Bhishma, presenting their breasts to the celestial weapons shot by him, like insects rushing on a blazing fire. I am not a Kshatriya. The prospect of battle, therefore, cannot be unappalling or welcome to me. On the other hand, I frankly own that it *is* appalling. If I receive support, that support may encourage me. I am no Garuda that I would spurn the strength of numbers when battling against difficulties. I am no Arjuna conscious of superhuman energy and aided by Kecava himself so that I may encounter any odds. To me, therefore, the support of my fellow men is a *sini qua non.* Without it, it is impossible for me to proceed a single step. Without it I cannot hope to cross the sea of battle. For that support, therefore, of my countrymen, and, as literature is a cosmopolitan concern, to all who have an interest in seeing me proceed, I humbly and respectfully appeal.

Figure apart, further pecuniary support is necessary to continue the work to completion. With the 32nd fasciculus of the translation, acting upon a suggestion of the *Pioneer* newspaper I circulated a statement of my receipts and disbursements. The press of both India and foreign countries has spoken on that statement. I have nothing further to add on that head.

Regarding the literary management of the translation I would point out that in deference to a suggestion received from many quarters, particularly America and Germany, I have caused the number of each *Sloka* to be indicated in the English version. This is not so easy as at first sight it may appear. No two printed editions of the original agree in

numbering the *sloka* equally. This is due to one edition including *sloka* that are left out in another. Then again the rule is not followed by the Editors of these texts of uniformly including two lines in a *sloka*. Sometimes a *sloka*, instead of being a couplet, is numbered as a triplet. No definite rule, however, is observed in respect of this expansion of a *sloka*. Sometimes, if the sense is not complete in less than three lines, the *sloka* is regarded as a triplet. But the practice is not uniform, for in every printed edition *slokas* have been numbered whose lines nevertheless run into one another. In numbering the *slokas* in the translation no particular edition has been followed. Notwithstanding all this, it is hoped that the numbers, as given, will help students of Sanskrit in comparing the translation with the original with greater facility.

Calcutta,
No. 1, Rājá Gooroo Dass' Street.

PROTAP CHANDRA ROY.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

BHISHMA PARVA.

Jambukhanda-nirmāna Parva.

	PAGE.
Janamejaya enquires how the Kurus and the Pāndavas fought	1
Vaiçampāyana begins his description of the battle ...	ib
Yudhishthira fixes watch-words and badges for distinguishing his men from those of the foe ...	2
The joy of the Pānchālas on beholding Duryodhana	ib
Krishna and Arjuna blow their conchs	ib
The fear of the Kurus on hearing that blare ...	ib
Diverse evil omens beheld in Kurukshetra ...	ib
Covenants made by the Kurus and the Pāndavas regarding individual encounters	3
Vyāsa visits Dhritarāshtra and offers to grant him (spiritual) vision for witnessing the battle ...	4
Dhritarāshtra declines to accept the *Rishi's* boon ...	ib
The *Rishi* grants to Sanjaya the boon of spiritual perception as regards every incident of the battle, in order that he may narrate everything to Dhritarāshtra ...	ib
The *Rishi* apprises Dhritarāshtra of the omens occurring on every side indicative of a great slaughter ...	5
Vyāsa's appeal to Dhritarāshtra for peace ...	12
Dhritarāshtra evades the appeal by urging the disobedience of his sons	13
Dhritarāshtra enquires of Vyāsa after the omens that indicate victory	ib
Vyāsa's answer	ib
Negotiation better than battle	15
Vyāsa's departure	ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires of Sanjaya after the attributes of Earth	ib

PAGE.

Sanjaya begins his discourse on the merits of earth ... 15
The divese classes of creatures inhabiting the Earth ib
The signification of the word *Gāyatri* 17
Dhritarāshtra enquires after the names of the rivers, mountains, and provinces of the earth, and their dimensions ... ... ib
Sanjaya begins his discourse ... ... ib
The five elements and their attributes ... ... ib
Earth the foremost of these elements ... ... ib
The island of Sudarçana 18
Sanjaya's discourse on the *Kula* mountains and the *Varshas* 19
Description of the regions to the north and the east of Meru 24
The names of all *Varshas* and all the mountains ... 27
Dhritarāshtra enquires particularly about the *Varsha* called after Bharata 29
Sanjaya begins his discription of *Bhāratavarsha* ... ib
The rivers of *Bhāratavarsha*... 30
The provinces of ditto 31
The causes of earth-hunger 33
The *Yugas* and their respective attributes ... 34

Bhumi Parva.

Description of Cākadwipa 36
Sanjaya's description of the north 37
Ditto's ditto of *Rāhu*, the Moon, and the Sun ... 42

Bhagavat-Gita Parva.

Sanjaya informs Dhritarāshtra of Bhishma's fall in battle 44
Dhritarāshtra's lament and enquiries 45
Sanjaya begins his discourse on the battle ... 52
Duryodhana's instructions to Dusçāsana about the protection of Bhishma from Cikhandin ... ... ib
The two hosts arrayed at sunrise 53
A general description of the Kuru array 54
Bhishma's brief address to the Kuru army ... 56

PAGE.
Descriptions of particular warriors of the Kuru army 57
Brief enumeration of the component parts of the Kuru army and its numerical strength 60
Yudhishthira's address to Arjuna for disposing the Pāndava army in the array called *Suchimukha* ... 61
The disposition of the Pāndava forces 62
Diverse omens in the sky and on the earth when the two armies stood facing each other 64
The disposition of forces in the two armies 65
Yudhishthira's sorrowful address to Arjuna ... 67
Arjuna comforts Yudhishthira with assurances of victory ib
The disposition of forces in the Pāndava army ... 68
Arjuna's hymn, at Krishna's instance, to Durgā ... 71
Durgā appears to Arjuna and gives him assurances of victory 72
The merits of the hymn uttered by Arjuna ... 73
Beholding the Pāndava array, Duryodhana approaches Drona and addresses him comparing the Pāndava heroes with those of his own army 74
Bhishma blows his conch, gladdening Duryodhana ... 75
The Pāndavas blow their respective conchs and inspire the Dhārtarāshtras with fear ... ... ib
Arjuna asks Krishna to place his car between the two armies so that he may see who are assembled to fight 76
Beholding relatives of all grades, &c., Arjuna is touched with compassion ... ... ib
Arjuna's despondency and refusal to fight ... ib
Krishna's appeal to Arjuna for shaking off his despondency 78
Arjuna repeats his arguments against the battle ... ib
His refusal to fight 79
Krishna declares to Arjuna the nature and the attributes of the soul ... ... ib
The folly of grieving for the dead 81
Arjuna is exhorted to observe the duties of his Order by fighting fairly, the alternatives being heaven or sovereignty on earth ... ... ib

PAGE.

Arjuna is exhorted to cast off the bonds of Work and concern himself with Work for Work's sake and not for the sake of its fruit 83
Krishna's discourse on Contemplation 84
Krishna reconciles Devotion with Work 86
On Abandonment of actions and Application to actions 95
The means of rising to Devotion 98
The nature of *Brahman* 103
On *Rāja yoga* 108
The divine perfections of Krishna 113
Krishna discloses to Arjuna his Supreme sovereign form 116
Arjuna's hymns to Krishna 117
Of the two kinds of worshippers 121
The supreme object of knowledge 124
On Goodness, Passion, and Darkness 127
On the symbolical *Açwattha* 129
Of godlike and demoniac natures and births ... 132
On the three-fold nature of Faith 134
On Renunciation and Abandonment 136
Arjuna's delusion is destroyed 143
Arjuna once more takes up *Gāndiva* ... ... ib

Bhishma-vadha Parva.

On the eve of battle Yudhishthira proceeds towards the Kuru army, putting off his armour ... 144
Yudhishthira is questioned by his brothers about the reason of his strange conduct ... ... ib
His silence ... ... ib
Krishna enlightens Yudhishthira's brothers ... ib
Yudhishthira meets with Bhishma and solicits his permission to fight 145
Bhishma grants Yudhishthira the permision he solicits 146
Yudhishthira enquires of Bhishma about the means of Bhishma's defeat and death ... ... ib
Bhishma asks Yudhishthira to come to him once again ib
Yudhishthira repairs to Drona 147
Drona promises to pray for Yudhishthira's victory ... ib

PAGE.

Drona tells Yudhishthira the means by which his own death may be compassed 148
Yudhishthira repairs to Kripa ... ... ib
Kripa promises to pray for Yudhishthira's victory ... ib
Yudhishthira repairs to Calya ... ... ib
Calya promises to weaken Karna during the latter's encounter with Arjuna 150
Krishna's appeal to Karna to fight on the Pāndava side during Bhishma's life... ... ... ib
Karna's refusal ... ... ib
Yuyutsu comes over to the side of the Pāndavas ... 151
The Kuru warriors praise the Pāndavas for the nobility of their behaviour ... ... ib
The first day's encounter 152
The carnage of battle 161
Abhimanyu's encounter with Bhishma 165
Calya slays Uttara 167
The heroism of Cweta 168
Cweta slain by Bhishma 178
The troops of both the armies withdrawn for their nightly rest 182
Yudhishthira's grief during the night 183
Krishna comforts Yudhishthira with assurances of victory 184
Yudhishshira instructs Dhrishtadyumna to dispose the Pāndava army (on the second day of the fight) in the array called *Kraunchāruna* 185
The disposition of the Pāndava forces 186
Duryodhana's address to Kripa and others on beholding the Pāndava army 187
Disposition of the Kuru forces 188
Commencement of the second day's battle ... 190
Encounter between Bhishma and Arjuna ... 192
Dhritarāshtra enquires of Sanjaya about the encounter between Drona and Dhrishtadyumna ... 194
Bhimasena encounters and exterminates the Kalinga host 197
Bhishma attempts a rescue but is carried away by his steeds, his charioteer being slain by Sātyaki ... 205

PAGE.
Dhrishtadyumna deprives Açwatthaman of his car ... 205
Encounter between Lakshmana and Abhimanyu ... 206
Arjuna's slaughter of the Kuru troops 207
Both armies withdrawn 208
Commencement of the third day's battle ... ... ib
The Kauravas advance in *Gāruda* array 209
The counter-array of the Pāndavas in the form of a half-moon ... ... ib
Arjuna puts the Kuru army to flight 214
Duryodhana accuses Bhishma of favoring the Pāndavas 215
Bhishma promises to check the whole Pāndava army ib
The terrible encounter of the two armies in the afternoon 216
Bhishma's superhuman prowess 217
Bhishma puts the whole Pāndava army to rout ... 218
Krishna urges Arjuna to put forth his prowess and check Bhishma ... ... ib
Encounter between Arjuna and Bhishma... ... 219
Arjuna cuts off Bhishm's bow ... ... ib
Bhishma applauds Arjuna's dexterity ... ... ib
Arjuna fights mildly with Bhishma 220
The awful destruction caused by Bhishma ... ib
Krishna thinks of slaying Bhishma ... ... ib
Sātyaki rushes to Arjuna's aid 221
Krishna's address to Sātyaki about the flight of the Pāndava army... ... ... ib
Krishna jumps down from Arjuna's car and rushes, discus in hand, for slaying Bhishma 222
Bhishma, without opposing Krishna, solcits the latter to throw him down from the car 223
Krishna's address to Bhishma... ... ... ib
Arjuna stops Krishna with great difficulty at the tenth step ib
Arjuna puts forth his valor and routs the Kaurava army 224
The carnage caused by Arjuna 225
Withdrawal of the two armies in the evening ... 227
Commencement of the fourth day's battle ... ib
Abhimanyu's encounter with and success over five car-warriors of the Kuru army 231

PAGE.
Heroism of Dhrishtadyumna 232
Bhimasena's encounter with and slaughter of a large elephant division of the Kauravas 235
Duryodhana urges his whole arrmy to attack Bhimasena 238
Bhismasena's heroism ... ... ib
Sātyaki's grand rush through the Kaurava forces for aiding Bhima 240
Encounter between Bhima and Duryodhana at the head of his brothers ... ... ib
Bhima made insensible by Duryodhana 241
Bhima, recovering, attacks Calya and makes him insensible 242
Calya borne away from the field ... ... ib
Bhima slays eight sons of Dhritarāshtra, *viz.*, Senāpati and others ... ... ib
Bhishma urges the whole army to attack Bhima ... ib
Encounter between Bhima and Bhagadatta ... 243
Ditto between Ghatotkacha and Bhagadatta ... ib
Bhishma urges the Kuru warriors to rescue Bhagadatta from Ghatotkacha's hands 244
Withdrawal of both the armies 245
Duryodhana's grief at the slaughter of his brothers by Bhimasena ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra attributes his reverses to Destiny ... 246
Sanjaya attributes them to the heroism of the Pāndavas and the justice of their cause 247
Duryodhana enquires of Bhishma about the true reason of the success of the Pāndavas 248
Bhishma's answer... ... ... ib
The conclave of celestials in the region of Brahman 249
Brahman's hymn to Nārāyana ... ... ib
Nārāyana promises to accomplish Brahman's wishes 252
Brahman's explanation to the gods and *Rishis* about the re-birth of the slain *Asuras* among men ... ib
Brahman tells the gods &c., who Nārāyana is ... ib
Vāsudeva none else than Nārāyana himself ... 254
Bhishma declares to Duryodhana the origin and glory of Vāsudeva 255

PAGE.

The hymn uttered of old by Brahman himself to Nārāyana 257
Arjuna identifiable with Nara, and Vāsudeva with Nārāyana 258
On the fifth day the Kauravas advance in the *Makara* array ... ... ib
The counter-array of the Pāndavas after the form of a *Cyena* 259
Commencement of the encounter ... ... ib
Slaughter of the Kaurava army by Arjuna ... ib
Duryodhana urges Drona to do his best 260
Drona puts forth his prowess... ... ... ib
The awful carnage of battle 261
Various encounters 263
Abhimanyu's encounter with Lakshmana... ... 271
Lakshmana deprived of his car and borne away by Kripa ib
Sātyaki's heroism... 272
Bhuriçravas slays the ten sons of Sātyaki ... 273
Sātyaki and Bhuriçravas encounter each other ... ib
Both deprived of their cars on the field 274
Withdrawal of both armies to their nightly quarters ... ib
The commencement of the sixth day's battle ... ib
The Pāndavas advance in the *Makara* array ... 275
The counter-array of the Kurus in the form of a crane ib
Bhishma and Drona put the Srinjayas to flight ... 276
Bhima and Arjuna cause a great carnage... ... 277
Dhritarāshtra recounts the excellencies of the Kaurava army ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra attributes his ill-success to Destiny and the fault of Duryodhana 278
Sanjaya attributes it to Dhritarāshtra's own fault ... 279
Bhima penetrates alone, on foot and armed with mace, into the Dhārtarāshtra army 280
Dhrishtadyumna follows Bhima and takes him up on his own car 281
Dhrishtadyumna and Bhima cause a great carnage of the Kaurava troops 282

PAGE.

Twelve car-warriors of the Pāndava army headed by Abhimanyu rescue Dhrishtadyumna and Bhima ... 283
Drona deprives Dhrishtadyumna of his car and puts the Pāndava army to flight 284
Bhima encounters Duryodhana ... ... ib
Bhima surrounded by Duryodhana and his brothers ... 285
Bhima's heroism and rescue by Abhimanyu and others ib
The fierce battle of the afternoon 286
Bhima encounters Duryodhana 287
Duryodhana's standard cut down and himself rendered senseless by Bhima 288
The heroism of Abhimanyu ... ... ib
Ditto of Draupadi's sons 289
Withdrawal of the troops to their nightly quarters ... 291
Duryohdana seeks Bhishma in the night and expresses to him his grief at the success of the Pāndavas ... ib
Bhishma promises to do his best 292
Duryodhana's delight ... ... ib
Bhishma resolves to conquer the Pāndavas or be conquered by them 294
Commencement of the seventh day's battle ... ib
The Kauravas advance in the *Mandala* array ... ib
The counter-array of the Pāndavas called *Vajra* ... 295
Arjuna routs the Kaurava warriors 296
Diverse encounters between diverse heroes ... 297
Dhritarāshtra's lament at the constant defeat of the Kaurava heroes 301
The encounter between Ghatotkacha and Bhagadatta 303
Ghatotkacha put to flight by Bhagadatta 304
Calya's encounter with and discomfiture at the hands of his nephews Sahadeva and Nakula ... ... ib
The wrath of Yudhishthira 305
The encounter between Chekitāna and Kripa ... 307
Both disabled and both removed by friends ... ib
Arjuna rushes against many warriors of the Kaurava army banded together 309
Arjuna causes a great slaughter ... ... ib

PAGE.
Arjuna vanquishes sixty warriors banded together ... 310
Yudhishthira reproaches Cikhandin for his flight and reminds him of his pledge to slay Bhishma ... 311
Cikhandin's heroism 312
Jayadratha encounters Bhimasena ... ... ib
Bhimasena's heroism ... ... ib
Chitrasena escapes Bhima's mace and is taken up by Vikarna on his car 314
Bhishma rushes against Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Yudhishthira deprived of his car by Bhishma ... ib
Yudhishthira mounts upon the car of Nakula ... ib
Bhishma causes a great slaughter of the Pāndava troops ib
The heroism of Dhrishtadyumna and Sātyaki ... 315
Arjuna defeats many Kuru heroes banded together ... 316
The Pāndavas retire in the evening to their tents ... ib
The Kauravas also retire to their tents 317
Commencement of the eighth day's battle... ... ib
The disposition of the Kaurava forces ... ... ib
The counter-array, called *Çringātaka*, of the Pāndavas 318
The Pāndavas rush against Bhishma 320
Bhishma beats them back ... ... ib
Bhima slays the charioteer of Bhishma 321
Bhishma borne away from the field by his steeds ... ib
Bhimasena slays eight sons of Dhirtarāshtra ... ib
Duryodhana goes to Bhishma and expresses his grief at the slaughter of his brothers by Bhimasena ... 322
Bhishma disregarding the cruel words of Duryodhana, asks the latter to fight, making heaven his goal ... 323
Dhritarāshtra's lament on hearing of the slaughter of his sons ... ... ib
Diverse encounters between diverse heroes ... 324
Bhima makes a great slaughter of the Kaurava elephants 325
Nakula and Sahadeva fall upon the Kaurava cavalry ... ib
Kritavarman attacks the Pāndava array 326
Story of Irāvat's birth 327
Irāvat, at the head of his cavalry division, rushes against the Kaurava army 328

PAGE.
Irāvat opposed by the six brothers of Cakuni ... 328
Irāvat slays five of them 329
Duryodhana urges Alamvusha to encounter Irāvat ... ib
The fierce encounter between Irāvat and Alamvusha... 330
Irāvat slain by Alamvusha 331
Arjuna causes a great slaughter of the Kaurava army 332
Drona causes a great slaughter of the Pāndava army... ib
Ghatotkacha rushes against the Kaurava army ... 333
Duryodhana encounters Ghatotkacha ... ... ib
Bhagadatta interposes himself on his elephant between Ghatotkacha and Duryodhana 336
Ghatotkacha slays Bhagadatta's elephant... ... ib
Several Kuru heroes, banded together, rush to the rescue of Duryodhana 337
Ghatotkacha encounters them all ... ... ib
The splendid prowess of Ghatotkacha ... ... ib
Ghatotkacha defeats all those heroes who come to the rescue of Duryodhana 338
Ghatotkacha encounters Duryodhana again ... ib
The Kuru heroes once more rush at Ghatotkacha ... ib
Yudhishthira urges Bhima to the rescue of Ghatotkacha 339
The fierce encounter between the Pāndava and the Kaurava divisions 340
Diverse encounters between the Pāndava and the Kaurava heroes 342
Ghatotkacha puts the whole Kuru army to flight ... 345
Duryodhana's grief ... ... ib
Bhishma's advice to Duryodhana about the latter's encountering none but kings 346
Bhishma urges Bhagadatta to encounter Ghatotkacha ib
The fierce encounter between Bhagadatta and Ghatotkacha 349
The heroism of both 350
Bhimasena informs Arjuna of the slaughter of Irāvat 351
Arjuna's grief ... ... ib
Bhima slays nine sons of Dhritarāshtra 353
Drona encounters Bhima ... ... ib

PAGE.

The prowess of Bhima 354
Arjuna encounters Bhishma, Bhagadatta, and Kripa together ... ... ib
Abhimanyu deprives king Amvashtha of his car ... ib
The wreck on the field of battle 355
Both armies withdrawn for nightly rest 357
Duryodhana's consultation with Cakuni and Karna ... ib
Karna asks Duryodhana to see Bhishma and solicit him to withdraw from the battle for permitting Karna to fight the foe ... ... ib
Duryodhana sets out for Bhishma's tent ... ... ib
The brilliance and grandeur of his escort ... ... ib
Duryodhana asks Bhishma to retire if he is not competent to slay the Pāndavas 359
Bhishma's answer to Duryodhana about the invincibility of the Pāndavas 360
Bhishma promises to put forth all his valor on the next day 361
Commecement of the ninth day's battle 363
Bhishma advances in the array called *Sarvatobhadra*... 364
The counter-array of the Pāndavas ... ... ib
The Kauravas advance against the Pāndavas ... 366
The heroism of Abhimanyu 367
Duryodhana urges Alamvusha to encounter Abhimanyu ib
Alamvusha attacks the Pāndava host 368
Alamvusha encountered by the five sons of Draupadi ib
Alamvusha made senseless by the five brothers ... 369
Alamvusha deprives the five sons of Draupadi of their cars ib
Alamvusha's encounter with Abhimanyu... ... ib
Alamvusha defeated by Abhimanyu 371
Abhimanyu slaughters the Kaurava army ... ib
Sātyaki's encounter with Açwatthāman 372
Arjuna encounters Drona 373
Several Pāndava heroes together encounter Bhishma... 376
Bhishma's heroism and slaughter of the Pāndava army 377
Arjuna slays all the followers of Suçarman ... 379
Sātyaki encounters Kritavarman 380

PAGE.
Several Pāndava heroes surround Bhishma ... 382
Duryodhana entrusts the protection of Bhishma to Dusçāsana 383
The Kaurava cavalry under Cakuni attack the Pāndava host ... ... ib
Yudhishthira and the twins annihilate that cavalry division ... ... ib
Duryodhana urges Calya against Yudhishthira ... 384
Bhishma causes a great slaughter of the Pāndava army 385
Krishna urges Arjuna to slay Bhishma 387
Arjuna encounters Bhishma ... ... ib
Krishna filled with rage upon beholding Arjuna fight mildly 388
Krishna jumps down from Arjuna's car and rushes towards Bhishma for slaying him 389
Bhishma's reverential exhortation to Krishna ... ib
Arjuna stops Krishna at the tenth step ... ... ib
Arjuna swears to slay Bhishma ... ... ib
The withdrawal of both armies for nightly rest ... 391
The consultation in the Pāndava camp about the means of Bhishma's death ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's cheerlessness ... ... ib
Krishna offers to himself slay Bhishma 392
Yudhishthira proposes to go to Bhishma himself for asking him the means of his death 393
Krishna approves of the proposal 394
The Pāndavas with Krishna proceed to Bhishma's tent ib
Yudhishthira asks Bhishma the means of his death ... 395
Bhishma expresses his unwillingness to fight with Cikhandin 396
Bhishma advises Arjuna to fight with him placing Cikhandin before him ... ... ib
Arjuna's grief at the prospect of striking Bhishma ... 397
Vāsudeva rallies Arjuna by reminding him of his vow to slay Bhishma ... ... ib
Commencement of the tenth day's battle 398
Disposition of both forces ... ... ib

PAGE.

The Pāndavas together rush at Bhishma 400
Cikhandin's harsh address to Bhishma 401
Arjuna urges Cikhandin to slay Bhishma... ... 402
Bhishma slaughters the Pāndava army 403
Arjuna slaughters the Kaurava army ... ... ib
Duryodhana calls Bhishma's attention to the carnage caused by Arjuna ... ... ib
Bhisma promises to conquer the Pāandavas or die ... 404
The extraordinary heroism of Bhishma 405
All the Pāndava warriors rush against Bhishma ... ib
Diverse Kuru heroes oppose diverse warriors of the Pāndava host 406
Dusçāsana's heroism in checking Arjuna's advance upon Bhishma... 407
Dusçāsana deprived by Arjuna of his car and forced to take shelter on Bhishma's car 408
Encounter between Alamvusha and Sātyaki ... ib
Bhagadatta's encounter with Sātyaki 409
Diverse encounters between the Kaurava and the Pāndava heroes 410
Drona's cheerlessness upon beholding unfavorable omens 412
Drona urges his son Açwatthāman to put forth his prowess for the sake of Duryodhana 414
Bhimasena's encounter with ten warriors of the Kuru army 415
Diverse encounters between diverse heroes of both armies 416
Bhima encounters many Kaurava heroes together ... 417
Bhima joined by Arjuna ... ... ib
Duryodhana urges Suçarman to slay Bhima and Arjuna ib
Bhima and Arjuna cause a great slaughter of Kaurava troops ... ... bi
Many Pāndava heroes rush against Bhishma ... 420
Bhishma gives up all desire of protecting his own life 422
Bhishma urges Yudhishthira to slay him... ... ib
The grand rush against Bhishma by Dhrishtadyumna and others 423
The Kauravas oppose the assailants ... ... ib

PAGE

Abhimanyu and Vrihadvala 423
Dhrishtadyumna and Drona 427
Arjuna and Cikhandin proceed against Bhishma ... 428
Bhishma causes a great slaughter of the Pāndava troops 429
Cikhandin pierces Bhishma with many arrows ... 430
Arjuna also pierces Bhishma ... ... ib
Arjuna checked by Dusçāsana 431
Arjuna puts Dusçāsana to flight ... ... ib
Duryodhana urges his troops to attack Arjuna ... 432
Arjuna consumes those assailants that advance against him ... ... ib
Arjuna puts many Kuru heroes to flight 433
Dhishtadyumna urges the Somakas and the Srinjayas to rush upon Bhishma 435
Bhishma slays Catānika the brother of Virāta ... 436
Krishna urges Arjuna to slay Bhishma without delay ib
The Pāndava heroes unitedly rush upon Bhishma ... 437
The extraordinary heroism of Bhishma 438
Many Kaurava warriors together rush upon Arjuna ... 439
The Pāndava warriors encounter them bravely ... ib
Cikhandin pierces Bhishma ... ... ib
Arjuna cuts off Bhishma's bow ... ... ib
All the bows taken up by Bhishma cut off by Arjuna 440
Bhishma hurls a dart at Arjuna ... ... ib
Arjuna cuts off that dart ... ... ib
Bhishma entertains the wish to die ... ... ib
The *Rishis* and the *Vasus* in the firmament approve of Bhishma's wish ... ... ib
A flowery shower falls upon Bhishma 441
Arjuna and Cikhandin repeatedly pierce Bhishma ... ib
Bhishma deprived of his standard and charioteer and bows ib
Bhishma discriminates by their touch the arrows shot by Arjuna from those shot by Cikhandin ... 442
Bhishma attempts to jump down from his car with a sword and shield 443
Arjuna cuts off Bhishma's sword and shield ... ib
Bishma's car entirely surrounded by the Pāndava troops ib

PAGE.

Bhishma falls down from his car, covered with arrows 444
Bhishma's body touches not the ground in consequence of the arrows sticking to it ... ... ib
A cool shower falls upon Bhishma ... ... ib
Bhishma warned by a celestial voice against yielding up his life during the southern declension ... 445
Bhishma answers the voice saying that he lives ... ib
The *Rishis* in swanlike forms come to Bhishma and counsel him to wait till the northern declension ... ib
Bhishma's willingness to follow that counsel ... ib
The grief of the Kurus on Bhishma's fall... ... 446
The Somakas and the Pānchālas rejoice ... ... ib
Bhishma, on his bed of arrows, sets himself to *Yoga*... ib
Dusçāsana speedily repairs to Drona and informs him of Bhishma's fall 448
Drona falls down from his car in grief ... ... ib
Drona, recovering his senses, commands the Kaurava troops to desist from the fight ... ... ib
The Pāndavas also command their troops to desist from the fight... 449
All the warriors proceed towards the spot where Bhishma lay ... ... ib
The Pāndavas and the Kurus offer the fallen hero their salutations ... ... ib
Bhishma receives them all with courtesy ... ... ib
Bhishma asks for a pillow to support his hanging head ib
The Kauravas bring him many soft pillows ... ib
Bhishma rebukes them for giving him articles of human enjoyment at such a time ... ... ib
Bhishma asks Arjuna to give him a pillow worthy of his bed of arrows ... ... ib
Arjuna, taking up his bow, shoots three arrows for supporting Bhishma's hanging head 450
Bhishma expresses his gratification with Arjuna for having understood his wishes ... ... ib
Bhishma tells the kings standing about him of his desire to die when the Sun entered the northern solstice ib

PAGE.

Surgeons, despatched by Duryodhana, come to Bhishma for plucking his arrows 450
Bhishma dismisses them with directions to honor them with presents 451
The kings take leave of Bhishma ... ... ib
Krishna congratulates Yudhishthira upon Bhishma's fall ib
Yudhishthira ascribes the success of the Pāndavas to Krishna's grace ... ... ib
Next morning maidens come to Bhishma and shower flowers upon him 452
The Kauravas and the Pāndavas assembled together as brothers beside Bhishma's body ... ... ib
Bhishma asks for water 453
Duryodhana brings several jars of pure and cool water ib
Bhishma refuses that water and asks Arjuna to give him water ... ... ib
Arjuna takes up his bow and shooting an arrow into the Earth causes a jet of pure water, of celestial taste, to rise up and fall upon Bhishma's mouth ... ib
All the kings there present filled with wonder at this feat of Arjuna ... ... ib
Bhishma's panegyric on Arjuna 454
Bhishma urges Duryodhana to make peace with the Pāndavas, adjuring him by the extraordinary feats of Arjuna ib
Duryodhana unwilling to accept the beneficial counsels of Bhishma 456
Karna visits Bhishma in private ... ... ib
Bhishma tells Karna that he is not the son of Rādhā but of Kunti 457
Bhishma adjures Karna to unite with his uterine brothers the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Karna's anwer 458
Bhishma gives permission to Karna to fight, making heaven his goal ... ... ib
Bhishma dismisses Karna 459

FINIS.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

The progress of the English translation of the *Mahabharata* under the enterprise and supervision of Mr. Protap Chundra Roy, has been noticed by us at intervals in the last three years, and a few days ago we had to acknowledge the receipt of a fresh instalment of the work. We now quote with pleasure, an extract from the letter of a French professor of note in Paris, affording additional testimony to the unique value of the great Hindoo epic, and to the advisability of clothing it in an appropriate English dress. M. Sylvain Levi, Professor in the School of Higher Studies in the French capital, writes as follows :—

"The Mahabharata is not only the largest, but also the grandest of all Epics, as it contains throughout a lively teaching of morals under a glorious garment of poetry. If ever national spirit may be fostered in India, it is only through a study of national antiquities, national literature, and national ethics."

It is to be regretted that the woak is so costly, but the fact that it is of national importance, and has made sufficient progress almost to guarantee its completion, and further that the cost under any circumstances would be unavoidable—lead us to recommend strongly that an effort should be made to get it out of hand. The work has to be done, and the cost will probably be Rs. 100,000, but as one half the task has been accomplished, Governmental and private support should be forthcoming for its completion. *Statesman, April 25, 1888*

REVIEW.

THE MAHABHARATA, Translated into English Prose. By PROTAP CHANDRA RAI. Calcutta : *Bhārata* Press.

This vast national undertaking has now advanced onethird of the way towards completion. Unlike most enterprises of great extent, the promoters of which generally tire of their task, and hurry it on to an ignominious end, this translation certainly improves as it proceeds, and shows that more and more pains are being taken to render it accurate and valuable. The point now reached is that portion of the Bhishma-parvan which rehearses the Bhagavad-Gita, or "Song of the Lord," so justly famous as the exponent of the most exalted view of Hinduism. This part of the book is sure to be very well read, for it not only sets forth clearly the dogmas of esoteric Hinduism, but, at the same time, presents that religion in its most favorable aspect.

The translator now carefully annotates as he proceeds, using as his guides the works of Sankara, Sridhara, Telang, and the famous Comment of Nilakantha. Literal exactness has been essayed rather than elegance ; and this is especially commendable, for the whole narrative is presensed in its simple nakedness without any attempt at artificial adornment, and, better still, without any attempt, by dexterous manipulation of words, to give a higher or different meaning to that of the ancient writers. The text, in fact, is presented word for word, as far as the nature of the two languages admits.

It is true that exception may be taken to the translation in many places. It is impossible that this should not be the case. A task of this nature bristles with difficulties, and scholars will ever be divided in opinion on hosts of passages; still there can be no doubt that the translator gives us in his work a reasonably accurate version in English of the entire book, and, by doing so, places the mass of traditions it contains within easy reach of the entire civilised world. Sanskritists themselves will be glad of the aid which this version affords, in readily searching for facts, and bringing together comparative passages, the precise terms of which can be afterwards verified by the Sanskrit text. The translation, therefore, even to the specially qualified, is an admirable labour-saving work. Another detail, facilitating reference to the original, is now being introduced,—viz., small figures, indicating where the Sanskrit stanzas commence ; thus, any line of the translation can with rapidity be compared with the original.

It must never be forgotten that Pratap Chandra Roy commenced this great and costly labour at his expense, with the noble intention of distributing as many copies gratis as his means could afford. He has redeemed his promise, and is now faithfully supplying part by part free of cost, to those who early established their claim to the privilege. Others are supplied at varying prices, according to their means ; but in every case the price asked is insignificant, and far beneath the prime cost of printing the book. There are ,however, indications that the more careful way in which the work is now being done, is exhausting the resources of the brave-hearted man who has undertaken the task. It is most earnestly to be hoped that the work may not have to stop for want of funds. It is more than a national enterprise ; it is a work in which the whole civilised world is interested ; and it would not only be a disaster, but a disgrace, if the translator did not receive the support necessary to enable him to complete his gigantic enterprise.

FREDERIC PINCOTT.

THE MAHABHARATA

BHISHMA PARVA.

SECTION I.

(Jamvu-khanda nirmāna Parva.)

Om ! Having bowed down to Nārāyana, and Nara the most exalted of male beings, and also the goddess Saraswati, then must the word Jaya be uttered.

Janamejaya said.— "How did those heroes, the Kurus, the Pāndavas, and the Somakas, and the high-souled kings assembled together from various countries, fight ?"[1]

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Listen thou, O lord of the earth, how those heroes,—the Kurus, the Pāndavas, and the Somakas,—fought on the sacred plain* of Kurukshetra ![2] Entering Kurukshetra, the Pāndavas endued with great might, along with the Somakas, advanced, desirous of victory, against the Kauravas.[3] Accomplished in the study of the *Vedas*, all (of them) took great delight in battle. Expectant of success in battle, with their troops (they) faced the fight.[4] Approaching the army of Dhritarāshtra's son, those (warriors) invincible in battle,† stationed themselves with their troops on the western part (of the plain), their faces turned towards the east.[5] Yudhishthira the son of Kunti caused tents by thousands to be set up according to rule, beyond the region called Samantapanchaka.[6] The whole earth seemed then to be empty, divested of horses and men, destitute of cars and elephants,

* *Tapas-kshetre* because Kuru the common ancestor of the rival houses performed his ascetic austerities there. Since Kuru's time, many ascetics took up their abode there.—T.

† Some texts have *Duddharshām* for *Duddharshās*.—T.

and with only the children and the old left (at home).[7] From the whole area of *Jamvudwipa* over which the sun sheds his rays,* was collected that force, O best of kings![8] Men of all races,† assembled together, occupied an area extending for many *Yojanas* over districts, rivers, hills, and woods.[9] That bull among men, king Yudhishthira, ordered excellent food and other articles of enjoyment for all of them along with their animals.[10] And Yudhishthira fixed diverse watch-words for them so that this one saying this should be known as belonging to the Pāndavas.[11] And that descendant of Kuru's race also settled names and badges for all of them for recognition during time of battle.[12]

"Beholding the standard-top of Prithā's son, the high-souled son of Dhritarāshtra, with a white umbrella held over his head, in the midst of a thousand elephants, and surrounded by his century of brothers, began with all the kings (on his side) to array his troops against the son of Pāndu.[13,14] Seeing Duryodhana, the Pānchālas who took delight in battle, were filled with joy and blew their loud-sounding conchs and cymbals of sweet sounds.[15] Beholding those troops so delighted, Pāndu's sons and Vāsudeva of great energy had their hearts filled with joy.[16] And those tigers among men, Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya, seated on one car, having felt great joy, both blew their celestial conchs.[17] And hearing the blare of *Gigantea* and the loud blast of *Theodotes* belonging unto the two, the combatants ejected urine and excreta.‡[18] As other animals are filled with fear on hearing the voice of the roaring lion, even so became that force upon hearing those blasts.[19] A frightful dust arose and nothing could be seen, for the sun himself, suddenly enveloped by it, seemed to have set.§[20] A black cloud poured a shower of flesh and blood over

---

* Literally, "gives heat."—T.

† *Varnas* used here in the sense of *races* and not *castes*.—T.

‡ Both 17 and 18 are read differently by the Burdwan Pundits.—T.

§ This *sloka* is variously read. For *bhaumam* in the first line some texts read *bhimam* which I have adopted. For *sahasā* in the second line some texts have *rajasā*, and then *āditye* (locative) for *ādityas*.—T.

the troops all around. All this seemed extraordinary.[21] A wind rose there, bearing along the earth myriads of stony nodules, and afflicting therewith the combatants by hundreds and thousands.[22] (For all that), O monarch, both armies, filled with joy, stood addrest for battle, on Kurukshetra, like two agitated oceans.[23] Indeed, that encounter of the two armies was highly wonderful, like that of two oceans when the end of the *Yuga* is arrived.[24] The whole earth was empty, having only the children and the old left (at home), in consequence of that large army mustered by the Kauravas.*[25] Then the Kurus, the Pāndavas, and the Somakas made certain covenants, and settled the rules, O bull of Bharata's race, regarding the different kinds of combat.[26] Persons equally circumstanced must encounter each other, fighting fairly. And if having fought fairly the combatants withdraw (without fear of molestation), even that would be gratifying to us.[27] Those who engaged in contests of words should be fought against with words. Those that left the ranks should never be slain.†[28] A car-warrior should have a car-warrior for his antagonist; he on the neck of an elephant should have a similar combatant for his foe; a horse should be met by a horse, and a foot-soldier, O Bhārata, should be met by a foot-soldier.[29] Guided by considerations of fitness, willingness, daring, and might, one should strike another, giving notice. No one should strike another that is unprepared,‡ or panic-struck.[30] One engaged with another, one seeking quarter, one retreating, one whose weapon is rendered unfit, one uncased in mail, should never be struck.[31] Car-drivers, animals (yoked to cars or carrying weapons), men engagad in the transport of weapons,§ players on drums and blowers of conchs should never be

---

* The Bombay text is evidently faulty here; it repeats the second half of the 7th *sloka*, making the second half of the 25th the first half of the 24th.—T.

† I. e. stragglers should not be slain.—T.

‡ Literally, "confiding."—T.

§ The Bombay text has *Castropanáyishu*; the Bengal texts have *Castropojibishu*.—T.

struck.[32] Having made these covenants, the Kurus, and the Pāndavas, and the Somakas wondered much, gazing at each other.[33] And having stationed (their forces thus), those bulls among men, those high-souled ones, with their troops, became glad at heart, their joy being reflected on their countenances.*"[34]

SECTION II.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Seeing then the two armies (standing) on the east and the west for the fierce battle that was impending, the holy *Rishi* Vyāsa the son of Satyavati, that foremost of all persons acquainted with the *Vedas*, that grandsire of the Bharatas, conversant with the past, the present, and the future, and beholding everything as if it were present before his eyes, said these words in private unto the royal son of Vichitravirya who was then distressed and giving way to sorrow, reflecting on the evil policy of his sons.([1-3])

"Vyāsa said,—'O king, thy sons and the other monarchs have their hour arrived.† Mustered in battle they will kill one another.[4] O Bhārata, their hour having come, they will all perish. Bearing in mind the changes brought on by Time, do not yield thy heart to grief.[5] O king, if thou wish to see them (fighting) in battle, I will, O son, grant thee vision! Behold the battle!'[6]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O best of regenerate *Rishis*, I like not to behold the slaughter of kinsmen! I shall, however, through thy potency, hear of this battle minutely!'"[7]

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Upon his not wishing to see the battle but wishing to hear of it, Vyāsa, that lord of boons, gave a boon to Sanjaya.[3] (And addressing Dhritarāshtra he said,)—'This Sanjaya, O king, will describe the battle to thee! Nothing in the whole battle will be beyond this one's

---

* It is impossible to notice all the variations of reading occuring in this section without considerably swelling the notes. I have accordingly left a good many unnoticed.—T.

† Rather, "have their periods run out."—T.

eyes.[9] Endued, O king, with celestial vision, Sanjaya will narrate the battle to thee. He will have knowledge of everything.*[10] Manifest or concealed, (happening) by day or by night, even that which is thought of in the mind, Sanjaya shall know everything.[11] Weapons will not cut him, and exertion will not fatigue him. This son of Gavalgani will come out of the battle with life.[12] As regards myself, O bull of Bharata's race, the fame of these Kurus, as also of all the Pāndavas, I will spread! Do not grieve.[13] This is destiny, O tiger among men! It behoveth thee not to give way to grief. It is not capable of being prevented. As regards victory, it is there where righteousness is!' "[14]

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"That highly-blessed and holy grandsire of the Kurus, having said so, once more addressed Dhritarāshtra and said,[15]—'Great will the slaughter be O monarch, in this battle. I see here also (numerous) omens indicative of terror.[16] Hawks and vultures and crows, and herons, together with cranes, are alighting on the tops of trees and gathering in flocks.[17] These birds, delighted at the prospect of battle, are looking down (on the field) before them. Carnivorous beasts will feed on the flesh of elephants and steeds.[18] Fierce herons, foreboding terror, and uttering merciless cries, are wheeling across the centre towards the southern region.[19] In both the twilights, prior and posterior, I daily behold, O Bhārata, the sun during his rising and setting to be covered by headless trunks.[20] Tri-colored clouds with their extremities white and red and necks black, charged with lightning, and resembling maces (in figure) envelop the sun in both twilights.[21] I have seen the sun, the moon, and the stars to be all blazing. No difference in their aspect is to be noted in the evening. I have seen this all day and all night. All this forbodes fear.[22] On even the fifteenth night of the lighted fortnight in (the month of) *Kārtika*, the moon, divested of splendour, became invisible, or of the hue of fire, the firmament being of the hue

---

* The second half of the 9th, and the whole of the 10th *sloka*, are omitted in the Bengal texts.—T.

of the lotus.[23] Many heroic lords of earth,—kings and princes,—endued with great bravery and possessed of arms resembling maces, will be slain and sleep, lying down on the earth.[24] Daily I notice in the sky during night time the fierce cries of battling boars and cats.*[25] The images of gods and goddesses sometimes laugh, sometimes tremble, and sometimes again these vomit blood through their mouths, and sometimes they sweat and sometimes fall down.[26] O monarch, drums, without being beat, give sounds, and the great cars of Kshatriyas move without (being drawn by) animals yoked to them.[27] *Kokilas*, wood-peckers, jays, water-cocks, parrots, crows, and peacocks, utter terrible cries.[28] Here and there, cavalry soldiers, cased in mail, and armed with weapons, send forth fierce shouts. At sun-rise flights of insects, by hundreds, are seen.[29] In both twilights, the cardinal quarters seem to be ablaze, and the clouds, O Bhārata, shower dust and flesh.[30] She, O king, who is celebrated over the three worlds and is applauded by the righteous, even that (constellation) *Arundhati* keepeth (her lord) Vaçishtha on her back.[31] The planet *Çani* also, O king, appeareth, afflicting (the constellation) *Rohini*. The sign of the deer in the moon hath deviated from its usual position. A great terror is indicated.[32] Even though the sky is cloudless, a terrible roar is heard there. The animals are all weeping, and their tears are falling fast.' "[33]

SECTION III.

"Vyāsa said,—'Asses are taking births in kine. Sons are having sexual pleasure with mothers. The trees in the forests are exhibiting unseasonable flowers and fruits.[1] Women quick with child, and even those that are not so, are giving birth to monsters. Carnivorous beasts, mingling with (carnivorous) birds, are feeding together.[2] Ill-omened beasts, some having three horns, some with four eyes, some with five legs, some with two sexual organs, some with two heads, some with two tails, some having fierce teeth,[3] are being

---

* The Bombay text reads *pralakshaye* for *prajākshaye*. I have adopted the former.—T.

born, and with mouths wide open are uttering unholy cries. Horses with three legs, furnished with crests, having four teeth, and endued with horns, are also being born.[4] O king, in thy city is also seen that the wives of many utterers of *Brahma* are bringing forth *Garudas* and peacocks.[5] The mare is bringing forth the cow-calf, and the bitch is bringing forth, O king, jackals and cocks and antelopes and parrots, all uttering inauspicious cries.*[6] Certain women are bringing forth four or five daughters (at a time), and these, as soon as they are born, dance and sing and laugh.[7] The members of the lowest orders are laughing and dancing and singing, and thus indicating direful consequences.[8] Infants, as if urged by death, are drawing armed images, and are running against one another, armed with clubs,[9] and desirous of battle, are also breaking down the towns (they erect in sport). Lotuses of different kinds and lilies are growing on trees.[10] Strong winds are blowing fiercely, and the dust ceaseth not. The earth is frequently trembling, and *Rāhu* approacheth towards the sun.[11] The white planet *(Ketu)* stayeth, having passed beyond the constellation *Chitrā*. All this particulary bodeth the destruction of the Kurus.[12] A fierce commet riseth, afflicting the constellation *Pusya*. This great planet will cause frightful mischief to both the armies.[13] Mars wheeleth towards *Maghā*, and *Vrihaspati* (Jupiter) towards *Çravanā*. The Sun's offspring *(Çani)*, approaching towards the constellation *Bhaga*, afflicteth it.[14] The planet *Çukra*, ascending towards *Purva-Bhādra*, shineth brilliantly, and wheeling towards the *Uttara-Bhādra*, looketh towards it, having effected a junction (with a smaller planet).[15] The white planet *(Ketu)*, blazing up like fire mixed with smoke, stayeth, having attacked the bright constellation *Jeshthā* that is sacred to Indra.[16] The constellation *Dhruva*, blazing fiercely, wheeleth towards the right. Both the moon and the sun are afflicting *Rohini*. The fierce planet *(Rāhu)* hath taken

---

* Both the Bengal and the Bombay editions have *Kukkurān* for *Kukkutān* as the Burdwan Pundits correct it. A bitch producing dogs and bitches would be no anomaly.—T.

up its position between the constellations *Chitrā* and *Swāti*.*[17] The Redbodied (Mars), possessed of the effulgence of fire, wheeling circuitously, stayeth in a line with the constellation *Çravanā* over-ridden by *Vrihaspati*.[18] The earth that produceth particular crops at particular seasons is now covered with the crops of every season.† Every barley stalk is graced with five ears, and every paddy stalk with a hundred.[19] They that are the best of creatures in all the worlds and upon whom depends the universe, *viz*, kine, when milked after the calves have their suck, yield only blood.[20] Radiant rays of light emanate from bows, and swords blaze forth brilliantly. It is evident that the weapons behold (before them) the battle as if it were already arrived.[21] The hue of weapons and the water, as also of coats of mail and standards, is like that of fire. A great slaughter will take place.[22] In this battle,‡ O Bhārata, of the Kurus with the Pāndavas, the earth, O monarch, will be a river of blood with the standards (of warriors) as its rafts ![23] Animals and birds on all sides, with mouths blazing like fire, uttering fierce cries, and displaying these evil omens, are foreboding terrible consequences.[24] A (fierce) bird with but one wing, one eye, and one leg, hovering over the sky in the night, screameth frightfully in wrath, as if for making the hearers vomit blood.§[25]

---

* Unlike the Bengal editions, the Bombay edition correctly includes this *sloka*, or rather half-*sloka*, within the 17th, making the 17th a triplet instead of a couplet. For the well-known word *Dhishthitas*, however, the Bombay text has *Vishthitas*.—T.

† The Bombay text-reads *Paricchannā* for *paricchinnā*. The former is better.—T.

‡ *Vaiçase* is explained by Nilakantha as *Virodhe*. *Conitāvartā*—a river having bloody eddies.—T.

§ *Conitam cchardayanniva*. I have adopted Nilakhantha's explanation. The Burdwan Pundits take it as referring to "weapons" instead of "hearers." The passage, however, may mean that the bird screams so frightfully as if it vomits blood. The only thing that militates against this interpretation is that *cchardayan* is a causal verb. In the Mahābhārata, however, causal forms are frequently used without causal meanings.—T.

It seemeth, O great king, that all weapons are now blazing with radiance. The effulgence of the constellation known by the name of the seven high-souled *Rishis*, hath been dimmed.[26] Those two blazing planets, *viz*, *Vrihaspati* and *Çani*, having approached the constellation called *Viçākhā*, have become stationary there for a whole year.[27] Three lunations twice meeting together in course of the same lunar fortnight, the duration of the latter is shortened by two days. On the thirteenth day, therefore, from the first lunation, according as it is the day of the full moon or the new moon, the moon and the sun are afflicted by *Rāhu*. Such strange eclipses, both lunar and solar, forebode a great slaughter.*[28] All the quarters of the earth, being overwhelmed by showers of dust, look inauspicious. Fierce clouds, portentous of danger, drop bloody showers during the night.[29] *Rāhu* of fierce deeds is also, O monarch, afflicting the constellation *Kirtikā*. Rough winds, portending fierce danger, are constantly blowing.[30] All these beget a war characterised by many sad incidents.† The constellations are divided into three classes. Upon one or another of each class, a planet of evil omen has shed its influence, foreboding terrible dangers.‡[31] A lunar fortnight

* This *sloka* is omitted in many editions, though it is certainly genuine. I have rendered it very freely, as otherwise it would be unintelligible. The fact is, three lunations twice meeting together in course of the same lunar fortnight is very rare. The lunar fortnight *(Paksha)* being then reduced by two days, the day of full moon or that of new moon, instead of being (as usual) the fifteenth day from the first lunation becomes the thirteenth day. Lunar eclipses always occur on days of the full moon, while solar eclipses on those of the new moon. Such eclipses, therefore, occurring on days removed from the days of the first lunation by thirteen instead of (as usual) fifteen days, are very extraordinary occurrences.—T.

† *Vishamam* is battle or war, and *ākranda* is weeping or productive of grief. The latter word may also mean a fierce battle. If understood in this sense, *Vishamam* may be taken as indicating hostility, or absence of peace.—T.

‡ Nilakantha explains this in a long note the substance of which is appended below. Kings are divided into three classes, *viz*, owners of elephants *(Gujapati)*, owners of horses *(Açwapti)*, and owners of men *(Narapati)*. If an evil-omened planet *(pāpa-graha)* sheds its influence

had hitherto consisted of fourteen days, or fifteen days (as usual), or sixteen days. This, however, I never knew that the day of new moon would be on the *thirteenth* day from the first lunation, or the day of full moon on the thirteenth day from the same. And yet in course of the same month both the moon and the sun have undergone eclipses on the thirteenth days from the day of the first lunation.*[32] The sun and the moon, therefore, by undergoing eclipses on unusual days,† will cause a great slaughter of the creatures of the earth. Indeed, *Rākshasas*, though drinking blood by mouthfuls, will yet not be satiated.[33] The great rivers are flowing in opposite directions. The waters of rivers have become bloody. The wells, foaming up, are bellowing like bulls.‡[34] Meteors, effulgent like Indra's thunder-bolt, fall with loud hisses.$ When this night passeth away, evil consequences will overtake you.[35] People, for meeting together, coming out of their houses with lighted brands, have still to

---

upon any of the nine constellations beginning with *Açwini*, it forebodes danger to *Açwapatis*; if on any of the nine beginning with *Maghà*, it forebodes danger to *Gajapatis*; and if on any of the nine beginning with *Mulà*, it forebodes danger to *Narapatis*. What Vyasa says here, therefore, is that one or another *pāpagraha* has shed its influence upon one or another of each of the three classes of constellations, thus foreboding danger to *all* classes of kings.—T.

* *Vide* note *ante*.—T.

† *Aparvani*, *i. e.*, *not* on *Parva* days or days of full moon and new moon as ordinarily coming. The Bombay edition, after *aparvani*, reads *grahenau tau*. A better reading unquestionably is *grastāvetau*, as many Bengal texts have.—T.

‡ *Pratiçrotas*; strict grammar would require *pratiçrotasas*; the meaning is that those that flowed east to west now flow west to east, &c. For *kurddanti* some texts have *narddanti* which is certainly better. *Kurddanti* means play or sport; wells playing like bulls would be unmeaning, unless the sport were accompanied by bellowing.—T.

$ The Burdwan Pundits read *çuskāçani* for *çakrāçani*. The latter, however, is the true reading.—T.

encounter a thick gloom all around.* Great *Rishis* have said that in view of such circumstances[36] the earth drinks the blood of thousands of kings. From the mountains of Kailāsa and Mandara and Himavat[37] thousands of explosions are heard and thousands of summits are tumbling down. In consequence of the Earth's trembling, each of the four oceans,[38] having swelled greatly, seems ready to transgress its continents for afflicting the Earth.† Fierce winds charged with pointed pebbles are blowing, crushing mighty trees.[39] In villages and towns trees, ordinary and sacred, are falling down, crushed by mighty winds and struck by lightning.[40] The (sacrificial) fire, when Brāhmanas pour libations on it, becomes blue, or red, or yellow. Its flame bends towards the left, yielding a bad scent, accompanied by loud reports.[41] Touch, smell, and taste have, O monarch, become what they were not. The standards (of warriors), repeatedly trembling, are emitting smoke.[42] Drums and cymbals are throwing off showers of coal-dust. And from the tops of tall trees all around,[43] crows, wheeling in circles from the left, are uttering fierce cries. All of them again are uttering frightful cries of *pakkā, pakkā*,[44] and are perching upon the tops of standards for the destruction of the kings. Vicious elephants, trembling all over, are running hither and thither, urinating and ejecting excreta.[45] The horses are all melancholy, while the elephants are resorting to the water. Hearing all this, let that be done which is suitable, so that, O Bhārata, the world may not be depopulated !' "[46]

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"Hearing these words of his father, Dhritarāshtra said,—I think all this hath been ordained of old. A great slaughter of human beings will take place.[47] If the kings die in battle observing the duties of the Kshatriya order, they will then, attaining to the regions reserved for heroes, obtain only happiness.[48] These tigers

---

* The original is very obscure. *Ulkà* is explained by Nilakantha as a brand (used for want of lamps). The line, however, is elliptical. The Burdwan Pundits introduce an entirly new line.—T.

† *Mahābhutā* is swelling greatly.—T.

among men, casting away their lives in great battle, will win fame in this and great bliss for ever in the next world.[49]"

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"O best of kings, thus addressed by his son Dhritarāshtra, that prince of poets, the *Muni* (Vyāsa), concentrated his mind in supreme *Yoga*.[50] Having contemplated for only a short space of time, Vyāsa once more said,—'Without doubt, O king of kings, it is Time that destroyeth the universe.[51] It is Time also that createth the worlds. There is nothing here that is eternal. Show the path of righteousness to the Kurus, to thy kinsmen, relatives, and friends! Thou art competent to restrain them. The slaughter of kinsmen hath been said to be sinful. Do not do that which is disagreeable to me.[52-53] O king, Death himself hath been born in the shape of thy son! Slaughter is never applauded in the *Vedas*. It can never be beneficial.[54] The usages of one's race are as one's own body. Those usages slay him that destroyeth them. For the destruction of this race and of those kings of the earth, it is Time that maketh thee deviate into the wrong path like one in distress although thou art competent (to walk along the path of righteousness)! O king, in the shape of (thy) kingdom hath calamity come to thee![55-56] Thy virtue is sustaining a very great diminution.* Show what righteousness is unto thy sons! O thou that art invincible, of what value is that kingdom to thee which bringeth sin to thee?[57] Take care of thy good name, thy virtue, and thy fame! Thou wilt then win heaven. Let the Pāndavas have their kingdom, and let the Kauravas have peace!'[58]

"While that best of Brāhmanas was saying these words in a sorrowful tone, Dhritarāshtra the son of Amvikā, accomplished in speech, once more addressed him, saying,[59]—'My knowledge of life and death is similar to thine. The truth is known to me as regards these. Man, however, in what concerns his own interests, is deprived of judgment. O sire, know me to be one who is an ordinary person![60] Of immeasurable power thou art! I pray thee to extend thy

---

* *Parena* is explained by Nilakantha as *atiçayena*.—T.

towards us! Of soul under complete control, thou art our refuge and instructor! My sons are not obedient to me, O great *Rishi!* My understanding too is not inclined to commit sin!*[61] Thou art the cause of the fame, the achievements, and the inclination for virtue, of the Bharatas! Thou art the reverend grandsire of both the Kurus and the Pāndavas!"[62]

"Vyāsa said,—'O royal son of Vichitraviryya, tell me freely what is in thy mind. I will remove thy doubts!'[63]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O holy one, I desire to hear from thee of all those indications that happen unto those that become victorious in battle!'[64]

"Vyāsa said,—'The (sacred) fire assumes a cheerful radiance. Its light ascends upwards. Its flame bends towards the right. It blazes up without being smoky. The libations poured on it yield a fragrant scent. It is said that these are the indications of future success.[65] The conchs and cymbals yield sounds that are deep and loud. The Sun, as well as the Moon, gives pure rays. It is said that these are the indications of future success.[66] Crows, whether stationary or on their wings, utter cries that are agreeable. They again that are behind, urge the warriors to advance; while they that are ahead, forbid all advance.†[67] Where vultures, swans, parrots, cranes, and wood-peckers, utter delightful cries, and wheel towards the right, the Brāhmanas say that there victory in battle is certain.[68] They whose divisions, in consequence of

* Some of the Bengal texts read *anugraham* (making the initial *a* silent) after *maharshe* (in the vocative case). There can be no doubt, however, that this is incorrect. The true reading is *nādharmam* which I have adopted. The Bombay text reads *nachādharmam*. The introduction of the particle *cha* needlessly makes the line incorrect as to metre.—T.

† The second line of the 67th *sloka* is very obscure. I have followed Nilakantha in translating it thus. The sense seems to be, that when crows hover behind an army, that is an auspicious sign; while it is an inauspicious sign if they are seen ahead. I am not sure that Nilakantha is right in taking the pronoun *ye* as referring to even crows.—T.

ornaments, coats of mail, and standards, or the melodious neigh of their steeds, become resplendant and incapable of being gazed at, always conquer their foes.[69] They who utter cheerful shouts, those warriors, O Bhārata, whose energies are not damped and whose garlands do not fade, always cross the ocean of battle.[70] They who utter cheerful shouts having penetrated into the divisions of the foe, who utter even kind words* to the enemy, and who, before striking, forewarn the foe, win victory.[71] The objects of hearing, vision, taste, touch, and smell, without undergoing any change for the worse, become auspicious. This also is another indication of a victorious army, *viz*, there is joy among the combatants at all times.[72] This also is another indication of success, *viz*, the winds that blow, the clouds, and the birds, all become favorable ; while the clouds (so favorable) and the rain-bows drop beneficial showers.[73] These, O king, are the indications of armies to be crowned with victory, while, O monarch, all these become otherwise in the case of those that are about to be destroyed.[74] Whether the army be small or large, cheerfulness, as an attribute of the combatants, is said to be a certain indication of victory.[75] One soldier, struck with panic, can cause even a large army to take fright and fly. And when an army, struck with panic, takes to flight, it causes even heroic warriors to take fright.[76] If a large army is once broken and put to rout, it cannot like a herd of deer disordered in fright or a mighty current of water be easily checked.[77] If a large army is once routed, it is incapable of being rallied ; on the other hand, beholding it broken, even those well-skilled in battles, O Bhārata, become heartless.[78] Beholding soldiers struck with fear and flying, the panic spreads in other directions, and soon, O king, the whole army is broken and flies in all directions.[79] And when an army is routed, even brave leaders, O king, at the head of large divisions consisting of the four kinds of forces, are incapable of rallying them.[80] An intelligent man, always exerting himself with activity, should strive (to win success)

---

* Such as "don't fight for you will be dead men soon," &c.—T

by the aid of means.* It is said that that success which is won by negotiation and other means is the very best. That which is achieved by producing disunion (among the foe) is indifferent.[81] While that success, O king, which is won by battle, is the worst. In battle are many evils, the initial one, as it is said, being slaughter.[82] Even fifty brave men who know one another, who are undepressed, who are free from family ties, and who are firmly resolved, can crush a large army.[83] Even five, six, or, seven men, who are unretreating, win victory. Vinatā's son Garuda, O Bhārata, beholding even a large concourse of birds, asketh not the aid of many followers (to vanquish them).[84] The strength in number, therefore, of an army is not always the cause of victory. Victory is uncertain. It depends on chance. Even they that become victorious have to sustain loss.' "[85]

SECTION IV.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Having said these words unto Dhritarāshtra, Vyāsa took his departure. And Dhritarāshtra also, having heard those words, began to reflect in silence.[1] And having reflected for only a short space of time, he began to sigh repeatedly. And soon, O bull of Bharata's race, the king asked Sanjaya of soul worthy of praise,[2] saying,—O Sanjaya, these kings, these lords of earth, so brave and taking delight in battle, are for smiting one another with weapons of diverse kinds, being prepared to lay down their very lives for the sake of earth! Incapable of being restrained, they are, indeed, smiting one another for increasing the population of Yama's domain.[3-4] Desirous of prosperity connected with the possession of earth, they are incapable of bearing one another. I, therefore, think that earth must be possesed of many attributes. Tell me all these, O Sanjaya![5] Many thousands, many millions, many tens of millions, many hundreds of millions, of heroic men have come together at Kurujāngala.[6]

---

* This line is omitted in many of the Bengal texts except the Burdwan one.—T.

I desire to hear, O Sanjaya, with accurate details, about the situation and dimensions of those countries and cities from which they have come.[7] Through the potency of that regenerate *Rishi*, Vyāsa of immeasurable energy, thou art endued with the lamp of celestial perception and the eye of knowledge!'[8]

"Sanjaya said,—'O thou of great wisdom, I will recount to thee the merits of earth according to my knowledge. Behold them with thy eye of wisdom! I bow to thee, O bull of Bharata's race![9] Creatures in this world are of two kinds, mobile and immobile. Mobile creatures are of three kinds according to their birth, *viz*, oviparous, viviparous, and those engendered by heat and damp.[10] Of mobile creatures, O king, the foremost are certainly those called viviparous. Of viviparous creatures the foremost are men and animals.[11] Animals, O king, of diverse forms, are of fourteen species. Seven have their abodes in the woods, and seven of these are domestic.[12] Lions, tigers, boars, buffalos, and elephants, as also bears, and apes, are, O king, regarded as wild.[13] Kine, goats, sheep, men, horses, mules, and asses,—these seven amongst animals are reckoned as domestic by the learned.[14] These fourteen, O king, complete the tale of domestic and wild animals, mentioned, O lord of earth, in the *Vedas*, and on which the sacrifices rest.[15] Of creatures that are domestic, men are foremost, while lions are the foremost of those that have their abode in the woods. All creatures support life by living upon one another.[16] Vegetables are said to be immobile, and they are of four species, *viz*, trees, shurbs, creepers, creeping plants existing for only a year, and all stemless plants of the grass species.*[17] Of mobile and

* Nilakantha explains these five species thus:—trees, such as the peepul; *gulma* (shrubs), as *kuça*, *kāça*, &c., growing from a clump underneath; creepers, such as all plants growing upon the soil but requiring some support to twine round, *Valli*, those that creep on the earth and live for a year only, such as the gourd, the pumpkin, &c.; and lastly, *trina*, such as grass and all plants that are stemless, having only their barks or leaves.—T.

immobile creatures, there are thus one less twenty; and as regards their universal constituents, these are five. Twenty-four in all, these are described as *Gāyatri (Brahma)* as is well-known to all.*[18] He who knows these truly to be the sacred *Gāyatri* possessed of every virtue, is not liable, O best of the Bharatas, to destruction in this world.[19] Everything springeth from the Earth and everything, when destroyed, mergeth into the Earth. The Earth is the stay and refuge of all creatures, and the Earth is eternal.[20] He that hath the Earth, hath the entire universe with its mobile and immobile population. It is for this that longing for (the possession of the) Earth, kings slay one another.' "†[21]

SECTION V.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'The names of rivers and mountains, O Sanjaya, as also of provinces, and all other things resting on the earth,[1] and the dimensions, O thou that are acquainted with the measures of things, of the earth in its entirety, and the forests, O Sanjaya, recount to me in detail!'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'O great king, all things in the universe, in consequence of the presence (in them) of the five elements, have been said to be equal by the wise.[3] These elements, are space, air, fire, water, and earth. Their (respective) attributes are sound, touch, vision, taste, and scent. Every one of these elements possesses (in addition to what is especially its own) the attribute or attributes of that or those coming before it. The earth, therefore, is the foremost of them

---

* When *Gàyatri*, or *Brahma*, or the *Universe*, is mentioned, these twenty four are indicated, five of which exist independently, the remaining nineteen being the result of those five in various proportions.—T.

† This section in the Bombay text consists also of 21 *slokas* in all. Many of the *slokas*, however, after the 10th, are given in a most incorrect order. Before completing the tale of the mobile creatures and their two divisions, domestic and wild, the Bombay text introduces the *slokas* about the vegetable creation distinctly included within the head "immobile." The fact is, where the arrangement of the *slokas* is concerned, the Bengal texts are generally superior to the Bombay one.—T.

all, possessing as it does the attributes of all the other four besides what is especially its own, as said by *Rishis* acquainted with truth.*[4-5] There are four attributes, O king, in water. Scent does not exist in it. Fire has three attributes, *viz*, sound, touch, and vision.[6] Sound and touch, belong to air, while space has sound alone. These five attributes, O king, exist (in this way) in the five principal elements[7] depending on which all creatures in the universe exist. They exist separately and independently when there is homogeneity in the universe.†[8] When, however, these do not exist in their natural state but with one another, then creatures spring into life, furnished with bodies. This is never otherwise.[9] The elements are destroyed, in the order of the one succeeding merging into the one that precedes; and they spring also into existence, one arising from the one before it.‡ All of these are immeasurable, their forms being *Brahma* itself.[10] In the universe are seen creatures consisting of the five elements. Men endeavour to ascertain their proportions by exercising their reason.[11] Those matters, however,that are inconceivable, should never be sought to be solved by reason. That which is above (human) nature is an indication of the inconceivable.[12]

" 'O son of Kuru's race, I will, however, describe to thee the island called *Sudarçana*. This island, O king, is circular and of the form of a wheel.[13] It is covered with rivers and other pieces of water and with mountains looking like masses

---

* I have rendered 4 and 5 a little too freely. The language of the original is very terse.—T.

† *Sāmyam* is homogeneity. The allusion is to the state of the universe before creation, when there exists nothing but a homogeneous mass or *Brahma* alone. The first compound of the 2nd line is read differently. The Burdwan Pundits and the Bombay edition read *anyonyam* (in the accusative); many of the Bengal texts read *anyonyena* (in the instrumental). The meaning is scarcely affected by this difference of reading.—T.

‡ The order of destruction is that earth merges into water, water into fire, fire into air, and air into space. And so the order of birth is that from space arises air, from air arises fire, from fire arises water, and from water arises earth.—T.

of clouds, and with cities and many delightful provinces.[14] It is also full of trees furnished with flowers and fruits, and with crops of diverse kinds and other wealth. And it is surrounded on all sides with the salt ocean.[15] As a person can see his own face in a mirror, even so is the island called Sudarçana seen in the lunar disc.[16] Two of its parts seem to be a pepul tree, while two others look like a large hare. It is surrounded on all sides with an assemblage of every kind of deciduous plants.[17] Besides these portions, the rest is all water. What remains I will describe to thee shortly. The rest I will speak of afterwards. Listen now to this that I describe in brief.' "*[18]

SECTION VI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Thou art intelligent, O Sanjaya, and acquainted with the truth (about everything). Thou hast duly given a description of the island in brief. Tell us now of the island in detail.[1] Tell us now of the dimensions of the expanse of land that lies in the portion looking like a hare. Thou mayst then speak of the portion resembling a *peeppala* tree.' "[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thus addressed by the king, Sanjaya began to say.

"Sanjaya said,—'Streching from east to west, are these six mountains that are equal† and that extend from the eastern to the western ocean.[3] They are Himavat, Hemakuta, that best of mountains called Nishadha, Nila abounding with stones of *lapis lazuli*, Cweta white as the moon,[4] and the mountains called Cringavat composed of all kinds of metals.‡ These are the six mountains, O king, which are always the resort of *Siddhas* and *Chāranas*.[5] The space lying between

---

* Nilakantha explains the last six *slokas* as having an esoteric meaning. By *Sudarcana* he understands the mind. The rest is explained consistently. Interpretations, however, are not rare among commentators seeking to put sense in nonsense.—T.

† The Bombay text reads *Varsha parvatās* for *parvatās samās*.—T.

‡ For *Pinaddha* occuring in the Bengal texts, the Bombay edition reads *Vichitra*.—T.

each of these measures a thousand *Yojanas*, and thereon are many delightful kingdoms. And these divisions are called *Varshas*, O Bhārata.[6] In all those kingdoms reside creatures of diverse species. This (the land where we are) is the *Varsha* that is called after Bharata. Next to it (northwards) is the *Varsha* called after Himavat.[7] The land that is beyond Hemkuta is called *Harivarsha*. South of the Nila range and on the north of the Nishadha[8] is a mountain, O king, called Mālyavat that streches from east to west. Beyond Mālyavat (northwards) is the mountain called Gandhamādana.*[9] Between these two (*viz*, Mālayavat and Gandhamādana) is a globular mountain called Meru made of gold. Effulgent as the morning sun, it is like fire without smoke.†[10] It is eightyfour thousand *Yojanas* high, and, O king, its depth also is eightyfour *Yojanas*.[11] It standeth bearing the worlds above, below and transversely. Beside Meru are situate, O lord, these four islands,[12] *viz*, Bhadrāçwa, and Ketumāla, and Jamvudwipa otherwise calld Bhārata, and Uttara-Kuru which is the abode of persons who have achieved the merit of righteousness.[13] The bird Sumukha the son of Suparna, beholding that all the birds on Meru were of golden plumage, reflected[14] that he should leave that mountain inasmuch as there was no difference there between the good, middling, and bad birds.[15] That foremost of luminaries, the sun, always circumambulates Meru, as also the moon with (his) attendant constellations, and the Wind-god too.[16] That mountain, O king, is endued with celestial fruits and flowers, and it is covered all over with mansions made of burnished gold.[17] There, on that mountain, O king, the celestials, the *Gandharvas*, the *Asuras*, and the *Rākshasas*, accompanied by the tribes of *Apsaras*, always, sport.[18] There Brahman, and Rudra, and also Cakra the chief of the celestials, assembled together, performed diverse kinds of sacrifices with plentiful gifts.[19] Tumvuru, and Nār-

---

* The Bengal texts add a line here which is properly omitted in the Bombay edition.—T.

† After the 10th occurs a line in the Bengal texts which is evidently vicious.—T.

rada, and Viçwāvasu. and the Hāhās, and the Huhus, repaving thither, adored the foremost of the celestials with diverse hymns.[20] The high-souled seven *Rishis*, and Kayçapa the lord of creatures, repair thither, blessed be thou, on every *parva* day.*[21] Upon the summit of that mountain, Uçanas, otherwise called the Poet, (sporteth) with the *Daityas* (his disciples).† The jewels and gems (that we see) and all the mountains abounding in precious stones are of Meru.[22] Therefrom a fourth part is enjoyed by the holy Kuvera. Only a sixteenth part of that wealth he giveth unto men.[23] On the northern side of Meru is a delightful and excellent forest of *Karnikāras*, covered with the flowers of every season,‡ and occupying a range of hills.[24] There the illustrious *Paçupati* himself, the Creator of all things, surrounded by his celestial attendants and accompanied by Umā, sporteth,[25] bearing a chain of *Karnikāra* flowers (on his neck) reaching down to his feet, and blazing with radiance with his three eyes resembling three risen suns.[26] Him *Siddhas* truthful in speech, of excellent vows and austere ascetic penances, can behold. Indeed, Maheçwara is incapable of being seen by persons of wicked conduct.[27] From the summit of that mountain, like a stream of milk, O ruler of men, the sacred and auspicious Gangā, otherwise called Bhāgirathi, adored by the most righteous, of universal form and immeasureable and issuing out with terrific noise, falleth with impetuous force in the delightful lake of *Chandramas*.§[28-29] Indeed, that sacred lake like an ocean, hath been formed by *Gangā* herself. (While leaping from

* Day of the full moon and that of the new moon.—T.

† The Bengal texts, except the Burdwan one, have *divi* for *Daityais*. Of course, the latter reading is correct.

‡ The Bombay text has *Sarvartus* (which is better) for *Sarvatas* in the Bengal texts.—T.

§ In the first line of 28, the Bengal texts read *Cirasas* (ablative) for *Cikhhrât* of the Bombay edition. In the last line of 29 also, the Bombay text has *plavantiva-pravegena* for the Bengal reading *patatyajasravegena*. No material difference of meaning arises if one or the other is accepted.—T.

the mountains), Gangā, incapable of being supported by even the mountains, was held[30] for a hundred thousand years by the bearer of *Pināka* on his head.* On the western side of Meru, O king, is *Ketumāla*.†[31] And there also is *Jamvu-khanda*. Both are great seats of humanity, O king.‡ There, O Bhārata, the measure of human life is ten thousand years.[32] The men are all of a golden complexion, and the women are like *Apsarās*. And all the residents are without sickness, without sorrow, and always cheerful.[33] The men born there are of the effulgence of melted gold. On the summits of Gandhamādana, Kuvera the lord of the *Guhyakas*, with many *Rākshasas*[34] and accompanied by tribes of *Apsaras*, passeth his time in joy. Beside Gandhamādana there are many smaller mountains and hills.[35] The measure of human life there is eleven thousand years. There, O king, the men are cheerful, and endued with great energy and great strength, and the women are all of the complexion of the lotus and highly beautiful.[36] Beyond *Nila* is (the *Varsha* called) *Çweta*, beyond *Çweta* is (the *Varsha* called) *Hairanyaka*. Beyond *Hairanyaka* is (the *Varsha* called) *Airāvata* covered with provinces.[37] The last *Varsha* in the (extreme) north and Bharata's *Varsha* in the (extreme) south are both, O king, of the form of a bow. These five *Varshas (viz Çweta, Hairanyaka, Elāvrita, Harivarsha*, and *Haimavat-varsha)* are in the middle, of which *Elāvrita* exists in the very middle of all.[38] Amongst these seven *Varshas* (the five already mentioned and *Airāvata* and *Bhārata*) that which is further north excels the one to its immediate south in respect of these attributes, *viz*, the period of life, stature, health, righteousness, pleasure, and profit.[39] In these *Varshas*, O Bhārata, creatures (though of diverse species yet)

---

* Alluding to the tradition of Civa's holding Gangā on his head and for which the great god is sometimes called *Gangādhara*.

† This word occurs in various forms, *Ketumālā* and *Ketumāli* being two others.

‡ The Bombay edition reads *tu* for *cha* after *Jamvukhanda*. The meaning becomes changed.—T.

live together. Thus, O king, is the Earth covered with mountains.[40] The huge mountains of Hemakuta are otherwise called Kailāsa. There, O king, Vaiçravana passeth his time in joy with his *Guhyakas*.[41] Immediately to the north of Kailāsa and near the moutains of Maināka there is a huge and beautilul mountain called *Manimaya* endued with golden summits.[42] Beside this mountain is a large, beautiful, crystal and delightful lake called *Vindusaras* with golden sands (on its beach). There king Bhagiratha,[43] beholding Gangā (since), called after his own name, resided for many years. There may be seen innumerable sacrificial stakes made of gems, and *Chaitya* trees made of gold.[44] It was there that he of a thousand eyes and great fame won (ascetic) success by performing sacrifices. There the Lord of all creatures, the eternal Creator of all the wolrds,[45] endued with supreme energy and surrounded by his ghostly attendants, is adored. There Nara and Nārāyana, and Brahman, and Manu, and Sthānu as the fifth, are (ever present).[46] And there the celestial stream Gangā having three currents,* issuing out of the region of Brahman, first showed herself, and then dividing herself into seven streams,[47] became Vaswokasārā, Nalini, the sin-cleansing Saraswati, Jamvunadi, Sitā, Gangā, and Sindhu as the seventh.[48] The supreme Lord hath (himself) made the arrangement with reference to that inconceivable and celestial stream. It is there that sacrifices† have been performed (by gods and *Rishis*) on a thousand occasions after the end of the *Yuga* (when creation begins).[49] As regards the Saraswati, in some parts (of her course) she becometh visible and in some parts not so. This celestial seven-fold Gangā is widely known over the three worlds.[50] *Rākshasas* reside on Himavat, *Guhyakas* on Hemakuta, and serpents and Nāgas on Nishadha, and ascetics or Gokarna.[51] The Cweta mountains are said to be the abode of the celestials and the *Asuras*. The *Gan-*

---

* The sacred stream Gangā is believed to have three currents. In heaven the current is called *Mandākini*; on earth, it is called *Gangà*; and in the sub-terraneous world it is called *Bhogavati*—T.

† The Bengal texts, excepting the Burdwan one, incorrectly read *Cakram for Satram*.—T.

dharvas always reside on Nishadha, and the regenerate *Rishis* on Nila. The mountains of Cringavat also are regarded as the resort of the celestials.[52]

" 'These then, O great king, are the seven *Varshas* of the world as they are divided. Diverse creatures, mobile* and immobile, are placed in them all.[53] Diverse kinds of prosperity, both providential and human, are noticeable in them.[54] Tney are incapable of being counted. Those desirous, however, of their own good believe (all this).[55] I have now told thee of that delightful region (of land) of the form of a hare about which thou hadst asked me. At the extremities of that region are the two *Vārshas, viz,* one on the north and the other on the south. Those two also have now been told to thee.[56] Then again the two islands *Nāga-dwipa* and *Kaçyapa-dwipa* are the two ears of this region of the from of a hare. The beautiful mountains of Malaya, O king, having rocks like plates of copper, form another (prominent) part of Jamvudwipa that making its shape resemble a hare.' "[57]

SECTION VII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, O thou of great intelligence, of the regions to the north and the east side of Meru, as also of the mountains of Mālyavat, in detail.†[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'On the south of the Nila mountain and the northern side of Meru are the sacred *Northern Kurus,* O king, which are the residence of the *Siddhas.*[2] The trees there bear sweet fruits, and are always covered with fruits and flowers. All the flowers (there) are fragrant, and the fruits, of excellent taste.[3] Some of the trees, again, O king, yield fruits according to (the) will (of the plucker). There are again some other trees, O king, that are called *milk-yielding.*[4] These always yield milk and the six different kinds of

---

* The correct reading is *Gātimanti.* Many of the Bengal texts incorrectly read *matimanti,* which is unmeaning.—T.

† Many of the Bengal texts incorrectly read *Merorapyantaram* for *Merorathottaram.*—T.

food of the taste of *Amrita* itself. Those trees also yield cloths and in their fruits are ornaments (for the use of man).[5] The entire land abounds with fine golden sands. A portion of the region there, extremely delightful, is seen to be possessed of the radiance of the ruby or diamond, or of the *lapis lazuli* or other jewels and gems.* All the seasons there are agreeable and nowhere does the land become miry, O king.[6-7] The tanks are charming, delicious, and full of crystal water.† The men born there have dropped from the world of the celestials.‡[8] All are of pure birth and all are extremely handsome in appearance. There twins (of opposite sexes) are born and the women resemble *Apsarās* in beauty.[9] They drink the milk, sweet as *Amrita*, of those milk-yielding trees (already mentioned). And the twins born there (of opposite sexes) grow up equally.[10] Both possessed of equal beauty, both endued with similar virtues, and both equally dressed, both grow up in love like, O monarch, a couple of *chakravākas*.[11] The people of that country are free from illness and are always cheerful. Ten thousand and ten hundred years[12] they live, O king, and never abandon one another. A class of birds called *Bhārundā*, furnished with sharp beaks and possessed of great strength,[13] take them up when dead and throw them into mountain caves. I have now described to thee, O king, the Northern Kurus briefly.[14]

"'I will now describe to thee the eastern side of Meru duly. Of all the regions there, the foremost, O king, is called Bhadrāçwa,[15] where is a large forest of *Bhadra-çālas*, as also a huge tree called *Kālāmra*. This *Kālāmra*, O king, is always graced with fruits and flowers.§[16] That tree again is

---

* This *sloka* beginning with *mani* and ending with *prabhām* is omitted in the Bombay text I don't think rightly. If anything that seems to be a repetition is to be omitted, half the *Mahābhārata* as it now exists, would then have to be pronounced not genuine.—T.

† This line is omitted, without any reason, in the Burdwan text.—T.

‡ *I. e.* "have fallen away from a celestial state."—T.

§ In *sloka* 13, the Bengal texts read *Bhayānakás* for *mahāvalas*, In 15, *murdhádbhishekas* for *Purvābhishekas* is substituted in the Bombay text. In 16 again the Bombay text reads *Cubhas* for *drumas*. There are some minor discrepancies from 13 to 16 which need not be noticed.—T.

a *Yojana* in height and is adored by the *Siddhas* and the *Chāranas*. The men there are all of a white complexion, endued with great energy, and possessed of great strength.[17] The women are of the complexion of lilies, very beautiful, and agreeable to sight. Possessed of the radiance of the moon,* and white as the moon, their faces are as the full moon.[18] Their bodies again are as cool as the rays of the moon, and they are all accomplished in singing and dancing. The period of human life there, O bull of Bharata's race, is ten thousand years.[19] Drinking the juice of the *Kālāmra* they continue youthful for ever. On the south of Nila and the north of Nishadha,[20] there is a huge *Jamvu* tree that is eternal. Adored by the *Siddhas* and the *Chāranas*, that sacred tree granteth every wish.[21] After the name of that tree this division hath ever been called *Jamvudwipa*. O bull of Bharata's race, a thousand and a hundred *Yojanas*[22] is the height of that prince of trees, which touches the very heavens, O king of men! Two thousand and five hundred cubits[23] measure the circumference of a fruit of that tree which bursts when ripe. In falling upon the earth these fruits make a loud noise,[24] and then pour out, O king, a silvery juice on the ground. That juice of the *Jamvu*, becoming, O king, a river,[25] and passing circuitously round Meru, cometh to the (region of the) Northern Kurus. If the juice of that fruit is quaffed, it conduces to peace of mind. No thirst is felt ever after, O king! Decrepitude never weakens them. And there a species of gold called *Jāmvunada* and used for celestial ornaments,[26-27] very brilliant and like the complexion of *Indragopaka* insects, is produced. The men born there are of the complexion of the morning sun.[28]

"'On the summit of Mālyavat is always seen, O bull of Bharata's race, the fire called *Samvartaka* which blazeth forth at the end of the *Yuga* for the destruction of the universe.[29] On Mālyavat's summit towards the east are many small mountains, and Mālyavat, O king, measures eleven thou-

* The Bengal texts have *Chandrābhāsa* for *chandraprabhā*. The difference is not material.—T.

sand* *Yojanas.*[30] The men born there are of the complexion of gold. And they are all fallen from the region of *Brahman* and are utterers of *Brahma.*[31] They undergo the severest of ascetic austerities, and their vital seed is drawn up. For the protection of creatures they all enter the sun.[32] Numbering sixtysix thousand, they proceed in advance of *Aruna*, surrounding the sun.[33] Heated with the sun's rays for sixtysix thousand years they then enter the lunar disc.' "[34]

SECTION VIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me truly, O Sanjaya, the names of all the *Varshas*, and of all the mountains, and also of all those that dwell on those mountains.'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'On the south of Cweta and the north of Nishadha, is the *Varsha* called Romanaka. The men that are born there[2] are all of white complexions, of good parentage, and handsome features. And the men born there are also all without enemies.[3] And they live, O king, for eleven thousand and five hundred years, being ever of cheerful hearts.[4] On the south of Nishadha is the *Varsha* called Hiranmaya where is the river called Hiranwati.[5] There, O king, liveth that foremost of birds named Garuda. And the people there, O monarch, are all followers of the *Yakshas*, wealthy, and of handsome features.[6] And, O king, the men there are endued with great strength and have cheerful hearts. And they live for twelve thousand and five hundred years, O king, which is the measure of their lives. The mountains of Cringavat, O ruler of men, have three beautiful summits.[7-8] One of these is made of jewels and gems; another is very wonderful, being made of all kinds of gems and adorned with palatial mansions.[9] There the self-luminous lady named Cāndili always liveth. On the north of Cringavat and up to the margent of the sea, O king,[10] is the *Varsha* called Airāvat.

---

* Both the Burdwan and the Bombay editions read *Pānchashat* (five and six). The Bengal texts generally have *panchāçat* (fifty).—T.

And because this jewelled mountain is there, therefore is this *Varsha* superior to all.* The sun giveth no heat there and the men are not subject to decay.[11] And the moon there, with the stars, becoming the only source of light, covereth (the firmament). Possessing the radiance and complexion of the lotus, and endued with eyes that resemble lotus-petals,[12] the men born there have the fragrance of the lotus. With winkless eyes, and agreeable scent (emanating from their bodies), they go without food and have their senses under control.[13] They are all fallen from the region of the celestials, and are all, O king, without sin of any kind. And they live, O monarch, for thirteen thousand years, that being, O best of the Bharatas, the measure of their lives. And so on the north of the milky ocean, the Lord[14-15] Hari of unlimited puissance dwelleth on his car made of gold. That vehicle is endued with eight wheels, with numerous supernatural creatures stationed on it, and having the speed of the mind.[16] And its complexion is that of fire, and it is endued with mighty energy and adorned with *Jāmvunada* gold. He is the Lord of all creatures, and is possessed, O bull of Bharata's race, of every kind of prosperity.[17] In him the universe merges (when dissolution comes), and from him it again emanates (when the creative desire seizes him). He is the actor, and it is He that makes all others act. He, O monarch, is earth, water, space, air, and fire. He is Sacrifice's self unto all creatures, and fire is His mouth !' "[18]

Vaiçampāyana continued.—"The high-souled king Dhritarāshtra, thus addressed by Sanjaya, became, O monarch, absorbed in meditation about his sons.[19] Endued with great energy, he then, having reflected, said these words :—'Without doubt, O *Suta's* son, it is Time that destroyeth the universe.[20] And it is Time that again createth everything. Nothing here is eternal. It is Nara and Nārāyana, endued with omniscience,

* The Bombay edition reads *Tàsmát-çringamatās param.* The Bengal texts read *Yasmāt-çringamatas param.* The Bengal reading is better. The Asiatic Society's edition contains a misprint. The meaning is, "Because *Çringa* (jewelled mountain of that name) therefore superior." I have rendered it somewhat freely.—T.

that destroyeth all creatures.* The gods speak of him as *Vaikuntha* (of immeasurable puissance), while men call Him *Vishnu* (one that pervadeth the Universe)!' "[21]

SECTION IX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me truly (O Sanjaya) of this *Varsha* that is called after Bharata, where this senseless force hath been collected, in respect of which this my son Duryodhana hath been so very covetous, which the sons of Pāndu also are desirous of obtaining, and in which my mind too sinketh! O, tell me this, for thou art, in my judgment, endued with intelligence.'[1-2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Listen to me, O king! The sons of Pāndu are *not* covetous about this country. On the other hand, it is Duryodhana that is covetous, and Cakuni the son of Suvala,[3] as also many other Kshatriyas who are rulers of provinces, and who being covetous of this country are not able to bear one another.[4] I will now tell thee, O thou of Bharata's race, of the tract of land known by Bharata's name. This land is the beloved one of Indra, and, O thou of Bharata's race, this land, O monarch, that is called after Bharata, is also the beloved land of Manu the son of Vivaswat, of Prithu, of Vainya, of the high-souled Ikshāku, of Yayāti, of Amvarisha, of Māndhātri, of Nahusha, of Muchukunda, of Civi the son of Uçinara, of Rishabha, of Ila, of king Nriga, of Kuçika, O invincible one, of the high-souled Gādhi, of Somaka, O irrepressible one, and of Dwilipa, and also, O monarch, of many other mighty Kshatriyas! I will now, O chastiser of foes, describe to thee that country as I have heard of it.[5-9] Listen to me, O king, as I speak of what thou hast asked me. Mahendra, Malaya, Sahya, Cuktimat, Rikshavat,[10] Vindhya, and Pāripatra, —these seven are (the) *Kula*-mountains† (of *Bhārata-varsha*). Besides these, O king, there are thousands of mountains[11] that are unknown, of hard make, huge, and having excellent

---

* They are but portions of the same Supreme Being.—T.

† *I. e.* mountains forming boundaries of divisions.—T.

valleys. Besides these there are many other smaller mountains inhabited by barbarous tribes.[12] Aryans and *Mlecchas*, O Kauravya, and many races, O lord, mixed of the two elements, drink the waters of the following rivers, *viz*, magnificient Gangā, Sindhu, and Saraswati ;[13] of Godāvari, and Narmadā, and that large river called Vāhudā ; of Catadru, and Chandrabhāgā, and the large river called Yamunā ;[14] of Drishadwati, and Vipāçā, and Vipāpā, and Sthulavālukā ; of the river Vetravati, and that other one called Krishna-vennā.[15] of Irāvati, and Vitastā, and Payoshni, and Devikā ; of Vedasmritā, and Vedavati, and Tridivā, and Ikshumālavi ;*[16] of Karishini, and Chitravahā, and the river called Chitrasenā ; of Gomati, and Dhutapāpā, and the large river called Gandaki;†[17] of Kauçiki, and Nischitā, and Kirtyā, and Nichitā, and Lohatārini ;‡ of Rahasi, and Catakumbhā, and also Sarayu ;[18] of Charmanwati, and Vetravati, and Hastisomā, and Diça ;§ of the river called Carāvati, and Vennā, and Bhimarathi ;[19] of Kāveri, and Chulukā, and Vinā, and Catavalā ; of Nivārā, and Mahilā, and Suprayogā, O king ;[20] of Pavitrā, and Kundalā, and Rājani, and Puramālini ; of Purvābhirāmā, and Virā, and Bhimā, and Oghavati ;[21] of Palāçini, and Pāpaharā, and Mahendrā, and Pātalāvati ; of Karishini, and Asikni, and the large river Kuçachirā ;[22] of Makari, and Pravarā, and Menā, and Hemā, and Dhritavati ; of Purāvati, and Anushnā, and Saivyā, and Kāpi, O Bhārata ;[23] of Sadānirā, and Adhrishyā, and the mighty stream Kuçadhārā ; of Sadākāntā, and Civā, and Viravati ;[24] of Vāstu, and Suvāstu, and Kampanā with Hiranwati ; of Varā, and the mighty river Panchami ;[25] of

---

* The Bombay text reads "Ikshulā and Krimi" for "Ikshumālavi" occuring in the Bengal texts.—T.

† The Bengal texts have *Gandakincha mahānadim*. The Bombay text reads *Vandanāncha mahānadim* with a *cha* immediately before. The Burdwan Pundits read *Chandanāncha mahānadim*.—T.

‡ The Bombay text reads *Tridivā* for *Nischitā* ; this is incorrect, for *Tridivā* occurs in the Bombay text itself a little before. The name *Lohatārini* occurs in various forms.—T.

§ For *Vetravāti* the Bengal texts read *Chandrabhāgā*. Both *Chandrabhāgā* and *Vetravati*, however, occur before.—T.

Rathachitrā, and Jyotirathā, and Viçwāmitrā, and Kapinjalā; of Upendrā, and Vahulā, and Kuchirā, and Madhuvāhini;[26] of Vinadi; and Pinjalā, and Venā, and the great river Tungavenā; of Vidiçā, and Krishna-venā, and Tāmrā, and Kapilā;[27] of Calu, and Suvāmā, and Vedaçwā, and the mighty river Hariçrāvā; of Cighrā, and Picchalā, and the river Bhāradwāji;[28] of the river Kauçiki, and Conā, and Chandramā; of Durgāmantraçilā, and Brahma-voddhyā, and Vrihadvati;[29] of Yavakshā, and Rohi, and Yāmvunadi; of Sunasā, and Tamasā, and Dāsi, and Vasā, and Varunā, and Asi;[30] of Nilā, and Dhritimati, and the mighty river Parnāçā; of Tāmasi, and Vrishabhā, and Brahma-meddhyā, and Vrihaddhani.[31] These and many other large rivers, O king, such as Sadānirāmayā, and Krishnā, and Mandagā, and Mandavāhini;[32] and Brahmāni, and Mahāgouri, and Durgā, O Bhārata; and Chitropalā, and Chitrarathā, and Manjulā, and Vāhini;[33] and Mandākini, and Vaitarani, and Koçā, and Mahānadi; and Cuktimati, and Anangā, and Pushpaveni, and Utpalāvati;[34] and Lohityā, and Karatoyā, and Vrishasāhbhayā; and Kumāri, and Rishikullyā, and Mārishā, and Saraswati;[35] and Mandākini, and Supunyā, and Sarvasangā, O Bhārata, are all mothers of the universe, and productive of great merit![36] Besides these, there are rivers, by hundreds and thousands, that are not known (by names). I have now recounted to thee, O king, all the rivers as far as I remember![*37]

"'After this, listen to the names of the provinces as I mention them.† They are the Kuru-Pānchālas, the Cālwas,

---

* It is impossible in the above list to notice, without largely swelling the notes, all the discrepancies of reading that occur in the various texts. Many of the names given in one edition would not agree with those given in another. Considering, again, that most of these names are not capable of identification, the selection of the right reading is exceedingly difficult.—T.

† In Sanskrit, the provinces are called after the people or tribe inhabiting them; thus *Magadha* is frequently mentioned as "the country of the *Magadhas*." So also, it is not the king of *Magadha* but the king of the *Magadhas*. The names below, therefore, are all names of tribes and not places.—T.

the Mādreyas, the Jāngalas,[38] the Curasenas, the Kalingas, the Vodhas, the Mālas, the Matsyas, the Sakutyas, the Savualyas, the Kuntalas, the Kāçi-koçalas,[39] the Chedis, the Karushas, the Bhojas, the Sindhus, the Pulindakas, the Uttamas, the Daçārnas, the Mekalas, the Utkalas;[40] the Pānchālas, the Kauçijas, the Naikaprishthas, the Dhurandharas; the Sodhas, the Madrabhujingas, the Kāçis, and the further-Kāçis;[41] the Jatharas, the Kukuras, the Daçārnas, O Bhārata; the Kuntis, the Avantis, and the further Kuntis;[42] the Gomantas, the Mandakas, the Shandas, the Vidarbhas, the Rupavāhikas; the Açwakas, the Pānçurāshtras, the Goparāshtras, and Karityas;[43] the Adhirjays, the Kulādyas, the Mallarāshtras, the Keralas, the Vāratrāçyas, the Apavāhas, the Chakras, the Vakratapas, the Cakas;[44] the Videhas, the Māgadhas, the Swakshas, the Malayas, the Vijayas; the Angas, the Vangas, the Kalingas, the Yakrillomans;[45] the Mallas, the Sudellas, the Prahrādas, the Māhikas, the Cāçikas; the Vālhikas, the Vātadhānas, the Abhiras, the Kālajoshakas;[46] the Aparāntas, the Parāntas, the Pahnabhas, the Charmamandalas; the Ataviçikharas, the Merubhutas, O sire;[47] the Upāvirttas, the Anupāvritlas, the Surāshatras, Kekayas; the Kuttas, the Māheyas, the Kakshas, the Sāmudranishkutas;[48] the Andhras, and, O king, many hilly tribes, and many tribes residing on lands lying at the foot of the hills, and the Angamalajas, and the Mānavanjakas;[49] the Mahyuttas, the Prāvisheyas, and the Bhārgavas, O king; the Pundras, the Bhārgas, the Kirātas, the Sudeshnas, and the Yāmunas;[50] the Cakas, the Nishadas, the Nishadhas, the Ānartas, the Nairitas, the Durgalas, the Pratimāsyas, the Kuntalas, and the Kuçalas;[51] the Tiragrahas, the Ijakas, the Kanyakāgunas, the Tilabhāras, the Samiras, the Madhumattas, the Sukandakas;[52] the Kaçmiras, the Sindhu-sauviras, the Gāndhārvas, and the Darçakas; the Abhisāras, the Utulas, the Caivālas, and the Vālhikas;[53] the Darvis, the Vānavādarvas, the Vātagas, the Āmarathas, and the Uragas; the Vāhuvādhas, the Kauravyas, the Sudāmanas, the Sumāllikas;[54] the Vadhras, the Karishakas, the Kalindas, and the Upatyakas; the Vātāyanas, the Romanas, and the Kuçavindas;[55] the Kacchas, the Gopālakacchas, the Kuruvarnakas; the Kirātas,

the Varvaras, the Siddhas, the Vaidehas, and the Tāmraliptas;[56] the Aundras, the Paundras, the Saisikatas, and the Pārvatiyas, O sire!

"'There are other kingdoms, O bull of Bharata's race, in the south.[57] They are the Drāvidas, the Keralas, the Prāchyas, the Mushikas, and the Vanavāshikas; the Kārnātakas, the Māhishakas, the Vikalpas, and also the Mushakas;[58] the Jhillikas, the Kuntalas, the Sauhridas, and the Nalakānanas; the Kankutakas, the Cholas, and the Mālavānakas;[59] the Samangas, the Kanakas, the Kukkuras, and the Angāramārishas; the Samangas, the Karakas, the Kukuras, the Angāras, the Mārishas; the Dhwajinis, the Utsavas, the Sanketas, the Trigartas, and the Cālwasenis;[60] the Vakas, the Kokarakas, the Pashtris, and the Samavegavaças; the Vindhyachulakas, the Pulindas, and the Valkalas;[61] the Mālavas, the Vallavas, the futher-Vallavas, the Kulindas, the Kālavas, the Kuntakas, and the Karatas;[62] the Mrishakas, the Tanavālas, the Saniyas; the Alindas, the Pāçivātas, the Tanayas, and the Sulānayas;[63] the Rishikas the Vidarbhas, the Kākas, the Tanganas, and the further-Tanganas. Among the tribes of the north are the Mlecchas, and the Kruras, O best of the Bharatas;[64] the Yavanas, the Chinas, the Kāmvojas, the Dārunas, and many Mleccha tribes; the Sukritvahas, the Kulatthas, the Hunas, and the Pārasikas;[65] the Ramanas, the Chinas, and the Daçamālikās. These countries are, besides, the abodes of many Kshatriya, Vaiçya, and Cudra tribes.[66] Then again there are the Cudra-ābhiras, the Daradas, the Kāçmiras, and the Pattis; the Khaçiras, the Antachāras, the Phalhavas, and the Giri-gahbharas;[67] the Ātreyas, the Bharadwājas, the Stanaposhikas, the Poshakas, the Kalingas, and diverse tribes of Kirātas;[68] the Tomaras, the Hansamārgas, and the Karamanjakas. These and other kingdoms are on the east and the north. O lord, alluding to them briefly I have told thee all![69] Earth, if its resources are properly developed according to its qualities and prowess, is like an ever-yielding* cow, from which the three-fold fruits

* *Kāmadhuk* is that species of kine which always yield milk.—T.

of virtue, profit, and pleasure, may be milked.[70] Brave kings conversant with virtue and profit have become covetous of Earth. Endued with activity, they would even cast away their lives in battle, from hunger of wealth.[71] Earth is certainly the refuge of creatures endued with celestial bodies as also of creatures endued with human bodies.* Desirous of enjoying Earth, the kings, O chief of the Bharatas, have become like dogs that snatch meat from one another. Their ambition is unbounded, knowing no gratification.†[72-73] It is for this that the Kurus and the Pāndavas are striving for possession of Earth, by negotiation, disunion, gift, and battle, O Bhārata![74] If Earth be well looked to, it becometh the father, mother, children, firmament, and heaven, of all creatures, O bull among men!' "[75]

SECTION X.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, of the period of life, the strength, the good and bad things, the future, past, and present, of the residents, O *Suta*, of this *Varsha* of Bharata, and of the Haimavat-varsha, as also of Hari-varsha, in detail!'[1-2]

"Sanjaya said,—'O bull of Bharata's race, four *Yugas* set in Bharata's *Varsha, viz, Krita, Tretā, Dwāpara,* and *Kali.*[3] The *Yuga* that sets in first is *Tretā,* O lord! After expiry of *Tretā* comes *Dwāpara*; and after that, last of all, sets in *Kali.*[4] Four thousand years, O best of the Kurus, are

---

* Nilakantha explains this in this way. The gods depend on sacrifices performed by human beings; and as regards human beings, their food is supplied by the Earth. The superior and inferior creatures, therefore, are all supported by the Earth; the Earth then is their refuge. The word Earth in these *slokas* is sometimes used to signify the world and sometimes the element of that name.—T.

† I render the last line a little too freely. If the saying is intended to be general, the translation should run thus!—"Up to this day there has been no man whose desires can be sated."—T.

reckoned as the measure of life, O best of kings, in the *Krita* epoch.[5] Three-thousand years is the period in *Tretā*, O ruler of men. At present, in *Dwāpara*, persons live on Earth for two thousand years.[6] In *Kali*, however, O bull of Bharata's race, there is no fixed limit of life's measure, in so much that men die while in the womb as also soon after birth.[7] In the *Krita* age, O king, men are born and beget children, by hundreds and thousands, that are of great strength and great power, endued with the attribute of great wisdom, and possessed of wealth and handsome features. In that age are born and begotten *Munis* endued with wealth of asceticism, capable of great exertion, possessed of high souls, and virtuous, and truthful in speech. The Kshatriyas also, born in that age, are of agreeable features, able-bodied, possessed of great energy, accomplished in the use of the bow, highly skilled in battle, and exceedingly brave. In the *Tretā* age, O king, all the Kshatriya kings were emperors ruling from sea to sea.[8-11] In *Tretā* are begotten brave Kshatiryas not subject to any one, endued with long lives, possessed of heroism, and wielding the bow in battle with great skill.*[12] When *Dwāpra* sets in, O king, all the (four) orders born become capable of great exertion, endued with great energy, and desirous of conquering one another.[13] The men born in *Kali*, O king, are endued with little energy, highly wrathful, covetous, and untruthful.[14] Jealousy, pride, anger, deception, malice, and covetousnuss, O Bhārata, are the atttributes of creatures in the *Kali* age.[15] The portion that remains, O king, of this the *Dwāpara* age, is small, O ruler of men. The *Varsha* known as Haimavata is superior to Bhāratavarsha, while Harivarsha is superior to Haimavatvarsha, in respect of all qualities.' "[16]

---

* This *sloka* is omitted in the Bombay text, without reason.—T.

SECTION XI.

Bhumi Parva.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Thou hast, O Sanjaya, duly described Jamvu-khanda to me. Tell me now its dimensions and extent truly![1] Tell me also, O Sanjaya, of the extent of the ocean, of Cākadwipa, and Kuçadwipa,[2] of Cālmalidwipa and Kraunchadwipa, truly and without leaving anything, and tell me also, O son of Gavalgani, of *Rāhu* and *Shoma*, and *Surya*![3]

"Sanjaya said,—'There are, O king, many islands, with which the Earth is expanded. I will describe to thee, however, only seven islands, and the moon and the sun, and the planet *(Rāhu)*, also.[4] The *Jamvu* mountain, O king, extends for full eighteen thousand and six hundred *Yojanas*.[5] The extent of the salt ocean is said to be twice this. That ocean is covered with many kingdoms, and is adorned with gems and corals.[6] It is, besides, decked with many mountains that are variegated with metals of diverse kinds. Thickly peopled by *Siddas* and *Chāranas*, the ocean is circular in form.[7]

" 'I will now tell thee truly of Cākadwipa, O Bhārata! Listen to me, O son of Kuru's race, as I describe it to thee duly![8] That island, O ruler of men, is of twice the extent of Jamvudwipa. And the ocean also, O great king, is of twice the extent of that island.[9] Indeed, O best of the Bharatas, Cākadwipa is surrounded on all sides by the ocean. The kingdoms there are full of righteousness, and the men there never die.[10] How can famine take place there? The people are all endued with forgiveness and great energy. I have now, O bull of Bharata's race, given thee duly a brief description of Cākadwipa. What else, O king, dost thou wish to hear?"*[11]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Thou hast given me, O Sanjaya, a description of Cākadwipa in brief. O thou that art possessed of great wisdom, tell me now everything in detail truly!'[12]

---

* The Bombay text reads *Kimanyat Kathayāmi te.* The Bengal reading is *Kimanyat çrotumicchasi.*—T.

"Sanjaya said,—'In that island, O king, there are seven mountains that are decked with jewels and that are mines of gems and precious stones. There are many rivers also in that island. Listen to me as I recount their names.[13] Everything there, O king, is excellent and delightful. The first of these mountains is called Meru. It is the abode of the gods, *Rishis*, and *Gandharvas*.[14] The next mountain, O king, is called Malaya streching towards the east. It is there that the clouds are generated and it is thence that they disperse on all sides.[15] The next, O thou of Kuru's race, is the large mountain called Jaladhāra.* Thence Indra daily taketh water of the best quality.[16] It is from that water that we get showers in the season of rains, O ruler of men! Next cometh the high mountain called Raivataka, over which, in the firmament, hath been permanently placed the constellaion called *Revati*. This arrangement hath been made by the Grandsire himself. On the north of this, O great king, is the large mountain called Cyāma.[17-18] It hath the splendour of newly-risen clouds, is very high, beautiful and of bright body. And since the hue of those mountains is dark, the people residing there are all dark in complexion, O king!'[19]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'A great doubt ariseth in my mind, O Sanjaya, from what thou hast said. Why, O *Suta's* son, would the people there be of dark complexions?'[20]

"Sanjaya said,—'O great king, in all islands, O son of Kuru's race, men may be found that are fair, and those that are dark, and those also that are produced by a union of the fair and the dark races.[21] But because the people there are all dark, therefore is that mountain called the Dark Mountain.† After this, O chief of the Kurus, is the large mountain called Durgāçaila.[22] And then cometh the mountain called Keçari. The breezes that blow from that mountain are all charged with

---

* The Bombay text reads *Tatas parena*; the Bengal reading is *Tatas purvena*. I adopt the former.—T.

† The last line of the 21st *sloka* and the first line of the 22nd are read otherwise in the Bengal texts. I have adopted the Bombay reading.—T.

(orderiferous) effluvia. The measure of each of these mountains is double that of the one mentioned immediately before.[23] O thou of Kuru's race, it hath been said by the wise that there are seven *Varshas* in that island. The *Varsha* of Meru is called Mahākāça; that of the water-giving (Malaya) is called Kumudottara.[24] The *Varsha* of Jaladhāra is called Sukumāra; while that of Raivataka is called Kaumāra; and of Cyāma, Manikānchana.[25] The *Varsha* of Keçara is called Mandaki, and that called after the next mountain is called Mahāpumān. In the midst of that island is a large tree called *Çāka*. In height and breadth the measure of that tree is equal to that of the *Jamvu* true in Jamvudwipa. And the people there always adore that tree.[26-27] There in that island are many delightful provinces where Civa is worshipped, and thither repair the *Siddas*, the *Chāranas*, and the celestials.[28] The people there, O king, are virtuous, and all the four orders, O Bhārata, are devoted to their respective occupations. No instance of theft can be seen there.[29] Freed from decrepitude and death, and gifted with long life, the people there, O king, grow like rivers during the season of rains.[30] The rivers there are full of sacred water, and Gangā herself, distributed as she hath been into various currents, is there. Sukumāri, and Kumāri, and Setā, and Kāverakā,[31] and Mahānadi, O Kauravya, and the river Manijalā, and Chakshus, and the river Vardhanika, O thou best of the Bharatas,[32]—these and many other rivers by thousands and hundreds, all full of sacred water, are there, O perpetuator of Kuru's race, from which Vāsava draweth water for showering it as rain.[33] It is impossible to recount the names and lengths of those rivers. All of them are foremost of rivers and sin-cleansing.[34] As heard by all men, there, in that island of Cāka, are four sacred provinces. They are the Mrigas, the Maçakas, the Mānasas, and the Mandagas.[35] The Mrigas for the most part are Brāhamanas devoted to the occupations of their order. Amongst the Maçakas are virtuous Kshatriyas granting (unto Brāhmanas) every wish (entertained by them).[36] The Mānasas, O king, live by following the duties of the Vaiçya order. Having every wish of theirs gratified, they are also brave and

firmly devoted to virtue and profit.[37] The Mandagas are all brave Cudras of virtuous behaviour. In these provinces, O monarch, there is no king, no punishment, no person that deserves to be punished.[38] Conversant with the dictates of duty, they are all engaged in the practice of their respective duties and protect one another. This much is capable of being said of the island called Cāka. This much also should be listened to about that island endued with great energy.' "*[39]

SECTION XII.

"Sanjaya said,—'O Kauravya, that which is heard about the islands in the north, I will recount to thee, O great king! Listen to me now![1] (Thither in the north) is the ocean whose water's are clarified butter. Then is the ocean whose waters are curds. Next cometh the ocean whose waters are wine, and then is another ocean of water.[2] The islands, O king, are double in area of one another as they proceed further and further towards the north. And they are surrounded, O king, by these oceans.†[3] In the island that is in the middle, there is a large mountain called Goura made of red arsenic; while on the western island, O king, is the mountain called Krishna that is the favourite (abode) of Nārāyana.[4] There Keçava guardeth celestial gems (in profusion), and thence, inclined to grace, he bestoweth happiness on creatures.[5] Along with the kingdoms there, O king, the (celestial) clump of *Kuça* grass in Kuçadwipa, and the *Çālmali* tree in the island of Cālmalika, are adored.[6] In the Krauncha island also, the mountain called Mahā-krauncha, that is a mine of all kinds of

---

* Probably this mythical account of *Cākadwipa* embodies some vague tradition current in ancient India of some *republic* in Eastern Asia or Oceanic Asia (further east in the Pacific). Accustomed as the Hindus were to kingly form of government, a government without a king would strike them exactly in the way described in the last two *slokas*.—T.

† The second line of the 3rd *sloka* is read variously. The Bombay edition incorrectly reads *Parvatāçcha* &c., &c.; the Bengal reading is *Evameva* &c., &c. The Bengal reading is better, although the true reading, I apprehend, is *Evametais* &c., &c.—T.

gems, is, O king, always adored by all the four orders of men.[7] (There), O monarch, is the mountain called Gomanta that is huge and consists of all kinds of metals, and whereon always resideth, mingling with those that have been emancipated, the puissant Nārāyana, otherwise called Hari, graced with prosperity and possessed of eyes like lotus leaves. In Kuçadwipa, O king of kings, there is another mountain variegated with corals[8-9] and called after the name of that island itself. This mountain is inaccessible and made of gold. Possessed of great splendour, O Kauravya, there is a third mountain there that is called Kumida.[10] The fourth mountain is named Pushpavati, and the fifth is Kuçeçaya. The sixth is called Harigiri. These are the six principal mountains.[11] The intervening spaces between one another of these six mountains increaseth in the ratio of one to two as they proceed further and further towards the north. The first *Varsha* is called Audbhida ; the second is Venumandala ;[12] the third is called Suratha; the fourth is known by the name of Kamvala. The fifth *Varsha* is called Dhritimat ; and the sixth is named Prabhākara.[13] The seventh *Varsha* is called Kapila. These are the seven successive *Varshas*. In these, gods and *Gandharvas*, and other creatures of the universe,[14] sport and take delight. In these *Varshas* the inhabitants never die. There, O king, are no robbers, nor any tribes of *Mlecchas*.[15] All the residents are almost white in complexion, and are very delicate, O king !

"'As regards the rest of the islands, O ruler of men, I will recount[16] all that hath been heard (by me). Listen, O monarch, with an attentive mind ! In the Krauncha island, O great king, there is a large mountain called Krauncha.[17] Next to Krauncha is Vāmanaka ; and next to Vāmana is Andhakāraka. And next to Andhakāra,* O king, is that excellent of mountains called Maināka.[18] After Maināka, O monarch, is that best of mountains called Govinda ; and after Govinda, O king, is the mountain called Nivida.[19] O multi-

* Vāmanaka and Vāmana are the same words, the final *ka* being a suffix causing no difference of meaning. So Andhakāraka and Andhakāra are the same.—T.

plier of thy race, the intervening spaces between one another of these mountains increaseth in the ratio of one to two. I will now tell thee the countries that lie there. Listen to me as I speak of them![20] The region near Krauncha is called Kuçala; that near Vāmana is Manonuga. The region next to Manonuga, O perpetuator of Kuru's race, is called Ushna.[21] After Ushna is Prāvaraka; and after Prāvara is Andhakāraka. The country after Andhakāraka is named Munideça.[22] After Munideça the region is called Dundubhiswana teeming with *Siddhas* and *Chāranas*. The people are almost white in complexion, O king.[23] All these countries, O monarch, are the habitations of gods and *Gandharvas*. In (the island of) Pushkara is a mountain called Pushkara that abounds with jewels and gems.[24] There always dwelleth the divine *Prajāpati* himself. Him all the gods and great *Rishis* always adore[25] with gratifying words and worship reverently, O king! Diverse gems from Jamvudwipa are used there.[26] In all these islands, O king, the *Brahmacharyya*, truth, and self-control of the dwellers, as also their health and periods of life, are in the ratio of one to two as the islands are more and more remote (northwards). O king, the land in all those islands, O Bhārata, comprises but one country,[27-28] for that is said to be one country in which one religion is met with. The Supreme *Prajāpati* himself, upraising the rod of chastisement,[29] always dwelleth there, protecting those islands. He, O monarch, is the king, He is their source of bliss, He is the father, and He is the grand-father![30] He it is, O best of men, that protecteth all creatures there, mobile or immobile. Cooked food, O Kauravya, cometh there of itself, and the creatures eat it daily, O mighty-armed one! After these regions is seen a habitation of the name of Samā.[31-32] It is of a starry shape, having four corners, and it hath, O king, thirtythree *mandalas*. There dwell, O Kauravya, four princely* elephants adored by all. They are, O best of the Bharatas, Vāmana, and Airāvata, and another, and also Supratika, O king, with

---

* *Dig-gaja*, *i. e.*, an elephant supporting the globe. There are four such in Hindu mythology or ten acording to some accounts.—T.

rent cheeks and mouth.*[33-34] I do not venture to calculate the proportions of these four elephants. Their length, breadth, and thickness have for ever remained unascertained.†[35] There in those regions, O king, winds blow irregularly‡ from all directions. These are seized by those elephants[36] with the tips of their trunks which are of the complexion of the lotus and endued with great splendour and capable of drawing up everything in their way. And soon enough after seizing them they then always let them out.[37] The winds, O king, thus let out by those respiring elephants, come over the Earth and in consequence thereof creatures draw breath and live.'[38]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Thou hast, O Sanjaya, told me everything about the first subject very elaborately. Thou hast also indicated the positions of the islands. Tell now, O Sanjaya, about what remains!'[39]

"Sanjaya said,—'Indeed, O great king, the islands have all been described to thee. Listen now to what I truly say about the heavenly bodies and about Swarbhānu, O chief of the Kauravas, as regards its dimensions.[40] It is heard, O king, that the planet Swarbhānu is globular. Its diameter is twelve thousand *Yojanas*,[41] and its circumference, because it is very large, is fortytwo thousand *Yojanas*, O sinless one.$ as said by the learned of olden times.[42] The diameter of the

---

* *I. e.*, with the juice trickling down from their cheeks and mouth. In the season of rut, a peculiar kind of juice issues from several parts of an elephant's body. It is believed to be the *temporal* juice. The stronger and fiercer the elephant, the greater the quantity of the juice that issues out its body.—T.

† *Tasya* (singular of *Tad)* and *sa* (masculine singular of *Tad)* both refer to the four elephants. *Gaja-chatushtaya* is singular.—T.

‡ *Asamvaddha* lit. "Unbound" or "unrestrained," *i. e.* freely or irregularly.—T.

$ It is a remarkable fact that the ratio between the diameter and the circumference of a circle was roughly known to the ancient Hindus. The circumference is nearly, as stated here, three times and a half of the diameter. The exact ratio, of course, is slightly less, being three and one-seventh.—T.

moon, O king, is stated to be eleven thousand *Yojanas.* Its circumference, O chief of the Kurus, is stated to be thirty eight thousand nine hundred *Yojanas* of this illustrious planet of cool rays.[43] It hath been heard that the diameter of the beneficent, fast-going, and light-giving Sun, O thou of Kuru's race, is ten thousand *Yojanas*, and his circumference, O king, is thirtyfive thousand eight hundred miles, in consequence of his largeness, O sinless one! These are the dimensions reckoned here, O Bhārata, of Arka.[44-46] The planet Rāhu, in consequence of his greater bulk, envelops both the Sun and the Moon in due times. I tell thee this in brief.[47] With the eye of science, O great king, I have now told thee all that thou hadst asked. Let peace be thine![48] I have now told thee about the construction of the universe as indicated in the *Çāstras.* Therefore, O Kauravya, pacify thy son Duryodhana![*49]

„'Having listened to this charming *Bhumi Parva,* O chief of the Bharatas, a Kshatriya becometh endued with prosperity, obtaineth the fruition of all his desires, and winneth the approbation of the righteous.[50]† The king who listeneth to this on days of the full moon or the new moon, carefully observing vows the while, hath the period of his life, his fame, and energy, all enhanced.[51] His (deceased) sires and grandsires become gratified. Thou hast now heard of all the merits that flow from this *Varska* of Bharata where we now are!' "[52]

---

* The first word of this *sloka* is variously read. *Yathādishtam* is the Bengal reading, while the Bombay reading is *Yathoddishtam.* If the latter reading were adopted, the meaning would be "as indicated (in the *Cástras).*" The second line, literally rendered, is "pacify thy son Duryodhana." But how Dhritarāshtra is to pacify his son having listened to this geograpical digression, it is not easy to see.—T.

† For *Sādhusattamas* of the Bengal texts, the Bombay edition reads *Sādhusammatas.* I adopt the last.—T.

SECTION XIII.

Bhagavat-Gitā Parva.

Vaiçampayana said,—"Possessing a knowledge of the past, the present, and the future, and seeing all things as if present before his eyes, the learned son of Gavalgana, O Bhārata, coming quickly from the field of battle, and rushing with grief (into the court), represented unto Dhritarāshtra who was plunged in thought that Bhismha the grandsire of the Bharatas had been slain.[1-2]

"Sanjaya said,—I am Sanjaya, O great king! I bow to thee, O bull of Bharata's race! Bhishma the son of Cāntanu and the grandsire of the Bharatas hath been slain![3] That foremost of all warriors, that grandsire of the Bharatas, hath been slain![3] That foremost of all warriors, that embodied energy of all bowmen, that grandsire of the Kurus, lieth to day on a bed of arrows![4] That Bhishma, O king, relying on whose energy thy son had engaged in that match at dice, now lieth on the field of battle, slain by Cikhandin![5] That mighty car-warrior who on a single car had vanquished in terrific combat at the city of Kāçi all the kings of the Earth mustered together,[6] he who had fearlessly fought in battle with Rāma the son of Jamadagni, he whom Jamadagni's son could not slay, oh, even hath *he* been today slain by Cikhandin![7] Resembling the great Indra himself in bravery, and Himavat in firmness, like unto the ocean itself in gravity, and the Earth herself in patience,[8] that invincible warrior having arrows for his teeth, the bow for his mouth, and the sword for his tongue, that lion among men, hath today been slain by the prince of Pānchāla![9] That slayer of heroes, beholding whom when addrest for battle the mighty army of the Pāndavas, unmanned by fear, used to tremble like a herd of kine when beholding a lion, alas, having protected that army (of thine) for ten nights and having achieved feats exceedingly difficult of accomplishment, hath set like

the Sun !*[10-11] He who like Cakra himself, scattering arrows in thousands with the utmost composure, daily slew ten thousand warriors for ten days,[12] even he, slain (by the enemy), lieth, though he deserveth it not, on the bare ground, like a (mighty) tree broken by the wind, in consequence, O king, of thy evil counsels, O Bhārata !' "[13]

SECTION XIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How hath Bhishma, that bull among the Kurus, been slain by Cikhahdin ?[1] How did my father, who resembled Vāsava himself, fall down from his car ? What became of my sons, O Sanjaya, when they were deprived of the mighty Bhishma who was like unto a celestial, and who led a life of *Brahmacharyya* for the sake of his father ?†[2] Upon the fall of that tiger among men who was endued with great wisdom, great capacity for exertion, great might, and great energy, how did our warriors feel ?‡[3] Hearing that that bull amongst the Kurus, that foremost of men, that unwavering hero is slain, great is the grief that pierceth my heart.[4] While advancing (against the foe), who followed him and who proceeded ahead ? Who stayed by his side ? Who proceeded with him ?[5] What brave combatants followed behind (protecting his rear) that tiger among car-warriors, that wonderful archer, that bull among Kshatriyas, while he penetrated into the divisions of the foe ?[6] While seizing the hostile ranks, what warriors opposed that slayer of foes resem-

---

* The last word in the first line of the 11th *sloka*, in the Bengal texts, is *Pravrihā*. In the Bombay edition it is *Anikahā*. The difference in meaning is immaterial. So also for *Goganàs* is read *Goganas*.

† The first half of the first line, in the Bengal texts, is read as *Kathamāsamçcha me putrā*, the Bomby text reads *Kathamāchaksha me Yodhā*. If the latter reading be adopted, the meaning would be—"Tell me how my warriors were, &c., &c."—T.

‡ In the second line of *sloka* 3, for *kim na āsinmanastadā* (what was the state of mind of our men). The Bombay text reads *Kimu āsinmanastava* (what was the state of your mind) ? There can be no question that the Bengal reading is better.—T.

bling the luminary of thousand rays, who spreading terror among the foe destroyed their ranks like the Sun destroying darkness, and who achieved in battle amongst the ranks of Pāndu's sons feats exceedingly difficult of accomplishment ?*[7-8] How, indeed, O Sanjaya, did the Pāndavas oppose in battle the son of Cāntanu, that accomplished and invincible warrior when he approached them smiting ?[9] Slaughtering the (hostile) ranks, having arrows for his teeth, and full of energy, with the bow for his wide-open mouth, and with the terrible sword for his tongue, and invincible,[10] a very tiger among men, endued with modesty, and never before vanquished, alas, how did Kunti's son overthrow in battle that unconquered one, undeserving as he was of such a fate,[11]—that fierce bowman shooting fierce shafts, stationed on his excellent car, and plucking off the heads of foes (from their bodies)[12]—that warrior, irresistible as the *Yuga*-fire, beholding whom addrest for battle the great army of the Pāndavas always used to waver ?[13] Mangling the hostile troops for ten nights, alas, that slayer of ranks hath set like the Sun, having achieved feats difficult of achievement.[14] He who, scattering like Cakra himself an inexhaustible shower of arrows, slew in battle a hundred millions of warriors in ten days,[15] that scion of Bharata's race, now lieth, although he deserveth it not, on the bare ground, in the field of battle, deprived of life, like a mighty tree uprooted by the winds, as a result of my evil counsels ![16] Beholding Cāntanu's son Bhishma of terrible prowess, how, indeed, could the army of the Pāndavas† succeed in smiting him there ?[17] How did the sons of Pāndu battle with Bhishma ? How is it, O Sanjaya, that Bhishma could not conquer when Drona liveth ?[18] When Kripa, again, was near him, and

---

* The plural pronoun *ye* in the second line of the 8th *sloka* (changed into *ya* by rule of *Sandhi* because coming before *enam)* is read *ke* (or *ka)* by the Burdwan Pundits. I think the correction a happy one. Nilakantha would take 7 and 8 and the first half of 9 as a complete sentence reading *Asya twam antike* (thou wert near him) for *Asyantam antike* (smiting or shooting arrows near).—T.

† Some of the Bengal texts have *Pānchālānām* for *Pāndavānām*.—T.

Drona's son (Açwtthāman) also, how could Bhishma, that foremost of smiters, be slain ?[19] How could Bhishma who was reckoned as an *Atiratha* and who could not be resisted by the very gods, be slain in battle by Cikhandin the prince of Pānchāla ?[20] He who always regarded himself as the equal of the mighty son of Jamadagni in battle, he whom Jamadagni's son himself could not vanquish, he who resembled Indra himself in prowess,—alas, O Sanjaya, tell me how that hero, Bhishma, born in the race of *Mahārathas*, was slain in battle, for without knowing all the particulars I cannot regain my equanimity ![21-22] What great bowmen of my army, O Sanjaya, did not desert that hero of unfading glory ? What heroic warriors, again, at Duryodhana's command, stood arround that hero (for protecting him) ?[23] When all the Pāndavas placing Cikshandin in their van advanced against Bhishma, did not all the Kurus, O Sanjaya, stay by the side of that hero of unfading prowess ?*[24] Hard as my heart is, surely it must be made of adamant, for it breaketh not on hearing the death of that tiger among men, *viz*, Bhishma ![†25] In that irresistible bull of Bharata's race, were truth, and intelligence, and policy, to an immeasurable extent. Alas, how was he slain in battle ?[26] Like unto a mighty cloud of high altitude having the twang of his bowstring for its roar, his arrows for its drops, and the sound of his bow for its thunder,[27] that hero, showering his shafts on Kunti's sons with the Pānchālas and the Srinjayas on their side, smote hostile car warriors like the slayer of Vala smiting the *Dānavas* ![28] Who were the heroes that resisted, like the bank resisting the surging sea, that chastiser of foes, who was a terrible ocean of arrows and weapons, an ocean in which shafts were the irresistible crocodiles and bows were the waves, an ocean that was inexhaustible, without an island, agitated and without a raft to cross it, in which maces and swords were like sharks, and steeds and elephants like eddies, and foot-sol-

---

* The form of the 2nd line is a negative interrogative, implying—"I hope the Kurus did *not* abandon him."—T.

† The Burdwan Pundits omit this and the following *sloka* without any reason.—T.

diers like fishes in abundance, and the sound of conchs and drums like its roar, an ocean that swallowed horses and elephants and foot-soldiers quickly, an ocean that devoured hostile heroes and that seethed with wrath and energy which constituted its *Vadavā*-fire ?*[29-32] When for Duryodhana's good, that slayer of foes, Bhishma, achieved (terrible) feats in battle, who were then in his van ?[33] Who were they that protected the right wheel of that warrior of immeasurable energy ? Who were they that, mustering patience and energy, resisted hostile heroes from his rear ?[34] Who stationed themselves in his near front for protecting him ? Who were those heroes that protected the fore-wheel of that brave warrior while he battled (with the foe) ?[35] Who were they that stationing themselves by his left wheel smote the Srinjayas ? Who were they that protected the irresistible advanced ranks of his van ?[36] Who protected the wings of that warrior who hath made the last painful journey ?† And who, O Sanjaya, fought with hostile heroes in the general engagement ?[37] If he was protected by (our) heroes, and if they were protected by him, why could he not then speedily vanquish in battle the army of the Pāndavas, invincible though it be ?[38] Indeed, O Sanjaya, how could the Pāndavas succeed even in striking Bhishma who was like *Parameshti* himself, that Lord and Creator of all creatures ?[39] Thou tellest me, O Sanjaya, of the disappearance of that Bhishma, that tiger among men, who was our refuge and relying upon whom the Kurus were fighting with their foes ![40] That warrior of mighty strength relying on whose energy my son had never reckoned the Pāndavas, alas, how hath he been slain by the enemy ?‡[41] In days of yore,

---

* This comparison, lengthy as it is, is not sustained throughout with the usual felicity of Vyasa. In several parts it is undoubtedly faulty. Slight variations of reading also occur here and there, without affecting the sense materially.—T.

† *Gachchhato durgām gatim.* The Bombay edition reads *Gachchhanto &c. &c.* The meaning then would be—"who protected the wings, themselves making the last painful journey ?"—T.

‡ The Burdwan Pundits make *Mahāvalas* an adjective of *Putras.* A better construction would be to take it as referring to *Bhishma.*—T.

all the gods, while engaged in slāying the *Dānavas*, sought the aid of that invincible warrior, *viz*, my father of high vows.[42] That foremost of sons endued with great energy, on whose birth the world-renowned Cāntanu abandoned all grief, melancholy, and sorrow,[43] how canst thou tell me, O Sanjaya, that that celebrated hero, that great refuge of all, that wise and holy personage who was devoted to the duties of his order and conversant with the truths of the *Vedas* and their branches, hath been slain ?[44] Accomplished in every weapon and endued with humility, gentle and with passions under full control, and possessed of great energy as he was, alas, hearing that son of Cāntanu slain I regard the rest of my army as already slain ![45] In my judgment, unrighteousness hath now become stronger than righteousness, for the sons of Pāndu desire sovereignty even by killing their venerable superior ![46] In days of yore, Jamadagni's son Rāma, who was acquainted with every weapon and whom none excelled, when addrest for battle on behalf of Amvā, was vanquished by Bhishma in combat.[47] Thou tellest me that that Bhishma who was the foremost of all warriors and who resembled Indra himself in the feats he achieved, hath been slain ! What can be a greater grief to me than this ?[48] Endued with great intelligence, he that was not slain even by that slayer of hostile heroes, that Rāma the son of Jamadagni who defeated in battle crowds of Kshatriyas repeatedly, hath now been slain by Cikhandin ! Without doubt, Drupada's son Cikhandin, therefore, who hath slain in battle that bull of Bharata's race, that hero acquainted with the highest weapons, that brave and accomplished warrior conversant with every weapon, is superior in energy, prowess, and might to the invincible Bhārgava endued with the highest energy ! In that encounter of arms who were the heroes that followed that slayer of foes ?[49-52] Tell me how the battle was fought between that Bhishma and the Pāndavas ! The army of my son, O Sanjaya, reft of its hero, is like an unprotected woman ![53] Indeed, that army of mine is like a panic-struck herd of kine reft of its herdsman ! He in whom resided prowess superior to that of every one, when he was laid low on

the field of battle, what was the state of mind of my army? What power is there, O Sanjaya, in our life,[54-55] when we have caused our father of mighty energy, that foremost of righteous men in the world, to be slain? Like a person desirous of crossing when he beholds the boat sunk in fathomless waters,[56] alas, my sons, I ween, are bitterly weeping from grief on Bhishma's death! My heart, O Sanjaya, is surely made of adamant,[57] for it rendeth not even after hearing the death of Bhishma that tiger among men! That bull among men in whom were weapons, intelligence, and policy[58] to an immeasurable extent, how, alas, hath that invincible warrior been slain in battle? Neither in consequence of weapons, nor of courage, nor of ascetic merit, nor of intelligence,[59] nor of firmness, nor of gift, can a man free himself from death. Indeed, Time, endued with great energy, is incapable of being transgressed by anything in the world,[60] when thou tellest me, O Sanjaya, that Cāntanu's son Bhishma is dead! Burning with grief on account of my sons, in fact, overwhelmed with great sorrow,[61] I had hoped for relief from Bhishma the son of Cāntanu! When he beheld Cāntanu's son, O Sanjaya, lying on the earth like the sun (dropped from the firmament),[62] what else was made by Duryodhana as his refuge? O Sanjaya, reflecting with the aid of my understanding, I do not see what the end will be of the kings belonging to my side and that of the enemy and now mustered in the opposing ranks of battle! Alas, cruel are the duties of the Kshatriya order as laid down by the *Rishis*,[63-64] since the Pāndavas are desirous of sovereignty by even compassing the death of Cāntanu's son, and we also are desirous of sovereignty by offering up that hero of high vows as a sacrifice.*[65] The sons of Prithā, as also my sons, are all in the observance of Kshatriya duties. They, therefore, incur no sin (by doing this). Even a righteous person should do this, O Sanjaya, when direful calamities come.[66] The display of prowess and the exhibition of the utmost might have been laid down among the duties of the Kshatriyas.

---

* *Ghātayitwā* is, literally, causing to be slain.—T.

" 'How, indeed, did the sons of Pāndu oppose my father Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, that unvanquished hero endued with modesty, while he was engaged in destroying the hostile ranks? How were the troops arrayed, and how did he battle with high-souled foes?[67-68] How, O Sanjaya, was my father Bhishma slain by the enemy? Duryodhana and Karna and the deceitful Cakuni the son of Suvala,[69] and Dusçāsana also, —what did they say when Bhishma was slain? Thither where the dice-board is constituted by the bodies of men, elephants, and steeds,[70] and where arrows and javelins and large swords and bearded darts form the dice, entering that frightful mansion of destructive battle's play, who were those wretched gamblers,[71]—those bulls among men,—that gambled, making their very lives the frightful stakes? Who won, who were vanquished, who cast the dice successfully, and who have been slain,[72] besides Bhishma the son of Cāntanu? Tell me all, O Sanjaya, for peace cannot be mine, hearing that Devavrata hath been slain,[73]—that father of mine, of terrible deeds, that ornament of battle, *viz*, Bhishma! Keen anguish had penetrated my heart, born of the thought that all my children would die.[74] Thou makest that grief of mine blaze forth, O Sanjaya, like fire by (pouring) clarified butter (on it)! My sons, I ween, are even now grieving, beholding Bhishma slain,—Bhishma celebrated in all the worlds and who had taken upon himself a heavy burden! I will listen to all those sorrows arising from Duryodhana's acts.[75-76] Therefore, tell me O Sanjaya, everything that happened there,—everything that happened in the battle, born of the folly of my wicked son![77] Ill-ordered or well-ordered, tell me everything, O Sanjaya! Whatever was acheived with the aid of energy in the battle by Bhishma desirous of victory,—by that warrior accomplished in arms,—tell me all fully and in detail! How, in fact, the battle took place bewteen the armies of the Kurus and the Pāndavas, the order in which the events occurred, and the manner in which each happened.' "[78-80]

SECTION XV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Deserving as thou art, this question is, indeed, worthy of thee, O great king! It behoveth thee not, however, to impute this fault to Duryodhana.[1] The man who incurreth evil as the consequence of his own misconduct, should not attribute that misconduct to others.[2] O great king, the man that doth every kind of injury to other men, deserveth to be slain by all men in consequence of those censurable deeds of his.[3] The Pāndavas unacquainted with the ways of wickedness had, for a long time, with their friends and counsellors, looking up to thy face, borne the injuries (done to them) and forgiven them, dwelling in the woods![4]

"'Of steeds and elephants and kings of immeasurable energy that which hath been seen by the aid of *Yoga*-power,[5] hear, O lord of Earth, and do not set thy heart on sorrow! All this was predestined from before, O king![6] Having bowed down to thy father, that [wise and high-souled*] son of Parāçara, through whose grace, [through whose boon bestowed on me,] I have obtained excellent and celestial apprehension,[7] sight beyond the range of the visual sense, and hearing, O king, from great distance, knowledge of other people's hearts and also of the past and the future,[8] a knowledge also of the origin of all persons transgressing the ordinances,† the delightful power of coursing through the skies, and untouchableness by weapons in battles,[9] listen to me in detail as I recite the romantic and highly wonderful battle that happened between the Bharatas, a battle that makes one's hair stand on end![10]

"'When the combatants were arrayed according to rule and when they were addrest for battle, Duryodhana, O king, said these words to Dusçāsana,[11]—O Dusçāsana, let cars be speedily directed for the protection of Bhishma, and do

---

* The words "high-souled" and also "through whose boon bestowed on me" occur in the 9th *sloka* following. In paraphrasing, their place is here.—T.

† *Vyutthiotpatti vijnānam*, *Vyutthita* is a very doubtful word. It has been explained by Nilakantha thus.—T.

thou speedily urge all our divisions (to advance)![12] That hath now come to me of which I had been thinking for a series of years, *viz*, the meeting of the Pāndavas and the Kurus at the head of their respective troops.[13] I do not think that there is any act more important (for us) in this battle than the protecting of Bhishma. If protected, he will slay the Pāndavas, the Somakas, and the Srinjayas.[14] That warrior of pure soul said,—*I will not slay Çikhandin. It is heard that he was a female before. For this reason he should be renounced by me in battle !*[15]—For this, Bhishma should be particularly protected. Let all my warriors take up their positions, resolved to slay Cikhandin.[16] Let also all the troops from the east, the west, the south, and the north, accomplished in every kind of weapon, protect the grandsire.[17] Even the lion of mighty strength, if left unprotected, may be slain by the wolf. Let us not, therefore, cause Bhishma to be slain by Cikhandin like the lion slain by the jackal.[18] Yudhāmanyu protects the left wheel, and Uttamaujas protects the right wheel of Phālguna. Protected by those two, Phālguna himself protects Cikhandin.[19] O Dusçāsana, act in such a way that Cikhandin who is protected by Phālguna and whom Bhishma will renounce, may not slay Gangā's son !—' "[20]

SECTION XVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the night passed away, loud became the noise made by the kings, all exclaiming,—*Array !—Array !*[1]—With the blare of conchs and the sound of drums that resembled leonine roars, O Bhārata, with the neigh of steeds, and the clatter of car wheels,[2] with the noise of obstreperous elephants and the shouts, clapping of arm-pits, and cries of roaring combatants, the din caused everywhere was very great.[3] The large armies of the Kurus and the Pāndavas, O king, rising at sunrise, completed all their arrangements.[4] Then when the sun rose, the fierce weapons of attack and defence and the coats of mail of both thy sons and the Pāndavas, and the large and splendid armies of both sides, became fully visible.[5-6] There elephants and cars, adorned

with gold, looked resplendent like clouds mingled with lightning.[7] The ranks of cars, standing in profusion, looked like cities. And thy father, stationed there, shone brilliantly, like the full moon.[8] And the warrriors armed with bows and swords and scimitars and maces, javelins and lances and bright weapons of diverse kinds, took up their positions in their (respective) ranks.[9] And elephants and foot-soldiers and car-warriors and steeds, O king, by hundreds and thousands, stood there like nets (for entangling the foe).[10] And resplendent standards were seen, set up by thousands, of diverse forms, belonging to both ourselves and the foe.[11] And made of gold and decked with gems and blazing like fire, those banners in thousands, endued with great effulgence, looked beautiful[12] like the bright banners of Indra in the celestial city.* And the heroic combatants cased in mail gazed (at those standards), longing for battle.[13] And many foremost of men, with eyes large as those of bulls, endued with quivers, and with hands cased in (leathern) fences, stood at the heads of their divisions,[14] with their bright weapons upraised. And Suvala's son Cakuni, and Calya, and Jayadratha, and the two princes of Avanti named Vinda and Anuvinda, and the Kekaya brothers, and Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas[15] and Crutāyudha the ruler of the Kalingas, and king Jayatsena, and Vrihadvala the ruler of the Koçalas, and Kritavarman of Sātwata's race,[16] —these ten tigers among men, endued with great bravery and possessing arms that looked like maces,—these performers of sacrifices with plentiful gifts (to Brāhmanas), stood each at the head of an *Aukshauhini* of troops.[17] These and many other kings and princes, mighty car-warriors conversant with policy, obedient to the commands of Duryodhana,[18] all cased in mail, were seen stationed in their respective divisions. All of them, cased in black deer-skins, endued with great strength, accomplished in battle,[19] and cheerfully prepared, for Duryodhana's sake, to ascend to the region of *Brahma*,† stood there

* Literally, "in Indra's abodes," *i. e. Amarāvati*.—.T

† A Kshatriya falling bravely in fight at once goes to the highest regions of bliss.—T.

commanding ten efficient *Akshauhinis.*[20] The eleventh great division of the Kauravas, consisting of the Dhārtarāshtra troops, stood in advance of the whole army. There in the van of that division was Cāntanu's son.[21] With his white head-gear, white umbrella, and white mail, O monarch, we beheld Bhishma of unfailing prowess look like the risen moon.[22] His standard bearing the device of a palmyra of gold, himself stationed on a car made of silver, both the Kurus and the Pāndavas beheld that hero looking like the moon encircled by white clouds.[23] The great bowmen amongst the Srinjayas headed by Dhrishtadyumna, (beholding Bhishma), looked like little animals when they behold a mighty yawning lion.[24] Indeed, all the combatants headed by Dhrishtadyumna repeatedly trembled in fear. These, O king, were the eleven splendid divisions of thy army![25] So also the seven divisions belonging to the Pāndavas were protected by foremost of men. Indeed, the two armies facing each other looked like two oceans at the end of the *Yuga* agitated by fierce *Makaras,* and abounding with huge crocodiles! Never before, O king, did we see or hear of two such armies encountering each other like these of the Kauravas!' "*[26-27]

SECTION XVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Just as the holy Krishna-Dwaipāyana Vyasa had said, in that very manner the kings of the Earth, mustered together, came to the encounter.[1] On that day on which the battle commenced, *Soma* approached the region of *Pitris.*† The seven large planets, as they appeared in the

---

* Either the 26th or the 27th should be regarded as a triplet.—T.

† Nilakantha in a long note explains that *Maghā Vishayagas Somas* cannot mean that *Shoma* or the Moon entered the constellation called *Maghà.* He quotes numerous *slokas* scattered throughout the *Mahābhārata* that throw light, directly or indirectly, on the question of the opening day of the battle, and shows that all these lead to a different conclusion. What is meant by the Moon approaching the region of *Pitris* is that those who fall in battle immediately ascend to heaven; of course, they have first to go to the region of *Pitris.* Thence they have

firmament, all looked blazing like fire.*[2] The Sun, when he rose, seemed to be divided in twain. Besides, that luminary, as it appeared in the firmament, seemed to blaze forth in flames.†[3] Carnivorous jackals and crows, expecting (dead) bodies (to feast upon), began to utter fierce cries from all directions that seemed to be ablaze.[4] Every day the old grandsire of the Kurus, and the son of Bharadwāja, rising (from bed) in the morning, with concentrated mind,[5] said,—*Victory to the sons of Pāndu !*—while those chastisers of foes used (at the same time) yet to fight for thy sake according to the pledge they had given.[6] Thy father Devavrata, fully conversant with every duty, summoning all the kings, said these words (unto them,)[7] —Ye Kshatriyas, this broad door is open to you for (entering) heaven ! Go ye through it to the region of Cakra and *Brahman !*[8] The *Rishis* of olden times have showed you this eternal path.‡ Honor ye yourselves by engaging in battle with attentive minds ![9] Nābhāga, and Yayāti, and Māndhātri, and Nahusa, and Nriga, were crowned with success and obtained the highest region of bliss by feats like these !.[10] To die of disease at home is sin for a Kshatriya. The death that he meets

---

to go to the lunar region for obtaining celestial bodies. All this implies a little delay. Here, however, in the case of those that would fall on the field of Kurukshetra, they would not have to incur even such little delay. *Chandramas* or *Soma* approached the region of *Pitris* so that the fallen warriors might have celestial bodies very soon, without, in fact, any neccessity, on their part, to incur the delay of a journey to the lunar region prior to their ascension to heaven with resplendent bodies.—T.

* There are nine planets in all in Pauranic astronomy. Of these *Ràhu* and *Ketu* are regarded as *Upagrahas*, and hence, of *grahas*, there are only seven. Thus Nilakantha : the Burdwan Pundits have made a mess of this line. The genesis of the blunders they have committed is distinctly traceable to their non-apprehension of Nilakantha's very simple note.—T.

† The Bengal texts read *Bhānumānudito divi.* The Bombay reading is *Bhānumānudito Ravis.* If the latter be adopted, *Bhānumān* would be an adjective of *Ravis.*—T.

‡ *Purvais Purvatarais* is literally—"They of old and still older times ;" for *Canātanas* some editions read *Crutijas* (qualifying *panthās*). *Crutija* means arising from the *Crutis* or as laid down in the *Crutis.*—T.

with in battle is his eternal duty![11]—Thus addressed, O bull of Bharata's race, by Bhishma, the kings, looking beautiful in their excellent cars, proceeded to the heads of their respective divisions.[12] Only Vikartana's son Karna, with his friends and relatives, O bull of Bharata's race, laid aside his weapons in battle for the sake of Bhishma.[13] Whithout Karna then, thy sons and all the kings on thy side proceeded, making the ten points of the horizon resound with their leonine roars.[14] And their divisions shone brightly, O king, with white umbrellas, banners, standards, elephants, steeds, cars, and foot-soldiers.[15] And the Earth was agitated with the sounds of drums and tabors and cymbals, and the clatter of car-wheels.[16] And the mighty car-warriors, decked with their bracelets and armlets of gold and with their bows (vareigated with gold), looked resplendent like hills of fire.[17] And with his large palmyra-standard decked with five stars, Bhishma, the generalissimo of the Kuru army,* looked like the resplendent Sun himself.[18] Those mighty bowmen of royal birth, O bull of Bharata's race, that were on thy side, all took up their positions, O king, as Cāntanu's son ordered.[19] (King) Caivya of the country of the Govāsanas, accompanied by all the monarchs, went out on a princely elephant worthy of royal use and graced with a banner on its back.[20] And Açwatthāman, of the complexion of the lotus, went out, ready for every emergency, stationing himself at the very head of all the divisions, with his standard bearing the device of the lion's tail.[21] And Crutāyudha and Chitrasena and Purumitra and Vivinçati, and Calya and Bhuriçravas, and that mighty car-warrior Vikarna,[22]—these seven mighty bowmen on their cars and cased in excellent mail, followed Drona's son behind but in advance of Bhishma.[23] The tall standards of these warriors, made of gold, beautifully set up for adorning their excellent cars, looked highly resplendent.[24] The standard of Drona, that foremost of preceptors, bore the device of a golden

* *Chamupatis* is the Bengal reading. The Bombay text reads *Chamupari.* If the latter reading be adopted, the meaning would be, "at the head of the (Kuru) army."—T.

altar decked with a water-pot and the figure of a bow.[25] The standard of Duryodhana guiding many hundreds and thousands of divisions bore the device of an elephant worked in gems.[26] Paurava and the ruler of the Kālingas, and Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas, and Kshemadhanwan, and Calya, these *Rathas* took up their position in Duryodhana's van.[27] On a costly car with his standard bearing the device of a bull, and guiding the very van (of his division), the ruler of the Magadhas marched against the foe.[28]* That large force of the Easterners looking like the fleecy clouds of autumn† was (besides) protected by the chief of the Angas (Karna's son Vrishaketu) and Kripa endued with great energy.[29] Stationing himself in the van of his division with his beautiful standard of silver bearing the device of the boar, the famous Jayadratha looked highly resplendent.[30] A hundred thousand cars, eight thousand elephants, and sixty thousand cavalry were under his command.[31]‡ Commanded by the royal chief of the Sindhus, that large division occupying the very van (of the army) and abounding with untold cars, elephants, and steeds, looked magnificient.[32] With sixty thousand cars and ten thousand elephants, the ruler of the Kalingas, accompanied by Ketumat, went out.[33] His huge elephants, looking like hills, and adorned with *Yantras*,§ lances, quivers, and standards, looked exceedingly beautiful.[34] And the ruler of the Kalingas, with his tall standard effulgent as fire, with his white umbrella, and golden curass, and *Chāmaras* (wherewith he was fanned), shone brilliantly.[35] And Ketumat also, riding

---

* The Bengal editions read *Māgadhascha ripum yayau.* The Bombay text reads *Māgadhasya Kripo-yayau.* If the latter reading be adopted, the meaning would be "and guiding the very van of the *Magadha* troops Kripa went."—T.

† The Bengal reading is *Càradābhraghana-prakshyam.* The Bombay reading is *Càradamvudhara-prakshyam.*—T.

‡ *Vaçavartinas* is nominative masculine plural, referring to cars, &c.; the Burdwan Pundits take it as a genetive singular qualifying *tasya*, and they render it, therefore, as "of that subordinate of Duryodhana." This is evidently incorrect.—T.

§ Machines, perhaps catapults.—T.

on an elephant with a highly excellent and beautiful hook, was stationed in battle, O king, like the Sun in the midst of (black) clouds.[36] And king Bhagadatta, blazing with energy and riding on that elephant of his, went out like the wielder of the thunder.[37] And the two princes of Avanti named Vinda and Anuvinda, who were regarded as equal to Bhagadatta, followed Ketumat, riding on the necks of their elephants.[38] And, O king, arrayed by Drona and the royal son of Cāntanu, and Drona's son, and Vālhika, and Kripa, the (Kaurava) *Vyuha** consisting of many divisions of cars was such that the elephants formed its body; the kings, its head; and the steeds its wings. With face towards all sides, that fierce *Vyuha* seemed to smile and ready to spring (upon the foe).' "[39-40]

SECTION XVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Soon after, O king, a loud uproar, causing the heart to tremble, was heard, made by the combatants ready for the fight.[1] Indeed, with the sounds of conchs and drums, the grunts of elephants, and the clatter of car-wheels, the Earth seemed to rend in twain.[2] And soon the welkin and the whole Earth was filled with the neigh of chargers and the shouts of combatants.[3] O irresistible one, the troops of thy sons and of the Pāndavas both trembled when they encountered each other.[4] There (on the field of battle) elephants and cars, decked in gold, looked beautiful like clouds decked with lightning.[5] And standards of diverse forms, O king, belonging to the combatants on thy side, and adorned with golden rings, looked resplendent like fire.[6] And those standards of thy side and theirs, resembled, O Bhārata, the banners of Indra in his celestial mansions.[7] And the heroic warriors all accoutred and cased in golden coats of mail endued with the effulgence of the blazing Sun, themselves looked like blazing fire or the Sun.[8] All the foremost

---

* *Vyuha* is an array of troops in a certain form. Many such will be spoken of in this and the other *parvas* devoted to the battle.—T.

warriors amongst the Kurus, O king, with excellent bows, and weapons upraised (for striking), with leathern fences on their hands, and with standards,[9]—those mighty bowmen, of eyes large as those of bulls, all placed themselves at the heads of their (respective) divisions. And these amongst thy sons, O king, protected Bhishma from behind,[10] *viz*, Dusçāsana, and Durvishaha, and Durmukha, and Dussaha, and Vivinçati, and Chitrasena, and that mighty car-warrior Vikarna.[11] And amongst them were Satyavrata, and Purumitra, and Jaya, and Bhuriçravas, and Cala. And twenty thousand car-warriors followed them.[12] The Abhishāhas, the Curasenas, the Civis, and the Vasātis, the Cwālyas, the Matsyas, the Amvashtas, the Traigartas, and the Kekayas,[13] the Sauviras, the Kitavas, and the dwellers of the Eastern, the Western, and the Northern countries,—these twelve brave races were resolved to fight reckless of the lives.[14] And these protected the grandsire with a multitudinous array of cars. And with a division that consisted of ten thousand active elephants,[15] the king of Magadha followed that large car division.* They that protected the wheels of the cars and they that protected the elephants,[16] numbered full six million. And the foot-soldiers that marched in advance (of the army), armed with bows, swords, and shields,[17] numbered many hundreds of thousands. And they fought also using their nails and bearded darts. And the ten and one *Akshauhinis* of thy son, O Bhārata, looked, O mighty king, like Gangā separated from Yamunā.' "†[18]

SECTION XIX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Beholding (our) ten and one *Akshauhinis* arrayed in order of battle, how did Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu make his counter array with his forces smaller in number?[1] How did Kunti's son, O Sanjaya, form his

---

* The Bengal texts read this line in a very faulty way. I have adopted the Bombay reading.—T.

† The Bombay edition reads *Yamunāntarā* for *Yamunāntare* of the Bengal texts. The difference in meaning is not very material.—T.

counter-array against that Bhishma who was acquainted with all kinds of arrays, *viz*, human, celestial, *Gāndharva*, and *Asura* ?'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Seeing the Dhārtarāshtra divisions arrayed in order of battle, Pāndu's son of virtuous soul, king Yudhishthira the just, addressed Dhananjaya, saying,[3]—(Men) are informed from the words of that great *Rishi* Vrihaspati that the few must be made to fight by condensing them, while the many may be extended acording to pleasure.[4] In encounters of the few with the many, the array to be formed should be the *Needle-mouthed* one. Our troops compared with the enemy are few.[5] Keeping in view this precept of the great *Rishi*, array our troops, O son of Pāndu !—Hearing this, that son of Pāndu answered king Yudhishthira the just, saying,[6] —That immovable array known by the name of *Vajra*, which was designed by the wielder of the thunder-bolt, that invincible array is the one that I will make for thee, O best of kings ![7] He who is like the bursting tempest, he who is incapable of being borne in battle by the foe, that Bhima the foremost of smiters, will fight at our head.[8] That foremost of men, conversant with all the appliances of battle, becoming our leader, will fight in the van, crushing the energy of the troops of the foe.[9] That foremost of all smiters, *viz*, Bhima, beholding whom all (the hostile warriors) headed by Duryodhana will retreat in panic like smaller animals beholding the lion, all of us, our fears dispelled, will seek *his* shelter as if he were a wall, like the celestials seeking the shelter of Indra ![10-11] The man breathes not in the world who would bear to cast his eyes upon that bull among men, Vrikodara of fierce deeds, when he is angry ![12]—Having said this, Dhananjaya of mighty arms did as he said. And Phālguna, quickly disposing his troops in battle-array, proceeded (against the foe).[13] And the mighty army of the Pāndavas, beholding the Kuru army move, looked like the full, immovable, and quickly rolling*

* The Bengal texts read *Syandamànà* ; the Bombay reading is *Spandamānā*. Both imply "moving," only the motion in the latter case is slower, perhaps, than in the former.—T.

current of Gangā.[14] And Bhimasena, and Dhrishtadyumna endued with great energy, and Nakula, and Sahadeva, and king Dhrishtaketu, became the leaders of that force.[15] And king Virāta, surrounded by an *Akshauhini* of troops, and accompanied by his brothers and sons, marched in their rear, protecting them from behind.[16] The two sons of Mādri, both endued with great effulgence, became the protectors of Bhima's wheels; while the (five) sons of Draupadi and the son of Subhadrā, all endued with great activity, protected (Bhima) from behind.[17] And that mighty car-warrior, Dhrishtadyumna the prince of Pānchāla, with those bravest of combatants and the foremost of car-warriors, *viz*, the Prabhadrakas, protected those princes from behind.[18] And behind him was Cikhandin who (in his turn) was protected by Arjuna, and who, O bull of Bharata's race, advanced with concentrated attention for the destruction of Bhishma.[19] Behind Arjuna was Yuyudhāna of mighty strength; and the two princes of Pānchāla, *viz*, Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas, became protectors of Arjuna's wheels,[20] along with the Kekaya brothers, and Dhrishtaketu, and Chekitāna of great valour.—This Bhimasena, wielding his mace made of the hardest metal,[21] and moving (on the field of battle) with fierce speed, can dry up the very ocean! And there also stay, with their counsellors and looking on him, O king,[22] the children* of Dhritarāshtra!—Even this, O monarch, was what Vibhatsu said, pointing out the mighty Bhimsena (to Yudhishthira).†[23] And while Pārtha was saying so, all the troops, O Bhārata, worshipped him on the field of battle with gratulatory words.[24] King Yuddhishthira the son of Kunti took up his position in the centre of his army, surrounded by huge and furious elephants resembilng moving hills.[25] The high-souled Yajnasena the king of the Pānchālas, endued with great prowess, stationed himself behind Virāta with an *Akshauhini* of troops for the sake of the Pāndavas.[26] And on the cars of those kings, O monarch,

---

* The word used is *Dàyàdās*, lit., takers of (one's) wealth.—T.

† The Bombay text is here faulty. *Darçayswamahāvalam* is scarcely correct. The Bengal reading is *Darçayan sumahāvalam*.—T.

were tall standards bearing diverse devices, decked with excellent ornaments of gold, and endued with the effulgence of the sun and the moon.[27] Causing those kings to move and make space for him, that mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna, accompanied by his brothers and sons, protected Yudhishthira from behind.[28] Transcending the huge standards on all the cars on thy side and that of the enemy, was the one gigantic ape on Arjuna's car.[29] Foot-soldiers, by many hundreds of thousands, and armed with swords, spears, and scimitars, proceeded ahead for protecting Bhimasena.[30] And ten thousand elephants with (temporal) juice trickling down their cheeks and mouth, and resembling (on that account) showering clouds,* endued with great courage, blazing with golden armour, huge as hills, costly, and emitting the fragrance of lotuses, followed the king behind like moving mountains.[31-32]† And the high-souled and invincible Bhimasena, whirling his fierce mace that resembled a *parigha*,‡ seemed to crush the large army (of thy son).[33] Incapable of being looked at like the Sun himself, and scorching, as it were, the hostile army (like fire), none of the combatants could bear to even look at him from any near point.[34] And this array, fearless and having its face turned towards all sides, called *Vajra*, having bows for its lightning sign,§ and extremely fierce, was protected by the wielder of *Gāndiva*.[35] Disposing their troops in this

---

* Literally, "with rent cheeks and mouth."—T.

† The Bombay reading is certainly faulty here. For *Chalanta iva parvatās* it reads *Jimutā iva vārshikās*, although it makes the previous line begin with *Ksharanta iva Jimutā*.—T.

‡ A *parigha* is a thick club mounted with iron. The comparison is very feeble, for Bhima's mace, in the popular estimation, is very much heavier and stouter than any *parigha* manufactured for human combatants. *Prachakarsha* is, lit., dragged. I think, however, the root *krish* must be taken here in the sense of crush. By the bye, is not *krish* the same word as *crush* ?—T.

§ The name *Vajra* implies either a hard needle for boring diamonds and gems, or the thunder-bolt. In this *sloka* the word *Vajra* is used as associated with the thunder and, therefore, as thunder is accompanied by lightning, so the bows of the warriors are the lightning-marks of this particular *Vajra*.—T.

counter array against thy army, the Pāndavas waited for battle. And protected by the Pāndavas, that array became invincible in the world of men.[36]

"'And as (both) the armies stood at dawn of day waiting for sunrise, a wind began to blow with drops of water (falling), and although there were no clouds, the roll of thunder was heard.[37] And dry winds began to blow all around, bearing a shower of pointed pebbles along the ground. And a thick dust arose, covering the world with darkness.[38] And large meteors began to fall eastwards, O bull of Bharata's race, and striking against the rising Sun, broke in fragments with loud noise.[39] When the troops stood arrayed, O bull of Bharata's race, the Sun rose divested of splendour, and the Earth trembled with a loud sound,[40] and cracked in many places, O chief of the Bharatas, with loud noise. And the roll of thunder, O king, was heard frequently on all sides.[41] So thick was the dust that arose that nothing could be seen. And the tall standards (of the combatants), furnished with strings of bells, decked with golden ornaments, garlands of flowers, and rich drapery, graced with banners and resembling the Sun in splendour, being suddenly shaken by the wind, gave a loud jingling noise like that of a forest of palmyra trees (when moved by the wind). It was thus that those tigers among men, the sons of Pāndu, ever taking delight in battle,[42-44] stood, having disposed their troops in counter array against the army of thy son, and sucking, as it were the marrow, O bull of Bharata's race, of our warriors, and casting their eyes on Bhimasena stationed at their head, mace in land!'"[45]

SECTION XX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When the sun rose, O Sanjaya, of my army led by Bhishma and the Pāndava army led by Bhima, which first cheerfully approached the other, desirous of fight?[1] To which side were the Sun, the Moon, and the wind hostile, and against whom did the beasts of prey utter inauspicious sounds? Who were those young men, the complexions of whose faces were cheerful? Tell me all this truly and duly!'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Both armies, when arrayed, were equally joyful, O king! Both armies looked equally beautiful, assuming the aspect of blossoming woods, and both armies were full of elephants, cars, and horses.[3] Both armies were vast and terrible in aspect; and so also, O Bhārata, none of them could bear the other. Both of them were arrayed for conquering the very heavens, and both of them consisted of excellent persons.[4] The Kauravas belonging to the Dhritarāshtra party stood facing the west, while the Pārthas stood facing the east, addrest for fight. The troops of the Kauravas looked like the army of the chief of the *Dānavas*, while that of the Pāndavas looked like the army of the celestials.[5] The wind began to blow from behind the Pāndavas (against the faces of the Dhārtarāshtras), and the beasts of prey began to yell against the Dhārtarāshtras. The elephants belonging to thy sons could not bear the strong odour of the temporal juice emitted by the huge elephants (of the Pāndavas).[6] And Duryodhana rode on an elephant of the complexion of the lotus, with rent temples, graced with a golden *Kaksha* (on its back), and cased in an armour of steel net-work. And he was in the very centre of the Kurus and was adored by eulogists and bards.[7] And a white umbrella of lunar effulgence was held over his head graced with a golden chain. Him Cakuni the ruler of the Gāndhāras followed with mountaineers of Gāndhāra placed all around.[8] And the venerable Bhishma was at the head of all the troops, with a white umbrella held over his head, armed with a white bow and sword, with a white head-gear, with a white banner (on his car), and with white steeds (yoked thereto), and altogether looking like a white mountain.[9] In Bhishma's division were all the sons of Dhritarāshtra, and also Cala who was a countryman of the Vālhikas, and also all those Kshatriyas called Amvastas, and those called Sindhus, and those also that are called Sauviras, and the heroic dwellers of the country of the five rivers.[10] And on a golden car unto which were yoked red steeds, the high-souled Drona, bow in hand and with never-failing heart, the preceptor of almost all the kings, remained behind all the troops, protecting them like Indra.[11] And in

the midst of all the forces were Vārdhakshatri, and Bhuriçravas, and Purumitra, and Jaya, and the Cālwas, the Matsyas, and all the Kekaya brothers fighting with their elephant divisions.[12] And Caradawt's son, that fighter in the van,* that high-souled and mighty bowman, called also Gautama, conversant with all modes of warfare, accompanied by the Cakas, the Kirātas, the Yavanas, and the Palhavas, took up his position at the northern point of the army.[13] That large force which was well protected by mighty car-warriors of the Vrishni and the Bhoja races, as also by the warriors of Surāshtra well-armed and well-acquainted with the use of weapons, and which was led by Kritavarman, proceeded towards the south of thy army.†[14] Ten thousand cars of the *Samçaptakas*, who were created for either the death or the fame of Arjuna, and who, accomplished in arms, intend to follow Arjuna at his heels,‡ all went out as also the brave Trigartas.[15] In thy army, O Bhārata, were a hundred thousand elephants of the foremost fighting powers. Unto each elephant was assigned a century of cars; unto each car, a hundred horsemen;[16] unto each horse, ten bowmen; and unto each bowman ten combatants armed with (sword and) shield. Thus, O Bhārata, were thy divisions arrayed by Bhishma.[17] Thy generalissimo Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, as each day dawned, sometimes disposed thy troops in the human array, sometimes in the celestial, sometimes in the *Gāndharva*, and sometimes in the *Asura*.[18] Thronged with a large number of *Mahārathas*, and roaring like the very ocean, the Dhārtarāshtra army, arrayed by Bhishma, stood facing the west for battle.[19] Illimitable as thy army was, O ruler of men, it looked terrible; but the army of the Pāndavas, although it was not such (in number), yet seemed to me to be very large and invincible since Keçava and Arjuna were its leaders!'"[20]

---

* The word is *Uttaradhus* which seems to be very doubtful.—T.

† This *sloka* is omitted in the Bengal texts.—T.

‡ *Yenārjunastena*. *Yena* is *Yatra*, atd *tena* is *tatra*, as Nilakantha rightly explains. The meaning is—"who would be *there where* Arjuna would be."—T.

SECTION XXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the vast Dhārtarāstra army ready for battle, king Yudhishthira the son of Kunti gave way to grief.[1] Seeing that impenetrable array formed by Bhishma and regarding it as really impenetrable, the king became pale and addressed Arjuna, saying,[2]—O mighty-armed Dhananjaya, how shall we be able to fight in battle with the Dhārtarāshtras who have the grandsire for their (chief) combatant ?[3] Immovable and impenetrable is this array that hath been designed, according to the rules laid down in the scriptures, by that grinder of foes, Bhishma of transcendent glory![4] With our troops we have become doubtful (of success), O grinder of foes! How, indeed, will victory be ours, in the face of this mighty array ?[5]—(Thus addressed), that slayer of foes Arjuna answered Yudhishthira the son of Prithā, who had been plunged into grief at sight, O king, of thy army, in these words,[6]—Hear, O king, how soldiers that are few in number may vanquish the many that are possessed of every quality![7] Thou art without malice; I shall, therefore, tell thee the means, O king! The *Rishi* Nārada knows it, as also both Bhishma and Drona.[8] Referring to this means, the Grandsire himself, in days of old, on the occasion of the battle between the gods and the *Asuras*, said unto Indra and the other celestials.[9]—*They that are desirous of victory do not conquer by might and energy so much as by truth, compassion, righteousness, and energy.**[10] *Discriminating then between righteousness and unrighteousness, and understanding what is meant by covetousness, and having recourse to exertion, fight without arrogance, for victory is there where righteousness is!*[11]—For this, know O king, that to us victory is certain in (this)battle! Indeed, as Nārada said,—

---

* The Bengal texts read *Dharmenaikena chānagha* which is evidently faulty, remembering that the words are Brahman's to Indra *and* the celestials. The Bombay reading is *Dharmenaivodyamena cha* which I have adopted.—T.

There is victory where Krishna is.[12]—Victory is inherent to Krishna. Indeed, it followeth Mādhava. And as victory is one of his attributes, so is humility another attribute of his.[13] Govinda is possessed of energy that is infinite. Even in the midst of innumerable foes he is without pain. He is the most eternal of male beings. And there victory is where Krishna is.[14] Even he, indestructible and of weapons incapable of being baffled, appearing as Hari in olden days, said in a loud voice unto the gods and the *Asuras,—Who amongst you would be victorious?*[15]—Even they conquered who said,—*With Krishna in the front we will conquer!**—And it was through Hari's grace that the three worlds were obtained by the gods headed by Cakra.[16] I do not, therefore, behold the slightest cause of sorrow in thee, thee that hast the Sovereign of the Universe and the Lord himself of the celestials for wishing victory to thy self!—' "[17]

SECTION XXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then, O bull of Bharata's race, king Yudhishthira, disposing his own troops in counter array against the divisions of Bhishma, urged them on,[1] saying,—*The Pāndavas have now disposed their forces in counter array agreeably to what is laid down (in the scriptures)! Ye sinless ones, fight fairly, desirous of (entering) the highest heaven!*[2]—In the centre (of the Pāndava army) was Cikhandin and his troops, protected by Arjuna. And Dhrishta-

---

* The sense is that they, *viz*, the gods, who accepted Krishna's lead, or selected him for their leader, became victorious. The Bengal reading is evidently superior, *viz*, *Anu Krishna*, literally "behind Krishna," *i. e*, "with Krishna in the front," or "with Krishna as leader." The Bombay reading is *Katham Krishna*. If this were adopted, the meaning would be, "How, O Krishna, shall we conquer?" I do not understand how victory should be theirs who answered in this way. Of course, the answer implies modesty. But modesty is not the sole requisite of victory, nor is modesty inculcated here as the chief means of victory.—T.

dyumna moved in the van, protected by Bhima.*[3] The southern division (of the Pāndava army) was protected, O king, by that mighty bowman, the handsome Yuyudhāna, that foremost combatant of the Sātwata race, resembling Indra himself.[4] Yudhishthira was stationed on a car that was worthy of bearing Mahendra himself, adorned with an excellent standard, variegated with gold and gems, and furnished with golden traces (for the steeds), in the midst of his elephant divisions.†[5] His pure white umbrella with ivory handle, raised over his head, looked exceedingly beautiful; and many great *Rishis* walked around the king,‡ uttering words in his praise.[6] And many priests, and regenerate *Rishis* and *Siddhas*, uttering hymns in his praise,§ wished him, as they walked around, the destruction of his enemies, by the aid of *Yapas*, and *Mantras*, and efficacious drugs, and diverse propitiatory ceremonies.[7] That high-souled chief of the Kurus, then giving away unto the Brāhmanas kine and fruits and flowers and golden coins along with cloths,$ proceeded like Cakra the chief of the celestials.[8] The car of Arjuna, furnished with a hundred bells, decked with *Jāmvunada* gold of the best kind, endued with excellent wheels, possessed of the effulgence of fire, and

---

* It will strike even the most cursory reader that Sanjaya, in each new section, assigns new positions to almost every one of the noted combatants of both sides,—a fact that furnishes the strongest argument for supposing that all these sections abound with interpolations. It is difficult, almost impossible, to ascertain what the genuine text is.—T.

† The Bengal texts read *Kanchana-bhānda-yuktam.* The Bombay reading is much better, being *Kānchanabhānda-yoktram.* For again *Nāgakulasya* the Bombay edition reads *Nāgapurasya.* Nilakantha notices the latter reading, but it is a wretched conceit.—T.

‡ The Bengal reading is *Mahindram* (king of earth, or king); the Bombay reading is *Mahendram* (the great Indra). Without *iva* or any word to that effect, *Mahendram* would be ungrammatical.—T.

§ The Bengal texts read, and as I think, cortectly, *Stutavanta enam.* The Bombay reading is *Crutavanta enam.* In the case of regenerate *Rishis* and *Siddhas* it is scarcely necessary to say that they are conversant with the *Crutis.*—T.

$ The Bengal reading *Sahasrāni* for *Savastrāni* is incorrect. I adopt the latter.—T.

unto which were yoked white steeds, looked exceedingly brilliant like a thousand suns.*[9] And on that car the reins of which were held by Keçava, stood the ape-bannered (Arjuna) with *Gāndiva* and arrows in hand,—a bowman whose peer exists not on earth nor ever will.[10] For crushing thy sons and troops he who assumeth the most awful form,—he who, divested of weapons, with only his bare hands, poundeth to dust men, horses, and elephants,[11]—that strong-armed Bhimasena, otherwise called Vrikodara, accompanied by the twins, became the protector of the heroic car-warriors (of the Pāndava army). Like unto a furious prince† of lions of sportive gait, or like the great Indra himself with (earthly) body on the Earth,[12] beholding that invincible Vrikodara, like unto a proud leader of an elephantine herd, stationed in the van (of the army), the warriors on thy side, their strength weakened by fear, began to tremble like elephants sunk in mire.[13]

"'Unto that invincible prince Gudākeça staying in the midst of his troops, Janārddana, O chief of Bharata's race, said,[14]—He who, scorching us with his wrath, stayeth in the midst of his forces, he who will attack our troops like a lion, he who performed three hundred horse-sacrifices,—that banner of Kuru's race, that Bhishma,—stayeth yonder![15] Yon ranks shroud him on all sides like the clouds shrouding the bright luminary. O foremost of men, slaying yon troops, seek battle with yonder bull of Bharata's race!'"[16]

SECTION XXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the Dhārtarāshtra army approach for fight, Krishna said these words for Arjuna's benefit.[1]

"'The holy one said,—Cleansing thyself, O mighty-armed

---

* This is how I understand this verse, and I am supported by the Burdwan Pundits. Nilakantha, it seems, thinks that the car had a thousand wheels resembling a thousand suns. This seems to be extravagant.—T.

† Verse 15 is read variously. As the last word of the first line, I read *Achakarsha* for *raraksha*, and accordingly I take *nas* as a genetive and not an ablative particle.—T.

one, utter on the eve of battle the hymn to Durga for (compassing) the defeat of the foe![2]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addr essed on the eve of battle by Vāsudeva endued with grea t intelligence, Prithā's son Arjuna, alighting from his car, sai d the (following) hymn with joined hands.[3]

" 'Arjuna said,—I bow to thee, O leader of *Yogins*, O thou that art identical with *Brahman*, O thou that dwellest in the forests of Mandara! O thou that art freed from decrepitude and decay, O *Kāli*, O wife of *Kapāla*, O thou that art of a black and tawny hue![*4] I bow to thee, O bringer of benefits to thy devotees, I bow to thee, O *Mahākāli!* O wife of the universal destroyer, I bow to thee, O proud one, O thou that rescuest from dangers, O thou that art endued with every auspicious attribute![5] O thou that art sprung from the *Kata* race, O thou that deservest the most regardful worship, O fierce one, O giver of victory, O victory's self! O thou that bearest a banner of peacock plumes, O thou that art decked with every ornament![6] O thou that bearest an awful spear, O thou that holdest a sword and shield! O thou that art the younger sister of the chief of cowherds, O eldest one, O thou that wert born in the race of the cowherd Nanda![7] O thou that art always fond of buffalo's blood, O thou that wert born in the race of *Kuçika*, O thou that art dressed in yellow robes, O thou that hadst devoured *Asuras* assuming the face of a wolf, I bow to thee that art fond of battle![8] O *Umā*,† O *Çākambhari*, O thou that art white in hue, O thou that art black in hue, O thou that hadst slain the *Asura* Kaitabha, O thou that art yellow-eyed, O thou that art diverse-eyed, O thou of eyes that have the color of smoke, I bow to thee![9] O thou that art the *Vedas*, the *Çrutis*, and

---

* I follow Nilakantha in rendering many of the names occurring in this and the succeeding *slokas*. I retain, however, those names that are of doubtful etymology, as also those that are very common.—T.

† Every scholar knows the derivation of this word as given in the *sloka* of Kālidāsa (in his *Kumāra Sambhavam*) *Umeti mātrā tapasonishiddhā paçchādumākhyam Sumukhi Jagāma*.—T.

the highest virtue! O thou that art propitious to Brāhmanas engaged in sacrifices, O thou that hast a knowledge of the past, O thou that art ever present in the sacred abodes erected to thee in the cities of Jamvudwipa![10] Thou art the science of *Brahma* among sciences, and thou art that sleep of creatures from which there is no waking! O mother of Skanda, O thou that possessest the six (highest) attributes, O Durgā, O thou that dwellest in inaccessible regions![11] Thou art described as *Swāhā*, as *Sadhā*,* as *Kalā*, as *Kāshtā*, and as *Saraswati*, as *Sāvitri* the mother of the *Vedas*, and as the science of *Vedānta*.[12] With inner soul cleansed, I praise thee, O great goddess! Let victory always attend me through thy grace on the field of battle![13] In inaccessible regions, where there is fear, in places of difficulty, in the abodes of thy worshippers, and in the nether regions *(Pātāla)*, thou always dwellest! Thou always defeatest the *Dānavas*![14] Thou art the unconsciousness, thou the sleep, thou the illusion, thou the modesty, thou the beauty (of all creatures)! Thou art the twilight, thou art the day, thou art *Sāvitri*, and thou art the mother![15] Thou art contentment, thou art growth, thou art light! It is thou that supportest the Sun and the Moon and makest them shine! Thou art the prosperity of those that are prosperous. The *Siddhas* and the *Chāranas* behold thee in contemplation![†][16]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Understanding (the measure of) Pārtha's devotion, Durgā who is always graciously inclined towards mankind, appeared in the firmament and in the presence of Govinda, said these words.[17]

"'The goddess said,—Within a short time thou shalt conquer thy foes, O Pāndava! O invincible one, thou hast Nārāyana (again) for aiding thee![18] Thou art incapable of being defeated by foes, even by the wielder of the thunderbolt himself!—'

---

* Both *Swāhā* and *Sadhā* are *mantras* of high efficacy. *Kalā* and *Kāsthā* are divisions of time. *Saraswati* implies speech.—T.

† *Sankhye* is explained by Nilakantha to be *Samyak Khyānam Prakāçanam Yasmin*; hence *Atmanātmāvivekarupa Samādhi*.—T.

"'Having said this, the boon-giving goddess disappeared soon.[19] The son of Kunti, however, obtaining that boon, regarded himself as successful, and the son of Prithā then mounted his own excellent car.[20] And then Krishna and Arjuna, seated on the same car, blew their celestial conchs. The man that recites this hymn rising at dawn,[21] hath no fear any time from *Yakshas*, *Rakshas*, and *Piçāchas*. He can have no enemies; and snakes and all animals that have fangs and teeth, from them[22] he hath no fear, as also from kings. He is sure to be victorious in all disputes, and if bound, he is freed from his bonds.[23] He is sure to get over all difficulties, is freed from thieves, is ever victorious in battle, and wineth the goddess of prosperity for ever.[24] With health and strength, he liveth for a hundred years.

"'I have known all this through the grace of Vyasa endued with great wisdom.[25] Thy wicked sons, however, all entangled in the meshes of death, do not, from ignorance know these to be Nara and Nārāyana.[26] Nor do they, entangled in the meshes of death, know that the hour of this kingdom hath arrived. Dwaipāyana and Nārada, and Kanwa, and the sinless Rāma,[27] had all prevented thy son. But he did not accept their words. There where righteousness is, there are glory and beauty. There where modesty is, there are prosperity and intelligence. There where righteousness is, there is Krishna; and there where Krishna is, there is victory.'"[28]

SECTION XXIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'There (on the field of battle), O Sanjaya, the warriors of which side first advaced to battle cheerfully? Whose hearts were filled with confidence, and who were spiritless from melancholy?[1] In that battle which maketh the hearts of men tremble with fear,* who were they that struck the first blow, mine or they belonging to the Pāndavas? Tell me all this, O Sanjaya![2] Among whose

---

* *Hridayakampane* is the correct reading, and not *Hridayakampanam*.—T.

troops did the flowery garlands and unguents emit fragrant odors ? And whose troops, roaring fiercely, uttered merciful words ?'[3]

"Sanjaya said,—'The combatants of both armies were cheerful then, and the flowery garlands and perfumes of both troops emitted equal fragrance.[4] And, O bull of Bharata's race, fierce was the collision that took place when the serried ranks arrayed for battle encountered each other.[5] And the sound of musical instruments, mingled with the blare of conchs and the noise of drums, and the shouts of brave warriors roaring fiercely at one another, became very loud.[6] O bull of Bharata's race, dreadful was the collision caused by the encounter of the combatants of both armies, filled with joy and staring at one another, and the elephants uttering obstreperous grunts.' "[7]

SECTION XXV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Assembled together on the sacred plain of Kurukshetra from desire of fighting, what did my sons and the Pāndavas do, O Sanjaya !'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the army of the Pāndavas arrayed, king Duryodhana, approaching the preceptor (Drona) said these words :[2]—Behold, O preceptor, this vast army of the sons of Pāndu, arrayed by Drupada's son (Dhrishtadyumna) thy intelligent disciple :[3] There (in that army) are many brave and mighty bowmen,* who in battle are equal to Bhima and Arjuna. (They are) Yuyudhāna, and Virāta, and that mighty car-warrior† Drupada,[4] and Dhrishtaketu, and Chekitāna, and the ruler of the Kāçis endued with great energy; and Purujit, and Kuntibhoja, and Caivya that bull among men ;[5] and Yudhāmanyu of great prowess, and Uttamaujas of great energy ; and Subhadrā's son, and the sons of Draupadi, all of whom are mighty car-warriors.[6] Hear, however, O best of regenerate ones, who are the distinguished ones

---

* Literally, "bearers of large bows."—T.

† Lit.—"owner of a large car," or, as explained before, "a warrior competent to fight single-handed against a thousand archers."—T.

among us, the leaders of my army! I will name them to thee for (thy) information.[7] (They are) thyself, and Bhishma, and Karna, and Kripa who is ever victorious; and Açwatthāman, and Vikarna, and Saumadatti, and Jayadratha.*[8] Besides these are many heroic warriors, prepared to lay down their lives for my sake, armed with diverse kinds of weapons, and all accomplished in battle.[9] Our army, therefore, protected by Bhishma, is insufficient. This force, however, of these (the Pāndavas), protected by Bhima, is sufficient.†[10] Stationing yourseves then in the entrances of the divisions that have been assigned to you, all of you protect Bhishma alone![11]—(Just at this time) the valiant and venerable grandsire of the Kurus, affording great joy to him [Duryodhana] by loudly uttering a leonine roar, blew (his) conch.[12] Then conchs, and drums, and cymbals, and horns, were sounded at once, and the noise (made) became a loud uproar.[13] Then Mādhava and Pāndu's son (Arjuna), both stationed on a great car unto which were yoked white steeds, blew their celestial conchs.[14] And Hrishikeça blew (the conch called) *Pānchajanya*, and Dhananjaya (that called) *Devadatta*; and Vrikodara of terrible deeds blew the huge conch (called) *Paundra*.[15] And Kunti's son king Yudhishthira blew (the conch called) *Anantavijaya*; while Nakula and Sahadeva, (those conchs called respectively) *Sughosa* and *Manipushpaka*.‡[16] And that splendid bowman, the ruler of the Kāçis, and that mighty car-warrior, Cikhandin, and Dhrishtadyumna, and

---

* The text of the *Gitá* has come down to us without, it may be ventured to be stated, any interpolation. The differences of reading are few and far between. For *Jayadratha* some texts read *tathaivacha*.—T.

† The words *Aparyāptam* and *paryāptam* have exercised all commentators. If *paryāptam* is sufficient (as it certainly is), *aparyāptam* may mean either *more* or *less* than sufficient. The context, however, would seem to show that Duryodhana addressed his preceptor in alarm and not with confidence of success. I, therefore, take *aprayāptam* to be less than sufficient.—T.

‡ It has been observed before that Schlegel renders the names of these conchs as *Gigantea*, *Theodotes*, *Arundinea*, *Triumphatrix*, *Dulcisona*, and *Gemmiflora*, and that Professor Wilson approves of them.—T.

Virāta, and the unvanquished Sātyaki,[17] and Drupada, and the sons of Draupadi, and the mighty-armed son of Subhadrā,—all these, O lord of Earth, severally blew their conchs.[18] And that blare, loudly reverberating through the welkin and Earth, rent the hearts of the Dhārtarāshtras.[19] Then beholding the Dhārtarāshtra troops drawn up, the ape-bannered* son of Pāndu, raising his bow, when the throwing of missiles had just commenced,[20] said these words, O lord of Earth, to Hrishikeça.†

"'Arjuna said,—O thou that knoweth no deterioration, place my car (once) between the two armies,[21] so that I may observe these that stand here desirous of battle, and with whom I shall have to contend in the labors of this struggle.‡[22] I will observe those who are assembled here and who are prepared to fight for doing what is agreeable in battle to the evil-minded son of Dhritarāshtra!—'[23]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed by Gudākeça, O Bhārata, Hrishikeça, placing that excellent car between the two armies,[24] in view of Bhishma and Drona and all the kings of the Earth, said,—Behold, O Pārtha, these assembled Kurus![25]—And there the son of Prithā beheld, standing, (his) sires and grandsires, and preceptors, and maternal uncles, and brothers, and sons, and grandsons, and friends,[26] and fathers-in-law, and well-wishers, in both the armies. Beholding all those kinsmen standing (there), the son of Kunti,[27] possessed by excessive pity, despondingly said (these words).

"Arjuna said,—Beholding these kinsmen, O Krishna, assembled together and eager for the fight,[28] my limbs become languid, and my mouth becomes dry! My body trembles, and my hair stands on end![29] *Gāndiva* slips from my hand, and my

---

* I have elsewhere (see *ante*) shown why compounds such as this are necessary in translating from the Sanskrit.—T.

† It seems a fashion to doubt the etymology of this word, as if commentators of the learning of Sreedhara and Sankara, Anandagiri and Nilakantha, even upon a question of derivation and grammar, can really be set aside in favor of anything that may occur in the Petersburgh lexicon. *Hrishikeça* means the lord of the senses.—T.

‡ *Ranasamudyame* may also mean "at the outset of battle."—T.

skin burns. I am unable to stand (any longer); my mind seems to wander![30] I behold adverse omens, too, O Keçava! I do not desire victory, O Krishna, nor sovereignty, nor pleasures![31] Of what use would sovereignty be to us, O Govinda, or enjoyments, or even life,[32] since they for whose sake sovereignty, enjoyments, and pleasures are desired by us, are here arrayed for battle, ready to give up life and wealth,[33] *viz*, preceptors, sires, sons, and grandsires, maternal uncles, fathers-in-law, grandsons, brothers-in-law, and kinsmen![34] I wish not to slay these though they slay me, O slayer of Madhu, even for the sake of the sovereignty of the three worlds, what then for the sake of (this) earth?*[35] What gratification can be ours, O Janārddana, by slaying the Dhārtarāshtras? Even if they be regarded as foes,† sin will overtake us if we slay them.[36] Therefore, it behoveth us not to slay the sons of Dhritarāshtra who are our own kinsmen.‡ How, O Mādhava, can we be happy by killing our own kinsmen?[37] Even if these, with judgments perverted by avarice, do not see the evil that ariseth from the extermination of a race, and the sin of internecine quarrels,[38] why should not we, O Janārddana, who see the evils of the extermination of a race, learn to abstain from that sin?[39] A race being destroyed, the eternal customs of that race are lost; and upon those customs being lost, sin overpowers the whole race.[40] From the predominance of sin, O Krishna, the women of that race, become corrupt. And the women becoming corrupt, an intermingling of castes happeneth, O descendant of Vrishni![41] This intermingling of castes leadeth to hell both the destroyer of the race and the race itself. The ancestors of those fall (from heaven), their rites of *Pinda*

---

* The meaning is that even for the sake of such a rich reward in prospect I would not kill persons so dear and near to me. I would much rather suffer them to strike me, myself not returning their blows.—T.

† The word is *ātatāyinas*. For explanation *vide* note *ante* page 502, *UDYOGA*.—T.

‡ Most editions read *savāndhavān* "with (their) kinsmen or friends." I think, however, that *swa* (own) for *sa* (with) is the correct reading. K. T. Telang adopts it in his translation published in Vol. VIII of the *Sacred Books of the East*.—T.

and water ceasing.[42] By these sins of destroyers of races, causing intermixture of castes, the rules of caste and the eternal rites of families, become extinct.[43] We have heard, O Janārddana, that men whose family rites become extinct, ever dwell in hell.[44] Alas, we have resolved to perpetrate a great sin, for we are ready to slay our own kinsmen from lust of the sweets of soveriegnty![45] Better would it be for me if the sons of Dhritarāshtra, weapon in hand, should in battle slay me, (myself) unavenging and unarmed![46]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having spoken thus on the field of battle, Arjuna, his mind troubled with grief, casting aside his bow and arrows, sat down on his car.' "[47]

[Here ends the first lesson entitled "Survey of Forces"* in the dialogue between Krishna and Arjuna of the Bhagavadgitā, the essence of religion, the knowledge of *Brahma*, and the system of *Yoga*, comprised within the *Bhishma Parvan* of the *Mahābhārata* of Vyasa containing one hundred thousand verses.]

SECTION XXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Unto him thus possessed with pity, his eyes filled and oppressed with tears, and desponding, the slayer of Madhu said these words.[1]

" 'The holy one said,—Whence, O Arjuna, hath come upon thee, at such a crisis, this despondency that is unbecoming a person of noble birth, that shuts one out from heaven, and that is productive of infamy?[2] Let no effiminacy be thine, O son of Kunti! This suits thee not! Shaking off this vile weakness of heart, arise, O chastiser of foes!—'[3]

" 'Arjuna said,—How, O slayer of Madhu, can I with arrows contend in battle against Bhishma and Drona, deserving as they are, O slayer of foes, of worship?†[4] Without

---

* In some editions this lesson is stated to be "Arjuna's grief." The description of the lesson again is given in fewer words.—T.

† The commentators betray their ingenuity by emphasizing the word *ishubhis* (with arrows), explaining "how can I encounter them with *arrows* whom I cannot encounter with even *harshwords*?"—T.

slaying (one's) preceptors of great glory, it is well (for one), to live on even alms in this world. But slaying preceptors, even if they are avaricious of wealth, I should only enjoy pleasures that are blood-stained!*[5] We know not which of the two is of greater moment to us, *viz*, whether we should conquer them or they should conquer us. Those slaying whom we would not like to live, even they, the sons of Dhritarāshtra, stand before (us)![6] My nature affected by the taint of compassion, my mind unsettled about (my) duty, I ask thee! Tell me what is assuredly good (for me)! I am thy disciple! O, instruct me, I seek thy aid!†[7] I do not see (that) which would dispel that grief of mine blasting my very senses, even if I obtain a prosperous kingdom on earth without a foe or the very sovereignty of the gods!‡[8]'

"Sanjaya said,—'Having said this unto Hrishikeça, that chastiser of foes—Gudākeça—(once more) addressed Govinda, saying,—I will not fight,—and then remained silent.§[9] Unto him overcome by despondency, Hrishikeça, in the midst of the two armies, said.[10]

" 'The holy one said,—Thou mournest those that deserve not to be mourned. Thou speakest also the words of the (so-called) wise. Those, however, that are (really) wise grieve neither for the dead nor for the living.[11] It is not that I or

---

* *Arthakāmàn* is an adjecttive qualifying *Gurun*. Some commentators, particularly Sreedhara, suggest that it may, instead, qualify *bhogān*. The meaning, however, in that case would be far-fetched.—T.

† Sreedhara explains that *Kārpanya* is compassion (for kinsmen), and *dosha* is the fear of sin (for destroying a race). The first compound, therefore, according to him, means,—"My nature affected by *both* compassion and fear of sin &c." It is better, however, to take *Karpanya* itself as a *dosha* (taint or fault). K. T. Telang understands it in this way. *Upahata*, however, is *affected* and not *contaminated*.—T.

‡ What Arjuna says here is that "Even if I obtain such a kingdom on Earth, even if I obtain the very kingship of the gods, I do not yet see what will dispel that grief which will overtake me if I slay my preceptor and kinsmen" Telang's version is sightly ambiguous.—T.

§ the Bengal texts have *Parantapa* with a *Visarga*, thus implying that it refers to *Gadākeça*. The Bombay edition prints it without the *Visarga*, implying that it is in the vocative case, refering to Dhritaráshtra the listner.—T.

you or those rulers of men never were, or that all of us shall not hereafter be.[12] Of an embodied being, as childhood, youth, and decrepitude are in this body, so (also) is the acquisition of another body. The man that is wise is never deluded in this.*[13] The contacts of the senses with their (respecttive) objects producing (sensations of) heat and cold, pleasure and pain, are not permanent, having (as they do) a beginning and an end. Do thou, O Bhārata, endure them![14] For the man whom these afflict not, O bull among men, who is the same in pain and pleasure and who is firm in mind, is fit for emancipation.†[15] There is no (objective) existence of anything that is distinct from the soul; nor non-existence of anything possessing the virtues of the soul. This conclusion in respect of both these hath been arrived at by those that know the truths (of things).‡[16] Know that [the soul] to be immortal by which all this [universe] is pervaded. No one can compass the destruction of that which is imperishable.[17] It hath been said that those bodies of the embodied (soul) which is eternal, indestructible and infinite, have an end. Do thou, therefore, fight, O Bhārata![18] He who thinks it [the soul] to be the slayer and he who thinks it to be the slain, both of them know nothing; for it neither slays nor is slain.[19]

---

* One of the most useful rules in translating from one language into another is to use identical words for identical expressions in the original. In translating, however, from a language like Sanskrit which abounds with synonyms, this is not always practicable without ambiguity. As an example, the word used in 13 is *Dhira*; that used in 11 is *Pandita*. There can be little doubt, however, that *Pandita* and *Dhīra* have exactly the same meaning.—T.

† *Amritatwa* is really emancipation or non-liability to repeated death or repeated rebirth. To render it as "immortality" is, perhaps, a little slovenly, for every soul is immortal, and this particular section inculcates it.—T.

‡ *Sat*, and *asat* are the two words which must be distinctly understood as they occur often in Hindu philosophy. *Sat* is explained as the real. *i. e.* the soul, or anything as real and permanent as the soul. *Asat* is the reverse of this, *i. e.* the unreal or the Not-soul. What is said here by Krishna is that the unreal have no existence; the real, again, can have no non-existence. Is not this a sort of cosmothetic idealism?—T.

It is never born, nor doth it ever die; nor, having existed, will it exist no more. Unborn, unchangeable, eternal, and ancient, it is not slain upon the body being slain.[20] That man who knoweth it to be indestructible, unchangeable, without decay,—how and whom can *he* slay or cause to be slain?[21] As a man, casting off robes that are worn out, putteth on others that are new, so the Embodied [soul], casting off bodies that are worn out, entereth other bodies that are new.[22] Weapons cleave it not, fire consumeth it not; the waters do not drench it, nor doth the wind waste it.[23] It is incapable of being cut, burnt, drenched, or dried up. It is unchangeable, all-pervading, stable, firm, and eternal.[24] It is said to be imperceivable, inconceivable, and unchangeable. Therefore, knowing it to be such, it behoveth thee not to mourn (for it).[25] Then again even if thou regardest it as constantly born and constantly dead, it behoveth thee not yet, O mighty-armed one, to mourn (for it) thus![26] For, of one that is born, death is certain; and of one that is dead, birth is certain. Therefore, it behoveth thee not to mourn in a matter that is unavoidable.[27] All beings (before birth) were unmanifest. Only during an interval (between birth and death), O Bhārata, are they manifest; and then again, when death comes, they become (once more) unmanifest! What grief then is there in this?[28] One looks upon it as a marvel; another speaks of it as a marvel. Yet even after having heard of it, no one apprehends, it truly.[29] The Embodied [soul], O Bhārata, is ever indestructible in every one's body. Therefore, it behoveth thee not to grieve for all (those) creatures![30] Casting thy eyes on the (prescribed) duties of thy order, it behoveth thee not to waver, for there is nothing else that is better for a Kshatriya than a battle fought fairly.[31] Arrived of itself and (like unto) an open gate of heaven, happy are those Kshatriyas, O Pārtha, that obtain such a fight![32] But if thou dost not fight such a just battle, thou shalt then incur sin by abandoning the duties of thy order and thy fame![33] People will then proclaim thy eternal infamy, and to one that is held in respect, infamy is greater (as an evil) than death itself.[34] All great car-warriors will regard thee as abstaining from battle from fear, and

thou wilt be thought lightly by those that had (hitherto) esteemed thee highly.[35] Thy enemies, decrying thy prowess, will say many words which should not be said. What can be more painful than that ?[36] Slain, thou wilt attain to heaven ; or victorious, thou wilt enjoy the Earth. Therefore, arise, O son of Kunti, resolved for battle ![37] Regarding pleasure and pain, gain and loss, victory and defeat, as equal, do battle for battle's sake and sin will not be thine ![*38] This knowledge that hath been communicated to thee is (taught) in the *Sānkhya* (system). Listen now to that (inculcated) in the *Yoga* (system) ! Possessed of that knowledge, thou, O Pārtha, wilt cast off the bonds of action ![39] In this [the *Yoga* system] there is no waste of even the first attempt. There are no impediments. Even a little of this (form of) piety delivers from great fear†[40] Here [in this path] O son of Kuru, there is only one state of mind, consisting in firm devotion (to one object, *viz*, securing emancipation). The minds of those, however, that are not firmly devoted (to this), are many-branched (unsettled) and attached to endless pursuits.[41] That flowery talk which they that are ignorant, they that delight in the words of the *Vedas*, they, O Pārtha, that say that there is nothing else, they whose minds are attached to worldly pleasures, they that regard (a) heaven (of pleasures and enjoyments) as the highest object of acquisition, utter,—(that flowery talk) which promises birth as the fruit of action and which concerns itself with multifarious rites of specific characters for the attainment of pleasures and power,—their hearts being deluded by *that* (flowery talk), the minds of those men who are attached to pleasure and power cannot be directed to contemplation (of the divine being) regarding it as the sole means of eman-

---

* Most texts read *Yudhāya Yujyaswa*. A manuscript belonging to a friend of mine has the correction in red-ink, *Yudhāya Yudhaswa*. It accords so well with the spirit of the lesson sought to be inculcated here that I make no scruple to adopt it.—T.

† A life in this world that is subject to decay and death. So all the commentators.—T.

cipation !*[42-44] The *Vedas* are concerned with three qualities, (*viz*, religion, profit, and pleasure). Be thou, O Arjuna, free from them, unaffected by pairs of contraries (such as pleasure and pain, heat and cold, &c.), ever adhering to patience, without anxiety for new acquisitions or protection of those already acquired, and self-possessed.[45] Whatever objects are served by a tank or well, may all be served by a vast sheet of water extending all around; so whatever objects may be served by all the *Vedas*, may all be had by a Brāhmana having knowledge (of self or *Brahma*).†[46] Thy concern is with Work only, but not with the fruit (of work). Let not the fruit be thy motive for work; nor let thy inclination be for inaction.[47] Staying in devotion, apply thyself to work, casting off attachment (to it), O Dhananjaya, and being the same in success or unsuccess. This equanimity is called *Yoga* (devotion).[48] Work (with desire of fruit) is far inferior to devotion, O Dhananjaya! Seek thou the protection of devotion! They that work for the sake of fruit are miserable.[49] He who hath devotion throws off, even in this world, both good actions and bad

---

* What Krishna seeks to inculcate here is the simple truth that persons who believe in the *Vedas* and their ordinances laying down specific acts for the attainment of a heaven of pleasure and power, cannot have that *devotion* without which there cannot be final emancipation which only is the highest bliss. The performance of Vedic rites may lead to a heaven of pleasure and power, but what is that heaven worth? True emancipation is something else which must be obtained by devotion, by pure contemplation. In rendering *Janma-Karma-phalapradām* I have followed Cankara. Creedhara and other commentators explain it differently.—T.

† This *sloka* has been variously rendered by various translators. It is the same that occurs in the *Sanat-Sujàta Parva* of the *Udyoga*. (*Vide Udyoga*, Section—XLV. Page.—164). Both Creedhara and Cankara (and I may mention Anandagiri also) explain it in this way. Shortly stated, the meaning is that to an instructed Brahmana (Brahma-knowing person and not a Brāhmana by birth), his knowledge (of self or Brahma) teaches him that which is obtainable from all the *Vedas*, just as a man wanting to bathe or drink may find a tank or well as useful to him as a large reservoir of water occupying an extensive area. Nilakantha explains it in a different way. I have noticed it in page 164 of *Udyoga*, *ante*.—T.

actions. Therefore, apply thyself to devotion. Devotion is only cleverness in action![50] The wise, possessed of devotion, cast off the fruit born of action, and freed from the obligation of (repeated) birth, attain to that region where there is no unhappiness.[51] When thy mind shall have crossed the maze of delusion then shalt thou attain to an indifference as regards the hearable and the heard.*[52] When thy mind, distracted (now) by what thou hast heard (about the means of acquiring the diverse objects of life), will be firmly and immovably fixed on contemplation, then wilt thou attain to devotion![53]—

"'Arjuna said,—What, O Keçava, are the indications of one whose mind is fixed on contemplation? How should one of steady mind speak, how sit, how move?[54]—

"'The holy one said,—When one casts off all the desires of his heart and is pleased within (his) self with self, then is one said to be of steady mind.[55] He whose mind is not agitated amid calamities, whose craving for pleasure is gone, who is freed from attachment (to worldly objects), fear, and wrath, is said to be a *Muni* of steady mind.[56] His is steadiness of mind who is without affection everywhere, and who feeleth no exultation and no aversion on obtaining diverse objects that are agreeable and disagreeable.[57] When one withdraws his senses from the objects of (those) senses as the tortoise its limbs from all sides, even his is steadiness of mind.[58] Objects of sense fall back from an abstinent person, but not so the passion (for those objects). Even the passion recedes from one who has beheld the Supreme (Being).†[59] The agitat-

---

* *Crotavyasya Crutasyacha* is literally "of the hearable and the heard," *i. e.* "what you may or will hear, and what you have heard." European translators of the *Gitā* view in these words a rejection of the *Vedas* by the author. It is amusing to see how confidently they dogmatise upon this point, rejecting the authority of Cankara, Creedhara, Anandagiri, and the whole host of Indian commentators. As K. T. Telang, however, has answered the point elaborately, nothing more need be said here.—T.

† One may abstain, either from choice or inability to procure them, from the objects of enjoyment. Until, however, the very desire to enjoy is suppressed, one cannot be said to have attained to steadiness of mind. Cf. Aristottle's saying that he is a voluptuary who pines at his own

ing senses, O son of Kunti, forcibly draw away the mind of even a wise man striving hard to keep himself aloof from them.[60] Restraining them all, one should stay in contemplation, making me his sole refuge ! For his is steadiness of mind whose senses are under control.[61] Thinking of the objects of sense, a person's attachment is begotten towards them. From attachment springeth wrath.[62] From wrath ariseth want of discrimination ; from want of discrimination, loss of memory ; from loss of memory, loss of understanding ; and from loss of understanding (he) is utterly ruined.[63] But the self-restrained man, enjoying objects (of sense) with senses freed from attachment and aversion and under his own control, attaineth to peace (of mind).[64] On peace (of mind) being attained, the annihilation of all his miseries taketh place, since the mind of him whose heart is peaceful soon becometh steady.*[65] He who is not self-restrained hath no knowledge (of self). He who is not self-restrained hath no contemplation (of self). He who hath no contemplation hath no peace (of mind). Whence can there be happiness for him who hath no peace (of mind) ?†[66] For the heart that follows in the wake of the senses moving (among their objects) destroys his understanding like the wind a boat in the waters.‡[67] Therefore, O thou of mighty arms,

---

abstinence, and the Christian doctrine of sin being in the wish, mere abstinence from the act constitutes no merit.—T.

* The particle *hi* in the second line is explained by both Cankara and Anandagiri as equivalent to *Yasmāt.* The meaning becomes certainly clearer by taking the word in this sence. The *hi*, however, may also be taken as implying the sense of "indeed."—T.

† *Buddhi* in the first line is explained by Creedhara as *Atmavishayā bhuddhi. Bhāvanā*, Creedhara explains, is *Dhyānam* ; and Cankara, as *Atmajnānābhiniveças.* K. T. Telang renders *Bhàvanà* as perseverance. I do not think this is correct.—T.

‡ Cankara, Anandagiri, and Nilakantha explain this *sloka* thus. Creedhara explains it otherwise. The latter supposes the pronouns *yat* and *tat* to mean a particular sense among the *Charatām indriyānām.* If Creedhara's interpretation be correct, the meaning would be—"That (one sense) amongst the senses moving (among their objects) which the mind follows, (that one sense) tosseth the mind's (or the man's) understanding about like the wind tossing a (drunken boatman's) boat on the waters." The parenthetical words are introduced by Creedhara himself.

his is steadiness of mind whose senses are restrained on all sides from the objects of sense.[68] The restrained man is awake when it is night for all creatures; and when other creatures are awake that is night to a discerning *Muni*.*[69] He into whom all objects of desire enter, even as the waters enter the ocean which (though) constantly replenished still maintains its water-mark unchanged,—(he) obtains peace (of mind) and not one that longeth for objects of desire.[70] That man who moveth about, giving up all objects of desire, who is free from craving (for enjoyments), and who hath no affection and no pride, attaineth to peace (of mind).[71] This, O Pārtha, is the divine state. Attaining to it, one is never deluded. Abiding in it one obtains, on death, absorption into the Supreme Self!—' "[72]

SECTION XXVII.

" 'Arjuna said,—If devotion, O Janārddana, is regarded by thee as superior to work, why then, O Keçava, dost thou engage me in such dreadful work?[1] By equivocal words thou seemest to confound my understanding. Therefore, tell (me) one thing definitely by which I may attain to what is good![2]—

" 'The holy one said,—It hath already been said by me, O sinless one, that there are, in this world, two kinds of devotion; that of the Sānkhyas through Knowledge and that of the *Yogins* through Work.[3] A man doth not acquire freedom from work from (only) the non-performance of work. Nor doth he acquire final emancipation from only renunciation (of work).[4] No one can abide even for a moment without doing work, for all persons, constrained by the tendencies of (their) disposition, perform work.†[5] That man of deluded soul who,

---

It may not be out of place to mention here that so far as Bengal, Mithilā, and Beneras are concerned, the authority of Creedhara is regarded as supreme.—T.

* The vulgar, being spiritually dark, are engaged in worldly pursuits. The sage in spiritual light is dead to the latter.—T.

† *Prakritijais Gunais* is explained by Creedhara as qualities born of one's nature such as *Rāgadveshádi*. Cankara thinks that they are the qualities or attibutes of primal matter (which enters into the composition of every self) such as *Satwa*, *Rajas*, and *tamas*.—T.

curbing the organs of sense, liveth mentally cherishing the objects of sense, is said to be a dissembler.[6] He, however, O Arjuna, who restraining (his) senses by his mind, engageth in devotion (in the form) of work with the organs of work, and is free from attachment, is distinguished (above all).[7] (Therefore), do thou always apply to work, for action is better than inaction. Even the support of thy body cannot be accomplished without work.*[8] This world is fettered by all work other than that which is (performed) for Sacrifice. (Therefore), O son of Kunti, perform work for the sake of *that*, freed from attachment.†[9] In olden times, the Lord of creation, creating men and Sacrifice together, said,—Multiply by means of this [Sacrifice]! Let this [Sacrifice] be to you (all) the dispenser of all objects cherished by you![10] Rear the gods with this, and let the gods (in return) rear you! Rearing each other, you will obtain that which is beneficial (to you)‡[11] Reared by sacrifices the gods will bestow on you the pleasures you desire. He who enjoyeth (himself) without giving them what they have given, is assuredly a thief.[12] The good who eat the remnants of sacrifices are freed from all sins. Those unrighteous ones incur sin who dress food for their own sakes.[13]—From food are all creatures; from rain is the production of food; rain is produced from sacrifice; and sacrifice is the outcome of work.§[14] Know that work proceeds from the *Vedas*; the *Vedas* have proceeded from Him

---

* "Apply to work," *i. e*, to work as prescribed in the scriptures. Thus Cankara. "To morning and evening prayers &c.," says Sreedhara.—T.

† Sacrifice is Vishnu's self as declared by the *Crutis*; work for sacrifice, therefore, is work for Vishnu's sake or gratification. *For the sake of that*, *i. e*, for sacrifice's or Vishnu's sake. So all the commentators.—T.

‡ *Bhāvaya* is explained by both Cankara and Creedhara as "*Vardhaya*" or "make grow." Perhaps, "rear" is the nearest approach to it in English. K. T. Telang renders it "please." The idea is eminently Indian. The gods are fed by sacrifices, and in return they feed men by sending rain. The *Asuras* again who warred with the gods warred with sacrifices.—T.

§ *Parjjanya* is explained by both Cankara and Creedhara as rain. It means also the clouds or the origin of rain.—T

who hath no decay. Therefore, the all-pervading Supreme Being is installed in sacrifice.*[15] He who conformeth not to the wheel that is thus revolving, that man of sinful life delighting in (the indulgene of) his senses, liveth in vain, O Pārtha!†[16] The man, however, that is attached to self only, that is contented with self, and that is pleased in his self,—*he* hath no work (to do).[17] He hath no concern whatever with action nor with any omission here. Nor, amongst all creatures, is there any upon whom his interest dependeth.‡[18] Therefore, always do work that should be done, without attachment. The man who performeth work without attachment attaineth to the Supreme.[19] By work alone, Janaka and others, attained the accomplishment of their objects. Having regard also to the observance by men of their duties, it behoveth thee to work.[20] Whatever one that is great doth, even that Vulgar people do. Whatever he maketh an authority, ordinary men follow that.§[21] There is nothing whatever for me, O Pārtha, to do in the three worlds, (since I have) nothing to acquire which hath not been acquired; still I engage in action.¶[22] For if at any time I should not, without sloth, engage in action, men would

* The word in the original that is rendered *Vedas* is *Brahma*. It may mean the Supreme Soul. Of course, in Brāhmanic literature, the *Vedas* are *Brahma* and *Brahma* is the *Vedas*, but still in the second line of 15 there is no necessity of taking *Brahma* as equivalent to the *Vedas*. I do not think Telang is accurate in his rendering of this line.—T.

† The wheel referred to is what has been said before, *viz;* from the *Vedas* are work, from work is rain, from rain is food, from food are creatures, from creatures again work, and so back to the *Vedas*.—T.

‡ The sense seems to be, as explained by the commentators, that such a man earns no merit by action, nor sin by inaction or omission. Nor is there anybody, from the Sumpreme Being to the lowest creature on whom he depends for anything.—T.

§ The example set by the great is always catching. *Itaras* here is. "Vulgar" and not "other." *Kurute* which I have rendered as "maketh" is used in the senses of "regardeth." *Pramānam*, however, may not neccessarily mean something else that is set up as authority. It may refer to the actions themselves of the great man set up by him as a standard.—T.

¶ Creedhara would connect "in the three worlds" with what follows. I follow Cankara and the natural order of the words.—T.

follow my path, O Pārtha, on all sides![23] Then worlds would perish if I did not perform work, and I should cause intermixture of castes and ruin these people.[24] As they that are ignorant work, O Bhārata, being attached to work, so should a wise man work without being attached, desiring to make men observant of their duties.[25] A wise man should not cause confusion of understanding among ignorant persons who are attached to work; (on the other hand) he should, (himself) acting with devotion, engage them to all (kinds of) work.[26] All work is, in every way, done by the qualities of nature. He, however, whose mind is deluded by egoism, regards himself as the actor.*[27] But he, O mighty-armed one, who knoweth the distinction (of self) from qualities and work, is not attached to work, considering that it is his senses alone (and not his self) that engage in their objects.†[28] They that are deluded by the qualities of nature, become attached to the works done by the qualities. A person of perfect knowledge should not bewilder those men of imperfect knowledge.‡[29] Resigning all work to me, with (thy) mind directed to self, engage in battle, without desire, without affection, and with thy (heart's) fever dispelled![§30] Those men that always follow this opinion of mine with faith and without cavil, attain to final emancipation even by work.[31] But they who cavil at and do not follow this opinion of mine, know, that, bereft of all knowledge and without discrimination, are

---

* The word rendered "nature" is *prakriti.* It really implies "primal matter."—T.

† The second line, literally rendered, is "deeming that qualities engage in qualities." The first "qualities" imply the senses, and the second, the objects of the senses. The purport is that one knowing the distinction referred to, never thinks that his soul is the actor, for that which is work is only the result of the senses being applied to their objects.—T.

‡ *Guna-karmashu* is explained by Cankara as works of the qualities, or works done by them. Sreedhara explains the compound as "qualities *and* (their) works.—T.

§ *Resigning all work to me, i. e.* in the belief that all you do is for me or my sake.—T.

ruined.[32] Even a wise man acts according to his own nature. All living beings follow (their own) nature. What then would restraint avail ?[33] The senses have, as regards the objects of the senses, either affection or aversion fixed. One should not submit to these, for they are obstacles in one's way.*[34] One's own duty, even if imperfectly performed, is better than another's duty even if well performed. Death in (performance of) one's own duty is preferable, (The adoption of) the duty of another carries fear (with it).[35]—

" 'Arjuna said,—Impelled by whom, O son of the Vrishni race, doth a man commit sin, even though unwilling and as if constrained by force ?[36]—

" 'The holy one said,—It is desire, it is wrath, born of the attribute of passion; it is all devouring, it is very sinful. Know this to be the foe in this world !†[37] As fire is enveloped by smoke, a mirror by dust, the fœtus by the womb, so is *this*‡ enveloped by desire.[38] Knowledge, O son of Kunti, is enveloped by this constant foe of the wise in the form of desire which is insatiable and like a fire.[39] The senses, the mind, and the understanding, are said to be its abode. With these it deludeth the embodied self, enveloping (his) Knowledge.[40] Therefore, restraining (thy) senses first, O bull of Bharata's race, cast off this wicked thing, for it destroyeth knowledge derived from both instruction and meditation.§[41] It hath been said that the senses are superior (to the body which is inert). Superior to the senses is the mind. Superior to the mind is the understanding. But that which is superior to the understanding is *He*¶[42] Thus knowing that which is

* The senses, as regards their diverse objects in the world, are either drawn towards them or repelled by them. These likes and dislikes (in the case of men who, of course, only act according to their natures) stand in the way of their emancipation if men submit to them.—T.

† Desire, if not gratified, results in wrath. Thus the commentators.—T.

‡ Vide next *sloka*.—T.

§ *Prajahi* is explained by both Cankara and Sreedhara as *parityaja* (cast off).—T.

¶ *He* is the Supreme Soul or Being.—T.

superior to the understanding, and restraining (thy) self by self, slay, O mighty-armed one, the enemy in the shape of desire which is difficult to conquer!' "[43]—

SECTION XXVIII.

"'The holy one said,—This imperishable (system of) Devotion I declared to Vivaswat; Vivaswat declared it to Manu; and Manu communicated it to Ikshāku.[1] Descending thus from generation to generation, the royal sages came to know it. But, O chastiser of foes, by (lapse of a) long time that devotion became lost to the world.[2] Even the same (system of) devotion hath today been declared by me to thee; for thou art my devotee and friend, (and) this is a great mystery.[3]—

"'Arjuna said,—Thy birth is posterior; Vivaswat's birth is prior, How shall I understand then that thou hadst first declared (it)?[4]—

"'The holy one said,—Many births of mine have passed away, O Arjuna, as also of thine! These all *I* know, but thou dost not, O chastiser of foes![5] Though (I am) unborn and of essence that knoweth no deterioration, though (I am) the lord of all creatures, still, relying on my own (material) nature I take birth by my own (powers) of illusion.[6] Whensoever, O Bhārata, loss of piety occurreth, and the rise of impiety, on those occasions do I create myself.[7] For the protection of the righteous, for also the destruction of evil-doers, for the sake of establishing piety, I am born age after age.[8] He that truly knoweth my divine birth and work to be such, casting off (his body) is not born again; (on the other hand) he cometh to me, O Arjuna![9] Many who have been freed from attachment, fear, and wrath, who were full of me, and who relied on me, have, cleansed by knowledge and asceticism, attained to my essence.[10] In whatsoever manner men come to me, in the selfsame manner do I accept them. It is my way, O Pārtha, that men follow on all sides.*[11] They in this

---

* There can be little doubt that what Krishna says here is that no

world that are desirous of the success of actions worship the the gods, for in this world of men the success resulting from action is soon attained.[12] The quadruple division of castes was created by me according to the distinction of qualities and duties. Though I am the author thereof (yet) know me to be not the author and undecaying.*[13] Actions do not touch me. I have no longing for the fruits of actions. He that knoweth me thus is not impeded by actions.[14] Knowing this, even men of old that were desirous of emancipation performed work. Therefore, do thou also perform work as was done by them of old of olden times.[15] What is action and what inaction,—even the learned are perplexed at this. Therefore, I will tell thee about action (so that) knowing it thou mayst be freed from evil.[16] One should have knowledge of action, and one should have knowledge of forbidden actions; one should also know of inaction. The course of action is incomprehensible.[17] He that sees inaction in action and action in inaction, is wise among men; he is possessed of devotion; and he is a doer of all actions.[18] The learned call him wise whose efforts are all free from desire (of fruit) and (consequent) will, and whose actions have all been consumed by the fire of knowledge†.[19] Whoever, resigning all attachment to the fruit of action, is ever contented and is dependent on none, doeth nought, indeed, although engaged in action.[20] He who, without desire, with mind and the senses under control, and casting off all concerns, performeth action

---

form of worship is unacceptable to him. Whatever the manner of the worship, it is I that am worshipped. After K. T. Telang's exhaustive and effective reply to Dr. Lorinser's strange hypothesis of the *Gitā* having been composed under Christain influences, it is scarcely necessary to add that such toleration would ill-accord with the theory of the Christian authorship of the poem.—T.

* *I. e.* both inactive and undecaying. Work implies exertion and, therefore, loss of energy. In me there is no action, no loss of energy and, therefore, no decay.—T.

† *Kāma-sankalpa vivarjjitās, i. e,* freed from *kāma* (desire of fruit) and *sankalpa* (the consequent will or determination to do). Thus both Sreedhara and Cankara.—T.

only for the preservation of the body, incurreth no sin.*[21] He who is contented with what is earned without exertion, who hath risen superior to the pairs of opposites, who is without jealousy, who is equable in success and failure, is not fettered (by action) even though he works.[22] All his actions perish who acts for the sake of Sacrifice, who is without affections, who is free (from attachments), and whose mind is fixed upon knowledge.†[23] *Brahma* is the vessel (with which the libation is poured); *Brahma* is the libation (that is offered); *Brahma* is the fire on which by *Brahma* is poured (the libation); *Brahma* is the goal to which he proceedeth by fixing his mind on *Brahma* itself which is the action.‡[24] Some devotees perform sacrifice to the gods. Others, by means of sacrifice, offer up sacrifice to the fire of *Brahma*.§[25] Others offer up (as sacrificial libation) the senses of which hearing is the first to the fire of restraint. Others (again) offer up (as libations) the objects of sense of which sound is the first to the fire of the senses.$[26] Others (again) offer up all the functions of the senses and the functions of the vital winds to the fire of devotion by self-restraint kindled by knowledge.¶[27] Others again perform the sacrifice of wealth, the sacrifice of ascetic austerities, the sacrifice of meditation, the sacrifice of *(Vedic)* study, the sacrifice of knowledge, and others are ascetics of rigid vows.||[28] Some offer up the upward vital wind *(Prāna)*

---

* *Chitta* is mind, and *átmā* in this connection is the senses. Thus both Sreedhara and Cankara.—T.

† Sacrifice means here the Supreme Soul. What is done for the sake of sacrifice is done for procuring emancipation.—T.

‡ What is meant by this is that in the case of such a person complete identification with *Brahma* takes place, and when such an identification has taken place, action is destroyed.—T.

§ *I. e*, offering up sacrifice itself as a sacrifice to the *Brahma* fire, they cast off all action.—T.

$ Ofiering up the senses to the fire of restraint means restraining the senses for the practice of *Yoga*. Offering up the objects of the senses means non-attachment to those objects.—T.

¶ Suspending the functions of life for contemplation or *Yoga*.—T.

|| In these cases the sacrifices consist in the giving away of wealth, in the ascetic austerities themselves, in meditation, in study, &c. Sree-

to the downward vital wind *(apāna)*; and others, the downward vital wind to the upward vital wind; some, arresting the course of (both) the upward and the downward vital winds, are devoted to the restraint of the vital winds. Others of restricted rations, offer the vital winds to the vital winds.*[29] Even all these who are conversant with sacrifice, whose sins have been consumed by sacrifice, and who eat the remnants of sacrifice which are *amrita*, attain to the eternal *Brahma*.[30] (Even) this world is not for him who doth not perform sacrifice. Whence then the other, O best of Kuru's race?[31] Thus diverse are the sacrifices occuring in the *Vedas*. Know that all of them result from action, and knowing this thou wilt be emancipated.[32] The sacrifice of knowledge, O chastiser of foes, is superior to every sacrifice involving (the attainment of) fruits of action, for all action, O Pārtha, is wholly comprehended in knowledge.†[33] Learn *that* [Knowledge] by prostration, enquiry, and service. They that are possessed of knowledge and can see the truth will teach thee that knowledge,[34] knowing which, O son of Pāndu, thou wilt not again come by such delusion, and by which thou wilt see the endless creatures (of the universe) in thyself (first) and then in me![35] Even if thou beest the greatest sinner among all that are sinful, thou shalt yet cross over all transgressions by the raft of knowledge.[36] As a blazing fire, O Arjuna, reduceth fuel to ashes, so doth the fire of knowledge reduce all acitons to ashes.[37] For there is nothing here that is so cleansing as knowledge. One that hath attained to success by devotion finds it without effort within his own self in time.[38] He obtaineth knowledge who hath faith and is intent on it and who hath his senses under control; obtaining knowledge, one

---

dhara explains the first compound of the second line differently. According to him, it means, not study *and* knowledge, but the knowledge *derived from* study.—T.

* This *sloka* consists of 3 lines. All these are different kinds of *Yoga*, or the different stages of *Yoga* practice.—T.

† *I. e*, knowledge being attained, the fruits of action are attained by, at least, their end being compassed.—T.

findeth the highest tranquillity in no length of time.[39] One who hath no knowledge and no faith, and whose mind is full of doubt, is lost. Neither this world, nor the next, nor happiness, is for him whose mind is full of doubt.[40] Actions do not fetter him, O Dhananjaya, who hath cast off action by devotion, whose doubts have been dispelled by knowledge, and who is self-restrained.[41] Therefore, destroying, by the sword of knowledge, this doubt of thine that is born of ignorance and that dwelleth in thy mind, betake to devotion, (and) arise, O son of Bharata!' "[42]

SECTION XXIX.

"'Arjuna said,—Thou applaudest, O Krishna, the abandonment of actions, and again the application (to them)! Tell me definitely which one of these two is superior![1]—

"'The holy one said,—Both abandonment of actions and application to actions lead to emancipation. But of these application to action is superior to abandonment.[2] He should always be known to be an ascetic who hath no aversion nor desire. For, being free from pairs of opposites, O thou of mighty arms, he is easily released from the bonds (of action).[3] Fools say, but not those that are wise, that *Sānkhya* and *Yoga* are distinct. One who stayeth in even one (of the two) reapeth the friut of both.*[4] Whatever seat is attained by those that profess the *Sānkhya* system, that too is reached by those that profess the *Yoga*. He seeth truly who seeth *Sānkhya* and *Yoga* as one.†[5] But renunciation, O mighty armed one, without devotion (to action), is difficult to attain. The ascetic who is engaged in devotion (by action) reacheth the Supreme Being without delay.[6] He who is engaged in devotion (by action) and is of pure soul, who hath conquered his body and subdued his senses, and who identifieth himself

---

* *Sánkhya* is renunciation of action, while *Yoga* is devotion through action.—T.

† The grammatical form of the word *Yoga* as here employed is exceptional.—T.

with all creatures, is not fettered though performing (actions).*[7] The man of devotion, who knoweth the truth, thinketh—*I am doing nothing*—when seeing, hearing, touching, smelling, eating, moving, sleeping, breathing, talking, excreting, taking, opening the eyelids or closing them; he regardeth that it is the senses that are engaged in the objects of sense.†[8-9] He who, renouncing attachment, engageth in actions, resigning them to *Brahma*, is not touched by sin as the lotus leaf (is not touched) by water.‡[10] They that are devotees, casting off attachment, perform actions for (attaining) purity of self, with the body, the mind, the understanding, and even the senses (free from desire).[11] He that is possessed of devotion, renouncing the fruit of action, attaineth to the highest tranquillity. He that is not possessed of devotion and is attached to the fruit of action, is fettered by action performed from desire.[12] The self-restrained embodied (self), renouncing all actions by the mind, remains at ease within the house of nine gates, neither acting himself nor causing (anything) to act.$[13] The lord is not the cause of the capacity for action, or of the actions of men, or of the connection of actions and (their) fruit. It is nature that engages (in action).[14] The Lord receiveth no one's sin, nor also merit. By Ignorance Knowledge is shrouded. It is for this that creatures are deluded.[15] But of whomsoever that Ignorance hath been destroyed by knowledge of self, that knowledge (which is) like the Sun discloseth the Supreme Being.[16] Those whose mind is on Him, whose very soul is He, who abide in Him, and who have Him for their goal, depart never more to return, their sins being all destroyed by know-

---

* The first *ätman* is explained as the soul, the second as the body, by all the commentators.—T.

† *Taking* means taking any thing with the hands.—T.

‡ Water when thrown over a lotus leaf escapes without soaking or drenching the leaf at all.—T.

$ Telang renders *Pura* as city. Of course, the body having two eyes, two ears, two nostrils, one mouth, and two openings for excretions, is meant.—T.

ledge.*[17] They that are wise cast an equal eye on a Brāhmana endued with learning and modesty, on a cow, an elephant, a dog, and a *Chandāla*.†[18] Even here has birth been conquered by them whose minds rest on equality; and since *Brahma* is faultless and equable, therefore, they (are said to) abide in *Brahma*.‡[19] He whose mind is steady, who is not deluded, who knows *Brahma*, and who rests in *Brahma*, doth not exult on obtaining anything that is agreeable nor doth he grieve on obtaining anything that is disagreeable.[20] He whose mind is not attached to external objects of sense, obtaineth that happiness which is in self; and by concentrating his mind on the contemplation of *Brahma*, he enjoyeth a happiness that is imperishable.[21] The enjoyments born of the contact (of the senses with their objects) are productive of sorrow. He that is wise, O son of Kunti, never taketh pleasure in these that have a beginning and an end.[22] That man who even here, before the dissolution of the body, is able to endure the agitations resulting from desire and wrath, is fixed on contemplation, and is happy.[23] He who findeth happiness within himself, (and) who sporteth within himself, he whose light (of knowledge) is derived from within himself, is a devotee, and becoming one with *Brahma* attaineth to absorption into *Brahma*.[24] Those saintly personages whose sins have been destroyed, whose doubts have been dispelled, who are self-restrained, and who are engaged in the good of all creatures, obtain absorption into *Brahma*.[25] For those devotees who have been freed from desire and wrath, whose minds are under control, and who have knowledge of self, absorption into *Brahma* exists both here and hereafter.§[26] Excluding (from his mind) all external objects of sense, directing the

* Such men are exempted from the obligation of re-birth. Leaving this body they merge into the Supreme Soul.—T.

† The word is *Swapāka* meaning a member of the lowest caste.—T.

‡ "Brahma is faultless and equable :" so Creedhara, others,—"since faultless equality is Brahma.".—T.

§ The sense is that they are at one with *Brahma* both here and hereafter.—T.

visual glance between the brows, mingling (into one) the upward and the downward life-breaths and making them pass through the nostrils, the devotee, who has restrained the senses, the mind, and the understanding, being intent on emancipation, and who is freed from desire, fear, and wrath, is emancipated, indeed![27-28] Knowing me to be the enjoyer of all sacrifices and ascetic austerities, the great Lord of all the worlds, and the friend of all creatures, such a one obtaineth tranquillity!—' "[29]

SECTION XXX.

" 'The holy one said,—Regardless of fruit of action, he that performs the actions which should be performed, is a Renouncer and Devotee, and not one who discards the (sacrificial) fire, nor one that abstains from action.*[1] That which has been called Renunciation, know that, O son of Pāndu, to be Devotion, since nobody can be a Devotee who has not renounced (all) resolves.†[2] To the sage desirous of rising to Devotion, action is said to be the means; and when he has risen to devotion, cessation of action is said to be the means.[3] When one is no longer attached to the objects of the senses, nor to actions, and when one renounces all resolves, then is one said to have risen to Devotion.[4] One should raise (his) self by self; one should not degrade (his) self; for one's own self is one's friend, and one's own self is one's enemy.‡[5] To him (only) who has subjugated his self by his self is self a friend. But to him who has not subjugated his self, his self behaves inimically like an enemy.[6] The soul of one who has subjugated his self and who is in the enjoyment of tranquillity, is steadily fixed (on itself) amid cold and heat, pleasure and pain, and also honor and dishonor.[7] That ascetic is said to be devoted whose mind is satisfied with knowledge and experience, who hath no

---

* Renouncer and devotee, *Sannyāsin* and *Yogin*.—T.

† Which spring from *desire*.—T.

‡ *Self* in this *sloka* is explained by the commentators as *mind*. The mind, unless controlled, cannot lead to devotion.—T.

affection, who hath subjugated his senses, and to whom a sod, a stone, and gold are alike.[8] He who views equally well-wishers, friends, foes, strangers that are indifferent to him, those that take part with both sides, those that are objects of aversion, those that are related (to him), those that are good, and those that are wicked, is distinguished (above all others).[9] A devotee should always fix his mind on contemplation, remaining in a secluded place, alone, restraining both mind and body, without expectations (of any kind), and without concern (with anything).*[10] Erecting his seat immovably on a clean spot, not too high, nor too low, and spreading over it a piece of cloth, a deer-skin, or blades of *Kuça* grass, and there seated on that seat, with mind fixed on one object, and restraining the functions of the heart and the senses, one should practice contemplation for the purification of self.[11-12] Holding body, head, and neck even, unmoved, and steady, and casting his glance on the tip of his nose, and without looking about in any of the different directions,[13] with mind in tranquillity, freed from fear, observant of the practices of *Brahmachārins*, restraining the mind, with heart fixed on me, the devotee should sit down, regarding me as the object of his attainment.[14] Thus applying his soul constantly, the devotee whose heart is restrained, attains to that tranquillity which culminates in final absorption and assimilation with me.[15] Devotion is not one's, O Arjuna, who eateth much; nor one's who doth not eat at all; nor one's who is addicted to too much sleep; nor one's who is always awake.[16] Devotion that is destructive of misery is his who is temperate in food and amusements, who duly exerts himself temperately in all his works, and who is temperate in sleep and vigils.[17] When one's heart, properly restrained, is fixed on one's own self, then, indifferent to all objects of desire, is one called a devotee.†[18] As a lamp in a windless spot doth not flicker, even

---

* *Chitta* and *átmā* are explained by the commentators as "mind and body."—T.

† *Fixed on one's own self*, *i. e*, withdrawn from all objects of sense. Thus Cankara.—T.

that is the resemblance declared of a devotee whose heart hath been restrained and who applieth his self to abstraction.[19] That (condition) in which the mind, restrained by practice of abstraction, taketh rest, in which beholding self by self one is gratified within self;[20] in which one experienceth that highest felicity which is beyond the (sphere of the) senses and which the understanding (only) can grasp, and fixed on which one never swerveth from the truth;[21] acquiring which one regards no other acquisition greater than it, and abiding in which one is never moved by even the heaviest sorrow;[22] that (condition) should be known to be what is called Devotion in which there is a severence of connection with pain. That Devotion should be practised with perseverance, and with an undesponding heart.*[23] Renouncing all desires without exception that are born of resolves, restraining the entire group of the senses on all sides by mind alone,[24] one should, by slow degrees, become quiescent, (aided) by (his) understanding controlled by patience, and then directing his mind to self should think of nothing.†[25] Wheresoever the mind, which is (by nature) restless and unsteady, may run, restraining it from those, one should direct it to self alone.[26] Indeed, unto such a devotee whose mind is in tranquillity, whose passions have been suppressed, who hath become one with *Brahma* and who is free from sin, the highest felicity cometh (of its own accord).[27] Thus applying his soul constantly (to abstraction), the devotee, freed from sin, easily obtaineth that highest happiness, *viz*, contact with *Brahma*.[28] He that hath devoted (his) self to abstraction, casting an equal eye everywhere, beholdeth his self in all creatures and all creatures in his self.[29] Unto him that beholdeth me in everything and beholdeth everything in me, I am never lost and he also is never

---

* *Niçchayena* is explained by Cankara as equivalent to "with perseverance" or steadily. Creedhara explains it as equal to "with the certitude of knowledge acquired by instruction.—T.

† Dhriti-grahitayā Vuddhyā is, as explained by Cankara and others, "with understanding controlled by patience." K. T. Telang renders it "with firm resolve coupled with courage."—T.

lost to me.*[30] He that worshippeth me as abiding in all creatures, holding (yet) that all is one, is a devotee, and whatever mode of life he may lead, he liveth in me.[31] That devotee, O Arjuna, who casteth an equal eye everywhere, regarding all things as his own self and the happiness and misery of others as his own, is deemed to be the best.[32]—

"'Arjuna said,—This devotion by (means of) equanimity which thou hast declared, O slayer of Madhu,—(alas) from restlessness I do not see its stable presence!†[33] O Krishna, the mind is restless, boisterous, perverse, and obstinate. Its restraint I regard to be as difficult of accomplishment as (the restraint) of the wind![34]—

"'The holy one said,—Without doubt, O thou of mighty arms, the mind is difficult of subjugation and (is) restless. With practice, however, O son of Kunti, and with the abandonment of desire, it is controlled.[35] It is my belief that by him whose mind is not restrained, Devotion is difficult of acquisition. But by one whose mind is restrained and who is assiduous, it is capable of acquisition with (the aid of) means.[36]—

"'Arjuna said,—Without assiduity, (though) endued with faith, (and) with mind shaken off from devotion, what is the end of him, O Krishna, who hath not earned success in devotion?[37] Fallen off from both, is he lost like a separated cloud or not, being (as he is) without refuge, O thou of mighty-arms, and deluded on the path (leading to *Brahma*)?‡[38] This my doubt, O Krishna, it behoveth thee to remove without leaving anything. Besides thee, no dispeller of this doubt is to be had!§[39]—

"'The holy one said,—O son of Prithā, neither here, nor hereafter, doth ruin exist for him, since none, O sire, who

---

* *I. e*, I am always visible to him, and he too is always within my sight and I am always kind to him.—T.

† *I. e*, how its stable existence may be secured, the mind being by nature ever restless.—T.

‡ *Fallen off from both*, *i. e.* from heaven (through work) and absorption into *Brahma* (through devotion).—T.

§ *Without leaving anything*, *i. e*, entirely.—T.

performs good (acts) comes by an evil end.[40] Attaining to the regions (reserved) for those that perform meritorious acts, and living there for many many years, he that hath fallen off from devotion taketh birth in the abode of those that are pious and endued with prosperity.[41] Or, he is born even in the family of devotees endued with intelligence. Indeed, a birth such as this is more difficult of acquisition in this world.[42] There [in those births] he obtaineth contact with that [*Brahmic*] knowledge which was his in his former life; and from that point he striveth again, O descendant of Kuru, towards perfection.[43] And although unwilling, he still worketh on in consequence of that same former practice of his. Even one that enquireth of devotion riseth above (the fruits of) the Divine Word.*[44] Striving with great efforts, the devotee, cleansed of all his sins, attaineth to perfection after many births, and then reacheth the supreme goal.[45] The devotee is superior to ascetics engaged in austerities; he is esteemed to be superior to even the man of knowledge. The devotee is superior to those that are engaged in action. Therefore, become a devotee, O Arjuna![46] Even amongst all the devotees, he who, full of faith and with inner self resting on me, worshippeth me, is regarded by me to be the most devout!—' "[47]

SECTION XXXI.

" 'The holy one said,—Listen, O son of Prithā, how, without donbt, thou mayst know me fully, fixing thy mind on me. practising devotion, and taking refuge in me![1] I will now, without leaving anything, speak to thee about knowledge and experience, knowing which there would be left nothing in this world (for thee) to know.[2] One among thousands of men striveth for perfection. Of those even that are assiduous and have attained to perfection, only some one knoweth me

---

* The Divine Word, *i. e*, the *Vedas*. So great is the efficacy of Devotion that one merely enquiring of it transcends him who conforms to the rites of the *Vedas*.—T.

truly.*[3] Earth, water, fire, air, space, mind, also understanding, and conciousness,—thus hath my nature been divided eightfold.[4] This is a lower (form of my) nature. Different from this, know there is a higher (form of my) nature which is animate, O thou of mighty arms, and by which this universe is held.†[5] Know that all creatures have these for their source. I am the productive cause of the entire universe, and also its destroyer.[6] There is nothing else, O Dhananjaya, that is higher than myself. Upon me is all this woven like a row of pearls on a string.[7] Taste I am in the waters, O of son Kunti, (and) I am the splendour of both the moon and the sun. I am the *Om* in all the *Vedas*, the sound in space, and the manliness in men.[8] I am the fragrant odor in earth, the splendour in fire, the life in all (living) creatures, and penance in ascetics.[9] Know me, O son of Prithā, to be the eternal seed of all beings. I am the intelligence of all creatures endued with intelligence, and the glory of all glorious objects.[10] I am also the strength of all that are endued with strength, (myself) freed from desire and thirst, and, O bull of Bharata's race, I am the desire, consistent with duty, in all creatures.‡[11] And all existences which are of the quality of goodness, and which are of the quality of passion and quality of darkness, know that they are, indeed, from me. I am, however, not in them, but they are in me.[12] This entire universe, deluded by these three entities consisting of (these) three qualities, knoweth not me that am beyond them and undecaying;[13] since this illusion of mine, depending on the (three) qualities, is exceedingly marvellous and

---

* *Only some one, i. e,* very few. *For perfection, i. e,* for knowledge of self. Thus all the commentators.—T.

† The last word of the first line of this *sloka* is *parām* (higher) and not *aparām* with the initial *a* silent owing to the rules of *Sandhi.* Many of the Bengal texts have *aparàm,* not excepting the latest one printed at Calcutta.—T.

‡ *Kāma* which I have rendered desire is explained by Creedhara as the wish for an unattained object; and *rāga* as the longing on thirst for more. The second *Kāma* is explained as desires of the class of love or lust.—T.

highly difficult of being transcended. They that resort to me alone cross this illusion.*[14] Doers of evil, ignorant men, the worst of their species, robbed of their knowledge by (my) illusion and wedded to the state of demons, do not resort to me.[15] Four classes of doers of good deeds worship me, O Arjuna, *viz*, he that is distressed, he that is an enquirer (after me), he that is desirous of wealth, and he, O bull of Bharata's race, who is possessed of knowledge.[16] Of them, he that is possessed of knowledge, being always devoted and having his faith in only One, is superior to the rest, for unto the man of knowledge I am dear above everything, and he also is dear to me.[17] All these are noble. But the man of knowledge is regarded (by me) to be my very self, since he, with soul fixed on abstraction, taketh refuge in me as the highest goal.[18] At the end of many lives, the man possessed of knowledge attaineth to me, (thinking) that *Vāsudeva is all this.* Such a high-souled person, however, is exceedingly rare.[19] They who have been robbed of knowledge by desire, resort to other godheads, observant of diverse regulations and controlled by their own nature.‡[20] Whatever form (of godhead or myself) any worshipper desireth to worship with faith, that faith of his unto that (form) I render steady.[21] Endued with that faith, he payeth his adorations to that (form), and obtaineth from *that* all his desires, since all those are ordained by me.†[22] The fruits, however, of those persons endued with little intelligence are perishable. They that worship the divinities go to the divinities, (while) they that worship me come even to me$[23] They that have no discern-

---

* *Daivi* is explained by Cankara as divine ; by Creedhara as marvellous.—T.

† The diverse desires are about sons, fame, victory over enemies, &c ; regulations, such as fasts &c ; their own nature, *i. e.* disposition as dependent on the acts of their past lives. Thus all the commentators.—T.

‡ The worshipper obtains his desires, thinking he gets them from the the godhead he worships. It is, however, I that give him those.—T.

$ The divinities being perishable, myself imperishable. What these obtain is perishable. What my worshippers obtain is imperishable.—T.

ment regard me who am (really) unmanifest to have become manifest, because they do not know my transcendent and undecaying state than which there is nothing higher.*[24] Shrouded by the illusion of my inconceivable power, I am not mainifest to all. This deluded world knoweth not me that am unborn and undecaying.[25] I know, O Arjuna, all things that have been past, and all things that are present, and all things that are to be. But there is nobody that knoweth me.[26] All creatures, O chastiser of foes, are deluded at the time of their birth by the delusion, O Bhārata, of pairs of opposities arising from desire and aversion.[27] But those persons of meritorious deeds whose sins have attained their end, being freed from the delusion of pairs of opposites, worship me, firm in their vow (of that worship).[28] Those who, taking refuge on me, strive for release from decay and death, know *Brahman*, the entire *Adhyātma*, and action.†[29] And they who know me with the *Adhibhuta*, the *Adhidaiva*, and the *Adhiyajna*, having minds fixed on abstraction, know me at the time of their departure (from this world).‡[30]—

SECTION XXXII.

"'Arjuna said,—What is that *Brahman*, what is Adhyātma, what is action, O best of male beings? What also has been said to be Adhibhuta, and what is called Adhidaiva?[1] Who is here Adhiyajna, and how, in this body, O slayer of Madhu? And how in the time of departure art thou to be known by those that have restrained their selfs?[2]—

"The holy one said,—*Brahman* is the Supreme and indestructible. Adhyātma is said to be its own manifestation.

---

* The ignorant, without knowledge of my transcendent essence take me to be no higher than what is indicated in my human and other incarnate manifestations. Thus Creedhara.—T.

† *Adhyātman* is explained as all that by which *Brahman* is to be attained. *All actions* means the whole course of duties and practices leading to the knowledge of *Brahman*.—T.

‡ The three words occurring in this *sloka* are explained in the next Section, forming as they do the subject of a question by Arjuna.—T.

The offering (to any godhead in a sacrifice) which causeth the production and development of all this is called action.*[3] Adhibhuta is all perishable things. The Adhidaivata is the (primal) male Being. Adhiyajna is I myself in this body, O best of all embodied creatures![4] Remembering me alone in (his) last moments, he that, casting off (his) body, departeth (hence), cometh into my essence. There is no doubt in this.[5] Whichever form (of godhead) one remembereth when one casteth off, at the end, (his) body, unto that one goeth, O son of Kunti, having habitually meditated on it always.[6] Therefore, think of me at all times, and engage in battle. Fixing thy mind and understanding on me, thou wilt, without doubt, come even to me.[7] Thinking (of the Supreme) with a mind not running to other objects and endued with abstraction in the form of uninterrupted application, one goeth O son of Prithā, unto the Divine and Supreme male Being.[8] He who at the time of his departure, with a steady mind, endued with reverence, with power of abstraction, and directing the life-breath called *Prāna* between the eye-brows, thinketh of that ancient Seer, who is the ruler (of all), who is minuter than the minutest atom, who is the ordainer of all, who is inconceivable in form, and who is beyond all darkness, cometh unto that Divine and Supreme male Being.[9-10] I will tell thee in brief about that seat which persons conversant with the *Vedas* declare to be indestructible, which is entered by ascetics freed from all longings, and in expectation of which (people) practise the vows of *Brahmacharins*.[11] Casting off (this) body, he who departeth, stopping up all the doors, confining the mind within the heart, placing his own life-breath called *Prāna* between the eye-brows, resting on continued meditation, uttering this one syllable *Om* which is *Brahman*, and thinking of me, attaineth to the highest goal.†[12-13] He

---

* *Bhāva* is production, and *Udbhava* is growth or development. Thus Creedhara.—T.

† All the doors, *i. e*, the senses. Confining the mind within the heart, *i. e*, withdrawing the mind from all external objects. *Murdhni* is explained by Creedhara to mean here "between the eyebrows."—T.

who always thinketh of me with mind ever withdrawn from all other objects, unto that devotee always engaged on meditation, I am, O Pārtha, easy of access.[14] High-souled persons who have achieved the highest perfection, attaining to me, do not incur re-birth which is the abode of sorrow and which is transient.[15] All the worlds, O Arjuna, from the abode of *Brahman* downwards, have to go through a round of births. On attaining to me, however, O son of Kunti, there is no re-birth.*[16] They who know a day of Brahman to end after a thousand *Yugas*, and a night (of his) to terminate after a thousand *Yugas*, are persons that know day and night.†[17] On the advent of (Brahman's) day everything that is manifest springeth from the unmanifest ; and when (his) night cometh, into that same which is called unmanifest all things disappear.[18] That same assemblage of creatures, springing forth again and again, dissolveth on the advent of night, and springeth forth (again), O son of Prithā, when day cometh, constrained (by the force of action, &c.).‡[19] There is, however, another entity, unmanifest and eternal, which is beyond that unmanifest, and which is not destroyed when all the entities are destroyed.[20] It is said to be unmanifest and indestructible. They call it the highest goal, attaining which no one hath to come back. That is my Supreme seat.[21] That Supreme Being, O son of Prithā, He within whom are all entities, and by whom all this is permeated, is to be attained to by reverence undirected to any other object.[22] I will tell thee the times, O bull of Bharata's race, in which devotees departing (from this life) go, never to return, or to return.[23] The fire, the light, the day, the lighted fortnight, the six months of the northern solstice, departing during these, persons knowing *Brahma* go

---

* All these regions being destructible and liable to rebirth, those that live there are equally liable to death and rebirth.—T.

† The meaning, as explained by Creedhara, is that such persons are said to know all, and not those whose knowledge is bounded by the course of the sun and the moon.—T.

‡ In this round of births and deaths, the creatures themselves are not free agents, being all the while subject to the influence of *Karma*, as explained by the commentators.—T.

to *Brahma.**[24] Smoke, night, also the dark fortnight, (and) the six months of the southern solstice, (departing) in these, the devotee, attaining to the lunar light, returneth.[25] The bright and the dark, these two paths, are regarded to be the eternal (two paths) of the universe. By the one, (one) goeth never to return; by the other, one (going) cometh back.[26] Knowing these two paths, O son of Prithā, no devotee is deluded. Therefore, at all times, be endued with devotion, O Arjuna![27] The meritorious fruit that is prescribed for the (study of the) *Vedas*, for sacrifices, for ascetic austerities, and for gifts, a devotee knowing all this (that hath been said here), attaineth to it all, and (also) attaineth the Supreme and Primeval seat.' "[28]—

SECTION XXXIII.

" 'The holy one said,—Now I will tell thee that art without envy that most mysterious knowledge along with experience, knowing which thou wilt be freed from evil![1] This is a royal science, a royal mystery, highly cleansing, directly apprehensible, consistent with the sacred laws, easy to practise, (and) imperishable.[2] Those persons, O chastiser of foes, who have no faith in this sacred doctrine, not attaining to me, return to the path of this world that is subject to destruction.[3] This entire universe is pervaded by me in my unmanifest form. All entities are in me, but I do not reside in them.[4] Nor yet are all entities in me. Behold my divine power. Supporting all entities and producing all entities, myself doth not (yet) reside in (those) entities.[5] As the great and ubiquitous atmosphere always occupieth space, understand that all entities reside in me in the same way.†[6] All entities, O son of Kunti, attain to my nature at the close of a *kalpa.* I create them again at the beginning of a *kalpa.*‡[7] Regulating my own

---

* The commentators explain the words fire, the light, day, &c., as several godheads presiding over particular times.—T.

† The atmosphere occupies space without affecting it or its nature. So all things are in the Supreme Being without affecting him.—T.

‡ My nature, *i. e*, the unmanifest principle or primal essence.—T.

(independent) nature I create again again this whole assemblage of entities which is plastic in consequence of its subjection to nature.*[8] Those acts, however, O Dhananjaya, do not fetter me who sitteth as one unconcerned, being unattached to those acts (of creation).[9] Through me, the overlooker, primal nature produceth the (universe of) mobiles and immobiles. For this reason, O son of Kunti, the universe passeth through its rounds (of birth and destruction).†[10] Not knowing my Supreme nature of the great lord of all entities, ignorant people of vain hopes, vain acts, vain knowledge, confounded minds, wedded to the delusive nature of *Asuras* and *Rākshasas*, disregard me (as one) that hath assumed a human body.[11-12] But high-souled ones, O son of Prithā, possessed of divine nature, and with minds directed to nothing else, worship me, knowing (me) to be the origin of all entities and indestructible.[13] Always glorifying me, (or) striving with firm vows, (or) bowing down to me, with reverence and ever devoted, (they) worship me.‡[14] Others again, performing the sacrifice of knowledge, worship me, (some) as one, (some) as distinct, (some) as pervading the universe, in many forms.$[15] I am the *Vedic* sacrifice, I am the sacrifice enjoined in the *Smritis*, I am *Swadhā*, I am the medicament produced from herbs; I am the *mantra*, I am the sacrificial libation, I am the fire, and I am the (sacrifiicial) offering.¶[16] I am the father of this universe, the mother, the creator, the grandsire; (I am) the thing to be known, the means by which everything is cleansed, the syllable *Om*; the *Rik*, the *Sāman*, and the

---

* *Prakriti* which I render "nature" is explained by the commentators as *Karma*, the influence of *Karma* or action being universal in settling the form of a particular entity at the time of its creation.—T.

† This reason, *i. e*, my supervison.—T.

‡ Creedhara says that these are different modes of worship; "with reverence and ever devoted" grammatically refers to each of the three classes of worshippers indicated.—T.

$ Performing the sacrifice of knowledge, *i. e*, believing Vāsudeva to be everything. In many forms, *i. e.* as *Brahman*, *Rudra*, &c.—T.

¶ *Mantra* is the sacred verse or verses used for invoking godheads, and for other purposes.—T.

Yajus;[17] (I am) the goal, the supporter, the lord, the onlooker, the abode, the refuge, the friend, the source, the destruction, the support, the receptacle, and the indestructible seed.[18] I give heat, I produce and suspend rain; I am immortality, and also death; and I am the existent and the non-existent, O Arjuna![19] They who know the three branches of knowledge, also drink the *Soma* juice, and whose sins have been cleansed, worshipping me by sacrifices, seek admission into heaven; and these, attaining to the sacred region of the chief of the gods, enjoy in heaven the celestial pleasures of the gods.[20] Having enjoyed that celestial world of vast extent, upon exhaustion of (their) merit they (re-)enter the mortal world. It is thus that they who accept the doctrines of the three (*Vedas*) and wish for objects of desire, obtain going and coming.[21] Those persons who, thinking (of me) without directing their minds to anything else, worship me, of those that are (thus) always devoted (to me) I make them gifts and preserve what they have.[22] Even those devotees who, endued with faith, worship other godheads, even they O son of Kunti, worship me alone, (though) irregularly.*[23] I am the enjoyer, as also the lord, of all sacrifice. They, however, do not know me truly; hence they fall off (from heaven).[24] They whose vows are directed to the *Pitris* attain to the *Pitris*; who direct (their) worship to the inferior spirits called *Bhuts* attain to *Bhuts*; they who worship me, attain even to myself.[25] They who offer me with reverence leaf, flower, fruit, water, that, offered with reverence, I accept from him whose self is pure.†[26] Whatever thou doest, whatever eatest, whatever drinkest, whatever givest, whatever austerities thou performest, manage it in such a way, O son of Kunti, that it may be an offering to me.[27] Thus mayst thou be freed from the fetters of action having good and evil fruits. With self endued with renunciation and devotion, thou wilt be released and wilt come to me.[28] I am alike to all creatures; there is none hateful to me, none dear. They,

---

* Hence they have to come back, explains Creedhara.—T.

† *Prayatatmanas* is explained as *Cuddhachittasya*.—T.

however, that worship me with reverence are in me and I also am in them.[29] If even a person of exceedingly wicked conduct worshippeth me, without worshipping any one else, he should certainly be regarded as good, for his efforts are well-directed.[30] (Such a person) soon becometh of virtuous soul, and attaineth to eternal tranquillity. Know, O son of Kunti, that none devoted to me is ever lost.[31] For, O son of Prithā, even they who may be of sinful birth, women, Vaiçyas, and also Cudras, even they, resorting to me, attain to the Supreme goal.[32] What then (shall I say) of holy Brāhmanas and royal saints that are my devotees? Having come to this transient and miserable world, be engaged in my worship![*33] Fix thy mind on me; be my devotee, my worshipper; bow to me; and thus making me thy refuge and applying thy self to abstraction, thou wilt certainly come to me!'"[34]—

SECTION XXXIV.

"The holy one said,—Once more still, O mighty-armed one, listen to my supernal words which, from desire of (thy) good, I say unto thee that wouldst be pleased (therewith).†[1] The hosts of gods know not my origin, nor the great *Rishis*, since I am, in every way, the source of the gods and the great *Rishis*.‡[2] He that knoweth me as the Supreme Lord of the worlds, without birth and beginning, (he), undeluded among mortals, is free from all sins.[3] Intelligence, knowledge, the absence of delusion, forgiveness, truth, self-restraint, and tranquillity; pleasure, pain, birth, death, fear, and also security,[4] abstention from harm, evenness of mind, contentment, ascetic austerities, gift, fame, infamy, these several attributes of creatures arise from me.[5] The seven great *Rishis*, the four before (them), and the Manus, partaking of

---

* *Imān lokān* (this mortal world), Creedhara says, may mean "this form of a royal saint that thou hast." This is far-fetched.—T

† Telang renders *Paramam* 'excellent;' Mr. John Davies, 'all-important.' The meaning is, 'referring to the Supreme Soul'.—T.

‡ Both Cankara and Creedhara explain *Sarvaças* as "in every way," *i. e*, as creator, as guide, &c.—T.

my nature, were born from my mind ; of whom in this world are these offspring.*[6] He that knoweth truly this pre-eminence and mystic power of mine, becometh possessed of unswerving devotion. Of this (there is) no doubt.[7] I am the origin of all things; from me all things proceed. Thinking thus, the wise, endued with my nature, worship me.†[8] Their hearts on me, their lives devoted to me, instructing one another, and glorifying me, they are ever contented and happy.‡[9] Unto them, always devoted, and worshipping (me) with love, I give that devotion in the form of knowledge by which they come to me.§[10] Of them, for compassion's sake, I destroy the darkness born of ignorance, by the brilliant lamp of knowledge, (myself) dwelling in their souls.[11]—

"'Arjuna said,—Thou art the Supreme *Brahma*, the Supreme abode, the holiest of the holy, the Eternal male Being, Divine, the First of gods, Unborn, the Lord.[12] All the *Rishis* proclaim thee thus, and also the celestial *Rishi* Nārada; and Asita, Devala, (and) Vyasa; thyself also tellest me (so).[13] All this that thou tellest me, O Keçava, I regard as true, since, O holy one, neither the gods nor the Dānavas understand thy manifestations.[14] Thou only knowest thyself by thyself, O best of male Beings! O Creator of all things, O Lord of all things, O God of gods, O Lord of the Universe![15] It behoveth thee to declare without any reservation, those divine perfections of thine by which perfections pervading these worlds thou abidest.[16] How shall I, ever meditating, know thee, O thou of mystic powers! In what particular states mayst thou,

---

* *Prajās*, offspring, including, as Cankara says, both mobile and immobile, and therefore, *not* mankind alone.—T.

† *Bhāva-samanwitas* is explained by Creedhara as "full of love," which K. T. Telang accepts. Cankara explains it as "endued with penetration into the knowledge of the Supreme object."—T.

‡ *Nityam*, ever, is connected with what follows and not what precedes. Thus Creedhara. Mr. Davies connects it with *Kathayantas*.—T.

§ K. T. Telang renders *buddhi-yogam* as knowledge ; Mr. Davies, as mental devotion. Creedhara explains it as *Buddhirupam Yogam* ; and Cankara, as "devotion by especial insight."—T.

O holy one, be meditated upon by me ?*[17] Do thou again, O Janārddana, copiously declare thy mystic powers and (thy) perfections, for I am never sated with hearing (thy) nectar (-like words) !*[18]—

" 'The holy one said,—Well, unto thee I will declare my divine perfections, by means of the principal ones (among them), O chief of the Kurus, (for) there is no end to the extent of my (perfections).†[19] I am the soul, O thou of curly hair, seated in the heart of every being. I am the beginning, and the middle, and the end also of all beings.[20] I am Vishnu among the Ādityas, the resplendent Sun among all luminous bodies; I am Marichi among the Maruts, and the Moon among the constellations.‡[21] I am the *Sāma-Veda* among the *Vedas*; I am Vāsava among the gods; I am the mind among the senses, I am the intellect in (living) beings.[22] I am Cankara among the Rudras, the lord of treasures among the *Yakshas* and the *Rakshas*; I am Pāvaka among the Vasus, and Meru among the peaked (mountains).$[23] Know me, O son of Prithā, to be Vrihaspati the chief of household priests. I am Skanda among commanders of forces. I am Ocean among receptacles of water.[24] I am Bhrigu among the great *Rishis*, I am the One, indestructible (syllable *Om*) among words. Of sacrifices I am the *Japa*-sacrifice. Of immobiles I am the

---

* To know thee fully is impossible. In what particular forms or manifestations, therefore, shall I think of thee? The word *Bhāva* in the second line is rendered "entities" by K. T. Telang, and "form of being" by Mr. Davies.—T.

† *Vistarasya* evidently refers (as explained by all the commentators) to *Vibhutinam*. It is a question of grammar and not of doctrine that there can be any difference of opinion. Mr. Davies, however, renders it "of (my) greatness." This is inaccurate.—T.

‡ The Adityas are the solar deities, twelve in number, corresponding to the twelve months of the year. The Maruts are the wind-gods, whose chief is Marichi.—T.

$ The *Rudras* are a class of destructive gods, eleven in number. The *Vasus* are an inferior class of deities, eight in number. The lord of treasures is Kuvera.—T.

Himavat.*[25] I am the fig-tree among all trees, I am Nārada among the celestial *Rishis.* I am Chitraratha among the *Gandharvas,* and the ascetic Kapila among ascetics crowned with *Yoga* success.[26] Know me to be Uchchaiçravas among horses, brought forth by (the churning for) nectar, and Airāvata among princely elephants, and the king among men.[27] Among weapons I am the thunderbolt, among cows I am (she called) Kāmadhuk. I am Kandarpa the cause of reproduction, I am Vāsuki among serpents.†[28] I am Ananta among Nāgas, I am Varuna among acquatic beings. I am Aryaman among the Pitris, and Yama among those that judge and punish.‡[29] I am Prahlāda among the *Daityas,* and Time among things that count. I am the lion among the beasts, and Vinatā's son among winged creatures.[30] Of purifiers I am the wind. I am *Rāma* among wielders of weapons. I am the *Makara* among fishes, and I am Jāhnavi (Gangā) among streams.§[31] Of created things I am the beginning and the end and also the middle, O Arjuna! I am the knowledge of the Supreme Spirit among all kinds of knowledge, and the disputation among disputants.[32]¶ Among letters I am the letter A, and (the compound called) *Dwanda* among all compounds. I am also Time Eternal, and I am the Ordainer with face turned on

---

* The *Japa*-sacrifice is the sacrifice by meditation which is superior to all sacrifices.—T.

† *Kāmadhuk*, the wish-giving cow called *Surabhi.* The cause of reproduction, *i. e*, I am not the mere carnal passion, but that passion which procreates or is crowned with fruit.—T.

‡ In 28, Vāsuki is called the chief of the *Sarpas* (serpents) ; in 29, Ananta is spoken of as the chief of the *Nāgas.* The latter are *Sarpas* as well. Creedhara says that the distinction lies in the fact of the *Nāgas* being without poison. This is hardly correct.—T.

§ *Pavatām* may also mean "of those that have motion." Rāma is Daçaratha's son, the hero of Vālmiki's poem. Gangā is called *Jāhnavi* because she was, after having been drunk up, let out by the ascetic Jahnu through his knee.—T.

¶ Mr. Davies renders *Vādas Pravadatām* as "the speech of those that speak." K. T. Telang renders it "the argument of controversialists."—T.

every side.*[33] I am Death that seizeth all, and the source of all that is to be. Among females, I am Fame, Fortune, Speech, Memory, Intelligence, Constancy, Forgiveness.[34] Of the *Sāma* hymns, I am the *Vrihat-sāma*, (and) *Gāyatri* among metres. Of the months, I am *Mārgaçirsha*, of the seasons (I am) that which is productive of flowers.†[35] I am the game of dice of them that cheat, and the splendour of those that are splendid. I am Victory, I am Exertion, I am the goodness of the good.[36] I am Vāsudeva among the Vrishnis, I am Dhananjaya among the sons of Pāndu. I am even Vyāsa among the ascetics, and Uçanas among seers.[37] I am the Rod of those that chastise, I am the Policy of those that seek victory. I am Silence among things that are secret; I am the Knowledge of those that are possessed of Knowledge.[38] That which is the Seed of all things, I am that, O Arjuna! There is nothing, mobile or immobile, which can exist without me.[39] There is no end, O chastiser of foes, of my divine perfections. This recital of the extent of (those) perfections hath been uttered by me by way (only) of instancing them.[40] Whatever of exalted things (there is), or glorious, or strong, understand thou that everything is born of a portion of my energy.[41] Or rather, what hast thou to do, by knowing all this in detail, O Arjuna? Supporting this entire universe with only a portion (of myself), I stand!‡' "[42]—

---

* A, or rather the sound of A as in fall, is the initial letter of the Sanskrit alphabet. Of compounds, the *Dwanda*, or the copulative compound, is enumerated first. In other respects again, the *Dwanda* is the best kind of compound for the words forming it are co-ordinate, without one being dependent on the other or others.—T.

† The *Vrihat-sāman* is said to be the best, because leading to emancipation at once. Thus Çankara. The *Mārgaçirsha* is the month from the middle of November to the middle of December. Productive of flowers, *i. e*, the Spring.—T.

‡ Mr. Davies renders the last line of this verse as "I have established in continuance all this universe by one part of myself." This is both obscure and inaccurate.—T.

SECTION XXXV.

"'Arjuna said,—This discourse about the supreme mystery, called Adhyātman, which thou hast uttered for my welfare, hath dispelled this my delusion.*[1] For I have heard from thee at large of the creation and dissolution of beings, O thou of eyes like lotus petals, and also of thy greatness that knoweth no deterioration![2] What thou hast said about thyself, O great Lord, is even so. O best of male Beings, I desire to behold thy sovereign form![3] If, O Lord, thou thinkest that I am competent to behold that (form), then, O Lord of mystic power, show me thy eternal Self![†][4]—

"'The holy one said,—Behold, O son of Prithā, my forms, by hundreds and thousands, various, divine, diverse in hue and shape![5] Behold the Āditayas, the Vasus, the Rudras, the Açwins, and the Maruts! Behold, O Bhārata, innumerable marvels unseen before (by thee)![6] Behold, O thou of curly hair, the entire universe of mobiles and immobiles, collectd together in this body of mine, and whatever else thou mayst wish to see![‡][7] Thou art, however, not competent to behold me with this eye of thine. I give thee celestial sight. Behold my sovereign mystic nature!'[8]—

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said this, O monarch, Hari, the mighty Lord of mystic power, then revealed to the son of Prithā his Supreme sovereign form,[9] with many mouths and eyes, many wondrous aspects, many celestial ornaments, many celestial weapons uplifted,[10] wearing celestial garlands and robes, (and) with unguents of celestial fragrance, full of every wonder, resplendent, infinite, with faces turned on all

---

* Adhyātman, *i. e*, the relation between the Supreme and the individual soul. This my delusion, *i. e*, about my being the slayer.—T.

† *Avyayam* is that which has no decay. Ordinarily, it may be rendered "eternal." Telang renders it "inexhaustible." Else where I have rendered it "undeteriorating."—T.

‡ *Ekasthami*, lit., "all in one," *i. e*, collected together.—T.

sides.*[11] If the splendour of a thousand suns were to burst forth at once in the sky, (then) that would be like the splendour of that Mighty one.[12] The son of Pāndu then beheld there in the body of that God of gods the entire universe divided and subdivided into many parts, all collected together.†[13] Then Dhananjaya, filled with amazment, (and) with hair standing on end, bowing with (his) head, with joined hands addressed the God.[14]

"'Arjuna said,—I behold all the gods, O God, as also all the varied hosts of creatures, (and) Brahman seated on (his) lotus seat, and all the *Rishis* and the celestial snakes.[15] I behold thee with innumerable arms, stomachs, mouths, (and) eyes, on every side, O thou of infinite forms! Neither end, nor middle, nor also beginning of thine do I behold, O Lord of the universe, O thou of universal form![16] Bearing (thy) diadem, mace, and discus, a mass of energy, glowing on all sides, do I behold thee that art hard to look at, endued on all sides with the effulgence of the blazing fire or the Sun, (and) immeasurable![17] Thou art indestructible, (and) the Supreme object of this universe. Thou art without decay, the guardian of eternal virtue! I regard thee to be the eternal (male) Being![18] I behold thee to be without beginning, mean, end, to be of infinite prowess, of innumerable arms, having the Sun and the Moon for thy eyes, the blazing fire for thy mouth, and heating this universe with energy thy own![19] For the space betwixt Heaven and Earth is pervaded by thee alone, as also all the points of the horizon! At sight of this marvellous and fierce form of thine, O Supreme Soul, the tripple world trembleth![20] For these hosts of gods are entering thee! Some, afraid, are praying with joined hands. Saying *Hail to thee*—the hosts of great *Rishis* and *Siddhas*

---

* *Devam* is explained by Creedhara as *Dyotanātmakam*, *i. e*, endued with splendour. Mr. Davies renders it resplendent; but Telang renders it "deity."—T.

† *Pra-vibhaktam-anekadhā* (divided diversely) is an adjective of *Jagat*. See Creedhara. Both Mr. Davies and Telang seem to take it as a predicate in contra-distinction to *Ekastham*. This is scarcely correct.—T.

praise thee with copious hymns of praise.*[21] The Rudras, the Ādityas, the Vasus, they that are (called) the Sāddhyas, the Viçwas, the Açiwins, the Maruts, also the Ushmapas, the Gandharvas, the Yakshas, the Asuras, the hosts of Siddhyas, behold thee and are all amazed.[22] Beholding thy mighty form with many mouths and eyes, O mighty-armed one, with innumerable arms, thighs, and feet, many stomachs, (and) terrible in consequence of many tusks, all creatures are affrighted and I also.[23] Indeed, touching the very skies, of blazing radiance, many-hued, mouth wide open, with eyes that are blazing and large, beholding thee, O Vishnu, with (my) inner soul trembling (in fright), I can no longer command courage and peace of mind![24] Beholding thy mouths that are terrible in consequence of (their) tusks, and that are fierce (as the all-destroying fire at the end of the *Yuga*), I cannot recognise the points of the horizon nor can I command peace of mind. Be gracious, O God of gods, O thou that art the refuge of the Universe![25] And all these sons of Dhritarāshtra, together with the hosts of kings, and Bhishma, and Drona, and also this *Suta's* son (Karna), accompanied by even the principal warriors of our side,[26] are quickly entering thy terrible mouths rendered fierce by thy tusks! Some, with their heads crushed, are seen striking at the interstices of (thy) teeth.[27] As many currents of water flowing through different channels roll rapidly towards the ocean, so these heroes of the world of men enter thy mouths that flame all around.[28] As moths with increasing speed rush for (their own) destruction to the blazing fire, so also do (these) people, with unceasing speed, enter thy mouths for (their) destruction.[29] Swallowing all these men from every side, thou lickest them with thy flaming mouths! Filling the whole universe with (thy) energy, thy fierce splendours, O Vishnu, are heating (everything).[30] Tell me who thou art of (such) fierce form! I bow to thee, O chief of the gods, be gracious

* Verse 21 is read differently. For *Twām Surasanghā*, some texts read *twā-Asurasanghas*. Then again for *Stuvanti* in the second line some read *Vikshate*.—T.

to me! I desire to know thee that art the Primeval one, for I do not understand thy actions!*[31]—

"'The holy one said,—I am Death, the destroyer of the worlds, fully developed! I am now engaged in slaying the race of men. Without thee, all these warriors standing in the different divisions shall cease to be.†[32] Wherefore, arise, gain glory, (and) vanquishing the foe, enjoy (this) swelling kingdom. By me have all these been already slain! Be only (my) instrument, O thou that canst draw the bow with (even) the left hand.[33] Drona and Bhishma, and Jayadratha, and Karna, and also other heroic warriors, (already) slain by me, do thou slay. Be not dismayed, fight; thou shalt conquer in battle (thy) foes!'[34]—

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing these words of Keçava, the diadem-decked (Arjuna), trembling, (and) with joined hands, bowed (unto him); and once more said unto Krishna, with voice choked up and overwhelmed with fear, and making his salutations (to him).[35]

"'Arjuna said,—It is meet, O Hrishikeça, that the universe is delighted and charmed in uttering thy praise, and the *Rākshasas* flee in fear in all directions, and the hosts of the *Siddhas* bow down (to thee).[36] And why should they not bow down to thee, O Supreme Soul, that art greater than even Brahman (himself), and the primal Cause? O thou that art Infinite, O God of the gods, O thou that art the refuge of the universe, thou art indestructible, thou art that which *is*, and that which *is not*, and that which is beyond (both).[37]

---

* *Pravritti* is explained by both Cankara and Creedhara as *Chestā*, *i. e*, movements, or acts. Mr. Davies is, I think, not correct in taking it to mean "evolved or developed form."—T.

† *Kāla* here is death. Mr. Davies renders it *Time*, following some other translators. *Pravriddha* is not (as Mr. Davies renders it) "old" or "very old," but swelling or fully developed. Then again. Mr. Davies commits a ludicrous blunder in rendering *Rite twām* as "Except thee." This is one of those idioms at which a foreigner is sure to stumble who has only the lexicons for his guide. What Krishna says is not that all would perish save Arjuna, but that without Arjuna (*i. e.* even if he did not fight) all would perish.—T.

Thou art the First God, the ancient (male) Being, thou art the Supreme refuge of this universe. Thou art the Knower, thou art the Object to be known, thou the highest abode. By thee is pervaded this universe, O thou of infinite form![*38] Thou art Vāyu, Yama, Agni, Varuna, Moon, Prajāpati, and Grandsire! Obeisance be to thee a thousand times, and again and yet again obeisance to thee![39] Obeisance to thee in front, and also from behind! Let obeisance be to thee from every side, O thou that art all! Thou art all, of energy that is infinite, and prowess that is immeasurable! Thou embracest the All![40] Regarding (thee) a friend whatever hath been said by me carelessly, such as—O Krishna, O Yādava, O friend,—not knowing this thy greatness, from want of judgment or from love either,[41] whatever disrespect hath been shown thee for purpose of mirth, on occasions of play, lying, sitting, (or) at meals, while alone or in the presence of others, O undeteriorating one, I beg thy pardon for it, O thou that art immeasurable![42] Thou art the father of this universe of mobiles and immobiles! Thou art the great master deserving of worship! There is none equal to thee, how can there be one greater, O thou whose power is unparalleled in even the three worlds?†[43] Therefore, bowing (to thee) prostrating (my) body, I ask thy grace, O Lord, O adorable one! It behoveth thee, O God, to bear (my faults) as a father (his) son's, a friend (his) friend's, a lover (his) loved one's![44] Beholding (thy form) unseen before, I have been rejoiced, (yet) my mind hath been troubled, with fear! Show me that (other ordinary) form, O god! Be gracious, O Lord of the gods, O thou that art the refuge of the universe![45] (Decked) in diadem, and (armed) with mace, discus in hand, as before, I desire to behold thee! Be of that same four-armed form, O thou of a thousand arms, O thou of universal form![46]—

"'The holy one said,—Pleased with thee, O Arjuna, I

---

* *Nidhānam* is either refuge or support or abode or receptacle. Mr. Davies incorrectly renders it "treasure-house."—T.

† Cankara accepts the reading *Gururgariyān*. Creedhara takes it as *Gurorgariyān*. In either case the difference in meaning is not material.—T.

have, by my (own) mystic power, shown thee this Supreme form, full of glory, Universal, Infinite, Primeval, which hath been seen before by none else save thee![47] Except by thee alone, O hero of Kuru's race, I cannot be seen in this form in the world of men by any one else, (aided) even by the study of the *Vedas* and of sacrifices, by gifts, by actions, (or) by the severest austerities.*[48] Let no fear be thine, nor perplexity of mind, at seeing this awful form of mine. Freed from fear, with a joyful heart, behold thou again that other form!—'[49]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Vāsudeva, having said all this to Arjuna, once more showed (him) his own (ordinary) form, and that high-souled one, assuming once more (his) gentle form, comforted him who had been afflicted.[50]

" 'Arjuna said,—Beholding this gentle human form of thine, O Janārddana, I have now become of right mind and have come to my normal state.[51]—

" 'The holy one said,—This form of mine which thou hast seen is difficult of being seen. Even the gods are always desirous of becoming spectators of this (my) form.[52] Not by the *Vedas*, nor by austerities, nor by gifts, nor by sacrifices, can I be seen in this form of mine which thou hast seen.[53] By reverence, however, that is exclusive (in its object), O Arjuna, I can in this form be known, seen truly, and attained to, O chastiser of foes![54] He who doth everything for me, who hath me for his supreme object, who is freed from attachment, who is without enmity towards all beings, even he, O Arjuna, cometh to me![55]—' "

SECTION XXXVI.

" 'Arjuna said,—Of those worshippers who, constantly devoted, adore thee, and those who (meditate) on thee as the Indestructible and Unmanifest, who are best acquainted with devotion?[1]—

" 'The holy one said,—Fixing (their) mind on me, they that

---

* Cankara connects *Adhyayana* with *Veda* and *Yajna*. This seems to be the right explanation.—T.

constantly adore me, being endued (besides) with the highest faith, are deemed by me to be the most devoted.[2] They, however, who worship the Indestructible, the Indescribable, the Unmanifest, the All-pervading, the Inconceivable, the Indifferent, the Immutable, the Eternal,[3] who, restraining the entire group of the senses, are equal-minded in respect of all around and are engaged in the good of all creatures, (also) attain to me.[4] The trouble is the greater for those whose minds are fixed on the Unmanifest; for the path to the Unmanifest is hard to find by those that are embodied.[5] They (again) who, reposing all action on me (and) regarding me as their highest object (of attainment), worship me, meditating on me with devotion undirected to anything else, of them whose minds are (thus) fixed on me, I, without delay, become the deliverer from the ocean of (this) mortal world.[6-7] Fix thy heart on me alone, place thy understanding on me. Hereafter then shalt thou dwell in me. (There is) no doubt (in this).*[8] If, however, thou art unable to steadily fix thy heart on me, then, O Dhananjaya, strive to obtain me by devotion (arising) from continuous application.[9] If thou beest unequal to even (this) continuous application, then let actions performed for me be thy highest aim. Even performing all thy acts for my sake, thou wilt obtain perfection.[10] If even this thou art unable to do, then resorting to devotion in me, (and) subduing thy soul, abandon the fruit of all action.[11] Knowledge is superior to application (in devotion); meditation is better than knowledge; the abandonment of the fruit of action (is better) than meditation; and tranquillity (results) immediately from abandonment.[12] He who hath no hatred for any creature, who is friendly and compassionate also, who is free from egoism, who hath no vanity, who is alike in pleasure and pain, who is forgiving, contented, always devoted, of subdued soul, firm of purpose, with heart and understanding fixed on me, even he is dear to me.[13-14] He through whom the world is not troubled, (and) who is not troubled by the world, who

---

* *Ata urddham* is 'after this,' or 'hereafter,' and *not* "hereafter on high" as Mr. Davies renders it.—T.

is free from joy, wrath, fear, and anxieties, even he is dear to me.[15] That devotee of mine who is unconcerned, pure, diligent, unconnected (with worldy objects), and free from distress (of mind), and who renounceth every action (for fruit), even he is dear to me.*[16] He who hath no joy, no aversion, who neither grieveth nor desireth, who renounceth both good and evil, (and) who is full of faith in me, even he is dear to me.[17] He who is alike to friend and foe, as also in honor and dishonor, who is alike in cold and heat, (and) pleasure and pain, who is free from attachment,[18] to whom censure and praise are equal, who is taciturn, who is contented with anything that cometh (to him), who is homeless, of steady mind and full of faith, even that man is dear to me.[19] They who resort to this righteousness (leading to) immortality which hath been (already) declared,—those devotees full of faith and regarding me as the highest object (of their acquisition),—are the most dear to me .[20]—' "

SECTION XXXVII.

" 'The holy one said,—This body, O son of Kunti, is called *Kshetra.* Him who knoweth it, the learned call *Kshetrajna.*†[1] Know me, O Bhārata to be *Kshetrajna* in all *Kshetras.* The knowledge of *Kshetra* and *Kshetrajna* I regard to be (true) knowledge.[2] What that *Kshetra* (is), and what (it is) like, and what changes it undergoes, and whence (it comes), what is he *(viz, Kshetrajna),* and what his powers, hear from me in brief.[3] All this hath in many ways been sung separately, by *Rishis* in various verses, in well-settled texts fraught with reason and giving indications of *Brahman.*[4] The great elements, egoism, intellect, the unmanifest *(viz,*

---

* Although the limitation "for fruit" does not occur in the text yet, it is evident, it should be understood. Krishna does not recommend the total abandonment of actions, but their abandonment for fruit. Mr. Davies renders *ārambha* as "enterprise."—T.

† The learned, *i. e,* they that are themselves acquainted with what is *Kshetra* and what not. As explained by Krishna himself below, *Kshetra* is Matter, and *Kshetrajna* is Soul.—T.

Prakriti), also the ten senses, the one *(manas)*, the five objects of sense,[5] desire, aversion, pleasure, pain, body, consciousness, courage,—all this in brief hath been declared to be *Kshetra* in its modified form.[6] Absence of vanity, absence of ostentation, abstention from injury, forgiveness, uprightness, devotion to preceptor, purity, constancy, self-restraint,[7] indifference to objects of sense, absence of egoism, perception of the misery and evil of birth, death, decrepitude, and disease,*[8] freedom from attachment, absence of sympathy for son, wife, home, and the rest, and constant equanimity of heart on attainment of good and evil,[9] unswerving devotion to me without meditation on anything else, frequenting of lonely places, distaste for concourse of men,†[10] constancy in the knowledge of the relation of the individual self to the Supreme, perception of the object of the knowledge of truth,—all this is called Knowledge; all that which is contrary to this is Ignorace.‡[11] That which is the object of knowledge I will (now) declare (to thee), knowing which one obtaineth immortality. [It is] the Supreme *Brahma* having no beginning, who is said to be neither existent nor non-existent;[12] whose hands and feet are on all sides, whose eyes, heads, and faces are on all sides, who hears on all sides, who dwells pervading everything in the world,[13] who is possessed of all the qualities of the senses (though) devoid of the senses, without attachment (yet) sustaining all things, without attributes (yet) enjoying (all) attributes,§[14] without and within all creatures, immobile and mobile, not knowable because of (his) subtlety, remote yet near,[15] undistributed in all beings, (yet) remaining as if distributed, who is the sustainer of (all) beings, the absor-

---

* *Dushka-dosha* is explained by both Cankara and Creedhara as a *Dwanda* compound.—T.

† *Vivikta* is explained by the commentators as *Cuddha* or *Chittaprasadakara*. There can be no doubt, however, that it is in opposition to *Janasamsadi* following. Hence I render it "lonely."—T.

‡ The object of the knowledge of truth is the despelling of ignorance and the acquisition of happiness.—T.

§ Not having eyes &c, yet seeing &c.; without attributes, yet having or enjoying all that the attributes give.—T.

ber, and the creator (of all);[16] who is the light of all luminous bodies, who is said to be beyond all darkness; who is Knowledge, the Object of knowlege, the End of knowledge, and seated in the hearts of all.[17] Thus *Kshetra*, and Knowledge, and the Object of knowledge, have been declared (to thee) in brief. My devotee, knowing (all) this, attaineth to assimilation with me.[18] Know that Nature and Spirit are both without beginning; (and) know (also) that all modifications and all qualities spring from Nature.*[19] Nature is said to be the source of the workings of causes and effects. Spirit is said to be the source of the capacity of enjoying pleasures and pains.†[20] For Spirit, dwelling in nature, enjoyeth the qualities born of nature. The cause of its births in good or evil wombs is (its) connection with the qualities.‡[21] The Supreme *Purusha* in this body is said to be surveyor, approver, supporter, enjoyer, the mighty lord, and also the Supreme Soul.$[22] He who thus knows Spirit, and Nature, with the qualities, in whatever state he may be, is never born again.[23] Some by meditation behold the Self in the Self by the self; others, by devotion according to the *Sānkhya* system; and others (again), by devotion through works.[24] Others yet, not knowing this, worship, hearing of it from others. Even

---

* All modifications, *i. e.* of material forms; all qualities, *i. e*, pleasure, pain, &c.. The word rendered "nature" is *Prakriti* (primal matter), and that rendered "spirit" is *Purusha* (the active principle). *Vikārān* and *Gunān* include all material forms and attributes of the soul.—T.

† *Kārya-kārana-karttritwa* is explained by both Cankara and Creedhara to mean "the capacity of working (residing) in the body and the senses." K. T. Telang adopts this. Mr. Davies in his text has "in the activity of the organs of action." In course of his philological notes, however, he gives the correct rendering. "Is said to be" is explained by Creedhara as refering to Kapila and others.—T.

‡ It is the embodied spirit only that can enjoy the qualities of Nature. Then again, the kind of connection it has with those qualities settles its birth in good or evil wombs.—T.

$ M. Davies misunderstands the grammatical connection of the words in the second line of this verse. K. T. Telang, following Creedhara, renders *anumantri* as "adviser." It seems to me that if Creedhara be followed, the word should be rendered "approver."—T.

these, devoted to what is heard, cross over death.*[25] Whatever entity, immobile or mobile, cometh into existence, know that, O bull of Bharata's race, to be from the connection of *Kshetra* and *Kshetrajna* (matter and spirit).[26] He seeth (truly) who seeth the Supreme Lord dwelling alike in all beings, the Imperishable in the Perishable.[27] For seeing the Lord dwelling alike everywhere, one doth not destroy himself by himself, and then reacheth the highest goal.†[28] He seeth (truly) who seeth all actions to be wrought by Nature alone in every way and the Self likewise to be not the doer.[29] When one seeth the diversity of entities as existing in One, and the issue (of everything) from that (One), then is one said to attain to *Brahma*.[30] This inexhaustible Supreme Self, O son of Kunti, being without beginning and without attributes, doth not act, nor is stained even when stationed in the body.[31] As space, which is ubiquitous, is never, in consequence of its subtlety, tainted, so the soul, stationed in every body, is never tainted.‡[32] As the single Sun lights up this entire world, so the Spirit, O Bhārata, lights up the entire (sphere of) matter.[33] They that, by the eye of knowledge, know the distinction between matter and spirit, and the deliverance from the nature of all entities, attain to the Supreme.[34]$—' "

SECTION XXXVIII.

" 'The holy one said,—I will again declare (to thee) that supernal (science) of sciences, that excellent science, knowing

---

* What is heard, *i. e*, the *Crutis* or the sacred doctrines.—T.

† Destroying self by self is to be deprived of true knowledge.—T.

‡ *Sarvatra* in the second line is explained by Creedhara as "in every body, superior and inferior." Grammatically it may mean also, "in every part of the body." Such a theory, however, of the seat of the soul would be contrary to all Hindu ideas.—T.

$ *Bhuta-prakriti-moksha* is explained by both Cankara and Creedhara as *moksha* or deliverance from the *prakriti* (nature) of *bhutas* or entities. It is true knowledge that effects such deliverance. Mr. Davies renders it "deliverance of beings from nature." This is evidenty incorrect. "Beings" is not synonymous with self or soul.—T.

which all the the *munis* have attained to the highest perfection from (the fetters of) this (body).*[1] Resorting to this science, and attaining to my nature, they are not reborn even on (the occasion of) a (new) creation and are not disturbed at the universal dissolution.[2] The mighty *Brahma* is a womb for me. Therein I place the (living) germ. Thence, O Bhārata, the birth of all beings taketh place.[3] Whatever (bodily) forms, O son of Kunti, are born in all wombs, of them *Brahma* is the mighty womb, (and) I (am) the seed-imparting Sire.†[4] Goodness, Passion, Darkness, these qualities, born of Nature, bind down, O thou of mighty arms, the eternal Embodied [Soul] in the body.[5] Amongst these, Goodness, from its unsullied nature, being enlightening and free from misery, bindeth (the soul), O sinless one, with the attachment of happiness and of knowledge.‡[6] Know that Passion, having desire for its essence, is born of thirst and attachment. That, O son of Kunti, bindeth the Embodied [Soul] by the attachment of work.[7] Darkness, however, know, is born of Ignorance, (and) bewilders all Embodied [Souls]. That bindeth, O Bhārata, by error, indolence, and sleep.[8] Goodness uniteth (the soul) with pleasure; Passion, O Bhārata, with work; but Darkness, veiling knowledge, uniteth with error.[9] Passion and Darkness, being repressed, Goodness remaineth, O Bhārata! Passion and Goodness (being repressed), Darkness (remaineth); (and) Darkness and Goodness (being repressed), Passion (remaineth).[10] When in this body, in all its gates, the light of knowledge is produced, then should one know that Goodness hath been developed there.[11] Avarice, activity, performance of works, want of tranquillity, desire,—these, O bull of Bharata's race, are born when Passion is developed.[12] Gloom, inactivity, error, and delusion also,—these, O son of Kuru's

---

* *Itas* is explained by Creedhara as "from the fetters of this body."—T.

† Creedhara makes *mahat* an adjective of *yoni*; Cankara makes it an adjective of *Brahma*. K. T. Telang follows Cankara.—T.

‡ Happiness and Knowledge are attributes of the mind, not of the Soul. Hence, when attached to the Soul, they are as fetters from which the Soul should be freed. Thus the commentators.—T.

race, are born when Darkness is developed.[13] When the holder of a body goeth to dissolution while Goodness is developed, then he attaineth to the spotless regions of those that know the Supreme.[14] Going to dissolution when Passion prevails, one is born among those that are attached to work. Likewise, dissolved during Darkness, one is born in wombs that beget the ignorant.[15] The fruit of good action is said to be good and untainted. The fruit, however, of Passion, is misery; (and) the fruit of Darkness is ignorance.[16] From Goodness is produced Knowledge; from Passion, avarice; (and) from Darkness are error and delusion, and also ignorance.[17] They that dwell in Goodness go on high; they that are addicted to Passion dwell in the middle; (while) they that are of Darkness, being addicted to the lowest quality, go down.[18] When an observer recognises none else to be an agent save the qualities, and knows That which is beyond (the qualities), he attains to my nature.[19] The Emdodied [Soul], by transcending these three qualities which constitute the source of all bodies, enjoyeth immortality, being freed from birth, death, decrepitude, and misery.*[20]—

" 'Arjuna said,—What are the indications, O Lord, of one who hath transcended these three qualities? What is his conduct? How also doth one transcend these three qualities?[21]—

" 'The holy one said,—He who hath no aversion for light, activity, and even delusion, O son of Pāndu, when they are present, nor desireth them when they are absent,†[22] who, seated as one unconcerned, is not shaken by those qualities; who sitteth and moveth not, thinking that it is the qualities (and *not* he) that are engaged (in their respective functions);[23] to whom pain and pleasure are alike; who is self-contained, and to whom a sod of earth, a stone, and gold are alike; to whom the agreeable and the disagreeable are

---

* *Deha samudbhava* is explained by the commentators as "having their *samudbhava* or *parinàma* in *deha*." It is an instance of the *Vahuvrihi* compound.—T.

† Light, activity, and delusion are the three qualities as indicated by their effects.—T.

the same; who hath discernment; to whom censure and praise are the same;[24] to whom honor and dishonor are the same; who regardeth friend and foe alike; who hath renounced all exertion; is said to have transcended the qualities.[25] He also who worshippeth Me with exclusive devotion, he, transcending those qualities, becometh fit for admission into the nature of *Brahma*.[26] For I am the stay of *Brahma*, of immortality, of indestructibility, of eternal piety, and of unbroken felicity!—' "*[27]

SECTION XXXIX.

" 'The holy one said,—They say that the *Açwattha*, having its roots above and branches below, is eternal. Its leaves are the *Chhandas*. He who knoweth it, knoweth the *Vedas*!†[1] Downwards and upwards are stretched its branches which are enlarged by the qualities; its sprouts are the objects of sense. Downwards it roots, leading to action, are extended to this world of men.‡[2] Its form cannot here (below) be thus known, nor (its) end, nor (its) beginning, nor (its) support. Cutting, with the hard weapon of unconcern, this *Açwattha* of roots firmly fixed,[3] then should one seek for that place repairing

---

* *Pratishthā* is explained by Cankara as "something on which another (here *Brahma)* stays or rests." Creedhara explains it as *Pratimā*. Telang, following Creedhara, renders it "embodiment;" Mr. Davies, as "seat." *Amritasya*, and *Avyayasya* are taken separately by the commentators.—T.

† The *Açwattha* is the sacred Indian fig tree, here emblematical of the course of worldly life. Its roots are above; those roots are the Supreme Being. Its branches are below, these being the inferior deities. Its leaves are the sacred hymns of the *Vedas*, *i. e*, as leaves keep the tree alive and even conduce to its fruits, so the *Vedas* support this tree and lead to salvation.—T.

‡ Upwards and downwards, *i. e*, from the highest to the lowest of created things. Enlarged by the qualities, *i. e*, the qualities appearing as the body, the senses, &c.. The sprouts are the objects of sense, being attached to the senses themseves as sprouts to branches. The roots extending downwards are the desires for diverse enjoyments. Thus Telang, following the commentators.—T.

whither one returneth not again, (thinking)—I will seek the protection of that primeval Sire from whom the ancient course of (worldly) life hath flowed.[4]—Those that are free from pride and delusion, that have subdued the evil of attachment, that are steady in the contemplation of the relation of the Supreme to the individual Self, from whom desire hath departed, freed from the pairs of opposites known by the names of pleasure and pain (and the like), repair, undelued, to that eternal seat.[5] The Sun lighteth not That [Seat], nor the Moon, nor Fire. Whither going none returneth, That is my Supreme Seat.[6] An eternal portion of Me it is which, becoming an individual soul in the world of life, draweth to itself the (five) senses with the mind as the sixth which all depend on Nature.[7] When the sovereign (of this bodily frame) assumeth or quitteth (a) body, it departeth taking away these, like the wind (taking away) perfumes from their seats.[8] Presiding over the ear, the eye, (the organs of) touch, taste, and smell, and also over the mind, he enjoyeth all objects of sense.[9] They that are deluded do not see (him) when quitting or abiding in (the body), when enjoying or joined to the qualities. They (however) see that have the eye of knowledge.*[10] Devotees exerting (towards that end) behold him dwelling in themselves. They (however) that are senseless and whose minds are not restrained, behold him not, even while exerting (themselves).†[11] That splendour dwelling in the Sun which illumines the vast universe, that (which is) in the Moon, and that (which is) in the Fire, know that splendour to be of Me.[12] Entering into the Earth I uphold creatures by My force; and becoming the

---

* Joined to the qualities, *i. e*, perceiving objects of sense or experiencing pleasure and pain.—T.

† "Atmani" in the first line is "in the body" as explained by Creedhara and others: "in the understanding" as explained by Cankara. It seems, however, to be used in the general sense of "themselves," without particular reference to either body or understanding. An *Akritātman* is one whose soul is not made or formed; generally, "a person of unsubdued passions."—T.

juicy moon I nourish all herbs.*[13] Myself becoming the vital heat (*Vaiçwānara*) residing in the bodies of creatures that breathe, (and) uniting with the upward and the downward life-breaths, I digest the four kinds of food.†[14] I am seated in the hearts of all. From Me are Memory and Knowledge and the loss of both. I am the Object of knowledge to be known by (the aid of) all the *Vedas*. I am the author of the *Vedāntas*, and I alone am the knower of the *Vedas*.‡[15] There are these two entities in the world, *viz*, the Perishable and the Imperishable. The Perishable is all (these) creatures. The unchangeable one is called the Imperishable.§[16] But there is another, the Supreme Being, called *Paramātman*, who as the Eternal Lord, pervading the three worlds, sustaineth (them).[17] (And) since I transcend the Perishable, and am higher than even the Imperishable, for this I am celebrated in the world (among men) and in the *Veda* as *Purushottama* (the Highest Being).[18] He who, without being deluded, knoweth Me as this Highest Being,—he, knowing all, O Bhārata, worshippeth Me in every way.¶[19] Thus, O sin-

---

* There can be no question that *Soma* here means the moon and not the *Soma* juice quaffed in sacrifices, or sap. It is the moon that supports and nourishes all herbs. Numerous passages may be quoted from Hindu sacred literature to show this. Mr. Davies, therefore, clearly errs in rendering *Soma* as "the savoury juice."—T.

† The four kinds of food are that which is masticated, that which is sucked, that which is licked, and that which is drunk.—T.

‡ *Apohanam* is loss or removal. It is a well-known word and its application here is very natural. I am memory and knowledge (to those that use them for virtuous acts). I am the loss of these faculties (to those that engage in unrighteous acts). Mr. Davies erroneously renders it "the power of reason."—T

§ *Kutastha* is rendered by K. T. Telang as "the unconcerned one;" by Mr. Davies as "the lord on high." I incline to those scholiasts who explain it as "the uniform or the unchangeable one."—T.

¶ *Sarvabhāvena* is explained by Cankara as *Sarvātma-chintayā* (thinking Me to be the soul of everthing). Creedhara explains it as *Sarva-prakārena*. Why may it not mean "with the whole soul" or "with excess of love?"—T.

less one, hath this knowledge, forming the greatest of mysteries, hath been declared by Me (to thee)! Knowing this, O Bhārata, one will become gifted with intelligence, and will have done all he need do!—' "[20]

SECTION XL.

" 'The holy one said,—Fearlessness, purity of heart, perseverance in (the pursuit of) knowledge and *Yoga* meditation, gifts, self-restraint, sacrifice, study of the *Vedas*, ascetic penances, uprightness,*[1] abstention from injury, truth, freedom from anger, renunciation, tranquillity, freedom from reporting other's faults, compassion for all creatures, absence of covetousness, gentleness, modesty, absence of restlessness,[2] vigor, forgiveness, firmness, cleanliness, absence of quarrelsomeness, freedom from vanity,—these become his, O Bhārata, who is born to godlike possessions.[3] Hypocrisy, pride, conceit, wrath, rudeness, and ignorance, are, O son of Prithā, his who is born to demoniac possessions.[4] Godlike possessions are deemed to be for deliverance; the demoniac for bondage. Grieve not, O son of Pāndu, for thou art born to godlike possessions.[5] (There are) two kinds of created beings in this world, *viz*, the godlike and the demoniac. The godlike have been described at length. Hear now from me, O son of Prithā, about the demoniac.[6] Persons of demoniac natures know not inclination or disinclination. Neither purity, nor good conduct, nor truth, exists in them.†[7] They say that the universe is void of truth, of guiding principle, (and) of ruler; produced by the union of one another (male and

---

* I adopt Cankara's explanation of the last compound of the first line of this *sloka*. Creedhara explains it differently.—T.

† *Pravritti* I render "inclination," and *Nivritti* as "disinclination." The inclination is, as all the commentators explain, towards righteous actions, and the disinclination, consequently, is about all unrighteous actions. K. T. Telang renders these words as "action" and "inaction." Mr. Davies, following the French version of Burnouf, takes them to mean "the creation and its end."—T.

female) from lust, and nothing else.[8] Depending on this view, these men of lost selfs, little intelligence, and fierce deeds, these enemies (of the world), are born for the destruction of the universe.*[9] Cherishing desires that are insatiable, and endued with hypocrisy, conceit, and folly, they adopt false notions through delusion and engage in unholy practices.[10] Cherishing boundless thoughts limited by death (alone), and regarding the enjoyment of (their) desires as the highest end, they are persuaded that *that* is *all.*[11] Fettered by the hundred nooses of hope, addicted to lust and wrath, they covet to obtain unfairly hoards of wealth for the gratification of their desires.[12]—This hath been obtained by me today,—This wish I will obtain,—This wealth I have,—This (wealth) will be mine in addition,[13]—This foe hath been slain by me,—I will slay even others,—I am lord,—I am the enjoyer,—I am successful, powerful, happy,[14]—I am rich and of noble birth,—Who else is there that is like me ?—I will sacrifice,—I will make gifts,—I will be merry,—thus deluded by ignorance,[15] tossed about by numerous thoughts, enveloped in the meshes of delusion, attached to the enjoyment of objects of desire, they sink into foul hell.[16] Self-conceited, stubborn, filled with the pride and intoxication of wealth, they perform sacrifices that are nominally so, with hypocrisy and against the (prescribed) ordinance.[17] Wedded to vanity, power, pride, lust, and wrath, these revilers hate Me in their own bodies and those of others.[18] These haters (of Me), cruel, the vilest among men, and unholy, I hurl continually down into demoniac wombs.[19] Coming into demoniac wombs, deluded birth after birth, they, O son of Kunti, without attaining to Me, go down to the vilest state.[20] Threefold is the way to hell, ruinous to the self, *viz*, lust, wrath, likewise avarice. Therefore, these three one should renounce.[21] Freed from these three gates of darkness, a man, O son of Kunti, works out his own welfare, and then repairs to the highest goal.[22] He who, abandoning the ordinances of the

* Cankara seems to connect the genetive *Jagatas* with *ahitas.* Creedhara connects it (which is natural) with *Kshayāya*, which I accept.—T.

scripture, acts only under the impulses of desire, never attains to perfection, nor happiness, nor the highest goal.[23] Therefore, the scriptures should be thy authority in determining what should be done and what should not be done. It behoveth thee to do work here, having ascertained what hath been declared by the ordinances of the scriptures.!' "[24]

SECTION XLI.

"'Arjuna said,—What is the state, O Krishna, of those who, abandoning the ordinances of the scriptures, perform sacrifices endued with faith? Is it one of Goodness, or Passion, or Darkness?—[1]

"'The holy one said,—The faith of embodied (creatures) is of three kinds. It is (also) born of their (individual) natures. It is Good, Passionate, and Dark. Hear now these.[2] The faith of one, O Bhārata, is conformable to his own nature. A being here is full of faith; and whatever is one's faith, one is even that.[3] They that are of the quality of Goodness worship the gods; they that are of the quality of Passion, (worship) the *Yakshas* and the *Rakshas*; other people that are of the quality of Darkness worship departed spirits and hosts of *Bhutas*.[4] Those people who practise severe ascetic austerities not ordained by the scriptures, given up to hypocrisy and pride, and endued with desire, attachment, and violence,[5]—those persons possessed of no discernment, torturing the groups of organs in (their) bodies and Me also seated within (those) bodies,—should be known to be of demoniac resolves![6] Food which is dear to all is of three kinds. Sacrifice, penance, and gifts are likewise (of three kinds). Listen to their distinctions as follows.[7] Those kinds of food that increase life's period, energy, strength, health, well-being, and joy, which are savoury, oleaginous, nutritive, and agreeable, are liked by the Good.[8] Those kinds of food which are bitter, sour, salted, over-hot, pungent, dry, and burning, and which produce pain, grief and disease, are desired by the Passionate.[9] The food which is cold, without savour, stinking, and cor-

rupt, and which is even refuse, and filthy, is dear to men of Darkness.[10] That sacrifice is good which, being prescribed by the ordinance, is performed by persons without any longing for the fruit (thereof) and the mind being determined (to it under the belief) that its performance is a duty.[11] But that which is performed in expectation of fruit and even for the sake of ostentation, know that sacrifice, O chief of the sons of Bharata, to be of the quality of Passion![12] That sacrifice which is against the ordinance, in which no food is dealt-out, which is devoid of *mantras* (sacred verse), in which no fees are paid to the Brāhmanas assisting at it, and which is void of faith, is said to be of the quality of Darkness.[13] Reverence to the gods, regenerate ones, preceptors, and men of knowledge, purity, uprightness, the practices of a *Brahmachārin*, and abstention from injury, are said to constitute the penance of the body.[14] The speech which causeth no agitation, which is true, which is agreeable and beneficial, and the diligent study of the *Vedas*, are said to be the penance of speech.[15] Serenity of the mind, gentleness, taciturnity, self-restraint, and purity of the disposition,—these are said to be the penance of the mind.[16] This three-fold penance performed with perfect faith, by men without desire of fruit, and with devotion, is said to be of the quality of Goodness.[17] That penance which is performed for the sake of (gaining) respect, honor, and reverence, with hypocrisy, (and) which is unstable and transient, is said to be of the quality of Passion.[18] That penance which is performed under a deluded conviction, with torture of one's self, and for the destruction of another, is said to be of the quality of Darkness.[19] That gift which is given because it ought to be given, to one who cannot return any service for it, in a proper place, at a proper time, and to a proper person, is said to be of the quality of Goodness.[20] That, however, which is given reluctantly, for return of services (past or expected), or even with an eye to fruit,—that gift is said to be of the quality of Passion.[21] In an unfit place and at an unfit time, the gift that is made to an unworthy object, without respect, and with contempt, is said to be of the quality of Darkness.[22] *OM*, *TAT*, *SAT*, this is said to be

the threefold designation of *Brahma*. By That [*Brahma*], the Brahmanas, and the *Vedas*, and the Sacrifices, were ordained of old.[23] Therefore, uttering the syllable *OM*, the sacrifices, gifts, and penances, prescribed by the ordinance, of all utterers of *Brahma* begin.[24] Uttering *TAT*, the various rites of sacrifice, penance, and gifts, without expectation of fruit, are performed by those that are desirous of deliverance.[25] *SAT* is employed to denote existence and goodness. Likewise, O son of Prithā, the word *SAT* is used in any auspicious act.[26] Constancy in sacrifices, in penances, and in gifts, is also called *SAT*; and an act, too, for the sake of *That* is called *SAT*.*[27] Whatever oblation is offered (to the fire), whatever is given away, whatever penance is performed, whatever is done, without faith, is, O son of Prithā, said to be the opposite of *Sat*; and that is nought both here and hereafter.—' "†[28]

SECTION XLII.

" 'Arjuna said,—Of Renunciation, O thou of mighty arms, I desire to know the true nature, and also of Abandonment, O lord of the senses, distinctly, O slayer of Keçi!—‡[1]

" 'The holy one said,—The rejection of works with desire is known by the learned as Renunciation. The abandonment of the fruit of all work, the discerning call Abandonment.[2] Some wise men say that work (itself) should be abandoned as evil; others (say) that the works of sacrifice, gifts, and

---

* *That* evidently refers to sacrifice, penance, and gift, in the clause before. The commentators, however, suggest that it may, besides, refer to *Brahma*. I am myself not sure that it does *not* refer to *Brahma*.—T.

† What the author wishes to lay down in these verses is that the words *OM*, *TAT*, and *SAT*, have each their respective uses. When used as directed here, such use cures the defects of the respective actions to which they are applied, it being understood that all three denote *Brahma*.—T.

‡ *Sanyāsa* I render Renunciation. K. T. Telang does the same. Mr. Davies renders it "abstention." So *Tyāga* I render "Abandonment." Mr. Davies renders it "renunciation." What the two words, however, mean is explained fully in the verses that follow.—T.

penance, should not be abandoned.[3] As to that abandonment, listen to my decision, O best of the sons of Bharata, for Abandonment, O tiger among men, hath been declared to be of three kinds.[4] The works of sacrifice, gifts, and penance, should not be abandoned. They should, indeed, be done. Sacrifice, gift, and penance, are the purifications of the wise.[5] But even those works should be done, abandoning attachment and fruit. This, O son of Prithā, is my excellent and decided opinion.[6] The renunciation of an act prescribed (in the scriptures) is not proper. Its abandonment (is) from delusion, (and) is (therefore) declared to be of the quality of Darkness.*[7] (Regarding it) as (a source of) sorrow, when work is abandoned from (fear of) bodily pain, one making such an abandonment which is of the quality of Passion, never obtaineth the fruit of Abandonment.[8] (Regarding it) as one that should be done, when† work that is prescribed (in the scriptures) is done, O Arjuna, abandoning attachment and fruit also, that abandonment is deemed to be of the quality of Goodness.[9] Possessed of intelligence and with doubts dispelled, an abandoner that is endowed with the quality of Goodness hath no aversion for an unpleasant action and no attachment to pleasant (ones).‡[10] Since actions cannot be absolutely abandoned by an embodied person, (therefore), he who abandons the fruit of actions is truly said to be an Abandoner.[11] Evil, good, and mixed,—action hath (this) threefold fruit hereafter for those that do not abandon. But there is none whatever for the Renouncer.$[12] Listen from me, O thou of

---

* Both Cankara and Creedhara explain the second line as consisting of two propositions, the connecting verb *bhavati* or *bhavet* being understood.—T.

† I have used "when" for "whatever" to make the sentence grammatical.—T.

‡ Mr. Davies, giving the sense correctly, does not follow the true order of the subject and the predicate. Following Lassen, he renders *kuçala* and *akuçala* as "prosperous' and 'unprosperous ;" for *medhāvi* K. T. Telang has "talented" which has not the sanction of good usage.—T.

$ That is, as Creedhara explains, one who hath renounced the fruit of actions.—T.

mighty arms, to these five causes for the completion of all actions, declared in the *Sānkhya* treating of the annihilation of actions.*[13] (They are) substratum, agent, the diverse kinds of organs, the diverse efforts severally, and with them the deities as the fith.†[14] With body, speech, or mind, whatever work, just or the reverse, a man undertakes, these five are its causes.[15] That being so, he that, owing to an unrefined understanding, beholdeth his own self as solely the agent, he, dul, in mind, beholdeth not.[16] He that hath no feeling of egoism, whose mind is not sullied, he, even killing all these people, killeth not, nor is fettered (by action).‡[17] Knowledge, the object of Knowledge, and the Knower, form the threefold impulse of action. Instrument, action, and the agent, form the threefold complements of action.§[18] Knowledge, action, and agent, are declared in the enumeration of qualities to be threefold, according to the difference of qualities. Listen to these also duly.¶[19] That by which One Eternal Essence is viewed in all things, undivided in the divided, know *that* to be knowledge having the quality of Goodness.[20] That knowledge which discerneth in all things diverse essences of different kinds, in consequence of their separateness, know that that knowledge hath the quality of Passion.[21] But that which is

---

* *Kritānte*; Cankara takes it as an adjective of *Sānkhye*, and thinks that the reference is to the *Vedānta*. Creedhara also seems to be of the same opinion.—T.

† The substratum is the body. The agent is the person that thinks himself to be the actor. The organs are those of perception, &c.. The efforts are the actions of the vital winds *Prāna* &c.. The deities are those that preside over the eye and the other senses. The deities have no place in Kapila's system. Hence, if it is not the Vedānta, some system materially based upon Kapila's and recognising the interference of the deities, seems to be indicatied. *Atra* is explained by Creedhara as equivalent to "among or with these." I think, however, it means, "are here,"*i. e*, "are enumerated *here*, or, *in this connection*."—T.

‡ Hath no feeling of egoism, *i. e*, doth not regard himself as the doer. Sullied, *i. e*, by the taint of desire of fruit.—T.

§ Mr. Davies, I think, is right in rendering *Samgrahas* as "complement." K. T. Telang renders it as equivalent to "in brief."—T.

¶ In the enunciation of qualities, *i. e*, in the *Sānkhya* system.—T.

attached to (each) single object as if it were the whole, which is without reason, without truth, and mean, that (knowledge) hath been said to be of the quality of Darkness.[22] The action which is prescribed (by the scriptures), (done) without attachment, performed without desire and aversion, by one who longeth not for (its) fruit, is said to be of the quality of Goodness.[23] But that action which is done by one seeking objects of desire, or by one filled with egoism, and which is attended with great trouble, is said to be of the quality of Passion.[24] That action which is undertaken from delusion, without regard to consequences, loss, injury (to others), and (one's own) power also, is said to be of the quality of Passion.[25] The agent who is free from attachment, who never speaketh of himself, who is endued with constancy and energy, and is unmoved by success and defeat, is said to be of the quality of Goodness.[26] The agent who is full of affections, who wisheth for the fruit of actions, who is covetous, endued with cruelty, and impure, and who feeleth joy and sorrow, is declared to be of the quality of Passion.*[27] The agent who is void of application, without descernment, obstinate, deceitful, malicious, slothful, desponding, and procrastinating, is said to be of the quality of Darkness.†[28] Hear now, O Dhananjaya, the threefold division of Intellect and of Constancy, according to their qualities, which I am about to declare exhaustively and distinctly.[29] The intellect which knoweth action and inaction, what ought to be done and what ought not to be done, fear and fearlessness, bondage and deliverance, is, O son of Prithā, of the quality of Goodness.[30] The intellect by which one imperfectly discerneth right and wrong, that which ought to be done and that which ought not to be done, is, O son of Prithā, of the quality of Passion.[31] That intellect which, shrouded by darkness, regardeth wrong to be right, and all things as reversed, is, O son of Prithā, of the quality of Darkness.[32]

---

* Full of affections, *i. e*, for children, &c., as Creedhara.—T.

† *Prākrita* which I have rendered "whithout discernment" following Creedhara, may be, as Mr. Davies renders it, "vulgar." *Naishkritika* is not "negligent" as Mr. Davies renders it, but "malicious."—T

That unswerving Constancy by which one controls the functions of the mind, the life-breaths, and the senses, through devotion, that Constancy is, O son of Prithā, of the quality of Goodness.[33]* But that Constancy, O Arjuna, by which one holds to religion, desire, and profit, through attachment, desiring fruit, that Constancy, O son of Prithā, is of the quality of Passion.[34] That through which an undiscerning person abandons not sleep, fear, sorrow, despondency, and folly, that Constancy is deemed to be of the quality of Darkness.[35] Hear now from me, O bull of Bharata's race, of the three kinds of happiness. That in which one findeth pleasure from repetition (of enjoyment), which bringeth an end to pain,[36] which is like poison first but resembleth nectar in the end, that happiness born of the serenity produced by a knowledge of self, is said to be of the quality of Goodness.†[37] That which is from the contact of the senses with their objects, which resembleth nectar first but is like poison in the end, that happiness is held to be of the quality of Passion.[38] That happiness which in the beginning and in its consequences deludeth the soul, and springeth from sleep, indolence, and stupidity, that is described to be of the quality of Darkness.[39] There is not, either on earth or in heaven among the gods, the entity that is free from these three qualities born of nature.[40] The duties of Brāhmanas, Kshatriyas, and Vaiçyas, and of Cudras also, O chastiser of foes, are distinguished by (these three) qualities born of nature.[41] Tranquillity, self-restraint, ascetic austerities, purity, forgiveness, rectitude, knowledge, experience, and belief (in an existence hereafter),—these are the duties of Brāhmanas, born of (their proper) nature.[42] Bravery, energy, firmness, skill, not flying

* Mr. Davies makes "unswerving" an adjective of "devotion." This is wrong, for *Avyabhichārinyā* (unswerving) is a feminine instrumental, and must qualify *Dhrityā*.—T.

† *Atma-budhi-prasādajam*. K. T. Telang, following an alternative explanation offered by Cankara, renders it "clear knowledge of the self." Mr. Davies renders it "the serenity of one's own mind." I follow Creedhara.—T.

away from battle, liberality, the bearing of a ruler,—these are the duties of Kshatriyas, born of (their proper) nature.[43] Agriculture, tending of cattle, and trade, are the natural duties of Vaiçyas. Of Cudras also, the natural duty consists in servitude.[44] Every man, engaged in his own duties, attains to perfection. Hear now how one obtains perfection by application to his duties.[45] Him from Whom are the movements of all beings, Him by Whom this All is pervaded, worshipping him by (the performance of) one's own duty, one obtaineth perfection.[46] Better is one's own duty though performed faultily than another's duty well-performed. Performing the duty prescribed by (one's own) nature, one incurreth no sin.[47] One must not abandon, O son of Kunti, one's natural duty though tainted with evil, for all actions are enveloped by evil like fire by smoke.[48] He whose mind is unattached everywhere, who hath subdued his self, and whose desires have departed, obtaineth, through Renunciation, the supreme perfection of freedom from work.[49] Learn from me, only in brief, O son of Kunti, how one, having obtained (this kind of) perfection, attaineth to *Brahma* which is the supreme end of knowledge.[50] Endued with a pure mind, and restraining his self by constancy, renouncing sound and other objects of sense, and casting off affection and aversion,[51] he who resideth in a lonely place, eateth little, and restraineth speech, body, and mind, who is ever intent on meditation and abstraction, who hath recourse to indifference,[52] who, abandoning egoism, violence, pride, lust, wrath, and (all) surroundings, hath been freed from selfishness and is tranquil (in mind), becometh fit for assimilation with *Brahma*.[53] Becoming one with *Brahma*, tranquil in spirit, (such a) one grieveth not, desireth not; alike to all beings, he obtaineth the highest devotion to Me.[54] By (that) devotion he truly understandeth Me, What I am, and Who I am; then, understanding Me truly, he entereth into Me forthwith.[55] Even performing all actions at all times, having refuge in Me, he obtaineth, through my favor, the seat that is eternal and imperishable.[56] Dedicating in thy heart all actions to Me, being devoted to Me, resorting to mental abstraction, fix thy thoughts constantly on Me.[57] Fixing thy thoughts on Me,

thou wilt surmount all difficulties through my grace. But if from self-conceit thou wilt not listen, thou wilt (then) utterly perish.[58] If, having recourse to self-conceit, thou thinkest—*I will not fight*,—that resolution of thine would be vain, (for) Nature will constrain thee.[59] That which, from delusion, thou dost not wish to do, thou wilt do involuntarily, bound by thy own duty springing from (thy own) nature.[60] The Lord, O Arjuna, dwelleth in the region of the heart of all beings, turning all beings as if mounted on a machine, by his illusive power.[61] Seek shelter with Him in every way, O Bhārata. Through His grace thou wilt obtain supreme tranquillity, the eternal seat.[62] Thus hath been declared to thee by Me the knowledge that is more mysterious than any (other) mystery. Reflecting on it fully, act as thou likest.[63] Once more, listen to my supernal words, the most mysterious of all. Exceedingly dear art thou to Me, therefore I will declare what is for thy benefit.[64] Set thy heart on Me, become My devotee, sacrifice to Me, bow down to Me. Then shalt thou come to Me. I declare to thee truly, (for) thou art dear to Me.[65] Forsaking all (religious) duties, come to Me as thy sole refuge. I will deliver thee from all sins. Do not grieve.[66] This is not to be ever declared by thee to one who practiseth no austerities, to one who is not a devotee, to one who never waiteth on a preceptor, nor yet to one who calumniateth Me.[67] He who shall inculcate this supreme mystery to those that are devoted to Me, offering Me the highest devotion, will come to Me, freed from (all his) doubts.*[68] Amongst men there is none who can do Me a dearer service than he, nor shall any other on earth be dearer to Me than he.[69] And he who will study this holy converse between us, by him will have been offered to Me the sacrifice of Knowledge. Such is My opinion.[70] Even the man who, with faith and without cavil, will hear it (read), even he, freed (from rebirth) will obtain the blessed regions of those that perform pious acts.[71] Hath this, O son

---

* *Asamçayas* is the reading that occurs in every text, and not *Asamçayam*. Mr. Davies, therefore, is incorrect in rendering it "doubtless" and making it an adverb qualifying "come to me."—T.

of Prithā, been heard by thee with mind undirected to any other object? Hath thy delusion, (caused) by ignorance, been destroyed, O Dhananjaya?—[72]

"'Arjuna said,—My delusion hath been destroyed, and the recollection (of what I am) hath been gained by me, O Undeteriorating one, through thy favor! I am now firm. My doubts have been dispelled. I will do thy bidding!—'[73]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus I heard this converse between Vāsudeva and the high-souled son of Prithā, (that is) wonderful and causeth the hair to stand on end.[74] Through Vyāsa's favor heard I this supreme mystery, this (doctrine of) *Yoga*, from Krishna himself, the Lord of *Yoga*, who declared it in person.[75] O king, recollecting and (again) recollecting this wonderful (and) holy converse of Keçava and Arjuna, I rejoice over and over again![76] Recollecting again and again that wonderful form also of Hari, great is my amazement, O king, and I rejoice ever more![77] Thither where Krishna the Lord of *Yoga* (is), thither where the (great) bowman Pārtha (is), thither, in my opinion, are prosperity, and victory, and greatness, and eternal justice!' "*[78]

SECTION XLIII.

Bhishma-vadha Parva.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Dhananjaya then to take up once again (his) arrows and *Gāndiva*, the mighty car-warriors (of the Pāndava party) uttered a tremendous shout.[1] And those heroes, *viz*, the Pāndavas, and the Somakas, and those who followed them, filled with joy, blew their sea-born conchs.[2] And drums, and *Peçis*, and *Krakachas*, and cow-horns, were beat and blown together, and the uproar made was very loud.[3] And then, O ruler of men, there came the gods, with the *Gandharvas* and the *Pitris*, and the hosts of *Siddhas* and *Chāranas*, from desire of witnessing (the sight).[4] And *Rishis* highly blessed came there in a body with him of

---

* *Bhuti* is explained by Creedhara as gradual *abhivriddhi*, *i. e*, growth or greatness. *Niti* is explained as *Nàya* or justice.—T.

a hundred sacrifices at their head, for beholding that great slaughter.[5] Then, O king, beholding the two armies, that looked like two oceans, ready for the encounter and continuously moving, the heroic king Yudhishthira the just, putting off his coat of mail and casting aside his excellent weapon, and quickly descending from his car, with joined hands, proceeded on foot, eyeing the grandsire, with restrained speech, facing the east, towards the direction where the hostile host was (standing).*[6-8] And seeing him proceed (thus), Dhananjaya the son of Kunti, speedily alighting from his car, followed him, accompanied by his (other) brothers.[9] And the lord Vāsudeva also followed him behind. And the principal kings too (of his army), filled with anxiety, followed in the same path.[10]

"'Arjuna said,—What is this act of thine, O king, that abandoning us thou proceedest on foot, face eastwards, to the hostile host ?[11]—

"'Bhimasena said,—Where wilt thou go, O king of kings, having cast off thy coat of mail and weapons, towards the warriors of the foe cased in mail, and leaving thy brothers, O ruler of Earth ?[12]—

"'Nakula said,—Thou art my eldest brother, O Bhārata! (Beholding) thee proceeding in this way, fear troubleth my bosom. Tell (us), whither wilt thou go ?[13]—

"'Sahadeva said,—When these hostile divisions, terrible and numerous, are here with whom we are to fight, whither, dost thou go, O king, in the direction of our foes ?—'[14]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Though thus addressed by his brothers, O son of Kuru's race, Yudhishthira of restrained speech said nothing but continued to proceed.[15] Unto them (then), the high-souled Vāsudeva of great wisdom smilingly said,—His object is known to me![16] Having paid his respects to all his superiors (such as) Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and Calya also, he will fight the foe.[17] It is heard in histories of olden times that he who, having paid his respects according

* *Varāyudham* is, according to Nilakantha, the excellent bow. *Yena* in verse 8 is equivalent to *Yatra*.—T.

to the ordinance unto his preceptors reverend in years and his kinsmen, fighteth with those that are his superiors,[18] is sure to obtain victory in battle. Even that is my opinion.—When Krishna was saying this, among the ranks of Dhritarāshtra's son,[19] a loud uproar of *Alas*, and *Oh* arose, but the other (army) remained perfectly still. Beholding Yudhishthira, the heroic warriors of Dhritarāshtra's son[20] conversed with one another, saying,—This one is an infamous wretch of his race. It is plain that this king is coming in terror towards Bhishma's side.[21] Yudhishthira with his brothers hath become a seeker after (Bhishma's) shelter. When Dhananjaya, however, is (his) protector, and Pāndu's sons Vrikodara,[22] and Nakula, and Sahadeva also, why doth the (eldest) son of Pāndu come (hither) in fear? Though celebrated in the world, this one, however, could never have been born in the *Kshatriya* order,[23] since he is weak and his bosom is filled with fear (at the prospect) of battle!—Then those warriors all praised the Kauravas.[24] And all of them, becoming rejoiced, with cheerful hearts waved their garments. And, O monarch, all the warriors there (then) censured[25] Yudhishthira with all his brothers and along with Keçava too. Then the Kaurava army, having said *Fie* to Yudhishthira,[26] soon again, O monarch, became perfectly still!—What will this king say? What will Bhishma say in reply?[27] What will Bhima, boastful of his prowess in battle, (say), and what Krishna and Arjuna? What, indeed, hath (Yudhishthira) to say?—great was the curiosity[28] then, O king, of both the armies in respect of Yudhishthira. The king (meanwhile), penetrating the hostile army bristling with arrows and darts,[29] proceeded quickly towards Bhishma, surrounded by his brothers. Seizing his feet with his two hands, the royal son of Pāndu then said unto Cāntanu's son Bhishma who was there ready for battle, (these words).[30]

"'Yudhishthira said,—I salute thee, O invincible one! With thee we will do battle! Grant (us) thy permission in that matter! Give (us) also (thy) blessing!—[31]

"'Bhishma said,—If, O lord of the earth, thou hadst not, in this battle, come to me thus, I would have, O great king,

cursed thee, O Bhārata, for bringing about thy defeat![32] I am gratified (with thee), O son! Do battle, and obtain victory, O son of Pāndu! What else may be desired by thee, obtain thou in battle![33] Solicit also the boon, O son of Prithā, which thou desirest to have from us! If it happens so, O great king, then defeat will not be thine![34] A man is the slave of wealth, but wealth is no one's slave. This is very true, O king! I have been bound by the Kauravas with (their) wealth.[35] It is for this, O son of Kuru's race, that like a eunuch I am uttering these words, *viz,—Bound am I by the Kauravas with wealth. Battle excepted, what dost thou desire?*—*[36]

"'Yudhishthira said,—O thou of great wisdom, do thou, desirous of my welfare, from day to day, consult my interests! Do battle, however, for the sake of the Kauravas! Even this is always my prayer (to thee)!—[37]

"'Bhishma said,—O king, O son of Kuru's race, what aid can I render thee in this? I shall, of course, fight for (thy) foes! Tell me what thou hast to say!—[38]

"'Yudhishthira said,—Therefore, O sire, I ask thee, I bow to thee, O grandsire, how shall we in battle vanquish thee that art invincible? Tell me this that is for my benefit, if, indeed, thou seest any good in it!—[39]

"'Bhishma said,—I do not, O son of Kunti, see the person who, even if he were the chief of the celestials himself, can defeat me in battle when I fight!—[40]

"'Yudhishthira said,—My salutations to thee, O grandsire! Therefore, do I ask thee (this)! Tell us how thy own death may be compassed by foes in battle!—[41]

"'Bhishma said,—I do not see the person, O sire, who can vanquish me in battle! The time also of my death is not yet come! Come to me once again!—'[42]

---

* What Bhishma says is this: I am bound by the Kauravas and, therefore, I am not a free agent. Obliged I am to battle against you. Yet I am saying "What do you ask of me?" as if I could really give you what you might ask. My words, therefore, are without meaning, or vain, like those of a eunuch. *Klivavat* is explained by Nilakantha as *Kātaravat*. Even in that case, the sense would be the same.—T.

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then, O son of Kuru's race, Yudhishthira, once more saluting him, accepted Bhishma's words with a bend of his head.[43] And that mighty-armed one then proceeded towards the car of the preceptor (Drona) through the midst of all the soldiers who were eyeing him, accompanied by his brothers.[44] Then saluting Drona and walking round him, the king spoke to that invincible warrior words that were for his own benefit.*[45]

"'Yudhishthira said,—I ask thee, O invincible one, how I may fight without incurring sin, and how, with thy permission, O regenerate one, I may vanquish all my foes ?—†[46]

"'Drona said,—If, having resolved to fight, thou hadst not come to me (thus), I would have cursed thee, O king, for thy complete overthrow![47] I am, however, gratified, O Yudhishthira, and honored by thee, O sinless one! I permit thee, fight and obtain victory![48] I will also fulfil thy wish. Say what thou hast to say. Under these circumstances, battle excepted, what dost thou wish?[49] A man is the slave of wealth, but wealth is no one's slave. This is quite true, O king! Bound I have been with (their) wealth by the Kauravas![50] It is for this that like a eunuch I am uttering these words—*Battle excepted, what dost thou wish ?* I shall fight for the sake of the Kauravas, but will pray for thy victory!—‡[51]

"'Yudhishthira said,—Pray for my victory, O regenerate one, and counsel what is for my good. Fight, however, for the Kauravas. This is the boon solicited by me!—[52]

"'Drona said,—Victory, O king, is certain for thee that hast Hari for thy counsellor! I (also) grant thee that thou wilt vanquish thy foes in battle![53] Thither where righteous-

---

* The Bengal reading is evidently incorrect. The Bombay text reads *Rājā* for *Vachā*.—T.

† Nilakantha thinks that *Vigatakalmashas* refers to Drona; the meaning he suggests is "Tell me with a pure heart &c. &c." I think Nilakantha is not right.—T.

‡ The sense of the first line is that because I am bound by the Kauravas with their wealth, therefore, I am obliged to make this reservation in the matter of granting thee thy wishes. That reservation really nullifies my promise. See P. 146.—T.

ness is, thither is Krishna; and thither where Krishna is, thither is victory. Go, fight, O son of Kunti! Ask me, what shall I say unto thee?—[54]

"'Yudhishthira said,—I ask thee, O foremost of regenerate ones, listen to what I have to say! How shall we in battle vanquish thee that art invincible?—[55]

"'Drona said,—As long as I will fight, so long victory can never be thine! (Therefore), O king, seek, with thy brothers, for my speedy slaughter!—[56]

"'Yudhishthira said,—Alas, for this, O thou of mighty arms, tell (us) the means of thy death! O preceptor, prostrating myself I ask thee this! (My) salutations to thee!—[57]

"'Drona said,—The foe, O sire, I see not who may slay me while standing in battle I am engaged in fight, with wrath excited, and scattering (my) arrowy showers continually.[58] Except when addrest for death, O king, having abandoned my arms and withdrawn (in *Yoga* meditation) from surrounding sights, none will be able to slay me! This that I tell thee is true!*[59] I also tell thee truly that I will cast off my arms in battle, having heard something very disagreeable from some one of credible speech!—[60]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing these words, O king, of the wise son of Bharadwāja, and honoring the preceptor, (Yudhishthira then) proceeded towards the son of Caradwat.[61] And saluting Kripa and walking round him, O king, Yudhishthira, accomplished in speech, said these words unto that warrior of great valour.[62]

"'Yudhishthira said,—Obtaining thy permission, O preceptor, I will fight without incurring sin, and permitted by thee, O sinless one, I will vanquish all (my) foes!—[63]

"'Kripa said,—If, having resolved on fight, thou hadst not come to me (thus), I would have cursed thee, O king, for thy complete overthow![64] A man is the slave of wealth, but wealth is no one's slave. This is very true, O king, and

* This *sloka* is very elliptical. There is a slight difference of reading between the Bengal and the Bombay texts, without affecting the sense. I render the verse somewhat freely.—T.

bound I have been with wealth by the Kauravas![65] I must, O king, fight for their sake. This is my opinion. I, therefore, speak like a eunuch in asking thee,—*Battle excepted, what dost thou desire?*—[66]

"'Yudhishthira said,—Alas, I ask thee, therefore, O preceptor, listen to my words!—Saying this, the king, greatly agitated and deprived of his senses, stood silent.'[67]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Understanding, however, what he intended to say, Gautama (Kripa) replied to him, saying,—I am incapable of being slain, O king! Fight, and obtain victory![68] I am gratified with thy coming. Rising every day (from bed) I will pray for thy victory, O monarch! I say this to thee truly!—[69] Hearing, O king, these words of Gautama, and paying him due honors, the king proceeded thither where the ruler of the Madras was.[70] Saluting Calya and walking round him, the king said unto that invincible warrior those words that were for his own benefit.[71]

"'Yudhishthira said,—Obtaining thy permission, O invincible one, I will fight without incurring sin, and permitted by thee, O king, I will vanquish (my) valorous foes!—*[72]

"'Calya said,—If, having resolved on fight, thou hadst not come to me (thus), I would have, O king, cursed thee for thy overthrow in battle![73] I am gratified (with thee) and honored (by thee)! Let it be as thou wishest! I grant thee permission, fight and obtain victory![74] Speak, O hero! For what hast thou any need? What shall I give thee? Under these circumstances, O king, battle excepted, what dost thou desire?[75] A man is the slave of wealth, but wealth is no one's slave. This is true, O king! Bound I have been with wealth by the Kauravas![76] O nephew, it is for this that I am speaking to thee like a eunuch,—*I will accomplish the desire thou mayst cherish! Battle excepted, what dost thou wish?*—[77]

"'Yudhishthira said,—Think, O king, daily of what is for my great good. Fight, according to thy pleasure, for the sake of the foe! This is the boon that I solicit—[78]

"'Calya said,—Under these circumstances, say, O best

---

* *Parān* is explained by Nilakantha as "superior," qualifying *Ripun*.

of kings, what aid shall I render thee? I shall, of course, fight for the sake of (thy) enemy, for I have been made one of their party by the Kauravas with their wealth!—*[79]

"'Yudhishthira said,—Even that is my boon, O Calya, which was solicited by me during the preparations (for the fight). The energy of the *Suta's* son (Karna) should be weakened by thee in battle!—[80]

"'Calya said,—This thy wish, O Yudhishthira, shall be accomplished, O son of Kunti! Go, fight according to thy pleasure. I shall look after thy victory!—'[81]

"'Sanjaya continued,—'Having obtained the permission of his maternal uncle the ruler of the Madras, the son of Kunti, surrounded by his brothers, came out of that vast army.[82] Vāsudeva then went to Rādhā's son on the field of battle. And the elder brother of Gada, for the sake of the Pāndavas, then said to Karna,[83]—It hath been heard by me, O Karna, that from hatred of Bhishma thou wilt not fight. Come to our side, O son of Rādhā, and (stay with us) as long as Bhishma is not slain.[84] After Bhishma is slain, O son of Rādhā, thou mayst then again engage in battle on Duryodhana's side, if thou hast no preference for any of the parties!—[85]

"'Karna said,—I will not do anything that is disagreeable to Dhritarāshtra's son, O Keçava! Devoted to Duryodhana's good, know that I have cast off my life (for him)![86]—Hearing these words (of Karna), Krishna ceased, O Bhārata, and reunited himself with the sons of Pāndu headed by Yudhishthira.[87] Then amid all the warriors, the eldest son of Pāndu, loudly exclaimed,—He who will choose us, him we shall choose for our ally![88]—Casting his eyes then upon them, Yuyutsu said these words, with a cheerful heart, unto Kunti's son king Yudhishthira the just,[89]—I will fight under thee in battle,

---

* *Vritosmi* is the reading of the Bengal texts, better than *Vaddhosmi* of the Bombay edition, and *bhritosmi* of the Burdwan text. Calya was not bound to the Kauravas like Bhishma or Drona or Kripa by pensions, but, gratified by the reception granted to him by Duryodhana in secret, he generously agreed to aid the latter even against his own sister's sons and their step-brothers.—T.

for the sake of you all, with the sons of Dhritarāshtra, if, O king, thou wilt accept me, O sinless one![90]—

"'Yudhishthira said,—Come, come, all of us will fight with thy foolish brothers! O Yuyutsu, both Vāsudeva and we all say to thee[91]—*I accept thee, O thou of mighty arms, fight for my cause!* On thee rests, it seems, the thread of Dhritarāshtra's line as also his funeral cake![92] O prince, O thou of great splendour, accept us that accept thee! The wrathful Duryodhana of wicked understanding will cease to live!'—[93]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Yuyutsu then, abandoning the Kurus thy sons, went over to the army of the Pāndavas, with beat of drums and cymbals.[94] Then king Yudhishthira of mighty arms, filled with joy, again put on his shining coat of mail of golden effulgence.[95] And those bulls among men then mounted their respective cars. And they counter-arrayed their troops in battle-array as before.[96] And they caused drums and cymbals in many hundreds to be sounded. And those bulls among men also set up diverse leonine roars.*[97] And beholding those tigers among men, *viz*, the sons of Pāndu, on their cars, the kings (on their side) with Dhrishtadyumna and others, once more set up shouts of joy.[98] And beholding the nobility of the sons of Pāndu who had paid due honor to those that were deserving of honor, all the kings there present applauded them highly.[99] And the monarchs talked with one another about the friendship, the compassion, and the kindness to kinsmen, displayed at the proper season by those high-souled personages.[100] *Excellent,—Excellent,*—were the delightful words everywhere bruited about, coupled with eulogistic hymns about those famous men. And in consequence of this, the minds and hearts of every one there were attracted towards them.[101] And the *Mlecchas* and the *Aryas* there who witnessed or heard of that behaviour of the sons of Pāndu, all wept with choked voices.[102] And those warriors then, endued with great energy, caused large drums and *Pushkaras* by hundreds upon hun-

* For *Puskalān* the Bombay text reads *Pushkarān*, which means a kind of drum.—T.

dreds to be sounded and also blew their conchs all white as the milk of cows.' "[103]

SECTION XLIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When the divisions of both my side and the foe were thus arrayed, who struck first, the Kurus or the Pāndavas ?'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing those words of his (elder) brother, thy son Dusçāsana advanced with his troops, with Bhishma at their head.[2] And the Pāndavas also advanced with cheerful hearts, desiring battle with Bhishma, having Bhimasena at their head.[3] Then leonine shouts, and clamorous uproars, and the noise of *Krakachas*, the blare of cow-horns, and the sound of drums and cymbals and tabors,[4] arose in both armies. And the warriors of the foe rushed against us, and we also (rushed) against them with loud shouts. And the uproar (caused by this rush) was deafening.*[5] The vast hosts of the Pāndavas and the Dhārtarāshtras, in that awfully murderous encounter, shook in consequence of that uproar of conchs and cymbals, like forests shaken by the wind.†[6] And the din made by those hosts teeming with kings, elephants, and steeds, rushing against one another in that evil hour, was as loud as that of oceans agitated by the tempest.[7] And when that din, loud and causing the hair to stand on end, arose, the mighty-armed Bhimasena began to roar like a bull.[8] And those roars of Bhimasena rose above the clamour of conchs and drums, the grunts of elephants, and the leonine shouts of the combatants.[9] Indeed, the shouts of Bhimasena transcended the noise made by the thousands of chargers neighing in (both) the armies.[10] And hearing those shouts of Bhimasena who was roaring like the clouds, shouts that resembled the report of Cakra's thunder, thy warriors were filled with fear.[11] And at those roars of the hero, the steeds and elephants all ejected urine and excreta like other animals at the roar of the lion.[12]

---

* For *rājan* in the Bengal texts, in the first line of the 5th verse, the Bombay text reads *hyāsan* which I adopt.—T.

† *Mahā samucchraye* is explained by Nilakantha as *Mahāsamprahāre.*

And roaring like a deep mass of clouds, and assuming an awful form, that hero frightened thy sons and fell upon them.*[13] Thereupon the brothers, *viz*, thy sons Duryodhana, and Durmukha, and Dussaha, and that mighty car-warrior Dusçāsana, and Durmarshana, O king, and Vivingçati, and Chitrasena, and the great car-warrior Vikarna, and also Purumitra, and Jaya, and Bhoja, and the valorous son of Somadatta, shaking their splendid bows like masses of clouds exhibiting the lightning's flashes, and taking out (of their quivers) long arrows resembling snakes that have just cast off their sloughs, surrounded that mighty bowman rushing (towards themselves), covering him with flights of arrows like the clouds shrouding the sun.[14-17] And the (five) sons of Draupadi, and the mighty çar-warrior Saubhadra,† and Nakula, and Sahadeva, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race,[18] rushed against (those) Dhārtarāshtras, tearing them with whetted shafts like summits of mountains with the impetuous bolts of heaven.[19] And in that first encounter characterised by the awful twang of bowstrings and their flapping against the leathern fences (of the warriors),‡ no combatant, either on thy side or that of the foe, turned back.[20] And, O bull of Bharata's race, I beheld the lightness of hand of the disciples of Drona (in particular), who, shooting innumerable arrows, O king, always succeeded in hitting the mark.§[21] And the twang of sounding bowstrings ceased not for a moment, and the blazing arrows shot through (the air) like meteors (falling) from the firmament.[22] And all the other kings, O Bhārata, stood like (silent) spectators witnessing that interesting and awful encounter of kinsmen.¶[23] And then those mighty car-warriors, with wrath excited and remembering the injuries sustained at one another's hands, strove in battle, O king, challenging one

---

* Literally, "showing himself in an awful form."—T.

† Subhadrā's son Abhimanyu.—T.

‡ These fences were made of iguana skins and cased the hands of the bowmen up to a few inches of the elbow-joint.—T.

§ *Nimitta* is explained by Nilakantha as the mark or object aimed at. Drona was the preceptor in arms of almost all the Bharata princes.—T

¶ *Interesting*, literally, sightly.—T.

another.[24] And the two armies of the Kurus and the Pāndavas, teeming with elephants, steeds, and cars, looked exceedingly beautiful on the field of battle like painted figures on a canvas.[25] And then the (other) kings all took up their bows. And the Sun himself was shrouded by the dust raised by the combatants.*[26] And they fell upon one another, at the heads of their (respective) troops, at the command of thy son. And the loud uproar made by the elephants and the chargers of those kings rushing to the combat,[27] mingled with the leonine shouts of the combatants and the din made by the blare of conchs and the sound of drums. And the uproar of that ocean having arrows for its crocodiles, bows for its snakes, swords for its tortoises,[28] and the forward leaps of the warriors for its tempest, resembled the din made by the (actual) ocean when agitated. And kings in thousands, commanded by Yudhishthira,[29] with their (respective) troops fell upon the ranks of thy son. And the encounter between the combatants of the two hosts was fierce in the extreme.[30] And no difference could be perceived between the combatants of our side or that of the foe, while battling, or retreating in broken array, or rallying again to the fight.[31] In that terrific and awful battle, thy father (Bhishma) shone, transcending that countless host.†' "[32]

SECTION XLV.

"Sanjaya said,—'On the forenoon of that awful day, O king, the terrible battle that mangled the bodies of (so many) kings commenced.[1] And the loud shouts, resembling leonine roars, of the Kurus and the Srinjayas, both desirous of victory in battle, made both the welkin and the earth resound therewith.[2] And a tumultous uproar was heard mingled with the flaps of leathern fences and the blare of conchs. And many were the leonine roars that arose there of men shouting

---

* The second line of the 26th verse is, in the Bombay edition, made the second line of the 28th verse following.—T.

† The latter half of the 27th, the 28th, and the first half of the 29th verses are wanting in the Bombay text.—T.

against one another.[3] And, O bull of Bharata's race, the sound of bowstrings stretched by (hands cased in) fences, the heavy tread of infantry, the furious neigh of chargers,[4] the falling of sticks and iron hooks (on the heads of elephants), the clash of weapons, the jingle of bells of elephants rushing against one another,[5] and the clatter of cars resembling the roar of clouds, mingled together, produced a loud uproar making one's hair stand on end.[6] And all the Kuru warriors, reckless of their very lives and with cruel intentions, rushed, with standards upraised, against the Pāndavas.[7] And Cāntanu's son himself, taking up a terrible bow that resembled the rod of Death, rushed, O king, on the field of battle, against Dhanañjaya.[8] And Arjuna also, enduced with great energy, taking up the bow *Gāndiva* celebrated over all the world, rushed, on the field of battle, against Gangā's son.[9] And both those tigers among the Kurus became desirous of slaying each other. The mighty son of Gangā, however, piercing in battle the son of Prithā, could not make him waver.[10] And so, O king, the son of Pāndu also could not make Bhishma waver in battle. And the mighty bowman Sātyaki rushed against Kritavarman.[11] And the battle between these two was fierce in the extreme and made the hair (of onlookers) stand on end. And Sātyaki afflicted Kritavarman, and Kritavarman afflicted Sātyaki, with loud shouts, and each weakened the other. And pierced all over with arrows those mighty warriors shone [12-13] like two blossoming *Kinçukas* in spring adorned with flowers. And the mighty bowman Abhimanyu battled with Vrihadvala.[14] Soon, however, in that encounter, O king, the ruler of Koçala cut off the standard and overthrew the charioteer of Subhadrā's son.[15] The son of Subhadrā then, upon the overthrow of his charioteer, was filled with wrath, and pierced Vrihadvala, O king, with nine shafts.[16] And with a couple of sharp arrows, that grinder of foes also cut off (Vrihadvala's) standard, and with one (more) cut off one of the protectors of his car-wheels and with the other his charioteer.*[17] And those chastisers of foes continued to

* With two *Bhallas* Abhimanyu cut off his adversary's standard;

weaken each other with sharp arrows. And Bhimasena struggled in battle with thy son Duryodhana, that mighty car-warrior, proud and inflated, who had injured (the sons of Pāndu). Both of those foremost (princes) among the Kurus, are tigers among men and mighty car-warriors.[18-19] And they covered each other, on the field of battle, with their arrowy showers. And beholding those high-souled and accomplished warriors conversant with all modes of warfare,[20] all creatures were filled with amazement, O Bhārata. And Dusçāsana, rushing against that mighty car-warrior Nakula,[21] pierced him with many sharp arrows capable of penetrating into the very vitals. The son of Mādri then, laughing the while, cut off, with sharp arrows (of his), his adversary's standard and bow. And then he struck him with five and twenty small-headed arrows.[22-23] Thy son, however, then, who can with difficulty be vanquished, slew in that fierce encounter the steeds of Nakula and cut off his standard.[24] And Durmukha rushing against the mighty Sahadeva battling in that terrific encounter, pierced him with a shower of arrows.[25] The heroic Sahadeva then, in that fearful battle, overthrew Durmukha's charioteer with an arrow of great sharpness.[26] Both of them, irrepressible in fight, approaching each other in combat, and each attacking the other and desirous of warding off the other's attack, began to strike terror into each other with terrible shafts.[27] And king Yudhishthira himself encountered the ruler of the Madras. The chief of the Madras then, in his very sight, cut off in twain Yudhishthira's bow.[28] Thereupon the son of Kunti, throwing aside that broken bow, took up another that was stronger and capable of imparting a greater velocity.[29] The king then, with straight arrows, covered the ruler of the Madras, and in great wrath said,—*Wait, Wait.*[30] And Dhrishtadyumna, O Bhārata, rushed against Drona. And Drona, then, in great wrath, cut off in that encounter the hard bow of the high-souled prince of Pānchāla that was

---

with one, one of the protectors of his car-wheels; and with another, his charioteer. Thus Nilakantha. A *Pārshni* is altogether a different person from a *Sārathi*. Hence Nilakantha is assuredly right. The Burdwan Pundits have misunderstood the verse.—T.

capable of always taking the lives of foes. And at the same time he shot in that conflict a terrible arrow that was like a second rod of Death. And the arrow shot penetrated the body of the prince. Taking up then another bow and fourteen arrows,[31-33] the son of Drupada pierced Drona in that encounter. And enraged with each other, they battled on fiercely.[34] And the impetuous Cankha encountered Somadatta's son who was equally impetuous in battle and addressed him, O king, saying,—*Wait, Wait.*[35] And that hero then pierced his (adversary's) right arm in that combat. And thereupon the son of Somadatta struck Cankha on the shoulders.[36] And the battle that ensued between those two proud heroes, O king, soon became as terrible as a combat between the gods and the *Dānavas.*[37] And that mighty car-warrior Dhrishtaketu of immeasurable soul, with wrath excited, rushed in battle, O king, against Vālhika the very embodiment of wrath.[38] Vālhika then, O king, setting up a leonine roar, weakened the wrathful Dhrishtāketu with innumerable arrows.[39] The king of the Chedis, however, exceedingly provoked, quickly pierced Vālhika in that encounter with nine arrows. Like an infuriate elephant against an infuriate elephant,[40] in that combat they roared against each other repeatedly, both exceedingly enraged. And they encountered each other with great wrath and looked like the planets *Angāraka* and *Vudha.**[41] And Ghatotkacha of cruel deeds encountered the *Rākshasa* Alamvusha of cruel deeds like Cakra (encountering) Vala in battle.[42] And Ghatotkacha, O Bhārata, pierced that infuriate and powerful *Rākshasa* with ninety keen-edged shafts.[43] And Alamvusha also in that combat pierced the mighty son of Bhimasena in many places with straight arrows (of his).[44] And mangled with arrows they shone in that encounter like the mighty Cakra and the powerful Vala in the combat (of old) between the celestials and the *Asuras.*†[45] The powerful Cikhandin, O king, rushed against Drona's son. Açwatthāman, however, deeply piercing the angry Cikhandin stationed

* *Angāraka* is the planet Mars, and *Vudha* is Venus.—T.

† The second line of the 45th verse is not in the Bengal texts.—T.

(before him) with a keen-edged shaft, caused him to tremble.*[46] Cikhandin also, O king, smote Drona's son with a sharp whetted shaft of excellent temper.[47] And they continued in that encounter to strike each other with various kinds of arrows. And against the heroic Bhagadatta in battle, Virāta the commander of a large division,[48] rushed impetuously, O king, and then commenced (their) combat. Virāta, exceedingly provoked, poured on Bhagadatta an arrowy shower like, O Bhārata, the clouds showering rain on the mountain breast. But Bhagadatta, that lord of the earth, speedily enveloped Virāta in that encounter (with arrows) like the clouds enveloping the risen sun. Kripa the son of Caradwat rushed against Vrihadkshatra the ruler of the Kaikeyas.[49-51] And Kripa, O Bhārata, enveloped him with a shower of arrows. Vrihadkshatra also shrouded the infuriate son of Gautama with an arrowy downpour.[52] And those warriors then, having slain each other's steeds and cut off each other's bows, were both deprived of their cars. And exceedingly enraged, they then approached each other for fighting with their swords.[53] And the combat which then took place between them was terrible in aspect and unparalleled. That chastiser of foes, king Drupada then, in great wrath, rushed against Jayadratha the ruler of the Sindhus, cheerfully waiting (for battle). The ruler of the Sindhus pierced Drupada in that combat with three shafts, and Drupada pierced him in return. And the battle that took place between them was terrible and fierce,[54-56] and productive of satisfaction in the hearts of all the spectators, and resembling a conflict between the planets *Çukra* and and *Angāraka*. And Vikarna, son to thee, with fleet steeds, rushed against the mighty Sutasoma, and the combat between them commenced. Vikarna, however, although he pierced Sutasoma with many arrows, failed to make him waver.[57-58] Neither could Sutasoma make Vikarna waver. And that appeared wonderful (to all). And against

* I take the 46th as consisting of three lines in order to make the succeeding numbers of the verses correspond with those of the Bengal texts.—T.

Suçarman, that mighty car-warrior and tiger among men, *viz*, Chekitāna[59] of great prowess, rushed in exceeding wrath for the sake of the Pāndavas. And Suçarman also, O great king, in that encounter checked the advance of that mighty car-warrior Chekitāna with a plentiful shower of arrows. And Chekitāna also, greatly provoked, showered on Suçarman, in that terrible conflict, a shower of arrows like a mighty mass of clouds showering rain on the mountain breast.[60-61] And Cakuni, endued with great prowess, rushed, O king, against Prativindhya of great prowess, like a lion against an infuriate elephant.[62] Thereupon the son of Yudhishthira, in exceeding wrath, mangled Suvala's son in that combat, with sharp arrows, like Maghavat (mangling) a *Dānava*.*[63] And Cakuni also, in that fierce conflict, pierced Prativindhya in return and mangled that warrior of great intelligence with straight arrows.[64] And Crutakarman rushed in battle, O great king, against that mighty car-warrior Sudakshina of great prowess, the ruler of the Kāmvojas.[65] Sudakshina, however, O great king, piercing that mighty car-warrior, *viz*, the son of Sahadeva, failed to make him waver, (for he stood) like the Maināka mountain (against the assaults of Indra).[66] Thereupon Crutakarman, exceedingly provoked, weakened that mighty car-warrior of the Kāmvojas with innumerable arrows and mangled him in every part of his body.[67] And Irāvān that chastiser of foes, in great wrath and exerting carefully, rushed in battle against the wrathful Crutāyush.[68] The powerful son of Arjuna, that mighty car-warrior, then slaying the steeds of his adversary, set up a loud roar, and thereupon, O king, all the warriors (who saw the feat) praised him greatly.[69] And Crutāyush also, exceedingly provoked, slew in that conflict the steeds of Fālguna's son with a powerful mace, and the battle between them continued.[70] And Vinda and Anuvinda the two princes of Avanti approached in battle that mighty car-warrior the heroic Kuntibhoja at the head of his troops accompanied by his son.[71] And wonderful was the

---

* *Prativindhya* was Yudhishthira's son by Draupadi. Maghavat is Indra the chief of the celestials.—T.

prowess we beheld of those two princes on that occasion, for they fought on very coolly though battling with a large body of troops.[72] And Anuvinda hurled a mace at Kuntibhoja, but Kuntibhoja quickly covered him with a shower of arrows.[73] And the son of Kuntibhoja pierced Vinda with many arrows, and the latter also pierced him in return. And the combat (between them) looked very wonderful.[74] And the Kekaya brothers, O sire, at the head of their troops, encountered in battle the five Gāndhāra princes with their troops.[75] And thy son Viravāhu battled with that best of car-warriors Uttara the son of Virāta and pierced him with nine arrows.[76] And Uttara also pierced that hero with sharp-edged arrows. And the ruler of the Chedis, O king, rushed in battle against Uluka.[77] And he pierced Uluka with a shower of arrows, and Uluka also pierced him with sharp arrows furnished with excellent wings.[78] And the combat that took place between them, O king, was fierce in the extreme, for unable to vanquish each other, they mangled each other terribly.[79] And thus in that general engagement thousands of single combats took place between cars, elephants, horsemen, and foot-soldiers, of their side and thine.[80] For a short while only that engagement offered a beautiful sight. Soon, however, O king, it became furious and nothing could be discovered.[81] In the battle (that ensued), elephants rushed against elephants, car-warriors against car-warriors, steed against steed, and foot-soldier against foot-soldier.[82] The conflict then became confused and fierce in the extreme, of heroes rushing against each other in the melee.[83] And the celestial *Rishis*, and *Siddhas*, and *Chāranas*, that were present there, beheld that terrific battle to resemble the combat of the gods and the *Asuras*.[84] And elephants in thousands, and cars also in thousands, and vast bodies of horse, and vast bodies of infantry, O sire, seemed to alter their character.*[85] And, O tiger among men, it was seen

* The word used in the original is *Viparitam*, lit. contrary. The sense seems to be that car-men fought on foot, cavalry soldiers on elephants, warriors on elephants, from horse-back, &c. The very character of the forces was altered.—T.

that cars and elephants and steeds and infantry fought with each other repeatedly on the same places.' "*[86]

SECTION XLVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'O king, I will now describe to thee the combats of hundreds and thousands of foot-soldiers, O Bhārata, in utter forgetfulness of all considerations due to others.[1] There the son recognised not the sire, the sire (recognised not) the son of his loins; the brother (recognised not) the brother, the sister's son (recognised not) the maternal uncle.[2] The maternal uncle (recognised not) the sister's son, the friend not the friend. The Pāndavas and the Kurus fought as if they were possessed by demons.[3] Some tigers among men, falling, with cars, upon divisions of cars, crushed, O bull of Bharata's race, the yokes of cars into pieces.[4] And the shafts of cars broke clashing against shafts, and the spikes of car-yokes against spikes of car-yokes. And some (warriors) united together encountered others that were united together, all desirous of taking one another's life.[5] And some cars, obstructed by cars, were unable to move. And huge-bodied elephants with rent temples, falling upon huge elephants,[6] angrily tore one another in many places with their tusks. Others, O king, encountering impetuous and huge ones of their species with arched edifices and standards (on their backs) and trained to the fight, struck with their tusks, shrieked in great agony.†[7-8] Disciplined by training, and urged on by pikes and hooks, elephants not in rut rushed straight against those that were in rut.‡[9] And

---

* *I. e*, though repulsed, these frequently rallied, and occupied the same ground as before.—T.

† The last half of the 7th, with the 8th, forms one sentence. It is certainly pleonastic. *Ranavāranais* of the Bengal texts is preferable to the Bombay reading *Varavāranais*. *Toranas* are the wooden edifices placed on the backs of elephants for the protection and comfort of the riders. These are called in India *Hāwadās*.—T.

‡ Many of the Bengal texts read *Avinitās*. The correct reading, as in the Bombay text, is *Abhinitās*. *Aprabhinna* is, literally, "unrent," *i. e*, with the temporal juice *not* trickling down. This juice emanates

some huge elephants, encountering compeers in rut, ran, uttering cries like those of cranes, in all directions.[10] And many huge elephants, well-trained, and with juice trickling down from rent temples and mouth, mangled with swords, lances, and arrows,[11] and pierced in their vital parts, shrieked aloud and falling down expired. And some, uttering frightful cries, ran in all directions.[12] The foot-soldiers that protected the elephants, endued with broad chests, and capable of smiting effectually, with wrath excited, and armed with pikes, and bows, and bright battle-axes, and with maces, and clubs, and short arrows, and lances, and with shafts, and stout bludgeons mounted with iron spikes, and swords, well grasped, of the brightest polish, ran hither and thither, O king, and seemed resolved to take one another's life.[13-15] And the sabres of brave combatants rushing against one another, steeped in human blood, seemed to shine brightly.[16] And the whiz of swords whirled and made to descend by heroic arms and falling upon the vital parts (of the bodies) of foes, became very loud.[17] And the heart-rending wails of combatants in multitudinous hosts, crushed with maces and clubs, and cut off with well-tempered swords, and pierced with the tusks of elephants, and grinded by tuskers, calling upon one another, were heard, O Bhārata, to resemble the wails of those that are doomed to hell.[18-19] And horsemen, on chargers of exceeding speed and furnished with outstretched tails resembling (the plumes of) swans, rushed against one another.[20] And hurled by them, long bearded darts adorned with pure gold, fleet, and polished, and sharp-pointed, fell like snakes.*[21] And some heroic horsemen, on coursers of great speed, leaping high, cut off the heads of car-warriors from their cars.†[22] And (here and there) a car-warrior, getting bodies of cavalry

---

from several parts of the elephant's body when the season of rut comes. To avoid a cumbrous periphrasis, which again would be unintelligible to the European reader, I have given the sense only.—T.

* For the Benglal reading *Mahāprājna* the Bombay text reads *Mahāprāsās*.—T.

† *Rathāt* and not *Rathān* is the reading that I adopt.—T.

within shooting distance, slew many with straight shafts furnished with broad heads.[23] And many infuriate elephants, adorned with trappings of gold, and looking like newly-risen clouds, throwing down steeds, crushed them with their own legs.[24] And some elephants, struck on their frontal globes and flanks, and mangled by means of lances, shrieked aloud in great agony.*[25] And many huge elephants, in the bewildering confusion of the melee, crushing steeds with their riders, threw them down.[26] And some elephants, over-throwing with the points of their tusks steeds with their riders, wandered, crushing cars with their standards.[27] And some huge male elephants, from excess of energy and with the temporal juice gushing down in large quantities, slew steeds along with their riders by means of their trunks and legs.[28] Fleet arrows, polished, and sharp-pointed, and resembling snakes, fell upon the heads, the temples, the flanks, and the limbs of elephants.†[29] And polished javelins of terrible mien, and looking like large meteoric flashes, hurled by heroic arms, fell hither and thither, O king, piercing through the bodies of men and horses, and cutting through coats of mail.‡[30] And many taking out their polished sabres from sheaths made of the skins of leopards and tigers, slew the combatants opposed to them in battle.[31] And many warriors, though themselves attacked and had the flanks of their bodies cut open, yet angrily fell upon (their foes) with swords and shields and battle-axes.[32] And some elephants dragging down and overthrowing cars with their steeds by means of their trunks, began to wander in all directions, guided by the cries of those behind them.[33] And hither and thither, some pierced by javelins, and some cut asunder by battle-axes, and some

* Many of the Bengal texts read *Sudārunās* as the last word of the first line of the 25th verse. It is evidently unmeaning. The Bombay reading is *cha Vāranās*.—T.

† *Vāranān*: the acusative form is used, says Nilakantha, for the genetive; *āçugās*, lit., quickly going, is used here as a substantive, meaning arrows.—T.

‡ I take the 30th verse as consisting of three lines.—T.

crushed by elephants, and others trod down by horses,[34] and some cut by car-wheels, and some by axes, loudly called upon their kinsmen, O king.[35] And some called upon their sons, and some upon their sires, and some upon brothers and kinsmen. And some called upon their maternal uncles, and some upon their sisters' sons. And some called upon others, on the field of battle.[36] And a very large number of combatants, O Bhārata, lost their weapons, or had their thighs broken. And others with arms torn off, or sides pierced or cut open, were seen to wail aloud, from desire of life.[37] And some, endued with little strength, tortured by thirst, O king, and lying on the field of battle on the bare ground, asked for water.[38] And some, weltering in pools of blood and excessively weakened, O Bhārata, greatly censured themselves and thy sons assembled together (for battle).[39] And others there were, brave Kshatriyas, who having injured one another, did not abandon their weapons or set up any wails, O sire![40] On the other hand, lying in those places where they lay, they roared with joyful hearts, and biting from wrath with their teeth their own lips,[41] looked at one another with faces rendered fierce in consequence of the contraction of their eyebrows. And others endued with great strength and tenacity in great pain, afflicted by arrows and smarting under their wounds,[42] remained perfectly silent. And other heroic car-warriors, deprived, in the encounter, of their own cars and thrown down and wounded by huge elephants, asked to be taken up on the cars of others. And many, O king, looked beautiful (in their wounds) like blossoming *Kinçukas*.[43-44] And in all the divisions were heard terrific cries, countless in number. And in that awful combat destructive of heroes,[45] the sire slew the son, the son slew the sire, the sister's son slew the maternal uncle, the maternal uncle slew the sister's son,[46] friend slew friend, and relatives slew kinsmen. Even thus the slaughter took place in that encounter of the Kurus with the Pāndavas.[47] And in that frightful and terrible battle in which no consideration was shown (by anybody for any body), the divisions of the Pāndavas, approaching Bhishma, began to waver.[48] And, O bull of Bharata's race, the mighty-armed

Bhishma, O king, with his standard which was made of silver and graced with (the device of) the palmyra with five stars, set up on his great car, shone like the lunar orb under the peak of Meru.' "[49]

SECTION XLVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the great part of the forenoon of that awful day had worn out, in that terrific engagement, O king, that was (so) destructive of foremost of men,*[1] Durmukha, and Kritavarman, and Kripa, and Calya, and Vivinçati, urged by thy son, approached Bhishma and began to protect him.[2] And protected by those five mighty car-warriors, O bull of Bharata's race, that great car-warrior penetrated the Pāndadava host.[3] And the palmyra standard of Bhishma was seen to glide continually, O Bhārata, through the Chedis, the Kāçis, the Karushas, and the Pānchālas.[4] And that hero, with broad-headed shafts of great swiftness which were again perfectly straight, cut off the heads (of foes) and their cars with yokes and standards.[5] And, O bull of Bharata's race, Bhishma seemed to dance on his car as it coursed along its track. And some elephants, struck (by him) in their vital parts, shrieked in agony.[6] Then Abhimanyu in great wrath, stationed on his car unto which were yoked excellent steeds of a tawny hue, rushed towards Bhishma's car.[7] And with his standard adorned with pure gold and resembling a *Karnikāra* tree, he approached Bhishma and those (five) foremost of car-warriors.[8] And striking with a keen-edged shaft the standard of the palmyra-bannered (warrior), that hero engaged in battle with Bhishma and those other car-warriors that protected him.†[9] Piercing Kritavarman with one arrow, and Calya with five, he weakened his great-grandsire with nine arrows.[10] And with one arrow well shot from his bow drawn to its fullest

---

* The Bengal reading *narvarakshaye* seems to be better than *mahāvirakshaye* of the Bombay text.—T.

† *Tálaketu* is lit. palmyra-bannered. Without using such compounds, the brevity of the sentences cannot be maintained.—T.

stretch, he cut off (his adversary's) standard adorned with pure gold.[11] And with one broad-headed shaft capable of penetrating every cover, which was perfectly straight, he cut off from his body the head of Durmukha's charioteer.[12] And with another keen-edged arrow he cut in twain the gold-decked bow of Kripa. And them also, with many sharp pointed shafts,[13] that mighty car-warrior smote in great wrath, seeming to dance (the while). And beholding his lightness of hand, the very gods were gratified.[14] And in consequence of Abhimanyu's surenes of aim, all the car-warriors headed by Bhishma regarded him to be possessed of the capacity of Dhananjaya himself.*[15] And his bow, emitting a twang like that of *Gāndiva*, while streched and re-stretched, seemed to revolve like a circle of fire.†[16] Bhishma then, that slayer of hostile heroes, rushing on him impetuously, speedily pierced the son of Arjuna in that combat with nine arrows.[17] And he also, with three broad-headed shafts, cut off the standard of that warrior of great energy. Of rigid vows, Bhishma also struck his (adversary's) charioteer.[18] And Kritavarman, and Kripa, and Calya also, O sire, piercing Arjuna's son, all failed to make him waver, for he stood firm like the Maināka mountain.[19] And the heroic son of Arjuna, though surrounded by those mighty car-warriors of the Dhārtarāshtra army, still showered on those five car-warriors arrowy down-pours.[20] And baffling their mighty weapons by his arrowy showers, and pouring on Bhishma his shafts, the powerful son of Arjuna set up a loud shout.[21] And struggling in the battle thus, and afflicting Bhishma with (his) arrows, the strength we saw of his arms then was very great.[22] But though endued with such prowess, Bhishma also shot his arrows at him. But he cut off in that combat the arrows shot from Bhishma's bow.[23] And then that heroic warrior of arrows that were never lost, cut off with nine arrows, in that combat, the standard of Bhishma. And at

---

* *Kārshni* is *Krishna's* or Arjuna's son Abhimanyu. Arjuna was sometimes called Krishna.—T.

† *Lāghavamargasya* is a misreading for *Làghavamargastham* ; then again *chāpi* is incorrect, the correct reading being *chāpam* as in the Bombay text.—T.

that feat the people there set up a loud shout.[24] Decked with jewels and made of silver, that tall standard bearing the device of the palmyra, cut off, O Bhārata, by the shafts of Subhadrā's son, fell down on the earth.[25] And beholding, O bull of Bharata's race, that standard falling in consequence of the shafts of Subhadrā's son, the proud Bhima set up a loud shout for cheering the son of Subhadrā.[26] Then in fierce combat, the mighty Bhishma caused many celestial weapons of great efficacy to appear.[27] And the great grandsire of immeasurable soul then covered Subhadrā's son with thousands of arrows.[28] And at this, ten great bowmen and mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas, quickly rushed on their cars for protecting the son of Subhadrā.[29] And those were Virāta with his son, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race, and Bhima, the five Kekaya brothers, and Sātyaki also, O king.[30] And as they were falling upon him with great impetuosity, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, in that conflict, pierced the prince of Pānchāla with three arrows, and Sātyaki with ten.[31] And with one winged arrow, whetted and sharp-edged as a razor, and shot from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch, he cut off the standard of Bhimasena.[32] And, O best of men, the standard of Bhimasena, made of gold and bearing the device of a lion, cut off by Bhishma, fell from the car.[33] And Bhima then, piercing Cāntanu's son Bhishma in that combat with three arrows, pierced Kripa with one, and Kritavarman with eight.[34] And Uttara also, the son of Virāta, on a tusker with upraised trunk, rushed against the ruler of the Madras.[35] Cālya, however, succeeded in checking the unparalleled impetuosity of that prince of elephants rushing quickly towards his car.[36] That prince of elephants, in great wrath, placing his leg upon the yoke of (Calya's) car, killed his four large steeds of excellent speed.[37] The ruler of the Madras then, staying on that car whose steeds had been slain, hurled a dart, all made of iron, and resembling a snake, for slaying Uttara outright.[38] The latter's coat of mail being cut through by that dart, he became totally deprived of his senses and fell down from his elephant's neck, with the hook and the lance loosened from his grasp.[39] And Calya then, taking up

his sword and jumping down from his excellent car, and putting forth his prowess, cut off the large trunk of that prince of elephants.[40] His coat of mail pierced all over with a shower of arrows, and his trunk cut off, that elephant uttered a loud shriek and fell down and expired.[41] Achieving such a feat, O king, the ruler of the Madras speedily mounted on the splendid car of Kritavarman.[42] And beholding his brother Uttara slain and seeing Calya staying with Kritavarman,[43] Virāta's son Cweta blazed up in wrath, like fire (blazing up) with clarified butter. And that mighty warrior, stretching his large bow that resembled the bow of Cakra himself,[44] rushed with the desire of slaying Calya the ruler of the Madras. Surrounded on all sides with a mighty division of cars,[45] he advanced towards Calya's car, pouring an arrowy shower. And beholding him rush to the fight with prowess equal to that of an infuriate elephant,[46] seven car-warriors of thy side surrounded him on all sides, desirous of protecting the ruler of Madras who seemed to be already within the jaws of Death.[47] And those seven warriors were Vrihadvala the ruler of the Koçalas, and Jayatsena of Magadha, and Rukmaratha, O king, who was the valorous son of Calya,[48] and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, and Sudakshina the king of the Kāmvojas, and Jayadratha the ruler of the Sindhus and the kinsman of Vrihadkshatra.[49] And the stretched bows of those high-souled warriors, decorated with diverse colors, looked like the lightning's flashes in the clouds.[50] And they all poured on Cweta's head ceaseless showers of arrows like the clouds tossed by the wind dropping rain on the mountain breast on the expiry of summer.[51] That mighty bowman and commander of the forces, enraged at this, with seven broad-headed arrows of great impetuosity, struck their bows, and then continued to grind them.[52] And those bows we saw were cut off, O Bhārata, and thereupon they all took up, within half the time taken up in a wink of the eye, other bows.[53] And they then shot at Cweta seven arrows. And once again that mighty-armed warrior of immeasurable soul, with seven fleet shafts, cut off those (other) bows of these bowmen.*[54] Those

* The 54th is taken as consisting of 3 lines.—T.

warriors then, whose large bows had been cut off, those mighty car-warriors swelling (with rage), grasping (seven) darts, set up a loud shout.[55] And, O chief of the Bharatas, they hurled those seven darts at Cweta's car. And those blazing darts which coursed (through the air) like large meteors, with beside the sound of thunder,[56] were all cut off, before they could reach him, by that warrior conversant with mighty weapons, by means of seven broad-headed arrows. Then taking up an arrow capable of penetrating into every part of the body,[57] he shot it, O chief of the Bharatas, at Rukmaratha. And that mighty arrow, surpassing (the force of) the thunder-bolt, penetrated into the latter's body.[58] Then, O king, forcibly struck by that arrow, Rukmaratha sat down on the terrace of his car and fell into a deadly swoon.[59] His charioteer then, without betraying any fear, bore him away, senseless and in a swoon, in the very sight of all.[60] Then taking up six other (arrows) adorned with gold, the mighty-armed Cweta cut off the standard-tops of his six adversaries.*[61] And that chastiser of foes then, piercing their steeds and charioteers also, and covering those six warriors themselves with ceaseless shafts, proceeded towards the car of Calya.[62] And beholding that generalissimo of the (Pāndava) forces proceeding quickly towards Calya's car, a loud uproar of *oh* and *alas* arose in thy army, O Bhārata![63] Then thy mighty son, with Bhishma at the head, and supported by heroic warriors and many troops, proceeded towards Cweta's car.†[64] And he (thus) rescued the ruler of the Madras who had already entered the jaws of Death. And then commenced a battle, terrific and making the hair to stand on end,[65] between thy troops and those of the enemy, in which cars and elephants all got mxied up in confusion. And upon Subhadrā's son, and Bhimasena, and that mighty car-warrior Sātyaki,[66] and upon the ruler of the Kekayas, and Virāta, and Dhrishta-

* Both 60 and 61 are read differently in the Bengal texts. I adopt the Bombay readings.—T.

† The Bengal reading is *Curais Vritascha Cainyena.* The Bombay reading (which I do not adopt) is *Vritastu Sarva Cainyena.*—T.

dyumna of Prishata's race, and upon the Chedi troops, the old Kuru grandsire poured showers of arrows.*' "[67]

SECTION XLVIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When that great bowman Cweta proceeded towards Calya's car, what did the Kuravas and the Pāndavas do, O Sanjaya? And what also did Bhishma the son of Cāntanu do? Tell me who ask thee, all this!†[1]'

"Sanjaya said,—'O king, hundreds and thousands of bulls among Kshatriyas, all brave and mighty car-warriors, placing the generalissimo Cweta in the van,[2] and displaying their strength, O Bhārata, unto thy royal son, and with Cikhandin also at their head, desired to rescue (Cweta).[3] And those mighty car-warriors rushed towards Bhishma's car decked with gold, desirous of slaying that foremost of warriors. And the battle that ensued then was terrible.[4] I shall describe to thee that wonderful and terrific battle as it occurred between thy troops and those of the enemy.‡[5] The son of Cāntanu made the terraces of many cars empty, (for) that best of car-warriors, showering (his) arrows, cut off many heads.§[6] Endued with energy equal to that of the Sun himself, he shrouded the very Sun with his arrows. And he removed his enemies from

---

* Nine *slokas* and a half, from the second half of the 43rd verse to the 52nd verse (as above), are omitted in the Bengal texts. These, however, occur subsequently in section 49 following. The fact is, the whole of the passage in this section and the 116 verses in the following section, and the first 24 verses in section 49, are regarded as an interpolation. In those sections of the *Udyoga Parvan* where the *Rathas* and the *Atirathas*, &c., are counted by Bhishma, no mention is made of any warrior of the name of Cweta. The Burdwan Pundits omit these passages altogether. I myself believe them to be an interpolation. Occurring, however, as it does in both the Bengal and the Bombay texts, I cannot omit in the English version.—T.

† The first verse is taken as cosisting of three lines.—T.

‡ For *tatoham* of the Bengal texts, the Bombay reading is *tattcham*.

§ The second line of the 6th verse, which, according to the numbering of the Bombay text, should be the first half of the 7th, is differently read in the Bombay text.—T.

around him in that combat like the rising Sun dispelling the darkness around.[7] And in that battle, O king, arrows were shot by him in hundreds and thousands that were powerful and possessed of great impetuosity and that took in that conflict the lives of numberless Kshatriyas.[8] And in that combat he felled heads, by hundreds, of heroic warriors, O king, and elephants cased in thorny mail, like summits of mountains (felled) by heaven's bolt.*[9] And cars, O king, were seen to mingle with cars. A car might be seen upon another car, and a steed upon another steed.[10] And impetuous chargers, O king, bore hither and thither heroic riders in the prime of youth, slain and hanging (from their saddles) with their bows (still in their grasp).†[11] With swords and quivers attached (to their persons) and coats of mail loosened (from their bodies), hundreds of warriors, deprived of life, lay on the ground, sleeping on beds (worthy) of heroes.[12] Rushing against one another, falling down and rising up again, and rushing again having risen up, the combatants fought hand to hand.[13] Afflicted by one another, many rolled on the field of battle. Infuriate elephants rushed hither and thither, and car-warriors by hundreds were slain.‡[14] And car-warriors, along with their cars, were crushed on all sides. And some warrior fell upon his car, slain by another with arrows.[15] And a mighty car-warrior might be seen to fall down from high, his charioteer (also) having been slain. A thick dust arose, and thereupon unto the warrior struggling in battle,[16] the twang of the (hostile) bow indicated the struggling adversary before. From the pressure also on their bodies, combatants guessed their foes.[17] And the warriors, O king, fought on with arrows, guided by the sounds of bowstrings and (hostile) divisions. The very hiss of the arrows shot by the combatants at one another could not be heard.[18] And so loud

---

* The second line of the 9th, which is the first of the 10th in the Bombay edition, is certainly incorrect as printed in the Bengal texts. I, therefore, adopt the Bombay reading.—T.

† For *Swavalam nihitxm* the Bombay text reads *Yuvānam nihatam* which is better.—T.

‡ A *sloka* and a half occur in the Bombay text between the first half of the 14th and its second half as above.—T.

was the sound of drums, that it seemed to pierce the ears. And in that tumultuous uproar making the hair stand on end, the name the combatant uttered in the battle, while displaying his prowess, could not be heard. The sire could not recognise the son of his loins.[19-20] One of the the wheels being broken, or the yoke being torn off, or one of the steeds being slain, the brave car-warrior was overthrown from his car, along with his charioteer, by means of straight arrows.[21] And thus many heroic warriors, deprived of their cars, were seen to fly away.*[22] He who was slain had his head cut off; he who was not slain, was struck at the very vitals; but unstruck there was none, when Bhishma attacked the foe.[23] And in that terrific battle, Cweta caused a great slaughter of the Kurus. And he slew many noble princes by hundreds upon hundreds.†[24] And he cut off, by means of his arrows, the heads of car-warriors by hundreds upon hundreds, and (their) arms decked with *Angadas*, and (their) bows all around.[25] And car-warriors and car-wheels, and others that were on cars, and the cars themselves, and standards both small and costly, O king,[26] and large bodies of horse, and crowds of cars, and crowds of men, O Bhārata, and elephants also by hundreds, were destroyed, O bull of Bharata's race, by Cweta.[27] Ourselves, from fear of Cweta, abandoning (Bhishma) that best of car-warriors, left the battle retreating to the rear, and, therefore, do we (now) behold your lordship.[28] And all the Kurus, O son of Kuru's race, retreating beyond the range of arrows, and abandoning at Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, in that battle, stood (as spectators though) armed for the combat.[29] Cheerful in the hour of (universal) cheerlessness, that tiger among men, Bhishma, alone of our army, in that terrible battle stood immovable like the mountain Meru.[30] Taking the lives (of the foe) like the Sun at the close of winter, he stood resplendant with the golden rays (of his car) like the Sun himself with his rays.[31] And that great bowman shot clouds of arrows and struck down his enemies in that battle like Vishnu armed with the discus

---

* I adopt the Bombay reading of the 22*nd* verse.—T.

† *Swayam* in some of the Bengal texts is a misprint for *Kshayam*. T.

striking down the *Asuras*.*[32] And while being slaughtered by Bhishma in that dreadful combat, those warriors breaking away from their ranks, they all fled from him, as if from a fire fed by fuel.†[33] Encountering the single warrior (Cweta), that slayer of foes, Bhishma, was the only one (amongst us) who was cheerful and whole. Devoted to the welfare of Duryodhana, he began to consume the Pāndava (warriors.)[34] Reckless of his very life which is difficult of being cast off, and abandoning all fear, he slaughtered, O king, the Pāndava army in that fierce conflict.‡[35] And beholding the generalissimo (Cweta) smiting the (Dhārarāshtra) divisions, thy father Bhishma, called also Devavrata, impetuously rushed against him.[36] Thereupon, Cweta covered Bhishma with an extensive net-work of arrows. And Bhishma also covered Cweta with a flight of arrows.[37] And roaring lik a couple of bulls, they rushed, like two infuriate elephants of gigantic size or two raging tigers, against each other.[38] Baffling each other's weapons by means of their weapons, those bulls among men, *viz*, Bhishma and Cweta, fought with each other, desirous of taking each other's life.[39] In one single day Bhishma, infuriate with anger, could consume the Pāndava army with his arrows if Cweta did not protect it,[40] Beholding the grandsire then turned off by Cweta, the Pāndavas were filled with joy, while thy son became cheerless.[41] Duryodhana then, with wrath excited and surrounded by many kings, rushed with his troops against the Pāndava host in battle.[42] Then Cweta, abandoning the son of Gangā, slaughtered thy son's host with great impetuosity like the wind (uprooting) trees with violence.[43] And the son of Virāta, senseless with wrath, having routed (thy) army, advanced (once more), O king, to the place were Bhishma was stationed.[44] And those two high-souled and mighty warriors then, both blazing with their

---

* *Chakrapāni* is Vishnu armed with the discus.—T.

† For *Yuthān* which gives no meaning, I read *Yodhās*. The Bengal reading *muktvāgnimiva dārunā* is better than the Bombay reading *muktam bhumishu dārunām*.—T.

‡ The Bombay reading *Jivitam dustyajam* is better than the Bengal reading *Jivam taduttham* if it has any meaning.—T.

arrows, battled with each other like Vritra and Vāsava (of old),[45] desirous, O king, of slaying each other. Drawing (his) bow to the fullest stretch, Cweta pierced Bhishma with seven arrows.[46] The valorous (Bhishma) then, putting forth his prowess, quickly checked (his foe's) valor, like an infuriate elephant checking an infuriate compeer.[47] And Cweta then, that delighter of Kshatriyas, struck Bhishma, and Bhishma also, the son of Cāntanu, pierced him in return with ten arrows.[48] And though pierced by him (thus), that mighty warrior stood still like a mountain. And Cweta again pierced Cāntanu's son with five and twenty straight arrows, at which all wondered. Then smiling and licking with his tongue the corners of his mouth, Cweta in that combat [49-50] cut off Bhishma's bow into ten fragments with ten arrows. Then aiming a plumed arrow made wholly of iron,[51] (Cweta) crushed the palmyra on the top of the standard of the high-souled (Bhishma). And beholding the standard of Bhishma cut down, thy sons,[52] thought that Bhishma was slain, having succumbed to Cweta. And the Pāndavas also, filled with delight, blew their conchs all around.[53] And beholding the palmyra-standard of the high-souled Bhishma laid low, Duryodhana, from wrath, urged his own army (to the battle).[54] And they all began very carefuly to protect Bhishma who was in great distress. Unto them, also unto those that stood (idle) spectators, the king said,—Either Cweta will die (today),[55] or Bhishma the son of Cāntanu. I say this truly.—Hearing the words of the king, the mighty car-warriors speedily,[56] with four kinds of forces, advanced for protecting the son of Gangā. And Vālhika, and Kritavarman, and Kripa, and Calya also, O Bhārata,[57] and the son of Jarāsandha, and Vikarna, and Chitrasena, and Vivinçati, with great speed. when speed was so necessary, surrounding him on all sides,[58] poured on Cweta ceaseless showers of arrows. That mighty warrior then, of immeasurable soul, quickly checked those angry warriors by means of sharp arrows, displaying his own lightness of hand. And checking them all like a lion a multitude of elephants,[59-60] Cweta then cut off Bhishma's bow with a thick shower of arrows. Then Bhishma the son of

Cāntanu, taking up another bow in that battle,[61] pierced Cweta, O king, with arrows furnished with feathers of *Kanka* birds. Tnen the commander (of the Pāndava army), with wrath excited, pierced Bhishma in that encounter, O king, with a great many shafts in the very sight of all. Beholding Bhishma, that foremost of heroes in all the world, checked in battle by Cweta, the king (Duryodhana) became greatly troubled, and great also became the distress of thy whole army.[62-64] And beholding the heroic Bhishma checked and mangled by Cweta with his arrows, all thought that Bhishma, having succumbed to Cweta, was slain by him.[65] Then thy sire Devavrata, yielding to anger, and beholding his (own) standard overthrown and the (Dhārtarāshtra) army checked,[66] shot a great many arrows, O king, at Cweta. Cweta, however, that foremost of car-warriors, baffling all those (arrows) of Bhishma,[67] once more cut off, with a broad-headed shaft, thy sire's bow. Throwing aside that bow, O king, Gangā's son, senseless with anger,[68] taking up another bow large and stronger, and aiming seven large broad-headed arrows whetted on stone,[69] slew with four the four steeds of the generalissimo Cweta, and cut off with two ,his standard and with the seventh shaft that warrior of great prowess, exceedingly provoked, cut off his charioteer's head. Thereupon, that mighty car-warrior, jumping down from his car whose steeds and charioteer had been slain,*[70-71] and yielding to the influence of wrath, became exceedingly troubled. The grandsire, beholding Cweta, that foremost of car-warriors, deprived of car,[72] began to smite him on all sides with showers of arrows. And smitten in that combat with arrows shot form Bhishma's bow,[73] Cweta, leaving his bow on his (abandoned) car, took up a dart decked with gold. And taking up that terrible and fierce dart †[74] which resembled the fatal rod of Death and was capable of slaying Death's self, Cweta then,

---

* In the first line of 71*st* verse, the word is not *Laghu* but *alaghu*, the initial *a* being only silent according to the rule of *Sandhi*. Though omitted in the Bengal texts, it occurs in the Bombay edition.—T.

† *Ghoràm*, *ugràm*, *mahābhyām*, are pleonastic.—T.

in great wrath, addressed Bhishma the son of Cāntanu in that combat,[75] saying,—*Wait a little, and behold me, O best men!*—And having said this unto Bhishma in battle, that great bowman of exceeding prowess[76] and immeasurable soul, hurled that dart resembling a snake, displaying his valor for the sake of the Pāndavas and desiring to achieve thy evil.[77] Then loud cries of *oh* and *alas* arose among thy sons, O king, upon beholding that terrible dart resembling the rod of Death in splendour.[78] And hurled from Cweta's arms, (that dart), resembling a snake that had just cast off its slough, fell with great force, O king, like a large meteor from the firmament.[79] Thy sire Devavrata then, O king, without the slightest fear, with eight sharp and winged arrows, cut off into nine fragments, that dart decked with pure gold and which seemed to be covered with flames of fire,[80-81] as it coursed ablaze through the air. All thy troops then, O bull of Bharata's race, set up loud shouts of joy. The son of Virāṭa, however, beholding his dart cut off into fragments, became senseless with anger,[82] and like one whose heart was overcome by (the arrival of) his hour, could not settle what to do. Deprived of his senses by anger, O king, the son of Virāta then, smiling,[83] joyfully took up a mace for Bhishma's slaughter. With eyes red in wrath, and resembling a second Yama armed with mace,[84] he rushed against Bhishma like a swollen torrent against the rocks. Regarding his impetuosity as incapable of check, Bhishma endued with great prowess[85] and conversant with the might (of others), suddenly alighted on the ground for warding off that blow. Cweta then, O king, whirling in wrath that heavy mace,[86] hurled it on Bhishma's car like the god Maheçwara. And in consequenco of that mace intended for Bhishma's destruction, that car was reduced to ashes,*[87] with standard, and charioteer, and steeds and shaft. Beholding Bhishma, that foremost of car-warrior's

---

* In the first line of 87 for *Maheçwara* (meaning *Civa)* the Bombay text reads *Dhaneçwara* (meaning Kuvera the lord of treasures). For also *Bhimanipātinyā* in the second line, the Bombay text reads *Bhishma nipātinyā*.—T.

become a combatant on foot,[88] many car-warriors, *viz*, Calya and others, speedily rushed (to his rescue). Mounting then upon another car, and cheerlessly stretching his bow,[89] Bhishma slowly advanced towards Cweta, seeing that foremost of car-warriors. Meanwhile, Bhishma heard a loud voice[90] uttered in the skies, that was celestial and fraught with his own good. (And the voice said)—*O Bhishma, O Bhishma, O thou of mighty arms, strive without losing a moment.*[91] *Even this is the hour fixed by the Creator of the universe for success over this one.*—Hearing these words uttered by the celestial messenger,[92] Bhishma, filled with joy, set his heart upon Cweta's destruction. And beholding that foremost of car-warriors, Cweta, become a combatant on foot,[93] many mighty car-warriors (of the Pāndava side) rushed unitedly (to his rescue). (They were) Sātyaki, and Bhimasena, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race;[94] and the (five) Kekaya brothers, and Dhrishtaketu, and Abhimanyu of great energy. And beholding them rushing (to the rescue), with Drona and Calya and Kripa[95] that hero of immeasurable soul (Bhishma) checked them all like the mountain resisting the force of the wind. And when all the high-souled warriors of the Pāndava side were (thus) held in check,[96] Cweta, taking up a sword, cut off Bhishma's bow. Casting aside that bow, the grandsire, quickly,[97] made up his mind for Cweta's destruction, having heard the words of the celestial messenger. Though baffled (by Cweta), thy sire Devavrata then,[98] that mighty car-warrior, quickly taking up another bow that resembled the bow of Cakra himself in splendour, stringed it in a moment.[99] Then thy sire, O chief of the Bharatas, beholding that mighty car-warrior Cweta, though the latter was then surrounded by those tigers among men with Bhimasena at their head,[100]—(thy sire) the son of Gangā—advanced steadily for the sake of the generalissimo Cweta alone. Beholding Bhishma advance, Bhimasena of great prowess[101] pierced him with sixty shafts. But that mighty car-warrior, thy sire Devavrata, checking both Bhimasena and Abhimanyu and other car-warriors with terrible shafts, struck him with three straight arrows.[102-103] And the grandsire of the Bharatas also

struck Sātyaki, in that combat, with a hundred arrows, and Dhrishtadyumna with twenty, and the Kekaya brothers with five.[104] And checking all those great bowmen with terrible arrows, thy sire Devavrata advanced towards Cweta alone.[105] Then taking out an arrow resembling Death's self and capable of bearing a great strain and incapable of being resisted, the powerful Bhishma placed it on his bowstring.[106] And that shaft, furnished with wings and duly endued with the force of the *Brahma* weapon, was seen by the gods and *Gandharvas* and *Piçāchas* and *Uragas*, and *Rākshasas*.[107] And that shaft, of splendour like that of a blazing fire, piercing through his coat of mail (passed through his body and) struck into the earth, with a flash like that of heaven's bolt.[108] Like the Sun when speedily retiring to his western chambers taking along with him the rays of light, even thus that shaft passed out of Cweta's body, bearing-away with itself his life.[109] Thus slain in battle by Bhishma, we beheld that tiger among men fall down like the loosened crest of a mountain.[110] And all the mighty car-warriors of the Kshatriya race belonging to the Pāndava side indulged in lamentations. Thy sons, however, and all the Kurus, were filled with delight.[111] Then, O king, beholding Cweta overthrown, Dusçāsana danced in joy over the field in accompaniment with the loud music of conchs and drums.[112] And when that great bowman was slain by Bhishma that ornament of battle, the mighty bowmen (of the Pāndava side) with Cikhandin at their head, trembled in fear.[113] Then when their commander was slain, Dhananjaya, O king, and he of Vrishni's race, slowly withdrew the troops (for their nightly rest).[114] And then, O Bhārata, the withdrawal took place of both theirs and thine, while thine and theirs were frequently setting up loud roars.[115] And the mighty car-warriors of the Pārthas entered (their quarters) cheerlessly, thinking, O chastiser of foes, of that awful slaughter in single combat (of their commander).' "[116]

SECTION XLIX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When the generalissimo Cweta, O son, was slain in battle by the enemy, what did those mighty bowmen, the Pānchālas with the Pāndavas, do ?[1] Hearing their commander Cweta slain, what happened between those that strove for his sake and their foes that retreated before them ?[2] O Sanjaya, hearing of our victory, (thy) words please my heart! Nor doth my heart feel any shame in remembering our transgression.*[3] The old chief of Kuru's race is ever cheerful and devoted (to us). (As regards Duryodhana), having provoked hostilities with that intelligent son of his uncle,[4] he sought at one time the protection of the sons of Pāndu in consequence of his anxiety and fear due to Yudhishthira. At that time, abandoning everything he lived in misery.[5] In consequence of the prowess of the sons of Pāndu, and everywhere receiving checks—having placed himself amid entanglements—from his enemies, Duryodhana had (for some time) recourse to honorable behaviour.[6] Formerly that wicked-minded king had placed himself under their protection. Why, therefore, O Sanjaya, hath Cweta who was devoted to Yudhishthira, been slain ?[7] Indeed, this narrow-minded prince, with all his prospects, hath been hurled to the nether regions by a number of wretches. Bhishma liked not the war, nor ever did the preceptor.†[8] Nor Kripa, nor

---

* The transgression to which Dhritarāshtra alludes is the slaughter, by Bhishma from his car, of Cweta who was then a combatant on foot. Or, it may be the very slaughter of Cweta, who was dear to the Pāndavas and which act would, the king thought, prokove them more.—T.

† Verses 4 to 7 are exceedingly difficult. I am not sure that I have understood them correctly. They are of the nature of *Vyasakutas*, *i. e.* deliberate obscurities for puzzling Ganeça, who acted as the scribe, for enabling Vyasa to gain time for composition. In verse 4, *Pitus* means uncle's and not father's ; so also *durga deçam* in verse 6 means entanglements, like Duryodhana's hostility with the *Gandharvas* on the occasion of the tale of cattle. In verse of the Bengal reading is *Yudhishthiram bhaktyā*. The Bombay reading, which I adopt, is *Yudhishthire bhaktas*. In 8, the *purushādhamas* are Cakuni and Karna, &c.—T.

Gāndhāri liked it, O Sanjaya, nor do I like it. Nor Vāsudeva of Vrishni's race, nor that just king the son of Pāndu ;[9] nor Bhima, nor Arjuna, nor those bulls among men the twins (liked it). Always forbidden by me, by Gāndhāri, by Vidura,[10] by Rāma the son of Jamadagni, and by the high-souled Vyasa also, the wicked-minded and sinful Duryodhana, with Dusçāsana, O Sanjaya, always following the counsels of Karna and Suvala's son, behaved maliciously towards the Pāndavas.[11-12] I think, O Sanjaya, that he has fallen into great distress! After the slaughter of Cweta and the victory of Bhishma,[13] what did Pārtha, excited with rage, do in battle, accompanied by Krishna ? Indeed, it is from Arjuna that my fears arise, and those fears, O son, cannot be dispelled.[14] He, Dhananjaya, the son of Kunti, is brave and endued with great activity. I think, with his arrows he will cut into fragments the bodies of his enemies.[15] The son of Indra, and in battle equal unto Upendra the younger brother of Indra, a warrior whose wrath and purposes are never futile, alas, beholding him what became the state of your minds ?[16] Brave, acquainted with the *Vedas,* resembling the fire and the Sun in splendour, and possessing a knowledge of the *Aindra* weapon, that warrior of immeasurable soul is ever victorious when he falleth upon the foe ![17] His weapons always falling upon the foe with the force of the thunderbolt, and his arms wonderfully quick in drawing the bowstring, the son of Kunti is a mighty car-warrior.[18] The formidable son of Drupada also, O Sanjaya, is endued with great wisdom. What, indeed, did Dhrishtadyumna do when Cweta was slain in battle ?[19] I think that in consequence of the wrongs they sustained of old, and of the slaughter of their commander, the hearts of the high-souled Pāndavas blazed up.[20] Thinking of their wrath I am never at my ease, by day or by night, on account of Duryodhana. How did the great battle take place ? Tell me all about it, O Sanjaya !"[21]

"Sanjaya said,—'Hear, O king, quietly about thy great transgressions. It behoveth thee not to impute the fault to Duryodhana ![22] As is the construction of an embankment when the waters have disappeared, so is thy understanding,

or, it is like the digging of a well when the house is on fire.*[23] When, after the forenoon had passed away, the commander Cweta was, O Bhārata, slain by Bhishma in that fierce conflict,[24] Virāta's son Cankha, that grinder of hostile ranks, ever delighting in battle, beholding Calya stationed with Kritavarman (on his car),[25] suddenly blazed up with wrath, like fire with clarified butter. That mighty warrior, stretching his large bow that resembled the bow of Indra himself,[26] rushed with the desire of slaying the ruler of the Madras in battle, himself supported on all sides by a large divison of cars.[27] And Cankha, causing an arrowy down-pour, rushed towards the car on which Calya was. And beholding him advancing like an infuriate elephant,[28] seven mighty car-warriors of thy side surrounded him,—desirous of rescuing the ruler of the Madras already within the jaws of Death.[29] Then the mighty-armed Bhishma, roaring like the very clouds, and taking up a bow full six cubits long, rushed towards Cankha in battle.[30] And beholding that mighty car-warrior and great bowman thus rushing, the Pāndava host began to tremble like a boat tossed by the violence of the tempest.[31] Then Arjuna, quickly advancing, placed himself in front of Cankha, thinking that Cankha should then be protected from Bhishma. And then the combat commenced between Bhishma and Arjuna.[32] And loud cries of *oh* and *alas* arose among the warriors engaged in battle. And one force seemed to merge into another force. And thus all were filled with wonder.†[33] Then Calya, mace in hand, alighting from his large car, slew, O bull of Bharata's race, the four steeds of Cankha.[34] Jumping down from his car thus deprived of steeds, and taking a sword, Cankha ran towards Vibhatsu's car and (mounting on it) was once more at his ease.[35] And then there fell from Bhishma's car innumerable arrows by which were covered the entire welkin and the earth.[36] And that

---

* As both operations are useles, so are these thy regrets.—T.

† The sense is that Arjuna representing one force, and Bhishma another, the two forces seemed to mingle into one another, like one bolt of heaven against another, as one may say.—T.

foremost of smiters, Bhishma, slaughtered with his arrows the Pānchāla, the Matsya, the Kekaya, and the Prabhadraka hosts.[37] And soon abandoning in that battle Pāndu's son (Arjuna) capable of drawing the bow with (even) his left hand, Bhishma rushed towards Drupada the king of the Pānchālas surrounded by his host.[38] And he soon covered his dear relative with innumerable arrows. Like a forest consumed by fire at the end of winter,[39] the troops of Drupada were seen to be consumed. And Bhishma stood in that battle like a blazing fire without smoke,[40] or, like the Sun himself at midday scorching everything around with his heat. The combatants of the Pāndavas were not able to even look at Bhishma.[41] And afflicted with fear, the Pāndava host cast its eyes around, and not beholding any protector, looked like a herd of kine afflicted by cold.[42] Slaughtered or retreating in despondence, being crushed the while, loud cries, O Bhārata, of *oh* and *alas* arose among the troops of the Pāndavas.[43] Then Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, with bow always drawn to a circle, shot therefrom blazing arrows that resembled snakes of virulent poison.[44] And creating continuous lines of arrows in all directions, that hero of rigid vows slew Pāndava car-warriors, naming each, O Bhārata, beforehand![45] And then when the troops of the Pāndavas were routed and crushed all over the field, the sun set and nothing could be seen.[46] And then beholding Bhishma, O bull of Bharata's race, proudly standing in battle, the Pārthas withdrew their forces (for nightly rest).' "[47]

SECTION L.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the troops, O bull of Bharata's race, were withdrawn on the first day, and when Duryodhana was filled with delight upon (beholding) Bhishma excited with wrath in battle,[1] king Yudhishthira the just, speedily repaired unto Janārddana, accompanied by all his brothers and all the kings (on his side).[2] Filled with great grief thinking of his defeat, and beholding Bhishma's prowess, O king, he addressed that scion of Vrishni's race, saying,[3]—

Behold, O Krishna, that mighty bowman Bhishma of terrible prowess! He consumes with his arrows my troops like fire (consuming) dry grass![4] How shall we even look at that high-souled (warrior) who is licking up my troops like fire fed with clarified butter?[5] Beholding that tiger among men, that mighty warrior armed with the bow, my troops fly away, afflicted with arrows![6] Enraged Yama himself, or He armed with the thunder, or even Varuna noose in hand, or Kuvera armed with mace, may be vanquished in battle![7] But the mighty car-warrior Bhishma of great energy is incapable of being vanquished! Such being the case, I am sinking in the fathomless ocean represented by Bhishma, without a boat (to rescue me)![*8] In consequence, O Keçava, of the weakness of my understanding, having obtained Bhishma (for a foe in battle), I shall, O Govinda, retire into the woods! To live there is preferable,[9] and not to devote these lords of earth to Death in the form of Bhishma! Conversant with mighty weapons, Bhishma, O Krishna, will annihilate my army![10] As insects rush into the blazing fire for their own destruction, the combatants of my army are even so.[11] In putting forth prowess for the sake of kingdom, O thou of Vrishni's race, I am being led to destruction! My heroic brothers also are pained and afflicted with arrows[12] for my sake, having been deprived of both sovereignty and happiness in consequence of their love for their eldest brother! We regard life very highly, for, under these circumstances, life is too precious (to be sacrificed).[13] During the remainder of my days I will practise the severest of ascetic austerities. I will not, O Keçava, cause these friends of mine to be slain![†14] The mighty Bhishma incessantly slays, with his celestial weapons, many thousands of my car-warriors who are foremost of smiters.[15] Tell me, O Mādhava, without delay, what should be done that might do me good. As regards Arjuna, I see that he is an indifferent spectator in this battle.[16] Endued with great might,

---

* *Aplavas* and *Aplave* are both correct.—T.

† In the first line of the 14th verse, *Aviçeshena* seems to be incorrect. The Bombay text reads *Avaçeshena* which I adopt.—T.

this Bhima alone, remembering Kshatriya duties, fighteth putting forth the prowess of his arms and to the utmost of his power.[17] With his hero-slaying mace, this high-souled (warrior), to the full measure of his powers, achieveth the most difficult feats upon foot-soldiers and steeds and cars and elephants.[18] This hero, however, is incapable, O sire, of destroying in fair fight the hostile host in even a century![19] This thy friend (Arjuna) alone (amongst us) is conversant with (mighty) weapons. He, however, beholding us consumed by Bhishma and the high-souled Drona, looketh indifferently on us![20] The celestial weapons of Bhishma and the high-souled Drona, incessantly applied, are consuming all the Kshatriyas![21] O Krishna, such is his prowess, that Bhishma, with wrath excited, aided by the kings (on his side), will, without doubt, annihilate us![22] O lord of *Yoga*, look for that great bowman, that mighty car-warrior, who will give Bhishma his quietus like rain-charged clouds quenching a forest conflagration.*[23] (Then) through thy grace, O Govinda, the sons of Pāndu, their foes being slain, will, after recovery of their kingdom, be happy with their kinsmen!—[24]

"'Having said this, the high-souled son of Prithā, with heart afflicted by grief and mind turned within, remained silent for a long while in a reflective mood.[25] Beholding the son of Pāndu stricken with grief and deprived of his senses by sorrow, Govinda then, gladdening all the Pāndavas, said,[26]—Do dot grieve, O chief of the Bharatas! It behoveth thee not to grieve, when thy brothers are all heroes and renowned bowmen in the world![27] I also am employed in doing thee good, as also that mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, and Virāta and Drupada, both reverend in years, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's line.[28] And so also, O best of kings, all these monarchs with their (respective) troops are expectant of thy favor and devoted to thee, O king![29] This mighty car-warrior, Dhrishtadymna of Prishata's race, placed in command of thy army, is always desirous of thy welfare and engaged in doing

* The first line of the 23rd verse is read with a slight variation in the Bombay text.—T.

that which is agreeable to thee,[30] as also this Cikhandin, O thou of mighty arms, who is certainly the slayer of Bhishma! Hearing these words, the king (Yudhishthira), unto that mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna,[31] said, in that very assembly and in the hearing of Vāsudeva, these words,—O Dhrishtadyumna, mark these words that I say unto thee, O thou of Prishata's line![32] The words uttered by me should not be transgressed. Approved by Vāsudeva, thou hast been the commander of our forces.*[33] As Kārtikeya, in days of old, was ever the commander of the celestial host, so also art thou, O bull among men, the commander of the Pāndava host![34] Putting forth thy prowess, O tiger among men, slay the Kauravas! I will follow thee, and Bhima, and Krishna also, O sire,[35] and the sons of Mādri united together, and the sons of Draupadi accoutred in mail, and all the other foremost of kings, O bull among men![36]—Then gladdening (the listeners), Dhrishtadyumna said,—Ordained of old by Cambhu himself, I am, O son of Prithā, the slayer of Drona![37] I shall now fight in battle against Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and Calya and Jayadratha and all the proud monarchs (on the Kuru side)![38]—When that foremost of princes, that slayer of foes, the son of Prishata, said this defiantly, the Pāndava warriors, endued with great energy and incapable of being defeated in battle, all set up a loud shout.[39] And then Prithā's son Yudhishthira said unto the commander of his army, the son of Prishata, (these words).—An array known by the name of *Kraunchāruna*, that is destructive of all foes,[40] and that was spoken of by Vrihaspati unto Indra in days of old when the gods and the *Asuras* fought,—that array destructive of hostile divisions, do thou form![41] Unseen before, let the kings behold it, along with the Kurus!—Thus addressed by that god among men, like Vhishnu addressed by the wielder of the thunderbolt,†[42] he (Dhrishtadyumna), when

* In the first line of the 33rd verse, *nābhikruddham* is evidently a misreading. The word, as in the Bombay text, is *nābhikramyam* which I adopt.—T.

† The correct reading is *Vishnu*, and not *Jishnu* as in many of the Bengal texts.—T.

morning dawned, placed Dhananjaya in the van of the whole army. And Dhananjaya's standard, created at Indra's command by the celestial artificer, while moving through the skies, seemed wonderfully beautiful. Decked with banners bearing hues resembling those of Indra's bow,[43-44] coursing through the air like a ranger of the skies, and looking like the fleeting edifices of vapour in the welkin, seemed, O sire, to glide dancingly along the track of the car (to which it was attached).[45]* And the bearer of *Gāndiva* with that (standard) graced with gems, and that standard itself with the bearer of *Gāndiva*, looked highly adorned, like the Self-create with the Sun (and the Sun with the Self-create).†[46] And king Drupada, surrounded by a large number of troops, became the head (of that array). And the two kings Kuntibhoja and Caivya became its two eyes.[47] And the ruler of the Daçārnas, and the Prayāgas, with the Dāçerakas, and the Anupakas, and the Kirātas, were placed in its neck, O bull of Bharata's race.[48] And Yudhishthira, O king, with the Patachcharas, the Hundas, the Pauravakas, and the Nishādas, became its back.[49] And Bhimasena, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, and the sons of Draupadi, and Abhimanyu, and that mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, became its two wings,[50] as also the Piçāchas, the Daradas, the Paundras, with the Kundavishas, and the Mandakas, the Ladakas, the Tanganas, and the further-Tanganas,[51] and the Vāhikas, the Tittiras, the Pāndyas, and the Uddras, O Bhārata, and the Caravas, the Tumbhumas, the Vatsas, and the Nākulas.[52] And Nakula and Sahadeva placed themselves on the left wing. And on the joints of the wings were placed ten thousand cars, and on the

---

* *Indrāyudha* is Indra's bow or the rain-bow. *Akāçaga* (literally, a ranger of the skies) is a bird. The vapoury edifices and forms, constantly melting away and reappearing in new shapes, are called *Gandharvanagaras* (lit. towns of the *Gandharvas* or celestial chorristers).—T.

† The Bengal reading is *Savayambhuriva bhānuna* which I have adopted. The Bombay reading is *Meruriva bhānuà*, which means "like the mountain Meru with the Sun." It is difficult to make a choice between the two.—T.

head a hundred thousand,[53] and on the back a hundred millions and twenty thousand, and on the neck a hundred and seventy thousand.[54] And on the joints of the wings, the wings, and the extremities of the wings, proceeded elephants in large bodies, looking, O king, like blazing mountains.[55] And the rear was protected by Virāta aided by the Kekayas, and the ruler of the Kāçis and the king of the Chedis, with thirty thousand cars.*[56] Forming, O Bhārata, their mighty array thus, the Pāndavas, expectant of sunrise, waited for battle, all cased in armour.[57] And their white umbrellas, clean and costly, and brilliant as the sun, shone resplendant on their elephants and cars.'† "[58]

SECTION LI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the mighty and terrible array called *Krauncha* formed by Pāndu's son of immeasurable energy, thy son,[1] approaching the preceptor, and Kripa, and Calya, O sire, and Somadatta's son, and Vikarna, and Açwatthāman also,[2] and all his brothers too, headed by Dusçāsana, O Bhārata, and other immeasurable heroes assembled there for battle,[3] said these timely words, gladdening them all, —Armed with various kinds of weapons, ye all are conversant with the meaning of the scriptures![4] Ye mighty car-warriors, each of you singly are capable of slaying in battle the sons of Pāndu with their troops! How much more then, when ye are united together![5] Our host, therefore, which is protected by Bhishma, is immeasurable, while that host of theirs, which is protected by Bhima, is measurable.‡[6] Let the

---

* The Bombay text differs in many respects from the Bengal texts as regards the positions assigned to the several warriors and races in the Pándava host. It is impossible to settle the true readings. I have, therefore, without any attempt at correction, followed the Bengal texts.—T.

† The last word of the 58th verse is *Ratheshucha*, and not *Dhajeshucha*, for umbrellas could not possibly be fastened to standards.—T.

‡ This identical verse occurs in the first chapter of the *Bhagavadgitā* (*vide* verse 10, chap 25, of this *Pārvan*, *ante*). There, following

Samsthānas, the Curasenas, the Venikas, the Kukkuras, the Rechakas, the Trigartas, the Madrakas, the Yavanas,[7] with Catrunjaya, and Dusçāsana, and that excellent hero Vikarna, and Nanda and Upanandaka,[8] and Chitrasena, along with the Manibhadrakas, protect Bhishma with their (respective) troops![9]—Then Bhishma and Drona and thy sons, O sire, formed a mighty array for resisting that of the Pārthas.[10] And Bhishma, surrounded by a large body of troops, advanced, leading a mighty army, like the chief of the celestials himself.[11] And that mighty bowman, the son of Bharadwāja, endued with great energy, followed him, with the Kuntalas, the Daçārnas, and the Magadhas, O king,[12] and with the Vidarbhas, the Melakas, the Karnas, and the Prāvaranas also. And the Gāndhāras, the Sindhusauviras, the Civis, and the Vasātis, with all their combatants also, (followed) Bhishma, that ornament of battle. And Cakuni, with all his troops, protected the son of Bharadwāja.[13-14] And then king Duryodhana, united with all his brothers, with the Açwālakas, the Vikarnas, the Vāmanas, the Koçalas,[15] the Daradas, the Vrikas, as also the Kshudrakas and the Mālavas, advanced cheerfully against the Pāndava host.[16] And Bhuriçravas, and Cala, and Calya, and the Bhagadatta, O sire, and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, protected the left flank.[17] And Somadatta, and Suçarman, and Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas and Catāyus, and Crutāyus, were on the right flank.[18] And Açwatthāman, and Kripa, and Kritavarman of Sātwta's race, with a very large division of the troops, were stationed at the rear of the army.[19] And behind them were the rulers of many provinces, and Ketumat, and Vasudāna. And the powerful son of the king of the Kāçis.[20] Then all the troops on thy side, cheerfully waiting for battle, O Bhārata, blew their conchs with great pleasure, and set up leonine roars.[21] And hearing the shouts of those (combatants) filled with delight, the venerable Kuru grandsire, endued with great

---

the commentators, particularly Creedhara, I have rendered *Aparyāptam* and *paryāptam* as less than sufficient and sufficient. It would seem, however, that that is erroneous.—T.

prowess, uttering a leonine roar, blew his conch.[22] Thereupon, conchs and drums and diverse kinds of *Peçis* and cymbals, were sounded at once by others, and the noise made became a loud uproar.[23] And Mādhava and Arjuna, both stationed on a great car unto which were yoked white steeds, blew their excellent conchs decked with gold and jewels.[24] And Hrishikeça blew the conch called *Gigantea*, and Dhananjaya (that called) *Theodotes*. And Vrikodara of terrible deeds blew the huge conch called *Arundinea*.[25] And Kunti's son king Yudhishthira blew the conch called *Triumphatrix*; while Nakula and Sahadeva (those conchs called) *Dulcisona* and *Gemmiflora*.*[26] And the ruler of Kāçi, and Caivya, and Cikhandin the mighty car-warrior, and Dhrishtadyumna, and Virāta, and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki,[27] and that great bowman the king of the Pānchālas, and the five sons of Draupadi, all blew their large conchs and set up leonine roars.[28] And that great uproar uttered there by those heroes, loudly reverberated through both the earth and the welkin.[29] Thus, O great king, the Kurus and the Pāndavas, both filled with delight, advanced against each other for battling again, and scorching each other thus.' "[30]

SECTION LII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When mine and the hostile hosts were thus formed into battle-array, how did the foremost of smiters begin to strike ?'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'When all the divisions were thus arrayed, the combatants waited, each cased in mail, and with their beautiful standards all upraised. And beholding the (Kuru) host that resembled the limitless ocean,†[2] thy son Duryodhana, O king, stationed within it, said unto all the combatants on thy side,—Cased in mail (as ye are), begin ye the fight ![3]—The combatants then, entertaining cruel intentions, and aban-

---

* For these names, *vide* note in page 75 *ante*, *Bhishma Parvan*.—T

† A slight difference of reading is noticeable in the first line of this verse between the Bengal and the Bombay texts.—T.

doning their very lives, all rushed against the Pāndavas, with standards upraised.[4] The battle that took place then was fierce and made the hair to stand on end. And the cars and elephants all got mixed together.[5] And shafts with beautiful feathers, and endued with great energy and sharp points, shot by car-warriors, fell upon elephants and horses.[6] And when the battle began in this way, the venerable Kuru grandsire, the mighty-armed Bhishma of terrible prowess, cased in mail, and taking up his bow, and approaching them, showered an arrowy downpour on the heroic son of Subhadrā, and Bhimasena, and the mighty car-warrior Arjuna, and the ruler of the Kekayas, and Virāta, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race, as also upon the Chedi and the Matsya warriors.[7-9] And that mighty array (of the Pāndavas) wavered at the onset of that hero. And terrific was the encounter that took place between all the combatants. And horse-men and car-warriors and foremost of steeds fell fast. And the car-divisions of the Pāndavas began to fly away.[11] Then that tiger among men, Arjuna, beholding that mighty car-warrior Bhishma, angrily said unto him of Vrishni's race,—Proceed to the place where the grandsire is![12] O thou of Vrishni's race, it is evident that this Bhishma, with wrath excited, will annihilate for Duryodhana's benefit my host![13] And this Drona, and Kripa, and Calya, and Vikarna, O Janārddana, united with Dhritarāshtra's sons headed by Duryodhana,[14] and protected by this firm bowman, will slaughter the Pānchālas! Even I, therefore, shall slay Bhishma for the sake of my troops, O Janārddana![15]—Unto him Vāsudeva then said,—Be careful, O Dhananjaya, for I will soon take thee, O hero, towards the grandsire's car![16]—Having said this, O king, Caurin took that car, which was celebrated over the world, before the car of Bhishma.[17] With numerous banners all waving, with steeds looking handsome like a flight of (white) cranes, with standard upraised on which was the ape roaring fiercely,[18] upon his large car of solar effulgence and whose rattle resembled the roar of the clouds, slaughtering the Kaurava divisions and the Curusenas also, the son of Pāndu,[19] that enhancer of the joys of friends, speedily came to the encounter. Him (thus)

rushing impetuously like an infuriate elephant [20] and (thus) frightening in battle brave combatants and felling them with his shafts, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, protected by the warriors headed by Saindhava and by the combatants of the East and the Sauviras and the Kekayas, encountered with great impetuosity. Who else save the Kuru grandsire and those car-warriors, *viz*, Drona and Vikartana's son (Karna), are capable of advancing in battle against the bearer of the bow called *Gāndiva*? Then, O great king, Bhishma the grandsire of the Kauravas,[21-23] struck Arjuna with seventyseven arrows, and Drona (stuck him)with five and twenty, and Kripa with fifty;[24] and Duryodhana with four and sixty, and Cala with nine arrows; and Drona's son, that tiger among men, with sixty, and Vikarna with three arrows;[25] and Saindhava with nine, and Cakuni with five. And Ārtāyani, O king, pierced Pāndu's son with three broad-headed arrows. And (though) pierced on all sides by them with sharp arrows, that great bowman,*[26] that mighty-armed (warrior), wavered not, like a mountain that is pierced (with arrows). Thereupon he, the diadem-decked, of immeasurable soul, O bull of Bharata's race, in return pierced Bhishma with five and twenty, and Kripa with nine arrows, and Drona with sixty, O tiger among men, and Vikarna with three arrows; and Ārtāyani with three arrows, and the king (Duryodhana) also with five. And then Sātyaki, and Virāta, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race, and the sons of Draupadi, and Abhimanyu, all surrounded him, (proceeding to his support). Then the prince of the Pānchālas, supported by the Somakas, advanced towards the great bowman Drona who was engaged in seeking the welfare of Gangā's son. Then Bhishma, that foremost of car-warriors, speedily pierced the son of Pāndu[27-31] with eighty sharp arrows, upon which the combatants on thy side were much gratified. Hearing the shouts of those rejoicing warriors, that lion among car-warriors, Dhananjaya,[32-33] endued with great prowess, then cheerfully entered into the midst of those lions

---

* The 26th verse in the Bengal texts consists of three lines. In the Bombay text, the half-*sloka* about *Artāyani* does not occur.—T.

among car-warriors, and sported with his bow, O king, (successively) aiming those mighty car-warriors. Then that ruler of men, king Duryodhana, said unto Bhishma,[34] beholding his own troops (thus) afflicted in battle by the son of Prithā,—This mighty son of Pāndu, O sire, accompanied by Krishna,[35] felling all our troops, cutteth down our roots, even though thou, O son of Gangā, and that foremost of car-warriors, Drona, are alive![36] O monarch, it is for thee only that this Karna, laying aside his weapons, doth not fight with the sons of Prithā in battle, (though) he is ever a well-wisher of mine![37] Do, therefore, that, O son of Gangā, by which Phālguna may be slain!—Thus addressed, O king, thy sire Devavrata,[38] saying,—*Fie to Kshatriya usages*, then proceeded towards Pārtha's car. And all the kings, O monarch, seeing both those warriors with white steeds yoked unto their cars, stationed (for battle),[39] set up loud leonine roars, and also bleew their conchs, O sire! And Drona's son, and Duryodhana, and thy son Vikarna,[40] surrounding Bhishma in that combat, stood, O sire, for battle. And so all the Pāndavas, surrounding Dhananjaya,[41] stood for fierce conflict. And the battle then commenced. And the son of Gangā pierced Pārtha in that combat with nine shafts.[42] And Arjuna pierced him in return with ten shafts penetrating into the very vitals. Then with a thousand arrows, well shot, Pāndu's son[43] Arjuna, famed for his skill in battle, shrouded Bhishma on all sides. That arrowy net, however, of Pārtha, O king, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu baffled with an arrowy net (of his own). And both well-pleased, and both delighting in battle,[44-45] fought with each other without each gaining any advantage over the other, and each desirous of counteracting the other's feats. And the successive flights of arrows shot from Bhishma's bow[46] were seen to be dispersed by the shafts of Arjuna. And so the flights of arrows shot by Arjuna,[47] cut off by the arrows of Gangā's son, all fell down on the ground. And Arjuna pierced Bhishma with five and twenty arrows of sharp points.[48] And Bhishma too, in that combat, pierced Pārtha in return with nine arrows. And those two mighty warriors, those chastisers of foes, piercing each other's steeds,

and also the shafts and the wheels of each other's cars, began to sport. Then, O king, Bhishma, that foremost of smiters,[49-50] struck Vāsudeva between his two breasts with three arrows. And the slayer of Madhu, struck with those shafts shot from Bhishma's bow,[51] shone in that battle, O king, like a flowering *Kinçuka*. Then Arjuna, indignant at seeing Mādhava pierced,[52] pierced in that combat the charioteer of Gangā's son with three arrows. And both heroes, striving with each other against each other's car,[53] succeeded not in taking aim at each other in the combat. And in consequence of the ability and dexterity of the charioteers of both those warriors, both displayed, O king, beautiful circles and advancings and retreatings in respect of their moving cars. And, O monarch, seeking the opportinity to strike,[54-55] they frequently changed positions, O king, for obtaining what they sought. And both the heroes blew their conchs, mingling that blare with their leonine roars.[56] And those mighty car-warriors twanged their bows, both in the same manner. And with the blare of their conchs and the rattle of their car-wheels,[57] the very Earth was suddenly rent. And it began to tremble and. produce subterranean noises. And nobody, O bull of Bharata's race, could detect any latches in either of them.[58] Both of them possessed of great might and great courage in battle, each was other's match. And by (the sight of) his standard alone, the Kauravas could approach him (for aid).[59] And so the Pāndavas approached Prithā's son (for aid), guided by his standard only. And beholding, O king, the prowess thus displayed by those two foremost of men,[60] O Bhārata, all creatures (present) in that battle were filled with wonder. And none, O Bhārata, observed any difference between the two,[61] just as none finds any transgression in a person observant of morality. And both of them (at times) became perfectly invisible in consequence of clouds of arrows.[62] And soon enough both of them in that battle became visible. And the gods with the *Gandharvas* and the *Chāranas*, and the great *Rishis*,[63] beholding their prowess, said unto one another,—These mighty car-warriors, when excited with rage, are incapable of ever being vanquished in battle [64] by all the

worlds with the gods, the *Asuras*, and the *Gandharvas*. This highly wonderful battle would be wonderful in all the worlds.[65] Indeed, a battle such as this will never take place again. Bhishma is incapale of being conquered in combat by Prithā's son of great intelligence,[66] showering his arrows in battle, with bow and car and steeds. So also that great bowman, the son of Pāndu, incapable of being vanquished in battle by the very gods,[67] Bhishma is not competent to conquer in combat. As long as the world itself will last, so long will this battle continue equally![68]—We heard these words, O king, fraught with the praises of Gangā's son and Arjuna in battle, bruited about there.[69] And while those two were engaged in displaying their prowess, other warriors of thy side and of the Pāndavas, O Bhārata, slew one another in battle,[70] with sharp-edged scimitars, and polished battle-axes, and innumerable arrows, and diverse kinds of weapons.[71] And the brave combatants of both armies cut one another down, while that terrible and murderous conflict lasted. And the encounter also, O king, that took place between Drona and the prince of the Pānchālas, was awful!'"[72]

SECTION LIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, how that great bowman Drona and the Pānchāla prince of Prishata's race encounter each other in battle, each striving his best.[1] I regard Destiny to be superior, O Sanjay, to exertion, when Cāntanu's son Bhishma (even) could not escape Pāndu's son in battle![2] Indeed, Bhishma, when enraged in battle, could destroy all mobile and immobile creatures. Why, O Sanjaya, could he not then, by his prowess, escape the son of Pāndu in battle?'[3]

"Sanjaya said,—'Listen, O king, quietly to this terrific battle. The son of Pāndu is incapable of being vanquished by the very gods with Vāsava.[4] Drona with diverse arrows pierced Dhrishtadyumna, and felled the latter's charioteer from his niche in the car.*[5] And, O sire, the enraged hero

---

* In the first line of the 5th verse, the true reading is *avidhata* and not *amarshanam*.—T.

also afflicted Dhrishtadyumna's four steeds with four excellent shafts.[6] And the heroic Dhrishtadyumna too pierced Drona in that combat with nine sharp arrows and addressed him, saying,—*Wait,—Wait.*[7]—Then, again, Bharadwāja's son of great prowess and immeasurable soul, covered with his arrows the wrathful Dhristadyumna.[8] And he took up a dreadful arrow for the destruction of Prishata's son, whose force resembled that of Cakra's bolt and which was like a second rod of Death.[9] And beholding that arrow aimed by Bhāradwāja in battle, loud cries of *oh* and *alas* arose, O Bhārata, among all the combatants.[10] And then we beheld the wonderful prowess of Dhrishtadyumna insomuch that that hero stood alone, immovable like a mountain.[11] And he cut off that terrible and blazing arrow coming towards him like his own Death, and also showered an arrowy down-pour on Bharadwāja's son.[12] And beholding that difficult feat achieved by Dhrishtadyumna, the Pānchālas with the Pāndavas, filled with delight, set up loud shouts.[13] And that prince, endued with great prowess, desirous of slaying Drona, hurled at him a dart of great impetuosity, decked with gold and stones of *lapis lazuli.*[14] Thereupon the son of Bharadwāja, smiling the while, cut off into three fragments that dart decked with gold that was coming towards him impetuously.[15] Beholding his dart thus baffled, Dhrishtadyumna of great prowess rained arrowy down-pours on Drona, O king![16] Then that mighty car-warrior Drona, baffling that arrowy shower, cut off, when the opportunity presented, the bow of Drupada's son.[17] His bow (thus) cut off in the combat, that mighty warrior of great fame hurled at Drona a heavy mace endued with the strength of the mountain.[18] And hurled from his hands, that mace coursed through the air for Drona's destruction. And then we beheld the wonderful prowess of Bharadwāja's son.[19] By (the) lightness (of his car's motion), he baffled that mace decked with gold, and having baffled it, he shot at Prishata's son[20] many shafts of sharp edge, well-tempered, furnished with golden wings, and whetted on stone. And these, penetrating through Pārshata's coat of mail, drank his blood in that battle.[21] Then the high-souled Dhristadyumna, taking

up another bow, and putting forth his prowess, pierced Drona in that encounter with five shafts.[22] And then those two bulls among men, both covered with blood, looked beautiful like two blossoming *Kinçukas* in spring variegated with flowers.[23] Then, O king, excited with wrath and putting forth his prowess at the head of his divison, Drona once more cut off the bow of Drupada's son.[24] And then that hero of immeasurable soul covered that warrior whose bow was cut off, with innumerable straight arrows like the clouds showering rain on a mountain.[25] And he also felled his foe's charioteer from his niche in the car. And his four steeds, too, with four sharp arrows,[26] Drona felled in that combat and set up a leonine roar. And with another shaft he cut off the leathern fence that cased Dhrishtadyumna's hand.*[27] His bow cut off, deprived of car, his steeds slain, and charioteer overthrown, the prince of Pānchāla alighted from his car, mace in hand, displaying great prowess.[28] But before he could come down from his car, O Bhārata, Drona with his shafts cut off that mace into fragments. This feat seemed wonderful to us.[29] And then the mighty prince of the Pānchālas, of strong arms, taking a large and beautiful shield decked with a hundred moons, and a large scimitar of beautiful make,†[30] rushed impetuously from desire of slaying Drona, like a hungry lion in the forest towards an infuriate elephant.[31] Then wonderful was the prowess that we beheld of Bharadwāja's son, and his lightness (of hand) in the use of weapons, as also the strength of his arms, O Bhārata,[32] inasmuch as, alone, he checked Prishata's son with a shower of arrows. And although possessed of great might in battle, he was unable to proceed further.[33] And we beheld the mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna staying where he did and warding off those clouds of arrows with his shield, using his arms with great dexterity.[34] Then the mighty-armed Bhima endued with great strength quickly came there,

---

* Both the Bengal and the Bombay texts read *hastāchchāpam*. This is incorrect; the Burdwan Pundits correctly read *hastavāpam*.—T.

† The Bengal texts read *Catachandram tato rane*; the Bombay edition reads *Catachandramcha Vhānumat*. The Burdwan reading is better than both, *viz*, *Catachandram manoramam*. I adopt the last.—T.

desirous of aiding in battle the high-souled son of Prishata.[35] And he pierced Drona, O king, with seven sharp-pointed arrows, and speedily caused Prishata's son to be taken up on another car.[36] Then king Duryodhana urged the ruler of the Kalingas supported by a large division, for the protection of Bharadwāja's son.[37] Then that terrible and mighty division of the Kalingas, O ruler of men, rushed against Bhima at the command of thy son.[38] And Drona then, that foremost of car-warriors, abandoning the prince of Pānchāla, encountered Virāta and Drupada together.[39] And Dhishtadyumna also proceeded to support king Yudhishthira in battle. And then commenced a fierce battle, making the hair to stand on end,[40] between the Kalingas and the high-souled Bhima, a battle that was destructive of the universe, terrific, and awful!' "[41]

SECTION LIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How did the ruler of the Kalingas, that commander of a large division, urged by my son, and supported by his troops, fight in battle with the mighty Bhimasena of wonderful feats, that hero wandering over the field of battle with his mace like Death himself club in hand?'[1-2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Thus urged by thy son, O great king, the mighty king of the Kalingas, accompanied by a large army, advanced towards Bhima's car.[3] And Bhimasena then, O Bhārata, supported by the Chedis, rushed towards that large and mighty army of the Kalingas, abounding with cars, steeds, and elephants, and armed with mighty weapons, and advancing towards him with Ketumat the son of the king of the Nishādas.[4-5] And Crutāyus also, excited with wrath, accoutred in mail, followed by his troops in battle-array, and accompanied by king Ketumat, came before Bhima in battle.[6] And the ruler of the Kalingas with many thousands of cars, and Ketumat with ten thousand elephants and the Nishādas,[7] surrounded Bhimasena, O king, on all sides. Then the Chedis, the Matsyas, and the Karushas, with Bhimasena at their head,[8] and with many kings, impetuously rushed against the Nishādas. And then commenced the battle, fierce and terri-

ble,[9] between the warriors rushing at one another from desire of slaughter. And terrific was the battle that suddenly took place between Bhima and his foes,[10] resembling the battle, O great king, between Indra and the mighty host of Diti's sons. And loud became the uproar, O Bhārata, of that mighty army struggling in battle, that resembled the sound of the roaring ocean. And the combatants, O king, cutting one another,[11-12] made the whole field resemble a crematorium strewn with flesh and blood. And the combatants, impelled by the desire of slaughter, could not distinguish friend from foe.[13] And those brave warriors, incapable of being easily defeated in battle, even began to strike down their own friends. And terrific was the collision that took place between the few and the many,[14]—between the Chedis (on the one side) and the Kalingas and the Nishādas, O king, (on the other). Displaying their manliness to the best of their power, the mighty[15] Chedis, abandoning Bhimasena, turned back. And when the Chedis ceased to follow him, the son of Pāndu, encountering all the Kalingas, did not turn back, depending upon the might of his own arms. Indeed, the mighty Bhimasena moved not, but from the terrace of his car [16-17] covered the division of the Kalingas with showers of sharp arrows. Then that mighty bowman, the king of the Kalingas, and that car-warrior, his son,[18] known by the name of Cakradeva, both began to strike the son of Pāndu with their shafts. And the mighty-armed Bhima, shaking his beautiful bow,[19] and depending on the might of his own arms, fought with Kālinga. And Cakradeva, shooting in that battle innumerable arrows,[20] slew Bhimasena's steeds with them. And beholding that chastiser of foes Bhimasena deprived of his car,[21] Cakradeva rushed at him, shooting sharp arrows. And upon Bhimasena, O great king, the mighty Cakradeva[22] showered arrowy downpours like the clouds after summer is gone. But the mighty Bhimasena, staying on his car whose steeds had been slain,[23] hurled at Cakradeva a mace made of the hardest iron. And slain by that mace, O king, the son of the ruler of the Kalingas, from his car,[24] fell down on the ground, with his standard and charioteer. Then that mighty

car-warrior, the king of the Kalingas, beholding his own son slain,[25] surrounded Bhima on all sides with many thousands of cars. Then the mighty-armed Bhima endued with great strength, abandoning mace, took up a scimitar, desirous of achieving a fierce feat. And that bull among men also took up, O king, an incomparable shield made of bull's hide,[26-27] and decked with stars and crescents made of gold. And the ruler of the Kalingas also, excited with wrath, and rubbing his bowstring,[28] and taking up a terrible arrow (deadly) as poison of the snake, shot it at Bhimasena, desirous as that monarch was of slaying (the Pāndava).[29] That sharp arrow, thus shot and coursing impetuously, Bhimasena, O king, cut in twain with his huge sword.[30] And filled with delight he set up a loud shout, terrifying the troops. And the ruler of the Kalingas, excited with rage in that combat with Bhimasena,[31] quickly hurled at him fourteen bearded darts whetted on stone. The mighty-armed son of Pāndu, however, with that best of scimitars, fearlessly cut into fragments in a trice, O king, those darts while coursing through the welkin and before they could reach him. And having in that battle (thus) cut off those fourteen darts, Bhima,[32-33] that bull among men, beholding Bhānumat, rushed at him. Bhānumat then covered Bhima with a shower of arrows,[34] and set up a loud shout, making the welkin resound with it. Bhima, however, in that fierce battle, could not bear that leonine shout.[35] Himself endued with a loud voice, he also shouted very loudly. And at those shouts of his, the army of the Kalingas became filled with fear.[36] In that battle they no longer regarded Bhima, O bull among men, as a human being. Then, O great king. having uttered a loud shout, Bhima,[37] sword in hand, impetuously jumping on (Bhānumat's) excellent elephant aided by the latter's tusks, gained, O sire, the back of that prince of tuskers,[38] and with his huge sword cut Bhānumat, dividing him in the middle. That chastiser of foes then, having (thus) slain in battle the prince of the Kalingas, next*[39] made his

* In the first line of 39, the correct reading is *Prishonā* and not *Pritānā*. —T.

sword which was capable of bearing a great strain, to descend upon the neck of that elephant. His head cut off, that prince of elephants fell down with a loud roar,[40] like a crested mountain (whose base is) eaten away by the impetuous (surges of the) sea. And jumping down, O Bhārata, from that falling elephant, that prince of Bharata's race,[41] of undepressed soul, stood on the ground, sword in hand and accoutred in mail (as before). And felling numerous elephants on all sides, he wandered (over the field), making many paths (for himself).[42] And then he seemed to be like a moving wheel of fire slaughtering whole divisions of cavalry, of elephants, and cars, and large bodies of infantry. And that lord among men, the mighty Bhima, was seen to move over the field with the activity of the hawk,[43-44] quickly cutting off in that battle, with his sharp-edged sword, their bodies and heads, as also those of the combatants on elephants.[45] A combatant on foot, excited with rage, all alone, and like Yama at the season of the universal dissolution, he struck terror into his foes and confounded those brave warriors.[46] Only they that were senseless rushed with loud shouts at him wandering in that great battle with impetuosity, sword in hand.[47] And that grinder of foes, endued with great strength, cutting off the shafts and yokes of warriors on their cars, slew those warriors also.[48] And Bhimasena was seen, O Bhārata, to display diverse kinds of motions there. He wheeled about, and whirled about on high, and made side thrusts, and jumped forward, and ran above, and leapt high.[49] And, O Bhārata, he was also seen to rush forward and rush upward. And some mangled by the high-souled son of Pāndu by means of his excellent sword,[50] shrieked aloud, struck at their vitals or fell down, deprived of life. And many elephants, O Bhārata, some with trunks and the extremities of their tusks cut off, and others having their temporal globes cut open, deprived of riders, slew their own ranks and fell down, uttering loud cries.[51-52] And broken lances, O king, and the heads of elephant-drivers, and beautiful housings of elephants, and chords resplendant with gold,[53] and collars, and darts, and mallets, and quivers, diverse kinds of machines, and beautiful bows,[54]

short arrows with polished heads, with hooks and iron crows for guiding elephants, bells of diverse shape, and hilts decked with gold,[55] were seen by us falling down or (already) fallen along with riders of steeds. And with elephants (lying down) having the fore parts and hind parts of their bodies and their trunks cut off, or entirely slain,[56] the field seemed to be strewn with fallen cliffs. And that bull among men, having thus crushed the huge elephants, next crushed the steeds also.[57] And, O Bhārata, that hero also felled the foremost of cavalry soldiers. And the battle, O sire, that took place between him and them was fierce in the extreme.[58] And hilts and traces, and saddle girths resplendant with gold, and covers for the backs of steeds, and bearded darts, and costly swords,[59] and coats of mail, and shields, and beautiful ornaments, were seen by us strewn over the ground in that great battle.[60] And he caused the earth to be strewn over (with blood) as if it were variegated with lilies. And the mighty son of Pāndu, jumping high and dragging some car-warriors down, with his sword felled them along with (their) standards. Frequently jumping up or rushing on all sides, that hero endued with great activity,[61-62] wandering along many routes, caused the combatants to be amazed. And some he slew by his legs, and dragging down others he pressed them down under the earth.[63] And others he cut off with his sword, and others he frightened with his roars. And others he threw down on the ground by the force of his thighs (as he ran).[64] And others beholding him, fled away in terror. It was thus that that vast force of the Kalingas endued with great activity,[65] surrounding the terrible Bhimasena in battle, rushed at him. Then, O bull of Bharata's race, beholding Crutāyush at the head of the Kalinga troops, Bhimasena rushed at him. And seeing him advancing, the ruler of the Kalingas, of immeasurable soul, pierced Bhimasena between his two breasts with nine arrows. Struck with those shafts shot by the ruler of the Kalingas, like an elephant pierced with the hook,[66-68] Bhimasena blazed up with wrath like fire fed with fuel. Then Açoka, that best of charioteers, bringing a car decked with gold, caused Bhima to mount on it. And thereupon that

slayer of foes, the son of Kunti, speedily mounted on that car.[69-70] And then he rushed at the ruler of the Kalingas, saying,—*Wait, Wait.* And then the mighty Crutāyush, excited with wrath, shot at Bhima many sharp arrows, displaying his lightness of hand. And that mighty warrior, Bhima, forcibly struck with those nine sharp arrows shot by Kalinga from his excellent bow, yielded to great wrath, O king, like a snake struck with a rod.[71-73] Then that foremost of mighty men, Bhima the son of Prithā, excited with rage, and drawing his bow with great strength, slew the ruler of the Kalingas with seven shafts made wholly of iron.[74] And with two shafts he slew the two mighty protectors of the car-wheels of Kālinga. And he also despatched Satyadeva and Satya to the abode of Yama.[75] Of immeasurable soul, Bhima also, with many sharp arrows and long shafts, caused Ketumat to repair unto Yama's abode.[76] Then the Kshatriyas of the Kalinga country, excited with rage, and supported by many thousands of combatants, encountered the wrathful Bhimasena in battle.[77] And armed with darts and maces and scimitars and lances and swords and battle-axes, the Kalingas, O king, hundreds upon hundreds, surrounded Bhimasena.[78] Baffling that risen shower of arrows, that mighty warrior then took up his mace and jumped down (from his car) with great speed.*[79] And Bhima then despatched seven hundred heroes to Yama's abode. And that grinder of foes despatched, in addition, two thousand Kalingas to the region of Death. And that feat seemed highly wonderful. And it was thus that the heroic Bhima of terrible prowess repeatedly felled in battle large bands of the Kalingas. And elephants deprived by Pāndu's son, in that battle, of their riders,[80-82] and afflicted with arrows, wandered on the field, treading down their own ranks and uttering loud roars, like masses of clouds driven by the wind.[83] Then the mighty-armed Bhima, scimitar in hand, and filled with delight, blew his conch of terrible loudness.[84] And with that blare he caused the hearts of all the

---

* *Samuchchhritām* or *Samutthitām*, meaning risen, is scarcely a happy adjective here.—T.

Kalinga troops to quake with fear. And, O chastiser of foes, all the Kalingas seemed at the same time to be deprived of their sense.[85] And all the combatants and all the animals shook with terror. And in consequence of Bhimasena wandering in that battle through many paths or rushing on all sides like a prince of elephants, or frequently jumping up, a trance seemed to be engendered there that deprived his foes of their senses.[86-87] And the whole (Kalinga) army, shook with terror of Bhimasena, like a large lake agitated by an alligator.[88] And struck with panic in consequence of Bhima of wonderful achievements, all the Kalinga combatants fled away in all directions. When, however, they were rallied again, the commander of the Pāndava army (Dhrishtadyumna), O Bhārata, ordered his own troops, saying,—*Fight.*[89-90] Hearing the words of their commander, many leaders (of the Pāndava army) headed by Cikhandin approached Bhima, supported by many car-divisions accomplished in smiting.[91] And Pāndu's son king Yudhishthira the just followed all of them behind with a large elephant force of the color of the clouds.[92] And thus urging all his divisions, the son of Prishata, surrounded by many excellent warriors, took upon himself the protection of one of the wings of Bhimasena.*[93] There exists nobody on earth, save Bhima and Sātyaki, who to the prince of the Pānchālas is dearer than his very life.[94] That slayer of hostile heroes, the son of Prishata, beheld the mighty-armed Bhimasena, that slayer of foes, wandering among the Kalingas.[95] He set up many shouts, O king, and was filled with delight, O chastiser of foes. Indeed, he blew his conch in battle and uttered a leonine roar.[96] And Bhimasena also, beholding the red standard of Dhrishtadyumna on his car decked with gold and unto which were yoked steeds white as pigeons, became comforted.†[97] And Dhrishtadyumna of immeasurable soul, beholding Bhimasena encountered by the Kalingas, rushed to the battle for his rescue.[98] And both those

---

* *Pārshni* is the wing or side of a car-warrior. The last word of this verse is not *Satpurushochitam* but *Satpurushairvritam.*—T.

† *Kovidāra* is a species of ebony called *Bauhinia Variegata.*—T.

heroes, Dhrishtadyumna and Vrikodara, endued with great energy, beholding Sātyaki at a distance, furiously encountered the Kalinags in battle.[99] And that bull among men, the (grand) son of Cini, that foremost of victorious warriors, quickly advancing to the spot, took up the wing of both Bhima and Prishata's son.[100] Bow in hand, creating a great havoc there, and making himself fierce in the extreme, he began to slay the enemy in battle.[101] And Bhima caused a river to flow there of bloody current, mingled with the blood and flesh of the warriors born in Kalinga.[102] And beholding Bhimasena then, the troops cried aloud, O king, saying,—*This is Death himself that is fighting in Bhima's shape with the Kalingas!*[103] Then Cāntanu's son Bhishma, hearing those cries in battle, quickly proceeded towards Bhima, himself surrounded on all sides with combatants in array.[104] Thereupon, Sātyaki and Bhismasena and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race, rushed towards that car of Bhishma decked with gold.[105] And all of them, quickly surrounding Gangā's son in battle, pierced Bhishma, each with three terrible shafts, without losing a moment.[106] Thy sire Devavrata, however, in return pierced each of those mighty bowmen striving (in battle) with three straight shafts.[107] And checking those mighty car-warriors with thousands of arrows, he slew with his shafts the steeds of Bhima decked with golden armour.[108] Bhima, however, endued with great energy, staying on that car whose steeds had been slain, with great impetuosity hurled a dart at Bhishma's car.[109] Thy sire Devavrata then, in that battle, cut off that dart in twain before it could reach him, and thereupon it fell down on the earth.[110] Then that bull among men, Bhimasena, taking up a heavy and mighty mace made of *Caikya* iron speedily jumped down from his car.[111] And Dhrishtadyumna quickly taking up that foremost of car-warriors on his own car, took away, in the very sight of all the combatants, that renowned warrior.[112] And Sātyaki then, from desire of doing what was agreeable to Bhima, felled with his shafts the charioteer of the reverend Kuru grandsire.[113] Upon his charioteer being slain, that foremost of car-warriors, Bhishma, was borne away from the field of battle by his steeds with the speed of

the wind.[114] And when that mighty car-warrior was (thus) taken away from the field, Bhimasena then, O monarch, blazed up like a mighty fire while consuming dry grass.[115] And slaying all the Kalingas, he stayed in the midst of the troops, and none, O bull of Bharata's race, of thy side ventured to withstand him.[116] And worshipped by the Pānchālas and the Matsyas, O bull of Bharata's race, he embraced Dhrishtadyumna and then approached Sātyaki.[117] And Sātyaki, that tiger among the Yadus, of prowess incapable of being baffled, then gladdening Bhimasena, said unto him, in the presence of Dhrishtadyumna, (these words).[118]—By good luck the king of the Kalingas, and Ketumat the prince of the Kalingas, and Cakradeva also of that country, and all the Kalingas, have been slain in battle![119] With the might and prowess of thy arms, by thee alone, hath been crushed the very large division of the Kalingas that abounded with elephants and steeds and cars, and with noble warriors, and heroic combatants![120]—Having said this, the long-armed grandson of Cini, that chastiser of foes,[121] quickly getting upon his car, embraced the son of Pāndu. And then that mighty car-warrior, coming back to his own car, began to slay thy troops, excited with rage and strengthening (the hands of) Bhima.' "*[122]

SECTION LV.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the forenoon of that day had passed away, O Bhārata, and when the destruction of cars, elephants, steeds, foot-soldiers, and horse-soldiers, proceeded on,[1] the prince of Pānchāla engaged in battle with these three mighty car-warriors, *viz*, Drona's son, Calya, and the high-souled Kripa.[2] And the mighty heir of Pānchāla's king with many sharp shafts, slew the steeds of Drona's son that were celebrated over all the world.[3] Deprived then of his animals,

---

* I have followed the Bengal texts in numbering the verses included in this section. All minor differences of reading, again, between the different published texts have necessarily not been noticed in the notes.—T.

Drona's son, quickly getting up on Calya's car, showered his shafts on the heir of the Pānchāla king.[4] And beholding Dhrishtadyumna engaged in battle with Drona's son, the son of Subhadrā, O Bhārata, quickly came up, scattering his sharp arrows.[5] And, O bull of Bharata's race, he pierced Calya with five and twenty, and Kripa with nine arrows, and Açwatthāman with eight.[6] Drona's son, however, quickly pierced Arjuna's son with (many) winged arrows, and Calya pierced him with twelve, and Kripa with three sharp arrows.[7] Thy grandson Lakshmana then, beholding Subhadrā's son engaged in battle, rushed at him, excited with rage. And the battle commenced between them.[8] And the son of Duryodhana, excited with rage, pierced Subhadrā's son with sharp shafts in that combat. And that (feat), O king, seemed highly wonderful.[9] The light-handed Abhimanyu then, O bull of Bharata's race, excited with rage, quickly pierced his cousin with five hundred arrows.[10] Lakshmana also, with his shafts, then cut off his (cousin's) bow-staff at the middle, at which, O monarch, all the people sent forth a loud shout.[11] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, the son of Subhadrā, leaving aside that broken bow, took up another that was beautiful and tougher.*[12] And thereupon those two bulls among men, thus engaged in combat and desirous of counteracting each other's feats, pierced each other with sharp shafts.[13] King Duryodhana then, O monarch, beholding his mighty son thus afflicted by thy grandson (Abhimanyu), proceeded to that spot.[14] And when thy son turned (towards that spot), all the kings surrounded the son of Arjuna on every side with crowds of cars.[15] Incapable of being defeated in battle and equal in prowess unto Krishna himself, that hero, O king, thus surrounded by those heroes, was not agitated in the least.[16] Then Dhananjaya, beholding Subhadrā's son engaged in battle, rushed to that spot, excited with wrath, desirous of rescuing his own son.[17] Thereupon the kings (on

* The Bombay reading *Vegavattarm* is better. Literally, it means, "capable of imparting a greater impetus." To avoid such periphrasis I render it "tougher."—T.

the Kuru side), headed by Bhishma and Drona and with cars, elephants, and steeds, rushed impetuously at Savyasāchin.[18] Then a thick earthy dust, suddenly raised by foot-soldiers and steeds and cars and cavalry troopers, covering the sky appeared on the view.[19] And those thousands of elephants and hundreds of kings, when they came within reach of Arjuna's arrows, were all unable to make any further advance.[20] And all creatures there set up loud wails, and the points of the compass became dark. And then the transgression of the Kurus assumed a fierce and dreadful aspect as regards its consequnces.*[21] Neither the welkin, nor the cardinal points of the compass, nor the earth, nor the sun, could be distinguished, O best of men, in consequence of the arrows shot by Kiritin.†[22] And many were the elephants there deprived of the standards (on their backs), and many car-warriors also, deprived of their steeds. And some leaders of car-divisions were seen wandering, having abandoned their cars.[23] And other car-warriors, deprived of their cars, were seen to wander hither and thither, weapon in hand, and their arms graced with *Angadas*.[24] And riders of steeds abandoning their steeds and elephant-riders abandoning their elephants, from fear of Arjuna, O king, fled away in all directions.[25] And kings were seen felled or falling from cars and elephants and steeds in consequence of Arjuna's shafts.[26] And Arjuna, assuming a fierce countenance, cut off with his terrible shafts, the upraised arms of warriors mace in grasp, and arms bearing swords, O king, or darts, or quivers, or shafts, or bows, or hooks, or standards, all over the field.[27-28] And spiked maces broken into fragments, and mallets, O sire, and bearded darts, and short arrows, and swords also, in that battle,[29] and sharp-edged battle-axes, and lances, O Bhārata, and shields broken into pieces, and coats of mail also, O king,‡[30]

---

* A literal rendering of the second line of 21 would be unintelligible. Hence I have done it rather freely.—T.

† The sense is that all these were entirely shrouded by Arjuna's arrows.—T.

‡ The true reading is *Charmanām* and not *Varmanām* : also *bhumipa* and *bhutale*.—T.

and standards, and weapons of all kinds thrown away, and umbrellas furnished with golden staves, and iron hooks also, O Bhārata,[31] and goads, and whips, and traces also, O sire, were seen strewn over the field of battle in heaps.[32] There was no man in thy army, O sire, who could advance against the heroic Arjuna in battle.[33] Whoever, O king, advanced against Prithā's son in battle, pierced by sharp shafts was despatched to the other world.[34] When all those combatants of thine broke and fled away, Arjuna and Vāsudeva blew their excellent conchs.[35] Thy sire Devavrata then, beholding the (Kuru) host routed, smilingly addressed the heroic son of Bharadwāja in battle and said,[36]—This mighty and heroic son of Pāndu, *viz*, Dhananjaya, accompanied by Krishna, is dealing with (our) troops as he alone is competent to deal with them.[37] He is incapable of being vanquished in battle today by any means, judging by his form that we see now so like unto that of the Destroyer himself at the end of the *Yuga*![38] This vast host again (of ours) is incapable of being rallied. Behold, looking at one another, our troops are flying away![39] Yon Sun, robbing in every way the vision of the whole world, is about to reach that best of mountains called Asta.*[40] For this, O bull among men, I think that the hour is come for the withdrawal (of the army). The warriors, who have all been tired and struck with panic, will never fight![41]—Having said this unto Drona that best of preceptors, Bhishma that mighty car-warrior, caused thy army to be withdrawn.[42] And then when the sun set, the withdrawal of both thy army and theirs took place, O sire, and twilight set in.' "[43]

SECTION LVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the night having passed away, the dawn came, Cāntanu's son Bhishma, that chastiser of foes, gave the order for the (Kuru) army to prepare for battle.[1] And the son of Cāntanu, the old Kuru grandsire, desirous of

---

* *I. e.*, is about to set.—T.

victory to thy sons, formed that mighty array known after the name of *Garuda*.[2] And on the beak of that *Garuda* was thy sire Devavrata himself. And its two eyes were Bharadwāja's son and Kritavarman of Satwata's race.[3] And those renowned warriors, Açwatthāman and Kripa, supported by the Trigartas, the Matsyas, the Kekayas, and the Vātadhānas, were in its head.[4] And Bhuriçravas, and Cala, and Calya, and Bhagadatta, O sire, and the Madrakas, the Sindhu-souviras, and they that were called the Pancha-nadas,[5] together with Jayadratha, were placed on its neck. And on its back was king Duryodhana with all his followers.[6] And Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, and the Kāmvojas with the Cakas, and also the Curasenas, O sire, formed its tail, O great king.[7] And the Magadhas and the Kalingas, with all the tribes of the Dāserakas, accoutred in mail, formed the right wing of that array.[8] And the Kārushas, the Vikunjas, the Mundas, and the Kaundivrishas, with Vrihadvala, were stationed on the left wing.[9] Then that chastiser of foes, Savyasāchin, beholding that host disposed in battle-array, aided by Dhrishtadyumna, disposed (his troops) in counter-array.[10] And in opposition to that array of thine, the son of Pāndu formed a fierce array after the from of the half-moon.[11] And stationed on the right horn, Bhimasena shone, surrounded by kings of diverse countries abundantly armed with various weapons.[12] Next to him were those mighty car-warriors Virāta and Drupada; and next to them was Nila armed with envenomed weapons.[13] And next to Nila was the mighty car-warrior Dhrishtaketu, surrounded by the Chedis, the Kāçis, the Karushas, and the Paurvas.[14] And Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandi, with the Pānchālas and the Prabhadrakas, and supported by other troops, were stationed in the middle, O Bhārata, for battle.[15] And thither also was king Yudhishthira the just, surrounded by his elephant division. And next to him were Sātyaki, O king, and the five sons of Draupadi.[16] And immediately next to them was Irāvān. And next to him were Bhimasena's son (Ghatotkacha), and those mighty car-warriors the Kekayas.[17] And next, on the left horn (of that array), was that best of men, *viz*, he who had for his protector,

Janārddana—that protector of the whole universe![18] It was thus that the Pāndavas formed their mighty counter-array for the destruction of thy sons and of those who have sided with them.[19] Then commenced the battle between thy troops and those of the foe striking one another, and in which cars and elephants mingled in the clash of combat.[20] Large numbers of elephants and crowds of cars were seen everywhere, O king, to rush towards one another for purposes of slaughter.[21] And the rattle of innumerable cars rushing (to join the fray), or engaged separately, became a loud uproar, mingling with the beat of drums.[22] And the shouts of the heroic combatants belonging to thy army and theirs, O Bhārata, slaying one another in that fierce encounter, reached the very heavens.' "[23]

SECTION LVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the ranks of thy army and theirs had been disposed in battle-array, that mighty car-warrior, Dhananjaya, felling in that conflict leaders of car-divisions with his arrows, caused a great carnage, O Bhārata, among the car-ranks. The Dhārtarāshtras, (thus) slaughtered in battle by Prithā's son like the Destroyer himself at the end of the *Yuga*, still fought perseveringly with the Pāndavas. Desirous of (winning) blazing glory and (bent upon) making death (the only ground for) a cessation of the fight,[1-3] with minds undirected to anything else, they broke the Pāndava ranks in many places, and were also themselves broken.[4] Then both the Pāndava and the Kaurava troops broke, changed positions, and fled away. Nothing could be distinguished.[5] An earthy dust arose, shrouding the very sun. And nobody there could distinguish either the cardinal or the subsidiary directions.[6] And everywhere the battle raged, O king, the combatants being guided by the indications afforded by colors, by watch-words, names, and tribal distinctions.[7] And the array of the Kauravas, O king, could not be broken, duly protected as it was by Bharadwāja's son, O sire![*8] And so

* For *Sa yathā tena* the Bombay text reads *Satyasandhena*. I follow the Bengal reading.—T.

the formidable array of the Pāndavas also, protected by Savyasāchin, and well-guarded by Bhima, could not be broken.[9] And the cars and elephants in close ranks, O king, of both the armies, and other combatants, coming out of their respective arrays, engaged in conflict.[10] And in that fierce battle, cavalry soldiers felled cavalry soldiers, with polished swords of sharp edges and long lances.[11] And car-warriors, getting car-warriors (within reach) in that fierce conflict, felled them with shafts decked with golden wings.[12] And elephant-riders, of thy side and theirs, felled large numbers of elephant-riders in close ranks, with broad-headed shafts and arrows and lances.*[13] And large bodies of infantry, inspired with wrath towards one another, cheerfully felled combatants of their own class with short arrows and battle-axes.[14] And car-warriors, O king, getting elephant-riders (within reach) in that conflict, felled them along with their elephants. And elephant-riders similarly felled car-warriors.[15] And, O bull of Bharata's race, the cavalry soldier with his lance felled the car-warrior in that conflict, and the car-warrior also felled the cavalry soldier.[16] And in both the armies the foot-soldier felled the car-warrior in the combat, and the car-warrior felled the foot-soldier, with sharp weapons.[17] And elephant-riders felled horse-riders, and horse-riders felled warriors on the backs of elephants. And all this appeared exceedingly wonderful.[18] And here and there foot-soldiers were felled by foremost of elephant-riders, and elephant-riders were seen to be felled by the former.[19] And bands of foot-soldiers, by hundreds and thousands, were seen to be felled by horse-riders, and horse-riders by foot-soldiers.[20] And strewn with broken standards and bows and lances and housings of elephants, and costly blankets, and bearded darts, and maces, and clubs furnished with spikes, and *Kampanas*, and darts, and variegated coats of mail, and *Kunapas*, and iron hooks, and polished scimitars, and shafts furnished with golden wings, the field, O best of Bharata's race, shone as if with floral wreaths.[21-23]

---

* Three *slokas* occur after the 13th, in the Bomay edition, that are omitted in the Bengal texts. I also omit them here.—T.

And the earth, miry with flesh and blood, became impassable with the bodies of men and steeds and elephants slain in that dreadful battle.[24] And drenched with human blood, the earthy dust disappeared. And the cardinal points, all around, became perfectly clear, O Bhārata.[25] And innumerable headless trunks rose up all around,—indications, O Bhārata, of the destruction of the world![26] And in that terrible and awful battle, car-warriors were seen to run away in all directions.[27] Then Bhishma, and Drona, and Jayadratha the ruler of the Sindhus, and Purumitra, and Vikarna, and Cakuni the son of Suvala,[28]—These warriors invincible in battle and possessed of leonine prowess,—staying in battle broke the ranks of the Pāndavas.[29] And so Bhimasena and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha, and Sātyaki, and Chekitāna, and the sons of Draupadi, O Bhārata,[30] supported by all the kings (on their side), began to grind thy troops and thy sons stationed in battle, like the gods grinding the *Dānavas*.[31] And those bulls among Kshatriyas, striking one another in battle, became terrible to behold, and covered with blood shone like *Kinçukas*.[32] And the foremost warriors of both armies, vanquishing their opponents, looked, O king, like the planetary luminaries in the firmament.[33] Then thy son Duryodhana, supported by a thousand cars, rushed to battle with the Pāndavas and the *Rākshasa*.[34] And so all the Pāndavas, with a large body of combatants, rushed in battle against those chastisers of foes, the heroic Bhishma and Drona.[35] And the diadem-decked (Arjuna) also, excited with rage, rushed against the foremost of kings. And Arjuna's son (Abhimanyu), and Sātyaki, both advanced against the forces of Suvala's son.[36] And then commenced once more a fearful battle, making the hair to stand on end, between thine and the enemy's troops both desirous of vanquishing each other.' "[37]

SECTION LVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then those kings, excited with rage, beholding Phālguna in battle, surrounded him on all sides with many thousands of cars.[1] And having, O Bhārata, surrounded

him with a multitudinous division of cars, they shrouded him from all sides with many thousands of shafts.[2] And bright lances of sharp points, and maces, and clubs endued with spikes, and bearded darts and battle-axes, and mallets and bludgeons,[3] they hurled at Phālguna's car, excited with rage. And that shower of weapons approaching (towards him) like a flight of locusts,[4] Prithā's son checked on all sides with his gold-decked arrows. And beholding there on that occasion the superhuman lightness of hand that Vibhatsu possessed,[5] the gods, the *Dānavas*, the *Gandharvas*, the *Piçāchas*, the *Uragas*, and the *Rākshasas*, eulogised Phālguna, O king, saying,—*Excellent, Excellent!*[6]—And the heroic Gāndhāras along with Suvala's son, with a large force, surrounded Sātyaki and Abhimanyu.*[7] Then the brave warriors led by Suvala's son, from anger, cut into pieces the excellent car of the Vrishni hero, with weapons of diverse kinds.[8] And in course of that fierce conflict, Sātyaki, abondoning that car of his, speedily mounted on Abhimanyu's car, O chastiser of foes![9] And those two, mounted on the same car, then began to speedily slaughter the army of Suvala's son with straight arrows of sharp points.[10] And Drona and Bhishma, steadily struggling in battle, began to slaughter the division of king Yudhishthira the just, with sharp shafts furnished with the feathers of the *kanka* bird.[11] Then the son of Dharma and the two other sons of Pāndu by Mādri, in the very sight of the whole army, began to grind the division of Drona.[12] And the battle that took place there was fierce and awful, making the hair to stand on end, like the terrible battle that took place between the gods and the *Asuras* in days of yore.[13] And Bhimasena and Ghatotkacha both achieved mighty feats. Then Duryodhana, approaching, checked them both.[14] And the prowess we then beheld of Hidimvā's son was exceedingly wonderful, insomuch that he fought in battle, O Bhārata, transcending his very father.[15] And Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, excited with wrath, pierced the vindictive Duryodhana in the breast,

---

* The Bombay edition reads this *sloka* differently. I follow the Bengal reading which seems to be better.—T.

with an arrow, smiling the while.[16] Then king Duryodhana, afflicted by the violence of that blow, sat down on the terrace of his car and swooned away.[17] And his charioteer then, beholding him senseless, speedily bore him away, O king, from battle. And then the troops that supported Duryodhana broke and fled.[18] And thereupon Bhima, smiting that Kuru army thus flying away in all directions, with sharp-pointed shafts, pursued it behind.[19] And Prishata's son (Dhrishtadyumna), that foremost of warriors, and Pāndu's son king Yudhishthira the just, in the very sight, O Bhārata, of both Drona and Gangā's son,[20] slew their army with sharp shafts capable of slaying hostile forces. That host of thy son, thus flying away in battle,[21] those mighty car-warriors, Bhishma and Drona, were incapable of checking. For though attempted to be checked by Bhishma and the high-souled Drona,[22] that host fled away in the very sight of Drona and Bhishma. And then when (those) thousands of car-warriors fled away in all directions,[23] Subhadrā's son and that bull of Cini's race, both stationed on the same car, began, O chastiser of foes, to slaughter the army of Suvala's son in battle.[24] And Cini's grandson and that bull of Kuru's race looked resplendant like the sun and the moon when together in the firmament after the last lunation of the dark fortnight has passed away.[25] And then Arjuna also, O king, excited with rage, showered arrows on thy army like the clouds pouring rain in torrents.[26] And the Kaurava army, thus slaughtered in battle with the shafts of Pārtha, fled away, trembling in grief and fear.[27] And beholding the army flying away, the mighty Bhishma and Drona, excited with rage and both desirous of Duryodhana's welfare, sought to check it.[28] Then king Duryodhana himself, comforting the combatants, checked that army then flying away in all directions.[29] And thereupon all the mighty Kshatriya car-warriors stopped, each at the spot where he saw thy son.[30] And then others among the common soldiers, beholding them stop, stopped of their own accord, O king, from shame or desire of displaying their courage unto one another.[31] And the impetuosity, O king, of that army thus rallied to the fight resem-

bled that of the surging sea at the moment of the moon's rise.[32] And king Soyodhana, beholding that army of his rallied for the fight, quickly repaired to Cāntanu's son Bhishma and said these words.[33]—O grandsire, listen to what I say, O Bhārata! When, O son of Kuru, thou art alive, and Drona, that foremost of persons conversant with weapons, along with his son and with all our other friends, (is alive), and when that mighty bowman Kripa also is alive, I do not regard it as at all creditable that my army should thus fly away![34-35] I do not regard the Pāndavas to be, by any means, a match for thee, or for Drona, in battle, or for Drona's son, or for Kripa![36] Without doubt, O grandsire, the sons of Pāndu are being favored by thee, inasmuch as thou forgivest, O hero, this slaughter of my army![37] Thou shouldst have told me, O king, before this battle took place, that thou wouldst not fight with the Pāndavas![38] Hearing such words from thee, as also from the preceptor, O Bhārata, I would then have, with Karna, reflected upon what course I should pursue![39] If I do not deserve to be abandoned by you two in battle, then, O bulls among men, do ye fight according to the measure of your prowess![40]—Hearing these words, Bhishma, laughing repeatedly, and turning up his eyes in wrath, said to thy son,[41]—Many a time, O king, have I said unto thee words worthy of thy acceptance and fraught with thy good. The Pāndavas are incapable of being vanquished in battle by the very gods with Vāsava amongst them.[42] That, however, which my aged self is capable of doing, I will do to the extent of my power, O best of kings, in this battle! Witness it now with thy kinsmen![43] Today, in the very sight of all, alone I shall check the sons of Pāndu at the head of their troops and with all their kinsfolk![44]—Thus addressed by Bhishma, thy son, O king, filled with delight, caused conchs to be blown and drums to be beat.[45] And the Pāndavas also, O king, hearing that loud uproar, blew their conchs, and caused their drums and cymbals to be played upon.' "[46]

SECTION LIX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'After that dreadful vow had been made in battle by Bhishma enraged by the words of my son,[1] what, O Sanjaya, did Bhishma do unto the sons of Pāndu, or what did the Pānchālas do unto the grandsire? Tell it all unto me, O Sanjaya!'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'After the forenoon of that day, O Bhārata, had passed away, and the sun in his westward course had passed a portion of his path,[3] and after the high-souled Pāndavas had won the victory, thy sire Devavrata, conversant with the distinction of all codes of morality,[4] rushed, carried by the fleetest steeds, towards the army of the Pāndavas, protected by a large force and by all thy sons.[5] Then, O Bhārata, in consequence of thy sinful policy, commenced a dreadful battle, making the hair to stand on end, between ourselves and the Pāndavas.[6] And the twang of bows, the flapping of bowstrings against the leathern fences (casing the hands of the bowmen), mingling together, made a loud uproar resembling that of splitting hills.[7] *Stay,—Here I stand,—Know this one,—Turn back,—Stand,—I wait for thee,—Strike,*—these were the words heard everywhere.[8] And the sound of falling coats of mail made of gold, of crowns and diadems, and of standards, resembled the sound of falling stones on a stony ground.[9] And heads, and arms decked with ornaments, falling by hundreds and thousands upon the ground, moved in convulsions.[10] And some brave combatants, with heads severed from their trunks, continued to stand, weapons in grasp or armed with drawn bow.[11] And a dreadful river of blood began to flow there, of impetuous current, miry with flesh and blood, and with the bodies of (dead) elephants for its (sub-aqueous) rocks.[12] Flowing from the bodies of steeds, men, and elephants, and delightful to vultures and jackalls, it ran towards the ocean represented by the next world.[13] A battle such as that, O king, which (then) took place between thy sons, O Bhārata, and the Pāndavas, was never seen or heard before![14] And in consequence of the bodies

of combatants slain in that conflict, cars could not make their way. And the field of battle, in consequence of the bodies of slain elephants, seemed to be strewn over with blue crests of hills.[15] And the field of battle, strewn with variegated coats of mail and turbans, O sire, looked beautiful like the firmament in autumn.[16] And some combatants were seen who, though severely wounded, yet rushed cheerfully and proudly upon the foe in battle.[17] And many, fallen on the field of battle, cried aloud, saying,—*O father, O brother, O friend, O kinsman, O companion, O maternal uncle, do not abandon me!*[18]—And others cried aloud, saying,—*Come! Come thou here! Why art thou frightened? Where dost thou go? I stand in battle, do not be afeared!*[19]—And in that combat Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, with bow incessantly drawn to a circle, shot shafts of blazing points resembling snakes of virulent poison.[20] And shooting continuous lines of arrows in all directions, that hero of rigid vows smote the Pāndava car-warriors, naming each beforehand, O Bhārata![21] And displaying his extreme lightness of hand, and dancing (as it were) along the track of his car, he seemed, O king, to be present everywhere like a circle of fire.[22] And in consequence of the lightness of his movements, the Pāndavas in that battle, along with the Srinjayas, beheld that hero, though really alone, as multiplied a thousandfold.[23] And every one there regarded Bhishma as having multiplied his self by illusion. Having seen him now on the east, the next moment they saw him on the west.[24] And so having seen him on the north, the next moment they saw him on the south. And the son of Gangā was thus seen fighting in that battle.[25] And there was no one amongst the Pāndavas capable of even looking at him. What they all saw were only the innumerable shafts shot from his bow.[26] And heroic warriors, beholding him achieve such feats in battle, and (thus) slaughtering their ranks, uttered many lamentations.[27] And kings in thousands came in contact with thy sire thus coursing over the field in a superhuman way, and fell upon that fire represented by the enraged Bhishma like flights of senseless insects (upon a blazing fire) for their own destruction. Not a single shaft of that light-

handed warrior was futile, falling upon the bodies of men, elephants, and steeds, in consequence of the numbers (opposed to him). With a single straight shaft shot in that battle, he dispatched [28-30] a single elephant like a hill riven by the thunder-bolt. Two or three elephant-riders at a time, cased in mail and standing together,[31] thy sire pierced with one shaft of sharp point. Whoever approached Bhishma, that tiger among men, in battle,[32] seen for a moment was next beheld to fall down on the ground. And that vast host of king Yudhishthira the just, thus slaughtered [33] by Bhishma of incomparable prowess, gave way in a thousand directions. And afflicted with that arrowy shower, that vast army began to tremble [34] in the very presence of Vāsudeva and the high-souled Pārtha. And although the heroic leaders of the Pāndava army made great efforts, yet they could not check the flight of (even) the great car-warriors of their side afflicted with the shafts of Bhishma. The prowess, in consequence of which that vast army was routed, was equal to that of the chief of the gods himself.[35-36] And that army was so completley routed, O great king, that no two persons could be seen together. And cars and elephants and steeds were pierced all over, and standards and shafts of cars were strewn over the field.[37] And the army of the sons of Pāndu uttered cries of *oh* and *alas*, and became deprived of its senses. And sire struck the son and son struck the sire;[38] and friend challenged the dearest of friends to battle, as if under the influence of fate. And others amongst the combatants of Pāndu's son were seen, O Bhārata, to run away, throwing aside their coats of mail, and with dishevelled hair. And the army of the sons of Pāndu, indulging in loud wails, including the very leaders of their best of car-warriors, was seen to be as confounded as a very herd of kine. The delighter of the Yādavas then, beholding that army thus routed,[39-41] said unto Pārtha, stopping that best of cars (which he guided), these words:—The hour is now come, O Pārtha, which was desired by thee![42] Strike Bhishma, O tiger among men, else thou wilt lose thy senses! O hero, formerly, in the conclave of kings,[43] thou hadst said,—*I will slay all the warriors of Dhrita-*

rāshtra's son, headed by Bhishma and Drona all, in fact, who will fight with me in battle!—O son of Kunti, O chastiser of foes, make those words of thine true! Behold, O Vibhatsu, this army of thine is being routed on all sides![44-45] Behold, the kings in Yudhishthira's host are all flying away, seeing Bhishma in battle, who looketh like the Destroyer himself with wide-open mouth![46] Afflicted with fear, they are making themselves scarce like the weaker animals at sight of the lion!—Thus addressed, Dhananjaya replied unto Vāsudeva,[47] saying,—Plunging through this sea of the hostile host, urge on the steeds to where Bhishma is. I will throw down that invincible warrior, the reverend Kuru grandsire![48]—Then Mādhava urged those steeds of silvery hue to where, O king, the car of Bhishma was, that car which, like the very sun, was incapable of being gazed at.[49] And beholding the mighty-armed Pārtha thus rushing to an encounter with Bhishma, the mighty army of Yudhishthira rallied for battle.[50] Then Bhishma, that foremost warrior among the Kurus, repeatedly roaring like a lion, quickly covered Dhananjaya's car with an arrowy shower.[51] In a moment that car of his, with standard and charioteer, became invisible, shrouded with that arrowy down-pour.[52] Vāsudeva, however, endued with great might, fearlessly and summoning all his patience, began to guide those steeds mangled by Bhishma's shafts.[53] Then Pārtha, taking up his celestial bow whose twang resembled the roar of the clouds, caused Bhishma's bow to drop down, cutting it off with his keen shafts.[54] The Kuru warrior, thy sire, seeing his bow cut off, took up another and stringed it within the twinkling of the eye.[55] And he stretched that bow whose twang resembled the roar of the clouds, with his two hands. But Arjuna, excited with wrath, cut off that bow also of his.[56] The son of Cāntanu applauded that lightness of hand (displayed by Arjuna), saying,—*Excellent, O Pārtha, O thou of mighty-arms, excellent, O son of Pāndu!*[57] *O Dhananjaya, such a mighty feat is, indeed, worthy of thee! I have been pleased with thee! Fight hard with me, O son!*[58]—And having applauded Pārtha thus, and taking up another large bow, that hero shot his shafts at Pārtha's

car.[59] And Vāsudeva then displayed his great skill in the guiding of horses, for he baffled those shafts of his, by guiding the car in quick circles.[60] Then, O sire, Bhishma with great strength pierced both Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya with keen shafts all over their bodies.[61] And mangled by those shafts of Bhishma, those two tigers among men looked like two roaring bulls with the scratches of horns on their bodies.[62] And once again, excited with rage, Bhishma covered the two Krishnas on all sides with shafts in hundreds and thousands.[63] And with those keen shafts of his, the enraged Bhishma caused him of Vrishni's race to shiver. And laughing loudly he also made Krishna to wonder.[64] Then the mighty-armed Krishna, beholding the prowess of Bhishma in battle as also the mildness with which Arjuna fought,[65] and seeing that Bhishma was creating incessant showers of arrows in that conflict and looked like the all-consuming Sun himself in the midst of the two armies,[66] and marking, besides, that that hero was slaying the foremost of combatants in Yudhishthira's host and causing a havoc in that army as if the hour of dissolution had come,[67]—the adorable Keçava, that slayer of hostile hosts, endued with immeasurable soul,—unable to bear what he saw, thought that Yudhishthira's army could not survive that slaughter.[68]—In a single day can Bhishma slaughter all the *Daityas* and the *Dānavas*. With how much ease then can he slay in battle the sons of Pāndu with all their troops and followers![69] The vast army of the illustrious son of Pāndu is again flying away. And the Kauravas also, beholding the Somakas routed,[70] are rushing to battle cheerfully, gladdening the grandsire! Accoutred in mail, even I will slay Bhishma today for the sake of the Pāndavas.[71] This bruthen of the high-souled Pāndavas even I will lighten. As regards Arjuna, though struck in battle with keen shafts,[72] he knoweth not what he should do, from respect for Bhishma. —And while Krishna was reflecting thus, the grandsire, excited with wrath, once again shot his shafts at Pārtha's car.[73] And in consequence of the very great number of those arrows all the points of the compass became entirely shrouded. And neither the welkin, nor the quarters, nor the earth, nor the

sun himself of brilliant rays, could be seen.[74] And the winds that blew seemed to be mixed with smoke, and all the points of the compass seemed to be agitated. And Drona, and Vikarna, and Jayadratha, and Bhuriçravas, and Kritāvarman, and Kripa,[75] and Crutāyush, and the ruler of the Amvashtas, and Vinda and Anuvinda, and Sudakshina, and the Westerners, and the diverse tribes of the Sauviras, the Vasātis, and the Kshudrakas and the Mālavas,[76] all these, at the command of the royal son of Cāntanu, quickly approached Kiritin for battle. And the grandson of Cini saw that Kiritin was surrounded by many hundreds of horse, and infantry, and cars, and mighty elephants. And beholding both Vāsudeva and Arjuna thus encompassed by infantry and elephants and horse and cars, on all sides,[77-78] that foremost of all bearers of arms, *viz*, the chief of the Cinis, quickly proceeded to that spot. And that foremost of bowmen, the chief of the Cinis, quickly rushing at those troops,[79] came to Arjuna's aid like Vishnu coming to the aid of the slayer of Vritra. And that foremost warrior of Cini's race cheerfully said unto Yudhishthira's host all the combatants of which had been frightened by Bhishma, and whose elephants, steeds, cars, and numberless standards had been mangled and broken into pieces, and which was flying away from the field, these words:—Ye Kshatriyas, where do ye go? This is not the duty of the righteous as hath been declared by the ancients![80-82] Ye foremost of heroes, do not violate your pledges! Observe your own duties as heroes'—Beholding that those foremost of kings were flying together from the field of battle, and marking the mildness with which Pārtha fought, and beholding also that Bhishma was exerting himself very powerfully in battle, and that the Kurus were rushing from all sides, the younger brother of Vāsava, the high-souled protector of all the Daçārhas, unable to bear it all, addressed the renowned grandson of Cini, and applauding him, said,—O hero of Cini's race, they that are retreating, are, indeed, retreating. They that are yet staying, O thou of the Sātwata race, let *them* also go away![83-84] Behold, I will soon throw Bhishma down from his car, and Drona also in battle, with all their followers!

There is none in the Kuru host, O thou of the Sātwata race, who is able to escape my angry self![85] Therefore, taking up my fierce discus, I will slay Bhishma of high vows! And slaying in battle those two foremost of car-warriors, *viz*, Bhishma along with his followers and Drona also, O grandson of Cini,[86] I will gladden Dhananjaya, and the king, and Bhima, and the twin Açwins! And slaying all the sons of Dhritarāshtra and all those foremost of kings who have embraced their side,[87] I will joyfully furnish king Ajātaçatru with a kingdom today!—Saying this, Vasudeva's son, abandoning (the reins of) the steed, jumped down from the car, whirling with his (right) arm his discus of beautiful nave and edge sharp as a razor, effulgent as the sun and possessed of force equal to that of a thousand bolts of heaven. And making the earth tremble under his tread, the high-souled Krishna rushed impetuously towards Bhishma.[88-89] And that grinder of foes, the younger brother of the chief of the gods, excited with wrath, rushed towards Bhishma staying in the midst of his troops, like a lion, from desire of slaying, upon a prince of elephants blinded with fury and staying proudly for the attack.[90] And the end of his yellow garments waving in the air looked like a cloud charged with lightning in the sky. And that lotus of a discus called *Sudarçana*, having for its stalk the beautiful arm of Caurin, looked as beautiful as the primeval lotus, bright as the morning sun, which sprung from the navel of Nārāyana. And Krishna's wrath was the morning sun that caused that lotus to blow. And the beautiful leaves of that lotus were as sharp as the edge of a razor. And Krishna's body was the beautiful lake, and his (right) arm the stalk springing therefrom, upon which that lotus shone. And beholding the younger brother of Mahendra, excited with wrath and roaring loudly and armed with that discus,[91-93] all creatures set up a loud wail, thinking that the destruction of the Kurus was at hand. And armed with his discus Vāsudeva looked like the *Samvarta* fire that appears at the end of the *Yuga* for consuming the world.[94] And the preceptor of the universe blazed up like a fierce commet risen for consuming all creatures. And beholding that foremost of bipeds, that divine

personage, advancing armed with the discus,[95] Cāntanu's son stationed on his car, bow and arrow in hand, fearlessly said,—Come, Come, O Lord of the gods! O thou that hast the universe for thy abode! I bow to thee, O thou that art armed with mace, sword, and *Çārnga!*[96] O Lord of the universe, forcibly throw me down from this excellent car, O thou that art the refuge of all creatures, in this battle! Slain here by thee, O Krishna, great will be my good fortune both in this world and the next![97] Great is the respect thou payest me, O lord of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas! My dignity will be celebrated in the three worlds!—Hearing these words of Cāntanu's son, Krishna rushing impetuously towards him said,[98] —Thou art the root of this great slaughter on earth! Thou wilt behold Duryodhana slain today! A wise minister who treadeth in the path of righteousness should restrain a king that is addicted to the evil of gambling![99] That wretch again of his race who transgresseth duty should be abandoned as one whose intelligence hath been misdirected by destiny!—The royal Bhishma, hearing these words, replied unto the chief of the Yadus, saying,—Destiny is all powerful![100] The Yadus, for their benefit, had abandoned Kansa! I said this to the king (Dhritarāshtra) but he minded it not! The listener that hath no benefit to receive becometh, for (his own) misery, of perverted understanding through (the influence of) destiny.*[101] Meanwhile, jumping down from his car, Pārtha, himself of massive and long arms, quickly ran on foot after that chief of Yadu's race possessed of massive and long arms, and seized him by his two hands.[102] That first of all gods devoted in self, Krishna, was excited with rage. And therefore, though thus seized, Vishnu forcibly dragged Jishnu after him, like a tempest bearing away a single tree.[103] The high-souled Pārtha, however, seizing then with great force his legs as he was proceeding at a quick pace towards Bhishma, succeeded, O king, in stopping him with difficulty at the tenth step.[104] And when Krishna stopped, Arjuna, decked as he was with a

---

* I am not sure that I have correctly understood the second line of 101. It is very obscure.—T.

beautiful garland of gold, cheerfully bowed down to him and said,—Quell this wrath of thine! Thou art the refuge of the Pāndavas, O Keçava![105] I swear, O Keçava, by my sons and uterine brothers that I will not withdraw from the acts to which I have pledged myself! O younger brother of Indra, at thy command I will certainly annihilate the Kurus![106]—Hearing that promise and oath of his, Janārddana became gratified. And ever engaged as he was in doing what was agreeable to Arjuna—that best of the Kurus,—he once more, discus on arm, mounted on his car.[107] And that slayer of foes once more took up those reins (that he had abandoned), and taking up his conch called *Pānchajannya*, Caurin filled all the points of the compass and the welkin with its blare.[108] And thereupon beholding Krishna decked with necklace and *Angada* and ear-rings, with curved eye-lashes smeared with dust, and with teeth of perfect whiteness, once more take up his conch, the Kuru heroes uttered a loud cry.[109] And the sound of cymbals and drums and kettle-drums, and the rattle of car-wheels and the noise of smaller drums, mingling with those leonine shouts set forth from all the ranks of the Kurus, became a fierce uproar.[110] And the twang of Pārtha's *Gāndiva*, resembling the roll of the thunder, filled the welkin and all the quarters. And shot from the bow of Pāndu's son, bright and blazing shafts proceeded in all directions.[111] Then the Kuru king, with a large force, and with Bhishma and Bhuriçravas also, arrow in hand, and resembling a comet risen for consuming a constellation, rushed against him.[112] And Bhuriçravas hurled at Arjuna seven javelins furnished with wings of gold, and Duryodhana a lance of fierce impetuosity, and Calya a mace, and Cāntanu's son a dart.[113] Thereupon, Arjuna, baffling with seven shafts the seven javelins, fleet as arrows, shot by Bhuriçravas, cut off with another keen-edged shaft the lance hurled from Duryodhana's arm.[114] And the blazing dart coming towards him—effulgent as lightning—hurled by Cāntanu's son, and the mace hurled from the arm of the ruler of the Madras, that hero cut off with two (other) shafts.[115] Then drawing with his two hands and with great force his beautiful bow *Gāndiva* of immeasurable energy, he

invoked with proper *mantras* the highly wonderful and terrible *Mahendra* weapon and caused it to appear in the welkin.[115] And with that mighty weapon producing profuse showers of arrows endued with the effulgence of the blazing fire, that high-souled and mighty bowman, decked with diadem and garland of gold, checked the entire Kaurava host.[117] And those shafts from Pārtha's bow, cutting off the arms, bows, standard-tops, and cars, penetrated into the bodies of the kings and of the huge elephants and steeds of the foe![118] And filling the cardinal and the subsidiary directions with those sharp and terrible shafts of his, Prithā's son decked with diadem and garland of gold, agitated the hearts of his foes by means of the twang of *Gāndiva*.[119] And in that awful passage at arms, the blare of conchs and beat of drums and the deep rattle of cars were all silenced by the twang of *Gāndiva*.[120] And ascertaining that twang to be of *Gāndiva*, king Virāta and other heroes among men, and the brave Drupada the king of the Pānchālas, all proceeded to that spot with undepressed hearts.[121] And all thy combatants stood, struck with fear, each at the spot where he heard that twang of *Gāndiva*, and none amongst them ventured to proceed to that place whence that sound was heard.[122] And in that awful slaughter of kings, heroic combatants were slain and car-warriors with those that guided their cars. And elephants with resplendant housings of gold and gorgeous standards (on their backs), afflicted with broad-headed shafts falling upon them,[123] suddenly fell down, deprived of life and their bodies mangled by Kiritin. And forcibly struck by Pārtha with his winged arrows of great impetuosity and broad-headed shafts of keen-edge and points,[124] the standards of innumerable kings stationed at the heads of their divisions had their *yantras* and *Indrajālas* cut off.* And bands of infantry and car-warriors, in that battle, and steeds and elephants, fell fast on the field, their limbs paralysed, or themselves speedily

* What these were it is difficult to determine. The Bombay reading is different. For *Indrajāla* they read *Indrakilā* which is as unknown as the other.—T.

deprived of life, afflicted by Dhananjaya with those shafts. And, O king, many were the warriors who in that terrible conflict had their coats of mail and bodies cut through by that mighty weapon called after the name of Indra.[125-126] And with those terrible and sharp shafts of his, Kiritin caused an awful river to run on the field of battle, having for its waters the blood flowing from the mangled bodies of the combatants and having for its froth their fat.[127] And its current was broad and ran fiercely. And the bodies of elephants and steeds despatched to the other world formed its banks. And its mire consisted of the entrails, the marrow, and the flesh of human beings, and prodigious *Rākshasas* formed the (tall) trees (standing on its banks).[128] And the crowns of human heads in profusion, covered with hair, formed its (floating) moss, and heaps of human bodies, forming its sand-banks, caused that current to flow in a thousand directions. And the coats of mail strewn all over formed its waves, and the bones of human beings and elephants and steeds formed its hard pebbles.[129] And its banks were infested by large numbers of jackalls and wolves and cranes and vultures, and crowds of *Rākhasas*, and packs of hyenas. And they that were alive beheld that terrible river of current consisting of fat, marrow, and blood, caused by the arrowy showers of Arjuna,—that embodiment of (man's) cruelty,—to look like the great *Vaitarani.** And beholding the foremost warriors of that army of the Kurus thus slain by Phālguna,[130-131] the Chedis, the Pānchālas, the Karushas, the Matsyas, and all the combatants of the Pāndava side, those foremost of men, elated with victory, together set up a loud shout for frightening the Kaurava warriors.[132] And they uttered that cry indicative of victory, beholding the foremost combatants of the (Kuru) army, the very troops protected by mighty leaders of divisions, thus slain by Kiritin, that terror of foes, who frightened them like a lion frightening herds of smaller animals.[133] And then the bearer of *Gāndiva*

* The *Vaitarani* is the fabulous river that separates this world from the next.—T.

himself, and Janārddana, both filled with delight, uttered loud roars. And the Kurus, with Bhishma, and Drona and Duryodhana and Vālhika, exceedingly mangled by the weapons (of Arjuna), beholding the sun withdraw his rays, and seeing also that awful and irresistible weapon called after the name of Indra spread out and causing (as it were) the end of the *Yuga* to appear, withdrew their forces for the nightly rest. And that foremost of men, Dhananjaya, also, having achieved a great feat and won great renown by crushing his foes, and beholding the sun assume a red hue and the evening twilight to set in, and having completed his work, retired with his uterine brothers to the camp for nightly rest. Then when darkness was about to set in, there arose among the Kuru troops a great and terrible uproar.[134-137] And all said,—In today's battle Arjuna hath slain ten thousand car-warriors, and full seven hundred elephants. And all the Westerners, and the diverse tribes of the Sauviras, and the Kshudrakas and the Mālavas, have all been slain.[138] The feat achieved by Dhananjaya is a mighty one. None else is competent to achieve it. Crutāyush the ruler of the Amvashtas, and Durmarshana, and Chitrasena,[139] and Drona, and Kripa, and the ruler of the Sindhus, and Vālhika, and Bhuriçravas, and Calya, and Cala, O king, and other warriors by hundreds united together, along with Bhishma himself, have in battle, by the prowess of his own arms, been vanquished today by the angry son of Prithā, *viz*, Kiritin, that one mighty car-warrior in the world!—Talking thus, O Bhārata, all the warriors of thy side went to their tents from the field of battle.[140-141] And all the combatants of the Kuru army, frightened by Kiritin, then entered their tents illumined by thousands of torches, and beautified by innumerable lamps.' "[142]

SECTION LX.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the night passed away, O Bhārata, the high-souled Bhishma, with wrath engendered, supported by a large force, and stationed at the head of the Bhārata army, proceeded against the foe.[1] And Drona and Duryo-

dhana and Vālhika, and also Durmarshana and Chitrasena, and the mighty Jayadratha, and other royal warriors, supported by large divisions, accompanied, surrounding him on all sides.[2] And surrounded by those great and mighty car-warriors endued with great prowess and energy, O king, he shone, O best of monarchs, in the midst of those foremost of royal warriors, like the chief of the celestials in the midst of the gods.[3] And the magnificient standards, on the backs of the elephants stationed in front of those ranks, of diverse colors, *viz*, red, yellow, black and brown, waving in the air, looked exceedingly beautiful.[4] And that army with the royal son of Cāntanu and other mighty car-warriors and with elephants and steeds, looked resplendant like a mass of clouds charged with lightning, or like the firmament, in the season of rains, with gathering clouds.*[5] And then the fierce army of the Kurus, bent on battle and protected by Cāntanu's son, rushed impetuously towards Arjuna like the fierce current of the ocean-going (Gangā).†[6] Pervaded by diverse kinds of forces possessed of great strength, and having in its wings elephants, steeds, infantry, and cars in profusion, that array the high-souled (Arjuna) having the prince of apes on his banner beheld from a distance to resemble a mighty mass of clouds.‡[7] That high-souled hero, that bull among men, upon his car furnished with tall standard and unto which were yoked white steeds, at the head of his (own) division and surrounded by a mighty force, proceeded against the whole hostile army.[8] And all the Kauravas with thy sons, beholding that ape-bannered (warrior) with his excellent standard and handsome car-shaft wrapped (in costly cover), accompanied by that bull of Yadu's race, his charioteer in battle, were filled with dismay.[9] And thy army beheld that best of arrays, which was protected by that mighty car-warrior of the world, *viz*, Kiritin, with weap-

---

* In the first line of the 5th, for *rājnā* of the Bengal texts the Bombay text reads *guptā*. I follow the Bengal reading which is better.—T.

† In the second line of the 6th, for *sasāra senā* the Bombay reading is *senā mahogrā* which is better. I adopt it.—T.

‡ I adopt the Bengal reading *Vyāpta* and not *Vyāla*.—T.

ons upraised, to have on each of its corners four thousand elephants.[10] Like the array which was formed on the day before by that best of Kuru's race, *viz*, king Yudhishthira the just, and the like of which had never been seen or heard before by human beings, was this one of today (that the Pāndavas formed).[11] Then on the field of battle thousands of drums were loudly beat, and there arose from all the divisions the loud blare of conchs and the notes of trumpets and many leonine shouts.[12] Then (innumerable) bows of loud twang, stretched by heroic warriors with shafts fixed on the bowstrings, and the blare of conchs, silenced that uproar of drums and cymbals.[13] And the entire welkin filled with that blare of conchs was diffused with an earthy dust that made it wonderful to behold. And with that dust the sky looked as if a vast canopy were spread overhead. And beholding that canopy the brave warriors all rushed impetuously (to battle).[14] And car-warriors, struck by car-warriors, were overthrown with charioteers, steeds, cars, and standards. And elephants, struck by elephants fell down, and foot-soldiers struck by foot-soldiers.[15] And rushing horsemen, struck down by rushing horsemen with lances and swords, fell down with frightful countenances. And all this seemed exceedingly wonderful.[16] And excellent shields decked with golden stars and possessed of solar effulgence, broken by (strokes of) battle-axes and lances and swords, dropped on the field.*[17] And many car-warriors mangled and bruised by the tusks and the strong trunks of elephants, fell down with their charioteers. And many bulls among car-warriors, struck by bulls among car-warriors with their shafts, fell down on the ground.[18] And many persons, hearing the wails of horsemen and foot-soldiers struck with the tusks and other limbs of elephants or crushed by the impetus of those huge creatures rushing in close ranks, fell down on the field of battle.†[19]

---

* The word *Carāvarāni* in the text is rendered by K. P. Singha as quivers. Nilakantha explains it as coats of mail. There can be no doubt, however, that the Burdwan Pundits render it correctly as "shields."—T.

† In the first line of 19th, the Bengal reading *Sāyakānām* is a mistake. The true reading is *Sāditānām*.—T.

"'Then when cavalry and foot-soldiers were falling fast, and elephants and steeds and cars were flying away in fear, Bhishma, surrounded by many mighty car-warriors, obtained sight of him who had the prince of apes on his standard.[20] And the palmyra-bannered warrior, *viz*, the son of Cāntanu, having five palmyras on his standard, then rushed against the diadem-decked (Arjuna) whose car, in consequence of the fleetness of the excellent steeds attached to it, was endued with wonderful energy, and which blazed like the very lightning in consequence of the energy of his mighty weapons.[21] And so against that son of Indra who was like unto Indra himself, rushed many (other) warriors headed by Drona and Kripa and Calya and Vivningçati and Duryodhana and also Somadatta's son, O king![22] Then the heroic Abhimanyu the son of Arjuna, conversant with all weapons and cased in a handsome and golden coat of mail, rushing out of the ranks, quickly proceeded against all those warriors.[23] And that son of Krishna, of feats incapable of being borne, baffling the mighty weapons of all those warriors of great strength, looked resplendant like the adorable Agni himself, on the sacrificial altar, of blazing flames, invoked with high *mantras*.[24] Then Bhishma of mighty energy, creating in that battle a very river whose waters were the blood of foes, and quickly avoiding Subhadrā's son, encountered that mighty car-warrior, *viz*, Pārtha himself.[25] Then Arjuna decked with diadem and garlands, with his *Gāndiva* of wonderful mien and twang loud as the roar of the thunder, shooting showers of arrows, baffled that shower of mighty weapons (shot by Bhishma).[26] And that high-souled warrior having the prince of apes on his banner, of feats incapable of being borne, then poured in return upon Bhishma, that best of all wielders of bows, a shower of sharpe-dged arrows and polished shafts of broad heads.[27] And so thy troops also beheld that shower of mighty weapons shot by him who had the prince of apes on his banner, opposed and dispersed by Bhishma like the maker of day dispelling (the gloom of night).[28] And the Kurus and the Srinjayas, and all the people there, beheld that single combat between those two foremost of men, *viz*, Bhishma and

Dhananjaya, proceeding thus steadily and thus distinguished by the terrible twang of the bows of both ?' "[29]

SECTION LXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'And Drona's son, and Bhuriçravas, and Calya, and Chitrasena, O sire, and the son of Sāmyamani also, all fought with Subhadrā's son.[1] And while fighting alone, with five tigers among men, people beheld him possessed of exceeding energy, like a young lion fighting with five elephants.[2] And no one among them equalled Krishna's son in sureness of aim, in bravery, in prowess, in lightness of hand, or in knowledge of weapons.[3] And beholding his son, that chastiser of foes, thus struggling and displaying his prowess in battle, Pārtha set up a leonine roar.[4] And seeing thy grandson, O king, thus afflicting thy host, thy warriors, O monarch, surrounded him on all sides.[5] Then that smiter of foes, the son of Subhadrā, depending upon his prowess and might, advanced with undepressed heart against the Dhārtarāshtra host.[6] And while battling with the foe in that conflict, his mighty bow endued with the effulgence of the sun, was seen by all to be incessantly stretched for striking.[7] And piercing the son of Drona with one shaft, and Calya with five, he overthrew the standard of Sāmyamani's son with eight shafts.[8] And with another sharp-edged arrow he cut off the mighty dart, of golden staff, resembling a snake, that was hurled at him by Somadatta's son.[9] And the heir of Arjuna, baffling in the very sight of Calya, his hundreds of terrible shafts, slew his four steeds.[10] Thereupon Bhuriçravas, and Calya, and Drona's son, and Sāmyamani, and Cala, struck with fear at the strength of arms displayed by Krishna's son, could not stay before him.[11] Then, O great king, the Trigartas, and the Madras, with the Kekayas, numbering five and twenty thousand, urged by thy son,[12] all of whom were foremost of men accomplished in the science of arms and who were incapable of defeat by foes in battle, surrounded Kiritin with his son, for slaying them both.[13] Then, O king, that vanquisher of foes, the commander of the Pāndava army,

the prince of the Pānchālas, beheld the cars of the father and the son (thus) surrounded (by the foe).[14] Supported by many thousands of elephants and cars, and by hundred thousands of cavalry and infantry,[15] and stretching his bow in great wrath, he advanced against that division of the Madras and the Kekayas, O chastiser of foes, leading his troops with him![16] And that division (of the Pāndava army), protected by that renowned and firm bowman, and consisting of cars, elephants, and cavalry, looked resplendant as it advanced for the encounter.[17] And while proceeding towards Arjuna, that perpetuator of Pānchāla's race struck Caradwat's son on his shoulder-joint with three arrows.[18] And piercing the Madrakas then with ten sharp shafts, he speedily slew the protector of Kritavarman's rear.[19] And that chastiser of foes then, with a shaft of broad head, slew Damana the heir of the high-souled Paurava.[20] Tnen the son of Sāmyamani pierced the Pānchāla prince incapable of defeat in battle, with ten shafts, and his charioteer also with ten shafts.[21] Tnen that mighty bowman, (thus) severely pierced, licked with his tongue the corners of his mouth, and cut off his enemy's bow with a broad-headed shaft of excessive sharpness.[22] And soon the prince of Pānchāla afflicted his foe with five and twenty arrows, and then slew his steeds, O king, and then both the protectors of his wings.[23] Then, O bull of Bharata's race, Sāmyamani's son, standing on that car whose steeds were slain, looked at the son of the renowned king of the Pānchālas.[24] Then taking up a terrible scimitar of the very best kind, made of steel, Sāmyamani's son, walking on foot, approached Drupada's son staying on his car.[25] And the Pāndava soldiers and Dhristadyumna also of Prishata's race beheld him coming like a surging wave and resembling a snake fallen from the skies. And he whirled his sword and looked like the sun and advanced with the tread of an infuriate elephant.[26-27] The prince of Pānchāla then, excited with rage, quickly taking up a mace, smashed the head of Sāmyamani's son thus advancing towards him, sharp-edged scimitar in grasp and shield in hand, as soon as the latter, having crossed the shooting distance, was near enough to his adversary's car.[28-29] And then, O king,

while falling down deprived of life, his blazing scimitar and shield, loosened from his grap, fell down with his body on the ground.[30] And the high-souled son of the Pānchāla king, of terrible prowess, having slain his foe with his mace, won great renown.[31] And when that prince, that mighty car-warrior and great bowman, was (thus) slain, loud cries of *oh* and *alas* arose among thy troops, O sire![32] Then Sāmyamani, excited with rage upon beholding his own son slain, impetuously rushed towards the prince of Pānchāla who was incapable of defeat in battle.[33] And all the kings of both the Kuru and the Pāndava armies boheld those two princes and foremost of car-warriors engage in battle.[34] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, Sāmyamani, excited with wrath, struck Prishata's son with three shafts like (the conductor of an elephant striking) a mighty elephant with hooks.[35] And so Calya also, that ornament of assemblies, excited with wrath, struck the heroic son of Prishata on his breast. And then commenced (another) battle (there)." '[36]

SECTION LXII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I regard destiny to be superior to exertion, O Sanjaya, inasmuch as the army of my son is continually slaughtered by the army of the Pāndavas.[1] Thou always speakest, O *Suta*, of my troops as being slaughtered, and thou always speakest of the Pāndavas as both unslain and cheerful.[2] Indeed, O Sanjaya, thou speakest of mine as deprived of manliness, felled and falling, and slaughtered,[3] although they are battling to the best of their powers and striving hard for victory! Thou always speakest to me of the Pāndavas as obtaining victory and mine as becoming weaker and weaker.[4] O child, I am incessantly hearing of countless causes of unbearable and poignant grief on account of Duryodhana's doings![5] I do not see, O Sanjaya, the means by which the Pāndavas, may be weakened or mine may obtain the victory in battle!'[6]

"Sanjaya said,—'This mighty evil hath proceeded from thee, O king! Listen now with patience to the great slaughter

of men, elephants, steeds, and car-warriors.[7] Dhrishtadyumna, afflicted by Calya with nine shafts, afflicted in return the ruler of the Madras with many shafts made of steel.[8] And then we beheld the prowess of Prishata's son to be highly wonderful inasmuch as he speedily checked Calya that ornament of assemblies.[9] The battle between them lasted for only a short space of time. While angrily engaged in combat, none beheld even a moment's rest taken by any of them.[10] Then, O king, Calya in that battle cut off Dhrishtadyumna's bow with a broad-headed shaft of sharp edge and excellent temper.[11] And he also covered him, O Bhārata, with a shower of arrows like rain-charged clouds pouring their drops on the mountain breast during the season of rains.[12] And while Dhrishtadyumna was being thus afflicted, Abhimanyu, excited with wrath, rushed impetuously towards the car of the ruler of the Madras.[13] Then the wrathful son of Krishna, of immeasurable soul, obtaining the car of the ruler of the Madras (within shooting distance), pierced Ārtāyani with three sharp shafts.*[14] Then the warriors of thy army, O king, desirous of opposing the son of Arjuna in battle, speedily surrounded the car of the ruler of the Madras.[15] And Duryodhana, and Vikarna, and Dusçāsana, and Vivingçati, and Durmarshana, and Dussaha, and Chitrasena, and Durmukha,[16] and Satyavrata, blessed be thou, and Purumitra, O Bhārata,—these, protecting the car of the ruler of the Madras, stationed themselves there.[17] Then Bhimasena, excited with wrath, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race, and the five sons of Draupadi, and Abhimanyu, and the twin sons of Mādri and Pāndu,[18]—these ten opposed those ten warriors of the Dhārtarāshtra army, shooting, O king, diverse kinds of weapons.[19] And they approached and encountered one another in battle, desirous of slaying one another, in consequnce, O king, of thy wicked policy.[20] And when those ten car-warriors, excited with wrath, engaged with the ten others in that awful battle, the other car-warriors of both thy army and of the foe all stood as spectators.[21] And those mighty car-warriors,

* Calya is called Artāyani after the name of his father.—T.

shooting diverse kinds of weapons, and roaring at one another, smote one another fiercely.[22] With wrath engendered in their breasts, desirous of slaying one another, they uttered fierce shouts, challenging one another.[23] And jealous of one another, O king, those kinsfolk united together, encountered one another wrathfully, shooting mighty weapons.[24] And wonderful to say, Duryodhana, excited with rage, pierced Dhrishtadyumna in that battle with four sharp shafts.[25] And Durmarshana pierced him with twenty, and Chitrasena with five, and Durmukha with nine, and Dussaha with seven,[26] and Vivingçati with five, and Dusçāsana with three shafts. Then, O great king, that scorcher of foes, *viz*, Prishata's son,[27] pierced each of them in return with five and twenty shafts, displaying his lightness of hand. And Abhimanyu, O Bhārata, pierced Satyavrata and Purumitra each with ten shafts. Then the sons of Mādri, those delighters of their mother, covered their uncle with showers of sharp arrows. And all this seemed wonderful. Then, O monarch, Calya covered his nephews, those two foremost of car-warriors, desirous of counteracting their uncle's feats, with innumerable arrows. And though thus shrouded by him with arrows, the sons of Mādri wavered not.[28-31] Then the mighty Bhimasena, the son of Pāndu, beholding Duryodhana and desirous of ending the strife, took up his mace.[32] And beholding the mighty-armed Bhimasena with upraised mace and looking like the crested Kailāsa mount, thy sons fled away in terror.[33] Duryodhana, however, excited with wrath, urged the Magadha division consisting of ten thousand elephants of great activity.[34] Accompanied by that elaphant division and placing the ruler of Magadha before him, king Duryodhana advanced towards Bhimasena.[35] Beholding that elephant division advancing towards him, Vrikodara, mace in hand, jumped down from his car, uttering a loud roar like that of a lion.[36] And armed with that mighty mace which was endued with great weight and the strength of adamant, he rushed towards that elephant division, like the Destroyer himself with wide-open mouth.[37] And the mighty-armed Bhimasena endued with great strength, slaying elephants with his mace, wandered over the

field, like the slayer of Vritra among the Dānava host.[38] And with the loud shouts of the roaring Bhima, shouts that made the mind and the heart to tremble with fear, the elephants, crouching close, lost all power of motion.[39] Then the sons of Draupadi, and that mighty car-warrior the son of Subhadrā, and Nakula and Sahadeva, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race,[40] protecting Bhima's rear, rushed behind him, checking all by scattering their arrowy showers like the very clouds pouring rain on the mountain breast.[41] And those Pāndava warriors struck off the heads of their foes battling from the backs of elephants, with well-tempered and keen-edged shafts of diverse forms.*[42] And the heads (of elephant-riders), and arms decked with ornaments, and hands with iron-hooks in grasp, falling fast, resembled a stony shower.[43] And the headless trunks of elephant-riders on the necks of the beasts they rode, looked like headless trees on mountain summits.[44] And we beheld mighty elephants felled and falling, slain by Dhrishtadyumna, the high-souled son of Prishata.[45] Then the ruler of the Magadhas, in that battle, urged his elephant resembling Airāvata himself, towards the car of Subhadrā's son.[46] Beholding that mighty elephant advancing towards him, that slayer of hostile heroes, the brave son of Subhadrā, slew it with a single shaft.[47] And when the ruler of the Magadhas was thus deprived of his elephant, that conqueror of hostile cities, *viz*, the son of Krishna, then struck off that king's head with a broad-headed shaft with silver wings.[48] And Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, having penetrated that elephant division, began to wander over the field, crushing those beasts around him like Indra himself crushing the mountains.[49] And we beheld elephants slain in that battle by Bhimasena, each with only one stroke (of his mace), like hills riven by thunder.[50] And many elephants, huge as hills, were slain there, having their tusks broken, or temples, or bones, or backs, or frontal globes.[51]

---

* These were *kshuras* (arrows with heads like razors), *kshurapras* (arrows with horse-shoe heads), *bhallas* (broad-headed arrows), and *Anjalikas* (arrows with crescent-shaped heads).—T.

And others, O king, deprived of life, lay there with foaming mouths. And many mighty elephants, with frontal globes completely smashed, vomited large quantities of blood.[52] And some, from fear, laid themselves down on the ground like (so many) hillocks. And smeared with the fat and blood (of elephants) and almost bathed in their marrow,[53] Bhima wandered over the field like the Destroyer himself club in hand. And Vrikodara, whirling that mace of his which was wet with the blood of elephants,[54] became terrible and awful to behold, like the wielder of *Pināka* armed with *Pināka*.* And those huge tuskers, while (thus) crushed by the angry Bhima,[55] suddenly fled away, afflicted, crushing thy own ranks. And those mighty bowmen and car-warriors, headed by Subhadrā's son, (all the while) protected that battling hero whirling his gory mace wet with the blood of elephants, like the celestials protecting the wielder of the thunder-bolt.†[56-57] Of terrible soul, Bhimasena then looked like the Destroyer himself. Indeed, O Bhārata, putting forth his strength on all sides mace in arms,[58] we beheld Bhimasena then to resemble Cankara himself dancing (at the end of the *Yuga)*, and his fierce, heavy, and sounding mace to resemble the club of Yama and possessed of the sound of Indra's bolt. And that gory mace of his, smeared with marrow and hair,[59-60] resembled (also) the angry Rudra's *Pināka* while he is engaged in destroying all creatures. As a herdsman chastises his herd of cattle with a goad,[61] so did Bhima smite that elephant division with that mace of his. And while thus slaughtered by Bhima with his mace and with shafts (by those that protected his rear), the elephants ran on all sides, crushing the cars of thy own army. Then driving away those elehphants from the field like a mighty wind driving away masses of clouds, Bhima stood there like the wielder of the trident on a crematorium.' "[62-63]

---

* *I. e*, Civa, the universal destroyer, armed with his bow.—T.

† *Gory mace wet with &c.*, the original is pleonastic.—T.

SECTION LXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'When that elephant division was exterminated, thy son Duryodhana urged his entire army, commanding the warriors to slay Bhimasena.[1] Then the entire army, at the command of thy son, rushed towards Bhimasena who was uttering fierce shouts.[2] That vast and unlimited host difficult of being borne by the very gods, incapable of being crossed like the surging sea on the day of full moon or new moon, abounding with cars, elephants, and steeds, resounding with the blare of conchs and the beat of drums, numbering untold foot-soldiers and car-warriors, and shrouded by the dust (it raised), that very sea of hostile troops incapable of being agitated, thus coming towards him, Bhimasena checked in battle, O king, like the banks resisting the ocean.[3-5] That feat, O king, which we beheld, of Bhimasena the high-souled son of Pāndu, was exceedingly wonderful and superhuman.[6] With his mace he fearlessly checked all those kings angrily rushing towards him, with their steeds, and cars, and elephants.[7] Checking that vast force with mace, that foremost of mighty men, Bhima, stood in that fierce melee, immovable as the mountain Meru.[8] And in that dreadful, fierce, and terrific encounter, his brothers and sons and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race[9] and the sons of Draupadi and Abhimanyu, and the unvanquished Cikhandin,—these mighty warriors,—did not abandon him from fear.[10] Taking up his massive and weighty mace made of *Caika* iron, he rushed towards the warriors of thy army like the Destroyer himself, armed with his club.[11] And pressing crowds of cars and crowds of horsemen down into the earth, the lord Bhima wandered over the field like the fire at the end of the *Yuga*.[12] And Pāndu's son of infinite prowess, crushing crowds of cars with the impetus of his thighs, and slaying thy warriors in battle, wandered like the Destroyer himself at the end of the *Yuga*.[13] And he bagan to grind thy troops with the greatest ease like an elephant crushing a forest of reeds. And dragging car-warriors down from their cars, and warriors fighting from the backs of elephants from the backs of those

beasts,[14] and horsemen from the backs of horses, and foot-soldiers as they stood on the ground, in the army of thy son, the mighty-armed Bhimasena slew them all with his mace like the wind crushing trees by its force.[15] And that mace of his, slaying elephants and steeds, became smeared with fat, marrow, flesh, and blood,[16] and looked exceedingly terrible. And with the bodies of slain men and cavalry lying scattered about,[17] the field of battle wore the appearance of the abode of Yama. And the terrible and slaughtering mace of Bhimasena, resembling the fierce bludgeon of Death and endued with the effulgence of Indra's bolt, looked like *Pināka* of the angry Rudra while destroying living creatures.[18-19] Indeed, that mace of the high-souled son of Kunti, who was slaying all around, looked fiercely resplendant like the bludgeon of the Destroyer himself at the time of the universal dissolution.[20] And beholding him thus routing that large army repeatedly and advancing like Death's self, all the warriors became cheerless.[21] Whithersoever the son of Pāndu, raising his mace, cast his eyes, in consequence of his look alone, O Bhārata, all the troops there seemed to melt away.[22] Beholding Vrikodara of terrible deeds, thus routing the army and unvanquished by even so large a force and devouring the (hostile) division like the destroyer himself with wide-open mouth, Bhishma speedily came towards him,[23-24] on his car of solar effulgence and rattle loud as that of the clouds, (shrouding the welkin) with his arrowy showers like a vapoury canopy charged with rain.[25] Then the mighty-armed Bhimasena, beholding Bhishma thus advancing like the Destroyer himself with wide-open mouth, rushed towards him, excited with wrath.[26] At that moment, that foremost hero of Cini's race, *viz*, Sātyaki of sure aim, fell upon the grandsire, slaying his enemies (along the way) with his firm bow and causing thy son's army to tremble.[27] And all the combatants who belonged to thy army were then, O Bhārata, unable to impede the progress of that hero thus advancing with his steeds of silvery hue and scattering his sharp shafts furnished with handsome wings.[28] At that time the *Rākshasa* Alamvusha (only) succeeded in piercing him with ten shafts. But piercing Alam-

vusha in return with four shafts, the grandson of Cini proceeded on his car.[29] Beholding that hero of Vrishni's race thus advancing and rolling (as it were) through the very midst of his enemies, and checking (as he proceeded) the foremost of Kuru warriors, and repeatedly uttering loud shouts in that battle, thy warriors then, like masses of clouds pouring rain in torrents on the mountain breast, showered their arrowy down-pours on him. They were, however, incapable of impeding the progress of that hero who looked like the noonday sun in his glory.[30-31] And there was none who was not then cheerless, save Somadatta's son, O king! And Bhuricravas the son of Somadatta, O Bhārata, beholding the car-warriors of his own side driven away, rushed against Sātyaki from desire of battle, taking up his bow of fierce impetus.' "*[32]

SECTION LXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Tnen, O king, Bhuriçravas, excited with great wrath, pierced Sātyaki with nine arrows like (the conductor of an elephant piercing) an elephant with the iron hook.[1] Sātyaki also, of immeasurable soul, in the very sight of all the troops, pierced the Kaurava warrior with nine shafts.[2] Then king Duryodhana, accompanied by his uterine brothers, surrounded Somadatta's son thus striving in battle.[3] Smiliarly the Pāndavas also, of great energy, quickly surrounding Sātyaki in that battle, took up their positions around him.[4] And Bhimasena, excited with wrath, and with mace upraised, O Bhārata, encountered all thy sons headed by Duryodhana.[5] With many thousands of cars, and excited with wrath and vindictiveness, thy son Nandaka pierced Bhimasena of great might with keen-edged and sharp-pointed shafts whetted on stone and winged with the feathers of the *kanka* bird. Then Duryodhana, O king, in that great

---

* The last verse is a triplet although the *āryā* measure does not admit of a triplet. The fact is, it should really be counted as a *sloka* and a half.—T.

battle, excited with wrath, struck Bhimasena in the breast with nine sharp shafts. Then the mighty-armed Bhima of great strength mounted on his own excellent car and, addressing (his charioteer) Viçoka, said,—These heroic and mighty sons of Dhritarāshtra, all great car-warriors,[6-9] are exceedingly angry with me and desirous of slaying me in battle. I will slay all these today in thy sight, without doubt.[10] Therefore, O charioteer, guide my steeds in battle with care!—Having said this, O monarch, Prithā's son pierced thy son with sharp-pointed arrows decked with gold. And he pierced Nandaka in return with three arrows between his two breasts.[11-12] Then Duryodhana, having pierced the mighty Bhima with six arrows, pierced Viçoka in return with three other sharp arrows.[13] And Duryodhana, O king, as if smiling the while, with three sharp arrows cut off at the grasp the resplendant bow of Bhima in that battle.[14] Bhima then, that bull among men, beholding his charioteer Viçoka afflicted, in that conflict, with sharp shafts by thy son armed with the bow, and unable to bear it, drew another excellent bow, excited with wrath, for the destruction of thy son, O monarch.[15-16] And excited with great wrath, he also took up an arrow with horse-shoe head and furnished with excellent wings. And with that (arrow) Bhima cut off the excellent bow of the king.[17] Then thy son, excited to the highest pitch of fury, leaving that broken bow aside, speedily took up another that was tougher.[18] And aiming a terrible shaft blazing as Death's rod, the Kuru king, excited with rage, struck Bhimasena between his two breasts.[19] Deeply pierced therewith, and greatly pained, he sat down on the terrace of his car. And while seated on the terrace of his car, he swooned away.[20] Beholding Bhima thus unmanned, the illustrious and mighty car-warriors of the Pāndava army, headed by Abhimanyu, could not bear it.[21] And those warriors then, with great steadiness, showered on thy son's head a thick down-pour of fierce shafts.[22] Then the mighty Bhimasena, regaining consciousness, pierced Duryodhana at first with three shafts and then with five.[23] And that mighty bowman the son of Pāndu then pierced Calya with five and twenty shafts furnished with golden wings. And

pierced therewith, Calya was borne away from the battle.[24] Then thy fourteen sons, *viz*, Senāpati, Sushena, Jalasandha, Sulochana, Ugra, Bhimratha, Bhima, Viravāhu, and Alolupa, Durmuka, Dushpradarsha, Vivitsu, Vikata, and Sama, then encountered Bhimasena in battle.[25-26] United together they rushed against Bhimasena, and with eyes red in wrath, showering countless arrows, they pierced him deeply.[27] Then the heroic and mighty Bhimasena of strong arms, beholding thy sons and licking the corners of his mouth like a wolf in the midst of smaller creatures, fell upon them with the impetuosity of Gadura. And the son of Pāndu then cut off the head of Senāpati with a shaft having a horse-shoe head.[28-29] And then with delighted soul and laughing the while, that mighty-armed warrior, piercing Jalasandha with three arrows, despatched him to Yama's abode.[30] And next, smiting Sushena, he sent him to the presence of Death's self. And with a single broad-headed shaft he felled on the ground the head, handsome as the moon, of Ugra, decked with turban and adorned with ear-rings. And in that battle, Pāndu's son Bhima, with seventy shafts, despatched Virvāhu to the other world, with his steeds and standard and charioteer. And smiling the while, O king, Bhimasena quickly despatched both the brothers Bhima and Bhimaratha also to Yama's abode. And then in that great battle, in the very sight of all the troops, with an arrow of horse-shoe head Bhima despatched Sulochana also to Death's domain. Then the rest of thy sons that were there, O king, beholding the prowess of Bhimasena and while thus being struck by that illustrious warrior, all fled from battle from fear of Bhima.[31-36] Then Cāntanu's son, addressing all the mighty car-warriors (of his army), said,—That fierce bowman, Bhima, excited with wrath in battle, is slaying the mighty sons of Dhritarāshtra and other heroic car-warriors united together, whatever their knowledge of weapons, and whatever their bravery! Therefore, seize ye all that son of Pāndu![37-38]—Thus addressed, all the troops of the Dhārtarāshtra army, excited with rage, rushed towards Bhimasena endued with great might.[39] And Bhagadatta, O king, on his elephant of rent tremples, suddenly rushed thither

where Bhimasena was stationed.[40] And rushing thither to the combat, he shrouded Bhima with his shafts whetted on stone so as to make him completely invisible, like the clouds covering the sun.[41] Those mighty car-warriors, however, (of the Pāndava army), relying on the prowess of their own arms, could not bear that shrouding of Bhima (with the arrowy showers of Bhagadatta).[42] They, therefore, surrounding Bhagadatta on all sides, poured on him their arrowy down-pours. And they pierced his elephant also with showers of shafts.[43] And struck by all those mighty car-warriors with showers of fierce shafts of diverse kinds, that elephant, O king, of the ruler of the Prāg-yotishhas,[44] with blood trickling down his body, became beautiful to behold on the field of battle like a mass of clouds tinged with the rays of the sun.[45] And that elephant with temporal juice trickling down, urged by Bhagadatta, rushed against all those warriors, like Death's self urged by the Destroyer,[46] with double his former speed and shaking the very earth with his tread. Then all those mighty car-warriors, beholding that terrible mien of the animal,[47] and regarding it as irresistible, became cheerless. Then king Bhagadatta, that tiger among men, excited with rage, struck Bhimasena between his two breasts with a straight shaft. Deeply pierced by the king with that shaft, that great bowman and mighty car-warrior, with limbs deprived of sensation in consequence of a swoon, sat down on his car, holding his flagstaff. And beholding those mighty car-warriors terrified and Bhimasena in a swoon,[48-50] Bhagadatta of great prowess uttered a loud roar. Then, O king, that terrible *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha, beholding Bhima in that state, became excited with rage and there and then disappeared from the view. And creating a terrible illusion enhancing the fears of the timid,[51-52] he reappeared in a moment assuming a fierce form. Himself riding on an Airāvata created by his powers of illusion,[53] the other *Dik*-elephants, *viz*, Anjana, Vāmana, and Mahāpadma of blazing glory, followed him.[54] And those three mighty elephants, ridden by *Rākshasas*, were of huge form, with juice profusely trickling down in three lines,[55] and endued with great speed and prowess. Then Ghatot-

kacha urged his own elephant to battle,[56] desirous, O chastiser of foes, of slaying Bhagadatta with his elephant. And those other elephants, excited with fury and each endued with four tusks, urged by *Rākshasas* of great strength, fell from all sides upon Bhagadatta's elephant, afflicting him with their tusks.[57-58] And the elephant of Bhagadatta, thus afflicted by those elephants, (already) struck with arrows and feeling great pain, uttered loud cries that resembled the thunder of Indra.[59] And hearing those terrible and loud cries of that roaring elephant, Bhishma, addressing Drona and Suyodhana and all the kings, said,[60]—The mighty bowman Bhagadatta is battling with the wicked-souled son of Hidimvā, and hath fallen into great distress![61] That *Rākshasa* is of huge form, and the king also is very wrathful. Engaged in battle, they would certainly prove each other's death.[62] Loud shouts also are heard, of the rejoicing Pāndavas, and the cries of agony of (king Bhagadatta's) terrified elephant![63] Blessed be ye, let us all go there for rescuing the king, for if left unprotected in battle, he will soon give up his life![64] Ye warriors of great energy, do, as I bid, even now! Ye sinless ones, make no delay! The combat deepens and becometh fierce, making the hair to stand on end.[65] That commander of a division is high-born, endued with great bravery, and devoted to us! Ye warriors of unfading glory, it is meet that his rescue should be effected by us![66]—Hearing these words of Bhishma, all the kings (of the Kuru army), headed by Bharadwāja's son, desirous of rescuing Bhagadatta,[67] proceeded with great speed to where the ruler of the Prāg-yotishas was. And beholding the enemy advancing, the Pānchālas with the Pāndavas, headed by Yudhishthira, pursued them behind. Then that prince of *Rākshasas*, endued with great prowess, beholding that division (of the enemy) advanc,[68-69] uttered a fierce roar deep as that of the thunder. Hearing that roar of his and beholding those battling elephants,[70] Cāntanu's son Bhishma once again addressed Bharadwāja's son and said,—I do not like to fight (today) with the wicked-souled son of Hidimva![71] Endued with great might and energy, he is at present well-supported. He is incapable of being vanquished now by

the wielder of the thunder-bolt himself.[72] Of sureness of aim, he is a great smiter. As regards ourselves, our animals are tired (today). We have also been greatly mangled by the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas.[73] I do not like a fresh encounter with the victorious Pāndavas. Let the withdrawal of our army, therefore, be proclaimed today! Tomorrow we will fight with the foe![74]—Hearing these words of the grandsire, the Kauravas, afflicted with the fear of Ghatotkacha, and availing of the advent of night as a pretext, gladly did what the grandsire said.[75] And after the Kauravas had withdrawn, the Pāndavas, crowned with victory, uttered leonine roars, mingling them with the blare of conchs and the notes of pipes.[76] Thus did the battle take place that day, O Bhārata, between the Kurus and the Pāndavas headed by Ghatotkacha.[77] And the Kauravas also, vanquished by the Pāndavas and overcome with shame, retired to their own tents when night came.[78] And those mighty car-warriors, the sons of Pāndu, their bodies mangled with shafts and themselves filled with (the result of) the battle, proceeded, O king, towards their encampment,[79] with Bhimasena and Ghatotkacha, O monarch, at their head. And filled with great joy, O king, they worshipped those heroes.[80] And they uttered diverse kinds of shouts which were mingled with the notes of trumpets. And they uttered many leonine roars that were mingled with the blare of conchs.[81] And those high-souled warriors shouted, making the very earth tremble therewith, and grinding, as it were, O sire, the hearts of thy sons![82] And it was thus that those chastisers of foes, when night came, proceeded towards their tents. And king Duryodhana, cheerless at the death of his brothers,[83] passed some time in thoughtfulness, overcome with grief and tears. Then making all the arragements for his camp according to the rules (of military science), he began to pass the hours in meditation, scorched with grief and afflicted with sorrow on account of his (slain) brothers.' "[84]

SECTION LXV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Hearing of those feats of the sons of Pāndu that are incapable of being achieved by the gods themsleves, my heart, O Sanjaya, is filled with fear and wonder![1] Hearing also of the humiliation of my sons in every way, great hath been my anxiety as to the consequence that will ensue![2] The words uttered by Vidura will, no doubt, consume my heart! Everything that hath happened seemeth to be due to Destiny, O Sanjaya![3] The combatants of the Pāndava army are encountering and smiting those best of warriors having Bhishma for their head, those heroes conversant with every weapon![4] What ascetic penances have been performed by the high-souled and mighty sons of Pāndu, what boon have they obtained, O son, or what science is known to them,[5] in consequence of which, like the stars in the firmament, they are undergoing no diminution? I cannot bear it that my army should be repeteadly slaughtered by the Pāndavas![6] The divine chastisement, highly severe, hath fallen on me alone! Tell me everything truly, O Sanjaya, about that for which the sons of Pāndu have become unslayable and mine slayable! I do not see the other shore of this (sea of) distress![*7-8] I am like a man desirous of crossing the vasty deep with my two arms alone! I certainly think that a great calamity hath overtaken my sons![9] Without doubt, Bhima will slay all my sons! I do not see that hero who is able to protect my sons in battle![10] The death of my sons in this battle, O Sanjaya, is certain! It behoveth thee, therefore, O *Suta*, to tell me who asketh thee, everything about the true cause of all this! Beholding his own troops retreating from battle, what did Duryodhana do?[11-12] And what did Bhishma and Drona, and Kripa, and Suvala's son, and Jayadratha, and that mighty bowman, *viz*, Drona's son, and Vikarna of great strength, do?[13] When also, O thou of great wisdom, my sons turned back from the fight, what, O Sanjaya, became the resolve of those high-souled warriors?'[14]

---

* The Bengal reading *parantapa* is a mistake for *kathanchana*.—T.

"Sanjaya said,—"Listen, O king, with attention, and having listened, let it go to thy heart! Nothing (in this) is the result of incantation, nothing the result of illusion of any kind![15] Nor have the sons of Pāndu created any new terrors! They are endued with might; and they are fighting by fair means in this battle.[16] Desirous of high fame, the sons of Prithā always do every act, including even the support of their lives, agreeably to the ways of morality.[17] Endued with every kind of prosperity, and possessed of great strength, they never desist from battle, keeping their eyes on righteousness. And victory is there where righteousness is.[18] It is for this, O king, that the sons of Prithā are unslayable in battle and always victorious! Thy sons are of wicked souls and are addicted to sinfulness.[19] They are cruel and wedded to mean acts. It is for this that they are being weakened in battle. Thy sons, O king, like despicable men, did many cruel and deceitful acts to the sons of Pāndu. Disregarding, however, all those offences of thy sons,[20-21] the sons of Pāndu always concealed those acts, O elder brother of Pāndu! Thy sons also, O king, on numerous occasions humiliated the Pāndavas.[22] Let them now reap the terrible fruit, like poison, of that persistent course of sinfulness![*23] That fruit should be enjoyed by thee also, O king, with thy sons and kinsmen, since thou, O king, couldst not be awakened even though counselled by thy well-wishers![24] Repeatedly forbidden by Vidura, by Bhishma, by the high-souled Drona, and by myself also, thou didst not understand,[25] rejecting our words intended for thy good and worthy of thy acceptance, like a sick man rejecting the medicine prescribed! Accepting the views of thy sons thou hadst regarded the Pāndavas as already vanquished![26] Listen again, O king, to what thou hast asked me, *viz*, the true cause, O chief of the Bharatas, of the victory of the Pāndavas![27] I will tell thee what I have heard, O chastiser of foes! Duryodhana had asked the grandsire this very question.[28] Beholding his brothers, all mighty car-warriors, vanquished in

---

* *Kimpāka* is a species of cucurbitaceous plant. To avoid periphrasis I render it poison.—T.

battle, thy son Duryodhana, O Kaurava, with heart confounded with grief, repairing with humility during the night to the grandsire possessed of great wisdom, asked him this question. Listen to me, O monarch, about it all![29-30]

"'Duryodhana said,—Drona, and thou, and Calya, and Kripa, and Drona's son, and Kritavarman the son of Hridikā, and Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas,[31] and Bhuriçravas, and Vikarna, and Bhagadatta of exceeding prowess, are all regarded as mighty car-warriors! All of these, again, are high-born, and prepared to throw away their lives in battle![32] It is my opinion that these are a match for even the three worlds (united together)! Even all the warriors of the Pāndava army (united together) cannot bear your prowess![33] A doubt has arisen in my mind. Explain it to me who enquireth of thee! Who is it relying on whom the Pāndavas are vanquishing us repeatedly![34]—

"'Bhishma said,—Listen, O king, to the words that I will speak unto thee, O thou of Kuru's race! Frequently wert thou addressed by me to the same affect but thou didst not do what I said![35] Let peace be made with the Pāndavas, O best of the Bharatas! I regard this to be beneficial both to the world and thee, O lord![36] Enjoy this Earth, O king, with thy brothers and be happy, gratifying all thy well-wishers and delighting thy kinsfolk.[37] Although I cried myself hoarse before this, thou didst not yet listen to me, O sire! Thou hadst always disregarded the sons of Pāndu. The effect of all that hath now overtaken thee![38] Listen also, O king, from me as I speak of it, O lord, to the reason why the Pāndavas, whose achievments tire them not, are unslayable![39]* There is not, was not, will not be, the being in all the worlds who would or will be able to vanquish the sons of Pāndu who are all protected by the wielder of *Çārnga*![40] Listen truly, O

---

* *Aklishtakarman* literally means one who is not tired with what he does; hence, one who easily achieves the highest feats. When applied to Krishna or any divine personage, it means one who does everything by a fiat of his will, without being dependant on means like ordinary persons. It may also mean one of pure or white deeds.—T.

thou that art conversant with morality, to that ancient history which was recited to me by sages of souls under control![41] In days of yore, all the celestials and the *Rishis*, united together, waited reverentially on the Grandsire upon the mountains of Gandhamādana.[42] And the Lord of all creatures, seated at his ease in their midst, beheld an excellent car stationed in the firmament, blazing with effulgence.[43] Having ascertained (everything about it) by meditation, joining his hands with restrained heart, Brahman, with delighted soul, made his salutations to the highest divine Being.[44] And the *Rishis* and the celestials, beholding in the firmament (the form thus) displayed, all stood up with joined hands, their eyes fixed on that wonder of wonders.[45] Worshipping him duly, Brahman, the foremost of all conversant with *Brahma*, the Creator of the universe, acquainted with the highest morality, uttered these high words:[46]—Thou art the Glory of the Universe having the Universe for thy form! Thou art the Lord of the Universe! O thou whose protection extendeth through that the whole Universe! O thou hast the Uuiverse for thy work! O thou that hast thy soul under control! Thou art the Supreme Master of the Universe! Thou art Vāsudeva! Therefore, I seek refuge in thee that art the soul of *Yoga* and the highest Divinity![47] Victory to thee that art the Supreme God of the Universe! Victory to thee that art ever employed in the good of the worlds! Victory to thee that art the Lord of *Yoga*, thee that art all-powerful! Victory to thee that art prior and subsequent to *Yoga*![48] Having the lotus springing from thy navel, and having large expansive eyes, victory to thee that art the Lord of the Lord of the Universe! O Lord of the Past, the Present, and the Future, victory to thee that art the embodiment of gentleness, thee that art the son of sons![49] O thou that art the receptacle of untold attributes, victory to thee that art the refuge of all things! Thou art *Nārāyana*, thou art incapable of being understood, victory to thee that art the wielder of the bow called *Çārnga*![50] Victory to thee that art endued with every attribute, O thou that hast the Universe for thy form, O thou that art ever hale! O Lord of the Universe, O thou of mighty arms, victory to thee that art

always ready for benefiting the worlds![51] O great Snake, O huge Boar, O first Cause, O thou of tawny locks, victory to thee that art Almighty! O thou of yellow robes, O Lord of the cardinal and the subsidiary points of the compass, O thou that hast the Universe for thy abode, O thou that art Infinite, O thou that hast no decay![52] O thou that art the Manifest, O thou that art the Unmanifest, O thou that art immeasurable Space, O thou that hast all thy senses under control, O thou that always achievest what is good! O thou that art immeasurable, O thou that alone knowest thy own nature, victory to thee that art deep, O thou that art the giver of all wishes![53] O thou that art without end, O thou that art known as *Brahma*, O thou that art Eternal, O thou that art the Creator of all creatures! O thou that art ever successful, O thou whose acts always display wisdom, O thou that art conversant with morality, O thou that givest victory![54] O thou of mysterious Self, O thou that art the Soul of all *Yoga*, O thou that art the Cause of everything that hath sprung into existence! O thou that art the Knowledge of the selfs of all beings, O Lord of the worlds, victory to thee that art the Creator of all beings![55] O thou that hast thyself for thy origin, O thou that art highly blessed, O thou that art the Destroyer of everything, O thou that art the inspirer of all mental thoughts, victory to thee that art dear to all conversant with *Brahma*![56] O thou that art busy in creation and destruction, O controller of all wishes, O Supreme Lord! O thou that art the Cause of *Amrita*, O thou that art All existent things, O thou that art the fire that appears at the end of the *Yuga*, O thou that art the giver of victory![57] O Divine Lord of the Lord of all creatures, O thou that hast the lotus springing from thy navel, O thou of mighty strength! O thou that art sprung from thyself, O thou that art the great elements in their primal state, O thou that art the soul of all (religious) rites, victory to thee that givest all![58] The goddess Earth represents thy two feet, the cardinal and the subsidiary directions represent thy arms, and the heavens thy head! I am thy form, the celestials constitute thy limbs, and the Sun and the Moon are thy two eyes![59] Ascetic austerities, and Truth born of morality

and (religious) rites, constitue thy strength. Fire is thy energy, the wind is thy breath, and the waters have sprung from thy sweat.[60] The twin Açwins always constitute thy ears, and the goddess Saraswati is thy tongue. The *Vedas* are thy Knowledge, and upon thee resteth this Universe.[61] O lord of *Yoga* and *Yogins*, we do not know thy extent, thy measure, thy energy, thy prowess, thy might, thy origin![62] O God, O Vishnu, filled with devotion in thee, and depending on thee with vows and observances, we ever worship Thee as the highest Lord, the God of gods![63] The *Rishis*, the gods, the *Gandharvas*, the *Yakshas*, the *Rākshasas*, the *Panngas*, the *Piçāchas*, human beings, beasts, birds, and reptiles,[64] —all these were created by me on Earth through Thy grace! O thou having the lotus springing form thy navel, O thou of large expansive eyes, O Krishna, O dispeller of all woe,[65] Thou art the Refuge of all creatures, and Thou their Guide! Thou hast the Universe for thy mouth! Through thy grace, O Lord of the gods, the gods are ever happy![66] Through thy grace the Earth hath always been freed from terrors! Therefore, O thou of large eyes, take birth in the race of Yadu![67]* For the sake of establishing righteousness, for slaying the sons of Diti, and for upholding the Universe, do what I have said, O Lord![68] O Vāsudeva, that which is thy supreme Mystery, that, O Lord, hath been sung by me through Thy grace![69] Having created the divine Sankarshana out of thy own Self by Thyself, thou didst then, O Krishna, create Thyself as Pradyumna born of thyself.[70] From Pradyumna thou didst then create Aniruddha who is known as the eternal Vishnu. And it was Aniruddha who created me as Brahman the upholder of the Universe.†[71] Created out of Vāsudeva's essence, I have, therefore, been created by Thee. Dividing Thyself into portions, take birth, O Lord, among human beings![72] And slaughtering the *Asuras* there for the happiness of all

---

* Literally, "be a perpetuator (son) of Yadu's race!"—T.

† 70 and 71 in the Bengal texts are read incorrectly. I adopt the Bombay readings. The Bengal readings do not give any intelligible meaning.—T.

the worlds, and establishing righteousness, and winning renown, thou wilt again truly attain to *Yoga !*[73] The regenerate *Rishis* on Earth, and the gods, O thou of infinite prowess, dovoted to thee, sing of thy wondrous Self under those names that belong to thee ![74] O thou of excellent arms, all classes of creatures rest on Thee, having taken refuge in Thee, thou giver of boons ! The regenerate ones sing Thee as the world's bridge, having no beginning, middle, and end, and as possessed of unlimited *Yoga !*—' "[75]

SECTION LXVI.

" 'Bhishma said,—Then that illustrious Deity, the Lord of the Lord of the worlds, replied unto Brahman in a soft and deep voice, saying,[1]—*Through Yoga, O sire, all that is wished by thee is known to me. It will be even as thou wishest !* —And saying this, he disappeared there and then.[2] Then the gods, *Rishis*, and *Gandharvas*, filled with great wonder and curiosity, all asked the Grandsire, saying,[3]—*Who is that one, O Lord, that was worshipped by thy illustrious self with such humility and praised in such high words ? We desire to hear !*[4]—Thus addressed, the illustrious Grandsire replied unto all the gods, the regenerate *Rishis*, and the *Gandharvas*, in sweet words, saying,[5]—He who is called THAT, He who is Supreme, He who is existent at present and who will be for all time He, who is the highest Self, He who is the Soul of beings, and He who is the great Lord,[6] I was talking even with His ever-cheerful Self, ye bulls among gods ! The Lord of the Universe was solicited by me, for the good of the Universe,[7] to take his birth among mankind in the family of Vasudeva. I said unto him,—For the slaughter of the *Asuras* take thy birth in the world of men ![8]—Those *Daityas* and *Dānavas* and *Rākshasas*, of fierce form and great strength, that were slain in battle, have been born among men ![9] Indeed, the illustrious and mighty Lord, taking birth in the human womb, will live on the Earth, accompanied by Nara.[10] Those ancient and best of *Rishis*, *viz*, Nara and Nārāyana, are incapable of defeat in battle by even all the celestials

united together.[11] Of immeasurable effulgence, those *Rishis*, *viz*, Nara and Nārāyana, when born together in the world of men, will not be known (as such) by fools.*[12] He from whose Self, I, Brahman, the Lord of the whole Universe, have sprung, that Vāsudeva, that Supreme God of all the worlds, is worthy of your adoration![13] Endued with great energy, and bearing the conch, the discus, and the mace, he should never be disregarded as a man, ye best of deities![14] He is the Supreme Mystery, the Supreme refuge, the Supreme *Brahma*, and the Supreme glory![15] He is without decay, Unmanifest, and Eternal. He it is who hath been sung as *Purusha*, though none can comprehend him![16] The divine Artificer hath sung of him as the Supreme Energy, the Supreme Felicity, and the Supreme Truth.[17] Therefore, the Lord Vāsudeva of immeasurable prowess should never be disregarded as a man by all the *Asuras* and the gods with Indra at their head![18] That person of foolish understanding is called a wretch, who, from disregard, speaketh of Hrishikeça as only a man.[19] People speak of him as one labouring under darkness who disregardeth Vāsudeva, that *Yogin* of illustrious soul, for his entering into a humam form.[20] People speak of him as one labouring under darkness who knoweth not that Divine personage, that Soul of the mobile and the immobile creation, that one bearing the auspicious whirl (on his breast), that one of dazzling effulgence, that one from whose navel hath sprung the (primeval) lotus.[21] He who disregardeth that wearer of the diadem and the *Kaustuva* gem, that dispeller of the fears of his friends, that high-souled one, sinketh in thick darkness.[22] Having known all these truths duly, that Lord of the worlds, *viz*, Vāsudeva, should be adored by every one, ye best of gods![23]—

"'Bhishma continued,—Having said these words unto those gods and *Rishis* in days of yore, the illutrious Grandsire, dismissing them all, repaired to his own abode.[24] And the gods and the *Gandharvas*, and the *Munis* and the *Apsaras* also, having listened to those words spoken by Brahman,

* The present tense is used in the original for the future.—T.

were filled with delight and repaired to heaven.[25] Even this was heard by me, O sire, from *Rishis* of cultured souls talking in their assembly, of Vāsudeva, that Ancient one![26] And, O thou that art well versed in scriptures, I heard this from Rāma the son of Jamadagni, and Mārkandeya of great wisdom, and Vyasa and Nārada also.[27] Having learnt all this* and heard of the illustrious Vāsudeva as the Eternal Lord, the Supreme God of all the worlds, and the great Master,[28] from whom hath sprung Brahman himself the Father of the Universe, why should not that Vāsudeva be adored and worshipped by men?[29] Forbidden wert thou before, O sire, by sages of cultured souls, (who said unto thee), —*Never go to war with that Vāsudeva armed with bow,*[30] *as also with the Pāndavas!*—This, from folly, thou couldst not apprehend. I regard thee, therefore, as a wicked *Rākshasa!* Thou art, besides, enveloped in darkness![31] It is for this that thou hatest Govinda, and Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu, for who else among men would hate the divine Nara and Nārāyana?[32] It is for this, O king, that I say unto thee that this one is Eternal and Unfading, pervading the whole Universe, Unchanging, the Ruler, Creator, and Upholder of all, and the truly Existent![33] He it is who upholdeth the three worlds, He is the Supreme Lord of all mobile and immobile creatures, and He is the great Master, He is Warrior, He is Victory, He is Victor, and He is the Lord of all nature![34] O king, He is full of goodness, and divested of the qualities of Darkness and Passion! There where Krishna is, there is righteousness; and there is victory where righteousness is![35] It is by the *Yoga* of his Supreme Excellence, and the *Yoga* of his Self, that the sons of Pāndu, O king, are supported! Victory, therefore, will surely be theirs.[36] He it is that always imparteth to the Pāndavas an understanding endued with righteousness, and strength in battle; and He it is that always protecteth them from danger.[37] He is the Eternal God, pervading all beings, and ever blessed! He of whom thou hast asked me is known by the name of Vāsudeva.[38] He it is whom

* Literally, "about this subject."—T.

Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Cudras, having distinctive features of their own, humbly serve and worship with restrained hearts and performing their own duties.[39] He it is who towards the close of the *Dwāpara Yuga* and the beginning of the *Kali Yuga* is sung of, with Sankarshana, by believers with devotion![40] It is that Vāsudeva that createth, *Yuga* after *Yuga*, the worlds of the gods and the mortals, all cities girt by the sea, and the region of human habitation!—' "[41]

SECTION LXVII.

" 'Duryodhana said,—In all the worlds Vāsudeva is spoken of as the Supreme Being. I desire, O grandsire, to know his origin and glory!'[1]—

" 'Bhishma said,—Vāsudeva is the Supreme Being. He is the God of all gods. None superior to Him of eyes like lotus petals is to be seen, O bull of Bharata's race![2] Mārkandeya speaketh of Govinda as the Most Wonderful and the Most High, as All beings, as the All-Soul, as the Highest Soul, and as the Supreme Male Being.[3] Water, Air and Fire,—these three were created by Him. That Divine Master and Lord of all the worlds created this Earth![4] That Supreme Being of illustrious soul laid himself down on the waters. And that Divine Being made up of all kinds of energy slept thereon in *Yoga*.[5] From his mouth He created Fire, and from his breath, the Wind. Of unfading glory, He created from his mouth Speech and the *Vedas*.[6] It was thus that He created first the worlds and also the gods along with the diverse classes of *Rishis*. And He created decay and death also of all creatures, as well as birth and growth.[7] He is Righteousness and of righteous soul. He is the giver of boons and the giver of all (our) wishes. He is the Actor and the, Action, and He is himself the Divine Master.*[8] He first made the Past, the Present, and the Future; He is the Creator of the Universe; He is of illustrious soul; He is the

---

* The Bengal reading is *Sa vai devas*. The Bombay reading is *Purvadevas*.—T.

Master possessed of unfading glory.[9] He created Sankarshana the First-born of all creatures. He created the divine Cesha who is known as *Ananta*,[10] and who upholdeth all creatures and the Earth with her mountains. Of Supreme Energy, He it is whom the regenerate ones know by *Yoga* meditation.[11] Sprung from the secretions of his ear, the great *Asura* known by the name of Madhu, fierce and of fierce deeds and entertaining a fierce intent[12] and about to destroy Brahman, was slain by that Supreme Being. And, O sire, in consequnce of Madhu's slaughter, the gods, the *Dānavas*, and human beings,[13] and *Rishis*, call Janārddana the slayer of Madhu. He is the great Boar, He is the great Lion, and He is the Three-stepped Lord.*[14] He is the Mother and the Father of all living creatures. There never was, nor will be, any superior to Him of eyes like lotus petals.[15] From His mouth He created the Brāhmanas; and from His two arms the Kshatriyas. And from His thighs, O king, He created the Vaiçyas, and from His feet He created the Cudras.[16] One waiting dutifully on Him, observant of vows with ascetic austerities on days of the full moon and the new moon, is sure to obtain the Divine Keçava, that refuge of all embodied creatures, that essence of *Brahma* and of *Yoga*. Keçava is the highest Energy, the Grandsire of all the worlds.[17-18] Him, O king, the sages call *Hrishikeça* (the lord of the senses)! Him also should all know as the Preceptor, the Father, and the Master.[19] Inexhaustible regions (of blessedness) are won by him with whom Krishna is gratified. He also who, in a place of fear, seeketh the protection of Keçava,[20] and he who frequently readeth this description, becometh happy and endued with every prosperity. Those men who

---

* The three-stepped lord. Vishnu became *Vàmana* or the dwarf for robbing the *Asura* Vali of his dominions. Disguised in that shape he asked of Vali three steps of land. Vali, smiling at the littleness of what was asked, gave it. But when the dwarf expanded his form and covered the heavens and the earth with only two step of his, no space could be found for the third steps. Vali was forthwith seized and bound as a promise-breaker, and sent to reside in the nether regions.—T.

attain to Krishna are never beguiled.[21] Janārddana always saveth those that are sunk in great terrors. Knowing this truly, O Bhārata, Yudhishthira,[22] with his whole soul, O king, hath sought the shelter of the highly blessed Keçava, the Lord of *Yoga*, and the Lord of the Earth!—' "[23]

SECTION LXVIII.

"'Bhishma said,—Hear from me, O king, this hymn that was uttered by Brahman himself. This hymn was in days of old communicated by regenerate *Rishis* and the gods (to men) on Earth.[1]—Nārada described thee as the Master and the Lord of the god of gods and all the *Sādhyas* and the celestials, and as one acquainted with the nature of the Creator of the worlds![2] Mārkandeya spoke of thee as the Past, the Present, and the Future, and the Sacrifice of Sacrifices, and the austerity of austerities.[3] The illustrious Bhrigu said of thee that thou art the God of the gods, that thine is the ancient form of Vishnu![4] Dwaipāyana said of thee that thou art Vāsudeva of the Vasus, the establisher of Cakra, and the God of gods and all creatures.[5] In days of old on the occasion of procreating creatures, the sages spoke of thee as Daksha the Father of creation. Angiras said that thou art the Creator of all beings.[6] Devala said of thee that the unmanifest All is thy body, and the Manifest is in thy mind, and that the gods are all the result of thy breath.[7]* With thy head is pervaded the heavens, and thy two arms support the Earth. In thy stomach are the three worlds, and thou art the Eternal Being![8] Even thus do men exalted by asceticism know thee. Thou art the SAT of SAT, with *Rishis* gratified with sight of Selfs.†[9] With royal sages of liberal minds, never retreating from battle and having morality for their highest end, thou, O slayer of Madhu, art the sole refuge![10] Even thus is that illustrious and Supreme Being, *viz*, Hari, adored and worshipped by Sanatkumāra and other ascetics endued with *Yoga*.[11] The

---

* Word of command.—T.

† *I. e.*, really existent among all things.—T.

truth about Keçava, O sire, is now narrated to thee, both in brief and detail! Turn thy heart in love to Keçava!—"[12]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing this sacred story, thy son, O great king, began to regard highly both Keçava and those mighty car-warriors, *viz*, the sons of Pāndu.[13] Then, O monarch, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu once more addressed thy son, saying,—Thou hast now heard truly, O king, about the glory of the high-souled Keçava and of Nara about which thou hadst asked me! Thou hast also heard about the object for which both Nara and Nārāyana have taken their births among men.[14-15] Thou hast also been told the reason why those heroes are invincible and have never been vanquished in battle, and why also, O king, the sons of Pāndu are incapable of being slain in battle by anybody.[16] Krishna beareth great love for the illustrious sons of Pāndu. It is for this, O king of kings, that I say—*Let peace be made with the Pāndavas!*[17]—Restraining thy passions, enjoy thou the Earth with thy mighty brothers (around thee)! By disregarding the divine Nara and Nārāyana, thou shalt certainly be destroyed![18]—Having said these words, thy sire became silent, O monarch, and dismissing the king, entered his tent.[19] And the king also came back to his (own) tent, having worshipped the illustrious grandsire. And then, O bull of Bharata's race, he laid himself down on his white bed for passsing the night in sleep.' "[20]

SECTION LXIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the night had passed away and the sun had risen, the two armies, O king, approached each other for battle.[1] Beholding each other, each rushed in united ranks towards the other, excited with rage and desirous of vanquishing the other.[2] And in consequence of thy evil policy, O king, the Pāndavas and the Dhārtarāshtras thus rushed, cased in mail and forming battle-array, for striking each other.[3] And the array that Bhishma protected from all sides, O king, was of the shape of a *Makara*.* And so the Pāndavas

* A fabulous aquatic animal resembling an alligator.—T.

also, O king, protected the array they had formed (of their troops).[4] Then thy sire Devavrata, O great king, that foremost of car-warriors, proceeded in advance, supported by a large division of cars.[5] And others, *viz*, car-warriors, infantry, elephants, and calvalry, all followed him, each stationed in the place allotted.[6] And beholding them prepared for battle, the illustrious sons of Pāndu arrayed their troops in that invincible and prince of arrays called the *Çyena*.*[7] And *in* the beak of that array shone Bhimasena of great strength. And *in* its two eyes were the invincible Cikhandin and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race.[8] And *in* the head was the heroic Sātyaki of prowess incapable of being baffled. And *in* its neck was Arjuna shaking his *Gāndiva*.[9] And in its left wing was the high-souled and blessed Drupada with his son and supported by an *Akshauhini* of all forces.[10] And the king of the Kekayas, owning an *Akshauhini*, formed the right wing (of that array). And in its back were the sons of Draupadi, and Subhadrā's son of great prowess.[11] And in its tail was the heroic king Yudhishthira himself, of excellent prowess, supported by his twin brothers.[12] Then in the battle (that ensued), Bhima, penetrating the *Makara* array (of the Kauravas) through its mouth, and approaching Bhishma, covered him with his shafts.[13] Then in that great battle, Bhishma possessed of great prowess shot his mighty weapons, confounding the combatants of the Pāndavas disposed in battle array.[14] And when the combatants (of the Pāndava army) were thus confounded, Dhananjaya, speedily proceeding, pierced Bhishma at the van of battle with a thousand arrows.[15] And counteracting, in that conflict, the weapons shot by Bhishma, Arjuna stood ready for the combat, supported by his own division filled with cheerfulness.†[16] Then king Duryodhana, that foremost of mighty men, that great car-warrior, beholding that terrible carnage of his troops and remembering the slaughter of his brothers (on the previ-

---

* Formed after the shape of the hawk.—T.

† The Bengal reading is *Yudhi sandhāya*. The Bombay reading is *pratisamvārya*. I adopt the latter.—T.

ous day), came quickly towards Bharadwāja's son, and addressing him, said,—O preceptor, O sinless one, thou art ever my well-wisher! Relying on thee as also on the grandsire Bhishma, ourselves hope to vanquish without doubt the very gods in battle,[17-19] let alone the sons of Pāndu that are destitute of energy and prowess! Blessed be thou, act in such a way that the Pāndavas may be slain![20]—Thus addressed in battle by thy son, Drona penetrated into the Pāndava array in the very sight of Sātyaki.[21] Then, O Bhārata, Sātyaki checked the son of Bharadwāja, and (thereupon) ensued a battle that was fierce in its incidents and awful to behold.[22] Then Bharadwāja's son, excited with rage and endued with great prowess, as if smiling the while, pierced the grandson of Cini with ten shafts at his shoulder-joint.[23] And Bhimasena also, exicited with rage, pierced Bharadwāja's son (with many shafts), desirous of protecting Sātyaki, O king, from Drona that foremost of all wielders of weapons![24] Then Drona, and Bhishma, and Calya also, O sire, excited with rage, covered Bhimasena, in that battle, with their shafts.[25] Thereupon Abhimanyu excited with wrath, and the sons of Draupadi, O sire, pierced with their sharp-pointed shafts all those warriors with upraised weapons.[26] Then, in that fierce battle, the great bowman Cikhandin rushed against those two mighty warriors, *viz*, Bhishma and Drona who, excited with rage, had (thus) fallen upon the Pāndavas.[27] Firmly grasping his bow whose twang resembled the roar of the clouds, that hero, shrouding the very Sun with his arrows, quickly covered his antagonists therewith.[28] The grandsire of the Bharatas, however, getting Cikhandin before him, avoided him, remembering the femininity of his sex.[29] Then, O king, urged by thy son, Drona rushed to battle, desirous of protecting Bhishma in that stress.[30] Cikhandin, however, approaching Drona that foremost of all wielders of weapons, avoided, from fear, that warrior resembling the blazing fire that appears at the end of the *Yuga*.[31] Then, O king, thy son with a large force, desirous of winning great glory, proceeded to protect Bhishma.[32] And so the Pāndavas also, O king, firmly setting their hearts upon victory, and placing Dhananjaya at

their head, steadily advanced towards Bhishma.[33] And the battle then that took place between the combatants of both armies desirous of victory and fame, was fierce and highly wonderful, resembling that (in days of yore) between the gods and *Dānavas.*' "[34]

SECTION LXX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then Bhishma the son of Cāntanu fought fiercely,* desirous of protecting thy sons from the fear of Bhishmasena.[1] And the battle that then took place between the kings of the Kaurava and the Pāndava armies was awful in the extreme and destructive of great heroes.[2] And in that general engagement, so fierce and terrible, tremendous was the din that arose, touching the very heavens.[3] And in consequence of the shrieks of huge elephants and the neigh of steeds and the blare of conchs and beat of drums, the uproar was deafening.[4] Fighting for the sake of victory, the mighty combatants endued with great prowess roared at one another like bulls in a cow-pen.[5] And heads cut off in that battle with keen-edged shafts, incessantly falling, created, O bull of Bharata's race, the appearance of a stony shower in the welkin.[6] Indeed, O bull of Bharata's race, innumerable were the heads lying on the field of battle, decked with ear-rings and turbans and resplendent with ornaments of gold.[7] And the Earth was covered with limbs cut off with broad-headed shafts, with heads decked with ear-rings, and with arms adorned with ornaments.[8] And in a moment the whole field was strewn over with bodies cased in mail, with arms decked with ornaments, with faces beautiful as the moon and having eyes with reddish corners, and with every limb, O king, of elephants, steeds, and men![9-10] And the dust (raised by the warriors) looked like a thick cloud, and the bright implements of destruction, like flashes of lightning. And the noise made by the weapons resembled the roar of thunder.[11] And that fierce and awful passage-at-arms, O Bhārata, between the

---

* Literally, "made a fierce battle."—T.

Kurus and the Pāndavas, caused a very river of blood to flow there.[12] And in that terrible, fierce, and awful battle causing the hair to stand on end, Kshatriya warriors incapable of defeat incessantly poured their arrowy showers.[13] And the elephants of both thy army and the enemy's, afflicted with those arrowy showers, shrieked aloud and ran hither and thither in fury.*[14] And in consequence of (the twang of) bows, endued with great energy, of fierce and heroic warriors excited with fury, and of the flappings of their bowstrings against their leathern fences, nothing could be distinguished.†[15] And all over the field which looked like a lake of blood, headless trunks stood up, and the kings, bent upon slaying their foes, rushed to battle.[16] And brave warriors of immeasurable energy and possessed of arms resembling stout bludgeons, slew one another with arrows and darts and maces and scimitars.[17] And elephants, pierced with arrows and deprived of riders to guide them with hooks, and steeds destitute of riders, wildly ran in all directions.[18] And many warriors, O best of the Bharatas, belonging to both thy army and that of the foe, deeply pierced with shafts jumped up and fell down.‡[19] And in that encounter between Bhima and Bhishma, heaps of arms and heads, as also of bows and maces and spiked clubs and hands and thighs, of legs and ornaments and bracelets, were seen lying over the field.[20-21] And here and there over the field, O king, were seen large bodies of unretreating elephants and steeds and cars.[22] And the Kshatriya warriors, urged on by fate, slew one another with maces, swords, lances, and straight shafts.[23] And others endued with great heroism and accomplished in fight, encountered one another with their bare arms that resembled spiked clubs made of iron.[24] And other heroic warriors of thy army, engaged with the combatants of the Pāndava

---

* The last line of 14 is read variously.—T.

† The Bengal reading *Ghorānāmatitejasā* is what I adopt. The Bombay reading *Ghorānnāmamitaujasām* involves a useless hyperbole. Of course, *atitejasā* qualifies *dhanushā* in the next line.—T.

‡ The last half of the second line of 19 is differently read in the Bengal texts. I adopt the Bombay reading.—T.

host, fought on slaying one another with clenched fists and knees, and slaps and blows, O king![25] And with the fallen and falling warriors and those weltering in agony on the ground, the field of battle everywhere became, O king, terrible to behold.[26] And car-warriors, deprived of their cars and grasping excellent swords, rushed at one another, desirous of slaughter.[27] Then king Duryodhana, surrounded by a large division of Kālingas, and placing Bhishma ahead, rushed towards the Pāndavas.[28] And so the Pāndava combatants also, supporting Vrikodara, and owning fleet animals, rushed, excited with rage, against Bhishma' "[29].

SECTION LXXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Bholding his brothers and the other kings engaged in battle with Bhishma, Dhananjaya, with weapons upraised, rushed against the son of Gangā.[1] Hearing the blare of *Pānchajanya* and the twang of the bow *Gāndiva*, and seeing also the standard of Prithā's son, a great fear entered our hearts.[2] And the standard that we beheld, O king, of the wielder of *Gāndiva* bore the device of a lion's tail and looked like a blazing mountain in the welkin. Beautiful and of celestial workmanship, it was variegated with diverse hues, and looking like a risen comet it could not be obstructed by trees.[3-4] And in that great battle, the warriors beheld *Gāndiva*, the back of whose staff was decked with pure gold, look beautiful like a flash of lightning in the midst of a mass of clouds in the firmament.[5] And while slaying the combatants of thy army, the shouts we heard uttered by Arjuna seemed to resemble the loud roars of Indra himself, and the slaps also of his palms were frightfully loud.[6] Like a roaring mass of clouds charged with lightning and aided by a raging tempest, Arjuna incessantly poured his arrowy showers on all sides, completely shrouding the ten points of the compass.[7] Dhananjaya then, possessed of terrible weapons, quickly proceeded towards the son of Gangā. Deprived of our senses in consequence of his weapons, we could not then distinguish the East from the West.[8] And thy warriors then, O bull

of Bharata's race,—their animals tired, steeds slain, and hearts depressed,—thoroughly confounded* and huddling close to one another, sought Bhishma's protection along with all thy sons. And in that battle Bhishma the son of Cāntanu became their protector.[9-10] Struck with fear, car-warriors jumping down from their cars, and cavalry soldiers jumping down from the backs of their steeds, and the foot-soldiers where they stood, all began to fall down on the earth.[11] Hearing the twang of *Gāndiva* that resembled the roar of the thunder, all thy warriors were struck with fear and seemed, O Bhārata, to melt away.[12] Then, O king, with many huge and fleet steeds of the Kāmvoja breed, and surrounded by many thousands of Gopas with a large Gopāyana force,[13] and supported by the Madrás, the Sauviras, the Gāndhāras, and the Trigartas, and surrounded by all the principal Kālingas, the king of the Kālingas,[14] and king Jayadratha accompanied by all the kings and supported by a large force of diverse races with Dusçāsana at their head,[15] and fourteen thousand principal horsemen, urged by thy son, surrounded the son of Suvala (for supporting him).[16] Then in that battle, all the Pāndavas, united together, and riding on separate cars and animals, began, O bull of Bharata's race, to slaughter thy troops.†[17] And the dust raised by car-warriors and steeds and foot-soldiers, looking like a mass of clouds, made the field of battle exceedingly awful.[18] And with a large force consisting of elephants, steeds and cars, and armed with lances and bearded darts and broad-headed shafts, Bhishma engaged in battle with the diadem-decked (Arjuna).[19] And the king of Avanti engaged with the ruler of the Kāçis, and the ruler of the Sindhus engaged with Bhimasena. And king Yudhishthira with his sons and counsellors engaged with Calya the famous chief of the Madras. And Vikarna engaged with Sahadeva, and Chitrasena with Cikhandin.[20-21] And the Matsays, O

---

* *Kāndigbhutās*, lit, "not knowing which point of the compass was which."—T.

† In the second line of 17, the Bombay text incorrectly reads *Arjunam* for *Pāndavās*.—T.

king, engaged with Duryodhana and Cakuni; and Drupada, and Chekitāna, and that mighty car-warrior Sātyaki,[22] engaged in battle with the high-souled Drona aided by his son. And Kripa and Kritavarman both rushed against Dhrishtadyumna.[23] And thus, all over the field, rushing bodies of horse, of elephants and cars, engaged with one another in battle.[24] And although there were no clouds in the sky, yet flashes of lightning were seen. And all the points of the compass were covered with dust. And, O king, fierce meteors were seen, falling with thundering noise.[25] And violent winds blew and a shower of dust fell from above. And the sun, covered by the dust raised by the troops, disappeared in the firmament.[26] And all the warriors, covered by that dust and battling with weapons, were deprived of their senses.[27] And the sound made by weapons, all capable of penetrating through every armour and hurled from heroic arms, became a tremendous uproar.[28] And, O bull of Bharata's race, weapons hurled from excellent arms and possessed of stellar brightness, illumined the whole welkin.[29] And variegated shields made of bulls' hides and embossed with gold were strewn, O bull of Bharata's race, all over the field.[30] And heads and limbs were seen falling on all sides, cut off with swords and scimitars possessed of solar effulgence.[31] And great car-warriors, the wheels, *akshas*, and boxes of whose cars were broken, fell down on the ground, their steeds slain and their tall standards tumbling down.*[32] And many car-warriors having been slain, their steeds, mangled with weapons, fell down as they ran dragging the cars (to which they were yoked).[33] And in many places over the field, excellent steeds, afflicted with arrows, with limbs mangled, and with their traces on, ran, dragging the car-yokes after them.[34] And many car-warriors, with their charioteers and steeds, were seen, O king, to be crushed by single elephants endued with great strength.†[35] And in that battle, in

*In the first line of 32, the Bengal reading is *Mahābhujàs*. The correct reading seems to be (as in the Bombay text) *Mahàdhvajās*.—T.

† The last half of the second line of 35 in the Bengal texts is vicious. I adopt the Bombay reading.—T.

the midst of large forces, many elephants, scenting the odor of the temporal juice of their compeers, began to snuff the breeze repeatedly.[36] And the whole field was strewn with slain elephants, deprived of life by means of broad-headed shafts, and falling, down with the wooden edifices and the guides on their backs.[37] And many elephants, in the midst of large forces crushed, with the standards and warriors on their backs, by huge compeers urged by their guides, fell down on the field.[38] And many car-shafts, O king, were seen to be broken in that battle by huge elephants using their trunks each of which resembled the trunk of the prince of elephants (called Airāvata).[39] And many car-warriors also, in that conflict, the *Jālas* of whose cars had been broken, were, like branches of trees dragged down by tuskers, seized by the hair of their heads and, thrashed violently on the ground, were crushed into shapeless masses.[40] And other huge elephants, dragging cars that were entangled with other cars, ran in all directions shrieking loudly.[41] And those elephants, thus dragging those cars, looked like others of their species dragging lotus stalks growing in lakes.[42] And thus was that vast field of battle strewn over with cavalry soldiers and foot-soldiers and great car-warriors and standards.' "[43]

SECTION LXXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Cikhandin with Virāta the king of the Matsyas speedily approached Bhishma that invincible and mighty bowman.[1] And Dhananjaya encountered Drona and Kripa, and Vikarna, and many other kings, brave in battle, all mighty bowmen endued with great strength,[2] as also that mighty bowman the ruler of the Sindhus supported by his friends and kinsmen, and many kings of the west and the south also, O bull of Bharata's race![3] And Bhimasena proceeded against that mighty bowman, *viz*, thy vindictive son Duryodhana, as also against Dussaha.[4] And Sahadeva proceeded against those invincible warriors, *viz*, Cakuni and that mighty car-warrior Uluka, those great bowmen, who were sire and son.[5] And that mighty car-warrior Yudhishthira, deceit-

fully treated by thy son, proceeded in that battle, O king, against the elephant-division (of the Kauravas).[6] And that son of Pāndu and Mādri, *viz*, the heroic Nakula capable of wringing tears from the foe, engaged in battle with the excellent car-warriors of the Trigartas.[7] And those invincible warriors, *viz*, Sātyaki, and Chekitāna, and the mighty son of Subhadrā, proceeded against Cālwa and the Kaikeyas.[8] And Dhrishtaketu and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha, both invincible in battle, proceeded against the car-division of thy sons.[9] And that mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna, that generalissimo (of the Pāndava forces) of immeasurable soul, engaged in battle, O king, with Drona of fierce achievements.[10] And it was thus that those heroic and mighty bowmen of thy army and the Pāndavas, engaged in battle, began to strike one another.[11] And when the sun had reached the meridian and the sky was brilliantly illumined by his rays, the Kauravas and the Pāndavas began to slay one another.[12] Then cars, furnished with standards from whose tops pennons were afloat, variegated with gold and covered with tiger-skins, looked beautiful as they moved on the field of battle.[13] And the shouts of warriors engaged in battle from desire of vanquishing one another, became as loud as leonine roars.[14] And that encounter which we beheld between the heroic Srinjayas and the Kurus, was fierce in the extreme and highly wonderful.[15] And in consequence of the arrows shot all around, we could not, O king, distinguish, O chastiser of foes, the firmament, the sun, and the cardinal and the subsidiary points of the compass.[16] And the splendour, like that of the blue lotus, of darts with polished points, of bearded lances hurled (at the foe), of well-tempered sabres and scimitars, of variegated coats of mail, and of the ornaments (on the persons of the warriors), illumined the wellkin and the cardinal and the subsidiary points with its effulgence.[17-18] And the field of battle in many places, O king, shone in consequence of the bodies of monarchs whose effulgence resembled that of the moon and the sun.[19] And brave car-warriors, tigers among men, shone in that battle, O king, like the planets in the firmament.[20] And Bhishma, that foremost of car-warriors, excited with rage, checked

the mighty Bhimasena in the very sight of all the troops.[21] And the impetuous shafts shot by Bhishma, furnished with golden wings, and whetted on stone, and rubbed with oil, pierced Bhima in that battle.[22] Then Bhimasena endued with great strength hurled at him, O Bhārata, a dart of fierce impetuosity that resembled a wrathful snake.[23] But Bhishma in that combat cut off with straight shafts that dart with staff made of gold and difficult of being borne, as it coursed impetuously towards him.[24] And with another broad-headed shaft, sharp and well-tempered, he cut off Bhimasena's bow, O Bhārata, into two parts.[25] Then, O king in that battle, Sātyaki, coming quickly towards Bhishma, pierced thy sire with innumerable keen-edged and sharp-pointed shafts of fierce impetuosity shot from his bowstring drawn to the ear. Then Bhishma, aiming an exceedingly fierce shaft,[26-27] felled the charioteer of the Vrishni hero from his box in the car. And when the charioteer of Sātyaki's car was (thus) slain, his steeds, O king, bolted away.[28] Endued with the speed of the tempest or the mind, they ran wild over the field. Then cries were uttered by the whole army which became a loud uproar.[29] And exclamations of *oh* and *alas* arose from the high-souled warriors of the Pāndava army. (And those cries said)—*Run, seize, check the horses, go in haste!*[30]—And this uproar followed Yuyudhāna's car. Mean-while, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu[31] began to slay the Pāndava forces like Indra slaying the *Dānavas*. But the Pānchālas and the Somakas, though slain by Bhishma thus,[32] forming yet a laudable resolution, rushed towards Bhishma. And other warriors of the Pāndava army, headed by Dhrishtadyumna, and desirous of slaughtering the ranks of thy son, rushed towards Cāntanu's son in that battle. And so also, O king, the warriors of thy army, headed by Bhishma and Drona, impetuously rushed towards their foes. And thereupon another battle tooks place.' "[33-34]

SECTIN LXXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'King Virāta then pierced that mighty car-warrior, *viz*, Bhishma, with three shafts. And that great car-warrior pierced his (antagonist's) steeds also with three shafts.[1] Thereupon Cāntanu's son Bhishma, that great bowman of mighty strength and extreme quickness of hand, pierced Virāta in return with ten shafts furnished with golden wings.[2] And that terrible bowman and mighty car-warrior of firm hand, *viz*, Drona's son, pierced with six shafts the wielder of *Gāndiva* between his two breasts.[3] Thereupon that grinder of foes, *viz*, Phālguna, that slayer of hostile heroes, cut off Açwatthāman's bow and deeply pierced him in return with five shafts.[4] Deprived of his senses by anger, and unable to bear the cutting off of his bow in that battle, Drona's son, taking up another bow that was tougher,[5] pierced Phālguna, O king, with ninety sharp-shafts, and Vāsudeva also with seventy fierce arrows.[6] Then, with eyes red in wrath, Phāl guna, with Krishna, breathing long and hot breaths, reflected for a moment.[7] Firmly grasping the bow with his left hand, that grinder of foes, *viz*, the wielder of *Gāndiva*, excited with rage, fixed on his bowstring a number of fierce shafts, sharp and perfectly straight, and capable of taking (the foe's) life. And that foremost of mighty men speedily pierced Drona's son, in that battle, with those arrows.[8-9] And those arrows, penetrating through his armour, drank his life-blood. But though thus pierced by the wielder of *Gāndiva*, Drona's son wavered not.[10] Shooting in return similar arrows at Pārtha, he stayed, unperturbed, in that battle, desirous, O king, of protecting Bhishma of high vows.[11] And that feat of his was applauded by the foremost warriors of the Kuru army, consisting, as it did, of his having encountered the two Krishnas united together.[12] Indeed, Açwatthāman daily battled fearlessly amid the forces, having obtained from Drona all weapons with the methods also of their withdrawal.[13]—This one is the son of my preceptor. He is again the dear son of Drona. He is especially a Brāhmana, and, therefore, worthy of my

regard!"[14]—Thinking so, that scorcher of foes, the heroic Vibhatsu, that foremost of car-warriors, showed mercy to the son of Bhāradwāja.[15] Avoiding the son of Drona, Kunti's son endued with great prowess and having white steeds (yoked unto his car), began to fight, displaying great quickness of arms and causing a great carnage of thy troops.[16] Duryodhana then pierced that great bowman Bhima with ten shafts winged with vulturine feathers, adorned with gold, and whetted on stone.[17] Thereupon Bhimasena, excited with wrath, took up a tough and well-adorned bow capable of taking the life of the foe, and also ten sharp shafts.[18] And steadily aiming those sharp-pointed shafts of fierce energy and impetuous velocity, and drawing the bowstring to his ear, he deeply pierced the king of the Kurus in his wide chest.[19] Thereupon the gem hanging on his breast on threads of gold, surrounded by those shafts, looked beautiful like the Sun in the firmament surrounded by the planets.[20] Thy son, however, endued with great energy, thus struck by Bhimasena, could not bear it (coolly), like a snake unable to bear the sounds of a man's slap.[21] Excited with wrath and desirous of protecting his army, he then pierced Bhima in return, O king, with many shafts whetted on stone and endued with golden wings.[22] Thus struggling in battle and mangling each other fiercely, those two mighty sons of thine looked like a pair of celestials.[23]

"'That tiger among men and slayer of hostile heroes, *viz*, the son of Subhadrā, pierced Chitrasena with many sharp shafts and Purumitra also with seven shafts.[24] And piercing Satyavrata too with seventy shafts, that hero resembling Indra himself in battle, began as it were to dance on the field, and caused us much pain.[25] Chitrasena then pierced him in return with ten shafts, and Satyavrata with nine, and Purumitra with seven.[26] Then the son of Arjuna, thus pierced, while yet covered with blood, cut off the large and beautiful bow of Chitrasena that was capable of checking foes.[27] And cutting through his coat of mail, he pierced his antagonsit's breast with a shaft. Then the princes of thy army, all heroic and mighty car-warriors,[28] excited with wrath and united together in that conflict, pierced him with sharp arrows. But Abhi-

manyu, acquainted with the mightiest weapons, smote them all with keen shafts.[29] Beholding that feat of his, thy sons then surounded the son of Arjuna, who was consuming thy army in that conflict like a swelling fire of blazing flames consuming a heap of dry grass in summer. And the son of Subhadrā, while smiting thy troops (thus), seemed to grow in splendour.[30-31] Seeing that conduct of his, thy grandson Lakshmana then, O monarch, quickly fell upon the son of Subhadrā.[32] Thereupon that mighty car-warrior Abhimanyu, excited with wrath, pierced Lakshmana graced with auspicious marks, as also his charioteer, with six sharp arrows.[33] But Lakshmana also, O king, pierced Subhadrā's son with many keen shafts. And that feat, O king, seemed to be highly wonderful.[34] Then that mighty car-warrior, *viz*, Abhimanyu, slaying the four steeds as also the charioteer of Lakshmana with sharp shafts, rushed towards the latter.[35] Thereupon Lakshmana, that slayer of hostile heroes, staying on that car of his whose steeds had been slain, and excited with wrath, hurled a dart towards the car of Subhadrā's son.[36] Abhimanyu, however, with his sharp arrows, cut off that irresistible dart of fierce mien, resembling a snake, and coming impetuously towards him.[37] Then Kripa, taking Lakshmana up on his own car, bore him away from the conflict, in the very sight of all the troops.[38] Then when that awful conflict became general, the combatants rushed against one another, desirous of taking one another's life.[39] And the mighty bowmen of thy army and the great car-warriors of the Pāndava host, prepared to lay down their lives in battle, slew one another.[40] With hair dishevelled, divested of their coats of mail, deprived of their cars, and their bows broken, the Srinjayas fought with the Kurus with their bare arms.[41] Then the mighty-armed Bhishma, endued with great strength, and excited with wrath, slew with his celestial weapons the troops of the high-souled Pāndavas.[42] And the earth became covered with the fallen bodies of elephants deprived of their guides, of men and steeds and car-warriors and cavalry-soldiers.' "[43]

SECTION LXXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then, O king, the mighty-armed Sātyaki invincible in battle, drawing in that conflict an excellent bow capable of bearing a great strain,[1] shot innumerable winged arrows resembling snakes of virulent poison, displaying his wonderful lightness of hand.[2] And while slaying his foes in battle, so quickly did he draw the bow, take out his arrows, fix them on the bowstring, and letting them off throw them among the foe, that he then seemed to be a mass of clouds pouring a thick shower of rain.[3-4] Beholding him then thus blazing up (like a swelling fire), king Duryodhana, O Bhāratā, despatched ten thousand cars against him.[5] But that great bowman, Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled and possessed of great energy, slew with his celestial weapons all those mighty car-warriors.[6] Having achieved, bow in hand, that fierce feat, that hero then approached Bhuriçravas in battle.[7] And Bhuriçravas also, that enhancer of the fame of the Kurus, beholding the Dhārtarāshtra ranks thus felled by Yuyudhāna, rushed in wrath against the latter.[8]* Drawing his great bow which resembled that of Indra himself in hue, he shot thousands of shafts, O monarch, looking like snakes of virulent poison and possessed of the strength of the thunder, displaying his extreme lightness of hand. Thereupon the combatants that followed Sātyaki, unable to bear those shafts of fatal touch, fled away, O king, in all directions, abandoning, O monarch, the invincible Sātyaki in that conflict.[9-11] Beholding this, the ten mighty sons of Yuyudhāna, all mighty car-warriors of great renown, cased in excellent mail, bearing diverse arms, and possessing excellent standards,[12] approaching that great bowman *viz*, Bhuriçravas, in battle, wrathfully addressed that warrior bearing on his standard the device of a sacrificial stake, and said these words :[13] —Listen, O kinsman of the Kauravas, O thou that art pos-

* The pronoun *sa* in the first line of 8 refers to Bhuriçravas. The Burdwan Pundits erroneously take it as referring to Duryodhana, being misled by the words *Kurunàm Kirtivardhanas*.—T.

sessed of great strength! Come, fight in battle with us, *i. e.*, with either all of us jointly or with each of us separately![14] Vanquishing us in battle thou mayst win great renown, or ourselves, vanquishing thee, will have great gratification![*15]— Thus addressed by them, that mighty hero endued with great strength and proud of his prowess, that foremost of men, beholding them before him, replied unto them, saying,[16]— Ye heroes, ye have said well! If such be now your wish, fight ye then all together with care! I shall slay all of you in battle![17]—Thus addressed by him, those heroic and mighty bowmen endued with great activity covered that chastiser of foes with a thick shower of arrows.[18] And it was towards the afternoon, O king, that that dreadful battle took place between Bhuriçravas alone on one side and the many united together on the other.[19] And those ten heroes covered that single mighty car-warrior with showers of arrows like the clouds showering rain on a mountain cliff in the season of rains.[20] That mighty car-warrior, however, cut off those clouds of shafts shot by them resembling the fatal darts of Death or the very thunder in effulgence, before they could reach him.†[21] They then, surrounding that mighty-armed warrior, endeavored to slay him. But the son of Somadatta, excited with rage, cut off their bows, O Bhārata, and then their heads, with sharp shafts. Thus slain, they fell down, O monarch like mighty trees felled by the thunder.‡[22-23] Beholding then his mighty sons thus slain in battle, the Vrishni hero (Sātyaki), O king, uttering a loud roar, rushed against Bhuriçravas.[24] And those mighty warriors then each pressed his car against the other's. And each of them in that combat slew

---

* The last half of the second line of 15 is read differently in the Bombay text.—T.

† The Bombay reading *açaniprabhān* (which I adopt) is better than the Bengal reading *açaniswanān*, for in connection with *yamadanda* immediately preceding, the latter would be incongrous if not unmeaning.—T.

‡ An additional verse occurs here in connection with the slaughter of Sātyaki's sons, in the Bombay text. The Bengal texts omit it.—T.

the other's car-steeds.[25] And both deprived of their cars, those mighty warriors jumped down on the ground. And both taking up large scimitars and excellent shields, encountered each other.[26] And those tigers among men, stationed for the encounter, shone brightly. Then Bhimasena, O king, quickly coming up to Sātyaki thus armed with an excellent scimitar, took him up on his own car. And thy son also, O monarch, speedily took up Bhuriçravas on his car, in that battle, at the very sight of all the bowmen.

"'Meanwhile, during the continuance of that battle, the Pāndavas, O bull of Bharata's race, excited with wrath, fought with that mighty car-warrior Bhishma. And when the sun assumed a red hue, Dhananjaya exerting himself actively,[27-30] slew five and twenty thousand great car-warriors. These, urged on by Duryodhana for slaying Pārtha,[31] were thus completely destroyed before they could even come up to him, like insects on a blazing fire. Then the Matsyas and the Kekayas, all accomplished in the science of arms,[32] surrounded that mighty car-warrior Pārtha as also his son (for supporting them). Just at that time the sun disappeared,[33] and all the combatants seemed to be deprived of their senses. Then at twilight, O king, thy sire Devavrata, his animals having been tired, caused the troops to be withdrawn. And the troops of both the Pāndavas and the Kurus, filled with fear and anxiety in course of that dreadful encounter, proceeded to their respective encampments. And then, O Bhārata, having repaired to their respective camps, the Pāndavas with the Srinjayas, and the Kauravas also, rested for the night agreeably to the rules (of military science).'"[34-36]

SECTION LXXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having rested for a while, O king, both the Kurus and the Pāndavas, after the night had passed away, once more went out for battle.[1] And then loud was the uproar, O king, that arose of mighty car-warriors as they prepared for battle, and of tuskers as these were being equipped for the conflict, and of infantry as they put on their armour,

and of steeds also, O Bhārata![2] And the blare of conchs and the beat of drums became deafening in all parts of the field.[3] Then king Yudhishthira addressed Dhrishtadyumna and said, —O mighty-armed one, dispose the troops in the array called *Makara* that scorcheth the foe![4]—Thus addressed by Prithā's son, that mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna, that foremost of combatants on cars, issued the order, O great king, to the car-warriors (for forming the *Makara* array).[5] Drupada, and Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu, formed the head of that array, and Sahadeva and that mighty car-warrior Nakula formed its two eyes.[6] And the mighty Bhimasena formed its beak. And Subhadrā's son, and the sons of Draupadi, and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha,[7] and Sātyaki, and king Yudhishthira the just, were stationed in its neck. And king Virāta, that commander of a large division, formed its back,[8] supported by Dhrishtadyumna and a large force. And the five Kekaya brothers constituted its left wing,[9] and that tiger among men, *viz*, Dhrishtaketu, and Chekitāna of great prowess, stationed in the right wing, stood for protecting that array.[10] And its two feet, O monarch, were constituted by that mighty car-warrior the blessed Kuntibhoja, and Catānika, supported by a large force.[11] And that great bowman, the mighty Cikhandin, surrounded by the Somakas, and Irāvat, were stationed in the tail of that *Makara* array.[12] And having, O Bhārata, formed their great array, the Pāndavas, O monarch, equipped in mail at dawn, again stood for battle.[13] And with elephants and steeds and cars and infantry, and with standards upraised and umbrellas set up, and armed with bright, whetted weapons, they quickly proceeded against the Kauravas.[14]

" 'Then thy sire Devavrata, beholding the (Pāndava) army thus arrayed, disposed his army, O king, in counter-array after the form of a huge crane.[15] And in its beak was Bharadwāja's son (Drona). And Açwatthāman and Kripa, O monarch, formed its two eyes.[16] And that foremost of all bowmen, *viz*, Kritavarman, united with the ruler of the Kamvojahs and with the Vālhikas, was stationed, O king, in its head.[17] And in its neck, O Bhārata, were Curasena, and thy son Duryodhana, O king, surrounded by many kings.[18] And

the ruler of the Prāgyotishas, united with the Madras, the Sauviras, and the Kekayas, and surrounded by a large force, was stationed, O king, in its breast.[19] And Suçarman the king of Prasthala, accompanied by his own troops, stood, accoutred in mail, in the left wing.[20] And the Tushāras, the Yavanas and the Cakas, along with the Chulikas, stood in the right wing, O Bhārata, of that array.[21] And Crutāyush and Catāyush and Somadatta's son, O sire, were stationed in the rear of that array, protecting one another.[22]

"'Then the Pāndavas, O king, rushed against the Kauravas for battle. The sun, O Bhārata, had risen when the battle commenced.[23] And elephants proceeded against elephants. And horsemen rushed against horsemen, and car-warriors against car-warriors, O king, and against elephants also, in that dreadful conflict.[24] And car-men rushed against riders of elephants, and riders of elephants against horsemen.[25] And car-warriors engaged with foot-soldiers, and cavalry with infantry. And all the warriors, O king, excited with wrath, rushed against one another in battle.[26] And the Pāndava army, protected by Bhimasena and Arjuna and the twins, looked beautiful like the night decorated with stars.[27] And thy army also, with Bhishma and Kripa and Drona and Calya and Duryodhana, and others, shone like the firmament spangled with the planets.[28] And Bhimasena the son of Kunti, endued with great prowess, beholding Drona, rushed against the division of Bharadwāja's son, borne by his steeds of great fleetness.[29] Then Drona, excited with wrath in that conflict and endued with great energy, pierced Bhima with nine shafts made wholly of iron, aiming his vital limbs.[30] Deeply pierced by Bharadwāja's son in that conflict, Bhima despatched Drona's charioteer to the region of Yama.[31] Thereupon the son of Bharadwāja, endued with great prowess, himself restraining his steeds, began to consume the Pāndava army like fire consuming a heap of cotton.[32] And while thus slaughtered, O king, by Drona and Bhishma, the Srinjayas along with the Kekayas took to flight.[33] And so thy troops also, mangled by Bhima and Arjuna, became deprived of their senses as they stood, like a beautiful female in her pride.[34]

And in that conflict destructive of heroes, great was the distress, O Bhārata, that befell both thy army and theirs.[35] And we beheld the wonderful sight, O Bhārata, of the troops fighting with one another regardlessof their lives.*[36] And the Pāndavas and the Kauravas, O king, in that conflict, fought with one another counteracting one another's weapons.' "[37]

SECTION LXXVI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Our army is possessed of many excellencies. Consisting of diverse forces, its efficiency is great. It is again arrayed according to the rules of science and, therefore, ought to be irresistible.[1] It is attached to us exceedingly, and always devoted to us. It is submissive, and free from the faults of drunkenness and licentiousness. Its prowess had before been tested.[2] The soldiers are neither very old nor very young. They are neither lean nor corpulent. Of active habits, of well-developed and strong frames, they are free from disease.[3] They are cased in mail and well equipt with arms. They are exercised in every kind of weapons. They are skilled in encounters with swords, with bare arms, and with maces.[4] They are well exercised in lances, sabres, and darts, as also in iron clubs, short arrows, javelins, and mallets.[5] They are devoted to all kinds of armed exercises, and are adepts in mounting upon and descending from the backs of elephants, in moving forward and stepping back, in smiting effectually, in marching and retreating. Many a time have they been tested in the management of elephants and steeds and cars.[6-7] Having been examined duly they have been entertained on pay, and not for the sake of lineage, nor from favor, nor from relationship,[8] nor from strength of attachments, nor from connections of birth and blood. They are all respectable and honest, and their kinsmen have been well-treated and gratified by us.[9] We have done them many good offices. They are, besides, all renowned men and endued with great mental vigor. O son, they are again protected by many foremost of men endued with great activity, and

---

* *Ekáyanagatàs* is lit. "intently."—T.

of famous achievements, resembling the very Regents of the world, and renowned over the whole earth! Innumerable Kshatriyas, respected throughout the world,[10-11] and who have of their own will sided us with their forces and followers, also protect them. Indeed, our army is like the vast ocean filled with the waters of innumerable rivers running from all directions![12] It abounds with elephants, and with cars which, though destitute of wings, yet resemble the winged tenants of the air. Vast numbers of combatants constitute the waters of that ocean, and the steeds and other animals constitute its terrible waves.[13] Innumerable swords and maces and darts and arrows and lances constitute the oars (plied on that ocean). Abounding with standards and ornaments and adorned with cloths inlaid with gold and gems, the rushing steeds and elephants constitute the winds agitating it into fury. Our host, therefore, really resembles the vast, shoreless, ocean roaring in rage.[14-15] And that host is protected by Drona and Bhishma, and by Kritavarman and Kripa and Dusçāsana, and others headed by Jayadratha.[16] It is also protected by Bhagadatta and Vikarna, by Drona's son, and Suvala's son, and Vālhika, and by many other mighty and high-souled heroes of the world. That that army should yet be slaughtered in battle is due only to predestined fate. O Sanjaya, neither men nor highly blessed *Rishis* of old ever beheld such preparations (for battle) on earth before. That so large an army, mustered according to science, and attached (to us) by wealth, should yet be slaughtered in battle, alas, what can it be but the result of Destiny? O Sanjaya, all this seems to be unnatural.[17-20] Indeed, Vidura had often said what was both beneficial and desirable. But my wicked son Duryodhana would not accept it![21] I believe that high-souled and all-knowing person had foreseen all that is now happening, and hence the counsel he gave.[22]* Or, O Sanjaya, all this, in all its details, had been pre-arranged by Him, for that which is ordained by the Creator must happen as ordained and cannot be otherwise.' "[23]

---

* Literally, "hence his thoughts were so."—T.

SECTION LXXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thou hast, O king, in consequence of thy own fault, been overtaken by this calamity! O bull of Bharata's race, the faults which thou, O monarch, hadst seen in that unrighteous course of conduct (towards the Pāndavas), were not seen by Duryodhana! It was through thy fault, O king, that the match at dice had taken place![1-2] And it is through thy fault that this battle hath taken place with the Pāndavas. Having committed a sin, do thou, therefore, reap the fruit of that sin of thine![3] One reapeth the fruit of acts perpetrated by one's own self. Do thou, therefore, O king, reap the fruit of thy own acts, both here and hereafter![4] Therefore, O monarch, though overtaken by this calamity, be calm still, and listen, O sire, to the (account of the) battle as I recite it.[5]

"'The heroic Bhimasena, having with his sharp shafts, broken thy mighty array, then came upon all the younger brothers of Durydohana.[6] The mighty Bhima, beholding Dusçāsana and Durvisaha and Dussaha and Durmada and Jaya, and Jayasena and Vikarna and Chitrasena and Sudarçana, and Chāruchitra and Suvarman and Duskarna and Karna, and many other mighty car-warriors, excited with rage, of the Dhārtarāshtra host near enough to himself, penetrated into (thy) mighty array that was protected by Bhishma in that battle[7-9] Then, beholding him in their midst, all those warriors said,—Ye kings, let us take this one's life![10]—Thereupon that son of Prithā was surrounded by those cousins of his who were firmly resolved (to take his life). And Bhima then resembled Surya himself of fierce splendour surrounded by the mighty planets of evil nature, at the time of the universal destruction.[11] And though the son of Pāndu was there in the very midst of the (Kaurava) array, yet fear entered not his heart, as it did not that of Indra while surrounded by the *Dānavas* in the fierce battle of old between the celestials and the *Asuras*.[12] Then thousands of car-warriors armed with all weapons and fully prepared for battle, overwhelmed his single self with terrible shafts.[13] Thereupon the heroic

Bhima, disregarding the sons of Dhritarāshtra, slew in that conflict many foremost warriors (of the Kaurava army) fighting from cars or upon the backs of elephants and steeds.[14] And ascertaining the purpose harboured by those cousins of his who were bent upon his destruction, the mighty Bhima set his heart upon slaying them all.[15] Then leaving his car and taking up his mace, the son of Pāndu began to smite that very sea of Dhārtarāshtra troops.[16]

"'Then when Bhimasena thus penetrated the Dhārtarāshtra host, Dhistadyumna the son of Prishata, forsaking Drona (with whom he had been engaged), quickly proceeded to the spot where Suvala's son was stationed.[17] That bull among men, baffling countless warriors of thy army, came upon the empty car of Bhimasena in that battle.[18] And beholding in that conflict Viçoka, the charioteer of Bhimasena, Dhrishtadyumna, O king, became exceedingly cheerless and almost deprived of his senses.[19] With voice choked in tears, and sighing as he spoke, he asked Viçoka, in grief, saying,—Where is Bhima who is dear to me as life itself?[20]—Viçoka then, joining his hands, replied unto Dhrishtadyumna, saying,—The mighty son of Pāndu, endued with great strength, ordering me to wait for him here, hath alone penetrated into the Dhārtarāshtra host that resembleth the very ocean! That tiger among men very cheerfully said unto me these words:[21-22] *Wait for me, O charioteer, restraining the steeds for a short space of time, that is till I slay those that are bent upon my destruction!*[23]—Beholding then the mighty Bhima rushing, mace in hand, all our troops (that supported him) became filled with delight.[24] Then in this fierce and terrible battle, O prince, thy friend, breaking the mighty array (of the foe), hath penetrated into it.[25]—Hearing these words of Viçoka, Prishata's son Dhrishtadyumna, endued with great strength, said unto the charioteer these words on the field of battle:[26]—What need have I today of life itself, if, forgetting my affection for the Pāndavas, I forsake Bhima in battle?[27] If I return today without Bhima, what will the Kshatriyas say of me? What will they say of me when they will learn that while I was on the field, Bhima penetrated alone into the hostile array making

a single opening in it ?*[28] The gods with Indra at their head, visit him with evil who, forsaking his comrades in battle, returneth home unhurt ![29] The mighty Bhima again is my friend and kinsman. He is devoted to me, and I also am devoted to that slayer of foes.[30] Therefore, I will go thither whither Bhima hath gone ! Behold me slaying the foe like Vāsava slaying the *Dānavas !*[31]—Having said this, the heroic Dhrishtadyumna, O Bhārata, proceeded through the midst of the foe, along the tracks opened by Bhimasena and marked by elephants crushed with his mace.[32] He then obtained sight of Bhimasena consuming the hostile ranks or felling Kshatriya warriors like the tempest devastating rows of trees.[33] And car-warriors and horsemen, and foot-soldiers and tuskers, while thus slaughtered by him, uttered loud cries of woe.[34] And cries of *ah* and *alas* arose from thy troops, O sire, while they were slaughtered by the victorious Bhima accomplished in all modes of warfare.[35] Then the Kaurava warriors, all accomplished in arms, surrounding Vrikodara on all sides, fearlessly poured upon him their arrowy showers at the same time.[36] Then the mighty son of Prishata, beholding that foremost of all wielders of weapons, that celebrated hero, *viz*, the son of Pāndu, thus attacked on all sides by fierce ranks of foes in close array, mangled with shafts, treading the field on foot, and vomiting the poison of his wrath, mace in hand, and looking like the Destroyer himself at the hour of the universal dissolution, quickly approached him and comforted him by his presence.[37-38] And taking him up on his car, and plucking the arrows from off all his limbs, and embracing him warmly, the high-souled son of Prishata comforted Bhimasena in the very midst of the foe.[39] Then thy son, in that terrible conflict, quickly coming up to his brothers, said unto them,—This son of Drupada, of wicked soul, is now united with Bhimasena.[40] Let us all approach him together for slaying him. Let not the foe seek our ranks (for battle) !—Hearing these words, the Dhārtarāshtras, thus urged on by the command of their eldest brother and unable to put up (with the foe),[41] quickly

* The second line of 28 I expand a little for making the sense clearer. A closely literal rendering would scarcely be intelligible.—T.

rushed, with upraised weapons, for slaying Dhrishtadyumna, like fierce comets at the hour of the universal dissolution. Taking up their beautiful bows, those heroes, making the very earth shiver with the twang of their bowstrings, and the rattle of their car-wheels,[42] showered their shafts on Drupada's son, like the clouds covering the mountain-breast with torrents of rain. But that hero conversant with all modes of warfare, though thus struck with sharp arrows in that battle, did not waver.[43] On the other hand, that mighty car-warrior, the youthful son of Drupada, beholding those heroic sons of thine staying before him in battle and exerting themselves to their utmost, became desirous of slaying them and applied that fierce weapon called *Pramohana*,[44] enraged with thy sons, O king, like Indra with the *Dānavas* in battle. Then those heroic warriors were deprived of their senses, their minds and strength afflicted by the *Pramohana* weapon.[45] And the Kauravas fled away in all directions, with their steeds and elephants and cars, beholding those sons of thine deprived of their senses in a swoon like those whose hours had come.[46] At that time Drona, the foremost of all wielders of weapons, approaching Drupada, pierced him with three fierce shafts.[47] And that monarch then, O king, *viz*, Drupada, deeply pierced by Drona, left the battle, O Bhārata, remembering his former hostility (with Bharadwāja's son).[48] Thereupon Drona endued with great prowess, having thus vanquished Drupada, blew his conch. And hearing the blare of his conch, all the Somakas were struck with fear.[49] Then Drona possessed of great energy, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, heard of thy sons being deprived of their senses in battle with the *Pramohana* weapon.[50] Then the son of Bharadwāja, desirous of rescuing the princes, speedily left that part of the field where he was, and proceeded to the place where thy sons were.[51] And that mighty bowman, *viz*, Bharadwāja's son of great prowess, there beheld[51] Dhrishtadyumna and Bhima careering through the field in that dreadful conflict. And that mighty car-warrior beheld thy sons deprived of their senses.[52] Taking up then the weapon called *Prajnā*, he neutralised the *Pramohana* weapon (that Dhrishtadyumna had shot). Then thy sons,

those mighty car-warriors, when their senses returned,[53] once more proceeded to battle with Bhima and Prishata's son. Then Yudhishthira, addressing his own troops, said,[54]—Let twelve brave car-warriors cased in mail and headed by Subhadrā's son, follow, to the utmost of their might, the track of Bhima and Prishata's son in battle![55] Let intelligence be had (of those two warriors)! My heart is very uneasy.—Thus ordered by the king, those heroes possessed of great prowess in battle[56] and proud of their manliness, saying—*Yes*, all proceeded forward when the sun had reached the meridian.[57] And those chastisers of foes then, *viz*, the Kaikeyas, and the sons of Draupadi, and Dhrishtaketu of great prowess, supported by a large force and with Abhimanyu at their head, and disposing themselves in the array called *Suchimukha*,* penetrated into that car-division of the Dhārtarāshtras in battle.[58-59] And thy troops, O king, struck with the fear of Bhimasena and deprived of their senses by Dhrishtadyumna, were unable to resist (the rush of) those mighty bowmen headed by Abhimanyu. And they were quite helpless, like a lady in in the streets.[60-61] And those mighty bowmen with standards variegated with gold, cutting through (the Kaurava ranks), proceeded with great speed for rescuing Dhrishtadyumna and Vrikodara.[62] And the latter, beholding those mighty bowmen headed by Abhimanyu, became filled with delight and continued to smite down thy ranks.[63] And the heroic prince of Pānchāla, *viz*, the son of Prishata, seeing meanwhile his preceptor advancing towards him with great speed, no longer wished to compass the death of thy sons.[64] Causing Vrikodara then to be taken up on the car of the king of the Kaikeyas, he rushed in great wrath against Drona accomplished in arrows and all weapons.[65] And that slayer of foes, *viz*, the valiant son of Bharadwāja, excited with rage, cut off with a broad-headed shaft the bow of Prishata's son who was rushing towards him with impetuosity.[66] And remembering the bread

* *Suchimukha* is literally "needle mouthed." It was a wedge-like column, with the thin or pointed end turned towards the side of the enemy.—T.

he had eaten of his master and desirous of doing good to Duryodhana, he also sped hundreds of shafts after Prishata's son.[67] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz*, the son of Prishata, taking up another bow, pierced Drona with seventy shafts whetted on stone and furnished with wings of gold.[68] Then that grinder of foes, *viz*, Drona, once more cut off his bow, and despatched his four steeds to Yama's abode with four excellent arrows, and also slew his charioteer, O Bhārata, with a broad-headed shaft.[69-70] Then that mighty car-warrior of strong arms, *viz*, Dhrishtadyumna, quickly descending from that car whose steeds had been slain, ascended the great car of Abhimanyu.[71] Then Drona caused the Pāndava army consisting of cars, elephants, and steeds, to tremble, in the very sight of Bhimasena and the intelligent son of Prishata.[72] Beholding then that army thus broken by Drona of immeasurable energy, all those mighty car-warriors were incapable of checking its flight.[73] And that army, thus slaughtered by Drona with his sharp shafts, began to move in eddies there, like the agitated sea.[74] And beholding the (Pāndava) army in that condition, thy troops were filled with delight. And seeing the preceptor excited with rage and thus consuming the ranks of the foe, all thy warriors, O Bhārata, set up loud shouts and uttered exclamations in praise (of Drona).' "[75]

SECTION LXXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then king Duryodhana, regaining his senses, once more began to resist Bhima with showers of arrows.[1] And once more those mighty car-warriors, *viz*, thy sons, united together, began to fight valiantly with Bhimasena.[2] And Bhimasena also of mighty arms, during that battle, having got his car, ascended it and proceeded to the spot where thy sons were.[3] And taking up a strong and very tough bow adorned with gold and capable of taking the lives of foes, he pierced thy sons in that conflict, with his shafts.[4] Then king Duryodhana struck the mighty Bhimasena at the very vitals with a long shaft of exceeding sharpness.[5] Then that mighty bowman, pierced thus deeply by thy son bow in hand,

forcibly drawing his own bow with eyes red in wrath,[6] struck Duryodhana in his two arms and the breast with three shafts. But struck thus, O king, he moved not, like a prince of mountains.[7] Beholding then those two heroes excited with rage and smiting each other, the younger brothers of Duryodhana, all of whom were heroes prepared to lay down their lives,[8] remembering their previously formed scheme of afflicting Vrikodara of terrible deeds, set about, firmly resolved, for smiting him down.[9] And as they fell upon him in battle, Bhimasena of great strength rushed against them, O king, like an elephant rushing against an attacking compeer.[10] Excited with fury and endued with great energy, that celebrated hero then, O king, afflicted thy son Chitrasena with a long arrow.[11] And as regards thy other sons, that descendant of Bharata smote them all, in that battle, with diverse kinds of shafts furnished with wings of gold and endued with great impetus.[12] Then king Yudhishthira the just, disposing all his own divisions properly, despatched twelve mighty car-warriors including Abhimanyu and others to follow Bhimasena behind. These, O king, all proceeded against those mighty car-warriors, *viz*, thy sons.[13-14] Beholding those heroes on their cars, resembling the Sun himself or the fire in splendour,—those great bowmen of blazing effulgence and exceeding beauty,[15] looking resplendent in that dreadful conflict with ornaments of gold,—thy mighty sons abandoned Bhima (with whom they had been fighting). The son of Kunti, however, could not bear the sight of their abandoning the conflict alive.' "[16]

SECTION LXXIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then Abhimanyu, acccompanied by Bhimasena, pursuing thy sons, afflicted them all.[1] Then the mighty car-warriors of thy army, including Duryodhana and others, beholding Abhimanyu and Bhimasena united with Prishata's son in the midst of the (Kaurava) troops, took up their bows, and borne by their fleet steeds rushed to the spot where those warriors were. And on that afternoon, O king, a dreadful conflict took place [2-3] between the mighty combat-

ants of thy army and those of the foe, O Bhārata. And Abhimanyu, having, in that fierce battle, slain the steeds of Vikarna,[4] pierced the latter with five and twenty small arrows. Then that mighty car-warrior, Vikarna, abandoning that car-whose steeds had been slain,[5] mounted on the resplendent car, O king, of Chitrasena. Them thus stationed on the same car, *viz*, those two brothers of Kuru's race,[6] the son of Arjuna covered, O Bhārata, with showers of arrows. Then Durjaya and Vikarna pierced Abhimanyu with five shafts made wholly of iron. Abhimanyu, however, shook not in the least but stood firm like the mountain Meru. Dusçāsana in that battle, O sire, fought with the five Kekaya brothers. All this, O great king, seemed exceedingly wonderful. The sons of Draupadi, excited with rage, resisted Duryodhana in that battle.[7-9] And each of them, O king, pierced thy son with three shafts. Thy son also, invincible in battle, pierced each of the sons of Draupadi, O monarch, with sharp shafts. And pierced by them (in return) and bathed in blood, he shone[10-11] like a hill with rillets of water mixed with red-chalk, (gliding down its breast.) And the mighty Bhishma also, in that battle, O king, afflicted the Pāndava army like a herdsman belabouring his herd. Then, O monarch, the twang of *Gāndiva* was heard,[12-13] of Pārtha, who was engaged in slaughtering the foe on the right wing of the army. And in that part of the field headless trunks stood up by thousands,[14] amongst the troops, O Bhārata, of both the Kauravas and the Pāndavas. And the field of battle resembled an ocean whose waters were blood, and whose eddies were the shafts (shot by the combatants). And the elephants constituted the islands of that ocean, and the steeds its waves.[15] And cars constituted the boats by which brave men crossed it. And many brave combatants, with arms cut off, divested of armour, and hideously mutilated,[16] were seen lying there in hundreds and thousands. And with the bodies of infuriate elephants deprived of life and bathed in blood,[17] the field of battle, O Bhārata, looked as if strewn with hills. And the wonderful sight we saw there, O Bhārata, was that neither in their army nor in thine was a single person that was unwilling to fight! And thus, O monarch, did those

brave warriors, of both thy army and the Pāndavas, fight, seeking glory and desirous of victory!'"*[18-19]

SECTION LXXX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then when the sun assumed a red hue, king Duryodhana, desirous of battle rushed towards Bhima from desire of slaying him.[1] Beholding that heroic warrior cherishing deep animosity (thus) coming towards him, Bhimasena, excited with great wrath, said these words:[2]—That hour hath come which I have desired for so many years. I will slay thee today if thou dost not abandon the battle.[3] Slaying thee, I shall today dispel the sorrows of Kunti as also of Draupadi and the woes that were ours during our exile in the woods![4] Filled with pride, thou hadst formerly humiliated the sons of Pāndu. Behold, O son of Gāndhāri, the dire fruit of that sinful behaviour![5] Following the counsels of Karna as also of Suvala's son, and recking the Pāndavas little, thou hadst formerly behaved towards them as thou hadst listed.[6] Thou hadst also disregarded Krishna who begged thee (for peace). With a joyous heart didst thou despatch Uluka (to us) with thy messages.[7] For all these, I shall slay thee today with all thy kinsmen, and thus avenge all those offences of thine of former days![8]—Having said these words, Bhima, bending his bow and stretching it repeatedly, and taking up a number of terrible shafts whose effulgence resembled that of the lightning itself,[9] and filled with wrath, quickly, sped six and thirty of them at Suyodhana. And those shafts resembled the flames of a blazing fire, and coursed straight with the force of the thunder-bolt.[10] And then he pierced Duryodhana's bow with two shafts, and his charioteer with two. And with four shafts he despatched Duryodhana's (four) steeds to the regions of Yama.[11] And that grinder of foes then, with two shafts shot with great force, cut off in that battle the king's umbrella from his excellent car.[12] And with three other shafts he cut off his handsome

---

* The Bombay edition includes these *slokas* with the 78th section. In the Bengal texts they constitue the 79th section.—T.

and blazing standard. And having cut it off, he uttered a loud shout in the very sight of thy son.[13] And that beautiful standard of the latter, decked with diverse gems, suddenly fell down on the earth from his car like a flash of lightning from the clouds.[14] And all the kings beheld that beautiful standard of the Kuru king, bearing the device of an elephant, decked with gems, and blazing like the sun, fall down cut off (by Bhimasena).[15] And that mighty car-warrior, *viz*, Bhima, then pierced Duryodhana in that battle, smiling the while, with ten shafts like a guide piercing a mighty elephant with the hook.[16] Then that foremost of car-warriors, *viz*, the mighty king of the Sindhus, supported by many brave warriors, placed himself on the flank of Duryodhana.[17] And then that great car-warrior, *viz*, Kripa, O king, caused the vindictive Duryodhana, that son of Kuru's race, of immeasurable energy, to mount on his own car.[18] Then king Duryodhana, deeply pierced by Bhimasena and feeling great pain, sat down on the terrace of that car.[19] Then Jayadratha, desirous of slaying Bhima, surrounded him on all sides with several thousands of cars.[20] Then, O king, Dhrishtaketu, and Abhimanyu of great energy, and the Kekayas, and the sons of Draupadi, all encountered thy sons.[21] And the high-souled Abhimanyu smote them all, piercing each with five straight shafts[22] resembling the bolts of heaven or Death's selves, shot from his excellent bow. Thereupon, all of them, unable to bear it (coolly), showered on that foremost of car-warriors, *viz*, the son of Subhadrā, a perfect down-pour of sharp shafts like rain-charged clouds pouring rain on the breast of the mountains of Meru. But Abhimanyu, that invincible warrior accomplished in arms, thus afflicted by them in battle, caused all thy sons, O king, to tremble like the wielder of the thunder-bolt causing the mighthy *Asuras* to tremble in the battle between the celestials and the latter.[23-25] Then that foremost of car-warriors, O Bhārata, shot fourteen broad-headed shafts, fierce and looking like snakes of virulent poison, at Vikarna.[26] Endued with great prowess and as if dancing in that battle, he felled with those shafts the standard of Vikarna from his car and slew also his charioteer and steeds.[27] Then that mighty

car-warrior, the son of Subhadrā, again sped at Vikarna many other arrows that were well-tempered, straight-going, and capable of penetrating every armour.[28] And these arrows furnished with feathers of the *kanka* bird, coming at Vikarna and passing through his body, entered the earth, like hissing snakes.[29] And those arrows, with wings and points decked with gold, bathed in Vikarna's blood, seemed to vomit blood on the earth.[30] Beholding Vikarna thus pierced, his other uterine brothers rushed, in that battle, against those car-warriors headed by Subhadrā's son.[31] And when these invincible warriors upon their (own) cars came upon those combatants (of the Pāndava army) resplendent like so many suns and staying on their cars, both began to pierce one another.[32] And Durmukha, having pierced Crutakarman with five shafts, cut off the latter's standard with a single shaft and then pierced his charioteer with seven.[33] And advancing closer, he slew with half a dozen shafts his foe's steeds fleet as the wind and cased in golden armour, and then felled his charioteer.[34] Crutakarman, however, staying on that car of his the steeds of which had been slain, hurled in great wrath a dart blazing like a fierce meteor.[35] That dart, blazing with effulgence, passing through the renowned Durmukha's hard coat of mail, penetrated into the earth.[36] Meanwhile the mighty Sutasoma, beholding Crutakarman deprived of his car, caused him to mount upon his own car in the very sight of all the troops[37]. The heroic Crutakirti rushed against thy son Jayatsena in that battle, desirous, O king, of slaying that renowned warrior.[38] Then thy son Jayatsena, O king, with a sharp arrow having a horse-shoe head, smiling the while, cut off the bow of the high-souled Crutakirti as the latter came along stretching it in his hands. Then Catānika, beholding his uterine brother's bow cut off,[39-40] endued as he was with great valor, quickly came at that spot, repeatedly roaring like a lion. And Catānika, drawing his bow in that battle with great force,[41] speedily pierced Jayatsena with ten shafts, and uttered a loud shout like an infuriate elephant.[42] And with another arrow of sharp point and capable of penetrating every armour, Catānika deeply pierced Jayatsena in the chest.[43] Just at

that time, Dushkarna who was near his brother (Jayatsena), infuriate with anger, cut off Catānika's bow and arrow.[44] Then the mighty Catānika, taking up another excellent bow capable of bearing a great strain, aimed many sharp shafts.[45] And addressing Dushkarna in the presence of his brother (Jayatsena), saying—*Wait, Wait,*—he sped at him those sharp and blazing shafts resembling so many snakes.[46] And then he speedily cut off Dushkarna's bow with one arrow, and slew his charioteer, O sire, with two, and then pierced Dushkarna himself with seven arrows.[47] And that spotless warrior then, with a dozen sharp shafts, slew all the steeds of Dushkarna, that were fleet as the mind and of variegated hue.*[48] And then with another broad-headed arrow, well aimed and capable of coursing swiftly, Catānika, excited with great wrath, deeply pierced Dushkarna in the chest.[49] And thereupon the latter fell down on the earth like a tree struck with lightning. Beholding Dushkarna slain, five mighty car-warriors, O king,[50] surrounded Catānika on all sides, from desire of slaying him. And they struck the renowned Catānika with showers of arrows.[51] Then the five Kekaya brothers, excited with wrath, approached (Catānika for rescuing him). Beholding these latter coming upon them, thy sons—those mighty car-warriors,[52]—rushed towards them like elephants rushing against mighty elephants. (These amongst thy sons, *viz*), Durmukha, and Durjaya, and the youthful Durmarshana,[53] and Catrunjaya and Catrusaha, all renowned warriors, excited with rage, proceeded, O king, against the (five) Kekaya brothers.[54] On their cars that resembled (fortified) towns, unto which were yoked steeds decked with ornaments, and which were graced with beautiful standards of variegated hue,[55] those heroes, wielding excellent bows and cased in beautiful coats of mail and owning excellent standards, entered the hostile army like lions entering one forest from another.[56] Smiting one another, fierce and terrific was the battle that ensued between them and the foe, in which cars and elephants got entangled with one another.[57]

---

* The Bombay reading, which I do not adopt, is *Karvurān Vātaramhasas.* It is uselessly pleonastic.—T.

Cherishing feelings of hostility towards one another, the terrible battle in which they took part lasted for a short space of time about sunset, increasing the population of Yama's kingdom.[58] And car-warriors and horsemen by thousands were strewn over the field. Then Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, excited with wrath, began to slaughter the troops of the high-souled Pāndavas with his straight shafts. And with his arrows he began to despatch the combatants of the Pānchālas to the domains of Yama.[59-60] And the grandsire, having thus broken the ranks of the Pāndavas, at last withdrew his troops and retired, O king, to his encampment.[61] And king Yudhishthira also, beholding both Dhrishtadyumna and Vrikodara, smelt their heads, and filled with joy, retired to his tents.' "[62]

SECTION LXXXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then those heroes, O king, who cherished feelings of hostility towards one another, retired to their tents, their persons covered with blood.[1] Having rested for a while agreeably to rule, and praising one another (for the feats of the day), they were again seen clad in mail, desirous of battle.[2] Then thy son, O king, overwhelmed with anxiety and covered with blood trickling down (from his wounds), asked the grandsire, saying,*[3]—Our troops are fierce and terrible and carry innumerable standards. They are, again, arrayed properly. Yet the brave and mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas, having penetrated (into our array) and afflicted and slaughtered (our troops), escaped unhurt.†[4] Confounding us all, they have won great fame in battle. Bhima again, having penetrated into our *Makara* array which was strong as the thunder-bolt, afflicted me with his terrible shafts each resembling the rod of Death.[5] Beholding him excited with wrath,

---

* The Bombay reading, which I adopt, is *visravat* in the beginning of the 2nd line. The Bengal reading is *viçramvāt*, meaning "from motives of *affectionate enquiry*." It may also mean "from confidence," though not in this connection.—T.

† The last word of 4 is read differently in the Bengal texts, *viz*, *Rathaughās* instead of, as in the Bombay edition, *Mahārathās*.—T.

O king, I was deprived of my senses. Even now I cannot regain my peace of mind. Through thy grace, O thou that art firm in truth, I desire to obtain victory and slay the sons of Pāndu![6]—Thus addresssed by him, the high-souled son of Gangā, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, endued with great mental energy, understanding that Duryodhana was possessed by grief, replied unto him, laughing the while though cheerless, saying,*[7]—Penetrating into (their) army with the utmost exertions and with my whole soul, O prince, I wish to give thee victory and joy. For thy sake I do not at all dissemble.[8] They that have become the allies of the Pāndavas in this battle are fierce and numerous. Mighty car-warriors of great renown, they are exceedingly brave and accomplished in arms. Incapable of being fatigued, they vomit forth their wrath.[9] Cherishing feelings of animosity towards thee, and swelling with prowess, they are not capable of being defeated easily. I will, however, O king, contend against those heroes with my whole soul and throwing away my very life.[10] For thy sake, in battle, O thou of great glory, my life itself shall today be recklessly exposed! For thy sake I would consume all the worlds with the celestials and the *Daityas*, let alone thy foes here![11] I will, O king, fight with those Pāndavas, and do all that is agreeable to thee!—Hearing these words, Duryodhana became inspired with great confidence and his heart was filled with delight.[12] And cheerfully he ordered all the troops, and all the kings, (in his army), saying,—*Advance.*—And at that command, O king, his army consisting of cars, steeds, foot-soldiers, and elephants, began to advance.[13] And that large force, O king, armed with diverse kinds of weapons, was exceedingly cheerful. And that army of thine, O monarch, consising of elephants, steeds, and foot-soldiers, on the field of battle, looked exceedingly beautiful.[14] And huge tuskers, stationed in large bodies, and skill-

---

* *Vimanā* the nominative singular of *Vimanas* refers to *Gangāsutas.* The Burdwan Pundits wrongly translate it "with mind unmoved." I am not aware of any other reading, the word occurring in all the texts I have examined.—T.

fuly urged, looked resplendent on the field all around. And many royal combatants accomplished in diverse weapons were seen in the midst of thy troops.[15] And the dust, red as the morning sun, raised by those cars and foot-soldiers and elephants and steeds in large bodies as they were duly moved over the field, looked beautiful, shrouding the rays of the sun.[16] And the many-colored banners stationed on cars and elephants, waving in the air and moving along the welkin, looked beautiful like flashes of lightning amid the clouds.[17] And loud and fierce was the uproar made by the twang of the bows stretched by the kings, resembling the roar of the ocean while churned in the *Krita* age by the gods and the great *Asuras*.[18] And that army of thy sons, looking so proud, consisting of (combatants of) diverse hues and shapes, shouting so fiercely, and capable of slaying hostile warriors, then looked like those masses of clouds that appear at the end of the *Yuga*.'"*[19]

SECTION LXXXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'O chief of the Bharatas, Gangā's son, once more addressing thy son who was plunged in thought, told him these delightful words :[1]—Myself and Drona and Calya and Kritavarman of Satwata's race, and Açwatthāman and Vikarna and Bhagadatta and Suvala's son,[2] and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, and Vālhika with the Vālhikas,† and the mighty king of the Trigartas and the invincible ruler of the Magadhas,[3] Vrihadvala the king of the Koçalas, and Chitrasena and Vivingçati, and many thousands of car-warriors graced with tall standards,[4] a large number of country-born steeds well-mounted with excellent horse-soldiers, and many infuriate

---

* The last verse is read variously. Both the Bombay and the Bengal texts have faults of their own. The first word is *ugranādam* (Bengal) and not *ugranāgam* (Bombay). Then *Vahuvarnarupam* (Bomb) is correct, and not *Vahuvarnarutam* (Bengal). The last word of the first line is *Samudirnamevam* (Bombay), and not *Samudirnavarnam* (Bengal).—T.

† Differently read in the Bengal texts, *viz*, "Somadatta with the Saindhavas."—T.

elephants of large size with temporal juice issuing from their mouths and cheeks,[5] and many brave foot-soldiers armed with diverse weapons and born in diverse realms, are all prepared to do battle for thy sake.*[6] These, and many others, ready for thy sake to lay down their lives, are, as I think, competent to vanquish the very gods in battle.[7] I should, however, always tell thee, O king, what is for thy good. The Pāndavas are incapable of being vanquished by the very gods with Vāsava.[8] They have Vāsudeva for their ally and are equal to Mahendra himself in prowess. As regards myself, I shall, however, always do thy bidding.[9] Either I shall vanquish the Pāndavas in battle, or they will vanquish me!—Having said these words, the grandsire gave him an excellent herb of great efficacy for healing his wounds. And therewith thy son was cured of his wounds. Then at dawn when the sky was clear, the valiant Bhishma, that foremost of men, well-versed in all kinds of array, himself disposed his troops in that array called *Mandala* bristling with weapons.[10-12] And it abounded with foremost of warriors and with tuskers and foot-soldiers. And it was surrounded on all sides with many thousands of cars,[13] and with large bodies of horsemen armed with swords and lances. Near unto every elephant were placed seven cars, and near unto every car were placed seven horsemen.[14] And behind every horseman were placed seven bowmen, and behind every bowman were seven combatants with shields. And thus, O king, thy army, arrayed by mighty car-warriors,[15] stood for fierce battle, protected by Bhishma. And ten thousand horse, and as many elephants,[16] and ten thousand cars, and thy sons all equipt in mail, *viz*, the heroic Chitrasena and others, protected the grandsire.[17] And it was seen that Bhishma was protected by those brave warriors, and those princes themselves of great strength, accoutred in mail, were (in their turn) protected by him.[18] And Duryodhana, accoutred in mail and upon his car on the field, and possessed of every grace, looked resplendent like Cakra himself in heaven.[19]

---

* The Bengal reading *Rathās* in the first line of 6 is a mistake. It should be, as in the Bombay text, *tathā*.—T.

Then, O Bhārata, loud were the shouts uttered by thy sons and defeaning the clatter of cars and the uproar of musical instruments.[20] That mighty and impenetrable array of those slayers of foes, *viz*, the Dhārtarāshtras (in the form called) *Mandala*, (thus) arrayed by Bhishma, began to proceed, facing the west.[21] Incapable of being defeated by enemies, it looked beautiful in every point. Beholding then the array called *Mandala* that was exceedingly fierce,[22] king Yudhishthira himself disposed his troops in the array called *Vajra*. And when the divisions were thus arrayed, car-warriors and horsemen, stationed in their proper places, uttered leonine shouts. Accompanied by their (respective) forces, the brave warriors of both armies, well versed in smiting, and longing for battle, proceeded, desirous of breaking each other's array. And Bharadwāja's son proceeded against the king of the Matsyas, and his son (Açwatthāman) against Cikhandin.[23-25] And king Duryodhana himself rushed against the son of Prishata. And Nakula and Sahadeva went forth against the king of the Madras.[26] And Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti proceeded against Irāvat. And many kings together battled with Dhananjaya.[27] And Bhimasena, exerting himself well, opposed the son of Hridikā in battle. And possessed of great prowess, (Abhimanyu) the son of Arjuna, fought in battle, O king, against thy sons Chitrasena and Vikarna, and Durmarshana. And Hidimvā's son, that prince of the *Rākhasas*, rushed against that mighty bowman, the ruler of the Prāgyotishas, like one infuriate elephant against another. And the *Rākshasa* Alamvusha, O king, excited with wrath, rushed in battle against the invincible Sātyaki in the midst of his followers. And Bhuriçravas, exerting himself greatly, fought against Dhristaketu.[28-31] And Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, proceeded against king Crutāyush. And Chekitāna in that battle fought against Kripa.[32] And others (among the Kuru warriors), exerting themselves powerfully, proceeded against that mighty car-warrior Bhima. And thousands of (other) kings surrounded Dhananjaya,[33] with darts, lances, arrows, maces, and spiked clubs in their hands. Then Arjuna, excited with great wrath, addressing him of Vrishni's race,

said,[34]—Behold, O Mādhava, the Dhārtarāshtra troops in battle, arrayed by the high-souled son of Gangā, acquainted with every kind of array![35] Behold, O Mādhava, those brave warriors, countless in number, and desirous of battle (with me)! Behold, O Keçava, the ruler of the Trigartas with his brothers![36]* This very day I shall slay them all, O Janārddana, before thy eyes,—them, that is, O foremost of the Yadus, who, longing for battle (with me), are on the field![37]—Having said those words, the son of Kunti, rubbing his bowstring, showered his arrows on that multitude of kings.[38] And those great bowmen also, poured on him thick showers of arrows, like clouds that fill a lake with torrents of rain in the rainy season.[39] And loud shouts were heard in thy army, O monarch, when in that great battle the two Krishnas were seen covered with thick showers of arrows,[40] And the gods, the celestial *Rishis*, and the *Gandharvas* with the *Uragas*, beholding the two Krishnas in that state, were filled with great wonder.[41] Then Arjuna, O king, excited with wrath, invoked the *Aindra* weapon. And then the prowess we beheld of Vijaya seemed to be highly wonderful[42] insomuch that those showers of weapons shot by his foes were checked by his myriads of arrows. And there among those thousands of kings and steeds and elephants, was none, O king, that was not wounded. And others, O sire, the son of Prithā pierced, each with two or three arrows.[43-44] And while being thus struck by Pārtha, they sought the protection of Bhishma the son of Cāntanu. And Bhishma then became the rescuer of those warriors who were like men sinking in the fathomless deep.[45] And in consequence of those warriors thus flying away and mixing with thy troops, thy broken ranks, O king, were agitated like the vasty deep with a tempest.' "[46]

---

* The last word of the first line of 36 is *amitān* in the Bengal texts. The Bombay reading is *Varmitān*. I prefer the Bengal reading.—T.

SECTION LXXXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'And when the battle was thus raging, and after Suçarman had ceased fighting, and the (other) heroic warriors (of the Kuru army) had been routed by the high-souled son of Pāndu,[1] after, indeed, thy army, resembling the very ocean, had become quickly agitated and the son of Gangā had speedily proceeded against the car of Vijaya,[2] king Duryodhana, beholding the prowess of Pārtha in battle, quickly proceeded towards those kings, and addressing them[3] as also the heroic and mighty Suçarman stationed in their van, said in their midst these words, gladdening them all:[4]—This Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, this foremost one among the Kurus, reckless of his very life, is desirous of fighting with his whole soul against Dhananjaya![5] Exerting your best, ye all, united together, and accompanied by your troops, protect in battle the grandsire of Bharata's race, who is proceeding against the hostile army![6]—Saying—*Yes*—all those divisions belonging to those kings, O monarch, proceeded, following the grandsire.[7] Then the mighty Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, (thus rushing to battle), speedily came upon Arjuna of Bharata's race who also had been coming towards him,[8] on his exceedingly resplendent and large car unto which were yoked white steeds and upon which was set up his standard bearing the fierce ape, and whose rattle resembled the deep roll of the clouds.[9] And thy entire army, beholding the diadem-decked Dhananjaya thus coming to battle, uttered, from fear, many loud exclamations.[10] And beholding Krishna, reins in hand, and looking like the mid-day sun in splendour, thy troops could not gaze at him.[11] And so also the Pāndavas were incapable of looking at Cāntanu's son Bhishma of white steeds and white bow and resembling the planet *Çukra* risen in the firmament.[12] And the latter was surrounded on all sides by the high-souled warriors of the Trigartas headed by their king with his brothers and sons, and by many other mighty car-warriors.[13]

"'Meanwhile, Bharadwāja's son pierced with his winged arrows the king of the Matsyas in battle. And in that com-

bat he cut off the latter's standard with one shaft, and his bow also with another.[14] Then Virāta, the commander of a large division, leaving aside that bow thus cut off, quickly took up another that was strong and capable of bearing a great strain.[15] And he also took up a number of blazing arrows that resembled snakes of virulent poison. And he pierced Drona in return with three (of these) and his (four) steeds with four.[16] And then he pierced Drona's standard with one arrow, and his charioteer with five. And he also pierced Drona's bow with one arrow, and (at all this) that bull among Brāhmanas became highly angry.[17] Then Drona slew Virāta's steeds with eight straight shafts, and then his charioteer, O chief of the Bharatas, with one shaft.[18] His charioteer having been slain, Virāta jumped down from his car whose steeds also had been killed. And then that foremost of car-warriors speedily mounted upon the car of (his son) Cankha.[19] Then sire and son, staying on the same car, began with great might to resist the son of Bharadwāja with a thick shower of arrows.[20] Then the mighty son of Bharadwāja, excited with wrath, quickly shot at Cankha, in that encounter, an arrow resembling a snake of virulent poison.[21] And that arrow, piercing through Cankha's breast and drinking his blood, fell upon the earth, wet and smeared with gore.[22] Struck with that arrow of Bharadwāja's son, Cankha speedily fell down from his car, his bow and arrows loosened from his grasp in the very presence of his sire.[23] And beholding his son slain, Virāta fled from fear, avoiding Drona in battle, who resembled Death's self with gaping mouth.[24] The son of Bharadwāja then, without losing a moment, checked the mighty host of the Pāndavas, resisting combatants by hundreds and thousands.[25]

"'Cikhandin also, O king, getting at Drona's son in that battle, struck the latter between his brows with three swiftly coursing shafts.[26] And that tiger among men, *viz*, Açwatthāman, pierced with those three shafts, looked beautiful like the mountain Meru with its three tall golden crests.[27] Then, O king, Açwatthāman, excited with rage, and within half the time taken up by a wink of the eye, overthrew in that battle Cikhan-

din's charioteer and standard and steeds and weapons, covering them with myriads of shafts. Then that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Cikhandin, that scorcher of foes, jumping down from that car whose steeds had been slain, and taking up a sharp and polished scimitar and a shield, and excited with rage, moved on the field with great activity like a hawk.[28-30] And while moving with great activity, O king, on the field, sword in hand, the son of Drona failed to find an opportunity (for striking him). And all this seemed highly wonderful.[31] And then, O bull of Bharata's race, the highly wrathful son of Drona sent after Cikhandin in that battle many thousands of shafts.[32] But Cikhankin, that foremost of mighty men, with his sharp sword cut that fierce shower of arrows coming towards him.[33] Then the son of Drona cut into pieces that resplendent and beautiful shield decked with a hundred moons and then that sword also of Cikhandin.[34] And he pierced the latter's person also, O king, with a large number of winged arrows. Then Cikhandin, whirling the fragment (in his hand) of that sword of his which had been cut off by Açwatthāman with his arrows, and which resembled a blazing snake, quickly hurled it at him. The son of Drona, however, displaying in that battle the lightness of his arms, cut off that (broken blade) coming impetuously towards him and resembling in splendour the fire that blazeth forth at the end of the *Yuga*. And he pierced Cikhandin himself with innumerable arrows made of iron.[35-37] Then Cikhandin, O king, exceedingly afflicted with those whetted arrows, speedily mounted on the car of (Sātyaki) that high-souled scion of Madhu's race.[38] Then Sātyaki, excited with rage, pierced in that battle, with his terrible shafts, the cruel *Rākshasa* Alamvusha on all sides.[39] That prince of *Rākshasas* then, O Bhārata, cut off in that combat Sātyaki's bow with a crescent-shaped arrow and pierced Sātyaki also with many shafts.[40] And creating by his *Rākshasa* powers an illusion, he covered Sātyaki with showers of arrows. But wonderful was the prowess that we then beheld of the grandson of Cini,[41] inasmuch as struck with those whetted shafts he betrayed no fear. On the other hand, O Bhārata, that son of Vrishni's race applied (with *mantras)* the *Aindra* weapon,[42] which

that illustrious hero of Madhu's race had obtained from Vijaya.* That weapon, consuming into ashes that Demonaic illusion,[43] covered Alamvusha all over with terrible shafts, like a mass of clouds covering the mountain-breast with torrents of rain in the rainy season.[44] Thereupon the *Rākshasa*, thus afflicted by that hero of Madhu's race, fled away in fear, avoiding Sātyaki in battle.[45] Then the grandson of Cini, having vanquished that prince of *Rākshasas* who was incapable of being vanquished by Maghavat himself, uttered a loud roar in the very sight of all thy troops.[46] And Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled, then began to slay thy troops with innumerable sharp shafts whereupon the latter fled away in fear.[47]

"'Meanwhile, O monarch, Dhrishtadyumna the mighty son of Drupada, covered thy royal son in battle with innumerable straight shafts. While, however, O Bhārata, Dhrishtadyumna was thus shrouding him with his shafts,[48-49] thy royal son was neither agitated nor struck with fear. On the other hand, he speedily pierced Dhrishtadyumna in that battle (first) with sixty and (then) with thirty shafts. And all this seemed highly wonderful. Then the commander of the Pāndava army, O Bhārata, excited with wrath, cut off his bow.[50-51] And that mighty car-warrior then slew in that combat the four steeds of thy son, and also pierced him with seven shafts of the keenest points.[52] Thereupon (thy son), that mighty-armed warrior endued with great strength, jumping down from that car whose steeds had been slain, ran on foot, with an upraised sabre, towards the son of Prishata.[53] Then the mighty Cakuni, devoted to the king, quickly coming to that spot, caused thy royal son to mount on his own car in the very sight of all.[54] Then that slayer of foes, the son of Prishata, having vanquished the king, began to slaughter thy troops like the wielder of the thunder-bolt slaughtering the *Asuras*.[55]

"'Kritavarman, in that battle, covered with his arrows that mighty car-warrior Bhima. Indeed, he overwhelmed the

---

* Sātyaki was Arjuna's disciple in arms. Vijaya was another name of Arjuna.—T.

latter entirely, like a mighty mass of clouds shrouding the sun.[56] Then that chastiser of foes, *viz.*, Bhimasena, excited with wrath, and laughing the while, sped some shafts at Kritavarman.[57] Struck therewith, that *Atiratha* of the Sātwata race, excelling all in might, trembled not, O king, but (instead) pierced Bhima (in return) with many sharp arrows.[58] Then the mighty Bhimasena, slaying the four steeds of Kritavarman, felled the latter's charioteer, and then his beautiful standard,[59] And that slayer of hostile heroes, (*viz.*, Bhima) then pierced Kritavarman himself with many shafts of diverse kinds. And Kritavarman, pierced all over, seemed to be excessively mangled in every limb.[60] Then from that car whose steeds had been slain, Kritavarman quickly went to the car of Vrishaka, in the very sight, O king, of both Calya and thy son.[61] And Bhimasena, excited with rage, began to afflict thy troops. Goaded to fury, he began to slay them, like the destroyer himself armed with his club.' "[62]

SECTION LXXXIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Many and wonderful, O Sanjaya, were the single combats I hear thee speak of between the Pāndavas and my warriors.[1] Thou speakest not, however, O Sanjaya, of any one of my side having been cheerful (on such occasions). Thou always speakest of the sons of Pāndu as cheerful and never routed.[2] O *Suta*, thou speakest of mine as cheerless, deprived of energy, and constantly vanquished in battle! All this, without doubt, is Destiny!'[3]

"Sanjaya said,—'Thy men, O bull of Bharata's race, exert themselves according to the measure of their might and courage, and display their valour to the utmost extent of their strength.[4] As contact with the properties of the ocean make the sweet waters of the celestial stream Gangā brackish,[5] so the valour, O king, of the illustrious warriors of thy army coming in contact with the heroic sons of Pāndu in battle, becometh futile.[6] Exerting themselves according to their might, and achieving the most difficult feats, thou shouldst not, O chief of the Kurus, find fault with thy troops![7] O

monarch, this great and awful destruction of the world, swelling the (population of the) domains of Yama, hath arisen from thy misconduct and thy son's.[8] It behoveth thee not, O king, to grieve for what hath arisen from thy own fault. Kings do not always in this world protect their lives.[9] These rulers of Earth, desirous of winning by battle the regions of the righteous, daily fight, penetrating into (hostile) divisions, with heaven only for their aim.[10]

"'On the forenoon of that day, O king, great was the carnage that ensued. Resembling what occurred in the battle between the gods and the *Asuras* (of old), listen to it, O monarch, with undivided attention.[11] The two princes of Avanti, those great bowmen endued with exceeding might, those excellent warriors fierce in battle, beholding Irāvat, advanced against him.[12] The battle that took place between them was fierce, making the hair to stand on end. Then Irāvat, excited with rage, quickly pierced those two brothers of celestial forms with many sharp and straight shafts. Those two, however, conversant with all modes of warfare, pierced him in return in that battle.[13-14] Sruggling their best to slaughter the foe, and desirous of counteracting each other's feats, no distinction, O king, could be observed between them as they fought.[15] Irāvat then, O monarch, with four shafts, despatched the four steeds of Anuvinda to the abode of Yama.[16] And with a couple of sharp, broad-headed shafts, O sire, he cut off the bow and standard also of Anuvinda. And this feat, O king, seemed highly wonderful.[17] Then Anuvinda, leaving his own car, mounted on the car of Vinda. Taking up an excellent and strong bow capable of bearing a great strain,[18] Anuvinda, as also his brother Vinda, those foremost of car-warriors hailing from Avanti, both stationed on the same car, quickly shot many shafts at the high-souled Irāvat.[19] Shot by them, those shafts of great impetuosity, decked with gold, while coursing through the air, covered the welkin.*[20] Then Irāvat, excited with rage, show-

---

* *Divākaram prápya*, lit., "reaching the path of the sun", *i. e*, while coursing through the sky."—T.

ered on those mighty car-warriors, those two brothers (of Avanti), his arrowy down-pours, and felled their charioteer.[21] When the charioteer, deprived of life, fell down on the ground, the horses, no longer restrained, ran away with the car.[22] Having vanquished those two warriors, that daughter's son of the king of the Nāgas, displaying his prowess, then began to consume with great activity thy ranks.[23] Then that mighty Dhārtarāshta host, while thus slaughtered in battle, began to reel in many directions like a person who hath drunk poison.[24]

"'That prince of *Rākshasas*, the mighty son of Hidimvā, on his car of solar effulgence furnished with a standard, rushed against Bhagadatta.[25] The ruler of the Pragyotishas was stationed on his prince of elephants like the wielder of the thunder-bolt in days of old in the battle occasioned by the ravishment of Tārakā.[26] The gods, the *Gandharvas*, and the *Rishis* had all come there. They could not, however, notice any distinction between Hidimvā's son and Bhagadatta.[27] As the chief of the celestials, excited with wrath, had inspired the *Dānavas* with fear, so did Bhagadatta, O king, frighten the Pāndava warriors.[28] And the warriors of the Pāndava army, frightened by him on all sides, failed, O Bhārata, to find among their ranks any protector.[29] We beheld, however, O Bhārata, the son of Bhimasena there, on his car. The other mighty car-warriors fled away with cheerless hearts[30] When, however, O Bhārata, the troops of the Pāndavas rallied, in the battle that then ensued an awful uproar arose among thy troops.[31] Then Ghatotkacha, O king, in that dreadful battle, covered Bhagadatta with his arrows like the clouds pouring rain on the breast of Meru.[32] Baffling all those arrows shot from the *Rākashasa's* bow, the king quickly struck the son of Bhimasena in all his vital limbs.[33] That prince of the *Rākshasas*, however, though struck with innumerable straight shafts, wavered not at all (but stood still) like a mountain pierced (with shafts).[34] Then the ruler of the Prāgyotishas, excited with wrath, hurled in that combat fourteen lances, all of which, however, were cut off by the *Rākshasa*.[35] Cutting off by means of his sharp shafts those lances, the mighty-

armed *Rākshasa* pierced Bhagadatta with seventy shafts, each resembling the thunder-bolt in force.[36] Then the ruler of the Prāgyotishas, laughing the while, O Bhārata, despatched in that combat the four steeds of the *Rākshasa* to Death's domain.[37] The prince of the *Rākshāsas*, however, of great valor, staying on that car whose steeds had been slain, hurled with great force a dart at the elephant of the ruler of the Prāgyotishas.[38] King Bhagadatta then cut off that swift dart furnished with a staff of gold and coursing impetuously towards him, into three fragments, and thereupon it fell down on the ground.[39] Beholding his dart cut off, the son of Hidimvā fled from fear like Namuchi, that foremost of the *Daityas*, in days of old, from battle with Indra.[40] Having vanquished in ba ttle that hero of great valor and renowned prowess, who, O king, cannot be vanquished in battle by Yama himself or Varuna,[41] king Bhagadatta with his elephant began to crush down the troops of the Pāndavas like a wild elephant, O king, crushing, as he treads, the lotus-stalks (in a lake).[42]

"'The ruler of the Madras engaged in battle with his sister's sons the twins. And he overwhelmed those sons of Pāndu with clouds of arrows.[43] Then Sahadeva, beholding his maternal uncle engaged in battle (with him), covered him with arrows like the clouds covering the maker of day.[44] Covered with those clouds of arrows, the ruler of the Madras wore a delighted expression, and the twins also felt great delight for the sake of their mother.[45].* Then Calya, that mighty car-warrior, smiting effectivey in that battle, despatched with four excellent shafts, O king, the four steeds of Nakula to the abode of Yama. Nakula then, that mighty car-warrior, quickly jumping down from that car whose steeds had been slain,[46-47] mounted upon the vehicle of his renowned brother. Stationed then on the same car, those two heroes, both fierce

* The meaning seems to be that Calya was pleased in witnessing the skill of his sister's sons, while the twins themselves were pleased in displaying that skill before one who was related to them through their mother.—T.

in battle, and both excited with rage, began to shroud the car of the ruler of Madras, (with their arrows), drawing their bows with great strength. But that tiger among men, though thus covered by his sister's sons with innumerable straight arrows, shook not in the least (but stood immovable) like a hill. Laughing the while, he smote them (in return) with showers of arrows.[48-50] Then Sahadeva of great prowess, O Bhārata, excited with wrath, took up a (powerful) shaft, and rushing at the ruler of the Madras, shot it at him.*[51] That shaft endued with the impetuosity of Gadura himself, shot by him, pierced the ruler of the Madras through, and fell on the earth.[52] Thereupon that mighty car-warrior, deeply pierced and greatly pained, sat down, O king, on the terrace of his car, and went into a swoon.[53] Beholding him (thus) afflicted by the twins, deprived of consciousness, and prostrated (on his car), his charioteer bore him away on his vehicle over the field.[54] Seeing the car of the ruler of the Madras retreating (from battle), the Dhārtarāshtras all became cheerless and thought it was all over with him.†[55] Then those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the two sons of Mādri, having vanquished in battle their maternal uncle, cheerfully blew their conchs and uttered leonine roars.[56] And then they rushed joyfully, O king, towards thy forces like the gods Indra and Upendra, O monarch, towards the *Daitya* host.' "[57]

SECTION LXXXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then when the sun attained the meridian, king Yudhishthira, beholding Crutāyush, urged on his steeds.[1] And the king rushed at Crutāyush, that chastiser of foes, striking him with nine straight shafts of keen points.[2] That great bowman, *viz.*, king Crutāyusha then, checking in that battle those arrows shot by the son of Pāndu, struck

* The Burdwan Pundits render this verse by carelessly taking *Viryavān* as an adjective of *çaram*. It qualifies *Sahadeva*. The reading *Viryavat* occurs in no text.—T.

† Lit. "This one no longer *is*" *i.*, *e.*, "alive."—

Yudhishthira with seven shafts.[3] These, penetrating through his armour, drank his blood in that battle, as if sucking the very vital energies dwelling in the body of that high-souled one.*[4] The son of Pāndu then, though deeply pierced by that high-souled king, pierced king Crutāyush (in return), at the latter's heart, with an arrow shaped as the boar's ear.[5] And that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, the son of Prithā, with another broad-headed arrow, quickly felled on the earth the standard of the high-souled Crutāyush from his car.[6] Beholding his standard overthrown, king Crutāyush then, O monarch, pierced the son of Pāndu with seven sharp shafts.[7] Thereupon Yudhishthira the son of Dharma blazed up with wrath, like the fire that blazeth forth at the end of the *Yuga* for consuming creatures.[8] Beholding the son of Pāndu excited with rage, the gods, the *Gandharvas*, and the *Rākshasas*, trembled, O king, and the universe became agitated.[9] And even this was the thought that arose in minds of all creatures, *viz.*, that *this king, excited with rage, will today consume the three worlds !*[10]—Indeed, when the son of Pāndu was thus excited with wrath, the *Rishis* and the celestials prayed for the peace of the world.[11] Filled with wrath and frequently licking the corners of his mouth, Yudhishthira assumed a terrible expression looking like the sun that riseth at the end of the *Yuga*.[12] Then all thy warriors, O king, became hopeless of their lives, O Bhārata![13] Checking, however, that wrath with patience, that great bowman endued with high renown then cut off Crutāyush's bow at the grasp.[14] And then, in the very sight of all the troops, the king in that battle pierced Crutāyush whose bow had been cut off, with a long arrow in the centre of the chest.[15] And the mighty Yudhishthira then, O king, speedily slew with his arrows the steeds of Crutāyush and then, without losing a moment, his charioteer.[16] Beholding the prowess of the king, Crutāyush leaving that car whose steeds had been slain, quickly fled away from battle.[17] After that great bowman had been van-

* The original is *Vichinvantās* (a participial) meaning "plucking" as flowers.—T.

quished in combat by the son of Dharma, all the troops of Duryodhana, O king, turned their faces.[18] Having, O monarch, achieved this feat, Yudhishthira the son of Dharma began to slay thy troops like Death himself with wide-open mouth.[19]

"'Chekitāna of the Vrishni race, in the very sight of all the troops, covered with his shafts Gautama, that foremost of car-warriors.[20] Baffling all those arrows, Kripa the son of Caradwat pierced Chekitāna in return, who was fighting with great care, O king, with arrows in that battle.[21] Then, O Bhārata, with another broad-headed arrow he cut off Chekitāna's bow, and endued with great lightness of hand, he also felled with another broad-headed arrow the former's charioteer.[22] Kripa then, O monarch, slew Chekitāna's steeds, as also both the warriors that protected the latter's wings. Then Chekitāna of the Sātwata race, quickly jumping down from his car, took up a mace.[23] The foremost of all wielders of the mace, Chekitāna, with that hero-slaying mace of his, slew the steeds of Gautama and then felled his charioteer.[24] Then Gautama, standing on the ground, shot sixteen arrows at Chekitāna. Those arrows, piercing through that hero of the Sātwata race, entered the earth.[25] Thereat, Chekitāna, excited with rage, once more hurled his mace, desirous of slaying Gautama, like Purandara desirous of slaying Vritra.[26] Then Gautama with many thousands of arrows checked that huge mace, endued with the strength of adamant, that was coursing towards him.[27] Then Chekitāna, O Bhārata, drawing his sabre from the sheath, rushed with great speed towards Gautama.[28] Thereupon Gautama also, throwing away his bow, and taking up a polished sabre, rushed with great speed towards Chekitāna.[29] Both of them possessed of great strength, and both armed with excellent sabres, they began to strike each other with those sharp-edged weapons of theirs.[30] Then those bulls among men, struck with the force of each other's sabres, fell down on the earth, that (common) element of all creatures.[31] Exhausted by the efforts they had made, the limbs of both were motionless in a swoon. Then Karakarsha, impelled by friendship, quickly rushed to that spot.[32] And

that invincible warrior, beholding Chekitāna in that plight, took him up on his car in the very sight of all the troops.[33] And so also the brave Cakuni, thy brother-in-law, O monarch, speedily caused Gautama, that foremost of car-warriors, to mount on his car.[34]

" 'The mighty Dhrishtaketu, excited with wrath, speedily pierced the son of Somadatta, O king, with ninety shafts in the chest.[35] And the son of Somadatta looked highly resplendent with those shafts on his chest, like the sun, O king, with his rays at midday,[36] Bhuriçravas, however, in that battle, with his excellent shafts, deprived Dhristaketu, that mighty car-warrior, of his car, slaying his charioteer and steeds.[37] And beholding him deprived of his car, and his steeds and charioteer slain, Bhuriçravas covered Dhrishtaketu in that combat with a thick shower of arrows.[38] The high-souled Dhrishtaketu then, O sire, abandoning that car of his, mounted upon the vehicle of Catānika.[39] Chitrasena, and Vikarna, O king, and also Durmarshana,—these car-warriors cased in golden mail,—all rushed against the son of Subhadrā.[40] Then a fierce battle took place between Abhimanyu and those warriors, like the battle of the body, O king, with wind, bile, and phlegm.*[41] That tiger among men, however, (*viz.*, Abhimanyu), having, O king, deprived thy sons of their cars, slew them not, remembering Bhima's words.†[42] Then, during the progress of the fight, Kunti's son (Arjuna), of white steeds, beholding Bhishma, who was incapable of being vanquished by very gods, proceeding to rescue thy sons in view of Abhimanyu—a boy and alone though a mighty car-warrior,—addressed Vāsudeva and said these words :—Urge the steeds, O Hrishikeça, to that spot where are those numerous car-warriors![43-45] They are many in number, brave, accomplished in arms, and invincible in battle! Guide the horses so, O

* These, in Hindu physiology, are the three humours of the body always contending for mastery over the vital forces.—T.

† Bhima had vowed to slay all the sons of Dhritarāshtra; therefore, Abhimanyu liked not to falsify his uncle's vow by himself slaying any of them.—T.

Mādhava, that the foe may not be able to slay our troops!'[46]—Thus urged by Kunti's son of immeasurable energy, he of Vrishni's race then drove that car, unto which were yoked white steeds, to battle.[47] When Arjuna, excited with rage, thus proceeded towards thy army, a loud uproar, O sire, arose among thy troops.*[48] The son of Kunti then, having come up to those kings that were protecting Bhishma, (first) addressed Suçarman, O king, and said these words:[49]—I know thee to be foremost in battle, and a dire enemy (of ours) of old. Behold today the terrible fruit of that evil behaviour (of thine)!†[50] I will today cause thee to visit the manes of thy ancestors!—That leader of car-divisions, Suçarman, however, hearing these harsh words uttered by that slayer of foes, *viz.*, Vibhatsu, told him nothing (in reply), well or ill.[51-52] (But) approaching the heroic Arjuna, with a large number of kings in his train, and surrounding him in that battle, he covered him, aided by thy sons, O sinless one, with arrows from all sides, *viz.*, front, rear, and flanks, like the clouds covering the maker of day.[53-54] Then, O Bhārata, a dreadful battle took place between thy army and the Pāndavas, in which blood ran like water.' "[55]

SECTION LXXXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then the mighty Dhananjaya, struck with those shafts and drawing long breaths like a trodden snake, cut off, with great force, by means of his successive shafts, the bows of those mighty car-warriors.[1] Cutting off in a moment, O king, the bows of those powerful monarchs in that battle, the high-souled Arjuna, desiring to exterminate them, pierced all of them simultaneously with his shafts.[2] Struck (thus) by Indra's son, O king, some of them fell down on the field, covered with blood. And some had their limbs mangled, and some had their heads struck off.

---

* Instead of *yat* in the beginning of the second line, *Yadā* would be better. None of the printed texts, however, have *Yadā*.—T.

† In the first line of 50, the Bengal reading is *Satyam*. I prefer the Bombay reading which is *atyantam*. For, again, *paryāyasya* in the beginning of the second line, the Bombay text reads *anayasya* which is better.—T.

And some perished, with bodies mangled and coats of mail cut through.[3] And afflicted by the arrows of Pārtha, many of them, falling down on the earth, perished together. Beholding then those princes slain in battle, the ruler of the Trigartas advanced on his car.[4] And two and thirty others amongst those car-warriors, they who had been protecting the rear of the slain combatants, also fell upon Pārtha. These all, surrounding Pārtha, and drawing their bows of loud twang,[5] poured on him a thick shower of arrows like the clouds pouring torrents of water on the mountain-breast. Then Dhananjaya, afflicted with that arrowy down-pour in that battle, became excited with wrath,[6] and with sixty arrows steeped in oil he despatched all those protectors of the rear. Having vanquished in battle those sixty car-warriors, the illustrious Dhananjaya became cheerful of heart.[7] And having slain also the forces of those kings, Jishnu sped for Bhishma's slaughter. Then the ruler of the Trigartas, beholding his friends, those mighty car-warriors, slain,[8] speedily advanced upon Pārtha, with a number of (other) kings in his van, for slaying him. Then the Pāndava warriors headed by Cikhandin, beholding those combatants advancing upon Dhananjaya that foremost of all conversant with arms,[9] proceeded, with whetted weapons in hand, desirous of protecting the car of Arjuna. Pārtha also, beholding those brave men advance towards him with the ruler of the Trigartas,[10] mangled them in battle with arrows shot from *Gāndiva*. Then that distinguished bowman, desirous of approaching Bhishma, beheld Duryodhana and other kings headed by the ruler of the Sindhus.[11] Fighting with great energy for a moment and checking those warriors that were desirous of protecting Bhishma, the heroic Arjuna of great valor and infinite prowess, avoiding Duryodhana and Jayadratha and others,[12]—that warrior of mighty strength and great mental vigor,—at last proceeded, bow and arrow in hand, towards the son of Gangā in battle. The high-souled Yudhishthira also, of fierce prowess and infinite renown, avoiding in battle the ruler of the Madras who had been assigned to his share, quickly proceeded, with excited wrath and accompanied by Bhima and the sons of Mādri,

towards Bhishma the son of Cāntanu for battle.[13-14] Conversant with all modes of warfare, the high-souled son of Gangā and Cāntanu, though attacked in battle by all the sons of Pāndu united together, wavered not at all.[15] Of fierce might and great energy, king Jayadratha of sure aim, advancing in battle, forcibly cut off with his own excellent bow, the bows of all those mighty car-warriors.[16] And the illustrious Duryodhana also, with excited wrath and having wrath for his poison, struck Yudhishthira and Bhimasena and the twins and Pārtha, with arrows resembling flames of fire.[17] Pierced with arrows by Kripa and Cala and Chitrasena, O lord, the Pāndavas, inflamed with rage, resembled the gods pierced with arrows by the united *Daityas* (in days of old).[18] King Yudhishthira then, beholding Cikhandin flying away, having had his weapon cut off by Cāntanu's son, became filled with anger. The high-souled Ajātāçatru, angrily addressing Cikhandin in that battle, said these words:[19]—Thou saidst at that time, in the presence of thy sire, unto me,—*Even I shall slay Bhishma of high vows with my shafts of the hue of the effulgent sun. Truly do I say this!*—Even this was thy oath![20] That oath of thine thou dost not fulfil inasmuch as thou dost not slay Devavrata in battle! O hero, be not a person of unfufilled vow. Take care of thy virtue, race, and fame![21] Behold Bhishma of terrible impetuosity scorching all my troops with his innumerable arrows of fierce energy and destroying everything in a moment like Death himself![22] With thy bow cut off, avoiding the battle, and vanquished by the royal son of Cāntanu, whither dost thou go, forsaking thy kinsmen and brothers? This doth not become thee![23] Beholding Bhishma of infinite prowess, and our army routed and flying away, thou art assuredly, O son of Drupada, frightened, since the color of thy face is pale![24] Unknown to thee, O hero, Dhananjaya hath engaged in the dreadful battle! Celebrated over the whole world, why, O hero, art thou afeared today of Bhishma![*25]—Hearing these words of king

* The Bombay reading which I adopt is *ajnāyamānas cha*. The Bengal reading seems to be incorrect.—T.

Yudhishthira the just that were harsh though frought with sound reason, the high-souled Cikhandin, regarding them as good counsel, speedily set himself about slaying Bhishma.*[26] And while Cikhandin was proceeding to battle with great impetuosity for falling upon Bhishma, Calya began to resist him with terrible weapons that were difficult of being baffled.[27] The son of Drupada, however, O king, of prowess equal to that of Indra himself, beholding those weapons efful gent as the fire that blazeth forth at the hour of universal dissolution (thus) displayed, was not confounded in the least.[28] Checking those weapons by means of his own shafts, that mighty bowman, *viz*, Cikhandin, stayed there without moving. And then he took up another weapon, *viz.*, the fierce *Vāruna* weapon for baffling (those fiery weapons of Calya).[29] Then the celestials staying in the firmament, and the kings of the earth also, all beheld Calya's weapons baffled by that *Vāruna* weapon of Cikhandin. Meanwhile, the high-souled and heroic Bhishma, O king, in that battle, cut off the bow and the variegated standard also of Pāndu's son king Yudhishthira of the Ājamida race. Thereupon casting aside his bow and arrows upon beholding Yudhishthira overwhelmed with fear,[30-31] and taking up a mace in that battle, Bhimasena rushed, on foot, at Jayadratha. Then Jayadratha, with five hundred terrible arrows of keen points and each resembling the rod of Death, pierced Bhimasena from every side who was thus rushing impetuously at him, mace in hand. Disregarding those arrows, the impetuous Vrikodara, with heart filled with rage,[32-33] slew in that battle all the steeds, born in Āratta, of the king of the Sindhus. Then beholding Bhimasena on foot, thy son (Chitrasena) of unrivalled prowess and resembling the chief of the celestials himself, quickly rushed at him on his car, with upraised weapons, for giving him his quietus. Bhima also, roaring and uttering a loud shout, rushed at him impetuously, mace in hand.[34-35] Thereupon the Kauravas all around, beholding that upraised

* *Vipralāpāpavidham* is literally "force from unreasoning declamation." The Bombay reading vicious.—T.

mace resembling the rod of Death, forsaking thy brave son, fled away, desirous of avoiding its fall (amongst them). In that fierce and awful crush (of men), O Bhārata, confounding the senses, Chitrasena, however, beholding that mace coursing towards him, was not deprived of his senses.[36-37] Taking up a bright scimitar and a shield, he forsook his car and became a warrior on foot in the field, for jumping down (from his vehicle) like a lion from the top of a cliff he came down upon the level ground.[38] Meanwhile that mace, falling upon that beautiful car and destroying the vehicle itself with its steeds and charioteer in that battle, dropped on the ground like a blazing meteor, loosened from the firmament, falling upon the earth.[39] Then thy troops, O Bhārata, beholding that highly wonderful feat, became filled with joy, and all of them together set up a loud shout over the field of battle. And the warriors all applauded thy son (for what they witnessed).' "[40]

SECTION LXXXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Approaching then thy son Chitrasena of great energy who had thus been deprived of his car, thy son Vikarna caused him to mount on his car.[1] And during the progress of that general engagement, so fierce and dreadful, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu impetuously rushed at Yudhishthira.[2] Then the Srinjayas with their cars, elephants, and horse, trembled. And they regarded Yudhishthira to be already within the jaws of Death.[3] The lord Yudhishthira, however, of Kuru's race, accompanied by the twins, proceeded towards that mighty bowman, that tiger among men, *viz.*, Bhishma.[4] Then the son of Pāndu, shooting in that battle thousands of arrows, shrouded Bhishma like the clouds shrouding the sun.[5] And those numberless arrows, well shot by Yudhishthira, were received by the son of Gangā in distinct sets by hundreds and thousands.*[6] And so also, O sire, innumerable

---

* The meaning seems to be that the arrows shot by Yudhishthira were cut off by Bhishma in numberless distinct sets, taking each set at a time.—T.

were the arrows shot by Bhishma (in return), which looked like flights of insects coursing through the air.[7] In half the time taken up by a wink of the eye, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, in that battle, made Kunti's son invisible by means of his numberless shafts shot in sets.[8] Then king Yudhishthira, excited with rage, sped at the high-souled Kaurava a long arrow resembling a snake of virulent poison.[9] That mighty car-warrior, Bhishma, however, O king, cut off in that combat, with a horse-shoe(-headed) arrow, that shaft shot from Yudhishthira's bow before it could reach him.[10] Having cut off that long arrow resembling Death himself, Bhishma then slew in that battle the steeds, decked with gold, of that prince of Kuru's line.[11] Then Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, abandoning that car whose steeds had been slain, quickly mounted upon the car of the high-souled Nakula.[12] Then Bhishma, that subjugator of hostile cities, excited with rage, and coming upon the twins in that battle, covered them with arrows.[13] Beholding those two (brothers), O king, thus afflicted with the arrows of Bhishma, Yudhishthira began to reflect earnestly, desirous, O monarch, of (compassing) Bhishma's destruction.[14] Then Yudhishthira, O king, urged his friends and the rulers (on his side), saying,—Slay Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, uniting together![15]—Then all those rulers, hearing these words of Prithā's son, surrounded the grandsire with a large number of cars.[16] Thy sire Devavrata then, thus surrounded on all sides, began to sport, O king, with his bow, felling (all the while) many mighty car-warriors.[17] Him of Kuru's race thus careering over the field of battle, the Pāndavas beheld resembling a young lion in the forest amid a herd of deer.[18] Uttering loud roars in that battle and striking fear into the hearts of brave warriors by means of his shafts, the Kshatriyas beholding him, O king, were all struck with fear, like inferior animals upon seeing a lion.[19] Indeed, the Kshatriyas beheld the movements of that lion of Bharata's race in battle to resemble those of a conflagration aided by the wind while consuming a heap of dry grass.[20] And Bhishma in that battle felled the heads of car-warriors like a skilful man felling (with stones) ripe (palmyra)

fruits from a trees that bear them.[21] And the heads of warriors, O king, falling upon the surface of the earth produced a loud noise resembling that of a stony shower.[22] During the progress of that fierce and dreadful battle, a great confusion set in among all the troops.[23] And in consequence of that confusion the arrays (of both armies) were broken. And the Kshatriyas, summoning one another individually, approached one another for fight.[24] Then Cikhandin, sighting the grandsire of the Bharatas, rushed at him impetuously, saying,—*Wait, Wait.*[25]—Remembering, however, the femininity of Cikhandin, and disregarding him on that account, Bhishma proceeded against the Srinjayas.[26] Thereupon the Srinjayas, beholding Bhishma in that great battle, were filled with joy. And they set forth diverse kinds of loud shouts mingled with the blare of their conchs.[27] Then commenced a fierce battle in course of which cars and elephants got entangled with one another. And it was that hour of the day. O lord, when the sun was on the other side (of the meridian).[28] Then Dhrishtadyumna the prince of the Pānchālas, and that mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, greatly afflicted the (Bharata) host with showers of arrows and lances.[29] And with innumerable shafts, O king these two began to smite down thy warriors in that battle. Thy combatants, however, O bull among men, though slaughtered in battle (thus),[30] retreated not from the fight, having formed an honorable resolution in that engagement. Indeed, thy troops began to smite according to the measure of their courage.*[31] While, however, O king, thy high-souled combatants were being slaughtered by the illustrious son of Prishata, loud cries of woe were heard among them.[32] Hearing those loud cries, that couple of mighty car-warriors of thy army, *viz.*, Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, quickly proceeded against Prishata's son.[33] And those mighty car-warriors, speedily slaying his steeds, together covered Prishata's son with showers of arrows.[34] Thereupon that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the prince of the Pānchālas, quickly jumping down from that car of his, mounted without

* The Bengal reading is faulty.—T.

loss of time the car of the high-souled Sātyaki.[35] Then king Yudhishthira, supported by a large force, proceeded against those chastisers of foes, *viz.*, the two princes of Avanti excited with rage.[36] Similarly thy son also, O sire, with every preparation, stood, surrounding Vinda and Anuvinda in that battle (for supporting them).[37] Arjuna also in that battle, excited with rage, fought against many bulls of the Kshatriya race, like the wielder of the thunder-bolt against the *Asuras*.[38] Drona also, who always does what is agreeable to thy son, inflamed with wrath in that battle, began to consume the Pānchālas like fire consuming a heap of cotton.[39] Thy other sons, O king, owning Duryodhana as their chief, surrounding Bhishma in that battle, fought against the Pāndavas.[40] Then when the sun assumed a red hue,* king Duryodhana, O Bhārata, addressing thy troops, said,—*Lose no time.*[41]—And while they were thus battling and achieving feats difficult of accomplishment, the sun having become invisible in consequence of his retirement behind the Western hill,[42] there soon flowed, towards dusk, an awful river whose current and billows were of blood, and which was infested by innumerable jackalls.[43] And the field of battle became dreadful, abounding as it did with spirits and with those jackalls howling hideously, foreboding evil.[44] And *Rākshasas*, and *Piçāchas*, and other cannibals were seen all around, in hundreds and thousands.[45] Then Arjuna, having vanquished those kings headed by Suçarman along with all their followers, in the midst of their division, proceeded towards his tent.[46] And the lord Yudhishthira also of Kuru's race, accompanied by his brothers, and followed by his troops, proceeded, O king, when night set in, towards his tent.[47] And Bhimasena, too, having vanquished those kings, *viz.*, those car-warriors headed by Duryodhana, proceeded towards his tent.[48] And king Duryodhana (with his troops), surrounding Bhishma the son of Cāntanu in that great battle, proceeded towards his tent.[49] And Drona, and Drona's son, and Kripa, and Calya, and Kritavarman of the Sātwata race, surrounding the whole (Dhārtarāshtra) army,

---

* *I. e*, just before setting.—T.

proceeded towards their tents.[50] And similarly Sātyaki also, O king, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, surrounding their army, proceeded towards their tents.[51] It was thus, O king, that those chastisers of foes, *viz.*, thy troops and the Pāndavas, ceased to fight when darkness came.[52] Then the Pāndavas, and the Kuravas, retiring to their tents, entered the same, applauding one another.[53] And making arrangements for the protection of their brave warriors and disposing outposts according to rule, they plucked out the arrows (from their bodies) and bathed in diverse kinds of water.[54] And Brāhmanas performed propitiatory rites for them, and bards sang their praises. And those renowned men sported for a while, in accompaniment with music both vocal and instrumental.[55] And for a while the whole scene resembled heaven itself. And those bulls among men for a while spoke not of battle.[56] And when both the armies abounding with tired men and elephants and steeds slept there, they became, O monarch, beautiful to behold.' "[57]

SECTION LXXXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having passed the night in sound sleep, those rulers of men, the Kauravas and the Pāndavas, once more proceeded to battle.[1] And when the troops of both armies were about to proceed to the field, great was the uproar heard there, resembling the loud uproar of the ocean itself.[2] Then king Duryodhana, and Chitrasena, and Vivinçati, and that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Bhishma, and Bharadwāja's son possessed of great prowess,[3]—those mighty car-warriors, clad in mail and uniting together, O king, formed with great care the array of the Kauravas against the Pāndavas.[4] Having formed that mighty array fierce as the ocean and having for its billows and current its steeds and elephants, thy sire Bhishma the son of Cāntanu then, O king, proceeded in the van of the whole army, supported by the Mālavas, and the inhabithants of the southern countries, and the Avantis.[5-6] Next to him was the valiant son of Bharadwāja, accompanied by the Pulindas, the Pāradas, and

the Kshudraka-Mālavas.[7] Next to Drona was the valiant Bhagadatta, O king, firmly resolved on fight, accompanied by the Magadhas, the Kalingas, and the Piçāchas.[8] Behind Bhagadatta was Vrihadvala the king of the Koçalas, accompanied by the Melakas, the Tripuras, and the Chichchhilas.[9] Next to Vrihadvala was the brave Traigarta the ruler of the Prasthala, accompanied by a large number of the Kāmvojas, and by Yavanas in thousands.[10] Next to the ruler of the Trigartas, O Bhārata, proceeded that mighty hero, *viz.*, the son of Drona, uttering leonine roars and filling the earth with those shouts.[11] Next to Drona's son proceeded king Duryodhana with the whole army, surrounded by his uterine brothers.[12] Behind Duryodhana proceeded Kripa the son of Caradwat. It was thus that that mighty array, resembling the very ocean, advanced (to battle).[13] And standards and white umbrellas, O lord, and beautiful bracelets and costly bows shed their effulgence there.[14] And beholding that mighty array of thy forces, that great car-warrior Yudhishthira, speedily addressing the generalissimo (of his forces), *viz.*, Prishata's son, saying,[15]—Behold, O great bowman, that array, already formed, resembling the ocean! Do thou also, O son of Prishata, form without delay thy counter-array![16]—(Thus addressed), the heroic son of Prishata, O great king, formed that terrible array called *Çringātaka* that is destructive of all hostile arrays.[17] At the horns were Bhishmasena and that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Sātyaki, with many thousands of cars as also of horse and infantry.[18] Next to them was that foremost of men, (*viz.*, Arjuna) of white steeds and having Krishna for his charioteer.* In the centre were king Yudhishthira and the (twin) sons of Pāndu by Mādri.[19] Other royal bowmen, conversant with the science of arrays, with their troops, filled up that array.[20] In the rear were ordered Abhimanyu, and that mighty car-warrior, Virāta, and the sons of Draupadi and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha.[21] Thus, O Bhārata, having formed their mighty array, the heroic Pāndavas waited on the field, longing for battle and desirous

---

* *Krishna-sārathis* (Bombay); the Bengal reading is *Vānaradhvajas.*

of victory.[22] And the loud noise of drums mingling with the blare of conchs and the leonine roars and shouts (of the combatants) and the slapping of their armpits, became terrible and filled all the points of the compass.[23] Then those brave warriors, approaching one another for battle, looked at one another, O king, with winkless eyes.[24] Then, O ruler of men, the warriors, first challenging each other by name, engaged with each other.*[25] Then commenced a fierce and terrible battle between thy troops and those of the foe striking one another.[26] And in that battle, O Bhārata, whetted shafts fell in showers like terrible snakes with mouths wide open.[27] And polished darts of impetuous force, washed with oil, fell, O king, like the effulgent flashes of lightning from the clouds.[28] And maces decked with gold and attached to bright slings, were seen to fall all over the field, resembling beautiful crests of hills.[29] And sabres of the color of the clear (blue) sky, O Bhārata, and shields of bulls' hides and decked with a hundred moons, as they fell everywhere over the field, O king, looked beautiful. And as the two armies, O king, were engaged in battle with each other,[30-31] they looked resplendent like the celestial and the demonaic hosts battling with each other. All around they rushed against one another in battle.[32] Foremost of royal car-warriors, impetuously dashing against car-warriors in that dreadful battle, fought on, with the yokes of their cars entangled with those their adversaries.[33] And, O bull of Bharata's race, all over the field flashes of fire mixed with smoke were generated, in consequence of friction, in the tusks of battling elephants.[34] And combatants on the backs of elephants, struck with lances, were seen all around to fall down like blocks (loosened) from crests of hills.†[35] And brave foot-soldiers, battling with their bare arms or with lances, and striking one another, looked exceedingly beautiful.[36] And

---

* The true reading, I think, is that of the Bombay text, *viz.*, *nāmabhis*. The Bengal reading is *manobhis*. How can persons challenge each other mentally, although they may single out their antagonists so ?—T.

† *Nagās*, which may mean both stones and trees. In either case, the comparison would apply.—T.

the warriors of the Kaurava and the Pāndava hosts, coming upon one another in that conflict, despatched one another with diverse kinds of shafts to the abode of Yama.[37] Then Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, filling (the air) with the rattle of his car, and depriving the foe of his senses by the twang of his bow, rushed against the Pāndavas in battle.[38] The car-warriors of the Pāndavas, too, headed by Dhrishtadyumna, uttering fierce shouts, rushed at him, firmly resolved on fight.[39] Then commenced, O Bhārata, a battle between the infantry, car-warriors, and elephants, of theirs and thine, in which the combatants became all entangled with one another.' "[40]

SECTION LXXXIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'The Pāndavas were incapable of even looking at Bhishma excited writh rage in battle and scorching every side like the Sun himself shedding scorching heat.[1] Then all the (Pāndava) troops, at the command of Dharma's son, rushed at the son of Gangā who was grinding (everything) with his whetted arrows.[2] Bhishma, however, who delighted in battle, felled the mightiest of bowmen among the Srinjayas and the Pānchālas, with his shafts.[3] Though thus slaughtered by Bhishma, the Pānchālas along with the Somakas still rushed impetuously at him, forsaking the fear of death.[4] The heroic Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, however, in that battle, cut off, O king, the arms and heads of their car-warriors.[5] Thy sire Devavrata deprived their car-warriors of cars. And the heads of cavalry soldiers on their chargers fell fast.[6] And we beheld, O king, huge elephants, looking like hills, deprived of their riders, and paralysed with Bhishma's weapons, lying all around.[7] Amongst the Pāndavas, O king, there was no other man save that foremost of car-warriors, the mighty Bhimasena, (who could resist Bhishma).[8] Indeed, Bhima alone, approaching Bhishma, encountered him in battle. Then in that encounter between Bhima and Bhishma, a fierce and terrible uproar arose among all the troops (of the *Kauravas*). The Pāndavas then, filled with joy, uttered leonine shouts.[9-10] During that destructive carnage, king Duryodhana,

surrounded by his uterine brothers, protected Bhishma in that battle.[11] Then that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Bhima, slew Bhishma's charioteer. Thereupon the steeds no longer controlled, ran away from the field with the car.[12] Then that slayer of foes, *viz.*, Bhima, with a sharp arrow having a horse-shoe head, cut off the head of Sunābha. (Thus) slain, the latter fell down on the earth.[13] When that son of thine, that mighty car-warrior and great bowman was slain, seven of his heroic brothers, O sire, could not (quietly) bear (that act).[14] (These, *viz.,)* Ādityaketu and Vahvāçin, and Kundadhāra and Mahodara, and Aparājita, and Panditaka and the invincible Viçālāksha,[15] clad in variegated armour and with their beautiful coats of mail and weapons,—these grinders of foes desirous of battle,—rushed against the son of Pāndu.[16] And Mahodara, in that battle, pierced Bhimasena with nine winged arrows, each resembling the thunder-bolt in force, like the slayer of Vritra striking (the great *Asura*) Namuchi.[17] And Ādityaketu struck him with seventy shafts, and Vahvāçin with five. And Kundadhāra struck him with ninety shafts, and Viçālāksha with seven.[18] And that conqueror of foes, the mighty car-warrior Aparājita, O king, struck Bhimasena of great strength with many arrows.[19] And Panditaka also, in that battle, pierced him with three arrows. Bhima, however, did not (quietly) bear these attacks of his foes in battle.[20] Forcibly grasping the bow with his left hand, that grinder of foes cut off, in that battle, the head, with a straight shaft,[21] of thy son Aparājita, graced with a fine nose. Thus vanquished by Bhima, his head then dropped on the ground.[22] Then, in the very sight of all the troops, Bhima despatched, with another broad-headed arrow, the mighty car-warrior Kundadhāra to the domain of Death.[23] Then that hero of immeasurable soul, once more aiming an arrow, sped it, O Bhārata, at Panditaka in that battle.[24] And that arrow, killing Pānditaka, entered the earth, like a snake impelled by Death quickly entering the earth after despatching the person (whose hour had come).[25] Of undepressed soul, that hero then, O king, recollecting his former woes, felled Viçālāksha's head, cutting it off with three arrows.[26] Then Bhima, in that

battle, struck the mighty bowman Mahodara in the centre of the chest with a long shaft. Slain (therewith), O king, the latter fell down on the earth.[27] Then, O Bhārata, cutting off with an arrow the umbrella of Ādityaketu in that battle, he severed his head with another broad-headed shaft of exceeding sharpness.[28] Then, O monarch, excited with rage, Bhima, with another straight shaft, despatched Vahvāçin towards the abode of Yama.[29] Then thy other sons, O king, all fled away, regarding the words to be true which Bhima had uttered in the (midst of the Kaurava) assembly.*[30] Then king Duryodhana, afflicted with sorrow on account of his brothers, addressed all his troops, saying,—*There is Bhima! Let him be slain!*[31]—Thus, O king, thy sons, those mighty bowmen, beholding their brothers slain, recollected those words,[32] beneficial and peaceful, that Vidura of great wisdom had spoken. Indeed, those words of the truthful Vidura are now being realised,[33]—those beneficial words, O king, which, influenced by covetousness and folly as also by affection for thy sons, thou couldst not then understand![34] From the way in which that mighty-armed hero is slaying the Kauravas, it seemeth that that mighty son of Pāndu hath assuredly taken his birth for the destruction of thy sons![35] Meanwhile, king Duryodhana, O sire, overwhelmed with great grief, went to Bhishma, and there, overcome with sorrow, he began to lament,[36] saying,—My heroic brothers have been slain in battle by Bhimasena! Although, again, all our troops are fighting bravely, yet they also are falling![37] Thou seemest to disregard us, behaving (as thou dost) like an indifferent spectator! Alas, what course have I taken! Behold my evil destiny!—[38]'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing these cruel words of Duryodhana, thy sire Devavrata, with eyes filled with tears, said this unto him:†[39]—Even this was said by me before, as also by Drona, and Vidura, and the renowned Gāndhāri! O

---

* His pledge, *viz.*, that in battle he would slay all the sons of Dhritarāshtra.—T.

† The Bengal reading is *tatas kruddhas.* The Bombay reading is *vachas kruram.* I adopt the latter.—T.

son, thou didst not then comprehend it![40] O grinder of foes, it hath also been before settled by me that neither myself, nor Drona, will ever escape with life from this battle![41] I tell thee truly that those upon whom Bhima will cast his eyes in battle, he will surely slay![42] Therefore, O king, summoning all thy patience, and firmly resolved on battle, fight with the sons of Prithā, making heaven thy goal![43] As regards the Pāndavas, they are incapable of being vanquished by the very gods with Vāsava (at their head). Therefore, setting thy heart firmly on battle, fight, O Bhārata!—' "[44]

SECTION XC.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Beholding my sons, so many in number, O Sanjaya, slain by a single person, what did Bhishma and Drona and Kripa do in battle?[1]* Day after day, O Sanjaya, my sons are being slain: I think, O *Suta*, that they are completely overtaken by evil destiny,[2] inasmuch as my sons never conquer but are always vanquished! When my sons staying in the midst of those unretreating heroes, *viz.*, Drona and Bhishma, and the high-souled Kripa, and Somadatta's heroic son and Bhagadatta, and Açwatthāman also, O son, and other brave warriors, are still slain in battle, what can it be save the result of fate?†[3-5] The wicked Duryodhana did not comprehend (our) words before, though admonished by me, O son, and by Bhishma and Vidura![6] (Though forbidden) always by Gāndhāri, too, from motives of doing him good, Duryodhana of wicked understanding awoke not before from folly! That (conduct) hath now borne fruit,[7] inasmuch as Bhimasena, excited with wrath, despatcheth, day after day in battle, my insensate sons to the abode of Yama!'‡[8]

---

* The last word of this verse in the Bengal texts is *Sanjaya*; in the Bombay text, it is *Samyuge*. The latter seems to be the true reading, for after *Sanjaya* in the first line, its repetition in the second is useless.—T.

† The last word of the 4th verse is *anivartinām*. In the Bengal texts it is *sumahātmanām*.—T.

‡ The last word of the first line of 8 is *Vichetasas* and not (as in the Bengal texts, including the Burdwan edition) *Viçeshatas* which would scarcely have any meaning.—T.

"Sanjaya said,—'Those excellent words of Vidura, uttered for thy good, but which thou didst not then understand, have now come to be realised![9] Vidura had said,—*Restrain thy sons from the dice!*—Like a man whose hour is come refusing the proper medicine, thou didst not then listen to the words of well-wishing friends counselling thee (for thy good)! Those words uttered by the righteous have now been realised before thee![10-11] Indeed, the Kauravas are now being destroyed for having rejected those words, deserving of acceptance, of Vidura and Drona and Bhishma and thy other well-wishers![12] These very consequences happened even then when thou declinedst to listen to those counsels! Hear now, however, to my narration of the battle exactly as it has happened.*[13] At midday the battle became exceedingly awful and fraught with great carnage. Listen to me, O king, as I describe it.[14] Then all the troops (of the Pāndava army), excited with rage, rushed, at the command of Dharma's son, against Bhishma alone from desire of slaying him.[15] Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin, and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, accompanied, O king, by their forces, proceeded against Bhishma alone.[16] And those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, Virāta and Drupada, with all the Somakas, rushed in battle against Bhishma alone.[17] And the Kaikeyas, and Dhrishtaketu, and Kuntibhoja, equipt in mail and supported by their forces, rushed, O king, against Bhishma alone.[18] And Arjuna, and the sons of Draupadi, and Chekitāna of great prowess, proceeded against all the kings under the command of Duryodhana.[19] And the heroic Abhimanyu, and that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Hidimvā, and Bhimasena excited with wrath, rushed against the (other) Kauravas.[20] (Thus) the Pāndavas, divided into three bodies, began to slaughter the Kauravas. And similarly the Kauravas also, O king, began to slaughter their foes.†[21] That foremost of car-

* I have expanded the first line of 13, as a closely literal version would scarcely be intelligible to the general reader. The sense is that the evil consequences, that have now overtaken thee, arose even then when the beneficial counsels of Vidura were first rejected.—T.

† The Bengal reading *Dwidhābhutais* is incorrect. It should be, as in the Bombay text, *tridhābhutais*.—T.

warriors, *viz.*, Drona, excited with wrath, rushed against the Somakas and the Srinjayas, desirous of sending them to the abode of Yama.[22] Thereupon loud cries of woe arose among the brave Srinjayas while they were being slaughtered, O king, by Bharadwāja's son bow in hand.[23] Large numbers of Kshatriyas, struck down by Drona, were seen to roll convulsively like persons writhing in the agony of disease.[24] All over the field were continuously heard moans and shrieks and groans resembling those of persons afflicted with hunger.[25] And so the mighty Bhimasena, excited with wrath, and like unto a second Yama, caused a terrible carnage amongst the Kaurava troops.[26] There in that dreadful battle, in consequence of the warriors slaying one another, a terrible river began to flow whose billowy current consisted of blood.*[27] And that battle, O king, between the Kurus and the Pāndavas, becoming fierce and awful, began to swell the population of Yama's kingdom.[28] Then in that battle, Bhima, excited with wrath, fell with great impetuosity upon the elephant divisions (of the Kauravas) and began to send many to the regions of Death.[29] Then, O Bhārata, struck with Bhima's shafts, some of those beasts fell down, some were paralysed, some shrieked (in pain), and some ran away in all directions.[30] Huge elephants, their trunks cut off and limbs mangled, screaming like cranes, began, O king, to fall down on the earth.[31] Nakula and Sahadeva fell upon the (Kaurava) cavalry. Many steeds with garlands of gold on their heads and with their necks and breasts adorned with ornaments of gold,[32] were seen to be slain in hundreds and thousands. The earth, O king, was strewn with fallen steeds.[33] And some were deprived of their tongues; and some breathed hard; and some uttered low moans, and some were void of life. The earth looked beautiful, O chief of men, with those steeds of such diverse kinds.[34] At the same time, O Bhārata, she looked fiercely resplendent, O monarch, with a large number of kings slain by Arjuna in that battle.[35] And strewn with broken cars and rent ban-

* In the Bengal texts, *tava* in the first line is incorrect. It should be *tatra* (Bombay).—T.

ners and brilliant umbrellas, with torn *chāmaras* and fans, and mighty weapons broken into fragments,[36] with garlands and necklaces of gold, with bracelets, with heads decked with ear-rings, with head-gears loosened (from off heads), with standards,[37] with beatiful bottoms of cars, O king, and with traces and reins, the earth shone as brightly as she does in spring when strewn with flowers.[38] And it was thus, O Bhārata, that the Pāndava host suffered destruction when Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, and Drona that foremost of car-warriors, and Açwatthāman, and Kripa, and Kritavarman, were inflamed with wrath. And similarly thy army also suffered the same kind of destruction when the other side, *viz.*, the Pāndava heroes, were excited with rage.' "[39-40]

SECTION XCI.

"Sanjaya said,—'During the progress, O king, of that fierce battle fraught with the slaughter of great heroes, Cakuni the glorious son of Suvala, rushed against the Pāndavas.[1] And so also, O monarch, Hridikā's son of the Sātwata race, that slayer of hostile heroes, rushed in that battle against the Pāndava ranks.[2] And smiling the while, (several warriors on thy side), with a large number of steeds consisting of the best of the Kāmvoja breed as also of those born in the country of the Rivers, and of those belonging to Āratta and Mahi and Sindhu, and of those of Vānāyu also that were white in hue, and lastly of those of hilly countries, surrounded (the Pāndava army).*[3-4] And so also with other horses, exceedingly swift, fleet as the very winds, and belonging to the *Tittiri* breed, (others encompassed that army). And with many horses, clad in mail and decked with gold,[5] the foremost of their class and fleet as the winds, the mighty son of Arjuna (*viz.*, Irāvat), that slayer of foes, approached the (Kaurava) force.[6] This hand-

---

* These verses are incomplete. I am obliged to make the parenthetical interpolations to make the sense clear. Steeds that are described as *Nadijas* would literally mean "*those born in rivers.*" What that means I cannot guess. Probably, the Punjab, or some other country watered by many rivers was meant.—T.

some and valiant son of Arjuna, named Irāvat, was begotten upon the daughter of the king of the Nāgas by the intelligent Pārtha.[7] Her husband having been slain by Garuda, she became helpless, and of cheerless soul. Childless as she was, she was bestowed (upon Arjuna) by the high-souled Airāvat.[8] Pārtha accepted her for wife, coming to him as she did under the influence of desire. It was thus that that son of Arjuna was begotten upon the wife of another.*[9] Abandoned by his wicked uncle from hatred of Pārtha, he grew up in the region of the Nāgas, protected by his mother.[10] And he was handsome, and endued with great strength, possessed of diverse accomplishments, and of prowess incapable of being baffled. Hearing that Arjuna had gone to the region of Indra, he speedily went thither.[11] And the mighty-armed Irāvat, possessed of prowess incapable of being baffled, approaching his sire, saluted him duly, standing before him with joined hands.[12] And he introduced himself to the high-souled Arjuna, saying,—I am Irāvat, blessed be thou, and I am thy son, O lord![13]—And he reminded Arjuna of all the circumstances connected with the latter's meeting with his mother. And thereupon the son of Pāndu recollected all those circumstances exactly as they had happened.[14] Embracing his son then who resembled himself in accomplishments, Pārtha, in Indra's abode, was filled with joy.[15] The mighty-armed Irāvat then, O king, in the celestial regions, was, O Bhārata, joyfully commanded by Arjuna, with regard to his own business, (in these words):[16]—When the battle takes place, assistance should be rendered by thee!—Saying *Yes*, O lord, he went away. And now at the time of battle he presented himself,[17] O king, accompanied with a large number of steeds of great fleetness and beautiful color. And those steeds, decked with ornaments of gold, of various colors and exceeding fleetness,[18] suddenly coursed over the field, O king, like swans on the bosom of the vasty deep. And those steeds, falling upon thine of exceeding swiftness,[19] struck their chests and noses against those of thine.

---

* Literally, "in soil belonging to another." The original is *para-kshetre*.—T.

Affected by their own impetuous clash (against thine), they suddenly fell down, O king, on the earth.[20] And in consequence of the falling of those steeds as also of thine occasioned by that clash, loud sounds were heard resembling what occurs at Garuda's swoop.[21] And the riders of those steeds, O king, thus dashing against one another in that battle, began to slay one another fiercely.[22] And during that general engagement which was fierce and terrible, the chargers of both sides (escaping from press of battle) ran wildly away over the field.[23] Weakened by one another's shafts, brave warriors, with their horses killed under them, and themselves worn out with exertion, perished fast, sabring one another.[24] Then when those cavalry divisions were thinned and a remnant only survived, the younger brothers of Suvala's son, possessed of great wisdom, rode out, O Bhārata, (from the Kaurava array) to the van of battle,[25] mounted on excellent chargers that resembled the tempest itself in both fleetness and the violence of their dash and that were well-trained and neither old nor young.*[26] Those six brothers endued with great strength, *viz.*, Gaya, Gavāksha, Vrishava, Charmavat, Ārjava, and Cuka, dashed out of the mighty (Kaurava) array,[27] supported by Cakuni and by their respective forces of great valour, themselves clad in mail, skilled in battle, fierce in mien, and possessed of exceeding might.[28] Breaking through that invincible cavalry division (of the Pāndavas), O thou of mighty arms, those Gāndhāra warriors who could with difficulty be vanquished, supported by a large force, desirous of heaven, longing for victory, and filled with delight, penetrated into it. Beholding them filled with joy, the valiant Irāvat,[29-30] addressing his own warriors decked with diverse ornaments and weapons, said unto them,—Adopt such contrivances in consequence of which these Dhārtarāshtra warriors with their weapons and animals may all be destroyed!—

---

* *Vāyuvega-samasparçān*, literally, "the contact (of whose dash or collision) resembles that of the wind in force.." The meaning, therefore, is that these chargers dashed against hostile divisions with the fury of the tempest.—T.

Saying—*Yes*—all those warriors of Irāvat[31-32] slew that Dhārtarāshtra division invincible by foes in battle. Beholding that division of theirs overthrown in battle by Irāvat's division,[33] those sons of Suvala, unable to bear it coolly, all rushed at Irāvat and surrounded him on all sides.[34] And commanding (all their followers) to attack those of Irāvat with lances, those heroes swept over the field, creating a great confusion.[35] And Irāvat, pierced with lances by those high-souled warriors, and bathed in blood that trickled down (his wounds), looked like an elephant pierced with the hook.[36] Wounded deeply on the chest, back, and flanks, singly encounting the many, he did not yet, O king, swerve from his (natural) firmness.[37] Instead, Irāvat, excited with rage, deprived all those adversaries of their senses, piercing them, in that battle, with sharp shafts.[38] And that chastiser of foes, tearing those lances from off his body, struck with them the sons of Suvala in battle.[39] Then unsheathing his polished sword and taking a shield, he rushed on foot, desirous of slaying Suvala's sons in that combat.[40] The sons of Suvala, however, recovering their senses, once more rushed at Irāvat, excited with wrath.[41] Irāvat, however, proud of his might, and displaying his lightness of hand, proceeded towards all of them, armed with his sword.[42] Moving as he did with great activity, the sons of Suvala, although they moved about on their fleet steeds, could not find an opportunity for striking that hero (on foot).[43] Beholding him then on foot, his foes surrounded him closely and wished to take him captive.[44] Then that crusher of foes, seeing them contiguous to himself, struck off, with his sword, both their right and left arms, and mangled their other limbs.*[45] Then those arms of theirs adorned with gold, and their weapons, fell down on the earth, and they themselves, with limbs mangled, fell down on the field, deprived of life.[46] Only Vrishava, O king, with many wounds on his person, escaped (with life) from that dreadful battle destructive of heroes.[47] Beholding them lying on the field of battle, thy son Duryodhana, excited with wrath, said unto that *Rākshasa* of terrible mien,[48] *viz.*, Rishyaçringa's

* This verse is read variously.—T.

son (Alamvusha), that great bowman versed in illusion, that chastiser of foes, who cherished feelings of animosity against Bhimasena in consequence of the latter's well-known slaughter of Vaka,[49] these words:—Behold, O hero, how this mighty son of Phālguna, versed in illusion, hath done me a severe injury by destroying my forces![50] Thou also, O sire, art capable of going everywhere at will and accomplished in all weapons of illusion. Thou cherishest animosity also for Pārtha. Therefore, do thou slay this one in battle![51]—Saying—*Yes*—that *Rākshasa* of terrible mien proceeded with a leonine roar to that spot where the mighty and youthful son of Arjuna was.[52] And he was supported by the heroic warriors of his own division, accomplished in smiting, well-mounted, skilled in battle, and fighting with bright lances.[53] Accompanied by the remnant of that excellent cavalry division (of the Kauravas), he proceeded, desirous of slaying in battle the mighty Irāvat.[54] That slayer of foes, *viz.*, the valiant Irāvat, excited with rage, and advancing speedily from desire of slaying the *Rākshasa*, began to resist him.[55] Beholding him advance, the mighty *Rākshasa* speedily set himself about for displaying his powers of illusion.[56] The *Rākshasa* then created a number of illusive chargers which were ridden by terrible *Rākshasas* armed with spears and axes.[57] Those two thousand accomplished smiters advancing with rage were, however, soon sent to the regions of Yama, (falling in the encounter with Irāvat's forces).[58] And when the forces of both perished, both of them, invincible in battle, encountered each other like Vritra and Vāsava.[59] Beholding the *Rākshasa*, who was difficult of being vanquished in battle, advance towards him, the mighty Irāvat, excited with rage, began to check his onset.[60] And when the *Rākshasa* approached him nearer, Irāvat with his sword quickly cut off his bow, as also each of his shafts into five fragments.[61] Seeing his bow cut off, the *Rākshasa* speedily rose up into the welkin, confounding with his illusion the enraged Irāvat.[62] Then Irāvat also, difficult of approach, capable of assuming any form at will, and having a knowledge of what are the vital limbs of the body, rising up into the welkin, and confounding with his

illusion the *Rākshasa*, began to cut off all the latter's limbs in that battle. And thus was that prince of *Rakshasas* repeatedly cut into pieces.*[63-64] The *Rākshasa*, however, O king, was reborn, assuming a youthful form. Illusion is natural with them, and their age and form are both dependent on their will.[65] And the limbs of that *Rākshasa*, O king, cut into pieces, presented a beautiful sight. Irāvat, excited with rage, repeatedly cut that mighty *Rākshasa* with his sharp axe. The brave *Rākshasa*, thus cut into pieces like a tree by the mighty Irāvat,[66-67] roared fiercely. And those roars of his became deafening. Mangled with the axe, the *Rākshasa* began to pour forth blood in torrents.[68] Then (Alamvusha) the migty son of Rishyaçringa, beholding his foe blazing forth with energy, became infuriate with rage and himself put forth his prowess in that combat.[69] Assuming a prodigious and fierce form, he endeavoured to seize the heroic son of Arjuna, *viz.*, the renowned Irāvat.[70] In the sight of all the combatants there present, beholding that illusion of the wicked *Rākshasa* in the van of battle,[71] Irāvat became inflamed with rage and adopted steps for himself having recourse to illusion. And when that hero, never retreating from battle, became inflamed with wrath,[72] a *Nāga* related to him by his mother's side, came to him. Surrounded on all sides, in that battle, by *Nāgas*, that *Nāga*, O king,[73] assumed a huge form mighty as *Ananta* himself. With diverse kinds of *Nāgas* then he covered the *Rākshasa*.[74] While being covered by those *Nāgas*, that bull among *Rākshasas* reflected for a moment, and then assuming the form of Garuda, he devoured those snakes.[75] When that *Nāga* of his mother's line was devoured through illusion, Irāvat became confounded. And while in that state, the *Rākshasa* slew him with his sword.[76] Alamvusha felled on the earth Irāvat's head decked with ear-rings and graced with a diadem and looking beautiful like a lotus or the moon.[77]

"'When the heroic son of Arjuna was thus slain by the *Rākshasa*, the Dhārtarāshtra host with all the kings (in it) were

---

* In the first line of 64, the true reading is *Sarvamarmajna* and not, *Sarvadharmajna*.—T.

freed from grief.[78] In that great battle that was so fierce, awful was the carnage that occurred among both the hosts.[79] Horses and elephants and foot-soldiers, entangled with one another, were slain by tuskers. And car-steeds and tuskers were slain by foot-soldiers.[80] And in that general engagememt bodies of foot-soldiers and cars, and large numbers of horse, belonging both to thy army and theirs, were slain, O king, by car-warriors.[81] Meanwhile, Arjuna, not knowing that the son of his loins had been slaughtered, slew in that battle many kings who had been protecting Bhishma.[82] And the warriors, O king, of thy army and the Srinjayas, by thousands, poured out their lives as libations (on the fire of battle), striking one another.[83] And many car-warriors, with dishevelled hair, and with swords and bows fallen from their grasp, fought with their bare arms, encountering one another.[84] The mighty Bhishma also, with shafts capable of penetrating into the very vitals, slew many mighty car-warriors and caused the Pāndava army to tremble (the while.)[85] By him were slain many combatants in Yudhishthira's host, and many tuskers and cavalry-soldiers and car-warriors and steeds.[86] Beholding, O Bhārata, the prowess of Bhishma in that battle, it seemed to us that it was equal to that of Cakra himself.*[87] And the prowess of Bhimasena, as also that of Pārshata, was hardly less, O Bhārata, (than that of Bhisma). And so also the battle fought by that great bowman *(viz.*, Sātyaki) of Satwata's race, was equally fierce.†[88] Beholding, however, the prowess of Drona, the Pāndavas were struck with fear. Indeed, they thought that—*Alone, Drona can slay us with all our troops!*[89] *What then should be said of him when he is surrounded by a large body of warriors who for their bravery are renowned over the world?*—Even this, O king, was what the Pārthas said, afflicted by Drona.[90] During the progress of that fierce battle, O bull of Bharata's race, the brave combatants of neither army forgave their adversaries of the other.[91] O sire, the mighty bowmen of both thy army and that of the Pānda-

---

* The second line of 87 is omitted in some of the Bengal texts.—T.

† The Bombay reading of the second line of 88 is vicious.—T

vas, inflamed with wrath, fought furiously with one another, as if they were all possessed by *Rākshasas* and demons.*[92] Indeed, we did not see any one in that battle which was so destructive of heroes and which was like unto a battle of the demons, to take care of his life.' "[93]

SECTION XCII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, all that the mighty Pārthas did in battle when thy heard that Irāvat had been slain.'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Irāvat slain in battle, the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha, the son of Bhimasena, uttered loud shouts.[2] And in consequence of the loudness of those roars, the earth having the ocean for her robes, along with her mountains and forests, began to tremble violently.[3] And the welkin also, and the quarters both cardinal and subsidiary, all trembled. And hearing those loud roars of his, O Bhārata, the thighs and other limbs of the troops began to tremble, and sweat also appeared on their persons. And all thy combatants, O king, became cheerless of heart.[4-5] And all over the field the warriors stood still, like elephants afeared of the lion. And the *Rākshasa*, uttering those loud roars resembling the rattle of thunder,[6] assuming a terrible form, and with a blazing spear upraised in hand, and surrounded by many bulls among *Rakshasas* of fierce forms armed with diverse weapons,[7] advanced, excited with rage and resembling the Destroyer himself at the end of the *Yuga*. Beholding him advance in wrath and with a terrible countenance,[8] and seeing also his own troops almost all running away from fear of that *Rākshasa*, king Duryodhana rushed against Ghatotkacha,[9] taking up his bow with arrow fixed on the string, and repeatedly roaring like a lion. Behind him proceeded the ruler of the Vangas, with ten thousand elephants, huge as hills, and each with juice trickling down. Beholding thy son, O king, (thus) advancing,

---

* The Bombay reading *Rakshabhutā* is incorrect. The instrumental plural is the correct reading.—T.

surrounded by that elephant division, that ranger of the night (*viz.*, Ghatotkacha) became inflamed with wrath. Then commenced a battle that was fierce and that made the hair to stand on end,[10-12] between that *Rākshasa* force, O king, and the troops of Duryodhana. And beholding also that elephant division risen (on the horizon) like a cloud,[13] the *Rākshasas*, inflamed with rage, rushed towards it, weapons in hand, and uttering diverse roars like clouds charged with lightning.[14] With arrows and darts and swords and long shafts, as also with spears and mallets and battle-axes and short arrows, they began to smite down that elephant host.[15] And they slew huge elephants with mountain summits and large trees. While the *Rākshasas* slew those elephants, O king, we saw that some of them had their frontal globes smashed, some were bathed in blood, and some had their limbs broken or cut through. At last when that elephant host was broken and thinned,[16-17] Duryodhana, O king, rushed upon the *Rākshasas*, under the influence of rage and becoming reckless of his very life.[18] And that mighty warrior sped clouds of sharp shafts at the *Rākshasas*. And that great bowman slew many of their foremost warriors.[19] Inflamed with rage, O chief of the Bharatas, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, thy son Duryodhana, then slew with four shafts four of the principal *Rākshasas*, *viz.*, Vegavat, Mahāraudra, Vidyujjihva, and Pramāthin. And once again, O chief of the Bharatas, that warrior of immeasurable soul, sped at the *Rākshasa* host showers of arrows that could with difficulty be resisted. Beholding that great feat of thy son, O sire,[20-22] the mighty son of Bhimasena blazed up with wrath. Drawing his large bow effulgent as the lightning,[23] he rushed impetuously at the wrathful Duryodhana. Beholding him (thus) rushing like Death himself commissioned by the Destroyer,[24] thy son Duryodhana, O king, shook not at all. With eyes red in anger, and excited with rage, Ghatotkacha then, addressing thy son, said,[25]—I shall today be freed from the debt I owe to my sires as also to my mother, they that had so long been exiled by thy cruel self![26] The sons of Pāndu, O king, were vanquished by thee in that match at dice. Drupada's daughter Krishnā

also, while ill and, therefore, clad in a single raiment,[27] was brought before the assembly and persecuted by thee in diverse ways, O thou of wicked understanding! While dwelling also in her sylvan retreat, thy well-wisher, that wicked wight, *viz.*, the ruler of the Sindhus, persecuted her further, disregarding my sires! For these and other wrongs, O wretch of thy race,[28-29] I shall today take vengeance if thou dost not quit the field!—Having said these words, Hidimvā's son, drawing his gigantic bow,[30] biting his (nether) lip with his teeth, and licking the corners of his mouth, covered Duryodhana with a profuse shower of arrows, like a mass of clouds covering the mountain-breast with torrents of rain in the rainy season.' "*[31]

SECTION XCIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'That arrowy shower, difficult of being borne by even the *Dānavas*, king Duryodhana, however, (quietly) bore in that battle, like a gigantic elephant bearing a shower (from the blue).†[1] Then filled with anger, and sighing like a snake, thy son, O bull of Bharata's race, was placed in a position of great danger.[2] He then shot five and twenty sharp arrows of keen points. These, O king, fell with great force on that bull among *Rākshasas*,[3] like angry snakes of virulent poison on the breast of Gandhamādana. Pierced with those shafts, blood trickled down the *Rākshasa's* body and he looked like an elephant with rent temples.‡[4] Thereupon that cannibal set his heart upon the destruction of the (Kuru) king. And he took up a huge dart that was capable of piercing even a mountain.[5] Blazing with light, effulgent as a large meteor, it flamed with radiance like the lightning itself. And the mighty-armed Ghatotkacha, desirous of slay-

---

* The last verse consists of three lines. It ought, however, to be taken as a *sloka* and a half.—T.

† The last word of the second line is variously read. The Bengal reading is *Mahādwijas* probably implying Garuda the prince of birds. I have adopted the Bombay reading.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, with temporal juice trickling down.—T.

ing thy son, raised that dart.[6] Beholding that dart upraised, the ruler of the Vangas quickly urged an elephant, huge as a hill, towards the *Rākshasa*.[7] On the field of battle, with that mighty elephant of great speed, Bhagadatta placed himself in the very front of Duryodhana's car.[8] And with that elephant he completely shrouded the car of thy son. Beholding then the way (to Duryodhana's car) thus covered by the intelligent king of the Vangas,[9] the eyes of Ghatotkacha, O king, became red in anger. And he hurled that huge dart, before upraised, at that elephant.[10] Struck, O king, with that dart hurled from the arms of Ghatotkacha, that elephant, covered with blood and in great agony, fell down and died.[11] The mighty king of the Vangas, however, quickly jumping down from that elephant, alighted on the ground.[12] Duryodhana then, beholding that prince of elephants slain, and seeing also his troops broken and giving way, was filled with anguish.[13] From regard, however, for a Kshatriya's duty* as also his own pride, the king, though defeated, stood firm like a hill.[14] Filled with wrath and aiming a sharp arrow that resembled the *Yuga* fire in energy, he sped it at that fierce wanderer of the night.[15] Beholding that arrow, blazing as Indra's bolt, thus coursing towards him, the high-souled Ghatotkacha baffled it by the celerity of his movements.[16] With eyes red in wrath, he once more shouted fiercely, frightening all thy troops, like the clouds that appear at the end of the *Yuga*.[17] Hearing those fierce roars of the terrible *Rākshasa*, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, approaching the preceptor, said these words :[18]—These fierce roars that are heard, uttered by the *Rākshasa*, without doubt, indicate that Hidimvā's son is battling with king Duryodhana.[19] That *Rākshasa* is incapable of being vanquished in battle by any creature! Therefore, blessed be ye, proceed ye thither and protect the king :[20] The blessed Duryodhana hath been attacked by the high-souled *Rākshasa*. Therefore, ye chastisers of foes, even this is our highest duty :[21]†—Hearing those words of the

* The duty consisted in not retreating from the field.—T.

† *I. e.*, the rescue of the king.—T.

grandsire, those mighty car-warriors, without loss of time and with the utmost speed, proceeded to the spot where the king of the Kurus was.[22] They were Drona and Somadatta, and Vālhika and Jayadratha; and Kripa and Bhuriçravas and Calya, and the two princes of Avanti along with Vrihadvala;[23] and Açwatthāman and Vikarna, and Chitrasena and Vivingçati. And many thousands of other car-warriors, including all those that followed them,[24] proceeded, desirous of rescuing thy son Duryodhana who had been hotly pressed. Beholding that invincible division protected by those mighty car-warriors, coming towards him with hostile intentions, that best of *Rākshasas, viz.*, the mighty-armed Ghatotkacha, stood firm like the Maināka mountain,[25-26] with a huge bow in hand, and surrounded by his kinsmen armed with clubs and mallets and diverse other kinds of weapons.[27] Then commenced a fierce battle, making the hair to stand on end, between those *Rākshasas* on the one side and that foremost of Duryodhana's divisions on the other.[28] And the loud noise of twanging bows in that battle was heard, O king, on all sides resembling the noise made by burning bamboos.[29] And the din produced by the weapons falling upon the coats of mail of the combatants resembled, O king, the noise of splitting hills.[30] And the lances, O monarch, hurled by heroic arms, while coursing through the welkin, looked like darting snakes.[31] Then, excited with great wrath and drawing his gigantic bow, the mighty-armed prince of the *Rākshasas*, uttering a loud roar,[32] cut off, with a crescent shaped arrow, the preceptor's bow in rage. And overthrowing, with another broad-headed arrow, the standard of Somadatta, he uttered a loud yell.[33] And he pierced Vālhika with three shafts in the centre of the chest. And he pierced Kripa with one arrow, and Chitrasena with three.[34] And with another arrow, well-aimed and well-sped from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch, he struck Vikarna at the shoulder-joint.[35] Thereupon the latter, covered with gore, sat down on the terrace of his car. Then that *Rākshasa* of immeasurable soul, excited with rage, O bull of Bharata's race, sped at Bhuriçravas five and ten shafts. These, penetr ating through the latter's armour, entered the e arth.[36-37]

He then struck the charioteers of Vivingçati and Açwatthāman. These fell down on the terraces of their cars, relinquishing the reins of the steeds.[38] With another crescent-shaped shaft he overthrew the standard of Jayadratha bearing the device of a boar and decked with gold. And with a second arrow he cut off the latter's bow.[39] And with eyes red in wrath, he slew with four shafts the four steeds of the high-souled king of Avanti.[40] And with another arrow, O king, well-tempered and sharp, and shot from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch, he pierced king Vrihadvala.[41] Deeply pierced and exceedingly pained, the latter sat down on the terrace of his car. Filled with great wrath and seated on his car, the prince of the *Rākshasas*[42] then shot many bright arrows of keen points that resembled snakes of virulent poison. These, O king, succeeded in piercing Calya accomplished in battle.' "[43].

SECTION XCIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having in that battle made all those warriors (of thy army) turn their faces from the field, the *Rākshasa* then, O chief of the Bharatas, rushed at Duryodhana, desirous of slaying him.[1] Beholding him rushing with great impetuosity towards the king, many warriors of thy army, incapable of defeat in battle, rushed towards him (in return) from desire of slaying him.[2] Those mighty car-warriors, drawing their bows that measured full six cubits long, and uttering loud roars like a herd of lions, all rushed together against that single warrior.[3] And surrounding him on all sides, they covered him with their arrowy showers like the clouds covering the mountain-breast with torrents of rain in autumn.[4] Deeply pierced with those arrows and much pained, he resembled then an elephant pierced with the hook. Quickly then he soared up into the firmament like Garuda.[5] And (while there) he uttered many loud roars like autumnal clouds, making the welkin, and all the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, resound with those fierce cries.[6] Hearing those roars of the *Rākshasa*, O chief of the Bharatas, king Yudhishthira then, addressing Bhima, said unto

that chastiser of foes these words :[7]—The noise that we hear uttered by the fiercely-roaring *Rākshasa*, without doubt, indicates that he is battling with the mighty car-warriors of the Dhārtarāshtra army.[8] I see also that the burthen has proved heavier than what that bull among *Rākshasas* is able to bear. The grandsire, too, excited with rage, is ready to slaughter the Pānchālas.[9] For protecting them Phālguna is battling with the foe. O thou of mighty arms, hearing now of these two tasks both of which demand prompt attention,[10] go and give succour to Hidimvā's son who is placed in a position of very great danger !—Listening to these words of his brother, Vrikodara, with great speed,[11] proceeded, frightening all the kings with his leonine roars, with great impetuosity, O king, like the ocean itself during the full or the new moon.*[12] Him followed Satyadhriti, and Sauchitti difficult of being vanquished in battle, and Crenimat, and Vasudāna, and the powerful son of the ruler of the Kāçis,[13] and many car-warriors headed by Abhimanyu, as also those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the sons of Draupadi, and the valiant Kshatradeva, and Kshatradharman,[14] and Nila, the ruler of the low countries, at the head of his own forces. And these surrounded the son of Hidimvā with a large division of cars (for aiding him).†[15] And they advanced to the rescue of Ghatotkacha, that prince of the *Rākshasas*, with six thousand elephants, always infuriate and accomplished in smiting.[16] And with their loud leonine roars, and the clatter of their car-wheels, and with the tread of their horses' hoofs, they made the very earth to tremble.[17] Hearing the din of those advancing warriors, the faces of thy troops who were filled with anxiety in consequence of their fear of Bhimasena became pale.[18] Leaving Ghatotkacha then they all fled away. Then commenced in that part of the field a dreadful battle between those high-souled warriors

---

* The collocation of such sentences may be easily improved if I were not under an obligation of marking off the different verses. The fact is that in the endeavour to follow the order of the original as far as practicable, the sentences necessarily become a little involved.—T.

† In the second line of 15, the Bengal reading *çaravarshena* is incorrect. The Bombay reading *Rathavançena* is what I follow.—T.

and thine,[19] both of whom were unretreating. Mighty car-warriors, hurling diverse kinds of weapons,[20] chased and smote one another. That fierce battle, striking terror into the hearts of the timid, was such that the different classes of combatants became entangled with one another.[21] Horses engaged with elephants, and foot-soldiers with car-warriors. And challenging one another, O king, they engaged in the fight.*[22] And in consequence of that clash of cars, steeds, elephants, and foot-soldiers, a thick dust appeared, raised by the car-wheels and the tread (of those combatants and animals).[23] And that dust, thick and of the color of reddish smoke, shrouded the field of battle. And the combatants were unable to distinguish their own from the foe.[24] Sire recognised not the son, and son recognised not the sire, in that dreadful engagement which made the hair to stand on end and in which no consideration was shown (by any one for any body).[25] And the noise made by the hissing weapons and the shouting combatants resembled, O chief of Bharata's race, that made by departed spirits (in the infernal regions).[26] And there flowed a river whose current consisted of the blood of elephants and steeds and men. And the hair (of the combatants) formed its weeds and moss.[27] And in that battle heads falling from the trunks of men made a loud noise like that of a falling shower of stones.[28] And the earth was strewn with the headless trunks of human beings, with mangled bodies of elephants, and with the hacked limbs of steeds.[29] And mighty car-warriors chased one another for smiting one another down, and hurled diverse kinds of weapons.[30] Steeds, urged by their riders and falling upon steeds, dashed against one another and fell down deprived of life.[31] And men, with eyes red in wrath, rushing against men and striking one another with their chests, smote one another down.[32] And elephants, urged by their guides against hostile elephants, slew their compeers in that battle, with the points of their tusks.[33] Covered with blood in consequence of their wounds and decked with

---

* The Bengal reading *hayais* in the instrumental plural is incorrect. The Bombay text reads *hayās* (nom. plural). This is correct.—T.

standards (on their backs), elephants got entangled with elephants and looked like masses of clouds charged with lightning.[34] And some amongst them mangled (by others) with the points of their tusks, and some with their frontal globes split with lances, ran hither and thither with loud shrieks like masses of roaring clouds.[35] And some amongst them with their trunks lopped off,* and others with mangled limbs, dropped down in that dreadful battle like mountains shorn of their wings.†[36] Other huge elephants, copiously shedding blood from their flanks ripped open by compeers, looked like mountains with (liquified) red chalk running down their sides (after a shower).‡[37] Others, slain with shafts or pierced with lances and deprived of their riders, looked like mountains deprived of their crests.$[38] Some amongst them, possessed by wrath and blinded (with fury) in consequence of the juice (trickling down their temples and cheeks)§ and no longer restrained with the hook, crushed cars and steeds and foot-soldiers in that battle by hundreds.[39] And so steeds, attacked by horsemen with bearded darts and lances, rushed against their assailants, as if agitating the points of the compass.[40] Car-warriors of noble parentage and prepared to lay down their lives, encountering car-warriors, fought fearlessly, relying upon their utmost might.[41] The combatants, O king, seeking

---

* Literally, "divided in twain."—T.

† Mountains, in Hindu mythology, had wings, till they were shorn of these by Indra with his thunder. Only Maināka, the son of Himavat, saved himself by a timely flight. To this day he conceals himself within the ocean.—T.

‡ The Bengal reading of the first line of this verse is vicious. The true reading is *pārçwaistudāritairanye*. Both *pārçwa* and *dārita* should be (as here) in the instrumental plural, and *anye* should be in the nom. plural.—T.

$ The Bombay reading of the second line is vicious. The correct reading, as settled by the Burdwan Pundits, is *Hatārohā vyadriçyanta*. Some texts have *Hayārohā* which is incorrect.—T.

§ "Blinded ... cheeks." The Sanskrit word is *madāndha*. Literally rendered, it would be "juice-blind." This can scarcely be intelligible to the general European reader. Hence the long-winded adjectival clause I have used.—T.

glory or heaven, struck one another in that awful press, as if in a marriage by self-choice.[42] During, however, that dreadful battle making the hair to stand on end, the Dhārtarāshtra troops generally were made to turn their backs on the field.' "[43]

SECTION XCV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding his own troops slain, king Duryodhana then, excited with wrath, rushed towards Bhimasena, that chastiser of foes.[1] Taking up a large bow whose effulgence resembled that of Indra's bolt, he covered the son of Pāndu with a thick shower of arrows.[2] And filled with rage, and aiming a sharp crescent-shaped shaft winged with feathers, he cut off Bhimasena's bow.[3] And that mighty car-warrior, noticing an opportunity, quickly aimed at his adversary a whetted shaft capable of riving the very hills.[4] With that (shaft), that mighty-armed (warrior) struck Bhimasena in the chest. Deeply pierced with that arrow, and exceedingly pained, and licking the corners of his mouth,[5] Bhimasena of great energy caught hold of his flag-staff decked with gold. Beholding Bhimasena in that cheerless state, Ghatotkacha blazed up with wrath like an all-consuming conflagration.[6] Then many mighty car-warriors of the Pāndava army, headed by Abhimanyu and with wrath generated (in their bosoms), rushed at the king, shouting loudly. Beholding them (thus) advancing (to the fight) filled with wrath and in great fury,[7-8] Bharadwāja's son, addressing the mighty car-warriors (of thy side), said these words:—Go quickly, blessed be ye, and protect the king![9] Sinking in an ocean of distress, he is placed in a situation of great danger! These mighty car-warriors of the Pāndava army, these great bowmen,[10] placing Bhimasena at their head, are rushing towards Duryodhana, shooting and hurling diverse kinds of weapons, resolved upon (winning) success,[11] uttering terrible shouts, and frightening the kings (on our side)!—Hearing these words of the preceptor, many warriors of thy side headed by Somadatta rushed upon the Pāndava ranks. Kripa and Bhuriçravas and Calya, and Drona's son and Vivingçati,[12-13] and Chitrasena and

Vikarna, and the ruler of the Sindhus, and Vrihadvala, and those two mighty bowmen, *viz.*, the two princes of Avanti, surrounded the Kuru king.[14] Advancing only twenty steps, the Pāndavas and the Dhārtarāshtras began to strike, desirous of slaughtering each other.[15] The mighty-armed son of Bharadwāja also, having said those words (unto the Dhārtarāshtra warriors), stretched his own large bow and pierced Bhima with six and twenty arrows.[16] And once again that mighty car-warrior speedily covered Bhimasena with a shower of arrows like a mass of clouds dropping torrents of rain on the mountain-breast in the rainy season.[17] That mighty bowman Bhimasena, however, of great strength, speedily pierced him in return with ten shafts on the left side.[18] Deeply pierced with those arrows and exceedingly pained, O Bhārata, the preceptor, enfeebled as he is with age, suddenly sat down on the terrace of his car, deprived of consciousness.[19] Beholding him thus pained, king Duryodhana himself, and Açwatthāman also, excited with wrath, both rushed towards Bhimasena.[20] Beholding those two warriors advance, each like Yama as he shows himself at the end of the *Yuga*, the mighty-armed Bhimasena, quickly taking up a mace,[21] and jumping down from his car without loss of time, stood immovable like a hill, with that heavy mace resembling the very club of Yama, upraised in battle.[22] Beholding him with mace (thus) upraised and looking (on that account) like the crested Kailāsa, both the Kuru king and Drona's son rushed towards him.[23] Then the mighty Bhimasena himself rushed impetuously at those two foremost of men thus rushing together towards him with great speed.[24] Beholding him thus rushing in fury and with a terrible expression of face, many mighty car-warriors of the Kaurava army speedily proceeded towards him.[25] Those car-warriors headed by Bharadwāja's son, impelled by the desire of slaughtering Bhimasena, hurled at his breast diverse kinds of weapons,[26] and thus all of them together afflicted Bhima from all sides. Beholding that mighty car-warrior thus afflicted and placed in a situation of great peril,[27] many mighty car-warriors of the Pāndava army, headed by Abhimanyu, and prepared to lay down dear life

itself, rushed to the spot, desirous of rescuing him.[28] The heroic ruler of the low country, the dear friend of Bhima, *viz.*, Nila, looking like a mass of blue clouds, rushed at Drona's son, filled with wrath.[29] A great bowman, Nila always desired an encounter with Drona's son. Drawing his large bow, he pierced the son of Drona with many winged arrows,[30] like Cakra in days of old, O king, piercing the invincible *Dānava* Viprachitti, that terror of the celestials,[31] who, moved by anger, frightened the three worlds by his energy. Pierced after the same way by Nila with his well-shot arrow winged with feathers,[32] Drona's son, covered with blood and exceedingly pained, was filled with wrath. Drawing then his large bow, of twang loud as the roar of Indra's thunder,[33] that foremost of intelligent persons set his heart upon the destruction of Nila. Aiming then a few bright shafts of broad heads and sharpened by the hands of their forger,[34] he slew the four steeds of his adversary and overthrew also his standard. And with the seventh shaft he pierced Nila himself in the chest.[35] Deeply pierced and exceedingly pained, he sat down on the terrace of his car. Beholding king Nila, who looked like a mass of blue clouds, in a swoon,[36] Ghatotkacha, filled with wrath and surrounded by his kinsmen, rushed impetuously towards Drona's son, that ornament of battle.[37] Similarly many other *Rākshasas*, incapable of being easily defeated in battle, rushed at Açwatthāman. Beholding then that *Rākshasa* of terrible mien coming towards him,[38] the valiant son of Bhāradwāja impetuously rushed towards him. Filled with wrath he slew many *Rākshasas* of formidable visage,[39] that is, those wrathful ones amongst them who were in Ghatotkacha's van. Beholding them repulsed from the encounter by means of the shafts shot from the bow of Drona's son,[40] Bhimasena's son Ghatotkacha of gigantic size was filled with rage. He then exhibited a fierce and awful illusion.[41] Therewith that prince of the *Rākshasas*, endued with extraordinary powers of illusion, confounded the son of Drona in that battle. Then all thy troops, in consequence of that illusion, turned their backs upon the field.[42] They beheld one another cut down and lying prostrate on the surface of the earth, writhing convul-

sively, perfectly helpless, and bathed in blood.[43] And Drona and Duryodhana and Calya and Açwatthāman, and other great bowmen that were regarded as foremost amongst the Kauravas, also seemed to fly away.*[44] All the car-warriors seemed to be crushed, and all the kings seemed to be slain. And horses and horse-riders seemed to be cut down in thousands.[45] Beholding all this, thy troops fled away towards their tents. And although, O king, both myself and Devavrata cried out at the top of our voices, saying,[46]—Fight, do not fly away! All this is *Rākshasa* illusion in battle, applied by Ghatotkacha!—yet they stopped not, their senses having been confounded.[47] Although both of us said so, still, struck with panic, they gave no credit to our words. Beholding them fly away, the Pāndavas regarded the victory to be theirs.[48] With Ghatotkacha (among them) they uttered many leonine shouts. And all around they filled the air with their shouts mingled with the blare of their conchs and the beat of their drums.[49] It was thus that thy whole army, routed by the wicked Ghatotkacha towards the hour of sunset, fled away in all directions.' "[50]

SECTION XCVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'After that great battle, king Duryodhana, approaching Gangā's son and saluting him with humility,[1] began to narrate to him all that had happened about the victory won by Ghatotkacha and his own defeat.[2] That invincible warrior, O king, sighing repeatedly, said these words unto Bhishma the grandsire of the Kurus:[3]—O lord, relying upon thee as Vāsudeva hath been (relied upon) by the foe, a fierce war hath been commenced by me with the Pāndavas.†[4] These eleven *Akshauhinis* of celebrated troops that I have, are with myself obedient to thy command, O chastiser of

* This verse is read differently in the Bombay text. The Bengal reading also is defective. I take the latter as it is.—T.

† I endeavour in such verses to follow the construction of the original.—T.

foes![5] O tiger among the Bharatas, though thus situated, yet have I been defeated in battle by the Pāndava warriors headed by Bhimasena relying upon Ghatotkacha![6] It is this that consumeth my limbs like fire consuming a dry tree! O blessed one, O chastiser of foes, I, therefore, desire, through thy grace, O grandsire, to myself slay Ghatotkacha, that worst of *Rākshasas*, relying upon thy invincible self! It behoveth thee to see that that wish of mine may be fulfilled![7-8] —Hearing these words of the king, that foremost one among the Bharatas, *viz.*, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, said these words unto Duryodhana:[9]—Listen, O king, to these words of mine that I say unto thee, O thou of Kuru's race, about the way in which thou, O chastiser of foes, shouldst always behave![10] One's own self, under all circumstances, should be protected in battle, O represser of foes! Thou shouldst always, O sinless one, battle with king Yudhishthira the just,[11] or with Arjuna, or with the twins, or with Bhimasena! Keeping the duty of a king before himself, a king striketh a king![12] Myself, and Drona, and Kripa, and Drona's son, and Kritavarman of the Sātwata race, and Calya, and Somadatta's son, and that mighty car-warrior Vikarna,[13] and thy heroic brothers headed by Dusçāsana, will all, for thy sake, battle against that mighty *Rākshasa*.[14] Or, if thy grief on account of that fierce prince of the *Rākshasas* be too great, let this one proceed in battle against that wicked warrior,[15] that is to say, king Bhagadatta who is equal unto Purandara himself in fight!—Having said this much unto the king, the grandsire skilled in speech then addressed Bhagadatta in the presence of the (Kuru) king, saying,—Proceed quickly, O great monarch, against that invincible warrior, *viz.*, the son of Hidimvā![16-17] Resist in battle, with care, and in view of all the bowmen, that *Rākshasa* of cruel deeds, like Indra in days of old resisting Tāraka![18] Thy weapons are celestial. Thy prowess also is great, O chastiser of foes! In days of old many have been the encounters that thou hadst with *Asuras*![19] O tiger among kings, thou art that *Rākshasa's* match in great battle! Strongly supported by thy own troops, slay, O king, that bull among *Rākshasas*![20]—Hearing these words of

Bhishma the generalissimo (of the Kaurava army), Bhagadatta speedily set out with a leonine roar, facing the ranks of the foe.[21] Beholding him advance towards them like a mass of roaring clouds, many mighty car-warriors of the Pāndava army proceeded against him, inflamed with wrath.[22] They were Bhimasena, and Abhimanyu, and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha; and the sons of Draupadi, and Satyadhriti, and Kshatradeva, O sire,[23] and the ruler of the Chedis, and Vasudāna, and the king of the Daçārnas. Bhagadatta then, on his elephant named Supratika, rushed against them.[24] Then commenced a fierce and awful battle between the Pāndavas and Bhagadatta, that increased the population of Yama's kingdom.[25] Shafts of terrible energy and great impetuosity, shot by car-warriors, fell, O king, on elephants and cars.[26] Huge elephants with rent temples and trained (to the fight) by their guides, approaching fell upon one another fearlessly.[27] Blind (with fury) in consequence of the temporal juice trickling down their bodies, and excited with rage, attacking one another with their tusks resembling stout bludgeons, they pierced one another with the points of those weapons.*[28] Graced with excellent tails, and ridden by warriors armed with lances, steeds, urged by those riders, fell fearlessly and with great impetuosity upon one another.[29] And foot-soldiers, attacked by bodies of foot-soldiers with darts and lances, fell down on the earth by hundreds and thousands.[30] And car-warriors upon their cars, slaughtering heroic adversaries in that battle by means of barbed arrows and muskets and shafts, uttered leonine shouts.†[31] And during the progress of that battle mak-

---

* The first line is evidently pleonastic. Sanskrit, however, being very copious, repetitions can scarcely be marked at the first glance. Literally rendered, the original is—"Juice-blind and excited with rage." "Juice-blind," I have explained elsewhere.—T.

† The word I render "muskets" is *nālika*. Sometime ago the *Bhārati* (a Bengali periodical of Calcutta edited by Babu Dwijendra Nath Tagore) in a paper on Hindu weapons of warfare, from certain quotations from the *Rāmāyana* and the *Mahābhārata*, argued that the *nālika* must have been some kind of musket vomiting bullets of iron in consequence of some kind of explosive force. The *Rishis* discouraged the use of *nālikas*,

ing the hair to stand on end, that great bowman, *viz.*, Bhagadatta, rushed towards Bhimasena,[32] on his elephant of rent temples and with juice trickling down in seven currents, and resembling (on that account) a mountain with (as many) rillets flowing adown its breast after a shower.[33] And he came, O sinless one, scattering thousands of arrows from the head of Supratika (whereon he stood) like the illustrious Purandara himself on his Airāvata.[34] King Bhagadatta afflicted Bhimasena with that arrowy shower like the clouds afflicting the mountain-breast with torrents of rain on the expiry of summer.[35] That mighty bowman Bhimasena, however, excited with rage, slew by his arrowy showers the combatants, numbering more than a hundred, that protected the flanks and rear of Bhagadatta.*[36] Beholding them slain, the valiant Bhagadatta, filled with rage, urged his prince of elephants towards Bhimasena's car.[37] That elephant, thus urged by him, rushed impetuously, like an arrow propelled from the bowstring, towards Bhimasena that chastiser of foes.[38] Beholding that elephant advancing, the mighty car-warriors of the Pāndava army, placing Bhimasena at their head, themselves rushed towards it.[39] Those warriors were the (five) Kekaya princes, and Abhimanyu, and the (five) sons of Draupadi, and the heroic ruler of the Daçārnas, and Kshatradeva also, O sire,[40] and the ruler of the Chedis, and Chitraketu. And all these mighty warriors came, inflamed with anger, and exhibiting their excellent celestial weapons.[41] And they all surrounded in anger that single elephant (on which their adversary rode). Pierced with many shafts, that huge elephant, covered with gore flowing from his wounds, looked resplendent like a prince of mountains variegated with (liquified) red chalk (after a shower). The ruler of the Daçārnas then, on an elephant that

---

declaring them to be barbarous and fit only for kings that would come in the *Kali* age.—T.

* *Pādarakshān*, lit., those that protected the feet (of any warrior of note). These always stood at the flanks and rear of the warrior they protected. In the case of car-warriors, these were called *chakra-rakshas* (protectors of the wheels). So we have *Pārshni-rakshas*, and *Prishta-rakshas*, &c., &c.—T.

resembled a mountain, rushed towards Bhagadatta's elephant. That prince of elephants, however, *viz.*, Supratika, bore (the rush of) that advancing compeer like the continent bearing (the rush of) the surging sea. Beholding that elephant of the high-souled king of the Daçārnas thus resisted,[42-45] even the Pāndava troops, applauding, cried out—*Excellent, excellent !*—Then that best of kings, *viz.*, the ruler of the Prāgyotishas, excited with rage, sped four and ten lances at that elephant. These, speedily penetrating through the excellent armour, decked with gold, that covered the animal's body, entered into it, like snakes entering ant-hills. Deeply pierced and exceedingly pained, that elephant, O chief of the Bharatas,[46-48] its fury quelled, speedily turned back with great force. And it fled away with great swiftness, uttering frightful shrieks,[49] and crushing the Pāndava ranks like the tempest crushing trees with its violence. After that elephant was (thus) vanquished, the mighty car-warriors of the Pāndava army,[50] uttering loud leonine shouts, approached for battle. Placing Bhima at their head, they rushed at Bhagadatta,[51] scattering diverse kinds of arrows and diverse kinds of weapons. Hearing the fierce shouts, O king, of those advancing warriors swelling with rage and vengeance, that great bowman Bhagadatta, filled with rage and perfectly fearless, urged his own elephant.[52-53] That prince of elephants then, thus urged with the hook and the toe, soon assumed the form of the (all-destructive) *Samvarta* fire (that appears at the end of the *Yuga*).[54] Crushing crowds of cars and (hostile) compeers and steeds with riders, in that battle, it began, O king, to run hither and thither.[55] Filled with rage it also crushed foot-soldiers by hundreds and thousands. Attacked and agitated by that elephant, that large force of the Pāndavas[56] shrank in dimensions, O king, like a piece of leather exposed to the heat of fire. Beholding then the Pāndava array broken by the intelligent Bhagadatta,[57] Ghatotkacha, of fierce mien, O king, with blazing face and eyes red as fire, filled with rage, rushed towards him.[58] Assuming a terrible form and burning with wrath, he took up a bright dart capable of riving the very hills.[59] Endued with great strength, he forcibly hurled that

dart that emitted blazing flames from every part, desirous of slaying that elephant.[60] Beholding it coursing towards him with great impetuosity, the ruler of the Prāgyotishas sped at it a beautiful but fierce and sharp arrow with a crescent head.[61] Possessed of great energy he cut off that dart with that arrow of his. Thereupon that dart, decked with gold, thus divided in twain, dropped down on the ground,[62] like the bolt of heaven, hurled by Indra, flashing through the welkin. Beholding that dart (of his adversary) O king, divided in twain and fallen on the ground,[63] Bhagadatta took up a large javelin furnished with a golden staff and resembling a flame of fire in effulgence, and hurled it at the *Rākshasa*, saying,—*Wait, Wait !*[64]—Seeing it coursing towards him like the bolt of heaven through the welkin, the *Rākshasa* jumped up and speedily seizing it uttered a loud shout.[65] And quickly placing it aganist his knee, O Bhārata, he broke it in the very sight of all the kings. All this seemed exceedingly wonderful.[66] Beholding that feat achieved by the mighty *Rākshasa*, the celestials in the firmament, with the *Gandharvas*, and the *Munis*, were filled with wonder.[67] And the Pāndava warriors also, headed by Bhimasena, filled the earth with cries of *Excellent, Excellent !*[68]—Hearing, however, those loud shouts of the rejoicing Pāndavas, that great bowman, *viz.*, the valiant Bhagadatta, could not bear it (coolly).[69] Drawing his large bow whose effulgence resembled that of Indra's bolt, he roared with great energy at the mighty car-warriors of the Pāndava army,[70] shooting at the same time many bright arrows of great sharpness and possessed of the effulgence of fire. And he pierced Bhima with one arrow, and the *Rākshasa* with nine.[71] And he pierced Abhimanyu with three, and the Kekaya brothers with five. And with another straight arrow shot from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch,[72] he pierced, in that battle, the right arm of Kshatradeva. Thereupon the latter's bow with arrow fixed on the bowstring dropped down from his hand.[73] And he struck the five sons of Draupadi with five arrows. And, from wrath, he slew the steeds of Bhimasena.[74] And with three shafts winged with feathers, he cut down Bhimasena's standard bearing the device of

a lion. And with three other shafts he pierced Bhima's charioteer.[75] Deeply pierced by Bhagadatta in that battle, and exceedingly pained, Viçoka thereupon, O chief of the Bharatas, sat down on the terrace of the car.[76] Then, O king, that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Bhima, thus deprived of his car, quickly jumped down from his large vehicle, taking up his mace.[77] Beholding him with mace upraised and looking like a crested hill, all thy troops, O Bhārata, became filled with great fear.[78] Just at this time that son of Pāndu who had Krishna for his charioteer, O king, slaughtering the foe on all sides as he came, appeared on that spot[79] where those tigers among men, those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, Bhimasena and Ghatotkacha, sire and son, were engaged with the ruler of the Prāgyotishas.[80] Beholding his brothers, those mighty car-warriors, engaged in battle, that son of Pāndu quickly commenced to fight, profusely scattering his shafts, O chief of the Bharatas.[81] Then that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, king Duryodhana, speedily urged on a division of his troops abounding with cars and elephants.[82] Towards that mighty division of the Kauravas thus advancing with impetuosity, Arjuna of white steeds rushed with great impetuousity.[83] Bhagadatta also, upon that elephant of his, O Bhārata, crushing the Pāndava ranks, rushed towards Yudhishthira.[84] Then commenced a fierce battle between Bhagadatta, O sire, and the Pānchālas, the Srinjayas, and the Kekayas, with upraised weapons.[85] Then Bhimasena, in that battle, told both Keçava and Arjuna in detail about the slaughter of Irāvat as it had occoured.' "[86]

SECTION XCVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing that his son Irāvat had been slain, Dhananjaya was filled with great grief and sighed like a snake.[1] And addressing Vāsudeva in the midst of battle, he said these words :—Without doubt, the high-souled Vidura of great wisdom had before seen (with his mind's eye) this awful destruction of the Kurus and the Pāndavas ! It was for

this that he forbade king Dhritarāshtra ![*2-3] In this battle, O slayer of Madhu, many other heroes have been slain by the Kauravas and many amongst the Kauravas have similarly been slain by ourselves ![4] O best of men, for the sake of wealth vile acts are being done ! Fie upon that wealth for the sake of which such slaughter of kinsmen is being perpetrated ![5] For him that hath no wealth, even death would be better than the acquisition of wealth by the slaughter of kinsmen ! What, O Krishna, shall we gain by slaying our assembled kinsmen ?[6] Alas, for Duryodhana's fault, and of Cakuni also the son of Suvala, as also through the evil counsels of Karna, the Kshatriya race is being exterminated ![7] O slayer of Madhu, I now understand, O mighty-armed one, that the king acted wisely by begging of Suyodhana†[8] only half the kingdom, or, instead, only five villages ! Alas, even that was not granted by that wicked-souled wight ! Beholding so many brave Kshatriyas lying (dead) on the field of battle,[9] I censure myself, (saying) fie upon the profession of a Kshatriya ! These Kshatriyas will regard me powerless in battle ![10] (For this alone, I am battling ! Else,) O slayer of Madhu, this battle with kinsmen is distasteful to me ! Urge the steeds on with speed towards the Dhārtarāshtra army ![11] I will, with my two arms, reach the other shore of this ocean of battle that is so difficult to cross ! There is no time, O Mādhava, to lose in inaction ![12]—Thus addressed by Pārtha, Keçava, that slayer of hostile heroes, urged those steeds of white hue endued with the speed of the wind.[13] Then, O Bhārata, loud was the noise that was heard among thy troops, resembling that of the ocean itself at full tide when agitated by the tempest.‡[14] In the afternoon, O king, the battle that ensued between Bhishma and the Pāndavas was marked by noise that resembled the roar of the clouds.[15] Then, O king, thy sons, sur-

---

* In the first line of the 3rd verse, the Bengal reading is *bhayam.* The true reading, however, is *khayam.*—T.

† In the second line of 8th, for the Bengal reading *yāchayāmāsa yo dhanam* the Bombay reading is *yāchatācha Suyodhanam.* This is better. The Bengal reading has no meaning.—T.

‡ Literally, "when its impetuosity is stirred up by the wind."—T.

rounding Drona like the Vasus surrounding Vāsava, rushed in battle against Bhimasena.[16] Then Cāntanu's son Bhishma, and that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Kripa, and Bhagadatta, and Suçarman, all rushed towards Dhananjaya.[17] And Hridikā's son (Kritavarman) and Vālhika rushed towards Sātyaki. And king Amvashta placed himself before Abhimanyu.[18] And other great car-warriors, O king, encountered other great car-warriors. Then commenced a fierce battle that was terrible to behold.[19] Bhimasena then, O king, beholding thy sons, blazed up with wrath in that battle, like fire with (a libation of) clarified butter.[20] Thy sons, however, O monarch, covered that son of Kunti with their arrows like the clouds drenching the mountain-breast in the season of rains.[21] While being (thus) covered in diverse ways by thy sons, O king, that hero, possessed of the activity of the tiger, licked the corners of his mouth.*[22] Then, O Bhārata, Bhima felled Vyudoroska with a sharp horse-shoe-headed arrow. Thereupon that son of thine was deprived of life.[23] With another broad-headed arrow, well-tempered and sharp, he then felled Kundalin like a lion overthrowing a smaller animal.[24] Then, O sire, getting thy (other) sons (within reach of his arrows), he took up a number of shafts, sharp and well-tempered, and with careful aim speedily shot these at them.[25] Those shafts, sped by that strong bowman, *viz.*, Bhimasena, felled thy sons, those mighty car-warriors, from their vehicles.[26] (Those sons of thine that were thus slain were) Anādhrishti, and Kundabhedin, and Vairāta, and Dirghalochana, and Dirghavāhu, and Suvāhu, and Kanakadhyaja.[27] While falling down (from their cars), O bull of Bharata's race, those heroes looked resplendent like falling mango trees variegated with blossoms in the spring.[28] Then thy other sons, O monarch, fled away, regarding the mighty Bhimasena as Death himself.[29] Then, like the clouds pouring torrents of rain on the mountain breast, Drona in that battle covered with arrows from every side that hero who was thus consuming thy sons.[30] The prowess that we then beheld of

* The Bengal reading, which I adopt, is *çārdula iva vegavān.* The Bombay reading is *cārdula iva darpitas.*—T.

Kunti's son was exceedingly wonderful, for though held in check by Drona, he still slew thy sons.[31] Indeed, as a bull beareth a shower of rain falling from alove, Bhima cheerfully bore that shower of arrows shot by Drona.[32] Wonderful, O monarch, was the feat that Vrikodara achieved there, for he slew thy sons in that battle and resisted Drona the while.[33] Indeed, the elder brother of Arjuna sported amongst those heroic sons of thine, like a mighty tiger, O king, among a herd of deer![34] As a wolf, staying in the midst of a herd of deer, would chase and frighten those animals, so did Vrikodara, in that battle, chase and frighten thy sons.[35]

" 'Meanwhile, Gangā's son, and Bhagadatta, and that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Gautama, began to resist Arjuna, that impetuous son of Pāndu.[36] That *Atiratha*, baffling with his weapons the weapons of those adversaries of his in that battle, despatched many prominent heroes of thy army to the abode of Death.[37] Abhimanyu also, with his shafts, deprived that renowned and foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, king Amvashta, of his car.[38] Deprived of his car and about to be slain by the celebrated son of Subhadrā, that king quickly jumped down from his car in shame,[39] and hurled his sword in that battle at the high-souled Abhimanyu. Then that mighty monarch got up on the car of Hridikā's son.[40] Conversant with all movements in battle, Subhadrā's son, that slayer of hostile heroes, beholding that sword coursing towards him, baffled it by the celerity of his movements.[41] Seeing that sword thus baffled in that battle by Subhadrā's son, loud cries of *well done, well done*, were, O king, heard among the troops.[42] Other warriors headed by Dhrishtadyumna battled with thy troops, while thy troops, also, all battled with those of the Pāndavas.[43] Then, O Bhārata, fierce was the engagement that took place between thine and theirs, the combatants smiting one another with great force and achieving the most difficult feats.[44] Brave combatants, O sire, seizing one another by the hair, fought, using their nails and teeth, and fists and knees,[45] and palms and swords, and their well-proportioned arms. And seizing one another's *laches*, they despatched one another to the abode

of Yama.[46] Sire slew son, and son slew sire. Indeed, the combatants fought with one another, using every limb of theirs.[47] Bbeautiful bows with golden staves, O Bhārata, loosened from the grasp of slain warriors, and costly ornaments,[48] and sharp shafts furnished with wings of pure gold or silver and washed with oil, looked resplendent (as they lay scattered on the field), the latter resembling, in particular, snakes that had cast off their slough.[49] And swords furnished with ivory handles decked with gold, and the shields also of bowmen, variegated with gold, lay on the field, loosened from their grasp.[50] Bearded-darts and axes and swords and javelins, all decked with gold,[51] beautiful coats of mail, and heavy and short bludgeons, and spiked clubs, and battle-axes, and short arrows, O sire,[52] and elephants' housings of diverse shapes, and yak tails, and fans, lay scattered on the field.[53] And mighty car-warriors lay on the field with diverse kinds of weapons in their hands or beside them, and looking alive though the breath of life had gone.*[54] And men lay on the field with limbs shattered with maces and heads smashed with clubs, or crushed by elephants, steeds, and cars.[55] And the earth, strewn in many places with the bodies of slain steeds, men, and elephants, looked beautiful, O king, as if strewn with hills.[56] And the field of battle lay covered with fallen darts and swords and arrows and lances and scimitars and axes and bearded darts and iron crows and battle-axes,[57] and spiked clubs and short arrows and *Çataghnis*† and bodies mangled with weapons.[58] And, O slayer of foes, covered with blood, warriors lay prostrate on the field, some deprived of life and, therefore, in the silence of death, and others uttering low moans. And the earth, strewn with those bodies, presented a variegated sight.[59] And strewn with the arms of strong warriors smeared with sandal paste and decked with leathern fences and bracelets, with tapering thighs resembling

---

* In the first line of 54, the Bombay reading *pragrihya* is better than the Bengal reading *visrijya*.—T.

† Literally, "hundred-slayers;" supposed to be a kind of rockets.—T.

the trunks of elephants, and with fallen heads, graced with gems attached to turbans and with ear-rings, of large-eyed combatants, O Bhārata, the earth assumed a beautiful sight.[60-61] And the field of battle, overspread with blood-dyed coats of mail and golden ornaments of many kinds, looked exceedingly beautiful as if with (scattered) fires of mild flames.[62] And with ornaments of diverse kinds fallen off from their places, with bows lying about, with arrows of golden wings scattered around,[63] with many broken cars adorned with rows of bells, with many slain steeds scattered about covered with blood and with their tongues protruding,[64] with bottoms of cars, standards, quivers, and banners, with gigantic conchs, belonging to great heroes, of milky whiteness lying about,[65] and with trunkless elephants lying prostrate, the earth looked beautiful like a damsel adorned with diverse kinds of ornaments.[66] And there, with other elephants pierced with lances and in great agony, and frequently uttering low moans with their trunks,[67] the field of battle looked beautiful as if with moving hills. With blankets of diverse hue, and housings of elephants,[68] with beautiful hooks falling about having handles decked with stones of *lapis lazuli*, with bells lying about that had adorned gigantic elephants,[69] with clean and variegated cloths as also skins of the *Ranku* deer, with beautiful neck-chains of elephants, with gold-decked girths,[70] with broken engines of diverse kinds, with bearded darts decked with gold, with embroidered housings of steeds, embrowned with dust,[71] with the lopped off arms of cavalry soldiers, decked with bracelets and lying about, with polished and sharp lances and bright swords,[72] with variegated head-gears fallen off (from heads) and scattered about, with beautiful crescent-shaped arrows decked with gold,[73] with housings of steeds, with skins of the *Ranku* deer, torn and crushed, with beautiful and costly gems that decked the head-gears of kings,[74] with their umbrellas lying about and yak tails and fans, with faces, bright as the lotus or the moon, of heroic warriors, decked with beautiful ear-rings[75] and graced with well-cut beards, lying about and radiant with other ornaments of gold,[76] the earth looked like the firmament bespangled with planets and

stars. Thus, O Bhārata, the two armies, *viz.*, thine and theirs, encountering each other in battle, crushed each other. And after the combatants had been fatigued, routed, and crushed, O Bhārata,[77-78] dark night set in and the battle could no longer be seen. Thereupon both the Kurus and the Pāndavas withdrew their armies,[79] when that awful night of pitchy darkness came. And having withdrawn their troops, both the Kurus and the Pāndavas took rest for the night, retiring to their respective tents.' "[80]

SECTION XCVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then king Duryodhana, and Cakuni the son of Suvala, and thy son Dusçāsana, and the invincible *Suta's* son (Karna),[1] meeting together, consulted in the following way. How could the sons of Pāndu, with their followers, be vanquished in battle ? Even this was the subject of their consultation.[2] Then king Duryodhana, addressing the *Suta's* son and the mighty Cakuni, said unto all those counsellors of his,[3]—Drona, and Bhishma, and Kripa, and Calya, and Somadatta's son, do not resist the Pārthas. I do not know what the cause is of such conduct (of theirs).[4] Unslain by any of these, the Pāndavas are destroying my forces. Therefore, O Karna, I am becoming weaker in strength and my weapons also are being exhausted ![5] I am deceived by the heroic Pāndavas—they that are incapable of being vanquished by the very gods ! Doubt filleth my mind as to how, indeed, I shall succeed in smiting them in battle ![6]—Unto the king who said so, O great monarch, the *Suta's* son answered,—Do not grieve, O chief of the Bharatas ! Even I will do what is agreeable to thee ![7] Let Cāntanu's son Bhishma soon withdraw from the great battle ! After Gangā's son will have withdrawn from the fight and laid aside his weapons,[8] I will slay the Pārthas along with all the Somakas, in the very sight of Bhishma ! I pledge my troth, O king ![9] Indeed, Bhishma every day showeth mercy towards the Pāndavas. He is, besides, incapable of vanquishing those mighty car-warriors.[10] Bhishma is proud of showing his prowess in battle. He is, again, very fond of

fight. Why, O sire, will he, therefore, vanquish the assembled Pāndavas (for then the battle will be over) ?[11] Therefore, repairing without delay to the tent of Bhishma, solicit that old and reverend signior to lay aside his weapons.[12] After he will have laid aside his weapons, O Bhārata, think the Pāndavas as already slain, with all their friends and kinsmen, O king, by myself alone ![13]—Thus addressed by Karna, thy son Duryodhana then said unto his brother Dusçāsana these words :[14]—See, O Dusçāsana, without delay that all who walk in my train be dressed ![15]—Having said these words, O monarch, the king addressed Karna, saying,—Having caused Bhishma, that foremost of men, to consent to this,[16] I will, without delay, come to thee, O chastiser of foes ! After Bhishma will have retired from the fight, thou wilt smite (the foe) in battle.[17]—Then thy son, O monarch, set out without delay, accompanied by his brothers like He of a hundred sacrifices (accompanied) by the gods.[18] Then his brother Dusçāsana caused that tiger among kings, endued, besides, with the prowess of a tiger, to mount on his horse.[19] Graced with bracelets, with diadem on head, and adorned with other ornaments on his arms, O king, thy son shone brightly as he proceeded along the streets.[20] Smeared with fragrant sandal-paste of the hue of the *Bhāndi* flower and bright as burnished gold,[21] and clad in clean vestments, and proceeding with the sportive gait of the lion, Duryodhana looked beautiful like the Sun of brilliant radiance in the firmament.[22] And as that tiger among men proceeded towards the tent of Bhishma, many mighty bowmen, celebrated over the world, followed him behind.[23] And his brothers also walked in his train, like the celestials walking behind Vāsava. And others, foremost of men, mounted upon steeds, and others again on elephants, O Bhārata,[24] and others on cars, surrounded him on all sides. And many amongst those that wished him well, taking up arms for the protection of his royal self,[25] appeared there in large bodies, like the celestials surrounding Cakra in heaven. The mighty chief of the Kurus, adored by all the Kauravas,[26] thus proceeded, O king, towards the quarters of the renowned son of Gangā. Ever followed and surrounded

by his uterine brothers,[27] he proceeded, often raising his right arm, massive and resembling the trunk of an elephant and capable of resisting all foes. And with that arm of his, he accepted the regards that were paid to him from all sides by bystanders who stood raising towards him their joined hands. And he heard, as he journeyed, the sweet voices of the natives of diverse realms.[28-29] Of great fame, he was eulogised by bards and eulogists. And in return that great king paid his regards unto them all.[30] And many high-souled persons stood around him with lighted lamps of gold fed with fragrant oil.[31] And surrounded with those golden lamps, the king looked radiant like the Moon attended by the blazing planets around him.[32] And (attendants) with head-gears decked with gold, having canes and *Jharjharas* in hand, softly caused the crowd all around to make way.[33] The king then, having reached the excellent quarters of Bhishma, alighted from his horse. And arrived at Bhishma's presence, that ruler of men[34] saluted Bhishma and then sat himself down on an excellent seat that was made of gold, beautiful throughout and overlaid with a rich coverlet.[35] With hands joined, eyes bathed in tears, and voice choked in grief, he then addressed Bhishma, saying,—Taking thy protection in this battle, O slayer of foes, we[36] ventured to vanquish the very gods and the *Asuras* with Indra at their head. What shall I say, therefore, of the sons of Pāndu, heroic though they be, with their kinsmen and friends ?[37] Therefore, O son of Gangā, it behoveth thee, O lord, to show me mercy ! Slay the brave sons of Pāndu like Mahendra slaying the *Dānavas* ![38]—I will slay, O king, all the Somakas and the Pānchālas and the Karushas along with the Kekayas, O Bhārata ![39]—(These were thy words to me !) Let these words become true ! Slay the assembled Pārthas, and those mighty bowmen, *viz.*, the Somakas ! Make thy words true, O Bhārata ![40] If from kindness (for the Pāndavas), O king, or from thy hatred of my unfortunate self, thou sparest the Pāndavas,[41] then permit Karna, that ornament of battle, to fight ! He will vanquish in battle the Pārthas with all their friends and kinsmen ![42]—The king, thy son Duryodhana,

having said this, shut his lips without saying anything more to Bhishma of terrible prowess.' "*[43]

SECTION XCIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'The high-souled Bhishma, deeply pierced with wordy daggers by thy son, became filled with great grief. But he said not a single disagreeable word in reply.[1] Indeed, mangled by those wordy daggers, and filled with grief and rage, he sighed like a snake and reflected (in silence) for a long while.†[2] Raising his eyes then, and as if consuming, from wrath, the world with the celestials, the *Asuras*, and the *Gandharvas*, that foremost of persons conversant with the world,[3] then addressed thy son and said unto him these tranquil words :—Why, O Duryodhana, dost thou pierce me thus with thy wordy daggers ?[4] I always endeavour to the utmost of my might to achieve, and do achieve, what is for thy good ! Indeed, from desire of doing what is agreeable to thee, I am prepared to cast away my life in battle ![5] (The Pāndavas are really invincible). When the brave son of Pāndu gratified Agni in (the forest of) Khāndava, having vanquished Cakra himself in battle, even that is a sufficient indication.‡[6] when, O mighty-armed one, the same son of Pāndu rescued thee while thou wert being led away a captive by the *Gandharvas*, even that is a sufficient indication.[7] On that occasion, O lord, thy brave uterine brothers had all fled, as also Rādhā's son of the *Suta* caste. That (rescue, therefore, by Arjuna) is a sufficient indication.[8] In Virāta's city, alone he fell upon all of us united together ! That is a suffi-

---

* In numbering the verses in this Section I have followed the Bombay edition. The fact is, in the Bengal texts, this Section is made to consist of 42 *slokas*, the 6th and the 42nd being both taken as consisting of three lines. Hence the difference.—T.

† In the Bengal texts, the second line of the 2nd verse is printed as the 2nd of the 1st verse. There can be no doubt that the Bombay text is correct.—T.

‡ Some of the Bengal texts, in the first line of the 6th, incorrectlly read *çatrun* for *çakram*.—T.

cient indication.[9] Vanquishing in battle both Drona and myself excited with rage, he took away our robes. That is a sufficient indication.[10] On that occasion, of old, of the seizure of kine, he vanquished that mighty bowman the son of Drona, and Cāradwat also. That is a sufficient indication.[11] Having vanquished Karna also who is ever boastful of his manliness, he gave the latter's robes unto Uttarā. That is a sufficient indication.[12] The son of Prithā defeated in battle the Nivātakavachas who were incapable of defeat by Vāsava himself. That is a sufficient indication.[13] Who, indeed, is capable of vanquishing in battle the son of Pāndu by force, him, *viz.*, that hath for his protector the Protector of the Universe armed with conch, discus, and mace ?[14] Vāsudeva is possessed of infinite power, and is the Destroyer of the Universe. He is the highest Lord of all, the God of gods, the Supreme Soul, and eternal ![15] He hath been variously described, O king, by Nārada and other great *Rishis*. In consequence of thy folly, however, O Suyodhana, thou knowest not what should be said and what should not ![16] The man on the point of death beholdeth all trees to be made of gold. So thou also, O son of Gāndhāri, seest everything inverted.[17] Having provoked fierce hostilities with the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas, fight now (thyself) with them in battle ! Let us see thee act like a man ![18] As regards myself, I will, O tiger among men, slay all the Somakas and the Pānchālas assembled together, avoiding Cikhandin alone.[19] Slain by them in batttle, I will go to Yama's abode, or, slaying them in battle, I will give thee joy ![20] Cikhandin was born in Drupada's palace as a female at first. She became a male in consequence of the grant of a boon. After all, however, she is Cikhandini.[21] Him I will not slay even if I have to lose my life, O Bhārata ! She is the same Cikhandini that the Creator had first made her.[22] Pass the night in happy sleep, O son of Gāndhāri ! Tomorrow I will fight a fierce battle about which men will speak as long as the world lasts ![23]—Thus addressed by him, thy son, O monarch, came away. And saluting his signior with a bow of the head, he came back to his own tent.[24] Coming back, the king dismissed his

attendants. And soon then that destroyer of foes entered his abode.[25] And having entered (his tent), the monarch passed the night (in sleep). And when the night dawned, rising up, the king ordered all the royal warriors, saying,—*Draw up the forces! Today Bhishmá, excited with wrath, will slay all the Somakas!*—[26-27]

"'Hearing those copious lamentations of Duryodhana in the night, Bhishma regarded them, O king, as commands to himself.[28] Filled with great grief and deprecating the status of servitude, Cāntanu's son reflected for a long time, thinking of an encounter with Arjuna in battle.[29] Understanding from signs that Gangā's son had been thinking of that, Duryodhana, O king, commanded Dusçāsana, saying,[30]—O Dusçāsana, let cars be quickly appointed for protecting Bhishma! Let all the two and twenty divisions (of our army) be urged on![31] That hath now come about which we had been thinking for a series of years, *viz.*, the slaughter of the Pāndavas with all their troops and the acquisition (by ourselves) of the kingdom![32] In this matter, I think, the protection of Bhishma is our foremost duty. Protected by us, he will protect us and slay the Pārthas in battle![33] Of cleansed soul, he said unto me,—*I will not slay Çikhandin. He was a female before, O king, and, therefore, should be avoided by me in battle!*[34] *The world knoweth, O thou of mighty arms, that from desire of doing good to my father, I formerly gave up a swelling kingdom!*[35] *I will not, therefore, slay in battle, O foremost of men, any female or anybody that was a female before! This that I tell thee is true!*[36] *This Çikhandi, O king, was first born a female. Thou hast heard that story! She was born as Çikhandini after the manner I told thee before the battle began.*[37] *Taking her birth as a daughter she hath become a man. Indeed, she will fight with me, but I will never shoot my arrows at her.*[38] *As regards all other Kshatriyas desirous of victory to the Pāndavas, O sire, whom I may get within my reach on the field of battle, I will slay them.*[39]—These were the words that Gangā's son acquainted with the scriptures, that chief of Bharata's race, said unto me! Therefore, with my whole

soul I think that protecting the son of Gangā is our foremost duty.[40] The very wolf may slay the lion left unprotected in the great forest! Let not Gangā's son be slain by Cikhandin like the lion slain by the wolf![41] Let our maternal uncle Cakuni, and Calya, and Kripa, and Drona, and Vivingçati, carefully protect the son of Gangā. If he is protected, (our) victory is certain.[42]—

"'Hearing these words of Duryodhana, they all surrounded Gangā's son with a large division of cars.[43] And thy sons also, taking up their position around Bhishma, proceeded to battle. And they all went, shaking the earth and the welkin, and causing fear in the hearts of the Pāndavas.[44] The mighty car-warriors (of the Kaurava army), supported by those cars and elephants, and clad in mail, stood in battle, surrounding Bhishma.[45] And all of them took up their positions for protecting that mighty car-warrior like the celestials in the battle between themselves and the *Asuras* for protecting the wielder of the thunder-bolt.[46] Then king Duryodhana once more addressing his brother, said,—Yudhāmanyu protects the left wheel of Arjuna's car, and Uttamaujas his right wheel.[47] And (thus protected) Arjuna protected Cikhandin. O Dusçāsana, adopt such steps that, protected by Pārtha, Cikhandin may not be able to slay Bhishma left unprotected by us!—Hearing these words of his brother, thy son Dusçāsana,[48-49] accompanied by the troops, advanced for battle, placing Bhishma in the van. Beholding Bhishma (thus) surrounded by a large number of cars,[50] Arjuna, that foremost of carwarriors, addressed Dhrishtadyumna and said,—O prince, place that tiger among men, Cikhandin, today in front of Bhishma! I myself will be his protector, O prince of Pānchāla!'"—*[51]

SECTION C.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then Bhishma the son of Cāntanu went out with the troops. And he disposed his own troops in a

---

* The last consists of three lines.—T.

mighty array called *Sarvatobhadra.**[1] Kripa, and Kritavarman, and that mighty car-warrior Caivya, and Cakuni, and the ruler of the Sindhus, and Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas,[2] these all, together with Bhishma and thy sons, O Bhārata, took up their stations in the van of the whole army and in the very front of the (Kaurava) array.[3] Drona and Bhuriçravas and Calaya and Bhagadatta, O sire, clad in mail, took up their position in the right wing of that array.[4] And Açwatthāman, and Somadatta, and those great car-warriors, *viz.*, the two princes of Avanti, accompanied by a large force, protected the left wing.[5] Duryodhana, O monarch, surrounded on all sides by the Trigartas, took up, for encountering the Pāndavas, a position in the midst of that array.[6] That foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Alamvusha, and that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Crutāyush, clad in mail, took up their position in the rear of that array, and, therefore, of the whole army.[7] Having, O Bhārata, on that occasion formed their array thus, thy warriors, clad in mail, looked like scorching fires.[8]

"'Then king Yudhishthira, and that son of Pāndu, *viz.*, Bhimasena, and the twin sons of Mādri, *viz.*, Nakula and Sahadeva,[9] clad in mail, took up their position in the van of that array and, therefore, at the very head of all their troops. And Dhrishtadyumna, and Virāta, and that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Sātyaki,[10]—these destroyers of hostile ranks,—stood, supported by a large force. And Cikhandin, and Vijaya (Arjuna), and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha,[11] and Chekitāna of mighty arms, and the valiant Kuntibhoja, stood for battle, surrounded by a large force.[12] And that great bowman Abhimanyu, and the mighty Drupada, and the (five) Kaikeya brothers, stood for battle, clad in mail.[13] Having formed their mighty and invincible array thus, the Pāndavas, endued with great courage in battle, stood for the fight, clad in mail.[14]

---

* The Bengal reading *ātmanā*, the last word of the verse, seems to be a mistake. The Bombay text gives the right word, which is *ātmanas* (genetive). *Sarvatobhadra* seems to have been a kind of square array in which the troops faced all the points of the compass.—T.

"'Then the kings of thy army, O monarch, exerting themselves at their best, accompanied by their forces, and placing Bhishma at their van, rushed against the Pārthas in battle.[15] Similarly the Pāndavas also, O king, headed by Bhimasena, and desirous of victory in battle, proceeded, for battling with Bhishma.[16] With leonine roars and confused cries, blowing their conchs, *Krakachas*, and cow-horns, beating their drums and cymbals and *Panavas* in thousands,*[17] and uttering terrible shouts, the Pāndavas advanced to battle. With the din of our drums and cymbals and conchs and smaller drums,[18] with loud leonine roars, and other kinds of shouts, ourselves also, replying to the cries of the foe, rushed against him with great impetuosity,†[19] inflamed with rage. These sounds, mingling with one another, produced a tremendous uproar. The warriors then, of the two armies, rushing at one another, began to strike.[20] And in consequence of the din produced by that encounter, the earth seemed to tremble. And birds, uttering fierce cries, hovered in the air.[21] The Sun, radiant as he was when he had risen, became dimmed. And fierce winds blew, indicating great terrors.[22] Frightful jackalls wandered, yelling terribly, O king, and foreboding an awful carnage at hand.[23] The quarters seemed, O king, to be ablaze, and showers of dust fell from the blue. And a shower fell there, of pieces of bones mixed with blood.[24] And tears fell from the eyes of the animals which were all weeping. And filled with anxiety, O king, these began to urinate and eject the contents of their stomachs.[25] And the loud shouts of battle, O bull of Bharata's race, were rendered inaudible by the louder cries of *Rākshasas* and cannibals.[26] And jackalls and vultures and crows and dogs, uttering diverse kinds of cries, began, O sire, to fall and swoop down on the field.[27] And blazing meteors, striking against the Sun's disc, fell with great celerity on the

---

* In the Bengal texts, *çavdās* in the first line is vicious. The true reading seems to be *çankhān*, as in the Bombay edition. Then again for *Kunjarān* (Beng.), the Bombay text reads *Pushkarān* which is unquestionably correct.—T.

† The first line of 19 in the Bengal texts is vicious.—T.

earth, foreboding great terrors.[28] Then those two vast hosts belonging to the Pāndavas and the Dhārtarāshtras, in course of that awful encounter, shook in consequence of that tremendous uproar of conchs and drums, like forests shaken by the tempest.[29] And the noise made by the two armies, both of which abounded with kings, elephants, and steeds, and which encountered each other in an evil hour, resembled the noise made by oceans tossed by the tempest.' "[30]

SECTION CI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then the noble Abhimanyu of great energy, borne by his steeds of a twany hue, rushed at the mighty host of Duryodhana,[1] scattering his arrowy showers like the clouds pouring torrents of rain. O son of Kuru's race, thy warriors, in that battle, were unable to resist that slayer of foes, *viz.*, Subhadrā's son, who, excited with wrath and possessed of wealth of arms, was then immersed in that inexhaustible ocean of (Kaurava) forces.[2-3] Death-dealing shafts, O king, shot by him in that battle, despatched many heroic Kshatriyas to the regions of the King of the departed spirits.[4] Indeed, excited with wrath, Subhadrā's son in that battle shot fierce and blazing arrows in profusion that resembled snakes of virulent poison or rods of Death himself.[5] And Phālguna's son speedily split into fragments car-warriors with their cars, steeds with their riders, and elephant-warriors along with the huge animals they rode.[6] And the rulers of the earth, filled with joy, applauded those mighty feats in battle and praised him also that achieved them.[7] And the son of Subhadrā, O Bhārata, tossed those divisions (of the Kaurava army) like the tempest tossing a heap of cotton on all sides in the welkin.[8] Routed by him, O Bhārata, thy troops failed to find a protector, like elephants sunk in a slough.[9] Then, O best of men, having routed all thy troops, Abhimanyu stood, O king, like a blazing fire without a curl of smoke.[10] Indeed, O king, thy warriors were incapable of bearing that slayer of foes, like insects impelled by fate unable to bear a blazing fire.[11] That mighty car-warrior and

great bowman, having struck all the foes of the Pāndavas, looked at that moment like Vāsava himself armed with the thunder.[12] And his bow, the back of whose staff was decked with gold, as it moved on every side, seemed, O king, like the lightning's flash as it sports amid the clouds.[13] And well-tempered and sharp shafts came from his bowstring in that battle like flights of bees, O king, from a blossoming tree in the forest.[14] And as the high-souled son of Subhadrā careered on the field on his car whose limbs were decked with gold, people were incapable of finding an opportunity (for striking him).[15] Confounding Kripa and Drona and mighty son of Drona, as also the ruler of the Sindhus, that great bowman moved on the field of battle with great activity and skill.[16] As he consumed thy troops, O Bhārata, I beheld his bow incessantly drawn to a circle and resembling on that account the circular halo of light that is sometimes seen around the Sun.[17] Brave Kshatriyas, beholding him endued with such activity and scorching the foe thus, thought, in consequence of those feats, that the world contained two Phālgunas.[18] Indeed, O king, the vast host of the Bharatas, afflicted by him, reeled hither and thither like a woman drunk with wine.[19] Routing that large army and causing many mighty car-warriors to tremble, he gladdened his friends like Vāsava (gladdening the celestials) after vanquishing Maya.[20] And while being routed by him in that battle, thy troops uttered loud exclamations of woe that resembled the roar of the clouds.[21] Hearing that awful wail of thy troops, O Bhārata, that resembled the roar of the very sea at full tide when agitated by the winds,[22] Duryodhana then, O king, addressed the son of Rishyaçringa and said,—This Abhimanyu singly, O thou of mighty arms, like a second Phālguna,[23] routeth from rage (my) army like Vritra routing the celestial host. I do not see any other efficacious medicine for him in battle[24] than thyself, O best of *Rākshasas*, that art well-skilled in every science. Therefore, go speedily and slay the heroic son of Subhadrā in battle![25] As regards ourselves, headed by Bhishma and Drona, we will slay Pārtha himself!—Thus addressed, the mighty and valiant *Rākshasa*[26] speedily went to battle at

the command of thy son, uttering loud roars like the clouds themselves in the season of rains.[27] And in consequence of that loud noise, O king, the vast host of the Pāndavas trembled throughout like the ocean when agitated by the wind.[28] And many combatants, O king, terrified by those roars, giving up dear life, fell prostrate on the earth.[29] Filled with joy and taking up his bow with arrow fixed on the string, and apparently dancing on the terrace of his car, that *Rākshasa* proceeded against Abhimanyu himself.[30] Then the angry *Rākshasa*, having in that battle got Arjuna's son within reach, began to rout his ranks,—even those that stood not far from him.[31] Indeed, the *Rākshāsa* rushed in battle against that mighty Pāndava host which he began to slaughter, like Vala rushing against the celestial host.[32] Attacked in battle by that *Rākshasa* of terrible mien, the slaughter was very great, O sire, that took place amongst those troops.[33] Exhibiting his prowess, the *Rākshasa* began to rout that vast force of the Pāndavas, with thousands of arrows.[34] Thus slaughtered by that *Rākshasa* of terrible visage, the Pāndava army fled away from excess of fear.[35] Grinding that army like an elephant grinding lotus-stalks, the mighty *Rākshasa* then rushed in battle against the sons of Draupadi.[36] Tnen those great bowmen, accomplished in fighting, *viz.*, the sons of Draupadi, rushed towards the *Rākshasa* in battle like five planets rushing against the Sun.[37] That best of *Rākshasas* then was afflicted by those brothers endued with great energy, like the Moon afflicted by the five planets on the awful occasion of the dissolution of the world.[38] Tnen the mighty Prativindhya quickly pierced the *Rākshasa* with whetted shafts sharp as battle-axes and furnished with points capable of penetrating every armour.[39] Thereupon that foremost of *Rākshasas*, with his armour pierced through, looked like a mass of clouds penetrated by the rays of the Sun.[40] Pierced with those shafts furnished with golden wings, Rishyaçringa's son, O king, looked resplendent like a mountain with blazing crests.[41] Then those five brothers, in that great battle, pierced that foremost of *Rākshasas* with (many) whetted shafts of golden wings.[42] Pierced with those terrible

shafts resembling angry snakes, Alamvusha, O king, became inflamed with rage like the king of the serpents himself.[43] Deeply pierced, O king, within only a few moments, O sire, by those great car-warriors, the *Rākshasa*, much afflicted, remained senseless for a long while.[44] Regaining his consciousness then, and swelling through rage to twice his dimensions, he cut off their arrows and standards and bows.[45] And as if smiling the while he struck each of them with five arrows. Then that mighty *Rākshasa* and great car-warrior, Alamvusha, excited with wrath, and as if dancing on the terrace of his car, quickly slew the steeds, and then the charioteers, of those five illustrious adversaries of his.[46-47] And burning with rage he once more pierced them with sharp arrows of diverse shapes by hundreds and thousands.[48] Then that wanderer of the night, *viz.*, the *Rākshasa* Alamvusha, having deprived those great bowmen of their cars, rushed impetuously at them, wishing to despatch them to Yama's abode.[49] Beholding them (thus) afflicted in battle by that wicked-souled *Rākshasa*, the son of Arjuna rushed at him.[50] Then the battle that took place between him and the cannibal resembled that between Vitra and Vāsava. And the mighty car-warriors of thy army, as also of the Pāndavas, all became spectators of that engagement.[51] Encountering each other in fierce battle, blazing with wrath, endued with great might, and with eyes red in rage,[52] each beheld the other in that battle to resemble the *Yuga* fire. And that engagement between them became fierce and awful like that between Cakra and Camvara in days of old in the battle between the gods and the *Asuras*.' "[53]

SECTION CII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How, O Sanjaya, did Alamvusha resist in combat the heroic son of Arjuna smiting many of our mighty car-warriors in battle ?[1] And how also did that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, fight with Rishyaçringa's son ? Tell me all this in detail, exactly as it happened in that fight ![2] What also did Bhima, that foremost of car-warriors, and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha, and Nakula, and

Sahadeva, and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, and Dhananjaya, do with my troops in battle? Tell me all this truly, O Sanjaya, for thou art skilled (in narration)!'[3-4]

"Sanjaya said,—'I will presently describe to thee, O sire, the awful battle that took place between that foremost of the *Rākshasas* and the son of Subhadrā.[5] I will also describe to thee the prowess that Arjuna put forth in battle, and Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, and Nakula, and Sahadeva, as also the warriors of thy army headed by Bhishma and Drona, all of whom fearlessly achieved wonderful feats of diverse kinds.[6-7] Alamvusha, uttering loud shouts and repeatedly roaring at Abhimanyu, rushed impetuously against that mighty car-warrior in battle, saying,—*Wait, Wait!*—Abhimanyu also, repeatedly roaring like a lion, rushed with as great force at that mighty bowman, *viz.*, the son of Rishyaçringa, who was an implacable foe of the former's sire. Soon then those two foremost of car-warriors, man and *Rākshasa*, on their cars, encountered each other, like a god and a *Dānava*. That best of *Rākshasas* was endued with powers of illusion, while Phālguna's son was acquainted with celestial weapons.[8-11] Then Abhimanyu, O king, pierced Rishyaçring's son in that battle with three sharp shafts and once more with five.[12] Alamvusha also, excited with wrath, speedily pierced Abhimanyu in the chest with nine shafts like a guide piercing an elephant with hooks.[13] Then, O Bhārata, that wanderer of the night, endued with great activity, afflicted Arjuna's son in that combat with a thousand arrows.[14] Then Abhimanyu, excited with rage, pierced that prince of the *Rākshasas* in his wide chest with nine straight shafts of great sharpness.[15] Piercing through his body these penetrated into his very vitals. And that best of *Rākshasas*, his limbs mangled by them, looked beautiful[16] like a mountain overgrown with flowering *Kinçukas*. Bearing those shafts of golden wings on his body, that mighty[17] prince of *Rākshasas* looked radiant like a mountain on fire. Then the vindictive son of Rishyaçringa, inflamed with wrath, covered Abhimanyu, who was equal unto Mahendra himself, with clouds of winged arrows. Those sharp shafts resembling the rods of Yama himself, shot by him,[18-19] pierced Abhimanyu

through and entered the earth. And similarly the gold-decked arrows shot by Arjuna's son,[20] piercing Alamvusha through, entered the earth. The son of Subhadrā then, in that battle, with his straight shafts, obliged the *Rākshasa* to turn his back upon the field, like Cakra repulsing Maya in days of old. That scorcher of foes, the *Rākshasa*, then, thus repulsed and struck repeatedly by his adversary, exhibited his great powers of illusion by causing a thick darkness to set in. Then all the combatants there, O king, were covered by that darkness.[21-23] Neither could Abhimanyu be seen, nor could friends be distinguished from foes in that battle. Abhimanyu, however, beholding that thick and awful gloom,[24] invoked into existence, O son of Kuru's race, the blazing solar weapon. Thereupon, O king, the universe once more became visible.[25] And thus he neutralised the illusion of that wicked *Rākshasa*. Then that prince of men, excited with wrath and endued with great energy, covered that foremost of *Rākshasas* in that battle with many straight shafts. Diverse other kinds of illusion were conjured up there by that *Rākshasa*.[26-27] Conversant with all weapons, the son of Phālguna, however, neutralised them all. The *Rākshasa* then, his illusions all destroyed, and himself struck with shafts,[28] abandoned his car even there, and fled away in great fear. After that *Rākshasa* addicted to unfair fight had been thus vanquished,[29] the son of Arjuna began to grind thy troops in battle, like a juice-blind prince of wild elephants agitating a lake overgrown with lotus.*[30] Then Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, beholding his troops routed, covered Subhadrā's son with a thick shower of arrows.[31] Then many mighty car-warriors of the Dhārtarāshtra army, standing in a ring round that single hero, began to strike him forcibly with their shafts.[32] That hero then, who resembled his sire in prowess and who was equal to Vāsudeva in valor and might,[33]—that foremost of all wielders of weapons,—achieved diverse feats in that battle that were worthy of both his sire and maternal uncle.[34] Then the heroic

* The Bengal reading *vanya-nāgendra* is better than the Bombay reading *gandha-nāgendra*. As to "juice-blind," *vide* note in p. 341 *ante*.—T.

Dhananjaya, excited with wrath and desirous of rescuing his son, arrived at that spot where the latter was, slaughtering thy troops as he came along.[35] And similarly, O king, thy sire Devavrata in that battle approached Pārtha like *Rāhu* approaching the Sun.*[36] Then thy sons, O monarch, supported by cars, elephants, and steeds, surrounded Bhishma in that battle and protected him from every side.[37] And so also the Pāndavas, O king, clad in mail and surrounding Dhananjaya, engaged in fierce battle, O bull of Bharata's race.[38] Then Caradwat's son (Kripa), O king, pierced Arjuna who was staying in front of Bhishma, with five and twenty shafts.[39] Thereupon, like a tiger attacking an elephant, Sātyaki, approaching Kripa, pierced him with many whetted shafts from desire of doing what was agreeable to the Pāndavas.[40] Goutama in return, excited with wrath, quickly pierced him of Madhu's race in the chest with nine arrows winged with the feathers of the *Kanka* bird.[41] Cini's grandson also, excited with wrath, and forcibly drawing his bow, quickly sped at him an arrow capable of taking his life.[42] The fiery son of Drona, however, excited with wrath, cut in twain that arrow as it coursed impetuously towards Kripa, resembling Indra's bolt in effulgence.[43] Thereupon that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Cini's grandson, abandoning Gautama, rushed in battle towards Drona's son like *Rāhu* in the firmament against the Moon.[44] Drona's son, however, O Bhārata, cut Sātyaki's bow in twain. After his bow had thus been cut off, the former began to strike the latter with his shafts.[45] Sātyaki then, taking up another bow capable of bearing a great strain and slaughtering the foe, struck Drona's son, O king, in the chest and arms with six shafts.[46] Pierced therewith and feeling great pain, for a moment he was deprived of his senses, and he sat down on the terrace of his car, catching hold of his flagstaff.[47] Regaining his consciousness then, the valiant son of Drona, excited with rage, afflicted

* In Hindu mythology, solar eclipses are caused by Rāhu's attempts at swallowing the Sun. For Rāhu's enmity to the Sun, *vide Adi Parvan*, p. 81.—T.

him of Vrishni's race in that battle, with one long shaft.[48] That shaft, piercing Cini's grandson through, entered the earth like a vigorous young snake entering its hole in the season of spring.[49] And with another broad-headed arrow, Drona's son in that battle cut off the excellent standard of Sātyaki. And having achieved this feat he uttered a leonine roar.[50] And once more, O Bhārata, he covered his adversary with a shower of fierce shafts like the clouds, O king, covering the Sun after summer is past.[51] Sātyaki also, O monarch, baffling that arrowy shower, soon covered the son of Drona with diverse showers of arrows.[52] That slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the grandson of Cini, freed from that arrowy shower like the Sun from the clouds, began to scorch the son of Drona (with his energy).[53] Swelling with rage the mighty Sātyaki once more covered his foe with a thousand arrows and uttered a loud shout.[54] Beholding his son then thus afflicted like the Moon by *Rahu*, the valiant son of Bharadwāja rushed towards the grandson of Cini.[55] Desirous, O king, of rescuing his son who was afflicted by the Vrishni hero, Drona, in that great battle, pierced the latter with a shaft of exceeding sharpness.[56] Sātyaki then, abandoning the mighty car-warrior Açwatthāman, pierced Drona himself in that battle with twenty arrows of exceeding sharpness.[57] Soon after, that scorcher of foes and mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Kunti's son of immeasurable soul, excited with wrath, rushed in that battle against Drona.[58] Then Drona and Pārtha encountered each other in fierce combat like the planets *Vudha* and *Çukra*, O king, in the firmament.' "*[59]

SECTION CIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How did those bulls among men, *viz.*, that great bowman Drona, and Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu, encounter each other in battle ?[1] The son of Pāndu is ever dear to the wise son of Bharadwāja. The preceptor also is ever dear to Prithā's son, O Sanjaya ?[2] Both of those

---

* *Vudha* is Venus, and *Cukra* is Jupiter.—T.

car-warriors delight in battle, and both of them are fierce like lions. How, therefore, did Bharadwāja's son and Dhananjaya, both fighting with care encounter each other in battle ?'[3]

"Sanjaya said,—'In battle Drona never recognises Pārtha as dear to himself. Pārtha also, keeping a Kshatriya's duty in view, recognises not in battle his preceptor.[4] Kshatriyas, O king, never avoid one another in battle. Without showing any regard for one other, they fight with sires and brothers.[5] In that battle, O Bhārata, Pārtha pierced Drona with three shafts. Drona, however, regarded not those shafts shot in battle from Pārtha's bow.[6] Indeed, Pārtha once more covered the preceptor in the fight with a shower of arrows. Thereupon the latter blazed up with wrath like a conflagration in a deep forest.[7] Then, O king, Drona soon covered Arjuna in that combat with many straight shafts, O Bhārata.[8] Then king Duryodhana, O monarch, despatched Suçarman for taking up the wing of Drona.[9] Then the ruler of the Trigartas, excited with rage and forcibly drawing his bow, covered Pārtha, O king, with a profusion of arrows furnished with iron heads.[10] Shot by those two warriors, O king, the shafts looked beautiful in the welkin like cranes in the autumnal sky.[11] Those shafts, O lord, reaching the son of Kunti, entered his body like birds disappearing within a tree bending with a load of tasteful fruits.[12] Arjuna then, that foremost of car-warriors, uttering a loud roar in that battle, pierced the ruler of the Trigartas and his son with his shafts.[13] Pierced by Pārtha like Death himself at the end of the *Yuga*, they were unwilling to avoid Pārtha, resolved as they were on laying down their lives.[14] And they shot showers of arrows at the car of Arjuna. Arjuna, however, received those arrowy showers with showers of his own, like a mountain, O monarch, receiving a down-pour from the clouds. And the lightness of hand that we then beheld of Vibhatsu was exceedingly wonderful.[15-16] For alone he baffled that unbearable shower of arrows shot by many warriors, like the wind alone scattering myriads of clouds rushing upon clouds.[17] And at that feat of Pārtha, the gods and the *Dānavas* (assembled there for witnessing the fight) were highly gratified. Then, O Bhārata,

enraged with the Trigartas in that battle, Pārtha[18] shot, O king, the *Vāyavya* weapon against their division. Then arose a wind that agitated the welkin,[19] felled many trees, and smote down the (hostile) troops. Then Drona, beholding the fierce *Vāyavya* weapon,[20] himself shot an awful weapon called the *Çaila*. And when that weapon, O ruler of men, was shot by Drona in that battle, the wind abated and the ten quarters became calm. The heroic son of Pāndu, however, made the car-warriors of the Trigarta division destitute of prowess and hope, and caused them to turn their backs on the field. Then Duryodhana and that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Kripa,[21-23] and Açwatthāman, and Calya, and Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas, and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, and Vālhika supported by the Vālhikas,[24] with a large number of cars surrounded Pārtha on all sides. And similarly Bhagadatta also, and the mighty Crutāyush,[25] surrounded Bhima on all sides with an elephant division. And Bhuriçravas, and Cala, and Suvala's son, O monarch,[26] began to check the twin sons of Mādri with showers of bright and sharp arrows. Bhishma, however, in that battle, supported by the sons of Dhritarāshtra with their troops,[27] approaching Yudhishthira, surrounded him on all sides. Beholding that elephant division coming towards him, Prithā's son Vrikodara,[28] possessed of great courage, began to lick the corners of his mouth like a lion in the forest. Then Bhima, that foremost of car-warriors, taking up his mace in that great battle,[29] quickly jumped down from his car and struck terror into the hearts of thy warriors. Beholding him mace in hand, those elephant-warriors[30] in that battle carefully surrounded Bhimasena on all sides. Stationed in the midst of those elephants, the son of Pāndu looked resplendent[31] like the Sun in the midst of a mighty mass of clouds. Then that bull among the sons of Pāndu began with his mace to consume that elephant-division[32] like the wind dispelling an huge mass of clouds covering the welkin. Those tuskers, while being slaughtered by the mighty Bhimasena,[33] uttered loud cries of woe like roaring masses of clouds. With diverse scratches (on his person) inflicted by those huge animals with

their tusks,[34] the son of Prithā looked beautiful on the field of battle like a flowering *Kinçuka*. Seizing some of the elephants by their tusks he deprived them of those weapons.[35] Wrenching out the tusks of others, with those very tusks he struck them on their frontal globes and felled them in battle like the Destroyer himself armed with his rod.[36] Wielding his mace bathed in gore, and himself bespattered with fat and marrow and smeared with blood, he looked like *Rudra* himself.[37] Thus slaughtered by him, the few gigantic elephants that remained, ran away on all sides, O king, crushing even friendly ranks.[38] And in consequence of those huge elephants fleeing away on all sides, Duryodhana's troops once more, O bull of Bharata's race, fled away from the field.' "[39]

SECTION CIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'At midday, O king, happened a fierce battle, fraught with great carnage, between Bhishma and the Somakas.[1] That foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Gangā's son, began to consume the ranks of the Pāndavas with keen shafts by hundreds and thousands.[2] Thy sire Devavrata began to grind those troops like a herd of bulls grinding (with their tread) a heap of paddy sheaves.[3] Then Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin and Virāta and Drupada, falling upon Bhishma in that battle, struck that mighty car-warrior with numerous arrows.[4] Bhishma then, having pierced Dhrishtadyumna and Virāta each with three arrows, sped a long shaft, O Bhārata, at Drupada.[5] Thus pierced in battle by Bhishma, that grinder of foes, those great bowmen became filled with wrath, O king, like snakes trod upon (by human feet).[6] Then Cikhandin pierced the grandsire of the Bharatas (with many shafts). Of unfading glory, Bhishma, however, regarding his foe as a female, struck him not.[7] Dhrishtadyumna then, in that battle, blazing up with wrath like fire, struck the grandsire with three shafts in his arms and chest.[8] And Drupada pierced Bhishma with five and twenty shafts, and Virāta pierced him with ten, and Cikhandin with five and twenty.[9] Deeply pierced (with those shafts) he became covered with blood, and

looked beautiful like a red *Açoka* variegated with flowers.[10] Then the son of Gangā pierced in return, each of them with three straight shafts. And then, O sire, he cut off Drupada's bow with a broad-headed arrow.[11] The latter then, taking up another bow, pierced Bhishma with five shafts. And he pierced Bhishma's charioteer also with three sharp shafts on the field of battle.[12] Then the five sons of Draupadi, and the five Kaikeya brothers, and Sātyaki also of the Sātwata race,[13] headed by Yudhishthira, all rushed towards Gangā's son, desirous of protecting the Pānchālas headed by Dhrishtadyumna.[14] And so all the warriors of thy army also, O king, prepared to protect Bhishma, rushed at the head of their troops against the Pāndava host.[15] And then happened there a fierce general engagement between thy army of men, steeds, and elephants, and theirs, that increased the population of Yama's kingdom.[16] And car-warriors falling upon car-warriors despatched one another to Yama's abode. And so men and elephant-riders and horse-riders, falling upon others (of their class),[17] despatched them to the other world with straight shafts. And here and there on the field, O monarch, cars, deprived of riders and charioteers by means of diverse kinds of fierce shafts, were in that battle dragged on all sides over the field.[18] And those cars, O king, crushing large numbers of men and steeds in that battle, were seen to resemble the wind itself (in speed) and vapoury edifices in the firmament (for their picturesque forms).[19] And many car-warriors cased in mail and endued with great energy, decked with ear-rings and head-gears and adorned with garlands and bracelets, and resembling the children of the celestials, equal to Cakra himself for prowess in battle, surpassing Vaiçravana in wealth and Vrihaspati in intelligence, ruling over extensive territories, and possessed of great heroism, O monarch, deprived of their cars, were seen to run hither and thither like ordinary men.*[20-22] Huge tuskers also, O chief of men, deprived of their skilled riders, ran, crush-

* In this long sentence I have exactly followed the order of the original, with the exception of the phrase "deprived of their cars" which occurs as the second word of the 20th verse.—T.

ing friendly ranks, and fell down with loud shrieks.[23] Prodigious elephants looking like newly-risen clouds and roaring also like the clouds, were seen to run in all directions, deprived of their coats of mail. And, O sire, their *Chāmaras* and variegated standards, their umbrellas with golden staves, and the bright lances (of their riders), lay scattered about.*[24-25] And elephant-riders, O king, deprived of their elephants, belonging both to thy army and theirs, were seen to run (on foot) amid that awful press.[26] And steeds from diverse countries, decked with ornaments of gold, were seen, by hundreds and thousands, to run with the speed of the wind.[27] And horse-riders, deprived of their horses, and armed with swords, were in that battle seen to run, or made to run (by others assailing them).[28] Elephant, meeting with a flying elephant in that dread battle, proceeded, quickly crushing foot-soldiers and steeds.[29] And, similarly, O king, those prodigious creatures crushed many cars in that battle, and cars also, coming upon fallen steeds, crushed them (in their course).[30] And steeds too, in the press of battle, crushed many foot-soldiers, O king, (with their hoofs). And thus, O monarch, they crushed one another in diverse ways.†[31] And in that fierce and awful battle there flowed a terrible river of bloody current.[32] And heaps of bows obstructed its straight course, and the hair (of slain warriors) formed its moss. And (broken) cars formed its lakes, and arrows its eddies. And steeds formed its fishes.[33] And heads (severed from trunks) formed its blocks of stone. And it abounded with elephants that formed its crocodiles. And coats of mail and head-gears formed its froth. And bows (in the hands of the warriors) constituted the speed of its current, and swords its tortoises.[34] And banners and standards in profusion formed the trees on its banks. And mortals constituted its banks which that river continually ate away. And it abounded with

---

* Both the Bombay and the Bengal texts repeat *Chāmarais* in the second line of 24th. This is certainly erroneous. The Burdwan Pundits read it *tomarais*. This is correct.—T.

† In the second line of 30th, the correct reading is *Rathās* (nom. plural) and not *Rathān*. So in the first line of 31st, the word is *turangās* (nom. plural) and not *turangān*.—T.

cannibals that formed its swans. And that stream (instead of swelling the ocean with its discharge) swelled the population of Yama's kingdom.[35] And brave Kshatriyas,—mighty car-warriors,—casting off all fear, O king, sought to cross that river with the aid of cars, elephants, and steeds that played the part of rafts and boats.[36] And as the river Vaitarani beareth all departed spirits towards the domains of the King of the Dead, so that river of bloody current bore away all timid men deprived of their senses in a swoon.[37] And the Kshatriyas, beholding that awful carnage, all exclaimed, saying,—*Alas, through Duryodhana's fault the Kshatriyas are being exterminated !*[38] *Why, Oh, Dhritarāshtra of sinful soul, deluded by avarice, harboured envy for the sons of Pāndu, who are graced with numerous virtues !*[39]—Diverse exclamations of this kind were heard there, made by one another, fraught with the praises of the Pāndavas and censure of thy sons.[40] Hearing then these words uttered by all the combatants, thy son Duryodhana, that offender against all,[41] addressed Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and Calya, O Bhārata, saying,—Fight ye without boastfulness ! Why tarry ye at all ?[42]—Then the battle was resumed between the Kurus and the Pāndavas, that fierce battle, O king, caused by the match at dice and marked by an awful slaughter.[43] Thou beholdest now, O son of Vichitravirya, the dread fruit of that rejection by thee (of the counsels of thy friends) though warned against it by many illustrious persons !*[44] Neither the sons of Pāndu, O king, nor their troops, nor they that follow them, nor the Kauravas, show the least regard for their lives in battle.[45] For this reason, O tiger among men, a dreadful destruction of kinsmen is taking place, caused either by Destiny or by thy evil policy, O king !' "[46]

SECTION CV.

"Sanjaya said,—'O tiger among men, Arjuna sent those Kshatriyas that followed Suçarman, to the abode of the King.

---

* I have expanded the original a little to make the sense clear.—T.

of the Dead by means of his whetted shafts.[1] Suçarman, however, in that battle, pierced Pārtha with his shafts. And he pierced Vāsudeva with seventy, and Arjuna once more with nine shafts.[2] Checking those shafts by means of his arrowy showers, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Indra, despatched Suçarman's troops unto Yama's abode.[3] Those mighty car-warriors, while being slaughtered by Pārtha in that battle as if by Death himself at the end of the *Yuga*, all fled away from the field, O king, struck with panic.[4] Some abandoning their steeds, some abandoning, O sire, their cars, and others their elephants, fled away in all directions.[5] Others, taking with them their horses, elephants, and cars, fled away, O king, with great speed.[6] Foot-soldiers, in that dreadful battle, throwing aside their weapons, and without any regard for one another, fled away hither and thither.[7] Though forbidden by Suçarman the ruler of the Trigartas, and by other foremost of kings, they stayed not yet in battle.[8] Beholding that host routed, thy son Duryodhana himself at the head of the whole army and with Bhishma ahead,[9] attacked Dhananjaya with all his vigor, for the sake, O king, of (protecting) the life of the ruler of the Trigartas.[10] Alone he stayed in battle, scattering diverse kinds of arrows, supported by all his brothers. The rest of the men all fled away.[11] Similarly, the Pāndavas, O king, clad in mail and with all their vigor, proceeded, for the sake of Phālguna, to the spot where Bhishma was.[12] Although acquainted with the awful prowess, in battle, of the wielder of *Gāndiva*, these yet proceeded with loud cries and great bravery to the spot where Bhishma was and surrounded him on all sides.[13] Then the palmyra-bannered hero covered the Pāndava army, in that battle, with his straight shafts.[14] The Sun had reached the meridian, the Kauravas, O king, fought with the Pāndavas in one confused mass.[15] The heroic Sātyaki, having pierced Kritavarman with five arrows, stayed in battle, scattering his arrows by thousands.[16] And so king Drupada also, having pierced Drona with many whetted shafts, once more pierced him with seventy shafts and his charioteer with nine.[17] Bhimasena also, having pierced his great grandsire king Vālhika, uttered a loud roar

like a tiger in the forest.[18] Arjuna's son (Abhimanyu), pierced by Chitrasena with many shafts, deeply pierced Chitrasena in the chest with three arrows.[19] Engaged with each other in battle, those two foremost of men looked resplendent on the field like the planets Venus and Saturn, O king, in the firmament.*[20] Then that slayer of foes, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, having slain his antagonist's steeds and charioteer with nine arrows, uttered a loud shout.[21] Thereupon that mighty car-warrior, (*viz.*, Chitrasena,) quickly jumping down from that car whose steeds had been slain, mounted O king, without delay, the car of Durmukha.[22] The valiant Drona, piercing Drupada with many straight shafts, quickly pierced the latter's charioteer also.[23] Then, O king, Drupada, thus afflicted at the head of his troops, retreated by the aid of his fleet steeds, recollecting the hostility that existed from days of old (between himself and Drona).[24] Bhimasena, within a moment, deprived king Vālhika of his steeds, car, and charioteer, in the very sight of all the troops.[25] Fallen into a situation of great danger and with fear in his heart, O king, Vālhika, that best of men, jumping down from that vehicle,[26] quickly mounted upon the car of Lakshmana in that battle. Sātyaki, having checked Kritavarman in that dreadful battle,[27] fell upon the grandsire and rained on him shafts of diverse kinds.† Piercing the grandsire with sixty whetted shafts winged with feathers,[28] he seemed to dance on his car, shaking his large bow. The grandsire then hurled at him a mighty dart made of iron,[29] decked with gold, endued with great velocity, and beautiful as a daughter of the Nāgas. Beholding that irresistible dart, resembling Death himself, coursing towards him,[30] that illustrious warrior of the Vrishni race baffled it by the celerity of his movements. Thereupon that fierce dart, unable to reach him of the Vrishni race,[31] fell down on the earth like a large meteor of blazing splendour. Then he of Vrishni's race, O king, taking up with a firm hand his

* This is differently read in the Bombay edition. I adopt the Bengal reading, which is better.—T.

† Lit. "reached him with shafts &c."—T.

own dart of golden effulgence, hurled it at the car of the grandsire. That dart, hurled in that dreadful battle with the strength of Sātyaki's arms,[32-33] coursed impetuously like the fatal night coursing speedily towards a (doomed) man. As it coursed, however, towards him with great force, Bhishma cut it in twain, O Bhārata,[34] with a couple of horse-shoe-headed arrows of keen-edge, and thereupon it fell down on the earth. Having cut that dart, that grinder of foes, *viz.*, Gangā's son, excited with wrath and smiling the while, struck Sātyaki in the chest with nine arrows. Then the Pāndava warriors, O elder brother of Pāndu, with their cars, elephants, and steeds,*[35-36] surrounded Bhishma in that battle, for the sake of rescuing him of Madhu's race. Then commenced again a fierce battle, making the hair to stand on end, between the Pāndavas and the Kurus both of whom were desirous of victory.' "[37]

SECTION CVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Bhishma excited with wrath in battle, surrounded on all sides by the Pāndavas like the Sun in the firmament, O king, by the clouds at the end of summer,[1] Duryodhana, O monarch, addressed Dusçāsana, saying,—This heroic and great bowman Bhishma, this slayer of heroes,[2] hath, O bull of Bharata's race, been surrounded on all sides by the brave Pāndavas. It is thy duty, O hero, to protect that illustrious one![3] Protected by us in battle, our grandsire Bhishma will slay all the Pānchālas along with the Pāndavas.[4] The protection of Bhishma, therefore, is, I think, our highest duty, for this great bowman of high vows, *viz.*, Bhishma, is our protector in return![5] Therefore, surrounding the grandsire with all our troops, do thou protect him, who al-

---

* Both the Bengal and the Bombay printed texts are in fault regarding the word *Pāndupurvaja.* The Bombay text makes it a nom. plural. The Bengal text makes it an accusative singular. There can be no doubt that the Burdwan Pundits are right in taking it as a vocative.—T.

ways achieveth the most difficult feats in battle :[6]—Thus addressed by Duryodhana, thy son Dusçāsana, surrounding Bhishma with a large force on all sides, took up his position.[7] Then Suvala's son Cakuni, with hundreds and thousands of horsemen having bright spears and swords and lances in hand,[8] and who formed a proud, well-dressed, and strong body bearing standards, and who were mingled with excellent foot-soldiers that were all well-trained and skilled in battle,[9] began to check Nakula, and Sahadeva, and Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu, surrounding those foremost of men on all sides.[10] Then king Duryodhana despatched ten thousand (other) brave horsemen for resisting the Pāndavas.[11] When these rushed, like so many Garudas, towards the enemy with great impetuosity, the earth, O king, struck with their horses hoofs, trembled and uttered a loud noise.[12] And the loud clatter of their hoofs was heard resembling the noise made by a large forest, in conflagration, of bamboos on a mountain.[13] And as these dashed over the field, there rose a cloud of dust, which rising to the welkin shrouded the very Sun.[14] And in consequence of those impetuous steeds, the Pāndava army was agitated like a large lake with a flight of swans suddenly alighting on its bosom.[15] And in consequence of their neighing, nothing else could be heard there. Then king Yudhishthira, and the two sons of Pāndu by Mādri,[16] quickly checked the charge of those horsemen in battle, like the continent, O king, bearing the force, at full tide, of the surging sea swollen with the waters of the rainy season. Then those (three) car-warriors, O monarch, with their straight shafts,[17-18] cut off the heads of those horse-riders. Slain by those strong bowmen, they fell down, O king, (on the earth),*[19] like mighty elephants tumbling into mountain caves, slain by huge compeers. Indeed, coursing all over the field, those warriors (of the Pāndava army) cut off the heads of those cavalry soldiers with sharp bearded darts and straight shafts. Struck with swords, those horsemen, O bull of Bha-

* In the first line of 19th occurs, in all the texts, a superfluous word *çarma*.—T.

rata's race,[20-21] suffered their heads to drop like tall trees dropping their fruits. All over the field, O king, steeds along with their riders were seen fallen or falling, deprived of life. And while being (thus) slaughtered, the steeds, affected with panic, fled away,[22-23] like smaller animals desirous of saving their lives at sight of the lion. And the Pāndavas, O king, having vanquished their foes in that great battle,[24] blew their conchs and beat their drums. Then Duryodhana, filled with grief on seeing his troops vanquished,[25] addressed the ruler of the Madras, O chief of the Bhāratas, and said,—There, the eldest son of Pāndu, accompanied by the twins in battle,[26] in thy very sight, O thou of mighty arms, routeth our troops, O lord! O mighty-armed one, resist him like the continent resisting the ocean![27] Thou art exceedingly well-known as possessed of might and prowess that are irresistible!—Hearing these words of thy son, the valiant Calya[28] proceeded with a large body of cars to the spot where Yudhishthira was. Thereupon the son of Pāndu began to resist in battle that large host of Calya rushing impetuously towards him with the force of a mighty wave. And that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, king Yudhishthira the just, in that battle quickly pierced the ruler of the Madras in the centre of the chest with ten shafts. And Nakula and Sahadeva struck him with seven straight shafts.[29-31] The ruler of the Madras then struck each of them with three arrows. And once more he pierced Yudhishthira with sixty sharp-pointed arrows.[32] And excited with wrath he struck each of the sons of Mādri also with two shafts. Then that vanquisher of foes, the mighty-armed Bhima, beholding the king, in that great battle, staying within reach of Calya's car as if within the very jaws of Death, quickly proceeded to Yudhishthira's side.[33-34] Then when the Sun, having passed the meridian, was sinking, there commenced a fierce and terrible battle (on that part of the field).'"[35]

SECTION CVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then thy sire, excited with wrath, began to strike the Pārthas and their troops all around, with excel-

lent shafts of great sharpness.[1] And he pierced Bhima with twelve shafts, and Sātyaki with nine. And having pierced Nakula with three shafts, he pierced Sahadeva with seven.[2] And he pierced Yudhishthira in the arms and the chest with twelve shafts. And piercing Dhrishtadyumna also, that mighty warrior uttered a loud roar.[3] Him Nakula pierced (in return) with twelve shafts, and Sātyaki with three. And Dhrishtadyumna pierced him with seventy shafts, and Bhimasena with seven.[4] And Yudhisthira pierced the grandsire in return with twelve shafts. Drona (on the other hand), having pierced Sātyaki, pierced Bhimasena next.[5] And he pierced each of them with five sharp shafts, each of which resembled the rod of Death. Each of those two, however, pierced Drona, that bull among Brāhmanas, in return, with three straight shafts. The Sauviras, the Kitavas, the Easterners, the Westerners, the Northerners, the Mālavas,[6-7] the Abhishāhas, the Curasenas, the Civis, and the Vasātis, did not avoid Bhishma in battle although they were incessantly slaughtered by him with sharp shafts.[8] And similarly kings coming from diverse countries and armed with diverse weapons, approached the Pāndavas (without seeking to avoid them in battle).[9] And the Pāndavas, O king, surrounded the grandsire on all sides. Surrounded on all sides, yet unvanquished by that large body of cars,[10] Bhishma blazed up like a fire in the midst of a forest, and consumed his foes. His car was his fire-chamber; his bow constituted the flames (of that fire); swords, darts, and maces, constituted the fuel;[11] his shafts were the sparks (of that fire); and Bhishma was himself the fire that consumed the foremost of Kshatriyas. Indeed, with shafts furnished with golden wings and vulturine feathers and endued with great energy,[12] with barbed arrows, and *nālikas*, and long shafts, he covered the hostile host. And he felled elephants and car-warriors also with his sharp shafts.[13] And he made that large body of cars resemble a forest of palmyras shorn of their leafy heads. And that mighty-armed warrior, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, O king, deprived cars and elephants and steeds of their riders in that conflict. And hearing the twang of his bowstring and the noise of his palms, loud as the roar of the

thunder, all the troops trembled, O Bhārata. The shafts of thy sire, O bull of Bharata's race, told on the foe.[14-16] Indeed, shot from Bhishma's bow they did not strike the coats of mail only (but pierced them through). And we beheld, O king, many cars destitute of their brave riders dragged over the field of battle, O monarch, by the fleet steeds yoked unto them. Fourteen thousand car-warriors, belonging to the Chedis, the Kāçis, and the Karushas, of great celebrity and noble parentage, prepared to lay down their lives, unretreating from the field, and owning excellent standards decked with gold,[17-19] having met with Bhishma in battle who resembled the Destroyer himself with wide-open mouth, all went to the other world along with their cars, steeds, and elephants.[20] And we beheld there, O king, cars by hundreds and thousands, some with their *Akshas* and bottoms broken, and some, O Bhārata, with broken wheels.[21] And the earth was strewn with cars broken along with their wooden fences, with the prostrate forms of car-warriors, with shafts, with beautiful but broken coats of mail, with axes, O monarch ; with maces and short arrows and sharp shafts, with bottoms of cars, with quivers and broken wheels, O sire, with innumerable bows and scimitars and heads decked with ear-rings ; with leathern fences and gloves and overthrown standards, and with bows broken in various parts. And elephants, O king, destitute of riders, and slain horsemen,[22-25] lay prostrate on the field by hundreds and thousands. Those heroic warriors (of the Pāndava army), notwithstanding all their efforts, could not rally those car-warriors, who, afflicted by the shafts of Bhishma, were flying away from the field. Indeed, O king, that mighty host, while being slaughtered by Bhishma endued with energy equal to that of Indra himself,[26-27] broke so completely that no two persons fled together. With its cars, elephants, and steeds overthrown, and with its standards laid low in profusion,*[28] the army of the sons of Pāndu, deprived of its senses, uttered loud exclamations of woe. And at that time, sire slew

* The last half of the second line of 28th is read incorrectly in the Bengal texts.—T.

son, and son slew sire,[29] and friend smote dear friend, impelled by fate. And many combatants of the Pāndava army, throwing aside their armour,[30] were seen flying in all directions with dishevelled hair. Indeed, the Pāndava troops looked like bulls running wild in fear, and no longer restrained by the yoke.[31] Indeed, loud were the exclamations we heard, of woe that they uttered !

"'Then that delighter of the Yādavas, beholding the Pāndava army breaking,[32] reined the excellent car (that he guided), and addressing Vibhatsu the son of Prithā, said,—That hour is come, O Pārtha, which thou hadst hoped for ![33] Strike now, O tiger among men, or thou wilt be deprived of thy senses ! Formerly, O hero, thou saidst, O Pārtha, in that conclave of kings in Virāta's city, in the presence also of Sanjaya, these words :—*I will slay all the warriors of Dhritarāshtra's son, all of them with their followers, including Bhishma and Drona, that would fight with me in battle !*—O son of Kunti, O chastiser of foes, make those words of thine true ! Remembering the duty of a Kshatriya, fight, without any anxiety !—Thus addressed by Vāsudeva, Arjuna hung down his head and looked askance at him.[34-37] And Vibhatsu replied very unwillingly, saying,—To acquire sovereignty with hell in the end, having slain those who should not be slain,[38] or the woes of an exile in the woods,—(these are the alternatives) ! Which of these should I achieve ? Urge the steeds, O Hrishikeça, I will do thy bidding ![39] I will overthrow the Kuru grandsire Bhishma, that invincible warrior !—Thus asked, Mādhava urged those steeds of a silvery hue,[40] to the spot where Bhishma, incapable of being looked at like the Sun himself, was staying. Then that large host of Yudhishthira rallied and came again to the fight,[41] beholding the mighty-armed Pārtha proceeding for an encounter with Bhishma. Then Bhishma, that foremost one among the Kurus, repeatedly roared like a lion.[42] And he soon covered Dhananjaya's car with a shower of arrows. Within a trice that car of his, with its steeds and charioteer,[43] became entirely invisible in consequence of that thick shower of arrows. Vāsudeva, however, without fear, mustering patience, and enduced with

great activity,[44] urged those steeds mangled with Bhishma's shafts. Then Pārtha, taking up his celestial bow of twang loud as the roar of the clouds,[45] caused Bhishma's bow to drop from his hands, cutting it (into fragments) by means of his sharp shafts. Then thy sire, the Kuru hero, whose bow had thus been cut off, stringed another large bow within the twinkling of the eye. Arjuna, however, excited with wrath, cut that bow also of his.[46-47] The son of Cāntanu applauded that lightness of hand displayed by Arjuna, saying,—*Well done, Well done, O mighty-armed one! Well done, O son of Kunti!*[48]—Having addressed him thus, Bhishma took up another beautiful bow in that battle, and shot many arrows at Pārtha's car.[49] And Vāsudeva showed great skill in the management of steeds, for, displaying the circling motion he baffled all those arrows (of Bhishma).[50] Mangled with the arrows of Bhishma, those two tigers among men looked beautiful like two angry bulls marked with scratches of horns.[51] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the mighty-armed Vāsudeva of Madhu's race, beholding that Pārtha was fighting mildly and that Bhishma was incessantly scattering his arrowy showers in battle, that, stationed between the two hosts, the latter was scorching everything like the Sun himself, smiting down the foremost of Yudhishthira's combatants, and, in fact, achieving feats on Yudhishthira's army like unto what happeneth at the end of the *Yuga*, could not any longer bear it.[52-54] Abandoning then, O sire, Pārtha's steeds that looked like silver, and filled with wrath, that great lord of *Yoga* powers jumped down from that great car.[55] Repeatedly roaring like a lion, the mighty Krishna of great energy and immeasurable splendour, the Lord of the Universe, with eyes red as copper from rage, and having his bare arms alone for his weapons, rushed towards Bhishma, whip in hand, desirous of slaying him, and seeming to split the universe itself with his tread.[56-57] Beholding Mādhava in the vicinity of Bhishma and about to fall upon him in that furious battle, the hearts of all the combatants seemed to be in a stupor.*[58]—*Bhishma is slain, Bhishma is slain!*—these loud exclamations were

* The first word of this verse is read variously.—T.

heard there, O king, caused by the fear inspired by Vāsudeva.[59] Robed in yellow silk, and himself dark as the *lapis lazuli*, Janārddana, when he pursued Bhishma, looked beautiful as a mass of clouds charged with lightning.[60] Like a lion towards an elephant, or the leader of a bovine herd upon another of his speices, that bull of Madhu's race, with a loud roar, impetuously rushed towards Bhishma.[61] Beholding him of eyes like lotus petals (thus) rushing towards him in that battle, Bhishma began to fearlessly draw his large bow.[62] And with a fearless heart he addressed Govinda, saying,—Come, come, O thou of eyes like lotus petals! O God of the gods, I bow to thee![63] O best of the Sātwatas, throw me down today in this great battle! O god, slain by thee in battle, O sinless one,[64] great will be the good done to me, O Krishna, in every respect in the world! Amongst all in the three worlds, great is the honor done to me today in battle, O Govinda![65] Strike me as thou pleasest, for I am thy slave, O sinless one!—Meanwhile, the mighty-armed Pārtha, quickly following Keçava behind,[66] seized him by encircling him with his two arms. That best of male beings, *viz.*, Krishna, of eyes like lotus petals, seized by Pārtha,[67] still proceeded with great speed, bearing the latter away with him. The mighty Pārtha, that slayer of hostile heroes, however, forcibly catching hold of his legs,[68] stopped Hrishikeça with great difficulty at the tenth step. Then Arjuna, his dear friend, filled with sorrow, affectionately addressed Keçava, who was then sighing like a snake and whose eyes were troubled in wrath, saying,—O thou of mighty arms, stop! O Keçava, it behoveth thee not to make those words false which thou hadst spoken before, *viz.*, *I will not fight!*—O Mādhava, people will say that thou art a liar![69-71] All this burthen resteth upon me! *I* will slay the grandsire! I swear, O Keçava, by my weapons, by truth, and by my good deeds,[72] that, O slayer of foes, I will do all by which the destruction of my foes may be achieved! Behold this very day that invincible and mighty car-warrior in the act of being thrown down by me,[73] with the greatest ease, like the crescent moon at the end of the *Yuga* (when the destruction of the universe comes)!—Mādhava, however, hear-

ing these words of the high-souled Phālguna,[74] spoke not a word, but in anger once more mounted upon the car. And then upon those two tigers among men, when stationed on their car, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu once more[75] poured his arrowy showers like the clouds pouring rain upon the mountain-breast. Thy sire Devavrata took the lives of the (hostile) warriors[76] like the Sun sucking with his rays the energies of all things during summer. As the Pāndavas had been breaking the ranks of the Kurus in battle,[77] so thy sire broke the Pāndava ranks in battle. And the routed soldiers, hopeless and heartless,[78] slaughtered in hundreds and thousands by Bhishma, were unable to even look at him in that battle,—him who resembled the midday Sun blazing in his own splendour! Indeed, the Pāndavas, afflicted with fear, timidly gazed at Bhishma who was then achieving superhuman feats in that battle. And the Pāndava troops, thus fleeing away, O Bhārata,[79-81] failed to find a protector, like a herd of kine sunk in a slough, or like a shoal of ants while being trod down by a strong person.[82] Indeed, the Pāndavas could not, O Bhārata, look at that mighty car-warrior incapable of being shaken, who, furnished with a profusion of shafts, was scorching the kings (in the Pāndava army), and who in consequence of those shafts looked like the blazing Sun shedding his fiery rays.[83] And while he was thus grinding the Pāndava army, the thousand-rayed maker of day repaired to the setting hills, and the troops, worn with fatigue, set their hearts on withdrawal (from the field).' "[84]

SECTION CVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'While they were battling, the Sun set, O Bhārata, and there came the dread hour of twilight and the battle could no longer be seen.[1] Then king Yudhishthira, seing that twilight had come and that his own troops, slaughtered by Bhishma, had thrown aside their weapons, and that, stricken with fear, and turned off the field, they were seeking to fly away, and beholding Bhishma also, that mighty car-warrior, excited with wrath and afflicting everybody in the

fight, and noticing that the mighty car-warriors of the Somakas, having been vanquished, had all become cheerless, reflected a little, and then ordered the troops to be withdrawn.[2-4] Then king Yudhishthira withdrew his forces. And similarly, the withdrawal of thy forces also took place at the same time.[5] Then those mighty car-warriors, O chief of the Kurus, having withdrawn their forces, entered their tents, themselves mangled in battle.[6] Afflicted by the shafts of Bhishma and reflecting upon that hero's feats in battle, the Pāndavas obtained no peace of mind.[7] Bhishma also, having vanquished the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas in battle, was worshipped by thy sons and glorified by them, O Bhārata.[8] Accompanied by the rejoicing Kurus, he then entered his tent. Night then set in, that deprives all creatures of their senses.[9] Then in that fierce hour of night, the Pāndavas, the Vrishnis, and the invincible Srinjayas sat down for a consultation.[10] All those mighty persons, skilled in arriving at conclusions in council, coolly deliberated about that which was beneficial for them in view of their immediate circumstances.[11] Then king Yudhishthira, having reflected for a long while, said these words, casting his eyes on Vāsudeva :[12]—Behold, O Krishna, the high-souled Bhishma of fierce prowess ! He crusheth my troops like an elephant crushing a forest of reeds ![13] We dare not even look at that high-souled warrior. Like a raging conflagration he licketh up my troops ![14] The valiant Bhishma of keen weapons, when excited with wrath in battle and bow in hand shooting his shafts, becometh as fierce as the mighty *Nāga* Takshaka of virulent poison ! Indeed, the angry Yama is capable of being vanquished, or even the chief of the celestials armed with the thunder,[15-16] or Varuna himself, noose in hand, or the Lord of the *Yakshas* armed with mace ! But Bhishma, excited with wrath, is incapable of being vanquished in battle ![17] When this is the case, O Krishna, I am, through the weakness of my understanding, plunged in an ocean of grief, having got Bhishma (as a foe) in battle ![18] I will retire into the woods, O invincible one ! My exile there would be for my benefit. Battle, O Krishna, I no longer desire ! Bhishma slayeth us always ![19] As an insect, by rushing

into a blazing fire, meeteth only with death, even so do I rush upon Bhishma![20] In putting forth prowess, O thou of Vrishni's race, for the sake of my kingdom, I am, alas, led to destruction! My brave brothers have all been exceedingly afflicted with arrows![21] In consequence of the affection they bear to myself their (eldest) brother, they had to go into the woods, deprived of kingdom! For myself alone, O slayer of Madhu, hath Krishnā been sunk into such distress![22] I regard life to be of high value. Indeed, even life now seemeth to be difficult of being saved. (If I can save that life), its later remnant will I pass in the practice of excellent virtue![23] If, with my brothers, O Keçava, I am worthy of thy favor, tell me, O Krishna, what is for my benefit, without contravening the duties of my order![24]—Hearing these words of his, many and (describing the situation) in detail, Krishna, from compassion, said these words in reply, for comforting Yudhishthira,[25]—O son of Dharma, O thou that art firm in truth, do thou not indulge in sorrow, thou that hast these invincible heroes, these slayers of foes, for thy brothers![26] Arjuna and Bhimasena are each endued with the energy of the Wind and the Fire. The twin sons of Mādri also are each as valiant as the Chief of the celestials himself.[27] From the good understanding that exists between us, do thou set me also to this task! Even I, O son of Pāndu, will fight with Bhishma! Directed by thee, O great king, what is there that I may not do in great battle![28] Challenging that bull among men, *viz.*, Bhishma, I will slay him in battle, in the very sight of the Dhārtarāshtras, if Phālguna doth not wish to slay him![29] If, O son of Pāndu, thou seest victory to be certain on the slaughter of the heroic Bhishma, even I, on a single car, will slay that aged grandsire of the Kurus![30] Behold, O king, my prowess, equal to that of the great Indra, in battle! I will overthrow from his car that warrior who always shooteth mighty weapons![31] He that is an enemy of the sons of Pāndu, without doubt, is my enemy also! They that are yours are mine, and so they that are mine are yours![32] Thy brother (Arjuna) is my friend, relative, and disciple. I will, O king, cut off my own flesh and give it away for the sake of

Arjuna![33] And this tiger among men also can lay down his life for my sake! O sire, even this is our understanding, *viz.*, that we will protect each other![34] Therefore, command me, O king, in what way I am to fight! Formerly, at Upaplavya, Pārtha had, in the presence of many persons, vowed, saying,—*I will slay the son of Gangā.*—These words of the intelligent Pārtha should be observed (in practice).[35-36] Indeed, if Pārtha requests me, without doubt I will fulfil that vow. Or, let it be the task of Phālguna himself in battle. It is not heavy for him.[37] He will slay Bhishma, that subjugator of hostile cities. If excited in battle, Pārtha can achieve feats that are incapable of being achieved by others.[38] Arjuna can slay in battle the very gods exerting themselves actively, along with the *Daityas* and the *Dānavas*! What need be said of Bhishma, therefore, O king?[39] Endued with great energy, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu is now of perverted judgment. Of intelligence decayed, and of little sense, without doubt, he knoweth not what he should do![40]—

"'Hearing these words of Krishna, Yudhishthira said,—It is even so, O thou of mighty arms, even as thou sayest, O thou of Madhu's race! All these together are not competent to bear thy force![41] I am sure of always having whatever I desire, when, O tiger among men, I have thyself staying on my side.[42] O foremost of victorious persons, I would conquer the very gods with Indra at their head, when, O Govinda, I have thee for my protector! What need I say, therefore, of Bhishma though he is a mighty car-warrior?[43] But, O Krishna, I dare not, for my own glorification, falsify thy words! Therefore, O Mādhava, as promised before by thee, render me aid without fighting for me![44] In this battle an agreement was made by me with Bhishma. He said,—*I will give thee counsel, but fight I shall never for thee,*[45] *since I shall have to fight for Duryodhana's sake! Know this for truth!*—Therefore, O lord, Bhishma may give me sovereignty by giving me good counsel, O Mādhava![46] Therefore, O slayer of Madhu, all of us, accompanied by thee, will once more repair unto Devavrata, for asking him about the means of his own death.[47] All of us then, O best of persons, together going to

Bhishma without delay, will speedily ask him of Kuru's race his advice.[48] O Janārddana, he will truly give us beneficial counsel; and, O Krishna, I will do in battle what he will say![49] Of austere vows, he will give us counsel as also victory. We were children and orphans. By him were we reared.[50] O Mādhava, him, our aged grandsire, I wish to slay,—him, the sire of our sire! Oh, fie upon the profession of a *Kshatriya!*—'[51]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing these words, O king, he of Vrishni's race said unto Yudhishthira,—O thou of great wisdom, these words of thine, O king, are to my taste![52] Bhishma, otherwise called Devavrata, is skilled in weapons. With only his glances he can consume the foe. Repair unto that son of the Ocean-going (Gangā), for asking him about the means of his death.[53] Asked by thee, in particular, he will certainly say the truth! We will, therefore, proceed for questioning the Kuru grandsire.[54] Repairing unto the reverend son of Cāntanu, we will, O Bhārata, ask him his advice, and according to the advice that he will give us, we will fight with the foe.[55]—Having thus deliberated, O elder brother of Pāndu, the heroic sons of Pāndu, and the valiant Vāsudeva, all proceeded together[56] towards the abode of Bhishma, casting aside their coats of mail and weapons. And entering then his tent, they all bowed to him, bending their heads.[57] And the sons of Pāndu, O king, worshipping that bull of Bharata's race, and bowing unto him with their heads, sought his protection.[58] The Kuru grandsire, the mighty-armed Bhishma, then addressed them, saying,—Welcome art thou, O thou of Vrishni's race! Welcome art thou, O Dhananjaya![59] Welcome to thee, O king Yudhishthira the just, and to thee, O Bhima! Welcome to you also, ye twins! What am I to do now for enhancing your joy?[60] Even if it be exceedingly difficult of achievement, I will yet do it with all my soul!—Unto the son of Gangā who thus repeatedly spoke unto them with such affection,[61] king Yudhishthira, with a cheerless heart, lovingly said these words:—O thou that art conversant with everything, how shall we obtain victory, and how shall we acquire sovereignty?[62] How also may this destruction of

creatures be stopped ? Say all this unto me, O lord ! Tell us the means of thy own death ![63] How, O hero, shall we be able to bear thee in battle ? O grandsire of the Kurus, thou givest not thy foes even a minute hole to pick in thee ![64] Thou art seen in battle with thy bow ever drawn to a circle ! When thou takest thy shafts, when aimest them, and when drawest the bow (for letting them off), no one is able to mark.[65] O slayer of hostile heroes, constantly smiting (as thou dost) cars and steeds and men and elephants, we behold thee on thy car, O mighty-armed one, to resemble a second Sun ![66] What man is there, O bull of Bharata's race, who can venture to vanquish thee ! Scattering showers of arrows in battle, and causing a great carnage,[67] by thee hath my host been made to suffer a great destruction ! Tell me, O grandsire, the means by which we may vanquish thee in battle, by which sovereignty may be ours, and, lastly, by which my army may not have to undergo such destruction !—Hearing these words, Cāntanu's son, O elder brother of Pāndu, said unto the son of Pāndu,[68-69]—As long as I am alive, O son of Kunti, victory cannot be yours in battle, O thou of great wisdom ! Truly do I say this unto thee ![70] After, however, I am vanquished in fight, ye may have victory in the battle, ye sons of Pāndu ! If, therefore, ye desire victory in the battle, smite me down without delay ![71] I give you permission, ye sons of Prithā, strike me as ye please ! That I am thus known to you is what I regard to be a fortunate circumstance.* After I am slain, all the rest will be slain. Therefore, do as I bid !—[72]

" 'Yudhishthira said,—Tell us the means by which we may vanquish thee in battle, thee that art, when excited with wrath in the fight, like unto the Destroyer himself armed with mace ![73] The wielder of the thunder-bolt may be vanquished, or Varuna, or Yama ! Thou, however, art incapable

---

* That you know me to be invincible is a fortunate circumstance, for if you had not known this, you would have fought on for days together and thus caused a tremendous destruction of creatures. By your coming to me now, that destruction may be stopped.—T.

of being defeated in battle by even the gods and the *Asuras* united together, with Indra at their head![74]—

"'Bhishma said,—That, O son of Pāndu, is true, which thou sayest, O thou of mighty arms! When with weapons and my large bow in hand I contend carefully in battle, I am incapable of being defeated by the very gods and the *Asuras* with Indra at their head! If, however, I lay aside my weapons, even these car-warriors can slay me![75-76] One that hath thrown away his weapons, one that hath fallen down, one whose armour hath slipped off, one whose standard is down, one who is flying away, one who is frightened, one who says—*I am thine*,[77] one who is a female, one who beareth the name of a female, one no longer capable of taking care of one's self, one who hath only a single son, or one who is a vulgar fellow,—with these I do not like to battle.[78] Hear also, O king, about my resolve formed before! Beholding any inauspicious omen I would never fight![79] That mighty car-warrior, the son of Drupada, O king, whom thou hast in thy army, who is known by the name of Cikhandin, who is wrathful in battle, brave, and ever victorious,[80] was a female before but subsequently obtained manhood. How all this took place, ye all know it truly![81] Brave in battle and clad in mail, let Arjuna, keeping Cikhandin before him, attack me with his sharp shafts.[82] When that inauspicious omen will be there, especially in the form of one that was a female before, I will never seek, though armed with bow and arrow, to strike him.[83] Obtaining that opportunity, let Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu quickly pierce me on every side with his shafts, O bull of Bharata's race![84] Except the highly blessed Krishna, and Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu, I do not behold the person in the three worlds who is able to slay me while exerting myself in battle![85] Let Vibhatsu, therefore, armed with weapons, struggling carefully in battle, with his excellent bow in hand, placing (Cikhandin or) something else before me, throw me down (from my car)! Then thy victory will be certain! Do this, O great king, even this that I have said unto thee, O thou of excellent vows! Thou wilt then be able to slay all the Dhārtarāshtras assembled together in battle![86-87]

"Sanjaya continued,—'The Pārthas then, having ascertained all this, went back to their tents, saluting the Kuru grandsire, *viz.*, the high-souled Bhishma.[88] After Gangā's son, prepared to go to the other world, had said this, Arjuna, burning with grief and his face suffused in shame, said these words :[89]—How, O Mādhava, shall I fight in battle with the grandsire who is my senior in years, who is possessed of wisdom and intelligence, and who is the oldest member of our race ?[90] While sporting in days of childhood, O Vāsudeva, I used to smear the body of this high-souled and illustrious one with dust by climbing on his lap with my own filthy body ![91] O elder brother of Gada, he is the sire of my sire Pāndu ! While a child, climbing on the lap of this high-souled one I once called him *father !*[92]—*I am not thy father but thy father's father, O Bhārata !*—even this is what he said to me (in reply) in my childhood ! He who said so, Oh, how can he be slain by me ![93] Oh, let my army perish ! Whether it is victory or death that I obtain, I will never fight with that high-souled person ! (Even this is what I think !) What dost thou think, O Krishna !—[94]

" 'Vāsudeva said,—Having vowed the slaughter of Bhishma before, O Jishnu, how canst thou abstain from slaying him, agreeably to the duties of a Kshatriya ?[95] Throw down from his car, O Pārtha, that Kshatriya who is invincible in battle. Victory can never be yours without slaying Gangā's son.[96] Even thus shall he go to the abode of Yama. This hath been settled before by the gods. That which hath been destined before, O Pārtha, must happen. It cannot be otherwise.[97] None save thee, O invincible one, not even the wielder of the thunder-bolt himself, would be capable of fighting with Bhishma, who is like the Destroyer with wide-open mouth ![98] Slay Bhishma, without any anxiety ! Listen also to these words of mine that are what Vrihaspati of great intelligence had said unto Cakra in days of old ![99] *One should slay even an aged person endued with every merit and worthy of reverence if he cometh as a foe, or, indeed, any other who approacheth for destroying one's self.*[100] O Dhananjaya, this is the eternal duty sanctioned for the Kshatriyas, *viz.*, that

they should fight, protect subjects, and perform sacrifices, all without malice !'[101]

"'Arjuna said,—Cikhandin, O Krishna, will certainly be the cause of Bhishma's death, for Bhishma, as soon as he beholds the prince of the Pānchālas, abstains from striking.[102] Therefore, keeping Cikhandin before him and at our head, we will, by that means, overthrow the son of Gangā! Even this is what I think.[103] I will hold in check other great bowmen with my shafts. As regards Cikhandin, he will fight with Bhishma alone, that foremost of all warriors![104] I have heard from that chief of the Kurus that he would not strike Cikhandin, for having been born before as a woman he subsequently became a male person.'—[105]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having settled this with Bhishma's permission, the Pāndavas, along with Mādhava, went away with rejoicing hearts. And then those bulls among men retired to their respective beds.' "*[106]

SECTION CIX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How did Cikhandin advance against the son of Gangā in battle, and how did Bhishma also advance against the Pāndavas ? Say all this unto me, O Sanjaya !'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Then all those Pāndavas towards the hour of sunrise, with beat of drums and cymbals and smaller drums, and with the blare of conchs of milky whiteness, all around, went out for battle, placing Cikhandin in their van.[2-3] And they marched out, O king, having formed an array that was destructive of all foes. And Cikhandin, O monarch, was stationed in the very van of all the troops.[4] And Bhimasena and Dhananjaya became the protectors of his car-wheels. And in his rear were the sons of Draupadi and the valiant Abhimanyu.[5] And those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, Sātyaki and Chekitāna, became the protectors of the last. And behind

---

* The last verse consists of three lines. In some of the Bengal texts the last line is omitted—.T.

them was Dhrishtadyumna protected by the Pānchālas.[6] Next to Dhrishtadyumna, behind, marched the royal lord Yudhishthira, accompanied by the twins, filling the air with leonine shouts, O bull of Bharata's race.[7] Next behind him was Virāta, surrounded by his own troops. Next to him marched Drupada, O mighty-armed one.[8] And the five Kaikeya brothers and the valiant Dhrishtaketu, O Bhārata, protected the rear of the Pāndava army.[9] Having disposed their vast army in such an array, the Pāndavas rushed against thy host, prepared to cast away their lives.[10] And similarly the Kauravas, O king, placing that mighty car-warrior Bhishma at the head of their whole host, proceeded against the Pāndavas.[11] And that invincible warrior was protected by thy mighty sons. Next behind them was the great bowman Drona, as also his mighty son (Açwatthāman).[12] Next behind was Bhagadatta surrounded by his eldphant division. And behind Bhagadatta were Kripa and Kritavarman.[13] Behind them were Sudakshina the mighty ruler of the Kāmvojas, and Jayatsena the king of the Māgadhas, and Suvala's son, and Vrihadvala.[14] And similarly, many other kings, that were all great bowmen, protected the rear of thy host, O Bhārata![15] As each day came, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, formed arrays in battle, some times after the manner of the *Asuras*, sometimes after that of the *Piçāchas*, and sometimes after that of the *Rākshasas*.[16] Then commenced the battle between thy troops, O Bhārata, and theirs, both parties smiting one another and increasing the population of Yama's kingdom.[17] And the Pārthas with Arjuna at their head, placing Cikhandin in the van, proceeded against Bhishma in that battle, scattering diverse kinds of arrows.[18] And then, O Bhārata, afflicted by Bhima with his shafts, (many of) thy warriors, profusely bathed in blood, repaired to the other world.[19] And Nakula and Sahadeva, and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, approaching thy army, began to afflict it with great vigor.[20] Thus slaughtered in battle, O bull of Bharata's race, thy warriors were unable to resist that vast host of the Pāndavas.[21] Then thy host, vigorously afflicted by great car-warriors and thus slaughtered by them everywhere, fled away on all sides.[22] Slaughtered with sharp

shafts by the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas, they found not a protector, O bull of Bharata's race !'[23]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, what the valiant Bhishma, excited with rage, did in battle, upon beholding my host afflicted by the Pārthas ![24] O sinless one, tell me how that hero, that chastiser of foes, rushed against the Pāndavas in battle, and slaughtered the Somakas !'[25]

"Sanjaya said,—'I will tell thee, O king, what thy sire did when thy son's host was afflicted by the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas ![26] With cheerful hearts, the brave sons of Pāndu, O elder brother of Pāndu, encountered thy son's host, slaughtering (all whom thy met).[27] That carnage, O chief of men, of human beings, elephants, and steeds, that destruction by the foe of thy army in battle, Bhishma could not brook.[28] That invincible and great bowman, then, reckless of his very life, poured upon the Pāndavas, the Pānchālas, and the Srinjayas, showers of long shafts and calf-toothed and crescent-shaped arrows. Armed with weapons, O monarch, he checked with his shafts and with showers of other weapons, both offensive and defensive, all sped with energy and wrath, the five foremost of mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas, who had been struggling vigorously in battle.[29-31] Excited with wrath, he slaughtered in that battle countless elephants and steeds. And that bull among men, O monarch, throwing down many car-warriors from their cars,*[32] and horsemen from their horses, and crowds of foot-soldiers, and elephant-warriors from the backs of the beasts they rode, struck terror into the foe,[33] And the Pāndava warriors all rushed together upon Bhishma singly, upon that mighty car-warrior struggling in battle with great activity, like the *Asuras* rushing together upon him with the thunder-bolt in hand.[34] Shooting on all sides his whetted arrows whose touch resembled that of Indra's thunder, he seemed to the enemy to have assumed a terrible visage.[35] While fighting in that battle,

* The adjective *Vahu* in the first line of 32 qualifies *rathinas* in the second line. The last word of the verse is a nom. sing, and not a vocative.—T.

his large bow, resembling that of Cakra himself, seemed to be always drawn to a circle.[36] Beholding those feats in battle, thy sons, O monarch, filled with exceeding wonder, worshipped the grandsire.[37] The Pārthas cast their eyes, with cheerless hearts, upon thy heroic sire struggling in battle, like the celestials upon (the *Asura)* Viprachitti (in days of old.)*[38] They could not resist that warrior who then resembled the Destroyer himself with wide-open mouth. In that battle on the tenth day, Bhishma, with his sharp shafts, consumed the division of Cikhandin like a conflagration consuming a forest. Him resembling an angry snake of virulent poison, or the Destroyer urged by Death himself, Cikhandin pierced with three shafts in the centre of the chest. Deeply pierced therewith, Bhishma saw that it was Cikhandin (who was piercing him).[39-41] Excited with wrath, but unwilling (to fight with Cikhandin), Bhishma laughingly said,—Whether thou choosest to strike me or not, I will never fight with thee![42] Thou art that Cikhandin still which the Creator had made thee first![†]—Hearing these words of his, Cikhandin, deprived of his senses by wrath,[43] and licking the corners of his mouth, addressed Bhishma in that battle, saying,—I know thee, O mighty-armed one, to be the exterminator of the Kshatriya race![44] I have heard also of thy battle with Jamadagni's son! I have also heard much of thy superhuman prowess![45] Knowing thy prowess I will still fight with thee today! For doing what is agreeable to the Pāndavas and what is agreeable to my own self, O chastiser of foes,[46] I will today fight with thee in battle, O best of men! I will, of a certainty, slay thee! I swear this before thee by my troth![47] Hearing these words of mine, do that which thou shouldst! Whether thou choosest to strike me or not, thou shalt not escape me with life! O thou that art ever victorious, O Bhishma, look thy last on this world!—'[48]

---

* The Bengal texts read *mahaçuram* in the second line of the verse. This seems to be vicious. A better reading would be *mahāsuram* (the great *asura*). The Bombay text reads *rane çuram*. I adopt the last.—T.

† *I. e.*, Thou art still a woman though thy sex hath been changed.—T.

"Sanjaya continued,—"Having said so, Cikhandin in that battle pierced Bhisma with five straight shafts, having already pierced him with his wordy shafts.[49] Hearing those words of his, the mighty car-warrior Arjuna, regarding Cikhandin to be Bhishma's Destroyer, urged him on, saying,[50]—I will fight behind thee, routing the foe with my shafts! Excited with fury, rush thou against Bhishma of terrible prowess![51] The mighty Bhishma will not be able to afflict thee in battle. Therefore, O mighty-armed one, encounter Bhishma with vigor.[52] If, O sire, thou returnest today without slaying Bhishma, thou wilt, with myself, be an object of ridicule with the world![53] Seek to do that in battle by which, O hero, we may not incur ridicule in this great battle! Slay the grandsire![54] O thou of great strength, I will protect thee in this battle, checking all the car-warriors (of the Kuru army)! Do thou slay the grandsire![55] Drona, and Drona's son, and Kripa, and Suyodhana, and Chitrasena, and Vikarna, and Jayadratha the ruler of the Sindhus,[56] and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, and Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas, and the brave Bhagadatta, and the mighty king of the Magadhas,[57] and Somadatta's son, and the brave *Rākshasa* who is Rishyaçringa's son, and the ruler of the Trigartas, along with all the other great car-warriors (of the Kuru army),[58] I will check like the continent resisting the surging sea! Indeed, I will hold in check all the mighty warriors of the Kuru army assembled together and battling with us! Do thou slay the grandsire!—'"[59]

SECTION CX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How did Cikhandin the prince of the Pānchālas, excited with wrath, rush in battle against the grandsire, *viz.*, Gangā's son of righteous soul and regulated vows?[1] What mighty car-warriors of the Pāndava army, with upraised weapons, desirous of victory and exerting themselves with activity, protected Cikhandin on that occasion which required great activity?[2] How also did Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, endued with great energy, fight on that the tenth

day of battle with the Pāndavas and the Srinjays?[3] I cannot brook the idea of Cikhandin encountering Bhishma in battle! (Indeed, when Cikhandin attacked Bhishma), was Bhishma's car or his bow broken?'[4]

"Sanjaya said,—'While fighting in that battle, O bull of Bharata's race, neither the bow nor the car of Bhishma had suffered any injury.[5] He was then slaying the foe with his straight shafts. Many thousands of mighty car-warriors belonging to thy army,[6] as also elephants, O king, and steeds well harnessed, proceeded for battle, with the grandsire in the van.[7] Agreeably to his vow, O thou of Kuru's race, the ever-victorious Bhishma was incessantly engaged in slaughtering the troops of the Pārthas.[8] The Pānchālas and the Pāndavas were unable to bear that great bowman battling (with them) and slaying his foes with his shafts.[9] When the tenth day came, the hostile army was torn into pieces by Bhishma with his shafts by hundreds and thousands.[10] O elder brother of Pāndu, the sons of Pāndu were incapable of defeating in battle the great bowman Bhishma who resembled the Destroyer himself armed with the lance![11]

"'Then, O king, the unvanquished Vibhatsu or Dhananjaya, who was capable of drawing the bow with even the left hand, came to that spot, frightening all the car-warriors.[12] Roaring loudly like a lion, and repeatedly drawing the bowstring, and scattering showers of arrows, Pārtha careered on the field of battle like Death himself.[13] Frightened at those roars of his, thy warriors, O bull of Bharata's race, fled away in terror, like smaller animals, O king, at the sound of the lion.[14] Beholding the son of Pāndu crowned with victory and thus afflicting that host, Duryodhana, himself under the influence of terror, addressed Bhishma and said,[15]—Yon son of Pāndu, O sire, with white steeds (yoked unto his car), and having Krishna for his charioteer, consumeth all my troops like a conflagration consuming a forest![16] Behold, O son of Gangā, all my troops, slaughtered by Pāndu's son in battle, are, O foremost of warriors, flying away![17] Indeed, as the herdsman belaboureth his cattle in the forest, even so, O scorcher of foes, is my army being belaboured![18] Broken and driven away

on all sides by Dhananjaya with his shafts, the invincible Bhima also is routing that (already broken) host of mine![19] And Sātayki, and Chekitāna, and the twin sons of Mādri, and the valiant Abhimanyu,—these also are routing my troops![20] The brave Dhrishtadyumna, and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha also, are vigorously breaking and driving away my army in this fierce conflict![21] Of these troops that are being slaughtered by all those mighty car-warriors, I do not see any other refuge in the matter of their staying and fighting on the field, O Bhārata,[22] save thee, O tiger among men, that art possessed of prowess equal to that of the celestials! Therefore, receive thou those great car-warriors without delay, and be thou the refuge of these afflicted troops![*23]—Thus addressed by him, O king, thy sire Devavrata, the son of Cāntanu, reflecting for a moment and settling what he should do, said these words unto thy son, comforting him (therewith):—O Duryodhana, listen calmly to what I say, O king![24-25] O thou of great might, formerly I vowed before thee that slaying every day ten thousand high-souled Kshatriyas, I would come back from the battle. I have fulfilled that vow, O bull of Bharata's race![26-27] O thou of great might, today I will achieve even a greater feat! Today I will either sleep myself being slain, or, I will slay the Pāndavas![28] O tiger among men, I will today free myself from the debt I owe thee,—the debt, O king, arising out of the food thou gavest me,—by casting away my life at the head of the army![29]—Having said these words, O chief of the Bharatas, that invincible warrior, scattering his shafts among the Kshatriyas, attacked the Pāndava host.[30] And the Pāndavas then, O bull of Bharata's race, began to resist the son of Gangā staying in the midst of his forces and excited with wrath like a snake of virulent poison.[31] Indeed, O king, on that the tenth day of battle, Bhishma, displaying his might, slew, O son of Kuru's race, hundreds of thousands.[32] And he drained the energies of those royal and mighty car-warriors that were the foremost among the Pānchālas, like the Sun sucking up the moisture (of the earth)

* The Bomby reading of the first line of this verse is vicious.—T.

with his rays.[33] Having slain ten thousand elephants of great activity and ten thousand steeds also, O king, along with their riders,[34] and full two hundred thousands of foot-soldiers, that best of men, *viz.*, Bhishma, shone resplendent in battle like a fire without a curl of smoke.[35] And no one amongst the Pāndavas was capable of even looking at him who then resembled the burning Sun staying in the northern solstice.[36] The Pāndavas, however, though afflicted in battle by that great bowman, still rushed, accompanied by the mighty car-warriors of the Srinjayas, for slaughtering him.[37] Battling with myriads upon myriads around him, Cāntanu's son Bhishma then looked like the cliff of Meru covered on all sides with masses of clouds.[38] Thy sons, however, stood, surrounding Bhishma on all sides with a large force (for protecting him). Then commenced a fierce battle (between the Kurus and the Pāndavas.)' "[39]

SECTION CXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Arjuna then, O king, beholding the prowess of Bhishma in battle, addressed Cikhandin, saying,—Proceed towards the grandsire![1] Thou shouldst not entertain the slightest fear of Bhishma today. Even I will throw him down from his excellent car by means of my sharp shafts![2]—Thus addressed by Pārtha, Cikhandin, O bull of Bharata's race, having heard those words, rushed at the son of Ganga.[3] And so Dhrishtadyumna also, O king, and the mighty car-warrior Abhimanyu, having heard those words of Pārtha, joyfully rushed at Bhishma.[4] And old Virāta and Drupada, and Kuntibhoja also, clad in mail, rushed at Bhishma in the very sight of thy son.[5] And Nakula, and Sahadeva, and the valiant king Yudhishthira also, and all the rest of the warriors, O monarch,[6] rushed against Bhishma. As regards thy warriors, O king, that rushed, according to the measure of their might and courage, against those mighty car-warriors (of the Pāndava army) united together, listen to me as I speak (of them) unto thee![7] Like a young tiger attacking a bull, Chitrasena, O king, rushed against Chekitāna who in that battle was proceed-

ing for getting at Bhishma.[8] Kritavarman, O king, resisted Dhrishtadyumna who had reached the presence of Bhishma and who was exerting himself with great activity and vigor in that battle.[9] Somadatta's son, O monarch, with great activity, resisted Bhimasena excited with fury and desirous of slaying Bhishma.[10] Similary Vikarna, desirous of (protecting) Bhishma's life, resisted the brave Nakula who was scattering innumerable arrows around.[11] And so, O king, Kripa the son of Caradwat, excited with rage, resisted Sahadeva proceeding towards Bhishma's car.[12] And the mighty Durmukha rushed at that *Rākshasa* of cruel deeds, *viz.*, the mighty son of Bhimasena, desirous of Bhishma's slaughter.[13] Thy son Duryodhana himself resisted Sātyaki proceeding to battle. Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas, O king, resisted Abhimanyu, O monarch, who was proceeding towards Bhishma's car. And Açwatthāman, O king, excited with rage, resisted old Virāta and Drupada, those two chastisers of foes, united together. And Bharadwāja's son, exerting himself with vigor in battle, resisted the eldest Pāndava, that is to say, king Yudhishthira the just who was desirous of Bhishma's death. And that great bowman, *viz.*, Dusçāsana, in that battle, resisted Arjuna who was rushing with great speed, with Cikhandin before him, desirous of coming upon Bhishma, O monarch, and illuminating the ten quarters (with his bright weapons). And other warriors of thy army resisted in that great battle other mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas proceeding against Bhisma.[14-19] Dhrishtadyumna, that mighty car-warrior, excited with rage, rushed against Bhishma alone and addressing the troops, repeatedly said in a loud voice,[20]—There, Arjuna, that delighter of Kuru's race, is proceed, ing against Bhishma in battle! Rush ye against Gangā's son! Be not afraid! Bhishma will not be able to attack you in battle!*[21] Vāsava himself cannot venture to fight with Arjuna in battle! What, therefore, need be said of Bhishma who, though possessed of bravery in battle, is feeble and old?[22]—Hearing these words of their commander, the mighty

* Literally, "will not get or obtain you."—T.

car-warriors of the Pāndava army, filled with joy, rushed towards the car of Gangā's son.[23] Many foremost of men, however, of thy army cheerfully received and resisted those heroes coming towards Bhishma like impetuous masses of living energy.[24] That mighty car-warrior, Dusçāsana, abandoning all fears, rushed against Dhananjaya, desirous of protecting the life of Bhishma.[25] And so the heroic Pāndavas also, O king, rushed in battle against thy sons, those mighty car-warriors, stationed about Bhishma's car.[26] And then, O king, we beheld a highly wonderful incident, *viz.*, that Pārtha, having proceeded as far as Dusçāsana's car, could not advance further.[27] As the continent resists the surging sea, even so did thy son (Dusçāsana) resist the angry son of Pāndu![28] Both of them were foremost of car-warriors. Both of them, O Bhārata, were invincible. Both of them, in beauty and splendour, O Bhārata, resemble the Sun or the Moon.[29] Both of them were excited with wrath. And each of them desired to slay the other. And they encountered each other in dreadful battle like Maya and Cakra in days of old.[30] And Dusçāsana, O king, in that battle pierced the son of Pāndu with three shafts and Vāsudeva with twenty.[31] Then Arjuna, excited with rage upon beholding him of Vrishni's race thus afflicted, pierced Dusçāsana with a hundred shafts.[32] These, penetrating through the latter's armour, drank his blood in that battle. Then Dusçāsana, excited with wrath, pierced Pārtha with five shafts.[33] And once more, O chief of the Bharatas, he pierced Arjuna in the forehead with three sharp shafts. And with those shafts sticking to his forehead, the son of Pāndu looked beautiful in that battle,[34] like Meru, O king, with its tall crests. That great bowman, *viz.*, Pārtha, then, thus deeply pierced by thy son wielding the bow,[35] looked resplendent in that battle like a flowering *Kinçuka*. The son of Pāndu then, excited with rage, afflicted Dusçāsana,[36] like *Rāhu* inflamed with rage on the fifteenth day of the lighted fortnight afflicting the Moon at full. Thus afflicted by that mighty warrior, thy son, O king,[37] pierced Pārtha in that battle with many shafts whetted on stone and winged with the feathers of the *Kanka* bird. Then Pārtha,

cutting off Dusçāsana's bow and splitting his car with three shafts,[33] sped at him many fierce arrows resembling the darts of Death. Thy son, however, cut off all those shafts of Pārtha exerting himself with vigor, before they could reach him. All this seemed highly wonderful. Then thy son pierced Pārtha with many shafts of great sharpness.[39-40] Then Pārtha, excited with rage in that battle, placed on his bowstring a number of shafts whetted on stone and furnished with wings of gold, and aiming them, sped them all at his foe.[41] These, O king, penetrated the body of that high-souled warrior, like swans, O monarch, diving into a lake.[42] Thus afflicted by the high-souled son of Pāndu, thy son, avoiding Pārtha, quickly proceeded to the car of Bhishma.[43] Indeed, Bhishma then became an island unto him who was thus sinking into fathomless waters. Regaining consciousness then, thy son, O monarch,[44] endued with heroism and prowess, once more began to resist Pārtha with sharp arrows like Purandara resisting (the *Asura)* Vritra. Of huge form, thy son began to pierce Arjuna, but the latter was scarcely pained (at all this).' "[45]

SECTION CXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'The mighty bowman (Alamvusha) the son of Rishyaçringa, in that battle, resisted Sātyaki clad in mail and proceeding towards Bhishma.[1] He of Madhu's race, however, O king, excited with wrath, pierced the *Rākshasa* with nine arrows, smiling the while, O Bhārata![2] And so the *Rākshasa* also, O king, excited with wrath, afflicted him of Madhu's race, *viz.*, that bull of Cini's line, with nine arrows.[3] Then Cini's grandson, that slayer of hostile heroes, of Madhu's race, excited with rage, sped in that battle a profusion of arrows at the *Rākshasa.*[4] Then that mighty-armed *Rākhasa* pierced Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled, with many sharp arrows, and uttered a loud shout.[5] Then he of Madhu's race, endued with great energy, though deeply pierced by the *Rākshasha* in that battle, still, relying upon his prowess, laughed (at his wounds) and uttered loud roars.[6]

Then Bhagadatta, excited with rage, afflicted him of Madhu's race in that battle with many sharp arrows like a guide piercing a huge elephant with the hook.[7] Then that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, the grandson of Cini, abandoning the *Rākshasa* in battle, sped many straight shafts at the ruler of the Prāgyotishas.[8] The ruler of the Prāgyotishas then, with a broad-headed arrow of great sharpness, cut off, displaying great lightness of hand, the large bow of Sātyaki.[9] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, excited with rage and taking up another bow of greater impetus, pierced Bhagadatta in that battle with many sharp arrows.[10] That mighty bowman, *viz*, Bhagadatta, then, deeply pierced, began to lick the corners of his mouth. And he then hurled at his foe, in that dreadful battle, a tough dart, made wholly of iron, decked with gold and stones of *lapis lazuli*, and fierce as the rod of Yama himself. Sped with the might of Bhagadatta's arm and coursing towards him impetuously, Sātyaki, O king, cut that dart in twain by means of his shafts. Thereupon that dart fell down suddenly, like a great meteor shorn of its splendour.[11-13] Beholding the dart baffled, thy son (Duryodhana), O monarch, surrounded him of Madhu's race with a large number of cars.[14] And seeing that mighty car-warrior among the Vrishnis thus surrounded, Duryodhana, angrily addressing all his brothers, said,[15]—Take such steps, ye Kauravas, that Sātyaki may not in this battle escape you and this large division of cars, with life![16] If he be slain, the vast host of the Pāndavas may be regarded as slain also!—Accepting Duryodhana's words with the answer—*So be it*,—those mighty car-warriors fought with Cini's grandson in the view of Bhishma. The mighty ruler of the Kāmvojas, in that battle, resisted Abhimanyu who was proceeding against Bhishma. The son of Arjuna, having pierced the king with many straight shafts,*[17-19] once more pierced that monarch, O monarch,

* There can be no doubt that (in the second line of 19 corresponding with the first line of 19 of the Bombay text), *Arjuni* should be a nominative, and not an accusative. The Bombay reading, therefore, is vicious. The Burdwan Pundits also err in taking that word as occurring in the accusative form.—T.

with four and sixty shafts. Sudakshina, however, desirous of Bhishma's life, pierced Abhimanyu in that battle with five arrows and his charioteer with nine. And the battle that took place there, in consequence of the meeting of those two warriors, was fierce in the extreme.[20-21] That grinder of foes, Cikhandin, then rushed at the son of Gangā.* Old Virāta and Drupada, those mighty car-warriors, both excited with rage, rushed to battle with Bhishma, resisting the large host of the Kauravas as they went. That best of car-warriors, *viz*, Açwatthāman, excited with rage, encountered both those warriors.[22-23] Then commenced a battle, O Bhārata, between him and them. Virāta then, O chastiser of foes, struck, with broad-headed shafts, that mighty bowman and ornament of battle, *viz.*, Drona's son, as the latter advanced against them. And Drupada also pierced him with three sharp shafts.[24-25] Then the preceptor's son, Açwatthāman, coming upon those mighty warriors thus striking him, *viz.*, the brave Virāta and Drupada both proceeding towards Bhishma, pierced them both with many shafts. Wonderful was the conduct that we then beheld of those two old warriors,[26-27] inasmuch as they checked all those fierce shafts shot by Drona's son. Like an infuriate elephant in the forest rushing against an infuriate compeer, Kripa the son of Caradwat proceeded against Sahadeva who was advancing upon Bhishma. And Kripa, brave in battle, quickly struck that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Mādri, with seventy shafts decked with gold. The son of Mādri, however, cut Kripa's bow in twain by means of his shafts.[28-30]. And cutting off his bow, Sahadeva then pierced Kripa with nine arrows. Taking up then, in that battle, another bow capable of bearing a great strain,[31] Kripa, excited with rage and desirous of Bhishma's life, cheerfully struck Mādri's son in that battle with ten shafts.[32] And so the son of Pāndu, in return, desirous of Bhishma's death, excited with rage, struck

---

* There seems to be some omission here. This line has apparently no connection with either what precedes or what succeeds. The Bengali translations of this passage that I have examined are equally unmeaning.—T.

the wrathful Kripa in the chest (with many shafts).[33] And then occurred there a terrible and fierce battle. That scorcher of foes, *viz.*, Vikarna, desirous of saving the grandsire Bhishma, excited with rage in that battle, pierced Nakula with sixty arrows. Nakula also, deeply pierced by thy intelligent son,[34-35] pierced Vikarna in return with seven and seventy shafts. There those two tigers among men, those two chastisers of foes, those two heroes, struck each other for the sake of Bhishma, like two bovine bulls in a fold. Thy son Durmukha, endued with great prowess, proceeded, for the sake of Bhishma, against Ghatotkacha advancing to battle and slaughtering thy army as he came. Hidimvā's son, however, O king, excited with rage, struck Durmukha, that chastiser of foes, in the chest with a straight shaft. The heroic Durmukha then, shouting cheerfully, pierced Bhimasena's son on the field of battle with sixty shafts of keen points. That mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Hridikā resisted Dhrishtadyumna, that foremost of car-warriors, who was advancing to battle from desire of Bhishma's slaughter. The son of Prishata, however, having pierced Kritavarman with five shafts made wholly of iron,[36-41] once more struck him quickly in the centre of the chest with fifty shafts. And similarly, O king, Prishata's son struck Kritavarman with nine sharp and blazing shafts winged with the feathers of the *Kanka* bird. Encountering each other with great vigor, the battle that took place between them for Bhishma's sake was as fierce as that between Vritra and Vāsava. Against Bhimasena who was advancing upon the mighty Bhishma,[42-44] proceeded Bhuriçravas with great speed, saying,—*Wait, Wait!*—And the son of Somadatta struck Bhima in the centre of the chest[45] with an arrow of exceeding sharpness and golden wings in that battle. And the valiant Bhimasena, with that arrow on his chest, looked beautiful,[46] O best of kings, like the Krauncha mountain in days of old with the dart of Skanda. And those two bulls among men, enraged in battle, shot at each other shafts brightly polished by their forgers and endued with the effulgence of the Sun. Bhima, longing for Bhishma's death, fought with the mighty son of Somadatta, and the latter, desir-

ous of Bhishma's victory, fought with the former, each carefully seeking to counteract the other's feats.[47-49] Bharadwāja's son resisted Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, who, accompanied by a large force, was coming towards Bhishma.[50] Hearing the rattle of Drona's car, O king, that resembled the roar of the clouds, the Prabhadrakas, O sire, began to tremble.[51] That large force , O king, of Pāndu's son, resisted by Drona in battle, could not, exerting vigorously, advance even one step.[52] Thy son Chitrasena, O king, resisted Chekitāna of wrathful visage who was exerting vigorously for coming upon Bhishma.[53] Possessed of great prowess and great dexterity of hand, that mighty car-warrior, for the sake of Bhishma, battled with Chekitāna, O Bhārata, according to the utmost of his power.[54] And Chekitāna also fought with Chitrasena to the utmost of his power. And the battle that took place there in consequence of the meeting of those two warriors, was exceedingly fierce.[55] As regards Arjuna, although he was resisted by all means, O Bhārata, he still compelled thy son to turn back and then crushed thy troops.[56] Dusçāsana, however, to the utmost stretch of his power, began to resist Pārtha, wishing, O Bhārata, to protect Bhishma.[57] The army of thy son, O Bhārata, undergoing such slaughter, began to be agitated here and there by many foremost car-warriors (of the Pāndavas).' "[58]

SECTION CXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'The heroic Drona, that great bowman endued with the prowess of an infuriate elephant, that foremost of men possessed of great might, taking up his large bow which was capable of checking even an infuriate elephant, and shaking it (in his hands), was engaged in afflicting the Pāndava ranks, having penetrated into their midst. That valiant warrior acquainted with every omen, beholding the omens on all sides, addressed his son who also was scorching the hostile ranks, and said these words:[1-3]—This is that day, O son, on which the mighty Pārtha, desirous of slaying Bhishma in battle, will exert himself to the best of his might![4] My

arrows are coming out (of the quiver, of their own accord). My bow seems to yawn. My weapons seem unwilling to obey my behests, and my heart also is cheerless.[5] Animals and birds are uttering fearful and incessant cries. Vultures seem to disappear beneath the feet of the Bharata troops.[6] The Sun himself seems to have lost his hue. The quarters are all ablaze. The Earth seems to shriek, inspire fear, and tremble everywere.[7] *Kankas*, and vultures, and cranes are frequently crying. Jackalls are uttering inauspicious and fierce yells foreboding great danger.[8] Large meteors seem to fall from the centre of the solar disc. The constellation called *Parigha*, with a trunkless form, appeareth around the Sun.[9] The solar and the lunar discs have become awful, foreboding great danger to Kshatriyas about the mangling of their bodies.[10] The idols of the Kuru king in his temples tremble and laugh and dance and weep.[11] The planets wheel about, keeping the inauspicious Sun to their left. The illustrious Moon riseth with his horns downward.[12] The bodies of the kings belonging to the Kuru army all seem to be pale, and though clad in mail, are shorn of splendour.[13] The loud blare of *Pānchajannya* and the twang of *Gāndiva* are heard on all sides of both the armies.[14] Without doubt, Arjuna, relying upon his great weapons and avoiding other warriors, will advance upon the grandsire.[15] The pores of my body are contracting, and my heart also is depressed, thinking, O mighty-armed one, of the encounter between Bhishma and Arjuna.[16] Keeping on his fore the Pānchāla prince of sinful soul and conversant with deceit, Pārtha is proceeding towards Bhishma for battle.[17] Bhishma said before that he would not slay Cikhandin. By the Creator had that one been made a female, though through chance he subsequently became a male person.[18] That mighty son of Yajnasena is also an inauspicious omen (by himself). The son of the Ocean-going (Gangā) will not strike that person of inauspicious self.[19] Thinking of this, *viz.*, that Arjuna, excited with wrath, is about to fall upon the aged Kuru grandsire, my heart is exceedingly depressed.[20] The wrath of Yudhishthira, an encounter between Bhishma and Arjuna in battle, and an endeavour like this (of the shooting

of weapons) by myself,—these (trhee) are certainly fraught with great harm to creatures.[21] Arjuna is endued with great energy; he is powerful, brave, accomplished in weapons, and possessed of valor that is very active. Capable of shooting his arrows to a great distance and shooting them with force, he is, besides, acquainted with omens.[22] Endued with great might and intelligence, and above fatigue, that foremost of warriors is incapable of defeat by the very gods with Vāsava at their head.[23] The son of Pāndu possesses terrible weapons, and is ever victorious in battle. Avoiding his path, go thou to battle (for Bhishma's victory), O thou of rigid vows![*24] Today in this dreadful battle thou wilt behold a great carnage! The beautiful and costly coats of mail, decked with gold, of brave warriors will be pierced with straight shafts. And the tops of standdards, and bearded javelins, and bows, and bright lances of sharp points, and darts bright with gold, and the standards on the backs of elephants, will all be cut off by Kiritin in wrath.[25-27] O son, this is not the time when dependants should take care of their lives. Go to battle, keeping heaven before thee, and for the sake of fame and victory![28] There, the ape-bannered (Arjuna) crosseth on his car the river of battle that is awful and incapable of being easily crossed, and hath cars, elephants, and steeds, for its eddies?[29] Regard for Brāhmnas, self-restraint, liberality, asceticism, and noble conduct, are seen in Yudhishthira alone who hath for his brothers Dhananjaya,[30] and the mighty Bhimasena, and the twin sons of Mādri by Pāndu, and who hath Vāsudeva of the Vrishni race for his protector.[31] The wrath, born of grief, of that Yudhishthira whose body hath been purified by the flames of penance, directed to the wicked-souled son of Dhritarāshtra, is consuming this Bharata host![32] There cometh Pārtha, having Vāsudeva for his protector, checking (as he cometh) this entire Dhārtarāshtra army![33] Behold, Kiritin is agitating this host like a large whale agitating the vast sea of crested waves![34] Hark, cries of distress and woe are heard in the van of the

---

* I think *Yatavrata* had better be read *Yatavratam*. It would then mean Bhishma.—.

army! Go, encounter the heir of the Pānchāla king! As for myself, I will proceed against Yudhishthira.[35] The heart of king Yudhishthira's very strong array is difficult of access. Inaccessible as the interior of the sea, it is guarded on all sides by *Atirathas*.[36] Sātyaki, and Abhimanyu and Dhrishtadyumna, and Vrikodara, and the twins, even these are protecting that ruler of men, *viz.*, king Yudhishthira![37] Dark as the younger brother of Indra, and risen like a tall *Çāla*, behold Abhimanyu advancing at the head of the (Pāndava) host, like a second Phālguna![38] Take up thy mighty weapons, and with thy large bow in hand proceed against the royal son of Prishata (*viz.*, Cikhandin), and against Vrikodara![39] Who is there that doth not wish his dear son to live for many years? Keeping the duties of a Kshatriya, however, before me, I am engaging thee (to this task)![40] So, Bhishma also, in this battle, is consuming the mighty host of the Pāndavas! O son, he is, in battle, equal to Yama or Varuna himself!—' "[41]

SECTION CXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing these words of the high-souled Drona, Bhagadatta and Kripa and Calya and Kritavarman,[1] and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, and Jayadratha the ruler of the Sindhus, and Chitrasena and Vikarna and Durmarshana and others,[2] these ten warriors of thy army, supported by a large host consisting of many nationalities, fought with Bhimasena, desirous of winning high renown in that battle for Bhishma's sake. And Calya struck Bhima with nine arrows,[3-4] and Kritavarman struck him with three, and Kripa with nine. And Chitrasena and Vikarna and Bhagadatta, O sire,[5] each struck him with ten arrows. And the ruler of the Sindhus struck him with three,[6] and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti each struck him with five arrows. And Duryodhana struck that son of Pāndu with twenty sharp arrows.[7] Bhimasena, O king, pierced in return every one of those kings, those foremost of men in the world, those mighty car-warriors of the Dhārtarāshtra army, one after another.[8] The brave Pāndava, that slayer of hostile heroes, pierced Calya with seven arrows, and Krita-

varman with eight.[9] And he cut off Kripa's bow with arrow fixed thereon, O Bhārata, in the middle, dividing it in twain. And after thus cutting off his bow, he pierced Kripa once more with seven arrows.[10] And he struck Vinda and Anuvinda with three arrows each. And he pierced Durmarshana with twenty arrows, and Chitrasena with five,[11] and Vikarna with ten, and Jayadratha with five. And once more striking the ruler of the Sindhus with three arrows, he uttered a loud shout, filled with joy.[12] Then Gautama, that foremost of car-warriors, taking up another bow, angrily pierced Bhima with ten sharp shafts.[13] Pierced with those ten shafts like a huge elephant with the hook, the valiant Bhimasena, O king, filled with wrath,[14] struck Gautama in that battle with many shafts. Possessed of the splendour of Yama himself as he appears at the end of the *Yuga*, Bhimasena then, with three arrows, despatched unto Death's domain the steeds of the ruler of the Sindhus as also his charioteer. Thereupon that mighty car-warrior, (*viz.*, Jayadratha), quickly jumping down from that car whose steeds had been slain,[15-16] shot in that battle many sharp-pointed shafts at Bhimaṣena. Then, O sire, with a couple of broad-headed arrows, he cut off, O chief of the Bharatas, the bow of the high-souled king of the Sindhus in the middle. His bow cut off, himself deprived of car, his steeds and charioteer slain,[17-18] Jayadratha then, O king, quickly mounted on the car of Chitrasena. Indeed, the son of Pāndu achieved in that battle a most wonderful feat, for piercing all those mighty car-warriors and holding them in check, he deprived, O sire, the ruler of the Sindhus of his car in the very sight of all the army.[19-20] Calya could not brook to see the prowess that Bhimasena displayed, for saying unto him,—*Wait, Wait,*—he aimed some sharp arrows well-polished by the forger's hands, and pierced Bhima therewith in that battle. And Kripa and Kritavarman and the valiant Bhagadatta,[21-22] and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, and Chitrasena, and Durmarshana, and Vikarna, and the valiant ruler of the Sindhus also, in that battle,[23]—These chastisers of foes,—All quickly pierced Bhima for the sake of Calya. Bhima then pierced each of them in

return with five arrows.[24] And he pierced Calya then with seventy arrows and once more with ten. And Calya then pierced him with nine arrows and once more with five.[25] And he pierced Bhimasena's charioteer also, deep in his vitals, with a broad-headed arrow. The valiant Bhimasena then, beholding his charioteer Viçoka deeply pierced,[26] sped three arrows at the arms and chest of the ruler of the Madras. And as regards the other great bowmen, he pierced each of them in that battle with three straight arrows, and then uttered a loud roar like that of a lion. Each of those great bowmen then, exerting himself with vigor, deeply pierced that son of Pāndu skilled in battle, with three arrows in his vitals. That mighty bowman, *viz.*, Bhimasena, though pierced deeply, trembled not,[27-29] (but stood still) like a mountain drenched with torrents of rain by showering clouds. Then that mighty car-warrior of the Pāndavas, filled with wrath,[30] that celebrated hero, deeply pierced the ruler of the Madras with three arrows. And he pierced the ruler of the Prāgyotishas, O king, in that battle, with a hundred arrows.[31] Of great renown, he then pierced Kripa with many arrows, and then, displaying great dexterity, he cut off with a keen-edged shaft the bow, with arrow fixed thereon, of the high-souled Kritavarman. Then Kritavarman, that scorcher of foes, taking up another bow, struck Vrikodara between his eyebrows with a long arrow. Bhima, however, in that battle, having pierced Calya with nine arrows made wholly of iron, and Bhagadatta with three, and Kritavarman with eight, pierced each of the others with Gautama at their head, with two arrows.[32-34] Those warriors also, in return, pierced him, O king, with sharp-pointed shafts. Though thus afflicted by those mighty car-warriors with all kinds of weapons,[35] yet, regarding them all as straw, he coursed on the field without any anxiety. Those foremost of car-warriors (on the other hand), with great coolness, sped at Bhima sharp-pointed arrows by hundreds and thousands. The heroic and mighty Bhagadatta then, in that battle, hurled at him a dart of fierce impetuosity furnished with a golden staff. And the Sindhu king, of strong arms, hurled at him a lance and an axe.[36-38] And Kripa, O king, hurled at him a

Çataghni, and Calya an arrow. And the other great bowmen each sped at him five arrows with great force. The son of the Wind-god then cut off, with a sharp shaft, that lance in twain.[39-40] And he cut off that axe also with three shafts as if it were a sessame stalk. And with five shafts winged with the feathers of the *Kanka* bird, he cut that *Çataghni* into fragments.[41] That mighty car-warior then, having cut off the arrow sped by the ruler of the Madras, forcibly cut off the dart sped by Bhagadatta in that battle.[42] As regards the other fierce shafts, Bhimasena, proud of his feats in battle, cut them each into three fragments by means of his own straight shafts.[43] And he struck each of those great bowmen also with three shafts. Then Dhananjaya, during the progress of that dreadful battle, beholding the mighty car-warrior Bhima striking the foe and battling (against many) with his arrows, came thither on his car.[44-45] Then those bulls among men, of thy army, beholding those two high-souled sons of Pāndu together, gave up all hopes of victory.[46] Then Arjuna, desirous of slaying Bhishma, placing Cikhandin before him, approached Bhima who had been fighting with those great car-warriors and fell upon those fierce combatants, numbering ten, of thy army, O Bhārata. Then Vibhatsu, desirous of doing what was agreeable to Bhima, pierced all those warriors, O king, who had been battling with Bhima. Then king Duryodhana urged Suçarman,[47-49] for the destruction of both Arjuna and Bhimasena, saying,—O Suçarman, go thou quickly, supported by a large force![50] Slay those two sons of Pāndu, *viz.*, Dhananjaya and Vrikodara!—Hearing these words of his, the Trigarta king who ruled the country called Prasthala,[51] quickly rushed in battle upon those two bowmen, *viz.*, Bhima and Dhananjaya, and surrounded them both by many thousands of cars.[52] Then commenced a fierce battle between Arjuna and the foe.' "[53]

SECTION CXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Arjuna covered with his straight shafts, the mighty car-warrior Calya who was struggling vigorously

in battle.[1] And he pierced Suçarman and Kripa with three arrows each. And in that battle the *Atiratha* Arjuna, afflicting thy host, struck the ruler of the Prāgyotishas, and Jayadratha the king of the Sindhus, and Chitrasena, and Vikarna, and Kritavarman, and Durmarshana, O monarch, and those two mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the princes of Avanti, each with three arrows winged with the feathers of the *Kanka* and the peacock.[2-4] Jayadratha, staying on the car of Chitrasena, pierced Pārtha (in return), O Bhārata, and then, without los of time, Bhima also, with his shafts.[5] And Calya, and that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Kripa, both pierced Jishnu, O monarch, with diverse arrows capable of penetrating into the very vitals.[6] Thy sons headed by Chitrasena, O king, each quickly pierced Arjuna and Bhimasena in that battle, O sire, with five sharp shafts. Those two foremost of car-warriors however, *viz.*, those sons of Kunti, those bulls of Bharata's race,[7-8] began in that battle to afflict the mighty host of the Trigartas. Suçarman (in return) pierced Pārtha with nine swift arrows,[9] and uttered a loud shout frightening the vast host (of the Pāndavas). And other heroic car-warriors pierced Bhimasena and Dhananjaya with many straight-going arrows of keen points and golden wings. Amid these car-warriors, however, those two bulls of Bharata's race, *viz.*, the two sons of Kunti,[10-11] those great car-warriors, looked exceedingly beautiful. And they seemed to sport amid them like two furious lions amid a herd of kine.[12] Cutting off in various ways the bows and arrows of many brave warriors in that battle, those two heroes felled the heads of combatants by hundreds upon hundreds.[13] Innumerable cars were broken, and steeds by hundreds were slain, and many elephants, along with their riders, were laid low on the field in that dreadful battle.[14] And car-warriors and horsemen and elephant-riders in large numbers, O king, deprived of life, were seen moving in convulsions all over the field.[15] And the earth was covered with slain elephants and foot-soldiers in large bands, and steeds deprived of life, and cars broken in diverse ways.[16] And the prowess we beheld there of Pārtha was highly wonderful, inasmuch as holding in check all those heroes, that mighty warrior

caused a great slaughter.[17] Kripa, and Kritavaman, and Jayadratha the ruler of the Sindhus, and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti,—these did not forsake the battle.[18] Then that great bowman Bhima, and that mighty car-warrior Arjuna, began in that battle to rout the fierce host of the Kauravas.[19] The kings (in that army) quickly sped at Dhananjaya's car myriads upon myriads and millions upon millions of arrows furnished with peacock feathers.[20] Pārtha, however, checking those arrows by means of his own arrowy showers, began to send those mighty car-warriors to Yama's abode.[21] The great car-warrior Calya then, excited with wrath and as if sporting in that battle, struck Pārtha in the chest with some straight shafts of broad heads.[22] Pārtha then, cutting off by means of five shafts Calya's bow and leathern fence, pierced the latter deeply in the very vitals with many arrows of keen points.[23] Taking up another bow capable of bearing a great strain, the ruler of the Madras then furiously attacked Jishnu[24] with three arrows, O king, and Vāsudeva with five. And he struck Bhimasena in the arms and the chest with nine arrows.[25] Then Drona, O king, and that mighty car warrior, *viz.*, the ruler of the Magadhas, commanded by Duryodhana, both came to that spot[26] where those two mighthy car-warriors, *viz.*, Pārtha and Bhimasena, were slaughtering the mighty host of the Kuru king.[27] Jayatsena (the king of the Magadhas) then, O bull of Bharata's race, pierced Bhima, that wielder of awful weapons in battle, with eight sharp arrows.[28] Bhima, however, pierced him (in return) with ten arrows, and once more with five. And with another broad-headed shaft he felled Jayatsena's charioteer from his niche in the car.[29] The steeds (of his car), no longer restrained, ran wildly in all directions and thus car-ried away the ruler of the Magadhas (from battle) in the sight of all the troops.[30] Meanwhile Drona, noticing an opening, pierced Bhimasena, O bull of Bharata's race, with eight keen shafts furnished with heads shaped after the frog's mouth.[31] Bhima, however, ever delighting in battle, pierced the preceptor, who was worthy of paternal reverence, with five broad-headed arrows, and then, O Bhārata, with sixty.[32] Arjuna, again, piercing Suçarman with a large number

of arrows made (wholly) of iron, destroyed his troops like the tempest destroying mighty masses of clouds.[33] Then Bhishma, and the king (*viz.*, Duryodhana), and Vrihadvala the ruler of the Koçalas, excited with rage, advanced upon Bhimasena and Dhananjaya.[34] At this, the heroic warriors of the Pāndava army, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, rushed in battle against Bhishma who was advancing like Death himself with wide-open mouth.[35] Cikhandin also, sighting the grandsire of the Bharatas, was filled with joy and rushed at him, abandoning all fear of that mighty car-warrior.[36] Then all the Pārthas with Yudhishthira at their head, placing Cikhandin in the van, and uniting with the Srinjayas, fought with Bhishma in battle.[37] And similarly all the warriors of thy army, placing Bhishma of regulated vows in their van, fought in battle with all the Pārthas headed by Cikhandin.[38] The battle then that commenced there between the Kauravas and the sons of Pāndu for the sake of Bhishma's victory or victory over Bhishma, was exceedingly terrible.[39] Indeed, in that game of battle, played for the sake of victory or the reverse, Bhishma, O monarch, became the stake on which the victory of thy army depended.[40] Then Dhrishtadyumna, O king, commanded all the troops, saying,—Rush against the son of Gangā! Do not fear, ye best of car-warriors![41]—Hearing those words of their generalissimo, the army of the Pāndavas quickly advanced against Bhishma, ready to lay down their lives in that dreadful battle.[42] Bhishma then, that foremost of car-warriors, received that large host rushing towards him, like the continent receiving the surging sea.'"[43]

SECTION CXVI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How, O Sanjaya, did Cāntanu's son Bhishma of mighty energy fight on that the tenth day of battle, with the Pandavas and the Srinjayas ?[1] How also did the Kurus resist the Pandavas in battle ? Describe to me the great battle fought by Bhishma that ornament of battle !'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—"I will presently describe to thee, O Bhārata, how the Kuravas fought with the Pāndavas, and how

that battle took place.[3] Day after day many mighty car-warriors of thy army, excited with wrath, were despatched to the other world by the diadem-decked (Arjuna) with his great weapons.[4] The ever-victorious Kuru warrior Bhishma also, agreeably to his vow, always caused a great carnage among the Pārtha army.[5] O chastiser of foes, beholding Bhishma fighting at the head of the Kurus, and Arjuna also fighting at the head of the Pānchālas, we could not say truly on which side the victory would declare itself.[6] On that the tenth day of battle, when Bhishma and Arjuṇa encountered each other, awful was the carnage that took place.[7] On that day, O scorcher of foes, Cāntanu's son Bhishma, conversant with high and mighty weapons, repeatedly slew thousands upon thousands of warriors.[8] Many, O Bhārata, whose names and families were not known, but who, endued with great bravery, were unretreating from battle, were on that day slain by Bhishma.[9] Scorching the Pāndava army for ten days, Bhishma of virtuous soul gave up all desire of protecting his life.[10] Wishing his own slaughter presently at the head of his troops,—*No more shall I slay large numbers of foremost of warriors!*—thought thy mighty-armed sire Devavrata. And seeing Yudhishthira near him, O king, he addressed him, saying,[12]—O Yudhishthira, O thou of great wisdom, O thou that art acquainted with every branch of learning, listen to these righteous and heaven-leading words, O sire, that I say![13] O Bhārata, I no longer desire to protect, O sire, this body of mine! I have passed much time in slaying large numbers of men in battle![14] If thou wishest to do what is agreeable to me, strive to slay me, placing Pārtha with the Pānchālas and the Srinjayas at thy van![15]—Ascertaining this to be his intention, king Yudhishthira of true sight proceeded to battle with the Srinjayas (for his support).[16] Then Dhrishtadyumna, O king, and Pāndu's son Yudhishthira, having heard those words of Bhishma, urged their array on.[17] And Yudhishthira said,—Advance! Fight! Vanquish Bhishma in battle! Ye all will be protected by that conqueror of foes, *viz.*, Jishnu of unbaffled aim! And this great bowman, this generalissimo (of our forces), *viz.*, the son of Prishata, as also Bhima, will assuredly protect you![18-19] Ye Srinjayas, entertain no fear today of

Bhishma in battle! Without doubt, we will vanquish Bhishma today, placing Cikhandin in our van![20]—Having, on the tenth day of battle, made such a vow, the Pāndavas, resolved to (conquer or) go to heaven, advanced, blinded by rage,[21] with Cikhandin and Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu to the fore. And they made the most vigorous efforts for the overthrow of Bhishma.[22] Then diverse kings, of great might, urged by thy son, and accompanied by Drona and his son and a large force,[23] and the mighty Dusçāsana at the head of all his uterine brothers, proceeded towards Bhishma staying in the midst of that battle.[24] Then those brave warriors of thy army, placing Bhishma of high vows in their van, battled with the Pārthas headed by Cikhandin.[25] Supported by the Chedis and the Pānchālas, the ape-bannered (Arjuna), placing Cikhandin ahead, proceeded towards Bhishma the son of Cāntanu.[26] And the grandson of Cini battled with Drona's son, and Dhrishtaketu with the descendant of Puru, and Yudhāmanyu with thy son Duryodhana at the head of his followers.*[27] And Virāta, at the head of his forces, encountered Jayadratha supported by his own troops. And Vārdhakshatra's heir, O chastiser of foes, encountered thy son Chitrasena armed with excellent bow and arrows.†[28] And Yudhishthira proceeded against the mighty bowman Calya at the head of his troops. And Bhimasena, well protected, proceeded against the elephant-division (of the Kaurava army).[29] And Dhrishtadyumna, the prince of Pānchāla, excited with fury and accompanied by his brothers, proceeded against Drona, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, invincible, and irresistible.[30] That chastiser of foes, *viz.*, prince Vrihadvala, bearing on his standard the device of the lion, proceeded against Subhadrā's

* For *Yudhāmanyu* the Bombay text reads *Abhimanyu*.—T.

* Both the Bengal and the Bombay texts are here at fault. I follow the text as settled by the Burdwan Pundits. If the emendation of the Burdwan Pundits be rejected, 28 would read as, "Virata, at the head of his forces, encountered Jayadratha supported by his own troops, and also Vārdhaskhemi's heir, O chastiser of foes!" This would be evidently wrong.—T.

son whose standard bore the device of the *Karnikāra* flower.[31] Thy sons, accompanied by many kings, proceeded against Cikhandin and Dhananjaya the son of Prithā, from desire of slaughtering both of them.[32] When the combatants of both armies rushed against each other with awful prowess, the earth shook (under their tread).[33] Beholding Cāntanu's son in battle, the divisions of thy army and of the foe, O Bhārata, became mingled with one another.[34] Tremendous was the din, O Bhārata, that arose there of those warriors burning with rage and rushing against each other. And it was heard on all sides, O king.[35] With the blare of conchs and the leonine shouts of the soldiers, the uproar became awful.[36] The splendour, equal to that of either the Sun or the Moon, of bracelets and diadems of all the heroic kings, became dimmed.[37] And the dust that rose looked like a cloud, the flash of bright weapons constituting its lightning. And the twang of bows, the whizz of arrows, the blare of conchs, the loud beat of drums, and the rattle of cars, of both the armies, constituted the fierce roar of those clouds.[38-39] And the welkin, over the field of battle, in consequence of the bearded darts, the javelins, the swords and showers of arrows of both armies, was darkened.[40] And car-warriors, and horsemen felled horsemen, in that dreadful battle. And elephants killed elephants, and foot-soldiers slew foot-soldiers.[41] And the battle that took place there for Bhishma's sake, between the Kurus and the Pāndavas, O tiger among men, was fierce in the extreme, like that between two hawks for a piece of flesh.[42] Engaged in battle, that encounter between those combatants desirous of slaughtering and vanquishing one another, was extremely dreadful !"[43]

SECTION CXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Abhimanyu, O king, displaying his prowess for the sake of Bhishma, fought with thy son who was supported by a large force.[1] Then Duryodhana, excited with wrath, struck Abhimanyu in the chest with nine straight arrows, and once more with three.[2] Then, in that battle,

Arjuna's son, inflamed with wrath, hurled at Duryodhana's car a terrible dart resembling the sister of Death herself.[3] Thy son, however, that mighty car-warrior, O king, with a broad-headed arrow of great sharpness, cut off in twain that dart of terrible force coursing towards him with great spead.[4] Beholding that dart of his drop down on the earth, Arjuna's wrathful son pierced Duryodhana with three shafts in his arms and chest.[5] And once more, O chief of the Bharatas, that mighty car-warrior of Bharata's race struck the Kuru king with ten fierce shafts in the centre of his chest.[6] And the battle, O Bhārata, that took place between those two heroes, *viz.*, Subhadrā's son and that bull of Kuru's race, the former fighting for compassing Bhishma's death and the latter for Arjuna's defeat, was fierce and interesting to behold, and gratifying to the senses, and was applauded by all the kings.[7-8] That bull among Brāhmanas and chastiser of foes, *viz.*, the son of Drona, excited with wrath in that battle, forcibly struck Sātyaki in the chest with a fierce arrow.[9] The grandson of Cini also, that hero of immeasurable soul, struck the preceptor's son in every vital limb with nine shafts winged with the feathers of the *Kanka* bird.[10] Açwatthāman then, in that battle, struck Sātyaki (in return) with nine shafts, and once more, quickly, with thirty, in his arms and chest.[11] Then that great bowman of the Sātwata race, possessed of great fame, deeply pierced by Drona's son, pierced the latter (in return) with three arrows.[12] The mighty car-warrior Paurava, covering Dhrishtaketu in that battle with his shafts, mangled that great bowman exceedingly.[13] The mighty car-warrior Dhrishtaketu, endued with great strength, quickly pierced the former with thirty arrows.[14] Then the mighty car-warrior Paurava cut off Dhrishtaketu's bow, and uttering a loud shout, pierced him with whetted shafts.[15] Dhrishtaketu then, taking up another bow, pierced Paurava, O king, with three and seventy shafts of great sharpness.[16] Those two great bowmen and mighty car-warriors, both of gigantic stature, pierced each other with showers of arrows.[17] Each succeeded in cutting off the other's bow, and each slew the other's steeds. And both of them, thus deprived of their cars, then encountered each

other in a battle with swords.[18] And each took up a beautiful shield made of bull's hide and decked with a hundred moons and graced with a hundred stars. And each of them also took up a polished sword of brilliant lustre. And thus equipt, they rushed, O king, at each other, like two lions in the deep forest, both seeking the companionship of the same lioness in her season.[19-20] They wheeled in beautiful circles, advanced and retreated, and displayed other movements, seeeking to strike each other.[21] Then Paurava, excited with wrath, addressed Dhrishtaketu, saying,—*Wait, Wait,*—and struck him on the frontal bone with that large scimitar of his.[22] The king of the Chedis also, in that battle, struck Paurava, that bull among men, on his shoulder-joint, with his large scimitar of sharp edge.[23] Those two repressers of foes, thus encountering each other in dreadfull battle and thus striking each other, O king, both fell down on the field.[24] Then thy son Jayatsena, taking Paurava up on his car, removed him from the field of battle on that vehicle.[25] And as regards Dhrishtaketu, the valiant and heroic Sahadeva, the son of Mādri, possessed of great prowess, bore him away from the field.[26]

" 'Chitrasena, having pierced Suçarman with many arrows made wholly of iron, once more pierced him with sixty arrows, and once more with nine.[27] Suçarman, however, excited with wrath in battle, pierced thy son, O king, with hundreds of arrows.[28] Chitrasena then, O monarch, excited with rage, pierced his adversary with thirty straight shafts. Suçarman, however, pierced Chitrasena again in return.*[29]

" 'In that battle for the destruction of Bhishma, Subhadrā's son, enhancing his fame and honor, fought with prince Vrihadvala,[30] putting forth his prowess for aiding (his sire) Pārtha then proceeding towards Bhishma's front. The ruler of the Koçalas, having pierced the son of Arjuna with five shafts made of iron,[31] once more pierced him with twenty straight shafts. Then the son of Subhadrā pierced the ruler of the Koçalas with eight shafts made wholly of iron.[32] He suc-

* This Suçarman was not the king of the Trigartas but another person who was on the Pāndava side.—T.

ceeded not, however, in making the ruler of the Koçalas to tremble, and, therefore, he once more pierced him with many arrows. And Phālguna's son then cut off Vrihadvala's bow,[33] and struck him again with thirty arrows winged with the feathers of the *Kanka* bird. Prince Vrihadvala then, taking up another bow,[34] angrily pierced the son of Phālguna in that battle with many arrows. Verily, O scorcher of foes, the battle, for Bhishma's sake, that took place between them, both excited with rage and both conversant with every mode of fight, was like the encounter of Vali and Vāsava in days of old on the occasion of the battle between the gods and the *Asuras*.[35-36]

"'Bhimasena, fighting against the elephant-division, looked highly resplendent like Cakra armed with the thunder after splitting large mountains.*[37] Indeed, elephants, huge as hills, slaughtered by Bhimasena in battle, fell down in numbers on the field, filling the earth with their shrieks.[38] Resembling massive heaps of antimony, and of mountain-like proportions, those elephants with frontal globes split open, lying prostrate on the earth, seemed like mountains strewn over the earth's surface.[39] The mighty bowman Yudhishthira, protected by a large force, afflicted the ruler of the Madras, encountering him in that dreadful battle.[40] The ruler of the Madras, in return, displaying his prowess for the sake of Bhishma, afflicted the son of Dharma, that mighty car-warrior, in battle.[41] The king of the Sindhus, having pierced Virāta with nine straight arrows of keen points, once more struck him with thirty.[42] Virāta, however, O king, that commander of a large division, struck Jayadratha in the centre of his chest with thirty shafts of keen points.[43] The ruler of the Matsyas and the ruler of the Sindhus, both armed with beautiful bows and beautiful scimitars, both decked with handsome coats of mail and weapons and standards, and both of beautiful forms, looked resplendent in that battle.[44]

"'Drona, encountering Dhrishtadyumna the prince of the

---

* Both the Bengal and the Bombay texts have *Rathānika*. The correct reading, as settled by the Burdwan Pundits, is *Gajānika*.—T.

Pānchālas in dreadful battle, fought fiercely with his straight shafts.[45] Then Drona, O king, having cut off the large bow of Prishata's son, pierced him deeply with fifty arrows.[46] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Prishata, taking up another bow, sped at Drona who was contending with him, many arrows.[47] The mighty car-warrior Drona, however, cut off all those arrows, striking them with his own. And then Drona sped at Drupada's son five fierce shafts.[48] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Prishata, excited with rage, hurled at Drona in that battle a mace resembling the rod of Death himself.[49] Drona, however, with fifty arrows checked that mace decked with gold as it coursed impetuously towards him.[50] Thereupon that mace, cut into fragments, O king, by those shafts shot from Drona's bow, fell down on the earth.[51] Then that scorcher of foes, *viz.*, the son of Prishata, beholding his mace baffled, hurled at Drona an excellent dart made wholly of iron.[52] Drona, however, O Bhārata, cut that dart with nine shafts in that battle, and then afflicted that great bowman, *viz.*, the son of Prishata.[53] Thus took place, O king, that fierce and awful battle between Drona and the son of Prishata, for the sake of Bhishma.[54]

"'Arjuna, getting at the son of Gangā, afflicted him with many arrows of keen points, and rushed at him like an infuriate elephant in the forest upon another.[55] King Bhagadatta, however, of great prowess then rushed at Arjuna, and checked his course in battle with showers of arrows.[56] Arjuna then, in that dreadful battle, pierced Bhagadatta's elephant coming towards him, with many polished arrows of iron, that were all bright as silver and furnished with keen points.[57] The son of Kunti, meanwhile, O king, urged Cikhandin, saying,—*Proceed, proceed, towards Bhishma, and slay him!*[58]—Then, O elder brother of Pāndu, the ruler of the Prāgyotishas, abandoning that son of Pāndu, quickly proceeded, O king, against the car of Drupada.[59] Then Arjuna, O monarch, speedily proceeded towards Bhishma, placing Cikhandin ahead. And then there took place a fierce battle,[60] for all the brave combatants of thy army rushed with great vigor against Arjuna, uttering loud shouts. And all this

seemed extremely wonderful.[61] Like the wind dispersing in summer masses of clouds in the welkin, Arjuna dispersed, O king, all those diverse divisions of thy sons.[62] Cikhandin, however, without any anxiety, coming up at the grandsire of the Bharatas, quickly pierced him with a great many arrows.[63] As regards Bhishma, his car was then his fire-chamber. His bow was the flame of that fire. And swords and darts and maces constituted the fuel of that fire. And the showers of arrows he shot were the blazing sparks of that fire with which he was then consuming Kshatriyas in that battle.[64] As a raging conflagration with constant supply of fuel, wandereth amid masses of dry grass when aided by the wind, so did Bhishma blaze up with his flames, scattering his celestial weapons.[65] And the Kuru hero slew the Somakas that followed Pārtha in that battle. Indeed, that mighty car-warrior checked also the other forces of Arjuna,[66] by means of his straight and whetted shafts furnished with wings of gold. Filling in that dreadful battle a ll the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, with his leonine shouts, Bhishma[67] felled many car-warriors, O king, (from their cars) and many steeds along with their riders. And he caused large bodies of cars to look like forests of palmyras shorn of their leafy heads.[68] That foremost of all wielders of weapons, in that battle, deprived cars and steeds and elephants, of their riders.[69] Hearing the twang of his bow and the slap of his palms, both resembling the roll of thunder, the troops, O king, trembled all over the field.[70] The shafts, O chief of men, of thy sire were never bootless as they fell. Indeed, shot from Bhishma's bow they never fell only touching the bodies of the foe (but pierced them through in every case).[71] We saw crowds of cars, O king, deprived of riders, but unto which were yoked fleet steeds, dragged on all sides with the speed of the wind.[72] Full fourteen thousand great car-warriors of noble parentage, prepared to lay down their lives, unretreating, and brave, and possessed of standards decked with gold, belonging to the Chedis, the Kāçis, and the Karushas, approaching Bhishma, that hero who resembled the Destroyer himself with wide-open mouth, were despatched to the other world, with their

steeds, cars and elephants. There was not, O king, a single great car-warrior among the Somakas, who, having approached Bhishma in that battle, returned with life from that engagement. Beholding Bhishma's prowess, people regarded all those warriors (who approached him) as already despatched to the abode of the King of the Dead. Indeed, no car-warrior ventured to approach Bhishma in battle,[73-77] except the heroic Arjuna having white steeds (yoked unto his car) and owning Krishna for his charioteer, and Cikhandin, the prince of Pānchāla, of immeasurable energy.' "[78]

SECTION CXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Cikhandin, O bull among men, approaching Bhishma in battle, struck him in the centre of the chest with ten broad-headed arrows.[1] The son of Gangā, however, O Bhārata, only looked at Cikhandin with eyes blazing with wrath and as if consuming the Pānchāla prince with that look.[2] Remembering his femininity, O king, Bhishma, in the very sight of all, struck him not. Cikhandin, however, understood it not.[3] Then Arjuna, O monarch, addressed Cikhandin, saying,—Rush quickly and slay the grandsire![4] What needst thou say, O hero? Slay the mighty car-warrior Bhishma! I do not see any other warrior in Yudhishthira's army[5] who is competent to fight with Bhishma in battle, save thee, O tiger among men! I say this truly![6]—Thus addressed by Pārtha, Cikhandin, O bull of Bharata's race, quickly covered the grandsire with diverse kinds of weapons.[7] Disregarding those shafts, thy sire Devavrata began, with his shafts, to check the angry Arjuna only in that battle.[8] And that mighty car-warrior, O sire, began also to despatch, with his shafts of keen-points, the whole army of the Pāndavas to the other world.[9] The Pāndavas also, O king, after the same manner, supported by their vast host, began to overwhelm Bhishma like the clouds covering the maker of day.[10] O bull of Bharata's race, surrounded on all sides, that Bharata hero consumed many brave warriors in that battle like a raging conflagration in the forest (consuming numberles trees).[11] The prowess that we then beheld there

of thy son (Dusçāsana) was wonderful, inasmuch as he battled with Pārtha and protected the grandsire at the same time.[12] With that feat of thy son Dusçāsana, that illustrious bowman, all the people there were highly gratified.[13] Alone he battled with all the Pārthas having Arjuna amongst them; and he fought with such vigor that the Pāndavas were unable to resist him.[14] Many car-warriors were in that battle deprived of their cars by Dusçāsana. And many mighty bowmen on horse-back and many mighty-warriors, elephant,[15] pierced with Dusçāsana's keen shafts, fell down on the earth. And many elephants, afflicted with his shafts, ran away in all directions.[16] As a fire fiercely blazeth forth with bright flames when fed with fuel, so did thy son blaze forth, consuming the Pāndava host.[17] And no car-warrior, O Bhārata, of the Pāndava host ventured to vanquish or even proceed against that warrior of gigantic proportions,[18] save Indra's son (Arjuna) owning white steeds and having Krishna for his charioteer. Then Arjuna called also Vijaya, vanquishing Dusçāsana in battle, O king,[19] in the very sight of all the troops, proceeded against Bhishma. Though vanquished, thy son, however, relying upon the might of Bhishma's arms,[20] repeatedly comforted his own side and battled with the Pāndavas with great fierceness. Arjuna, O king, fighting with his foes in that battle, looked exceedingly resplendent.[21]* Then Cikhandin, in that battle, O king, pierced the grandsire with many arrows whose touch resembled that of the bolts of heaven and which were as fatal as the poison of the snake.[22] These arrows, however, O monarch, caused thy sire little pain, for the son of Gangā received them laughingly.[23] Indeed, as a person afflicted with heat cheerfully receives torrents of rain, even so did the son of Gangā receive those arrows of Cikhandin.[24] And the Kshatriyas there, O king, beheld Bhishma in that great battle as a being of fierce visage who was incessantly consuming the troops of the high-souled Pāndavas.[25]

---

* Both the Bengal and the Bombay texts read *Arjunas* in the second line of 21. The Burdwan Pundits are for correcting it as *Arjunam*. I do not think the correction happy.—T.

"'Then thy son (Duryodhana), addressing all his warriors, said unto them,—Rush ye against Phālguna from all sides![26] Bhishma, acquainted with the duties of a commander, will protect you!—Thus addressed, the Kaurava troops casting off all fear, fought with the Pāndavas.[27] (And once more, Duryodhana said unto them),—With his tall standard bearing the device of the golden palmyra, Bhishma stayeth, protecting the honor and the armour of all the Dhārtarāshtra warriors![28] The very gods, striving vigorously, cannot vanquish the illustrious and mighty Bhishma! What need be said, therefore, of the Pārthas who are mortals?[29] Therefore, ye warriors, fly not away from the field, getting Phālguna for a foe! I myself, striving vigorously, will today fight with the Pāndavas,[30] uniting with all of you, ye lords of earth, exerting yourselves actively!—Hearing these words, O monarch, of thy son with bow in hand,[31] many mighty combatants, excited with rage, belonging to the Videhas, the Kalingas, and the diverse tribes of the Dāserakas,[32] fell upon Phālguna. And many combatants also, belonging to the Nishādas, the Sauviras, the Vālhikas, the Daradas, the Westerners, the Northerners, the Mālavas,[33] the Abhighātas, the Curasenas, the Civis, the Vasātis, the Cālwas, the Cakas, the Trigartas, the Amvāshthas, and the Kekayas,[34] similarly fell upon Pārtha like flights of insects upon a fire. The mighty Dhananjaya, otherwise called Vibhatsu, then, O monarch, calling to mind diverse celestial weapons and aiming them at those great car-warriors at the heads of their respective divisions,* quickly consumed them all, by means of those weapons of great force, like fire consuming a flight of insects. And while that firm bowman was (by means of his celestial weapons) creating thousands upon thousands of arrows,[35-37] his *Gāndiva* looked highly resplendent in the welkin. Then those Khatriyas, O monarch, afflicted with those arrows, with their tall standards torn and overthrown,[38] could not, even together, approach the ape-bannered (Pārtha). Car-warriors fell down with their standards,

* In the second line of 35. for *çatānikān*, the true reading, I apprehend, is *sahānikān*.—T.

and horsemen with their horses,[39] and elephant-riders with their elephants, attacked by Kiritin with his shafts. And the earth was soon covered on all sides with the retreating troops of those kings, routed in consequence of the shafts shot from Arjuna's arms. Pārtha then, O monarch, having routed the Kaurava army,[40-41] sped many arrows at Dusçāsana. Those arrows with iron heads, piercing thy son Dusçāsana through,[42] all entered the earth like snakes through ant-hills. Arjuna then slew Dusçāsana's steeds, and then felled his charioteer.[43] And the lord Arjuna, with twenty shafts, deprived Vivingçati of his car, and struck him with five straight shafts.[44] And piercing Kripa and Vikarna and Calya with many arrows made wholly of iron, Kunti's son owning white steeds deprived all of them of their cars.[45] Thus deprived of their cars and vanquished in battle by Savyasāchin, Kripa and Calya, O sire, and Dusçāçana, and Vikarna, and Vivingçati, all fled away. Having vanquished those mighty car-warriors, O chief of the Bharatas, in the forenoon,[46-47] Pārtha blazed up in that battle like a smokeless conflagration. Scattering his shafts all around like the Sun shedding rays of light,[48] Pārtha felled many other kings, O monarch! Making those mighty car-warriors turn their backs upon the field by means of his arrowy showers,[49] Arjuna caused a large river of bloody current to flow in that battle between the hosts of the Kurus and the Pāndavas, O Bhārata![50] Large numbers of elephants and steeds and car-warriors were slain by car-warriors. And many were the car-warriors slain by elephants, and many also were the steeds slain by foot-soldiers.[51] And the bodies of many elephant-riders and horsemen and car-warriors, cut off in the middle, as also their heads, fell down on every part of the field.[52] And the field of battle, O king, was strewn with (slain) princes,—mighty car-warriors,—falling or fallen, decked with ear-rings and bracelets.[53] And it was also strewn with the bodies of many warriors cut off by car-wheels, or trodden down by elephants. And foot-soldiers ran away, and horsemen also with their horses.[54] And many elephants and car-warriors fell down on all sides. And many cars, with wheels and yokes and standards broken, lay scattered all about on the field.[55] And

the field of battle, dyed with the gore of large numbers of elephants, steeds, and car-warriors, looked beautiful like a red cloud in the autumnal sky.[56] Dogs, and crows, and vultures, and wolves, and jackalls, and many other frightful beasts and birds, set up loud howls, at sight of the food that lay before them.[57] Diverse kinds of winds blew along all directions. And *Rākshasas* and evil spirits were seen there, uttering loud roars.[58] And strings embroidered with gold, and costly banners, were seen to wave, moved by the wind.[59] And thousands of umbrellas, and great cars with standards attached to them, were seen lying scattered about on the field.[60] Then Bhishma, O king, invoking a celestial weapon, rushed at the son of Kunti, in the very sight of all the bowmen.[61] Thereupon Cikhandin, clad in mail, rushed at Bhishma who was dashing towards Arjuna. At this, Bhishma withdrew that weapon resembling fire (in effulgence and energy).[62] Meanwhile Kunti's son owning white steeds slaughtered thy troops, confounding the grandsire.' "*[63]

SECTION CXIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the combatants of both armies, strong in number, were thus disposed in battle array, all those unretreating heroes, O Bhārata, set their hearts upon the region of Brahma.†[1] In course of the general engagement that followed, the same class of combatants did not fight with the same class of combatants. Car-warriors fought not with car-warriors, or foot-soldiers with foot-soldiers,[2] or horsemen with horsemen, or elephant-warriors with elephant-warriors. On

---

* After the 60th verse, three lines occur in the Bombay edition as follows :—'And many elephants, with standards on their backs, were seen to fly away in all directions. And many Kshatriyas, O monarch, armed with maces and darts and bows, were seen lying prostrate on the field." The first line of 63 also is read differently in the Bombay text.—T.

† The Bengal texts read *Evam* &c. ; the Bombay reading is *samam* &c". I adopt the former reading. "Set their hearts upon the region of Brahma," *i. e.*, fought on, resolved to win the highest heaven by bravery or death in battle.—T.

the other hand, O monarch, the combatants fought with one another like madmen![3] Great and dreadful was the calamity that overtook both the armies. In that fierce slaughter when elephants and men spread themselves on the field,[4] all distinctions between them ceased, for they fought indiscriminately.

"'Then Calya, and Kripa, and Chitrasena, O Bhārata,[5] and Dusçāsana, and Vikarna, those heroes mounted on their bright cars, caused the Pāndava host to tremble.[6] Slaughtered in battle by those high-souled warriors, the Pāndava army began to reel in diverse ways, O king, like a boat on the waters tossed by the wind.[7] As the wintry cold cuts kine to the quick, so did Bhishma cut the sons of Pāndu to the quick.[8] As regards thy army also, many elephants, looking like newly-risen clouds, were felled by the illustrious Pārtha.[9] And many foremost of warriors too were seen to be crushed by that hero. And struck with arrows and long shafts in thousands,[10] many huge elephants fell down, uttering frightful shrieks of pain. And the field of battle looked beautiful, strewn with the bodies, still decked with ornaments, of high-souled warriors deprived of life, and with heads also that were still decked with ear-rings. And in that battle, O king, which was so destructive of great heroes,[11-12] when Bhishma and Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu put forth their prowess, thy sons, O monarch, beholding the grandsire exert himself vigorously, approached him, with all their troops placed ahead. Desirous of laying down their lives in battle and making heaven itself their goal,[13-14] they approached the Pāndavas in that battle, which was fraught with great carnage. The brave Pāndavas also, O king, bearing in mind the many injuries of diverse kinds inflicted upon them before by thee and thy son, O monarch, and casting off all fear, and eager to win the highest heavens,[15-16] cheerfully fought with thy son and the other warriors of thy army.

"'Then the generalissimo of the Pāndava army, *viz.*, the mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna, addressing his soldiers, said,[17]—Ye Somakas, accompanied by the Srinjayas, rush ye at Gangā's son!—Hearing those words of their commander, the Somakas and the Srinjayas,[18] though afflicted with showers

of arrows, rushed at the son of Gangā. Thus attacked, O king, thy sire Bhishma,[19] influenced by wrath, began to fight with the Srinjayas. In days of old, O sire, the intelligent Rāma had imparted to Bhishma of glorious achievements that instruction in weapons which was so destructive of hostile ranks. Relying on that instruction and causing a great havoc among the troops of the foe, that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the old Kuru grandsire Bhishma, day after day, slew ten thousand warriors of the Pārthas.[20-22] On that the tenth day, however, O bull of Bharata's race, Bhishma, single-handed, slew ten thousand elephants. And then he slew seven great car-warriors among the Matsyas and the Pānchālas. In addition to all this, in that dreadful battle five thousand foot-soldiers, and one thousand tuskers, and ten thousand steeds,[22-25] were also slain by thy sire, O king, through skill acquired by education. Then, having thinned the ranks of all the kings,[26] he slew Catānika the dear brother of Virāta. And the valiant Bhishma, having slain Catānika in battle,[27] felled, O king, full one thousand Kshatriyas with his broad-headed shafts. Besides these, all the Kshatriyas of the Pāndava army who followed Dhananjaya, as soon as they approached Bhishma, had to go to Yama's abode. Covering the Pāndava host from every side with showers of arrows, Bhishma stayed in battle at the head of the Kaurava army. Achieving the most glorious feats on that the tenth day,[28-30] as he stayed between the two armies, bow in hand, none of the kings, O monarch, could even look at him,[31] for he then resembled the hot midday Sun in the summer sky. As Cakra scorched the *Daitya* host in battle,[32] even so, O Bhārata, did Bhishma scorch the Pāndava host. Beholding him thus put forth his prowess, the slayer of Madhu,[33] *viz.*, the son of Devaki, cheerfully addressing Dhananjaya, said,—There, Bhishma, the son of Cāntanu, stayeth between the two armies![34] Slaying him by putting forth thy might, thou mayst win victory! There, at that spot, whence he breaketh our ranks, check him, putting forth thy strength![35] O lord, none else, save thee, ventureth to bear the arrows of Bhishma!—Thus urged, the ape-bannered Arjuna at that moment[36] made Bhishma with his car, steeds, and standard, invisible by

means of his arrows. That bull, however, among the foremost of Kurus, by means of his own arrowy showers, pierced those showers of shafts shot by the son of Pāndu. Then the king of the Pānchālas, the valiant Dhrishtaketu,[37-38] Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race, the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), Chekitāna, and the five Kaikaya brothers,[39] and the mighty-armed Sātyaki, and Subhadrā's son, and Ghatotkacha, and the (five) sons of Draupadi, and Cikhandin, and the valiant Kuntibhoja,[40] and Suçarman, and Virāta,—these and many other powerful warriors of the Pāndava army, afflicted by the shafts of Bhishma,[41] seemed to sink in an ocean of grief. Phālguna, however, rescued them all. Then Cikhandin, taking up a mighty weapon, and protected by Kiritin, rushed impetuously towards Bhishma alone. The unvanquished Vibhatsu then, knowing what should be done after what, slew all those that followed Bhishma, and then himself rushed at him. And Sātyaki, and Chekitāna, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race,[42-44] and Virāta, and Drupada, and the twin sons of Mādri by Pāndu, all protected by that firm bowman (*viz.*, Arjuna), rushed against Bhishma alone in that battle.[45] And Abhimanyu, and the five sons of Draupadi also, with mighty weapons upraised, rushed against Bhishma in battle.[46] All those firm bowmen, unretreating from battle, pierced Bhishma in diverse parts of his body with well-aimed shafts.[47] Disregarding all those shafts, large in number, shot by those foremost of princes belonging to the Pāndava host, Bhishma of undepressed soul penetrated into the Pāndava ranks.[48] And the grandsire baffled all those arrows, as if sporting the while. Frequently looking at Cikhandin the prince of the Pānchālas with a laugh, he aimed not a single arrow at him, recollecting his femininity. On the other hand, he slew seven great car-warriors belonging to Drupada's division.[49-50] Then confused cries of woe soon arose amongst the Matsyas, the Pānchālas, and the Chedis, who were together rushing at that single hero.[51] With large numbers of foot-soldiers and steeds and cars, and with showers of arrows, O scorcher of foes, they overwhelmed that single warrior, *viz.*, Bhishma the son of Bhāgirathi, that scorcher

of foes, like the clouds overwhelming the maker of day! Then in that battle between him and them, which resembled the battle between the gods and the *Asuras* in days of old, the diadem-decked (Arjuna), placing Cikhandin before him, pierced Bhishma (repeatedly).' "[52-53]

SECTION CXX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thus all the Pāndavas, placing Cikhandin before them, pierced Bhishma in that battle repeatedly surrounding him on all sides.[1] And all the Srinjayas, uniting together, struck him with dreadful *Çataghnis*, and spiked maces, and battle-axes, and mallets, and short thick clubs, and bearded darts, and other missiles, and arrows furnished with golden wings, and darts and lances and *kampanas*; with long shafts, and arrows furnished with heads shaped like the calf-tooth, and rockets. Thus afflicted by many, his coat of mail was pierced everywhere.[2-4] But though pierced in every vital part, Bhishma felt no pain. On the other hand, he then seemed to his enemies to resemble in appearance the (all-destructive) fire that rises at the end of the *Yuga*. His bow and arrows constituted the blazing flames (of that fire). The flight of his weapons constituted its (friendly) breeze. The rattle of his car-wheels constituted its heat, and mighty weapons constituted its splendour. His beautiful bow formed its fierce tongue, and the bodies of heroic warriors, its profuse fuel.* And Bhishma was seen to roll through the midst of crowds of cars belonging to those kings, or to come out (of the press) at times, or course once more through their midst. Then, disregarding the king of the Pānchālas and Dhrishtaketu,[5-3] he penetrated, O monarch, into the midst of the Pāndava army. He then pierced the six Pāndava warriors, *viz.*, Sātyaki, and Bhima, and Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu, and Drupada, and Virāta, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race, with many excellent arrows of great sharpness

---

* Portions of this simile are tataulogical. I have endeavoured to avoid repetition by straining a word or two.—T.

and dreadful whizz and exceeding impetuosity, and capable of piercing through every kind of armour. Those mighty car-warriors, however, checking those keen shafts,[9-11] afflicted Bhishma with great force, each of them striking him with ten shafts. Those mighty shafts, whetted on stone and furnished with golden wings, which the great car-warrior Cikhandin shot,[12] quickly penetrated into Bhishma's body. Then the diadem-decked (Arjuna), excited with wrath, and placing Cikhandin ahead, rushed at Bhishma and cut off the latter's bow. Thereupon those mighty car-warriors, seven in number, *viz.*, Drona, and Kritavarman, and Jayadratha the ruler of the Sindhus, and Bhuriçravas, and Cala, and Calya, and Bhagadatta, could not brook that act of Arjuna. Inflamed with rage, they rushed at him. Indeed, those mighty car-warriors, invoking into existence celestial weapons,[13-16] fell with great wrath upon that son of Pāndu, and covered him with their arrows. And as they rushed towards Phālguna's car, the noise made by them was heard[17] to resemble that made by the ocean itself when it swelleth in rage at the end of the *Yuga.—Kill, Bring up* (our forces), *Take, Pierce, Cut off*,[18]—this was the furious uproar heard about Phālguna's car. Hearing that furious uproar, the mighty car-warriors of the Pāndava army[19] rushed forward, O bull of Bharata's race, for protecting Arjuna. They were Sātyaki, and Bhimasena, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race,[20] and both Virāta and Drupada, and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha, and the wrathful Abhimanyu. These seven, inflamed with rage,[21] and armed with excellent bows, rushed with great speed. And the battle that took place between these and the Kaurava warriors was fierce, making the hair to stand on end,[22] and resembling, O chief of the Bharatas, the battle of the gods with the *Dānavas.* Cikhandin, however, that foremost of car-warriors, protected in the battle by the diadem-decked (Arjuna),[23] pierced Bhishma, in that encounter, with ten shafts after the latter's bow had been cut off. And he struck Bhishma's charioteer with other shafts, and cut off the latter's standard with one shaft.[24] Then the son of Gangā took up another bow that was tougher. That even was cut off by

Phālguna with three sharp shafts.[25] Indeed, that chastiser of foes, *viz.*, Arjuna, who was capable of drawing the bow with even his left hand, excited with rage, one after another, cut off all the bows that Bhishma took up.[26] Then Bhishma, whose bows were thus cut off, excited with rage, and licking the corners of his mouth, took up a dart that was capable of riving a hill.[27] In rage he hurled it at Phālguna's car. Beholding it course towards him like the blazing bolt of heaven,[28] the delighter of the Pāndavas fixed five sharp broad-headed arrows (on his bowstring). And with those five arrows, O chief of the Bharatas, the angry Arjuna cut off into five fragments that dart hurled from Bhishma's arms. Thus cut off by the angry Arjuna, that dart then fell down[29-30] like a flash of lightning separated from a mass of clouds. Beholding his dart cut off, Bhishma became filled with rage.[31] That hero, that subjugator of hostile cities, then began to reflect. And he said unto himself,—With only a single bow I could slay all the Pāndavas[32] if the mighty Vishnu himself had not been their protector. For two reasons, however, I will not fight with the Pāndavas,[33] *viz.*, their unslayableness, and the femininity of Cikhandin. Formerly, when my sire wedded Kāli, pleased (with me)[34] he gave me two boons, *viz.*, that I should be incapable of being slain in battle, and that my death should depend on my own choice. I should, however, now wish my own death, this being the proper hour![35]—Ascertaining this to be the resolve of Bhishma of immeasurable energy, the *Rishis* and the *Vasus*, stationed in the firmament, said,[36]—That which hath been resolved by thee is approved by us also, O son! Act according to thy resolution, O king! Withdraw thy heart from battle![37]—On the conclusion of those words, a fragrant and auspicious breeze, charged with particles of water, began to blow along a natural direction.*[38] And celestial cymbals of loud sounds began

* The Bengal reading of this verse is vicious. In the first line, *lokasya* is incorrect and unmeaning, the correct word being *vākyasya*. In the second line, again, for *Prishthatascha samantatas*, the correct reading is *Prishatāischa samantatas*.—T.

to beat. And a flowery shower fell upon Bhishma, O sire![39] The words spoken by the *Rishis* and the *Vasus*, however, O king, were not heard by any one save Bhishma himself. I also heard them, through the power conferred on me by the *Muni*.[40] Great was the grief, O monarch, that filled the hearts of the celestials at the thought of Bhishma, that favorite of all the worlds, falling down from his car.[41] Having listened to these words of the celestials, Cāntanu's son Bhishma of great ascetic merit rushed not at Vibhatsu,[42] even though he was then being pierced with sharp arrows capable of penetrating through every armour. Then Cikhandin, O king, excited with rage, struck the grandsire of the Bharatas in the chest with nine sharp arrows. The Kuru grandsire Bhishma, however, though struck by him in battle thus,[43-44] trembled not, O monarch, but remained unmoved like a mountain during an earthquake. Then Vibhatsu, drawing his bow *Gāndiva* with a laugh,[45] pierced the son of Gangā with five and twenty arrows. And once more, Dhananjaya, with great speed and excited with wrath, struck him in every vital part with hundreds of arrows. Thus pierced by others also with thousands of arrows,[46-47] the mighty car-warrior Bhishma pierced those others in return with great speed. And as regards the arrows shot by those warriors, Bhishma, possessed of prowess in battle that was incapable of being baffled,[48] equally checked them all with his own straight arrows. Those arrows, however, endued with wings of gold and whetted on stone, which the mighty car-warrior Cikhandin shot in that battle, scarcely caused Bhishma any pain. Then the diadem-decked (Arjuna), excited with rage and placing Cikhandin to the fore, approached Bhishma (nearer) and once more cut off his bow. And then piercing Bhishma with ten arrows, he cut off the latter's standard with one. And striking Bhishma's chariot with ten arrows, Arjuna caused him to tremble. The son of Gangā then took up another bow that was stronger.[49-52] Within, however, the twinkling of an eye, as soon, in fact, as it was taken up, Arjuna cut that bow also into three fragments with three broad-headed shafts.[53] And thus the son of Pāndu cut off in that battle even all the bows of Bhishma,

After that, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu no longer desired to battle with Arjuna.[54] The latter, however, then pierced him with five and twenty arrows. That great bowman, thus pierced greatly, then addressed Dusçāsana, and said,[55]—Behold, Pārtha, that great car-warrior of the Pāndavas, excited with wrath in battle, piereeth me alone with many thousands of arrows![56] He is incapable of being vanquished in battle by the wielder of the thunder-bolt himself! As regards myself also, O hero, the very gods, *Dānavas*, and *Rākshasas*, united together,[57] are incapable of vanquishing me! What Ishall say then of mighty car-warriors among men?—While Bhishma was thus speaking to Dusçāsana, Phālguna, with sharp shafts,[58] and placing Cikhandin to the fore, pierced Bhishma in that battle. Then Bhishma, deeply and excessively pierced by the wielder of *Gāndiva* with keen-pointed shafts, once more addressed Dusçāsana with a smile and said,—These arrows coursing towards me in one continuous line, whose touch resembleth that of heaven's bolt, have been shot by Arjuna. These are not Cikhandin's. Cutting me to the quick, piercing through even my hard coat of mail,[59-61] and striking me with the force of *mushalas*, these arrows are not Cikhandin's. Of touch as hard as that of the Brāhmana's rod (of chastisement),* and of impetus unbearable as that of the thounderbolt,[62] these arrows are afflicting my vital forces. These are not Cikhandin's. Of the touch of maces and spiked bludgeons, those arrows are destroying my vital forces like messengers of Death commissioned (by the grim king himself)! These are not Cikhandin's. Like angry snakes of virulent poison, projecting their tongues out these are penetrating into my vitals. These are not Cikhandin's,[63-65]—these that cut me

---

* *Brahma-danda* literally means a Brāhmana's rod or bamboo-stick. In consequence of the Brāhmana's ascetic power, this thin rod (symbolical of the Brāhmana's power of chastisement) is infinitely more powerful than even Indra's bolt. The latter can strike only one, but the former can smite whole countries, and entire races from generation to generation. With only his *Brahma-danda* Vaçishtha baffled all the mighty and celestial weapons of Viçwāmitra. (*vide*, *Rāmāyana*, section—56, *Valakānda*.)—T.

to the quick like the cold of winter cutting kine to the quick! Save the heroic wielder of *Gāndiva, viz.*, the ape-bannered Jishnu, even all other kings united together cannot cause me pain!—Saying these words, Bhishma the valiant son of Cāntanu, as if for the object of consuming the Pāndavas, hurled a dart at Pārtha. Pārtha, however, caused that dart to drop down, cutting it into three fragments with three shafts,[66-68] in the very sight, O Bhārata, of all the Kuru heroes of thy army. Desirous of obtaining either death or victory, the son of Gangā then took up a sword and a shield decked with gold. Before, however, he could come down from his car, Arjuna cut off, by means of his arrows, that shield into a hundred fragments. And that feat of his seemed exceedingly wonderful. Then king Yudhishthira urged his own troops,[69-71] saying,—Rush ye at Gangā's son! Do not entertain the slightest fear!—Then, armed with bearded darts, and lances, and arrows, from all sides,[72] with axes, and excellent scimitars, and long shafts of great sharpness, with calf-toothed arrows, and broad-headed shafts, they all rushed at that single warrior.[73] Then arose from among the Pāndava host a loud shout. Then thy sons also, O king, desirous of Bhishma's victory,[74] surrounded him and uttered leonine shouts. Fierce was the battle fought there between thy troops and those of the enemy[75] on that the tenth day, O king, when Bhishma and Arjuna met together. Like unto the vortex that occurs at the spot where Gangā meets the Ocean, for a short while a vortex occurred there where the troops of both armies met and struck one another down. And the Earth, wet with gore, assumed a fierce form.[76-77] And the even and the uneven spots on her surface could no longer be distinguished. Although Bhishma was pierced in all his vital limbs, yet on that the tenth day he stayed (calmly) in battle, having slain ten thousand warriors. Then that great bowman, Pārtha, stationed at the head of his troops,[78-79] broke the centre of the Kuru army. Ourselves then, afraid of Kunti's son Dhananjaya having white steeds attached to his car,[80] and afflicted by him with polished weapons, fled away from the battle. The Sauviras, the Kitavas, the Easterners, the Westerners, the Northerners, the Mālavas,[81] the

Abhishāhas, the Curasenas, the Civis, the Vasātis, the Cālwas, the Cayas, the Trigartas, the Amvashthas, and the Kaikeyas,*[82] —these and many other illustrious warriors,—afflicted with arrows and pained by their wounds, abandoned Bhishma in that battle while he was fighting with the diadem-decked (Arjuna).[83] Then a great many warriors, surrounding that single warrior on all sides, defeated the Kurus (that protected him) and covered him with showers of arrows.[84]—*Throw down, Seize, Fight, Cut into pieces,*—this was the furious uproar, O king, heard in the vicinity of Bhishma's car.[85] Having slain in that battle, O monarch, (his foes) by hundreds and thousands, there was not in Bhishma's body space of even two fingers' breadth that was not pierced with arrows.[86] Thus was thy sire mangled with arrows of keen points by Phālguna in that battle. And then he fell down from his car with his head to the east, a little before sunset, in the very sight of thy sons. And while Bhishma fell, loud cries of *alas* and *oh*, O Bhārata, were heard in the welkin uttered by the celestials and the kings of the earth. And beholding the high-souled grandsire falling down (from his car),[87-89] the hearts of all of us fell with him. That foremost of all bowmen, that mighty-armed hero, fell down, like an uprooted standard of Indra, making the earth tremble the while.† Pierced all over with arrows, his body touched not the ground.[90-91] At that moment, O bull of Bharata's race, a divine nature took possession of that great bowman lying on a bed of arrows.[92] The clouds poured a (cool) shower (over him) and the Earth trembled. While falling he had marked that the Sun was then in the southern solstice.[93] That hero, therefore, permitted not his senses to depart, thinking of that (inauspicious) season (of death). And all around in the welkin he heard celestial voices[94]

---

* Instead of "the Cālwas, the Cayas, and the Trigartas," the Bombay text reads,—"the Trigartas depending on (king) Cāwla." I have not, however, met with any Trigartas under Cālwa's rule, that race having, at this time, Suçarman for their ruler.—T.

† *Indra-ddhaja* was a pole, decked with banners, created in honor of Indra. The festival attracted considerable crowds.—T.

saying,—Why, Oh why, should Gangā's son, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, yield up his life during the southern declension ?[95]—Hearing these words, the son of Gangā answered,—I am alive! Although fallen upon the earth, the Kuru grandsire Bhishma, expectant of the northern declension, suffered not his life to depart. Ascertaining that to be his resolve, Gangā, the daughter of Himavat,[96-97] sent unto him the great *Rishis* in swanlike forms. Then those *Rishis* in the forms of swans inhabiting the *Mānasa* lake, quickly rose up,[98] and came together, for obtaining a sight of the Kuru grandsire Bhishma, to that spot where that foremost of men was lying on his bed of arrows.[99] Then those *Rishis* in swan-like forms, coming to Bhishma, beheld that perpetuator of Kuru's race lying on his bed of arrows.[100] Beholding that high-souled son of Gangā, that chief of the Bharatas, they walked round him, and the Sun being then in the southern solstice, they said, addressing one another, these words:—Being a high-souled person, why should Bhishma pass out (of the world) during the southern declension ?—[101-102] Having said these words, those swans went away, proceeding towards the southern direction. Endued with great intelligence, Bhishma, O Bhārata, beholding them, reflected for a moment.[103] And the son of Cāntanu then said unto them,—I will never pass out (of the world) as long as the Sun is in the southern solstice! Even this is my rsolve.[104] I will proceed to my own ancient abode when the Sun reacheth the northern solstice! Ye swans, I tell you this truly![105] Expectant of the northern declension I will hold my life! Since I have the fullest control over the yielding up of my life,[106] I will, therefore, hold life, expectant of death during the northern declension! The boon that was granted to me by my illustrious sire,[107] to the effect that my death would depend on my own wish, O, let that boon become true! I will hold my life, since I have control in the matter of laying it down![108]—Having said these words to those swans, he continued to lie down on his bed of arrows.

"'When that crest of the Kuru race., *viz*; Bhishma of great energy, fell down,[109] the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas

uttered leonine shouts. When the grandsire of the Bharatas who was endued with great might was over thrown,[110] thy son, O bull of Bharata's race, knew not what to do. And all the Kurus were entirely deprived of their senses.[111] And the Kurus headed by Kripa, and Duryodhana, sighed and wept. And from grief they remained for a long while deprived of their senses.[112] And they remained perfectly still, O monarch, without setting their hearts on battle. As if seized by thighs, they stood motionless, without proceeding against the Pāndavas.[113] When Cāntanu's son Bhishma of mighty energy, who was (regarded as) unslayable, was slain, all of us thought that the destruction of the Kuru king was at hand.*[114] Vanquished by Savyasāchin, with our foremost heroes slain, and ourselves mangled with sharp arrows, we knew not what to do.[115] And the heroic Pāndavas possessed of massive arms that looked like spiked maces, having obtained the victory and won a highly blessed state in the other world,† all blew their great conchs.[116] And the Somakas and the Pānchālas all rejoiced, O king! Then when thousands of trumpets were blown, the mighty[117] Bhimasena slapped his armpits and uttered loud shouts. When the all-powerful son of Gangā was slain, the heroic warriors of both armies, laying down their weapons, began to reflect thoughtfully. And some uttered loud shrieks, and some fled away, and some were deprived of their senses.[118-119] And some censured the practices of the Kshatriya order, and some applauded Bhishma. And the *Rishis* and the *Pitris* all applauded Bhishma of high vows.[120] And the deceased ancestors of the Bharatas also praised Bhishma. Meanwhile the valiant and intelligent Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, having recourse to that *Yoga* which is taught in the great *Upanishads*, and engaged in mental prayers, remained quiet, expectant of his hour.' "[121]

---

* The second line of 114 in the Bengal text is vicious. I adopt the Bombay reading, which is *Kururājasya tarkitas*. Literally rendered, the second line is " the destruction of the Kuru king was inferred."—T.

† By bravery on the field of battle, which, according to the Hindu scriptures, is always thus rewarded.—T.

SECTION CXXI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Alas, what was the state of (my) warriors, O Sanjaya, when they were deprived of the mighty and god-like Bhishma, who had become a *Brahmachārin* for the sake of his reverend sire? Even then I regarded the Kurus and all the others as slain by the Pāndavas when Bhishma, despising the son of Drupada, struck him not.[1-2] Wretch that I am, alas, I hear today of my sire's slaughter! What can be a heavier sorrow than this?*[3] My heart assuredly, O Sanjaya, is made of adamant, since it breaketh not into a hundred fragments on hearing of Bhishma's death![4] Tell me, O thou of excellent vows, what was done by that lion among the Kurus, *viz.*, the victory-desiring Bhishma when he was slain in battle.[5] I cannot at all brook it that Devavrata should be slain in battle! Alas, he that was not slain by Jamadagni's son himself in days of old by means of even his celestial weapons, alas, he hath now been slain by Drupada's son Cikhandin the prince of Pānchāla!—'[6]

"Sanjaya said,—'Slain in the evening, the Kuru grandsire Bhishma saddened the Dhārtarāshtras and delighted the Pānchālas. Falling down on the earth, he lay on his bed of arrows without, however, touching the earth with his body. Indeed, when Bhishma, thrown down from his car, fell upon the surface of the earth,[7-8] cries of *Oh* and *Alas* were heard among all creatures. When that boundary-tree of the Kurus, *viz.*, the ever-victorious Bhishma, fell down,[9] fear entered the hearts, O king, of the Kshatriyas of both the armies. Beholding Bhishma the son of Cāntanu with his standard overthrown and his armour cut open,[10] both the Kurus and the Pāndavas were inspired, O monarch, with sentiments of cheerlessness.† And the welkin was enveloped with a gloom,

---

* A slight difference of reading occurs between the Bengal and the Bombay texts as regards the second line of the 3rd verse.—T.

† *Paryyavartanta* literally means "were filled with sentiments the reverse of what usually inspired them." ence, they were cheerless.—T.

and the Sun himself became dim.[11] The Earth seemed to utter loud shrieks when the son of Cāntanu was slain.—This one is the foremost of those conversant with the *Vedas* !—This one is the best of those that are conversant with the *Vedas* ![12]—Even thus did creatures speak of that bull among men as he lay (on his bed of arrows).—This one, formerly, ascertaining his sire Cāntanu to be afflicted by Kāma,[13] this bull among men, resolved to draw up his vital seed !—Even thus did the *Rishis* together with the *Siddhas* and the *Chāranas* said of that foremost one of the Bharatas as he lay on his bed of arrows. When Cāntanu's son Bhishma, the grandsire of the Bharatas, was slain,[14-15] thy sons, O sire, knew not what to do. Their faces wore an expression of grief. The splendour of their countenances seemed to abandon them, O Bhārata ![16] All of them stood in shame, hanging down their heads. The Pāndavas, on the other hand, having won the victory, stood at the head of their ranks.[17] And they all blew their large conchs decked with gold. And when in consequence of their joy thousands of trumpets, O sinless one, were blown there,[18] we beheld, O monarch, the mighty Bhimasena, the son of Kunti, sporting in great glee,[19] having quickly slain many hostile warriors endued with great strength. And a great swoon overtook all the Kurus.[20] And Karna and Duryodhana repeatedly drew long breaths. When the Kuru grandsire Bhishma fell down, thus,[21] cries of sorrow were heard all around, and the greatest confusion prevailed (among the Kuru army). Beholding Bhishma fallen, thy son Dusçāsana,[22] with great speed, entered the division commanded by Drona. That hero, clad in mail and at the head of his own troops, had been placed by his elder brother (for the protection of Bhishma).[23] That tiger among men now came, plunging the troops he had commanded into grief. Beholding him coming towards them, the Kuravas surrounded[24] prince Dusçāsana, desirous, O monarch, of hearing what he had to say. Then Dusçāsana of Kuru's race informed Drona of Bhishma's slaughter.[25] Drona then, hearing those evil tidings, suddenly fell down from his car. Then the valiant son of Bharadwāja, quickly recovering his senses,[26] forbade the Kuru army, O sire, to continue the fight,

Beholding the Kurus desist from battle, the Pāndavas also, through messengers on fleet horses, forbade their own troops to fight. And after the troops of both armies had, according to their orders, ceased to fight,[27-28] the kings of both armies, putting off their armour, all repaired to Bhishma. Desisting from the fight, thousands of (other) warriors then,[29] proceeded towards the high-souled Bhishma like the celestials towards the Lord of all creatures. Approaching Bhishma who was then, O bull of Bharata's race, lying (on his bed of arrows),[30] the Pāndavas and the Kurus stood there, having offered him their salutations. Then Cāntanu's son Bhishma of righteous soul addressed the Pāndavas and the Kurus who having reverenced him thus, stood before him. And he said,—Welcome to you, ye highly blessed ones! Welcome to you, ye mighty car-warriors![31-32] Gratified am I with your sight, ye that are the equals of the very gods!—Thus addressing them with his head hanging down, he once more said,[33]—My head is hanging down greatly. Let a pillow be given to me!—The kings (standing there) then fetched many excellent pillows that were very soft and made of very delicate fabrics.[34] The grandsire, however, desired them not. That tiger among men then said unto those kings with a laugh,[35]—These, ye kings, do not become a hero's bed.—Beholding then that foremost of men, that mightiest of car-warriors in all the worlds, *viz.*, the mighty-armed Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu, he said,—O Dhananjaya, O thou of mighty arms, my head hangeth down, O sire! Give me a pillow, such as thou regardest to be fit!—' "[36-37]

SECTION CXXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Stringing then his large bow and reverentially saluting the grandsire, Arjuna, with eyes filled with tears, said these words:—O foremost one among the Kurus, O thou that art the first among all wielders of weapons, command me, O invincible one, for I am thy slave![1] What shall I do, O grandsire![2]—Unto him Cāntanu's son said,—My head, O sire, hangeth down! O foremost one among the Kurus, O Phālguna, get me a pillow![3] Indeed, give me one without

delay, O hero, that would become my bed! Thou, O Pārtha, art competent, thou art the foremost of all wielders of bows![4] Thou art conversant with the duties of Kshatriyas, and thou art endued with intelligence and goodness!—Then Phālguna, saying—*So be it*—desired to do Bhishma's bidding.[5] Taking up *Gāndiva* and a number of straight shafts, and inspiring them with *mantras*, and obtaining the permission of that illustrious and mighty car-warrior of Bharata's race,[6] Arjuna then, with three keen shafts endued with great force, supported Bhishma's head. Then that chief of the Bharatas, *viz.*, Bhishma of virtuous soul, conversant with the truths of religion, seeing that Arjuna, having divined his thought, had achieved that feat, became highly gratified. And after that pillow had thus been given to him, he applauded Dhananjaya.[7-8] And casting his eyes upon all the Bharatas there, he addressed Kunti's son Arjuna, that foremost of all warriors, that enhancer of the joys of his friends,[9] and said,—Thou hast given me, O son of Pāndu, a pillow that becometh my bed! If thou hadst acted otherwise, I would have cursed thee, from wrath![10] Even thus, O mighty-armed one, should a Kshatriya, observant of his duties, sleep on the field of battle on his bed of arrows![11]—Having addressed Vibhatsu thus, he then said unto all those kings and princes that were present there, these words:[12]—Behold ye the pillow that the son of Pandu hath given me! I will sleep on this bed till the Sun turneth to the northern solstice![13] Those kings that will then come to me will behold me (yield up my life)! When the Sun on his car of great speed and unto which are yoked seven steeds, will proceed towards the direction occupied by Vaiçravana, verily, even then, will I yield up my life like a dear friend dismissing a dear friend![14-15] Let a ditch be dug here around my quarters, ye kings! Thus pierced with hundreds of arrows will I pay my adorations to the Sun! As regards yourselves, abondoning enmity, cease ye from the fight, ye kings!—'[16]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then there came unto him some surgeons well trained (in their science) and skilled in plucking out arrows, with all becoming appliances (of their profession).[17] Beholding them, the son of Gangā said unto thy son,— Let

these physicians, after proper respect being paid to them, be dismissed with presents of wealth.[18] Brought to such a plight, what need have I now of physicians? I have won the most laudable and the highest state ordained in Kshatriya observances![19] Ye kings, lying as I do on a bed of arrows, it is not proper for me to submit now to the treatment of physicians. With these arrows on my body, ye rulers of men, should I be burnt![20]—Hearing these words of his, thy son Duryodhana dismissed those physicians, having honored them as they deserved.[21] Then those kings of diverse realms, beholding that constancy in virtue displayed by Bhishma of immeasurable energy, were filled with wonder.[22] Having given a pillow to thy sire thus, those rulers of men, those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the Pāndavas and the Kauravas, united together,[23] once more approached the high-souled Bhishma lying on that excellent bed of his. Reverentially saluting that high-souled one and circumambulating him thrice,[24] and stationing guards all around for his protection, those heroes, with bodies drenched in blood, repaired for rest towards their own tents in the evening, their hearts plunged into grief and thinking of what they had seen.

"'Then at the proper time, the mighty Mādhava, approaching the Pāndavas, those mighty car-warriors cheerfully seated together and filled with joy at the fall of Bhishma, said unto Dharma's son Yudhishthira these words:[25-27]—By good luck victory hath been thine, O thou of Kuru's race! By good luck hath Bhishma been thrown, he, that is, who is unslayable by men, that mighty car-warrior of aim incapable of being baffled![28] Or, perhaps, as destiny would have it, that warrior who was master of every weapon, having obtained thee for a foe that canst slay with thy eyes alone, hath been consumed by thy wrathful eye![29]—Thus addressed by Krishna, king Yudhishthira the just replied unto Janārddana, saying,—Through Thy grace is Victory, through Thy wrath is Defeat![30] Thou dispeller of the fears of those that are devoted to thee, Thou art our refuge! It is not wonderful that they should have victory whom Thou always protectest in battle, and in whose welfare Thou art always engaged, O Keçava! Having got

Thee for our refuge, I do not regard anything as wonderful![31-32] Thus addressed by him, Janārddana answered with a smile,—O best of kings, these words can come from thee alone!—' "[33]

SECTION CXXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the night had passed away, O monarch, all the kings, the Pāndavas and the Dhārtarāshtras, repaired to the grandsire.[1] Those Kshatriyas then saluted that bull of their order, that foremost one among the Kurus, that hero lying on a hero's bed, and stood in his presence.[2] Maidens by thousands, having repaired to that place, gently showered over Cāntanu's son powdered sandal wood and fried paddy, and garlands of flowers.[3] And women and old men and children, and ordinary spectators, all approached Cāntanu's son like creatures of the world desirous of beholding the Sun.*[4] And trumpets by hundreds and thousands, and actors, and mimes, and skilled mechanics also came to the aged Kuru grandsire.[5]† And ceasing to fight, putting aside their coats of mail, and laying aside their weapons, the Kurus and the Pāndavas, united together,[6] came to the invincible Devavrata, that chastiser of foes. And they were assembled together as in days of old, and cheerfully addressed one another according to their respective ages.[7] And that conclave full of Bharata kings by hundreds and adorned with Bhishma, looked beautiful and blazing like a conclave of the gods in heaven.[8] And that conclave of kings engaged in honoring the son of Gangā looked as beautiful as a conclave of the celestials engaged in adoring their Lord, *viz.*, the Grandsire (Brahman).[9] Bhishma, however, O bull of Bharata's race, suppressing his agonies with fortitude though burning with the arrows (still sticking to his body), was sighing like a snake.[10] His body burning with those arrows, and himself nearly deprived

---

* *Bhutāniva tamonudam*; Nilakantha thinks that *bhutāni*, in this connection, may mean *Gandharvas and others* who are believed to approach the Sun every day as he rises in the eastern hills.—T.

† The first line is read with a slight variation in the Bengal texts.—T.

of his senses in consequence of his weapon-wounds, Bhishma cast his eyes on those kings and asked for water.[11] Then those Kshatriyas, O king, brought thither excellent viands and several vessels of cold water.[12] Beholding that water brought for him, Cāntanu's son said,— I cannot, O sire, now use any article of human enjoyment![13] I am removed from the pale of humanity. I am lying on a bed of arrows. I am staying here, expecting only the return of the Moon and the Sun![14]— Having spoken these words and thereby rebuked those kings, O Bhārata, he said,— I wish to see Arjuna![15]—The mighty-armed Arjuna then came there, and reverentially saluting the grandsire, stood with joined hands, and said,—What shall I do?[16]—Beholding then that son of Pāndu, O monarch, thus standing before him after having offered him respectful salutations, Bhishma of righteous soul cheerfully addressed Dhananjaya, saying,[17]—Covered all over with thy shafts, my body is burning greatly! All the vital parts of my body are in agony. My mouth is dry.[18] Staying as I am with body afflicted with agony, give me water, O Arjuna! Thou art a great bowman! Thou art capable of giving me water duly![19]—The valiant Arjuna then saying,—*So be it*,—mounted on his car, and stringing his *Gāndiva* with force, began to stretch it.[20] Hearing the twang of his bow and the slap of his palms which resembled the roar of the thunder, the troops and the kings were all inspired with fear.[21] Then that foremost of car-warriors, mounted on his car, circumambulated that prostrate chief of the Bharatas, that foremost of all wielders of weapons.[22] Aiming then a blazing arrow, after having inspired it with *mantras* and identified it with the *Parjanya* weapon, in the very sight of the entire army, the son of Pāndu,[23] *viz.*, Pārtha, pierced the Earth a little to the south of where Bhishma lay. Then there arose a jet of water that was pure, and auspicious,[24] and cool, and that, resembling the nectar itself, was of celestial scent and taste. And with that cool jet of water Pārtha gratified[25] Bhishma, that bull among the Kurus, of godlike deeds and prowess. And at that feat of Pārtha who resembled Cakra himself in his acts,[26] all those rulers of Earth were filled with great wonder. And beholding that feat of Vibhatsu implying

superhuman prowess,[27] the Kurus trembled like kine afflicted with cold. And from wonder all the kings there present waved their garments (in the air).[28] And loud was the blare of conchs and the beat of drums that were then heard all over the field. And Cāntanu's son, his thirst quenched, then addressed Vibhatsu, O monarch, and said,[29] applauding him highly in the presence of all those kings, (these words, *viz.*,)—O thou of mighty arms, this is not wonderful in thee, O son of Kuru's race![30] O thou of immeasurable effulgence, even Nārada spoke of thee as an ancient *Rishi*! Indeed, with Vāsudeva as thy ally, thou wilt achieve many mighty feats[31] which the chief of the celestials himself with all the gods, of a certainty, will not venture to achieve! They that have knowledge of such things know thee to be the destroyer of the whole Kshatriya race![*32] Thou art the one bowman among the bowmen of the world! Thou art the foremost among men. As human beings are, in this world, the foremost of all creatures, as Garuda is the foremost of all winged creatures;[33] as the Ocean is the foremost among all receptacles of water and the cow among all quadrupeds; as the Sun is the foremost among all luminous bodies and Himavata among all mountains; as the Brāhmana is the foremost among all castes, so art thou the foremost of all bowmen![34] Dhritarashtra's son (Duryodhna) listened not to the words repeatedly spoken by me and Vidura and Drona and Rāma and Janārddana and also by Sanjaya.[35] Reft of his senses, like unto an idiot, Duryodhana placed no reliance on those utterances. Past all instruction, he will certainly have to lie down for ever, overwhelmed by the might of Bhima![36]—Hearing these words of his, the Kuru king Duryodhana became of cheerless heart. Eyeing him, Cāntanu's son said,—Listen, O king! Abandon thy wrath![37] Thou hast seen, O Duryodhana, how the intelligent Pārtha created that jet of cool and nectar-scented water![38] There is none else in this world capable of achieving such a feat. The weapons appertaining to Agni, Varuna, Soma, Vāyu, and Vishnu,[39] as

* In the 2nd line of 32 some of the Bengal texts read *dhanwinam* incorrectly for *nihdanam*.—T.

also those appertaining to Indra, Paçupati, and Paramesthi, and those of Prajāpati, Dhātri, Tashtri, Sāvitri, and Vivaswat,[40] all these are known to Dhananjaya alone in this world of men! Krishna, the son of Devaki, also knoweth them. But there is none else here that knoweth them.[41] This son of Pāndu, O sire, is incapable of being defeated in battle by even the gods and the *Asuras* together. The feats of this high-souled one are superhuman.[42] With that truthful hero, that ornament of battle, that warrior accomplished in fight, let peace, O king, be soon made![43] As long as the mighty-armed Krishna is not possessed by wrath, O chief of the Kurus, it is fit, O sire, that peace should be made with the heroic Pārthas![44] As long as this remnant of thy brothers is not slain, let peace, O monarch, be made![45] As long as Yudhishthira, with eyes burning in wrath, doth not consume thy troops in battle, let peace, O sire, be made![46] As long as Nakula, and Sahadeva, and Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, do not, O monarch, exterminate thy army,[47] it seems to me that friendly relations should be restored between thee and the heroic Pāndavas! Let this battle end with my death, O sire! Make peace with the Pāndavas![48] Let these words that are uttered to thee by me be acceptable to thee, O sinless one! Even this is what I regard to be beneficial both for thyself and the race (itself of Kuru)![49] Abandoning thy wrath, let peace be made with the Pārthas. What Phālguna hath already done is sufficient. Let friendly relations be restored with the death of Bhishma! Let this remnant (of warriors) live! Relent, O king![50] Let half the kingdom be given to the Pāndavas. Let king Yudhishthira the just go to Indraprastha. O chief of the Kurus, do not achieve a sinful notoriety among the kings of the earth by incurring the reproach of meanness, and becoming a fomentor of intestine dissensions![51] Let peace come to all with my death! Let these rulers of earth, cheerfully mix with one another! Let sire get back the son, let sister's son get back the maternal uncle![52] If from want of understanding and possessed by folly thou dost not hearken to these timely words of mine, thou wilt have to repent greatly! What I say is true. Therefore, desist even now![53]—

Having, from affection, said these words unto Duryodhana in the midst of the kings, the son of the Ocean-going (Gangā) became silent. Though his vital limbs were burning with the arrow-wounds, yet, prevailing over his agonies, he applied himself to *yoga*.'[54]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having heard these beneficial and peaceful words fraught with both virtue and profit, thy son, however, accepted them not, like a dying man refusing medicine.' "[55]

SECTION CXXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'After Cāntanu's son Bhishma, O monarch, had become silent, all those rulers of earth, there present, then returned to their respective quarters.[1] Hearing of Bhishma's slaughter, that bull among men, *viz.*, Rādhā's son (Karna), partially inspired with fear, quickly came there.[2] He beheld that illutrious hero lying on his bed of arrows like the lord Kārtikeya himself lying (after birth) on his bed of reeds.*[3] Then Vrisha (Karna) endued with great glory, with voice choked in tears, approaching that hero lying with eyes closed, fell at his feet.[4] And he said,—O chief of the Kurus, I am Rādhā's son, who, while before thy eyes, was everywhere looked at by thee with hate![5]—Hearing these words, the aged chief of the Kurus, *viz.*, the son of Gangā, whose eyes were covered with a film, slowly raising his eyelids, and causing the guards to be removed, and seeing the place deserted by all, embraced Karna with one arm, like a sire embracing his son, and said these words with great affection:[6-7]—Come, come! Thou art an opponent of mine who always challengest comparison with me! If thou hadst not come to me, without doubt, it would not have been well with thee![8] Thou art

---

* Kārtikeya or Skanda, the celestial generalissimo, believed to be the son of Agni though represented in some *Puranas* as the son of Pārvati or Umā by Civa, was born in a forest of reeds. The child, a hero from the moment of birth, of gigantic proportions, was discovered lying on straight reeds or *çaras*; hence he is called Carajanman.—T.

Kunti's son, not Rādhā's! Nor is Adhiratha thy father! O thou of mighty arms, I heard all this about thee from Nārada,[9] as also from Krishna-Dwaipāyana! Without doubt, all this is true! I tell thee truly, O son, that I bear thee no malice![10] It was only for abating thy energy that I used to say such harsh words to thee! O thou of excellent vows, without any reason thou speakest ill of all the Pāndavas![11] Sinfully didst thou come into the world. It is for this that thy heart hath been such! Through pride, and owing also to thy companionship with the low, thy heart hateth even persons of merit![12] It is for this that I spoke such harsh words about thee in the Kuru camp! I know thy prowess in battle, which can with difficulty be borne on earth by foes![13] I know also thy regard for Brāhmanas, thy courage, and thy great attachment to alms-giving! O thou that resemblest a very god, amongst men there is none like thee![14] From fear of intestine dissensions I always spoke harsh words about thee. In bowmanship, in aiming weapons, in lightness of hand, and in strength of weapons,[15] thou art equal to Phālguna himself, or the high-souled Krishna! O Karna, proceeding to the city of Kāçi, alone, with thy bow, thou[16] hadst crushed the kings in battle for procuring a bride for the Kuru king! The mighty and invincible king Jarāsandha also,[17] ever boastful of his prowess in battle, could not become thy match in fight! Thou art devoted to Brāhmanas; thou always fightest fairly! In energy and strength,[18] thou art equal to a child of the celestials and certainly much superior to men. The wrath I cherished against thee is gone.[19] Destiny is incapable of being avoided by exertion. O slayer of foes, the heroic sons of Pāndu are thy uterine brothers![20] If thou wishest to do what is agreeable to me, unite with them, O thou of mighty arms! O son of Surya, let these hostilities end with me! Let all the kings of Earth be today freed from danger![21]—

"'Karna said,—I know this, O thou of mighty arms! All this, without doubt, is (as thou sayest)! As thou tellest me, O Bhishma, I am Kunti's son, and not the son of a *Suta*![22] I was, however, abandoned by Kunti, and I have been reared by a *Suta*. Having (so long) enjoyed the wealth of Duryodhana,

I dare not falsify it now.*[23] Like Vasudeva's son who is firmly resolved for the sake of the Pāndavas, I also, O thou that makest profuse presents to Brāhmanas, am prepared to cast away my possessions, nay, my body itself, my children, and my wife, for Duryodhana's sake!† Death from disease, O thou of Kuru's race, doth not become a Kshatriya![24-25] Relying upon Suyodhana, I have always offended the Pāndavas! This affair is destined to take its course. It is incapable of being prevented.[29] Who was there that would venture to overcome Destiny by exertion? Various omens indicating the destruction of the Earth, O grandsire,[27] were noticed by thee and declared in the assembly. It is well known to me that the son of Pāndu, and Vāsudeva,[28] are incapable of being conquered by other men. Even with them we venture to fight! I will vanquish the son of Pāndu in battle! Even this is my firm resolve![29] I am not capable, again, of casting off this fierce animosity (that I cherish against the Pāndavas)! With a cheerful heart, and keeping the duties of my order before my eye, I will contend against Dhananjaya.[30] Firmly resolved that I am on battle, grant me thy permission, O hero! I will fight! Even this is my wish.[31] It behoveth thee to forgive me also any harsh words that I may have at any time uttered against thee or any act that I may have done against thee from anger or inconsiderateness!—[32]

"'Bhishma said,—If, indeed, thou art unable to cast off this fierce animosity, I permit thee, O Karna! Fight, moved by the desire of heaven![33] Without anger, and without vindictiveness, serve thou the king, according to thy power and according to thy courage and observant of the conduct of the righteous![34] Have then my permission, O Karna! Obtain thou that which thou seekest! Through Dhananjaya thou wilt obtain all those regions (hereafter) which are cabable of being had by fulfilling the duties of a Kshatriya![35] Freed from pride, and relying on thy (own) might and energy, engage in

---

* *I.e.*, by falsifying the expectations of Duryodhana.—T.

† The form of the assertion, in the original, is that "I have already cast these away for Duryodhana's sake!"—T.

battle, since a Kshatriya cannot have a (source of) greater happiness than a righteous battle.*[36] For a long while I made great efforts for bringing about peace! But I succeeded not, O Karna, in the task! Truly do I say this unto thee!—'[37]

"Sanjaya continued,—'After the son of Gangā had said this, Rādhā's son (Karna), having saluted Bhishma and obtained his forgiveness, got up on his car and proceeded towards (the quarters of) thy son.' "†[38]

FINIS BHISHMA PARVA.

---

* It seems that a *Dharmya-yuddha* (lit., a righteous battle) was not a battle happening on a meritorious occasion or induced by a just and righteous cause, such as the defence of a nation's liberty against unjust invasion or oppression, &c,&c, for, in that case, the great battle between the Kauravas and the Pāndavas would be a *Dharmya-yuddha* only as regarded the Pāndavas and not as regarded the Kauravas, for the former fought for their just inheritance, while the latter, from the sinful motive of unjustly retaining what they had originally acquired by fraud. And yet this very battle has been frequently spoken of as a *dharmya-yuddha* even as regards the Kauravas. It seems, therefore, that a battle, in order to be righteous, depended only on the *manner* in which it was fought and not on the justice or injustice of the reasons that induced it.—T.

† The first line of the last verse is read variously. I adopt the Bengal reading.—T.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

PROTAP CHANDRA ROY.

DRONA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHARATA PRESS.

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

1888.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

NOTICE.

With the *Bhishma Parva*, nearly one half of the entire *Mahābhārata* is completed. The progress achieved is not inconsiderable, remembering the encyclopædic proportions of the epic. The credit of the performance, however, in no way pertains to me. It is His only who, in His own inscrutable way, has been pleased to compass His end through an insignficant instrument, so that His glory may stand confessed before the sons of men! May He, therefore, be praised, and glorified with hymns from one end of the world to the other! I am now in mid-ocean, and it will take some time before I succeed in crossing the other half, and enjoy the satisfaction of having taken an active part in translating the far-famed work of Vyāsa from a dead into a living language. The beauty and elegance of the original, it is true, do not admit of translation, for the curse of Babel fell with greater severity on poets than on any other class of men. For all that, to the appreciative reader even a prose version, such as mine, cannot altogether fail to give glimpses of the peculiar characteristics of the original.

It has taken me over five years to go through the first half; to complete the other half, would, perhaps, take more time having regard to the difficulties of the *Cānti Parva*, which is one of the longest of the eighteen books of the *Māhābhārata*. Who knows, again, what revolutions these five years may bring forth? The humble individual who on a tiny raft has rashly ventured to cross the shoreless ocean, may himself be gathered to his fathers, and his place may know him no more. Many of the recipients of the translation may depart this life. These considerations, weighing with me, have made me determine upon expediting the work as much as I possibly can; and if, for that object, I have to pledge my last utensil, let the public rest assured, I shall by no means shrink from doing so. For the object mentioned above, I intend, if means permit me, to double the establishment, both literary and mechanical, connected with the English translation, so that, humanly speaking, I may be able to bring the undertaking to completion as soon as possible.

Although without resources of my own, I am not altogether hopeless that I shall succeed in completing my salf-imposed task. The undertaking is fortunate in one respect, *viz.*, in being under the fostering care of many persons and personages of note, individuals, whose espousal of any cause will ensure success. They are, indeed, towers of strength to the Dātavya Bhārata Kāryalaya. First and foremost among them, let me name him, the illustrious statesman and nobleman, who, uniting high intelligence with sterling worth of character, is surpassed by few, if any, of his great predecessors in the high office he fills under the Crown. His Excellency, the Earl of Dufferin, has been graci usly

pleased to take a warm and abiding interest in my humble labors. Then, again, this institution counts the present noble ruler of Bengal amongst its active patrons and supporters. The uniform kindness which Sir Steuart Bayley has shown to the Kàryalaya has enabled it to tide over extreme straits and stresses. Filled with many excellent graces, Sir Auckland Colvin also has ever been ready to listen to the appeals I have made to His Honor in the interests of the institution. Great and signal also has been the support lent by Sir Charles Aitchison, whose resignation of his seat in the Viceregal Council the Kāryalaya feels as a calamity not only to India but to itself. This institution has also been uniformly favored with the support of other high officials such as General Chesney, the Hon'ble Mr. Scoble, and many others. In Europe also, the English translation of the *Mahābhārata* has been able to enlist the sympathies of many noblemen and eminent personages. Of the former, I may be permitted to single out his Grace the Duke of Manchester, and the Right Hon'ble the Marquis of Ripon, that best friend of India. Of eminent persons, I may name Dr. Reinhold Rost, the learned Librarian of the India Office, Mons. A. Barth of Paris, Mons. St. Hilaire, editor of the *Journal des Savants*, Dr. E. Windisch of Leipzic, Professor Herman Jacobi of Westphalia, and many other *savants* of note. The American people also have uniformly encouraged me with their sympathy in my arduous undertaking. I may here specially mention the names of Mr. W. E. Coleman of San Francisco, Mr. H. B. Witton of Canada, Professor Lanman, Professor Maurice Bloomfield, and many other well-known scholars. The press of India, Europe, and America, has also lent its powerful aid on behalf of the English *Mahābhārata.* In India, that veteran and able journalist and true friend of the Indian people, Mr. Robert Knight, editor of the *Statesman*, has given me the greatest support. Nor have the editors of the *Pioneer* and the *Civil and Military Gazette* been less eager to help me materially. From all this, I think, it will be evident, that there is small chance of the undertaking languishing for want of encouragement and pecuniary support.

I humbly pray to Hari, the Supreme Lord of All, to smile benignly upon His humble servant in the future, as He has done in the past, so that, defying all difficulties, and setting all impediments at naught, I may with the help of a favorable breeze cross the rest of the wide ocean, and at last anchor safely in the harbour which is still beyond my ken, thereby realising the dream of my life, *viz.*, the completion of the *Mahàbhārata* of Krishna-Dwaipāyana Vaysa into English !

PROTAP CHANDRA ROY.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

DRONA PARVA.

Dronābhisheka-Parva.

	PAGE.
Janamejaya enquires about Dhritarāshtra's state on receipt of the intelligence of Bhishma's death ...	1
Vaiçampāyana's answer	ib
Dhritarāshtra asks Sanjaya about what the Kauravas did after the fall of Bhishma	ib
Bhishma is provided with an arrowy pillow ...	2
The Kshatriyas of both sides, taking Bhishma's leave, return to battle	ib
The Kurus filled with anxiety and fright... ...	3
The Kurus desire to make Karna their generalissimo...	ib
Karna's eulogy upon Bhishma	5
Karna commands his charioteer to make his car ready	7
Karna waits upon the wounded Bhishma... ...	10
Bhishma's eulogy on Karna	11
Bhishma commands Karna to fight	12
Duryodhana asks Karna's advice as to who should become the generalissimo of the Kuru army ...	13
Karna proposes the election of Drona as generalissimo	ib
Duryodhana requests Drona to take the command ...	15
Drona accepts the request	ib
Duryodhana invests Drona with the command of the army	ib
The joy of the Kurus	ib
Drona arrays the Kuru army for battle	ib
The positions taken up by the Kuru leaders ...	ib
The portents in nature when Drona proceeds to battle	17
The Pāndava host breaks at Drona's onset ...	18
Drona causes a great slaughter of the Pāndava troops	ib
Dhrishtadyumna resists Drona	ib
Dhrishtadyumna causes a great slaughter of the Kaurava troops	19

PAGE.

Drona inspires the Pāndava troops with fear ... 19
Yudhishthira urges Dhrishtadyumna and Arjuna to surround Drona ... ... ib
The Pāndava leaders fight with courage ... ... ib
Drona puts the Pāndava troops to rout 20
Drona displays great heroism... 21
Drona slain by Dhrishtadyumna ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra asks Sanjaya the particulars of Drona's heroism and slaughter 22
Dhritarāshtra swoons away 25
The Kuru king restored to consciousness through the ministrations of the Bharata ladies ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires about those who opposed Yudhishthira 26
Ditto enquires how Arjuna fought ... ... ib
Ditto enquires how the other warriors of the Pāndavas fought 28
Dhritarāshtra recites the feats of Krishna ... 31
The Kuru king blames himself as the cause of the destruction of the Kurus 35
Ditto attributes that destruction to Destiny ... ib
Sanjaya begins his narrative in detail ... ... ib
Duryodhana solicits a boon at Drona's hands touching the capture of Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Drona promises to seize Yudhishthira alive under certain limitations 36
Yudhishthira learns through his spies that Drona has vowed to seize him alive 37
Yudhishthira's address to his brothers and allies ... ib
Arjuna comforts Yudhishthira 38
The Kuru host protected by Drona and the Pāndava host by Arjuna stand inactive for sometime ... 39
Drona's heroism ... ... ib
Drona causes a river of blood to flow on the field of battle 40
Yudhishthira rushes towards Drona and encompasses him on all sides 41

PAGE.

The encounter between Cakuni and Sahadeva ... 41
Diverse encounters between diverse leaders of the two hosts 42
The heroism of Abhimanyu 43
Abhimanyu encounters Jayadratha 44
Calya engages Abhimanyu 45
Abhimanyu slays Calya's driver ... ... ib
Calya rushes armed with a mace ... ... ib
Bhimasena meets Calya ... ... ib
The encounter between Calya and Bhimasena ... 47
Calya made insensible by Bhima 48
Kritavarman bears Calya away on his car ... ib
The Kurus fly away and the Pāndavas utter leonine roars ... ... ib
Karna's son Vrishasena assails the Pāndava army ... 49
Fierce battle between the Kurus and the Pāndavas ... ib
Drona rallies the Kurus and rushes at Yudhishthira ... ib
Kumāra encounters Drona and is slain ... ib
Drona slays many other protectors of Yudhishthira ... 51
Yudhishthira's distress ... ... ib
Arjuna rushes to Yudhishthira's rescue ... ... ib
Arjuna defeats the Kurus 52
As evening approaches both hosts withdrawn to their nightly quarters ... ... ib

Samsaptaka-badha Parva.

The cheerlessness of Drona 52
Drona confesses his inability to seize Yudhishthira if Arjuna is by ... ... ib
Advises Duryodhana to do something for taking Arjuna away from Yudhishthira's side 53
The Trigarta king Suçarman swears to challenge and engage Arjuna in another part of the field ... ib
The oath taken by the *Samsaptakas* 54
The *Samsaptakas* challenge Arjuna 55
Arjuna informs Yudhishthira of his inability to refuse the challenge ... ... ib

PAGE.

Yudhishthira reminds Arjuna of Drona's vow about his seizure 55
Arjuna appoints Satyajit as Yudhishthira's protector in his own absence ... ... ib
Yudhishthira gives Arjuna leave to fight the *Samsaptakas* 56
The joy of Duroydhana at the prospect of Arjuna leaving Yudhishthira's side ... ... ib
The joy of the *Samsaptakas* at the prospect of fighting with Arjuna ... ... ib
Arjuna addresses Krishna about the ill-timed joy of the *Samsaptakas* ... ... ib
Arjuna encounters the *Samsaptakas* 57
The flight of the *Samsaptakas* 58
The king of the Trigartas rallies them ... ... ib
Arjuna vows to Krishna that he would slay all the *Samsaptakas* ... ... ib
Arjuna shoots the *Tāshtra* weapon and produces an illusion 59
The *Samsaptakas* slay one another ... ... ib
The *Samsaptakas* return to the charge ... ... ib
Arjuna again defeats the *Samsaptakas* and causes a terrible carnage 60
During the time Arjuna is engaged with the *Samsaptakas*, Drona rushes towards Youdhishthira ... ib
The Kauravva army under Drona advances to the assault in the *Garuda* array 61
The constitution of the *Garuda* array ... ... ib
Yudhishthira urges Dhrishtadyumna to prevent the fulfilment of Drona's vow 62
Dhrishtadyumna promises to check Drona ... 63
Drona assails and routs Yudhishthira's force ... 64
As Drona rushes towards Yudhishthira he is encountered by Satyajit 65
Satyajit slain by Drona 66
Yudhishthira flies away from Drona ... ... ib
Encounter between Drona and Catānika ... ... ib

PAGE.

Drona slays Catānika 67
Drona causes an immense slaughter ... ... ib
Drona causes a river of blood on the field ... ib
The Pāndava leaders, headed by Yudhishthira, encounter and encompass Drona 68
Drona defeats the Pāndava leaders 69
Duryodhana addresses Karna in joy, beholding the discomfiture of the Pāndavas 70
Karna assures Duryodhana that Bhimasena would never leave the fight 71
Duryodhana proceeds towards Drona's car ... ... ib
The deafening noise near Drona's car made by the returned Pāndava leaders ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires of Sanjaya about the distinctive indications of the cars of those Pāndava leaders headed by Bhimasena that proceeded against Drona 73
Sanjaya describes to the Kuru king the cars of those leaders ib
The despondency of Dhritarāshtra 79
The Kuru army inspired with fear on seeing the Pāndavas return to battle 81
Duryodhana urges the Kurus to meet the Pāndavas boldly ib
Diverse encounters between diverse leaders of the two hosts ib
Duryodhana rushes against Bhima and is defeated by him 86
Bhima slays the *Mleccha* king of the Angas ... 87
Bhagadatta on his elephant rushes against Bhimasena ib
The distressful plight of Bhima ... ... ib
The Pāndava host flies away from Bhagadatta ... ib
Bhagadatta defeats many leaders of the Pāndava army 88
Arjuna, hearing the uproar of the Pāndavas, rushes against Bhagadatta 91
The *Samsaptakas*, having returned, challenge Arjuna ib
Arjuna resolves to slaughter the remnant of the *Samsaptakas* ... ... ib
Arjuna defeats and slays the *Samsaptakas* ... 92
Krishna applauds Arjuna for the feat ... ... ib
The Trigarta king again assails Arjuna 93
Arjuna makes his enemy insensible ... ... ib

PAGE.

Arjuna proceeds against the Kuru army 93
The Kurus are unable to resist Arjuna 94
Arjuna encounters Bhagadatta ... ... ib
Arjuna generously refrains from taking an advantage over Bhagadatta presented by circumstances ... 95
Bhagadatta assails Arjuna and Krishna ... ... ib
Bhagadatta hurls the *Vaishnava* weapon at Arjuna ... 96
Krishna receives that weapon on his own breast, at which the weapon becomes changed into a floral garland ib
Arjuna taxes Krishna for this act ... ... ib
Krishna tells Arjuna the history of the *Vaishnava* weapon ... ... ib
The four forms of Krishna engaged in four different acts 96
The Earth seeks a boon at Nārāyana's hands on behalf of her son Naraka 97
After Naraka's slaughter by Krishna, his son Bhagadatta acquires the *Vaishnava* weapon... ... ib
Krishna urges Arjuna to slay Bhagadatta ... ... ib
Arjuna slays Bhagadatta's elephant ... ... ib
Bhagadatta falls, struck by Arjuna ... ... ib
Arjuna slays the Gāndhāra princes Vrisha and Achala 99
Arjuna assailed by Dhritarāshtra's sons and Cakuni ... ib
Cakuni creates illusions for confounding Arjuna ... ib
Arjuna destroys those illusions 100
Arjuna defeats Cakuni who flies away in fear ... ib
The Kuru army is divided into two bodies one of which flies towards Drona, and the other towards Duryodhana ib
Arjuna causes a great slaughter 101
The Kuru host rallied ... ... ib
Fierce battle between the two armies 102
The encounter between Açwatthāman and Nila ... 103
Nila slain by Açwatthāman ... ... ib
Bhima encounters many Kuru leaders together ... ib
Nakula and Sahadeva and Yuyudhāna rush to Bhima's rescue 104
Awful sights on the field of battle ... ... ib
The leaders of the Pāndava host attack Drona ... 106

PAGE.

Drona causes a great slaughter of the Chedis, the Pānchālas, and the Pāndavas 106
Arjuna encounters the Kurus after having defeated the *Samsaptakas* ... ... ib
The Kurus become inspired with fear and call upon Karna to protect them 107
Karna encounters Arjuna ... ... ib
Bhima, Sātyaki, and Dhrishtadyumna rush against Karna ib
Karna encounters them all ... ... ib
Arjuna slays the three brothers of Karna... ... 108
Bhima slays fifteen supporters of Karna ... ... ib
Sātyaki encounters Karna and defeats him ... ib
Duryodhana, Drona, and Jayadratha rescue Karna ... ib
Fierce slaughter on the field... 109
Evening comes and both armies retire to their nightly quarters ... ... ib

Abhimanyu-badha Parva.

The Kuru army regarded as defeated on the second day 109
The Kurus retire cheerlessly to their tents ... ib
Duryodhana reminds Drona of his vow to seize Yudhishthira 110
Drona confesses his inability to seize Yudhishthira if Arjuna is by ... ... ib
Drona promises to slay some mighty car-warrior of the Pāndavas that day ... ... ib
Drona proceeds to battle, disposing the Kuru army in the circular array 111
Sanjaya informs Dhritarāshtra of the fall of Abhimanyu ib
Dhritarāshtra is filled with grief at this intelligence ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires how the battle was fought which terminated in Abhimanyu's fall ... ... ib
Sanjaya's description of Abhimanyu's energy and might 112
The Kuru army disposed in what is called the circular array ... ... ib
The Pāndavas fail to break that array 114
Yudhishthira asks Abhimanyu to break the circular array ib

PAGE.

Abhimanyu proceeds against the Kuru army ... 116
Abhimanyu causes a great slaughter 117
Abhimanyu puts to rout the part of the Kuru army attacked by him 119
Duryodhana proceeds against Abhimanyu ... 120
Duryodhana rescued by the Kuru leaders... ... ib
Abhimanyu defeats diverse leaders of the hostile army 121
Calya defeated by Abhimanyu 122
Abhimanyu slays the brother of Calya 123
Abhimanyu defeats all the warriors that encounter him 124
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the details of Abhimanyu's attack ... ... ib
Drona's panegyric on Abhimanyu 125
Dusçāsana offers to encounter Abhimanyu ... 126
Abhimanyu's speech to Dusçāsana 127
Encounter between Abhimanyu and Dusçāsana ... 128
Dusçāsana made insensible and borne away from the field ib
Abhimanyu wishes to proceed against Drona ... 129
Karna resists him ... ... ib
Karna placed in great distress ... ... ib
The younger brother of Karna encounters Abhimanyu ib
Karna's brother slain 130
Karna flies away from the field ... ... ib
The Kaurava array breaks ... ... ib
Abhimanyu causes a great slaughter of the Kauravas ib
The Pāndava leaders endeavour to follow Abhimanyu 132
Jayadratha the ruler of the Sindhus checks them ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the source of Jayadratha's energy ... ... ib
The boon obtained by Jayadratha from Mahādeva ... 133
Jayadratha vanquishes all the Pāndava leaders ... 134
The path made by Abhimanyu is closed up ... ib
Abhimanyu vanquishes Vrishasena who is borne away from the field... 135
Ditto slays Vāsātiya 136
Many warriors rush against Abhimanyu who slays them all ib
Abhimanyu slays Rukmartha the son of Calya ... 137

PAGE.

Abhimanyu slays the friends of Rukmaratha by the *Gandharva* weapon 138
Abhimanyu beats back the Kuru leaders 139
Abhimanyu slays Lakshmana the son of Duryodhana in the sight of the latter 140
Abhimanyu attacks the vast force of Jayadratha and causes a great carnage ... ... ib
Abhimanyu once more encountered by the Kuru leaders 141
Karna enquires of Drona about the means of slaying Abhimanyu 144
Drona's advice to Karna about the cutting of Abhimanyu's bow, and the slaughter of his steeds and drivers ... 145
Six car-warriors simultaneously attack him and cut off his weapons, steeds, drivers, and car ... ... ib
Abhimanyu slain by Dusçāsana's son 147
The joy of the Kurus and the grief of the Pāndavas ... 148
Invisible creatures censure the cowardly act ... ib
The awful sights on the field of battle ... ... ib
The Pāndava divisions fly away upon seeing Abhimanyu's fall ... ... ib
Yudhishthira rallies them 149
The approach of evening and the return of the Kurus to their nightly quarters ... ... ib
The awful aspect of the field 150
Yudhishthira's lament on the fall of Abhimanyu ... 151
Vyāsa comes to Yudhishthira 152
Vyāsa consoles Yudhishthira 153
Vyāsa recites the history of king Akampana and how he was consoled by Nārada 154
Nārada recites to Akampana the history of Brahman's wrath 155
Sthānu pacifies Brahman 156
Brahman creates Death 157
The penances performed by Death for being excused the unpleasant duty imposed upon her ... 158
Brahman remains inexorable 160
Death agrees to commence her work 161

PAGE.

Akampana's grief dispelled 162
Vyāsa urges Yudhishthira to fight forgetting his sorrows ib
Vyāsa recites the story of king Srinjaya 163
Nārada and Parvata fall in love with Srinjaya's daughter and curse each other 164
Nārada grants to Srinjaya a boon in the form of a son 165
The prince is slain by robbers ... ... ib
Srinjaya's grief ... ... ib
Nārada consoles Srinjaya by reciting the story of Marutta 166
Nārada recites to Srinjaya the story of Suhotra ... 167
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Paurava ... 168
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Civi 169
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Rāma 171
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Bhagiratha ... 173
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Dilipa 174
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Māndhātri ... 175
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Yayāti... ... 177
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Amvarisha ... 178
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Caçavindu ... 179
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Gaya 180
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Rantideva ... 182
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Bharata ... 184
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Prithu 185
Ditto recites to ditto the story of Rāma (the son of Jamadagni) 188
Srinjaya's grief for the loss of his son dispelled ... 190
Nārada restores to Srinjaya his dead son ... ... ib
Vyāsa shows the inability of calling Abhimanyu back to life on account of Abhimanyu's having ascended to heaven after the due performance of his duties... 191
Urging Yudhishthira to abandon his grief, Vyāsa makes himself invisible 192
The cheerlessness of Arjuna, while returning to the Pāndava camp ... ... ib
The indications of disaster marked by Arjuna ... 193
Arjuna's grief on account of Abhimanyu's fall ... 194
Krishna comforts Arjuna 197

PAGE.

Yudhishthira imparts to Arjuna the particulars of Abhimanyu's heroism and fall 198
Arjuna vows to slay Jayādratha before the setting of the morrow's sun 200
The uproar in the Pāndava camp after Arjuna's vow ... 201
Jayadratha wishes to return home 202
Duryodhana comforts him with assurances of protection 203
Drona also promises protection to Jayadratha ... 204
Krishna remonstrates with Pārtha for his rash vow ... ib
Arjuna assures Krishna of his competence to accomplish his vow 207
The fierce portents in nature 208
Krishna consoles his sister Subhadrā ... ... ib
Sudhadrā's lament over Abhimanyu 211
Keçava returns to Arjuna's tent 214
The wakefulness in the Pāndava camp 215
All the Pāndava warriors pray for Arjuna's success ... ib
Krishna's speech to his charioteer Dāruka about his resolution to fight on the morrow if necessary ... ib
Arjuna sees Krishna in a dream 217
Arjuna sees Mahādeva in a dream 219
Krishna's hymn to Mahādeva 221
Mahādeva grants to Arjuna (in his dream) the *Pāçupata* weapon 223
Arjuna and Keçava return to their camp ... ... ib
The morning rites undergone by Yudhishthira ... 224
Arjuna and Keçava visit Yudhishthira 226
Yudhishthira's speech to Keçava 227
Keçava assures Yudhishthira of Arjuna's success ... 228
Arjuna acquaints Yudhishthira of his dream ... 229
Arjuna sets out for battle 230
Arjuna charges Sāyaki to protect Yudhishthira in his absence 231
Dhritarāshtra's lament over the slaughter of his troops ib
Sanjaya rebukes Dhritarāshtra for his folly in bringing about the battle 235
Drona arrays the Kaurava troops 236

PAGE.

The resolution of the Kurus to slay Arjuna ... 237
Drona assures Jayadratha of protection ... ... ib
Description of the Kaurava army 238
The portents in Nature 239
Durmarshana takes up his position in the van for opposing Arjuna ... ... ib
The fright of the Kuru army when Arjuna and Keçava blow their conchs 240
Arjuna attacks Durmarshana and his division ... 241
The terrible carnage caused by Arjuna ... ... ib
Durmarshana's division flies away 243
Seeing the van of the Kuru army slaughtered and routed, Dusçāsana encounters Arjuna, with a large elephant force 244
Dusçāsana's division slaughtered and routed ... 245
Arjuna meets with Drona and prays for leave to penetrate the Kuru army 246
Drona refuses leave and attacks Arjuna ... ... ib
Encounter between preceptor and pupil ... ... ib
Arjuna, unable to vanquish Drona, avoids him from fear of losing time 248
Jaya and Kritavarman and the king of the Kāmvojas and Crutāyus oppose Arjuna ... ... ib
Firece battle between these Kuru leaders and Arjuna 249
Drona again encounters Arjuna ... ... ib
Arjuna again avoids Drona 250
Encounter between Kritavarman and Arjuna ... ib
Arjuna stupifies Kritavarman and proceeds on his way ib
Kritavarman encounters Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas, the two protectors of Arjuna's car-wheels, and checks their progress 251
Crutāyudha encounters Arjuna ... ... ib
Crutāyudha slain with his own mace 252
Sudakshina encounters Arjuna and is slain by him ... 253
Arjuna slays the Abhisāhas, the Curasenas, the Civis, and the Vasātis 254
Crutāyush and Achyutāyush encounter Arjuna ... ib

PAGE.

Arjuna made insensible by Achyutāyus 255
Regaining his senses, Arjuna slays both his antagonists with the *Aindra* weapon ... ... ib
Arjuna slays the sons of Crutāyush and Achyutāyush 256
The Angas with their elephants, and many other Kshatriyas with the king of the Kalingas at their head encounter Arjuna 257
Arjuna causes an immense carnage among them ... ib
Arjuna, encountered by the *Mlecchas*, causes a great carnage among them ... ... ib
Crutāyush the king of the Amvashthas encounters Arjuna and is slain by him 258
Duryodhana, beholding the slaughter of his troops and the successful progress of Arjuna, comes to Drona and addresses him in wrath and affection ... 259
Drona acknowledges his inability to oppose Arjuna on account of his own old age... 260
Drona cases Duryodhana in invulnerable armour and urges him to oppose Arjuna 261
The history of that armour 262
The fierce battle between the Pāndavas and the Kurus at the gate of the Kuru array 264
The heroism of Drona 265
The heroism of Dhrishtadyumna 266
Diverse encounters between diverse leaders ... 267
Encounter between Dhrishtadyumna and Drona ... 271
Dhrishtadyumna rescued by Sātyaki 272
The fierce encounter between Sātyaki and Drona ... 273
The Pāndava leaders proceed to the aid of Sātyaki ... 276
The Kuru warriors under Dusçāsana proceed to the aid of Drona ... ... ib
Arjuna and Keçava steadily proceed towards Jayadratha 277
The speed of Arjuna's car ... ... ib
Vinda the chief of the Avantis encounters Arjuna and is slain by him 278
Anuvinda, the brother of Vinda, encounters Arjuna and is slain by him 279

PAGE.

Keçava apprises Arjuna of the fatigue of his steeds ... 279
Keçava grooms the steeds while Arjuna on foot holds the whole Kuru army in check 280
Arjuna creates, by his celestial weapons, a lake of water for his steeds to drink from, and an arrowy hall for those animals to rest within ... ... ib
The Kauravas fiercely attack Arjuna while the latter is on foot 281
Arjuna beats back all his assailants ... ... ib
The Kauravas applaud Arjuna's prowess 282
The grooming over, Keçava re-harnesses the steeds and proceeds with great speed ... ... ib
The progress of Arjuna becomes irresistible ... 284
Keçava points Duryodhana out to Arjuna and urges the latter to slay the Kuru king 287
Arjuna promises to slay Duryodhana 288
Duryodhana checks the progress of Arjuna's car ... 289
Duryodhana proudly challenges Arjuna to display his prowess ... ... ib
Arjuna fails to pierce Duryodhana in consequence of the latter's invulnerable armour 290
Keçava expresses his surprise at Arjuna's failure ... ib
Arjuna shoots a fierce shaft at Duryodhana which is cut off by Açwatthāman 291
Arjuna makes Dryodhana carless and steedless and weaponless 292
Duryodhana rescued by many Kuru leaders ... ib
Arjuna causes a great slaughter among these ... ib
Bhuriçravas and Cala and Karna and Vrishasena and Jayadratha and Kripa and Calya proceed against Arjuna 293
Duryodhana and these eight car-warriors assail Arjuna 294
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the different kinds of standards owned by those warriors ... ... ib
Sanjaya describes the standards 296
Diverse encounters between diverse leaders of both sides 299
The encounter between Yudhishthira and Drona ... ib

PAGE.

Yudhishthira displays great heroism 300
Yudhishthira's defeat and flight 301
Diverse encounters between diverse leaders of both hosts ib
Encounter between Bhimasena and Alamvusha ... 305
Alamvusha flies away 306
Ghatotkacha encounters Alamvusha 307
The Pāndava leaders all attack Alamvusha ... ib
Ghatotkacha slays Alamvusha 309
Encounter between Sātyaki and Drona 310
The Pāndava leaders rescue Sātyaki when about to succumb to Drona 311
The heroism of Drona ... ... ib
The Pāndava and the Pānchāla troops fly away before Drona ... ... ib
Yudhishthira hears the blare of *Pānchajanya* and thinks Arjuna to be in distress 312
Yudhishthira requests Sātyaki to go to Arjuna and bring him intelligence of his safety ... ... ib
Sātyaki hesitates to do Yudhishthira's bidding on the ground of the counter-commands of Arjuna ... 316
Yudhishthira presses his request, saying that Dhrishtadyumna would protect him during Sātyaki's absence 318
Sātyaki agrees to do Yudhishthira's bidding ... 319
Sātyaki's speech to Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Sātyaki directs his car to be properly equipt ... 322
After the equipment of his car, Sātyaki prepares to set out 323
Sātyaki penetrates the Kuru army 324
Drona encounters Sātyaki 326
Sātyaki, like Arjuna, avoids Drona 327
Kritavarman encounters Sātyaki 328
Sātyaki slays Kritavarman's charioteer and issues out of the Bhoja division ... ... ib
Sātyaki proceeds against the division of the Kāmvojas 329
The Pāndava leaders attack Drona while following Sātyaki ... ... ib
Kritavarman resists them ... ... ib

PAGE.

Dhritarāshtra enquires about the causes of the ill success of the Kauravas ... ... ib
Sanjaya reminds the old king of his own folly in provoking the war 333
The encounter between Kritavarman and the Pāndava leaders ... ... ib
The Pāndavas discomfited by Kritavarman ... 336
Sātyaki turns back to check Kritavarman ... ib
Sātyaki makes Kritavarman carless and proceeds leisurly on 337
Sātyaki encountered by the division of Jalasandha ... 338
Jalasandha slain by Sātyaki 339
The Kaurava troops fly away before Sātyaki ... 340
The Kurus headed by Drona again encounter Satyaki ib
Sātyaki puts Duryodhana to flight 341
Sātyaki once more encountered by Kritavarman ... 342
Sātyaki makes Kritavarman insensible 343
Encounter between Drona and Sātyaki ... ... ib
Sātyaki slays Drona's driver whereupon Drona is carried away by his steeds 345
Drona returns to the gate of the array for checking the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Sudarçana encounters Sātyaki 346
Sātyaki slays Sudarçana 347
Satyaki proceeds on, carrying everything before him ... ib
Sātyaki proceeds leisurely on, thinking himself to be near Arjuna 348
Sātyaki's driver pronounces an eulogy upon him ... 349
Sātyaki urges his driver to take him to the Kāmvojas 350
Sātyaki slaughters the Yavanas 351
The Yavanas fly away ... ... ib
The Kauravas applaud Sātyaki for his feats ... ib
Duryodhana and other Kuru leaders follow Sātyaki ... 353
Sātyaki slays Duryodhana's driver 354
The Kuru leaders fly away before Sātyaki ... 355
A large Kuru force re-encounters Sātyaki ... 356
Sātyaki vanquishes and slaughters it ... ... ib

PAGE.

Dusçāsana with a large force of robbers again attacks Sātyaki 357
Sātyaki's victory over them ... ... ib
Drona, hearing the wails of the Kurus while slaughtered by Sātyaki, urges his charioteer to take him to Sātyaki 358
Dusçāsana seeks shelter within Drona's division ... 359
Drona rebukes Dusçāsana for his cowardice ... ib
Dusçāsana with a *Mleccha* force proceeds to fight with Sātyaki 360
Drona encounters the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas ... 361
Viraketu attacks Drona and is slain by him ... ib
Drona causes a great carnage among the Pānchālas ... 362
Dhrishtadyumna encounters Drona ... ... ib
Drona slays Dhrishtadyumna's driver 363
Encounter between Dusçāsana and Sātyaki ... ib
Duryodhana sends a body of Trigartas for Dusçāsana's rescue 364
The Trigartas turn back to find shelter with Drona's division 365
Dusçāsana bravely fights with Sātyaki ... ... ib
Sātyaki, vanquishing Dusçāsana, lets him off, remembering Bhima's vow 366
Duryodhana penetrates into the Pāndava army ... 367
The extraordinary heroism of Duryodhana who causes a great carnage amongst his foes 368
The battle between Drona and the Somakas in the afternoon 369
Drona slays Vrihatkshatra the prince of the Kekayas... 371
Dhrishtaketu attacks Drona ... ... ib
Dhrishtaketu slain by Drona... 372
Drona slays the son of Jarāsandha ... ... ib
Drona slays Kshatradharman the son of Dhrishtadyumna 374
Yudhishthira's anxiety at not having obtained any intelligence of Arjuna and Sātyaki 375
Yudhishthira thinks of sending Bhima after Sātyaki 376
Yudhishthira's address to Bhima ... ... ib

PAGE.

Bhima requests Dhrishtadyumna, to protect Yudhishthira and prepares to set out after Sātyaki and Arjuna 378
Bhima breaks through the head of the Kuru array ... 380
Bhima meets Drona on the way 381
Bhima presses Drona's car down into the Earth ... ib
Drona, having previously alighted, is saved ... ib
Bhima slays eleven sons of Dhritarāshtra ... 382
Bhima drives all his foes before him 383
Drona checks Bhima's progress 384
Bhima alighting from his car seizes Drona's vehicle and overturns it with sheer strength of arms ... ib
Drona returns to the gate of the array ... ... ib
Bhima proceeds on and sights both Sātyaki and Arjuna ib
Bhima makes his presence known to Arjuna by a roar 385
Arjuna and Mādhava utter loud roars in return ... ib
Yudhishthira hears Bhima's roar and understands that all is safe ... ... ib
Karna encounters Bhima 387
Duryodhana sees Drona and affectionately chides him for his having allowed Sātyaki and Bhima to penetrate the Kuru host and approach to the aid of Arjuna... 389
Drona counsels Duryodhana to make affective arrangements for the protection of Jayadratha ... 391
Duryodhana, while going back to where Jayadratha is, encounters Yudhāmanyu and Uttamanjas ... ib
Duryodhana made carless by the two Pānchāla princes ib
The Pānchāla princes made carless by Duryodhana ... ib
The latter, riding upon two other cars, proceed towards Arjuna 392
Bhima desires to avoid Karna for going towards Arjuna ib
Karna insultingly challenges Bhima ... ... ib
Bhima turns back and encounters Karna... ... ib
Fierce battle between Bhima and Karna 394
Bhima makes Karna steedless and carless ... 396
Mounting upon another car Karna proceeds against Bhima ... ... ib
The terrible battle between Karna and Bhima ... ib

PAGE.

Dhritarāshtra's eulogy on Bhima 399
Bhima again deprives Karna of his steeds and driver 401
Duryodhana despatches his brother Durjaya to rescue Karna ... ... ib
Bhima slays Durjaya in Karna's sight ... ... ib
Riding upon another car Karna again encounters Bhima 402
Bhima again makes Karna carless 403
Bhima slays Durmukha ... ... ib
Karna rides upon Durmukha's car and encounters Bhima ib
Bhima puts Karna to flight 404
Dhritarāshtra's observations on Bhima's victory over Karna ... ... ib
Five brothers of Duryodhana, *viz.*, Durmarshana, Dussaha, Durmada, Durdhara, and Jaya, rush against Bhima 406
Karna comes back to encounter Bhima ... ... ib
While engaged with Karna, Bhima slays the five brothers of Duryodhana ... ... ib
Karna becomes hopeless of his life 407
Bhima again deprives Karna of his steeds, driver, and bow ... ... ib
Karna once more turns his back upon Bhima ... 408
Duryodhana despatches other brothers of his against Bhima ... ... ib
All of them, *viz.*, Chitra, Upachitra, Chāruchitra, Carāsana, Chitrāyudha, and Chitravarman, slain by Bhima ... ... ib
Riding upon another car Karna again encounters Bhima ib
Karna sorrowfully surveys the slain brothers of Duryodhana 410
Karna hard pressed by Bhima ... ... ib
The warriors of both sides applaud Bhima ... 411
Duryodhana despatches seven of his brothers to the rescue of Karna ... ... ib
Bhima slays the seven brothers, *viz.*, Catrunjaya, Catrusaha, Chittra, Chitrāyudha, Dridha, Chitrasena, and Vikarna, ... 412

PAGE.

Bhima's lament over the remains of Vikarna ... 412
Beholding the slaughter of 31 of his brothers by Bhima, Duryodhana recollects the words of Vidura ... ib
Progress of the battle between Bhima and Karna ... 413
The great carnage caused by both 414
The celestials applaud both the warriors for their heroism and wonderful skill 418
Karna slays Bhima's steeds 419
Pierced by Karna, Bhima's driver seeks refuge in Sātyaki's car ... ... ib
Karna cuts off Bhima's weapons ... ... ib
Bhima leaps into the sky for snatching Karna off his car 420
Karna conceals himself on his vehicle ... ... ib
Bhima's feat applauded by all... ... ... ib
Bhima's weapons being exhausted, he flies away from Karna ... ... ib
Bhima defends himself with the slain bodies of elephants ib
Bhima, recollecting Arjuna's vow, takes not the life of Karna 421
Karna, recollecting his promise to Kunti, takes not Bhima's life ... ... ib
Karna touches Bhima with the end of his bow ... ib
Karna's insulting speech to Bhima ... ... ib
Bhima's reply 422
Arjuna forces Karna to fly from the field... ... ib
Arjuna speeds a terrible shaft after the retreating Karna 423
Açwatthāman cuts it off ... ... ib
Arjuna forces Drona's son to fly away ... ... ib
Encounter between Sātyaki and Alamvusha ... 424
Sātyaki slays Alamvusha 425
Many sons of Dhritarāshtra with Dusçāsana at their head rush against Sātyaki... ... ... ib
Sātyaki checks all of them and makes Dusçāsana steedless ib
The Trigartas fly away before Sātyaki 426
Passing through the Curasenas and the Kalingas Sātyaki proceeds towards Arjuna ... ... ib
Krishna's eulogy on Sātyaki ... ... ib

PAGE.

Arjuna not pleased with the arrival of Sātyaki on account of his anxiety for Yudhishthira... ... 427
Bhuriçravas advances against Sātyaki 428
Ditto addresses Sātyaki ... ... ib
Sātyaki's reply to Bhuriçravas 429
Encounter between Bhuriçravas and Sātyaki ... ib
Each makes the other carless 430
They encounter each other with swords ... ... ib
They fight with fists and arms 431
Krishna urges Arjuna to protect the tired Sātyaki against Bhuriçravas who is fresh 432
Sātyaki succumbs to Bhuriçravas ... ... ib
Arjuna cuts off one of the arms of Bhuriçravas ... 433
Bhuriçravas rebukes Arjuna for his unrighteous feat ... 434
Arjuna justifies his conduct 436
Bhuriçravas acknowledges the justice of Arjuna's plea 437
Krishna blesses Bhuriçravas ... ... ib
Sātyaki slays Bhuriçravas sitting in *Prāya* ... 438
Sātyaki justifies his conduct ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the cause of Sātyaki's defeat by Bhuriçravas 439
Somadatta's humiliation by Civi at the self-choice of Devaki 440
Somadatta obtains a boon from Mahādeva to the effect that some descendant of his should humiliate a descendant of Civi ... ... ib
Sanjaya's eulogy on the Vrishni heroes 441
Arjuna proceeds towards Jayadratha's car... ... 442
Duryodhana urges Karna to put forth all his might for protecting Jayadratha ... ... ib
Karna promises to do his best... 443
Duryodhana and Karna and Vrishasena and Calya and Açwatthāman and Kripa and Jayadratha encompass Arjuna 444
Fierce encounter between Arjuna and those leaders of the Kuru army 445
Arjuna makes Karna steedless, carless, and driverless... 447

PAGE.

Karna rescued by Açwatthāman 447
Arjuna checks all his opponents and causes a great carnage 448
Arjuna encounters Jayadratha who fights bravely with him 452
Arjuna cuts off Jayadratha's standard and slays his driver ib
Jayadratha placed by some mighty car-warriors in their midst 453
Krishna covers the Sun by means of his *Yoga* power... ib
Krishna urges Arjuna to cut off Jayadratha's head without delay ... ... ib
Arjuna puts forth all his prowess ... ... ib
Arjuna's extraordinary heroism 454
Krishna again urges Arjuna to cut off Jayadratha's head without delay 455
Krishna tells Arjuna the story of Vriddhakshatra's curse 456
Arjuna cuts off Jayadratha's head and causes it to fall unperceived on the lap of Vriddhakshatra ... 457
As the head falls down from Vriddhakshatra's lap, the latter's head splits into fragments ... ... ib
Vāsudeva withdraws the darkness created by him ... ib
Keçava and Arjuna blow their conchs ... ... ib
Bhimasena, by a tremendous shout, sends to Yudhishthira the message of victory 458
Kripa in wrath encounters Arjuna ... ... ib
Kaipa swoons away on his car 459
Arjuna's grief at sight of Kripa's death-like swoon ... ib
The encounter between Karna and Sātyaki ... 461
Sātyaki slays Karna's charioteer and steeds ... 462
Vrishasena and Calya and Drona's son rush to the rescue of Karna 463
Sātyaki vanquishes them all but forbears to take their lives remembering the vows of Pārtha ... ib
After vanquishing Karna, Sātyaki leaves Krishna's car and rides on his own vehicle 464
Insulted by Karna, Bhima addresses Arjuna for inducing the latter to permit him to slay Karna ... 465
Arjuna rebukes Karna in manly words ... ... ib

PAGE.

Arjuna vows to slay Karna's son in Karna's presence ... 466
Krishna congratulates Arjuna upon the accomplishment of his vow about the slaughter of Jayadratha ... ib
Arjuna attributes the victory to Krishna's glory ... ib
Krishna points out to Arjuna the results of that day's battle 467
Returning to Yudhishthira Krishna congratulates the Pāndu king upon his victory 469
Yudhishthira attributes the success to Krishna's grace ib
Yudhishthira's hymn to Krishna 470
The despondency of Duryodhana 472
Duryodhana's cheerless address to Drona 473
Drona's reply to Duryodhana 475
Drona vows to slay all the Pānchālas before doffing his armour 476
Drona charges Duryodhana to bear his last message to Açwatthāman ... ... ib
Duryodhana communicates to Karna his suspicions about Drona's sincerity 478
Karna removes Duryodhana's suspicions about Drona 479
Karna attributes the ill-success of the Kurus to destiny ib

Ghatotkacha-badha Parva.

Dreadful battle between the Pānchālas and the Kauravas 480
Duryodhana penetrates into the midst of the Pāndava host 481
The extraordinary heroism of Duryodhana ... ib
The immense slaughter caused by Duryodhana ... ib
Yudhishthira makes Duryodhana insensible ... 482
Drona advances to the rescue of Duryodhana ... ib
All the Pāndava leaders proceed against Drona ... 483
Drona receives all the leaders of the Pāndavas with extraordinary bravery 487
Drona slays Civi ... ... ib
Bhima slays the prince of the Kalingas ... ... ib
Bhima slays Dhruva and Jayarāta 488
Bhima slays Durmada and Dushkarna in the very sight of Duryodhana and others... ... ... ib

PAGE.

The Kuru army put to flight by Bhimasena ... 489
Somadatta's speech to Sātyaki ... ... ib
Sātyaki's manly reply 490
The encounter between Somadatta and Sātyaki ... 491
Somadatta swoons on his car and borne away by his driver ... ... ib
Encounter between Drona and some of the Pāndava leaders ... ... ib
Drona slaughters the Pāndava host 492
The Pāndava host flies away before Drona ... ib
Arjuna and Bhima proceed against Drona ... ib
The Pāndava army rallies at the sight of Arjuna and Bhima proceeding towards Drona ... ... ib
Ghatotkacha rushes at Açwatthāman 493
Description of Ghatotkacha's car ... ... ib
Encounter between Ghatotkacha and Açwatthāman ... 494
Duryodhana urges Cakuni to proceed against Arjuna... 497
Fierce battle between Acwatthāman and the *Rākshasa* host of Ghatotkacha 498
Açwatthāman destroys the car of Ghatotkacha ... 500
Ghatotkacha mounts upon the vehicle of Dhrishtadyumna ib
Both Ghatotkacha and Dhrishtadyumna fight with Açwatthāman... ... ... ib
Açwatthāman destroys the *Rākshasa* host ... 501
The river of blood caused by Açwatthāman ... ib
Ghatotkacha made insensible by Açwatthāman ... 502
Ghatotkacha borne away by Dhrishtadyumna ... ib
All creatures applaud Açwatthāman 503
Bhimasena makes Somadatta insensible ... ... ib
Bhimasena slays Vālhika the father of Somadatta ... 504
Bhimasena slays ten sons of Dhritarāshtra ... ib
Bhima slays Vrikaratha the brother of Karna ... ib
Bhima slays seven brothers of Cakuni ... ... ib
Bhima presses Catachandra down into the Earth ... ib
Bhima slays five other princes of Gāndhāra ... ib
The Kuru kings begin to waver 505
Yudhishthira slaughters the hostile army ... ib

PAGE.

Encounter between Yudhishthira and Drona ... 505
Drona, unable to defeat Yudhishthira, abandons him... 506
Drona routs the Pānchālas ... ... ib
Bhima and Arjuna rally the Pāndava troops and attack the Kauravas with great vigor ... ... ib
Duryodhana urges Karna to defeat the Pāndavas ... ib
Karna vows to slay Pārtha 507
Kripa ridicules Karna ... ... ib
Karna's reply 508
Kripa's rejoinder ... ... ib
Karna vows to cut off Kripa's tongue if Kripa addresses him again in the same strain 510
Açwatthāman in rage rebukes Karna 511
Duryodhana and Kripa pacify Karna and Açwatthāman 512
The Pāndavas furiously assail Karna 513
Karna beats back his assailants causing a great carnage among them ... ... ib
Arjuna encounters Karna 515
Arjuna slays the steeds and driver of Karna and makes him bowless ... ... ib
Karna takes shelter in Kripa's car 516
Duryodhana resolves to himself proceed against Arjuna ib
Kripa entertaining fears for Duryodhana's life urges Açwatthāman to proceed against Arjuna ... ib
Açwatthāman makes Duryodhana desist from an encounter with Arjuna 517
Duryodhana urges Açwatthāman to slay the Pānchālas and the Somakas ... ... ib
Açwatthāman's speech to Duryodhana 518
Açwatthāman routs the Pānchālas 519
Dhrishtadyumna proceeds against Açwatthāman ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna and Açwatthāman address each other in fiery language 520
The fierce encounter between Dhrishtadyumna and Açwatthāman... 521
Açwatthāman cuts off the bow, the standard, the drivers, ib
and the steeds of Dhrishtadyumna ... ... ib

PAGE.

The Pānchālas fly away from Açwatthāman ... 522
The Pāndava leaders encounter Açwatthāman ... ib
Duryodhana and Drona rush to Açwatthāman's rescue ib
The fierce battle between the two hosts ... ... ib
Arjuna slaughters the Kuru army ... ... ib
The Pāndavas attack Drona 523
Drona routs his assailants ... ... ib
Bhima and Arjuna rally the retreating troops ... ib
The Kauravas fly away before Arjuna ... ... ib
Duryodhana and Drona unable to rally their troops ... ib
Sātyaki proceeds towards Somadatta ... ... ib
Encounter between Sātyaki and Somadatta ... 524
Somadatta slain by Sātyaki 525
Yudhishthira attacks Drona 526
Krishna dissuades Yudhishthira from fighting with Drona on the ground that kings should fight with none but kings ... ... ib
The cheerless state of both armies 527
Duryodhana commands his troops to take up lighted lamps and torches 528
The brilliant sight presented on the field of battle ... 529
Duryodhana appoints his brothers to protect Drona from the rear 532
Yudhishthira commands all his warriors to proceed against Drona only 534
Diverse Kuru leaders resist diverse leaders of the Pāndava host ... ... ib
Encounter between Yudhishthira and Kritavarman ... 535
Yudhishthira worsted by Kritavarman 536
Sātyaki slays the Kuru warrior Bhuri 537
Açwatthāman rushes against Sātyaki ... ... ib
Ghatotkacha rushes against Açwatthāman ... ib
Encounter between Ghatotkacha and Açwatthāman ... ib
Açwatthāman made insensible by Ghatotkacha ... 538
Recovering his senses, Açwatthāman makes his antagonist insensible 539
Ghatotkacha borne away from the field by his driver ... ib

PAGE.

Fierce encounter between Bhima and Duryodhana ... 539
Bhima crushes the steeds, the driver, and the car of Duryodhana 540
Duryodhana is believed to be slain ... ... ib
The Pāndava leaders rush against Drona and fight fiercely with him ... ... ib
Encounter between Karna and Sahadeva 541
Sahadeva worsted by Karna who touches him with his bow 542
Calya encounters Virāta ... ... ib
Virāta made carless by Calya ... ... ib
Calya slays Catānika the brother of Virāta ... 543
Virāta rushes against Calya once more ... ... ib
Calya makes Virāta insensible ... ... ib
Encounter between Alamvusha and Arjuna ... ib
Alamvusha vanquished by Arjuna 544
Encounter between Chitrasena and Nakula ... ib
Nakula vanquishes Chitrasena who seeks shelter in Kritavarman's car 545
Encounter between Vrishasena and Drupada ... ib
Drupada swoons and is borne away by his driver ... ib
Vrishasena causes a greater slaughter among the Pānchālas 546
Prativindhya vanquished by Dusçāsana, and rescued by his brothers 547
Cakuni encounters Nakula 548
Kripa encounters Cikhandin ... ... ib
Cikhandin borne away insensible from the fight ... 549
Dhrishtadyumna rushes against Drona 550
Karna and Drona's son and Calya and Dusçāsana and Duryodhana rush to Drona's rescue and attack Dhrishtadyumna 551
Dhrishtadyumna fights with all his foes 552
Dhrishtadyumna slays Drumasena ... ... ib
Sātyaki proceeds to the rescue of Dhrishtadyumna ... ib
Karna counsels Duryodhana to encompass and slay Dhrishtadyumna and Sātyaki 554

PAGE.

Duryodhana despatches Cakuni with a large force against Arjuna 554
Sātyaki surrounded by many leaders of the Kuru army 555
Sātyaki forces Duryodhana to fly away and routs the foes with whom he is engaged 556
Arjuna deprives Cakuni of his car 557
Arjuna slaughters the Kuru army ... ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna checks Drona and causes an immense carnage 558
Duryodhana's angry address to Drona and Karna ... ib
Drona and Karna furiously attack the Pāndava army... 559
The Pāndava army routed by Drona and Karna ... 560
Arjuna and Krishna rally the retreating troops ... ib
The fierce battle between the Kurus and the Pāndavas 561
Karna encounters Dhrishtadyumna ... ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna made carless by Karna ... ... ib
Karna's steeds slain by Dhrishtadyumna ... ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna mounts on the car of Arjuna ... 562
Karna routs the Pānchālas ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's address to Arjuna on beholding the prowess of Karna 563
Krishna's counsels about Ghatotkacha encountering Karna ib
Krishna's address to Ghatotkacha 564
Arjuna's ditto to ditto 565
Ghatotkacha's reply ... ... ib
Ghatotkacha rushes against Karna ... ... ib
Arrival of Jatāsura's son Alamvusha at the Kuru camp 566
Duryodhana urges Jatāsura's son to slay Ghatotkacha ib
Encounter between Alamvusha and Ghatotkacha ... 567
Alamvusha slain by Ghatotkacha 568
Ghatotkacha's address to Duryodhana ... ... ib
Description of Ghatotkacha's person, armour, weapons, and car 569
Fierce encounter between Karna and Ghatotkacha ... 570
Alāyudha comes to Duryodhana and vows to slay Bhima 577
Duryodhana urges Alāyudha to slay Bhima ... ib
Description of Alāyudha's person, and accoutrements 578

PAGE.

Beholding the slaughter caused by Ghatotkacha, Duryodhana urges Alāyudha to encounter Ghatotkacha... 579
Ghatotkacha abandoning Karna proceeds towards Alāyudha ... ... ib
Bhima also proceeds against Alāyudha 580
Encounter between Bhima and Alāyudha... ... ib
Krishna despatches Ghatotkacha to Bhimasena's rescue 581
The Pāndava leaders, having slain Alāyudha's *Rākshasas,* proceed against Karna 582
Encounter between Alāyudha and Ghatotkacha ... ib
Ghatotkacha cuts off Alāyudha's head 584
Despondency of Duryodhana upon beholding Alāyudha slain ... ... ib
Ghatotkacha again encounters Karna 585
Ghatotkacha slays Karna's steeds and driver, and disappears from view 586
The last terrible illusion of Ghatotkacha ... ... ib
The great slaughter in Duryodhana's army caused by Ghatotkacha 587
The rout of the Kauravas 588
Karna's steeds again slain by Ghatotkacha ... ib
The Kauravas urge Karna to slay the *Rākshasa,* with his invincible dart ... ... ib
Karna hurls his dart 589
Ghatotkacha slain... ... ... ib
Falling upon the Kaurava army with his gigantic body, Ghatotkacha slays with his last breath a full *Akshauhini* of Kuru troops 590
The grief of the Pāndavas ... ... ib
The joy of Vāsudeva ... ... ib
Arjuna asks Vāsudeva the cause of his untimely joy ... ib
Vāsudeva's answer 591
Vāsudeva recites to Arjuna how he (Vāsudeva) had gradually caused all the foes of the Pāndavas to be slain 593
Dhritarāshtra asks Sanjaya the reason of Karna's not having hurled the fatal dart at Arjuna... ... 595

PAGE.

Sanjaya assigns Krishna's policy as the reason ... 596
Dhritarāshtra's grief at the folly of Karna and Duryodhana in using the dart against a minor foe ... ib
Sanjaya informs the old king that though the Kurus every night resolved to hurl the fatal dart the next day at either Krishna or Arjuna, yet they repeatedly forgot their resolution when engaged in battle ... 597
Sātyaki asks Krishna why Karna had not hurled his dart at Arjuna... ... ... ib
Krishna's answer 598
Dhritarāshtra attributes the ill success of the Kurus to Destiny, their own folly, and the policy of Krishna 599
Yudhishthira's grief at the fall of Ghatotkacha ... 600
Yudhishthira proceeds in wrath against Karna ... 602
Vyāsa approaches Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Vyāsa comforts Yudhishthira... 603
Yudhishthira urges Dhrishtadyumna to check Drona... ib
The Pāndava leaders all rush against Drona ... 604
Duryodhana and others come to Drona's rescue ... ib
Fierce battle between the two hosts ... ... ib
Both armies become sorely afflicted with fatigue and blind with sleep ... ... ib
Arjuna grants permission to the warriors to sleep ... 605
The Kaurava troops bless Arjuna for this act of kindness ib
All the combatants lay themselves down on the field of battle to sleep 606
The moon rises and dispels the darkness 607
Both hosts, rising from sleep, again prepare for battle ib
Duryodhana approaches Drona and taxes him wrathfully for the untimely kindness shown to the Pāndava army... ... ... ib
Drona promises to slay all the Pānchālas... ... 608
Drona describes to Duryodhana the measure of Arjuna's might and prowess ... ... ib
Angered thereat, Duryodhana vows to slay Arjuna ... 609
Drona ridicules Duryodhana ... ... ib

PAGE.

Drona mocks Cakuni 609
Drona urges Duryodhana to do his best in battle ... 610
At sunrise both hosts address their prayers to the sun ib
The Kauravas divided into two bodies ... ... ib
Bhima urges Arjuna to put forth all his vigor ... 611
Fierce battle between the two armies ... ... ib
Drona moves away to the north of the field of battle... 612
Drona slays the three grandsons of Drupada ... ib
Drupada and Virāta attack Drona ... ... ib
Drona slays both Drupada and Virāta 613
Dhrishtadyumna vows to slay Drona that very day ... ib
The Pānchālas attack Drona fiercely ... ... ib
Drona receives them with vigor ... ... ib
Bhimasena's address to Dhrishtadyumna 614
Bhima and Dhrishtadyumna attack Drona's division ... ib
The progress of the battle 615
Drona and Arjuna become the refuge of their respective armies 616
Duryodhana, Karna, Drona, and Dusçāsana engage with Nakula, Sahadeva Bhima, and Arjuna... ... 617
Nakula worsted by Duryodhana 618
Sahadeva slays Dusçāsana's driver ... ... ib
Dusçāsana worsted by Sahadeva 619
Fierce encounter between Karna and Bhima ... ib
Encounter between Drona and Arjuna 620
The *Siddhas* and the *Rishis* in the welkin highly applaud both the warriors 621
The engagement becomes general ... ... ib
Dusçāsana vanquished by Dhrishtadyumna ... 622
Kritavarman and three of his uterine brothers engage with Dhrishtadyumna and Nakula and Sahadeva ... ib
Kritavarman and his brothers being checked by the twins, Dhrishtadyumna proceeds towards Drona ... 623
Duryodhana rushes to Drona's rescue ... ... ib
Sātyaki rushes towards the Kuru king ... ... ib
Duryodhana addresses Sātyaki and blames himself as the cause of the war ... ... ib

PAGE.

Sātyaki's answer 624
Encounter between Duryodhana and Sātyaki ... ib
Duryodhana worsted by Sātyaki 625
Karna rushes to the rescue of Duryodhana ... ib
Bhima rushes towards Karna ... ... ib
Yudhishthira urges his warriors to rush to the rescue of Sātyaki and Bhima and the twins 626
Arjuna attacks the Kurus and Drona attacks the Pānchālas... ... ... ib
The fierce slaughter caused by Drona 627
Krishna urges the Pāndavas to slay Drona by abandoning virtue ... ... ib
Yudhishthira accepts Krishna's advice with difficulty... ib
Arjuna doth not accept it ... ... ib
Bhima slays an elephant of the name of Açwatthāman ib
Bhima informs Drona of the death of Açwatthāman... 628
Drona does not believe Bhima ... ... ib
Drona slays the Pānchālas by means of the *Brāhma* weapon ... ... ib
The *Rishis* appear in the welkin and reprove Drona for using the *Brāhma* weapon against persons not acquainted with it 629
They call upon Drona to lay aside his weapons and leave the Earth soon ... ... ib
Drona asks Yudhishthira whether the report about Açwatthāman's death is true ... ... ib
Krishna urges Yudhishthira to save his army by an untruth 630
Bhimasena urges the king to do the same... ... ib
Yudhisthira assures Drona of Açwatthāman's death ... ib
The effect of the untruth on Yudhishthira's vehicle ... ib
Drona filled with despair ... ... ib
The celestial weapons no longer appear at Drona's bidding 631
The exhaustion of Drona's weapons ... ... ib
Fierce encounter between Drona and Dhrishtadyumna 632
Sātyaki rescues Dhrishtadyumna 624
Arjuna applauds the heroism of Sātyaki ... ... ib

PAGE.

Sātyaki encountered by Duryodhana, Karna, and Kripa 635
Yudhishthira urges his troops to rush against Drona ... 636
Drona receives his assailants with great vigor ... ib
Drona again uses the *Brāhma* weapon ... ... ib
Bhima urges Dhrishtadyumna to slay Drona quickly ib
Dhrishtadyumna proceeds against Drona 637
Bhima again reminds Drona of Açwatthāman's death ib
Drona's grief 638
Drona lays aside his weapons ... ... ib
Drona devotes himself to *Yoga* ... ... ib
Drona proceeds to heaven in a blaze of light ... ib
Only Krishna and others behold the sight ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna cuts off Drona's head 639
Arjuna loudly calls upon Dhrishtadyumna to bring the preceptor alive ... ... ib
Others cry out, urging Dhrishtadyumna not to slay Drona ib
Dhrishtadyumna throws the head of Drona down amongst the Kurus ... ... ib
The flight of the Kurus at sight of Drona's slaughter ib
Only Açwatthāman does not fly away 642
Açwatthāman asks Duryodhana the cause of the general rout 643
Duryodhana asks Kripa to inform Açwatthāman of the truth ... ... ib
Kripa informs Açwatthāman of Drona's death ... ib
The rage of Açwatthāman on hearing Drona's death 645
Dhritarāshtra asks Sanjaya as to what Açwatthāman did upon receiving the news of Drona's death ... ib
Açwatthāman vows to destroy the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas 648
The history of the *Nārāyana* weapon 649
Açwatthāman invokes the *Nārāyana* weapon ... 650
The fierce portents in Nature ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra asks Sanjaya what counsel was adopted by the Pāndavas on seeing the retreating Kauravas once more advance to battle 651

PAGE.

Yudhishthira's address to Arjuna on seeing the Kauravas return for battle 651
Arjuna's reply, describing the prowess of Açwatthāman and the unrighteousness of the Pāndavas in slaying Drona... 652
Bhima's answer in vindication of the deed ... 654
Dhrishtadyumna's speech in justification of his conduct 656

Nārāyanāstra-mokshana Parva.

Dhritarāshtra asks Sanjaya as to what the Pāndavas said unto Dhrishtadyumna on hearing his speech ... 658
Sātyaki's wrathful answer to Dhrishtadyumna ... 659
Dhrishtadyumna taunts Sātyaki on account of the slaughter of Bhuriçravas 660
Sātyaki rushes towards Dhrishtadyumna for slaying him 661
Bhima holds him back ... ... ib
Sahadeva endeavours to bring about a reconciliation ... 662
Krishna and Yudhishthira restore peace with great difficulty 663
Açwatthāman causes a great carnage among the Pāndava troops ... ... ib
Açwatthāman invokes the *Nārāyana* weapon ... 664
The agitation of the Pāndava army ... ... ib
Beholding Arjuna standing indifferent, Yudhishthira urges his troops to fly away 665
Yudhishthira's observations on Drona's friendship for the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Krishna urges the Pāndava combatants to throw down their arms as the only means for pacifying the *Nārāyana* weapon 666
All the Pāndava warrior comply except Bhimasena ... ib
Bhima vows to contend against Açwatthāman's weapon ib
Bhima urges Arjuna not to abandon *Gāndiva* ... 667
Bhima overwhelmed by the energy of the *Nārāyana* weapon ... ... ib
Arjuna covers Bhima with the *Varuna* weapon ... ib

PAGE.

Arjuna and Krishna, alighting from their car, proceed on foot towards Bhima and forcibly bring him down from his car, making him abandon his weapons ... 668
The *Nārāyana* weapon is pacified 669
Duryodhana urges Açwatthāman to use the same weapon once more ... ... ib
Açwatthāman informs Duryodhana of his inability to use the same weapon a second time ... ... ib
Encounter between Dhrishtadyumna and Açwatthāman 670
Dhrishtadyumna made steedless and driverless ... ib
Sātyaki rushes against Açwatthāman 671
Açwatthāman worsted by Sātyaki ... ... ib
Kripa, Karna, Duryodhana, Dusçāsana, and Vrishasena all proceed against Sātyaki ... ... ib
Sātyaki deprives Açwatthāman of his car... ... ib
Approaching on another car Açwatthāman makes Sātyaki insensible 672
Sātyaki borne away from the fight ... ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna greatly afflicted by Açwatthāman ... ib
The Pāndava leaders rush against and encounter Açwatthāman ... ... ib
Açwatthāman slays Sudarçana, Paurava, and the prince of the Chedis 673
Fierce battle between Bhima and Açwatthāman ... 674
Bhima becomes insensible and is borne away from the battle 676
The Pānchālas fly away from Açwatthāman ... ib
Açwatthāman makes a great carnage amongst them ... ib
Arjuna, rallying the troops, encounters Açwatthāman ib
Arjuna addresses Açwatthāman in harsh words ... 677
Açwatthāman invokes the *Āgneya* weapons ... ib
The fierce portents in Nature 678
The great slaughter in the Pāndava army ... ib
Arjuna baffles Açwatthāman's weapon by invoking the *Brāhma* weapon 679
The disturbance in Nature disappears ... ... ib
Arjuna and Keçava emerge uninjured from the effects of the *Āgneya* weapon ... ... ib

PAGE.

Açwatthāman's despondence 680
Açwatthāman meets Vyāsa and enquires of him about the cause of the failure of his irresistible weapon in slaying Arjuna and Keçava ... ... ib
Vyāsa recites to Açwatthāman the history of Nārāyana ib
Nārāyana's hymn to Mahādeva 682
Mahādeva shows himself to Nārāyana and gives him boons 683
Nārāyana creates Nara from his own self... ... ib
Identity of Keçava and Arjuna with Nārāyana and Nara 684
Açwatthāman, after listening to Vyāsa's recitation, retires from the field, having caused the Kuru army to be withdrawn 685
Arjuna meets with Vyāsa and enquires of him about the invisible person who aided him in the battle on the day of Jayadratha's slaughter ... ... ib
Vyāsa informs Arjuna that the invisible person was none else than Mahādeva himself ... ... ib
The attributes of Mahādeva ... ... ib
The destruction of Daksha's Sacrifice by Mahādeva ... 689
The destruction of the tripple city by Mahādeva ... 690
Mahādeva paralyses Indra's arm 691
The gods with Indra repair to Brahman ... ... ib
Brahman with the gods comes to Mahādeva ... 692
Brahman's hymn to Mahādeva ... ... ib
The other attributes of Mahādeva ... ... ib
Explanation of some of the names of Mahādeva ... 694
Fruits that arise from a study of the *Drona Parva* ... 696

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

DRONA PARVA.

SECTION I.

(Dronābhisheka Parva.)

Having bowed down to Nārāyana, and Nara the foremost of male beings, as also to the goddess Saraswati, must the word Jaya be uttered.

Janamejaya said,—"Hearing that his sire Devavrata of unrivalled vigor and sturdiness and might and energy and prowess had been slain by Cikhandin the prince of the Pānchālas,[1] what, indeed, O regenerate *Rishi*, did the powerful king Dhritarāshtra with eyes bathed in tears do ?[2] O illustrious one, his son (Duryodhana) wished for sovereignty after vanquishing those mighty bowmen, *viz.*, the sons of Pāndu, through Bhishma and Drona and other great car-warriors.[3] Tell me, O thou that hast wealth of asceticism, all that he of Kuru's race did after that chief of all bowmen had been slain !"[4]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing that his sire had been slain, king Dhritarāshtra of Kuru's race, filled with anxiety and grief, obtained no peace of mind.[5] And while he of Kuru's race was thus continually brooding over that sorrow, Gavalgani's son of pure soul once more came to him.[6] Then, O monarch, Dhritarāshtra the son of Amvikā, addressed Sanjaya, who had that night come back from the camp to the city called after the elephant.[7] With a heart rendered exceedingly cheerless in consequence of his having heard of Bhishma's slaughter, and desirous of the victory of his sons, he indulged in these lamentations in great distress.[8]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'After having wept for the high-souled Bhishma of terrible prowess, what, O son, did the Kauravas,

urged by fate, next do ?[9] Indeed, when that high-souled and invincible hero was slain, what did the Kauravas do, sunk as they were in an ocean of grief ?[10] Indeed, that swelling and highly efficient host of the high-souled Pāndavas, would, O Sanjaya, excite the keenest fears of even the three worlds ![11] Tell me, therefore, O Sanjaya, what the (assembled) kings did after Devavrata, that bull of Kuru's race, had fallen ![12]

"Sanjaya said,—'Listen, O king, with undivided attention, to me as I recite what thy sons did after Devavrata had been slaughtered in battle.[13] When Bhishma, O monarch, of prowess incapable of being baffled, was slain, thy warriors as also the Pāndavas both reflected by themselves (on the situation).[14] Reflecting on the duties of the Kshatriya order, they were filled with wonder and joy; but acting according to those duties of their own order, they all bowed to that high-souled warrior.*[15] Then those tigers among men contrived for Bhishma of immeasurable prowess a bed with a pillow made of straight shafts.[16] And having made arrangements for Bhishma's protection, they addressed one another (in pleasant converse). Then bidding Gangā's son their farewell and walking round him,[17] and looking at one another with eyes red in anger, those Kshatriyas, urged by fate, once more went out against one another for battle.[18] Then, by the blare of trumpets and the beat of drums, the divisions of thy army, as also those of the foe, marched out.[19] After the fall of Gangā's son, O king, and when the best part of the day had passed away, yeilding to the influence of wrath, with hearts afflicted by fate,[20] and disregarding the words, worthy of acceptance, of the high-souled Bhishma, those foremost ones of Bharata's race went out with great speed, armed with weapons.[21] In consequence of thy folly and thy

* The first line of this verse, as read in the Bengal text, is certainly vicious. I follow the Bombay reading. Instead of *Aprahrishtāscha*, the Bombay text reads *Prahrishtāscha*, and for *Viçāmpate* it reads *niçamya te*. The second line, as read in the Bengal text, seems to me to be correct, the Bombay reading being objectionable. Nilakantha explains, that they *wondered*, because the slaughter of even a reverend superior was not sinful; and they were *glad*, because that slaughter in battle opened to the victim the way to heaven.—T.

son's, and of the slaughter of Cāntanu's son, the Kauravas with all the kings seemed to be summoned by Death himself.[22] The Kurus, deprived of Devavrata, were filled with great anxiety, and resembled a herd of goats and sheep without a herdsman, in a forest abounding with beasts of prey.[23] Indeed, after the fall of that foremost one of Bharata's race, the Kuru host looked like the firmament divested of stars, or, like the sky without the atmosphere ;[24] or like the Earth with blasted crops, or like an oration disfigured by bad grammar,* or like the *Asura* host of old after Vali had been smitten down ;[25] or like a beautiful damsel deprived of husband,† or like a river whose waters have dried up, or like a roe deprived of her mate and encompassed in the woods by wolves ;[26] or like a specious mountain-cave with its lion killed by a *Çarabha*.‡ Indeed, O chief of the Bhāratas, the Bhārata host, on the fall of Gangā's son,[27] became like a frail boat on the bosom of the ocean, tossed by a tempest blowing from every side. Exceedingly afflicted by the mighty and heroic Pāndavas of sure aim,[28] the Kaurava host, with its steeds, car-warriors, and elephants, much troubled, became exceedingly distressed, helpless, and panic-struck.[29] And the frightened kings and the common soldiers, no longer relying upon one another, of that army, deprived of Devavrata, seemed to sink into the nethermost region of the world.[30] Then the Kauravas remembered Karna, who, indeed, is equal to Devavrata himself. All hearts turned to that foremost of all wielders of arms, that one resembling a guest resplendent (with learning and ascetic austerities).[31] And all hearts turned to him, as the heart of a man in distress turneth to a friend capable of relieving that distress. And, O Bhārata, the kings then cried out, saying,—*Karna, Karna !*[32] The son of Rādhā, our friend, that son of a *Sutà*, that one who is ever prepared to lay down his life in battle ! Endued with great fame, Karna, with his followers and friends, did not fight

---

* Literally, like an oration teeming with unrefined expressions.—T.

† *I. e.*, deprived of robes and ornaments because of her widowhood.—T.

‡ A *Carabha* is a fabulous animal of eight legs supposed to be stronger than the lion.—T.

for these ten days! O, summon him soon! That mighty-armed hero, in the presence of all the Kshatriyas, during the tale of valiant and mighty car-warriors, was by Bhishma classed as an *Ardha-ratha*, although that bull among men is equal to two *Mahārathas*![33-35] Even thus was *he* classed during the tale of *Rathas* and *Atirathas*, *he* that is the foremost (of all *Rathas* and *Atirathas*), *he* that is respected by all heroes, he that would venture to fight even with Yama, Kuvera, Varuna, and Indra![36] Through anger caused by this, O king, he had said unto Gangā's son these words:—As long as thou livest, O thou of Kuru's race, I will never fight![37] If thou, however, succeedest in slaying the sons of Pāndu in great battle, I shall, O Kauravya, with Duryodhana's permission, retire into the woods![38] If, on the other hand, thou, O Bhishma, slain by the Pāndavas, attainest to heaven, I shall then, on a single car, slay all of them, whom thou regardest as great car-warriors![39]—Having said this, the mighty-armed Karna of great fame, with thy son's approval, did not fight for the first ten days.[40] Bhishma, of great prowess in battle and of immeasurable might, slew, O Bhārata, a very large number of warriors belonging to Yudhishthira's army![41] When, however, that hero of sure aim and great energy was slain, thy sons thought of Karna, like persons desirous of crossing a river thinking of a boat.[42] Thy warriors and thy sons, together with all the kings, cried out, saying,—*Karna!* And they all said,—Even this is the time for the display of his prowess![43]—Our hearts then turned to that Karna who derived his knowledge of weapons from Jamadagni's son, and whose prowess is incapable of being resisted![44] He, indeed, O king, is competent to save us from great dangers, like Govinda always saving the celestials from great dangers!'"[45]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Unto Sanjaya who was thus repeatedly applauding Karna, Dhritarāshtra, sighing like a snake, said these words.[46]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'[I understand] that the hearts of all of you turned towards Vikartana's son Karna, and that all of you, again, saw that son of Rādhā, that hero of the *Suta* caste, ever prepared to lay down his life in battle.[47] I hope that hero,

of prowess incapable of being baffled, did not falsify the expectations of Duryodhana and his brothers, all of whom were then afflicted with grief and fear, and desirous of being relieved from their danger.[48] When Bhishma, that refuge of the Kauravas, was slain, could Karna, that foremost of bowmen, succeed in filling up the gap caused ?[49] Filling up that gap, could Karna inspire the foe with fear ? Could he also crown with fruit the hopes, entertained by my sons, of victory ?' "[50]

SECTION II.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then Adhiratha's son of the *Suta* caste, knowing that Bhishma had been slain, became desirous of rescuing, like a brother, thy son's army from the distress into which it had fallen, and which then resembled a boat sunk in the fathomless ocean.[1] [Indeed], O king, having heard that that mighty car-warrior and foremost of men, that hero of unfading glory, *viz.*, Cantanu's son, had been thrown down (from his car), that grinder of foes, that foremost of all wielders of bows, *viz.*, Karna, soon came (to the field of battle).[2] When that best of car-warriors, *viz.*, Bhishma, was slain by the foe, Karna speedily came there, desirous of rescuing the Kuru host, which resembled a boat sunk in the ocean, like a sire desirous of rescuing his children.[3]

" 'And Karna (addressing the soldiers) said,—That Bhishma in whom were firmness, intelligence, prowess, vigor, truth, self-restraint, and all the virtues of a hero, as also celestial weapons, and humility, and modesty, agreeable speech, and freedom from malice,[4] when that ever-grateful Bhishma, that slayer of the foes of Brāhmanas, in whom were these attributes as permanently as *Lakshmi* in the Moon, alas, when that Bhishma, that slayer of hostile heroes, hath received his quietus, I regard all other heroes as already slain![5] In consequence of the eternal connection (of all things) with work, nothing exsists in this world that is imperishable. When Bhishma of high vows hath been slain, who is there that would take upon himself to say with certitude that tomorrow's sun will rise ?[6] When he that was endued with prowess equal to that of the

Vasus, he that was born of the energy of the *Vasus*, when he, that ruler of the earth, hath once more been united with the *Vasus*, grieve ye, therefore, for your possessions and children, for this Earth and the Kurus, and this host !*[7]—

"Sanjaya continued,—"Upon the fall of that boon-giving hero of great might, that lord of the world, *viz.*, Cāntanu's son of great energy, and upon the (consequent) defeat of the Bhāratas, Karna, with a cheerless heart and eyes filled with tears, began to console (the Dhārtarāshtras).[8] Hearing these words of Rādhā's son, thy sons, O monarch, and thy troops, began to wail aloud and shed copious tears of grief corresponding with the loudness of those wails.[9] When, however, the dreadful battle once more took place and the Kaurava divisions, urged on by the kings, once more set up loud shouts, that bull among mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, Karna, then addressed the great car-warriors (of the Kaurava army) and said words which caused them great delight.[10]—In this transient world everything is continually running (towards the jaws of Death). Thinking of this, I regard everything as ephemeral. When, however, all of you were here, how could Bhishma, that bull among the Kurus, immovable as a hill, be thrown down from his car ?[11] When that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Cāntanu, hath been overthrown, who even now lieth on the ground like the Sun himself dropped (from the firmament), the Kuru kings are scarcely competent to bear Dhananjaya, like trees incapable of bearing the mountain-wind.[12] I shall, however, now protect, as that high-souled one did, this helpless Kuru host of cheerless mien, whose foremost warriors have already been slain by the foe ![13] Let this burden now devolve on me. I see that this universe is transient, since that foremost of heroes hath been slain in battle. Why shall I, then, cherish any fear of battle ?†[14] Careering, therefore, on the field,

* The sense seems to be, that when such a one hath been slain, what is there on earth that is not subject to destruction ? Ye, should, therefore, grieve for your wealth, children, &c., as things already gone.—T.

† There is a slight difference of reading in this *sloka* as it occurs in the Bombay text. The sense seems to be, that since everything is destined to death, why should I fear to do my duty ?—T.

I shall despatch those bulls of Kuru's race, (*viz.*, the Pāndavas), to Yama's abode by means of my straight shafts. Regarding fame as the highest object in the world, I shall slay them in battle, or, slain by the foe, shall sleep on the field![15] Yudhishthira is possessed of firmness, intelligence, virtue, and might. Vrikodara is equal to an hundred elephants in prowess. Arjuna is young and is the son of the chief of the celestials. The Pāndava host, therefore, is not capable of being easily defeated by the very celestials.[16] That force in which are the twins, each resembling Yama himself, that force in which are Sātyaki and the son of Devaki, that force is like the jaws of Death. No coward, approaching it, can come back with life.[17] The wise oppose swelling ascetic power with ascetic austerities. So should force be opposed by force. Verily, my mind is firmly fixed upon opposing the foe and protecting my own party.[18] O charioteer, I shall today certainly resist the might of the enemy, and vanquish him by repairing only to the field of battle. I will not tolerate this intestine feud.[19] When the troops are broken, he that cometh (for aiding in the endeavour to rally) is a friend. I shall either achieve this righteous feat worthy of an honest man, or casting off my life shall follow Bhishma! I shall either slay all my foes banded together, or slain by them, proceed to the regions reserved for heroes.[20] O charioteer, I know that even this is what I should do when women and children cry for help or when Duryodhana's prowess sustains a check. Therefore, I shall today conquer the foe.[21] Reckless of my very life in this terrible battle, I shall protect the Kurus and slay the sons of Pāndu! Slaying in battle all my foes banded together, I shall bestow (undisputed) sovereignty on Dhritarāshtra's son![22] Let my armour, beautiful, made of gold, bright, and radiant with jewels and gems, be donned; and my head-gear, of effulgence equal to that of the Sun; and my bows and arrows that resemble fire, poison, or snakes.[23] Let also sixteen quivers be tied (to my car) at the proper places, and let a number of excellent bows be procured. Let also shafts, and darts, and heavy maces, and my conch, variegated with gold, be got ready.[24] Bring also my variegated, beautiful, and excellent standard, made of gold, possessed of the effulgence of the lotus,

and bearing the device of the elephant's girth, cleaning it with a delicate cloth, and decking it with excellent garlands and a network of wires.[25]* O charioteer's son, bring me also, with speed, some fleet steeds of the hue of tawny clouds, not lean, and bathed in water sanctified with *mantras*, and furnished with trappings of bright gold.[26] Bring me also, with speed, an excellent car decked with garlands of gold, adorned with gems, bright as the Sun or the Moon, furnished with every necessary, as also with weapons, and unto which are yoked excellent animals.[27] Bring me also a number of excellent bows of great toughness, and a number of excellent bowstrings capable of smiting (the foe), and some quivers, large and full of shafts, and some coats of mail for my body.[28] Bring me also, with speed, O hero, every (auspicious) article needed for occasions of setting out (for battle), such as vessels of brass and gold full of curds. Let garlands of flowers be brought, and let them be put on the (proper) limbs of my body. Let drums also be beat for victory![29] Go, O charioteer, quickly to the spot where the diadem-decked (Arjuna), and Vrikodara, and Dharma's son (Yudhishthira), and the twins, are! Encountering them in battle, either I shall slay them, or, slain by them, my foes, shall follow Bhishma![30] That force in which are king Yudhishthira firm in truth, and Bhima, and Arjuna, and Vāsudeva, and Sātyaki, and the Srinjayas, that force, I think, is incapable of being conquered by the kings![31] If all-destroying Death himself, with unremitting vigilance, were to protect Kiritin, still would I slay him, encountering him in battle, or repair myself to Yama's abode by Bhishma's track![32] Verily, I say, that I will repair into the midst of those heroes! These (kings) that are my allies are not provokers of intestine feuds, or of weak attachment to me, or of unrighteous souls.—'[33]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Riding on an excellent and costly car of great strength, with an excellent pole, decked with gold, auspicious, furnished with a standard, and unto which were yoked excellent steeds that were fleet as the wind, Karna proceeded (to battle) for victory.[34] Worshipped by the foremost of Kuru

* The last line is read incorrectly, I think, in the Bombay text.—T.

car-warriors like Indra by the celestials, that high-souled and fierce bowman, endued with immeasurable energy like the Sun himself, upon his car decked with gold and jewels and gems, furnished with an excellent standard, unto which were yoked excellent steeds, and whose rattle resembled the roll of the clouds, proceeded, accompanied by a large force, to that field of battle where that bull of Bharata's race (Bhishma) had paid his debt to nature.[35-36] Of beautiful person and endued with the splendour of fire, that great bowman and mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Adhiratha, then mounted on his own beautiful car possessed of the effulgence of fire, and shone like the lord of the celestials himself riding on his celestial car.' "[37]

SECTION III.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the grandsire, *viz.*, the venerable Bhishma, that destroyer of all the Kshatriyas, that hero of righteous soul and immeasurable energy, that great bowman thrown down (from his car) by Savyasāchin with his celestial weapons, lying on a bed of arrows, and looking like the vast ocean dried up by the mighty winds,[1-2] the hope thy sons had for victory disappeared along with their coats of mail and peace of mind. Beholding him who was always an island unto persons sinking in the fathomless ocean in their endeavours to cross it, beholding that hero covered with arrows that had coursed in a stream as continuous as that of Yamunā, that hero who looked like *Maināka* of unbearable energy thrown down on the earth by the great Indra, that warrior lying prostrate on the earth like the Sun himself dropped down from the firmament, that one who looked like the inconceivable Indra himself after his defeat of old by Vritra, that depriver of all warriors of their senses, that foremost of all combatants, that signal of all bowmen,—beholding that hero and bull among men, *viz.*, thy sire Bhishma of high vows, that grandsire of the Bharatas,—thrown down in battle and lying, covered with Arjuna's shafts, on a hero's bed, Adhiratha's son (Karna) alighted from his car, in great affliction, filled with grief, and almost senseless.[3-3] Afflicted (with sorrow), and with eyes

troubled with tears, he proceeded on foot. Saluting him with joined palms, and addressing him reverentially, he said,[9]—I am Karna! Blessed be thou! Speak to me, O Bhārata, in sacred and auspicious words, and look at me, opening thy eyes![10] No man certainly enjoyeth in this world the fruits of his pious deeds, since thou, reverend in years and devoted to virtue, liest on the ground, slain (by the foe)![11] O thou that art the foremost one among the Kurus, I do not see that there is any one else among them, who is competent (like thee) in filling the treasury, in counsels, in the matter of disposing the troops in battle array, and in the use of weapons![12] Alas, he that was endued with a righteous understanding, he that always protected the Kurus from every danger, alas, he, having slain numberless warriors, proceedeth to the region of the *Pitris*![13] From this day, O chief of the Bharatas, the Pāndavas, excited with wrath, will slaughter the Kurus like tigers slaying deer![14] Today the Kauravas, acquainted with the force of *Gāndiva's* twang, will regard Savyasāchin, like the *Asuras* regarding the wielder of the thunder-bolt, with terror![15] Today the noise, resembling that of heaven's thunder, of the arrows shot from *Gāndiva*, will inspire the Kurus and other kings with great terror![16] Today, O hero, like a raging conflagration of fierce flames consuming a forest, the shafts of Kiritin will consume the Dhārtarāshtras![17] In those parts of the forest through which fire and wind march together, they burn all plants and creepers and trees.[18] Without doubt, Pārtha is even like a swelling fire, and, without doubt, O tiger among men, Krishna is like the wind.[19] Hearing the blare of *Pānchajanya* and the twang of *Gāndiva*, all the Kaurava troops, O Bhārata, will be inspired with fear![20] O hero, without thee, the kings will never be able to bear the rattle of the ape-bannered car belonging to that grinder of foes when he will advance (upon them)![21] Who amongst the kings, save thyself, is competent to battle with that Arjuna whose feats, as described by the wise, are all superhuman?[22] Superhuman was the battle that he fought with the high-souled (Mahādeva) of three eyes! From him he obtained a boon that is unattainable by persons of unsanctified souls.[23] Delighting in battle, that son of Pāndu is protected by Mādhava.

Who is there that is competent to vanquish him who could not be vanquished by thee before,[24] although thou, endued with great energy, hadst vanquished Rāma himself in battle, that fierce destroyer of the Kshatriya race, worshipped, besides, by the gods and the *Dānavas*?[25] Incapable of putting up with that son of Pāndu, that foremost of heroes in battle, even I, with thy permission, am competent to slay, with the force of my weapons, that brave and fierce warrior who resembleth a snake of virulent poison and who slayeth his foes with his glances alone!—'"[26]

SECTION IV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Unto him who was talking thus, the aged Kuru grandsire, with a cheerful heart, said these words adapted to both time and place:[1]—Like the ocean unto rivers, like the Sun unto all luminous bodies, like the righteous unto Truth, like a fertile soil unto seeds, like the clouds unto all creatures, be thou the refuge of thy relatives and friends! Like the celestials upon him of a thousand eyes, let thy kinsmen depend upon thee![2-3] Be thou the humiliater of thy foes, and the enhancer of the joys of thy friends! Be thou unto the Kauravas as Vishnu unto the dwellers of heaven![4] Desirous of doing what was agreeable to Dhritarāshtra's son, thou didst, with the might and prowess of thy own arms, O Karna, vanquished the Kāmvojas, having proceeded to Rājapura![5] Many kings amongst whom Nagnajit was the foremost, while staying in Girivraja, as also the Amvashthas, the Videhas, and the Gāndharvas, were all vanquished by thee![6] The Kirātas, fierce in battle, dwelling in the fastnesses of Himavat, were formerly, O Karna, made by thee to own Duryodhana's sway.[7] And so also, the Utpalas, the Mekalas, the Paundras, the Kalingas, the Andhras, the Nishādas, the Trigartas, and the Vālhikas, were all vanquished by thee, O Karna, in battle![8] In many other countries, O Karna, impelled by the desire of doing good to Duryodhana, thou didst, O hero, vanquish many races and kings of great energy![9] Like Duryodhana, O child, with his kinsmen, and relatives, and friends, be thou

also the refuge of all the Kauravas !"[10] In auspicious words I command thee, go, and fight with the enemy! Lead the Kurus in battle, and give victory unto Duryodhana![11] Thou art to us our grandson even as Duryodhana is. According to the ordinance, all of us also are as much thine as Duryodhana's!*[12] The wise, O foremost of men, say that the companionship of the righteous with the righteous is a superior relationship than that through the womb.[13] Without falsifying, therefore, thy relationship with the Kurus, protect thou the Kaurava host like Duryodhana, regarding it as thy own![14]—

"'Hearing these words of his, Vikartana's son Karna, reverentially saluting Bhishma's feet, (bade him farewell and) came to that spot where all the Kaurava bowmen were.[15] Viewing that wide and unparalelled encampment of the vast host, he began to cherish (by words of encouragement) those well-armed and broad-chested warriors.[16] And all the Kauravas headed by Duryodhana were filled with joy. And beholding the mighty-armed and high-souled Karna come to the field and station himself at the head of the whole army, for battle, the Kauravas worshipped him with loud shouts and slapping of arm-pits and leonine roars and twang of bows and diverse other kinds of noise.'"[17-18]

SECTION V.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding that tiger among men, *viz.*, Karna, mounted on his car, Duryodhana, O king, filled with joy, said these words:[1]—This host, protected by thee, hath now, I think, got a proper leader! Let that, however, be settled now which is proper and within our power![2]—

"'Karna said,—Tell us thyself, O tiger among men, for thou art the wisest of kings! Another can never see so well what should be done as he seeth it whose concern it is![3] These kings are all desirous of listening to what thou mayst have to say! I am sure that no improper words will be uttered by thee!—[4]

---

* The second line of 12 is read incorrectly in the Bengal texts. Instead of *tathāpi* the true reading (as in the Bombay edition) is *tavāpi*.—T.

"'Duryodhana said,—Bhishma was our commander, possessed (as he was) of years, prowess, and learning, and supported by all our warriors![5] That high-souled one, O Karna, achieving great glory and slaying large numbers of my enemies, protected us by fair fight for ten days![6] He achieved the most difficult of feats. But now that he is about to ascend to heaven, whom, O Karna, dost thou think fit to be our commander after him?[7] Without a leader, an army cannot stay in battle for even a short while, O thou that art foremost in battle, like a boat without a helmsman in the waters.[8] Indeed, as a boat without a helmsman, or a car without a driver, would go any where, so would the plight be of a host that is without a leader.[9] Like a merchant who falleth into every kind of distress when he is unacquainted with the ways of the country he visits, an army that is without a leader is exposed to every kind of distress.[10] Look thou, therefore, among all the high-souled warriors of our army, and find out a proper leader who may succeed the son of Cāntanu![11] Him whom thou wouldst regard as a fit leader in battle, him, all of us, without doubt, will together make our leader![12]—

"'Karna said,—All these foremost of men are high-souled persons! Every one of them deserveth to be our leader. There is no need of any minute examination.[13] All of them are conversant with noble genealogies and with the art of smiting; all of them are endued with prowess and intelligence. All of them are attentive and acquainted with the scriptures, possessed of wisdom, and unretreating from battle.*[14] All, however, cannot be leaders at the same time. Only one should be selected as leader, in whom are especial merits.[15] All of these regard one another as equals. If one amongst them, therefore, be honored, the others will be dissatisfied, and, it is evident, will no longer fight for thee from desire of benefiting thee![16] This one, however, is the preceptor (in arms) of all these warriors; is vener-

---

* *Kula-samhanana-jnāna*, *i. e.*, knowledge of *Kula*, as also of *samhanana*, which latter, as Nilakantha explains, means the body. A knowledge of the body, of vital and other limbs, was possessed by every accomplished warrior who wanted to smite effectually..—T.

able in years, and worthy of respect. Therefore, Drona, this foremost of all wielders of weapons, should be made the leader.[17] Who is there worthy of becoming a leader, when the invincible Drona, that foremost of persons conversant with *Brahma*, is here, that one, *viz.*, who is equal to Cukra or Vrihaspati himself?[13] Amongst all the kings in thy army, O Bhārata, there is not a single warrior who will not follow Drona when the latter goeth to battle.*[19] This Drona is the foremost of all leaders of forces, the foremost of all wielders of weapons, and the foremost of all intelligent persons. He is, besides, O king, thy preceptor (in arms)![20] Therefore, O Duryodhana, make this one the leader of thy forces without delay, as the celestials made Kārtikeya their leader in battle for vanquishing the *Asuras*.—'"[21]

SECTION VI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing these words of Karna, king Duryodhana then said this unto Drona who was staying in the midst of the troops.[1]

"'Duryodhana said,—For the superiority of the order of thy birth, for the nobility of thy parentage, for thy learning, years, and intelligence, for also thy prowess, skill, invincibility, knowledge of worldly matters, policy, and self-conquest, by reason also of thy ascetic austerities and thy gratitude, superior as thou art as regards every virtue, among these kings there is none who can make so good a leader as thou![2-3] Protect thou, therefore, ourselves, like Vāsava protecting the celestials! Having thee for our leader, we desire, O best of Brāhmanas, to vanquish our foes.[4] As Kāpāli amongst the *Rudras*, Pāvaka among the *Vasus*, Kuvera among the *Yakshas*, Vāsava among the *Maruts*,[5] Vaçishtha among Brāhmanas, the Sun amongst luminous bodies, Yama among *Pitris*, Varuna among acquatic creatures,[6] as the Moon among stars, and Uçanas among the sons of Diti, so art thou the foremost of all leaders of forces. Be thou, therefore, our leader![7] O sinless one, let

---

* *I. e.*, who will feel it humiliating for him to walk behind Drona.—T.

these ten and one *Akshauhinis* of troops be obedident to thy word of command! Disposing these troops in battle array, slay thou our foes like Indra slaying the *Dānavas!*[8] Proceed thou at the head of us all like *Pāvaka's* son (Kārtikeya) at the head of the celestial forces. We will follow thee to battle like bulls following a bovine leader.[9] A fierce and great bowman as thou art, beholding thee stretching the bow at our head, Arjuna will not strike.[10] Without doubt, O tiger among men, if thou becomest our leader, I will vanquish Yudhishthira with all his followers and relatives in battle![11]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'After Duryodhana had uttered these words, the kings (in the Kaurava army) all cried victory to Drona. And they all delighted thy son by uttering a loud leonine shout.[12] And the troops, filled with joy, and with Duryodhana at their head, desirous of winning great renown, began to glorify that best of Brāhmanas. Then, O king, Drona addressed Duryodhana in those words.' "[13]

SECTION VII.

" 'Drona said,—I know the *Vedas* with their six branches. I know also the science of human affairs. I am acquainted also with the *Çaiva* weapon, and diverse other species of weapons.[1] Endeavouring to actually display all those virtues which ye, desirous of victory, have attributed to me, I will fight with the Pāndavas![2] I will not, however, O king, be able to slay the son of Prishata. O bull among men, he hath been created for my slaughter![3] I will fight with the Pāndavas, and slay the Somakas. As regards the Pāndavas, they will not fight with me with cheerful hearts![4]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus permitted by Drona, thy son, O king, then made him the commander of his forces according to the rites prescribed in the ordinance.[5] And the kings (in the Kaurava army) headed by Duryodhana performed the investiture of Drona in the command of the forces like the celestials headed by Indra in days of yore performing the investiture of Skanda.[6] After Drona's installation in the command, the joy of the army expressed itself by the sound of drums and the

loud blare of conchs.[7] Then with cries such as greet the ears on a festive day, with auspicious invocations by Brāhmanas gratified with presents, with the hymns and songs of bards and panegyrists,[8] with cries of *Jaya* uttered by foremost of Brāhmanas, and with the dance of mimes, Drona was duly honored. And the Kaurava warriors regarded the Pāndavas as already vanquished."[9]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Bharadwāja's son, having obtained the command of the army, arrayed the troops in order of battle, and went out with thy sons from desire of fighting the foe.[10] And the ruler of the Sindhus, and the chief of the Kalingas, and thy son Vikarna, clad in mail, took up their position on the right wing (of Drona).[11] And Cakuni, accompanied by many foremost of horsemen battling with bright lances and belonging to the Gandharva tribe, proceeded, acting as their support.[12] And Kripa, and Kritavarman, and Chitrasena, and Vivingçati, headed by Dusçāsana, strove vigorously for protecting the left wing.[13] And the Kāmvojas headed by Sudakshina, and the Cakas, and the Yavanas, with steeds of great fleetness, proceeded, as the latter's support.[14] And the Madras, the Trigartas, the Amvashthas, the Westerners, the Northerners, the Mālavas, the Civis, the Curasenas, the Cudras, the Maladas,[15] the Sauviras, the Kitavas, the Easterners, and the Southerners, placing thy son (Duryodhana) and the *Suta's* son (Karna) at their head, forming the rear-guard,[16] gladdened the warriors of their own army and added to the strength of the (advancing) force. Vikartana's son Karna proceeded at the head of all the bowmen.*[17] And his blazing and large and tall standard bearing the device of the elephant's rope, shone with an effulgence like that of the Sun, gladdening his own divisions.[18] Beholding Karna, none regarded the calamity caused by Bhishma's death. And

* A substantial difference of reading occurs here between the Bengal and the Bombay texts. Both have defects of their own. It seems to me that Drona, as leader, proceeded in the van. Karna, when described as proceeding at the head of all bowmen, must be taken as marching at the head of the whole rear-guard. In that case, his position would be immediately behind Drona's.—T.

the kings, along with the Kurus, all became freed from grief.[19] And large numbers of warriors, banded together, said unto one another,—Beholding Karna on the field, the Pāndavas will never be able to stay in battle![20] Indeed, Karna is quite competent to vanquish in battle the very gods with Vāsava at their head! What need be said, therefore, of the sons of Pāndu who are destitute of energy and prowess?[21] The mighty-armed Bhishma spared the Pārthas in battle. Karna, however, will slay them in the fight with his keen shafts![22]—Speaking unto one another thus, and filled with joy, they proceeded, applauding and worshipping the son of Rādhā.[23] As regards our army, it was arrayed by Drona in the form of a *Çakata* (vehicle); while the array of our illustrious foes, O king, was in the form of a *Krauncha* (crane)[24] as disposed, O Bhārata, by king Yudhishthira the just in great cheerfulness. At the head of their array were those two foremost of persons,[25] *viz.*, Vishnu and Dhananjaya, with their banner set up, bearing the device of the ape. The hump of the whole army and the refuge of all bowmen,[26] that banner of Pārtha endued with immeasurable energy, as it floated in the welkin, seemed to illumine the entire host of the high-souled Yudhishthira.[27] That banner of Pārtha possessed of great intelligence seemed to resemble the blazing Sun that riseth at the end of the *Yuga* for consuming the world.[28] Amongst bowmen, Arjuna is the foremost; amongst bows, *Gāndiva* is the foremost; amongst creatures, Vāsudeva is the first; and amongst all kinds of discs *Sudarçana* is the first.[29] Bearing these four embodiments of energy, that car unto which were yoked white steeds, took up its position in the front of the (hostile) army, like the fierce discus of Death upraised (for striking).[30] Thus did those two foremost of men stand at the very head of their respective forces, *viz.*, Karna at the head of thy army, and Dhananjaya at the head of the hostile one.[31] Both excited with wrath, and each desirous of slaying the other, Karna and Arjuna looked at each other in that battle.[32]

"'Then when that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Bharadwāja's son, proceeded to battle with great speed, the Earth seemed to tremble with loud sounds of wailing.[33] Then a thick dust, raised by the wind and resembling a canopy of tawny silk, en-

veloped the sky and the Sun.[34] And though the firmament was cloudless, yet a shower fell of pieces of flesh, bones, and blood. And vultures and hawks and cranes and *Kankas*, and crows, in thousands,[35] began continually to fall upon the (Kaurava) troops. And jackalls yelled aloud; and many fierce and terrible birds[36] repeatedly wheeled to the left of thy army, from desire of eating flesh and drinking blood.*[37] And many blazing meteors, illuminating (the sky), and covering large areas with their tails, fell on the field with loud sound and trembling motion.[38] And the wide disc of the Sun, O monarch, seemed to emit flashes of lightning with thundering noise, when the commander of the (Kaurava) army set out.[39] These and many other portents, fierce and indicating a destruction of heroes, were seen during the battle.[40] Then commenced the encounter between the troops of the Kurus and the Pāndavas desirous of slaying each other. And so loud was the din that it seemed to fill the whole earth.[41] And the Pāndavas and the Kauravas, enraged with each other, and skilled in smiting, began to strike each other with sharp weapons, from desire of victory.[42] Then that great bowman of blazing effulgence rushed towards the troops of the Pāndavas with great impetuosity, scattering hundreds of sharp arrows.[43] Then the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas, beholding Drona rush towards them, received him, O king, with showers upon showers (in distinct sets) of arrows.[44] Agitated and broken by Drona, the large host of the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas broke like a row of cranes by force of the wind.[45] Invoking into existence many celestial weapons in that battle, Drona, within a very short time, afflicted the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas.[46] Slaughtered by Drona like the *Dānavas* by Vāsava, the Pānchālas headed by Dhrishtadyumna trembled in that battle.[47] Then that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Yajnasena's son (Dhrishtadyumna), that hero acquainted with celestial weapons, broke, with his arrowy showers, the division of Drona in many places.[48] And the mighty son of Prishata baffling with his own arrowy showers the showers of arrows

---

* Lit., "placed thy army to their right," *i. e.*, these birds wheeled to the left of thy host, which is an evil omen.—T.

shot by Drona, caused a great slaughter among the Kurus.[49] The mighty-armed Drona then, rallying his men in battle and gathering them together, rushed towards the son of Prishata.[50] He then sped at Prishata's son a thick shower of arrows like Maghavat excited with rage showering his arrows with great force upon the *Dānavas*.[51] Then the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas, shaken by Drona with his shafts, repeatedly broke like a herd of inferior animals attacked by a lion.[52] And the mighty Drona careered through the Pāndava force like a circle of fire. All this, O king, seemed highly wonderful.[53] Mounted on his own excellent car which (then) resembled a city coursing through the skies, which was furnished with every necessary according to (military) science, whose banner floated on the air, whose rattle resounded through the field, whose steeds were (well) urged, and the staff of whose standard was bright as crystal, Drona struck fear into the hearts of the enemy and caused a great slaughter among them.[54-55]

SECTION VIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Drona thus slaying steeds and drivers and car-warriors and elephants, the Pāndavas, without being troubled, encompassed him on all sides.[1] Then king Yudhishthira, addressing Dhrishtadyumna and Dhananjaya, said unto them,—Let the Pot-born (Drona) be checked, our men surrounding him on all sides with care![2]—Thus addressed, those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, Arjuna and Prishata's son, along with their followers, all received Drona as the latter came.[3] And the Kekaya princes, and Bhimasena, and Subhadrā's son, and Ghatotkacha, and Yudhishthira, and the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), and the ruler of the Matsyas, and the son of Drupada,[4] and the (five) sons of Draupadi all filled with joy, and Dhrishtaketu, and Sātyaki, and the wrathful Chitrasena, and the mighty car-warrior Yuyutsu,[5] and many other kings, O monarch, who followed the son of Pāndu, all achieved diverse feats in keeping with their lineage and prowess.[6] Beholding then that host protected in that battle by those Pāndava warriors, Bharadwāja's son, turning his eyes in wrath, cast his looks upon it.[7]

Inflamed with rage, that warrior, invincible in battle, consumed, as he stood upon his car, the Pandava host like the tempest destroying vast masses of clouds.[8] Rushing on all sides at car-warriors and steeds and foot-soldiers and elephants, Drona furiously careered over the field like a young man though bearing the weight of years.[9] His red steeds, fleet as the wind, and of excellent breed, covered with blood, O king, assumed a beautiful appearance.[10] Beholding that hero of regulated vows felling them like Yama himself inflamed with wrath, the soldiers of Yudhishthira fled away on all sides.[11] And as some fled away and others rallied, as some looked at him and others stayed on the field, the noise they made was fierce and terrible.[12] And that noise causing delight to heroes and enhancing the fears of the timid, filled the whole welkin and the earth.[13] And once more Drona, uttering his own name in battle, made himself exceedingly fierce, scattering hundreds of arrows among the foe.[14] Indeed, the mighty Drona, though old, yet acting like a young man, careered like Death himself, O sire, amid the divisions of Pāndu's son.[15] That fierce warrior, cutting off heads as well as arms decked with ornaments, made the terraces of many cars empty, and uttered leonine roars.[16] And in consequence of those joyous shouts of his, as also of the force of his shafts, the warriors, O lord, (of the hostile army) trembled like a herd of kine afflicted by cold.[17] And in consequence of the rattle of his car and the streching of his bowstring and the twang of his bow, the whole welkin resounded with a loud noise.[18] And the shafts of that hero, coursing in thousands from his bow, and enveloping all the points of the compass, fell upon the elephants and steeds and cars and foot-soldiers (of the enemy).[19] Then the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas boldly approached Drona, who, armed with his bow of great force, resembled a fire having weapons for its flames.[20] Then with their elephants and foot-soldiers and steeds he began to despatch them unto the abode of Yama. And soon Drona made the earth miry with blood.[21] Scattering his mighty weapons and shooting his shafts thick on every side, Drona soon so covered all the points of the compass that nothing could be seen except his showers of arrows.[22] And among foot-soldiers and cars and steeds and elephants nothing

could be seen save Drona's arrows. The standard of his car was all that could be seen, moving like flashes of lightning amid the cars.*[23] Of soul incapable of being depressed, Drona then, armed with bow and arrows, afflicted the five princes of Kekaya and the ruler of the Pānchālas, and then rushed against the division of Yudhishthira.[24] Then Bhimasena and Dhananjaya and the grandson of Cini, and the sons of Drupada, and the ruler of Kāçi, *viz.*, the son of Caivya, and Civi himself, cheerfully and with loud roars covered him with their arrows.[25] Shafts in thousands, decked with wings of gold, shot from Drona's bow, piercing through the bodies of the elephants and the young steeds of those warriors, entered the earth, their feathers dyed with blood.[26] The field of battle, strewn with cars and the prostrate forms of large bands of warriors and of elephants and steeds mangled with shafts, looked like the welkin covered with masses of black clouds.[27] Then Drona, desirous of the prosperity of thy sons, having thus crushed the divisions of Sātyaki, and Bhima, and Dhananjaya, and Subhadrā's son, and Drupada, and the ruler of the Kāçis, and having grinded many other heroes in battle,[28] indeed, that high-souled warrior, having achieved these and many other feats, and having, O chief of the Kurus, scorched the world like the Sun himself as he rises at the end of the *Yuga*, proceeded hence, O monarch, to heaven![29] That hero possessed of a golden car, that grinder of hostile hosts, having achieved mighty feats and slain in thousands[30] the warriors of the Pāndava host in battle, hath at last been himself slain by Dhrishtadyumna! Having, in fact, slain more than two *Akshauhinis* of brave and unreturning warriors, that hero endued with intelligence at last attained to the highest state! Indeed, O king, having achieved the most difficult feats, he hath at last been slain by the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas of cruel deeds. When the preceptor was slain in battle, there arose in the welkin, O monarch, a loud uproar of all creatures, as also of all the troops. Resounding

* The first line of 23 is read with a slight variation in the Bengal texts. The words "nothing could be seen save Drona's arrows" are added here to make the sense clear.—T.

through heaven and earth and the intermediate space and through the cardinal and the subsidiary directions,[31-34] the loud cry—*O fie*,—of creatures was heard. And the gods, the *Pitris*, and they that were his friends, all[35] beheld that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Bharadwāja, thus slain. The Pāndavas, having won the victory, uttered leonine shouts. And the Earth trembled with those loud shouts of theirs.' "[36]

SECTION IX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How did the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas slay Drona in battle,—Drona who was so accomplished in weapons amongst all wielders of arms?[1] Did his car break (in course of the fight)? Did his bow break while he was striking (the foe)? Or, was Drona careless at the time that he met with his death blow?[2] How, indeed, O child, could Prishata's son, (*viz.*, Dhrishtadyumna) the prince of Pānchāla, slay that hero incapable of being humiliated by enemies, who scattered thick showers of shafts furnished with wings of gold, and who was endued with great lightness of hand,—that foremost of Brāhmanas who was accomplished in everything, acquainted with all modes of warfare, capable of shooting his shafts to a great distance, and self-restrained, who was possessed of great skill in the use of weapons and armed with celestial weapons,—that mighty warrior, of unfading glory, who was always careful, and who achieved the fiercest feats in battle?[3-5] It is plain, it seems to me, that destiny is superior to exertion, since even the brave Drona hath been slain by the high-souled son of Prishata![6] That hero in whom were the four kinds of weapons, alas, thou sayest that that Drona, that preceptor in bowmanship, is slain![7] Hearing of the slaughter of that hero who used to ride his bright car covered with tiger-skins and adorned with pure gold, I cannot drive away my grief![8] Without doubt, O Sanjaya, no one dies of grief caused by another's calamity, since, wretch that I am, I am yet alive although I have heard of Drona's death![9] Destiny I regard to be all-powerful, exertion is fruitless! Surely, my heart, hard as it is, is made of adamant,[10] since it breaketh not into a hundred pieces, although I have heard of Drona's death!

He who was waited upon by Brāhmanas and princes desirous of instruction in the *Vedas* and divination and bowmanship, alas, how could he be taken away by Death! I cannot brook the overthrow of Drona which is even like the drying up of the ocean, or the removal of Meru from its site, or the fall of the Sun from the firmament! He was a restrainer of the wicked, and a protector of the righteous.[11-13] That scorcher of foes who hath given up his life for the wretched Duryodhana, upon whose prowess rested that hope of victory which my wicked sons entertained,[14] who was equal to Vrihaspati or Uçanas himself in intelligence, alas, how was he slain? His large steeds of red hue, covered with net of gold,[15] fleet as the wind and incapable of being struck with any weapon in battle, endued with great strength, neighing cheerfully, well-trained and of the Sindhu breed, yoked unto his car and dragging the vehicle excellently,[16] always persevering in the midst of battle,—did they become weak and faint? Coolly bearing in battle elephants while those huge creatures roared at the blare of conchs and the beat of drums, unmoved by twang of bows and showers of arrows and other weapons, foreboding the defeat of foes by their very appearance, never drawing long breaths (in consequence of toil), above all fatigue and pain,[17-18] were those fleet steeds that drew the car of Bharadwāja's son soon overpowered? Even such were the steeds yoked unto his golden car! Even such were the steeds yoked thereto by that foremost of human heroes![19] Mounted on his own excellent car decked with pure gold, why, O son, could he not cross the sea of the Pāndava army?[20] What feats were achieved in battle by Bharadwāja's son, that warrior who always drew tears from other heroes, and upon whose knowledge (of weapons) all the bowmen of the world rely?[21] Firmly adhering to truth, and endued with great might, what, indeed, did Drona achieve in battle? Who were those car-warriors that advanced in battle against that achiever of fierce deeds, that foremost of all wielders of the bow, that first of heroes, who resembled Cakra himself in heaven? Did the Pāndavas fly away, beholding him of the golden car,[22-23] him, *viz.*, of mighty strength who invoked into existence celestial weapons? Or, did king Yudhishthira the just, with his younger brothers, and having the prince of

Pānchāla (Dhrishtadyumna) for his binding chord,* attack Drona, surrounding him with his troops on all sides? Verily, Pārtha must have, with his straight shafts, checked all the other car-warriors,[24-25] and then Prishata's son of sinful deeds must have surrounded Drona. I do not see any other warrior, save the fierce Dhrishtadyumna protected by Arjuna, who could have compassed the death of that mighty hero! It seems that when those heroes, *viz.*, the Kekayas, the Chedis, the Kārushas, the Matsyas, and the other kings, surrounding the preceptor, pressed him exceedingly like ants pressing upon a snake, while he was engaged in some difficult feat, the wretched Dhrishtadyumna must have slain him then! This is what I think! He who, having studied the four *Vedas* with their branches and the histories forming the fifth (*Veda*),[26-29] became the refuge of the Brāhmanas as the ocean is of rivers, that scorcher of foes who lived both as a Brāhmana and a Kshatriya,[30] alas, how could that Brāhmana, reverend in years, meet with his end at the edge of a weapon? Of a proud spirit, he was yet often humiliated and had to suffer pain on my account![31] However undeserving of it, he yet attained at the hands of Kunti's son, the fruit of his own conduct.† He upon whose feats depend all wielders of bows in the world,[32] alas, how could that hero, firmly adhering to truth and possessed of great skill, be slain by persons desirous of affluence? Foremost in the world like Cakra himself in heaven, of great might and great energy,[33] alas, how could he be slain by the Pārthas like the smaller fish slaying the whale? He from whose presence no warrior desirous of victory could ever escape with life, he whom, while alive, these two sounds never left,[34-35] *viz.*, the sound of the *Vedas* by those desirous of Vedic lore, and the twang of bows caused by those desirous of skill in bowmanship, he who was never cheerless, alas, that tiger among men, that hero endued with prosperity and never vanquished in

---

* Probably, a ready instrument.—T.

† The sense seems to be that having carefully trained Arjuna in arms, he has got the fruit of his care and labour in the form of defeat and death at the hands of, or, at least, through, his own pupil.—T.

battle,[36] that warrior of prowess equal to that of the lion or the elephant, hath been slain! Verily, I cannot brook the idea of his death! How could Prishata's son, in the very sight of foremost of men, slay in battle that invincible warrior whose might was never humiliated and whose fame was never tarnished? Who were they that fought in Drona's van, protecting him, standing by his side?[37-38] Who proceeded in his rear and obtained that end which is so difficult of attainment? Who were those high-souled warriors that protected the right and the left wheels of Drona?[39] Who were in the van of that hero while he struggled in battle? Who were they that, reckless of their lives on that occasion, met with Death which stood face to face with them?[40] Who were those heroes that went the last journey in Drona's battle? Did any of those Kshatriyas that were assigned for Drona's protection, proving false, abandon that hero in battle? Was he slain by the foe after such abandonment and while alone? Drona would never, from fear, show his back in battle, however great the danger! How then was he slain by the foe? Even in great distress, O Sanjaya, an illustrious person should do this, *viz.*, put forth his prowess according to the measure of his might! All this was in Drona: O child, I am losing my senses! Let this discourse be suspended for a while! After regaining my senses I will once more ask thee, O Sanjaya!"[41-44]

SECTION X.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having addressed the *Suta's* son in this way, Dhritarāshtra, afflicted with excessive grief of heart and hopeless of his son's victory, fell down on the ground.[1] Beholding him deprived of his senses and fallen down, his attendants sprinkled him with perfumed and cold water, fanning him the while.[2] Seeing him fallen, the Bharata ladies, O king, surrounded him on all sides and gently rubbed him with their hands.[3] And slowly raising the king from the ground, those royal ladies, their voices choked in tears, seated him on his seat.[4] Seated, the king continued to be under the influence of that swoon. And he remained perfectly motionless, while they fanned him standing around.[5] And a tremour

then passed over the monarch's body and he slowly regained his senses. And once more he began to interrogate Gavalgana's son of the *Suta* caste about the incidents, as they occurred, of the battle.[6]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'[That Ajātaçatru] who, like the risen Sun, dispelleth darkness by his own light; who (rusheth against a foe) as a swift and angry elephant with rent temples, incapable of being vanquished by hostile leaders of herds, rusheth against a rival proceeding with cheerful face towards a female of the species in rut, O, what warrior (of my army) resisted that Ajātaçatru as he came, for keeping him away from Drona?* That hero, that foremost of persons, who hath slain many brave warriors (of my army) in battle,[7-9] that mighty-armed and intelligent and courageous prince of unbaffled prowess, who, unassisted by any one, can consume the entire host of Duryodhana by means of his terrible glances alone,[10] that slayer by his eyes, that one bent on winning victory, that bowman, that hero of unfading glory, that self-restrained monarch who is revered by the whole world, O, who were those heroes (of my army) that surrounded that warrior?†[11] That invincible prince, that bowman of unfading glory, that tiger among men, that son of Kunti, who advancing with great celerity came upon Drona, that mighty warrior who always achieves grand feats upon the foe, that hero of gigantic frame and great courage who in strength is equal to ten thousand elephants, O, what brave combatants of my army surrounded that Bhimasena as he rushed upon my host?[12-14] When that car-warrior of exceeding energy, *viz.*, Vibhatsu, looking like a mass of clouds, came, creating thunder-bolts like the clouds themselves,[15] shooting showers of arrows like Indra pouring rain, and making all the points of the compass resound with the slap of his palms and

* This sentence comprises 7, 8, and the first line of 9. I have followed the exact order of the original. The peculiarity of the Sanskrit construction is that the nominative Pronoun is made to stand in apposition with a noun in the objective case. The whole of this Section contains many such sentences.—T.

† 10 and 11 also refer to Ajātaçatru.—T.

the rattle of his car-wheels,[16] when that hero whose bow was like the lightning's flash and whose car resembled a cloud having for its roars the rattle of its wheels, (when that hero came) the whizz of whose arrows made him exceedingly fierce,[17] whose wrath resembles an awful cloud, and who is fleet as the mind or the tempest, who always pierces the foe deep into his very vitals, who, armed with shafts, is terrible to look at, who like Death himself bathes all the points of the compass with human blood in profusion, and who, with fierce uproar and awful visage, wielding the bow *Gāndiva*, incessantly pours on my warriors headed by Duryodhana shafts whetted on stone and furnished with vulturine feathers, alas, when that hero of great intelligence came upon you, what became the state of your minds ?[18-20] When that warrior having the huge ape on his banner came, obstructing the welkin with dense showers of arrows, what became the state of your minds at sight of that Pārtha ?[21] Did Arjuna advance upon you, slaying your troops with the twang of *Gāndiva* and achieving fierce feats on the way ?[22] Did Dhananjaya take, with his shafts, your lives, like the tempest destroying gathering masses of clouds or felling forests of reeds, blowing through them ?[23] What man is there that is capable of bearing in battle the wielder of *Gāndiva ?* Hearing only that he is stationed at the head of the (hostile) force, the heart of every foe seems to rend in twain ![24] In that battle in which the troops trembled and even heroes were struck with fear, who were they that did not abandon Drona, and who were those cowards that abandoned him from fear ?[25] Who were they that, reckless of their lives, met Death himself standing face to face with them in the shape of Dhananjaya who hath vanquished even superhuman combatants in battle ?[26] My troops are incapable of bearing the impetus of that warrior having white steeds yoked unto his car and the twang of *Gāndiva* that resembles the roll of the very clouds ![27] That car which has Vishnu himself for its driver and Dhananjaya for its warrior, that car I regard to be incapable of being vanquished by the very gods and the *Asuras* united together ![28] Delicate, young, and brave, and of a very handsome countenance, that son of Pāndu who is gifted with intelligence and skill and wisdom and

whose prowess is incapable of being baffled in battle,[29] when that Nakula with loud noise and afflicting all hostile warriors, rushed at Drona, what heroes (of my army) surrounded him ?[30] When Sahadeva who resembles an angry snake of virulent poison, when that hero owning white steeds and invincible in battle, observant of laudable vows, incapable of being baffled in his purposes, gifted with modesty, and never vanquished in fight, came upon us, what heroes (of our army) surrounded him ?[31-32] That warrior who, having crushed the mighty host of the Sauvira king, took for his wife the beautiful Bhoja maiden of symmetrical limbs,[33] that bull among men, *viz.*, Yuyudhāna, in whom are always truth and firmness and bravery and *Brahmacharya*,[34] that warrior gifted with great might, always practising truth, never cheerless, never vanquished, who in battle is equal to Vāsudeva and is regarded as his second self,[35] who, through Dhananjaya's instructions, hath become foremost in the use of arrows, and who is equal to Pārtha himself in weapons, O, what warrior (of my army) resisted that Sātyaki, for keeping him away from Drona ?[36] The foremost hero among the Vrishnis, exceedingly brave among all bowmen, equal to Rāma himself in (knowledge and use of) weapons and in prowess and fame,[37] (know, O Sanjaya, that) truth and firmness, and intelligence, and heroism, and knowledge of *Brahmd*, and high weapons, are all in him (Sātyaki) of the Sātwata race as the three worlds are in Keçava![38] What heroes (of my army), approaching that mighty bowman, *viz.*, Sātyaki, possessed of all these accomplishments and incapable of being resisted by the very gods, surrounded him ?[39] The foremost among the Pānchālas, possessed of heroism, high-born and the favorite of all high-born heroes, ever achieving good deeds in battle, *viz.*, Uttamaujas,[40] that prince ever engaged in the welfare of Arjuna, born for only my evil, equal unto Yama, or Vaiçravana, or Āditya, or Mahendra, or Varuna,[41] that prince regarded as a mighty car-warrior and prepared to lay down his life in the thick of battle, O, what heroes (of my army) surrounded him ?[42] Who (amongst my warriors) opposed Dhrishtaketu,—that single warrior amongst the Chedis who, deserting them, hath embraced the side of the

Pāndavas,—while he rushed upon Drona?[43] Who resisted the heroic Ketumat for keeping him away from Drona, the brave Ketumat who slew prince Durjaya while the latter had taken shelter in Girivraja ?[44] What heroes (of my army) surrounded Cikhandin,—that tiger among men, who knows the merits and demerits (in his own person) of manhood and femininity, that son of Yajnasena, who is always cheerful in battle, that hero who became the cause of the high-souled Bhishma's death in battle,—when he rushed towards Drona ?[45-46] That foremost hero of the Vrishni race,—that chief of all bowmen, that brave warrior in whom all accomplishments exist in a greater degree than in Dhananjaya himself,[47] in whom are ever weapons and truth and *Brahmacharya,* who is equal to Vāsudeva in energy and Dhananjaya in strength,[48] who in splendour is equal to Āditya and in intelligence to Vrihaspati,—*viz.*, the high-souled Abhimanyu resembling Death himself with wide-open mouth,[49] O, what heroes (of my army) surrounded him when he rushed towards Drona? That youth of vigorous understanding, that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, Subhadrā's son,[50] O, when he rushed towards Drona, what became the state of your minds? What heroes surrounded those tigers among men, *viz.*, the sons of Draupadi, when they rushed in battle against Drona like rivers rushing towards the sea ? Those children who, giving up all (childish) sports for twelve years,[51-52] and observing excellent vows, waited upon Bhishma for the sake of weapons, those children, *viz.*, Kshatranjaya and Kshatradeva and Kshatravarman and Mānada,[53] those heroic sons of Dhrishtadyumna, O, who resisted them, seeking to keep them away from Drona ! He whom the Vrishnis regarded as superior in battle to a hundred car-warriors,[54] O, who resisted that great bowman, *viz.*, Chekitāna, for keeping him away from Drona ? Those five Kekaya brothers, virtuous and possessed of prowess incapable of being baffled,[55] resembling (in hue) the insects called *Indragopakas*, with red coats of mail, red weapons and red banners, those heroes that are the maternal cousins of the Pāndavas and that always wish victory unto the latter,[56] O, what heroes (of my army) surrounded those valiant princes when they rushed towards Drona for

slaying him? That lord of battles, that foremost of bowmen, that hero of unbaffled aim and great strength, that tiger among men, *viz.*, Yuyutsu, whom many wrathful kings battling together for six months at Vāranāvata from desire of slaying him could not vanquish, and who in battle at Vārānasi overthrew with a broad-headed arrow that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the prince of Kāçi, desirous of seizing (at a self-choice) a maiden for wife, O, what hero (of my army) resisted him? That mighty bowman, *viz.*, Dhrishtadyumna, who is the chief counsellor of the Pāndavas,[57-60] who is engaged in doing evil to Duryodhana, who was created for Drona's destruction, O, what heroes (of my army) surrounded him when he came towards Drona, breaking through all my ranks and consuming all my warriors in battle? That foremost of all persons conversant with weapons, who has been reared almost on Drupada's lap,[61-62] O, what warriors (of my army) surrounded that Cikhandin protected by (Arjuna's) weapons, for keeping him away from Drona? He who encompassed this earth by the loud rattle of his car as by a leathern belt, that mighty car-warrior and foremost of all slayers of foes, who, as (a substitute for) all sacrifices, performed, without hindrance, ten horse-sacrifices with excellent food and drink and gifts in profusion, who ruled his subjects as if they were his children, that Uçinara's son who in sacrifices gave away kine countless as the sand-grains in Gangā's stream, whose feat none amongst men have been or will ever be able to imitate,[65-66] after the performance of whose difficult feat the very gods had cried out, saying,—We do not see that in the three worlds with their mobile and immobile creatures a second person other than Uçinara's son was, has ever been, or will ever be, born,[67-68]—who hath attained to regions (in after life) which are unattainable by human beings, O, who (amongst my army) resisted that Caivya, that grandson of that Uçinara's son, while he came upon (Drona)?[69] What heroes (of my army) surrounded the car-division of that slayer of foes, *viz.*, Virāta the king of the Matsyas, while it reached Drona in battle?[70] Who kept away from Drona the gigantic Ghatotkacha, that thorn (in the side) of my sons, that warrior who always wishes victory

unto the Pāndavas, that heroic *Rākshasa* possessed of extensive powers of illusion, endued with great strength and great prowess, and born of Bhima in course of a single day, and of whom I entertain very great fears ?*[71-72] What, O Sanjaya, can remain unvanquished by them for whose sake these and many others are prepared to lay down their lives in battle ?[73] How can the sons of Prithā meet with defeat, they, *viz.*, that have that tiger among all beings, the wielder of the bow called *Çārnga*, for their refuge and benefactor ?[74] Vāsudeva is, indeed, the great Master of all the worlds, the Lord of All, and Eternal! Of celestial soul and infinite power, Nārāyana is the refuge of men in battle ![75] The wise recite his celestial feats. I also will recite them with devotion, for recovering my firmness !' "[76]

SECTION XI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Hear, O Sanjaya, the celestial feats of Vāsudeva, feats that Govinda achieved and the like of which no other person hath ever been able to achieve ![1] Whilst being brought up, O Sanjaya, in the family of the cowherd (Nanda), that high-souled one, while yet a boy, made the might of his arms known to the three worlds.[2] Even he then slew Hayarāja, living in the woods (on the shores) of Yamunā, who was equal to (the celestial steed) Uchchaiçravas in strength and the wind itself in speed.†[3] In childhood he also slew, with his two bare arms, the *Dānava*, in the form of a bull, of terrible deeds, and risen like Death himself unto all the kine.[4] Of eyes like lotus petals, he also slew the mighty *Asuras* named Pralamva, and Naraka, and Jambha, and Pitha, as also Mura that terror of the celestials.[5] And so also Kansa of mighty energy, who was, besides, protected by Jarāsandha, was, with all his followers, slain in battle by Krishna aided by his prowess alone.‡[6]

---

* Ghatotkacha was the son of Hidimvā by Bhimasena. *Rākshasi* women bring forth the very day they conceive, and their offspring attain to youth the very day they are born.—T.

† *Hayarāja*, lit., the prince of steeds. He was an *Asura*, otherwise called Keçin, in the form of a steed.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, without weapons of any kind.—T.

With Valadeva as his second, that slayer of foes, *viz.*, Krishna, consumed in battle, with all his troops, the king of the Curasenas, *viz.*, Sunāman, of great activity and prowess in battle, the lord of a full *Akshauhini*, and the valiant second brother of Kansa the king of the Bhojas.[7-8] The highly wrathful regenerate *Rishi* Durvāsas was adored by him along with his wife, and the *Rishi* (gratified with the adoration) gave him boons.*[9] Of eyes like lotus petals, and endued with great bravery, Krishna, vanquishing all the kings at a self-choice, bore away the daughter of the king of the Gāndhāras.[10] Those angry kings, as if they were horses by birth, were yoked unto his nuptial car and lacerated with the whip.[11] The mighty-armed Janārddana also caused Jarāsandha, the lord of a full *Akshauhini* of troops, to be slain through the instrumentality of another.†[12] The mighty Krishna also slew the valiant king of the Chedis, that leader of kings, as if he were some animal, on the occasion of the latter's disputing about the *Argha*.‡[13] Putting forth his prowess, Mādhava hurled into the sea the *Daitya* city called Saubha, (moving) in the skies, protected by Cālwa, and regarded as impregnable.¶[14] The Angas, the Vangas, the Kalingas, the Māgadhas, the Kāçis, the Koçalas, the Vātsyas, the Gārgyas, the Karushas, and the Paundras,—these all he vanquished in battle.[15] The Avantis, the Southerners, the Mountaineers, the Dāçerakas, the Kāçmirakas, the Aurasikas, the Piçāchas, the Samudgalas,[16] the Kāmvojas, the Vātadhānas, the Cholas, the Pāndyas, O Sanjaya, the Trigartas, the Mālavas, the Daradas, difficult of being vanquished,[17] the Khasas arrived from diverse realms, as also the Cakas, and the Yavanas with their followers, were all vanquished by him of eyes like lotus petals.[18] In days of old, penetrating into the

---

* Kaliprasanna Singha, in his Bengali translation, makes a mess of this *sloka*.—T.

† Jarasandha, the powerful king of the Magadhas, and the sworn foe of Krishna, was slain by Bhima through Krishna's instigation.—T.

‡ *Vide Sabhā Parva*, p. p. 61-73.—T.

¶ *Vide Vana Parva*, p. p. 64-67.—T.

very sea, he vanquished in battle Varuna himself in those watery depths, surrounded by all kinds of acquatic animals.[19] Slaying in battle (the *Dānava* named) *Panchajana* living in the depths of *Pātāla*, Hrishikesha obtained the celestial conch called *Pānchajanya*.[20] The mighty Keçava, accompanied by Pārtha, having gratified Agni at Khāndava, obtained his invincible weapon of fire, *viz.*, his discus (called *Sudarçana*).[21] Riding on Vinatā's son and afrighting (the denizens of) *Amarāvati*, the heroic Krishna brought from Mahendra himself (the celestial flower called) *Pārijāta*.[22] Knowing Krishna's prowess, Cakra quietly bore that act.* We have never heard that there is any one among the kings who has not been vanquished by Krishna.[23] That exceedingly wonderful feat also, O Sanjaya, which the lotus-eyed one performed in my court, who else is capable of performing it?[24] And since, humbled by devotion, I was suffered to behold Krishna as the Supreme Lord, everything (about that feat) is well-known to me, myself having witnessed it with my own eyes.[25] O Sanjaya, the end can never be seen of the (infinite) achievements of Hrishikeça of great energy and great intelligence.[26] Gada, and Cāmva, and Pradyumna, and Viduratha, and Chārudeshna, and Sārana,[27] and Ulmukha, and Niçātha, and the valiant Jhillivabhru, and Prithu, and Viprithu, and Camika, and Arimejaya,[28]—these and other mighty Vrishni heroes, accomplished in smiting, will, standing on the field of battle, take up their position in the Pāndava host,[29] when summoned by that Vrishni hero, *viz.*, the high-souled Keçava! Everything (on my side) will then be in great danger! Even this is what I think![30] And there where Janārddana is, there will be the heroic Rāma, equal in strength to ten thousand elephants, resembling the Kailāsa peak, decked with garlands of wild flowers, and armed with the plough.[31] That Vāsudeva, O Sanjaya, whom all the regenerate ones describe as the Father of all, will that Vāsudeva fight for the sake of the Pāndavas?[32] O son, O Sanjaya, if he puts on his armour for the sake of the Pāndavas, there is none

* *Viz.*, the transplantation of the *Pārijāta* from Amarāvati to the Earth.—T.

amongst us who can be his antagonist.[33] If the Kauravas happen to vanquish the Pāndavas, he of the Vrishni race will then, for the sake of the latter, take up his mighty weapon.[34] And that tiger among men, that mighty-armed one, slaying then all the kings in battle as also all the Kauravas, will give away the whole Earth to Kunti.[35] What car will advance in battle against that car which has Hrishikeça for its driver and Dhananjaya for its warrior?[36] The Kurus cannot, by any means, gain the victory. Tell me, then, everything about how the battle took place.[37] Arjuna is Keçava's soul, and Krishna also is the soul of the diadem-decked (Kiritin). In Arjuna is always victory; in Krishna is always fame.[38] In all the worlds, Vibhatsu is invincible. In Keçava are infinite merits in excess.[39] The foolish Duryodhana, who doth not know Krishna or Keçava, seems, through Destiny, to have Death's noose before him.[40] Alas, Duryodhana knows not Krishna of Daçārha's race and Arjuna the son of Pāndu! These high-souled ones are ancient gods. They are even Nara and Nārāyana.[41] On Earth they are seen by men as two separate forms though in reality they are both possessed but by one soul. With the mind alone, that invincible pair, of world-wide fame, can, if only they wish it, destroy this host! Only, in consequence of their humanity they do not wish it.* Like a change of the *Yuga*, the death of Bhishma, O child, and the slaughter of the high-souled Drona, overturn the senses! Indeed, neither by *Brahmacharya*, nor by study of the *Vedas*,[42-44] nor by (religious) rites, nor by weapons, can any one prevent death. Hearing of the slaughter of Bhishma and Drona, those heroes accomplished in weapons, respected by all the worlds, and invincible in battle, why O Sanjaya, do I yet live? In consequence of the death of Bhishma and Drona, O Sanjaya, we will henceforth have to live as dependants on that prosperity beholding which in Yudhishthira we had before been so jealous! Indeed, this destruction of the Kurus hath come in

* Though gods they have taken their births as men; and, as men, they must achieve their objects by human means. It is for this that they do not, by a fiat only of their will, destroy this host.—T.

consequence only of my acts.[45-47] O *Suta*, in killing those that are ripe for destruction, the very straw becomes the thunderbolt. That prosperity is without end in this world which Yudhishthira is about to obtain,[48] Yudhishthira, *viz.*, through whose wrath both Bhishma and Drona have fallen! In consequence of his very disposition hath Righteousness gone over to the side of Yudhishthira while it is hostile to my sons.[49] Alas, time, so cruel, that hath now come for the destruction of all, cannot be overcome! Things calculated in one way, O son, by even men of intelligence,[50] become otherwise through Destiny. This is what I think! Therefore, tell me everything that has taken place during the progress of this unavoidable and dreadful calamity productive of the most sorrowful reflections and incapable of being crossed over (by us)!—' "[51]

SECTION XII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Yes, as I saw everything with my own eyes, I will describe to thee how Drona fell down, slain by the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas.[1] Having obtained the command of the troops, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Bharadwājas son, said these words unto thy son in the midst of all the troops:[2]—Inasmuch as, O king, thou hast honored me with the command of the troops immediately after that bull among the Kauravas, *viz.* the son of the Ocean-going (Gangā),[3] take thou, O Bhārata, the adequate fruit of that act of thine! What business of thine shall I now achieve? Ask thou the boon that thou desirest![4]—Then king Duryodhana, having consulted with Karna and Dusçāsana and others, said unto the preceptor, that invincible warrior and foremost of all victors, these words:[5]—If thou wouldst give me a boon, then, seizing that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Yudhishthira, alive, bring him unto me here![6]—Then that preceptor of the Kurus, hearing these words of thy son, returned him the following answer, gladdening all the troops therewith.[7]—Praised be Kunti's son (Yudhishthira) whose seizure only thou desirest! O thou that art difficult of being vanquished, thou askest not any other boon, (one for example), for his slaughter![8] For what reason, O tiger among men, dost thou not desire his death?

Thou art, without doubt, O Duryodhana, not ignorant of policy! Why, therefore, dost thou not allude to Yudhishthira's death?[9] It is a matter of great wonder that king Yudhishthira the just hath no enemy desirous of his death! Inasmuch as thou wishest him to be alive, thou (either) seekest to preserve thy race from extinction,[10] or, O chief of the Bharatas, thou, having vanquished the Pāndavas in battle, art desirous of establishing brotherly relations (with them) by giving them their kingdom![11] Auspicious was the birth of that intelligent prince! Truly is he called *Ajātaçatru* (the foeless one) for even thou bearest affection for him![12]—Thus addressed by Drona, O Bhārata, the feeling that is ever present in thy son's breast suddenly made itself known.[13] Not even persons like Vrihaspati can conceal the expressions of their countenance. For this, thy son, O king, filled with joy, said these words:[14]—By the slaughter of Kunti's son in battle, O preceptor, victory cannot be mine! If Yudhishthira were slain, Pārtha then, without doubt, would slay all of us![15] All of them, again, cannot be slain by the very gods. He amongst them that will, in that case, survive, will exterminate us![16] Yudhishthira, however, is truthful in his promises. If brought hither (alive), vanquished once more at dice, the Pāndavas will once more go to the woods for they are all obedient to Yudhishthira![17] It is evident that such a victory will be an enduring one. It is for this that I do not, by any means, desire the slaughter of king Yudhisthira the just.[18]—Ascertaining this crooked purpose of Duryodhana, Drona who was conversant with the truths of the science of Profit and gifted with great intelligence, reflected a little and gave him the boon, circumscribing it in the following way.[19]

"'Drona said,—If the heroic Arjuna do not protect Yudhishthira in battle, thou mayst think the eldest Pāndava as already brought under thy control.[20] As regards Pārtha, the very gods and the *Asuras* together, headed by Indra, cannot advance against him in battle. It is for this that I dare not do what thou askest me to do![21] Without doubt, Arjuna is my disciple and I was his first preceptor in arms. He is, however, young, endued with great good fortune, and excessively intent (on the achievement of his purposes).[22] He hath obtained, again, many weap-

ons from Indra and Rudra. He hath, besides, been provoked by thee. I dare not, therefore, do what thou askest me![23] Let Arjuna be removed, by what means soever that can be done, from the battle. Upon Pārtha being withdrawn, thou mayst regard king Yudhishthira as already vanquished.[24] Upon his seizure is victory and not upon his slaughter, O bull among men! Even by this stratagem, can his seizure be accomplished![25] Seizing that king devoted to truth and righteousness, I will, without doubt, O monarch, bring him to thy control this very day,[26] if he stays before me in battle even for a moment, of course, if Dhananjaya the son of Kunti, that tiger among men, be withdrawn from the field.[27] In Phālgunas' presence, however, O king, Yudhishthira is incapable of being taken in battle by even the gods and the *Asuras* headed by Indra!—'[28]

"Sanjaya continued,—'After Drona had promised the king's seizure even under these limitations, thy foolish sons regarded Yudhishthira as already taken.[29] Thy son (Duryodhana) knew Drona's partiality for the Pāndavas. In order to make Drona stick to his promise, therefore, he divulged those counsels.[30] Then, O chastiser of foes, the fact of Drona's having promised to seize the (eldest) Pāndava was proclaimed by Duryodhana unto all his troops.'"[31]

SECTION XIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'After Drona had promised the king's seizure under those limitations, thy troops, hearing of (that promise about) Yudhishthira's capture,[1] uttered many leonine shouts, mingling them with the whizz of their arrows and the blare of their conchs. King Yudhishthira the just, however, O Bhārata, soon learnt in detail, through his spies, everything about the purpose upon which Bharadwāja's son was intent. Then bringing together all his brothers and all the other kings of his army,[2-3] king Yudhishthira the just addressed Dhananjaya, saying,—Thou hast heard, O tiger among men, about the intention of Drona![4] Let such measures, therefore, be adopted as may prevent the accomplishment of that purpose. It is true,

Drona, that grinder of foes, hath vowed his pledge, subject to limitations.[5] Those limitations, however, O great bowman, rest on thee! Fight thou, therefore, today, O thou of mighty arms, in my vicinity, so that Duryodhana may not obtain from Drona the fruition of his desire!—[6]

"'Arjuna said,—As the slaughter of my preceptor can never be accomplished by me, so, O king, I can never consent to give thee up![7] O son of Pāndu, I would rather yield up my life in battle than fight against my preceptor![8] This son of Dhritarāshtra desireth sovereignty, having seized thee as a captive in battle! In this world he will never obtain the fruition of that desire of his![9] The firmament itself with its stars may fall down. The Earth herself may split into fragments. Yet Drona will, surely, never succeed in seizing thee as long as I am alive![10] If the wielder of the thunderbolt himself, or Vishnu at the head of the gods, assist him in battle, still shall he not succeed in seizing thee on the field![11] As long as I am alive, O great king, it behoveth thee not to entertain any fear of Drona although he is the foremost of all wielders of weapons![12] I further say unto thee, O monarch, that my promise never remains unfulfilled. I do not recollect having ever spoken any untruth. I do not recollect having ever been vanquished! I do not recollect having ever, after making a vow, left the least part of it unfulfilled!'—[13]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then, O king, conchs and drums and cymbals and smaller drums were sounded and beat in the Pāndava camp.[14] And the high-souled Pāndavas uttered many leonine shouts. These and the awful twang of their bowstrings and the slaps of their palms touched the very heaven.[15] Hearing that loud blare of conchs that arose from the camp of the mighty son of Pāndu, diverse instruments were sounded amongst thy divisions also.[16] Then thy divisions as also those of theirs were arrayed in order of battle. And slowly they advanced against each other from desire of battle.[17] Then commenced a battle, that was fierce and that made the hair to stand on end, between the Pāndavas and the Kurus, and Drona and the Pānchālas.[18] The Srinjayas, though struggling vigorously, were unable to beat in battle the host of Drona, protected as

it was by Drona himself.[19] And so also the mighty car-warriors of thy son, skilled in smiting, could not beat the Pāndava host, protected as it was by the diadem-decked (Arjuna).[20] Protected by Drona and Arjuna, both hosts seemed to stand inactive like two blossoming forests in the silence of the night.[21] Then he of the golden car, (*viz.*, Drona) like the Sun himself of great splendor, crushing the ranks of the Pāndavas, careered through them at will.[22] And the Pāndavas, and the Srinjayas, through fear, regarded that single warrior of great activity upon his quickly-moving car as if multiplied into many.[23] Shot by him, terrible shafts coursed in all directions, frightening, O king, the army of Pāndu's son.[24] Indeed, Drona then seemed as the Sun himself at midday covered by a hundred rays of light.[25] And as the *Dānavas* were unable to look at Indra, so there was not one among the Pāndavas, who, O monarch, was able to look at the angry son of Bharadwāja in that battle.[26] The valiant son of Bharadwāja then, having confounded the (hostile) troops, speedily began to consume the division of Dhrishtadyumna by means of sharp shafts.[27] And covering and obstructing all the points of the compass by means of his straight shafts, he began to crush the Pāndava force even there where Prishata's son was.' "[28]

SECTION XIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then Drona, causing a great confusion in the Pāndava host, careered through it like a conflagration consuming (a forest of) trees![1] Beholding that angry warrior owning a golden car consume their divisions like a raging conflagration, the Srinjayas trembled (in fear).[2] The twang, in that battle, of the constantly stretched bow of that warrior of great activity was heard to resembe the roar of the thunder.*[3] Fierce shafts shot by Drona endued with great lightness of hands, began to crush car-warriors and horsemen and elephant-warriors and

---

* The Bengal texts read this verse incorrectly. For *prataptam* the correct reading is *satatam*; and for *anukārinas* the correct word is *āgukārinas*.—T.

foot-soldiers along with elephants and steeds.[4] Showering his arrows as the roaring clouds at the close of summer, assisted by the wind, pour hail-stones, he inspired fear in the hearts of the foe.[5] Careering (through the hostile ranks), O king, and agitating the troops, the mighty Drona enhanced the unnatural fear entertained by the enemy.[6] The gold-decked bow, on his quickly-moving car, was repeatedly seen to resemble the lightning's flash amid a mass of dark clouds.[7] That hero, firm in truth, endued with wisdom, and always devoted, besides, to righteousness, caused an awful river of angry current, such as may be seen at the end of the *Yuga*, to flow there.[8] And that river had its source in the impetuosity of Drona's wrath, and it was haunted by crowds of carnivorous creatures. And the combatants constituted the waves that filled its entire surface. And heroic warriors constituted the trees on its banks whose roots were constantly eaten away by its current.[9] And its waters were constituted by the blood that was shed in that battle, and cars constituted its eddies, and elephants and steeds formed its banks. And coats of mail constituted its lilies, and the flesh of creatures the mire on its bed.[10] And the fat, marrow, and bones (of fallen animals and men) formed the sands on its beach, and (fallen) head-gears its froth. And the battle itself that was fought there constituted the cloudy canopy above its surface. And lances constituted the fish with which it abounded.[11] And it was inaccessible in consequence of the large numbers of (slain) men, elephants, and steeds (that fell in it). And the impetus of the shafts shot constituted its current. And the slain bodies themselves constituted the timber floating on it. And cars constituted its tortoises.[12] And heads constituted the stones scattered on its banks and bed, and scimitars its fish in profusion. And cars and elephants formed its lakes. And it was decked with many adornments.[13] And mighty car-warriors constituted its hundreds of little whirlpools. And the dust of the earth constituted its wavelets. And capable of being easily crossed by those possessed of exceeding energy, it was incapable of being crossed by the timid.[14] And heaps of dead bodies constituted the sand-banks obstructing its navigation. And it was the haunt of *Kankas* and vultures and other birds of prey.

And it carried away thousands of mighty car-warriors to the abode of Yama.[15] And long spears constituted the snakes that infested it in profusion. And the living combatants constituted the fowl sporting on its waters.* Torn umbrellas constituted its large swans. Diadems formed the (smaller) birds that adorned it.[16] Wheels constituted its turtles, and maces its alligators, and arrows its smaller fish. And it was the resort of frightful swarms of crows and vultures and jackalls.[17] And that river, O best of kings, bore away in hundreds, to the regions of the *Pitris*, the creatures that were slain by Drona in battle.[18] Obstructed by hundreds of bodies (floating on it), the hair (of slain warriors and animals) constituted its moss and weeds. Even such was the river, enhancing the fears of the timid, that Drona caused to flow there.†[19]

"'And when Drona was thus grinding the hostile army hither and thither, the Pāndava warriors headed by Yudhishthira rushed at that mighty car-warrior from all sides.[20] Them thus rushing (towards Drona), brave combatants of thy army, possessed of unyielding prowess, received from every side. And the battle that thereupon ensued made the hair to stand on end.[21] Cakuni, full of a hundred kinds of deceipt, rushed towards Sahadeva, and pierced the latter's charioteer, and standard, and car, with many keen-pointed shafts.[22] Sahadeva, however, without being much excited, cutting off Sauvala's standard and bow and car-driver and car, with sharp arrows, pierced Sauvala himself with sixty shafts.[23] Thereupon Suvala's son, taking up a mace, jumped down from his excellent car ; and with that mace, O king, he felled Sahadeva's driver from the latter's car.[24] Then those two heroic and mighty warriors, O monarch, both deprived of car, and both armed with mace, sported in battle like two crests of hills.[25] Drona,

* The Bengal reading is *Cura-vyāla*. The Bombay text reads *Cula-vyāla*. I adopt the latter. *Vājinas*, in *Prāni-vāji-nishevitam*, is explained by Nilakantha to mean fowl or birds.—T.

† It is evident that the very minuteness with which the comparions is sought to be sustained destroys the effect. Regarding the respetitions, they are just such as one may expect to find in verses composed *extem pore*.—T.

having pierced the ruler of the Pānchālas with ten shafts, was, in return, pierced by the latter with many shafts. And the latter was again pierced by Drona with a larger number of shafts.[26] Bhimasena pierced Vivingçati with twenty sharp arrows. The latter, however, thus pierced, trembled not, which seemed to be highly wonderful.[27] Vivingçati then, O monarch, suddenly deprived Bhimasena of his steeds and standard and bow. And thereupon all the troops worshipped him for that feat.[28] The heroic Bhimasena, however, brooked not that exhibition of prowess by his enemy in battle. With his mace, therefore, he slew the well-trained steeds of Vivingçati.[29] Then the mighty Vivingçati, taking up a shield (and sword), jumped down from that car whose steeds had been slain, and rushed against Bhimasena like an infuriate elephant rushing against an infuriate compeer.[30] The heroic Calya, laughing the while, pierced, as if in dalliance, his own dear nephew Nakula with many shafts for angering him.[31] The valiant Nakula, however, cutting off his uncle's steeds and umbrella and standard and charioteer and bow in that battle, blew his conch.[32] Dhrishtaketu, engaged with Kripa, cut off diverse kinds of arrows shot at him by the latter, and then pierced Kripa with seventy arrows. And then he cut off the device of Kripa's standard with three arrows.[33] Kripa, however, began to oppose him with a thick shower of arrows. And resisting him in this way, the Brāhmana fought on with Dhrishtaketu.[34] Sātyaki, laughing the while, pierced Kritavarman in the centre of the chest with a long arrow. And piercing him then with seventy arrows, he once more pierced him with many others.[35] The Bhoja warrior, however, in return, pierced Sātyaki with seven and seventy arrows of keen points. Like the swiftly-coursing winds failing to move a mountain, Kritavarman was unable to move Sātyaki or make him, tremble.[36] Senāpati deeply struck Suçarman in his vitals. Suçarman also struck his antagonist with a lance on the shoulder-joint.[37] Virāta, aided by his Matsya warriors of great energy, resisted Vikartana's son in that battle. And that feat (of the Matsya king) seemed highly wonderful.[38] Even this was regarded an act of great valor on the part of the *Suta's* son in that he singly resisted that whole force by means of his

straight shafts.[39] King Drupada was engaged with Bhagadatta. And the battle between those two warriors became beautiful to behold.[40] That bull among men, *viz.*, Bhagadatta, pierced king Drupada and his driver and standard and car with many straight shafts.[41] Then Drupada, excited with wrath, quickly pierced that mighty car-warrior in the chest with a straight shaft.[42] Those two foremost of warriors on earth, *viz.*, Somadatta's son and Cikhandin, both conversant with every weapon, encountered each other in fierce battle that made all creatures tremble with fear.[43] The valiant Bhuriçravas, O king, covered that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Yajnasena's son Cikhandin, with a thick shower of arrows.[44] Cikhandin then, O monarch, excited with wrath, pierced Somadatta's son with ninety shafts, and caused him, O Bhārata, to tremble.[45] Those *Rākshasas* of fierce deeds, *viz.*, Hidimbā's son and Alamvusha, each desirous of vanquishing the other, battled most wonderfully.[46] Both capable of creating a hundred illusions, both swelling with pride, battled with each other most wonderfully, relying on their powers of illusion, and each desirous of vanquishing the other.[47] The fierce Chekitāna battled with Anuvinda. They coursed on the field, disappearing at times, and causing great wonder.[48] Lakshmana fought fiercely with Kshatradeva, even as Vishnu, O monarch, in days of old, with the *(Asura)* Hiranyāksha.[49] With his fleet steeds and upon his car duly equipt, Paurava, O king, roared at Abhimanyu.[50] Endued with great might, Paurava then rushed at Abhimanyu, desirous of battle. Then that chastiser of foes, *viz.*, Abhimanyu, fought fiercely with that foe.[51] Paurava covered Subhadrā's son with a thick shower of arrows. Thereupon Arjuna's son felled his antagonist's standard and umbrella and bow on earth.*[52] Then piercing Paurava with seven other arrows, Subhadrā's son pierced the latter's driver and steeds with five arrows.[53] Gladdening his troops thus, he then repeatedly roared like a lion. Then Arjuna's son quickly fixed an arrow on his bowstring that was certain to take away Paurava's life.[54]

---

* This verse is read incorrectly in the Bengal texts. For *hayān* read *Dhanus*.—T.

Beholding, however, that arrow of frightful mien fixed on Abhimanyu's bowstring, Hridikā's son, with two shafts, cut off that bow and arrow.[55] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, Subhadrā's son, throwing aside that broken bow, took up a bright sword and a shield.[56] Whirling with great activity that shield decked with many stars, and whirling that sword also, he coursed on the field, exhibiting his prowess.[57] Whirling them before him, and whirling them on high, now shaking them and now jumping up himself, from the manner of his handling those weapons, it seemed that (with him) there was no difference between that offensive and that defensive weapon.[58] Jumping suddenly then upon the shafts of Paurava's car, he roared aloud. Mounting next upon his car, he seized Paurava by the hair,[59] and slaying, meanwhile, with a kick, the latter's driver, he felled his standard with a stroke of his sword. And as regards Paurava himself, Abhimanyu raised him up like Garuda raising a snake from the bottom of the sea, agitating the waters.[60] Thereupon all the kings beheld Paurava (standing helpless) with dishevelled hair, and looking like an ox deprived of its senses while on the point of being slain by a lion.[61] Beholding Paurava thus prostrated, placed under the control of Arjuna's son, and dragged helplessly, Jayadratha was unable to brook it.[62] Taking up a sword as also a shield that bore the device of a peacock and was decked with a hundred bells of small size suspended in rows, Jayadratha jumped down from his car with a loud roar.[63] Then Krishna's son (Abhimanyu), beholding the ruler of the Sindhus, let Paurava alone, and leaping up like a hawk from the latter's car, quickly alighted on the earth.[64] The lances and axes and scimitars hurled by his foes, Krishna's son cut off by means of his sword or warded off by his shield.[65] Thus showing unto all the warriors the strength of his own arms, the mighty [and heroic] Abhimanyu, once more upraising his large and heavy sword as also his shield,*[66] proceeded towards Vriddhakshatra's son who was a sworn foe of his (Abhimanyu's) father, like a tiger proceeding against an elephant.[67] Approaching, they cheerfully

* The word "heroic" occurs in the next verse.—T.

attacked each other with their swords like a tiger and a lion with their claws and teeth.[68] And none could notice any distinction between those two lions among men as regards the whirl, strokes, and descent of their swords and shields.*[69] And as regards the descent and the whizz of their swords, and the warding off of each other's blows, it seemed there was no distinction between the two.[70] Coursing beautifully in outward and inward tracks, those two illustrious warriors then seemed to be like two winged mountains.[71] Then Jayadratha struck on the shield of the renowned Abhimanyu when the latter stretched his sword for making a pass at him.[72] Then, O Bhārata, Jayadratha's large sword sticking into Abhimanyu's shield covered with golden plate, broke as the ruler of the Sindhus attempted to draw it off forcibly.[73] Seeing his sword break, Jayadratha hastily retreated six steps and was seen within a twinkle of the eye to be mounted on his own car.[74] Then Krishna's son also, that combat with the sword being over, ascended his own excellent car. Many kings then, of the Kuru army, uniting together, surrounded him on all sides.[75] The mighty son of Arjuna, however, eyeing Jayadratha, whirled his sword and shield, and uttered a loud shout.[76] Having vanquished the ruler of the Sindhus, Subhadrā's son, that slayer of hostile heroes, then began to scorch that division of the Kaurava army like the Sun scorching the world.[77] Then in that battle Calya hurled at him a fierce dart made wholly of iron, decked with gold, and resembling a blazing flame of fire.[78] Thereupon Krishna's son, jumping up, caught hold of that dart like Garuda catching a mighty snake falling from above. And having seized it thus, Abhimanyu unsheathed his sword.[79] Witnessing the great activity and might of that warrior of immeasurable energy, all the kings together uttered a leonine shout.[80] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, hurled with the might of his arms at Calya himself that very dart of great effulgence decked with stones of *lapis lazuli*.[81] Resembling a snake that has recently cast off its slough, that dart, reaching Calya's car, slew the latter's

* The words in the original are *Sampàta*, *Abhighàta*, and *Nipâta*.—T.

driver and felled him from his niche in the vehicle.[32] Then Virāta and Drupada, and Dhrishtaketu and Yudhishthira, and Sātyaki, and Kekaya, and Bhima, and Dhrishtadyumna, and Cikhandin,[33] and the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), and the five sons of Draupadi, all exclaimed,—*Excellent, Excellent !* And diverse kinds of sounds due to the shooting of arrows, and many leonine shouts,[34] arose there, gladdening the unretreating son of Arjuna. Thy sons, however, could not brook those indications of the victory of their foe.[35] Then all of them suddenly surrounded Subhadrā's son and covered him, O king, with showers of arrows like the clouds pouring rain on the mountain-breast.[36] Then that slayer of foes, *viz.*, Ārtāyani (Calya), wishing the good of thy sons and remembering the overthrow of his own driver, rushed in rage against Subhadrā's son.' "[37]

SECTION XV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Thou hast, O Sanjaya, described to me many excellent single combats. Hearing about them, I envy those that have eyes.[1] This battle between the Kurus and the Pāndavas, resembling that (of old) between the gods and the *Asuras*, will be spoken of as exceedingly wonderful by all men.[2] I am scarcely gratified with listening to thy narrations of this excellent battle. Tell me, therefore, about this combat between Ārtāyani (Calya) and Subhadrā's son !'[3]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding his driver slain, Calya, upraising a mace made wholly of iron, jumped down in rage from his excellent car.[4] Bhima then, taking up his own huge mace, quickly rushed towards Calya who then resembled the blazing *Yuga* fire or the Destroyer himself armed with his bludgeon.[5] Subhadrā's son also, taking up a prodigious mace resembling the bolt of heaven, addressed Calya, saying,—*Come, Come* !—Bhima, however, with much ado, persuaded him to stand aside.[6] The valiant Bhimasena then, having persuaded Subhadrā's son to stand aside, approached Calya in battle and stood immovable as a hill.[7] The mighty ruler of the Madras also, beholding Bhima, proceeded towards him like a tiger towards an ele-

phant.[8] Then was heard there the loud blare of trumpets and conchs by thousands, and leonine shouts, and the loud noise of drums.[9] And loud cries of—*Excellent, Excellent,*—arose among hundreds of Pāndava and Kaurava warriors rushing towards each other.[10] None else among all the kings, O Bhārata, save the ruler of the Madras can venture to bear the might of Bhimasena in battle.[11] Similarly, who else, save Vrikodara, in the world, can venture to bear the impetus of the illustrious Calya's mace in battle ?[12] Bound in hempen strings mixed with wires of gold, the prodigious mace, capable of gladdening all spectators, of Bhima, being grasped by him, shone brilliantly.[13] And similarly the mace of Calya also, who coursed in beautiful circles, looked like a blazing flash of lightning.[14] Both of them roared like bulls, and both coursed in circles. And both Calya and Vrikodara, standing as they did, with their maces slightly bent, looked like a couple of horned bulls.[15] Whether as regards coursing in circles or in whirling and striking with their maces, the combat that took place between those two lions among men was every way equal.[16] Struck by Bhimasena with his mace, the prodigious mace of Calya, emitting fierce sparks of fire, speedily broke unto fragments.[17] And similarly Bhimasena's mace, struck by the foe, looked beautiful like a tree covered with fire-flies during the season of rains at eventide.[18] And the mace that the ruler of the Madras hurled in that battle, irradiating the welkin, O Bhārata, frequently caused sparks of fire (to fly around).[19] Similarly the mace hurled by Bhimasena at the foe scorched his antagonist's forces like a fierce meteor falling down (from the firmament).[20] And both those best of maces, striking against each other, resembled sighing she-snakes and caused flashes of fire.[21] Like two large tigers attacking each other with their claws, or like two mighty elephants with their tusks, those two mighty warriors coursed in circles, encountering each other with those two foremost of maces with which they were armed.[22] Struck then with those foremost of maces and soon covered with blood, those two illustrious warriors seemed to resemble a couple of flowering *Kinçukas.*[23] And the blows, loud as Indra's thunder, of the maces wielded by those two lions among men was heard on all

sides.[24] Struck by the ruler of the Madras with his mace on both the left and the right side, Bhima moved not in the least, like a hill riven by the thunder.[25] Similarly the mighty ruler of the Madras, struck by Bhima with his mace, patiently stood still like a hill struck with the thunder.[26] Both of them, with upraised maces, endued as they were with great impetus, fell upon each other, coursing in shorter circles.[27] Quickly nearing each other then by eight steps and falling upon each other like two elephants, they suddenly struck each other with those maces of theirs made entirely of iron.[28] And each of those heroes, in consequence of the other's impetuosity and violently struck with the other's mace, fell down at the same instant of time with the other, like a couple of Indra's poles.[29] Then the mighty car-warrior Kritavarman quickly approached Calya, who, deprived of his senses, was breathing hard as he lay on the field.[30] And beholding him, O king, struck violently with the mace, and writhing like a snake, and deprived of his senses in a swoon,[31] the mighty car-warrior Kritavarman, taking him upon his car, quickly bore the ruler of the Madras away from the field.[32] Reeling like a drunken man, the heroic Bhima of mighty arms, rising up within the twinkling of an eye, stood mace in hand.[33] Thy sons then, beholding the ruler of the Madras turn away from the fight, began, O sire, to tremble, along with their elephants, and foot-soldiers, and cavalry, and cars.[34] Grinded then by the Pāndavas desirous of victory, those warriors of thy army, struck with fear, fled away in all directions, like masses of clouds driven away by the wind.[35] And those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the Pāndavas, having vanquished the Dhārtarāshtras, looked resplendent in that battle, O king, like blazing fires.[36] And they uttered loud leonine roars, and blew their conchs, filled with joy. And they beat their drums, large and small, and cymbals and other instruments.' "[37]

SECTION XVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding that army of thine exceedingly broken, the valiant Vrishasena, single-handed, began to protect it, O king, displaying the illusion of his weapons.[1] Shot by

Vrishasena in that battle, thousands of arrows coursed in all directions, piercing through men and steeds and cars and elephants.[2] Mighty arrows, of blazing effulgence, shot by him, coursed in thousands, like the rays, O monarch, of the Sun in the summer season.[3] Afflicted and crushed therewith, O king, car-warriors and horse-men suddenly fell down on the earth like trees broken by the wind.[4] The mighty car-warrior Vrishasena, O king, felled large bodies of steeds, of cars, and of elephants, in that battle, in thousands.[5] Beholding that single warrior coursing fearlessly on the field, all the kings (of the Pāndava army), uniting together, surrounded him on all sides.[6] Nakūla's son Catānika rushed at Vrishasena and pierced him with ten arrows capable of penetrating into the very vitals.[7] The son of Karna, however, cutting off his bow, felled then his standard. Thereupon the other sons of Draupadi, desirous of rescuing that brother of theirs, rushed at him.[8] And soon they made Karna's son invisible by means of their arrowy showers. Against them thus smiting (the son of Karna), many car-warriors headed by Drona's son (Açwatthāman) rushed.[9] And these, O monarch, quickly covered those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the sons of Draupadi, with diverse kinds of arrows like clouds pouring rain on mountain breasts.[10] Thereupon the Pāndavas, from affection for their sons, quickly encountered those assailants.[11] The battle then that took place between thy troops and those of the Pāndavas, was exceedingly fierce and made the hair to stand on end, resembling as it did that between the gods and the *Dānavas*.[12] Even thus did the heroic Kauravas and the Pāndavas, excited with rage, fight, eyeing one another (furiously) and having incurred one another's animosity for past offences.[13] The bodies of those heroes of immeasurable energy then seemed, in consequence of (the) wrath (that inspired them), to resemble those of Garuda and (mighty) *Nāgas* battling in the sky.[14] And with Bhima and Karna and Kripa and Drona and Drona's son and Prishata's son and Sātyaki, the field of battle looked resplendent like the all-destructive Sun that rises at the end of the *Yuga*,[15] The battle that took place between those mighty men engaged with mighty antagonists, and all smiting one another, was fierce in the extreme, resembling that (of

yore) between the *Dānavas* and the gods.[16] Then Yudhishthira's host, uttering a noise loud as that of the surging sea, began to slaughter thy troops, the great car-warriors of thy army having fled away.[17] Beholding the (Kaurava) host broken and excessively mangled by the foe, Drona said,—Ye heroes, ye need not fly away![18]—Then he (*viz.*, Drona) owning red steeds, excited with wrath and resembling a (fierce) elephant with four tusks, penetrated into the Pāndava host and rushed against Yudhishthira.[19] Then Yudhishthira pierced the preceptor with many whetted arrows equipt with *Kanka* feathers. Drona, however, cutting off Yudhishthira's bow, rushed impetuously at him.[20] Then the protector of Yudhishthira's car-wheels, *viz.*, Kumāra, the renowned prince of the Pānchālas, received the advancing Drona like the continent receiving the surging sea.[21] Beholding Drona, that bull among Brāhmanas held in check by Kumāra, loud leonine shouts were heard there with cries of *Excellent, Excellent!*[22]—Kumāra then, in that great battle, excited with rage, pierced Drona with an arrow in the chest and uttered many leonine shouts.[23] Having checked Drona in battle, the mighty Kumāra, endued with great lightness of hand and above all fatigue, pierced him with many thousands of arrows.[24] Then that bull among men (*viz.*, Drona) slew that protector of Yudhishthira's car-wheels, *viz.*, Kumāra, that hero observant of virtuous vows and accomplished in both *mantras* and weapons.[25] And then penetrating into the midst of the (Pāndava) host and carcering in all directions, that bull among men, *viz.*, Bharadwāja's son, became the protector of thy troops.[26] And piercing Cikhandin with twelve arrows, and Uttamaujas with twenty, and Nakula with five, and Sahadeva with seven,[27] and Yudhishthira with twelve, and each of the (five) sons of Draupadi with three, and Sātyaki with five, and the ruler of the Matsyas with ten arrows,[28] and agitating the entire host in that battle, he rushed against the foremost warriors (of the Pāndavas) one after another. And then he advanced against Kunti's son Yudhishthira from desire of seizing him.[29] Then Yugandhara, O king, checked Bharadwāja's son, that mighty car-warrior filled with rage and resembling the very ocean lashed into fury,

by the tempest.[30] Bharadwāja's son, however, having pierced Yudhishthira with many straight arrows, felled Yugandhara with a broad-headed shaft from his niche in the car.[31] Then Virāta, and Drupada, and the Kaikeya princes, and Sātyaki, and Civi, and Vyāghradatta the prince of the Pānchālas, and the valiant Singhasena,[32] these, and many others, desirous of rescuing Yudhishthira, surrounded Drona on all sides, and impeded his way, scattering countless arrows.[33] Vyāghradatta, the prince of the Pānchālas, pierced Drona with fifty keen-pointed arrows, at which, O king, the troops uttered loud shouts.[34] Then Singhasena also, quickly piercing that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Drona, roared aloud in joy, striking terror into the hearts of mighty car-warriors.[35] Drona then, expanding his eyes and rubbing his bowstring and producing loud slaps of his palms, rushed against the latter.[36] Then the mighty son of Bharadwāja, putting forth his prowess, cut off with a couple of broad-headed arrows the heads decked with ear-rings from the trunks of both Singhasena and Vyāghradatta.[37] And afflicting also, with his arrowy showers, the other mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas, he stood in the front of Yudhishthira's car like all-destroying Death himself.[38] Then, O king, loud cries were heard among the warriors of Yudhishthira's army to the effect,—*The king is slain,*—when Bharadwāja's son of regulated vows thus stood in his vicinage.[39] And the warriors there all exclaimed, beholding Drona's prowess,—*Today the royal son of Dhritarāshtra will be crowned with success!*[40] *This very moment, Drona, having seized Yudhishthira, will, filled with joy, assuredly come to us and Duryodhana's presence.*[41]—While thy soldiers were indulging in such talk, Kunti's son (Arjuna) quickly came there, filling (the welkin) with the rattle of his car,[42] and creating, as he came, owing to the carnage he caused, a river whose waters were blood, and whose eddies were cars, and which abounded with the bones and bodies of brave warriors, and which bore creatures away to where the spirits of the departed dwell.[43] And the son of Pāndu came there, routing the Kurus, and quickly crossing that river whose froth was constituted by showers of arrows and which abounded with fish in the form of lances and other

weapons.[44] And the diadem-decked (Arjuna) suddenly came upon Drona's division, covering it with a thick network of arrows and confounding the very senses (of those that followed Drona).[45] Incessantly placing his arrows on the bowstring and quickly shooting them, none could notice any lapse of time between these two acts of the renowned son of Kunti.[46] Neither the (four cardinal) directions, nor the welkin, nor the firmament above, nor the earth, O king, could any longer be distinguished, for everything then became one continuous mass of arrows.[47] Indeed, O king, when the wielder of *Gāndiva* caused that thick darkness by means of his arrows, nothing could be seen in that battle.[48] Just then the Sun also set, enveloped with a dusty cloud. Niether friend nor foe could any longer be distinguished.[49] Then Drona and Duryodhana and others caused the withdrawal of their troops. And ascertaining the foe to be inspired with fear and unwilling to continue the fight,[50] Vibhatsu also slowly caused his troops to be withdrawn. Then the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas and the Pānchālas, filled with joy, praised Pārtha with delightful speeches like the *Rishis* praising the Sun. Having vanquished his foes thus, Dhananjaya then, filled with joy, retired to his tent, proceeding in the rear of the whole army, with Keçava as his companion.[51-52] And stationed on his beautiful car decked with the costliest specimens of sapphires and rubies and gold and silver and diamonds and corals and crystals, the son of Pāndu looked resplendent like the moon in the firmament bespangled with stars.' "[53]

SECTION XVII.

(Samsaptaka-badha Parva.)

"Sanjaya said,—'The troops of both armies, having proceeded to their tents, duly took up their quarters, O king, according to the divisions and the sub-divisions to which they belonged.[1] Having withdrawn the troops, Drona, in great cheerlessness of mind, beholding Duryodhana, said these words in shame :[2]—I told thee before that when Dhananjaya is by, Yudhishthira is incapable of being seized in battle by the

very gods.[3] Although all of you fell upon him in battle, yet Pārtha frustrated all your attempts. Do not doubt what I say; Krishna, and Pāndu's son (Arjuna) are invincible![4] If, however, Arjuna of white steeds can, by any means, be withdrawn (from Yudhishthira's side), then Yudhishthira, O king, shall soon come under thy control![5] Let some one, challenging him (Arjuna) in battle draw him away to some other part of the field. The son of Kunti will not return without vanquishing him.[6] Meanwhile, when Arjuna will not be by, I, O monarch, will seize king Yudhishthira the just, penetrating through the Pāndava host in the very sight of Dhrishtadyumna![7] Thus, O monarch, I will, without doubt, bring Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, along with his followers, under control![8] If that son of Pāndu stays even for a moment before me in battle, I will bring him a captive from the field. That feat will be more advantageous than victory (over the Pāndava army)![9]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing those words of Drona, the ruler of the Trigartas, O monarch, with his brothers, said these words:[10]—We, O king, are always humiliated by the wielder of *Gāndiva!* O bull of Bharata's race, although we have done him no injury, yet he hath always injured us![11] Remembering all those diverse instances of humiliation, we burn in wrath and are never able to sleep at night![12] By good luck, that Arjuna, armed with weapons, will stand before us. That, therefore, which is in our heart and which we strive to accomplish, we are resolved to achieve now,[13] that, *viz.*, which will be agreeable to thee, and which will bring us renown! Taking him out of the field we will slay him.[14] Let the earth today be without Arjuna or let it be without the Trigartas! We truly swear this before thee! This our vow will never be false![15]—And Satyaratha and Satyavarman, O Bhārata, and Satyavrata and Satyeshu, and Satyakarman also, having spoken similarly,[16]—those five brothers together,—with ten thousand cars, came, O king, (before Duryodhana), having taken that oath on the field of battle.[17] And the Mālavas, and the Tundikeras with thirty thousand cars, and that tiger among men, *viz.*, Suçarman, the ruler of Prasthala,[18] with the

Māvelakas, the Lilithyas, and the Madrakas, accompanied by ten thousand cars and his brothers,[19] and with another ten thousand cars from diverse realms came forward for taking the oath.[20] Then bringing fire, and each making preparations for igniting one for himself, they took up ropes of *Kuça* grass and beautiful coats of mail.[21] And equipt in mail, bathed in clarified butter, clad in robes of *Kuça* grass, and with their bowstrings serving as girdles, those heroes, who had given away thousands and hundreds as (sacrificial) presents to Brāhmanas,[22] who had performed many sacrifices, had been blessed with children, and were deserving of blessed regions hereafter, who had nothing more to do in this world, who were prepared to lay down their lives in battle, and who devoted their souls to the attainment of fame and victory,[23] who were desirous of soon repairing by fair fight to those regions (hereafter) that are attainable by means only of sacrifices with abundant presents to Brāhmanas, and by means also of rites the chief amongst which are *Brahmacharya* and study of the *Vedas*,[24] those heroes, having each gratified Brāhmanas by giving them gold,* and kine, and robes, and having addressed one another in loving discourse,[25] ignited those fires and took that vow in battle. And in the presence of those fires, firmly resolved, they took that vow.[26] And having made that vow for the slaughter of Dhananjaya, they then, in the hearing of all creatures, very loudly said,[27]—Those regions that are for persons who have never adopted any vows, those that are for persons that slay a Brāhmana, those regions that are for one who drinketh wine, those that are for him who hath adulterous connection with his preceptor's wife,[28] those that are for him who robbeth the property of a Brāhmana, or for him who enjoyeth the king's grant without satisfying the condition of that grant, or for him who abandoneth one asking for shelter, or for him who slayeth a candidate for his favor,[29] those that are for persons that set fire to houses and for those that slay kine, those regions that are for those that injure others, those that

* *Nishka*, litterally, a golden coin, whose weight is diversely stated by diverse authorities.—T.

are for persons harbouring malice against Brāhmanas,[30] those that are for him who from folly doth not seek the companionship of his wife in her season, those also that are for those that seek the companionship of women on the day they have to perform the *Çrāddha* of their ancestors, those that are for persons that injure their own selves,[31] or for those that misappropriate what is deposited with them from confidence, or for those that destroy learning, or for those that battle with eunuchs, or for those that follow persons that are mean,[32] those regions that are for atheists, or for those that abandon their (sacred) fires and mothers, and those regions also that are for the sinful, those shall be ours[33] if without slaying Dhananjaya we return from the field, or if, grinded by him on the field, we turn back from fear![34] If, again, we succeed in achieving in battle feats the most difficult of accomplishment in the world, we shall then, without doubt, obtain the most desirable regions![35]—Having said these words, O king, those heroes then marched to battle, summoning Arjuna towards the southern part of the field.[36] That tiger among men, and subjugater of hostile cities, *viz.*, Arjuna, thus challenged by them, said these words unto king Yudhishthira the just without any delay:[37]—Summoned, I never turn back. This is my fixed vow. These men, sworn to conquer or die, are summoning me, O king, to great battle![38] This Suçarman here, with his brothers, summoneth me to battle. It behoveth thee to grant me permission for slaying him with all his followers.[39] O bull among men, I am unable to brooke this challenge. I tell thee truly, know these foes to be (already) slain in battle![40]—

"'Yudhishthira said,—Thou hast heard, O child, in detail, what Drona hath resolved to accomplish! Act thou in such a way that, that resolve of his may become futile![41] Drona is endued with great might. He is a hero, accomplished in arms, and above fatigue! O mighty car-warrior, even he hath vowed my seizure![42]—

"'Arjuna said,—'This Satyajit, O king, will today become thy protector in battle! As long as Satyajit lives, the preceptor will never be able to accomplish his wish![43] If, however, O lord, this tiger among men, *viz.*, Satyajit, be slain in battle,

thou shouldst not then remain on the field even if surrounded by all (our warriors) ![44]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'King Yudhishthira then gave (to Arjuna) the leave (he sought). And he also embraced Arjuna and eyed him affectionately. And diverse were the benedictions that the king uttered on him.[45] Having made this arrangment (for Yudhishthira's protection),* the mighty Pārtha went out against the Trigartas, like a hungry lion, for assuaging his hunger, upon a herd of deer.[46] Then Duryodhana's troops, filled with joy at Arjuna's absence (from Yudhishthira's side), became furious for the seizure of Yudhishthira.[47] Then both hosts, with great impetuosity, encountered each other, like Gangā and Sarayu in the season of rains when both streams are swollen with water.' "[48]

SECTION XVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'The *Samsaptakas*† then, filled with joy, took their stand on a level field, having, with their cars formed an array in the shape of the half-moon.[1] And those tigers among men, beholding the diadem-decked (Arjuna) come towards them, were, O sire, filled with delight and uttered loud shouts.[2] That noise filled the welkin and all the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary. And because it was an open plain covered only with men, it produced no echoes.[3] Ascertaining them to be exceedingly delighted, Dhananjaya, with a partial smile, said these words unto Krishna :[4]—Behold, O thou that hast Devaki for thy mother, those Trigarta brothers, who are about to perish in battle, are filled with delight at a time when they should weep ![5] Or, this is, without doubt, the hour of delight (with them), since they will obtain those excellent regions that are unattainable by cowards ![6]—Having said these words unto the mighty-armed Hrishikeça, Arjuna came upon the arrayed ranks of the Trigartas

---

* I adopt the Bengal reading which is *Vidhāyaivam*. The Bombay reading is *Vihāyainam*, meaning "leaving Yudhishthira.—T.

† Soldiers sworn to conquer or die. Instead of using a long-winded phrase each time, the word occurs, it is better to repeat it in this form.—T.

in battle.[7] Taking up then his conch called *Devadatta* decked with gold, he blew it with great force, filling all the points of the compass with its blare.[8] Terrified by that blare, that car-host of the *Samsaptakas* stood motionless in battle as if it was petrified.[9] And all their animals stood with eyes wide open, ears and necks and lips paralysed, and legs motionless. And they passed urine and vomited blood.[10] Regaining consciousness then, and placing their ranks in proper order, they shot their arrows all at once at the son of Pāndu.[11] Capable of displaying his prowess with great speed, Arjuna, with five and ten arrows, cut off those thousands of arrows before they could reach him.[12] They then pierced Arjuna, each with ten arrows. Pārtha pierced each of them with three arrows.[13] Then each of them, O king, pierced Pārtha with five arrows. Endued with great prowess, he pierced each of them in return with two arrows.[14] And, once again, excited with wrath, they quickly poured upon Arjuna and Keçava countless arrows like the clouds pouring upon a lake their incessant showers.[15] Then those thousands of arrows fell upon Arjuna like flights of bees upon a flowering cluster of trees in the forest.[16] Then Suvāhu deeply pierced Arjuna's diadem with thirty shafts endued with the strength of adamant.[17] With those straight shafts equipt with wings of gold fixed on his diadem, Arjuna, as if decked with ornaments of gold, shone like the (newly) risen Sun.[18] The son of Pāndu then, in that battle, with a broad-headed arrow, cut off the leathern fence of Suvāhu, and covered Suvāhu himself with showers of arrows.[19] Then Suçarman and Suratha and Sudharman and Sudhanwan and Suvāhu pierced Pārtha with ten arrows.[20] Pārtha, having the excellent ape on his banner, pierced all of them in return with many arrows, and also cut off, with some broad-headed shafts, their standards made of gold.[21] And cutting off the bow of Sudhanwan, he slew with his arrows the latter's steeds. And then he cut off from his trunk the latter's head graced with turban.[22] Upon the fall of that hero, his followers were terrified. And struck with panic they all fled away to where Duryodhana's forces were.[23] Then Vāsava's son, filled with wrath, smote that mighty host with incessant showers of

arrows like the Sun destroying darkness by means of his incessant rays.[24] Then when that host broke and melted away on all sides and Arjuna was filled with wrath, the Trigartas were struck with fear.[25] While being slaughtered by Pārtha with his straight shafts, they remained where they stood, deprived of their senses, like a terrified herd of deer.[26] Then the king of the Trigartas, filled with rage, addressed those mighty car-warriors, saying,—Do not fly, ye heroes! It behoveth ye not to be frightened![27] Having, in the sight of all the troops, taken those terrible oaths, repairing thither, what shall ye say unto the leaders of Duryodhana's host?[28] Do we not incur ridicule in the world by such a (cowardly) act in battle? Therefare, cease ye all, and fight according to your strength![29]—Thus addressed, O king, those heroes, repeatedly uttering loud shouts, blew their conchs, gladdening one another.[30] Then those *Samsaptakas* once more returned to the field, with the *Nārāyana* cowherds, resolved to face Death himself.'"[31]

SECTION XIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding those *Samsaptakās* once more return to the field, Arjuna addressed the high-souled Vāsudeva, saying,[1]—Urge the steeds, O Hrishikeça, towards the *Samsaptakas*. They will not give up the battle alive. This is what I think.[2] Today thou shalt witness the terrible might of my arms as also of my bow! Today I shall slay all these like Rudra slaying creatures (at the end of the *Yuga*)![3]—Hearing these words, the invincible Krishna smiled, and gladdening him with auspicious speeches, conveyed Arjuna to those places whither the latter desired to go.[4] While borne in battle by those white steeds, that car looked exceedingly resplendent like a celestial car borne along the firmament.*[5] And like Cakra's car, O king, in the battle between the gods and the *Asuras* in days of old, it displayed circular, forward, backward,

---

* The second line of this verse is read incorrectly in the Bengal texts.—T.

and diverse other kinds of motion.[6] Then the Nārāyanas, excited with wrath and armed with diverse weapons, surrounded Dhananjaya, covering him with showers of arrows.[7] And, O bull of Bharata's race, they soon made Kunti's son Dhananjaya, together with Krishna, perfectly invisible in that battle.[8] Then Phālguna, excited with wrath, doubled his energy, and quickly rubbing its string, grasped *Gāndiva*, (firmly) in that battle.[9] Causing wrinkles to form themselves on his brow,—sure indications of wrath,—the son of Pāndu blew his prodigious conch call *Devadatta*.[10] And then he shot the weapon called *Tāshtra* that is capable of slaying large bodies of foes together. Thereupon thousands of separate forms started into existence there (of Arjuna himself and Vāsudeva).[11] Confounded by those diverse images after the form of Arjuna, the troops began to strike each other, each regarding the other as Arjuna's self.[12]—*This is Arjuna !—This is Govinda !—There are Pāndu's son and he of Yadu's race !*—Uttering such exclamations, and deprived of their senses, they slew one another in that battle.[13] Deprived of their senses by that mighty weapon, they slew one another. Indeed, those warriors (while striking one another) looked beautiful like blossoming *Kinçukas*.[14] Consuming those thousands of arrows shot by them, that (mighty) weapon despatched those heroes to Yama's abode.[15] Then Vibhatsu, laughing, crushed with his arrows the Lilithya, the Mālava, the Māvellaka, and the Trigarta warriors.[16] While those Kshatriyas, urged by fate, were thus slaughtered by that hero, they shot at Pārtha showers of diverse kinds of arrows.[17] Overwhelmed with that terrible shower of arrows, neither Arjuna, nor his car, nor Keçava, could any longer be seen.[18] Seeing their arrows strike the aim, they uttered many joyous shouts. And regarding the two Krishnas as already slain, they joyously waved their garments in the air.[19] And those heroes also blew their conchs and beat their drums and cymbals by thousands, and uttered many leonine shouts, O sire ![20] Then Krishna, covered with sweat, and much weakened, addressed Arjuna, saying,—Where art thou, O Pārtha ! I do not see thee ! Art thou alive, O slayer of foes ![21]—Hearing these words of his, Dhananjaya with great speed dispelled, by

means of the *Vāyâvya* weapon, that arrowy downpour shot by his foes.[22] Then the illustrious Vāyu (the presiding deity of that mighty weapon) bore away crowds of *Samsaptakas* with steeds and elephants and cars and weapons, as if these were dry leaves of trees.[23] Borne away by the wind, O king, they looked highly beautiful, like flights of birds, O monarch, flying away from trees.[24] Then Dhananjaya, having afflicted them thus, with great speed struck hundreds and thousands of them with sharp shafts.[25] And he cut off their heads, and also hands with weapons in grasp, by means of his broad-headed arrows. And he felled on the ground, with his shafts, their thighs resembling the trunks of elephants.[26] And some had their backs mangled, and some were deprived of legs, and some were wounded on their backs, arms, and eyes. And thus Dhananjaya deprived his foes of diverse limbs.[27] And cars decked and equipt according to rule, and looking like the vapoury edifices in the welkin, he cut off into fragments by means of his arrows, slaying their riders and steeds and elephants.[28] And in many places crowds of cars, whose standards had been cut off, looked like forests of headless palmyras.[29] And elephants with excellent weapons, banners, hooks, and standards, fell down like wooded mountains split with Cakra's thunder.[30] Graced with tails looking like those of the yak, and covered with coats of mail, and with their entrails and eyes dragged out, steeds, along with their riders, rolled on the ground, slain by means of Pārtha's shafts.[31] No longer holding in their grasp the swords that had served for their nails, with their coats of mail torn and the joints of their bones broken, foot-soldiers, with their vital limbs cut open, helplessly laid themselves down on the field, slain by means of Arjuna's arrows.[32] And the field of battle assumed an awful beauty in consequence of those warriors slain or in course of being slaughtered, falling and fallen, staying or in course of being whirled along.[33] And the air was purified of the dust that had arisen, by means of the showers of blood (caused by Arjuna's arrows). And the earth, strewn with hundreds of headless trunks, became impassable.[34] And the car of Vibhatsu in that battle shone fiercely like the car of Rudra himself while engaged at the

end of the *Yuga* in destroying all creatures.[35] While slaughtered by Pārtha thus, those warriors, with their steeds and cars and elephants in great distress, ceased not to rush against him, though, deprived of life one after another, they had to become the guests of Cakra.[36] Then the field of battle, O chief of the Bharatas, strewn with mighty car-warriors deprived of life, looked dreadful like Yama's domains abounding with the spirits of departed creatures.[37] Meanwhile, when Arjuna was furiously engaged (with the *Samsaptakas*), Drona, at the head of his forces arrayed for battle, rushed against Yudhishhira.[38] And many warriors, accomplished in smiting and properly arrayed, followed him, actuated by the desire of seizing Yudhishthira. The battle then that ensued became exceedingly fierce.' "[39]

SECTION XX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having passed the night, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Bharadwāja's son, addressed Suyodhana, O monarch, saying,—I am thine !*[1] I have made arrangements for Pārtha's encounter with the *Samsaptakas !*†—After Pārtha went out for slaying the *Samsaptakas*,[2] Drona then, at the head of his troops arrayed for battle, proceeded, O chief of the Bharatas, for seizing king Yudhishthira the just.[3] Seeing that Drona had arrayed his forces in the form of a *Garuda*, Yudhishthira disposed his troops in counter array in the form of a semicircle.[4] In the mouth of that *Garuda* was the mighty car-warrior Drona himself. And its head was formed by king Duryodhana surrounded by his uterine brothers.[5] And Kritavarman and the illustrious Kripa formed the two eyes of that *Garuda*. And Bhutaçarman, and Kshemaçarman, and the valiant Karakāksha,[6] and the Kalingas, the Singhalas, the Easterners, the Cudras, the Āhiras, the Dāçerakas, the Cakas, the Yavanas, the Kāmvojas, the Hangsapādas,[7] the Curasenas, the

---

* The second line is read differently in the Bombay text.—T.

† It seems that the text here is vicious. It certainly requires settling. One complete *sloka* seems to be wanting.—T.

Daradas, the Madras, and the Kaikeyas, with hundreds and thousands of elephants, steeds, cars, and foot-soldiers, were stationed in its neck.[8] And Bhuriçravas, and Calya, and Somadatta, and Vālhika, these heroes, surrounded by a full *Akshauhini*, took up their position in the right wing.[9] And Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, and Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas, stationed themselves in the left wing at the head, however, of Drona's son Açwatthāman.[10] In the back (of that *Garuda*) were the Kalingas, the Amvashthas, the Māgadhas, the Paundras, the Madrakas, the Gāndhāras, the Cakunas, the Easterners, the Mountaineers, and the Vaçātis.[11] In the tail stood Vikartana's son Karna, with his sons, kinsmen, and friends, and surrounded by a large force raised from diverse realms.[12] Jayadratha, and Bhimaratha, and Sampāti, and the Yājas, and the Bhojas, and Bhuminjaya, and Vrisha, and Krātha, and the mighty ruler of the Nishadhas,[13] all accomplished in battle, surrounded by a large host and keeping the region of *Brahma* before their eyes, stood, O king, in the bosom of that array.[14] That array, formed by Drona, in consequence of its foot-soldiers, steeds, cars, and elephants, seemed to dance like the tempest-tossed ocean (as it advanced to battle).[15] Warriors, desirous of battle, began to start out from the wings and sides of that array like roaring clouds charged with lightning rushing from all sides (in the welkin) at summer.[16] And in the midst of that array, the ruler of the Prāgjyotishas, mounted on his duly equipt elephant, looked resplendent, O king, like the rising Sun.[17] Decked, O monarch, in garlands of flowers, and with a white umbrella held over his head, he looked like the moon at full when in conjunction with the constellation Kirtikā.[18] And his juice-blind elephant, looking like a mass of black antimony, shone like a huge mountain washed by mighty clouds (with their showers).[19] And the ruler of the Prāgjyotishas was surrounded by many heroic kings of the hilly countries armed with diverse weapons, like Cakra himself surrounded by the celestials.[20] Then Yudhishthira, beholding that superhuman array incapable of being vanquished by foes in battle, addressed Prishata's son, saying,[21]—O lord, O thou that ownest steeds white as pigeons, let such measures

be adopted that I may not be taken a prisoner by the Brāhmana![22]—

"'Dhrishtadyumna said,—O thou of excellent vows, never shalt thou be placed under the power of Drona, however much may he strive! Even I shall check Drona today with all his followers![23] As long as I am alive, O thou of Kuru's race, it behoveth thee not to feel any anxiety. Under no circumstances is Drona able to vanquish me in battle![24]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said these words, the mighty son of Drupada owning steeds of the hue of pigeons, scattering his shafts, rushed himself at Drona.[25] Beholding that (to him) evil omen in the shape of Dhrishtadyumna stationed before him, Drona soon became exceedingly cheerless.[26] Beholding this, that crusher of foes, *viz.*, thy son Durmukha, desirous of doing what was agreeable to Drona, began to check Dhrishtadyumna.[27] Then a terrible and a fierce battle took place, O Bhārata, between the brave son of Prishata and thy son Durmukha.[28] Then Prishata's son, quickly covering Durmukha with a shower of arrows, checked Bharadwāja's son also with a thick arrowy downpour.[29] Beholding Drona checked, thy son Durmukha quickly rushed at Prishata's son and confounded him with clouds of arrows of diverse kinds.[30] And while the prince of the Pānchālas and that foremost one of Kuru's race were thus engaged in battle, Drona consumed many portions of Yudhishthira's host.[31] As a mass of clouds is dispersed in different directions by the wind, even so was Yudhishthira's host, in many parts of the field, dispersed by Drona.[32] For only a short while did that battle look beautiful. And then, O king, it became an encounter of infuriate persons in which no consideration was shown for anybody.[33] And the combatants could no longer distinguish their own from the foe. And the battle went on, the warriors being guided by inferences and watch-words.[34] Upon the gems on their head-gears, upon their necklaces and other ornaments, and upon their coats of mail, rays of light like those of the Sun seemed to fall and play.[35] And cars and elephants and steeds, decked with floating banners, seemed in that battle to resemble masses of clouds with rows of cranes under them.[36] And men slew men, and

steeds of fiery metal slew steeds, and car-warriors slew car-warriors, and elephants slew elephants.[37] And soon a fierce and terrible encounter took place between elephants with tall standards on their backs and mighty compeers (rushing against them).[38] And in consequence of those huge creatures rubbing their bodies against those of hostile compeers and tearing one another (with their tusks), fires mixed with smoke were engendered there by (such) friction of countless tusks with tusks.[39] Shorn of the standards (on their backs), those elephants, in consequence of the fires engendered by their tusks, looked like masses of clouds in the welkin charged with lightning.[40] And the earth, strewn with elephants dragging (hostile compeers) and roaring and falling down, looked beautiful like the autumnal sky overspread with clouds.[41] And the roars of those elephants while they were being slaughtered with showers of shafts and lances, resembled the roll of clouds in the rainy season.[42] And some huge elephants, wounded with lances and shafts, became panicstruck. And others amongst those creatures, left the field with loud cries*.[43] And some elephants there, struck by others with their tusks, uttered fierce cries of distress that resembled the roll of the all-destroying clouds at the end of the *Yuga*.[44] And some, turned back by huge compeers, returned to the charge, urged on by sharp hooks. And crushing hostile ranks, they began to slay all who came in their way.[45] And elephant-drivers, attacked by elephant-drivers with arrows and lances, fell down from the backs of their beasts, their weapons and hooks loosened from their hand.[46] And many elephants, without riders on their backs, wandered hither and thither like clouds torn from mightier masses, and then fell down, encountering one another.[47] And some huge elephants, bearing on their backs slain and fallen warriors or those whose weapons had fallen down, wandered in all directions singly.†[48] And in the midst of that carnage,

* The second line of this verse is certainly vicious.—T.

† *Ekacharās* is explained by Nilakantha as "unable to bear the sight of others of their species," *i. e.*, walking by themselves, or solitarily or singly. Some of the vernacular translators are for taking this word as implying the *Rhinoceros*—T.

some elephants, attacked or in course of being attacked with lances, swords, and battle-axes, fell down in course of that awful carnage, uttering cries of distress.[49] And the Earth, suddenlly struck with the falling bodies, huge as hills, of those creatures all around, trembled and uttered loud sounds.[50] And with those elephants slain along with their riders and lying all about with the standards on their backs, the Earth looked beautiful as if strewn with hills.[51] And the drivers on the backs of many elephants, with their breasts pierced by car-warriors with broad-headed shafts in that battle, fell down, their lances and hooks loosened from their grasp.[52] And some elephants, struck with long shafts, uttered crane-like cries, and ran in all directions, crushing friends and foes with their tread.[53] And covered with countless bodies of elephants and steeds and car-warriors, the earth, O king, became miry with flesh and blood.[54] And large cars with wheels and many without wheels, crushed with the points of their tusks, were thrown up by elephants, with the warriors mounted on them.[55] Cars were seen deprived of warriors. And riderless steeds and elephants ran in all directions, afflicted with wounds.[56] And there sire slew son, and son slew sire, for the battle that took place was exceedingly fierce and nothing could be distinguished.[57] Men sank ankle-deep in the gory mire and looked like tall trees whose lower parts were swallowed up in a blazing forest-conflagration.[58] And robes and coats of mail and umbrellas and standards having been dyed with blood, everything seemed to be bloody on the field.[59] Large bodies of slain steeds, of cars, and of men, were again cut into fragments by rolling car-wheels.[60] And that sea of troops having elephants for its current, and slain men for its (floating) moss and weeds, and cars for its fierce eddies, looked terribly beautiful.[61] Warriors, having steeds and elephants for their large vessels, and desirous of victory as their wealth, plunged into that sea, and instead of sinking in it endeavoured to deprive their enemies of their senses.[62] When all the warriors, each bearing particular signs, were covered with arrowy showers, there was none amongst them who lost heart though all were deprived of their signs.[63] In that fierce and awful battle,

Drona, confounding the senses of his foes, (at last) rushed at Yudhishthira.' "[64]

SECTION XXI.

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then Drona, beholding Yudhishthira near him, fearlessly received him with a thick shower of arrows.[1] And there arose a loud noise among the troops of Yudhishthira's army like what is made by the elephants belonging to a herd when their leader is attacked by a mighty lion.[2] Beholding Drona, the brave Satyajit, of prowess incapable of being baffled, rushed at the preceptor who was desirous of seizing Yudhishthira.[3] The preceptor and the Pānchāla prince, both endued with great might, fought with each other, agitating each other's troops, like Indra and Vali.[4] Then Satyajit, of prowess incapable of being baffled, invoking a mighty weapon, pierced Drona with keen-pointed arrows.[5] And Satyajit shot at Drona's charioteer five arrows, fatal as snake-poison and each looking like Death himself. The charioteer, thus struck, became deprived of his senses.[6] Then Satyajit quickly pierced Drona's steeds with ten shafts; and filled with rage he next pierced each of his *Pārshni* drivers with ten shafts.[7] And then he coursed at the head of his troops on his car in a circular motion. Excited with wrath, he cut off the standard of Drona, that crusher of foes.[8] Drona then, that chastiser of foes, beholding these feats of his foe in battle, mentally resolved to despatch him to the other world.*[9] The preceptor, cutting off Satyajit's bow with arrow fixed thereon, quickly pierced him with ten arrows capable of penetrating into the very vitals.[10] Thereupon the valiant Satyajit, quickly taking up another bow, struck Drona, O king, with thirty arrows winged with the feathers of the *Kanka* bird.[11] Beholding Drona (thus) encountered in battle by Satyajit, the Pāndavas, O king, shouted in joy and waved their garments.[12] Then the mighty Vrika, O king, excited with great wrath, pierced Drona in the centre of the chest with sixty arrows. That feat seemed

---

* Literally, "thought in his mind that his hour was come."—T.

highly wonderful.[13] Then that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Drona, of great impetuosity, covered with the arrowy showers (of his foes), opened his eyes wide and mustered all his energy.[14] Then cutting off the bows of both Satyajit and Vrika, Drona, with six shafts, slew Vrika with his charioteer and steeds.[15] Then Satyajit, taking up another bow that was tougher, pierced Drona with his steeds, his charioteer, and his standard.[16] Thus afflicted in battle by the prince of the Pānchālas, Drona could not brook that act. For the destruction then of his foe, he quickly sped his arrows (at him).[17] Drona then covered with incessant showers of arrows his antagonist's steeds and standard as also the handle of his bow, and both his *Pārshni* drivers.[18] But though his bows were (thus) repeatedly cut off, the prince of the Pānchālas, conversant with the highest weapons, continued to battle with him of red steeds.[19] Beholding Satyajit swell with energy in that dreadful combat, Drona cut off that illustrious warrior's head with a crescent-shaped arrow.*[20] Upon the slaughter of that foremost of combatants, that mighty car-warrior among the Pānchālas, Yudhishthira, from fear of Drona, fled away, (borne) by fleet steeds.[21] Then the Pānchālas, the Kekayas, the Matsyas, the Chedis, the Kārushas, and the Koçalas, eying Drona, rushed at him, desirous of rescuing Yudhishthira.[22] The preceptor, however, that slayer of large numbers of foes, desirous of seizing Yudhishthira, began to consume those divisions, like fire consuming heaps of cotton.[23] Then Catānika, the younger brother of the ruler of the Matsyas, rushed at Drona who was thus engaged in incessantly destroying those divisions (of the Pāndava host).[24] And Catānika, piercing Drona along with his driver and steeds with six shafts bright as the rays of the Sun, and polished by the hands of their forger, uttered loud shouts.[25] And engaged in a cruel act, and endeavouring to accomplish what was difficult of attainment, he covered Bharadwāja's son, that mighty car-warrior, with showers of arrows.†[26] Then Drona, with an arrow sharp

---

* Literally, "half-moon-shaped.—T.

† Cruel, because it was a Brāhmana with whom Catānika was fighting.—T.

as razor, quickly cut off from his trunk the head, decked with ear-rings, of Catānika thus shouting at him. Thereupon the Matsya warriors all fled away.[27] Having vanquished the Matsyas, the son of Bharadwāja then defeated the Chedis, the Kārushas, the Kaikeyas, the Pānchālas, the Srinjayas, and the Pāndus repeatedly.[28] Beholding that hero of the golden car excited with rage and consuming their divisions like a fire consuming a forest, the Srinjayas trembled (with fear).[29] Endued with great activity and slaughtering the foe ceaselessly, the twang of the bowstring, as he streched his bow, was heard in all directions.[30] Fierce arrows shot by that warrior endued with great lightness of hand, crushed elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers and car-warriors and elephant-riders.[31] As a mighty mass of roaring clouds in summer with violent winds (blowing) poureth a shower of hail-stones, so did Drona pour his arrowy showers and inspire fear in the hearts of his foes.[32] That mighty hero, that great bowman, that dispeller of the fears of his friends, careered in all directions (of the field) agitating the (hostile) host.[33] The bow, decked with gold, of Drona of immeasurable energy, was seen in all directions like the flashes of lightning in the clouds.[34] The beautiful altar on his banner, as he careered in battle, O Bhārata, was seen to resemble a crest of Himavat.[35] The slaughter that Drona caused among the Pāndava troops was very great, resembling that caused by Vishnu himself, the adored of both gods and *Asuras*, among the *Daitya* host.[36] Heroic, truthful in speech, endued with great wisdom and might, and possessed of prowess incapable of being baffled, the illustrious Drona caused a river to flow there that was fierce and capable of striking the timid with fear. Coats of mail formed its waves, and standards its eddies. And it carried away (as it ran) large numbers of mortal creatures. And elephants and steeds constituted its great alligators, and swords formed its fishes. And it was incapable of being easily crossed over. The bones of brave warriors formed its pebbles, and drums and cymbals its tortoises. And shields and armour formed its boats, and the hair of warriors its floating moss and weeds. And arrows constituted its wavelets and bows its current. And the arms of the combatants formed its

snakes.* And that river of fierce current, running over the field of battle, bore away both the Kurus and the Srinjayas. And the heads of human beings constituted its stones, and their thighs its fishes. And maces constituted the rafts (by which many sought to cross it). And head-gears formed the froth that covered its surface, and the entrails (of animals) its reptiles. Awful (in mien), it bore away heroes (to the other world). And blood and flesh constituted its mire. And elephants formed its corocodiles, and standards the trees (on its banks). Thousands of Kshatriyas sunk in it. Fierce, clogged with (dead) bodies, and having horse-soldiers and elephant-warriors for its sharks, it was extremely difficult to cross it. And that river ran towards the abode of Yama.[37-43] And it abounded with *Rākshasas* and dogs and jackalls. And it was haunted by fierce cannibals all around.[44]

"'Then many Pāndava warriors headed by Kunti's son, rushing at Drona, that mighty car-warrior consuming their divisions like Death himself, surrounded him on all sides.[45] Indeed, those brave warriors completly encompassed Drona who was scorching everything around him like the Sun himself scorching the world with his rays.[46] Then the kings and the princes of thy army, with upraised weapons, all rushed for supporting that hero and great bowman.[47] Then Cikhandin pierced Drona with five straight arrows. And Kshatradharman pierced him with twenty arrows, and Vasudāna with five.[48] And Uttamaujas pierced him with three arrows, and Kshatradeva with five. And Sātyaki pierced him in that battle with a hundred arrows, and Yudhāmanyu with eight.[49] And Yudhishthira pierced Drona with a dozen shafts, and Dhrishtadyumna pierced him with ten, and Chekitāna with three.[50] Then Drona of unbaffled aim and resembling an elephant with rent temples, getting over the car-division (of the Pāndavas), overthrew Dridhasena.[51] Approaching then king Kshema who was battling fearlessly, he struck him with nine arrows. Thereupon Kshema, deprived of life, fell down from his car.[52] Getting then into the midst of the (hostile) troops,

---

* The Bengal reading *Vàhupallava* is a mistake. The correct reading is *Váhupannaga* as in the Bombay text.—T.

he careered in all directions, protecting others but himself in no need of protection.[53] He then pierced Cikhandin with twelve arrows, and Uttamaujas with twenty. And he despatched Vasudāna with a broad-headed arrow to the abode of Yama.[54] And he pierced Kshemavarman with eighty-arrows, and Sudakshina with six and twenty. And he felled Kshatradeva with a broad-headed arrow from his niche in the car.[55] And having pierced Yudhāmanyu with sixtyfour arrows, and Sātyaki with thirty, Drona of the golden car quickly approached Yudhishthira.[56] Then Yudhishthira, that best of kings, quickly fled away from the preceptor, borne by his fleet steeds. Then Pānchālya rushed at Drona.[57] Drona slew that prince, cutting off his bow, and felling his steeds and charioteer along with him. Deprived of life, the prince fell down on the earth from his car like a luminary loosened from the firmament.[58] Upon the fall of that illustrious prince of the Pānchālas, loud cries were heard there of—*Slay Drona, Slay Drona* ![59]—The mighty Drona then began to crush and mangle the Pānchālas, the Matsyas, the Kaikeyas, the Srinjayas, and the Pāndavas, all excited with rage.[60] And supported by the Kurus, Drona then vanquished Sātyaki, and Chekitāna, and Dhrishtadyumna, and Cikhandin, and Vārdhakshemi, and Chitrasena's son, and Senāvindu, and Suvarchasa, all these, and numerous other kings.[61-62] Thy warriors, O king, having obtained the victory in that great battle, slew the Pāndavas as they fled away in all directions.[63] And the Pānchālas, the Kaikeyas, and the Matsyas, thus slaughtered on all sides like the *Dānavas* by Indra, began to tremble (with fear).' "[64]

SECTION XXII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When the Pāndavas were broken by Bharadwāja's son in that dreadful battle, and the Pānchālas also, was there anybody that approached Drona for battle ?[1] Alas, beholding Drona stationed in battle, like a yawning tiger or an elephant with rent temples, ready to lay down his life in battle, well-armed, conversant with all modes of fight, that great bowman, that tiger among men, that enhancer of the fears

of foes, grateful, devoted to truth, ever desirous of benefiting Duryodhana,—alas, beholding him at the head of his troops, was there no man that could approach him, with a laudable determination for battle, a determination that enhances the renown of Kshatriyas, that mean-spirited persons can never form, and that is distinctive only of foremost of persons ? Tell me, O Sanjaya, who were those heroes that approached the son of Bharadwāja, beholding him at the head of his forces ?'[2-5]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the Pānchālas, the Pāndavas, the Matsyas, the Srinjayas, the Chedis, and the Kaikeyas, thus routed after being broken in battle by Drona with his shafts,[6] beholding them thus driven from the field by those showers of fleet arrows shot from Drona's bow like vessels sent adrift by the awful waves of the tempest-tossed ocean,[7] the Kauravas with many leonine shouts and with the noise of diverse instruments, began to assail the cars and elephants and foot-soldiers (of that hostile host) from all sides.[8] And beholding those (fleeing soldiers of the Pāndavas), king Duryodhana, stationed in the midst of his own forces and encompassed by his own relatives and kinsmen, filled with joy and laughing as he spoke, said these words unto Karna.[9]

" 'Duryodhana said,—Behold, O Rādhā's son, the Pānchālas broken by that firm bowman (Drona) with his shafts, like a herd of wild deer frightened by a lion ![10] These, I think, will not again come to battle ! They have been broken by Drona like mighty trees by the tempest ![11] Afflicted by that high-souled warrior with those shafts winged with gold, they are fleeing away, no two persons being together ! Indeed, they seem to be dragged in eddies all over the field ![12] Checked by the Kauravas as also by the high-souled Drona, they are huddling close to one another like (a herd of) elephants in the midst of a conflagration.[13] Like a blosoming tree penetrated by flights of bees, these warriors, pierced with the sharp shafts of Drona, are huddling close to one another as they are flying away from the field ![14] There, the wrathful Bhima, abandoned by the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas, and surrounded by my warriors, delighteth me greatly, O Karna ![15] It is evident, that wicked wight beholdeth the world today to be full of Drona !

Without doubt, that son of Pāndu hath today become hopeless of life and kingdom![16]—

"'Karna said,—That mighty-armed warrior will not certainly abandon the battle as long as he is alive. Nor will he, O tiger among men, brook these leonine shouts (of ours).[17] Nor will the Pāndavas, I think, be defeated in battle. They are brave, endued with great might, accomplished in weapons, and difficult of being resisted in battle.[18] Recollecting the woes caused them by our attempts at poisoning and burning them, and the woes that arose from the match at dice, bearing in mind also their exile in the woods, the Pāndavas, I think, will not abandon the battle.[19] The mighty-armed Vrikodara of immeasurable energy hath already turned back (for the fight). The son of Kunti will certainly slay many foremost of our car-warriors.[20] With sword and bow and dart, with steeds and elephants and men and cars,* with his mace made of iron, he will slay crowds upon crowds (of our soldiers).[21] Other car-warriors headed by Sātyaki, together with the Pānchālas, the Kekayas, the Matsyas, and especially the Pāndavas, are following him.[22] They are all brave, and possessed of great might and prowess. Mighty car-warriors, they are again led by Bhima in wrath![23] Those bulls of Kuru's race, surrounding Vrikodara on all sides like the clouds surrounding the Sun, begin to approach Drona from all sides.[24] Closely intent upon one object, these will certainly afflict the unprotected Drona like flights of insects on the point of death afflicting a blazing lamp.[25] Accomplished in weapons, they are certainly competent to resist Drona. Heavy is the burthen, I think, that now rests on Bharadwāja's son.[26] Let us then quickly go to the spot where Drona is. Let not these slay him of regulated vows like wolves slaying a mighty elephant![27]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing these words of Rādheya, king Duryodhana then, accompanied by his brothers, O monarch, proceeded towards Drona's car.[28] The noise there was deafening, of Pāndava warriors returned to the fight on their cars

* Using even these as implements for striking, for Bhima's might was superhuman.—T.

drawn by excellent steeds of diverse hue, all actuated by the desire of slaying Drona alone.' "[29]

SECTION XXIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, the distinctive indications of the cars of all those who, excited with wrath and headed by Bhimasena, had proceeded against Drona!'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Vrikodara advancing (on a car drawn) by steeds of a dappled hue (like that of the antelope), the brave grandson of Cini (Sātyaki) proceeded, borne by steeds of a silvery hue.[2] The irresistible Yudhāmanyu, excited with rage, proceeded against Drona, borne by excellent steeds of a variegated hue.[3] Dhrishtadyumna, the son of the Pānchāla king, proceeded, borne by steeds of great fleetness in trappings of gold and of the hue of pigeons.*[4] Desirous of protecting his sire, and wishing him complete success, (Dhrishtadyumna's son) Kshatradharman of regulated vows, proceeded, borne by red steeds.[5] Kshatradeva the son of Cikhandin, himself urging well-decked steeds of the hue of lotus leaves and with eyes of pure white, proceeded (against Drona).[6] Beautiful steeds of the Kāmvoja breed, decked with the feathers of the green parrot, bearing Nakula, quickly ran towards thy army.[7] Dark steeds of the color of clouds wrathfully bore Uttamaujas, O Bhārata, to battle, against the invincible Drona standing with arrows aimed.[8] Steeds, fleet as the wind, and of variegated hue, bore Sahadeva with upraised weapons to that fierce battle.[9] Of great impetuosity and possessed of the fleetness of the wind, steeds of the hue of ivory and having black hair on the neck, bore Yudhishthira, that tiger among men.[10] And many warriors followed Yudhishthira, borne on their steeds decked in trappings of gold and all fleet as the wind.[11] Behind the king was the royal chief of the Pānchālas, *viz.*, Drupada, with a golden umbrella over his head and himself protected by all those soldiers (that followed Yudhishthira).[12] That great bowman among all the kings, *viz.*, Cāntabhi, proceeded, borne by beautiful steeds capable of

---

* *Hemadandais* is a mistake of the Bengal texts for *Hemabhāndais*.—T.

bearing every noise.[13] Accompanied by all the great car-warriors, Virāta quickly followed the former. The Kaikeyas, and Cikhandin, and Dhrishtaketu,[14] surrounded by their respective troops, followed the ruler of the Matsyas. Excellent steeds of the (pale-red) hue of trumpet-flowers, looked exceedingly beautiful as they bore Virāta. Fleet steeds of yellow color and decked in chains of gold bore with great speed the son (Uttara) of that slayer of foes, *viz.*, Virāta the royal chief of the Matsyas. The five Kekaya brothers were borne by steeds of deep red hue.[15-17] Of the splendour of gold and owning standards of red hue, and decked with chains of gold, all of them heroes accomplished in battle,[18] they proceeded, clad in mail, and showering arrows like the very clouds. Excellent steeds, the gift of Tumvuru, of the hue of unbaked earthen pots, bore Cikhandin the Pānchāla prince of immeasurable energy.* Altogether, twelve thousand mighty car-warriors of the Pānchāla race proceeded to battle.[19-20] Of these, six thousand followed Cikhandin. Sportive steeds, O sire, of the dappled hue of the antelope, bore the son of Ciçupāla that tiger among men. That bull among the Chedis, *viz.*, Dhrishtaketu, endued with great strength,[21-22] and difficult of being vanquished in battle, proceeded, borne by Kāmvoja steeds of vaiegated hue. Excellent steeds of the Sindhu breed, of beautiful limbs, and of the hue of the smoke of straw, quickly bore the Kaikeya prince Vrihatkshatra. Possessed of eyes of pure white, of the hue of the lotus, born in the country of the Vālhikas, and decked with ornaments,[23-24] bore Cikhandin's son, the brave Kshatradeva.† Decked in trapprings of gold, and possessed of the hue of red silk,[25] quiet steeds bore Senāvindu, that chastiser of foes, to battle. Excellent steeds of the hue of cranes, bore to battle the youthful[26] and delicate son of the king of the Kāçis, that mighty car-warrior. White steeds with black necks, endued with the speed of the mind, O monarch, and exceedingly obedient to the driver, bore prince

---

* The first line of 20 is vicious as it occurs in the Bengal texts. The Bombay reading is correct.—T.

† This seems to be a repetition of the 6th verse.—T.

Prativindhya. Whitish yellow steeds bore Sutasoma, the son of Arjuna, whom the latter had obtained from Soma himself. He was born in the Kuru city known by the name of Udayendu. Endued with the effulgence of a thousand Moons, and because also he had won great renown in an assembly of the Somakas, he came to be called *Sutasoma*.[27-29] Steeds of the hue of *Çāla* flowers or of the morning Sun bore Nakula's son Catānika worthy of every praise.[30] Steeds decked in trappings of gold, and endued with the hue of the peacock's neck, bore that tiger-among men, Crutakarman, the son of Draupadi (by Bhima).[31] Excellent steeds of the hue of the king-fisher's feathers bore Draupadi's son Crutākirti to that battle, who like Pārtha was an ocean of learning.[32] Steeds of a tawny hue bore the youthful Abhimanyu who was regarded as superior to Krishna or Pārtha one and a half times in battle.[33] Gigantic steeds bore Yuyutsu to battle, that only warrior amongst the sons of Dhritarāshtra who (abandoning his brothers) hath sided with the Pāndavas.[34] Plump and well-decked steeds of the hue of the (dried) paddy stalk bore Vārdhakshemi of great activity to that dreadful battle.[35] Steeds with black legs, equipt in breast-plates of gold, and exceedingly obedient to the driver, bore the youthful Sanchitti to battle.[36] Steeds whose backs were covered with golden armour, decked with chains of gold, well-broken, and of the hue of red silk, bore Crenimat.[37] Steeds of a red hue bore the advancing Satyadhriti accomplished in the science of arms and in the divine *Vedas*.[38] That prince of Pānchāla who was commander (of the Pāndava army) and who took Drona as the victim allotted to his share,—that Dhrishtadyumna,—was borne by steeds of the hue of pigeons.[39] Him followed Sātyadhriti, and Sanchitti irresistible in battle, and Crenimat, and Vasudāna, and Vibhu the son of the ruler of the Kāçis,[40] These had fleet steeds of the best Kāmvoja breed, decked with chains of gold. Each resembling Yama or Vaiçravana, they proceeded to battle, striking fear into the hearts of the hostile soldiers.[41] The Prabhadrakas of the Kāmvoja country, numbering six thousand, with upraised weapons, with excellent steeds of diverse hues, and with gold decked standards on their cars,[42] with streched bows and making their foes tremble with their showers

of arrows and resolved to die together,* followed Dhrishtadyumna.[43] Excellent steeds of the hue of tawny silk, decked with beautiful chains of gold, cheerfully bore Chekitāna.[44] Arjuna's maternal uncle Purujit, otherwise called Kuntibhoja, came, borne by excellent steeds of the colors of the rainbow.[45] Steeds of the color of the star-bespangled firmament bore to battle king Rochamāna.[46] Steeds of the hue of the red deer, with white streaks over their bodies, bore the Pānchāla prince Singhasena the son of Gopati.[47] That tiger among the Pānchālas who is known by the name of Janamejaya had excellent steeds of the hue of mustard flowers.[48] Fleet, gigantic, and dark-blue steeds, decked with chains of gold, with backs of the hue of curds and faces of the hue of the moon, bore with great speed the ruler of the Pānchālas.[49] Brave steeds with beautiful heads, (white) as the stalks of reeds, and with a splendour resembling that of the firmament or the lotus, bore Dandadhāra.[50] Light brown steeds with backs of the hue of the mouse, and with necks proudly drawn up, bore Vyāghradtata to battle.[51] Dark-spotted steeds bore that tiger among men, *viz.*, Sudhanwan, the prince of Pānchāla.[52] Of fierce impetuosity resembling that of Indra's thunder, beautiful steeds of the hue of *Indragopakas*, with variegated patches, bore Chitrāyudha.[53] Decked with golden chains, steeds whose bellies were of the hue of the *Chakravāka*, bore Sukshatra the son of the ruler of the Koçalas.[54] Beautiful and tall steeds of variegated hue, and gigantic bodies, exceedingly docile, and decked with chains of gold, bore Satyadhriti accomplished in battle.[55] Cukla advanced to battle with his standard and armour and bow and steeds all of the same white hue.[56] Steeds born on the sea-coast and white as the moon, bore Chandrasena of fierce energy, the son of Samudrasena.[57] Steeds of the hue of the blue lotus and decked with ornaments of gold and adorned with beautiful floral wreaths bore Caiva owning a beautiful car to battle.[58] Superior steeds of the hue of *Kalāya* flowers, with white and red streaks, bore Rathasena difficult of being resisted in battle.[59] White steeds bore that king who slew the Patchcharas and

* *I. e.*, not to abandon their comrades in distress.—T.

who is regarded as the bravest of men.[60] Superior steeds of the hue of *Kinçuka* flowers bore Chitrāyudha decked with beautiful garlands and owning beautiful armour and weapons and standard.[61] King Nila advanced to battle, with standard and armour and bow and banner and steeds all of the same blue color.[62] Chitra advanced to battle with car-fence and standard and bow all decked with diverse kinds of gems, and with beautiful steeds and banner.[63] Excellent steeds of the hue of the lotus bore Hemavarana the son of Rochamāna.[46] Chargers capable of bearing all kinds of weapons, of brave achievements in battle, possessed of vertæbral columns of the hue of reeds, having white testicles, and endued with the color of the hen's egg, bore Dandaketu.[65] The mighty Cārangadhwaja, endued with wealth of energy, the king of the Pāndyas, on steeds of the hue of the moon's rays and decked with armour set with stones of *lapis lazuli*, advanced upon Drona, streching his excellent bow. His country having been invaded and his kinsmen having fled, his father had been slain by Krishna in battle. Obtaining weapons then from Bhishma and Drona and Rāma and Kripa, prince Cārangadhawaja became, in weapons, the equal of Rukmi and Karna and Arjuna and Achyuta. He then desired to destroy the city of Dwārakā and subjugate the whole world. Wise friends, however, from desire of doing him good, counselled him against that course. Giving up all thoughts of revenge he is now ruling his own dominions.[66-70] Steeds that were all of the hue of the *Atrusha* flower bore a hundred and forty thousand principal car-warriors that followed that Cārangadhwaja the king of the Pāndyas.[71] Steeds of diverse hues and diverse kinds of faces bore the heroic Ghatotkacha, that banner of all car-warriors.[72] Mighty steeds of gigantic size, of the Āratta breed bore the mighty-armed Vrihanta of red eyes mounted on his golden car, that prince, *viz.*, who, rejecting the opinions of all the Bharatas, hath singly, from his reverence for Yudhishthira, gone over to him, abandoning all his cherished desires.*[73-74] Superior steeds of the hue of gold followed

* The last word of the first line of 74 is vicious as printed in the Bengal texts.—T.

that foremost of kings, *viz.*, the virtuous Yudhishthira at his back.[75] Large numbers of Prabhadrakas, of celestial shapes, advanced to battle, with good steeds of diverse excellent colors.[76] All of them owning standards of gold and prepared to struggle vigorously, proceeded with Bhimasena, and wore the aspect, O monarch, of the denizens of heaven with Indra at their head.[77] That assembled host of Prabhadrakas was much liked by Dhrishtadyumna.

"'Bharadwāja's son, however, O monarch, surpassed all the warriors in splendour.[78] His standard, with a black deer-skin waving on its top and the beautiful water-pot, O monarch, that it bore, looked exceedingly beautiful.[79] And Bhimasena's standard, bearing the device of a gigantic lion in silver with its eyes made of *lapis lazuli*, looked exceedingly resplendent.[80] The standard of Yudhishthira of great energy, bearing the device of a golden moon with the planets around it, looked very beautiful.[81] Two large and beautiful kettle-drums, called Nanda and Upānanda, were tied to it. Played upon by machinery, these produced excellent music that enhanced the delight of all who heard it.[82] For terrifying the foe, we beheld that the tall and fierce standard of Nakula, placed on his car, bore the device of a *Çarabha* with its back made of gold.[83] A beautiful silver swan with bells and banner, terrible to look at and enhancing the grief of the foe, was seen on Sahadeva's standard.[84] The standards of the five sons of Draupadi bore on them the excellent images of Dharma, Marut, Cakra, and the twin Açwins.[85] On the car, O king, of the youthful Abhimanyu was an excellent standard that bore a golden peacock which was bright as heated gold.[86] On Ghatotkacha's standard, O king, a vulture shone brightly, and his steeds also were capable of going everywhere at will like those of Rāvana in days of yore.[87] In Yudhishthira's hands was the celestial bow called *Māhendra*; and in the hands of Bhimasena, O king, was the celestial bow called *Vāyavya*.[88] For the protection of the three worlds Brahman had created a bow. That celestial and indestructible bow was held by Phālguna.[89] The *Vaishnava* bow was held by Nakula, and the bow called *Açwina* was held by Sahadeva. That celestial and terrible bow, called the *Pau-*

lastya, was held by Ghatotkacha.[90] The five jewels of bows borne by the five sons of Draupadi were the *Raudra*, the *Agneya*, the *Kauveryya*, the *Yāmya*, and the *Giriça*.[91] That excellent and best of bows, called the *Raudra*, which Rohini's son (Valadeva) had obtained, the latter gave unto the high-souled son of Subhadrā, having been gratified with him.[92] These and many other standards, decked with gold, were seen there, belonging to brave warriors, all of which enhanced the fears of their foes.[93] The host commanded by Drona, which numbered not a single coward, and in which countless standards rising together seemed to obstruct the welkin, then looked, O monarch, like images on a canvas.[94] We heard the names and lineage, O king, of brave warriors rushing towards Drona in that battle like to what is heard, O monarch, at a Self-choice.' "*[95]

SECTION XXIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Those Kshatriyas, O Sanjaya, that advanced to battle, headed by Vrikodara, would inflict pain on the very host of the celestials.[1] Man here is born, subject to (the decrees of) Destiny. It is for this that all his purposes are seen to be otherwise than what he wishes (them to be).[2] For a while had Yudhishthira been exiled in the woods where he lived with matted locks on his head and attired in deer-skins. He had also to pass sometime in concealment.[3] Even he hath assembled this vast host for battle. What can it be but the adverse fate of my son?[4] Without doubt, man takes his birth, subject to (the decrees of) Destiny. It is for this that he is dragged (to situations) against his will.[5] Yudhishthira was put to great distress in consequence of his having betaken himself to the calamity of dice. Even he, through good fortune, has obtained allies.[6]—*Today I have got the Kekayas, today the Kauçikas, and today the Koçalas!—Today the Chedis, and today the Vangas, have sided with me!*[7] *The wide Earth is*

---

* The custom, when one warrior attacked another, was invariably to give his name and lineage before striking.—T.

for me, O sire, and not for the son of Prithā!—it was thus, O *Suta*, that the wicked Duryodhana told me before.[8] Well-protected in the midst of those troops of his, Drona hath been slain in battle by Prishata's son! What could it be but (the result of) Destiny?[9] How, indeed, could Death come to Drona in the midst of all the kings,—to Drona accomplished in every weapon, possessed of mighty-arms, and always delighting in battle?[10] Plunged into great distress, a swoon seems to take possession of my senses. Hearing that both Bhishma and Drona have been dead, I dare not live longer.[11] That which the far-seeing Vidura, O sire, told my wretched self filled with affection for my son, that hath now overtaken both Duryodhana and myself![12] If by abandoning Duryodhana now I seek to save the remnant of my children, that behaviour will certainly be very cruel, but then all those will not have to die![13] That king who, abandoning virtue, pursues only wealth, loses his possessions and becomes mean.[14] I do not see, O Sanjaya, that anything will be left of this (our) kingdom when it is no longer sustained by hope, and when its very hump hath been crushed.*[15] Indeed, how can extermination be prevented when those foremost of men, upon whom we had always relied, have both breathed their last?[16] That is plain. However, tell me how the battle took place. Who were they that fought, who assailed (the foe), and who were those wretches that fled away from fear?[17] Tell me also of Dhananjaya, *viz.*, what that bull among car-warriors did. It is from him that we have much fear, as also from that enemy (of ours), *viz.*, Vrikodara.[18] Tell me, O Sanjaya, how when the Pāndavas returned to the fight, that fierce collision took place of my troops (with the returned combatants).[19] What also, O son, was the state of your minds when the Pāndavas returned? Who also were those heroes of our army that checked them?'"[20]

---

* *I. e.*, when Drona has been slain.—T.

SECTION XXV.

'Sanjaya said,—'When the Pāndavas returned to the fight, beholding them cover Drona (with their arrows) like the clouds covering the Sun, a great terror took possession of us.[1] A thick dust raised by them enveloped thy army. Then when Drona could no longer be seen, we regarded him to be dead.[2] Beholding those brave and mighty bowmen endeavouring to achieve a fierce and cruel act, Duryodhana, without losing any time, urged his own troops.[3] [And he addressed them, saying,]—Ye kings, check ye the Pāndava army according to the measure of your strength, courage, and energy, and according to the circumstances that may in each case arise![4]—Then thy son Durmarshana, beholding Bhima from a distance, approached him and covered him with a shower of arrows, desirous of (protecting) Drona's life.[5] Excited with wrath in that battle and looking like Death himself, he overwhelmed Bhima with his arrows. Bhima also, in return, struck him with his arrows. The combat then that thus took place between them became fierce.[6] Meanwhile, many brave warriors endued with intelligence and skilled in smiting, urged by their chiefs and setting at nought their kingdoms and the fear of Death, rushed against their foes in battle.[7] Kritavarman checked the advancing grandson of Cini, that hero and ornament of battle, as he came, desirous of getting Drona within his reach.[8] Cini's grandson, however, excited with rage, resisted that angry warrior with showers of arrows. Kritavarman, in return, resisted him, like one infuriate elephant resisting another.[9] And the ruler of the Sindhus, that fierce bowman, checked with his sharp arrows the mighty bowman Kshatravarman, for keeping him away from Drona.[10] Khatravarman, cutting off both the standard and bow of the ruler of the Sindhus, angrily smote him with ten long shafts in all his vital limbs.[11] Then the ruler of the Sindhus, taking up another bow, dexterously pierced Kshatravarman in that battle with shafts made wholly of iron.[12] Suvāhu, struggling vigorously, kept away from Drona his brave brother, *viz.*, the mighty car-warrior Yuyutsu who

was fighting for the Pāndavas.[13] Yuyutsu then, with a couple of sharp and well-tempered shafts cut off the two arms of Suvāhu which resembled spiked maces, and one of which had held the bow and the other a shaft.[14] The ruler of the Madras resisted the eldest son of Pāndu, *viz.*, king Yudhishthira of righteous soul, as the continent resists the surging sea.[15] King Yudhishthira the just showered on him many shafts capable of penetrating into the very vitals. The ruler of the Madras, in return, having pierced the son of Pāndu with four and sixty shafts, shouted loudly.[16] Then the eldest son of Pāndu, with a pair of sharp shafts, cut off the bow and standard of the shouting Calya at which all the warriors cheered him loudly.[17] King Vālhika, at the head of his forces, resisted with his shafts the royal Drupada advancing against him at the head of a mighty division.[18] The encounter between those two old men at the heads of their respective forces became terrible like that between two mighty leaders, with rent temples, of two elephantine herds.[19] Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, with their troops, encountered Virāta the ruler of the Matsyas at the head of his forces, like Indra and Agni in days of old encountering the (*Asura*) Vali.[20] That awful encounter between the Matsyas and the Kekayas, in which steeds and car-warriors and elephants fought most fearlessly, resembled that between the gods and the *Asuras* in days of old.[21] Bhutakarman, otherwise called Sabhāpati, kept away from Drona Nakula's son Catānika as the latter advanced, scattering showers of arrows.[22] Then the heir of Nakula, with three broad-headed shafts of great sharpness, deprived Bhutakarman of both his arms and head in that battle.[23] Vivingçati resisted the heroic Sutasoma of great prowess as the latter advanced towards Drona, scattering showers of arrows.[24] Sutāsoma, however, excited with wrath, pierced his uncle Vivingçati with straight arrows, and cased in mail, stood ready for the combat.[25] Bhimaratha, (brother of Duryodhana), with six sharp shafts of great swiftness and made wholly of iron, despatched Cālwa along with his steeds and charioteer, to Yama's abode.[26] Chitrasena's son, O king, opposed thy (grand) son Crutakarman as the latter came, borne by steeds looking like peacocks.[27] Those two grandsons of

thine, both difficult of being vanquished in battle, and each desirous of slaying the other, fought vigorously for the success of the objects of their respective sires.[28] Beholding Prativindhya staying at the van of that dreadful battle, Drona's son (Açwatthāman), desirous of protecting the honor of his sire, resisted the former with his shafts.[29] Prativindhya then, excited with rage, pierced Açwatthāman bearing on his standard the device of a lion's tail and staying in battle for the sake of his father, with many sharp shafts.[30] The (eldest) son of Draupadi then scattered over Drona's son showers of arrows like a sower, O bull among men, scattering seeds on the soil at the sowing season.*[31] The son of Dusçāsana resisted the mighty car-warrior Crutakirti the son of Arjuna by Draupadi, as the latter was rushing towards Drona.[32] That son of Arjuna, however, who was equal to Arjuna himself, cutting off the former's bow and standard and charioteer with three broad-headed arrows of great sharpness, proceeded against Drona.[33] Duryodhana's son Lakshmana resisted the slayer of the Patachcharas,—him, that is, O king, who is regarded by both the armies as the bravest of the brave.[34] The latter, however, cutting off both the bow and the standard of Lakshmana, and showering upon him many arrows, blazed up with splendour.[35] The youthful Vikarna of great wisdom resisted Cikhandin, the youthful son of Yajnasena, as the latter advanced in that battle.[36] Yajnasena's son then covered the former with showers of arrows. Thy mighty son Vikarna, baffling those arrowy showers, looked resplendent on the field of battle.[37] Angada resisted with showers of arrows the heroic Uttamaujas in that battle as the latter rushed towards Drona.[38] That encounter between those two lions among men became frightful, and it filled both them and the troops with great joy.[39] The great bowman Durmukha, endued with great might, resisted with his shafts the heroic Purujit as the latter proceeded towards Drona.[40] Purujit struck Durmukha between his eyebrows with a long shaft. Thereupon Durmukha's

* All the printed texts, not excepting that of Bombay, read *Draupadeyās*. There can be no doubt, however, that it should be *Draupadeyas*.—T.

face looked beautiful like a lotus with its stalk.[41] Karna resisted with showers of arrows the five Kekaya brothers owning red standards, as they proceeded towards Drona.[42] Scorched with the arrowy showers of Karna, those five brothers covered Karna with their arrows. Karna, in return, repeatedly covered them with showers of arrows.[43] Covered with arrows, neither Karna nor the five brothers could be seen with their steeds, charioteers, standards, and cars.[44] Thy sons Durjaya, Jaya, and Vijaya, resisted Nila, and the ruler of the Kāçis, and Jayatsena, three against three.[45] And the combats between those warriors deepened and gladdened the hearts of the spectators like those between a lion, a tiger, and a wolfe on the one side and a bear, a baffalo, and a bull on the other.[46] The brothers Kshemadhurti and Vrihanta mangled Sātyaki of the Sātwata race with their keen arrows as the latter proceeded against Drona.[47] The battle between those two on the one side and Sātyaki on the other became exceedingly wonderful to behold, like that between a lion and two mighty elephants with rent temples in the forest.[48] The king of the Chedis, excited with wrath and shooting many arrows, kept away from Drona king Amvastha, that hero who always delighted in battle.[49] Then king Amvastha pierced his antagonist with a long arrow capable of penetrating into the very bones. Thereupon the latter, with bow and arrow loosened from his grasp, fell down from his car on the ground.[50] The noble Kripa, son of Caradwat, with many small arrows, resisted Vārdhakshemi of the Vrishni race who was the embodiment of wrath (in battle).[51] They that looked at Kripa and Vārdhakshemi, those heroes conversant with every mode of warfare, thus engaged in encountering each other, became so absorbed in it that they could not attend to anything else.[52] Somadatta's son, for enhancing the glory of Drona, resisted king Manimat of great activity as the latter came to the fight.[53] Then Manimat quickly cut off the bowstring, the standard, the banner, the charioteer, and the umbrella of Somadatta's son and caused them to fall down from the latter's car.*[54]

---

* The first line of 54 is read incorrectly in the Bengal texts. I follow the Bombay reading.—T.

The son of Somadatta then, bearing the device of the sacrificial stake on his standard, that slayer of foes, quickly jumping down from his car, cut off, with his large sword, his antagonist with his steeds, charioteer, standard, and car.[55] Re-ascending then upon his own car, and taking up another bow, and guiding his steeds himself, he began, O monarch, to consume the Pāndava host.[56] Vrishasena (the son of Karna), competent for the feat, resisted with showers of arrows king Pāndya who was rushing to battle like Indra himself following the *Asuras* for smiting them.[57] With maces and spiked bludgeons, and swords and axes and stones, and short clubs and mallets and discs and short arrows and battle-axes,[58] with dust and wind and fire and water and ashes and brick-bats and straw and trees, afflicting and smiting and breaking and slaying and routing the foe and hurling them on the hostile ranks,[59] and terrifying them therewith, came Ghatotkacha, desirous of getting at Drona. The *Rākshasa* Alamvusha, however, excited with rage, encountered him with diverse weapons and diverse accoutrements of war. And the battle that took place between those two foremost of *Rākshasas* resembled[60-61] that which took place in days of old between Camvara and the chief of the celestials. Thus, blessed be thou, took place hundreds of single combats between car-warriors and elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers of thy army and theirs in the midst of that dreadful geneneral engagement. Indeed, such a battle was never seen or heard of before[62-63] as that which then took place between those warriors that were bent upon Drona's destruction and protection. Indeed, many were the encounters that were then seen on all parts of the field, some of which were terrible, some beautiful, and some exceedingly fierce, O lord!'"[64-65]

SECTION XXVI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When the troops were thus engaged and thus proceeded against one another in separate divisions, how did the Pārthas and the warriors of my army endued with great activity fight?[1] What also did Arjuna do towards the

car-warriors of the *Samsaptakas?* And what, O Sanjaya, did the *Samsaptakas*, in their turn, do to Arjuna?'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'When the troops were thus engaged and proceeded against one another, thy son Duryodhana himself rushed against Bhimasena, heading his elephant division.[3] Like an elephant encountering an elephant, like a bovine bull encountering a bovine bull, Bhimasena, summoned by the king himself, rushed against that elephant division of the Kaurava army.[4] Skilled in battle and endued with great might of arms, Prithā's son, O sire, quickly broke that elephant division.[5] Those elephants, huge as hills, and with juice trickling down from every part of their bodies, were mangled and forced to turn back by Bhimasena with his arrows.[6] Indeed, as the wind, when it riseth, driveth away gathering masses of clouds, so did that son of Pavana rout that elephant force of the Kauravas.[7] And Bhima, shooting his arrows at those elephants, looked resplendent like the risen Sun striking everything in the world with his rays.[8] Those elephants, afflicted with the shafts of Bhima, became covered with blood and looked beautiful like masses of clouds in the welkin penetrated with the rays of the Sun.[9] Then Duryodhana, excited with wrath, pierced with his sharp shafts that son of the Wind-god who was causing such a slaughter among his elephants.[10] Then Bhima, with eyes red in wrath, desirous of despatching the king to Yama's abode, pierced him speedily with many sharp shafts.[11] Then Duryodhana, mangled all over with arrows and excited with rage, pierced Bhima the son of Pāndu with many shafts endued with the effulgence of solar rays, smiling the while.[12] Then the son of Pāndu, with a couple of broad-headed arrows, quickly cut off Duryodhana's bow as also his standard bearing the device of a jewelled elephant decked with diverse gems.[13] Beholding Duryodhana thus afflicted, O sire, by Bhima, the ruler of the Angas on his elephant came there for afflicting the son of Pāndu.[14] Thereupon Bhimasena deeply pierced with a long arrow that prince of elephants advancing with loud roars, between its two frontal globes.[15] That arrow, penetrating through its body, sank deep in the earth. And at this the elephant fell down like a hill riven by the thunder.[16] While the elephant

was falling down, the *Mlechccha* king also was falling down with it. But Vrikodara, endued with great activity, cut off his head with a broad-headed arrow before his antagonist actually fell down.[17] When the heroic ruler of the *Angas* fell, his divisions fled away. Steeds and elephants and car-warriors, struck with panic, crushed foot-soldiers as they fled.[18]

" 'When those troops, thus broken, fled away in all directions, the ruler of the Prāgjyotishas then advanced against Bhima, upon his elephant.*[19] With its two (fore) legs and trunk contracted, filled with rage, and with eyes rolling, that elephant seemed to consume the son of Pāndu (like a blazing fire).[20] And it pounded Vrikodara's car with the steeds yoked thereto into dust. Then Bhima ran forward and got under the elephant's body,[21] for he knew the science called *Anjalikāvedha*. Indeed, the son of Pāndu fled not. Getting under the elephant's body, he began to strike it frequently with his bare arms.[22] And he smote that invincible elephant which was bent upon slaying him. Thereupon the latter began to quickly turn round like a potter's wheel.[23] Endued with the might of ten thousand elephants, the blessed Vrikodara, having struck that elephant thus, came out from under Supratika's body and stood facing the latter.[24] Supratika then, seizing Bhima by its trunk, threw him down by means of its knees. Indeed, having seized him by the neck, that elephant wished to slay him.[25] Twisting the elephant's trunk, Bhima freed himself from its twine, and once more got under the body of that huge creature.[26] And he waited there, expecting the arrival of a hostile elephant of his own army. Coming out from under the beast's body, Bhima then ran away with great speed.[27] Then a loud noise was heard, made by all the troops, to the effect,—*Alas, Bhima hath been slain by the elephant!*[28]—The Pāndava host, frightened by that elephant, suddenly fled away, O king, to where Vrikodara was waiting.[29] Meanwhile, king Yudhishthira, thinking Vrikodara to have been slain, surrounded Bhagadatta on all sides, aided by the Pānchālas.[30] Having surrounded him with numerous

* After 19 occurs a complete *sloka* in the Bombay text which does not appear to be genuine.—T.

cars, king Yudhishthira, that foremost of car-warriors, covered Bhagadatta with keen shafts by hundreds and thousands.[31] Then Bhagadatta, that king of the mountainous regions, frustrating with his iron hook that shower of arrows, began to consume both the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas by means of that elephant of his.[32] Indeed, O monarch, the feat that we then beheld, achieved by old Bhagadatta with his elephant, was highly wonderful.[33] Then the ruler of the Daçārnas rushed against the king of the Pragjyotishas, on a fleet elephant with temporal juice trickling down, for attacking Supratika in the flank.[34] The battle then that took place between those two elephants of awful size, resembled that between two winged mountains overgrown with forests in days of old.[35] Then the elephant of Bhagadatta, wheeling round and attacking the elephant of the king of the Darçārnas, ripped open the latter's flank and slew it outright.[36] Then Bhagadatta himself, with seven lances bright as the rays of the Sun, slew his (human) antagonist seated on his elephant just when the latter was about to fall down from his seat.[37] Piercing king Bhagadatta then (with many arrows), Yudhishthira surrounded him on all sides with a large number of cars.[38] Staying on his elephant amid car-warriors encompassing him all around, he looked resplendent like a blazing fire on a mountain-top in the midst of a dense forest.[39] He stayed fearlessly in the midst of those serried cars ridden by fierce bowmen all of whom showered upon him their arrows.[40] Then the king of the Prāgjyotishas, pressing (with his toe) his huge elephant, urged him towards the car of Yuyudhāna.[41] That prodigious beast, then seizing the car of Cini's grandson, hurled it to a distance with great force. Yuyudhāna, however, escaped by timely flight.[42] His charioteer also, abandoning the large steeds of the Sindhu breed yoked unto that car, quickly followed Sātyaki and stood where the latter stopped.[43] Meanwhile the elephant, quickly coming out of that circle of cars, began to throw down all the kings (that attempted to bar his course).[44] Those bulls among men, frightened out of their wits by that single elephant coursing swiftly, regarded it in that battle as multiplied into many.[45] Indeed, Bhagadatta, mounted on that elephant of his, began to smite down the Pāndavas like the chief of the celes-

tials mounted on Airāvata smiting down the *Dānavas* (in days of old).*[46] As the Pānchālas fled in all directions, loud and awful was the noise that arose amongst them, made by their elephants and steeds.[47] And while the Pāndava troops were thus destroyed by Bhagadatta, Bhima, excited with rage, once more rushed against the ruler of the Prāgjyotishas.[48] The latter's elephant then frightened the steeds of the rushing Bhima by drenching them with water spouted forth from its trunk, and thereupon those animals bore Bhima away from the field.[49] Then Kriti's son Ruchiparvan, mounted on his car, quickly rushed against Bhagadatta, scattering showers of arrows and advancing like the Destroyer himself.[50] Then Bhagadatta, that ruler of the hilly regions, possessed of beautiful limbs, despatched Ruchiparvan with a straight shaft to Yama's abode.†[51] Upon the fall of the heroic Ruchiparvan, Subhadrā's son, and the sons of Draupadi, and Chekitāna, and Dhrishtaketu, and Yuyutshu, began to afflict the elephant.[52] Desiring to slay that elephant, all those warriors, uttering loud shouts, began to pour their arrowy showers on the animal like the clouds drenching the Earth with their watery down-pours.[53] Urged then by its skilful rider with heel, hook, and toe, the animal advanced quickly with trunk stretched, and eyes and ears fixed.[54] Treading down Yuyutsu's steeds, the animal then slew his charioteer. Thereupon, O king, Yuyutsu, abandoning his car, fled away quickly.[55] Then the Pāndava warriors, desirous of slaying that prince of elephants, uttered loud shouts and drenched it quickly with showers of arrows.[56] At this time, thy son, excited with rage, rushed against the car of Subhadrā's son. Meanwhile, king Bhagadatta on his elephant, scattering his shafts on the foe,[57] looked resplendent like the Sun himself scattering his rays on the Earth. Arjuna's son then pierced

* The second line of 46 is omitted in the Bengal texts.—T.

† The Bengali translators have made a mess of these two verses. Amongst others, K. P. Singha makes Ruchiparvan follow Bhima and supposes *Suvarchas* to be some Pāndava warrior who slays Ruchiparvan. The reading *Suvarchas* is vicious. The correct reading is *Suparva*, meaning, as Nilakantha explains, "of beautiful limbs. *Parvatapati* is Bhagadatta himself.—T.

him with a dozen shafts, and Yuyutsu with ten,[58] and each of the sons of Draupadi pierced him with three shafts and Dhrista-ketu also pierced him with three. That elephant then, pierced with these shafts shot with great care, looked resplendent[59] like a mighty mass of clouds penetrated with the rays of the Sun. Afflicted with those shafts of the foe, that elephant then, urged by its rider with skill and vigor,[60] began to throw down the hostile warriors on both his flanks. Like a cowherd be-labouring his cattle in the forest with a goad,[61] Bhagadatta repeatedly smote the Pāndava host. Like the cawing of quick-ly retreating crows when assailed by hawks,[62] a loud and con-fused noise was heard among the Pāndava troops who fled away with great speed.[63] That prince of elephants, struck by its rider with the hook, resembled, O king, a winged mountain of old. And it filled the hearts of the enemy with fear like to what merchants experience at sight of the surging sea.*[64] Then elephants and car-warriors and steeds and kings, flying away in fear, made, as they fled, a loud and awful din that, O monarch, filled earth and sky and heaven and the cardinal and subsidiary directions in that battle.[65] Mounted on that foremost of ele-phants, king Bhagadatta penetrated the hostile army like the *Asura* Virochana in days of old into the celestial host in battle well protected by the gods.[66] A violent wind began to blow; a dusty cloud covered the welkin and the troops; and people re-garded that single elephant as multipled into many coursing all over the field.' "[67]

SECTION XXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thou askest me about the feats of Arjuna in battle. Listen, O thou of mighty-arms, to what Pārtha achieved in the fight![1] Beholdiag the risen dust and hearing the wail of the troops when Bhagadatta was performing great feats on the field, the son of Kunti addressed Krishna and said,[2]—O slayer of Madhu, it seems that the ruler of the Prāg-jyotishas hath, on his elephant, with great impetuosity, advanc-

---

* The Bengal reading *abhitas* is incorrect. It should be *Kshubhitas*.

ed to battle. This loud din that we hear must be due to him.[3] Well-versed in the art of grinding and battling from the back of an elephant, and not inferior to Indra himself in battle, he, I think, is the foremost of all elephant-warriors in the world.*[4] His elephant again is the foremost of elephants, without a rival to encounter it in battle. Possessed of great dexterity and above all fatigue, it is, again, impervious to all weapons.[5] Capable of bearing every weapon and even the touch of fire, it will, O sinless one, alone destroy the Pāndava force today![6] Except us two, there is none else capable of checking that creature. Go quickly, therefore, to that spot where the ruler of the Prāgjyotishas is.[7] Proud in battle in consequence of the strength of his elephant, and arrogant in consequence of his age, I will this very day send him as a guest to the slayer of Vala![8]—At these words of Arjuna, Krishna began to proceed to the place where Bhagadatta was breaking the Pāndava ranks.[9] While Arjuna was proceeding towards Bhagadatta, the mighty *Samsaptaka* car-warriors numbering fourteen thousand' made up of ten thousand Gopalās or Nārāyanas who used to follow Vāsudeva, returning to the field, summoned him to battle.[10-11] Beholding the Pāndava host broken by Bhagadatta, and summoned on the other hand by the *Samsaptakas*, Arjuna's heart was divided in twain,[12] And he began to think—Which of these two acts will be better for me to do today, to return from this spot for battling with the *Samsaptakas* or to repair to Yudhishthira?[13]—Reflecting with the aid of his understanding, O perpetuator of Kuru's race, Arjuna's heart at last was firmly fixed on the slaughter of the *Samsaptakas*.[14] Desirous of alone slaughtering in battle thousands of car-warriors, Indra's son (Arjuna) having the foremost of apes on his banner suddenly turned back.[15] Even this was what both Duryodhana and Karna had thought of for achieving the slaughter of Arjuna. And it was for this that they had made arrangements for the double encounter.[16] The son of Pāndu allowed his heart to waver this side and that, but at last resolv-

---

* I render 16 and 17 rather freely, as otherwise the sense would not be clear.—T.

ing to slay those foremost of warriors, *viz.*, the *Sāmsaptakas*, he baffled the purpose of his enemies.*[17] Then the mighty *Samsaptaka* car-warriors, O king, shot at Arjuna thousands of straight arrows.[18] Covered with those arrows, O monarch, neither Kunti's son Pārtha, nor Krishna otherwise called Janārddana, nor the steeds, nor the car, could be seen.[19] Then Janārddana became deprived of his senses and perspired greatly. Thereupon Pārtha shot the *Brahma* weapon and nearly exterminated them all.[20] Hundreds upon hundreds of arms with bows and arrows and bowstrings in grasp, cut off from trunks, and hundreds upon hundreds of standards and steeds and charioteers and car-warriors, fell down on the ground.[21] Huge elephants well-equipt and resembling foremost of hills overgrown with woods or masses of clouds, afflicted with Pārtha's shafts and deprived of riders, fell down on the earth.[22] Many elephants again, with riders on their backs, crushed by means of Arjuna's shafts, fell down, deprived of life, shorn of the embroidered choths on their backs, and with their housings torn.[23] Cut off by Kiritin with his broad-headed arrows, countless arms having swords and lances and rapiers for their nails or having clubs and battle-axes in grasp, fell down on the earth.[24] Heads also, beautiful, O king, as the morning sun or the lotus or the moon, cut off by Arjuna with his arrows, dropped down on the ground.[25] While Phālguna in rage was thus engaged in slaying the foe with diverse kinds of well-adorned and fatal shafts, that host seemed to be ablaze.[26] Beholding Dhananjaya crushing that host like an elephant crushing lotus stalks, all creatures applauded him, saying,—*Excellent, Excellent!*[27]—Seeing that feat of Pārtha resembling that of Vāsava himself, Mādhava wondered much and, addressing him with joined hands,[28] said,—Verily, O Pārtha, I think that this feat which thou hast achieved today in battle is difficult of being achieved by Cakra or Yama or the Lord of treasures himself![29] I see that thou hast today felled in battle hundreds and thousands of mighty *Samsaptaka* warriors all together![30]—Having slain the

* The Bengal texts read,—"he is either the first or the second, on the earth, I think."—T.

Samsaptakas then,—them, that is, who stayed in battle,—Pārtha addressed Krishna, saying,—Go towards Bhagadatta !—' "[31]

SECTION XXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'At Pārtha's desire, Krishna then urged his white steeds, fleet as the mind and covered in golden armour, towards Drona's divisions.[1] While that foremost one of the Kurus was thus proceeding towards his brothers who were exceedingly afflicted by Drona, Suçarman with his brothers, followed him behind, desirous of battle.[2] The ever-victorious Arjuna then addressed Krishna, saying,—O thou of unfading glory, this Suçarman here, with this brothers, challengeth me to battle![3] O slayer of foes, our host again is broken (by Drona) towards the north ! In consequence of these *Samsaptakas*, my heart wavers today as to whether I should do this or that![4] Sall I slay the *Samsaptakas* now, or protect from harm my own troops already afflicted by the foe ? Know this to be what I am thinking of, *viz.*,—Which of these would be better for me ?[5]—Thus addressed by him, he of Daçārha's race turned back the car, and took the son of Pāndu to where the ruler of the Trigartas was.[6] Then Arjuna, pierced Suçarman with seven shafts, and cut off both his bow and standard with a couple of sharp arrows.[7] He then, with six arrows, quickly despatched the brothers of the Trigarta king to Yama's abode.*[8] Then Suçarman, aiming Arjuna, hurled at him a dart made wholly of iron and looking like a snake, and aiming Vāsudeva, hurled a lance at him.[9] Cutting off that dart with three arrows and that lance also with three other arrows, Arjuna, by means of his arrowy showers, deprived Suçarman of his senses on his car.[10] Him advancing fiercely (towards thy division), scattering showers of arrows like Vāsava pouring rain, none among thy troops, O king, ventured to oppose.[11] Like a fire consuming heaps of straw as it advances, Dhananjaya advanced, scorching all the mighty car-warriors among the

---

* The Bombay reading *paritas* is vicious. The Bengal texts read *tvaritas*.—T.

Kauravas by means of his arrows.[12] Like living creatures incapable of bearing the touch of fire, thy troops could not bear the irressistible impetuosity of that intelligent son of Kunti.[13] Indeed, the son of Pāndu, overwhelming the hostile host by means of his arrows, came upon the king of the Prāgjyotishas, O monarch, like Garuda swooping down (upon his prey).[14] He then held in his hands that *Gāndiva* which in battle was beneficial to the innocent Pāndavas and baneful to all foes, for the destruction of Kshatriyas brought about, O king, by the fault of thy son who had recourse to deceitful dice for accomplishing his end![15-16] Agitated by Pārtha thus, thy host then, O king, broke like a boat when it strikes against a rock.[17] Then ten thousand bowmen, brave and fierce, firmly resolved to conquer, advanced (to encounter Arjuna).[18] With dauntless hearts, those mighty car-warriors all surrounded him. Capable of bearing any burden how heavy soever in battle, Pārtha took up that heavy burden.[19] As an angry elephant of sixty years, with rent temples, crushes an assemblage of lotus stalks, even so did Pārtha crush that division of thy army![20] And when that division was being thus crushed, king Bhagadatta, on that same elephant of his, impetuously rushed towards Arjuna.[21] Thereupon Dhananjaya, that tiger among men, staying on his car, received Bhagadatta. That encounter between Arjuna's car and Bhagadatta's elephant was fierce in the extreme.[22] Those two heroes, *viz.*, Bhagadatta and Dhananjaya, then coursed on the field, the one on his car and the other on his elephant, both of which were equipt according to the rules of science.[23] Then Bhagadatta like the lord Indra, from his elephant looking like a mass of clouds, poured on Dhananjaya, showers of arrows.[24] The vailiant son of Prithā, the son of Vāsava, however, with his arrows, cut off those arrowy showers of Bhagadatta before they could reach him.[25] The king of the Prāgjyotishas then, baffling that arrowy shower of Arjuna, struck both Pārtha and Krishna, O king, with many shafts.[26] And overwhelming both of them with a thick shower of shafts, Bhagadatta then urged his elephant for the detruction of Krishna and Pārtha.[27] Beholding that angry elephant advancing like Death himself, Janārddana quickly moved his car in such a way as to keep the

elephant on his left.[28] Dhananjaya, although he thus got the opportunity of slaying that huge elephant with its rider from the back, wished not yet to avail of it, remembering the rules of fair fight.[29] The elephant, however, coming upon other elephants and cars and steeds, O king, despatched them all to Yama's abode. Beholding this, Dhananjaya became filled with rage.' "[30]

SECTION XXIX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Filled with rage, what did Pārtha the son of Pāndu do to Bhagadatta? What also did the king of the Prāgjyotishas do to Pārtha? Tell me all this, O Sanjaya![1]'

"Sanjaya said,—'While Pārtha and Krishna were thus engaged with the ruler of the Prāgjyotishas, all creatures regarded them to be very near the jaws of Death.[2] Indeed, O monarch, from the neck of his elephant, Bhagadatta scattered showers of shafts on the two Krishnas staying upon their car.[3] He pierced Devaki's son with many arrows made wholly of black iron, equipt with wings of gold, whetted on stone, and shot from his bow drawn to the fullest stretch.[4] Those shafts whose touch resembled that of fire, equipt with beautiful feathers, and shot by Bhagadatta, passing through Devaki's son, entered the earth.[5] Pārtha then cut off Bhagadatta's bow, and slaying next the warrior that protected his elephant from the flank, began to fight with him as if in sport.[6] Then Bhagadatta hurled at him fourteen lances of sharp points, that were bright as the rays of the Sun. Arjuna, however, cut each of those lances into three fragments.[7] Then Indra's son cut open the armour in which that elephant was cased, by means of a thick shower of arrows. The armour thus cut off, fell down on the earth.[8] Exceedingly afflicted with the arrows shot by Arjuna, that elephant, deprived of its coat of mail, looked like a prince of mountains destitute of its cloudy robes and with streaks of water running adown its breast.[9] Then the ruler of the Prāgjyotishas hurled at Vāsudeva a dart made wholly of iron and decked with gold. That dart Arjuna cut in twain.[10]

Then cutting off the kings's standard and umbrella by means of his arrows, Arjuna quickly pierced that ruler of the mountainous realms with ten arrows, smiling the while.[11] Deeply pierced with those shafts of Arjuna that were beauifully winged with *Kanka* feathers, Bhagadatta, O monarch, became incensed with the son of Pāndu.[12] He then hurled some lances at Arjuna's head and uttered a loud shout. In consequence of those lances Arjuna's diadem was displaced.[13] Arjuna then, having placed his diadem properly, addressed the ruler of the Prāgjyotishas, saying,—Look well on this world![14]—Thus addressed by him, Bhagadatta became filled with rage, and taking up a bright bow showered upon both the Pāndava and Govinda his arrowy down-pours.[15] Pārtha then, cutting off his bow and quivers, quickly struck him with two and seventy shafts, afflicting his vital limbs.[16] Thus pierced, he was excessively pained. Filled then with rage, he, with *mantras*, inspired his hook into the *Vaishnava* weapon and hurled it at Arjuna's breast.[17] That all-slaying weapon, hurled by Bhagadatta, Keçava, covering Arjuna, received on his breast.[18] Thereupon that weapon became a triumphal garland on Keçava's breast. Arjuna then cheerlessly addressed Keçava, saying,[19]—O sinless one, without battling thyself it is thine to only guide my steeds! Thou hadst said so, O lotus-eyed one! Why then dost thou not adhere to thy promise?[20] If I sink in distress, or become unable to baffle or resist a foe or weapon, then mayst thou act so, but not when I am standing thus![21] Thou knowest that with my bow and arrows I am competent to vanquish these worlds with the gods, the *Asuras*, and men![22]—Hearing these words of Arjuna, Vāsudeva replied unto him, saying,—Listen, O Pārtha, to this secret and ancient history as it is, O sinless one![23] I have four forms, eternally engaged as I am in protecting the worlds! Dividing my own Self, I ordain the good of the worlds.[24] One form of mine, staying on the Earth, is engaged in the practice of ascetic austerities. Another beholdeth the good and the evil deeds in the world.[25] My third form, coming into the world of men, is engaged in action. My fourth form lieth down in sleep for a thousand years.[26] That form of mine which awaketh from sleep at the end of a thousand years,

granteth, upon awakening, excellent boons to persons deserving of them.[27] The Earth, knowing (on one occasion) that that time had come, asked of me a boon for (her son) Naraka. Hear, O Pārtha, what that boon was![28]—*Possessed of the Vaishnava weapon, let my son become incapable of being slain by the gods and the Asuras. It behoveth thee to grant me that weapon!*[29]—Hearing of this prayer, I then gave, in days of old, the supreme and infallible *Vaishnava* weapon to the Earth's son.[30] I said also at that time these words :—*O Earth, let this weapon be infallible for the protection of Naraka. None will be able to slay him!*[31] *Protected by this weapon, thy son will always, in all the worlds, be invincible and crush all hostile hosts!*[32]—Saying, *So be it!*—the intelligent goddess went away, her wishes fulfilled! And Naraka also became invincible and always scorched his foes.[33] It was from Naraka, O Pārtha, that the ruler of the Prāgjyotishas got this weapon of mine. There is none, in all the worlds, O sire, including even Indra and Rudra, who is unslayable by this weapon![34] It was for thy sake, therefore, that I baffled it, violating my promise. The great *Asura* hath now been divested of that supreme weapon.[35] Slay now, O Pārtha, that invincible foe of thine, *viz.*, Bhagadatta, that enemy of the gods, even as I formerly slew for the good of the worlds the *Asura* Naraka![36]—Thus addressed by the high-souled Keçava, Pārtha suddenly overwhelmed Bhagadatta with clouds of whetted arrows.[37] Then the mighty-armed and high-souled Arjuna fearlessly struck a long arrow between the frontal globes of his enemy's elephant.[38] That arrow, spiltting the elephant like the thunder splitting a mountain, penetrated into its body to the very wings[39] like a snake penetrating into an anthill.[40] Though urged repeatedly then by Bhagadatta, the elephant refused to obey him like a poor man's wife her lord.[41] With limbs paralysed, it fell down, striking the earth with its tusks. Uttering a cry of distress, that huge elephant gave up the ghost.[42] The son of Pāndu then, with a straight shaft furnished with a crescent-shaped head, pierced the bosom of king Bhagadatta.[43] His breast, being pierced through by the diadem-decked (Arjuna), king Bhagadatta, deprived of life, threw down his bow and

arrows.[44] Loosened from his head, the valuable piece of cloth that had served him for a turban, fell down like a petal from a lotus when its stalk is violently struck.[45] And he himself, decked with golden garlands, fell down from his huge elephant adorned with golden housings like a flowering *Kinçuka* broken by the force of the wind from the mountain-top.[46] The son of Indra then, having slain in battle that monarch who resembled Indra kimself in prowess and who was Indra's friend, broke the other warriors of thy army inspired with hope of victory, like the mighty wind breaking rows of trees.'"[47]

SECTION XXX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having slain Bhagadatta who was ever the favorite and friend of Indra and who was possessed of great energy, Pārtha circumambulated him.[1] Then the two sons of the king of Gāndhāra, *viz.*, the brothers Vrishaka and Achala, those subjugators of hostile towns, began to afflict Arjuna in battle.[2] Those two heroic bowmen, uniting together, began to deeply pierce Arjuna from before and behind with whetted shafts of great impetuosity.[3] Arjuna then, with sharp shafts, cut off the steeds and driver and bow and umbrella and standard and car of Vrishaka the son of Suvala into atoms.[4] With clouds of arrows and diverse other weapons, Arjuna then once more severely afflicted the Gāndhāra troops headed by Suvala's son.[5] Then Dhananjaya, filled with rage, despatched to Yama's abode, with his shafts, five hundred heroic Gāndhāras with upraised weapons.[6] That mighty-armed hero then, quickly alighting from that car whose steeds had been slain, mounted upon the car of his brother and took up another bow.[7] Then those two brothers, *viz.*, Vrishaka and Achala, both mounted on the same car, began incessantly to pierce Vibhatsu with showers of arrows.[8] Indeed, those high-souled princes, those relatives of thine by marriage, *viz.*, Vrishaka and Achala, struck Pārtha very severely like Vritra or Vala striking Indra of old.[9] Of unfailing aim, those two princes of Gāndhāra, themselves unhurt, began once more to strike the son of Pāndu like the two months

of summer afflicting the world with sweat-producing rays.*[10] Then Arjuna slew those princes and tigers among men, *viz.*, Vrisha and Achala, staying on one car side by side, with, O monarch, a single arrow.[11] Then those mighty-armed heroes, with red eyes and looking like lions, those uterine brothers having similar features, together fell down from that car.[12] And their bodies, dear to friends, falling down upon the earth, lay there, scattering sacred fame all around.[13]

"Beholding their brave and unretreating maternal uncles thus slain by Arjuna, thy sons, O monarch, rained many weapons upon him.[14] Cakuni also, conversant with a hundred different kinds of illusions, seeing his brothers slain, created illusions for confounding the two Krishnas.[15] Then clubs, and iron balls, and rocks, and *Cataghnis*, and darts, and maces, and spiked bludgeons, and scimitars, and lances, and mallets, and axes,[16] and *Kampanas*, and swords, and nails, and short clubs, and battle-axes, and razors, and arrows with sharp broad heads, and *Nālikas*, and calf-tooth-headed shafts, and arrows having bony heads,[17] and discs, and snake-headed shafts, and spears, and diverse other kinds of weapons, fell upon Arjuna from all sides.[18] And asses, and camels, and buffalos, and tigers, and lions, and deer, and leopards, and bears, and wolves, and vultures, and monkeys, and various reptiles,[19] and diverse cannibals, and swarms of crows, all hungry, and excited with rage, ran towards Arjuna.[20] Then Dhananjaya the son of Kunti, that hero conversant with celestial weapons, shooting clouds of arrows, assailed them all.[21] And assailed by that hero with those excellent and strong shafts, they uttered loud cries and fell down deprived of life.[22] Then a thick darkness appeared and covered Arjuna's car, and from within that gloom harsh voices rebuked Arjuna.[23] The latter, however, by means of the weapon

---

* The Bengal texts read the second line differently. *Loke* in the locative is incorrect. It should be *Lokam* (accusative). For *Gharmāṅçubhis* the Bengal reading is *Gharmāmvubhis*. Nilakantha explains that *varsha* (whence *vārshika)* means season. Hence *Nidāgha-vārshikau māsau* would mean the two months of summer. If the Bengal reading were adopted, the meaning would be "like summer and the rainy seasons afflicting the world with sweat and rain."—T.

called *Jyotishka*, dispelled that thick and awful darkness.[24] When that darkness was dispelled, frightful waves of water appeared. For drying up those waters, Arjuna applied the weapon called *Aditya*. And in consequence of that weapon, the waters were almost dried up. Thus diverse illusions, repeatedly created by Sauvala,[25-26] Arjuna destroyed speedily by means of the force of his weapons, laughing the while. Upon all his illusions being destroyed, afflicted with Arjuna's shafts and unmanned by fear,[27] Cakuni fled away, aided by his fleet steeds, like a vulgar wretch. Then Arjuna, acquainted with all weapons, showing his enemies the exceeding lightness of his hands,[28] showered upon the Kaurava host clouds of arrows. That host of thy son, thus slaughtered by Pārtha,[29] became divided into two streams like the current of Gangā when impeded by a mountain. And one of those streams, O bull among men, proceeded towards Drona,[30] and the other with loud cries, proceeded towards Duryodhana. Then a thick dust arose and covered all the troops. We could not then see Arjuna.[31] Only the twang of *Gāndiva* was heard by us from off the field. Indeed, the twang of *Gāndiva* was heard, rising above the blare of conchs and the beat of drums and the noise of other instruments. Then on the southern part of the field took place a fierce battle between many foremost warriors[32-33] on the one side and Arjuna on the other. I, however, followed Drona. The various divisions of Yudhisthira's force smote the foe on every part of the field.[34] The diverse divisions of thy son, O Bhārata, Arjuna smote, even as the wind in the summer season destroys masses of clouds in the welkin.[35] Indeed, as Arjuna came, scattering clouds of arrows like Vāsava pouring thick showers of rain, there was none in thy army who could resist that great and fierce bowman, that tiger among men.[36] Struck by Pārtha, thy warriors were in great pain. They fled away, and in flying killed many among their own number.[37] The arrows shot by Arjuna, winged with *Kanka* feathers and capable of penetrating into every body, fell covering all sides like flights of locusts.[38] Piercing steeds and car-warriors and elephants and foot-soldiers, O sire, like snakes through ant-hills, those shafts entered the earth.[39] Arjuna never shot two arrows at any elephant, steed, or man. Struck

with only one arrow, each of these, severely afflicted, fell down, deprived of life.[40] With slain men and elephants and shaft-struck steeds lying all about, and echoing with the yells of dogs and jackalls, the field of battle presented a variegated and awful sight.[41] Pained with arrows, sire forsook son, and friend, forsook friend, and son, forsook sire. Indeed, every one was intent upon protecting his own self. Struck with Pārtha's shafts, many warriors abandoned the very animals that bore them.' "[42]

SECTION XXXI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When those divisions (of mine), O Sanjaya, were broken and routed, and all of you retreated quickly from the field, what became the state of your minds?[1] The rallying of ranks when broken and flying away without beholding a spot whereon to stand, is always exceedingly difficult. Tell me all about it, O Sanjaya!'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'[Although the troops were broken], yet, O monarch, many foremost of heroes in the world, inspired by the desire of doing good to thy son and of maintaining their own reputation, followed Drona.[3] In that dreadful pass they fearlessly followed their commander, achieving meritorious feats, against the Pāndava troops with weapons upraised and Yudhishthira within accessible distance.*[4] Taking advantage of an error of Bhimasena of great energy and of the heroic Sātyaki and Dhrishtadyumna, O monarch, the Kuru leaders fell upon the Pāndava army.†[5] The Pānchālas urged their troops, saying,—*Drona, Drona!*—Thy sons, however, urged all the Kurus, saying,—*Let not Drona be slain. Let not Drona be slain!*[6]—One side saying,—*Slay Drona, Slay Drona,*—and the other saying,—*Let not Drona be slain, Let not Drona be slain,*—the Kurus and the Pāndavas seemed to gamble, making Drona their stake.[7] Dhrishtadyumna the prince of the Pānchālas

---

* The Bengal reading *Sambhrānte* is vicious. The Bombay reading *Samprāpte* is evidently correct.—T.

† I render 5 a little freely, and expand it slightly to make the sense clear.—T.

proceeded to the side of all those Pānchāla car-warriors whom Drona saught to crush.[8] Thus no rule was observed as to the antagonist one might select for battling with him. The strife became dreadful. Heroes encountered heroes, uttering loud shouts.[9] Their foes could not make the Pāndavas tremble. On the other hand, recollecting all their woes, the latter made the ranks of their enemies tremble.[10] Though possessed of modesty yet excited with rage and vindictiveness, and urged by energy and might, they approached that dreadful battle, reckless of their very lives, for slaying Drona.[11] That encounter of heroes of immeasurable energy sporting in fierce battle making life itself the stake, resembled the collision of iron againtst adamant.[12] The oldest men even could not recollect whether they had seen or heard of a battle as fierce as that which happened on this occasion.[13] The Earth, in that encounter marked with great carnage, afflicted with the weight of that vast host, began to tremble.[14] The awful noise made by the Kuru army agitated and tossed by the foe, paralyzing the very welkin, penetrated into the midst of even the Pāndava host.[15] Then Drona, coming upon the Pāndava divisions by thousands, and careering over the field, broke them by means of his whetted shafts.[16] When these were being thus crushed by Drona of wonderful achievements, Dhrishtadyumna, the generalissimo of the Pāndava host, filled with rage, himself checked Drona.[17] The encounter that we beheld between Drona and the prince of the Pānchālas was highty wonderful. It is my firm conviction that it has no parallel.[18]

" 'Then Nila, resembling a veritable fire, his arrows constituting its sparks and his bow its flame, began to consume the Kuru ranks, like a conflagation consuming heaps of dry grass.[19] The valiant son of Drona, who from before had been desirous of an encounter with him, smilingly addressed Nila as the latter came consuming the troops, and said unto him these polite words :*[20]—O Nila, what dost thou gain by consuming so many common soldiers with thy arrowy flames? Fight with my

* The Bengal reading *Purvābhilāshi* is better than *Purvābhibhāsi.* Between Nila and Açwatthāman existed a rivalry since some time.—T.

unaided self, and filled with rage, strike me![21]—Thus addressed, Nila, the brightness of whose face resembled the splendour of a full-blown lotus, pierced Açwatthāman with his shafts,—him, that is, whose body resembled an assemblage of lotuses and whose eyes were like lotus petals.[22] Deeply and suddenly pierced by Nila, Drona's son, with three broad-headed arrows, cut off his antagonist's bow and standard and umbrella.[23] Quickly jumping down from his car, Nila then, with a shield and an excellent sword, desired to sever from Açwatthāman's trunk his head like a bird (bearing away its prey in its talons).[24] Drona's son, however, O sinless one, by means of a broad-headed arrow, cut off, from his antagonist's trunk, his head graced with a beautiful nose and decked with excellent ear-rings, and which rested on elevated shoulders.[25] That hero then, the brightness of whose face resembled the splendour of the full moon and whose eyes were like lotus petals, whose stature was tall, and complexion like that of the lotus, thus slain, fell down on the earth.[26] The Pāndava host then, filled with great grief, began to tremble, when the preceptor's son thus slew Nila of blazing energy.[27] The great car-warriors of the Pāndavas, O sire, all thought,—Alas, how would Indra's son (Arjuna) be able to rescue us from the foe,[28] when that mighty warrior is engaged on the southern part of the field in slaughtering the remnant of the *Samsaptakas* and the *Nārāyana* force ?—' "[29]

SECTION XXXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Vrikodara, however, could not brook that slaughter of his army. He struck Vālhika with sixty, and Karna with ten arrows.[1] Drona then, desirous of slaying Bhima, quickly struck the latter, in his very vitals, many straight and whetted shafts of keen edge.[2] Desirous again of allowing no time, he once more struck him with six and twenty shafts whose touch resembled that of fire and which were all like snakes of virulent poison.[3] Then Karna pierced him with a dozen shafts, and Açwtthāman with seven, and king Duryodhana also with six.[4] The mighty Bhimasena, in return, pierced them all. He struck Drona with fifty shafts, and Karna with

ten.[5] And piercing Duryodhana with a dozen shafts, and Drona's son with eight, he engaged in that battle uttering a loud shout.[6] In that encounter in which the warriors fought reckless of their lives and in which death was easy of attainment, Ajātaçatru despatched many warriors, urging them to rescue Bhima.[7] Those heroes of immeasurable energy, *viz*, the two sons of Mādri and Pāndu, and others headed by Yuyudhāna, quickly proceeded to Bhimasena's side.[8] And those bulls among men, filled with rage and uniting together, advanced to battle, desirous of breaking the army of Drona that was protected by many foremost of bowmen.[9] Indeed, those great car-warriors of mighty energy, *viz.*, Bhima and others, fell furiously upon Drona's host. Drona, however, that foremost of car-warriors, received without any anxiety,[10] all those mighty car-warriors of great strength, those heroes accomplished in battle. Disregarding their kingdoms and casting off all fear of death, the warriors of thy army proceeded against the Pāndavas.[11] Horsemen encountered horsemen, and car-warriors encountered car-warriors. The battle proceeded, darts against darts, swords against swords, axes against axes.[12] A fierce encounter with swords took place, producing a terrible carnage. And in consequence of the collision of elephants against elephants, the battle became furious.[13] Some fell down from the backs of elephants, and some from the backs of steeds, with heads downwards. And others, O sire, fell down from cars, pierced with arrows.[14] In that fierce press, as some one fell down deprived of armour, an elephant might be seen attacking him in the chest and crushing his head.[15] Elsewhere might be seen elephants crushing numbers of men fallen down on the field. And many elephants, piercing the earth with their tusks (as they fell down), were seen to tear therewith large bodies of men.[16] Many elephants, again, with arrows sticking to their tusks, wandered over the field, tearing and crushing men by hundreds.[17] And some elephants were seen pressing down into the earth fallen warriors and steeds and elephants cased in armour of black iron, as if these were only thick reeds.[18] Many kings graced with modesty, their hour having come, laid themselves down (for the last sleep) on painful beds overlaid

with vulturine feathers.[19] Advancing to battle on his car, sire slew son; and son also, through madness, and losing all regard, approached sire in battle.[20] The wheels of cars were broken; banners were torn; umbrellas fell down on the earth. Dragging broken yokes, steeds ran away.[21] Arms with swords in grasp, and heads decked with ear-rings, fell down. Cars, dragged by mighty elephants, were thrown down on the ground, reduced to fragments.[22] Steeds with riders fell down, severely wounded by elephants. That fierce battle went on, without any body showing any regard for any one.[23]—*Oh father!—Oh son!—Where art thou, friend?—Wait!—Where dost thou go?—Strike!—Bring!—Slay this one!*—these and diverse other cries, with loud laughs, and shouts, and roars, were uttered and heard there. The blood of human beings and steeds and elephants, mingled together.[24-25] The earthy dust disappeared. The hearts of all timid persons became cheerless. Here a hero getting his car-wheel entangled with the car-wheel of another hero,[26] and the distance being too near to admit of the use of other weapons, smashed that other's head by means of his mace. Brave combatants, desirous of safety where there was no safety, dragged one another by the hair, and fought fiercely with fists and teeth and nails. Here was a hero whose upraised arm with sword in grasp was cut off.[27-28] There another's arm was lopped off with bow, or arrow, or hook in grasp. Here one loudly called upon another. There another turned his back on the field.[29] Here one severed another's head from his trunk, getting him within reach. There another rushed with loud shouts upon an enemy. Here one was filled with fear at another's roar.[30] There another slew, with sharp shafts, a friend or a foe. Here an elephant, huge as a hill, slain with a long shaft,[31] fell down on the field and lay like a flat island in a river during the summer season. There an elephant, with juice trickling down its body like a mountain with rillets flowing adown its breast, stood, having crushed by its tread a car-warrior with his steeds and charioteer on the field. Beholding brave warriors, accomplished in arms and covered with blood, strike one another,[32-33] they that were timid and of weak hearts, lost their senses. In fact, all became

cheerless. Nothing could any longer be distinguished.[34] Overwhelmed with the dust raised by the troops, the battle became furious. Then the commander of the Pāndava forces saying,—*This is the time,*[35]—speedily led the Pāndavas on, those heroes that are always endued with great activity. Obeying his behest, the mighty-armed Pāndavas,[36] smiting (the Kaurava army), proceeded towards Drona's car like swans towards a lake.—*Seize him,—Do not fly away,—Do not fear,—Cut into pieces,*[37]—these uproarious cries were heard in the vicinity of Drona's car. Then Drona and Kripa, and Karna, and Drona's son, and king Jayadratha,[38] and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, and Calya, received those heroes. Those irresistible and invincible warriors, however, *viz.*, the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas, inspired by noble sentiments, did not, though afflicted with shafts, avoid Drona. Then Drona, excited with great rage, shot hundreds of shafts,[39-40] and caused a great carnage amongst the Chedis, the Pānchālas, and the Pāndavas. The twang of his bowstring and the slaps of his palms, were, O sire, heard on all sides.[41] And they resembled the roar of thunder and struck fear into the hearts of all. Meanwhile, Jishnu, having vanquished large numbers of *Samsaptakas,*[42] quickly came to that place where Drona was grinding the Pāndava troops. Having crossed many large lakes whose waters were constituted by blood, and whose fierce billows and eddies were constituted by shafts, and having slain the *Samsaptakas,* Phālguna showed himself there. Possessed of great fame and endued as he was with the energy of the Sun himself, Arjuna's emblem, *viz.*, his banner bearing the ape, was beheld by us to blaze with splendour. Having dried up the *Samsaptaka* ocean by means of weapons that constituted his rays,[43-45] the son of Pāndu blasted the Kurus also as if he were the very Sun that rises at the end of the *Yuga!* Indeed, Arjuna burned all the Kurus by the heat of his weapons,[46] like the fire*

---

* The word in the original is *dhuma-ketu.* Elsewhere I have rendered it *commet.* It would, seem, however, that that is wrong. In such passages the word is used in its literal sense, *viz.*, "(an article) having smoke for its mark," hence fire.—T.

that appears at the end of the *Yuga* burning down all creatures. Struck by him with thousands of shafts, elephant-warriors and horsemen and car-warriors fell down on the earth, with dishevelled hair and exceedingly afflicted with those arrowy showers. Some uttered cries of distress. Others set up loud shouts.[47-48] And some, struck with the shafts of Pārtha, fell down, deprived of life. Recollecting the practices of (good) warriors, Arjuna struck not those combatants among the foe that had fallen down, or those that were re-treating, or those that were unwilling to fight. Deprived of their cars and filled with wonder, almost all the Kauravas, turning away from the field, uttered cries of *Oh* and *Alas*, and called upon *Karna* (for protection). Hearing that din made by the Kurus desirous of protection, Adhiratha's son (Karna),[49-51] loudly assuring the troops with the words—*Do not fear*,—proceeded to face Arjuna. Then (Karna) that foremost of Bharata car-warriors, that delighter of all the Bharatas,[52] that first of all persons acquainted with weapons, invoked into existence the *Agneya* weapon. Dhananjaya, however, baffled by means of his own arrowy downpours the flights of arrows shot by Rādhā's son, that warrior of the blazing bow, that hero of bright shafts![53] And similarly Adhiratha's son also baffled the shafts of Arjuna of splendid energy. Resisting Arjuna's weapons thus by his own, Karna uttered loud shouts and shot many shafts at his antagonist.[54] Then Dhrishtadyumna and Bhima and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, all approached Karna, and each of them pierced him with three straight shafts.[55] The son of Rādhā, however, checking Arjuna's weapons by his own arrowy showers, cut off with three sharp shafts the bows of those three warriors.[56] Their bows cut off, they looked like snakes without poison. Hurling darts at their foe from their respective cars, they uttered loud leonine shouts.[57] Those fierce darts of great splendour and great impetuosity, looking like snakes, hurled from those mighty arms, coursed impetuously towards Karna's car.[58] Cutting each of those darts with three straight shafts and speeding many arrows at the same time at Pārtha, the mighty Karna uttered a loud shout.[59] Then Arjuna, piercing Karna with seven shafts, despatched the latter's younger brother by

means of his sharp shafts.[60] Slaying Catrunjaya thus with six arrows, Pārtha, with a broad-headed shaft, struck off Vipāta's head as the latter stood on his car.[61] In the very sight of the Dhārtarāshtras, therefore, as also of the *Suta's* son, the three uterine brothers of the latter were despatched by Arjuna unaided by any one.[62] Then Bhima, jumping down from his own car like a second Garuda, slew with his excellent sword five and ten combatants amongst those that supported Karna.[63] Mounting once more on his car and taking up another bow, he pierced Karna with ten shafts, and his charioteer and steeds with five.[64] Dhrishtadyumna also, taking up a sword and a bright shield, despatched Chandravarman, and also Vrihatkshatra the ruler of the Naishadhas.[65] The Pānchāla prince then, mounting upon his own car and taking up another bow, pierced Karna with three and seventy shafts and uttered a loud roar.[66] Cini's grandson also, of splendour equal to that of Indra himself, taking up another bow, pierced the *Suta's* son with four and sixty shafts and roared like a lion.[67] And cutting off Karna's bow with a couple of well-shot shafts, he once more pierced Karna on the arms and the chest with three arrows.[68] Then king Duryodhana, and Drona, and Jayadratha, rescued Karna from the Sātyaki-ocean as the former was about to sink in it.[69] And foot-soldiers and steeds and cars and elephants, belonging to thy army and numbering by hundreds, all accomplished in smiting, rushed to the spot where Karna was for frightening (his assailants).[70] Then Dhrishtadyumna, and Bhima, and Subhadrā's son, and Arjuna himself, and Nakula, and Sahadeva, began to protect Sātyaki in that battle.[71] Even thus went on that fierce battle for the destruction of bowmen belonging to thy army and the enemy's. All the combatants fought, reckless of their very lives.[72] Infantry and cars and steeds and elephants were engaged with cars and infantry. Car-warriors were engaged with elephants and foot-soldiers and steeds. Cars and foot-soldiers were engaged with cars and elephants.[73] And steeds were seen engaged with steeds, and elephants with elephants, and foot-soldiers with foot-soldiers.[74] Even thus did that battle, marked by great confusion, take place, enhancing the joy of cannibals and carnivorous creatures,

between those high-souled men facing one another fearlessly. Indeed, it largely swelled the population of Yama's kingdom.[75] Large numbers of elephants and cars and foot-soldiers and steeds were destroyed by men and cars and steeds and elephants. And elephants were slain by elephants, and car-warriors with weapons upraised, by car-warriors, and steeds by steeds, and large bodies of foot-soldiers by foot-soldiers.[76] And elephants were slain by cars, and large steeds by large elephants, and men by steeds; and steeds by foremost of car-warriors. With tongues lolling out, and teeth and eyes pressed out of their places, with coats of mail and ornaments crushed into dust, the slaughtered creatures fell down on the field.[77] Others, again, of terrible mien, were struck and thrown down on the earth by others armed with diverse and excellent weapons, and sunk into the earth by the tread of steeds and elephants, and tortured and mangled by heavy cars and car wheels.[78] And during the progress of that fierce carnage so delightful to beasts of prey and carnivorous birds and cannibals, mighty combatants, filled with wrath, and slaughtering one another, careered over the field putting forth all their energy.[79] Then when both hosts were broken and mangled, the warriors bathed in blood, looked at each other. Meanwhile the Sun went to his chambers in the Western hills, and both the armies, O Bhārata, slowly retired to their respective tents.' "[80]

SECTION XXXIII.

(Abhimanyu-badha Parva.)

"Sanjaya said,—'Having been first broken by Arjuna of immeasurable prowess, and owing also to the failure of Drona's vow in consequence of Yudhisthira having been well protected,[1] thy warriors were regarded as defeated. All of them with coats of mail torn and covered with dust, cast anxious glances around.[2] Retiring from the field with Drona's consent, after having been vanquished by their enemies of sure aim and humiliated by them in battle,[3] they heard, as they proceeded, the countless merits of Phālguna praised by all creatures, and the friendship of Keçava for Arjuna spoken of by all.[4] They

passed the night like men under a curse, reflecting upon the course of events and observing a perfect silence.

" 'Next morning Duryodhana said unto Drona,[5] these words, from affection and affectionate wrath, and in great cheerlessness of heart at the sight of the prosperity of their foe. Skilled in speech, and filled with rage at the success of the foe, the king said these words in the hearing of all the troops :[6]—O foremost of regenerate ones, without doubt thou hast set us down for men who should be destroyed by thee ! Thou didst not seize Yudhishthira today even though thou hadst got him within thy reach ![7] That foe whom thou wouldst seize in battle is incapable of escaping thee if once thou gettest him within sight, even if he be protected by the Pāndavas aided by the very gods.[8] Gratified, thou gavest me a boon. Now, however, thou dost not act according to it ! They that are noble (like thee), never falsify the hopes of one devoted to them ![9]—Thus addressed by Duryodhana, Bharadwāja's son felt great shame. Addressing the king, he said,—It behoveth thee not to take me to be such ! I always endeavour to achieve what is agreeable to thee ![10] The three worlds with the gods, the *Asuras*, the *Gandharvas*, the *Yakshas*, the *Nāgas*, and the *Rākshasas*, cannot defeat the force that is protected by the diadem-decked (Arjuna).[11] There where Govinda the Creator of the Universe is, and there where Arjuna is the commander, whose might can avail save the three-eyed Mahadeva's, O lord ?[12] O sire, I tell thee truly today and it will not be otherwise ! Today I will slay a mighty car-warrior, one of the foremost heroes of the Pāndavas ![13] Today I will also form an array that is impenetrable by the very gods. Do, however, O king, by some means take Arjuna away from the field ![14] There is nothing that he doth not know or cannot achieve in battle. From varrious places hath he acquired all that is to be known about battle.[15]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'After Drona had said these words, the *Samsaptakas* once more challenged Arjuna to battle and took him away to the southern side of the field.[16] Then an encounter took place between Arjuna and his enemies, the like of which hath never been seen or heard.[17] On the other hand,

the array formed by Drona, O king, looked resplendent. Indeed, that array was incapable of being looked at like the Sun himself when in his course he reaches the meridian and scorches (everything underneath).[18] Abhimanyu, at the command, O Bhārata, of his sire's eldest brother, pierced in battle that impenetrable circular array in many places.[19] Having achieved the most difficult feats and slain heroes by thousands, he was (at last) encountered by six heroes together. In the end, succumbing to Dusçāsana's son,[20] O lord of earth, Subhadrā's son, O chastiser of foes, gave up his life! At this we were filled with great joy and the Pāndavas with great grief. And after Subhadrā's son had been slain, our troops were withdrawn for nightly rest.'[21]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Hearing, O Sanjaya, of the slaughter of the son (Abimanyu), yet in his minority, of that lion among men, (*viz.*, Arjuna), my heart seems to break into pieces![22] Cruel, indeed, are the duties of Kshatriyas as laid down by the legislators, inasmuch as brave men, desirous of sovereignty scrupled not to shoot their weapons at even a child![23] O son of Gavalgana, tell me how so many warriors, accomplished in arms, slew that child who, though brought up in luxury, yet careered over the field so fearlessly![24] Tell me, O Sanjaya, how our warriors sported in battle with Subhadrā's son of immeasurable energy who had penetrated into our car-array![25]

"Sanjaya said,—'That which thou askest me, O king, *viz.*, the slaughter of Subhadrā's son, I will describe to thee in detail! Listen, O monarch, with attention![26] I will relate to thee how that youth, having penetrated into our ranks, sported with his weapons, and how the irresistible heroes of our army, all inspired by hope of victory, were afflicted by him.[27] Like the denizens of a forest abounding with plants and herbs and trees, when surrounded on all sides by a forest conflagration, the warriors of thy army were all filled with fear.'"[28]

SECTION XXXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Of fierce deeds in battle, and above all fatigue as proved by their eats, the five sons of Pāndu, with

Krishna, are incapable of being resisted by the very gods.[1] In righteousness, in deeds, in lineage, in intelligence, in achievements, in fame, in prosperity, there never was, and there never will be, another man so endued as Yudhisathira.[2] Devoted to Truth and righteousness, and with passions under control, king Yudhishthira, in consequence of his worship of the Brāhmanas and diverse other virtues of a similar nature, is always in the enjoyment of Heaven.[3] The Destroyer himself at the end of the *Yuga*, Jamadagni's valiant son (Rāma), and Bhimasena on his car,—these three, O king, are spoken of as equal.[4] Of Partha, the wielder of Gāndiva, who always achieveth his vows in battle, I do not see a becoming parallel on Earth.[5] Reverence for superiors, keeping counsels, humility, self-restraint, beauty of person, and bravery,—these six are ever present in Nakula.[6] In knowledge of scriptures, gravity, sweetness of temper, righteousness, and prowess, the heroic Sahadeva is equal to the Açwins themselves.[7] All those noble qualities that are in Krishna, all those that are in the Pāndavas, all that assemblage of qualities was to be seen in Abhimanyu singly![8] In firmness he was equal to Yudhishthira, and in conduct to Krishna; in feats he was the equal of Bhimasena of terrible deeds;[9] in beauty of person, in prowess, and in knowledge of scrptures, he was the equal of Dhananjaya. In humility he was equal to Sahadeva and Nakula.'[10]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I desire, O *Suta*, to hear in detail, how the invincible Abhimanyu, the son of Subhadrā, hath been slain on the field of battle!'"[11]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Be still, O king! Bear thy grief that is so intolerable! I will speak to thee of the great slaughter of thy kinsmen. Listen to it![12]

"'The preceptor, O king, had formed the great circular array. In it were placed all the kings (of our side) that are each equal to Cakra himself.[13] At the entrance were stationed all the princes possessed of solar effulgence. All of them had taken oaths (about standing by one another).[14] All of them had standards decked with gold. All of them were attired in red robes, and all had red ornaments.[15] All of them had red banners and all were adorned with garlands of gold. Smeared

with sandal-paste and other perfumed unguents, they were decked with floral wreaths.[16] Unitedly they rushed towards Arjuna's son, desirous of battle. Firm bowmen all, they numbered ten thousand.[17] Placing thy handsome grandson Lakshmana at their head, all of them, symphathising with one another in joy and grief, and emulating one another in feats of courage,[18] desiring to excell one another, and devoted to one another's good, they advanced to battle. Duryodhana, O monarch, was stationed in the midst of his forces.[19] And the king was surrounded by the mighty car-warriors Karna and Dusçāshana and Kripa, and had a white umbrella held over his head. And fanned with yak-tails, he looked resplendent like the chief of the celestials. And at the head of that army was the commander Drona looking like the rising Sun.*[20-21] And there stood the ruler of the Sindhus, of great beauty of person, and immovable like the cliff of Meru. Standing by the side of the ruler of the Sindhus and headed by Açwatthāman,[22] were, O king, thy thirty sons resembling the very gods. There also, on Jayadratha's flank, were those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the ruler of the Gandharvas, *i. e.*, the gamester (Cakuni), and Calya, and Bhuriçravas. Then commenced the battle, fierce and making the hair to stand on end, between thy warriors and those of the foe. And both sides fought, making death itself the goal.' "[23-24]

SECTION XXXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'The Pārthas then, headed by Bhimasena, approached that invincible array protected by Bharadwāja's son.[1] And Sātyaki, and Chekitāna, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, and Kuntibhoja of great prowess, and the mighty car-warrior Drupada,[2] and Arjuna's son (Abhimanyu), and Kshatradharman, and the valiant Vrihadkshatra, and Dhrishtaketu the ruler of the Chedis, and the twin sons of Mādri, (*viz.*, Nakula and Sahadeva), and Ghatotkacha,[3] and the powerful Yudhā-

* The first-half of the first line of 21 seems to be grammatically connected with 20.—T

manyu, and the unvanquished Cikhandin, and the irresistible Uttamaujas, and the mighty car-warrior Virāta,[4] and the five sons of Draupadi,—these all excited with wrath, and the valiant son of Çiçupāla, and the Kaikeyas of mighty energy, and the Srinjayas by thousands,[5]—these and others, accomplished in weapons and difficult of being resisted in battle, suddenly rushed, at the head of their respective followers, against Bharadwāja's son, from desire of battle.[6] The valiant son of Bharadwāja, however, fearlessly checked all those warriors, as soon as they came near, with a thick shower of arrows.[7] Like a mighty wave of waters coming against an impenetrable hill, or the surging sea itself approaching its bank, those warriors were dashed back by Drona.[8] And the Pāndavas, O king, afflicted by the shafts shot from Drona's bow, were unable to stay before him.[9] And the strength of Drona's arms that we saw was wonderful in the extreme, inasmuch as the Pānchālas and the Srinjayas failed to approach him.[10] Beholding Drona advancing in rage, Yudhishthira thought of diverse means for checking his progress.[11] At last regarding Drona incapable of being resisted by any one else, Yudhishthira placed that heavy and unbearable burden on the son of Subhadrā.[12] Addressing Abhimanyu, that slayer of hostile heroes, who was not inferior to Vāsudeva himself and whose energy was superior to that of Arjuna, the king said,[13]—O child, act in such a way that Arjuna, returning (from the *Samsaptakas)*, may not reprove us! We do not know how to break the circular array![14] Thyself, or Arjuna, or Krishna, or Praddyumna, can pierce that array! O mighty-armed one, no fifth person can be found (to achieve that feat)![15] O child, it behoveth thee, O Abhimanyu, to grant the boon that thy sires, thy maternal uncles, and all these troops ask of thee![16] Taking up thy arms quickly, destroy this array of Drona, else, Arjuna returning from the fight, will reprove us all![17]—

" 'Abhimanyu said,—Desiring victory to my sires, soon shall I in battle penetrate into that firm, fierce, and foremost of arrays formed by Drona![18] I have been taught by my father the method of (penetrating and) smiting this kind of array. I cannot, however, come out if any kind of danger overtake me![19]—

"'Yudhishthira said,—Break this array once, O foremost of warriors, and make a passage for us! All of us will follow thee in the track by which thou wilt go![20] In battle thou art equal to Dhananjaya himself! Seeing thee enter, we shall follow thee, protecting thee on all sides![21]—

"'Bhima said,—I myself will follow thee, and Dhrishtadyumna, and Sātyaki; and the Pānchālas, and the Prabhadrakas.[22] After the array will once have been broken by thee, we will enter it repeatedly and slay the foremost warriors within it![23]—

"'Abhimanyu said,—I will penetrate into this invincible array of Drona, like an insect filled with rage entering a blazing fire.[24] Today I will do that which will be beneficial to both races (*viz.*, my sire's and my mother's). I will do that which will please my maternal uncle as also my father![25] Today all creatures will behold large bodies of hostile soldiers continually slaughtered by myself, an unaided child![26] If anybody, encountering me, escapes today with life, I shall not then regard myself begotten by Pārtha and born of Subhadrā![27] If on a single car I cannot in battle cut off the whole Kshatriya race into eight fragments, I will not regard myself the son of Arjuna![28]—

"'Yudhishthira said,—Since, protected by these tigers among men, these great bowmen endued with fierce might, these warriors that resemble the *Sādhyas*, the *Rudras*, or the *Maruts*, or are like the *Vasus*, or Agni, or Āditya himself in prowess, thou venturest to pierce the invincible array of Drona, and since thou speakest so, let thy strength, O son of Subhadrā, increase![29-30]—

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing these words of Yudhishthira, Abhimanyu ordered his charioteer Sumitra, saying,—Quickly urge the steeds towards Drona's army!—'"[31]

SECTION XXXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing these words of the intelligent Yudhishthira, the son of Subhadrā, O Bhārata, urged his charioteer towards Drona's array.[1] The charioteer, urged by

him with the words—*Proceed—Proceed*,—replied unto Abhimanyu, O king, in these words:[2]—O thou that art blest with length of days, heavy is the burthen that hath been placed upon thee by the Pāndavas! Ascertaining by thy judgment as to whether thou art able to bear it or not, thou shouldst then engage in battle![3] The preceptor Drona is a master of superior weapons and accomplished (in battle)! Thou, however, hast been brought up in great luxury, and art unused to battle!*[4]—

"'Hearing these words, Abhimanyu replied unto his charioteer, saying with a laugh,—O charioteer, who is this Drona? What, again, is this vast assemblage of Kshatriyas?[5] Cakra himself on his Airāvat and aided by all the celestials, I would encounter in battle. I do not feel the slightest anxiety about all these Kshatriyas today![6] This hostile army doth not come up to even a sixteenth part of myself! O son of a *Suta*, getting my maternal uncle Vishnu himself, the conqueror of the universe,[7] or my sire Arjuna, as an antagonist in battle, fear would not enter my heart!—Abhimanyu then, thus disregarding those words of his charioteer,[8] urged the latter, saying,—Go with speed towards the army of Drona!—Thus commanded, the charioteer, with a heart scarcely cheerful, urged Abhimanyu's three year old steeds decked with golden trappings. Those coursers, urged by Sumitra towards Drona's army,[9-10] rushed towards Drona himself, O king, with great speed and prowess.† Beholding him coming (towards them) in that way, all the Kauravyas, headed by Drona, advanced against him, as, indeed, the Pāndavas followed him behind.[11] Then Arjuna's son, superior to Arjuna himself, cased in golden mail and owning an excellent standard that bore the device of a *Karnikāra* tree, fearlessly encountered, from desire of battle, those warriors headed by Drona, like an infant lion

---

* The last half of the second line of 4 is vicious as occurring in the Bengal texts. The correct reading is *ayuddhā-viçāradas*.—T.

† The Bombay edition reads *Mahāvega-parākramam*. This is vicious. The Bengal texts rightly make it an adjective of *Vājinas* in the previous line.—T.

assailing a herd of elephants.[12] Those warriors then, filled with joy, began to strike Abhimanyu while he endeavoured to pierce their array.* And for a moment an agitation took place there like to the eddy that is seen in the ocean where the current of Gangā mixes with it.[13] The battle, O king, that commenced there, between those struggling heroes striking one another, became fierce and terrible.[14] And during the progress of that awful battle, Arjuna's son, in the very sight of Drona, breaking that array, penetrated into it.[15] Then large bodies of elephants and steeds and cars and infantry, filled with joy, encompassed that mighty warrior after he had thus penetrated into the midst of the foe, and commenced to smite him.[16] [Causing the Earth to resound] with the noise of diverse musical instruments, with shouts and slaps of arm-pits and roars, with yells and leonine shouts, with exclamations of—*Wait,—Wait,*[17]—with fierce confused voices, with cries of—*Do not go, Wait, Come to me,*—with repeated exclamations of—*This one,—It is I,—The foe,*[18]—with the grunts of elephants, with the tinkling of bells and ornaments, with bursts of laughter, and the clatter of horse-hoofs and car-wheels, the (Kaurava) warriors rushed at the son of Arjuna.[19] That mighty hero, however, endued with great lightness of hands and having a knowledge of the vital parts of the body, quickly shooting weapons capable of penetrating into the very vitals, slew those advancing warriors.[20] Slaughtered by means of sharp shafts of diverse kinds, those warriors became perfectly helpless ; and like insects falling upon a blazing fire, they continued to fall upon Abhimanyu on the field of battle.[21] And Abhimanyu strewed the earth with their bodies and diverse limbs of their bodies like priests strewing the altar at a sacrifice with blades of *Kuça* grass.[22] And Arjuna's son quickly cut off by thousands the arms of those warriors. And some of these were cased in fences made of iguana skin, and some held bows and shafts. And some held swords or shields or iron

* The Bengal reading *Te viçantam mudā yuktās* seems to me better than the Bombay reading *Te vingçati pade yattās*, although Nilakantha prefers the latter.—T.

hooks or reins; and some, lances or battle-axes. And some held maces or iron-balls or spears; and some, rapiers and crows and axes. And some grasped short arrows, or spiked maces, or darts, or shafts, or *Kampanas*. And some had goads and prodigious conchs; and some had bearded darts and *Kacha-grahas*. And some had mallets and some other kinds of missiles. And some had nooses, and some heavy clubs, and some brick-bats. And all those arms were decked with armlets and laved with delightful perfumes and unguents.[23-26] And with those arms dyed with gore and looking bright, the field of battle became beautiful, as if strewn, O sire, with five-headed snakes slain by Garuda.[27] And Phālguna's son also scattered over the field of battle countless heads of foes, heads graced with beautiful noses and faces and locks, without pimples, and adorned with ear-rings. Blood flowed from those heads copiously, and the nether lips in all were bit with wrath. Adorned with beautiful garlands and crowns and turbans and pearls and gems, and possessed of splendour equal to that of the Sun or the Moon, they seemed to be like lotuses severed from their stalks. Fragrant with many perfumes, while life was in them they could speak words both agreeable and beneficial.[28-30] Diverse cars, well equipt, and looking like the vapoury edifices in the welkin, with shafts in front and excellent bamboo poles and looking beautiful with the standards set up on them,[31] were deprived of their *Janghas*, and *Kuvaras*, and *Nemis*, and *Daçanas*, and wheels, and standards, and terraces. And the utensils of war in them were all broken.*[32] And the rich cloths with which they were overlaid, were blown away, and the warriors on them were slain by thousands. Mangling everything before him with his shafts, Abhimanyu was seen coursing on all sides.†[33] With his keen-eged weapons, he cut into pieces elephant-warriors, and elephants with standards and hooks and banners, and quivers and coats of mail, and girths and neck-ropes and blankets, and bells and trunks and tusk-ends, as also the foot-soldiers that protected those elephants from

---

* *Janghas*, *&c.*, are diverse limbs of cars used in battle.—T.

† I read both 32 and 33 as in the Bombay text.—T.

behind.[34-35] And many steeds of the Vanāyu, the hilly, the Kāmvoja, and the Vālhika breeds, with tails and ears and eyes motionless and fixed, possessed of great speed, well-trained,[36] and ridden by accomplished warriors armed with swords and lances, were seen to be deprived of the excellent ornaments on their heads as also of their beautiful tails.*[37] And many lay with tongues lolling out and eyes detached from their sockets, and entrails and livers drawn out. And the riders on their backs lay lifeless by their sides. And the rows of bells that adorned them were all torn. Strewn over the field thus, they caused great delight to *Rākshasas* and beasts of prey.[38] With coats of mail and other leathern armour (casing their limbs) cut open, they weltered in excreta ejected by themselves. Thus slaying many foremost of steeds of thy army, Abhimanyu looked resplendent.[39] Alone achieving the most difficult feats like the inconcievable Vishnu himself in days of old, Abhimanyu crushed thy vast host of three kinds of forces (cars, elephants, and steeds),[40] like the Three-eyed (Mahādeva) of immseasurable energy crushing the terrible *Asura* host. Indeed, Arjuna's son, having achieved in battle feats incapable of being borne by his foes,[41] everywhere mangled large divisions of foot-soldiers belonging to thy army. Beholding then thy host extensively slaughtered by Subhadrā's son single-hand with his whetted shafts like the *Asura* host by Skanda (the celestial generalissimo), thy warriors and thy sons cast vacant looks on all sides.[42-43] Their mouths became dry; their eyes became restless; their bodies were covered with sweat; and their hair stood on end. Hopeless of vanquishing their foe, thy set their hearts on flying away from the field.[44] Desirous of saving their lives, they called one another by their names and the names of their families, and abandoning their wounded sons and sires and brothers and kinsmen and relatives by marriage lying around on the field, they endeavoured to fly away, urging their steeds and elephants (to their utmost speed).' "[45]

---

* *Chārumukután* (Beng.) is better than *Chāmaramukhān*, (Bom.)—T.

SECTION XXXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding his army routed by Subhadrā's son of immeasurable energy, Duryodhana, filled with rage, himself proceeded against the former.[1] Seeing the king turn back towards Subhadrā's son in battle, Drona, addressing all the (Kaurava) warriors, said,—Rescue the king.*[2] Before us, in our very sight, the valiant Abhimanyu is slaying all he aims at. Rush ye, therefore, speedily against him, without fear, and protect the Kuru king![3]—Then many grateful and mighty warriors, having Duryodhana's good at heart and always graced with victory, inspired with fear, surrounded thy son.[4] And Drona, and Drona's son, and Kripa, and Karna, and Kritavarman, and Suvala's son, and Vrihadvala, and the ruler of the Madras, and Bhuri, and Bhuriçravas, and Cala,[5] and Paurava, and Vrishasena, shooting sharp shafts, checked Subhadrā's son by means of those arrowy showers.[6] Confounding him with those showers of shafts, they rescued Duryodhana. The son of Arjuna, however, brooked not that act of snatching a morsel from his mouth.[7] Covering those mighty car-warriors, their charioteers, and steeds with thick showers of arrows and causing them to turn back, the son of Subhadrā uttered a leonine roar.[8] Hearing that roar of his resembling that of a lion hungering after prey, those angry car-warriors headed by Drona, brooked it not.[9] Encompassing him on all sides, O sire, with a large body of cars, they shot at him showers of diverse kinds of arrows.[10] Thy grandson, however, cut them off in the welkin (before any of them could reach him) by means of sharp shafts, and then pierced all of them with his shafts. That feat of his seemed exceedingly wonderful,[11] Provoked by him thus by means of those shafts of his that resembled snakes of virulent poison, they surrounded that unretreating son of Subhadrā, desirous of slaying him.[12] That sea of (Kaurava) troops, however, O bull of Bharata's race, the son of Arjuna singly held in check by means of his shafts like the continent

---

* The second half of the second line of 2 is vicious in the Bengal texts.—T.

resisting the surging ocean.[13] And among those heroes thus fighting with and striking one another, *viz.*, Abhimanyu and his on one side and all those warriors together on the other, none turned back from the field.[14] In that dreadful and fierce battle Dussaha pierced Abhimanyu with nine shafts.[15] And Dusçāsana pierced him with a dozen ; and Caradwat's son Kripa, with three. And Drona pierced him with seventeen shafts, each resembling a snake of virulent poison.[16] And Vivingçatī pierced him with seventy shafts, and Kritavarman with seven. And Vrihadvala pierced him with eight, and Açwtthāman with seven shafts.[17] And Bhuriçravas pierced him with three shafts and the ruler of the Madras with six. And Cakuni pierced him with two, and king Duryodhana with three shafts.[18] The valiant Abhimanyu, however, O king, seemingly dancing on his car, pierced each of those warriors in return with three shafts.[19] Then Abhimanyu, filled with rage in consequence of thy sons endeavouring to frighten him thus, displayed the wonderful strength he had acquired from culture and practice.[20] Borne by his well-broken steeds endued with the speed of Garuda or the Wind, and thoroughly obedient to the behests of him who held their reins, he quickly checked the heir of Açmaka.[21] Staying before him, the handsome son of Açmaka, endued with great might, pierced him with ten shafts and, addressing him, said,—*Wait,—Wait.*[22] Abhimanyu then, with ten shafts, cut off the former's steeds and charioteer and standard and two arms and bow and head, and caused them to fall down on the earth, smiling the while.[23] After the heroic ruler of the Açmakas had thus been slain by the son of Subhadrā, the whole of his force wavered and began to fly away from the field.[24] Then Karna, and Kripa, and Drona, and Drona's son, and the ruler of the Gāndhāras, and Cala and Calya, and Bhuriçravas, and Krātha, and Somadatta, and Vivingçati,[25] and Vrishasena, and Sushena, and Kundavedhin, and Pratarddana, and Vrindāraka, and Lilithya, and Pravāhu, and Dirghalochana,[26] and the angry Duryodhana, showered their arrows upon him. Then Abhimanyu, excessively pierced by those great bowmen with their straight shafts,[27] sped a shaft at Karna which was capable of piercing through every armour and body. That shaft, piercing

through Karna's coat of mail and then his body,[28] entered the earth like a snake piercing through an ant-hill. Deeply pierced, Karna felt great pain and became perfectly helpless.[29] Indeed, Karna began to tremble in that battle like a hill during an earth-quake. Then with three other shafts of great sharpness, the mighty son of Arjuna, excited with rage, slew those three warriors, *viz.*, Sushena, Dirghalochana, and Kundavedhin. Meanwhile, Karna (recovering from the shock) pierced Abhimanyu with five and twenty shafts.[30-31] And Açwathāman struck him with twenty, and Kritavarman with seven. Covered all over with arrows, that son of Cakra's son, filled with rage,[32] careered over the field. And he was regarded by all the troops as Yama's self armed with the noose. He then scattered over Calya, who happened to be near him, thick showers of arrows.[33] That mighty-armed warrior then uttered loud shouts, frightening thy troops therewith. Meanwhile, Calya, pierced by Abhimanyu accomplished in weapons, with straight shafts penetrating into his very vitals,[34] sat down on the terrace of his car and swooned away. Beholding Calya thus pierced by the celebrated son of Subhadrā,[35] all the troops fled away in the very sight of Bharadwāja's son. Seeing that mighty-armed warrior, *viz.*, Calya, thus covered with shafts of golden wings, thy army fled away like a herd of deer afflicted by a lion.[36] And Abhimanyu, glorified by the *Pitris*, the gods, and *Chāranas*, and *Siddhas*, as also by diverse classes of creatures on the Earth, with praises about (his heroism and skill in) battle, looked resplendent like a sacrificial fire drenched with clarified butter.' "[37]

SECTION XXXVIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'While Arjuna's son was thus grinding, by means of his straight arrows, our foremost of bowmen, what warriors of my army endeavoured to check him ?'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Hear, O king, of the splendid prowess in battle of the youthful Abhimanyu while engaged in breaking the car-ranks (of the Kauravas) protected by the son of Bharadwāja himself ![2]

"'Beholding the ruler of the Madras disabled in battle by Subhadrā's son with his shafts, the younger brother of Calya, filled with wrath, advanced against Abhimanyu, scattering his shafts.[3] Arjuna's son, however, endued with great lightness of hand, cut off his antagonist's head and neck, arms and feet, his four steeds, umbrella, standard, and charioteer, his tripple bamboo-pole, his (bed on the car), his car-wheels, his yoke, and shafts, and quiver, and car-bottom, by means of his arrows, as also his banner, and every other implement of battle with which his car was equipt. So quick were his movements that none could obtain a sight of his person. Deprived of life, that foremost and chief of all ornaments of battle fell down on the earth,[4-6] like a huge hill uprooted by a mighty tempest. His followers then, struck with fear, fled away in all directions.[7] Beholding that feat of the son of Arjuna, all creatures were highly gratified, and cheered him, O Bhārata, with loud shouts of—*Excellent, Excellent !*[8]—'

"'After Calya's brother had thus been slain, many followers of his, loudly proclaming their families, places of residence, and names, rushed against Arjuna's son, filled with rage and armed with diverse weapons. Some of them were on cars, some on steeds, and some on elephants; and others advanced on foot. And all of them were endued with fierce might.[9-10] And they rushed frightening the son of Arjuna with the loud whizz of their arrows, the deep roar of their car-wheels, their fierce whoops and shouts and cries, their leonine roars, the loud twang of their bowstrings, and the slaps of their palms. And they said,—*Thou shalt not escape us with life today !*[11-12]— Hearing them say so, the son of Subhadrā, smiling the while, pierced with his shafts those amongst them that had pierced him first.[13] Displaying diverse weapans of beautiful look and great celerity, the heroic son of Arjuna battled mildly with them.[14] Those weapons that he had received from Vāsudeva, and those that he had received from Dhananjaya, Abhimanyu displayed in the very same way as Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya.[15] Disregarding the heavy burthen he had taken upon himself and casting off all fear, he repeatedly shot his arrows. No interval, again, could be noticed between his aiming and letting off an

arrow.[16] Only his trembling bow drawn to a circle could be seen on every side, looking like the blazing disc of the autumnal Sun.[17] And the twang of his bow, and the slap of his palms, O Bhārata, were heard to resemble the roar of clouds charged with thunder.[18] Modest, wrathful, reverential to superiors, and exceedingly handsome, the son of Subhadrā, out of regard for the hostile heroes, fought with them mildly.[19] Commencing mildly, O king, he gradually became fierce, like the illustrious maker of the day when autumn comes after the season of the rains is over.[20] Like the Sun himself shedding his rays, Abhimanyu, filled with wrath, shot hundreds and thosuands of whetted arrows furnished with golden wings.[21] In the very sight of Bharadwāja's son, that celebrated warrior covered the car-division of the Kaurava army with diverse kinds of arrows.*[22] Thereupon that army, thus afflicted by Abhimanyu with his shafts, turned its back on the field.' "[23]

SECTION XXXIX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'My heart, O Sanjaya, is inspired with different sentiments, *viz.*, shame and gratification, upon hearing that Subhadrā's son singly held in check the whole army of my son.[1] O son of Gavalgana, tell me everything once more in detail about the encounter of the youthful Abhimanyu which seems to have been pretty like Skanda's encounter with the *Asura* host!'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'I will relate to thee that fearful encounter, that fierce battle, as it took place between one and the many.[3] Mounted upon his car, Abhimanyu, with great daring, showered

---

* I omit the names as they occur in the text. These are (1) *Kshurapras*, *i. e.*, arrows sharp as razors, (2) *Vatsadantas*, *i. e.*, arrows having heads like a calf-tooth; (3) *Vipāthas*, *i. e.*, long arrows having stout bodies; (4) *Nārāchas*, also long arrows; *Ardha-chandràbhais*, *i. e.*, looking like shafts furnished with heads of the form of the half-moon; it is an adjective qualifying *Nàráchais*; (5) *Anjalikas* were broad-headed shafts.—T.

his arrows on the warriors of thy army mounted on their cars, all of whom were chastisers of foes, endued with great courage![4] Careering with great activity like a circle of fire, he pierced Drona, and Karna, and Kripa, and Calya and Drona's son, and Kritavarman of the Bhoja race, and Vrihadvala, and Duryodhana, and Somadatti, and the mighty Cakuni, and diverse kings and diverse princes, and diverse bodies of troops.[5-6] While engaged in slaying his foes by means of superior weapons, the valiant son of Subhadrā, endued with mighty energy, seemed, O Bhārata, to be present everywhere![7] Beholding that conduct of Subhadrā's son of immeasurable energy, thy troops trembled repeatedly.[8] Seeing that warrior of great proficiency in battle, Bhardwāja's son of great wisdom, with eyes expanded in joy, quickly came towards Kripa, and addressing him, said,[9] as if crushing (by that speech of his) the very vitals of thy son, O Bhārata, the following words:[10]—Yonder cometh the youthful son of Subhadrā at the head of the Pārthas, delighting all his friends, and king Yudhishthira,[11] and Nakula, and Sahadeva, and Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, and all his kinsmen, and relatives by marriage, and all who are watching the battle as spectators without taking any part in it![12] I do not regard any bowman to be his equal in battle! If only he entertains the wish, he can slay this vast host! It seems, that for some reason or other, he doth not entertain that wish![13]—Hearing these words of Drona, so expressive of the gratification he felt, thy son, enraged with Abhimanyu, looked at Drona, faintly smiling the while.[14] Indeed, Duryodhana said unto Karna and king Vālhika and Dusçāsana and the ruler of the Madras and the many other mighty car-warriors of his army, these words:[15]—The preceptor of the entire order of Kshatriyas,—he that is the foremost of all conversant with *Brahma*, doth not, from stupefaction, wish to slay this son of Arjuna![16] None can, in battle, escape the preceptor with life, not even the Destroyer himself if the latter advanceth against the preceptor as a foe! What, O friend, shall we say then of any mortal? I say this truly![17] This one is the son of Arjuna, and Arjuna is the preceptor's disciple. It is for this that the preceptor protecteth this youth! Disciples and sons and their

sons are always dear to virtuous people.*[18] Protected by Drona, the youthful son of Arjuna regardeth himself valorous. He is only a fool entertaining a high opinion of himself! Crush him, therefore, without delay![19]—Thus addressed by the Kuru king, those warriors, O monarch, excited with rage and desirous of slaying their foe, rushed, in the very sight of Drona, at the son of (Subhadrā) that daughter of the Sātwata race.[20] Dusçāsana, in particular, that tiger among the Kurus, hearing those words of Duryodhana, answered the latter, saying,[21]—O monarch, I tell thee that even *I* will slay this one in the very sight of the Pāndavas and before the eyes of the Pānchālas![22] I shall certainly devour the son of Subhadrā today like *Rāhu* swallowing *Surya!*—And once more addressing the Kuru king loudly, Dusçāsana said,[23]—Hearing that Subhadrā's son hath been slain by me, the two Krishnas, who are exceedingly vain, will, without doubt, go to the region of the departed spirits, leaving this world of men![24] Hearing then of the death of the two Krishnas, it is evident that the other sons born of Pāndu's wives, with all their friends, will, in course of a single day, cast away their lives from despair![25] It is evident, therefore, that this one foe of thine being slain, all thy foes will be slain! Wish me well, O king, even *I* will slay this foe of thine![26]—Having said these words, O king, thy son Dusçāsana, filled with rage and uttering a loud roar, rushed against the son of Subhadrā and covered him with showers of arrows.[27] Abhimanyu then, O chastiser of foes, received that son of thine thus advancing upon him wrathfully, with six and twenty arrows of sharp points.[28] Dusçāsana, however, filled with rage, and looking like an infuriate elephant, fought desperately with Abhimanyu the son of Subhadrā in that battle.[29] Both of them masters in car-fight, they fought on, describing beautiful circles with their cars, one of them to the left and the other to the right.[30] The warriors then, with their *Panavas* and *Mridangas* and *Dundubhis* and *Krakachas* and great *Anakas* and *Bheris* and *Jharjharas*, caused a deafening noise

* The Bengal texts read *Dharminam*, the Bombay reading is *Dharmindm.*—T.

mingled with leonine roars, such as arise from the great receptacle of salt waters.' "*[31]

SECTION XL.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then the intelligent Abhimanyu, with limbs mangled with arrows, smilingly addressed his foe Dusçāsana stationed before him, saying,[1]—By good luck it is that I behold in battle that vain hero arrived before me, who is cruel, who hath cast away all righteousness, and who bawleth out lustily his own praises![2] In the assembly (of the Kurus) and in the hearing of king Dhritarāshtra, thou hadst, with thy harsh speeches, angered king Yudhishthira![3] Relying on the deception of the dice and the skill (therein) of Suvala's son, thou hadst also, maddened by success, addressed many delirious speeches to Bhima![†][4] In consequence of the anger of those illustrious persons, thou art at last about to obtain the fruit of that conduct of thine![‡] O thou of wicked understanding, obtain thou without delay the fruit of the robbery of other people's possessions, of wrathfulness, of thy hatred of peace, of avarice, of ignorance, of hostilities (with kinsmen), of injustice and persecution, of depriving my sires, those fierce bowmen, of their kingdom, and of thy own fierce temper! I shall today chastise thee with my arrows in the sight of the whole army![5-7] Today I shall in battle disburden myself of that wrath which I cherish against thee! I shall today free myself of the debt I owe to the angry Krishnā and to my sire who always craveth for an opportunity to chastise thee![8] O Kauravya, today I shall free myself of the debt I owe to Bhima! With life thou shalt not escape me, if, indeed, thou dost not abandon the battle![9]—Having said these words, that mighty-armed warrior, that slayer of hostile heroes, aimed a shaft endued with the splendour of Yama or of Agni or of the Wind-god,

---

* These are the names of diverse kinds of drums small and large.—T.

† I adopt the Bombay reading of the 1st line of 4.—T.

‡ The fruit being the present encounter with Abhimanyu in which Dusçāsana, according to Abhimanyu, shall have to lay down his life.—T.

and capable of despatching Dusçāsana to the other world.[10] Quickly approaching Dusçāsana's bosom, that shaft fell upon his shoulder-joint and penetrated into his body up to the very wings like a snake into an ant-hill.[11] And soon Abhimanyu once more struck him with five and twenty arrows whose touch resembled that of fire and which were sped from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch.[12] Deeply pierced and greatly pained, Dusçāsana sat down on the terrace of his car, and was, O king, overtaken by a swoon.[13] Afflicted thus with the arrows of Subhadrā's son and deprived of his senses, Dusçāsana was speedly borne away from the midst of the fight by his charioteer.[14] Beholding this, the Pāndavas, the five sons of Draupadi, Virāta, the Pānchālas, and the Kekayas, uttered leonine shouts.[15] And the troops of the Pāndavas, filled with joy, caused diverse kinds of musical instruments to be beat and blown.[16] Beholding that feat of Subhadrā's son they laughed with joy. Seeing that implacable and proud foe of theirs thus vanquished,[17] those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the (five) sons of Draupadi who had on their banners the images of Yama and Maruta and Cakra and the twin Açwins,[18] as also Sātyaki, and Chekitāna, and Dhrishtadyumna, and Cikhandin, and the Kekayas, and Dhrishtaketu, and the Matsyas, and the Pānchālas, and the Srinjayas,[19] and the Pāndavas, headed by Yudhishthira, were filled with joy. And all of them rushed with speed, desirous of piercing Drona's array.[20] Then a dreadful battle took place between thy warriors and those of the foe. All of them were unretreating heroes and inspired by desire of victory.[21] During the progress of that dreadful encounter, Duryodhana, O monarch, addressing the son of Rādhā, said,[22]—Behold, the heroic Dusçāsana, who resembleth the scorching Sun and who was hitherto slaying the foe in battle, hath at last himself succumbed to Abhimanyu![23] The Pāndavas also, filled with rage and looking fierce like mighty lions, are rushing towards us, desirous of rescuing the son of Subhadrā![24]—Thus addressed, Karna, filled with rage, and desirous of doing good to thy son, rained showers of sharp arrows on the invincible Abhimanyu.[25] And the heroic Karna, as if in contempt of his antagonist, also pierced the latter's

followers on the field of battle, with many excellent shafts of great sharpness.[26] The high-souled Abhimanyu, however, O king, desirous of proceeding against Drona, quickly pierced Rādhā's son with three and seventy shafts.[27] No car-warrior of thy army succeeded at that time in obstructing the progress, towards Drona, of Abhimanyu, who was the son of Indra's son and who was afflicting all the foremost car-warriors of the Kaurava host.[28] Then Karna, that most honored of all bowmen, desirous of obtaining victory, pierced the son of Subhadrā with hundreds of arrows, displaying his best weapons.[29] That foremost of all persons conversant with weapons, that valiant disciple of Rāma, by means of his weapons, thus afflicted Abhimanyu who was incapable of being defeated by foes.[30] Though afflicted in battle by Rādhā's son with showers of weapons, still Subhadrā's son who resembled a very celestial (for prowess) felt no pain.[31] With his straight shafts whetted on stone and furnished with sharp points, the son of Arjuna, cutting off the bows of many heroic warriors, began to afflict Karna in return.[32] With shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison and shot from his bow drawn to a circle, Abhimanyu quickly cut off the umbrella, the standard, the charioteer, and the steeds of Karna, smiling the while.[33] Karna then sped five straight arrows at Abhimanyu. The son of Phālguna, however, received them fearlessly.[34] Endued with great valour and courage, the latter then, in a moment, with only a single arrow, cut off Karna's bow and standard and caused them to drop down on the ground.[35] Beholding Karna in such distress, his younger brother, drawing the bow with great force, speedily proceeded against the son of Subhadrā.[36] The Pārthas then, and their followers, uttered loud shouts and beat their musical instruments and applauded the son of Subhadrā [for his heroism].' "[37]

SECTION XLI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then the younger brother of Karna, uttering loud roars, bow in hand, and repeatedly stretching the bowstring, quickly placed himself between those two illustrious warriors.[1] And Karna's brother, with ten shafts, pierced

the invincible Abhimanyu and his umbrella and standard and charioteer and steeds, smiling the while.[2] Beholding Abhimanyu thus afflicted with those arrows although he had achieved those superhuman feats after the manner of his sire and grandsire, the warriors of thy army were filled with delight.[3] Then Abhimanyu, forcibly bending the bow and smiling the while, with one winged arrow cut off his antagonist's head. That head, severed from the trunk, fell down on the earth.[4] Beholding his brother slain, and overthrown like a *Karnikāra* tree shaken and thrown down by the wind from the mountain-top, Karna, O monarch, was filled with pain.[5] Meanwhile, the son of Subhadrā, causing Karna by means of his arrows to turn away from the field, quickly rushed against the other great bowmen.[6] Then Abhimanyu of fierce energy and great fame, filled with wrath, broke that host of diverse forces abounding with elephants and steeds and cars and infantry.[7] As regards Karna, afflicted by Abhimanyu with countless shafts, he fled away from the field, borne by swift steeds. The Kaurava array then broke.[8] When the welkin was covered with Abhimanyu's shafts like flights of locusts or thick showers of rain, nothing, O monarch, could be distinguished.[9] Amongst thy warriors thus slaughtered by Abhimanyu with sharp shafts, none, O monarch, stayed any longer on the field of battle except the ruler of the Sindhus.[10] Then that bull among men, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, blowing his conch, speedily fell upon the Bhārata host, O bull of Bharata's race.[11] Like a burning brand thrown into the midst of a heap of dry grass, Arjuna's son began to consume his foes, quickly careering through the Kaurava army.[12] Having pierced through their array, he mangled cars and elephants and steeds and human beings by means of his sharp shafts, and caused the field of battle to teem with headless trunks.[13] Cut off by means of excellent arrows sped from the bow of Subhadrā's son, the Kaurava warriors fled away, slaying, as they fled, their own comrades before them.[14] Those fierce arrows, of terrible effect, whetted on stone and countless in number, slaying car-warriors and elephants and steeds, fell fast on the field.[15] Arms, decked with *Angadas* and other ornaments of gold, cut off

from trunks, lay scattered about, with maces and other weapons in grasp and hands cased in leathern fences.[16] And arrows, and bows, and scimitars, and bodies and heads decked with ear-rings and floral wreaths, lay in thousands on the field.[17] Obstructed with *Upashkaras* and *Adhishthānas* and long poles, as also with crushed *Akshas* and broken wheels and yokes, numbering thousands,*[18] with darts and bows and swords and fallen standards, and with shields and bows and arrows lying all about,[19] with the bodies, O monarch, of slain Kshatriyas and steeds and elephants, the field of battle, looking exceedingly fierce, soon became impassable.[20] The noise made by the princes as they called upon one another while slaughtered by Abhimanyu, became defeaning and enhanced the fears of the timid.[21] That noise, O chief of the Bharatas, filled all the points of the compass. The son of Subhadrā rushed against the (Kaurava) troops, slaying foremost of car-warriors and steeds and elephants.[22] Quickly consuming his foes, like a fire sporting in the midst of a heap of dry grass, the son of Arjuna was seen careering through the midst of the Bhārata army.[23] Encompassed as he was by our troops and covered with dust, none of us could obtain a sight of that warrior when, O Bhārata, he was careeing over the field in all directions, cardinal and subsidiary.[24] And he took the lives of steeds and elephants and human warriors, O Bhārata, almost incessantly. And soon after we saw him (come out of the press). Indeed, O monarch, we beheld him then scorching his foes like the meridian Sun (scorching everything with his rays). Equal to Vāsava himself in battle, that son of Vāsava's son, *viz.*, Abhimanyu, looked resplendent in the midst of the (hostile) army.'"[25]

SECTION XLII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'A mere child in years, brought up in great luxury, proud of the strength of his arms, accomplished in battle, endued with great heroism, the perpetuator of his race, and prepared to lay down his life,[1] when Abhimanyu

* These are particular limbs of cars.—T.

penetrated into the Kaurava army, borne on his three year old steeds of proud mettle, was there anybody in Yudhishthira's army, any great warrior, that followed the son of Arjuna ?'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Yudhishthira, and Bhimasena, and Cikhandin, and Sātyaki, and the twins Nakula and Sahadeva, and Dhrishtadyumna, and Virāta, and Drupada, and Kekaya,[3] and Dhristaketu, all filled with wrath, and the Matsya warriors, rushed to battle. Indeed, Abhimanyu's sires, accompanied by his maternal uncles,—those smiters of foes,—arrayed in order of battle, rushed by the self-same path that Abhimanyu had created, desirous of rescuing him. Beholding those rushing heroes, thy troops turned away from the fight.[4-5] Seeing then that vast army of thy son turning away from the fight, thy son-in-law of great energy rushed to rally them.[6] Indeed, king Jayadratha, the son of the ruler of the Sindhus, checked, with all their followers, the Pārthas desirous of rescuing their son.[7] That fierce and great bowman, *viz.*, the son of Vriddhakshatra, invoking into existence his celestial weapons, resisted the Pāndavas, like an elephant sporting in a low land !'*[8]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I think, O Sanjaya, that heavy was the burthen thrown upon the ruler of the Sindhus inasmuch as, alone, he had to resist the angry Pāndavas desirous of rescuing their son ![9] Exceedingly wonderful, I think, was the might and heroism of the ruler of the Sindhus. Tell me what that high-souled warrior's prowess was and how he accomplished that foremost of feats ![10] What gifts did he make, what libations had he poured, what sacrifices had he performed, what ascetic austerities had he well undergone, in consequence of which, single-handed, he succeeded in checking the Pārthas excited with wrath ?'[11]

"Sanjaya said,—'On the occasion of the ravishment of Draupadi, Jayadratha was vanquished by Bhimasena. From a keen sense of his humiliation, the king practised the severest of ascetic austerities, desirous of a boon.[12] Restraining his

---

* *Pravanādiva* is explained by Nilakantha as *nimnadeçam prāpya.* The meaning seems to be, as I have put it, "like an elephant in a low land, *i. e.*, land covered with mud and water.—T.

senses from all objects dear to them, bearing hunger, thirst, and heat, he reduced his body till his swollen veins became visible.[13] Uttering the eternal words of the *Veda*, he paid his adorations to the god Mahādeva. That illustrious Deity, always inspired with compassion for his devotees, at last became kind towards him.[14] Indeed, Hara, appearing in a dream unto the son of the ruler of the Sindhus, addressed him, saying,—Solicit the boon thou desirest! I am gratified with thee, O Jayadratha! What dost thou desire?[15]—Thus addressed by Mahādeva, Jayadratha the ruler of the Sindhus bowed down unto him and said with joined hands and restrained soul,[16]—Alone, on a single car, I shall check in battle all the sons of Pāndu, endued though they are with terrible energy and prowess!—Even this, O Bhārata, was the boon he solicited.[17] Thus solicited, that foremost of deities said unto Jayadratha,—O amiable one, I give thee the boon. Excepting Dhananjaya the son of Prithā,[18] thou shalt in battle check the four other sons of Pāndu!—So be it,—said Jayadratha unto that Lord of the gods and then awoke, O monarch, from his slumbers.[19] In consequence of that boon which he had received and of the strength also of his celestial weapons, Jayadratha, single-handed, held in check the entire army of the Pāndavas![20] The twang of his bowstring and the slaps of his palms inspired the hostile Kshatriyas with fear, filling thy troops, at the same time, with delight.[21] And the Kshatriyas (of the Kuru army), beholding that the burthen was taken up by the ruler of the Sindhus, rushed with loud shouts, O monarch, to that part of the field where Yudhishthira's army was.' "[22]

SECTION XLIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thou askest me, O monarch, about the prowess of the ruler of the Sindhus. Listen to me as I describe in detail how he fought with the Pāndavas![1] Large steeds of the Sindhu breed, well trained and fleet as the wind, and obedient to the commands of the charioteer, bore him (on that occasion).[2] His car, duly equipt, looked like a vapoury edifice in the welkin. His standard, bearing the

device of a large boar in silver, looked exceedingly beautiful.[3] With his white umbrella, and banners, and the yak tails with which he was fanned,—regal indications these,—he shone like the Moon himself in the firmament.[4] His car-fence made of iron was decked with pearls and diamonds and gems and gold. And it looked resplendent like the firmament bespangled with luminous bodies.[5] Drawing his large bow and scattering countless shafts, he once more filled up that array in those places where openings had been made by the son of Arjuna.[6] And he pierced Sātyaki with three arrows, and Vrikodara with eight; and having pierced Dhrishtadyumna with sixty arrows he pierced Drupada with five sharp ones, and Cikhandin with ten. Piercing then the Kaikeyas with five and twenty arrows, Jayadratha pierced each of the five sons of Draupadi with three arrows.[7-8] And piercing Yudhishthira then with seventy arrows, the ruler of the Sindhus pierced the other heroes of the Pāndava army with thick showers of shafts. And that feat of his seemed exceedingly wonderful.[9] Then, O monarch, the valiant son of Dharma, aiming Jayadratha's bow, cut it off with a polished and well-tempered shaft, smiling the while.[10] Within the twinkling, however, of the eye, the ruler of the Sindhus took up another bow and, piercing Pārtha (Yudhisthira) with ten arrows, struck each of the others with three shafts.[11] Marking that lightness of hands showed by Jayadratha, Bhima then, with three broad-headed shafts, quickly felled on the earth his bow, standard, and umbrella.[12] The mighty Jayadratha then, taking up another bow, stringed it and felled Bhima's standard and bow and steeds, O sire![13] His bow cut off, Bhimasena then, jumping down from that excellent car whose steeds had been slain, mounted on the car of Sātyaki like a lion jumping to the top of a mountain.[14] Seeing this, thy troops were filled with joy. And they loudly cried—*Excellent, Ecellent!*—And they repeatedly applauded that feat of the ruler of the Sindhus.[15] Indeed, all creatures highly applauded that feat of his which consisted in his resisting, single-handed, all the Pāndavas together excited with wrath.[16] The path that the son of Subhadrā had made for the Pāndavas by slaying numerous warriors and elephants was then filled up by the ruler of the Sindhus.[17] In-

deed, those heroes, *viz.*, the Matsyas, the Pānchālas, the Kaikeyas, and the Pāndavas, exerting themselves vigorously, succeeded in approaching the presence of Jayadratha, but none of them could bear him.[13] Every one amongst thy enemies who endeavoured to pierce the array that had been formed by Drona, was checked by the ruler of the Sindhus in consequence of the boon he had got (from Mahādeva).' "[19]

SECTION XLIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the ruler of the Sindhus checked the Pāndavas desirous of success, the battle that took place then between thy troops and the enemy became awful.[1] The invincible son of Arjuna, of true aim and mighty energy, having penetrated into the (Kaurava) array, agitated it like a *makara* agitating the ocean.[2] Against that chastiser of foes then, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, who was thus agitating the hostile host with his arrowy showers, the principal warriors of the Kaurava army rushed, each according to his rank and precedence.[3] The clash between them of immeasurable energy, scattering their arrowy showers with great force, on the one side, and Abhimanyu alone on the other, became awful.[4] The son of Arjuna, encompassed on all sides by those enemies with crowds of cars, slew the charioteer of Vrishasena and also cut off his bow.[5] And the mighty Abhimanyu then pierced Vrishasena's steeds with his straight shafts, upon which those coursers with the speed of the wind bore Vrishasena away from the battle.[6] Availing of that opportunity, Abhimanyu's charioteer freed his car from that press by taking it away to another part of the field. Those numerous car-warriors then, (beholding this feat), were filled with joy and exclaimed,—*Excellent,—Excellent!*[7]—Seeing the lion-like Abhimanyu angrily slaying the foe with his shafts and advancing from a distance, Vasātiya, proceeding towards him quickly, fell upon him with great force.[8] The latter pierced Abhimanyu with sixty shafts of golden wings, and addressing him, said,—As long as I am alive, thou shalt not escape me with life![9]—Cased though he was in an iron coat of mail, the son of Subhadrā pierced him in the

chest with a far-reaching shaft. Thereupon Vasātiya fell down on the earth, deprived of life.[10] Beholding Vasātiya slain, many bulls among Kshatriyas became filled with wrath, and surrounded thy grandson, O king, from desire of slaying him.[11] They approached him, stretching their countless bows of diverse kinds, and the battle then that took place between the son of Subhadrā and his foes was exceedingly fierce.[12] Then the son of Phālguna, filled with wrath, cut off their arrows and bows, and diverse limbs of their bodies, and their heads decked with ear-ings and floral garlands.[13] And arms were seen lopped off, that were adorned with various ornaments of gold and that still held scimitars and spiked maces and battle-axes and the fingers of which were still cased in leathern fences.[14] [And the earth became strewn]* with floral wreaths and ornaments and cloths, with fallen standards, with coats of mail and shields and golden chains and diadems and umbrellas and yak tails;[15] with *Upashkaras*, and *Adhishtānas*, and *Dandakas*, and *Vandhuras*; with crushed *Akshas*, broken wheels, and yokes, numbering thousands;†[16] with *Anukarshas*, and banners, and charioteers, and steeds; as also with broken cars, and elephants, and steeds.[17] The field of battle, strewn with slain Kshatriyas endued (while living) with great heroism,—rulers of diverse realms, inspired with desire of victory,—presented a fearful sight.[18] When Abhimanyu angrily careered over the field of battle in all directions, his very form became invisible.[19] Only his coat of mail, decked with gold, and his ornaments, and bow, and shafts, could be seen.[20] Indeed, while he slew hostile warriors by means of his shafts, staying in their midst like the Sun himself in his blazing effulgence, none could gaze at him with his eyes.'"[21]

SECTION XLV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Engaged in taking the lives of brave warriors, Arjuna's son then resembled the Destroyer himself when

* These words occur in 17 lower down.—T.

† These are limbs of cars.—T

the latter takes the lives of all creatures on the arrival of the hour of Universal Dissolution.[1] Possessed of prowess resembling that of Cakra himself, the mighty son of Cakra's son, *viz.*, Abhimanyu, agitating the Kaurava army, looked exceedingly resplendent.[2] Penetrating into the Kaurava host, O king, that destroyer of foremost Kshatriyas resembling Yama himself, seized Satyaçravas like an infuriate tiger seizing a deer.[3] Beholding Satyaçravas seized by him, many mighty car-warriors, taking up diverse kinds of weapons, rushed upon him.[4] Indeed, those bulls among Kshatriyas, from a spirit of rivalry, rushed at the son of Arjuna from desire of slaying him, all exclaiming,—*I shall go first, I shall go first !*[5]—As a whale in the sea, obtaining a shoal of small fish, seizes them with the greatest ease, even so did Abhimanyu receive that whole division of rushing Kshatriyas.[6] Like rivers that never go back when they approach the sea, none amongst those unretreating Kshatriyas turned back when they approached Abhimanyu.[7] That army then reeled like a boat tossed on the ocean when overtaken by a mighty tempest, (with its crew) afflicted with panic caused by the violence of the wind.[8] Then the mighty Rukmaratha, son of the ruler of the Madras, for assuring the frightened troops, fearlessly said,—Ye heroes, ye need not fear ! When I am here, what is Abhimanyu ? Without doubt, I will seize this one a living captive !"[9-10]—Having said these words, the valiant prince, borne on his beautiful and well-equipt car, rushed at Abhimanyu.[11] Piercing Abhimanyu with three shafts in the chest, three in the right arm, and three other sharp shafts in the left arm, he uttered a loud roar.[12] Phālguna's son, however, cutting off his bow, his right and left arms, and his head adorned with beautiful eyes and eye-brows, quickly felled them on the earth.[13] Beholding Rukmaratha, the honored son of Calya, slain by the illustrious son of Subhadrā, that Rukmaratha, *viz.*, who had vowed to consume his foe or take him alive,[14] many princely friends of Calya's son, O king, accomplished in smiting and incapable of being easily defeated in battle, and owning standards decked with gold, (came up for the fight).[15] Those mighty car-warriors, stretching their bows full six cubits long, surrounded the son of Arjuna on

all sides, pouring their arrowy showers upon him.[16] Beholding the brave and invincible son of Subhadrā singly encountered by all those wrathful princes endued with heroism and skill acquired by practice and strength and youth, and seeing him covered with showers of arrows, Duryodhana rejoiced greatly, and regarded Abhimanyu as one already made a guest of Yama's abode.[17-18] Within the twinkling of an eye, those princes, by means of their shafts of golden wings and diverse forms and great impetuosity, made Arjuna's son invisible.[19] Himself, his standard, and his car, O sire, were seen by us covered with shafts like (trees overwhelmed with) flights of locusts.[20] Deeply pierced, he became filled with rage like an elephant struck with the hook. He then, O Bhārata, applied the *Gāndharva* weapon and the illusions consequent on it.*[21] Practising ascetic penances, Arjuna had obtained that weapon from the *Gandharvas* Tumvuru and others. With that weapon Abhimanyu now confounded his foes.[22] Quickly displaying his weapons, he careered in that battle like a circle of fire, and was, O king, seen sometimes as a single individual, sometimes as a hundred, and sometimes as a thousand.[23] Confounding his foes by the skill with which his car was guided and by the illusion caused by his weapons, he cut into a hundred pieces, O monarch, the bodies of the kings (opposed to him).[24] By means of his sharp shafts the lives of living creatures were despatched. These, O king, attained to the other world while their bodies fell down on the earth.[25] Their bows, and steeds, and charioteers, and standards, and arms decked with *Angadas*, and heads, the son of Phālguna cut off with his sharp shafts.[26] Those hundred princes were slain and felled by Subhadrā's son like a tope of five year old mango trees just on the point of bearing fruit (laid low by a tempest).[27] Beholding those youthful princes brought up in every luxury and resembling angry snakes of virulent poison, all slain by the single-handed Abhimanyu, Duryodhana was filled with fear.[28] Seeing (his) car-warriors and elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers crushed, the Kuru king quickly proceeded in wrath against Abhi-

* The Bombay reading is slightly different.—T.

manyu.[29] Continuing for only a short space of time, the unfinished battle between them became exceedingly fierce. Thy son then, afflicted with Abhimanyu's arrows, was obliged to turn back from the fight.' "[30]

SECTION XLVI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'That which thou tellest me, O *Suta*, about the battle, fierce and terrible, between the one and the many, and the victory of that illustrious one,[1] that story of the prowess of Subhadrā's son, is highly wonderful and almost incredible! I do not, however, regard it as a marvel that is absolutely beyond belief in the case of those that have righteousness for their refuge.[2] After Duryodhana was beat back and the hundred princes slain, what course was pursued by the warriors of my army against the son of Subhadrā ?'[3]

"Sanjaya said,—'Their mouths became dry, and eyes restless. Sweat covered their bodies, and their hair stood on end. Despairing of vanquishing their foe, they became ready to leave the field.[4] Abandoning their wounded brothers and sires and sons and friends and relatives by marriage and kinsmen, they fled, urging their steeds and elephants to their utmost speed.[5] Beholding them broken and routed, Drona, and Drona's son, and Vrihadvala, and Kripa, and Duryodhana, and Karna, and Kritavarman, and Suvala's son (Cakuni),[6] rushed in great wrath against the unvanquished son of Subhadrā. Almost all these, O king, were beat back by thy grandson.[7] Only one warrior then, *viz.*, Lakshmana, brought up in luxury, accomplished in arrows, endued with great energy, and fearless in consequence of inexperience and pride, proceeded against the son of Arjuna.[8] Anxious about his son, his father (Duryodhana) turned back for following him. Other mighty car-warriors turned back for following Duryodhana.[9] All of them then drenched Abhimanyu with showers of arrows like the clouds pouring rain on the mountain-breast. Abhimanyu, however, single-handed, began to crush them like the dry winds that blow in every direction destroying gathering masses of clouds.[10] Like one infuriate elephant encounter-

ing another, Arjuna's son then encountered thy invincible grandson Lakshmana of great personal beauty, endued with great bravery, staying near his father with outstreched bow, brought up in every luxury, and resembling a second prince of the Yakshas.*[11-12] Encountering Lakshmana, that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, had his two arms and chest struck with sharp shafts.[13] Thy grandson, the mighty-armed Abhimanyu then, filled with rage like a snake struck (with a rod), addressing, O king, thy (other) grandson, said,[14]—Look well on this world, for thou shalt (soon) have to go to the other! In the very sight of all thy kinsmen, I will despatch thee to Yama's abode![15]—Saying thus, that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the mighty-armed son of Subhadrā, took out a broad-headed arrow that resembled a snake just freed from its slough.[16] That shaft, sped by Abhimanyu's arms, cut off the beautiful head, decked with ear-rings, of Lakshmana, that was graced with a beautiful nose, beautiful eye-brows, and exceedingly good-looking curls.[17] Beholding Lakshmana slain, the troops uttered exclamations of *Oh* and *Alas*. Upon the slaughter of his dear son, Duryodhana became filled with rage.[18] That bull among Kshatriyas then loudly urged the Kshatriyas under him, saying,—Slay this one!—Then Drona, and Kripa, and Karna, and Drona's son, and Vrihadvala,[19] and Kritavarman the son of Hridikā,—these six car-warriors encompassed Abhimanyu. Piercing them with sharp arrows and beating them off from him, the son of Arjuna fell with great speed and fury upon the vast force of Jayadratha. Thereupon the Kalingas, the Nishādas, and the valiant son of Krātha, all clad in mail, cut off his path by encompassing him with their elephant division. The battle then that took place between Phālguna's son and those warriors was obstinate and fierce.[20-22] Then the son of Arjuna began to destroy that elephant division as the wind coursing in every direction destroys vast masses of gathering clouds in the welkin.[23] Then Krātha covered the son of Arjuna with showers of arrows, while many other car-warriors

* Literally, "like another son of the Lord of Treasures."—T.

headed by Drona, having returned to the field,[24] rushed at him, scattering high and mighty-weapons. Checking all those weapons by means of his own arrows, the son of Arjuna began to afflict the son of Krātha[25] with ceaseless showers of shafts, using great despatch and inspired by the desire of slaying his antagonist. The latter's bow and shafts, and bracelets, and two arms, and head decked with diadem,[26] and umbrella, and standard, and charioteer, and steeds, were all cut off and felled by Abhimanyu. When Krātha's son possessed of nobility of lineage, good behaviour, acquaintance with the scriptures, great strength, fame, and power of arms, was slain, the other heroic combatants almost all turned away from the fight.' "[27]

SECTION XLVII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'While the youthful and invincible son of Subhadrā, never retreating from battle, was, after penetrating into our array, engaged in achieving feats worthy of his lineage, borne by his three year old steeds of great might and the best breed, and apparently swimming in the welkin, what heroes of my army encompassed him ?'[1-2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Having penetrated into our array, Abhimanyu of Pāndu's race, by means of his sharp shafts, made all the kings turn away from the fight.[3] Then Drona, and Kripa, and Karna, and Drona's son, and Vrihadvala, and Kritavarman the son of Hridikā,—these six car-warriors,—encompassed him.[4] As regards the other combatants of thy army, beholding that Jayadratha had taken upon himself the heavy duty (of keeping off the Pāndavas), they supported him, O king, by rushing against Yudhishthira.*[5] Many amongst them, endued with great strength, drawing their bows full six cubits long, showered on the heroic son of Subhadrā arrowy downpours like torrents of rain.[6] Subhadrā's son, however,—that slayer of hostile heroes,—paralysed by his shafts all those great bowmen conversant with every branch of learning.[7] And he pierced Drona with fifty arrows, and Vrihadvala with

---

* I expand the 5th a little to make the sense clear.—T.

twenty. And piercing Kritavarman with eighty shafts, he pierced Kripa with sixty.[8] And the son of Arjuna pierced Açwatthāman with ten arrows equipt with golden wings, endued with great speed, and shot from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch.[9] And the son of Phālguna pierced Karna, in the midst of his foes, in one of his ears, with a bright, well-tempered, and barbed arrow of great force.[10] Felling then the steeds yoked to Kripa's car, as also both his *Pārshni* charioteers, Abhimanyu pierced Kripa himself in the centre of the chest with ten arrows.[11] The mighty Abhimanyu then, in the very sight of thy heroic sons, slew the brave Vrindāraka, that enhancer of the fame of the Kurus.[12] While Abhimanyu was thus engaged in fearlessly slaying one after another the foremost warriors among his enemies, Drona's son Açwatthāman pierced him with five and twenty small arrows.[13] The son of Arjuna, however, in the very sight of all the Dhārtarāshtras, quickly pierced Açwatthāman in return, O sire, with many whetted shafts.[14] Drona's son, however, in return, piercing Abhimanyu with sixty fierce arrows of great impetuosity and keen sharpness, failed to make him tremble, for the latter, pierced by Açwatthāman, stood immovable like the Maināka mountain.[15] Endued with great energy, the mighty Abhimanyu then pierced his antagonist with three and seventy straight arrows equipt with wings of gold.[16] Drona then, desirous of rescuing his son, pierced Abhimanyu with a hundred arrows. And Açwatthāman pierced him with sixty arrows, desirous of rescuing his father.[17] And Karna struck him with two and twenty broad-headed arrows, and Kritavarman struck him with four and ten. And Vrihadvala pierced him with fifty such shafts, and Caradwat's son Kripa with ten.[18] Abhimanyu, however, pierced each of these in return with ten shafts. The ruler of the Koçalas struck Abhimanyu in the chest with a barbed arrow.[19] Abhimanyu, however, quickly felled on the earth his antagonist's steeds and standard and bow and charioteer. The ruler of the Koçalas then, thus deprived of his car, took up a sword and shield,[20] and wished to sever from Abhimanyu's trunk his beautiful head decked with earrings. Abhimanyu then pierced king Vrihadvala the ruler

of the Koçalas, in the chest, with a strong arrow. The latter then, with riven heart, fell down. Beholding this, ten thousand illustrious kings broke and fled.[21-22] Those kings, armed with swords and bows, fled away, uttering words inimical (to king Duryodhana's interests).* Having slain Vrihadvala thus, the son of Subhadrā careered in battle, paralysing thy warriors,—those great bowmen,—by means of arrowy downpours thick as rain.' "†[23]

SECTION XLVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Phālguna's son once more pierced Karna in the ear with a barbed arrow, and for angering him still further, he pierced him with fifty other shafts.[1] The son of Rādhā pierced Abhimanyu in return with as many shafts. Covered all over with arrows, Abhimanyu then, O sire, looked exceedingly beautiful.[2] Filled with rage, he caused Karna also to be bathed in blood. Mangled with arrows and covered with blood, the brave Karna also shone greatly.‡[3] Both of them pierced with arrows, both bathed in blood, those illustrious warriors then resembled a couple of flowering *Kinçukas*.[4] The son of Subhadrā then slew six of Karna's brave counsellors conversant with all modes of warfare, with their steeds and charioteers and standards and cars.[5] As regards the other great bowmen, Abhimanyu fearlessly pierced each of them, in return, with ten arrows. That feat of his seemed highly wonderful.[6] Slaying next the son of the ruler of the Magadhas, Abhimanyu, with six straight shafts, slew the youthful Açwaketu with his four steeds and charioteer.[7] Then slaying, with a sharp razor-headed arrow, the Bhoja prince of Mārtikāvata bearing the device of an elephant (on his banner), the son of Arjuna uttered a loud shout and began to scatter his

---

* I confess I do not understand what the meaning is of *açiva vāchas Srijatām*. The rendering I offer is tentative.—T.

† I follow the numbering of the Bengal texts. 23 consists of three lines.—T.

‡ In the first line of 3, the correct reading is *Karnanchāpyakarot krudha &c.*, the reading in the Bengal texts is vicious and unmeaning.—T

shafts on all sides.[8] Then the son of Dusçāsana pierced the four steeds of Abhimanyu with four shafts, his charioteer with one, and Abhimanyu himself with ten.[9] The son of Arjuna then, piercing Dusçāsana's son with ten fleet shafts, addressed him in a loud tone and, with eyes red in wrath, said,[10]—Abandoning the battle, thy sire hath fled like a coward. It is well that thou knowest how to fight. Thou shalt not, however escape today with life![11]—Saying these words unto him, Abhimanyu sped a long arrow, well polished by the smith's hand, at his foe. The son of Drona cut that arrow with three shafts of his own.[12] Leaving Açwatthāman alone, Arjuna's son struck Calya with three arrows. Calya, in return, fearlessly pierced him, in the chest with nine shafts equipt with vulturine feathers. That feat seemed highly wonderful. The son of Arjuna then cut off Calya's bow and slew both his *Pārshni* charioteers.[13-14] Abhimanyu then pierced Calya himself with six shafts made wholly of iron. Thereupon the latter, leaving that steedless car, mounted another. Abhimanyu then slew five warriors named Catrunjaya, and Chandraketu, and Mahāmegha, and Suvarchas, and Suryabhāsa. He then pierced Suvala's son. The latter, piercing Abhimanyu with three arrows, said unto Duryodana,[15-16]—Let us all together grind this one, else, fighting singly with us he will slay us all! O king, think of the means of slaying this one, taking counsel with Drona and Kripa and others![17] —Then Karna the son of Vikartana said unto Drona,—Abhimanyu grindeth us all! Tell us the means by which we may slay him!—Thus addressed, the mighty bowman Drona, addressing them all, said,—Observing him with vigilance, have any of you been able to detect any *laches* in this youth?[18-19] He is careering in all directions. Yet have any of you been able to detect today the least hole in him? Behold the lightness of hand and quickness of motion of this lion among men, this son of Arjuna![20] In the track of his car, only his bow drawn to a circle can be seen, so quickly is he aming his shafts and so quickly is he letting them off![21] Indeed, this slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, gratifieth me although he afflicteth my vital breaths and stupefieth me with his shafts![22] Even the mightiest of car-warriors, filled with wrath, are unable to

detect any *laches* in him! The son of Subhadrā, therefore, careering on the field of battle, gratifieth me greatly![23] I do not see that in battle there is any difference between the wielder of *Gāndiva* himself and this one of great lightness of hand filling all the points of the horizon with his mighty shafts![24]—Hearing these words, Karna, afflicted with the shafts of Arjuna's son, once more said unto Drona,—Exceedingly afflicted with the shafts of Abhimanyu, I am staying in battle only bebecause (as a warrior) I should stay here! Indeed, the arrows of this youth endued with great energy are exceedingly fierce! Terrible as they are and possessed of the energy of fire, those arrows are weakening my heart!—The preceptor then, slowly and with a smile, said unto Karna,—Abhimanyu is young. His prowess is great. His coat of mail is impenetrable.[25-27] This one's father had been taught by me the method of wearing defensive armour. This subjugator of hostile towns assuredly knoweth the entire science (of wearing armour).[28] With shafts well-shot, you can, however, cut off his bow, bowstring, the reins of his steeds, the steeds themselves, and the two *Pārshni* charioteers.[29] O mighty bowman, O son of Rādhā, if competent, do this! Making him turn back from the fight (by this means). Strike him then![30] With his bow in hand, he is incapable of being vanquished by the very gods and the *Asuras* together! If you wish, deprive him of his car, and divest him of his bow![31]—Hearing these words of the preceptor, Vikartana's son Karna quickly cut off, by means of his shafts, the bow of Abhimanyu as the latter was shooting with great activity.[32] He of Bhoja's race (*viz.*, Kritavarman) then slew his steeds, and Kripa slew his two *Pārshni* charioteers. The others covered him with showers of arrows after he had been divested of his bow.[33] Those six great car-warriors, with great speed when speed was so necessary, ruthlessly covered that carless youth fighting single-handed with them, with showers of arrows.[34] Bowless and carless, with an eye however to his duty (as as a warrior), the handsome Abhimanyu, taking up a sword and a shield, jumped into the sky.[35] Displaying great strength and great activity, and describing the tracks called *Kauçika* and others, the son of Arjuna fiercely

coursed through the sky like the prince of winged creatures (*viz.*, Garuda).[36]—*He may fall upon me, sword in hand,*—with such thoughts, those mighty bowmen, on the look out for the *laches* of Abhimanyu, began to pierce him in that battle, with their gaze turned upwards.[37] Then Drona of mighty energy, that conqueror of foes, with a sharp arrow quickly cut off the hilt, decked with gems, of Abhimanyu's sword.[38] Rādhā's son Karna, with sharp shafts, cut off his excellent shield. Deprived of his sword and shield thus, he came down, with sound limbs, from the welkin, upon the earth. Then taking up a car-wheel, he rushed in wrath against Drona.[39] His body bright with the dust of car-wheels, and himself holding the car-wheel in his upraised arms, Abhimanyu looked exceedingly beautiful, and imitating Vāsudeva (with his discus), became awfully fierce for a while in that battle.[40] His robes dyed with the blood flowing (from his wounds), his brow formidable with the wrinkles visible thereon, himself uttering loud leonine roars, the lord Abhimanyu of immeasurable might, staying in the midst of those kings, looked exceedingly resplendent on the field of battle.' "[41]

SECTION XLIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'That joy of Vishnu's sister, (*viz.*, Abhimanyu), that *Atiratha* decked with the weapon of Vishnu himself, looked exceedingly beautiful on the field of battle like a second Janārddana.[1] With the end of his locks waving in the air, with that supreme weapon upraised in his hands, his body became incapable of being looked at by the very gods. The kings beholding it[2] and also the wheel in his hands, became filled with anxiety. They then cut off that wheel into a hundred fragments. Then that great car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Arjuna, took up a mighty mace.[3] Deprived by them of his bow and car and sword, and divested also of his wheel by his foes, the mighty-armed Abhimanyu (mace in hand) rushed against Açwatthāman.[4] Beholding that mace upraised which looked like the blazing thunderbolt, Açwatthāman, that tiger among men, rapidly alighted from his car and took three (long) leaps

(for avoiding Abhimanyu).[5] Slaying Açwatthāman's steeds and two *Pārshni* charioteers with that mace of his, Subhadrā's son, pierced all over with arrows, looked like a porcupine.[6] Then that hero pressed Suvala's son Kālikeya down into the earth, and slew seven and seventy Gāndhāra followers of the latter.[7] Next he slew ten car-warriors of the Brahma-Vasātiya race, and then seven car-warriors of the Kaikeyas, and then ten huge elephants.[8] Proceeding next towards the car of Dusçāsana's son, he crushed the latter's car and steeds, pressing them down into the earth. The invincible son of Dusçāsana then, O sire, taking up his mace,[9] rushed at Abhimanyu, saying,—*Wait, Wait!*—Then those cousins, those two heroes, with upraised maces, began to strike each other, desirous of achieving each other's death, like the three-eyed (Mahādeva) and (the *Asura*) Andhaka in days of old. Each of those chastisers of foes, struck with the other's mace-end, fell down on the earth like two uprooted standards erected to the honor of Indra. Then Dusçāsana's son, that enhancer of the fame of the Kurus, rising up first,[10-12] struck Abhimanyu with the mace on the crown of his head as the latter was on the point of rising. Stupefied with the force of that stroke as also with the fatigue he had undergone,[13] that slayer of hostile hosts, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, fell on the earth, deprived of his senses. Thus, O king, was one slain by the many in battle,[14]—one who had grinded the whole army, like an elephant grinding lotus stalks in a lake. As he lay dead on the field, the heroic Abhimanyu looked like a wild elephant slain by the hunters.[15] The fallen hero was then surrounded by thy troops. And he looked like an extinguished fire in the summer season after (as it lies) having consumed a whole forest;[16] or, like a tempest divested of its fury after having crushed mountain crests;* or, like the Sun arrived at the Western hills after having blasted with his heat the Bhārata host;[17] or, like Soma swallowed up by Rāhu; or, like the ocean reft of water. The mighty car-warriors of thy army, beholding Abhimanyu whose face had the splendour of the full moon and whose eyes were rendered beautiful in

* The Bengal texts read *Taru-cringāni*, *i. e.*, tree-tops.—T.

consequence of lashes black as the feathers of the raven, lying prostrate on the bare earth, were filled with great joy. And they repeatedly uttered leonine shouts.[18-19] Indeed, O monarch, thy troops were in transports of joy, while tears fell fast from the eyes of the Pāndava heroes.[20] Beholding the heroic Abhimanyu lying on the field of battle like the moon dropped from the firmament, diverse creatures, O king, in the welkin, loudly said,[21]—Alas, this one lieth on the field, slain, while fighting singly, by six mighty car-warriors of the Dhārtarāshtra army, headed by Drona and Karna! This act hath been, we hold, an unrighteous one![22]—Upon the slaughter of that hero, the earth looked exceedingly resplendent like the star-bespangled firmament with the Moon.[23] Indeed, the earth was strewn with shafts equipt with wings of gold, and covered with waves of blood. And strewn with the beautiful heads of heroes, decked with ear-rings[24] and variegated turbans of great value, and banners and yak tails and beautiful blankets, and begemmed weapons of great efficacy,[25] and the bright ornaments of cars and steeds and men and elephants, and sharp and well-tempered swords looking like snakes freed from their sloughs,[26] and bows, and broken shafts, and darts, and swords, and lances, and *Kampanas*, and diverse other kinds of weapons, she assumed a beautiful aspect.[27] And in consequence of the steeds dead or dying but all weltering in blood, with their riders (lying about them), felled by Subhadrā's son, the earth in many places became impassable.[28] And with iron hooks, and elephants—huge as hills—equipt with shields and weapons and standards, lying about, crushed with shafts,[29] with excellent cars deprived of steeds and charioteers and car-warriors, lying scattered on the earth, crushed by elephants and looking like agitated lakes,[30] with large bodies of foot-soldiers decked with diverse weapons and lying dead on the ground, the field of battle, wearing a terrible aspect, inspired all timid hearts with terror.[31]

"Beholding Abhimanyu, resplendent as the Sun or the Moon, lying on the ground, thy troops were in transports of joy, while the Pāndavas were filled with grief.[32] When the youthful Abhimanyu yet in his minority fell, the Pāndava divisions, O king, fled away in the very sight of king Yudhishthira.[33]

Beholding his army breaking upon the fall of Subhadrā's son, Yudhishthira addressed his brave warriors, saying,[34]—The heroic Abhimanyu, who without retreating from battle hath been slain, hath certainly ascended to heaven! Stay then, and fear not, for we shall yet vanquish our foes![35]—Endued with great energy and great splendour, king Yudhishthira the just, that foremost of warriors, saying such words unto his soldiers inspired with grief, endeavoured to dispel their woe.[36] The king continued,—Having, in the first instance, slain in battle hostile princes resembling snakes of virulent poison, the son of Arjuna hath then given up his life![37] Having slain ten thousand warriors, and that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the king of the Koçalas, Abhimanyu, who was even like Krishna or Arjuna himself, hath assuredly gone to the abode of Indra![38] Having destroyed cars and steeds and men and elephants by thousands, he was still not content with what he did! Performing as he did such meritorious feats, we should not certainly grieve for him! He hath gone to the bright regions of the righteous, regions that men acquire by meritorious deeds!—' "[39]

SECTION L.

'Sanjaya said,—'Having thus slain one of their foremost warriors, and having been afflicted with their arrows, we came back to our encampment in the evening, covered with blood.[1] Steadfastly gazed at by the enemy, we slowly left, O monarch, the field of battle, having sustained a severe loss and nearly deprived of our senses.[2] Then came that wonderful hour intervening between day and night. Inauspicious howls of jackals were heard. The Sun, with the pale-red hue of the filaments of the lotus,—sank low in the horizon, having approached the Western hills.[3] And he took away with him the splendour of our swords and darts and rapiers and car-fences, and shields and ornaments. Causing the firmament and the earth to assume the same hue, the Sun assumed his favorite form of fire.[4] The field of batttle was strewn with the motionless bodies of innumerable elephants deprived of life, looking like crests of cloud-capt hills riven by the thunder,

and lying about with their standards and hooks and guides fallen from their backs.[5] The earth looked beautiful with large cars crushed to pieces and with their warriors and charioteers and ornaments and steeds and standards and banners crushed, broken, and torn. Those huge cars, O king, looked like living creatures deprived of their lives by the foe with his shafts.[6] The field of battle assumed a fierce and awful form in consequence of large numbers of steeds and riders all lying dead, with costly trappings and blankets of diverse kinds scattered about, and the tongues and teeth and entrails and eyes of those creatures dragged out of their places.[7] Men decked with costly coats of mail and ornaments and robes and weapons, deprived of life, lay with slain steeds and elephants and broken cars, on the bare ground, perfectly helpless, although deserving of costly beds and blankets.[8] Dogs and jackals and crows and cranes and other carnivorous birds, and wolves and hyenas, and ravens, and other blood-drinking creatures, and diverse tribes of *Rākshasas*, and large numbers of *Piçāchas*, on the field of battle, tearing the skins of the corpses and drinking their fat, blood, and marrow, began to eat their flesh.[9] And they began to suck also the secretions of rotten corpses, while the *Rākshasas* laughed horribly and sang aloud, dragging dead bodies numbering by thousands.[10] An awful river, difficult to cross like the Vaitarani itself, was caused there by foremost of warriors. It waters were constituted by the blood (of fallen creatures). Cars constituted the rafts (on which to cross it). Elephants formed it rocks, and the heads of human beings, its smaller stones. And it was miry with the flesh (of slain steeds and elephants and men). And diverse kinds of costly weapons constituted the garlands (floating on it or lying on its banks). And that terrible river flowed fiercely through the middle of the field of battle, wafting living creatures to the regions of the dead.[11-12] And large numbers of *Piçāchas*, of horrible and revolting shapes, rejoiced, drinking and eating in that stream. And dogs and jackals and carnivorous birds, all eating of the same food, and inspiring living creatures with terror, held their high carnival there.[13] And the warriors, gazing on that field of battle which, enhancing the population of Yama's domains, presented such

an awful sight, and where human torsos, rising up, began to dance, slowly left it as they beheld the mighty car-warrior Abhimanyu, who resembled Cakra himself, lying on the field, his costly ornaments displaced and fallen off, and looking like a sacrificial fire on the altar no longer drenched with clarified butter.' "[14-15]

SECTION LI.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the slaughter of that hero, that leader of car-divisions, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, the Pāndava warriors, leaving their cars and putting off their armour, and throwing aside their bows, sat, surrounding king Yudhishthira. And they were thinking of that grief of theirs, their hearts fixed upon the (deceased) Abhimanyu.[1-2] Indeed, upon the fall of that heroic nephew of his, *viz.*, the mighty car-warrior Abhimanyu, king Yudhishthira, filled with grief, indulged in (these) lamentations.[3]—Alas, Abhimanyu, from desire of achieving my good, pierced the array formed by Drona and teeming with his soldiers![4] Encountering him in battle, mighty bowmen endued with great courage, accomplished in weapons and incapable of being easily defeated in battle, were routed and forced to retreat![5] Encountering our implacable foe Dusçāsana in battle, he, with his arrows, caused that warrior to fly away from the field, deprived of his senses![6] Alas, the heroic son of Arjuna, having crossed the vast sea of Drona's army, was ultimately obliged to become a guest of Yama's abode, upon encountering the son of Dusçāsana![7] When Abhimanyu is slain, how shall cast my eyes on Arjuna as also on the blessed Subhadrā deprived of her favourite son?[8] What senseless, disjointed, and improper words shall we have to say today unto Hrishikeça and Dhananjaya![9] Desirous of achieving what is good, and expectant of victory, it is I who have done this great evil unto Subhadrā and Keçava and Arjuna![10] He that is covetous never beholdeth his faults. Covetousness springs from folly. Collectors of honey see not the fall that is before them. I am even like them.[11] He who was only a child, he who should have been indulged with (good) food, with vehicles, with beds,

with ornaments, alas, even he was placed by us in the van of battle![12] How could good come to a child of tender years, unskilled in battle, in such a situation of great danger! Like a horse of proud mettle, he sacrificed himself instead of refusing to do the bidding of his masters.[13] Alas, we also shall today lay ourselves down on the bare earth, blasted by the glances of grief cast by Arjuna filled with wrath![14] [Dhananjaya is] liberal, intelligent, modest, forgiving, handsome, mighty, possessed of well-developed and beautiful limbs, respectful to superiors, heroic, beloved, and devoted to truth.[15] Of glorious achievements, the very gods applaud his feats. That valiant hero slew the *Nivātakavachas* and the *Kālakeyas*,[16] those enemies of Indra having their abode in Hiranyapura! Within the twinkling of an eye he slew the *Paulomas* with all their kinsmen![17] Endued with great might, he granteth quarter to even implacable enemies asking for quarter! Alas, we could not protect today the son of even such a person from danger![18] A great fear hath overtaken the Dhārtarāshtras endued though they might be with great strength!* Enraged at the slaughter of his son, Pārtha will exterminate the Kauravas.[19] It is evident also that the mean-minded Duryodhana, having mean counsellers, that destroyer of his own race and partisans, beholding this extermination of the Kaurava army, will give up his life in grief![20] Beholding this son of Indra's son, of unrivalled energy and prowess, lying on the field of battle, neither victory, nor sovereignty, nor immortality, nor abode with the very celestials, causeth me the least delight!'"[21]—

SECTION LII.

"Sanjaya said,—'While Kunti's son Yudhishthira was indulging in such lamentations, the great *Rishi* Krishna-Dwaipāyana came to him.[1] Worshipping him duly, and causing him to be seated, Yudhishthira, afflicted with grief on account of the death of his brother's son, addressed him, saying,[2]—

---

* The correct reading is *Mahāvalān* and not *Mahāvalāt*.—T.

Alas, while battling with many mighty bowmen, the son of Subhadrā, surrounded by several great car-warriors of unrighteous propensities, hath been slain on the field![3] That slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, was a child in years and of childish understanding.* He fought in battle against desperate odds.[4] I asked him to open a passage for us in battle. He penetrated within the hostile army, but we could not follow him, prevented by the ruler of the Sindhus![5] Alas, they that betake themselves to battle as a profession always fight with antagonists equally circumstanced with themselves. This battle, however, that the enemy fought with Abhimanyu, was an extremely unequal one![6] It is that which grieves me greatly and draws tears from me! Thinking of this, I fail to regain peace of mind!"[7]—

"Sanjaya continued,—'The illustrious Vyāsa, addressing Yudhishthira who was indulging in such lamentations and who was thus unmanned by an accession of sorrow, said these words.[8]

" 'Vyāsa said,—O Yudhishthira, O thou of great wisdom, O thou that art master of all branches of knowledge, persons like thee never suffer themselves to be stupified by calamities![9] This brave youth, having slain numerous foes, hath ascended to heaven! Indeed, that best of persons, (though a child), acted, however, like one of mature years![10] O Yudhishthira, this law is incapable of being transgressed! O Bhārata, death takes all, *viz.*, gods and *Dānavas* and *Gandharvas* (without exception![11]—

" 'Yudhishthira said,—Alas, these lords of Earth, that lie on the bare Earth, slain in the midst of their forces, reft of consciousness, were possessed of great might![12] Others (of their class) possessed strength equal to that of ten thousand elephants. Others, again, were endued with the impetuosity and might of the very Wind! They have all perished in battle, slain by men of their own class![13] I do not behold the person (save one of their own class) who could slay any of them in battle! Endued with great prowess, they were poss-

* The Bombay reading, which I accept, is *Vālabudhiçcha*. Of course, the Bengal reading is *Avālabudhiçcha*.—T.

essed of great energy and great might![14] Alas, they who used daily to come to battle with this hope firmly implanted in their hearts, *viz.*, that they would conquer, alas, even they, possessed of great wisdom, are lying on the field, struck (with weapons) and deprived of life![15] The significance of the word *Death* hath today been made intelligible, for these lords of Earth, of terrible prowess, have almost all been dead![16] These heroes are lying motionless, reft of vanity, having succumbed to foes. Many princes, filled with wrath, have been victimised before the fire (of their enemies' wrath).[17] A great doubt possesses me, *viz.*, whence is Death? Whose (offspring) is Death? What is Death? Why does Death take away creatures? O grandsire, O thou that resemblest a god, tell me this![18]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Unto Kunti's son Yudhishthira asking him thus, the illustrious *Rishi*, comforting him, said these words:[19]—

"'Vyāsa said,—As regards the matter in hand, O king, this ancient story of what Nārada had in days of old said unto Akampana, is cited.[20] King Akampana, O monarch, I know, while in this world was afflicted with very great and unbearable grief on account of the death of his son.[21] I will now tell thee the excellent story about the origin of Death. Having listened to it, thou wilt be emancipated from sorrow and the touch of affection's tie.[22] Listen to me, O sire, as I recite this ancient history! This history is, indeed, excellent. It enhanceth the period of life, killeth grief, and conduceth to health![23] It is sacred, destructive of large bodies of foes, and auspicious of all auspicious things. Indeed, this history is even as the study of the *Vedas*.[24] O monarch, it should every morning be listened to by foremost of kings who are desirous of long-lived children and sovereignty and their own good![25]

"'In days of old, O sire, there was a king named Akampana. Once, on the field of battle, he was surrounded by his foes and nearly overpowered by them.[26] He had a son who was called Hari. Equal to Nārāyana himself in might, the latter was exceedingly handsome, accomplished in weapons, gifted with great intelligence, possessed of might, and resembled Cakra himself in battle.[27] Encompassed by countless foes

on the field of battle, he sped thousands of shafts at this warriors and the elephants that surrounded him.[28] Having achieved the most difficult feats in battle, O Yudhishthira, that scorcher of foes was at last slain in the midst of he army.[29] Performing the obsequies of his son, king Akampana cleansed himself.* Grieving, however, for his son day and night, the king failed to regain happiness of mind.[30] Informed of his grief on account of the death of his son, the celestial *Rishi* Nārada came to his presence.[31] The blessed king, beholding the celestial *Rishi* arrive, worshipped him duly. And then the king spoke unto the *Rishi*,[32] telling the latter everything that had happened unto him, *viz.*, his defeat at the hands of his foes, and the slaughter of his son.[33] And the king said,—[My son was endued with great energy, and equalled Indra or Vishnu himself in splendour. That mighty son of mine, having displayed his prowess on the field against countless foes, was at last slain ![34] O illustrious one, who is this Death ? What is the measure of his energy, strength, and prowess ? O foremost of intelligent persons, I desire to hear all this truly ![35]—Hearing these words of his, the boon-giving lord Nārada recited the following elaborate history destructive of grief on account of a son's death.[36]—

"'—Nārada said,—[Listen, O mighty-armed king, to this long history, exactly as *I* have heard it, O monarch ![37] In the beginning, the Grandsire Brahman created all creatures. Endued with mighty energy, he saw that the creation bore no signs of decay.[38] Thereat, O king, the Creator began to think about the destruction of the Universe. Reflecting on the matter, O monarch, the Creator failed to find any means of destruction.[39] He then became angry, and in consequence of his anger a fire sprang from the sky. That fire spread in all directions for consuming everything in the Universe.[40] Then heaven, sky, and Earth, all became filled with that fire. And

* During the days of mourning a person is regarded as unclean, being unable to perform his ordinary worship and other religious rite. After the obsequies are performed and the mourning is ended, he is supposed to be cleansed.—T.

thus the Creator began to consume the whole mobile and immobile universe.[41] Thereat all creatures, mobile and immobile, were destroyed. Indeed, the mighty Brahman, frightening everything by the force of his wrath, did all this.[42] Then Hara, otherwise called Sthānu or Civa, with matted locks on head, that Lord of all wanderers of the night, appealed to the divine Brahman, the Lord of all the gods.[43] When Sthānu fell (at Brahman's feet) from desire of doing good to all creatures, the Supreme Deity (Brahman), that greatest of ascetics, blazing with splendour, said,[44]—What wish of thine shall we accomplish, O thou that deservest to have all thy wishes fulfilled! O son, thou hast been born of our wish! We shall do all that may be agreeable to thee! Tell us, O Sthānu, what is thy wish!—]' "[45]

SECTION LIII.

" '—[Sthānu said,—O lord, thou hadst taken great care for creating diverse creatures! Indeed, creatures of diverse kinds were created and reared by thee![1] Those very creatures, again, are now being consumed through thy ire! Seeing this, I amfilled with compassion! O illustrious lord, be inclined tograce!—][2]

" '—[Brahman said,—I had no desire of destroying the Universe. I desired the good of Earth, and it was for this that wrath possessed me![3] The goddess Earth, afflicted with the heavy weight of creatures, always urged me for destroying the creatures on her.[4] Urged by her I could not, however, find any means for the destruction of the infinite creation. At this, wrath possessed me![]—[5]

" '—[Rudra said,—Be inclined to grace! O lord of the Universe, cherish not thy wrath for the destruction of creatures! No more let creatures immobile and mobile be destroyed![6] Through thy grace, O illustrious one, let the threefold Universe, *viz.*, the Future, the Past, and the Present, exist![7] Thou, O Lord, hadst blazed up with wrath! From that wrath of thine, a substance like fire sprang into existence. That fire is even now blasting rocks and trees and rivers,[8] and all kinds of herbs and grass! Indeed, that fire is exterminating the immobile and

the mobile Universe.[9] The moble and the immoble Universe is being reduced to ashes! Be inclined to grace, O illustrious one! Do not give way to wrath! Even this is the boon I solicit![10] All created things, O divine Being, belonging to thee, are being destroyed! Therefore, let thy wrath be appeased! Let it be annihilated in thy own self![11] Cast thy eye on thy creatures, inspired with the desire of doing them good! Do that by which creatures endued with life may not cease to be![12] Let not these creatures, with their productive prowers weakened, be exterminated! O Creator of the worlds, thou hast appointed me their Protector![13] O Lord of the Universe, let not the mobile and the immobile Universe be destroyed! Thou art inclined to grace, and it is for this that I say these words unto thee!—][14]

"'—Nārada continued,—[Hearing these words (of Mahādeva), the divine Brahman, from desire of benefiting creatures, held in his own inner self his wrath that had been roused.[15] Extinguishing the fire, the divine benefactor of the world, the great Master, declared the duties of Production and Emancipation.[16] And while the Supreme Deity exterminated that fire born of his wrath, there came out from the doors of his diverse senses a female[17] who was dark and red and twany, whose tongue and face and eyes were red, and who was decked with two brilliant ear-rings and diverse other brilliant ornaments.[18] Issuing out of his body, she smilingly looked at those two lords of the Universe and then set out for the southern quarter.[19] Then Brahman, that controller of the creation and the destruction of the worlds, called after her by the name of Death. And Brahman, O king, said unto her,—Slay these creatures of mine![20] Thou hast been born of that wrath of mine which I cherished for the destruction (of the Universe). Therefore, slay thou all creatures including idiots and seers,[21] at my command! By doing this, thou wilt be benefited!—That lotus-eyed lady called Death, thus addressed by him,[22] reflected deeply, and then helplessly wept aloud in melodious accents. The Grandsire then caught the tears she shed, with his two hands, for the benefit of all creatures, and began to implore her (in the following words).]—'"[23]

SECTION LIV.

"'—Nārada said,—[The helpless lady, suppressing her sorrow within her own self, addressed, with joined hands, the Lord of the Creation, bending with humility like a creeper.[1] And she said,—O foremost of speakers, created by thee, how shall I, being a female, do such a cruel and evil act knowing it to be cruel and evil ?[2] I fear unrighteousness greatly. O divine Lord, be inclined to grace ! Sons and friends and brothers and sires and husbands are always dear.[3] (If I kill them), they who will suffer these losses will seek to injure me. It is this that I fear ! The tears that will fall from the eyes of woe-stricken and weeping persons,[4] inspire me with fear, O Lord ! I seek thy protection ! O divine Being, O foremost of gods, I will not go to Yama's abode ![5] O boon-giving one, I implore thee for thy grace, bowing my head and joining my palms ! O Grandsire of all the worlds, I solicit (the accomplishment of even) this wish at thy hands ![*6] I desire, with thy permission, to undergo ascetic penances, O Lord of created things ! Grant me this boon, O divine Being, O great Master ![7] Permitted by thee, I will go to the excellent asylum of Dhenuka ! Engaged in adoring Thyself, I will undergo the severest austerities there ![8] I will not be able, O Lord of the gods, to take away the dear life-breaths of living creatures weeping in sorrow ! Protect me from unrighteousness !—][9]

"'—[Brahman said,—O Death, thou hast been intended for achieving the destruction of creatures ! Go, destroy all creatures, thou needst have no scruples ![10] Even this must be ! It cannot be otherwise ! Do but my behest ! Nobody in the world will find any fault in thee !—][11]

"'—Nārada continued,—[Thus addressed, that lady became very much affrighted. Looking at Brahman's face, she stood with joined hands. From desire of doing good to creatures,

---

* The first line of 6 is read differently in the Bombay edition. The Bengal reading, however, seems to me to be preferable.—T.

she did not set her heart upon their destruction.*[12] The divine Brahman also, that Lord of the lord of all creatures, remained silent. And soon the Grandsire became gratified in his own self.[13] And casting his eyes upon all the Creation, he smiled. And thereupon creatures continued to live as before, *i. e.*, unaffected by premature death.[14] And upon that invincible and illustrious Lord having shaken off his wrath, that damsel left the presence of that wise Deity.[15] Leaving Brahman without having agreed to destroy creatures, the damsel called Death speedily proceeded to the retreat called *Dhenuka.*[16] Arrived there, she practised excellent and highly austere vows. And she stood there on one leg for sixteen times ten billions of years,[17] and five times ten billions also, through pity for living creatures and from desire of doing them good, and all the time restraining her senses from their favourite objects.[18] And once again, O king, she stood there on one leg for one and twenty times ten billions of years.[19] And then she wandered for ten times ten thousand billions of years with the creatures (of the Earth). Next, repairing to the sacred *Nandā* that was full of cool and pure water,[20] she passed in those waters eight thousand years. Observing rigid vows at Nandā, she cleansed herself of all her sins.[21] Then she proceeded, first of all, to the sacred Kauçiki, observant of vows. Living upon air and water only, she practised austerities there.[22] Repairing then to Panchagangā and next to Vetasa, that cleansed damsel, by diverse kinds of especial austerities, emaciated her own body.[23] Going next to Gangā and thence to the great Meru, she remained motionless like a stone, suspending her life-breaths.[24] Thence going to the top of Himavat, where the gods had performed their sacrifice (in days of yore), that amiable and auspicious girl remained for a billion of years, standing on the toe only of her feet.[25] Wending then to Pushkara, and Gokarna, and Naimisha, and Malaya, she emaciated her body by practising

* Both the Bengal and the Bombay editions, in the first line of 12, read *pritā*, *i.*, *e.*, gratified. There can be no doubt, however, that the correct reading is *bhitā*, *i.*, *e.*, affrighted, as I have put it. I find that some of the Bengali translators have also made this correction.—T.

austerities agreeable to her heart.[26] Without acknowledging any other god, with steady devotion to the Grandsire, she lived and gratified the Grandsire in every way.[27] Then the unchangeable Creator of the worlds, gratified, said unto her, with a softened and delighted heart,[28]—O Death, why dost thou undergo ascetic austerities so severe ?—Thus addressed, Death said unto the divine Grandsire,[29]—Creatures, O Lord, are living in health. They do not injure one another even by words. I shall not be able to slay them ! O Lord of all, O Master, I desire even this boon at thy hands ![30] I fear sin, and it is for this that I am engaged in ascetic austerities ! O blessed one, undertake to remove for ever my fears ![31] I am a woman, in distress, and without fault ! I beg thee, be thou my protector !—Unto her the divine Brahman acquainted with the past, the present, and the future, said,[32]—Thou shalt commit no sin, O Death, by slaying these creatures ! My words can never be futile, O amiable one ![33] Therefore, O auspicious damsel, slay these creatures of four kinds ! Eternal virtue shall always be thine ![34] That Regent of the world, *viz.*, Yama, and the diverse Diseases, shall become thy help-mates ! I myself and all the gods will grant thee boons,[35] so that, freed from sin and perfectly cleansed, thou mayest even acquire glory !—Thus addressed, O monarch, that lady, joining her hands, once more said these words, seeking his grace by bowing down unto him with her head,—If, O Lord, this is not to be without me,[36-37] then thy command I place upon my head ! Listen, however, to what I say ! Let covetousness, wrath, malice, jealousy, quarrel, folly, and shamelessness, and other stern passions tear the bodies of all embodied creatures !—][38]

" '—[Brahman said,—It will be, O Death, as thou sayest ! Meanwhile, slay creatures duly ! Sin shall not be thine, nor shall I seek to injure thee, O auspicious one ![39] Those tear-drops of thine that are in my hands, even they will become *diseases* springing from living creatures themselves. They will kill men ; and if men are killed, sin shall not be thine ! Therefore, do not fear ![40] Indeed, sin shall not be thine ! Thou shalt be the virtue of living creatures, and the goddess of that virtue ! Devoted to righteousness, and observant

of thy duty, thou shalt sway (all creatures)! Therefore, slay thou always the lives of these living creatures! Casting off both desire and wrath, take thou the life of all living creatures. Even thus will eternal virtue be thine! Sin will slay those that are of wicked behaviour![41-42] By doing my bidding cleanse thyself. It will be thine to sink them in their sins that are wicked. Therefore, cast off both desire and wrath, and kill these creatures endued with life!—][43]

"'—Nārada continued,—[Then that damsel, seeing that she was (persistently) called by the name of Death, feared (to act otherwise). And in terror also of Brahman's curse, she said,—Yes!—Unable to do otherwise, she began, casting off desire and wrath, to take the lives of living creatures when the time came (for their dissolution).[44] It is only living creatures that die. Diseases spring from living creatures themselves. Disease is the abnormal condition of creatures. They are pained byit. Therefore, indulge not in fruitless grief for creatures after they are dead![45] The senses, upon the death of creatures, go with the latter (to the other world), and achieving their (respective) functions, once more come back (with creatures when the latter are reborn). Thus all creatures, O lion among beings, the very gods included, going thither, have to act, like mortals![*46] The wind, that is awful, of terrible roars and great strength, omnipresent and endued with infinite energy, it is the wind that will rive the bodies of living creatures. It will, in this mather, put forth no active energy, nor will it suspend its functions; (but do this naturally).[47] Even all the gods have the appellation of mortals attached to them. Therefore, O lion among kings, do not grieve for thy son! Repairing to heaven, the son of thy body is passing his days in perpetual happiness, having obtained those delightful regions that are for heroes.[48] Casting off all sorrow, he hath attained to the companionship of the righteous. Death hath been ordained by the Creator himself for all creatures! When their hour comes, creatures are destroyed duly. The death of creatures arises from the creatures themselves.[49] Creatures kill themselves. Death doth not kill any one, armed

* *Devās*, in the first line of 46, means the senses. *Vrittās*, as explained by Nilakantha, means *Vritavantas*.—T.

with her bludgeon! Therefore, they that are wise, truly knowing death to be inevitable because ordained by Brahman himself, never grieve for creatures that are dead. Knowing this death to be ordained by the Supreme God, cast off, without delay, thy grief for dead sons!]—' "[50]

" 'Vyāsa continued,—Hearing these words of grave import spoken by Nārada, king Akampana, addressing his friend, said,[51]—[O illustrious one, O foremost of *Rishis*, my grief is gone, and I am contented! Hearing this history from thee, I am grateful to thee, and I worship thee!][52]—That foremost of superior *Rishis*, that celestial ascetic of immeasurable soul, thus addressed by the king, proceeded to the woods of *Nandana*.[53] The frequent recital of this history for the hearing of others, as also the frequent hearing of this history, is regarded as cleansing, leading to fame and heaven, and worthy of approbation. It enhanceth, besides, the period of life.[54] Having listened to this instructive story, cast off thy grief, O Yudhishthira, reflecting besides on the duties of a Kshatriya and the high state (of blessedness) attainable by heroes.[55] Abhimanyu, that mighty car-warrior, endued with mighty energy, having slain (numerous) foes before the gaze of all bowmen, hath attained to heaven.[56] That great bowman, that mighty car-warrior, struggling on the field, hath fallen in battle, struck with sword, and mace, and dart, and bow.[57] Sprung from Soma, he hath disappeared in the lunar essence, cleansed of all his impurities. Therefore, O son of Pāndu, mustering all thy fortitude, thyself with thy brothers, without allowing your senses to be stupified, speedily set out, inflamed with rage, for battle!—' "[58]*

---

* Verses 55 to 58, as occurring in both the Bengal and the Bombay texts, require correction. 55 is incomplete. For the words *tadā Rājā*, therefore, I read *Cokam tyaja* as suggested by K. P. Singha. Then the *Visarga* after *Yudhishthira* must be dropped to make it a vocative. Similarly, *Pāndavas* in 58 should be *Pāndava*, a vocative and not a nominative; *upākrāmat* should be *upakrama*. The last two corrections are made in the Bombay text. The fact is, are 55 to 58 the words of Vyā sa, or of Sanjaya? Evidently, it is Vyāsa that speaks, and hence teh necessity of the corrections noted.—T.

SECTION LV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing of the origin of Death and her strange acts, king Yudhishthira, humbly addressing Vyāsa, once more said these words unto him.[1]

"'Yudhishthira said,—Many kings there were, in blessed countries, of righteous deeds and of prowess equal to that of Indra himself. They were royal sages, O regenerate one, that were sinless and truth-speaking![2] Once more, address me in words of grave import, and console me with (accounts of) the feats of those royal sages of ancient times! What was the measure of the sacrificial gifts made by them? Who were those high-souled royal sages of righteous deeds that made them? Tell me all this, O illustrious one!—[3-4]

"'Vyāsa said,—There was a king of the name of Cwitya. He had a son who was called Srinjaya. The *Rishis* Nārada and Parvata were his friends.[5] One day, the two ascetics, for paying Srinjaya a visit, came to his palace. Duly worshipped by Srinjaya, they became pleased with him, and continued to live with him happily.[6] Once on a time, as Srinjaya was seated at his ease with the two ascetics, his beautiful daughter of sweet smiles came to him.[7] Saluted with reverence by his daughter, Srinjaya delighted that girl standing by his side with proper benedictions of the kind she desired.[8] Beholding that maiden, Parvata smilingly asked Srinjaya, saying,—[Whose daughter is this damsel of restless glances and possessed of every auspicious omen?[9] Is she the splendour of Surya, or the flame of Agni? Or, is she any of these, *viz.*, Cri, Hri, Kirti, Dhriti, Pushti, Siddhi, and the splendour of Soma?[10]]—Unto the celestial *Rishi* (Parvata) saying those words, king Srinjaya answered, saying,—[O illustrious one, this girl is my daughter. She beggeth my blessings![11]—Then Nārada addressed king Srinjaya and said,—[If, O monarch, thou wishest for great good (to thyself), then give this daughter of thine unto me for a wife![12]—Delighted (with the *Rishi's* proposal), Srinjaya addressed Nārada, saying,—[I give her unto thee!]

At this, the other *Rishi, viz.*, Parvata, indignantly addressed Nārada, saying,[13]—[Chosen before this by me, within my heart, thou hast taken this damsel as thy wife! And since thou hast done this, thou, O Brāhmana, shalt not go to heaven at thy will!][14]—Thus addressed by him, Nārada answered him, saying,—[(The husband's) heart and speech (directed thereto), (the giver's) consent, the speeches (of both), the actual gift made by sprinkling water,[15] and the (recital of the) *mantras* ordained for the seizure of the (bride's hand), —these have been declared to be indications by which one is constituted a husband. Even this ceremonial, though essential, is not all. That which (above all) is essentail is the walk for seven paces (by the bride in circumambulating the bridegroom).*[16] Without thy purpose (about marriage) having been accomplished, thou hast cursed me! Therefore, thou also shalt not go to heaven without me![17]—Having cursed each other thus, those two *Rishis* continued to live there. Meanwhile, king Srinjaya, desirous of (obtaining) a son, began, with cleansed soul, to carefully entertain the Brāhmanas, to the utmost of his power, with food and drink and robes. After a certain time, those foremost of Brāhmanas, devoted to the study of the *Vedas* and fully conversant with those scriptures and their branches, became gratified with that monarch desirous of getting a son. Together they came to Nārada and said unto him.—[Give this king a son of the kind he desires![18-20] —Thus addressed by the Brāhmanas, Nārada replied unto them, saying,—[So be it!]—And then the celestial *Rishi* addressed Srinjaya, saying,—[O royal sage, the Brāhmanas have been pleased with thee and they wish thee a son![21] Solicit thou the boon, blessed be thou, about the kind of son thou desirest!]—Thus addressed by him, the king, with joined hands, asked for a son possessed of every accomplishment,[22] famous, of glorious feats, of great energy, and capable of chastising all foes. And he further asked that the urine, the excreta, the phlegm, and the sweat of that child should be gold.[23] And in due time the king had a son born unto him, who came

* I follow Nilakantha in rendering these two verses.—T.

to be named *Suvarnashthivin** on Earth. And in consequence of the boon, that child began to increase (his father's) wealth beyond all limits.[24] And king Srinjaya caused all desirable things of his to be made of gold. And his houses and walls and forts, and the houses of all Brāhmanas (within his dominions),[25] and his beds, vehicles, and plates, and all manner of pots and cups, and the palace that he owned, and all implements and utensils, domestic and otherwise,[26] were made of gold. And in time his stock increased. Then certain robbers, hearing of the prince and seeing him to be such,[27] assembled together and sought to injure the king. And some amongst them said,—[We will seize the king's son himself![28] He is his father's mine of gold. Towards that end, therefore, we should strive!]—Then those robbers, inspired with avarice, penetrating into the king's palace,[29] forcibly took away prince Suvarnashthivin. Having seized and taken him to the woods, those senseless idiots, inspired with avarice but ignorant of what to do with him, slew him there and cut his body into fragments. They saw not, however, any gold in him. After the prince was slain, all the gold obtained in consequence of the *Rishi's* boon, disappeared.[30-31] The ignorant and senseless robbers struck one another. And striking one another thus, they perished, and with them that wonderful prince on the Earth.[32] And those men of wicked deeds sank in an unimaginable and awful hell. Seeing that son of his, obtained through the *Rishi's* boon, thus slain, that great ascetic,[33] *viz.*, king Srinjaya, afflicted with deep sorrow, began to lament in piteous accents. Beholding the king afflicted with grief on account of his son, and thus weeping,[34] the celestial *Rishi* Nārada showed himself in his presence. Listen, O Yudhishthira, to what Nārada said unto Srinjaya, having approached that king, who afflicted with grief and deprived of his senses, was indulging in piteous lamentations. Nārada said,—[O Srinjaya, with thy desires unfulfilled, thou shalt have to die,[35-36] although we, utterers of *Brahma*, live in thy house! Avikshit's son Marutta even, O Srinjaya, we hear, had to die![37] Piqued with Vrihaspati, he had caused Samvarta

* Of golden excreta.—T.

himself to officiate at one of his great sacrifices!* Unto that royal sage the illustrious lord (Mahādeva) himself had given wealth in the shape of a golden plateau of Himavat. (With that wealth) king Marutta had performed diverse sacrifices. Unto him, after the completion of his sacrifices, diverse tribes of celestials, those creators of the universe, with Indra himself in their company and with Vrihaspati at their head, used to come. All the carpets and furniture of his sacrificial compound were of gold.[38-40] The regenerate classes, desirous of food, all ate as they pleased, at his sacrifices, food that was clean and agreeable to their wishes. And at all his sacrifices, milk and curds and clarified butter, and honey, and other kinds of food and edibles, all of the best order, and robes and ornaments desirable for their costliness, gratified Brāhmanas thoroughly conversant with the *Vedas*. The very gods used to become distributors of food in king Marutta's palace.[41-43] The *Viçwedevas* were the courtiers of that royal sage, the son of Avikshit. By him were gratified the dwellers of heaven with libations of clarified butter. And gratified (therewith), these, in their turn, increased that powerful ruler's wealth of crops with copious showers of rain. He always contributed to the gratification of the *Rishis*, the *Pitris*, and the gods, and thereby made them happy, by practising *Brahmacharya*, study of the *Vedas*, obsequial rites, and all kinds of gifts. And his beds and carpets and vehicles, and his vast stores of gold difficult to be given away,[44-46] in fact, all that untold wealth of his, were given away voluntarily unto the Brāhmanas. Cakra himself used to wish him well. His subjects were made happy (by him).[47] Acting always with piety, he (ultimately) repaired to those eternal regions of bliss acquired by his religious merit. With his children and counsellors and wives and descendants and kins-

---

* The Bengal reading is *Samvartam*. The Bombay text makes *Samvarta* a nominative. I have adopted the Bengal reading. If the Bombay reading be accepted, the meaning would be that Samvarta himself, piqued with Vrihaspati, caused Marutta to perform a sacrifice. K. P. Singha makes a ludicrous blunder in supposing *Samvarta* to have been a kind of sacrifice.—T.

men,[48] king Marutta, in his youth, ruled his kingdom for a thousand years. When such a king, O Srinjaya, died, who was superior to thee in respect of the four cardinal virtues (*viz.*, ascetic penances, truth, compassion, and liberality), and who, superior to thee, was much more superior to thy son, do not grieve,—*O Çwaitya*,—for thy son saying he performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial present.]—' "[49-50]

SECTION LVI.

" '—Nārada said,—[King Suhotra also, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a prey to death. He was the foremost of heroes, and invincible in battle. The very gods used to come for seeing him.[1] Acquiring his kingdom virtuously, he sought the advice of his *Ritwijas* and domestic priests and Brāhmanas for his own good, and enquiring of them, used to obey their behests.[2] Well acquainted with the duty of protecting his subjects, possessed of virtue and liberality, performing sacrifices and subjugating foes, king Suhotra wished for the increase of his wealth.[3] He adored the gods by following the ordinances of the scriptures, and defeated his foes by means of his arrows. He gratified all creatures by means of his own excellent accomplishments.[4] He ruled the Earth, freeing her from *Mlecchas* and the forest theives.* The deity of the clouds showered gold unto him from year's end to year's end.[5] In those olden days, therefore, the rivers (in his kingdom) ran (liquid) gold, and were open to everybody for use.† The deity of the clouds showered in his kingdom large numbers of alligators and crabs and fishes of diverse species and various objects of desire, countless in number, that were all made of

---

* The word in the original is *Atāvika*, literally meaning one dwelling in the woods. It is very generally used in the sense of thieves or robbers, thus showing that these depredators from the earliest times, had the woods and the forests for their home.—T.

† *Vāhinyas* rivers. *Swairinyas*, open to everyboby. The Bengal reading is *abhavan* ; the Bombay reading, *Vyavahan*. If the former reading be adopted, it would mean the rivers were of liquid gold."—T.

gold. The artificial lakes in that king's dominions each measured full two miles. Beholding thousands of dwarfs and and humpbacks and alligators and *Makaras* and tortoises all made of gold, king Suhotra wondered much.[6-8] That unlimited wealth of gold, the royal sage Suhotra, performing a sacrifice at Kurujāngala, gave away unto the Brāhmanas, before the completion of the sacrifice.[9] Having performed a thousand Horse-sacrifices, a hundred *Rājasuyas*, many sacred Kshatriya-sacrifices,* in all of which he made abundant presents to the Brāhmanas,[10] and having performed daily rites, almost countless in number, undergone from specified desires, the king ultimately obtained a very desirable end. When, O Srinjaya, such a king died, who was superior to thee as regards the four cardinal virtues and who, superior to thee, was, therefore, much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not grieve, *O Çwaitya*,—for thy son saying he performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial present.]—' "[11-13]

SECTION LVII.

" '—Nārada said,—[The heroic king Paurava also, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a prey to death. That king gave away a thousand times thousand horses that were all white in hue.[1] At the Horse-sacrifice performed by that royal sage, countless numbers of learned Brāhmanas versed in the principles of *Çikshā* and *Akshara* came from diverse realms.†[2] These Brāhmanas, washed bythe *Vedas*, by knowledge, and by vows, and liberal and of agreeable countenances, having obtained from the king costly gifts such as robes and houses and excellent beds and carpets and vehicles and draft-cattle,[3] were always delighted by actors and dancers and singers, thoroughly competent and well-versed (in their respective arts), engaged in sport and ever striving for their diversion.[4] At each of his

---

* *I. e.*, Sacrifices ordained for Kshatriyas —T.

† *Cikshā*, one of the six branches of the *Vedas*; it may be called the orthoepy of the *Vedas*. *Akshara*, letters or the alphabet. The sense seems to be that these Brāhmanas were good readers of the *Vedas*.—T.

sacrifices in due time he gave away as sacrificial presents ten thousand elephants of golden splendour, with the temporal juice trickling down their bodies,[5] and cars made of gold with standards and banners. He also gave away, as sacrificial presents, a thousand times thousand maidens decked with ornaments of gold,[6] and cars and steeds and elephants for mounting, and houses and fields, and centuries of kine, by hundreds of thousands, and thousands of cowherds decked with gold. They that are acquainted with the history of the past sing this song [7-8] *viz.*, that in that sacrifice king Paurava gave away kine, with calves, having golden horns and silver hoofs and brass milkpots, and female slaves and male slaves and asses and camels, and sheep, countless in number ;[9] and diverse kinds of gems and diverse hills of food.[10]—That sacrificing king of the Angas successively performed, in the order of their merit, and according to what was competent for his own class, many auspicious sacrifices capable of yielding every object of desire.[11] When such a king, O Srinjaya, died who was superior to thee as regards the four cardinal virtues and who, superior to thee, was, therefore, much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying,—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya,*—grieve for thy son who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial present.]—' "[12]

SECTION LVIII.

—Nārada said,—[Uçinara's son Civi also, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a prey to death. That king had, as it were, put a leathern girdle around the Earth,[1] by making the Earth with her mountains and islands and seas and forests resound with the clatter of his car. That vanquisher of foes, *viz.*, king Civi, always slew the foremost of foes.[2] He performed many sacrifices with presents in profusion unto the Brāhmanas. That monarch of great prowess and great intelligence had acquired enormous wealth.[3] In battle he won the applause of all Kshatriyas.*

* The word in the original is *Murddhābhishikta*, which literally means one whose coronal locks have undergone the ceremony of the sacred investiture. Hence, it is used to denote Kshatriyas or persons of the royal order.—T.

Having brought the whole earth under subjection, he performed many Horse-sacrifices,[4] without obstruction, which were productive of great merit, giving away (as ascrificial presents) thousand erores of golden *nishkas*, and many elephants and steeds and other kinds of animals, much grain, and many deer and kine and sheep.[5] And king Civi gave away the sacred Earth consisting of diverse kinds of soil unto the Brāhmanas. Indeed, Uçinara's son Civi gave away as many kine as the number of rain-drops showered on the Earth, or the number of stars in the firmament, or the number of sand-grains on the bed of Gangā, or the number of rocks that constitute the mountain called Meru, or the number of gems or of (aquatic) animals in the ocean. The Creator himself hath not met with and will not meet with in the past, the present, or the future, another king capable of bearing the burdens that king Civi bore. Many were the sacrifices, with every kind of rites, that king Civi performed.[6-9] In those sacrifices, the stakes, the carpets, the houses, the walls, and the arches, were all made of gold. Food and drink, agreeable to the taste and perfectly clean, were kept in profusion. And the Brāhmanas that repaired to them could be counted in myriads and myriads.[10] Abounding with viands of every description, nothing but agreeable words (such as *give away* and *take)* were heard there. Milk and curds were collected in large lakes. In his sacrificial compound, there were rivers of drink and white hills of food.[11]—*Bathe, and drink, and eat as ye like,*—these only were the words heard there. Gratified with his righteous deeds, Rudra gave Civi a boon, saying,[12]—As thou givest away, let thy wealth, thy devotion, thy fame, thy religious acts, the love that all creatures bear thee, and the heaven (thou wilt attain), be all inexhaustible![13]—Having obtained all these desirable boons, even Civi, when the time came, left this world for heaven. When, O Srinjaya, he died who was superior to thee in respect of the four cardinal virtues and who, superior to thee, was much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying,— *Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya,*— grieve for thy son who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial present.]—' "[14-15]

SECTION LIX.

"'—Narada said,—[Rāma the son of Daçaratha, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a prey to death. His subjects were as much delighted with him as a sire is delighted with the children of his lions.[1] Endued with immeasurable energy, countless virtues were in him. Of unfading glory, Rāma, the elder brother of Lakshmana, at the command of his father, lived for fourteen years in the woods, with his wife. That bull among men slew in Janasthāna fourteen thousand *Rākshasas* for the protection of the ascetics. While dwelling there, the *Rākshasa* called Rāvana, beguiling both him and his companion (Lakshmana), ravished his wife the princess of Videha. Like the Three-eyed (Mahādeva), in days of old, slaying (the *Asura)* Andhaka, Rāma in wrath slew in battle that offender of Pulastya's race who had never before been vanquished by any foe. Indeed, the mighty-armed Rāma slew in battle that descendant of Pulastya's race with all his kinsmen and followers, that *Rākshasa* who was incapable of being slain by the gods and the *Asuras* together, that wretch who was a thorn unto the gods and the the Brāhmanas. In consequence of his affectionate treatment of his subjects, the celestials worshipped Rāma.[2-7] Filling the entire Earth with his achievements, he was much applauded by even the celestial *Rishis.* Compassionate unto all creatures, that king, having acquired diverse realms[8] and protected his subjects virtuously, performed a great sacrifice without obstruction. And the lord Rāma also performed a hundred Horse-sacrifices and the great sacrifice called *Jāruthya.*[9] And with libations of clarified butter he contributed to Indra's delight.* And the king performed diverse other sacrifices of great and varied merits.[10] And by these acts of his, Rāma conquered hunger and thirst, and all the diseases to which living creatures are subject. Possessed of every accomplishment, he always blazed with his own energy.[11] Indeed, Rāma the son of Daça-

---

* *Havisha mudamāvahat* ; or *havishām udam āvahat*, which would mean, he poured libations unto Indra as copious as water.—T.

ratha greatly outshone all creatures. When Rāma ruled his kingdom, the *Rishis*, the gods, and men, all lived together on the Earth. The lives of living creatures were never cut short. It was never otherwise. The life-breaths also, called *Prāna*, *Apāna*, *Samāna*, and the others, when Rāma ruled his kingdom, all performed their functions. All luminous bodies shone brighter, and calamities never occurred.[12-14] All his subjects were long-lived. None died in youth. The dwellers of heaven, highly gratified, used to get, according to (the ordinances of) the four *Vedas*,[15] libations of clarified butter and other offerings of food made by men. His realms were free from flies and gnats; and beasts of prey and poisonous reptiles there were none.[16] And none were of unrighteous tendencies, none were covetous, and none were ignorant.[17] The subjects, of all the (four) orders, were engaged in righteous and desirable acts. When the *Rākshasas*, about this time, obstructed the offerings to the *Pitris* and the worship of the gods in Janasthāna,[18] the lord Rāma, slaying them, caused those offerings and that worship to be once more given to the *Pitris* and the gods. Men were each blessed with a thousand children, and the period of their lives was a thousand years.[19] Seniors had never to perform *Çrāddhas* of their juniors.* Youthful in shape, of a dark-blue hue, of red eyes, possessed of the tread of an infuriate elephant,[20] with arms reaching down to the knees and beautiful and massive, of leonine shoulders, of great strength, and beloved by all creatures, Rāma ruled his kingdom for eleven thousand years. His subjects always took his name.[21-22] While Rāma ruled his kingdom, the world became extremely beautiful. Taking at last his four kinds of subjects† with him, Rāma went to heaven,[23] having established his own line consisting of eight houses on the Earth. When even he died, O Srinjaya, who was superior to thee in respect of the four cardinal

---

* Because juniors never pre-deceased their seniors. The causative form of *akàrayan* is a license.—T.

† The four kinds of creatures that owned Rāma's sway were (1) those that were oviparous, (2) those that were viviparous, (3) those born of filth, and (4) that vegetables.—T.

virtues[24] and who, superior to thee, was much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying,—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya,* —grieve for thy son who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial present.]—' "[25]

SECTION LX.

" '—Nārada said,—[Even king Bhagiratha, O Srinjaya, we hear, was dead. He caused the shores of Gangā, called after his name *Bhāgirathi,* to be covered with flights of steps made of gold.*[1] Surpassing all kings and all princes he, gave unto the Brāhmanas a thousand times thousand damsels decked with ornaments of gold.[2] All those damsels were upon cars. And unto every car were yoked four steeds. And behind each car were hundred elephants all decked in gold.[3] And behind each elephant were a hundred steeds. And unto each steed were a hundred kine. And behind each cow were (many) goats and sheep.[4] King Bhagiratha gave enormous presents at his sacrifices. For that reason large was the concourse of men assembled there. Afflicted therewith, Gangā was much pained. *Protect me!*—she said and sat down on his lap.[5] And because Gangā thus sat upon his lap in days of old, therefore, she, like the celestial *danceuse* Urvaçi came to be regarded as his daughter and was named after his name.[6] And having become the king's daughter, she became his son (by becoming, like a son, the means of salvation unto his deceased ancestors).† Sweet-speeched *Gandharvas* of celestial splendour, gratified,

---

* These were *ghàts* for facilitating access to the sacred stream.—T.

† Both 5 and 6 are difficult *slokas.* But for Nilakantha I could never have understood their sense. The reading *Jalaughena,* occurring in both the Bengal and the Bombay editions, is a mistake for *Janaughena.* The construction of 5 is this: *Dakshinā Bhuyasirddadat*: *tena (hetunā Janaughena ākrāntā.* The story of the salvation of Bhagiratha's ancestors is a beautiful myth. King Sagara (whence *Sāgara* or the Ocean) had sixty thousand sons. They were all reduced to ashes by the curse of the sage Kapila, an incarnation of Vishnu himself. Bhagiratha, a remote descendant, caused the sacred Gangā to roll over the spot where the ashes of his ancestors lay, and thus procured their salvation.—T.

sang all this in the hearing of the *Rishis*, the gods, and human beings.[7]* Thus, O Srinjaya, did that goddess, *viz.*, the ocean-going Gangā, select the lord Bhagiratha, that descendant of Ikshāku, that performer of sacrifices with profuse gifts (to the Brāhmanas), as her father.[8] His sacrifices were always decked with (the presence of) the very gods with Indra at their head. And the gods used to take their respective shares, and removing all impediments, to facilitate those sacrifices in every way.[9] Possessed of great ascetic merit, Bhagiratha gave unto the Brāhmanas whatever benefit they desired, without obliging them to stir from the place where they might entertain those desires.[10] There was nothing which he could withhold from the Brāhmanas. Every one received from him everything he coveted. At last the king ascended to the region of Brahman, through the grace of the Brāhmanas.[11] For that object on which the *Rishis* that subsisted on the rays of the sun used to wait upon the sun and the presiding diety of the sun, for that very object they used to wait upon the lord Bhagiratha, that ornament of the three worlds.[12] When he died, O Srinjaya, who was superior to thee, as regards the four cardinal virtues, and who, superior to thee, was much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying,—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya,*—grieve for the latter who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial presents.]—' "[13]

SECTION LXI.

"'—Nārada said,—[Dilipa the son of Ilavila, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a prey to death. Brāhmanas, versed in knowledge of Truth, devoted to the performance of sacrifices, blessed with children and children's children, and numbering myriads upon myriads, were present at his century of sacrifices. King Dilipa, having performed various sacrifices, gave away this Earth, filled with treasures, unto the Brāhmanas. At the sacrifices of Dilipa, the roads were all made of gold.[1-3] The very

---

* The correct reading is *Valguvādinas*, and not the form in the genetive plural.—T.

gods with Indra at their head used to come to him regarding him as *Dharma* himself. The upper and lower rings in his sacrificial stake were made of gold.[4] Eating his *Rāga-khāndavas*, many persons, at his sacrifices, were seen to lie down on the roads. While battling over the waters, the two wheels of Dilipa's car never sank in that liquid. This seemed exceedingly wonderful, and never occurred to other kings. Even those that saw king Dilipa, that firm bowman always truthful in speech and giving away profuse gifts at his sacrifices, succeeded in ascending to heaven. In the abode of Dilipa, called also Khattānga, these five sounds were always to be heard,[5-7] *viz.*, the sound of *Vedic* recitations, the twang of bows, and *Drink, Enjoy*, and *Eat !*—When he died, O Srinjaya, who was superior to thee in respect of the four cardinal virtues and who, superior to thee, was much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying,—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya*,—grieve for thy son who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial gift.]*—' "[8-9]

SECTION LXII.

" '—Nārada said,—[Māndhātri the son of Yuvanāçwa, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a prey to death. That king vanquished the gods, the *Asuras*, and men.[1] Those celestials, *viz.*, the twin Açwins, brought him out of his father's womb by a surgical operation. Once on a time, king Yuvanāçwa, while chasing the deer in the forest, became very thirsty and his steeds also became exceedingly fatigued.[2] Beholding a wreath of smoke, the king (directed by it) went to a sacrifice and drank the sacred sacrificial butter that lay scattered there. (The king thereupon conceived). Beholding that Yuvanāçwa was quick with child,[3] those best of physicians, *viz.*, the twin Açwins among the celestials, extracted the child from the king's womb. Seeing that child of celestial splendour lying on the lap of his father,[4] the gods said unto one another,—What shall support this child ?—Then Vāsava said,—Let the child suck my fingers.[5]—Thereupon, from the fingers of Indra issued milk

---

* In the Bombay edition some verses occur after the 3rd.—T.

sweet as nectar. And since Indra, from compassion, had said,—*He will draw his sustenance from me*,—and showed him that kindness,[6] therefore, the gods named that child *Māndhātri*.* Then jets of milk and clarified butter dropped into the mouth of Yuvanāçwa's son from the hand of the high-souled Indra. The boy continued to suck the hand of Indra and by that means to grow.[7-8] In twelve days he became twelve cubits in stature and endued with great prowess. And he conquered the whole of this Earth in course of a single day.[9] Of virtuous soul, possessed of great intelligence, heroic, devoted to truth, and a master of his passions, Māndhātri vanquished by his bow Janamejaya and Sudhanwan and Jaya and Cuna and Vrihadratha and Asita and Nriga.† All the lands lying between the hill where the Sun rises and the hill where he sets, are known to this day as the dominions of Māndhātri. Having performed a hundred Horse-sacrifices, and a hundred *Rājasuya* sacrifices also,[10-12] he gave away, O monarch, unto the Brāhmanas, some *Rohita* fishes made of gold, that were ten *Yojanas* in length and one *Yojana* in breadth.[13] Mountains of savoury food and edibles, of diverse kinds, after the Brāhmanas had been entertained, were eaten by others (who came at his sacrifices) and contributed to their gratification.[14] Vast quantities of food and edibles and drink, and mountains of rice, looked beautiful as they stood. Many rivers, having lakes of clarified butter, with diverse kinds of soup for their mire, curds for their froth, and liquid honey for their water, looking beautiful, and wafting honey and milk, encircled mountains of solid viands. Gods and *Asuras* and men and *Yakshas* and *Gandharvas* and Snakes and birds,[15-16] and many Brāhmanas, accomplished in the *Vedas* and their branches, and many *Rishis*, came to his sacrifices. Amongst those present there, none was illiterate.[17] King Māndhātri, having bestowed the Earth bounded by the seas and full of wealth upon the Brāhmanas, at last disappeared like the Sun.[18] Filling all the points of the compass with his fame, he repaired to the regions of the righteous. When he

* Literally—"having me for his sustainer.—T.

† Instead of Cuna, the Bombay text gives *Puru*.—T.

died, O Srinjaya, who excelled thee in the four cardinal virtues and who, superior to thee, was much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying,—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya,*—grieve for the latter who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial gift.]—' "[19-20]

SECTION LXIII.

" '—Narada said,—[Yayāti the son of Nahusa, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a prey to death. Having performed a hundred *Rājasuyas*, a hundred Horse-sacrifices, a thousand *Pundarikas*, a hundred *Vājapeyas*, a thousand *Atirātras*, innumerable *Chāturmāsyas*, diverse *Agnishtomas*, and many other kinds of sacrifices, in all of which he made profuse gifts unto the Brāhmanas, he gave away unto the Brāhmanas, having counted it first, the whole of the wealth that existed on this Earth in the possession of *Mlecchas* and other Brāhmana-hating people. When the gods and the *Asuras* were arrayed for battle, king Yayāti aided the gods.[1-4] Having divided the Earth into four parts, he gave it away unto four persons. Having performed various sacrifices and virtuously begotten excellent offspring upon (his wives) Devayāni the daughter of *uçanas*, and Carmishthā, king Yayati, who was like unto a celestial, roved through the celestial woods at his own pleasure like a second Vāsava. Acquainted with all the *Vedas*, when, however, he found that he was not satiated with the indulgence of his passions,[5-7] he then, with his wives, retired into the forest, uttering this saying,—Whatever of paddy and wheat and gold and animals and women there are on Earth, even the whole of these is not sufficient for one man. Thinking of this, one should cultivate contentment!—Thus abandoning all his desires, and attaining to contentment, the lord Yayāti, installing (his son) on his throne, retired into the forest. When he died, O Srinjaya, who was superior to thee in respect of the four cardinal virtues and who, superior to thee, was much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying,—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya,*—grieve for the latter who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial present.]' "[8-11]

SECTION LXIV.

"'Nārada said,—[Nābhāga's son Amvarisha, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a prey to death. Alone he battled with a thousand times thousand kings.[1] Desirous of victory, those foes, accomplished in weapons, rushed against him in battle from all sides, uttering fierce exclamations.[2] Aided by his strength and activity and the skill he had acquired by practice, he cut off, by the force of his weapons, the umbrellas, the weapons, the standards, the cars, and the lances of those enemies, and dispelled his anxieties.*[3] Desirous of saving their lives, those men, doffing their coats of mail, implored him (for mercy). They sought his protection, saying,—We yield ourselves to thee![4]—Reducing them to subjection, and conquering the whole earth, he performed a hundred sacrifices of the best kind, according to the rites ordained in the scriptures, O sinless one![5] Food possessed of every agreeable quality was eaten (at those sacrifices) by large classes of people. At those sacrifices, the Brāhmanas were respectfully worshipped and greatly gratified.[6] And the regenerate classes ate sweet-meats, and *Purikas*, and *Pupas*, and *Çashkulis* of good taste and large size, and *Karambhas*, and *Prithumridwikas*, and diverse kinds of well-dressed edibles, and various kinds of soup, and *Maireya*, and *Rāgakhīndavas*, and diverse kinds of confectionery, well-prepared, soft, and of excellent fragrance, and clarified butter, and honey, and milk, and water, and sweet curds, and many kinds of fruit and roots agreeable to the taste.†[7-9] And they that were habituated to wines, drank, in due time, diverse kinds of intoxicating drinks for the sake of the pleasure these produced, and sang and played upon their musical instruments.[10] And others, by thousands, intoxicated with what they drank, danced and merrily sang hymns to the praise of Amvarisha; while others, unable to bear themselves erect, fell down on the earth.[11] In those sacrifices, king Amvarisha gave, as sacrificial presents, the kingdoms

---

* The Bengal texts read this verse differently.—T.

† The words in italics are names of Indian confectionery, prepared with wheat or barley, milk, and sugar or honey.—T.

of hundreds and thousands of kings unto the ten milions of priests (employed by him).[12] Having performed diverse sacrifices, the king gave unto the Brāhmanas, as sacrificial presents, numbers of princes and kings whose coronal locks had undergone the sacred bath, all cased in golden coats of mail, all having white umbrellas spread over their heads, all seated on golden cars, all attired in excellent robes and having large trains of followers, and all bearing their sceptres and in possession of their treasuries. The great *Rishis*, seeing what he did, were highly gratified, and said, —None amongst men in past times did, none in the future will be able to do, what king Amvrisha of profuse liberality is doing now![13-16]—When he, O Srinjaya, died who was superior to thee in respect of the four cardinal virtues and who, superior to thee, was much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, therefore, saying,—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya*,—grieve for the latter who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial present!]—' "[17]

SECTION LXV.

" '—Nārada said,—[King Caçavindu, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a prey to death. Of great beauty and prowess incapable of being baffled, he performed diverse sacrifices.[1] That high-souled monarch had one hundred thousand wives. From each of those wives were born a thousand sons.[2] All those princes were endued with great prowess. They performed millions of sacrifices. Accomplished in the *Vedas*, those kings performed many foremost of sacrifices.[3] All of them were cased (on occasions of battle) in golden coats of mail. And all of them were excellent bowmen. All those princes born of Caçavindu performed Horse-sacrifices.[4] Their father, O best of monarchs, in the Horse-sacrifice he performed, gave away, (as sacrificial presents), all those sons unto the Brāhmanas. Behind each of those princes were hundreds upon hundreds of cars and elephants[5] and fair maidens decked in ornaments of gold. With each maiden were a hundred elephants; with each elephant, a hundred cars;[6] with each car a hundred steeds decked in garlands of gold. With each of those steeds were a thousand kine; and with each cow were fifty goats.[7] The highly blessed Caçavindu gave away unto

the Brāhmanas, in that great Horse-sacrifice of his such unlimited wealth![3] The king caused as many sacrificial stakes of gold to be made for that great Horse-sacrifice of his as is the number, doubled, of sacrificial stakes of wood in other sacrifices of the kind.[9] There were mountains of food and drink of the height of about two miles each. Upon the completion of his Horse-sacrifice, thirteen such mountains of food and drink remained (untouched).[10] His kingdom abounded with people that were contented and well-fed. And it was free from all inroads of evil and the people were perfectly happy. Having ruled for many long years, Caçavindu at last ascended to heaven.[11] When he died, O Srinjaya, who was superior to thee in respect of the four cardinal virtues and who, superior to thee, was, therefore, much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying,—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya,*—grieve for the latter who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial presents![]—' "[12]

SECTION LXVI.

" '—Nārada said,—[Gaya the son of Amartarayas, O Srinjay, we hear, fell a prey to death. That king, for a hundred years, ate nothing but what remained of the libations of clarified butter poured into the fire.[1] Agni (gratified with this proof of great devotion) offered to give him a boon. Gaya solicited the boon (he desired), saying,—I desire to have a thorough knowledge of the *Vedas* through ascetic penances, through practice of *Brahmacharya,* and of vows and rules, and through the grace of my superiors![*] I desire also inexhaustible wealth, through practice of the duties of my own order and without injury to others![2-3] I wish also that I may always be able to make gifts unto Brāhmanas, with devotion! Let me also procreate sons upon wives belonging to my own order and not upon others![4] Let me be able to give away food with devotion. Let my heart always delight in righteousness! O (Agni) thou supreme cleanser, let no impediment overtake me while I am engaged in acts for

---

* These are the methods by which he sought a knowledge of the *Vedas.*—T.

the attainment of religious merit![5]—Saying—*So be it*,—Agnī disappeared there and then. And Gaya also, acquiring all he had asked for, subjugated his foes in fair fight.[6] King Gaya then performed, for a full hundred years, diverse kinds of sacrifices with profuse presents unto the Brāhmanas and the vows called *Chaturmāsyas* and others. Every year, for a century, the king gave (unto the Brāhmanas) one hundred and sixty thousand kine, ten thousand steeds, and one hundred thousand crores gold *(nishkas)*, upon rising (on the completion of his sacrifices).[7-9] Under every constellation also, he gave away the presents ordained for each of those occasions.* Indeed, the king performed various sacrifices like another Soma or another Angiras.[10] In his great Horse-sacrifice, king Gaya, making the Earth golden, gave her away unto the Brāhmanas.[11] In that sacrifice the stakes of king Gaya were all exceedingly costly, being of gold, decked with gems, and delightful to all creatures.[12] Capable of filling every wish, Gaya gave those stakes unto well-pleased Brāhmanas and other people.[13] The diverse classes of creatures dwelling in the ocean, the woods, the islands, the rivers male and female, the waters, the towns, the provinces, and even in heaven, were all gratified with the wealth and food distributed at Gaya's sacrifices. And they all said,—No other sacrifice can come up to this one of Gaya![14-15]—The sacrificial altar of Gaya was thirty *Yojanas* in length, six and twenty *Yojanas* in width, and four and twenty *Yojanas* in height. And it was made entirely of gold, and overspread with pearls and diamonds and gems. And he gave away this altar unto the Brāhmanas, as also robes and ornaments.[16-17] And the munificent monarch also gave unto the Brāhmanas other presents of the kind laid down (in the scriptures). Upon the completion of that sacrifice, five and twenty hills of food remained untouched,[18] and many lakes and several beautifully flowing rivulets of juicy drinks, and many heaps, besides, of robes and ornaments.[19] And in consequence of the merit of that great sacrifice, Gaya came to be well-known in the three worlds. And due

---

* *Nakshatra-dakshinā* is explained by Nilakantha as *Nakshtra-vihitā-Dakshinā*.—T.

to that sacrifice are the eternal Banian and the sacred *Brahmasaras.*[20] When he died, O Srinjaya, who was superior to thee in respect of four cardinal virtues and who, superior to thee, was, therefore, much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying,—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya,*—grieve for the latter who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial present !]—' "[21]

SECTION LXVII.

" '—Nārada said,—[Rantideva the son of Sankriti, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a prey to death. That high-souled king had two hundred thousand cooks to distribute excellent food, raw and cooked, like unto *Amrita,* unto the Brāhmanas, by day and by night, who might come to his house as guests.*[1-2] The king gave away unto the Brāhmanas his wealth acquired by righteous means. Having studied the *Vedas,* he subjugated his foes in fair fight.[3] Of rigid vows and always engaged in the due performance of sacrifices, countless animals, desirous of going to heaven, used to come to him of their own accord.[4]† So large was the number of animals sacrificed in the *Agnihotra* of that king that the secretions flowing from his kitchen from the heaps of skins deposited there caused a veritable river. And that river, from this circumstance, came to be called the *Charmanwati.*[5]‡ He incessantly gave away *nishkas* of bright gold unto the Brāhmanas.— I give thee *nishkas !*— I give thee *nishkas !*—these were the words incessantly uttered by him.[6] —I give thee,— I give thee,— saying these words he gave away thousands of *nishkas.* And once again, with soft words to the Brāhmanas, he give away *nishkas.*[7] Having given away, in course of a single day, one crore of such coins, he thought that he had given away very little. And therefore, he would give away many more. Who else is there that would be able to give what he gave ?[8] The king gave away wealth,

---

* The Bengal reading of the second line of the second verse is vicious. At any rate, the Bombay reading is better.—T.

† Animats slain in sacrifices are believed to go to heaven.—T.

‡ Identified with the modern chumabal.—T.

thinking,—If I do not give wealth into the hands of Brāhmanas, great and eternal grief, without doubt, will be mine![9]—For a hundread years, every fortnight, he gave unto thousands of Brāhmanas a golden bull unto each, followed by a century of kine and eight hundred pieces of *nishkas*. All the articles that were needed for his *Agnihotra*, and all that were needed for his other sacrifices,[10-11] he gave away unto the *Rishis*, including *Karakas*§ and water-pots and plates and pans, and beds and carpets and vehicles, and mansions and houses,[12] and diverse kinds of trees, and various kinds of viands. Whatever utensils and articles Rantideva possesssed were all of gold.[13] They that are acquainted with the history of ancient times, seeing the superhuman affluence of Rantideva, sing this song,[14] *viz.*,—We have not seen such accumulated treasures even in the abode of Kuvera; what need be said, therefore, of human beings?[15]—And people wonderingly said,—Without doubt, the kingdom of Rantideva is made of gold.* On such nights when guests were assembled in the abode of Rantideva,[16] one and twenty thousand kine were sacrified (for feeding them). And yet the royal cooks, decked with begemmed ear-rings, had to cry out, saying,[17] —Eat as much soup as you like, for, of meat, there is not as much today as in other days!—Whatever gold was left belonging to Rantideva, he gave even that remnant away unto the Brāhmanas during the progress of one of his sacrifices. In his very sight the gods used to take the libations of clarified butter poured into the fire for them,[18-19] and the *Pitris* the food that was offered them in *Çrāddhas*. And all superior Brāhmanas used to obtain from him (the means of gratifying) all their desires. When he died, O Srinjaya, who was superior to thee in respect of the four cardinal virtues[20] and who, superior to thee, was, therefore, much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya,*

---

§ A kind of vessel by Brāhmanas and others for begging.—T.

* *Vaswoksārà* means "made of gold." It is a feminine adjective. The substantive is omitted. I think the passage may mean—"The *city* of Rantideva is made of gold."—T.

—grieve for the latter who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial gift !]—' "[21]

SECTION LXVIII.

"'—Nārada said,—[Dushmanta's son Bharata, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a prey to death. While only a chlld (living) in the forest, he achieved feats incapable of being achieved by others.[1] Endued with great strength, he speedily deprived the very lions, white as snow and armed with teeth and claws, of all their prowess, and dragged them and bouud them (at his pleasure).[2] He used to check tigers also, that were fiercer and more ruthless (than lions), and bring them to subjection. Seizing other beasts of prey possessed of great might, and even huge elephants, dyed with red arsenic and spotted with other liquid minerals, by their teeth and tusks, he used to bring them to subjection, causing their mouths to become dry or obliging them to fly away.[3-4] Possessed of great might, he used also to drag the mightiest of buffalos. And in consequence of his strength, he checked proud lions by hundreds, and powerful *Srimaras* and horned rhinoceroses and other animals. Binding them by their necks and crushing them to an inch of their lives, he used to let them go.[5-6] For those feats of his, the regenerate ascetics (with whom he lived) came to call him *Sarvadamana* (the controller of all). His mother at last forbade him to torture animals in that way.[7] Endued with great prowess he performed a hundred Horse-sacrifices on the banks of Yamunā, three hundred such sacrifices on the banks of Saraswati, and four hundred on the banks of Gangā.[8] Having performed these sacrifices he once more performed a thousand Horse-sacrifices and a hundred *Rājasuyas*, great sacrifices, in which his gifts also to the Brāhmanas were very profuse.[9] Other sacrifices, again, such as the *Agnishtoma*, the *Atirātra*, the *Ukthya* and the *Viçwajit*, he performed, together with thousands and thousands of *Vājapeyas*, and completed without any impediment.[10] The son of Cakuntalā, having performed all these, gratified the Brāhmanas with presents of wealth. Possessed of great fame, Bharata then gave ten thousand billions of coins, made of the most pure

gold, unto Kanwa (who had brought up his mother Cakuntalā as his own daughter). The gods with Indra at their head, accompanied by the Brāhmanas, coming to his sacrifice, set up his sacrificial stake made entirely of gold and measuring in width a hundred *Vyāmas.** And the imperial Bharata of noble soul, that victor over all foes, that monarch never conquered by any enemy, gave away unto the Brāhmanas beautiful horses and elephants and cars, decked with gold, and beautiful gems of all kinds, and camels and goats and sheep, and slaves—male and female—and wealth, and grain, and milch cows with claves, and villages and houses and fields, and diverse kinds of robes, numbering by millions and millions. When he died, O Srinjaya, who was superior to thee in respect of the four cardinal virtues[11-16] and who, superior to thee, was, therefore, much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya,*—grieve for the latter who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial present !]—' "[17]

SECTION LXIX.

" 'Nārada said,—[Vena's son, king Prithu, O Srinjaya, we hear, fell a pray to death. In the *Rājasuya* sacrifice he performed, the great *Rishis* installed him as Emperor (of the world).[1] He vanquished all, and through his achievements, became known (all over the world). For this he came to be called *Prithu* (the celebrated). And because he protected all people from wounds and injuries, for this he became a true *Kshatriya.*†[2] Beholding Vena's son Prithu, all his subjects said,—We are highly pleased with him !—In consequence of this affection that he enjoyed of his subjects he came to be called a *Rājā.*‡[3] During the time of Prithu, the Earth, without being cultivated, yielded crops in sufficiency. All the kine, again, yielded milk when-

---

* A *vyāma* is the space between the two arms extended at their furthest.—T.

† Literally, a *Kshatriya* is one that rescues another from wounds and injuries.—T.

‡ A *rājā* is one who enjoys the affections of his people, and with whom they are delighted.—T.

ever they were touched. Every lotus was full of honey.[4] The *Kuça* blades were all of gold, agreeable to the touch, and otherwise delightful. And the subjects of Prithu made cloths of those blades, and the beds also on which they lay.[5] All the fruits were soft and sweet and like unto *Amrita* (in taste). And these constituted the food of his subjects none amongst whom had ever to starve.[6] And all men in Prithu's time were hale. And all their wishes were crowned with fruition. They had nothing to fear. On trees or in caves, they dwelt as they liked.[7] His dominions were not distributed into provinces and towns. The people lived happily and in joy as each desired.[8] When king Prithu went to the sea, the waves became solid. The very mountains used to yield him openings that he might pass through them. The standard of his car never broke (obstructed by anything).[9] Once on a time, the tall trees of forest, the mountains, the gods, the *Asuras*, men, the snakes, the seven *Rishis*, the *Apsaras*,[10] and the *Pitris*, all came to Prithu seated at his ease, and addressing him, said,—Thou art our Emperor! Thou art king! Thou art our protector and father! Thou art our Lord![11] Therefore, O great king, give us boons after our own hearts, through which we may, for ever, obtain gratification and joy![12] Unto them Prithu the son of Vena said,—So be it!—Then taking up his *Ajagava* bow* and some terrible arrows the like of which existed not, he reflected for a moment. He then addressed the Earth, saying,[13]—Come quickly, O Earth! Yield to these the milk they desire! From that, blessed be thou, I will give them the food they solicit![14]—Thus addressed by him, the Earth said,—It behoveth thee, O hero, to regard me as thy daughter!—Prithu answered,—So be it!—And then that great ascetic having his passions under control, made all arrangements (for milking the Earth).[15] Then the entire assemblage of creatures began to milk the Earth. And first of all the tall trees of the forest rose for milking her.[16] The Earth then, full of affection, stood there, desiring a calf, a milker, and vessels (wherein to hold the milk). Then the blossoming *Çāla* became the calf, the banian became the milker,[17] torn buds became

* The bow of Çiva, otherwise called Pināka.—T.

the milk, and the auspicious fig tree became the vessel. (Next, the mountains milked her). The Eastern hill, whereon the Sun rises, became the calf; the prince of mountains, *viz.*, Meru, became the milker;[18] the diverse gems and deciduous herbs became the milk; and the stones became the vessels (for holding that milk). Next one of the gods became the milker, and all things capable of bestowing energy and strength became the coveted milk.[19] The *Asuras* then milked the Earth, having wine for their milk, and using an unbaked pot for their vessel. In that act, Dwimurddhan became the milker, and Virochana the calf.[20] Then human beings milked the Earth for cultivation and crops. The Self-create Manu became their calf, and Prithu himself the milker.[21] Next the Snakes milked the Earth, getting poison as the milk, and using a vessel made of a gourd. Dhritarāshtra became the milker, and Takshaka the calf.[22] The seven *Rishis*, capable of producing everything by their fiat,* then milked the Earth, getting the *Vedas* as their milk. Vrihaspati became the milker, the *Chhandas* were the vessel, and the excellent *Soma*, the calf.[23] The *Yakshas*, milking the Earth, got the power of disappearance at will as the milk, in an unbaked pot. Vaiçravana (Kuvera) became their milker, and Vrishadhdhaja their calf.[24] The *Gandharvas* and the *Apsaras* milked all fragrant perfumes in a vessel made of a lotus leaf. Chitraratha became their calf, and the puissant Viçwaruchi their milker.[25] The *Pitris* milked the Earth, getting *Swahā* as their milk in a vessel of silver. Yama the son of Vivaswat became their calf, and (the Destroyer *Antaka)* their milker.[26] Even thus was the Earth milked by that assemblage of creatures who all got for milk what they each desired. The very calves and vessels employed by them are existing to this day and may always be seen.[27] The powerful Prithu the son of Vena, performing various sacrifices, gratified all creatures in respect of all their desires by gifts of articles agreeable to their hearts.[28] And he caused golden images to be made of

---

* *Aklishtakarman*, literally, one who is never fatigued with work; hence, one capable of obtaining the results of action by a mere fiat of the will. It may also mean, of unspotted acts.—T.

every article on Earth, and bestowed them all on the Brāhmanas at his great Horse-sacrifice.*[29] The king caused six and sixty thousand elephants to be made of gold, and all those he gave away unto the Brāhmanas.[30] And this whole Earth also the king caused to be decked with jewels and gems and gold, and gave her away unto the Brāhmanas.[31] When he died, O Srinjaya, who was superior to thee as regards the four cardinal virtues and who, superior to thee, was, therefore, much more superior to thy son, thou shouldst not, saying—*Oh Çwaitya, Oh Çwaitya*,—grieve for the latter who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial present !]—' "[32]

SECTION LXX.

" '—Nārada said,—[Even the great ascetic Rāma, that hero worshipped by all heroes, that son of Jamadagni, of great fame, will die, without being contented (with the period of his life)![1] Rooting out all evils from the earth, he caused the primeval *Yuga* to set in. Having obtained unrivalled prosperity, no fault could be seen in him.†[2] His father having been slain and his calf having been stolen by the Kshatriyas, he, without any boast, slew Kārttavirya who had never been vanquished before by foes.[3] With his bow he slew four and sixty times ten thousand Kshatriyas already within the jaws of death.[4] In that slaughter were included fourteen thousand Brāhmana-hating Kshatriyas of the *Dantakura* country, all of whom he slew.[5] Of the Haihayās, he slew a thousand with his short club, a thousand with his sword, and a thousand by hanging.‡[6] Heroic warriors, with their cars, steeds, and elephants, lay dead on the field, slain by the wise son of Jamadagni, enraged at the slaughter of his father.[7] And Rāma, on that occasion, slew ten thousand Kshatriyas with his axe. He could not quietly

---

* *Pārthivas*, *i. e.*, relaing to the Earth.—T.

† The first line of this verse, I think, has been correctly explained by Nilakantha. The paraphrase is *ya imām bhumim sukhām kurvan ādyam (i. e., ādyam yugam) anuparyeti sma.*—T.

‡ The Bombay text adds some verses here which do not occur in the Bengal texts.—T.

bear the furious speeches uttered by those (foes of his).[8] And when many foremost of Brāhmanas uttered exclamations, mentioning the name of Rāma of Bhrigu's race,* then the valiant son of Jamadagni, proceeding against the Kāshmiras, the Daradas, the Kuntis, the Kshudrakas, the Mālavas, the Angas, the Vangas, the Kalingas, the Videhas, the Tāmraliptakas, the Rakshovāhas, the Vitahotras, the Trigartas, the Mārtikāvatas, counting by thousands, slew them all by means of his whetted shafts.[9-11] Proceeding from province to province, he thus slew thousands of *crores* of Kshatriyas. Creating a deluge of blood and filling many lakes also with blood as red as *Indrajopakas* or the wild fruit called *Vandujiva*, and bringing all the eighteen islands (of which the Earth is composed) under his subjection, that son of Bhrigu's race[12-13] performed a hundred sacrifices of great merit, all of which he completed and in all of which the presents he made unto the Brāhmanas were profuse. The sacrificial altar, eighteen *nalas* high, made entirely of gold, and constructed according to the ordinance,[14] full of diverse kinds of jewels and gems and decked with hundreds of standards, and this Earth abounding with domestic and wild animals,[15] were accepted by Kaçyapa as the sacrificial present made unto him by Rāma the son of Jamadagni. And Rāma also gave him many thousands of prodigious elephants all adorned with gold.[16] Indeed, freeing the Earth from all robbers, and making her teem with honest and graceful inhabitants, Rāma gave her away to Kaçyapa at his great Horse-sacrifice.[17] Having divested the Earth of Kshatriyas for one and twenty times, and having performed hundreds of sacrifices, the puissant hero gave away the Earth to the Brāhmanas.[18] And it was Māricha (Kaçyapa) who accepted from him the Earth with her seven islands. Then Kaçyapa said unto Rāma,—Go out of the Earth, at my command![19]—At the word of Kaçyapa, that fornemost of warriors, desirous of obeying the Brāhmana's behest, caused by his arrows the very ocean to stand aside,[20] and reparing to that best of mountains called Mahendra, continued to live there. Even that enhancer of the fame of the Bhrigus, possessed of such

* K. P. Sinha makes a ludicrous blunder in reading this line.—T.

numberless virtues,[21] that famous son of Jamadagni, of great splendour, will die! Superior to thee as regards the four cardinal virtues, and much more superior to thy son, (even he will die)![22] Do not, therefore, grieve for thy son who performed no sacrifice and made no sacrificial present. All these, superior to thee as regards the four cardinal virtues and as regards also a hundred other merits, all these foremost of men, have died, O Srinjaya, and they that are like them will also die!]—' "[23]

SECTION LXXI.

" 'Vyāsa said,—Hearing these sacred histories of sixteen kings, capable of enhancing the period of life (of the listener), king Srinjaya remained silent without saying anything.' The illustrious *Rishi* Nārada then said unto him thus sitting silent,—[O thou of great splendour, hast thou heard these histories recited by me, and hast thou caught their meaning?[2] Or, are all these lost, like a *Çrāddha* performed by a person of the regenerate classes having a *Çudrā* wife!]—Thus addressed, Srinjaya replied with joined hands,[3]—[O thou that hast wealth of asceticism, having listened to these excellent and praiseworthy histories of ancient royal sages all of whom performed great sacrifices with profuse presents unto the Brāhmanas,[4] my grief hath all been dispelled by wonder, like the darkness that is dispelled by the rays of the Sun! I have now been cleansed of my sins, and I do not feel any pain now. Tell me, what shall I do now![5]

" '—Nārada said,—[By good luck it is that thy grief hath been dispelled! Solicit thou the boon that thou desirest! Thou wilt obtain all that thou mayst ask! We never say what is false!.]"[6]

" '—Srinjaya said,—[I am happy with even this, *viz.*, that thou, O holy one, art gratified with me! He with whom thou, O holy one, art gratified, hath nothing unobtainable here![7]

" '—Nārada said,—[I will once more give thee thy son who was fruitlessly slain by the robbers, taking him out of terrible hell like an animal slaughtered in a sacrifice!]—[8]

" 'Vyāsa said,—Then the son of Srinjaya, of wonderful

splendour, appeared, that child resembling the son of Kuvera himself, bestowed by the gratified *Rishi* (on the bereaved father).[9] And King Srinjaya, once more meeting with his son, became highly delighted. And he performed many meritorious sacrifices, giving away profuse sacrificial presents upon completion.[10] Srinjaya's son had not fulfilled the purposes of his being. He had performed no sacrifice and had no children. Destitute of bravery, he had perished miserably and not in battle. It was for this reason that he could be brought back into life.*[11] As regards Abhimanyu, he was brave and heroic. He hath fulfilled the purposes of life, for the brave son of Subhadrā, having blasted his foes by thousands, hath left the world, falling in the field of battle![12] Those inexhaustible regions that are attainable by *Brahmacharya*, by knowledge, by acquaintance with the scriptures, by foremost of sacrifices, even those have been obtained by thy son.[13] Men of knowledge always desire heaven by their righteous deeds. They that are living in heaven never prefer this world to heaven.[14] Therefore, it is not easy for any desirable thing that might have been unattained by him to bring back into the world Arjuna's son slain in battle and now residing in heaven.[15] Thy son has attained to that eternal goal which is attained by *yogins* with eyes shut in contemplation, or by performers of great sacrifices, or people possessed of great ascetic merit.[16] After death, attaining a new body, that hero is shining like a king in his own immortal rays. Indeed, Abhimanyu has once more got his own body of lunar essence that is desirable by all regenerate persons. He deserveth not thy grief.†[17] Knowing this, be quiet, and slay thy foes. Let fortitude be thine. O sinless one, it is the living that stand in need of our grief, and not they that have attained to heaven.[18] His sins increase, O king, for whom the living grieve. Therefore, he that is wise, abandoning grief, should strive for (the) benefit (of the dead).[19] The living man

---

* *Sannāhikas*, *i. e.*, clad in mail.—T.

† The Bengal reading *Dwijaidhitām* is certainly better than the Bombay reading *Dwijochitām* although Nilakantha explains *uchi ām* as *abhimatām*.—T.

should think of the joy, the glory, and the happiness (of the dead). Knowing this, the wise never indulge in grief, for grief is grief.[20] Know this to be true! Rise up! Strive (to achieve thy purpose)! Do not grieve! Thou hast heard of the origin of Death, and her unexampled penances,[21] as also the impartiality of her behaviour towards all creatures. Thou hast heard that prosperity is unstable. Thou hast heard how the dead son of Srinjaya was revived.[22] O learned king, do not grieve! Peace be to thee, I go!—Having said this, the holy Vyāsa disappeared then and there.[23] Upon the departure of that master of speech, that foremost of intelligent persons, *viz.*, the holy Vyāsa, whose color was like that of the clouded sky, Yudhishthira, having derived consolation[24] in consequence of what he had heard about the sacrificial merit and prosperity of those great monarchs of olden times possessed of energy equal to that of the great Indra himself and all of whom had acquired wealth by righteous means,[25] mentally applauded those illustrious persons and became freed from grief. Once more, however, with a melancholy heart he asked himself, saying,—'What shall we say unto Dhananjaya?' "[26]

SECTION LXXII.

(Pratijnā Parva).

"Sanjaya said,—'When that terrible day, so fraught with the slaughter of creatures, departed, and when the sun set, the beautiful twilight of the evening spread itself.[1] The troops, O bull of Bharata's race, of both parties, had retired to their tents. Then the ape-bannered Jishnu, having slain large numbers of *Samsaptakas* by means of his celestial weapons, proceeded towards his tent, mounted on that victorious car of his. And as he was proceeding, he asked Govinda, with voice choked in tears,—Why is my heart afrighted, O Keçava, and why doth my speech falter? Evil omens encounter me, and my limbs are weak![2-4] Thoughts of disaster possess my mind without leaving it. On earth, in all sides, various omens strike me with fear! Of many kinds are those omens and indications, and seen

everywhere, foreboding dire calamity! Is it all right with my venerable superior, *viz.*, the king, with all his friends ?[5-6]—

" 'Vāsudeva said,—It is evident that everything is right with thy brother and his friends. Do not grieve, some trifling evil in another direction will happen.[7]—'

"Sanjay continued,—Then those two heroes, (*viz.*, Krishna and Arjuna), having adored the twilight,* mounted on their car and proceeded, talking of the incidents of that day's battle so destructive of heroes.[8] Having achieved feats exceedingly difficult of accomplishment, Vāsudeva and Arjuna at last reached the (Pāndava) encampment. Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, Vibhatsu, beholding the camp joyless and melancholy and everything to be in confusion, addressed Krishna with an agonised heart, and said,[9-10]—O Janārddana, no auspicious trumpet blows today, its blasts mingled with the beat of drums and the loud blare of conchs![11] The sweet *Vinī* also is nowhere played upon in accompaniment with slapping of palms.† Auspicious and delightful songs fraught with praise are nowhere recited or sung by our bards amongst the troops! The warriors also, beholding me, all recede, hanging down their heads![12-13] They do not tell me, as before, of the feats achieved by them! O Mādhava, is it all right with my brothers today ?[14] Beholding our own men plunged in grief, I know no peace! Is it all right, O giver of honors, with the ruler of the Pānchālas, or Virāta,[15] or all our warriors, O thou of unfading glory ? Alas, Subhadrā's son, ever cheerful, doth not today, with his brothers, come out with smiles to receive me returning from battle![16]—'

"Sanjaya said,—'Thus conversing, those two, (*viz.*, Krishna and Arjuna), entered their own camp. And they saw that the Pāndavas, all cheerless, were sitting, plunged into great grief.[17] Beholding his brothers and sons, the ape-bannered Arjuna became very cheerless. Not seeing the son of Subhadrā there, Arjuna said,[18]—Pale is the color I behold of the faces of you all!

---

* Twilight is herself the goddess who is supposed to be adored by certain prayers said on the occasion.—T.

† These slaps mark the cadences.—T.

I do not, again, see Abhimanyu! Nor doth he come to congratulate me![19] I heard that Drona had today formed the circular array. None amongst you, save the boy Abhimanyu, could break that array.[20] I, however, did not teach him how to come out of that array, after having pierced it. Did you cause the boy to enter that array?[21] Hath that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, that mighty bowman, having pierced that array, through numberless warriors of the enemy in battle, fallen at last in the fight? Oh, tell me how that hero, of mighty arms and red eyes, born (in our line) like a lion on the mountain breast, and equal unto the younger brother of Indra himself, hath fallen on the field of battle![22-23] What warrior, deprived of his senses by Death, ventured to slay that dear son of Subhadrā, that favourite of Draupadi and Keçava, that child ever loved by Kunti?[24] Equal unto the high-souled Vrishni hero Keçava himself in prowess and learning and dignity, how hath he been slain on the field of battle?[25] The favourite son of that daughter of the Vrishni race, always cherished by me, alas, if I do not see him I will repair to the abode of Yama![26] With locks ending in soft curls, of tender years, with eyes like those of a young gazelle, with tread like that of an infuriate elephant, tall like a *Çāla* offshoot,[27] of sweet speech accompanied with smiles, quiet, ever obedient to the behests of his superiors, acting like one of mature years though tender in age, of agreeable speech, reft of vanity,[28] of great courage and great energy, of large eyes resembling lotus petals, kind to those devoted to him, self-restrained, never following anything mean,[29] grateful, possessed of knowledge, accomplished in weapons, unretreating from battle, always delighting in fight, and enhancing the fears of foes,[30] engaged in the welfare of kinsmen, desirous of victory unto his sires, never striking first, perfectly fearless in battle,[31] alas, if I do not behold that son, I will repair to the abode of Yama! In the tale of car-warriors always reckoned as a *Mahāratha*,[32] superior to me one and a half times, of tender years, of mighty arms, over dear to Praddyumna and Keçava and myself,[33] alas, if I do not behold that son I will repair to the abode of Yama! Of beautiful nose, of beautiful forehead, of fair eyes and eyebrows and lips,[34] if I do not be-

hold that face what peace can my heart have? Melodious as the voice of the male *Kokila*, delightful, and sweet as the warblings of the *Vinā*,[35] without listening to his voice what peace can my heart have? His beauty was unrivalled, rare even among the celestials![36] Without casting my eyes on that form, what peace can my heart have? Accomplished in saluting (his superiors) with reverence, and always obedient to the behests of his sires,[37] alas, if I do not behold him what peace can my heart have? Brave in battle, accustomed to every luxury, deserving of the softest bed,[38] alas, he sleepeth today on the bare Earth as if there is none to take care of him although he is the foremost of those that have protectors to look after them! He on whom, while on his bed, the foremost of beautiful women used to attend,[39] alas, he, mangled with shafts, will have inauspicious jackalls, prowling over the field, to attend upon him today! He who was formerly awaked from his slumbers by singers and bards and panegyrists,[40] alas, he will today be surely awaked by discordant beasts of prey! That beautiful face of his eminently deserved to be shaded by the umbrella! Alas, the dust of the battle-field will surely begrim it today! O child, unfortunate that I am, death forcibly takes thee away from me, who was never satiated with looking at thee! Without doubt, that abode of Yama, which is always the goal of persons of righteous deeds,[41-43] that delightful mansion, illumined today by thy own splendour, is rendered exceedingly beautiful by thee! Without doubt, Yama and Varuna and Catakratu and Kuvera, obtaining thee as a favourite guest, are making much of thy heroic self!—Thus indulging in diverse lamentations like a merchant whose vessel has been drowned,[44-45] Arjuna, afflicted with great grief, asked Yudishthira, saying,—O thou of Kuru's race, hath he ascended to heaven, having caused a great slaughter among the enemy and contended with foremost warriors in the face of battle? Without doubt, while contending single-handed with foremost of warriors countless in number and fighting with vigor and resolution, his heart turned towards me from desire of help! While afflicted by Karna and Drona and Kripa and others with sharp shafts of diverse kinds and bright points, my son of

little strength, must have repeatedly thought—*My father will in this press be my rescuer!*[46-49]—I think, while indulging in such lamentations he was felled on the ground by cruel warriors! Or, perhaps, when he was begotten by me, when he was the nephew of Mādhava,[50] when he was born in Subhadrā, he could not have uttered such exclamations! Without doubt, my heart, hard as it is, is made of the essence of the thunder,[51] since it breaketh not even though I do not behold that mighty-armed hero of red eyes! How could those mighty bowmen of cruel hearts shoot their deep-piercing shafts upon that child of tender years who, again, was my son and the nephew of Vāsudeva? That noble-hearted youth who, coming forward everyday, used to congratulate me,[52-53] alas, why doth he not present himself today to me when I come back having slain the foe? Without doubt, overthrown, he lieth today on the bare earth, bathed in blood![54] Beautifying the Earth with his body, he lieth like the Sun fallen (from the firmament)! I grieve for Subhadrā, who, hearing of the death in battle of her unretreating son, will, afflicted with sorrow, cast away her life! What will Subhadrā, missing Abhimanyu, say unto me?[55-56] What also will Draupadi say unto me? Afflicted with grief as they are, what also shall I say unto them? Without doubt, my heart is made of the essence of the thunder, since it breaketh not[57] into a thousand fragments at the sight of my weeping daughter-in-law pierced with grief! The leonine shouts of the Dhārtarāshtras swelling with pride did, indeed, enter my ears![58] Krishna also had heard Yuyutsu censuring the heroes (of the Dhārtarāshtra army in these words):—Ye mighty car-warriors, having been unable to vanquish Vibhatsu, and having slain only a child,[59] why do ye rejoice! Ye unrighteous ones, ye will soon feel the might of the Pāndavas! Why, having done what is disagreeable to those two, *viz*, Keçava and Arjuna, in battle,[60] why do you in joy roar like lions when truly the hour for your sorrow is come? The fruits of this sinful deed of yours will soon overtake you![61] Heinous is the crime perpetrated by you! How long will it not bear its fruits?—Rebuking them in these words, the high-souled son of Dhritarāshtra by his Vaiçya wife,[62] went away, casting off his weap-

ons, afflicted with rage and grief! O Krishna, why did you not tell me all this during the battle? I would then have consumed all those car-warriors of cruel hearts![63]—'

'Sanjaya continued,—'Then Vāsudeva, comforting Pārtha who was afflicted with grief on account of his son, who was exceedingly thoughtful, whose eyes where bathed in tears, and who was, in fact, overwhelmed with this sorrow caused by the slaughter of his child,[64] said unto him,—Do not yield so to grief! This is the way of all brave, unreturning heroes,[65] especially of Kshatriyas, whose profession is battle! O foremost of intelligent men, even this is the goal ordained by the authors of our scriptures for unretreating heroes engaged in battle! Death is certain for heroes that do not retreat![66-67] There is no doubt that Abhimanyu hath ascended to those regions that are reserved for persons of righteous acts! O bull of Bharata's race, even this is coveted by all that are brave,[68] *viz.*, that they may die in battle, facing their foes! As regards Abhimanyu, he, having slain in battle many heroic and mighty princes,[69] hath met with that death in the face of battle which is coveted by heroes! Do not grieve, O tiger among men! The legislators of old have declared this to be the eternal merit of the Kshatriyas, *viz.*, their destruction in battle! O best of the Bharatas, these brothers of thine are all exceedingly cheerless,[70-71] as also these kings, and these thy friends, seeing thee plunged into grief! O giver of honors, comfort these in consoling words![72] That which should be known is known to thee! It behoveth thee not to grieve!—Thus comforted by Krishna of wonderful deeds, Pārtha[73] then said these words unto all his brothers, in a voice choked with sorrow:—O lord of Earth, I desire to hear how the mighty-armed Abhimanyu, how that hero of large eyes resembling lotus petals, fought! Ye will see that I will exterminate the foe with his elephants and cars and steeds,[74-75] I will exterminate in battle those slayers of my son with all their followers and kinsmen! Ye all are accomplished in arms. Ye all were armed with weapons.[76] How then could Subhadrā's son be slain even if it were the wielder of the thunder-bolt himself with whom he fought? Alas, if I had known that the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas would be unable to protect

my son in battle, I myself would then have protected him! Ye were then on your cars. Ye were shooting your shafts. Alas, how then could Abhimanyu be slain by the foe causing a great carnage in your ranks? Alas, ye have no manliness, nor have ye any prowess,[77-79] since in the very sight of you all was Abhimanyu slain! Or, I should chide my own self, since knowing that ye all are weak, cowardly, and irresolute, I went away! Alas, are your coats of mail and weapons of all kinds only ornaments for decking your persons, and were words given you only for speaking in assemblies, that ye failed to protect my son (even though ye were clad in mail, armed head to foot, and even though ye had assured me in words of your competence)?—Having said these words, Pārtha sat down, holding the bow and his excellent sword.[80-82] Indeed, none could, at that time, even look at Vibhatsu who then resembled the Destroyer himself in wrath, repeatedly drawing long breaths.[83] None of his friends or kinsmen could venture to look at or speak unto Arjuna as he sat there exceedingly afflicted with grief on account of his son and with face bathed in tears.[84] None, indeed, could address him, save Vāsudeva or Yudhishthira. These two, under all circumstances, were acceptable to Arjuna.[85] And because they were highly reverenced and dearly loved, therefore, could they alone address him at such times. Then king Yudhishthira, addressing Pārtha of eyes like lotus petals, who was then filled with rage and exceedingly afflicted with grief on account of the death of his son, said these words.' "[86]

SECTION LXXIII.

" 'Yudhishthira said,—O mighty-armed one, after thou hadst gone towards the army of the *Samsaptakas*, the preceptor Drona made fierce endeavours for seizing me.[1] We succeeded, however, in resisting Drona at the head of his array at all points, having, in that battle, disposed our vigorously-contending car-divisions in counter-array.[2] Held in check by a large number of warriors, and myself also having been well protected, Drona began to smite us with great activity, afflicting us with his

whetted shafts.[3] Thus afflicted by him, we could not then even gaze at his army, far less pierce it in battle.[4] All of us then, addressing thy son by Subhadrā, who was equal to thyself, O lord, in prowess, said unto him,—[O son, pierce this array of Drona]![5]—That valorous hero, thus urged by us, then sought, like a good horse, to take that burden on himself however unbearable it might have been for him.[6] Endued as he was with thy energy, aided by that knowledge of weapons which he derived from thee, that child then penetrated unto that array like Garuda penetrating into the ocean.[7] As regards ourselves, we followed that hero, that son of Subhadrā, desirous in, in that battle, of penetrating (into the Dhārtarāshtra army) by the same path by which Abhimanyu had entered it.[8] Then, O sire, the wretched king of the Sindhus, *viz.*, Jayadratha, in consequence of the boon granted to him by Rudra, checked all of us![9] Then Drona and Kripa and Karna and Drona's son, and the king of the Koçalas, and Kritavarman, these six car-warriors, surrounded the son of Subhadrā.[10] Having surrounded that child, all those great car-warriors,—too many for him although he was contending to the utmost of his power,—deprived him of his car.[11] After he had been deprived of his car, Dusçāsana's son, though he himself had a hair-breadth escape, succeeded, as chance would have it, in making Abhimanyu meet with his end.[12] As regards Abhimanyu, he, having slain many thousands of men and steeds and elephants, and eight thousand cars, and once more nine hundred elephants,[13] two thousand princes, and a large number of heroic warriors unknown to fame, and despatching in that battle king Vrihadvala also to heaven,[14] at last, through ill luck, met with his own death. Thus hath occurred this fact that so enhances our grief![15] That tiger among men hath even thus ascended to heaven!—Hearing these words uttered by king Yudhishthira, Arjuna,[16] saying—*Oh son!*—and breathing a deep sigh, fell down on the earth in great pain. Then all the warriors of the Pāndavas, surrounding Dhananjaya with cheerless faces,[17] began, filled with grief, to look at one another with winkless eyes. Recovering consciousness then, Vāsava's son became furious with rage.[18] He seemed to be in a feverish tremor, and sighed frequently. Squeezing his hands,

drawing deep breaths, with eyes bathed in tears, and casting his glances like a madman, he said these words.[19]

" 'Arjuna said,—Truly do I swear that tomorrow I will slay Jayadratha! If from fear of death he doth not forsake the Dhārtarāshtras,[20] or implore our protection, or the protection of Krishna that foremost of men, or of thine, O king, I shall assuredly slay him tomorrow![21] Forgetting his friendship for me, engaged in doing what is agreeable to Dhritarāshtra's son, that wretch is the cause of the child's slaughter! Tomorrow I will slay him![22] Whoever they may be that will encounter me in battle tomorrow for protecting him, be it Drona or Kripa, O king, I will cover them all with my arrows![23] Ye bulls among men, if I do not achieve even this in (tomorrow's) battle, let me not attain the regions reserved for the righteous, ye foremost of heroes![24] Those regions that are for them that slay their mothers or for them that slay their fathers, or them that violate their preceptors' beds, or them that are vile and wicked,[25] or them that cherish envy against the righteous, or them that speak ill of others, or them that appropriate the wealth confidingly deposited with them by others, or them that are betrayers of trusts,[26] or them that speak ill of wives enjoyed by them before, or them that have slain Brāhmanas, or them that have killed kine,[27] or them that eat sugared milk and rice, or food prepared of barley, or potherbs, or dishes prepared of milk, sessamum, and rice, or thin cakes of powdered barley fried in clarified butter, or other kinds of cakes, or meat, without having dedicated the same to the gods,[28]—even those regions shall speedily be mine if I do not slay Jayadratha! Those regions to which they go that offer insults to Brāhmanas devoted to the study of the *Vedas* or otherwise worthy of respect or to those that are venerable in years or to those that are righteous or to those that are their preceptors, (those regions shall speedily be mine if I do not slay Jayadratha!) That end which becomes theirs who touch Brāhmanas or fire with the feet, that end which becomes theirs who throw phlegm and excrete and eject urine into the water, even that miserable end shall be mine if I do not slay Jayadratha![29-31] That end which is his who bathes (in water) in a state of nudity, or his who does not hos-

pitably entertain a guest, that end which is theirs who receive bribes, speak falsehoods, and deceive and cheat others,[32] that end which is theirs who offend against their own souls, or who falsely utter praises (of others), or of those low wretches who eat sweatmeats in the sight of servants and sons and wives and dependents without sharing the same with these, that awful end shall be mine if I do not slay Jayadratha![33-34] That end which overtakes the wretch of ruthless soul who without supporting a righteous and obedient *protege* casts him off, or him who, without giving unto a deserving neighbour the offerings in *Çrāddhas*, giveth them away unto those that deserve them not, that end which overtakes them who marry girls called *Vrishalis*, that end which is his who drinks wine, or his who insults those that are worthy of respect, or his who is ungrateful, or his who speaketh ill of his brothers, that end shall soon be mine if I do not slay Jayadratha![35-37] The end of all those sinful persons whom I have not mentioned, as also of those whom I have mentioned, shall soon be attained by me,[38] if, after this night passes away, I do not slay Jayadratha tomorrow!—

"'—Listen now to another oath of mine![39] If tomorrow's Sun sets without my slaying that wretch, then even here I shall enter the blazing fire![40] Ye *Asuras* and gods and men, ye birds and snakes, ye *Pitris* and all wanderers of the night, ye regenerate *Rishis* and celestial *Rishis*, ye mobile and immobile creatures, ye all that I have not mentioned, ye will not succeed in protecting my foe from me![41] If he enters the abode of the nether region, or ascends the firmament, or repairs to the celestials, or the realms of the *Daityas*, I shall still, with a hundred arrows, assuredly cut off, on the expiration of this night, the head of Abhimanyu's foe![42]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having uttered these words, Arjuna begaan to stretch *Gāndiva* with both his arms. Transcending Arjuna's voice the sound of that bow rose and touched the very heavens.[43] After Arjuna had taken that oath, Janārddana, filled with wrath, blew his conch *Pānchajanya*. And Phālguna blew *Devadatta*.[44] The great conch *Pānchajanya*, well-filled with the wind from Krishna's mouth, produced a loud blare. And that blare made the regents of the cardinal

and the subsidiary points, the nether regions, and the whole universe, to tremble like to what happens at the end of the *Yuga*.[45] Indeed, after the high-souled Arjuna had taken that oath, the sound of thousands of musical instruments and loud leonine roars arose from the Pāndava camp.' "[46]

SECTION LXXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the spies (of Duryodhana), having heard that loud uproar made by the Pāndavas desirous of victory, informed (their masters of the cause), Jayadratha, overwhelmed with sorrow, and with heart stupified by grief, and like one sinking in a fathomless ocean of distress, slowly rose up, and having reflected for a long while, proceeded to the assembly of the kings. Reflecting for a while in the presence of those gods among men,[1-3] Jayadratha, in fear of Abhimanyu's father and covered with shame, said these words:—He who in Pāndu's soil was begotten by Indra under the influence of desire,[4] that wicked wretch is thinking of despatching me to the abode of Yama! Blessed be ye, I shall, therefore, go back to my home from desire of life![5] Or, ye bulls among Kshatriyas, protect me by the force of your weapons! Pārtha seeks to slay me. Ye heroes, make me fearless![6] Drona and Duryodhana and Kripa, and Karna, and the ruler of the Madras, and Vālhika, and Dusçāsana and others, are capable of protecting a person who is afflicted by Yama himself![7] When, however, I am threatened by Phālguna alone, will not all these lords of Earth, will not all of you, joined together, be able to protect me?[8] Having heard the shouts of joy of the Pāndavas, great hath been my fear. My limbs, ye lords of Earth, have become powerless like those of a person on the point of death![9] Without doubt, the wielder of *Gāndiva* hath vowed my death! It is for this that the Pāndavas are shouting in joy at a time when they should weep![10] Let alone the rulers of men, the very gods and *Gandharvas*, the *Asurās*, the *Uragas*, and the *Rākshasas*, cannot venture to baffle a vow of Arjuna![11] Therefore, ye bulls among men, blessed be ye, give me permission (to leave the Kuru camp). I want to make myself scarce. The

Pāndavas will no longer be able to find me![12]—While indulging in such lamentations, with heart agitated by fear, king Duryodhana, always looking upon the accomplishment of his own business to be preferable to everything else, said unto him these words:[13]—Do not fear, O tiger among men! O bull among men, who will seek to encounter thee in battle when thou wilt stay in the midst of these Kshatriya heroes![14] Myself, Vikartana's son Karna, Chitrasena, Vivingçati, Bhuriçravas, Cala, Calya, the invincible Vrishasena,[15] Purumitra, Jaya, Bhoja, Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas, Satyavrata, the mighty-armed Vikarna, Durmukha,[16] Dusçāsana, Suvāhu, the ruler of the Kalingas with his weapons upraised, Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, Drona, Drona's son, and Cuvala's son (Cakuni),[17] —these and numerous other kings will, with their forces, march to battle, surrounding thee on all sides! Let the fever of thy heart, therefore, be dispelled![18] Thou art thyself one of the foremost of car-warriors! O thou of immeasurable splendour, thou thyself art a hero! Being what thou art, how canst thou then see any cause of fear, O king of the Sindhus![19] The eleven *Akshauhinis* of troops I own will carefully fight for protecting thee! Therefore, do not fear, O king of the Sindhus! Let thy fears be dispelled![20]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus comforted, O monarch, by thy son, the king of the Sindhus then, accompanied by Duryodhana, repaired that very night to Drona (the generalissimo of the Kuru army).[21] Then, O king, having touched Drona's feet with reverence, and taken his seat with humility, he asked his preceptor these words:[22]—In hitting the aim, in hitting it from a distance, in lightness of hand, and in the force of the stroke, O illustrious one, tell the difference between myself and Phālguna![23] O preceptor, I wish to know accurately the difference as regards proficiency (in the science of arms) between myself and Arjuna! Say it unto me truly!—[24]

"'Drona said,—Of tutorial instruction, both of you, *i, e.*, thyself and Arjuna, have had the same measure, O son! In consequence, however, of *yoga* and the hard life led by Arjuna, he is superior to thee![25] Thou shouldst not, however, for any reason, cherish fear of Pārtha! Without doubt, I will,

O son, protect thee from this fear![26] The very gods cannot prevail over him who is protected by my arms! I will form an array which Pārtha will not succeed in piercing![*27] Therefore, contend thou in battle, do not fear, observing the duties of thy own order! O mighty car-warrior, tread in the track of thy sires and grandsires![28] Having duly studied the *Vedas*, thou hast poured libations, according to the ordinance, on the fire! Thou hast also performed many sacrifices. Death cannot, therefore, be an object of terror to thee![29] (For if thou diest), attaining then to that great good fortune which is unattainable by vile men, thou wilt acquire all those excellent regions in heaven that are acquirable by the might of one's arms![30] The Kauravas, the Pāndavas, the Vrishnis, and other men, as also myself with my son, are all mortal and short-lived! Think of this![31] One after another, all of us, slain by Time which is all powerful, shall go to the other world, bearing with us only our respective deeds![32] Those regions that ascetics acquire by undergoing severe penances, those regions are acquired by heroic Kshatriyas that are observant of the duties of their order.[33]—Even thus was the ruler of the Sindhus comforted by Bharadwāja's son. Banishing his fear of Pārtha, he set his heart on battle.[34] Then, O king, thy troops also felt great delight, and the loud sound of musical instruments was heard, mingled with leonine shouts.' "[35]

SECTION LXXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'After Pārtha had vowed the slaughter of the ruler of the Sindhus, the mighty-armed Vāsudeva addressed Dhananjaya and said,[1]—With the consent of thy brothers (alone, but without consulting me), thou hast vowed, saying,—*I will slay the ruler of the Sindhus!*—This hath been an act of great rashness (on thy part)![2] Without consulting with me thou hast taken up a great weight (upon thy shoulders)! Alas, how shall we escape the ridicule of all men![3] I had sent some spies into the camp of Dhritarāshtra's son. Those spies, quick-

---

* Literally, "in crossing."—T

ly coming unto me, gave me this information,[4] *viz.*, that after thou, O lord, hadst vowed to slay the ruler of the Sindhus, loud leonine shouts, mingled with the noise of (our) musical instruments, were heard by the Dhārtarāshtras.[5] In consequence of that uproar, the Dhārtarāshtras, with their well-wishers, became terrified.—*These leonine shouts are not causeless!*—thought they, and waited (for what would ensue).[6] O thou, of mighty arms, an uproarious din then arose amongst the Kauravas, of their elephants and steeds and infantry. And a terrible rattle was also heard of their cars.[7]—*Having heard of the death of Abhimanyu, Dhananjaya, deeply afflicted, will in wrath come out in the night for battle!*—thinking even thus, they waited (ready for battle).[8] While preparing themselves, O thou of eyes like lotus petals, they then learnt truly the vow about the slaughter of the ruler of the Sindhus, made by thee that art wedded to truth.*[9] Then all the counsellors of Suyodhana became heartless and frightened like little animals. As regards king Jayadratha,[10] that ruler of the Sindhus and the Sauviras, overwhelmed with grief and becoming thoroughly cheerless, he stood up and entered his own tent with all his counsellors.[11] Having consulted (with them) about every remedy that could benefit him at a time when he stood in need of consultation, he proceeded to the assembly of the (allied) kings and there said these words unto Suyodhana:[12]—Dhananjaya, thinking me to be the slayer of his son, will tomorrow encounter me in batttle! He hath, in the midst of his army, vowed to slay me![13] That vow of Savyasāchin the very gods and *Gandharvas* and *Asuras* and *Uragas* and *Rākshasas* cannot venture to frustrate![14] Protect me, therefore, ye all in battle! Let not Dhananjaya, placing his foot on your head, succeed in hitting the mark! Let the proper arrangements be made in respect of this matter![15] Or, if, O delighter of the Kurus, you think that you will not succeed in protecting me in battle, grant me

---

* The Bengal reading *Satyavratais* in the first line of 9 is vicious. I adopt the Bombay reading *Satyvatas*, qualifying *tava*. To suppose that Krishna paid such a compliment to the Kauravas as is implied by the Bengal reading is an absurdity.—T.

permission then, O king, so that I may return home![16]—Thus addressed (by Jayadratha), Suyodhana became cheerless and sat, hanging down his head. Ascertaining that Jayadratha was in a great fright, Suyodhana began to reflect in silence.[17] Beholding the Kuru king to be greatly afflicted, king Jayadratha the ruler of the Sindhus slowly said these words having a beneficial reference to himself:[18]—I do not behold here that bowman of superior energy who can baffle with his weapons the weapons of Arjuna in great battle![19] Who, even if it be Catakrutu himself, will stay in front of Arjuna having Vāsudeva for his ally, while wielding the bow *Gāndiva*?[20] It is heard that the lord Maheçwara himself of supreme energy had been encountered, before this, by Pārtha on foot, on the mountains of Himavat![21] Urged by the chief of the celestials, he slew, on a single car, a thousand *Dānavas* dwelling in Hiranyapura![22] That son of Kunti is now allied with Vāsudeva of great intelligence. I think that he is competent to slay the three worlds including the very gods.[23] I wish that you will either grant me permission (to leave the field for my home) or that the high-souled and heroic Drona with his son will protect me! Or, I would await thy pleasure![24]—O Arjuna, (thus addressed by Jayadratha) king Suyodhana humbly beseeched the preceptor in this matter.* All remedial measures have been adopted. Cars and steeds have been arranged.[25] Karna and Bhuriçravas, and Drona's son, and the invincible Vrishasena, and Kripa, and the ruler of the Madras,—these six will be in (Jayadratha's) van.[26] Drona will form an array half of which will be a *Çakata*† and half a lotus. In the middle of of the leaves of that *lotus* will be a *needle*-mouthed array. Jayadratha,[27] that ruler of the Sindhus difficult of being conquered in battle, will take his stand, by it, protected by heroes! In (the use of) the bow, in weapons, in prowess, in strength, and also in lineage,[28] these six car-warriors, O Pārtha, are, without doubt, exceedingly difficult of being borne. With-

* *I. e.*, added his voice to that of Jayadratha, requesting Drona to protect the latter.—T.

† A kind of car or vehicle.—T.

out first vanquishing those six car-warriors, access to Jayadratha will not be had.[29] Think, O Arjuna, of the prowess of each of those six. O tiger among men, when united together, they are not capable of being easily vanquished![30] We should, therefore, once again, take counsel with well-wishing counsellors conversant with policy, for our benefit and for the success of our object!—' "[31]

SECTION LXXVI.

" 'Arjuna said,—These six car-warriors of the Dhārtarāshtra army whom thou regardest to be so strong, their (united) energy, I think, is not equal to even half of mine![1] Thou shalt see, O slayer of Madhu, the weapons of all these cut off and baffled by me when I go against them for slaying Jayadratha![2] In the very sight of Drona and all his men, I will fell the head of the ruler of the Sindhus, on the Earth, beholding which they will indulge in lamentations.[3] If the *Sāddhyas*, the *Rudras*, the *Vasus* with the *Açwins*, the *Maruts* with Indra (at their head), the *Viçwedevas* with the other gods,[4] the *Pitris*, the *Gandharvas*, Garuda, the Ocean, the mountains, the firmament, Heaven, Earth, the point of the compass (cardinal and subsidiary), and the regents of those points,[5] all the creatures that are domestic and all that are wild, in fact, if all the mobile and the immobile beings together, become the protectors of the ruler of the Sindhus, yet, O slayer of Madhu,[6] shalt thou behold Jayadratha slain by me tomorrow in battle with my arrows! O Krishna, I swear by Truth, I touch my weapons (and swear by them),[7] that I shall, O Keçava, at the very outset, encounter that Drona, that mighty bowman, who hath become the protector of that sinful wretch Jayadratha![8] Suyodhana thinks that this game (of battle) resteth on Drona! Therefore, piercing through the very van commanded by Drona himself. I shall get at Jayadratha![9] Thou shalt tomorrow behold the mightiest of bowmen riven by me in battle by means of my shafts endued with fierce energy, like summits of a hill riven by the thunder![10] Blood shall flow (in torrents) from the breasts of fallen men and elephants and steeds split open by

whetted shafts falling fast upon them![11] The shafts shot from *Gāndiva*, fleet as the mind or the wind, will deprive thousands of men and elephants and steeds of life![12] Men will behold in tomorrow's battle those weapons which I have obtained from Yama and Kuvera and Varuna and Indra and Rudra![13] Thou shalt behold in tomorrow's battle the weapons of all those who come to protect the ruler of the Sindhus, baffled by me with my *Brahma* weapon![14] Thou shalt in tomorrow's battle, O Keçava, behold the Earth strewn by me with the heads of kings cut off by the force of my shafts![15] (Tomorrow) I shall gratify all cannibals, rout the foe, galdden my friends, and crush the ruler of the Sindhus![16] A great offender, one who hath not acted like a relative, born in a sinful country, the ruler of the Sindhus, slain by me, will sadden his own.[17] Thou shalt behold that ruler of the Sindhus, of sinful behaviour, and brought up in every luxury, pierced by me with my shafts![18] On the morrow, O Krishna, I shall do that which shall make Suyodhana think that there is no other bowman in the world who is equal to me![19] My *Gāndiva* is a celestial bow! I myself am the warrior, O bull among men! Thou, O Hrishikeça, art the charioteer! What is there that I will not be able to vanquish?[20] Through thy grace, O holy one, what is there unattainable by me in battle? Knowing my prowess to be incapable of being resisted, why, O Hrishikeça, dost thou yet rebuke me?[21] As Lakshmi is ever present in Soma, as water is ever present in the Ocean, know this, O Janārddana, that even so is my vow ever accomplished![22] Do not think lightly of my weapons! Do not think lightly of my tough bow! Do not think lightly of the might of my arms! Do not think lightly of Dhananjaya![23] I shall go to battle in such a way that I shall truly win and not lose! When I have vowed it, know that Jayadratha hath already been slain in battle![24] Verily, in the Brāhmana is truth; verily, in the righteous is humility; verily, in sacrifice is prosperity; verily, in Nārāyana is victory!—'[25]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said these words unto Hrishikeça, having himself said so unto his own self, Arjuna the son of Vāsava, in a deep voice, once more addressed the lord Keçava,[26] saying,—Thou shouldst, O Krishna, so act that my

car my be well equipt as soon as this night dawns, since grave is the task that is at hand!—' "[27]

SECTION LXXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Both Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya, afflicted with sorrow and grief, and frequently sighing like two snakes, got no sleep that night.[1] Understanding that both Nara and Nārāyana were in rage, the gods with Vāsava became very anxious, thinking,—*What will come of it?*[2]—Fierce winds, that were again dry and foreboded danger, began to blow. A headless trunk and a mace appeared on the dise of the sun.[3] And although it was cloudless, frequent thunders were heard, of loud report, mixed with flashes of lightning. The Earth, with her mountains and waters and forests, shook.[4] The seas, those habitations of *Makaras*, swelled, O king, in agitation. The rivers ran in directions opposite to their usual courses.[5] The nether and upper lips of car-warriors and steeds and men and elephants began to tremble. And as if for gladdening the cannibals, on that occasion foreboding a great accession of population to the domains of Yama,[6] the animals (on the field) began to eject urine and excreta, and utter loud cries of woe. Beholding these fierce omens that made the hair to stand on end,[7] and hearing also of the fierce vow of the mighty Arjuna, all thy warriors, O bull of Bharata's race, became exceedingly agitated.[8] Then the mighty-armed son of Pākaçāsana said unto Krishna,—Go, and comfort thy sister Subhadrā with her daughter-in-law![9] And, O Mādhava, let also that daughter-in-law, and her companions, be comforted by thee! O lord, comfort them with soothing words that are again fraught with truth![10]—Thus addressed, Vāsudeva, with a cheerless heart, wending to Arjuna's abode, began to comfort his sorrowing sister afflicted with grief on account of the death of her son.[11]

"'Vāsudeva said,—O lady of Vrishni's race, do not grieve, with thy daughter-in-law, for thy son! O timid one, all creatures have but one end ordained by Time![12] The end that thy son hath met with becometh a hero of proud lineage, especially one who is a Kshatriya! Do not, therefore, grieve![13] By good

luck it is that that mighty car-warrior of great wisdom, of prowess equal to that of his father, hath, after the Kshatriya custom, met with an end that is coveted by heroes![14] Having vanquished numberless foes and despatched them unto Yama's presence, he hath himself repaired to those eternal regions, that grant the fruition of every wish, and that are for the righteous![15] Thy son hath attained that end which the righteous attain by penances, by *Brahmacharya*, by knowledge of the scriptures, and by wisdom![16] The mother of a hero, the wife of a hero, the daughter of a hero, and a kinswoman of heroes, O amiable one, grieve not thou for thy son who hath obtained the supreme end![17] The wretched ruler of the Sindhus, O beautiful lady, that murderer of a child, that perpetrator of a sinful act, shall, with his friends and kinsmen, obtain the fruit of this arrogance of his on the expiry of this night! Even if he enters the abode of Indra himself, he will not escape from the hands of Pārtha![18-19] Tomorrow thou shalt hear that the head of the ruler of the Sindhus hath, in battle, been cut off from his trunk to roll on the outskirts of Samantapanchaka! Dispel thy sorrow, and do not grieve![20] Keeping the duties of a Kshatriya before him, thy brave son hath attained the end of the righteous, that end, *viz.*, which we here expect to obtain as also others that bear arms as a profession.[21] Of broad chest, mighty-arms, unreturning, a crusher of car-warriors, thy son, O beautiful lady, hath gone to heaven! Drive away this fever (of thy heart)![22] Obedient to his sires and maternal relations, that heroic and mighty car-warrior of great prowess hath fallen a prey to death, after having slain thousands of foes![23] Comfort thy daughter-in-law, O queen! Do not grieve too much, O Kshatriya lady! Drive away thy grief, O daughter, as thou shalt hear such agreeable news on the morrow![24] That which Pārtha hath vowed must be accomplished. It cannot be otherwise! That which is sought to be done by thy husband can never remain unaccomplished![25] Even if all human beings and snakes and *Piçāchas*, and all the wanderers of the night and birds, and all the gods and the *Asuras*, aid the ruler of the Sindhus on the field of battle, he shall still, with them, cease to exist tomorrow!—'"[26]

SECTION LXXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing these words of the high-souled Keçava, Subhadrā, afflicted with grief on account of the death of her son, began to indulge in these piteous lamentations:[1]—Oh son of my wretched self, O thou that wast in prowess to equal thy father, O child, how couldst thou perish, going to battle![2] Alas, how doth that face of thine which resembleth the blue lotus and is graced with beautiful teeth and excellent eyes, now seem, now that, O child, it is covered with battle's dust![3] Without doubt, thee so brave and unreturning, thee fallen on the field, with beautiful head and neck and arms, with broad chest, low belly,[4] thy limbs decked with ornaments, thee that art endued with beautiful eyes, thee that art mangled with weapon-wounds, thee all creatures are, without doubt, beholding as the rising moon![5] Alas, thou whose bed used to be overlaid with the whitest and costliest sheets, alas, deserving as thou art of every luxury, how dost thou sleep today on the bare earth, thy body pierced with arrows?[6] That hero of mighty arms who used of old to be waited upon by foremost of beautiful women, alas, how can he, fallen on the field of battle, pass his time now in the company of jackalls?[7] He who of old was praised with hymns by singers and bards and panegyrists, alas, he is today cheered by fierce and yelling cannibals and beasts of prey! By whom,[8] alas, hast thou been helplessly slain when thou hadst the Pāndavas, O lord, and the heroes of the Vrishni race, and all the Pānchālas, for thy protectors?[9] Oh son, Oh sinless one, I am not yet satiated with looking at thee! Wretched as I am, it is evident that I shall have to go to Yama's abode![10] When again shall I cast my eyes on that face of thine decked with large eyes and beautiful locks, that smooth face without pimples, from which sweet words and excellent perfumes constantly issued?[11] Fie on the strength of Bhimasena, on the bowmanship of Pārtha, on the prowess of the Vrishni heroes, and the might of the Pānchālas![12] Fie on the Kaikeyas, the Chedis, the Matsyas, and the Srinjayas, they that could not protect thee, O hero, while engaged in battle![13] I behold the Earth today to

be empty and cheerless! Without seeing my Abhimanyu, my eyes are troubled with affliction![14] Thou wast the sister's son of Vāsudeva, the son of the wielder of *Gāndiva*, and thyself, a hero and an *Atiratha!* Alas, how shall I behold thee slain![15] Alas, O hero, thou hast been to me like a treasure in a dream, that is, seen and lost! Oh, everything human is as transitory as a bubble of water![16] This thy young wife overwhelmed with grief on account of the evil that hath befallen thee, alas, how shall I comfort her who is even like a cow without her calf![17] Alas, O son, thou hast prematurely fled from me at a time when thou wast about to bear fruit, although I am longing for a sight of thee![18] Without doubt, the conduct of the Destroyer cannot be understood by even the wise, since although thou hadst Keçava for thy protector thou wast yet slain as if thou wast perfectly helpless![19] O son, let that end be thine which is theirs that perform sacrifices, and theirs that are Brāhmanas of purified soul, and theirs that have practised *Brahmacharya*, and theirs that have bathed in sacred waters, and theirs that are grateful and charitable and devoted to the service of their preceptors, and theirs that have made sacrificial presents in profusion![20-21] That end which is theirs that are brave and unreturning while engaged in battle, or theirs that have fallen in battle, having slain their foes, let that end be thine![22] That auspicious end which is theirs that have given away a thousand kine, or theirs that have given away in sacrifices, or theirs that give away houses and mansions agreeable to the recipients,[23] that end which is theirs that give away gems and jewels to deserving Brāhmanas, or theirs that are punishers of crime, O, let that end be thine![24] That end which is attained by *Munis* of rigid vows by *Brahmacharya*, or that which is attained by those women that adhere to but one husband, O son, let that end be thine![25] That eternal end which is attained by kings by means of good behaviour, or by those persons that have cleansed themselves by leading, one after another, all the four modes of life, and through the due observance of their duties,[26] that end which is theirs that are compassionate to the poor and the distressed, or theirs that equitably divide sweets amongst themselves and their depen-

dants, or theirs that are never addicted to deceit and wickedness, O son, let that end be thine![27] That end which is theirs that are observant of vows, or theirs that are virtuous, or theirs that are devoted to the service of preceptors, or theirs that have never sent away a guest unentertained, O son, let that end be thine![28] That end which is theirs that in distress and the most difficult straits succeed in preserving the equanimity of their souls however much scorched they might be by the fire of grief, O son, let that end be thine![29] O son, let that end be thine which is theirs that are always dovoted to the service of their fathers and mothers, or theirs that are devoted to their own wives only![30] O son, let that end be thine which is attained by those wise men who, restraining themselves from the wives of others, seek the companionship of only their own wives in season![31] O son, let that end be thine which is theirs that look upon all creatures with an eye of peace, or theirs that never give pain to others, or theirs that always forgive![32] O son, let that end be thine which is theirs that abstain from honey, meat, wine, pride, and untruth, or theirs that have refrained from giving pain to others![33] Let that goal be thine which they attain that are modest, acquainted with all the scriptures, content with knowledge, and have their passions under control![34]—'

"'And while the cheerless Subhadrā, afflicted with grief, was indulging in such lamentations, the princess of Pānchāla (Draupadi), accompanied by Virāta's daughter (Uttarā), came to her.[35] All of them, in great grief, wept copiously and indulged in heart-rending lamentations. And like persons reft of reason by sorrow, they swooned away and fell down on the earth.[36] Then Krishna, who stood ready with water, deeply afflicted, spinkled it over his weeping, insensible, and trembling sister pierced in her very heart, and comforting her, said what should be said on such an occasion. And the lotus-eyed one said,[37-38]—Grieve not, O Subhadrā! O Pānchāli, comfort Uttarā! Abhimanyu, that bull among Kshatriyas, hath obtained the most laudable goal![39] O thou of beautiful face, let all the other men yet alive in our race obtain that goal which Abhimanyu of great fame hath obtained![40] Ourselves with all

our friends, wish to achieve, in this battle, that feat, the like of which, O lady, thy son, that mighty car-warrior, hath achieved without any assistance![41]—Having comforted his sister and Draupadi and Uttarā thus, that chastiser of foes, *viz.*, the mighty-armed (Krishna), returned to Pārtha's side.[42] Then Krishna, saluting the kings, his friends, and Arjuna, entered the inner apartments of the (latter's) tent, while those kings also repaired to their respective abodes.' "[43]

SECTION LXXIX.

"Sanjaya said.—'Then the lord Keçava, of eyes like lotus petals, having entered the unrivalled mansion of Arjuna, touched water, and spread (for Arjuna) on the auspicious and even floor an excellent bed of *Kuça* blades that were of the hue of the *lapis lazuli*. And keeping excellent weapons around that bed, he adorned it duly with garlands of flowers and fried paddy and perfumes and other auspicious articles. And after Pārtha (also) had touched water, meek and submissive attendants [1-3] brought the usual nightly sacrifice to the Three-eyed (Mahādeva), Then Pārtha, with a cheerful soul, having decked Mādhava with perfumes and floral garlands, presented unto Mahādeva the nightly offering.* Then Govinda, with a faint smile, addressed Pārtha, saying,[4-5]—Blessed be thou, O Pārtha, lay thyself down, I leave thee!—Placing door-keepers then, and also sentinels well-armed,[6] the blessed Keçava, followed by (his charioteer) Dāruka, repaired to his own tent. He then laid himself down on his white bed, and thought of diverse measures to be adopted.[7] And the illustrious (Keçava) of eyes like lotus leaves, began, for Pārtha's sake, to think of various acts that would dispel (Pārtha's) grief and sorrow and enhance his prowess and splendour.[8] Of soul rapt in *yoga*, that Supreme Lord of all, *viz.*, Vishnu of wide-spread fame, who always did what was agreeable to Jishnu, desirous of benefiting (Arjuna), had recourse to *yoga* meditation.[9] There was none in the Pāndava

---

* Nilakantha supposes that *tasmai* here refers to the Three-eyed and not to Krishna. This seems to be right.—T.

camp who slept that night. Wakefulness possessed every one, O monarch.[10] And everybody (in the Pāndava camp) thought of this, *viz.*,—The high-souled wielder of *Gāndiva*, burning with grief for the death of his son, hath suddenly vowed the slaughter of the ruler of the Sindhus! How, indeed, will that slayer of hostile heroes, that son of Vāsava, that mighty-armed warrior, accomplish his vow?[11-12] The high-souled son of Pāndu hath, indeed, made a most difficult resolve! King Jayadratha is endued with mighty energy! Oh, let Arjuna succeed in accomplishing his vow![13] Difficult is that vow which he, afflicted with grief on account of his son, hath made! Duryodhana's brothers are all possessed of great prowess. His force also is countless.[14] The son of Dhritarāshtra hath assigned all these to Jayadratha (as his protectors). Oh, let Dhananjaya come back (to the camp), having slain the ruler of the Sindhus in battle![15] Vanquishing his foes, let Arjuna accomplish his vow! If he fails to slay the ruler of the Sindhus tomorrow, he will certainly enter the blazing fire![16] Dhananjaya the son of Prithā will not dare to falsify his oath! If Arjuna dies, how will the son of Dharma succeed in recovering his kingdom?[17] Indeed, (Yudhishthira) the son of Pāndu, hath reposed (all his hopes of) victory on Arjuna! If we have achieved any (religious) merit, if we have ever poured libations of clarified butter on the fire,[18] let Savyasāchin, aided by the fruits thereof, vanquish all his foes!—Thus talking, O lord, with one another about the victory (of the morrow),[19] that long night, O king, of theirs at last passed away. In the middle of the night, Janārddana, having awaked,[20] remembered Pārtha's vow, and addressing (his charioteer) Dāruka, said,—Arjuna, in grief for the death of his son, hath vowed,[21] O Dāruka, that before tomorrow's sun goes down he will slay Jayadratha! Hearing of this, Duryodhana will assuredly take counsel with his counsellors,[22] about how Pārtha may fail to achieve his object! His several *Akshauhinis* of troops will protect Jayadratha.[23] Fully conversant with the rules about applying all weapons, Drona also, with his son, will protect him. That matchless hero, the Thousand-eyed (Indra himself), that crusher of the pride of *Daityas* and *Dānavas*,[24] cannot venture to slay

him in battle who is protected by Drona! I, therefore, will do that tomorrow by which Arjuna the son of Kunti[25] may slay Jayadratha before the Sun sets! My wives, my friends, my kinsmen, my relatives,[26] none amongst these is dearer to me than Arjuna! O Dāruka, I shall not be able to cast my eyes, even for a single moment, on the Earth bereft of Arjuna! I tell thee, the Earth shall not be reft of Arjuna! Myself vanquishing them all with their steeds and elephants by putting forth my strength for the sake of Arjuna, even I will slay them with Karna and Suyodhana! Let the three worlds tomorrow behold my prowess in great battle,[27-29] when I put forth my valor, O Dāruka, for Dhananjaya's sake! Tomorrow thousands of kings and hundreds of princes,[30] with their steeds and cars and elephants, will, O Dāruka, fly away from battle! Thou shalt tomorrow, O Dāruka, behold that army of kings overthrown and crushed with my discus[31] by myself in wrath for the sake of the son of Pāndu! Tomorrow the (three) worlds with the gods, the *Gandharvas*, the *Piçāchas*, the Snakes, and the *Rākshasas*,[32] will know me as a (true) friend of Savyasāchin. He that hateth him, hateth me. He that followeth him, followeth me.[33] Thou hast intelligence. Know that Arjuna is half my body! When morning comes after the expiry of this night, thou, O Dāruka, equipping my excellent car according to the rules of military science, must bring it and follow me with it carefully. Placing on it my celestial mace called *Kaumodaki*, my dart, and discus, and bow and arrows, and every other neccessary, O *Suta*, and making room on the terrace of my car for my standard and for the heroic Garuda thereon that adorns my umbrella, and yoking thereto my foremost of steeds named Valāhaka and Meghapushpa and Caivya and Sugriva, having cased them in golden mail of the splendour of the Sun and the fire, and thyself putting on thy armour, stay on it carefully. Upon hearing the loud and terrible blast of my conch *Pānchajanya* emitting the shrill *Rishava* note,* thou wilt come quickly to me. In course of a single day, O Dāruka, I shall dispel the wrath and the diverse woes of my cousin, the son of my pater-

* The second note of the Hindu gamut.—T.

nal aunt! By every means shall I strive so that Vibhatsu in battle may slay Jayadratha in the very sight of the Dhārtarāshtras! O charioteer, I tell thee that Vibhatsu will certainly succeed in slaying all those for whose slaughter he will strive!—[34-42]

"'Dāruka said,—He is certain to have victory whose charioteership, O tiger among men, hath been taken by thee! Whence, indeed, can defeat come to him?[43] As regards myself, I will do that which thou hast commanded me to do. This night will bring (on its train) the auspicious morn for Arjuna's victory!—'"[44]

SECTION LXXX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Kunti's son Dhananjaya, of inconceivable prowess, thinking of how to accomplish his vow, recollected the *mantras* (given to him by Vyāsa). And soon he was lulled in the arms of sleep,[1] Unto that ape-bannered hero burning with grief and immersed in thought, Keçava, having Garuda on his banner, appeared in a dream.[2] Dhananjaya of righteous soul, in consequence of his love and veneration for Keçava, never omitted under any circumstances to stand up and advance a few steps for receiving Krishna.[3] Rising up, therefore, now (in his dream), he gave unto Govinda a seat. He himself, however, at that time, did not set his heart upon taking his seat.[4] Then Krishna of mighty energy, knowing the resolution of Pārtha, said, while seated, unto the son of Kunti, these words while the latter was standing:[5]—Do not set thy heart, O Pārtha, on grief! Time is unconquerable! Time forceth all creatures into the inevitable course.[6] O foremost of men, what for is this grief of thine? Grief should not be indulged in, O foremost of learned persons! Grief is an impediment to action![7] Accomplish that act which should be accomplished! The grief that maketh a person forego all efforts is, indeed, O Dhananjaya, a foe to that person![8] A person, by indulging in grief, gladdens his foes and saddens his friends; while the person is himself weakened. Therefore, it behoveth thee not to grieve![9] —Thus addressed by Vāsudeva, the unvanquished Vibhatsu of great learning then said these words of grave import:[10]—

Grave is the vow that I have made about the slaughter of Jayadratha! Even tomorrow I shall slay that wicked wretch, that slayer of my son! Even this hath been my vow, O Keçava![11] For frustrating my vow, Jayadratha, protected by all the mighty car-warriors, will be kept in their rear by the Dhārtarāshtras![12] Their force, in number, consists, O Mādhava, of the remnant, after slaughter, of eleven *Akshauhinis* of troops difficult of being vanquished![13] Surrounded in battle as he will be by all of them and by all the great car-warriors, how shall we obtain a a sight, O Krishna, of the wicked ruler of the Sindhus?[14] My vow will not be accomplished, O Keçava! How can a person like me live, having failed to acomplish his vow?[15] O hero, the non-accomplishment is evident of this (my vow which to me is a) source of great grief! (At this season of the year), I tell thee that the Sun setteth quickly![16]—The bird-bannered Krishna hearing this cause of Pārtha's grief, touched water and sat with face turned to the East.[17] And then that hero of eyes like lotus leaves and possessed of great energy said these words for the benefit of Pāndu's son who had resolved upon the slaughter of the ruler of the Sindhu's.[18]—O Pārtha, there is an eternal and supreme weapon of the name of *Pāçupata!* With it the god Maheçwara slew in battle all the *Daityas!*[19] If thou rememberest it now, thou wilt then be able to slay Jayadratha tomorrow! If it is unknown to thee (now), adore within thy heart the god having the bull for his mark![20] Thinking of that god in thy mind, remember him, O Dhananjaya! Thou art his devotee. Through his grace thou shalt obtain that rich possession![21]—Hearing these words of Krishna, Dhananjaya, having touched water, sat on the earth with concentrated mind and thought of the god Bhava.[22] After he had thus sat with rapt mind at that hour, called *Brāhma*, of auspicious indications, Arjuna saw himself sojourning through the sky with Keçava![23] And Pārtha, possessed of the speed of the mind, seemed to reach, with Keçava, the sacred foot of Himavat and the Manimat mountain abounding with many brilliant gems and frequented by *Siddhas* and *Chāranas*. And the lord Keçava seemed to have caught hold of his left arm.[24-25] And he seemed to see many wonderful sights as he reached

(those places). And Arjuna of righteous soul then seemed to arrive at the White mountain on the North.[26] And then he beheld, in the pleasure gardens of Kuvera the delicious lake decked with lotuses. And he also saw that foremost of rivers, *viz.*, Gangā, full of water.[27] And then he arrived at the regions about the Mandara mountains. Those regions were covered with trees that always bore blossoms and fruits. And they abounded with stones lying scattered about, that were all transparent crystal. And they were inhabited by lions and tigers and abounded with animals of diverse kinds. And they were adorned with many beautiful retreats of ascetics echoing with the sweet notes of delightful warblers. And they resounded also with the songs of Kinnaras.[28-29] Graced with many golden and silver peaks, they were illumined with diverse herbs and plants. And many *Mandāra* trees with their beautiful burden of flowers, adorned them.[30] And then Arjuna reached the mountains called Kāla that looked like a heap of antimony. And then he reached the summit called Brahmatunga, and then many rivers, and then many inhabited provinces.[31] And he arrived at Cataçringa, and the woods known by the name of Cāryyāti. And then he beheld the sacred spot known as the Horse-head, and then the region of Atharvana.[32] And then he beheld that prince of mountains called Vrishadança, and the great Mandara, abounding with Apsaras, and adorned with Kinnaras.[33] And roaming on that mountain, Pārtha, with Krishna, beheld a spot of Earth adorned with excellent fountains, decked with golden minerals, and possessed of the splendour of the lunar rays and having many cities and towns. And he also beheld many seas of wonderful forms and diverse mines of wealth.[34-35] And thus sojourning through the sky and firmament and the Earth, he reached the spot called Vishnupada. And wondering, with Krishna in his company, he came down with great velocity like a shaft shot (from a bow).[36] And soon Pārtha beheld a blazing mountain whose splendour equalled that of the planets, the constellations, or the fire.[37] And arrived at that mountain, he beheld on its top, the high-souled god having the bull for his mark, and ever engaged in ascetic penances,[38] like a thousand Suns collected together, and blazing with his own effulg-

ence. Trident in hand, matted locks on head, of snow-white color, he was robed in barks and skins.[39] Endued with great energy, his body was variegated with a thousand eyes. And he was seated with Pārvati and many creatures of brilliant forms (around him).[40] And his attendants were engaged in singing and playing upon musical instruments, in laughing and dancing, in moving about and stretching their hands, and in uttering loud shouts. And the place was perfumed with fragrant odors.[41] And *Rishis* that uttered *Brahma* adored him with excellent hymns of praise. And possessed of unfading glory, he was the protector of all creatures, and wielded the (great) bow (called *Pināka*).[42] Beholding him, Vāsudeva of righteous soul, with Pārtha, touched the earth with his head, uttering the eternal words of the *Veda*.[43] And Krishna adored, with speech, soul, understanding, and acts, that god who is the first source of the worlds, the creator of the universe, himself increate, the supreme lord of unfading glory; who is the highest cause of the mind, who is space and the wind, who is the cause of all the luminous bodies (in the firmament), who is the creator of the rain, and the supreme pimordial substance of the Earth, who is the object of adoration with the gods, the *Dānavas*, the *Yakshas*, and human beings; who is the supreme *Brahma* that is seen by *Yogins*, and the refuge of those acquainted with *Brahma*; who is the creator of all mobile and imobile creatures, and their destroyer also; who is the Wrath that burns everything at the end of the *Yuga*; who is the supreme soul; who is Cakra and Surya, and the origin of all attributes.[44-47] And Krishna sought the protection of that Bhava whom men of knowledge, desirous of attaining to that which is called the subtile and the spiritual, behold; that increate one who is the soul of all causes.[48] And Arjuna repeatedly adored that deity, knowing that he was the origin of all creatures and the cause of the past, the future, and the present.[49] Beholding those two, *viz.*, Nara and Nārāyana arrived, Sarva of cheerful soul, smilingly said unto them:[50]—Welcome are ye, ye foremost of men! Rise up, and let the fatigue of your journey be over! What, O heroes, is the desire in your heart! Let it be uttered quickly.[51] What is the business that has brought you hither?

I will accomplish it! Do what would benefit you! I will grant you everything ye may desire![52]—Hearing those words of the god, they both rose. And then with joined hands, the faultless Vāsudeva and Arjuna, both of great wisdom, began to gratify that high-souled deity with an excellent hymn.[53] And Krishna and Arjuna said,—We bow to Bhava, to Sarva, to Rudra, to the boon-giving deity! We bow to the lord of all creatures endued with life, to the god who is always fierce, to him who is called Kaparddin! We bow to Mahādeva, to Bhima, to the Three-eyed, or to him who is peace and contentment![54] We bow to Içāna, or to him who is the destroyer of Sacrifice! Let salutations be to the slayer of Andhaka, to the father of Kumāra, to him who is of blue throat, to him who is the creator![55] Let salutations be to the wielder of *Pināka*, to the vow embodied of abstemious food, to him who is Truth, to him who is all-pervading! To him who is red, who is smoke, who is a hunter (in guise), to him who is unvanquished![56] To him who is always of bule locks, to him who is armed with the trident, to him who is of celestial vision! To him who is *Hotri*, to him who protecteth all, to him who is of three eyes, to him who is disease, to him whose vital seed fell on the fire![57] To him who is inconceivable, to him who is the lord of Amvikā, to him who is adored by all the gods! To him who hath the bull for his mark, to him who is bald, to him who is of matted locks; to him who is a *Brahmachārin*.[58] To him who standeth as an ascetic in the water, to him who is devoted to *Brahma*, to him who hath never been conquered! To him who is the soul of the universe, to him who is the creator of the universe, to him who liveth pervading the whole universe![59] We bow to thee that art the object of the reverence of all, to thee that art the original cause of all creatures! To thee that art called *Brahmachakra*, to thee that are called *Sarva*, *Çankara*, and *Çiva*![60] We bow to thee that art the lord of the universe, and the lord of all great beings![61] We bow to thee that hast a thousand heads, to thee that hast a thousand arms, to thee that art called death! To thee that hast a thousand eyes and a thousand legs! To thee whose acts are innumerable![62] We bow to thee whose complexion is that of gold, to thee that art cased in

golden mail, to thee that art ever compassionate to thy devotees! O lord, let our wish be accomplished!—'[63]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having adored Mahādeva in these terms, Vāsudeva with Arjuna then began to gratify him for obtaining (the great) weapon (called *Pācupata*).' "[64]

SECTION LXXXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then Pārtha, with a cheerful soul and joined hands and eyes expanded (in wonder), gazed at the god having the bull for his mark and who was the receptacle of every energy.[1] And he beheld the offerings he made every night to Vāsudeva lying by the side of the Three-eyed deity.[2] The son of Pāndu then, mentally worshipping both Krishna and Sarva, said unto the latter,—I desire (to obtain) the celestial weapon![3]—Hearing these words of Pārtha expressive of the boon he sought, the god Civa smilingly said unto Vāsudeva and Arjuna,[4]—Welcome to you, ye foremost of men! I know the wish cherished by you, and the business for which you have come here! I will give you what you wish![5] There is a celestial lake full of *Amrita* not far from this place, ye slayers of foes! There were kept sometime before, that celestial bow and arrow of mine![6] With them I slew in battle all the enemies of the gods! Bring hither, ye Krishnas, that excellent bow with arrow fixed on it![7]—Hearing these words of Civa, Vāsudeva and Arjuna answered,—So be it!—And then, accompanied by all the attendants of Civa, those two heroes set out for that celestial lake which possessed hundreds of heavenly wonders,[8] that sacred lake, capable of granting every object, which the god having the bull for his mark had indicated to them. And unto that lake, the *Rishis* Nara and Nārāyana (*viz.*, Arjuna and Vāsudeva) went fearlessly.[9] And having reached that lake bright as the disc of the Sun, Arjuna and Achyuta beheld within its waters a terrible snake.[10] And they behe'd there another foremost of snakes, that had a thousand heads. And possessed of the effulgence of fire, that snake was vomiting fierce flames.[11] Then Krishna and Pārtha having touched water, joined their hands, and approached those snakes,

having bowed unto the god having the bull for his mark.[12] And as they approached the snakes, conversant as they were with the *Vedas*, they uttered the hundred stanzas in the *Veda* to the praise of Rudra, bowing the while, with their whole souls, unto Bhava of immeasurable power.[13] Then those two terrible snakes, in consequence of the power of those adorations to Rudra, abandoned their snake-forms, and assumed the forms of a foe-killing bow and arrow.[14] Gratified (with what they saw), Krishna and Arjuna then seized that bow and arrow of great effulgence. And those high-souled heroes then brought them away and gave them unto tne illustrious Mahādeva.[15] Then from one of the sides of Civa's body there came out a *Brahmachārin* of tawny eyes. And he seemed to be the refuge of asceticism. Of blue throat and red locks, he was endued with great might.[16] Taking up that best of bows, that *Brahmachārin* stood placing (both and the bow and his feet properly). And fixing the arrow on the bow-string, he began to stretch the latter duly.[17] Beholding the manner of his seizing the handle of the bow and drawing the string and placing his feet, and hearing also the *Mantras* uttered by Bhava, the son of Pāndu, of inconceivable prowess, learnt everything duly.[18] The mighty and puissant *Brahmachārin* then sped that arrow to that same lake. And he once more threw that bow also in that selfsame lake.[19] Then Arjuna of good memory, knowing that Bhava was gratified with him, and remembering also the boon the latter had given him in the forest and the sight also he gave him of his person,[20] mentally entertained the desire,—*Let all this become productive of fruit!*—Understanding this to be his wish, Bhava, gratified with him, gave him the boon.[21] And the god also granted him the terrible *Pāçupata* weapon and the accomplishment of his vow. Then, having thus once more obtained the *Pāçupata* weapon from the Supreme god,[22] the invincible Arjuna, with hair standing on end, regarded his business to be already achieved. Then Arjuna and Krishna, filled with joy, paid their adorations unto the great god by bowing their heads.[23] And permitted by Bhava, both Arjuna and Keçava, those two heroes, almost immediatly came back to their own camp, filled with transports of delight.[24] Indeed, their joy was as great as

that of Indra and Vishnu when those two gods, desirous of slaying Jambha, had obtained the permission of Bhava that slayer of great *Asuras*.' "[25]

SECTION LXXXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'While Krishna and Dāruka were thus conversing together, that night, O king, passed away. (When morning dawned), king Yudhishthira rose from his bed.[1] *Pāniswanikas*, and *Māgadhas*, and *Madhuparkikas* and *Vaitālikas* and *Sutas*, gratified that bull among men (with songs and music).[2] And dancers began their dance, and sweet-voiced singers sang their sweet songs fraught with the praises of the Kuru race.[3] And skilled musicians, well trained (in their respective instruments), played on *Mridangas* and *Jharjharas* and *Bheris*, and *Panavas*, and *Anakas*, and *Gomukhas*, and *Adamvaras*, and conchs, and *Dundubhis*, of loud sound, and diverse other instruments.[4-5] That loud noise, deep as the roar of the clouds, touched the very heavens. And it awoke that foremost of kings, *viz.*, Yudhishthira, from his slumbers.[6] Having slept happily on his excellent and costly bed, the king awoke. And the monarch, rising from his bed, proceeded to the bath room for performing those acts that were absolutely necessary.[7] Then a hundred and eight servants, attired in white, themselves washed, and all young, approached the king with many golden jars filled to the brim.[8] Seated at his ease on a royal seat, attired in a thin cloth, the king bathed in several kinds of water fragrant with sandal wood and purified with *Mantras*.[9] His body was rubbed by strong and well-trained servants with water in which diverse kinds of medicinal herbs had been soaked. He was then washed with *adhivāsha* water rendered fragrant by various odoriferous substances.[10] Obtaining then a long piece of cloth (for the head) that was as white as the feathers of the swan, and that had been kept loose before him, the king tied it round his head for drying the water.[11] Smearing his body then with excellent sandal-paste, and wearing floral garlands, and dressing himself in clean robes, the mighty-armed monarch sat with face towards the east, and his

hands joined together.[12] Following the path of the righteous, the son of Kunti then mentally said his prayers. And then with great humility he entered the chamber in which the blazing fire (for worship), was kept.[13] And having worshipped the fire with faggots of sacred wood and with libations of clarified butter sanctified with *Mantras*, he came out of the chamber.[14] Then that tiger among men, entering a second chamber, beheld there many bulls among Brāhmanas well-acquainted with the *Vedas*.[15] And they were all self-restrained, and purified by the study of the *Vedas* and by vows. And all of them had undergone the bath on the completion of sacrifices performed by them. Worshippers of the Sun, they numbered a thousand. And, besides them, there were also eight thousand others of the same class.[16] And the mighty-armed son of Pāndu, having caused them to utter, in distinct voices, agreeable benedictions, by making presents to them of honey and clarified butter and auspicious fruits of the best kind, he gave unto each of them a *nishka* of gold, a hundred steeds decked with ornaments, and costly robes, and such other presents as were agreeable to them.[17-18] And making unto them presents also of kine yielding milk whenever touched, with calves, and having their horns decked with gold and their hoofs with silver, the son of Pāndu circumambulated them.[19] And then seeing and touching *Swastikas* fraught with increase of good fortune, and *Nandyāvartas* made of gold, and floral garlands, and water-pots, and blazing fire, and vessels full of sun-dried rice and other auspicious articles, and the yellow pigment prepared from the urine of the cow, and auspicious and well-decked maidens, and curds and clarified butter and honey, and auspicious birds and diverse other things held sacred, the son of Kunti came into the outer chamber.[20-22] Then, O mighty-armed one, the attendants waiting in that chamber brought an excellent and costly seat of gold that was of a circular shape. Decked with pearls and *lapis lazuli*, and overlaid with a very costly carpet over which was spread another cloth of fine texture, that seat was the handiwork of the celestial artificer himself.[23-24] After the high-souled monarch had taken his seat, the servants then brought to him all his costly and bright ornaments.[25] The high-souled son of Kunti

put on those begemmed ornaments, whereupon his beauty became such as to enhance the grief of his foes.[26] And when the servants began to fan him with white yak-tails of the bright effulgence of the moon and all furnished with handles of gold, the king looked resplendent like a mass of clouds charged with lightning.[27] And bards began to sing his praises and panegyrists uttered his eulogies. And singers began to sing unto that delighter of Kuru's race.[28] And in a moment the voices of the panegyrists swelled into a loud noise. And then was heard the clatter of car-wheels, and the tread of horse-hoofs.[29] And in consequence of that noise mingling with the tinkle of elephants' bells and the blare of conches and the tread of men, the very earth seemed to tremble.[30] Then one of the orderlies in charge of the doors, cased in mail, youthful in years, decked with earrings, and his sword hanging by his side, entering the private apartment, knelt down on the ground, and saluting with (a bend of) his head the monarch who deserved every adoration, represented unto that high-souled and royal son of Dharma that Hrishikeça was waiting to be introduced. Then that tiger among men, having ordered his servants, saying,—*Let an excellent seat and an Argha be kept ready for him*,—caused him of Vrishni's race to be introduced and seated on a costly seat. And addressing Mādhava with the usual enquiries of welcome, king Yudhishthira the just duly worshipped Keçava.' "[31-34]

SECTION LXXXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then king Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, saluting Devaki's son Janārddana, cheerfully addressed him, saying,[1]—Hast thou passed the night happily, O slayer of Madhu? Are all thy perceptions clear, O thou of unfading glory?[2]—Vāsudeva also made similar enquiries of Yudhishthira. Then the orderly came and represented that the other Kshatriya warriors were waiting to be introduced.[3] Commanded by the king, the man introduced that concourse of heroes, consisting of Virāta and Bhimasena and Dhrishtadyumna and Sātyaki,[4] and Dhrishtaketu the ruler of the Chedis, and the mighty car-warrior Drupada, and Cikhandin, and the twins (Nakula and

Sahadeva), and Chekitāna and the ruler of the Kaikayas,[5] and Yuyutsu of Kuru's race, and Uttamaujas of the Pānchālas, and Yudhāmanyu, and Suvāhu, and the (five) sons of Draupadi.[6] These and many other Kshatriyas, approaching that high-souled bull among Kshatriyas, sat down on excellent seats.[7] Those mighty and high-souled heroes of great splendour, *viz.*, Krishna and Yuyudhāna, both sat on the same seat.[8] Then, in the hearing of them all, Yudhishthira, addressing the lotus-eyed slayer of Madhu, said unto him these sweet words :[9] —Relying on thee alone, we, like the celestials on the deity of a thousand eyes, seek victory in battle and eternal happiness ![10] Thou art aware, O Krishna, of the deprivation of our kingdom, our exile at the hands of the foe, and all our diverse woes ![11] O Lord of All, O thou that art compassionate unto those that are devoted to thee, upon thee wholly rests the happiness of us all and our very existence, O slayer of Madhu ![12] O thou of Vrishni's race, do that by which my heart may ever rest on thee ! Do also that, O Lord, by which the purposed vow of Arjuna may be realised ![13] O, rescue us today from this ocean of grief and rage ! O Mādhava, become thou today a boat unto us that are desirous of crossing (that ocean) ![14] The car-warrior desirous of slaying the foe cannot, in battle, do that (for the success of his object) which, O Krishna, the car-driver can do if he exerts himself carefully ![15] O Janārddana, as thou always savest the Vrishnis in all calamities, even so it behoveth thee to save us from this distress, O mighty-armed one ![16] O bearer of the conch, discus, and mace, rescue the sons of Pāndu sunk in the fathomless and boatless Kuru ocean, by becoming a boat unto them ![17] I bow to thee, O god of the lord of the gods, O thou that art eternal, O supreme Destroyer, O Vishnu, O Jishnu, O Hari, O Krishna. O Vaikuntha, O best of male beings ![18] Nārada described thee as that ancient and best of *Rishis* (called Nārāyana) that giveth boons, that beareth the bow *Çārnga*, and that is the foremost of all ! O Mādhava, make those words true ![19]—Thus addressed in the midst of that assembly by king Yudhishthira the just, Keçava, that foremost of speakers, replied unto Yudhishthira in a voice deep as that of clouds charged with rain,

saying.[20]—In all the worlds including that of the celestials, there is no bowman equal to Dhananjaya the son of Prithā![21] Possessed of great energy, accomplished in weapons, of great prowess and great strength, celebrated in battle, ever wrathful, and of great energy, Arjuna is the foremost of men![22] Youthful in years, bull-necked, and of long arms, he is endued with great strength. Treading like a lion or a bull, and exceedingly beautiful, he will slay all thy foes![23] As regards myself, I will do that by which Arjuna the son of Kunti may be able to consume the troops of Dhritarāshtra's son like a swelling conflagration.[24] This very day Arjuna will, by his arrows, despatch that vile wretch of sinful deeds, that slayer of Subhadrā's son, (*viz.*, Jayadratha), to that road from which no traveller comes back.[25] Today vultures and hawks and furious jackalls and other carnivorous creatures will feed on his flesh.[26] O Yudhishthira, if even all the gods with Indra become his protectors today, Jayadratha will still, slain in press of battle, repair to Yama's capital![27] Having slain the ruler of the Sindhus, Jishnu will come to thee (in the evening). Dispel thy grief and the fever (of thy heart), O king, and be thou graced with prosperity!' "[28]

SECTION LXXXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'While Yudhishthira, Vāsudeva, and others were thus conversing, Dhananjaya came there, desirous of beholding that foremost one of Bharata's race, *viz.*, the king, as also his friends and well-wishers.[1] After he had entered that auspicious chamber and, having saluted him duly, taken his stand before the king, that bull among the Pāndavas, (*viz.*, king Yudhishthira), rising up from his seat, embraced Arjuna with great affection.[2] Smelling his head and embracing him with his arms, the king blessed him heartily. And addressing him smilingly, he said,[3]—It is evident, O Arjuna, that complete victory certainly awaits thee in battle, judging from thy countenance (bright and cheerful as it is), and by the fact that Janārddana is well-pleased with thee![4] Then Jishnu related unto him that highly wonderful incident, saying,—Blessed be

thou, O monarch, I have, through Keçava's grace, beheld something exceedingly wonderful![5]—Then Dhananjaya related everything he had seen about his meeting with the Three-eyed god, for assuring his friends.[6] Then all the hearers, filled with wonder, bent their heads to the ground. And bowing unto the god having the bull for his mark, they said,—*Excellent, Excellent!*[7]—Then all the friends and well-wishers (of the Pāndavas), commanded by the son of Dharma, quickly and cheerfully proceeded to battle, their hearts filled with rage (against the foe).[8] Saluting the king, Yuyudhāna and Keçava and Arjuna, cheerfully set out from Yudhishthira's abode.[9] And those two invincible warriors, those two heroes, *viz.*, Yuyudhāna and Janārddana, together proceeded on the same car to Arjuna's pavilion.[10] Arrived there, Hrishikeça, like a charioteer (by profession), began to equip that car bearing the mark of the prince of apes and belonging to that foremost of car-warriors (*viz.*, Arjuna).[11] And that foremost of cars, of the effulgence of heated gold, and of rattle resembling the deep roar of the clouds, equipt (by Krishna), shone brightly like the morning Sun.[12] Then that tiger among men, (*viz.*, Vāsudeva), clad in mail, informed Pārtha, who had finished his morning prayers, of the fact that his car had been properly equipt.[13] Then that foremost of men in this world, *viz.*, the diadem-decked (Arjuna), clad in golden armour, and with his bow and arrows in hand, circumambulated that car.[14] And adored and blessed with benedictions about victory by Brāhmanas old in ascetic penances and knowledge and years, ever engaged in the performance of religious rites and sacrifices, and having their passions under control, Arjuna then ascended that great car,[15] that excellent vehicle, which had previously been sanctified with *mantras* capabale of giving victory in battle, like Surya of blazing rays ascending the Eastern mountain.[16] And that foremost of car-warriors decked with gold, in consequence of those golden ornaments of his, shone on his car like Surya of blazing splendour on the breast of Meru.[17] After Pārtha, Yuyudhāna and Janārddana mounted on that car like the twin Açwins riding the same car with Indra while coming to the sacrifice of Swaryyāti.[18] Then Govinda, that

foremost of charioteers, took the reins (of the steeds) like Mātali taking the reins of Indra's steeds while the latter went to battle for slaying Vritra.*[19] Mounted on that best of cars with those two friends, that slayer of large bodies of foes, *viz.*, Pārtha, proceeded for achieving the slaughter of the ruler of the Sindhus, like *Soma* rising (in the firmament) with *Vudha* and *Çukra*, for destroying the gloom of night, or like Indra proceeding with Varuna and Surya to the great battle (with the *Asuras*) occasioned by the abduction of Tārakā (the wife of Vrihaspati).[20-21] Then bards and musicians gratified the heroic Arjuna, as he proceeded, with the sound of musical instruments and auspicious hymns of good omen.[22] And the voices of the panegyrists and the bards uttering benedictions of victory and wishing good day, mingling with the sounds of musical instruments, became gratifying to those heroes.[23] And an auspicious breeze fraught with fragrance blew from behind Pārtha, gladdening him and sucking up the energies of his foes.[24] And at that hour, O king, many auspicious omens of various kinds appeared to view, indicating victory[25] to the Pāndavas and defeat to thy warriors, O sire! Beholding those indications of victory, Arjuna, addressing the great bowman Yuyudhāna on his right, said these words:—O Yuyudhāna, in today's battle my victory seems to be certain;[26-27] since, O bull of Cini's race, all these (auspicious) omens are seen! I shall, therefore, go thither where the ruler of the Sindhus[28] waiteth for (the display of) my energy and in expectation of repairing to the regions of Yama! Indeed, as the slaughter of the ruler of the Sindhus is one of my most imperative duties,[29] even so is the protection of king Yudhishthira the just another of my most imperative obligations. O thou of mighty arms, be thou today the king's protector![30] Thou wilt protect him even as I myself protect him! I do not behold the person in the world who would be able to vanquish thee![31] Thou art, in battle, equal to Vāsudeva himself! The chief of the celestials himself is unable to vanquish thee! Reposing this burden on thee or on that mighty car-warrior Praddyumna,[32] I can, O bull among

* *Vāsavamiva* is a mistake for *Vāsavasyeva*.—T.

men, without anxiety slay the ruler of the Sindhus! O thou of the Sātwata race, no anxiety need be entertained on my account![33] With thy whole soul must thou protect the king! There where the mighty-armed Vāsudeva stayeth, and where I myself stay, without doubt, the slightest danger (to him or me) can never arise![34]—Thus addressed by Pārtha, Sātyaki, that slayer of hostile heroes, replied, saying,—So be it!—And then the latter proceeded to the spot where king Yudhishthira was.'"[35]

SECTION LXXXV.

(Jayadratha-badha Parva.)

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'After Abhimanyu's slaughter when the next day came, what did the Pāndavas, afflicted with grief and sorrow, do? Who amongst my warriors fought with them?[1] Knowing, as they did, the achievements of Savyasāchin, O, tell me, how could the Kuravas, having perpetrated such a wrong, remain fearlessly![2] How could they in battle venture to even gaze at that tiger among men, (*viz.*, Arjuna,) as he advanced like the all-destroying Death himself in fury, burning with grief on account of the slaughter of his son?[3] Beholding that warrior having the prince of apes on his banner, that hero grieved on account of his son's death, shaking his gigantic bow in battle, what did my warriors do?[4] What, O Sanjaya, hath befallen unto Duryodhana? A great sorrow hath overtaken us today! I do not any longer hear the sounds of joy![5] Those charming sounds, highly agreeable to the ear, that were formerly heard in the abode of the Sindhu king, alas, those sounds are no longer heard today![6] Alas, in the camp of my sons, the sounds of countless bards and panegyrists singing their praises and of dancers are no longer heard![7] Formerly such sounds used to strike my ears incessantly! Alas, plunged into grief as they are, I do not any longer hear those sounds uttered (in their camp)![8] Formerly, O Sanjaya, while sitting in the abode of Somadatta who was devoted to truth, I used to hear such delightful sounds![9] Alas, how destitute of (religious) merit I am, for I observe the abode of my sons today to be echoing with sounds of grief and lamentations and

destitute of every noise betokening life and energy ![10] In the houses of Vivingçati, Durmukha, Chitrasena, Vikarna, and other sons of mine, I do not hear the sounds I used to hear formerly ![11] That great bowman, *viz.*, the son of Drona, who was the refuge of my sons, upon whom Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas, and a large number of disciples used to wait,[12] who took pleasure day and night in controversial disputation, in talk, in conversation, in the stirring music of diverse instruments, and in various kinds of delightful songs,[13] who was worshipped by many persons among the Kurus, the Pāndavas, and the Sātwatas, alas, O *Suta*, in the abode of that son of Drona no sound can be heard as formerly ![14] Singers and dancers used, in large numbers, to wait closely upon that mighty bowman, *viz.*, the son of Drona! Alas, their sounds can no longer be heard in his abode ![15] That loud noise which rose in the camp of Vinda and Anuvinda every evening, alas, that loud noise is no longer heard there! Nor in the camp of the Kaikayas[16] can that loud sound of song and slapping of palms be heard today which their soldiers, engaged in dance and revelry, used to make ![17] Those priests competent in the performance of sacrifices who used to wait upon Somadatta's son, that refuge of scriptural rites, alas, their sounds can no longer be heard ![18] The twang of the bow-string, the sound of *Vedic* recitations, the whiz of lances and swords, and the rattle of car-wheels, used incessantly to be heard in the abode of Drona! Alas, those sounds can no longer be heard there ![19] That swell of songs of diverse realms, that loud noise of musical instruments, which used to arise there, alas, those can no longer be heard today ![20] When Janārddana of unfading glory came from Upaplavya desirous of peace, from compassion for every creature,[21] I then, O *Suta*, said unto the wicked Duryodhana,—Obtaining Vāsudeva as the means, make peace with the Pāndavas, O son ![22] I think the time has come (for making peace)! Do not, O Duryodhana, transgress my command! If thou settest Vāsudeva aside who now begs thee for peace[23] and addresses thee for thy good, victory thou wilt never have in battle!—Duryodhana, however, did set aside Him of Daçārha's race, that bull among all bowmen,[24] who then spoke

what was for Duryodhana's good. By this, he embraced what was calamitous to himself. Seized by Death himself, that wicked-souled son of mine, rejecting my counsels, adopted those of Dusçāsana and Karna. I myself did not approve of the match at dice. Vidura did not approve of it.[25-26] The ruler of the Sindhus did not, nor Bhishma, nor Calya; nor Bhuriçravas; nor Purumitra; nor Jaya;[27] nor Açwatthāman; nor Kripa; nor Drona, O Sanjaya! If my son had conducted himself according to the counsels of these persons,[28] he would then, with his kinsmen and friends, have lived for ever in happiness and peace. Of sweet and delightful speech, ever saying what is agreeable amid their kinsmen,[29] high-born, loved by all, and possessed of wisdom, the sons of Pāndu are sure to obtain happiness. The man who casteth his eye on righteousness, always and everywhere obtaineth happiness.[30] Such a man, after death, winneth benefit and grace. Possessed of sufficient might, the Pāndavas deserve to enjoy half the Earth.[31] The Earth girt by the sea is as much their ancestral possession (as of the Kurus). Possessed of sovereignty, the Pāndavas will never deviate from the track of righteousness.[32] O child, I have kinsmen to whose voice the Pāndavas will ever listen,—such, for instance, as Calya, Somadatta, the high-souled Bhishma,[33] Drona, Vikarna, Vālhika, Kripa, and others among the Bhāratas that are illustrious and reverend in years.[34] If they speak unto them on thy behalf, the Pāndavas will certainly act according to those beneficial recommendations. Or, who, amongst these, thinkest thou, belongs to their party that will speak to them otherwise?[35] Krishna will never abandon the path of righteousness. The Pāndavas are all obedient to him. Words of righteousness spoken by myself also, those heroes will never disobey, for the Pāndavas are all of righteous souls! —Piteously lamenting, O *Suta*, I spoke these and many other words unto my son.[36-37] Foolish as he is, he listened not to me! I think all this to be the mischievous influence of time! There where Vrikodara and Arjuna are, and the Vrishni hero Sātyaki,[38] and Uttamaujas of the Pānchālas, and the invincible Yudhāmanyu, and the irrepressible Dhrishtadyumna, and the unvanquished Cikhandin,[39] the Açmakas, the Kekayas, and

Kshatradharman of the Somakas, the ruler of the Chedis, and Chekitāna, and Vibhu the son of the ruler of the Kāçis,[40] the sons of Draupadi, and Virāta, and the mighty car-warrior Drupada, and those tigers among men, *viz.*, the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), and the slayer of Madhu to offer counsel,[41] who is there in this world that would fight these, expecting to live? Who else, again, is there, save Duryodhana, and Karna, and Cakuni the son of Suvala, and Dusçāsana as their fourth, for I do not see the fifth, that would venture to resist my foes while the latter display their celestial weapons?[42-43] They who have Vishnu himself on their car, clad in mail and reins in hand, they who have Arjuna for their warrior, they can never have defeat![44] Doth not Duryodhana now recollect those lamentations of mine? Those tigers among men, Bhishma and Drona, thou hast said, have been slain.[45] I think, beholding these fruits of the words uttered by the far-seeing Vidura, my sons are now indulging in lamentations![46] I think, beholding his army overwhelmed by Cini's grandson and Arjuna, beholding the terraces of his cars empty, my sons are indulging in lamentations![47] As a swelling conflagration urged by the winds consumes a heap of dry grass at the close of winter, even so will Dhananjaya consume my troops![48] O Sanjaya, thou art accomplished in narration! Tell me everything that transpired after the doing of that great wrong to Pārtha in the evening![49] When Abhimanyu was slain, what became the state of your minds? Having, O son, greatly offended the wielder of *Gāndiva*, my warriors are incapable of bearing in battle his achievements! What measures were resolved upon by Duryodhana, and what by Karna? What also did Dusçāsana and Suvala's son do? O Sanjaya, O son, that which has in battle befallen all my children assembled together, is certainly due to the evil acts of the wicked Duryodhana, who followeth in the path of avarice, who is of wicked understanding, whose judgment is perverted by wrath, who coveteth sovereignty, who is foolish, and who is deprived of reason by anger! Tell me, O Sanjaya, what measures were then adopted by Duryodhana? Were they ill-judged or well-judged?'"[50-54]

SECTION LXXXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'I will tell thee all, for everything hath been witnessed by me with my own eyes! Listen calmly! Great is thy fault![1] Even as an embankment is useless after the waters (of the field) have flowed away, even so, O king, are these lamentations of thine useless! O bull of Bharata's race, do not grieve![2] Wonderful as are the decrees of the Destroyer, they are incapable of being transgressed. Do not grieve, O bull of Bharata's race, for this is not new![3] If thou hadst formerly restrained Yudhishthira the son of Kunti and thy sons also from the match at dice, this calamity then would never have overtaken thee![4] If, again, when the time for battle came, thou hadst restrained both the parties inflamed by wrath, this calamity then would never have overtaken thee![5] If, again, thou hadst formerly urged the Kurus to slay the disobedient Duryodhana, then this calamity would never have overtaken thee![6] (If thou hadst done any of these acts), the Pāndavas, the Pānchālas, the Vrishnis, and the other kings would then have never known thy wrong-headedness![7] If, again, doing thy duty as a father, thou hadst, by placing Duryodhana in the path of righteousness, caused him to tread along it, then this calamity would never have overtaken thee![8] Thou art the wisest man on Earth. Forsaking eternal virtue, how couldst thou follow the counsels of Duryodhana and Karna and Cakuni?[9] These lamentations of thine, therefore, O king, that I hear,—of thine that art wedded to (worldly) wealth,—seem to me to be honey mixed with poison![10] O monarch, formerly Krishna did not respect king Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu, or Bhishma, or Drona, so much as he used to respect thee![11] When, however, he came to know thee as one fallen off from the duties of a king, since then Krishna hath ceased to regard thee with respect![12] Thy sons had addressed various harsh speeches towards the sons of Prithā. Thou wast indifferent to those speeches then. O thou that wishest sovereignty unto thy sons, the consequence of that

indifference of thine hath now overtaken thee![13] O sinless one, thy ancestral sovereignty is now in danger. (If it is not so), obtain now the whole Earth subjugated by the sons of Prithā![*14] The kingdom that the Kurus enjoy, as also their fame, had been acquired by Pāndu. The virtuous sons of Pāndu added to that kingdom and that fame.[15] Those achievements, however, of theirs, became (to them) barren of fruit as they came in contact with thee, since they were deprived of even their ancestral kingdom by thy covetous self.[16] Now, O king, when the battle has begun, thou censurest thy sons, indicating diverse faults of theirs. This is scarcely becoming.[17] The Kshatriyas, while fighting, do not take care of their very lives! Indeed, those bulls among Kshatriyas fight, penetrating into the array of the Pārthas![18] Who else, indeed, save the Kauravas, would venture to fight with that force which is protected by Krishna and Arjuna, by Sātyaki and Vrikodara?[19] Them that have Arjuna for their warrior, them that have Janārddana for their counsellor, them that have Sātyaki and Vrikodara for their protectors,[20] what mortal bowman is there that would dare fight with, save the Kauravas and those that are following their lead?[21] All that is capable of being achieved by friendly kings endued with heroism and observant of the duties of Kshatriyas, all that is being done by the warriors on the Kaurava side![22] Listen now, therefore, to everything that hath taken place in that terrible battle between those tigers among men, *viz.*, the Kurus and the Pāndavas!'"[22]

SECTION LXXXVII.

"Sanjaya said.—'After that night had passed away, Drona, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, began to array all his

---

* *Apavrittam* is explained by Nilakantha as, endangered or made doubtful. What Sanjaya says is that if it is not so, thou shalt then have to undergo the bitterness of ruling over the whole world bestowed upon thee by the Pāndavas. Either the Pāndavas will snatch away thy kingdom, or make thee ruler of the whole world after slaying thy sons. Either of these alternatives would be bitter to thee.—T.

divisions for battle.[1] Diverse sounds were heard, O monarch, of angry heroes shouting in wrath and desirous of slaying one another.[2] And some stretched their bows, and some rubbed with their hands their bow-strings. And drawing deep breaths, many of them shouted, saying,—Where is that Dhananjaya ?[3]—And some began to throw upwards (and again sieze) their naked swords, unyielding, well-tempered, of the color of the sky, possessed of great sharpness, and furnished with beautiful hilts.[4] And brave warriors, desirous of battle, by thousands, were seen to perform the evolutions of swordsmen and of bowmen, with skill acquired by practice.[5] Some, whirling their maces decked with bells, smeared with sandal paste, and adorned with gold and diamonds, enquired after the son of Pāndu.[6] Some, intoxicated with the pride of strength and possessed of massive arms, obstructed the welkin with their spiked clubs that resembled (a forest of sturdy) poles raised in honor of Indra.[7] Others, brave warriors all, adorned with beautiful garlands of flowers, desirous of battle, occupied diverse portions of the field, armed with diverse weapons.[8] Where is Arjuna ? Where is that Govinda ? Where is the proud Bhima ? Where also are those allies of theirs ?—Even thus did they call upon them in battle.[9] Then blowing his conch and himself urging his horses to great speed, Drona moved about with great celerity, arraying his troops.[10] After all those dvisions that delight in battle had taken up their stations, Bharadwāja's son, O king, said these words unto Jayadratha :[11]—Thyself, Somadatta's son, the mighty car-warrior Karna, Açwatthāman, Calya, Vrishasena, and Kripa,[12] with a hundred thousand horse, sixty thousand cars, four and ten thousand elephants with rent temples,[13] one and twenty thousand foot-soldiers clad in mail, take up your station behind me at the distance of twelve miles ![14] There the very gods with Vāsava at their head will not be able to attack thee, what need be said, therefore, of the Pāndavas ? Take comfort, O ruler of the Sindhus ![15]—Thus addressed (by Drona), Jayadratha the ruler of the Sindhus became comforted. And he proceeded to the spot indicated by Drona, accompanied by many Gāndhāra warriors, and surrounded by those great car-warriors,[16] and with many

foot-soldiers clad in mail, prepared to fight vigorously, and armed with nooses. The steeds of Jayadratha, well skilled in bearing or drawing, were all, O monarch, decked with yak-tails and ornaments of gold. And seven thousand such steeds, and three thousand other steeds of the Sindhu breed were with him.[17-18]

" 'Thy son Durmarshana, desirous of doing battle, stationed himself at the head of all the troops, accompanied by a thousand and five hundred infuriate elephants of awful size, clad in mail and of fierce deeds, and all ridden by well-trained elephant-riders.[19-20] Thy two other sons, *viz.*, Dushçāsana and Vikarna, took up their position amid the advance divisions of the army, for the accomplishment of the objects of Jayadratha.[21] The array that Bharadwāja's son formed, part *Çakata* and part a *circle*, was full forty eight miles long and the width of its rear measured twenty miles.[22] Drona himself formed that array, with countless brave kings stationed within it and countless cars and steeds and elephants and foot-soldiers.[23] In the rear of that array was another impenetrable array of the form of a *lotus*. And within that *lotus* was another dense array called the needle.[24] Having formed his mighty array thus, Drona took up his station. At the mouth of that *needle*, the great bowman Kritavarman took up his stand.[25] Next to Kritavarman, O sire, stood the ruler of the Kāmvojas and Jalasandha. Next to these stood Duryodhana and Karna.[26] Behind them hundreds and thousands of unreturning heroes were stationed in that *Çakata* for protecting its head.[27] Behind them all, O monarch, and surrounded by a vast force, was king Jayadratha stationed at one side of that needle-shaped array.[28] At the entrance of the *Çakata*, O king, was Bharadwāja's son. Behind Drona was the chief of the Bhojas, who protected him.[29] Clad in white armour, with excellent head-gear, of broad chest and mighty arms, Drona stood, stretching his large bow, like the Destroyer himself in wrath.[30] Beholding Drona's car which was graced with a beautiful standard and had red steeds yoked to it and whose banner bore the device of a sacrificial altar and a black deer-skin, the Kauravas were filled with delight.[31] Seeing that array formed by Drona, which resembled the ocean itself in agitation, the *Siddhas* and

the *Chāranas* were filled with wonder.[32] And all creatures thought that that array would devour the whole Earth with her mountains and seas and forests, and abounding with diverse realms.[33] And king Duryodhana, beholding that mighty array in the form of a *Çakata*, teeming with cars and men and steeds and elephants, roaring dreadfully, of wonderful form, and capable of riving the hearts of foes, began to rejoice.' "[34]

SECTION LXXXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the diverse divisions of the Kuru army had been (thus) arrayed, and a loud uproar, O sire, had arisen; after drums and *Mridangas* began to be beat and played upon;[1] after the din of the warriors and the noise of musical instruments had become audible; after conchs began to be blown, and an awful roar had arisen, making the hair to stand on end;[2] after the field of battle had been slowly covered by the Bharata heroes desirous of fight; and after the hour called *Rudra* had set in, Savyasāchin made his appearance.[3] Many thousands of ravens and crows, O Bhārata, proceeded sporting on the front of Arjuna's car.[4] Various animals of terrible cries, and jackalls of inauspicious sight, began to yell and howl on our right as we proceeded to battle.[5] Thousands of blazing meteors fell with great noise. The whole Earth trembled on that dreadful occasion.[6] Dry winds blew in all directions, accompanied by thunder, and driving hard pebbles and gravel when Kunti's son came at the commencement of battle.[7] Then Nakula's son Catānika, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prithata, those two warriors possessed of great wisdom, arrayed the several divisions of the Pāndavas.[8] Then thy son Durmarshana, accompanied by a thousand cars, a hundred elephants, three thousand horses, and ten thousand foot-soldiers, and covering a piece of ground that measured the length of fifteen hundred bows, took up his position at the very van of all the troops, and said,[9-10]—Like the continent resisting the surging sea, even I will today resist the wielder of *Gāndiva*, that scorcher of foes, that warrior who is irresistible in battle![11] Let people today behold the wrathful Dhananjaya collide with

me like a mass of stone against another stony mass![12] Ye car-warriors that are desirous of battle, stay ye (as witnesses)! Alone I will fight with all the Pāndavas assembled together, for enhancing my honor and fame![13]—That high-souled and noble son of thine, that great bowman, saying this, stood there, surrounded by many great bowmen.[14] Then, like the Destroyer himself in wrath, or Vāsava himself armed with the thunder, or Death's irresistible self armed with his club and urged on by Time,[15] or Mahādeva armed with the trident and incapable of being ruffled, or Varuna bearing his noose, or the blazing fire at the end of the *Yuga* risen for consuming the creation,[16] the slayer of the *Nivātakavachas*, inflamed with rage and swelling with might, the ever-victorious Jaya devoted to truth and desirous of achieving his great vow,[17] clad in mail and armed with sword, decked in golden diadem, adorned with garlands of white flowers and attired in white robes, his arms decked with beautiful *Angadas* and ears with excellent ear-rings,[18] mounted on his own foremost of cars, (the incarnate) Nara, accompanied by Nārāyana, shaking his *Gāndiva* in battle, shone brilliantly like the risen Sun![19] And Dhananjaya of great prowess, placing his car, O king, at the very van of his army where densest showers of arrows would fall, blew his conch.[20] Then Krishna also, O sire, fearlessly blew with great force his foremost of conchs called *Pānchajanya* as Pārtha blew his.[21] And in consequence of the blare of their conchs, all the warriors in thy army, O monarch, trembled and became heartless. And their hair stood on end at that sound.[22] As all creatures are possessed with fright at the sound of the thunder, even so did all thy warriors take fright at the blare of those conchs.[23] And all the animals ejected urine and excreta. Thy whole army with its animals became filled with anxiety.[24] O king, in consequence of the blare of those (two) conchs, all men, O sire, lost their strength. And some amongst them, O monarch, were inspired with dread, and some lost their senses.[25] And the ape on Arjuna's banner, opening his mouth wide, made an awful noise with the other creatures on it, for terrifying thy troops.[26] Then conchs and horns and cymbals and *Anakas* were once more blown and

beat for cheering thy warriors.[27] And that noise mingled with the noise of diverse (other) musical instruments, with the shouts of warriors and the slaps of their armpits, and with the leonine roars uttered by great car-warriors in summoning and challenging (their antagonists).*[28] When that tumultuous uproar arose there, an uproar that enhanced the fears of the timid, the son of Pākaçāsana, filled with great delight, addressing him of Daçārha's race, said (these words).' "[29]

SECTION LXXXIX.

"'Arjuna said,—Urge the steeds, O Hrishikeça, to where Durmarshana stayeth! Piercing through that elephant-division I will penetrate into the hostile army![1]

"Sanjaya continued,—"Thus addressed by Savyasāchin, the mighty-armed Keçava urged the steeds to where Durmarshana was staying.[2] Fierce and awful was the encounter that commenced there between one and the many, an encounter that proved very destructive of cars and elephants and men![3] Then Pārtha, resembling a pouring cloud, covered his foes with showers of shafts like a mass of clouds pouring rain on the mountain breast.†[4] The hostile car-warriors also, displaying great lightness of hands, quickly covered both Krishna and Dhananjaya with clouds of arrows.[5] The mighty-armed Pārtha then, thus opposed in battle by his foes, became filled with wrath, and began to strike off with his arrows the heads of car-warriors from their trunks.[6] And the Earth became strewn with beautiful heads decked with ear-rings and turbans, the nether lips bit by the upper ones, and the faces adorned with eyes troubled with wrath.[7] Indeed, the scattered heads of the warriors looked resplendent like an assemblage of plucked off and crushed lotuses lying strewn about the field.[8] Golden coats of mail dyed with gore, (lying thick over the field), looked

---

* This verse is grammatically connected with 27. The Bengal reading *samāhutais* is better than the Bombay reading *samādhutais* although Nilakantha accepts the last.—T.

† The original is pleonastic.—T.

like masses of clouds charged with lightning.*[9] The sound, O king, of heads falling on the Earth, resembled that of falling palmyra fruits ripened by time.[10] Headless trunks arose, some standing bow in hand, and some with naked swords upraised in the act of striking.[11] Those brave warriors, incapable of brooking Arjuna's feats and desirous of vanquishing him, had no distinct perception as to when their heads were struck off by Arjuna.[12] The Earth became strewn with heads of horses, trunks of elephants, and the arms and legs of heroic warriors.[13] —*This one is Pārtha,—Where is Pārtha ?—Here is Pārtha !* —Even thus, O king, the warriors of thy army became filled with the idea of Pārtha only ![14] Deprived of their senses by Time, they regarded the whole world to be full of Pārtha only, and, therefore, many of them perished, striking one another, and some struck even their own selves.[15] Uttering wails of woe, many heroes, covered with blood, deprived of their senses, and in great agony, laid themselves down, calling upon their friends and kinsmen.[16] Arms, bearing short arrows, or lances, or darts, or swords, or battle-axes, or pointed stakes, or scimitars, or bows, or spears, or shafts, or maces, and cased in armour and decked with *Angadas* and other ornaments, and looking like large snakes, and resembling huge clubs, cut off (from trunks) with mighty weapons, were seen to jump about, jerk about, and move about, with great force, as if in rage.[17-19] Every one amongst those that wrathfully advanced against Pārtha in that battle, perished, his body pierced with some fatal shaft of that hero.[20] While dancing on his car as it moved, and drawing his bow, no one there could detect the minutest opportunity for striking him.[21] The quickness with which he took his shafts, fixed them on the bowstring, and let them off, filled all his enemies with wonder.[22] Indeed, Phālguna, with his shafts, pierced elephants and elephant-riders, horses and horse-riders, car-warriors and drivers of cars.[23] There was none amongst his enemies, whether staying before him, or struggl-

* This verse obviously needs correction. Instead of "golden coats of mail," I think some such correction is needed, *viz*, "coats of mail, of black iron, decked with gold and dyed with blood, &c."—T.

ing in battle, or wheeling about, or pressed forward by those on their back, whom the son of Pāndu did not slay.[24] As the Sun rising in the welkin destroyeth the thick gloom, even so did Arjuna destroy that elephant force by means of his shafts winged with *Kanka* plumes.[25] The field occupied by thy troops, in consequence of riven elephants fallen upon it, looked like the Earth strewn with huge hills at the hour of universal dissolution.[26] As the midday Sun is incapable of being looked at by all creatures, even so was Dhananjaya excited with wrath incapable of being looked at, in battle, by his enemies.[27] The troops of thy son, O chastiser of foes, afflicted (with the arrows of Dhananjaya). broke and fled in fear.[28] Like a mass of clouds pierced and driven away by a mighty wind, that army was pierced and routed by Pārtha. None, indeed, could gaze at that hero while he was slaying the foe.[29] Urging their horses to great speed by goads, by the horns of their bows, by deep growls, by encouraging behests, by whips, by cuts on their flanks, and by threatening speeches, thy men, *viz.*, thy cavalry and thy car-warriors, as also thy foot-soldiers, afflicted with the shafts of Arjuna, fled away from the field.[30-31] Others (that rode on elephants), fled away, urging those huge beasts by pressing their flanks with their toes or with strokes of the hook. Others, deprived of their senses by Pārtha's arrows, in flying, ran against Pārtha himself. Indeed, thy warriors then became all cheerless and their understandings were all confused.' "[32]

SECTION XC.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When the van of my army thus slaughtered by the diadem-decked (Arjuna) broke and fled, who were those heroes that advanced against Arjuna?[1] (Did any of them actually fight with Arjuna, or) did all, abandoning their resolutions, enter the *Çakata* array, getting behind the fearless Drona resembling a solid wall?'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'When Indra's son Arjuna, O sinless one, began, with his excellent arrows, to break and incessantly slay that force of ours, many heroes were either slain, or becoming

dispirited, fled away. None, in that battle, was capable of even looking at Arjuna.[3-4] Then thy son Dusçāsana, O king, beholding that state of the troops, became filled with wrath and rushed against Arjuna for battle.[5] That hero of fierce prowess, cased in a beautiful coat of mail made of gold and his head covered with a turban decked with gold,[6] caused Arjuna to be surrounded by a large elephant force which seemed capable of devouring the whole Earth.[7] With the sound of the elephants' bells, the blare of conchs, the twang of bowstrings, and the grunts of the tuskers,[8] the Earth, the points of the compass, and the welkin, seemed to be entirely filled. That space of time became fierce and awful.[9] Beholding those huge beasts with extended trunks filled with wrath and rushing quickly towards him, like winged mountains, urged on with hooks,[10] Dhananjaya, that lion among men, uttering a leonine shout, began to pierce and slay that elephant force with his shafts.[11] And like a *Makara* penetrating into the vasty deep surging into mountain waves when agitated by the tempest, the diadem-decked (Arjuna) penetrated into that elephant host.[12] Indeed, Pārtha, that subjugator of hostile cities, was then seen by all on every side to resemble the scorching Sun that rises, transgressing the rule about direction and hour, on the day of the universal destruction.[13] And in consequence of the sound of horse-hoofs, the rattle of car-wheels, the shouts of combatants, the twang of bow-strings,[14] the noise of diverse musical instruments, the blare of *Pānchajanya* and *Devadatta*, and the roar of *Gāndiva*,[15] men and elephants were dispirited and deprived of their senses. And men and elephants were riven by Savyasāchin with his shafts whose touch resembled that of snakes of virulent poison.[16] And those elephants, in that battle, were pierced all over their bodies with sharp shafts, numbering thousands upon thousands, sped from *Gāndiva*.[17] While thus mangled by the diadem-decked (Arjuna), they uttered loud noises and incessantly fell down on the earth like mountains shorn of their wings.[18] Others struck at the jaw or frontal globes or temples, with long shafts, uttered cries resembling those of cranes.[19] The diadem-decked (Arjuna) began to cut off, with his straight arrows, the heads of warriors standing on the necks of elephants.[20]

Those heads decked with ear-rings, constantly falling on the Earth, resembled a multitude of lotuses that Pārtha was culling for an offer to his gods.[21] And while the elephants wandered on the field, many warriors were seen to hang from their bodies, divested of armour, afflicted with wounds, covered with blood, and looking like painted pictures.[22] In some instances two or three warriors, pierced by one arrow winged with beautiful feathers and well-shot (from *Gāndiva*), fell down on the Earth.[23] Many elephants, deeply pierced with long shafts, fell down, vomiting blood from their mouths, with the riders on their backs, like hills overgrown with forests tumbling down through some convulsion of nature.[24] And Pārtha, by means of his straight shafts, cut into fragments the bowstrings, standards, bows, yokes, and shafts of the car-warriors opposed to him.[25] None could notice when Arjuna took up his arrows, when he fixed them on the bowstring, when he drew the string, and when he let them off. All that could be seen was that Pārtha seemed to dance on his car with his bow incessantly drawn to a circle.[26] Elephants, deeply pierced with long shafts and vomiting blood from their mouths, fell down, as soon as they were struck, on the Earth.[27] And in the midst of that great carnage, O monarch, innumerable headless trunks were seen to stand up.[28] Arms, with bows in grasp, or whose fingers were cased in leathern fences, holding swords, or decked with *Angadas* and other ornaments of gold, cut off from trunks, were seen lying about.[29] And the field of battle was strewn with innumerable *Upashkaras* and *Adhishtānas*, and shafts, and crowns, crushed car-wheels, and broken *Akshas*, and yokes, and warriors armed with shields and bows, and floral garlands, and ornaments, and robes, and fallen standards.[30-31] And in consequence of those slain elephants and steeds, and the fallen bodies of Kshatriyas, the Earth there assumed an awful aspect.[32] Dusçāsana's force, thus slaughtered, O king, by the diadem-decked (Arjuna), fled away. Their leader himself was in great pain,[33] for Dusçāsana, greatly afflicted by those shafts, and overcome by fear, entered, with his division, the *Çakata* array, seeking Drona as his deliverer.' "[34]

SECTION XCI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Slaying the force of Dusçāsana, the mighty-car-warrior Savyasāchin, desirous of getting at the ruler of the Sindhus, proceeded against the division of Drona.[1] Having approached Drona who was stationed at the entrance of the array, Pārtha, at Krishna's request, joined his hands and said these words unto Drona :[2]—Wish me well, O Brāhmana, and bless me, saying,—*Swasti !* Through thy grace I wish to penetrate into this impenetrable array ![3] Thou art to me even as my sire, or even as king Yudhishthira the just, or even as Krishna ! I tell thee this truly ![4] O sire, O sinless one, even as Açwatthāman deserves to be protected by thee, I also deserve to be protected by thee, O foremost of regenerate ones ![5] Through thy grace, O foremost of men, I desire to slay the ruler of the Sindhus in battle ! O lord, see that my vow is accomplished ![6]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed by him, the preceptor, smiling, replied unto him, saying,—O Vibhatsu, without vanquishing me, thou shalt not be able to vanquish Jayadratha ![7]—Telling him this much, Drona, smiling, covered him with showers of sharp arrows, as also his car and steeds and standard and charioteer.[8] Then Arjuna, baffling Drona's arrowy showers with his own arrows, rushed against Drona, shooting mightier and more awful shafts.[9] Observant of Kshatriya duties, Arjuna then pierced Drona in that battle with nine arrows.[10] Cutting the shafts of Arjuna by his own shafts, Drona then pierced both Krishna and Arjuna with many shafts that resembled poison or fire.[11] Then, while Arjuna was thinking of cutting off Drona's bow with his arrows, the latter, endued with great valor, fearlessly and quickly cut off, with his shafts, the bowstring of the illustrious Phālguna. And he also pierced Phālguna's steeds and standard and charioteer.[12-13] And the heroic Drona covered Phālguna himself with many arrows, smiling the while. Meantime, stringing his large bow anew,[14] Pārtha, that foremost of all persons convers-

ant with arms, getting the better of his preceptor, quickly shot six hundred arrows as if he had taken and shot only one arrow.[15] And once more he shot seven hundred other arrows, and then a thousand arrows incapable of being resisted, and ten thousands of other arrows. All these slew many warriors of Drona's array.[16] Deeply pierced with those weapons by the mighty and accomplished Pārtha acquainted with all modes of warfare, many men and steeds and elephants fell down deprived of life.[17] And car-warriors, afflicted by those shafts, fell down from their foremost of cars, deprived of horses and standards and destitute of weapons and life.[18] And elephants fell down like summits of hills, or masses of clouds, or large houses, loosened, dispersed, or burnt down by the thunder, the wind, or the fire.[19] Struck with Arjuna's shafts, thousands of steeds fell down like swans on the breast of Himavat, struck down by the force of watery currents.[20] Like the Sun, that rises at the end of the *Yuga*, drying up with his rays vast quantities of water, the son of Pāndu, by his showers of weapons and arrows, slew vast numbers of car-warriors and steeds and elephants and foot-soldiers.[21] Then like the clouds covering the Sun, the Drona-cloud, with its arrowy showers, covered the Pāndava-Sun, whose rays in the shape of thick showers of arrows were scorching in the battle the foremost ones among the Kurus.[22] And then the preceptor struck Dhanajaya at the breast with a long shaft shot with great force and capable of drinking the life of every foe.[23] Then Arjuna, deprived of strength, shook in all his limbs like a hill during an Earthquake. Soon, however, regaining his fortitude, Vibhatsu pierced Drona with many winged arrows.[24] Then Drona struck Vāsudeva with five arrows. And he struck Arjuna with three and seventy arrows, and his standard with three.[25] Then, O king, the valorous Drona, getting the better of his disciple, within the twinkling of an eye made Arjuna invisible by means of his arrowy showers.[26] We then beheld the shafts of Bharadwāja's son falling in continuous lines, and his bow also was seen to present the wonderful aspect of being incessantly drawn to a circle.[27] And those shafts, countless in number, and winged with *Kanka* feathers, shot by Drona in that battle, incessantly fell, O king, on Dhananjaya

and Vāsudeva.[28] Beholding then that battle between Drona and the son of Pāndu, Vāsudeva of great intelligence began to reflect upon the accomplishment of the (important) task.[29] Then Vāsudeva, addressing Dhananjaya, said these words :—O Pārtha, O Pārtha, O thou of mighty arms, we should not waste time ![30] We must go on, avoiding Drona, for a more important task awaits us !—In reply Pārtha said unto Krishna,—O Keçava, as thou pleasest ![31]—Then keeping the mighty-armed Drona to their right, Arjuna proceeded onwards. Turning his face round, Vibhatsu proceeded, shooting his shafts.[32] Then Drona, addressing Arjuna, said,—Whither dost thou proceed, O son of Pāndu ! Is it not true that thou ceasest not (to fight) till thou hast vanquished thy foe ?[33]—

" 'Arjuna answered,—Thou art my preceptor and no foe ! I am thy disciple and, therefore, like to thy son ! Nor is there the man in the whole world who can vanquish thee in battle ![34]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Saying these words, the mighty-armed Vibhatsu, desirous of slaying Jayadratha, quickly proceeded against the (Kaurava) troops.[35] And while he penetrated into thy army, those high-souled princes of Pānchāla, *viz.*, Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas, followed him as the protectors of his wheels.[36] Then, O king, Jaya, and Kritavarman of the Sātwata race, and the ruler of the Kāmvojas, and Crutāyus, began to oppose the progress of Dhananjaya.[37] And these had ten thousand car-warriors for their followers. The Abhishāhas, the Curasenas, the Civis, the Vasātis,[38] the Māvellakas, the Lilithyas, the Kaikayas, the Madrakas, the Nārāyana-Gopālas, and the various tribes of the Kāmvojas[39] who had before been vanquished by Karna, all of whom were regarded as very brave, placing Bharadwāja's son at their head, and becoming regardless of their lives, rushed towards Arjuna,[40] for resisting that angry hero burning with grief on account of the death of his son, that warrior resembling all-destroying Death himself, clad in mail, conversant with all modes of warfare, prepared to throw away his life in the thick of battle,[41]—that mighty bowman of great prowess, that tiger among men,—who resembled an infuriate leader of an elephantine herd, and who seemed ready to devour the whole hostile army ![42] The battle then that

commenced was exceedingly fierce and made the hair stand on end, between all those combatants on the one side and Arjuna on the other, desiring to encounter each other.[43] And all of them, uniting together, began to resist that bull among men advancing for the slaughter of Jayadratha, like medicines resisting a raging disease.' "[44]

SECTION XCII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Held in check by them, that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Pārtha of great might and prowess, was quickly pursued by Drona from behind.[1] The son of Pāndu, however, like diseases scorching the body, blasted that army, scattering his sharp shafts and resembling on that account the Sun himself scattering his countless rays of light.[2] And steeds were pierced, and cars with riders were broken and mangled, and elephants were overthrown. And umbrellas were cut off and displaced, and vehicles were deprived of their wheels.[3] And the combatants fled on all sides, exceedingly afflicted with arrows. Even thus progressed that fierce battle between those warriors and Arjuna encountering each other. Nothing could be distinguished. With his straight shafts, Arjuna, O monarch, made the hostile army tremble incessantly.[4-5] Firmly devoted to truth, Arjuna then, of white steeds, desirous of accomplishing his vow, rushed against that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Drona of red steeds.[6] Then the preceptor Drona struck his disciple, *viz.*, the mighty bowman Arjuna, with five and twenty straight shafts capable of reaching the very vitals.[7] Thereupon Vibhatsu, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, quickly rushed against Drona, shooting arrows capable of baffling the force of counter arrows shot at him.[8] Invoking into existence then the *Brahma* weapon, Arjuna of immeasurable soul baffled with his straight shafts those shot so speedily at him by Drona.[9] The skill we then beheld of Drona was exceedingly wonderful, since Arjuna, though young, and though struggling vigorously, could not pierce Drona with a single shaft.[10] Like a mass of clouds pouring torrents of rain, the Drona cloud rained showers of arrows on the Pārtha mount-

ain.[11] Possessed of great energy, Arjuna received that arrowy downpour, O king, by invoking the *Brahma* weapon, and cut off all those arrows by arrows of his own.[12] Drona then afflicted Pārtha of white steeds with five and twenty arrows. And he struck Vāsudeva with seventy arrows on the chest and arms.[13] Pārtha then, of great intelligence, smiling the while, resisted the preceptor in that battle who was incessantly shooting sharp arrows.[14] Then those two foremost of car-warriors, while thus struck by Drona, avoided that invincible warrior, who resembled the raging *Yuga* fire.[15] Avoiding those sharp shafts shot from Drona's bow, the diadem-decked son of Kunti, adorned with garlands of flowers, began to slaughter the host of the Bhojas.[16] Indeed, avoiding the invincible Drona who stood immovable like the Maināka mountain, Arjuna took up his position between Kritavarman and Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas.[17] Then that tiger among men, *viz.*, the ruler of the Bhojas, coolly pierced that invincible and foremost descendant of Kuru with ten arrows winged with *Kanka* feathers.[18] Then Arjuna pierced him, O monarch, in that battle with a hundred arrows. And once more he pierced him with three other arrows, stupifying that hero of the Sātwata race.[19] The ruler of the Bhojas then, laughing the while, pierced Pārtha and Vāsudeva each with five and twenty arrows.[20] Arjuna then, cutting off Kritavarman's bow, pierced him with one and twenty arrows resembling blazing flames of fire or angry snakes of virulent poison.[21] Then Kritavarman, that mighty car-warrior, taking up another bow, pierced Arjuna in the chest, O Bhārata, with five arrows.[22] And once more he pierced Pārtha with five sharp arrows. Then Pārtha struck him in return in the centre of the chest with nine arrows.[23] Beholding the son of Kunti obstructed before the car of Kritavarman, he of Vrishni's race thought that no time should be wasted.[24] Then Krishna, addressing Pārtha, said,—Do not show any mercy to Kritavarman! Disregarding thy relationship (with him), crush and slay him![25]—Then Arjuna, stupifying Kritavarman with his arrows, proceeded, on his swift steeds, to the division of the Kāmvojas.[26] Seeing Arjuna of white steeds penetrate into the Kāmvoja force, Kritavarman

became filled with wrath. Shaking his bow with arrow fixed thereon, he then encountered the two Pānchāla princes.[27] Indeed, Kritavarman, with his arrows, resisted those two Pānchāla princes as they advanced, following Arjuna for protecting his wheels.[28] Then Kritavarman the ruler of the Bhojas pierced them both with sharp shafts, striking Yudhāmanyu with three, and Uttamaujas with four.[29] Those two princes in return each pierced him with ten arrows. And once more Yudhāmanyu shooting three arrows and Uttamaujas shooting three,[30] cut off Kritavarman's standard and bow. Then the son of Hridikā, taking up another bow, and becoming infuriate with rage,[31] deprived both those warriors of their bows and covered them with arrows. Then those two warriors, taking up and stringing two other bows, began to pierce Kritavarman.[32] Meanwhile Vibhatsu penetrated into the hostile army. But those two princes, resisted by Kritavarman, obtained no admittance[33] into the Dhārtarāshtra host, although those bulls among men struggled vigorously. Then Arjuna of white steeds quickly afflicted in that battle the divisions opposed to him.[34] That slayer of foes, however, slew not Kritavarman although he had got him within reach. Beholding Pārtha thus proceeding, the brave king Crutāyudha,[35] filled with wrath, rushed at him, shaking his large bow. And he pierced Pārtha with three arrows, and Janārddana with seventy.[36] And he struck the standard of Pārtha with a very sharp arrow having a razor-like head. Then Arjuna, filled with wrath, deeply pierced his antagonist with ninety straight shafts like (a rider) striking a mighty elephant with the hook. Crutāyudha, however, could not, O king, brook that act of prowess on the part of Pāndu's son.[37-38] He pierced Arjuna in return with seven and seventy shafts. Arjuna then cut off Crutāyudha's bow and then his quiver,[39] and angrily struck him on the chest with seven straight shafts. Then king Crutāyudha, deprived of his senses by wrath, took up another bow[40] and struck the son of Vāsava with nine arrows on the latter's arms and chest. Then Arjuna, that chastiser of foes, laughing the while, O Bhārata, afflicted Crutāyudha with many thousands of arrows. And that mighty car-warrior quickly slew also the latter's steeds and chariot-

cer.[41-42] Endued with great strength, the son of Pāndu then pierced his foe with seventy arrows. Then the valiant king Crutāyudha, abandoning that steedless car,[43] rushed in that encounter against Pārtha, uplifting his mace. The heroic king Crutāyudha was the son of Varuna,[44] having for his mother that mighty river of cool water called Parnāçā. His mother, O king, had, for the sake of her son, begged Varuna, saying,[45]—Let this my son become unslayable on Earth!—Varuna, gratified (with her), had said,—I give him a boon highly beneficial to him,[46] *viz.*, a celestial weapon, by virtue of which this thy son will become unslayable on Earth by foes! No man can have immortality.[47] O foremost of rivers, every one who hath taken birth must inevitably die! This child, however, will always be invincible by foes in battle,[48] through the power of this weapon. Therefore, let thy heart's fever be dispelled!—Having said these words, Varuna gave him, with *mantras*, a mace.[49] Obtaining that mace, Crutāyudha became invincible on Earth. Unto him, however, the illustrious Lord of the waters again said,[50]—This mace should not be hurled at one who is not engaged in fight. If hurled at such a person it will come back and fall upon thyself. O illustrious child, (if so hurled) it will then course in an opposite direction and slay the person hurling it![51]—It would seem that when his hour came, Crutāyudha disobeyed that injunction. With that hero-slaying mace he attacked Janārddana.[52] The valiant Krishna received that mace on one of his well-formed and stout shoulders. It failed to shake Caurin like the wind failing to shake the mountains of Vindhya.[53] That mace, returning unto Crutāyudha himself, struck that brave and wrathful king staying on his car, like an ill-accomplished act of sorcery injuring the performer himself,[54] and slaying that hero, fell down on the Earth. Beholding the mace turn back and Crutāyudha slain,[55] loud cries of *Alas* and *Oh* arose there among the troops, at the sight of Crutāyudha, that chastiser of foes, slain by a weapon of his own.*[56] And because, O monarch, Crutāyudha had hurled that mace at Janārddana who was not engaged in fighting,

* The original is pleonastic.—T.

it slew him who had hurled it.[57] And Crutāyudha perished on the field even in the manner that Varuna had indicated. Deprived of life he fell down on the Earth before the eyes of all the bowmen.[58] While falling down, that dear son of Parnāçā shone resplendent like a tall banian with spreading boughs broken by the wind.[59] Then all the troops and even all the principal warriors fled away, beholding Crutāyudha, that chastiser of foes, slain.[60] Then the son of the ruler of the Kāmvojas, *viz.*, the brave Sudhakshina, rushed on his swift steeds against Phālguna that slayer of foes.[61] Pārtha then, O Bhārata, sped seven shafts at him. Those shafts, passing through the body of that hero, entered the Earth.[62] Deeply pierced by those shafts sped in battle from *Gāndiva*, Sudakshina pierced Arjuna in return with ten shafts winged with *Kanka* feathers.[63] And piercing Vāsudeva with three shafts, he once more pierced Pārtha with five. Then, O sire, Pārtha, cutting off Sudakshina's bow, lopped off the latter's standard.[64] And the son of Pāndu pierced his antagonist with a couple of broad-headed arrows of great sharpness. Sudakshina, however, piercing Pārtha once more with three arrows, uttered a leonine shout.[65] Then the brave Sudakshina, filled with wrath, hurled at the wielder of *Gāndiva* a terrible dart made wholly of iron and decked with bells.[66] That dart, blazing as a large meteor, and emitting sparks of fire, approaching that mighty car-warrior, pierced him through and fell down on the Earth.[67] Deeply struck by that dart and overcome with a swoon, Arjuna soon enough recovered. Then that hero of mighty energy, licking the corners of his mouth,[68] that son of Pāndu, of inconceivable feats, pierced his foe, with his steeds, standard, bow, and charioteer, with four and ten shafts winged with *Kanka* feathers.[69] With other arrows, countless in number, Pārtha then cut Sudakshina's car into fragments. And then the son of Pāndu pierced Sudakshina, the prince of the Kāmvojas, whose purpose and prowess had both been baffled, with a sharp arrow in the chest. Then the brave prince of the Kāmvojas, his coat of mail cut off, his limbs weakened, his diadem and *Angadas* displaced, fell, head downwards, like a pole of Indra when hurled from an engine. Like a beautiful *Karnikāra* tree in the

spring, gracefully growing on a mountain summit with beautiful branches, lying on the Earth when uprooted by the wind, the prince of the Kāmvojas lay on the bare ground, deprived of life, though deserving of the costliest bed.[70-73] Decked with costly ornaments, handsome, possessed of eyes that were of a coppery hue, and bearing on his head a garland of gold endued with the effulgence of fire, the mighty-armed Sudakshina, the son of the ruler of the Kāmvojas, overthrown by Pārtha with his shafts, and lying on the Earth, reft of life, looked resplendent like a beautiful mountain with a level top. Then all the troops of thy son fled away, beholding Crutāyudha, and Sudakshina the prince of the Kāmvojas, slain.' "[74-76]

SECTION XCIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Upon the fall of Sudakshina and of the heroic Crutāyudha, O monarch, thy warriors, filled with wrath, rushed with speed at Pārtha.[1] The Abhishahas, the Curasenas, the Civis, the Vasātis, began, O king, to scatter their arrowy showers on Dhananjaya.[2] The son of Pāndu then consumed by means of his arrows six hundred of them at once. Thereupon those warriors, terrified, fled away like smaller animals from a tiger.[3] Rallying, they once more surrounded Pārtha, who was slaying his foes and vanquishing them in battle.[4] Dhananjaya then, with shafts sped from *Gāndiva*, speedily felled the heads and arms of the combatants thus rushing upon him.[5] Not an inch of the field of battle was unstrewn with fallen heads, and the flights of crows and vultures and ravens that hovered over the field seemed to form a cloudy canopy.[6] Seeing their followers thus exterminated, Crutāyush and Achyutāyush were both filled with wrath. And they continued to contend vigorously with Dhananjaya. Endued with great might, proud, heroic, of noble lineage, and possessed of strength of arms, those two bowmen, O king, solicitous of winning great fame and desirous, for the sake of thy son, to compass the destruction of Arjuna, quickly showered upon the latter their arrowy downpours from at once his right and left.[7-9] Those angry heroes, with a thousand straight shafts, covered Arjuna

like two masses of clouds filling a lake.[10] Then that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Crutāyush, filled with wrath, struck Dhananjaya with a well-tempered and sharp-pointed lance.[11] That crusher of foes, then, *viz.*, Arjuna, deeply pierced by his mighty foe, swooned away in that battle, stupifying Keçava also (by that act).[12] Meanwhile, the mighty car-warrior Achyutāyush forcibly struck the son of Pāndu with a keen-pointed spear.[13] By that act he seemed to pour an acid upon the wound of the high-souled son of Pāndu. Deeply pierced therewith, Pārtha supported himself by seizing the flagstaff.[14] Then a leonine shout was sent forth by all thy troops, O monarch, in the belief that Dhananjaya was deprived of life.[15] And Krishna also was scrorched with grief upon beholding Pārtha senseless. Then Keçava comforted Dhananjaya with soothing words.[16] Then those foremost of car-warriors, (*viz.*, Crutāyush and Achyutāyush), of true aim, pouring their arrowy showers on all sides, in that battle, made Dhananjaya and Vāsudeva of Vrishni's race invisible with their car and car-wheels and *Kuvaras*, their steeds and flagstaff and banner. And all this seemed wonderful.[17-18] Meanwhile, O Bhārata, Vibhatsu slowly regained his senses, like one come back from the very abode of the king of the dead.[19] Beholding his car with Keçava overwhelmed with arrows, and seeing also those two antagonists of his staying before him like two blazing fires,[20] the mighty car-warrior Pārtha then invoked into existence the weapon named after Cakra. From that weapon flowed thousands of straight shafts.[21] And those shafts struck Crutāyush and Achyutāyush, those mighty bowmen. And the arrows shot by the latter, pierced by those of Pārtha, coursed through the welkin.[22] And the son of Pāndu, quickly baffling those arrows by the force of his own arrows, began to career over the field, encountering mighty car-warriors. Meanwhile Crutāyush and Achyutāyush were, by Arjuna's arrowy showers, deprived of their arms and heads. And they fell down on the Earth like a couple of tall trees broken by the wind.[23-24] And the death of Crutāyush and the slaughter of Achyutāyush created a surprise equal to what men would feel at the sight of the ocean becoming dry.[25] Then slaying fifty car-warriors amongst

the followers of those two princes, Pārtha proceeded against the Bharata army, slaying many foremost of warriors.[26] Beholding both Crutāyush and Achyutāyush slain, their sons, those foremost of men, *viz.*, Niyatāyush and Dirghāyush, O Bhārata, both filled with rage, rushed against the son of Kunti, scattering shafts of diverse kinds, and much pained by the calamity that had happened to their sires.[27-28] Arjuna, excited with rage, in a moment despatched them both towards Yama's abode, by means of straight shafts.[29] And those bulls among Kshatriyas (that were in the Kuru army) were perfectly unable to resist Pārtha who agitated the Dhārtarāshtra ranks like an elephant agitating the waters of a lake filled with lotuses.[30] Then thousands of trained elephant-riders amongst the Angas, O monarch, filled with rage, surrounded the son of Pāndu with their elephant force.[31] Urged by Duryodhana, many kings also of the West and the South, and many others headed by the ruler of the Kalingas, also surrounded Arjuna, with their elephants huge as hills.[32] Pārtha, however, with shafts sped from *Gāndiva*, quickly cut off the heads and arms, decked with ornaments, of those advancing combatants.[33] The field of battle, strewn with those heads and arms decked with *Angadas*, looked like golden stones entwined by snakes.[34] And the arms of warriors cut off therewith, while falling down, looked like birds dropping down from trees.[35] And the elephants, pierced with thousands of arrows and shedding blood (from their wounds), looked like hills in the season of rains with liquified red chalk streaming down their sides.[36] Others, slain by Pārtha with sharp shafts, lay prostrate on the field. And many *Mlecchas* on the backs of elephants, of diverse kinds of ugly forms,[37] robed in diverse attires, O king, and armed with diverse kinds of weapons, and bathed in blood, looked resplendent as they lay on the field, deprived of life by means of diverse kinds of arrows.[38] And thousands of elephants along with their riders and those on foot that urged them forwards, struck with Pārtha's shafts, vomitted blood,[39] or uttered shrieks of agony, or fell down, or ran ungovernably in all directions. And many, exceedingly frightened, trod down and crushed their own men.[40] And many, which were kept

as reserves and which were fierce as snakes of virulent poison, did the same.[41] And many terrible Yavanas and Pāradas and Cakas and Vālhikas, and *Mlecchas* born of the cow (belonging to Vaçishtha), of fierce eyes, accomplished in smiting, looking like messengers of Death, and all conversant with the deceptive powers of the *Asuras*, and many Darvātisāras and Daradas and Pundras numbering by thousands, in hundreds and thousands of bands, and together forming a force that was countless,[42-43] began to shower their sharp shafts upon the son of Pāndu. Accomplished in various modes of warfare, those *Mlecchas* covered Arjuna with their arrows.[44] Upon them Dhananjaya also quickly poured his arrows. And those arrows, shot from *Gāndiva*, looked like flights of locusts, as they coursed through the welkin.[45] Indeed, Dhananjaya, having by his arrows caused a shade over the troops like that of the clouds, slew, by the force of his weapons, all the *Mlecchas* with heads completely shaved or half-shaved or covered with mattled locks, impure in habits, and of crooked faces. Those dwellers of hills, pierced with arrows,[46-47] those denizens of mountain caves, fled away in fear. And ravens and *Kankas* and wolves, with great glee, drank the blood of those elephants and steeds and their *Mlecchа* riders overthrown on the field by Pārtha with his sharp shafts. Indeed, Arjuna caused a fierce river to flow there whose current consisted of blood. (Slain) foot-soldiers and steeds and cars and elephants constituted its embankments. The showers of shafts poured constitued its rafts and the hair of the combatants formed its moss and weeds.[48-50] And the fingers cut off from the arms of warriors, formed its little fishes. And that river was as awful as Death itself at the end of the *Yuga*. And that river of blood flowed towards the region of Yama. And the bodies of slain elephants, floating on it, obstructed its current.[51] And the Earth was covered all over with the blood of Kshatriyas and of elephants and steeds and their riders, and of car-warriors, and became one bloody expanse like to what is seen when Indra showers a heavy down-pour covering uplands and lowlands alike. And that bull among Kshatriyas despatched six thousand horsemen and again a thousand foremost of Kshatriyas in that battle into the jaws of Death. Thousands of well-equipt

elephants, pierced with arrows,[52-54] lay prostrate on the field like hills struck down by thunder. And Arjuna careered over the field, slaying steeds and car-warriors and elephants, like an elephant of rent temples crushing a forest of reeds. As a conflagration, urged by the wind, consumes a dense forest of trees and creepers and plants and dry wood and grass, even so did that fire, *viz.*, Pāndu's son Dhanajaya, having shafts for its flames and urged on by the Krishna wind, angrily consume thy forest of warriors. Making the terraces of cars empty, and causing the Earth to be strewn with human bodies,[55-58] Dhananjaya seemed to dance, bow in hand, in the midst of those vast masses of men. Deluging the Earth with blood by means of his shafts endued with the strength of the thunder,[59] Dhananjaya, excited with wrath, penetrated into the Bharata host. While thus proceeding, Crutāyush the ruler of the Amvashthas resisted him.[60] Arjuna then, O sire, speedily felled, with keen shafts equipt with *Kanka* feathers, the steeds of Crutāyush struggling in battle.[61] And cutting off, with other shafts, the bow also of his antagonist, Pārtha careered over the field. The ruler of the Amvashthas then, with eyes troubled in wrath, took up a mace[62] and approached the mighty car-warrior Pārtha and Keçava also in that battle. Then that hero, uplifting his mace, stopped the (progress of Arjuna's) car by its strokes, and struck Keçava also therewith. Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, Arjuna, beholding Keçava struck with that mace, became filled with wrath. And then, O Bhārata, that hero, with his shafts equipt with wings of gold, covered the ruler of the Amvashthas, that foremost of car-warriors, armed with mace, like the clouds covering the risen Sun. With other shafts, Pārtha then cut off the mace of that high-souled warrior into fragments, reducing it almost to dust. And all this seemed highly wonderful. Beholding that mace of his cut off into fragments, the ruler of the Amvashthas took up another huge mace,[63-67] and repeatedly struck both Arjuna and Keçava therewith. Then Arjuna, with a couple of sharp broad-faced arrows, cut off the uplifted arms of Crutāyush which held the mace, those arms that looked like a couple of Indra's standards, and with another winged arrow, he cut off the head of that warrior. Thus slain, Crutāyush fell

down, O king, filling the Earth with a loud noise,[68-69] like a tall standard of Indra when the strings, tying it to the engine on which it is set, are cut off. Surrounded then on all sides by ranks of cars and by hundreds upon hundreds of elephants and cars, Pārtha became invisible like the Sun covered with clouds.' "[70]

SECTION XCIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the son of Kunti, impelled by the desire of slaying the ruler of the Sindhus, had penetrated (into the Bharata host), having pierced through the irresistible divisions of both Drona and the Bhojas,[1] after the heir of the ruler of the Kāmvojas, *viz.*, prince Sudakshina, had been slain, after Savyasāchin had killed the valiant Crutāyudha also,[2] after the (Kuru) ranks had fled away and confusion had set in on all sides, thy son, beholding his army broken, repaired to Drona.[3] Quickly coming on his car to Drona, Duryodhana said:—That tiger among men (*viz.*, Arjuna), having crushed this vast host, hath already passed through it![4] Aided by thy judgment, think now what should be done next for the slaughter of Arjuna in view of this awful carnage![5] Blessed be thou, adopt such measures that that tiger among men may not succeed in slaying Jayadratha! Thou art our sole refuge![6] Like a raging conflagration consuming heaps of dry grass and straw, the Dhananjaya-fire, urged by the wind of his wrath, is consuming the grass and straw constituted by my troops![7] O scorcher of foes, seeing the son of Kunti pass, having pierced through this host, those warriors that are protecting Jayadratha have become doubtful (of their ability to resist Pārtha).[8] O foremost of those acquainted with *Brahma*, it was the settled conviction of the kings that Dhananjaya would never, with life, succeed in transgressing Drona![9] O thou of great splendour, when, however, Pārtha has pierced through thy division in thy very sight, I regard my army to be very weak. Indeed, I think that I have no troops![10] O thou that art highly blessed, I know thou art devoted to the welfare of the Pāndavas! I lose my reason, O regenerate one, in

thinking what should be done![11] To the best of my power, O regenerate one, I behave myself well with thee! To the best of my power I also seek to gratify thee! Thou, however, dost not bear all this in mind![12] O thou of immeasurable prowess, although we are ever devoted to thee, still thou never seekest our welfare! Thou art always well-pleased with the Pāndavas and always engaged in doing us evil![13] Though deriving thy livelihood from us, still thou art engaged in doing evil to us! I was not aware that thou art but a razor steeped in honey![14] If thou hadst not granted me the boon about humiliating and checking the Pāndavas, I would never have prevented the ruler of the Sindhus from returning to his own country![15] Fool that I am, expecting protection from thee, I assured the ruler of the Sindhus, and through my folly offered him as a victim to Death![16] A man may escape, having entered the very jaws of Death. But there is no escape for Jayadratha, when once he comes within reach of Dhanajaya's arms![17] O thou that owness red steeds, do that by which the ruler of the Sindhus may yet be saved! Do not give way to wrath on hearing the delirious ravings of my afflicted self! O, protect yet the ruler of the Sindhus![18]—

"'Drona said,—I do not find fault with thy words! Thou art as dear to me as Açwatthāman himself! I tell thee truly! Act, however, now according to my words, O king![19] Of all drivers of cars, Krishna is the foremost. His steeds also are the foremost of their species. Obtaining only a very small space, Dhananjaya can pass very quickly through it.[20] Seest thou not that the shafts of the diadem-decked (Arjuna), countless in number, shot from his bow, are falling full two miles behind his car as he is proceeding?[21] Burdened with the weight of years, I am now incapable of going so fast. The whole army of the Pārthas again is now close upon our van![22] Yudhishthira also should be seized by me. Even so, O thou of mighty arms, hath been the vow made by me in the presence of all bowmen and in the midst of all the Kshatriyas![23] O king, he is now staying at the head of his troops, abandoned by Dhananjaya! I shall not, therefore, abandoning the gate of our array, fight with Phālguna![24] It is meet that thyself,

properly supported, shouldst fight with that foe of thine, who is alone, and who is thy equal in lineage and feats! Do not fear! Go and fight with him! Thou art the ruler of the world![25] Thou art a king! Thou art a hero! Possessed of fame, thou art accomplished in vanquishing (thy foes)! O brave subjugator of hostile towns, go thyself to that spot where Dhananjaya the son of Prithā is!—[26]

"'Duryodhana said,—O preceptor, how is it possible for me to resist Dhananjaya who has transgressed even thee that art the foremost of all wielders of arms?[27] The very chief of the celestials, armed with the thunder, is capable of being vanquished in battle, but Arjuna, that subjugator of hostile towns, cannot be vanquished in battle![28] He by whom Hridikā's son (Kritavarman), the ruler of the Bhojas, and thyself equal unto a celestial, have both been vanquished by the power of his weapons, he by whom Crutāyush hath been slain,[29] as also Sudakshina, and king Crutāyudha too, he by whom both Crutāyush and Achyutāyush and myriads of *Mlecchas* also have been slain,[30] how can *I* contend in battle with that invincible son of Pāndu, that accomplished master of weapons, who is even like an all-consuming fire?[31] How also dost thou think me competent to fight with him today? I am dependent on thee like a slave! Protect my fame!—[32]

"'Drona said,—Thou sayest truly, O thou of Kuru's race, that Dhananjaya is irresistible! I, however, will do that by which thou shalt be able to bear him![33] Let all the bowmen in the world behold today the wonderful fact of the son of Kunti being held in check by thee in the very sight of Vāsudeva![34] This thy armour of gold, O king, I will tie on thy body in such a way that no weapon used by man will be able to strike thee in battle![35] If even the three worlds with the *Asuras* and the celestials, the *Yakshas*, the *Uragas*, and the *Rākshasas*, together with all human beings, fight with thee today, thou needst still entertain no fear![36] Neither Krishna, nor the son of Kunti, nor any other wielder of weapons in battle, will be able to pierce this armour of thine with arrows![37] Cased in that coat of mail, quickly go thou today against the angry Arjuna in battle! He will not be able to bear thee![38]—'

"Sanjaya said,—'Having said these words, Drona, that foremost of persons conversant with *Brahma*, touching water, and duly uttering certain *mantras*, speedily donned that highly wonderful and bright armour on Duryodhana's body, for the victory of thy son in that dreadful battle, and causing (by that act) all persons there to be filled with amazement.[39-40] And Drona said,—Let the *Vedas*, and Brahman, and the Brāhmanas, bless thee! Let all the higher classes of reptiles be a source of blessing to thee, O Bhārata![41] Let Yayāti, and Nahusha, and Dhundumāra, and Bhagiratha, and the other royal sages, all do what is beneficial to thee![42] Let blessings be to thee from creatures having but one leg, and from those that have many legs! Let blessings be to thee, in this great battle, from creatures that have no legs![43] Let Swāhā, and Swadhā, and Cachi, also, all do what is beneficial to thee! O sinless one, let Lakshmi and Arandhati too do what is beneficial to thee![44] Let Asita, and Devala, and Vicwāmitra, and Angiras, and Vaçishtha, and Kaçyapa, O king, do what is beneficial to thee![45] Let Dhātri, and the lord of the worlds, and the points of the compass, and the regents of those points, and the six-faced Kārtikeya, all give thee what is beneficial![46] Let the divine Vivaswat benefit thee completely! Let the four elephants, of the four quarters, the Earth, the firmament, the planets,[47] and he who is underneath the Earth and holds her (on his head), O king, *viz.*, Cesha, that foremost of snakes, give thee what is for thy benefit![48] O son of Gāndhāri, formerly the *Asura* named Vritra, displaying his prowess in battle, had defeated the best of celestials in battle. The latter, numbering thousands upon housands, with mangled bodies,[49]—those denizens of heaven,— with Indra at their head, deprived of energy and might all repaired to Brahman and sought his protection, afeared of the great *Asura* Vritra![50] And the gods said,—[O best of gods, O foremost of celestials, be thou the refuge of the gods now crushed by Vritra! Indeed, rescue us from this great fear![51]—Then Brahman, addressing Vishnu staying beside him as also those best of celestials headed by Cakra, said unto them that were all cheerless, these words fraught with truth:[52]—[Indeed, the gods with Indra at their

head, and the Brāhmanas also, should ever be protected by me! The energy of Tashtri is invincible from which Vritra hath been created.[53] Having in days of yore performed ascetic penances for a million of years, Tashtri then, ye gods, created Vritra, obtaining permission thereto from Maheçwara.[54] That mighty foe of yours hath succeeded in smiting you through the grace of that god of gods! Without going to the place where Cankara stayeth, ye cannot see the divine Hara![55] Having seen that god, ye will be able to vanquish Vritra! Therefore, go ye without delay to the mountains of Mandara! There stayeth that origin of ascetic penances, that destroyer of Daksha's sacrifice,[56] that wielder of *Pināka*, that lord of all creatures, that slayer of the *Asura* called Bhaganetra!]—Thus addressed by Brahman, the gods, proceeding to Mandara with Brahman in their company,[57] beheld there that heap of energy, that Supreme god endued with the splendour of a million Suns. Seeing the gods, Maheçwara welcomed them and enquired what he was to do for them.[58]—[The sight of my person can never be fruitless! Let the fruition of your desires proceed from this!]—Thus addressed by him, the dwellers of heaven replied,[59]—[We have been deprived of our energy by Vritra! Be thou the refuge of the dwellers of heaven! Behold, O lord, our bodies beaten and bruised by his strokes! We seek thy protection! Be thou our refuge, O Maheçwara!][60]—The god of gods, called Sarva, then said,—[Ye gods, it is well known to you how this action, fraught with great strength, terrible, and incapable of being resisted by persons destitute of ascetic merit, originated, springing from the energy of Tashtri, (the divine artificer)![61] As regards myself, it is certainly my duty to render aid to the dwellers of heaven! O Cakra, take this effulgent armour from off my body. And, O chief of the celestials, put it on, mentally uttering these *mantras!*]—[62]

"'Drona continued,—Having said these words, the boon-giving (Civa) gave that armour with the *mantras* (to be uttered by the wearer). Protected by that armour, Cakra proceeded against the host of Vritra in battle.[63] And although diverse kinds of weapons were hurled at him in that dreadful battle, yet the joints of that armour could not be cut open.[64] Then

the lord of the celestials slew Vritra, and afterwards gave unto Angiras that armour whose joints were made up of *mantras*.[65] And Angiras imparted those *mantras* to his son Vrihaspati having a knowledge of all *mantras*. And Vrihaspati imparted the knowledge to Agniveçya of great intelligence.[66] And Agniveçya imparted it to me, and it is with the aid of those *mantras*, O best of kings, that I, for protecting thy body, tie this armour on thy body![67]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said these words, Drona, that bull among preceptors, once more addressed thy son of great splendour, saying,[68]—O king, I put this armour on thy body, joining its pieces with the aid of *Brahma* strings. In days of yore Brahman himself had thus put it on Vishnu in battle![69] Even as Brahman himself had put this celestial armour on Cakra in the battle caused by the abduction of Tārakā, I put it on thee![70]—Having thus, with *mantras*, donned that armour duly on Duryodhana, the regenerate Drona sent the king to battle.[71] And the mighty-armed king, cased in armour by the high-souled preceptor, and accompanied by a thousand car-warriors of the Trigarta country, all accomplished in smiting,[72] and a thousand infuriate elephants endued with great prowess, and a hundred thousand horse, and many other mighty car-warriors,[73] proceeded towards the car of Arjuna. And the mighty-armed king proceeded, with the noise of diverse kinds of musical instruments, against his foe, like Virochana's son (Vali in days of yore).[74] Then, O Bhārata, a loud uproar arose among thy troops, beholding the Kuru king proceeding like a fathomless ocean.' "[75]

SECTION XCV.

"Sanjaya said,—'After that bull among men, *viz.*, Duryodhana, had set out from behind, following Pārtha and him of Vrishni's race, O king, both of whom had penetrated into the Kaurava army,[1] the Pāndavas, accompanied by the Somakas, quickly rushed against Drona with loud shouts. And then commenced the battle (between them and Drona's troops).[2] And the battle that took place between the Kurus and the Pāndavas at the gate of the array, was fierce and awful, making

the hair to stand on end. The sight filled the spectators with wonder.[3] O king, the Sun was then in the meridian. That encounter, O monarch, was truly such that we had never seen or heard of its like before.[4] The Pārthas headed by Dhrishtadyumna, all accomplished in smiting and arrayed properly, covered the troops of Drona with showers of arrows.[5] Ourselves also, placing Drona, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, at our head, covered the Pārthas headed by Prishata's son with our shafts.[6] The two hosts, adorned with cars and looking beautiful, then appeared like two mighty masses of clouds in the summer sky, driven towards each other by opposite winds.[7] Encountering each other, the two hosts increased their impetuosity, like the rivers Gangā and Yamunā swollen with water during the season of rains.[8] Having diverse kinds of weapons for the winds that ran before them, teeming with elephants and steeds and cars, charged with lightning constituted by the maces wielded by the warriors, the fierce and mighty cloud formed by the Kuru host,[9] urged on by the Drona-tempest, and pouring incessant shafts that constituted its torrents of rain, sought to quench the raging Pāndava-fire.[10] Like an awful hurricane in summer agitating the ocean, that best of Brāhmanas, *viz.*, Drona, agitated the Pāndava host.[11] Exerting themselves with great vigor, the Pāndavas rushed towards Drona alone for piercing his host, like a mighty torrent of water towards a strong embankment for sweeping it away.[12] Like an immovable hill resisting the fiercest current of water, Drona, however, resisted in that battle the enraged Pāndavas and Pānchālas and Kekayas.[13] Many other kings also, endued with great strength and courage, attacking them from all sides, began to resist the Pāndavas.[14] Then that tiger among men, *viz.*, the son of Prishata, uniting with the Pāndavas, began repeatedly to strike Drona, for piercing the hostile host.[15] Indeed, as Drona showered his arrows on Prishata's son, even so did the latter shower his on Drona.[16] Having scimitars and swords for the winds that blew before it, well-equipt with darts and lances and sabres, with the bowstring constituting its lightning, and the (twang of the) bow for its roars, the Dhrishtadyumna-cloud[17] poured on all sides torrents of weapons as its showers of stones,

Slaying foremost of car-warriors and large numbers of steeds, the son of Prishata seemed to deluge the hostile divisions (with his arrowy downpours).[18] And the son of Prishata, by his arrows, turned Drona away from all those tracks amid the car-divisions of the Pāndavas through which that hero attempted to pass striking the warriors there with his shafts.[19] And although Drona struggled vigorously in that battle, yet his host, encountering Dhrishtadyumna, became divided into three bodies.[20] One of these retreated towards Kritavarman the chief of the Bhojas, another towards Jalasandha; and another, fiercely slaughtered the while by the Pāndavas, proceeded towards Drona himself.[21] Drona, that foremost of car-warriors, repeatedly united his troops. The mighty warrior Dhrishtadyumna as often smote and separated them.[22] Indeed, the Dhārtarāshtra force, divided into three bodies, was slaughtered by the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas fiercely, like a herd of cattle in the woods by many beasts of prey, when unprotected by herdsmen.[23] And people thought that in that dreadful battle, it was Death himself who was swallowing the warriors first stupified by Dhrishtadyumna.[24] As a kingdom of a bad king is destroyed by famine and pestilence and robbers, even so was thy host afflicted by the Pāndavas.[25] And in consequence of the rays of the Sun falling upon the weapons and the warriors, and of the dust raised by the soldiers, the eyes of all were painfully afflicted.[26] Upon the Kaurava host being divided into three bodies during that dreadful carnage by the Pāndavas, Drona, filled with wrath, began to consume the Pānchālas with his shafts.[27] And while engaged in crushing those divisions and exterminating them with his shafts, the form of Drona became like that of the blazing *Yuga* fire.[28] That mighty car-warrior pierced cars, elephants, and steeds, and foot-soldiers, in that battle, each with only a single arrow, (and never employing more than one in any case).[29] There then was no warrior in the Pāndava army who was capable of bearing, O lord, the arrows shot from the bow of Drona.[30] Scorched by the rays of the Sun and blasted by the shafts of Drona, the Pāndava divisions there began to reel about on the field.[31] And thy host also, similarly slaughtered by Prishata's son, seemed to blaze up at every point like a dry

forest one fire.[32] And while both Drona and Dhrishtadyumna were slaughtering the two hosts, the warriors of both armies, in utter disregard of their lives, fought everywhere to the utmost extent of their prowess.[33] Neither in thy host nor in that of the enemy, O bull of Bharata's race, was there a single warrior who fled away from the battle through fear.[34] Those uterine brothers, *viz.*, Vivingçati and Chitrasena and the mighty car-warrior Vikarna, surrounded Kunti's son Bhimasena on all sides.[35] And Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, and Kshemadhurti of great prowess, supported thy three sons (who contended against Bhimasena).[36] King Vālhika of great energy and noble parentage, that mighty car-warrior, with his own troops and counsellors, resisted the sons of Draupadi.[37] Caivya the chief of the Govāsanas, with a thousand foremost warriors, faced the son, of great prowess, of the king of the Kāçis and resisted him.[38] King Calya the ruler of the Madras surrounded the royal Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, who resembled a blazing fire.[39] The brave and wrathful Dusçāsana, properly supported by his own divisions, angrily proceeded, in that battle, against Sātyaki, that foremost of car-warriors.[40] I myself, with my own troops, cased in mail and equipt with weapons, and supported by four hundred foremost of bowmen, resisted Chekitāna.*[41] Cakuni with seven hundred Gāndhāra warriors armed with bows, darts and swords, resisted the son of Mādri, (*viz.*, Sahadeva).[42] Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, those two great bowmen, who had, for the sake of their friend (Duryodhana), uplifted their weapons, disregarding their lives, encountered Virāta the king of the Matsyas.[43] King Vālhika, exerting himself vigorously, resisted the mighty and unvanquished Cikhandin the son of Yajnasena, that hero capable of resisting all foes.[44] The chief of Avanti, with the Sauviras and the cruel Pravadrakas, resisted the wrathful Dhrishtadyumna the prince of the Pānchālas.[45] Alāyudha quickly rushed against the brave *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha of cruel deeds who was wrath-

* This *sloka* occurs in all the texts. It would seem, therefore, that Sanjaya was not always a witness only of the battle for narrating what he saw to Dhritarāshtra, but somtimes at least took part in the battle.

fully advancing to battle.[46] The mighty car-warrior Kuntibhoja, accompanied by a large force, resisted Alamvusha, that prince of *Rākshasas*, of fierce mein.[47] Thus, O Bhārata, hundreds of separate encounters between the warriors of thy army and theirs took place.

" 'As regards the ruler of the Sindhus, he remained in the rear of the whole army, protected by many foremost of bowmen and car-warriors numbering Kripa amongst them.[48] And the ruler of the Sindhus had for the protectors of his wheels two of the foremost warriors, *viz*, the son of Drona on his right, O king, and the *Suta's* son (Karna) on the left.[49] And for protecting his rear he had a number of warriors headed by Somadatta's son, *viz.*, Kripa, and Vrishasena, and Cala, and the invincible Calya,[50] who were conversant with policy and were mighty bowmen accomplished in battle. And the Kuru warriors, having made these arrangements for the protection of the ruler of the Sindhus, fought (with the Pāndavas.)' "[51]

SECTION XCVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Listen, O king, to me as I describe to thee the wonderful battle that then took place between the Kurus and the Pāndavas.[1] Approaching Bharadwāja's son who was staying at the gate of his array, the Pārthas battled vigorously for piercing through Drona's division.[2] And Drona also, accompanied by his forces, desirous of protecting his own array, battled with the Pārthas, seeking glory.[3] Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti, excited with wrath and desirous of benefiting thy son, struck Virāta with ten shafts.[4] Virāta also, O king, approaching those two warriors of great prowess staying in battle, fought with them and their followers.[5] The battle that took place between these was fierce in the extreme, and blood ran in it like water. And it resembled an encounter in the woods between a lion and a couple of mighty elephants with rent temples.[6] The mighty son of Yajnasena forcibly struck king Vālhika in that battle with fierce and sharp shafts capable of penetrating into the very vitals.[7] Vālhika also, filled with wrath, deeply pierced Yajnasena's son with nine straight shafts

of golden wings and whetted on stone.[8] And that battle between those two warriors became exceedingly fierce, characterised as it was by dense showers of shafts and darts. And it enhanced the fears of the timid and the joy of heroes.[9] The arrows shot by them entirely covered the welkin and all the points of the compass so that nothing could any longer be discerned.[10] And Caivya the king of the Govāsanas, at the head of his troops, fought in that battle with that mighty car-warrior the prince of the Kāçis, like an elephant battling with another.[11] The king of the Vālhikas, excited with wrath, fighting against those (five) mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the sons of Draupadi, looked resplendent like the mind contending against the five senses.[12] And those five princes also, O foremost of embodied beings, fought with that antagonist of theirs, shooting their arrows from all sides, like the objects of the senses for ever battling with the body.[13] Thy son Dusçāsana struck Sātyaki of Vrishni's race with nine straight shafts of keen points.[14] Deeply pierced by that strong and great bowman, Sātyaki of prowess incapable of being baffled, was partially deprived of his senses.[15] Comforted soon, he of Vrishni's race then quickly pierced thy son, that mighty car-warrior, with ten shafts winged with *Kanka* feathers.[16] Piercing each other deeply and afflicted with each other's shafts, they looked resplendent, O king, like two *Kinçukas* decked with flowers.[17] Afflicted with the arrows of Kuntibhoja, Alamvusha, filled with wrath, looked like a beautiful *Kinçuka* graced with its flowering burthen.[18] The *Rākshasa* then, having pierced Kuntibhoja with many arrrows, uttered awful shouts at the head of thy host.[19] And as those heroes fought with each other in that battle, they seemed to all the troops to resemble Cakra and the *Asura* Jambha in days of old.[20] The two sons of Mādri, filled with wrath, fiercely grinded with their shafts the Gāndhāra prince Cakuni who had offended against them greatly.[21] The carnage, O monarch, that set in was awful. Originated by thee, nurtured by Karna,[22] and kept up by thy sons, the fire of wrath (of the Pāndavas) hath swelled now, O monarch, and is ready to consume the whole Earth![23] Forced to turn his back on the field by the two sons of Pāndu with their shafts, Cakuni,

unable to put forth his valour, knew not what to do.[24] Beholding him turn back, those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the two sons of Pāndu, once more showered their arrows on him like two masses of clouds pouring torrents of rain on a mighty hill.[25] Struck with countless straight shafts, the son of Suvala fled towards the division of Drona, borne by his swift steeds.[26] The brave Ghatotkacha rushed towards the *Rākshasa* Alāyudha in that battle, with impetuosity much short of what he was capable.[27] The bttale between those two became beautiful to behold, like that which in days of yore had taken place between Rāma and Rāvana.[28] King Yudhishthira, having in that battle pierced the ruler of the Madras with five hundred arrows, once more pierced him with seven.[29] Then commenced that battle between them which was exceedingly wonderful, O monarch, which resembled that, in days of yore, between the *Asura* Camvara and the chief the celestials.[30] Thy sons Vivingçati and Chitrasena and Vikarna, surrounded by a large force, battled with Bhimasena.' "[31]

SECTION XCVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'When that fierce battle making the hair to stand on end, commenced, the Pāndavas rushed against the Kauravas who had been divided into three bodies.[1] Bhimasena rushed against the mighty-armed Jalasandha, and Yudhishthira, at the head of his troops, rushed, in that battle, against Kritavarman.[2] And Dhrishtadyumna, O king, scattering his shafts like the Sun shooting his rays, rushed against Drona.[3] Then commenced that battle between all the bowmen, eager for the encounter, of the Kurus and the Pāndavas excited with wrath.[4] And during the progress of that terrible carnage, when all the warriors were battling with one another fearlessly,[5] the mighty Drona fought with the mighty prince of the Pānchālas. And the clouds of arrows he shot in that encounter filled all spectators with wonder.[6] And Drona and the prince of the Pānchālas, cutting off the heads of men by thousands, scattered them on the field of battle, making the latter resemble a forest of lotuses.[7] In every division were soon strewn on the ground robes

and ornaments and weapons, and standards and coats of mail.[8] And golden coats of mail dyed with blood looked like clouds charged with lightning.[9] Other mighty car-warriors, drawing their large bows measuring full six cubits long, felled with their shafts elephants and steeds and men.[10] In that dreadful encounter of arms between brave and high-souled warriors, swords and shields and bows and heads and coats of mail were seen lying scattered about.[11] Innumerable headless trunks were seen to rise up, O king, in the midst of that fierce battle.[12] And vultures and *Kankas* and crows and jackalls and swarms of other carnivorous animals, O sire, were seen there,[13] eating the flesh of fallen men and steeds and elephants, or drinking their blood, or dragging them by the hair, or licking or pecking, O king, at their marrow,[14] or dragging their bodies and severed limbs, or rolling their heads on the ground.[15] Warriors skilled in battle, accomplished in weapons, and firmly resolved on fight, struggled vigorously in the combat, solicitous only of fame.[16] Many were the combatants that careered over the field, performing the diverse evolutions of swordsmen. With sabres and darts and lances and spears and axes,[17] with maces and spiked clubs and other kinds of weapons, and with even bare arms, men who had entered the arena of battle, filled with rage, slew one another.[18] And car-warriors fought with car-warriors, and horsemen with horsemen, and elephants with foremost of elephants, and foot-soldiers with foot-soldiers.[19] And many infuriate elephants, as if perfectly mad, uttered loud shrieks and slew one another, after the manner they do in sporting arenas.[20]

" 'During the progress, O king, of that battle in which the combatants fought without any regard for one another, Dhrishtadyumna caused his own steeds to be mixed up with those of Drona.[21] Those steeds endued with the speed of the wind, that were white as pigeons and red as blood, thus mixed with one another in battle, looked exceedingly beautiful.[22] Indeed, they looked resplendent like coulds charged with lightning. Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the heroic Dhrishtadyumna, the son of Prishata beholding, Drona, O Bhārata, arrived so near, cast off his bow and took up his sword and shield, for achieving a difficult feat.[23-24] Seizing the shaft of Drona's car,

he entered into it. And he stayed sometimes on the middle of the yoke and sometimes on its joint,[25] and sometimes behind the steeds.* And while he was moving, armed with sword, quickly upon the backs of those red steeds of Drona,[26] the latter could not detect an opportunity for striking him. All this seemed wonderful to us. Indeed, like the swoop of a hawk in the woods from desire of food,[27] seemed that sally of Dhrishtadyumna from his own car for the destruction of Drona. Then Drona cut off, with a hundred arrows, the shield, decked with a hundred moons, of Drupada's son, and then his sword, with ten other arrows. And the mighty Drona then, with four and sixty arrows, slew the steeds of his antagonist.[28-29] And with a couple of broad-headed shafts he cut off the latter's standard and umbrella also, and then slew both his *Pārshni* charioteers. And then, with great speed, drawing his bowstring to his car, he shot at him a fatal shaft like the wielder of the thunder hurling the thunder (at a foe). But soon Sātyaki, with four and ten sharp shafts, cut off that fatal arrow of Drona.[30-31] And thus the Vrishni hero, O sire, rescued Dhrishtadyumna who had been seized by that lion among men, that foremost of preceptors, like a deer seized by the king of the forests.[32] Even thus did that bull amongst the Cinis rescue the prince of the Pānchālas. Beholding Sātyaki rescue the prince of the Pānchālas in that dreadful battle,[33] Drona quickly shot at him six and twenty arrows. The grandson of Cini then, in return, pierced Drona in the centre of the chest with six and twenty arrows while the latter was engaged in devouring the Srinjayas. Then all the Pānchāla car-warriors, desirous of victory, upon the Sātwata hero proceeding against Drona, quickly withdrew Dhrishtadyumna from the battle.' "[34-35]

---

* The words *tatçainyānyabhyapujayan* seem to be unmeaning in this connection. The Bengali translators, unable to do anything with them, have left them out.—T.

SECTION XCVIII.

"Dhritarāshta said,—'After that shaft of Drona had been cut off and Dhrishtadyumna thus rescued, O Sanjaya, by Yuyudhāna, that foremost one of the Vrishni race,[1] what did that great bowman, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, *viz.*, Drona, do in battle unto that tiger among men, *viz.*, the the grandson of Cini?'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Then Drona, like a mighty snake, having wrath for his poison, his stretched bow for his wide-open mouth, his sharp shafts for his teeth and whetted arrows for his fangs, with eyes red as copper from rage, and breathing hard,—that mighty hero among men, perfectly fearless,—borne on his red steeds of great speed that seemed to soar into the skies or get at the top of a mountain, rushed towards Yuyudhāna, scattering his arrows equipt with golden wings.[3-5] Then that sujugator of hostile cities, that hero of Cini's race, invincible in battle, beholding that irresistible Drona-cloud having showers of arrows for its watery downpour, the rattle of car-wheels for its roar, the outstretched bow for its volume, long shafts for its lightning flashes, darts and swords for its thunder, wrath for the winds preceding it, and urged on by those steeds that constituted the hurricane (impelling it forwards), rush towards him, addressed his charioteer and smilingly said,[6-8]—O *Suta*, proceed quickly and cheerfully, urging the steeds to their greatest speed, against that heroic Brāhmana fallen off from the duties of his order, that refuge of Dhritarāshtra's son, that dispeller of the (Kuru) king's sorrows and fears, that preceptor of all the princes, that warrior ever boastful of his prowess![9-10]—Then the excellent steeds of silvery hue belonging to him of Madhu's race, endued with the speed of the wind, quickly proceeded towards Drona.[11] Then those two chastisers of foes, *viz.*, Drona and Cini's grandson, fought with each other, each striking the other with thousands of shafts.[12] Those two bulls among men filled the welkin with their arrowy showers. Indeed, the two heroes covered the ten points of the compass with

their shafts.[13] And they poured on each other their shafts like two clouds pouring their contents (on the Earth) on the expiration of summer. The Sun became invisible. The very wind ceased to blow.[14] And in consequence of those showers of shafts filling the welkin, a continuous and thick gloom was caused there that became unbearable to the other heroes.[15] And when the shafts of Drona and Cini's grandson had caused that gloom there, none beheld any cessation in shooting in either of them. They were both quick in the use of weapons, and they were both looked upon as lions among men. The sound produced by those torrent of arrows, shot by both, striking against one another,[16-17] was heard to resemble the sound of the thunder hurled by Cakra. The forms of heroic warriors pierced with long shafts looked like those of snakes, O Bhārata, bit by snakes of virulent poison. Brave warriors incessantly heard the twangs of their bows and the sounds of their palms[18-19] to resemble the sound of thunder falling upon summits of mountains. The cars of both those warriors, O king, their steeds, and their charioteers,[20] pierced with shafts of golden wings, became beautiful to behold. Fierce was the downpour, O monarch, of shafts that were bright and staight and that looked resplendent like snakes of virulent poison freed from their sloughs. The umbrellas of both were cut off, as also the standards of both.[21-22] And both of them were covered with blood, and both were inspired with the hope of victory. With blood trickling down every limb of theirs, they resembled a couple of elephants with secretions trickling down their bodies.[23] And they continued to strike each other with fatal shafts. The roars and shouts and other cries, of the soldiers, the blare of conchs and the beat of drums,[24] ceased, O king, for none uttered any sound. Indeed, all the divisions became silent, and all the warriors stopped from fighting.[25] People, filled with curiosity, became spectators of that single combat. Car-warriors and elephant-riders and horsemen and foot-soldiers,[26] surrounding those two bulls among men, witnessed their encounter with steadfast eyes. And the elephant divisions stood still; and so also the horse divisions;[27] and so also the car-divisions. All stood still, disposed in array. Variegated with pearls and corals, decked with gems and gold,[28]

adorned with standards and ornaments, with coats of mail made of gold, with triumphal banners, with the rich housings of elephants, with fine blankets,[29] with bright and sharp weapons, with yak-tails, graced with gold and silver, on the heads of steeds,[30] with garlands round the frontal globes of elephants and rings round their tusks, O Bhārata, the Kuru and the Pāndava hosts then looked like a mass of clouds at the close of summer, decked with rows of cranes and myriads of fireflies (under them) and adorned with rainbows and flashes of lightning. Both our men and those of Yundhishthira,[31-32] beheld that battle between Yuyudhāna and the high-souled Drona; the gods also, headed by Brahman and Soma, and the *Siddhas*, and the *Chāranas*, and the *Vidyādharas*, and the great Snakes, saw it, stationed on their foremost of sky-ranging cars. And beholding the diverse motions forward and backward, of those lions among men, and their acts of striking each other, the spectators were filled with wonder. And both endued with great strength, Drona and Sātyaki, displaying their lightness of hand in the use of weapons, began to pierce each other with shafts. Then he of Daçārha's race, with his mighty shafts, cut off those of the illustrious Drona in that battle, and then, within a moment, the latter's bow also. Within, however, the twinkling of an eye, the son of Bharadwāja took up another bow and stringed it. Even that bow of his was cut off by Sātyaki. Drona then, with great speed, waited with another bow in hand.[33-38] As often, however, as Drona stringed his bow, Sātyaki cut it off. And this he did for full nine and seven times. Beholding then that superhuman feat of Yuyudhāna in battle, Drona, O monarch, thought in his mind,—This force of weapons that I see in this foremost one among the Sātwatas exists in Rāma and Dhananjaya and was seen also in Kārttavirya and that tiger among men, *viz.*, Bhishma!—The son of Bharadwāja, therefore, mentally applauded the prowess of Sātyaki.[39-41] Beholding that lightness of hand equal unto that of Vāsava himself, that foremost of regenerate ones, that first of all persons conversant with weapons, was highly gratified with Mādhava. And the gods also, with Vāsava at their head, were gratified with it.[42] The gods and the *Gandharvas*, O monarch, had

never before witnessed that lightness of hand of the quickly moving Yuyudhāna,[43] although they and the *Siddhas* and the *Chāranas* had been acquainted with the feats of which Drona was capable. Then Drona, that foremost of persons acquainted with weapons, that grinder of Kshatriyas, taking up another bow, aimed some weapons. Sātyaki, however, baffling those weapons with the illusion of his own weapons,[44-45] struck him some sharp shafts. All this seemed highly wonderful. Beholding that superhuman feat of his in battle, that feat of which nobody else was capable,[46] and which displayed very great skill, those amongst thy warriors that were judges of skill, applauded it. Sātyaki shot the same weapons that Drona shot.[47] Beholding this, that scorcher of foes, *viz.*, the preceptor, fought with a little less boldness than usual. Then that master of military science, O king, filled with wrath,[48] invoked celestial weapons for the destruction of Yuyudhāna. Beholding that terrible and foe-slaughtering *Agneya* weapon, Sātyaki,[49] that mighty bowman, invoked another celestial weapon, *viz.*, the *Vāruna*. Seeing them both take up celestial weapons, loud cries of *oh* and *alas* arose there.[50] The very creatures having the sky for their element ceased to range through it. Then the *Vāruna* and the *Agneya* weapons, which had thus been grafted on their shafts,[51] coming against each other (become fruitless).* Just at that time the Sun passed down in his course. Then king Yudhishthira, and Bhimasena the son of Pāndu,[52] and Nakula, and Sahadeva, desirous of protecting Sātyaki, and the Matsyas, and the Cālweya troops, speedily proceeded towards Drona. Then thousands of princes placing Dusçāsana at their head,[53-54] hastily proceeded towards Drona (for protecting him) who was surrounded by foes. Then, O king, commenced a fierce battle between them and thy bowmen.[55] The Earth was covered with dust and with showers of arrows shot (by both sides). And everything being thus covered, nothing could anylonger be discerned. Indeed, when

* The celestial weapons were forces dependent on *mantras*. Ordinary shafts, inspired with these *mantras*, were converted into celestial weapons.—T.

the troops were thus overwhelmed with dust, the battle proceeded in utter disregard (of persons and rules).' "[56]

SECTION XCIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the Sun turned in his downward course towards the summit of the Asta hills, when the welkin was covered with dust, when the heat of the solar orb abated,[1] the day began to fade fast. As regards the soldiers, some rested, some fought on, some returned to the encounter, desirous of victory.[2] And while the troops, inspired with hope of victory, were thus engaged, Arjuna and Vāsudeva proceeded towards the place where the ruler of the Sindhus was.[3] The son of Kunti, by means of his shafts, made (through the hostile soldiers) a way sufficiently wide for his car. And it was in this way that Janārddana proceeded, (guiding the car).[4] Thither where the car of the high-souled son of Pāndu proceeded, thither thy troops, O monarch, broke and yielded a way.[5] And he of Daçārha's race, endued with great energy, displayed his skill in driving cars by showing diverse kinds of circling motions.[6] And the shafts of Arjuna, engraved with his name, well-tempered, resembling the *Yuga* fire, tied round with catgut, of straight joints, thick, far-reaching, and made either of (cleft) bamboo (or their branches) or wholly of iron, taking the lives of diverse foes, drank in that battle, with the birds (of prey assembled there) the blood of living creatures.[7-8] Standing on his car as Arjuna shot his shafts full two miles ahead, those shafts pierced and despatched his foes just as that car itself came up to the spot.*[9] Hrishikeça proceeded, borne by those yoke-bearing steeds endued with the speed of Garuda or the wind, with such speed that he caused the whole universe to wonder at it.[10] Indeed, O king, the car of Surya himself, or that of Rudra, or that of Vaiçravana, never goeth so fast.[11] Nodbody else's car had ever before moved with such speed in battle as Arjuna's car moving with the celerity of a wish cher-

---

* In other words Arjuna's car shot as quickly through the enemy s the arrows themselves sped from it.—T.

ished in the mind.[12] Then Keçava, O king, that slayer of hostile heroes, having taken the car to battle, quickly urged the steeds, O Bhārata, through the (hostile) troops.[13] Arrived in the midst of that throng of cars, those excellent steeds bore Arjuna's car with difficulty, suffering as thy did from hunger, thirst, and toil,[14] and mangled as they had been with the weapons of many heroes delighting in battle. They frequently, however, described beautiful circles as they moved,[15] proceeding over the bodies of slain steeds and men, over broken cars, and the bodies of dead elephants looking like hills by thousands.[16]

"'Meanwhile, O king, the two heroic brothers of Avanti, (*viz.*, Vinda and Anuvinda), at the head of their forces, beholding the steeds of Arjuna to be tired, encountered him.[17] Filled with joy, they pierced Arjuna with four and sixty shafts, and Janārddana with sevently, and the four steeds (of Arjua's car) with a hundred arrows.[18] Then Arjuna, O king, filled with wrath, and having a knowledge of the vital parts of the body, struck them both in the battle, with nine straight shafts, every one of which was capable of penetrating into the very vitals.[19] Thereupon the two brothers, filled with rage, covered Vibhatsu and Keçava with showers of shafts and uttered leonine roars.[20] Then Pārtha of white steeds, with a couple of broad-headed shafts, quickly cut off in that battle the beautiful bows of the two brothers and then their two standards bright as gold.[21] Vinda and Anuvinda then, O king, taking up two other bows and becoming infuriate with anger, began to grind the son of Pāndu with their arrows.[22] Then Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu, exceedingly enraged, once more, with a couple of shafts, quickly cut off those two bows also of his foes.[23] And with a few other arrows whetted on stone and equipt with wings of gold, Arjuna then slew their steeds, their charioteers, the two combatants that protected their rear, with those that followed the latter.[24] And with another broad-headed arrow sharp as a razor, he cut off the head of the eldest brother, who fell down on the Earth, deprived of life, like a tree broken by the wind.[25] The mighty Anuvinda then, endued with great prowess, beholding Vinda slain, left his steedles car, having taken up a mace.[26] Then that foremost of car-warriors, *viz*, the brother of Vinda,

apparently dancing as he advanced with that mace in his arms, proceeded in that battle for avenging the slaughter of his elder brother.[27] Filled with rage, Anuvinda struck Vāsudeva on the forehead with that mace. The latter, however, trembled not but stood still like the mountain Maināka.[28] Then Arjuna, with six arrows, cut off his neck and two legs and two arms and head. Thus cut off (into fragments, the limbs of) Anuvinda fell down like so many hills.[29] Beholding them both slain, their followers, O king, filled with rage, rushed (towards Arjuna), scattering hundreds of arrows.[30] Slaying them soon, O bull of Bharata's race, Arjuna looked resplenent like a fire consuming a forest on the expiry of winter.[31] Passing over those troops with some difficulty, Dhananjaya then shone brightly like the risen Sun transgressing the clouds under which it was hid.[32] Beholding him the Kauravas were filled with fright. But recovering soon enough, they rejoiced once more and rushed at him from all sides, O bull of Bharata's race![33] Understanding that he was tired and that the ruler of the Sindhus was yet at a distance, they surrounded him, uttering leonine roars.[34] Beholding them filled with wrath, Arjuna, that bull among men, smilingly addressed him of Daçārha's race in soft words, and said,[35]—Our steeds are afflicted with arrows and tired. The ruler of the Sindhus is still at a distance. What do you think is the best that should be done now?[36] Tell me O Krishna, truly! Thou art always the wisest of persons! The Pāndavas having thee for their eyes will vanquish their foes in battle![37] That which seems to me should be done next, truly shall I say unto thee! Unyoking the steeds to their ease, pluck off their arrows, O Mādhava![38]—Thus addressed by Pārtha, Keçava replied unto him,—I also am, O Pārtha, of the same opinion which thou hast expressed!—[39]

"'Arjuna then said,—I will hold in check the whole army O Keçava! Do thou properly perform that which should be next done![40]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Alighting then from the terrace of his car, Dhananjaya, taking up his bow *Gāndiva*, fearlessly stood there like an immovable hill.[41] Beholding Dhananjaya standing on the ground, and regarding it a good opportunity,

the Kshatriyas, desirous of victory and uttering loud shouts, rushed towards him.[42] Him standing alone they surrounded with a large throng of cars, all stretching their bows and showering their shafts on him.[43] Filled with wrath they displayed diverse kinds of weapons and entirely shrouded Pārtha with their shafts like the clouds shrouding the Sun.[44] And the great Kshatriya warriors impetuously rushed against that bull among Kshatriyas, that lion among men, like infuriate elephants rushing towards a lion.[45] The might then that we beheld of Pārtha's arms was exceedingly great, since, filled with rage, alone, he succeeded in resisting those countless warriors.[46] The puissant Pārtha, baffling with his own weapons those of foes, quickly covered all of them with countless shafts.[47] In that part of the welkin, O monarch, in consequence of the clash of those dense showers of shafts, a fire was generated emitting incessant sparks.[48] There in consequence of hostile heroes, countless in number, all filled with wrath, and all great bowmen united together for a common purpose, seeking victory in battle, aided by steeds covered with blood and breathing hard, and by infuriate and foe-grinding elephants uttering loud shrieks, the weather became exceedingly hot.[49-50] That uncrossable, wide, and limitless Ocean of cars, incapable of being agitated, having arrows for its current, standards for its eddies, elephants for its crocodiles, foot-soldiers for its countless fishes, the blare of conchs and the beat of drums for its roar, cars for its surging waves, head-gears of combatants for its tortoises, umbrellas and banners for its froth, and the bodies of slain elephants for its (submarine) rocks, Pārtha resisted with his arrows, becoming, as it were, a continent.[51-53] Then, in course of that battle, the mighty-armed Janārddana, fearlessly addressing that dear friend of his, that foremost of men, *viz.*, Arjuna, said unto him,[54]—There is no well here in the field of battle, O Arjuna, for the steeds to drink from! The steeds want water for drink, but not for a bath![55]—Thus addressed by Vāsudeva, Arjuna cheerfully said, —Here is it!—And so saying, he pierced the Earth with a weapon and made an excellent lake from which the steeds could drink.[56] And that lake abounded with swans and ducks,

and was adorned with *Chakravākas*. And it was wide and full of transparent water, and abounded with full-blown lotuses of the foremost species.[57] And it teemed with diverse kinds of fish. And fathomless in depth, it was the resort of many a *Rishi*. And the celestial *Rishi* Nārada came to have a look at that lake created there in a moment.[58] And Pārtha, capable of achieving wonderful works like (the celestial artificer) Tashtri himself, also constructed there an arrowy hall, having arrows for its beams and rafts, arrows for its pillars, and arrows for its roof.[59] Then Govinda, laughing in joy, said,—*Excellent, Excellent*,—upon seeing the high-souled Pārtha create that arrowy hall.' "[60]

SECTION C.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the high-souled son of Kunti had created that water, after he had commenced to hold in check the hostile army, and after he had built also that arrowy hall,[1] Vāsudeva of great splendour, alighting from the car, unyoked the steeds pierced and mangled with arrows.[2] Beholding that sight never seen before, loud uproars of applause were heard there, uttered by the *Siddhas* and the *Chāranas* and by all the warriors.[3] Mighty car-warriors (assembled together) were unable to resist the son of Kunti even when he fought on foot. All this seemed highly wonderful.[4] Although throngs upon throngs of cars, and myriads upon myriads of elephants and steeds, rushed towards him, yet Pārtha felt no fear but fought on, prevailing upon all his foes.[5] All the (hostile) kings shot showers of shafts at the son of Pāndu. That slayer of hostile heroes, however, *viz.*, the son of Vāsava, of virtuous soul, felt no anxiety whatever.[6] Indeed, the valiant Pārtha received hundreds of arrowy showers and maces and lances coming towards him as the Ocean receives hundreds upon hundreds of rivers flowing towards it.[7] With the impetuous might of his own weapons and the strength of his arms, Pārtha received the foremost of shafts shot at him by those foremost of kings.[8] Although staying on the ground, and alone, he succeeded yet in baffling all those kings on their cars like that

one fault, avarice, destroying a host of accomplishments.[9] The Kauravas, O king, applauded the highly wonderful prowess of Pārtha as also of Vāsudeva, saying,[10]—What more wonderful incident hath ever taken place in this world or will ever take place than this, *viz.*, that Pārtha and Govinda, in course of battle, have unyoked their steeds ?[11] Displaying fierce energy on the field of battle and the greatest assurance, those best of men have inspired us with great fright![12]—Then Hrishikeça of eyes like lotus petals, smiling with the coolest assurance as if, O Bhārata, he were in the midst of women (and not armed foes), after Arjuna had created in the field of battle that hall made of arrows, led the steeds into it, in the very sight, O monarch, of all thy troops![13-14] And Krishna, who was well-skilled in grooming horses, then removed their fatigue, pain, froth, trembling, and wounds.*[15] Then plucking out their arrows and rubbing those steeds with his own hands, and walking them duly, he caused them to drink.[16] Having caused them to drink and having bathed them properly and made them eat and removed their fatigue and pain, he once more carefully yoked them to that foremost of cars.[17] Then that foremost one among all wielders of weapons, *viz.*, Caurin, of great energy, mounting on that car with Arjuna, proceeded with great speed.[18] Beholding the car of that foremost of car-warriors once more equipt with those steeds whose thirst had been slaked, the foremost ones among the Kuru army once more became cheerless.[19] They began to sigh, O king, like snakes whose fangs had been pulled out. And they said,—Oh, fie, fie on us! Both Pārtha and Krishna have gone,[20] in the very sight of all the Kshatriyas, riding on the same car, and clad in mail, and slaughtering our troops with as much ease as boys sporting with a toy![21] Indeed, those scorchers of foes have gone away in the very sight of all the kings, displaying their prowess and unimpeded by our shouting and struggling combatants![22]—Seeing them gone away, other warriors said,—Ye Kauravas, speed ye for the

* The Bengal reading of the first line is vicious. The Bombay reading is *Vamathum*, *Vepathum*, *Vānān*. The first word means the froth in the mouths of steeds.—T.

slaughter of Krishna and the diadem-decked (Arjuna) ![23] Yoking his steeds unto his car in the very sight of all (our) bowmen, he of Daçārha's race is proceeding towards Jayadratha, slaughtering us in battle ![24]—And some lords of Earth there, O king, said amongst themselves, having seen that highly wonful incident in battle never seen before,[25]—Alas, through Duryodhana's fault, these warriors, king Dhritarāshtra, the Kshatriyas, and the whole Earth, fallen into great distress,[26] are being distroyed! King Duryodhana understands it not !—Thus spoke many Kshatriyas. Others, O Bhārata, said,[27]—The ruler of the Sindhus hath already been despatched to Yama's abode! Of false sight and unacquainted with means, let Duryodhana now do what should be done for that king ![*28]—Meanwhile the son of Pāndu, seeing the Sun coursing towards the setting hills, proceeded with greater speed towards the ruler of the Sindhus, on his steeds whose thirst had been slaked.[29] The (Kuru) warriors were unable to resist that mighty-armed hero, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, as he proceeded like the Destroyer himself in wrath.[30] That scorcher of foes, *viz.*, the son of Pāndu, routing the warriors (before him), agitated that army like the lion agitating a herd of deer, as he proceeded for getting at Jayadratha.[31] Penetrating into the hostile army, he of Daçārha's race urged the steeds with great speed, and blew his conch *Pānchajanya* which was of the hue of the clouds.[32] The shafts shot before by the son of Kunti began to fall behind him, so swiftly did those steeds, endued with the speed of the wind, drew that car.[33] Then many kings, filled with rage, and many other Kshatriyas, surrounded Dhananjaya who was desirous of slaying Jayadratha.[34] When the (Kuru) warriors thus proceeded towards that bull among men, *(viz.*, Arjuna) who had stopped for a moment, Duryodhana, proceeding quickly, followed Pārtha in that great battle.[35] Many warriors, beholding the car whose rattle resembled the roar of the clouds and which was equipt with that terrible standard bearing the ape and whose banner floated upon the wind, became exceedingly cheerless.[36]

---

* *I. e.*, his funeral obsequies. The vernacular translators do not see the intended joke.—T.

Then when the Sun was almost completely shrouded by the dust (raised by the combatants), the (Kuru) warriors, afflicted with shafts, became incapable of even gazing, in that battle, at the two Krishnas.' "[37]

SECTION CI.

"Sanjaya said,—'O monarch, beholding Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya penetrate into their host having already pierced through many divisions, the kings of thy army, fled away in fear,[1] A little while after, however, those high-souled ones, filled with rage and shame, and urged on by their might, became cool and collected, and proceeded towards Dhananjaya.[2] But they, O king, who, filled with rage and vindictiveness, proceeded against the son of Pāndu in battle, returned not, like rivers never returning from the Ocean.[3] Seeing this, many ignoble Kshatriyas incurrred sin and hell by flying away from battle, like atheists turning away from the *Vedas*.*[4] Transgressing that throng of cars, those two bulls among men at last issued out of it and looked like the Sun and the Moon freed from the jaws of *Rāhu*.[5] Indeed, the two Krishnas, their fatigue dispelled, having pierced through that vast host, looked like two fishes that had passed through a strong net.[6] Having forded through that impenetrable division of Drona, the way through which was obstructed by dense showers of weapons, those two high-souled heroes looked like *Yuga*-Suns risen (on the welkin).[7] Piercing through and through those dense showers of weapons and freed from that imminent danger, those high-souled heroes, themselves obstructing the welkin with thick clouds of weapons, seemed like persons escaped from a raging conflagration or like two fishes from the jaws of a *makara*. And they agitated the (Kuru) host like a couple of *makaras* agitating the ocean.[8-9] Thy warriors and thy sons, while Pārtha and Krishna were yet in the midst of Drona's division, had thought that the two would never be able to issue out of it.[10] Beholding, however, those

---

* I give the sense of this verse, without giving a closely literal version.—T.

two heroes of great splendour issue out of Drona's division, they no longer, O monarch, hoped for Jayadratha's life![11] Hitherto they had strong hopes of Jayadratha's life, for they had thought, O king, that the two Krishnas would never be able to escape from Drona and Hridikā's son.[12] Frustrating that hope those two scorchers of foes had, O monarch, crossed the division of Drona as also the almost uncrossable division of the Bhojas.[13] Beholding them, therefore, ford through those divisions and look like two blazing fires, thy men became possessed with despair and no longer hoped for Jayadratha's life![14] Then those two fearless hereos, *viz.*, Krishna and Dhananjaya, those enhancers of the fears of foes, began to converse between themselves about the slaughter of Jayadratha.[15] And Arjuna said,—This Jayadratha hath been placed in their midst by six of the foremost car-warriors among the Dhārtarāshtras. The ruler of the Sindhus, however, shall not escape me if once he is seen by me![16] If Cakra himself with all the celestials become his protector in battle, yet shall we slay him!—Thus did the two Krishnas talk.[17] Even so, O mighty-armed one, did they converse amongst themselves while looking after the ruler of the Sindhus. (Having heard what they said), thy sons set up a loud wail.[18] Those two chastisers of foes then looked like a couple of thirsty elephants of great quickness of motion refreshed with drinking water after having passed through a desert.[19] Beyond death and above decrepitude, they then looked like two merchants that have passed over a mountainous country abounding with tigers and lions and elephants.[20] Indeed, beholding them freed (from Drona and Krivarman), thy warriors regarded the color of Pārtha's and Krishna's face to be such. And thy men then, from all sides, set up a loud wail.[21] Freed from Drona who resembled a snake of virulent poison or a blazing fire, as also from the other lords of Earth, Pārtha and Krishna looked like two blazing Suns.[22] Indeed, those two chastisers of foes, freed from Drona's division which resembled the very Ocean, seemed to be filled with joy like persons that have safely crossed the vasty deep.[23] Freed from those dense showers of weapons, from those divisions protected by Drona and Hridikā's son, Keçava and Arjuna looked like Indra and Agni of blazing efful-

gence.[24] The two Krishnas, pierced with the sharp shafts of Bharadwāja's son and with bodies dripping with blood, looked resplendent like two mountains decked with flowering *Karnikāras*.[25] Having forded that wide lake, of which Drona contituted the alligator, darts formed the fierce snakes, shafts the *Makaras*, and Kshatriyas the deep waters,[26] having issued out of that cloud constituted by Drona's weapons, whose thunders were the twang of bows and the sound of palms, and whose lightning flashes were constituted by maces and swords, Pārtha and Krishna looked like the Sun and the Moon freed from darkness.[27] Having crossed the region obstracted by the weapons of Drona, all creatures regarded those mighty and famous bowmen, *viz.*, the two Krishnas, as persons who had forded, with the aid of their arms, the five rivers, (*viz.*, the Catadru, the Vipāça, the Rāvati, the Chandrabhāgā, and the Vitastā) having the Ocean for their sixth when full of water during the season of rains and abounding with large alligators.[28-29] Casting their eyes, from desire of slaughter, on Jayadratha who was not far off from them, the two heroes looked like two tigers waiting from desire of falling upon a *Ruru* deer.[30] Such was then the color of their faces that thy warriors, O monarch, regarded Jayadratha as one already slain.[31] Possessed of red eyes, O mighty-armed one, and staying together, Krishna and the son of Pāndu, at sight of Jayadratha, were filled with joy and roared repeatedly.[32] Indeed, O monarch, the splendour then of Caurin standing with reins in hand and of Pārtha armed with bow, was like that of the Sun or the fire.[33] Freed from the division of Drona, their joy, at sight of the ruler of the Sindhus, was like that of a couple of hawks at sight of a piece of flesh.[34] Beholding the ruler of the Sindhus not far off, they rushed in wrath towards him like a couple of hawks swooping down towards a piece of meat.[35] Seeing Hriçikeça and Dhananjaya transgress (the divisions of Drona), thy valiant son, *viz.*, king Duryodhana, whose armour had been bound on his person by Drona, and who was well versed in grooming and guiding horses, rushed, on a single car, O lord, for the protection of the Sindhus.[36-37] Leaving those mighty bowmen, *viz.*, Krishna and Pārtha, behind, thy son, O king, turned back,

facing Keçava of lotus-like eyes.[38] When thy son thus outran Dhananjaya, diverse musical instruments were joyfully blown and beat among all thy troops.[39] And leonine roars also were uttered, mingled with the blare of conchs, beholding Duryodhana staying in the face of the two Krishnas.[40] They also, O king, resembling blazing fires, that stood as the protectors of Jayadratha, were filled with joy upon beholding thy son in battle.[41] Seeing Duryodhana transgress them with his followers, Krishna, O monarch, said unto Arjuna these words suited to the occasion.' "[42]

SECTION CII.

"'Vāsudeva said,—Behold, O Dhananjaya, this Suyodhana who hath transgressed us! I regard this as highly wonderful! There is no car-warrior equal to him![1] His arrows are far-reaching. He is a great bowman. Accomplished in weapons, he is exceedingly difficult to vanquish in battle. The mighty son of Dhritarāshtra strikes hard, and is conversant with all modes of warfare.[2] Brought up in great luxury, he is much regarded by even the foremost of car-warriors. He is well accomplished, and, O Pārtha, he always hates the Pāndavas![3] For these reasons, O sinless one, I think, thou shouldst now fight with him. Upon him resteth, as upon a stake at dice, victory or the reverse![4] Upon him, O Pārtha, vomit that poison of thy wrath which thou hast cherished so long! This mighty car-warrior is the root of all the wrongs of the Pāndavas![5] He is now within reach of thy shafts. Look after thy success! Why hath king Duryodhana, desirous as he is of kingdom, come to battle with thee?[6] By good luck it is that he is now arrived within reach of thy arrows! Do that, O Dhananjaya, by which he may be deprived of very life![7] Reft of his senses through pride of affluence, he hath never felt any distress! O bull among men, he doth not know also thy prowess in battle![8] Indeed, the three worlds with the celestials, the *Asuras*, and human beings, cannot venture to vanquish thee in battle! What need be said, therefore, of the single Duryodhana?[9] By good luck it is, O Pārtha, that he hath approached the vicinity of

thy car! O mighty-armed one, slay him as Purandara slew Vritra![10] O sinless one, this Duryodhana hath endeavoured to bring evil on you! By deceit he cheated king Yudhishthira at dice![11] O giver of honors, sinless though you all are, this prince of sinful soul has always done various cruel acts towards you![12] Nobly resolved upon battle O Pārtha slay without any scruple this wicked wight, who is ever wrathful and ever cruel, and who is the very embodiment of avarice![13] Remembering the deprivation of your kingdom by deceit, your exile into the woods, and the wrongs of Krishnā, put forth thy prowess, O son of Pāndu![14] By good luck it is that he stayeth within the range of thy shafts. By good luck it is that staying before thee he endeavours to resist thy purpose![15] By good luck it is that he knows today that he will have to fight with thee in battle! By good luck it is that all your purposes, even those that are not presently entertained by you, will be crowned with fruition![16] Therefore, O Pārtha, slay this wretch of his race, *viz.*, the son of Dhritarāshtra, in battle, as Indra had, in days of yore, slain the *Asura* Jambha in the battle between the celestials and the *Asuras!*[17] If he is slain by thee, thou canst then pierce through this masterless host! Cut the very root of these wicked-souled wretches! Let the *avabhritha* of this hostility be now accomplished![*18]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed, Pārtha replied unto Keçava, saying,—So be it. Even this should be done by me! Disregarding everything else, proceed thither where Duryodhana is![19] Putting forth my prowess in battle, I will cut off the head of that wretch who hath for such a long period enjoyed our kingdom without a thorn in his side![20] Shall I not succeed, O Keçava, in avenging the insult, in the shape of dragging her by the hair, offered unto Draupadi undeserving as she was of that wrong?[21]—Thus conversing with each other, the two Krishnas, filled with joy, urged those excellent white

---

* *Avabhritha* is the final bath undergone, on completion of a sacrifice, by the person performing the sacrifice. The slaughter of Duryodhana would, according to Krishna, be the *avabhritha* of the sacrifice of battle.—T.

steeds of theirs, desirous of getting at king Duryodhana.[22] As regards thy son, O bull of Bharata's race, having approached the presence of Pārtha and Krishna, he entertained no fear, although, O sire, every circumstance was calculated to inspire fear.[23] And the Kshatriyas there, on thy side, highly applauded him then, for he proceeded to face Arjuna and Hrishikeça for resisting them.[24] Indeed, beholding the king in battle, a loud shout was heard there, O monarch, uttered by the entire Kuru army.[25] When that terrible and awful shout arose there, thy son, pressing his foe hard, opposed his progress.[26] Held in check by thy son armed with bow, the son of Kunti became filled with rage, and that chastiser of foes, *viz.*, Duryodhana, also became highly enraged with Pārtha.[27] Beholding both Duryodhana and Dhananjaya enraged with each other, all the Kshatriyas, of fierce forms, began to look at them from all sides.[28] Seeing Pārtha and Vāsudeva both filled with rage, thy son, O sire, desirous of battle, smilingly challenged them.[29] Then he of Daçārha's race became filled with joy, and Dhananjaya also, the son of Pāndu, became cheerful. Uttering loud roars, they both blew their foremost of conchs.[30] Seeing them thus cheerful, all the Kauravas became hopeless of thy son's life.[31] Indeed, all the Kuravas, and many even amongst the enemy, became possessed with grief, and regarded thy son as a libation already poured into the mouth of the (sacred) fire.[32] Thy warriors, seeing Krishna and the Pāndava so cheerful, loudly exclaimed, afflicted with fear,—*The king is slain !—The king is slain !*[33]—Hearing that loud uproar of the warriors, Duryodhana said,—Let your fears be dispelled ! I will despatch the two Krishnas unto the regions of Death ![34]—Having told all his warriors these words, king Duryodhana then, expectant of success, addressed Pārtha angrily and said these words:[35]—If, O Pārtha, thou art begotten by Pāndu, exhibit upon me, without loss of time, all the weapons, celestial and earthly, that thou hast learnt ![36] Put forth quickly all thy might and prowess, and all that Keçava also hath of either, upon me ! I wish to see thy manliness ![37] They speak of many feats achieved by thee out of our view. Show me those feats that have won the applause of many as endued with great heroism !—' "[38]

SECTION CIII.

'Sanjaya said,—'Saying these words, king Duryodhana pierced Arjuna with three shafts of great impetuosity and capable of penetrating into the very vitals. And with four others he pierced the four steeds of his foe.[1] And he pierced Vāsudeva in the centre of the chest with ten shafts, and cutting off, with a broad-headed arrow, the whip in the latter's hands, he felled it on the ground.[2] Then Pārtha, coolly and without losing a moment, shot at him four and ten shafts whetted on stone and equipt with beautiful feathers. All those shafts, however, were repelled by Duryodhana's armour.[3] Beholding their fruitlessness, Pārtha once more sped at him nine and five arrows of keen points. But these too were repelled by Duryodhana's armour.[4] Seeing eight and twenty arrows of his become abortive, that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, Krishna, said unto Arjuna, these words:[5]—I see a sight never before witnessed by me, like the walking of hills! Shafts sped by thee, O Pārtha, are becoming abortive![6] O bull of Bharata's race, hath thy *Gāndiva* decayed in power? Have the might of thy grasp and the power of thy arms become less than what they were![7] Is not this to be thy last meeting with Duryodhana? Tell me, O Pārtha, for I ask thee![8] Great hath been my amazement, O Pārtha, upon seeing all these shafts of thine fall towards Duryodhana's car without producing the slightest effect![9] Alas, what misfortune is this that these terrible shafts of thine that are endued with the might of the thunder and that always pierce the bodies of foes, fail of effect![10]—

"'Arjuna said,—I think, O Krishna, that this armour hath been put on Duryodhana's body by Drona! This armour, tied as it hath been, is impenetrable to my weapons![11] In this armour, O Krishna, inhereth the might of the three worlds. Only Drona knoweth it, and from that best of men I also have learnt it![12] This armour is not capable of being pierced by my weapons! Maghavat himself, O Govinda, cannot pierce it with his thunder![13] Knowing it all, O Krishna, why seekest thou to

confound me? That which occurred in the three worlds, that which, O Keçava, exists now,[14] and that which is in the womb of futurity, are all known to thee! Indeed, O slayer of Madhu, no one also knoweth this better than thou dost![15] This Duryodhana, O Krishna, cased by Drona in this armour, is staying fearlessly in battle, wearing this coat of mail.[16] That, however, which one wearing such armour should do, is not known to him, O Mādhava! He weareth it only like a woman.[17] Behold now, O Janārddana, the might of my arms and that of my bow too! Though protected by such a coat of mail, I will still vanquish the Kuru prince![18] The chief of the celestials gave this effulgent armour to Angiras. From the latter it was obtained by Vrihaspati. And from Vrihaspati it was got by Purandra.[19] The lord of the celestials once more gave it to me with the *mantras* to be uttered in wearing it. Even if this armour were divine, if it were created by Brahman himself, still the wretch Duryodhana, struck with my arrows, shall not be protected by it!—'[20]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said these words, Arjuna inspired some arrows with *mantras*, and began to draw them on the bowstring. And while he was thus drawing them on the bowstring,[21] the son of Drona cut them off with a weapon that was capable of baffling every weapon. Beholding those shafts of his thus frustrated from a distance by that utterer of *Brahma* (*viz.*, Açwatthāman),[22] Arjuna, owning white steeds, filled with amaze, represented unto Keçava, Saying,—I cannot, O Janārddana, twice use this weapon,[23] for if I do so, it will slay my own self and my own troops!—Meanwhile Duryodhana, O king, pierced each of the Krishnas in that battle with nine shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison. And once more the Kuru king showered his shafts on Krishna and the son of Pāndu.[24-25] Beholding these dense showers of arrows (shot by their king), thy warriors were filled with joy. They beat their musical instruments and uttered leonine roars.[26] Then Pārtha, excited with rage in that battle, licked the corners of his mouth. Casting his eyes on his enemy's body he saw not any part that was not well covered with that impenetrable armour.[27] With some sharp-pointed shafts then, well shot from his bow and each of which resembled Death himself, Arjuna slew his antagonist's steeds

and then his two *Pārshni* charioteers.[28] And soon also the valiant Pārtha cut off Duryodhana's bow and the leathern fence casing his fingers. Then Savyasāchin commenced to cut off his enemy's car into fragments.[29] And with a couple of keen arrows he made Duryodhana carless. And then Arjuna pierced both the palms of the Kuru king.[30] Beholding that great bowman afflicted with the shafts of Dhananjaya and fallen into great distress, many warriors rushed to the spot, desirous of rescuing him.[31] These, with many thousands of cars, well-equipt elephants and horse, as also with large bodies of foot-soldiers excited with wrath, encompassed Dhananjaya.[32] Covered with dense showers of weapons and encompassed by large bodies of men, neither that car of theirs nor Arjuna and Govinda could any longer be seen.[33] Then Arjuna, by the might of his weapons, began to slaughter that host. And car-warriors and elephants, by hundreds, deprived of limbs, fell fast on the field.[34] Slain or in the act of being slain, these failed to reach the excellent car. Indeed, the car on which Arjuna rode stood motionless full two miles from the besieging force on every side.[35] Then the Vrishni hero (Krishna), without taking any time, said unto Arjuna these words:—Draw thy bow quickly and with great force, for I will blow my conch.[36]—Thus addressed, Arjuna drawing his bow *Gāndiva* with great force, began to slaughter the foe, shooting dense showers of shafts and making a loud noise by stretching the bowstring with his fingers.[37] Keçava meanwhile forcibly and very loudly blew his conch *Pānchajanya*, his face covered with sweat and his eyelashes covered with dust.[38] In consequence of the blare of that conch and of the twang of *Gāndiva*, the Kuru warriors, strong or weak, all fell down on the ground.[39] The car of Arjuna then, freed from that press, looked resplendent like a cloud driven by the wind. (Beholding Arjuna), the protectors of Jayadratha, with their followers, became filled with rage.[40] Indeed, those mighty bowmen, the protectors of the ruler of the Sindhus, suddenly beholding Pārtha, uttered loud shouts, filling the Earth with that noise.[41] The whiz of their arrows mingled with other fierce noises and the loud blare of their conchs. Those high-souled warriors uttered leonine shouts.[42] Hearing that awful uproar raised by thy troops, Vāsu-

deva and Dhananjaya blew their conchs.[43] With the loud blare (of their conchs), the whole Earth, with her mountains and seas and islands and the nether regions, O monarch, seemed to be filled.[44] Indeed, that blare, O best of the Bharatas, filled all the points of the compass, and was echoed back by both the armies.[45] Then thy car-warriors, beholding Krishna and Dhananjaya, became very much frightened. Soon, however, they recovered and put forth their activity.[46] Indeed, the great car-warriors of thy host, beholding the two Krishnas, those highly blessed persons, cased in mail, rushed towards them in wrath. The sight thus presented became a wonderful one.' "[47]

SECTION CIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thy warriors, as soon as they beheld those foremost of persons of the Vrishni-Andhaka and the Kuru races, lost no time, each striving to be first, in proceeding against them from desire of slaughtering them. And so Vijaya also rushed against those foes of his.[1] On their great cars decked with gold, cased in tiger-skins, producing deep rattle, and resembling blazing fires, they rushed, illumining the ten points of the compass,[2] armed, O king, with bows the backs of whose staves were decked with gold, and which, in consequence of their splendour, were incapable of being looked at, and uttering loud cries, and drawn by angry steeds.[3] Bhuriçravas, and Cala, and Karna, and Vrishasena, and Jayadratha, and Kripa, and the ruler of the Madras, and that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, the son of Drona,[4] these eight great car-warriors, as if devouring the skies (as they proceeded) illumined the ten points of the compass with their splendid cars cased in tiger-skins and decked with golden moons.[5] Clad in mail and filled with wrath, and mounted upon their cars the rattle of whose wheels resembled the roar of masses of clouds, they covered Arjuna on every side with showers of sharp shafts.[6] Beautiful steeds of the best breed, endued with great speed, bearing those great car-warriors, looked resplendent as they illumined the ten points of the compass.[7] Their cars dragged by foremost steeds of great fleetness born in diverse countries and of diverse species,

some bred in mountainous regions, some in rivers, and some in the country of the Sindhus,[8] many foremost of car-warriors among the Kurus, desirous, O king, of rescuing thy son, quickly rushed towards Dhananjaya's car from every side.[9] Those foremost of men, taking up their great conchs, blew them, filling, O king, the welkin and the Earth with her seas (with that blare).[10] Then those foremost ones among the gods, *viz.*, Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya, also blew their foremost of conchs on Earth.[11] The son of Kunti blew *Devadatta*, and Keçava blew *Pānchajanya*. The loud blast of *Devadatta*, sent forth by Dhananjaya,[12] filled the Earth, the welkin, and the ten points of the compass. And so *Pānchajanya* also, blown by Vāsudeva,[13] surpassing all sounds, filled the sky and the Earth. And while that awful and fierce noise continued,[14] a noise that inspired the timid with fear and the brave with joy, and while drums and *Jharjharas* and cymbals [15] and *Mridangas*, O great king, were beat by thousands, great car-warriors invited to the Kuru side and solicitous of Duryodhana's welfare,[16] those great bowmen, filled with rage and unable to bear the loud blasts of Arjuna's and Krishna's conchs, those kings from diverse realms supported by their respective troops,[17] in rage blew their great conchs, desiring to answer with their own blasts the blasts of Keçava and Arjuna.[18] The Kuru army then, urged forward by that blare of conchs, had its car-warriors, elephants, and steeds filled with anxiety and fear. Indeed, O lord, that host looked as if they that comprised it were all ill.[19] The agitated Kuru host, echoing with that blare of conchs blown by brave warriors, seemed to be like the welkin resounding with the noise of thunder and fallen down (through some convulsion of nature).*[20] That loud uproar, O monarch, resounded through the ten points and frightened that host like the developed incidents at the end of the *Yuga* frightening all living creatures.[21] Then Duryodhana and those eight great car-warriors appointed for the protection of Jayadratha all surrounded the son of the Pāndu.[22] The son of Drona struck Vāsudeva with three and seventy

---

* *Praviddham* means fallen down or loosened from its usual place. Thus Nilakantha.—T.

shafts, Arjuna himself with three broad-headed shafts, and his standard and (four) steeds with five others.[23] Beholding Janārddana pierced, Arjuna, filled with rage, struck Açwatthāman with six hundred shafts.[24] Then piercing Karna with ten arrows and Vrishasena with three, the valiant Dhananjaya cut off Calya's bow with arrow fixed on the string, at the handle.[25] Calya then, taking up another bow, pierced the son of Pāndu. And Bhuriçravas pierced him with three arrows whetted on stone and equipt with golden wings.[26] And Karna pierced him with two and thirty arrows, and Vrishasena with seven. And Jayadratha pierced Arjuna with three and seventy shafts, and Kripa pierced him with ten.[27] And the ruler of the Madras also pierced Phālguna in that battle with ten arrows. And the son of Drona pierced him with sixty arrows.[28] And he once more pierced Pārtha with five arrows, and Vāsudeva with twenty. Then that tiger among men, *viz.*, Arjuna owning white steeds and having Krishna for his driver,[29] pierced each of those warriors in return, displaying the lightness of his hand. Piercing Karna with a dozen shafts and Vrishasena with three,[30] Pārtha cut off Calya's bow at the handle. And piercing the son of Somadatta with three arrows, and Calya with ten,[31] he pierced Kripa with five and twenty arrows, and the ruler of the Sindhus with a hundred,[32] Pārtha struck Drona's son with seventy arrows. Then Bhuriçravas, filled with rage, cut off the goad in Krishna's hand,[33] and struck Arjuna with three and twenty shafts. Then Dhananjaya, of white steeds, filled with rage, mangled those enemies of his with hundreds upon hundreds of arrows, like a mighty tempest tearing masses of clouds.' "[34]

SECTION CV.

"Dritarāshtra said,—'Describe to me, O Sanjaya, the diverse kinds of standards resplendent with great beauty, of both the Pārthas and our warriors (in that battle).'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Hear, O king, of the diverse kinds of standards of those high-souled warriors. Listen to me as I describe their forms and names![2] Indeed, O king, upon the cars of those foremost of car-warriors were seen diverse kinds of standards

that shone like blazing fires![3] Made of gold, or decked with gold, or adorned with garlands of gold, and each looking like the golden mountain (Meru), diverse kinds of standards were there that were highly beautiful. And those standards of the warriors had attached all around them excellent banners.[4-5] Indeed, having banners of diverse hues attached to them all around, those standards looked exceedingly beautiful. Those banners, again, moved by the wind,[6] looked like fair ladies dancing in the midst of the sporting arena. Endued with the splendours of the rainbow, those banners, O bull of Bharata's race,[7] of those car-warriors, floating in the breeze, highly adorned their cars. The standard, bearing the sign of the ape of fierce face and tail like that of the lion,[8] belonging to Deananjaya, seemed to inspire fear in that battle. That standard, O king, of the wielder of *Gandiva*, bearing that foremost of apes, and adorned with many banners, frightened the Kuru host. Similarly, the lion-tailed standard-top of Drona's son, O Bhārata, we saw, was endued with the effulgence of the rising Sun. Decked with gold, floating in the breeze, possessed of the splendours of the rainbow,[9-11] the standard-mark of Drona's son appeared on high, inspiring the foremost of Kuru warriors with joy. The standard of Adhiratha's son bore the mark of an elephant-rope made of gold.[12] It seemed, O king, in battle to fill the whole welkin. The banner, adorned with gold and floral garlands, attached to the standard of Karna in battle,[13] moved by the wind, seemed to dance upon his car. The preceptor of the Pāndavas, that Brāhmana given to ascettic penances, *viz.*, Kripa the son of Gotama, had for his mark an excellent bovine bull. That high-souled one, O king, with that bovine bull, looked as resplendent,[14-15] as the Destroyer of the three cities looks resplendent with his bull.* Vrishasena had a peacock made of gold and adorned with jewells and gems.[16] And it stood on his standard as if in the act of crowing, and always adorned the van of the army. With that peacock, the

---

* *Tripura* means the three cities, constructed by the *Asura* artificer Maya. The *Asura*, however, who owned those cities is also called *Tripura*. It was Mahādeva who destroyed the three cities with all their population. *Vide* the close of the *Harivança*.—T.

car of the high-souled Vrishasena shone,[17] like the car, O king, of Skanda (the celestial generalissimo) shining with his peacock. Calya the ruler of the Madras, we saw, had on his standard-top, an unrivalled and beautiful ploughshare made of gold and looking like a flame of fire. That ploughshare, O sire, looked resplendent on his car,[18-19] like the presiding goddess of corn herself endued with beauty and producing every seed. A silver boar adorned the standard-top of the ruler of the Sindhus. Decked with golden garlands, it was of the splendour of a white crystal.* With that silvern mark on his banner, the ruler of the Sindhus looked as resplendent,[20-21] as Surya in days of yore in the battle between the celestials and the *Asuras*. The standard of Somadatta's son devoted to sacrifices, bore the sign of the sacrificial stake. It was seen to shine like the Sun or the Moon. That sacrificial stake, made of gold, O king, of Somadatta's son, looked resplendent[22-23] like the tall stake erected in that foremost of sacrifices called the *Rājasuya*. The standard of Calya, O monarch, bearing a huge silvern elephant was adorned on all sides with peacocks made of gold. That standard, O bull of Bharata's race, adorned thy troops[24-25] like the huge white elephant adorning the host of the celestial king. On the standard decked with gold, of king Duryodhana, was an elephant adorned with gems.[26] Tinkling with the sound of a hundred bells, O king, that standard stood upon the excellent car of that hero. And, O king, thy son, that bull among the Kurus, looked resplendent, O monarch, with that tall standard in battle. These nine excellent standards stood erect among thy divisions. The tenth standard seen there was of Arjuna, decked with that huge ape.[27-29] And with that standard, Arjuna looked highly resplendent like Himavat with a blazing fire (on its top). Then many mighty car-warrriors, all chastisers of foes, quickly took up their beautiful, bright, and large bows for the sake of (resisting) Arjuna. Similarly Pārtha also, that achiever of celestial feats, took up his foe-destroying bow *Gān-*

* The true reading is *alohita* and not *lohita*. *Arka* here is crystal and not the Sun. It was a silvern boar, which could not, evidently, be like the Sun.—T.

diva, in consequence, O king, of thy evil policy. Many royal warriors, O king, were then slain in that battle owing to thy fault,[30-32] rulers of men come from different realms, invited (by thy sons). And with them perished many steeds and many elephants. Then those mighty car-warriors headed by Duryodhana (on one side) and that bull amongst the Pāndavas on the other, uttered loud roars and began the encounter. And the feat that Kunti's son having Krishna for his charioteer achieved there was highly wonderful, inasmuch as, alone, he encountered fearlessly all those warriors united together. And that mighty-armed hero looked resplendent as he stretched his bow *Gāndiva*,[33-35] desirous of vanquishing all those tigers among men and of slaying the ruler of the Sindhus. With his shafts shot in thousands, that tiger among men, *viz.*, Arjuna,[36] that scorcher of foes, made all those warriors invisible (by means of his arrowy showers). On their side, those tigers among men, those mighty car-warriors, also made Pārtha invisible by means of their clouds of shafts shot from all sides. Beholding Arjuna, that bull of Kuru's race, covered by those lions among men with their shafts, loud was the uproar made by thy troops!' "[37-38]

SECTION CVI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'After Arjuna had got the ruler of the Sindhus within sight, what, O Sanjaya, did the Pānchālas, attacked by Bharadwāja's son, do, encountering the Kurus?'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'On the afternoon of that day, O monarch, in the battle that took place between the Pānchālas and the Kurus, Drona became, as it were, the stake (for which each fought on to win or lose).[2] The Pānchālas, O sire, desirous of slaying Drona, cheerfully uttered loud roars and shot dense showers of arrows.[3] Indeed, that encounter between the Pānchālas and the Kurus, fierce, awful, and highly wonderful as it was, resembled that in days of yore between the gods and the *Asuras*.[4] Indeed, all the Pānchālas with the Pāndavas, obtaining Drona's car (within reach) used many mighty weapons, desirous of piercing through his array.[5] Car-warriors stationed

on their cars, causing the Earth to shake under them, and showering their arrowy downpours, rushed towards Drona's car, without much speed.[6] Then that mighty car-warrior among the Kaikayas, *viz.*, Vrihatkshatra, incessantly scattering keen shafts that resembled the thunder in force, proceeded towards Drona.[7] Then Kshemadhurti of great fame quickly rushed against Vrihatkshatra, shooting keen arrows by thousands.[8] Beholding this, that bull among the Chedis, *viz.*, Dhrishtaketu, endued with great might, quickly proceeded against Kshemadhurti like Mahendra proceeding against the *Asura* Camvara.[9] Seeing him rush with great impetuosity like the Destroyer himself with wide open mouth, that mighty bowman, *viz.*, Viradhanwan, proceeded against him with great speed.[10] King Yudhishthira staying there at the head of his division from desire of victory, was resisted by the valiant Drona himself.[11] Thy son Vikarna, O lord, endued with great prowess, proceeded against the rushing Nakula of great prowess, that warrior accomplished in battle.[12] That scorcher of foes, *viz.*, Durmukha, covered the advancing Sahadeva with many thousands of swiftly-coursing shafts.[13] The heroic Vyaghradatta resisted that tiger among men, *viz.*, Sātyaki, making him repeatedly tremble by means of his sharp and keen-pointed shafts.[14] The son of Somadatta resisted the (five) sons of Draupadi, those tigers among men, those great car-warriors, wrathfully shooting mighty shafts.[15] That mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Rishyaçringa's fierce son (the *Rākshasa* Alamvusha), of awful mien, resisted the advancing Bhimasena filled with wrath.[16] The encounter that then took place between that man and *Rākshasa* resembled, O king, the battle in days of yore between Rāma and Rāvana.[17] Then, O Bhārata, Yudhishthira, that chief of the Bharatas, struck Drona with ninety straight shafts in all his vital parts.[18] Enraged by the famous son of Kunti, Drona struck him in return, O chief of the Bharatas, in the centre of the chest, with five and twenty shafts.[19] And once more, in the very sight of all the bowmen, Drona struck him, with his steeds, charioteer, and standard, with twenty shafts.[20] Pāndu's son, of virtuous soul, displaying great lightness of hand, baffled with his own arrowy showers those arrows shot by Drona.[21] Then the great bowman

Drona, filled with rage, cut off the bow of the high-souled king Yudhishthira the just.[22] Then that great car-warrior (*viz.*, the the son of Bharadwāja) speedily covered the bowless Yudhishthira with many thousands of shafts.[23] Beholding the king made invisible by the shafts of Bharadwāja's son, all creatures thought that Yudhishthira was dead.[24] And some thought that the king had fled from before Drona. And many cried out, O king, saying,—Alas, the king hath been slain by the high-souled Brāhmana![25]—Then king Yudhishthira the just, fallen into great distress, having laid aside that bow cut off by Bharadwāja's son in battle,[26] took up another excellent, bright, and tougher bow. And that hero then cut off in that encounter all those shafts shot in thousands by Drona. All this seemed exceedingly wonderful. Having cut off those shafts, O king, Yudhishthira, with eyes red in wrath,[27-28] took up in that battle a dart capable of riving even a mountain. Equipt with a golden staff, of awful mien, having eight bells attached to it, and exceedingly terrible,[29] the mighty Yudhishthira, taking it up, uttered a loud roar. And with that roar, O Bhārata, the son of Pāndu inspired all creatures with fear.[30] Beholding that dart upraised by king Yudhishthira the just, all creatures, as if with one accord, said,—Good be to Drona![31]—Hurled from the king's arms, that dart resembling a snake just freed from its slough, coursed towards Drona, illumining the welkin and all the directions cardinal and subsidiary, like a she-snake with fiery mouth. Beholding it coursing towards him impetuously, O king, Drona,[32-33] that foremost of all persons acquainted with weapons, invoked into existence the weapon called *Brahma*. That weapon, reducing that dart of terrible mien into dust,[34] coursed towards the car of the illustrious son of Pāndu. Then, O O sire, king Yudhishthira of great wisdom baffled that weapon of Drona thus coursing towards him by himself invoking the *Brahma* weapon. And then piercing Drona himself in that battle with five straight shafts,[35-36] he cut off, with a sharp razor-faced shaft, the large bow of Drona. Then Drona, that grinder of Kshatriyas, throwing aside that broken bow,[37] hurled with great force, O sire, a mace at the son of Dharma. Beholding that mace impetuously coursing towards him, Yudhish-

thira,[38] O chastiser of foes, filled with rage, took up a mace. Then those two maces, both hurled with great force, encountering each other in mid air,[39] produced by their collision sparks of fire and then fell down on the Earth. Then Drona, filled with fury, slew, O sire, the steeds of Yudhishthira, with four excellent shafts of keen points. And with another broad-headed shaft he cut off the king's bow resembling a pole erected to the honor of Indra.[40-41] And with another shaft he cut off the standard of Yuhisdthira, and with three he afflicted the Pāndava himself. Then king Yudhishthira, speedily jumping down from that steedless car, stood weaponless and with arms upraised, O bull of Bharata's race! Beholding him carless, and especially weaponless,[42-43] Drona, O lord, stupified his foes, or rather the whole army. Firmly adhering to his vow, and endued with great lightness of hands, Drona shot showers of sharp shafts,[44] and rushed towards the king like a furious lion towards a deer. Beholding Drona, that slayer of foes, rush towards him,[45] cries of *Oh* and *Alas* suddenly rose from the Pāndava army. And many cried out, saying,—The king is slain by Bharadwāja's son![46]—Loud wails of this kind were heard, O Bhārata, among the Pāndava troops. Meanwhile king Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, getting up on the car of Sahadeva, retreated from the field, borne away by swift steeds.' "[47]

SECTION CVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Kshemadhurti, O monarch, pierced the advancing Vrihatkshatra of great valor, that prince of the Kaikayas, with many arrows in the chest.[1] King Vrihatkshatra then, O monarch, desirous of piercing through Drona's division, quickly struck his antagonist with ninety straight-shafts.[2] Kshemadhurti, however, filled with rage, cut off, with a sharp, well-tempered, and broad-headed shaft, the bow of that high-souled prince of the Kaikayas.[3] Having cut off his bow, Kshemadhurti then, with a keen and straight shaft, quickly pierced in that encounter that foremost of all bowmen.[4] Then Vrihatkshatra, taking up another bow and smiling (at his foe), soon made the mighty car-warrior Kshemadhurti steedless and driver-

less and carless.[5] And with another broad-headed shaft that was well-tempered and sharp, he cut off, from the trunk of his royal antagonist his head blazing with (a pair of) ear-rings.[6] That head, graced with curly locks and a diadem, suddenly cut off, fell down on the Earth and looked resplendent like a luminary fallen from the firmament.[7] Having slain his foe, the mighty car-warrior Vrihatkshatra became filled with joy and fell with great force upon thy troops for the sake of the Pārthas.[8] The great bowman Viradhanwan, O Bhārata, endued with great prowess, resisted Dhrishtaketu who was advancing against Drona.[9] Encountering each other, those two heroes having arrows for their fangs, and both endued with great activity, struck each other with many thousands of arrows.[10] Indeed, those two tigers among men fought with each other like two leaders of elephantine herds in the deep woods, with fury.[11] Both endued with great energy, they fought, each desirous of slaying the other, like two enraged tigers in a mountain cave.[12] That combat, O monarch, became exceedingly fierce. Deserving to be witnessed, it became highly wonderful. The very *Siddhas* and the *Chāranas*, in large numbers, witnessed it with wonder-waiting eyes.[13] Then Viradhanwan, O Bhārata, with a laugh, cut off in rage Dhrishtaketu's bow in twain by means of broad-headed arrows.[14] Abondoning that broken bow, the ruler of the Chedis, that mighty car-warrior, took up a fierce dart made of iron and equipt with a golden staff.[15] Bending with his hands, O Bhārata, that dart of fierce energy towards the car of Viradhanwan, Dhrishtaketu hurled it carefully and with great force.[16] Struck with great force by that hero-slaying dart, and his heart pierced by it through, Viradhanwan quickly fell down on the Earth from his car.[17] Upon the fall of that hero, that mighty car-warrior among the Trigartas, thy army, O lord, was broken by the Pāndavas.[18] (Thy son) Durmukha sped sixty shafts at Sahadeva, and uttered a loud shout in that battle, challenging that son of Pāndu.[19] The son of Mādri then, filled with rage, pierced Durmukha with many keen arrows, smiling the while, the brother striking the brother.[20] Beholding the mighty Durmukha fighting furiously, Sahadeva then, O Bhārata, once more struck him with nine shafts.[21] Endued with great strength

Sahadeva then cut off Durmukha's standard with a broad-headed arrow, and struck down his four steeds with four other arrows.[22] And then with another broad-headed arrow well-tempered and sharp, he cut off, from his trunk, the head of Durmukha's charioteer that blazed with a pair of ear-rings.[23] And cutting off Durmukha's large bow with a razor-faced arrow, Sahadeva pierced Durmukha himself in that battle with five arrows.[24] Durmukha then, cheerlessly jumping down from that steedless car, mounted the car, O Bhārata, of Niramitra.[25] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, Sahadeva, filled with rage, slew in that great battle Niramitra in the midst of his division with a broad-headed arrow.[26] Thereupon prince Niramitra, the son of the ruler of the Trigartas, fell down from his car, afflicting thy army with great grief.[27] Slaying him, the mighty-armed Sahadeva looked resplendent like Rāma the son of Daçaratha after slaying the mighty *(Rākshasa)* Khara.[28] Beholding that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, prince Niramitra, slain, loud cries of *Oh* and *Alas* arose, O monarch, among the Trigarta warriors.[29] Nakula, O king, in a moment vanquished thy son Vikarna of large eyes. This seemed highly wonderful.[30] Vyaghradatta, by means of his straight shafts, made Sātyaki invisible with his steeds and driver and standard in the midst of his division.[31] The brave grandson of Cini, baffling those shafts with great lightness of hand, felled Vyaghradatta by means of his arrows, with his steeds and driver and standard.[32] Upon the fall, O lord, of that prince of the Magadhas, the latter, struggling vigorously, rushed against Yuyudhāna from all sides.[33] Scattering their shafts and lances by thousands, and short arrows and spears and mallets and thick clubs,[34] those brave warriors fought in that battle with that invincible hero of the Sātwata race. Endued with great might, the invincible Sātyaki, that bull among men, with the greatest ease and laughing the while, vanquished them all. The Māghadas were nearly exterminated. A small remnant flew from the field.[35-36] Beholding this, thy army, already afflicted with the arrows of Yuyudhāna, broke, O lord! Then that foremost one of Madhu's race, having slaughtered in battle thy troops,[37] that illustrious hero, looked resplendent as he shook his bow. Thy

army, O king, was thus routed by that high-souled one of the Sātwata race.[38] Indeed, frightened by that hero of long arms, none approached him for fight. Then Drona filled with rage, and rolling his eyes, himself rushed impetuously towards Sātyaki of feats incapable of being baffled.' "[39]

SECTION CVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'The illustrious son of Somadatta pierced each of the sons of Draupadi, those great bowmen, with five arrows, and once more with seven arrows.[1] Much afflicted, O lord, by that fierce warrior, they were stupified and knew not for sometime what to do.[2] Then that crusher of foes, *viz.*, Catānika the son of Nakula, piercing Somadatta's son, that bull among men, with a couple of arrows, uttered in joy a loud roar.[3] The other brothers then, struggling vigorously, quickly pierced the wrathful son of Somadatta, each with three straight shafts.[4] Then the illustrious son of Somadatta, O monarch, sped at them five shafts, piercing each of them in the chest with one shaft.[5] Then those five brothers, thus pierced by that high-souled warrior with his shafts, surrounded that hero on every side and began to pierce him deeply with their shafts.[6] Then the son of Arjuna, filled with rage, despatched, with keen shafts, the four steeds of Saumadatti to the regions of Yama.[7] And the son Bhimasena, cutting off the bow of the illustrious son of Somadatta, uttered a loud shout and pierced his foe with many sharp arrows.[8] The son of Yudhishthira then, cutting off Saumadatti's standard, felled it on the Earth, while the son of Nakula felled the enemy's charioteer from his niche in the car.[9] Then the son of Sahadeva, ascertaining the foe to be on the point of leaving the field in consequence of the acts of the brothers, cut off, with a razor-faced arrow, the head of that illustrious warrior.[10] That head, decked with ear-rings of gold, fell on the Earth and adorned the field like the Sun of brilliant effulgence that rises at the end of the *Yuga*.[11] Beholding the head of the high-souled son of Somadatta thus falling on the ground, thy troops, O king, inspired with fear, fled in all directions.[12]

"'The *Rākshasa* Alamvusha in that battle, filled with rage, fought with the mighty Bhimasena like Rāvana's son (Indrajit) with (Rāma's brother) Lakshmana.[13] Beholding that *Rākshasa* and that human warrior engaged in fight, all creatures experienced both joy and wonder.[14] Then Bhima, O king, laughing the while, pierced that wrathful prince of *Rākshasas, viz.*, Rishyaçringa's son (Alamvusha), with nine keen shafts.[15] Then that *Rākshasa*, thus pierced in battle, uttered a loud and awful sound, and rushed, with all his followers, against Bhima.[16] Piercing Bhima then with five straight shafts, he quickly destroyed, in that battle, thirty cars supporting Bhima.[17] And once more destroying four hundred cars of Bhimasena, the *Rākshasa* pierced Bhimasena himself with winged arrows. The mighty Bhima, deeply pierced by the *Rākshasa*,[18] sat down on the terrace of his car, overcome by a swoon. The son of the Wind-god then, recovering his senses, became filled with rage.[19] Drawing his excellent and terrible bow that was capable of bearing a great strain, he afflicted Alamvusha, in every part of his body, with keen shafts.[20] Thereupon the *Rākshasa* who resembled a huge mass of antimony, looked resplendent, O king, like a flowering *Kinçuka*.[21] Whilst being struck in that battle with those shafts sped from the bow of Bhima, the *Rākshasa* recollected the slaughter of his brother (Vaka) by the illustrious Pāndava.[22] Assuming then an awful form, he addressed Bhima, saying,—Wait a little in this battle, O Pārtha! Behold today my prowess![23] O thou of wicked understanding, that foremost of *Rākshasas, viz.*, the mighty Vaka, was my brother! It is true he was slain by thee! But that took place out of my sight![24]—Having said these words unto Bhima, Alamvusha made himself invisible, and began to cover Bhimasena with a dense shower of arrows.[25] Upon the disappearance of the *Rākshasa*, Bhima, O monarch, covered the welkin with straight shafts.[26] Thus afflicted by Bhima, Alamvusha soon returned to his car. And soon again, he entered into the bowels of the Earth, and once more becoming little he suddenly soared into the sky.[27] Alamvusha assumed countless forms. Now becoming subtile and now huge and now gross, he began to roar like the clouds.[28] And he uttered diverse kinds of words and

speeches all around. And from the welkin there fell thousands of arrowy torrents,[29] as also darts, and *Kunapas*, and lances, and pikes, and axes, and spears, and rockets, and spiked maces, and short arrows, and battle-axes,[30] and rocks, and scimitars, and treacle, and swords, and thunders also. That awful downpour of arrows caused by the *Rākshasa*,[31] slew the troops of Pāndu's son on the field of battle. And in consequence of that arrowy downpour, many elephants also of the Pāndava army were slain,[32] and many steeds also, O king, and many foot-soldiers. And many car-warriors fell down from their cars, slain by the *Rākshasa's* shafts.[33] And a river was caused there whose waters were blood and whose eddies were constituted by cars. And it abounded with elephants that constituted its alligators. And the umbrellas of car-warriors constituted its swans, and the flesh and marrow of animals, its mire. And it teemed with the (cut off) arms of human beings, that constituted its snakes. And it was haunted by many *Rākshasas* and other cannibals. And it wafted away, O king, countless Chedis and Pānchālas and Srinjayas.[34-35] Beholding him, O monarch, careering so fearlessly in that battle and seeing his prowess, the Pāndavas became filled with anxiety.[36] And joy filled the hearts of thy troops then. And amongst the latter, loud and terrible sounds of musical instruments, making the hair to stand on end, arose.[37] Hearing that loud uproar made by thy troops, the son of Pāndu could not bear it as a snake cannot bear the sound of human palms.[38] With eyes red as copper in rage, with glances that like fire consumed every thing, the son of the Wind-god, like Tashtri himself, aimed the weapon known by the name of Tashtri.[39] From that weapon were produced thousands of arrows on all sides. And in consequence of those arrows, a universal rout was seen among thy troops.[40] That weapon, shot in battle by Bhimasena, destroying the effective illusion produced by the *Rākshasa*, greatly afflicted the *Rākshasa* himself.[41] Struck in every part of his body by Bhimasena, the *Rākshasa* then, abandoning Bhimasena, fled towards the division of Drona.[42] Upon the defeat of that prince of *Rākshasas* by the high-souled Bhima, the Pāndavas caused every point of the compass to resound with their

leonine roars.[43] And filled with joy, they worshipped the mighty son of Marut, like the Maruts worshipping Cakra after the defeat in battle of Prahlāda.' "[44]

SECTION CIX.

"Sanjaya sāid,—'(Having fled away from Bhima, Alamvusha, in another part of the field, careered fearlessly in battle). And while he was thus fearlessly careering in battle, the son of Hidimvā rushed impetuously at him and pierced him with keen shafts.[1] The battle between those two lions among *Rākshasas* became terrible. Both of them invoked into existence diverse illusions like Cakra and Camvara (in days of old).[2] Alamvusha, excited with rage, attacked Ghatotkacha. Indeed, the encounter between those two foremost of *Rākshasas*[3] resembled that of old between Rāma and Rāvana, O lord! Then Ghatotkacha, having pierced Alamvusha in the centre of the chest with twenty long shafts, repeatedly roared like a lion. Smilingly, O king, Alamvusha also, repeatedly piercing the invincible son of Hidimvā, uttered loud roars in joy, filling the entire welkin. Then those two foremost of *Rākshasas*, both endued with great might, became filled with rage.[4-6] They fought with each other, displaying their powers of illusion, but without any of them getting any advantage over the other. Each, creating a hundred illusions, stupified the other.[7] Both accomplished in producing illusions in battle, they fought with each other, producing illusions. The illusions, O king, that Ghatotkacha displayed in battle,[8] were all destroyed, O monarch, by Alamvusha producing similar illusions of his own. Beholding that prince of *Rākshasas, viz.*, Alamvusha, who was accomplished in producing illusions, fight in that manner, the Pāndavas became filled with rage. Filled with anxiety, they then caused him to be surrounded by many foremost of car-warriors.[9-10] Bhimasena and others, O monarch, all rushed in rage against him. Hemming him, O sire, on all sides by means of numberless cars,[11] they shrouded him from every side with shafts like men in a forest encompassing an elephant with blazing brands. Baffling that shower of weapons by means of the illusion of his own wea-

pons,[12] Alamvusha freed himself from that press of cars like an elephant from a forest conflagration. Then drawing his terrible bow whose twang resembled the thunder of Indra,[13] he pierced the son of the Wind-god with five and twenty shafts, and Bhimasena's son with five, and Yudhishthira with three, and Sahadeva with seven, and Nakula with three and seventy, and each of the five sons of Draupadi with five shafts, and uttered a loud roar.[14-15] Then Bhimasena pierced him in return with nine shafts, and Sahadeva with five. And Yudhishthira pierced the *Rākshasa* with a hundred shafts.[16] And Nakula pierced him with four and sixty shafts, and each of the sons of Draupadi pierced him with three shafts. The son of Hidimvā, having pierced him with five hundred shafts,[17] Alamvusha once more pierced him with seventy, and that mighty warrior then uttered a loud roar. With that loud roar of Ghatotkacha the Earth shook,[18] O king, with her mountains and forests and with her trees and waters. Deeply pierced on all sides by those great bowmen and mighty car-warriors,[19] Alamvusha pierced each of them in return with five arrows. Then that *Rākshasa*, O chief of the Bharatas, *viz.*, the son of Hidimvā, fillled with rage, pierced that other angry *Rākshasa* in battle with many shafts. Then that mighty prince of *Rākshasas*, *viz.*, Alamvusha, deeply pierced,[20-21] quickly shot countless shafts equipt with wings of gold and whetted on stone. Those shafts, perfectly staight, all entered the body of Ghatotkacha,[22] like angry snakes of great strength entering a mountain summit. Then the Pāndavas, O king, filled with anxiety, and Hidimvā's son Ghatotkacha also, sped at their foe from every side clouds of keen shafts. Thus struck in battle by the Pāndavas desirous of victory,[23-24] Alamvusha, mortal as he was, did not know what to do. Then that delighter in battle, *viz.*, the mighty son of Bhimasena,[25] beholding that state of Alamvdsha, set his heart upon his destruction. He rushed with great impetuosity towards the car of that prince of *Rākshasas*,[26] that car which resembled a burnt mountain summit or a broken heap of antimony. The son of Hidimvā, inflamed with wrath, flew from his own car to that of Alamvusha, and seized the latter.[27] He then took him up from the car like Gāruda taking up a snake. Thus dragging him up

with his arms, he began to whirl him repeatedly,[28] and then crushed him into pieces, hurling him down on the Earth like a man crushing an earthen pot into fragments by hurling it against a rock. Endued with strength and activity, and possessed of great prowess,[29] the son of Bhimasena, inflamed with wrath in battle, inspired all the troops with fear. All his limbs broken and bones reduced to fragments, the frightful *Rākshāsa* Alamvusha, thus slain by the heroic Ghatotkacha, resembled a tall *Çāla* uprooted and broken by the wind. Upon the slaughter of that wanderer of the night, the Pārthas became very cheerful.[30-31] And they uttered leonine roars and waved their garments. Thy brave warriors, however, beholding that mighty prince of *Rākshasas, viz.*, Alamvusha, slain and lying like a crushed mountain, uttered cries, O monarch, of *Oh* and *Alas*.[32-33] And people, possessed with curiosity, went to view that *Rākshasa* lying helplessly on the Earth like a piece of charcoal (no longer capable of burning).[34] The *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha then, that foremost of mighty beings, having thus slain his foe, uttered a loud shout like Vāsava after slaying (the *Asura*) Vala.[35] Having achieved that excedingly difficult feat, Ghatotkacha was much applauded by his sires as also by his relatives. Indeed, having felled Alamvusha like an *Alamvusha* fruit, he rejoiced exceedingly with his friends.[36] There arose then a loud uproar (in the Pāndava army) of conchs and of diverse kinds of arrows. Hearing that noise, the Kauravas uttered loud shouts in reply, filling the whole Earth with its echoes.' "[37]

SECTION CX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, how Yuyudhāna rushed against the son of Bharadwāja in battle. I feel a great curiosity to hear it!'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Listen, O thou of great wisdom, to the account of that battle, that makes the hair stand on end, between Drona and the Pāndavas headed by Yuyudhāna![2] Beholding the (Kuru) army slaughtered, O sire, by Yuyudhāna, Drona himself rushed towards that warrior of unbaffled prowess,

called also by the name of Sātyaki.[3] Sātyaki pierced that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Bharadwāja, thus advancing against him, with five and twenty small arrows.[4] Drona also, possessed of great prowess in battle, with deliberate aim, quickly pierced Yuyudhāna with five whetted arrows equipt with wings of gold.[5] Those arrows, piercing the hard armour of the foe and drinking his life blood, entered the Earth, O king, like sighing snakes.[6] The long-armed Sātyaki then, inflamed with rage like an elephant struck with the hook, pierced Drona with fifty long arrows that resembled flames of fire.[7] Then Bharadwāja's son, thus quickly pierced in battle by Yuyudhāna, pierced the carefully exerting Sātyaki in return with many arrows.[8] Then that great bowman, endued with great might, and filled with rage, once more afflicted that hero of the Sātwata race with many straight shafts.[9] Thus struck in that battle by the son of Bharadwāja, Sātyaki, O monarch, knew not what to do.[10] Then, O king, Yuyudhāna's face became cheerless, seeing the son of Bharadwāja shoot countless keen arrows.[11] Beholding Sātyaki thus situated, thy sons and troops, O king, becoming exceedingly cheerful, repeatedly uttered leonine roars.[12] Hearing that terrible uproar and beholding that hero of Madhu's race thus afflicted, king Yudhishthira, O monarch, addressing all his soldiers, said,[13]—That foremost one among the Vrishnis, *viz.*, the brave Sātyaki of prowess incapable of being baffled, is about to be devoured by the heroic Drona like the Sun by *Rāhu!*[14] Go and rush ye to the spot were Sātyaki is battling!—The king, addressing Dhrishtadyumna of the Pānchāla race, said,[15]—Rush thou with speed at Drona! Why dost thou tarry, O son of Prishata! Seest thou not the great danger to ourselves that has already arisen from Drona?[16] Drona is a great bowman. He is sporting with Yuyudhāna in battle like a boy with a bird bound in a string![17] Let all of you, headed by Bhimasena, and accompanied by thee, proceed thither where Sātyaki's car is![18] Behind you I will follow with my troops! Rescue Sātyaki today who is already within the jaws of the Destroyer![19]—Having said these words, O Bhārata, king Yudhishthira with all his troops rushed towards Drona for the sake of Yuyudhāna.[20] Blessed be thou, great was the uproar

made there by the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas all fighting with Drona only.[21] Together approaching, O tiger among men, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Bharadwāja, they covered him with showers of keen arrows equipt with the feathers of *Kankas* and peacocks.[22] Drona, however, received all those heroes smilingly like a householder receiving guests, arrived of their own will, with seats and water.[23] With the shafts of Bharadwāja's bow-wielding son, those heroes were well gratified like guests, O king, with the hospitality they receive in the houses (of good hosts).[24] And none of them, O lord, could even gaze at the son of Bharadwāja who then resembled the thousand-rayed Sun at midday.[25] Indeed, Drona, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, scorched all those great bowmen with showers of arrows like the Sun scorching (everything below) with his burning rays.[26] Thus struck, O king, by Drona, the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas beheld no protector, like elephants sunk in a morass.[27] The mighty arrows of Drona, as they coursed (through the welkin), looked like the rays of the Sun blasting everything around.[28] In that encounter, five and twenty warriors among the Pānchālas were slain by Drona, who were all regarded as *Mahārathas* and all approved (as such) by Dhrishtadyumna.[29] And amongst all the troops of the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas, men quietly beheld the brave Drona slaying the foremost of warriors in succession.[30] Having slain a hundred warriors amongst the Kekayas and routing them on all sides, Drona stood, O monarch, like the Destroyer himself with wide-open mouth.[31] The mighty-armed Drona vanquished the Pānchālas, the Srinjayas, the Matsyas, and the Kekayas, O monarch, by hundreds and thousands.[32] Pierced by the arrows of Drona, the clamour made by them resembled that made in the woods by the denizens of the forest when encompassed by a conflagration.[33] The gods, *Gandharvas*, and the *Pitris*, said,—Behold, the Pānchālas, and the Pāndavas, with all their troops, are flying away![34]—Indeed, when Drona was thus engaged in slaughtering the Somakas in battle, none ventured to advance against him, and none succeeded in piercing him.[35] And while that dreadful encounter, so destructive of great heroes, continued, Prithā's son (Yudhishthira) suddenly heard the blare of

Pānchajanya.[36] Blown by Vāsudeva, that prince of conchs gave loud blasts. Indeed, while the heroic protectors of the ruler of the Sindhus were fighting,[37] and while the Dhārtarāshtras were roaring in front of Arjuna's car, the twang of *Gāndiva* could not be heard.[38] The royal son of Pāndu repeatedly swooned, and thought,—Without doubt, all is not well with Pārtha, since that prince of conchs (*Pānchajanya*) is yielding such blasts,[39] and since the Kauravas also, filled with joy, are incessantly uttering such shouts !—Thinking in this way, with an anxious heart,[40] Ajātaçatru the son of Kunti said unto him of the Sātwata race (*viz.*, Sātyaki) these words in a voice choked with tears. Though repeatedly stupified, king Yudhishthira, however, did not lose sight of what was to be done next. Addressing Cini's grandson, that bull of his clan, (Yudhishthira said),[41]—O grandson of Cini, the time for that eternal duty which the righteous ones of old have indicated (for friends) towards friends in seasons of distress, hath now come![42] O bull amongst the Cinis, reflecting within myself, I do not, O Sātyaki, see, amongst all my warriors, one who is a greater well-wisher to us than thou![43] He who is always well-affected, he who is always obedient, I think, he should be appointed to a grave commission in times of distress![44] As Keçava is ever the refuge of the Pāndavas, even so art thou, O thou of Vrishni's race, who art equal unto Keçava in prowes![45] I will, therefore, lay a burthen on thee ! It behoveth thee not to frustrate my purpose![46] Arjuna is thy brother, friend, and preceptor ! O bull among men, in this battle, render him aid in time of distress![47] Thou art devoted to truth ! Thou art a hero ! Thou art the dispeller of the fears of friends ! Thou art celebrated in the world, in consequence of thy acts, O hero, as one that is truthful in speech![48] He, O grandson of Cini, who casteth away his body while fighting in battle for friends, is equal to him who giveth away to Brāhmanas the whole Earth![49] We have heard of various kings gone to heaven, having given away the whole of this Earth unto Brāhmanas with due rites![50] O thou of virtuous soul, I beg of thee, with joined hands, even this, *viz.*, that, O lord, attain thou the fruit of giving away (unto Brāhmanas) the whole Earth, or

something higher than that, (by incurring danger to thy life itself for aiding Arjuna)![51] There is one, *viz.*, Krishna, that dispeller of the fears of friends, who is ever willing to cast away his life in battle (for the sake of friends)! Thou, O Sātyaki, art the second![52] None but a hero can render aid unto a hero exerting valorously in battle, from desire of fame! An ordinary person cannot do so.[53] In this matter, there is none else save thee who can protect Arjuna![54] On one occasion, while applauding thy numerous feats, Arjuna, giving me great pleasure, repeatedly recited them![55] He said of thee that thou art endued with extreme lightness of hands, that thou art conversant with all modes of warfare, that thou art possessed of great activity and great prowess! He said,—[Sātyaki is endued with great wisdom, is acquainted with every weapon, is a hero, and is never stupified in battle![56] Of broad neck and broad chest, of mighty arms and broad cheeks, of great strength and great prowess, Sātyaki is a high-souled *Mahāratha*![57] He is my disciple and friend! I am dear to him, and he is dear to me! Becoming my ally, Yuyudhāna will crush the Kauravas![58] Even if Keçava and Rāma, and Aniruddha, and the mighty car-warrior Praddyumna, and Gada, and Sārana, and Cāmva, with all the Vrishnis, case themselves in mail for assisting us, O king, in the field of battle, I shall yet appoint that tiger among men, *viz.*, Sātyaki of unbaffled prowess, for our aid, since there is none equal to him![59-61]— Even this is what Dhananjaya told me in the Dwaita woods, in thy absence while truly describing thy merits in an assembly of righteous persons![62] It behoveth thee not, O thou of the Vrishni race, to falsify that expectation of Dhananjaya, and also of myself and Bhima![63] When, returning from to various *tirthas*, I proceeded to Dwārakā, there I witnessed thy reverence for Arjuna![64] While we were at Upaplava, I did not mark anybody else, O grandson of Cini, who showed us such affection as thou![65] Thou art of noble lineage and feelest reverence for us. For showing kindness, therefore, to one who is thy friend and preceptor, it behoveth thee, O thou of mighty arms, to act in a way deserving, O great bowman, of thy friendship and prowess and noble parentage and truthfulness,

O thou of Madhu's race![66-67] Suyodhana, cased in armour by Drona himself, hath suddenly gone, following Arjuna! The other great car-warriors of the Kauravas have, before that, followed Arjuna![68] Loud uproars are being heard against Arjuna's car! O grandson of Cini, it behoveth thee, O giver of honors, to go thither quickly![69] Bhimasena and ourselves, well-equipt and with all our forces, will resist Drona if he advance against thee![70] Behold, O grandson of Cini, the Bharata troops are flying away in battle, and as they are flying away, they are uttering loud wails![71] Like the very Ocean at full tide agitated by a mighty tempest, the Dhārtarāshtra host, O sire, is agitated by Savyasāchin![72] Behold, in conseqence of countless cars and men and steeds moving quickly, the earthy dust raised is gradually spreading (over the field)![73] See, that slayer of hostile hosts, *viz.*, Phālguna, is encompassed by the Sindhu-Sauviras armed with pikes and lances and adorned with many heroes in their ranks![74] Without vanquishing this force it will not be possible to vanquish Jayadratha! These warriors are prepared to lay down their lives for the sake of the ruler of the Sindhus![75] Behold the invincible Dhārtarāshtra force, stationed there, that bristles with arrows and darts and tall standards, and that teems with steeds and elephants![76] Hear the beat of their drums and the loud blare of their conchs, the tremendous leonine shouts uttered by them, and the rattle of their car-wheels.[77] Hear the grunt of their elephants, the heavy tread of their foot-soldiers, and the clamp of their rushing cavalry, which all seem to make the very Earth tremble![78] Before him is the division of Jayadratha, and behind is that of Drona! So great is the number of the foe that he is capable of afflicting the chief of the celestials himself.[79] Sunk in the midst of this fathomless host, Arjuna may lose his life! If he be slain in battle, how can one like me live?[80] Is this calamity to befall me when thou art alive? Dark-blue in color, young in years, of curly locks, and exceedingly handsome, is that son of Pāndu![81] Active in the use of weapons, and conversant with every mode of warfare, the mighty-armed Arjuna hath, O sire, penetrated into the Bharata host at sunrise! The day is about to end![82] O thou of Vrishni's race, I do not know whether he liveth or

not The vast Kuru host is like the ocean![83] O sire, Vibhatsu hath penetrated into it all alone! That army is incapable of being resisted by the very gods in battle![84] In today's battle, I fail to keep my judgment clear! Drona also is, with great might, afflicting my forces![85] Thou seest, O mighty-armed one, how that regenerate one is careering in battle! When several tasks present themselves together, thou art well skilled in selecting that which should be first attended to![86] It behoveth thee, O giver of honors, to accomplish with activity that task which is the gravest of all! Amongst all these tasks I myself think that this (*viz.*, aiding Arjuna) is the first that demands our attention![87] The rescue of Arjuna in battle should be first undertaken! I do not grieve for Him of Daçārha's race. He is the Protector and the Lord of the Uuniverse![88] I tell thee truly that that tiger among men, O sire, is able to vanquish in battle the three worlds assembled together![89] What need I say, therefore, of this weak Dhārtarāshtra host? Arjuna, however, O thou of Vrishni's race, is being afflicted by countless odds in battle![90] He may yield up his life! It is for this that I am so cheerless! Go thou then in his track, since persons like thee should follow a person like him, at such a season, urged on by one like me! Amongst the foremost ones of the Vrishni race, two are regarded as *Atirathas*![91-92] They are the mighty-armed Praddyumna and thyself, O Sātwata, that are so famous! In weapons thou art equal to Nārāyana himself, and in strength to Sankarshana![93] In bravery, thou art equal to Dhananjaya, O tiger among men, and surpassest Bhishma and Drona, and every one accomplished in battle![94] O tiger among men, the wise speak of thee, saying, O Mādhava,—*There is nothing unachievable by Sātyaki*![95]—O thou of great strength, do thou, therefore, that which I say unto thee, *viz.*, obey the wishes of all here, of myself and of Arjuna![96] It behoveth thee not, O mighty-armed one, to frustrate that wish! Reckless of thy very life, career thou in battle like a hero![97] O grandson of Cini, the scions of Daçārha's race never care to protect their lives in battle! Avoiding battle, or fighting from behind breast-works, or flying away from battle,[98]—these practices of cowards and wretches are never practised by the Dāçār-

has. The virtuous-souled Arjuna is thy superior, O bull among the Cinis![99] Vāsudeva is the superior of both thyself and the intelligent Arjuna! Casting my eyes on these two reasons, I say unto thee these words![100] Do not discard my words, I am the superior of thy superiors. That which I am saying unto thee is approved by Vāsudeva as also by Arjuna![101] I tell thee this truly! Go then to the spot where Dhananjaya is! Attending to these words of mine, O thou of prowess incapable of being baffled,[102] penetrate into this host of the wicked son of Dhritarāshtra! Having penetrated into it duly, encountering the great car-warriors, and display, O Sātwata, such feats as are worthy of thyself!' "[103]

SECTION CXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'That bull amongst the Cinis, *viz.*, Sātyakī, hearing these words full of affection, agreeable, frought with sweet sounds, opportune, delightful, and equitable, that were uttered by king Yudhishshthira the just, replied unto him, O chief of the Bharatas, saying,[1-2]—O thou of unfading glory, I have heard all the words thou hast said, words frought with justice, delightful, and conducive to fame, for the sake of Phāljuna![3] At such a time, indeed, beholding one devoted (to thee) like me, it behoveth thee, O king of kings, to command him as much as thou canst command Pārtha himself![4] As regards myself, I tell thee that I am prepared to cast away my life for the sake of Dhananjaya! Commanded, again, by thee, what is there that I would not do in great battle?[5] What need I say of this weak (Dhārtarāshtra) force? Urged by thee, I am prepared, O best of men, to battle with the three worlds including the gods, the *Asuras*, and men![6] Today I will fight with the entire army of Suyodhana, and vanquish it in battle! Truly do I say this unto thee, O king![7] Safely shall I reach Dhananjay, himself in safety, and after Jayadratha is slain, I shall, O king, come back into thy presence![8] I must, however, O king, inform thee of the words of Vāsudeva as also of the intelligent Arjuna![9] I was strongly and repeatedly solicited by Arjuna in the midst of all our warriors and in the hearing also of Vāsu-

deva (in these words)![10]—[Today, O Mādhava, nobly resolved on battle, protect thou the king carefully, till I slay Jayadratha![11] Making over the monarch to thee, O mighty-armed one, or to that great car-warrior Praddyumna, I can go with an easy heart towards Jayadratha![12] Thou knowest Drona in battle, that warrior who is ragarded as the foremost one among the Kurus! Thou knowest also the vow made by him in the presence of all, O lord![13] The son of Bharadwāja is always eager to seize the king! He is competent also in afflicting king Yudhishthira in battle![14] Charging thee with the protection of that best of men, *viz.*, king Yudhishthira the just, I will proceed today for the destruction of the ruler of the Sindhus![15] Slaying Jayadratha I shall soon come back, O Mādhava! See that Drona may not succeed in forcibly seizing king Yudhishthira the just in battle![16] If Yudhishthira be seized by Bharadwāja's son, O Mādhava, I shall not succeed in slaying Jayadratha, and great will be my grief![17] If that best of men, the truthful son of Pāndu, be seized, it is evident that we shall have again to go into the woods![18] My success, therefore, over Jayadratha, it is plain, will be productive of no benefit, if Drona, inflamed with rage, succeeds in seizing Yudhishthira in battle![19] O mighty-armed one, for doing what is agreeable to me, therefore, O Mādhava, as also for the sake of my success and fame, protect the king in battle![][20]—Thou seest, therefore, O king, thou hast been made over to me as a trust by Savyasāchin, O lord, in consequence of his constant fear of Bharadwāja's son![21] O mighty-armed one, I myself daily see, O lord, that there is none, save Rukmini's son (Praddyumna), who can be a match for Drona in battle![22] I also am regarded to be a match for the intelligent son of Bharadwāja in battle. It is plain, therefore, I cannot dare falsify that reputation which I have, or disregard the commands of my preceptor (Arjuna), or leave thee, O king! The preceptor (Drona), cased as he is in impenetrable mail, in consequence of his lightness of arms,[23-24] obtaining thee in battle, will sport with thee as a child with a little bird! If Krishna's son bearing the *Makara* on his banner were here,[25] I could then have made thee over to him, for he would have protected thee as Arjuna himself! Thou shouldst

protect thyself! When I am gone, who will protect thee,[26] who, that is, that will advance against Drona while I proceed towards Arjuna? O king, let no fear be thine today on Arjuna's account![27] He never becomes cheerless under any burden howsoever heavy! Those warriors that are opposed to him, *viz.*, the Sauvirakas, the Saindhava-Pauravas,[28] they from the north, they from the south, and they O king, headed by Karna, that are regarded as foremost of car-warriors,[29] do not together come up to a sixteenth part of Arjuna! The whole Earth rising against him, with the gods, the *Asuras*, and men,[30] with all the tribes of *Rākshasas*, O king, with the *Kinnaras*, the great snakes, and in fact, all the mobile and the immobile creatures assembled together, is no match for Arjuna in battle![31] Knowing this, O king, let thy fear on Dhananjaya's account be dispelled! There where those two heroes and great bowmen, *viz.*, the two Krishnas, of prowess incapable of being baffled, are,[32] there the slightest obstacle cannot happen to their purpose! Think of the celestial puissance, the accomplishment in weapons, the resourcefulness, the wrath in battle, the gratefulness, and the compassion of thy brother! Think also, O king, of the wonderful knowledge of weapons that Drona will display in battle when I leave this place for going to Arjuna! The preceptor, O monarch, is eagerly solicitous of seizing thee![33-35] He is eagerly desirous also, O king, of making good his vow, O Bhārata! Be attentive, O king, to thy own protection! Who will protect thee when I am gone,[36] who is he, that is, confiding on whom I may go towards Prithā's son Phālguna? I tell thee truly, O great king, that without making thee over to somebody in this great battle, I will not surely go towards Arjuna, O thou of Kuru's race! Reflecting on this, from every point of view, with the aid of thy intelligence, O foremost of all intelligent persons, and ascertaining with thy intelligence what is for thy highest good, command me, O king![37-38]—

"'Yudhishthira, hearing these words, said.—It is even so, O mighty-armed one, as thou sayest, O Mādhava! For all that, however, O sire, my heart doth not become easy on Arjuna's account![39] I shall take the greatest precautions in protecting myself! Commanded by me, go thou thither where

Dhananjaya hath gone![40] Weighing, with my judgment, my own protection in battle with the necessity there is of going towards Arjuna, the latter seems to me preferable.[41] Make thyself ready, therefore, to go thither whither Dhananjaya hath gone! The mighty Bhima will protect me![42] Prishata's son, with all his uterine brothers, and all these mighty kings, and the sons of Draupadi, will, without doubt, protect me![43] The five Kekaya brothers, and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha, and Virāta, and Drupada, and the mighty car-warior Cikhandin,[44] and Dhrishtaketu of great strength, and Kuntibhoja, O sire, and Nakula, and Sahadeva, and the Pānchālas, and the Srinjayas,[45] —all these, O sire, will, without doubt, very carefully protect me! Drona at the head of his troops, and Kritavarman also, in battle,[46] will not succeed in beating us or afflicting me! That scorcher of foes, *viz.*, Dhrishtadyumna, displaying his prowess, will resist the angry Drona like the continent resisting the sea. There where Prishata's son, that slayer of hostile heroes, will remain,[47-48] there Drona will never be able to forcibly transgress our troops. This Dhristadyumna sprang from the fire, for the destruction of Drona, clad in mail, armed with bow and arrows and sword, and decked with costly ornaments. Go, O grandson of Cini, with an easy heart, do not be anxious on my account! Dhrishtadyumna will resist the angry Drona in battle!' "[49-50]—

SECTION CXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing these words of king Yudhishthira the just, that bull among the Cinis feared the censure of Arjuna if he left the king.[1] Seeing, however, the certainty of an imputation of cowardice by the people (if he disobeyed Yudhishthira), he said to himself,—Let not people say that I am afraid of proceeding towards Arjuna![2]—Reflecting repeatedly on this, Sātyaki, that hero invincible in battle, that bull among men, said these words unto king Yudhishthira the just:[3]—If thou thinkest that these arrangments will suffice for thy protection, O monarch, I will then do thy bidding and follow Vibhatsu![4] I tell thee truly, O king, that there is none in the three worlds that is dearer to me than Phālguna![5] I will follow in his

track at thy command, O giver of honors! There is a nothing that I will not do for thy sake![6] O best of men, the commands of my preceptor are always of weight with me. But thy commands are still weightier with me, O lord![7] Thy brothers, *viz.*, Krishna and Dhananjaya, are always engaged in doing what is agreeable to thee![8] Taking thy command on my head, for the sake of Arjuna, O lord, I will proceed, O bull among men, piercing through this impenetrable host![9] Darting wrathfully through this force of Drona like a fish through the sea, I will go thither, O monarch, were king Jayadratha,[10] depending upon his troops, stayeth in fear of the son of Pāndu, protected by those foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Drona's son and Karna and Kripa![11] The distance from here, O king, is three *Yojanas*, I think, of that spot where Pārtha stayeth, ready to slay Jayadratha![12] But though Pārtha is three *Yojanas* distant I shall yet follow in his track with a stout heart, and stay with him, O king, till Jayadratha's slaughter![13] What man is there that goes to battle without the commands of his superiors? And when one is commanded, O king, as I have been by thee, who is there like me that would not fight?[14] I know that place whither I shall have to go, O lord! Teeming as this Ocean-like host doth with plough-shares and darts and maces and shields and scimitars and swords and lances and foremost of shafts, I will today agitate this ocean. This elephant division, consisting of a thousand elephants, that thou seest,[15-16] all belonging to the breed known by the name of *Anjana*, and all endued with great prowess, which are all mounted by a large number of *Mlecchas* delighting in battle and accomplished in smiting,[17]—these elephants, O king, that are shedding their juicy secretions like rain-pouring clouds,—these never retreat if urged forward by those upon their backs![18] They cannot be vanquished, O king, unless they are slaughtered! Then again, those car-warriors, numbering thousands, that thou seest,[19] are all of royal lineage and are all *Mahārathas*. They are called *Rukmarathas*.* They are accomplished in weapons and in battling from cars, as also in fighting

* Owners of golden cars.—T.

from the backs of elephants, O monarch![20] Through masters of the science of weapons, they are accomplished in fighting with their fists. Skilled in battling with maces, masters also of the art of close fight,[21] they are equally clever in striking with scimitars and falling upon the foe with sword and shield. They are brave and learned, and animated by a spirit of rivalry.[22] Every day, O king, they vanquish vast numbers of men in battle. They are commanded by Karna and devoted to Dusçāsana.[23] Even Vāsudeva applauds them as great car-warriors. Always solicitous of Karna's welfare, they are obedient to him.[24] It is at Karna's command, O king, that returning from their pursuit of Arjuna and, therefore, unfatigued and unworn, those brave warriors, cased in impenetrable armour and armed with strong bows,[25] are certainly waiting for me, ordered by Duryodhana also! Crushing these in battle for thy good, O Kaurava,[26] I shall then follow in the track of Savyasāchin! Those other elephants, O king, seven hundred in number,[27] that thou seest, all cased in armour and ridden by Kirātas, and decked with ornaments, the king of the Kirātas, desirous of his life, had formerly presented to Savyasāchin, together with many servants in their train. These, O king, were formerly employed in doing thy business.[28-29] Behold the vicissitudes that time brings about, for these are now battling against thee! Those elephants are ridden by Kirātas difficult of defeat in battle.[30] They are accomplished in fighting from elephants, and are all sprung from the race of Agni. Formerly they were all vanquished in battle by Savyasāchin.[31] They are now waiting for me carefully, under the orders of Duryodhana. Slaying with my shafts, O king, these Kirātas difficult of defeat in battle,[32] I shall follow in the track of Arjuna who is intent on the slaughter of the ruler of the Sindhus. Those (other) huge elephants, sprung from the race of Anjana,[33] of impenetrable hides, well-trained, and adown whose cheeks and from whose mouths the juicy secretions are trickling down, and which are well adorned with armour made wholly of gold,[34] are very effective in battle and resemble Airāvat himself! They have come from the northern hills, and are ridden by fierce robbers[35] that are of strong limbs, that are all foremost of warriors, and that are cased in steel coats of

mail. There, amongst them, are persons born of the cow, or of the ape,[36] or of diverse other creatures, including those born of men. That division of the assembled *Mlecchas* that are all sinful and that come from the fastnesses of Himavat, seem at a distance to be of a smoky color. Obtaining these, and countless Kshatriyas,[37-38] as also Kripa, and Somadatta's son, and that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Drona, and the ruler of the Sindhus, and Karna, he thinks lightly of the Pāndavas![39] Impelled by fate, he regards himself crowned with success. Those I have named will, however, today be within reach of my arrows.[40] They shall not escape me, O son of Kunti, even if they be endued with the speed of the mind. Much regarded always by Duryodhana, that prince who dependeth upon the prowess of others,[41] those warriors, afflicted with my clouds of shafts, will meet with destruction. Those other car-warriors, O king, whom thou seest, and who have golden standards,[42] and are difficult of being resisted, are called Kāmvojas! They are brave and accomplished, and firmly devoted to the science of weapons.[43] Desiring one another's welfare, they are all firmly united. They compose a full *Akshauhini* of wrathful warriors, O Bhārata,[44] and are staying carefully for my sake, well protected by the Kuru heroes. They are on the alert, O king, with their eyes on me![45] I shall certainly destroy them all, like fire destroying a heap of straw. Therefore, O king, let those that equip cars place quivers and all necessaries on my car in proper places. Indeed, in such a dreadful battle, diverse kinds of weapons ought to be taken.[46-47] Let the car be equipt (with necessaries) five times more than what professors of military science direct, for I shall have to encounter the Kāmvojas who resemble fierce snakes of virulent poison,[48] I shall have also to encounter the Kirātas who are armed with diverse weapons of warfare, who resemble virulent poison, who are accomplished in smiting,[49] who have always been well treated by Duryodhana, and who on that account are always intent on Duryodhana's welfare. I shall also have to encounter the Cakas endued with prowess equal to that of Cakra himself,[50] who are fierce as fire and difficult of being put down like a blazing conflagration.[51] Indeed, O king, I shall have to encounter in batte many war-

riors difficult of being resisted. For this, let well-known steeds of the foremost breed and graced with auspicious marks be yoked to my car, after causing their thirst to be slaked and after grooming them duly !—'[52]

"Sanjaya continued,—'After this, king Yudhishthira caused quivers full of shafts, and diverse kinds of weapons, and, indeed, all necessaries, to be placed on Satyaki's car.[53] Then people caused his four well-harnessed and excellent steeds to drink intoxicating wines.[54] And having caused those four steeds to drink and walk and bathe and eat, and having adorned them with golden garlands and plucked out their arrows,[55] those animals, that had (for these operations) been freed from the yoke, and that were of the hue of gold and well-trained and endued with great speed and cheerful and exceedingly docile, were duly yoked again unto his car.[56] And upon that car was set up a tall standard bearing a lion with golden manes. And that standard had attached round it banners of the hue of white clouds and graced with golden circles and pearls and corals. And an umbrella set upon a tall staff of gold was also placed upon that vehicle bearing a heavy weight of weapons.[57-58] After those steeds, adorned with trappings of gold, had been yoked to that car, the younger brother of Dāruka, who was the charioteer and the dear friend of Sātyaki,[59] came and represented unto the latter that the car had been duly equipt, like Mātali representing the equipment of the car unto Vāsava himself. Sātyaki then, having taken a bath and purified himself and undergone every auspicious ceremony,[60] gave *nishkas* of gold unto a thousand *Snātaka* Brāhmanas who uttered benedictions upon him. Blessed with those benedictions, Sātyaki, that foremost of handsome men,[61] that hero worthy of worship, having drunk *kairāta* honey, shone resplendent, with reddened eyes rolling in intoxication.[62] Having touched a brazen mirror and filled with great joy, his energy became doubled and he himself looked like a blazing fire.[63] Taking up on his shoulders his bow with arrows, that foremost of car-warriors, cased in armour and decked in ornaments, had the regenerate ones perform for him the rites of propitiation.[64] And fair maidens honored him by showering upon him fried paddy and perfumes and floral gar-

lands. And the hero then, with joined hands, worshipped the feet of Yudhishthira,[65] and the latter smelt his head. And having undergone all these rites, he then mounted his foremost of cars. Then those steeds, cheerful and strong and fleet as the wind,[66] and invincible, and belonging to the Sindhu breed, bore him on that triumphant car. Similarly, Bhimasena also, honored by king Yudhishthira the just, and reverentially saluting the monarch,[67] set out with Sātyaki. Beholding those two chastisers of foes on the point of penetrating thy host,[68] their enemies, *viz.*, thy troops, all stood still with Drona at their head. Then Sātyaki, seeing Bhima cased in mail and following him,[69] saluted that hero and spoke unto him these delightful words. Indeed, the heroic Sātyaki, with every limb filled with joy, said unto Bhima,[70]—Do thou, O Bhima, protect the king! Even this is thy duty above all things! Piercing through this host whose hour hath come, I will proceed.[71] Whether now or hence, the protection of the king is thy highest duty! Thou knowest my prowess, and I also know thine, O chastiser of foes![72] If, therefore, thou desirest my good, return, O Bhima!—Thus addressed by Sātyaki, Bhima replied,—Go then, for the success of thy object![73] O best of men, I will protect the king! —Thus addressed, he of Madhu's race answered Bhima, saying,[74]—Go back, O son of Prithā! My success is certain, since won over by my merits, thou, O Bhima, art today obedient to my wishes![75] Indeed, O Bhima, as these auspicious omens tell me, my victory is assured! After the sinful ruler of the Sindhus will have been slain by the high-souled son of Pāndu,[76] I shall embrace king Yudhishthira of virtuous soul!—Having said these words unto Bhima and dismissing him with an embrace, that illustrious warrior eyed thy troops like a tiger eyeing a herd of deer. Beholding him thus looking at thy army, O king,[77-78] thy troops became once more stupified and began to tremble violently. Then, O king, Sātyaki, desirous of seeing Arjuna at the command of king Yudhishthira the just, suddenly dashed against thy troops.' "[79]

SECTION CXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'O king, when Yuyudhāna, from desire of battle, proceeded against thy troops, king Yudhishthira, surrounded by his forces,[1] followed Yuyudhāna for reaching the car of Drona. Then the son of the king of the Pānchālas, *viz.*, the invincible warrior Dhristadyumna,[2] and king Vasudāna, both loudly exclaimed within the Pāndava host,—Come, smite quickly, and rush against the foe,[3] so that Sātyaki, that warrior invincible in battle, may pass easily (through the Kaurava host)! Many mighty car-warriors will struggle for vanquishing him![4]—The great car-warriors (of the Pāndava army), saying this, fell impetuously upon their foes. Indeed, they all rushed, saying,—We will vanquish those that will endeavour to vanquish Sātyaki![5]—Then a loud uproar was heard about the car of Sātyaki. Thy son's host, however, covered with Sātyaki's shafts, fled away.[6] Indeed, O king, that host was broken into a hundred straggling bodies by him of the Sātwata race. And while that force was breaking, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the (grandson) of Cini,[7] crushed seven heroic and great bowmen in the front ranks of the foe. And, O monarch, with his shafts that resembled blazing flames of fire, he despatched many other heroes, kings of diverse realms, unto the regions of Yama. He sometimes pierced a hundred warriors with one shaft, and sometimes one warrior with a hundred shafts.[8-9] Like the great Rudra destroying creatures, he slew elephants and elephant-riders, horses and horse-riders, and car-warriors with steeds and drivers.[10] None amongst thy troops ventured to advance against Sātyaki who was displaying such lightness of hand and who showered such clouds of shafts.[11] Struck with panic and crushed and grinded thus by that hero of long arms, those brave warriors all left the field at sight of that proud hero.[12] Although alone, they saw him multiplied manifold, and were stupified by his energy. And the Earth looked exceedingly beautiful with crushed cars and broken *nidas*,* O sire, and wheels, and fallen um-

* *Nidas* were niches or drivers' boxes.—T.

brellas and standards, and *anukarshas*, and banners, and head-gears decked with gold, and human arms smeared with sandal-paste and adorned with *Angadas*, O king, and human thighs resembling trunks of elephants or the tapering bodies of snakes, and faces, beautiful as the moon and decked with ear-rings, of large-eyed warriors lying all about the field. And the ground there looked exceedingly beautiful with the huge bodies of fallen elephants cut off in diverse ways, like a large plain strewn with hills. Crushed by that hero of long arms, steeds, deprived of life and fallen down on the ground, looked beautiful in their traces made of burnished gold and decked with rows of pearls and in their curasses of handsome make and design.[18-19] Having slain diverse kinds of thy troops, he of the Sātwata race entered into thy host, agitating and routing thy army.[20] Then Sātyaki desired to go by that very track by which Dhananjaya had gone before him. Then Drona came and resisted him.[21] Encountering the son of Bharadwāja, Yuyudhāna, filled with rage, stopped not like a vast expanse of water upon encountering an embankment.[22] Drona, however, checking in that battle the mighty car-warrior Yuyudhāna, pierced him with five keen shafts capable of penetrating into the very vitals.[23] Sātyaki, however, O king, in that battle pierced Drona with seven shafts whetted on stone, equipt with golden wings and the feathers of the *Kanka* and the peacock.[24] Then Drona, afflicted Sātyaki, his steeds, and his driver, with six shafts. The mighty car-warrior Yuyudhāna could not brook that feat of Drona.[25] Uttering a leonine shout, he then pierced Drona with ten shafts, and then with six, and then with eight others.[26] And once more Yuyudhāna pierced Drona with ten shafts, his charioteer with one, and his four steeds with four.[27] And with another shaft, O sire, Sātyaki struck Drona's standard. Then Drona speedily covered Sātyaki, his car, steeds, driver, and standard, with swiftly coursing shafts countless in number like a flight of locusts. Similarly Yuyudhāna fearlessly covered Drona with countless shafts of great speed. Then Drona, addressing Yuyudhāna, said,—Thy preceptor (Arjuna) hath, like a coward, gone away, leaving the battle,[28-30] avoiding me who was fighting with him, proceeding by my flank! O thou of Madhu's race,

if like thy preceptor, thou too dost not quickly avoid me in this battle, thou shalt not escape me with life today, engaged as I am in battle with thee!—[31]

"'Sātyaki, hearing these words, answered,—At the command of king Yudhishthira the just, I shall follow in the track of Dhananjaya! Blessed be thou, O Brāhmana, I would lose time (if I fight with thee)![32] A disciple should always tread in the way trod by his preceptor. I shall, therefore, follow in the track that has been trod by my preceptor![33]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said this much, the grandson of Cini avoided the preceptor and suddenly proceeded onwards, O king! And addressing his charioteer, he said,[34]—Drona will, by every means, endeavour to check my progress! Proceed carefully, O *Suta*, in battle, and listen to these grave words of mine![35] Yonder is seen the host, of great splendour, of the Avantis! Next to them is the mighty host of the Southerners.[36] And next to it is the great host of the Vālhikas. By the side of the Vālhikas stands resolved for fight the mighty host commanded by Karna![37] O charioteer, all these hosts are different from one another, but relying upon one another they protect one another on the field of battle![38] Arrived at the space left open between these divisions, cheerfully urge thou the steeds! Indeed, O charioteer, bear me thither, making the steeds adopt a tolerable speed,[39]—thither, that is, where are seen the Vālhikas with diverse weapons uplifted in their arms, and the countless Southerners headed by the *Suta's* son,[40] and whose division is seen to present a serried array of elephants and steeds and cars and in which stand foot-soldiers raised from diverse realms![41]—Having said this much unto his driver, avoiding the Brāhmana (Drona), he proceeded, telling his charioteer,—Pass through the open space between those two divisions towards the fierce and mighty host of Karna![42]—Drona, however, excited with wrath, pursued him behind, shooting at him countless shafts. Indeed, the preceptor closely followed the highly blessed Yuyudhāna who advanced without any desire of turning back.[43] Smiting the great host of Karna with whetted arrows, Sātyaki penetrated into the vast and limitless army of the Bharatas.[44] When Yuyudhāna, however,

entered that army, the troops (opposed to him) fled away. At this, the wrathful Kritavarman came forward to resist Sātyaki.[45] The valiant Sātyaki, striking the advancing Kritavarman with six shafts, quickly slew his four steeds with four other shafts.[46] And once again he pierced Kritavarman in the centre of the chest with sixteen straight shafts of great speed.[47] Thus encountered, O monarch, with many shafts of fierce energy by him of the Sātwata race, Kritavarman was ill able to brook it.[48] Aiming then a calf-toothed shaft resembling a snake of virulent poison and endued with the speed of the wind, and drawing the bow-string, O monarch, to his ear, he pierced Sātyaki in the chest.[49] That shaft equipt with beautiful feathers, penetrating through his armour and body and dyed in blood, entered the Earth.[50] Then, O king, Kritavarman, that warrior acquainted with the highest weapons, shooting many shafts, cut off the bow of Sātyaki with arrows fixed thereon.[51] And excited with rage, he then, in that battle, O king, pierced Sātyaki of unbaffled prowess in the centre of the chest with ten shafts of great keenness.[52] Upon his bow being broken, that foremost of mighty men, *viz.*, Sātyaki, hurled a dart at the right arm of Kritavarman.[53] And taking up and drawing a tougher bow, Yuyudhāna quickly shot at his foe shafts by hundreds and thousands,[54] and entirely shrouded Kritavarman and his car with that arrowy downpour. Having thus shrouded the son of Hridikā, O monarch, in that battle, Sātyaki[55] cut off, with a broad-headed arrow, the head of his foe's charioteer from his trunk. The charioteer of Hridikā's son then, thus slain, fell down from that great car.[56] At this the steeds of Kritavarman, deprived of a driver, ran away with great speed. The ruler of the Bhojas then, in great agitation, himself checked those steeds.[57] That heroic warrior then, bow in hand, stood upon his car (ready for battle). Beholding this feat, his troops applauded it highly. Resting for a short space of time, Kritavarman then urged those good steeds of his.[58] Himself divested of fear, he inspired his foes with great fear. Sātyaki, however, had by that time left him behind, while Kritavarman himself now rushed against Bhimasena without pursuing Sātyaki.[59] Thus issuing out of the division of the

Bhojas, Sātyaki proceeded with great speed towards the mighty division of the Kāmvojas.[60] Resisted there by many brave and mighty car-warriors, Yuyudhāna, of prowess incapable of being baffled, could not then, O monarch, proceed a step.[61] Meanwhile Drona, having placed his troops in a proper position and made over the burthen of protecting them to the ruler of the Bhojas, firmly resolved, proceeded with great speed towards Yuyudhāna from desire of battle.[62] Then the foremost warriors of the Pāndava host, beholding Drona thus pursuing Yuyudhāna from behind, cheerfully began to resist him.[63] The Pānchālas, however, who were headed by Bhimasena, having approached the son of Hridikā, that foremost of car-warriors, all became cheerless.[64] The heroic Kritavarman, O king, displaying his prowess, resisted all those warriors who, although they had become a little heartless, struggled yet with great vigor.[65] Fearlessly he weakened, by means of his arrowy showers, the animals of his foes. The brave warriors, however, (of the Pāndava army), though thus afflicted by the ruler of the Bhojas, stood, like high-born soldiers that they were, resolved to fight with the division of the Bhojas itself, from desire of great renown.' "[66]

SECTION CXIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Our army is equally possessed of many excellencies. It is equally regarded as superior. It is equally arrayed according to the rules of science, and it is equally numerous, O Sanjaya!*[1] It is always well treated by us, and is always devoted to us. It is vast in numerical strength, and presents a wonderful aspect. Its prowess had before been tested.[2] The soldiers are neither very old nor very young. They are neither lean nor corpulent. Of active habits, of well-developed and strong frames, they are free from disease.[3] They are cased in mail and well equipt with arms. They are

---

* Many of the opening *slokas* of this section are nearly the same as those of section 76 of *Bhishma Parva*, *vide ante*. In a few instances I have adopted the readings of the Bombay edition.—T.

devoted to all kinds of armed exercises.[4] They are adepts in mounting upon and descending from the backs of elephants, in moving forward and stepping back, in smiting effectually, and in marching and retreating.[5] Oftentimes have they been tested in the management of elephants and steeds and cars. Having been examined duly, they have been entertained on pay[6] and not for the sake of lineage, nor from favor, nor from relationship. They are not a rabble come of their own accord, nor have they been admitted into my army without pay.[7] My army consists of well-born and respectable men, who are, again, contented, well fed, and submissive. They are sufficiently honored by us and sufficiently rewarded. They are all famous and endued with great intelligence.[8] They are, again, O son, protected by many of our foremost counsellors and others of righteous deeds, all of whom are best of men resembling the very Regents of the world![9] Innumerable rulers of Earth, seeking to do what is agreeable to us, and who have of their own will sided us with their forces and followers, also protect them.[10] Indeed, our army is like the vast Ocean filled with the waters of innumerable rivers running from all directions. It abounds with steeds and cars which, though destitute of wings, still resemble the winged tenants of the air.[11] It teems also with elephants adown whose cheeks flow juicy secretions. What can it, therefore, be but Destiny that even such an army should be slain?[12] (Ocean-like as it is) vast numbers of combatants constitute its interminable waters, and the steeds and other animals constitute its terrible waves. Innumerable swords and maces and darts and arrows and lances constitute the oars (plied on that ocean).*[13] Abounding with standards and ornaments, the pearls and gems (of the warriors) constitute the lotuses that deck it. The rushing steeds and elephants constitute the winds that agitate it into fury.[14] Drona constitutes the fathomless cave of that ocean, Kritavarman its vast vortex, Jalasandha its mighty alligator, and Karna the rise of the Moon that makes it swell with energy and pride![15] When that bull amongst the Pāndavas, on his single car, hath speedily gone, piercing through that

* I prefer the reading *Samākulam* to *Jhashākulam*.—T.

army of mine vast (though it be) like the Ocean, and when Yuyudhāna also hath followed him, I do not, O Sanjaya, see the prospect of even a remnant of my troops being left alive by Savyasāchin, and that foremost of car-warriors belonging to the Sātwata race ![*16-17] Beholding those two exceedingly active heroes pierce through (the divisions placed in the van), and seeing the ruler of the Sindhus also within reach of the shafts from *Gāndiva*,[18] what, indeed, was the measure adopted by the Kuravas impelled by fate? At that time, when all were fighting intently, what became of them ?[19] O sire, I regard the assembled Kurus to be overtaken by Death himself! Indeed, their prowess also in battle is no longer seen to be what it once was![20] Krishna and the son of Pāndu have both entered the (Kuru) host unwounded! There is none in that host, O Sanjaya, capable of resisting them![21] Many combatants that are great car-warriors were admitted by us after examination. They are all honored (by us) with pay as each deserves, and others with agreeable speeches.[22] There is none, O son, amongst my troops who is not honored with good offices (done to him). Each receives his assigned pay and rations according to the character of his services.[23] In my army, O Sanjaya, there is none who is unskilled in battle, none who receives pay less than what he deserves, or none who does not receive any pay.[24] The soldiers are worshipped by me, according to the best of my powers, with gifts and honors and seats. The same conduct is followed towards them by my sons, my kinsmen, and my friends.[25] Yet on the very approach of Savyasāchin have they been vanquished by him and by the grandson of Cini! What can it be but Destiny ?[26] They who are protecting them, all follow the same road, the protected with the protectors![27] Beholding Arjuna arrived at the front of Jayadratha, what measure was adopted by my foolish son ?[28] Beholding Sātyaki also entering the host, what step did Duryodhana think suitable to that occasion ?[29] Indeed, beholding those two foremost of car-warriors who are beyond the touch of all weapons, enter my host, what resolution was formed by my warriors in battle ?[30]

* The construction of the original is so involved and again pleonastic, that I do not render these two *slokas* literally.—T.

I think, beholding Krishna of Daçārha's race and that bull of Cini's race also both engaged for Arjuna's sake, my sons are filled with grief![31] I think, seeing, both Sātwata and Arjuna pass through my army and the Kurus flying away, my sons are filled with grief![32] I think, seeing their car-warriors retreat in hopelessness of subjugating the foe and set their hearts upon flying away from the field, my sons are filled with grief![33] I think, seeing the terraces of their cars made empty by Sātwata and Arjuna, and seeing also their combatants slain, my sons are filled with grief![34] I think, seeing their steeds and elephants and cars and heroic combatants by thousands flying away from the field with anxiety in their hearts, my sons are filled with grief![35] I think, seeing many huge elephants fly away, afflicted with the shafts of Arjuna, and others fallen and falling, my sons are filled with grief![36] I think, seeing steeds deprived of riders and warriors deprived of cars by Sātyaki and Pārtha, my sons are filled with grief![37] I think, large bodies of steeds slain or routed by Mādhava and Pārtha, my sons are filled with grief![38] I think, seeing large bodies of foot-soldiers flying away in all directions, my sons, despairing of success, are filled with grief![39] I think, seeing those two heroes pass through Drona's division unvanquished within a moment, my sons are filled with grief![40] Stupified am I, O son, upon hearing that Krishna and Dhananjaya, those two heroes of unfading glory, have both, with Sātwata, penetrated into my host![41] After that foremost of car-warriors among the Cinis, had entered my host, and after he had passed through the division of the Bhojas, what did the Kauravas do?[42] Tell me also, O Sanjaya, how did the battle take place there where Drona afflicted the Pāndavas on the field![43] Drona is endued with great might, is the foremost of all persons, is accomplished in weapons, and is incapable of defeat in battle! How could the Pānchālas pierce that great bowman in the fight?[44] Desirous of Dhananjaya's victory, the Pānchālas are inveterate foes of Drona. The mighty car-warrior Drona also is an inveterate foe of theirs.[45] Thou art skilled in narration, O Sanjaya! Tell me, therefore, everything about what Arjuna did for compassing the slaughter of the ruler of the Sindhus![46]

"Sanjaya said,—'O bull of Bharata's race, overtaken by a calamity that is the direct result of thy own fault, thou shouldst not, O hero, indulge in such lamentations like an ordinary person![47] Formerly many of thy wise well-wishers numbering Vidura amongst them had told thee,—Do not, O king, abandon the sons of Pāndu!—Thou didst not then heed those words![48] The man that heedeth not the counsels of well-wishing friends, weepeth, falling into great distress, like thyself![49] He of Daçārha's race, O king, had formerly begged thee for peace! For all that, Krishna of world-wide fame obtained not his wish![50] Ascertaining thy worthlessness, and thy partiality for thy sons, thy scepticism in virtue, and thy jealousy towards the Pāndavas,[51] and understanding also thy crooked intentions towards the sons of Pāndu, and hearing thy delirious lamentations, O best of kings,[52] that puissant Lord of all the worlds, that Being, acquainted with the truth of everything in all the worlds, *viz.*, Vāsudeva, then caused the flame of war to blaze forth among the Kurus![53] This great and wholesale destruction hath come upon thee, brought about by thy own fault! O giver of honors, it behoveth thee not to impute the fault to Duryodhana![54] In the development of these incidents no merit of thine is to be seen in the beginning, middle, or end! This defeat is entirely owing to thee![55] Therefore, knowing as thou dost the truth about this world, be quiet and hear how this fierce battle, resembling that between the gods and the *Asuras*, took place![56] After the grandson of Cini, that warrior of prowess incapable of being baffled, had entered into thy host, the Pārthas headed by Bhimasena also rushed against thy troops.[57] The mighty car-warrior Kritavarman, however, alone, resisted in that battle the Pāndavas thus rushing in fury and wrath with their followers against thy host.[58] As the continent resists the surging sea, even so did the son of Hridikā resist the troops of the Pāndavas in that battle.[59] The prowess that we then beheld of the son of Hridikā was wonderful, in as much as the united Pārthas succeeded not in transgressing his single self.[60] Then the mighty-armed Bhima, piercing Kritavarman with three shafts, blew his conch, gladdening all the Pāndavas.[61] Then Sahadeva pierced the son of Hridikā with twenty shafts, and

Yudhishthira the just pierced him with five, and Nakula pierced him with a hundred.[62] And the sons of Draupadi pierced him with three and seventy shafts and Ghatotkacha pierced him with seven.[63] And Virāta and Drupada and Drupada's son (Dhrishtadyumna) each pierced him with five shafts, and Cikhandin, having once pierced him with five,[64] again pierced him smilingly with five and twenty shafts. Then Kritavarman O king, pierced every one of those great car-warriors[65] with five shafts, and Bhima again with seven. And the son of Hridikā felled both the bow and the standard of Bhima from the latter's car.[66] Then that mighty car-warrior, with great speed, wrathfully struck Bhima, whose bow had been cut off with[67] seventy keen shafts in the chest. The mighty Bhima, deeply pierced with those excellent shafts of Hridikā's son, trembled on his car like a mountain during an Earthquake.[68] Beholding Bhimasena in that condition, the Pārthas headed by king Yudhishthira the just afflicted Kritavarman, O king, shooting at him many shafts.[69] Encompassing that warrior there with throngs of cars, O sire, they cheerfully began to pierce him with their shafts, desiring to protect the Wind-god's son in that battle.[70] The mighty Bhimasena then, recovering consciousness, took up in that battle a dart made of steel and equipt with a golden staff,[71] and hurled it with great speed from his own car at the car of Kritavarman. That dart resembling a snake freed from its slough, hurled from Bhima's hands,[72] fierce-looking as it was, blazed forth as it proceeded towards Kritavarman. Beholding that dart endued with the splendour of the *Yuga* fire coursing towards him,[73] the son of Hridikā cut it in twain with two shafts. Thereupon that dart decked with gold, thus cut off, fell down on the Earth,[74] illumining the ten points of the compass, O king, like a large meteor falling from the firmament. Seeing his dart baffled, Bhima blazed up in wrath.[75] Then taking up another bow which was tougher and whose twang was louder, Bhimasena, filled with wrath, attacked the son of Hridikā in that battle.[76] Then, O king, Bhima of terrible might struck Kritavarman in the centre of the chest with five shafts, in consequence of thy evil policy, O monarch![77] The ruler of the Bhojas

then, mangled in every limb, O sire, by Bhimasena, shone resplendent in the field like a red *Açoka* covered with flowers.[78] Then that mighty bowman, *viz.*, Kritavarman, filled with rage, smilingly struck Bhimasena with three shafts, and having struck him forcibly pierced in return every one of those great car-warriors struggling vigorously in battle, with three shafts. Each of the latter then pierced him in return with seven shafts.[79-80] Then that mighty car-warrior of the Sātwata race, filled with rage, cut off, smiling in that battle, with a razor-faced shaft, the bow of Cikhandin.[81] Cikhandin then, seeing his bow cut off, quickly took up a sword and a bright shield decked with a hundred moons.[82] Whirling his large shield decked with gold, Cikhandin sent that sword towards the car of Kritavarman.[83] That large sword, cutting off, O king, Kritavarman's bow with arrow fixed thereon, fell down on the Earth, like, O monarch, a bright luminary loosened from the firmament.[84] Meanwhile, those mighty car-warriors quickly and deeply pierced Kritavarman with their shafts in that battle.[85] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Hridikā, casting off that broken bow, and taking up another,[86] pierced each of the Pāndavas with three straight shafts. And he pierced Cikhandin at first with three, and then with five shafts.[87] Then the illustrious Cikhandin, taking up another bow, checked the son of Hridikā with many swift going shafts furnished with heads like tortoise nails.[88] Then, O king, the son of Hridikā, inflamed with rage in that battle, rushed impetuously at that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Yajnasena,[89] that warrior, O monarch, who was the cause of the illustrious Bhishma's fall in battle. Indeed, the heroic Kritavarman rushed at Cikhandin, displaying his might, like a tiger at an elephant.[90] Then those two chastisers of foes, who resembled a couple of huge elephants or two blazing fires, encountered each other with clouds of shafts[91] And they shook their best of bows, and aimed their arrows, and shot them in hundreds like a couple of Suns shedding their rays.[92] And those two mighty car-warriors scorched each other with their keen shafts, and shone resplendent like two Suns appearing at the end of the *Yuga*.[93] And Kritavarman in that battle pierc-

ed that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Yajnasena's son, with three and seventy shafts and once more with seven.[94] Deeply pierced therewith, Cikhandin sat down in pain on the terrace of his car, throwing aside his bow and arrows, and was overtaken by a swoon.[95] Beholding that hero in a swoon, thy troops, O bull among men, worshipped the son of Hridikā, and waved their garments in the air.[96] Seeing Cikhandin thus afflicted with the shafts of Hridikā's son, his charioteer quickly bore that mighty car-warrior away from the battle.[97] The Pārthas, beholding Cikhandin lying senseless on the terrace of his car, soon encompassed Kritavarman in that battle with crowds of cars.[98] The mighty car-warrior Kritavarman then achieved a most wonderful feat there, inasmuch as, alone, he held in check all the Pārthas with their followers.[99] Having thus vanquished the Pārthas, that mighty car-warrior then vanquished the Chedis, the Pānchālas, the Srinjayas, and the Kekayas, all of whom are endued with great prowess.[100] Those forces of the Pāndavas then, thus slaughtered by the son of Hridikā, began to run in all directions, unable to stay coolly in battle.[101] Having vanquished the sons of Pāndu headed by Bhimasena himself, the son of Hridikā stayed in battle like a blazing fire.[102] Those mighty car-warriors, afflicted with torrents of shafts and routed by Hridikā's son in battle, ventured not to face him.' "[103]

SECTION CXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Listen with undivided attention, O king, to what thou hast asked me! After the rout of that force by the high-souled son of Hridikā,[1] and upon the Pārthas being humiliated with shame and thy troops elated with joy, he that became the protector of the Pāndavas who were solicitous of protection while sinking in that fathomless sea of distress,[2] that hero, *viz.*, the grandson of Cini, hearing that fierce uproar of thy army in that terrible battle, quickly, O king, turned back and proceeded against Kritavarman.[3] Hridikā's son Kritavarman then, excited with wrath, covered the grandson of Cini with clouds of sharp shafts. At this, Sātyaki also became filled with rage.[4] The grandson of Cini then quickly

sped at Kritavarman a sharp and broad-headed arrow in that encounter and then four other arrows.[5] These four arrows slew the four steeds of Kritavarman, and the other cut off Kritavarman's bow. Then Sātyaki pierced the charioteer of his foe and those that protected the latter's rear, with many keen shafts.[6] Having made Kritavarman carless, Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled, then began, with his straight shafts, to afflict his antagonist's forces.[7] The hostile division then, afflicted with Sātyaki's arrows, broke. Thereupon Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled, quickly proceeded on his way.[8] Hear now, O king, what that hero of great valor then did unto thy troops! Having, O monarch, forded the ocean constituted by Drona's division,[9] and filled with joy at having vanquished Kritavarman in battle, that hero then addressed his charioteer, saying,—Proceed slowly without fear![10]—Beholding, however, that army of thine that abounded with cars and steeds and elephants, and that teemed with foot-soldiers, Sātyaki once more said unto his charioteer,[11]—That large division which thou seest on the left of Drona's host, and which looks dark as the clouds, consists of the elephants (of the foe). Rukmaratha is its leader![12] Those elephants are many, O charioteer, and are difficult of being resisted in battle. Urged by Duryodhana, they wait for me, prepared to cast away their lives![13] All those combatants are princes by birth, are great bowmen, and capable of displaying great prowess in battle. Belonging to the country of the Trigartas, they are all illustrious car-warriors, owning standards decked with gold.[14] Those brave warriors are waiting, desirous of battle with me! Urge the steeds quickly, O charioteer, and take me thither![15] I shall fight with the Trigartas in the very sight of Bharadwāja's son!—Thus addressed, the charioteer, obedient to Sātwata's will, proceeded slowly.[16] Upon that bright car of solar effulgence, equipt with standard, those excellent steeds harnessed thereto and perfectly obedient to the driver, endued with speed of the wind, and white as the *Kunḍa* flower, or the moon, or silver, bore him (to that spot). As he advanced to battle, drawn by those excellent steeds of the hue of a conch,[17-18] those brave warriors encompassed him on all sides with their elephants, scattering diverse

kinds of keen arrows capable of easily piercing everything.[19] Sātwata also fought with that elephant division, shooting his keen shafts like a mighty cloud at the end of summer pouring torrents of rain on a mountain-breast.[20] Those elephants, slaughtered with those shafts, whose touch resembled thunder, sped by that foremost one among the Cinis, began to fly away from the field,[21] their tusks broken, bodies covered with blood, heads and frontal globes split open, ears and faces and trunks cut off, and themselves deprived of riders and standards.[22] Many elephants, their skins cut open, bells broken, tall standards cut down, riders slain, and blankets loosened, ran away, O king, in all directions.[23] Many amongst them, O monarch, mangled by Sātwata with long shafts and calf-tooth-headed arrows and broad-headed arrows and *Anjalikas* and razor-faced arrows and crescent-shaped ones, fled away, with blood flowing down their bodies, and themselves ejecting urine and excreta and uttering loud and diverse cries deep as the roar of clouds.[24-25] And some amongst the others wandered, and some limped, and some fell down, and some became pale and cheerless. Thus afflicted by Yuyudhāna, with shafts that resembled the Sun or fire, that elephant division fled away in all directions. After that elephant division was exterminated, the mighty Jalasandha,[26-27] exerting himself coolly, led his elephant before Yuyudhāna's car drawn by white steeds. Cased in golden mail, decked with golden *Angadas*, with ear-rings and diadem, armed with sword, smeared with red sandal paste, his head encircled with a blazing chain of gold, his breast covered with a curass, his neck adorned with a bright garland (of gold), that hero of sinless soul, stationed on the head of his elephant, and shaking his bow decked with gold,[28-30] looked resplendent, O king, like a cloud charged with lightning. Like the continent resisting the surging sea, Sātyaki checked that excellent elephant of the ruler of the Magadhas that approached him with such fury. Beholding the elephant checked by the excellent shafts of Yuyudhāna,[31-32] the mighty Jalasandha became filled with rage. Then, O king, the enraged Jalasandha, pierced Cini's grandson on his broad chest with some shafts of great force. With another sharp and well-tempered and broad-headed arrow,[33-34] he cut off the bow of the

Vrishni hero while the latter was drawing it. And then, O Bhārata, smiling the while, the heroic ruler of the Māgadhas pierced the bowless Sātyaki with five keen shafts. The valiant and mighty-armed Sātyaki, however, though pierced with many shafts by Jalasandha,[35-36] trembled not in the least. All this seemed exceedingly wonderful. Then the mighty Yuyudhāna, without any fear, thought of the shafts (he should use).[37] Taking up another bow, he addressed Jalasandha, saying,—Wait, Wait!—Saying this much, the grandson of Cini deeply pierced Jalasandha on his broad breast with sixty arrows, smiling the while. And with another razor-faced arrow of great sharpness he cut off Jalasandha's bow at the handle, and with three more shafts he pierced Jalasandha himself. Then Jalasandha, casting aside that bow of his with arrow fixed thereon,[38-40] hurled a lance, O sire, at Sātyaki. That terrible lance, passing through the left arm of Mādhava in that fierce battle, entered the Earth like a hissing snake of gigantic proportions. After his left arm had thus been pierced, Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled,[41-42] struck Jalasandha with thirty keen shafts. The mighty Jalasandha then, taking up his scimitar,[43] and a large shield made of bull's hide and decked with a hundred moons, whirled the former for a while and hurled it at Sātwata.[44] Cutting off the bow of Cini's grandson, that scimitar fell down on the Earth, and looked resplendent like a circle of fire, as it lay on the Earth.[45] Then Yuyudhāna took up another bow capable of piercing every body, large as a *Çāla* offshoot, and of twang resembling the roar of Indra's thunder,[46] and, filled with rage, stretched it and then pierced Jalasandha with a single shaft. And then Sātyaki, that foremost one of Mādhu's race, smiling the while, cut off, with a pair of razor-faced arrows, the two arms, decked with ornaments, of Jalasandha. Thereupon those two arms, looking like a couple of spiked maces, fell down from that foremost of elephants,[47-48] like a couple of five-headed snakes falling down from a mountain. And then, with a third razor-headed arrow, Sātyaki cut off his antagonist's large head endued with beautiful teeth and adorned with a pair of beautiful ear-rings. The headless and armless trunk, of fearful aspect,[49-53] dyed Jalasandha's elephant with blood. Having

slain Jalasandha in battle, Sātwata quickly[51] felled the wooden edifice, O king, from that elephant's back. Bathed in blood, the elephant of Jalasandha[52] bore that costly seat hanging down from his back. And afflicted with the arrows of Sātwata, the huge beast crushed friendly ranks[53] as it ran wildly, uttering fierce cries of pain. Then, O sire, wails of woe arose among thy troops,[54] at sight of Jalasandha slain by that bull among the Vrishnis. Thy warriors then, turning their faces, fled away in all directions.[55] Indeed, despairing of success over the foe, they set their hearts on flight. Meanwhile, O king, Drona, that foremost of all wielders of bows,[56] approached the mighty car-warrior Yuyudhāna, borne by his swift coursers. Many bulls among the Kurus, beholding Cini's grandson swelling (with rage and pride),[57] rushed at him with fury, accompanied by Drona. Then commenced a battle, O king, between the Kurus and Drona (on one side) and Yuyudhāna (on the other), that resembled the awful battle of old between the gods and the *Asuras*.' "[58]

SECTION CXVI.

Sanjaya said,—'Shooting clouds of arrows, all those warriors, accomplished in smiting, carefully and speedily, O monarch, encountered Yuyudhāna.[1] Drona struck him with seven and seventy shafts of great keenness. And Durmarshana struck him with a dozen, and Dussaha struck him with ten shafts.[2] And Vikarna also pierced him on the left side as also on the centre of the chest, with thirty keen shafts equipt with *Kanka* feathers.[3] And Durmukha struck him with ten shafts, and Dusçāsana with eight, and Chitrasena, O sire, pierced him with a couple of shafts.[4] And Duryodhana, O king, and many other heroes, afflicted that mighty car-warrior with dense showers of shafts in that battle.[5] Though checked on all sides by those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, thy sons, Yuyudhāna of Vrishni's race pierced each of them separately with his straight shafts.[6] Indeed, he pierced the son of Bharadwāja with three shafts, and Dussaha with nine, and Vikarna with five and twenty, and Chitrasena with seven,[7] and Durmarshana with a dozen, and Vivingçati

with eight, and Satyavrata with nine, and Vijaya with ten shafts.[8] And having pierced Rukmāngada also, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Sātyaki, shaking his bow, speedily proceeded against thy son (Duryodhana).[9] And Yuyudhāna, in the sight of all men, deeply pierced with his arrows the king, that greatest of car-warriors in the whole world. Then commenced a battle between those two.[10] Both shooting keen arrows and both aiming countless shafts, each of those mighty car-warriors made the other invisible in that battle.[11] And Sātyaki, pierced by the Kuru king, looked exceedingly resplendent as blood copiously ran adown his body like a sandal tree shedding its juicy secretions.[12] Thy son also, pierced by Sātwata with clouds of shafts, looked beautiful like a snake set up (at a sacrifice) decked all over with gold.[13] Then Mādhava, O king, in that battle, cut off with a razor-faced arrow, smiling the while, the bow of the Kuru king.[14] And then he pierced the bowless king with countless arrows. Pierced with arrows by that foe of great activity,[15] the king could not brook this indication of the enemy's success. Duryodhana then, taking up another formidable bow the back of whose staff was decked with gold,[16] speedily pierced Sātyaki with a hundred arrows. Deeply pierced by thy mighty son armed with the bow,[17] Yuyudhāna became inflamed with wrath and began to afflict thy son. Beholding the king thus afflicted, thy sons, those mighty car-warriors,[18] shrouded Sātyaki with dense showers of arrows shot with great force. Whilst being thus shrouded by those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, thy multitude of sons,[19] Yuyudhāna pierced each of them with five arrows, and once more with seven. And soon he pierced Duryodhana with eight swift arrows[20] and, smiling the while, cut off the latter's bow that frightened all foes. And with a few arrows he also felled the king's standard decked with a jewelled elephant.[21] And slaying then the four steeds of Duryodhana with four keen arrows, the illustrious Sātyaki felled the king's charioteer with a razor-faced shaft.[22] Meanwhile, Yuyudhāna, filled with joy, pierced that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the Kuru king, with many arrows capable of penetrating into the very vitals.[23] Then, O king, thy son Duryodhana, while being thus struck in that battle with those excellent arrows of Cini's grandson, suddenly

fled away.[24] And the king quickly mounted the car of Chitrasena armed with the bow. Beholding the king thus attacked by Sātyaki in battle, and reduced to the position of Soma in the firmament while seized by *Rāhu*, cries of woe arose from every part of the universe. Hearing that uproar, the mighty car-warrior Kritavarman[25-26] quickly proceeded to that spot where the puissant Mādhava was battling. And Kritavarman proceeded, shaking his bow, and urging his steeds,[27] and reproving his charioteer with the words,—*Go with speed, Go with speed!*—Beholding Kritavarman rushing towards him like the Destroyer himself with wide open mouth,[28] Yuyudhāna, O king, addressed his driver, saying,—That Kritavarman, armed with arrows, is rushing on his car towards me with speed![29] Proceed, on this car, against that foremost one among all car-warriors!—Then, with his steeds urged to their greatest speed, and on his car duly equipt,[30] Sātyaki came upon the ruler of the Bhojas, that foremost of all bowmen. Then those two tigers among men, both inflamed with rage and both resembling a blazing fire, encountered each other like two tigers endued with great activity. Kritavarman pierced Cini's grandson with six and twenty whetted arrows of keen points, and the latter's driver with five arrows. And skilled in battle, the son of Hridikā pierced, with four mighty shafts, the four excellent and well-broken steeds of Sātyaki that were of the Sindhu breed. Owning a standard decked with gold, and adorned with golden mail, Kritavarman, shaking his formidable bow whose staff was decked with gold, thus checked Yuyudhāna with shafts equipt with golden wings. Then the grandson of Cini, desirous of seeing Dhananjaya, sped with great activity eight arrows at Kritavarman. That scorcher of foes then, deeply pierced by that mighty foe,[31-36]—that invincible warrior,—began to tremble like a hill during an earthquake. After this, Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled, speedily pierced Kritavarman's four steeds with three and sixty keen arrows, and his driver also with seven. Indeed, Sātyaki, then aiming another arrow of golden wings,[37-38] that emitted blazing flames and resembled an angry snake or the rod of the Destroyer himself, pierced Kritavarman therewith.[39] That terrible arrow, penetrating

through his antagonist's effulgent armour decked with gold, entered the Earth, dyed with blood.[40] Afflicted with the shafts of Sātwata, and bathed in blood in that battle, Kritavarman throwing aside his bow with arrow, fell upon his car.*[41] That lion-toothed hero of immeasurable prowess, that bull among men, afflicted by Sātyaki with his arrows, fell on his knees upon the terrace of his car.[42] Having thus resisted Kritavarman who resembled the thousand-armed Arjuna of old or Ocean himself of immeasurable might, Sātyaki proceeded onwards.[43] Passing through Kritavarman's division bristling with swords and darts and bows, and abounding with elephants and steeds and cars, and the ground under whose feet was rendered awful in consequence of the blood shed by foremost of Kshatriyas numbering by hundreds, that bull among the Cinis proceeded onwards, in the very sight of all the troops, like the slayer of Vritra through the *Asura* array.[44-45] Meanwhile the mighty son of Hridikā, taking up another huge bow, stayed where he was, resisting the Pāndavas in battle.' "[46]

SECTION CXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'While the (Kuru) host was made to tremble by the grandson of Cini in those places (through which he proceeded), the son of Bharadwāja covered him with a dense shower of arrows.[1] The encounter that then took place between Drona and Sātwata in the very sight of all the troops was extremely fierce like that between Vali and Vāsava (in days of old).[2] Then Drona pierced the grandson of Cini on the forehead with three beautiful arrows made entirely of iron and resembling snakes of virulent poison.[3] Thus pierced on the forehead with those straight shafts, Yuyudhāna, O king, looked beautiful like a mountain with three summits.[4] The son of Bharadwāja, always on the alert for an opportunity, then sped in that battle many other arrows at Sātyaki whose whiz resembled the roar of Indra's thunder.[5] Then he of Daçārha's race, acquainted

---

* *Uttamāt*, though it occurs in all the texts, is an error. *Uttame* seems to me to be the correct reading.—T.

with the highest weapons, cut off all those arrows shot from Drona's bow, with two beautifully winged arrows of his.[6] Beholding that lightness of hand (in Sātyaki), Drona, O king, smiling the while, suddenly pierced that bull among the Cinis with thirty arrows.[7] Surpassing by his own lightness the lightness of Yuyudhāna, Drona once more pierced the latter with fifty arrows and then with a hundred.[8] Indeed, those mangling arrows, O king, issued from Drona's car like vigorous snakes in wrath issuing through an ant-hill.[9] Similarly, blood-drinking arrows shot by Yuyudhāna in hundreds and thousands covered the car of Drona.[10] We did not mark any difference, however, between the lightness of hand displayed by that foremost of regenerate ones and that displayed by him of the Sātwata race. Indeed, in this respect both those bulls among men were equal.[11] Then Sātyaki, inflamed with wrath, struck Drona with nine straight arrows. And he struck Drona's standard also with many sharp shafts.[12] And in the sight of Bharadwāja, he pierced the latter's driver also with a hundred arrows. Beholding the lightness of hand displayed by Yuyudhāna, the mighty car-warrior Drona[13] piercing Yuyudhāna's driver with seventy shafts, and each of his (four) steeds with three, cut off with a single arrow the standard that stood on Mādhava's car.[14] With another broad-headed arrow equipt with feathers and with wings of gold, he cut off in that battle the bow of that illustrious hero of Madhu's race.[15] Thereupon the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, excited with wrath, laid aside that bow, and taking up a huge mace, hurled it at the son of Bharadwāja.[16] Drona, however, with many arrows of diverse forms, resisted that mace made of iron and twined round with strings, as it coursed impetuously towards him.[17] Then Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled, took up another bow and pierced the heroic son of Bharadwāja with many arrows whetted on stone.[18] Piercing Drona therewith in that battle, Yuyudhāna uttered a leonine shout. Drona, however, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, was unable to brook that roar.[19] Taking up a dart made of iron and equipt with a golden staff, Drona sped it quickly at the car of Mādhava.[20] That dart, however, fatal as Death, without touching the grandson of Cini, pierced through the latter's car and entered the

Earth with a fierce noise.[21] The grandson of Cini then, O king, pierced Drona with many winged arrows. Indeed, striking him on the right arm, Sātyaki. O bull of Bharata's race, afflicted him greatly![22] Drona also, in that battle, O king, cut off the huge bow of Mādhava with a crescent-shaped arrow and smote the latter's driver with a dart.[23] Struck with that dart, Yuyudhāna's driver swooned away and for a while lay motionless on the terrace of the car.[24] Then, O monarch, Sātyaki, acting as his own driver, achieved a superhuman feat, inasmuch as he continued to fight with Drona and hold the reins himself.[25] Then the mighty car-warrior Yuyudhāna struck that Brāhmana with a hundred arrows in that battle, and rejoiced exceedingly, O monarch, at the feat he achieved.[26] Then Drona, O Bhārata, sped at Sātyaki five arrows. Those fierce arrows, piercing Sātyaki's armour, drank his blood in that battle.[27] Thus pierced with those frightful arrows, Sātyaki became inflamed with wrath. In return that hero shot many shafts at him of the golden car.[28] Then felling on the Earth with a single shaft the driver of Drona, he caused next, with his arrows, those driverless steeds of his antagonist to fly away.[29] Thereupon that car was dragged to a distance. Indeed, the bright chariot of Drona, O king, began to trace a thousand circles in the field of battle like a Sun in motion.[30] Then all the kings and princes (of the Kaurava host) made a loud uproar, exclaiming, —Run, Rush, Seize the steeds of Drona![31]—Quickly abandoning Sātyaki in that battle, O monarch, all those mighty car-warriors rushed to the place where Drona was.[32] Beholding those car-warriors run away afflicted with the arrows of Sātyaki, thy troops once more broke and became exceedingly cheerless.[33] Meanwhile Drona, once more proceeding to the gate of the array, took up his station there, borne away (from Sātyaki's presence) by those steeds, fleet as the wind, that had been afflicted with the shafts of the Vrishni hero.[34] The valiant son of Bharadwāja, beholding the array broken (in his absence) by the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas, made no endeavour to follow the grandson of Cini, but employed himself in protecting his (broken) array.[35] Checking the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas then, the Drona fire, blazing up in wrath, stayed there,

consuming everything, like the Sun that rises at the end of the *Yuga*.' "[36]

SECTION CXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having vanquished Drona and other warriors of thy army headed by the son of Hridikā, that foremost of men, *viz.*, that bull amongst the Cinis, O foremost one of the Kurus, laughing, said unto his charioteer,[1]—Our foes, O *Suta*, had already been consumed by Keçava and Phālguna! In vanquishing them (again), we have only been the (ostensible) means! Already slain by that bull among men, *viz.*, the son of the celestial chief, we have but slain the slain![2]—Saying these words unto his charioteer, that bull amongst the Cinis, that foremost of bowmen, that slayer of hostile heroes, that mighty warrior, scattering with great force his arrows all around in that dreadful battle, proceeded like a hawk in search of prey.[3] The Kuru warriors, although they attacked him from all sides, succeeded not in resisting that foremost of car-warriors resembling the Sun himself of a thousand rays, that foremost of men, who, having pierced the Kaurava ranks, was proceeding, borne by those excellent steeds of his that were white as the moon or a conch.[4] Indeed, O Bhārata, none amongst those that fought on thy side could resist Yuyudhāna of irresistible prowess, of might incapable of impairment, of valour equal to that of him of a thousand eyes, and looking like the autumnal Sun in the firmament.[5] Then that foremost of kings, *viz.*, Sudarçana, conversant with all modes of warfare, clad in golden coat of mail, armed with bow and arrows, and filled with rage, advanced against the rushing Sātyaki and endeavoured to check his course.[6] The encounter that took place between them was fierce in the extreme. And both thy warriors and the Somakas, O king, highly applauded the encounter between Vritra and Vāsava.[7] Sudarçana endeavoured to pierce that foremost one of the Sātwata's in that battle, with hundreds of keen shafts. That bull among the Cinis, however, O king, cut off all those shafts before they could reach him.[8] Similarly, Sudarçana, stationed on his foremost of

cars, cut off, by means of his own excellent shafts, in two or three fragments, all the shafts that Sātyaki resembling Indra himself sped at him.[9] Beholding his shafts baffled by the force of Sātyaki's shafts, Sudarçana of fierce energy, as if to consume (his foe), wrathfully shot some beautiful arrows winged with gold.[10] And once more he pierced his enemy with three beautiful arrows resembling fire itself and equipt with wings of gold, shot from his bow-string drawn to the ear. These, piercing through Sātyaki's armour, penetrated into the latter's body.[11] Similarly, that prince (*viz.*, Sudarçana), aiming four other blazing arrows, smote therewith the four steeds of Sātyaki that were white as silver in hue.[12] Thus afflicted by him, the grandson of Cini, endued with great activity and possessed of prowess equal to that of Indra himself, speedily slew with his keen shafts the steeds of Sudarçana and uttered a loud roar.[13] Then cutting off with a broad-headed arrow endued with the force of Cakra's thunder, the head of Sudarçana's driver, that foremost one amongst the Cinis, with a razor-faced arrow resembling the *Yuga* fire, cut off from Sudarçana's trunk his head graced with ear-rings, resembling the moon at full, and decked with an exceedingly radiant face, like the wielder of the thunder, O king, in days old, forcibly cutting off the head of the mighty Vala in battle![14-15] That high-souled bull among the Yadus then, endued with great activity, having thus slain that grandson of a prince, became filled with delight and shone resplendent, O monarch, like the chief of the celestials himself.[16] Yuyudhāna then, that hero among men, proceeded along the track by which Arjuna had passed before him, checking (as he went) by means of clouds of shafts all thy troops, and riding on that same car of his, O king, unto which were yoked those excellent steeds, and filling everybody with amazement.[17] All the foremost of warriors there, assembled together, applauded that foremost of amazing feats achieved by him, for he consumed all foes that came within reach of his arrows like a conflagration consuming everything in its way.' "[18]

SECTION CXIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then that bull of Vrishni's race, *viz.*, the high-souled Sātyaki of great intelligence, having slain Sudarçana, once more addressed his driver, saying,[1]—Having forded through the almost unfordable ocean of Drona's division teeming with cars and steeds and elephants, whose waves are constituted by arrows and darts, fishes by swords and scimitars, and alligators by maces, which roars with the whiz of shafts and the clash of diverse weapons,—an ocean that is fierce and destructive of life and resounds with the noise of diverse musical instruments, whose touch is unpleasant and unbearable to warriors desirous of victory, and whose margent is infested by fierce cannibals represented by the force of Jalasandha,—I think the portion of the array that remains may easily be forded like a miserable stream of shallow water. Urge thou the steeds, therefore, without fear![2-5] I think I am very near to Savyasāchin! Having vanquished in battle the invincible Drona with his followers,[6] and that foremost of warriors, *viz.*, the son of Hridikā, I think I cannot be distant from Dhananjaya. Fear never comes to my heart even if I behold countless foes before me![7] These to me are like a heap of straw and grass to a blazing conflagration in the woods. Behold, the track by which the diadem-decked (Arjuna), that foremost one among the Pāndavas, hath gone,[8] is rendered uneven with large bodies of foot soldiers and steeds and car-warriors and elephants lying slain on the ground! Behold. routed by that high-souled warrior, the Kaurava army is flying away![9] Behold, O charioteer, a dark brown dust is raised by those retreating cars and elephants and steeds![10] I think I am very near to Arjuna of white steeds having Krishna for his charioteer! Hark, the well-known twang of *Gāndiva* of immeasurable energy is being heard![11] From the character of the omens that appear to my view, I am sure that Arjuna will slay the ruler of the Sindhus before the Sun sets.[12] Without causing their strength to be spent, urge the steeds slowly to where those hostile ranks are staying, that is,

to where yonder warriors headed by Duryodhana, their hands cased in leathern fences,[13] and yonder Kāmvojas of fierce deeds, clad in mail and difficult of defeat in battle, and those Yavanas armed with bow and arrows and skilled in smiting,[14] and yonder Cakas and Kirātas and Daradas and Barbaras and Tāmraliptakas, and other countless *Mlecchas* armed with diverse weapons, are,[15]—to the spot (I repeat) where, indeed, yonder warriors headed by Duryodhana, their hands cased in leathern fences,—are waiting with their faces turned towards me and inspired with the resolution of battling with me![16] Regard me to have already passed through this fierce fastness, O *Suta*, having slain in battle all these combatants with cars and elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers that are amongst them![17]—

" 'The charioteer, thus addressed, said,—O thou of Vrishni's race, fear I have none, O thou of prowes that cannot be baffled! If thou hast before thee Jamadagni's son himself in wrath,[18] or Drona, that foremost of car-warriors, or Kripa, or the ruler of the Madras himself, even then fear doth not enter my heart, O thou of mighty arms, as long as I am under the shadow of thy protection![19] O slayer of foes, countless Kāmvojas, clad in mail, of fierce deeds, and difficult of defeat in battle, have already been vanquished by thee,[20] as also many Yavanas armed with bow and arrows and accomplished in smiting, including Cakas and Kirātas and Daradas and Barbaras and Tāmraliptakas,[21] and many other *Mlecchas* armed with various weapons. Never before did I experience fear in any battle![22] Why shall I, therefore, O thou of great courage, experience any fear in this miserable fray?* O thou that art blessed with length of days, by which way shall I take thee to where Dhananjaya is?[23] With whom hast thou been angry, O thou of Vrishni's race? Who are they for whom Death waits? Who are they that desire to repair today to the abode of Yama?[24] Who are they that will fly away from battle, beholding thee endued with such prowess, resembling the Destroyer himself as he appears at the end of the *Yuga*, and putting forth that prowess of thine

* Literally rendered, the expression is, "in this battle that is like the vestige of a cow's hoof!"—T.

(against thy foes)? O thou of mighty arms, who are they of whom king Vaivaśwāt is thinking today?[25]—

"'Sātyaki said,—Like Vāsava destroying the *Dānavas*, I shall slay these warriors with shaved heads. By slaying these Kāmvojas I will fulfil my vow! Bear me thither![26] Causing a great carnage amongst these, I shall today repair to the dear son of Pāndu! The Kauravas with Suyodhana at their head will today behold my prowess,[27] when this division of *Mlecchas*, of shaved heads, will have been exterminated and the whole Kaurava army put to the greatest distress! Hearing the loud wails of the Kaurava host today while mangled and broken by me in battle, Suyodhana will be inspired with grief! Today I shall show unto my preceptor, the high-souled Pāndava of white steeds, the skill in weapons acquired by me from him! Beholding today thousands of foremost warriors slain with my arrows, king Duryodhana will be plunged into great grief! The Kauravas will today behold the bow in my hands to resemble a circle of fire when, light-handed as I am, I will stretch the bowstring for shooting my host of shafts. Beholding the incessant slaughter of his troops today, their bodies covered with blood and pierced all over with my shafts, Suyodhana will be filled with grief! While I shall slay in wrath the foremost of Kuru warriors,[28-33] Suyodhana will today behold the world to contain two Arjunas! Beholding thousands of kings slain by me in battle, king Duryodhana will be filled with grief in today's great battle! Slaying thousands of kings today I will show my love and devotion to those high-souled ones, *viz.*, the royal sons of Pāndu! The Kauravas will know today the measure of my might and energy, and my gratefulness (to the Pāndavas)!'[34-36]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed, the charioteer urged to their utmost speed those well-trained coursers of delightful pace and the hue of the moon.[37] Those excellent animals, endued with the speed of the wind or thought, proceeded, devouring the very skies, and bore Yuyudhāna to the spot where those Yavanas were.[38] Thereupon the Yavanas, many in number and endued with lightness of hands, approaching the unretreating Sātyaki, covered him with showers of arrows.[39] The rushing Sātyaki, however, O king, cut off, by means of his

own straight arrows, all those shafts and weapons of the Yavanas. None of those shafts and weapons, therefore, could reach him.[40] Inflamed with wrath, Yuyudhāna then, with his straight shafts of great sharpness winged with gold and vulturine feathers, cut off the heads and arms of those Yavanas.[41] Many of those arrows, again, piercing through their coats of mail made of iron and brass, entered the Earth.[42] Struck by the brave Sātyaki in that battle, the *Mlecchas* began to fall down on the Earth in hundreds, deprived of life,[43] With his arrows shot in continuous lines from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch, that hero began to slay five, six, seven, or eight Yavanas at a time.[44] Thousands of Kāmvojas, and Cakas, and Barbaras, were similarly slain by Sātyaki.[45] Indeed, the grandson of Cini, causing a great carnage among thy troops, made the Earth impassable and miry with flesh and blood.[46] The field of battle was strewn with the head-gears of those robbers and their shaved heads too that looked, in consequence of their long beards, like featherless birds.[47] Indeed, the field of battle covered with headless trunks dyed all over with blood, looked beautiful like the welkin covered with coppery clouds.[48] Slain by Sātwata by means of his straight shafts whose touch resembled that of Indra's thunder, the Yavanas covered the surface of the Earth.[49] The small remnant of those mail-clad troops, vanquished in battle, O king, by Sātwata, becoming cheerless, their lives on the point of being taken, broke[50] and urging their steeds with goads and whips to their utmost speed, fled from fear in all directions.[51] Routing the invincible Kāmvoja host in battle, O Bhārata, as also that host of the Yavanas and that large force of the Cakas,[52] that tiger among men who had penetrated into thy army, *viz.*, Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled, crowned with victory, urged his charioteer, saying, —Proceed![53]—Beholding that feat of his in battle, never before achieved by any one else, the *Chāranas* and the *Gandharvas* applauded him highly.[54] Indeed, O king, the *Chāranas*, as also thy warriors, beholding Yuyudhāna thus proceed for aiding Arjuna, became filled with delight (at his heroism).' "[55]

———

SECTION CXX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having vanquished the Yavanas and the Kāmvojas, that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Yuyudhāna, proceeded towards Arjuna, right through the midst of thy troops.[1] Like a hunter slaying deer, that tiger among men, (*viz.*, Sātyaki), endued with beautiful teeth, clad in excellent armour, and owning a beautiful standard, slew the Kaurava troops and inspired them with fear.[2] Proceeding on his car, he shook his bow with great force, that bow the back of whose staff was decked with gold, whose toughness was great, and which was adorned with many golden moons.[3] His arms decked with golden *Angadas*, his head-gear adorned with gold, his body clad in golden mail, his standard and bow also embellished with gold, that hero shone like the summit of Meru.[4] Himself shedding such effulgence, and bearing that circular bow in his hand, he looked like a second Sun in autumn.[5] That bull among men, possessing the shoulders and tread and eyes of a bull, looked in the midst of thy troops, like a bull in a cowpen.[6] Thy warriors approached him from desire of slaughter like tigers approaching the leader, with rent temples, of an elephantine herd standing proudly in the midst of his herd, resembling as he did, and possessed as he was of the tread of an infuriate elephant. Indeed, after he had passed through Drona's division, and the unfordable division of the Bhojas,[7-8] after he had forded through the sea of Jalasandha's troops as also the host of the Kāmvojas, after he had escaped the alligator constituted by Hridikā's son, after he had traversed those ocean-like hosts,[9] many car-warriors of thy army, excited with wrath, surrounded Sātyaki. And Duryodhana and Chitrasena and Dusçāsana and Vivingçati,[10] and Cakuni and Dussaha, and the youthful Durdharshana, and Kratha, and many other brave warriors well conversant with weapons and difficult of defeat,[11] wrathfully followed Sātyaki from behind as he proceeded onwards. Then, O sire, loud was the uproar that arose among thy troops,[12] resembling that of the

Ocean itself at full tide when lashed into fury by the tempest. Beholding all those warriors rushing at him, that bull among the Cinis[13] smilingly addressed his charioteer, saying,—Proceed slowly. This Dhārtarāshtra force, swelling (with rage and pride),[14] and teeming with elephants and steeds and cars and foot-soldiers, that is rushing with speed towards me, filling the ten points of the compass with the deep roar of its cars, O charioteer,[15] and causing the Earth, the welkin, and the very seas, to tremble therewith,—this sea of troops, O driver, I will resist in great battle,[16] like the continent resisting the ocean swelling to its utmost height at full moon! Behold, O charioteer, my prowess which is equal to that of Indra himself in great battle![17] I will consume this hostile force by means of my whetted arrows! Behold those foot-soldiers and horsemen and car-warriors and elephants slain by me[18] in thousands, their bodies pierced with my fiery arrows!—While saying these words (unto his charioteer), those combatants, from desire of battle, speedily came before Sātyaki of immeasurable prowess. They made a loud noise, saying, as they came,—Slay, Rush, Wait, See, See![19-20]—Of those brave warriors that said these words, Sātyaki, by means of his sharp arrows, slew three hundred horsemen and four hundred elephants.[21] The passage at arms between those united bowmen (on the one side) and Sātyaki (on the other) was exceedingly fierce, resembling that between the gods and the *Asuras* (in days of old). An awful carnage set in.[22] The grandson of Cini received with his shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison that force, O sire, of thy son which looked like a mass of clouds.[23] Shrouding every side, in that battle, with his arrowy downpours, that valiant hero, O monarch, fearlessly slew a large number of thy troops.[24] Exceedingly wonderful, O king, was the sight that I witnessed there, *viz.*, that not one arrow even, O lord, of Sātyaki failed of effect![25] That sea of troops, abounding with cars and elephants and steeds, and full of waves constituted by foot-soldiers, stood still as soon as it came in contact with the Sātyaki continent.[26] That host consisting of panic-struck combatants and elephants and steeds, slaughtered on all sides by Sātyaki with his shafts, repeatedly turned round,[27] and wandered hither and thither like

a herd of kine afflicted with the chilling blasts of winter. We saw not the foot-soldier or car-warrior or elephant or horseman or steed that was not struck with Yuyudhāna's arrows. Not even Phālguna, O king, had caused such a carnage there[28-29] as Sātyaki, O monarch, then caused among those troops! That bull among men, *viz.*, the dauntless grandson of Cini, endued with great lightness of hand and displaying the utmost skill, fighteth, surpassing Arjuna himself. Then king Duryodhana pierced the charioteer of Sātwata with three keen shafts and his four steeds with four shafts. And he pierced Sātyaki himself with three arrows and once again with eight.[30-32] And Dusçāsana pierced that bull among the Cinis with sixteen arrows. And Cakuni pierced him with five and twenty arrows, and Chitrasena with five.[33] And Dussaha pierced Sātyaki in the chest with five and ten arrows. That tiger amongst the Vrishnis then, thus struck with their arrows, proudly[34] pierced every one of them, O monarch, with three arrows. Deeply piercing all his foes with shafts endued with great energy,[35] the grandson of Cini, possessed of great activity and prowess, careered on the field with the activity of a hawk. Cutting off the bow of Suvala's son as also the leathern fence that cased his hand,[36] Yuyudhāna pierced Duryodhana in the centre of the chest with three shafts. And he pierced Chitrasena with a hundred arrows, and Dussaha with ten.[37] And that bull of Cini's race then pierced Dusçāsana with twenty arrows. Thy brother-in-law (Cakuni) then, O king, taking up another bow,[38] pierced Sātyaki with eight arrows and once more with five. And Dusçāsana pierced him with ten arrows, and Dussaha pierced him with three.[39] And Durmuka, O king, pierced Sātyaki with a dozen shafts. And Duryodhana, O Bhārata, having pierced Mādhava with three and seventy arrows,[40] then pierced his charioteer with three keen shafts. Then Sātyaki pierced each of those brave and mighty car-warriors vigorously contending in battle together, with five shafts in return. Then that foremost of car-warriors, (*viz.*, Yuyudhāna), speedily struck thy son's charioteer with a broad-headed shaft, whereupon the latter, deprived of life, fell down on the Earth. Upon the fall of the charioteer, O lord, thy son's car[41-43] was taken

away from the battle by the steeds yoked thereto, with the speed of the wind. Then thy sons, O king, and the other warriors, O monarch,[44] setting their eyes on the king's car, fled away in hundreds. Beholding that host fly away, O Bhārata, Sātyaki[45] covered it with showers of keen shafts whetted on stone and equipt with wings of gold. Routing all thy combatants counting by thousands,[46] Sātyaki, O king, proceeded towards the car of Arjuna. Indeed, thy troops worshipped Yuyudhāna, beholding him shooting arrows and protecting his charioteer and himself as he fought in that battle.' "[47]

SECTION CXXI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Beholding the grandson of Cini proceeding towards Arjuna, grinding as he went that large force, what, indeed, O Sanjaya, did those shameless sons of mine do?[1] When Yuyudhāna who is equal to Savyasāchin himself was before them, how, indeed, could those wretches, that were on the point of death, set their hearts upon battle?[2] What also did all those Kshatriyas, vanquished in battle, then do? How, indeed, could Sātyaki of world-wide renown pass through them in battle?[3] How also, O Sanjaya, when my sons were alive, could the grandson of Cini go to battle? Tell me all this![4] This is exceedingly wonderful, O sire, that I have heard from thee, *viz.*, this encounter between one and the many, the latter, again, being all mighty car-warriors![5] O *Suta*, I think Destiny is now unpropitious to my sons, since so many mighty car-warriors have been slain by that one warrior of the Sātwata race![6] Alas, O Sanjaya, my army is no match for even one warrior, *viz.*, Yuyudhāna, inflamed with wrath! Let all the Pāndavas hang up these weapons![*7] Vanquishing in battle Drona himself who is skilled in weapons and conversant with all modes of warfare, Sātyaki will slay my sons like a lion slaying smaller animals![8] Numerous heroes, of whom Kritavarman is the first, contending vigorously in battle, could not slay Yuyudhāna! The latter, without doubt, will

---

* Literally, "Let all the Pāndavas remain inactive!"—T.

slay my sons!'[9] Phālguna himself fought not in the manner in which the renowned grandson of Cini has fought!'[10]

'Sanjaya said,—'All this, O king, has been brought about by thy evil counsels and the acts of Duryodhana! Listen attentivey to what, O Bhārata, I say unto thee![11] At the command of thy son, the *Samsaptakas*, rallying, all resolved upon fighting fiercely.[12] Three thousand bowmen headed by Duryodhana, with a number of Cakas and Kāmvojas and Vāhlikas and Yavanas and Pāradas,[13] and Kalingas and Tanganas and Amvashthas and Piçāchas and Barbaras and mountainers, O monarch, inflamed with rage and armed with stones,[14] all rushed against the grandson of Cini like insects against a blazing fire. Five hundred other warriors, O king, similarly rushed against Sātyaki.*[15] And another mighty body consisting of a thousand cars, a hundred great car-warriors, a thousand elephants, two thousand horse, and countless foot-soldiers, also rushed against the grandson of Cini.†[16-17] Dusçāsana, O Bhārata, urging all those warriors, saying,—Slay him,—surrounded Sātyaki therewith.[18] Grand and wonderful was the conduct that we then beheld of Cini's grandson, inasmuch as alone he fought fearlessly with those innumerable foes.[19] And he slew that entire body of cars and that elephant force, and all those horsemen and that entire body of robbers.[20] Like the autumnal firmament bespangled with stars, the field of battle there became strewn with car-wheels broken and crushed by means of his mighty weapons, with innumerable *Akshas* and beautiful car-shafts reduced to fragments, with crushed elephants and fallen standards, with coats of mail and shields scattered all about, with garlands and ornaments and robes and *Anukarshas*, O sire![21-23] Many foremost of elephants, huge as hills, and born the race of Anjana or Vāmana, O Bhārata, or of Supratika or Mahāpadmaka or Airāvata, or in other races, many foremost of tuskers, O king, lay there on the ground,

---

* The Bombay text has a different reading.—T.

† The Bengal reading *Parantapa* is vicious. The Bombay text reads *Pattayas*.—T.

deprived of life! And Sātyaki slew, O monarch, many foremost of steeds of the Vanāyu, the mountain, the Kāmvoja and the Vālhika breeds. And the grandson of Cini also slew foot-soldiers there, in hundreds and thousands, born in various realms and belonging to various nations. Whilst those soldiers were being thus slaughtered, Dusçāsana, addressing the robbers said,[24-28]—Ye warriors unacquainted with morality, fight! Why do you retreat?—Beholding them run away without paying any heed to his words, thy son Dusçāsana [29] urged on the brave mountaineers skilled in fighting with stones, saying,—Ye are accomplished in battling with stones! Sātyaki is ignorant of this mode of warfare![30] Slay ye, therefore, that warrior who though desirous of battle is ignorant of your mode of fight! The Kauravas also are all unacquainted with this mode of battle.[31] Rush ye at Sātyaki! Do not fear! Sātyaki will not be able to approach you!—Thus urged, those Kshatriyas dwelling on the mountains, all acquainted with the method of fighting with stones,[32] rushed towards the grandson of Cini like ministers towards a king. Those denizens of the mountains then, with stones huge as elephants' heads,[33] uplifted in their hands, stood before Yuyudhāna in that battle. Others, urged by thy son, and desirous of slaying Sātwata, encompassed the latter on all sides, armed with missiles. Then Sātyaki, aiming at those warriors rushing at him from desire of fighting with stones, sped at them showers of keen shafts. That bull amongst the Cinis, with those shafts looking like snakes, cut into fragments that dense shower of stones thrown by the mountaineers. The fragments of those stones, looking like a swarm of blazing fire-flies,[34-37] slew many combatants there, whereupon, O sire, cries of *oh* and *alas* arose on the field. Then, again, five hundred brave warriors, with huge stones uplifted in their hands,[38] fell down, O king, on the ground, their arms cut off. And once more a full thousand, and again a hundred thousand, amongst others,[39] fell down without being able to approach Sātyaki, their arms with stones still in grasp cut off by him. Indeed, Sātyaki slew many thousands of those warriors fighting with stones. All this seemed exceedingly wonderful. Then many of them, returning to the fight, hurled at Sātyaki showers of stones.[40-41]

And armed with swords and lances many Daradas and Tanganas and Khaças and Lampakas and Pulindas, hurled their weapons at him. Sātyaki, however well conversant with the application of weapons, cut off those stones and weapons by means of his shafts. Those stones while being pierced, broken in the welkin by Sātyaki's whetted shafts,[42-43] produced a fierce noise, at which many car-warriors and steeds and elephants fled away from battle. And struck with the fragments of those stones, men and elephants and steeds,[44] became incapable of staying in battle, for they felt as if they were bit by wasps. The small remnant of the elephants (that had attacked Sātyaki), covered with blood, their heads and frontal globes split open, then fled away from Yuyudhāna's car. Then there arose among thy troops, O sire, while they were being thus grinded by Mādhava, a noise like that of the ocean at full tide. Hearing that great uproar, Drona, addressing his charioteer, said,[45-47]—O *Suta*, that great car-warrior of the Sātwata race, excited with wrath, is tearing our army into diverse fragments, and careering in battle like the Destroyer himself![48] Take thou the car to that spot whence this furious uproar is being heard! Without doubt, Yuyudhāna is engaged with the mountaineers who battle with stones![49] Our car-warriors are seen also to be borne away by their wildly running steeds! Many amongst them, weaponless and armourless and wounded, are falling down![50] The charioteers are unable to check their steeds as these are rushing wildly!—Hearing these words of Bharadwāja's son, the charioteer[51] said unto Drona, that foremost of all wielders of weapons,—O thou blest with length of days, the Kaurava troops are flying away![52] Behold, our warriors, routed (by the foe), are flying in all directions! There again, those heroes, *viz.*, the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas, united together,[53] are rushing from all sides from desire of slaughtering thee! O chastiser of foes, do thou determine which of these tasks should first demand attention![54] Should we stay here (to meet the advancing Pāndavas, or should we proceed (towards Sātyaki)? As regards Sātyaki, he is now far ahead of us!—While the charioteer, O sire, was speaking thus unto Bharadwāja's son,[55] the grandson of Cini suddenly appeared to the view,

engaged in slaughtering a large number of car-warriors. Those troops of thine, while being thus slaughtered by Yuyudhāna in battle,[56] fled away from Yuyudhāna's car towards where Drona's division was. Those (other) car-warriors also with whom Dusçāsana had proceeded, all struck with panic, similarly rushed to the spot where Drona's car was seen.'"[57]

SECTION CXXII.

"Sanjaya said,—Beholding Dusçāsana's car staying near his, the son of Bharadwāja, addressing Dusçāsana, said these words,[1]—Why, O Dusçāsana, are all these cars flying away! Is the king well? Doth the ruler of the Sindhus yet live?[2] Thou art a prince! Thou art a brother of the king! Thou art a mighty car-warrior! Why dost thou fly away from battle! (Securing the throne to thy brother) become thou the Prince-Regent![3] Thou hadst formerly said unto Draupadi,—[Thou art our slave, having been won by us at dice! Without being confined to thy husbands, cast aside thy chastity! Be thou a bearer of robes to the king my eldest brother![4] Thy husbands are all dead! They are as worthless as grains of sesamum without kernel!]—Having said these words then, why, O Dusçāsana, dost thou fly from battle now?[5] Having thyself provoked such fierce hostilities with the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas, why art thou afeard in battle in the presence of Sātyaki alone?[6] Taking up the dice on the occasion of the gambling match, couldst thou not divine that those dice then handled by thee would soon transform themselves into fierce shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison?[7] It was thou that hadst formerly applied diverse abusive epithets towards the Pāndavas! The woes of Draupadi have thee for their root![8] Where now is that pride, that insolence, that brag of thine? Why dost thou fly, having angered the Pāndavas that resemble snakes of virulent poison?[9] When thou, that art a brave brother of Suyodhana, are intent on flight, without doubt, both king Suyodhana and this Bharata army are to be pitied![10] Without doubt, O hero, thou shouldst today protect, relying on the energy of thy own arms, this routed and panic-struck Kaurava host![11]

Without doing this, thou, however, forsakest the battle in fear and enhancest the joy of thy foes! O slayer of foes, when thou that art the leader of thy host fliest away thus,[12] who else will stay in battle? When thou, its refuge, art frightened, who is there that will not be frightened,? Fighting with that single warrior of the Sātwata race,[13] thy heart is inclined towards flight from battle! What, however, O Kaurava, wilt thou do when thou wilt see the wielder of *Gāndiva* in battle, or Bhimasena, or the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva)? The shafts of Sātyaki, frightened by which thou seekest safety in flight, are scarcely equal to those of Phālguna in battle that resemble the Sun or the fire in splendour? If thy heart is firmly bent on flight,[14-16] let the sovereignty of the Earth then, upon the conclusion of peace, be given to king Yudhishthira the just! Before the shafts of Phālguna, resembling snakes freed from their sloughs,[17] enter thy body, make peace with the Pāndavas! Before the high-souled Pārthas, slaying thy hundred brothers in battle, wrest the Earth by force, make peace with the Pāndavas! Before king Yudihishthira is enraged,[18-19] and Krishna also, that delighter in battle, make peace with the Pāndavas! Before the mighty-armed Bhima, penetrating into this vast host,[20] seizes thy brothers, make peace with the Pāndavas! Bhishma formerly told thy brother Suyodhana,[21]—[The Pāndavas are unconquerable in battle! O amiable one, make peace with them!]—Thy wicked brother Suyodhana, however, did not do it.[22] Therefore, setting thy heart firmly on battle, fight vigorously with the Pāndavas! Go quickly on thy car to the spot where Sātyaki is.[23] Without thee, O Bhārata, this host will fly away! For the sake of thy own self, fight in battle with Sātyaki of prowess incapable of being baffled![24]—Thus addressed (by Drona), thy son said not a word in reply. Feigning not to have heard the words (of Bharadwāja's son), Dusçāsana proceeded to the place where Sātyaki was.[25] Accompanied by a large force of unretrating *Mlecchas*, and coming upon Sātyaki in battle, Dusçāsana fought vigorously with that hero.[26] Drona also, that foremost of car-warriors, excited with wrath, rushed against the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas, with middling speed.[27] Penetrating into

the midst of the Pāndava host in that battle, Drona began to crush their warriors by hundreds and thousands.[28] And Drona, O king, proclaiming his name in that battle, caused a great carnage among the Pāndavas, the Pānchālas, and the Matsyas.[29] Then the illustrious Viraketu, the son of the ruler of the Pānchālas, rushed against the son of Bharadwāja who was thus engaged in vanquishing the Pāndava ranks.[30] Piercing Drona with five straight shafts, that prince then pierced Drona's standard with one shaft, and then his charioteer with seven.[31] The sight that I then beheld, O monarch, in that battle, was exceedingly wonderful, inasmuch as Drona, though exerting himself vigorously, could not approach the prince of the Pānchālas.[32] Then, O sire, the Pānchālas, beholding Drona checked in battle, surrounded the latter on all sides, O king, from desire of king Yudhishthira's victory.[33] And those warriors then covered Drona alone with showers of fiery shafts and strong lances and various other kinds of weapons, O king![34] Baffling then that dense shower of weapons by means of his own numerous shafts like the wind driving away from the welkin masses of clouds, Drona looked exceedingly resplendent.[35] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, (*viz.*, the son of Bharadwāja), aimed a fierce shaft endued with the effulgence of the Sun or the fire, at the car of Viraketu.[36] That shaft, O monarch, piercing through the prince of Pānchāla, quickly entered the Earth, bathed in blood and blazing like a flame of fire.[37] Then the prince of the Pānchālas quickly fell down from his car like a *Champaka* tree uprooted by the wind falling down from a mountain summit.[38] Upon the fall of that great bowman, that prince endued with great might, the Pānchālas speedily encompassed Drona on every side.[39] Then Chitraketu, and Sudhanwan, and Chitravarman, O Bhārata, and Chitraratha also, all afflicted with grief on account of their (slain) brother,[40] together rushed against the son of Bharadwāja, desirous of battling with him, and shooting shafts (at him) like the clouds (pouring rain) at the end of summer.[41] Struck from all sides by those mighty car-warriors of royal lineage, that bull among Brāhmanas mustered all his energy and wrath for their destruction.[42] Then Drona shot showers of shafts at them. Struck with those shafts of

Drona shot from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch,[43] those princes, O best of monarchs, became confounded and knew not what to do. The angry Drona, O Bhārata, beholding those princes stupified, smilingly deprived them of their steeds and charioteers and cars in that battle. Then the illustrious son of Bharadwāja, by means of his sharp arrows and broad-headed shafts,[44-45] cut off their heads like a person plucking flowers from a tree. Deprived of life, those princes there, O king of great splendour, fell down from their cars, on the Earth,[46] like the (slain) *Daiteyas* and *Dānavas* in the battle between the gods and the *Asuras* in days of old. Having slain them in battle, O king, the valiant son of Bharadwāja[47] shook his invincible bow the back of whose staff was decked with gold. Beholding those mighty car-warriors, resembling the very celestials, among the Pānchālas slain,[48] Dhishtadyumna, inflamed with rage, shed tears in that battle. Excited with wrath, he rushed, in that encounter, against Drona's car.[49] Then, O king, cries of woe suddenly arose there at sight of Drona covered with arrows by the prince of Pānchāla.[50] Completely shrouded by the high-souled son of Prishata, Drona, however, suffered no pain. On the other hand, he continued to fight, smiling the while.[51] The prince of the Pānchālas then, furious with rage, struck Drona in the chest with many straight shafts.[52] Deeply pierced by that mighty warrior, the illustrious son of Bharadwāja sat down on the terrace of his car and went into a swoon.[53] Beholding him in that condition, Dhrishtadyumna endued with great prowess and energy, laid aside his bow and quickly took up a sword.[54] That mighty car-warrior then, speedily jumping down from his own car, mounted that of Bhāradwāja, O sire, in no time,[55] his eyes red in wrath and impelled by the desire of cutting Drona's head from off his trunk. Meanwhile, the valiant Drona, regaining his senses,[56] took up his bow and seeing Dhrishtadyumna arrived so near him from desire of slaughter, began to pierce that mighty car-warrior with shafts measuring a span only in length and, therefore, fit to be used in close fight. Those arrows of the measure of a span and fit to be used in close fight,[57-58] were known to Drona, O king! And with them he succeeded in weakening Dhrishtadyumna. The mighty

Dhrishtadyumna, struck with a large number of those arrows,[59] quickly jumped down from Drona's car. Then that hero of great prowess, his impetuosity baffled, mounted upon his own car and once more took up his large bow.[60] And the mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna once more began to pierce Drona in that battle. And Drona also, O monarch, began to pierce the son of Prishata with his arrows.[61] Thereupon the battle that took place between Drona and the prince of the Pānchālas was wonderful in the extreme, like that between Indra and Prahlāda both desirous of the sovereignty of the three worlds.[62] Both conversant with the ways of battle, they careered over the field, displaying diverse motions of their cars and mangling each other with their shafts.[63] And Drona and Prishata's son, stupifying the minds of the warriors, shot showers of shafts like two mighty clouds (pouring torrents of rain) in the rainy season.[64] And those illustrious warriors shrouded with their shafts the welkin, the points of the compass, and the Earth. And all creatures, *viz.*, the Kshatriyas, O king, and all the other combatants there, highly applauded that battle between them. And the Pānchālas, O king, loudly exclaimed,—Without doubt, Drona, having encountered Dhishtadyumna in battle, will succumb to us!—Then Drona, in that battle, quickly cut off the head of Dhristadyumna's charioteer like a person plucking a ripe fruit from a tree. Then the steeds, O king, of the high-souled Dhrishtadyumna ran away.[65-68] And after those steeds had carried away Dhrishtadyumna from the field, Drona, endued with great prowes, began to rout the Pānchālas and the Srinjayas in that battle.[69] Having vanquished the Pāndus and the Pānchālas, Bharadwāja's son of great prowess, that chastiser of foes, once more took up his station in the midst of his own array. And the Pāndavas, O lord, ventured not to vanquish him in battle.' "[70]

SECTION CXXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—Meanwhile, O king, Dusçāsana rushed against the grandson of Cini, scattering thousands of shafts like a mighty cloud pouring torrents of rain.[1] Having pierced

Sātyaki with sixty arrows and once more with sixteen, he failed to make that hero tremble, for the latter stood in battle immovable as the Maināka mountain.[2] Accompanied by a large throng of cars hailing from diverse realms, that foremost one of Bharata's race shot numberless arrows,[3] and filled all the points of the compass with roars deep as those of the clouds. Beholding the Kaurava coming to battle, Sātyaki[4] of mighty arms rushed towards him and shrouded him with his shafts. They that were at the van of Dusçāsana, thus covered with those arrowy showers,[5] all fled away in fear, in the very sight of thy son. After they had fled away, O monarch, thy son Dusçāsana,[6] O king, remained fearlessly in battle and began to afflict Sātyaki with arrows. And piercing the four steeds of Sātyaki with four arrows, his charioteer with three, and Sātyaki himself with a hundred in that battle, Dusçāsana uttered a loud roar. Then, O monarch, Mādhava, inflamed with rage, soon made Dusçāsana's car and driver and standard and Dusçāsana himself invisible by means of his straight arrows. Indeed, Sātyaki entirely shrouded the brave Dusçāsana with arrows.[7-9] Like a spider entangling a gnat within reach by means of its threads, that vanquisher of foes quickly covered Dusçāsana with his shafts.[10] Then king Duryodhana, seeing Dusçāsana thus covered with arrows, urged a body of Trigartas towards the car of Yuyudhāna.[11] Those Trigarta car-warriors, of fierce deeds, accomplished in battle, and numbering three thousand, proceeded towards Yuyudhāna.[12] Firmly resolved upon battle and swearing not to retreat, all of them encompassed Yuyudhāna with a large throng of cars.[13] Soon, however, Yuyudhāna struck down five hundred of their foremost warriors stationed in the van of that force as it advanced towards him in battle, shooting showers of arrows at him.[14] Speedily slain by that foremost one amongst the Cinis with his shafts, these fell down like tall trees from mountain-tops, uprooted by a tempest.[15] And the field of battle, strewn with mangled elephants, O monarch, and fallen standards, and the prostrate bodies of steeds decked in trappings of gold and torn and lascerated with the shafts of Cini's grandson and weltering in blood, looked beautiful, O king, like a plain over-

grown with flowering *Kinçukas*.[16-17] Those soldiers of thine, thus slaughtered by Yuyudhāna, failed to find a protecter like elephants sunk in a morass.[18] Then all of them turned towards the spot where Drona's car was, like mighty snakes making towards holes from fear of the prince of birds.[19] Having slain those five hundred brave warriors by means of his shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison, that hero slowly proceeded towards the place where Dhananjaya's car was.[20] And as that foremost of men was thus proceeding, thy son Dusçāsana quickly pierced him with nine straight arrows.[21] That mighty bowman then, (*viz.*, Yuyudhāna), pierced Dusçāsana in return, with five straight and sharp arrows equipt with golden wings and vulturine feathers.[22] Then Dusçāsana, O Bhārata, smiling the while, pierced Sātyaki, O monarch, with three arrrows and once more with five.[23] The grandson of Cini then, striking thy son with five arrows and cutting off his bow, proceeded smilingly towards Arjuna.[24] Then Dusçāsana, inflamed with wrath, and desirous of slaying the Vrishni hero, hurled at him, as he proceeded, a dart made wholly of iron.[25] Sātyaki, however, O king, cut off, with his shafts equipt with *Kanka* feathers, that fierce dart of thy son.[26] Then, O ruler of men, thy son, taking up another bow, pierced Sātyaki with some arrows and uttered a loud roar.[27] Then Sātyaki, excited with wrath, stupifying thy son in that battle, struck him in the centre of the chest with some shafts that resembled flames of fire.[28] And once more he pierced Dusçāsana with eight shafts made wholly of iron and having very keen points. Dusçāsana, however, pierced Sātyaki in return with twenty arrows.[29] Then the highly blessed Sātyaki, O monarch pierced Dusçāsana in the centre of the chest with three straight arrows.[30] And the mighty car-warrior Yuyudhāna, with some keen shafts, slew the steeds of Dusçāsana; and inflamed with wrath he slew, with some srtaight arrows, the latter's charioteer also.[31] With one broad-headed arrow he then cut off thy son's bow, and with five arrows he cut the leathern fence that encased his hand. Acquainted as he was with the highest weapons, Sātyaki, then, with a couple of broad-headed shafts, cut off Dusçāsana's standard and the

wooden shaft on his car. And then with a number of keen arrows he slew both the *Pārshni* charioteers of thy son. The latter then, bowless and carless and steedless and driverless,[32-33] was taken up by the leader of the Trigarta warriors on his car. The grandson of Cini then, O Bhārata, pursuing him for a moment,[34] restrained himself and slew him not, for the mighty-armed hero recollected the words of Bhimasena. Indeed, Bhimasena, O Bhārata, vowed in the midst of the assembly the destruction of all thy sons in battle! Then, O lord, Sātyaki, having thus vanquished Dusçāsana, quickly proceeded, O king, along the track by which Dhananjaya had gone before him.' "[35-36]

SECTION CXXIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Were there, O Sanjaya, no mighty car-warriors in that army of mine who could slay or resist that Sātyaki while he proceeded (towards Arjuna)?[1] Of prowess incapable of being baffled, and endued with might equal to that of Cakra himself, alone he achieved feats in battle like the great Indra amidst the *Dānavas*![2] Or, perhaps, the track by which Sātyaki proceeded was empty! Alas, possessed of true prowess, alone he hath crushed numberless warriors![3] Tell me, O Sanjaya, how the grandson of Cini, alone as he was, passed through that vast force struggling with him in battle?'[4]*

"Sanjaya said,—O king, the fierce exertions and the uproar made by thy host which abounded with cars and elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers, resembled what is seen at the end of the *Yuga*.[5] O giver of honors, when thy assembled host was (daily) mustered, it seemed to me that another assemblage like that of thy army had never been on Earth.[6] The gods and the *Chāranas*, who came there said,—This muster will be the last of its kind on Earth![†7]—Indeed, O king,

---

* The Bombay text adds certain *slokas* after the 2nd, which do not occur in any of the Bengal texts.—T.

† Both 6 and 7 are difficult *slokas*. The Bengal texts read *āhnikeshu*; the Bombay reading is *āhuteshu*. If the Bengal reading be accepted, the meaning would be—"Day by day, upon muster, &c." The

never had such an array been formed before as that which was formed by Drona on the day of Jayadratha's slaughter.[8] The uproar made by those vast bodies of soldiers rushing at one another in battle resembled that of the ocean itself lashed into fury by the tempest.[9] In that host of thine, as also in that of the Pāndavas, there were hundreds and thousands of kings, O best of men.[10] The noise made by those angry heroes of fierce deeds while engaged in battle, was tremendous and made the hair to stand on end.[11] Then Bhimasena and Dhrishtadyumna, O sire, and Nakula and Sahadeva and king Yudhishthira the just, loudly shouted[12]—Come, Strike, Rush! The brave Mādhava and Arjuna have entered the hostile army! Do that quickly by which they may easily go to where Jayadratha's car is! —Saying this, they urged their soldiers. And they continued,—If Sātyaki and Arjuna be slain, the Kurus will have achieved their objects, and ourselves will be defeated! All of you, therefore, uniting together, quickly agitate this ocean-like army (of the foe) like impetuous winds agitating the deep!—The warriors, O king, thus urged by Bhimasena and the prince of the Pānchālas,[13-16] smote the Kauravas, becoming reckless of their very lives. Endued with great energy, all of them, desiring death in battle at the point or the edge of weapons in expectation of heaven, showed not the least regard for their lives in fighting for their friends. Similarly thy warriors, O king, desirous of great renown,[17-18] and nobly resolved upon battle, stood on the field, determined to fight. In that fierce and terrible battle,[19] Sātyaki, having vanquished all the combatants, proceeded towards Arjuna. The rays of the Sun being reflected from the bright armour of the warriors, the combatants were obliged to withdraw their eyes from these. Duryodhana also, O king, penetrated the mighty host of the high-souled

---

second line of 7 which I render "This muster will be the last of its kind on Earth," may be interpretated in another away. Taking it as an exclamation, it may be rendered.—"Will an assemblage of such limits take place on Earth!" *i. e.*, "How vast is this assemblage on Earth!" Of course, if the version last given be correct, *Etadantās* would mean "Having *this* for its limit."—T.

Pāndavas vigorously struggling in battle. The encounter that took place between him on the one side and them on the other was exceedingly fierce, and great was the carnage that occurred there on the occasion.'[20-22]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When the Pāndava host was thus proceeding to battle, Duryodhana, in penetrating it, must have been placed in great distress. I hope he did not turn his back upon the field, O *Suta!*[23] That encounter between one and the many in dreadful battle, the one again being a king, seems to me to have been very unequal![24] Besides, Duryodhana hath been brought up in great luxury. In wealth and possessions, he is a king of men. Alone encountering many, I hope he did not turn back from the fight!'[25]

"Sanjaya said,—'Listen to me, O king, as I narrate, O Bhārata, that wonderful battle fought by thy son, that encounter between one and the many![26] Indeed, the Pāndava army was agitated by Duryodhana in that battle like an assemblage of lotus stalks in a lake by an elephant.[27] Seeing then that army thus smitten by thy son, O king, the Pānchālas headed by Bhimasena rushed at him.[28] Then Duryodhana pierced Bhimasena with ten arrows, and each of the twins with three and king Yudhishthira with seven.[29] And he pierced Virāta and Drupada with six arrows, and Cikhandin with a hundred. And piercing Dhrishtadyumna with twenty arrows, he struck each of the five sons of Draupadi with three arrows.[30] With his fierce shafts he cut off hundreds of other combatants in that battle, including elephants and car-warriors, like the Destroyer himself in wrath exterminating creatures.[31] In consequence of his skill acquired by practice and of the power of his weapons, he seemed, as he was engaged in striking down his foes, to bear his bow incessantly drawn to a circle whether when aiming or letting off his shafts.[32] Indeed, that formidable bow of his, the back of whose staff was decked with gold, was seen by people to be drawn into a perpetual circle as he was employed in slaying his enemies.[33] Then king Yudhishthira, with a couple of broad-headed shafts, cut off the bow of thy son, O thou of Kuru's race, as the latter struggled in fight.[34] And Yudhishthira also pierced him deeply with ten excellent and foremost

of shafts. Those arrows, however, touching the armour of Duryodhana, quickly broke into pieces.[35] Then the Pārthas, filled with delight, surrounded Yudhishthira like the celestials and great *Rishis* in days of old surounding Cakra on the occasion of the slaughter of Vritra.[36] Thy valiant son then, taking up another bow, addressed king Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu, saying,—*Wait, Wait,*—and rushed against him.[37] Beholding thy son thus advancing in great battle, the Pānchālas, cheerfully and with hopes of victory, advanced to receive him.[38] Then Drona, desirous of rescuing the (Kuru) king, received the rushing Pānchālas, like a mountain receiving masses of rain-charged clouds driven by the tempest.[39] The battle then, O king, that took place there was exceedingly fierce, making the hair to stand on end, between the Pāndavas, O thou of mighty arms, and thy warriors.[40] Dreadful was the carnage of all creatures that then took place, resembling the sport of Rudra himself (at the end of the *Yuga).* Then there arose a loud uproar at the place where Dhananjaya was.[41] And that uproar, O lord, making the hair to stand on end, rose above all other sounds. Thus, O mighty-armed one, progressed the battle between Arjuna and thy bowmen.[42] Thus progressed the battle between Sātyaki and thy men in the midst of thy army. And thus continued the fight between Drona and his enemies at the gate of the array.[43] Thus, indeed, O lord of Earth, continued that carnage on the Earth when Arjuna and Drona and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki were all excited with wrath.' "[44]

SECTION CXXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'On the afternoon of that day, O king, a dreadful battle, characterised by roars deep as those of the clouds, once more happened between Drona and the Somakas.[1] That foremost of men (*viz.*. Drona), mounted on his car of red steeds, and intent on battle, rushed against the Pāndavas, with middling speed.[2] The valiant son of Bharadwāja, that great bowman endued with mighty strength, that hero born in an excellent pot, engaged in doing what was agreeable to thee, O king, and striking down, O Bhārata, many foremost of warriors

with his whetted arrows equipt with beautiful wings, seemed to sport in that battle.[3-4] Then that mighty car-warrior of the Kaikayas, *viz.*, Vrihatkshatra, irresistible in battle, and the eldest of five brothers, rushed against him.[5] Shooting many keen shafts, he greatly afflicted the preceptor, like a mighty mass of clouds pouring torrents of rain on the mountains of Gandhamādana.[6] Then Drona, O king, excited with wrath, sped at him five and ten shafts whetted on stone and equipt with wings of gold.[7] The prince of the Kekayas, however, cheerfully cut off every one of those shafts shot by Drona and which resembled angry snakes of virulent poison, with five shafts of his own.[8] Beholding that lightness of hand displayed by him, that bull among Brāhmanas then sped at him eight straight shafts.[9] Seeing those shafts shot from Drona's bow swiftly coursing towards him, Vrihatkshatra in that battle resisted them with as many sharp shafts of his.[10] Beholding that exceedingly difficult feat achieved by Vrihatkshatra, by troops, O king, were filled with amazement.[11] Then Drona, O monarch, applauding Vrihatkshatra, invoked into existence the irresistible and celestial weapon called *Brahma* in that battle.[12] The prince of the Kekayas, seeing it shot by Drona in battle, baffled that *Brahma* weapon, O monarch, by a *Brahma* weapon of his own.[13] After that weapon had been thus baffled, Vrihatkshatra, O Bhārata, pierced the Brāhmana with sixty shafts whetted on stone and equipt with wings of gold.[14] Then Drona, that foremost of men, pierced the prince of the Kekayas with a powerful shaft which, penetrating through the latter's armour, (passed through his body and) entered the Earth.[15] As a black cobra, O best of kings, pierces through an ant-hill, even so did that shaft enter the Earth, having pierced through the body of the Kekaya prince in that battle.[16] Deeply pierced, O monarch, with the shafts of Drona, the prince of the Kekayas, filled with rage and rolling his beautiful eyes,[17] pierced Drona with seventy arrows whetted on stone and equipt with wings of gold. And with another arrow he greatly afflicted Drona's charioteer in his very vitals.[18] Pierced by Vrihatkshatra, O sire, with arrows, Drona shot showers of keen shafts at the car of the prince of the Kekayas.[19] Depriving the mighty car-warrior Vrihat-

kshatra of his coolness, Drona then, with four winged arrows, slew the four steeds of the former.[20] With another arrow he felled Vrihatkshatra's charioteer from his niche in the car. And felling on the Earth, with two other arrows, his enemy's standard and umbrella,[21] that bull among Brāhmanas, with a third shaft, well shot from his bow, pierced Vrihatkshatra himself in the chest. Thereupon the latter, thus struck in the chest, fell down from his car.[22]

"Upon the slaughter, O king, of Vrihatkshatra, that mighty car-warrior among the Kaikayas, the son of Ciçupāla, filled with rage, addressed his charioteer, saying,[23]—O charioteer, proceed to the spot where Drona stayeth, clad in armour, and engaged in slaying the Kaikaya and the Pānchāla hosts![24]—Hearing these words of his, the charioteer soon took that foremost of car-warriors unto Drona, by means of those fleet steeds of the Kāmvoja breed.[25] Then Dhrishtaketu, that bull among the Chedis, swelling with might, rushed towards Drona for his own destruction like an insect upon a blazing fire.[26] Soon he pierced Drona and his steeds and car and standard with sixty shafts. And once more he struck him with many other keen shafts like a man rousing a sleeping tiger.[27] Then Drona, with a sharp razor-faced arrow winged with vulturine feathers, cut off in the middle the bow of that mighty warrior struggling in battle.[28] Then that powerful car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Ciçupāla, taking up another bow, pierced Drona with many shafts winged with the feathers of *Kankas* and peacocks.[29] Drona then, slaying with four shafts the four steeds of Dhrishtaketu, smilingly cut off the head of the latter's charioteer from his trunk.[30] And then he pierced Dhrishtaketu himself with five and twenty arrows. The prince of the Chedis then, quickly jumping down from his car, took up a mace,[31] and hurled it at the son of Bharadwāja like an angry snake. Beholding that heavy mace, endued with the strength of adamant and decked with gold, coursing towards him like the death night, the son of Bharadwāja cut it off with many thousands of whetted arrows.[32-33] That mace, cut off by Bharadwāja's son, O sire, with many shafts, fell down, O Kaurava, making the Earth echo with its noise.[34] Beholding his mace baffled, the wrathful and

brave Dhrishtaketu hurled a lance and then a dart decked with gold.[35] Cutting off that lance with five shafts, Drona cut off that dart also with five arrows. Both those missiles, thus cut off, fell down on the Earth like a couple of snakes mangled and torn by Garuda.[36] The valiant son of Bharadwāja then, in that battle, sped for his destruction a keen shaft at Dhrishtaketu who was battling for the destruction of Bhāradwāja himself.[37] That shaft, piercing through the armour and breast of Dhrishtaketu of immeasurable energy, entered the Earth like a swan diving into a lake overgrown with lotuses.[38] As a hungry jay seizes and devours a little insect, even so did the heroic Drona devour Dhrishtaketu in that great battle.[39] Upon the slaughter of the ruler of the Chedis, his son who was conversant with the highest weapons, excited with wrath, sought to bear the burthen of his sire.[40] Him also, Drona, smiling the while, despatched to the abode of Yama by means of his shafts, like a huge and mighty tiger in the deep woods slaying an infant deer.[41]

"'While the Pāndavas, O Bhārata, were thus being thinned, the heroic son of Jarāsandha rushed towards Drona.[42] Like the clouds shrouding the Sun, he quickly made the mighty-armed Drona invisible in that battle by means of his arrowy showers.[43] Beholding that lightness of hand in him, Drona, that grinder of Kshatriyas, quickly shot his shafts by hundreds and thousands.[44] Covering (with his arrows) in that battle that foremost of car-warriors stationed on his car, Drona speedily slew the son of Jarāsandha in the very sight of all the bowmen.[45] Indeed, Drona, resembling the Destroyer himself, swallowed up every one who approached him then, like the Destroyer swallowing up creatures when their hour arrives.[46] Then Drona, O monarch, proclaiming his name in that battle, covered the Pāndavas with many thousands of shafts.[47] Those shafts shot by Drona, whetted on stone and engraved with his name, slew in that battle men and elephants and steeds by hundreds.[48] Thus slaughtered by Drona like the *Asuras* by Cakra, the Pānchālas began to tremble like a herd of kine afflicted with cold.[49] Indeed, O bull of Bharata's race, when the Pāndava army was thus being slaughtered by Drona, there arose an

awful wail of woe from it.[50] Scorched by the Sun and slaughtered by means of those arrows, the Pānchālas then became filled with anxiety.[51] Stupified by Bharadwāja's son with his arrowy showers in that battle, the mighty car-warriors among the Pānchālas felt like persons whose thighs had been seized by alligators.[52] Then, O king, the Chedis, the Srinjayas, the Kāçis, and the Koçalas, rushed cheerfully against the son of Bharadwāja from desire of battle.[53] And the Chedis, the Pānchālas, and the Srinjayas addressed one another, saying,—*Drona is slain!—Drona is slain!*—Saying these words they rushed at that hero.[54] Indeed, all those tigers among men fell with their utmost might upon the illustrious Drona, desirous of despatching him to the abode of Yama.[55] Then the son of Bharadwāja, by means of his shafts, despatched those brave warriors struggling vigorously in battle, especially those foremost ones among the Chedis, into the presence of the king of the dead.[56] After those foremost ones among the Chedis had been exterminated, the Pānchālas, afflicted with the shafts of Drona, began to tremble.[57] Beholding, O sire, those feats of Drona, they loudly called after Bhimasena and Dhrishtadyumna, O Bhārata, and said,[58]—This Brāhmana hath, without doubt, practised the austerest of penances and acquired great ascetic merit! Inflamed with wrath in battle, he consumeth the foremost of Kshatriyas![59] A Kshatriya's duty is battle; a Brāhmana's, the highest asceticism. A Brāhmana endued with ascetic merit and learning, is capable of burning everything with his glances only![60] Many foremost of Kshatriyas, having approached the uncrossable and fierce fire of Drona's weapons, have, O Bhārata, been blasted and consumed![61] The illustrious Drona, to the measure of his might, courage, and perseverance, stupifies all creatures and slays our troops![62]—Hearing these words of theirs, the mighty Kshatradharman, rigidly observant of the duties of a Kshatriya, wrathfully cut off with a crescent-shaped arrow the bow of Drona with arrow fixed thereon. Then Drona, that grinder of Kshatriyas, becoming more angry still,[63-64] took up another bright bow tougher than the one he laid aside. Fixing on it a keen arrow destructive of hostile ranks,[65] the preceptor, endued with great

strength, sped it at the prince, drawing the bowstring to his ear. That arrow, slaying Kshatradharman, entered the Earth.[66] His breast pierced through, he fell down from his vehicle on the Earth. Upon the slaughter of Dhrishtadyumna's son, the (Pāndava) troops began to tremble.[67] Then the mighty Chekitāna fell upon Drona. Piercing Drona with ten arrows, he once more pierced him with a shaft in the centre of his chest.[68] And he pierced Drona's charioteer with four arrows and his four steeds also with four. The preceptor then pierced the right arm of Chekitāna with sixteen arrows,[69] and his standard with sixteen, and his charioteer with seven. Upon the charioteer being slain, Chekitāna's steeds fled away, dragging the car after them.[70] Beholding the steeds of Chekitāna pierced with the arrows of Bharadwāja's son, and his car also deprived of driver,*[71] the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas were inspired with great fear. Drona then, O sire, routing on all sides the Pānchālas and the Srinjayas united together in battle, looked exceedingly resplendent. The venerable Drona, full five and eighty years of age, dark in hue and with white locks descending to his ears, careered in battle like a youth of sixteen. Indeed, O king, enemies regarded the foe-slaying Drona as he fearlessly careered in battle to be none else than Indra himself armed with the thunder. Then, O monarch, the mighty-armed Drupada of great intelligence said,[72-75]—This one (Drona) is slaying the Kshatriyas like a hungry tiger slaying smaller animals! The sinful Duryodhana of wicked soul will assuredly obtain the most miserable regions (in the next world)![76] It is through his covetousness that many foremost of Kshatriyas, slain in battle, lay prostrate on the field, like mangled bulls,[77] weltering in blood and becoming the food of dogs and jackals!—Saying these words, O monarch, Drupada, that master of an *Akshauhini* of troops, placing the Pārthas at his head, rushed with speed towards Drona.' "[78]

---

* The texts requires correction.—T.

SECTION CXXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the army of the Pāndavas was thus agitated on all sides, the Pārthas and the Pānchālas and the Somakas, retreated to a great distance![1] During the progress of that fierce battle making the hair to stand on end, and of that universal carnage like to what happens, O Bhārata, at the end of the *Yuga*,[2] when, indeed, Drona of great prowess was repeatedly uttering leonine shouts, and when the Pānchālas were being weakened and the Pāndavas slaughtered,[3] king Yudhishthira the just, failing to see any refuge in that distress, began, O king, to think how the matter would end![4] Casting his eyes around in expectation of seeing Savyasāchin, Yudhishthira, however, saw neither that son of Prithā nor Mādhava.[5] Not seeing that tiger among men, *viz.*, the ape-bannered Arjuna, and not hearing also the twang of *Gāndiva*, the monarch became filled with anxiety.[6] Not seeing Sātyaki also, that foremost of car-warriors among the Vrishnis, king Yudhishthira the just became equally anxious.[7] Indeed, not seeing those two foremost of men, Yudhishthira knew no peace. The high-souled king Yudhishthira the just, of mighty-arms, fearing the evil opinion of the world, began to think of Sātyaki's car.—Cini's grandson Sātyaki of true prowess, that dispeller of the fears of friends, hath been sent by me in the track of Phālguna! I had only one source of anxiety before. But now I have two. I should have tidings of both Sātyaki and Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu! Having despatched Sātyaki to follow in the track of Arjuna,[8-11] whom shall I now send in the track of Sātyaki? If by every means I endeavour to obtain intelligence of my brother only[12] without enquiring after Yuyudhāna, the world will reproach me! They will say that, —[Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, having enquired after his brother,[13] leaves Sātyaki of Vrishni's race, that hero of unfailing prowess, to his fate!]—Fearing as I do the reproach of the world, I should, therefore, send Vrikodara the son of Prithā in the track of the high-souled Mādhava. The love I bear to the

Vrishni hero, to that invincible warrior of the Sātwata race, (*viz.*, Sātyaki), is not less than the love I bear to Arjuna, that slayer of foes! The delighter of the Cinis hath, again, been set by me to a very heavy task![14-16] That mighty warrior, however, hath, either for the sake of a friend's request or for that of honor, penetrated into the Bharata army like a *Makara* into the ocean.[17] Loud is the noise I hear of unretreating heroes fighting together against that Vrishni hero of great intelligence![18] Without doubt, they are too many for him! The time, therefore, is come when I should think of his rescue! It seems to me that armed with the bow, Bhimasena the son of Pāndu should go there where those two mighty car-warriors are! There is nothing on Earth that Bhima cannot bear![19-20] If he struggles with resolution, he is a match in battle for all the bowmen in the world. Depending on the might of his own arms he can stand against all foes.[21] Relying on the strength of arms of that high-souled warrior, we have been able to come back from our exile in the woods and we have never been vanquished in battle.[22] If Bhimasena the son of Pāndu proceedeth hence to Sātyaki, both Sātyaki and Phālguna will derive real aid![23] Without doubt, I should not feel any anxiety for Sātyaki and Phālguna. Both of them are accomplished in weapons, and Vāsudeva himself is protecting them![24] (For all that, I feel anxious on their account). I should certainly seek to remove my anxiety! I shall, therefore, set Bhima to follow in the wake of Sātyaki![25] Having done this, I should regard my arrangements complete for the rescue of Sātyaki!—Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, having settled this in his mind,[26] addressed his charioteer and said,—Take me to Bhima!—Hearing the command of king Yudhishthira the just, the charioteer who was versed in horse-lore,[27] took that car decked with gold to where Bhima was. Arrived at the presence of Bhima, the king, remembering the occasion,[28] became unmanned by grief, and pressed Bhima with diverse solicitations. Indeed, overwhelmed with grief, the monarch addressed Bhima.[29] And these were the words, O king, that Yudhishthira the son of Kunti then said unto him:—O Bhima, I do not behold the standard of that Arjuna, who on a single car had vanquished of all the

gods, the *Gandharvas*, and *Asuras!*—Then Bhimasena, addressing king Yudhishthira the just who was in that plight, said,[30-31]—Never before did I see or hear thee afflicted with such cheerlessness! Indeed, formerly, when we were pierced with grief, it was thou who hadst been our comforter![32] Rise, Rise, O king of kings, say what I am to do for thee! O giver of honors, there is nothing that I cannot do![33] Tell me what your commands are, O foremost one of Kuru's race! Do not set your heart on grief!—Unto Bhimasena then, the king with a sorrowful face and eyes bathed in tears said, sighing the while like a black cobra,[34]—The blasts of the conch *Pānchajanya*, wrathfully blown by Vāsudeva of world-wide renown, are being heard! It seems, from this, that thy brother Dhananjaya lieth today on the field, deprived of life![35-36] Without doubt, Arjuna having been slain, Janārddana is battling! That hero of great might, relying on whose prowess the Pāndavas are alive,[37] he to whom we always turn in times of fear like the celestials towards their chief of a thousand eyes, that hero hath, in search after the ruler of the Sindhus, penetrated into the Bharata host![38] I know this, O Bhima, *viz.*, that he hath gone, but he hath not yet returned! Dark in complexion, youthful in years, of curly locks, exceedingly handsome, a mighty car-warrior,[39] of broad chest and long arms, possessed of the tread of an infuriate elephant, of eyes of the color of burnished copper and like those of a *chakra*, that brother of thine enhances the fears of foes![40] Blessed be thou, even this is the cause of my grief, O chastiser of foes! For Arjuna's sake, O thou of mighty arms, as also for the sake of Sātwata,[41] my grief increaseth like a blazing fire fed with libations of clarified butter! I do not see his standard! For this am I stupified with sorrow![42] Without doubt, he hath been slain, and Krishna, skilled in battle, is fighting! Know also that that tiger among men, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Sātwata, is slain![43] Alas, Sātyaki hath followed in the wake of that other mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, thy brother! Without seeing Sātyaki also, I am stupified with grief![44] Therefore, O son of Kunti, go thither where Dhananjaya is and Sātyaki also of mighty energy, if, of course, thou thinkest it thy duty[45] to obey my words, O thou that art acquainted

with duty! Remember that I am thy eldest brother! Thou shouldst think Sātyaki to be dearer to thee than Arjuna himself![46] O son of Prithā, Sātyaki hath gone, from desire of doing good to me, in the track of Arjuna, a track that is incapable of being trod by persons of vile souls![47] Beholding the two Krishnas and Sātyaki also of the Sātwata race sound and whole, send me a message, O son of Pāndu, by uttering a leonine roar!—' "[48]

SECTION CXXVII.

"Bhima said,—That car which formerly bore Brahman and Içāna and Indra and Varuna (to battle), mounting upon that car, have the two Krishnas gone! They can have no fear of danger![1] Taking, however, thy command on my head, lo, I am going! Do not grieve! Meeting with those tigers among men, I shall send thee intelligence![2]—'

"Sanjaya said,—'Having said these words, the mighty Bhima began to prepare for setting out, repeatedly making over Yudhishthira to Dhrishtadyumna and the other friends (of the Pāndava cause).[3] Indeed, Bhimasena of mighty strength addressing Dhrishtadyumna, said,—It is known to thee, O thou of mighty arms, how the mighty car-warrior Drona[4] is always on the alert to seize king Yudhishthira the just by all means in his power! Indeed, O son of Prishata, I should never place my going (to Arjuna and Sātyaki) above my duty of protecting the king! King Yudhishthira, however, hath commanded me to go. I dare not contradict him![*5-6] I shall go thither where the ruler of the Sindhus stayeth at the point of death. I should, in complete trustfullness, act according to the words of king Yudhishthira the just![7] I shall, therefore, follow in the wake of my brother (Arjuna) and of Sātyaki endued with great intelligence. Thou shouldst, therefore, vigorously resolved on fight, protect Yudhishthira the son of Prithā today![8] Of all tasks, this is thy highest duty in battle!—Thus addressed by Vrikodara, O monarch, Dhrishtadyumna replied,[9]—I shall do

---

* The last line of 4 and the first line of 5 I render freely.—T.

what thou wishest! Go, O son of Prithā, without any anxiety of the kind! Without slaying Dhrishtadyumna in battle, Drona[10] will never be able to humiliate king Yudhishthira in the fight!—Thus making the royal son of Pāndu over to Dhrishtadyumna,[11] and saluting his eldest brother. Bhimasena proceeded towards the spot where Phālguna was. Before dismissing him, however, king Yudhishthira the just, O Bhārata, embraced Bhimasena[12] and smelt his head and pronounced auspicious blessings upon him. After circumambulating a number of Brāhmanas previously gratified with worship and presents,[13] and touching the eight kinds of auspicious articles, and quaffing *Kairātaka* honey, that hero, the corners of whose eyes had become red in intoxication, felt his might to be doubled.[14] The Brāhmanas performed propitiatory ceremonies for him. Various omens, indicative of success, greeted him. Beholding them, he felt the delight of anticipated victory.[15] Favorable winds began to blow and indicate his success. Then the mighty-armed Bhimasena, that foremost of car-warriors, clad in mail, decked with ear-rings and *Angadas*, and his hands cased in leathern fences, mounted on his own excellent car. His costly coat of mail, made of black steel and decked with gold,[16-17] looked like a cloud charged with lightning. His body was beautifully covered with yellow and red and black and white robes.[18] Wearing a colored curass that protected also his neck, Bhimasena looked resplendent like a cloud decked with a rainbow.

"'While Bhimasena was on the point of setting out against thy troops from desire of battle,[19] the fierce blasts of *Pānchajanya* were once more heard. Hearing those loud and terrible blasts capable of filling the three worlds with fear,[20] the son of Dharma once more addressed Bhimasena, saying.—There, the Vrishni hero is fiercely blowing his conch![21] Indeed, that prince of conchs is filling the Earth and the welkin with its sound! Without doubt, Savyasāchin having fallen into great distress,[22] the bearer of the discus and the mace is battling with all the Kurus! Without doubt, the venerable Kunti, and Draupadi, and Subhadrā, are all, with their relatives and friends, beholding today exceedingly inauspicious omens! Therefore, O Bhima, go thither with speed where Dhananjaya is![23-24]

All the points of the compass, O Pārtha, seem empty to my eyes in consequence of my (unsatisfied) desire to see Dhananjaya and owing also to Sātwata![25]—Repeatedly urged by his superior to go, the valiant son of Pāndu, *viz.*, Bhimasena, O king,[26] casing his hands in leathern fence, took up his bow. Urged by his eldest brother, that brother (*viz.*, Bhimasena,) who was devoted to his brother's good,[27] caused drums to be beat. And Bhima forcibly blew his conch also and uttering leonine roars, began to twang his bow.[28] Damping the hearts of hostile heroes by those leonine roars, and assuming a dreadful form, he rushed against his foes.[29] Swift and well-broken steeds of the foremost breed, neighing furiously, bore him. Endued with the speed of the wind or thought, their reins were held by Viçoka.[30] Then the son of Prithā, drawing the bowstring with great force, began to crush the head of the hostile array, mangling and piercing and grinding the combatants there.*[31] And as that mighty-armed hero proceeded, the brave Pānchālas and the Somakas followed him behind, like the celestials following Maghavat.[32] Then the brothers Dusçala and Chitrasena and Kundabhedin and Vivingçati, and Durmukha and Dussaha and Cala, and Vinda and Anuvinda and Sumukha and Dirghavāhu and Sudarçana, and Vrindāraka and Suhasta and Sushena and Dirghalochana, and Abhaya and Raudrakarman and Sivarman and Durvimochana, approaching, encompassed Bhimasena.[33-35] Those foremost of car-warriors, those heroes, all looking resplendent, with their troops and followers, firmly resolved upon battle, rushed against Bhimasena.[36] That heroic and mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Kunti's son Bhimasena of great prowess, thus encompassed, cast his eyes on them,[37] and rushed against them with the impetuosity of a lion against smaller animals. Those heroes, displaying celestial and mighty weapons,[38] covered Bhima with shafts like clouds shrouding the risen Sun. Transgressing all those warriors with impetuosity, Bhimasena rushed against Drona's division,[39] and covered the elephant force before him with showers of arrows. The son of

---

* *Arujan* is mangling, *Virujan* is piercing; and *Vikarshan* is crushing or grinding, as explained by Nilakantha.—T.

the Wind-god, manglingwith his shafts in almost no time that elephant division, dispersed it in all directions. Indeed, like animals terrified in the forest at the roar of a *Çarabha*,[40-41] those elephants all fled away, uttering frightful cries. Passing over that ground with great speed, he then approached the division of Drona.[42] Then the preceptor checked his course like the continent resisiting the surging sea. Smilingly he struck the son of Pāndu in his forehead with a shaft.[43] Thereupon the son of Pāndu looked resplendent like the Sun with upward rays. The preceptor thought that Bhima would reverence him as Phālguna had done before. Addressing Vrikodara, therefore, he said,—O Bhimasena, it is beyond thy power to enter into the hostile host,[44-45] without vanquishing me, thy foe, in battle, O thou of mighty strength! Although Krishna with thy younger brother hath penetrated this host with my permission, thyself, however, wilt never succeed in so doing!—Hearing these words of the preceptor, the dauntless Bhima,[46-47] excited with wrath, and his eyes red as blood or burnished copper, quickly replied unto Drona, saying,—O wretch of a Brāhmana, it cannot be that Arjuna hath entered this host with thy permission! He is invincible! He would penetrate into the host commanded by Çakra himself! If he offered thee reverential worship, it was only for honoring thee![48-49] But know, O Drona, that myself am no compassionate Arjuna. On the other hand, I am Bhimasena, thy foe! We regard thee as our father, preceptor, and friend! Ourselves we look upon as thy sons![50] Thinking so we always humble ourselves to thee! When, however, thou usest such words towards us today, it seems that all that is altered![51] If thou regardest thyself as our foe, let it be as thou thinkest! Being none else than Bhima, I will presently act towards thee as I should towards a foe![52]—Saying this, Bhima, whirling a mace like the Destroyer himself whirling his fatal rod, hurled it, O king, at Drona. Drona, however, had quickly jumped down from his car,[53] (and that proved his safety). For that mace pressed down into the Earth the car of Drona, with its steeds, driver, and standard. Then Bhima crushed numerous warriors like the tempest crushing trees with its force.[54] Then those sons of thine once more encom-

passed that foremost of car-warriors. Meanwhile Drona, that foremost of smiters, mounting another chariot,[55] proceeded to the gate of the array and stayed there for battle. Then, O king, the angry Bhima of great prowess,[56] covered the car-division in his front with showers of shafts. Then those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, thy sons, thus struck in battle,[57] endued as they were with great strength, fought with Bhima from desire of victory. Then Duççāsana, excited with wrath, hurled at Bhimasena a keen dart made entirely of iron, wishing to slay the son of Pāndu. Bhima, however, cut in twain that fierce dart hurled by thy son, as it coursed towards him. This feat seemed exceedingly wonderful. The mighty son of Pāndu then, with three other keen shafts, slew the three brothers Kundabhedin and Sushena and Dirghanetra. And again amongst those heroic sons of thine battling with him, Bhima slew the heroic Vrindāraka, that enhancer of the fame of the Kurus. And again, with three other shafts, Bhima slew three other sons of thine, *viz.*, Abhaya and Raudrakarman and Durvimochana. Thus slaughtered, O king, by that mighty warrior, thy sons[58-63] surrounded Bhima, that foremost of smiters, on all sides. They then showered their arrows upon that son of Pāndu, of terrible deeds,[64] like the clouds at the end of summer pouring torrents of rain on the mountain-breast. That slayer of hosts, *viz.*, the heir of Pāndu, received that arrowy shower like a mountain receiving a shower of stones. Indeed, the heroic Bhima felt no pain. Then the son of Kunti, smiling the while, despatched by means of his shafts thy sons Vinda and Anuvinda and Suvarman to the abode of Yama. Then the son of Pāndu, O bull of Bharata's race, quickly pierced in that battle thy heroic son Sudarçana. The latter thereupon fell down and expired. Within a very short time, the son of Pāndu, casting his glances on that car-force, caused it by his shafts to fly away in all directions. Then like a herd of deer frightened at the clatter of car-wheels or a loud shout,[65-69] thy sons, in that battle, O king, afflicted with the fear of Bhimasena, suddenly broke and fled.[70] The son of Kunti, however, pursued that large force of thy sons, and began, O king, to pierce the Kauravas from every side.[71] Thy soldiers, O monarch, thus

slaughtered by Bhimasena, fled away from battle, avoiding the son of Pāndu and urging their own excellent steeds to their greatest speed.[72] The mighty Bhimasena then, having vanquished them in battle, uttered leonine roars and made a great noise by slapping his armpits.[73] And the mighty Bhima, having made also a fierce noise with his palms and thereby frightened that car-force, and having slain the formost of warriors that were in it, passed towards the division of Drona, transgressing that car-force (which he had vanquished).' "[74]

SECTION CXXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the son of Pāndu had crossed that car-force, the preceptor Drona, smiling the while, covered him with showers of arrows, desirous of checking his course.[1] Stupifying thy force then with his powers of illusion, and drinking, as it were, those shafts shot from the bow of Drona, Bhimasena rushed against those brothers, (*viz.*, thy sons).[2] Then many kings, that were all great bowmen, urged by thy sons, rushing impetuously, began to surround him.[3] Encompassed by them, O Bhārata, Bhima, smiling the while and uttering a leonine roar, took up and hurled at them with great force a fierce mace destructive of hostile ranks. That mace of adamantine strength, hurled like Indra's thunder by Indra himself,[4-5] crushed, O king, thy soldiers in battle. And it seemed to fill, O king, the whole Earth with a loud noise.[6] And blazing forth in splendour, that fierce mace inspired thy sons with fear. Beholding that mace of impetuous course and endued with lightning flashes coursing towards them,[7] thy warriors fled away, uttering frightful cries. And at the unbearable sound, O sire,[8] of that fierce mace, many men fell down where they stood, and many car-warriors also fell down from their cars. Slaughtered by Bhimasena armed with the mace, thy warriors[9] fled away in fear from battle, like deer attacked by a tiger. The son of Kunti, routing in battle those valorous foes of his,[10] impetuously crossed that force like Garuda of beautiful feathers.

"'While Bhimasena, that leader of leaders of car-divisions, was employed in such carnage, Bharadwāja's son, O king, rushed at him. And Drona, checking Bhima by means of his arrowy showers,[11-12] suddenly uttered a leonine roar that inspired the Pāndavas with fear. The battle that took place between Drona and the high-souled Bhima was, O king, furious and terribe and resembled the encounter between the gods and the *Asuras* of old. Heroic warriors by hundreds and thousands were in that battle begun to be slain by the keen shafts shot from the bow of Drona. The son of Pāndu then, jumping down from his car, shut his eyes, O king, and rushed on foot with great speed towards the car of Drona. Indeed, as a bovine bull easily bears a heavy shower of rain,[13-16] even so that tiger among men, *viz.*, Bhima, bore that arrowy downpour from Drona's bow. Struck in that battle, O sire, by Drona, the mighty Bhima, seizing Drona's car by the shaft, threw it down with great force. Thus thrown down in battle, O king, Drona, however, quickly mounting another car, proceeded towards the gate of the array, his driver urging his steeds at that time with great speed.[17-19] That feat, O thou of Kuru's race, achieved by Bhimasena, seemed exceedingly wonderful. The mighty Bhima then, mounting upon his own car,[20] rushed impetuously towards the army of thy son. And he crushed the Kshatriyas in that battle like a tempest crushing rows of trees.[21] Indeed, Bhima proceeded, resisting the hostile warriors like the mountain resisting the surging sea. Coming then upon the Bhoja troops that were protected by the son of Hridikā,[22] Bhimasena, O king, grinded it greatly, and passed through it. Frightening the hostile soldiers with the sound of his palms, O sire,[23] Bhima vanquished them all like a tiger vanquishing a herd of bovine bulls. Passing through the Bhoja division and that of the Kāmvojas also,[24] and the countless tribes of *Mlechas* too, who were all accomplished in fight, and beholding that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Sātyaki, engaged in fight,[25] Bhimasena the son of Kunti, O monarch, proceeded resolutely and with great speed, desirous of having a sight of Dhananjaya.[26] Transgressing all thy warriors in that battle, the son of Pāndu then sighted the mighty car-warrior Arjuna engaged in the fight.[27] The valiant

Bhima, that tiger among men, beholding Arjuna putting forth his prowess for the slaughter of the ruler of the Sindhus, uttered a loud shout,[28] like, O monarch, the clouds roaring in the season of rains, Those terrible shouts of the roaring Bhimasena were, O thou of Kuru's race, heard by both Arjuna and Vāsudeva in the midst of that battle! Both those heroes, simultaneously hearing that shout of the mighty Bhima,[29-30] repeatedly shouted themselves from desire of beholding Vrikodara. Then Arjuna uttering a loud roar, and Mādhava also doing the same,[31] careered in battle like a couple of roaring bulls. Hearing then that roar of Bhimasena, as also that of Phālguna armed with the bow,[32] Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, O king, became highly gratified. And king Yudhishthira, hearing those sounds of Bhima and Arjuna, had his grief dispelled.[33] And the lord Yudhishthira repeatedly wished success to Dhananjaya in battle.

"'While the fierce Bhima was thus roaring,[34] the mighty-armed Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, that foremost of virtuous men, smilingly reflected awhile and thus worded the thoughts that inspired his heart:[35]—O Bhima, thou hast truly sent me the message! Thou hast truly obeyed the commands of thy superior! They, O son of Pāndu, can never have victory that have thee for their foe![36] By good luck it is that Dhananjaya, capable of shooting the bow with (even) his left hand, still liveth! By good luck the heroic Sātyaki also, of prowess incapable of being baffled, is safe and sound![37] By good luck it is that I hear both Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya uttering these roars! He who, having vanquished Cakra himself in battle, had gratified the bearer of sacrificial libations,[38] that slayer of foes, *viz.*, Phālguna, by good luck still liveth in this battle! He, relying upon the might of whose arms all of us are alive,[39] that slayer of hostile armies, *viz.*, Phālguna, by good luck, liveth still! He by whom with the aid of a single bow the Nivātakavachas were vanquished, those *Dānavas*, that is, that were incapable of being defeated by the very gods, he, *viz.*, Pārtha, by good luck, liveth still! He who had vanquished in Matsya's city all the Kauravas assembled together for seizing Virāta's kine, that Pārtha, by

good luck, liveth still! He who, by the might of his arms, slew fourteen thousands of Kālakeyas, that Pārtha, by good luck, liveth still! He who, for Duryodhana's sake, had vanquished, by the energy of his weapons, the mighty king of the *Gandharvas*, that Pārtha, by good luck, liveth still! Decked with diadem and garlands (of gold), endued with great strength, having white steeds (yoked to his car) and Krishna himself for his charioteer,[40-44] that Phālguna, always dear to me, by good luck, liveth still! Burning with grief on account of the death of his son, endeavouring to achieve a most difficult feat,[45] and even now seeking to slaughter Jayadratha, alas, he that hath made that vow, *viz.*, Dhananjaya, will he succeed in slaying the ruler of the Sindhus in battle?[46] After he, protected by Vāsudeva, will have accomplished that vow of his, shall I behold that Arjuna again, before the sun sets?[47] Shall the ruler of the Sindhus who is devoted to Duryodhana's welfare, slain by Phālguna, gladden his foes?[48] Shall king Duryodhana, beholding the ruler of the Sindhus slain in battle, make peace with us?[49] Beholding his brothers slain in battle by Bhimasena, shall the wicked Duryodhana make peace with us?[50] Beholding other great warriors lying prostrate on the surface of the Earth, shall the wicked Duryodhana give way to remorse![51] Shall not our hostilities cease with the single sacrifice of Bhishma? Shall that Suyodhana make peace with us for saving the remnant (of what is still left to him and us)?[52] —Diverse reflections of this kind passed through the mind of king Yudhishthira who was overwhelmed with compassion. Meanwhile, the battle (between the Pāndavas and the Kauravas) raged furiously.' "[53]

SECTION CXXIX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'While the mighty Bhimasena was uttering those loud shouts deep as the roar of the clouds or peals of thunder, what heroes (of our side) surrounded him?[1] I do not behold that warrior, O Sanjaya, in the three worlds, who is capable of staying before the enraged Bhimasena in battle![2] I do not, O son, behold him that would stay on the

field of battle before Bhimasena armed with mace and resembling Death himself![3] Who will stand before that Bhima, not excepting Cakra himself, that destroys a car with a car, and an elephant with an elephant?[4]* Who, amongst those devoted to Duryodhana's welfare, stood in battle before Bhimasena excited with rage and engaged in slaughtering my sons?[5] Who were those men that stood in batttle in front of Bhimasena engaged in consuming my sons like a forest conflagration consuming dry leaves and straw?[6] Who were they that surrounded Bhima in battle, beholding my sons slain by him one after another like Death himself cutting off all creatures?[7] I do not fear Arjuna so much, or Krishna so much, or Sātyaki so much, or him (*viz.*, Dhrishtadyumna) so much who was born of the sacrificial fire, as I fear Bhima![8] Tell me, O Sanjaya, who were those heroes that rushed against that blazing fire, represented by Bhima, which so consumed my sons?'[9]

"Sanjaya said,—'While the mighty car-warrior Bhimasena was uttering those roars, the mighty Karna, unable to bear them, rushed at him with a loud shout, stretching his bow with great force. Indeed, the mighty Karna, desirous of battle, displayed his strength,[10-11] and checked Bhima's course like a tall tree withstanding the tempest. The heroic Bhima also, beholding Vikartana's son before him, suddenly blazed up in wrath and sped at him with great force many shafts whetted on stone. Karna received all those shafts and sped many in return.[12-13] At that encounter between Bhima and Karna, hearing the sounds of their palms, the limbs of all the struggling combatants, car-warriors, and horsemen, began to tremble. Indeed, hearing the terrible roars of Bhimasena on the field of battle,[14-15] even all the foremost of Kshatriyas regarded the whole Earth and the welkin to be filled by that noise. And at the fierce peats uttered by the high-souled son of Pāndu,[16] the bows of all warriors in that battle dropped on the Earth. And steeds and elephants, O king, dispirited, ejected urine and excreta. Various frightful omens of evil then made their appearance.[17-18] The

---

* *I. e.*, using cars and elephants as weapons for destroying cars and elephants.—T.

welkin was covered with flights of vultures and *Kankas* during that terrific encounter between Bhima and Karna.[19] Then Karna struck Bhima with twenty arrows, and quickly pierced the latter's charioteer also with five.[20] Smiling, the mighty and active Bhima then, in that battle, quickly sped at Karna four and sixty arrows.[21] Then Karna, O king, sped four shafts at him. Bhima, by means of his straight shafts, cut them into many fragments, O king, displaying his lightness of hand. Then Karna covered him with dense showers of arrows.[22-23] Thus covered by Karna, the mighty son of Pāndu, however, cut off Karna's bow at the handle, and then pierced Karna with ten straight arrows. The *Suta's* son then, that mighty car-warrior of terrible deeds, taking up another bow and stringing it quickly, pierced Bhima in that battle (with many shafts). Then Bhima, excited with rage struck the *Suta's* son with great force in the chest with three straight shafts. With those arrows sticking at his breast, Karna looked beautiful,[24-27] O bull of Bharata's race, like a mountain with three tall summits. Thus pierced with mighty shafts, blood began to flow from his wounds[28] like torrents of liquid red chalk adown the breast of a mountain. Afflicted with those shafts shot with great force, Karna became agitated a little.[29] Fixing an arrow then on his bow, he pierced Bhima again, O sire! And once more he began to shoot arrows by hundreds and thousands.[30] Suddenly shrouded with shafts by that firm bowman, *viz.*, Karna, the son of Pāndu, smiling the while, cut off Karna's bowstring.[31] And then, with a broad-headed arrow, he despatched Karna's charioteer to the abode of Yama. And that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Bhima, deprived the four steeds also of Karna of their lives.[32] The mighty car-warrior Karna then, speedily jumping down, O king, from his steedless car, mounted the car of Vrishasena.[33] The valiant Bhimasena then, having vanquished Karna in battle, uttered a loud shout deep as the roar of the clouds.[34] Hearing that roar, O Bhārata, Yudhishthira became highly gratified, knowing that Karna had been vanquished by Bhimasena.[35] And the combatants of the Pāndava army blew their conchs from every side. Their enemies, *viz.*, thy warriors, hearing that noise, roared loudly.[36] Arjuna stretched *Gāndiva*, and Krishna blew

Pānchajanya. Drowning, however, all those sounds, the noise made by the roaring Bhima,[37] was, O king, heard by all the combatants, O sire! Then those two warriors, *viz.*, Karna and Bhima, each struck the other with straight shafts. The son of Rādhā, however, shot his shafts mildly, but the son of Pāndu shot his with great force.' "[38]

SECTION CXXX.

"Sanjaya said,—'After that army had (thus) been routed, and Arjuna and Sātwata and Bhimasena had all gone after the ruler of the Sindhus, thy son (Duryodhana) proceeded towards Drona.[1] And Duryodhana went to the preceptor, on his single car, thinking, by the way, of diverse duties. That car of thy son, endued with the speed of the wind or thought, proceeded with great celerity towards Drona. With eyes red in wrath, thy son addressed the preceptor and said,[2-3]—O grinder of foes, Arjuna and Bhimasena, and the unvanquished Sātyaki, and many mighty car-warriors, defeating all our troops, have succeeded in approaching the ruler of the Sindhus! Indeed, those mighty car-warriors, having vanquished all the troops, themselves unvanquished, are fighting even there! O giver of honors, how hast thou been trangressed by both Sātyaki and Bhima?[4-6] O foremost of Brāhmanas, this thy defeat at the hands of Sātwata, of Arjuna, and of Bhimasena, is, like the drying of the ocean, exceedingly wonderful in this world! People are loudly asking,—[How, indeed, could Drona, that master of the science of arms, be vanquished?][7-8] Even thus are all the warriors speaking in depreciation of thee! Destruction is certain for my luckless self in battle,[9] when three car-warriors, O tiger among men, have in succession transgressed thee! When, however, all this hath happened, tell us what thou hast to say on the business that awaits us![10] What hath happened, is past! O giver of honors, think now of what remains! Say quickly what should next be done for the ruler of the Sindhus on the present occasion, and let what thou sayest be quickly and properly carried out![11]—

"'Drona said,—Listen, O great king, to what I, having reflected much, say unto thee about what should now be done! As yet only three great car-warriors among the Pāndavas have transgressed us.[12] We have as much fear *behind* those three as we have *before* them.* There, however, where Krishna and Dhananjaya are, our fears must be greater.[13] The Bharata army hath been attacked both before and behind. In this pass I think that the protection of the ruler of the Sindhus is what I think our first duty.[14] Jayadratha, afraid of Dhananjaya, deserves of all to be protected by us! The heroic Yuyudhāna and Vrikodara have both gone against the ruler of the Sindhus.[15] All this that hath come is the fruit of that match at dice conceived by Cakuni's intellect. Neither victory nor defeat took place in the (gaming) assembly.[16] Now that we are engaged in this sport, there will be victory or defeat! These innocent things with which Cakuni had formerly played in the Kuru assembly[17] and which he regarded as dice, were in reality invincible shafts. Truly, there where, O sire, the Kauravas were congregated, they were not dice, but terrible arrows capable of mangling your bodies! At present, however, O king, know these combatants for players, these shafts for dice,[18-19] and the ruler of the Sindhus, without doubt, O monarch, for the stake, in this game of battle! Indeed, Jayadratha is the great stake about which we are playing today with the enemy![20] Under the circumstances, therefore, O monarch, all of us, becoming reckless of our very lives, should make due arrangements for the protection of the ruler of the Sindhus in battle![21] Engaged as we are in our present sport, it is here that we will have victory or defeat, here, that is, where those great bowmen are protecting the ruler of the Sindhus![22] Go thither, therefore, with speed, and protect those protectors (of Jayadratha)! As regards myself, I will stay here, for despatching others (to the presence of Jayadratha)[23] and checking the Pāñchālas, the Pāndus, and the Srinjayas united together!—Thus commanded

* The fear *behind* them was from the Pāndava army. The fear *before* them was from the car-warriors who had succeeded in penetrating the Kuru host.—T

by the preceptor, Duryodhana quickly proceeded (to the place indicated) with his followers, resolutely setting his self to (the accomplishment of) a fierce task. The two protectors of the wheels of Arjuna's car, *viz.*, the Pānchāla princes Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas,[24-25] were at that time proceeding towards Savyasāchin by the skirts of the Kuru array. Thou mayst remember, O king, that formerly while Arjuna penetrated thy host from desire of battle, those two princes, O monarch, had been checked in their progress by Kritāvarman. Now, the Kuru king beheld them proceeding by the skirts of his host.[26-27] The mighty Duryodhana of Bharata's race lost no time in engaging in a fierce battle with those two brothers thus rushing furiously.[28] Those two foremost of Kshatriyas, reputed as mighty car-warriors, then rushed, in that battle, at Duryodhana, with outstretched bows.[29] Yudhāmanyu pierced Duryodhana with twenty, and his four steeds with four shafts.[30] Duryodhana, however, with a single shaft, cut off Yudhāmanyu's standard. And thy son then cut off the former's bow also with another shaft.[31] And then with a broad-headed arrow the Kuru king felled Yudhāmanyu's charioteer from his niche in the car. And then he pierced the four steeds of the latter with four shafts.[32] Then Yudhāmanyu, excited with wrath, quickly sped, in that battle, thirty shafts at the centre of thy son's chest.[33] Then Uttamaujas also, excited with wrath, pierced Duryodhana's charioteer with shafts decked with gold, and despatched him to Yama's abode.[34] Duryodhana also, O monarch, then slew the four steeds as also the two *Pārshni* charioteers of Uttamaujas the prince of the Pānchālas.[35] Then Uttamaujas, in that battle, becoming steedless and driverless, quickly ascended the car of his brother Yudhāmanyu.[36] Ascending on the car of his brother, he struck Duryodhana's steeds with many shafts. Slain therewith, those steeds fell down on the Earth.[37] Upon the fall of his steeds, the valiant Yudhāmanyu then, by a mighty weapon, quickly cut off Duryodhana's bow, and then (with another shaft) his leathern fence.[38] That bull among men then, *viz.*, thy son, jumping down from that steedless and driverless car, took up a mace and proceeded against the two princes of Pānchāla.[39] Beholding that subjugator of hostile

towns thus advancing in wrath, both Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas jumped down from the terrace of their car.[40] Then Duryodhana, armed as he was with a mace, pressed down into the Earth with that mace that foremost of cars decked with gold, with steeds and driver and standard.[41] Thy son then, that scorcher of foes, having thus crushed that car, steedless and driverless as he himself was, quickly ascended the car of the king of the Madras.[42] Meanwhile those two mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, those two foremost of Pānchāla princes, ascending on two other cars, proceeded towards Arjuna.' "[43]

SECTION CXXXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'During the progress, O monarch, of that battle making the hair to stand on end, and when all the combatants were filled with anxiety and greatly afflicted,[1] the son of Rādhā, O bull of Bharata's race, proceeded against Bhima for battle, like an infuriate elephant in the forest proceeding against another infuriate elephant.'[2]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How raged that battle, in the neighbourhood of Arjuna's car, between those two mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, Bhima and Karna, both of whom are endued with great strength?[3] Once before, Karna had been vanquished by Bhimasena in battle. How, therefore, could the mighty car-warrior Karna again proceed against Bhima?[4] How also could Bhima proceed against the *Suta's* son, that mighty warrior who is reckoned the greatest of car-warriors on Earth?[5] Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, having prevailed over Bhishma and Drona, did not fear anybody else so much as the bowman Karna![6] Indeed, thinking of the mighty car-warrior Karna, he passeth his nights sleeplessly from fear! How, then, could Bhima encounter that *Suta's* son in battle?[7] Indeed, O Sanjaya, how could Bhima fight with Karna, that foremost of warriors, that hero devoted to the Brāhmanas, endued with energy, and never retreating from battle?[8] How, indeed, did those two heroes, *viz.*, the *Suta's* son and Vrikodara, fight with each other in that encounter which took place in the vicinity of Arjuna's car?[9] Informed before of his brotherhood (with the

Pāndavas), the *Suta's* son is, again, compassionate. Remembering also his words to Kunti, how could he fight with Bhima ?[10] As regards Bhima also, remembering all the wrongs formerly inflicted on him by the *Suta's* son, how did that hero fight with Karna in battle ?[11] My son Duryodhana, O *Suta*, hopeth that Karna will vanquish all the Pāndavas in battle ?[12] *He* upon whom my wretched son resteth his hope of victory in battle, how did *he* fight with Bhimasena of terrible deeds ?[13] That *Suta's* son, relying upon whom my sons chose hostilities with those mighty car-warriors (*viz.*, the sons of Pāndu), how did Bhima fight with *him* ?[14] Indeed, remembering the diverse wrongs and injuries done by him, how did Bhima fight with that son of a *Suta* ?[15] How, indeed, could Bhima fight with that son of a *Suta*, who, endued with great valour, had formerly subjugated the whole Earth on a single car ?[16] How did Bhima fight with that son of a *Suta*, who was born with a (natural) pair of ear-rings ?[17] Thou art skilled in narration, O Sanjaya ! Tell me, therefore, in detail how the battle took place between those two, and who amongst them obtained the victory ?'[18]

"Sanjaya said,—'Leaving Rādhā's son, that foremost of car-warriors, Bhimasena, desired to proceed to the place where those two heroes, *viz.*, Krishna and Dhananjaya, were.[19] The son of Rādhā, however, rushing towards him as he proceeded, covered him, O king, with dense showers of arrows like a cloud pouring torrents of rain on a mountain.[20] The mighty son of Adhiratha, his face beautiful as a full-blown lotus lighted up with a smile, challenged Bhimasena to battle, as the latter was proceeding.[21] And Karna said,—O Bhima, I dreamt not that thou knowest how to fight ! Why then dost thou show me thy back from desire of meeting with Arjuna ?[22] O delighter of the Pāndavas, this is scarcely fit for a son of Kunti ! Staying, therefore, where thou art, cover me with thy arrows ![23]—Bhimasena, hearing that challenge of Karna, brooked it not, but wheeling his car a little, began to fight with the *Suta's* son.[24] The illustrious Bhimasena showered clouds of straight shafts. Desiring also to arrive at the end of those hostilities by slaying Karna, Bhima began to weaken that hero conversant with

every weapon and clad in mail and staying before him for engaging in a single combat. The mighty Bhima, that scorcher of foes, that wrathful son of Pāndu, having slain numerous Kauravas, shot diverse showers of fierce shafts at Karna, O sire![25-27] The *Suta's* son, endued with great strength, swallowed up, by means of the power of his own weapons, all those showers of arrows shot by that hero possessed of the tread of an infuriate elephant.[28] Duly favoured by knowledge, that great bowman, *viz.*, Karna, began in that battle, O monarch, to career like a preceptor (of military science).[29] The wrathful son of Rādhā, smiling the while, seemed to mock Bhimasena as the latter was battling in great wrath.[30] The son of Kunti brooked not that smile of Karna in the midst of many brave warriors witnessing from all sides that fight of theirs.[31] Like a guide striking a huge elephant with a hook, the mighty Bhima, excited with rage, pierced Karna whom he had obtained within reach, with many calf-toothed shafts in the centre of the chest.[32] And once more Bhimasena pierced the *Suta's* son of variegated armour with three and seventy well-shot and keen arrows equipt with beautiful wings.[33] Then the heroic Karna pierced Bhima's steeds, fleet as the wind and cased in golden armour, each with five shafts.[34] And soon, within the twinkling of the eye, was seen a network of shafts about Bhima's car caused by Karna.[35] Indeed, O monarch, those shafts shot from Karna's bow completely shrouded that car with its standard and driver and the Pāndava himself.[36] Then Karna pierced the impenetrable armour of Bhima with four and sixty arrows. And excited with rage he then pierced Pārtha himself with many straight shafts capable of penetrating into the very vitals.[37] The mighty-armed Vrikodara, however, disregarding those shafts shot from Karna's bow, fearlessly struck the *Suta's* son.[38] Pierced with those shafts, resembling snakes of virulent poison, shot from Karna's bow, Bhima, O monarch, felt no pain in that battle.[39] The valiant Bhima then, in that encounter, pierced Karna with two and thirty broad-headed shafts of keen points and fierce energy.[40] Karna, however, with the greatest indifference, covered, in return, with his arrows, the mighty-armed Bhimasena who was desirous of Jayadratha's slaughter.[41] Indeed,

the son of Rādhā, in that encounter, fought mildly with Bhima, while Bhima, remembering his former wrongs, fought with him angrily.[42] The wrathful Bhimasena could not brook that disregard by Karna. Indeed, that slayer of foes quickly shot showers of arrows at Rādhā's son.[43] Those arrows, sped in that encounter by Bhimasena, fell on every limb of Karna like cooing birds.[44] Indeed, those arrows equipt with golden wings and keen points, shot from Bhimasena's bow, covered the son of Rādhā like a flight of insects covering a blazing fire.[45] Karna, however, O king, that foremost of car-warriors, thus covered all over with those arrows, shot showers of fierce shafts in return, O Bhārata.[46] Then Vrikodara cut off, with many broad-headed arrows, those shafts, resembling thunder-bolts, shot by that ornament of battle, before they could come at him.[47] That chastiser of foes, *viz.*, Karna the son of Vikartana, once more, O Bhārata, covered Bhimasena with his arrowy showers.[48] We then, O Bhārata, beheld Bhima so pierced in that encounter with arrows as to resemble a porcupine with its quills erect on its body.*[49] Like the Sun holding his own rays, the heroic Bhima held in that battle all those shafts, whetted on stone and equipt with wings of gold, that were shot from Karna's bow.[50] All his limbs bathed in blood, Bhimasena looked resplendent like an *Açoka* tree in spring decked with its flowery burthen.[51] The mighty-armed Bhima could not brook that conduct, in battle, of the mighty-armed Karna. Rolling his eyes in wrath,[52] he pierced Karna with five and twenty long shafts. Thereupon Karna looked like a white mountain with many snakes of virulent poison (hanging from its sides).[53] And once more Bhimasena, endued with the prowess of a celestial, pierced the *Suta's* son who was prepared to lay down his life in battle, with six and then with eight arrows.[54] And, again, with another arrow, the valiant Bhimasena quickly cut off Karna's bow, smiling the while.[55] And he slew also with his shafts the four steeds of Karna and then his charioteer, and then pierced Karna himself in the chest with a number of long shafts endued with the effulgence of the

---

* Many of the Bengal texts have *Calabhairiva*. This is a mistake, the word being *Calala*, and not *Calabha* which would be unmeaning here.—T.

Sun.[56] Those winged shafts, piercing through Karna's body, entered the Earth, like the rays of the Sun piercing through the clouds.[57] Afflicted with arrows and his bow cut off, Karna, though proud of his manliness, felt great pain and proceeded to another car.' "[58]

SECTION CXXXII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'What, indeed, O Sanjaya, did Duryodhana say when he saw that Karna turning away from the field upon whom my sons had reposed all their hopes of victory?[1] How, indeed, did the mighty Bhima, proud of his energy, fight? What also, O son, did Karna do after this, beholding Bhimasena in that battle resemble a blazing fire?'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Mounting upon another car that was duly equipt, Karna once more proceeded against the son of Pāndu, with the fury of the ocean tossed by the tempest.[3] Beholding Adhiratha's son excited with rage, thy sons, O king, regarded Bhimasena to be already poured as a libation on the (Karna-) fire.[4] With furious twang of bowstring and terrible sounds of his palms, the son of Rādhā shot dense showers of shafts towards Bhimasena's car.[5] And once more, O monarch, a terrible encounter took place between the heroic Karna and the high-souled Bhima.[6] Both excited with wrath, both endued with mighty-arms, each desirous of slaying the other, those two warriors looked at each other as if resolved to burn each other with their (wrathful) glances.[7] The eyes of both were red in rage, and both breathed fiercely, like a couple of snakes. Endued with great heroism, those two chastisers of foes approached and mangled each other.[8] Indeed, they fought with each other like two hawks endued with great activity, or like two *Çarabhas* excited with wrath.[9] Then that chastiser of foes, *viz.*, Bhima, recollecting all the woes suffered by him on the occasion of the match at dice, and during his exile in the woods and residence in Virāta's city,[10] and bearing in mind the robbing of their kingdom swelling with prosperity and gems by thy sons, and the numerous other wrongs inflicted on the Pānda-

vas by thee and the *Suta's* son,[11] and remembering also the fact that thou hadst conspired to burn the innocent Kunti with her sons, and calling to his memory the sufferings of Krishnā in the midst of the assembly at the hands of those wretches,[12] as also the seizure of her tresses by Dusçāsana and the harsh speeches uttered, O Bhārata, by Karna,[13] to the effect—*Take thou another husband, for all thy husbands are dead : the sons of Prithā have sunk into hell and are like sesamum seeds without kernel,*[14]—remembering also those other words, O son of Kuru, that the Kauravas uttered in thy presence, and the fact also that thy sons had been desirous of enjoying Krishnā as slave,[15] and those harsh words that Karna spoke to the sons of Pāndu when the lattter, attired in deer-skins, were about to be banished to the woods,[16] and the brag in which thy wrathful and foolish son, himself in prosperity, indulged, regarding the distressed sons of Prithā as veritable straw,[17] indeed, the virtuous Bhima, that slayer of foes, remembering these and all the woes he had suffered since his childhood, became reckless of his very life.[18] Stretching his invincible and formidable bow the back of whose staff was decked with gold, Vrikodara, that tiger of Bharata's race, utterly reckless of his life, rushed against Karna.[19] Shooting dense showers of bright arrows whetted on stone, Bhima shrouded the very light of the Sun.[20] Adhiratha's son, however, smiling the while, quickly baffled, by means of his own winged arrows whetted on stone, that arrowy downpour of Bhimasena.[21] Endued with great strength and mighty arms, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Adhiratha, then pierced Bhima with nine keen arrows.[22] Struck with those arrows like an elephant struck with the hook, Vrikodara fearlessly rushed against the *Suta's* son.[23] Karna, however, in wrath, rushed against that bull among the Pāndavas who was thus rushing towards him with great impetuosity and force, like an infuriate elephant against an infuriate compeer.[24] Blowing his conch then whose blast resembled the sound of a hundred trumpets, Karna cheerfully agitated the force that supported Bhima, like the raging sea.[25] Beholding that force of his, consisting of elephants and steeds and cars and foot-soldiers, thus agitated by Karna, Bhima, approaching the

former, covered him with arrows.[26] Then Karna caused his own steeds of the hue of swans to be mingled with those of Bhimasena of the hue of bears, and shrouded the son of Pāndu with his shafts.[27] Beholding those steeds of the hue of bears and fleet as the wind, mingled with those of Karna of the hue of swans, cries of *oh* and *alas* arose from among the troops of thy sons.[28] Those steeds, fleet as the wind, thus mingled together, looked exceedingly beautiful, like white and black clouds, O monarch, mingled together in the firmament.[29] Beholding Karna and Vrikodara to be both excited with wrath, the great car-warriors of thy army began to tremble with fear.[30] The field of battle where they fought soon became awful like the domains of Yama. Indeed, O best of Bharatas, it became as frightful to behold as the city of the king of the dead.[31] The great car-warriors of thy army, looking upon that scene as if they were spectators of a sport in an arena, beheld not any of the two to gain any advantage over the other in that dreadful encounter.[32] They only beheld, O king, that mingling and clash of the mighty weapons of those two warriors, as a result, O monarch, of the evil policy of thyself and thy son![33] Those two slayers of foes continued to cover each other with their keen shafts. Both endued with wonderful prowess, they filled the welkin with their arrowy downpours.[34] Those two mighty car-warriors shooting at each other keen shafts from desire of taking each other's life, became exceedingly beautiful to behold like two clouds pouring torrents of rain.[35] Those two chastisers of foes, shooting gold-decked arrows, made the welkin look bright, O king, as if with blazing meteors.[36] Shafts equipt with vulturine feathers, shot by those two heroes, looked like rows of excited cranes in the autumn sky[37] Meanwhile Krishna and Dhananjaya, those chastisers foes, engaged in battle with the *Suta's* son, thought the burthen too great for Bhima to bear.[38] As Karna and Bhima, for baffling each other's shafts, shot these arrows at each other, many elephants and steeds and men, deeply struck therewith, fell down deprived of life.[39] And in consequence of those falling and fallen creatures deprived of life and counting by thousands, a great carnage, O king, took place in the army of thy sons.[40] And soon, O bull of Bharata's

race, the field of battle became covered with the bodies of men and steeds and elephants deprived of life.' "[41]

SECTION CXXXIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I regard Bhimasena's prowess to be exceedingly wonderful, inasmuch as he succeeded in battling with Karna of singular activity and energy.[1] Indeed, O Sanjaya, tell me why that Karna, who is capable of resisting in in battle the very celestials with the *Yakshas* and *Asuras* and men, armed with all kinds of weapons, could not vanquish in battle Pāndu's son Bhima blazing with resplendence?[2-3] O tell me, how that battle took place between them in which each staked his very life. I think that in an encounter between two, success is within reach of both as, indeed, both are liable to defeat.[4]* O *Suta*, obtaining Karna in battle, my son Suyodhana always ventures to vanquish the sons of Prithā with Govinda and the Sātwatas![5] Hearing, however, of the repeated defeat in battle of Karna by Bhimasena of terrible deeds, a swoon seems to come upon me![6] I think the Kauravas to be already slain, in consequence of the evil policy of my son! Karna will never succeed, O Sanjaya, in vanquishing those mighty bowmen, *viz.*, the sons of Prithā![7] In all the battles that Karna has fought with the sons of Pāndu, the latter have invariably defeated him on the field.[8] Indeed, O son, the Pāndavas are incapable of being vanquished by the very gods with Vāsava at their head! Alas, my wicked son Duryodhana knoweth it not![9] Having robbed Prithā's son, who is like the Lord of the treasures himself, of his wealth, my son of little intelligence seeth not the fall like a searcher of honey (in the mountains).[10] Conversant with deceit, he regardeth it to be irrevocably his and always insulteth the Pāndavas.[11] Myself also, of unrefined soul, overcome with affection for my children, scrupled not to despise the high-souled sons of Pāndu that are

---

* I render the second line of 4 too freely. The sense seems to be that when two persons fight, one cannot say beforehand who will succeed. Both have chances of success as, indeed, both have chances of defeat.—T.

observant of morality![12] Yudhishthira the son of Prithā, of great foresight, always showed himself desirous of peace. My sons, however, regarding him incapable, despised him.[13] Bearing in mind all those woes and all the wrongs (sustained by the Pāndavas), the mighty-armed Bhimasena battled with the *Suta's* son![14] Tell me, therefore, O Sanjaya, how Bhima and Karna, those two foremost of warriors, fought with each other, desirous of taking each other's life!'[15]

"Sanjaya said,—Hear, O king, how the battle took place between Karna and Bhima which resembled an encounter between two elephants in the forest desirous of slaying each other.[16] The son of Vikartana, O king, excited with rage and putting forth his prowess, pierced that chastiser of foes, *viz.*, the angry Bhima of great prowess, with thirty shafts.[17] Indeed, O chief of Bharata's race, Vikartana's son struck Bhima with many arrows of keen points, decked with gold, and endued with great impetuosity.[18] Bhima, however, with three sharp shafts cut off the bow of Karna as the latter was engaged in striking him. And with a broad-headed arrow the son of Pāndu then felled on the Earth Karna's charioteer from his niche in the car.[19] The son of Vikartana, then, desirous of slaying Bhimasena, seized a dart whose shaft was decked with gold and stones of *lapis lazuli.*[20] Grasping that fierce dart, which resembled a second dart of Death, and uplifting and aiming it, the mighty son of Rādhā[21] hurled it at Bhimasena with a force sufficient to take away Bhima's life. Hurling that dart like Purandara hurling the thunder-bolt, Rādhā's son[22] of great strength uttered a loud roar. Hearing that roar thy sons became filled with delight.[23] Bhima. however, with seven swift arrows, cut off in the welkin that dart endued with the effulgence of the Sun or fire, hurled from the hands of Karna.[24] Cutting off that dart resembling a snake just freed from its slough, Bhima, O sire, as if on the look out for taking the life-breaths of the *Suta's* son,[25] sped, in great wrath, many shafts in that battle that were equipt with peacock feathers and golden wings, and each of which, whetted on stone, resembled the rod of Yama.[26] Karna also of great energy, taking up another formidable bow the back of whose staff was decked with gold, and draw-

ing it with force, shot many shafts.[27] The son of Pāndu, however, cut off all those arrows with nine straight arrows of his own. Having cut off, O ruler of men, those mighty shafts shot by Vasushena, Bhima, O monarch, uttered a loud roar like that of a lion. Roaring at each other like two mighty bulls for the sake of a cow in season,[28-29] or like two tigers for the sake of the same piece of meat, they endeavoured to strike each other, each being desirous of finding the other's *laches*.[30] At times they looked at each other with angry eyes like two mighty bulls in a cowpen. Then like two huge elephants striking each other with the points of their tusks,[31] they encountered each other with shafts shot from their bows drawn to the fullest stretch. Scorching each other, O king, with their arrowy showers, they put forth their prowess upon each other, eyeing each other in great wrath.[32] Sometimes laughing at each other and sometimes rebuking each other, and sometimes blowing their conchs, they continued to fight with each other.[33] Then Bhima once more cut off Karna's bow at the handle, O sire, and despatched by means of his shafts the latter's steeds, white as conchs, to the abode of Yama.[34] And the son of Pāndu also felled his enemy's charioteer from his niche in the car. Then Karna the son of Vikartana, made steedless and driverless, and covered in that battle (with shafts), became plunged into great anxiety. Stupified by Bhima with his arrowy showers, he knew not what to do.[35-36] Beholding Karna placed in that distressful plight, king Duryodhana, trembling with wrath, commanded (his brother) Durjaya, saying,[37]—Go, O Durjaya! There the son of Pāndu is about to devour the son of Rādhā! Slay that beardless eunuch soon, and infuse strength into Karna![38]—Thus addressed, thy son Durjaya, saying unto Duryodhana—So be it,—rushed towards Bhimasena engaged (with Karna) and covered him with arrows.[39] And Durjaya struck Bhima with nine shafts, his steeds with eight, his driver with six, his standard with three, and once more Bhima himself with seven.[40] Then Bhimasena, excited with wrath, piercing with his shafts the very vitals of Durjaya and his steeds and driver, despatched them to Yama's abode.[41] Then Karna, weeping in grief, circumambulated that son of thine, who, decked with ornaments,

lay on the Earth, writhing like a snake.[43] Bhima then, having made that deadly foe of his, *viz.*, Karna, carless, smilingly covered him with shafts and made him look like a *Çatāghni* with numberless spikes on it.[43] The *Atiratha* Karna, however, that chastiser of foes, though thus pierced with arrows, did not yet avoid the enraged Bhima in that battle.' "[44]

SECTION CXXXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'The carless Karna, thus once more completely defeated by Bhima, mounted another car and speedily began to pierce the son of Pāndu.[1] Like two huge elephants encountering each other with the points of their tusks, they struck each other with shafts shot from their bows drawn to the fullest stretch.[2] Then Karna, striking Bhimasena with showers of shafts, uttered a loud roar, and once more pierced him in the chest.[3] Bhima, however, in return, pierced Karna with ten straight arrows and once more with twenty straight arrows.[4] Then Karna, piercing Bhima, O king, with nine arrows in the centre of the chest, struck the latter's standard with a sharp shaft.[5] The son of Prithā then pierced Karna in return with three and sixty arrows, like a guide striking a mighty elephant with the hook or a rider striking a steed with the whip.[6] Deeply pierced, O king, by the illustrious son of Pāndu, the heroic Karna began to lick with his tongue the corners of his mouth, and his eyes became red in rage.[7] Then, O monarch, Karna sped at Bhimasena, for his destruction, a shaft capable of piercing every body like Indra hurling his thunderbolt.[8] That shaft epuipt with beautiful feathers, sped from the bow of the *Suta's* son, piercing Pārtha in that battle, sank deep into the Earth.[9] Then the mighty-armed Bhima, with eyes red in wrath, hurled without a moment's reflection, at the *Suta's* son, a heavy six-sided mace, decked with gold, measuring full four cubits in length, and resembling the bolt of Indra in force. Indeed, like Indra slaying the *Asuras* with his thunderbolt, that hero of Bharata's race, excited with wrath, slew with that mace the well-trained steeds, of the foremost breed, of Adhiratha's son. Then, O bull of Bharata's race, the mighty-

armed Bhima, with a couple of razor-faced arrows,[10-12] cut off the standard of Karna. And then he slew, with a number of shafts, his enemy's charioteer. Abandoning that steedless and driverless and standardless car,[13] Karna, O Bhārata, cheerlessly stood on the Earth, drawing his bow. The prowess that we then beheld of Rādhā's son was extremely wonderful,[14] inasmuch as that foremost of car-warriors, though deprived of car, continued to resist his foe. Beholding that foremost of men, *viz.*, the son of Adhiratha, deprived of his car,[15] Duryodhana, O monarch, said unto (his brother) Durmukha,—There, O Durmukha, the son of Rādhā hath been deprived of his car by Bhimasena![16] Furnish that foremost of men, that mighty car-warrior, with a car!—Hearing these words of Duryodhana, thy son Durmukha, O Bhārata,[17] quickly proceeded towards Karna and covered Bhima with his shafts. Beholding Durmukha desirous of supporting the *Suta's* son in that battle,[18] the son of the Wind-god was filled with delight and began to lick the corners of his mouth. Then resisting Karna the while with his shafts,[19] the son of Pāndu quickly sped his car towards Durmukha. And in that moment, O king, with nine straight[20] arrows of keen points, Bhima despatched Durmukha to Yama's abode. Upon Durmukha's slaughter, the son of Adhiratha mounted upon the car of that prince, and looked resplendent, O king, like the blazing Sun. Beholding Durmukha lying prostrate on the field, his very vitals pierced (with shafts), and his body bathed in blood, Karna with tearful eyes abstained for a moment from the fight. Circumambulating the fallen prince and leaving him there,[21-23] the heroic Karna began to breathe long and hot breaths and knew not what to do. Seizing that opportunity, O king, Bhimasena sped at the *Suta's* son four and ten long shafts equipt with vulturine feathers. Those blood-drinking shafts of golden wings, endued with great force, illumining the ten points as they coursed through the welkin, pierced the armour of the *Suta's* son, and drank his life-blood, O king,[24-26] and passing through his body, sank into the Earth and looked resplendent like angry snakes, O monarch, urged on by Death himself,[27] with half their bodies inserted within their holes. Then the son of Rādhā, without

reflecting a moment, pierced Bhima in return with four and ten fierce shafts decked with gold. Those fierce winged arrows, piercing through Bhima's right arm,[28-29] entered the Earth like birds entering a grove of trees. Striking against the Earth, those arrows looked resplendent,[30] like the blazing rays of the Sun while proceeding towards the *Asta* hills. Pierced in that battle with those all-piercing arrows, Bhima[31] began to shed copious streams of blood like a mountain ejecting streams of water. Then Bhima pierced the *Suta's* son in return with three shafts endued with the impetuosity of Garuda, and he pierced the latter's charioteer also with seven. Then, O king, Karna thus afflicted with Bhima's might, became exceedingly distressed.[32-33] And that illustrious warrior then fled, forsaking the battle, borne away by his fleet steeds. The *Atiratha* Bhimasena, however, drawing his bow decked with gold, stayed in battle, looking resplendent like a blazing fire.' "[34]

SECTION CXXXV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I think Destiny is supreme. Fie on Exertion which is useless, inasmuch as the son of Adhiratha, though fighting resolutely, could not vanquish the son of Pāndu![1]—Karna boasts of his competence to vanquish in battle all the Pārthas with Govinda amongst them. I do not, in the world, see another warrior like Karna![2]—I often heard Duryodhana speak in this strain. Indeed, O *Suta*, the wretched Duryodhana used to tell me formerly,—Karna is a mighty hero, a firm bowman, above all fatigue. If I have that Vasushena for my ally, the very gods will not be a match for me, what need be said, therefore, O monarch, of the sons of Pāndu that are weak and heartless?—Tell me, therefore, O Sanjaya, what did Duryodhana say beholding that Karna defeated and looking like a snake deprived of its poison and flying away from battle! Alas, deprived of his senses, Duryodhana despatched the unsupported Durmukha, unacquainted though he was with battle, into that fiery encounter like an insect into the blazing fire! O Sanjaya, even Açwatthāman and the ruler of the Madras and Kripa, united together, cannot stay before Bhimasena! Even

these know the terrible might, equal to that of ten thousand elephants, of Bhima endued with the energy of Marut himself, as also his cruel intents! Why would those warriors, acquainted with Bhima's might, wrath, and energy, provoke the ire, in battle, of that hero of cruel deeds, that warrior resembling Yama himself as the latter becomes at the end of the *Yuga*? It seems that the *Suta's* son, the mighty-armed Karna alone, relying on the prowess of his own arms,[8-10] fought in battle with Bhimasena, disregarding the latter. That son of Pāndu who vanquished Karna in battle like Purandara vanquishing an *Asura*, is incapable of being vanquished by anybody in fight. Who is there that would, hopeful of life, approach that Bhima who, in Arjuna's quest, alone entered my host, having grinded Drona himself? Who, indeed, is there, O Sanjaya, that would dare stay in the face of Bhima?[11-13] Who is there among the *Asuras* that would venture to stay before the great Indra with the thunderbolt uplifted in his hand?* A man may return, having entered the abode of the king of the dead.[14] None, however, can return having encountered Bhimasena! Those men of weak prowess who senselessly rushed against the angry Bhimasena were like insects falling upon a blazing fire. Without doubt, reflecting upon what the angry and the fierce Bhima had said in the assembly in the hearing of the Kurus about the slaughter of my sons, and beholding the defeat of Karna,[15-17] Dusçāsana and his brothers ceased to encounter Bhima from fear! That wicked son also of mine, O Sanjaya, who repeatedly said in the assembly (these words, *viz.,)*—*Karna and Dusçāsana and I myself will vanquish the Pāndavas in battle,*—without doubt, beholding Karna defeated and deprived of his car by Bhima,[18-19] is consumed with grief in consequence of his rejection of Krishna's suit!† Beholding his mail-clad brothers slain in battle by Bhimasena,[20] in consequence of his own fault, without doubt, my son is burning with

---

* The genius of the two languages being entirely different, I give the sense of the first line of 14 separately, without seeking to connect it, in the assertive form, with the second half of 13.—T.

† Literally, "disregard of Krishna."—T.

grief! Who that is desirous of life will make a hostile advance against Pāndu's son[21] Bhima excited with wrath and armed with terrible weapons and standing in battle like Death himself? A man may escape from the very jaws of the *Vadavā* fire.[22] But it is my belief that no one can escape from before Bhima's face! Indeed, neither Pārtha, nor the Pānchālas, nor Keçava, nor Sātyaki,[23] when excited with wrath in battle, shows the least regard for (his) life. Alas, O *Suta*, the very lives of my sons are in danger!'[24]

"Sanjaya said,—'Thou, O Kauravya, that art thus grieving in view of the present carnage, thou, without doubt, art the root of this destruction of the world![25] Obedient to the counsels of thy sons, thou hast thyself provoked this fierce hostility. Though urged (by well-wishing friends), thou acceptedst not the proper medicine like a man fated to die![26] O monarch, O best of men, having thyself drunk the fiercest and the most indigestible poison, take thou all its consequences now![27] The combatants are fighting to the best of their might: still thou speakest ill of them! Listen, however, to me as I describe to thee how the battle raged.[28]

"'Beholding Karna defeated by Bhimasena, five of thy sons, those uterine brothers that were great bowmen, could not, O sire, brook it.[29] They were Durmarshana and Dussaha and Durmada and Durdhara and Jaya. Clad in beautiful mail, all of them rushed against the son of Pāndu.[30] Encompassing the mighty-armed Vrikodara on all sides, they shrouded all the points of the compass with their shafts looking like flights of locusts.[31] Bhimasena, however, in that battle, smilingly received those princes of celestial beauty thus rushing suddenly against him.[32] Beholding thy sons advancing against Bhimasena, Rādhā's son Karna rushed against that mighty-warrior,[33] shooting arrows of keen points that were equipt with golden wings and whetted on stone. Bhima, however, quickly rushed against Karna, though resisted by thy sons.[34] Then the Kurus, surrounding Karna, covered Bhimasena with showers of straight shafts.[35] With five and twenty arrows, O king, Bhima, armed with his formidable bow, despatched all those bulls among men to Yama's abode with their steeds and charioteers.[36] Fall-

ing down from their cars along with their charioteers, their lifeless forms looked like large trees with their variegated weight of flowers uprooted by the tempest.[37] The prowess that we then beheld of Bhimasena was exceedingly wonderful, inasmuch as, resisting Adhiratha's son the while, he slew those sons of thine.[38] Resisted by Bhima with whetted arrows on all sides, the *Suta's* son, O king, only looked at Bhima.[39] Bhimasena also, with eyes red in wrath, began to cast angry glances on Karna, stretching his formidable bow the while.' "[40]

SECTION CXXXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding thy sons lying (on the field), Karna of great prowess, filled with great wrath, became hopeless of his life.[1] And Adhiratha's son regarded himself guilty, seeing thy sons slain before his eyes in battle by Bhima.[2] Then Bhimasena, recollecting the wrongs formerly inflicted by Karna, became filled with rage and began with deliberate care to pierce Karna with many keen arrows.[3] Then Karna, piercing Bhima with five arrows, smiling the while, once more pierced him with seventy arrows equipt with golden wings and whetted on stone.[4] Disregarding those shafts shot by Karna, Vrikodara pierced the son of Rādhā in that battle with a hundred straight shafts.[5] And once more piercing him in his vitals with five keen arrows, Bhima, O sire, cut off with a broad-headed arrow the bow of the *Suta's* son.[6] The cheerless Karna then, O Bhārata, taking up another bow, shrouded Bhimasena on all sides with his arrows.[7] Then Bhima, slaying Karna's steeds and charioteer, laughed a loud laugh, having thus counteracted Karna's feats.[8] Then that bull amongst men, *viz.*, Bhima, cut off with his arrows the bow of Karna. That bow, O king, of loud twang and the back of whose staff was decked with gold, fell down (from his hand).[9] Then the mighty car-warrior Karna alighted from his car and taking up a mace in that battle wrathfully hurled it at Bhima.[10] Beholding that mace, O king, impetuously coursing towards him, Vrikodara resisted it with his arrows in the sight of all the troops.[11] Then the son of Pāndu, gifted with great prowess and exerting himself with

great activity, sped a thousand arrows at the *Suta's* son, desirous of taking the latter's life.[12] Karna, however, in that dreadful battle, resisting all those shafts with his own, cut off Bhima's armour also with his arrows.[13] And then he pierced Bhima with five and twenty small shafts in the sight of all the troops. All this seemed exceedingly wonderful.[14] Then, O monarch, Bhima, excited with rage, sped nine straight shafts at the *Suta's* son.[15] Those keen shafts, piercing through Karna's coat of mail and right arm, entered the Earth like snakes into an anthill.[16] Shrouded with showers of shafts shot from Bhimasena's bow, Karna once more turned his back upon Bhimasena.[17] Beholding the *Suta's* son turn back and flying away on foot, covered all over with the arrows of Kunti's son, Duryodhana said,[18]—Go ye quickly from all sides towards the car of Rādhā's son !—Then, O king, thy sons, hearing these words of their brother that were to them a surprise,[19] rushed towards the son of Pāndu for battle, shooting showers of shafts. They were Chitra, and Upachitra, and Chāruchitra, and Carāsana, and and Chitrāyudha, and Chitravarman. All of them were well-versed in every mode of warfare. The mighty car-warrior Bhimasena, however, felled each of those sons of thine thus rushing against him with a single arrow. Deprived of life, they fell down on the Earth like trees uprooted by a tempest.[20-22] Beholding those sons of thine, all mighty car-warriors, O king, thus slain, Karna, with tearful face, recollected the words of Vidura.[23] Mounting upon another car that was duly equipt, Karna, endued with great prowess, quickly proceeded against the son of Pāndu in battle.[24] Piercing each other with whetted arrows equipt with wings of gold, the two warriors looked resplendent like two masses of clouds penetrated by the rays of the sun.[25] Then the son of Pāndu excited with rage, cut off the armour of the *Suta's* son with six and thirty broad-headed arrows of great sharpness and fierce energy.[26] The mighty-armed *Suta's* son also, O bull of Bharata's race, pierced the son of Kunti with fifty straight arrows.[27] The two warriors then, smeared with red sandal paste, with many a wound caused by each other's arrows, and covered also with gore, looked resplendent like the risen sun and the moon.[28]

Their coats of mail cut off by means of arrows, and their bodies covered with blood, Karna and Bhima then looked like a couple of snakes just freed from their sloughs.[29] Indeed, those two tigers among men mangled each other with their arrows like two tigers mangling each other with their teeth. The two heroes incessantly showered their shafts like two masses of clouds pouring torrents of rain.[30] Those two chastisers of foes tore each other's body with their arrows like two elephants tearing each other with the points of their tusks.[31] Roaring at each other and showering their arrows upon each other, those two foremost of car-warriors seemed to sport with each other, causing their cars to trace beautiful circles.[32] They resembled a couple of mighty bulls roaring at each other in the presence of a cow in her season. Indeed, those two lions among men then looked like a couple of mighty lions endued with great prowess.[33] Casting their glances upon each other with eyes red in wrath, those two warriors endued with great energy fought on like Cakra and Virochana's son (Prahlāda).[34] Then, O king, the mighty-armed Bhima, as he stretched his bow with his two hands, looked like a cloud charged with lightning.[35] Then the mighty Bhima cloud, having the twang of the bow for its thunder and incessant showers of arrows for its rainy downpour, covered, O king, the Karna mountain.[36] And once more Pāndu's son Bhima of terrible prowess, O Bhārata, shrouded Karna with a thousand shafts shot from his bow.[37] And as he shrouded Karna with his winged shafts equipt with *Kanka* feathers, thy sons witnessed his extraordinary prowess.[38] Gladdening Pārtha himself and the illustrious Keçava and Sātyaki and the two protectors of the (two) wheels (of Arjuna's car), Bhima fought even thus with Karna.[39] Beholding the prowess, the might of arms, and the perseverance of Bhima who knew his own self, thy sons, O monarch, all became cheerless.' "[40]

SECTION CXXXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing the twang of Bhimasena's bow and the sound of his palms, the son of Rādhā could not brook it like an infuriate elephant incapable of brooking the roars of

an infuriate rival.[1] Returning for a moment from before Bhimasena, Karna cast his eyes upon those sons of thine that had been slain by Bhimasena.[2] Beholding them, O best of men, Karna became cheerless and plunged in grief. Breathing hot and long sighs he once more proceeded against the son of Pāndu.[3] With eyes red as copper, and sighing in wrath like a mighty snake, Karna then, as he shot his arrows, looked resplendent like the Sun scattering his rays.*[4] Indeed, O bull of Bharata's race, Vrikodara was then covered with the arrows, resembling the spreading rays of the Sun, that were shot from Karna's bow.[5] The beautiful shafts, equipt with peacock feathers, shot from Karna's bow, penetrated into every part of Bhima's body like birds into a tree for roosting there.[6] Indeed, the arrows, equipt with wings of gold, shot from Karna's bow, falling incessantly, resembled continuous rows of cranes.[7] So numerous were the shafts shot by Adhiratha's son that these seemed to issue not from his bow alone but from his standard, his umbrella, and the shaft and yoke and bottom of his car also.[8] Indeed, Adhiratha's son shot his sky-ranging shafts of impetuous energy, decked with gold and equipt with vulturine feathers, in such a way as to fill the entire welkin with them.[9] Beholding him (thus) excited with fury and rushing towards him like the Destroyer himself, Vrikodara, becoming utterly reckless of his life and prevailing over his foe, pierced him with nine shafts.†[10] Beholding the irresistible impetuosity of Karna as also that dense shower of arrows, Bhima, endued as he was with great prowess, quailed not in fear.[11] The son of Pāndu then, counteracting that arrowy downpour of Adhiratha's son, pierced Karna himself with twenty other sharp shafts[12] Indeed, as Prithā's son himself had before been shrouded by the *Suta's* son, even so was the latter now shrouded by the former in that battle.[13] Beholding the prowess of Bhimasena in battle, thy

---

* The Bombay reading, which I adopt, seems to be better than the Bengal one.—T.

† I think that both *Vrikodaram* and *niçitais* in this verse as given in the Bombay text are incorrect. I read *Vrikodaras* and *navabhis*, following the Bengal texts.—T.

warriors, as also the *Chāranas*, filled with joy, applauded him.[14] Bhuriçravas, and Kripa, and Drona's son, and the ruler of the Madras, and Jayadratha, and Uttamaujas, and Yudhāmanyu, and Sātyaki, and Keçava, and Arjuna,[15]—these great car-warriors, O king, among both the Kurus and the Pāndavas,—loudly cheered Bhima, saying,—*Excellent, Excellent*,—and uttered leonine roars.[16] When that fierce uproar making the hair to stand on end arose, thy son Duryodhana, O king, quickly said[17] unto all the kings and princes and particularly his uterine brothers, these words, *viz.*,—Blessed be ye, proceed towards Karna for rescuing him from Vrikodara,[18] else the shafts shot from Bhima's bow will slay the son of Rādhā! Ye mighty bowmen, strive ye to protect the *Suta's* son![19]—Thus commanded by Duryodhana, seven of his uterine brothers, O sire, rushing in wrath towards Bhimasena, encompassed him on all sides.[20] Approaching the son of Kunti they covered him with showers of arrows like clouds pouring torrents of rain on the mountain breast in the season of rains.[21] Excited with wrath, those seven great car-warriors began to afflict Bhimasena, O king, like the seven planets afflicting the Moon at the hour of the universal dissolution.[22] The son of Kunti then, O monarch, drawing his beautiful bow with great force and firm grasp,[23] and knowing that his foes were but men, aimed seven shafts. And the lord Bhima in great rage sped at them those shafts effulgent as solar rays.[24] Indeed, Bhimasena, recollecting his former wrongs, shot those shafts as if for extracting the life from out the bodies of those sons of thine.[25] Those arrows, O Bhārata, whetted on stone and equipt with wings of gold, shot by Bhimasena, piercing through the bodies of those Bharata princes, flew into the sky.[26] Indeed, those arrows winged with gold, piercing through the hearts of thy sons, looked beautiful, O monarch, as they passed into the welkin, like birds of excellent plumage.[27] Decked with gold and covered all over with blood, those arrows, O king, drinking the blood of thy sons, passed out of their body.[28] Pierced in their vital limbs by means of those arrows, they fell down on the Earth from their cars like tall trees growing on mountain precipices, broken by elephants.[29] The seven sons of thine that

were thus slain were Catrunjaya, and Catrusaha, and Chitra, and Chitrāyudha, and Dridha, and Chitrasena, and Vikarna.[30] Amongst all thy sons thus slain, Vrikodara the son of Pāndu grieved bitterly from sorrow for Vikarna who was dear to him.[31] And Bhima said,—Even thus was the vow made by me, *viz.*, that all of you should be slain by me in battle! It is for that, O Vikarna, that thou hast been slain! My vow hath been accomplished.[32] O hero, thou camest to battle, bearing in mind the duties of a Kshatriya! Thou wert ever engaged in our good, and especially in that of the king (our eldest brother)![33] It is scarcely proper, therefore, for me to grieve for thy illustrious self!—Having slain those princes, O king, in the very sight of Rādhā's son,[34] the son of Pāndu uttered a terrible leonine roar. That loud shout of the heroic Bhima, O Bhārata, informed king Yudhishthira the just that the victory in that battle was his. Indeed, hearing that tremendous shout of Bhima armed with the bow,[35-36] king Yudhishthira felt great joy in the midst of that battle. The gladdened son of Pāndu then, O king, received that leonine shout of his brother with sounds of drums and other musical instruments. And after Vrikodara had sent him that message by the sign agreed upon, Yudhishthira, that foremost of persons acquainted with weapons, filled with joy, rushed against Drona in battle. On the other hand, O king, beholding one and thirty of thy sons slain, Duryodhana recollected the words of Vidura.—*Those beneficial words spoken by Vidura are now realised!*[37-40]—thinking even so, king Duryodhana was unable to do what he should. All that, during the match at dice, thy foolish and wicked son, with Karna (on his side), said unto the princess of Pānchāla causing her to be brought into the assembly, all the harsh words again that Karna said unto Krishnā, in the same place,[41-42] before thyself, O king, and the sons of Pāndu, in thy hearing and that of all the Kurus,[43] to the effect that—*O Krishnā, the Pāndavas are lost and have sunk into eternal hell, therefore, choose thou other husbands!*—alas, the fruit of all *that* is now mainfesting itself![44] Then again, O thou of Kuru's race, diverse harsh speeches such as sesamum seeds without kernel, &c., were applied by thy wrathful sons

to those high-souled ones, *viz.*, the sons of Pāndu! Bhimasena, vomiting forth the fire of wrath (which these engendered) and which he had restrained for thirteen years, is now compassing the destruction of thy sons![45-46] Indulging in copious lamentations, Vidura failed to incline thee towards peace. O chief of the Bharatas, suffer the fruit of all that with thy son![47] Thou art old, patient, and capable of foreseeing the consequences of all acts. Being so, when thou didst yet refuse to follow the counsels of thy well-wishers, it seems that all this is the result of destiny.[48] Do not grieve, O tiger among men! All this is thy great fault! In my opinion, thou art thyself the cause of the destruction of thy sons![49] O monarch, Vikarna hath fallen, and Chitrasena also of great prowess! Many other mighty car-warriors and foremost ones among thy sons have also fallen![50] Others again among thy sons whom Bhima saw come within the range of his vision, O mighty-armed one, he slew in a trice.[51] It is for thee only that I had to see our army scorched in thousands by means of the arrows shot by Pāndu's son Bhima and Vrisha (Karna)!'"[52]

SECTION CXXXVIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O *Suta*, O Sanjaya, this grievous result that has now overtaken us is, I think, certainly due to my evil policy![1] I had hitherto thought that what is past is past. But, O Sanjaya, what measures should I now adopt?[2] I am now once more calm, O Sanjaya! Therefore, tell me how this slaughter of heroes is going on, having my evil policy for its cause!'[3]

"Sanjaya said,—'Indeed, O king, Karna and Bhima, both endued with great prowess, continued in that battle to pour their arrowy showers like two rain-charged clouds.[4] The arrows winged with gold and whetted on stone and marked with Bhima's name, approaching Karna, penetrated into his body as if piercing into his very life.[5] Similarly Bhima also, in that battle, was shrouded with the shafts of Karna in hundreds and thousands, resembling snakes of virulent poison.[6] With their arrows, O king, falling on all sides, an agitation was

produced among the troops resembling that of the very ocean.[7] Many were the combatants, O chastiser of foes, in thy host that were deprived of life by arrows, resembling snakes of virulent poision, shot from Bhima's bow.[8] Strewn with fallen elephants and steeds mixed with the bodies of men, the field of battle looked like a tract scattered over with trees broken by a tempest.[9] Slaughtered in battle with the arrows shot from Bhima's bow, thy warriors fled away, saying,—*What is this?*[10]—Indeed, that host of the Sindhus, the Sauviras, and the Kauravas, afflicted with the impetuous shafts of both Karna and Bhima, was removed to a great distance.[11] The remnant of those brave soldiers, with their steeds and elephants killed, leaving the vicinity of both Karna and Bhima, fled away in all directions.[12] (And they cried out)—Verily, for the sake of the Pārthas, the gods are stupefying us, since those arrows shot by both Bhima and Karna are slaying our forces.[13] —Saying those words, these troops of thine, afflicted with fear, avoiding the range of (Karna's and Bhima's) arrows, stood at a distance for witnessing that combat.[14] Then on the field of battle there began to flow a terrible river enhancing the joy of heroes and the fears of the timid.[15] And it was caused by the blood of elephants and steeds and men. And covered with the lifeless forms of men and elephants and steeds,[16] with flagstaffs and the bottoms of cars, with the adornments of cars and elephants and steeds, with broken cars and wheels and *Akshas* and *Kuvaras*,[17] with loud-twanged bows decked with gold, and gold-winged arrows and shafts in thousands[18] shot by Karna and Bhima and resembling snakes just freed from their sloughs, with countless lances and spears and scimitars and battle-axes,[19] with maces and clubs and axes all adorned with gold, with standards of diverse shape, and darts and spiked clubs,[20] and with beautiful *çataghnis*, the Earth, O Bhārata, looked resplendent. And strewn all over with ear-rings and necklaces of gold and bracelets loosened (from wrists), and rings, and precious gems worn on diadems and crowns, and head-gears, and golden ornaments of diverse kinds, O sire, and coats of mail, and leathern fences, and elephants' ropes, and umbrellas displaced (from their places), and yak-tails, and fans, with the pierced bodies of elephants

and steeds and men, with blood-dyed arrows, and with diverse other objects, lying about and loosened from their places, the field of battle looked resplendent like the firmament bespangled with stars. Beholding the wonderful, inconceivable, and superhuman feats of those two warriors, the *Chāranas* and the *Siddhas* were exceedingly amazed. As a blazing conflagration having the wind for its ally courses through an (extended) heap of dry grass, even so Adhiratha's son, engaged with Bhima, coursed fiercely in that battle.* Both of them felled countless standards and cars and slew steeds and men and elephants,[21-27] like a pair of elephants crushing a forest of reeds while engaged in battle with each other. Thy host looked like a mass of clouds O king of men, and great was the carnage caused in that battle by Karna and Bhima.' "[28]†

SECTION CXXXIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then Karna, O king, piercing Bhima with three arrows, poured countless beautiful arrows upon him.[1] The mighty-armed Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, though thus struck by the *Suta's* son, showed no signs of pain but stood immovable like a hill pierced (with arrows).[2] In return, O sire, in that battle, he deeply pierced Karna in the ear with a barbed arrow rubbed with oil, of great keenness, and excellent temper.[3] (With that arrow) he felled on the Earth the large and beautiful ear-ring of Karna, And it fell down, O monarch, like a blazing luminary of great effulgence from the firmament.[4] Excited with wrath, Vrikodara then, smiling the while, deeply pierced the *Suta's* son in the centre of the chest with another broad-headed arrow.[5] And once again, O Bhārata, the mighty-armed Bhima quickly sped in that battle ten long shafts that looked like snakes of virulent poison just freed from their sloughs.[6] Shot by Bhima, those shafts, O sire, striking

---

* The sense seems to be that Karna and Bhima were like fire and wind.—T.

† Verse 28 is a triplet. The second line is obscure. It seems that a line has been omitted.—T.

Karna's forehead, entered it like snakes entering an anthill.[7] With those shafts sticking to his forehead, the *Suta's* son looked beautiful as he did before while his brow had been encircled with a chaplet of blue lotuses.[8] Deeply pierced by the active son of Pāndu, Karna, supporting himself on the *Kuvara* of his car, closed his eyes.[9] Soon, however, regaining consciousness, Karna, that scorcher of foes, with his body bathed in blood, became mad with rage.[10]* Infuriate with rage in consequence of his being thus afflicted by that firm bowman, Karna, endued with great impetuosity, rushed fiercely towards Bhimasena's car.[11] Then, O king, the mighty and wrathful Karna, maddened with rage, sped at Bhimasena, O Bhārata, a hundred shafts winged with vulturine feathers,[12] The son of Pāndu, however, disregarding his foe and setting at nought his energy, began to shoot showers of fierce arrows at him.[13] Then Karna, O king, excited with rage, O scorcher of foes, struck the son of Pāndu, that embodiment of wrath, with nine arrows in the chest.[14] Then both those tigers among men, (armed with arrows and, therefore,) resembling a couple of tigers with fierce teeth, poured upon each other, in that battle, their arrowy showers like two mighty masses of clouds.[15] They sought to frighten each other, in that battle, with the sounds of their palms and with showers of arrows of diverse kinds.[16] Excited with rage, each sought in that battle to counteract the other's feat. Then that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the mighty-armed Bhima, O Bhārata, cutting off, with a razor-faced arrow, the bow of the *Suta's* son, uttered a loud shout. Casting off that broken bow, the *Suta's* son, that mighty car-warrior,[17-18] took up another bow that was stronger and tougher. Beholding that slaughter of the Kuru, the Sauvira, and the Sindhu heroes,[19] and marking that the Earth was covered with coats of mail and standards and weapons lying about, and seeing also the lifeless forms of elephants, foot-soldiers and horsemen and car warriors on all sides,[20] the body of the *Suta's* son, from wrath, blazed up with effulgence. Stretching his formidable bow decked with gold,[31] Rādhā's son, O king, eyed Bhima with

* Literally, "mustered all his rage.—T.

wrathful glances. Infuriate with rage, the *Suta's* son, while shooting his arrows, looked resplendent[22] like the autumnal Sun of dazzling rays at mid-day. While employed with his hands in taking up an arrow, fixing it on the bow-string, stretching the string, and letting it off, none could notice any interval between those acts. And while Karna was thus engaged in shooting his arrows right and left, his bow was incessantly drawn to a circle, like a terrible circle of fire. The keen-pointed arrows, equipt with wings of gold, shot from Karna's bow,[23-26] covered, O king. all the points of the compass, darkening the very light of the Sun. Countless flights were seen, in the welkin, of those shafts equipt with wings of gold, shot from Karna's bow. Indeed, the shafts shot from the bow of Adhiratha's son,[27-28] looked beautiful like rows of cranes in the welkin. The arrows that Adhiratha's son shot were all equipt with vulturine feathers, whetted on stone, decked with gold, endued with great impetuosity, and furnished with blazing points. Impelled with the force of his bow, those arrows decked with gold[29-30] fell incessantly towards Bhima's car. Indeed, those gold-decked arrows urged by Karna, while coursing in thousands through the welkin, looked beautiful like successive flights of locusts. The arrows shot from the bow of Adhiratha's son, as they coursed through the welkin, looked like one long continuous arrow in the sky. Like a cloud covering a mountain with torrents of rain,[31-33] Karna, excited with rage, covered Bhima with showers of arrows. Then thy sons, O Bhārata, with their troops, beheld the might, energy, prowess, and perseverance of Bhima, for the latter, disregarding that arrowy downpour resembling the raging sea, rushed in wrath against Karna. Bhima, O monarch, was armed with a formidable bow the back of whose staff was decked with gold.[34-36] He stretched it so quickly that it seemed, like a second bow of Indra, to be incessantly drawn to a circle. Shafts issued continuously from it and seemed to fill the whole welkin.[37] With those straight arrows, equipt with wings of gold, shot by Bhima, a continuous line was made in the sky that looked effulgent like a garland of gold.[38] Then those showers of (Karna's) arrows spread in the welkin, struck by Bhimasena

with his shafts, were scattered in portions and fell down on the Earth.[39] Then the sky was covered with those showers of gold-winged and swiftly-coursing arrows, of both Karna and Bhimasena, that produced sparks of fire as they clashed against each other. The very Sun was then shrouded, and the very air ceased to move.[40-41] Indeed, when the welkin was thus covered with those arrowy showers, nothing could be seen. Then the *Suta's* son, disregarding the energy of the high-souled Bhima, completely shrouded Bhima with other arrows and endeavoured to prevail over him. Then, O sire, those arrowy showers shot by both of them,[42-43] seemed to clash against each other like two opposite currents of wind. And in consequence of that clash of the arrowy showers of those two lions among men,[44] a conflagration, O chief of the Bharatas, seemed to be generated in the sky. Then Karna, desirous of slaying Bhima, sped at him in rage many whetted arrows equipt with wings of gold and polished by the hands of the smith. Bhima, however, cut off with his own shafts every one of those arrows into three fragments,[45-46] and prevailing over the *Suta's* son, he cried out,—*Wait, Wait.!*—And the wrathful and mighty son of Pāndu, like an all-consuming conflagration, once more shot in rage showers of fierce shafts. And then, in consequence of their leathern fences striking against their bow-strings, loud sounds were generated.[47-48] And loud also became the sound of their palms and terrible their leonine shouts and fierce the rattle of their car-wheels and the twang of their bow-strings.[49] And all the combatants, O king, ceased to fight, desirous of beholding the prowess of Karna and the son of Pāndu, each of whom was desirous of slaying the other.[50] And the celestial *Rishis* and *Siddhas* and *Gandharvas*, applauded them, saying,—*Excellent, Excellent !*—And the tribes of *Vidyādharas* rained flowery showers upon them.[51] Then the wrathful and mighty-armed Bhima of fierce prowess, baffling with his own weapons the weapons of his foe, pierced the *Suta's* son with many shafts.[52] Karna also, endued with great might, baffling the shafts of Bhimasena, sped at him nine long shafts in that battle.[53] Bhima, however, with as many arrows, cut off those shafts of the *Suta's* son in the

welkin and addressed him, saying,—*Wait, Wait !*[54]—Then the mighty-armed and heroic Bhima, excited with rage, shot at Adhiratha's son an arrow resembling the rod of Yama or Death himself.[55] Rādhā's son, however, of great prowess, smilingly cut off that arrow, O king, of Pāndu's son, with three arrows of his, as it coursed towards him through the welkin.[56] The son of Pāndu then once more shot showers of fierce shafts. Karna, however, fearlessly received all those arrows of Bhima.[57] Then excited with rage, the *Suta's* son Karna, by the power of his weapons, with his straight arrows, cut off in that encounter the couple of quivers and the bowstring of the battling Bhima as also the traces of his steeds. And then slaying his steeds also, Karna pierced Bhima's charioteer with five shafts.[58-59] The charioteer, quickly running away, proceeded to Yudhāmanyu's car. Excited with rage, the son of Rādhā then, whose splendour resembled that of the *Yuga* fire, smiling the while, cut off the flag-staff of Bhima and felled his banner. Deprived of his bow, the mighty-armed Bhima then seized a dart such as car-warriors may use.[60-61] Excited with wrath, he whirled it in his hand and then hurled it with great force at Karna's car. The son of Adhiratha then, with ten shafts, cut off, as it coursed towards him with the effulgence of a large meteor, that gold-decked dart thus hurled (by Bhima).* Thereupon that dart fell down, cut off into ten fragments by those sharp shafts of the *Suta's* son Karna, that warrior conversant with every mode of warfare, then battling for the sake of his friends. Then the son of Kunti took up a shield decked with gold [62-64] and a sword, desirous of obtaining either death or victory. Karna, however, O Bhārata, smiling the while, cut off that bright shield of Bhima with many fierce shafts. The car-less Bhima, O king, deprived of his shield, became mad with rage.[65-66] Quickly then he hurled his formidable sword at Karna's car. That large sword, cutting off the stringed bow of the *Suta's* son,[67] fell down on the Earth, O king, like an angry snake from the sky. Then Adhiratha's son, excited with rage in that battle, smilingly took up another bow destructive

---

* In the first line of 62, the Bengal reading *Āyastam* is better than the Bombay reading *Āyastas*.—T.

of foes, having a stronger string, and tougher than the one he had lost. Desirous of slaying the son of Kunti, Karna then began to shoot thousands of arrows, O king, equipt with wings of gold and endued with great energy. Struck with those shafts shot from Karna's bow, the mighty Bhima[68-70] leaped into the sky, filling Karna's heart with anguish. Beholding the conduct in battle of Bhima desirous of victory,[71] the son of Rādhā beguiled him by concealing himself in his car. Seeing Karna conceal himself with an agitated heart on the terrace of his car,[72] Bhima, catching hold of Karna's flagstaff, waited on the Earth. All the Kurus and the *Chāranas* highly applauded that attempt of Bhima of snatching Karna away from his car like Garuda snatching away a snake. His bow cut off, himself deprived of car, Bhima, observant of the duties of his order,[73-74] stayed still for battle, keeping his (broken) car behind him. The son of Rādhā then, from rage, in that encounter, proceeded against the son of Pāndu who was waiting for battle. Then those two mighty warriors, O king, challenging, as they approached, each other,[75-76] those two bulls among men, roared at each other like the clouds at the close of summer. And the passage-at-arms that then took place between those two enraged lions among men that could not brook each other in battle resembled that of old between the gods and the *Dānavas*. The son of Kunti, however, whose stock of weapons was exhausted, was (obliged to turn back) pursued by Karna.[77-78] Beholding the elephants, huge as hills, that had been slain by Arjuna, lying (near), the unarmed Bhimasena entered into their midst, for impeding the progress of Karna's car.[79] Approaching that multitude of elephants and getting into the midst of that fastness which was inaccessible to a car, the son of Pāndu, desirous of saving his life, refrained from striking the son of Rādhā.[80] Desirous of shelter, that subjugator of hostile cities, *viz.*, the son of Prithā, uplifting an elephant that had been slain by Dhananjaya with his shafts, waited there[81] like Hanumat uplifting the peak of Gandhamādana.* Karna, however, with his safts, cut off that

* Literally, "a mountain overgrown with medicinal herbs of great

elephant held by Bhima.[82] The son of Pāndu thereupon hurled at Karna the fragments of that elephant's carcase, as also car-wheels and steeds. In fact, all objects that he saw lying there on the field,[83] the son of Pāndu, excited with rage, took up and hurled at Karna. Karna, however, with his sharp arrows, cut off every one of those objects thus thrown at him.[84] Bhima also, raising his fierce fists that were endued with the force of the thunder, desired to slay the *Suta's* son. Soon, however, he recollected Arjuna's vow.[85] The son of Pāndu, therefore, though competent, took not the life of Karna, from desire of not falsifying the vow that Savyasāchin had made.[86] The *Suta's* son, however, with his sharp shafts, repeatedly caused the distressed Bhima to lose his senses.[87] But Karna, recollecting the words of Kunti, took not the life of the unarmed Bhima. Approaching quickly, Karna touched him with the horn of his bow.[88] As soon, however, as Bhimasena was touched with the bow, excited with rage and sighing like a snake, he snatched the bow from Karna and struck him with it on the head.[89] Struck by Bhimasena, the son of Rādhā, with eyes red in wrath, smiling the while, said unto him repeatedly these words,[90] *viz.*, Beardless eunuch, ignorant fool, and glutton.—And Karna said,—Without skill in weapons, do not fight with me! Thou art but a child, a laggard in battle![91] There, O son of Pāndu, where occurs a profusion of edibles and drink, there, O wretch, shouldst thou be but never in battle![92] Subsisting on roots, flowers, and fruits, and observant of vows and austerities, thou, O Bhima, shouldst pass thy days in the woods, for thou art unskilled in battle![93] Great is the difference between battle and the austere mode of a *Muni's* life! Therefore, O Vrikodara, retire into the woods! O child, thou art not fit for engaging in battle. Thou hast an aptitude for a life in the woods![94] Urging cooks and servants and slaves in the house to speed, thou art fit only for reproving them in wrath for the sake of thy dinner, O Vrikodara![95] Or, O Bhima, O thou of a foolish understanding, betaking thyself to a *Muni's* mode of

---

efficacy." Of course, the allusion is to Hanumat's removal of Gandhamādana for the cure of Lakshmana.—T.

life, gather thou fruits (for thy food)! Go to the woods, O son of Kunti, for thou art not skilled in battle![96] Employed in culling fruits and roots or in waiting upon guests, thou art unfit, I think, to take a part, O Vrikodara, in any passage-at-arms![97] —And, O monarch, all the wrongs done to him in his younger years, he was also reminded of by Karna in harsh words.[98] And as he stood there in weakness, Karna once more touched him with the bow. And laughing loudly, Vrisha once more told Bhima these words:[99]—Thou shouldst fight with others, O sire, but never with one like me! They that fight with persons like us have to undergo this and else![100] Go thither where the two Krishnas are! They will protect thee in battle! Or, O son of Kunti, go home, for, a child as thou art, what business hast thou with battle?[101]—Hearing those harsh words of Karna, Bhimasena laughed aloud and addressing Karna said unto him these words in the hearing of all:[102]—O wicked wight, repeatedly hast thou been vanquished by me! How cast thou indulge then in such idle boast? In the world the ancients witnessed the victory and defeat of the great Indra himself![103] O thou of ignoble parentage, engage with me in an athletic encounter with bare arms! Even as I slew the mighty Kichaka of gigantic frame,[104] I would then slay thee in the very sight of all the kings!—Understanding the motives of Bhima, Karna, that foremost of intelligent men,[105] abstained from that combat in the very sight of all the bowmen. Indeed, having made Bhima earless, Karna, O king, reproved him in such boastful language[106] in the view of that lion among the Vrishnis, (*viz.*, Krishna) and of the high-souled Pārtha. Then the ape-bannered (Arjuna), urged by Keçava, sped at the *Suta's* son, O king, many shafts whetted on stone. Those arrows decked with gold, shot by Pārtha's arms and issuing out of *Gāndiva*, entered Karna's body like cranes into the Karauncha mountains. With those arrows shot from *Gāndiva*, which entered Karna's body like so many snakes,[107-9] Dhananjaya drove the *Suta's* son from Bhimasena's vicinage. His bow cut off by Bhima and himself afflicted with the arrows of Dhananjaya,[110] Karna quickly fled away from Bhima on his great car. Bhimasena also, O bull among men, mounting upon Sātyaki's car,[111] proceeded in that

battle in the wake of his brother Savyasāchin the son of Pāndu. Then Dhananjaya, with eyes red in wrath, aiming at Karna, quickly sped a shaft like the Destroyer urging forward Death's self. That shaft sped from *Gāndiva*, like Garuda in the welkin in quest of a mighty snake, quickly coursed towards Karna. The son of Drona, however, that mighty car-warrior, with a winged arrow of his, cut it off in mid-air, desirous of rescuing Karna from the fear of Dhananjaya. Then Arjuna, excited with wrath, pierced the son of Drona with four and sixty[112-15] arrows, O king, and addressing him, said,—Do not fly away, O Açwatthāman, but wait a moment!—Drona's son, however, afflicted with the shafts of Dhananjaya, quickly entered a division of the Kaurava army that abounded with infuriate elephants and that teemed with cars. The mighty son of Kunti then, with the twang of *Gāndiva*, drowned the noise made in that battle by all other twanging bows of staffs decked with gold. Then the mighty Dhananjaya followed from behind the son of Drona who had not retreated to a great distance, frightening him all the way with his shafts. Piercing with his shafts winged with the feathers of *Kankas* and peacocks, the bodies of men and elephants and steeds, Arjuna began to grind that force. Indeed, O chief of the Bharatas, Pārtha the son of Indra began to exterminate that host teeming with steeds and elephants and men.' "[116-20]

SECTION CXL.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Day by day, O Sanjaya, my blazing fame is being darkened! A great many warriors of mine have fallen! I think all this is due to the reverses brought about by time.[1] Dhananjaya, excited with rage, hath penetrated into my host which is protected by Drona's son and Karna, and which, therefore, is incapable of being penetrated by the very gods![2] United with those two of blazing energy, *viz.*, Krishna and Bhima, as also with that bull among the Cinis, his prowess hath been increased![3] Since I have heard of Dhananjaya's entry, grief is consuming my heart like fire consuming a heap of dry grass. I see that all the kings of the Earth with the

ruler of the Sindhus amongst them, are affected by evil destiny.[4] Having done a great wrong to the diadem-decked (Arjuna), how can the ruler of the Sindhus, if he falls within Arjuna's sight, save his life?[5] From circumstantial inference, I see, O Sanjaya, that the ruler of the Sindhus is already dead! Tell me, however, truly how the battle raged![6] Thou art skilled in narration, O Sanjaya, tell me truly how the Vrishni hero Sātyaki fought, who, striving resolutely for Dananjaya's sake, alone entered in rage that vast force, disturbing and agitating it repeatedly, like an elephant plunging into a lake overgrown with lotuses.[7-8]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding that foremost of men, *viz.*, Bhima, proceed, afflicted with Karna's shafts in the midst, O king, of many heroes, that foremost warrior amongst the Cinis followed him on his car.[9] Roaring like the clouds at the close of summer, and blazing like the autumnal Sun, he began to slaughter with his formidable bow the host of thy son, causing it to tremble repeatedly.[10] And as that foremost one of Madhu's race, O Bhārata, thus proceeded along the field on his car drawn by steeds of the hue of silver and himself roaring terribly, none amongst thy warriors could check his progress.[11] Then that foremost of kings, *viz.*, Alamvusha, full of rage, never retreating from battle, armed with bow, and clad in a golden coat of mail, rushing quickly, impeded the progress of Sātyaki, that foremost warrior of Madhu's race.[12] The encounter then, O Bhārata, that took place between them was such that its like had never been. All thy warriors and the enemy, abstaining from the fight, became spectators of that engagement between those two ornaments of battle.[13] Then that foremost of kings, *viz.*, Alamvusha, forcibly pierced Sātyaki with ten arrows. That bull of Cini's race, however, with his shafts, cut off all those arrows before they could reach him.[14] And once more Alamvusha struck Sātyaki with three sharp arrows equipt with beautiful wings, blazing as fire, and shot from his bow drawn to the ear. These, piercing through Sātyaki's coat of mail, penetrated into his body.[15] Having pierced Sātyaki's body with those sharp and blazing arrows endued with the force of fire or the wind, Alamvusha forcibly struck the four steeds

of Sātyaki, white as silver, with four other arrows.[16] The grandson of Cini, endued with great activity and prowess like that of (Keçava himself) the bearer of the discus, thus struck by him, slew with four shafts of great impetuosity the four steeds of Alamvusha.[17] Having then cut off the head of Alamvusha's charioteer, he severed from Alamvusha's trunk the latter's head, beautiful as the full moon and decked with excellent ear-rings, with a broad-headed arrow fierce as the *Yuga* fire.[18] Having slain that descendant of many kings in battle, that bull among the Yadus, that hero capable of grinding hostile hosts, proceeded towards Arjuna, O king, resisting as he went the enemy's troops.[19] Indeed, O king, thus careering in the midst of the foe, the Vrishni hero, while proceeding in the wake (of Arjuna), was seen to repeatedly destroy with his shafts the Kuru host, like the hurricane dispersing gathering masses of clouds.[20] Whithersoever that lion among men desired to go, thither he was borne by those excellent steeds of his, of the Sindhu breed, well-broken, docile, white as vaccine milk or the *Kunda* flower or the moon or the snow, and adorned with trappings of gold.[21] Then, O thou of Ajamida's race, thy sons, uniting with other warriors of thy army, quickly rushed against Sātyaki, making that foremost of warriors, *viz.*, Dusçāsana, their commander.[22] Those leaders of divisions, encompassing the grandson of Cini on all sides in that battle, began to strike him. That foremost one among the Sātwatas, that hero, *viz.*, Sātyaki, also, resisted them all with showers of arrows.[23] Quickly checking all of them by means of his fiery shafts, that slayer of foes, *viz.*, the grandson of Cini, forcibly uplifting his bow, O Ājamida, slew the steeds of Dusçāsana. Then Arjuna, and Krishna, beholding that foremost of men, (*viz.*, Sātyaki) in that battle, became filled with joy.' "[24]

SECTION CXLI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then the great bowmen of the Trigarta country, owning standards decked with gold, encompassed on all sides the mighty-armed Sātyaki, that warrior who accomplished with great activity everything that demanded accomplishment,

and who, having penetrated into that host unlimited as the sea, was rushing against Dusçāsana's car from desire of Dhananjaya's success.[1-2] Checking his course with a large throng of cars on all sides, those great bowmen, excited with rage, covered him with showers of arrows.[3] Having penetrated into the midst of the Bharata army which resembled a shoreless sea, and which, filled with the sound of palms, abounded with swords and darts and maces, Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled, alone vanquished his foes, those fifty (Trigarta) princes shining brilliantly in that battle.[4-5] On that occasion we saw that the conduct of Cini's grandson in battle was extremely wonderful. So great was the lightness (of his movements) that having seen him on the west we immediately saw him in the east.[6] North, South, East, West, in these, and the other subsidiary directions, that hero seemed to career dancingly as if he constituted a hundred warriors in his single self.[7] Beholding that conduct of Sātyaki endued with the sportive tread of the lion, the Trigarta warriors, unable to bear his prowess, fled away towards (the divisions of) their own (countrymen).[8] Then the brave warriors of the Çurasenas endeavoured to check Sātyaki, striking him with showers of shafts like a guide striking an infuriate elephant with the hook.[9] The high-souled Sātyaki struggled with them for a short space of time, and then that hero of inconceivable prowess began to fight with the Kalingas.[10] Transgressing that division of the Kalingas which was incapable of being crossed, the mighty-armed Sātyaki approached the presence of Dhananjaya the son of Prithā.[11] Like a tired swimmer in water when he reaches the land, Yuyudhāna became comforted on obtaining the sight of Dhananjaya, that tiger among men.[12] Beholding him approach, Keçāva, addressing Pārtha, said,—Yonder cometh the grandson of Cini, O Pārtha, following in thy wake![13] O thou of prowess incapable of being baffled, he is thy disciple and friend! That bull among men, regarding all the warriors as straw, hath vanquished them.[14] Inflicting terrible injuries upon the Kaurava warriors, Sātyaki, who is dear to thee as life, cometh towards thee, O Kiritin![15] Having with his shafts crushed Drona himself and Kritavarman of the Bhoja race, this Sātyaki cometh to thee, O Phālguna![16]

Intent on Yudhishthira's good, having slain many foremost of warriors, the brave Sātyaki, skilled in weapons, is coming to thee, O Phālguna![17] Having achieved the most difficult feats in the midst of the (Kaurava) troops, the mighty Sātyaki, desirous of obtaining thy sight, cometh to thee, O son of Pāndu![18] Having on a single car fought in battle with many mighty car-warriors with the preceptor (Drona) for their head, Sātyaki cometh to thee, O Pārtha![19] Despatched by Dharma's son, this Sātyaki cometh to thee, O Pārtha, having pierced through the Kaurava army, relying on the might of his own arms![20] Invincible in battle, that Sātyaki, who hath no warrior amongst the Kauravas equal to him, is coming to thee, O son of Kunti![21] Having slain countless warriors, this Sātyaki cometh to thee, O Pārtha, freed from amid the Kaurava troops like a lion from amid a herd of kine![22] Having strewn the Earth with the faces, beautiful as the lotus, of thousands of kings, this Sātyaki is coming to thee, O Pārtha![23] Having vanquished in battle Duryodhana himself with his brothers, and having slain Jalasandha, Sātyaki is coming quickly![24] Having caused a river of blood with blood for its mire, and regarding the Kauravas as straw, Sātyaki cometh towards thee![25]—The son of Kunti, without being cheerful, said these words unto Keçava,—The arrival of Sātyaki, O mighty-armed one, is scarcely agreeable to me![26] I do not, O Keçava, know how king Yudhishthira the just is! Now that he is separated from Sātwata, I doubt whether he is alive![27] O mighty-armed one, this Sātyaki should have protected the king! Why then, O Krishna, hath this one, leaving Yudhishthira, followed in my wake?[28] The king, therefore, hath been abandoned to Drona. The ruler of the Sindhus hath not yet been slain. There, Bhuriçravas is proceeding against Sātyaki in battle![29] A heavier burthen hath been cast upon me on account of Jayadratha! I should know how the king is, and I should also protect Sātyaki![30] I should also slay Jayadratha! The Sun hangeth low. As regards the mighty-armed Sātyaki, he is tired; his weapons also have been exhausted.[31] His steeds, as also their driver, are tired, O Mādhava! Bhuriçravas, on the other hand, is not tired, He hath supporters behind him,

O Keçava![32] Will success be Sātyaki's in this encounter? Having crossed the very ocean, will Sātyaki of unbaffled prowess,[33] will that bull amongst the Cinis, of great energy, succumb, obtaining (before him) the vestige of a cow's foot?* Encountering that foremost one amongst the Kurus, *viz.*, the high-souled Bhuriçravas skilled in weapons, will Sātyaki have good fortune? I regard this, O Keçava, to have been an error of judgment on the part of king Yudhishthira the just![34-35] Casting off all fear of the preceptor, he hath despatched Sātyaki (from away his side)! Like a sky-ranging hawk after a piece of meat, Drona always endeavoureth after the seizure of king Yudhishthira the just! Will the king be free from all danger?'"[36]

SECTION CXLII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Sātwata, invincible in battle, coming (towards Arjuna), Bhuriçravas, in rage, O king, suddenly advanced towards him.[1] He of Kuru's race then, O king, addressing that bull of Cini's race, said,—By good luck it is that thou hast today come within the range of my vision![3] Today, in this battle, I obtain the wish I had always cherished! If thou dost not fly away from battle, thou wilt not escape me with life![3] Slaying thee today in fight, thee that art ever proud of thy heroism, I will, O thou of Daçārha's race, gladden the Kuru king Suyodhana![4] Those heroes, *viz.*, Keçava and Arjuna, will today together behold thee lying on the field of battle, scorched with my arrows![5] Hearing that thou hast been slain by me, the royal son of Dharma, who caused thee to penetrate into this host, will today be covered with shame![6] Prithā's son Dhananjaya will today behold my prowess when he sees thee slain and lying on the Earth, covered with gore![7] This encounter with thee hath always been desired by me, like the encounter of Cakra with Vali in the battle between the gods and the *Asuras* in days of old![3] Today I will give thee dreadful battle, O Sātwata! Thou shalt thence truly understand (the measure of) my energy, might,

---

* *I. e.*, the little indent caused by a cow's hoof.—T.

and manliness![9] Slain by me in battle, thou shalt today proceed to the abode of Yama like Rāvana's son (Indrajit) slain by Lakshmana the younger brother of Rāma![10] To-day Krishna and Pārtha and king Yudhishthira the just, O thou of Madhu's race, witnessing thy slaughter, will, without doubt, be overcome with despondence and give up battle![11] Causing thy Death today, O Mādhava, with keen shafts, I will gladden the wives of all those that have been slain by thee in battle![12] Having come within the scope of my vision, thou shalt not escape, like a small deer from within the range of a lion's vision![13]—Hearing these words of his, Yuyudhāna, O king, answered him with a laugh, saying,—O thou of Kuru's race, I am never inspired with fear in battle![14] Thou shalt not succeed in terrifying me with thy words only! He will slay me in battle who will succeed in disarming me![15] He that will slay *me* in battle will slay (foes) for all time to come!* What is the use of such idle and long-winded boast in words? Accomplish in deeds what thou sayest![16] Thy words seem to be as fruitless as the roar of autumn clouds! Hearing, O hero, these roars of thine, I cannot restrain my laughter![17] Let that encounter, O thou of Kuru's race, which has been desired by thee so long, take place today! My heart, O sire, inspired as it is with the desire of an encounter with thee, cannot brook any delay![18] Without slaying thee, I shall not abstain from the fight, O wretch!—Rebuking each other in such words, those two bulls among men,[19] both excited with great wrath, struck each other in battle, each being desirous of taking the other's life. Those great bowmen, both endued with great might, encountered each other in battle, each challenging the other,[20] like two wrathful elephants in rut for the sake of a she-elephant in her season. And those two chastisers of foes, *viz.*, Bhuriçravas and Sātyaki, poured[21] upon each other dense showers of arrows like two masses of clouds. Then Somadatta's son, having shrouded the grandson of Cini

---

* The sense is that he that will slay me will always be victorious in battle, will always slay the warriors with whom he may engage in battle. Defeat will never be his.—T.

with swiftly-coursing shafts,[22] once more pierced the latter, O chief of the Bharatas, with many keen shafts, from desire of slaying him. Having pierced Sātyaki with ten shafts, Somadatta's son sped many other keen shafts at that bull amongst the Cinis, from desire of compassing his destruction. Sātyaki, however, O lord, cut off, with the power of his weapons, all those keen shafts of Bhuriçravas, O king, in the welkin, before, in fact, any of them could reach him. Those two heroes, those two warriors that enhanced the fame of the Kurus and the Vrishnis respectively, both of noble lineage, thus poured upon each other their arrowy showers. Like two tigers fighting with their claws or two huge elephants with their tusks,[23-26] they mangled each other with shafts and darts such as car-warriors may use. Mangling each other's limbs, and with blood issuing out of their wounds,[27] those two warriors, engaged in a gambling match in which their lives were at the stake, checked and confounded each other. Those heroes of excellent feats, those enhancers of the fame of the Kurus and the Vrishnis,[28] thus fought with each other like two leaders of elephantine herds. Indeed, those two warriors, both coveting the highest region, both cherishing the desire of very soon attaining the region of Brahman, thus roared at each other. Indeed, Sātyaki and Somadatta's son continued to cover each other with their arrowy showers in the sight of the Dhārtarāshtras filled with joy. And the people there witnessed that encounter between those two foremost of warriors[29-31] who were fighting like two leaders of elephantine herds for the sake of a she-elephant in her season. Then each slaying the other's steeds and cutting off the other's bow,[32] those car-less combatants encountered each other with swords in dreadful fight. Taking up two beautiful and large and bright shields made of bull's hide,[33] and two naked swords, they careered on the field. Stalking in circles and diverse other kinds of courses duly,[34] those grinders of foes, excited with rage, frequently struck each other. Armed with swords, clad in bright armour, decked with curass and *Angadas*,[35] those two famous warriors showed diverse kinds of motion. They wheeled about, and whirled about on high, and made side-thrusts, and jumped forward, and leapt high,

and ran above, and rushed forward, and rushed upwards.[36] And those chastisers of foes began to strike each other with their swords. And each of them looked eagerly for the *laches* of the other. And both those heroes leapt beautifully[37] and both showed their training, lightness of motion, and skill. And those foremost of warriors, in that battle, began also to make skillful passes at each other.[38] And having struck each other, O king, those heroes took rest for a moment in the sight of all the troops.[39] Having with their swords cut into pieces each other's beautiful shield, O king, decked with a hundred moons, those tigers among men, engaged in a wrestling encounter.[40] Both having broad chests, both having long arms, both well-skilled in wrestling, they encountered each other with their arms of iron that resembled spiked maces,[41] And they struck each other with their arms, and seized each other's arms, and each seized with his arms the other's neck. And the skill they had acquired by exercise contributed to the joy of all the warriors that stood as spectators of that encounter.[42] And as those heroes fought with each other, O king, in that battle, loud and terrible were the sounds produced by them resembling the fall of the thunder upon the mountain breast.[43] Like two elephants encountering each other with the ends of their tusks or like two bulls with their horns, those two illustrious and foremost warriors of the Kuru and the Sātwata races, fought with each other, sometimes binding each other with their arms, sometimes striking each other with their heads, sometimes intertwining each other's legs, sometimes slapping their armpits, sometimes pinching each other with their nails, sometimes clasping each other tightly, sometimes twining their legs round each other's loins, sometimes rolling on the ground, sometimes advancing, sometimes receding, sometimes challenging each other, sometimes throwing each other down, sometimes rising up, and sometimes leaping up.[44-46] Indeed, those two mighty combatants showed in that encounter, O Bhārata, all the two and thirty kinds of separate manœuvres and acts that characterise encounters of that kind.[47]

"'When Sātwata's weapons were exhausted during his engagement with Bhuriçravas, Vāsudeva said unto Arjuna,—Be-

hold that foremost of all bowmen, *viz.*, Sātyaki, engaged in battle, deprived of car![48] He hath entered the Bharata host, having pierced through it, following in thy wake, O son of Pāndu! He hath fought with all the Bharata warriors of great energy.[49] The giver of large sacrificial presents, *viz.*, Bhuriçravas, hath encountered that foremost of warriors while tired with fatigue. Desirous of battle, Bhuriçravas is about to encounter the advancing Bhima. It will, O Arjuna, be a very unequal encounter![50]—Then that warrior invincible in battle, *viz.*, Bhuriçravas, excited with wrath, vigorously struck Sātyaki, O king, like an infuriate elephant striking an infuriate compeer.[51] Those two foremost of warriors, both upon their cars and both excited with wrath, fought on, O king, Keçava and Arjuṇa witnessing their encounter.[52] Then the mighty-armed Krishna, addressing Arjuna, said,—Behold, that tiger among the Vrishnis and the Andhakas has succumbed to Somadatta's son![53] Having achieved the most difficult feats, exhausted with exertion, he hath been deprived of his car! O Arjuna, protect Sātyaki, thy heroic disciple![54] See that that foremost of men may not, for thy sake, O tiger among men, succumb to Bhuriçravas devoted to sacrifices! O puissant one, speedily do what is needed![55]—Dhananjaya, with a cheerful heart, addressing Vāsudeva, said,—Behold, that bull amongst the Kurus and that foremost one among the Vrishnis are sporting with each other,[56] like a huge elephant mad with rage sporting with a mighty lion in the forest!—While Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu was thus speaking,[57] loud cries of *oh* and *alas* arose among the troops, O bull of Bharata's race, since the mighty-armed Bhuriçravas, exerting vigorously, struck Sātyaki and brought him down upon the ground.[58] And like a lion dragging an elephant, that foremost one of Kuru's race, *viz.*, Buriçravas, that giver of profuse presents at sacrifices, dragging that foremost one amongst the Sātwatas, looked resplendent in that battle.[59] Then Bhuriçravas, in that encounter, drawing his sword from the scabbard, seized Sātyaki by the hair of his head and struck him at the chest with his feet.[60] Bhuriçravas then was about to cut off from Sātyaki's trunk his head decked with ear-rings. For sometime the Sātwata hero rapidly whirled his head[61] with

the arm of Bhuriçravas that held it by the hair, like a potter's wheel whirled round with the staff.[62] Beholding Sātwata thus dragged in battle by Bhuriçravas, Vāsudeva once more, O king, addressed Arjuna and said,[63]—Behold, that tiger among the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, that disciple of thine, O mighty-armed one, not inferior to thee in bowmanship, hath succumbed to Somadatta's son![64] O Pārtha, since Bhuriçravas is thus prevailing over the Vrishni hero Sātyaki of prowess incapable of being baffled, the very name of the latter is about to be falsified![65]*—Thus addressed by Vāsudeva, the mighty-armed son of Pāndu mentally worshipped Bhuriçravas in that battle,[66] saying,—I am glad that Bhuriçravas, that enhancer of the fame of the Kurus, is dragging Sātyaki in battle, as if in sport.[67] Without slaying Sātyaki, that foremost one among the heroes of the Vrishni race, the Kuru warrior is only dragging him like a mighty lion in the forest dragging a huge elephant![68]—Mentally applauding the Kuru warrior thus, O king, the mighty-armed Arjuna the son of Prithā, replied unto Vāsudeva, saying,[69]—My eyes having rested upon the ruler of the Sindhus, I could not, O Mādhava, see Sātyaki! I shall, however, for the sake of that Yādava warrior, achieve a most difficult feat![70]—Having said these words, in obedience to Vāsudeva, the son of Pāndu fixed on *Gāndiva* a sharp razor-headed arrow.[71] That arrow, shot by Pārtha's hands and resembling a dazzling meteor flashing down from the firmament, cut off the Kuru warrior's arm with the sword in its grasp and decked with *Angada*.'"[72]

SECTION CXLIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'That arm (of Bhuriçravas) decked with *Angada* and holding the sword in its grasp, (thus cut off), fell down on the Earth to the great grief of all living creatures.[1]

---

* I do not render 65 literally. Sātyaki is called "Satyavikrama," *i., e.*, of "true prowess" or "of prowess incapable of being baffled." If he sustains a defeat today at Bhuriçravas's hands, that title of his will be falsified. This is all that Krishna means.—T.

Indeed, that arm, which was to have cut off Sātyaki's head, itself cut off by the unseen Arjuna, quickly dropped down on the Earth like a snake of five heads.[2] The Kuru warrior, beholding himself incapacitated by Pārtha, abandoned his hold on Sātyaki and wrathfully reproved the son of Pāndu.[3]

"'Bhuriçravas said,—Thou hast, O son of Kunti, done a cruel and heartless deed, since without being engaged with me, thou hast, unseen by me, cut off my arm![4] Shalt thou not have to say unto Yudhishthira, the royal son of Dharma, even this, *viz., Bhuriçravas, while otherwise engaged, was slain by me in battle*?[5]—Wert thou taught this use of weapons by the high-souled Indra, or by Rudra, O Pārtha, or by Drona, or by Kripa![6] Thou art, in this world, better acquainted with the rules about the use of weapons than all others! Why then hast thou cut off in battle the arm of a warrior who was not engaged with thee?[7] The righteous never strike him that is heedless or him that is terrified, or him that is made carless, or him that beggeth for life or protection, or him that hath fallen into distress![8] Why then, O Pārtha, hast thou perpetrated such an extremely unworthy deed that is sinful, that is worthy only of a low wretch, and that is practised by only a wicked wight![9] A respectable person, O Dhananjaya, can easily accomplish a deed that is respectable. A deed, however, that is disrespectable becomes difficult of accomplishment by a person that is respectable.[10] A man quickly catches the behaviour of those with whom and amongst whom he moves. This is seen in thee, O Pārtha![11] Being of royal lineage and born, especially, in Kuru's race, how hast thou fallen off from the duties of a Kshatriya, although thou wert of good behaviour and observant of excellent vows![12] This mean act that thou hast perpetrated for the sake of the Vrishni warrior, is, without doubt, conformable to Vāsudeva's counsels! Such an act does not suit one like thee![13] Who else, unless he were a friend of Krishna's, would inflict such a wrong upon one that is heedlessly engaged with another in battle?[14] The Vrishnis and the Andhakas are bad Kshatriyas, ever engaged in sinful deeds, and are, by nature, addicted to censurable behaviour. Why, O Pārtha, hast thou taken them for thy

model?—Thus addressed in battle, Pārtha replied unto Bhuriçravas, saying,*[15]—It is evident that with the decrepitude of the body one's intellect also becomes decrepit, since, O lord, all these senseless words have been uttered by thee![16] Although thou knowest Hrishikeça and myself well, how is it that thou rebukest us thus? Knowing as I do the rules of battles and conversant as I am with the meaning of all the scriptures,[17] I would never do an act that is sinful! Knowing this well, thou rebukest me yet! The Kshatriyas battle with their foes, surrounded by their own followers,[18] their brothers, sires, sons, relatives, kinsmen, companions, and friends. These also fight, relying on the (strength of) arms of those they follow.[19] Why then should I not protect Sātyaki, my disciple and dear kinsman, who is fighting for our sake in this battle, regardless of life itself that is so difficult of being laid down.†[20] Invincible in fight, Sātyaki, O king, is my right arm in battle. One should not protect his own self only, when he goes to battle.[21] He, O king, who is engaged in the business of another, should be protected (by that other). Such men being protected, the king is protected in press of battle.[22] If I had calmly beheld Sātyaki on the point of being slain in great battle (and had not interfered for saving him), sin would then, owing to Sātyaki's death, have been mine for such negligence![23] Why then dost thou became angry with me for my having protected Sātyaki? Thou rebukest me, O king, saying.—*Though engaged with another, I have yet been maimed by thee!*—In that matter, I answer, I judged wrongly. Sometimes shaking my armour, sometimes riding on my car, sometimes drawing the bowstring, I was fighting with my enemies in the midst of a host resem-

---

* This is, as printed in the Bengal texts, a triplet. *Bad Kshatritriyas*, original—*Vrātyās*. A Brāhmana or a Kshatriya or a Vaiçya becomes a *Vrātyas* when the usual scriptural rites are not performed in proper time in respect of his person. He becomes, what is called, a *fallen* person.—T.

† Verse 20 is incomplete. I supply the words,—"Why then should I not protect" in order to make the meaning intelligible. The first line of 21 is grammatically connected with 20. To avoid an ugly construction I render it separately.—T.

bling the vasty deep, teeming with cars and elephants and abounding with steeds and foot-soldiers and echoing with fierce leonine shouts. Amongst friends and foes engaged with one another, how could it be possible that the Sātwata warrior was engaged with only one person in battle? Having fought with many, and vanquished many mighty car-warriors,[24-28] Sātyaki had been tired. His animals also had been tired. He himself, afflicted with weapons, had become cheerless. Having, under such circumstances, vanquished the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki,[29] and brought him under thy control, thou soughtest to display thy superiority! Thou hadst desired to cut off, with thy sword, the head of Sātyaki in battle![30] I could not possibly behold with indifference Sātyaki reduced to that strait!* Thou shouldst rather rebuke thy own self since thou didst not take care of thyself (when seeking to injure another)! Indeed, O hero, how wouldst thou have behaved towards one who is thy dependant?'—[31]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed (by Arjuna), the mighty-armed and illustrious Bhuriçravas bearing the device of the sacrificial stake on his banner, abandoning Yuyudhāna, desired to die according to the vow of *Prāya*.†[32] Distinguished by many righteous deeds, he spread with his left hand a bed of arrows, and desirous of proceeding to the region of Brahman, committed his senses to the care of the deities presiding over them.[33] Fixing his gaze on the Sun, and setting his cleansed heart on the Moon, and thinking of (the *mantras* in) the great *Upanishad*, Bhuriçravas, betaking himself to *Yoga*, ceased to speak.[34] Then all the persons in the entire army began to speak ill of Krishna and Dhananjaya and applaud Bhuriçravas, that bull among men.[35] Though censured, the two Krishnas, however, spoke not a word disagreeable (to the dying hero). The stake-bannered Bhuriçravas also, though thus applauded, felt no joy.[36] Then Pāndu's son Dhananjaya,

* Literally, "who could witness with indifference Sātyaki reduced to that plight?"—T.

† Generally, to die, abstaining from all food. It is a method of freeing the soul from the body by *Yoga*.—T.

called also Phālguna, incapable of bearing thy sons speaking in that strain as also of putting up with their words and the words of Bhuriçravas, O Bhārata, in grief and without an angry heart, and as if for reminding them all, said these words,[37-38]—All the kings are acquainted with this my great vow, *viz.*, that no one shall succeed in slaying anybody that belongs to our side, as long as the latter is within the range of my shafts![39] Remembering this, O stake-bannered one, it behoveth thee not to censure me! Without knowing what is morality, it is not proper for one to censure others.[40] That I have cut off thy arm while thou, well-armed in battle, wert on the point of slaying (the unarmed) Sātyaki, is not at all contrary to morality![41] But what righteous man is there, O sire, that would applaud the slaughter of Abhimanyu, a mere child, without arms, deprived of car, and his armour fallen off?[42]—Thus addressed by Pārtha, Bhuriçravas touched the ground with his head and offered with his left arm the right one (that had been lopped off).[43] The stake-bannered Bhuriçravas, O king, of dazzling effulgence, having heard those words of Pārtha, remained silent, with his head hanging down.[44] Then Arjuna said,—O eldest brother of Cala, equal to what I bear to king Yudhishthira the just, or Bhima, that foremost of all mighty persons, or Nakula, or Sahadeva, is the love I bear to thee![45] Commanded by me as also by the illustrious Krishna, repair thou to the regions of the righteous, even where Civi the son of Uçinara is!—[46]

"'Vāsudeva also said,—Thou hast constantly performed sacrifices and *Agnihotras!* Go thou then, without delay, into those pure regions of mine that incessantly blaze forth with splendour and that are desired by the foremost of deities with Brahman as their head, and becoming equal to myself, be thou borne on the back of Garuda!—'[47]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Set free by Somadatta's son, the grandson of Cini, rising up, drew his sword and desired to cut off the head of the high-souled Bhuriçravas.[48] Indeed, Sātyaki desired to slay the sinless Bhuriçravas, the eldest brother of Cala, that giver of profuse presents in sacrifices, who was staying with his senses withdrawn from battle, who had already

been almost slain by the son of Pāndu,[49] who was sitting with his arm lopped off, and who resembled on that account a trunkless elephant. All the warriors loudly censured him (for his intention). But deprived of reason,[50] and forbidden by Krishna and the high-souled Pārtha, and Bhima, and the two protectors of the two wheels (of Arjuna's car, *viz.*, Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas), and Açwatthāman, and Kripa,[51] and Karna, and Vrishasena, and the ruler of the Sindhus also, and while the soldiers were yet uttering shouts of disapproval, Sātyaki slew Bhuriçravas while in the observance of his vow.[52] Indeed, Sātyaki, with his sword, cut off the head of the Kuru warrior who had been deprived of his arm by Pārtha and who was then sitting in *Prāya* for freeing his soul from the body.[53] The warriors did not applaud Sātyaki for that act of his in slaying that perpetuator of Kuru's race who had before been almost slain by Pārtha.[54] The *Siddhas*, the *Chāranas*, and the men, there present, as also the gods, beholding the Cakra-like Bhuriçravas slain in that battle though sitting in the observance of the *Prāya* vow, began to applaud him, amazed at the acts accomplished by him. Thy soldiers also argued the matter, saying,[55-56] —It is no fault of the Vrishni hero. That which was pre-ordained has happened. Therefore, we should not give way to wrath. Wrath is the cause of men's sorrow.[57] It was ordained that Bhuriçavas would be slain by the Vrishni hero. There is no use of judging of its propriety or otherwise. The Creator had ordained Sātyaki to be the cause of Bhuriçravas's death in battle![58]—

" 'Sātyaki said,—Ye sinful Kauravas, wearing the outward garments of righteousness, ye tell me, in words of virtue, that Bhuriçravas should not be slain![59] Where, however, did this righteousness of yours go when ye slew in battle that child, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, while destitute of arms?[60] I had, in a certain fit of haughtiness vowed that he who would, throwing me down alive in battle, strike me with his foot in rage,[61] *he* would be slain by me even though that foe should adopt the vow of asceticism! Struggling in the encounter, with my arms and eyes whole and sound,[62] ye had yet regarded me as dead! This was an act of folly on your part! Ye bulls among the Kurus, the slaughter of Bhuriçravas, accomplished by me,

hath been very proper![63] Pārtha, however, by cutting off this one's arm with sword in grasp for fulfilling, from his affection for me, his own vow (about protecting all on his side), hath simply robbed me of glory![64] That which is ordained must happen. It is destiny that works! Bhuriçravas hath been slain in press of battle! What sin have I perpetrated?[64] In days of yore Vālmiki sang this verse on Earth, *viz.,—Thou sayest, O ape, that women should not be slain![66] In all ages, however, men should always, with resolute care, accomplish that which gives pain to enemies!—*'[67]

"Sanjaya continued,—'After Sātyaki had said these words, none amongst the Pāndavas and the Kauravas, O king, said anything. On the other hand, they mentally applauded Bhuriçravas.[68] No one there applauded the slaughter of Somadatta's illustrious son who resembled an ascetic living in the woods or one sanctified with *mantras* in a great sacrifice, and who had given away thousands of golden coins.[69] The head of that hero, graced with beautiful blue locks and eyes red as those of pigeons, looked like the head of a horse cut off in a horse-sacrifice and placed on the sacrificial altar.*[70] Sanctified by his prowess and the death he obtained at the edge of the weapon, the boon-giving Bhuriçravas, worthy of every boon, casting off his body in great battle, repaired to regions on high, filling the welkin with his high virtues.' "[71]

SECTION CXLIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Unvanquished by Drona and Rādhā's son and Vikarna and Kritavarman, how could the heroic Sātyaki, never before checked in battle, having after his promise to Yudhishthira crossed the ocean of the Kaurava troops, be humiliated by the Kuru warrior Bhuriçravas and forcibly thrown down on the ground?'[1-2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Hear, O king, about the origin, in past times, of Cini's grandson, and of how Bhuriçravas also came to be descended. This will explain thy doubts.[3] Atri had for

---

* Literally, "near the place assigned for the sacrificial butter."—T.

son Soma. Soma's son was called Vudha. Vudha had one son, of the splendour of the great Indra, called Pururavas.[4] Pururavas had a son called Āyush. Āyush had for son Nahusha. Nahusha had for his son Yayāti who was a royal sage equal to a celestial.[5] Yayāti had by Devayāni Yadu for his eldest son. In Yadu's race was born a son of the name of Devamida.[6] Devamida of Yadu's race had a son named Cura applauded in the three worlds. Cura had for his son that foremost of men, *viz.*, the celebrated Vasudeva.[7] Foremost in bowmanship, Cura was equal to Kārtaviryya in battle. In Cura's race and equal unto Cura in energy was born Cini, O king![8] About this time, O king, happened the self-choice of the high-souled Devaka's daughter, in which all the Kshatriyas were present.[9] In that self-choice, Cini, vanquishing all the kings, quickly took up on his car the princess Devaki for the sake of Vasudeva.[10] Beholding the princess Devaki on Cini's car, that bull among men, *viz.*, the brave Somadatta of mighty energy could not brook the sight.[11] A battle, O king, ensued between the two which lasted for half a day and was beautiful and wonderful to behold. The battle that took place between those two mighty men was a wrestling encounter. That bull among men,[12] *viz.*, Somadatta, was forcibly thrown down on the Earth by Cini. Uplifting his sword and seizing him by the hair, Cini struck his foe with his foot,[13] in the midst of many thousands of kings who stood as spectators all around. At last from compassion he let him off, saying,—Live![14]—Reduced to that plight by Cini, Somadatta, O sire, under the influence of wrath, began to pay his adorations to Mahādeva for inclining him to grace.[15] That great lord of all boon-giving deities, *viz.*, Mahādeva, became gratified with him and asked him to solicit the boon he desired. The royal Somadatta then solicited the following boon, *viz.*,[16]—I desire a son, O divine lord, who will strike Cini's son in the midst of thousands of kings and who will in battle strike him with his foot![17]—Hearing these words, O king, of Samadatta, the god saying,—So be it—disappeared then and there.[18] It was in consequence of the gift of that boon that Somadatta subsequently obtained the highly charitable Bhuriçravas for

son, and it was for this, Somadatta's son threw down Cini's descendant in battle,[19] and struck him, before the eyes of the whole army, with his foot. I have now told thee, O king, what thou hadst asked me.[20] Indeed, the Sātwata hero is incapable of being vanquished in battle by even foremost of men. The Vrishni heroes are all of sure aim in battle, and are conversant with all modes of warfare.[21] They are vanquishers of the very gods, the *Dānavas*, and the *Gandharvas*. They are never confounded. They always fight, relying upon their own energy. They are never dependent on others.[22] None, O lord, are seen in this world to be equal to the Vrishnis! None, O bull of Bharata's race, have been, are, or will be, equal in might to the Vrishnis.[23] They never show disrespect to their kinsmen. They are always obedient to the commands of those that are reverend in years. The very gods and *Asuras* and *Gandharvas*, the *Yakshas*, the *Uragas*, and the *Rākshasas* cannot[24] vanquish the Vrishni heroes, what need be said of men, therefore, in battle? They never covet the possessions of Brāhmanas or their preceptors or their kinsmen.[25] They never covet also the possessions of those that ever render them aid on any occasion of distress. Devoted to the Brāhmanas and truthful in speech, they never display any pride although they are wealthy.[26] Even the strong the Vrishnis regard as weak and rescue them from distress Always devoted to the gods, the Vrishnis are self-restrained, charitable, and free from pride.[27] It is for this that the prowess* of the Vrishnis is never baffled. A person may remove the mountains of Meru, or swim across the very ocean.[28] But no one can, O king, encountering the Vrishnis, prevail over them. I have now told thee everything about which thou hadst thy doubts, O lord! All this, however, O king of the Kurus, that is happening, is due to thy evil policy, O best of men!'"[29]

SECTION CXLV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'After the Kuru warrior Bhuriçravas had been slain under those circumstances, tell me, O Sanjaya, how proceeded the battle!'[1]

---

* Nilakantha explains *chakram* as *pratāpam*.—T.

"Sanjaya said,—'After Bhuriçravas had proceeded to the other world, O Bhārata, the mighty-armed Arjuna urged Vāsudeva, saying,[2]—Urge the steeds, O Krishna, to greater speed for taking me to the spot where king Jayadratha is! O sinless one, it behoveth thee to make my vow true![3] O mighty-armed one, the Sun is quickly proceeding towards the *Asta* hills. O tiger among men, this great task should be achieved by me! The ruler of the Sindhus is, again, protected by many mighty car-warriors among the Kuru army. Urge thou the steeds, therefore, O Krishna, in such a way that I may, by slaying Jayadratha before the Sun sets, make my vow true!—Then the mighty-armed Krishna, conversant with horse-lore, urged those steeds of silvery hue towards the car of Jayadratha. Then, O king, many leaders of the Kuru army, such as Duryodhana and Karna and Vrishasena and the ruler of the Madras and Açwatthāman and Kripa and the ruler of the Sindhus himself, rushed with speed, O king, against Arjuna whose shafts were never baffled and who was proceeding on his car drawn by steeds of great fleetness. Vibhatsu, however, getting at the ruler of the Sindhus who was staying before him,[4-9] and casting his glances upon him, seemed to scorch him with his eyes blazing with wrath. Then king Duryodhana quickly addressed the son of Rādhā. Indeed, O monarch, thy son Suyodhana said unto Karna,[10-11]—O son of Vikartana, that time of battle hath come at last! O high-souled one, exhibit now thy might! O Karna, act in such a way that Jayadratha may not be slain by Arjuna![12] O foremost of men, the day is about to expire. Strike now the foe with clouds of shafts! If the day expire, O foremost of men, victory, O Karna, will certainly be ours![13] If the ruler of the Sindhus can be protected till the setting of the Sun, then Pārtha, his vow falsified, will enter the blazing fire.[14] O giver of honors, the brothers, then, of Arjuna, with all their followers, will not be able to live for even a moment in a world that is destitute of Arjuna![15] Upon the death of the sons of Pāndu, the whole of this Earth, O Karna, with her mountains and waters and forests, we will enjoy without a thorn in our side![16] O giver of honors, it seems that Pārtha, who without ascer-

taining what is practicable and what impracticable, made this vow in battle, was afflicted by destiny itself, his judgment having taken a misdirected course![17] Without doubt, O Karna, the diadem-decked son of Pāndu must have made this vow about the slaughter of Jayadratha for his own destruction![18] How, O son of Rādhā, when thou art alive, will Phālguna succeed in slaying the ruler of the Sindhus before the Sun goes to the Asta hills?[19] How will Dhananjaya slay Jayadratha in battle when the latter is protected by the king of the Madras, and by the illustrious Kripa?[20] How will Vibhatsu, who it seems hath been urged on by Fate, get at the ruler of the Sindhus when the latter is protected by Drona's son, by myself, and by Dusçāsana?[21] Many are the heroes engaged in fight. The Sun is hanging low in the sky. Pārtha will not even get at Jayadratha in battle, O giver of honors![22] Do thou, therefore, O Karna, with myself and other brave and mighty car-warriors, with Drona's son and the ruler of the Madras and Kripa,[23] fight with Pārtha in battle, exerting thyself with the greatest firmness and resolution!—Thus addressed by thy son, O sire, the son of Rādhā[24] replied unto Duryodhana, that foremost one among the Kurus, in these words:—Deeply hath my body been pierced in battle by the brave bowman Bhimasena, capable of striking vigorously, with repeated showers of arrows! O giver of honors, that I am yet present in battle is because that one like me should be present here![25-26] Scorched with the powerful shafts of Bhimasena, every limb of mine is suffering tortures. I shall, however, for all that, fight to the best of my powers. My life itself is for thee![27] I shall strive my best so that this foremost one of the sons of Pāndu may not succeed in slaying the ruler of the Sindhus. As long as I shall fight, shooting my whetted shafts,[28] the heroic Dhananjaya capable of drawing the bow with even his left hand will not succeed in getting at the ruler of the Sindhus! All that a person bearing love and affection to thee and always solicitous of thy good may do,[29] shall be done by me, O thou of Kuru's race! As regards victory, that depends on destiny! I shall in battle today exert myself to my utmost for the sake of the ruler of the Sindhus,[30] and for achieving thy good, O king!

Victory, however, is dependent on destiny! Relying on my manliness, I shall fight with Arjuna today[31] for thy sake, O tiger among men! Victory, however, is dependent on destiny! O chief of the Kurus, let all the troops behold today the fierce battle, making the very hair to stand on end, that takes place between myself and Arjuna!—While Karna and the Kuru king were thus talking to each other in battle,[32-33] Arjuna began, with his keen arrows, to slaughter thy host. With his broad-headed arrows of great sharpness, he began to cut off in that battle the arms, looking like spiked clubs or the trunks of elephants, of unreturning heroes. And the mighty-armed hero also cut off their heads with whetted shafts.[34-35] And Vibhatsu also cut off the trunks of elephants and the necks of steeds and the *Akshas* of cars all around, as also blood-dyed horsemen armed with spears and lances, with razor-faced arrows, into two or three fragments. And steeds and foremost of elephants[36-37] and standards and umbrellas and bows and yak-tails and heads fell fast on all sides. Consuming thy host like a blazing fire consuming a heap of dry grass,[38] Pārtha soon caused the Earth to be covered with blood. And the mighty and invincible Pārtha, of prowess incapable of being baffled, causing an immense slaughter in that army of thine, soon reached the ruler of the Sindhus. Protected by Bhimasena and by Sātwata, Vibhatsu,[39-40] O chief of the Bharatas, looked resplendent like a blazing fire. Beholding Phālguna in that state, the mighty bowmen of thy army, those bulls among men, endued with wealth of energy, could not brook him. Then Duryodhana and Karna and Vrishasena and the ruler of the Madras,[41-42] and Açwatthāman and Kripa and the ruler of the Sindhus himself, excited with wrath and fighting for the sake of the Sindhu king, encompassed the diadem-decked Arjuna on all sides.[43] All those warriors, skilled in battle, placing the ruler of the Sindhus at their back, and desirous of slaying Arjuna and Krishna, fearlessly surrounded Pārtha, that hero conversant with battle, who was then dancing along the track of his car, producing fierce sounds with the bowstring and his palms, and resembling the Destroyer himself with wide-open mouth.[44-45] The Sun then had assumed a red hue in

the sky. Desirous of his (speedy) setting, the Kaurava warriors, bending their bows with arms resembling the (tapering) bodies of snakes,[46] sped their shafts in hundreds, towards Phālguna, resembling the rays of the Sun. Cutting off all those shafts thus sped towards him, into two, three, or eight fragments, the diadem-decked Arjuna, invincible in battle, pierced them all in that encounter. Then Açwatthāman, bearing on his banner the mark of the lion's tail, displaying his might,[47-48] began, O king, to resist Arjuna. Indeed, the son of Caradwat's daughter, piercing Pārtha with ten shafts and Vāsudeva with seven,[49] stayed in the track of Arjuna's car, protecting the ruler of the Sindhus. Then many foremost ones among the Kurus, great car-warriors all, encompassed Arjuna on all sides with a large throng of cars. Stretching their bows and shooting countless shafts,[50-51] they began to protect the ruler of the Sindhus, at the command of thy son. We then beheld the might of arms of the brave Pārtha,[52] as also the inexhaustible character of his shafts, and the power, too, of his bow *Gāndiva*. Baffling with his own weapons those of Drona's son and Kripa,[53] he pierced every one of those warriors with nine shafts. Then Drona's son pierced him with five and twenty arrows, and Vrishasena with seven;[54] and Duryodhana pierced him with twenty, and Karna and Calwa each with three. And all of them roared at him and continued to pierce him frequently.[55] And shaking their bows, they surrounded him on all sides. And soon they caused their cars to be drawn up in a serried line around Arjuna.[56] Desirous of the (speedy) setting of the Sun, those mighty car-warriors of the Kaurava army, endued with great activity, began to roar at Arjuna, and shaking their bows,[57] covered him with showers of keen arrows like clouds pouring rain on a mountain. Those brave warriors, with arms resembling heavy clubs, also displayed on that occasion, O king, on Dhananjaya's body their celestial weapons. Having caused an immense slaughter in thy army, the mighty,[58-59] and invincible Dhananjaya, of prowess incapable of being baffled, came upon the ruler of the Sindhus. Karna, however, O king, with his arrows, resisted him in that battle,[60] in the very sight, O Bhārata, of Bhimasena and Sātwata. The

mighty-armed Pārtha, in the very sight of all the troops, pierced the *Suta's* son, in return, with ten arrows, on the field of battle. Then Sātwata, O sire, pierced Karna with three arrows.[61-62] And Bhimasena pierced him with three arrows, and Pārtha himself, once more, with seven. The mighty car-warrior Karna then pierced each of those three warriors with sixty arrows.[63] And thus, O king, raged that battle between Karna alone (on one side) and the many (on the other). The prowess, O sire, that we then beheld of the *Suta's* son was wonderful in the extreme,[64] since, excited with wrath in battle, he singly resisted those three great car-warriors. Then the mighty-armed Phālguna, in that battle, pierced Karna the son of Vikartana, in all his limbs, with a hundred arrows. All his limbs bathed in blood, the *Suta's* son of great prowess[65-66] and bravery pierced Phālguna in return with fifty arrows. Beholding that lightness of hand displayed by him in battle, Arjuna brooked it not.[67] Cutting off his bow, that hero, *viz.*, Dhananjaya the son of Prithā, quickly pierced Karna in the centre of the chest with nine arrows. Then Dhananjaya, with great speed at a time when speed was necessary, shot in that battle a shaft of solar effulgence for the destruction of Karna.[68-69] Drona's son, however, with a crescent-shaped arrow, cut off that shaft as it coursed impetuously (towards Karna). Thus cut off by Açwatthāman, that shaft fell down on the Earth.[70] Endued with great prowess, the *Suta's* son then, taking up another bow, covered the son of Pāndu with several thousands of arrows.[71] Pārtha, however, like the wind dispersing a flight of locusts, dispelled with his own arrows that extraordinary shower of arrows issuing out of Karna's bow.[72] Then Arjuna, displaying his lightness of hands, covered Karna, in that battle, with his arrows, in the very sight of all the troops.[73] Karna also, that slayer of hosts, desirous of counteracting Arjuna's feat, covered Arjuna with several thousands of arrows.[74] Roaring at each other like two bulls, those lions among men, those mighty car-warriors, shrouded the welkin with clouds of straight shafts.[75] Each rendered invisible by the other's arrowy showers, they continued to strike each other. And they roared at each other and pierced each other with

their wordy darts, saying,—*I am Pārtha, wait!*—or *I am Karna, wait, O Phālguna!*—Indeed, those two heroes fought with each other beautifully, displaying great activity and skill.[76-77] And the sight they presented was such that all the warriors became witnesses of that battle. And applauded by *Siddhas*, *Chāranas*, and *Pannagas*,[78] they fought with each other, O king, each desirous of slaying the other. Then Duryodhana, O king, addressing thy warriors, said,[79]—Carefully protect the son of Rādhā! Without slaying Arjuna he would not abstain from battle! Even this is what Vrisha told me![80]—Meanwhile, O monarch, beholding the prowess of Karna, Arjuna of white steeds, with four shafts shot from the bowstring drawn to the ear, despatched the four steeds of Karna to Yama's domains. And he also felled, with a broad-headed arrow, Karna's charioteer from his niche in the car.[81-82] And he covered Karna himself with clouds of shafts in the very sight of thy son. Thus shrouded with arrows, the steedless and driverless Karna,[83] stupefied by that arrowy shower, knew not what to do. Beholding him made carless, Açwatthāman, O king, caused him to ride on his car, and continued to fight with Arjuna. Then the ruler of the Madras pierced the son of Kunti with thirty arrows.[84-85] Caradwat's son pierced Vāsudeva with twenty arrows. And he struck Dhananjaya also with a dozen shafts.[86] And the ruler of the Sindhus pierced Krishna and Pārtha each with four arrows, and Vrishasena also pierced each of them, O king, with seven arrows.[87] Kunti's son Dhananjaya pierced all of them in return. Indeed, piercing Drona's son with four and sixty shafts, and the ruler of the Madras with a hundred,[88] and the Sindhu king with ten broad headed arrows, and Vrishasena with three arrows, and Caradwat's son with twenty, Pārtha uttered a loud shout.[89] Desirous of baffling the vow of Savyasāchin, thy warriors, excited with wrath, quickly rushed at Dhananjaya from all sides.[90] Then Arjuna, frightening the Dhārtarāshtras, invoked into existence the *Vāruna* weapon on all sides. The Kauravas, however, on their costly cars, pouring showers of arrows, advanced against the son of Pāndu.[91] But, O Bhārata, in course of that stupefying and fierce engagement fraught with

the greatest confusion, that prince, *viz.*, Arjuna, decked with diadem and garland of gold, never lost his senses. On the other hand, he continued to pour showers of arrows.[92] Desirous of recovering the kingdom and recollecting all the wrongs he had suffered for twelve years in consequence of the Kurus, the high-souled and immeasurable Arjuna darkened all the points of the compass with shafts shot from *Gāndiva*.[93] The welkin seemed ablaze with meteors. Innumerable crows, alighting from the skies, perched on the bodies (of dead combatants). Meanwhile Arjuna continued to slay the foe with his *Gāndiva* like Mahādeva slaying the *Asuras* with his *Pināka* equipt with tawny string.*[94] Then the illustrious Kiritin, that subjugator of (hostile) ranks, dispersing the shafts of the foe by means of his own formidable bow, slaughtered with his arrows many foremost ones among the Kurus mounted on their foremost of steeds and elephants.[95] Then many kings, taking up heavy maces and clubs of iron and swords and darts and diverse other kinds of powerful weapons, and assuming terrible forms, rushed suddenly against Pārtha in that battle.[96] Then Arjuna, bending with his arms his formidable bow *Gāndiva* which resembled the bow of Indra himself and whose twang was as loud as the roar of the clouds congregrating at the end of the *Yuga*, and laughing the while, went on consuming thy troops and increasing the population of Yama's kingdom.[97] Indeed, that hero caused those raging warriors with their cars and elephants and with the foot-soldiers and bowmen supporting them, to be deprived of their arms and lives and thus to swell the population of Yama's domains.' "[98]

SECTION CXLVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing the twang, resembling the loud call of Death himself or the frightful peal of Indra's thunder, of Dhananjaya's bow while he stretched it,[1] that host of thine, O king, anxious with fear and exceedingly agitated, became like the waters of the sea with fishes and *makaras* within

---

* The second line of 94 I render a little freely to make the sense clearer.—T.

them, ruffled into mountain waves and lashed into fury by the hurricane that arises at the end of the *Yuga*. Then Dhananjaya the son of Prithā careered in battle in such a way that he was seen[2-3] at the same time to be present in all directions, displaying his wonderful weapons. Indeed, so light-handed was the son of Pāndu that we could not mark when he took out his shafts, O king, when he fixed them on the bow-string, when he stretched the bow, and when he let them off. Then the mighty-armed one, O king, excited with wrath, invoked into existence the invincible *Aindra* weapon, frightening all the Bharatas. Hundreds and thousands of blazing shafts of fiery mouths, inspired by *mantras* with the force of celestial weapons, flowed from it. With those shafts resembling fire or the rays of the Sun, coursing with fierce impetuosity,[4-7] the welkin became incapable of being gazed at as if filled with flashing meteors. Then that darkness which had been caused by the Kauravas with their arrows,[8] which was incapable of being dispersed even in imagination by others, the son of Pāndu, careering around and displaying his prowess, destroyed by means of those shafts of his that were inspired by means of *mantras* with the force of celestial weapons,[9] like the Sun himself speedily dispersing at dawn of day the darkness of night by means of his rays. The puissant Arjuna, with those blazing shafts of his, sucked the lives of thy warriors[10] like the summer Sun sucking with his hot rays the waters of tanks and lakes. Indeed, those showers of shafts endued with the force of celestial weapons, (sped by Arjuna)[11] covered the hostile army like the rays of the Sun covering the Earth. Other arrows of fierce energy, sped (by Dhananjaya),[12] quickly entered the hearts of (hostile) heroes like dear friends. Indeed, those brave warriors that came in that battle before Arjuna,[13] all perished like insects approaching a blazing fire. Thus crushing the lives of his foes and their fame,[14] Pārtha careered in that battle like Death in an embodied form. Heads decked with diadems, massive arms adorned with *Angadas*,[15] and ears with ear-rings, of his foes, Pārtha cut off with his shafts. The arms, with spears, of elephant-riders; those, with lances, of horsemen; those, with shields, of foot-soldiers; those, with

bows, of car-warriors; and those, with whips and goads, of charioteers; the son of Pāndu cut off.[16-17] Indeed, Dhananjaya looked resplendent with his shafts of blazing points that seemed to constitute his rays, like a blazing fire with incessant sparks and rising flames.[18] The hostile kings, mustering all their resolution, could not even gaze at Dhananjaya, that foremost of all bearers of arms, that hero equal to the chief of the gods himself, that bull among men, seen at the same time in all directions on his car, scattering his mighty weapons, dancing in the track of his car, and producing deafening sounds with his bowstring and palms, and resembling the mid-day Sun of scorching rays in the firmament.[19-21] Bearing his shafts of blazing points, the diadem-decked Arjuna looked beautiful like a mighty mass of rain-charged clouds in the season of rains decked with a rain-bow.[22] When that prefect flood of mighty weapons was set in motion by Jishnu, many bulls among warriors sank in that frightful and unfordable flood.[23] Strewn with infuriate elephants whose trunks or tusks had been cut off, with steeds deprived of hoofs or necks, with cars reduced to pieces, with warriors having their entrails drawn out and others with legs or other limbs cut off, with bodies lying in hundreds and thousands that were either perfectly still or moving unconsciously, we beheld the vast field on which Pārtha battled resemble the coveted arena of Death, O king, enhancing the terrors of the timid,[24-27] or like the sporting ground of Rudra when he destroyed creatures in days of old. Portions of the field, strewn with the trunks of elephants cut off with razor-headed arrows, looked as if strewn with snakes. Portions again, covered with the cut-off heads of warriors, looked as if strewn with garlands of lotuses. Variegated with beautiful head-gears and crowns, with *Keyuras* and *Angadas* and ear-rings, with coats of mail decked with gold, and with the trappings and other adornments of elephants and steeds, and scattered over with hundreds of diadems lying here and there, the Earth looked exceedingly beautiful like a new bride. Dhananjaya then caused a fierce and terrible river, full of fearful objects and enhancing the fears of the timid, to flow resembling the Vaitarani itself. The marrow and fat (of men and animals)

formed its mire. Blood formed its current. Full of limbs and bones, it was fathomless in depth. The hair of creatures formed its moss and weeds. Heads and arms formed the stones on its shores. It was decked with standards and banners that variegated its aspect. Umbrellas and bows formed its waves. And it abounded with the bodies of huge elephants deprived of life. And it teemed with cars that formed hundreds of rafts floating on its surface. And the carcasses of countless steeds formed its banks. And it was difficult to cross in consequence of wheels and yokes and shafts and *Akshas* and *Kuvaras* of cars, and spears and swords and darts and battle-axes and shafts looking like snakes. And ravens and *kankas* formed its alligators. And jackalls, forming its *Makaras*, made it terrible. And fierce vultures formed its sharks. And it became frightful in consequence of the howls of jackalls. And it abounded with capering ghosts and *Piçāchas* and thousands of other kinds of spirits. And on it floated countless bodies of warriors destitute of life. Beholding that prowess of Arjuna whose visage then resembled that of the Destroyer himself,[28-38] a panic, such as had never occurred before, possessed the Kurus on the field of battle. The son of Pāndu then, baffling with his weapons those of the hostile heroes,[39] and engaged in achieving fierce feats, gave all to understand that he was a warrior of fierce feats. Then Arjuna transgressed all those foremost of car-warriors.[40] Like the midday Sun of scorching rays in the firmament, no one amongst the creatures there could even look at him.[41] The shafts issuing out of the bow *Gāndiva* of that illustrious hero in that battle, seemed to us to resemble rows of cranes in the welkin.[42] Baffling with his own the weapons of all those heroes, and showing by the terrible achievements in which he was engaged that he was a warrior of fierce feats,[43] Arjuna, desirous of slaying Jayadratha, transgressed all those foremost of car-warriors, stupefying them all by means of his shafts.[44] Shooting his shafts on all sides, Dhananjaya, having Krishna for his charioteer, presented a beautiful sight by careering with great speed on the field of battle.[45] The shafts, in the welkin, by hundreds and thousands, of that illustrious hero, seemed to course incessantly through the sky.[46] We never could notice when that mighty

bowman took out his shafts, when, indeed, that son of Pāndu aimed them, and when he let them off.[47] Then, O king, filling all the points of the compass with his shafts and afflicting all the car-warriors in battle, the son of Kunti proceeded towards Jayadratha,[48] and pierced him with four and sixty straight arrows. Then the Kuru warriors, beholding the son of Pāndu proceed towards Jayadratha,[49] all abstained from battle. In fact, those heroes became hopeless of Jayadratha's life. Every one amongst thy warriors that rushed in that fierce battle against the son of Pāndu,[50] had his body deeply pierced, O lord, with a shaft of Arjuna. The mighty car-warrior Arjuna, that foremost of victorious persons, with his shafts blazing as fire, made thy army teem with headless trunks.* Indeed, O king, thus creating a perfect confusion in thy host consisting of four kinds of forces, the son of Kunti proceeded towards Jayadratha. And he pierced the son of Drona with fifty shafts and Vrishasena with three.[51-53] And the son of Kunti mildly struck Kripa with nine arrows. And he struck Calya with sixteen arrows and Karna with two and thirty.[54] And piercing the ruler of the Sindhus then with four and sixty arrows, he uttered a leonine shout. The ruler of the Sindhus, however, thus pierced by the wielder of *Gāndiva* with his arrows,[55] became filled with rage and unable to brook it like an elephant when pierced with the hook. Bearing the device of the boar on his banner, he quickly sped towards Phālguna's car many straight shafts equipt with vulturine feathers, resembling angry snakes of virulent poison, well polished by the hands of the smith, and shot from his bow drawn to the fullest stretch.[56-57] Then piercing Govinda with three shafts, he struck Arjuna with six. And then he pierced the steeds of Arjuna with eight arrows, and his standard also with one.[58] Then Arjuna, baffling the keen arrows sped by the ruler of the Sindhus, cut off, at the same time, with a pair of shafts, the head of Jayadratha's driver and the well-decked standard

---

* A *Kavandha* is a headless trunk moving about as if endued with life. Tales are told of these headless beings drinking the blood of victims falling within their grasp.—T.

also of Jayadratha. Its stay cut off and itself pierced and struck with arrows, that standard fell down like a flame of fire. Meanwhile the Sun was going down quickly.[59-61] Janārddana then quickly addressed the son of Pāndu and said,—Behold, O Pārtha, the ruler of the Sindhus hath, by six mighty and heroic car-warriors, been placed in their midst![62] Jayadratha also, O mighty-armed one, is waiting there in fear! Without vanquishing those six car-warriors in battle, O bull among men[63] thou wilt never be able to slay the ruler of the Sindhus even if thou exertest thyself without intermission! I shall, therefore, have recourse to *Yoga* for shrouding the Sun![64] Only the ruler of the Sindhus will (in consequence) behold the Sun to have set. Desirous of life, O lord, through joy that wicked wight will no longer, for his destruction, conceal himself. Availing of that opportunity, thou shouldst then, O best of the Kurus, strike him![65-66] Thou shouldst not give up the enterprise, thinking the Sun to have really set!—Hearing these words, Vibhatsu replied unto Keçava, saying,—Let it be so![67]—Then Krishna, otherwise called Hari, possessed of ascetic powers,—that lord of all ascetics,—having recourse to *Yoga*, created a darkness for shrouding the Sun.[68] When Krishna created that darkness, thy warriors, O king, thinking the Sun to have set, were filled with delight at the prospect of Pārtha's laying down his life.[69] Indeed, thy warriors, not seeing the Sun, were filled with gladness. All of them stood, with heads thrown backwards. King Jayadratha also was in the same attitude.[70] And while the ruler of the Sindhus was thus beholding the Sun, Krishna, once more addressing Dhananjaya, said these words:[71]—Behold, the heroic ruler of the Sindhus is now looking at the Sun, casting off his fear of thee, O foremost one among the Bharatas![72] This is the hour, O mighty-armed one, for the slaughter of that wicked-souled wretch! Speedily cut off his head and make thy vow true![73]—Thus addressed by Keçava, the valiant son of Pāndu began to slaughter thy host with his arrows resembling the Sun or the fire in splendour.[74] And he pierced Kripa with twenty arrows and Karna with fifty. And he struck Calya and Duryodhana each with six arrows.[75] And he pierced Vrishasena with eight

arrows and the ruler of the Sindhus himself with sixty. And the mighty-armed son of Pāndu, O king, deeply piercing with his arrows the other warriors of thy host, rushed against Jayadratha. Beholding him in their presence like a swelling fire with its tongue of flame outstretched,[76-77] the protectors of Jayadratha were sorely puzzled. Then all thy warriors, O king, desirous of victory,[78] bathed the son of Indra in that battle with torrents of arrows. Shrouded with incessant showers of arrows, the son of Kunti,[79] that mighty-armed and unvanquished descendant of Kuru, became filled with rage. Then that tiger among men, *viz.*, the son of Indra, desirous of slaughtering thy host, created a thick net of arrows. Then those warriors of thine, O king, thus slaughtered in battle by that hero,[80-81] abandoned the ruler of the Sindhus in fear and fled away. And they fled away in such a manner that no two persons could be seen flying together. The prowess that we then beheld of Kunti's son was extremely wonderful.[82] Indeed, the like of what that illustrious warrior then did had never been nor will ever be. Like Rudra himself slaughtering creatures, Dhananjaya slaughtered elephants and elephant-riders, horses and horse-riders, and (car-warriors and) car-drivers. I did not in that battle, O king, see a single[83-84] elephant or steed or human warrior that was not struck with Pārtha's shafts. Their vision destroyed by dust and darkness, thy warriors[85] became perfectly cheerless and unable to distinguish one another. Urged on by fate, and with their vital limbs cut open and mangled with shafts, thy soldiers,[86] began to wander or limp or fall down. And some amongst them, O Bhārata, became paralysed and some became deadly pale. During that terrible carnage resembling the slaughter of creatures at the end of the *Yuga*,[87] in that deadly and fierce battle from which few could escape with life, the Earth became drenched with gore and the earthy dust that had arisen disappeared in consequence of the showers of blood that fell and the swift currents of wind that blew over the field. So deep was that rain of blood that the wheels of cars sank to their naves.[88-89] Thousands of infuriate elephants endued with great speed, O king, of thy army, their riders slain and limbs mangled,[90] fled away, uttering cries of

pain and crushing friendly ranks with their tread. Steeds destitute of riders, and foot-soldiers also, O king,[91] fled away, O monarch, from fear, struck with the shafts of Dhananjaya. Indeed, thy soldiers, with dishevelled hair and deprived of their coats of mail, with blood streaming out of their wounds, fled away in terror, leaving the field of battle. And some, deprived of the power of motion as if their lower limbs had been seized by alligators, remained on the field.[92-93] And others concealed themselves behind and under the bodies of slain elephants. Routing thy host thus, O king, Dhananjaya[94] began to strike with terrible shafts the protectors of the ruler of the Sindhus. The son of Pāndu shrouded with his arrowy showers Karna and Drona's son and Kripa and Calya and Vrishasena and Duryodhana. So quick was he in the use of weapons that no one could mark when Arjuna took out his arrows, when he fixed them on the bowstring, when he stretched the bow and let them off. Indeed, while striking the foe, his bow was seen incessantly drawn to a circle.[95-97] His arrows also were seen incessantly issuing out of his bow and scattered in all directions. Then cutting off Karna's bow as also Vrishasena's,[98] Arjuna felled Calya's driver from his niche in the car, with a broad-headed arrow. With many arrows that foremost of victors, *viz.*, Dhananjaya, then deeply pierced in that battle Kripa and Açwatthāman, related as uncle and nephew to each other. Sorely afflicting those mighty car-warriors of thy army thus,[99-100] the son of Pāndu took up a terrible arrow of fiery splendour. Looking like the thunderbolt of Indra, and inspired with divine *mantras*,[101] that formidable arrow was capable of bearing any strain. And it had been always worshipped with perfumes and garlands of flowers. Duly inspiring it (by *mantras*) with the force of the thunderbolt, that descendant of Kuru,[102] *viz.*, the mighty-armed Arjuna, fixed it on *Gāndiva*. When that arrow of fiery effulgence was fixed on the bowstring,[103] loud shouts, O king, were heard in the welkin. Then Janārddana, once more addressing Arjuna, quickly said,[104] —O Dhananjaya, quickly cut off the head of the wicked-souled ruler of the Sindhus! The Sun is about to get at the mountains of *Asta*![105] Listen, however, to the words I say about

the slaughter of Jayadratha! The father of Jayadratha is Vriddhakshatra known over all the world.[106] It was after a long time that he got Jayadratha, that slayer of foes, for his son. (At the birth of the son) an incorporeal and invisible voice, deep as that of the clouds or the drum, said unto king Vriddhakshatra,—[This thy son, O lord, amongst men in this world will become worthy of the two races (*viz.*, the Solar and the Lunar) in respect of blood, behaviour, self-restraint and the other attributes! He will become one of the foremost of Kshatriyas, and will always be worshipped by heroes![107-9] But while struggling in battle, some bull among the Kshatriyas, some conspicuous person in the world, excited with wrath, will cut off this one's head![110]—That chastiser of foes, *viz.*, the (old) ruler of the Sindhus, hearing these words, reflected for sometime. Overwhelmed with affection for his son, he summoned all his kinsmen and told them,[111]—[That man who will cause the head of my son to fall on the Earth while the latter, struggling in battle, will be bearing a great burthen,[112] I say that the head of that man will certainly crack into a hundred pieces!]—Having spoken these words and installed Jayadratha on the throne,[113] Vriddhakshatra, repairing to the woods, devoted himself to ascetic austerities. Endued with great energy, he is still engaged in the observance of the austerest of penances[114] outside this very *Samantapanchaka*, O ape-bannered one! Therefore, cutting off Jayadratha's head in this dreadful battle, thou,[115] O slayer of foes, shouldst, O Bhārata, by thy fierce celestial weapon of wonderful feats, quickly throw that head decked with ear-rings upon the lap of Vriddhakshatra himself, O younger brother of the son of the Wind-god! If thou fellest Jayadratha's head on the Earth,[116-17] thy own head then, without doubt, will crack into a hundred fragments! Aided by thy celestial weapon, do the deed in such a way that that lord of Earth, *viz.*, the old Sindhu king, may not know that it is done! Truly, O Arjuna, there is nothing in the three worlds which thou canst not achieve or do, O son of Vāsava!—Hearing these words (of Krishna), Dhananjaya, licking the corners of his mouth,[118-20] quickly sped that arrow which he had taken up for Jayadratha's

slaughter, that arrow, *viz.*, whose touch resembled that of Indra's thunder, which was inspired with *mantras* and converted into a celestial weapon, which was capable of bearing any strain, and which had always been worshipped with perfumes and garlands. That shaft, sped from *Gāndiva*, coursing swiftly, snatched Jayadratha's head away like a hawk snatching away a smaller bird from the top of a tree. Dhananjaya then, with his shafts, sped that head along in the welkin (without allowing it to fall down).[121-23] For grieving his foes and gladdening his friends, the son of Pāndu, by shooting his shafts repeatedly at it,[124] sped that head outside the limits of *Samantapanchaka*. Meanwhile king Vriddhakshatra,[125] the father of thy son-in-law, endued with great energy, was, O sire, engaged in his evening prayers. Decked with black locks and adorned with ear-rings, that head of Jayadratha was thrown upon Vriddhakshatra's lap as the latter was saying his prayers in a sitting posture. Thus thrown on his lap, that head decked with ear-rings, O chastiser of foes, was not seen by king Vriddhakshatra. As the latter, however, stood up after finishing his prayers, it suddenly fell down on the Earth. And as the head of Jayadratha fell down on the Earth, the head of old Vriddhakshatra, O chastiser of foes, cracked into a hundred pieces. At sight of this, all creatures were filled with wonder.[126-30] And all of them applauded Vāsudeva and the mighty Vibhatsu.

"'After, O king, the ruler of the Sindhus had been slain by the diadem decked Arjuna,[131] that darkness, O bull of Bharata's race, was withdrawn by Vāsudeva. Thy sons with their followers, O king, thus came to know subsequently that the darkness they had seen had all been an illusion produced by Vāsudeva. Even thus, O king, was thy son-in-law, the ruler of the Sindhus, having caused eight *Akshauhinis* to be slaughtered, himself slain by Pārtha of inconceivable energy! Beholding Jayadratha, the ruler of the Sindhus, slain,[132-34] tears of sorrow fell from the eyes of thy sons. After Jayadratha, O king, had been slain by Pārtha, Keçava[135] blew his conch and that scorcher of foes, *viz.*, the mighty-armed Arjuna also blew his. Bhimasena also, in that battle, as if for sending

a message to Yudhishthira,[136] filled the welkin with a tremendous leonine shout. Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, hearing that tremendous shout,[137] understood that the ruler of the Sindhus had been slain by the high-souled Phālguna. With sounds of drums and other instruments he gladdened the warriors of his own army,[138] and proceeded against the son of Bharadwāja from desire of battle. Then commenced, O king, after the Sun had set, a fierce battle between Drona and the Somakas, that made the very hair to stand on end. Desirous of slaying him, those mighty car-warriors, after the fall of Jayadratha, fought with the son of Bharadwāja, exerting themselves to their utmost. Indeed, the Pāndavas, having got the victory by slaying the ruler of the Sindhus,[139-141] fought with Drona, intoxicated with success. Arjuna also, O king, having slain king Jayadratha, fought with many mighty car-warriors of thy army.[142] Indeed, that hero decked with diadem and garlands, having accomplished his former vow, began to destroy his foes like the chief of the celestials destroying the *Dānavas* or the Sun destroying the darkness.' "[143]

SECTION CXLVII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, what did my warriors do, after the heroic ruler of the Sindhus had been slain by Arjuna!'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the ruler of the Sindhus, O sire, slain in battle by Pārtha, Kripa the son of Caradwat, under the influence of wrath,[2] covered the son of Pāndu with a dense shower of arrows. Drona's son also, on his car, rushed against Phālguna the son of Prithā.[3] Those two foremost of car-warriors began from their cars to shower, from opposite directions, upon the son of Pāndu their keen arrows.[4] That foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, the mighty-armed Arjuna, afflicted by those arrowy showers (of Kripa and Drona's son) felt great pain.[5] Without desiring, however, to slay his preceptor (Kripa) as also the son of (his other preceptor) Drona, Dhananjaya the son of Kunti began to act like a preceptor in arms.[6] Baffling with his own weapons those of both Açwatthāman and Kripa,

he sped at them, without desiring to slay them, shafts that coursed mildly.[7] Those shafts, however, (though mildly) sped by Jaya, struck the two with great force, and in consequence of their number, caused great pain to Kripa and his nephew.[8] Then Caradwat's son, O king, thus afflicted with the arrows of Arjuna, lost all strength and swooned away on the terrace of his car.[9] Understanding his master afflicted with shafts to be deprived of his senses, and believing him to be dead, the driver of Kripa's car bore Kripa away from the fight.[10] And after Kripa the son of Caradwat had thus been borne away from the battle, Açatthāman also, from fear, fled away from the son of Pāndu.[11] Then the mighty bowman Pārtha, beholding the son of Caradwat afflicted with shafts and in a swoon, began to indulge, on his car, in piteous lamentations.[12] With a tearful face and in great dejection of heart, he uttered these words:—Beholding all this (in his mental vision), Vidura of great wisdom had, on the birth of the wretched Suyodhana, that exterminater of his race, said unto Dhritarāshtra,—[Let this wretch of his race be soon killed.[13-14] Owing to him, a great calamity will overtake the foremost ones of Kuru's race !]—Alas, these words of the truth-telling Vidura have come to be true![15] It is for him that I behold my preceptor today lying on a bed of arrows! Fie on the practices of a Kshatriya! Fie on my might and prowess![16] Who else like me would fight with a Brāhmana that is, besides, his preceptor? Kripa is the son of a *Rishi*; he is, again, my preceptor; he is also the dear friend of Drona![17] Alas, he lieth stretched on the terrace of his car, afflicted with my arrows! Though not wishing it, I have still been the means of crushing him with my shafts![18] Lying senseless on the terrace of his car, he paineth my heart exceedingly! Even though he afflicted me with shafts I should still have only looked at that warrior of dazzling splendour (without striking him in return)![19] Struck with numerous shafts of mine, he hath gone the way of all creatures! By that he hath pained me more than even the slaughter of my own son![20] Behold, O Krishna, to what plight he hath been reduced, thus lying miserably and in a senseless state on his own car! Those bulls among men that give desirable objects

unto their preceptors after obtaining knowledge from them, attain to godhead! Those lowest of mortals, on the other hand, who, after obtaining knowledge from their preceptors,[21-22] strike the latter, those wicked men, go to hell! Without doubt, this act that I have done will lead me to hell![23] I have deeply pierced my preceptor on his car with showers of arrows! While studying the science of arms at his feet, Kripa told me in those days,[24]—[Do not, O thou of Kuru's race, ever strike thy preceptor!]—That command of my righteous and high-souled preceptor[25] I have not obeyed, for I have struck the very Kripa with my shafts! I bow to that worshipful son of Gotama, to that unretreating hero![26] Fie on me, O thou of Vrishni's race, since I have struck even him!—While Savyasāchin was thus lamenting for Kripa,[27] the son of Rādhā, beholding the ruler of the Sindhus slain, rushed towards him. Seeing the son of Rādhā thus rushing towards the car of Arjuna,[28] the two Pānchāla princes and Sātyaki suddenly rushed towards him. The mighty car-warrior Pārtha, beholding the son of Rādhā advance,[29] smilingly addressed the son of Devaki and said,—Yonder cometh the son of Adhiratha against the car of Sātyaki![30] Without doubt, he is unable to bear the slaughter of Bhuriçravas in battle! Urge my steeds, O Janārddana, towards the spot whither Karna cometh![31] Let not Vrisha (Karna) cause the Sātwata hero to follow in the wake of Bhuriçravas!—Thus addressed by Savyasāchin, the mighty-armed Keçava[32] endued with great energy replied in these opportune words:—The mighty-armed Sātyaki is singly a match for Karna, O son of Pāndu![33] How much superior then will this bull among the Sātwatas be when he is united with two sons of Drupada! For the present, O Pārtha, it is not proper for thee to battle with Karna![34] The latter hath with him the blazing dart, like a fierce meteor, that Vāsava gave him! O slayer of hostile heroes, he hath kept it for thy sake, worshipping it with reverence![35] Let Karna then freely proceed against the Sātwata hero! I know, O son of Kunti, this wicked wight's hour, when, indeed, thou wilt, with keen shafts, throw him down from his car![36]—'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, how the battle

took place between the heroic Karna and Sātyaki of the Vrishni race, after the fall of Bhuriçravas and the ruler of the Sindhus! Sātyaki had been made carless. Upon what car then was he mounted? And how also did the two protectors of the wheels (of Arjuna's car), *viz.*, the two Pānchāla princes, fight?'[37-38]

"Sanjaya said,—'I will describe to thee all that happened in that dreadful battle. Listen patiently to (the consequences of) thy own evil conduct![39] Before even the encounter, Krishna knew it in his heart that the heroic Sātyaki would be vanquished by the stake-bannered (Bhuriçravas)![40] Janārddana, O king, knoweth both the past and the future. For this, summoning his charioteer Dāruka, he had commanded him, saying,[41]—Let my car be equipt tomorrow!—Even this had been the command of that mighty one. Neither the gods, nor the *Gandharvas*, nor the *Yakshas*, nor the *Uragas*, nor the *Rākshasas*,[42] nor human beings, are capable of conquering the two Krishnas! The gods with the Grandsire at their head, as also the *Siddhas*, know[43] the incomparable prowess of those two. Listen, however, now to the battle as it happened. Beholding Sātyaki carless and Karna ready for battle,[44] Mādhava blew his conch of loud blare in the *Rishabha* note.* Dāruka, hearing the blare of (Keçava's) conch, understood the meaning,[45] and soon took that car, equipt with a lofty standard of gold, to where Keçava was. With Keçava's permission, upon that car guided by Dāruka,[46] and which resembled the blazing fire or the Sun in effulgence, ascended the grandson of Cini. Ascending upon that car which resembled a celestial vehicle and unto which were yoked those foremost of steeds, capable of going everywhere at will, *viz.*, Caivya and Sugriva and Meghapushha Valāhaka, and which were adorned with trappings of gold,[47-48] Sātyaki rushed against the son of Rādhā, scattering countless shafts. The two protectors of (Arjuna's) car-wheels, *viz.*, Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas,[49] abandoning Dhananjaya's car, proceeded against the son of Rādhā. Rādhā's son also, O king, shooting showers of shafts,[50] angrily

* The second of the seven notes of the Hindu Gamut.—T.

rushed, in that battle, against the invincible grandson of Cini. The battle that took place between them was such that its like had never been heard to have taken place on Earth or in heaven between gods, *Gandharvas*, *Asuras*, *Uragas*, or *Rākshasas*. The entire host, consisting of cars, steeds, men, and elephants, abstained from the fight,[51-52] beholding, O monarch, the stunning feats of the two warriors. All became silent spectators of that superhuman battle[53] between those two human heroes, O king, and of the skill of Dāruka in guiding the car. Indeed, beholding the skill of the charioteer Dāruka standing on the car, as he guided the vehicle forwards, backwards, sidelong, now wheeling in circles and now stopping outright, all were amazed. The gods, the *Gandharvas*, and the *Dānavas*, in the welkin,[54-55] intently watched that battle between Karna and the grandson of Cini. Both of them endued with great might, each challenging the other, those two warriors put forth their prowess for the sake of their friends.[56] Karna who looked like a celestial, and Yuyudhāna, O king, rained upon each other showers of shafts.[57] Indeed, Karna grinded the grandson of Cini with his arrowy downpours, unable to put up with the slaughter (by Sātyaki) of the Kuru hero Jalasandha.[58] Filled with grief and sighing like a mighty snake, Karna, casting angry glances on the grandson of Cini in that battle and as if burning him therewith,[59] rushed at him furiously again and again, O chastiser of foes! Beholding him filled with rage, Sātyaki pierced him in return,[60] shooting dense showers of arrows, like an elephant piercing (with his tusks) a rival elephant. Those two tigers among men, endued with the activity of tigers[61] and possessed of incomparable prowess, mangled each other furiously in that battle. The grandson of Cini then, with shafts made entirely of iron, repeatedly pierced Karna, that chastiser of foes, in all his limbs. And he also felled, with a broad-headed arrow, the charioteer of Karna from his niche in the car.[62-63] And with his keen shafts he also slew the four steeds, white in hue, of Adhiratha's son. And then cutting into a hundred fragments the standard of Karna with a hundred arrows, that bull among men[64] made Karna carless in the very sight of thy son. Then all thy warriors, O king became cheerless.[65] Then Vrishasena

the son of Karna, and Calya the ruler of the Madras, and Drona's son, encompassed the grandson of Cini from all sides.[66] Then a confusion set in, such that nothing could be seen. Indeed, when the heroic Karna was made carless by Sātyaki,[67] cries of *Oh* and *Alas* arose, among all the troops. Karna also, O king, pierced by Sātwata with his arrows and exceedingly weakened,[68] ascended the car of Duryodhana, sighing deeply, remembering his friendship for thy son from his childhood[69] and having striven to realise the promise he had made about the bestowal of sovereignty on Duryodhana. After Karna had been made carless, thy brave sons headed by Dusçāsana, O king, were not slain by the self-restrained Sātyaki because the latter wished not to falsify the vow made by Bhimasena. Desirous also of not falsifying the vow formerly made by Pārtha (about the slaughter of Karna),[70-71] Sātyaki simply made those warriors carless and weakened them exceedingly but did not deprive them of life. Indeed, it is Bhima that hath vowed the slaughter of thy sons,[72] and it is Pārtha that, at the time of the second match at dice, vowed the slaughter of Karna. Although all those warriors headed by Karna made strong efforts for slaying Sātyaki,[73] yet those foremost of car-warriors failed to slay him. Drona's son and Kritavarman and other mighty car-warriors,[74] as also hundreds of foremost Kshatriyas were all vanquished by Sātyaki with only one bow. That hero fought, desirous of benefiting king Yudhishthira the just, and of attaining to heaven.[75] Indeed, Sātyaki, that crusher of foes, is equal to either of the two Krishnas in energy. Smiling the while, he vanquished all thy troops,[76] O best of men! In this world, there are only three mighty bowmen, *viz.*, Krishna, Pārtha, and Sātyaki. There is no fourth to be seen!'[77]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Ascending on the invincible car of Vāsudedva that had Dāruka for its driver, Sātyaki, proud of the might of his arms, and equal in battle unto Vāsudeva himself, made Karna carless. Did Sātyaki ride any other car (after his encounter with Karna was over)?[78-79] I am desirous to hear this, O Sanjaya! Thou art skilled in narration. I regard Sātyaki to be endued with unbearable prowess. Tell me all, O Sanjaya!'[80]

"Sanjaya said,—'Hear, O king, how it happened. The intelligent younger brother of Dāruka soon brought unto Sātyaki another car, duly equipt with all necessaries.[81] With shaft attached to it by chains of iron and gold and bands of silk, decked with a thousand stars, decked with banners and with the figure of a lion on his standard,[82] with horses fleet as the wind and adorned with trappings of gold yoked unto it, and with rattle deep as the roar of the clouds, that car was brought unto him.[83] Ascending upon it, the grandson of Cini rushed against thy troops. Dāruka, meanwhile, went as he listed to Keçava's side.[84] A new car was brought for Karna also, O king, unto which were yoked fleet steeds of the best breed that were decked in trappings of gold and white as conchs or vaccine milk. Its *kaksha* and standard were made of gold. Furnished with banners and machines, that foremost of cars had an excellent driver. And it was furnished with a profusion of weapons of every kind. Mounting on that car, Karna also rushed against his foes. I have now told thee all that thou hadst asked me.[85-87] Once more, however, O king, learn the (extent of the) destruction caused by thy evil policy. Thirty one of thy sons have been slain by Bhimasena.[88] Having Durmukha for their foremost, they were conversant with all modes of warfare. Sātyaki and Arjuna also have slain hundreds of heroes with Bhishma as their foremost and Bhagadatta also, O sire! Even thus, O king, hath the destruction commenced, caused by thy evil counsels.' "[89-90]

SECTION CXLVIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When such was the condition, in battle, of those heroes of their side and mine, what did Bhima then do? Tell me all, O Sanjaya!'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—"After Bhimasena had been made carless, that hero, afflicted with the wordy darts of Karna and filled with rage, addressed Phālguna and said,[2]—In thy very sight, O Dhananjaya, Karna hath repeatedly told me—*Eunuch, fool, glutton, unskilled in weapons, do not fight, child, unable to bear the burden of battle!*—He that would tell me so would

be slain by me. Karna hath told me those words, O Bhārata![1-4] O mighty-armed one, thou knowest the vow which I have made jointly with thee! Remember the words that were then spoken by me! O foremost of men, act in such a way that that vow of mine, O son of Kunti, as also thy own vow, may not be falsified! O Dhananjaya, do that by which that vow of mine may be made true![5-6]—Hearing these words of Bhima, Arjuna of immeasurable prowess, getting near Karna in that battle, told him,[7]—O Karna, thou art of false sight. O son of a *Suta*, thou applaudest thy own self! Of wicked understanding, listen now to what I tell thee![8] Heroes meet with either of these two things in battle, *viz.*, victory or defeat. Both of these are uncertain, O son of Rādhā! The case is not otherwise when Indra himself is engaged in battle![9] Made carless by Yuyudhāna, with thy senses no longer under thy control, thou wert almost on the point of death! Remembering, however, that I had vowed to slay thee, that hero dismissed thee without taking thy life[10] It is true thou hadst succeeded in depriving Bhimasena of his car. Thy abuse, however, O son of Rādhā, of that hero was sinful![11] Those bulls among men that are truly righteous and brave, having vanquished a foe, never boast, nor speak ill of any body![12] Thy knowledge, however, is little. It is for this, O son of a *Suta*, that thou indulgest in such speeches! Then, again, the abusive epithets thou didst apply to the battling Bhimasena endued with great prowess and heroism and ever devoted to the practices of the righteous, were not consistent with truth! In the very sight of all the troops, of Keçava, as also of myself,[13-14] thou wert many a time made carless by Bhimasena in battle! That son of Pāndu, however, did not tell thee a single harsh word.[15] Since, however, thou hast addressed Vrikodara in many harsh speeches, and since thou with others hast slain the son of Subhadrā out of my sight,[16] thou shalt, therefore, this very day obtain the fruit of those offences of thine! It was for thy own destruction, O wicked wight, that thou didst then cut off Abhimanyu's bow![17] For that, O thou of little understanding, thou shalt be slain by me, with all thy followers, forces, and animals! Accomplish now all those acts which thou shouldst

do, for a great calamity is impending over thee![18] I will slay Vrishasena in thy very sight in battle. All those other kings, again, that will from folly advance against me,[19] I will despatch unto Yama's abode. I say this truly, laying my hand on my weapon! A fool as thou art, without wisdom and full of vanity, I say that beholding thee lying on the field of battle the wicked Duryodhana will indulge in bitter lamentations!—After Arjuna had vowed the slaughter of Karna's son,[20-21] a loud and tremendous uproar arose amongst the car-warriors. At that frightful time when confusion was everywhere,[22] the thousand-rayed Sun, dimming his rays, entered the Asta hill. Then, O king, Hrishikeça, stationed in the van of battle,[23] embracing Arjuna who had accomplished his vow, told him these words:—By good luck, O Jishnu, thy great vow hath been accomplished![24] By good luck, that wretch, *viz.*, Vriddhakshatra, hath been slain along with his son! The celestial generalissimo himself, O Bhārata, encountering the Dhārtarāshtra force,[25] would, in battle, O Jishnu, lose his senses! There is no doubt of this! Except thee, O tiger among men, I do not, even on reflection, see the person in the three worlds that would fight with this host! Many royal warriors endued with great prowess, equal to thee or superior, have been united together at Duryodhana's command! Clad in mail, they could not approach thee, encountering thy angry self in battle.[26-28] Thy energy and might are equal to that of Rudra or Cakra or the Destroyer himself. No one else is capable of putting forth such prowess in battle[29] as thou, O scorcher of foes, alone and unsupported, didst today put forth! Thus shall I applaud thee again after Karna of wicked soul shall have been slain along with his followers. Thus shall I glorify thee when that foe of thine shall have been vanquished and slain!—Unto him Arjuna replied,—Through thy grace, O Mādhava,[30-31] this vow, that even the gods could with difficulty accomplish, hath been accomplished by me! Their victory is not at all a matter of wonder that have thee, O Keçava, for their lord![32] Through thy grace Yudhishthira will obtain the whole Earth. All this is due to thy power, O thou of Vrishni's race! This is thy victory, O lord![33] Our prosperity is thy care and we are thy

servants, O slayer of Madhu!—Thus addressed, Krishna smiled softly, and slowly urged the steeds. And he showed unto Pārtha, as they came, the field of battle abounding with cruel sights.[34]

'"Then Krishna said,—Desirous of victory in battle or world-wide fame, many heroic kings are lying on the Earth, struck with thy shafts![35] Their weapons and ornaments lay scattered, and their steeds, cars, and elephants are mangled and broken. With their coats of mail pierced or cut open, they have come to the greatest grief.[36] Some of them are yet alive, and some of them are dead. Those, however, that are dead, still seem to be alive in consequence of the splendour with which they are endued.[37] Behold the Earth covered with their shafts equipt with golden wings, with their numerous other weapons of attack and defence, and with their animals (deprived of life)![38] Indeed, the Earth looks resplendent with coats of mail and necklaces of gems, with their heads decked with ear-rings, and head-gears and diadems, and floral wreaths and jewels worn on crowns, and *Kanthasutras* and *Angadas*, and collars of gold, and with diverse other beautiful ornaments.[39-40] Strewn with *Anukarshas* and quivers, with standards and banners, with *Upashkaras* and *Adhisthānas*, with shafts and crests of cars, with broken wheels and beautiful *Akshas* in profusion, with yokes and trappings of steeds, with belts and bows and arrows, with elephant's housings, with spiked maces and hooks of iron, with darts and short arrows, with spears and pikes, with *Kuntas* and clubs, with *Catāghnis* and *Bhuçundis*, with scimitars and axes, with short and heavy clubs and mallets, with maces and *Kunapas*, with whips decked with gold, O bull of Bharata's race, with the bells and diverse other adornments of mighty elephants, with floral garlands and various kinds of ornaments, and with costly robes, all loosened from the bodies of men and animals, the Earth shines brilliantly like the autumnal firmament with planets and stars. The lords of Earth, slain for the sake of Earth, are slumbering on the Earth, clasping with their limbs the Earth like a dear wife. Like mountains shedding through their caves and fissures streams of liquid chalk, these elephants, resembling Airāvat himself and huge as moun-

tains, are shedding profuse streams of blood through the openings in their bodies caused by weapons.[41-49] Behold, O hero, those huge creatures afflicted with shafts lying on the ground in convulsions! Behold those steeds also, lying on the ground, decked in trappings of gold![50] Behold also, O Pārtha, those riderless and driverless cars that had at one time resembled celestial vehicles or the vapoury forms in the evening sky, now lying on the ground, with standards and banners and *Akshas* and yokes cut into pieces, and with broken shafts and crests, O lord.[51-52] Foot-soldiers also, O hero, bearing bows and shields, and slain in hundreds and thousands, are lying on the ground, bathed in blood[53] and clasping the Earth with every limb, and their locks smeared with dust. Behold, O mighty-armed one, those warriors with bodies mangled with thy weapons![54] Behold the Earth, strewn with yak-tails and fans, and umbrellas and standards, and steeds and cars and elephants, and with diverse kinds of blankets, and reins of steeds, and beautiful robes and costly *Varuthas* (of cars), look as if overspread with embroidered tapestry![55-56] Many warriors fallen from the backs of well-equipt elephants along with those creatures themselves that they had ridden, are looking like lions fallen from mountain summits struck down by thunder.[57] Mingled with the steeds (they had ridden) and the bows (they had held), horsemen and foot-soldiers, in large numbers, are lying on the field, covered with blood.[58] Behold, O foremost of men, the surface of the Earth is frightful to look at, covered as it is with large numbers of slain elephants and steeds and car-warriors, and miry with blood, fat, and rotten flesh in profusion, and on which dogs and wolves and *Piçāchas* and diverse wanderers of the night are careering in joy![59] This fame-enhancing and mighty feat on the field of battle is capable of being achieved by thee only, O puissant one, or by that chief of the gods, *viz.*, Indra himself, who in great battle slayeth the *Daityas* and the *Dānavas*![60]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus showing the field of battle unto the diadem-decked Arjuna, Krishna blew his conch *Pānchajanya* with the gladdened soldiers of the Pāndava army (blowing their respective conchs).[61] Having shown the field of

battle unto the diadem-decked hero, that slayer of foes, *viz.*, Janārddana, quickly proceeded towards Ajātaçutru the son of Pāndu and informed him of the slaughter of Jayadratha.' "*[12]

SECTION CXLIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the ruler of the Sindhus had been slain by Pārtha, Krishna, repairing unto the king, *viz.*, Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, worshipped the latter with a gladdened heart.[1] And he said,—By good luck, O king of kings, thy prosperity increaseth! O best of men, thy foe hath been slain! By good luck, thy younger brother hath accomplished his vow![2]—Thus addressed by Krishna, that subjugator of hostile towns, *viz.*, king Yudhishthira, filled with joy, came down from his car, O Bhārata![3] His eyes filled with tears of joy, he embraced the two Krishnas, and wiping his bright and lotus-like face,[4] said these words unto Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu,—Ye mighty car-warriors, by good luck, I behold both of you after ye have accomplished your task![5] By good luck, that sinful wretch, *viz.*, the ruler of the Sindhus, hath been slain! Ye Krishnas, by good luck, ye have done that which hath filled me with great happiness![6] By good luck, our foes have been plunged into an ocean of grief! Thou art the soveriegn lord of all the worlds, O slayer of Madhu! In the three worlds they that have thee for their protector can have no object incapable of accomplishment! Through thy grace, O Govinda, we will conquer our foes[7-8] like Indra conquering the *Dānavas* in days of old! Be it the conquest of the world, or be it the conquest of the three worlds,[9] everything is certain, O thou of the Vrishni race, in their case with whom thou art gratified, O giver of honors! They can have no sin, nor can they meet with defeat in battle[10] with whom thou, O lord of the celestials, art gratified, O giver of honors! It is through thy grace, O Hrishikeça, that Cakra

---

* The printed editions and the manuscripts do not agree with one another in respect of the order and numbering of the last dozen verses. The Bombay edition omits a few of the verses.—T.

hath become the chief of the celestials![11] It is through thy grace that that blessed personage obtained on the field of battle the sovereignty of the three worlds! It is through thy grace, O lord of the celestials, that the latter[12] obtained immortality, O Krishna, and enjoy eternal regions (of bliss)! Having slain thousands of *Daityas* with prowess having its origin in thy grace, O slayer of foes,[13] Cakra obtained the lordship of the celestials! Through thy grace, O Hrishikeça, the mobile and the immobile universe,[14] without swerving from its (ordained) course, O hero, is engaged in prayers and the *homa!** In the beginning, this universe, enveloped in darkness, had been one vast expanse of water.[15] Through thy grace, O mighty-armed one, the universe became manifest, O best of men! Thou art the Creator of all the worlds, thou the Supreme Soul, and thou art immutable![16] They that behold thee, O Hrishikeça, are never confounded! Thou art the Supreme God, thou art the God of gods, and thou art Eternal![17] They that seek refuge with thee, O lord of the gods, are never confounded! Without beginning and without death, thou art Divine, the Creator of all the worlds, and immutable![18] They that are devoted to thee, O Hrishikeça, always pass over every difficulty. Thou art Supreme, the Ancient one, the Divine male being, and that which is the Highest of the high![19] He that attaineth to that, *viz.*, thy Supreme Self, hath ordained for him the highest prosperity! Thou art sung in the four *Vedas.* The four *Vedas* sing of thee![20] By seeking thy shelter, O high-souled one, I shall enjoy unrivalled prosperity! Thou art the Supreme God, thou art the God of the highest Gods, thou art the lord of winged creatures, and the lord of all human beings![21] Thou art the Supremest Lord of everything! I bow to thee, O best of Beings! Thou art the Lord, the Lord of Lords, O puissant one! Prosperity to thee, O Mādhava![22] O thou of large eyes, O Universal Soul, thou art the origin of all things! He, again, that is a friend of Dhananjaya or is engaged in Dhananjaya's good,[23] obtaineth thee that art the

* Everything, even the inanimate creation, exists and adores the Supreme deity.

protector of Dhananjaya and attaineth to happiness!—Thus addressed by him, those high-souled ones, *viz.*, Keçava and Arjuna,[24] cheerfully said unto the king, that lord of the Earth, —The sinful king Jayadratha hath been consumed by the fire of thy wrath![25] O puissant one, although the Dhārtarāshtra host is vast and swelleth with pride, yet, O Bhārata, struck and slain, it is being exterminated![26] O slayer of foes, it is in consequence of thy wrath that the Kauravas are being destroyed! Having, O hero, angered thee that canst slay with thy eyes alone, the wicked-minded Suyodhana, with his friends and kinsmen, will have to lay down his life in battle! Slain before in consequence of thy ire, and struck down also by the gods themselves, the invincible[27-28] Bhishma, the grandsire of the Kurus, lieth now on a bed of arrows! O slayer of foes, victory in battle is unattainable by them[29] and death also waiteth for them that have thee, O son of Pāndu, for their foe! Kingdom, life, dear ones, children, and diverse kinds of bliss,[30] will soon be lost by him with whom thou, O scorcher of foes, hast been angry! I regard the Kauravas to be lost with their sons, animals, and kinsmen,[31] when thou, O scorcher of foes, that art observant of the duties of kings, hast been angry with them!—Then, Bhima, O king, and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki,[32] both mangled with shafts, saluted their senior. And those two mighty bowmen sat down on the ground, surrounded by the Pānchālas.[33] Beholding those two heroes filled with joy and arrived and waiting with joined hands, the son of Kunti congratulated them both, saying,[34]—By good luck it is that I see you both, ye heroes, escaped with life from that sea of (hostile) troops, that sea in which Drona acted the part of an invincible alligator and the son of Hridikā that of a fierce shark! By good luck, all the kings of the Earth have been vanquished (by you two)![35]* By good luck, I see both of you victorious in battle! By good luck, Drona hath been vanquished in battle, and that mighty car-warrior also, *viz.*, the son of Hridikā![36] By good luck Karna hath been vanquished in battle with barbed shafts! By good luck, Calya also was obliged to turn away

* This is a triplet in the Calcutta edition.—T.

from the field by you both, ye bulls among men![37] By good luck, I behold you both come back from battle, safe and sound, ye that are foremost of car-warriors and well-skilled in battle![38] By good luck, I behold you again, ye heroes, that have forded that sea of troops in obedience to my command, ye that went to battle impelled by the desire of honoring me![39] Ye are heroes delighting in battle! Ye never retreat from battle! Ye are to me as life! By good luck, I see you both![40]—Having said this, the son of Pāndu, O king, embraced both Yuyudhāna and Vrikodara, those tigers among men, and shed tears of joy.[41] Then, O monarch, the entire host of the Pāndavas became cheerful and filled with joy. And all of them once more set their hearts on battle.' "[42]

SECTION CL

'Sanjaya said,—'Upon the fall, O king, of the ruler of the Sindhus, thy son Suyodhana, his face bedewed with tears and himself filled with cheerlessness, became hopeless of vanquishing his foes.[1] Filled with grief and breathing hot sighs like a snake whose fangs have been broken, that offender against the whole world, *viz.*, thy son, experienced bitter affliction.[2] Beholding that great and terrible slaughter of his troops caused by Jishnu and Bhimasena and Sātwata in battle,[3] he became pale and died up and melancholy, and his eyes became filled with tears. And he came to think that no warrior existed on the Earth that could compare with Arjuna.[4] Neither Drona, nor the son of Rādhā, nor Açwatthāman, nor Kripa, O sire, is competent to stay before Arjuna when the latter is excited with wrath.[5] [And Suyodhana said unto himself,]—Having vanquished in battle all the mighty car-warriors of my army, Pārtha slew the ruler of the Sindhus! None could resist him![6] This my vast host hath almost been exterminated by the Pāndavas! I think there is no one that can protect my army, no, not even Purandara himself![7] He, relying upon whom I had engaged in this passage-at-arms in battle, alas, that Karna hath been defeated in battle and Jaydratha slain![8] That Karna relying upon whose energy I regarded Krishna as straw who came to sue me for

peace, alas, that Karna hath been vanquished in battle![9]—Grieving so within his heart, that offender against the whole world, O king, went to Drona, O bull of Bharata's race, for seeing him![10] Repairing unto him, he informed Drona of that immense slaughter of the Kurus, the victory of his foes, and the dire calamity of the Dhārtarāshtras.[11]* And Suyodhana said,—Behold, O preceptor, this immense slaughter of kings![†] I came to battle, placing that grandsire of mine, *viz.*, the heroic Bhishma, at our head![12] Having slain him, Cikhandin, his aspiration filled, stayeth at the very van of all the troops, surrounded by all the Pānchālas, covetous of another triumph![‡][13] Another disciple of thine, *viz.*, the invincible Savyasāchin, having slain seven *Akshauhinis* of troops, hath despatched king Jayadratha to Yama's abode![14] How, O preceptor, shall I be freed from the debt I owe to those allies of mine who, desirous of victory to me and ever engaged in my good, have gone to Yama's abode?[15] Those lords of Earth who had desired to give me the sovereignty of the Earth, are now lying on the Earth, themselves abandoning all their Earthly prosperity![16] Truly, I am a coward! Having caused such a slaughter of friends, I dare not think that I shall be sanctified by performing even a hundred horse-sacrifices![17] I am covetous and sinful and a tresspasser against righteousness! Through my acts alone, these lords of Earth, in their desire for victory, have gone to Yama's abode![18] Why, in the presence of those kings, does not the Earth yield me a hole (through which to sink), since I am so sinful in behaviour and such a fomenter of intestine dissensions![§][19] Alas, what will the grandsire with blod-red eyes, that invincible hero who hath conquered the other world, tell

---

* Literally, "the fact of the Dhārtarāshtras having sunk (into distress).—T.

† Literally, "of persons whose coronal locks have undergone the sacred bath."—T.

‡ *Praluvdhas* is explained by Nilakantha differently. He supposes that Duryodhana here characterises Cikhandin to be a deceitful fowler or hunter in consequence of the deceit with which he caused Bhishma's fall. This is far-fetched.—T.

§ I adopt the Bombay reading.—T.

me in the midst of the kings when he meets me?*[20] Behold that mighty bowman, Jalasandha, slain by Sātyaki! That great car-warrior, that hero, came proudly to battle for my sake, prepared to lay down his life![21] Beholding the ruler of the Kāmvojas slain, as also Alamvusha and many other allies of mine, what object can I have for preserving my life?[22] Those unreturning heroes who, fighting for my sake and struggling to the utmost of their powers to vanquish my foes, have laid down their lives![23] I shall today, O scorcher of foes, exerting to the measure of my might, free myself from the debt I owe them and gratify them with oblations of water by repairing to the Yamunā![24] O foremost of all bearers of arms, I tell thee truly and swear by the good acts I have performed, by the prowess I possess, and by my sons,[25] that slaying all the Pānchālas with the Pāndavas I shall obtain peace of mind, or, slain by them in battle I shall repair to those regions whither those allies of mine have gone![26] I shall certainly proceed thither whither those bulls among men, slain, while engaged in battle for my sake, by Arjuna have gone![27]. Our allies, seeing that they are not well protected by us, no longer desire to stand by us! O thou of mighty arms, they now regard the Pāndavas to be preferable to ourselves![28] Thyself of sure aim hast ordained our extermination in battle, for thou treatest Arjuna leniently since he is thy disciple![29] It is for this that all those have been slain who had endeavoured to secure victory to us! It seems that Karna only now wishes us victory![30] The man of weak understanding who, without duly examining another, accepteth him for a friend and engageth him in concerns, that require friends for their accomplishment, is certain to suffer injury.[31] Even so hath this affair of mine been managed by my best of friends![†] I am exceedingly covetous, sinful,

---

* The Bombay edition reads this verse differently and introduces another after it which does not occur in the Bengal texts.—T.

† I am not sure whether I have rendered the 31st and the first half of 32nd correctly. The vernacular translators have made a mess of the passage. The difficulty lies with *Surhittamais*. I take take it to mean that Duryodhana says,—'Karna, Cakuni, Dusçāsana, with myself, had

crooked-hearted, and characterised by avarice![33] Alas, king Jayadratha hath been slain, and Somadatta's son also of great energy, and the Abhishāhas, the Curasenas, the Civis, and the Vaçātis![33] I shall go thither today whither those bulls among men, slain, while engaged in battle for my sake, by Arjuna, have gone![34] In the absence of those bulls among men, I have no need for life! O preceptor of the sons of Pāndu, let me have thy permission in this!—'"[35]

SECTION CLI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'After the ruler of the Sindhus had been slain in battle by Savyasāchin, and after the fall of Bhuriçravas, what became the state of your minds?[1] After Drona also had been thus addressed by Duryodhana in the midst of the Kurus, what did the preceptor say unto him then? Tell me all this, O Sanjaya!'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Loud wails arose among thy troops, O Bhārata, after the slaughter of Bhuriçravas and the ruler of the Sindhus.[3] All of them disregarded the counsels of thy son, those counsels in consequence of which leaders of men, by hundreds, were slain![4] As regards Drona, hearing those words of thy son, he became filled with grief. Reflecting for a short while, O monarch, he said these words in great affliction![5]

"'Drona said,—O Duryodhana, why dost thou pierce me thus with wordy shafts? I told thee before that Arjuna is incapable of defeat in battle![6] Protected by the diadem-decked Arjuna, Cikhandin slew Bhishma! By that feat, O thou of Kuru's race, the prowess of Arjuna in battle hath been well tested.[7] Beholding Bhishma who was incapable of being defeated by the gods and the *Dānavas*, actually slain in battle, even then I knew that this Bharata host is doomed![8] Upon the fall of him whom of all persons in the three worlds we had regarded to be the very foremost of heroes, who else is there upon whom we are to rely?[9] Those dice, O sire, with which Cakuni formerly

---

taken thee, O preceptor, for a friend, and had engaged thee in this battle. We did not, however, then know that thou art an enemy in disguise!'—T.

played in the Kuru assembly, were not dice but keen arrows capable of slaying foes![10] Even those arrows, O sire, sped by Jaya, are now slaying us! Though Vidura characterised them to be such, thou didst not yet understand them to be so![11] Those words, again, that the wise and high-souled Vidura, with tears in his eyes, had then said unto thee, those auspicious words recommending peace, thou didst not then hear![12] That calamity which he foretold hath now come! That frightful carnage, O Duryodhana, hath now come as the result of that disobedience by thee of Vidura's words![13] That man of foolish understanding who, disregarding the salutary words of trusted friends, followeth his own opinion, soon falls into a pitiable plight.[14] O son of Gāndhāri, this great evil that hath befallen thee is the fruit of that sinful act of thine, *viz.*, that dragging of Krishnā in our very sight to the Kuru assembly, of Krishnā who never deserved such treatment, who hath been born in a noble race, and who practiseth every virtue! Know that all this is but little, for in the next world direr consequences yet will be thine![15-16] Vanquishing the Pāndavas at dice by deceit, thou hadst sent them into the woods, attired in deer-skins![17] What other Brāhmana, except myself, in this world, would seek to injure those princes that are ever engaged in the practice of virtue and that are to me even as my own sons?[18] With the approval of Dhritarāshtra, in the midst of the Kuru assembly, thou hadst, with Cakuni as thy help-mate, provoked the ire of the Pāndavas![19] United with Dusçāsana, Karna then fanned that wrath! Disregarding the words of Vidura, thou hast repeatedly fanned it thyself![20] With resolute care, all of you had surrounded Arjuna, resolved to stand by the ruler of the Sindhus! Why then have all of you been vanquished, and why also has Jayadratha been slain?[21] Why, when thou art alive, and Karna, and Kripa, and Calya, and Açwtthāman, O Kauravya, hath the ruler of the Sindhus been slain?[22] For rescuing the ruler of the Sindhus, the kings (on thy side) had put forth all their fiercest energy. Why then hath Jayadratha been slain in their midst?[23] Relying upon me, king Jayadratha had expected his rescue from the hands of Arjuna![24] He, however, obtained not the rescue he had expected. I do

not also see any safety for my own self![25] Until I succeed in slaying the Pānchālas with Cikhandin, I feel like one sinking in the Dhristadyumna-mire![26] Having failed, O Bhārata, in rescuing the ruler of the Sindhus, why dost thou pierce me thus with thy wordy shafts, seeing that I too am burning with grief?[27] Thou seest not any longer on the field the golden standard of Bhishma of sure aim, that warrior who was never tired in battle! How then canst thou hope for success?[28] When the ruler of the Sindhus and Bhuriçravas also have been slain in the very midst of so many mighty car-warriors, what, do you think, will the end be?[29] Kripa, difficult of being vanquished, is still alive, O king! That he hath not followed in the track of Jayadratha, I applaud him highly for this![30] When I saw Bhishma himself, that achiever of the most difficult feats (in battle), that warrior who was incapable of being slain in battle by the very gods with Vāsava at their head, slain in thy sight, O Kauravya, as also of thy younger brother Dusçāsana, I thought then, O king, that the Earth hath abandoned thee![31-32] Yonder the troops of the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas, united together, are now rushing against me![33] For achieving thy good in battle, O son of Dhritarāshtra, I will not, without slaying all the Pānchālas, put off my armour![34] O king, go and tell my son Açwatthāman who is present in battle that even at the risk of his life he should not let the Somakas alone![*35] Thou shouldst also tell him,—[Observe all the instructions thou hast received from thy father! Be firm in acts of humility, in self-restraint, in truth and righteousness![36] Observant of religion, profit, and pleasure, without neglecting religion and profit, thou shouldst always accomplish those acts in which religion predominates![37] The Brāhmanas should always be gratified with presents. All of them deserve thy worship! Thou shouldst never do anything that is injurious to them! They are like flames of fire![]38 As regards myself, I will penetrate the hostile host, O slayer of foes, for doing great battle, pierced as I am by thee with thy wordy shafts![39] If thou canst, O Duryodhana, go and protect

---

* *I. e.*, "he should, by every means in his power, avenge himself on the Somakas, those enemies of mine."—T.

those troops! Both the Kurus and the Srinjayas have been angry. They will fight during even the night![40]—Having said these words, Drona proceeded against the Pāndavas and set himself to over-ride the energy of the Kshatriyas like the Sun overshadowing the light of the stars.' "[41]

SECTION CLII.

"Sanjaya said,—Thus urged by Drona, king Duryodhana, filled with rage, set his heart on battle.[1] And thy son Duryodhana then said unto Karna,—Behold, the diadem-decked son of Pāndu, with Krishna alone for his help-mate, penetrated into the array formed by the preceptor,[2]—an array that the gods themselves could not pierce,—and in the very sight of the illustrious Drona struggling in battle [3] and of many other foremost of warriors, slew the ruler of the Sindhus! Behold, O son of Rādhā, many foremost of kings lying on the Earth, slain in battle[4] by Pārtha unaided by any one, in the very sight of the illustrious Drona and myself vigorously exerting ourselves, like a host of inferior animals slain by a lion![5] The son of Cakra hath reduced my host to a small remnant of what it was. How, indeed, could Phālguna, in spite of the resistance offered by Drona in battle,[6] accomplish his vow by slaying the ruler of the Sindhus? If Drona had not himself willed it, O hero, how could the son of Pāndu, in battle,[7] have pierced that impenetrable array, overcoming his struggling preceptor? Truly, Phālguna is exceedingly dear to the illustrious preceptor![8] For this, the latter gave him admittance, without having fought with him. Behold my misfortune! Having in the first instance promised protection unto the ruler of the Sindhus, Drona, that scorcher of foes, gave unto the diadem-decked Arjuna admittance into the array! If he had in the beginning granted permission to the ruler of the Sindhus for his return home, without doubt, such an awful carnage would then have never occurred! Alas, Jayadratha, in hopes of saving his life, had desired to return home![9-11] Having obtained from Drona a promise of protection in battle, it was I fool that I was, who prevented him from going! Alas, today

my brothers having Chitrasena for their head, have all perished in the very sight of our wretched selves![*12]—

"'Karna said,—Do not blame the preceptor! That Brāhmana is fighting according to the measure of his power and courage and regardless of his very life![13] If Arjuna of white steeds, having transgressed him, penetrated into our array, the slightest fault does not, for that, attach to the preceptor.[14] Phālguna is accomplished in weapons, possessed of great activity, endued with youth; he is a hero who has mastered all arms; he is distinguished for the celerity of his movements. Armed with celestial weapons and mounted on his ape-bannered car[15] the reins of whose steeds again were in the hands of Krishna, cased in impenetrable armour, and taking his celestial bow *Gāndiva* of unfading might, the valiant Arjuna,[16] scattering keen arrows and proud of the strength of his arms, transgressed Drona. There is nothing to wonder at in this.[17] The preceptor, on the other hand, is, O king, old and incapable of proceeding quickly. He is also, O king, incapable of exercising his arms long.[18] It was for this that Phālguna of white steeds and having Krishna for his charioteer succeeded in transgressing the preceptor. For this reason also, I do not see any fault in Drona.[19] For all that, when Arjuna of white steeds penetrated into our array, having transgressed the preceptor, it seems that the latter, however skilled in weapons, is incapable of vanquishing the Pāndavas in battle![20] I think that that which is ordained by Fate never occurs otherwise. And since, O Suyodhana, in spite of ourselves fighting to the utmost extent of our powers,[21] the ruler of the Sindhus has been slain in battle, it seems that Fate is all-powerful! With thyself we had all been exerting to the utmost of our might on the field of battle.[22] Fate, however, baffling our exertions, did not smile on us! We have always exerted to injure the Pāndavas, relying both on deceit and prowess![23] Whatever act, O king, a person afflicted by Fate does, is frustrated by Fate, however, much the person himself may strive to achieve it![24] Whatever, indeed, a man endued with preservance should do, ought

* This is a triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

to be done fearlessly. Success depends on Fate![25] By deceit the sons of Prithā were beguiled, as also by the administration of poison, O Bhārata! Burnt they were in the palace of lac. Vanquished they were at dice.[26] In accordance with the dictates of state-craft, they were exiled into the woods. All these, though done by us with care, have been baffled by Fate.[27] Fight with resolution, O king, setting Fate at nought. Between thee and them, both striving to the best of your prowess, even Fate may prove auspicious to that party which excels the other.*[28] No wise measures have been adopted by the Pāndavas with the aid of superior intelligence. Nor, O hero, do we see, O perpetuator of Kuru's race, that thou hast done anything unwise from want of intelligence![29] It is Fate that settles the result of acts, wise or unwise! Fate, ever intent on its own purposes, is awake when all else sleeps![30] Vast was thy host, and thy warriors are many. Even thus the battle began.[31] With their small force, thy force, much greater and consisting of men capable of smiting effectually, hath been much reduced. I fear, it is the work of Fate, that is, which frustrated our exertions![32]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'While they were discoursing thus O king, the Pāndava divisions appeared for battle.[33] Then occurred a fierce battle between thy warriors and theirs, in which cars and elephants encountered one another. All this, however, O king, was due to thy evil policy!'"[34]

SECTION CLIII.

(Ghatotkacha-badha Parva).

"Sanjaya said,—'That elephant force of thine, O king, swelling with might, fought everywhere, prevailing over the Pāndava force.[1] Resolved to go to the other world, the Pānchālas and the Kaurvas fought with one another for admission into the swelling domains of Yama.[2] Brave warriors, encountering brave rivals, pierced one another with arrows and lances and

* I render the second line freely, following Nilakantha.—T.

darts, and quickly despatched one another unto Yama's abode. Dreadful was the battle that took place between car-warriors and car-warriors who struck one another and caused a fierce flow of blood.[5-4] Infuriate elephants, encountering infuriate compeers, afflicted one another with their tusks.[5] Horsemen, solicitous of glory, pierced and cut down horsemen in that terrific melee with spears and darts and battle-axes.[6] Foot-soldiers also, O mighty-armed one, in hundreds, armed with weapons, repeatedly rushed against one another with resolute courage, O scorcher of foes![7] So great was the confusion that the Pānchālas and the Kurus could only be distinguished from each other by the tribal, the family, and the personal names we heard them utter.[8] The warriors, despatching one another to the other world with arrows and darts and axes, careered fearlessly on the field.[9] With the thousands of arrows, however, O king, shot by the combatants, the ten points were no longer illuminated as before in consequence of the Sun having set.[10] While the Pāndavas were thus fighting, O Bhārata, Duryodhana, O king, penetrated into the midst of their host.[11] Filled with great wrath at the slaughter of the ruler of the Sindus, and resolved to lay down his life, he penetrated into the hostile army.[12] Filling the Earth with the rattle of his car-wheels and causing her to tremble therewith, thy son approached the Pāndava host.[13] Terrific was the clash that took place between him and them, O Bhārata, causing a tremendous carnage of troops.[14] Like the Sun himself at midday scorching everything with his rays, thy son scorched the hostile host with his arrowy showers.*[15] The Pāndavas became incapable of even looking at their brother (Duryodhana). Despairing of vanquishing their foe, they set their hearts on flying away from the field.[16] Slaughtered by thy illustrious son armed with the bow, by means of his gold-winged arrows of blazing points, the Pānchālas ran away in all directions.[17] Afflicted with those keen shafts, the Pāndava troops began to fall down on the ground. Indeed, the Pāndavas had never succeeded in achieving such a feat in battle[18] as was then achieved by thy royal son, O monarch! The Pāndava

* Literally, "with shafts resembling his rays."—T.

host was crushed and grinded by thy son in that battle,[19] as an assemblage of lotuses is crushed and grinded by an elephant.* As again an assemblage of lotuses becomes shorn of its beauty when the water (over which it grows) is dried up by the sun and the wind,[20] even so became the Pāndava host in consequence of thy son's prowess. Beholding the Pāndava army slaughtered by thy son, O Bhārata,[21] the Pānchālas, with Bhimasena at their head, rushed furiously towards him. Piercing Bhimasena then with ten shafts, and each of the sons of Mādri with three,[22] and Virāta and Drupada each with six, and Cikhandin with a hundred, and Dhrishtadyumna with seventy, and Yudhishthira with seven,[23] and the Kaikeyas and the Chedis with innumerable keen shafts, and Sātwata with five, and each of the (five) sons of Draupadi with three,[24] and Ghatotkacha also with a few, he uttered a leonine shout. Cutting off hundreds of other warriors and the bodies of elephants and steeds in that great battle by means of his fierce shafts, he behaved like the Destroyer himself in rage slaying created beings.† While engaged, however, in thus slaughtering his foes, his bow the back of whose staff was decked with gold,[25-26] Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu, O sire, cut off into three parts with a pair of broad-headed shafts. And Yudhishthira pierced Duryodhana himself with ten keen shafts shot with great force.[27] Piercing through Duryodhana's vital limbs, these passed out and entered the Earth in a continuous line. The troops that stood around then encompassed Yudhishthira[28] like the celestials encompassing Purandara for the slaughter of Vritra. Then king Yudhishthira, O sire, who is incapable of being easily defeated, sped at thy son in that battle a fierce shaft. Deeply pierced therewith, Duryodhana sat down on his excellent car.[29-30] Then a loud noise arose from among the Pānchāla troops. Even this, O monarch, was that tremendous uproar, *viz.,—The king is slain!*[31]—The fierce

---

* Or, "as a lake overgrown with lotuses is agitated on every side by an elephant."—T.

† Sixteen lines, occurring after this in the Bombay edition, have been omitted in the Calcutta edition.—T.

whizz of arrows also was heard there, O Bhārata! Then Drona quickly showed himself there in that battle.[32] Meanwhile, Duryodhana, recovering his senses, had firmly grasped the bow. He was then seen to rush towards the royal son of Pāndu saying,—*Wait, Wait.*[33]—The Pānchālas also, solicitous of victory, began to advance with speed. Desirous of rescuing the Kuru prince, Drona received them all.[34] And the preceptor began to destroy them like the bright-rayed maker of day destroying tempest-tossed clouds. Then, O king, there occurred a fierce battle, fraught with immense carnage, between thine and theirs encountering one another from desire of fight.'"[35]

SECTION CLIV.

'Dhritarāshtra said,—'Having said all those words unto my son Duryodhana who is ever disobedient to my commands, when that mighty bowman endued with great strength, *viz.*, the preceptor Drona, penetrated in wrath into the Pāndava host, and when that hero, stationed on his car, careered over the field, how did the Pāndavas check his course?[1-2] Who protected the right wheel of the preceptor's car in that dreadful battle? Who also protected his left wheel, when he fiercely slaughtered the foe?[3] Who were those brave warriors that followed that fighting hero at his back? Who were those that stood in front of that car-warrior?[4] When that unvanquished and great bowman, that foremost of all bearers of weapons, dancing along the track of his car, entered the Pāndava host, I think his foes felt an excessive and unseasonable cold. I think they trembled like kine exposed to wintry blasts.[5-6] How did that bull among car-warriors, who consumed all the troops of the Pānchālas like a raging conflagration, meet with his death?'[7]

'Sanjaya said,—'Having slain the ruler of the Sindhus in the evening, Pārtha, after his meeting with Yudhishthira, and that great bowman, *viz.*, Sātyaki, both proceeded towards Drona.[8] Then Yudhishthira, and Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, with a separate division of the army, quickly proceeded against Drona.[9] Similarly the intelligent Nakula, and the invincible

Sahadeva, and Dhrishtadyumna with his own division, and Virāta, and the ruler of the Cālwas with a large force, proceeded against Drona in battle. Similarly king Drupada, the father of Dhrishtadyumna, protected by the Pānchālas, proceeded, O king, against Drona. And the sons of Draupadi, and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha,[10-12] accompanied by their forces, proceeded against Drona of great splendour. The Prabhadraka-Pānchālas also, six thousand strong, and all effectual smiters,[13] proceeded against Drona, placing Cikhandin at their head. Other foremost of men and mighty car-warriors among the Pāndwas,[14] uniting together, O bull among men, proceeded against Drona. When those heroic warriors, O bull among the Bharatas, proceeded to battle,[15] the night became pitchy dark, enhancing the terrors of the timid. And during that hour of darkness, O king, many were the warriors that laid down their lives.[16] And that night also proved the death of many elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers. On that night of pitchy darkness, yelling jackals everywhere[17] inspired great fear with their blazing mouths. Fierce owls, perching on the standards of the Kauravas and hooting therefrom, foreboded fears. Then, O king, a fierce uproar arose among the troops.[18-19] Mingling with the loud beat of drums and cymbals, the grunt of elephants, the neigh of steeds,[20] and the stamp of horse-hoofs, that uproar spread everywhere. Then, in that hour of evening, fierce was the battle that took place[21] between Drona, O king, and all the Srinjayas. The world having been enveloped in darkness, nothing could be noticed.[22] The welkin was covered with the dust raised by the combatants. The blood of man and horse and elephant mingled together.[23] The earthy dust then disappeared. All of us became perfectly cheerless. During that night, like the sounds of a burning forest of bamboos on a mountain,[24] frightful sounds were heard of clashing weapons. With the sounds of *Mridangas* and *Anakas* and *Vallakis* and *Patahas*,*[25] with the shouts (of human beings) and the neigh (of steeds), a dreadful confusion set in everywhere, O lord! When the field of battle was enveloped in darkness, friends, O king, could not

* Drums of diverse kinds and sizes.—T.

be distinguished from foes.[26] All were possessed with a madness in that night. The earthy dust that had arisen, O king, was soon allayed with showers of blood.[27] Then in consequence of the golden coats of mail and the bright ornaments of the warriors, that darkness was dispelled. The Bharata host then, decked in gems and gold,[28] [and abounding with darts and standards], looked like the firmament in the night, O bull of Bharata's race, bespangled with stars. The field of battle then resounded with the yells of jackals and the caw of crows,[29] with the grunt of elephants and the shouts and cries of the warriors. Those sounds, mingling together, produced a loud uproar, making the hair to stand on end.[30] That uproar filled all the points of the compass like the report of Indra's thunder. At dead of night, the Bharata host, seemed[31] illuminated with the *Angadas*, the ear-rings, the cuirasses, and the weapons of the combatants. There elephants and cars, adorned with gold,[32] looked in that night like clouds charged with lightning. Swords and darts and maces and scimitars and clubs and lances and axes,[33] as they fell, looked like dazzling flashes of fire. Duryodhana was the gust of wind that was the precursor (of that tempest-like host). Cars and elephants constituted its dry clouds.[34] The loud noise of drums and other instruments formed the peal of its thunders. Abounding with standards, bows formed its lightning flashes. Drona and the Pāndavas formed its pouring clouds. Scimitars and darts and maces constituted its thunders.[35] Shafts formed its downpour, and weapons (of other kinds), its incessant gusts of wind. And the winds that blew were both exceedingly hot and exceedingly cold. Terrible, stunning, and fierce, it was destructive of life. There was nothing that could afford shelter from it.*[36] Combatants, desirous of battle, entered into that frightful host on that dread night resounding with terrible noises,[37] enhancing the fears of the timid and the delight of heroes. And during the progress of that fierce and dreadful battle in the night,[38] the Pāndus and the Srinjayas, united together, rushed in wrath against Drona. All those, however, O king, that advanced right against the

* The Bombay reading is *aplavam* and not *Viplutām*.—T.

illustrious Drona,[33] were either obliged to turn back or despatched to the abode of Yama. Indeed, on that night, Drona, alone, pierced with his shafts elephants in thousands and cars in tens of thousands and millions of foot-soldiers and steeds.' "[40-41]

SECTION CLV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When the invincible Drona of immeasurable energy, unable to bear (the slaughter of Jayadratha), wrathfully entered into the midst of the Srinjayas, what did you all think ?[1] When that warrior of immeasurable soul, having said those words unto my disobedient son Duryodhana, so entered (the hostile ranks), what steps did Pārtha take ?[2] When after the fall of the heroic Jayadratha and of Bhuriçravas, that unvanquished warrior of great energy, that scorcher of foes, *viz.*, the unconquerable Drona, proceeded against the Pānchālas, what did Arjuna think ? What also did Duryodhana think as the most seasonable step that he could adopt ?[3-4] Who were they that followed that boon-giving hero, that foremost of regenerate ones ? Who were those heroes, O *Suta*, that stood behind that hero while engaged in battle ?[5] Who fought in his van while he was employed in slaughtering the foe in battle ? I think, all the Pāndavas, afflicted with the arrows of Bharadwāja's son,[6] were, O *Suta*, like lean kine trembling under a wintry sky. Having penetrated into the midst of the Pānchālas, how did that great bowman, that scorcher of foes, that tiger among men, meet with his death ?*[7] When on that night all the troops, united together, and all the great car-warriors combined, were being separately grinded (by Drona), who were those intelligent men among you that were present there ?[8] Thou sayest that my troops were slain or huddled together, or vanquished, and that my car warriors were made car-less in those encounters. While those combatants became heartless and were being grinded by the Pāndavas, what did they think when they sank in such affliction on that dark night ?[9] Thou sayest that the Pāndavas were hearty and ex-

---

* This is a triplet in all the editions.—T.

ceedingly hopeful, and that mine were melancholy and heartless and panic-struck.[11] How, O Sanjaya, couldst thou mark the distinction on that night between the Kurus and the unretreating Pārthas?'[12]

"Sanjaya said,—'During the progress, O king, of that fierce night-battle, the Pāndavas along with the Somakas all rushed against Drona.[13] Then Drona, with his swift-going shafts, despatched all the Kaikeyas and the sons of Dhrishtadyumna into the world of spirits.[14] Indeed, all those mighty car-warriors, O king, that advanced right against Drona, all those lords of Earth, were despatched (by him) into the region of the dead.[15] Then king Civi of great prowess, filled with rage, proceeded against that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the heroic son of Bharadwāja, while the latter was thus employed in grinding (the hostile combatants).[16] Beholding that great car-warrior of the Pāndavas advancing, Drona pierced him with ten shafts made entirely of iron.[17] Civi, however, pierced Drona in return with thirty shafts winged with *Kanka* feathers. And smiling the while, he also, with a broad-headed shaft, felled the driver of Drona's car.[18] Drona then, slaying the steeds of the illustrious Civi, as also the driver of his car, cut off from his trunk Civi's head with head-gear on it.[19] Then Duryodhana quickly sent unto Drona a driver for his car. The reins of his steeds having been taken up by the new man, Drona once more rushed against his foes.[20] The son of the ruler of the Kalingas, supported by the Kalinga troops, rushed against Bhimasena, filled with rage at the slaughter of his sire by the latter.[21] Having pierced Bhima with five shafts. he once more pierced him with seven. And he struck Viçoka (the driver of Bhima's car) with three shafts and the latter's standard with one.[22] Then Vrikodara, filled with rage, leaping from his own car to that of his foe, slew with only his fists that angry hero of the Kalingas.[23] The bones of that prince thus slain in battle by the mighty son of of Pāndu with only his fists, fell down on the Earth, separated from one another.[24] Karna and the brother of the slain prince, (and others), could not brook that act of Bhima. All of them began to strike Bhimasena with keen shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison.[25] Abandoning then that car of the foe (upon

which he stood), Bhima proceeded to the car of Dhruva,* and crushed, by a blow of his fist, that prince who had been striking him incessantly.[26] Thus struck by the mighty son of Pāndu, Dhruva fell down. Having slain him, O king, Bhimasena of great strength,[27] proceeding to the car of Jayarāta, began to roar repeatedly like a lion. Dragging Jayarāta then with his left arm, while employed in roaring,[28] he slew that warrior with a slap of his palm in the very sight of Karna. Then Karna hurled at the son of Pāndu, a dart decked with gold.[29] The Pāndava, however, smiling the while, seized with his hand that dart. And the invincible Vrikodara in that battle hurled that very dart back at Karna.[30] Then Cakuni, with a shaft that had drunk oil, cut off that dart as it coursed towards Karna. Having achieved these mighty feats in battle, Bhima of wonderful prowess[31] came back to his own car and rushed against thy troops. And while Bhima was thus advancing, slaughtering (thy troops) like the Destroyer himself in rage,[32] thy sons, O monarch, attempted to resist that mighty-armed hero. Indeed, those mighty car-warriors covered him with a dense shower of arrows.[33] Then Bhima, smiling the while, despatched in that battle, with his shafts, the driver and the steeds of Durmada unto the abode of Yama.[34] Durmada, at this, quickly mounted upon the car of Dushkarna. Then those scorchers of foes, *viz.*, the two brothers, riding on the same car,[35] both rushed against Bhima in the front rank of battle, like the Regent of the waters and Surya rushing against Tāraka, that foremost of *Daityas.*[36] Then thy sons Durmada and Dushkarna, mounting on the same car, pierced Bhima with shafts.[37] Then in the very sight of Karna, of Açwatthāman, of Duryodhana, of Kripa, of Somadatta, and of Vālhika, the son of Pāndu,[38] that chastiser of foes, by a stamp of his foot, caused that car of the heroic Durmada and Dushkarna to sink into the Earth.[39] Filled with rage, he struck with his fists those mighty and brave sons of thine, *viz.*, Durmada and Dushkarna, and crushed them therewith and roared aloud.[40] Then cries of *Oh* and *Alas* arose among the troops. And the kings, beholding Bhima, said,—That is Rudra who is

* The brother of the Kalinga prince.—T.

fighting in Bhima's form among the Dhārtarāshtras![41]—Saying these words, O Bhārata, all the kings fled away, deprived of their senses and urging the animals they rode to their greatest speed. Indeed, no two of them could be seen running together.[42] Then when on that night a great carnage had been caused among the (Kaurava) army, the mighty Vrikodara, with eyes beautiful as the full-blown lotus, highly applauded by many bulls among kings, repairing unto Yudhishthira, paid his regards unto him.[43] Then the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), and Drupada and Virāta, and the Kaikeyas, and Yudhishthira also, felt great joy. And all of them paid their adorations unto Vrikodara even as the celestials did unto Mahādeva after Andhaka had been slain.[44] Then thy sons, all equal unto the sons of Varuna, filled with rage and accompanied by the illustrious preceptor and a large number of cars, foot-soldiers, and elephants, encompassed Vrikodara on all sides from desire of fight.[45] Then, O best of kings, on that terrible night when everything was enveloped in a darkness as thick as a cloud, a dreadful battle took place between those illustrious warriors, delightful to wolves and crows and vultures.' "[46]

SECTION CLVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'After his son (Bhuriçravas) had been slain by Sātyaki while the former was sitting in *Prāya*, Somadatta, filled with rage, said unto Sātyaki these words:[1]—Why, O Sātwata, having abandoned those Kshatriya duties ordained by the high-souled gods, hast thou betaken thyself to the practices of robbers?[2] Why would one that is observant of Kshatriya duties and possessed of wisdom, strike in battle a person that is turning away from the fight, or one that has become helpless, or one that has laid aside his weapons, or one that beggeth for quarter?[3] Two persons, indeed, among the Vrishnis are reputed to be the foremost of great car-warriors, *viz.*, Praddyumna of mighty energy and thou also, O Sātyaki![4] Why then didst thou behave so cruelly and sinfully towards one that had sat in *Prāya* and that had his arm cut off by

Pārtha?*[5] Take now in battle the consequence of that act of thine, O thou of wicked behaviour! I shall today, O wretch, putting forth my prowess, cut off thy head with a winged arrow![6] I swear, O Sātwata, by my two sons, by what is dear to me, and by all my meritorious acts, that if before this night passes away I do not slay thee that art so proud of thy heroism, with thy sons and younger brother, provided Jishnu the son of Prithā does not protect thee, then let me sink into terribe hell, O wretch of Vrishni's race![7-8]—Having said these words, the mighty Somadatta, filled with rage, blew his conch loudly and uttered a leonine roar![9] Then Sātyaki, of eyes like lotus petals and teeth like those of a lion, possessed of great strength, and filled with rage, said these words unto Somadatta![10]—O thou of Kuru's race, whether battling with thee or with others, I do not in my heart ever experience the slightest fear![11] If, protected by all the troops, thou fightest with me, I would not, even then, experience on thy account, any pain, O thou of Kuru's race![12] I am ever observant of Kshatriya practices. Thou canst not, therefore, frighten me with only words scenting of battle or with speeches that insult the good![13] If, O king, thou wishest to fight with me today, be cruel and strike me with keen shafts and I also will strike thee![14] Thy son, the mighty car-warrior Bhuriçravas, has, O king, been slain! Cala also, and Vrishasena, have been crushed by me.[15] Thee also today I shall slay, with thy sons and kinsmen! Stay with resolution in battle, for thou, O Kaurava, art endued with great strength![16] Thou art already slain in consequence of the energy of that drum-bannered king Yudhishthira in whom are always charity, and self-restraint, and purity of heart, and compassion, and modesty, and intelligence, and forgiveness, and all else that is indestructible! Thou shalt meet with destruction along with Karna and Suvala's son![17-18] I swear by Krishna's feet and by all my good acts that, filled with rage, I shall, with my shafts, slay thee with thy sons in battle![19] If thou fliest away from battle, then mayst thou have safety!—

---

* *Pataniyam* is explained by Nilakantha as something that causes the *patana* or downfall of a person, hence, *sin*.—T.

Having thus addressed each other with eyes red in wrath,[20] those foremost of men began to shoot their shafts at each other. Then with a thousand cars and ten thousand horse,[21] Duryodhana took his station, encompassing Somadatta. Cakuni also, filled with rage, and armed with every weapon,[22] and surrounded by his sons and grandsons as also by his brothers that were equal to Indra himself in prowess, (did the same). Thy brother-in-law, O king, young in years and of body hard as the thunder-bolt,[23] and possessed of wisdom, had a hundred thousand horse of the foremost valour with him. With these he encompassed the mighty bowman Somadatta.[24] Protected by those mighty warriors, Somadatta covered Sātyaki (with clouds of shafts). Beholding Sātyaki thus covered with clouds of straight shafts,[25] Dhrishtadyumna proceeded towards him in rage and accompanied by a mighty force. Then, O king, the sound that arose there of those two large hosts striking each other, resembled that of many oceans lashed into fury by frightful hurricanes. Then Somadatta pierced Sātyaki with nine arrows.[26-27] Sātyaki, in return, struck that foremost of Kuru warriors with nine arrows. Deeply pierced in that battle by the mighty and firm bowman (Sātyaki),[28] Somadatta sat down on the terrace of his car and lost his senses in a swoon. Beholding him deprived of his senses, his driver, with great speed,[29] bore away from the battle that great car-warrior, *viz.*, the heroic Somadatta. Seeing that Somadatta, afflicted with Yuyudhāna's shafts, had lost his senses,[30] Drona rushed with speed, desiring to slay the Yadu hero. Beholding the preceptor advance, many Pāndava warriors headed by Yudhishthira,[31] surrounded that illustrious perpetuator of Yadu's race from desire of rescuing him. Then commenced a battle between Drona and the Pāndavas,[32] resembling that between Vali and the celestials from desire of the sovereignty of the three worlds. Then Bharadwāja's son of great energy shrouded the Pāndava host with clouds of arrows, and pierced Yudhishthira also. And Drona pierced Sātyaki with ten arrows, and the son of Prishata with twenty.[33-34] And he pierced Bhimasena with nine arrows, and Nakula with five, and Sahadeva with eight, and Cikhandin with a hundred.[35] And the mighty-armed hero pierced each of

the (five) sons of Draupadi with five arrows. And he pierced Virāta with eight arrows and Drupada with ten.[36] And he pierced Yudhāmanyu with three arrows and Uttamaujas with six in that encounter. And piercing many other combatants, he rushed towards Yudhisthira.[37] The troops of Pāndu's son, slaughtered by Drona, ran away in all directions, from fear, O king, with loud wails.[38] Beholding that host thus slaughtered by Drona, Phālguna the son of Prithā, with wrath excited a little, quickly proceeded towards the preceptor.[39] Beholding then that Drona also was proceeding towards Arjuna in that battle, that host of Yudhishthira, O king, once more rallied.[40] Then once more occurred a battle between Drona and the Pāndavas. Drona, surrounded, O king, on all sides, by thy sons,[41] began to consume the Pāndava host like fire consuming a heap of cotton. Beholding him radiant like the Sun and endued with the splendour of a blazing fire,[42] and fiercely and continually, O king, emitting his ray-like arrows, with bow incessantly drawn to a circle, and scorching everything around like the Sun himself,[43] and consuming his foes, there was none in that host that could check him. The shafts of Drona, cutting off the heads of all those that ventured to approach him in the face, penetrated into the Earth. Thus slaughtered by that illustrious warrior, the Pāndava host,[44-45] once more fled away in fear in the very sight of Arjuna. Beholding that force, O Bhārata, thus routed on that night by Drona,[46] Jishnu asked Govinda to proceed towards Drona's car. Then he of Daçārha's race urged those steeds white as silver or vaccine milk or the *Kunda* flower or the moon, towards the car of Drona. Bhimasena also, beholding Phālguna proceed towards Drona,[47-48] commanded his own charioteer, saying,—Bear me towards Drona's division!—Hearing those words of Bhima, his driver Viçoka urged his steeds,[49] following in the wake, O chief of the Bharatas, of Jishnu of sure aim. Beholding the two brothers resolutely proceeding towards Drona's division,[50] the mighty car-warriors among the Pānchālas, the Srinjayas, the Matsyas, the Chedis, the Kārushas, the Koçalas, and the Kaikeyas, O king, all followed them.[51] Then O monarch, took place a terrible battle that made the hair to stand on end. With two mighty throngs of cars, Vibhatsu and

Vrikodara attacked thy host, the former on the right and the latter in the front. Seeing those tigers among men, *viz.*, Bhimasena and Dhananjaya, (thus engaged),[52-53] Dhrishtadyumna, O monarch, and Sātyaki of great strength, rushed behind. Then, O king, an uproar arose there in consequence of the two hosts striking each other, that resembled the noise made by many seas lashed into fury by a tempest. Beholding Sātyaki in battle, Açwatthāman, filled with rage at the slaughter of Somadatta's son, rushed furiously against that Sātwata hero at the van of battle. Seeing him rush in that battle against the car of Cini's grandson,[54-56] Bhimasena's son, the gigantic *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha endued with great strength, rushed at him, riding on a huge and terrible car made of black iron covered with bear skins. Both the height and the width of that large car measured thirty *nalwas.** Equipt with machines set on proper places, its rattle resembled that of a mighty mass of clouds.[57-58] No steeds or elephants were yoked unto it, but, instead, beings that looked like elephants.† On its tall standard perched a prince of vultures with outstretched wings and feet, with eyes wide-expanded, and shrieking awfully. And it was equipt with red flags and decked with the entrails of various animals.[59-60] And that huge vehicle was furnished with eight wheels. Riding on it, Ghatotkacha was surrounded by a full *Akshauhini* of fierce-looking *Rākshasas* armed with lances and heavy clubs and rocks and trees. Seeing him advance with uplifted bow and resembling the mace-armed Destroyer himself in the hour of universal dissolution, the hostile kings were struck with fear. At sight of that prince of *Rākshasas*, *viz.*, Ghatotkacha, looking like a mountain summit, of terrible aspect, frightful, possessed of terrible teeth and fierce face, with arrow-like ears and high cheek-bones, with stiff hair rising upwards, awful eyes, blazing mouth, and sunken belly, with æsophagus wide as a chasm, and a diadem on his head, capable of striking every creature with fear, possessing jaws wide open like those of the Destroyer, endued with great splendour, and capable of agitating all foes,

---

* A *nalwa* measured four hundred cubits.—T.

† Nilakantha explains that these were *Piçáchas*.—T.

advancing towards them,[61-66] thy son's host, afflicted with fear, became highly agitated like the current of the Gangā agitated into fierce eddies by (the action of) the wind.[67] Terrified by the leonine roars uttered by Ghatotkacha, elephants began to eject urin and the kings began to tremble.[68] Then, poured by the *Rākshasas* who had become more powerful in consequence of the night, there began to fall on the field of battle a thick shower of stones.[69] And a ceaseless shower of iron wheels and *Bhuçundis* and darts and lances and spears and *Çatāghnis* and axes also fell there.[70] Beholding that fierce and awful battle, the kings, thy sons, and Karna also, exceedingly pained, fled away.[71] Only the proud son of Drona, ever boastful of his might in arms, stood fearlessly. And he soon dispelled that illusion that had been created by Ghatotkacha.[72] Upon the destruction of his illusion, Ghatotkacha in rage sped fierce shafts (at Açwatthāman). These pierced the son of Drona,[73] like angry snakes speedily piercing through an anthill. These arrows, having pierced through the body of Açwatthāman, became dyed with blood[74] and quickly entered the Earth like snakes into an anthill. The light-handed Açwatthāman, however, of great prowess, filled with wrath,[75] pierced Ghatotkacha with ten arrows. Ghatatkocha, deeply pierced in his vital parts by Drona's son,[76] and feeling great pain, took up a wheel having a thousand spokes. Its edge was sharp as a razor, and it was resplendent as the rising Sun. And it was decked with diverse gems and diamonds.[77] Desirous of slaying him, the son of Bhimasena hurled that wheel at Açwatthāman. And as that wheel coursed swiftly towards Drona's son, the lattler cut it into fragments by means of his shafts.[78] Baffled it fell down on the Earth, like the hope cherished by an unfortunate man. Beholding his wheel baffled, Ghatotkacha quickly[79] covered the son of Drona with his shafts like Rāhu swallowing the Sun. Meanwhile, Ghatotkacha's son endued with great splendour and looking like a mass of antimony[80] checked the advancing son of Drona like the king of mountains (Meru) checking the (course of the) wind. Afflicted with showers of shafts by Bhimasena's grandson, *viz.*, the brave Anjanaparvan, Açwatthāman looked like the mountain Meru bearing a torrent of

rain from a mighty cloud. Then Açwatthāman, equal unto Rudra or Upendra in prowess, became filled with rage.[81-82] With one shaft he cut off the standard of Anjanaparvan; With two others, his two drivers, and with three others, his *Trivenuka*.[83] And he cut off the *Rākshasa's* bow with one arrow, and his four steeds with four other arrows. Made earless, Anjanaparvan took up a scimitar. With another keen shaft, Açwatthāman cut off into two fragments that scimitar, decked with golden stars, in the *Rākshasa's* hand. The grandson of Hidimvā then, O king, whirling a gold-decked mace, quickly hurled it at Açwatthāman. Drona's son, however, striking it with his shafts, caused it to fall down on the Earth. Soaring up then into the sky, Anjanaparvan began to roar like a black cloud.[84-86] And from the welkin he showered trees upon his foe. Like the Sun piercing a mass of clouds with his rays, Açwatthāman then began to pierce with his shafts the son of Ghatotkacha, that receptacle of illusions, in the welkin. Gifted with great energy, the *Rākshasa* once more came down on his gold-decked car.[87-88] He then looked like a high and beautiful hill of antimony on the surface of the Earth. The son of Drona then slew that son of Bhima's son, *viz.*, Anjanaparvan, cased in an iron coat of mail, even as Mahādeva had slain in days of yore the *Asura* Andhaka. Beholding his mighty son slain by Açwatthāman,[89-90] Ghatotkacha, coming unto the son of Drona, fearlessly addressed the heroic son of Caradwat's daughter who was then consuming the Pāndava troops like a raging forest-conflagration, in these words.[91]

"'Ghatotkacha said,—Wait, wait, O son of Drona! Thou shalt not escape me with life! I shall slay thee today like Agni's son slaying *Krauncha*![92]—

"'Açwatthāman said,—Go, O son, and fight with others, O thou that hast the prowess of a celestial! It is not proper, O son of Hidimvā, that sire should battle with son![*93] I do not

---

* Açwatthāman and the Pāndavas were like brothers, for both were disciples of Drona. Ghatotkacha, therefore, having been Bhima's son was Açwatthāman's brother's son.—T.

cherish any wrath against thee, O son of Hidimvā! When, however, one's wrath is excited, one may kill one's own self![94]—'

Sanjaya continued,—'Having heard these words, Ghatotkacha, filled with grief on account of the fall of his son and with eyes red as copper in wrath, approached Açwatthāman and said,[95]—Am I a dastard in battle, O son of Drona, like a vulgar person, that thou afrightest me thus with words? These thy words are improper[96] Verily, I have been begot by Bhima in the celebrated race of the Kurus! I am a son of the Pāndavas, those heroes that never retreat from battle![97] I am the king of the *Rākshasas*, equal to the Ten-necked (Rāvana) in might! Wait, wait, O son of Drona! Thou shalt not escape me with life![98] I shall today on the field of battle dispell thy desire for fight!—Having thus replied unto Açwatthāman, that mighty *Rākshasa*, with eyes red as copper in rage,[99] rushed furiously against the son of Drona like a lion against a prince of elephants. And Ghatotkacha began to shower upon that bull among car-warriors, *viz.*, Drona's son, shafts of the measure of the *Akṣha* of a battle-car, like a cloud pouring torrents of rain. Drona's son, however, with his own shafts, dispelled that arrowy shower before it could reach him.[100-1] At that time it seemed that another encounter was taking place in the welkin between shafts (as the combatants). The welkin then, during that night, shone resplendent with the sparks caused by the clash of those weapons as if with (myriads of) fire flies. Observing that his illusion was dispelled by Drona's son proud of his prowess in battle,[102-3] Ghatotkacha, once more making himself invisible, created an illusion. He assumed the form of a high mountain, crowded with cliffs and trees,[104] and possessing fountains from which ceaselessly flowed spears and lances and swords and heavy clubs. Beholding that mountain like a mass of antimony, with countless weapons falling from it, Drona's son was not at all moved. The latter invoked into existence the *Vajra* weapon.*[105-6] That prince of mountains then, struck with that weapon, was quickly destroyed. Then the *Rākshasa*, becoming a mass of blue clouds

* *I. e.*, the weapon endued with the force of the thunder.—T.

in the firmament, decked with rain-bow,[107] began to furiously shower upon Drona's son in that battle a downpour of stones and rocks. Then that foremost of all persons acquainted with weapons, *viz*, Açwatthāman, aiming the *Vāyavya* weapon,[108] destroyed that blue cloud which had risen on the firmament. Drona's son, that foremost of men, covering then all the points of the compass with his shafts, slew a hundred thousand car-warriors. He beheld Ghatotkacha then fearlessly coming towards him with bent bow and accompanied by a large number of *Rākshasas* that resembled lions or tigers or elephants of infuriate prowess,[109-111] some riding on elephants, some on cars, and some on steeds. The son of Hidimvā was accompanied by those fierce followers of his, with frightful faces and heads and necks.[112] Those *Rākshasas* consisted of both *Paulasthyas* and *Yātudhānas.** Their prowess was equal to that of Indra himself. They were armed with diverse kinds of weapons and cased in diverse kinds of armour.[113] Of terrible visage, they swelled with rage. Ghatotkacha came to battle, accompanied by those *Rākshasas*, who were, indeed, incapable of being easily defeated in battle.[114] Beholding them, thy son Duryodhana became exceedingly cheerless. Unto him the son of Drona said,—Wait, O Duryodhana! Thou needst have no fear![115] Stand aside with these thy heroic brothers and these lords of Earth endued with the prowess of Indra! I will slay thy foes! Defeat thou shalt not have! I tell thee truly! Meanwhile, assure thy troops!—[116]

"'Duryodhana said,—I do not regard what thou sayest to be at all wonderful, since thy heart is large! O son of Gautama's daughter, thy regard for us is great![117]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said those words unto Açwatthāman, he then addressed the son of Suvala, saying,—Dhananjaya is engaged in battle, surrounded by a hundred thousand car-warriors of great valour! Go thou against him, with sixty thousand cars! Karna also, and Vrishasena, and Kripa, and Nila,[118-19] and the Northerners, and Kritavarman, and the sons of Purumitra, and Dusçāsana, and Nikumbha, and Kunda-

* Different species of *Rākshasas*.—T.

vedin,[120] and Puranjaya, and Dridaratha, and Patākin, and Hemapunjaka, and Calya, and Aruni, and Indrasena, and Sanjaya, and Vijaya, and Jaya,[121] and Kamalāksha, and Parakrāthin, and Jayadharman, and Sudarçana,—these will follow thee, with sixity thousand foot-soldiers.[122] O uncle, slay Bhima and the twins and king Yudhishthira the just, like the chief of the celestials slaying the *Asuras!* My hope of victory is on thee![123] Already deeply pierced by Drona's son with shafts, all their limbs have been exceedingly mangled. Slay the sons of Kunti, O uncle, like Agni's son (Kārtikeya) slaying the *Asuras!*[124]—Thus addressed by thy son, Cakuni proceeded quickly for destroying the Pāndavas, filling thy sons, O king, with delight![125]

"Meanwhile, O king, the battle that took place between the *Rākshasa* and the son of Drona on that night was exceedingly terrible like that between Cakra and Pralhāda (in days of old).[126] Ghatotkacha, filled with rage, struck Drona's son in the chest with ten powerful shafts fierce as poison or fire.[127] Deeply pierced with those shafts sped by the son of Bhimasena, Açwatthāman trembled on the terrace of his car like a tall tree shaken by the tempest.[128] Once more, Ghatotkacha, with a broad-headed shaft, quickly cut off the bright bow that was in the hands of Drona's son.[129] The latter then, taking up another bow capable of bearing a great strain, showered keen arrows (upon his foe) like a cloud pouring torrents of rain.[130] Then the son of Caradwat's daughter, O Bhārata, sped many sky-ranging and foe-slaying arrows winged with gold towards the sky-ranging *Rākshasa*.[131] Afflicted with those shafts of Açwatthāman, that vast force of broad-chested *Rākshasas* looked like a herd of infuriate elephants afflicted by lions.[132] Consuming with his arrows those *Rākshasas* with their steeds, drivers, and elephants, he blazed forth like the adorable Agni while consuming creatures at the end of the *Yuga*.[133] Having burnt with his shafts a full *Akshauhini* of *Rākshasa* troops, Açwatthāman shone resplendent like the divine Maheçwara in heaven after the burning of the tripple city.*[134] That foremost

* *Tripura*, belonging to an *Asura* of the same name.—T.

of victors, *viz.*, Drona's son, having burnt thy foes, shone brilliantly like the blazing *Yuga* fire after having burnt all creatures at the end of the *Yuga*.[135] Then Ghatotkacha, filled with rage, urged that vast *Rākshasa* force on, saying,—Slay the son of Drona![136]—That command of Ghatotkacha was obeyed by those terrible *Rākshasas* of bright teeth, large faces, frightful aspects,[137] gaping mouths, long tongues and eyes blazing with wrath. Causing the Earth to be filled with their loud leonine roars,[138] and armed with diverse kinds of weapons, they rushed against the son of Drona for slaying him. Endued with fierce prowess, those *Rākshasas*, with eyes red in wrath, fearlessly hurled at Açwatthāman's head hundreds and thousands of darts, and *Çatāgnis*, and spiked maces, and *Açanis*, and long lances, and axes, and scimitars, and maces, and short arrows, and heavy clubs, and battle-axes, and spears, and swords, and lances, and *Kunapas*, and polished *Kampanas*, and *Sthulas*, and rockets, and stones, and vessels of (hot) treacle, and *sthunas* made of black iron, and mallets, all of terrible forms and capable of destroying foes.[139-142] Beholding that thick shower of weapons falling upon the head of Drona's son, thy warriors were much pained.[143] The son of Drona, however, fearlessly destroyed with his whetted shafts endued with the force of the thunder that frightful shower of weapons looking like a risen cloud.[144] Then the high-souled son of Drona, with other weapons equipt with golden wings and inspired by *mantras* with the force of celestial arms, speedily slew many *Rākshasas*.[145] Afflicted with those shafts, that vast force of broad-chested *Rākshasas* looked like a herd of infuriate elephants afflicted by lions.[146] Then those mighty *Rākshasas*, thus afflicted by Drona's son, became filled with fury and rushed against the former.[147] The prowess that the son of Drona then showed was exceedingly wonderful, for the feat he achieved is incapable of being achieved by any other being among living creatures,[148] since, alone and unsupported, that warrior acquainted with high and mighty weapons burnt that *Rākshasa* force with his blazing shafts in the very sight of that prince of *Rākshasas*.[149] Whilst consuming that *Rākshasa* force, Drona's son in that battle shone resplendent like the *Samvartaka* fire while burning all creatures at the end of

the *Yuga*.[150] Indeed, amongst those thousands of kings and those Pāndavas, O Bhārata, there was none, except that mighty prince of the *Rākshasas*, *viz.*, the heroic Ghatotkacha, capable of even looking at the son of Drona in that battle, who was thus employed in consuming their ranks with his shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison.[151-52] The *Rākshasa*, O chief of the Bharatas, with eyes rolling in wrath, striking his palms, and biting his (nether) lip,[153] addressed his own driver, saying.—Bear me towards the son of Drona !—Riding on that formidable car equipt with triumphal banners, that slayer of foes once more proceeded against Drona's son desiring a single combat with the latter. Endued with terrible prowess, the *Rākshasa*, uttering a loud leonine roar, hurled in that encounter at Drona's son, having whirled it (previously), a terrible *Açani* of celestial workmanship and equipt with eight bells.*[154-56] Drona's son, however, jumping down from his car, having left his bow thereon, seized it and hurled it back at Ghatotkacha himself. Ghatotkacha, meanwhile, had quickly alighted from his car.[157] That formidable *Açani*, of dazzling effulgence, having reduced to ashes the *Rākshasa's* vehicle with steeds and driver and standard, entered the Earth, having pierced her through.[158] Beholding that feat of Drona's son, *viz.*, his having jumped down and seized that terrible *Açani* of celestial workmanship, all creatures applauded it.[159] Proceeding then, O king, to Dhrishtadyumna's car, Bhimasena's son, taking up a terrible bow that resembled the large bow of Indra himself,[160] once more sped many keen shafts at the illustrious son of Drona. Dhrishtadyumna also fearlessly shot at Açwatthāman's chest many foremost of shafts equipt with wings of gold and resembling snakes of virulent poison. Then Drona's son shot arrows and long shafts by thousands.[161-62] Those two heroes, however, *viz.*, Ghatotkacha and Dhrishtadyumna, struck and baffled Açwatthāman's shafts by means of their own shafts whose touch resembled that of fire. The battle then that took place between those two lions among men (on the one side) and the son of

* *Açani* literally means the thunder. Probably, some kind of iron mace.—T.

Drona (on the other) became fierce in the extreme and gladdened all the combatants, O bull of Bharata's race! Then, accompanied by a thousand cars, three hundred elephants,[168-64] and six thousand horse, Bhimasena arrived at that spot. The virtuous son of Drona, however, endued as he was with prowess that knew no fatigue, continued to fight with the heroic son of Bhima and with Dhrishtadyumna supported by his followers.* The prowess then that Drona's son displayed on that occasion was exceedingly wonderful,[165-67] inasmuch as, O Bhārata, none else amongst all creatures is capable of accomplishing such feats. Within the twinkling of an eye, he destroyed, by means of his sharp shafts, a full *Akshauhini* of *Rākshasa* troops with steeds, drivers, cars, and elephants, in the very sight of Bhimasena and Hidimvā's son and Prishata's son[168] and the twins and Dharma's son and Vijaya and Achyuta.† Deeply struck with the straight-going shafts (of Açwatthāman),[169] elephants fell down on the Earth like crestless mountains. Strewn all around with the lopped off trunks of elephants, that moved still in convulsions, the Earth looked beautiful as if overspread with moving snakes. And the Earth looked resplendent with golden staves and royal umbrellas,[170-71] like the firmament at the end of the *Yuga* bespangled with planets and stars and many moons and suns. And Drona's son caused a bloody river of impetuous current to flow there. The blood of elephants and steeds and combatants formed its water. Tall standards formed its frogs. Drums formed its large tortoises; umbrellas, its rows of swans; yak-tails in profusion, its froth; *Kankas* and vultures, its crocodiles; weapons in profusion, its fishes; large elephants, the stones and rocks on its banks; elephants and steeds, its sharks; cars, its unstable and broad banks; and banners, its beautiful rows of trees. Having shafts for its (smaller) fishes, that frightful river had lances and darts and swords for its

---

* The Bengal texts read *Utkrishta-vikramas.* The correct reading seems to be *Aklishta-vikramas.* Then again, *Sahānujam* seems to be inaccurate. I follow the Bombay reading *Sahānugam.*—T.

† *Achyuta*, when used as a proper noun, refers to Krishna. It means —'of unfading glory' and not 'the immortal one.'—T.

snakes; marrow and flesh for its mire, and trunkless bodies floating on it for its rafts. And it was choked with the hair (of men and animals) for its moss. And it inspired the timid with cheerlessness and fear. And the wails of combatants constituted its frightful roar. And bloody waves were seen on its surface.[172-77] Rendered frightful by means of the foot-soldiers with which it teemed, Yama's abode was the ocean towards which it flowed. Having slain the *Rākshasas*, Drona's son then began to afflict the son of Hidimvā with his arrows.[178] Filled once more with rage, the puissant son of Drona, having pierced with many shafts those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the Pārthas including Vrikodara and the sons of Prishata, slew Suratha, one of the sons of Drupada. Then he slew in that battle Suratha's younger brother named Catrunjaya.[179-80] And then he slew Valānika and Jayānika, and Jaya. And once more, with a keen shaft, Drona's son, uttering a leonine roar,[181] slew Prishadhru, and then the proud Chandrasena. And then he slew with ten arrows the ten sons of Kuntibhoja.[182] Then, O king, Drona's son despatched Crutāyush to the abode of Yama. With three other keen shafts equipt with beautiful wings and red eyes,[183] he despatched the mighty Catrunjaya to the region of Cakra.* Then Açwatthāman, filled with rage, fixed on his bowstring a fierce and straight arrow.[184] Drawing the string to his ear, he quickly shot that fierce and excellent arrow resembling the rod of Death himself, aiming at Ghatotkacha.[185] That mighty shaft, equipt with beautiful wings, passing through the chest of the *Rākshasa*, O lord of Earth, entered the Earth, piercing through it.[186] Ghatotkacha thereupon fell down on the car. Beholding him fallen down and believing him to be dead, the mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna took him away from the presence of Drona's son and caused him to be placed upon another car.[187] Thus, O king, that car-force of Yudhishthira turned away from the fight. The heroic son of Drona then, having vanquished his foes, uttered a loud roar. And he was worshipped by all men and

* Slight differences are observable between the Bengal and the Bombay texts as regards the last three verses.—T.

all thy sons, O sire !*[188] The Earth, strewn all around with the fallen bodies of dead *Rākshasas* pierced and mangled with hundreds of arrows, became fierce-looking and impassable as if strewn with mountain summits.[189] Then *Siddhas* and *Gandharvas* and *Piçāchas*, and *Nāgas*, and birds, and *Pitris*, and ravens, and large numbers of cannibals and ghosts, and *Apsaras*, and celestials, all combined in highly applauding the son of Drona.' "[190]

SECTION CLVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the sons of Drupada, as also those of Kuntibhoja, and *Rākshasas* too in thousands, slain by the son of Drona,[1] Yudhishthira, and Bhimasena, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, and Yuyudhāna, uniting together, set their hearts firmly on battle.[2] Then Somadatta, once more filled with rage upon beholding Sātyaki in that battle, covered the latter, O Bhārata, with a dense shower of arrows.[3] Then took place a battle, fierce and exceedingly wonderful to behold, between thy warriors and those of the foe, both parties being solicitous of victory.[4] Fighting on behalf of Sātyaki, Bhima pierced the Kaurava hero with ten shafts. Somadatta, however, in return, pierced that hero with a hundred arrows.[5] Then Sātwata, filled with rage, pierced with ten keen shafts endued with the force of the thunder, that old warrior afflicted with grief on account of the death of his son, and who was, besides, endued with every estimable virtue like Yayāti the son of Nahusha. Having pierced him with great force, he struck him once more with seven arrows.[6-7] Then, fighting for the sake of Sātyaki, Bhimasena hurled at the head of Somadatta a new, hard, and terrible *Parigha*.[8] Sātyaki also, filled with rage, sped at Somadatta's chest, in that battle, an excellent shaft, keen and equipt with goodly wings and resembling fire itself in splendour.[9] The *Parigha* and the shaft, both terrible, fell simultaneously upon the body of the heroic Somadatta. That mighty car-warrior thereupon fell down.[10] Beholding his son (Somadatta) thus fallen into a swoon, Vālhika

---

* This is a triplet.—T.

rushed at Sātyaki, scattering showers of arrows like a cloud in season.[11] Then Bhima, for Sātyaki's sake, afflicted the illustrious Vālhika with nine shafts and pierced him therewith at the van of battle.[12] The mighty-armed son of Pratipa then (*viz.*, Vālhika), filled with great wrath, hurled a dart at the chest of Bhima, like Purandara himself hurling the thunder.[13] Struck therewith, Bhima trembled (on his car) and swooned away. The mighty warrior then, recovering his senses, hurled a mace at his opponent.[14] Hurled by the son of Pāndu, that mace snatched away the head of Vālhika, who thereupon fell down lifeless on the Earth like a tree struck down by lightning.[15] Upon the slaughter of that bull among men, *viz.*, the heroic Vālhika, ten of thy sons, each of whom was equal unto Rāma the son of Daçaratha in prowess, began to afflict Bhima.[16] They were Nāgadatta, and Dridaratha, and Viravāhu, and Ayobhuja, and Dridha, and Suhasta, and Virajas, and Pramatha, and Ugrayāyin.[17] Beholding them, Bhimasena became filled with rage. He then took up a number of arrows, each capable of bearing a great strain. Aiming at each of them one after another, he sped those arrows at them, striking each in his vital part.[18] Pierced therewith, they fell down from their cars, deprived of energy and life, like tall trees from mountain cliffs, broken by a tempest.[19] Having with those ten shafts slain those ten sons of thine, Bhima shrouded the favourite son of Karna with showers of arrows.[20] Then the celebrated Vrikaratha, brother of Karna, pierced Bhima with many arrows. The mighty Pāndava, however, soon disposed of him effectually.[21] Slaying next, O Bhārata, seven car-warriors among thy brothers-in-law, with his shafts, the heroic Bhima pressed Catachandra down into the Earth.[22] Unable to bear the slaughter of the mighty car-warrior Catachandra, Cakuni's brothers, *viz.*, the heroic Gavāksha and Carabha and Bibhu,[23] and Subhaga and Bhānudatta, those five mighty car-warriors, rushing towards Bhimasena, attacked him with their keen shafts. Thus attacked with those shafts like a mountain with torrents of rain,*[24] Bhima slew those five mighty kings with

* This is a triplet.—T.

five shafts of his. Beholding those heroes slain, many foremost of kings began to waver.[25]

"'Then Yudhishthira, filled with wrath, began to destroy thy ranks, in the very sight, O sinless one, of the Pot-born (Drona) and of thy sons.[26] Indeed, with his shafts, Yudhishthira began to despatch to the regions of Yama the Amvashtas, the Mālavas, the brave Trigartas, and the Civis.[27] And cutting off the Abhisāhas, the Curasenas, the Vālhikas, and the Vaçātīs, he caused the Earth to be miry with flesh and blood.[28] And he also despatched within a trice, by means of many shafts, to Yama's domains, the Yaudheyas, the Mālavas, and large numbers, O king, of the Madrakas.[29] Then a loud uproar arose in the vicinity of Yudhishthira's car, amid which was heard,—Slay, Seize, Capture, Pierce, Cut into pieces![30]—Beholding him thus slaying and routing thy troops, Drona, urged on by thy son, shrouded Yudhishthira with showers of shafts.[31] Drona, filled with great wrath, struck Yudhishthira with the *Vāyavya* weapon. The son of Pāndu, however, baffled that celestial weapon with a similar weapon of his own. Seeing his weapon baffled, the son of Bharadwāja, filled with great wrath and desirous of slaying the son of Pāndu, sped at Yudhishthira diverse celestial weapons such as the *Vāruna*, the *Yāmya*, the *Āgneya*, the *Tāshtra* and the *Sāvitra*. The mighty-armed Pāndava, however, conversant with morality, fearlessly baffled all those weapons of the Pot-born that were hurled or in course of being hurled at him. Then the Pot-born, striving to accomplish his vow[32-35] and desirous also, for thy son's good, to slay the son of Dharma, invoked into existence, O Bhārata, the *Aindra* and the *Prājāpatya* weapons.[36] Then that foremost one of Kuru's race (*viz.*, Yudhishthira), of the gait of the elephant or the lion, of broad chest and large and red eyes, and endued with energy scarcely inferior, (to that of Drona), invoked into existence the *Māhendra* weapon. With that he baffled the weapon of Drona.[37] Seeing all his weapons baffled, Drona, filled with wrath, and desirous of accomplishing the destruction of Yudhishthira, invoked into existence the *Brāhma* weapon.[38] Enveloped as we then were by a thick gloom, we could not observe what passed. All creatures also,

O monarch, were filled with great fright.[39] Beholding the *Brahma* weapon uplifted, Kunti's son Yudhishthira, O king, baffled it with a *Brahma* weapon of his own.[40] Then all the foremost warriors applauded those two bulls among men, *viz.*, Drona and Yudhishthira, those great bowmen acquainted with every mode of warfare.[41] Abandoning Yudhishthira, Drona then, with eyes red as copper in rage, began to consume the division of Drupada with the *Vāyavya* weapon.[42] Slaughtered by Drona, the Pānchālas fled away from fear, in the very sight of Bhimasena and of the illustrious Pārtha.[43] Then the diadem-decked (Arjuna) and Bhimasena, checking that flight of their troops, suddenly encountered that hostile force with two large throngs of cars.[44] Vibhatsu attacking the right and Vrikodara the left, Bharadwāja's son was encountered with two mighty showers of shafts.[45] Then the Kaikayas, the Srinjayas, and the Pānchālas of great energy followed the two brothers, O king, accompanied by the Matsyas and the Sātwatas.[46] Then the Bharata host, slaughtered by the diadem-decked (Arjuna) and overcome with sleep and the darkness, began to break.[47] Drona, and thy son himself, endeavoured to rally them. The combatants, however, O king, were incapable of being then checked in their flight.'"[48]

SECTION CLVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding that vast host of the Pāndavas swelling with rage and regarding it to be incapable of being resisted, thy son Duryodhana, addressing Karna, said these words:[1]—O thou that art devoted to friends, that hour hath now come in respect of thy friends (when thy help is most needed)! O Karna, save in battle all my warriors![2] Our combatants are now encompassed on all sides by the Pānchālas, the Kaikeyas, the Matsyas, and the mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas, all filled with rage and resembling hissing snakes![3] Yonder, the Pāndavas, solicitous of victory, are roaring in joy! The vast car-force of the Pānchālas is possessed of the prowess of Cakra himself![4]—

"'Karna replied,—If Purandara himself were to come hither

for saving Pārtha, quickly vanquishing even him, I would slay that son of Pāndu![5] I tell thee truly! Be cheered, O Bhārata! *I* will slay the sons of Pāndu and all the assembled Pānchālas![6] *I* will give thee victory like Pāvaka's son giving victory unto Vāsava! I shall do what is agreeable to thee, in this battle that has come![7] Amongst all the Pārthas, Phālguna is the strongest. At him I will hurl the fatal dart of Cakra's workmanship.[8] Upon the death of that great bowman, his brothers, O giver of honors, will either surrender themselves unto thee or once more retire into the forest![9] When *I* am alive, O Kauravya, never indulge in any grief! *I* will vanquish in battle all the Pāndavas united together,[10] and all the Pānchālas, the Kaikeyas, and the Vrishnis assembled together! Making porcupines of them by means of my arrowy showers, I will give thee the Earth![11]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'While Karna was uttering those words, Kripa, the mighty-armed son of Caradwat, smiling the while, addressed the *Suta's* son in these words:[12]—Thy speech is fair, O Karna! If words alone could lead to success, then with thee, O son of Rādhā, as his protector, this bull among the Kurus would be considered to have the amplest measure of protection![13] Thou boastest much, O Karna, in the presence of the Kuru chief, but thy prowess is seldom witnessed, nor, indeed, any result (of thy boastful speeches)![14] Many a time have we seen thee encounter the sons of Pāndu in battle. On every one of those occasions, O *Suta's* son, thou hast been vanquished by the Pāndavas.[15] While Dhritarāshtra's son was being taken away (as a captive) by the *Gandharvas*, all the troops fought on that occasion except thy single self who was the first to fly away![16] In Virāta's city also, all the Kauravas, united together, including thyself and thy younger brother, were vanquished by Pārtha in battle![17] Thou art not a match for even one of the sons of Pāndu, *viz.*, Phālguna, on the field of battle! How then canst thou venture to vanquish all the sons of Pāndu with Krishna at their head?[18] Thou indulgest in too much brag, O *Suta's* son! Engage thyself in battle without saying anything! To put forth prowess without indulging in brag is the duty of good men.[19] Ever roaring aloud, O *Suta's* son, like

the dry clouds of autumn, thou showest thyself, O Karna, to be without substance! The king, however, does not understand it.[20] Thou roarest, O son of Rādhā, as long as thou seest not the son of Prithā. These thy roars disappear when thou seest Pārtha near![21] Indeed, thou roarest as long as thou art out of the range of Phālguna's shafts. These roars of thine disappear when thou art pierced with Pārtha's shafts.[22] Kshatriyas evince their eminence by means of their arms; Brāhmanas, by means of speech; Arjuna evinces his by means of the bow; but Karna, by the castles he builds in the air.[23] Who is there that will resist that Pārtha who gratified Rudra himself (in battle)?—Thus riled by Caradwat's son,[24] Karna, that foremost of smiters, answered Kripa in the following strain:—Heroes always roar like clouds in the season of rains,[25] and, like seeds put in the soil, quickly yield fruits. I do not see any fault in heroes that take great burdens on their shoulders indulging in boastful speeches on the field of battle! When a person mentally resolves to bear a burden,[26-27] destiny itself aids him in the execution. Wishing in my heart to bear a great burden, I always summon sufficient resolution.[28] If, slaying the sons of Pāndu with Krishna and the Sātwatas in battle, I indulge in such roars, what is it to thee, O Brāhmana?[29] They that are heroes never roar fruitlessly like autumnal clouds. Conscious of their own might, the wise indulge in roars![30] In my heart I am determined to vanquish in battle today Krishna and Pārtha united together and fighting with resolution! It is for this that I roar, O son of Gotama![31] Behold the fruit of these my roars, O Brāhmana! Slaying the sons of Pāndu in battle, with all their followers and Krishna and the Sātwatas, I will bestow on Duryodhana the whole Earth without a thorn in it![32]—

"'Kripa said,—Little do I reck, O *Suta's* son, these delirious sayings of thine discovering thy thoughts, not deeds! Thou always speakest in depreciation of the two Krishnas and king Yudhishthira the just![33] He, O Karna, is certain to have the victory who hath on his side those two heroes skilled in battle! Indeed, Krishna and Arjuna are incapable of being defeated by the celestials, the *Gandharvas* the *Yakshas*, human beings, the *Nāgas*, and the birds, all clad in mail. Yudhishthira the

son of Dharma is devoted to the Brāhmanas. He is truthful in speech and self-restrained. He reverences the *Pitris* and the deities. He is devoted to the practice of truth and righteousness. He is, again, skilled in weapons. Possessed of great intelligence, he is also grateful.[34-36] His brothers are all endued with great might and well-practised in all weapons. They are devoted to the service of their seniors. Possessed of wisdom and fame, they are also righteous in their practices.[37] Their kinsmen and relatives are all endued with the prowess of Indra. Effectual smiters, they are all exceedingly devoted to the Pāndavas. Dhrishtadyumna, and Cikhandin, and Janamejaya the son of Durmuksha,[38] and Chandrasena, and Madrasena, and Kirtivarman, and Dhruva, and Dhara, and Vasuchandra, and Sutejana,[39] the sons of Drupada, and Drupada himself conversant with high and mighty weapons, and the king of the Matsyas also with his younger brothers all resolutely struggling for their sake,[40] and Gajānika, and Crutānika, and Virabhadra, and Sudarçana, and Crutadhwaja, and Valānika, and Jayānika, and Jayapriya,[41] and Vijaya, and Labdhalaksha, and Jayāçwa, and Kāmarasha, and the handsome brothers of Virāta,[42] and the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), and the (five) sons of Draupadi, and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha, are all fighting for the Pāndavas. The sons of Pāndu, therefore, will not meet with destruction.[43] These and many other hosts (of heroes) are for the son of Pāndu. Without doubt, the entire universe with the celestials, the *Asuras*, and human beings,[44] with all the tribes of *Yakshas* and *Rakshas*, and with all the elephants and snakes and other creatures, can be annihilated by Bhima and Phālguna by the prowess of their weapons.[45] As regards Yudhishthira also, he can, with angry eyes only, consume the whole world! How, O Karna, canst thou venture to vanquish those foes in battle for whom Caurin of immeasurable might hath clad himself in mail? This, O *Suta's* son, is a great folly on thy part, since thou always venturest to contend with Caurin himself in battle![46-47]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed (by Kripa), Karna the son of Rādhā, O bull of Bharata's race, smiling the while, said these words unto the preceptor Kripa the son of Cara-

dwat :[48]—The words thou hast spoken about the Pāndavas, O Brāhmana, are all true! These and many other virtues are to be seen in the sons of Pāndu.[49] It is true also that the Pārthas are incapable of being vanquished by the very gods with Vāsava at their head, and the *Daityas*, the *Yakshas*, and the *Rākshasas*.[50] For all that, *I* will vanquish the Pārthas with the help of the dart given me by Vāsava! Thou knowest, O Brāhmana, that the dart given me by Cakra is incapable of being baffled.[51] With that I will slay Savyasāchin in battle! Upon Arjuna's fall, Krishna and the uterine brothers of Arjuna[52] will never be able to enjoy the (sovereignty of the) Earth without Arjuna (to aid them)! All of them, therefore, will perish. This Earth then, with her seas,[53] will remain subject to the chief of the Kurus, O Gautama, without costing him any efforts! In this world everything, without doubt, becomes attainable by policy.[54] Knowing this, I indulge in these rears, O Gautama! As regards thyself, thou art old, a Brāhmana by birth, and unskilled in battle![55] Thou bearest much affection for the Pāndavas! It is for this thou insultest me thus! If, O Brāhmana, thou tellest me again such words as these,[56] I shall then, drawing out my scimitar, cut off thy tongue, O wretch! Thou desirest, O Brāhmana, to applaud the Pāndavas,[57] for frightening all the troops and the Kauravas, O thou of wretched understanding! As regards this also, O Gautama, listen to what I say![58] Duryodhana, and Drona, and Cakuni, and Durmukha, and Jaya, and Dusçāsana, and Vrishasena, and the ruler of the Madras, and thyself too,[59] and Somadatta, and Bhima, and Drona's son, and Vivingçati,—all these heroes skilled in battle,—are here, clad in mail![60] What foe is there, endued with even the prowess of Cakra, that would vanquish these in battle? All those I have named are heroes, skilled in weapons, endued with great might, solicitous of admisssion into heaven,[61]* conversant with morality, and skilled in battle! They would slay the very gods in fight! These will take their places on the field for slaying the Pāndavas,[62] clad in mail on behalf of Duryodhana desirous of victory!

---

* By falling on the field of battle.—T.

I regard victory to be dependent on destiny, even in the case of the foremost of mighty men.[63] When the mighty-armed Bhishma himself lieth, pierced with a hundred arrows, as also Vikarna, and Jayadratha,[64] and Bhuriçravas, and Jaya, and Jalasandha, and Sudakshina, and Cala, that foremost of car-warriors, and Bhagadatta of great energy,[65] I say, when these and many others, incapable of being easily vanquished by the very gods, heroes all and mightier (than the Pāndavas), lie on the field of battle, slain by the Pāndavas,[66] what dost thou think, O wretch among men, but that all this is the result of destiny? As regards them also, *viz.*, the foes of Duryodhana, whom thou adorest, O Brāhmana,[67] brave warriors of theirs, in hundreds and thouands, have been slain! The armies of both the Kurus and the Pāndavas are diminishing in numbers.[68] I do not, in this, behold the prowess of the Pāndavas! With them, O lowest of men, whom thou always regardest to be so mighty,[69] I shall strive, to the utmost extent of my might, to contend in battle, for Duryodhana's good! As regards victory, that depends on destiny![70]—' "

SECTION CLIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Seeing his uncle thus addressed in harsh and insulting words by the *Suta's* son, Açwatthāman, uplifting his scimitar, furiously rushed towards the latter.[1] Filled with fury, Drona's son rushed towards Karna, in the very sight of the Kuru king, like a lion at an infuriate elephant.[2]

" 'And Açwatthāman said,—O lowest of men, Kripa was speaking of the virtues truly possessed by Arjuna! Of wicked understanding as thou art, thou rebukest, however, my brave uncle from malice![3] Possessed with pride and insolence, thou braggest today of thy prowess, not regarding any of the world's bowmen in battle![*4] Where was thy prowess and where thy weapons when vanquishing thee in battle the wielder of *Gāndiva*

---

* In the second line of 4, *utsedha* and not *udvritta* is the true reading. So also *Kanchit* and not *kinchit*. The paraphrase, according to Nilakantha, is *kanchit dhanurdharam na ganayan, &c.*,—T.

slew Jayadratha in thy very sight?[5] Vainly, O wretch of a *Suta*, dost thou indulge in thy mind the hope of vanquishing him who formerly contended in battle with Mahādeva himself![6] The very gods with the *Asuras* united together and with Indra at their head had failed to vanquish Arjuna, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, having Krishna only for his ally![7] How then, O *Suta*, hopest thou, aided by these kings, to vanquish that foremost heroes in the world, *viz.*, the unvanquished Arjuna, in battle?[8] Behold, O Karna of wicked soul, (what I do to thee) today! O lowest of men, O thou of wretched understanding, I will presently sever thy head from thy trunk![9]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus saying, Açwatthāman made a furious rush at Karna. The king himself, of great energy, and Kripa, that foremost of men, held him fast.[10] Then Karna said,—Of wicked understanding, this wretch of a Brāhmana thinks himself brave and boasts of his prowess in battle! Set him at liberty, O chief of the Kurus! Let him come in contact with my might![11]—

"'Açwatthāman said,—O son of a *Suta*, O thou of wicked understanding, this (thy fault) is pardoned by us! Phālguna, however, will quell this risen pride of thine![12]

"'Duryodhana said,—O Açwatthāman, quell thy wrath! It behoveth thee, O giver of honors, to forgive! Thou shouldst not, O sinless one, be angry with the *Suta's* son![13] Upon thee and Karna and Kripa and Drona and the ruler of the Madras and Suvala's son resteth a great burthen! Drive away thy wrath, O best of Brāhmanas![14] Yonder all the Pāndava troops are approching from desire of fight with Rādhā's son! Indeed, O Brāhmana, yonder they come, challenging us all![15]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus pacified by the king, the high-souled son of Drona, O monarch, whose ire had been excited, suppressed his wrath and forgave (Karna).[16] Then the preceptor Kripa of noble heart, who is of a quiet disposition, O monarch, and whose mild temper, therefore, returned soon unto him, said these words.[17]

"'Kripa said,—O *Suta's* son of wicked heart, this (thy fault) is pardoned by us! Phālguna, however, will quell this thy risen pride![18]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—Then the Pāndavas, O king, and the Pānchālas celebrated for their prowess, uniting together, approached in thousands, uttering loud shouts.[19] Karna also, that foremost of car-warriors, endued with great energy, surrounded by many foremost ones among the Kuru warriors and resembling Cakra in the midst of the celestials, waited, drawing his bow and relying on the might of his own arms. Then commenced a battle between Karna and the Pāndavas,[20-21] O king, that was exceedingly dreadful and characterised by loud leonine roars. Then Pāndavas, O monarch, and the Pānchālas celebrated for their prowess,[22] beholding the mighty-armed Karna, loudly shouted, saying,—*There is Karna!—Where is Karna in this fierce battle!*[23]—*O thou of wicked understanding, O lowest of men, fight with us!*—Others, beholding the son of Rādhā, said, with eyes expanded in wrath,[24]—Let this arrogant wretch of little understanding, this son of a *Suta*, be slain by the allied kings! He hath no need to live![25] This sinful man is always very hostile to the Pārthas! Obedient to the counsels of Duryodhana, this one is the root of all these evils![26] Slay him!—Uttering such words, great Kshatriya car-warriors, urged by Pāndu's son, rushed towards him, covering him with a dense shower of arrows, for slaying him. Beholding all those mighty Pāndavas thus (advancing),[27-28] the *Suta's* son trembled not nor experienced any fear. Indeed, seeing that wonderful sea of troops resembling Death himself,[29] that benefactor of thy sons, *viz.*, the mighty and light-handed Karna, never vanquished in battle, O bull of Bharata's race, began, with clouds of shafts, to resist that force on all sides. The Pāndavas also fought with the foe, shooting showers of shafts.[30-31] Shaking their hundreds and thousands of bows, they fought with Rādhā's son like the *Daityas* of old fighting with Cakra.[32] The mighty Karna, however, with a dense arrowy shower of his own dispelled that downpour of arrows caused by those lords of Earth on all sides.[33] The battle that took place between them, and in which each party counteracted the feats of the other, resembled the encounter between Cakra and the *Dānavas* in the great battle fought of yore between the gods and the *Asuras*.[34] The lightness of arms that we then beheld

of the *Suta's* son was wonderful in the extreme, inasmuch as all his foes, fighting resolutely, could not strike him in that battle.[35] Checking the clouds of arrows shot by the (hostile) kings, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Rādhā's son, sped terrible arrows marked with his own name at the yokes, the shafts, the umbrellas, the cars, and the steeds (of his foes). Then those kings, afflicted by Karna and losing their coolness,[36-37] began to wander on the field like a herd of kine afflicted with cold. Struck by Karna, large numbers of steeds and elephants and car-warriors were seen there to drop down, deprived of life. The whole field, O king, became strewn with the fallen heads and arms of unreturning heroes. With the dead, the dying, and the wailing warriors, the field of battle, O monarch, assumed the aspect of Yama's domains. Then Duryodhana, O king, witnessing the prowess of Karna,[38-41] repaired to Açwatthāman and addressing him, said,—Behold, Karna, clad in mail, is engaged with all the (hostile) kings![42] Behold, the hostile army, afflicted with the arrows of Karna, is being routed, like the *Asura* army overwhelmed with the energy of Kārtikeya![43] Seeing his army vanquished in battle by the intelligent Karna, yonder cometh Vibhatsu from desire of slaying the *Suta's* son![44] Let such steps, therefore, be taken as may prevent the son of Pāndu from slaying that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the *Suta's* son, in the very sight of us all![45]—(Thus addressed), Drona's son, and Kripa, and Calya, and that great car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Hridikā, beholding the son of Kunti coming (towards them) like Cakra himself towards the *Daitya* host, all advanced against Pārtha for rescuing the *Suta's* son. Meanwhile, Vibhatsu, O monarch, surrounded by the Pānchālas, advanced against Karna, like Purandara proceeding against the *Asura* Vritra.'*[46-47]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Beholding Phālguna excited with fury and looking like the Destroyer himself as he appears at the end of the *Yuga*, what, O *Suta*, did Vikartana's son Karna do next?[48] Indeed, the mighty car-warrior Karna the son of Vikartana had always challenged Pārtha. Indeed, he

* 47 is a triplet.—T.

had always said that he was competent to vanquish the terrible Vibhatsu. What then, O *Suta*, did that warrior do when he thus suddenly met his ever deadly foe ?'*[49-50]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Beholding the son of Pāndu rushing towards him like an elephant towards a rival elephant, Karna fearlessly proceeded against Dhananjaya.[51] Pārtha, however, soon covered Karna, who was thus advancing with great impetuosity, with showers of straight shafts equipt with wings of gold. Karna also covered Vijaya with his shafts.[52] The son of Pāndu then once more shrouded Karna with clouds of arrows. Then Karna, filled with rage, pierced Arjuna with three shafts.[53] The mighty car-warrior Arjuna, beholding Karna's lightness of hand, could not brook it. That scorcher of foes sped at the *Suta's* son thirty straight shafts whetted on stone and equipt with blazing points. Endued with great might and energy, he also pierced him, in rage, with another long arrow on the wrist of his left arm, smiling the while. Karna's bow then dropped from that arm of his which had thus been pierced with great force.[54-56] The mighty Karna, taking up that bow within the twinkling of an eye, once more covered Phālguna with clouds of shafts, displaying great lightness of hands.[57] Dhananjaya then, O Bhārata, smiling the while, baffled with his own shafts that arrowy shower shot by the *Suta's* son.[58] Approaching each other, those two great bowmen, desirous of counteracting each other's feats, continued to cover each other with showers of shafts.[59] The battle that took place between them, *viz.*, Karna and the son of Pāndu, became exceedingly wonderful like that between two wild elephants for the sake a she-elephant in her season.[60] Then the mighty bowman Pārtha, beholding Karna's prowess, quickly cut off the latter's bow at the handle.[61] And he also despatched the four steeds of the *Suta's* son to Yama's abode with a number of broad-headed shafts. And that scorcher of foes also cut off from his trunk the head of Karna's driver.[62] Then the son of Pāndu and Prithā pierced the bowless, the

* The Bengal reading *sudakshinas* at the end of 49 does not seem to be correct. I adopt the Bombay reading *sudārunam*.—T.

steedless, and the driverless Karna with four shafts.[63] That bull among men then, *viz.*, Karna, afflicted with those shafts, speedily jumping down from that steedless car, mounted upon that of Kripa.[64] Beholding the son of Rādhā vanquished, thy warriors, O bull of Bharata's race, fled away in all directions.[65] Seeing them fly away, king Duryodhana himself checked them and said these words:[66]—Ye heroes, do not fly away! Ye bulls among Kshatriyas, stay in battle! I myself will now advance for slaying Pārtha in battle![67] I myself will slay Pārtha with the assembled Pānchālas! While I shall fight with the wielder of *Gāndiva* today,[68] the Pārthas shall behold my prowess to resemble that of the Destroyer himself at the end of the *Yuga!* Today the Pārthas shall behold my shafts shot in thousands to resemble flights of locusts! The combatants shall behold me today shooting, bow in hand, dense showers of shafts like torrents of rain poured by the clouds at the end of the summer season! I shall today vanquish Pārtha with my straight shafts![69-71] Stay, ye heroes, in battle, and abandon your fear of Phālguna! Encountering my prowess, Phālguna shall never be able to bear it[72] like the ocean, the abode of *makaras*, unable to overcome its continents!—Thus saying, the king proceeded in rage, his eyes red in wrath, surrounded by a large host, towards Phālguna. Beholding the mighty-armed Duryodhana thus proceeding, Caradwat's son,[73-74] approaching Açwatthāman, said these words:—Yonder the mighty-armed Duryodhana, deprived of his senses by wrath,[75] desireth to fight with Phālguna, like an insect desiring to rush into the blazing fire! Before this foremost of kings layeth down his life, in our very sight, in this battle with Pārtha, prevent him (from rushing into the encounter)! The brave Kuru king can remain alive in battle as long only as he doth not place himself within the range of Pārtha's shafts! Let the king be prevented before he is consumed into ashes by the terrible shafts of Pārtha that resemble snakes just freed from their sloughs! When we are here, O giver of honors, it seems to be highly improper that the king should himself go to battle for fight, as if he had none to fight for him! The life of this descendant of Kuru will be in great danger if he en-

gages in battle with the diadem-decked (Arjuna) like that of an elephant contending with a tiger!—Thus addressed by his maternal uncle, Drona's son, that foremost of all wielders of weapons,[76-81] quickly repaired unto Duryodhana and addressing him, said these words :—When I am alive, O son of Gāndhāri, it behoveth thee not to engage in battle,[82] disregarding me, O descendant of Kuru, me that am ever desirous of thy good! Thou needst not be at all anxious about vanquishing Pārtha! I will check Pārtha! Stand here, O Suyodhana![83]—

"'Duryodhana said,—The preceptor (Drona) always protecteth the sons of Pāndu as if they are his own sons! Thou also always never interferest with those my foes![84] Or, it may be due to my misfortune, that thy prowess never becometh fierce in battle! This may be due also to thy affection for Yudhishthira or Draupadi! I myself am ignorant of the true reason![85] Fie on my covetous self for whose sake all friends, desirous of making me happy, are themselves vanquished and plunged into grief![86] Except thee, O son of Gotama's daughter, what foremost of all wielders of weapons is there, what warrior, indeed, equal to Mahādeva himself in battle, that would not, though competent, destroy the foe?[87] O Açwatthāman, be pleased with me and destroy my enemies! Niether the gods nor the *Dānavas* are capable of staying within the range of thy weapons![88] O son of Drona, slay the Pānchālas and the Somakas with all their followers! As regards the rest, we will slay them, protected by thee![89] Yonder, O Brāhmana, the Somakas and the Pānchālas possessed of great fame, are careering amid my troops like a forest-conflagration![90] O mighty-armed one, check them as also the Kaikayas, O best of men, else, protected by the diadem-decked (Arjuna), they will annihilate us all![91] O Açwatthāman, O chastiser of foes, go thither with speed! Whether thou accomplishest it now or afterwards, that feat, O sire, should be accomplished by thee![92] Thou hast been born, O mighty-armed one, for the destruction of the Pānchālas! Putting forth thy prowess, thou shalt make the world destitute of Pānchālas![93] Even thus the reverend ones crowned with (ascetic) success, have said! It will be as they have said! Therefore, O tiger among men, slay the Pānchālas

with all their followers![94] The very gods with Vāsava at their head are incapable of staying within the range of thy weapons, what need be said then of the Pārthas and the Pānchālas? These words of mine are true![95] I tell thee truly, O hero, that the Pāndavas united with the Somakas are no match for thee in battle![96] Go, go, O mighty-armed one! Let there be no delay! Behold, our army, afflicted with Pārtha's shafts, is breaking and flying away![97] Thou art competent, O mighty-armed one, aided by thy own celestial energy, to afflict, O giver of honors, the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas![98]—'"

SECTION CLX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thus addressed by Duryodhana, Drona's son, that warrior difficult of defeat in battle, set his heart upon destroying the foe like Indra bent upon destroying the *Daityas!*[1] The mighty-armed Açwatthāman answered thy son, saying,—It is even so as thou sayest, O descendant of Kuru![2] The Pāndavas are always dear to both myself and my father! So also are we both dear unto them! Not so, however, in battle.[3] We will, according to the measure of our might, fearlessly contend in battle, reckless of our lives! Myself, Karna, Calya, Kripa, and Hridikā's son,[4] could, O best of kings, destroy the Pāndava host within the twinkling of an eye! The Pāndavas also, O best of the Kurus, could, within the twinkling of an eye, destroy the Kaurava host, if, O mighty-armed one, we were not present in battle! We are fighting with the Pāndavas to the best of our might, and they also are fighting with us to the best of theirs.[5-6] Energy, encountering energy, is being neutralised, O Bhārata! The Pāndava army is incapable of being vanquished[7] as long as the sons of Pāndu are alive! This that I tell thee is true! The sons of Pāndu are endued with great might. They are, again, fighting for their own sake.[8] Why should not they, O Bhārata, be able to slay thy troops! Thou, however, O king, art exceedingly covetous! Thou, O Kaurava, art deceitful![9] Thou art vain-glorious and suspicous of everything! For this, thou suspectest even us! I think, O king, thou art wicked,

of sinful soul, and an embodiment of sin![10] Mean and of sinful thoughts, it is for this that thou doubtest us and others! As regards myself, fighting with resolution for thy sake, I am prepared to lay down my life![11] I will presently go to battle for thy sake, O chief of the Kurus! I will fight with the foe and slay a large number of the enemy![12] I will fight with the Pānchālas, the Somakas, the Kaikayas, and the Pāndavas also, in battle, for doing what is agreeable to thee, O chastiser of foes![13] Scorched with my arrows today, the Chedis, the Pānchālas, and the Somakas, will fly away on all sides like a herd of kine afflicted by a lion![14] Today, the royal son of Dharma, with all the Somakas, beholding my prowess, will regard the whole world to be filled with Açwatthāmans![15] Dharma's son Yudhishthira will become exceedingly cheerless, beholding the Pānchālas and the Somakas slain (by me) in battle![16] I will, O Bhārata, slay all those that will approach me in battle! Afflicted with the might of my arms, none of them, O hero, will escape me today with life![17]—Having said so unto thy son Duryodhana, the mighty-armed (Açwatthāman) proceeded to battle, and afflicted all bowmen.[18] That foremost of all living beings thus sought to achieve what was agreeable to thy sons. The son of Gotama's daughter then, addressing the Pānchālas and the Kaikayas, said unto them,[19]—Ye mighty car-warriors, strike ye all at my body! Displaying your lightness in the use of arms, fight ye with me coolly![20]—Thus addressed by him, all those combatants, O king, poured showers of weapons upon Drona's son like clouds pouring torrents of rain.[21] Baffling that shower, Drona's son, in that battle, slew ten brave warriors amongst them, in the very sight, O lord, of Dhrishtadyumna and the sons of Pāndu![22] The Pānchālas and the Somakas then, thus slaughtered in battle, abandoned the son of Drona and fled away in all directions.[23] Beholding those brave warriors, *viz.*, the Pānchālas and the Somakas, flying away, Dhrishtadyumna, O king, rushed against Drona's son in that battle.[24] Surrounded then by a hundred brave and unreturning car-warriors mounted upon cars decked with gold and the rattle of whose wheels resembled the roar of rain-charged clouds,[25] the mighty

car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna, the son of the Pānchāla king, beholding his warriors slain, addressed Drona's son and said these words,[26]—O foolish son of the preceptor, what is the use of slaying vulgar combatants! If thou beest a hero, fight then with me in battle![27] I will slay thee! Wait for a moment without flying away!—Saying this, Dhrishtadyumna of great prowess struck the preceptor's son with many keen and terrible arrows capable of piercing the very vitals. Those swiftly-coursing shafts, equipt with golden wings and keen points, and capable of piercing the body of every foe, proceeding in a continuous line, penetrated into Açwatthāman's body, like freely-roaming bees in search of honey entering a flowering tree.[28-30] Deeply pierced and swelling with rage, like a trodden snake, the proud and fearless son of Drona, arrow in hand, addressed his foe, saying,[31]—O Dhrishtadyumna, wait for a moment, without leaving my presence! Soon shall I despatch thee to Yama's abode with my keen shafts![32]—Having said these words, that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Drona, displaying great lightness of hands, covered the son of Prishata from every side with clouds of arrows.[33] Thus covered in that encounter (with arrows) by Drona's son, the Pānchāla prince, difficult of defeat in battle, roared at Drona's son, saying,[34]—Thou knowest not of my origin, O Brāhmana, or of my vow! O thou of wicked understanding, having first slain Drona himself, I shall slay thee![35] I will not, therefore, slay thee today when Drona himself is still alive! O thou of wicked understanding, after this night passeth away and bringeth in the fair dawn,[36] I shall first slay thy sire in battle and then despatch thee also to the region of spirits! Even this is the wish entertained by me![37] Standing before me, display, therefore, till then, the hatred thou bearest towards the Pārthas, and the devotion thou cherishest for the Kurus! Thou shalt not escape me with life![38] That Brāhmana who, abandoning the practices of a Brāhmana, devoteth himself to the practices of a Kshatriya, becomes slayable by all Kshatriyas even as thou, O lowest of men![39]—Thus addressed by Prishata's son in language so harsh and insulting, that best of Brāhmanas, (*viz.*, Açwatthāman,) mustered all his rage

and answered, saying,—Wait, wait![40]—And he gazed at Prishata's son, apparently burning him with his eyes. Sighing (in rage) like a snake, the preceptor's son then covered Dhrishtadyumna in that battle (with a shower of arrows).[41] The mighty-armed son of Prishata, however, that best of car-warriors, surrounded by all the Pānchāla troops, though thus struck with arrows in that encounter by Drona's son, did not tremble, relying as he did on his own energy. In return he sped many arrows at Açwatthāman.[42-43] Both engaged in a gambling match in which the stake was life itself, those heroes, unable to brook each other, resisted each other and checked each other's arrowy showers.[44] And those great bowmen shot dense showers of shafts all around. Beholding that fierce battle, inspiring terror, between Drona's and Prishata's son, *Siddhas* and *Chāranas* and other sky-ranging beings applauded them highly. Filling the welkin and all the points of the compass with clouds of shafts,[45-46] and creating a thick gloom therewith, those two warriors continued to fight with each other, unseen (by any of us). As if dancing in that battle, with their bows drawn to circles,[47] resolutely aspiring to slay each other, those mighty-armed warriors, inspiring fear in every heart, fought beautifully and with remarkable activity and skill.[48] Applauded by thousands of foremost warriors in that battle, and thus resolutely engaged in fight like two wild elephants in the forest, both the armies, beholding them, became filled with delight. And leonine shouts were heard there, and all the combatants blew their conchs.[49-50] And hundreds and thousands of musical instruments began to be sounded. That fierce fight, enhancing the terrors of the timid,[51] seemed for a short time only to be waged equally. Then Drona's son, O king, making a rush, cut off the bow, and standard, and umbrella, and the two *Pārshni* drivers, and the principal driver, and the four steeds, of the high-souled son of Prishata.[52-53] And that warrior of immeasurable soul then caused the Pānchālas in hundreds and thousands, by means of his straight shafts, to fly away.[54] Beholding those feats of Drona's son, resembling those of Vāsava himself in battle, the Pāndava host, O bull of Bharata's race, began to tremble in fear.[55]

Slaying a hundred Pānchālas with a hundred arrows, and three foremost of men with three keen arrows, in the very sight of Drupada's son and of Phālguna, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Drona, slew a very large number of Pānchālas that stayed before him.[56-57] The Pānchālas then, as also the Srinjayas, thus slaughtered in battle, fled away, leaving Drona's son, with their banners torn.[58] Then that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Drona, having vanquished his foes in battle, uttered a loud roar like that of a mass of clouds at the end of summer.[59] Having slain a large number of foes, Açwatthāman looked resplendent like the blazing fire at the end of the *Yuga*, after having consumed all creatures.[60] Applauded by all the Kauravas after having defeated thousands of foes in battle, the valiant son of Drona blazed forth in beauty like the chief of the celestials himself after vanquishing his foes.' "[61]

SECTION CLXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then king Yudhishthira, and Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, O monarch, encompassed Drona's son on all sides.[1] Seeing this, king Duryodhana, aided by Bharadwāja's son, rushed against the Pāndavas in that encounter. Then commenced a battle[2] that was fierce and terrific, enhancing the fears of the timid. Yudhishthira in wrath began to despatch vast numbers of the Amvashtas, the Mālavas, the Vangas, the Civis, and the Trigartas, to the domains of the dead. Bhima also, mangling the Abhisāhas, the Curasenas, and other Kshatriyas difficult of defeat in battle, made the Earth miry with blood. The diadem-decked (Arjuna) of white steeds despatched, O king, the Yaudheyas, the mountaineers, the Madrakas, and the Mālavas also, to the regions of the dead. Forcibly struck with swiftly-coursing shafts,[5-6] elephants began to fall down on the Earth like double-crested hills. Strewn with the lopped-off trunks of elephants that still moved in convulsions,[7] the Earth looked beautiful as if covered with moving snakes. Covered with the fallen umbrellas of kings that were decked with gold, the field of battle looked resplendent[8] like

the firmament at the end of the *Yuga* bespangled with suns, moons, and stars. About this time a fierce uproar arose near Drona's car, in the midst of which could be heard the words,—*Slay, Strike fearlessly. Pierce, Cut into pieces!*—Drona, however, filled with rage, began to destroy by means of the *Vāyavya* weapon the foes about him, like a mighty tempest destroying gathering masses of clouds. Thus slaughtered by Drona, the Pānchālas fled away, from fear,[9-11] in the very sight of Bhimasena and the high-souled Pārtha. Then the diadem-decked (Arjuna) and Bhimasena soon checked the flight of their troops[12] and accompanied by a large car-force attacked the vast force of Drona. Vibhatsu attacking the right and Vrikodara the left,[13] they both poured on Bharadwāja's son two dense showers of arrows. The mighty car-warriors among the Srinjayas and the Pānchālas, with the Matsyas and the Somakas, O king, followed the two brothers thus engaged (in that encounter with Drona). Similarly, many foremost of car-warriors, skilled in smiting, belonging to thy son[14-15] accompanied by a large force, proceeded towards Drona's car (for supporting the latter). Then the Bharata host, slaughtered by the diadem-decked (Arjuna)[16] and overcome with sleep and afflicted by that darkness, began to break. Thy son himself, and Drona, both endeavoured to rally them.[17] The troops, however, O king, could not be checked in their flight. Indeed, that vast host, slaughtered with the shafts of Pāndu's son,[18] began to fly away in all directions in that hour when the world was enveloped with gloom. Many kings, abandoning the animals and vehicles they rode, fled away on all sides, O monarch, overwhelmed with fear.' "[19]

SECTION CLXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Somadatta shaking his large bow, Sātyaki, addressing his driver, said,—Bear me towards Somadatta![1] I tell thee truly, O *Suta*, that I shall not return from battle today without having slain that foe, *viz.*, that worst of the Kurus, the son of Vālhika![2]—Thus addressed, the charioteer then urged to battle those fleet steeds of

the Sindhu breed, white as conchs, and capable of bearing every weapon.[3] Those steeds endued with the speed of the wind or the mind, bore Yuyudhāna to battle like the steeds of Indra, O king, bearing the latter in days of yore when he proceeded to slaughter the *Dānavas*.[4] Beholding the Sātwata hero thus advancing quickly to battle, Somadatta, O king, fearlessly turned towards him.[5] Scattering showers of shafts like the clouds pouring torrents of rain, he covered the the grandson of Cini like the clouds covering the Sun.[6] Sātyaki also, O bull of Bharata's race, in that encounter, fearlessly covered that bull amongst the Kurus with showers of shafts.[7] Then Somadatta pierced that hero of Madhu's race with sixty shafts in the chest. Sātyaki, in return, O king, pierced Somadatta with many whetted arrows.[8] Mangled by each other with each other's shafts, those two warriors looked resplendent like a couple of flowering *Kinçukas* in the season of spring.[9] Dyed all over with blood, those illustrious warriors of the Kuru and the Vrishni races looked at each other as if burning each other with their glances.[10] Riding on their cars that coursed in circles, those grinders of foes, of terrible countenances, resembled two clouds pouring torrents of rain.[11] Their bodies mangled and pierced all over with arrows, they looked, O king, like two porcupines.[12] Pierced with countless shafts equipt with wings of gold, the two warriors looked resplendent, O monarch, like a couple of tall trees covered with fire-flies.[13] Their bodies looking bright with the blazing arrows sticking to them, those two mighty car-warriors looked in that battle like two angry elephants decked with burning torches.[14] Then, O monarch, the mighty car-warrior Somadatta, in that battle, cut off with a crescent-shaped arrow the large bow of Mādhava.[15] With great speed also, at a time when speed was of the utmost consequence, the Kuru hero then pierced Sātyaki with five and twenty shafts, and once again with ten.[16] Then Sātyaki, taking up a tougher bow, quickly pierced Somadatta with five shafts.[17] With another broad-headed arrow, Sātyaki also, O king, smiling the while, cut off the golden standard of Vālhika's son.[18] Somadatta, however, beholding his standard cut down, fearlessly pierced

the grandson of Cini with five and twenty arrows.[19] Sātwata also, excited with rage, cut off with a razor-faced arrow the bow of Somadatta, in that encounter.[20] And he also pierced Somadatta, who then resembled a snake without fangs, with a hundred straight arrows equipt with wings of gold.[21] The mighty car-warrior Somadatta then, who was endued with great strength, taking up another bow, began to cover Sātyaki (with showers of shafts).[22] Sātyaki too, inflamed with rage, pierced Somadatta with many shafts. Somadatta, in return, afflicted Sātyaki with his arrowy showers.[23] Then Bhima, coming to the encounter, and fighting on behalf of Sātyaki, struck Vālhika's son with ten shafts. Somadatta, however, fearlessly struck Bhimasena with many whetted arrows.[24] Then Sātyaki, inflamed with rage, aiming at Somadatta's chest, sped a new and terrible *Parigha* equipt with a golden staff and hard as the thunder.[25] The Kuru warrior, however, smiling the while, cut off that terrible *Parigha* advancing with speed against him, into two parts.[26] That formidable *Parigha* of iron then, thus cut off into two fragments, fell down like the massy crest of a mountain riven by thunder.[27] Then Sātyaki, O king, with a broad-headed arrow, cut off in that encounter Somadatta's bow, and then with five arrows the leathern fence that cased his fingers.[28] Then, O Bhārata, with four other shafts he speedily despatched the four excellent steeds of the Kuru warrior to Yama's presence.[29] And then that tiger among car-warriors, with another straight shaft, smiling the while, cut off from his trunk the head of Somadatta's driver.[30] Then he sped at Somadatta himself a terrible shaft, of fiery effulgence, whetted on stone, steeped in oil, and equipt with wings of gold.[31] That excellent and fierce shaft, sped by the mighty grandson of Cini, quickly fell like a hawk, O lord, upon the chest of Somadatta.[32] Deeply pierced by the mighty Sātwata, the great car-warrior Somadatta, O monarch, fell down (from his car) and expired.[33] Beholding the great car-warrior Somadatta slain there, thy warriors with a large throng of cars rushed against Yuyudhāna.[34] Meanwhile, the Pāndavas also, O king, with all the Prabhadrakas and accompanied by a large force, rushed against Drona's army.[35] Then

Yudhishthira, excited with wrath, began with his shafts to strike and rout the troops of Bharadwāja's son in the very sight of the latter.[36] Beholding Yudhishthira thus agitating his troops, Drona, with eyes red in wrath, furiously rushed against him.[37] The preceptor then pierced the son of Prithā with seven keen arrows. Yudhishthira, in return, excited with wrath, pierced the preceptor with five arrows.[38] Deeply pierced by the son of Pāndu, the mighty bowman (Drona), licking the corners of his mouth for a moment, cut off both the standard and the bow of Yudhishthira.[39] With great speed at a time when speed was of the utmost consequence, that best of kings whose bow had been cut off, took up another bow that was sufficiently tough and hard.[40] The son of Pāndu then pierced Drona with his steeds, driver, standard, and car, with a thousand arrows. All this seemed exceedingly wonderful.[41] Afflicted with the strokes of those arrows and feeling great pain, Drona, that bull among Brāhmanas, sat down for a while on the terrace of his car.[42] Recovering his senses, sighing like a snake, and filled with great rage, the preceptor invoked into existence the *Vāyavya* weapon.[43] The valiant son of Prithā, bow in hand, fearlessly baffled that weapon with a similar weapon of his in that encounter.[44] And the son of Pāndu also cut into two fragments the large bow of the Brāhmana. Then Drona, that grinder of Kshatriyas, took up another bow.[45] That bull of Kuru's race, (*viz.*, Yudhishthira), cut off that bow also, with many keen shafts. Then Vāsudeva, addressing Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, said,[46]—Listen, O mighty-armed Yudhishthira, to what I say! Cease, O best of the Bhāratas, to fight with Drona![47] Drona always striveth to seize thee in battle. I do not think it fit that thou shouldst fight with him.[48] He who hath been created for Drona's destruction will, without doubt, slay him. Leaving the preceptor, go where king Suyodhana is![49] Kings should fight with kings, they should not desire to fight with such as are not kings. Surrounded, therefore, by elephants and steeds and cars, repair thou thither, O son of Kunti,[50] where Dhananjaya with myself, aided by a small force, and Bhima also, that tiger among men, are fighting with the Kurus![51]—Hearing these

words of Vāsudeva, king Yudhishthira the just, reflecting for a moment, proceeded to that part of the field where that slayer of foes, *viz.*, Bhima, engaged in fierce battle, was slaughtering thy troops like the Destroyer himself with wide open mouth.[52-53] Making the Earth resound with the loud rattle of his car, which resembled the roar of the clouds at the end of summer, king Yudhishthira the just,[54] the (eldest) son of Pāndu, took up the flank of Bhima engaged in the slaughter of the foe. Drona also, on that night, began to consume his foes, the Pānchālas.' "[55]

SECTION CLXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'During the progress of that fierce and terrible battle, when the world was enveloped with darkness and dust, O king,[1] the combatants, as they stood on the field, could not see one another. Those foremost of Kshatriyas fought with each other, guided by conjecture and the personal and other names (they uttered). And during the progress, O lord, of that terrible carnage of car-warriors and elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers,* those heroes, *viz.*, Drona and Karna and Kripa, and Bhima and Prishata's son and Sātwata,[2-3] afflicted one another and the troops of either party, O bull of Bharata's race! The combatants of both armies, slaughtered all around by those foremost of car-warriors,[4] during that hour of darkness, fled away on all sides. Indeed, the warriors, broke and fled away in all directions, with hearts perfectly cheerless.[5] And as they fled away in all directions they underwent a great carnage. Thousands of foremost car-warriors also, O king, slaughtered one another in that battle.[6] Unable to see anything in the dark, the combatants became deprived of their senses. All this was the result of the evil counsels of thy son. Indeed, at that hour when the world was enveloped in darkness, all creatures, O Bhārata, including even the foremost of warriors, overcome with panic, were deprived of their senses in that battle.'[7]†

---

* The Bombay edition reads the first line of 3 differently. The Bengal reading is also defective. The correct reading seems to be *Rathanāga* instead of *Naranāga*.—T.

† This is a triplet.—T.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'What became the state of your minds then when, afflicted by that darkness, ye all were deprived of your energy and furiously agitated by the Pāndavas?[8] How also, O Sanjaya, when everything was enveloped in darkness, did the Pāndava troops as also mine once more become visible?'[9]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then the remnant of the slaughtered army (of the Kauravas), under the orders of their leaders, were once more disposed in (compact) array.[10] Drona placed himself at the van, and Calya at the rear. And Drona's son and Cakuni the son of Suvala placed themselves on the right and the left flanks. And king Duryodhana himself, O monarch, on that night, busied himself in protecting all the troops.[11] Cheering all the foot-soldiers, O king, Duryodhana said unto them,—Laying aside your great weapons, take ye all blazing lamps in your hands![12]—Thus cammanded by that best of kings, the foot-soldiers joyfully took up burning lamps. The gods and *Rishis* and *Gandharvas* and celestial *Rishis*, and the diverse tribes of *Vidyādharas* and *Apsaras*,[13] and *Nāgas* and *Yakshas* and *Uragas* and *Kinnaras*, stationed in the welkin, also joyfully took up blazing lamps. Many lamps, filled with sweet-scented oil, were seen to fall from the Regents of the cardinal and the subsidiary points of the compass.[14] For Duryodhana's sake, many such were seen to come from Nārada and Parvata in especial, lighting up that darkness. The (Kaurava) army then, disposed in compact array, looked resplendent, on that night, with the light of those lamps,[15] the costly ornaments (on the persons of the combatants), and the blazing celestial weapons as those were shot or hurled by it. On each car were placed five lamps and on each infuriate elephant three.*[16] And upon each horse was placed a large lamp. Thus was that host lighted up by the Kuru warriors.† Set in their places within a short time, those lamps speedily lighted up thy army.[17] Indeed, all the troops, thus made radiant by

---

* Instead of *mattagaje*, the Bombay edition reads *tatragaje*.—T.

† There seems to be a mistake in this *sloka* in its reference to the Pāndavas. The reading, however, that occurs in all the printed editions, is the same. In one manuscript I find *Kaurava-yodhavargais* (which I adopt) for *Pāndava-Kauraveyais*.—T.

the foot-soldiers with oil-fed lamps in their hands, looked beautiful like clouds in the nocturnal sky illumined by flashes of lightning.[18] When the Kuru host had thus been illuminated, Drona, endued with the effulgence of the fire, scorching everything around, looked radiant, O king, in his golden armour, like the mid-day Sun of blazing rays.[19] The light of those lamps began to be reflected from the golden ornaments, the bright cuirasses and bows, and the well-tempered weapons of the combatants.[20] And maces twined with strings, and bright *Parighas*, and cars and shafts and darts, as they coursed along, repeatedly created, O Ājamida, by their reflection, myriads of lamps.[21] And umbrellas and yak-tails and scimitars and blazing brands, O king, and necklaces of gold, as these were whirled or moved, reflecting that light, looked exceedingly beautiful.[22] Illuminated by the light of those lamps and irradiated by the reflection from weapons and ornaments, that host, O king, blazed up with splendour.[23] Well-tempered and beautiful weapons, red with blood, and whirled by heroes, created a blazing effulgence there like flashes of lightning in the sky at the end of summer.[24] The faces of warriors, impetuously pursuing foes for striking them down and themselves trembling in the ardour of the rush, looked beautiful like masses of clouds urged on by the wind.[25] As the splendour of the Sun becomes fierce on the occasion of the conflagration of a forest full of trees, even so on that terrible night became the splendour of that fierce and illuminated host.[26] Beholding that host of ours thus illumined, the Pārthas also, with great speed, stirring up the foot-soldiers throughout their army, acted like ourselves.[27] On each elephant they placed seven lamps, on each car, ten; and on the back of each steed, they placed two lamps; and on the flanks and rear (of their cars) and on their standards also, they placed many lamps.[28] And on the flanks of their host, and in the rear and the van, and all around and within, many other lamps were lighted. The Kurus having done the same, both the armies were thus lighted.[29] Throughout the host, the foot-soldiers became mingled with elephants and cars and cavalry. And the army of Pāndu's son was also illuminated by others (than foot-soldiers)

standing with blazing torches in their hands.*[30] With those lamps that host became fiercely effulgent like a blazing fire made doubly resplendent by the dazzling rays of the maker of day.[31] The splendour of both the armies, overspreading the Earth, the welkin, and all the points of the compass, seemed to increase. With that light thy army as also theirs became distinctly visible.[32] Awakened by that light which reached the skies, the gods, the *Gandharvas*, the *Yakshas*, the *Rishis* and others crowned with (ascetic) success, and the *Apsaras*, all came there.[33] Crowded then with gods, and *Gandharvas*, and *Yakshas*, and *Rishis* crowned with (ascetic) success, and *Apsaras*, and the spirits of slain warriors about to enter the celestial regions, the field of battle looked like a second heaven.[34] Teeming with cars and steeds and elephants brilliantly illumined with lamps, with angry combatants and horses slain or wandering wildly, that vast force of arrayed warriors and steeds and elephants looked like the arrays of the celestials and the *Asuras* in days of old.[35] The rush of darts formed the fierce winds, great cars the clouds, the neigh and grunt of steeds and elephants the roars, shafts the showers, and the blood of warriors and animals the flood, of that tempest-like nocturnal encounter between those god-like men.[36] In the midst of that battle, that foremost of Brāhmanas, *viz.*, the high-souled Açwatthāman, scorching the Pāndavas, O ruler of men, resembled the midday Sun at the end of the season of rains, scorching everything with his fierce rays.' "†[37]

---

* The second line of 30, as it occurs in the Bengal texts, is adopted by me. Slight differences of reading occur between the Bengal and the Bombay editions.—T.

† As regards almost every one of these *slokas*, differences of reading are observable between the Bengal texts and the Bombay edition. The readings of the Bombay edition are almost uniformly better. Then again, many of those verses are disfigured with syntactical pleonasms and other grave errors. Abounding with tiresome repetitions that scarcely attract notice amid the variety of synonyms with which the language of the original abounds and amid also the melodious flow of the rythm, the defects become glaring in translation. At the altar, however, of faith-

SECTION CLXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the field of battle which had before been enveloped in darkness and dust had thus become illuminated, heroic warriors encountered one another, desirous of taking one another's lives.*[1] Encountering one another in battle, O king, those combatants, armed with lances and swords and other weapons, gazed at one another, under the influence of rage.[2] With those thousands of lamps blazing all around, and with the more dazzling lamps of the gods and the *Gandharvas*, set upon golden stands decked with jewels, and fed with fragrant oil, the field of battle, O Bhārata, looked resplendent like the firmament bespangled with stars.[3-4] With hundreds upon hundreds of blazing brands, the Earth looked exceedingly beautiful. Indeed, the Earth seemed to be in a conflagration like to what happens at the universal destruction.†[5] All the points of the compass blazed up with those lamps all around and looked like trees covered by fire-flies at an evening in the season of rains.[6] Heroic combatants then, O king, engaged in battle with heroic rivals. Elephants engaged with elephants, and horsemen with horsemen,[7] and car-warriors with car warriors, filled with joy, on that fierce night, at the command of thy son.[8] The clash of the two armies, both consisting of four kinds of forces, became terrible. Then Arjuna, O monarch, began, with great speed, to destroy the Kaurava ranks, weakening all the kings.'[9]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When the invincible Arjuna, excited with wrath and unable to brook (the feats of the Kurus), penetrated into the army of my son, what became the state of your minds?[10] Indeed, when that scorcher of foes entered

---

fulness, I have been obliged to sacrifice elegance, in rendering this section.—T.

* The Bengal reading *tathā loke* is incorrect. The Bombay text correctly reads *tadāloke*. Then also, instead of the Bengal reading *rajasācha samāvrite* (which is faulty), the true reading is *rajsā tamasā vrite*.—T.

† *Lokānāmabhāve* is explained by Nilkantha as *pralaya-kāle*.—T.

into their midst, what did the soldiers think? What steps also did Duryodhana think fit to be adopted then?[11] Who were those chastisers of foes that proceeded in that battle against that hero? Indeed, when Arjuna of white steeds entered (our army), who were they that protected Drona?[12] Who guarded the right wheel and who the left wheel of Drona's car? Who were those heroes that protected the rear of that battling hero?[13] Indeed, when Bharadwāja's son proceeded, slaying the foe (along his route), who were they that proceeded in his van? That mighty and invincible bowman who penetrated into the midst of the Pānchālas,[14] that tiger among men, endued with great valour, who proceeded, as if dancing, along the track of his car, and consumed large throngs of Pānchāla cars by means of his shafts[15] like a raging conflagration, alas, how did that Drona meet with his death? Thou always speakest of my foes as cool and unvanquished and cheerful and swelling with might in battle. Thou dost not, however, speak of mine in such words. On the other hand, thou describest them to be slain, pale, and routed, and thou speakest of my car-warriors as always deprived of their cars in all the battles they fight!'[16-17]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Understanding the wishes of Drona who was bent on battle, Duryodhana, on that night, O king, addressing his obedient brothers,[18] *viz.*, Vikarna and Chitrasena and Supārça and Duddharsha and Dirghavāhu and all those that followed them, said these words:[19]—Ye heroes of great valour, struggling with resolution, all of you protect Drona from the rear! The son of Hridikā will protect his right wheel and Cala his left![20]—Saying this, thy son then urged forwards, placing them at the van, the remnant of the brave and mighty Trigarta car-warriors, saying,[21]—The preceptor is merciful. The Pāndavas are fighting with great resolution. While engaged in slaughtering the foe in battle, protect him well, uniting together![22] Drona is mighty in battle; is endued with great lightness of hand and great valour. He can vanquish the very gods in battle,—what need then be said of the Pāndavas and the Somakas?[23] All of you, however, united together and struggling with great resolution in this

terrible battle, protect the invincible Drona from that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Dhrishtadyumna![24] Except Dhrishtadyumna, I do not see the man amongst all the warriors of the Pāndavas that can vanquish Drona in battle![25] I, therefore, think that we should, with our whole soul, protect the son of Bharadwāja! Protected (by us), he is sure to slay the Somakas and the Srinjayas one after another.[26] Upon the slaughter of all the Srinjayas at the head of the (Pāndava) army, Drona's son, without doubt, will slay Dhrishtadyumna in battle.[27] Similarly, the mighty car-warrior Karna will vanquish Arjuna in battle. As regards Bhimasena and others clad in mail, I will subjugate them all in fight.[28] The rest of the Pāndavas, deprived of energy, will be easily defeated by other warriors. It is evident, my success then will last for ever.[29] For these reasons, protect the mighty car-warrior Drona in battle!—Having said these words, O chief of the Bhāratas, thy son Duryodhana,[30] urged his troops on that night of terrible darkness. Then commenced a battle, O chief of the Bhāratas,[31] between the two hosts, O monarch, both actuated by the desire of victory. Arjuna began to afflict the Kauravas, and the Kauravas began to afflict Arjuna, with diverse kinds of weapons. Drona's son covered the ruler of the Pānchālas, and Drona himself covered the Srinjayas, with showers of straight shafts in that battle. And as the Pāndu and the Pānchāla troops (on the one side) and the Kaurava troops (on the other), O Bhārata, were engaged in slaughtering each other, there arose a furious uproar on the field. The battle that took place on that night was so terrible and fierce that its like had never been previously witnessed by ourselves or those gone before us.' "[32-35]

SECTION CLXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'During the progress of that terrible nocturnal engagment, O king, which was fraught with an indiscriminate carnage, Dharma's son Yudhishthira,[1] addressed the Pāndavas, the Pānchālas, and the Somakas. Indeed, O king, for the destruction of men, cars, and elephants,[2] king Yudhish-

thira commanded his own troops, saying,—Proceed ye against Drona only, for slaying him!*[3]—At the command of the king, O monarch, the Pānchālas and the Somakas rushed against Drona alone, uttering terrible shouts.[4] Ourselves excited with rage, and loudly roaring in return, rushed against them, to the best of our prowess, courage, and might, in battle.[5] Kritavarman the son of Hridikā rushed against Yudhishthira as the latter was advancing against Drona, like an infuriate elephant against an infuriate compeer.[6] Against Cini's grandson who advanced scattering arrowy showers all around, rushed, O king, the Kuru warrior Bhuri, that grinder (of foes) in battle.[7] Karna the son of Vikartana, O king, resisted that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Pāndu's son Sahadeva, as the latter advanced for getting at Drona.[8] King Duryodhana, in that battle, himself rushed against that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Bhimasena, advancing on his car like the Destroyer.[9] Cakuni the son of Suvala, O king, proceeding quickly, resisted that foremost of warriors, *viz.*, Nakula, who was conversant with every kind of battle.[10] Kripa the son of Caradwat, O king, resisted Cikhandin in that battle, that foremost of car-warriors, as the latter advanced on his car.[11] Dusçāsana, O king, contending vigorously, resisted Pritivindhya as the latter advanced with resolution, (on his car) drawn by steeds looking like peacocks.[12] Açwatthāman, O monarch, resisted Bhimasena's son, *viz.*, the *Rākshasa* (Ghatotkacha) acquainted with a hundred kinds of illusion, as the latter advanced.[13] Vrishasena in that battle resisted the mighty Drupada with his troops and followers, as the latter advanced for getting at Drona.[14] The ruler of the Madras, O king, excited with wrath, resisted Virāta, O Bhārata, as the latter quickly advanced for the slaughter of Drona.[15] Chitrasena, in that battle, resisted, with great force and shooting many shafts, Nakula's son Catānika, as the latter advanced for slaying Drona.[16] The prince of *Rākshasas*, *viz.*, Alamvusha, O king, resisted Arjuna, that foremost of car-warriors, as the latter advanced.[17] Dhrishtadyumna the prince of the Pānchālas, cheerfully resisted the

* A different reading occurs in the Bombay edition.—T.

great bowman Drona as the latter was engaged in slaughtering the foe.[18] As regards the other mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas, that advanced (against Drona), other car-warriors of thy army, O king, resisted them with great force.[19] Elephant-riders, speedily encountering elephant-riders in that dreadful battle, began to fight with each other and grind each other by thousands.[20] At dead of night, O monarch, as the steeds rushed against each other with impetuosity, they looked like winged hills.[21] Horsemen, O monarch, encountered horsemen, armed with lances and darts and swords, and uttering loud shouts.[22] Large numbers of men slaughtered one another in heaps, with maces and short clubs and diverse other weapons.[23] Kritavarman the son of Hridikā, excited with wrath, resisted Dharma's son Yudhishthira, like continents resisting the swelling sea.[24] Yudhishthira, however, piercing Hridikā's son with five arrows, once more pierced him with twenty, and addressing him, said,—Wait, Wait![25]—Then Kritavarman, O sire, excited with wrath, cut off, with a broad-headed shaft, the bow of king Yudhishthira the just and pierced the latter with seven arrows.[26] Taking up another bow, that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Dharma's son, pierced the son of Hridikā in the arms and the chest with ten arrows.[27] Then that warrior of Madhu's race, thus pierced, O sire, by Dharma's son in that battle, trembled with rage and afflicted Yudhishthira with seven shafts.[28] Then Prithā's son, cutting off his enemy's bow as also the leathern fence that cased his hands, sped at him five keen shafts whetted on stone.[29] Those fierce shafts, piercing through the latter's costly armour decked with gold, entered the Earth like snakes into an anthill.[30] Within the twinkling of an eye, Kritavarman, taking up another bow, pierced the son of Pāndu with sixty arrows and once more with ten.[31] Of immeasurable soul, the son of Pāndu then, placing his large bow on his car, sped at Kritavarman a dart resembling a snake.[32] That dart decked with gold, sped by the son of Pāndu, piercing through Kritavarman's right arm, entered the Earth.[33] Meanwhile, Prithā's son, taking up his formidable bow, shrouded the son of Hridikā with showers of straight shafts.[34] Then the brave Kritavarman, that great car-warrior

among the Vrishnis, within less than the twinkling of an eye, made Yudhishthira steedless and driverless and carless.[35] Thereupon the eldest son of Pāndu took up a sword and a shield. Then he of Madhu's race cut off both those weapons in that battle.[36] Yudhishthira then, taking up a fierce lance equipt with a gold-decked staff, quickly sped it, in that battle, at the illustrious son of Hridikā.[37] Hridikā's son, however, smiling the while, and displaying great lightness of hands, cut off into two fragments that lance hurled from the arms of Yudhishthira, as it coursed impetuously towards him.[38] He then covered the son of Dharma with a hundred arrows in that encounter. Excited with wrath, he then cut off the latter's coat of mail with showers of shafts.[39] Yudhishthira's armour decked with gold, cut off by Hridikā's son with his shafts, dropped down from his body, O king, like a cluster of stars dropping down from the firmament.[40] His armour cut off, himself deprived of car and afflicted with the shafts of Kritavarman, Dharma's son Yudhishthira quickly retreated from battle.[41] The mighty car-warrior Kritavarman then, having vanquished Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, once more began to protect the wheel of Drona's car.' "[42]

SECTION CLXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Bhuri, O king, in that battle, resisted that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, the grandson of Cini, who advanced like an elephant towards a lake full of water.[1] Then Sātyaki, excited with wrath, pierced his foe in the chest with five keen shafts. At this, the latter's blood began to flow.[2] The Kuru warrior in that encounter similarly pierced with great speed the grandson of Cini, that hero difficult of defeat in battle, with ten shafts in the chest.[3] Those warriors, drawing their bows to their fullest stretch, and with eyes red in wrath, began, O king, to mangle each other in that combat.[4] The arrowy downpours of those two warriors, both excited with rage and resembling death himself or the Sun scattering his rays, were exceedingly terrible.[5] Shrouding each other with their shafts, each stayed before the other in that battle.

For a short while that battle proceeded equally.[6] Then, O king, the grandson of Cini, excited with rage and smiling the while, cut off the bow of the illustrious Kuru warrior in that battle.[7] Having cut off his bow, Sātyaki quickly pierced him in the chest with nine keen arrows and addressing him, said,—Wait! Wait![8]—That scorcher of foes deeply pierced by his mighty foe, quickly took up another bow and pierced the Sātwata warrior in return.[9] Having pierced the Sātwata hero with three shafts, O monarch, Bhuri then, smiling the while, cut off his foe's bow with a sharp and broad-headed shaft.[10] His bow being cut off, Sātyaki, O king, maddened with rage, hurled an impetuous dart at the broad chest of Bhuri.[11] Pierced with that dart, Bhuri fell down from his excellent car, covered with blood, like the Sun dropping down from the firmament.[12] Beholding him thus slain, the mighty car-warrior Açwatthāman, O Bhārata, rushed impetuously against the grandson of Cini.[13] Having addressed Sātyaki, O king, saying—Wait! Wait!—he shrouded him with showers of shafts, like the clouds pouring torrents of rain on the breast of Meru.[14] Beholding him rushing towards the car of Cini's grandson, the mighty car warrior Ghatotkacha, O king, uttering a loud roar, addressed him, saying,[15]—Wait, Wait, O son of Drona! Thou shalt not escape me with life! I will presently slay thee like the six-faced (Kārtikeya) slaying (the *Asura*) Mahisha.[16] I shall today, on the field, purge thy heart of all desire of battle!—Having said these words, that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the *Rākshasa* (Ghatotkacha), with eyes red like copper in wrath,[17] rushed furiously against the son of Drona, like a lion rushing against a prince of elephants. And Ghatotkacha sped at his foe shafts of the measure of the *Aksha* of a car,[18] and covered that bull among car-warriors therewith, like clouds pouring torrents of rain. With his own shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison, Drona's son, however, in that battle, quickly dispelled that arrowy shower before it could reach him. He then pierced that chastiser of foes, *viz.*, Ghatotkacha, that prince of *Rākshasas*, with hundreds of keen and swiftly-coursing arrows, all capable of penetrating into the very vitals. Thus pierced with those shafts by Açwatthā-

man, that *Rākshasa*, on the field of battle,[18-21] looked beautiful, O monarch, like a porcupine with quills erect on its body. Then the valiant son of Bhimasena, filled with rage,[22] mangled the son of Drona with many fierce arrows whizzing through the air with the roar of the thunder. And he rained on Açwatthāman a perfect shower of arrows of diverse kinds, some equipt with heads like razors, some shaped as the crescent, some long and pointed, some frog-faced, some with heads resembling the boar's ear, some barbed, and some of other species.* Like the wind dispersing mighty masses of clouds, Drona's son, O king, without his senses being agitated, destroyed with his own terrible arrows inspired by *mantras* with the force of celestial weapons, that fierce, unbearable, and unrivalled shower of weapons, whose sound resembled the roar of the thunder, and which fell incessantly upon him. It seemed then that another encounter was taking place in the welkin between weapons (as the combatants),[23-26] which was terrible, O king, and which filled the warriors with awe. With the sparks all around, generated by the clash of the weapons shot by those two warriors,[27] the welkin looked beautiful as if illumined by myriads of fire-flies in the evening. Drona's son then, filling all the points of the compass with his shafts,[28] shrouded the *Rākshasa* himself, for doing what was agreeable to thy sons. Then commenced a battle once more between Drona's son and the *Rākshasa*,[29] on that night of thick darkness, which resembled the encounter between Cakra and Prahlāda. Then Ghatotkacha, filled with rage, struck Drona's son, in that battle, on the chest, with ten shafts, each resembling the *Yuga* fire. Deeply pierced by the *Rākshasa*, the mighty son of Drona began to tremble in that battle like a tall tree shaken by the wind. Supporting himself by holding the flagstaff, he swooned away.[30-32] Then all thy troops, O king, uttered cries of *Oh* and *Alas*. Indeed, O monarch, all thy warriors then regarded Drona's son as slain.[33] Beholding Açwat-

---

* *Nālikas*, as used here, appear to have been some species of shafts. In an earlier note, relying on other authorities, I took it to mean some kind of air-gun.—T.

thāman in that plight, the Pānchālas and the Srinjayas in that battle uttered leonine roars.[34] Then that crusher of foes, *viz.*, the mighty car-warrior Açwatthāman, recovering his senses, forcibly drawing the bow with his left hand,[35] and stretching the bowstring to his ear, quickly shot a terrible shaft resembling the rod of Yama himself, aiming at Ghatotkacha.[36] That excellent shaft, fierce and equipt with goodly wings, piercing through the chest of the *Rākshasa*, entered the Earth, O king.[37] Deeply pierced, O monarch, by Drona's son who was proud of his prowess in battle, that prince of *Rākshasas*, endued with great strength, sat down on the terrace of his car.[38] Beholding Hidimvā's son deprived of his senses, his charioteer, inspired with fear, speedily removed him from the field, bearing him away from the presence of Drona's son.[39] Having pierced that prince of *Rākshasas*, *viz.*, Ghatotkacha, in that encounter thus, Drona's son, that mighty car-warrior, uttered a loud roar.[40] Worshipped by thy sons as also by all thy war-warriors, O Bhārata, Açwatthāman's body blazed up like the midday Sun.[41]

"'As regards Bhimasena who was battling in front of Drona's car, king Duryodhana himself pierced him with many whetted shafts.[42] Bhimasena, however, O Bhārata, pierced him in return with nine arrows. Duryodhana then pierced Bhimasena with twenty arrows.[43] Covered with each other's arrows on the field of battle, those two warriors looked like the Sun and the Moon covered with clouds in the firmament.[44] Then king Duryodhana, O chief of the Bhāratas, pierced Bhima with five winged arrows and said,—Wait! Wait![45]—Bhima then, cutting off his bow as also his standard with keen shafts, pierced the Kuru king himself with ninety straight arrows.[46] Then Duryodhana, filled with rage, taking up a more formidable bow, O chief of the Bhāratas, afflicted Bhimasena, at the van of battle, with many whetted shafts, in the very sight of all the bowmen. Baffling those shafts shot from Duryodhana's bow, Bhima[47-48] pierced the Kuru king with five and twenty short arrows. Duryodhana then, O sire, excited with wrath, cut off Bhimasena's bow with a razor-faced arrow and pierced Bhima himself with ten shafts in return. Then the mighty

Bhimasena, taking up another bow,[49-50] quickly pierced the king with seven keen shafts. Displaying great lightness of hand, Duryodhana cut off even that bow of his.[51] The second, the third, the fourth, and the fifth, bow that Bhima took up were similarly cut off. Indeed, O king, thy son, proud of his prowess and desirous of victory, cut off Bhima's bow as soon as the latter took up one. Seeing his bows repeatedly cut off,[52-53] Bhima then hurled in that battle a dart made wholly of iron and hard as the thunder. That dart, blazing as a flame of fire, resembled the sister of Death.[54] The Kuru king, however, in the very sight of all the warriors and before the eyes of Bhima himself, cut into three fragments that dart, which coursed towards him through the welkin with the splendour of fire and dividing it, as it were, by a straight line such as is visible on the head of a woman parting her tresses. Then Bhima, O king, whirling his heavy and blazing mace, hurled it with great force at the car of Duryodhana. That heavy mace speedily crushed the steeds, the driver, and the car also, of thy son in that encounter. Thy son then, O monarch, afeared of Bhima and shrinking within the narrowest compass,[55-58] ascended another car, *viz.*, that of the illustrious Nandaka. Then Bhima, regarding Suyodhana to have been slain amid the darkness of that night,[59] uttered a loud leonine roar, challenging the Kauravas. Thy warriors regarded the king to be slain.[60] All of them uttered loud cries of *oh* and *alas*. Hearing the wails of the afrighted warriors,[61] and the roars of the high-souled Bhima, O king, king Yudhishthira also regarded Suyodhana to have been slain.[62] And the eldest son of Pāndu thereupon rushed quickly to the spot where Vrikodara the son of Prithā was. And the Pānchālas, the Srinjayas, the Matsyas, the Kaikayas, and the Chedis,[63] speedily advanced, with all their might, against Drona from desire of slaying him. There also occurred a dreadful battle between Drona and the enemy. And the combatants of both sides were enveloped in thick gloom and struck and slew one another."[64]

SECTION CLXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Karna the son of Vikartana,* O king, resisted the mighty car-warrior Sahadeva, in that battle, who advanced from desire of getting at Drona.[1] Piercing the son of Rādhā with nine shafts, Sahadeva once more pierced that warrior with nine straight arrows.[2] Karna then pierced Sahadeva in return with a hundred straight shafts, and displaying great lightness of hand, cut off the latter's stringed bow.[3] Then the valiant son of Mādri, taking up another bow, pierced Karna with twenty arrows. This feat of his seemed exceedingly wonderful.[4] Then Karna, slaying Sahadeva's steeds with many straight shafts, speedily despatched the latter's driver with a broad-headed shaft, to Yama's abode.[5] The carless Sahadeva then took up a sword and a shield. Even those weapons were cut off by Karna smiling the while.[6] Then the mighty Sahadeva, in that encounter, sped towards the car of Vikartana's son, a heavy and terrible mace decked with gold.[7] Karna then, with his shafts, quickly cut off that mace which hurled by Sahadeva, coursed towards him impetuously, and caused it to fall down on the Earth.[8] Beholding his mace cut off, Sahadeva quickly hurled a dart at Karna. That dart also was cut off by Karna.[9] The son of Mādri then, quickly jumping down from his excellent car, and blazing with wrath upon beholding Karna stationed before him,[10] took up a car-wheel and hurled it at the son of Adhiratha. The *Suta's* son, however, with many thousands of arrows, cut off that wheel coursing towards him like the uplifted wheel of Death. When that wheel had been cut off, Sahadeva, O sire,[11-12] aiming at Karna, hurled at him the shaft of his car, the traces of his steeds, the yokes of cars, the limbs of elephants and steeds and dead human bodies. Karna cut off all these with his shafts. Seeing himself deprived of all weapons, Mādri's son[13-14] Saha-

---

* *Vaikartana* may also mean one who has peeled off his skin or natural armour. To preserve dramatic propriety, the Hindu commentators explain it in this sense when it occurs in any such passage, for the real origin of Karna, *viz.*, his procreation by the deity of the Sun, became known after his death.—T.

deva struck by Karna with many shafts, left the battle. Pursuing him for a while, the son of Rādhā, O bull of Bharata's race,[15] smilingly addressed Sahadeva and said these cruel words: —Do not, O hero, fight in battle with those that are superior to thee![16] Fight with thy equals, O son of Mādri! Do not mistrust my words!—Then touching him with the horn of his bow, he once more said,[17]—Yonder Arjuna is fighting resolutely with the Kurus in battle. Go there, O son of Mādri, or return home, if thou likest![18]—Having said those words, Karna, that foremost of car-warriors, smilingly proceeded on his car against the troops of the king of the Pānchālas.[19] That slayer of foes, that mighty car-warrior, devoted to truth, slew not the son of Mādri although he had got the opportunity, recollecting the words of Kunti.[20] Sahadeva then, heartless and afflicted with arrows, and pierced with the wordy darts of Karna, no longer cherished any love for life.[21] That mighty car-warrior then quickly ascended the car of Janamejaya, the illustrious prince of the Pānchālas.' "[22]

SECTION CLXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'The ruler of the Madras shrouded on all sides, with clouds of shafts, Virāta with his troops, who was proceeding quickly for getting at Drona.[1] The battle that took place between those two great bowmen resembled, O king, that between Vali and Vāsava in days of yore.[2] The ruler of the Madras, O monarch, with great activity, struck Virāta, that commander of a large division, with a hundred straight shafts.[3] King Virāta, in return, pierced the ruler of the Madras with nine keen arrows, and once more with three and seventy and once again with a hundred.[4] The ruler of the Madras then, slaying the four steeds yoked unto Virāta's car, cut down with a couple of shafts, the latter's umbrella and standard.[5] Quickly jumping down from that steedless car, the king stood, drawing his bow and shooting keen shafts.[6] Beholding his brother deprived of his steeds, Catānika quickly approached him on his car in the very sight of all the troops.[7] The ruler of the Madras, however, piercing the advancing Catānika with many shafts,

despatched him to the abode of Yama.[8] Upon the fall of the heroic Catānika, Virāta, that commander of a large division, ascended the fallen hero's car decked with standard and garlands.*[9] Opening his eyes wide, and with prowess doubled by wrath, Virāta quickly covered the car of the ruler of the Madras with winged arrows.[10] The ruler of the Madras then, excited with rage, deeply pierced Virāta, that commander of a large division, in the chest, with a hundred straight shafts.[11] Deeply pierced by the mighty ruler of the Madras, that great car-warrior, *viz.*, Virāta, sat down on the terrace of his car and swooned away.[12] His driver then, beholding him mangled with shafts in that encounter, bore him away. Then that vast force, O Bhārata, fled away on that night,[13] slaughtered with hundreds of arrows by Calya, that ornament of battle. Beholding the troops flying away, Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya[14] quickly advanced to that spot, O monarch, where Calya was stationed. Then that prince of *Rākshasas*, *viz.*, Alamvusha, O king, riding upon a foremost car equipt with eight steeds, having terrible-looking *Piçāchas* of equine faces yoked unto it, furnished with blood-red banners, decked with floral garlands made of black iron, covered with bear-skins, and possessing a tall standard over which perched a terrible, fierce-looking, and incessantly shrieking vulture of spotted wings and wide-open eyes, proceeded against those advancing heroes.[15-18] That *Rākshasa*, O king, looked beautiful like a loose heap of antimony, and he withstood the advancing Arjuna, like Meru withstanding a tempest,[19] scattering showers of arrows, O monarch, upon Arjuna's head. The battle then that commenced between that *Rākshasa* and that human warrior, was exceedingly fierce.[20] And it filled all the spectators there, O Bhārata, with delight. And it conduced to the joy also of vultures and crows and ravens and owls and *Kanakas* and jackals.[21] Arjuna struck Alamvusha with six shafts and then cut off his standard with ten sharp arrows.[22] With a few other arrows he cut off his driver, and with some others his *Trivenu*, and with one

* The second line of 9 is read differently in the Calcutta edition. I adopt the Bombay reading.—T.

more, his bow, and with four others his four steeds.[23] Alamvusha stringed another bow, but that also Arjuna cut off into two fragments. Then, O bull of Bharata's race, Pārtha pierced that prince of *Rākshasas* with four keen arrows. Thus pierced, the *Rākshasa* fled away in fear. Having vanquished him, Arjuna quickly proceeded towards the spot where Drona was,[24-25] shooting as he went, many shafts, O king, at men, elephants, and steeds. Slaughtered, O monarch, by the illustrious son of Pāndu,[26] the combatants fell down on the ground, like trees laid low by a tempest. While thus being slaughtered by the illustrious son of Pāndu, all of them fled like a frightened herd of deer.' "[27]

SECTION CLXIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thy son Chitrasena, O Bhārata, resisted (Nakula's son) Catānika who was engaged in scorching thy host with his keen shafts.[1] Nakula's son pierced Chitrasena with five arrows. The latter then pierced the former in return with ten whetted shafts.[2] And once more Chitrasena, O monarch, in that battle, pierced Catānika in the chest with nine keen shafts.[3] The son of Nakula then, with many straight shafts, cut Chitrasena's armour from off his body. This feat of his seemed exceedingly wonderful.[4] Divested of his armour, thy son, O king, looked exceedingly beautiful, like a snake, O monarch, having cast off his slough in the proper season.[5] Then Nakula's son, with many keen shafts, cut off the struggling Chitrasena's standard, and then his bow, O monarch, in that encounter.[6] His bow cut off in that combat, and deprived also of his armour, that mighty car-warrior then, O king, took up another bow capable of piercing every foe.[7] Then Chitrasena, that mighty car-warrior amongst the Bhāratas, quickly pierced the son of Nakula with many straight arrows.[8] The mighty Catānika, excited with rage, O Bhārata, slew the four steeds of Chitrasena and then his driver.[9] The illustrious Chitrasena, endued with great strength, jumping down from that car, afflicted the son of Nakula with five and twenty arrows.[10] Then Nakula's son with a crescent-shaped arrow, cut off in that

combat the gold-decked bow of Chitrasena while the latter was engaged in thus striking him.[11] Bowless and carless and steedless and driverless, Chitrasena then quickly ascended the car of the illustrious son of Hridikā.[12]

"'Vrishasena, O king, rushed with great speed, scattering shafts in hundreds, against the mighty car-warrior Drupada advancing at the head of his troops against Drona.*[13] Yajnasena, in that encounter, pierced that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Karna, in the arms and the chest, O lord, with sixty arrows.[14] Vrishasena then, excited with rage, quickly pierced Yajnasena standing on his car, with many shafts in the centre of the chest.[15] Those two warriors, mangled with arrows, and with shafts sticking to their bodies, looked beautiful like a couple of porcupines with their quills erect.[16] Bathed in blood in consequence of the wounds caused by those straight arrows of keen points and golden wings, they looked exceedingly beautiful in that dreadful encounter.[17] Indeed, the spectacle they presented was that of a couple of beautiful and radiant *Kalpa* trees or of a couple of *Kinçukas* rich with their flowery burthens.[18] Then Vrishasena, O king, having pierced Drupada with nine arrows, once more pierced him with seventy, and then again with three other arrows.[19] Then shooting thousands of arrows, Karna's son, O monarch, looked beautiful in that battle, like a cloud pouring torrents of rain.[20] Then Drupada, inflamed with wrath, cut off Vrishasena's bow into two fragments, with a broad-headed arrow, sharp and well-tempered.[21] Taking up then another gold-decked bow that was new and strong, and drawing out of his quiver a strong, whetted, well-tempered, sharp, and broad-headed arrow,[22] and fixing it on his string, and carefully aiming it at Drupada, he let it off with great force, inspiring all the Somakas with fear.[23] That arrow, piercing through the breast of Drupada, fell on the surface of the Earth. The king (of the Pānchālas) then, thus pierced through with Vrishasena's arrow, swooned away.[24] His driver then, recollecting his own duty, bore him away from the field.

---

* In the second line of 13, *Avyayātturnam* instead of *Mahārāja* is the correct reading.—T.

After the retreat, O monarch, of that mighty car-warrior of the Pānchālas,[25] the (Kaurava) army, on that terrible night, rushed furiously against Drupada's troops whose coats of mail had been cut off by means of the arrows of the foe.[26] In consequence of the blazing lamps dropped by the combatants all around, the Earth, O king, looked beautiful like the cloudless firmament bespangled with planets and stars.[27] With the fallen *Angadas* of the combatans, the Earth looked resplendent, O king, like a mass of clouds in the rainy season with flashes of lightning.[28] Afflicted with the fear of Karna's son, the Pānchālas fled away on all sides, like the *Dānavas* from fear of Indra in the great battle of yore between the gods and the *Asuras*.[29] Thus afflicted in battle by Vrishasena, the Pānchālas and the Somakas, O monarch, illumined by lamps, looked exceedingly beautiful.*[30] Having vanquished them in battle, Karna's son looked beautiful like the Sun, O Bhārata, when he reaches the meridian.[31] Amongst all those thousands of kings of thy side and theirs, the valiant Vrishasena then seemed to be the one resplendent luminary.[32] Having defeated in battle many heroes and all the mighty car-warriors among the Somakas, he quickly proceeded, O king, to that spot where king Yudhishthira was stationed.[33]

"'Thy son Dusçāsana proceeded against that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Prativindhya, who was advancing (against Drona), scorching his foes in battle.[34] The encounter that took place between them, O king, looked beautiful, like that of Mercury and Venus in the cloudless firmament.[35] Dusçāsana pierced Prativindhya, who was accomplishing fierce feats in battle, with three arrows in the forehead.[36] Deeply pierced by that mighty bowman, *viz.*, thy son, Pritivindhya, O monarch, looked beautiful like a crested hill.[37] The mighty car-warrior Prativindhya then, piercing Dusçāsana with three arrows, once more pierced him with seven.[38] Thy son then, O Bhārata, achieved there an exceedingly difficult feat, for he felled Prativindhya's steeds with many arrows.[39] With another broad-headed arrow he also felled the latter's driver, and then his

* This *sloka* seems to be a vicious one.—T.

standard. And then he cut off, O king, into a thousand fragments the car of Prativindhya armed with the bow.[40] Excited with rage, O lord, thy son also cut off, with his straight shafts, into numberless fragments the banner, the quivers, the strings, and the traces (of his antagonist's car).[41] Deprived of his car, the virtuous Prativindhya stood, bow in hand, and contended with thy son, scattering numberless arrows.[42] Then Duççāsana, displaying great lightness of hand, cut off Prativindhya's bow. And then he afflicted his bowless antagonist with ten shafts.[43] Beholding their brother (Prativindhya) in that plight, his brothers, all mighty car-warriors, rushed impetuously to that spot with a large force.[44] He then ascended the resplendent car of Sutasoma. Taking up another bow, he continued, O king, to pierce thy son.[45] Then many warriors on thy side, accompanied by a large force, rushed impetuously and surrounded thy son (for rescuing him).[46] Then commenced a fierce battle between thy troops and theirs, O Bhārata, at that dreadful hour of midnight, enhancing the population of Yama's kingdom.' "[47]

SECTION CLXX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Against Nakula who was engaged in smiting thy host, Suvala's son (Cakuni) in wrath rushed with great impetuosity and addressing him, said,—Wait! Wait!'—Each enraged with the other and each desirous of slaying the other, those two heroes struck each other with shafts sped from their bows drawn to their fullest stretch.[2] Suvala's son in that encounter displayed the same measure of skill that Nakula displayed, O king, in shooting showers of arrows.[3] Both pierced with arrows, O king, in that battle, they looked beautiful like a couple of porcupines with quills erect on their bodies.[4] The armour of each cut off by means of shafts with straight points and golden wings, and each bathed in blood, those two warriors looked resplendent in that dreadful battle[5] like two beautiful and brilliant *Kalpa* trees, or like two flowering *Kiṅçukas* on the field of battle.[6] Indeed, O king, those two heroes in that encounter, both pierced with arrows, looked beautiful like a

couple of *Çālmali* trees with prickly thorns on them.[7] Casting oblique glances on each other with eyes expanded in rage and whose corners had become red, they seemed to scorch each other with those glances.[8] Then thy brother-in-law, excited with wrath, and smiling the while, pierced Mādri's son in the chest with a barbed arrow of keen point.[9] Deeply pierced by that great bowman, *viz.*, thy brother-in-law, Nakula sat down on the terrace of his car and swooned away.[10] Beholding his proud foe, that mortal enemy of his, in that plight, Cakuni uttered a roar loud as that of the clouds at the end of summer.[11] Recovering consciousness, Nakula, the son of Pāndu, once more rushed against Suvala's son, like the Destroyer himself of wide-open mouth.[12] Inflamed with rage, O bull of Bharata's race, he pierced Cakuni with sixty arrows, and once more with a hundred long shafts in the centre of his chest.[13] He then cut off Cakuni's bow with arrow fixed thereon, into two fragments, at the handle. And then cutting off in a trice Cakuni's standard, he caused it to fall down on the Earth.[14] Piercing next Cakuni's thigh with a keen, sharp, and well-tempered shaft, Nakula the son of Pāndu[15] caused him to fall down on his car like a hunter causing a winged hawk to drop down on the Earth. Deeply pierced, O king, Cakuni sat down on the terrace of his car,[16] clasping his flag-staff, like an amorous man clasping his mistress. Beholding that brother-in-law of thine laid low and deprived of consciousness, O sinless one,[17] his driver quickly bore him away from the van of battle. The Pārthas then, and all their followers, uttered a loud roar.[18] Having vanquished his foes, Nakula, that scorcher of foes, addressing his driver, said,—Bear me to the host commanded by Drona![19]—Hearing these words of Mādri's son, his driver proceeded to that spot, O king, where Drona was stationed.*[20] Against the mighty Cikhandin proceeding towards Drona, Kripa the son of Caradwat resolutely advanced with great impetuosity.[21] That chastiser of foes, *viz.*, Cikhandin, then, smiling the while, pierced with nine arrows the son of Gotama thus advancing against him towards the vicinity of Drona.[22] The preceptor

---

* *Yena* and *tena* here are equal to *yatra* and *tatra*.—T.

then (*viz.*, Kripa), that benefactor of thy sons, piercing Cikhandin first with five arrows, once more pierced him with twenty.[23] The combat that took place, O monarch, between them, was exceedingly dreadful, like that between Camvara and the chief of the celestials in the battle between the gods and the *Asuras*.[24] Those heroic and mighty car-warriors, both invincible in battle, covered the welkin with their arrows, like clouds covering the welkin on the expiry of summer.[25] Terrible of itself, that night, O chief of the Bhāratas, became more terrible still to the heroic combatants engaged in battle.[26] Indeed, of terrible aspects and inspiring all sorts of fear, that night became as it were the death-night (of all creatures). Then Cikhandin, O king, cut off, with a crescent-shaped arrow, the large bow of Gotama's son and sped at the latter many whetted shafts. Inflamed with wrath, O monarch, Kripa then sped at his antagonist a fierce dart[27-28] equipt with a golden staff and keen point and polished by the hands of the smith. Cikhandin, however, cut it off with ten shafts as it coursed towards him.[29] That dart then, decked with gold. (thus cut off) fell down on the Earth. Then Gautama, that foremost of men, taking up another bow,[30] O king, covered Cikhandin with a large number of whetted shafts. Thus covered in that battle by the illustrious son of Gotama,[31] Cikhandin, that foremost of car-warriors, became weakened on the terrace of his car. Beholding him weakened, Kripa the son of Caradwat, in that encounter,[32] struck him with many arrows, from desire of slaying him, O Bhārata ! (Cikhandin then was borne away by his driver). Beholding that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Yajnasena retreating from battle,[33] the Pānchālas and the Somakas surrounded him on all sides (for rescuing him). Similarly thy sons also surrounded that foremost of Brāhmanas (*viz.*, Kripa),[34] with a large force. Then commenced a battle once more, between car-warriors, O king, that struck one another.[35] The uproar that rose became loud as the roar of clouds, O Bhārata, caused by rushing horsemen and elephants, O monarch,[36] smiting one another down. Then, O king, the field of battle looked exceedingly fierce. With the tread of rushing infantry the Earth[37] began to tremble, O monarch, like a lady moved

by fear. Car-warriors, mounting on their cars, rushed impetuously,[33] attacking compeers by thousands, O king, like crows seizing winged insects (in the air). Similarly mighty elephants with the juice trickling down their bodies, pursuing similar elephants, encountered them, O Bhārata, furiously. So also, horsemen, coming upon horsemen, and foot-soldiers, coming upon foot-soldiers,[39-40] angrily encountered one another in that battle. At dead of night the sound of retreating and rushing troops and of those coming again to the encounter became deafening. The blazing lamps also, placed on cars and elephants and steeds,[41-42] seemed, O king, like large meteors falling from the firmament. That night, O chief of the Bhāratas, lightened up by those lamps,[43] looked like day, O king, on the field of battle. As the Sun, encountering the thick gloom, destroys it completely,[44] even so the thick gloom of the field of battle was destroyed by those blazing lamps. Indeed, the welkin, the Earth, the cardinal and the subsidiary points of the compass,[45] enveloped by dust and darkness, became once more illuminated by that light. The splendour of weapons and coats of mail, and of the jewels of illustrious heroes, became overshadowed by the light of those blazing lamps. During the progress of that fierce battle at night,[46-47] none of the combatants, O Bhārata, could know the warriors of his own side. Sire, O chief of the Bhāratas, slew son,[48] and son, from ignorance, slew sire, and friend slew friend. And relatives slew relatives, and maternal uncles slew sisters' sons,[49] and warriors slew warriors of their own side, and foes slew their own men, in that battle, O Bhārata. In that dreadful nocturnal encounter, O king, all fought furiously, ceasing to have any regard for one another.' "[50]

SECTION CLXXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'In that fierce and terrible battle, Dhrishtadyumna, O king, proceeded against Drona.[1] Holding his formidable bow and repeatedly stretching his bowstring, the Pāñchāla prince rushed towards Drona's car decked with gold.[2] And as Dhrishtadyumna proceeded for accomplishing the des-

truction of Drona, the Pāñchālas and the Pāndavas, O king, surrounded him.[3] Beholding Drona, that foremost of preceptors, thus assailed, thy sons, resolutely contending in battle, protected Drona on all sides.[4] Then those two oceans of troops encountered each other on that night, and looked like two terrible oceans lashed into fury by the tempest, with all living creatures within them exceedingly agitated.[5] Then the prince of the Pāñchālas, O king, quickly pierced Drona in the chest with five arrows and uttered a leonine roar.[6] Drona, however, O Bhārata, piercing his foe in return with five and twenty arrows in that battle, cut off, with another broad-headed arrow, his bright bow.[7] Forcibly pierced by Drona, O bull of Bharata's race, Dhrishtadyumna, quickly casting aside his bow, bit his (nether) lip in rage.[8] Indeed, O monarch, the valiant Dhrishtadyumna, excited with wrath, took up another formidable bow for accomplishing the destruction of Drona.[9] That slayer of hostile heroes, that warrior endued with great beauty, stretching that formidable bow to his ear, sped a terrible shaft capable of taking Drona's life.[10] That shaft, thus sped by the mighty prince in that fierce and dreadful battle, illumined the whole army like the risen Sun.[11] Beholding that terrible shaft, the gods, the *Gandharvas*, and the *Dānavas*, said these words, O king, *viz.*,—*Prosperity to Drona !*[12]—Karna, however, O king, displaying great lightness of hand, cut off into a dozen fragments that shaft as it coursed towards the preceptor's car.[13] Thus cut off into many fragments, O king, that shaft of Dhrishtadyumna, O sire, quickly fell down on the Earth like a snake without poison.[14] Having cut off with his own straight shafts those of Dhrishtadyumna in that battle, Karna then pierced Dhrishtadyumna himself with many sharp arrows.[15] And Drona's son pierced him with five, and Drona himself with five, and Calya pierced him with nine, and Duçāsana with three.[16] And Duryodhana pierced him with twenty arrows, and Cakuni with five. Indeed, all those mighty car-warriors quickly pierced the prince of the Pāñchālas.[17] Thus was he pierced by those seven heroes in that battle exerting themselves for the rescue of Drona. The prince of the Pāñchālas, however, pierced every one of those heroes with

three arrows.[18] Indeed, O king, Dhrishtadyumna, in that dreadful battle, quickly pierced Drona himself, and Karna, and Drona's son, and thy son.[19] Thus pierced by that bowman, those warriors, fighting together, pierced Dhrishtadyumna again in that encounter, uttering loud roars the while.[20] Then Drumasena, excited with wrath, O king, pierced the Pānchāla prince with a winged arrow, and once again quickly with three other arrows. And addressing the prince, he said,—Wait! Wait![21]—Dhrishtadyumna then pierced Drumasena in return with three straight arrows, in that encounter, which were equipt with wings of gold, steeped in oil, and capable of taking the life of him at whom they are sped.[22] With another broad-headed shaft, the prince of the Pānchālas then, in that battle, cut off from Drumasena's trunk the latter's head decked with bright ear-rings of gold.[23] That head, with (the lower) lip bit (in rage), fell on the ground like a ripe palmyra fruit separated from the stalk by the action of a strong wind.[24] Once again piercing all those warriors with keen shafts, that hero, with some broad-headed shafts, cut off the bow of Rādhā's son, that warrior conversant with all modes of warfare.[25] Karna could not brook that cutting off of his bow, like a fierce lion incapable of brooking the cutting off of his tail.[26] Taking up another bow, Karna, with eyes red in rage, and breathing hard, covered the mighty Dhrishtadyumna with clouds of arrows.[27] Beholding Karna excited with rage, those heroes, *viz.*, those six bulls among car-warriors, quickly encompassed the prince of the Pānchālas from desire of slaying him.[28] Seeing the latter in front of those six foremost warriors of thy side, all the troops, O lord, regarded him to be already within the jaws of the Destroyer.[29] Meanwhile, Sātyaki of the Daçārha race, scattering his shafts as he proceeded, reached the spot where the valiant Dhrishtadyumna was battling.[30] Beholding that invincible warrior of the Sātwata race advancing, Rādhā's son pierced him in that battle with ten arrows.[31] Sātyaki then, O king, pierced Karna with ten shafts in the very sight of all those heroes, and addressing him, said,—Do not fly away but stay before me![32]—The encounter then that took place between the mighty Sātyaki and the illustrious Karna, resembled, O

king, that between Vali and Vāsava (in days of yore).[33] That bull among Kshatriyas, *viz.*, Sātyaki, terrifying all the Kshatriyas with the rattle of his car, pierced the lotus-eyed Karna in return (with many arrows).[34] Making the Earth tremble with the twang of his bow, the mighty son of the *Suta*, O monarch, contended with Sātyaki.[35] Indeed, Karna pierced the grandson of Cini in return with hundreds of arrows and diverse other shafts, long, and barbed, and pointed, and calf-toothed, and razor-headed.[36] Similarly, that foremost one of Vrishni's race, *viz.*, Yuyudhāna, in that battle, shrouded Karna with his arrows. For a time that battle proceeded equally.[37] Then thy sons, O monarch, placing Karna at their head, all pierced Sātyaki from every side with keen arrows.[38] Resisting with his own weapons those of them all and of Karna also, O lord, Sātyaki quickly pierced Vrishasena in the centre of the chest.[39] Pierced with that arrow, the valiant Vrishasena of great splendour quickly fell down on his car, casting aside his bow.[40] Then Karna, believing that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Vrishasena, slain, became scorched with grief on account of the death of his son and began to afflict Sātyaki with great force.[41] Thus afflicted by Karna, the mighty car-warrior Yuyudhāna, with great speed, repeatedly pierced Karna with many shafts.[42] Once more piercing Karna with ten arrows, and Vrishasena with five, the Sātwata hero cut off the leathern fences and the bows of both sire and son.[43] Then those two warriors, stringing two other bows capable of inspiring enemies with terror, began to pierce Yuyudhāna from every side with keen shafts.[44] During the progress of that fierce conflict that was so destructive of heroes, the loud twang of *Gāndiva*, O king, was heard over every other sound.[45] Hearing then the rattle of Arjun'a car as also the twang of *Gāndiva*, the *Suta's* son, O king, said these words unto Duryodhana :[46]—Slaughtering our entire army and the foremost of heroic warriors and many mighty bowmen among the Kauravas, Arjuna is loudly twanging his bow.[47] The rattle also of his car is heard, resembling the roar of the thunder. It is evident, the son of Pāndu is achieving feats worthy of his own self.[48] This son of Prithā, O monarch, will grind our large host ! Many of our troops are already breaking ! No

one stays in battle![49] Indeed, our army is being dispersed like a risen mass of clouds dispersed by the wind. Encountering Arjuna, our host breaks like a boat on the ocean.[50] The loud wails, O king, of foremost of warriors, O monarch, flying away from the field or falling down in consequence of the arrows sped from *Gāndiva*, are being heard![51] Hear, O tiger among car-warriors, the sound of drums and cymbals near Arjuna's car at dead of night, resembling the deep roll of thunder in the welkin![52] Hear also the loud wails (of afflicted combatants) and the tremendous leonine shouts, and diverse other noises, in the vicinity of Arjuna's car![53] Here, however, this Sātyaki, this foremost one of the Sātwata race, stayeth amid us. If this object of our aim can be struck down, we can then vanquish all our foes![54] Similarly, the son of the Pānchāla king is engaged with Drona. He is encompassed on all sides by many heroic and foremost of car-warriors.[55] If we can slay Sātyaki and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, without doubt, O king, victory will be ours![56] Surrounding these two heroes, these two mighty car-warriors, as we did the son of Subhadrā, we will strive, O king, to slay them, *viz.*, this son of Vrishni's race and this son of Prishata![57] Savyasāchin, O Bhārata, is before us, coming towards this division of Drona, knowing that Sātyaki is engaged here with many bulls among the Kurus.[58] Let a large number of our foremost of car-warriors proceed thither, so that Pārtha may not be able to come to the rescue of Sātyaki now encompassed by many.[59] Let these great heroes speedily shoot clouds of shafts with great force, so that Sātyaki of Madhu's race may be speedily despatched to Yama's abode![60]—Ascertaining this to be the opinion of Karna, thy son, addressing Suvala's son in that battle, like the illustrious Indra addressing Vishnu, said these words:[61]—Surrounded by ten thousand unretreating elephants and ten thousand cars also, proceed against Dhananjaya![62] Duṣçāsana and Durvishaha and Suvāhu and Dushpradharshana,—these will follow thee, surrounded by a large number of foot-soldiers![63] O uncle, slay those great bowmen, *viz.*, the two Krishnas, and Yudhishthira, and Nakula, and Sahadeva, and Bhima the son of Pāndu![64] My hope of victory resteth on thee like that of the gods on their chief Indra! O

uncle, slay the son of Kunti like Pāka's son (Kārtikeya) slaying the *Asuras*![65]—Thus addressed and urged by thy son, Cakuni, clad in mail, proceeded against the Pārthas, accompanied by a large force as also by thy sons, in order to consume the sons of Pāndu. Then commenced a great battle between the warriors of thy army and the foe.[66-67] When Suvala's son, O king, (thus) proceeded against the Pāndavas, the *Suta's* son, accompanied by a large force, quickly advanced against Sātyaki, shooting many hundreds of shafts. Indeed, thy warriors, combining together, encompassed Sātyaki.[68-69] Then Bharadwāja's son, proceeding against the car of Dhrishtadyumna, fought a wonderful and fierce battle at dead of night, O bull of Bharata's race, with the brave Dhrishtadyumna and the Pānchālas.' "[70]

SECTION CLXXII.

"Sanjaya said,—"Then all those kings of thy army, incapable of being easily defeated in battle, angrily proceeded against Yuyudhāna's car, unable to brook (his feats).[1] Mounting on their well-equipt cars, O king, that were decked with gold and jewels, and accompanied also by cavalry and elephants, they encompassed the Sātwata hero.[2] Hemning him on all sides, those mighty car-warriors, challenging that hero, uttered loud leonine roars.[3] Those great heroes, desirous of slaying him of Mādhu's race, poured their keen arrows on Sātyaki of invincible prowess.[4] Beholding them thus advancing with speed towards him, that slayer of hostile hosts, *viz.*, the mighty-armed grandson of Cini, took up and shot many shafts.[5] The heroic and great bowman Sātyaki, invincible in battle, cut off many heads with his fierce and straight arrows.[6] And he of Madhu's race also cut off the trunks of many elephants, the necks of many steeds, and the arms decked with *Angadas* of many warriors, by means of razor-faced arrows.[7] With the fallen yak-tails and white umbrellas, O Bhārata, the field of battle became almost full and resembled the firmament, O lord, with stars.[8] The wails of the host thus slaughtered in battle, O Bhārata, by Yuyudhāna, became as loud as those of shrieking ghosts (in hell).[9] With that loud uproar the Earth became filled, and the

night became fiercer and more terrible.[10] Beholding his host, afflicted with Yuyudhāna's arrows and breaking, and hearing that tremendous uproar at dead of night making the hair to stand on end,[11] thy son, that mighty car-warrior, addressing his driver, repeatedly said,—Urge the steeds to that spot whence this uproar cometh.[12]—Then king Duryodhana, that firm bowman, above all fatigue, endued with great lightness of arms and conversant with all modes of warfare, rushed against Yuyudhāna.[13] Mādhava pierced Duryodhana with a dozen blood-drinking shafts sped from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch.[14] Thus afflicted with arrows by Yuyudhāna first, Duryodhana, excited with rage, pierced the grandson of Cini in return with ten arrows.[15] Meanwhile the battle that raged between the Pānchālas and all thy troops presented an exceedingly wonderful sight.[16] Then the grandson of Cini, excited with rage in that battle, pierced thy son, that mighty car-warrior, with eighty shafts, in the chest.[17] He then, with other shafts, despatched Duryodhana's steeds to Yama's abode. And that slayer of foes then quickly felled his antagonist's driver from the car.[18] Thy son, O monarch, staying on that steedless car, shot many keen arrows towards Sātyaki's car.[19] The grandson of Cini, however, displaying great lightness of hand, O king, cut off those fifty shafts sped in that battle by thy son.[20] Then Mādhava, with a broad-headed shaft, suddenly cut off in that encounter the formidable bow of thy son in the handle.[21] Deprived of both his car and bow, that puissant ruler of men then mounted quickly upon the bright car of Kritavarman.[22] Upon Duryodhana's retreat, the grandson of Cini, O monarch, afflicted and routed thy army at dead of night.[23]

" 'Cakuni, meanwhile, O king, encompassing Arjuna on all sides with many thousands of cars and several thousands of elephants,[24] and many thousands of steeds, began to fight desperately. Many of them hurled towards Arjuna celestial weapons of great power.[25] Indeed, those Kshatriyas fought with Arjuna, incuring the certitude of death. Arjuna, however, excited with rage, checked those thousands of cars and elephants and steeds, and ultimately caused those foes to turn back. Then Suvala's son, with eyes red as copper with rage, deeply pierced Arjuna, that slayer of foes, with twenty shafts. And once more

shooting a hundred shafts, he checked the progress of Pārtha's great car.[26-28] Then Arjuna, O Bhārata, pierced Cakuni with twenty arrows in that battle. And he pierced each of the great bowmen with three arrows.[29] Checking all of them with his arrows, O king, Dhananjaya slew those warriors of thy army with excellent shafts endued with the force of thunder.*[30] Strewn with lopped-off arrows, O monarch, and (dead) bodies by thousands, the Earth looked as if covered with flowers.[31] Indeed, strewn with the heads of Kshatriyas,—heads that were decked with diadems and handsome noses and beautiful ear-rings and (nether) lips bit in rage and wide open eyes,—heads that were graced with collars and crowned also with gems, and which, while life was in them, spoke sweet words,—the Earth looked resplendent as if strewn with hillocks overspread with *Champaka* flowers.[32-33] Having achieved that fierce feat, and pierced Cakuni once more with five straight shafts, Vibhatsu of fierce prowess,[34] excited with rage, once more struck Uluka with an arrow in that battle. Piercing Uluka thus in the sight of his sire, *viz.*, Suvala's son,[35] Arjuna uttered a loud roar, filling the Earth therewith. Then the son of Indra cut off Cakuni's bow.[36] And then he despatched his four steeds to Yama's abode. Then Suvala's son, O bull of Bharata's race, jumping down from his car,[37] quickly ascended the car of Uluka. Then those two mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, sire and son, both riding on the same car,[38] showered their arrows on Pārtha like two risen clouds pouring torrents of rain on a mountain. The son of Pāndu then, piercing both those warriors with keen shafts,[39] afflicted and caused thy troops to fly away in hundreds and thousands. Like a mighty mass of clouds dispersed on all sides by the wind,[40] that army of thine, O monarch, was dispersed on all sides. Indeed, that host, O chief of the Bhāratas, thus slaughtered on that night,[41] fled away in all directions, afflicted with fear and in the very sight (of their leaders). Many abandoning the animals they rode, others urging their animals to their greatest speed,[42] turned

* In the first line of 30, *Vānaganais* and not *Vānaganān* is the true reading.—T.

back from the battle, inspired with fear, during that fierce hour of darkness. Having vanquished thy warriors thus, O bull of Bharata's race,[43] Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya cheerfully blew their conchs.

" 'Dhrishtadyumna, O monarch, piercing Drona with three arrows,[44] quickly cut off the latter's bowstring with a sharp arrow. Throwing down that bow on the Earth, the heroic Drona, that grinder of Kshatriyas,[45] took up another that was exceedingly tough and strong. Piercing Dhrishtadyumna then with five arrows,[46] Drona pierced his driver also, O bull of Bharata's race, with five arrows. Checking Drona with his arrows, the mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna[47] began to destroy the Kaurava host like Maghavat destroying the *Asura* army. During the slaughter of thy son's army, O sire,[48] a terrible river, having blood for its current, began to flow. And it ran between the two hosts, bearing away men and steeds and elephants along its current.[49] And it resembled, O king, the *Vaitarani* that flows, O lord, towards the domains of Yama. Agitating and routing thy army, the valiant Dhrishtadyumna,[50] endued with great energy, blazed forth like Cakra in the midst of the celestials. Then Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin blew their large conchs,[51] as also the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), and Yuyudhāna, and Vrikodara the son of Pāndu. Having vanquished thousands of kings on thy side that were endued with great energy,[52] those fierce warriors, *viz.*, the Pāndavas, desirous of victory, uttered loud leonine shouts, in the very sight of thy son and of Karna and the heroic Drona and Drona's son, O monarch!' "[53]

SECTION CLXXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding his own army routed while being slaughtered by those illustrious heroes, thy son, well-acquainted with words, O monarch, quickly repairing unto Karna and also Drona, that foremost of all victors in battle, wrathfully said these words:[1-2]—This battle has been set on foot by you two in rage, having seen the ruler of the Sindhus slain by Savyasāchin![3] You are beholding with in-

difference the slaughter of my army by the forces of the Pāndavas, although you two are fully competent to vanquish those forces![4] If you two now abandon me, you should have, in the beginning, told me of it!—*We two shall vanquish the sons of Pāndu in battle!*—Even these were the words, ye givers of honors, that ye then said unto me! Hearing these words of yours, I sanctioned these proceedings. I would never have provoked these hostilities with the Pārthas,—hostilities that are so destructive of heroic combatants, (if ye had told me otherwise)![5-6] If I do not deserve to be abandoned by you two, ye bulls among men, then fight ye according to the true measure of your prowess, ye heroes endued with great prowess![7]—Thus pierced with the goad of speech by thy son, those two heroes once more engaged in battle, like two snakes vexed with sticks.[8] Then those two foremost of car-warriors, those two bowmen above all bowmen in the world, rushed with speed against the Pārthas headed by the grandson of Cini and by others.[9] Similarly the Pārthas, uniting together, and accompanied by all their troops, advanced against those two heroes, who were roaring repeatedly.[10] Then the great bowman Drona, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, excited with rage, quickly pierced (Sātyaki) that bull amongst the Cinis, with ten arrows.[11] And Karna pierced him with ten arrows, and thy son with seven, and Vrishasena pierced him with ten, and Suvala's son with seven.[12] In that impervious wall of Kauravas around the grandson of Cini, these also stationed themselves, encompassing him. Beholding Drona slaughtering the Pāndava army in that battle,[13] the Somakas quickly pierced him from every side with showers of arrows. Then Drona began to take the lives of Kshatriyas, O monarch,[14] like the Sun destroying darkness around him by his rays. We then heard, O monarch, a loud uproar amongst the Pānchālas, who called upon one another, while they were being slaughtered by Drona. Some abandoning sons, some sires, some brothers, some uncles, some their sisters' sons, some friends, some their relatives and kinsmen, fled away with speed, for saving their own lives.[15-17] Some, again, deprived of their sonses, ran against Drona himself. Indeed, many were the combatants of

the Pāndava army that were then despatched to the other world.[18] Thus afflicted by that illustrious hero, the Pāndava host, that night, O king, fled away, throwing down their blazing torches all around,[19] in the very sight of Bhimasena and Arjuna and Krishna and the twins and Yudhishthira and Prishata's son.[20] The world being enveloped in darkness, nothing could be seen. In consequence of the lights that were among the Kaurava troops, the flight of the foe could be ascertained.[21] Those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, Drona and Karna, O king, pursued that flying host, scattering numerous shafts.[22] Seeing the Pānchālas slaughtered and routed, Janārddana, becoming cheerless, said these words unto Phālguna,[23]—Dhrishtadyumna and Sātyaki, accompanied by the Pānchālas, had proceeded against those great bowmen, *viz.*, Drona and Karna, shooting many shafts.[24] This large host of ours hath been broken and routed (by them) with showers of arrows. Though their flight is sought to be checked, they are still incapable of being rallied, O son of Kunti![25]—Beholding the host fly away, both Keçava and Arjuna, addressing the troops, said,—Do not fly away, through fear! Ye Pāndava warriors, cast away your fears![26] Accompanied by all the forces and arraying them in good order, both of us, with uplifted weapons, are even now proceeding against Drona and the *Suta's* son for withstanding them![27]—Then Janārddana, beholding Vrikodara advancing, once more addressed Arjuna the son of Pāndu, as if for gladdening him, in these words:[28]—Yonder Bhima, who taketh delight in battle, surrounded by the Somakas and the Pāndavas, is coming against those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, Drona and Karna![29] Supported by him, as also by the many mighty car-warriors among the Pāndavas, fight now, O son of Pāndu, for assuring all your troops![*30]—Then those two tigers among men, *viz.*, the son of Pāndu and he of Madhu's race, approaching Drona and Karna, took up their station at the head of battle.'[31]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then that vast force of Yudhishthira

---

* The second line of 30 is read differently in the Calcutta edition. In consequence also of some differences between the two printed editions, 30 of the Calcutta text is 32 of the Bombay text.—T.

once more returned to battle, proceeding to the place where Drona and Karna were grinding their foes in battle.[32] At dead of night a fierce encounter took place, resembling that of two oceans swelling at moon-rise.[33] Then the warriors of thy army, throwing away from their hands the blazing lamps held by them, fought with the Pāndavas fearlessly and madly.[34] On that terrible night when the world was enveloped with gloom and dust, the combatants fought with one another, guided only by the names they uttered.[35] The names uttered by the kings contending in battle, were heard, O monarch, there, like to what happens, O king, at a self-choice.[36] Suddenly a silence overspread the field of battle, and lasted for a moment. Then again a loud uproar was heard made by the angry combatants, victors and vanquished.[37] Thither where blazing lamps were seen, O bull of Kuru's race, thither rushed those heroes like insects (towards a blazing fire).[38] And as the Pāndavas, O king, and the Kauravas contended with each other in battle, the darkness of night thickened around them.' "[39]

SECTION CLXXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then Karna, that slayer of hostile heroes, beholding Prishata's son in battle, struck him on the chest with ten shafts capable of penetrating into the very vitals.[1] Dhrishtadyumna quickly pierced Karna in return, in that great battle, with five shafts, and addressing him, said,—Wait! —Wait![2]—Shrouding each other in that dreadful combat with showers of arrows, O king, they once more pierced each other with keen shafts sped from bows drawn to their fullest stretch.[3] Then Karna, in that battle, despatched to Yama's abode the driver and the four steeds of Dhrishtadyumna, that foremost warrior among the Pānchālas.[4] He then cut off his enemy's foremost of bows with keen arrows, and felled, with a broad-headed shaft, the latter's driver from his niche in the car.[5] The valiant Dhrishtadyumna, deprived of car, steeds, and driver, quickly jumped down from his car and took up a mace.[6] Though struck all the while with straight shafts by Karna, the Pānchāla prince, approaching Karna, slew the four

steeds of the latter.[7] Turning back with great speed, that slayer of hosts, *viz.*, the son of Prishata, quickly ascended the car of Dhananjaya. Mounting upon that car, the mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna[8] desired to proceed towards Karna. Dharma's son (Yudhishthira), however, bade him desist. Then Karna, endued with great energy, mingling his leonine shouts with it, twanged his bow loudly, and blew his conch with great force. Beholding Prishata's son vanquished in battle, those mighty car-warriors,[9-10] *viz.*, the Pānchālas and the Somakas, excited with rage, and taking up all kinds of weapons, proceeded, making death itself their goal, towards Karna, from desire of slaughtering him. Meanwhile Karna's driver had yoked other steeds unto his master's car,[11-12] that were white as conchs, endued with great speed, of the Sindhu breed, and well-broken. Then Karna of sure aim, contending with vigor, afflicted those mighty car-warriors among the Pānchālas with his shafts like a cloud pouring torrents of rain upon a mountain. The Pānchāla host, thus afflicted by Karna,[13-14] fled away in fear, like a doe frightened by a lion. Horsemen were seen falling from their horses, and elephant-riders from their elephants, O monarch, and car-warriors from cars, all around. In that dreadful battle Karna cut off with razor-faced arrows the arms of flying combatants and heads decked with ear-rings. And he cut off, O king, the thighs of others that were on elephants[15-17] or on the backs of steeds or on the Earth, O sire! Many mighty car-warriors, as they fled away, felt not their loss of limbs or the injury to their anima's, in that battle. Slaughtered with terrible shafts, the Pānchālas and the Srinjayas[18-19] took the motion of even a straw for Karna, (so great was their fright). Deprived of their senses, the warriors took their flying friends for Karna and fled away from these in fear. Karna pursued the broken and retreating host, O Bhārata, shooting his shafts on all sides. Indeed, in that battle, the retreating warriors, deprived of their senses, were slaughtered in thousands.[20-22] The Pānchālas were incapable of making a stand, while they were thus slaughtered with mighty weapons by Karna, that illustrious hero.[23] Others, only looked at by Drona, fled away on all sides. Then king

Yudhishthira, beholding his army flying away,[24] and regarding retreat to be advisable, addressed Phālguna and said,—Behold the mighty bowman Karna stationed there like Rudra himself armed with his bow![25] Behold him scorching everything around like the blazing Sun himself, at this fierce hour, this dead of night! These wails are being incessantly heard, O Pārtha, of thy helpless friends who are uttering them, mangled by the shafts of Karna! The manner in which Karna is aiming and letting off his shafts is such that no interval can be noticed between the two acts! He will, O Pārtha, annihilate all our friends! Do that now, O Dhananjaya, about the slaughter of Karna, which, according to thy judgment, should next be done and the time for which may have come!—Thus addressed (by Yudhishthira), Pārtha said unto Krishna,[26-29]—The royal son of Dharma is frightened today at the prowess of Karna! When Karna's division is thus acting (towards us) repeatedly, do thou speedily adopt that course which should now be adopted! Our army is flying away! O slayer of Madhu, our troops, broken and mangled with Drona's shafts and frightened by Karna, are unable to make a stand! I see Karna careering fearlessly![30-32] Our foremost of car-warriors are flying away! Karna is scattering his keen shafts. I cannot, like a snake incapable of putting up with the tread of a human being upon its body, bear to see him thus careering at the head of battle, before my eyes, O tiger of Vrishni's race! Proceed, therefore, to that spot where the mighty car-warrior Karna is! Either I will kill him, O slayer of Madhu, or let him slay me![*33-34]—

"'Vāsudeva said,—I behold Karna, O son of Kunti, that tiger among men, that warrior of superhuman prowess, careering in battle like the chief of the celestials himself![35] O Dhananjaya, there is none else capable of advancing against him in battle, save thee, O tiger among men, and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha![36] I do not, however, O sinless one, regard the time to have come, O mighty-armed one, for thee to encounter the *Suta's* son in battle![37] The blazing dart, resembling a

* In the Bengal texts this is a triplet.—T.

mighty meteor, given him by Vāsava, is still with him, O thou of mighty arms, kept for thee with care, by the *Suta's* son![38] He keepeth that dart by him, and hath now assumed a terrible form! As regards Ghatotkacha, he is always devoted to you and desirous of your good![39] Let the mighty Ghatotkacha proceed against the son of Rādhā! Endued with the prowess of a celestial, he has been begot by the mighty Bhima![40] In him are celestial weapons as also those used by *Rākshasas* and *Asuras*. He will vanquish Karna. I have no doubt of it![41] —Thus addressed (by Krishna), the mighty-armed Pārtha of of eyes like lotus petals summoned that *Rākshasa*. The latter soon came before him,[42] clad in mail, and armed, O king, with sword, arrows, and bow. Saluting Krishna as also Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu[43] he proudly said,—Here I am, command me!—Then he of Daçārha's race, addressed Hidimvā's son, that *Rākshasa* of blazing mouth and fiery eyes and body of the hue of clouds, and said these words:[44]—Listen, O Ghatotkacha, attend to what I say! The time is come for the display of thy prowess, and not of anybody else![45] Be thou the raft in this battle to the sinking Pāndavas! Thou hast diverse weapons, and many kinds of *Rākshasa* illusion![46] Behold, O son of Hidimvā, the army of the Pāndavas is being beaten by Karna on the field of battle like a herd of kine by the herdsman![47] Yonder, the mighty bowman Karna, endued with great intelligence and steady prowess, is scorching the foremost of Kshatriyas among the divisions of the Pāndava host![48] Afflicted by his fiery arrows the Pāndava warriors are incapable of staying in front of that firm bowman who is shooting showers of mighty shafts![49] Afflicted at dead of night by the *Suta's* son with his arrowy showers, the Pānchālas are flying away like a herd of deer afflicted by a lion.[50] Except thee, O thou of terrible prowess, there is none else that can withstand the *Suta's* son who is thus engaged in battle![51] Aided by thy energy and might, do thou, O mighty-armed one, accomplish that which is worthy of thy own self, of thy maternal race, and of thy sires![52] It is even for this, O son of Hidimvā, that men desire children, *viz.*, for being rescued from difficulties! Do thou now rescue thy kinsmen![53] O

Ghatotkacha, sires desire sons for achieving their own objects! Children, those sources of good, are expected to rescue their sires both here and hereafter![54] Illustrious thou art, and thy might in battle is terrible and unrivalled! While contending in battle, there is none equal to thee![55] O scorcher of foes, be thou the means by which the Pāndavas who are routed by Karna with his shafts this night, and who are now sinking in the Dhārtarāshtra ocean, may safely reach the shore![56] At night, *Rākshasas* again become endued with unlimited prowess, great might, and great courage! They become (at such an hour) warriors of great valour and incapable of defeat![57] Slay Karna in battle, at this dead of night, aided by thy illusions! The Pārthas, with Dhrishtadyumna, will dispose of Drona![58]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing those words of Keçava, Vibhatsu also, O Kauravya, said these words unto that chastiser of foes, *viz.*, the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha[59] :—O Ghatotkacha, thyself, the long-armed Sātyaki, and Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, these three, in my judgment, are the foremost ones among all our warriors![60] Go and encounter Karna in single combat this night. The mighty car-warrior Sātyaki will protect thy rear![61] Assisted by the Sātwata hero, slay the brave Karna in battle, as Indra in days of old had slain (the *Asura)* Tāraka, aided by (the celestial generalissimo) Skanda![62]—

" 'Ghatotkacha said,—I am a match for Karna, as also for Drona, O Bhārata, or for any illustrious Kshatriya accomplished in weapons![63] This night I shall fight such a battle with the *Suta's* son as will form the subject of talk as long as the world lasts![64] Tonight I will spare neither the brave nor the timid nor those that will with joined hands pray for quarter! Following the *Rākshasa* usage, I shall slay all![65]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said these words, that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Hidimvā, rushed against Karna in that dreadful fight, frightening thy troops.[66] The *Suta's* son, that tiger among men, smilingly received that angry warrior of blazing mouth and blazing locks.[67] The battle then that took place between Karna and that *Rākshasa*, both roaring

against each other, O tiger among kings, resembled that between Indra and Prahlāda (in days of yore).'"[68]

SECTION CLXXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the mighty-armed Ghatotkacha, O king, proceeding towards the car of the *Suta's* son, Karna, for slaughtering him in battle,[1] thy son Duryodhana, addressing Dusçāsana, said these words:—That *Rākshasa*, seeing the prowess of Karna in battle, is speedily[2] advancing against him! Resist that mighty car-warrior! Surrounded by a mighty force proceed to that spot where the mighty[3] Karna, the son of Vikartana is contending with the *Rākshasa* in battle! O giver of honors, surrounded by troops and exerting thyself vigorously, protect Karna in battle![4] Let not the terrible *Rākshasa* slay Karna in consequence of our carelessness!—Meanwhile, O king, Jatāsura's mighty son,[5] that foremost of smiters, approaching Duryodhana, said unto him,—O Duryodhana, commanded by thee, I desire to slay, with their followers, thy foes of celebrity, *viz.*, the Pāndavas, those warriors incapable of being easily defeated in battle! My father was the mighty Jatāsura, that foremost of *Rākshasas!* Formerly,[6-7] having performed some *Rākshasa*-slaying incantations, the despicable sons of Prithā slew him! I desire to worship my dead sire by offering him the blood of his foes,[8] and their flesh also, O monarch! It behoveth thee to grant me permission!—The king, thus addressed, became exceedingly delighted, and said unto him repeatedly,[9]—Aided by Drona and Karna and others I am quite competent to vanquish my foes! Commanded, however, by me, O *Rākshasa*, go thou to battle and slay Ghatotkacha in the fight, that *Rākshasa* of fierce deeds, born of man, ever devoted to the welfare of the Pāndavas, and always slaying our elephants and steeds and car-warriors,[10-11] in battle, himself all the while staying in the welkin! O, despatch him to Yama's abode!—Saying—So be it,—and summoning Ghatotkacha to the fight,[12] Jatāsura's son shrouded the son of Bhimasena with diverse kinds of weapons. The son of Hidimvā, however, alone and

unsupported, began to grind Alamvusha and Karna and the vast Kuru host, like a tempest crushing a mass of clouds. Seeing then the power of (Ghatotkacha's) illusion, the *Rākshasa* Alamvusha[13-14] covered Ghatotkacha with showers of diverse kinds of arrows. Having pierced Bhimasena's son with many shafts, Alamvusha,[15] without losing any time, began to afflict the Pāndava host with his arrows. Thus afflicted by him, O Bhārata, the Pāndava troops,[16] at dead of night, broke and fled away like clouds dispersed by a tempest. Similarly thy host also, mangled with the shafts of Ghatotkacha,[17] fled away at dead of night, O king, in thousands, throwing down their torches. Alamvusha then, excited with great wrath, struck Bhimasena's son in that dreadful battle with many shafts, like a guide striking an elephant. Then Ghatotkacha cut off into minute fragments the car, the driver, and all the weapons of his foe, and laughed frightfully. Then like the clouds pouring torrents of rain on the mountains of Meru, Ghatotkacha poured showers of arrows on Karna, Alamvusha, and all the Kurus. Afflicted by the *Rākshasa*, the Kuru host became exceedingly agitated.[18-21] The four kinds of forces, of which thy army consisted, began to press and crush one another. Then Jatāsura's son, carless and driverless,[22] wrathfully struck Ghatotkacha, in that battle, with his fists. Thus struck, Ghatotkacha trembled[23] like a mountain with its trees and creepers and grass at the time of an earthquake. Then Bhimasena's son, mad with rage, raising his own foe-slaying arm that resembled a spiked mace, dealt a severe blow on Jatāsura's son. Crushing him then in rage, Hidimvā's son quickly threw him down,[24-25] and seizing him with his two arms he began to press him with great force upon the Earth. Then Jatāsura's son, freeing himself from Ghatotkacha,[26] rose up and assailed Ghatotkacha with great impetuosity. Alamvusha also, dragging and throwing down the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha, in that battle, began to crush him in rage on the surface of the Earth. The battle then that took place between those two roaring and gigantic warriors, *viz.*, Ghatotkacha and Alamvusha, became exceedingly fierce and made the hair stand on end. Endeavouring to prevail over each other by

means of their powers of illusion, those proud warriors,[27-29] endued with great energy, fought with each other like Indra and Virochana's son. Becoming fire and the ocean, and once more Garuda and Takshaka,[30] and once again a cloud and a tempest, and then thunder and a large mountain, and once again an elephant and a tiger, and then Rāhu and the Sun,[31] they thus displayed a hundred differents kinds of illusion, solicitous of destroying each other. Indeed, Alamvusha and Ghatotkacha fought most wonderfully,[32] striking each other with spiked clubs and maces and lances and mallets and axes and short clubs and mountain-cliffs.[33] Riding on horseback or on elephants, on foot or on car, those foremost of *Rākshasas*, both endued with large powers of illusion, fought with each other in battle.[34] Then Ghatotkacha, O king, desiring to slay Alamvusha, soared aloft in rage and then alighted with great quickness like a hawk.[35] Seizing then that gigantic prince of *Rākshasas, viz.*, Alamvusha, who thus struggled with him, he pressed him down on the Earth like Vishnu slaying (the *Asura)* Maya in battle.[36] Taking a scimitar of wonderful appearance, Ghatotkacha of immeasurable prowess then cut off from his trunk, O king, his fierce and mighty foe's terrible head that was still uttering awful roars.[37-38] Seizing that blood-dyed head by the hair, Ghatotkacha quickly proceeded towards Duryodhana's car.[39] Approaching (the Kuru king), the mighty-armed *Rākshasa*, smiling the while, threw upon Duryodhana's car that head with frightful face and hair.[40] Uttering then a fierce roar, deep as that of the clouds in the season of rains, he addressed Duryodhana, O king, and said,[41] —This thy ally is now slain,—he, that is, whose prowess thou hadst beheld! Thou shalt see the slaughter of Karna again, and then thy own![42] One that is observant of these three, *viz.*, morality, profit and pleasure, should never see with empty hands a king, a Brāhmana, or a woman![*43] Live cheerfully till that time when I slay Karna!—Having said these words, he then, O king, proceeded towards Karna,[44] shooting hundreds of keen arrows upon the head of Karna. The battle then that

* It is for this that I see thee with this head as a tribute.—T.

took place between that human warrior and that *Rākshasa*, was fierce and terrible, O king, and exceedingly wonderful.' "[45]

SECTION CLXXVI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How, indeed, did that battle take place when at dead of night Vikartana's son Karna and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha encountered each other?[1] What aspect did that fierce *Rākshasa* then present? What kind of car did he ride, and what was the nature of his steeds and what of his weapons?[2] What was the size of his steeds, of the standard of his car, and of his bow? What was the kind of armour he wore, and what the head-gear he had on? Asked by me, describe all this, for thou art skilled in narration, O Sanjaya!'[3]

"Sanjaya said,—'Of blood-red eyes, Ghatotkacha was of gigantic form. His face was of the hue of copper. His belly was low and sunk. The bristles on his body all pointed upwards. His head was green. His ears were like arrows. His cheek-bones were high.[4] His mouth was large, extending from ear to ear. His teeth were keen, and four of these were high and pointed. His tongue and lips were very long and of a coppery hue. His brows were long-extending. His nose was thick.[5] His body was blue, and neck red. Tall as a hill, he was terrible to behold. Of gigantic frame, gigantic arms, and gigantic head, he was endued with great might.[6] Ugly and of hard limbs, the hair on his head was tied upwards in a frightful shape. His hips were large and his navel was deep. Of gigantic frame, the circumference of his body, however, was not great.[7] The ornaments on his arms were proportionate. Possessed of large powers of illusion, he was decked also in *Angadas*. He wore a cuirass on his breast like a circle of fire on the breast of a mountain.[8] On his head was a bright and beautiful diadem made of gold, with every part proportionate and beautiful, and looking like an arch.[9] His ear-rings were bright as the morning Sun, and his garlands were made of gold and exceedingly bright. He had on his body a gigantic armour of brass of great effulgence.[10] His car was decked

with a hundred tinkling bells, and on his standard waved numerous blood-red banners. Of prodigious proportions, and of the measure of a *nalwa*, that car was covered with bear-skins.[11] Equipt with all kinds of mighty weapons, it possessed a tall standard and was adorned with garlands having eight wheels, and its clatter resembled the roar of the clouds.[12] His steeds were like infuriate elephants, and possessed of red eyes; of terrible aspect, they were variegated in hue, and endued with great speed and might.[13] Above all fatigue, and adorned with long manes, and neighing repeatedly, they bore that hero to battle.[14] A *Rākshasa* of terrible eyes, fiery mouth, and blazing ear-rings, acted as his driver, holding the reins, bright as the rays of the sun, of his steeds in battle.[15] With that driver he came to battle like Surya with his driver Aruna. Looking like a high mountain encircled with a mighty cloud,[16] a very tall standard, touching the heavens, was set up on his car. A carnivorous and awful vulture of blood-red body perched on it.[17] He came, forcibly drawing his bow whose twang resembled the thunder of Indra, and whose string was very hard, and which measured a dozen cubits in length and one cubit in breadth.*[18] Filling all the points of the compass with shafts of the measure of the *Aksha* of a car, the *Rākshasa* rushed against Karna on that night that was so destructive of heroes.[19] Staying proudly on his car, as he stretched his bow, the twang that was heard resembled the sound of the roaring thunder.[20] Frightened by him, O Bhārata, all thy troops trembled like the surging waves of the ocean.[21] Beholding that frightful *Rākshasa* of horrible eyes advancing against him, Rādhā's son, as if smiling, withstood him speedily.[22] And Karna proceeded against the smiting *Rākshasa*, smiting him in return from a near point, like an elephant against an elephant or the leader of a bovine herd against the leader of another herd.[23] The collision that took place between them, *i. e*, Karna and the *Rākshasa*, O king, became terrible and resembled that between Indra and Camvara.[24] Each taking a formidable bow of loud twang struck

* An *aratni* is a cubit measuring from the elbow to the end of the little finger.—T.

and covered the other with powerful shafts.[25] With straight shafts sped from bows drawn to their fullest stretch, they mangled each other, piercing their coats of mail made of brass.[26] With darts of the measure of *Akshas*, and shafts also, they continued to mangle each other, like a couple of tigers or of mighty elephants with their teeth or tusks.[27] Piercing each other's body, aiming shafts at each other, scorching each other with clouds of arrows, they became incapable of being gazed at.[28] With limbs pierced and mangled with shafts, and bathed in streams of blood, they looked like two hills of red chalk with rivulets running adown their breasts.[29] Those two mighty car-warriors, both struggling vigorously, both with limbs pierced with keen-pointed shafts, and each mangling the other, failed, however, to make each other tremble.[30] For a long time that nocturnal combat between Karna and the *Rākshasa*, in which both seemed to sport, making life itself the stake, continued equally.[31] Aiming keen shafts and shooting them to the utmost measure of his might, the twang of Ghatotkacha's bow inspired both friends and foes with fear.*[32] At that time, O king, Karna could not prevail over Ghatotkacha. Seeing this, that foremost of all persons acquainted with weapons, invoked into existence celestial weapons.[33] Beholding a celestial weapon aimed at him by Karna, Ghatotkacha, that foremost of *Rākshasas*, invoked into existence his *Rākshasa* illusion.[34] He was seen surrounded by a large force of terrible-looking *Rākshasas* armed with lances and large rocks and hills and clubs.†[35] Beholding Ghatotkacha advancing with a mighty weapon uplifted (in his hands) like unto the Destroyer himself of all creatures armed with his fierce and fatal club, all the kings there were struck with fear.[36] Terrified at the leonine roars uttered by Ghatotkacha, the elephants passed urine and all the combatants trembled with fear.[37] Then there fell on all sides a thick rain of rocks and stones poured incessantly by the *Rākshasas*, who had, in consequence

---

* Both readings, *viz.*, *ासक्तम* and *ाçaktam* are correct. The former means 'engaged'; the latter, 'to the measure of his might'.—T.

† The second line of 35 is read differently in the Bombay edition.—T.

of midnight, become inspired with greater strength.*[38] Iron wheels and *Bhuçundis*, and darts and lances and spears and *Çatāghnis* and axes also began to fall incessantly.[39] Beholding that fierce and terrible battle, all the kings, as also thy sons and the other combatants, fled away in fear.[40] Only one amongst them, *viz.*, Karna proud of the power of his weapons, and feeling a noble pride, trembled not. Indeed, with his shafts he destroyed that illusion invoked into existence by Ghatotkacha.[41] Beholding his illusion dispelled, Ghatotkacha, filled with rage, began to shoot deadly shafts from desire of slaying the *Suta's* son.[42] Those shafts, bathed in blood, piercing through Karna's body in that dreadful battle, entered the Earth like angry snakes.[43] Then the valiant son of the *Suta*, filled with rage and possessed of great lightness of hands, prevailing over Ghatotkacha, pierced the latter with ten shafts.[44] Then Ghatotkacha, thus pierced by the *Suta's* son in his vital parts and feeling great pain, took up a celestial wheel having a thousand radii.[45] The edge of that wheel was sharp as a razor. Possessed of the splendour of the morning Sun, and decked with jewels and gems, Bhimsena's son hurled that wheel at the son of Adhiratha, desirous of making an end of the latter.[46] That wheel, however, of great power and hurled also with great might, was cut off into pieces by Karna with his shafts, and fell down, baffled of its object, like the hopes and purposes of an unfortunate man.[47] Filled with rage upon beholding his wheel baffled, Ghatotkacha covered Karna with showers of shafts like Rāhu covering the Sun.[48] The *Suta's* son, however, endued with the prowess of Rudra or of Indra's younger brother or of Indra, fearlessly shrouded Ghatotkacha's car in a moment with winged arrows.[49] Then Ghatotkacha, whirling a gold-decked mace, hurled it at Karna. Karna, however, with his shafts, cutting it off, caused it to fall down.[50] Then soaring into the sky and roaring deep like a mass of clouds, the gigantic *Rākshasa* poured from the welkin a perfect shower of trees.[51] Then Karna pierced with his shafts Bhima-

---

* *Rakshasas* at certain hours were believed to be inspired with greater strength.—T.

sena's son in the sky, that *Rākshasa* acquainted with illusions, like the Sun piercing with his rays a mass of clouds.[52] Slaying then all the steeds of Ghatotkacha, and cutting also his car into a hundred pieces, Karna began to pour upon him his arrows like a cloud pouring torrents of rain.[53] On Ghatotkacha's body there was not even two fingers' breadth of space that was not pierced with Karna's shafts. Soon the *Rākshasa* seemed to be like a porcupine with quills erect on his body.[54] So completely was he shrouded with shafts that we could not, in that battle, any longer see either the steeds or the car or the standard of Ghatotkacha or Ghatotkacha himself.[55] Destroying then by his own weapon the celestial weapon of Karna, Ghatotkacha, endued with the power of illusion, began to fight with the *Suta's* son, aided by his powers of illusion.[56] Indeed, he began to fight with Karna, aided by his illusion and displaying the greatest activity. Showers of shafts fell from an invisible source from the welkin.[57] Then Bhimasena's son endued with great powers of illusion, O foremost of the Kurus, assumed a fierce form, aided by those powers, and began to stupify the Kauravas, O Bhārata![58] The valiant *Rākshasa*, assuming many fierce and grim heads, began to devour the celestial weapons of the *Suta's* son.[59] Soon again, the gigantic *Rākshasa*, with a hundred wounds on his body seemed to lie cheerlessly and as if dead, on the field.[60] The Kaurava bulls then, regarding Ghatotkacha dead, uttered loud shouts (of joy). Soon, however, he was seen on all sides, careering in new forms.[61] Once more he was seen to assume a prodigious form, with a hundred heads and a hundred stomachs, and looking like the Maināka mountain.*[62] Once again, becoming small about the measure of the thumb, he moved about transversely or soared aloft like the swelling surges of the sea.[63] Tearing through the Earth and rising on the surface, he dived again into the waters. Once seen here he was next seen at a different place.[64] Descending then from the welkin, he was seen standing, clad in mail, on a car decked with gold, having wandered through Earth and sky and all the points of the compass, aided by his powers of illusion.[65]

---

* Maināka, the son of Himavat, has a hundred heads.—T.

Approaching then the vicinity of Karna's car, Ghatotkacha, with his ear-rings waving, fearlessly addressed the *Suta's* son, O monarch, and said,[66]—Wait a little, O *Suta's* son? Whither shalt thou go with life, avoiding me! I shall today, on the field of battle, quell thy desire of fight![67]—Having said those words, that *Rākshasa* of cruel prowess and eyes red like copper in wrath, soared aloft into the sky and laughed aloud.[68] Like a lion smiting a prince of elephants, he began to strike Karna, pouring upon him a shower of shafts, each of the measure of the *Aksha* of a car.[69] Indeed, he poured that arrowy shower upon Karna, that bull among car-warriors, like a cloud pouring torrents of rain on a mountain. Karna destroyed that shower of arrows from a distance.[70] Beholding his illusion destroyed by Karna, O bull of Bharata's race, Ghatotkacha once more created an illusion and made himself invisible.[71] He became a high mountain with many summits and abounding with tall trees. And from that mountain incessantly issued streams of lances and spears and swords and clubs.[72] Seeing that mountain, which resembled a mighty mass of antimony, with its streams of fierce weapons, on the welkin, Karna was not at all agitated.[73] Smiling the while, Karna invoked into existence a celestial weapon. Cut off with that weapon, that huge mountain was destroyed.[74] Then the fierce Ghatotkacha, becoming a blue cloud with a rainbow, in the welkin, began to pour upon the *Suta's* son a shower of stones.[75] Vikartana's son Karna, who was called also Vrisha, that foremost of all persons acquainted with weapons, aiming a *Vāyavya* weapon, destroyed that dark cloud.[76] Then covering all the points of the compass with innumerable shafts, he destroyed a weapon that had been aimed at him by Ghatotkacha.[77] The mighty son of Bhimasena then, laughing aloud in that battle, once more invoked into existence an all-powerful illusion against the mighty car-warrior Karna.[78] Once more beholding that foremost of warriors, *viz.*, Ghatotkacha, fearlessly approaching him surrounded by a large number of *Rākshasas*[79] that resembled lions and tigers and infuriate elephants in prowess, some riding on elephants, some on cars, and some on horse-back,[80] all armed with diverse weapons and clad in diverse kinds of mail and diverse kinds of orna-

ments, in fact, beholding Ghatotkacha surrounded by those fierce *Rākshasas* like Vasava by the Maruts,[81] the mighty bowman Karna began to battle with him fiercely. Then Ghatotkacha, piercing Karna with five shafts,[82] uttered a terrible roar, frightening all the kings. Once more shooting an *Anjalika* weapon, Ghatotkacha quickly cut off the bow in Karna's hand along with the arrowy shower the latter had shot. Karna then, taking out another bow that was strong and capable of bearing a great strain and that was as large as Indra's bow, drew it with great force. Then Karna sped some foe-slaying shafts of golden wings at those sky-ranging *Rākshasas*. Afflicted with those shafts, that large force of broad-chested *Rākshasas*[83-86] looked agitated like a herd of wild elephants afflicted by a lion. Destroying with his shafts those *Rākshasas* along with their steeds and drivers and elephants,[87] the puissant Karna looked like the divine Agni consuming all creatures at the time of the universal dissolution. Having destroyed that *Rākshasa* host, the *Suta's* son[88] looked resplendent like the god Maheçwara in heaven after having consumed the tripple city (of the *Asuras*). Among those thousands of kings on the Pāndava side, O sire,[89] there was not a single one, O monarch, that could even look at Karna then, save the mighty Ghatotkacha, that prince of *Rākshasas*, who was endued with terrible energy and strength, and who, inflamed with rage, then looked like Yama himself. From his eyes, excited as he then was with wrath, flames of fire seemed to emanate, like blazing drops of oil from a couple of burning brands.[90-91] Striking his palm against palm and biting his nether lip,[92] the *Rākshasa* was once more seen on a car that had been created by his illusion, and unto which were yoked a number of asses looking like elephants and having the faces of *Piçāchas*.[93] Excited with wrath, he addressed his driver, saying,—Bear me towards the *Suta's* son!—Then that foremost of car-warriors proceeded on that terrible-looking car of his,[94] for once more fighting a single combat with the *Suta's* son, O king! The *Rākshasa*, excited with rage, hurled at the *Suta's* son[95] an *Açani* of Rudra's workmanship, terrible and furnished with eight wheels. Karna, placing his bow on his car, jumped down on the Earth and seiz-

ing that *Açani*[96] hurled it back at Ghatotkacha. The latter, however, had quickly descended from his car (before the weapon could reach it). The *Açani*, meanwhile, of great effulgence, having reduced the *Rākshasa's* car to ashes, with its steeds, driver, and standard,[97] piercing through the Earth, disappeared within its bowels, at which the gods were all filled with wonder. Then all creatures applauded Karna,[98] who, having jumped down from his car, had seized that *Açani*. Having achieved that feat, Karna once more ascended his car.[99] The *Suta's* son, that scorcher of foes, then began to shoot his shafts. Indeed, O giver of honors, there is none else amongst all living creatures who can accomplish what Karna accomplished in that frightful battle. Struck by Karna with shafts like a mountain with torrents of rain,[100-101] Ghatotkacha once more disappeared from the view like the melting forms of vapour in the sky. Contending in this way, the gigantic *Rākshasa*, that slayer of foes, destroyed the celestial weapons of Karna by means of his activity as also his power of illusion. Seeing his weapons destroyed by the *Rākshasa* aided by his powers of illusion,[102-3] Karna, without being inspired with fear, continued to fight with the cannibal. Then, O monarch, the mighty son of Bhimasena, excited with wrath,[104] divided his own self into many parts, frightening all the mighty car-warriors (of the Kuru army). Then there came on the field of battle lions, and tigers, and hyenas,[105] and snakes with fiery tongues, and birds with iron beaks. As regards Ghatotkacha himself, struck with the keen arrows that were sped from Karna's bow,[106] that huge *Rākshasa*, looking like (Himvata) the prince of mountains, disappeared there and then. Then many *Rākshasas* and *Piçāchas* and *Yātudhānas*,[107] and large number of wolves and leopards, of fightful faces, rushed towards Karna for devouring him.[108] These approached the *Suta's* son, uttering fierce howls for frightening him. Karna pierced every one of those monsters with many swift-winged and terrible shafts that drank their blood. At last, using a celestial weapon he destroyed that illusion of the *Rākshasa*.[109-10] He then, with some straight and fierce shafts, struck the steeds of Ghatotkacha. These, with broken and maimed limbs, and their backs cut by those shafts,[111] fell

down on the Earth, in the very sight of Ghatotkacha. The son of Hidimvā, seeing his illusion dispelled, once more made himself invisible, saying unto Karna the son of Vikartana,—I will presently compass thy destruction!—' "[112]

SECTION CLXXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'During the progress of that battle between Karna and the *Rākshasa*, the valiant Alāyudha, that prince of *Rākshasas*, appeared (on the field).[1] Accompanied by a large force, he approached Duryodhana. Indeed, surrounded by many thousands of frightful *Rākshasas*[2] of diverse forms and endued with great heroism, he appeared (on the field), recollecting his old quarrel (with the Pāndavas). His kinsman, the valiant Vaka, who ate Brāhmanas, as also Kirmira of great energy, and his friend Hidimva, had been slain (by Bhima). He had waited for a long time, brooding over his old quarrel.[3-4] Learning now that a nocturnal battle was raging, he came, impelled by the desire of slaying Bhima in fight, like an infuriate elephant or an angry snake.[5] Desirous of battle, he addressed Duryodhana and said,—It is known to thee, O monarch, how my kinsmen, the *Rākshasas* Vaka and Kirmira and Hidimva, have been slain by Bhima. What shall I say more, the virgin Hidimvā was formerly deflowered by him,[6-7] disregarding us and the other *Rākshasas*! I am here, O king, to slay that Bhima with all his followers, steeds, cars, and elephants, as also that son of Hidimvā with his friends! Slaying today all the sons of Kunti, with Vāsudeva and others that walk before them, I will devour them with all their followers! Command all thy troops to desist from battle. We will fight with the Pāndavas!—[8-10]

"'Hearing these words of his, Duryodhana became very glad. Surrounded by his brothers, the king, accepting the words of the *Rākshasa*, said,[11]—Placing thee with thine in the van, we will fight with the foe! My troops will not stand as indifferent spectators since their enmity has not cooled![12]—That bull amongst *Rākshasas*, saying—Let it be so—unto the king, speedily proceeded against Bhima, accompanied by his cannibal force.[13] Endued with a blazing form, Alāyudha rode

a car possessed of the effulgence of the Sun. Indeed, O monarch, that car of his was similar to Ghatotkacha's car.[14] The rattle also of Alāyudha's car was as deep as that of Ghatotkacha's, and it was decked with many arches. That large car was covered with bear-skins, and its measure was a *nalwa*.[15] His steeds, like those of Ghatotkacha, were endued with great speed, resembled elephants in shape, and had the voice of asses. Subsisting on flesh and blood, and gigantic in size, a hundred of them were yoked unto his vehicle.[16] Indeed, the rattle of his car, like that of Ghatotkacha's was deep as the roar of a large cloud. His bow too, like that of his rival, was large and strong, and its string was as hard.[17] His shafts also, winged with gold and whetted on stone, were as large as Ghatotkacha's, being of the measure of *Akshas*. The heroic Alāyudha was as mighty-armed as Ghatotkacha,[18] and the standard of his car, endued with the splendour of the Sun or fire, was, like Ghatotkacha's, perched upon by vultures and ravens. In form he was more handsome than Ghatotkacha, and his face, agitated (with wrath), looked blazing.[19] With blazing *Angadas* and blazing diadem and garlands, decked with floral wreaths and head-gear and sword, armed with mace and *Bhuçundis* and short clubs and ploughs and bow and arrows, and with skin black and hard as that of the elephant,[20] riding on that car possessed of the splendour of fire, he looked, while employed in afflicting and routing the Pāndava host, like a roving cloud in the welkin, decked with flashes of lightning.[21] (As Alāyudha came to battle), the principal kings of the Pāndava army, endued with great might, and armed with (sword and) shield, and clad in mail, engaged in fight, O king, with joyous hearts.'"[22]

SECTION CLXXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Alāyudhā of terrible deeds come to battle, all the Kauravas became filled with delight.[1] Similarly thy sons having Duryodhana for their head, (were filled with delight) like raftless men desirous of crossing the ocean when thy meet with a raft.[2] Indeed, the kings in the Kuru

army then regarded themselves as persons reborn after death.* They all offered a respectful welcome to Alāyudha.[3] During the progress of that terrible and superhuman battle between Karna and the *Rākshasa* at night,—a battle which though fierce was yet delightful to behold,[4]—the Pānchālas with all the other Kshatriyas smilingly looked on as spectators. Meanwhile, thy soldiers, O king, though protected (by their leaders) all over the field,[5] and Drona and Drona's son and Kripa and others, uttered loud wails, saying,—All is lost! —Indeed, beholding those feats of Hidimvā's son on the field of battle,[6] all thy warriors were agitated with fear, and uttering cries of woe became almost deprived of their senses. Thy troops, O king, all became hopeless of Karna's life.[7] Then Duryodhana, beholding Karna fallen into great distress, summoned Alāyudha and said unto him:[8]—Yonder Vikartana's son Karna is engaged with the son of Hidimvā, and is accomplishing such feats in battle as are worthy of his might and prowess![9] Behold those brave kings slain by the son of Bhimasena, struck with diverse kinds of weapons (and lying on the field) like trees broken by an elephant![10] Amongst all my royal warriors, let this be thy share in this battle, allotted by me, with thy permission, O hero! Displaying thy prowess, slay thou this *Rākshasa*![11] O crusher of foes, see that this wretch, *viz.*, Ghatotkacha, may not, relying on his powers of illusion, slay Karna the son of Vikartana before thou finishest him![12]—Thus addressed by the king, that *Rākshasa* of fierce prowess and mighty arms, saying,—So be it—rushed against Ghatotkacha.[13] Then Bhimasena's son, O lord, abandoning Karna, began to grind his advancing foe with his arrows.[14] The battle then that took place between those angry *Rākshasa* princes, resembled that between two infuriate elephants in the forest fighting for the sake of the same she-elephant in her season.[15] Freed then from the *Rākshasa*, Karna, that foremost of car-warriors, rushed against Bhimasena, riding on his car of solar effulgence.[16] Beholding Ghatotkacha engaged with Alāyudha in battle and afflicted like the leader of a bovine herd when

---

* *I. e.*, they thought they obtained a new lease of life.—T.

engaged with a lion, Bhima, that foremost of smiters, disregarding the advancing Karna, rushed towards Alāyudha, riding on his car of solar effulgence, and scattering clouds of shafts.[17-18] Seeing Bhima advance, Alāyudha, O lord, abandoning Ghatotkacha, proceeded against Bhima himself.[19] Then Bhima, that exterminater of *Rākshasas,* impetuously rushed towards him, O lord, and covered that prince of *Rākshasas* with shafts.[20] Similarly Alāyudha, that chastiser of foes, repeatedly covered the son of Kunti with straight shafts whetted on stone.[21] All the other *Rākshasas* also, of terrible forms and armed with diverse weapons, solicitous of the victory of thy sons, rushed against Bhimasena.[22] The mighty Bhimasena, thus assailed by them, pierced each of them with five whetted shafts.[23] Then those *Rākshasas* of wicked understanding, thus received by Bhimasena, uttered loud wails and fled away on all sides.[24] The mighty *Rākshasa,* beholding his followers frightened by Bhima, rushed impetuously against Bhima and covered him with shafts.[25] Then Bhimasena, in that battle, weakened his foe by means of many keen-pointed arrows. Amongst those arrows sped at him by Bhima, Alāyudha speedily cut off some and seized others in that battle. Then Bhima of terrible prowess, looking steadily at that prince of *Rākshasas,*[26-27] hurled at him with great force a mace endued with the impetuosity of the thunder. That mace, coursing towards him like a flame of fire,[28] the cannibal struck with a mace of his own, whereupon the latter (baffling the former) proceeded towards Bhima. Then the son of Kunti covered that prince of *Rākshasas* with showers of shafts.[29] The *Rākshasa,* with his own keen shafts, baffled all those shafts of Bhima. Then all those *Rākshasa* warriors, of terrible forms, (rallying and returning to battle),[30] at the command of their leader, began to slay the elephants (of Bhima's force). The Pānchālas and the Srinjayas, the steeds and huge elephants (of Bhima's army),[31] exceedingly afflicted by the *Rākshasas,* became much agitated. Beholding that terrible battle,[32] (fought between Bhima and the *Rākshasas)* Vāsudeva that foremost of men, addressing Dhananjaya, said these words:—Behold, the mighty-armed Bhima is succumbing to that prince of *Rākshasas* ![33] Quickly proceed in

Bhima's wake, without thinking of anything else, O son of Pāndu! Meanwhile, let Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin, and Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas,[34] these mighty car-warriors, uniting with the sons of Draupadi, proceed against Karna! Let Nakula and Sahadeva and the valiant Yuyudhāna,[35] O son of Pāndu, at thy command, slay the other *Rākshasas*! As regards thyself, O mighty-armed one, do thou resist this division having Drona at its head! O thou of mighty arms, great is the danger that threatens us now!—After Krishna had said so, those foremost of car-warriors, as commanded,[36-37] proceeded against Karna the son of Vikartana, and against the other *Rākshasas* (fighting for the Kurus). Then with some shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison and sped from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch,[38] the valiant prince of *Rākshasas* cut off Bhima's bow. The mighty cannibal next, in the very sight of Bhima, O Bhārata, slew the latter's steeds and driver with some whetted shafts. Steedless and driverless, Bhima, descending from the terrace of his car,[39-40] uttered a loud roar and hurled a heavy mace at his foe. That heavy mace, as it coursed impetuously towards him with a terrible sound,[41] the mighty cannibal baffled with a mace of his own. The latter then uttered a loud roar. Beholding that mighty and terrible feat of that prince of *Rākshasas*,[42] Bimasena, filled with joy, seized another fierce mace. The battle then that took place between that human warrior and that *Rākshasa*, became dreadful.[43] With the clash of their descending maces, the Earth trembled violently. Casting aside their maces, they once more encountered each other.[44] They struck each other with their clenched fists falling with the sound of thunder. Excited with rage, they encountered each other with car-wheels, and yokes, and *Akshas* and *Adhishthānas*, and *Upaskaras*, in fact, with anything that came in their way. Encountering each other thus and both covered with blood, they looked like a couple of infuriate elephants of gigantic size. Then Hrishikeça, ever devoted to the good of the Pāndavas, beholding that combat, despatched Hidimvā's son for protecting Bhimasena.' "[45-47]

SECTION CLXXIX.

"Sanjnya said,—'Seeing Bhima in that battle assailed by the cannibal, Vāsudeva, approaching Ghatotkacha, said unto him these words :[1]—Behold, O mighty-armed one, Bhima is powerfully assailed by the *Rākshasas* in battle, in the very sight of all the troops and of thyself, O thou of great splendour![2] Abandoning Karna for the present, quickly slay Alāyudha, O mighty-armed one! Thou canst afterwards slay Karna![3]—Hearing these words of him of Vrishni's race, the valiant Ghatotkacha, abandoning Karna, encountered Alāyudha, that prince of cannibals and brother of Vaka.[4] The battle then that took place at night between those two cannibals, *viz.*, Alāyudha and son of Hidimvā, became fierce and dreadful, O Bhārata.[5] Meanwhile the mighty car-warrior Yuyudhāna, and Nakula, Sahadeva, pierced with keen shafts the warriors of Alāyudha, *viz.*, those terrible-looking and heroic *Rākshasas*, who, armed with bows, were rushing impetuously at them.[6-7] The diadem-decked Vibhatsu, O king, in that battle, shooting his arrows on all sides, began to overthrow many foremost of Kshatriyas.[8] Meanwhile Karna, O king, in that battle, agitated many kings and many mighty car-warriors amongst the Pānchālas headed by Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin and others.[9] Beholding them slaughtered (by Karna), Bhima of terrible prowess rushed speedily towards Karna, shooting his shafts in that battle.[10] Then those warriors also, *viz.*, Nakula and Sahadeva and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, having slain the *Rākshasas*, proceeded to that place where the *Suta's* son was.[11] All of them then began to fight with Karna, while the Pānchālas encountered Drona. Then Alāyudha, excited with rage, struck Ghatotkacha, that chastiser of foes, on the head, with a gigan-*Parigha*. With the stroke of that *Parigha*, the mighty son of Bhimasena,[12-13] endued with great prowess, seemed to be in a state of partial-swoon and sat down motionless. Recovering consciousness, the latter then, in that encounter, hurled at his foe a gold-decked mace adorned with a hundred bells and looking

like a blazing fire. Hurled forcibly by that achiever of fierce feats, that mace crushed into pieces the steeds, the driver, and the loudly rattling car of Alāyudha. Having recourse to illusion, the latter then jumped down from that car of his, whose steeds and wheels and *Akshas* and standard and *Kuvara* had all been crushed into pieces. Relying on his illusion, he poured a copious shower of blood.[14-17] The sky then seemed to be overspread with a mass of black clouds adorned with flashes of lightning. A thunder-storm was then heard, accompanied with loud reports and loud roars of clouds.[18] Loud sounds also of *chat, chat,* were heard in that dreadful battle. Beholding that illusion created by the *Rākshasa* Alāyudha, the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha,[19] soaring sloft, destroyed it by means of his own illusion. Endued with powers of illusion, Alāyudha, beholding his own illusion destroyed by that of his foe,[20] began to pour a heavy shower of stones on Ghatotkacha. That terrible shower of stones, the valiant Ghatotkacha dispelled by means of a shower of arrows. They then rained on each other diverse weapons[21-22] such as iron *Parighas* and spears and maces and short clubs and mallets, and *Pināka*s and swords and lances and long spears and *Kampanas,*[23] and keen shafts both long and broad-headed, and arrows and disci and battle-axes, and *Ayagudas* and short arrows, and weapons with heads like those of kine, and *Ulukhalas.*[24] And they struck each other, tearing up many kinds of large-branched trees such as *Çami* and *Pilu* and *Karira* and *Champaka,* O Bhārata, and *Ingudi* and *Vadari* and flowering *Kovidāra* and *Palkça* and *Arimeda* and *Plaksha* and banian and peepul, and also with diverse mountain-summits decked with diverse kinds of metals.[25-27] The clash of those trees and mountain-summits became very loud like the roar of riving thunder. Indeed, the battle that took place between Bhima's son and Alāyudha was, O king, dreadful in the extreme,[28] like that in days of old, O monarch, between Vāli and Sugriva, those two princes among monkeys. They struck each other with shafts and diverse other kinds of fierce weapons, as also with sharp scimitars. Then the mighty *Rākshasas,* rushing against each other, seized each other by the hair.[29-30] And, O king, those two gigan-

tic warriors, with many wounds on their bodies and blood and sweat trickling adown, looked like two mighty masses of clouds pouring rain.[31] Then rushing with speed and whirling the *Rākshasa* on high and dashing him down, Hidimvā's son cut off his large head.[32] Then taking that head decked with a pair of ear-rings, the mighty Ghatotkacha uttered a loud roar.[33] Beholding the gigantic brother of Vaka, that chastiser of foes, thus slain, the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas began to utter leonine shouts.[34] Then, upon the fall of the *Rākshasa*, the Pāndavas beat and blew thousands of drums and ten thousands of conchs.[35] That night then clearly indicated the victory of the Pāndavas. Illumined with torches all around, and resounding with the noise of musical instruments, the night looked exceedingly resplendent.[36] The mighty son of Bhimasena threw down the head of the slain Alāyudha before Duryodhana.[37] Duryodhana, beholding the heroic Alāyudha slain, became, O Bhārata, filled with anxiety, with all his troops.[38] Alāyudha, having come to Duryodhana of his own accord remembering his former quarrel, had said unto him that he would slay Bhima in battle.[39] The Kuru king had regarded Bhima's slaughter to be certain, and had believed that his brothers would all be long-lived.[40] Beholding that Alāyudha slain by Bhimasena's son, the king regarded Bhima's vow (about the slaughter of himself and his brothers)already fulfilled.' "[41]

SECTION CLXXX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having slain Alāyudha, the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha became filled with delight. Standing at the head of the army he began to utter diverse kinds of shouts.[1] Hearing those loud roars of his that made elephants tremble, a great fear, O monarch, entered into the hearts of thy warriors.[2] Beholding the mighty son of Bhimasena engaged with Alāyudha, the mighty-armed Karna rushed against the Pānchālas.[3] He pierced Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin, each with ten strong and straight shafts sped from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch.[4] With a number of other powerful shafts, the *Suta's* son then made Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas, and the

great car-warrior Sātyaki, to tremble.[5] The bows of those warriors also, O king, while they were engaged in striking Karna from all sides, were seen to be drawn into circles.[6] On that night, the twang of their bowstrings and the rattle of their car-wheels, (mingling together) became loud and deep as the roar of the clouds at the close of summer.[7] That nocturnal battle, O monarch, resembled a gathering mass of clouds. The twang of bowstrings and the rattle of car-wheels constituted its roar. The bows (of warriors) constituted its lightning flashes; and showers of shafts formed its downpour of rain.[8] Standing immovable like a hill and possessed of the strength of a prince of mountains, that grinder of foes, *viz.*, Vikartana's son Karna, O king, destroyed that wonderful shower of arrows shot at him.[9] Devoted to the good of thy sons, the high-souled Vaikartana, in that battle, began to strike his foes with lances endued with the force of thunder, and with whetted shafts equipt with beautiful wings of gold.[10] Soon the standards of some were broken and cut down by Karna, and the bodies of others pierced and mangled by him with keen arrows; and soon some were deprived of drivers, and some of their steeds.[11] Exceedingly afflicted by the *Suta's* son in that battle, many of them entered the force of Yudhishthira. Beholding them broken and compelled to retreat, Ghatotkacha became mad with rage.[12] Mounted on that excellent car of his that was decked with gold and jewels, he uttered a loud leonine roar, and approaching Vikartana's son Karna, pierced him with shafts endued with the force of thunder.[13] Both of them began to cover the welkin with barbed arrows, and cloth-yard shafts, and frog-faced arrows, and *Nālikas*, and *Dandas*, and *Açanis*, and arrows bearing heads like the calf's tooth or the boar's ear, and broad-headed shafts, and shafts pointed like horns, and others bearing heads like razors.[14] The welkin, covered with that arrowy shower, looked, in consequence of those gold-winged shafts of blazing splendour coursing horizontally through it, as if hung with garlands of beautiful flowers.[15] Each endued with prowess equal to that of the other, they struck each other equally with powerful weapons. None could, in that battle, find any mark of superiority in either of those excellent

heroes.[16] Indeed, that battle between the son of Surya and Bhima's son, characterised by a thick and heavy shower of weapons, looked exceedingly beautiful and presented almost an unrivalled sight like the fierce encounter between Rāhu and Surya in the welkin.'[17]

"Sanjaya continued,—'When Ghatotkacha, O king, that foremost of all persons conversant with weapons, found that he could not prevail over Karna, he invoked into existence a fierce and mighty weapon.[18] With that weapon, the *Rākshasa* first slew the steeds of Karna and then the latter's driver. Having achieved that feat, Hidimvā's son quickly made himself invisible.'[19]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When that *Rākshasa* fighting by deceitful means thus disappeared, tell me, O Sanjaya, what did the warriors of my army think?'[20]

"Sanjaya said,—'Seeing the *Rākshasa* disappear, all the Kauravas loudly said,—Appearing next, the *Rākshasa*, fighting deceitfully, will certainly slay Karna![21]—Then Karna, endued with wonderful lightness in the use of weapons, covered all sides with showers of shafts. The welkin being covered with the darkness caused by that thick arrowy shower, all creatures became invisible.[22] So great was the lightness of hands displayed by the *Suta's* son, that none could mark when he touched his quivers with his fingers, when he fixed his arrows on the bowstring, and when he aimed and sped them off. The entire welkin seemed to be shrouded with his arrows.[23] Then a fierce and terrible illusion was invoked into existence by the *Rākshasa* in the welkin. We beheld in the sky what appeared to us to be a mass of red clouds resembling the fierce flame of a blazing fire.[24] From that cloud issued flashes of lightning, and many blazing brands, O Kuru king! And tremendous roars also issued therefrom, like the noise of thousands of drums beat at once.[25] And from it fell many shafts winged with gold, and darts, and lances, and heavy clubs, and other similar weapons, and battle-axes, and scimitars washed with oil, and axes of blazing edges, and spears,[26] and spiked maces emitting shining rays, and beautiful maces of iron, and long darts of keen points, and heavy maces decked with gold and twined round with strings, and

Çataghnis, all around.[27] And large rocks fell from it, and thousands of thunder-bolts with loud report, and many hundreds of wheels and razors of the splendour of fire.[28] Karna, shooting showers of shafts, failed to destroy that thick and blazing downpour of darts and lances and swords and clubs.[29] Loud became the uproar then of falling steeds slain by those shafts, and mighty elephants struck with thunder, and great car-warriors deprived of life by other weapons.[30] Afflicted by Ghatotkacha with that terrible shower of arrows all around, that host of Duryodhana, was seen to wander, in great pain, over the field.[31] With cries of *oh* and *alas*, and exceedingly cheerless, that wandering host seemed on the point of being annihilated. The leaders, however, in consequence of the nobility of their hearts, fled not away with faces turned from the field.[32] Beholding that exceedingly frightful and awful shower of mighty weapons, caused by the *Rākshasa's* illusion, falling upon the field, and seeing their vast army incessantly slaughtered, thy sons became inspired with great fear.[33] Hundreds of jackals with tongues blazing like fire and of terrible yells, began to cry. And, O king, the (Kaurava) warriors, beholding the yelling *Rākshasas*, became exceedingly distressed.[34] Those terrible *Rākshasas* with fiery tongues and blazing mouths and sharp teeth, and with forms huge as hills, stationed in the welkin, with darts in grasp, looked like clouds pouring torrents of rain.[35] Struck and crushed with those fierce shafts and darts and lances and maces and spiked clubs of blazing splendour, and thunder-bolts and *Pinākas* and *Açanis* and disci and *Çataghnis*, the (Kaurava) troops began to fall down.[36] The *Rākshasas* began to pour upon the warriors of thy son long darts, and treacle, and *Çatāghnis*, and *Sthunas* made of black iron and twined with strings of jute. Then all the combatants became stunned.[37] Brave warriors, with weapons broken or loosened from their grasp, or deprived of heads, or with fractured limbs, began to fall down on the field. And in consequence of the falling rocks, steeds and elephants and cars began to be crushed.[38] Those *Yātudhānas* of terrible forms, created by Ghatotkacha with the aid of his powers of illusion pouring that thick shower of mighty weapons, spared neither

those that were terrified nor those that begged for quarter.[39] During that cruel carnage of Kuru heroes, brought on by Death himself, during that extermination of Kshatriyas, the Kaurava warriors suddenly broke and fled with speed, crying aloud,[40]—Fly, ye Kauravas! All is lost! The gods with Indra at their head are slaying us for the sake of the Pāndavas!—At that time there was none that could rescue the sinking Bharata troops[41] During that fierce uproar and rout and extermination of the Kauravas, the camps losing their distinctive features, the parties could not be distinguished from each other.[42] Indeed, during that terrible rout in which the soldiers showed no regard for one another, every side of the field, when looked at, seemed to be empty. Only Karna, O king, could be seen there, drowned in that shower of weapons.[43] Then Karna covered the welkin with his shafts, contending with that celestial illusion of the *Rākshasa*. The *Suta's* son, endued with modesty and achieving the most difficult and noble feats, did not lose his senses in that battle.[44] Then, O king, all the Saindhavas and Vālhikas afrightedly looked at Karna who kept his senses in that fight. And they all worshipped him, while they looked at the triumph of the *Rākshasa*.[45] Then a *Çatgahni* equipt with wheels, hurled by Ghatotkacha, slew the four steeds of Karna simultaneously. These dropped down on the ground, on their knees, deprived of life, teeth, eyes, and tongues.[46] Then jumping down from his steedless car, and seeing the Kauravas flying away, and beholding his own celestial weapon baffled by the *Rākshasa's* illusion, Karna, without losing his senses, turned his mind inwards and began to reflect on what he should next do.[47] At that time all the Kauravas, beholding Karna and that terrible illusion (of the *Rākshasa*), cried out, saying,—O Karna, slay the *Rākshasa* soon with thy dart! These Kauravas and the Dhārtarāshtras are on the point of being annihilated![48] What will Bhima and Arjuna do to us? Slay this wretched *Rākshasa* at dead of night, who is consuming us all! They that will escape from this dreadful encounter today will fight with the Pārthas in battle![49] Therefore, slay this terrible *Rākshasa* now with that dart given thee by Vāsava! O Karna, let not these great warriors, the Kauravas,

these princes that resemble Indra himself, be all destroyed in this nocturnal battle![50]—Then Karna, seeing the *Rākshasa* alive at dead of night, and the Kuru army struck with fear, and hearing also the loud wails of the latter set his heart upon hurling his dart.[51] Inflamed with rage like a wrathful lion, and unable to brook the assaults of the *Rākshasa*, Karna took up that foremost of victory-giving and invincible darts, desirous of compassing the destruction of Ghatotkacha.[52] Indeed, that dart, O king, which he had kept and adored for years for (achieving) the slaughter of Pāndu's son in battle, that foremost of darts which Cakra himself had given to the *Suta's* son in exchange for the latter's ear-rings,[53] that blazing and terrible missile twined with strings and which seemed to thirst for blood, that fierce weapon which looked like the very tongue of the Destroyer or the sister of Death himself, that terrible and effulgent dart Vaikartana now hurled at the *Rākshasa*.[54] Beholding that excellent and blazing weapon capable of piercing the body of every foe, in the hands of the *Suta's* son, the *Rākshasa* began to fly away in fear, assuming a body gigantic as the foot of the Vindhya mountains.[55] Indeed, seeing that dart in Karna's, hand, all creatures in the sky, O king, uttered loud cries. Fierce winds began to blow, and thunders with loud report began to fall on the Earth.[56] Destroying that blazing illusion of Ghatotkacha and piercing right through his breast, that resplendent dart soared aloft in the night and entered a starry constellation in the firmament.[57] Having fought, using diverse beautiful celestial weapons, with many heroic *Rākshasas* and human warriors, Ghatotkacha then, uttering diverse terrible roars, fell, deprived of life with that dart of Cakra.[58] This also is another exceedingly wonderful feat that the *Rākshasa* accomplished for the destruction of his foes, *viz.*, that at that time when his heart was pierced by that dart, he shone resplendent, O king, like a mighty mountain or a mass of clouds.[59] Indeed, having assumed that terrible and awful form, Bhimasena's son of frightful deeds fell down. When dying, O king, he fell upon a portion of thy army and pressed those troops down by the weight of his own body.[60] Quickly falling down, the *Rākshasa*, with his gigantic and still

increasing body, desirous of benefiting the Pāndavas, slew a full *Akshauhini* of thy troops while he himself breathed his last.[61] Then a loud uproar arose there made up of leonine shouts and the blare of conchs and the beat of drums and cymbals. The Kauravas, indeed, beholding the illusion of the *Rākshasa* destroyed and the *Rākshasa* himself slain, uttered loud shouts of joy.[62] Then Karna, worshipped by the Kurus as Cakra had been by the Maruts upon the slaughter of (the *Asura)* Vritra, ascended behind the car of thy son, and becoming the observed of all, entered the Kuru host.' "[63]

SECTION CLXXXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Hidimvā's son slain and lying like a riven mountain, all the Pāndavas became filled with grief and began to shed copious tears.[1] Only Vāsudeva, filled with transports of delight, began to utter leonine shouts, grieving the Pāndavas.[2] Indeed, uttering loud shouts, he embraced Arjuna. Tying the reins of the steeds and uttering loud roars,[3] he began to dance in transports of joy like a tree shaken by a tempest. Then embracing Arjuna once more, and repeatedly slapping his own armpits,[4] Achyuta, endued with great intelligence, once more began to shout, standing on the terrace of the car. Beholding those tokens of delight that Keçava manifested, Dhananjaya,[5] O king, with heart in grief, addressed him, saying,—O slayer of Madhu, thou showest great joy at a time scarcely fit for it,[6] indeed, on an occasion for sorrow caused by the death of Hidimvā's son! Our troops are flying away, beholding Ghatotkacha slain![7] We also are filled with anxiety in consequence of the fall of Hidimvā's son! O Janārddana, the cause must be very grave when at such a time thou feelest such joy![8] Therefore, O foremost of truthful men, asked by me, tell me truly (what that cause is)! Indeed, if it be not a secret, it behoveth thee, O chastiser of foes, to say it unto me![9] O slayer of Madhu, tell me what has destroyed thy gravity today! This act of thine, O Janārddana, this lightness of heart, seems to me to be like the drying up of the ocean or the locomotion of Meru![10]—

"'Vāsudeva said,—Great is the joy I feel! Listen to me, O Dhananjaya! This that I will tell thee will immediately dispel thy sorrow and infuse delight into thy heart![11] O thou of great splendour, know, O Dhananjaya, that Karna, his dart being baffled through Ghatotkacha, is already slain in battle![12] The man does not exist in this world that could stay before Karna armed with that dart and looking like Kārtikeya in battle![13] By good luck, his (natural) armour had been taken away. By good luck, his ear-rings also had been taken away. By good luck, his infallible dart also is now baffled, through Ghatotkacha![14] Clad in his (natural) coat of mail and decked with his (natural) ear-rings, Karna, who has his senses under control, could singly vanquish the three worlds with the very gods![15] Neither Vāsava, nor Kuvera, nor Varuna the lord of the waters, nor Yāma, could venture to approach him![16] Indeed, if that bull among men had his armour and ear-rings, neither thyself, bending thy *Gāndiva*, nor myself, uplifting my discus called *Sudarçana*, could vanquish him in battle.[17] For thy good, Karna was divested of his ear-rings by Cakra with the help of an illusion. Similarly was that subjugator of hostile towns deprived of his (natural) armour.[18] Indeed, because Karna, cutting off his (natural) armour and his brilliant ear-rings, gave them unto Cakra, it is for that that he came to be called *Vaikartna*.*[19] Karna now seems to me to be like an angry snake of virulent poison stupefied by power of incantation, or like a fire of mild flames![20] From that time, O mighty-armed one, when the high-souled Cakra gave that dart unto Karna in exchange for the latter's ear-rings and celestial armour,—that dart, *viz.*, which has slain Ghatotkacha,—from that time, Vrisha, having obtained it, had always regarded thee as slain in battle![21-22] But though deprived of that dart, O sinless one, I swear to thee that that hero is still incapable of being slain by anybody else save thee![23] Devoted to Brāhmanas, truthful in speech, engaged in penances, observant of vows, kind even unto foes, for these reasons Karna is called

* A somewhat fanciful etymology which I have noticed in an earlier note.—T.

Vrisha.[24] Heroic in battle, possessed of mighty arms, and with bow always uplifted, like the lion in the forest depriving leaders of elephantine herds of their pride,[25] Karna always deprives the greatest car-warriors of their pride on the field of battle, and resembles the mid-day Sun at whom none can gaze.[26] Contending with all the illustrious and foremost of warriors of thy army, O tiger among men, Karna, while shooting his arrowy showers, looks like the autumnal Sun with his thousand rays.[27] Indeed, incessantly shooting showers of shafts like the clouds pouring torrents of rain at the end of summer, Karna is like a pouring cloud charged with celestial weapons.[28] He is incapable of being vanquished in battle by the very gods shooting showers of arrows on all sides. Encountering the gods, he would mangle them in such a way that their flesh and blood would fall copiously on the field.[29] Deprived, however, of his armour as also of his ear-rings, O son of Pāndu, and divested also of the dart given him by Vāsava, Karna is now like a man (and no longer like a god).[30] There will occur one opportunity for his slaughter. When his car-wheels will sink in the Earth, availing of that opportunity, thyself, exerting carefully, shouldst slay him in that distressful situation, when he will be engaged otherwise. I will make thee a sign beforehand. Warned by it, thou shouldst act![31] The vanquisher of Vala himself, that foremost of heroes, wielding his thunder, is incapable of slaying the invincible Karna while the latter stands weapon in hand. Indeed, O Arjuna, for thy good, with the aid of diverse contrivances I have slain, one after another, Jarāsandha and the illustrious ruler of the Chedis and the mighty-armed *Nishāda* of name Ekalavya! Other great *Rākshasas* having Hidimva and Krimira and Vaka for their foremost, as also Alāyudha, that grinder of hostile troops, and Ghatotkacha, that crusher of foes and warrior of fierce deeds, have all been slain!'"[32-33]

SECTION CLXXXII.

"'Arjuna said,—How, O Janārddana, for our good, and by what means, were those lords of Earth, *viz.*, Jarāsandha and the others slain ?[1]—

"'Vāsudeva said,—If Jarāsandha, and the ruler of the Çhedis, and the mighty son of the Nishāda king, had not been slain, they would have become terrible.[2] Without doubt, Duryodhana would have chosen those foremost of car-warriors (for embracing his side). They had always been hostile to us, and, accordingly, they would all have adopted the side of the Kauravas.[3] All of them were heroes, and mighty bowmen accomplished in weapons and firm in battle. Like the celestials (in prowess), they would have protected Dhritarāshtra's son.[4] Indeed, the *Suta's* son, and Jarāsandha, and the ruler of the Chedis, and the son of the Nishāda, adopting the side of Suyodhana, would have succeeded in conquering the whole Earth.[5] Listen, O Dhananjaya, by what means they were slain. Indeed, without the employment of means, the very gods could not have conquered them in battle![6] Each of them, O Pārtha, could fight in battle with the whole celestial host protected by the Regents of the world![7] (On one occasion), assailed by Valadeva, Jarāsandha, excited with wrath, hurled for our destruction a mace capable of slaying all creatures.[8] Endued with the splendour of fire, that mace coursed towards us, dividing the welkin like the line on the head that parts the tresses of a woman, and with the impetuosity of the thunder hurled by Cakra.[9] Beholding that mace thus coursing towards us, the son of Rohiny hurled the weapon called *Sthunākarna* for baffling it.[10] Its force destroyed by the energy of Valadeva's weapon, that mace fell down on the Earth, splitting her (with its might) and making the very mountains tremble.[11] There was a terrible *Rākshasi*, of name Jarā, endued with great prowess. She, O prince had united that slayer of foes, and, therefore, was the latter called *Jarāsandha*.[12] *Jarāsandha* had been made up of two halves of one child. And because it was Jarā that had united those two halves, it was for this that he came to be called *Jarā-*

sandha.[13]* That *Rākshasa* woman, O Pārtha, who was there within the Earth, was slain with her son and kinsmen by means of that mace and the weapon *Sthunākana.*[14] Deprived of his mace in that great battle, Jarāsandha was afterwards slain by Bhimasena in thy presence, O Dhananjaya![15]† If the valiant Jarāsandha had stood armed with his mace, the very gods with Indra at their head could not have slain him in battle, O best of men![16] For thy good, the Nishāda's son also, of prowess incapable of being baffled, was, by an act of guile, deprived of his thumb by Drona assuming the position of his preceptor.[17] Proud and endued with steady prowess, the Nishāda's son, with fingers cased in leathern fences, looked resplendent like a second Rāma.[18] Undeprived of thumb, Ekalavya, O Pārtha, was incapable of being vanquished in battle by the gods, the *Dānavas*, the *Rākshasas*, and the *Uragas* (together).[19] Of firm grasp, accompanied in weapons, and capable of shooting incessantly day and night, he was incapable of being looked at by mere men.[20] For thy good, he was slain by me on the field of battle. Endued with great prowess, the ruler of the Chedis was slain by me before thy eyes.[21] He also was incapable of being vanquished in battle by the gods and the *Asuras* together. I took my birth for his slaughter as also for that of other enemies of the gods,[22] with thy assistance, O tiger among men, from desire of benefiting the world! Hidimva and Vaka and Kirmira have all been slain by Bhimasena.[23] All those *Rākashas* were endued with might equal to that of Rāvana, and all of them were destroyers of Brāhmanas and sacrifices. Similarly, Alāyudha possessed of large powers of illusion had been slain by Hidimvā's son.[24] Hidimvā's son also, I have slain by the employment of means, *viz.*, through Karna with his dart. If Karna had not slain him with his dart in great battle,[25] I myself would have had to slay Bhimasena's son Ghatotkacha! From desire of benefiting you, I did not slay him before.[26] That *Rākshasa* was inimical to Brāhmanas and sacrifices.

---

* Literally means, "united by Jarā."—T.

† Nilakantha thinks that *Sagadayā* is one word, meaning "deprived of both the *Rākshasa* and the mace." This is far-fetched.—T.

Because he was a destroyer of sacrifices and of sinful soul, therefore hath he been thus slain![27] O sinless one, by that act as a means, the dart given by Cakra hath also been rendered futile. O son of Pāndu, they that are destroyers of righteousness are all slayable by me![28] Even that is the vow made by me, for establishing righteousness! Thither where the *Vedas* and truth and self-restraint and purity and righteousness and modesty and prosperity and wisdom and forgiveness are always to be met with,[29] thither I myself always remain. Thou needst not be at all anxious about Karna's slaughter![30] I will tell you the means by which you will slay him. Vrikodara also will succeed in slaying Suyodhana.[31] I will tell thee, O son of Pāndu, the means by which that will have to be compassed. Meanwhile, the uproar made by the hostile army is increasing.[32] Thy troops also are flying away on all sides. Having achieved their objects, the Kauravas are destroying thy host. Indeed, Drona, that foremost of all smiters, is scorching us in battle.—'"[33]

SECTION CLXXXIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—"When the *Suta's* son had such a dart as was sure to slay one person, why did he not hurl it at Pārtha, to the exclusion of all others?[1] Upon Pārtha's slaughter by means of that dart, all the Srinjayas and the Pāndavas would have been slain. Indeed, upon Phālguna's death, why should not the victory have been ours?[2] Arjuna had made a vow to the effect that summoned to battle he would never refuse to accept the challenge. The *Suta's* son should have, therefore, summoned Phālguna to battle.[3] Tell me, O Sanjaya, why did not Vrisha then, engaging Phālguna in single combat, slay the latter with that dart given him by Cakra?[4] Without doubt, my son is destitute of both inteligence and counsellors! That sinful wretch is constantly baffled by the foe. How should he then succeed in vanquishing his enemies?[5] Indeed, that dart which was such a mighty weapon and upon which had rested his victory, alas, that dart, hath, by Vāsudeva, been made fruitless through Ghatotkacha![6] Indeed, it hath been snatched from Karna like a fruit from the hand of a cripple with a with-

ered arm by a strong person! Even so hath that fatal dart been rendered fruitless through Ghatotkacha![7] As in a fight between a boar and a dog, upon the death of either, the hunter is the party profited, I think, O learned one, that even so was Vāsudeva the party to profit by the battle between Karna and Hidimvā's son![8] If Ghatotkachahad slain Karna in battle, that would have been a great gain for the Pāndavas. If, on the other hand, Karna had slain Ghatotkacha, that too would have been a great gain to them in consequence of the loss of Karna's dart! Endued with great wisdom, that lion among men, *viz.*, Vāsudeva, reflecting in this way, and for doing what was agreeable to and good for the Pāndavas, caused Ghatotkacha to be slain by Karna in battle.'[9-10]

"Sanjaya said,—'Knowing the feat that Karna desired to achieve, the slayer of Madhu, the mighty-armed Janārddana, O king, commanded the prince of *Rākshasas, viz.*, Ghatotkacha of mighty energy, to engage in single combat with Karna for rendering, O monarch, the latter's fatal dart fruitless. All this, O king, is the result of thy evil policy![11-12] We would certainly have achieved success, O perpetuater of Kuru's race, if Krishna had not (thus) rescued the mighty car-warrior Pārtha from Karna's hands![13] Indeed, Pārtha would have been destroyed with his steeds, standard, and car, in battle, O Dhritarāshtra, if that master, that lord of *Yogins, viz.*, Janārddana, had not saved him![14] Protected by diverse means, O king, and well aided by Krishna, Pārtha, approaching his foes, vanquishes them![15] Indeed, it was Krishna that rescued Pārtha from that fatal dart, otherwise that weapon would have quickly destroyed the son of Kunti like the lightning destroying a tree!'[16]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'My son is fond of quarrel. His advisers are foolish. He is vain of his wisdom. It is for that, this certain means of Arjuna's death hath been baffled![17] Why, O *Suta*, did not Duryodhana, or that foremost of all wielders, *viz.*, Karna, possessed of great intelligence, hurl that fatal dart at Dhananjaya?[18] Why, O son of Gavalgana, didst thou too forget this great object, since, possessed as thou art of great wisdom, thou didst not remind Karna of it?'[19]

"Sanjaya said,—'Indeed, O king, every night this formed

the suject of deliberation with Duryodhana and Cakuni and myself and Dusçāsana![20] (And we said unto Karna),—Excluding all other warriors, O Karna, slay Dhananjaya! We would then lord it over the Pāndus and the Pānchālas as if these were our slaves![21] Or, if upon Pārtha's fall, he of Vrishni's race appoints another amongst the sons of Pāndu (in his place for carrying on the fight), let Krishna himself be slain![22] Krishna is the root of the Pāndavas, and Pārtha is like their risen trunk! The other sons of Prithā are like their branches, while the Pānchālas may be called their leaves.[23] The Pāndavas have Krishna for their refuge, Krishna for their might, and Krishna for their leader. Indeed, Krishna is their central support even as the Moon is of the constellations.[24] Therefore, O *Suta's* son, avoiding the leaves and branches and trunk, know that Krishna is everywhere and always the root of the Pāndavas![25]—Indeed, if Karna had slain him of Dacārha's race, *viz.*, that delighter of the Yādavas, the whole Earth, O king, would, without doubt, have come under thy control![26] Truly, O monarch, if that illustrious one, that delighter of both the Yādavas and the Pāndavas, could be made to lie down on the Earth, deprived of life, then certainly, O monarch, the entire Earth with her mountains and oceans and forests would have owned thy supremacy![27] We rose every morning, having formed such a resolution in respect of that Lord of the very gods, *viz.*, Hrishikeça of immeasurable energy! At the time of battle, however, we forgot our resolution.[28] Keçava always protects Arjuna the son of Kunti. He never placed Arjuna before the *Suta's* son in battle.[29] Indeed, Achyuta always placed other foremost of car-warriors before Karna, thinking how that fatal dart of ours might be made fruitless by ourselves, O lord![30] When, again, the high-soled Krishna protected Pārtha in this manner from Karna, why, O monarch, would not that foremost of beings protect his own self?[31] Reflecting well, I see that there is no person in the three worlds who is able to vanquish that chastiser of foes, *viz.*, Janārddana, that hero bearing the discus in hand!'[32]

'Sanjaya continued,—"That tiger among car-warriors, *viz.*, Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled, asked the mighty

armed Krishna about the great car-warrior Karna, saying,[33]—O Janārddana, even this had been Karna's firm resolution, *viz.*, that he would hurl that dart of immeasurable energy at Phālguna! Why, however, did not the *Suta's* son actually hurl it then at him?[34]—

"'Vāsudeva said,—Dusçāsana and Karna and Cakuni and the ruler of the Sindhus, with Duryodhana at their head, had frequently debated (on this subject. Addressing Karna, they used to say),[35]—O Karna, O great bowman, O thou of immeasurable prowess in battle, O foremost of all victors, this dart should not be hurled at any one else[36] than that great car-warrior, *viz.*, Kunti's son Pārtha or Dhananjaya! He is the most celebrated amongst them, like Vāsava amongst the gods![37] He being slain, all the other Pāndavas with the Srinjayas will be heartless like fireless celestials![38]*—Karna having assented to this, saying,—So be it,—(the desire of) slaughtering the wielder of *Gāndiva*, O bull amongst the Cinis, was ever present in Karna's heart![39] I, however, O foremost of warriors, always used to stupify the son of Rādhā! It was for this, he did not hurl the dart at Pāndu's son owning white steeds![40] As long as I could not baffle that means of Phālguna's death I had neither sleep, nor joy in my heart, O foremost of warriors![41] Beholding that dart, therefore, rendered futile through Ghatotkacha, O bull amongst the Cinis, I regard Dhananjaya today to have been rescued from within the jaws of Death![42] I do not regard my sire, my mother, yourselves, my brothers, ay, my very life, so worthy of protection as Vibhatsu in battle![43] If there be anything more precious than the sovereignty of the three-worlds, I do not, O Sātwata, desire (to enjoy) it without Prithā's son Dhananjaya (to share it with me)![44] Beholding Dhananjaya, therefore, like one returned from the dead, these transports of delight, O Yuyudhāna, have been mine![45] It was for this that I had despatched the *Rākshasa* unto Karna for battle! None else was capable of withstanding, in the night, Karna in battle![46]—'

---

* Fire being the mouth of the celestials, without fire, the celestials become mouthless. Thus Nilkantha.—T.

"Sanjaya continued,—'Even thus did Devaki's son who is ever devoted to Dhananjaya's good and to what is areeable to him, speak unto Sātyaki on that occasion.' "[47]

SECTION CLXXXIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I see, O sire, that this act of Karna and Duryodhana and Suvala's son Cakuni, and of thyself in especial, hath been very much against the dictates of policy.[1] Indeed, when you knew that that dart could always slay one person in battle, and that it was incapable of being either borne or baffled by the very gods with Vāsava at their head,[2] why then, O Sanjaya, was it not hurled by Karna at Devaki's son, or Phālguna, while he was engaged with these in battle before?'[3]

"Sanjaya said,—'Returning from battle every day, O monarch, all of us, O foremost one of Kuru's race, used to debate in the night and say unto Karna,—O Karna, to-morrow morning, O Karna, this dart should be hurled at either Keçava or Arjuna![4-5]—When, however, the morning came, O king, through destiny, both Karna and the other warriors forgot that resolution.[6] I think destiny to be supreme, since Karna, with that dart in his hands, did not slay in battle either Pārtha or Devaki's son Krishna.[7] Indeed, because his understanding was afflicted by destiny itself, it is for this he did not, stupified by the illusion of the gods, hurl that fatal dart of Vāsava, though he had it in hand, at Devaki's son Krishna for his destruction or at Pārtha endued with prowess like Indra's, O lord![8-9]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Ye are destroyed by desitiny, by your own understandings, and by Keçava! Vāsava's dart is lost, having effected the slaughter of Ghatotkacha who was as insignificant as straw![10] Karna, and my sons, as all the other kings, through this highly impolitic act, have already entered the abode of Yama![11] Tell me now how the battle once more raged between the Kurus and the Pāndavas after the fall of Hidimvā's son.[12] How did they that rushed against Drona, arrayed in order of battle and well-skilled in smiting, *viz.*, the Srinjayas and the Pānchālas, fight?[13] How, indeed, did the Pāndus and Srinjayas withstand the smiting Drona when the

latter, proceeding against them, penetrated into their host, excited with wrath at the slaughter of Bhuriçravas and Jayadratha, reckless of his very life, and resembling a yawning tiger or the Destroyer himself with wide open mouth?[14-15] What also did they do in battle, O sire, *viz.*, Drona's son and Karna and Kripa and others headed by Duryodhana, that protected the preceptor?[16] Tell me, O Sanjaya, how my warriors in that battle covered with their shafts Dhananjaya and Vrikodara who were solicitous of slaying Bharadwāja's son?[16] How, indeed, did these excited with wrath at the death of the ruler of the Sindhus, and those at the death of Ghatotkacha, each side unable to brook their loss, fight that nocturnal battle?'[18]

"Sanjaya said,—'Upon the slaughter, that night, O king, of the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha by Karna, all thy troops, filled with joy, uttered loud shouts.[19] In that dark hour of the night, they fell impetuously upon the Pāndava troops and began to slay them. Seeing all this, king Yudhishthira became exceedingly cheerless.[20] O chastiser of foes, the mighty-armed son of Pāndu then addressed Bhimasena and said,—O thou of mighty arms, resist the Dhārtarāshtra host![21] In consequence of the slaughter of Hidimvā's son, a great stupefaction overwhelms me!—Having ordered Bhimasena thus, he sat down on his own car.[22] With tearful face and sighing repeatedly, the king became exceedingly cheerless at sight of Karna's prowess.[22] Beholding him so afflicted, Krishna said these words:—O son of Kunti, let not such grief be thine! Such cheerlessness does not became thee, O chief of the Bharatas, as it does an ordinary person! Rise, O king, and fight! Bear the heavy burden, O lord![24-25] If cheerlessness overtakes thee, our victory becomes uncertain!—Hearing these words of Krishna, Dharma's son Yudhishthira,[26] wiping his eyes with his hands, replied unto Krishna, saying,—O thou of mighty arms, the excellent path of duty is not unknown to me![27] The dire consequences of a Brāhmana's slaughter are his that forgets the services he receives at other's hands! Whilst we were living in the woods, the high-souled son of Hidimvā,[28] although then a mere child, did us many services, O Janārddana! Learning that Pārtha having white steeds had departed for the acquisi-

tion of weapons,[29] that great bowman, (*viz.*, Ghatotkacha), O Krishna, came to me at Kāmyaka! He dwelt with us till Dhananjaya's reappearance.[30] Whilst proceeding over many inaccessible fastnesses, he himself carried on his back the tired princess of Pānchāla.[31] The feats he achieved, O lord, show that he was skilled in all modes of warfare. Indeed, that high-souled one accomplished many difficult feats for my benefit![32] My affection for Ghatotkacha, that prince of *Rākshasas*, is twice that, O Janārddana, which I naturally bear towards Sahadeva![33] That mighty-armed one was devoted to me! I was dear to him, and he was dear to me! It is for this that, scorched by grief, O thou of Vrishni's race, I have become so cheerless![34] Behold, O thou of Vrishni's race, our troops afflicted and routed by the Kauravas! Behold, those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, Drona and Karna, are contending earnestly in battle![35] Behold the Pāndava host crushed at dead of night, like an extensive forest of heath by a couple of infuriate elephants![36] Disregarding the might of Bhimasena's arms, O Mādhava, as also the variety of weapons that Pārtha bears, the Kauravas are putting forth their prowess?[37] Yonder, Drona and Karna and king Suyodhana, having slain the *Rākshasa* in battle, are uttering loud roars![38] How, O Janārddana, when we are alive and thyself too, could Hidimvā's son be slain while engaged with the *Suta's* son![39] Having caused a great slaughter amongst us, and in the very sight of Savyasāchin, Karna, O Krishna, hath slain Bhimasena's son of great strength, the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha![40] When Abhimanyu was slain by the wicked Dhārtarāshtras, the mighty car-warrior Savyasāchin, O Krishna, was not present in that battle![41] We also were all held in check by the illustrious ruler of the Sindhus. Drona, with his son (Açwatthāman), became the cause of that act.[42] The preceptor himself told Karna the means of Abhimanyu's slaughter. While Abhimanyu was battling with the sword, it was the preceptor himself that cut off that weapon.[43] And while fallen into such distress, Kritavarman most cruelly slew the steeds and the two *Pārshni* drivers (of the boy).[44] Other great bowmen then despatched the son of Subhadrā. For a little offence, O Krishna, was the

ruler of the Sindhus slain by the wielder of *Gāndiva!*[45] O foremost one among the Yādavas, that act did not give me great joy! If the slaughter of foes is just and should be achieved by the Pāndavas,[46] then Drona and Karna should have been slain before this! This is what I think! O bull among men, those two are the root of our woes![47] Obtaining those two (as his allies) in battle, Suyodhana has become confident. Indeed, when it was Drona that should have been slain or the *Suta's* son with his followers,[48] the mighty-armed Dhananjaya slew the Sindhu king whose connection with the affair was very remote! The punishment of the *Suta's* son should certainly be undertaken by me.[49] I shall, therefore, O hero, now fight for slaying the *Suta's* son. The mighty-armed Bhimasena is now engaged with Drona's division.[50]—Having said these words, Yudhishthira quickly proceeded against Karna, bending his formidable bow and blowing his conch fiercely.[51] Then, surrounded by a Pānchāla and Prabhadraka force of a thousand cars, three hundred elephants, and five thousand horse, Cikhandin speedily followed in the wake of the king. Then the mail-clad Pānchālas and the Pāndavas headed by Yudhishthira beat their drums and blew their conchs. At this time Vāsudeva of mighty-arms, addressing Dhananjaya, said,[52-54]—Filled with wrath, yonder proceedeth Yudhishthira with great speed, from desire of slaying the *Suta's* son! It is not proper that thou shouldst rely upon him in this![55]—Having said these words, Hrishikeça quickly urged the steeds. Indeed, Janārddana followed in the wake of the king who was now at a distance.[56] At that time, seeing Dharma's son Yudhishthira, whose mind was afflicted by grief and who seemed to be scorched as if by fire, rush with speed from desire of slaying the *Suta's* son, Vyāsa approached him and said these words.*[57]

"'Vyāsa said—By good luck Phālguna liveth still although he had encountered Karna in battle! Indeed, Karna had kept his dart, desirous of slaying Savyasāchin![58] O bull of Bharata's race, by good luck Jishnu did not engage in single combat with Karna! Each of them in that case, challenging the

* This is a triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

other, would have shot his celestial weapons on all sides.[59] The weapons of the *Suta's* son would have been destroyed by Arjuna. The former then, afflicted by the latter, would certainly have hurled Indra's dart in that battle, O Yudhishthira![60] O foremost one of Bharata's race, (if this had come to pass), then great would have been thy grief! O giver of honors, by good luck the *Rākshasa* hath been slain in battle by the *Suta's* son.[61] Indeed, Ghatotkacha hath been slain by Death himself making the dart of Vāsava an instrument only! For thy good it is, O sire, that the *Rākshasa* hath been slain in battle![62] Do not yield to anger, O foremost one of Bharata's race, and do not set thy heart on grief! O Yudhishthira, even this is the end of all creatures in this world![63] Uniting with thy brothers and all the illustrious kings (of thy host), fight with the Kauravas in battle, O Bhārata![64] On the fifth day from this, the Earth will be thine! O tiger among men, always think of virtue![65] With a cheerful heart, O son of Pāndu, practise kindness (to all creatures), penances, charity, forgiveness, and truth! Victory is there where righteousness is!—Having said these words unto the son of Pāndu, Vyāsa made himself invisible there and then.' "*[66]

SECTION CLXXXV.

(Drona-badha Parva).

Sanjaya said,—Thus addressed by Vyāsa, the heroic king Yudhishthira the just refrained, O bull of Bharata's race, from himself seeking to slay Karna.[1] In consequence, however, of the slaughter of Ghatotkacha by the *Suta's* son that night, the king became filled with grief and anger.[2] Beholding thy vast host held in check by Bhima, Yudhishthira, addressing Dhrishtadyumna, said,—Resist the Pot-born![3] O scorcher of foes, thou hast, clad in mail, and armed with bow and arrows and scimitar, sprung from fire, for the destruction of Drona![4] Cheerfully rush thou to battle, thou needst have no fear! Let also Janamejaya and Cikhandin and Durmukha's son and

---

* 66 is a triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

Yaçodhara,[5] rush in wrath against the Pot-born every side. Let Nakula and Sahadeva and the sons of Draupadi and the Prabhadrakas,[6] and Drupada and Virāta with their sons and brothers, and Sātyaki and the Kaikayas and the Pāndavas and Dhananjaya,[7] all rush with speed against Bharadwāja's son from desire of slaying him! Let also all our car-warriors and all the elephants and horse we have,[8] and all our foot-soldiers, overthrow the mighty car-warrior Drona in battle!—Thus ordered by the illustrious son of Pāndu, all of them[9] rushed impetuously against the Pot-born from desire of slaughtering him. Drona, however, that foremost of all wielders of arms, received in battle all those Pāndava warriors thus rushing towards him suddenly with great force and perseverance. Then king Duryodhana, desiring to protect Drona's life, rushed, filled with wrath, against the Pāndavas, with great force and perseverance. Then commenced the battle between the Kurus and the Pāndavas who roared at each other. The animals of both hosts as also the warriors were all tired. The great car-warriors also, O king, with eyes closing in sleep and worn out with exertion in battle, knew not what to do. That night of nine hours, so terrible and awful,*[10-14] and so destructive of creatures, appeared to them to be everlasting.† While they were being thus slain and mangled by one another,[15] and while sleep sat heavy on their eyes, it became midnight. All the Kshatriyas became cheerless and heartless.[16] Thy troops as also those of the foe had no more weapons and arrows. Passing the time thus, (most of) the warriors (of both armies) endued with modesty and energy[17] and observant of the duties of their order, did not abandon their divisions. Others, blind with sleep, abandoning their weapons, laid themselves down.[18] Some laid themselves down on the backs of elephants, some on cars, and some on horse-back, O Bhārata! Blind with sleep, they.

---

* *Triyāmā*, literally, consisting of three *Yāmas*, a *Yāma* being a watch of three hours. The first hour and a half of the night and the last hour and a half, being regarded as twilight, the night, truly as such, with the ancient Hindoos, consisted of only 9 hours.—T.

† Literally, "of a thousand *Yāmas*."—T.

became perfectly motionless, O king.[19] Other warriors (that were yet awake) in that battle, despatched these to Yama's abode. Others, deprived of their senses and dreaming in sleep, slew themselves, that is, their own comrades, as also their foes, taking all for their foes. Indeed, these fought in that dreadful battle, uttering various exclamations.[20-21] Many warriors, O monarch, of our army, desirous of continuing the fight with the foe, stood with eyes drowsy with sleep.[22] Some brave warriors, during that terrible hour of darkness, though blind with sleep, yet gliding along the field, slew one another in that battle.[23] Many amongst the foe, entirely stupified by slumber, were slain without their being conscious (of the strokes that launched them into eternity).[24] Beholding this condition of the soldiers, O bull among men, Vibhatsu, in a very loud voice, said these words :[25]—All of you, with your animals, are worn out with exertion and blind with sleep! Ye warriors, ye are enveloped in darkness and with dust![26] Therefore, if ye like, ye may rest! Indeed, here, on the field of battle, close your eyes for a while![27] Then when the moon will rise, ye Kurus and Pāndavas, ye may again, having slept and taken rest, encounter each other for the sake of heaven![28]—Hearing these words of the virtuous Arjuna, the virtuous warriors (of the Kuru army) assented to the suggestion, and addressing one another,[29] loudly said,—O Karna, O Karna, O king Duryodhana, abstain from the fight! The Pāndava host hath ceased to strike us![30]—Then at those words of Phālguna, uttered loudly by him, the Pāndava army as also thine, O Bhārata, abstained from battle.[31] Indeed, those noble words of Pārtha were highly applauded by the gods, the high-souled *Rishis*, and all the gladdened soldiers.[32] Applauding those kind words, O Bhārata, all the troops, O king, worn out with exertion, laid themselves down for sleep, O bull of Bharata's race.[33] Then that army of thine, O Bhārata, happy at the prospect of rest and sleep, sincerely blessed Arjuna, saying,[34]—In thee are the *Vedas* as also all weapons! In thee are intelligence and prowess! In thee, O mighty-armed one, are righteousness, and compassion for all creatures, O sinless one![35] And since we have been comforted by thee, we wish thy good, O Pārtha! Let prosperity be to

thee! Soon do thou get, O hero, those objects that are dear to thy heart![36]—Blessing him thus, O tiger among men, those great car-warriors, stupified by sleep, became silent, O monarch![37] Some laid themselves down on horse-back, some on the car-box, some on the necks of elephants, and some on the bare ground.[38] Many men, with their weapons and maces and swords and battle-axes and lances, and with their armour on, laid themselves down for sleep, apart from one another.[39] Elephants, heavy with sleep, made the Earth cool with the breath of their nostrils, that passed through their snake-like trunks spotted with dust.[40] Indeed, the elephants, as they breathed on the ground, looked beautiful like hills scattered (on the field of battle) over whose breasts hissed gigantic snakes.[41] Steeds in trappings of gold and with manes mingling with their yokes, stamping their hoofs, made even grounds uneven.[42] Thus every one, O king, slept there with the animal he rode. Thus steeds and elephants and warriors, O bull of Bharata's race,[43] very much worn out with exertion, slept, abstaining from battle. That slumbering host, deprived of sense and sunk in sleep then looked like a wonderful picture drawn on canvas by skilful artists.[44] Those Kshatriyas decked in ear-rings and endued with youth, with limbs mangled by shafts, and immersed in sleep, having laid themselves down on the coronal globes of elephants, looked as if they were lying on the deep bosoms of beautiful ladies.[45] Then the Moon, that delighter of the eye and lord of lilies, of hue white as the cheeks of a beautiful lady, rose, adorning the direction presided over by Indra.*[46] Indeed, like a lion of the Udaya hills, with rays constituting his manes of brilliant yellow, he issued out of his cave in the east, tearing to pieces the thick gloom of night resembling an extensive herd of elephants.†[47] That lover of

* The Moon is called the lord of lilies because the water lily is seen to bloom at moon-rise, just as the Sun is called the lord of lotuses because the lotus blooms at sun-rise. The direction presided over by Indra means the East.—T.

† *Daça çatāksha-kakup* means the *Kakup* or direction presided by him of a thousand eyes; hence, the East.—T.

all assemblages of lilies (in the world), bright as the body of Mahādeva's excellent bull, full-arched and radiant as Kāma's bow, and delightful and charming as the smile on the lips of the bashful bride, bloomed in the firmament.*[48] Soon, however, that divine lord having the hare for his mark showed himself reddish, shedding brighter rays around.[49] Indeed, the Moon, after this seemed to gradually emit a bright halo of far-reaching light that resembled the splendour of gold.[50] Then the rays of that luminary, dispelling the darkness by their splendour, slowly spread themselves over all the quarters, the welkin, and the Earth.[51] Soon, therefore, the world became illuminated. The unspeakable darkness that had hidden everything quickly fled away.[52] When the world was thus illumined into almost daylight by the Moon, amongst the creatures that wander at night, some continued to roam about and some abstained.[53] That host, O king, awaked by the rays of the Moon, bloomed (into life) like an assemblage of lotuses expanded by the rays of the Sun.[54] Indeed, that sea of troops was awakened by the risen Moon like the ocean swelling up in agitated surges at the rise of that luminary.[55] Then, O king, the battle once more commenced on Earth, for the destruction of the Earth's population, between men that desired to attain to heaven.' "[56]

SECTION CLXXXVI.

'Sanjaya said,—'At this time Duryodhana, under the influence of wrath, approached Drona and addressing him said these words, for inspiring him with joy and provoking his anger.[1]' "

" 'Duryodhana said,—No kindness should have been shown to our foes while they were heartless and worn out with toil and taking rest, expecially when they are all of sure aim![2] Desirous of doing what is agreeable to thee, we showed them kindness by then letting them alone. The tired Pāndavas,

---

* Instead of *Vrishodara*, the Bombay text reads *Vrishottama* which I adopt.—T.

however, (having taken rest) have become stronger.[3] As regards ourselves, we are, in every respect, losing in energy and strength. The Pāndavas, protected by thee, are constantly gaining prosperity.[4] All weapons that are celestial and all those that appertain to *Brahma* exist in thee![5] I tell thee truly, that neither the Pāndavas, nor ourselves, nor any other bowmen in the world, can be a match for thee while thou art engaged in battle![6] O foremost of regenerate ones, thou art acquainted with all weapons! Without doubt, by means of thy celestial weapons thou art capable of destroying the (three) worlds with the gods, the *Asuras*, and the *Gandharvas*![7] The Pāndavas are all afraid of thee! Thou, however, forgivest them, remembering that they were thy pupils, or, perhaps, owing to my ill luck![8]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus rebuked and angered by thy son, Drona, O king, wrathfully addressed Duryodhana and said these words:[9]—Although I am so old, O Duryodhana, I am still exerting in battle to the utmost extent of my might! All these men are unacquainted with weapons. I am, however, well-versed in them. If, from desire of victory, I slay these men, there can be no more ignoble act for me to do. That, however, which is in thy mind, be it good or bad,[10-11] I will accomplish, O Kauravya, at thy command! It will not be otherwise! Putting forth my prowess in battle and slaying all the Pānchālas, I will doff my armour, O king! I swear this to thee truly! Thou thinkest that Arjuna the son of Kunti was worn out in battle?[12-13] O mighty-armed Kaurava! listen to what I truly say regarding his prowess! If Savyasāchin's wrath is excited, neither *Gandharvas*, nor *Yakshas*, nor *Rākshasas*, can venture to bear him. At Khāndava he encountered the divine chief of the celestials himself![14-15] The illustrious Arjuna, with his shafts, baffled the pouring Indra. *Yakshas*, and *Nāgas*, and *Daityas*, and all others, proud of their might,[16] were slain by that foremost of men. That also is known to thee. On the occasion of the tale of cattle, the *Gandharvas* headed by Chitrasena and others were vanquished by him.[17] That firm bowman rescued you while you were being carried away by those *Gandharvas*. The *Nivātakava-*

chas also, those enemies of the celestials,[18] that were unslayable in battle by the celestials themselves, were also vanquished by that hero. Thousands of *Dānavas* dwelling in Hiranyapura,[19] that tiger among men vanquished. How can human beings then withstand him? O monarch, thou hast seen with thy own eyes how this host of thine, although exerting so heroically, hath been destroyed by the son of Pāndu![20]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Unto Drona who was thus applauding Arjuna, thy son, O king, angered thereat, once more said these words:[21]—Myself, and Dusçāsana, and Karna, and my maternal uncle Cakuni, dividing this Bharata host into two divisions, (and taking one with us), shall today slay Arjuna in battle![22]—Hearing these words of his, Bharadwāja's son, laughing, sanctioned that speech of the king and said,—Blessings to thee![23] What Kshatriya is there that would slay that bull amongst Kshatriyas, that unslayable one, *viz.*, the bearer of *Gāndiva*, that hero blazing forth with energy![24] Neither the Lord of treasures, nor Indra, nor Yama, nor the *Asuras*, the *Uragas*, and the *Rākshasas*, can slay Arjuna armed with weapons![25] Only they that are fools say such words as those thou hast said, O Bhārata! Who is there that would return home in safety, having encountered Arjuna in battle?[26] As regards thyself, thou art sinful and cruel and suspicious of everybody! Even them that are employed in thy welfare, thou art ready to rebuke in this way![27] Go thou against the son of Kunti, for withstanding him for thy own sake! Thou art a well-born Kshatriya! Thou seekest battle![28] Why dost thou cause all these unoffending Kshatriyas to be slain? Thou art the root of this hostility! Therefore, go thou against Arjuna![29] This thy maternal uncle is possessed of wisdom and observant of Kshatriya duties! O son of Gāndhāri, let this one addicted to gambling proceed against Arjuna in battle![30] This one, skilled in dice, wedded to deception, addicted to gambling, versed in cunning and imposture,—this gambler conversant with the ways of deceiving,—will vanquish the Pāndavas in battle![31] With Karna in thy company thou hadst often joyfully boasted, from folly and emptiness of understanding, in the hearing of Dhritarāshtra, saying,[32]—*O sire, my-*

self, and Karna, and my brother Dusçāsanā, these three, uniting together, will slay the sons of Pāndu in battle![33]—This thy boast was heard in every meeting of the court. Accomplish thy vow, be truthful in speech, with them![34] There thy mortal foe, the son of Pāndu, is staying before thee! Observe the duties of a Kshatriya! Thy slaughter at the hands of Jaya would be worthy of every praise![35] Thou hast practised charity. Thou hast eaten (everything ever desired by thee). Thou hast obtained wealth to the measure of thy wish! Thou hast no debts. Thou hast done all that one should do. Do not fear. Fight now with the son of Pāndu![36]—Having said these words in that battle, Drona stopped. The (Bharata) army then was divided into two bodies, and the battle commenced.'"[37]

SECTION CLXXXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'When three-fourths of that night had worn away, the battle, O king, once more commenced between the Kurus and the Pāndavas. Both sides were elated with joy.[1] Soon after, Aruna, the charioteer of Surya, weakening the splendour of the Moon, appeared, causing the welkin to assume a coppery hue.[2] The east was soon reddened with the red rays of the Sun that resembled a circular plate of gold.[3] Then all the warriors of the Kuru and the Pāndava hosts, alighting from cars and steeds and vehicles borne by men, stood, with joined hands, facing the Sun, and uttered the prayers of the (first) twilight.[4] The Kuru army having been divided into two bodies, Drona, with Duryodhana before him, proceeded (with one of those divisions) against the Somakas, the Pāndavas, and the Pānchālas.[5] Beholding the Kuru host divided into two bodies, Mādhava addressed Arjuna and said,—Keeping thy foes to thy left, place this division (commanded by Drona) to thy right![6]—Obedient to the counsels of Mādhava in respect of the Kurus, Dhananjaya moved to the left of those two mighty bowmen, *viz.*, Drona, and Karna.[7] Understanding the intentions of Krishna, that subjugator of hostile cities, *viz.*, Bhimasena, addressing Pārtha who was then staying at the van of battle, said these words:[8]—

"'Bhimasena said,—O Arjuna, O Arjuna, O Vibhatsu, listen to these words of mine! The time for that object for which Kshatriya ladies bring forth sons is now come![9] If at such a time thou dost not strive to win prosperity, thou shalt then act meanly, like a veritable wretch![10] Putting forth thy prowess, pay the debt thou owest to Truth, Prosperity, Virtue, and Fame! O foremost of warriors, pierce this division, and keep these to thy right![11]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus urged by Bhima and Keçava, Savyasāchin, prevailing over Drona and Karna, began to resist the foe all around.[12] Many foremost of Kshatriyas (among the Kurus), putting forth all their prowess, failed to withstand Arjuna who advanced at the very van of his troops, and who, like a raging conflagration, was consuming the foremost ones among his foes. Then Duryodhana, and Karna, and Cakuni the son of Suvala,[13-14] covered Kunti's son Dhananjaya with showers of shafts. Baffling the weapons of all those warriors, that foremost of all persons well-skilled in weapons, O monarch, covered them (in return) with his shafts. Aiming at their weapons with his (and thus baffling them all), Arjuna, endued with great lightness of hands and possessing a complete control over his senses,[15-16] pierced every one of those warriors with ten keen-pointed shafts. The welkin was then covered with dust. Thick showers of arrows fell. Darkness set in, and a loud and terrible uproar arose. When such was the state of things, neither the welkin, nor the Earth, nor the points of the compass, could any longer be seen.[17-18] Stupified by the dust, all the troops became blind. Neither the foe, O king, nor we, could distinguish each other.[19] For this reason, the kings began to fight, guided by conjecture and the names they uttered. Deprived of their cars, car-warriors, O king, encountering one another, lost all order and became a tangled mass. Their steeds killed and drivers slain, many of them, becoming inactive, preserved their lives and looked exceedingly afrighted. Slain steeds with riders deprived of life were seen to lie on slain elephants as if stretched on mountain-breasts. Then Drona, moving away from that battle towards the north, took up his station there, and seemed to resemble a smokeless

fire. Beholding him move away from the battle towards the north,[20-24] the Pāndava troops, O king, began to tremble. Indeed, beholding Drona resplendent and handsome and blazing with energy, the enemy, inspired with fright, became pale and wavered on the field, O Bhārata! While summoning the hostile army to battle, and looking like an elephant in rut,[25-26] the enemy became perfectly hopeless of vanquishing him, like the *Dānavas* hopeless of vanquishing Vāsava. Some amongst them became perfectly cheerless, and some, endued with energy, became inspired with wrath.[27] And some were filled with wonder, and some became incapable of brooking (the challenge). And some of the kings squeezed their hands,[28] and some, deprived of their senses by rage, bit their lips. And some whirled their weapons, and some rubbed their arms.[29] And some, possessed of great energy and souls under complete control, rushed against Drona. The Pānchālas particularly, afflicted with the shafts of Drona,[30] O monarch, though suffering great pain, continued to contend in battle.* Then Drupada and Virāta proceeded, in that battle, against Drona,[31] that invincible warrior, who was thus careering on the field. Then, O king, the three grandsons of Drupada,[32] and those mighty bowmen, *viz.*, the Chedis, also proceeded against Drona in that encounter. Drona, with three sharp shafts, took the lives of the three grandsons of Drupada. Deprived of life, the princes fell down on the Earth. Drona next vanquished in that battle the Chedis, the Kaikayas, and the Srinjayas.[33-34] That mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Bharadwāja, then vanquished all the Matsyas. Then Drupada, filled with wrath, and Virāta also, in that battle, shot showers of shafts, O king, at Drona. Baffling that arrowy shower, Drona, that grinder of Kshatriyas,[35-36] covered both Drupada and Virāta with his shafts. Shrouded by Drona, both those warriors, mad with rage, began to pierce him on the field of battle with their arrows. Then Drona, O monarch,

---

* In the first line of 31, the Bengal texts read *Rājānam*, probably referring to Drupada. The correct reading, however, is *Rājendra* in the vocative case, as in the Bombay edition.—T.

filled with wrath and desire of revenge,[37-38] cut off, with a couple of broad-headed shafts, the bows of both his antagonists. Then Virāta, filled with wrath, sped in that encounter ten lances and ten shafts at Drona from desire of slaying him. And Drupada, in anger, hurled at Drona's car a terrible dart made of iron and decked with gold and resembling a large snake. Drona cut off, with a number of sharp and broad-headed arrows, those ten lances (of Virāta),[39-41] and with certain other shafts that dart (of Drupada) decked with gold and stones of *lapis lazuli.* Then that grinder of foes, *viz.*, the son of Bharadwāja, with a couple of well-tempered and broad-headed shafts,[42] despatched both Drupada and Virāta unto the abode of Yama. Upon the fall of Virāta and Drupada, and the slaughter of the Kaikayas,[43] the Chedis, the Matsyas, and the Pānchālas, and upon the fall of those three heroes, *viz.*, the three grandsons of Drupada,[44] the high-souled Dhrishtadyumna, beholding those feats of Drona, became filled with rage and grief, and swore in the midst of all the car-warriors, saying,[45]—Let me lose the merits of all my religious acts, as also my Kshatriya and *Brahma* energy, if Drona escape me today with life, or, if he succeed in vanquishing me![46]*—Having taken that oath in the midst of all the bowmen, that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the prince of the Pānchālas, supported by his own division, advanced against Drona.[47] The Pānchālas then began to strike Drona from one side, and Arjuna from another. Duryodhana, and Karna, and Cakuni the son of Suvala,[48] and the uterine brothers of Duryodhana, (stationed) according to their precedence, began to protect Drona in battle. Drona being thus protected in battle by those illustrious warriors,[49] the Pānchālas, though struggling vigorously, could not even gaze at him. Then Bhimasena, O sire, became highly angry with Dhrishtadyumna, and, O bull among men, that son of Pāndu pierced Dhrishtadyumna with these fierce words:—[50]†

---

* I render this a little too freely. The form of the oath is,—"Let that man lose &c., &c., whom Drona escapes today with life or whom Drona vanquishes today."—

† This, in the Bengal texts, is a triplet.—T.

"'Bhimasena said,—What man is there who being regarded as a Kshatriya and who taking his birth in the race of Drupada and who being the foremost of all persons possessing a knowledge of weapons, would only thus look at his foe stationed before him?[51] What man having seen his sire and son slain, and especially, having sworn such an oath in the midst of the kings, would thus be indifferent to his enemy?[52] Yonder stands Drona like a fire swelling with its own energy! Indeed, with bow and arrows constituting his fuel, he is consuming with his energy all the Kshatriyas![53] Soon will he annihilate the Pāndava army! Stand ye (as spectators) and behold my feat! Against Drona himself will I proceed![54]—Having said these words, Vrikodara, filled with rage, penetrated into Drona's division, and with shafts sped from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch, began to afflict and rout that host.[55] Then the Pānchāla prince Dhrishtadyumna also, penetrating into that large host, engaged with Drona in battle. The battle became furious.[56] Such a fierce encounter we had never seen or heard of before, O king, as that which now took place at sunrise of that day![57] The cars, O sire, were seen to be entangled with one another. The bodies of embodied creatures deprived of life were scattered all over the field.[58] Some, while proceeding towards another part of the field, were, on the way, assailed by others. Some, while flying away, were struck on their backs, and others, on their sides.[59] That general engagement continued to rage fiercely. Soon, however, the morning Sun arose.'"[60]

SECTION CLXXXVIII.

"Sanjaya continued,—'The warriors, O king, thus clad in mail on the field of battle, adored the thousand-rayed Āditya as he rose at morn.[1] When the thousand-rayed luminary, of splendour bright as that of burning gold, arose, and the world became illumined, the battle once more commenced.[2] The same soldiers that were engaged with each other before sunrise, once more fought with each other, O Bhārata, after the rise of the Sun.[3] Horsemen engaged with car-warriors, and elephants

with horsemen, and foot-soldiers with elephants, and horsemen with horsemen, and foot-soldiers with foot-soldiers.[4] And car-warriors engaged with car-warriors, and elephants with elephants, and horsemen with horsemen, O bull of Bharata's race. Sometimes unitedly and sometimes separately, the warriors fell upon one another in battle.[5] Having fought vigorously in the night, many, tired with exertion, and weak with hunger and thirst, became deprived of their senses.[6] The uproar, O bull of Bharata's race, made in consequence of the blare of conchs, the beat of drums, the roar of elephants, and the twang of outstretched bows drawn with force, touched the very heavens, O king! The noise, made also by rushing infantry and falling weapons,[7-8] and neighing steeds and rolling cars, and shouting and roaring warriors, became tremendous.[9] That loud noise, increasing every minute, reached the heavens. The groans and wails of pain, of falling and fallen foot-soldiers and car-warriors and elephants, became exceedingly loud and pitiable as these were heard on the field.[10-11] When the engagement became general, both sides slew each other as also their own men and animals.[12] Hurled from the hands of heroes upon warriors and elephants, heaps of swords were seen on the field, resembling heaps of cloths on the washing ground.[13] The sound, again, of uplifted and descending swords in heroic arms resembled that of cloths thrashed for wash.[14] That general engagement then, in which the warriors encountered one another with swords and scimitars and lances and battle-axes, became exceedingly dreadful.[15] The heroic combatants then caused a river there that ran its course towards the regions of the dead. The blood of elephants and steeds and human beings formed its current. Weapons formed its fish in profusion. It was miry with blood and flesh. Wails of grief and pain formed its roar. Banners and cloths formed its froth.[16-17] Afflicted with shafts and darts, worn with exertion, spent with toil on the (previous) night, and exceedingly weakened, elephants and steeds, with limbs perfectly motionless, stood on the field.[18] With their arms (in beautiful attitudes), and with their beautiful coats of mail, and heads decked with beautiful ear rings, the warriors, adorned with implements of battle, looked exceedingly resplen-

dent.*[19] At that time, in consequence of the carnivorous animals and the dead and the dying, there was no path for the cars all over the field. Afflicted with shafts, steeds of the noblest breeds and high mettle, resembling elephants (in size and strength), worn out with toil, were seen to tremble as, with great efforts, they drew vehicles whose wheels had sunk in the Earth. The whole of that host, O Bhārata, resembling the ocean for vastness, then became agitated, and afflicted, and inspired with terror, with the exception only of Drona and Arjuna. These two became the refuge, these two became the saviours, of the warriors of their respective sides.[20-23] Others, encountering these two, proceeded to the abode of Yama. Then the vast host of the Kurus became greatly agitated, and the Pānchālas, huddled together, became no longer distinguishable. During that great carnage of Kshatriyas on Earth, on that field of battle enhancing the terrors of the timid and looking like a crematorium, neither Karna, nor Drona, nor Arjuna, nor Yudhishthira,[24-26] nor Bhimasena, nor the twins, nor the Pānchāla prince, nor Sātyaki, nor Dusçāsana, nor Drona's son, nor Duryodhana, nor Suvala's son,[27] nor Kripa, nor the ruler of the Madras, nor Kritavarman, nor others, nor my own self, nor the Earth, nor the points of the compass,[28] could be seen, O king, for all of them, mingled with the troops, were shrouded by clouds of dust. During the progress of that fierce and terrible battle, when that dusty cloud arose,[29] all thought that night had once more come over the scene. Neither the Kauravas, nor the Pānchālas, nor the Pāndavas, could be distinguished,[30] nor the points of the compass, nor the welkin, nor the Earth, nor even land, nor uneven land. The warriors, desirous of victory, slew foes and friends, in fact, all whom they could perceive by touch of their hands. The earthy dust that had arisen was soon dispelled by the winds that blew, and drenched by the blood that was shed. Elephants and steeds and car-warriors and foot-soldiers,[31-33] bathed in blood, looked beautiful like the (celestial) forest of *Pārijāta*. Then Duryodhana, Karna, Drona, and Dusçāsana,[34] these four (Kaurava) warriors, engaged in battle with

* I adopt the Bombay reading of the first line of this verse.—T.

four of the Pāndava warriors. Duryodhana and his brothers. encountered the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva).[35] And Rādhā's son engaged with Vrikodara, and Arjuna with the son of Bharadwāja. All the troops, from every side, looked on those terrible encounters.[36] The car-warriors (of both armies quietly) beheld that beautiful battle, that superhuman engagement between those fierce and foremost of car-warriors conversant with every mode of warfare, riding on their own beautiful cars that performed diverse delightful evolutions. Endued with great prowess, struggling vigorously and each solicitous of vanquishing the other,[37-38] they covered each other with showers of shafts like the clouds at the close of summer (pouring torrents of rain). Those bulls among men, riding on their cars of solar effulgence,[39] looked beautiful like congregated masses of clouds in the autumnal sky. Then those warriors, O monarch, filled with wrath and desire of revenge,[40] mighty bowmen all, challenging, rushed at one another with great vigor like infuriate leaders of elephantine herds.[41] Verily, O king, death does not take place till its hour comes, since all those warriors did not simultaneously perish in that battle.*[42] Strewn with lopped off arms and legs, and heads decked with beautiful ear-rings, and bows and arrows and lances and scimitars and battle-axes and (other kinds of) axes, and *Nālikas* and razor-headed arrows and cloth-yard shafts and darts and spears, and diverse kinds of beautiful armour, and beautiful cars broken into pieces, and slain elephants and standardless cars looking like cities, and vehicles dragged hither and thither with the speed of the wind by driverless steeds in great fright, and large numbers of well-decked warriors of great courage, and fallen

---

* 42 is read differently in the Bengal texts. The Bengal reading, however, is incorrect. In the first line, for *tāsmin samāgame*, the Bombay reading which I adopt is *rājannanāgate*. In the second line, instead of *sarvena* (ins. of *sarva*) the correct reading is *sarve na*, the last being the nagative particle. The palatal *n* is a mistake. It is the dental letter, meaning *not*. The sense of the passage is that so dreadful was that encounter that all the warriors would certainly have perished. The fact, however, that none of them still perished was due to the truth that death never appears until its proper hour comes.—T.

fans and coats of mail and standards, and ornaments and robes and fragrant garlands, and chains of gold and diadems and crowns and head-gears and rows of bells, and jewels worn on breasts, and cuirasses and collars and gems that adorn head-gears, the field of battle looked beautiful like the firmament bespangled with stars.[48-49]

"Then there occurred an encounter between Duryodhana filled with wrath and desire of revenge and Nakula filled with the same feelings.[50] Mādri's son cheerfully shooting hundreds of shafts, placed thy son on his right. At this loud cheers were bestowed upon him.[51] Placed on the right by his cousin-brother in wrath, thy son, *viz.*, king Duryodhana, filled with rage, began, in that battle, to wonderfully counteract Nakula from that very side.[52] Thereupon Nakula, endued with great energy and acquainted with the diverse courses (in which a car may be conducted), began to resist thy son who was engaged in counteracting him from his right. Duryodhana, however, afflicting Nakula with showers of shafts and resisting him on every side,[53-54] caused him to turn back. All the troops applauded that feat (of thy son). Then Nakula, addressing thy son, said, —Wait, Wait,—recollecting all his woes caused by thy evil counsels.' "[55]

SECTION CLXXXIX.

"Sanjaya said.—'Then Dusçāsana, filled with wrath, rushed against Sahadeva, causing the Earth to tremble with the fierce speed of his car.[1] Mādri's son, however, that crusher of foes, with a broad-headed arrow, quickly cut off the head, decked with head-gear, of his rushing antagonist's driver.[2] From the celerity with which that act was accomplished by Sahadeva, neither Dusçāsana nor any of the troops knew that the driver's head had been cut off.[3] The reins being no longer held by anybody, the steeds ran at their will. It was then that Dusçāsana knew that his driver had been slain.[4] Conversant with the management of steeds, that foremost of car-warriors, himself restraining his steeds in that battle, fought beautifully and with great activity and skill.[5] That feat of his was ap-

plauded by friends and foes, since, riding on that driverless car, he careered fearlessly in that battle.[6] Then Sahadeva pierced those steeds with keen shafts. Afflicted with those shafts, they quickly ran away, careering hither and thither.[7] For catching hold of the reins, he once laid aside his bow, and then he took up his bow for using it, laying aside the reins.[8] During those opportunities the son of Mādri covered him with arrows. Then Karna, desirous of rescuing thy son, rushed to that spot.[9] Thereupon Vrikodara, with great care, pierced Karna in the chest and arms with three broad-headed shafts sped from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch.[10] Struck with those shafts like a snake with a stick, Karna stopped and began to resist Bhimasena, shooting keen shafts.[11] Thereupon a fierce battle took place between Bhima and Rādhā's son. Both of them roared like bulls, and the eyes of both were expanded (with rage).[12] Excited with wrath, and rushing towards each other. with great speed, they roared at each other. Those two delighters in battle were then very close to each other. So near were they that they could not easily shoot their shafts at each other. Thereupon an encounter with maces happened. Bhimasena speedily broke with his mace the *Kuvara* of Karna's car. That feat of his, O king, seemed highly wonderful. Then the valiant son of Rādhā, taking up a mace, hurled it at Bhima's car. Bhima, however, broke it with a mace of his own. Then taking up a heavy mace once more, Bhima hurled it at Adhiratha's son.[12-16] Karna struck that mace with numerous shafts of beautiful wings sped with great force, and once again with other shafts. Thus struck with Karna's shafts, that mace turned back towards Bhima, like a snake afflicted with incantations. With the re-bound of that mace, the huge standard of Bhima[17-18] broke and fell down. Struck with that same mace, Bhima's driver also became deprived of his senses. Then Bhima, mad with rage, sped eight shafts at Karna,[19] and his standard, and bow, and leathern fence, O Bhārata. The mighty Bhimasena, that slayer of hostile heroes, with the greatest care, O Bhārata, cut off, with those keen shafts, the standard, the bow, and the leathern fence of Karna. The latter then, *viz.*, the son of Rādhā, taking up another invincible and gold-

decked bow, shot a number of shafts, and quickly slew Bhima's steeds of the hue of bears, and then his two *Pārshni* drivers.[20-22] When his car was thus injured, Bhima, that chastiser of foes, quickly jumped into the car of Nakula like a lion jumping down upon a mountain summit.[23]

"Meanwhile Drona and Arjuna, those two foremost of car-warriors, preceptor and pupil, both skilled in weapons, O monarch, fought with each other in battle,[24] stupifying the eyes and minds of men with their lightness in the use of weapons and the sureness of their aim, and with the motions of their cars.[25] Beholding that battle, the like of which had never been witnessed before, between preceptor and pupil, the other warriors abstained from fighting with each other and trembled.[26] Each of those heroes, displaying beautiful evolutions of his car, wished to place the other on his right.[27] The warriors present there beheld their prowess and became filled with wonder. Indeed, that great battle between Drona and the son of Pāndu resembled that, O monarch, between a couple of hawks in the welkin for the sake of a piece of meat. Whatever feats Drona performed for vanquishing the son of Kunti,[28-29] were all counteracted by Arjuna performing similar feats. When Drona failed to gain any ascendancy over the son of Pāndu, the son of Bharadwāja, that warrior acquainted with the course of all weapons, invoked into existence the *Aindra*, the *Paçupata*, the *Tāshtra*, the *Vāyavya*, and the *Yāmya* weapons.[30-31] As soon as those weapons issued from Drona's bow, Dhananjaya destroyed them quickly. When his weapons were thus duly destroyed by Arjuna with his own weapons,[32] Drona shrouded the son of Pāndu with the mightiest of celestial weapons. Every weapon, however, that Drona shot at Pārtha from desire of vanquishing the latter, was shot by Pārtha in return for baffling it. Seeing all his weapons, even the celestial ones, duly baffled by Arjuna, Drona applauded the latter in his heart. That chastiser of foes. O Bhārata, regarded himself superior to every person in the world acquainted with weapons, in consequence of Arjuna having been his pupil. Thus resisted by Pārtha in the midst of all those illustrious warriors,[33-36] Drona, struggling with vigor, cheerfully resisted Arjuna (in

return), wondering all the while. Then the celestials and *Gandharvas* in thousands,[37] and *Rishis* and bodies of *Siddhas*, were seen on all sides in the welkin. Filled with (those as also with) *Apsarās* and *Yakshas* and *Rākshasas*,[38] it once more seemed that the welkin was darkened by gathering clouds. An invisible voice, fraught with the praises of Drona and the high-souled Pārtha, was heard to repeatedly course through the firmament. When in consequence of the weapons shot by Drona and Pārtha all sides seemed ablaze with light,[39-40] the *Siddhas* and the *Rishis* that were present, said,—This is no human, nor *Asura*, nor *Rākshasa*, nor celestial, nor *Gandharva* battle! Without doubt this is a high *Brahma* encounter! This battle is exceedingly beautiful and highly wonderful! We have never seen or heard of its like![41-42] Sometimes the preceptor prevails over the son of Pāndu, and sometimes the son of Pāndu prevails over Drona! No one can find any difference between them![43] If Rudra, dividing his own self into two portions, fights himself with himself, then may an instance be had to match this. No where else can an instance be found to match it![44] Science, gathered in one place, exists in the preceptor. Science and means are in the son of Pāndu! Heroism in one place is in Drona. Heroism and might are in the son of Pāndu.[45] None of these warriors can be withstood by foes in battle. If they wish, both of them can destroy the universe with the gods![46]—Beholding those two bulls among men, O monarch, all invisible and visible creatures said these words.[47] The high-souled Drona then, in that battle, invoked into existence the *Brāhma* weapon, afflicting Pārtha and all invisible beings.[48] Thereupon the Earth with her mountains and waters and trees trembled. Fierce winds began to blow. The seas swelled in agitation.[49] The combatants of the Kuru and the Pāndava armies, as also all other creatures, became inspired with fear, when that illustrious warrior uplifted that weapon.[50] Then Pārtha, O monarch, fearlessly baffled that weapon by a *Brāhma* weapon of his own, at which all that agitation in nature was speedily pacified.[51] At last when none of them could vanquish his antagonist in single combat, a general engagement took place between the two hosts, causing

a great confusion on the field.[52] During the progress of that dreadful battle between Drona and the son of Pāndu (as also of that general engagement), once more, O king, nothing could be distinguished.[53] The welkin became covered with dense showers of shafts as if with masses of clouds, and creatures ranging the air could no longer find a passage through their element.'"[54]

SECTION CXC.

"Sanjaya said,—'During that fearful carnage of men and steeds and elephants, Dusçāsana, O king, encountered Dhrishtadyumna.[1] Mounted upon his golden car and exceedingly afflicted with the shafts of Dusçāsana, the Pānchāla prince wrathfully showered his shafts upon thy son's steeds.[2] Covered with the shafts of Prishata's son, O king, Dusçāsana's car, with standard and driver, soon became invisible.[3] Afflicted with those showers of arrows, Dusçāsana, O monarch, became unable to stay before the illustrious prince of the Pānchālas.[4] Forcing, by means of his shafts, Dusçāsana to turn back, Prishata's son, scattering his arrows, proceeded against Drona in that battle.[5] At that time Hridikā's son Kritavarman, with three of his uterine brothers, appeared on the scene and attempted to oppose Dhrishtadyumna.[6] Those bulls among men, however, *viz.*, the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), following in the wake of Dhrishtadyumna who was thus proceeding like a blazing fire towards Drona, began to protect him.[7] Then all those great car-warriors, endued with might and excited with rage, began to strike one another, making death their goal.[8] Of pure souls and pure conduct, O king, and keeping heaven in view, they fought according to righteous methods, desirous of vanquishing one another.[9] Of stainless lineage and stainless acts, and endued with great intelligence, those rulers of men, keeping heaven in view, fought fair battles with another.[10] There was nothing unfair in that fight and no weapon was used that is regarded unfair. No barbed arrows, nor those called *nālikas*, nor those that are poisoned, nor those with heads made of horns, nor those equipt with many

pointed heads, nor those made of the bones of bulls and elephants, nor those having two heads, nor those having rusty heads, nor those that are not straight-going, were used by any of them.*[11-12] All of them used simple and fair weapons and desired to win both fame and regions of great blessedness by fighting fairly.[13] Between those four warriors of thy army and those three of the Pāndava side, the battle that took place was exceedingly dreadful but divested of everything unfair.[14] Then Dhrishtadyumna, exceedingly quick in the use of weapons, beholding those brave and mighty car-warriors of thy army checked by the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), proceeded towards Drona.[15] Checked by those two lions among men, those four heroic warriors encountered the former like the winds assailing a couple of mountains (standing on their way).[16] Each of the twins—those great car-warriors—was engaged with a couple of antagonists. Meanwhile Dhrishtadyumna poured showers of arrows upon Drona.[17] Beholding the invincible prince of the Pānchālas proceeding against Drona, and those four heroes (of his own army) engaged with the twins, Duryodhana, O monarch, rushed to that spot, scattering showers of blood-drinking arrows. Seeing this, Sātyaki quickly approached the Kuru king.[18-19] Those two tigers among men, *viz.*, the two descendants of Kuru and Madhu, approaching each other, became desirous of striking each other in battle.[20] Recalling to mind their behaviour towards each other in childhood and reflecting with pleasure on the same, they gazed at each other and smiled repeatedly.[21] Then king Duryodhana (mentally) blaming his own conduct, addressed his ever dear friend Sātyaki, and said,[22]—Fie on wrath, O friend, and fie on vindictiveness! Fie on Kshatriya usage, and fie on might and prowess,[23] since thou aimest thy weapons at me and I too am aiming at thee, O bull of Cini's race! In those days thou wert dearer to me than life itself, and I also was such to thee![24] Alas, all those

* All these arrows inflicted bad wounds and could not be easily extracted. Shafts of crooked courses were condemned because the combatants could not easily baffle them, not knowing at whom they would fall.—T.

acts of childhood that I remember, of both thyself and mine, become as nothing on the field of battle![25] Alas, moved by wrath and covetousness, we are here today for fighting with each other, O thou of the Sātwata race!—Unto him who said those words, O king, Sātyaki, conversant with high weapons, taking up some keen arrows, smilingly replied,—This is no assembly, O prince, nor the abode of our preceptor, where in former days we sported, O prince, mingling together!—[26-27] Duryodhana answered,—Where have those sports of our childhood gone, O bull of Cini's race, and, alas, how has this battle now come upon us! It seems that the influence of Time is irresistible![28] (Urged though we are) by desire of wealth, what use, however, have we of wealth that, assembled together, we are now engaged in battle, moved by avarice of wealth!—[29]'

"Sanjaya said,—'Unto king Duryodhana who said so, Sātyaki replied,—This has always been the usage of Kshatriyas, *viz.*, they have to fight even with their preceptors![30] If I am dear to thee, O king, then slay me without any delay! Through thee, O bull of Bharata's race, I would then enter the regions of the righteous![31] Exhibit, without delay, all thy might and prowess! I do not desire to witness this great calamity of friends![32]—Having replied and rejoined thus, Sātyaki, O monarch, fearlessly and in utter disregard of life, quickly advanced against Duryodhana.[33] Beholding him advance, thy son received him. Indeed, O king, thy son poured on him of Cini's race a perfect shower of arrows.[34] Then commenced a terrible battle between those lions of Kuru's and Madhu's races, resembling an encounter between an elephant and a lion.[35] Then Duryodhana, filled with wrath, pierced the invincible Sātyaki with many keen arrows shot from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch.[36] Sātyaki quickly pierced the Kuru prince in return with fifty keen shafts in that battle and once more with twenty and again with ten shafts.[37] Then in that encounter, O king, thy son, smiling the while, pierced Sātyaki in return with thirty arrows shot from his bowstring drawn to his ear.[38] Shooting then a razor-headed arrow, he cut off in twain the bow, with arrow fixed thereon, of Sātyaki. Endued with great lightness of hand, the latter then, taking up a tougher

bow, shot showers of shafts at thy son. As those lines of arrows advanced for compassing the death of Duryodhana,[39-40] the latter, O king, cut them into pieces, at which the troops shouted loudly. With great swiftness, the Kuru king afflicted Sātyaki with three and seventy shafts equipt with wings of gold and steeped in oil and shot from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch. All those arrows of Duryodhana, as also his bow with arrow fixed thereon,[41-42] Sātyaki quickly cut off. The Sātwata hero then poured showers of shafts on his antagonist. Deeply pierced by Sātyaki, and feeling great pain, Duryodhana, O king, in great distress, sought shelter in another car. Having rested awhile and refreshed himself, thy son once more advanced against Sātyaki,[43-44] shooting showers of shafts at the latter's car. Smilingly, O king, Sātyaki ceaselessly shot multitudes of shafts at Duryodhana's car. The shafts of both mingled with one another in the welkin. In consequence of those arrows thus shot by both falling fast on every side,[45-46] loud sounds like those of a raging fire consuming a mighty forest arose there. With those thousands of arrows shot by both, the Earth was densely covered.[47] The welkin also became filled therewith. Beholding then that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, that hero of Madhu's race, to be mightier than Duryodhana,[48] Karna rushed to that spot, desirous of rescuing thy son. The mighty Bhimasena, however, could not brook that attempt of Karna[49]. He, therefore, quickly proceeded against Karna, shooting innumerable shafts. Cutting off all those shafts of Bhima with the greatest ease, Karna[50] cut off Bhima's bow, arrows, and driver also, with his own shafts. Then Pāndu's son Bhima, filled with rage, took up a mace,[51] and crushed the bow, standard, and driver of his antagonist in that encounter. The mighty Bhima also broke one of the wheels of Karna's car.[52] Karna, however, stood on that car of his which had one of its wheels broken, immovable as (Meru) the king of mountains. That beautiful car of his which had now only one wheel, was borne by his steeds,[53] like the single-wheeled car of Surya drawn by the seven celestial steeds. Incapable of brooking the feats of Bhimasena, Karna, continued to fight with the latter,[54] using diverse kinds

of shafts in profusion and diverse kinds of other weapons in that encounter. Bhimasena also, filled with wrath, continued to fight with the *Suta's* son.[55] When the engagement became general and confused, (Yudhishthira) the son of Dharma, addressing all the foremost of warriors among the Pānchālas and the Matsyas, said,[56]—They that are our life, they that are our heads, they amongst us that are endued with great strength, —those bulls among men,—are all engaged with the Dhārtarāshtras![57] Why do ye then stand thus as if stipified and deprived of your senses? Proceed thither where those car-warriors of my army are fighting![58] Driving away your fears and keeping in view the duties of Kshatriyas, (engage in fight,) for then, conquering or slain, ye will gain desirable goals![59] If you prove victors, you may perform diverse sacrifices with profuse gifts to Brāhmanas! If, on the other hand, you are slain, becoming then the equals of the celestials, you will win many regions of blessedness![60]—Thus urged by the king, those heroic and mighty car-warriors engaged in battle, observant of Kshatriya duties, quickly proceeded against Drona.[61] The Pānchālas then, from one side, assailed Drona with innumerable arrows, while others headed by Bhimasena began to resist him from another side.[62] The Pāndavas had three crooked-minded mighty car-warriors amongst them. They were Bhimasena and the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva). These addressed Dhananjaya loudly and said,[63]—Rush, O Arjuna, with speed and drive away the Kurus from Drona's vicinity! If the preceptor can be deprived of his protectors, the Pānchālas may then slay him easily![64]—Thus addressed, Pārtha suddenly rushed against the Kauravas, while Drona rushed against the Pānchālas headed by Dhrishtadyumna. Indeed, on that the fifth day (of Drona's command), those heroic combatants, O Bhārata, were grinded and crushed with great celerity (by Bharadwāja's son)."[65]

SECTION CXCI.

"Sanjaya said,—Then Drona caused a great carnage among the Pānchālas like the slaughter caused by Cakra himself in

'rage amongst the *Dānavas* in days of yore.[1] The great car-warriors of the Pāndava army, endued with mighty and energy, though slaughtered, O king, by Drona's weapons, were not yet afeared of Drona in that battle.[2] Indeed, O monarch, those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the Pānchālas and the Srinjayas, all rushed against Drona himself for fighting with him.[3] Loud and fierce were the yells they uttered as they rushed towards Drona for encompassing him on all sides and were slaughtered by him with shafts and darts.[4] Beholding the slaughter of the Pānchālas in that battle by the illustrious Drona, and seeing his weapons overwhelm all sides, fear entered the hearts of the Pāndavas.[5] Beholding that dreadful carnage of steeds and human beings in that battle, the Pāndavas, O monarch, became hopeless of victory.[6] (They began to say unto each other)—Is it not evident that Drona, that warrior conversant with the mightiest of weapons, will consume us all like a raging conflagration consuming a heap of straw in the season of spring?[7] There is none competent to even look at him in battle! Conversant with the ways of morality, Arjuna (who alone is a match for him) will not fight with him![8]—Beholding the sons of Kunti afflicted with the shafts of Drona and inspired with fear, Keçava, endued with great intelligence and devoted to their welfare, addressed Arjuna and said,[9]—This foremost of all bowmen is incapable of being ever vanquished by force in battle by the very gods with Vāsava at their head![10] When, however, he lays aside his weapons, he becomes capable of being slain on the field by even human beings! Casting aside virtue, ye sons of Pāndu, adopt now some contrivance for gaining the victory,[11] so that Drona of the golden car may not slay us all in battle! Upon the fall of (his son) Açwatthāman, he will cease to fight, I think.[12] Let some man, therefore, tell him that Açwatthāman hath been slain in battle!—This advice, however, O king, was not approved by Kunti's son Dhananjaya.[13] Others approved of it. But Yudhishthria accepted it with great difficulty. Then the mighty-armed Bhima, O king, slew with a mace a foe-crushing, terrible, and huge elephant, named Açwatthāman, of his own army, belonging to Indravarman the chief of the Mālavas.[14-15] Approaching Drona then

in that battle, with some bashfulness Bhimasena began to exclaim aloud,—Açwatthāman hath been slain![16]—That elephant named Açwatthāman having been thus slain, Bhima spoke of Açwatthāman's slaughter. Keeping the true fact within his mind, he said what was untrue.[17] Hearing those highly disagreeable words of Bhima, and reflecting upon them, Drona's limbs seemed to dissolve like sand in water.[18] Recollecting, however, the prowess of his son, he soon came to regard that intelligence as false. Hearing, therefore, of his slaughter, Drona did not become unmanned.[19] Indeed, soon recovering his senses, he became comforted, remembering that his son was incapable of being resisted by foes.[20] Rushing towards the son of Prishata and desirous of slaying that hero who had been ordained as his slayer, he covered him with a thousand keen shafts equipt with *kanka* feathers.[21] Then twenty thousand Pānchāla car-warriors of great energy covered him, while he was thus careering in battle, with their shafts.[22] Completely shrouded with those shafts, we could not any longer see that great car-warrior who then resembled, O monarch, the Sun covered with clouds in the season of rains.[23] Filled with wrath and desirous of compassing the destruction of those brave Pānchālas, that mighty car-warrior, that scorcher of foes, *viz.*, Drona, dispelling all those shafts of the Pānchālas, then invoked into existence the *Brāhma* weapon. At that time Drona looked resplendent like a smokeless and blazing fire.[24-25] Once more filled with rage, the valiant son of Bharadwāja, slaughtering all the Somakas, seemed to be invested with great splendour.[26] In that dreadful battle he felled the heads of the Pānchālas and cut off their massive arms looking like spiked maces and decked with golden ornaments.[27] Indeed, those Kshatriyas, slaughtered in battle by Bharadwāja's son, fell down on the Earth and lay scattered like trees uprooted by the tempest.[28] In consequence of fallen elephants and steeds, O Bhārata, the Earth, miry with flesh and blood, became impassable.[29] Having slain twenty thousand Pānchāla car-warriors, Drona, in that battle, shone resplendent like a smokeless and blazing fire.[30] Once more filled with rage, the valiant son of Bharadwāja cut off, with a broad-headed

arrow, the head of Vasudāna from his trunk.[31] Once more slaying five hundred Matsyas, and six thousand elephants, he slew ten thousand steeds.[32] Beholding Drona stationed on the field for the extermination of the Kshatriya race, the *Rishis* Viçwāmitra, and Jamadagni, and Bharadwāja, and Gautama, and Vaçishtha, and Kaçyapa, and Atri, and the *Sikatas*, the *Priçnis*, Garga, the *Vālikhilyas*, the *Marichipas*, the descendants of Bhrigu and Angiras, and diverse other sages of subtile forms, quickly came thither with the Bearer of sacrificial libations at their head, and, desirous of taking Drona away unto the region of Brahman,[33-36] addressed Drona, that ornament of battle, and said,—Thou art fighting unrighteously. The hour of thy death is come.[36] Laying aside thy weapons in battle, O Drona, behold us stationed here! After this, it behoveth thee not to perpetrate such exceedingly cruel deeds![37] Thou art versed in the *Vedas* and their branches. Thou art devoted to the duties enjoined by truth. Especially, thou art a Brāhmana! Such acts do not become thee![38] Lay aside thy weapons. Drive away the film of error that shrouds thee. Adhere now to the eternal path. The period for which thou art to dwell in the world of men is now full.[39] Thou hast, with the *Brāhma* weapon, burnt men on Earth that are unacquainted with weapons. This act that thou hast perpetrated, O regenerate one, is not righteous![40] Lay aside thy weapons in battle without delay, O Drona! Do not wait longer on Earth! Dot not, O regenerate one, again perpetrate such a sinful act![41]—Hearing these words of theirs as also those spoken by Bhimasena, and beholding Dhrishtadyumna before him, Drona became exceedingly cheerless in battle.[42] Burning with grief and exceedingly afflicted, he enquired of Kunti's son Yudhishthira as to whether his son (Açwatthāman) had been slain or not.[43] Drona firmly believed that Yudhishthira would never speak an untruth even for the sake of the sovereignty of the three worlds.[44] For this reason that bull among Brāhmanas asked Yudhishthira and not any body else. He had hoped for truth from Yudhishthira from the latter's infancy.[45]

"'Meanwhile, O monarch, Govinda, knowing that Drona, that foremost of warriors, was capable of sweeping all the

Pāndavas off the face of the Earth, became much distressed. Addressing Yudhishthira he said,[46]—If Drona fighteth, filled with rage, for even half a day, I tell thee truly, thy army will then be annihilated![47] Save us then from Drona! Under such circumstances, falsehood is better than truth! By telling an untruth for saving a life one is not touched by sin.[48] There is no sin in untruth spoken unto women, or in marriages, or for saving kine, or for rescuing a Brāhmana.*[49]—While Govinda and Yudhishthira were thus talking with each other, Bhimasena (addressing the king) said,—As soon, O monarch, as I heard of the means by which the high-souled Drona might be slain,[50] putting forth my prowess in battle I immediately slew a mighty elephant, like unto the elephant of Cakra himself, belonging to Indravarman, the chief of the Mālavas, who was standing within thy army. I then went to Drona and told him,—Açwatthāman has been slain, O Brāhmana! Cease then to fight![51-52]—Verily, O bull among men, the preceptor did not believe in the truth of my words. Desirous of victory as thou art, accept the advice of Govinda![53] Tell Drona, O king, that the son of Caradwat's daughter is no more! Told by thee, that bull among Brāhmanas will never fight![54] Thou, O ruler of men, art reputed to be truthful in the three worlds.—Hearing those words of Bhima and induced by the counsels of Krishna,[55] and owing also to the inevitability of destiny, O monarch, Yudhishthira made up his mind to say what he was desired. Fearing to utter an untruth, but earnestly desirous of victory, Yudhishthira[56] distinctly said that Açwatthāman was dead, adding indistinctly the word *elephant* (after the name). Before this, Yudhishthira's car had stayed at a height of four fingers' breadth from the surface of the Earth.[57] After, however, he had said that untruth, his (vehicle and) animals touched the Earth. Hearing those words from Yudhishthira, the mighty car-warrior Drona,[58] afflicted with grief for the (supposed) death of his son, yielded to the influence of despair. At the words again of the *Rishis*, he regarded himself

---

* This verse is omitted in the Bombay text. There can be no doubt, however, about its genuineness.—T.

a great offender against the high-souled Pāndavas. Hearing now about the death of his son, he became perfectly cheerless; and filled with anxiety upon beholding Dhrishtadyumna, O king, that chastiser of foes could not fight as before.' "[59-60]

SECTION CXCII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Drona filled with great anxiety and almost deprived of his senses by grief, Dhrishtadyumna, the son of the Pānchāla king, rushed at him.[1] That hero had, for the destruction of Drona, been obtained by Drupada, that ruler of men, at a great sacrifice, from the bearer of sacrificial libations.[2] Desirous of slaying Drona, he now took up a victory-giving and formidable bow whose twang resembled the roll of the clouds, whose string was possessed of great strength, and which was irrefragible and celestial. And he fixed on it a fierce arrow resembling a snake of virulent poison and possessed of the splendour of fire. That arrow, resembling a fire of fierce flames, while within the circle of his bow, looked like the autumnal Sun of great splendour within a radiant circle.[3-5] Beholding that blazing bow bent with force by Prishata's son, the troops regarded that to be the last hour (of the world).[6] Seeing that arrow aimed at him, the valiant son of Bharadwāja thought that the last hour of his body had come.[7] The preceptor prepared with care to baffle that shaft. The weapons, however, of that high-souled one, O monarch, no longer appeared at his bidding.*[8] His weapons had not been exhausted although he had shot them ceaselessly for four days and one night. On the expiry, however, of the third part of that the fifth day, his arrows became exhausted.[9] Seeing the exhaustion of his arrows, and afflicted with grief on account of his son's death, and in consequence also of the unwillingness of the celestial weapons to appear at his bidding,[10] he desired to lay

---

* The celestial weapons were all living agents that appeared at the bidding of him who knew how to invoke them. They abandoned, however, the person whose death was imminent, although invoked with the usual formulæ.—T.

aside his weapons, urged thereto by the words of the *Rishis* also. Though filled with great energy, he could not, however, fight as before.[11] Then taking up another celestial bow that Angiras had given him, and certain arrows that resembled a Brāhmana's curse, he continued to fight with Dhrishtadyumna.[12] He covered the Pānchāla prince with a thick shower of arrows, and filled with rage, mangled his angry antagonist.[13] With his own keen shafts he cut off into a hundred fragments those of the prince as also the latter's standard and bow. He then felled his antagonist's driver.[14] Then Dhrishtadyumna, smiling, took up another bow, and pierced Drona with a keen shaft in the centre of the chest.[15] Deeply pierced therewith and losing his self-possession in that encounter, that mighty bowman then, with a sharp and broad-headed arrow, once more cut off Dhrishtadyumna's bow.[16] Indeed, the invincible Drona then cut off all the weapons, O king, and all the bows that his antagonist had, with the exception only of his mace and sword.[17] Filled with rage, he then pierced the angry Dhrishtadyumna, O chastiser of foes, with nine keen arrows capable of taking the life of every foe.[18] Then the mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna of immeasurable soul, invoking into existence the *Brāhma* weapon, caused the steeds of his own car to be mingled with those of his foe's.[19] Endued with the speed of the wind, those steeds that were red and of the hue of pigeons, O bull of Bharata's race, thus mingled together, looked exceedingly beautiful.[20] Indeed, O king, those steeds thus mingled together on the field of battle, looked beautiful like roaring clouds in the season of rains, charged with lightning.[21] Then that twice-born one of immeasurable soul cut off the shaft-joints, the wheel-joints, and (other) car-joints of Dhrishtadyumna.[22] Deprived of his bow, and made earless and steedless and driverless, the heroic Dhrishtadyumna, fallen into great distress, grasped a mace.[23] Filled with rage, the mighty car-warrior Drona of unbaffled prowess, by means of a number of keen shafts, cut off that mace while it was on the point of being hurled at him.[24] Beholding his mace cut off by Drona with his arrows, that tiger among men, (*viz.*, the Pānchāla prince), took up a spotless sword and a bright shield decked with

a hundred moons.[25] Without doubt, under those circumstances, the Pānchāla prince determined to make an end of that foremost of preceptors, that high-souled warrior.[26] Sometimes sheltering himself in his car-box and sometimes riding on his car-shaft, the prince moved about, uplifting his sword and whirling his bright shield.[27] The mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna, desirous of achieving, from folly, a difficult feat, hoped to pierce the chest of Bhardwāja's son in that battle.[28] Sometimes he stayed upon the yoke, and sometimes under the haunches of Drona's red steeds. These movements of his were highly applauded by all the troops.[29] Indeed, while he stayed amid the trappings of the yoke or behind those red steeds, Drona found no opportunity to strike him. All this seemed exceedingly wonderful.[30] The movements of both Drona and Prishata's son in that battle resembled those of a hawk careering through the welkin for a piece of meat.[31] Then Drona, by means of a dart, pierced the white steeds of his antagonist, one after another, not striking, however, the red ones amongst them (that belonged to himself).*[32] Deprived of life, those steeds of Dhrishtadyumna fell down upon the Earth. Thereupon the red steeds of Drona himself, O king, were freed from the entanglements of Dhristadyumna's car.[33] Beholding his steeds slain by that foremost of Brāhmanas, Prishata's son, that mighty car-warrior, that foremost of fighters, could not brook it.[34] Though deprived of his car, still that foremost of all swordsmen, armed with his sword, sprang towards Drona, O monarch, like Vinatā's son (Garuda) making a swoop at a snake.[35] The form, O king, of Dhrishtadyumna at that time when he sought to slay the son of Bharadwāja resembled the form of Vishnu himself in days of yore when at the point of slaying Hiranyakaçipu.[36] He performed diverse evolutions. In fact, O Kauravya, the son of Prishata, careering in that battle, exhibited the well-known one and twenty different kinds of motion.[37] Armed with the sword, and shield in hand, Prishata's son wheeled about, and whirled his sword on high,

* I adopt the Bombay reading.—T.

and made side thrusts, and rushed forward, and ran sideways, and leapt high, and assailed the flanks of his antagonists and receded backwards, and closed with his foes, and pressed them hard. Having practised them well, he also showed the evolutions called *Bhārata*, *Kauçika*, and *Sātwata*, as he careered in that battle for compassing the destruction of Drona. Beholding those beautiful evolutions of Dhrishtadyumna as he careered on the field, sword and shield in hand,[38-40] all the warriors, as also the celestials assembled there, were filled with wonder. The regenerate Drona then, shooting a thousand arrows in the thick of fight, cut off the sword of Dhrishtadyumna as also his shield decked with a hundred moons. Those arrows that Drona shot, while fighting from such a near point, were of the length of a span.[41-42] Such arrows are used only in close fight. None else have arrows of that kind, except Caradwat's son (Kripa), and Pārtha, and Açwatthāman and Karna.[43] Praddyumna and Yuyudhāna have, and Abhimanyu also had, such arrows. Then the preceptor, desirous of slaying his disciple who was unto him even as his own son, fixed on his bowstring a strong shaft endued with great impetuosity. That shaft, however, Sātyaki cut off by means of ten arrows,[44-45] in the very sight of thy son as also of the high-souled Karna, and thus rescued Dhrishtadyumna who was on the point of succumbing to Drona.[46] Then Keçava and Dhananjaya beheld Sātyaki of prowess incapable of being baffled, who, O Bhārata, was thus careering in the car-tracks (of the Kuru warriors) and within the range of the shafts of Drona and Karna and Kripa. Saying,—*Excellent, Excellent!*—both of them loudly applauded Sātyaki of unfading glory, who was thus destroying the celestial weapons of all those warriors. Then Keçava and Dhananjaya rushed towards the Kurus.[47-49] Addressing Krishna, Dhananjaya said,—Behold, O Keçava, that perpetuator of Madhhu's race, *viz.*, Sātyaki of true prowess, sporting before the preceptor and those mighty car-warriors, and gladdening me and the twins and Bhima and king Yudhishthira![50-51] With skill acquired by practice and without insolence, behold that enhancer of the fame of the Vrishnis, *viz.*, Sātyaki, careering in battle, sporting the while with those mighty car-warriors![52]

All these troops, as also the *Siddhas* (in the welkin), beholding him invincible in battle, are filled with wonder, and applauding him, saying,—*Excellent, Excellent !*—Indeed, O king, the warriors of both armies all applauded the Sātwata hero, in consequence of his feats.' "[53]

SECTION CXCIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding those feats of the Sātwata hero, Duryodhana and others, filled with rage, quickly encompassed the grandson of Cini on all sides.[1] Kripa and Karna, as also thy sons, O sire, in that battle, quickly approaching the grandson of Cini, began to strike him with keen arrows.[2] Then king Yudhishthira, and the two other Pāndavas, *viz.*, the two sons of Mādri, and Bhimasena of great might, surrounded Sātyaki (for protecting him).[3] Karna, and the mighty car-warrior Kripa, and Duryodhana and others, all resisted Sātyaki, pouring showers of arrows on him.[4] The grandson of Cini, however, contending with all those great car-warriors, baffled, O monarch, that terrible downpour of arrows so suddenly created by his foes.[5] Indeed, in that dreadful battle, Sātyaki, by means of his own celestial weapons, duly resisted all those celestial weapons aimed at him by those illustrious warriors.[6] The field of battle became full of many cruel sights upon that encounter of those royal combatants, resembling that scene of yore when Rudra, filled with rage, had destroyed all creatures.[7] Human arms and heads, and bows, O Bhārata, and umbrellas displaced (from cars), and yak-tails,[8] were seen lying in heaps on the field of battle. The Earth became thickly strewn with broken wheels and cars, and massive arms lopped off from trunks, and brave horsemen deprived of life. And, O foremost one among the Kurus, large numbers of warriors, mangled with falling arrows,[9-10] were seen in that great battle to roll and writhe on the ground in agony or the last spasms of death. During the progess of that terrible battle resembling the encounter in days of old between the celestials and the *Asuras*,[11] king Yudhishthira the just, addressing his warriors, said,—Putting forth all your vigor, rush, ye great car-warriors,

against the Pot-born![12] Yonder the heroic son of Prishata is engaged with Drona! He is endeavouring, to the utmost of his might, to slay the son of Bharadwāja![13] Judging from the aspect he is presenting in this great battle, it is evident that filled, with rage, he will today, overthrow Drona![14] Uniting together, all of you fight with the Pot-born!—Thus ordered by Yudhishthira, the mighty car-warriors of the Srinjayas[15] all rushed with great vigor for slaying the son of Bharadwāja. That mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Bharadwāja's son, quickly rushed against those advancing warriors, knowing for certain that he would have to die. When Drona of sure aim thus proceeded, the Earth trembled violently.[16-17] Fierce winds began to blow, inspiring the (hostile) ranks with fear. Large meteors fell, seemingly issuing out of the Sun,[18] blazing fiercely as they fell and foreboding great terrors. The weapons of Drona, O sire, seemed to blaze up.[19] Cars seemed to produce loud rattles, and steeds to shed tears. The mighty car-warrior Drona seemed to be divested of his energies.[20] His left eye and left hand began to twitch. Beholding Prishata's son again before him, and bearing in mind the words of the *Rishis* about his leaving the world for heaven, he became cheerless. He then desired to give up life by fighting fairly.[21-22] Encompassed on all sides by the troops of Drupada's son, Drona began to career in battle, consuming large numbers of Kshatriyas.[23] That grinder of foes, having slain four and twenty thousand Kshatriyas, then despatched to Yama's abode ten times ten thousand by means of his shafts of keen points.[24] Exerting himself with care, he seemed to stand in that battle like a smokeless fire. For the extermination of the Kshatriya race, he then had recourse to the *Brāhma* weapon.[25] The mighty Bhima then, beholding the illustrious and irresistible prince of the Pānchālas carless and weaponless, quickly proceeded towards him.[26] Beholding him striking at Drona from a near point, that grinder of foes took up Dhrishtadyumna on his own car, and said unto him,[27]—Save thee there is no other man that can venture to fight with the preceptor. Be quick in slaying him. The burden of his slaughter rests upon thee![28]—Thus addressed by Bhima, the

mighty-armed Dhrishtadyumna speedily took up a strong, new, and very superior bow capable of bearing a great strain.[29] Filled with rage, and shooting his arrows in that battle at irressistible Drona, Dhrishtadyumna covered the preceptor, desirous of withstanding him.[30] Those two ornaments of battle then, both foremost of fighters and both filled with rage, invoked into existence the *Brāhma* and diverse other celestial weapons.[31] Indeed, O king, Dhrishtadyumna covered Drona with many mighty weapons in that encounter. Destroying all the weapons of Bharadwāj's son, the Pānchāla prince,[32] that warrior of unfading glory, began to slay the Vaçātis, the Civis, the Vālhikas, and the Kurus, them, that is, who protected Drona in that battle.[33] Indeed, O king, shooting showers of arrows on all sides, Dhrishtadyumna at that time looked resplendent like the Sun himself shedding his thousands of rays.[34] Drona, however, once more cut off the prince's bow and pierced the vitals of the prince himself with many arrows. Thus pierced, the prince felt great pain.[35] Then Bhima of great wrath, holding the car of Drona, O monarch, slowly said these words unto him,[36]—If wretches amongst Brāhmanas discontented with the avocations of their own order, but well versed in arms, did not fight, the Kshatriya order then would not have been thus exterminated![37] Abstention from injury to all creatures hath been said to be the highest of all virtues. The Brāhmana is the root of that virtue. As regards thyself again, thou art the foremost of all persons acquainted with *Brahma*.[38] Slaying all these *Mlecchas* and other warriors, who, however, are all engaged in the proper avocations of their order, moved thereto by ignorance and folly, O Brāhmana, and by the desire of wealth for benefiting sons and wives, indeed, for the sake of an only son, why dost thou not feel shame?[39-40] He for whom thou hast taken up weapons, and for whom thou livest, he, deprived of life, lieth today on the field of battle, unknown to thee and behind thy back![41] King Yudhishthira the just hath told thee this. It behoveth thee not to doubt this fact!—Thus addressed by Bhima, Drona laid aside his bow.[42] Desirous of laying aside all his weapons also, Bharadwāja's son of virtuous soul said aloud,—O Karna, O

Karna, O great bowman, O Kripa, O Duryodhana,[43] I tell you repeatedly, exert carefully in battle! Let no injury happen to you from the Pāndavas! As regards myself, I lay aside my weapons![44]—Saying these words, he began to loudly take the name of Açwatthāman. Laying aside his weapons then in that battle, and sitting down on the terrace of his car,[45] he devoted himself to *Yoga* and assured all creatures, dispelling their fears. Beholding that opportunity, Dhrishtadyumna mustered all his energy.[46] Laying down on his car his formidable bow with arrow fixed on the bowstring, he took up a sword, and jumping down from his vehicle, rushed quickly against Drona.[47] All creatures, human and otherwise, uttered exclamations of woe, beholding Drona thus brought under Dhrishtadyumna's power.[48] Loud cries of *oh* and *alas* were uttered, as also those of *oh* and *fie*. As regards Drona, abandoning his weapons he was then in a supremely tranquil state.[49] Having said those words he had devoted himself to *Yoga*. Endued with great effulgence and possessed of high ascetic merit, he had fixed his heart on that Supreme and Ancient Being, *viz.*, Vishnu.[50] Bending his face slightly down, and swelling his breast forward, and closing his eyes, and staying on the quality of Goodness, and disposing his heart to contemplation,[51] and thinking on the monosyllabic *Om* representing *Brahma*, and remembering the puissant, supreme, and indestructible God of gods, the radiant Drona of high ascetic merit,[52] the preceptor (of the Kurus and the Pāndavas), repaired to heaven that is so difficult of being attained by even the pious. Indeed, when Drona thus proceeded to heaven, it seemed to us that there were then two Suns in the firmament[53]. The whole welkin was ablaze and seemed to be one vast expanse of equable light when the Sun-like Bharadwāja of solar effulgence ascended to the skies.[54] Within the twinkling of an eye, however, that effulgence disappeared. Confused sounds of joy were heard, uttered by the gladdened celestials,[55] when Drona thus repaired to the region of Brahman, Dhrishtadyumna standing, unconscious of it all, beside him. Only we five amongst men, beheld[56] the high-souled Drona rapt in *Yoga* proceed to the highest region of blessedness. These five were myself, Dhananjaya

the son of Prithā, and Drona's son Açwatthāman,[57] and Vāsudeva of Vrishni's race, and king Yudhishthira the just, the son of Pāndu. All else, O king, could not see that glory of the wise Drona devoted to *Yoga* while passing out of the world. In fact, all human beings were unconscious of the fact that the preceptor attained to the supreme region of *Brahma*, a region mysterious to the very gods, and one that is the highest of all. Indeed, none of them could see the preceptor, that chastiser of foes, proceed to the region of *Brahma*, devoted to *Yoga*, in the company of the foremost of *Rishis*, his body mangled with arrows and bathed in blood, after he had laid aside his weapons.[58-61] As regards Prishata's son, though everybody cried *fie* on him, yet, casting his eyes on the lifeless Drona's head, he began to drag it.[62] With his sword then, he lopped off from his foe's trunk that head, his foe remaining speechless the while. Having slain Bharadwāja's son, Dhrishtadyumna was filled with great joy,[63] and uttered leonine shouts, whirling his sword. Of a dark complexion, with white locks hanging down to his ears, that old man of five and eighty years of age, used, for thy sake only, to career on the field of battle with the activity of a youth of sixteen. The mighty-armed Dhananjaya the son of Kunti (before Drona's head was cut off) had said,[64-65]—O son of Drupada, bring the preceptor alive, do not slay him !—He should not be slain !—even thus all the troops also[66] had cried out. Arjuna, in particular, melted with pity, had cried out repeatedly. Disregarding, however, the cries of Arjuna as also those of all the kings,[67] Dhrishtadyumna slew Drona, that bull among men, on the terrace of his car. Covered with Drona's blood, Dhrishtadyumna then jumped from the car down upon the ground.[68] Looking red like the Sun, he then seemed to be exceedingly fierce. The troops beheld Drona slain even thus in that battle.[69] Then Dhrishtadyumna, that great bowman, O king, threw down that large head of Bharadwāja's son before the warriors of thy army.[70] Thy soldiers, O monarch, beholding the head of Bharadwāja's son, set their hearts on flight and ran away in all directions.[71] Meanwhile Drona, ascending the skies, entered the stellar path. Through the grace of the *Rishi* Krishna (-Dwaipāyana)

the son of Satyavati, I witnessed, O king, the (true circumstances about the) death of Drona. I beheld that illustrious one proceeding, after he had ascended the sky, like a smokeless brand of blazing splendour. Upon the fall of Drona, the Kurus, the Pāndavas, and the Srinjayas, all became cheerless[72-74] and ran away with great speed. The army then broke up. Many had been slain, and many wounded, by means of keen shafts.[75] Thy warriors (in particular), upon the fall of Drona, seemed to be deprived of life. Having sustained a defeat, and being inspired with fear about the future,[76] the Kurus regarded themselves deprived of both the worlds. Indeed, they lost all self-control.* Searching for the body of Bharadwāja's son, O monarch, on the field covered with thousands of headless trunks, the kings could not find it. The Pāndavas, having gained the victory and great prospects of renown in the future,[77-78] began to make loud sounds with their arrows and conchs, and utter loud leonine roars. Then Bhīmasena, O king, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata,[79] were seen in the midst of the (Pāndava) host to embrace each other. Addressing the son of Prishata, that scorcher of foes, *viz.*, Bhima, said,[80]—I will again embrace thee, O son of Prishata, as one crowned with victory, when that wretch of a *Suta's* son shall be slain in battle, as also that other wretch, *viz.*, Duryodhana![81]—Having said these words, Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, filled with transports of joy, caused the Earth to tremble with the slaps on his armpits.[82] Terrified by that sound, thy troops ran away from battle, forgetting the duties of Kshatriyas and setting their hearts on flight.[83] The Pāndavas, having become victors, became very glad, O monarch, and they felt great happiness derived from the destruction of their foes in battle.' "[84]

---

* *Deprived of both the worlds*, having sustained a defeat, they lost thisworld, and flying away from the field, they committed a sin and lost the next world.—T.

SECTION CXCIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Upon the fall of Drona, O king, the Kurus, afflicted with weapons, deprived of their leader, broken, and routed, became filled with grief.[1] Seeing their foes (the Pāndavas) prevailing over them, they repeatedly trembled. Their eyes filled with tears, and hearts inspired with fear, they became, O king, melancholy,[2] and cheerless, and destitute of exertion, and deprived of energy through grief. Uttering loud wails, they gathered round thy son.[3] Covered with dust, trembling (with fear), casting vacant eyes on all sides, and their voice choked with tears, they resembled the *Daityas* after the fall of Hiranyāksha in days of yore.[4] Surrounded by them all as if by small animals struck with fear, thy son, unable to stay in their midst, passed away.[5] Afflicted with hunger and thirst, and scorched by the Sun, thy warriors then, O Bhārata, became exceedingly cheerless.[6] Beholding the fall of Bharadwāja's son which was like unto the dropping of the Sun down upon the Earth or the drying up of the ocean or the transplantation of Meru or the defeat of Vāsava, beholding that act incapable of being quietly witnessed, the Kauravas, O king, fled away in fear, terror lending them greater speed.[7-8] The ruler of the Gāndhāras (*viz.*, Cakuni), behloding Drona of the golden car slain, fled, with the car-warriors of his division, with speed that was much greater.[9] Even the *Suta's* son fled away in fear, taking with him his own vast division, that was retreating with great speed, with all its standards.[10] The ruler of the Madras, *viz.*, Calya, also, casting vacant looks, around, fled away in fear, taking with him his division teeming with cars and elephants and steeds.[11] Caradwat's son Kripa, too, fled away, saying,—*Alas, Alas*,—taking with him his division of elephants and foot-soldiers the greater part of which had been slain.[12] Kritavarman, O king, also fled away, borne by his swift steeds, and surrounded by the remnant of his Bhoja, Kalinga, Āratta, and Vālhika troops.[13] Uluka also, O king, beholding Drona slain, fled away with speed, afflicted with fear and accompanied by a large body of foot-soldiers.[14] Hand-

some and endued with youth, and repeated for his bravery, Dusçāsana, also, in great anxiety, fled away, surrounded by his elephant division.[15] Taking with him ten thousand cars and three thousand elephants, Vrishasena also fled with speed at sight of Drona's fall.[16] Accompanied by his elephants and horse and cars, and surrounded also by foot-soldiers, thy son, the mighty car-warrior Duryodhana, too, fled away, O king.[17] Taking with him the remnant of the *Samsaptakas* whom Arjuna had not yet slaughtered, Suçarman, O king, fled away, beholding Drona slain.[18] Riding on elephants and cars and steeds, all the warriors of the Kaurava army fled away from the field, seeing Drona of the golden car slain.[19] Some urging their sires on, some their brothers, some their maternal uncles, some their sons, some their friends, the Kauravas fled away.[20] Others urging on their brethren in arms, or their sisters' sons, or their kinsmen, fled away on all sides.[21] With dishevelled hair, and accoutrements loosened, all fled away in such a manner that even two persons could not be seen running together.—*The Kuru army has been totally destroyed,*—even this was the belief of everybody.[22] Others amongst thy troops, fled away, O king, throwing off their coats of mail. The soldiers loudly called upon one another, O bull of Bharata's race,[23] saying,—*Wait, Wait, do not fly,*—but none of them that said so themselves stood on the field. Abandoning their vehicles and cars decked with ornaments,[24] the warriors, riding on steeds or using their legs, fled away with great speed.

"While the troops, deprived of energy, were thus flying away with speed,[25] only Drona's son Açwatthāman, like a huge alligator coming up against the current of a stream, rushed against his foes. A fierce battle took place between him and many warriors headed by Cikhandin[26] and the Prabhadrakas, the Pānchālas, the Chedis, and the Kaikayas. Slaying many warriors of the Pāndava army that were incapable of being defeated with ease,[27] and escaping with difficulty from the press of battle, that hero, possessed of the tread of an infuriate elephant, saw the (Kaurava) host running away, resolved on flight.[28] Proceeding towards Duryodhana, Drona's son, approaching the Kuru king, said,—Why, O Bhārata, are the

troops flying away as if in fear ?[29] Although flying away, thus, O monarch, thou dost not yet rally them in battle! Thyself, too, O king, dost not seem to be in thy usual frame of mind![30] Upon the slaughter of what lion among car-warriors, O monarch, hath thy force fallen into this plight? Tell me this, O Kaurava![31] O king, these all that are headed (even) by Karna, wait not on the field! In no battle fought before did the army fly away thus![32] Hath any evil befallen thy troops, O Bhārata? —Hearing these words of Drona's son on that occasion, Duryodhana,[33] that bull among kings, felt himself unable to impart the bitter intelligence. Indeed, thy son seemed to sink into an ocean of grief like a foundered boat.[34] Beholding Drona's son on his car, the king became bathed in tears. Suffused with shame, O monarch, the king then addresssd Caradwat's son, saying,[35]—Blessed be thou, say thou, before others, why the army is thus flying away!—Then Caradwat's son, O king, repeatedly feeling great anguish, told Drona's son how his sire had been slain.[36]

"'Kripa said,—Placing Drona, that foremost of car-warriors on the Earth, at our head, we commenced to fight with only the Pānchālas.[37] When the battle commenced, the Kurus and the Somakas, mingled together, roared at one another and began to strike down one another with their weapons.[38] During the progress of that battle, the Dhārtarāshtras began to be thinned. Seeing this, thy sire, filled with rage, invoked into existence a celestial weapon.[39] Indeed, Drona, that bull among men, having invoked the *Brāhma* weapon, slew his enemies with broad-headed arrows, by hundreds and thousands.*[40] Urged by fate, the Pāndavas, the Kaikayas, the Matsyas, and the Pānchālas, O foremost of regenerate ones, approaching Drona's car, began to perish.[41] With his *Brāhma* weapon, Drona despatched unto Yama's abode a thousand brave warriors and two thousand elephants.[42] Of a dark complexion, with his

---

* Celestial weapons were invoked with *mantras*, as explained in a previous note. They were forces which created all sorts of tangible weapons that the invoker desired. Here the *Brāhma* weapon took the form of broad-headed arrows.—T.

gray locks hanging down to his ears, and full five and eighty years old, the aged Drona used to career in battle like a youth of sixteen.[43] When the enemy's troops were thus afflicted and the kings were being slain, the Pānchālas, though filled with the desire of revenge, turned back from the fight.[44] When the enemy, turning back, partially lost their order, that vanquisher of foes, (*viz.*, Drona), invoking celestial weapons into existence, shone resplendent like the risen Sun.[45] Indeed, thy valiant sire, getting into the midst of the Pāndavas, and having arrows for the rays that emanated from him, resembled the mid-day Sun at whom none could gaze.[46] Scorched by Drona as if by the blazing Sun, they became cheerless and deprived of their energy and senses.[47] Beholding them thus afflicted by Drona with his shafts, the slayer of Madhu, desirous of victory to the sons of Pāndu, said these words :[48]—Truly, this foremost of all wielders of arms, this leader of the leaders of car-divisions, is incapable of being vanquished in battle by the slayer of Vritra himself![49] Ye sons of Pāndu, laying aside righteousness, take care of victory, so that Drona of the golden car may not slay all of you in battle![50] I think he will not fight after the fall of Açwatthāman! Let some man falsely tell him that Açwatthāman has been slain in battle![51]—Hearing these words, Kunti's son Dhananjaya approved them not. The advice, however, met with the approval of all others, and of even Yudhishthira with some difficulty![52] Then Bhimasena, with a tincture of bashfulness, said unto thy sire,—Açwatthāman hath been slain!—Thy sire, however, did not believe him.[53] Suspecting the intelligence to be false, thy father, so affectionate towards thee, enquired of Yudhishthira as to whether thou wert really dead or otherwise.[54] Afflicted with the fear of a lie, solicitous at the same time of victory, Yudhishthira, beholding a mighty elephant, huge as a hill, and called Açwatthāman, belonging to the Mālava chief Indravarman, slain on the field by Bhima, approached Drona and answered him, saying,[55-56]—He for whom thou wieldest weapons, he, looking upon whom thou livest, that ever dear son of thine, *viz.*, Açwatthāman, hath been slain![57] Deprived of life he lieth on the bare ground like a

young lion!—Aware fully of the evil consequences of falsehood, the king spoke those words unto that best of Brāhmanas, indistinctly adding *elephant* (after Açwatthāman). Hearing of the fall of his son, he began to wail aloud, afflicted with grief.[58-59] Restraining (the force of) his celestial weapons, he fought not as before. Beholding him filled with anxiety and almost deprived of his senses by grief,[60] the son of the Pānchāla king, of cruel deeds, rushed towards him. Seeing the prince who had been ordained as his slayer, Drona, versed in all truths about men and things,[61] abandoned all his celestial weapons and sat in *Prāya* on the field of battle. Then Prishata's son, seizing Drona's head with his left hand, and disregarding the loud admonitions of all the heroes, cut off that head!—*Drona should not be slain*,—even these were the words uttered from every side![62-63] Similarly, Arjuna also, jumping down from his car, quickly ran towards Prishata's son, with arms upraised and repeatedly saying,[64]—O thou that art acquainted with the ways of morality, do not slay the preceptor but bring him alive!—Though thus forbidden by the Kauravas as also by Arjuna,[65] thy sire, O bull among men, was slain by the cruel Dhrishtadyumna! For this, afflicted with fear, the troops are all flying away! Ourselves also, for the same reason, in great cheerlessness, O sinless one, are doing the same![66]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing of the slaughter of his sire in battle, Drona's son, like a snake struck with the foot, became filled with fierce wrath.[67] And filled with rage, O sire, Açwatthāman blazed up in that battle, like a fire fed with a large quantity of fuel.[68] Squeezing his hands and grinding his teeth, and breathing like a snake, his eyes became red as blood.' "[69]

SECTION CXCV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Hearing, O Sanjaya, of the slaughter, by unrighteous means, of his aged sire, *viz.*, the regenerate Drona, by Dhrishtadyumna, what did the valiant Açwatthāman say,[1] he, that is, in whom human and *Vāruna*

and *Āgneya* and *Brāhma* and *Aindra* and *Nārāyana* weapons are always present ?[2] Indeed, learning that the preceptor, that foremost of virtuous men, had been unrighteously slain by Dhrishtadyumna in battle, what did Açwatthāman say ?[3] The high-souled Drona, having obtained the science of weapons from Rāma, had imparted (a knowledge of) all the celestial weapons unto his son, desirous of seeing the latter decked with all the accomplishments (of a warrior).[4] There is only one person in this world, *viz.*, the son, and none else, whom people desire to become superior to themselves.[5] All high-souled preceptors have this characteristic, *viz.*, that they impart all the mysteries of their science unto either sons or devoted disciples.[6] Becoming his sire's pupil, O Sanjaya, and obtaining all those mysteries with every detail, the son of Caradwat's daughter has become a second Drona, and a great hero.[7] Açwatthāman is equal to Rāma in knowledge of weapons, to Purandara in battle, to Kārtavirya in energy, and Vrihaspati in wisdom.[8] In fortitude that youth is equal to a mountain, and in energy to fire. In gravity he is equal to the Ocean, and in wrath to the poison of the snake.[9] He is the foremost of all car-warriors in battle, a firm bowman, and above all fatigue. In speed he is equal to the wind itself ; and he careers in the thick of fight like Yama in rage.[10] While he is engaged in shooting arrows in battle, the very Earth becomes afflicted. Of prowess incapable of being baffled, that hero is never fatigued by exertion.[11] Purified by the *Vedas* and by vows, he is a thorough master of the science of arms. Like Rāma the son of Daçaratha, he is, like the ocean, incapable of being agitated.[12] Hearing that the preceptor, that foremost of righteous persons, had been unrighteously slain in battle by Dhrishtadyumna, what, indeed, did Açwatthāman say ?[13] Indeed, Açwatthāman hath been ordained to be the slayer of Dhrishtadyumna, even as Yajnasena's son, the prince of the Pānchālas, was ordained to be the slayer of Drona ![14] What, oh, did Açwatthāman say, hearing that his sire the preceptor had been slain by the cruel, sinful, and mean Dhrishtadyumna of little foresight ?' "[15]

SECTION CXCVI.

"Sanjaya said,—"Hearing of the slaughter of his sire by Dhrishtadyumna of sinful deeds, Drona's son was filled with grief and rage, O bull among men.[1] Filled with rage, O king, his body seemed to blaze forth like that of the Destroyer while engaged in slaughtering creatures at the end of the *Yuga*.[2] Repeatedly wiping his fearful eyes, and breathing hot sighs in rage, he said unto Duryodhana, these words,[3] *viz.*,—I have now learnt how my sire has been slain by those low wretches after he laid aside his weapons, and how also has a sinful act been perpetrated by Yudhishthira disguised in the garb of virtue!*[4] I have now heard of that unrighteous and exceedingly cruel act of Dharma's son! Indeed, amongst those engaged in battle, either of these two, O king, must happen, *viz.*, victory or defeat. Death in battle is always to be applauded. That death, in battle, of a person engaged in fight, which takes place under circumstances of righteousness,[5-6] is not deserving of grief as has been observed by the sages. Without doubt, my sire has gone to the regions of heroes![7] Having met with such a death, I should not grieve for him. The humiliation, however, of a seizure of his locks, that he sustained in the very sight of all the troops while he was righteously engaged in battle, is tearing the very core of my heart! Myself alive, my sire's locks were seized:[8-9] why should sonless people then entertain a desire of offspring?† People perpetrate unrighteous acts or humiliate others, moved by lust or wrath or folly or hatred or levity. The cruel and wicked-souled son of Prishata hath perpetrated this exceedingly sinful act in total disregard of

---

* *Dharmadhwajin* literally means a person bearing the standard of virtue; hence, a hypocrite sanctimoniously talking only of virtue and morality but acting differently.—T.

† I think the correct reading is *aputrinas* and not *putrinas*. If it is *putrinas*, literally rendered, the meaning is,—'Why should persons having children, feel any affection for the latter!'—It is worthy of remark that the author of *Venisamhàra* has bodily adopted this verse, putting it in the mouth of Açwatthāman when introduced in the third Act.—T.

myself. Dhrishtadyumna, therefore, shall surely behold the dreadful consequences of that act,[10-11] as also the false-speeched son of Pāndu, that has acted so wrongly! Today the Earth shall certainly drink the blood of that king Yudhishthira the just who caused the preceptor, by an act of deceit, to lay aside his weapons! I swear by truth, O Kauraveya, as also by all my religious acts,[12-14] that I shall never bear the burden of life if I fail to exterminate the Pānchālas! By every means shall I contend with the Pānchālas in dreadful strife![15] I shall certainly slay in battle Dhrishtadyumna, that perpetrator of unrighteous deeds! Mild or violent, let the means be what they will,[16] I shall effect the destruction of all the Pānchālas before peace becomes mine, O Kaurava! O tiger among men, persons desire children[17] so that obtaining them they may be rescued from great fears both here and hereafter. My sire, however, fell unto that plight, like a friendless creature,[18] although myself am alive, his disciple and son resembling a mountain (in might)! Fie on my celestial weapons! Fie on my arms! Fie on my prowess![19] since Drona, although he had a son in me, had his locks seized! I shall, therefore, O chief of the Bharatas, now achieve that[20] by which I may be freed from the debt I owe to my sire now gone to the other world! He that is good never indulges in self-praise.[21] Unable, however, to brook the slaughter of my sire, I speak of my prowess Let the Pāndavas, with Janārddana among them, behold my energy today,[22] while I grind all their troops, achieving what is done (by the Destroyer himself) at the end of the *Yuga*! Neither the gods, nor the *Gandharvas*, nor the *Asuras*, the *Uragas*, and the *Rākshasas*,[23] nor all the foremost of men, shall today be able to vanquish me on my car in battle! There is none in the world equal to me or Arjuna in knowledge of weapons.[24] Entering into the midst of the troops, like the Sun himself in the midst of his blazing rays, I shall today use my celestial weapons![25] Today, applied by me, innumerable shafts, sped from my bow in dreadful battle, displaying their terrible energy, shall grind the Pāndavas![26] Today all the points of the compass, O king, will be seen by the warriors of our army shrouded with my winged arrows of keen points as

if with torrents of rain![27] Scattering showers of shafts on all sides with a loud noise, I shall overthrow my foes like a tempest felling trees.[28] Neither Vibhatsu, nor Janārddana, nor Bhimasena, nor Nakula, nor Sahadeva, nor king Yudhishthira, nor Prishata's wicked-souled son (Dhrishtadyumna), nor Cikhandin, nor Sātyaki, O Kauravya, knoweth that weapon which I have along with the *mantras* for hurling and withdrawing it![29-30] Formerly on one occasion, Nārāyana, assuming the form of a Brāhmana, came to my father. Bowing unto him, my father presented his offerings unto him in due form.[31] Taking them himself, the Divine Lord offered to give him a boon. My father then solicited that supreme weapon called *Nārāyana*.[32] The Divine Lord, that foremost of all gods, addressing my sire, then said,—No man shall ever become thy equal in battle.[33] This weapon, however, O Brāhmana, should never be used in haste. It never comes back without effecting the destruction of the foe.[34] I know none whom it may not slay. O lord! Indeed, it would slay even the unslayable! Therefore, it should not be used (without the greatest deliberation).[35] This mighty weapon, O scorcher of foes, should never be hurled upon persons that abandon their cars or weapons in battle, or upon those that seek for quarter or those that yield themselves up. He who seeketh to afflict in battle the unslayable with it, is himself exceedingly afflicted by it![*36-37]—My sire thus received that weapon. Then the lord Nārāyana, addressing myself also, said,—With the aid of this weapon, thou too shalt pour diverse showers of celestial weapons in battle and blaze with energy in consequence of it!—Having said these words, the Divine Lord ascended to heaven.[38-39] Even this is the history of the *Nārāyana* weapon which has been obtained by my sire's son. With that I will rout and slay the Pāndavas, the Pānchālas, the Matsyas, and the Kaikayas, in battle, like Cachi's lord routing and slaying the *Asuras*.

* The last line of 37 is read differently in the Bombay edition. Nilkantha accepts that reading, and explains it in his gloss, remarking that the grammatical solecism occurring in it is a license. The Bengal reading, however, is more apposite.—T.

My shafts, O Bhārata, will fall upon the contending foes in those particular forms which I shall wish them to assume. Staying in battle I will pour showers of weapons as I desire.[40-42] I will rout and slay all the foremost of car-warriors with sky-ranging arrows of iron-mouths. Without doubt, I will shower innumerable battle-axes upon the foe.[43] With the mighty *Nārāyana* weapon, a scorcher of foes that I am, I will destroy the Pāndavas, causing an immense carnage amongst them![44] That wretch amongst the Pānchālas, (*viz.*, Dhrishtadyumna), who is an injurer of friends and Brāhmanas and of his own preceptor, who is a deceitful wretch of the most reprehensible conduct, shall never escape from me today with life![45]— Hearing these words of Drona's son, the (Kuru) army rallied. Then many foremost of men blew their gigantic conchs.[46] And filled with delight, they beat their drums and *dindimas* by thousands. The Earth resounded with loud noises, afflicted with the hoofs of steeds and the wheels of cars.[47] That loud uproar made the Earth, the sky, and the firmament also echo with it. Hearing that uproar, deep as the roll of the clouds, the Pāndavas,[48] those foremost of car-warriors, uniting together, took counsel of one another. Meanwhile Drona's son, having said those words, O Bhārata, touched water and invoked the celestial weapon called the *Nārāyana*.' "[49]

SECTION CXCVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the weapon called *Nārāyana* was invoked, violent winds began to blow with showers of rain, and peals of thunder were heard although the sky was cloudless.[1] The Earth trembled, and the seas swelled up in agitation. The rivers began to run in a contrary course.[2] The summits of mountains, O Bhārata, began to split. Diverse animals began to pass by the left side of the Pāndavas.*[3] Darkness set in, the Sun became obscure. Diverse kinds of carnivorous creatures began to alight on the field in joy.[4] The gods, the *Dānavas*, and the *Gandharvas*, O mon-

---

* Literally, "the animals kept the Pāndavas to their right."—T.

arch, all became inspired with fear. Beholding that tremendous agitation (in nature), all began to loudly ask one another about its cause.[5] Indeed, seeing that fierce and terrible weapon invoked by Drona's son, all the kings, inspired with fear, felt great pain.'[6]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O Sanjaya, what counsel was adopted by the Pāndavas for the protection of Dhrishtadyumna when they saw the Kauravas once more advance to battle, rallied by Drona's son who was scorched by grief and unable to brook the slaughter of his sire ?'[7-8]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having before beheld the Dhārtarāshtras fly away, Yudhishthira, seeing them once more prepare for furious battle, addressed Arjuna, saying,[9]—After the preceptor Drona had been slain in battle by Dhrishtadyumna like the mighty *Asura* Vritra by the wielder of the thunderbolt,[10] (the Kurus), O Dhananjaya, becoming cheerless, gave up all hopes of victory. Desirous of saving themselves, all of them fled away from battle.[11] Some kings fled, riding on cars borne along irregular courses, without *Pārshni* drivers, and divested of standards and banners and umbrellas, and with their *Kuvaras* and boxes broken, and all their adornments displaced Others, struck with panic and deprived of their senses, themselves striking the steeds of their cars with their feet, fled precipitately.[12-13] Others, riding on cars with broken yokes and wheels and *Akshas*, fled, afflicted with fear. Others on horseback were carried away, their bodies half displaced from their saddles.[14] Others, dislodged from their seats, and pinned by shafts to the necks of elephants, were quickly carried away by those animals. Others were trodden to death all around by elephants afflicted and mangled with arrows.[15] Others, deprived of weapons and divested of armour, fell from their vehicles and animals down upon the Earth. Others were cut by car wheels or crushed by steeds and elephants.[16] Others, loudly calling after their sires and sons, fled away in fear, without recognising one another and deprived of all energy by grief.[17] Some, placing their sons and sires and friends and brothers (on vehicles) and taking off their armour, were seen washing them with water.[18] After the slaughter of Drona, the (Kuru)

army, fallen into such a plight, fled away precipitately. By whom then hath it been rallied? Tell me, if thou knowest![19] The sound of neighing steeds and grunting elephants, mingled with the clatter of car-wheels, is heard loud.[20] These sounds, so fierce, occurring in the Kuru ocean, are repeatedly swelling up and causing my troops to tremble![21] This terrific uproar, making the hair to stand on end, that is now heard, would, it seems, swallow the three worlds with Indra at their head![22] I think this terrible uproar is uttered by the wielder of the thunderbolt himself! It is evident that upon the fall of Drona Vāsava himself is approaching (against us) for the sake of the Kauravas![23] Our hair has stood on end, our foremost of car-warriors are all afflicted with anxiety. O Dhananjaya, hearing this loud and terrible noise,[24] I ask thee who is that mighty car-warrior like the lord of the celestials himself, that, rallying this terrible and swelling host, is causing it to return?[25]—'

"'Arjuna said,—He, relying upon whose energy the Kauravas, having addrest themselves to the accomplishment of fierce feats, are blowing their conchs and staying with patience,[26]—he, about whom thou hast thy doubts, O king, as to who he may be that is roaring so loud, having rallied the Dhārtarāshtras after the fall of the weaponless perceptor,[27]—he, who is endued with modesty, possessed of mighty-arms, has the tread of an infuriate elephant, owns a face like that of a tiger, always achieves fierce feats, and dispells the fears of the Kurus,[28]—he, upon whose birth Drona gave away a thousand kine unto Brāhmanas of high worth,—he, O king, that is roaring so loud, is Açwatthāman![29] As soon as he was born, that hero neighed like Indra's steed and caused the three worlds to tremble at that sound![30] Hearing that sound, an invisible being, O lord, (speaking audibly) bestowed upon him the name of *Açwatthāman* (the horse-voiced). That hero, O son of Pāndu, is roaring today![31] Prishata's son, by an exceedingly cruel act, assailed Drona and took his life as if the latter were without a protector! Yonder stayeth the protector of that Drona![32] Since the prince of the Pānchālas seized my preceptor by the hair, Açwatthāman, confident of his own prowess, will never forgive him![33] Thou, O monarch, hast told

thy preceptor a falsehood for the sake of kingdom! Although thou art acquainted with the dictates of righteousness, thou hast yet perpetrated a very sinful act![34] Thy ill fame, in consequence of the slaughter of Drona, will be eternal in the three worlds with their mobile and immobile creatures, like Rāma's in consequence of the slaughter of Vāli![*35] About thyself, Drona had thought,—*The son of Pāndu is possessed of every virtue; he is, besides, my disciple! He will never speak an untruth to me!*—Thinking so, he gave credence to what thou saidst.[36] Although in speaking of Açwatthāman's death thou hadst added the word *elephant*, yet thy answer to the preceptor was, after all, an untruth in the garb of truth![37] Thus told by thee, the puissant Drona laid aside his weapons and, as thou sawest, became indifferent (to everything), exceedingly agitated, and almost deprived of his senses.[38] It was even a disciple who, abandoning all morality, thus slew his own preceptor full of affection for his son, while, indeed, that preceptor was filled with grief and unwilling to fight![39] Having caused thy preceptor who had laid aside his weapons to be unrighteously slain, protect now the son of Prishata if thou canst, with all thy counsellors![40] All of us, uniting together, shall not be able to protect Prishata's son today who will be assailed by the preceptor's son in wrath and grief![41] That superhuman being who is in the habit of displaying his friendship for all creatures, that hero, hearing of the seizure of his sire's locks, will certainly consume us all in battle today![42] Although I cried repeatedly at the top of my voice for saving the preceptor's life, yet, disregarding my cries and abandoning morality, a disciple took the life of that preceptor![43] All of us have passed the greater part of our lives. The days that remain to us are few. This exceedingly unrighteous act that we have perpetrated has stained that remnant.[44] In consequence of the affection he bore to us, he was even as a sire unto us! According to

---

* Daçaratha's son Rāma, during his exile, slew the monkey-chief Vali, the brother of Sugriva, while Vāli was engaged with Sugriva in battle. Vāli had done no injury to Rāma. That act has always been regarded as a stain on Rāma.—T.

the dictates of the scriptures also, he was a sire unto us! Yet he, that preceptor of ours, has been slain by us for the sake of short-lived sovereignty![45] Dhritarāshtra, O king, had given unto Bhishma and Drona the whole Earth, and, what was still more valuable, all his children![46] Though honored by our foe thus, and though he had obtained such wealth from him, the preceptor still loved us as his own children![47] Of unfading energy and prowess, the preceptor has been slain in battle only because, induced by thy words, he had laid aside his weapons! While engaged in fight he was incapable of being slain by Indra himself.[48] The preceptor was venerable in years and always devoted to our welfare. Yet unrighteous that we are and stained with a levity of behaviour, we scrupled not to injure him![49] Alas, exceedingly cruel and very heinous has been the sin that we have committed, for, moved by the desire of enjoying the pleasures of sovereignty, we have slain that Drona![50] My preceptor had all along been under the impression that in consequence of my love for him I could, (for his sake) abandon all,—sire, brother, children, wife, life itself![51] And yet, moved by the desire of sovereignty I interfered not when he was about to be slain! For this fault, O king, I have, O lord, already sunk into hell, overcome with shame![52] Having, for the sake of kingdom, caused the slaughter of one who was a Brāhmana, who was venerable in years, who was my preceptor, who had laid aside his weapons, and who was then devoted, like a great ascetic, to *Yoga*, death has become preferable to me to life!' "[53]

SECTION CXCVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing these words of Arjuna, the mighty car-warriors present there said not a single word, O monarch, agreeable or disagreeable, unto Dhananjaya.[1] Then the mighty-armed Bhimasena, filled with wrath, O bull of Bharata's race, reproaching Kunti's son Arjuna, said these words:[2]—Thou preachest truths of morality like an anchoret living in the woods or a Brāhmana of rigid vows and senses under complete control![3] A person is called a *Kshatriya* because he rescues

others from wounds and injuries. Being such, he must save himself from wounds and injuries! Showing forgiveness towards the three that are good, (*viz.*, the gods, the Brāhmanas, and preceptors), a Kshatriya, by doing his duties, soon wins the Earth as also piety and fame and prosperity.[4]* Thou, O perpetuater of thy race, art endued with every attribute of a Kshatriya! It does not, therefore, look well for thee to speak like an ignorant wight![5] O son of Kunti, thy prowess is like that of Cakra himself, the lord of Cachi! Thou dost not transgress the bounds of morality like the ocean that never transgresses its continents![6] Who is there that would not worship thee, seeing that thou seekest virtue, having abandoned the wrath cherished by thee for thirteen years?[7] By good luck, O sire, thy heart today followeth in the wake of virtue! O thou of unfading glory, by good luck thy understanding inclineth towards compassion![8] Though, however, thou art inclined to adopt the path of virtue, yet thy kingdom was snatched from thee most unrighteously! Dragging thy wife Draupadi to the assembly, thy foes insulted her![9] Clad in barks of trees and skins of animals, all of us were exiled to the woods, and undeserving though we were of that plight, our foes nevertheless compelled us to endure it for thirteen years![10] O sinless one, thou hast forgiven all these circumstances, every one of which demands the exhibition of wrath! Wedded as thou art to the duties of a Kshatriya, thou hast quietly borne these![11] Remembering all those acts of unrighteousness, I came here with thee for avenging them! (When, however, I see that thou art so indifferent, why,) I myself will slay those low wretches that despoiled us of our kingdom![12] Thou hadst formerly said these words, *viz.,—Addressing ourselves for battle, we will exert to the utmost extent of our abilities!*—Today, however, thou reproachest us![13] Thou now seekest virtue! Those words, therefore, that thou saidst formerly are untrue. We are already afflicted with fear. Thou cuttest, however, the very core of our hearts with these thy words,[14] O crusher of foes, like one pouring acids upon the sores of wounded men! Afflict-

---

* I expand the original to make the sense clear.—T.

ed with thy wordy darts, my heart is breaking.[15] Thou art virtuous, but thou dost not know in what unrighteousness truly consists, since thou applaudest neither thyself nor us though all of us are worthy of applause![16] When Keçava himself is here, praisest thou the son of Drona, a warrior that does not come up to even a sixteenth part of thyself, O Dhananjay?[17] Confessing thy own faults, why dost thou not feel shame? I can rend asunder this Earth in rage, or split the very mountains,[18] whirling that terrible and heavy mace of mine decked with gold! Like the tempest, I can break down gigantic trees looking like hills![19] I can, with my arrows, rout the united celestials with Indra at their head, together with all the *Rākshasas*, O Pārtha, and the *Asuras*, the *Uragas*, and humanbeings![20] Knowing me, thy brother, to be such, O bull among men, it behoveth thee not, O thou of immeasurable prowess, to entertain any fear about Drona's son![21] Or, O Vibhatsu, stand thou here, with all these bulls among men! Alone and unsupported, I shall, armed with my mace, vanquish this one in great battle!—After Bhima had ended, the son of the Pānchāla king, addressing Pārtha, said these words, like Hiranyakaçipu (the leader of the *Daityas*) unto the enraged and roaring Vishnu:*[22-23]—O Vibhatsu, the sages have ordained these to be the duties of Brāhmanas, *viz.*, assisting at sacrifices, teaching, giving away, performance of sacrifices, the receiving of gifts,[24] and study as the sixth. To which of these six was that Drona devoted who has been slain by me? Why then, O Pārtha, dost thou reproach me?[25] Fallen off from the duties of his own order and practising those of the Kshatriya order, that achiever of wicked deeds used to slay us by means of superhuman weapons![26] Professing himself to be a Brāhmana, he

* The first line of the 23rd verse in the Bengal editions, is made the second line of that verse in the Bombay text. There seems to be a mistake, however, in both the texts. Vishnu slew Hiranyakaçipu without allowing the latter to say anything unto him. *Vide Vishnu Parāna.* If, instead of *HiranyakaçipuHarim*, the reading be *Hianyakaçipum Haris*, the line may then be connected with Bhima's speech, and the comparison would become more apposite.—T.

was in the habit of using irresistible illusions. By an illusion itself hath he been slain today! O Pārtha, what is there that is improper in this?[27] Drona having been thus punished by me, if his son, from rage, uttereth such loud roars, what do you lose by that?[28] I do not think it at all wonderful that Drona's son, urging the Kauravas to battle, will cause them to be slain, unable to protect them himself![29] Thou art acquainted with morality. Why then dost thou say that I am a slayer of my preceptor? It was for this that I was born as son to the king of the Pānchālas, having sprung from the (sacrificial) fire![30] How, O Dhananjaya, will you call him a Brāhmana or a Kshatriya, with whom, while engaged in battle, all acts, proper and improper, were the same?[31] O foremost of men, why should not he be slain, by any means in our power, who, deprived of his senses in wrath, used to slay with the *Brāhma* weapon even those that were unacquainted with weapons?[32] He that is unrighteous is said by those that are righteous to be equal to poison. Knowing this, O thou that art well versed with the truths of morality, why dost thou, O Arjuna, reproach me?[33] That cruel car-warrior was seized and slain by me. I have done nothing that is worthy of reproach. Why then, O Vibhatsu, dost thou not congratulate me?[34] O Pārtha, I have cut off that terrible head, like unto the blazing Sun or virulent poison or the all-destroying *Yuga* fire, of Drona. Why then dost thou not applaud an act that is worthy of applause?[35] He had slain in battle only my kinsmen and not those of any one else. I say that having only cut off his head, the fever of my heart hath not abated![36] The very core of my heart is being pierced for my not having thrown that head within the dominions of the *Nishādas*, like that of Jayadratha![*37] It hath been heard, O Arjuna, that one incurreth sin by not slaying his foes. Even this is the duty of a Kshatriya, *viz.*, to slay or be slain.[38] Drona was my foe. He hath been righteously slain by me in battle, O son of Pāndu, even as thou hast slain the brave

* The *Nishādas* were and to this day are the lowest caste in India.—T.

Bhagadatta, thy friend?[39] Having slain thy grandsire in battle thou regardest that act of thine to be righteous. Why then shouldst thou regard it unrighteous in me for my having slain my wretched foe?[40] In consequence of our relationship, O Pārtha, I cannot raise my head in thy presence and am like a prostrate elephant with a ladder against his body (for helping puny creatures to get on his back). It, therefore, behoveth thee not to reproach me![41] I forgive all the faults of thy speech, O Arjuna, for the sake of Draupadi and Draupadi's children and not for any other reason![42] It is well known that my hostility with the preceptor has descended from sire to son. All persons in this world know it. Ye sons of Pāndu, are ye not acquainted with it?[43] The eldest son of Pāndu hath not been untruthful in speech. I myself, O Arjuna, am not sinful. The wretched Drona was a hater of his disciples. Fight now. Victory will be yours!—' "[44]

SECTION CXCIX.

(Nārāyanāstra-mokshana Parva.)

Dhritarāshtra said,—"That illustrious person who had duly studied the *Vedas* with all their branches, he in whom the entire science of arms and modesty had dwelt, he through whose grace many foremost of men are still capable of achieving superhuman feats that the very gods cannot achieve with ease, alas, when he, *viz.*, that Drona, that son of a great *Rishi*, was insulted in the sight of all by the low, wicked, mean-minded, and sinful Dhrishtadyumna, that slayer of his own preceptor, was there no Kshatriya who felt called upon to display his wrath? Fie on the Kshatriya order, and fie on wrath itself![1-4] Tell me, O Sanjaya, what the sons of Prithā, as also all the other royal bowmen in the world, hearing of Drona's slaughter, said unto the prince of Pānchāla![5]

"Sanjaya said,—"Hearing these words of Drupada's son of crooked deeds, all the persons present there, O monarch, remained perfectly silent.[6] Arjuna, however, casting oblique glances upon Prishata's son, seemed, with tears and sighs, to reproach him, saying,—*fie, fie.*[7]—Yudhishthira and Bhima

and the twins and Krishna and the others stood bashfully. Sātyaki, however, O king, said these words:[8]—Is there no man here that would, without delay, slay this sinful wight, this lowest of men, who is uttering such evil speeches ?[9] The Pāndavas are all condemning thee for this sinful act of thine, like Brāhmanas condemning a person of the *Chāndāla* class ![10] Having committed such a heinous act, and having incurred the censures of all honest men, art thou not ashamed to open thy lips in the midst of such a respectable assembly ?[11] O despicable wretch, why did not thy tongue and head split into a hundred fragments while thou wert about to slay thy own preceptor ? Why wert thou not struck down by that act of sin ?[12] Since, having perpetrated such a sinful act, thou art again applauding thyself in the midst of human beings, thou incurrest the censures of the Pārthas and all the Andhakas and the Vrishnis ![13] Having perpetrated such an atrocious act, thou art again displaying such hatred towards the preceptor. For this thou deservest death at our hands. There is no use in keeping thee alive for even a single moment ![14] Who is there, save thee, O wretch, that would cause the death of the virtuous preceptor, seizing him by his locks ?[15] Having obtained thee, O wretch of thy race, thy ancestors for seven generations and thy descendants also for seven generations, deprived of fame, have sunk in hell.[16] Thou hast charged Pārtha, that bull among men, with the slaughter of Bhishma ! The latter, however, *viz.*, that illustrious personage, himself accomplished his own death.[17] Truly speaking, thy uterine brother, (*viz.*, Cikhandin,) that foremost of all sinners, was the cause of Bhishma's death. There is none in the world that is more sinful than the sons of the Pānchāla king ![18] Thy father had created Cikhandin for the destruction of Bhishma. As regards Arjuna, he had only protected Cikhandin while Cikhandin became the cause of the illustrious Bhishma's death ![19] Having got thee that art condemned by all righteous men, and thy brother, amongst them, the Pānchālas have fallen off from righteousness and stained with meanness, have become haters of friends and preceptors ![20] If thou again speakest such words in my presence, I shall then break thy head with this mace of mine that is as strong as the

thunder-bolt![21] Beholding thee that art the slayer of a Brāhmana, since thou art guilty of nothing less than the slaughter of a Brāhmana, people have to look at the Sun for purifying themselves![22] Thou wretch of a Pānchāla, O thou of wicked conduct, speaking ill of my preceptor first and then of my preceptor's preceptor, art thou not ashamed?*[23] Wait, wait! Bear thou but one stroke of this my mace! I myself will bear many strokes of thine![24]—Thus rebuked by the Sātwata hero, Prishata's son, filled with rage, smilingly addressed the angry Sātyaki in these harsh words![25]—'

"'Dhrishtadyumna said,—I have heard thy words, O thou of Mādhu's race, but I have forgiven thee! Being thyself unrighteous and sinful, desirest thou to rebuke them that are righteous and honest?[26] Forgiveness is applauded in the world. Sin, however, does not deserve forgiveness. He that is of sinful soul regards the forgiving person powerless.[27] Thou art a wretch in thy behaviour! Thou art of sinful soul! Thou art wedded to unrighteousness! Thou art censurable in every respect, from the tip of thy toe to the end of thy hair! Desirest thou still to speak ill of others?[28] What can be more sinful than that act of thine, *viz.*, thy slaughter of the armless Bhuriçravas while sitting in *Prāya*, although thou wert repeatedly forbidden?[29] Drona, having arrayed his forces, had been fighting with the aid of celestial weapons. He had laid aside his weapons and I slew him. O thou of crooked heart, what is there in that act that is improper?[30] How can he, O Sātyaki, blame such an act who himself has slain a foe that had desisted from fight on the field, a foe that was sitting in *Prāya* like an ascetic, and whose arms had been cut off by another?[31] That valiant enemy of thine had displayed his prowess, having struck thee with his foot and thrown thee down on the Earth. Why didst thou not *then* slay him, showing thy manliness?[32] When Pārtha, however, had

* The Bengal reading is vicious. I adopt the Bombay reading which is *Gurorguruncha bhuyopi*, meaning, "the preceptor's preceptor again." The fact is, Arjuna was Sātyaki's preceptor; Drona, therefore, was the latter's preceptor's preceptor.—T.

already vanquished him, it was then that thou, acting most unrighteously, didst kill the brave and valiant Somadatta's son![33] Whithersoever Drona had sought to rout the forces of the Pāndavas, thithersoever I proceeded, shooting thousands of arrows.[34] Having thyself acted in such a way, like a *Chāndāla*, and having thyself become worthy of reproach, desirest thou to reproach me in such harsh words?[35] Thou art a perpetrator of evil deeds, and not I, O wretch of the Vrishni race! Thou art the abode of all sinful deeds! Do not again blame me![36] Be silent. It behoveth thee not to say anything unto me after this! This is the reply I give thee with my lips. Don't say anything more![37] If, from folly, thou repeatest such harsh words, I shall then, in battle, despatch thee, with my arrows, to Yama's abode![38] By righteousness alone, O fool, one cannot vanquish his enemies. Listen now to the unrighteous acts of the Kurus also![39] Pāndu's son Yudhishthira was sometime before unrighteously deceived (by them)! O Sātyaki, Draupadi also was persecuted by them unrighteously![40] The Pāndavas, with Krishnā in their company, were also exiled and they were robbed of their all, O fool, most unrighteously![41] By an act of unrighteousness, again, has the ruler of the Madras been withdrawn from us by the enemy! By an act of unrighteousness also was the son of Subhadrā slain![42] On this side, it was by an act of unrighteousness that Bhishma the Kuru grandsire was slain. Bhuriçravas, too, was, by an act of unrighteousness, slain by thee that art so acquainted with righteousness![43] Even thus have the enemy, as also the Pāndavas, acted in this battle! Possessed of courage and acquainted with morality, all of them, O Sātwata, have acted thus, for gaining victory![44] High morality is difficult of ascertainment. Similarly, immorality also can with difficulty be comprehended. Fight now with the Kauravas, without returning to the home of thy fathers!—'[45]

"Sanjaya continued,—"Hearing these harsh and cruel words (from Dhrishtadyumna's lips), the blessed Sātyaki began to tremble from head to foot.[46] Filled with rage, his eyes assumed the hue of copper. Keeping his bow then upon his car, he grasped his mace, sighing like a snake.[47] Rushing then towards the

prince of the Pānchālas, he said unto him in great wrath,—I will not speak harshly to thee, but I will slay thee, deserving as thou art of slaughter![48]—Seeing the mighty Sātyaki rushing, from wrath and desire of revenge, at the Pānchāla prince, like Yama against one like his own self,[49] the mighty Bhima, urged by Vāsudeva, quickly jumped down from his car and seized him with his arms.[50] Endued with great strength, Sātyaki, who was rushing in great wrath, proceeded for a few steps, forcibly dragging after him the mighty son of Pāndu who was endeavouring to hold him back.[51] Then Bhima, firmly planting his feet, stopped at the sixth step that foremost of strong men, *viz.*, that bull of Cini's race.[52] Then Sahadeva, O king, jumping down from his own car, addressed Sātyaki, thus held fast by the strong arms of Bhima, in these sweet words:[53]—O tiger among men, O thou of Madhu's race, we have no friends dearer to us than the Andhakas with the Vrishnis and the Pānchālas![54] So also the Andhakas and the Vrishnis, particularly Krishna, cannot have any friends dearer than ourselves.[55] The Pānchālas also, O thou of Vrishni's race, even if they search the whole world to the confines of the sea, have no friends dearer to them than the Pāndavas and the Vrishnis.[56] Thou art even such a freind to this prince; and he also is a similar friend to thee. Ye all are to us even as we are to you![57] Acquainted as thou art with all duties, remembering now the duties thou owest to friends, restrain this wrath of thine that has the prince of the Pānchālas for its object! Be calm, O foremost one of Cini's race![58] Forgive the son of Prishata, and let Prishata's son also forgive thee! Ourselves also will practise forgiveness. What is there that is better than forgiveness?[59]—,

"'While the grandson of Cini, O sire, was thus being pacified by Sahadeva, the son of the Pānchāla king, smiling, said these words:[60]—Release Cini's grandson, O Bhima, who is so proud of his prowess in battle! Let him come at me like the wind assailing the mountains,[61] till, with my keen arrows, O son of Kunti, I quell his rage and desire for battle and take his life![62] Yonder come the Kauravas! I shall (after slaying Sātyaki) achieve this great task of the Pāndavas that has

presented itself![63] Or, let Phālguna resist all the enemies in battle! As regards myself, I will fell this one's head with my arrows.[64] He taketh me for the armless Bhuriçravas in battle. Release him. Either I will slay him or he will slay me![65]—Hearing these words of the Pānchāla prince, the mighty-Sātyaki, held fast in Bhima's clasp, sighing like a snake, began to tremble.[66] Both of them, endued with great might and possessed of powerful arms, began to roar like a couple of bulls. Then Vāsudeva, O sire, and king Yudhishthira the just,[67] with great effort, succeeded in pacifying those heroes. Having pacified those two great bowmen, those two heroes whose eyes had become blood-red with rage, all the principal Kshatriyas (of the Pāndava army) proceeded against the warriors of the hostile army for battle.' "[68]

SECTION CC.

"Sanjaya said,—"Then Drona's son began to cause a great carnage amongst his foes in that battle, like the Destroyer himself at the end of the *Yuga*.[1] Slaying his enemies by means of his broad-headed arrows, Açwatthāman soon piled a mountain there of the dead. The standards of cars formed its trees, and weapons its pointed summits. The lifeless elephants formed its large rocks; the steeds, its *Kimpurushas*; and bows, its creepers and plants. And it resounded with the cries of all carnivorous creatures that constituted its feathery population. And the spirits that walked there formed its *Yakshas*.*[2-3] Then roaring aloud, O bull of Bharata's race, Açwatthāman once more repeated his vow in the hearing of thy son,[4]—Since Kunti's son Yudhishthira, assuming only the outward garb of virtue, had caused the preceptor who was (righteously) engaged in battle to lay aside his weapons,[5] I shall, in his very sight, rout and destroy his army! Having rushed and mangled all his

---

* *Kimpurushas* were fabled creatures, half men and half steeds. Not a mountain but had its *Kimpurushas*, according to the Hindu belief. *Yakshas* were a sort of superhuman beings infesting inaccessible hills and mountains.—T.

troops, I shall then slay the sinful prince of the Pānchālas.[6] Indeed, I shall slay all of them, if they contend with me in battle. I tell thee truly, therefore, rally thou thy troops![7]— Hearing these words of Açwatthāman, thy son rallied his troops, having dispelled their fears with a loud leonine roar.[8] The encounter then, O king, that once more took place between the Kuru and the Pāndava armies, became as terrible as that of two oceans at full tide.[9] The terrified Kauravas had their fears dispelled by Drona's son. The Pāndus and the Pānchālas had become fierce in consequence of Drona's slaughter.[10] Great was the violence of that collision, on the field of battle, between those warriors, all of whom were cheerful and filled with rage and inspired with certain hope of victory.[11] Like a mountain striking against a mountain, or an ocean against an ocean, O monarch, was that collision between the Kurus and the Pāndavas.[12] Filled with joy, the Kuru and the Pāndava warriors blew thousands of conchs and beat tens of thousands of drums.[13] The loud and stunning uproar that arose from among those troops resembled that of the ocean itself while churned (of old by the gods and the *Dānavas*).[14] Then Drona's son, aiming at the host of the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas, invoked the weapon called *Nārāyana*.[15] Then thousands of arrows with blazing mouths appeared in the welkin, resembling snakes of firey mouths, that continued to agitate the Pāndavas.[16] In that dreadful battle, those shafts, O king, like the very rays of the Sun, in a moment shrouded all the points of compass, the welkin, and the troops.[17] Innumerable iron balls also, O king, then appeared, like resplendent luminaries in the clear firmament.[18] *Çatāghnis*, some equipt with four and some with two wheels, and innumerable maces, and disci with edges sharp as razors and resplendent like the Sun, also appeared there.[19] Beholding the welkin densely shrouded with those weapons, O bull of Bharata's race, the Pāndavas, the Pānchālas, and the Srinjayas, became exceedingly agitated.[20] In all those places, O ruler of men, where the great car-warriors of the Pāndavas contended in battle, that weapon became exceedingly powerful.[21] Slaughtered by the *Nārāyana* weapon, as if consumed by a conflagration, the Pāndava troops were exceedingly afflicted

all over the field in that battle.[22] Indeed, O lord, as fire consumeth a heap of dry grass in summer, even so did that weapon consume the army of the Pāndus.[23] Beholding that weapon filling everyside, and seeing his own troops destroyed in large numbers, king Yudhishthira the just, O lord, became inspired with great fright.[24] Seeing his army in course of flight and deprived of itssenses, and beholding Pārtha standing indifferent, Dharma's son said these words:[25]—O Dhrishtadyumna, fly away with your Pānchāla troops! O Sātyaki, you also go away, surrounded by the Vrishnis and the Andhakas![26] Of virtuous soul, Vāsudeva will himself seek the means of his own safety! He is competent to offer advice to the whole world. What need is there of telling him what he should do?[27] We shouldnot any longer fight! I say so unto all the troops! As regards myself, I will, with all my brothers, ascend a funeral pile![28] Having crossed the Bhishma and the Drona oceansin this battle that are incapable of being crossed by the timid shall I sink with all my followers in the vestige, represented by Drona's son, of a cow's hoof?[29] Let the wishes of king Duryodhana be crowned with success today, for I have today slain in battle the preceptor that always cherished such friendly feelings towards us,[30]—that preceptor, who, without protecting, caused that child unacquainted with battle, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, to be slain by a multitude of wicked warriors,[31]—that preceptor, who, with his son, sat indifferently, without answering, when Krishnā in such distress, dragged into the assembly and sought to be made a slave, asked him to say the truth,[32]—that preceptor, who, while all the other warriors were fatigued, cased Duryodhana in invulnerable armour when the latter desired to slay Phālguna and who, having cased him so, appointed him to protect Jayadratha,[33]—that preceptor, who, being acquainted with the *Brāhma* weapon, scrupled not to exterminate the Pānchālas headed by Satyajit that had exerted themselves for my victory,[34]—that preceptor, who, whilst we were being unrighteously exiled from our kingdom, freely told us to go into the woods although he had been solicited by our friends to withhold his permission![35]* Alas,

* I adopt the Bombay reading of the 2nd line of 35 and think that Nilakantha explains it correctly.—T.

that great friend of ours hath been slain! For his sake, I will, with all my friends, lay down my life![36]—After Kunti's son Yudhishthira had said this, he of Daçārha's race, (*viz.*, Keçava), quickly forbidding the troops, by motion of his arms, to fly away, said these words:[37]—Speedily lay down your weapons, all of you, and alight from your vehicles! Even this is the means ordained by the illustrious one, (*viz.*, Nārāyana himself,) for baffling this weapon![38] Come down on the Earth, all of you, from your elephants and steeds and cars! If you stand weaponless on the Earth, this weapon will not slay you![39] In those places where you will fight for quelling the force of this weapon, the Kauravas will become more powerful than you![40] Those men, however, that will throw down their weapons and alight from their vehicles, will not, in this battle, be slain by this weapon![41] They, however, that will, even in imagination, contend against this weapon, will all be slain even if they seek refuge deep beneath the Earth![42] —The warriors of the Pāndava army, hearing, O Bhārata, these words of Vāsudeva, threw down their weapons and drove away from their hearts all desire of battle.[43] Then Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, beholding the warriors about to abandon their weapons, said these words, O king, gladdening them all:[44]—None should lay down his weapons here! I shall, with my shafts, oppose this weapon of Drona's son![45] With this heavy mace of mine that is decked with gold, I shall career in this battle like the Destroyer himself, quelling this weapon of Drona's son![46] There is no man here that is equal to me in prowess, even as there is no luminary in the firmament that is equal to the Sun.[47] Behold these two strong arms of mine like unto the trunks of a couple of mighty elephants, capable of pulling down the mountains of Himavat![48] I am the one person here that possesses the might of ten thousand elephants! I am without a peer, even as Cakra is known to be in heaven among the celestials![49] Let people witness today the energy of these two arms of my broad-chested self, while engaged in baffling the bright and blazing weapon of Drona's son![50] If there be none (else) capable of contending against the *Nārāyana* weapon, even I shall contend against it today in the

very sight of all the Kurus and the Pāndavas![51] O Arjuna, O Vibhatsu, thou shouldst not lay *Gāndiva* aside! A stain will then attach to thee like the Moon![52]—Thus addressed by Bhima, Arjuna said,—O Bhima, even this is my great vow, *viz.*, that my *Gāndiva* shall not be used against the *Nārāyana* weapon, kine, and Brāhmanas![53]—Thus answered by Arjuna, Bhima, that chastiser of foes, riding on his car of solar effulgence, whose rattle, besides, resembled the roar of the clouds, rushed against the son of Drona.[54] Endued with great activity and prowess, the son of Kunti, in consequence of his extreme lightness of hand, within the twinkling of an eye, covered Açwatthāman with a shower of weapons.[55] Then Drona's son, smiling at the rushing Bhima and addressing him (in proper words), covered him with arrows inspired with *mantras* and equipt with blazing points.[56] Shrouded with those shafts that vomited fire and resembled snakes of blazing mouths, as if covered with sparks of gold,[57] the form, O king, of Bhimasena in that battle looked like that of a mountain in the evening when covered with fire.[58] That weapon of Drona's son, directed against Bhimasena, increased in energy and might, O king, like a conflagration assisted by the wind.[59] Beholding that weapon of terrible energy thus increasing in might, a panic entered the hearts of all the combatants of the Pāndava army with the exception of Bhima.[60] Then all of them, throwing down their weapons on the Earth, alighted from their cars and steeds.[61] After they had thrown down their weapons, and alighted from their vehicles, that weapon of exceeding energy fell upon the head of Bhima.[62] All creatures, especially the Pāndavas, uttered cries of *Oh* and *Alas*, beholding Bhimasena overwhelmed by the energy of that weapon,' "[63]

SECTION CCI.

"Sanjaya said,—Beholding Bhimasena overwhelmed by that weapon, Dhananjaya, for baffling its energy, covered him with the *Vāruna* weapon.[1] In consequence of the lightness of Arjuna's arms, and owing also to the fiery force that shrouded Bhima,

none could see that the latter had been covered with the *Vāruna* weapon.[2] Shrouded with the weapon of Drona's son, Bhima, with his steeds, driver, and car, became incapable of being gazed at like a fire of blazing flames in the midst of another fire.[3] As at the close of night, O king, all the luminaries run towards the *Asta* hill, even so the fiery shafts (of Açwatthāman) all began to proceed towards Bhimasena's car.[4] Indeed, Bhima himself, his car, steeds, and diver, O sire, thus shrouded by Drona's son, seemed to be in the midst of a conflagration.[5] As the (*Yuga*) fire, after consuming the entire universe with its mobile and immobile creatures when the hour of dissolution comes, at last enters the mouth of the Creator, even so that weapon of Drona's son began to enter the body of Bhimasena.[6] As one cannot perceive a fire if it penetrate into the sun or the sun if it penetrate into a fire, even so none could perceive that energy which penetrated into Bhima's body.[7] Beholding that weapon thus investing Bhima all around, and seeing Drona's son swelling with energy and might, the latter being then without an antagonist,[8] and observing also that all the warriors of the Pāndava army had laid down their weapons and that all the mighty car-warriors of that host headed by Yudhishthira had turned away their faces from the foe,[9] those two heroes, *viz.*, Arjuna and Vāsudeva, both endued with great splendour, quickly alighting from their car, ran towards Bhima.[10] Those two mighty men, diving into that energy born of the might of Açwatthāman's weapon, had recourse to the power of illusion.[11] The fire of that weapon consumed them not, in consequence of their having laid aside their weapons, as also in consequence of the force of the *Vāruna* weapon, and owing also to the energy possessed by themselves.[12] Then Nara and Nārāyana, for the pacification of the *Nārāyana* weapon, began forcibly to drag Bhima and all his weapons.[13] Thus dragged by them, Kunti's son, that mighty car-warrior, began to roar aloud. Thereupon that terrible and invincible weapon of Drona's son began to increase (in might and energy).[14] Then Vāsudeva, addressing Bhima, said,—How is it, O son of Pāndu, that, though forbidden by us, thou, O son of Kunti, dost not yet abstain from battle?[15] If the Kurus

could now be vanquished in battle, then we, as also all these foremost of men would certainly have continued to fight.[16] Behold, all the warriors of thy host have alighted from their cars! For this reason, O son of Kunti, do thou also come down from thy car![17]—Having said these words, Krishna brought Bhima down from his car. The latter, with eyes red as blood in rage, was sighing like a snake.[18] When, however, he was dragged down from his car and made to lay aside his weapons, the *Nārāyana* weapon, that scorcher of foes, became pacified.'[19]

"Sanjaya continued,—When, by this means, the unbearable energy of that weapon became stilled, all the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, became clear.[20] Delicious breezes began to blow, and birds and animals all became quiet. The steeds and elephants became cheerful, as also all the warriors, O ruler of men![21] Indeed, when the terrible energy of that weapon, O Bhārata, became stilled, Bhima of great intelligence shone resplendent like the morning Sun.[22] The remnant of the Pāndava host, beholding the pacification of the *Nārāyana* weapon, once more stood prepared on the field for compassing the destruction of thy son.[23] When, after that weapon had been baffled, the Pāndava host stood arrayed, Duryodhana, O king, addressing Drona's son, said,[24]—O Açwatthāman, once more use that weapon speedily, since the Pānchālas are once more arrayed, desirous of victory![25]—Thus addressed by thy son, O sire, Açwatthāman, sighing cheerlessly, replied unto the king in these words:[26]—That weapon, O king, cannot be brought back! It cannot be used twice! If brought back, it will, without doubt, slay the person calling it back![27] Vāsudeva hath, by what means thou hast seen, caused it to be baffled! For this, O ruler of men, the destruction of the foe hath not been compassed in battle![28] Defeat and death, however, are the same. Rather, defeat is worse than death! Lo, the enemy, vanquished and compelled to lay down his arms, looks as if deprived of life![29]—Duryodhana then said,—O preceptor's son, if it be so, if this weapon cannot be used twice, let those slayers of their preceptor be slain with other weapons then, O foremost one of all persons acquainted with weapons![30] In thee are all celestial weapons as well as in

the Three-eyed (Civa) of immeasuarble energy! If thou wishest it not, even Purandara in rage cannot escape thee![31]—'

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'After Drona had been slain with the aid of fraud, and the *Nārāyana* weapon baffled, what, indeed, did Drona's son, thus urged by Duryodhana, then do,[32] beholding the Pārthas once more arrived for battle, freed from the influence of the *Nārāyana* weapon, and careering at the head of their divisions?'[33]

"Sanjaya said,—'Remembering the slaughter of his sire, Drona's son, owning the device of the lion's tail on his banner, filled with rage and casting off all fears, rushed against the son of Prishata.[34] Rushing at him, O bull among men, that foremost of warriors, with great impetuosity, pierced the Pānchāla prince with five and twenty small arrows.[35] Then Dhrishtadyumna, O king, pierced Drona's son that resembled a blazing fire, with four and sixty shafts.[36] And he pierced Açatthāman's driver also with twenty arrrows whetted on stone and equipt with wings of gold, and then his four steeds with four sharp arrows.[37] Repeatedly piercing Drona's son, and causing the Earth to tremble with his leonine roars, Dhrishtadyumna then seemed to be employed in taking the lives of all creatures in the world in dreadful battle.[38] Making death itself his goal, the mighty son of Prishata, O king, accomplished in weapons and endued with sureness of aim, then rushed against Drona's son alone.[39] Of immeasurable soul, that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, the prince of Pānchāla, poured upon Açwatthāman's head a shower of arrows.[40] Then Drona's son, in that battle, covered the angry prince with winged shafts. And once more he pierced the latter with ten shafts, remembering the slaughter of his father.[41] Then cutting off the standard and bow of the Pānchala prince with a couple of well-shot shafts equipt with heads like razors, Drona's son began to grind his foe with other arrows.[42] In that dreadful battle, Açwatthman made his antagonist steedless and driverless and carless, and covered his followers also with thick showers of shafts.[43] At this, the Pānchāla troops, O king, mangled by means of those arrowy showers, fled away in fear and great affliction.[44] Beholding the troops turning away from battle and Dhrithta-

dyumna exceedingly afflicted, the grandson of Cini quickly urged his car against that of Drona's son.[45] He then, afflicted Açwatthāman with eight keen shafts. And once more striking that angry warrior with twenty shafts of diverse kinds,[46] he pierced Açwatthāman's driver, and then his four steeds with four shafts. With great deliberation and displaying a wonderful lightness of hand, he cut off Açwatthāman's bow and standard.[47] Sātyaki then cut into fragments the gold-decked car of his foe together with its steeds. And then he deeply pierced Açwatthāman in the chest with thirty arrows in that battle.[48] Thus afflicted, O king, (by Sātyaki), and shrouded with arrows, the mighty Açwatthāman knew not what to do.[49] When the preceptor's son had fallen into that plight, thy son, that mighty car-warrior, accompanied by Kripa and Karna and others, began to cover the Sātwata hero with arrows.[50] All of them began quickly to pierce Sātyaki from every side with keen shafts. Duryodhana pierced him with twenty and Caradwat's son Kripa with three. And Kritavarman pierced him with ten, and Karna with fifty. And Dusçāsana pierced him with a hundred arrows, and Vrishasena with seven.[51-52] Sātyaki, however, O king, soon made all those great car-warriors fly away from the field, deprived of their cars.[53] Meanwhile Açwatthāman, O bull of Bharata's race, recovering consciousness, and sighing repeatedly in sorrow, began to think of what he should do.[54] Riding then upon another car, that scorcher of foes, *viz.*, the son of Drona, began to resist Sātyaki, shooting hundreds of arrows.[55] Beholding Açwatthāman once more approaching him in battle, the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki once more made him carless and caused him to turn back.[56] Then the Pāndavas, O king, beholding the prowess of Sātyaki, blew their conchs with great force, and uttered loud leonine roars.[57] Having deprived Açwatthāman of his car thus, Sātyaki of unbaffled prowess then slew three thousand mighty car-warriors of Vrishasena's division.[58] And then he slew fifteen thousand elephants of Kripa's force, and fifty thousand horse of Cakuni.[59] Then the valiant son of Drona, O monarch, riding upon another car, and highly enraged with Sātyaki, proceeded against the latter, desirous of slaying him.[60] Beholding him approach

again, the grandson of Cini, that chastiser of foes, once more pierced and mangled him with keen shafts fiercer than those he had used before.[61] Deeply pierced with those arrows of diverse forms by Yuyudhāna, that great bowman, *viz.*, the angry son of Drona, smilingly addressed his foe and said,[62]—O grandson of Cini, I know thy partiality for Dhrishtadyumna, that slayer of his preceptor, but thou shalt not be able to rescue him or thy own self when attacked by me![63] I swear to thee, O grandson of Cini, by Truth and by my ascetic austerities, that I shall know no peace till I slay all the Pānchālas![64] You may unite the forces of the Pāndavas and those of the Vrishnis together, but I shall still slay the Somakas![65]—Saying this, the son of Drona shot at Sātyaki an excellent and straight arrow possessed of the effulgence of the Sun, even as Cakra had hurled in days of yore his thunder at the *Asura* Vritra.[66] Thus shot by Açwatthāman, that arrow, piercing through the armour of Sātyaki, and passing through his body, entered the Earth like a hissing snake entering its hole.[67] His armour pierced through, the heroic Sātyaki, like an elephant deeply struck with the hook, became bathed in blood that flowed from his wound. His bow with arrow fixed thereon being then loosened from his grasp, he sat down on the terrace of his car, strengthless and covered all over with blood. Seeing this, his driver speedily bore him away from Drona's son.[68-69] With another shaft, perfectly straight and equipt with goodly wings, that scorcher of foes, *viz.*, Açwatthāman, struck Dhrishtadyumna between his eyebrows.[70] The Pānchāla prince had before this been much pierced; therefore, deeply wounded by that arrow, he became exceedingly weak and supported himself by seizing his flag-staff. Beholding Dhrishtadyumna thus afflicted by Açwatthāman like an infuriate elephant by a lion, five heroic car-warriors of the Pāndava army, *viz.*, Kiritin, Bhimasena, Vrihatkshatra of Puru's race, the youthful prince of the Chedis, and Sudarçana the chief of the Mālavas, quickly rushed against Açwatthāman.[71-73] Armed with bows, all these rushed with cries of *oh* and *alas*. And those heroes quickly encompassed the son of Drona on all sides.[74] Advancing twenty paces, all of them, with great care, simultane-

ously struck the angry son of the preceptor with five and twenty arrows.[75] Drona's son, however, with five and twenty shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison, cut off, almost at the same time, those five and twenty arrows shot at him.[76] Then Açwatthāman afflicted the Paurava prince with seven sharp shafts. And he afflicted the chief of the Mālavas with three, Pārtha with one, and Vrikodara with six shafts.[77] Then all those great car-warriors, O king, pierced Drona's son unitedly and separately with many shafts whetted on stone and equipt with wings of gold.[78] The youthful prince of the Chedis pierced Drona's son with twenty arrows, and Pārtha pierced him with three.[79] Then Drona's son struck Arjuna with six arrows, and Vāsudeva with six, and Bhima with five, and each of the other two, *viz.*, the Mālava and the Paurava, with two arrows.[80] Piercing next the driver of Bhima's car with six arrows, Açwatthāman cut off Bhimasena's bow and standard with a couple of arrows. Then piercing Pārtha once more with a shower of arrows, Drona's son uttered a leonine roar.[81] With the sharp, well-tempered, and terrible arrows shot by Drona's son, the Earth, the sky, the firmament, and the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, all became entirely shrouded both in his front and rear.[82] Endued with fierce energy and equal to Indra himself in prowess, Açwatthāman then, with three arrows, almost simultaneously cut off the two arms, like unto Indra's poles, and the head, of Sudarçana as the latter was seated on his car.[83] Then piercing Paurava with a dart and cutting off his car into minute fragments by means of his arrows, Açwatthāman lopped off his antagonist's two arms smeared with sandal paste and then his head from off his trunk with a broad-headed shaft.[84] Possessed of great activity, he then pierced with many arrows resembling blazing flames of fire in energy, the youthful and mighty prince of the Chedis who was of the hue of the dark lotus, and despatched him to Yama's abode with his driver and steeds.[85] Beholding the chief of the Mālavas, the descendant of Puru, and the youthful ruler of the Chedis slain in his very sight by the son of Drona, Bhimasena, the mighty-armed son of Pāndu, became filled with rage. That scorcher of foes then covered Drona's son in that battle

with hundreds of keen arrows resembling angry snakes of virulent poison. Endued with mighty energy, the angry son of Drona then, destroying that arrowy shower,[86-88] pierced Bhimasena with sharp shafts. The mighty-armed Bhima then, possessed of great strength, cut off with a broad-headed arrow the bow of Drona's son and then pierced Drona's son himself with a powerful shaft. Throwing away that broken bow, the high-souled son of Drona[89-90] took up another and pierced Bhima with his winged shafts. Then those two, *viz.*, Drona's son and Bhima, both possessed of great prowess and might,[91] began to shower their arrowy downpours like two masses of rain-charged clouds. Gold-winged arrows, whetted on stone and engraved with Bhima's name,[92] shrouded Drona's son like gathering masses of clouds shrouding the Sun. Similarly Bhima was soon shrouded with hundreds and thousands of strong arrows shot by Drona's son. Though shrouded in that battle by Drona's son, that warrior of great skill,[93-94] yet Bhima felt no pain, O monarch, which seemed exceedingly wonderful. Then the mighty-armed Bhima sped ten gold-decked arrows, of great keenness and resembling the darts of Yama himself, at his foe. Those shafts, O sire, falling upon the shoulders of Drona's son,[95-96] quickly pierced his body like snakes penetrating into an anthill. Deeply pierced by the high-souled son of Pāṇḍu, Açwatthāman,[97] closing his eyes, supported himself by seizing his flagstaff. Recovering his senses within a moment, O king, Drona's son,[98] bathed in blood, mustered all his wrath. Forcibly struck by the high-souled son of Pāṇḍu, Açwatthāman,[99] endued with mighty arms, rushed with great speed towards the car of Bhimasena. And then, O Bhārata, he sped at Bhimasena, from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch, a hundred arrows of fierce energy, all looking like snakes of virulent poison. Pāṇḍu's son Bhima also, proud of his prowess in battle, disregarding Açwatthāman's energy, speedily showered upon him dense arrowy downpours. Then Drona's son, O king, cutting off Bhima's bow by means of his arrows,[100-102] and filled with rage, struck the Pāṇḍava in the chest with many keen shafts. Incapable of brooking that feat, Bhimasena took up another bow,[103] and pierced Drona's son in that

battle with five keen shafts. Indeed, showering upon each other their arrowy downpours like two masses of clouds at the close of summer, those two warriors,[104] with eyes red as copper in rage, completely covered each other in that battle with their shafts. Frightening each other with the terrible sounds they made with their palms,[105] they continued to fight with each other, each counteracting the feats of the other. Then bending his formidable bow decked with gold,[106] Drona's son began to gaze steadfastly at Bhima who was thus shooting his shafts at him. At that time Açwatthāman looked like the meridian Sun of blazing rays in an autumnal day.[107] So quickly then did he shoot his shafts that people could not see when he took them out of his quiver, when he fixed them on the bowstring, when he drew the string, and when he let them off.[108] Indeed, when thus employed in shooting his arrows, his bow, O monarch, seemed to be incesasntly drawn to a fiery circle.[109] Shafts in hundred thousands, sped from his bow, seemed to course through the welkin like a flight of locusts.[110] Indeed, those terrible shafts decked with gold, shot from the bow of Drona's son, coursed incessantly towards Bhima's car.[111] The prowess, O Bhārata, that we then beheld of Bhimasena, and his might, energy, and spirit, were exceedingly wonderful,[112] for, regarding that terrible shower of arrows, thick as a gathering mass of clouds, falling around him, to be nothing more than a downpour of rain at the close of summer,[113] Bhima of terrible prowess, desirous of slaying the son of Drona, in return poured his arrows upon the latter like a cloud in the season of rains.[114] Bhima's large and formidable bow of golden back, incessantly drawn in that battle, looked resplendent like a second bow of Indra.[115] Shafts in hundreds and thousands, issuing from it, shrouded Drona's son, that ornament of battle, in that encounter.[116] The showers of shafts, shot by both of them, were so dense, O sire, that the very wind, O king, could not find room for coursing through them.[117] Then Drona's son, O king, desirous of slaying Bhima, sped at him many gold-decked arrows of keen points steeped in oil.[118] Showing his superiority to Drona's son, Bhimasena cut off each of those arrows into three fragments before they could come at him. The son

of Pāndu then said,—*Wait, Wait!*[119]—And once more the mighty son of Pāndu filled with rage, and desirous of slaying the son of Drona, shot at him a terrible shower of fierce arrows.[120] Then Drona's son, that warrior acquainted with the highest weapons, quickly destroying that arrowy shower by the illusion of his own weapons, cut off Bhima's bow in that encounter.[121] Filled with rage, he then pierced Bhima himself with innumerable shafts in that battle. Endued with great might, Bhima then, after his bow had been cut off, hurled a dart at Açwatthāman's car, having whirled it previously with great impetuosity. The son of Drona, displaying the lightness of his hands in that encounter, quickly cut off, by means of sharp shafts, that dart as it coursed towards him with the splendour of a blazing brand. Meanwhile the terrible Vrikodara, taking up a very strong bow, and smiling the while, began to pierce the son of Drona with many arrows. Then Drona's son, O monarch, with a straight shaft, pierced the forehead of Bhima's driver. The latter, deeply pierced by the mighty son of Drona,[122-26] fell into a swoon, O king, abandoning the reins of the steeds. The driver of Bhima's car having fallen into a swoon, the steeds, O king, began to fly away with great speed, in the very sight of all the bowmen. Beholding Bhima carried away from the field of battle by those running steeds,[127-28] the unvanquished Açwatthāman joyfully blew his huge conch. Beholding Bhimasena borne away from the field, all the Pānchālas,[129] inspired with fear, abandoning the car of Dhrishtadyumna, fled away on every side. Then Drona's son, shooting his shafts fiercely, pursued those broken troops, causing a great carnage among them. Thus slaughtered in battle by the son of Drona, those Kshatriyas fled away in all directions from fear of that warrior.' "[130-31]

SECTION CCII.

Sanjaya said,—'Beholding that force broken, Kunti's son Dhananjaya of immeasurable soul proceeded against Açwatthāman from desire of slaying him.[1] Those troops then, O king, rallied with effort by Govinda and Arjuna, stayed on the field

of battle.[2] Only Vibhatsu, supported by the Somakas and the Matsyas, shot his arrows at the Kauravas and checked their onset[3]* Quickly approaching Açwatthāman, that great bowman having the mark of the lion's tail on his banner, Arjuna addressed him, saying,[4]—Show me now the might thou hast, the energy, the knowledge, and the manliness, that are in thee, as also thy affection for the Dhārtarāshtras and thy hatred for us, and the highest mettle of which thou art capable! Even Prishata's son, that slayer of Drona, will quell thy pride today![5-6] Come now and encounter the Pānchāla prince, that hero resembling the *Yuga* fire and like the Destroyer himself unto all his foes, as also myself with Govinda! Thou displayest thy pride in battle, but I shall quell that pride of thine![7]"

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'The preceptor's son, O Sanjaya, is possessed of might and worthy of respect! He beareth great love to Dhananjaya and the high-souled Dhananjaya also loveth him in return![8] Vibhatsu had never addressed Drona's son before in this way! Why then did the son of Kunti address his friend in such harsh words?'[9]

"Sanjaya said,—"Upon the fall of the youthful prince of the Chedis, of Vrihatkhatra of Puru's race, and of Sudarçana, the chief of the Mālavas, who was well-accomplished in the science of arms,[10] and upon the defeat of Dhrishtadyumna and Sātyaki and Bhima, and feeling great pain and touched to the quick by those words of Yudhishthira, and remembering all his former woes, O lord, Vibhatsu, in consequence of his grief, felt such wrath rise within him that he had never experienced its like before.[11-12] It was for this that, like a vulgar person, he addressed the preceptor's son, who was worthy of every respect, in such unworthy, indecent, bitter, and harsh language.[13] Addressed, from wrath, in such harsh and cruel words by Pārtha, O king, Drona's son, that foremost of all mighty bowmen, became highly angry with Pārtha and especially with Krishna. The valiant Açwatthāman then, staying resolutely on his car, touched water,[14-15] and invoked the *Āgneya* weapon incapable of being resisted by the very gods.

* I adopt the Bombay reading.—T.

Aiming at all his visible and invisible foes, the preceptor's son,[16] that slayer of hostile heroes, inspired with *mantras* a blazing shaft possessed of the effulgence of a smokeless fire, and let it off on all sides, filled with rage.[17] Dense showers of arrows then issued from it in the welkin. Endued with fiery flames, those arrows encompassed Pārtha on all sides.[18] Meteors flashed down from the firmament. A thick gloom suddenly shrouded the (Pāndava) host. All the points of the compass also were enveloped by that darkness.[19] *Rākshashas* and *Piçāchas*, crowding together, uttered fiece cries. Inauspicious winds began to blow. The Sun himself no longer gave any heat.[20] Ravens fiercely croaked on all sides. Clouds roared in the welkin, showering blood.[21] Birds and beasts and kine, and *Munis* of high vows and souls under complete control, became exceedingly uneasy.[22] The very elements seemed to be perturbed. The Sun seemed to turn round. The universe, scorched with heat, seemed to be in a fever.[23] The elephants and other creatures of the land, scorched by the energy of that weapon, ran in fright, breathing heavily and desirous of protection against that terrible force.[24] The very waters being heated, the creatures residing in that element, O Bhārata, became exceedingly uneasy and seemed to burn.[25] From all the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, from the firmament and the very Earth, showers of sharp and fierce arrows fell and issued, with the impetuosity of Garuda or the wind.[26] Struck and burnt by those shafts of Açwatthāman that were all endued with the impetuosity of the thunder, the hostile warriors fell down like trees burnt down by a raging fire.[27] Huge elephants, burnt by that weapon, fell down on the Earth all around, uttering fierce cries loud as those of the clouds.[28] Other huge elephants, scorched by that fire, ran hither and thither, and roared aloud in fear, as if in the midst of a forest conflagration.[29] The steeds, O king, and the cars also, burnt by the energy of that weapon, looked, O sire, like the tops of trees burnt in a forest fire.[30] Thousands of cars fell down on all sides. Indeed, O Bhārata, it seemed that the divine lord *Agni* burnt the (Pāndava) host in that battle,[31] like the *Samvarta* fire consuming everything at the end of the *Yuga*.

"Beholding the Pāndava army thus burning in that dreadful battle,[32] thy soldiers, O king, filled with joy, uttered leonine shouts. Indeed, the combatants of thy army, desirous of victory and filled with joy, speedily blew thousands of trumpets, O Bhārata, of diverse kinds. Darkness having enveloped the world during that fierce battle, the entire Pāndava army, with Savyaçāchin, the son of Pāndu, could not be seen. We had never before, O king, heard of or seen the like of that weapon which Drona's son created in wrath on that occasion. Then Arjuna, O king, invoked into existence the *Brāhma* weapon,[33-36] capable of baffling every other weapon, as ordained by the Lotus-born (Brāhman) himself. Within a moment that darkness was dispelled.[37] Cool winds began to blow, and all the points of the compass became clear and bright. We then beheld a wonderful sight, *viz.*, a full *Akshauhini* (of the Pāndava troops) laid low.[38] Burnt by the energy of Açwatthāman's weapon, the forms of the slain could not be distinguished. Then those two heroic and mighty bowmen, *viz.*, Keçava and Arjuna, freed from that darkness,[39] were seen together, like the Sun and the Moon in the firmament. Indeed, the wielder of *Gāndiva* and Keçava were both unwounded.[40] Equipt with its banners and standard and steeds, with its *Anukarsha* uninjured, and with all the mighty weapons stored on it remaining uninjured, that car, so terrible to thy warriors, freed from that darkness, shone resplendent on the field.[41] And soon there arose diverse sounds of life mingled with the blare of conchs and the beat of drums, from among the Pāndava troops filled with joy.[42] Both hosts had thought that Keçava and Arjuna had perished. Beholding Keçava and Arjuna, therefore, (freed from that darkness and the energy of that weapon), and seeing them reappear so quickly, the Pāndavas were filled with joy, and the Kauravas with wonder.[43] Unwounded and full of cheerfulness, those two heroes blew their excellent conchs. Indeed, seeing the Pārthas filled with joy, thy soldiers became exceedingly melancholy.[44] Seeing those two high-souled ones, (*viz.*, Keçava and Arjuna), freed (from the energy of his weapon) the son of Drona became very cheerless. For a moment he reflected, O sire, on what

had happened.[45] And having reflected, O king, he became filled with anxiety and grief. Breathing long and hot sighs, he became exceedingly cheerless.[46] Laying aside his bow then, the son of Drona speedily alighted from his car, and saying,—*O fie, O fie, Every thing is untrue!*—he ran away from the fight.[47] On his way he met Vyāsa, the abode of Saraswati, the compiler of the *Vedas*, the habitation of those scriptures, unstained by sin, and of the hue of rain-charged clouds.[48] Beholding him, that perpetuater of Kuru's race, standing on his way, the son of Drona, with voice choked in grief, and like one exceedingly cheerless, saluted him and said,[49]—O sire, O sire, is this an illusion, or is it a caprice (on the part of the weapon)! I do not know what it is! Why, indeed, hath my weapon become fruitless? What breach (has there been in the method of invocation)?[50] Or, is it something abnormal, or, is it a victory over Nature (achieved by the two Krishnas) since they are yet alive? It seems that Time is irresistible![51] Neither *Asuras*, nor *Gandharvas*, nor *Piçāchas*, nor *Rākshasas*, nor *Uragas*, *Yakshas*, and birds, nor human beings,[52] can venture to baffle this weapon shot by me! This fiery weapon, however, having slain only one *Akshauhini* of troops, hath been pacified![53] This exceedingly fierce weapon shot by me is capable of slaying all creatures! For what reason then could it not slay Kecava and Arjuna both of whom are endued with the attributes of humanity?[54] Asked by me, O holy one, answer me truly! O great *Muni*, I desire to hear all this in detail![55]—'

"'Vyāsa said,—Of high significance is this matter that thou enquirest of me from surprise! I will tell thee everything, listen attentively![56] He that is called Nārāyana is older than the oldest ones. For accomplishing some purpose, that Creator of the universe took his birth as the son of Dharma.[57] On the mountains of Himavat he underwent the severest ascetic austerities. Endued with mighty energy, and resembling fire or the Sun (in splendour), he stood there with arms upraised.[58] Possessed of eyes like lotus petals, he emaciated himself there for six and sixty thousand years, subsisting all the while upon air alone.[59] Once more undergoing severe austerities of another kind for twice that period, he filled the space be

tween Earth and heaven with his energy.[60] When by those austerities, O sire, he became like *Brahma*,* he then behold Master, Origin, and Guardian of the Universe, the Lord of all the gods, the Supreme Deity, who is exceedingly difficult of being gazed at, who is minuter than the minutest and larger than the largest,[61-62] who is called *Rudra*,† who is the Lord of all the superior ones, who is called Hara and Cambhu, who has matted locks on his head, who is the infuser of life into every form, who is the First cause of all immobile and mobile things,[63] who is irresistible and of frightful aspect, who is of fierce wrath and great soul, who is the All-destroyer, and of large heart; who bareth the celestial bow and a couple of quivers, who is cased in golden armour, and whose energy is infinite,[64] who holdeth *Pināka*, who is armed with thunderbolt, blazing trident, battle-axe, mace, and a large sword; whose eye-brows are fair, whose locks are matted, who wieldeth the heavy short club, who hath the moon on his forehead, who is clad in tiger-skin, and who is armed with the bludgeon;[65] who is decked with beautiful *angadas*, who hath snakes for his sacred thread, and who is surrounded by diverse creatures of the universe and by numerous ghosts and spirits; who is the One; who is the abode of ascetic austerities, and who is highly adored by persons of venerable age;[66] who is Water, Heaven, Sky, Earth, Sun, Moon, Wind, and Fire, and who is the measure of the duration of the universe. Persons of wicked behaviour can never obtain a sight of that unborn one, that slayer of all haters of Brāhmanas, that giver of emancipation.‡[67] Only Brāhmanas of righteous conduct, when cleansed of their sins and freed from the control of grief, behold him with their

* Nilkantha explains this to mean that when he became unconnected with the world, rising superior to everything connected with the world.—T.

† The terrible.—T.

‡ *Amritasya yonim*, literally, the origin or cause of immortality, *i, e*, he from whom immortality springs. Hence, as explained by Nilakantha, the phrase means the source of salvation, for those only that are emancipate become immortal as the Supreme Soul itself.—T.

mind's eye. In consequence of his ascetic austerities, Nārāyana obtained a sight of that unfading one, that embodiment of righteousness, that adorable one, that Being having the universe for his form. Beholding that supreme abode of all kinds of splendour, that god with a garland of *Akshas* round his neck, Vāsudeva, with gratified soul, became filled with delight which he sought to express by words, heart, understanding, and body. Then Nārayana worshipped that Divine Lord, that First cause of the Universe,[68-69] that giver of boons, that puissant one sporting with the fair-limbed Pārvati, that high-souled Being surrounded by large bands of ghosts and spirits,[70] that Unborn one, that supreme Lord, that embodiment of the Unmanifest, that Essence of all causes, that one of Unfading power. Having saluted Rudra, that destroyer of the *Asura* Andhaka, the lotus-eyed Nārāyana, with devotion filling his heart, began to praise the Three-eyed one (in these words):[71]—O adorable one, O first of all the gods, the creators of everything, (*viz.*, the *Prajāpatis*) who are the regents of the world, and who, having entered the Earth,—thy first work,—had, O lord, protected it before, have all sprung from thee![72] Gods, *Asuras*, *Nāgas*, *Rākshasas*, *Piçāchas*, human beings, birds, *Gandharvas*, *Yakshas*, and other creatures, with the entire Universe, we know, have all sprung from thee![73] Everything that is done for propitiating Indra, and Yama, and Varuna, and Kuvera, and the *Pitris*, and Tashtri, and Soma, is really offered to thee! Form and light, sound and sky, wind and touch, taste and water, scent and earth,*[74] Time, Brahman himself, the *Vedas*, the *Brāhmanas*, and all these mobile and immobile objects, have sprung from thee! Vapours rising from diverse receptacles of water, become rain-drops, which, falling upon the Earth, are separated from one another. When the time of the Universal dissolution comes, those individual drops, separated from one another, once more unite together and make the Earth one vast expanse of water.[75] He that is learned, thus observing the

* *I. e.*, the five attributes perceivable by the five senses, with the five objects of Nature with which they are directly connected or inwhich they manifest themselves.—T.

origin and the destruction of all things, understands thy Oneness! Two birds, (*viz.*, *Içwara* and *Jiva*), four *Açwatthas* with their wordy branches, (*viz.*, the *Vedas*), the seven guardians (*viz.*, the five essences or elements and the heart and the understanding.)[76] and the ten others that hold this city (*viz.*, the ten senses that constitute the body), have all been created by thee, but thou art separate from and independent of them! The Past, the Future, and the Present, over each of which none can have any sway, are from thee, as also the seven worlds and this Universe.[77] I am thy devoted adorer, be graceful unto me! Do not injure me, by causing evil thoughts to penetrate my heart! Thou art the Soul of souls, incapable of being known. He that knows thee as the Universal Seed attaineth to *Brahma*.[78] Desiring to pay thee respects, I am praising thee, endeavouring to ascertain thy real nature, O thou that art incapable of being understood by the very gods! Adored by me, grant me the boons I desire but which are difficult of acquisition! Do not hide thyself in thy illusion![79]—

"'Vyāsa continued,—The blue-throated god of inconceivable soul, that wielder of *Pināka*, that divine Lord ever praised by the *Rishis*, then gave boons unto Vāsudeva who deserved them all.[80] The great God said,—[O Nārāyana, through my grace, amongst men, gods, and *Gandharvas*, thou shalt be of immeasurable might and soul! Neither gods, nor *Asuras*, nor great *Uragas*, nor *Piçāchas*, nor *Gandharvas*, nor men, nor *Rākshasas*, nor birds, nor *Nāgas*, nor any creatures in the Universe, shall ever be able to bear thy prowess! No one amongst even the celestials shall be able to vanquish thee in battle![81-83] Through my grace, none shall ever be able to cause thee pain by weapon or thunder-bolt or fire or wind or with any object that is wet or dry, or with any mobile or immobile thing! Thou shalt be superior to myself if thou ever goest to battle with me![84-85]—Thus were these boons acquired by Caurin in days of yore. Even that god now walketh the Earth (as Vāsudeva), beguiling the universe by his illusion.[86] From Nārāyana's asceticism was born a great *Muni* of the name of Nara, equal to Nārāyana himself. Know that Arjuna is none else than that Nara![87] Those two *Rishis*, said to be older than

the oldest gods, take their births in every *Yuga* for subserving the purposes of the world.[88] Thyself also, O thou of great heart, hast been born as a portion of Rudra, by virtue of all thy religious acts and as a consequence of high ascetic austerities, endued with great energy and wrath.[89] Thou wert (in a former life) endued with great wisdom and equal to a god! Regarding the universe to consist only of Mahādeva, thou hadst emaciated thyself by diverse vows from desire of gratifying that god.[90] Assuming the form of a very superior person, that blazed with splendour, thou hadst, O giver of honors, worshipped the great god with *mantras*, with *homa*, and with offerings.[91] Thus adored by thee in thy former life, the great god became gratified with thee, and granted thee numerous boons, O learned one, that thou hadst cherished in thy heart.[92] Like Keçava's and Arjuna's, thy birth, acts, and ascetic austerities, are superior also! Like them, in thy worship, thou hast, in every *Yuga*, adored the great god in his Phallic form.[93] This Keçava is that devoted worshipper of Rudra who has sprung from Rudra himself! Keçava always worships the Lord Civa, regarding his Phallic emblem to be the origin of the Universe.[94] In Keçava is always present that knowledge in consequence of which he views the identity of *Brahma* with the universe, and that other knowledge by which the Past, the Present, and the Future, the near and the remote, is all seen as if the whole were before his eyes. The gods, the *Siddhas*, and the great *Rishis*, adore Keçava for obtaining that highest object in the universe, *viz.*, Mahādeva. Keçava is the Creator of everything. The Eternal Krishna should be adored with sacrifices.[95-96] The Lord Keçava always worshipeth Civa in the Phallic emblem as the origin of all creatures. The god having the bull for his mark cherisheth greater regard for Keçava.][97]—

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing these words of Vyāsa, Drona's son, that mighty car-warrior, bowed unto Rudra and regarded Keçava as worthy of the highest regards.[98] Having his soul under complete control, he became filled with delight, the marks whereof appeared on his body. Bowing unto the great *Rishi*, Açwatthāman then, casting his eyes on the (Kuru) army,

caused it to be withdrawn (for nightly rest).[99] Indeed, when, after the fall of Drona, the cheerless Kurus retired from the field, the Pāndavas also, O monarch, caused their army to be withdrawn.[100] Having fought for five days and caused an immense carnage, that Brāhmana well-versed in the *Vedas, viz.*, Drona, repaired, O king, to the region of Brahman!' "[101]

SECTION CCIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—"Upon the slaughter of that *Atiratha, viz.*, Drona, by Prishata's son, what did my sons and the Pāndavas next do?'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—"After the rout of the Kuru army upon the slaughter of that *Atiratha, viz.*, Drona, by Prishata's son, Dhananjaya the son of Kunti,[2] beholding a wonderful phenomenon in connection with his own victory, asked Vyāsa, O bull of Bharata's race, who came thither in course of his wanderings,[3] saying—O great *Rishi*, while I was engaged in slaying the foe in battle, with showers of bright shafts, I continually beheld before me, proceeding in advance of my car, a person of blazing hue, as if endued with the effulgence of fire. Withersoever he proceeded with his uplifted lance, all the hostile warriors were seen to break before him.[4-5] Broken in reality by him, people regarded the foe to have been broken by me. Following in his wake I only destroyed those already destroyed by him.[6] O holy one, tell me who was that foremost of persons, armed with lance, resembling the Sun himself in energy, that was thus seen by me?[7] He did not touch the Earth with his feet, nor did he hurl his lance even once. In consequence of his energy, thousands of lances issued out of that one lance held by him![8]—

'"Vyāsa said,—Thou hast, O Arjuna, seen Cankara, that First cause from which have sprung the *Prajāpatis*, that puissant Being endued with great energy, he that is the embodiment of heaven, Earth, and Sky, the Divine Lord, the protector of the universe, the great Master, the giver of boons, called also *Içāna!* O, seek the protection of that boon-giving Deity, that lord of the universe![9-10] He is called *Mahā*

deva (the Supreme Deity), of Supreme Soul, the one only Lord, with matted locks (on head), the abode of auspiciousness. Of three eyes and mighty arms, he is called *Rudra*, with his locks tied in the shape of a crown, and his body attired in skins.[11] That boon-giving lord of the universe, that Supreme Deity, is also called *Hara* and *Sthānu*. He is the foremost of every being in the universe, he is incapable of being vanquished; he is the delighter of the universe and its Supreme ruler.[12] The first cause, the light and refuge of the universe, he is ever victorious. The Soul and the Creator of the universe, and having the universe for his form, he is possessed of great fame.[13] The Lord of the universe, and its great Ruler, that puissant one is also the master of all actions. Called also *Çambhu*, he is Self-born, he is the lord of all creatures, and the origin of the Past, the Future, and the Present.[14] He is *Yoga* and the lord of *Yoga*; he is called *Sarva*, and is the Lord of the lord of all the worlds. He is superior to everything. The foremost of everything in the Universe, and the highest of all, he is called also *Paramesthin*.[15] The Ordainer of the three worlds, he is the sole refuge of the three worlds. Incapable of being vanquished, he is the Protector of the universe, and above (the necessity of) birth, decay, and death.[16] The soul of knowledge, incapable of being compassed by knowledge, and the highest of all knowledge, he is unknowable. Through grace, he giveth unto his worshippers the boons they desire.[17] That Lord hath for his companions ceslestial beings of diverse forms, some of whom are dwarfs, some having matted locks, some with bald heads, some with short necks, some with large stomachs,[18] some with huge bodies, some possessed of great strength, and some of long ears. All of them, O Pārtha, have deformed faces and mouths and legs, and strange attires.[18-19] That Supreme Deity, called Mahādeva, is worshipped by followers that are even such. Even that Civa, O son, endued with such energy, proceedeth through kindness, in advance of thee.[20] In that fierce battle, O Pārtha, making the very hair stand on end, who else, O Arjuna, than the divine Maheçwara, that foremost of all bowmen, that deity of divine forms, could even in imagnation venture to vanquish that force

which was protected by those great smiters and bowmen, *viz.*, Açwatthāman and Karna and Kripa ?[21-22] None can venture to stay before the warrior that hath Maheçwara walking before him ! There is no being in the three worlds that is equal to him ![23] At the very scent of the enraged Mahādeva, foes in battle tremble and become senseless and fall in large numbers.[24] For this the gods in heaven always adore and bow to him. Those men in this world and those other men of pious conduct,[25] that devoutly worship the boon-giving, divine, and auspicious Rudra, obtain happiness here and attain to the highest state hereafter.[26] O son of Kunti, bow unto him that is peace, unto him called Rudra, of blue throat, exceedingly subtile, and of great effulgence ;[27] unto him called *Kaparddin*, him that is terrible, him that is of tawny eyes, him that is boon-giving ; unto that great ordainer, of red locks, and righteous conduct ; unto him that always does auspicious acts ;[28] unto him that is an object of desire, him that is of tawny eyes, him that is called Sthānu ; him that is called *Purusha* ; unto him that is of tawny hair, him that is bald, him that is exceedingly subtile and of great effulgence ;[29] unto him that is the giver of light, him that is the embodiment of all sacred waters, him that is the God of gods, and him that is endued with great impetuosity ; unto him that is of manifest form, him that is called *Sarva*, him that is of agreeable, attire ;[30] unto him that has an excellent head-gear, him that is of handsome face, him that is of a thousand eyes, him that is the giver of rain ; him that has the mountains for his habitation, him that is Peace, him that is the Protector, him that has barks of trees for his attire ;[31] him whose arms are decked with ornaments of gold, him who is fierce, him that is the lord of all the points of the compass ; him that is the lord of the clouds and of all created beings ;[32] him that is the lord of all trees and of all kine ; him that has his body shrouded with trees ; him who is the celestial generalissimo, him who inspires all thoughts ;[33] him who has the sacrificial laddle in his hand, him who is blazing, him who wields the bow, him who is Rāma's self ; him who has diverse forms, him who is the lord of the universe, him who has the *munja* grass for his

attire;[34] him who has a thousand heads, a thousand eyes, a thousand arms, and a thousand legs![35] O son of Kunti, seek the protection of that boon-giving Lord of the universe, that lord of *Umā*, that god of three eyes, that destroyer of Daksha's sacrifice;[36] that guardian of all created things, that being who is always cheerful, that protector of all beings, that god of unfading glory; that one with matted locks, that mover of all superior beings, that one whose navel is like that of a bull and who hath the bull for his mark;[37] that one who is proud like the bull, who is the lord of bulls, who is represented by the horns of the bull, and who is the bull of bulls; that one who hath the image of the bull on his banner, who is liberal to all righteous persons, who can be approached by *Yoga* only, and whose eyes are like those of a bull;[38] who owneth very superior weapons, who hath Vishnu himself for his arrow, who is the embodiment of righteousness; and who is called Maheçwara; who is of vast stomach, and vast body; who hath a leopard's skin for his seat,[39] who is the lord of the worlds, who is bald, who is devoted to *Brahma* and who loveth Brāhmanas; who is armed with the trident, who is boon-giving, who wieldeth the sword and the shield, and who is highly auspicious![40] who wieldeth the bow called *Pināka*, who is divested of the battle-axe;* and who is the protector and lord of the universe! I place myself in the hands of that divine Lord, that grantor of protection, that god attired in deerskins! Salutations to that Lord of the celestials who hath Vaiçravana for his friend! Salutations ever to him of excellent vows, to him who hath excellent bowmen for his companions,[41-42] to him who himself wieldeth the bow, to that god with whom the bow is a favorite weapon, who is himself the shaft impelled by the bow; who is the bowstring and the bow, and the preceptor teaching the use of the bow![43] Salutations to the god whose weapons are fierce, and who is the foremost of all the gods! Salutations to him of diverse forms, to him who hath many bowmen around him![44] Salutations ever to him who is called *Sthānu* and who has a large number of ex-

* Having given it away to Rāma, his disciple.—T.

cellent bowmen for his companions! Salutations to him who destroyed the tripple city! Salutations to him who slew (the *Asura)* Bhaga![45-46] Salutations to him who is the lord of trees and of men! Salutations to him who is the lord of the (celestial) Mothers, and of those tribes of spirits known by the name of *Ganas!* Salutations ever to him who is the lord of kine and of sacrifices! Salutations ever him to who is the lord of waters and the lord of the gods,[47] who is the destroyer of Surya's teeth, who is of three eyes, who is the grantor of boons; who is called *Hara*, who is blue-throated, and who is of golden locks![48] I will now tell thee, according to my knowledge and as I have heard of them, all the divine deeds of Mahādeva of supreme wisdom.[49] If Mahādeva becomes angry, neither gods, nor *Asuras*, nor *Gandharvas*, nor *Rākshasas*, even if they hide themselves in deep caves, can have peace![50] In days of yore, Daksha, for performing a sacrifice, had collected the necessary articles. Mahādevea destroyed that sacrifice in wrath. Indeed, he became very stern on that occasion.[51] Shooting an arrow from his bow, he uttered terrible roars. The celestials then became filled with anxiety and fright.[52] Indeed, when Mahādeva became angry and the Sacrifice (in its embodied form) fled away, the gods became exceedingly frightened at the twang of Mahādeva's bow and the sound of his palms.[53] The gods and the *Asuras* all fell down and submitted to Mahādeva. All the waters swelled up in agitation, and the Earth trembled.[54] The mountains split, and all the points of the compass and the *Nāgas* became stupified. The universe, enveloped in a thick darkness, could no longer be seen.[55] The splendour of all luminaries with the Sun was destroyed. The *Rishis*, filled with fear, became agitated, and desirous of their own good as also of all creatures, performed propitiatory rites. Surya was then eating the principal sacrificial oblation. Smilingly Cankara approached him and tore out his teeth. The gods then, humbling themselves to him, fled away, trembling.[56-58] Once more Mahādeva aimed at the gods a shower of blazing and keen arrows resembling flames of fire mixed with smoke, or clouds with lightning.[59] Beholding that arrowy shower, all the gods, bowing down unto

Maheçwara, assigned to Rudra a substantial share in sacrifices.[60] In fright, the gods, O prince, sought his protection. His wrath being dispelled, the great god then re-established the sacrifice.[61] The gods that had fled away came back. Indeed, they are to this day afraid of Maheçwara. Formerly the valiant *Asuras* had, in heaven, three cities.[62] Each of those cities was excellent and large. One was made of iron, another of silver, and the third of gold. The golden city belonged to Kamalāksha, the silver city to Tārakāksha,[63] and the third, made of iron, had Vidyunmālin for its lord. With all his weapons, Maghavat (Indra) was unable to make any impression on those cities.[64] Afflicted (by the *Asuras*), all the gods sought the protection of Rudra. Approaching him, all the gods with Vāsava at their head, said,[65]—These terrible dwellers of the tripple city have received boons from Brahman! Filled with pride in consequence of those boons, they are greatly afflicting the universe.[66] O Lord of the god of gods, none, save thee, is competent to slay them! Therefore, O Mahādeva, slay these enemies of the gods![67] O Rudra, creatures slain in every sacrifice shall then be thine!—O lord of the universe, I will overthrow these *Asuras*![68]—Thus addressed by the gods, Mahādeva thus accepted their request, moved by the desire of benefiting them. And Hara made the two mountains, *viz.*, Gandhamādana and Vindhya, the two bamboo poles of his car.[69] And Cankara made the Earth with her oceans and forests his battle car. And the three-eyed deity made that prince of snakes, *viz.*, Cesha, the *Aksha*, of that car.[70] And that god of gods, the wielder of *Pināka*, made the Moon and the Sun the two wheels of that vehicle. And the tripple-eyed Lord made Elāpatra and Pushpadanta the two pins of the yoke.[71] And the valiant Mahādeva made the Malaya mountains the yoke, and the great Takshaka the string for tying the yoke to the poles, and the creatures about him the traces of the steeds.[72] And Maheçwara made the four *Vedas* his four steeds. And that lord of the three worlds made the supplementary *Vedas* the bridle-bits.[73] And Mahādeva made *Gāytri* and *Sāvitri* the reins, the syllable *Om* the whip, and Brahman the driver.[74] And making the Mandara mountains

the bow, Vāsuki the bowstring, Vishnu his excellent shaft, Agni the arrow-head,[76] and Vyāu the two wings of that shaft, Yama the feathers in its tail, Lightning the whetting stone, and Meru the standard,[76] Civa, riding on that excellent car which was composed of all the celestial forces, proceeded for the destruction of the tripple city. Indeed, Sthānu, that foremost of smiters, that Destroyer of *Asuras*, that handsome warrior of immeasurable prowess, adored by the celestials, O Pārtha, and by *Rishis* possessing wealth of asceticism,[77-78] caused an excellent and unrivalled array called after his own name, and stood immovable for a thousand years.[79] When, however, the three cities came together in the firmament, the lord Mahādeva pierced them with that terrible shaft of his, consisting of three knots.[80] The *Dānavas* were unable to gaze at that shaft inspired with the *Yuga* fire and composed of Vishnu and Soma.[81] While the tripple city commenced to burn, the goddess Pārvati repaired thither to behold the sight. She had then on her lap a child having a bald head with five clumps of hair on it.[82] The goddess asked the deities as to who that child was. Cakra, through ill feeling, endeavoured to strike that child with his thunder-bolt.[83] The divine lord Mahādeva (for the child was none other), smiling, quickly paralysed the arm of the enraged Cakra.[84] Then the god Cakra, with his arm paralysed, accompanied by all the celestials, speedily repaired to the lord Brahman of unfading glory.[85] Bowing unto him with their heads, they addressed Brahman with joined hands and said,—Some wonderful creature, O Brahman, lying on the lap of Pārvati,[86] in the form of a child, was beheld by us but not saluted! We have all been vanquished by him! We, therefore, desire to ask thee as to who he may be![87] Indeed, that boy, without fighting, hath with the greatest ease vanquished us all with Purandara at our head!—Hearing these words of theirs, Brahman, that foremost of all persons acquainted with *Brahma*,[88] reflected for a moment and understood that boy of immeasurable energy to be none else than the divine Cambhu. Addressing then those foremost of celestials with Cakra at their head, Brahman said,[89]—[That child is the divine Hara, the Lord of the entire mobile and immobile Universe. There

is nothing superior to Maheçwara.[90] That Being of immeasurable splendour who was beheld by you all with Umā, that divine lord, had assumed the form of a child for Umā's sake.[91] Let us all go unto him! That divine and illustrious one is the Supreme Lord of the whole world.[92] Ye gods, ye could not recognise that master of the Universe!—Then all the gods with the Grandsire repaired to that child endued with the effulgence of the morning Sun. Beholding Maheçwara, and knowing that he was the Supreme Being, the Grandsire Brahman thus adored him:—[93-94]Thou art Sacrifice, O lord, and thou art the stay and refuge of the Universe! Thou art Bhava, thou art Mahādeva, thou art the abode (of all things), and thou art the highest refuge![95] This whole universe with its mobile and immobile creatures, is pervaded by thee! O holy one, O lord of the Past and the Future, O lord of the world, O protector of the Universe, let Cakra, afflicted with thy wrath, have thy grace!][96]—

'"Vyāsa continued,—Hearing these words of the lotus-born Brahman, Maheçwara became gratified. Desirous of extending his grace, he laughed aloud.[97] The celestials then gratified (with praise) both Umā and Rudra. The arm of the thunder-wielding Cakra resumed its natural state.[98] That foremost one of all the gods, that Destroyer of Daksha's sacrifice, that divine lord having the bull for his sign, became gratified with the gods.[99] He is Rudra, he is Civa, he is Agni, he is Everything, and he hath knowledge of Everything. He is Indra, he is the Wind, he is the twin Açwins, and he is the lightning.[100] He is Bhava, he is *Parjanya*, he is Mahādeva, he is sinless. He is the Moon, he is Içāna, he is Surya, he is Varuna.[101] He is *Kāla*, he is *Antaka*, he is *Mrityu*, he is Yama.* He is the Day, and he is the Night. He is the Fortnight, he is the Month, he is the Seasons. He is the morning and evening Twilights, he is the Year.[102] He is Dhātri, he is Vidhātri, he is the Soul of the universe, and he is the doer of all acts in the universe. Though himself without body, he it is who is the embodied celestials.[103] Endued with great splendour,

* All these terms imply Death or the Destroyer.—T.

he is adored and praised by all the gods. He is One, He is Many, he is hundred thousand.[104] Brāhmanas versed in the *Vedas* say that he hath two forms. These are the terrible and the auspicious. These two forms again are multifarious.[105] His terrible forms are Fire, Vishnu, and the Sun. His auspicious forms are Water, Light, and the Moon.[106] Whatever is highly mysterious in the several branches of the *Vedas*, in the *Upanishads*, in the *Purānas*, and in those sciences that deal with the soul, is that god, *viz.*, Maheçāwara.[107] Mahādeva is even such. That god is again without birth. All the attributes of that god are not capable of being enumerated by me,[108] even if, O son of Pāndu, I were to recite them continually for a thousand years. Even unto those that are afflicted by all the evil planets, even unto those that are stained with every sin,[109-10] that great protector, if they seek him, is gratified with them and granteth them salvation! He granteth, and again taketh away, life and health and prosperity and wealth and diverse kinds of objects of desire. The prosperity is his that is seen in Indra and the other gods.[111] He is ever engaged in the good and evil of men in this world. In consequence of his supremacy he can always obtain whatever objects he desires.[112] He is called Maheçwara and is the lord of even the supreme ones. In many forms of many kinds he pervadeth the universe.[113] The mouth which that god has is in the Ocean. It is well known that that mouth, assuming the form of a mare's head, drinketh the sacrificial libation in the shape of water.[114] This god always dwelleth in crematoriums. Men worship that Supreme lord in that place where none but the courageous can go.[115] Many are the blazing and terrible forms of this god that men speak of and worship in the world.[116] Many also are the names, of truthful import, of this deity in all the worlds. Those names are founded upon his supremacy, his omnipotence, and his acts.[117] In the *Veda* the excellent hymn, called *Çata Rudriya*, hath been sung in honor of that great god called the infinite Rudra.[118] That god is the lord of all wishes that are human and heavenly. He is omnipotent, and he is the supreme master. Indeed, that god pervadeth the vast universe.[119] The Brāhmanas and the *Munis*

describe him as the First-born of all creatures. He is the First of all the gods; from his mouth was born the wind.[120] And since he always protecteth the creatures (of the universe) and sporteth with them, and since also he is the lord of all creatures, therefore is he called *Paçupati*.[121] And since his Phallic emblem is always supposed to be in the observance of the vow of *Brahmacharya*, and since he always gladdens the world, therefore is he called Maheçwara.[122] The *Rishis*, the gods, the *Gandharvas*, and the *Apsaras*, always worship his Phallic emblem which is supposed to stand upright.[123] That worship maketh Maheçwara glad. Indeed, Cankara (at such worship) becomes happy, pleased, and highly glad.[124] And since with respect to the past, the future, and the present, that god has many forms both mobile and immobile, he is, on that account, called *Vahurupa* (many-formed).[125] Possessed of one eye he blazeth forth in effulgence, or he may be regarded to have many eyes on every side of his body. And since, in wrath, he possesseth the worlds, he is for that reason called *Sarva*.[126] And since his form is like that of smoke, he is for that reason called *Dhurjjati*. And since those deities, *viz.*, the *Viçwedevas*, are in him, he is for that reason called *Viçwarupa*.[127] And since three goddesses adore and have recourse to that Lord of the universe, *viz.*, Firmament, Water, and Earth, he is for that reason called *Tryamvaka*.[128] And since he always increaseth all kinds of wealth and wisheth the good of mankind in all their acts, he is for that reason called *Çiva*.[129] He possesseth a thousand eyes, or ten thousand eyes, or hath them on all sides. And since he protecteth this vast universe, he is for that reason called *Mahādeva*.[130] And since he is Great and Ancient and is the source of life and of its continuance, and since his Phallic emblem is everlasting, he is for that reason called *Sthānu*.[131] And since the solar and the lunar rays of light that appear in the world are spoken of as the hair on that Three-eyed one, he is for that reason called *Vyomakeça*.[132] And since, afflicting Brahman and Indra and Varuna and Yama and Kuvera, he destroyeth them ultimately, he is for that reason called *Hara*.[133] And since he is the Past the Future, and the Present, and, in fact, everything in the

universe, and since he is the origin of the Past, the Future, and the Present, he is for that reason called *Bhava*.[134] The word *Kapi* is said to mean Supreme, and *Vrisha* is said to mean righteousness. That illustrious god of gods, therefore, is called *Vrishākapi*.[135] And since Maheçwara, by means of his two eyes closed (in meditation), created through sheer force of will a third eye on his forehead, he is for that reason called the *Three-eyed*.[136] Whatever of unsoundness there is in the bodies of living creatures, and whatever of soundness there is in them, represent that god. He is the wind, the vital airs called *Prāna*, *Apāna* (and the others) in the bodies of all creatures, including even those that are diseased.[137] He who adoreth any image or the Phallic emblem of that high-souled god, always obtaineth great prosperity by that act.[138] Down wards from the two thighs are fiery, and half the body that is auspicious is the moon. So also half his soul is fire and half the moon.[139] His auspicious form, full of energy, is more blazing than the forms of the gods. Amongst men, his blazing and terrible form is called fire.[140] With that auspicious form he practiseth *Brahmacharya*. With that other terrible form that he has, that supreme Lord devoureth everything.[141] And since he burneth, since he is keen, since he is fierce, since he is endued with great prowess, and since he devoureth flesh and blood and marrow, he is for this called *Rudra*.[142] Even such is the deity called Mahādeva, armed with *Pināka*, who, O Pārtha, was seen by thee, engaged in slaying thy foes in advance of thy car.[143] After thou hadst vowed to slay the ruler of the Sindhus, O sinless one, Krishna showed thee this god, in thy dream, sitting on the top of that foremost of mountains.[144] That illustrious god proceedeth in advance of thee in battle. It is he who gave thee those weapons with which thou didst slay the *Dānavas*.[145] The hymn approved of by the *Vedas*, and called *Çata-Rudriya*, in honor of that god of gods, that excellent, famous, life-enhancing, and sacred hymn, has now, O Pārtha, been explained to thee.[146] This hymn of four divisions, capable of accomplishing every object, is sacred, destructive of all sins, and competent to drive away all stains and kill all sorrows and all fears. The man that always listens to it succeeds in vanquish-

ing all his foes and is highly respected in the region of Rudra.[147-148] The person who always attentively reads or listens to the recitation of this excellent and auspicious account, appertaining to battle, of the illustrious deity, and who worships with devotion that illustrious Lord of the universe, obtains all the high objects of desire, in consequence of the three-eyed God being gratified with him.[149-150] Go and fight, O son of Kunti, defeat is not for thee, thee that hast Janārddana on thy side for thy adviser and protector !—'[151]

"Sanjaya said,—'Having addressed Arjuna in these words, the son of Parāçara, O chief of the Bharatas, went away to the place he came from, O chastiser of foes !' "[152]

SECTION CCIV.

"Sanjaya said,—"Having battled fiercely for five days, O king, the Brāhmana (Drona) endued with great strength, fell and repaired to the region of Brahman ! The fruits that arise from a study of the *Vedas* arise from a study of this *Parvan* also. The great achievements of brave Kshatriyas have been described here.[2] He who readeth or listeneth to the recitation of this *Parvan* every day is freed from heinous sins and the most atrocious acts of his life.[3] Brāhmanas may always obtain herefrom the fruits of sacrifices. From this Kshatriyas may obtain victory in fierce battle. The other orders (*viz.*, Vaiçyas and Cudras) may obtain desirable sons and grandsons and all objects of desire !' "[4]

FINIS DRONA PARVA.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

LIBRARY OF PRINCETON
JUN 22 1918
THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

PRATAP CHANDRA ROY, C. I. E.

KARNA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHARATA PRESS.

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

1889.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

NOTICE.

By the blessing of SREE SRIKRISHNA JEW, the *Drona Parva* of the Mahabhārata has been brought to a successful termination. More than half, therefore, of the stupendous work which I have undertaken has been completed. I have now commenced with the next canto,—the *Karna Parva.* This portion of the great epic is replete with stirring incidents, and conveys to mankind the lesson that nothing is impossible to him who rests his hopes, not on the strength of his own arms, but on the goodness and mercy of God. May SREE SRIKRISHNA JEW help me, the humblest of His servants, and grant me patience, and courage, and the means to finish the arduous work to which I have put my hand, and thus make me the humble instrument for the glorification of His Name throughout the world !

When I shall have completed the *Karna Parva* and the next three cantos, which are comparatively short, and shall take in hand the *Santi Parva*, I shall indeed feel that *Santi*—peace—to which I have been a stranger since I embarked on this enterprise, for then the end of my labors will be at an appreciable distance.

And now, praying for blessings from on High, and soliciting a continuance of the kindly help and encouragement from those who have hither to generously assisted me, I beg to place before the Public a further instalment of the grandest epic which the world ever produced.

Dātavya Bhārata Kāryālaya.
1. Rájà Gooroo Dāss' Street
Calcutta, April 1889.

PRATAP CHANDRA ROY.

THE MAHABHARATA

KARNA PARVA

SECTION I.

Having bowed down unto Nārāyana, and unto that most exalted of male beings, viz., Nara, and unto the goddess Saraswati also, must the word JAYA *be uttered.*

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After Drona had been slain, O monarch, the royal warriors (of the Kaurava army) headed by Duryodhana, with hearts filled with great anxiety, all repaired to Drona's son.[1] Lamenting the loss of Drona, and deprived of energy in consequence of their cheerlessness, they sat around the son of Caradwat's daughter, afflicted with grief.[2] Comforted for a little while by considerations founded upon the scriptures, when night came, those rulers of Earth proceeded to their respective tents.[3] Those lords of Earth, however, O thou of Kuru's race, could feel no happiness in their abodes. Thinking of that immense slaughter, they could not also sleep.[4] The *Suta's* son (Karna), and king Suyodhana, and Dusçāsana, and Cakuni,, in especial, could not compose themselves to sleep.[5] These four passed that night together in Duryodhana's tent, reflecting upon the woes they had inflicted upon the high-souled Pāndavas.[6] Formerly, they had brought Draupadi, plunged into woe on account of the match at dice, into the assembly. Recollecting it they experienced great regret, their hearts being filled with anxiety.[7] Thinking of those sufferings inflicted (upon the Pāndavas) in consequence of the gambling match, they passed that night in sorrow, O king, as if it were really a hundred years.[8] Then when morning came observing the dictates of the ordinance, all of them duly went through the customary rites.[9] Having gone through these

customary rites, and comforted to some extent, O Bhārata, they ordered their troops to be arrayed, and then came out for battle,[10] having made Karna their generalissimo by tying the auspicious thread round his wrists, and having caused many foremost of Brāhmanas, by presents of vessels of curds, clarified butter, *Akshatas*, coins of gold, kine, jewels and gems, and costly robes, to pray for their victory, and having caused heralds and musicians, and panegyrists to adore them with hymns about victory.*[11-12] The Pāndavas also, O king, having gone through their morning rites, issued from their camp, resolved on battle.[13] Then commenced a fierce battle, making the hair to stand on end, between the Kurus and the Pāndavas, each desirous of vanquishing the other.[14] During the commandership of Karna, the battle that took place between the Kuru and the Pāndava troops was exceedingly fierce and lasted for two days.[15] Then Vrisha (Karna), having made an immense slaughter of his enemies in battle, was at last slain, in the sight of the Dhārtarāshtras, by Arjuna.[16] Then Sanjaya, repairing to Hastināpura, told Dhritarāshtra all that had happened at Kurujangala."[17]

Janamejaya said,—"Having heard of the fall of Bhishma and that other mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, Drona, the old king Dhritarāshtra the son of Amvikā had been afflicted with great grief.[18] How, O foremost of Brāhmanas, could he, plunged into grief, support his life, having heard of the death of Karna, that well-wisher of Duryodhana?[19] How, indeed, could that descendant of Kuru support his life when he upon whom that monarch had rested the hope of his sons' victory had fallen?[20] When the king did not lay down his life even after hearing of Karna's death, I think that it is very difficult for men to yield up life even under circumstances of great grief![21] O Brāhmana, when the king did not yield up his life after hearing of the fall of the venerable son of Cāntanu, of Vālhika and Drona and Somadatta and Bhuriçravas, as also of

* *Akshatas* were probably *Purna-pātras*, *i. e.*, certain vessels full to brim with corn and other articles of use. The fulness is indicative of auspiciousness.—T.

other friends and his sons and grandsons, I think, O regenerate one, that the act of yielding up one's life is exceedingly difficult![22-23] Tell me all these in detail and as they actually happened! I am not satiated with hearing the high achievements of my ancestors!"[24]

SECTION II.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Upon the fall of Karna, O monarch, the son of Gavalgana, with a cheerless heart set out that night for Nāgapura, on steeds that rivalled the wind in speed.[1] Arrived at Hāstināpura, with a heart filled with deep anxiety, he proceeded to Dhritarāshtra's abode which no longer teemed with kinsmen and friends.[2] Beholding the king deprived of all energy by grief, joining his hands he worshipped, with a bend of his head, the monarch's feet.[3] Having duly worshipped king Dhritarāshtra, he uttered an exclamation of woe and then began,[4]—'I am Sanjaya, O lord of Earth! Art thou not happy? I hope thou art not stupified, having through thy own faults fallen into such distress?[5] Counsels for thy good had been uttered by Vidura and Drona and Gangā's son and Keçava. I hope thou feelest no pain now, remembering thy rejection of those counsels?[6] Counsels for thy good had also been uttered in the assembly by Rāma and Nārada and Kanwa and others. I hope thou feelest no pain now, remembering their rejection by thee?[7] I hope thou feelst no pain, remembering the slaughter in battle, by the foe, of Bhishma and Drona and others, those friends that were ever engaged in thy good?'[8]—Unto the *Suta's* son who with joined hands was telling him so, the monarch, afflicted with grief and drawing a long and hot breath, said these words.[9]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Hearing, O Sanjaya, of the fall of the heroic son of Gangā, that warrior in whom were all celestial weapons, as also of the fall of that foremost of all bowmen, *viz.*, Drona, my heart feeleth great pain![10] That hero endued with great energy and born of the Vasus themselves, who slew every day ten thousand car-warriors clad in mail,[11] that high-souled one unto whom Bhrigu's son had given the

highest weapons, that warrior who in his childhood had been trained in the science of the bow by Rāma, alas, even he, hath been slain by Yajnasena's son Cikhandin protected by the Pāndavas! At this my heart is greatly pained![*12-13] That hero through whose grace those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the royal sons of Kunti, as also many other lords of Earth, have become *Mahārathas*,[†14] alas, hearing of the slaughter of that great bowman of sure aim, *viz.*, Drona, by Dhrishtadyumna, my heart is exceedingly pained![15] Those two had not in the world a person equal to them in (knowledge and use of) the four kinds of weapons! Alas, hearing of the slaughter of those two, *viz.*, Bhishma and Drona, in battle, my heart is exceedingly pained![‡16] That warrior who had not in the three worlds a person equal to him in knowledge of weapons, alas, hearing of the slaughter of that hero, *viz.*, Drona, what did the people of my side do?[17] After the high-souled son of Pāndu, *viz.*, Dhananjaya, exerting himself with prowess, had despatched unto Yama's abode the strong force of the *Samsaptakas*,[18] after the *Nārāyana* weapon of the intelligent son of Drona had been baffled, and after the (Kaurava) divisions had begun to fly away, what, indeed, did the people of my side do?[19] I think that, after Drona's death, my troops, flying away and sinking in an ocean of grief, resembled ship wrecked mariners struggling on the bosom of the vasty deep.[20] What also, O Sanjaya, became the color of the faces of Duryodhana, and Karna, and Kritavarman the chief of the Bhojas, and Calya the ruler of the Madras, and of my remaining sons, and of the others, when the Kuru divisions fled away from the field?[21-22] Tell me all this as it truly happened in battle, O son of Gavalgana, and describe to me the prowess put forth by the Pāndavas and the warriors of my side![23]

---

* Nilakantha rightly explains that verse 13 alludes to Bhishma and not to Drona.—T.

† A *Mahāratha* is one who can fight simultaneously with ten thousand bowmen.—T.

‡ *Four kinds of weapons, viz., mukta, amukta, mutkāmukta* and *Yantramukta*. These terms have been explained in an earlier note.—T.

"Sanjaya said,—'O sire, hearing all that has happened unto the Kauravas through thy fault, thou shouldst not feel any anguish! He that is wise never feeleth any pain at what Destiny bringeth![24] And since destiny in unconquerable, human purposes may or may not become attainable. Hence, he that is wise never feeleth pain on the acquisition or the reverse of the objects cherished by him.'[25]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I do not feel great pain, O Sanjaya! I regard all this to be the result of Destiny! Tell me all that thou wishest!'"[26]

Section III.

"Sanjaya said,—'Upon the fall of the great bowman Drona, thy sons, those mighty car-warriors, became pale and cheerless and deprived of their senses.[1] Armed with weapons, all of them, O monarch, hung down their heads. Afflicted with grief and without looking at one another, they stood perfectly silent.[2] Beholding them with such afflicted countenances, thy troops, O Bhārata, themselves perturbed by grief, vacantly gazed upwards.[3] Seeing Drona slain in battle, the weapons of many of them, O king, dyed with blood, dropped from their hands.[4] Innumerable weapons, again, O Bhārata, still retained in the grasp of the soldiers, seemed, in their pendent attitude, to resemble falling meteors in the sky.*[5] Then king Duryodhana, O monarch, beholding that army of thine thus standing as if paralysed and lifeless, said,[6]—Relying upon the might of your arms I have summoned the Pāndavas to battle and caused this passage-at-arms to commence![7] Upon the fall of Drona, however, the prospect seems to be cheerless. Warriors engaged in battle all die in battle.[8] Engaged in battle, a warrior may have either victory or death. What can be strange then in this (*viz.*, the death of Drona)? Fight ye with faces turned towards every direction.[9] Behold now the

---

* I think Nilakantha correctly explains this *sloka*. Unless *Nakshatrāni* be taken to mean falling meteors, the comparison would be unmeaning and absurd.—T.

high-souled Karna, the son of Vikartana, that great bowman of mighty strength, careering in battle, using his celestial weapons![10] Through fear of that warrior in battle, that coward, *viz.*, Dhananjaya the son of Kunti, always turns back like a small deer at the sight of a lion![11] It is he who, by the ordinary methods of human battle, brought the mighty Bhimasena endued with the strength of ten thousand elephants to that plight![12] It is he who, uttering a loud roar, slew with his invincible dart the brave Ghatotkacha of a thousand illusions and well acquainted with celestial weapons![13] Behold today the inexhaustible might of arms of that intelligent warrior of sure aim and invincible energy![14] Let the sons of Pāndu behold today the prowess of both Açwatthāman and Karna resembling that of Vishnu and Vāsava![*15] All of you are singly able to slay the sons of Pāndu with their troops in battle! How much more then are you capable, when united together, of that feat! Endued with great energy and accomplished in weapons, you will today behold one another engaged in the achievement of mighty tasks![16]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said these words, O sinless one, thy son Duryodhana, with his brothers, made Karna the generalissimo (of the Kuru army).[17] Obtaining the command, the mighty car-warrior Karna, so fierce in battle, uttered loud roars and fought with the foe.[18] He caused, O sire, a great carnage among the Srinjayas, the Pānchālas, the Kekayas, and the Videhas.[19]† From his bow issued innumerable lines of arrows, one close behind the wings of another, like flights of bees.[20] Having afflicted the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas endued with great activity, and slain thousands of warriors, he was at last slain by Arjuna!'"

---

* The second line of 15 is read differently in some texts.—T.

† *Mārisha* at the end of the first line, and not *paçyatām*, is the correct reading.—T.

Section IV.

"Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing this intelligence, O monarch, Dhritarāshtra the son of Amvikā, feeling the acme of grief, regarded Suyodhana to be already dead. Exceedingly agitated, the king fell down on the Earth, like an elephant deprived of its senses.[1] When that foremost of monarchs, greatly agitated, fell down on the Earth, loud wails were uttered, O best of the Bharatas, by the ladies (of the royal household). That noise was so loud that it seemed to fill the entire Earth.[2]* Immersed in a deep ocean of woe, the Bharata ladies, with hearts exceedingly agitated and scorched by grief, wept aloud.[3] Approaching the king, Gāndhāri, O bull of Bharata's race, and the other ladies of the household, all fell down on the Earth, deprived of their senses.[4] Then Sanjaya, O king, began to comfort those ladies stricken with grief, bathed in tears, and reft of consciousness.[5] Comforted (by Sanjaya), those ladies began to tremble repeatedly like a plantain grove shaken by the wind.[6] Vidura also, sprinkling that descendant of Kuru with water, began to comfort the puissant monarch who had knowledge only for his eye.[7]† Slowly restored to consciousness, and understanding that the ladies of the household were there, the king, O monarch, remained perfectly silent for sometime like one reft of reason.[8] Having reflected then for sometime, and repeatedly drawn long breaths, the king censured his own sons and applauded the Pāndavas.[9] Censuring also his own intelligence and that of Cakuni the son of Suvala, the king, having reflected for a long time, began to tremble repeatedly.[10] Controling his mind once more, the king, with sufficient fortitude, questioned his charioteer Sanjaya the son of Gavalgana." [1]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I have heard, O Sanjaya, all that thou hast said. Hath my son Duryodhana, O *Suta*, who is ever desirous of victory, already gone to Yama's abode, despairing of success? Tell me truly, O Sanjaya, all this, even if thou wilt have to repeat it!'"[12-13]

---

* Both 1 and 2 are triplets in the Bengal texts.—T.

† A respectful epithet for a blind man.—T.

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by the king, O Janamejaya, the *Suta* said unto him,—'The mighty car-warrior Vaikartana, O monarch, hath been slain with his sons and brothers, and other *Suta* warriors, all of whom were mighty bowmen ready to lay down their lives in battle![14] Dusçāsana also hath been slain by the renowned son of Pāndu. Indeed, his blood also hath been, from wrath, drunk by Bhimasena in battle!' "[15]

Section V.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing these words, O monarch, Amvikā's son Dhritarāshtra, with heart agitated by grief, addressed his driver Sanjaya, saying,[1]—"Through the evil policy, O sire, of my son of little foresight, Vikartana's son hath been slain! This intelligence is cutting the very core of my heart![2] I am desirous of crossing this sea of grief! Remove my doubts, therefore, by telling me who are still alive and who are dead amongst the Kurus and the Pāndavas![3]*

"Sanjaya said,—"Endued with great prowess and invincible in battle, Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, O king, having slain large numbers of Srinjayas and Pānchālas, hath been slain after ten days.[4] The mighty and invincible bowman Drona of the golden car, having slaughtered the Pānchāla divisions in battle, hath been slain.[5] Having slaughtered the half of what remained after the carnage by Bhishma and the illustrious Drona, Vikartana's son Karna hath been slain.[6] Endued with great strength, O monarch, prince Vivingçati, having slain hundreds of Ānarta warriors in battle, hath been slain.[7] Thy heroic son Vikarna, deprived of steeds and weapons, stood, facing the foe, remembering the duties of Kshatriyas.[8] Remembering the many foul wrongs inflicted upon him by Duryodhana, and bearing in mind his own vow, Bhimasena hath slain him.[9] Possessed of great might, Vinda and Anuvinda, the two princes of Avanti, after achieving the most difficult feats, have gone to Yama's abode.[10] That hero who

---

* Some texts read *Srinjayānām* for *Pāndavānām*.—T.

had under his sway ten kingdoms having Sindhu for their chief, him who was ever obedient to thee,[11] *viz.*, Jayadratha of mighty energy, O king, Arjuna hath slain after vanquishing eleven *Akshauhinis* of troops with his keen arrows.[12] Endued with great activity and incapable of being easily defeated in battle, the son of Duryodhana, ever obedient to his sire's commands, hath been slain by the son of Subhadrā.[13] The brave son of Dusçāsana, possessed of mighty arms and fierce in battle, hath been despatched to Yama's abode by Draupadi's son exerting himself with great prowess![14] The ruler of the Kirātas and other dwellers of the lowlands on the sea-coast, the much-respected and dear friend of the chief of the celestials himself, *viz.*, the virtuous king Bhagadatta, who was ever devoted to Kshatriya duties, hath been despatched to Yama's abode by Dhananjaya exerting himself great with prowess.[15-16] The kinsman of the Kauravas, the son of Somadatta, *viz.*, the brave and celebrated Bhuriçravas, O king, hath been slain by Sātyaki in battle.[17] The Amvashtha king Crutāyus, that foremost of Kshatriyas, who used to career in battle most fearlessly, hath been slain by Arjuna.[18] Thy son Dusçāsana, accomplished in arms and invincible in battle, and who was always wrathful, hath, O monarch, been slain by Bhimasena.[19] Sudakshina, O king, who had many thousands of wonderful elephants, hath been slain in battle by Arjuna.[20] The ruler of the Koçalas, having slain many hundreds of foes, hath himself been despatched to Yama's abode by Subhadrā's son exerting himself with prowess.[21] Having fought with many thousands of foes and with the mighty car-warrior Bhimasena himself, thy son Chitrasena hath been slain by Bhimasena.[22] The brave younger brother of the ruler of the Madras, that enhancer of the fears of foes, that handsome warrior armed with sword and shield, hath been slain by Subhadrā's son.[23] He who was equal to Karna himself in battle, *viz.*, Karna's son Vrishasena, accomplished in arms, of mighty energy and steady prowess, hath, in the very sight of Karna, been despatched to Yama's abode by Dhananjaya who put forth his prowess remembering the slaughter of his own son Abhimanyu and bearing in mind the vow he had made.[24-25] That lord of Earth, *viz.*, Crutāyus, who always displayed

a deep rooted antipathy towards the Pāndavas, hath been slain by Pārtha who reminded him of that antipathy before taking his life.[26] Calya's son of great prowess, O sire, *viz.*, Rukmaratha, hath, O king, been slain in battle by Sahadeva although the former happened to be the latter's brother, having been the son of the latter's maternal uncle.[27] The old king Bhagiratha, and Vrihatkshatra the ruler of the Kaikeyas, both endued with great prowess and might and energy, have been slain.[28] Bhagadatta's son, O king, who was possessed of great wisdom and great strength, hath been slain by Nakula who always careers in battle with the activity of the hawk.[29] Thy grandsire Vālhika, possessed of great might and prowess, hath, with all his followers, been slain by Bhimasena.[30] The mighty Jayatsena the son of Jarāsandha, the prince of the Magadhas, O king, hath been slain in battle by the high-souled son of Subhadrā.[31] Thy son Durmukha, O king, as also thy other son Dussaha, that mighty car-warrior, both of whom were regarded as heroes, have been slain by Bhimasena with his mace.[32] Durmarshana and Durvisaha and the mighty car-warrior Durjaya, having achieved the most difficult feats, have gone to Yama's abode.[33] The two brothers Kalinga and Vrishaka, who were invincible in battle, having achieved very difficult feats, have gone to Yama's abode.[34] Thy counsellor Vrishavarman of the *Suta* caste, endued with great energy, hath been despatched to Yama's abode by Bhimasena exerting himself with prowess.[35] So also king Paurava who was endued with the might of ten thousand elephants, hath, with all his followers, been slain by Pāndu's son Arjuna.[36] The Vaçātis, O king, numbering two thousand, effectual smiters all, as also the Curasenas endued with great prowess, have all been slain in battle.[37] The Abhishāhas, clad in mail, capable of smiting effectually, and fierce in battle, also the Civis, those foremost of car-warriors, with the Kalingas, have all been slain.[38] Those other heroes also, (*viz.*, the *Nārāyana Gopas*,) who lived and grew in Gokula, who were exceedingly wrathful in battle, and who never retreated from the field, have been slain by Savyasāchin.[39]* Many thousands

* *Apāvrittakavirās* is explained by Nilakantha as "unretreating heroes".—T.

of Crenis. as also the *Samsaptakas*, approaching Arjuna, have all repaired to the abode of Yama.[40] Thy two brothers-in-law, *viz.*, the princes Vrishaka and Achala, who were endued with great prowess, have for thy sake been slain by Savyasāchin.[41] King Cālwa of mighty arms and fierce deeds, who was a great bowman both in name and feats, hath been slain by Bhimasena.[42] Oghavat, O king, and Vrishanta, fighting together in battle and exerting themselves with great vigor for the sake of their ally, have both repaired to Yama's abode.[43] So also that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Kshemadhurti, O monarch, hath been slain in battle by Bhimasena with his mace.[44] So also that great bowman, *viz.*, the mighty king Jalasandha, after causing an immense carnage, hath been slain by Sātyaki in battle.[45] That prince of *Rākshasas*, *viz.*, Alāyudha, unto whose vehicle were yoked asses (of monstrous shape) hath been despatched to Yama's abode by Ghatotkacha exerting himself with great prowess.[46] Rādhā's son of the *Suta* caste, and those mighty car-warriors who were his brothers, and the Kaikeyas, the Mālavas, the Madrakas, the Dravidas of fierce prowess, the Yaudheyas, the Lalittyas, the Kshudrakas, the Ucinaras, the Māvellakas, the Tundikeras, the Sāvitriputras, the Easterners, the Notherners, the Westerners, and the Southerners, O sire have all been slain by Savyasāchin.[47-49] Large bands of foot-soldiers, myriads upon myriads of steeds, large numbers of car-warriors, and many huge elephants, have been slain.[50] Many heroes also, with standards and weapons, and with armour and attire and ornaments, and endued with perseverance and possessed of high birth and good conduct, have been slain in battle by Pārtha who is never fatigued with exertion. Others, endued with immeasurable might. and desirous of slaying their foes, (have met with a similar fate).[51-52] These and many other kings, numbering thousands, with their followers, have, O monarch. been slain in battle. That which thou askest me I am answering now.[53] Even thus did the destruction take place when Arjuna and Karna fought. Even as Mahendra slew Vritra, and Rāma slew Rāvana;[54] even as Krishna slew Naraka or Mura in battle; even as the mighty Rāma of Bhrigu's race slew the heroic Kārtaviryya, invincible in battle, with all his

kinsmen and friends, after fighting a terrible battle celebrated through the three worlds;[55-56] even as Skanda slew (the *Asura)* Mahisha, and Rudra slew (the *Asura)* Andhaka, even so hath Arjuna, O king, in single combat, slain, with all his kinsmen, that foremost of smiters, *viz.*, Karna, who was invicible in battle and upon whom the Dhārtarāshtras had placed their hopes of victory, and who was the great cause of the hostility with the Pāndavas![57-58] Pāndu's son hath now accomplished that which at one time thou couldst not believe him capable of accomplishing, although, O monarch, well-meaning friends failed not to apprise thee of it. That calamity, fraught with great destruction, hath now come![59] Thou, O king, wishing them well, hast heaped those evils on the heads of thy covetous sons! The fruit of those evils is now manifesting itself!"[60]

SECTION VI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Thou hast, O son, mentioned the names of those of my side that have been slain in battle by the Pāndavas. Tell me now, O Sanjaya, the names of those amongst the Pāndavas that have been slain by the people of my side!'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—"The Kuntis, possessed of great prowess in battle, endued with great energy and great might, have been slain in fight by Bhishma, with all their kinsmen and advisers.[2] The Nārāyanas, the Valabhadras, and hundreds of other heroes, all devoted (to the Pāndavas) have been slain in battle by the heroic Bhishma.*[3] Satyajit, who was equal to the diadem-decked Arjuna himself in battle as regards energy and might, hath been slain in battle by Drona of sure aim.[4] Many mighty bowmen among the Pānchālas, all of whom were skilled in battle, encountering Drona, have repaired to Yama's abode.[5] So the two kings Virāta and Drupada, both venerable in years, who exerted themselves with great prowess for their ally, have, with their sons, been slain in battle by Drona.[6] That invincible hero, *viz.*, Abhimanyu, who, though a child in

---

* I adopt the Bombay reading.—T.

years, was still equal in battle to Arjuna or Keçava or Valadeva, O lord, that warrior who was higly accomplished in battle, after making an immense slaughter of the foe, was at last encompassed by six foremost of car-warriors and slain by them. Unable to resist Arjuna himself, they thus slew Arjuna's son! Deprived of his car, that hero, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, still stayed in battle, remembering the duties of a Kshatriya. At last, O king, Dusçāsana's son, slew him on the field.[7-9] The slayer of the Patachcharas, *viz.*, the handsome son of Amvashtha, surrounded by a large force, had put forth all his prowess for the sake of his allies.[10] Having made a great slaughter among the foe, he was encountered by Duryodhana's son, the brave Lakshmana, in battle and despatched to Yama's abode.[11] The mighty bowman Vrihanta, accomplished in arms and invincible in battle, hath been despatched to Yama's abode by Dusçāsana exerting himself with great prowess.[12] The two kings Manimat and Dandadhāra, both of whom were invincible in battle and had put forth their prowess for their allies, have been slain by Drona.[13] Ançumat the ruler of the Bhojas, that mighty car-warrior at the head of his own forces, hath been despatched to Yama's abode by Drona exerting himself with great prowess.[14] Chitrasena, the ruler of the sea-coast, with his son, O Bhārata, hath been forcibly despatched by Samudrasena to Yama's abode.[15] Another ruler of a maritime country, *viz.*, Nila, and Vyāghradatta of great energy, have both, O king, been despatched to Yama's abode by Açwatthāman.[16] Chitrāyudha, and Chitrayodhin, after making a great slaughter, have both been slain in battle by Vikarna exerting himself with great prowess and displaying diverse manœvres of his car.[17] The chief of the Kaikeyas, who was equal to Vrikodara himself in battle and surrounded by Kaikeya warriors, has been slain by Kaikeya, the brother by the brother.[18] Janamejaya of the hilly country, endued with great prowess and accomplished in encounters with the mace, hath, O king, been slain by thy son Durmukha.[19] Those two foremost of men, *viz.*, the brothers Rochamāna, like two brilliant planets, have together been despatched to heaven by Drona with his shafts.[20] Many other kings, O monarch, en-

dued with great prowess, had fought (for the Pāndavas). Having achieved the most difficult feats, all of them have gone to Yama's abode.[21] Purujit and Kuntibhoja, the two maternal uncles of Savyasāchin, have been despatched by Drona with shafts to such regions as are attainable by death in battle.[22] Abhibhu the ruler of the Kāçis, at the head of many of his followers, hath been obliged by Vasudāna's son to lay down his life in battle.[23] Yudhāmanyu of immeasurable prowess, and Uttamaujas of great energy, after slaying hundreds of heroic warriors, have themselves been slain by our men.[24] The Pānchāla prince Mitravarman, also Kshatradharman, O Bhārata, those two foremost of bowmen, have been despatched to Yama's abode by Drona.[25] Cikhandin's son Kshatradeva, that foremost of warriors, possessed of great bravery, hath, O king, been slain by thy grandson Lakshmana, O sire![26] The two heroes Suchitra and Chitravarman, who were sire and son and endued with great might, and who careered fearlesly in battle, have been slain by Drona.[27] Vārdhakshemi, O monarch, who was like the ocean at full tide, having had his weapons exhausted in battle, hath at last obtained undisturbed peace.[28] That foremost of *Sutas, viz.*, Senāvindu, having consumed many foes in battle, hath, at last, O king, been slain by Vālhika.[29] Dhrishtaketu, O monarch, that foremost of car-warriors among the Chedis, after accomplishing the most difficult feats, hath repaired to the abode of Yama.[30] Similarly, the heroic Satyadhriti, endued with great prowess, having made a great slaughter in battle for the sake of the Pāndavas, has been despatched to Yama's abode.[31] That lord of Earth, *viz.*, Suketu the son of Ciçupāla, having slain many foes, hath at last been slain by Drona in battle.[32] Virāta's son Cankha, as also Uttara of great strength, having accomplished the most difficult feats, have repaired to Yama's abode.[33] Similarly Satyadhriti of the Matsyas, and Madirāçwa of great energy, and Suryadatta possessed of great prowess, have all been slain by Drona with his shafts.[34] Crenimat also, O monarch, having fought with great prowess and accomplished the most difficult feats, hath repaired to Yama's abode.[35] Similarly the chief the Māgadhas, that slayer of hostile heroes, endued with great energy

and acquainted with the highest weapons, sleepeth on the field of battle, slain by Bhishma.[36] Vasudāna also, having made an immense carnage in battle, has been despatched to Yama's abode by Bharadwāja's son exerting himself with great prowess.[37] These and many other mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas have been slain by Drona exerting himself with great energy. I have now told them all that thou hadst asked me.' "[38]

SECTION VII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—"When all the foremost of my warriors, O Sanjaya, have perished, I do not think that the remnant of my army will not perish![1] When those two heroes, those two mighty bowmen, those two foremost of the Kurus, *viz.*, Bhishma and Drona, have been slain, what use can I any longer have with life?[2] I cannot also brook the death of Rādhā's son, that ornament of battle, the might of whose arms was as great as that of ten thousand elephants![3] O foremost of speakers, tell me now, O *Suta*, who are yet alive in my army after the death of all the foremost heroes![4] Thou hast told me the names of those that have fallen. It seems, however, to me that they who are still alive are almost all dead!'[5]

"Sanjaya said,—"That hero, O king, to whom Drona, that foremost of Brāhmanas, imparted many blazing, celestial, and mighty weapons of the four kinds, that mighty car-warrior, possessed of skill and lightness of hands, that hero of firm grasp, strong weapons, and powerful shafts, that high-souled son of Drona, capable of shooting to a great distance, is still on the field, desirous of battling for thy sake.[6-7] That dweller of the Ānarta country, that son of Hiridikā, that mighty car-warrior, that foremost one among the Sātwatas, that chief of the Bhojas, *viz.*, Kritavarman, accomplished in arms, is on the field, desirous of battle.[8] Ārtāyana's son, dauntless in battle, that first of warriors, that foremost of all yet on thy side, he, *viz.*, that abandoned his own sister's sons, the Pāndavas, for making his own words true, that hero endued with great acti-

vity who promised in the presence of Yudhishthira that he would in battle depress the proud spirit of Karna, that invincible Calya, who is equal unto Cakra himself in energy, is still on the field, desirous of battling for thy sake.[9-10] Accompanied by his own force consisting of Ājāneyas, Saindhavas, mountaineers, dwellers of reparian regions, Kāmvojas, and Vanāyus, the king of the Gāndhāras stayeth on the field, desirous of battling for thy sake.[11] Caradwat's son called Gautama, O king, endued with mighty arms and capable of fighting with diverse weapons in diverse beautiful ways, taking up a beautiful and large bow capable of bearing a great strain, stayeth on the field, desirous of battle.[12] That mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of the ruler of the Kaikeyas, riding on a goodly car equipt with standard and goodly steeds, stayeth on the field, O chief of Kuru's race, for battling for thy sake.[13] Thy son also, that foremost of heroes in Kuru's race, *viz.*, Purumitra, O king, riding on his car possessed of the effulgence of fire or the Sun, stayeth on the field, like the Sun himself shining brilliantly in the cloudless firmament.[14] Duryodhana also, endued with great energy, in the midst of an elephant force and accompanied by many foremost of combatants, stayeth on his car adorned with gold, desirous of engaging in battle.[15]* In the midst of many kings, that foremost of men, possessed of the splendour of a lotus, looked resplendent in his beautiful armour of gold like a fire with little smoke or the Sun emerged from the clouds.[16] So also thy sons Sushena, armed with sword and shield, and the heroic Satyasena, are staying, with Chitrasena, their hearts full of joy and themselves desirous of battle.[17] Endued with modesty, the Bharata princes Chitrāyudha, Crutavarman, and Jaya, and Dala, and Satyavrata, and Dusçala, all of whom are possessed of great might, stay on the field, desirous of battle.[18]† The ruler of the Kaitavyas, that prince, proud of his courage, and capable of fearlessly careering in battle and slaying his

---

* The second half of the first line of 15 is read differently in the Bomay edition. The Calcutta reading, which I adopt, is unquestionably better.—T.

† A different reading occurs in the Bombay edition.—T.

foes, possessing foot-soldiers and cavalry, and elephants and cars, stayeth on the field, desirous of battling for thy sake.'[19] The heroic Crutāyu and Crutāyudha, and Chitrāngada and Chitravarman, those foremost of men, those proud warriors capable of smiting effectually and possessed of sureness of aim, stay on the field, desirous of battle.[20] The high-souled Satyasandha, the son of Karna, stayeth on the field, desirous of battle. Two other sons of Karna, possessing a knowledge of high weapons and endued with great lightness of hands, are both staying, O king, at the head of forces that are large and incapable of being pierced by warriors of little energy, desirous of battling for thy sake.*[21] Accompanied by these heroes and by many other foremost of warriors, O king, that are possessed of immeasurable might, the Kuru king (Duryodhana) is staying like a second Indra in the midst of his elephant division in expectation of victory !'[22]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—"Thou hast told me duly all that are alive both amongst us and the foe. From this I plainly see on which side the victory will be. Indeed, it may be inferred from the facts.' "[23]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"While saying this, Dhritarāshtra the son of Amvika, having learnt that only a small portion of his army was alive, for all his foremost of warriors had died, felt his heart to be exceedingly agitated by grief. The king swooned away. Partially restored to his senses, he addressed Sanjaya, saying,—'Wait for a moment !'[24-25] And the king said,—'O son, having heard of this dire calamity, my heart is greatly agitated. My senses are being stupified, and my limbs are about to be paralysed ![26]—Having said these words, Dhritarāshtra the son of Amvikā, that lord of Earth, lost his senses and fell down on the Earth.' "[27]

SECTION VIII.

Janamejaya said,—"Having heard of Karna's fall and the slaughter of his sons, what, O foremost of regenerate ones,

---

* This is a triplet.—.T.

did the king say, after he had been a little comforted ?[1] Indeed, poignant was the grief that he experienced, arising from the calamity that befell his sons! Tell me, I ask thee, all that the king said on that occasion!"[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing of the slaughter of Karna that was incredible and astounding, that was dreadful and capable of paralysing the senses of all creatures, that looked like the downfall of Meru,[3] or a never-to-be-believed clouding of the intellect of the wise Cukra, or the defeat of Indra of terrible feats at the hands of his foes,[4] or the falling down on the Earth of the resplendent Sun from the firmament, or a scarcely-to-be-comprehended drying up of the ocean, that receptacle of inexhaustible waters,[5] or the annihilation, perfectly astounding, of the Earth, the firmament, the points of the compass, and the waters, or the fruitlessness of acts both virtuous and sinful,[6] king Dhritarāshtra, having earnestly reflected for sometime on it, thought that his army had been annihilated.[7] Thinking that other creatures also, as unslayable as Karna, would meet with a similar fate, king Dhritarāshtra the son of Amvikā, scorched with grief and sighing like a snake, with limbs almost palsied, drawing long breaths, highly cheerless, and filled with melancholy, began to lament, saying,—*O* and *Alas*.[8-9] And the king said,—O Sanjaya, the heroic son of Adhiratha was endued with the prowess of the lion or the elephant! His neck was as thick as that of a bull, and his eyes, gait, and voice were like the bull's![10] Of limbs as hard as the thunder-bolt, that young man, like a bull never flying away from a bull, never desisted from battle even if his foe happened to be the great Indra himself![11] At the sound of his bowstring and palms and at the whizz of his arrowy showers men and steeds and cars and elephants fled away from battle.[12] Relying upon that mighty-armed one, that slayer of large bands of foes, that warrior of unfading glory, Duryodhana had provoked hostilities with those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the sons of Pāndu![13] How then could Karna, that foremost of car warriors, that tiger among men, that hero of irresistible onset, be forcibly slain by Pārtha in battle ?[14] Relying on the might of his own arms, he always disregarded Keçava of unfading glory, and Dhananjaya, and

the Vrishnis, and all other foes![15] Often did he use to say unto the foolish, avaricious, crest-fallen, kingdom-coveting, and afflicted Duryodhana even such words as these, *viz.*,—*Alone, I shall, in battle, throw down from their foremost of cars, those two invincible warriors united together, viz., the wielder of Cārnga and the wielder of Gāndiva!*[16-17]—He had subjugated many invincible and mighty foes, *viz.*, the Gāndhāras, the Madrakas, the Matsyas, the Trigartas, the Tanganas, the Khasas,[18] the Pānchālas, the Videhas, the Kulindas, the Kāçi-koçalas, the Suhmas, the Angas, the Nishadhas, the Pundras, the Kichakas,[19] the Vatsas, the Kalingas, the Taralas, the Açmakas, and the Rishikas. Subjugating all these brave races, by means of his keen and whetted arrows equipt with *Kanka* feathers, that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Rādhā's son, had caused all of them to pay tribute to us for the aggrandisement of Duryodhana.[20-21] Alas, how could that warrior acquainted with celestial weapons, that protector of armies, *viz.*, Karna the son of Vikartana, called also Vrisha, of mighty energy, be slain in battle by his foes, the heroic and mighty sons of Pāndu?[22] As Indra is the foremost of gods, Karna was the foremost of men. In the three worlds no third person has been heard of by us to be like them.[23] Amongst steeds, Uchchaiçravas is the foremost; amongst *Yakshas*, Vaiçravana is the foremost; amongst celestials. Indra is the foremost; amongst smiters, Karna was the foremost.[24] Unvanquished by even the most heroic and the mightiest of monarchs, he had, for Duryodhana's aggrandisement subjugated the whole Earth.[25] The ruler of Magadha, having by conciliation and honors obtained Karna for a friend, had challenged all the Kshatriyas of the world, except the Kauravas and the Yādavas, to battle.[26] Hearing that Karna hath been slain by Savyaçāchin in single combat, I am plunged in an ocean of woe like a wrecked vessel in the vasty deep![27] Indeed, hearing that that foremost of men, that best of car-warriors, hath been slain in single combat, I am sinking in an ocean of grief like a person without a raft in the sea![28] When, O Sanjaya, I do not die of even such grief, I think my heart is impenetrable and made of something harder than the thunder-

bolt.[29] Hearing of the defeat and humiliation of kinsmen and relatives and allies, who else in the world, O *Suta*, save my wretched self, would not yield up his life ?[30] I desire to have poison or fire or a fall from the summit of a mountain! I am unable, O Sanjaya, to bear this heavy load of grief!' "[31]

SECTION IX.

"Sanjaya said,—'The world regards thee to be equal to Yayāti the son of Nahusha, in beauty, birth, fame, asceticism, and learning![1] Indeed, in learning, thou art, O king, like a great *Rishi*, highly accomplished and crowned with success! Summon thy fortitude! Do not yield to grief!'[2]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I think Destiny is supreme, and Exertion fruitless, since even Karna, who was like a *Çāla* tree, hath been slain in battle![3] Having slaughtered Yudhishthira's army and the large throngs of the Pānchāla car-warriors, having scorched all the points of the compass by means of his arrowy showers, having stupified the Pārthas in battle like the wielder of the thunder-bolt stupifying the *Asuras*, alas, how could that mighty car-warrior, slain by the foe, fall down on the Earth like a large tree uprooted by the tempest ?[4-5] Indeed, I do not behold the end of my sorrows like a drowning man unable to see the end of the ocean! My anxieties are increasing, I do not desire to live,[6] hearing of Karna's death and Phālguna's victory! Indeed, O Sanjaya, I regard the slaughter of Karna to be highly incredible.[7] Without doubt, this hard heart of mine is made of the essence of adamant, for it does not burst into a thousand fragments upon hearing of the fall of Karna![8]* Without doubt, the gods ordained, before (my birth), a very long life for me, since sore distressed on hearing of the death of Karna, I do not die! Fie, O Sanjaya, on this life of one that is destitute of friends![9]† Brought today, O Sanjaya, to this wretched plight, miserably shall I have to live, of foolish

---

* The Bombay edition reads this verse with a slight variation.—T.

† A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

understanding that I am, pitied by all![10] Having formerly been the honored of the whole world, how shall I, O *Suta*, live, over-ridden by foes?[11] From pain to greater pain and calamity, have I come, O Sanjaya, in consequence of the fall of Bhishma and Drona and the high-souled Karna![12] I do not see that any one (of my army) will escape with life when the *Suta's* son hath been slain in battle! He was the great raft, O Sanjaya, to my sons![*13] That hero having shot innumerable arrows, hath been slain in battle! What use have I of life, without that bull among men?[14] Without doubt, the son of Adhiratha, afflicted with arrows, fell down from his car, like a mountain-peak riven by the fall of thunder![15] Without doubt, bathed in blood, he lieth, adorning the Earth, like an elephant slain by an infuriate prince of elephants![16] He who was the strength of the Dhārtarāshtras, he who was an object of fear to the sons of Pāndu, alas, he, *viz.*, Karna, that pride of all bowmen, hath been slain by Arjuna![17] He was a hero, a mighty bowman, the dispeller of the fears of my sons! Alas, that hero, reft of life, lieth (on the Earth), like mountain struck down by Indra![†18] The fulfilment of Duryodhana's wishes is even like locomotion to one that is lame, or the gratification of the poor man's desire, or stray drops of water to one that is thirsty![19] Planned in one way, our schemes end otherwise. Alas, Destiny is all powerful, and Time incapable of being transgressed![20] Was my son Dusçāsana, O *Suta*, slain, while flying away from the field, humbled (to the dust), of cheerless soul, and destitute of all manliness?[21] O son, O Sanjaya, I hope he did no dastardly act on that occasion? Did not that hero meet with his death like the other Kshatriyas that have fallen?[22] The foolish Duryodhana did not accept Yudhishthira's constant advice, wholesome as medicine, against the propriety of battle.[23] Possessed of great renown, Pārtha, when begged for drink by Bhishma then lying on his arrowy bed, pierced the surface of the Earth![24] Beholding

---

* The Bengal texts have *pāram*; the Bombay edition reads *pāryam*. I adopt the latter.—T.

† The Bombay edition reads *mitrānām* for *putrānām*.—T.

the jet of water caused by the son of Pāndu, the mighty-armed (Bhishma, addressing Duryodhana), said,—O sire, make peace with the Pāndavas! Hostilities ceasing, peace will be thine! Let the war between thyself and thy cousins end with me! Enjoy the Earth in brotherliness with the sons of Pāndu![25-26] —Having disregarded those counsels, my child is certainly repenting now. That has now come to pass which Bhishma of great foresight said.[27] As regards myself, O Sanjaya, I am destitute of counsellors and reft of sons! In consequence of gambling, I am fallen into great misery like a bird shorn of its wings![28] As children engaged in sport, O Sanjaya, having seized a bird and cut off its wings, merrily release it,[29] but the creature cannot achieve locomotion in consequence of its winglessness; even so have I become, like a bird shorn of its wings![30] Weak, destitute of every resource, without kinsmen, and deprived of relatives and friends, cheerless and overpowered by enemies, to which point of the compass shall I go?[31] He who vanquished all the Kāmvojas and the Amvashthas with the Kaikeyas, that puissant one, who, having for the accomplishment of his purpose vanquished the Gāndhāras and the Videhas in battle, subjugated the whole Earth for the sake of Duryodhana's aggrandisment, alas, he hath been vanquished by the heroic and strong Pāndavas endued with mighty arms![32-33] Upon the slaughter, in battle, of that mighty bowman, *viz.*, Karna, by the diadem-decked (Arjuna), tell me, O Sanjaya, who were these heroes that stayed (on the field)![34] I hope he was not alone and abandoned (by friends) when slain in battle by the Pāndavas? Thou hast, O sire, told me, before this, how our brave warriors have fallen.*[35] With his powerful shafts Cikhandin felled in battle that foremost of all wielders of weapons, *viz.*, Bhishma, who did nothing to repel the attack.[36] Similarly, O Sanjaya, Drupada's son Dhrishtadyumna, uplifting his scimitar, slew the mighty bowman Drona who, already pierced with many arrows, had laid aside his weapons in battle and devoted himself to *Yoga*.†[37] These two were both slain at a

---

* The Bengal texts righty read *virās* in the second line.—T.

† A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

disadvantage and especially by deceit. Even this is what I have heard about the slaughter of Bhishma and Drona![38] Indeed, Bhishma and Drona, while contending in fight, were incapable of being slain in battle by the wielder of the thunderbolt himself by fair means. This that I tell thee is the truth![39] As regards Karna, how, indeed, could Death touch him, that hero equal unto Indra himself, while he was engaged in shooting his manifold celestial weapons?[40] He unto whom, in exchange for his ear-rings, Purandara had given that foe-slaying, gold-decked, and celestial dart of the splendour of lightning,[41]—he who had, lying (within his quiver) amid sandal-dust, that snake-mouthed celestial arrow decked with gold, equipt with goodly wings, and capable of slaying all foes,[42]—he who, disregarding those heroic and mighty car-warriors having Bhishma and Drona at their head, had acquired from Jamadagni's son the terrible *Brāhma* weapon,[43]—that mighty-armed one, who, having seen the warriors with Drona at their head afflicted with arrows and turn away from the field, had cut off with his keen shafts the bow of Subhadrā's son,[44]—he who, having in a trice deprived the invincible Bhimasena endued with the might of ten thousand elephants and the speed of the wind, of his car, had laughed at him,[45]—he who, having vanquished Sahadeva by means of his straight shafts and made him carless, slew him not from compassion and considerations of virtue,[46]—he who, with Cakra's dart, slew that prince of *Rākshasas*, *viz.*, Ghatotkacha, who, from desire of victory, had invoked a thousand kinds of illusions,[47]—he whose feats in battle, filling Dhananjaya with fear, had made the latter for such a long period avoid a single combat with him,—alas, how could that hero be slain in battle?*[48] How could he be slain by foes unless one of these had happened to him, *viz.*, the destruction of his car, the snapping of his bow, and the exhaustion of his weapons?[49] Who could vanquish that tiger among men,

---

* Three lines occur after this in the Bombay edition. The Bengal texts omit them rightly, I think. In those lines Dhritarāshtra charges Arjuna with having made his engagement with the *Samsaptakas* a pretext for avoiding Karna. Such an accusation would be absurd.—T.

like a real tiger, endued with great impetuosity, *viz.*, Karna, while shaking his formidable bow and shooting therefrom his terrible shafts and celestial weapons in battle?[50] Surely, his bow broke, or his car sank in the Earth, or his weapons became exhausted, since thou tellest me that he is slain! I do not, indeed, see any other cause for (explaining) his slaughter![51] That high-souled one who had made the terrible vow—*I will not wash my feet till I slay Phālguna*,[52]—that warrior through whose fear that bull among men, *viz.*, king Yudhishthira the just, had not, in the wilderness, for thirteen years continuously, obtained a wink of sleep,[53]—that high-souled hero of great prowess relying upon whose valour my son had forcibly dragged the wife of the Pāndavas to the assembly,[54] and there in the midst of that conclave, in the very sight of the Pāndavas and in the presence of the Kurus, had addressed the princess of Pānchāla as *the wife of slaves*,[55]—that hero of the *Suta* caste, who in the midst of the assembly had addressed Krishnā, saying,—*All thy husbands, O Krishnā, that are even like sessamum seeds without kernel, are no more, therefore, seek some other husband, O thou of the fairest complexion*!—and in wrath had caused her to listen to other expressions equally harsh and rude, how was that hero slain by the foe?[56-57] He who had said unto Duryodhana even these words, viz.,—*If Bhishma who boasteth of his prowess in battle, or Drona who is invincible in fight, doth not from partiality, slay the sons of Kunti, O Duryodhana, even I will slay them all, let the fever of thy heart be dispelled*!—who also said,—*What will (Arjuna's) Gāndiva and the two inexhaustible quivers do to that shaft of mine, smeared with cool sandal-paste, when it will course through the welkin*?—alas, how could that warrior possessed of shoulders broad as those of the bull, be slain by Arjuna?[58-60] He who, disregarding the fierce touch of the arrows shot from *Gāndiva* had addressed Krishnā, saying,—*Thou hast no husbands now!*—and glared at the Pāndavas,[61]—he who, O Sanjaya, relying on the might of his own arms, had entertained no fear, for even a moment, of the Pārthas with their sons and Janārddana,[62]—he, I think, could not possibly meet with death at the hands of the very gods with Vāsava at their head rushing against him in fury,

what then need I say, O sire, of the Pāndavas?[63] The person could not be seen competent to stay before the son of Adhiratha, while the latter, putting on his fences, used to touch the bowstring![64] It was possible for the Earth to be destitute of the splendour of the Sun, of the Moon, or of fire, but the death of that foremost of men, that never retreated from battle, could not be possible.[65] That foolish child of mine, of wicked understanding, who having got Karna, as also his brother Dusçāsana, for his ally, had made up his mind for the rejection of Vāsudeva's proposals,[66] surely, that wight, beholding the slaughter of the bull-shouldered Karna and of Dusçāsana, is now indulging in lamentations![67] Seeing Vikartana's son slain in single combat by Savyasāchin, and the Pāndavas crowned with victory, what, indeed, did Duryodhana say?[68] Seeing Durmarshana slain in battle and Vrishasena also, and seeing his host break when slaughtered by mighty car-warriors,[69] beholding also the kings (of his army) turn back their faces, intent on flight, and his car-warriors already fled, I think that son of mine is now indulging in lamentations![70] Beholding his host dispirited, what, indeed, did the ungovernable, proud, and foolish Duryodhana, with passions not under control, say?[71] Having himself provoked such fierce hostility though dissuaded by all his friends, what, indeed, did Duryodhana, who has suffered a great loss in battle of friends and followers, say?[72] Beholding his brother slain in battle by Bhimasena, and upon his blood being drunk, what, indeed, did Duryodhana say?[73] My son had, with the ruler of the Gāndhārvas, said,—*Karna will slay Arjuna in battle!*—When he saw that Karna slain, what, indeed, did he say?[74] What, O sire, did Cakuni the son of Suvala, who had formerly been filled with joy after going through the match at dice and cheating the son of Pāndu, say when he saw Karna slain?[75] What did that mighty car-warrior among the Sātwatas, that great bowman, *viz.*, Kritavarman the son of Hridikā, say when he saw Vaikartana slain?[76] Endued with youth, possessed of a handsome form, agreeable to the sight, and celebrated throughout the world, what, O Sanjaya, did Açwatthāman, the intelligent son of Drona, upon whom Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas that are desirous of

acquiring the science of arms wait, for protections, say when he saw Karna slain ?[77-78] What did Caradwat's son Kripa, O sire, of Gotama's race, that foremost of car-warriors, that teacher of the science of arms, say when he saw Karna slain ?[79] What did the mighty leader of the Madra warriors, that king of the Madras, *viz.*, the great bowman Calya of the Sauvira clan, that ornament of assemblies, that foremost of car-warriors (temporarily) engaged in driving the car, say when he saw Karna slain ?* What also did all the other warriors, difficult of defeat in battle, *viz.*, those lords of Earth that came to fight, say, O Sanjaya, when they beheld Vaikartana slain ?[80-83] After the fall of the heroic Drona, that tiger among car-warriors, that bull among men, who, O Sanjaya, became the heads of the several divisions in their order ?[83] Tell me, O Sanjaya, how that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, Calya the ruler of the Madras, became engaged in driving the car of Vaikartana ![84] Who were they that guarded the right wheel of the *Suta's* son while the latter was engaged in fight, and who were they that guarded his left wheel, and who were they that stood at the rear of that hero ?[85] Who were those heroes that did not desert Karna, and who were those mean fellows that ran away ? How was the mighty car-warrior Karna slain amidst your united selves ?[86] How also did those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the brave Pāndavas, advance against him shooting showers of shafts like the clouds pouring torrents of rain ?†[87] Tell me also, O Sanjaya, how that mighty shaft, celestial and foremost of its species, and equipt with a head like that of a serpent, became futile ![88] I do not, O Sanjaya, see the possibility of even a small remnant of my cheerless host being saved when its leaders have been crushed !‡[89] Hearing of the slaughter of

---

* Though a great car-warrior, Calya consented, at Duryodhana's request, to drive Karna's car during the latter's engagement with Arjuna.—T.

† The Bengal reading *Pāndavascha Katham* is better than the Bombay reading *Pāndavāscha Swyam.*—T

‡ The Bengal reading *Hatotsāhasya* is preferable to the Bombay reading *Hatotsedhasya.* The latter, although accepted by Nilakantha, would involve a pleonasm in view of the allusion to the *kukud* being

those two heroes, those two mighty bowmen, *viz.*, Bhishma and Drona, who were ever ready to lay down their lives for my sake, what use have I of life ?*[90] Again and again I am unable to endure that Karna, the might of whose arms equalled that of ten thousand elephants, should be slain by the Pāndavas![91] Tell me, O Sanjaya, all that occurred in the battle between the brave warriors of the Kauravas and their foes, after the death of Drona![92] Tell me also how the sons of Kunti fought the battle with Karna, and how that slayer of foes received his quietus in the fight!' "[93]

SECTION X.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the fall of the mighty bowman Drona on that day, O Bhārata, and after the purpose had been baffled of that mighty car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Drona,[1] and after the vasty army, O monarch, of the Kauravas had fled away, Pārtha, having arrayed his own troops, stayed on the field with his brothers.[2] Perceiving him staying on the field, thy son, O bull of Bharata's race, seeing his own army running away, rallied them with great courage.[3] Having caused his divisions to take up their stand, thy son, O Bhārata, relying on the might of his arms, fought for a long time with his foes, the Pāndavas, who, having gained their end, were filled with joy and had been struggling for hours together. On the approach there of the evening twilight, he caused the troops to be withdrawn.[4-5] Having caused the withdrawal of their troops, and having entered their own encampment, the Kauravas held with one another a consultation about their own welfare,[6] seated like the celestials on costly couches overlaid with rich coverlets, and on excellent seats and luxurious beds.[7] Then king Duryodhana, addressing those mighty bowmen in agreeable and highly sweet expressions, spoke the following words suited to the occasion.[8]

---

crushed. *Kukud* literally means the hump of a bull; hence, a leader of leaders.—T.

* *Tyktajivita* often implies one ready to lay down his life, and *not* one that has laid down his life. Compare *Drona Parvan*, sec. XXV verse 9.

"Duryodhana said,—Ye foremost of intelligent men, declare all of you, without delay, your opinions! Under these circumstances, ye kings, what is necessary and what is still more necessary?[9]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'When that prince of men had spoken those words, those lions among men, seated on their thrones, made various gestures expressive of their desire of battle.[10] Observing the indications of those who were all desirous of pouring their lives as libations on the battle-fire, and beholding the monarch's face radiant as the morning Sun,[11] the preceptor's son endued with intelligence and accomplished in speech, said these words:—Enthusiasm, opportunity, skill, and policy,—these are the means declared, by the learned, to be capable of accomplishing all ends. They are, however, dependent on destiny.[12] Those foremost of men we had on our side, equal unto the celestials, mighty car-warriors all, possessed of policy, devoted, accomplished, and loyal, have been slain.[13] For all that we should not despair of victory. If all these means be properly applied, even Destiny may be made propitious.[14] All of us, therefore, O Bhārata, shall install Karna, that foremost of men, endued besides with every accomplishment, in the command of the army![15] Making Karna our commander, we shall crush our foes. This Karna is endued with great might; he is a hero, accomplished in weapons, and incapable of defeat in battle. Irresistible as Yama himself, he is quite competent to vanquish our foes in battle![16]—Hearing these words from the preceptor's son, thy son, O king, at that time, built great hopes on Karna.[17] Cherishing the hope in his heart that after the fall of Bhishma and Drona, Karna would vanquish the Pāndavas, and comforted (by it), O Bhārata,[18] Duryodhana then, filled with joy at having heard those words of Açwatthāman, steadying his mind and relying on the might of his arms, said unto Rādhā's son, O monarch, these words that were fraught with affection and regard, and that were true, delightful, and beneficial to himself:[19-20]—O Karna, I know thy prowess, and the great friendship thou bearest to me! For all that, O mighty-armed one, I shall address thee certain words that are for my good![21] Having heard

them, O hero, do that which may appear desirable to thee! Thou art endued with great wisdom, and thou art even my supreme refuge![22] Those two *Atirathas* that were my Generals, *viz.*, Bhishma and Drona, have been slain. Be thou my General, thou that art mightier than they![23] Both of those great bowmen were advanced in years. They were, besides, partial to Dhananjaya. Still both those heroes were respected by me, O son of Rādhā, at thy word![24] Viewing his relationship of grandsire unto them, the sons of Pāndu, O sire, were spared in dreadful battle by Bhishma for ten successive days![25] Thyself also having laid aside thy weapons, the valiant Bhishma was slain in great battle by Phālguna with Cikhandin before him![26] After that great bowman had fallen and betaken himself to his bed of arrows, it was at thy word, O tiger among men, that Drona was made our leader![27] By him also were the sons of Prithā spared, in consequence, as I think, of their relationsnip unto him of pupils. That old man also has been slain by Dhrishtadyumna more speedily.[28] I do not see, even on reflection, another warrior equal to thee in battle,—thee, that is, whose prowess could not be measured by even those two foremost of warriors that have been slain in the fight![29] Without doubt, thou alone today art competent to win victory for us! Before, in the middle, and later on, thou hast accordingly acted for our good.[30] Therefore, like a leader, it behoveth thee, in this battle, to bear the burden thyself. Thyself install thy own self in the Generalship.[31] Like the celestial generalissimo, the lord Skanda of unfading prowess, (supporting the celestial army), do thou support this Dhārtarāshtra, host! Like Mahendra slaying the *Dānavas*, destroy thou all the throngs of our foes![*32] Beholding thee staying in battle, the Pāndavas, those mighty car warriors, will, with the Pānchālas, fly away from battle, like the *Dānavas* at sight of Vishnu. Do thou, therefore, lead this vast force![†33] When thou shalt stand resolved on the field, the Pāndavas of wicked hearts, the Pānchālas, and the Srinjayas, will all fly away with their friends.[34]

---

* A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

† This is a triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

As the risen Sun, scorching everything by his energy, destroyeth the thick gloom, even so do thou destroy our foes![35]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Strong became that hope, O king, in the heart of thy son, *viz.*, that where Bhishma and Drona had been slain, Karna would vanquish the Pāndavas.[36] Cherishing that hope within his heart, he said unto Karna,—O *Suta's* son, Pārtha never wishes to fight, standing before thee![37]—

"Karna said,—I have, O son of Gāndhāri, said before in thy presence, even these words, viz.,—*I shall vanquish all the Pāndavas with their sons and Janārddana!*[38]—I shall become thy General. In this there is no doubt. Tranquillise thyself, O monarch! Consider the Pāndavas to be already vanquished![39]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed, O monarch, king Duryodhana then stood up with all the monarchs, like He of a hundred sacrifices with the gods, for honoring Karna with the command of the army, like the celestials for honoring Skanda.*[40] Then, O monarch, all the kings headed by Duryodhana, desirous of victory, installed Karna in the command, according to the rites enjoined by the ordinance.†[41] With golden and earthen jars filled to the brim with water and sanctified with *mantras*, with tusks of elephants and horns of rhinoceroses and mighty bulls,[42] with other vessels decked with jewels and gems, with also fragrant herbs and plants, and with other articles collected in abundance, Karna, seated at his ease on a seat made of *udumvara* wood and overlaid with silken cloth, was invested with the command, according to the rites enjoined in the scriptures. Brāhmanas, and Kshatriyas, and Vaiçyas, and respectable Cudras, praised that high-souled one after he was bathed on that excellent seat.[43-44] Thus installed in the command, O king, that slayer of foes, *viz.*, the son of Rādhā, caused, by presents of *Niskas* and kine and other wealth, many foremost of Brāhmanas to utter blessings on him.[45]—*Vanquish the Pārthas with Govinda and all their followers*,—even

---

* A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

† The *Abhisheka* consisted in pouring sanctified water on the head of the person requiring the investiture.—T.

these were the words that the eulogists and the Brāhmanas said (unto him), O bull among men![46] (And they also said,)—Slay the Pārthas and the Pānchālas, O son of Rādhā, for our victory, like the risen Sun ever destroying Darkness with his fierce rays![47] (The sons of Pāndu) with Keçava are not able to even look at the shafts shot by thee, like owls unable to gaze at the burning rays of the Sun![48] The Pārthas with the Pānchālas are incapable of standing before thee armed with weapons, like the *Danavas* before Indra in battle![49]—Installed in the command, Rādhā's son of incomparable splendour looked resplendent in beauty and radiance like a second Sun.[50] Having installed the son of Rādhā (thus) in the command of the army, thy son, urged on by Death, regarded himself as one who had his purposes accomplished.[51] That chastiser of foes, *viz.*, Karna, also, O king, having obtained the command, ordered the troops to be arrayed, at the rise of the Sun.[52] Surrounded by thy sons, O Bhārata, Karna looked resplendent like Skanda surrounded by the celestials, in the battle having Tāraka for its evil root.*' "[53]

SECTION XI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—"After having obtained the command of the army, and after he had been addressed by the king himself in those sweet and brotherly words, and after he had ordered the troops to be arrayed at the hour of sunrise, tell me, O Sanjaya, what did Vikartana's son Karna do?"[1-2]

"Sanjaya said,—"Having learnt Karna's wishes, thy sons, O bull of Bharata's race, ordered the troops to be arrayed with joyful music.[3] While it still wanted a long period for the coming of the dawn, a loud noise of—*Array,—Array,*—O king, suddenly arose among thy troops.[4] And the uproar that arose, became tremendous and touched the very heavens, of foremost of elephants and fenced cars while under process of equipment, of foot-soldiers and steeds, O monarch, while putting on their armour or in course of being harnessed, and of combatants

---

* *Tārakāmaye* means that in which (the *Asura)* Tāraka was the evil sought to be put down. It is compounded of *Tāraka* and *āmya.*—T.

moving with activity and shouting unto one another![5-6] Then the *Suta's* son, bearing a gold-backed bow, appeared (on the field) on his car possessed of the splendour of the radiant Sun, crowned with many banners, epuipt with a white standard, with steeds of the hue of cranes, bearing the device of the elephant's rope, filled with a hundred quivers, furnished with mace and wooden fence, freighted with *Çataghnis* and rows of bells and darts and lances and spears, and supplied with many bows.[7-9]* And the *Suta's* son appeared on the field, blowing his conch, O king, decorated with a net-work of gold, and shaking his formidable bow adorned with pure gold.[10] Beholding the mighty bowman Karna, that foremost of car-warriors, seated on his car, difficult of approach and resembling the risen Sun that destroys the gloom,[11] none amongst the Kauravas, O tiger among men, recked, O sire, the loss of Bhishma or Drona or other men![12] Speeding the warriors, O sire, with the blasts of his conch, Karna caused the vast army of the Kauravas to be drawn out.[13] Having arrayed the troops in the *Makara* array, that mighty bowman, that scorcher of foes, *viz.*, Karna, proceeded against the Pāndavas from desire of victory.[14] In the tip of the beak of that *Makara*, O king, was stationed Karna himself. In the two eyes were the brave Cakuni and the mighty car-warrior Uluka.[15] In the head was Drona's son and in the neck were all the uterine brothers. In the middle was king Duryodhana supported by a large force.[16] In the left foot, O monarch, was stationed Kritavarman accompanied by the Nārāyana troops, and those invincible warriors, *viz.*, the *Gopālas*.[17]† In the right foot, O king, was Gotama's son of prowess incapable of being baffled, surrounded by those mighty bowmen, *viz.*, the Trigartas and by the Southerners.[18] In the left hind-foot was stationed Calya with a large force raised in the country of the Madras.[19]

---

* All the expressions qualify *Rathena*, with the exception of *Hemaprishtena Dhaunshá* which evidently refers to the verb *Adrishyata*.—T

† The *Gopālas* were very probably shepherds. To this day there are, in certain districts of Bengal and Bahar, *Gopālas*, now called *Gowālas* or *Ahirs*, who allow themselves to be hired for local fights and brawls. They are an extremely sturdy clan.—T.

In the right (hind-foot), O monarch, was Sushena of true vows, surrounded by a thousand cars and three hundred elephants.[20] In the tail were the two royal brothers of mighty energy, *viz.*, Chitra and Chitrasena surrounded by a large force.[21]

"'When, O great king, that foremost of men, *viz.* Karna, thus came out, king Yudhishthira the just, casting his eyes on Arjuna, said these words :[22]—Behold, O Pārtha, how the Dhārtarāshtra force, O hero, in this battle, protected by heroes and mighty car-warriors, hath been arrayed by Karna ![23] This vast Dhārtarāshtra force hath lost its bravest warriors. They that remain, O mighty-armed one, are feeble, equal, as I think, to straw ! Only one great bowman, *viz.*, the *Suta's* son, shineth in it ![24]* That foremost of car-warriors is incapable of being vanquished by the three worlds with their mobile and immobile creatures, including the gods, *Asuras*, and *Gandharvas*, and the *Kinnaras* and great serpents ![25] If thou slayest him today, O mighty-armed one, the victory will be thine, O Phālguna ! The thorn also which for twelve years hath been planted in my heart will then be plucked out ! Knowing this, O thou of mighty arms, form thou the array that thou wishest ![26]—Hearing those words of his brother, that Pāndava of the white steeds disposed his army in counter array after the form of the half moon.[27] On the left side was stationed Bhimasena, and on the right was stationed the great bowman Dhrishtadyumna.[28] In the middle of the array were the king and Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu. Nakula and Sahadeva were at the rear of king Yudhishthira the just.[29] The two Pānchāla princes, *viz.*, Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas, became the protectors of (Arjuna's) car-wheels. Protected by the diadem-decked Arjuna himself, they did not quit Arjuna for a moment.[30] The remaining kings, possessed of great courage, clad in mail, stood in the array, each in the position assigned to him, according to the measure of his enthusiam and resolution, O Bhārata.[31] Having thus formed their great array, O Bhārata, the Pāndavas, and the mighty bowmen of thy army set their hearts on battle.[32] Beholding thy army disposed into battle-array by the *Suta's* son in

---

* A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T

battle, Duryodhana with all his brethren regarded the Pāndavas to be already slain.[33] Similarly Yudhishthira, O king, beholding the Pāndava army disposed in array, regarded the Dhārtarāshtras with Karna to be already slain.[34] Then conchs, and kettle-drums, and tabours, and large drums, and cymbals, and *Dindimas*, and *Jharjharas*, were loudly blown and beat on all sides![35] Indeed, those loud-sounding instruments were blown and beat, O king, among both the armies. Leonine roars also arose, uttered by brave warriors for victory.[36] And there also arose, O king, the noise of neighing steeds and grunting elephants, and the fierce clatter of car-wheels.[37] None, O Bhārata, (in the Kaurava army), at that time, felt the loss of Drona, seeing the great bowman Karna clad in mail and stationed at the head of the array.[38] Both armies, O monarch, teeming with joyous men, stood, eager for battle and (ready) to destroy each other without delay.[39] There, the two heroes, *viz.*, Karna and the son of Pāndu, excited with wrath at sight of each other, and both firmly resolved, stood or careered, O king, through their respective divisions.[40] The two armies, as they advanced to meet each other, seemed to dance (in joy). From the wings and the side-wings of both, warriors desirous of battle came forth.[41]* Then commenced the battle, O monarch, of men, elephants, steeds, and cars, engaged in destroying one another.' "[42]

Section XII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then those two vast armies, teeming with rejoicing men and steeds and elephants, resembling in splendour the celestial and the *Asura* hosts, meeting together, began to strike each other.[1] Men, cars, steeds, elephants, and foot-soldiers, of fierce prowess, made sturdy strokes destructive of bodies and sins.†[2] Lion-like men strewed the Earth with the

---

* It would seem that when the actual encounter took place, the order of the array, as regards both armies, was speedily and entirely lost.—T.

† I adopt the Bengal reading which is *Dehapāpmapranāçanān.* The meaning, of course, is that the men were slain so that their bodies were destroyed as also their sins, for death in battle is rewarded with heaven.

heads of lion-like men, each resembling the full moon or the sun in splendour and the lotus in fragrance.[3] Combatants cut off the heads of combatants, with crescent-shaped and broad-headed shafts and razor-faced arrows and axes, and battle-axes.[4] The arms of men of long and massive arms, cut off by men of long and massive arms, falling upon the Earth, shone, decked with weapons and bracelets.[5] With those writhing arms adorned with red fingers and palms, the Earth looked resplendent as if strewn with fierce five-headed snakes slain by Garuda.*[6] From elephants and cars and steeds, brave warriors fell down, struck by foes, like the denizens of heaven from their celestial cars on the exhaustion of their merits.[7] Other brave warriors fell down by hundreds, crushed in that battle by braver combatants with heavy maces and spiked clubs and short bludgeons.[8] Cars also, in that tumultuous fight, were crushed by cars, and infuriate elephants by infuriate compeers, and horsemen by horsemen.[9] Men destroyed by cars, and cars by elephants, and horsemen by foot-soldiers, and foot-soldiers by horsemen, dropped down on the field,[10] as also cars and steeds and foot-soldiers destroyed by elephants, and cars and steeds and elephants by foot-soldiers, and cars and foot-soldiers and elephants by steeds, and men and elephants by cars.[11] Great was the carnage made of car-warriors and steeds and elephants and men by men and steeds and elephants and car-warriors, using their hands and feet and weapons and cars.[12] When that host was being thus struck and slain by heroic warriors, the Pārthas, headed by Vrikodara, advanced against us.[13] They consisted of Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin and the (five) sons of Draupadi and the Prabhadrakas, and Sātyaki and Chekitāna with the Drāvida forces, and the Pāndyas, the Cholas, and the Keralas, surrounded by a mighty array, all possessed of broad chests, long arms, tall statures, and large eyes.[14-15] Decked with ornaments, possessed of red teeth, endued with the prowess of infuriate elephants, attired in robes of diverse colors, smeared with powdered scents,[16] armed with swords and nooses, capable of restraining mighty

* The Bombay text reads *Prahitais*. If this reading be accepted, the meaning would be "dropped" by Gadura.—T.

elephants, companions in death, and never deserting one another,[17] equipt with quivers, bearing bows, adorned with long locks, and agreeable in speech, were the combatants of the infantry files led by Sātyaki, belonging to the Andhra tribe, endued with fierce forms and great energy.*[18] Other brave warriors such as the Chedis, the Pānchālas, the Kaikayas, the Kārushas, the Koçalas, the Kānchis, and the Māghadhas, also rushed forward.[19] Their cars and steeds and elephants, all of the foremost kind, and their fierce foot-soldiers, gladdened by the notes of diverse instruments, seemed to dance and laugh.†[20] In the midst of that vast force, came Vrikodara, riding on the neck of an elephant, and surrounded by many foremost of elephant-soldiers, advancing against thy army.[21] That fierce and foremost of elephants, duly equipt, looked resplendent, like the stone-built mansion on the top of the Udaya mountain, crowned with the risen Sun.[22] Its armour of iron, the foremost of its kind, studded with costly gems, was as resplendent as the autumnal firmament bespangled with stars.[23] With a lance in his outstretched arm, his head decked with a beautiful diadem, and possessed of the splendour of the meridian Sun at autumn, Bhima began to burn his foes.[24] Beholding that elephant from a distance, Kshemadhurti, himself on an elephant, challenging, rushed cheerfuly towards Bhima who was more cheerful still.[25] An encounter then took place between those two elephants of fierce forms resembling two huge hills topped with trees, each fighting with the other as it liked.[26] Those two heroes then, whose elephants thus encountered each other, forcibly struck each other with lances endued with the splendour of solar rays, and uttered loud roars.[27] Separating, they then careered in circles with their elephants, and each taking up a bow began to strike the other.[28] Gladdening the people around with their loud roars and the slaps on their armpits and the whizz of their arrows, they continued to utter leonine shouts.[29] Endued with great strength, both of them, accomplished in

---

* I adopt the Bengal reading.—T.

† *Vādyaravais* of the Bengal texts is preferable to *Vādyadhara's* of the Bombay edition.—T.

weapons, fought, using their elephants with upturned trunks and decked with banners floating on the wind.[30] Then each cutting off the other's bow, they roared at each other, and rained on each other showers of darts and lances like two masses of clouds in the rainy reason pouring torrents of rain.[31] Then Kshemadhurti pierced Bhimasena in the centre of the chest with a lance endued with great impetuosity, and then with six others, and uttered a loud shout.[32] With those lances sticking to his body, Bhimasena, whose form then blazed with wrath, looked resplendent like the cloud-covered Sun with his rays issuing through the interstices of that canopy.[33] Then Bhima carefully hurled at his antagonist a lance bright as the rays of the Sun, coursing perfectly straight, and made entirely of iron.[34] The ruler of the Kulutas then, drawing his bow, cut off that lance with ten shafts and then pierced the son of Pāndu with sixty shafts.[35] Then Bhima the son of Pāndu, taking up a bow whose twang resembled the roar of the clouds, uttered a loud shout and deeply afflicted with his shafts the elephant of his antagonist.[36] Thus afflicted in that battle by Bhimasena with his arrows, that elephant, though sought to be restrained, staid not on the field like a wind-blown cloud.[37] The fierce prince of elephants owned by Bhima then pursued his (flying) compeer, like a wind-blown mass of clouds pursuing another mass driven by the tempest.[38] Restraining his own elephant,the valiant Kshemadhurti pierced with his shafts the pursuing elephant of Bhimasena.[39] Then with a well-shot razor-headed arrow that was perfectly straight, Kshemadhurti cut off his antagonist's bow and then afflicted that hostile elephant.[40] Filled with wrath, Kshemadhurti then, in that battle, pierced Bhima and struck his elephant with many long shafts in every vital part. That huge elephant of Bhima then fell down, O Bhārata![41]* Bhima, however, who had jumped down from his elephant and stood on the Earth before the fall of the beast, then crushed the elephant of his antagonist with his mace.[42] And Vrikodara then struck Khemadhurti also, who, having jumped down from his crushed

* A triplet the Bengal texts.—T.

elephant, was advancing against him with uplifted weapon.[43] Kshemadhurti, thus struck, fell down lifeless, with the sword in his arm, by the side of his elephant, like a lion struck down by thunder beside a thunder-riven hill.[44] Beholding the celebrated king of the Kulutas slain, thy troops, O bull of Bharata's race, exceedingly distressed, fled away.' "[45]

Section XIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then the mighty and heroic bowman Karna began to smite the Pāndava army in that battle, with his straight shafts.[1] Similarly, those great car-warriors, *viz.*, the Pāndavas, O king, filled with wrath, began to smite the army of thy son in the very sight of Karna.[2] Karna also, O king, in that battle, slew the Pāndava army with his cloth-yard shafts bright as the rays of the Sun and polished by the hands of the smith.[3] There, O Bhārata, the elephants, struck by Karna with his shafts, uttered loud cries, lost strength, became faint, and wandered on all sides.[4] While the army was being thus destroyed by the *Suta's* son, O sire, Nakula rushed with speed against that mighty car-warrior.[5] And Bhimasena rushed against Drona's son who was engaged in the accomplishment of the most difficult feats. Sātyaki checked the Kaikaya princes Vinda, and Anuvinda.[6]* King Chitrasena rushed against the advancing Crutakarman ; and Prativindhya against Chitra owning a beautiful standard and a beautiful bow.[7] Duryodhana rushed against king Yudhishthira the son of Dharma ; while Dhananjaya rushed against the angry throngs of the *Samsaptakas*.[8]† In that slaughter of great heroes, Dhrishtadyumna proceeded against Kripa. The invincible Cikhandin closed with Kritavarman.[9] Crutakirti encountered Calya, and Mādri's son, the valiant Sahadeva, O king, encountered thy son Dusçāsana.[10] The two Kaikaya princes, in that battle, shrouded Sātyaki with a shower of blazing arrows, and the latter also, O Bhārata,

---

* Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti were slain by Arjuna. The two warriors here referred to were of the Kaikayas, not of the Avantis.—T.

† The Bengal texts read *Kruddhān* and not *Kruddhas*.—T.

shrouded the two Kaikaya brothers.[11] Those two heroic brothers deeply struck Sātyaki in the chest, like two elephants striking with their tusks a hostile compeer in the forest.*[12] Indeed, O king, those two brothers, in that battle, their own vitals pierced with shafts, pierced Sātyaki of true deeds with their shafts.[13] Sātyaki, however, O great king, covering all the points of the compass with a shower of arrows and smiling the while, checked the two brothers, O Bhārata.[14] Checked by those showers of arrows shot by the grandson of Cini, the two brothers speedily shrouded the car of Cini's grandson with their shafts.[15] Cutting off their beautiful bows, Caurin of great fame, checked them both with his keen arrows in that battle.[16] Taking up two other beautiful bows, and a number of powerful shafts, the two began to cover Sātyaki and career with great activity and skill.[17] Shot by the two brothers, those mighty shafts equipt with the feathers of the *Kanka* and the peacock and decked with gold, began to fall, illumining all the points of the compass.[18] In that dreadful battle between them, O king, the arrows they shot caused a darkness there. Those mighty car-warriors then cut off each other's bows.[19] Then the invincible Sātwata, O king, filled with rage, took up another bow in that battle, and stringing it, cut off Anuvinda's head with a keen razor-headed shaft.[20] Decked with ear-rings, that large head, O king, fell like the head of Camvara slain in the great battle (of old). And it reached the Earth in no time, filling all the Kaikayas with grief.[21]† Beholding that bave warrior slain, his brother, the mighty car-warrior Vinda, stringing another bow, began to resist the grandson of Cini from every side.[22] Piercing Sātyaki with sixty arrows equipt with wings of gold and whetted on stone, he uttered a loud shout and said,—Wait, Wait![23]—Then that mighty car-warrior of the Kaikayas speedily struck Sātyaki with many thousands of shafts in his arms and chest.[24] All his limbs wounded with arrows, Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled, looked resplendent in that battle, O king, like a flowering *Kinçuka*.[25]

---

* The Bengal texts read *Mahârane* for *Mahâvane*.—T.

† Both 20 and 21 are triplets in the Bengal texts.—T.

Pierced by the high-souled Kaikaya in that encounter, Sātyaki, with the greatest ease, pierced the Kaikaya (in return) with five and twenty arrows.[26] Then those two foremost of car-warriors, having each cut off the other's handsome bow in that encounter, and having each quickly slain the other's driver and steeds, approached each other on foot for a fight with swords.[27]* Both endued with massive arms, they looked resplendent on that extensive arena, each having taken up a shield decked with a hundred moons, and each armed with an excellent sword, like Jambha and Cakra, both endued with great might, in the battle between the gods and the *Asuras* (of old).[28] Both of them, in that great battle, then began to career in circles. And then they speedily encountered each other in battle, each approachnig the other near. And each of them made great efforts for the destruction of the other.[29] Then Sātwata cut in twain the shield of Kaikeya. The latter also, O king, cut in twain the shield of Sātyaki.[30] Having cut off his antagonist's shield covered with centuries of stars, Kaikeya began to career in circles, advancing and receding (at times).[31] Then the grandson of Cini, endued with great activity, cut off by a side-stroke the prince of the Kaikeyas thus careering in that great arena armed with excellent sword.[32] Cased in armour, that great bowman, *viz.*, the Kaikeya prince, O king, thus cut off in twain in that great battle, fell down like a hill riven with thunder.[33] Having slain him in battle, that foremost of car-warriors, that scorcher of foes, *viz.*, the brave grandson of Cini, quickly got upon the car of Yudhāmanyu.[34] Afterwards riding upon another car duly equipt (with everything), Sātyaki began to slay with his shafts the large force of the Kaikeyas.[35] The vast army of the Kaikeyas, thus slaughtered in battle, leaving that foe of theirs, fled away on all sides.' "[36]

Section XIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Crutakarman then, O king, filled with wrath, struck that lord of Earth, *viz.*, Chitrasena, in that

---

* A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

battle, with fifty shafts.[1] The ruler of the Abhisāras (in return), striking Crutakarman, O king, with nine straight arrows, pierced his driver with five.[2] Crutakarman then, filled with rage, struck Chitrasena at the head of his forces, with a keen arrow in a vital part.[3] Deeply pierced, O monarch, with that arrow by that high-souled prince, the heroic Chitrasena felt great pain and swooned away.[4] During this interval, Crutakarman of great renown covered that lord of Earth, *(viz.*, his insensible antagonist), with ninety arrows.[5] The mighty car-warrior Chitrasena then, recovering consciousness, cut off his antagonist's bow with a broad-headed arrow, and pierced his antagonist himself with seven arrows.[6] Taking up another bow that was decked with gold and capable of striking hard, Crutakarman then, with his waves of arrows, made Chitrasena assume a wonderful appearance.[7] Adorned with those arrows, the youthful king, wearing beautiful garlands, looked in that battle like a well-adorned youth in the midst of an assembly.[8] Quickly piercing Crutakarman with an arrow in the centre of the chest, he said unto him,—Wait, Wait![9]—Crutakarman also, pierced with that arrow in the battle, began to shed blood, like a mountain shedding streams of liquid red-chalk.[10] Bathed in blood and dyed therewith, that hero shone in battle like a flowering *Kinçuka.*[11] Crutakarman then, O king, thus assailed by the foe, became filled with rage, and cut in twain the foe-resisting bow of Chitrasena.[12] The latter's bow having been cut off, Crutakarman then, O king, pierced him with three hundred arrows equipt with goodly wings, covering him completely therewith.[13] With another broad-headed arrow, sharp-edged and keen-pointed, he cut off the head, decked with head-gear, of his high-souled antagonist.[14] That blazing head of Chitrasena fell down on the ground, like the moon loosened from the firmament upon the Earth at will.[15] Beholding the king slain, the troops of Chitrasena, O sire, rushed impetuously against (his slayer).[16] That great bowman then, filled with rage, rushed, shooting his shafts, against that army, like Yama filled with fury, against all creatures at the time of the universal dissolution.[17] Slaughtered in that battle by thy grandson armed with the bow, they quickly fled on all sides like

elephants scorched by a forest-conflagration.[18] Beholding them flying away hopeless of vanquishing the foe, Crutakarman, pursuing them with his keen arrows, looked exceedingly resplendent (on his car).[19] Then Prativindhya, piercing Chitra with five arrows, struck his driver with three, and his standard with one.[20] Him Chitra pierced, striking in the arms and the chest, with nine broad-headed shafts equipt with wings of gold, having keen points, and plumed with *Kanka* and peacock feathers.[21] Then Prativindhya, O Bhārata, cutting off with his shafts the bow of his antagonist, deeply struck the latter with five keen arrows.[22] Then Chitra, O monarch, sped at thy grandson a terrible and irresistible dart, adorned with golden bells, and resembling a flame of fire.[23] Prativindhya, however, in that battle, cut off, with the greatest ease, into three fragments, that dart as it coursed towards him like a flashing meteor.*[24] Cut off into three fragments, with Prativindhya's shafts, that dart fell down, like the thunderbolt insparing all creatures with fear at the end of the *Yuga*.[25] Beholding that dart baffled, Chitra, taking up a huge mace decked with a net-work of gold, hurled it at Prativindhya.[26] That mace slew the latter's steeds and driver also in that great battle, and crushing, besides, his car, fell with great impetuosity on the Earth.[27] Meanwhile, having alighted from his car, O Bhārata, Prativindhya hurled at Chitra a dart, well-adorned and equipt with a golden staff.[28] Catching it as it coursed towards him, the high-souled king Chitra, O Bhārata, hurled the very weapon at Prativindhya.[29] Striking the brave Prativindhya in that battle, that blazing dart, piercing through his right arm, fell down on the Earth, and falling, illumined the whole region like a blast of lightning.[30]† Then Prativindhya, O king, filled with rage, and desiring to compass the destruction of Chitra, sped at him a lance decked with gold.[31] That lance, penetrating through his armour and chest, entered the Earth like a mighty snake its hole.[32] Struck with that lance, the king fell down, stretching out his large and massive arms that resembled a couple of iron clubs.[33]

---

* Or, 'like a blazing brand'.—T.

† A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

Beholding Chitra slain, thy warriors, those ornaments of battle, rushed impetuously at Prativindhya from all sides.[34] Shooting diverse kinds of shafts and *Çataghnis* decked with rows of bells, they soon covered Prativindhya like masses of clouds covering the Sun.[35] The mighty-armed Prativindhya, consuming with his arrowy showers those assailants of his in that battle, routed thy army like the thunder-wielding Cakra routing the *Asura* host.[36] Thus slaughtered in battle by the Pāndavas, thy troops, O king, suddenly dispersed in all directions like congregated masses of clouds dispersed by the wind.[37] While thy army, slaughtered on all sides, was thus flying away, only Drona's son singly rushed with speed against the mighty Bhimasena.[38] All at once a fierce encounter ensued between them like to what had taken place between Vritra and Vāsava in the battle between the gods and the *Asuras* (of old).' "[39]

SECTION XV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Endued with the greatest activity, Drona's son, O king, displaying the lightness of his arms, pierced Bhima with an arrow.[1] Aiming at all his vital parts, for he hath a knowledge of all the vital parts of the body, the quick-handed Açwatthāman again struck him with ninety shafts.[2] Pierced all over with keen arrows by the son of Drona, Bhimasena looked resplendent in that battle like the Sun himself with his rays.[3] The son of Pāndu then, covering the son of Drona with a thousand well-directed shafts, uttered a leonine roar.[4] Baffling with his own shafts the shafts of his foe in that battle, the son of Drona, O king, as if smiling, then struck the Pāndava in the forehead with a clothyard shaft.[5] The son of Pāndu bore that arrow on his forehead even as the proud rhinoceros, O king, in the forest bears its horn.[6] The valiant Bhima then, in that battle, as if smiling the while, struck the struggling son of Drona in the forehead with three clothyard shafts.[7] With those three arrows sticking on his forehead, that Brāhmana looked beautiful like a three-peaked mountain washed with water in the season of rains.[8] The son of Drona then afflicted the Pāndava with hundreds of arrows but failed

to shake him like the wind failing to shake the mountain.[9] Similarly the son of Pāndu, filled with joy, could not in that battle shake the son of Drona with his hundreds of keen shafts like torrents of rain failing to shake a mountain.[10] Shrouding each other with showers of terrible shafts, those two great car-warriors, those two heroes, endued with fierce might, shone resplendent on those two foremost of cars of theirs.[11] They then looked like two blazing Suns risen for the destruction of the world, and engaged in scorching each other with their rays constituted by excellent arrows.[12] Endeavouring with great care to counteract each other's feats in that great battle, and actually engaged in matching deed by deed with showers of arrows most fearlessly,[13] those two foremost of men careered in that combat like a couple of tigers. Both invincible and terrible, arrows constituted their fangs and bows their mouths.[14] They became invisible under those clouds of arrows on all sides, like the Sun and the Moon in the firmament shrouded by masses of clouds.[15] And then those two chastisers of foes soon became visible and blazed forth like Mars and Mercury freed from cloudy screens.[16] Then at that instant during the progress of that awful battle, Drona's son placed Vrikodara to his right,[17] pouring hundreds of fierce arrows upon him like the clouds pouring torrents of rain upon a mountain. Bhima, however, could not brook that indication of his enemy's triumph.[18] The son of Pāndu, O king, from that very station on Açwatthāman's right, began to counteract the latter's feats. Their cars continuing to wheel around in diverse ways and advance and retreat (according to the exigencies of the situation),[19] the battle between those two lions among men became exceedingly furious. Careering in diverse paths, and (executing) circular manœvres,[20] they continued to strike each other with arrows shot from their bows drawn to their fullest stretch. And each made the greatest endeavours to compass the destruction of the other. And each of them desired to make the other carless in that battle.[21]* Then that great car-warrior, *viz.*, the son of Drona, invoked many mighty weapons. The son of

* A triplet in the Bengal texts —T

Pāndu, however, in that battle, with his own weapons, counteracted all those weapons of his foe.[22] Then, O monarch, there took place an awful encounter of weapons, like to the terrible encounter of planets at the time of the universal destruction.[23] Those shafts, O Bhārata, let off by them, collided together, illuminating all the points of the compass and thy troops also all around.[24] Covered with flights of arrows, the welkin assumed a terrible sight, like to what happens, O king, at the time of the universal dissolution, when it is covered with falling meteors.[25]* From the clash of shafts, O Bhārata, fire was generated there, with sparks and blazing flames. That fire began to consume both armies.[26] *Siddhas* moving there, O monarch, said these words, O lord, *viz.*,—This battle is the foremost of all battles![27] All the battles (fought before) do not come up to even a sixteenth part of this! A battle like this will never occur again![28] Both these persons, *viz.*, this Brāhmana and this Kshatriya, are endued with knowledge![29] Both are possessed of courage, and both are fierce in prowess! Dreadful is the might of Bhima, and wonderful is the skill of the other in weapons! How great is their energy, and how wonderful the skill possessed by both![30] Both of them stand in this battle like two universe-destroying Yamas at the end of the *Yuga*! They are born like two Rudras, or like two Suns![31] These two tigers among men, both endued with terrible forms, are like two Yamas in this battle!—Such were the words of the *Siddhas* heard there every moment. And among the assembled denizens of heaven there arose a leonine roar.[32]† Beholding the amazing and inconceivable feats of the two warriors in that battle, the dense throngs of *Siddhas* and *Chāranas* were filled with wonder.[33] And the gods, the *Siddhas*, and the great *Rishis* applauded them both, saying,—Excellent, O mighty-armed son of Drona! Excellent, O Bhima![34] —Meanwhile those two heroes, in that battle, O king, having done injuries to each other, glared at each other with eyes

---

* The Bombay reading *Yudham* in the second line of 25 is vicious. The Bengal reading *Yadvat* is evidently preferable.—T.

† A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T

rolling in rage.[35] With eyes red in rage, their lips also quivered in rage. And they grinded their teeth in wrath and bit their lips.[36] And those two great car-warriors covered each other with showers of arrows, as if they were, in that battle, two masses of clouds that poured torrents of arrows for rain and that gleamed with weapons constituting their lightning.[37] Having pierced each other's standards and drivers in that great battle, and having also pierced each other's steeds, they continued to strike each other.[38] Then, O monarch, filled with rage, they took up, in that dreadful encounter, two arrows, and each desirous of slaying the other shot quickly at his foe.[39] Those two blazing arrows, resistless and endued with the force of thunder, coming, O king, to the two warriors as they stood at the head of their respective divisions, struck them both.[40] The two mighty combatants then, deeply struck with those arrows, sank, each from the force of the other, on the terrace of his respective car.[41] His driver then, understanding the son of Drona to be insensible, bore him away from the battle, O king, in the sight of all the troops.[42] Similarly, O king, his driver bore away from the battle, on his car, the son of Pāndu, that scorcher of foes, who was repeatedly falling into swoon.' "[43]

Section XVI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me how occurred the battle of Arjuna with the *Samsaptakas*, and of the other kings with the Pāndavas![1] Tell me also, O Sanjaya, how happened the battle of Arjuna with Açwatthāman, and of the other lords of Earth with the Pārthas![2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Listen, O king, as I speak to thee as to how occurred the battle of the heroic warriors (of our side) with the foe, that battle which was destructive of bodies, sins, and lives![3] That slayer of foes, *viz.*, Pārtha, penetrating into the *Samsaptaka* force that resembled the ocean, agitated it exceedingly, like a tempest agitating the vasty deep.[4] Cutting ffo with broad-headed arrows of keen edges the heads of brave warriors, that were decked with faces possessed of the splendour of the full moon and with beautiful eyes and eyebrows and

teeth, Dhananjaya speedily caused the Earth to be strewn therewith as if with lotuses plucked off their stalks.[5]* And in that battle, Arjuna, with his razor-headed shafts, cut off the arms of his foes, that were all well rounded, large, and massive, and smeared with sandal-paste and other perfumes, with weapons in grasp, with leathern fences casing their fingers, and looking like five-headed snakes.[6]† And the son of Pāndu repeatedly cut off, with his broad-headed shafts, steeds, and riders, and drivers, and flags, and bows, and arrows, and arms decked with gems.[7] And Arjuna, in that battle, O king, with many thousands of arrows, despatched to Yama's abode, car-warriors and elephants and horses and horsemen.[8] Many foremost of warriors, filled with rage, and roaring like bulls, and mad (like them) with excitement for a cow in season, rushed towards Arjuna, with loud cries.[9]‡ All of them then began to strike Arjuna with their arrows as the latter was employed in slaying them, like infuriate bulls striking one of their species with their horns. The battle that took place between him and them made the hair to stand on end, even like the battle beween the *Daityas* and the wielder of the thunder-bolt on the occasion of the conquest of the three worlds.[10]¶ Resisting with his own weapons the weapons of his foes on all sides, Arjuna, piercing them fast with innumerable arrows, took their lives.[11] Like the wind destroying vast masses of clouds, Arjuna, otherwise called Jaya, that enhancer of the fears of his foes, cutting off into minute fragments large throngs of cars,—cars, that is, whose poles, wheels, and ales had previously been shattered by him, and whose warriors and steeds and drivers had been slain before, and whose weapons and quivers had been displaced, and standards crushed, and traces and reins sundered, and wooden fences and shafts broken, already,—and filling every body with wonder, achieved feats magnificient to behold and rivalling those of a thousand great car-warriors

---

* A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

† This also is a triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

‡ The Bombay texts read this with a slight variation.—T.

¶ A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

fighting together.[13-14]* Crowds of *Siddhas* and celestial *Rishis* and *Chāranas* all applauded him. And celestial kettle-drums sounded, and floral showers fell upon the heads of Keçava and Arjuna. And an incorporeal voice said,[15]—These, *viz.*, Keçava and Arjuna, are those two heroes that always possess the beauty of the moon, the splendour of fire, the force of the wind, and the radiance of the Sun![16] Stationed on the same car, these two heroes are invincible even like Brahman and Içāna! These two heroes, the foremost of all creatures, are Nara and Nārāyana![17]—Hearing and beholding these wonderful things, O Bhārata, Açwatthāman, with great care and resolution, rushed against the two Krishnas in that battle.[18] With his arm that held an arrow in its grasp, the son of Drona hailed the Pāndava who was shooting shafts equipt with foe-slaying heads, and smilingly told him these words.[19]—If, O hero, thou regard me a worthy guest arrived (before thee), then give me today, with thy whole heart, the hospitality of battle![20]—Thus summoned by the preceptor's son from desire of battle, Arjuna regarded himself highly honored, and addressing Janārddana, said,[21]—The *Samsaptakas* should be slain by me, but Drona's son again is summoning me! Tell me, O Mādhava, to which of these duties should I first turn? Rising, let the services of hospitality be offered, if thou thinkest that to be proper![22]—Thus addressed, Krishna bore Pārtha who had been summoned according to the rules of triumphant challenge, to the vicinity of Drona's son, like Vāyu bearing Indra to the sacrifice.[23] Saluting Drona's son whose mind was fixed upon one thing, Keçava said unto him,—O Açwatthāman, be cool, and without losing a moment strike and bear![24] The time has come for those that are dependent on others to repay their obligation to their masters![†] The disputes between Brāhmanas are subtile. The consequences, however, of the disputes of Kshatriyas are palpable, being victory and defeat![25] For obtaining those excellent rites of hospitality that from folly thou solicitest at the hands of Pārtha, fight coolly now with the son of

---

* The Bengal texts read *Bhaya-varddhanam* —T.

† Literally, 'to pay off their master's cake.'—T.

Pāndu![26]—Thus addressed by Vāsudeva, that foremost of regenerate ones replied, saying,—So be it!—and pierced Keçava with sixty shafts and Arjuna with three.[27] Arjuna then, filled with rage, cut off Açwatthāman's bow with three shafts. Drona's son took up another bow that was more formidable still.[28] Stringing it within the twinkling of an eye, he pierced Arjuna and Keçava, the latter with three hundred arrows, and the former with a thousand.[29] And then Drona's son, with good care, stupifying Arjuna in that battle, shot thousands and tens of thousands and millions of arrows.[30] From the quivers, the bow, the bowstring, the fingers, the arms, the hands, the chest, the face, the nose, the eyes,[31] the ears, the head, the limbs, the pores of the body, the armour on his person, the car, and the standard, O sire, of that utterer of *Brahma*, arrows began to issue.[32] Piercing Mādhava and the son of Pāndu with that thick arrowy shower, Drona's son, filled with joy, uttered a loud roar resembling that of a vast mass of congregated clouds.[33] Hearing that roar of his, the son of Pāndu said unto Keçava of unfading glory these words:—Behold, O Mādhava, this wickedness towards me of the preceptor's son![34] He regardeth us to be slain, having shrouded us with this dense arrowy shower.* I will presently, however, by my training and might, baffle his purpose![35]—Cutting off every one of those arrows shot by Açwatthāman into three fragments, that foremost one of Bharata's race destroyed them all like the Sun destroying a thick fog.[36] After this the son of Pāndu once more pierced with his fierce shafts the *Samsaptakas* with their steeds, drivers, cars, elephants, standards, and foot-soldiers.[37] Every one of those that stood there as spectators, every one of those that were stationed there on foot or car or steed or elephant, regarded himself as shrouded by the arrows of Arjuna.[38] Shot from *Gāndiva*, those winged arrows of diverse forms slew in that battle elephants and steeds and men whether stationed in his immediate front or at the distance of two miles.[39] The trunks, cut off with broad-headed shafts, of elephants adown whose cheeks and other limbs flowed the juice indicative of

* Literally, 'having made us the inmates of this arrowy mansion.'—T.

excitement, fell down like tall trees in the forest struck down with the axe.[40] A little after fell down elephants, huge as hillocks, with their riders, like mountains crushed by Indra with his thunder.[41] With his shafts cutting into minute portions well-equipt cars that looked like dissolving edifices of vapour in the evening sky and unto which were yoked well-trained steeds of great speed and which were ridden by warriors invincible in battle, the son of Pāndu continued to shower his arrows on his enemies. And Dhananjaya continued to slay well-decked horsemen and foot-soldiers of the foe.[42-43] Indeed, Dhananjaya, resembling the very Sun as he rises at the end of the *Yuga*, dried up the *Samsaptaka* ocean incapable of being dried up easily, by means of keen arrows constituting his rays.[44] Without losing a moment, the son of Pāndu once more pierced Drona's son resembling a huge hill, with shafts of great impetuosity and the splendour of the Sun, like the wielder of the thunderbolt piercing a mountain with the thunder.[45] Desirous of battle, the preceptor's son then, filled with rage, approached Arjuna for piercing him and his steeds and drivers by means of his swiftly-coursing shafts. Arjuna, however, quickly cut off the shafts shot at him by Açwatthāman.[46] The son of Pāndu then, filled with great wrath, proffered unto Açwatthāman, that desirable guest, quivers upon quivers of arrows like a charitable person offering everything in his house unto a guest.[47] Leaving the *Samsaptakas* then, the son of Pāndu rushed towards Drona's son like a donor, abandoning unworthy guests, for proceeding towards one that is worthy.' "[48]*

---

* The two words used here, viz., *Pānkteyam* and its negative, have ae peculiar signification. He that is worthy of being admitted to the sam line with honored guests while sitting for a feed, is a *pānkteya*. He, on the other hand, that is excluded from the line is an *apānkteya*. To this day the leaders of all castes in India are busied with questions affecting the inclusion in or the exclusion from the caste line of its members on occasions of feed and festivity:—T.

Section XVII.

"Sanjaya said,—"Then occurred that battle between Arjuna and Açwatthāman resembling the planets Cukra and Vrihaspati in splendour, like the battle between Cukra and Vrihaspati in the firmament for entering the same constellation.[1] Afflicting each other with blazing shafts that constituted their rays, those terrifiers of the world stood like two planets both deviating from their orbits,[2] Then Arjuna deeply pierced Açwatthāman with a shaft in the midst of his eye-brows. With that shaft the son of Drona looked resplendent like the Sun with upward rays.[3] The two Krishnas also, deeply afflicted by Açwatthāman with hundreds of arrows, looked like two Suns at the end of the *Yuga* resplendent with their own rays.[4] Then when Vāsudeva seemed to be stupified, Arjuna shot a weapon from which issued torrents of shafts on all sides. And he struck the son of Drona with innumerable shafts, each resembling the thunder or fire or the rod of Death.[5] Endued with mighty energy, that achiever of fierce feats, (*viz.*, Açwatthāman,) then pierced both Keçava and Arjuna with well-shot shafts inspired with great impetuosity and struck with which Death himself would feel pain.[6] Checking the shafts of Drona's son, Arjuna covered him with twice as many arrows equipt with goodly wings, and shrouding that foremost of heroes and his steeds and driver and standard, began to strike the *Samsaptakas*.[7] With his well-shot shafts Pārtha began to cut off the bows and arrows and quivers and bowstrings and hands and arms and tightly grasped weapons and umbrellas and standards and steeds and car-shafts and robes and floral garlands and ornaments and coats of mail and handsome shields and beautiful heads, in large numbers, of his unretreating foes![8-9] Well-equipt cars and steeds and elephants, ridden by heroes fighting with great care, were destroyed by the hundreds of shafts sped by Pārtha and fell down along with the heroes that rode them.[10] Cut off with broad-headed and crescent-shaped and razor-faced arrows, human heads, resembling the lotus, the Sun, or the full Moon in beauty and resplendent with diadems and necklaces and crowns, dropped ceaselessly on the Earth.[11] Then the

Kalinga, the Vanga, and the Nishāda heroes, riding on elephants that resembled in splendour the elephant of the great foe of the *Daityas*, rushed with speed against that queller of the pride of the *Dānavas*, viz., the son of Pāndu, from desire of slaying him.[12]* Pārtha cut off the armour, the vital limbs, the trunks, the riders, the standards, and the banners, of those elephants, upon which those beasts fell down like mountain summits riven with thunder.[13] When that elephant force was broken, the diadem-decked Arjuna shrouded the son of his preceptor with shafts endued with the splendour of the newly-risen Sun, like the wind shrouding the risen Sun with masses of congregated clouds.[14] Checking with his own shafts those of Arjuna, Drona's son, shrouding both Arjuna and Vāsudeva with his arrows, uttered a loud roar, like a mass of clouds at the close of summer after shrouding the Sun or the Moon in the firmament.[15] Deeply afflicted with those arrows, Arjuna, aiming his weapons at Açwatthāman and at those followers of his belonging to thy army, speedily dispelled that darkness caused by Açwatthāman's arrows, and pierced all of them with shafts epuipt with goodly wings.[16] In that battle none could see when Savyasāchin took up his shafts, when he aimed them, and when he let them off. All that could be seen was that elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers and car-warriors, struck with his arrows, fell down, deprived of life.[17] Then Drona's son, without losing a moment, aiming ten foremost of arrows, sped them quickly as if they formed only one arrow. Shot with great force, five of these pierced Arjuna' and the other five pierced Vāsudeva.[18] Struck with those arrows, those two foremost of men, like Kuvera and Indra, became bathed in blood. Thus afflicted, all the people there regarded those two heroes slain by Açwatthāman, that warrior who had completely mastered the science of arms.[19] Then the chief

---

* *Daityaripudwipa* is explained by Nilakantha to mean an *Asura* having the form of an elephant. I cannot reject the obvious meaning of the compound for following the commentator. The elephant of the foe of the *Daityas* would mean the prince of elephants, called Airāvata, belonging to Indra.—T.

of the Daçārhas addressed Arjuna and said,—Why errest thou (in thus sparing Açwatthāman)? Slay this warrior! If treated with indifference, even this one will be the cause of great woe, like a disease not sought to be put down by treatment!—Replying unto Keçava of unfading glory with the words—So be it, —Arjuna of unclouded understanding began, with good care, to mangle the son of Drona with his shafts.[20] Now the son of Pāndu, filled with rage, quickly pierced the massive arms, smeared with sandal-paste, and the chest, the head, and the unrivalled thighs of his antagonist with shafts equipt with heads like goats' ears, and shot with great force from *Gāndiva*. Then cutting off the traces of Açwatthāman's steeds, Arjuna began to pierce the steeds themselves, whereat the latter bore Açwatthāman away to a great distance from the field.[21] Thus borne away by those steeds endued with the speed of the wind, the intelligent son of Drona, deeply afflicted with the shafts of Pārtha, reflecting for some time, wished not to go back and renew the fight with Pārtha.[22] Knowing that victory is ever with the chief of the Vrishnis and with Dhananjaya, that foremost one of Angirasa's race, endued with great activity, entered the army of Karna, deprived of hope and with shafts and weapons almost exhausted.[23] Indeed, Drona's son, restraining his steeds, and having comforted himself a little, O sire, entered the force of Karna teeming with cars and steeds and men.[24] After Açwatthāman, that enemy of theirs, had been thus removed from the field by his steeds like a disease removed from the body by incantations and medicines and means,[25] Keçava and Arjuna proceeded towards the *Samsaptakas*, on their car whose rattle resembled the roar of the clouds and whose banner waved on the wind.' "[26]

SECTION XVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—"Meanwhile, towards the northern part of the Pāndava army, a loud uproar arose of cars and elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers as these were being massacred by Dandadhāra.[1] Turning the course of the car but without stopping the steeds fleet as Garuda or the wind, Keçava, ad-

dressing Arjuna, said,[2]—The chief of the Magadhas, with his (foe-) crushing elephant, is unrivalled in prowess! In training and might he is not inferior to Bhagadatta himself.[3] Having slain him first, thou wilt then slay the *Samsaptakas*!—At the conclusion of his words, Keçava bore Pārtha to the presence of Dandadhāra.[4] The chief of Magadhas, peerless in handling the elephant-hook, even as the headless planet Ketu (is peerless) among all the planets, was destroying the hostile army like a fierce commet destroying the whole Earth.[5]* Riding on his foe-slaying and well-equipt elephant which looked like the *Dānava* with elephantine face and form,† and whose roar resembled that of a congregated mass of clouds, Dandadhāra was destroying with his shafts thousands of cars and steeds and elephants and men.[6] The elephant also, treading with his feet upon cars, pressed down into the Earth a large number of men with their steeds and drivers. Many were the elephants also that that foremost of elephants crushed and slew with his two fore-feet and trunk. Indeed, the beast moved like the wheel of Death.[7] Slaying men adorned with steel coats of mail, along with their horses and foot-soldiers, the chief of the Maghadhas caused these to be pressed down into the Earth, like thick reeds pressed down with crackling sounds, by means of that mighty and foremost of elephants belonging to him.[8] Then Arjuna, riding on that foremost of cars, rushed quickly towards that prince of elephants in the midst of that host teeming with thousands of cars and steeds and elephants, and resounding with the beat and blare of innumerable cymbals and drums and conchs, and uproarious with the clatter of car-wheels, the twang of bow-strings, and the sound of palms.[9] Then Dandadhāra pierced Arjuna with a dozen foremost of shafts and Janārddana with sixteen, and each of the steeds with three, and then uttered a loud shout and laughed repeatedly.[10] Then Pārtha, with a number of broad-headed shafts, cut off the bow

---

* *Ankuça-graha* means 'in handling the hook.' *Vikacha-graha* is explained by Nilkantha to mean either *Ketu*, the headless planet, or a calamitous planet like a fierce commet.—T.

† *Vide* note to verse 12 in the previous Section.—T.

of his antagonist with its string and arrow fixed thereon, as also his well-decked standard, and then the guides of his beast and the footmen that protected the animal. At this the lord of Girivraja became filled with rage.[11] Desirous of agitating Janārddana with that tusker of his, whose temples had split from excitement, and which resembled a mass of clouds and was endued with the speed of the wind, Dandadhāra struck Dhananjaya with many lances.[12] The son of Pāndu then, with three razor-headed arrows, cut off, almost at the same instant of time, the two arms, each looking like the trunk of an elephant, and then the head, resembling the full Moon, of his foe. Then Arjuna struck the elephant of his antagonist with hundreds of arrows.[13] Covered with the gold-decked arrows of Pārtha, that elephant equipt with golden armour looked as resplendent as a mountain in the night with its herbs and trees blazing in a conflagration.[14] Afflicted with pain and roaring like a mass of clouds, and exceedingly weakened, the elephant, crying and wandering and running with tottering steps, fell down with the guide on its neck, like a mountain summit riven by thunder.[15] Upon the fall of his brother in battle, Danda advanced against Indra's younger brother and Dhananjaya, desirous of slaying them, on his tusker white as snow and adorned with gold and looking like a Himālayan summit.[16] Danda struck Janārddana with three whetted lances bright as the rays of the Sun, and Arjuna with five, and uttered a loud shout. The son of Pāndu then, uttering a loud shout, cut off the two arms of Danda.[17] Cut off by means of razor-headed shafts, those two arms, smeared with sandal-paste, adorned with *angadas*, and with lances in grasp, as they fell from the elephant's back at the same instant of time, looked resplendent like a couple of large snakes of great beauty falling down from a mountain-summit.[18] Cut off with a crescent-shaped arrow by the diadem-decked (Pārtha), the head also of Danda fell down on the Earth from the elephant's back, and covered with blood it looked resplendent as it lay like the Sun dropped from the Asta mountain towards the western quarter.[19] Then Pārtha pierced with many excellent arrows bright as the rays of the Sun that elephant of his foe,

resembling a mass of white clouds, whereupon it fell down with a loud noise like a Himālayan summit riven with thunder.[20] Then other huge elephants capable of winning victory and resembling the two already slain, were cut off by Savyasāchin, in that battle, even as the two (belonging to Danda and Dandadhāra) had been cut off. At this the vast hostile force broke.[21] Then elephants and cars and steeds and men, in dense throngs, clashed against one another and fell down on the field. Tottering, they violently struck one another and fell down deprived of life.[22] Then his soldiers, encompassing Arjuna like the celestials encompassing Purandara, began to say,—O hero, that foe of whom we had been frightened like creatures at the sight of Death himself, hath, by good luck, been slain by thee![23] If thou hadst not protected from that fear those people that were so deeply afflicted by mighty foes, then by this time our foes would have felt that delight which we now feel at their death, O slayer of enemies![24]—Hearing these and other words uttered by friends and allies, Arjuna, with a cheerful heart, worshipped those men, each according to his deserts, and proceeded once more against the *Samsaptakas*.'"[25]

SECTION XIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Wheeling round, like the planet Mercury in the curvature of its orbit, Jishnu once more slew large numbers of the *Samsaptakas*.[1] Afflicted with the shafts of Pārtha, O king, men, steeds, and elephants, O Bhārata, wavered and wandered and lost color and fell down and died.[2] Many foremost of animals tied to yokes, and drivers, and standards, and bows, and shafts, and hands, and weapons in grasp, and arms, and heads, of heroic foes fighting with him, the son of Pāndu cut off in that battle, with arrows, some of which were broad-headed, some equipt with heads like razors, some crescent-shaped, and some furnished with heads like the calf's tooth.[3-4] Like bulls fighting with a bull for the sake of a cow in season, brave warriors, by hundreds and thousands, closed upon Arjuna.[5] The battle that took place between them and him made the

hair to stand on end, like the encounter between the *Daityas* and the wielder of the thunder-bolt on the occasion of the conquest of the three worlds.[6] Then the son of Ugrāyudha pierced Pārtha with three shafts resembling three venomous snakes. Pārtha, however, cut off from his enemy's trunk the latter's head.[7] Then those warriors, filled with rage, covered Arjuna from every side with diverse kinds of weapons, like the clouds urged by the Maruts shrouding Himavat at the close of summer.[8] Checking with his own weapons those of his foes on every side, Arjuna slew a large number of his enemies with well-shot shafts.[9] With his arrows Arjuna then cut off the *Trivenus*, the steeds, the drivers, and the *Pārshni* drivers of many cars, and displaced the weapons and quivers of many, and deprived many of their wheels and standards, and broke the chords, the traces, and the axles of many, and destroyed the bottoms and yokes of others, and caused all the equipments of many to fall off from their places.[10-11] Those cars, thus smashed and injured by Arjuna in large numbers, looked like the luxurious mansions of the rich destroyed by fire, wind, and rain.[12] Elephants, their vitals pierced with shafts resembling thunder-bolts in impetuosity, fell down like mansions on mountain-tops overthrown by blasts of lightning.[13] Large numbers of steeds with their riders, struck by Arjuna, fell down on the Earth, their tongues and entrails pressed out, themselves deprived of strength and bathed in blood, and presenting an awful sight.[14] Men and steeds and elephants, pierced by Savyasāchin with his shafts, wandered and tottered and fell down and uttered cries of pain and looked pale, O sire![15] Like Mahendra smiting down the *Dānavas*, Pārtha smote down large numbers of his foes, by means of shafts whetted on stone and resembling the thunder or poison in deadliness.[16] Brave warriors, cased in costly coats of mail and decked with ornaments, and armed with diverse kinds of weapons, lay on the field, with their cars and standards, slain by Pārtha.[17] Vanquished (and deprived of life), persons of righteous deeds, possessed of noble birth and great knowledge, proceeded to heaven in consequence of those glorious deeds of theirs, while their bodies only lay on Earth.[18] Then the chiefs, belonging to thy army, of various

realms, filled with wrath and accompanied by their followers, rushed against Arjuna, that foremost of car-warriors.[19] Warriors borne on their cars and steeds and elephants, and foot-soldiers also, all desirous of slaying (Arjuna), rushed towards him, shooting diverse weapons with great speed.[20] Then the Arjuna-wind, by means of keen shafts, destroyed that thick shower of weapons dropped by those warriors constituting a mass of congregated clouds.[21] People then beheld Arjuna crossing that raftless ocean constituted by steeds and foot-soldiers and elephants and cars, and having mighty weapons for its waves, on a bridge constituted by his own mighty weapons of offence and defence.[22] Then Vāsudeva, addressing Pārtha, said,—Why, O sinless one, dost thou sport in this way? Grinding these *Samsaptakas*, haste thyself for Karna's slaughter![23]—Saying,—So be it—unto Krishna, Arjuna then, forcibly smiting the remnant of the *Samsaptakas* with his weapons, began to destroy them like Indra destroying the *Daityas*.[24] At that time, with even the closest attention, men could not mark when Arjuna took out his shafts, when he aimed them, and when he let them off quickly.[25] Govinda himself, O Bhārata, regarded it wonderful. Like swans diving into a lake, the shafts of Arjuna, white and active as swans, penetrated into the hostile force.[26] Then Govinda, beholding the field of battle during the progress of that carnage, said these words to Savyasāchin:[27]—Here, O Pārtha, for the sake of Duryodhana alone, occurreth this great and terrible destruction of the Bharatas and other kings of the Earth![28] Behold, O son of Bharata, these bows, with golden backs, of many mighty bowmen, and these girdles and quivers loosened from their bodies![29] Behold these straight shafts equipt with wings of gold, and these long arrows washed with oil and looking like snakes freed from their sloughs![30] Behold these beautiful lances decked with gold, lying scattered about, and these coats of mail, O Bhārata, adorned with gold and fallen off from the bodies of the warriors![31] Behold these spears embellished with gold, these darts adorned with the same metal, and these huge maces twined round with threads of gold and chords of hemp![32] Behold these swords decked with bright gold and these axes

adorned with the same, and these battle-axes equipt with gold-decked handles![33] Behold also these spiked clubs, these short arrows, these *Bhuçundis*, and these *Kanapas*; these iron *Kuntas* lying around, and these heavy *Mushalas*![34] These victory-longing warriors endued with great activity and armed with diverse weapons, though dead, still seem to be quick with life![35] Behold those thousands of warriors, their limbs crushed with maces, and heads split with *Mushalas* or smashed and torn by elephants and steeds and cars![36] O slayer of foes, the field of battle is strewn with the bodies of men and elephants and steeds, deprived of life, dreadfully mangled with shafts and darts and swords and lances and scimitars and axes and spears and *Nakharas* and bludgeons, and bathed in streams of blood![37-38] Strewn with arms smeared with sandal-paste and decked with *Angadas* and graced with auspicious indications and cased in leathern fences and adorned with *Keyuras*, the Earth looks resplendent, O Bhārata![39] Strewn also with hands having fingers cased in fences, decked with ornaments, and lopped off from arms, and with severed thighs looking like the trunks of elephants, of heroes endued with great activity, and with heads adorned with ear-rings and headgears set with gems, (the Earth looks exceedingly beautiful)![40] Behold those beautiful cars, decked with golden bells, broken in diverse ways! Behold those numerous steeds bathed in blood, those bottoms of cars, and long quivers, and diverse kinds of standards and banners,[41] and those huge conchs of the combatants, and those yak tails perfectly white, and those elephants with tongues lolling out and lying on the field like hills,[42] and those beautiful with triumphal banners, and those slain elephant-warriors, and those rich coverlets, each consisting of one piece of blanket, for the backs of those huge beasts,[43] and those beautiful and variegated and torn blankets, and those numerous bells loosened from the bodies of elephants and broken into fragments by those falling creatures,[44] and those hooks with handles set with stones of *lapis lazuli* fallen upon the Earth, and those ornamented yokes of steeds, and those armours, set with diamonds, for their breasts, and those rich cloths, adorned with gold and tied to the ends of the standards

borne by horsemen,[45]* and those variegated coverlets and housings and *Ranku* skins, set with brilliants and inlaid with gold, for the backs of steeds, and fallen on the ground,[46] and those large diamonds adorning the head-gears of kings, and those beautiful necklaces of gold, and those umbrellas displaced from their positions, and those yak-tails and fans![47] Behold the Earth strewn with faces adorned with ear-rings, bright as the moon or stars, and embellished with well-cut beards, and each looking like the full moon![48] The Earth, strewn with those faces looking like lilies and lotuses, resembles a lake adorned with a dense assemblage of lilies and lotuses.[49] Behold, the Earth, possessing the effulgence of the bright moon and diversified as if with myriads of stars, looks like the autumnal firmament baspangled with stellar lights![50] O Arjuna, these feats that have been achieved by thee in great battle today, are, indeed, worthy of thee or of the chief of the celestials himself in heaven![51]—Even thus did Krishna show the field of battle unto Arjuna. And while returning (from the field to their camp), they heard a loud noise in the army of Duryodhana.[52] Indeed, the uproar that was heard consisted of the blare of conchs and the beat of cymbals and drums and *Patahas* and the clatter of car-wheels, the neigh of steeds, the grunt of elephants, and the fierce clash of weapons.[53] Penetrating into that force by the aid of his steeds possessing the fleetness of the wind, Krishna became filled with wonder upon beholding thy army grinded by Pāndya.[54] Like Yama himself slaying creatures whose lives have run out, Pāndya, that foremost of warriors skilled in shafts and weapons, was destroying crowds of foes by means of diverse kinds of shafts.[55] Piercing the bodies of elephants and steeds and men with sharp shafts, that foremost of smiters overthrew and deprived them of life.[56] Cutting off with his own shafts the diverse weapons hurled at him by many foremost of foes, Pāndya slew his enemies like Cakra destroying the *Dānavas*.' "[57]

---

* This is a triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

Section XX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Thou didst before mention to me the name of Pāndya, that hero of world-wide celebrity, but his feats, O Sanjaya, in battle, have never been narrated by thee![1] Tell me today in detail of the prowess of that great hero, his skill, spirit, and energy, the measure of his might, and his pride![2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and Drona's son and Karna and Arjuna and Janārddana, those thorough masters of the science of weapons, are regarded by thee as the foremost of car-warriors. Know, however, that Pāndya regarded himself superior to all these foremost of car-warriors in energy! Indeed, he never regarded any one amongst the kings as equal to himself.[3-4] He never admitted his equality with Karna and Bhishma. Nor did he admit within his heart that he was inferior in any respect to Vāsudeva or Arjuna.[5] Even such was Pāndya, that foremost of kings, that first of all wielders of weapons. Filled with rage like the Destroyer himself, Pāndya, at that time, was slaughtering the army of Karna.[6] That force swelling with cars and steeds and teeming with foremost of foot-soldiers, struck by Pāndya, began to turn round like the potter's wheel.[7] Like the wind dispersing a mass of congregated clouds, Pāndya, with his well-shot arrows, began to disperse that force, destroying its steeds and drivers and standards and cars and causing its weapons and elephants to fall down.[8] Like the splitter of mountains striking down mountains with his thunder, Pāndya overthrew elephants with their riders, having previously cut down the standards and banners and weapons with which they were armed, as also the foot-soldiers that protected those beasts.[9] And he cut down horses, and horsemen with their darts and lances and quivers. Mangling with his shafts the Pulindas, the Khasas, the Vālhikas, the Nishādas, the Andhakas, the Tanganas, the Southerners, and the Bhojas, all of whom, endued with great courage, were unyielding and obstinate in battle, and divesting them of their weapons and coats of mail, Pāndya deprived them of their lives.[10-11] Beholding Pāndya destroying with his shafts in battle that host consisting

of four kinds of forces, the son of Drona fearlessly proceeded towards that fearless warrior.[12] Fearlessly addressing in sweet words that warrior who then seemed to dance on his car, Drona's son, that foremost of smiters, smiling the while, summoned him and said,[13]—O king, O thou with eyes like the petals of the lotus, thy birth is noble and learning great! Of celebrated might and prowess, thou resemblest Indra himself![14] Stretching with thy two massive arms the bow held by thee and whose large string is attached to thy grasp, thou lookest beautiful like a mass of congregated clouds as thou pourest over thy foes thick showers of impetuous shafts! I do not see anybody save myself that can be a match for thee in battle![15-16] Alone thou crushest numerous cars and elephants and foot-soldiers and steeds, like the fearless lion of terrible might crushing herds of deer in the forest.[17] Making the welkin and the Earth resound with the loud clatter of thy car-wheels, thou lookest resplendent, O king, like a crop-destroying autumnal cloud of loud roars.[18] Taking out of thy quiver and shooting thy keen shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison, fight with myself only, like (the *Asura*) Andhaka fighting with the Three-eyed deity![19]—Thus addressed, Pāndya answered,—So be it!—Then Drona's son, telling him,—Strike, —assailed him with vigor. In return, Malayadhwaja pierced the son of Drona with a barbed arrow.[20] Then Drona's son, that best of preceptors, smiling the while, struck Pāndya with some fierce arrows, capable of penetrating into the very vitals and resembling flames of fire.[21] Then Açwatthāman once more sped at his foe some other large arrows equipt with keen points and capable of piercing the very vitals, causing them to course through the welkin with the ten different kinds of motion.*[22] Pāndya, however, with nine shafts of his cut off all those arrows of his antagonist. With four other shafts he afflicted the four steeds of his foe, at which they speedily expired.[23] Having then, with his sharp shafts, cut off the arrows of Drona's

* These are, upwards, downwards, straight, transverse, etc. Different limbs require to be pierced with arrows inspired with different kinds of motion.—T.

son, Pāndya then cut off the streched bowstring of Açwatthāman endued with the splendour of the Sun.[24] Then Drona's son, that slayer of foes, stringing his unstringed bow, and seeing that his men had meanwhile speedily yoked other excellent steeds unto his car,[25] sped thousands of arrows (at his foe). By this, that regenerate one filled the entire welkin and the ten points of the compass with his arrows.[26] Although knowing that those shafts of the high-souled son of Drona employed in shooting were really inexhaustible, yet Pāndya, that bull among men, cut them all into pieces.[27] The antagonist of Açwatthāman, carefully cutting off all those shafts shot by the latter, then slew with his own keen shafts the two protectors of the latter's car-wheels in that encounter.[28] Beholding the lightness of hand displayed by his foe, Drona's son, drawing his bow to a circle, began to shoot his arrows like a mass of clouds pouring torrents of rain.*[29] During that space of time, O sire, which consisted only of the eighth part of a day, the son of Drona shot as many arrows as were carried on eight carts, each drawn by eight bullocks.[30] Almost all those men that then beheld Açwatthāman, who at that time looked like the Destroyer himself filled with rage, or rather the Destroyer of the Destroyer, lost their senses.[31] Like a mass of clouds at the close of summer drenching with torrents of rain the Earth with her mountians and trees, the preceptor's son poured on that hostile force his arrowy shower.[32] Baffling with the *Vāyavya* weapon that unbearable shower of arrows shot by the Açwatthāman-cloud, the Pāndya-wind, filled with joy, uttered loud roars.[33] Then Drona's son, cutting off the standard, smeared with sandal-paste and other perfumed unguents and bearing the device of the Malaya mountain on it, of the roaring Pāndya, slew the four steeds of the latter.[34] Slaying then his foe's driver with a single shaft, and cutting off with a crescent-shaped arrow the bow also of that warrior whose twang resembled the roar of the clouds, Açwatthāman cut off his enemy's car into minute fragments.[35] Checking with his weapons those

---

* *Pushānuja*, the younger brother of Surya, *i: e.*, the deity of the clouds or *Parjannya*.—T.

of his enemy, and cutting off all the weapons of the latter, Drona's son, although he obtained the opportunity to do his enemy the crowning evil, still slew him not, from desire of battling with him for sometime more.[36] Meanwhile Karna rushed against the large elephant force of the Pāndavas and began to rout and destroy it.[37] Depriving car-warriors of their cars, he struck elephants and steeds and human warriors, O Bhārata, with innumerable straight shafts.[38] That mighty-bowman, *viz.*, the son of Drona, although he had made Pāndya, that slayer of foes and foremost of car-warriors, carless, yet he did not slay him from desire of fight.[39] At that time a huge riderless elephant, with large tusks, well-equipt with all utensils of war, treading with speed, endued with great might, quick to proceed against any enemy, struck with Açwatthāman's shafts, advanced towards the direction of Pāndya with great impetuosity, roaring against a hostile compeer.[40] Beholding that prince of elephants, looking like a cloven mountain-summit, Pāndya, who was well-acquainted with the method of fighting from the neck of an elephant, quickly ascended that beast like a lion springing with a loud roar to the top of a mountain-summit.[41] Then that lord of the prince of mountains, striking the elephant with the hook, and inspired with rage, and with that cool care (for which he was distinguished) in hurling weapons with great force, quickly sped a lance, bright as Surya's rays, at the preceptor's son and uttered a loud shout.[42] Repeatedly shouting in joy,—*Thou art slain,—Thou art slain !*—Pāndya (with that lance) crushed to pieces the diadem of Drona's son adorned with foremost of jewels and diamonds of the first water and the very best kind of gold and excellent cloth and strings of pearls.[43] That diadem, possessed of the splendour of the Sun, the Moon, the planets, or the fire, in consequence of the violence of the stroke, fell down, split into fragments, like a mountain summit riven by Indra's thunder, falling down on the Earth with great noise.[44] At this, Açwatthāman blazed up with exceeding rage like a prince of snakes struck with the foot, and took up four and ten shafts capable of inflicting great pain upon foes and each resembling the Destroyer's rod.[45] With five of those shafts he cut off the four

feet and the trunk of his adversary's elephant, and with three the two arms and the head of the king, and with six he slew the six mighty car-warriors, endued with great effulgence, that followed king Pāndya.[46] Those long and well-rounded arms of the king, smeared with excellent sandal-paste, and adorned with gold and pearls and gems and diamonds, falling upon the Earth, began to writhe like a couple of snakes slain by Garuda.[47] That head also, graced with a face bright as the full Moon, having a prominent nose and a pair of large eyes red as copper with rage, adorned with ear-rings, falling on the ground, looked resplendent like the Moon himself between two bright constellations.[48] The elephant, thus cut off by that skilful warrior into six pieces with those five shafts, and the king into four pieces with those three shafts, lay divided, in all, into ten pieces that looked like the sacrificial butter distributed into ten portions intended for the ten deities.[49] Having cut off numerous steeds and men and elephants into pieces and offered them as food unto the *Rākshasas*, king Pāndya was thus quieted by Drona's son with his shafts like a blazing fire in a crematorium extinguished with water after it has received a libation in the shape of a lifeless body.[50]* Then like the chief of the celestials joyfully worshipping Vishnu after the subjugation of the *Asura* Vali, thy son, the king, accompanied by his brothers, approaching the preceptor's son, worshipped with great respect that warrior who is a complete master of the science of arms, after, indeed, he had completed the task he had undertaken.' "[51]

SECTION XXI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When Pāndya had been slain and when that foremost of heroes, *viz.*, Karna, was employed in routing and destroying the foe, what, O Sanjaya, did Arjuna do in battle?[1] That son of Pāndu is a hero, endued with great might, attentive to his duties, and a complete master of

---

* To this day, in India, the custom exists of extinguishing the fire in the crematorium after it has reduced to ashes the lifeless body.—T.

the science of arms. The high-souled Cankara himself hath made him invincible among all creatures.[2] My greatest fears proceed from that Dhananjaya, that slayer of foes! Tell me, O Sanjaya, all that Pārtha achieved there on that occasion!"[3]

"Sanjaya said,—'After Pāndya's fall, Krishna quickly said unto Arjuna these beneficial words:—I do not behold the King! The other Pāndavas also have retreated![4] If the Pārthas had returned, the vast force of the enemy would have been broken. In fulfilment of the purposes entertained by Açwatthāman, Karna is slaying the Srinjayas.[5] A great carnage is being made (by that warrior) of steeds and car-warriors and elephants!—Thus the heroic Vāsudeva represented everything unto the diadem-decked (Arjuna).[6] Hearing of and beholding that great danger of his brother (Yudhishthira), Pārtha quickly addressed Krishna, saying,—Urge the steeds, O Hrishikeça![7]—Then Hrishikeça proceeded on that irresistible car.* The encounter then that once more took place became exceedingly fierce.[8] The Kurus and the Pāndavas once more fearlessly closed with each other, that is, the Pārthas headed by Bhimasena and ourselves headed by the *Suta's* son.[9] Then, O best of kings, there once more commenced a battle between Karna and the Pāndavas that swelled the population of Yama's kingdom.[10] With bows and arrows and spiked clubs and swords and lances and axes and short clubs and *Bhushundis* and darts and rapiers and battle-axes[11] and maces and spears and polished *Kuntas*, and short shafts and hooks, the combatants quickly fell upon one another, desirous of taking one another's life.[12] Filling the welkin, the cardinal points of the compass, the subsidiary ones, the firmament, and the Earth, with the whizz of arrows, the twang of bowstrings, the sound of palms, and the clatter of car-wheels, foes rushed upon foes.[13] Gladdened by that loud noise, heroes fought with heroes, desirous of reaching the end of the hostilities.[14] Loud became the noise caused by the sound of bowstrings and fences and bows, the grunt of elephants, and the shouts of foot-soldiers and falling men.[15] Hearing the terrible whizz of arrows and the diverse

* Literally, 'against which no other car could fight.'—T.

shouts of brave warriors, the troops took fright, became pale, and fell down.[16] Large numbers of those foes thus employed in shouting and shooting weapons, the heroic son of Adhiratha crushed with his arrows.[17] With his shafts Karna then despatched to Yama's abode twenty car-warriors among the brave Pānchāla heroes, with their steeds, drivers, and standards.[18] Then many foremost of warriors, of the Pāndava army, endued with great energy, and quick in the use of weapons, speedily wheeling round, encompassed Karna on all sides.[19] Karna agitated that hostile force with showers of weapons like the leader of an elephantine herd plunging into a lake adorned with lotuses and covered with swans.[20] Penetrating into the midst of his foes, the son of Rādhā, shaking his best of bows, began to strike off and fell their heads with his sharp shafts.[21] The shields and coats of mail of the warriors, cut off, fell down on the Earth. There was none amongst them that needed the touch of a second arrow of Karna's.[22] Like a driver striking the steeds with the whip, Karna, with his shafts capable of crushing coats of mail and bodies and the life that quickened them, struck the fences (of his foes) perceivable only by their bowstrings.[23] Like a lion grinding herds of deer, Karna speedily grinded all those Pāndus and Srinjayas and Pānchālas that came within reach of his arrows.[24] Then the chief of the Pānchālas, and the sons of Draupadi, O sire, and the twins, and Yuyudhāna, uniting together, proceeded against Karna.[25] When those Kurus, and Pānchālas, and Pāndus were thus engaged in battle, the other warriors, reckless of their very lives, began to strike at one another.[26] Well cased in armour and coats of mail, and adorned with head-gears, combatants endued with great strength rushed at their foes, with maces and short clubs and spiked bludgeons looking like uplifted rods of the Destroyer, and jumping, O sire, and challenging one another, uttered loud shouts.[27-28] Then they struck one another, and fell down, assailed by one another, with blood rising from their limbs and deprived of brains and eyes and weapons.[29] Covered with weapons, some, as they lay there with faces beautiful as pomegranates, having teeth-adorned mouths filled with blood, seemed to be alive.[30] Others, in that

vast ocean of battle, filled with rage, mangled or cut or pierced or overthrew or lopped off or slew one another with battle-axes and short arrows and hooks and spears and lances.[31-32] Slain by one another they fell down, covered with blood and deprived of life, like sandal trees cut down with the axe falling down and shedding as they fall their cool blood-red juice.[33] Cars destroyed by cars, elephants by elephants, men by men, and steeds by steeds, fell down in thousands.[34] Standards, and heads, and umbrellas, and elephants, trunks, and human arms, cut off with razor-faced or broad-headed or crescent-shaped arrows, fell down on the Earth.[35] Large numbers also of men, and elephants, and cars with steeds yoked thereto, were crushed in that battle. Many brave warriors, slain by horsemen, fell down, and many tuskers, with their trunks cut off, and with banners and standards (on their bodies), fell down like fallen mountains. Assailed by foot-soldiers, many elephants and cars, destroyed or in course of destruction, fell down on all sides. Horsemen, encountering foot-soldiers with activity, were slain by the latter.[36-38] Similarly crowds of foot-soldiers, slain by horsemen, laid themselves down on the field. The faces and the limbs of those slain in that dreadful battle looked like crushed lotuses and faded floral wreaths. The beautiful forms of elephants and steeds and human beings, O king, then resembled cloths begrimed with dirt, and became exceedingly repulsive to look at.' "[39-40]

Section XXII.

"Sanjaya said,—"Many elephant-warriors riding on their beasts, urged by thy son, proceeded against Dhrishtadyumna, filled with rage and desirous of compassing his destruction.[1] Many foremost of combatants skilled in elephant-fight, belonging to the Easterners, the Southerners, the Angas, the Vangas, the Pundras, the Maghadhas, the Tāmraliptakas, the Mekalas, the Koçalas, the Madras, the Daçārnas, the Nishadhas, uniting with the Kalingas, O Bhārata, and showering shafts and lances and arrows like pouring clouds, drenched the Pānchāla force therewith in that battle.[2-4] Those (foe)-crushing elephants urged forward by their riders with heels and toes and hooks, Pri-

shata's son covered with his arrows and shafts.[5] Each of those beasts that were huge as hills, the Pānchāla hero pierced with ten, eight, or six whetted shafts, O Bhārata![6] Beholding the prince of the Pānchālas shrouded by those elephants like the Sun by the clouds, the Pāndus and the Pānchālas proceeded towards him (for his rescue), uttering loud roars and armed with sharp weapons.[7] Pouring their weapons upon those elephants, those warriors began to dance the dance of heroes, aided by the music of their bowstrings and the sound of their palms, and urged by heroes beating the time.[8] Then Nakula, and Sahadeva, and the sons of Draupadi, and the Prabhadrakas, and Sātyaki, and Cikhandin, and Chekitāna endued with great energy,—all those heroes,—drenched those elephants from every side with their weapons, like the clouds drenching the hills with their showers.[9] Those furious elephants, urged on by *Mleccha* warriors, dragging down with their trunks men and steeds and cars, crushed them with their feet.[10] And some they pierced with the points of their tusks, and some they raised aloft and dashed down on the ground; others, taken aloft on the tusks of those huge beasts, fell down, inspiring spectators with fear.[11] Then Sātyaki, piercing the vitals of the elephant belonging to the king of the Vangas staying before him, with a long shaft endued with great impetuosity, caused it to fall down on the field of battle.[12] Then Sātyaki pierced with another long shaft the chest of the rider whom he could not hitherto touch, just as the latter was about to jump from the back of his beast. Thus struck by Sātwata, he fell down on the Earth.[13] Meanwhile Sahadeva, with three shafts shot with great care, struck the elephant of Pundra, as it advanced against him like a moving mountain,[14] depriving it of its standard and driver and armour and life. Having thus cut off that elephant, Sahadeva proceeded against the chief of the Angas.[15] Nakula, however, causing Sahadeva to desist, himself afflicted the ruler of the Angas with three long shafts, each resembling the rod of Yama, and his foe's elephant with a hundred arrows.[16] Then the ruler of the Angas hurled at Nakula eight hundred lances bright as the rays of the Sun. Each of these Nakula cut off into three fragments.[17] The son of

Pāndu then cut off the head of his antagonist with a crescent-shaped arrow. At this that *Mlecchha* king, deprived of life, fell down with the animal he rode.[18] Upon the fall of the prince of the Angas who was well-skilled in elephant-lore, the elephant-men of the Angas, filled with rage, proceeded with speed against Nakula, on their elephants decked with banners that waved in the air, possessing excellent mouths, adorned with housings of gold, and looking like blazing mountains, from desire of crushing him to pieces.[19-20] And many Mekalas and Utkalas, and Kalingas, and Nishadhas, and Tāmraliptakas, also advanced against Nakula, showering their shafts and lances, and desirous of slaying him.[21] Then the Pāndus, the Pānchālas, and the Somakas, filled with rage, rushed with speed for the rescue of Nakula shrouded by those warriors like the Sun by the clouds.[22] Then occurred a fierce battle between those car-warriors and elephant-men, the former showering their arrows and shafts, the latter their lances by thousands.[23] The frontal globes and other limbs and the tusks and adornments of the elephants, exceedingly pierced with shafts, were split and mangled.[24] Then Sahadeva, with four and sixty impetuous arrows, quickly slew eight of those huge elephants which fell down with their riders.[25] And Nakula also, that delighter of his race, bending his excellent bow with great vigor, with many straight shafts, slew many elephants.[26] Then the Pānchāla prince, and the grandson of Cini, and the sons of Draupadi, and the Prabhadrakas, and Cikhandin, drenched those huge elephants with showers of shafts.[27] Then in consequence of those rain-charged clouds constituted by the Pāndava warriors, those hills constituted by the elephants of the foe, fell, struck down by torrents of rain formed by their numerous shafts, like real mountains struck down with a thunder-storm.[28] Those leaders of the Pāndava car-warriors then, thus slaying those elephants of thine, cast their eyes on the hostile army, which, as it fled away at that time, resembled a river whose continents had been washed away.[29] Those warriors of Pāndu's son, having thus agitated that army of thine, agitated it once more, and then rushed against Karna.' "[30]

Section XXIII.

'Sanjaya said,—'While Sahadeva, filled with rage, was thus blasting thy host, Dusçāsana, O great king, proceeded against him, the brother against the brother.[1] Beholding those two engaged in dreadful combat, all the great car-warriors uttered leonine shouts and waved their garments.[2] Then, O Bhārata, the mighty son of Pāndu was struck in the chest with three arrows by thy angry son armed with the bow.[3] Then Sahadeva, O king, having first pierced thy son with an arrow, pierced him again with seventy arrows, and then his driver with three.[4] Then Dusçāsana, O monarch, having cut off Sahadeva's bow in that great battle, pierced Sahadeva himself with three and seventy arrows in the arms and the chest.[5] Then Sahadeva, filled with rage, took up a sword in that dreadful conflict, and whirling, hurled it quickly towards the car of thy son.[6] Cutting off Dusçāsana's bow with string and arrow fixed on it, that large sword fell down on the Earth like a snake from the firmament.[7] Then the valiant Sahadeva, taking up another bow, shot a deadly shaft at Dusçāsana.[8] The Kuru warrior, however, with his keen-edged sword, cut off into two fragments that shaft, bright as the rod of Death, as it coursed towards him.[9] Then whirling that sharp sword, Dusçāsana quickly hurled it in that battle at his foe. Meanwhile that valiant warrior took up another bow with a shaft.[10] Sahadeva, however, with the greatest ease, cut off, with his keen shafts, that sword as it coursed towards him, and caused it to fall down in that battle.[11] Then, O Bhārata, thy son, in that dreadful battle, quickly sped four and sixty shafts at the car of Sahadeva.[12] Sahadeva, however, O king, cut off every one of those numerous arrows as they coursed with great impetuosity towards him, with five shafts of his.[13] Checking then those mighty shafts sped by thy son, Sahadeva, in that battle, sped a large number of arrows at his foe.[14] Cutting off each of those shafts with three shafts of his, thy son uttered a loud shout, making the whole Earth resound with it.[15] Then Dusçāsana, O king, having pierced Sahadeva in that battle, struck the latter's driver with nine arrows.[16] The valiant

Sahadeva then, O monarch, filled with rage, fixed on his bow-string a terrible shaft resembling the Destroyer himself. Forcibly drawing the bow, he sped that shaft at thy son.[17] Piercing with great speed through his strong armour and body, that shaft entered the Earth, O king, like a snake penetrating into an anthill. Then thy son, that great car-warrior, swooned away, O king.[18] Beholding him deprived of his senses, his driver quickly took away the car, himself forcibly struck all the while with keen arrows.[19] Having vanquished the Kuru warrior thus, the son of Pāndu, beholding Duryodhana's division, began to crush it on all sides.[20] Indeed, O king, as a man excited with wrath crushes a swarm of ants, even so, O Bhārata, did that son of Pāndu begin to crush the Kaurava host.' "[21]

Section XXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'While Nakula was employed in destroying and routing the Kaurava divisions in battle with great force, Vikartana's son Karna, filled with rage, checked him, O king.[1] Then Nakula, smiling the while, addressed Karna, and said,—After a long time, through the favor of the gods, I am seen by thee,[2] and thou also, O wretch, dost become the object of my sight! Thou art the root of all these evils, this hostility, this quarrel![3] It is through thy faults that the Kauravas are being thinned, encountering one another! Slaying thee in battle today, I will regard myself as one that has achieved his object, and the fever of my heart will be dispelled![4]—Thus addressed by Nakula, the *Suta's* son said unto him the following words befiting a prince and a bowman in particular,[5]—Strike me, O hero! We desire to witness thy manliness! Having achieved some feats in battle, O brave warrior, thou shouldst then boast![6] O sire, they that are heroes fight in battle to the best of their powers, without indulging in brag! Fight now with me to the best of thy might! I will quell thy pride![7]—Having said these words, the *Suta's* son quickly struck the son of Pāndu and pierced him, in that encounter, with three and seventy shafts.[8] Then Nakula, O Bhārata, thus pierced

by the *Suta's* son, pierced the latter in return with eighty shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison.[9] Then Karna, that great bowman, cutting off his antagonist's bow with a number of arrows winged with gold and whetted on stone, afflicted him with thirty arrows.[10] Those arrows, piercing through his armour, drank his blood in that battle, like the Nāgas of virulent poison drinking water after having pierced through the Earth.[11] Then Nakula, taking up another formidable bow whose back was decked with gold, pierced Karna with twenty arrows and his driver with three.[12] Then, O monarch, that slayer of hostile heroes, viz., Nakula, filled with rage, cut off Karna's bow with a razor-headed shaft of great keenness.[13] Smiling the while, the heroic son of Pāndu then struck the bowless Karna, that foremost of car-warriors, with three hundred arrows.[14] Beholding Karna thus afflicted, O sire, by the son of Pāndu, all the car-warriors there, with the gods (in the welkin), were filled with great wonder.[15] Then Vikartana's son Karna, taking up another bow, struck Nakula with five arrows in the shoulder-joint.[16] With those arrows sticking to him there, the son of Mādri looked resplendent like the Sun with his own rays while shedding his light on the Earth.[17] Then Nakula, piercing Karna with seven shafts, once more, O sire, cut off one of the horns of Karna's bow.[18] Then Karna, taking up in that battle a tougher bow, filled the welkin on every side of Nakula with his arrows.[19] The mighty car-warrior Nakula, however, thus suddenly shrouded with the arrows shot from Karna's bow, quickly cut off all those shafts with shafts of his own.[20] Then was seen overspread in the welkin a vast number of arrows like to the spectacle presented by the sky when it is filled with myriads of roving fireflies.[21] Indeed, the sky, shrouded with those hundreds of arrows shot (by both the warriors) looked, O monarch, as if it was covered with flights of locusts.[22] Those arrows, decked with gold, issuing repeatedly in continuous lines, looked beautiful like rows of cranes while flying through the welkin.[23] When the sky was thus covered with showers of arrows and the Sun himself hid from the view, no creature ranging the air could descend to the Earth.[24] When all sides were thus covered with

showers of arrows, those two high-souled warriors looked resplendent like two Suns risen at the end of the *Yuga*.[25] Slaughtered with the shafts issuing from Karna's bow, the Somakas, O monarch, greatly afflicted and feeling much pain, began to breathe their last.[26] Similarly, thy warriors, struck with the shafts of Nakula, dispersed on all sides, O king, like clouds tossed by the wind.[27] The two armies, thus slaughtered by those two warriors with their mighty celestial shafts, retreated from the range of those arrows and stood as spectators of the encounter.[28] When both the armies were driven off by means of the shafts of Karna and Nakula, those two high-souled warriors began to pierce each other with showers of shafts.[29] Displaying their celestial weapons on the field of battle, they quickly shrouded each other, each desirous of compassing the destruction of the other.[30] The shafts shot by Nakula, dressed with *Kanka* and peacock feathers, shrouding the *Suta's* son, seemed to stay in the welkin.[31] Similarly, the shafts sped by the *Suta's* son in that dreadful battle, shrouding the son of Pāndu, seemed to stay in the welkin.[32] Shrouded within arrowy chambers, both the warriors became invisible, like the Sun and the Moon, O king, hid by the clouds.[33] Then Karna, filled with rage and assuming a terrible aspect in that battle, covered the son of Pāndu with showers of arrows from every side.[34] Completely covered, O monarch, by the *Suta's* son, the son of Pāndu felt no pain like the Maker of day when covered by the clouds.[35] The son of Adhiratha then, smiling the while, sped arrowy lines, O sire, in hundreds and thousands, in that battle.[36] With those shafts of the high-souled Karna, an extensive shade seemed to rest on the field of battle. Indeed, with those excellent shafts constantly issuing out (of his bow), a shade was caused there like that formed by the clouds.[37] Then Karna, O monarch, cutting off the bow of the high-souled Nakula, felled the latter's driver from the car-niche with the greatest ease.[38] With four keen shafts, next, he quickly despatched the four steeds of Nakula, O Bhārata, to the abode of Yama.[39] With his shafts, he also cut off into minute fragments that excellent car of his antagonist as also his standard and the protectors of his car-wheels,

and mace, and sword, and shield decked with a hundred moons, and other utensils and equipments of battle[40]. Then Nakula, steedless and carless and armourless, O monarch, quickly alighting from his car, stood, armed with a spiked bludgeon.[41] Even that terrible bludgeon, so uplifted by the son of Pāndu, the *Suta's* son, O king, cut off with many keen arrows capable of bearing a great strain.[42] Beholding his adversary weaponless, Karna began to strike him with many straight shafts, but took care not to afflict him greatly.[43] Thus struck in that battle by that mighty warrior accomplished in weapons, Nakula, O king, fled away precipitately, in great affliction.[44] Laughing repeatedly, the son of Rādhā pursued him and placed his stringed bow, O Bhārata, around the neck of the retreating Nakula.[45] With that large bow around his neck, O king, the son of Pāndu looked resplendent like the Moon in the firmament when within a circular halo of light, or a white cloud girdled round by Indra's bow.[46] Then Karna, addressing him, said,—The words thou hadst uttered were futile! Canst thou utter them now once more in joy, reapeatedly struck as thou art by me?[47] Do not, O son of Pāndu, fight again with those amongst the Kurus that are possessed of greater might! O child, fight with them that are thy equals! Do not, O son of Pāndu, feel any shame for it![48] Return home, O son of Mādri, or go thither where Krishna and Phālguna are!—Having addressed him thus, he abandoned him then.[49] Acquainted with morality as the brave Karna was, he did not then slay Nakula who was already within the jaws of death. Recollecting the words of Kunti, O king, Karna let Nakula go.[50] The son of Pāndu, thus let off, O king, by that bowman, viz., the *Suta's* son, proceeded towards Yudhishthira's car in great shame.[51] Scorched by the *Suta's* son, he then ascended his brother's car, and burning with grief he continued to sigh like a snake kept within a jar.[52] Meanwhile Karna, having vanquished Nakula, quickly proceeded against the Pānchālas, riding on that car of his which bore many gorgeous pennons and whose steeds were as white as the Moon.[53] There, O monarch, a great uproar arose among the Pāndavas when they saw the leader of the Kaurava army proceeding towards the Pānchāla car-throngs.[54]

The *Suta's* son, O monarch, made a great massacre there at that hour when the Sun had reached the meridian, that puissant warrior careering all the while with the activity of a wheel.[55] We beheld many Pānchāla car-warriors borne away from the battle on their steedless and driverless cars with broken wheels and broken axles, and with standards and pennons also that were broken and torn, O sire! And many elephants were seen to wander there in all directions (with limbs scorched by arrows) like individuals of their species in the wide forest with limbs scorched and burnt in a forest conflagration. Others, with their frontal globes split ofen, or bathed in blood, or with trunks lopped off,[56-58] or with their armour cut down, or their tails lopped off, fell down, struck by the high-souled Karna, like straggling clouds.[59] Other elephants, frightened by the shafts and lances of Rādhā's son, proceeded against Rādhā's son himself like insects towards a blazing fire.[60] Other huge elephants were seen striking against one another and shedding blood from various limbs like mountains with rillets running adown their breasts.[61] Steeds of the foremost breed, divested of breast-plates and their ornaments of silver and brass and gold,[62] destitute of trappings and bridle-bits and yak-tails and saddle-cloths, with quivers fallen off from their backs, and with their heroic riders,—ornaments of battle,—slain, were seen wandering here and there on the field.[63-64] Pierced and cut with lances and scimitars and swords, O Bhārata, we beheld many a horseman adorned with armour and head-gear, slain or in course of being slain or trembling with fear, and deprived, O Bhārata, of diverse limbs.[65-66] Cars also, decked with gold, and unto which were yoked steeds of great fleetness, were seen by us dragged with exceeding speed hither and thither, their riders having been slain.[67] Some of these had their axles and poles broken, and some, O Bhārata, had their wheels broken; and some were without banners and standards, and some were divested of their shafts.[68] Many car-warriors also were seen there, by us, O monarch, wandering all around, deprived of their cars and scorched with the shafts of the *Suta's* son.[69] And some destitute of weapons and some with weapons still in their arms were seen lying lifeless on the field in large

numbers.[70] And many elephants also were seen by us, wandering in all directions, studded with clusters of stars, adorned with rows of beautiful bells, and decked with variegated banners of diverse hues.[71] Heads and arms and chests and other limbs, cut off with shafts sped from Karna's bow, were beheld by us lying around.[72] A great and fierce calamity overtook the warriors (of the Pāndava army) as they fought with whetted arrows, and mangled as they were with the shafts of Karna.[73] The Srinjayas, slaughtered in that battle by the *Suta's* son, blindly proceeded against the latter's self like insects rushing upon a blazing fire.[74] Indeed, as that mighty car-warrior was engaged in scorching the Pāndava divisions, the Kshatriyas avoided him, regarding him to be the blazing *Yuga* fire.[75] Those heroic and mighty car-warriors of the Pānchālas that survived the slaughter fled away. The brave Karna, however, pursued those broken and retreating warriors from behind, shooting his shafts at them. Endued with great energy, he pursued those combatants divested of armour and destitute of standards.[76] Indeed, the *Suta's* son, possessed of great might, continued to scorch them with his shafts, like the dispeller of darkness scorching all creatures when he attains to the meridian.' "[77]

Section XXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Against Yuyutsu who was employed in routing the vast army of thy son, Uluka proceeded with speed, saying,—*Wait, Wait !*'—Then Yuyutsu, O king, with a winged arrow of keen edge, struck Uluka with great force, like (Indra himself striking) a mountain with the thunderbolt.[2] Filled with rage at this, Uluka, in that battle, cut off thy son's bow with a razor-headed arrow and struck thy son himself with a barbed shaft.[3] Casting off that broken bow, Yuyutsu, with eyes red in wrath, took up another formidable bow endued with greater impetus.[4] The prince then, O bull of Bharata's race, pierced Uluka with sixty arrows. Piercing next the driver of Uluka, Yuyutsu struck Uluka once more.[5] Then Uluka, filled with rage, pierced Yuyutsu with twenty

shafts adorned with gold, and then cut off his standard made of gold.[6] That lofty and gorgeous standard made of gold, O king, thus cut off (by Uluka), fell down in front of Yuyutsu's car.[7] Beholding his standard cut off, Yuyutsu, deprived of his senses by wrath, struck Uluka with five shafts in the centre of the chest.[8] Then Uluka, O sire, in that battle, cut off, with a broad-headed arrow steeped in oil, the head of his antagonist's driver, O best of the Bharatas![9] Slaying next his four steeds, he struck Yuyutsu himself with five arrows. Deeply struck by the strong Uluka, Yuyutsu proceeded to another car.[10] Having vanquished him in battle, O king, Uluka proceeded quickly towards the Pānchālas and the Srinjayas and began to slaughter them with sharp shafts.[11] Thy son Crutakarman, O monarch, within half the time taken up by a wink of the eye, fearlessly made Catānika steedless and driverless and carless.[12] The mighty car-warrior Catānika, however, staying on his steedless car, O sire, hurled a mace, filled with rage, at thy son.[13] That mace, reducing thy son's car with its steeds and driver into fragments, fell down upon the Earth with great speed, and pierced it through.[14] Then those two heroes, both enhancers of the glory of the Kurus, deprived of their cars, retreated from the encounter, glaring at each other.[15] Then thy son, overcome with fear, mounted upon the car of Vivingçu, while Catānika quickly got upon the car of Prativindhya.[16] Cakuni, filled with rage, pierced Sutasoma with many keen shafts, but failed to make the latter tremble like a torrent of water failing to produce any impression upon a mountain.[17] Beholding that great enemy of his father, Sutasoma covered Cakuni, O Bhārata, with many thousands of arrows.[18] Cakuni, however, that warrior of sure aim and conversant with all methods of warfare, actuated by desire of battle, quickly cut off all those shafts with his own winged arrows.[19] Having checked those shafts with his own keen arrows in battle, Cakuni, filled with rage, struck Sutasoma with three arrows.[20] Thy brother-in-law then, O monarch, with his arrows cut off into minute fragments the steeds, the standard, and the driver of his adversary, at which all the spectators uttered a loud shout.[21] Deprived of his steed and

car, and having his standard cut off, O sire, the great bowman (Sutasoma), jumping down from his car, stood on the Earth, having taken up a good bow.[22] And he shot a large number of arrows equipt with golden wings and whetted on stone, and shrouded therewith the car of thy brother-in-law in that battle.[23] The son of Suvala, however, beholding those showers of arrows that resembled a flight of locusts, coming towards his car, did not tremble. On the other hand, that illustrious warrior crushed all those arrows with arrows of his own.[24] The warriors that were present there, as also the *Siddhas* in the firmament, were highly pleased at sight of that wonderful and incredible feat of Sutasoma inasmuch as he contended on foot with Cakuni staying on his car.[25]* Then Cakuni, with a number of broad-headed shafts of great impetuosity, keen and perfectly straight, cut off, O king, the bow of Sutasoma as also all his quivers.[26] Bowless and carless, Sutasoma then, uplifting a scimitar of the hue of the blue lotus and equipt with an ivory handle, uttered a loud shout.[27] That scimitar of the intelligent Sutasoma, of the hue of the clear sky, as it was whirled by that hero, was regarded by Cakuni to be as fatal as the rod of Death.[28] Armed with that scimitar he suddenly began to career in circles over the arena, displaying, O monarch, the fourteen different kinds of manœvres, endued as he was with skill and might.[29] Indeed, he displayed in that battle all those motions such as wheeling about and whirling on high, and making side-thrusts and jumping forward and leaping on high and running above and rushing forward and rushing upwards.[30] The valiant son of Suvala then sped a number of arrows at his foe, but the latter quickly cut them off with that excellent scimitar of his as they coursed towards him.[31] Filled with rage (at this), the son of Suvala, O king, once more sped at Sutasoma a number of shafts that resembled snakes of virulent poison.[32] Aided by his skill and might, Sutasoma cut off even these with his scimitar, displaying his great activity, and possessed as he was of prowess equal to that of Garuda himself.[33] With a razor-headed arrow of great

* Both 24 and 25 are triplets in the Bengal texts.—T.

sharpness, Cakuni then, O king, cut off that bright scimitar of his adversary as the latter careered in circles before him.[34] Thus cut off, (half of) that large scimitar suddenly fell down on the Earth, while half of it, O Bhārata, continued in the grasp of Sutasoma.[35] Seeing his sword cut off, the mighty-car-warrior Sutasoma retreated six steps and then hurled that half which he had in his grasp at his foe.[36] That fragment, decked with gold and gems, cutting off the bow, with string, of the illustrious Cakuni, quickly fell down on the Earth.[37] Then Sutasoma went to the great car of Crutakirti.[38] Suvala's son also, taking up another formidable and invincible bow, proceeded towards the Pāndava army, slaying large numbers of foes (on the way).[39] Beholding the son of Suvala careering fearlessly in battle, a loud uproar, O king, arose among the Pāndavas in that part of the army.[40] People witnessed those large and proud divisions bristling with arms, routed by the illustrious son of Suvala.[41] Even as the chief of the celestials crushed the *Daitya* army, the son of Suvala destroyed that army of the Pāndavas.' "[42]

Section XXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Kripa, O king, resisted Dhrishtadyumna in battle, like a *Çarabha* in the forest resisting a proud lion.[1] Checked by the mighty son of Gotama, Prishata's son, O Bhārata, could not advance even one step.[2] Beholding Gautama's car in front of Dhrishtadyumna's, all creatures were inspired with fright and regarded the latter's destruction to be at hand.[3] Car-warriors and horsemen, becoming very cheerless, said,—Without doubt, this foremost of men, viz., Caradwata's son of mighty energy and great intelligence and versed in celestial weapons, is filled with rage at the death of Drona! Will Dhrishtadyumna today escape from the hands of Gautama?[4-5] Will this vast army escape today this great danger? Will not this Brāhmana slay all of us together?[6] The form that he has assumed today, even like that of the Destroyer himself, shows that he will today act after the manner of Drona himself![7] The preceptor Gautama, endued with great lightness of hands, is

ever victorious in battle. Possessing a knowledge of weapons, he is endued with great energy and filled with rage.[8]—Diverse speeches like these, uttered by the warriors of both the armies, were, O monarch, heard there as those two heroes encountered each other.[9] Drawing deep breaths in rage, Caradwata's son Kripa, O king, began to afflict the son of Prishata in all his vital limbs as the latter stood inactive.[10] Struck in that battle by the illustrious Gautama, Dhrishtadyumna, greatly stupified, knew not what to do.[11] His driver then, addressing him, said,—Is it not all right with thee, O son of Prishata? Never before have I seen such a calamity overtake thee in battle![12] It is a lucky chance, it seems, that these shafts, capable of penetrating the very vitals, sped by that foremost of Brāhmanas aiming at thy vital limbs, are not striking thee![13] I will presently cause the car to turn back, like the current of a river dashed back by the sea. I think that Brāhmana, by whom thy prowess hath been annihilated, is incapable of being slain by thee![14]—Thus addressed, Dhrishtadyumna, O king, slowly said,—My mind becometh stupified, O sire, and a perspiration covereth my limbs.[15] My body trembles and my hair stands on end. Avoiding that Brāhmana in battle, proceed slowly to where Arjuna is![16] O charioteer, arrived at the presence of either Arjuna or Bhimasena, prosperity may be mine. Even this is my certain conviction![17]—Then, O monarch, the charioteer, urging the steeds, proceeded to the spot where the mighty bowman Bhimasena was battling with thy troops.[18] Beholding the car, O sire, of Dhrishtadyumna speedily moving away from that spot, Gautama followed it, shooting hundreds of shafts.[19] And that chastiser of foes also repeatedly blew his conch. Indeed, he routed the son of Prishata like Indra routing the *Dānava* Namuchi.[20]

"'The invincible Cikhandin, the cause of Bhishma's death, was, in that battle, resisted by Hridikā's son who smiled repeatedly as he fought with the former.[21] Cikhandin, however, encountering the mighty car-warrior of the Hridikās, struck him with five keen and broad-headed shafts at the shoulder-joint.[22] Then the mighty car-warrior Kritavarman, filled with rage, pierced his foe with sixty winged arrows. With a single

arrow then, he cut off his bow, laughing the while.[23] The mighty son of Drupada, filled with wrath, took up another bow, and addressing the son of Hridikā, said,—*Wait, Wait!*[24] —Then, O monarch, Cikhandin sped at his foe ninety shafts of great impetuosity, all equipt with golden wings. Those shafts, however, all recoiled from Kritavarman's armour.[25] Seeing those shafts recoil and scattered on the surface of the Earth, Cikhandin cut off Kritavarman's bow with a keen razor-headed arrow.[26] Filled with wrath he struck the bowless son of Hridikā, who then resembled a hornless bull, in the arms and the chest, with eighty arrows.[27] Filled with rage but torn and mangled with shafts, Kritavarman vomited blood through his limbs like a jar disgorging the water with which it is filled.[28] Bathed in blood, the Bhoja king looked beautiful like a mountain, O king, streaked with streams of liquified red-chalk after a shower.[29] The puissant Kritavarman then, taking up another bow with a string and an arrow fixed thereon, struck Cikhandin in his shoulder-joint.[30] With these shafts sticking to his shoulder-joint, Cikhandin looked resplendent like a lordly tree with its spreading branches and twigs.[31] Having pierced each other, the two combatants were bathed in blood, and resembled a couple of bulls that have gored each other with their horns.[32] Carefully exerting themselves to slay each other, those two mighty car-warriors moved in a thousand circles with their respective cars on that arena.[33] Then Kritavarman, O king, in that encounter, pierced the son of Prishata with seventy shafts all of which were equipt with wings of gold and whetted on stone.[34] The ruler of the Bhojas then, that foremost of smiters, sped with great activity a terrible and fatal shaft at his foe.[35] Struck therewith, Cikhandin quickly swooned away. Overcome with stupefaction, he supported himself by seizing his flag-staff.[36] The driver then of that foremost of car-warriors speedily bore him away from the fight. Scorched with the shaft of Hridikā's son, he drew breath upon breath repeatedly.[37] After the defeat of the heroic son of Drupada, O lord, the Pāndava army, slaughtered on all sides, fled away from the field.' "[38]

Section XXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'The white steeded (Arjuna) also, O monarch, routed thy force even as the wind, approaching a heap of cotton, scatters it on all sides.[1] Against him rushed the Trigartas, the Civis, the Kauravas, the Cālwas, the *Samsaptakas*, and that force which consisted of the Nārāyanas.[2] And Satyasena and Chandradeva, and Mitradeva and Crutanjaya, and Suçruta's son, and Chitrasena, and Mitravarman, O Bhārata,[3] and the king of the Trigartas surrounded by his brothers and by his sons that were all mighty bowmen accomplished in diverse weapons,[4] suddenly advanced, shooting and scattering showers of shafts in that battle, against Arjuna, like a fierce current of water towards the ocean.[5] Those warriors in hundreds of thousands, approaching Arjuna, seemed to melt away like snakes at sight of Garuda.[6] Though slaughtered in battle, they did not still leave the son of Pāndu like insects, O monarch, never receding from a blazing fire.[7] Satyasena, in that encounter, pierced the son of Pāndu with three arrows, and Mitradeva pierced him with three and sixty, and Chandradeva with seven.[8] And Mitravarman pierced him with three and seventy arrows, and Suçruta's son with seven. And Catrunjaya pierced him with twenty, and Suçarman with nine.[9] Thus pierced in that encounter by many, Arjuna pierced all those kings in return. Indeed, piercing the son of Suçruta with seven arrows, he pierced Satyasena with three,[10] Catrunjaya with twenty, and Chandradeva with eight, Mitradeva with a hundred, Crutasena with three,[11] Mitravarman with nine, and Suçarman with eight. Then slaying king Catrunjaya with a number of arrows whetted on stone, he smote off, from his trunk, the head, decked with head-gear, of Suçruta's son.[12] Without any delay he then, with a number of other shafts, despatched Chandradeva to the abode of Yama. As regards the other mighty car-warriors vigorously contending with him, he checked each of them with five arrows.[13]* Then Satyasena, filled with rage, hurled a formidable lance in that battle, aiming at Krishna, and

---

* Both 12 and 13 are triplets.—T.

uttered a leonine roar.[14] That iron-mouthed lance having a golden shaft, piercing through the left arm of the high-souled Mādhava, penetrated into the Earth.[15] Mādhava being thus pierced with that lance in great battle, the goad and the reins, O king, fell down from his hands.[16] Beholding Vāsudeva's limb pierced through, Prithā's son Dhananjaya mustered all his wrath and addressing Vāsudeva, said,[17]—O mighty-armed one, bear the car to Satyasena, O puissant one, so that I may, with keen shafts, despatch him to Yama's abode![18]—The illustrious Keçava then, quickly taking up the goad and the reins, caused the steeds to bear the car to the front of Satyasena's vehicle.[19] Beholding the ruler of the universe pierced, Prithā's son Dhananjaya, that mighty car-warrior, checking Satyasena with some keen arrows,[20] cut off, with a number of broad-headed shafts of great sharpness, the large head of that king, decked with ear-rings, from off his trunk, at the head of the army.[21] Having thus cut off Satyasena's head, he then despatched Chitravarman with a number of keen shafts, and then the latter's driver, O sire, with a keen calf-toothed arrow.[22] Filled with rage, the mighty Pārtha then, with hundreds of shafts, felled the *Samsaptakas* in hundreds and thousands.[23] Then, O king, with a razor-headed arrow equipt with wings of silver, that mighty car-warrior cut off the head of the illustrious Mitrasena. Filled with rage he then struck Suçarman in the shoulder-joint.[24] Then all the *Samsaptakas*, filled with wrath, encompassed Dhananjaya on all sides and began to afflict him with showers of weapons and make all the points of the compass resound with their shouts.[25] Afflicted by them thus, the mighty car-warrior Jishnu, of immeasurable soul, endued with prowess resembling that of Cakra himself, invoked the *Aindra* weapon. From that weapon, thousands of shafts, O king, began to issue continually.[26] Then, O king, a loud din was heard of falling cars with standards and quivers and yokes, and axles and wheels and traces with chords, of bottoms of cars and wooden fences around them, of arrows and steeds and spears and swords, and maces and spiked clubs and darts and lances and axes, and *Çataghnis* equipt with wheels, and arrows and thighs, and necklaces and *Anga-*

das and *Keyuras*, O sire, and garlands and cuirasses and coats of mail, O Bhārata, and umbrellas and fans and heads decked with diadems.[27-31] Heads adorned with ear-rings and beautiful eyes, and each resembling the full moon, looked, as they lay on the field, like stars in the firmament.[32] Adorned with beautiful garlands of flowers and excellent robes, and smeared with sandal-paste, many were the bodies that were seen to lie on the ground, of slain warriors.[33] The field of battle, terrible as it was, looked like the clouded welkin teeming with vapoury forms. With the slain princes and Kshatriyas of great might,[34] and fallen elephants and steeds, the Earth became impassable in that battle as if she were strewn with hills.[35] There was no path on the field for the wheels of the illustrious Pāndava's car, engaged as he was in continually slaying his foes and striking down elephants and steeds with his broad-headed shafts.[36] It seemed, O sire, that the wheels of his car stopped in fright at the sight of his own self careering in that battle through that bloody mire.[37] His steeds, however, endued with the speed of the mind or the wind, dragged with great efforts and labour those wheels that had refused to move.[38] Thus slaughtered by Pāndu's son armed with the bow, that host fled away almost entirely, without leaving even a remnant, O Bhārata, contending with the foe.[39] Having vanquished large numbers of the *Samsaptakas* in battle, Prithā's son Jishnu looked resplendent, like a blazing fire without smoke.' "[40]

Section XXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'King Duryodhana, O monarch, himself fearlessly received Yudhishthira, as the latter was engaged in shooting large numbers of shafts.[1] The royal Yudhishthira the just, speedily piercing thy son, that mighty car-warrior, as the latter was rushing towards him with impetuosity, addressed him, saying,—*Wait Wait!*[2]—Duryodhana, however, pierced Yudhishthira, in return, with nine keen arrows, and filled with great wrath, struck Yudhishthira's driver also with a broad-headed shaft.[3] Then king Yudhishthira sped at Duryodhana three and ten arrows equipt with wings of gold and

whetted on stone.[4] With four shafts, that mighty car-warrior then slew the four steeds of his foe, and with the fifth he cut off from his trunk the head of Duryodhana's driver.[5] With the sixth arrow he felled the (Kuru) king's standard on the Earth, with the seventh his bow, and with the eighth his scimitar.[6] And then with five more shafts king Yudhishthira the just deeply afflicted the Kuru monarch. Thy son then, alighting from that steedless car, stood on the Earth in imminent danger.[7] Beholding him in that situation of great peril, Karna and Drona's son and Kripa and others rushed suddenly towards the spot, desirous of rescuing the king.[8] Then the (other) sons of Pāndu, surrounding Yudhishthira, all proceeded to that encounter, upon which, O king, a fierce battle was fought.[9] Thousands of trumpets then were blown in that great engagement, and a confused din of myriad voices arose there, O king.[10] There where the Pānchālas engaged in battle with the Kauravas, men closed with men, and elephants with foremost of elephants.[11] And car-warriors closed with car-warriors, and horse with horse. And the various couples of battling men and animals, of great prowess and armed with diverse kinds of weapons and possessed of great skill, presented a beautiful sight, O king, over the field.[12] All those heroes, endued with great impetuosity and desirous of compassing the destruction of one another, fought beautifully and with great activity and skill.[13] Observing the (sanctioned) practices of warriors, they slew one another in battle. None of them fought from behind others.[14] For only a very short time that battle presented a beautiful aspect. Soon it became an encounter of mad men, in which the combatants showed no regard for one another.[15] The car-warrior, approaching the elephant, pierced the latter with keen shafts and despatched it to Yama's presence by means of straight arrows.[16] Eelephants, approaching steeds, dragged down many of them in that battle, and tore them (with their tusks) most fiercely in diverse places.[17] Large numbers of horsemen also, encompassing many foremost of steeds, made a loud noise with their palms, and closed with them.[18] And those horsemen slew those steeds as they ran hither and thither, as also many huge elephants as these wan-

dered over the field, from behind and the flanks.[19] Infuriate elephants, O king, routing large numbers of steeds, slew them with their tusks or crushed them with great force.[20] Some elephants, filled with wrath, pierced with their tusks horses with horsemen. Others, seizing such with great force, hurled them to the ground with violence.[21] Many elephants, struck by foot-soldiers availing of the proper opportunities, uttered terrible cries of pain and fled away on all sides.[22] Among the foot-soldiers that fled away in that great battle throwing down their ornaments, there were many that were quickly encompassed on the field. Elephant-warriors, riding on huge elephants, understanding indications of victory, wheeled their beasts and causing them to seize those beautiful ornaments, made the beasts to pierce them with their tusks.[23-24] Other foot-soldiers endued with great impetuosity and fierce might, surrounding those elephant-warriors thus engaged in those spots, began to slay them.[25] Others in that great battle, thrown aloft into the air by elephants with their trunks, were pierced by those trained beasts with the points of their tusks as they fell down.[26] Others, suddenly seized by other elephants, were deprived of life with their tusks. Others, borne away from their own divisions into the midst of others, were, O king, mangled by huge elephants which rolled them repeatedly on the ground.[27] Others, whirled on high like fans, were slain in that battle. Others, hither and thither on the field, that stood full in front of other elephants, had their bodies exceedingly pierced and torn.[28] Many elephants were deeply wounded with spears and lances and darts in their cheeks and frontal globes and the parts between their tusks.[29] Exceedingly afflicted by fierce car-warriors and horsemen stationed on their flanks, many elephants, ripped open, fell down on the Earth.[30] In that dreadful battle many horsemen on their steeds, striking foot-soldiers with their lances, pinned them down to the Earth or crushed them with great force.[31] Some elephants, approaching mail-clad car-warriors, O sire, raised them aloft from their vehicles and hurled them down with great force upon the Earth in that fierce and awful fight.[32] Some huge elephants, slain by means of cloth-yard shafts, fell down on the Earth like mountain summits riven by

thunder.[33] Combatants, encountering combatants, began to strike each other with their fists, or seizing each other by the hair, began to drag and throw down and mangle each other.[34] Others, stretching their arms and throwing down their foes on the Earth, placed their feet on their chests and with great activity cut off their heads.[35] Some combatant, O king, struck with his feet some foe that was dead, and some, O king, struck off with his sword, the head of a falling foe,[36] and some thrust his weapon into the body of a living foe. A fierce battle took place there, O Bhārata, in which the combatants struck one another with fists or seized one another's hair or wrestled with one another with bare arms.[37] In many instances, combatants, using diverse kinds of weapons, took the lives of combatants engaged with others and, therefore, unperceived by them.[38] During the progress of that general engagement when all the combatants were mangled in battle, hundreds and thousands of headless trunks stood up on the field.[39] Weapons and coats of mail, drenched with gore, looked resplendent, like cloths dyed with gorgeous red.[40] Even thus occurred that fierce battle marked by the awful clash of weapons. Like the mad and roaring current of the Ganges it seemed to fill the whole universe with its uproar.[41] Afflicted with shafts, the warriors failed to distinguish friends from foes. Solicitous of victory, the kings fought on because they thought that fight they should.[42] The warriors slew both friends and foes, with whom they came in contact. The combatants of both the armies were deprived of reason by the heroes of both the armies assailing them with fury.[43] With broken cars, O monarch, and fallen elephants, and steeds lying on the ground, and men laid low,[44] the Earth, miry with gore and flesh, and covered with streams of blood, soon became impassable.[45] Karna slaughtered the Pānchālas while Dhananjaya slaughtered the Trigartas. And Bhimasena, O king, slaughtered the Kurus and all the elephant divisions of the latter.[46] Even thus occurred that destruction of troops of both the Kurus and the Pāndavas, both parties having been actuated by the desire of winning great fame, at that hour when the Sun had passed the meridian.' "[47]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I have heard from thee, O Sanjaya, of many poignant and unbearable griefs as also of the losses sustained by my sons![1] From what thou hast said unto me, from the manner in which the battle has been fought, it is my certain conviction, O *Suta*, that the Kauravas are no more![2] Duryodhana was made carless in that dreadful battle. How did Dharma's son (then) fight, and how did the royal Duryodhana also fight in return?[3] How also occurred that battle which was fought in the afternoon! Tell me all this in detail, for thou art skilled in narration, O Sanjaya!'[4]

"Sanjaya said,—'When the troops of both armies were engaged in battle, according to their respective divisions, thy son Duryodhana, O king, riding on another car and filled with rage like a snake of virulent poison, beholding king Yudhishthira the just, quickly addressed his own driver, O Bhārata, saying,—Proceed, Proceed![5-6] Quickly take me there, O driver, where the royal son of Pāndu, clad in mail, shineth under yon umbrella held over his head![7]—Thus urged by the king, the driver, in that battle, quickly urged his royal master's goodly car towards the face of Yudhishthira.[8] At this, Yudhishthira also, filled with rage and looking like an infuriate elephant, urged his own driver, saying,—Proceed to where Suyodhana is![9]—Then those two heroes and brothers and foremost of car-warriors encountered each other. Both endued with great energy, both filled with wrath, both difficult of defeat in battle, approaching each other, those two great bowmen began to mangle each other with their arrows in that battle.[10] Then king Duryodhana, in that encounter, O sire, with a broad-headed arrow whetted on stone, cut in twain the bow of the virtuous monarch.[11] Filled with rage, Yudhishthira could not brook that insult. Casting aside his broken bow, with eyes red in wrath,[12] Dharma's son took up another bow at the head of his forces, and then cut off Duryodhana's standard and bow.[13] Duryodhana then, taking up another bow, pierced the son of Pāndu. Filled with rage, they continued to shoot showers of shafts at each other.[14] Desirous of vanquishing each other, they resembled a pair of angry lions. They struck each

other in that battle like a couple of roaring bulls.[15] Those mighty car-warriors continued to career, expecting to find each other's *laches*. Then, wounded with shafts sped from bows drawn to their fullest stretch,[16] the two warriors, O king, looked resplendent like flowering *Kinçukas*. They then, O king, repeatedly uttered leonine roars.[17] Those two rulers of men, in that dreadful battle, also made loud sounds with their palms and caused their bows to twang loudly. And they blew their conchs too with great force.[18] And they afflicted each other very much. Then king Yudhishthira, filled with rage, struck thy son in the chest with three irresistible shafts endued with the force of thunder. Him, however, thy royal son quickly pierced, in return,[19-20] with five keen shafts winged with gold and whetted on stone. Then king Duryodhana, O Bhārata, hurled a dart[21] capable of slaying everybody, exceedingly keen, and resembling a large blazing brand. As it advanced, king Yudhishthira the just, with sharp shafts,[22] speedily cut it off into three fragments, and then pierced Duryodhana also with five arrows. Equipt with a golden staff, and producing a loud whizz, that dart then fell down,[23] and while falling, looked resplendent like a large brand with blazing flames. Beholding the dart baffled, thy son, O monarch,[24] struck Yudhishthira with nine sharp and keen-pointed arrows. Pierced deeply by his mighty foe, that scorcher of foes[25] quickly took up an arrow for aiming it at Duryodhana. The mighty Yudhishthira then placed that arrow on his bowstring.[26] Filled with rage and possessed of great valor, the son of Pāndu then shot it at his foe. That arrow, striking thy son,—that mighty car-warrior,[27]—stupified him and then (passing through his body) entered the Earth. Then Duryodhana, filled with wrath, uplifting a mace of great impetuosity,[28] rushed at king Yudhishthira the just, for ending the hostilities (that raged between the Kurus and the Pāndus). Beholding him armed with that uplifted mace and resembling Yama himself with his bludgeon,[29] king Yudhishthira the just hurled at thy son a mighty dart blazing with splendour, endued with great impetuosity, and looking like a large blazing brand.[30] Deeply pierced in the chest by that dart as he stood

on his car, the Kuru prince, deeply pained, fell down and swooned away.[31] Then Bhima, recollecting his own vow, addressed Yudhishthira, saying,—This one should not be slain by thee, O king!—at which Yudhishthira abstained (from giving his foe the finishing blow).[32] At that time Kritavarman, quickly advancing, came upon thy royal son then sunk in an ocean of calamity.[33] Bhima then, taking up a mace adorned with gold and flaxen chords, rushed impetuously towards Kritavarman in that battle.[34] Thus occurred the battle between thy troops and the foe on that afternoon, O monarch, every one of the combatants being inspired with the desire of victory." '35*

Section XXX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Placing Karna at their van, thy warriors, difficult of defeat in fight, returned and fought (with the foe) a battle that resembled that between the gods and the *Asuras*.[1] Excited by the loud uproar made by elephants and men and cars and steeds and conchs, elephant-men and car-warriors and foot-soldiers and horsemen, in large numbers, filled with wrath, advanced against the foe and slew the latter with strokes of diverse kinds of weapons.[2] Elephants and cars and steeds and men, in that dreadful battle, were destroyed by brave warriors with sharp battle-axes and swords and axes and shafts of diverse kinds and by means also of their animals.[3] Strewn with human heads that were adorned with white teeth and fair faces and beautiful eyes and goodly noses, and graced with beautiful diadems and ear-rings, and every one of which resembled the lotus, the Sun, or the Moon, the Earth looked exceedingly resplendent.[4] Elephants and men and steeds, by thousands, were slain with hundreds of spiked clubs and short bludgeons and darts and lances and hooks and *Bhuçundis* and maces.

---

* The numbering of the verses in this section is very unsatisfactory in the Calcutta edition. I have made some corrections, the result of which, I fear, has been that the numbering will not be found to agree with that of any of the printed texts.—T.

The blood that fell formed a river-like current on the field.[5] In consequence of those car-warriors and men and steeds and elephants slain by the foe, and lying with ghastly features and gaping wounds, the field of battle looked like the domains of the king of the dead at the time of the universal dissolution.[6] Then, O god among men, thy troops, and those bulls amongst the Kurus, viz., thy sons resembling the children of the celestials, with a host of warriors of immeasurable might at their van, all proceeded against Sātyaki, that bull of Cini's race.[7] Thereupon that host, teeming with many foremost of men and steeds and cars and elephants, producing an uproar loud as that of the vasty deep,* and resembling the army of the *Asuras* or that of the celestials, shone with fierce beauty.[8] Then the son of Surya, resembling the chief of the celestials himself in prowess and like unto the younger brother of Indra, struck that foremost one of Cini's race with shafts whose splendour resembled the rays of the Sun.[9] That bull of Cini's race also, in that battle, then quickly shrouded that foremost of men, with his car and steeds and driver, with diverse kinds of shafts terrible as the poison of the snake.[10] Then many *Atirathas* belonging to thy army, accompanied by elephants and cars and foot-soldiers, quickly approached that bull among car-warriors, viz., Vasusena, when they beheld the latter deeply afflicted with the shafts of that foremost hero of Cini's race.[11] That force, however, vast as the ocean, assailed by foes possessed of great quickness, viz., the Pāndava warriors headed by the sons of Drupada, fled away from the field. At that time a great carnage occurred of men and cars and steeds and elephants.[12] Then those two foremost of men, *viz.*, Arjuna and Keçava, having said their daily prayers and duly worshipped the lord Bhava,. quickly rushed against thy troops, resolved to slay those foes of theirs.[13] Their foes, (*i. e.*, the Kurus) cast their eyes cheerlessly on that car whose rattle resembled the roar of the clouds and whose banners waved beautifully in the air and which had white steeds yoked unto it and which was com-

* Literally—"of the salt waters."—T.

ing towards them.[14] Then Arjuna, bending *Gāndiva* and as if dancing on his car, filled the welkin and all the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, with showers of shafts, not leaving the smallest space empty.[15] Like the tempest destroying the clouds, the son of Pāndu destroyed, with his arrows, many cars looking like celestial vehicles, that were well-adorned, and equipt with weapons and standards, along with their drivers.[16] Many elephants also, with the men that guided them, adorned with trimphal banners and weapons, and many horsemen with horses, and many foot-soldiers also, Arjuna despatched with his arrows to Yama's abode.[17] Then Duryodhana singly proceeded against that mighty car-warrior who was angry and irresistible and resembled a veritable Yama, striking him with his straight shafts.[18] Arjuna, cutting off his adversary's bow and driver and steeds and standard with seven shafts, next cut off his umbrella with one arrow.[19] Obtaining then an opportunity, he sped at Duryodhana an excellent shaft capable of taking the life of the person struck. Drona's son, however, cut off that shaft into seven fragments.[20] Cutting off then the bow of Drona's son and slaying the four steeds of the latter with his arrows, the son of Pāndu next cut off the formidable bow of Kripa too.[21] Then cutting off the bow of Hridikā's son, he felled the latter's standard and steeds. Then cutting off the bow of Dusçāsana, he proceeded against the son of Rādhā.[22] At this, Karna, leaving Sātyaki, quickly pierced Arjuna with three arrows and Krishna with twenty, and Pārtha again repeatedly.[23] Although many were the arrows that he shot while slaying his foes in that battle like Indra himself inspired with wrath, Karna yet felt no fatigue.[24] Meanwhile Sātyaki, coming up, pierced Karna with nine and ninety fierce arrows, and once more with a hundred.[25] Then all the foremost heroes among the Pārthas began to afflict Karna. Yudhāmanyu and Cikhandin and the sons of Draupadi and the Prabhadrakas,[26] and Uttamaujas and Yuyutsu and the twins and Dhrishtadyumna, and the divisions of the Chedis and the Kārushas and the Matsyas and the Kaikeyas,[27] and the mighty Chekitāna, and king Yudhishthira of excellent vows,—all these, —accompanied by cars and steeds and elephants, and foot-

soldiers of fierce prowess,[28] encompassed Karna on all sides in that battle, and showered upon him diverse kinds of weapons, addressing him in harsh words and resolved to compass his destruction.[29] Cutting off that shower of weapons with his sharp shafts, Karna dispersed his assailants by the power of his weapons like the wind breaking down the trees that stand on its way.[30] Filled with wrath, Karna was seen to destroy car-warriors, and elephants with their riders, and horses with horse-men, and large bands of foot-soldiers.[31] Slaughtered by the energy of Karna's weapons, almost the whole of that force of the Pāndavas, deprived of weapons, and with limbs mangled and torn, retired from the field.[32] Then Arjuna, smiling the while, baffled with his own weapons the weapons of Karna, and covered the welkin, the Earth, and all the points of the compass with dense showers of arrows.[33] The shafts of Arjuna fell like heavy clubs and spiked bludgeons. And some amongst them fell like *Çataghnis* and some fell like fierce thunderbolts.[34] Slaughtered therewith, the Kaurava force consisting of infantry and horse and cars and elephants, shutting its eyes, uttered loud wails of woe and wandered senselessly.[35] Many were the steeds and men and elephants that perished on that occasion. Many, again, struck with shafts and deeply afflicted, fled away in fear.[36]

" 'Whilst thy warriors were thus engaged in battle from desire of victory, the Sun, approaching the setting mountain, entered it.[37] In consequence of the darkness, O king, but especially owing to the dust, we could not notice anything favorable or unfavorable.[38] The mighty bowmen (amongst the Kauravas), fearing a night-battle, O Bhārata, then retired from the field, accompanied by all their combatants.[39] Upon the retirement of the Kauravas, O king, at the close of the day, the Pārthas, cheerful at having obtained the victory, also retired to their own encampment,[40] jeering their enemies by producing diverse kinds of sounds with their musical instruments, and applauding Achyuta and Arjuna.[41] After those heroes had thus withdrawn the army, all the troops and all the kings uttered benedictions upon the Pāndavas.[42] The withdrawal having been made, those sinless men, viz., the Pān-

davas, became very glad, and proceeding to their tents rested there for the night.[43] Then *Rākshasas*, and *Piçāchas*, and carnivorous beasts, in large numbers, came to that awful field of battle resembling the sporting ground of Rudra himself.' "[44]

SECTION XXXI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—"It seems that Arjuna slew all of you at his will! Indeed, the Destroyer himself could not escape him in battle, if Arjuna took up arms against him![1] Single-handed, Pārtha ravished Bhadrā, and single-handed, he gratified Agni! Single-handed, he subjugated the whole Earth, and made all the kings pay tribute![2] Single-handed, with his celestial bow, he slew the *Nivātakavachas!* Single-handed, he contended in battle with Mahādeva who stood before him in the guise of a hunter![3] Single-handed, he protected the Bhāratas, and single-headed, he gratified Bhava! Single-handed, were all the kings of the Earth vanquished by him endued with fierce prowess![4] The Kurus cannot be blamed. On the other hand, they deserve praise (for their having fought with such a warrior)! Tell me now what they did. Tell me also, O *Suta*, what Duryodhana did after that!"[5]

"Sanjaya said,—'Struck and wounded and overthrown from their vehicles and divested of armour and deprived of weapons and their beasts slain, with plaintive voices and burning with grief and vanquished by their foes, the vain Kauravas, entering their tents, once more took counsel of one another. They then looked like snakes deprived of fangs and poison trod upon by others.[6-7] Unto them, Karna, sighing like an angry snake, squeezing his hands, and eyeing thy son, said,[8]—Arjuna is always careful, firm, possessed of skill, and endued with intelligence. Again, when the time comes, Vāsudeva awakes him (to what should be done)![9] Today, by that sudden shower of weapons we were deceived by him! Tomorrow, however, O lord of Earth, I will frustrate all his purposes![10]—Thus addressed by Karna, Duryodhana said,—So be it!—and then granted permission to those foremost of kings to retire. Bidden by the king, all those rulers proceeded to their respective tents.[11]

Having passed the night happily, they cheerfully went out for battle (the next day).*[12] They then beheld an invincible array formed by king Yudhishthira the just, that foremost one of Kuru's race, with great care, and according to the sanction of Vrihaspati and Uçanas.[13] Then that slayer of foes, viz., Duryodhana, called to mind the heroic Karna, that counteracter of foes, that warrior with neck like that of a bull, equal to Purandara himself in battle, the Maruts in might, Kārtavirya in energy. Indeed, the heart of the king turned towards Karna.[14-15] And the hearts of all the troops also turned to that hero, that *Suta's* son, that mighty bowman, as one's heart turns to a friend, in a situation of great danger.'[16]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'What did Duryodhana next do, O *Suta*, when the hearts of all of you turned towards Vikartana's son Karna?[17] Did my troops cast their eyes on Rādhā's son like persons afflicted with cold turning their gaze towards the Sun? Upon the recommencement of the battle after the withdrawal of the troops,[18] how, O Sanjaya, did Vikartana's son Karna fight? How also did all the Pāndavas fight with the *Suta's* son?[19] The mighty-armed Karna would, single-handed, slay the Pārthas with the Srinjayas. The might of Karna's arms in battle equals that of Cakra or Vishnu.[20] His weapons are fierce, and the prowess also of that high-souled one is fierce. Relying upon Karna, king Duryodhana had set his heart on battle.[21] Beholding that Duryodhana deeply afflicted by the son of Pāndu, and seeing also the sons of Pāndu, displaying great prowess, what did that mighty car-warrior, viz, Karna, do?[22] Alas, the foolish Duryodhana, relying on Karna, hopeth to vanquish the Pārthas with their sons and Keçava in battle![23] Alas, it is a matter of great grief that Karna could not, with his strength, overcome the sons of Pāndu in fight! Without doubt, Destiny is supreme![24] Alas, the terrible end of that gambling match hath now come! Alas, these heart-rending sorrows, due to Duryodhana's acts, many in number and like unto terrible darts, are now being borne by me, O San-

---

* This is a verse in one line.—T.

† A triplet.—T.

jaya![25] O sire, Suvala's son used to be then regarded as a politic person. Karna also is always exceedingly attached to king Duryodhana.[26] Alas, when such is the case, O Sanjaya, why have I then to hear of the frequent defeats and deaths of my sons?[27] There is no one that can resist the Pāndavas in battle! They penetrate into my army like a man into the midst of helpless women! Destiny, indeed, is supreme![28]

"Sanjaya said,—'O king, think now of all those righteous acts of thine like that match at dice and the others! Acts that have passed away form the subjects of thought with man![29] One should not, however, reflect on byegone acts. One may be ruined by such reflection. That result (which thou hadst expected) is now much removed from the point of fruition, since, although possessed of knowledge, thou didst not reflect on the propriety or impropriety of thy acts then! Many a time wert thou, O king, counselled against warring with the Pāndavas![30-31] Thou didst not, however, O monarch, accept those counsels, from folly! Diverse sinful acts of a grave nature were perpetrated by thee against the sons of Pāndu![32] For those acts this awful slaughter of kings hath now come! All that, however, is now past. Do not grieve, O bull of Bharata's race![33] O thou of unfading glory, listen now to the details of the awful carnage that has occurred!

"'When the night dawned, Karna repaired to king Duryodhana.[34] Approaching the king, the mighty-armed hero said, —I shall, O king, engage in battle today with the illustrious son of Pāndu![35] Either I will slay that hero today, or he will slay me! In consequence of the diverse things both myself and Pārtha had to do, O Bhārata,[36] an encounter, O king, could not hitherto take place between myself and Arjuna! Listen now, O monarch, to these words of mine, spoken according to my wisdom![37] Without slaying Pārtha in battle I will not come back, O Bhārata! Since this army of ours hath been deprived of its foremost warriors, and since I will stand in battle,[38] Pārtha will advance against me, especially because I am destitute of the dart that Cakra gave me! Therefore, O ruler of men, listen now to what is beneficial![39] The energy of my celestial weapons is equal to the energy of Arjuna's weapons.

In counteracting the feats of powerful foes, in lightness of hands, in the range of the arrows shot,[40] in skill, and in hitting the mark, Savyasāchin is never my equal. In physical strength, in courage, in knowledge (of weapons), in prowess, O Bhārata,[41] in aiming, Savyasāchin is never my equal. My bow, called *Vijaya*, is the foremost of all weapons (of its kind).[42] Desirous of doing what was agreeable (to Indra), it was made by Viçwakarman (the celestial artificer) for Indra. With that bow, O king, Indra had vanquished the *Daityas*.[43] At its twang the *Daityas* had beheld the ten points to be empty.* That bow, respected by all, Cakra gave to Bhrigu's son (Rāma).[44] That celestial and foremost of bows Bhrigu's son gave to me. With that bow I will contend in battle with the mighty-armed Arjuna, that foremost of victorious warriors,[45] like Indra fighting with the assembled *Daityas!* That formidable bow, the gift of Rāma, is superior to *Gāndiva*.[46] It was with that bow that the Earth was subjugated thrice seven times (by Bhrigu's son).[47] With that bow given to me by Rāma I will contend in battle with the son of Pāndu! I will, O Duryodhana, gladden thee today with thy friends,[48] by slaying in battle that hero, viz., Arjuna, that foremost of conquerors! The whole Earth with her mountains and forests and islands, without a heroic warrior (to oppose thy wish)[49] will, O king, become thine today, over which thyself with thy sons and grandsons will reign supreme! Today there is nothing that is incapable of being achieved by me, especially when the object is to do what is agreeable to thee,[50] even as ascetic success is incapable of being missed by one zealously devoted to virtue and having his soul under control! Arjuna will not be able to bear me in battle even as a tree in contact with fire is incapable of bearing that element.[51] I must, however, declare in what respect I am inferior to Arjuna. The string of his bow is celestial, and the two large quivers of his are inexhaustible. His driver is Govinda.[52] I have none like him. His is that celestial and foremost of bows, called *Gāndiva*, which is irrefragible in battle.[53] I also have that excellent,

* The sense of the original is that the *Daityas* were stupified.—T.

celestial, and formidable bow called *Vijaya*. In respect of our bows, therefore, O king, I am superior to Arjuna.[54] Listen now to those matters in which the heroic son of Pāndu is superior to me! The holder of the reins (of his steeds) is he of Daçāraha's race who is adored by all the worlds![55] His celestial car, decked with gold, given unto him by Agni, is impenetrable in every part, and his steeds also, O hero, are endued with the speed of the mind.[56] His celestial standard, bearing the blazing Ape, is exceedingly wonderful. Again, Krishna who is the Creator of the universe, protects that car![57] Though inferior to Arjuna in respect of these things, I still desire to fight with him. This Calya, however, the ornament of assemblies, is equal to Caurin![58] If he becomes my driver, victory will certainly be thine! Let Calya, therefore, who is incapable of being resisted by foes, be the driver of my car![59] Let a large number of carts bear my long shafts and those that are winged with vulturine feathers. Let a number of foremost cars, O monarch, with excellent steeds yoked unto them,[60] always follow me, O bull of Bharata's race! By these arrangements I will, as regards the qualities mentioned, be superior to Arjuna![61] Calya is superior to Krishna, and I am superior to Arjuna! As that slayer of foes, viz., he of Daçārha's race, is acquainted with horselore,[62] even so is that mighty car-warrior, viz., Calya acquainted with horselore. There is none equal to the chief of the Madras in might of arms,[63] As there is none equal to myself in weapons, so there is none equal to Calya in knowledge of steeds.[64] So circumstanced, I will become superior to Pārtha. Against my car, the very gods with Vāsava at their head will not dare advance.[65] All these being attended to, when I take my stand on my car, I will become superior to Arjuna in the attributes of a warrior and will then, O best of the Kurus, vanquish Phālguna![66] I desire, O monarch, all this to be done by thee, O scorcher of foes! Let these wishes of mine be accomplished. Let no time be suffered to elapse![67] If all this be accomplished, the most effectual aid will be rendered to me on every desirable point. Thou wilt then see, O Bhārata, what I will achieve in battle![68] I will, by every means, vanquish the sons of Pāndu in battle when

they will approach me! The very gods and the *Asuras* are not able to advance against me in battle! What need be said then of the sons of Pāndu that are of human origin?—'[69]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed by that ornament of battle, viz., Karna, thy son, worshipping the son of Rādhā, answered him, with a glad heart, saying,[70]—Accomplish that, O Karna, which thou thinkest! Equipt with goodly quivers and steeds, such cars shall follow thee in battle![71] Let as many cars as thou wishest bear thy long shafts and arrows equipt with vulturine feathers. Ourselves, as also all the kings, will, O Karna, follow thee in battle!—'[72]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said these words, thy royal son, endued with great prowess, approached the ruler of the Madras and addressed him in the following words.' "[73]

Section XXXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thy son then, O monarch, humbly approaching that mighty car-warrior, viz., the ruler of the Madras, addressed him, from affection, in these words:[1]—O thou of true vows, O thou of great good fortune, O enhancer of the sorrows of foes, O ruler of the Madras, O hero in battle, O thou that inspirest hostile troops with fear,[2] thou hast heard, O foremost of speakers, how, for the sake of Karna who spoke unto me, I myself am desirous of soliciting thee among all these lions of kings![3] O thou of incomparable prowess, O king of the Madras, for the destruction of the foe, I solicit thee today, with humility and bow of the head![4] Therefore, for the destruction of Pārtha and for my good, it behoveth thee, O foremost of car-warriors, to accept, from love, the office of charioteer![5] With thee for his driver, the son of Rāhdā will subjugate my foes! There is none else for holding the reins of Karna's steeds,[6] except thee, O thou of great good fortune, thou that art the equal of Vāsudeva in battle! Protect Karna then by every means like Brahman protecting Maheçwara![7] Even as he of Vrishni's race protects by every means the son of Pāndu in all dangers, do thou, O chief of the Madras, protect the

son of Rādhā today![8] Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, and thyself, and the valiant ruler of the Bhojas, and Cakuni the son of Suvala, and Drona's son, and myself, constituted the chief strength of our army![9] Even thus, O lord of Earth, we had divided amongst ourselves the hostile army into nine portions for the share of each! The share that had been allotted to Bhishma is now no more, as also that which had been allotted to the high-souled Drona.[10] Going even beyond their allotted shares, those two slew my foes. Those two tigers among men, however, were old, and both of them have been slain deceitfully.[11] Having achieved the most difficult feats, both of them, O sinless one, have departed hence to heaven! Similarly, many other tigers among men, of our army, slain by foes in battle, have ascended to heaven, casting off their lives and having made great exertions to the best of their powers.[12-13] This my host, therefore, O king, the greater portion of which has been slaughtered, has been reduced to this state by the Pārthas who were at first fewer than us. What should be done for the present?[14] Do that now, O lord of Earth, by which the mighty and the high-souled sons of Kunti, of prowess incapable of being baffled, may be prevented from exterminating the remnant of my host![15] O lord, the Pāndavas have in battle slain the bravest warriors of this my force![16] The mighty-armed Karna alone is devoted to our good, as also thyself, O tiger among men, that art the foremost of car-warriors in the whole world![17] O Calya, Karna wishes to contend in battle today with Arjuna! On him, O ruler of the Madras, my hopes of victory are great![18] There is none else in the world (save thee) that can make so good a holder of the reins for Karna! As Krishna is the foremost of all holders of reins for Pārtha in battle, even so, O king, be thou the foremost of all holders of reins on Karna's car![19] Accompanied and protected, O sire, by him in battle, the feats that Pārtha achieves are all before thee![20] Formerly, Arjuna had never slain his foes in battle in such a way. Now, however, his prowess has become great, united as he is with Krishna![21] Day after day, O ruler of the Madras, this vast Dhārtarāshtra force is seen to be routed by Pārtha because he is united with

Krishna![22] A portion remains of the share allotted to Karna and thyself, O thou of great splendour! Bear that share with Karna, and destroy it unitedly in battle![23] Even as Surya, uniting with Aruna, destroys the darkness, do thou, uniting with Karna, slay the Pārthas in battle![24] Let the mighty car-warriors (of the enemy), fly away, beholding in battle those two warriors endued with the offulgence of the morning Sun, viz., Karna and Calya, resembling two Suns risen above the horizon![25] Even as darkness is destroyed, O sire, at the sight of Surya and Aruna, even so let the Kaunteyas with the Pānchālas and the Srinjayas perish (beholding thee and Karna![26] Karna is the formost of car-warriors, and thou art the foremost of drivers! In the clash of battle, again, there is none equal to thee![27] As he of Vrishni's race protects the son of Pāndu under all circumstances, even so let thyself protect Vikartana's son Karna in battle![28] With thee as his driver, Karna will become invincible, O king, in battle with even the gods having Cakra at their head! What then need be said about the Pāndavas? Do not doubt my words!—'[29]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing these words of Duryodhana, Calya became filled with rage. Contracting his brow into three lines, and waving his arms repeatedly,[30] and rolling his large eyes red in wrath, that warrior of massive arms, proud of his lineage and wealth and knowledge and strength, said these words.[31]

" 'Calya said,—Thou insultest me, O son of Gāndhāri, or, without doubt, suspectest me, since thou solicitest me, without hesitation, saying,—*Act thou as a driver!*[32]—Regarding Karna to be superior to ourselves, thou applaudest him thus! I, however, do not regard the son of Rādhā as my equal in battle![33] Assign to me a much greater share, O lord of Earth! Destroying that in battle, I will return to the place I came from![34] Or, if thou wishest, I will, O delighter of the Kurus, contend, single-handed, with the enemy! While engaged in consuming the foe, behold thou my prowess today![35] Brooding upon an insult, O thou of Kuru's race, a person like ourselves never engageth in my task. Do not have thy doubts about me! Never shouldst thou humiliate me in battle![36]

Behold these two massive arms of mine, strong as the thunder! Behold also my excellent bow, and these shafts that resemble snakes of virulent poison![37] Behold my car, unto which are yoked excellent steeds endued with the speed of the wind! Behold also, O son of Gāndhāri, my mace decked with gold and twined with hempen chords![38] Filled with wrath, I can split the very Earth, scatter the mountains, and dry up the oceans, with my own energy, O king![39] Knowing me, O monarch, to be so capable of afflicting the foe, why dost thou appoint me to the office of driver in battle for such a low-born person as Adhiratha's son?[40] It behoveth thee not, O king of kings, to set me to such mean tasks! Being so superior, I cannot make up my mind to obey the commands of a sinful person![41] He that causeth a superior person arrived of his own will and obedient from love, to yield to a sinful wight, certainly incurreth the sin of confusing the superior with the inferior![42] Brahman created the Brāhmanas from his mouth, and the Kshatriyas from his arms. He created the Vaiçyas from his thighs and the Cudras from his feet.[43] In consequence of the union with one another of those four orders, O Bhārata, from those four have sprung particular classes, viz., those born of men of superior classes wedding women of classes inferior to themselves, and *vice versa*.[44] Protectors (of the other classes), acquirers of wealth, and givers of the same, have the Kshatriyas been described to be. The Brāhmanas have been established on the Earth for the sake of favoring its people by assisting at sacrifices, by teaching, and acceptance of pure gifts.[45] Agriculture and tending of cattle and gift are the occupations of the Vaiçyas according to the scriptures. Cudras have been ordained to be the servants of the Brāhmanas, the Kshatriyas, and the Vaiçyas.[46] Similarly, the *Sutas* are the servants of the Kshatriyas, and not the latter the servants of the former. Listen to these my words, O sinless one![47] As regards myself, I am one whose coronal locks have undergone the sacred bath. I am born in a race of royal sages. I am reckoned a great car-warrior. I deserve the worship and the praises that bards and eulogists render and sing.[48] Being all this, O slayer of hostile troops, I cannot come forward to act as the driver of the *Suta's*

son in battle![49] I will never fight, undergoing an act of humiliation. I ask thy permission, O son of Gāndhāri, for I will return home![50]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said these words, that tiger among men and ornament of assemblies, viz., Calya, filled with rage, stood up quickly and endeavoured to get away from that concourse of kings.[51] Thy son, however, from affection and great regard, held the king, and addressed him in these sweet and conciliatory words, that were capable of accomplishing every object:[52]—Without doubt, O Calya, it is even so as thou hast said! But I have a certain purpose in view. Listen to it, O ruler of men![53] Karna is not superior to thee, nor do I suspect thee, O king! The royal chief of the Madras will never do that which is false.[54] Those foremost of men that were thy ancestors always told the truth. I think it is for this that thou art called *Ārtāyani* (the descendant of those that had truth for their refuge).[55] And since, O giver of honors, thou art like a barbed arrow to thy foes, therefore art thou called by the name of *Çalya* on Earth![56] O thou that makest large presents (to Brāhmanas) at sacrifices, do thou accomplish all that which, O virtuous one, thou hadst said thou wouldst accomplish before![57] Neither the son of Rādhā nor myself am superior to thee in valor that I would select thee as the driver of those foremost of steeds (that are yoked unto Karna's car)![58] As, however, O sire, Karna is superior to Dhananjaya in regard to many qualities, even so doth the world regard thee to be superior to Vāsudeva![59] Karna is certainly superior to Pārtha in the matter of weapons, O bull among men! Thou too art superior to Krishna, in knowledge of steeds and might![60] Without doubt, O ruler of the Madras, thy knowledge of horses is twice greater than that which the high-souled Vāsudeva hath!—[61]

" 'Calya said,—Since, O son of Gāndhāri, thou describest me, O thou of Kuru's race, in the midst of all these troops, to be superior to Devaki's son, I am gratified with thee![62] I will become the driver of Rādhā's son of great fame while he will be engaged in battle with that foremost one of Pāndu's sons, as thou solicitest me![63] Let this, however, O hero, be

my understanding with Vikartana's son that I will, in his presence, utter whatever speeches I desire!—'[64]

"Sanjaya continued,—'O king, thy son, with Karna then, O Bhārata, answered the prince of the Madras, O best of Bharata's race, saying,—So be it!—' "[65]

SECTION XXXIII.

" 'Duryodhana said,—Listen, once more, O ruler of the Madras, to what I will say unto thee, about what happened, O lord, in the battle between the gods and the *Asuras* in days of yore![1] The great *Rishi* Mārkandeya narrated it to my sire. I will now recite it without leaving out anything, O best of royal sages! Listen to that account confidingly and without mistrusting it at all![2] Between the gods and the *Asuras*, each desirous of vanquishing the other, there happened a great battle, O king, which had Tāraka for its evil (root). It hath been heard by us that the *Daityas* were defeated by the gods.[3] Upon the defeat of the *Daityas*, the three sons of Tāraka, named Tārakāksha, Kamalāksha, and Vidyunmālin, O king,[4] practising the austerest penances, lived in the observance of high vows. By those penances they emaciated their bodies, O scorcher of foes.[5] In consequence of their self-restraint, their penances, their vows, and contemplation, the boon-giving Grandsire became gratified with them and gave them boons.[6] Unitedly they solicited the Grandsire of all the worlds, O king, for the boon of immunity from death at the hands of all creatures at all times.[7] The divine Lord and Master of all the worlds said unto them,—[There is nothing like immunity from death at the hands of all creatures! Therefore, ye *Asuras*, abstain from such a prayer! Solicit some other boon that may seem desirable to you![]][8]—Then all of them, O king, having settled it amongst themselves after long and repeated conferences, bowed to the great Master of all the worlds and said these words:—[O god, O Grandsire, give us this boon![9] Residing in three cities, we will rove over this Earth, with thy grace ever before us![10] After a thousand years then, we will come together, and our three cities also, O sinless one, will become united

into one![11] That foremost one amongst the gods who will, with one shaft, pierce those three cities united into one, will, O lord, be the cause of our destruction![12]—Saying unto them, —[Let it be so,]—that god ascended to heaven. Those *Asuras* then, filled with joy at having obtained those boons, and having settled it among themselves[13] about the construction of the three cities, selected for the purpose the great *Asura* Maya, the celestial artificer, knowing no fatigue or decay, and worshipped by all the *Daityas* and *Dānavas*.[14] Then Maya, of great intelligence, by the aid of his own ascetic merit, constructed the three cities, one of which was of gold, another of silver, and the third of black iron.[15] The golden city was set in heaven, the silver city in the welkin, and the iron city was set on the Earth, all in such a way as to revolve in a circle, O lord of Earth!*[16] Each of those cities measured a hundred *Yojanas* in breadth and a hundred in length. And they consisted of houses and mansions and lofty walls and porches.[17] And though teeming with lordly palaces close to each other, yet the streets were wide and spacious. And they were adorned with diverse mansions and gate-ways.[18] Each of those cities, again, O monarch, had a separate king.[19] The beautiful city of gold belonged to the illustrious Tārakāksha; the silver city to Kamalāksha, and the iron one to Vidyunmālin.[20] Those three *Daitya* kings, soon assailing the three worlds with their energy, continued to dwell and reign, and began to say,—[Who is he called the Creator?][21]—Unto those foremost of *Dānavas* having no heroes equal to them, came millions upon millions, from every side,[22] of proud and flesh-eating *Dānavas* who had before been defeated by the celestials, and who now settled in the three cities, desirous of great prosperity.[23] Unto all of them thus united, Maya became the supplier of every thing they wanted. Relying upon him, all of them resided there, in perfect fearlessness.[24] Whoever amongst those residing in the triple city wished for whatever object in his heart, had his wish fulfilled by Maya aided by the latter's powers of

---

* *Chakrasthim* is explained by Nilakantha in the sense in which I render it here.—T.

illusion.[25] Tārakākasha had a heroic and mighty son named Hari. He underwent the austerest of penances, upon which the Grandsire became gratified with him.[26] When the god was gratified, Hari solicited a boon of him, saying,—[Let a lake start into existence in our city, such that persons, slain by means of weapons, may, when thrown into it, come out with life and redoubled strength ![27]—Obtaining this boon, the heroic Hari, son of Tārakāksha, created a lake, O lord, in his city, that was capable of reviving the dead.[28] In whatever form and whatever guise a *Daitya* might be slain, if thrown into that lake, he came out, restored to life, in the self-same form and guise.[29] Obtaining back their slain, the *Daityas* began to afflict the three worlds. Crowned with success by means of austere penances, those enhancers of the fears of the gods[30] sustained, O king, no diminution in battle.[31] Stupified then by covetousness and folly, and deprived of their senses, all of them began to shamelessly exterminate the cities and towns established all over the universe.[32] Filled with pride at the boons they had received, and driving before them, at all times and from all places, the gods with their attendants, they roamed at will over celestial forests and other realms dear to the denizens of heaven and the delightful and sacred asylums of *Rishis*. And the wicked *Dānavas* ceased to show any respect for anybody.[33-34] While the worlds were thus afflicted, Cakra, surrounded by the Maruts, battled against the three cities by hurling his thunder upon them from every side.[35] When, however, Purandara failed to pierce those cities made impenetrable, O king, by the Creator with his boons,[36] the chief of the celestials, filled with fear, and leaving those cities, repaired with those very gods to that chastiser of foes, viz., the Grandsire, for representing unto him the oppressions committed by the *Asuras*.[37] Representing everything and bowing their heads unto him, they asked the divine Grandsire the means by which the triple city could be destroyed.[38] The illustrious Deity, hearing the words of Indra, told the gods,—[He that is an offender against you offends against me also ![39] The *Asuras* are all of wicked souls and always hate the gods ! They that give pain to you always offend against me ![40] I am impartial to all creatures ! There is

no doubt in this! For all that, however, they that are unrighteous should be slain. This is my fixed vow![41] Those three forts are to be pierced with one shaft. By no other means can their destruction be effected. None else, save Sthānu, is competent to pierce them with one shaft.[42] Ye Ādityas, select Sthānu, otherwise called Içāna and Jishnu, who is never fatigued with work, as your warrior! It is he that will destroy those *Asuras!*][43]—Hearing these words of his, the gods with Cakra at their head, making Brahman take their leader, sought the protection of the Deity having the bull for his mark.[44] Those righteous ones, accompanied by *Rishis* devoted to the severest penances and uttering the eternal words of the *Vedas*, sought Bhava with their whole soul.[45] And they praised, O king, in the high words of the *Vedas*, that dispeller of fears in all situations of fear, that Universal Soul, that Supreme Soul, that one by whom this All is pervaded with his Soul.[46] Then him who, by especial penances, had learnt to still all the functions of his Soul and understood the distinction of Soul from Matter,—him who had his soul always under control,[47]—him, called Içāna,—that lord of Umā, that mass of energy,—the gods beheld,—him, that is, who hath no equal in the universe, that source (of everything), that sinless Self.[48] Though that Deity is *one*, they had imagined him to be of various forms. Beholding in that high-souled one those diverse forms that each had individually conceived in his own heart, all of them became filled with wonder.[49] Beholding that Unborn one, that Lord of the universe, to be the embodiment of all creatures, the gods and the regenerate *Rishis*, all touched the Earth with their heads.[50] Saluting them with the word—[Welcome]—and raising them from their bent attitudes, the illustrious Cankara addressed them smilingly, saying,—[Tell us the object of your visit!][51]—Commanded by the Three-eyed god, their hearts became easy. They then said these words unto him:—Our repeated salutations to thee, O lord![52] Salutations to thee that art the source of all the gods, to thee armed with the bow, to thee that art full of wrath! Salutations to thee that hadst destroyed the sacrifice of that lord of creatures (viz., Daksha), to thee that art

adored by all the lords of creatures![53] Salutations to thee that art always praised, to thee that deservest to be praised, to thee that art Death's self! Salutations to thee that art red, to thee that art fierce, to thee that art blue-throated, to thee that art armed with the trident,[54] to thee that art incapable of being baffled, to thee that hast eyes as beautiful as those of the gazelle, to thee that fightest with the foremost of weapons; to thee that deservest all praise, to thee that art pure, to thee that art destruction's self, to thee that art the destroyer;[55] to thee that art irresistible, to thee that art Brahman, to thee that leadest the life of a *Brahmachārin*; to thee that art Içāna; to thee that art immeasurable, to thee that art the great controller, to thee that art robed in tatters;[56] to thee that art ever engaged in penances, to thee that art tawny, to thee that art observant of vows, to thee that art robed in animal skins; to thee that art the sire of Kumāra, to thee that art three-eyed, to thee that art armed with the foremost of weapons,[57] to thee that destroyest the afflictions of all that seek thy shelter, to thee that destroyest all haters of Brāhmanas, to thee that art the lord of all trees, the lord of all men, the lord of all kine, and ever the lord of sacrifices![58] Salutations to thee that art always at the head of troops, to thee that art three-eyed, to thee that art endued with fierce energy! We devote ourselves to thee in thought, word, and deed! Be gracious unto us![59]—Gratified with these adorations, the holy one, saluting them with the word—[Welcome]—said unto them,—[Let your fears be dispelled! Say, what we are to do for you!]—' "[60]

SECTION XXXIV.

" 'Duryodhana said,—After the fears of those throngs of the *Pitris*, the gods, and the *Rishis* had thus been dispelled by that high-souled Deity, Brahman, then offered his adorations unto Cankara, and said these words for the benefit of the universe:[1] —[Through thy favor, O Lord of all, the Lordship of all creatures is mine! Occupying that rank, I have given a great boon to the *Dānavas*![2] It behoveth none else, save thee,

O Lord of the Past and the Future, to destroy those wicked wights that show no regard for any one! Thou, O god, art the only person competent to slay the foes of these denizens of heaven that have sought thy protection and that solicit thee! O Lord of all the gods, show favor to these! Slay the *Dānavas*, O wielder of the trident![3-4] O giver of honors, let the universe, through thy grace, obtain happiness! O Lord of all the worlds, thou art the one whose shelter should be sought! We all seek thy shelter![5]—

"'—Sthānu said,—[All your foes should be slain, I think! I do not, however, venture to slay them single-handed! The enemies of the gods are possessed of might![6] Therefore, all of you, united together, consume those enemies of yours in battle, with half my might! Union is great strength![7]—

"'—The gods said,—[Theirs is twice the energy and might of ourselves, we think, for we have already seen their energy and might![8]—

'"—The holy one said,—[Those sinful wights that have offended against ye should be slain! With half of my energy and might, slay all those enemies of yours![9]—

'"—The gods said,—[We will not be able, O Maheçwara, to bear half of thy energy! With, on the other hand, half of our united might, do thou slay those foes![10]—

"'—The holy one said,—[If, indeed, ye have not the ability to bear half of my might, then, endued with half of your united energy, I will slay them![11]—'

"'Duryodhana continued,—The celestials then, addressing that god of gods, said,—[So be it]—O best of kings! Taking half of their energies from all of them, he became superior in might.[12] Indeed, in might that god became superior to all in the universe! From that time Cankara came to be called *Mahādeva*.*[13] And *Mahādeva* then said,—[Armed with bow and shaft, I will, from my car, slay in battle those foes of yours, ye denizens of heaven![14] Therefore, ye gods, see now to my car and bow and shaft so that I may, this very day, throw the *Asuras* down on the Earth![15]—

---

* The great god.—T.

"'—The gods said,—[Gathering all forms that may be found in the three worlds and taking portions of each, we will, O Lord of the gods, construct a car of great energy for thee![16] It will be a large car, the handiwork of Viçwakarman, designed with intelligence!]—Saying this, those tigers among the gods began the construction of that car.[17] And they made Vishnu and Soma and Hutāça the arrow for Cankara's use. Agni became the staff, and Soma became the head, and Vishnu the point, O king, of that foremost of arrows.[18] The goddess Earth, with her large cities and towns, her mountains and forests and islands, that home of diverse creatures, was made the car.[19] The Mandara mountain was made its axle; and the great river Gangā was made its *Janghā*; and the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, became the ornaments of that car.[20] The constellations became its shaft; the *Krita* age became its yoke; and that best of snakes, viz., Vāsuki, became the *Kuvara* of that car.[21] Himavat and Vindhya mountains became its *Apaskara* and *Adhishthāna*; and the Udaya and the Asta mountains were made the wheels of that car by those foremost ones among the gods.[22] The excellent Ocean, that abode of the *Dānavas*, they made its other axle. The seven *Rishis* became the protectors of the wheels of that car.[23] Gangā and Saraswati and Sindhu and the Sky became its *Dhura*; all the other rivers and all the waters became the chords for binding the several limbs of that car.[24] Day and Night and the other divisions of time such as *Kalas* and *Kāsthās*, and the Seasons became its *Anukarsha*. The blazing planets and the stars became its wooden fence.[25] Religion, Profit, and Pleasure, united together, became its *Trivenu*. The herbs and the creepers, decked with flowers and fruits, became its bells.[26] Making the Sun and the Moon equal, these were made the (other two) wheels of that foremost of cars. Day and Night were made its auspicious wings on the right and the left.[27] The ten foremost of snakes having Dhritarāshtra for their first, all exceedingly strong, formed the (other) shaft of that car. The Sky was made its (other) yoke, and the Clouds called *Samvartaka* and *Valāhaka* were the leathern strings of the yoke. The two Twilights, and *Dhriti*, and *Medhā*, and *Sthiti*, and

Sannati,*[28] and the firmament bespangled with planets and stars, were made the skins for covering that car. Those Regents of the world, viz., the Lords of the gods, of the waters, of the dead, and of treasures,† were made the steeds of that car.[29] Kālaprishtha, and Nahusha, and Kārkotaka, and Dhananjaya, and the other snakes became the chords for binding the manes of the steeds.[30] The cardinal and the subsidiary directions became the reins of the steeds of that car. The *Vedic* sound *Vashat* became the goad, and *Gāyatri* became the string attached to that goad.[31] The four auspicious days were made the traces of the steeds, and the *Pitris* presiding over them were made the hooks and pins.‡[32] Action and Truth and ascetic Penances and Profit, were made the chords of that car. The Mind became the ground upon which that car stood, and Speech the tracks upon which it was to proceed.[33] Beautiful banners of various hues waved on the air. With lightning and Indra's bow attached to it, that blazing car gave fierce light.[34] That space of time which, on a former occasion, had, in the Sacrifice of the high-souled Içāna, been fixed as a Year, became the bow, and the goddess Sāvitri became the loud- sounding bowstring.[35] A celestial coat of mail was made, decked with costly gems, and impenetrable and effulgent, sprung from the wheel of Time.[36] That golden mountain, viz., the beautiful Meru, became the flagstaff, and the clouds decked with flashes of lightning became its banners.[37] Thus equipt, that car shone brilliantly like a blazing fire in the midst of the priests officiating at a sacrifice. Beholding that car properly equipt, the gods became filled with wonder.[38] Seeing the energies of the entire universe united together in one place, O sire, the gods wondered, and at last represented unto that illustrious Deity

---

* These are embodiments or personifications of courage, intelligence, gravity, and humility.—T.

† *I. e.* Indra, Varuna, Yama, and Kuvera.—T.

‡ The four auspicious days mentioned here are (1) the day of new moon, with a portion of the previous lunar day running into it, (2) the day of full moon, with a portion of the previous lunar day running into it, (3) the day of new moon by itself, and the day of full moon by itself.—T.

that the car was ready.[39] After, O monarch, that best of cars had thus been constructed by the gods, O tiger among men, for grinding their foes,[40] Cankara placed upon it his own celestial weapons. Making the sky its flagstaff, he placed upon it his bovine bull.[41] The Brāhmana's rod, the rod of Death, Rudra's rod, and Fever became the protectors of the sides of that car and stood with faces turned towards all sides.[42] Atharvan and Angiras became the protectors of the car-wheels of that illustrious warrior. The *Rigveda*, the *Sāmaveda*, and the *Purānas*, stood in advance of that car.[43] The histories and the *Yajurveda* became the protectors of the rear. All sacred Speeches and all the Sciences stood around it,[44] and all hymns, O monarch, and the Vedic sound of *Vashat* also. And the syllable *Om*, O king, standing in the van of that car, made it exceeding beautiful.[45] Having made the Year adorned with the six seasons his bow, he made his own shadow the irrefragable string of that bow in that battle.[46] The illustrious Rudra is Death's self ; the Year became his bow ; the Death-night, therefore, which is Rudra's shadow, became the indestructible string of that bow.[47] Vishnu and Agni and Soma became (as already said) the arrow. The universe is said to consist of Agni and Soma. The universe is similarly said to consist of Vishnu.[48] Vishnu is, again, the Soul of the holy Bhava of immeasurable energy. For this the touch of that bowstring became unbearable to the *Asuras*.[49] And the lord Cankara cast on that arrow his own irresistible and fierce wrath, the unbearable fire of anger, viz., that which was born of wrath of Bhrigu and Angiras.[50] Then He called Blue and Red, or Smoke,—that terrible Deity robed in skins,—looking like ten thousand Suns, and shrouded by the fire of superabundant Energy, blazed up with splendour.[51] That discomfitter of even him that is difficult of being discomfitted, that victor, that slayer of all haters of *Brahma*, called also Hara, that rescuer of the righteous and destroyer of the unrighteous,[52] viz., the illustrious Sthānu, accompanied by many beings of terrible might and terrible forms that were endued with the speed of the mind and capable of agitating and crushing (all foes), as if with all the fourteen faculties of the soul awake about him,

looked exceedingly resplendent.[53] Having his limbs for their refuge, this entire universe of mobile and immobile creatures that were present there, O king, looked beautiful, presenting a highly wonderful appearance.[54] Beholding that car, duly equipt, he cased himself in mail and armed himself with the bow, and took up that celestial shaft born of Soma and Vishnu and Agni.[55] The gods, O king, then commanded that foremost of celestials, viz., Wind, to breathe after that puissant Deity all the fragrance that he carries.[56] Then Mahādeva, terrifying the very gods, and making the very Earth tremble, ascended that car resolutely.[57] Then the great *Rishis*, the *Gandharvas*, those throngs of gods and those diverse tribes of *Apsaras*, began to praise that Lord of the gods while he was about to ascend that car.[58] Adored by the regenerate *Rishis*, and praised by the eulogists and diverse tribes of dancing *Apsaras* well-versed in the art of dancing,[59] that boon-giving lord, armed with scimitar and arrow and bow, looked very beautiful. Smiling, he then asked the gods,—[Who will become my driver?][60]—The gods answered him, saying,—[He whom thou wilt appoint, will, O Lord of the gods, without doubt, become thy driver!][61]—Unto them the god replied,—[Reflecting yourselves, without delay make him my driver who is superior to me!][62]—Hearing these words uttered by that high-souled Deity, the gods repaired unto the Grandsire and inclining him to grace, said these words:[63]—[We have accomplished everything, O holy one, that thou hadst ordered us to do in the matter of afflicting the foes of the celestials! The Deity having the bull for his mark has been gratified with us![64] A car hath been constructed by us, equipt with many wonderful weapons! We do not, however, know who is to become the driver of that foremost of cars![65] Therefore, let some foremost one among the gods be appointed as the driver! O holy one, it behoveth thee to make true those words that thou, O lord, hadst then said to us![66] Before this, O god, thou hadst even said to us that thou wouldst do us good! It behoveth thee to accomplish that promise![67] That irresistible and best of cars, that router of our foes, hath been constructed out of the component parts of the celestials! The Deity armed with *Pināka* hath been made the warrior who is

to stand on it! Striking the *Dānavas* with fear, he is prepared for battle.[68] The four *Vedas* have become the four foremost of steeds. With her mountains, the Earth has become the car of that high souled one. The stars have become the adornments of that vehicle. (As already said) Hara is the warrior! We do not, however, see who is to become the driver![69] A driver should be sought for that car who is superior to all these! Equal to thee in importance is that car, O god, and Hara is the warrior! Armour, and weapons, and bow,—these,—we have got already, O Grandsire![70] Except thee, we do not behold any person that can make its driver! Thou art endued with every accomplishment! Thou, O lord, art superior to all the gods![71] Mounting upon that car with speed, hold the reins of those foremost of steeds, for the victory of the celestials and the destruction of their foes![72]—It has been heard by us that bowing with their heads unto the Grandsire, that Lord of the three worlds, the gods sought to gratify him for inducing him to accept the drivership.[73]—

"'—The Grandsire said,—[There is nothing of untruth in all this that ye have said, ye denizens of heaven. I will hold the reins of the steeds for Kaparddin while he will be engaged in fight![74]—Then that illustrious god, that Creator of the worlds, the Grandsire, was appointed by the gods as the driver of the high-souled Içāna.[75] And when he was about to ascend quickly upon that car worshipped by all, those steeds, endued with the speed of the wind, bowed themselves with their heads to the Earth.[76] Having ascended the car, the illustrious Deity, viz., the Grandsire, resplendent with his own energy, took the reins and the goad.[77] Then the illustrious god, raising those steeds, addressed that foremost one among the gods, viz., Sthānu, saying,—[Ascend![78]—Then, taking that arrow composed of Vishnu and Soma and Agni, Sthānu ascended the car, causing the foe to tremble by means of his bow.[79] The great *Rishis*, the *Gandharvas*, the throngs of gods, and the diverse tribes of *Apsaras*, then praised that Lord of the gods after he had ascended the car.[80] Resplendent with beauty, the boon-giving Lord, armed with scimitar, shaft, and bow, stayed on the car, causing the three worlds to blaze forth

with his own energy.[81] The great Deity once more said unto the gods headed by Indra,—[Ye should never grieve, doubting my ability to destroy the *Asuras*![82] Know that the *Asuras* have already been slain by means of this arrow!]—The gods then answered, saying,—[It is true! The *Asuras* have already been slain!][83]—Indeed, the gods, thinking that the words which the divine Lord had said could not be untrue, became exceedingly gratified.[84] Then that Lord of the gods proceeded, surrounded by all the gods, upon that large car, O king, which had nothing to compare with it.[85] And the illustrious Deity was adored the while by the attendants that always wait upon him, and by others that subsisted on meat, that were invincible in battle, and that danced in joy on the present occasion, running wildly on all sides and shouting at one another.[86] *Rishis* also, of great good fortune, possessed of ascetic merit, and endued with high qualities, as also the gods, wished for Mahādeva's success.[87] When that boon-giving Lord, that dispeller of the fears of the three worlds, thus proceeded, the entire universe, with all the gods, O best of men, became exceedingly gratified.[88] And the *Rishis* there adored that Lord of the gods with diverse hymns, and enhancing his energy. O king, took up their station there.[89] And millions upon millions of *Gandharvas* played upon diverse kinds of musical instruments at the hour of his setting out.[90] When the boon-giving Brahman, having ascended the car, set out for the *Asuras*, the Lord of the universe, smiling the while, said,—[Excellent, Excellent![91] Proceed, O god, to the spot where the *Daityas* are! Urge the steeds wakefully! Behold today the might of my arms while I slay the foe in battle!][92] Thus addressed, Brahman urged those steeds endued with the fleetness of the wind or thought towards that spot where the triple city, O king, stood, protected by the *Daityas* and the *Dānavas*.[93] With those steeds worshipped by all the worlds, and which coursed with such speed that they seemed to devour the skies, the illustrious god quickly proceeded for the victory of the denizens of heaven.[94] Indeed, when Bhava, riding on that car, set out towards the triple city, his bull uttered tremendous roars, filling all the points of the compass.[95] Hearing that

loud and terrible roar of the bull, many of the descendants and followers of Tāraka, those enemies of the gods, breathed their last.[96] Others amongst them stood, facing the foe, for battle. Then Sthānu, O king, armed with trident, became deprived of his senses in wrath.[97] All creatures became frightened, and the three worlds began to tremble. Frightful portents appeared when he was on the point of aiming that shaft.[98] In consequence, however, of the pressure caused by the weight of Soma, Agni, and Vishnu that were in that shaft, as also of the pressure caused by that of Brahman and Rudra and the latter's bow, that car seemed to sink.[99] Then Nārāyana, issuing out of the point of that shaft, assumed the form of a bull and raised that large car.[100] During the time the car had sunk and the foe had began to roar, the illustrious Deity, endued with great might, began, from rage, to utter loud shouts,[101] standing, O giver of honors, on the head of his bull and the back of his steeds. At that time the illustrious Rudra was employed in eyeing the *Dānava* city.[102] While in that posture, O best of men, Rudra cut off the teats of the horses and clove the hoofs of the bull.[103] Blessed be thou, from that date, the hoofs of all animals of the bovine species came to be cloven. And from that time, O king, horses, afflicted by the mighty Rudra of wonderful deeds, came to be without teats.[104] Then Sarva, having stringed his bow and aimed that shaft with which he had united the *Pāçupata* weapon, waited, thinking of the triple city.[105] And, O king, as Rudra thus stood, holding his bow, the three cities, during that time, became united.[106] When the three cities, losing their separate characters, became united, tumultous became the joy of the high-souled gods.[107] Then all the gods, the *Siddhas*, and the great *Rishis*, uttered the word *Jaya*, adoring Maheçwara.[108] The triple city then appeared immediately before that god of unbearable energy, that the deity of fierce and indescribable form, that warrior who was desirous of slaying the *Asuras*.[109] That illustrious deity, that Lord of the universe, then, drawing that celestial bow, sped that shaft which represented the might of the whole universe, at the triple city.[110] Upon that foremost of shafts, O thou of great good fortune,

being shot, loud wails of woe were heard from those cities as they began to fall down towards the Earth. Burning those *Asuras*, he threw them down into the Western ocean.[111] Thus was the triple city burnt and thus were the *Dānavas* exterminated by Maheçwara in wrath, from desire of doing good to the three worlds.[112] The fire born of his own wrath, the three-eyed god quenched, saying,—[Do not, O, reduce the three worlds to ashes!][113]—After this, the gods, the *Rishis*, and the three worlds, became all restored to their natural dispositions, and gratified Sthānu of unrivalled energy with words of high import.[114] Receiving then the permission of the great god, the gods with the Creator at their head went away to the places they came from, their object accomplished after such effort.[115] Thus did that illustrious Deity, that Creator of the worlds, that Lord of both the Gods and the *Asuras*, viz., Maheçwara, did that which was for the good of all the worlds.[116] As the illustrious Brahman, the Creator of the worlds, the Grandsire, the Supreme Deity ef unfading glory, acted as the driver of Rudra,[117] so do thou restrain the steeds of the high-souled son of Rādhā like the Grandsire restraining those of Rudra![118] There is not the slightest doubt, O tiger among kings, that thou art superior to Krishna, to Karna, and to Phālguna![119] In battle, Karna is like Rudra, and thou art like Brahman in policy. United, ye two, therefore, are competent to vanquish my foes that are even like the *Asuras*.[120] Let, O Calya, that be speedily done today by which this Karna, grinding the Pāndava troops, may be able to slay Kunti's son owning white steeds and having Krishna for the driver of his car![121] Upon thee depend Karna, ourselves, our kingdom, and (our) victory in battle! Hold the reins, therefore, of the excellent steeds (of Karna)![122] There is another story which I will narrate. Listen once more to it! A virtuous Brāhmana had recited it in the presence of my father.[123] Hearing those delightful words fraught with the reasons and purposes of acts, do, O Calya, what thou mayst settle, without entertaining any scruples![124] In the race of the Bhrigus was Jamadagni of severe ascetic penances. He had a son endued with energy and every virtue, who became celebrated by the name of Rāma.[125] Practising the austerest

penances, of cheerful soul, bound to observances and vows, and keeping his senses under control, he gratified the god Bhava for obtaining weapons.[126] In consequence of his devotion and tranquillity of heart, Mahādeva became gratified with him. And Cankara, understanding the desire cherished in his heart, showed himself unto Rāma.[127] And Mahādeva said,—[O Rāma, I am gratified with thee! Blessed be thou, thy desire is known to me! Make thy soul pure! Thou wilt then have all that you desire![128] I will give thee all weapons when thou wilt become pure. Those weapons, O son of Bhrigu, burn a person that is incompetent and that is not deserving of them![129]—Thus addressed by that god of gods, that deity bearing the trident, the son of Jamadagni, bending his head unto that puissant and high-souled one, said,[130]—[O god of gods, it behoveth thee to give those weapons unto me that am always devoted to thy service, when, indeed, thou wilt regard me fit for holding them![131]—

"'Duryodhana continued,—With penances then, and restraining his senses, and observances of vows, and worship and offerings and with sacrifices and *Homa* performed with *mantras*, Rāma adored Sarva for many long years.[132] At last Mahādeva, pleased with the high-souled son of Bhrigu's race, described him, in the presence of his divine spouse, as possessed of many virtues:[133]—[This Rāma, of firm vows, is ever devoted to me!]—Gratified with him, the Lord Cankara thus repeatedly proclaimed his virtues in the presence of the gods and the *Rishis*, O slayer of foes![134] Meanwhile, the *Daityas* became very mighty. Blinded by pride and folly, they afflicted the denizens of heaven.[135] The gods then, uniting together, and firmly resolved to slay them, strove earnestly for the destruction of those foes. They, however, failed to vanquish them.[136] The gods then, repairing to Maheçwara the lord of Umā, began to gratify him with devotion, saying,—[Slay our foes![137]—That god, having promised the destruction of their foes unto the celestials, summoned Rāma the descendant of Bhrigu. And Cankara addressed Rāma, saying,[138]—[O descendant of Bhrigu, slay all the assembled foes of the gods, from desire of doing good unto all the worlds as also for my satisfaction![139]—

Thus addressed, Rāma replied unto that boon-giving Lord of Three-eyes, saying,—[What strength have I, O chief of the gods, destitute as I am of weapons, to slay in battle the assembled *Dānavas* that are accomplished in weapons and invincible in fight?][140]—Maheçwara said,—[Go thou at my command! Thou shalt slay those foes! Having vanquished all those enemies, thou shalt acquire numerous merits!][141]—Hearing these words and accepting them all, Rāma, causing propitiatory rites to be performed for his success, proceeded against the *Dānavas*.[142] Addressing those enemies of the gods that were endued with might and possessed with folly and pride, he said,—[Ye *Daityas* that are fierce in battle, give me battle![143] I have been sent by the God of gods to vanquish you!]—Thus addressed by the descendant of Bhrigu, the *Daityas* began to fight.[144] The delighter of the Bhārgavas, however, slaying the *Daityas* in battle, with strokes whose touch resembled that of Indra's thunder,[145] came back to Mahādeva. Jamadagni's son, that foremost of Brāhmanas, returned with many wounds on his person inflicted by the *Dānavas*. Touched, however, by Sthānu, his wounds were immediately healed.[146]* Gratified also with that feat of his, the illustrious god gave diverse kinds of boons unto the high-souled son of Bhrigu.[147] With satisfaction in his heart, the trident-wielding god of gods said,—[The pain thou hast suffered in consequence of the fall of weapoos upon thy body evidences the superhuman feat that thou hast achieved, O delighter of the Bhrigus! As desired by thee, accept from me these celestial weapons![148-49]

"'Duryodhana' continued,—Having obtained all the celestial weapons and the boons that had been desired by him, Rāma bowed unto Civa with his head.[150] Obtaining the leave also of the Lord of the gods, that great ascetic went away. This is the old story that the *Rishi* had recited.[151] The descendant of Bhrigu gave the whole science of weapons unto the high-souled Karna, O tiger among kings, with delighted heart![152] If Karna had any fault, O lord of Earth, the delighter of Bhrigu's race would never have given him his celestial weapons![153] I

* I expand 146 a little.—T.

do not think that Karna could have been born in the Suta order. I think him to be the son of a god, born in the Kshatriya order.[154] I think that he was abandoned (in infancy) in order that the race in which he was born might be ascertained (by his features and feats). By no means, O Calya, could this Karna have been born in the Suta order![155] With his (natural) ear-rings and (natural) coat of mail, this mighty car warrior of long arms, resembling Surya himself, could not be borne by a common woman even as a she-deer can never bear a tiger![156] His arms are massive, each resembling the trunk of a prince of elephants! Behold his chest that is so broad and capable of resisting every foe![157] Karna, otherwise called Vaikartana, O king, cannot be an ordinary person! Endued with great valour, this disciple of Rāma, O king of kings, is a high-souled personage!—'"[158]

SECTION XXXV.

"'Duryodhana said,—Even thus did that illustrious Deity, that Grandsire of all the worlds, viz., Brahman, act as driver on that occasion and Rudra become the warrior.[1] The driver of the car, O hero, should be superior to the warrior on it. Therefore, O tiger among men, do thou hold the reins of the steeds in this battle![2] As on that occasion the Grandsire had been selected with care by all the celestials, indeed, O great king, as one greater than Cankara was selected by the gods, so thou that art superior to Karna art now selected by us with care! Like the Grandsire holding the reins of Rudra's steeds, do thou hold, without delay, the reins of Karna's steeds in battle, O thou of great splendour!—[3-4]

"'Calya said.—O foremost of men, many a time have I heard this excellent and celestial history, recited to me, of those two lions among gods![5] Indeed, I have heard how the Grandsire acted as the driver of Bhava, and how the *Asuras* also, O Bhārata, were all destroyed with one shaft![6] Krishna also had knowledge of all this before, the knowledge, viz., of how the illustrious Grandsire had become the driver on that occasion of yore! Indeed, Krishna knoweth the past and the

future with all their details![7] Knowing this fact, he became the driver, O Bhārata, of Pārtha like the Self-create becoming the driver of Rudra.[8] If the Suta's son, by some means, succeeds in slaying the son of Kunti, Keçava, beholding Pārtha slain, will fight himself. That bearer of the conch, the discus, and the mace, will then consume thy army.[9] There is no king here that will stay in the ranks in front of that illustrious one of Vrishni's race when he will be excited with wrath!—'[10]

"Sanjaya said,—'Unto the ruler of the Madras who was speaking in that strain, that chastiser of foes, viz., thy mighty-armed son of cheerful soul replied, saying,'[11]—Do not, O mighty-armed one, think disparagingly of Karna, otherwise called Vaikartana, in battle,—that warrior who is the foremost of all wielders of arms and who is acquainted with the meaning of the whole body of our scriptures![12] Hearing the terrible and loud twang of his bow and the sound of his palms, the Pāndava troops fly away on all sides.[13] Thou hast witnessed it with thy own eyes, O mighty armed one, how Ghatotkacha, (screened by) his illusions before him, and displaying hundreds of illusions, was still slain that night (by Karna)![14] Feeling a great fear all these days, Vibhatsu could never stand, fronting Karna![15] The mighty Bhimasena also, moved hither and thither by the horn of Karna's bow, was, O king, addressed in diverse harsh words such as—*Fool* and *Glutton*![16]—The two brave sons of Mādri also were defeated by Karna in great battle, though, from some object he had in view, he did not, O sire, slay them then![17] That foremost one of Vrishni's race, viz., the heroic Sātyaki, the chief of the Sātwata clan, was vanquished by Karna and made carless[18] Others, such as all the Srinjayas headed by Dhrishtadyumna, have been repeatedly defeated in battle by Karna with the greatest ease![19] How, indeed, will the Pāndavas vanquish that great car-warrior in battle who (has achieved all these feats and who), excited with wrath, is competent to slay Purandara himself armed with the thunder-bolt, in fight?[20] Thyself also, O hero, art acquainted with every weapon! Thou art, again, the master of all branches of learning! There is none on Earth who is thy equal in might of arms![21] Irresistible in prowess, thou art like a dart

(*Çalya*) unto thy enemies! It is for this, O king, that thou, O slayer of foes, art called *Çalya*![22] Encountering the might of thy arms, all the Sātwatas were unable to get the better of it! Is Krishna superior to thee in might of arms, O king?[23] Indeed, as Krishna is to bear the burthen of the Pāndava troops upon the slaughter of Pārtha, even so art thou to bear the burthen of this vast (Kaurava) force if Karna lays down his life![24] Why should he be able to resist my troops and why shouldst not thou be able to slay the hostile troops, O sire?[25] For thy sake, O sire, I would willingly follow the footsteps of my (slain) brothers and the other heroic kings of the Earth!—"[26]

" 'Calya said,—O son of Gāndhāri, when thou, O giver of honors, describest me before thy troops to be superior to the son of Devaki, I am exceedingly gratified with thee![27] I accept the drivership of the celebrated son of Rādhā when he will fight with that foremost of the sons of Pāndu, as thou desirest![28] I have, however, O hero, a compact to make with Vaikartana, and that is this:—[I will utter whatever words I may wish, in this one's presence!]—"[29]

Sanjaya continued,—'Thy son then, O king, with Karna; O sire, answered the ruler of the Madras, saying,—Let it be so!—in the presence of all the Kshatriyas.[30] Assurred by Calya's acceptance of the drivership, Duryodhana, filled with joy, embraced Karna.[31] Eulogised (by bards and panegyrists around), thy son then once more addressed Karna, saying—Slay all the Pārthas in battle, like the great Indra slaying the *Dānavas*![32]—Calya having accepted the office of holding the reins of his steeds, Karna, with a cheerful heart, once more addressed Duryodhana, saying,[33]—The ruler of the Madras does not say very cheerfully what he says. O king, solicit him once more in sweet words![34]—Thus addressed, the mighty king Duryodhana, possessed of great wisdom and accomplished in everything, once more spoke unto that lord of Earth, viz., Calya the ruler of the Madras, in a voice deep as that of the clouds and filling the whole region there with the sound of that voice:[35]—O Calya, Karna thinks that he should fight with Arjuna today! O tiger among men hold the reins of Karna's steeds in battle![36] Having slain all the other warrior

Karna desires to slay Phālguna. I solicit thee, O king, repeatedly, in the matter of holding the reins of his steeds![37] As Krishna, that foremost of all drivers, is the counsellor of Pārtha, even so do thou protect the son of Rādhā today from every danger!—'[38]

"Sanjaya continued,—Embracing thy son then, Calya the ruler of the Madras, joyfully answered that slayer of foes, viz., Duryodhana, saying,[39]—If this what thou thinkest, O royal son of Gāndhāri, O thou of handsome features, I shall, for that, accomplish everything that may be agreeable to thee![40] O chief of the Bharatas, for whatever acts I may be fit, employing myself therein with my whole heart, I will bear the burthen of those acts of thine![41] Let Karna, however and thyself pardon me all those words, agreeable or disagreeable, that I may speak unto Karna from desire of his good!—[42]

"'Karna said,—O ruler of the Madras, be thou ever engaged in our good as Brahman in that of Içāna, as Keçava in that of Pārtha!—[43]

"'Calya said,—These four kinds of conduct, viz., self-rebuke and self-praise, speaking ill of others and adulation of others, are never practised by those that are respectable.[44] That, however, O learned one, which I shall say, for inspiring thy confidence, is fraught with self adulation. For all that, listen to it duly![45] O puissant one, like Mātali himself, I am fit to act as the driver of even Indra in watchfulness, in managing the steeds, in knowledge of coming danger and of the means of avoiding it, and in competence to avoid it in practice![46] When thou wilt be engaged in battle with Pārtha, I will hold the reins of thy steeds! Let thy anxiety be dispelled, O Suta's son!—'"[47]

Section XXXVI.

'"Duryodhana said,—This one, O Karna, will act as the driver, this ruler of the Madras, who is superior to Krishna, like Mātali the driver of the chief of the celestials![1] Indeed, as Mātali taketh the management of the car unto which the steeds of Indra are attached, even so will Calya be the driver

of the steeds of thy car today![3] With thyself as warrior on that vehicle and the ruler of the Madras as its driver, that foremost of cars will certainly vanquish the Pārthas in battle!—'[3]

'Sanjaya continued,—'When the morning came, O monarch, Duryodhana once more addressed the ruler of the Madras endued with great activity, saying,[4]—O ruler of the Madras, hold the reins, in battle, of Karna's foremost of steeds! Protected by thee, the son of Rādhā will vanquish Dhananjaya!—Thus addressed, Calya, answering,—So be it,—ascended the car, O Bhārata![5] When Calya approached that car, Karna, with a cheerful heart, addressed his driver, saying,—O charioteer, quickly equip the car for me![6]—Having duly equipt that triumphal car, the foremost of its kind, which resembled the vapory mansions in the sky, Calya presented it to Karna, saying,—Blessed be thou, victory to thee![7]—Then Karna, that foremost of car-warriors, duly worshipping that car which had in days of old been sanctified by a priest conversant with *Brahma*,[8] and circumambulating it and carefully adoring the god Surya, addressed the ruler of the Madras standing near, saying,—Ascend the vehicle![9]—Thereupon Calya of mighty energy ascended that large, invincible, and foremost of cars, belonging to Karna, like a lion ascending a mountain summit.[10] Beholding Calya stationed, Karna ascended his excellent car, like the Sun riding on a mass of clouds charged with lightning.[11] Mounted on the same car, those two heroes endued with the splendour of the Sun or fire, looked resplendent like Surya and Agni sitting together on a cloud in the firmament.[12] Eulogised then (by bards and panegyrists) those two heroes of great effulgence looked like Indra and Agni adored with hymns in a sacrifice by *Ritwiks* and *Sadasyas*.[13] Karna stood on that car the reins of whose steeds were held by Calya, stretching his formidable bow, like the Sun himself within a halo of circular light.[14] Stationed on that foremost of cars, that tiger among men, viz., Karna, with his shafts constituting his rays, looked beautiful like the Sun on the Mandara mountains.[15] Unto the mighty-armed son of Rādhā, that warrior of immeasurable energy, stationed on his car for battle, Duryodhana said these words:[16]—O son of Adhiratha, O hero, do thou

achieve that feat, difficult of accomplishment, which Drona and Bhishma have not achieved, in the very sight of all the bowmen![17] I had always believed that those two mighty car-warriors, viz., Bhishma and Drona, would, without doubt, slay Arjuna and Bhimasena in battle![18] Like a second wielder of the thunder-bolt, O son of Rādhā, do thou in great battle achieve that feat worthy of a hero which was not achieved by those two![19] Either seize king Yudhishthira the just or slay Dhananjaya and Bhimasena, O son of Rādhā, and the twin sons of Mādri![20] Blessed be thou, let victory be thine! Set out for battle, O tiger among men! Reduce to ashes all the troops of Pāndu's son![21]—Then thousands of trumpets and tens of thousands of drums, sounded together, produced a noise like that of the clouds in the welkin.[22] Accepting those words (of Duryodhana), that foremost of car-warriors stationed on his car, viz., the son of Rādhā, addressed Calya, that warrior accomplished in battle, saying,[23]—Urge the steeds, O mighty-armed one, so that I may slay Dhananjaya and Bhimasena and both the twins and king Yudhishthira![24] O Calya, let Dhananjaya behold today the might of my arms, when I will be engaged in shooting shafts winged with *Kanka* feathers, in hundreds and thousands![25] Today, O Calya, I will shoot shafts of great energy for the destruction of the Pāndavas and the victory of Duryodhana!—[26]

" 'Calya said,—O Suta's son, why dost thou think so low of the sons of Pāndu, all of whom are endued with great might, all of whom are great bowmen, and all of whom are acquainted with every weapon?[27] They are unretreating, of great good fortune, invincible, and of prowess incapable of being baffled! They are capable of inspiring fear in the heart of Indra himself![28] When, O son of Rādhā, thou wilt hear the twang of *Gāndiva* in battle, resembling the peal of the thunder itself, thou wilt not then utter such speeches![29] When thou wilt behold Dharma's son and the twins causing a canopy, like that of the clouds in the welkin, with their sharp arrows,[30] and the other invincible kings (of the Pāndava army), endued with great lightness of hands and shooting (showers of shafts) and weakening their foes, then thou wilt not utter such words![31]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Disregarding those words spoken by the ruler of the Madras, Karna addressed him endued with great activity, saying,—Proceed!—'"[52]

SECTION XXXVII.

"'Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the mighty bowman Karna take up his station from desire of battle, the Kauravas, filled with delight, uttered loud shouts from every side.[1] With the beat of cymbals and the sound of drums, with the whizz of diverse kinds of arrows and the roars of combatants endued with great activity, all thy troops proceeded to battle, making death only the point at which to stop[2]. When Karna set out and the warriors of the Kuru army were filled with joy, the Earth, O king, trembled and made a loud noise[3]. The seven great planets including the Sun seemed to proceed against one another (for combat). Meteoric showers became noticeable and all the quarters seemed ablaze.[4] Thunders fell from a cloudless sky, and fierce winds began to blow.[5] Animals and birds in large numbers kept thy army to their right, foreboding great calamities.[6] After Karna had set out, his steeds tumbled down on the Earth. A frightful shower of bones fell from the sky.[7] The weapons (of the Kuru warriors) seemed to be ablaze; their standards trembled; and their animals, O monarch, shed copious tears.[8] These and many other terrible and awful portents appeared for the destruction of the Kurus.[9] Stupified by Destiny, none of them regarded those portents at all. Beholding the Suta's son set out, all the rulers of men (in the Kaurava army) cried victory to him. The Kauravas regarded the Pāndavas to have been already vanquished.[10] That slayer of hostile heroes, that foremost of car-warriors, viz., Vaikartana, as he stayed on his car, recollecting the death of Bhishma and Drona, blazed up with splendour like the Sun or fire.[11] Reflecting on the mighty feats of Pārtha, and burning with self-conceit and pride, and blazing with wrath, and breathing long and hard, he addressed Calya and said these words:[12]—When stationed on my car and armed with my bow, I would not take fright at Indra himself armed with the thunder and

excited with wrath! Beholding those great heroes headed by Bhishma lying on the field of battle, I do not feel any anxiety![13] Seeing even the faultless Bhishma and Drona, equal unto Indra and Vishnu, those crushers of foremost of cars and steeds and elephants, those heroes that were unslayable, slain by the foe, I do not still experience any fear in this battle![14] Acquainted with mighty weapons, and himself the foremost of Brāhmanas, why, indeed, did not the preceptor slay in battle all foes, seeing them destroy the mightiest of our kings with their drivers and elephants and cars?[15] Remembering that Drona in great battle, I tell you truly, listen to me, ye Kurus, there is none amongst you, save myself, that is competent to bear the advancing Arjuna, that warrior who resembles Death himself in his fiercest form![16] In Drona were the skill attendant on practice, and might, and bravery, and the highest of weapons, and policy. When even that high-souled one had to succumb to Death, I regard all the others (of our army) strengthless and on the point of death.[17] In this world I do not find anything, even on reflection, to be stable, in consequence of the inevitable connection of acts. When the preceptor himself is dead, who then will indulge in the certain belief that he will live till even today's sun-rise?[18] When the preceptor was thus slain by the enemy in battle, without doubt, weapons, ordinary and celestial, and might and prowess and achievements, and wise policy, are not able to compass the happiness of man![19] In energy Drona was equal to fire or the Sun, in prowess he resembled Vishnu or Purandara, in policy he was equal to Vrihaspati or Uçanas; irresistible as he was, weapons could not yet protect him![20] When (our) women and children are weeping and uttering loud wails, when the valour of the Dhārtarāshtras has been defeated, I know it, O Calya, that it is I who am to fight Proceed, therefore, against the army of our enemies![21] Who else, save myself, will be able to bear those troops amongst whom are stationed the royal son of Pāndu firm in truth, and Bhimasena and Arjuna, and Sātyaki, and the twins?[22] Therefore, O ruler of the Madras, proceed quickly, in this battle, towards the Pānchālas, the Pāndavas, and the Srinjayas! Encountering them in battle either

I will slay them or go myself to Yama's presence by the path taken by Drona![23] Do not think, O Calya, that I will not go into the very midst of those heroes! These intestine dissensions cannot be tolerated by me. (Without seeking to tolerate them) I will even follow in the wake of Drona![*24] Wise or ignorant, when his period is run out, everybody is equally regarded by the Destroyer; no one can escape. O learned one, for this, I will proceed against the Pārthas. I am unable to transgress my destiny![25] The son of Vichitravirya's son is, O king, always engaged in doing me good. For the accomplishment of his purposes, I will cast away my life-breaths that are so dear, and this body that is so difficult of being cast away![26] This foremost of cars, covered with tiger-skins, with axle producing no sound, equipt with a golden seat, endued with *trivenu* made of silver, and unto which are yoked these foremost of steeds, Rāma gave unto me![27] Behold, also, O Calya, these beautiful bows, these standards, these maces, these shafts of fierce forms, this blazing sword, this mighty weapon, this white conch of fierce and loud blare.[28] Riding upon this car decked with banners, its wheels producing a rattle deep as that of the thunder, having white steeds yoked unto it, and adorned with excellent quivers, I will, putting forth my might, slay in battle that bull among car-warriors, viz., Arjuna![29] If Death himself, that universal consumer, were to protect with vigilance the son of Pāndu in battle, I would still encounter him in fight and either slay him or myself go to Yama's presence following Bhishma![30] If Yama, Varuna, Kuvera, and Vāsava, with all their followers, coming hither, unitedly protect the son of Pāndu in great battle, what need of many words, I will still vanquish him with them!—'[31]

---

* Nilakantha explains this verse in a different way, taking *teshām Curānām* to refer to Bhishma and others, instead of to Yudhishthira and others. The meaning, he suggests, is,—Do not think, O Calya, that I will not have to go into the midst of Bhishma and others; (*i. e.*, I will have to be numbered amongst them): any injury, however, to my friend (Duryodhana) is what I will never suffer; (*i. e.*, I will fight to the best of my powers, lest by doing otherwise I injure Duryodhana's cause); &c., &c.—T.

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing these words of the bragging Karna who was exceedingly delighted with the prospect of battle, the valiant king of the Madras, deriding him, laughed aloud, and gave him the following reply for checking him.[32]

" 'Calya said,—Forbear, forbear, O Karna, from such brag! Thou art in transports of delight and sayest what thou shouldst never say! Where is Dhananjaya, that foremost of men, and where again, art thou, O lowest of men![33] Who else, save Arjuna, could ravish the younger sister of (Keçava) that foremost of all persons, having forcibly agitated the home of the Yadus that was protected by the younger brother of Indra and that resembled heaven itself that is guarded by the chief of the celestials?[34] What man, save Arjuna who is endued with prowess that is equal to the prowess of the chief of the celestials, could, on the occasion of the dispute caused by the slaughter of an animal, summon Bhava, the Lord of Lords, the Creator of the worlds, to battle?[35] For the sake of honoring Agni, Jaya had vanquished *Asuras* and gods and great snakes and men and birds and *Piçāchas* and *Yakshas* and *Rakshasas* with his shafts and gave unto that god the food he had desired![36] Dost thou remember, O Karna the occasion when, slaughtering those foes in large numbers with his excellent shafts endued with the effulgence of the Sun, Phālguna liberated Dhritarāshtra's son himself among the Kurus?[37] Dost thou remember the occasion when, thyself having been the first to fly away, the quarrelsome sons of Dhritarāshtra were liberated by the Pāndavas after the latter had defeated those rangers of the skies (viz., the *Gandharvas* headed by Chitraratha)?[38] On the occasion also of the seizure of (Virāta's) kine, the Kauravas, swelling with numbers in respect of both men and animals, and having the preceptor and the preceptor's son and Bhishma amongst them, were vanquished by that foremost of men! Why, O, didst thou not vanquish Arjuna then?[39] For thy destruction another excellent battle has now presented itself! If thou dost not fly away from fear of thy enemy, know, O Suta's son, that as soon as thou goest to battle thou wilt be slain!—'[40]

"Sanjaya continued,—'When the ruler of the Madras was

most heartily engaged in addressing these harsh speeches to Karna and uttering these praises of the latter's foe, that scorcher of foes, viz., the commander of the Kuru army, excited with rage, said these words unto the Madra king:—[41]

"'Karna said,—Let it be so, let it be so! Why, however, dost thou indulge in Arjuna's praises? A battle is about to ensue between myself and him. If he vanquishes me in fight, then will these thy praises be regarded as well-uttered!—'[42]

"Sanjaya continued,—'The ruler of the Madras said,—Let it be so,—and gave no reply. When Karna, from desire of fight, addressed Calya, saying,—Proceed![43]—then that great car-warrior, having white steeds yoked unto his vehicle and owning Calya for his charioteer, proceeded against his foes, slaying large numbers in battle along his way, like the Sun destroying the darkness.[44] Indeed, on that car covered with tiger-skins and having white steeds yoked unto it, Karna proceeded with a cheerful heart, and beholding the army of the Pāndavas, speedily enquired after Dhananjaya.'"[45]

Section XXXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'After Karna, gladdening thy army, had set out for battle, he spoke unto every Pāndava soldier that he met with, even these words:[1]—Unto him that will today point out the high-souled Dhananjaya of white steeds to me, I will give whatever wealth he desires.[2] If having got it he does not become satisfied, I shall, in addition, give him,—him, that is, that will discover Arjuna to me,—a cart-load of jewels and gems![3] If that does not satisfy the person who discovers Arjuna to me, I will give him a century of kine with as many vessels of brass for milking those animals.[4] I will give a hundred foremost of villages unto the person that discovers Arjuna to me. I will also give him that shows Arjuna to me a number of long-tressed damsels of black eyes and a car unto which shall be yoked white mules.[5] If that does not satisfy the person that discovers Arjuna to me, I shall give him another foremost of cars, made of gold, and having six bulls

yoked unto it that shall be as large as elephants.*[6] I shall also give unto him a hundred damsels decked with ornaments, with collars of gold, fair-complexioned,† and accomplished in singing and dancing.[7] If that does not satisfy the person that discovers Arjuna to me, I shall give him a hundred elephants, a hundred villages, and a hundred cars,[8] and ten thousand steeds of the foremost of breed, fat, docile, endued with many excellent qualities, capable of dragging cars, and well-trained.[9] I shall also give to the person that discovers Arjuna to me four hundred kine, each with golden horns and her calf![10] If that does not satisfy the person that discovers Arjuna to me, I shall make him a more valuable gift, viz., five hundred steeds,[11] adorned with trappings of gold and decked with jewelled ornaments. I shall also give eighteen other steeds of great docility.[12] I shall also give the person that discovers Arjuna to me a bright car made of gold and adorned with diverse ornaments and having foremost of Kāmvoja steeds yoked unto it.[13] If that does not satisfy the person that discovers Arjuna to me, I shall make him a more valuable gift, viz., six hundred elephants,[14] with chains of gold around their necks, and covered with housings of gold, born in the western shores of the ocean,‡ and trained by elephant-trainers.[15] If that does not satisfy the person that discovers Arjuna to me, I shall make him a more valuable gift, viz., fourteen Vaiçya villages,[16] teeming with people, full of wealth, situated in the proximity of forests and rivers, free from all sorts of danger, well furnished (with other necessaries), and worthy of being enjoyed by kings.[17] To him that will discover Dhananjaya to me I shall also give a hundred female slaves, with golden collars, belonging to the country of the Magadhas, and of very youthful age.[18] If that does not

---

* Or, it may mean, "that shall have six elephants attached to it and acting as its bulls."—T.

† The word *Cyāmā*, as applied to a damsel, means one whose skin is warm in winter and cold in summer, and whose complexion is bright as heated gold.—T.

‡ I think one can trace a reference to Africa in this expression. The original is *aparānteshu*, *i. e.*, on the other end; very probably, it means, as I have put it, the other shore of the ocean.—T.

satisfy the person that discovers Arjuna to me, I will make him a more valuable gift,—that, indeed, which he himself will solicit.[19] Sons, wives, and articles of pleasure and enjoyment, that I have,—these all,—I shall give him if he desires them![20] Indeed, unto him who discovers Keçava and Arjuna to me, I shall, after slaying those two, give all the wealth that may be left by them![21]—Having uttered these diverse speeches, in that battle, Karna blew his excellent conch, sea-born and producing a sweet blare.[22] Hearing these words of the Suta's son that were suitable to his disposition, Duryodhana, O king, with all his followers, became filled with joy.[23] At that juncture the beat of cymbals and drums, and leonine shouts, and grunts of elephants, with the sounds of diverse musical instruments,[24] arose there, O king, among the (Kaurava) troops, O bull among men. The shouts also of warriors filled with joy arose there.[25] When the (Kaurava) troops were thus filled with joy, the ruler of the Madras, laughing in scorn, said these words unto that grinder of foes, viz., the son of Rādhā, that mighty car-warrior who was about to plunge into that ocean of battle and who was indulging in such vain brag.' "[26]

Section XXXIX.

" 'Calya said,—Do not, O Suta's son, give away to any man a golden car with six bulls of elephantine proportions! Thou wilt obtain a sight of Dhananjaya today![1] From foolishness thou art giving away wealth as if thou wert the Lord of treasures! Without any trouble, however, O son of Rādhā, thou wilt behold Dhananjaya today![2] Thou art for giving away this wealth like a senseless person; but thou seest not the demerits attaching to those gifts that are made to undeserving persons![3] With that large wealth which thou art desirous of giving away, thou art certainly able to perform many sacrifices! Therefore, O Suta's son, do thou perform those sacrifices![4] As regards thy desire, entertained from folly, that is surely vain! We have never heard of a couple of lions having been overthrown by a fox![5] Thou seekest what should never be sought by thee! It seems that thou hast no friends for forbidding thee

that art for speedily falling into a blazing fire![6] Thou art unable to discrimmate between what thou shouldst do and what thou shouldst not! Without doubt, thy period is full! What man desirous of living would utter speeches that are so incoherent and undeserving of being listened to?[7] This thy endeavour is like that of a person desirous of crossing the ocean by the aid of only his two arms after having attached to his neck a heavy stone, or of one desirous of leaping down from the summit of a mountain![8] If thou art desirous of winning what is for thy good, fight with Dhananjaya, well protected from within thy arrayed division, and aided by all thy warriors![9] I say this to thee for the good of Dhritarāshtra's son and not from any ill will to thee! If thou hast any wish for preserving thy life, then accept the words spoken by me!—'[10]

"'Karna said,—Relying on the might of my own arms I seek Arjuna in battle. Thou, however, that art a foe with the face of a friend, desirest to frighten me![11] No person shall deter me from this resolution, not even Indra himself uplifting his thunder, what then need be said of a mortal!—'[12]

"Sanjaya continued,—'At the conclusion of these words of Karna, Calya, the ruler of the Madras, desirous provoking Karna exceedingly, said these words in reply.[13]—When keen-pointed shafts winged with *Kanka* feathers, shot by Phālguna of mighty arms and impelled from his bowstring and sped with all his energy, will seek thee. then wilt thou lament thy encounter with that hero![14] When Pārtha, called also Savyasāchin, taking up his celestial bow, will scorch the (Kuru) army and afflict thee exceedingly with keen shafts, then, O Suta's son, wilt thou repent (of thy folly)![15] As a child lying on the lap of its mother seeks to seize the Moon, even so dost thou, from folly, seek to vanquish the resplendent Arjuna stationed on his car![16] In desiring, O Karna, to fight today with Arjuna of keen-edged feats,* thou art for rubbing all thy limbs against the keen-edges of a trident.[17] This thy challenge of Arjuna, O Suta's son, is like that of a foolish young little deer of activity challenging a huge lion excited

* I translate the expression literally.—T.

with wrath![18] Do not, O Suta's son, challenge that prince of mighty energy like a fox gratified with meat in the forest challenging the maned monarch of the forest! Do not be destroyed, encountering Arjuna![19] Thou, O Karna, challengest Dhananjaya the son of Prithā even like a hare challenging a mighty elephant with tusks large as plough-shafts, and with the juice issuing out of its mouth and rent cheeks![20] From folly thou art piercing with a piece of wood the black cobra of virulent poison excited to fury within its hole, in desiring to fight with Pārtha![21] Endued with little understanding, thou, O Karna, disregarding that lion among men, viz., the son of Pāndu, yellest at him, like a jackal that, disregarding a maned lion excited with wrath, yells at him![22] As a snake, for its own destruction, challenges that foremost of birds, viz., Vinatā's son possessed of beautiful plumage and great activity, even so dost thou, O Karna, challenge Dhananjaya the son of Pārtha![23] Thou desirest to cross without a raft the terrible ocean, the receptacle of all the waters, with its mountain waves and teeming with acquatic animals, when at its height at the rise of the Moon![24] O Karna, thou challengest Dhananjaya the son of Prithā to battle even like a calf challenging a smiting bull of keen horns and neck thick as a drum![25] Like a frog croaking at a terrible and mighty cloud yielding copious showers of rain, thou croakest at Arjuna who is even like *Parjanya* among men![26]* As a dog from within the precincts of the house of his master barks at a forest-roaming tiger, even so, O Karna, thou barkest at Dhananjaya, that tiger among men![27] A jackal, O Karna, residing in the forest in the midst of hares, regardeth himself a lion till a lion he actually sees![28] Even so, O son of Rādhā, thou regardest thyself a lion for thou dost not behold that represser of foes, that tiger among men, viz., Dhananjaya![29] Thou regardest thyself a lion till thou beholdest the two Krishnas stationed on the same car like Surya and Chandramas.[30] As long as thou dost not hear the twang of *Gāndiva* in great battle, so long art thou able to do what thou pleasest![31] Beholding Pārtha causing

* *Parjanya* is the deity of the clouds.—T.

the ten points of the compass to resound with the roar of his car and the twang of his bow, and beholding him roaring like a tiger, thou wilt became a jackal![32] Thou art always a jackal, and Dhananjaya always a lion! O fool, in consequence of thy envy and hatred for heroes, thou always seemest to be like a jackal![33] As a mouse and a cat are to each other in strength, or a dog and a tiger, or a fox and a lion, or a hare and an elephant, as falsehood and truth, as poison and nectar, even so art thou and Pārtha known to all by your respective deeds!' "[34]

Section XL.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thus rebuked by Calya of immeasurable energy, the son of Rādhā, feeling the propriety of his rebuker's name in consequence of his wordy darts, and becoming filled with rage, answered him thus.'[1]*

"'Karna said,—The merits of meritorious men, O Calya, are known to them that are themselves meritorious but not to them that are destitute of merit. Thou, however, art destitute of every merit. How then canst thou judge of merit and demerit?[2] The mighty weapons of Arjuna, his wrath, his energy, his bow, his shafts, and the prowess also of that high-souled hero, are, O Calya, well known to me![3] So also, O Calya, thou dost not know so well as I myself, the greatness of Krishna, that bull among the lords of Earth![4] But, knowing my own energy as also the energy of Pāndu's son, I challenge him to battle, O Calya! I do not act like an insect in respect of a blazing fire![5] I have this shaft, O Calya, of keen mouth, blood-drinking, lying alone within one quiver, equipt with wings, well-steeped in oil and well adorned.[6] It lieth amid sandal dust, worshipped by me for long years Partaking of the nature and form of a snake, it is poisonous and fierce and capable of killing large numbers of men and steeds and elephants.[7] Of terrible form and exceedingly awful, it is capable of piercing coats of mail and bones. Inspired

---

* An allusion to the word *Calya*, which means a dart.—T.

with wrath, I may pierce even the mighty mountains of Meru with it![8] That shaft I will never shoot at any other person save Phālguna or Krishna the son of Devaki. In this I tell thee the truth! Listen to it![9] With that shaft, O Calya, I will, inspired with rage, fight with Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya! That would be a feat worthy of me![10] Of all the heroes in the Vrishni race, it is Krishna in whom Prosperity is always established. Among all the sons of Pāndu, it is Pārtha in whom Victory is always established.[11] Those two tigers among men, stationed together on the same car, will advance against my single self for battle! Thou shalt, O Calya, behold to-day the nobility of my lineage![12] Those two cousins, one of whom is the son of the aunt and the other the son of the maternal uncle,* those two invincible warriors, thou shalt see, will be slain by me (with one shaft) and will look like two pearls strung together in the same string.[13] Arjuna's *Gāndiva* and the ape-bearing banner, and Krishna's discus and the Garuda-bearing banner, inspire only those that are timid with fear. To me, however, O Calya, they are causes of delight![14] Thou art a fool, of evil disposition, and unskilled in the ways of great battle! Overcome with terror, thou utterest these ravings![15] Or, thou art praising them for some reason not known to me! Having slain those two first, I shall then slay thee today with all thy kinsmen![16] Born in a sinful country, thou art wicked-souled, and mean, and a wretch amongst Kshatriyas! Being a friend, why dost thou, like an enemy, frighten me with (these praises of) the two Krishnas?[17] Either they two will slay me today or I will slay them two. Knowing as I do my own might, I do not cherish any fear of the two Krishnas![18] A thousand Vāsudevas and hundreds of Phālgunas, I shall, single-handed, slay! Hold thy tongue, O thou that art born in a sinful country![19] Hear from me, O Calya, the sayings, already passed into proverbs, that men, young and old, and women, and persons arrived in course of their listless wanderings, generally utter as if those sayings, formed part of their studies, about the wicked Madrakas!

---

* Kunti and Vasudeva were sister and brother.—T.

Brāhmanas also duly narrated the same things formerly in the courts of kings. Listening to those sayings attentively, O fool, thou mayst forgive or rejoin![20-21]—[The Madraka is always a hater of friends. He that hateth us is a Madraka. There is no friendship in the Madraka who is mean in speech and is the lowest of mankind.[22] The Madraka is always a person of wicked soul, is always untruthful and crooked. It hath been heard by us that till the moment of death, the Madrakas are wicked.[23] (Amongst the Madrakas) the sire, the son, the mother, the mother-in-law, the father-in-law, the maternal uncle, the son-in-law, the daughter-in-law, the brother, the grandson, and other kinsmen,[24] companions, strangers arrived at their homes, slaves male and female, mingle together. The women of the Madrakas mingle, at their own will, with men known and unknown.[25] Of unrighteous conduct, and subsisting upon fried and powdered corn and fish, in their homes they laugh and cry, having drunk spirits and eaten beef.[26] They sing incoherent songs and mingle lustfully with one another, indulging the while in the freest speeches. How then can virtue have a place amongst the Madrakas who are arrogant and notorious for all kinds of evil acts?[27] No one should make friends with a Madraka or provoke hostilities with him. In the Madraka there is no friendship. The Madraka is always the dirt of humanity.[28] Amongst the Madrakas all acts of friendship are lost as purity amongst the Gāndhārakas and the libations poured in a sacrifice in which the king is himself the sacrificer and priest![29] Then again, it is truly seen that wise men treat a person bit by a scorpion and affected by its poison, even with these words:—[As a Brāhmana that assists at the religious ceremonies of a Cudra suffereth degradation, as one that hateth Brāhmanas always suffereth degradation, even so a person by making an alliance with the Madrakas becometh fallen! As there is no friendship in the Madraka, so, O scorpion, thy poison is nought! With these *mantras* of the *Atharvan* I have duly performed the rite of exorcism![30-32] Knowing this, O learned one, hold thy tongue, or listen to something further that I will say![33] Those women that, intoxicated by spirits, cast off their robes

and dance,—those women that are not attached (to particular individuals) in the matter of intercourse and that do as they please without owning any restrictions,[34] I say, that being as thou art the child of one of those women, how canst thou, O Madraka, be a fit person for declaring the duties of men ? Those women that live and answer calls of nature like camels and asses, being as thou art the child of one of those sinful and shameless creatures, how canst thou wish to declare the duties of men ?[35-36] When a Madraka woman is solicited for the gift of a little quantity of vinegar, she scratches her hips and without being desirous of giving it, says these cruel words ;[37]—[Let no man ask any vinegar of me that is so dear to me ! I would give him my son, I would give him my husband, but vinegar I would not give ![38]—The young Madraka maidens, we hear, are generally very shameless and hairy and gluttonous and impure ! These and many other things of a like nature, in respect of all their acts, from the crown of their heads to the tip of their toes, are capable of being asserted of them by myself and others ![39-40] How, indeed, would the Madrakas and the Sindhu-Sauviras know anything of duty, being born, as they are, in a sinful country, being *mlecchas* in their practices, and being totally regardless of all duties ?[41] It hath been heard by us that even this is the highest duty of a Kshatriya, viz., that, slain in battle, he should lie down on the Earth, applauded by the righteous.[42] That I should lay down (my life) in this clash of arms is my foremost wish, desirous as I am of heaven through Death ![43] I am also the dear friend of the intelligent son of Dhritarāshtra ! For his sake, are my life-breaths and whatever wealth I have ![44] As regards thyself, O thou that art born in a sinful country, it is evident that thou hast been tampered with by the Pāndavas, since thou behavest towards us in everything like a foe ![45] Like a righteous man that is incapable of being led astray by atheists, surely I am incapable of being dissuaded from this battle by hundreds of persons like thee ![46] Like a deer, covered with sweat, thou art at liberty to weep or thirst ! Observent as I am of the duties of a Kshatriya, I am incapable of being frightened by thee ![47] I recall to my mind the end, declared unto me in past times, by

my preceptor Rāma, of those lions among men, those unreturning heroes, that laid down their lives in battle![48] Prepared for rescuing the Kauravas and slaying our foes, know that I am now determined to imitate the excellent behaviour of Pururavas![49] I do not, O ruler of the Madrakas, behold the person in the three worlds that can, I think, dissuade me from this purpose![50] Forbear to speak, knowing all this! Why dost thou rave in such a way from fear? O wretch amongst the Madrakas, I shall not now slay thee and present thy carcase as an offering to carnivorous creatures![51] From regard for friend, O Calya, for the sake of Dhritarāshtra's son, and for avoiding blame,—for these three reasons,—thou still livest![52] If, O ruler of the Madras, thou speakest such words again, I shall then crush thy head with my mace that is as hard as the thunder![53] People will today see or hear, O thou that art born in a sinful country, either that the two Krishnas have slain Karna or that Karna has slain the two Krishnas![54]—Having said these words, the son of Rādhā, O monarch, once more addressed the king of the Madras, fearlessly saying,—Proceed, Proceed!—' "[55]

Section XLI.

'Sanjaya said,—'Hearing, O sire, these words of Rādhā's son who delighted in battle, Calya once more addressed Karna, citing an example.[1]—I am born in the race of men who performed great sacrifices, who never retreated from battle, who were kings whose coronal locks underwent the sacred bath! I am also myself devoted to the practice of virtue![2] Thou, O Vrisha, seemest to be like one that is intoxicated with spirits! For all that, I will, from friendship, seek to cure thy erring and intoxicated self.[3] Listen, O Karna, to this simile of a crow that I am about to narrate! Having heard it, thou mayst do what thou choosest, O thou that art destitute of intelligence and that art a wretch of thy race![4] I do not, O Karna, remember the slightest fault in me for which, O thou of mighty arms, thou mayst desire to slay my innocent self![5] I must tell thee what is for thy good and what for thy ill, acquainted as I am with both, especially as I am the driver of thy car

and desirous of the good of king Duryodhana![6] What land is level and what not, the strength or weakness of the warrior (on my vehicle), the fatigue and faintness, at all times, of the steeds and the warrior (I am driving),[7] a knowledge of the weapons that are available, the cries of animals and birds, what would be heavy for the steeds and what exceedingly heavy for them, the extraction of arrows and the curing of wounds,[8] which weapons counteract which, the several methods of battle, and all kinds of omens and indications,—I who am so nearly connected with this car, being none else than its driver, should be familiar with! For this, O Karna, I narrate this instance to thee once more![9] There lived on the other side of the ocean a Vaiçya who had abundance of wealth and corn. He performed sacrifices, made liberal gifts, was peaceful, devoted to the duties of his own order, and pure in habits and mind.[10] He had many sons whom he loved, and was kind unto all creatures. He lived fearlessly in the dominions of a king that was guided by virtue.[11] There was a crow that lived on the refuse of the dishes set before those well-behaved young children of the Vaiçya.[12] Those Vaiçya children always gave the crow meat and curds, and milk, and sugared milk with rice, and honey, and butter.[13] Thus fed with the refuse of their dishes by the young children of that Vaiçya, the crow became arrogant and came to disregard all birds that were equal to him or even superior.[14] It chanced that on a time certain swans of cheerful hearts, of great speed and capable of going everywhere at will and equal unto Garuda himself in range and speed of flight, came to that side of the ocean.[15] The Vaiçya boys, beholding those swans, addressed the crow and said,—[O ranger of the skies, thou art superior to all winged creatures![16]—Deceived by those children of little understanding, that oviparous creature, from folly and pride, regarded their words to be true.[17] Proud of the refuse of the children's dishes upon which he fed, the crow then, alighting in the midst of those swans capable of traversing great distances, desired to enquire as to who amongst them was their leader.[18] The foolish crow at last challenged him amongst those birds of tireless wings whom he regarded their leader,

saying,—[Let us compete in flight !][19]—Hearing those words of the raving crow, the swans that had been assembled there, those foremost of birds endued with great strength, began to laugh.[20] The swans then, that were capable of going everywhere at will, addressed the crow, saying,[21]—[We are swans, having our abode in the Mānasa lake. We traverse the whole Earth, and amongst winged creatures we are always applauded for the length of the distances we traverse![22] Being, as thou art, only a crow, how canst thou, O fool, challenge a swan endued with might, capable of going everywhere at will, and doing large distances in course of his flight? Tell us, O crow, how thou shalt fly with us![23]—The boastful crow, in consequence of the foolishness of his species, repeatedly finding fault with the words of that swan, at last gave this answer.[24]—The crow said,—[I shall, without doubt, fly, displaying a hundred and one different kinds of motion! Doing every hundred *Yojanas* in a separate and beautiful kind of motion, I shall display all those motions![25] Rising up, and swooping down, and whirling around, and coursing straight, and proceeding gently, and advancing steadily, and performing the diverse courses up and down in a slanting direction,[26] and floating still, and wheeling around, and receding back, and soaring high, and darting forward, and soaring upwards with fiercer velocity, and once more proceeding gently and then proceeding with great impetuosity,[27]* and once again swooping down and whirling around, and advancing steadily, and rising up and up by jerks, and soaring straight, and once more falling down,[28] and wheeling in a circle, and rushing proudly, and diverse other kinds of motion,†—these all I shall display in the sight of all you! Ye shall then witness my strength![29] With one of these different kinds of motion I shall presently rise into the sky. Point out duly, ye swans, by which of these motions I shall course

---

* The second line of 27 I read as it is in the Bombay edition.—T.

† I do not render the last few kinds of motion as these are not very intelligible. Nilakantha appends a learned note, explaining all the different kinds of motion mentioned here. Many of his meanings, however, are fanciful if not unintelligible.—T.

through space.[30] Settling the kind of motion amongst yourselves, you will have to course with me. Adopting all those different motions, ye shall have to course with me through supportless space !][31]—The crow having said these words, one of the swans addressed him. Listen, O son of Rādhā, to the words that the swan said. The swan spoke,—[Thou, O crow, wilt doubtless fly the hundred and one different kinds of flight ! I shall, however, fly in that one kind of motion that all (other) birds know, for I do not, O crow, know any other ! As regards thee, O thou of red eyes, fly thou in any kind of course that thou likest !][32-35]—At these words, those crows that had been assembled there laughed aloud, saying,—[How will the swan by only one kind of flight get the better of a hundred different kinds of flight ?][36]—

" '—Then those two, viz., the swan and the crow, rose into the sky, challenging each other. Capable of going everywhere at will, the swan proceeded in one kind of motion, while the crow coursed in a hundred different kinds.[37] And the swan flew and the crow also flew, causing each other to wonder (at his skill) and each speaking highly of his own achievements.[38] Beholding the diverse kinds of flight at successive instants of time, the crows that were there were filled with great joy and began to caw more loudly.[39] The swans also laughed in mockery, uttering many remarks disagreeable (to the crows). And they began to soar and alight repeatedly, here and there.[40] And they began to come down and rise up from tree-tops and the surface of the Earth. And they uttered diverse cries indicative of their victory.[41] The swan, however, with that one kind of slow motion (with which he was familiar) began to traverse the skies. For a moment, therefore, O sire, he seemed to yield to the crow.[42] The crows, at this, disregarding the swans, said these words :—[That swan amongst you which has soared into the sky, is evidently yielding !][43]—Hearing these words, the (soaring) swan flew westwards with great velocity to the ocean, that abode of *Makaras*.[44] Then fear entered the heart of the crow who became almost senseless at not seeing any island or trees whereon to perch when tired. And the crow thought within his heart as to where he should alight when tired, upon

that vast expanse of water.[45] The ocean, being as it is the abode of countless creatures, is irresistible. Dwelt in by hundreds of monsters, it is grander than space.[46] Nothing can exceed it in depth, O Suta's son! Men know, O Karna, that the waters of the ocean are as limitless as space. For the extent of its waters, O Karna, what is a crow to it?[47] The swan, having traversed a great distance in a moment, looked back at the crow, and (though capable) could not leave him behind.[48] Having transgressed the crow, the swan cast his eyes on him and waited, thinking,—[Let the crow come up.][49]—The crow then, exceedingly tired, came up to the swan,[50] Beholding him succumbing, and about to sink, and desirous of rescuing him in remembrance of the practices of good folks, the swan addressed him in these words:[51]—[Thou hadst repeatedly spoken of many kinds of flight while speaking on the subject! Thou wouldst not speak of this (thy present motion) because of its having been a mystery to us?[52] What is the name of this kind of flight, O crow, that thou hast now adopted? Thou touchest the waters with thy wings and beak repeatedly.[53] Which amongst those diverse kinds of flight is this, O crow, that thou art now practising? Come, come, quickly, O crow, for I am waiting for thee![54]—

"'Calya continued,—Exceedingly afflicted, and touching the water with his wings and beak, O thou of wicked soul, the crow, beheld in that state by the swan, addressed the latter.[55] Indeed, not seeing the limit of that watery expanse, and sinking down in fatigue, and exhausted with the effort of his flight, the crow said unto the swan,[56]—[We are crows, we wander hither and thither, crying—*caw, caw!*—O swan, I seek thy protection, placing my life-breaths at thy hands! Oh, take me to the shores of the ocean![57]—Exceedingly afflicted, and touching the ocean with his wings and beak, the crow, very much fatigued, suddenly fell down.[58] Beholding him fallen upon the waters of the ocean with a melancholy heart, the swan, addressing the crow who was on the point of death, said these words:[59]—[Remember, O crow, what thou hadst said in praise of thyself! Thy words even were that thou wouldst course through the sky in a hundred and one different

kinds of flight.[59] Thou, therefore, that wouldst fly a hundred different kinds of flight, thou that art superior to me, alas, why then art thou tired and fallen down on the ocean?][61]—Overcome with weakness, the crow then, casting his eyes upwards at the swan, and seeking to gratify him, replied, saying,[62]—[Proud of the remains of others' dishes upon which I fed, I had, O swan, regarded myself as the equal of Garuda, and had disregarded all crows and many other birds![63] I now, however, seek thy protection and place my life-breaths at thy hands! Oh, take me to the shores of some island![64] If, O swan, I can, O lord, return in safety to my own country, I will never again disregard anybody! Oh, rescue me now from this calamity![][65]—Him that said so and was so melancholy and weeping and deprived of his senses, him that was sinking in the ocean, uttering cries of *caw, caw*,[66] him so drenched by the water and so disgusting to look at and trembling with fear, the swan, without a word, took up with his feet and slowly caused to ride on his back.[67] Having caused the crow whose senses had deserted him to ride upon his back, the swan quickly returned to that island whence thy had both flown, challenging each other.[68] Placing down that ranger of the sky on dry land and comforting him, the swan, fleet as the mind, proceeded to the region he desired. Thus was that crow, fed on the remains of others' dinners, vanquished by the swan. The crow, then, casting off the pride of might and energy, adopted a life of peace and quiet.[69-70] Indeed, even as that crow, fed upon the remains of the dinners of the Vaiçya children, disregarded his equals and superiors, so dost thou, O Karna, that art fed by the sons of Dhritarāshtra upon the remains of their dishes, disregard all thy equals and superiors![71] Why didst thou not slay Pārtha at Virāta's city when thou hadst the advantage of being protected by Drona and Drona's son and Kripa and Bhishma and the other Kauravas?[72] There where, like a pack of jackals defeated by a lion, ye all were defeated with great slaughter by the diadem-decked Arjuna, what became of your prowess?[73] Beholding also thy brother slain by Savyasāchin, in the very sight of the Kuru heroes, it was thou that didst fly away first![74] By the skirts also of the *Dwaita*

lake, O Karna, when thou wert assailed by the *Gandharvas*, it was thou that, deserting all the Kurus, didst first run away![75] Having vanquished in battle the *Gandharvas* headed by Chitrasena, withgreat slaughter, it was Pārtha, O Karna, that liberated Duryodhana with his wife![76] Rāma himself, O Karna, before the kings in the (Kuru) assembly, spake of the former prowess of both Pārtha and Keçava.[77] Thou didst frequently hear the words of Drona and Bhishma, speaking in the presence of all the kings, that the two Krishnas are unslayable.[78] I have told thee a little only regarding those matters in which Dhananjaya is superior to thee like the Brāhmana who is superior to all created beings![79] Soon wilt thou see, stationed on that foremost of cars, the son of Vasudeva and the son of Kunti and Pāndu.[80] As the crow (in the story), acting with intelligence, had sought the protection of the swan, so do thou seek the protection of him of Vrishni's race, and of Pāndu's son Dhananjaya![81] When thou shalt in battle behold Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya, those two endued with great prowess, stationed together on the same car, thou shalt not then, O Karna, utter such speeches![82] When Pārtha will, with hundreds of arrows, quell thy pride, then wilt thou behold the difference between thyself and Dhananjaya![83] Those two best of persons are celebrated among the gods, the *Asuras* and human beings! Thou that art a fire-fly, do not, from folly, think disrespectfully of those two resplendent luminaries![84] Like the Sun and the Moon, Keçava and Arjuna are celebrated for their resplendence. Thou, however, art like a fire-fly among men![85] O learned one, O son of a *Suta*, do not think disrespectfully of Achyuta and Arjuna! Those two high-souled persons are lions among men! Forbear indulging in such boasts!'—' "[86]

Section XLII.

"Sanjaya said,—'The high-souled son of Adhiratha, having listened unconvinced to these words of the ruler of the Madras, addressed Calya, saying,—That which Vāsudeva and Arjuna are, is well-known to me![1] The skill of Caurin in the manage-

ment of cars, and the might and the high weapons of Arjuna the son of Pāndu, are well-known to me at this hour. Thou, however, O Calya, hast no occular proof of those matters![2] I shall fearlessly fight with the two Krishnas, those two foremost of all wielders of weapons. The curse, however, of Rāma, that best of regenerate persons, paineth me greatly today![3] I dwelt, in the disguise of a Brāhmana, with Rāma in former days, desirous of obtaining celestial weapons from him. On that occasion, O Calya, the chief of the gods, wishing to benefit Phālguna, caused an obstacle, by approaching my thigh and piercing it, having assumed the dire form of a worm![4] When my preceptor slept having laid his head thereon, that worm, approaching my thigh, began to pierce it through. In consequence of the piercing of my thigh, a pool of thick blood flowed from my body.[5] For fear of (disturbing the slumber of) my preceptor I did not move my limb. Awaking, the Brāhmana, however, beheld what had taken place. Witnessing my patience, he addressed me, saying,—[Thou art never a Brāhmana! Tell me truly who thou art![6] I then, O Calya, truly informed him of myself, saying that I was a *Suta*. Hearing my words, the great ascetic, his heart filled with rage, cursed me, saying,[7]—[In consequence of the deception, O Suta, by which thou hast obtained this weapon, it will never, at the time of need, when the hour of thy death comes, occur to thy memory! *Brahma* cannot certainly reside in one that is not a Brāhmana![8]—I have forgotten that great weapon in this fierce and terrible battle![9] He amongst the Bharatas, O Calya, who is accomplished, who is an effectual smiter, who is a universal destroyer, and who is exceedingly terrible, (viz., Arjuna),—that mighty crusher,—I think, will burn many foremost of Kshatriyas.[10] Know, however, O Calya, that I will slay in battle that fierce bowman, that foremost of warriors, that hero endued with activity, that terrible person whose energy is unbearable, that warrior whose promises are accomplished, that son of Pāndu, viz., Dhananjaya![11] I have that weapon (at least) under my control today with which I will be able to destroy large numbers of foes! I will slay in battle that scorcher of enemies, that mighty warrior accomplished in weapons, that fierce bowman of im-

measurable energy, that cruel and terrible hero, that great resister of enemies, viz., Dhananjaya![12] The immeasurable Ocean, that lord of all waters, rusheth with fierce impetuosity for overwhelming innumerable creatures. The continents, however, hold and check him.[13] Today, in this world, I will resist in fight the son of Kunti, that foremost of all drawers of the bowstring, while he will be engaged in ceaselessly shooting his countless shafts equipt with goodly wings, destructive of heroes, capable of penetrating into every limb, and none of which becomes futile![14] Like the continent resisting the Ocean, I will today resist that mightiest of the mighty, that great warrior possessing the highest weapons, that hero like into the Ocean's self, of far-reaching arrows, fierce, and having shafts for his waves, while he will be engaged in overwhelming (hostile) kings![15] Behold today the fierce battle I fight with him that hath no equal, I think, among men wielding the bow, and that would vanquish the very gods united with the *Asuras*![16] Exceedingly proud is that son of Pāndu. Desirous of battle he will approach me with his mighty and superhuman weapons! Baffling his weapons with my own weapons in battle, I shall today overthrow that Pārtha with my own excellent shafts.[17] Scorching his foes like the Sun endued with fiery rays, and blazing with fame like that dispeller of darkness, I shall, like a mass of clouds, completely shroud Dhananjaya today with my shafts![18] Like the clouds extinguishing a blazing fire of great energy and smoke-mixed flames, that seems ready to consume the whole Earth, I shall, with my showers of arrows, extinguish the son of Kunti in battle![19] With my broad-headed shafts I shall still the son of Kunti, that terrible snake of virulent poison, that is exceedingly difficult of being captured, that is endued with keen fangs, that is even like a blazing fire, that flames up in wrath, and that always consumes his foes![20] Like Himavat bearing the mighty, all-crushing, fierce, and smiting god of wind, I shall, without moving, bear the angry and vindictive Dhananjaya![21] I shall resist in battle Dhananjaya, the foremost of all wielders of bows in the world, that hero in fight, that warrior who is always in the van and who is competent to meet all foes, that car-warrior who is conversant with all ca-

tracks![22] Today I shall fight in battle with that person who hath, I think, no equal among men wielding the bow and who conquered the entire Earth![23] What other man desirous of saving his life, except myself, will fight with that Savyasāchin who vanquished all creatures including the very gods, in the country called Khāndava?[24] Arjuna is proud; his weapons strike deep; he is endued with great lightness of hands; he is conversant with steeds; he agitates vast hosts; he is regarded an *Atiratha!* Though such, I shall yet, with my sharp shafts, strike his head from off his trunk today![25] O Calya, ever keeping Death or Victory in battle before me, I shall today fight with Dhananjaya! There is none else, save myself that would on a single car fight with that Pāndava who resembles the Destroyer himself![26] I myself will gladly speak of the prowess of Phālguna in the midst of an assembly of Kshatriyas. Why, however, dost thou, a fool as thou art and of foolish understanding, speak to me of Phālguna's prowess![27] Thou art a doer of disagreeable deeds! Thou art cruel and mean, and being thyself unforgiving, thou art a detractor of one that is forgiving! I can slay a hundred persons like thee, but I forgive thee in consequence of my forgiving disposition, owing to the exigency of the times![28] Thou art of sinful deeds. Like a fool, thou hast, for the sake of Pāndu's son, rebuked me and told me many disagreeable things! Crooked-hearted as thou art, thou hast said all these words unto me that am of a sincere heart! Cursed art thou for thou art an injurer of friends,—of friends, because friendship is seven-paced![29] Terrible is the hour that is now passing. Duryodhana hath himself come to battle. I am solicitous of seeing his purposes achieved. Thou, however, art acting in such a way that it shows thee to have no friendship (for the Kuru king)![30] He is a friend who shows affection for another, who gladdens another, who makes himself agreeable to another, who protects another, who honors another, and who joys in the joy of another. I tell thee that I have all those attributes, and the king himself knows all this.[31] He, on the other hand, that destroys, chastises, sharpens his weapons, injures, causes us to sigh, makes us cheerless, and wrongs us in diverse ways,

is a foe. All these attributes are to be found in thee and thou discoverest all of them towards me.[32] For the sake of Duryodhana, for the sake of doing what is agreeable to thee, for the sake of victory, for the sake of myself, and for the sake of God himself, I will, with vigorous exertion, fight with Pārtha and Vāsudeva! Witness today my feats![33] Behold today my excellent weapons, viz., my *Brāhma* and other celestial weapons, as also those that are human! I will today slay that hero of fierce prowess, like an exceedingly infuriate elephant slaying an infuriate compeer.[34] I shall, by my mind alone, hurl today at Pārtha, for my victory, that weapon of immeasurable energy, called the *Brāhma!* Arjuna will never be able to escape that weapon, if only the wheels of my car do not sink into the Earth in battle today![35] Know this, O Calya, that I would not take fright at Yama himself armed with his rod, or Varuna himself armed with his noose, or Kuvera himself armed with his mace, or Vāsava himself armed with the thunder-bolt, or at any other foe whatever that may approach for slaying me![36-37] Therefore, I have no fear from Pārtha, nor from Janārddana! On the other hand, I shall encounter them both in today's destructive battle![38] Once on a time, while wandering for the sake of practising weapons on my bow called *Vijaya*, O king, I had, by shooting many fierce shafts of terrible forms,[39] heedlessly struck the calf of a (Brāhmana's) *Homa* cow with one of those shafts, and unwillingly killed it while it was wandering in a solitary forest. The Brāhmana then addressed me, saying,[40]—[Since, becoming insensate, thou hast slain the offspring of my *Homa* cow, the wheel (of thy car) will sink into the Earth while at time of battle fear will enter thy heart![41]—From these words of the Brāhmana I am experiencing great fear. These kings of the Lunar race that are lords of (other people's) weal and woe,[42] offered to give that Brāhmana a thousand kine and six hundred bovine bulls. With even such a gift, O Calya, the Brāhmana could not be gratified, O ruler of the Madras![43] I was then for giving him seven hundred elephants of large tusks and many hundreds of slaves male and female. That foremost of Brāhmanas would not still be gratified.[44] Collecting next full fourteen thousand

kine, each black in hue and having a white calf, I was still unable to obtain the grace of that best of Brāhmanas.[45] A wealthy mansion full of every object of desire, in fact, whatever wealth I had, I wished to give him, with due worship, but he refused to accept the gift.[46] Unto me then that had offended and that begged so importunately for his pardon, the Brāhmana said,—[That which, O Suta, hath been uttered by me is sure to happen. It cannot be otherwise. A false speech would destroy creatures, and sin also would be mine! Therefore, for the preservation of virtue I do not venture to speak what is false![47-48] Do not, again, destory the means of a Brāhmana's support! There is none in the world that would be able to falsify my speech. Accept those words. It will be thy atonement (for the sin of having slain a calf![49]—Though rebuked by thee, still, for friendship's sake, I have disclosed to thee all this! I know thee that art rebuking me thus! Be silent now, and hear what I will presently say!—' "[50]

Section XLIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'That chastiser of foes, viz., the son of Rādhā, thus silencing the ruler of the Madras, once more addressed him, O monarch, saying these words:[1]—In answer to that which, O Calya, thou hast said unto me by way of instance, I tell thee that I am incapable of being frightened by thee in battle with thy words![2] If all the gods themselves with Vāsava would fight with me I would not still feel any fear, what need be said then of my fears from Pārtha and Keçava?[3] I am incapable of being frightened by means of words alone! He, O Calya, whom thou wouldst be able to frighten in battle is some other person (and not myself)![4] Thou hast spoken many bitter words to me. Therein lieth the strength of a person that is low. Incapable of speaking of my merits, thou sayst many bitter things, O thou of wicked heart![5] Karna was never born, O Madraka, for fear in battle! On the other hand, I was born for displaying valor as also for achieving glory for my own self![6] For the sake of my friendship for thee, for my affection, and for thy

being an ally,—for these three reasons,—thou still livest, O Calya![7] Important is the task that has now to be done for king Dhritarāshtra. That task, O Calya, depends on me! For this, thou livest a moment![8] Before this, I made a compact with thee that any disagreeable speeches thou mightst utter would be pardoned by me! That compact should be observed. It is for this that thou livest, O Madraka![9] Without a thousand Calyas, I would vanquish my foes!* He that injureth a friend is sinful. It is for this that thou livest for the present!—' "[10]

Section XLIV.

" 'Calya said,—These, O Karna, are ravings, that thou utterest regarding the foe! As regards myself, without a thousand Karnas, I am able to vanquish the foe in battle!'[1]*

"Sanjaya continued,—'Unto the ruler of the Madras, of harsh features, who was saying such disagreeable things unto Karna, the latter once more said words that were twice bitter.[2]

" 'Karna said,—Listen with devoted attention to this, O ruler of the Madras, that was heard by me while it was recited in the presence of Dhritarāshtra![3] In Dhritarāshtra's abode the Brāhmanas used to narrate the accounts of diverse delightful regions and many kings of ancient times.[4] A foremost one among Brāhmanas, venerable in years, while reciting old histories, said these words, blaming the Vāhikas and the Madrakas:[5]—[One should always avoid the Vāhikas, those impure people that are out of the pale of virtue, and that live away from Himavat and Gangā and Saraswati and Yamunā and Kurukshetra and the Sindhu and its five tributary rivers.[6-7] I remember from the days of my youth that a slaughter-ground for kine and a space for storing intoxicating spirits always distinguish the entrances of the abodes of the (Vāhika) kings.[8] On some very secret mission I had to live among the Vahikas. In consequence of such residence the conduct of that people is well known to me.[9]

---

* The sense seems to be that "if thou wert absent a thousand times, I would still vanquish the Pāndavas."—T.

There is a town of the name of Cākala, a river of the name of Āpagā, and a clan of the Vāhikas known by the name of the Jarttikas. The practices of these people are very censurable.[10] They drink the liqour called *Gauda*, and eat fried barley with it. They also eat beef with garlics. They also eat cakes of flour mixed with meat, and boiled rice that is bought from others.* Of righteous practices they have none.[11] Their women, intoxicated with drink and divested of robes, laugh and dance outside the walls of houses in cities, without garlands and unguents,[12] singing all the while drunken and obscene songs of diverse kinds that are as musical as the bray of the ass or the bleat of the camel. In intercourse they are absolutely without any restraint, and in all other matters they act as they like. Maddened with drink, they call upon one another, using many endearing epithets.[13] Addressing many drunken exclamations to their husbands and lords, the fallen women among the Vāhikas, without observing restrictions even on sacred days, give themselves up to dancing.[14] One of those wicked Vāhikas,—one, that is, that lived amongst those arrogant women,—who happened to live for some days in Kurujāngala, burst out with cheerless heart, saying,[15]—Alas, that (Vāhika) maiden of large proportions, dressed in thin blankets, is thinking of me.—her Vāhika lover—that is now passing his days in Kurujāngala, at the hour of her going to bed![16] Crossing the Sutledge and the delightful Irāvati, and arriving at my own country, when shall I cast my eyes upon those beautiful women with thick frontal bones,[17] with blazing circlets of red arsenic on their foreheads, with streaks of jet black collyrium on their eyes, and their beautiful forms attired in blankets and skins and themselves uttering shrill cries![18] When shall I be happy, in the company of those intoxicated ladies amid the music of drums and kettle-drums and conchs sweet as the cries of asses and camels and mules![19] When shall I be amongst those ladies eating cakes of flour and meal and balls of pounded barley mixed with skimmed milk, in the forests, having many pleasant paths,

* Orthodox Hindus must boil their own rice, without purchasing boiled rice from others. To this day the practice is observed.—T.

of *Çami* and *Pilu* and *Karira*![20] When shall I, amidst my own countrymen, mustering in strength on the high-roads, fall upon passengers, and snatching their robes and attires beat them repeatedly?[21]—What man is there that would willingly dwell, even for a moment, amongst the Vāhikas that are so fallen and wicked and so depraved in their practices?[22]—Even thus did that Brāhmana describe the Vāhikas of base behaviour, a sixth of whose merits and demerits is thine, O Calya![23]† Having said this, that pious Brāhmana began once more to say what I am about to repeat respecting the wicked Vāhikas. Listen to what I say![24]—[In the large and populous town of Cākala, a *Rākshasa* woman used to sing on every fourteenth day of the dark fortnight, in accompaniment with a drum,[25]—When shall I next sing the songs of the Vāhikas in this Cākala town, having gorged myself with beef and drunk the *Gauda* liquor?[26] When shall I again, decked in ornaments, and with those maidens and ladies of large proportions, gorge upon a large number of sheep[27] and large quantities of pork and beef and the meat of fowls and asses and camels? They who do not eat sheep live in vain!—][28]—Even thus, O Calya, the young and the old, among the inhabitants of Cākala, intoxicated with spirits, sing and cry! How can virtue be met with among such a people?[29] Thou shouldst know this! I must, however, speak again to thee about what another Brāhmana had said unto us in the Kuru court:[30]—[There where forests of *Pilus* stand, and those five rivers flow, viz., the Catadru, the Vipāçā, the Irāvati, the Chandrabhāgā, and the Vitastā and which have the Sindhu for their sixth, there in those regions removed from the Himavat, are the countries called by the name of the Arattas. Those regions are without virtue and religion. No one should go thither.[31-32] The gods, the *Pitris*, and the Brāhmanas, never accept gifts from those that are fallen, or those that are begotten by Cudras on the girls of other castes, or the Vāhikas who never perform sacrifices and

† A king takes a sixth of the merits and demerits of his subjects. Hence, it is his interest to see them become righteous and abstain from sin.—T.

are exceedingly irreligious !]—That learned Brāhmana had also said in the Kuru court,[33-34]—[The Vāhikas, without any feelings of revulsion, eat off wooden vessels having deep stomachs and earthen plates and vessels that have been licked by dogs and that are stained with pounded barley and other corn.[35] The Vāhikas drink the milk of sheep and camels and asses and eat curds and other preparations from those different kinds of milk.[36] Those degraded people number many bastards among them. There is no food and no milk that they do not take. The Āratta-Vāhikas that are steeped in ignorance, should be avoided.][37]—Thou shouldst know this, O Calya ! I must, however, again speak to thee about what another Brāhmana had said unto me in the Kuru court.[38]—[How can one go to heaven, having drunk milk in the town called Yugandhara, and resided in the place called Achyutasthala, and bathed in the spot called Bhutilaya ?*[39] There where the five rivers flow just after issuing from the mountains, there among the Āratta-Vāhikas, no respectable person should dwell even for two days.[40] There are two *Piçāchas* in the river Vipāçā named Vahi and Hika. The Vāhikas are the offspring of those two *Piçāchas*. They are not creatures created by the Creator. Being of such low origin, how can they be conversant with the duties ordained in the scriptures ?[41] The Kārashkaras, the Māhishakas, the Kālingas, the Keralas, the Karkotakas, the Virakas, and other peoples of no religion, one should always avoid.][42]—Even thus did a *Rākshasa* woman of gigantic hips speak unto a Brāhmana who on a certain occasion went to that country for bathing in a sacred water and passed a single night there.[43] The regions are called by the name of the Ārattas. The people residing there are called the Vāhikas.

---

* In Yugandhara all kinds of milk were sold and taken. No one drinking milk in that town could be sure that what he took was pure vaccine milk. In Achyutasthala, women were unchaste and the conduct of the people irreligious. For a resident it was impossible to escape the contamination. In Bhutilaya, again, there was only one piece of water in which Brāhmanas and Chandālas used to bathe together. Thus Nilakantha.—T.

The lowest of Brāhmanas also are residing there from very remote times.[44] They are without the *Veda* and without knowledge, without sacrifice and without the power to assist at others' sacrifices. They are all fallen and many amongst them have been begotten by Cudras upon other peoples' girls. The gods never accept any gifts from them.[45] The Prasthalas, the Madras, the Gāndhāras, the Ārattas, those called Khasas, the Vasātis, the Sindhus, and the Sauviras, are almost as blamable in their practices.—' "[46]

Section XLV.

" 'Karna continued,—Thou shouldst know all this, O Calya! I shall, however, again speak unto thee! Listen with close attention to what I say.[1] Once on a time a Brāhmana came to our house as a guest. Observing our practices he became highly gratified and said unto us:[2]—[I dwelt for a long time on a peak of Himavat quite alone. Since then I have seen diverse countries following diverse religions.[3] Never, however, have I seen all the people of a country act unrighteously. All the races I have met with admit that to be the true religion which has been declared by persons conversant with the *Vedas*.[4] Travelling through various countries following various religions, I, at last, O king, came among the Vāhikas. There I heard[5] that one at first becomes a Brāhmana and then becomes a Kshatriya. Indeed, a Vāhika would, after that, become a Vaiçya, and then a Cudra, and then a barber.[6] Having become a barber, he would then again become a Brāhmana. Returning to the status of a Brāhmana, he would again become a slave.[7] One person in a family becomes a Brāhmana; all the others, falling off from virtue, act as they like. The Gāndhāras, the Madrakas, and the Vāhikas, of little understanding, are even such.[8] Having travelled through the whole world I heard of these practices destructive of virtue, of these sinful irregularities, amongst the Vāhikas![9]]—Thou shouldst know all this, O Calya! I shall, however, again speak to thee about those ugly words that another said unto me regarding the Vāhikas.[10] In former days a chaste woman was abducted by robbers (hail-

ing) from Āratta. Sinfully was she violated by them, upon which she cursed them, saying,[11]—[Since ye have sinfully violated a helpless girl who am not without a husband, therefore, the women of your families shall all become unchaste![12] Ye lowest of men, never shall ye escape from the consequences of this dreadful sin!]—It is for this, O Calya, that the sisters' sons of the Ārattas, and not their own sons, become their heirs.[13] The Kauravas with the Pānchālas, the Cālwas, the Matsyas, the Naimishas, the Kocalas, the Kāçapaundras, the Kālingas, the Māgadhas,[14] and the Chedis, who are all highly blessed, know what the eternal religion is. The wicked even of various countries know what religion is. The Vāhikas, however, live without righteousness.[15] Beginning with the Matsyas, the residents of the Kuru and the Pānchāla countries, the Naimishas as well, and the other respectable peoples, the pious among all races are conversant with the eternal truths of religion. This cannot be said of the Madrakas and the crooked-hearted race that resides in the country of the five rivers.[16] Knowing all these things, O king, hold thy tongue, O Calya, like one deprived of utterance, in all matters connected with religion and virtue! Thou art the protector and king of that people, and, therefore, the partaker of a sixth part of their merits and demerits.[17] Or, perhaps, thou art the partaker of a sixth part of their demerits only, for thou never protectest them. A king that protects is a sharer in the merits of his subjects. Thou art not a sharer in their merits.[18] In days of yore, when the eternal religon was reverenced in all countries, the Grandsire, observing the practices of the country of the five rivers cried fie on them.[19] When even in the *Krita* age, Brahman had censured the practices of those fallen people of evil deeds who were begotten by Cudras on others' soil, what would you now say to men in the world?[20]* Even thus did the Grandsire condemn the practices of the country of the five waters. When all people were observant of the duties of their respective orders, the Grandsire had to find fault with

* The Bengal reading at the end of the second line is "who is there that would succeed in shaming them?"—T.

these men.[21] Thou shouldst know all this, O Calya! I shall, however, again speak to thee! A *Rākshasa* of the name of Kalmāshapāda, while plunging in a tank, said,[22]—[Eleemosynation is a Kshatriya's dirt, while the non-observance of vows is a Brāhmana's dirt. The Vāhikas are the dirt of the Earth, and the Madra women are the dirt of the whole female sex!]*[23] While sinking in the stream, a king rescued the *Rākshasa*. Asked by the former, the latter gave this answer. I will recite it to you. Listen to me![24]—[The *Mlecchas* are the dirt of mankind; the oilmen are the dirt of the *Mlecchas*; eunuchs are the dirt of oilmen; they who avail of the priestly ministrations of Kshatriyas, in their sacrifices, are the dirt of eunuchs.[25] The sin of those again that have the last-named persons for their priests, as also of the Madrakas, shall be thine if thou do not abandon me!][26]—Even this was declared by the *Rākshasa* to be the formula that should be used for curing a person possessed by a *Rākshasa* or one killed by the energy of a poison. The words that follow are all very true.[27] The Pānchālas observe the duties enjoined in the *Vedas*; the Kauravas observe Truth; the Matsyas and the Curasenas perform sacrifices; the Easterners follow the practices of the Cudras; the Southerners are fallen; the Vāhikas are thieves; the Saurāshtras are bastards.[28] They that are defiled by ingratitude, theft, drunkenness, adultery with the wives of their preceptors, harshness of speech, slaughter of kine, lustful wanderings during the night out of home, and the wearing of other peoples' ornaments,—what sin is there that they do not incur? Fie on the Ārattas and the people of the country of the five rivers![29] Commencing with the Pānchālas, the Kuravas, the Naimishas, the Matsyas, —all these,—know what religion is. The old men among the Northerners, the Angas, the Māgadhas, (without themselves knowing what virtue is) follow the practices of the pious.[30] Many gods, headed by Agni, dwell in the East. The *Pitris* dwell in the South that is presided over by Yama of righteous

---

* The sense seems to be that a Kshatriya subsisting on eleemosynary alms is the dirt of all his order; so a Brāhmana living without observing any vows is the dirt of his order.—T.

deeds.[31] The West is protected by the mighty Varuna who overlooks the other gods there. The North is protected by the divine Soma along with the Brāhmanas.[32] So *Rākshasas* and *Piçāchas* protect Himavat, that best of mountains. The *Guhyakas*, O great king, protect the mountains of Gandhamādana. Without doubt, Vishnu, otherwise called Janārddana, protects all creatures. (For all that, the Vāhikas have no especial protectors among the gods).[33] The Māgadhas are comprehenders of signs; the Koçalas comprehend from what they see; the Kurus and the Pānchālas comprehend from a half-uttered speech; the Cālwas cannot comprehend till the whole speech is uttered[34] The Mountaineers, like the Civis, are very stupid.* The Yavanas, O king, are omniscient; the Curas are particularly so.†[35] The *Mlecchas* are wedded to the creations of their own fancy. Other peoples cannot understand. The Vāhikas resent beneficial counsels; as regards the Madrakas, they are none amongst those (mentioned above.) Thou, O Calya, art so! Thou shouldst not reply to me.[36] The Madrakas are regarded on Earth as the dirt of every nation. So the Madra woman is called the dirt of the whole female sex.[37] They that have for their practices the drinking of spirits, the violation of the beds of their preceptors, the destruction of the embryo by procuring miscarriage, and the robbing of other people's wealth, there is no sin that they have not! Fie on the Arattas and the people of the country of the five rivers![38] Knowing this, be silent! Do not seek to oppose me! Do not let me slay Keçava and Arjuna, having slain thee first![39]—

"'Calya said,—The abandonment of the afflicted and the sale of wives and children are, O Karna, prevalent amongst the Angas whose king thou art![40] Recollecting those faults of thine that Bhishma recited on the occasion of the tale of *Rathas* and *Atirathas*, drive away thy wrath! Do not be

---

* Literally,—'can with difficulty be made to understand the meaning.'—T.

† A high compliment to the Yavanas and the Curas, probably the Greeks. Nilakantha makes a desperate attempt to explain away the force of the passage, but fails miserably.—T.

angry![41] Brāhmanas may be found everywhere; Kshatriyas may be found everywhere; so also Vaiçyas and Cudras, O Karna! Women of chastity and excellent vows may also be found everywhere![42] Everywhere men take delight in jesting with men and wounding one another. Lustful men also may be found everywhere.[43] Every one on every occasion can command skill in speaking of the faults of others. No one, however, knows his own faults, or knowing them, feels shame.[44] Everywhere are kings devoted to their respective religions, and employed in chastising the wicked. Everywhere may be found virtuous men.[45] It cannot be, O Karna, that all the people of a country are sinful. There are men in many countries that surpass the very gods by their behaviour!—'[46]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then king Duryodhana stopped Karna and Calya (from going on with their wordy warfare), addressing the son of Rādhā as a friend, and beseeching Calya with joined hands.[47] Karna, O sire, was quieted by thy son and forebore saying anything more. Calya also then faced the enemy.[48] Then Rādhā's son, smiling, once more urged Calya, saying,—Proceed!—' "[49]

Section XLVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding then that unrivalled array of the Pārthas made by Dhrishtadyumna which was capable of resisting all hostile armies, Karna[1] proceeded, uttering leonine shouts and causing his car to produce a loud rattle. And he made the Earth to tremble with the loud din of musical instruments.[2] And that chastiser of foes, that hero in battle, seemed to tremble in rage. Duly disposing his own troops in counter-array, O bull of Bharata's race, that hero of great energy[3] made a great slaughter of the Pāndava forces like Maghavat slaughtering the *Asura* host. Striking Yudhishthira then with many arrows, he placed the eldest son of Pāndu to his right.'[4]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How, O Sanjaya, did the son of Rādhā dispose his forces in counter-array to all the Pāndavas headed by Dhrishtadyumna and protected by Bhimasena, viz., all those great bowmen invincible by the very gods?[5] Who,

O Sanjaya, stood in the wings and the further wings of our army? Dividing themselves properly, how were the warriors stationed?[6] How also did the sons of Pāndu dispose their army in counter-array to mine? How also did that great and awful battle commence?[7] Where was Vibhatsu when Karna proceeded against Yudhishthira? Who could succeed in assailing Yudhishthira in the presence of Arjuna?[8] That Arjuna who had vanquished, single-handed, in former days, all creatures at Khāndava,—who else that is desirous of life, save the son of Rādhā, would fight with him?'[9]

"Sanjaya said,—'Hear now of the formation of the arrays, the manner in which Arjuna came, and how the battle was fought by both sides surrounding their respective kings![10] Caradwat's son Kripa, O king, and the Māgadhas endued with great activity, and Kritavarman of the Sātwata race, took up their position in the right wing.[11] Cakuni, and the mighty car-warrior Uluka, standing on the right of these, and accompanied by many fearless Gāndhāra horsemen armed with bright lances, and many mountaineers difficult of defeat, numerous as flights of locusts, and grim-looking as *Piçachas*, protected the (Kaurava) army.[12-13] Four and thirty thousand unreturning cars of the *Samsaptakas*, mad with desire of battle, with thy sons in their midst, and all desirous of slaying Krishna and Arjuna, protected the left side (of the Kaurava army).[14] On their left, the Kāmvojas, the Cakas, and the Yavanas, with cars and horse and foot, at the command of the Suta's son, stood, challenging Arjuna and the mighty Keçava.[15] In the centre, at the head of that host, stood Karna, clad in armour, with beatiful coat of mail and adorned with *Angadas* and garlands, for protecting that point.[16] Supported by his own angry sons, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, that hero, shone resplendent at the head of the army as he drew his bow repeatedly.[17] The mighty-armed Dusçāsana, possessed of the effulgence of the Sun or fire, with twany eyes and handsome features, riding on the neck of a huge elephant, surrounded by many troops, and stationed at the rear of the army, gradually approached for fight. Behind him came king Duryodhana himself, O monarch, protected by his uterine

brothers riding on beautiful steeds and cased in beautiful mail.[18-19] Protected by the united Madrakas and the Kekayas of exceeding energy, the king, O monarch, looked resplendent like Him of a hundred sacrifices when surrounded by the celestials.[20] Acwatthāman and the other foremost of mighty car-warriors, and many ever-infuriate elephants shedding temporal secretions like the very clouds and ridden by brave *Mlecchas*, followed behind that car force.[21] Decked with triumphal standards and blazing weapons, those huge creatures, ridden by warriors skilled in fighting from their backs, looked beautiful like hills overgrown with trees.[22] Many thousands of brave and unreturning warriors, armed with axes and swords, became the foot-guards of those elephants.[23] Gorgeously decked with horsemen and car-warriors and elephants, that foremost of arrays looked exceedingly beautiful like the array of the celestials or of the *Asuras*.[24] That great array, formed according to the scheme of Vrihaspati by its commander well-versed in ways of battle, seemed to dance (as it advanced) and struck terror into the hearts of foes.[25] Like ever-appearing clouds in the season of rains, foot-soldiers and horsemen and car-warriors and elephants, longing for battle, began to issue from the wings and further wings of that array.[26] Then king Yudhishthira, beholding Karna at the head of the (hostile) army, addressed Dhananjaya, that slayer of foes, that one hero in the world, and said these words :[27]—Behold, O Arjuna, the mighty array formed by Karna in battle! The hostile force looks resplendent with its wings and further wings![28] At sight of this vast hostile force, let such measures be adopted that it may not vanquish us![29]—Thus addressed by the king, Arjuna replied with joined hands,—Everything will be done as thou sayest. Nothing will be otherwise![30] I will, O Bhārata, do that by which the destruction of the enemy may be compassed! By slaying their foremost of warriors, I will achieve their destruction![31]—

"'Yudhishthira said,—With that view, do thou proceed against the son of Rādhā, and let Bhimasena proceed against Suyodhana, Nakula against Vrishasena, Sahadeva, against the son of Suvala, Çatānika against Dusçāsana, that bull

amongst the Cinis, viz., Sātyaki, against the son of Hridikā, and Pāndya against the son of Drona! I myself will fight with Kripa.[32-33] Let the sons of Draupadi, with Cikhandin amongst them, proceed against the rest of the Dhārtarāshtras. Let the other warriors of our army encounter our other foes![34]—'

"Sanjaya cotninued,—'Thus addressed by Yudhishthira the just, Dhananjaya said,—So be it!—and ordered his troops (to do the needful) and himself proceeded to the head of the army.[35] That car for which the Leader of the universe, viz., Agni, who derives his effulgence from Brāhman, became the steeds, that car which was known amongst the gods as belonging to Brāhman because it sprang first from Brahman himself,[36] that car which in days of old had successively borne Brahman and Içāna and Indra and Varuna one after another, riding on that primeval car, Keçava and Arjuna now proceeded to battle.[37] Beholding that advancing car of wonderful aspect, Calya once more said unto Adhiratha's son, that warrior of great energy in battle, these words:[38]—Yonder comes that car having white steeds yoked unto it and owning Krishna for its driver, that vehicle incapable of being resisted by all the troops, like the inevitable fruit of work!* There comes the son of Kunti, slaughtering his foes along the way,—he, that is, about whom thou hadst been enquiring![39] Since tremendous is the uproar that is being heard, deep as the roar of the clouds, it is, without doubt, those high-souled ones, viz., Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya![40] Yonder ascends a cloud of dust that overspreads the welkin like a canopy! The whole Earth, O Karna, seems to tremble, cut deep by the circumference of Arjuna's wheels![41] These violent winds are blowing on both sides of thy army! These carnivorous creatures are yelling aloud, and these animals are uttering fearful cries![42] Behold, O Karna, the terrible and portentuous *Ketu* of vapoury form, making the hair to stand on end, hath appeared, covering the Sun![†43] Behold, diverse kinds of animals, all around in large

---

* Work must be followed by fruit.—T.

† The malignant planet know by that name.—T.

packs, and many mighty wolves and tigers, are looking at the Sun![44] Behold those terrible *Kankas* and those vultures, assembled together in thousands, sitting with faces towards one another, in seeming discourse![45] Those colored yak-tails attached to thy great car are waving unquietly!* Thy standard also is trembling![46] Behold, these thy beautiful steeds, of huge limbs, and great speed resembling that of soaring birds, are also quivering![47] From these portents, it is certain that kings, in hundreds and thousands, O Karna, deprived of life, will lie down on the ground for eternal sleep![48] The loud uproar of conchs, making the hair to stand on end, is being heard! The sound also of drums and cymbals, O son of Rādhā, is being heard on all sides,[49] as also the whizz of diverse kinds of arrows, and the din made by cars and steeds and men! Listen also, O Karna, to the loud twang produced by the bow-strings of high-souled warriors![50] Behold, O Karna, those banners of Arjuna, that are equipt with rows of bells, and decked with golden moons and stars! Made by skilful artists out of cloths embroidered with gold and of diverse hues, they are blazing with resplendence on Arjuna's car as they are shaken by the wind, like flashes of lightning in a mass of clouds![51-52] Behold those (other) banners producing sharp sounds as they wave in the air! Those car-warriors of the high-souled Pānchālas, with flag-decked standards on their vehicles, are looking resplendent, O Karna, like the very gods on their celestial cars![53] Behold the heroic son of Kunti, the unvanquished Vibhatsu, with that foremost of apes on his standard, advancing for the destruction of the foe![54] There, on the top of Pārtha's standard, is to be seen that terrible ape, that enhancer of the fears of foes, attracting the gaze (of warriors) from every side![55] The discus, the mace, the bow called *Çārnga* and the conch (called *Pānchajannya)* of the intelligent Krishna, as also his gem *Kaustubha*, look exceedingly beautiful in him![56] The wielder of *Çārnga* and the mace, viz., Vāsudeva, of great energy, cometh, urging those white steeds endued with the fleetness of the wind![57] Yonder twangs *Gāndiva*, drawn by Savya-

* Another reading is, "are blazing."—T.

sāchin! Those wheeted shafts, sped by that strong-armed hero, are destroying his enemies![58] The Earth is strewn with the heads of unretreating kings, with faces beautiful as the moon at full, and decked with large and expansive eyes of coppery hue![59] There the arms, looking like spiked maces, with weapons in grasp, and smeared with excellent perfumes, of warriors delighting in battle and contending with uplifted weapons, are falling![60] Steeds with eyes, tongues, and entrails drawn out, along with their riders, are falling and fallen and deprived of life lie prostrate on the Earth![61] Those lifeless elephants, huge as mountain summits, torn, mangled, and pierced by Pārtha, are falling down like veritable hills![62] Those cars, looking like the changeful forms of vapour in the sky, with their royal riders slain, are falling down like the celestial cars of the denizens of heaven upon the exhaustion of the latters' merits![63] Behold, the army is exceedingly agitated by the diadem-decked Arjuna, like herds of countless cattle by a maned lion![64] There the Pāndava heroes, advancing for the attack, are slaying kings and large numbers of elephants and steeds and car-warriors and foot-soldiers of thy army engaged in battle![65] There, Pārtha, shrouded (by friends and foes and weapons and dust) is not to be seen, like the Sun shrouded by clouds! Only the top of his standard may be seen and the twang of his bowstring may be heard![66] Thou art sure, O Karna, to behold today that hero of white steeds and with Krishna for his driver, engaged in slaughtering his foes in battle! Thou art sure of beholding him about whom thou hadst been enquiring![67] Today, O Karna, thou art sure to behold those two tigers among men, both of red eyes, both chastisers of foes, viz., Vāsudeva and Arjuna, stationed on the same car![68] If, O son of Rādhā, thou succeedest in slaying him that hath Keçava for his driver and *Gāndiva* for his bow, then thou shalt be our king![69] Challenged by the *Samsaptakas*, Pārtha now proceedeth against them! That mighty warrior is engaged in making a great slaughter of his foes in battle![70]—Unto the ruler of the Madras who was saying so, Karna, in rage, said,—Behold, Pārtha is assailed on all sides by the angry *Samsaptakas*![71] Like the Sun shrouded by the

clouds, Pārtha is no longer visible! Plunged into that ocean of warriors, O Calya, Arjuna is sure to perish![72]—

"'Calya said,—Who is there that would slay Varuna with water, or quench fire with fuel? Who is there that would seize the wind, or drink off the ocean?[73] I regard the act of afflicting Pārtha to be even such! Arjuna is incapable of being vanquished in battle by the very gods and the *Asuras* united together and having Indra himself at their head?[74] Or, suffer thyself to be gratified, and be of easy mind, having said those words (about thy capacity to slay Pārtha)! Pārtha cannot be conquered in battle! Accomplish some other purpose thou mayst have in thy mind.[75] He that would uplift this Earth on his two arms, or burn all creatures in wrath, or hurl the gods from heaven, may vanquish Arjuna in battle![76] Behold that other heroic son of Kunti, viz., Bhima, who is never fatigued with exertion, blazing with resplendence, mighty-armed, and standing like another Meru![77] With wrath ever kindled, and longing for revenge, Bhima of great energy stands there, desirous of victory in battle, and remembering all his injuries![78] There that foremost of virtuous men, viz., king Yudhisthira the just, that subjugator of hostile towns, stands, difficult of being resisted by foes in battle![79] There stand those two tigers among men, the twin Açwins, the two uterine brothers Nakula and Sahadeva, both invincible in battle![80] Yonder may be seen the five sons of Krishnā, that have the features of Pānchāla princes! All of them, equal to Arjuna in battle, are standing, desirous of fight![81] There the sons of Drupada, headed by Dhrishtadyumna, swelling with pride and energy,—heroes endued with great energy,—have taken up their stand![82] There, that foremost one among the Sātwatas, viz., Sātyaki, irresistible like Indra, advanceth against us, from desire of fight, like the Destroyer himself in wrath before our eyes![83]—While those two lions among men were thus addressing each other, the two armies mingled fiercely in battle, like the currents of Gangā and Yamunā.'"[84]

Section XLVII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—When the two armies, duly arrayed, thus mingled with each other for battle, O Sanjaya, how did Pārtha assail the *Samsaptakas*, and how Karna, the Pāndavas?[1] Tell me the incidents of the battle in detail, for thou art skilled in narration! Listening to the accounts of the prowess of heroes in battle, I am never satiated!"[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Observing the vast hostile force stationed in that manner, Arjuna arrayed his troops in proper form, in consequence of the evil policy of thy son.[3] The vast Pāndava force then, teeming with horsemen and elephants and foot-soldiers and cars, and headed by Dhrishtadyumna, looked exceedingly magnificient.[4] With his steeds white as pigeons, the son of Prishata, equal in splendour to the Sun or the Moon, armed with bow, looked resplendent like Death himself in embodied form.[5] The sons of Draupadi, desirous of battle, stood by the side of Pārshata. They were clad in excellent coats of mail, and armed with excellent weapons, and all of them were endued with the prowess of tigers. Possessed of effulgent bodies, they followed their maternal uncle like the stars appearing with the Moon.[6] Beholding the *Samsaptakas* standing in array, Arjuna, with wrath excited, rushed against them, drawing his bow *Gāndiva*.[7] The *Samsaptakas* then, desirous of slaying Arjuna, rushed against Pārtha, firmly resolved on victory, and making death their goal.[8] That brave host of heroes, teeming with men, steeds, infuriate elephants, and cars, began very quickly to afflict Arjuna.[9] Their encounter with Kiritin became exceedingly furious. That encounter resembled the one that took place between Arjuna and the Nivātakavachas as we have heard.[10] Pārtha cut off cars and steeds and standards and elephants and foot-soldiers engaged in fight, and shafts and bows and swords and disci and battle-axes, and uplifted arms with weapons in grasp, and the heads also of foes, by thousands upon thousands.[11-12] The *Samsaptakas*, regarding the car of Pārtha sunk in that deep vortex of warriors, uttered loud roars.[13] Pārtha, however, slaying all his foes in front, slew those that stood further

off, and then those that were on his right and his back, like Rudra himself in rage slaughtering all created things endued with life.[14] The encounter that took place between the Pānchālas, the Chedis, and the Srinjayas, with thy troops, was exceedingly fierce.[15] Kripa, and Kritavarman, and Cakuni the son of Suvala,—those heroes difficult of defeat in battle,—accompanied by troops that were all cheerful, themselves filled with rage, and capable of smiting down thick ranks of cars, fought with the Koçalas, the Kāçis, the Matsyas, the Kārushas, the Kaikayas, and the Curasenas, all of whom were possessed of great courage.[16-17] That battle, fraught with great slaughter, and destructive of body, life, and sins, became conducive to fame, heaven, and virtue, in respect of the Kshatriya, the Vaiçya, and the Cudra heroes that engaged in it.[18] Meanwhile the Kuru king Duryodhana, with his brothers, O bull of Bharata's race, and supported by many Kuru heroes and many mighty Madraka car-warriors, protected Karna while the latter was engaged in battle with the Pāndavas, the Pānchālas, the Chedis, and Sātyaki.[19-20] Destroying that vast division with his sharp arrows, and causing many foremost of car-warriors, Karna succeeded in afflicting Yudhishthira.[21] Cutting off the armour, the weapons, and the bodies of thousands of foes and slaying his foes by thousands, and sending them to heaven and making them earn great fame, Karna caused his friends great joy.[22] Thus, O sire, that battle, destructive of men, steeds, and cars, between the Kurus and the Srinjayas, resembled the battle between the gods and the *Asuras* of old.'"[23]

Section XLVIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—Tell me, O Sanjaya, how Karna, having caused a great slaughter after penetrating into the midst of the Pāndava troops, struck and afflicted king Yudhishthira.[1] Who were those foremost of heroes among the Pārthas that resisted Karna? Who were they whom Karna crushed before the son of Adhiratha could succeed in afflicting Yudhishthira?"[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the Pārthas headed by Dhrishtadyumna stationed for battle, that crusher of foes, viz., Karna,

rushed impetuously against the Pānchālas.[3] Like swans rushing towards the sea, the Pānchālas, longing for victory, rushed as quickly against that high-souled warrior advancing to the encounter.[4] Then the blare of thousands of conchs, as if piercing the heart by its shrillness, arose from both hosts, and the fierce peal also of thousands of drums.[5] The sound also of diverse musical instruments and the noise made by elephants and steeds and cars, and the leonine shouts of heroes, that arose there, became exceedingly awful.[6] It seemed that the whole Earth with her mountains and trees and oceans, the entire welkin covered with wind-tossed clouds, and the whole firmament with the Sun, the Moon, and the stars, trembled with that sound.[7] Even such all creatures regarded that noise to be and became agitated. Those amongst them that were endued with little strength fell dead.[8] Then Karna, excited with great wrath, quickly invoking his weapons, began to smite the Pāndava army like Maghavat smiting the army of the *Asuras*.[9] Penetrating then into the Pāndava host and shooting his arrows, Karna slew seven and seventy foremost of warriors among the Prabhadrakas.[10] Then that foremost of car-warriors, with five and twenty sharp shafts equipt with goodly wings, slew five and twenty Pānchālas.[11] With many cloth-yard shafts equipt with wings of gold and capable of piercing the bodies of all foes, that hero slew the Chedis by hundreds and thousands.[12] While he was employed in achieving those superhuman feats in battle, large throngs of Pānchāla cars, O king, quickly surrounded him on all sides.[13] Aiming then, O Bhārata, five irresistible shafts, Karna, otherwise called Vaikartana or Vrisha, slew five Pānchāla warriors.[14] The five Pānchālas, O Bhārata, that he slew in that battle were Bhānudeva and Chitrasena and Senāvindu and Tapana and Curasena.[15] While the Pānchāla heroes were thus being slaughtered with arrows in that great battle, loud cries of *Oh* and *Alas* arose from among the Pānchāla host.[16] Then ten car-warriors among the Pānchālas, O monarch, surrounded Karna. Them too, Karna speedily slew with his shafts.[17] The two protectors of Karna's car-wheels, viz., his two invincible sons, O sire, that were named Sushena and Satyasena, began to fight, reckless of

their very lives.[18] The eldest son of Karna, viz., the mighty car-warrior Vrishasena, himself protected his father's rear.[19] Then Dhrishtadyumna, and Sātyaki, and the five sons of Draupadi, and Vrikodara, and Janamejaya, and Cikhandin, and many foremost warriors among the Prabhadrakas,[20] and many amongst the Chedis, the Kaikayas, and the Pānchālas, the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), and the Matsyas, all clad in mail, rushed fiercely upon Rādhā's son skilled in smiting, from desire of slaying him.[21] Pouring upon him diverse kinds of weapons and thick showers of arrows, they began to afflict him, like the clouds afflicting the mountain-breast in the season of rains.[22] Desirous of rescuing their father, the sons of Karna, all of whom were effectual smiters, and many other heroes, O king, of thy army, resisted those (Pāndava) heroes.[23] Sushena, cutting off with a broad-headed arrow the bow of Bhimasena, pierced Bhima himself with seven cloth-yard shafts in the chest, and uttered a loud roar.[24] Then Vrikodara of terrible prowess, taking up another tough bow and stringing it quickly, cut aff Sushena's bow.[25] Excited with rage and as if dancing (on his car), he quickly pierced Sushena himself with ten arrows, and then pierced Karna, within the twinkling of an eye, with seventy sharp shafts.[26] With ten other shafts, Bhima then felled Bhānusena, another son of Karna, with his steeds, driver, weapons, and standard, in the very sight of the latter's friends.[27] The sightly head of that youth, graced with a face as beautiful as the Moon, cut off with a razor-headed arrow, looked like a lotus plucked from its stalk.[28] Having slain Karna's son, Bhima began to afflict thy troops once more. Cuting off the bows then of Kripa and Hridikā's son, he began to afflict those two also.[29] Piercing Dusçāsana with three arrows made wholly of iron, and Cakuni with six, he deprived both Uluka and (his brother) Patatri of their cars.[30] Addressing Sushena next in these words, viz.,—*Thou art slain!* —Bhima took up an arrow. Karna, however, cut off that arrow and struck Bhima himself with three shafts.[31] Then Bhima took up another straight arrow of great impetuosity and sped it at Sushena. But Vrisha cut that arrow also.[32] Then Karna, desirous of rescuing his son, and wishing to make

an end of the cruel Bhimasena struck the latter with three and seventy fierce arrows.[38] Then Sushena, taking up an excellent bow capable of bearing a great strain, pierced [illegible] with five arrows in the arms and the che[illegible][39] [illegible] piercing his antagonist with twenty strong shafts [illegible] bearing a great strain, uttered a loud roar and inspired [illegible] with fright.[35] The mighty car-warrior Sushena, however, O king, piercing Nakula with ten shafts, quickly cut off the latter's bow with a razor-headed arrow.[36] Then Nakula, insensate with rage, took up another bow, and resisted Sushena in that battle with nine shafts.[37] That slayer of hostile heroes, O king, shrouding all the quarters with showers of arrows, slew Sushena's driver, and piercing Sushena himself again with three shafts, and then with three other broad-headed arrows, cut off his bow of great strength into three fragments.[38] Sushena also, deprived of his senses in rage, took up another bow and pierced Nakula with sixty arrows and Sahadeva with seven.[39] The battle raged fiercely, like that of the gods and the *Asuras*, between those heroes striking one another.[40] Sātyaki, slaying the driver of Vrishasena with three arrows, cut off the latter's bow with a broad headed shaft and struck his steeds with seven arrows.[41] Crushing his standard then with another arrow, he struck Vrishasena himself with three arrows in the chest. Thus struck, Vrishasena became senseless on his car, but within the twinkling of an eye, stood up again.[42] Deprived of his driver and steeds and car and standard by Yuyudhāna, Vrishasena then, armed with sword and shield, rushed against Yuyudhāna from desire of slaying him.[43] Sātyaki, however, as his antagonist rushed towards him, struck at his sword and shield with ten arrows equipt with heads like a boar's ear.[44] Then Dusçāsana, beholding Vrishasena made carless and weaponless, quickly caused him to ascend his own car, and bearing him away from the spot, caused him to ride another vehicle.[45] The mighty car-warrior Vrishasena then, riding on another vehicle, pierced the five sons of Draupadi with seventy and Yuyudhāna with five[46] and Bhimasena with four and sixty, and Sahadeva with five, and Nakula with thirty, and Catānika with seven arrows,[47] and

Cikhandin with ten, and king Yudhishthira with a hundred. These and many other foremost of heroes, O king, all inspired with desire of victory,[48] that great bowman, viz., the son of Karna, O monarch, continued to afflict with his shafts. Then, in that battle, the invincible Vrishasena continued to protect the rear of Karna.[49] The grandson of Cini, having made Duççāsana driverless and steedless and carless by means of nine times nine arrows made wholly of iron, struck Duççāsana himself with ten shafts in the forehead.[50] The Kuru prince then, riding on another car that was duly equipt (with every necessary implement), once more began to fight with the Pāndavas, from within the division of Karna.[51] Then Dhrishtadyumna pierced Karna with ten arrows, and the sons of Draupadi pierced him with three and seventy, and Yuyudhāna with seven.[52] And Bhimasena pierced him with four and sixty arrows, and Sahadeva with seven. And Nakula pierced him with thirty arrows, and Catānika with seven. And the heroic Cikhandin pierced him with ten, and king Yudhishthira with a hundred.[53] These and other foremost of men, O monarch, all inspired with desire of victory, began to grind that great bowman, viz., the Suta's son, in that dreadful battle.[54] That chastiser of foes, viz., the Suta's son of great heroism, performing quick evolutions with his car, pierced every one of those warriors with ten arrows.[55] We then, O king, witnessed the lightness of hand displayed by the high-souled Karna and the energy of his weapons. Indeed, what we saw appeared to be highly wonderful.[56] People could not notice when he took up his arrows, when he aimed them, and when he let them off They only beheld his enemies dying fast in consequence of his wrath.[57] The sky, the firmament, the Earth, and all the quarters, seemed to be entirely shrouded with sharp arrows. The firmament looked resplendent as if covered with red clouds.[58] The valiant son of Rādhā, armed with the bow, and as if dancing (on his car), pierced each of his assailants with thrice as many arrows as each of them had pierced him with.[59] And once more piercing each of them, and his steeds, driver, car, and standard, with ten arrows, he uttered a loud roar. His assailants then gave him a way (through which he passed out).[60]

Having crushed those mighty bowmen with showers of arrows, the son of Rādhā, that crusher of foes, then penetrated, unresisted, into the midst of the division commanded the Pāndava king.[61] Having destroyed thirty cars of the unreturning Chedis, the son of Rādhā struck Yudhishthira with many sharp arrows.[62] Then many Pāndava warriors, O king, with Cikhandin and Sātyaki, desirous of rescuing the king from the son of Rādhā, surrounded the former.[63] Similarly all the brave and mighty bowmen of thy army resolutely protected the irresistible Karna in that battle.[64] The noise of diverse musical instruments arose then, O king, and the leonine shouts of brave warriors rent the sky,[65] And the Kurus and the Pāndavas once more fearlessly encountered each other, the former headed by the Suta's son and the latter by Yudhishthira.'"[66]

Section XLIX.

'Sanjaya said,—' Piercing through the Pāndava host, Karna, surrounded by thousands of cars and elephants and steeds and foot soldiers, rushed towards king Yudhishthira the just.[1] Cutting off with hundreds of fierce shafts the thousands of weapons sped at him by his foes, Vrisha fearlessly pierced through that host.[2] Indeed, the Suta's son cut off the heads, the arms, and the thighs of his enemies, who, deprived of life, fell down on the Earth. Others, finding their divisions broken, fled away.[3] The Drāvida, the Andhaka, and the Nishāda foot-soldiers, urged on by Sātyaki, once more rushed towards Karna in that battle, from desire of slaying him.[4] Deprived of arms and head-gears, and slain by Karna with his shafts, they fell down simultaneously on the Earth, like a forest of *Cāla* trees cut down (with the axe).[5] Thus hundreds, thousands, and ten thousands of combatants, deprived of life and filling the whole welkin with their fame, fell down with their bodies on the Earth.[6] The Pāndus and the Pānchālas obstructed Karna, otherwise called Vaikartana, who careered wrathfully in battle like the Destroyer himself, even as people seek to obstruct a disease with incantations and drugs.[7] Crushing all those assailants, Karna once more rushed towards Yudhishthira, like

an irresistible disease unchecked by incantations and drugs and (propitiatory) rites.[8] At last checked by the Pāndus, the Pānchālas, and the Kekayas, all of whom were desirous of rescuing the king, Karna could not succeed in passing them over like Death that is unable to vanquish persons conversant with *Brahma*.[9] Then Yudhishthira, with eyes red in wrath, addressed Karna, that slayer of hostile heroes, who was held in check at a litte distance from him, and said these words:[10]—O Karna, O Karna, O thou of vain sight, O son of a Suta, listen to my words! Thou always challengest the active Phālguna in battle![11] Obedient to the counsels of Dhritarāshtra's son, thou always seekest to oppose us! Mustering thy great prowess, show thou today all thy might, all thy energy, and all the hatred thou bearest towards the sons of Pāndu![12] Today, in dreadful encounter, I will purge thee of thy desire for battle![13] —Having said these words, the son of Pāndu, O king, pierced Karna with ten shafts made entirely of iron and equipt with wings of gold.[14] That chastiser of foes, and great bowman, viz., the Suta's son, O Bhārata, pierced Yudhishthira, with the greatest care, in return, with ten arrows equipt with heads like the calf's tooth.[15] Thus pierced by the Suta's son in contempt, O sire, the mighty-armed Yudhishthira blazed up with wrath like a fire upon receiving butter.[16] Bending his formidable bow decked with gold, the son of Pāndu placed on his bowstring a whetted arrow capable of piercing the very hills.[17] Drawing the bow to its fullest stretch, the king quickly sped that arrow, fatal as the rod of the Destroyer, from desire of slaying the Suta's son.[18] Sped by the king endued with great might, that arrow whose whizz resembled the noise of the thunder, suddenly pierced Karna, that mighty car-warrior, on his left side.[19] Deeply afflicted by the violence of that stroke, the mighty-armed Karna, with weakened limbs, fell into a swoon on his car, his bow dropping from his hand.[20] Beholding Karna in that plight, the vast Dhārtarāshtra host uttered cries of *Oh* and *Alas*, and the faces of all the combatants became colorless.[21] Beholding the prowess of their king, amongst the Pandavas, on the other hand, O monarch, leonine roars and shouts and confused cries of joy arose.[22]

The son of Rādhā, however, of cruel prowess, recovering his senses soon enough, set his heart on the destruction of Yudhishthira.[23] Drawing his formidable bow called *Vijaya* that was decked with gold, the Suta's son of immeasurable soul began to resist the son of Pāndu with his sharp shafts.[24] With a couple of razor-headed arrows he slew in that encounter Chandradeva and Dandadhāra, the two Pānchāla princes, that protected the two car wheels of the high-souled Yudhishthira.[25] Each of those heroes, standing by the side of Yudhishthira's car, had looked resplendent like the constellation *Punarvasu* by the side of the Moon.[26] Yudhishthira, however, once more pierced Karna with thirty arrows. And he struck Sushena and Satyasena, each with three arrows.[27] And he pierced every one of the protectors of Karna with three straight arrows.[28] The son of Adhiratha then, laughing and shaking his bow, inflicted a cutting wound on the king's body with a broad-headed arrow, and again pierced him with sixty arrows and then uttered a loud shout.[29] Then many foremost heroes amongst the Pāndavas, desirous of rescuing the king, rushed in wrath towards Karna and began to grind him with their arrows.[30] Sātyaki and Chekitāna and Yuyutsu and Cikhandin and the sons of Draupadi, and the Prabhadrakas,[31] and the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva) and Bhimasena and Ciçupāla, and the Kārushas, the Matsyas, the Curas, the Kaikayas, the Kāçis, and the Koçalas,[32] all these brave heroes, endued with great activity, assailed Vasushena. The Pānchāla prince Janamejaya then pierced Karna with many arrows.[33] The Pāndava heroes, armed with diverse kinds of arrows* and diverse weapons, and accompanied by cars and elephants and steeds, rushing towards Karna, encompassed him on all sides, from desire of slaying him.[34-35] Thus assailed on all sides by the foremost of Pāndava warriors, Karna invoked into existence the *Brāhma* weapon and filled all the points of the compass with arrows.[36] The heroic Karna then, like unto a blazing fire having shafts for its scorching flame, careered in battle, burning that forest of

---

* I do not render the names of the several kinds of arrows mentioned here as those names have in several instances been rendered before.—T.

Pāndava troops.[37] The high-souled Karna, that great bowman, aiming some mighty weapons, and laughing the while, cut off the bow of that foremost of men, viz., Yudhishthira.[38] Then aiming ninety straight arrows within the twinkling of an eye, Karna cut off, with those sharp shafts, the armour of his antagonist.[39] That armour, decked with gold and set with gems, looked beautiful, as it fell down, like a wind-tossed cloud penetrated by the rays of the Sun.[40] Indeed, that armour, adorned with costly brilliants, fallen off from the body of that foremost of men, looked beautiful like the firmament in the night, bespangled with stars.[41] His armour cut off with those arrows, the son of Prithā, covered with blood, wrathfully hurled at the son of Adhiratha a dart made wholly of iron.[42] Karna, however, cut (into pieces) that blazing dart, as it coursed through the welkin, with seven shafts. That dart, thus cut off with those shafts of that great bowman, fell down on the Earth.[43] Then Yudhishthira, striking Karna with four lances in his two arms and forehead and chest, repeatedly uttered loud shouts.[44] Thereupon blood spouted forth from the wounds of Karna, and the latter, filled with rage and breathing like a snake, cut off his antagonist's standard and pierced the Pāndava himself with three broad-headed arrows.[45] And he also cut off the couple of quivers (that is foe had) and the car (he rode) into minute fragments. Thereupon the king, riding on another car unto which were yoked those steeds, white as ivory and having black hair on their tails, that used to bear him (to battle), turned his face and began to fly. Thus did Yudhishthira begin to retreat. His *Pārshni* driver had been slain.[46-47] He became exceedingly cheerless and unable to stay before Karna. The son of Rādhā then, pursuing Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu,[48] cleansed himself by touching him in the shoulder with his own fair hand (the palm of which was) graced with the auspicious signs of the thunder-bolt, the umbrella, the hook, the fish, the flag, the tortoise, and the conch-shell, and desired to seize him by force. He then remembered the words of Kunti.[49-50] Then Calya addressed him and said,—Do not, O Karna, seize this best of kings! As soon as thou seizest him, he will reduce both thee and me to ashes![51]—

Then Karna, O king, laughing in mockery, addressed the son of Pāndu and thus spoke unto him disparagingly :—How, indeed, born though thou art in a noble race, and observant though thou art of Kshatriya duties,[52] wouldst thou leave the battle in fear, desiring to save thy life? I think that thou art not well-acquainted with the duties of Kshatriyas![53] Endued with *Brahma* force, thou art, indeed, devoted to the study of the *Vedas* and the performance of sacrificial rites! Do not, O son of Kunti, fight again, and do not again approach brave warriors![54] Do not use harsh language towards heroes and do not come to great battles! Thou mayst use such words, O sire, towards others, but thou shouldst never address persons like us in that way![55] By using such words towards persons like us, thou wouldst in battle meet with this and other kinds of behaviour! Go back to thy quarters, O son of Kunti, or thither where those two, viz., Keçava and Arjuna, are![56] Indeed, O king, Karna will never slay one like thee!—Having said these words unto the son of Prithā, the mighty Karna, setting Yudhishthira free,[57] began to slaughter the Pāndava host like the wielder of the thunder-bolt slaughtering the *Asura* host. That ruler of men, (viz., Yudhishthira,) then, O king, quickly fled away.[58] Beholding the king flying away, the Chedis, the Pāndavas, the Pānchālas, and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, all followed that monarch of unfading glory.[59] And the sons of Draupadi, and the Curas, and the twin sons of Mādri by Pāndu, also followed the king. Beholding the division of Yudishthira retreating, the heroic Karna became highly glad with all the Kurus and began to pursue the retreating force. The din of kettle-drums and conchs and cymbals and bows,[60-61] and leonine shouts, arose from among the Dhārtarāshtra troops. Meanwhile Yudhishthira, O thou of Kuru's race, quickly riding on the car of Crutakirti, began to behold the prowess of Karna. Then king Yudhishthira the just, seeing his troops fast slaughtered,[62-63] became filled with rage, and addressing his warriors, commanded them, saying,—Slay these enemies! Why are ye inactive?—Then the mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas, headed by Bhimasena, thus commanded by the king, all rushed against thy sons. The shouts

then, O Bhārata, of the warriors (of both hosts), and the noise made by cars and elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers, and the clash of weapons, became tremendous.—*Exert, Strike, Face the foe,*[64-66]—were the words that the combatants addressed to one another as they began to slay one another in that dreadful battle. And in consequence of the showers of shafts shot by them, a shadow as that of the clouds seemed to spread over the field.[67] And in consequence of those rulers of men, covered with arrows, striking one another, they became divested of banners and standards and umbrellas and steeds and drivers and weapons in that battle.[68] Indeed, those lords of Earth, deprived of life and limbs, fell down on the Earth. Looking like mountain summits in consequence of their uneven backs, huge elephants,[69] with their riders, deprived of life, fell down like mountains riven by thunder. Thousands of steeds, with their armour, equipments, and adornments all torn and broken and displaced, fell down, along with their heroic riders, deprived of life. Car-warriors with weapons loosened from their grasp, and deprived by (hostile) car-warriors of cars and life, and large bands of foot-soldiers, slain by hostile heroes in that dreadful clash, fell down in thousands. The Earth became covered with the heads of heroic combatants intoxicated with battle,—heads, that is, that were adorned with large and expansive eyes of coppery hue and faces as beautiful as the lotus or the moon. And people heard noises as loud in the sky as on the surface of the Earth,[70-73] in consequence of the sound of music and song proceeding from large bands of *Apsaras* on their celestial cars, with which those bands of heavenly chorristers continually greeted the newly-arrived heroes slain in hundreds and thousands by brave enemies on Earth, and with which, placing them on celestial cars, they repaired on those vehicles (towards the region of Indra). Witnessing with their own eyes those wonderful sights, and actuated by the desire of going to heaven,[74-75] heroes, with cheerful hearts, speedily slew one another. Car-warriors fought beautifully with car-warriors in that battle,[76] and foot-soldiers with foot-soldiers, and elephants with elephants, and steeds with steeds. Indeed, when that battle, destructive of elephants and steeds and men, raged

in this way,[77] the field became covered with the dust raised by the troops. Then enemies slew enemies, and friends slew friends. The combatants dragged one another by their locks, bit one another with their teeth, tore one another with their nails,[78] and struck one another with clenched fists, and fought one another with bare arms in that fierce battle destructive of both life and sins. Indeed, as that battle, fraught with carnage of elephants and steeds and men, raged on so fiercely,[79] a river of blood ran from the bodies of (slain) human beings and steeds and elephants. And that current carried away a large number of dead bodies of elephants and steeds and men.[80] Indeed, in that vast host teeming with men and steeds and elephants, that river formed by the blood of men and steeds and elephants and horsemen and elephant-men, became miry with flesh and exceedingly terrible.[81] And on that current, inspiring the timid with terror, floated the bodies of men and steeds and elephants. Impelled by the desire of victory, some combatants forded it and some remained on the other side.[82] And some plunged into its depths, and some sank in it and some rose above its surface as they swam through it. Smeared all over with blood, their armour and weapons and robes all became bloody.[83] Some bathed in it, and some drank the liquid, and some became strengthless, O bull of Bharata's race! Cars and steeds and men and elephants and weapons and ornaments,[84] and robes and armour, and combatants that were slain or about to be slain, and the Earth, the welkin, the firmament, and all the points of the compass, became red.[85] With the odor, the touch, the taste, and the exceedingly red sight of that blood and its rushing sound,[86] almost all the combatants, O Bhārata, became very cheerless. The Pāndava heroes then, headed by Bhimasena and Sātyaki, once more rushed impetuously against that army already beaten. Beholding the impetuosity of that rush of the Pāndava heroes to be irresistible,[87-88] the vast force of thy sons, O king, turned its back on the field. Indeed, that host of thine, teeming with cars and steeds and elephants and men no longer in compact array, with armour and coats of mail displaced and weapons and bows loosened from their grasp, fled away in all directions, whilst being agitated by

the enemy, even like a herd of elephants in the forest afflicted by lions.'"[89-90]

SECTION L.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the Pāndava heroes rushing impetuously towards thy host, Duryodhana, O monarch, endeavoured to check the warriors of his army on all sides, O bull of Bharata's race. Although, however, thy son cried at the top of his voice, his flying troops, O king, still refused to stop.[1-3] Then one of the wings of the army and its further wing, and Cakuni the son of Suvala, and the Kauravas, well-armed, rushed against Bhimasena in that battle.[3] Karna also, beholding the Dhārtarāshtra force with all its kings flying away, addressed the ruler of the Madras, saying,—Proceed towards the car of Bhima![4]—Thus addressed by Karna, the ruler of the Madras began to urge those foremost of steeds, of the hue of swans, towards the spot where Vrikodara was.[5] Thus urged by Calya, that ornament of battle, those steeds approaching the car of Bhimasena, mingled in battle.[6] Meanwhile, Bhima, beholding Karna approach, became filled with rage, and set his heart on the destruction of Karna, O bull of Bharata's race.[7] Addressing the heroic Sātyaki and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, he said,—Do you two protect king Yudhishthira of virtuous soul! With difficulty he escaped from a situation of great peril before my very eyes![8] In my sight have the armour and robes of the king been cut off and torn, for Duryodhana's gratification, by Rādhā's son of wicked soul![9] I shall today reach the end of that woe, O son of Prishata! Today, either I shall slay Karna in battle, or he will slay me in dreadful battle! I tell thee truly![10] Today I make over the king to you as a sacred pledge! With cheerful hearts exert ye today for protecting the king![11]—Having said these words, the mighty-armed Bhima proceeded towards Adhiratha's son, making all the points of the compass resound with a loud leonine shout.[12] Beholding Bhima, that delighter in battle, advancing quickly, the puissant king of the Madras addressed the Suta's son in the following words.[13]

"'Calya said,—Behold, O Karna, the mighty-armed son of Pāndu, who is filled with rage! Without doubt, he is desirous of vomiting upon thee that wrath which he has cherished for many years![14] Never before did I see him assume such a form, no, not even when Abhimanyu was slain and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha![15] Filled with wrath, the form he hath now assumed, endued with the splendour of the all-destroying fire at the end of the *Yuga*, is such that it seems he is capable of resisting the three worlds united together!—'[16]

"Sanjaya continued,—'While the ruler of the Madras was saying these words unto the son of Rādhā, Vrikodara, excited with rage, came upon Karna.[17] Beholding Bhima, that delighter in battle, approach him in that way, the son of Rādhā laughingly said unto Calya these words.[18]—The words that thou, O ruler of the Madras, hast today spoken to me regarding Bhima, O lord, are without doubt all true![19] This Vrikodara is brave and is a hero full of wrath! He is reckless in protecting his body, and in strength of limbs is superior to all![20] While leading a life of concealment in the city of Virāta, relying then on the mighty of his bare arms, for doing what was agreeable to Draupadi, he secretly slew Kichaka with all his relatives![21] Even he stands today at the head of battle, clad in mail and insensate with wrath! He is ready to engage in battle with the Destroyer armed with uplifted mace![22] This desire, however, hath been cherished through all my days, viz., that either I shall slay Arjuna or Arjuna will slay me![23] That desire of mine may be fulfilled today in consequence of my encounter with Bhima! If I slay Bhima or make him carless,[24] Pārtha may come against me. That will be well for me! Settle that without delay which thou thinkest to be suitable to the hour![25]—Hearing these words of Rādhā's son of immeasurable energy Calya replied, saying,[26]—O thou of mighty-arms, proceed against Bhimasena of great might! Having checked Bhimasena, thou mayst then obtain Phālguna![27] That which is thy purpose, that desire which for many long years thou hast cherished in thy heart, will be accomplished, O Karna! I tell thee the truth![28]—Thus addressed, Karna once more said unto Calya,—Either I shall slay Arjuna in

battle, or he will slay me! Setting thy heart on battle proceed to the spot where Vrikodara is!—'[29]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then, O king, Calya speedily proceeded on that car to the spot where that great bowman, viz., Bhima, was engaged in routing thy army.[30] There rose then the blare of trumpets and the peal of drums, O monarch, when Bhima and Karna met.[31] The mighty Bhimasena, filled with rage, began to scatter thy troops difficult of defeat, with his sharp and polished shafts, to all sides.[32] That collision in battle, O monarch, between Karna and the son of Pāndu became, O king, fierce and awful, and the noise that arose was tremendous.[33] Beholding Bhima coming towards him, Karna, otherwise called Vaikartana or Vrisha, filled with rage, struck him with shafts in the centre of the chest.[34] And once more, Karna of immeasurable soul covered him with a shower of arrows. Thus pierced by the Suta's son, Bhima covered the former with winged arrows.[35] And he once more pierced Karna with nine straight and keen shafts. Then Karna, with a number of arrows, cut in twain Bhima's bow at the handle.[36] And after cutting off his bow, he pierced him once again in the centre of the chest with a shaft of great keenness and capable of penetrating every kind of armour.[37] Then Vrikodara, taking up another bow, O king, and knowing full well what the vital parts of the body are, pierced the Suta's son with many keen arrows.[38] Then Karna pierced him with five and twenty arrows, like a hunter striking a proud and infuriate elephant in the forest with a number of blazing brands.[39] His limbs mangled with those shafts, his eyes red with rage and the desire of revenge, the son of Pāndu, insensate with wrath, and impelled by the desire of slaying the Suta's son,[40] fixed on his bow an excellent shaft of great impetuosity, capable of bearing a great strain, and competent to pierce the very mountains.[41] Forcibly drawing the bowstring to his very ear, the son of the Wind-god, that great bowman, filled with wrath and desirous of making an end of Karna, sped that shaft.[42] Thus sped by the mighty Bhima, that shaft, making a noise loud as that of the thunder, pierced through Karna in that battle, like the thunder-bolt itself piercing through a moun-

tain.[43] Struck by Bhimasena, O perpetuator of Kuru's race, the Suta's son, that commander (of thy forces), sat down senseless on the terrace of his car.[44] The ruler of the Madras then, beholding the Suta's son deprived of his senses, bore that ornament of battle away on his car, from that fight.[45] Then after Karna's defeat, Bhimasena began to rout the vast Dhārtarāshtra host like Indra routing the *Dānavas*.' "[46]

SECTION LI.

"Dhritarāshthra said,—'Exceedingly difficult of accomplishment was that feat, O Sanjaya, which was achieved by Bhima who caused the mighty-armed Karna himself to measure his length on the terrace of his car![1]—*There is only one person, viz., Karna, who will slay the Pāndavas along with the Srinjayas!*—Even this is what Duryodhana, O Suta, used very often to say unto me![2] Beholding, however, that son of Rādhā now defeated by Bhima in battle, what did my son Duryodhana next do?'[3]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Rādhā's son of the Suta caste turned back from the fight in that great battle, thy son, O monarch, addressed his uterine brothers, saying,[4]—Go ye quickly, blessed be ye, and protect the son of Rādhā who is plunged into that fathomless ocean of calamity represented by the fear of Bhimasena![5]—Thus commanded by the king, those princes, excited with wrath and desirous of slaying Bhimasena, rushed towards him like insects towards a blazing fire.[6] They were Crutarvan and Durddhara and Krātha and Vivitsu and Vikata and Soma, and Nishangin and Kavachin and Pāçin and Nanda and Upanandaka,[7] and Duspradharsha and Suvāhu and Vātavega and Suvarchasas, and Dhanurgrāha and Durmada and Jalasandha and Cala and Saha.[8] Surrounded by a large car force, those princes, endued with great energy and might, approached Bhimasena and encompassed him on all sides.[9] They sped at him from every side showers of arrows of diverse kinds. Thus afflicted by them, Bhima of great strength,[10] O king, quickly slew fifty foremost car-warriors with five hundred others, amongst those sons of thine that

advanced against him.[11] Filled with rage, Bhimasena then, O king, with a broad-headed arrow, struck off the head of Vivitsu, adorned with ear-rings and head-gear, and graced with a face resembling the full moon. Thus cut off, that prince fell down on the Earth.[12] Beholding that heroic brother of theirs slain, the (other) brothers there, O lord, rushed in that battle, from every side, upon Bhima of terrible prowess.[13] With two other broad-headed arrows then, Bhima of terrible prowess took the lives of two other sons of thine in that dreadful battle.[14] Those two, viz., Vikata and Saha, looking like a couple of celestial youths, O king, thereupon fell down on the Earth like a couple of trees uprooted by the tempest.[15] Then Bhima, without losing a moment, despatched Krātha to the abode of Yama, with a long arrow of keen point. Deprived of life, that prince fell down on the Earth.[16] Loud cries of woe then, O ruler of men, arose there when those heroic sons of thine, all great bowmen, were being thus slaughtered.[17] When those troops were once more agitated, the mighty Bhima, O monarch, then despatched Nanda and Upananda in that battle to Yama's abode.[18] Thereupon thy sons, exceedingly agitated and inspired with fear, fled away, seeing that Bhimasena in that battle behaved like the Destroyer himself at the end of the *Yuga*.[19] Beholding those sons of thine slain, the Suta's son, with a cheerless heart, once more urged his steeds of the hue of swans to that place where the son of Pāndu was.[20] Those steeds, O king, urged on by the ruler of the Madras, approached with great speed the car of Bhimasena and mingled in battle.[21] The collision, O monarch, that once more took place between Karna and the son of Pāndu in battle, became, O king, exceedingly fierce and awful and fraught with a loud din.[22] Beholding, O king, those two mighty car-wrariors close with each other, I became very curious to observe the course of that battle.[23] Then Bhima, boasting of his prowess in battle, covered Karna in that encounter, O king, with showers of winged shafts in the very sight of thy sons.[24] Then Karna, that warrior acquainted with the highest of weapons, filled with wrath, pierced Bhima with nine broad headed and straight arrows made entirely of iron.[25] Thereupon the mighty-armed

Bhima of terrible prowess, thus struck by Karna, pierced his assailant in return with seven shafts sped from his bowstring drawn to his ear.[26] Then Karna, O monarch, sighing like a snake of virulent poison, shrouded the son of Pāndu with a thick shower of arrows.[27] The mighty Bhima also, shrouding that mighty car-warrior with dense arrowy downpours in the very sight of the Kauravas, uttered a loud shout.[28] Then Karna, filled with rage, grasped his bow strongly and pierced Bhima with ten arrows whetted on stone and equipt with *Kanka* feathers.[29] With another broad-headed arrow of great sharpness, he also cut off Bhima's bow. Then the mighty-armed Bhima of great strength, taking up a terrible *Parigha*, twined round with hempen chords and decked with gold and resembling a second bludgeon of Death himself, and desiring to slay Karna outright, hurled it at him with a loud roar.[30-31] Karna, however, with a number of arrows resembling snakes of virulent poison, cut off into many fragments that spiked mace as it coursed towards him with the tremendous peal of thunder.[32] Then Bhima, that grinder of hostile troops, grasping his bow with greater strength, covered Karna with keen shafts.[33] The battle that took place between Karna and the son of Pāndu in that meeting, became awful for a moment, like that of a couple of huge lions desirous of slaying each other.[34] Then Karna, O king, drawing the bow with great force and stretching the string to his very ear, pierced Bhimasena with three arrows.[35] Deeply pierced by Karna, that great bowman and foremost of all persons endued with might then took up a terrible shaft capable of piercing through the body of his antagonist.[36] That shaft, cutting through Karna's armour and piercing through his body, passed out and entered the Earth like a snake into an anthill.[37] In consequence of the violence of that stroke, Karna felt great pain and became exceedingly agitated. Indeed, he trembled on his car like a mountain during an earthquake.[38] Then Karna, O king, filled with rage and the desire to rataliate, struck Bhima with five and twenty shafts, and then with many more.[39] With one arrow he then cut off Bhimasena's standard, and with another broad-headed arrow he despatched Bhima's driver to the presence of Yama.[40]

Next, quickly cutting off the bow of Pāndu's son with another winged arrow, Karna deprived Bhima of terrible feats of his car.[41] Deprived of his car, O chief of Bharata's race, the mighty-armed Bhima, who resembled the Wind-god (in prowess) took up a mace and jumped down from his excellent vehicle.[42] Indeed, jumping down from his car with great fury, Bhima began to slay thy troops, O king, like the wind destroying the clouds of autumn.[43] Suddenly the son of Pāndu, that schorcher of foes, filled with wrath, routed seven hundred elephants, O king, endued with tusks as large as plough-shafts, and all skilled in smiting hostile troops.[44] Possessed of great strength and a knowledge of what the vital parts of an elephant are, he struck them on their temples and frontal globes and eyes and the parts above their gums.[45] Thereupon those animals, inspired with fear, ran away. But urged again by their drivers, they surrounded Bhimasena once more, like the clouds covering the Sun.[46] Like Indra felling mountains with his thunder, Bhima with his mace prostrated those seven hundred elephants with their riders and weapons and standards.[47] That chastiser of foes, viz., the son of Kunti, next pressed down two and fifty elephants of great strength belonging to the son of Suvala.[48] Scorching thy army, the son of Pāndu then destroyed a century of foremost cars and several hundreds of foot-soldiers in that battle.[49] Scorched by the Sun as also by the high-souled Bhima, thy army began to shrink like a piece of leather spread over a fire.[50] Those troops of thine, O bull of Bharata's race, filled with anxiety through fear of Bhimasena, avoided Bhima in that battle and fled away in all directions.[51] Then five hundred car-warriors, cased in excellent mail, rushed towards Bhima with loud shouts, shooting thick showers of arrows on all sides.[52] Like Vishnu destroying the *Asuras*, Bhima destroyed with his mace all those brave warriors with their drivers and cars and banners and standards and weapons.[53] Then three thousand horsemen, despatched by Cakuni, respected by all brave men and armed with darts and swords and lances, rushed towards Bhima.[54] That slayer of foes, advancing impetuously towards them, and coursing in diverse tracks, slew them with his mace.[55] Loud sounds arose from among them while

they were being assailed by Bhima, like those that arise from among herd of elephants struck with large pieces of rocks.[56] Having slain those three thousand excellent horse of Suvala's son in that way, he rode upon another car, and filled with rage proceeded against the son Rādhā.[57] Meanwhile, Karna also, O king, covered Dharma's son, that chastiser of foes, with thick showers of arrows, and felled his driver.[58] Then that mighty car-warrior, beholding Yudhishthira fly away in that battle, pursued him, shooting many straight-coursing shafts equipt with *Kanka* feathers.[59] The son of the Wind god, filled with wrath, and covering the entire welkin with his shafts, shrouded Karna with thick showers of arrows as the latter pursued the king from behind.[60] The son of Rādhā then, that crusher of foes, turning back from the pursuit, quickly covered Bhima himself with sharp arrows from every side.[61] Then Sātyaki, of immeasurable soul, O Bhārata, placing himself on the side of Bhima's car, began to afflict Karna who was in front of Bhima.[62] Though exceedingly afflicted by Sātyaki, Karna still approached Bhima. Approaching each other, those two bulls among all wielders of bows, those two heroes endued with great energy, looked exceedingly resplendent as they sped their beautiful arrows at each other.[63] Spread by them, O monarch, in the welkin, those flights of arrows, blazing as the backs of cranes, looked exceedingly fierce and terrible.[64] In consequence of those thousands of arrows, O king, neither the rays of the Sun nor the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, could any longer be noticed either by ourselves or by the enemy.[65] Indeed, the blazing effulgence of the Sun shining at midday was dispelled by those dense showers of arrows shot by Karna and the son of Pāndu.[66] Beholding the son of Suvala, and Kritavarman, and Drona's son, and Adhiratha's son, and Kripa, engaged with the Pāndavas, the Kauravas rallied and came back to the fight.[67] Tremendous became the din, O monarch, that was made by that host as it rushed impetuously against their foes, resembling that terrible noise that is made by many oceans swollen with rains.[68] Furiously engaged in battle, the two hosts became filled with great joy as the warriors beheld and seized one another in that dreadful melee.[69] The battle that commenced at that hour

when the Sun had reached the meridian was such that its like had never been heard or seen by us.[70] One vast host rushed against another, like a vast reservior of water rushing towards the ocean.[71] The din that arose from the two hosts as they roared at each other, was loud and deep as that which may be heard when several oceans mingle with one another.[72] Indeed, the two furious hosts, approaching each other, mingled into one mass like two furious rivers that run into each other.[73]

" 'The battle then commenced, awful and terrible, between the Kurus and the Pāndavas, both of whom were inspired with the desire of winning great fame.[74] A perfect Babel of voices of the shouting warriors was incessantly heard there, O royal Bhārata, as they addressed one another by name.[75] He who had anything, by his father's or mother's side or in respect of his acts or conduct, that could furnish matter for ridicule, was in that battle made to hear it by his antagonist.[76] Beholding those brave warriors loudly rebuking one another in that battle, I thought, O king, that their periods of life had been run over.[77] Beholding the bodies of those angry heroes of immeasurable energy, a great fear entered my heart, respecting the dire consequences that would ensue.[78] Then the Pāndavas, O king, and the Kauravas also,—mighty car-warriors all,—striking one another, began to mangle one another with their keen shafts.' "[79]

Section LII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Those Kshatriyas, O monarch, harbouring feelings of animosity against one another and longing to take one another's life, began to slay one another in that battle.[1] Throngs of cars, and large bodies of horses, and teeming divisions of infantry, and elephants in large numbers, mingled with one another, O king, for battle.[2] We beheld the falling of maces and spiked bludgeons and *Kunapas* and lances and short arrows and rockets hurled at one another in that dreadful engagement.[3] Arrowy showers, terrible to look at, coursed like flights of locusts. Elephants, approaching elephants, routed one an-

---

* A triplet.—T.

other.[4] Horsemen encountering horsemen in that battle, and car-warriors encountering car-warriors, and foot-soldiers encountering foot-soldiers, and foot-soldiers meeting with horsemen,[5] and foot-soldiers meeting with cars and elephants, and cars meeting with elephants and horsemen, and elephants of great speed meeting with the three other kinds of forces, began, O king, to crush and grind one another.[6] In consequence of those brave combatants, striking one another and shouting at the top of their voices, the field of battle became awful, resembling the slaughter-ground of creatures (of Rudra himself).[7] The Earth, O Bhārata, covered with blood, looked beautiful like a vast plain in the season of rains covered with the red coccinella.[8] Indeed, the Earth assumed the aspect of a youthful maiden of great beauty, attired in white robes dyed with deep-red.[9] Variegated with flesh and blood, the field of battle looked as if decked all over with gold. Large numbers of heads severed from trunks, and arms, and thighs, and ear-rings, and other ornaments displaced from the bodies of warriors, O Bhārata,[10] and collars and cuirasses and bodies of brave bowmen, and coats of mail, and banners, lay scattered on the ground.[11] Elephants, coming against elephants, tore one another with their tusks, O king! Struck with the tusks of hostile compeers, elephants looked exceedingly beautiful.[12] Bathed in blood, those huge creatures looked resplendent like moving hills decked with metals adown whose breasts run streams of liquid chalk.[13] Lances hurled by horsemen, or those held horizontally by hostile combatants, were seized by many of those beasts, while many amongst them twisted and broke those weapons.[14] Many huge elephants, whose armour had been cut off with shafts, looked, O king, like mountains divested of clouds at the advent of winter.[15] Many foremost of elephants, pierced with arrows winged with gold, looked beautiful like mountains, O sire, whose summits are lighted with blazing brands.[16] Some of those creatures, huge as hills, struck by hostile compeers, fell down in that battle, like winged mountains (when clipt of their wings).[17] Others, afflicted with arrows and much pained by their wounds, fell down, touching the Earth, in that dreadful battle, with their frontal globes or the parts between their

tusks.[18] Other roared aloud like lions. And many, uttering terrible sounds, ran hither and thither, and many, O king, uttered cries of pain.[19] Steeds also, in golden trappings, struck with arrows, fell down, or became weak, or ran in all directions.[20] Others, struck with arrows and lances, or dragged down, fell on the Earth and writhed in angony, making diverse kinds of motion.[21] Men also, struck down, fell on the Earth, uttering diverse cries of pain, O sire! Others, beholding their relatives and sires and grandsires,[22] and others, seeing their retreating foes, shouted to one another their well known names and the names of their races.[23] The arms of many combatants, decked with ornaments of gold, cut off, O king, by foes, writhed on the ground, making diverse kinds of motion.[24] Thousands of such arms fell down and sprang up, and many seemed to dart forward like five-headed snakes.[25] Those arms, looking like the tapering bodies of snakes, and smeared with sandal-paste, O king, looked beautiful, when drenched with blood, like little standards of gold.[26] When the battle, becoming general, raged so furiously on all sides, the warriors fought with and slew one another without distinct perceptions of those they fought with or struck.[27] A dusty cloud overspread the field of battle, and the weapons used fell in thick showers. The scene being thus darkened, the combatants could no longer distinguish friends from foes.[28] Indeed, that fierce and awful battle proceeded thus. And soon there began to flow many mighty rivers of bloody currents.[29] And they abounded with the heads of combatants that formed their rocks. And the hair of the warriors constituted their floating weeds and moss. Bones formed the fishes with which they teemed, and bows and arrows and maces formed the rafts by which to cross them.[30] Flesh and blood forming their mire, those terrible and awful rivers, with currents swelled by blood, were thus formed there,[31] enhancing the fears of the timid and the joy of the brave. Those awful rivers led to the abode of Yama. Many plunged into those streams inspiring Kshatriyas with fear, and perished.[32] And in consequence of various carnivorous creatures, O tiger among men, roaring and yelling on all sides, the field of battle became terrible like the domains of the king of the dead.[33] And

innumerable headless trunks rose up on all sides. And terrible creatures, gorging on flesh and blood, and drinking blood and drinking fat, O Bhārata, began to dance around.[34] And crows and vultures and cranes, gratified with fat and marrow and other animal humours and flesh, were seen to move about in glee.[35] Thy, however, O king, that were heroes, casting off all fear which is so difficult of being cast off, and observing the vow of warriors, fearlessly did their duty.[36] Indeed, on that field where countless arrows and darts coursed through the air, and which was crowded with carnivorous creatures of diverse kinds, brave warriors careered fearlessly, displaying their prowess.[37] Addressing one another, O Bhārata, they declared their names and families. And many amongst them, declaring the names of their sires and families, O lord, began to crush one another, O king, with darts and lances and battle-axes.[38-39] During the progess of that fierce and awful battle, the Kaurava army became strengthless and unable to bear up any longer like a foundered vessel on the bosom of the ocean.' "[40]

SECTION LIII.

"Sanjaya said—'During the progress of that battle in which so many Kshatriyas sank down, the loud twang of *Gāndiva*, O sire, was heard above the din,[1] on that spot, O king, where the son of Pāndu was engaged in slaughtering the *Samsaptakas*, the Koçalas, and the Nārāyana forces.[2] Filled with rage and longing for victory, the *Samsaptakas*, in that battle, began to pour showers of arrows on Arjuna's head.[3] The puissant Pārtha, however, quickly checking those arrowy showers, O king, plunged into that battle, and began to slay many foremost of car-warriors.[4] Plunging into the midst of that division of cars with the aid of his whetted shafts equipt with *Kanka* feathers, Pārtha came upon Suçarman of excellent weapons.[5] That foremost of car-warriors poured on Arjuna thick showers of arrows. Meanwhile the *Samsaptakass* also covered Pārtha with their shafts.[6] Then Suçarman, piercing Pārtha with ten shafts, struck Janārddana with three in the right arm, With a broad-headed arrow then, O sire, he

pierced the standard of Arjuna.[7] Thereupon that foremost of apes, of huge dimensions, the handiwork of the celestial artificer himself, began to utter loud sounds and roar very fiercely, afrighting thy troops.[8] Hearing the roars of the ape, thy army became inspired with fear. Indeed, under the influence of a great fear, that army became perfectly inactive.[9] That army then, as it stood inactive, O king, looked beautiful like the *Chaitraratha* forest with its flowery burthen of diverse kinds.[10] Then those warriors, recovering their senses, O chief of the Kurus, began to drench Arjuna with their arrowy downpours like the clouds drenching the mountains.[11] Then all of them encompassed the great car of the Pāndava. Assailing him, they uttered loud roars, although all the while they were being struck and slaughtered with sharp shafts.[12] Assailing his steeds, his car-wheels, his car-shaft, and every other limb of his vehicle, with great force, O sire, they uttered many leonine roars.[13] Some among them seized the massive arms of Keçava, and some among them, O king, seized Pārtha himself with great joy as he stood on his car.[14] Then Keçava, shaking his arms on the field of battle, threw down all those that had seized them, like a wicked elephant shaking down all the riders from his back.[15] Then Pārtha, encompassed by those great car-warriors, and beholding his car assailed and Keçava attacked in that manner, became filled with rage, and overthrew a large number of car-warriors and foot-soldiers.[16] And he covered all the combatants that were close to him with many arrows that were fit for close encounters. Addressing Keçava then, he said,[17]—Behold, O Krishna, O thou of mighty arms, these countless *Samsaptakas* engaged in accomplishing a fearful task although slaughtered in thousands![18] O bull amongst the Yadus, there is none on Earth, save myself, that would be able to bear such a close attack on his car.[19]—Having said these words, Vibhatsu blew his conch. Then Krishna also blew his conch filling the welkin with its blare.[20] Hearing that blare, the army of the *Samsaptakas* began to waver, O king, and became inspired with great fright.[21] Then that slayer of hostile heroes, viz., the son of Pāndu, paralysed the legs of the *Samsaptakas* by repeatedly invoking, O monarch, the weapon called *Nāga*.[22] Thus tied

with those foot-tying bands by the high-souled son of Pāndu, all of them stood motionless, O king as if they had been petrified.[23] The son of Pāndu then began to slay those motionless warriors like Indra in days of yore slaying the *Daityas* in the battle with Tāraka.[24] Thus slaughtered in that battle, they set the car free, and commenced to throw down all their weapons.[25] Their legs being paralysed, they could not, O king, move a step. Then Pārtha slew them with his straight arrows.[26] Indeed, all those warriors, in that battle, aiming at whom Pārtha had invoked that foot-tying weapon, had their lower limbs encircled with snakes.[27] Then the mighty car-warrior Suçarman, O monarch, beholding his army thus paralysed, quickly invoked the weapon called *Sauparna*.[28] Thereupon numerous birds began to come down and devour those snakes. The latter again, at sight of those rangers of the sky, began, O king, to fly away.[29] Freed from that foot-tying weapon, the *Samsaptaka* force, O monarch, looked like the Sun himself giving light unto all creatures, when freed from clouds.[30] Thus liberated, those warriors once more shot their arrows, O sire, and hurled their weapons at Arjuna's car. And all of them pierced Pārtha with numerous weapons.[31] Cutting off with his own arrowy downpour that shower of mighty weapons, Vāsava's son, that slayer of hostile heroes, began to slaughter those warriors.[32] Then Suçarman, O king, with a straight arrow, pierced Arjuna in the chest, and then he pierced him with three other shafts.[33] Deeply pierced therewith, and feeling great pain, Arjuna sat down on the terrace of his car. Then all the troops loudly cried out, saying,—*Pārtha is slain!*[34]—At this, the blare of conchs, and the peal of drums, and the sound of diverse musical instruments, and loud leonine shouts, arose there.[35] Recovering his senses, Pārtha of immeasurable soul, owning white steeds and having Krishna for his driver, speedily invoked the *Aindra* weapon.[36] Then thousands of arrows, O sire, issuing from that weapon, were seen on all sides to slay kings and elephants.[37] And steeds and cars, in hundreds and thousands, were also seen to be slaughtered in that battle, with those weapons. Then while the troops were thus being slaughtered, a great fear entered the hearts of all[38] the *Samsapta-*

kas and the *Gopālas*, O Bhārata! There was no man amongst them that could fight with Arjuna.[39] There, in the very sight of all the heroes, Arjuna began to destroy thy troops. Beholding that slaughter, all of them remained perfectly inactive, without putting forth their prowess.[40] Then the son of Pāndu, having slain full ten thousand combatants in that battle, looked resplendent, O monarch, like a blazing fire without smoke.[41] And then he slew full fourteen thousand warriors, and three thousand elephants.[42] Then the *Samsaptakas* once more encompassed Dhananjaya, making death or victory their goal.[43] The battle then that took place there between thy warriors and that mighty hero, viz., the diadem-decked son of Pāndu, became awful."[44]

Section LIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then Kritavarman, and Kripa, and the son of Drona, and the Suta's son, O sire, and Uluka, and Suvala's son (Cakuni), and the king himself, with his uterine brothers,[1] beholding the (Kuru) army, afflicted with the fear of Pāndu's son, unable to stand together like a vessel wrecked on the ocean, endeavoured to rescue it with great speed.[2] For a short space of time, O Bhārata, the battle that once more took place became exceedingly fierce, enhancing as it did the fears of the timid and the joy of the brave.[3] The dense showers of arrows shot in that battle by Kripa, thick as flights of locusts, covered the Srinjayas.[4] Then Cikhandin, filled with rage, speedily proceeded against the son of Gotama and poured upon that bull amongst Brāhmanas his arrowy downpours from all sides.[5] Acquainted with the highest weapons Kripa then checked that arrowy downpour, and wrathfully pierced Cikhandin with ten arrows in that battle.[6] Then Cikhandin, filled with rage, deeply pierced Kripa, in that encounter, with seven straight arrows equipt with *Kanka* feathers.[7] The twice-born Kripa then, that great car-warrior, deeply pierced with those keen arrows, deprived Cikhandin of his steeds, driver, and car.[8] Jumping down from his steedless vehicle, the mighty car-warrior (Cikhandin) rushed impeut-

ously at the Brāhman, having taken up a sword and a shield.[9] As the Pānchāla prince advanced, Kripa quickly covered him with many straight arrows in that encounter, which seemed exceedingly wonderful.[10] Indeed, exceedingly wonderful was the sight that we then beheld, even like the flying of rocks, for Cikhandin, O king, (thus assailed), remained perfectly inactive in that battle.[11] Beholding Cikhandin covered (with arrows) by Kripa, O best of kings, the mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna speedily proceeded against Kripa.[12] The great car-warrior Kritavarman, however, rushing impetuously, received Dhrishtadyumna as the latter proceeded against the son Caradwat.[13] Then Drona's son checked Yudhishthira as the latter, with his son and troops, was rushing towards the car of Caradwat's son.[14] Thy son Duryodhana, shooting a shower of arrows, received and checked Nakula and Sahadeva, those two great car-warriors endued with celerity.[15] Karna, too, otherwise called Vaikartana, O Bhārata, in that battle, resisted Bhimasena, and the Kārushas, the Kaikayas, and the Srinjayas.[16] Meanwhile Caradwat's son, in that battle, O sire, with great activity, sped many arrows at Cikhandin, as if for the purpose of burning him outright.[17] The Pānchāla prince, however, whirling his sword repeatedly, cut off all those arrows, decked with gold, that had been sped at him by Kripa from all sides.[18] The son of Gotama then quickly cut off with his arrows the shield of Prishata's son, that was decked with a hundred moons. At this feat of his, the troops made a loud uproar.[19] Deprived of his shield, O monarch, and placed under Kripa's power, Cikhandin still rushed, sword in hand, (towards Kripa), like a sick man towards the jaws of Death.[20] Then Suketu the son of Chitraketu, O king, quickly proceeded towards the mighty Cikhandin plunged into such distress and assailed in that manner by Kripa with his arrows.[21] Indeed, the young prince of immeasurable soul rushed towards the car of Gotama's son, and poured upon the Brāhmana in that battle innumerable shafts of great keenness.[22] Beholding that Brāhmana observant of vows thus engaged in battle (with another), Cikhandin, O best of kings, retreated hastily from that spot.[23] Meanwhile Suketu, O king, piercing the son of

Gotama with nine arrows, once more pierced him with seventy and again with three.[24] Then the prince, O sire, cut off Kripa's bow with arrow fixed thereon, and with another shaft struck hard the latter's driver in a vital limb[25]. The son of Gotama then, filled with rage, took up a new and very strong bow and struck Suketu with thirty arrows in all his vital limbs.[26] All his limbs exceedingly weakened, the prince trembled on his excellent car like a tree trembling exceedingly during an earthquake.[27] With a razor-headed arrow then, Kripa struck off from the prince's trunk, while the latter was still trembling, his head decked with a pair of blazing earrings and head-gear and head-protector.[28] That head thereupon fell down on the Earth like a piece of meat from the claws of a hawk, and then his trunk also fell down, O thou of great glory![29] Upon the fall of Suketu, O monarch, his troops became frightened, and avoiding Kripa, fled away on all sides.[30]

"'Encompassing the mighty Dhrishtadyumna, Kritavarman cheerfully addressed him, saying,—Wait, Wait![31]—The encounter then that took place between the Vrishni and the Pānchāla warriors in that battle became exceedingly fierce, like that between two hawks, O king, for a piece of meat.[32] Filled with rage, Dhrishtadyumna, in that battle, struck the son of Hridikā with nine arrows in the chest, and succeeded in afflicting him greatly.[33] Then Kritavarman, thus deeply struck by Prishata's son in that encounter, covered his assailant, his steeds, and his car, with his shafts.[34] Thus shrouded, O king, along with his car, Dhrishtadyumna became invisible like the Sun shrouded by rain-charged clouds.[35] Baffling all those shafts decked with gold, Dhrishtadyumna, O king, looked resplendent in that battle in his wounds.[36] The commander of the Pāndava forces, viz., the son of Prishata, then, filled with rage, approached Kritavarman and poured upon him a fierce shower of arrows.[37] The son of Hridikā, however, in that battle, with many thousands of his own arrows, destroyed that fierce arrowy shower coursing towards him with great impetuosity.[38] Beholding his irresistible shower of arrows checked in that battle by Kritavarman, the son of Prishata, approaching his antagonist, began to resist him.[39] And soon he despatched

Kritavarman's driver to Yama's abode with a broad-headed arrow of great sharpness. Deprived of life, the driver fell down from the car.[40] The mighty Dhrishtadyumna, having vanquished his mighty antagonist, began then to resist the Kauravas with his shafts, without losing a moment.[41] Then thy warriors, O king, rushed towards Dhrishtadyumna, uttering loud leonine roars. At this, a battle once more took place between them.' "[42]

Section LV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Meanwhile the son of Drona, beholding Yudhishthira protected by the grandson of Cini and by the heroic sons of the Draupadi, cheerfully advanced against the king,[1] scattering many fierce arrows equipt with wings of gold and whetted on stone, and displaying diverse manœvres of his car and the great skill he had acquired and his exceeding lightness of hands.[2] He filled the entire welkin with shafts inspired with the force of celestial weapons. Conversant with all weapons, Drona's son encompassed Yudhishthira in that battle.[3] The welkin being covered with the shafts of Drona's son, nothing could be seen. The vast space in front of Açwatthāman became one expanse of arrows.[4] The welkin then, thus covered with that dense shower of arrows decked with gold, looked beautiful, O chief of the Bharatas, as if a canopy embroidered with gold had been spread there.[5] Indeed, the firmament, O king, having been covered with that bright shower of arrows, a shadow, as that of the clouds, appeared there on the occassion.[6] Wonderful was the sight that we then beheld when the sky had thus become one expanse of arrows, for not one creature ranging the sky could course through his element.[7] Then Sātyaki, though struggling resolutely, and Pāndu's son king Yudhishthira the just, as also all the other warriors, could not display their prowess. Beholding the great lightness of hands displayed by the son of Drona, the mighty car-warriors (of the Pāndava army) were filled with wonder. All the kings became incapable of even looking at Açwatthāman, O monarch, who then resembled the scorching Sun himself in the sky.

While the (Pāndava) troops were thus being slaughtered, those mighty car-warriors, viz., the sons of Draupadi,[9-10] and Sātyaki, and king Yudhishthira the just, and the Pānchāla warriors, all uniting together, cast off their fears of death and rushed against the son of Drona.[11] Then Sātyaki, piercing the son of Drona with seven and twenty arrows, once more pierced him with seven long shafts decked with gold.[12] And Yudhishthira pierced him with three and seventy arrows, and Prativindya with seven; and Crutakarman pierced him with three arrows and Crutakirti with five.[13] And Sutasoma pierced him with nine arrows, and Catānika with seven. And many other heroes pierced him with many arrows from every side.[14] Filled then with rage and breathing, O king, like a snake of virulent poison, Drona's son pierced Sātyaki in return with five and twenty arrows whetted on stone.[15] And he pierced Crutakirti with nine arrows and Sutasoma with five; and with eight arrows he pierced Crutakarman, and Prativindya with three.[16] And he pierced Catānika with nine arrows, and Dharma's son (Yudhishthira) with five. And each of the other warriors he pierced with a couple of shafts. With some keen arrows he then cut off the bow of Crutakirti.[17] The latter then, that great car-warrior, taking up another bow, pierced Drona's son, first with three arrows and then with many others equipt with sharp points.[18] Then, O monarch, the son of Drona covered the Pāndava troops, O sire, with thick showers of arrows, O bull of Bharata's race.[19] Of immeasurable soul, the son of Drona, next, smiling the while, cut off the bow of king Yudhishthira the just, and then pierced him with three arrows.[20] The son of Dharma then, O king, taking up another formidable bow, pierced Drona's son with seventy arrows in the arms and the chest.[21] Then Sātyaki, filled with rage in that battle, cut off the bow of Drona's son, that great smiter, with a sharp crescent-shaped arrow and uttered a loud roar.[22] His bow cut off, that foremost of mighty men, viz., the son of Drona, quickly felled Sātyaki's driver from his car with a dart.[23] The valiant son of Drona then, taking up another bow, covered the grandson of Cini, O Bhārata, with a shower of arrows.[24] His driver having been slain, Sātyaki's steeds were seen to run

hither and thither, O Bhārata, in that battle.[25] Then the Pāndava warriors headed by Yudhishthira, shooting sharp shafts, all rushed with impetuosity towards Drona's son, that foremost of all wielders of weapons.[26] That scorcher of foes, however, viz., the son of Drona, beholding those warriors wrathfully advancing against him, received them all in that dreadful battle.[27] Then like a fire in the forest consuming heaps of dry grass and straw, that mighty car-warrior, viz., Drona's son, having showers of arrows for his flames, consumed the Pāndava troops in that battle, who resembled a heap of dry grass and straw.[28] That army of Pāndu's son, thus scorched by the son of Drona, became exceedingly agitated, O chief of the Bharatas, like the mouth of a river by a whale.[29] People then, O monarch, beholding the prowess of Drona's son, regarded all the Pāndavas as already slain by him.[30] Then Yudhishthira, that great car-warrior and disciple of Drona,* filled with rage and the desire to retaliate, addressed Drona's son, saying,[31]—O tiger among men, thou hast no affection, thou hast no gratitude, since thou desirest to slay *me* today![32] The duties of a Brāhmana are asceticism and gift and study. The bow should be bent by the Kshatriya only. It seems, therefore, that thou art a Brāhmana in name only![33] In thy very sight, however, O thou of mighty arms, I will vanquish the Kauravas in battle. Do what thou canst in battle. I tell thee that thou art a wretch mongst Brāhmanas![34]—Thus addressed, the son of Drona, smiling, and reflecting upon what was proper and true, gave no reply.[35] Without saying anything, he covered the son of Pāndu in that battle with a shower of arrows, like the Destroyer himself in wrath while engaged in annihilating creatures.[36] Thus covered by Drona's son, O sire, the son of Prithā quickly went away from that spot, leaving that large division of his.[37] After Yudhishthira the son of Dharma had gone away, the high-souled son of Drona also, O king, left that spot.[38] Then Yudhishthira, O king, avoiding the son of Drona in that great battle, proceeded against thy army, resolved to achieve the cruel task of slaughter.' "[39]

---

* I adopt the Bombay reading.—T.

Section LVI.

"Sanjaya said,—"Meanwhile Viakartana himself, resisting Bhimasena supported by the Pānchālas and the Chedis and the Kaikayas, covered him with many arrows.[1] In the very sight of Bhimasena, Karna slew in that battle many mighty car-warriors among the Chedis, the Kārushas, and the Srinjayas.[2] Then Bhimasena, avoiding Karna, that best of car-warriors, proceeded against the Kaurava troops like a blazing fire towards a heap of dry grass.[3] The Suta's son also, in that battle, began to slay the mighty bowmen amongst the Pānchālas, the Kaikayas, and the Srinjayas, in thousands.[4] Indeed, the three mighty car-warriors, viz., Pārtha and Vrikodara and Karna, began to exterminate the *Samsaptakas*, the Kauravas, and the Pānchālas, respectively.[5] In consequence of thy evil policy, O king, all those Kshatriyas, scorched with excellent shafts by those three great warriors, began to be exterminated in that battle.[6] Then Duryodhana, O chief of the Bharatas, filled with rage, pierced Nakula and his four steeds with nine arrows.[7] Of immeasurable soul, thy son next, O ruler of men, cut off the golden standard of Sahadeva with a razor-faced shaft.[8] Filled with wrath, Nakula then, O king, struck thy son with three and seventy arrows in that battle, and Sahadeva struck him with five.[9] Each of those foremost warriors of Bharata's race and foremost of all bowmen, was struck by Duryodhana in rage with five arrows.[10] With a couple of broad-headed arrows then, he cut off the bows of both those warriors; and then he suddenly pierced each of the twins with three and seventy arrows.[11] Taking up then two other beautiful and foremost of bows each of which resembled the bow of Indra himself, those two heroes looked beautiful like a pair of celestial youths in that battle.[12] Then those two brothers, both endued with great activity in battle, poured upon their cousin, O king, ceaseless showers of terrible shafts like two masses of clouds pouring rain upon a mountain breast.[13] Thereupon thy son, that great car-warrior, O king, filled with rage, resisted those two great bowmen, viz., the twin sons of Pāndu, with showers of winged arrows.[14] The bow of Duryo-

dhana in that battle, O Bhārata, seemed to be continuously drawn into a circle, and shafts seemed to issue from it ceaselessly on all sides.[15] Covered with Duryodhana's shafts, the two sons of Pāndu ceased to shine brightly, like the Sun and the Moon in the firmament, divested of splendour, when shrouded by masses of clouds.[16] Indeed, those arrows, O king, equipt with wings of gold and whetted on stone, covered all the points of the compass like the rays of the Sun.[17] When the welkin was thus shrouded and all that was seen was one uniform expanse of arrows, the aspect that each of the twins showed was that of the Destroyer himself at the end of the *Yuga*.[18] Beholding, on the other hand, the prowess of thy son, the great car-warriors all regarded the twin sons of Mādri to be in the presence of Death.[19] The commander then, O king, of the Pāndava army, viz., the mighty car-warrior Pārshata, proceeded to that spot where Duryodhana was.[20] Transgressing those two great car-warriors, viz., the two brave sons of Mādri, Dhrishtadyumna began to resist thy son with his shafts.[21] Of immeasurable soul, that bull among men, viz., thy son, filled with the desire to retaliate, and similing the while, pierced the prince of Pānchāla with five and twenty arrows.[22] Of immeasurable soul and filled with the desire to retaliate, thy son once more pierced the prince of Pānchāla with sixty shafts and once again with five, and uttered a loud roar.[23] Then the king, with a sharp razor-faced arrow, cut off, in that battle, O sire, the bow with arrow fixed thereon and the leathern fence of his antagonist.[24] Casting aside that broken bow, the prince of Pānchāla, that crusher of foes quickly took up another bow that was new and capable of bearing a great strain.[25] Blazing with impetuosity, and with eyes red as blood from rage, the great bowman Dhrishtadyumna, with many wounds on his person, looked resplendent on his car.[26] Desirous of slaying Duryodhana, O chief of the Bharatas, the Pānchāla hero sped five and ten clothyard shafts that resembled hissing snakes.[27] Those shafts, whetted on stone and equipt with the feathers of *Kankas* and peacocks, cutting through the armour, decked with gold, of the king, passed through his body and entered the Earth in consequence of the force with which they had been

shot.[28] Deeply pierced, O monarch, thy son looked exceedingly beautiful like a gigantic *Kinçuka* in the season of spring with its flowery weight.[29] His armour pierced with those shafts, and all his limbs rendered exceedingly infirm with wounds, he became filled with rage and cut off Dhrishtadyumna's bow with a broad-headed arrow.[30] Having cut off his assailant's bow, the king then, O monarch, with great speed, struck him with ten shafts on the forehead between the two eye-brows.[31] Those shafts, polished by the hands of the smith, adorned Dhrishtadyumna's face like a number of bees, desirous of honey, adorning a full-blown lotus.[32] Throwing aside that broken bow, the high-souled Dhrishtadyumna quickly took up another, and with it, sixteen broad-headed arrows.[33] With five he slew the four steeds and the driver of Duryodhana, and he cut off, with another, his bow decked with gold.[34] With the remaining ten shafts, the son of Prishata cut off the car with the *upashkara*, the umbrella, the dart, the sword, the mace, and the standard of thy son.[35] Indeed, all the kings beheld the beautiful standard of the Kuru king, decked with golden *Angadhas* and bearing the divice of an elephant worked in jewels, cut off by the prince of the Pānchālas.[36] Then the uterine brothers of Duryodhana, O bull of Bharata's race, rescued the carless Duryodhana who had all his weapons, besides, cut off in that battle.[37] In the very sight of Dhrishtadyumna, Drudhara, O monarch, causing that ruler of men to ride upon his car, quickly bore him away from the battle.[38]

"'Meanwhile the mighty Karna, having vanquished Sātyaki and desirous of rescuing the (Kuru) king, proceeded straight against the face of Drona's slayer, that warrior of fierce shafts.[39] The grandson of Cini, however, quickly pursued him from behind, striking him with his arrows, like an elephant pursuing a rival and striking him at the hinder limbs with his tusks.[40] Then, O Bhārata, fierce became the battle that raged between the high-souled warriors of the two armies, in the space that intervened between Karna and the son of Prishata.[41] Not a single combatant of either the Pāndavas or ourselves turned his face from the battle. Then Karna proceeded against the Pānchālas with great speed.[42] At that hour when the Sun had ascended

the meridian, a great slaughter, O best of men, of elephants and steeds and men, took place on both sides.[43] The Pānchālas, O king, inspired with desire of victory, all rushed with speed against Karna like birds towards a tree.[44] The son of Adhiratha, of great energy, filled with rage, began from their front to strike those Pānchālas, with the keen points of his shafts, singling out their leaders,[45] viz., Vyāghraketu and Suçarman and Chitra and Ugrāyudha and Jaya and Cukla and Rochamāna and the invincible Singhasena.[46] Those heroes, speedily advancing with their cars, encompassed that foremost of men, and poured their shafts upon that angry warrior, viz., Karna, that ornament of battle.[47] That foremost of men, endued with great valour, viz., the son of Rādhā, afflicted those eight heroes engaged in battle with him, with eight keen shafts.[48] The Suta's son, possessed of great prowess, O king, then slew many thousands of other warriors skilled in fight.[49] Filled with rage, the son of Rādhā then slew Jishnu, and Jishnukarman, and Devāpi, O king, in that battle, and Chitra, and Chitrāyudha, and Hari, and Singhaketu, and Rochamāna, and the great car-warrior Calabha, and many car-warriors among the Chedis.[50-51] Bathed in blood, the form of Adhiratha's son, while he was engaged in taking the lives of those heroes, swelled with energy and pride like the gigantic form of Rudra himself.[52] There, O Bhārata, elephants, assailed with arrows by Karna, fled away on all sides in fear and caused a great agitation on the field of battle.[53] Others assailed with the shafts of Karna, uttered diverse cries, and fell down like mountains riven with thunder.[54] With the fallen bodies of elephants and steeds and men and with fallen cars, the Earth became strewn along the track of Karna's car.[55] Indeed, neither Bhishma, nor Drona, nor any other warrior of thy army, had ever achieved such feats as were then achieved by Karna in that battle.[56] Amongst elephants, amongst steeds, amongst cars, and amongst men, the Suta's son caused a very great carnage, O tiger among men.[57] As a lion is seen to career fearlessly among a herd of deer, even so Karna careered fearlessly among the Pānchālas.[58] As a lion routeth a herd of terrified deer to all points of the compass, even so Karna routed those throngs

of Pānchāla cars to all sides.[59] As deer that have approached the jaws of a lion, can never escape with life, even so those great car-warriors that approached Karna could not escape with their lives.[60] As people are certainly burnt if they come in contact with a blazing fire, even so the Srinjayas, O Bhārata, were burnt by the Karna-fire when they came in contact with it.[61] Many warriors among the Chedis and the Pānchālas, O Bhārata, that were regarded by heroes, were slain by the single-handed Karna in that battle who fought with them, proclaiming his name in every instance.[62] Beholding the prowess of Karna, O king, I thought that a single Pānchāla even would not, in that battle, escape from the son of Adhiratha.[63] Indeed, the Suta's son, in that battle, repeatedly routed the Pānchālas.[64]

" 'Beholding Karna thus slaughtering the Pānchālas in that dreadful battle, king Yudhishthira the just rushed in wrath towards him.[65] Dhrishtadyumna and the sons of Draupadi also, O sire, and hundreds of warriors, encompassed that slayer of foes, viz., the son of Rādhā.[66] And Cikhandin, and Sahadeva, and Nakula, and Nakula's son, and Janamejaya, and the grandson of Cini, and innumerable Prabhadrakas,[67]—these, endued with immeasurable energy,—advancing with Dhrishtadyumna in their van, looked magnificent as they struck Karna with shafts and diverse weapons.[68] Like Garuda falling upon a large number of snakes, the son of Adhiratha, single-handed, fell upon all those Chedis and Pānchālas and Pāndavas in that encounter.[69] The battle that took place between them and Karna, O monarch, became exceedingly fierce like that which had occurred in days of old between the gods and the *Dānavas*.[70] Like the Sun dispelling the surrounding darkness, Karna fearlessly and alone encountered all those great bowmen united together and pouring upon him repeated showers of arrows.[71] While the son of Rādhā was thus engaged with the Pāndavas, Bhimasena, filled with rage, began to slaughter the Kurus with shafts every one of which resembled the rod of Yama.[72] That great bowman, fighting single-handed with the Vālhikas, and the Kaikayas, the Matsayas, the Vasātis, the Madras, and the Saindhavas, looked exceedingly resplendent.[73] There, elephants,

assailed in their vital limbs by Bhima with his clothyard shafts, fell down, with their riders slain, making the Earth tremble with the violence of their fall.[74] Steeds also, with their riders slain, and foot-soldiers deprived of life, lay down, pierced with arrows and vomiting blood in large quantities.[75] Car-warriors in thousands fell down, their weapons loosened from their hands. Inspired with the fear of Bhima, they lay deprived of life, their bodies mangled with wounds.[76] The Earth became strewn with car-warriors and horsemen and elephant-men and drivers and foot-soldiers and steeds and elephants all mangled with the shafts of Bhimasena.[77] The army of Duryodhana, O king, cheerless and mangled and afflicted with the fear of Bhimasena, stood as if stupified.[78] Indeed, that melancholy host stood motionless in that dreadful battle like the Ocean, O king, during a calm in autumn.[79] Stupified did that host stand even like the Ocean in a calm. However endued with wrath and energy and might, the army of thy son then, divested of its pride, lost all its splendour. Indeed, that host, whilst thus being slaughtered,*[80-81] became drenched with gore and seemed to bathe in blood. The combatants, O chief of the Bharatas, drenched with blood, were seen to approach and slaughter one another.[82] The Suta's son, filled with rage, routed the Pāndava division, while Bhimasena in rage routed the Kurus. And both of them, while thus employed, looked exceedingly resplendent.[83] During the progress of that fierce battle filling the spectators with wonder, Arjuna, that foremost of victorious persons, having slain a large number of *Samsaptakas* in the midst of their array, addressed Vāsudeva, saying,—This struggling force of *Samsaptakas*, O Janārddana, is broken![84-85] Those great car-warriors amongst the *Samsaptakas* are flying away with their followers, unable to bear my shafts like deer unable to bear the roar of the lion![86] The vast force of the Srinjayas also seems to break in this great battle! There that banner of the intelligent Karna, bearing the device of the elephant's rope, O Krishna,[87] is seen in the midst of Yudhishthira's division, where he is careering with activity!

---

* The Bengal reading *Yuddhyamānam* is erroneous. The Bombay reading is *Yudhyamānam*.—T.

The other great car-warriors (of our army) are incapable of vanquishing Karna![88] Thou knowest that Karna is possessed of great energy as regards prowess in battle! Proceed thither where Karna is routing our forces![89] Avoiding (other warriors) in battle, proceeded against the Suta's son, that mighty car-warrior! This is what I wish, O Krishna! Do, however, that which thou likest![90]—Hearing these words of his, Govinda smiled, and addressing Arjuna, said,—Slay the Kauravas, O son of Pāndu, without delay![91]—Then those steeds, white as swans, urged by Govinda, and bearing Krishna and the son of Pāndu, penetrated thy vast force.[92] Indeed, thy host broke on all sides as those white steeds in trappings of gold, urged by Keçava, penetrated into its midst.[93] That ape-bannered car, the clatter whose wheels resembled the deep roar of the clouds and whose flags waved on the air, penetrated into the host like a celestial car passing through the welkin.[94] Keçava and Arjuna, filled with rage, and with eyes red as blood, as they penetrated, piercing through thy vast host, looked exceedingly resplendent in their splendour.[95] Both delighting in battle, as those two heroes, challenged by the Kurus, came to the field, they looked like the twin Açwins invoked with proper rites in a sacrifice by the officiating priests.[96] Filled with rage, the impetuosity of those two tigers among men increased like that of two elephants in a large forest, enraged at the claps of hunters.[97] Having penetrated into the midst of that car-force and those bodies of horse, Phālguna careered within those divisions like the Destroyer himself armed with the fatal noose.[98] Beholding him put forth such prowess within his army, thy son, O Bhārata, once more urged the *Samsaptakas* against him.[99] Thereupon, with a thousand cars, and three hundred elephants, and fourteen thousand horse,[100] and two hundred thousands of foot-soldiers armed with the bow, endued with great courage, of sureness of aim, and conversant with all the ways of battle,[101] the leaders of the *Samsaptakas* rushed [from every side]* towards the son of Kunti [in that great battle],† covering the

* This expression occurs in 101.—T.

† This occurs in 100.—T.

Pāndava, O monarch, with showers of arrows from all sides.[102] Thus covered with shafts in that battle, Pārtha, that grinder of hostile forces, exhibited himself in a fierce form like the Destroyer himself armed with the noose. While engaged in slaughtering the *Samsaptakas*, Pārtha became a worthier object of sight with all.[103] Then the welkin became filled with shafts decked with gold and possessed of the effulgence of lightning that were ceaselessly shot by the diadem-decked Arjuna.[104] Indeed, everything, completely shrouded with mighty shafts sped from Arjuna's arms and falling ceaselessly all around, looked resplendent, O lord, as if covered with snakes.[105] The son of Pāndu, of immeasurable soul, shot on all sides his straight shafts equipt with wings of gold and furnished with keen points.[106] In consequence of the sound of Pārtha's palms, people thought that the Earth, or the vault of the welkin, or all the points of the compass, or the several oceans, or the mountains, seemed to split.[107] Having slain ten thousand Khatriyas, Kunti's son, that mighty car-warrior, then quickly proceeded to the further wing of the *Samsaptakas*.[108] Repairing to that further wing which was protected by the Kāmvojas, Pārtha began to grind it forcibly with his arrows like Vāsava grinding the *Dānavas*.[109] With broad-headed arrows he began to quickly cut off the arms, with weapons in grasp, and also the heads, of foes longing to slay him.[110] Deprived of diverse limbs, and of weapons, they began to fall down on the Earth, like trees of many boughs broken by a hurricane.[111] While he was engaged in thus slaughtering elephants and steeds and car-warrriors and foot-soldiers, the younger brother of Sudakshin (the chief of the Kāmvojas) began to pour showers of arrows on him.[112] With a couple of crescent-shaped arrows, Arjuna then cut off the two arms, looking like spiked maces, of his striking assailant, and then his head graced with a face as beautiful as the full moon, with a razor-headed arrow.[113] Deprived of life, he fell down from his vehicle, his body bathed in blood, like the thunder-riven summit of a mountain of red arsenic.[114] Indeed, people saw the tall and exceedingly handsome younger brother of Sudakshina the chief of the Kāmvojas, of eyes resembling lotus petals, slain and fall down like a column of gold or

like a summit of the golden Sumeru.[115] Then commenced a battle there once more that was fierce and exceedingly wonderful. The condition of the struggling combatants varied repeatedly.[116] Each slain with a single arrow, steeds and combatants of the Kāmvoja, the Yavana, and the Caka races, fell down bathed in blood, upon which the whole field of battle became one expanse of red, O monarch![117] In consequence of car-warriors deprived of steeds and drivers, and steeds deprived of riders, and elephants deprived of riders, and riders deprived of elephants, battling with one another, O king, a great carnage took place.[118] When the wing and the further wing of the *Samsaptakas* had thus been exterminated by Savyasāchin, the son of Drona quickly proceeded against Arjuna, that foremost of victorious warriors.[119] Indeed, Drona's son rushed, shaking his formidable bow, and taking with him many terrible arrows, like the Sun himself appearing with his own rays.[120] With mouth wide open from rage and the desire to retaliate, and with red eyes, the mighty Açwatthāman looked formidable like Death himself armed with his mace and filled with wrath as at the end of the *Yuga*.*[121] He then shot showers of fierce shafts. With those shafts sped by him, he began to rout the Pāndava army.[122] As soon, however, as he beheld him of Daçārha's race on the car, O king, he once more sped at him, O sire, repeated showers of fierce shafts.[123] With those falling shafts, O monarch, sped by Drona's son, both Krishna and Dhananjaya were completely shrouded on their car.[124] Then the valiant Açwatthāman, with hundreds of keen arrows, stupified both Mādhava and the son of Pāndu in that battle.[125] Beholding those two protectors of all mobile and immobile creatures thus covered with arrows, the universe of mobile and immobile beings uttered cries of *oh* and *alas*.[126] Crowds of *Siddhas* and *Chāranas* began to repair to that spot from every side, mentally uttering this prayer, viz.,—Let good be to all the worlds![127]—Never before, O king, did I see prowess like that of Drona's son in that battle while he was engaged

---

* *Kinkaradandabhrit*,—Nilakatha explains that *Kinkara* was probably the name of the mace or bludgeon that Yama had for his weapon.—T.

in shrouding the two Krishnas with shafts.[128] The sound of Açwatthāman's bow, inspiring foes with terror, was repeatedly heard by us in that battle, O king, to resemble that of a roaring lion.[129] While careering in that battle and striking on his left and right, the string of his bow looked beautifull like flashes of lightning in the midst of a mass of clouds.[130] Though endued with great firmness and lightness of hand, the son of Pāndu, for all that, beholding the son of Drona then, became greatly stupified.[131] Indeed, Arjuna then regarded his own prowess to be destroyed by his high-souled assailant. The form of Açwatthāman became such in that battle that men could with difficulty gaze at it.[132] During the progress of that dreadful battle between Drona's son and the Pāndava, during that time when the mighty son of Drona, O monarch, thus prevailed over his antagonist and the son of Kunti lost his energy, Krishna became filled with rage. Inspired with wrath, he drew deep breaths, O king, and seemed to burn with his eyes both Açwatthāman and Phālguna as he looked at them repeatedly. Filled with rage, Krishna addressed Pārtha in an affectionate tone, saying,[133-35]—This, O Pārtha, that I behold in battle regarding thee is exceedingly strange, since Drona's son, O Pārtha, surpasseth thee today![136] Hast thou not now the energy and the might of thy arms thou hadst before? Hast thou not that *Gāndiva* still in thy hands, and dost thou not stay on thy car now?[137] Are not thy two arms sound? Hath thy fist suffered any hurt? Why is it then that I see the son of Drona prevail over thee in battle?[138] Do not, O Pārtha, spare thy assailant, regarding him as the son of thy preceptor, O bull of Bharata's race! This is not the time for sparing him![139]—Thus addressed by Krishna, Partha speedily took up four and ten broad-headed arrows at a time when speed was of the highest monument, and with them he cut off Açwatthāman's bow and standard and umbrella and banners and car and dart and mace.[140] With a few calf-toothed arrows he then deeply struck the son of Drona in the latter's shoulder. Thereupon, overcome with a deep swoon, Açwatthāman sat down, supporting himself on his flagstaff.[141] The latter's driver then, O monarch, desirous of protecting him from Dhananjaya, bore him away

insensible and thus deeply afflicted by the foe.[142] Meanwhile, that scorcher of foes, viz., Vijaya, slaughtered thy troops by hundreds and thousands, in the very sight of that hero, viz., thy son, O sire![143] Thus, O king, in consequence of thy evil counsels, a cruel and awful destruction and carnage commenced as thy warriors were engaged with the enemy.[144] Within a short time Vibhatsu routed the *Samsaptakas*; Vrikodara, the Kurus; and Vasusena, the Pānchālas.[145] During the progress of that battle destructive of great heroes, there rose many headless trunks all around.[146] Meanwhile Yudhishthira, O chief the Bharatas, in great pain owing to his wounds, retreating about two miles from the battle, rested himself for some time.' "[147]

SECTION LVII.

Sanjaya said,—'Then Duryodhana, O chief of the Bharatas, repairing to Karna, said unto him as also unto the ruler of the Madras and the other lords of Earth present there, these words,[1] —Without seeking hath this occasion arrived, when the gates of heaven have become wide open! Happy are those Kshatriyas, O Karna, that obtain such a battle![2] Brave heroes, fighting in battle with brave Kshatriyas equal to them in might and prowess, obtain great good, O son of Rādhā! The occasion that hath come is even such![3] Either let these brave Kshatriyas, slaying the Pāndavas in battle, obtain the broad Earth, or let them, slain in battle by the foe, win the blessed region reserved for heroes![4]—Hearing these words of Duryodhana, those bulls among Kshatriyas cheerfully uttered loud shouts and beat and blew their musical instruments.[5] When Duryodhana's force became thus filled with joy, the son of Drona, gladdening all thy warriors further, said,—In the very sight of all the troops, and before the eyes of you all, my father, after he had laid aside his weapons, was slain by Dhrishtadyumna![6-7] By that wrath which such an act might kindle, and for the sake also of my friend, ye kings, I swear truly before you all! Listen then to that oath of mine![8] *Without slaying Dhrishtadyumna I shall not doff my armour!* If this vow of mine be not fulfiled, let me not go to heaven![9] Be it Arjuna,

be it Bhimasena, or be it anybody else, whoever will come against me I will crush him or all of them! There is no doubt in this![10]—After Açwatthāman had uttered these words, the entire Bharata army, united together, rushed against the Pāndavas, and the latter also rushed against the former.[11] That collision of brave leaders of car-divisions, O Bhārata, became exceedingly awful. A destruction of life then set in at the van of the Kurus and the Srinjayas, that resembled what takes place at the last great universal dissolution.[12]* Upon the commencement of that passage-at-arms, various (superior) beings, with the gods, came there, accompanied by the *Apsaras*, for beholding those foremost of men.[13] Filled with joy, the *Apsaras* began to cover those foremost of men devoted to the duties of their order, with celestial garlands, with diverse kinds of celestial perfumes, and with diverse species of gems.[14] Soft winds bore those excellent odors to the nostrils of all the foremost of warriors. Having smelt those perfumes in consequence of the action of the wind, the warriors once more engaged in battle, and striking one another began to fall down on the Earth.[15] Strewn with celestial flowers, with beautiful shafts equipt with wings of gold, and with many foremost of warriors, the Earth looked beautiful like the firmament bespangled with myriads of stars.[16] Then in consequence of cheers coming from the welkin and the noise of musical instruments, the furious passage-at-arms distinguished by twang of bows and clatter of car-wheels and shouts of warriors became exceedingly fierce.'"[17]

SECTION LVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thus raged that great battle between those lords of Earth when Arjuna and Karna and Bhimasena the son of Pāndu became angry.[1] Having vanquished the son of Drona, and other great car-warriors, Arjuna, O king, addressing Vāsudeva, said,[2]—Behold, O Krishna of mighty arms, the Pāndava army is flying away! Behold, Karna is slaying

---

* I adopt the Bombay reading. *Kāla-yugānta* is explained as the *Mahāpralaya*.—T.

our great car-warriors in this battle![3] I do not, O thou of Daçārha's race, see king Yudhishthira the just! Nor is the standard of Dharma's son, O foremost of warriors, visible![4] The third part of the day still remaineth, O Janārddana! No one amongst the Dhārtarāshtras cometh against me for fight![5] For doing, therefore, what is agreeable to me, proceed to the spot where Yudhishthira is! Beholding Dharma's son safe and sound with his younger brothers in battle,[6] I will again fight with the foe, O thou of Vrishni's race!—At these words of Vibhatsu, Hari quickly proceeded on that car[7] to that spot where king Yudhishthira, along with the mighty Srinjaya car-warriors of great strength, were fighting with the foe, making death their goal.[8] During the progress of that great carnage, Govinda, beholding the field of battle, addressed Savyasāchin, saying,[9]—Behold, O Pārtha, great and awful is this carnage, O Bhārata, of Kshatriyas on Earth for the sake of Duryodhana![10] Behold, O Bhārata, the gold-backed bows of slain warriors, as also their costly quivers displaced from their shoulders![11] Behold those straight shafts equipt with wings of gold, and those clothyard arrows washed with oil and looking like snakes freed from their sloughs![12] Behold, O Bhārata, those scimitars, decked with gold and having ivory handles, and those displaced shields embossed with gold![13] Behold those lances decked with gold, those darts having golden ornaments, and those huge maces twined round with gold![14] Behold those swords adorned with gold, those axes with golden ornaments, and the heads of those battle-axes fallen off from their golden handles.[15] Behold those iron *Kuntas*, those short clubs exceedingly heavy, those beautiful rockets, those huge bludgeons with spiked heads, those disci displaced from the arms of their wielders, and those spears (that have been used) in this dreadful battle![16] Endued (while living) with great activity, warriors that came to battle, having taken up diverse weapons, are lying, though deprived of life, as if still alive![17] Behold, thousands of warriors lying on the field, with limbs crushed by means of maces, or heads broken by means of heavy clubs, or torn and mangled by elephants and steeds and cars.[18] The field of battle is covered with shafts and darts and swords

and axes and scimitars and spiked maces and lances and iron *Kuntas* and battle-axes, and the bodies of men and steeds and elephants, hacked with many wounds and covered with streams of blood and deprived of life, O slayer of foes![19-20] The Earth looks beautiful, O Bhārata, with arms smeared with sandal, decked with *Angadas* of gold and with *Keyuras*, and having their ends cased in leathern fences.[21] With hands cased in leathern fences, with displaced ornaments, with severed thighs, looking like elephants' trunks, of many active warriors,[22] with fallen heads, decked with costly gems and ear-rings, of heroes having large expansive eyes, the Earth looks exceedingly beautiful![23] With headless trunks smeared all over with blood, with severed limbs and heads and lips, the Earth looks, O best of the Bharatas, like an altar strewn with extinguished fires![24] Behold those beautiful cars with rows of golden bells, broken in diverse ways, and those slain steeds lying scattered on the field, with arrows yet sticking to their bodies![25] Behold those bottoms of cars, those quivers, those banners, those diverse kinds of standards, those gigantic conchs of car-warriors, white in hue and scattered all over the field![26] Behold those elephants. huge as hills, lying on the Earth, with tongues lolling out, and those other elephants and steeds, deprived of life and decked with triumphal banners![27] Behold those housings of elephants, and those skins and blankets, and those other beautiful and variegated and torn blankets![28] Behold those rows of bells torn and broken in diverse ways in consequence of falling elephants of gigantic size, and those beautiful goads set with stones of *lapis lazuli*, and those hooks falling upon the ground![29] Behold those whips, adorned with gold, and variegated with gems, still in the grasp of (slain) horsemen, and those blankets and skins of the *Rānku* deer falling on the ground but which had served for seats on horse-back.[30] Behold those gems for adorning the diadems of kings, and those beautiful necklaces of gold, and those displaced umbrellas and yak-tails for fanning![31] Behold the Earth, miry with blood, strewn with the faces of heroes, decked with beautiful ear-rings and well-cut beards and possessed of the splendour of the moon and stars![32] Behold those wounded warriors in whom life is

not yet extinct and who, lying all around, are uttering wails of woe! Their relatives, O prince, casting aside their weapons, are tending them, weeping incessantly![33] Having covered many warriors with arrows and deprived them of life, behold, those combatants, endued with activity, longing for victory, and swelling with rage, are once more proceeding for battle against other antagonists![34] Others are running hither and thither on the field! Begged for water by fallen heroes related to them,[35] others have gone in quest of drink! Many, O Arjuna, are breathing their last meanwhile! Returning, their brave relatives, seeing them become senseless,[36] are throwing down the water they have brought and are running wildly, shouting at one another! Behold, many have died after having slaked their thirst, and many, O Bhārata, are dying while drinking![37] Others, though affectionate towards relatives, still deserting their dear relatives, are seen to rush towards foes in great battle![38] Others, again, O best of men, biting their nether lips, and with faces rendered terrible in consequence of the contraction of their bows, are surveying the field all around![39]—While saying these words unto Arjuna, Vāsudeva proceeded towards Yudhishthira. Arjuna also, for beholding the king in that great battle, repeatedly urged Govinda, saying,—*Proceed, Proceed*![40]—Having shown the field of battle to Pārtha, Mādhava, while proceeding quickly, slowly said unto Pārtha once more,[41]—Behold those kings rushing towards king Yudhishthira! Behold Karna, who resembles a blazing fire, on the arena of battle![42] Yonder the mighty-bowman Bhima is proceeding to battle! They that are the foremost among the Pānchālas, the Srinjayas, and the Pāndavas,—they, that is, that have Dhrishtadyumna for their head,—are following Bhima![43] The vast army of the enemy is again broken by the rushing Pārthas! Behold, O Arjuna, Karna is trying to rally the flying Kauravas![44] Resembling the Destroyer himself in impetuosity and Indra himself in prowess, yonder proceedeth Drona's son, O thou of Kuru's race, that hero, viz., who is the foremost of all wielders of weapons![45] The mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna is rushing against that hero! The Srinjayas are following the lead of Dhrishtadyumna! Behold, the Srinjayas are

falling![46]—Thus did the invincible Vāsudeva describe everything unto the diadem-decked Arjuna. Then, O king, commenced a terrible and awful battle.[47] Loud leonine shouts arose as the two hosts encountered each other, O monarch, making death their goal.[48] Eeven thus, O king, in consequence of thy evil counsels, did that destruction set in on Earth, O lord of Earth, of both thy warriors and those of the enemy!'"[49]

SECTION LIX.

"Sanjaya said,—"Then the Kurus and the Srinjayas once more fearlessly encountered each other in battle, the Pārthas being headed by Yudhishthira, and ourselves headed by the Suta's son.[1] Then commenced a terrible battle, making the hair to stand on end, between Karna and the Pāndavas, that increased the population of Yama's kingdom.[2] After that furious battle, producing rivers of blood, had commenced, and when a remnant only of the brave *Samsaptakas*, O Bhārata, were left unslaughtered,[3] Dhrishtadyumna, O monarch, with all the kings (on the Pāndava side), and those mighty car-warriors, the Pāndavas themselves, all rushed against Karna only.[4] Like the mountain receiving a vast body of water. Karna, unaided by any one, received in that battle all those advancing warriors filled with joy and longing for victory.[5] Those mighty car-warriors, encountering Karna, were beat off and broken like a mass of water beat back on all sides when it encounters a mountain.[6] The battle, however, that took place between them and Karna made the hair to stand on end. Then Dhrishtadyumna assailed the son of Rādhā with a straight shaft in that battle, and addressing him said,—Wait, Wait![7]—The mighty car-warrior Karna, filled with rage, shook his foremost of bows called *Vijaya*, and cutting off the bow of Dhrishtadyumna as also his arrows resembling snakes of virulent poison, assailed Dhrishtadyumna himself with nine arrows. Those arrows, O sinless one, piercing through the gold-decked armour of the high-souled son of Prishata,[8-9] became bathed in blood and looked beautiful like so many coccinella. The mighty car-warrior Dhrishtadyumna, casting aside that

broken bow,[10] took up another bow and a number of shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison. With those straight shafts numbering seventy, he pierced Karna.[11] Similarly, O king, Karna, in that battle, covered Prishata's son, that scorcher of foes, with many shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison. The slayer of Drona, that great bowman, retaliated by piercing Karna with many keen shafts.[12] Filled with rage, Karna then, O monarch, sped at his antagonist a gold-decked shaft that resembled a second rod of Death.[13] That terrible shaft, O monarch, as it coursed impetuously towards Prishata's son, the grandson of Cini, O king, cut off into seven fragments, desplaying great lightness of hand.[14] Beholding his shaft baffled by the arrows of Sātyaki, O king, Karna resisted Sātyaki with showers of arrows from every side.[15] And he pierced Sātyaki in that encounter, with seven clothyard shafts. The grandson of Cini, however, pierced him in return with many arrows decked with gold.[16] The battle then that took place, O king, between those two warriors was such as to fill both spectators and auditors with fear. Though awful, soon it became beautiful and a deserving objects of sight.[17] Beholding the feats, in that encounter, of Karna and the grandson of Cini, the hair of all the creatures there present seemed to stand on end.[18] Meanwhile the mighty son of Drona rushed against Prishata's son, that chastiser of foes, and queller of the prowess of all enemies.[19] Filled with rage, Drona's son, that subjugator of hostile towns, addressing Dhrishtadyumna, said,—Wait, wait, O slayer of a Brāhmana, thou shalt not escape me today with life![20]—Having said these words, that mighty car-warrior of great lightness of hand, striving resolutely, deeply pierced the brave son of Prishata, who also strove to the utmost of his prowess, with many keen and terrible shafts endued with great impetuosity. As Drona (while alive), beholding the son of Prishata, O sire, had become cheerless and regarded him as his death, even so that slayer of hostile heroes, the son of Prishata, beholding Drona's son in that battle, now regarded him as his death.[21-23] Soon, however, remembering that he was unslayable in battle by means of weapons, rushed with great speed against Drona's son, like the Destroyer

rushing against the Destroyer at the time of the universal dissolution.[24] Drona's heroic son, however, O monarch, beholding Dhrishtadyumna stationed before him, drew deep breaths in wrath and rushed towards him.[25] Both of them were filled with great rage at sight of each other. Endued with great activity, the valiant son of Drona then, O monarch, said these words unto Dhrishtadyumna staying not far from him:—O wretch amongst the Pānchālas, I shall today despatch thee to Yama![26-27] The sin thou hast committed by slaying Drona before will fill thee today with regret, to thy great evil,[28] if thou stayest in battle without being protected by Pārtha, or if thou dost not fly away, O fool! I tell thee truly![29]—Thus addressed, the valiant Dhrishtadyumna replied, saying,—That same sword of mine which answered thy sire resolutely engaged in battle, will today answer this speech of thine![30] If Drona could be slain by me, O thou that art a Brāhmana in name only, why should I not then, putting forth my prowess, slay thee also in battle today?[31]—Having said these words, the wrathful commander of the Pāndava forces, viz., the son of Prishata, pierced Drona's son with a keen arrow.[32] Then Drona's son, filled with great rage, shrouded every side of Dhrishtadyumna, O king, in that battle, with straight arrows.[33] Shrouded with thousands of arrows, neither the welkin, nor the points of the compass, nor the combatants all around, could, O monarch, be any longer seen.[34] Similarly, the son of Prishata, O king, shrouded Drona's son, that ornament of battle, with arrows, in the very sight of Karna.[35] The son of Rādhā, too, O monarch, singly resisted the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas and the (five) sons of Draupadi and Yudhāmanyu and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, in consequence of which feat he became the cynosure of all eyes.[36] Then Dhrishtadyumna, in that battle, cut off the very tough and formidable bow of Drona's son as also all his arrows resembling snakes of virulent poison.[37] Drona's son, however, with his arrows, destroyed, within the twinkling of an eye, the bow, the dart, the mace, the standard, the steeds, the driver, and the car of Prishata's son.[38] Bowless and carless and steedless and driverless, the son of Prishata then took up a huge scimitar and a

blazing shield decked with a hundred moons.[39] Endued with great lightness of hand, and possessed of mighty weapons, that mighty car-warrior, viz., the heroic son of Drona, O king, quickly cut off, in that battle, with many broad-headed arrows, those weapons also[40] of Dhrishtadyumna before the latter could come down from his car. All this seemed exceedingly wonderful. The mighty car warrior Açwatthāman, however, though struggling vigorously, could not, O chief of the Bharatas, slay the carless and steedless and bowless Dhrishtadyumna although pierced and exceedingly mangled with many arrows.[41-42] When, therefore, O king, the son of Drona found that he could not slay his enemy with arrows, he laid aside his bow and quickly proceeded towards the son of Prishata.[43] The impetuosity of that high-souled one, as he rushed towards his foe, resembled that of Garuda swooping down for seizing a large snake.[44] Meanwhile Mādhava, addressing Arjuna, said,—Behold, O Pārtha, how the son of Drona is rushing with great speed towards the car of Prishata's son! Without doubt, he will slay the prince![45] O mighty-armed one, O crusher of foes, rescue the son of Prishata, who is now within the jaws of Drona's son as if within the jaws of Death himself![46]—Having said these words, the valiant Vāsudeva urged the steeds towards that spot where Drona's son was.[47] Those steeds, of the splendour of the moon, urged by Keçava, proceeded towards the car of Drona's son, devouring the very skies.[48] Beholding those two of great energy, viz., Krishna and Dhananjaya, coming towards him, the mighty Açwatthāman made great efforts for slaying Dhrishtadyumna soon.[49] Seeing Dhrishtadyumna dragged, O ruler of men, by his enemy, the mighty Pārtha sped many arrows at the son of Drona.[50] Those arrows, decked with gold and sped from *Gāndiva*, approached the son of Drona and pierced him deeply like snakes penetrating into an anthill.[51] Thus pierced with those terrible arrows, the valiant son of Drona, O king, abandoned the Pānchāla prince of immeasurable energy.[52] Indeed, the hero, thus afflicted with Dhananjaya's shafts, mounted on his car, and taking up his own excellent bow, began to pierce Pārtha with many shafts.[53] Meanwhile, the heroic Sahadeva, O ruler of men, bore away

on his own car the son of Prishata, that scorcher of foes.[54] Arjuna then, O king, pierced Drona's son with many arrows. Filled with rage, Drona's son struck Arjuna in the arms and the chest.[55] Thus provoked, Pārtha, in that battle, sped at Drona's son, a long shaft that resembled a second rod of Death or, rather, Death himself. That arrow of great splendour fell upon the shoulder of the Brāhmana hero.[56] Exceedingly agitated, O monarch, in that battle, by the violence of the stroke, he sat down on the terrace of his car and swooned away.[57] Then Karna, O monarch, shook his bow *Vijaya* and, filled with rage, repeatedly eyed Arjuna in that battle, desiring a single combat with him.[58] Meanwhile the driver of Drona's son, beholding the latter senseless, quickly bore him away on his car from the field of battle.[59] Beholding Prishata's son rescued and Drona's son afflicted, the Pānchālas, O king, expectant of victory, began to utter loud shouts.[60] Thousands of sweet instruments began to be sounded. Seeing such wonderful feats in battle, the combatants uttered leonine roars.[61] Having achieved that feat, Pārtha addressed Vāsudeva, saying, —Proceed, O Krishna, towards the *Samsaptakas*, for this is greatly desired by me![62]—Hearing those words of Pāndu's son, he of Daçārha's race proceeded on that car graced with many banners and whose speed resembled that of the wind or the mind.[63]' "

Section LX.

"Sanjaya—'Meanwhile Krishna, pointing out king Yudhishthira the just unto Kunti's son Pārtha, addressed him in these words:[1]—Yonder, O son of Pāndu, thy brother (Yudhishthira) is being pursued by many mighty and great bowmen amongst the Dhārtarāshtras, all inspired with the desire of slaughtering him![2] The mighty Pānchālas, difficult of defeat in battle, are proceeding after the high-souled Yudhishthira from desire of rescuing him![3] Yonder, Duryodhana, O Pārtha, the king of the whole world, clad in mail and accompanied by a large car force, is pursuing the Pāndava king![4] Impelled by the

desire of slaughtering his rival, the mighty Duryodhana, O tiger among men, is pursuing him, accompanied by his brothers the touch of whose weapons is as fatal as that of poisonous snakes and who are all conversant with every mode of warfare.[5] Those Dhārtarāshtra elephants and horse and car-warriors and foot are coming for seizing Yudhishthira like poor men for seizing a precious gem.[6] Behold, checked by Sātyaki and Bhima, they have again been stupified, like the *Daityas*, that desired to take away the *Amrita*, made motionless by Cakra and Agni![7] The mighty car-warriors (of the Kuru army), however, in consequence of the vastness of their numbers, are again proceeding towards Yudhishthira like a vast quantity of water in the season of rains rushing towards the ocean.[8] Those mighty bowmen are uttering leonine roars, blowing their conchs, and shaking their bows.[9] I regard Kunti's son Yudhishthira, thus brought under the influence of Duryodhana, to be already within the jaws of Death or already poured as a libation on the sacrificial fire.[10] The army of Dhritarāshtra's son, O Pāndava, is arrayed and equipt duly. Cakra himself, coming within the range of its arrows, can scarcely escape.[11] Who will in battle bear the impetuosity of the heroic Duryodhana who shoots showers of arrows with the greatest celerity and who, when angry, resembles the Destroyer himself?[12] The force of the heroic Duryodhana's shafts, or Drona's son's, or Kripa's, or Karna's, would break down the very mountains![13] That scorcher of foes, viz., king Yudhishthira, was once compelled by Karna to turn his back upon the field. The son of Rādhā is endued with great might and great lightness of hand. Possessed of great skill, he is accomplished in battle. He is competent to afflict the eldest son of Pāndu in fight, especially when he is united with the mighty and brave sons of Dhritarāshtra![14-15] Of rigid vows, when the son of Prithā had been engaged in battle with all those warriors, other great car warriors had struck him and contributed to his defeat.[16] The king, O best of the Bharatas, is exceedingly emaciated in consequence of his fasts. He is endued with *Brāhma* force, but the puissant one is not endued with much of Kshatriya might![17] Assailed, however, by Karna, the royal son of Pāndu,

viz., Yudhishthira, that scorcher of foes, hath been placed in a situation of great peril.[18] I think, O Pārtha, that king Yudhishthira hath fallen! Indeed, since that chastiser of foes, viz., the wrathful Bhimasena, coolly beareth the leonine roars of the frequently-shouting Dhārtarāshtras longing for victory and blowing their conchs,[19-20] I think, O bull among men, that Pāndu's son Yudhishthira is dead! Yonder Karna urges forward the mighty car-warriors of the Dhārtarāshtras![21] The mighty (Dhārtarāshtra) car-warriors are surrounding the royal son of Prithā with the weapons called *Sthunākarna*, *Indrajāla*, and *Pāçupata*, and with clouds of other weapons![22] The king, O Bhārata, is deeply afflicted and exceedingly weakened, since the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas, those foremost of all wielders of weapons, are proceeding with great speed towards him at a time when speed is of the highest moment, like strong men rushing to the rescue of a person sinking in a bottomless sea![23-24] The king's standard is no longer visible! It has probably been struck down by Karna with his shafts! In the very sight of the twins, O Pārtha, and of Sātyaki and Cikhandin,[25] and Dhrishtadyumna and Bhima and Catānika, O lord, as also of all the Pānchālas and the Chedis, O Bhārata,[26] yonder Karna is destroying the Pāndava division with his arrows, like an elephant destroying an assemblage of lotuses.[27] There, those car-warriors of thy army, O son of Pāndu, are flying away! See, see, O Pārtha, how those great warriors are retreating![28] Those elephants, O Bhārata, assailed by Karna in battle, are flying away in all directions, uttering cries of pain![29] There, those crowds of car-warriors, routed in battle, O Pārtha, by Karna, that crusher of foes, are flying away in all directions![30] Behold, O Pārtha, that foremost of standards, of the Suta's son, on his car, bearing the device of the elephant's rope, is seen to move all over the field![31] There, the son of Rādhā is now rushing against Bhimasena, scattering hundreds of shafts as he proceeds and slaughtering thy army therewith![32] There, those mighty car-warriors of the Pānchālas are being routed (by Karna) even as the *Daityas* had been routed by Cakra in dreadful battle![33] There, Karna, having vanquished the Pānchālas, the Pāndus,

and the Srinjayas, is casting his eyes on all sides, I think, for seeking thee![34] Behold, O Pārtha, Karna, as he beautifully draws his foremost of bows, looketh exceedingly beautiful even as Cakra in the midst of the celestials, after vanquishing his foes![35] There, the Kauravas, beholding the prowess of Karna, are roaring and inspiring the Pāndus and the Srinjayas with fear on every side![36] There, Karna himself, terrifying the Pāndus with his whole soul, in dreadful battle, is addressing all the troops, O giver of honors, saying,[37]—[Blessed be ye, advance, ye Kauravas and rush with such speed that no Srinjaya may, in this battle, escape with life![38] United together, do this all of you! As regards ourselves, we will follow you behind!]—Saying these words, he is advancing behind (his troops), scattering his shafts.[39] Behold Karna, O Pārtha, adorned with his white umbrella in this battle, and looking like the Udaya hills adorned by the moon![40] With his beautiful umbrella of a hundred ribs, resembling the moon in full, held over his head, O Bhārata, in this battle,[41] Karna, O prince, is casting his glances after thee! Without doubt, he will, in this battle, come hither, with great speed![42] Behold him, O mighty-armed one, as he shaketh his formidable bow and shooteth, in this dreadful battle, his shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison![43] There, the son of Rādhā turneth towards this direction, beholding thy banner bearing the ape, and desiring, O Pārtha, an encounter with thee, O scorcher of foes! Indeed, he cometh for his own destruction, even like an insect into the mouth of a lamp![44] Wrathful and brave, he is ever engaged in the good of Dhritarāshtra's son. Of wicked understanding, he is always unable to put up with thee![45] Beholding Karna alone and unsupported, Dhritarāshtra's son, O Bhārata, turneth towards him with great resolution, accompanied by his car force, for protecting him.[46] Let that wicked-souled one, along with all those allies of his, be slain by thee, putting forth thy vigor, from desire of winning fame, kingdom and happiness![47] Both of you are endued with great strength. Both of you are possessed of great celebrity. When encountering each other in battle, O Pārtha, like a celestial and a *Dānava* in the great battle between the gods and the *Asuras*, let all the Kauravas be hold

thy prowess![48]* Beholding thee filled with great rage and Karna also excited to fury, O bull of Bharata's race, Duryodhana in wrath will not be able to do anything![49] Remembering thyself to be of purified soul, O bull of Bharata's race, and remembering also that the son of Rādhā harboureth a great animosity for the virtuous Yudhishthira,[50] achieve that, O son of Kunti, which should now be achieved! Righteously setting thy heart on battle, advance against that leader of car-warriors![51] There, five hundred foremost of car-warriors, O thou best of car-warriors, that are endued with great might and fierce energy,[52] and five thousand elephants, and twice as many horse, and innumerable foot-soldiers, all united together, O son of Kunti,[53] and protecting one another, O hero, are advancing against thee! Show thyself, of thy own will, unto that great bowman, viz., the Suta's son! Advance, O bull of Bharata's race, towards him with great speed![54] There, Karna, filled with great wrath, is rushing against the Pānchālas! I see his standard approaching towards the car of Dhrishtadyumna! I think he will exterminate the Pānchālas![55] I will tell thee, O bull of Bharata's race, some good news, O Pārtha! King Yudhishthira the just is living![†56] There, the mighty-armed Bhima, having returned, is stationed at the head of the army, supported by the Srinjayas and by Sātyaki, O Bhārata![57] There, the Kauravas are being slaughtered with keen shafts by Bhimasena, O son of Kunti, and the high-souled Pānchālas![58] The troops of Dhritarāshtra's son, with their faces turned from the field, and with blood streaming down from their wounds, are speedily flying away from battle, struck by Bhima with his shafts![59] Bathed in blood, the Bharata army, O chief of Bharata's race, presents an exceedingly cheerless aspect like that of the Earth when divested of crops.[60] Behold, O son of Kunti, Bhimasena, that foremost of combatants, filled with rage like a snake of virulent poison, and engaged in routing the (Kaurava) host![61] Yellow and red and black and white banners, adorned with stars and moons

---

* 48 is a triplet; the third line is omitted in certain Bengal texts.—T.

† The Bombay edition reads the second line with a slight variation.—T.

and Suns, as also many umbrellas, O Arjuna, lay scattered about![62] Made of gold or silver or brass and other metals, standards are lying about, and elephants and steeds also, scattered all over the field![63] There, those car-warriors are falling from their cars, deprived of life by the unreturning Pānchālas with shafts of diverse kinds.[64] There, the Pānchālas of great speed, O Dhananjaya, are rushing against the riderless Dhārtarāshtra elephants and steeds and cars![65] Reckless of their very lives, O chastiser of foes, those warriors, difficult of defeat in battle, aided by the might of Bhimasena, are crushing, O tiger among men, the hostile force![66] There, the Pānchālas are uttering loud roars and blowing their conchs as they are rushing against their foes and crushing them with their shafts in battle![67] Behold their great energy and power! Through sheer valor, the Pānchālas are slaughtering the Dhārtarāshtras like angry lions slaying elephants![68] Unarmed, they are snatching the weapons of their armed foes and with those weapons thus snatched are slaying their foes that are effectual smiters, and uttering loud roars![69] The heads and arms of their foes are being struck off and felled on the field! The Pānchāla cars and elephants and horse are all worthy of the highest praise![70] Like swans of great speed leaving the Mānasa lake and rushing into the Ganges, the Pānchālas are rushing against the Kauravas, and every part of the vast Dhārtarāshtra force is assailed by them![71] Like bulls resisting bulls, the heroic Kripa and Karna and other leaders are putting forth all their valor for resisting the Pānchālas![72] The Pānchāla heroes headed by Dhrishtadyumna are slaying thousands of their foes, viz., the great car-warriors of the Dhārtarāshtra army already sinking in the ocean of Bhima's weapons![73] Beholding the Pānchālas overwhelmed by their foes, the fearless son of the Wind-god, assailing the hostile force, is shooting his shafts and uttering loud roars![74] The greater portion of the vast Dhārtarāshtra army has become exceedingly frightened[75] Behold, those elephants, pierced by Bhima with his clothyard shafts, are falling down like mountain summits riven by the thunder-bolt of Indra![76] There, those huge elephants, deeply pierced with the straight shafts of Bhimasena,

are flying away, crushing their own ranks![77] Dost thou not recognise the unbearable leonine shouts, O Arjuna, of the terribly-roaring Bhimasena inspired with desire of victory in battle?[78] There, the prince of the Nishādas, filled with rage, is coming against the son of Pāndu, on his foremost of elephants, from desire of slaying him with his lances, even like the Destroyer himself armed with his bludgeon![79] Struck by Bhima with ten keen clothyard shafts endued with the splendour of the fire or the Sun, the two arms of the roaring prince, with lances in grasp, are lopped off![80] Slaying the prince, Bhima proceedeth against other elephants looking like masses of blue clouds and ridden by riders guiding them with skill![81] Behold those riders striking Vrikodara with darts and lances in profusion! Slaying with his keen shafts those elephants seven at a time, their triumphal standards also, O Pārtha, are cut down by thy elder brother! As regards those other elephants, each of them is being slain with ten shafts by him.[82-83] The shouts of the Dhārtarāshtras are no longer heard, now that Bhima, O bull of Bharata's race, who is equal to Purandara himself, is engaged in battle![84] Full three *Akshauhinis* of Duryodhana's soldiers had been assembled together (in front of Bhima). They have all been checked by that lion among men, viz., Bhimasena, in wrath!'—[85]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Beholding that feat, difficult of accomplishment, achieved by Bhimasena, Arjuna, with his keen shafts, destroyed the remnant of his foes.[86] The mighty *Samsaptakas*, O lord, slaughtered in battle and routed (by Arjuna), fled away in all directions, overcome with fear.[87] Many amongst them (that fell), became the guests of Cakra and attained to great happiness. As regards Pārtha, that tiger among men continued, with his straight shafts, to slaughter the Dhārtarāshtra host consisting of four kinds of forces.' "[88]

SECTION LX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When Bhima and Pāndu's son Yudhishthira were engaged in battle, when my troops were being slaughtered by the Pāndus and the Srinjayas,' when, in-

deed my vast army was being broken and routed and repeatedly became cheerless, tell me, O Sanjaya, what the Kauravas did!'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the mighty-armed Bhima, the Suta's son of great valor, with eyes red in wrath, O king, rushed towards him.[3] Seeing thy army fly away from Bhimasena, the mighty Karna, O king, rallied it with great efforts.[4] The mighty-armed Karna, having rallied thy son's host, proceeded against the Pāndavas, those heroes difficult of defeat in battle.[5] The great car-warriors of the Pāndavas also, shaking their bows and shooting their shafts, proceeded against the son of Rādhā.[6] Bhimasena, and the grandson of Cini, and Cikhandin, and Janamejaya, and Dhrishtadyumna of great strength, and all the Prabhadrakas,[7] and those tigers among men, viz., the Pānchālas, filled with rage and inspired with desire of victory, rushed in that battle, from every side, against thy army.[8] Similarly the great car-warriors of thy army, O king, quickly proceeded against the Pāndava host, desirous of slaughtering it.[9] Teeming with cars and elephants and horse, and abounding with foot-soldiers and standards, the two armies then, O tiger among men, assumed a wonderful aspect.[10] Cikshandin proceeded against Karna, and Dhrishtadyumna proceeded against thy son Duççāsana, accompanied by a large force.[11] Nakula proceeded against Vrishasena, while Yudhishthira against Chitrasena. Sahadeva, O king, in that battle, proceeded against Uluka.[12] Sātyaki proceeded against Cakuni, and the sons of Draupadi against the other Kauravas. The mighty car-warrior Açwatthāman proceeded, with great care, against Arjuna.[13] Gotama's son Kripa proceeded against the mighty bowman Yudhāmanyu, while Kritavarman of great strength proceeded against Uttamaujas.[14] The mighty-armed Bhimasena, O sire, alone and unsupported, resisted all the Kurus and thy sons at the head of their division.[15] The slayer of Bhishma, viz., Cikhandin, then, O monarch, with his winged arrows, resisted Karna careering fearlessly in that battle.[16] Held in check, Karna then, his lips trembling in rage, assailed Cikhandin with three arrows in the midst of his eyebrows.[17] With those three arrows sticking on his fore head, Cikhandin looked highly

beautiful like a silver mountain with three elevated crests.[18] Deeply pierced by the Suta's son in that encounter, the mighty bowman Cikhandin pierced Karna, in return, with ninety keen shafts.[19] The mighty car-warrior Karna then, slaying Cikhandin's steeds and next his driver with three arrows, cut off his standard with a razor-faced arrow.[20] That mighty car-warrior then, that scorcher of foes, filled with rage, jumped down from his steedless car and hurled a dart at Karna.[21] Cutting off that dart with three shafts in that encounter, Karna then, O Bhārata, pierced Cikhandin with nine keen arrows.[22] Avoiding then the shafts sped from Karna's bow, that best of men, viz., Cikhandin, exceedingly mangled, retreated speedily from that spot.[23] Then Karna, O monarch, began to scatter the troops of the Pāndavas, like a mighty wind scattering a heap of cotton.[24] Meanwhile Dhrishtadyumna, O monarch, afflicted by thy son, pierced Dusçāsana, in return, with three arrows in the centre of the chest.[25] Then Dusçāsana, O sire, pierced his assailant's left arm with a broad-headed shaft, sharp and straight and equipt with wings of gold.[26] Thus pierced, Dhrishtadyumna, filled with wrath and the desire to retaliate, sped a terrible shaft, O Bhārata, at Dusçāsana.[27] Thy son, however, O king, with three shafts of his, cut off that impetuous arrow sped by Dhrishtadyumna as it coursed towards him.[28] Approaching Dhrishtadyumna then, he struck him in the arms and the chest with seventeen other broad-headed shafts adorned with gold.[29] Thereat Prishata's son, filled with rage, cut off Dusçāsana's bow, O sire, with a sharp razor-headed arrow, at which all the troops there uttered a loud shout.[30] Taking up then another bow, thy son, as if smiling, held Dhrishtadyumna in check with showers of arrows from every side.[31] Beholding the prowess of that high-souled son of thine, the combatants as also the *Siddhas* and the *Apsaras*, became all filled with wonder.[32] We then saw the mighty Dhrishtadyumna thus assailed by the Dusçāsana to resemble a huge elephant held in check by a lion.[33] Then many Pānchāla car-warriors and elephants and horse, O elder brother of Pāndu, desirous of rescuing the commander (of the Pāndava army), encompassed thy son.[34] The

battle that commenced, O scorcher of foes, between thy warriors and the enemy, presented as frightful a sight as that which may be seen at the destruction of all creatures at the end of the *Yuga*.[35]

"'Vrishasena, staying by the side of his father, having pierced Nakula with five arrows made wholly of iron, pierced him once again with three other arrows.[36] The heroic Nakula then, as if smiling, deeply pierced Vrishasena in the chest with a clothyard shaft of great keenness.[37] Thus pierced by his mighty foe, that scorcher of foes, viz., Vrishasena, pierced his assailant with twenty arrows and was himself pierced by him with five.[38] Then those two bulls among men shrouded each other with thousands of arrows, at which the divisions that supported them broke.[39] Beholding the troops of Dhritarāshtra's son flying away, the Suta's son, following them, O king, began to forcibly stop them.[40] After Karna had gone away, Nakula proceeded against the Kauravas. Karna's son also, avoiding Nakula,[41] proceeded quickly, O sire, to where his father the son of Rādhā was, for protecting his car-wheel.

"'The angry Uluka was held in check by Sahadeva.[42] Having slain his four steeds, the valiant Sahadeva then despatched his foe's driver to the abode of Yama.[43] Uluka then, that delighter of his father, jumping down from his car, O king, quickly proceeded and entered the division of the Trigartas.[44] Sātyaki, having pierced Cakuni with twenty keen arrows, easily cut off the standard of Suvala's son with a broad-headed arrow.[45] The valiant son of Suvala, filled with rage, O king, in that encounter, pierced Sātyaki's armour and then cut off his golden standard.[46] Then Sātyaki pierced him in return with many keen arrows, and struck his driver, O monarch, with three arrows.[47] With great speed then, he despached with other shafts the steeds of Cakuni to Yama's abode. Speedily alighting then, O bull among men, from his car, Cakuni,[48] that mighty car-warrior, quickly ascended the car of Uluka. The latter then bore away with great speed his father from Cini's grandson, that warrior skilled in battle.[49] Then Sātyaki, O king, rushed in that battle against thy army with great impetuosity, at which that army broke.[50] Shrouded with

the arrows of Cini's grandson, thy army, O monarch, fled away on all sides with great speed, and fell down deprived of life.[51]

"'Thy son resisted Bhimasena in that battle. In a trice Bhima made that ruler of men steedless and driverless and carless and standardless, at which the (Pāndava) troops became highly glad. Then thy son, O king, went away from Bhimasena's presence.[52-53] The whole Kuru army, at this, rushed against Bhimasena. Tremendous became the din made by those combatants inspired with the desire of slaying Bhimasena.[54] Yudhāmanyu, piercing Kripa, quickly cut off his bow. Then Kripa, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, taking up another bow,[55] felled Yudhāmanyu's standard and driver and umbrella on the Earth. At this, the mighty car-warrior Yudhāmanyu retreated on his car, driving it himself.[56] Uttamaujas covered the terrible son of Hridikā, endued with terrible prowess, with a thick shower of arrows like a cloud pouring torrents of rain on a mountain.[57] The battle between them, O scorcher of foes, became so awful that its like, O monarch, I had never seen before.[58] Then Kritavarman, O king, in that encounter, suddenly pierced Uttamaujas in the chest at which the latter sat down on the terrace of his car.[59] His driver then bore away that foremost of car-warriors. Then the whole Kuru army rushed at Bhimasena.[60] Dusçāsana and Suvala's son, encompassing the son of Pāndu with a large elephant force, began to strike him with small arrows.[61] Then Bhima, causing the wrathful Duryodhana to turn his back on the field by means of hundreds of arrows, quickly rushed towards that elephant force.[62] Beholding that elephant force advance impetuously against him, Vrikodara became filled with great rage and invoked his celestial weapons. And he began to strike elephants with elephants like Indra striking the *Asuras*.[63]* While engaged in slaughtering those elephants, Vrikodara, in that battle, covered the welkin with his shafts like myriads of insects covering a fire.[64] Like the wind scattering masses of clouds, Bhima quickly scattered and destroyed crowds of elephants united together in thousands.[65] Covered all over with

* A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

networks of gold, as also with many gems, the elephants looked exceedingly beautiful in that battle like clouds charged with lightning.[66] Slaughtered by Bhima, those elephants, O king, began to fly away. Some amongst them, with their hearts pierced, fell down on the Earth.[67] With those fallen and falling elephants adorned with gold, the Earth looked beautiful there as if strewn with broken mountains.[68] With the fallen elephant-warriors of blazing resplendence and adorned with gems, the Earth looked beautiful as if strewn with planets of exhausted merit.[69]* Then elephants, with their temples, frontal globes, and trunks deeply pierced, fled in hundreds in that battle, afflicted with the shafts of Bhimasena.[70] Some amongst them, huge as hills, afflicted with fear and vomiting blood, ran away, their limbs mangled with arrows, and looking, on that account, like mountains with liquid metals running adown their sides.[71] People then beheld the two arms of Bhima, resembling two mighty snakes, smeared with sandal-paste and other pounded unguents, continually employed in drawing the bow.[72] Hearing the sound of his bowstring and palms that resembled the peal of thunder, those elephants, ejecting urine and excreta, ran away in fear.[73] The feats of the single-handed Bhima of great intelligence, on that occasion, shone like those of Rudra himself while engaged in destroying all creatures.' "[74]

Section LXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'The handsome Arjuna then, on that foremost car of his, unto which were yoked white steeds, and which was urged by Nārāyana himself, appeared on the scene.[1] Like the tempest agitating the ocean, Vijaya, O foremost of kings, in that battle, agitated that host of thine teeming with horsemen.[2] When the white-steeded Arjuna was otherwise engaged, thy son Duryodhana, filled with rage, and surrounded by half his troops, approached suddenly, and encompassed the

---

* The righteous on Earth, after death, become planets and stars. Upon the exhaustion of their merits, they are supposed to fall down.—T.

advancing Yudhishthira inspired with the desire of revenge.[3]* The Kuru king then pierced the son of Pāndu with three and seventy razor-headed arrows. At this, Yudhishthira the son of Kunti became inflamed with sire,[4] and quickly struck thy son with thirty broad-headed arrows. The Kaurava troops then rushed impetuously for seizing Yudhishthira.[5] Understanding the wicked intentions of the enemy, the great car-warriors of the Pāndava army, uniting together, rushed towards Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, for rescuing him.[6] Indeed, Nakula, and Sahadeva, and Dhrishtadyumana the son of Prishata, surrounded by a full *Akshauhini* of troops, thus proceeded towards Yudhishthira.[7] Bhimasena also, in that battle, crushing the great car-warriors of thy army, proceeded towards the king surrounded by foes.[8] Karna, otherwise called Vaikartana, O king, shooting dense showers of arrows, checked, singlehanded, all those mighty bowmen thus advancing (to the rescue).[9] Though they shot dense showers of arrows and hurled innumerable lances, fighting with determination, yet they were unable te even look at the son of Rādhā.[10] Indeed, the son of Rādhā, that master of all weapons offensive and defensive, by shooting dense showers of shafts, checked all those great bowmen.[11] The high-souled Sahadeva, however, quickly approaching (the spot where Duryodhana was), and invoking without loss of time a (celestial) weapon, pierced Duryodhana with twenty arrows.[12] Thus pierced by Sahadeva, the Kuru king, covered with blood, looked beautiful like a huge elephant of split temples.[13] Beholding thy son deeply pierced with many arrows of great energy, that foremost of car-warriors, *viz.*, the son of Rādhā, filled with rage, rushed to that spot.[14] Seeing Duryodhana reduced to that plight, Karna, invoking his weapons quickly, began to slaughter the troops of Yudhishthira and Prishata's son.[15] Thus slaughtered by the high-souled Karna, Yudhishthira's troops, O king, afflicted with the arrows of the Suta's son, soon fled away.[16] Showers of shafts fell together. Indeed, those sped subsequently from the bow of the Suta's son touched with their heads the wings of those

* A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

sped before.[17] In consequence of those falling showers of shafts, O monarch, colliding with one another, a conflagration seemed to blaze forth in the welkin.[18] Soon Karna shrouded the ten points of the compass, O king, with arrows capable of piercing the bodies of foes, as if with advancing flights of locusts.[19] Displaying the highest weapons, Karna began to wave with great force his two arms smeared with red sandal-paste and adorned with jewels and gold.[20] Then stupifying all sides, O king, with his shafts, Karna deeply afflicted Yudhishthira the just.[21] Filled with rage at this, Dharma's son Yudhishthira struck Karna with fifty keen shafts.[22] In consequence then of the darkness caused by those showers of arrows, the battle became awful to look at. Loud cries of woe arose from among thy troops, O monarch,[23] whilst they were being slaughtered by Dharma's son, O sire, with diverse kinds of keen shafts equipt with *Kanka* feathers and whetted on stone, with numerous broad-headed arrows, and with diverse kinds of darts and swords and clubs.[24]* Thither where Pāndu's son of virtuous soul cast his eyes with the desire of producing evil, thither thy army broke, O bull of Bharata's race![25] Inflamed with great rage, Karna also, of immeasurable soul, inspired with the desire of retaliating, his face flushed in anger, rushed, in that battle, against Pāndu's son king Yudhishthira the just, shooting cloth-yard shafts and crescent shaped arrows and those equipt with heads like the calf's tooth.* Yudhishthira also pierced him with many whetted arrows equipt with wings of gold.[26-27]† As if smiling the while, Karna pierced the royal son of Pāndu in the chest with three broad-headed arrows whetted on stone and equipt with *Kanka* feathers.[28] Deeply afflicted therewith, king Yudhishthira the just, sitting down on the terrace of his car, ordered his driver to retreat.[29] Thereupon all the Dhārtarāshtras, with their king, set up a loud shout, saying,—*Seize,—Seize,* and all them then pursued the

---

* A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

† 27 is a triplet. The two lines of 26 with the first two lines of 27 form a complete sentence. The construction is pleonastic. In the second line of 27, for *Yudhishthira* read *Pāndupuṭra* —T.

(Pāndava) king.[30] Then seventeen hundred Kekaya troops skilled in smiting, united with a body of the Pānchāla troops, O king, and checked the Dhārtarāshtras.[31] During the progress of that fierce and terrible battle, Duryodhana and Bhima, those two warriors endued with great might, encountered each other.' "[32]

SECTION LXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—"Meanwhile Karna also began, with his arrowy showers, to afflict the mighty car-warriors of the Kaikayas, viz., those great bowmen that stood before him.[1] Indeed, the son of Rādhā despatched to Yama's abode full five hundred of those warriors that were employed in checking him in that battle.[2] Beholding the son of Rādhā to be irresistible in that battle, those warriors, afflicted with the arrows of their assailant, repaired to the presence of Bhimasena.[3] Breaking that car-force into many parts by means of his arrows, Karna, singly and riding on that same car of his, pursued Yudhishthira[4] who then, exceedingly mangled with arrows and almost insensible, was proceeding slowly for reaching the Pāndava encampment with Nakula and Sahadeva on his two sides.[5] Having approached the king, the Suta's son, from desire of doing good to Duryodhana, pierced the son of Pāndu with three formidable arrows.[6] In return the king pierced Rādhā's son in the centre of the chest and then his driver with three shafts.[7] Then those two scorchers of foes, viz., the twin sons of Mādri, those two protectors of Yudhishthira's car-wheels, rushed towards Karna so that the latter might not succeed in slaying the king.[8] Then Nakula and Sahadeva, both shooting showers of shafts with great care, covered the son of Rādhā therewith.[9] The valiant son of the Suta, however, in return, pierced those two high-souled chastisers of foes with two broad-headed arrows of great sharpness.[10] The son of Rādhā then slew Yudhishthira's excellent steeds, white as ivory and fleet as the mind, and having black hair in their tails.[11] Then, smiling the while, the Suta's son, that great bowman, with another broad-headed shaft, felled the head-gear of Kunti's son.[12] Similarly, the valiant Karna,

having slain the steeds of Nakula, cut off the car-shaft and bow of that intelligent son of Mādri.[13] Those two steedless and carless sons of Pāndu,—those two brothers,—thereupon ascended the car of Sahadeva.[14] Beholding those two brothers made carless, that slayer of hostile heroes, viz., their maternal uncle, the ruler of the Madras, moved by compassion, addressed the son of Rādhā and said,[15]—Thou art to fight today with Pritā's son Phālguna! Why dost thou then, with rage inflamed to such a pitch, battle with Dharma's royal son.?[16] Thou art suffering thy weapons to be exhausted. Thy own armour is being weakened. With thy shafts reduced, and without quivers, with thy driver and steeds fatigued, and thyself mangled by foes with weapons, when thou wilt approach Pārtha, O son of Rādhā, thou wilt be an object of derision and mirth![17]—Though thus addressed by the ruler of the Madras, Karna still, filled with rage, continued to assail Yudhishthira in that battle.[18] And he continued to pierce the two sons of Mādri by Pāndu with many keen arrows. Smiling the while, by means of his shafts he made Yudhishthira turn his face from the battle.[19] Then Calya, laughing, once more said unto Karna as the latter, excited with great wrath and resolved upon Yudhishthira's destruction, stood on his car, these words:[20]—Him for whose sake Dhritarāshtra's son always honors thee, slay that Pārtha, O son of Rādhā! What wouldst thou gain by slaying Yudhishthira?[21] The two Krishnas are blowing their conchs whose loud blare is being heard. The twang also of Arjuna's bow is being heard, like the roar of the clouds in the season of rains![22] There, Arjuna, striking down the foremost of our car-warriors with his arrowy down-pours, is devouring all our troops! Behold him, O Karna, in this battle![23] The two that are protecting his rear are Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas. The brave Sātyaki is protecting his left wheel,[24] and Dhrishtadyumna is protecting his right wheel. There, Bhimasena is fighting with the royal son of Dhritarāshtra![25] Act in such way, O son of Rādhā, that Bhima may not be able to slay the king today in the sight of us all,—that the king may, indeed, escape him![26] Behold, Duryodhana is brought under the power of Bhimasena, that ornament of battle! Approaching, if thou canst rescue him,

it will, indeed, be a very wonderful feat![27] Going thither, rescue the king, for a great peril has overtaken him! What wilt thou gain by slaying the sons of Mādri or king Yudhishthira?[28]—Hearing these words of Calya, O lord of Earth, and beholding Duryodhana overpowered by Bhima in that dreadful battle, the [valiant]* son of Rādhā,[29] thus urged by the words of Calya and exceedingly desirous of rescuing the king, left Ajātaçatru and the twin sons of Mādri by Pāndu,[30] and rushed for rescuing thy son. He was borne by his steeds that were fleet as birds and that were urged by the ruler of the Madras.[31] After Karna had gone away, Kunti's son Yudhishthira retreated, borne, O sire, by the fleet steeds of Sahadeva.[32] With his twin brothers accompanying him, that ruler of men, quickly repairing in shame to the (Pāndava) camp, his body exceedingly mangled with shafts,[33] alighted from the car and hastily sat down on an excellent bed. The arrows then being extracted from his body, the royal son of Pāndu, his heart exceedingly afflicted with sorrow's dart,[34] addressed his two brothers, viz., those two mighty car-warriors, the sons of Mādri, saying,—Repair quickly to the division of Bhimasena![35] Roaring like a cloud, Vrikodara is engaged in battle!—Riding another car, Nakula, that bull among car-warriors,[36] and Sahadeva of great energy,—those two brothers, those two crushers of foes,—both endued with great might, then proceeded towards Bhima, borne by steeds of the utmost fleetness. Indeed, the brothers, having together repaired to Bhimasena's division, took up their places there.'"[37]

Section LXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Meanwhile Drona's son, surrounded by a large car-force, O king, suddenly proceeded to that spot where Pārtha was.[1] Like the continent withstanding the surging ocean, the heroic Pārtha having Caurin for his help-mate withstood as impetuously the impetuously-rushing Açwatthāman.[2] Then, O monarch, the valiant son of Drona, filled with rage, covered both Arjuna and Vāsudeva with his shafts.[3] Behold-

---

* This word occurs in 31.—T.

ing the two Krishnas shrouded with arrows, the great car-warriors (of the Pāndava army), as also the Kurus that witnessed it, wondered exceedingly.[4] Then Arjuna, as if smiling, invoked into existence a celestial weapon. The Brāhmana Açwatthāman, however, O Bhārata, baffled that weapon in that battle.[5] Indeed, all those weapons that Arjuna sped from desire of slaying the son of Drona, were baffled by the latter, that great bowman, in that encounter.[6] During the progress of that awful encounter of weapons, O king, we beheld the son of Drona to resemble the Destroyer himself with gaping mouth.[7] Having covered all the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, with straight arrows, he pierced Vāsudeva with three arrows in the right arm.[8] Then Arjuna, slaying all the steeds of his high-souled assailant, caused the Earth in that battle to be covered with a river of blood[9] that was exceedingly awful, that led towards the other world, and that had diverse kinds of creatures floating on it. All the spectators beheld a large number of car-warriors along with their cars, belonging to the division of Açwatthāman, slain and destroyed by means of the arrows sped from Pārtha's bow. Açwatthāman also, slaying his enemies, caused a terrible river of blood to flow there that led to Yama's domains.[10-11] During the progress of that fierce and awful battle between Drona's son and Pārtha, the combatants fought, without showing any regard for one another, and rushed hither and thither.[12]* In consequence of cars having their steeds and drivers slain, and steeds having their riders slain, and elephants having their riders and guides slain, an awful carnage, O king, was made by Pārtha in that battle![†][13] Car-warriors, deprived of life with shafts sped from Pārtha's bow, fell down. Steeds, freed from their trappings, ran hither and thither.[14] Beholding those feats of Pārtha, that ornament of battle, the valiant son of Drona, quickly approached the former, that foremost of victorious men,[15] shook his formidable bow decked with gold, and then pierced him from every

---

* I adopt the Bengal reading *itastatas* and not *prishthatas* as read in the Bombay edition.—T.

† A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

side with many sharp arrows.[16] Once more bending the bow, O king, the son of Drona cruelly struck Arjuna, aiming at the chest, with a winged arrow.[17] Deeply pierced by Drona's son, O Bhārata, in that encounter, the wielder of *Gāndiva*, that hero of great intelligence, forcibly covered the son of Drona with showers of arrows, and then cut off his bow.[18] His bow cut off, Drona's son then, taking up a spiked mace whose touch resembled that of thunder, hurled it, in that encounter, at the diadem-decked Arjuna.[19] The son of Pāndu, however, O king, as if smiling the while, suddenly cut off that spiked mace, decked with gold, as it advanced towards him.[20] Thus cut off with Pārtha's shafts, it fell down on the Earth, like a mountain, O king, broken into pieces, struck with the thunder-bolt.[21] Filled with rage at this, Drona's son, that great car-warrior, began to cover Vibhatsu, aided by the energy of the *Aindra* weapon.[22] Beholding that shower of arrows spread over the welkin through the *Aindra* weapon, Pārtha, endued with great activity, O king, taking up his bow *Gāndiva*, and fixing on his bow-string a mighty weapon created by Indra, destroyed that *Aindra* shower of arrows.[23] Having baffled that arrowy shower caused by the *Aindra* weapon, Pārtha soon covered the car of Drona's son (with his own arrows). The son of Drona, however, overwhelmed with Pārtha's shafts,[24] penetrated through that shower of arrows shot by the son of Pāndu and, approaching the latter, invoked a mighty weapon and suddenly pierced Krishna with a hundred shafts and Arjuna with three hundred small arrows.[25] Then Arjuna pierced the son of his preceptor with a hundred arrows in all his vital limbs. And then he poured many arrows on the steeds and driver and the bow-string of Drona's son in the very sight of thy warriors.[26] Having pierced Drona's son in every vital part, Pāndu's son, that slayer of hostile heroes, then felled his adversary's driver from the car-niche with a broad-headed arrow.[27] Drona's son, however, himself taking up the the reins, covered Krishna with many arrows. The activity of prowess that we then beheld in Drona's son was exceedingly wonderful,[28] since he guided his steeds while he fought with Phālguna. That feat of his in battle, O king, was applauded

by all the warriors.[29] Then Vibhatsu, otherwise called Jaya, smiling the while, quickly cut off the traces of Açwatthāman's steeds in that battle, with a razor-faced arrow.[30] Already afflicted by the energy of Arjuna's shafts, the steeds of Drona's son thereupon ran away. Then a loud noise arose from thy troops, O Bhārata![31] Meanwhile the Pāndavas, having obtained the victory, and desiring to improve it, rushed against thy troops, shooting from all sides sharp arrows at them.[32] The vast Dhārtarāshtra host then, O king, was repeatedly broken by the heroic Pāndavas inspired with desire of victory,[33] in the very sight, O monarch, of thy sons conversant with all modes of warfare, and of Cakuni the son of Suvala, and of Karna, O king![34] Though sought to be stopped, O king, by thy sons, that great army, afflicted on all sides, stayed not on the field.[35] Indeed, a confusion set in among the vast terrified host of thy son in consequence of many warriors flying away on all sides.[36] The Suta's son loudly cried out, saying,—*Stay, Stay!*—but thy army, slaughtered by many high-souled warriors, did not stay on the field.[37] Loud shouts were uttered then, O monarch, by the Pāndavas inspired with desire of victory, upon beholding the Dhārtarāshtra host flying away on all sides.[38] Then Duryodhana, addressing Karna from affection, said,—Behold, O Karna, how our army, exceedingly afflicted by the Pāndavas,[39] though thou art here, is flying away from battle! Knowing this, O thou of mighty arms, do that which is suited to the hour, O chastiser of foes![40] Thousands of (our) warriors, routed by the Pāndavas, are, O hero, calling after thee only, O best of men![41] —Hearing these grave words of Duryodhana, the son of Rādhā, as if smiling, said these words unto the ruler of the Madras:[42]—Behold the prowess of my arms and the energy of my weapons, O ruler of men! Today I will slay all the Pānchālas and the Pāndus in battle! Cause the steeds to proceed with my car, O tiger among men! Without doubt, everything will be as I have said![43]—Having said these words, the Suta's son of great valour,—that hero,—taking up his ancient and foremost of bows called *Vijaya*,[44] stringed it and rubbed the string repeatedly. Bidding the troops stay on the field after having assured

them upon his truth and by an oath, the mighty Karna of immeasurable soul fixed on his bowstring the weapon known by the name of *Bhārgava*.*[45] From that weapon flowed, O king, millions and millions of keen arrows in that great battle.[46] Entirely shrouded with those blazing and terrible arrows winged with feathers of *Kankas* and peacocks, the Pāndava army could not see anything.[47] Loud wails of woe arose from among the Pānchālas, O king, afflicted, in that battle, with the mighty *Bhārgava* weapon.[48] In consequence then of elephants, O king, and steeds, by thousands, and cars, O monarch, and men, falling on all sides,[49] deprived of life, the Earth began to tremble. The vast force of the Pāndavas became agitated from one extremity to another.[50] Meanwhile Karna, that scorcher of foes, that foremost of warriors, that tiger among men, while consuming his foes, looked resplendent like a smokeless fire.[51] Thus slaughtered by Karna, the Pānchālas and the Chedis began to lose their senses all over the field like elephants during a forest conflagration.[52] Those foremost of men, O tiger among men, uttered loud roars like those of the tiger. Loud became the wails of woe, like those of living creatures at the universal dissolution, that were uttered by those crying combatants struck with panic and running wildly on all sides, O king, of the field of battle and trembling with fear.[53-54] Beholding them thus slaughtered, O sire, by the Suta's son, all creatures, even beasts and birds, were filled with fear.[55] The Srinjayas then, thus slaughtered in battle by the Suta's son, repeatedly called upon Arjuna and Vāsudeva[56] like the spirits of the dead within Yama's dominions calling upon Yama to rescue them. Hearing those wails of the troops slaughtered with Karna's shafts,[57] and beholding the terrible *Bhārgava* weapon invoked into existence, Kunti's son Dhananjaya said unto Vāsudeva these words :[58]—Behold, O Krishna of mighty arms, the prowess of the *Bhārgava* weapon ! It cannot, by any means, be baffled in battle ![59] Behold the Suta's son also, O Krishna, filled with rage in this great battle and resembling

---

* Called after the name of Rama of Bhrigu's race, the preceptor of Karna.—T.

the Destroyer himself in prowess and employed in achieving such a fierce feat![60] Urging his steeds incessantly, he is repeatedly casting angry glances upon me! I will never be able to fly away from Karna in battle![61]* The person that is living, may, in battle, meet with either victory or defeat. To the man, however, that is dead, O Hrishikeça, even death is victory. How can defeat be his that his dead?†[62]—Thus addressed by Pārtha, Krishna replied unto that foremost of intelligent men and chastiser of foes, these words that were suitable to the occasion:[63]—The royal son of Kunti hath been deeply wounded and mangled by Karna. Having seen him first and comforted him, thou wilt then, O Pārtha, slay Karna![64]—Then Keçava proceeded, desirous of beholding Yudhishthira, thinking that Karna meanwhile, O monarch, would be overwhelmed with fatigue![65] Then Dhananjaya, himself desirous of beholding the king afflicted with arrows, quickly proceeded on that car, avoiding the battle, at Keçava's command.[66] While the son of Kunti was thus proceeding from desire of seeing king Yudhishthira the just, he cast his eyes on every part of the army but failed to find his eldest brother anywhere on the field.[67] The son of Kunti proceeded, O Bhārata, having fought with the son of his preceptor Drona, and having vanquished that hero who is incapable of being resisted by the wielder. of the thunder-bolt himself.' "[68]

Section LXV.

Sanjaya said,—Having vanquished the son of Drona and achieved a mighty and heroic feat that is exceedingly difficult of accomplishment, Dhananjaya, irresistible by foes, and with bow outstretched in his hands, cast his eyes among his own troops.[1] The brave Savyasāchin, gladdening those warriors of his that were still battling at the head of their divisions, and

---

* The Bengal reading is *Karnasya prapalāyitum*, the Bombay reading is *Karnam pratipalāyitum*. The difference in meaning is slight.—T.

† The sense of the passage is that if, being alive, I avoid Karna, defeat will be mine. On the other hand, if, encountering him, I meet with death, defeat will *not* be mine.—T.

applauding those among them that were celebrated for their former achievements, caused the car-warriors of his own army to continue to stand in their posts.[2] Not seeing his brother Yudhishthira of Ajamida's race, the diadem-decked Arjuna, adorned, besides, with a necklace of gold, speedily approached Bhima and enquired of him the whereabouts of the king, saying,—Tell me, where is the king ?[3]—Thus asked, Bhima said,—King Yudhishthira the just hath gone away from this place, his limbs scorched with Karna's shafts. It is doubtful whether he still liveth ![4]—Hearing those words, Arjuna said,—For this reason go thou quickly from this spot for bringing intelligence of the king, that best of all the descendants of Kuru! Without doubt, deeply pierced by Karna with shafts, the king hath gone to the camp![5] In that fierce passage-at-arms, though deeply pierced by Drona with keen shafts, the king, endued with great activity, had still stayed in battle, expectant of victory, until Drona was slain![6] That foremost one among the Pāndavas, possessed of great magnanimity, was greatly imperilled by Karna in today's battle! For ascertaining his condition, quickly go hence, O Bhima! I will stay here, checking all our foes![7]—Thus addressed, Bhima said,—O thou of great glory, go thyself for ascertaining the condition of the king, that bull amongst the Bharatas! If, O Arjuna, I go there, many foremost of heroes will then say that I am frightened in battle![8] —Then Arjuna said unto Bhimasena,—The *Samsaptakas* are before my division! Without slaying those assembled foes first, it is impossilbe for me to stir from this place![9]—Then Bhimasena said unto Arjuna,—Relying upon my own might, O foremost one among the Kurus, I will fight with all the *Samsaptakas* in battle! Therefore, O Dhananjaya, do thou go thyself![10]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing, in the midst of foes, those words of his brother Bhimasena that were difficult of accomplishment, Arjuna, desiring to see the king, addressed the Vrishni hero, saying,[11]—Urge the steeds, O Hrishikeça, leaving this sea of troops! I desire, O Keçava, to see King Ajātaçatru![12]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Just as he was on the point of urging the steeds, Keçava, that foremost one of the Dāçārhas,

addressed Bhima, saying,—This feat is not at all wonderful for thee, O Bhima! I am about to go (hence). Slay these assembled foes of Pārtha![13]—Then Hrishikeça proceeded with very great speed to the spot where king Yudhishthira was, O king, borne by those steeds that resembled Garuda,[14] having stationed Bhima, that chastiser of foes, at the head of the army and having commanded him, O monarch, to fight (with the *Samsaptakas*).[15] Then those two foremost of men, (viz., Krishna and Arjuna,) proceeding on their car, approached the king who was lying alone on his bed. Both of them, alighting from that car, worshipped the feet of king Yudhishthira the just.[16] Beholding that bull or tiger among men safe and sound, the two Krishnas became filled with joy like the twin Açwins on seeing Vāsava.[17] The king then congratulated them both like Vivaswat congratulating the twin Açwins, or like Vrihaspati congratulating Cakra and Vishnu after the slaughter of the mighty *Asura* Jambha.[18] King Yudhishthira the just, thinking that Karna had been slain, became filled with joy, and that scorcher of foes thereupon addressed them in these words in a voice choked with delight.' "[19]

Section LXVI.

"'Yudhishthira said,—Welcome, O thou that hast Devaki for thy mother, and welcome to thee, O Dhananjaya! The sight of both of you, O Achyuta and O Arjuna, is exceedingly agreeable![1] I see that without being wounded yourselves you two,—his foes,—have slain the mighty car-warrior Karna![2] He was in battle like unto a snake of virulent poison. He was accomplished in all weapons. The leader of all the Dhārtarāshtras, he was their armour and protector![3] While fighting, he was always protected by Vrishasena and by Sushena, both of whom are great bowmen! Of great energy, he had received lessons from Rāma in weapons! He was invincible in battle![4] The foremost one in all the world, as a car-warrior he was celebrated throughout all the worlds. He was the saviour of the Dhārtarāshtras, and the proceeder in their van![5] A slayer of hostile troops, he was the crusher of large bands of foes, Ever en-

gaged in Duryodhana's good. he was always prepared to inflict woe on us![6] He was invincible in battle by the very gods with Vāsava at their head. In energy and might he was equal unto the god of fire and the god of wind.[7] In gravity he was unfathomable as the Nether world. The enhancer of the joys of friends, he was like the Destroyer himself unto foes! Having slain Karna (who was even so) in dreadful battle, by good luck it is that you two have come, like a couple of celestials after vanquishing an *Asura*![8] Today, O Achyuta and Arjuna, a great battle was fought between myself exerting with might and that hero who resembled the Destroyer himself while seeking to exterminate all creatures![9] My standard was cut down, and my two *Pārshni* drivers also were slain by him. I was also made steedless and carless by him in the very sight of Yuyudhāna,[10] of Dhrishtadyumna, of the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), of the heroic Cikhandin, as also in the very sight of the sons of Draupadi, and all the Pānchālas![11] Having vanquished these his innumerable foes, Karna of mighty energy then vanquished me, O thou of mighty arms, although I exerted myself resolutely in battle![12] Pursuing me then and, without doubt, vanquishing all my protectors, that foremost of warriors addressed me in diverse harsh speeches.[13] That I am still alive, O Dhananjaya, is due to the prowess of Bhimasena. What more need I say? I am unable to bear that humiliation![14] For thirteen years, O Dhananjaya, through fear of Karna, I did not obtain any sleep by night or any comfort by day![15] Filled with hatred of Karna, I burn, O Dhananjaya! Like the bird *Vāddhrinasa* I fled from Karna, knowing that the time for my own destruction had come.*[16] The whole of my time had passed in the thought as to how I would accomplish the destruction of Karna in battle![17] Awake or asleep, O son of Kunti, I always beheld Karna (with my mind's eye). Wherever I was, the universe appeared to me to be full of Karna![18] Inspired with the fear of Karna, wherever I used to go, O Dhananjaya, thither I beheld Karna standing before my eyes![19] Vanquished, in battle,

* I do not understand the allusion.—T.

with my steeds and car, by that hero who never retreated from battle, alive I was let off by him![20] What use have I of life or of kingdom either, since Karna, that ornament of battle, today cried *fie* on me?[21] That which I had never before met with at the hands of Bhishma or Kripa or Drona in battle, that I met with today at the hands of the Suta's son, that mighty car-warrior![22] It is for this, O son of Kunti, that I ask thee today about thy welfare! Tell me in detail how thou hast slain Karna today![23] In battle Karna was equal unto Cakra himself. In prowess he was equal unto Yama. In weapons he was equal unto Rāma. How then hath he been slain?[24] He was regarded as a mighty car-warrior, conversant with all modes of warfare. He was the foremost of all bowmen, and the one man amongst all men![25] O prince, the son of Rādhā was always worshipped by Dhritarāshtra and his son, for thy sake! How then hath he been slain by thee?[26] In all engagements, Dhritarāshtra's son, O Arjuna, used to regard Karna as thy death, O bull among men![27] How then, O tiger among men, hath that Karna been slain by thee in battle? Tell me, O son of Kunti, how that Karna hath been slain by thee![28] How, while he was enagaged in battle, didst thou, O tiger among-men, strike off his head in the very sight of all his friends like a tiger tearing off the head of a *Ruru* deer?[29] That Suta's son who in battle searched all the points of the compass for finding thee, that Karna who had promised to give a car with six bulls of elephantine proportions unto him that would point thee out,[30] I ask, doth that Karna of wicked soul lie today on the bare ground, slain with thy keen arrows equipt with *Kanka* feathers? Having slain the Suta's son in battle, thou hast accomplished a deed highly agreeable to me![31] Encountering him in battle, hast thou really slain that Suta's son, who, filled with arrogance and pride and bragging of his heroism, used to search everywhere on the field of battle for thee?[32] Hast thou, O sire, really slain in battle that sinful wretch who used to always challenge thee and who was desirous, for thy sake, of giving unto others a magnificent car, made of gold, along with a number of elephants and bulls and steeds?[33] Hast thou really slain today that sinful wight who was exceedingly dear

to Suyodhana, and who, intoxicated with pride of heroism, used always to brag in the assembly of the Kurus?[34] Encountered in battle, doth that wretch lie today on the field, his limbs exceedingly mangled with sky-ranging shafts sped by thee from thy bow and all steeped in blood? Have the two arms of Dhritarāshtra's son been (at last) broken?[35] Have those words been unfulfilled uttered from folly by him who, filled with pride, used to always boast in the midst of the kings for gladdening Duryodhana, saying,—*I will slay Phālguna*?[36] O son of Indra, hath that Karna of little understanding been slain by thee today, that Suta's son who made the vow that he would not wash his feet as long as Pārtha lived?[37] That Karna of wicked understanding who in the assembly, before the Kuru chiefs, had addressed Krishnā, saying,—[Why, O Krishnā, dost thou not abandon the Pāndavas that are divested of might, exceedingly weak, and fallen?][38] —that Karna who had vowed for thy sake, saying that he would not return from battle without having slain Krishna and Pārtha,—I ask, doth that Karna of sinful understanding lie today on the field, his body pierced with shafts?[39] Thou knowest the nature of the battle that took place when the Srinjayas and the Kauravas encountered each other, the battle, viz., in which I was brought to that distressful plight. Encountering that Karna, hast thou slain him today?[40] O Savyasāchin, hast thou today, with blazing shafts sped from *Gāndiva*, cut off from the trunk of that Karna of wicked understanding his resplendent head decked with ear-rings?[41] Pierced with Karna's shafts today, I had, O hero, thought of thee (that thou wouldst slay him)! Hast thou then, by the slaughter of Karna, made that thought of mine true?[42] In consequence of the protection granted him by Karna, Suyodhana, filled with pride, always recked us little. Displaying thy prowess, hast thou today destroyed that refuge of Suyodhana?[43] That Suta's son of wicked soul, that Karna of great wrath, who had formerly, in the presence of the Kauravas and in the midst of the assembly, called us sesame seeds without kernel, encountering that Karna in battle, hast thou slain him today?[44] That Suta's son of wicked soul who had,

laughing the while, commanded Dusçāsana to forcibly drag Yajnasena's daughter won in gambling by Suvala's son, hath he been slain today by thee?[45] That Karna of little understanding who, having been counted as only half a car-warrior during the tale of *Rathas* and *Atirathas*, had upbraided that foremost of all wielders of weapons on Earth, viz., our grandsire Bhishma, hath he been slain by thee?[46] Extinguish, O Phālguna, this fire in my heart that is born of vindictiveness and is fanned by the wind of humiliation, telling me that thou hast slain Karna today, having encountered him in battle![47] The news of Karna's slaughter is exceedingly agreeable to me. Tell me, therefore, how the Suta's son hath been slain! Like the divine Vishnu waiting for the arrival of Indra with the intelligence of Vritra's slaughter, I had so long waited for thee, O hero!—'"[43]

SECTION LXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing these words of the righteous king who had been filled with anger, that high-souled *Atiratha*, viz., Jishnu of infinite energy, replied unto the invincible Yudhishthira of great might, saying,[1]—While battling with the *Samsaptakas* today, Drona's son who always proceedeth at the head of the Kuru troops, O king, suddenly came before me, shooting shafts that resembled snakes of virulent poison.[2]* Beholding my car, of rattle deep as the roar of clouds, all the troops began to encompass it. Slaying full five hundred of those, I then, O foremost of kings, proceeded against Drona's son.[3] Approaching me, O king, that hero, with great resolution, rushed against me like a prince of elephants against a lion, and desired to rescue, O monarch, the Kaurava car-warriors that were being slaughtered by me.[4] Then, in that battle, O Bhārata, the preceptor's son, that foremost of heroes among the Kurus, incapable of being made to tremble, began to afflict me and Janārddana with whetted shafts resembling poison or fire.[5]

---

* The Bengal reading of the last word of 2 is evidently incorrect. The correct reading seems to be *Kurusainyerājan* as given in the Bombay edition.—T.

While engaged in battle with me, eight carts, each drawn by eight bullocks, carried his hundreds of arrows. He shot them all at me, but like a wind destroying the clouds I destroyed with my shafts that arrowy shower of his.[6] He then shot at me, with skill and force and resolution, thousands of other arrows, all sped from his bow-string stretched to his very ear, even like a black cloud in the season of rains pouring in torrents the water with which it is chagred.[7] So quickly did Drona's son career in that battle that we could not discern from which side, the left or the right, he shot his arrows, nor could we notice when he took up his arrows and when he let them off.[8] Indeed, the bow of Drona's son was seen by us to be incessantly drawn to a circle. At last, the son of Drona pierced me with five whetted arrows and Vāsudeva also with five whetted arrows.[9] Within the twinkling of an eye, however, I afflicted him with thirty shafts endued with the force of thunderbolts. Exceedingly afflicted with those shafts sped by me, he soon assumed the form of a procupine.[10] All his limbs became bathed in blood. Beholding his troops, those foremost of warriors, all covered with blood and overwhelmed by me, he then entered the car-division of the Suta's son.[11] Seeing the troops overwhelmed by me in battle, and struck with fear, and beholding the elephants and steeds flying away, that grinder (of hostile hosts), viz., Karna, approached me quickly with fifty great car-warriors. Slaying them all and avoiding Karna, I have quickly come hither for seeing thee.[12] All the Pānchālas are afflicted with fear at sight of Karna like kine at the scent of a lion. The Prabhadrakas also, O king, having approached Karna, are like persons that have entered the wide-open jaws of Death.[13] Karna has already despatched to Yama's abode full seventeen hundred of those distressed car-warriors. Indeed, O king, the Suta's son did not become cheerless till he had a sight of us.[14] Thou hadst first been engaged with Açwatthāman and exceedingly mangled by him. I heard that after that thou wert seen by Karna. O thou of inconceivable feats, I thought that thou must have, O king, been enjoying rest (in the camp), having come away from the cruel Karna.[15] I have seen, O son of Pāndu, the great and wonderful *(Bhārgava)*

weapon of Karna displayed in the van of battle. There is now no other warrior among the Srinjayas that is able to resist the mighty car-warrior Karna![16] Let Cini's grandson Sātyaki, and Dhrishtadyumna, O king, be the protectors of my car-wheels. Let the heroic princes Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas protect my rear.[17] O thou of great glory, encountering that heroic and invincible car-warrior, viz., the Suta's son, staying in the hostile army, like Cakra encountering Vritra, O foremost of kings,[18] I will, O Bhārata, fight with the Suta's son if he can be found in this battle today! Come and behold me and the Suta's son contending with each other in battle for victory![19] There, the Prabhadrakas are rushing towards Karna like persons rushing towards the face of a mighty bull! There, O Bhārata, six thousand princes are sacrificing themselves in battle for the sake of heaven![20] If, putting forth my strength, I do not, O king, slay Karna today with all his relatives while engaged in battle with him, then that end will be mine, O lion among kings, which is his that does not accomplish a vow made by him![21] I beg of thee, bless me, saying that victory will be mine in battle! Yonder, the Dhārtarāshtras are about to devour Bhima! I will, O lion among kings, slay the Suta's son and his troops and all our foes!—' "[22]

SECTION LXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing that Karna of mighty energy was still alive, Prithā's son Yudhishthira of immeasurable energy, exceedingly anrgy with Phālguna, and burning with the shafts of Karna, said these words unto Dhananjaya:[1]—O sire, thy army is fled and hath been beaten in a way that is scarcely honorable! Inspired with fear and deserting Bhima, thou hast come hither since thou hast been unable to slay Karna![2] Thou hast, by entering her womb, rendered the conception of Kunti abortive! Thou hast acted improperly by deserting Bhima because thou wert unable to slay the Suta's son![3] Thou hadst, O Pārtha, said unto me in the *Dwaita* woods that thou wouldst, on a single car, slay Karna. Why then, through fear of Karna, hast thou come hither, avoiding

Karna and deserting Bhima ?[4] If in the Dwaita woods thou hadst said unto me,—[O king, I shall not be able to fight with Karna !]—we would then, O Pārtha, have made other arrangements suitable to the circumstances ![5] Having promised to me the slaughter of Karna, thou hast not, O hero, kept that promise ! Bringing us into the midst of foes, why hast thou broken us into pieces by throwing us down on a hard soil ?[6] Expecting diverse good things and benefits from thee, O Arjuna, we have always uttered blessings on thee ! All those expectations, however, O prince, have proved vain like those of persons expectant of fruit getting instead a tree burthened only with flowers ![7] Like a fish-hook hid within a piece of meat, or poison overlaid with food, thou didst, for disappointing us at last, point out destruction in the shape of kingdom unto ourselves covetous of kingdom ![8] For these thirteen years, O Dhananjaya, we have, from hope, lived relying on thee, like seed sown on Earth in expectation of the showers sent by the gods in season ![9] Even these were the words that a voice in the skies had said unto Prithā on the seventh day after thy birth, O thou of foolish understanding !—[This son of thine that is born will have the prowess of Vāsava himself ! He will vanquish all his heroic foes ![10] Endued with superior energy, he will at Khāndava vanquish all the celestials united together and diverse other creatures ! This one will subjugate the Madras, the Kalingas, and the Kaikayas. This one will, in the midst of many kings, slay the Kurus ![11] There will be no bowman superior to him, and no creature will ever be able to vanquish him ! With his senses under control, and having obtained mastery over all branches of knowledge, this one, by merely desiring it, will bring all creatures under subjection to himself ![12] This high-souled son that is born of thee, O Kunti, will in beauty be the rival of Soma, in speed of the god of wind, in patience of Meru, in forgiveness of Earth, in splendour of Surya, in prosperity of the Lord of treasures, in courage of Cakra, and in might of Vishnu ! He will be the slayer of all foes like Vishnu the son of Aditi ! Endued with immeasurable energy, he will be celebrated for the destruction he will deal to foes and the success he will win for friends ! He will, besides,

be the founder of a race ![13-14]—Even thus, in the skies, on the summit of the Cataçringa mountains, in the hearing of many ascetics, that voice spoke. All that, however, hath not come to pass! Alas, it shows that the gods even may speak untruths![15] Hearing also the words of praise always uttered about thee by many foremost of *Rishis*, I never expected that Suyodhana would win success and prosperity or that thou thyself wouldst be afflicted with the fear of Karna![16] Thou ridest upon an excellent car constructed by the celestial artificer himself, with axles that do not creak, and with standard that bears the ape. Thou bearest a sword attached to that belt of gold and silk. This thy bow *Gāndiva* is full six cubits long. Thou hast Keçava for thy driver. Why then, through fear of Karna, hast thou come away from battle, O Pārtha![17] If, O thou of wicked soul, thou hadst given this bow to Keçava and become his driver, then Keçava would have (by this time) slain the fierce Karna like (Cakra) the lord of the Maruts slaying with his thunder the *Asura* Vritra![18] If thou art unable to resist the fierce son of Rādhā today as he is careering in battle, give this thy *Gāndiva* today to some other king, that may be thy superior in (the use and knowledge of) weapons![19] If that be done, the world will not then behold us bereft of sons and wives, deprived of happiness in consequence of the loss of kingdom, and sunk, O son of Pāndu, in an unfathomable hell of great misery![20] It would have been better for thee if thou hadst never been born in the womb of Kunti, or, having taken thy birth there, if thou hadst come out on the fifth month an abortion, than to have, O prince, thus come away from battle, O thou of wicked soul![21] Fie on thy *Gāndiva*, fie on the might of thy arms, fie on thy inexhaustible arrows! Fie on thy banner with the gigantic ape on it, and fie on thy car given thee by the god of fire!—'"[22]*

---

* The Bombay edition contains about 8 more verses in this section. It is difficult to decide whether they are genuine. I prefer, however, to follow the Bengal texts in such matters.—T.

SECTION LXIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thus addressed by Yudhishthira, Kunti's son owning white steeds, filled with rage, drew his sword for slaying that bull of Bharata's race.[1] Beholding his wrath, Keçava, conversant with the workings of the (human) heart, said,—Why, O Pārtha, dost thou draw thy sword?[2] I do not, O Dhananjaya, behold any one here with whom thou hast to fight! The Dhārtarāshtras have now been assailed by the intelligent Bhimasena![3] Thou camest from battle, O son of Kunti, for seeing the king! The king has been seen by thee. Indeed, Yudhishthira is well.[4] Having seen that tiger among kings who is endued with prowess equal to that of a tiger, why this folly at a time when thou shouldst rejoice?[5] I do not see here, O son of Kunti, the person whom thou mayst slay! Why then dost thou desire to strike? What is this delusion of thy mind?[6] Why dost thou, with such speed, take up that formidable sword? I ask thee this, O son of Kunti! What is this that thou art about, inasmuch as, O thou of inconceivable prowess, thou graspest that sword in anger?[7]—Thus addressed by Krishna, Arjuna, casting his eyes on Yudhishthira, and breathing like an angry snake, said unto Govinda,[8]—I would cut off the head of that man who would tell me—*Give thy Gāndiva to another person!*—Even this is my secret vow.[9] Those words have been spoken by this king, O thou of immeasurable prowess, in thy presence, O Govinda! I dare not forgive them![10] I will for that slay this king who himself fears the slightest falling off from virtue. Slaying this best of men, I will keep my vow![11] It is for this that I have drawn the sword, O delighter of the Yadus! Even I, slaying Yudhishthira, will pay off my debt to truth![12] By that I will dispel my grief and fever, O Janārddana! I ask thee, what do you think suitable to the circumstances that have arisen?[13] Thou, O sire, knowest the entire past and future of this universe! I will do that which thou wilt tell me![14]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Govinda then said—*Fie, Fie*—unto Pārtha and once more continued to say,[15]—I now know, O Pār-

tha, that thou hast not waited upon the old, since, O tiger among men, thou hast yielded to wrath at a time when thou shouldst not have done so![16] No one that is acquainted with the distinctions of morality would act in the way, O Dhanañjaya, in which thou, O son of Pāndu, that art unacquainted with them are for acting today![17] He, O Pārtha, is the worst of men who achieveth acts that should not be done and acts that are apparently proper but condemned by the scriptures.[18]* Thou knowest not the conclusions of those learned men who, waited upon by pupils, declare their opinions, following the dictates of morality.[19]† The man that is not acquainted with those conclusions becomes confounded and stupified, O Pārtha, even as thou hast been stupified, in discriminating between what should be done and what should not.[20] What should be done and what should not, cannot be ascertained easily. Everything can be ascertained by the aid of the scriptures. Thou, however, art not acquainted with the scriptures.[21] Since (believing thyself) conversant with morality thou art desirous of observing morality (in this way, it seems) thou art actuated by ignorance. Thou believest thyself to be conversant with virtue, but thou dost not know, O Pārtha, that the slaughter of living creatures is a sin.[22] Abstention from injury to animals is, I think, the highest virtue. One may even speak an untruth, but one should never kill.[23] How then, O foremost of men, couldst thou wish, like an ordinary person, to slay thy eldest brother, the King, who is conversant with morality?[24] The slaughter of a person not engaged in battle, or of a foe, O Bhārata, who has turned his face from battle or who flies away or seeks protection or joins his hands or yields himself up or is careless, is never

---

* *Akāryānām Kriyānām* means acts that should not be done. *Kāryānam Akriyānām*, *i. e.*, acts condemned (by the scriptures) but nevertheless appearing as proper, such as the slaughter of the eldest brother for keeping a vow.—T.

† *Samāsavistāravit*, lit., one acquainted with a subject both in detail and in the gross; in other words, a learned person, or a man of great experience. *Upasthitās* is explained by Nilakantha as waited upon by pupils. *Kathayeyus* is, lit., speak or preach.—T

applauded by the righteous. All these attributes are in thy superior.*[25-26] This vow, O Pārtha, was adopted by thee before from foolishness. In consequence of that vow thou art now, from folly, desirous of perpetrating a sinful act.[27] Why, O Pārtha, dost thou rush towards thy reverend superior for slaying him, without having resolved the exceedingly subtile course of morality that is, again, difficult of being understood?[28] I will now tell thee, O son of Pāndu, this mystery connected with morality,—this mystery that was declared by Bhishma, by the righteous Yudhishthira,[29] by Vidura otherwise called *Kshatri*, and by Kunti of great celebrity. I will tell thee that mystery in all its details. Listen to it, O Dhananjaya![30] One who speaks truth is righteous. There is nothing higher than truth. Behold, however, truth as practised is exceedingly difficult to be understood as regards its essential attributes.[31] Truth may be unutterable, and even falsehood may be utterable where falsehood would become truth and truth would become falsehood.[32] In a situation of peril to life and in marriage, falsehood becomes utterable. In a situation involving the loss of one's entire property, falsehood becomes utterable.[33] On an occasion of marriage, or of enjoying a woman, or when life is in danger, or when one's entire property is about to be taken away, or for the sake of a Brāhmana, falsehood may be uttered. These five kinds of falsehood have been declared to be sinless.[34] On these occasions falsehood would become truth and truth would become falsehood.[35] He is a fool that practises truth without knowing the difference between truth and falsehood. One is said to be conversant with morality when one is able to distinguish between truth and falsehood.[36] What wonder then in this that a man of wisdom, by perpetrating even a cruel act, may obtain great merit like Valāka by the slaughter of the blind beast?[37] What wonder, again, in this that a foolish and ignorant person, from even the desire of winning merit, earns great sin like Kauçika (living) among the rivers?—[38]

---

* *I. e.*, all the attributes that would make slaughter censurable occur in Yudhishthria.—T.

"'Arjuna said,—Tell me, O holy one, this story that I may understand it, viz., this illustration about Valāka and about Kauçika (living) among rivers!—[39]

"'Vāsudeva said,—There was a certain hunter of animals, O Bhārata, of the name of Valāka. He used, for the livelihood of his sons and wives and not from will, to slay animals.[40] Devoted to the duties of his own order and always speaking the truth and never harbouring malice, he used also to support his parents and others that depended upon him.[41] One day, searching for animals even with perseverance and care, he found none. At last he saw a beast of prey whose sense of smell supplied the defect of his eyes, employed in drinking water.[42] Although he had never seen such an animal before, still he slew it immediately. After the slaughter of that blind beast, a floral shower fell from the skies (upon the head of the hunter).[43] A celestial car also, exceedingly delightful and resounding with the songs of *Apsaras* and the music of their instruments, came from heaven for taking away that hunter of animals.[44] That beast of prey, having undergone ascetic austerities, had obtained a boon and had become the cause of the destruction of all creatures. For this reason he was made blind by the Self-born.[45] Having slain that animal which had resolved to slay all creatures, Valāka went to heaven. Morality is even so difficult of being understood.[46] There was an ascetic of the name of Kauçika without much knowledge of the scriptures.* He lived on a spot not much removed from a village, at a point where many rivers met.[47] He made a vow, saying,—I must always speak the truth!—He then became celebrated, O Dhananjaya, as a speaker of truth.[48] At that time certain persons, from fear of robbers, entered that wood (where Kauçika dwelt). Thither even, the robbers, filled with rage, searched for them carefully.[49] Approaching Kauçika then, that speaker of truth, they asked him, saying,—[O holy one, by which path have a multitude of men gone a little while before? Asked in the name of Truth,

* I prefer the reading *tapaswi navahuçrutas*. The other reading, noticed by Nilakantha, is *tapaswinovahuçrutas*, meaning the foremost of ascetics, &c.,—T.

answer us. If thou hast seen them, tell us this.][50]—Thus adjured, Kauçika told them the truth, saying,—[Those men have entered this wood crowded with many trees and creepers and plants.][51] —Even thus, O Pārtha, did Kauçika give them the information. Then those cruel men, it is heard, finding out the persons they sought, slew them all.[52] In consequence of that great sin consisting in the words spoken, Kaucika, ignorant of the subtilities of morality, fell into a grievous hell,[53] even as a foolish man, of little knowledge, and unacquainted with the distinctions of morality, falleth into painful hell by not having asked persons of age for the solution of his doubts.[54] There must be some indications for distinguishing virtue from sin. Sometimes that high and unattainable knowledge may be had by the exercise of reason.[55] Many persons say, on the one hand, that the scriptures indicate morality. I do not contradict this. The scriptures, however, do not provide for every case.[56] For the growth of creatures have precepts of morality been declared.[57] That which is connected with abstention from injury must, for certain, be morality. The precepts of morality were made for making creatures abstain from injury.[58] And because it upholdeth all, therefore is morality called *Dharma*. In fact, morality upholdeth all creatures. Therefore, that is morality, without doubt, which is calculated to uphold (creatures).[59] One should never have any intercourse with those persons that on any occasion hope to acquire virtue by acting according to the precepts of unassisted reason, or to win salvation, as regards situations about which the scriptures are silent, by the same means.[60] (In situations again where neither the scriptures nor wisdom of the reason affords any light), when the necessity to speak arises, one should maintain silence, or, if silence produces any risk (to one's ownself or to others), it is better to speak an untruth. Verily, that untruth is truth.[61] He that, in view of certain purposes, makes a vow which he does not keep by his acts, obtains not the fruit of that vow.[62]* On occasions of danger to life, or

* Verses 60, 61, and 62 are what are called *cruces* or *Vyāsakutas*. I have followed the gloss of Nilakantha in rendering them. *Nyāyena* in

of marriage, or of risk of destruction to one's entire body of relatives and kinsmen, or of jests, that which is said will not be regarded as falsehood.[63] They that are conversant with the truths of morality do not behold sin in all this. There where by even an oath one may escape from the company of thieves and robbers,[64] it is better to swear falsely, for that falsehood would, without doubt, be truth. No one should give his wealth to thieves, if, of course, he can avoid it by any means.[65] The gift of one's wealth to sinful men afflicts the giver himself. Therefore, a falsehood uttered for the sake of a righteous end does not become falsehood.[66] I have now duly declared unto thee the indications by which morality or its reverse) may be ascertained. Having heard all this, tell me, O Pārtha, if Yudhishthira deserves to be slain by thee![67]—

"'Arjuna said,—Thou, O Krishna, art of great wisdom and great intelligence! That which thou hast said for our good is undoubtedly true![68] Thou art as a mother unto us as also a father! Thou, O Krishna, art our great refuge! It is for this that thou givest us excellent counsel![69] There is nothing in the three worlds, O Krishna, that is not known to thee! Therefore, thou knowest high morality in all its details.[70] I certainly regard king Yudhishthira the just to be

---

60 alludes to the numerous precepts of a moral character referrible to the human wisdom unassisted by inspiration or the scriptures, such as "the wise man should make others happy. Even that is worship offered to the Deity." *Akujanena* has reference to the silence of the scriptures on any particular matter. Grammatically, *icchanti* is understood after *Mokshan* in the second line of 60. Regarding the morality of what is said in 61, one of the fictions of Sir Walter Scott, viz., *Woodstock*, furnishes an apt illustration in the answer of *Sir Henry Lee* to Oliver Cromwell when the former was asked about the presence or otherwise of *Louis Karneguy* in the house. However casuists may argue, no reader, whatever his principles, would despise the honest cavalier for a lie whose object was the safety of his king. In 62, what is said, parhaps, is that Arjuna, by not keeping his vow, incurred only the loss of the fruits of that vow, and as his vow had been motiveless or had proceeded at best from vanity or self-conceit, his loss would be immaterial. At any rate, he ran no risk of sin by not keeping his foolish vow.—T

unslayable by me. In this, however, that is my present purpose, tell me graciously something that I may do. Listen now to something else in my heart and which I will now declare![71] Thou knowest, O thou of Daçārha's race, what my vow is! I would, putting forth my might, slay him among men that would tell me these words, viz.,—[Give thy *Gandiva* to some other person, O Pārtha, who is thy superior in weapons and energy!] —So Bhima also will slay the person that will call him *breadless.** The king hath repeatedly used those very words to me, in thy presence, O hero, viz.,—[Give thy bow!][72-73]—If I slay him, O Keçava, I will not be able to live in this world for even a moment. Having intended again the slaughter of the king through folly and the loss of my mental faculties, I have been polluted by sin![74] It behoveth thee today, O foremost of all righteous persons, to give me such counsel that my vow, known throughout the world, may become true while at the same time both myself and the eldest son of Pāndu may live![75]—

"Vāsudeva said,—The king was fatigued, and under the influence of grief. He had been mangled in battle by Karna with numerous arrows. After that, O hero, he was repeatedly struck by the Suta's son (with his shafts). while he was retreating from battle.[76]† It was for this that, laboring under a load of sorrow, he spoke those improper words unto thee in wrath. He provoked thee by those words so that thou mightst slay Karna in battle.[77] The son of Pāndu knows that the wretched Karna is incapable of being borne by any one else in the world (save thee)! It was for this, O Pārtha, that the king in great wrath said those harsh words to thy face.[78] The stake in the game of today's battle has been made to lie in the ever alert and always

---

* It is difficult for foreigners to catch the sense of this word as a term of abuse or reproach. The fact is, the Indian races believe that a beardless person is more of a woman than a man, the hirsute appendages of manhood are so highly prized by them. In Bengal the word *khosā* (Sanskrit—*Tuvaraka)* is still a term of reproach. No person, in the morning, rising from bed, should see the face of a man that is destitute of the hirsute honors of manhood.—T.

† The Bengal reading *Ayuddhyamānas* seems to be correct.—T.

unbearable Karna. That Karna being slain, the Kauravas would necessarily be vanquished. Even this is what the royal son of Dharma had thought.[79] For this, the son of Dharma does not deserve death. Thy vow also, O Arjuna, should be kept. Listen now to my counsels that will be agreeable to thee,—to counsels in consequence of which Yudhishthira without being actually deprived of life may yet be dead.[80] As long as one that is deserving of respect continues to receive respect, he is said to live in the world of men. When, however, such a person meets with disrespect, he is spoken of as one that is dead though alive.[81] This king hath always been respected by thee and by Bhima and the twins, as also by all heroes and all persons in the world that are venerable for years. In some trifle then show him disrespect.[82] Therefore, O Pārtha, address this Yudhishthira as *thou* when his usual form of address is *your honor*. A superior, O Bhārata, by being addressed as *thou*, is killed though not deprived of life![83] Bear thyself thus, O son of Kunti, towards king Yudhishthira the just. Adopt this censurable behaviour, O perpetuater of Kuru's race![84] This best audition of all auditions, hath been declared by both Atharvan and Angiras.* Men desiring good should always act in this way without scruples of any kind.[85] Without being deprived of life a superior is yet said to be killed if that venerable one is addressed as *thou*. Conversant with duty as thou art, address king Yudhishthira the just in the manner I have indicated.[86] This death, O son of Pāndu, at thy hands, king Yudhishthira will never regard as an offence committed by thee. Having addressed him in this way, thou mayst then worship his feet and speak words of respect unto this son of Prithā and soothe his wounded honor.[87] Thy brother is wise. The royal son of Pāndu, therefore, will never be angry with thee. Freed from falsehood as also from fratricide, thou wilt then, O Pārtha, cheerfully slay the Suta's son Karna!—' "[88]

---

* *Cruti* is rendered 'audition,' having been first declared by Brahman to a hearer.—T.

Section LXX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thus addressed by Janārddana, Prithā's son Arjuna, applauding those counsels of his friend, then vehemently addressed king Yudhishthira the just in language that was harsh and the like of which he had never used before.[1]

"'Arjuna said,—Do thou not, O king, address these upbraidings to me,—thou that art passing thy time full two miles away from battle! Bhima, however, who is battling with the foremost heroes of the world may upbraid me![2] Having afflicted his foes at the proper time in battle, and slain many brave lords of Earth and many foremost of car-warriors and huge elephants and many heroic horsemen and countless brave combatants,[3] he hath, in addition, slain a thousand elephants and ten thousand Kāmvoja mountaineers, and is uttering loud leonine roars in battle like a lion after slaying innumerable smaller animals![4] That hero achieveth the most difficult feats, the like of which thou canst never achieve! Jumping down from his car, mace in hand, he hath destroyed a large number of steeds and cars and elephants in battle![5] With also his foremost of swords he hath destroyed many horsemen and cars and steeds and elephants! With the broken limbs of cars, and with his bow also, he consumeth his foes! Endued with the prowess of Indra, with his feet and also his bare arms he slayeth numerous foes.[6] Possessed of great might and resembling Kuvera or Yama, he destroyeth the hostile army, putting forth his strength. That Bhimasena hath the right to upbraid me, but not thou that art always protected by friends![7] Agitating the foremost of car-warriors and elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers, Bhima, single-handed, is now in the midst of the Dhārtarāshtras! That chastiser of foes hath the right to upraid me![8] That chastiser of foes who is slaying the Kalingas, the Vangas, the Angas, the Nishādas, and the Māgadhas, and large numbers of hostile elephants that are ever infuriate and that look like masses of blue clouds, is competent to upbraid me![9] Riding on a suitable car, shaking his bow at the proper time, and with shafts in his (other) hand, that hero poureth showers of arrows in great

battle like the clouds pouring torrents of rain.[10] Eight hundred elephants, I have seen, with their frontal globes split open and the ends of their tusks cut off, have today been slain by Bhima with shafts in battle. That slayer of foes is competent to tell me harsh words.[11] The learned say that the strength of foremost of Brāhmanas lies in speech, and that the Kshatriya's strength is in his arms. Thou, O Bhārata, art strong in words and very unfeeling! Thou thinkest me to be like thyself![12] I always strive to do thee good with my soul, life, sons, and wives! Since, notwithstanding all this, thou still piercest me with such wordy darts, it is evident that we cannot expect any happiness from thee.[13] Lying on Draupadi's bed thou insultest me, though for thy sake I slay the mightiest of car-warriors! Thou art without any anxiety, O Bhārata, and thou art cruel! I have never obtained any happiness from thee![14] It was for thy good, O chief of men, that Bhishma, firmly devoted to truth, himself told thee the means of his death in battle, and was slain by the heroic and high-souled Cikhandin, the son of Drupada, protected by me![15] I do not derive any pleasure from the thought of thy restoration to sovereignty, since thou art addicted to the evil practice of gambling! Having thyself committed a wicked act to which they only are addicted that are low, thou desirest now to vanquish thy foes through our aid![16] Thou hadst heard of the numerous faults and the great sinfulness of dice that Sahadeva spoke about. Yet dice, which is worshipped by the wicked, thou couldst not abandon! It was for this that all of us have fallen into hell![17] We have never derived any happiness from thee since thou wert engaged in gambling with dice. Having, O son of Pāndu, thyself caused all this calamity, thou art, again, addressing these harsh words to me![18] Slain by us, hostile troops are lying on the field, with mangled bodies and uttering loud wails! It was thou that didst that cruel act in consequence of which the Kauravas have become offenders and are being destroyed![19] Nations from the North, the West, the East, and the South, are being struck, wounded, and slain, after the performance of incomparable feats in battle by great warriors of both sides.[20] It was thou that hadst gambled! It was for thee that we lost

our kingdom! Our calamity arose from thee, O king! Striking us, again, with the cruel goad of thy speeches, O king, do not provoke our wrath![21]—

"Sanjaya said,—'Having addressed these harsh and exceedingly bitter words unto his eldest brother and thereby committed a small sin, the intelligent Savyasāchin of calm wisdom, who is ever actuated by the fear of falling away from virtue, became very cheerless.[22] The son of the chief of the celestials became filled with repentance, and breathing heavily, drew his sword. Seeing this, Krishna asked him,—What is this? Why dost thou again unsheathe thy sword blue as the sky?[23] Tell me what thy answer is, for then I shall give thee counsel for the gratification of thy object!—Thus addressed by that foremost of men, Arjuna in great sorrow answered Keçava, saying,[24]—I shall, putting forth my strength, slay my own self by whom this wicked act hath been done!—Hearing those words of Pārtha, Keçava, that foremost of all righteous persons, said this unto Dhananjaya,[25]—Having said these words unto the king, why hast thou become so cheerless? O slayer of foes, thou desirest now to destroy thy own self. This, however, O Kiritin, is not approved by the righteous![26] If, O hero among men, thou hadst today, from fear of sin, slain this thy eldest brother of virtuous soul, what would then have been thy condition and what wouldst thou not then have done?[27] Morality is subtile, O Bhārata, and unknowable, especially by those that are ignorant. Listen to me as I preach to thee! By destroying thy own self thou wouldst sink into a more terrible hell than if thou hadst slain thy brother![28] Declare now, in words, thy own merits. Thou shalt then, O Pārtha, have slain thy own self![29]—Applauding these words, saying,—Let it be so, O Krishna!—Dhananjaya, the son of Cakra, lowering his bow, said unto Yudhishthira, that foremost of virtuous persons,—Listen, O king![30] There is no other bowman, O ruler of men, like unto myself, except the deity that bears *Pināka!* I am regarded by even that illustrious deity. In a moment I can destroy this universe of mobile and immobile creatures![31] It was I, O king, that vanquished all the points of the compass with all the kings ruling there, and brought all to thy subjection! The

Rājasuya (performed by thee), brought to completion by gift of *Dakshinā*, and the celestial palace owned by thee, were both due to my prowess![32] In my hands are (marks of) sharp shafts and a stringed bow with arrow fixed thereon. On both my soles are the signs of cars with standards. No one can vanquish a person like me in battle![33] Nations from the North, the West, the East and the South, have been struck down, slain, exterminated, and destroyed. A small remnant only of the *Samsaptakas* is alive. I alone have slain half of the entire (hostile) army![34] Slaughtered by me, the Bharata host that resembled, O king, the very host of the celestials, is lying dead on the field. I slay those with (high) weapons that are conversant with high weapons. For this reason I do not reduce the three worlds to ashes.[35]* Riding upon my terrible and victorious car, Krishna and myself will soon proceed for slaying the Suta's son! Let this king become cheerful now. I will surely slay Karna in battle, with my arrows![36] Either the Suta dame will today be made childless by me, or Kunti will be made childless by Karna! Truly do I say it that I will not put off my armour without having slain Karna with my arrows in battle![37]—'

"Sanjaya said,—'Having said these words unto that foremost of virtuous persons, viz., Yudhishthira, Pārtha threw down his weapons and cast aside his bow and quickly thrust his sword into the sheath.[38] Hanging down his head in shame, the diadem-decked Arjuna, with joined hands, addressed Yudhishthira and said,—Be cheerful, O king, forgiving me! What I have said, you will understand a little while after! I bow to thee![39] —Thus seeking to cheer that royal hero capable of bearing all foes, Arjuna, that foremost of men, standing there, once more said,—This task will not be delayed! It will be accomplished soon! Karna cometh towards me. I shall proceed against

---

* The meaning is that if I wished to destroy persons unconversant with (superior) weapons by means of the (superior) weapons I have, then, by this time, I could consume the universe. It is, however, a rule with me that I never use my superior weapons against any one who is unacquainted with superior weapons.—T.

him![40] I shall, with my whole soul, proceed for rescuing Bhima from the battle and for slaying the Suta's son! I tell thee that I hold my life for thy good! Know this for the truth, O king![41]—Having said so, the diadem-decked Arjuna of blazing splendour touched the king's feet and rose for proceeding to the field.[42] Hearing, however, those harsh words of his brother Phālguna, Pāndu's son, king Yudhishthira the just, rising up from that bed (on which he had been sitting), said these words unto Pārtha, with his heart filled with sorrow![43]—O Pārtha, I have acted wickedly! For that, ye have been overwhelmed with terrible calamity! Do thou strike off, therefore, this my head today! I am the worst of men, and the exterminater of my race![44] I am a wretch! I am addicted to wicked courses. I am of foolish understanding! I am idle and a coward! I am an insulter of the old! I am cruel! What wouldst thou gain by always being obedient to a cruel person like me?[45] A wretch that I am, I shall this very day retire into the woods! Live you happily without me! The high-souled Bhimasena is fit to be king! A eunuch that I am, what shall I do with sovereignty?[46] I am incapable of bearing these harsh speeches of thyself excited with wrath! Let Bhima become king! Having been insulted thus, O hero, what use have I with life?[47]—Having said these words, the king, leaving that bed, suddenly stood up and desired to go to the woods. Then Vāsudeva, bowing down, said unto him,[48]—O king, the celebrated vow of the wielder of *Gāndiva* who is ever devoted to truth, about his *Gāndiva*, is known to thee![49] That man in the world who would tell him—[Give thy *Gāndiva* to another]—would be slain by him. Even those very words were addressed to him by you.[50] Therefore, for keeping that earnest vow, Pārtha, acting also at my instance, offered you this insult, O lord of Earth! Insult to superiors is said to be their death.[51] For this reason, O thou of mighty arms, it behoveth thee to forgive me that beseech and bow to thee this transgression, O king, of both myself and Arjuna committed for maintaining the truth! Both of us, O great king, throw ourselves on thy mercy![52-53] The Earth shall today drink the blood of the wretched son of Rādhā! I swear truly to thee! Know the Suta's son as slain today! He whose

slaughter thou desirest hath today lost his life![54]—Hearing those words of Krishna, king Yudhishthira the just, in a great flurry, raised the prostrate Hrishikeça,[55] and joining his hands, said in haste,—It is even so as thou hast said! I have been guilty of a transgression![56] I have now been awakened by thee, O Govinda! I am saved by thee, O Mādhava! By thee, O Achyuta, we have today been rescued from a great calamity![57] Both of us stupified by folly, viz., myself and Arjuna, have been rescued from an ocean of distress, having obtained thee as our lord![58] Indeed, having obtained the raft of thy intelligence today, we have, with our relatives and allies, passed over an ocean of sorrow and grief! Having obtained thee, O Achyuta, we are not masterless!—' "[59]

Section LXXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having heard these joyful words of king Yudhishthira, Govinda of virtuous soul, that delighter of the Yadus, then addressed Pārtha.[1] The lattter, however, having at the instance of Krishna, addressed those words unto Yudhishthira, became exceedingly cheerless for having committed a little sin.[2] Then Vāsudeva, as if smiling, said unto the son of Pāndu, —What would have been thy condition, O Pārtha, if, observ ant of virtue, thou hadst slain the son of Dharma with thy sharp sword? Having only addressed the king as *thou*, such cheerlessness hath possessed thy heart![3-4] If thou hadst slain the king, O Pārtha, what wouldst thou have done after that? Morality is so unknowable, especially by persons of foolish understanding![5] Without doubt, great grief would have been thine in consequence of thy fear of sin. Thou wouldst have sunk also in terrible hell in consequence of the slaughter of thy brother![6] Gratify now this king of virtuous behaviour, this foremost of all practicers of virtue, this chief of Kuru's race! Even this is my wish.[7] Gratifying the king with devotion, and after Yudhishthira will have been made happy, we two will proceed against the car of the Suta's son for fighting him.[8] Slaying Karna today with thy keen shafts in battle, do thou, O giver of honors, give great happiness to Dharma's

son![9] Even this, O mighty-armed one, is what I think to be suitable to this hour! Having done this, thy purpose will be achieved![10]—Then Arjuna, O monarch, in shame, touched king Yudhishthira's feet with his head.[11] And he repeatedly said unto that chief of the Bharatas,—Be gratified with me! Forgive, O king, all that I have said from desire of observing virtue and from fear of sin![12]—'*

"Sanjaya said,—Beholding Dhananjaya, that slayer of foes, lying weeping at his feet, O bull of Bharata's race, king Yudhishthira the just[13] raised his brother. And king Yudhishthira, that lord of Earth, then embraced his brother affectionately and wept aloud.[14] The two brothers, of great splendour, having wept for a long while, at last became freed from grief, O monarch, and as cheerful as before.[15] Then embracing him once more with affection and smelling his head, the son of Pāndu, exceedingly gratified, applauded his brother Jaya and said,[16]—O thou of mighty arms, in the very sight of all the troops, my armour, standard, bow, dart, steeds, and arrows, were cut off in battle, O great bowman, by Karna with his shafts, although I exerted myself with care![17] Thinking of and seeing his feats in battle, O Phālguna, I lose my energies in grief. Life itself is no longer dear to me![18] If thou dost not slay that hero in battle today, I will cast away my life-breaths! What use have I with life?[19]—Thus addressed, Vijaya replied, O bull of Bharata's race, saying,—I swear by Truth, O king, and by thy grace,[20] by Bhima, O best of men, and by the twins, O lord of Earth, that today I shall slay Karna, in battle, or, being myself slain by him,[21] fall down on the Earth! Swearing truly, I touch my weapons!—Having said these words unto the king, he addressed Mādhava, saying,[22]—Without doubt, O Krishna, I will slay Karna in battle today! Aided by thy intelligence, blessed be thou, the slaughter of that wicked-souled one is certain![23]—Thus addressed, Keçava, O best of kings, said unto Pārtha,—Thou art competent, O best of the Bharatas, to slay the mighty Karna![24] Even this hath ever been

* Nilakantha believes these verses (1-12) to be interpolations. Nothing more likely. They are evidently repetitions.—T.

my thought, O mighty car-warrior, as to how, O best of men, thou wouldst slay Karna in battle![25]—Endued with great intelligence, Mādhava once more addressed the son of Dharma, saying,—O Yudhishthira, it behoveth thee to comfort Vibhatsu,[26] and command him to slaughter Karna of wicked soul!* Having heard that thou hadst been afflicted with the shafts of Karna, myself and this one came hither, O son of Pāndu, for ascertaining thy plight![27] By good luck, O king, thou wert not slain! By good luck, thou wert not seized! Comfort thy Vibhatsu, and bless him, O sinless one, with thy wishes for his victory![28]—

"'Yudhishthira said,—Come, come, O Pārtha, O Vibhatsu, and embrace me, O son of Pāndu! Thou hast told me beneficial words that deserved to be said, and I have forgiven thee![29] I command thee, O Dhananjaya, go and slay Karna! Do not, O Pārtha, be angry for the harsh words I said unto thee![30]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then Dhananjaya, O king, bowed unto Yudhishthira by bending his head, and seized with his two hands, O sire, the feet of his eldest brother![31] Raising him and embracing him closely, the king smelt his head and once more said these words unto him,[32]—O Dhananjaya, O thou of mighty arms, I have been greatly honored by thee! Do thou ever win greatness and victory![33]—

"'Arjuna said,—Approaching Rādhā's son today that is proud of his might, I shall slay that man of sinful deeds with my shafts in battle, along with all his kinsmen and followers![34] He who, having bent the bow strongly, afflicted thee with his shafts, I say, that Karna will obtain today the bitter fruit of that act of his![35] Having slain Karna, O lord of Earth, I shall today come back from the dreadful battle to pay thee my respects by walking behind thee! I tell thee this truly![36] Without having slain Karna I shall not come back today from the great battle. Truly do I swear this by touching thy feet, O lord of the universe![37]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Unto the diadem-decked (Arjuna) who was speaking in that way, Yudhishthira, with a cheerful

* The command of a superior is the sure means of success.—T.

heart, said these words of graver import:[38]—Do thou obtain imperishable fame, and such a period of life as accordeth with thy own desire, and victory, and energy, and the destruction of thy foes! Let the gods grant thee prosperity! Obtain thou all these to the measure desired by me! Go quickly to battle, and slay Karna, even as Purandara slew Vritra for his own aggrandisement!—' "[39].

SECTION LXXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having with a cheerful heart gratified king Yudhishthira the just, Pārtha, prepared to slay the Suta's son, addressed Govinda, saying,[1]—Let my car be once more equipt, and let my foremost of steeds be yoked thereto! Let all kinds of weapons be placed upon that great vehicle![2] The steeds have rolled on the ground. They have been trained by persons skilled in horse-lore. Along with the other equipments of the car, let them be quickly brought and decked in their trappings![3] Proceed quickly, O Govinda, for the slaughter of the Suta's son!—Thus addressed, O monarch, by the high-souled Phālguna,[4] Krishna commanded Dāruka, saying,—Do all that Arjuna, that chief of Bharata's race and that foremost of all wielders of the bow, hath said![5]—Thus ordered by Krishna, Dāruka, O best of kings, yoked those steeds unto that car covered with tiger-skins and ever capable of scorching all foes.[6] He then represented unto the high-souled son of Pāndu the fact of having equipt his vehicle. Beholding the car equipt by the high-souled Dāruka,[7] Phālguna, obtaining Yudhishthira's leave and causing the Brāhmanas to perform propitiatory rites and utter benedictions on him, ascended that excellent vehicle.[8] King Yudhishthira the just, of great wisdom, also blessed him. After this, Phālguna proceeded towards Karna's car.[9] Beholding that great bowman thus proceeding, all creatures, O Bhārata, regarded Karna as already slain by the high-souled Pāndava.[10] All the points of the compass, O king, became serene. King-fishers and parrots and herons, O king,[11] wheeled around the son of Pāndu. A large number of beautiful and auspicious birds, O king called *Pang*,[12] causing Arjuna

(by their timely appearance) to put forth greater speed in battle, cheerfully uttered their cries around him. Terrible *Kankas* and vultures, and cranes and hawks and ravens, O king,[13] tempted by the prospect of food, proceeded in advance of his car, and indicated auspicious omens[14] foreboding the destruction of the hostile host and the slaughter of Karna. And while Pārtha proceeded, a copious perspiration covered his body.[15] His anxiety also became very great as to how he would achieve his vow. The slayer of Madhu then, beholding Pārtha filled with anxiety as he proceeded, addressed the wielder of *Gāndiva* and said these words.'[16]

"'Vāsudeva said,—O wielder of *Gāndiva*, save thee there exists no other man that could vanquish those whom thou hast vanquished with this bow of thine![17] We have seen many heroes, who, endued with prowess like that of Cakra, have attained to the highest regions, encountering thy heroic self in battle![18] Who else, O puissant one, that is not equal to thee, would be safe and sound after encountering Drona and Bhishma and Bhagadatta, O sire, and Vinda and Anuvinda of Avanti and Sudakshina the chief of the Kāmvojas and Crutāyudha of mighty energy and Achyutayudha as well?[19-20] Thou hast celestial weapons, and lightness of hand, and might, and thou art never stupified in battle! Thou hast also that humility which is due to knowledge![21] Thou canst strike with effect! Thou hast sureness of aim, and presence of mind as regards the selection of means, O Arjuna! Thou art competent to destroy all mobile and immobile creatures including the very gods with the *Gandharvas*![22] On Earth, O Pārtha, there is no human warrior who is equal to thee in battle! Amongst all Kshatriyas, invincible in battle, that wield the bow,[23] amongst the very gods, I have not seen or heard of even one that is equal to thee! The Creator of all beings, viz., Brahman, himself created the great bow *Gāndiva*[24] with which thou fightest, O Pārtha! For this reason there is no one that is equal to thee! I must, however, O son of Pāndu, say that which is beneficial to thee![25] Do not, O mighty-armed one, disregard Karna, that ornament of battle! Karna is possessed of might. He is proud and accomplished in weap-

ons. He is a *Mahāratha.*[26] He is accomplished (in the ways of battle) and conversant with all modes of warfare. He is also well acquainted with all that suits place and time. What need is there of saying much? Hear in brief, O son of Pāndu![27] I regard the mighty car-warrior Karna as thy equal, or, perhaps, thy superior! With the greatest care and resolution shouldst thou slay him in great battle![28] In energy he is equal to Agni. As regards speed, he is equal to the impetuosity of the wind. In wrath, he resembles the Destroyer himself. Endued with might, he resembles a lion in the formation of his body.[29] He is eight *Ratnis** in stature. His arms are large. His chest is broad. He is invincible. He is sensitive. He is a hero. He is, again, the foremost of heroes. He is exceedingly handsome.[30] Possessed of every accomplishment of a warrior, he is a dispeller of the fears of friends. Engaged in the good of Dhritarāshtra's son, he always hates the sons of Pāndu.[31] No one, not even the gods with Vāsava at their head, can slay the son of Rādhā, save thee, as I think! Slay, therefore, the Suta's son today![32] No one possessed of flesh and blood, not even the gods fighting with great care, not all the warriors (of the three worlds) fighting together, can vanquish that car-warrior![33] Towards the Pāndavas he is always of wicked soul and sinful behaviour, and cruel, and of wicked intelligence. In his quarrel with the sons of Pāndu, he is actuated by no consideration affecting his own interests. Slaying that Karna, therefore, fulfill thy purpose today![34] Despatch today unto Yama's presence that Suta's son, that foremost of car-warriors, whose death is near! Indeed, slaying that Suta's son, that first of car-warriors, show thy love for Yudhishthira the just![35] I know thy prowess truly, O Pārtha, which is incapable of being resisted by the gods and *Asuras!* The Suta's son of wicked soul, from exceeding pride, always disregards the sons of Pāndu![36] O Dhananjaya, slay that man today for whose sake the wretched Duryodhana regardeth him-

---

* A *Ratni* is a sort of cubit measured from the elbow to the end of the closed fist; it is supposed to be equal to the breadth of 21 fingers, making the thumb as the finger of measurement.—T.

self a hero, that root of all (those) sinful persons, that son of a Suta![37] Slay, O Dhananjaya, that tiger among men, that active and proud Karna, who hath the sword for his tongue, the bow for his mouth, and arrows for his teeth![38] I know thee well as regards the energy and the might that are in thee! Slay the brave Karna in battle, like a lion slaying an elephant![39] Slay in battle today, O Pārtha, that Karna, otherwise called Vaikartana, in consequence of whose energy Dhritarāshtra's son disregards thine!—'"[40]

SECTION LXXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Once more Keçava of immeasurable soul said these words unto Arjuna who, O Bhārata, was advancing (to battle), firmly resolved upon slaying Karna.[1]—Today is the seventeenth day, O Bhārata, of this terrible massacre of men and elephants and steeds![2] At the outset vast was the host that belonged to you. Encountering the foe in battle, that host has been very much reduced in numbers, O king![3] The Kauravas also, O Pārtha, were numerous at first, teeming with elephants and steeds. Encountering thee, however, as their foe, they have been nearly exterminated in the van of battle![4] These lords of Earth and these Srinjayas, united together, and these Pāndava troops also, obtaining thy invincible self as their leader, are mantaining their ground on the field![5] Protected by thee, O slayer of foes, the Pānchālas, the Matsyas, the Kārushas, and the Chedis, have caused a great destruction of thy foes![6] Who is there that can vanquish the assembled Kauravas in battle? On the other hand, who is there that can vanquish the mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas protected by thee?[7] Thou, however, art competent to vanquish in battle the three worlds consisting of the gods, the *Asuras*, and human beings, united together! What need I say then of the Kaurava host?[8] Save thee, O tiger among men, who else is there, even if he resemble Vāsava himself in prowess, that could vanquish king Bhagadatta?[9] So also, O sinless one, all the lords of Earth, united together, are incapable, O Pārtha, of even gazing at this vast force that is protected by thee![10]

So also, O Pārtha, owing to their having been always protected by thee that Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin succeeded in slaying Drona and Bhishma![11] Who, indeed, O Pārtha, could vanquish in battle those two mighty car-warriors of the Bharatas, viz., Bhishma and Drona, both of whom were endued with prowess equal that of Cakra himself?[12] Save thee, O tiger among men, what other man in this world is able to vanquish those fierce lords of *Akshauhinis*, those unreturning and invincible heroes, all accomplished in weapons and united together, viz., Cāntanu's son Bhishma, and Drona, and Vaikartana, and Kripa, and Drona's son, and king Duryodhana himself?[13-15] Innumerable divisions of soldiers have been destroyed (by thee), their steeds and cars and elephants having been mangled (with thy shafts)! Numberless Kshatriyas also, wrathful and fierce, hailing from diverse provinces, have been destroyed by thee![16] Teeming with horse and elephants, large bodies of combatants of diverse Kshatriya clans, such as the Govāsas, the Dāsamiyas, the Vasātis, O Bhārata, and the Easterners, the Vātadhānas, and the Bhojas that are very sensitive of their honor, approaching thee and Bhima, O Bhārata, have met with destruction![17-18] Of terrible deeds and exceedingly fierce, the Tushāras, the Yavanas, the Khaças, the Dārvābhisāras, the Daradas, the Cakas, the Kamathas, the Ramathas, the Tanganas,[19] the Andhrakas, the Pulindas, the Kirātas of fierce prowess, the *Mlecchas*, the Mountaineers, and the races hailing from the sea-side,[20] all endued with great wrath and great might, delighting in battle and armed with maces,—these all,—united with the Kurus and fighting wrathfully for Duryodhana's sake, were incapable of being vanquished in battle by anybody else save thee, O scorcher of foes![21]* What man, unprotected by thee, could advance, beholding the mighty and swelling host of the Dhārtarāshtras arrayed in order of battle?[22] Protected by thee, O puissant one, the Pāndavas, filled with wrath, and penetrating into its midst, have destroyed that host shrouded with dust and resembling a swollen sea![23] Seven days have elapsed since the mighty Jayat-

* This is a triplet.—T.

sena the ruler of the Māgadhas was slain in battle by Abhimanyu.[24] After that, ten thousand elephants, of fierce feats, that used to follow that king, were slain by Bhimasena with his mace.[25] After that, other elephants, and car-warriors, by hundreds, have been destroyed by Bhima in the exercise of his might.[26] Even thus, O Pārtha, during the progress of this awful battle, the Kauravas, with their steeds and car-warriors and elephants, encountering Bhimasena and thee, O son of Pāndu, have from hence repaired to the region of Death![27] The van of the Kaurava army, O Pārtha, having been struck down by the Pāndavas, Bhishma shot showers of fierce shafts, O sire![28] Conversant with the highest weapons, he shrouded the Chedis, the Pānchālas, the Kārushas, the Matsyas, and the Kaikayas, with his shafts, and deprived them of life![29] The welkin became filled with gold-winged and straight-coursing shafts, capable of piercing the bodies of all foes, that issued out of his bow.[30] He slew thousands of car-warriors, shooting showers of shafts at a time. In all, he slew a hundred thousand men and elephants of great might.[31] Abandoning the diverse motions, each of a new kind, in which they careered, those wicked kings and elephants, while perishing, destroyed many steeds and cars and elephants. Indeed, numberless were the shafts that Bhishma shot in battle.[32] Slaughtering the Pāndava host for ten days together, Bhishma made the terraces of numberless cars empty and deprived innumerable elephants and steeds of life.[33] Having assumed the form of Rudra or of Upendra in battle, he afflicted the Pāndava divisions and caused a great carnage amongst them.[34] Desirous of rescuing the wicked Suyodhana who was sinking in a raftless sea, he slaughtered many lords of Earth among the Chedis, the Pānchālas, and the Kaikayas, and caused a great massacre of the Pāndava army teeming with cars and steeds and elephants. Innumerable foot-soldiers amongst the Srinjayas, all well armed, and other lords of Earth, were incapable of even looking at that hero when he careered in battle like the Sun himself of scorching splendour.[35-37] At last the Pāndavas, with all their resources, made a mighty effort, and rushed against that warrior who, inspired with the desire of victory, used to career in battle even in this way![38]

Without availing of any aid, he routed, however, the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas in battle, and came to be regarded as the one foremost hero in the world.[39] Encountering him, Cikhandin, protected by thee, slew that tiger among men, with his straight shafts.[40] Having obtained thee that art a tiger among men (as his foe), that grandsire is now stretched on a bed of arrows, like Vritra when he obtained Vāsava for his foe.[41] The fierce Drona also slaughtered the hostile army for five days together. Having made an impenetrable array and caused many mighty car-warriors to be slain,[42] that great car-warrior had protected Jayadratha (for some time). Fierce as the Destroyer himself, he caused a great carnage in the nocturnal battle.[43] Endued with great valour, the heroic son of Bharadwāja consumed innumerable combatants with his arrows. At last, encountering Dhrishtadyumna, he attained to the highest end.[44]* If, on that day, thou hadst not checked in battle all the (Dhārtarāshtra) car-warriors headed by the Suta's son, Drona then would never have been slain.[45] Thou heldst in check the whole Dhārtarāshtra force. It was for this, O Dhananjaya, that Drona could be slain by the son of Prishata.[46] What other Kshatriya, save thee, could in battle achieve such feats for compassing the slaughter of Jayadratha?[47] Checking the vast (Kaurava) army and slaying many brave kings, thou killedst king Jayadratha, aided by the might and energy of thy weapons![48] All the kings regard the slaughter of the ruler of the Sindhus to have been exceedingly wonderful. I, however, do not regard it so, since it is thou that didst it and thou art a great car-warrior![49] If this vast assemblage of Kshatriyas, obtaining thee as a foe, suffer extermination in course of even a whole day, I should, I think, still regard these Kshatriyas to be truly mighty![50]† When Bhishma and Drona have been slain, the terrible Dhārtarāshtra host,

---

* 42, 43, 44, constitute one sentence. To avoid a long and cumberous structure, I have split it into three parts.—T.

† The sense is this,—since thou art able to destroy the three worlds in a moment, I would regard these Kshatriyas truly mighty if it takes thee a whole day to exterminate them.—T.

O Pārtha, may be regarded to have lost all its heroes![51] Indeed, with all its foremost warriors slain, with its steeds, cars, and elephants destroyed, the Bharata army looketh today like the firmament reft of Sun, Moon, and stars.[52] Yonder host of fierce prowess, O Pārtha, hath been shorn of its splendours today like the *Asura* host in days of yore shorn of its splendours by Cakra's prowess![53] The remnant of that grand muster now consists of only five great car-warriors, viz., Açwatthāman and Kritavarman and Karna and Calya and Kripa.[54] Slaying those five great car-warriors today, O tiger among men, be thou a hero that hath killed all his foes, and bestow thou the Earth with all her islands and cities on king Yudhishthira![55] Let Prithā's son Yudhishthira of immeasurable energy and prosperity, obtain today the whole Earth with the welkin above it, the waters on it, and the nether regions below it![56] Slaying this host like Vishnu in days of yore slay-the *Daityas* and the *Dānavas*, bestow the Earth on the king, like Hari bestowing (the three worlds) on Cakra![57] Let the Pānchālas rejoice today, their foes being slain, like the celestials rejoicing after the slaughter of the *Dānavas* by Vishnu![58] If in consequence of thy regard for that foremost of men, viz., thy preceptor Drona, thou cherishest compassion for Açwatthāman, if, again, thou hast any kindness for Kripa for the sake of the respect that is due to a preceptor,[59] if, approaching Kritavarman thou dost not despatch him today to Yama's abode in consequence of the honor that is due to one's kinsmen by the mother's side,[60] if, O lotus-eyed one, approaching thy mother's brother, viz., Calya the ruler of the Madras, thou dost not from compassion slay him,[61] I ask thee, do thou, with keen-shafts, O foremost of men, slay Karna today with speed, that vile wretch of sinful heart who cherishes the fiercest hate for the sons of Pāndu![62] This is thy noblest duty! There is nothing in it that would be improper. We approve of it, and there is no fault in the act![63] The wicked-souled Karna is the root, O thou of unfading glory, of that attempt, O sinless one, made in the night for burning thy mother with all her children, and of that conduct which Suyodhana adopted towards you in consequence of that match at dice![64] Suyodhana

always hopeth for deliverance through Karna. Filled with rage, he endeavours to afflict me also (in consequence of that support)![65] It is the firm belief of Dhritarāshtra's royal son, O giver of honors, that Karna, without doubt, will slay all the Pārthas in battle.[66] Though fully acquainted with thy might, still, O son of Kunti, Dhritarāshtra's son hath selected war with you in consequence of his reliance on Karna.[67] Karna also always says,—[I will vanquish the assembled Pārthas and that mighty car-warrior, viz., Vāsudeva of Daçārha's race![68]—Buoying up the wicked-souled son of Dhritarāshtra, the wicked Karna always roareth in the (Kuru) assembly! Slay him today, O Bhārata![69] In all the acts of injury, of which Dhritarāshra's son hath been guilty towards you, the wicked-souled Karna of sinful understanding hath been the leader![70] I saw the heroic son of Subhadrā, of eyes like those of a bull, slain by six mighty car-warriors of cruel heart belonging to the Dhārtarāshtra army![71] Grinding those bulls among men, viz., Drona and Drona's son and Kripa and other heroes, he deprived elephants of their riders and mighty car-warriors of their cars.[72] The bull-necked Abhimanyu, that spreader of the fame of both the Kurus and the Vrishnis, deprived steeds also of their riders and foot-soldiers of weapons and life.[73] Routing the (Kaurava) divisions and afflicting many mighty car-warriors, he despatched innumerable men and steeds and elephants to Yama's abode![74] I swear by Truth to thee, O friend, that my limbs are burning at the thought that while the son of Subhadrā was thus advancing, consuming the hostile army with his shafts, even on that occasion the wicked-souled Karna was engaged in acts of hostility to that hero, O lord! Unable, O Pārtha, to stay in that battle before Abhimanyu's face, mangled with the shafts of Subhadrā's son, deprived of consciousness, and bathed in blood, Karna drew deep breaths, inflamed with rage. At last, afflicted with arrows, he was obliged to turn his back upon the field.[75-77] Eagerly desirous of flying away and becoming hopeless of life, he stayed for sometime in battle, perfectly stupified, and exhausted with the wounds he had received.[78] At last, hearing those cruel words of Drona in battle,—words that were suited

to the hour,—Karna cut off Abhimanyu's bow.[79] Made bowless by him in that battle, five great car-warriors then, well-versed in the ways of foul warfare, slew that hero with showers of shafts.[80] Upon the slaughter of that hero, grief entered the heart of every one. Only the wicked-souled Karna and Suyodhana laughed in joy![81] [Thou rememberest also] the harsh and bitter words that Karna cruelly said unto Krishnā in the (Kuru) assembly, in the face of the Pāndavas and the Kurus![82]—[The Pāndavas, O Krishnā, are dead! They have sunk into eternal hell! O thou of large hips, choose other lords now, O thou of sweet speeches![83] Enter now the abode of Dhritarāshtra as a serving woman, or, O thou of curving eye-lashes, thy husbands are no more![84] The Pāndavas will not, O Krishnā, be of any service to thee today! Thou art the wife of men that are slaves, O princess of Pānchāla, and thou art thyself, O beautiful lady, a slave![85] Today only Duryodhana is regarded as the one king on Earth! All other kings of the world are worshipping the agency by which his administration is kept up.[86] Behold now, O amiable one, how all the sons of Pāndu have equally fallen! Overwhelmed by the energy of Dhritarāshtra's son, they are now silently eyeing one another![87] It is evident that these are all sesame seeds without kernel, and have sunk into hell! They will have to serve the Kaurava (Duryodhana), that king of kings, as his slaves!][88]—Even these were the foul words that that wretch, viz., the sinful Karna of exceedingly wicked heart, spoke on that occasion, in thy hearing, O Bhārata![89] Let gold-decked shafts whetted on stone and capable of taking the life of him at whom they are sped, shot by thee, quench (the fire of) those words[90] and all the other wrongs that that wicked-souled wight did unto thee! Let thy shafts quench all those wrongs and the life also of that wicked wight![91] Feeling the touch of terrible arrows sped from *Gāndiva*, let the wicked-souled Karna recollect today the words of Bhishma and Drona![92] Let foe-killing cloth-yard shafts, equipt with the effulgence of lightning, shot by thee, pierce his vital limbs and drink his blood![93] Let fierce and mighty shafts, of great impetuosity, sped by thy arms, penetrate the vitals of Karna today and despatch him to

Yama's abode![94] Let all the kings of the Earth, cheerless and filled with grief and uttering wails of woe, behold Karna fall down from his car today, afflicted with thy arrows![95] Let his kinsmen, with cheerless faces, behold Karna today, fallen down and stretched at his length on the Earth, dipt in gore and with his weapons loosened from his grasp![96] Let the lofty standard of Adhiratha's son, bearing the device of the elephant's rope, fall fluttering on the Earth, cut off by thee with a broad-headed arrow![97] Let Calya fly away in terror, abandoning the gold-decked car (he drives) upon seeing it deprived of its warrior and steeds and cut off into fragments with hundreds of shafts by thee![98] Let thy enemy Suyodhana today, beholding Adhiratha's son slain by thee, despair of both his life and kingdom![99] Yonder, O Pārtha, Karna, equal unto Indra in energy, or, perhaps, Cankara himself, is slaughtering thy troops with his shafts![100] There the Pānchālas, though slaughtered by Karna with his whetted shafts, are yet, O chief of Bharata's race, rushing (to battle), for serving the cause of the Pāndavas.[101] Know, O Pārtha, that Karna is prevailing over the Pānchālas, and the (five) sons of Draupadi, and Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin, and the sons of Dhrishtadyumna, and Catānika the son of Nakula, and Nakula himself, and Sahadeva, and Durmukha, and Janamejaya, and Sudharman, and Sātyaki![102-3] The loud uproar made by those allies of thine, viz., the Pānchālas, O scorcher of foes, as they are being struck by Karna in dreadful battle, is heard![104] The Pānchālas have not at all been inspired with fear, nor do they turn away their faces from the battle! Those mighty bowmen are utterly reckless of death in great battle![105] Encountering even that Bhishma who, single-handed, had encompassed the Pāndvava army with clouds of shafts, the Pānchālas did not turn away their faces from him![106] Then again, O chastiser of foes, they always strove with alacrity to forcibly vanquish in battle their great foe, viz., the invincible Drona, that preceptor of all wielders of the bow, that blazing fire of weapons, that hero who always burnt his foes in battle! They have never turned their faces from battle, afeared of Adhiratha's son![107-3] The heroic Karna, however, with his shafts, is taking the lives of the Pānchāla warriors endued with great

activity as they are advancing against him, like a blazing fire taking the lives of myriads of insects![109] The son of Rādhā, in this battle, is destroying in hundreds the Pānchālas that are advancing against him,—those heroes, that is, that are resolved to lay down their lives for the sake of their allies![110] It behoveth thee, O Bhārata, to become a raft and rescue those brave warriors, those great bowmen, that are sinking in the raftless ocean represented by Karna![111] The awful form of that weapon which was obtained by Karna from that foremost of sages, viz., Rāma of Bhrigu's race, hath been displayed![112] Scorching all the troops, that weapon of exceedingly fierce and awful form is blazing with its own energy, surrounding our vast army![113] Those arrows, sped from Karna's bow, are coursing in battle, thick as flights of bees, and scorching thy troops![114] Encountering Karna's weapon in battle, that is irresistible by persons not having their souls under control, there the Pānchālas, O Bhārata, are flying away in all directions![115] Yonder, Bhima, of unappeasable wrath, surrounded on all sides by the Srinjayas, is fighting with Karna, O Pārtha, afflicted by the latter with keen shafts![116] If neglected, Karna will, O Bhārata, exterminate the Pāndavas, the Srinjayas, and the Pānchālas, like a neglected disease whose germ has entered the body![117] Save thee I do not see another warrior in Yudhishthira's army that would come home safe and sound, having encountered the son of Rādhā in battle![118] Slaying that Karna today with thy keen shafts, O bull among men, act according to thy vow, O Pārtha, and win great fame![119] I tell thee truly, thou only art able to vanquish in battle the Kauravas with Karna amongst them, and no one else, O foremost of warriors![120] Achieving this great feat, viz., slaying the mighty car-warrior Karna, attain thy object, O Pārtha, and crowned with success, be happy, O best of men!—' "[121]

Section LXXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing these words of Keçava, O Bhārata, Vibhatsu soon cast off his anxiety and became cheerful.[1] Rubbing then the string of *Gāndiva* and stretching it, he

held his bow for the destruction of Karna, and addressed Keçava, saying,[2]—With thee for my protector, O Govinda, and when thou that art acquainted with the past and the future art gratified with me today, victory is sure to be mine![3] Aided by thee, O Krishna, I can, in great battle, destroy the three worlds assembled together, what need be said of Karna then?[4] I see the Pānchāla host is flying away, O Janārddana! I see also Karna careeringg fearlessly in battle![5] I see too the *Bhārgava* weapon careering in all directions, having been invoked by Karna, O thou of Vrishni's race, like the puissant thunder invoked by Cakra![6] This is that battle in which Karna will be slain by me and of which all creatures will speak as long as the Earth will last.[7] Today, O Krishna, unbarbed arrows, impelled by my arms and sped from *Gāndiva*, mangling Karna, will take him to Yama![8] Today king Dhritarāshtra will curse that intelligence of his in consequence of which he had installed Duryodhana, who was undeserving of sovereignty, on the throne![9] Today, O mighty-armed one, Dhritarāshtra will be divested of sovereignty, happiness, prosperity, kingdom, city, and sons![10] I tell thee truly, O Krishna, that today, Karna being slain, Duryodhana will become hopeless of both life and kingdom![11] Today, beholding Karna cut into pieces by me with my arrows, like Vritra in days of yore by Indra in the battle between the gods and the *Asuras*, let king Duryodhana call to mind the words thou hadst spoken for bringing about peace![12] Today let the son of Suvala, O Krishna, know that my shafts are the dice, my *Gāndiva* is box for throwing them, and my car, the chequered cloth![13] O Govinda, slaying Karna with keen shafts I will dispel the long sleeplessness of Kunti's son![14] Today the royal son of Kunti, upon the slaughter of the Suta's son by me, shall be gratified and be of cheerful heart and obtain happiness for ever![15] Today, O Keçava, I will shoot an irresistible and unrivalled arrow that will deprive Karna of life![16] Even this, O Krishna, was the vow of that wicked-souled one about my slaughter, viz.,—*I will not wash my feet till I slay Phālguna!*[17]—Falsifying this vow of that wretch, O slayer of Madhu, I will, with straight shafts, throw down his body today

from his car![18] Today the Earth will drink the blood of that Suta's son who in battle contemns all other men on Earth![19] With Dhritarāshtra's approbation, the Suta's son Karna, boasting of his own merits, had said,—*Thou hast no husband now, O Krishnā!*[20]—My keen shafts will falsify that speech of his! Like angry snakes of virulent poison, they will drink his life-blood![21] Cloth-yard shafts, of the effulgence of the lightning, shot by myself possessed of mighty-arms and sped from *Gāndiva*, will send Karna on his last journey![22] Today the son of Rādhā will repent for those cruel words that he said unto the princess of Pānchāla in the midst of the assembly, in disparagement of the Pāndavas![23] They that were on that occasion sesame seeds without kernel, will today become seeds with kernel after the fall of the Suta's son Karna of wicked soul, otherwise called Vaikartana![24]—*I will save ye from the sons of Pāndu!*—even these were the words that Karna, bragging of his own merits, said unto the sons of Dhritarāshtra! My keen shafts will falsify that speech of his![25] Today, in the very sight of all the bowmen, I will slay that Karna who said—*I will slay all the Pāndavas with their sons!*[26]—Today, O slayer of Madhu, I will slay that Karna, that son of Rādhā, relying on whose prowess the proud son of Dhritarāshtra, of wicked understanding, always disregarded us![27] Today, O Krishna, after Karna's fall, the Dhārtarāshtras with their king, struck with panic, will fly away in all directions, like deer afeared of the lion![28] Today, let king Duryodhana repent himself, upon the slaughter of Karna, with his sons and relatives, by me in battle[29] Today, beholding Karna slain, let the wrathful son of Dhritarāshtra, O Krishna, know me to be the foremost of all bowmen in battle![30] Today I will make king Dhritarāshtra, with his sons and grandsons and counsellors and servants, shelterless[31] Today, cranes and other carnivorous birds will, O Keçava, sport over the limbs of Karna cut off into pieces with my shafts![32] Today, O slayer of Madhu, I will cut off in battle the head of Rādhā's son Karna, in the very sight of all the bowmen![33] Today, O slayer of Madhu, I will cut off in battle the limbs of Rādhā's son of wicked soul with keen *Vipathas* and razor-faced arrows![34] Today the

heroic king Yudhishthira will cast off a great pain and a great sorrow cherished long in his heart![35] Today, O Keçava, slaying the son of Rādhā, with all his kinsmen, I will gladden king Yudhishthira the son of Dharma![36] Today, O Krishna, I will slay the cheerless followers of Karna in battle, with shafts resembling the blazing fire or the poison of the snake![37] Today, with my straight shafts equipt with vulturine feathers, I will, O Govinda, cause the Earth to be strewn with (the bodies of) kings cased in golden armour![38] Today, O slayer of Madhu, I will, with keen shafts, crush the bodies and cut off the heads of all the foes of Abhimanyu![39] Today I will bestow the Earth divested of Dhārtarāshtras on my brother, or, perhaps, thou, O Keçava, wilt walk over the Earth divested of Arujna![40] Today, O Krishṇa, I will free myself from the debt I owe to all bowmen, to my own wrath, to the Kurus, to my shafts, and to *Gāndiva!*[41] Today I will be freed from the grief that I have cherished for thirteen years, O Krishna, by slaying Karna in battle like Maghavat slaying Camvara![42] Today, after I will have slain Karna in battle, let the mighty car-warriors of the Somakas, who are desirous of accomplishing the task of their allies, regard their task as accomplished![43] I do not know what will be the measure, O Mādhava, of the joy of Cini's grandson today after I will have slain Karna and won the victory![44] Today I will slay Karna in battle as also his son, that mighty car-warrior, and give joy to Bhima and the twins and Sātyaki![45] Today, slaying Karna in dreadful battle, I will pay off my debt, O Mādhava, to the Pānchālas with Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin![46] Today let all behold the wrathful Dhananjaya fight with the Kauravas in battle and slay the Suta's son![47] Once more let me utter my own praises in thy presence![48] In the science of arms there is none equal to me in the world! In prowess also, who is there that resembles me? What other man is there that is equal to me in forgiveness? In wrath also, there is no one that is equal to me![49] Armed with the bow and aided by the prowess of my arms, I can vanquish the *Asuras* and the gods and all creatures united together! Know that my prowess is higher than the highest![50] Alone assailing all the Kurus and the Vālhikas

with the fire of my shafts issuing from *Gāndiva*, I will, putting forth my might, burn them with their followers like a fire in the midst of a heap of dry grass at the close of winter![51] My palms bear these marks of arrows and this excellent and outstretched bow with arrow fixed on the string. On each of the soles of my feet occur the mark of a car and a standard. When a person like me goeth forth to battle, he cannot be vanquished by any one![52]—Having said these words unto Achyuta, that foremost of all heroes, that slayer of foes, with blood-red eyes, proceeded quickly to battle, for rescuing Bhima and cutting off the head from Karna's trunk.' "[53]

SECTION LXXV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'In that awful and fathomless encounter of the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas with the warriors of my army, when Dhananjaya, O sire, proceeded for battle, how, indeed, occurred that fight?'[1]

'Sanjaya said,—'The innumerable divisions of the Pāndava army, decked with lofty standards and swelling (with pride and energy) and united together in battle, began to roar aloud, drums and other instruments constituting their mouth, like masses of clouds at the close of summer uttering deep roars.[2] The battle that ensued resembled a baneful shower out of season, cruel and destructive of living creatures. Huge elephants were its clouds; weapons were the water they were to pour; the peal of musical instruments, the rattle of car-wheels, and the noise of palms, constituted their roar; diverse weapons decked with gold formed their flashes of lightning; and arrows and swords and cloth-yard shafts and mighty weapons constituted their torrents of rain. Marked by impetuous onsets, blood flowed in streams in that encounter. Rendered awful by incessant strokes of the sword, it was fraught with a great carnage of Kshatriyas.[3-4] Many car-warriors, united together, encompassed one car-warrior and despatched him to Yama's presence. Or, one foremost of car-warriors despatched a single adversary, or one despatched many adversaries united together.[5]

Again, some one car-warrior despatched to Yama's abode some one adversary along with his driver and steeds. Some one rider, with a single elephant, despatched many car-warriors and horsemen.[6] Similarly, Pārtha, with clouds of shafts, despatched large numbers of cars with drivers and steeds, of elephants and horses with their riders, and of foot-soldiers, belonging to the enemy.[7] Kripa and Cikhandin encountered each other in that battle, while Sātyaki proceeded against Duryodhana. And Crutaçravas was engaged with Drona's son, and Yudhāmanyu with Chitrasena.[8] The great Srinjaya car-warrior Uttamaujas was engaged with Karna's son Sushena, while Sahadeva rushed against Cakuni the king of the Gāndhāras like a hungry lion against a mighty bull.[9] The youthful Catānika, the son of Nakula, rushed against the youthful Vrishasena the son of Karna, shooting showers of shafts. The heroic son of Karna struck that son of the princess of Pānchāla with many arrows.[10] Conversant with all modes of warfare, Mādri's son Nakula, that bull among car-warriors, assailed Kritavarman. The king of the Pānchālas, viz., Dhrishtadyumna the son of Yajnasena, attacked Karna, the commander of the Kaurava army, with all his forces.[11] Duscāsana, O Bhārata, with the swelling host of the *Samsaptakas* forming a portion of the Bharata army, fiercely attacked in that battle Bhima, that foremost of warriors of irresistible impetuosity.[12] The heroic Uttamaujas, putting forth his strength, struck the son of Karna and cut off his head which fell down on the Earth, filling the Earth and the welkin with a loud noise.[13] Beholding the head of Sushena lying on the ground, Karna became filled with grief. Soon, however, in rage he cut off the steeds, the car, and the standard, of his son's slayer with many keen shafts.[14] Meanwhile Uttamaujas, piercing with his keen shafts and cutting off with his bright sword the steeds of Kripa and those warriors also that protected Kripa's sides, quickly ascended the car of Cikhandin.[15] Beholding Kripa deprived of his car, Cikhandin who was on his vehicle, wished not to strike him with his shafts. The son of Drona then, covering with his own the car of Kripa, rescued the latter like a bull sunk in a mire.[16] Meanwile Bhima the son of the Wind-god, clad in golden mail, began to scorch with his

keen arrows the troops of thy sons like the mid-day Sun scorching everything in the summer season.' "[17]

SECTION LXXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'During the progress of that fierce engagement, Bhima, while fighting alone, being encompassed by innumerable foes, addressed his driver, saying,—Bear me into the midst of the Dhārtarāshtra host![1] Proceed, O charioteer, with speed, borne by these steeds! I will despatch all these Dhārtarāshtras to the presence of Yama!—Thus urged by Bhimasena, the charioteer proceeded, quickly and with great impetuosity, against thy son's host to that spot whence Bhima desired to slaughter it. Then a large number of Kaurava troops, with elephants and cars and horse and foot, advanced against him from all sides.[2-3] They then, from every side, began to strike that foremost of vehicles belonging to Bhima, with numerous arrows. The high-souled Bhīma, however, with his own shafts of golden wings, cut off all those advancing arrows of his enemies.[4] Thus cut off into two or three fragments with Bhima's arrows, those shafts, equipt with golden wings, of his enemies, fell down on the Earth. Then, O king, amongst those foremost of Kshatriyas, struck with Bhima's shafts, the elephants and cars and horse and foot,[5] set up a loud wail, O monarch, that resembled the din made by mountains when riven with thunder. Thus struck by Bhima, those foremost of Kshatriyas, their limbs pierced with Bhima's powerful shafts, rushed against Bhima in that battle from every side, like new fledged birds towards a tree. When thy troops thus rushed against him, Bhima of infuriate impetuosity displayed all his impetuosity,[6-7] like the Destroyer himself armed with mace when he burns and exterminates all creatures at the end of the *Yuga*. Thy soldiers were unable to resist in that battle that fierce impetuosity of Bhima endued with fierce impetuosity,[8] like that of the Destroyer himself of wide-open mouth when he rusheth at the end of the *Yuga* for exterminating all creatures. Then, O Bhārata, like masses of clouds scattered by the tempest, the Bharata host, thus mangled and

burnt in that battle by the high-souled Bhima, broke and fled in fear in all directions. Then the mighty Bhimasena of great intelligence once more cheerfully said unto his charioteer,[9-10]— Ascertain, O Suta, whether those assembled cars and standards that are advancing towards me, are ours or the enemy's! Absorbed in battle, I am unable to distinguish them. Let me not shroud our own troops with my shafts![11] O Viçoka, beholding hostile warriors and cars and the tops of their standards on all sides, I am greatly afflicted! The king is in pain. The diadem-decked Arjuna also has not yet come. These things, O Suta, fill my heart with sorrow![12] Even this is my grief, O charioteer, that king Yudhishthira the just should have gone away, leaving me in the midst of the enemy. I do not know whether he, as also Vibhatsu, is alive or dead! This adds to my sorrow![13] I shall, however, though filled with great grief, destroy these hostile troops of great might! Thus slaughtering in the midst of battle my assembled foes, I shall rejoice with thee today![14] Examing all the quivers containing my arrows, tell me, O Suta, ascertaining the matter well, what quantity of arrows is still left on my car, that is, how much of what sort![15]—

"'Thus commanded, Viçoka said,—Of arrows, O hero, thou hast yet sixty thousand, while thy razor-headed shafts number ten thousand, and broad-headed ones number as much. Of cloth-yard shafts thou hast still two thousand, O hero, and of *Pradaras* thou hast still, O Pārtha, three thousand! Indeed, of the weapons, O son of Pāndu, the portion that still remains is not capable of being borne, if placed on carts, by six bullocks.[16] Shoot and hurl them, O learned one, for of maces and swords and other weapons used with the arms alone, thou hast thousands upon thousands, as also lances and scimitars and darts and spears! Never fear that thy weapons will be exhausted![17]—

"'Bhima said,—Behold, O Suta, today this awful battle in which everything will be shrouded with my impetuous arrows sped fiercely from my bow and mangling all my foes, and in consequence of which the very Sun will disappear from the field, making the latter resemble the dark domains of Death![18]

Today, even this will be known to all the Kshatriyas including the very children, O Suta, viz., that Bhimasena hath succumbed in battle or that, alone, he hath subjugated all the Kurus![19] Today, let all the Kauravas fall in battle or let all the world applaud me beginning with the feats of my earliest years! Alone, I will overthrow them all, or let all of them strike Bhimasena down![20] Let the gods that aid in the achievement of the best acts, bless me! Let that slayer of foes, viz., Arjuna, come here now like Cakra, duly invoked, quickly coming to a sacrifice![21] Behold, the Bharata host is breaking! Why do those kings fly away? It is evident that Savyasāchin, that foremost of men, is quickly shrouding that host with his shafts![22] Behold, those standards, O Viçoka, and elephants and steeds and bands of foot-soldiers are flying away! Behold, these cars, assailed with shafts and darts, with those warriors riding on them, are being scattered, O Suta![23] Yonder, the Kaurava host, assailed with the shafts, equipt with wings of gold and feathers of peacocks, of Dhananjaya and resembling thunderbolts in force, though slaughtered extensively, is repeatedly filling its gaps![24] There, cars and steeds and elephants are flying away, crushing down bands of foot-soldiers! Indeed, all the Kauravas, having lost their senses, are flying away, like elephants filled with fear at a forest conflagration,[25] and uttering cries of woe! Those huge elephants, again, O Viçoka are uttering loud cries, assailed with shafts.[26]—

"'Viçoka said,—How is it, O Bhima, that thou dost not hear the loud twang of the yawning *Gāndiva* stretched by Pārtha in wrath? Are these two ears of thine gone?[27] All thy wishes, O son of Pāndu, have been fulfilled! Yonder the Ape (on Arjuna's banner) is seen in the midst of the elephant force (of the enemy)! Behold, the string of *Gāndiva* is flashing repeatedly like lightning amid blue clouds![28] Yonder, the Ape on Dhananjaya's standard-top is everywhere seen to terrify hostile divisions in this dreadful battle! Even I, looking at it, am struck with fear![29] There, the beautiful diadem of Arjuna is shining brilliantly! There, the precious jewel on the diadem, endued with the splendour of the Sun, looketh exceedingly resplendent![30] There, beside him, behold his conch

Devadatta of loud blare and the hue of a white cloud! There, by the side of Janārddana, reins in hand, as he penetrates into the midst of the hostile army, behold his discus of solar effulgence, its nave hard as thunder, and its edge sharp as a razor! Behold, O hero, that discus of Keçava, that enhancer of his fame, which is always worshipped by the Yadus![31-32] There, the trunks, resembling lofty trees perfectly straight, of huge elephants, cut off by Kiritin, are falling upon the Earth! There those huge creatures also, with their riders, pierced and split with shafts, are falling down, like hills riven with thunder.[33] There, behold, O son of Kunti, the *Pāncha-janya* of Krishna, exceedingly beautiful and of the hue of the moon, as also the blazing *Kaustubha* on his breast and his triumphal garland![34] Without doubt, that first and foremost of all car-warriors, viz., Pārtha, is advancing, routing the hostile army as he comes, borne by his foremost of steeds, of the hue of white clouds, and urged by Krishna![35] Behold those cars and steeds and bands of foot-soldiers, mangled by thy younger brother with the energy of the chief of the celestials! Behold, they are falling down like a forest uprooted by the tempest caused by Garuda's wings![36] Behold, four hundred car-warriors, with their steeds and drivers, and seven hundred elephants and innumerable foot-soldiers and horsemen, slain in this battle by Kiritin with his mighty shafts![37] Slaughtering the Kurus, the mighty Arjuna is coming towards thy side even like the constellation *Chitrā!* All thy wishes are fulfilled! Thy foes are being exterminated! Let thy might, as also the period of thy life, ever increase![38]—

"'Bhima said,—Since, O Viçoka, thou tellest me of Arjuna's arrival, I will give thee four and ten populous villages and a hundred female slaves and twenty cars, being pleased with thee, O Suta, for this agreeable intelligence imparted by thee!—' "[39]

SECTION LXXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—Hearing the roars of cars and the leonine shouts (of the warriors) in battle, Arjuna addressed Govinda,

saying,—Urge the steeds to greater speed![1]—Hearing these words of Arjuna, Govinda said unto him,—I am proceeding with great speed to the spot where Bhima is stationed![2]—Then many lions among men (belonging to the Kaurava army), excited with wrath and accompanied by a large force of cars and horse and elephants and foot and making the Earth resound with the whizz of their arrows, the rattle of their car-wheels, and the tread of their horses' hoofs, advanced against Jaya (Arjuna) as the latter proceeded for victory, borne by his steeds white as snow or conchs and decked in trappings of gold and pearls and gems, like the chief of the celestials in great wrath proceeding, armed with the thunder, against (the *Asura)* Jambha for slaying him.[3-4] Between them and Pārtha, O sire, occurred a great battle destructive of body, life, and sin, like the battle between the *Asuras* and the god Vishnu, that foremost of victors, for the sake of the three worlds.[5] Alone, Pārtha, decked with diadem and garlands, cut off the mighty weapons sped by them as also their heads and arms in diverse ways, with his razor-faced and crescent-shaped and broad-head-arrows of great keenness.[6] Umbrellas, and yak-tails for fanning, and standards, and steeds, and cars, and bands of foot, and elephants, fell down on the Earth, mutilated in diverse ways, like a forest broken down by a tempest.[7] Huge elephants, decked in housings of gold and equipt with triumphal standards and warriors (on their backs), looked resplendent, as they were pierced with shafts of golden wings, like mountains ablaze with light.[8] Piercing elephants and steeds and cars with excellent shafts resembling Vāsava's thunder, Dhananjaya proceeded quickly for the slaughter of Karna, even as Indra in days of yore for riving *(the Asura)* Vala.[9] Then that tiger among men, that mighty-armed chastiser of foes, penetrated into thy host like a *Makara* into the ocean.[10] Beholding the son of Pāndu, thy warriors, O king, accompanied by cars and foot and a large number of elephants and steeds, rushed against him.[11] Tremendous was the din made by them as they advanced against Pārtha, resembling that made by the waters of the ocean lashed into fury by the tempest.[12] Those mighty car-warriors, resembling tigers (in prowess), all rushed in that battle

against that tiger among men, abandoning all fear of death.[13] Arjuna, however, routed the troops of those leaders of the Kurus as they advanced, shooting at him showers of weapons, like a tempest driving off masses of congregated clouds.[14] Those great bowmen, all skilled in smiting, united together, and proceeded against Arjuna with a large number of cars and began to pierce him with keen shafts.[15] Then Arjuna, with his shafts, despatched to Yama's abode several thousands of cars and elephants and steeds.[16] While those great car-warriors in that battle were thus struck with shafts sped from Arjuna's bow, they were filled with fear and seemed to disappear one after another from their cars.[17] In all, Arjuna, with his sharp arrows, slew full four hundred of those heroic car-warriors exerting vigorously in battle.[18] Thus struck in that battle with sharp shafts of diverse kinds, they fled away on all sides, avoiding Arjuna.[19] Tremendous was the uproar made at the van of the army by those warriors as they broke and fled like that made by the surging sea when it breaks upon encountering a mountain.[20] Having routed with his arrows that army struck with fright, Prithā's son Arjuna then proceeded, O sire, against the division of the Suta's son.[21] Loud was the noise with which Arjuna faced his foes, like that made by Gadura in days of yore when swooping down for snakes.[22] Hearing that sound, the mighty Bhimasena, desirous as he had been of obtaining a sight of Pārtha, became filled with joy.[23] As soon as the valiant Bhimasena heard of Pārtha's arrival, he began, O monarch, to grind thy troops, reckless of his very life.[24] Possessed of prowess equal to that of the wind, the valiant Bhima, the son of the Wind-god, began to career in that battle like the wind itself.[25] Afflicted by him, O monarch, thy army, O king, began to reel like a wrecked vessel on the bosom of the sea.[26] Displaying his lightness of hands, Bhima began to cut and mangle that host with his fierce arrows and despatch large numbers to the abode of Yama.[27] Beholding on that occasion the superhuman might of Bhima, O Bhārata, like that of the Destroyer at the end of the *Yuga*, thy warriors became filled with fright.[28] Seeing his mightiest soldiers thus afflicted by Bhimasena, O Bhārata, king Duryodhana address-

ed[29] all his troops and great bowmen, O bull of Bharata's race, commanding them to slay Bhima in that battle, since upon Bhima's fall he would regard the Pāndava troops already exterminated.[30] Accepting that command of thy son, all the kings shrouded Bhima with showers of shafts from every side.[31] Innumerable elephants, O king, and men inspired with desire of victory, and cars, and horse, O monarch, encompassed Vrikodara.[32] Thus encompassed by those brave warriors on all sides, O king, that hero, that chief of Bharata's race, looked resplendent like the Moon surrounded by the stars.[33] Indeed, as the Moon at full within his corona looks beautiful, even so that best of men, exceedingly handsome, looked beautiful in that battle.[34] All those kings, with cruel intent and eyes red in wrath, showered upon Vrikodara their arrowy downpours, moved by the desire of slaying him.[35] Piercing that mighty host with straight shafts, Bhima came out of the press like a fish coming out of a net,[36] having slain ten thousand unretreating elephants, two hundred thousand and two hundred men, O Bhārata,[37] and five thousand horse, and a hundred car-warriors. Having slaughtered these, Bhima caused a river of blood to flow there.[38] Blood constituted its water, and cars its eddies; and elephants were the alligators with which it teemed. Men were its fishes, and steeds its sharks, and the hair of animals formed its weeds and moss.[39] Arms lopped off from trunks formed its foremost of snakes. Innumerable jewels and gems were carried along by the current. Thighs constituted its gavials, and marrow its mire. And it was covered with heads forming its rocks.[40] And bows and arrows constituted the rafts by which men sought to cross that terrible river, and maces and spiked bludgeons formed its snakes. And umbrellas and standards formed its swans, and head-gears its foam.[41] Necklaces constituted its lotuses, and the earthy dust that arose formed its waves. Those endued with noble qualities could cross it with ease, while those that were timid and afrighted found it exceedingly difficult to cross.[42] Warriors constituting its crocodiles and alligators, it ran towards the region of Yama. Very soon, indeed, did that tiger among men cause that river to flow.[43] Even as the terri-

ble Vaitarani is difficult of being crossed by persons of unrefined souls, that bloody river, terrible and enhancing the fears of the timid, was difficult to cross.[44] Thither where that best of car-warriors, viz., the son of Pāndu, penetrated, thither he felled hostile warriors in hundreds and thousands.[45] Seeing those feats achieved in battle by Bhimasena, Duryodhana, O monarch, addressing Cakuni, said,[46]—Vanquish, O uncle, the mighty Bhimasena in battle! Upon his defeat the mighty host of the Pāndavas may be regarded as defeated![47]—Thus addressed, O monarch, the valiant son of Suvala, competent to wage dreadful battle, proceeded, surrounded by his brothers.[48] Approaching in that battle Bhima of terrible prowess, the heroic Cakuni checked him like the continent resisting the ocean.[49] Though resisted with keen shafts, Bhima, disregarding them all, proceeded against the sons of Suvala.[50] Then Cakuni, O monarch, sped a number of cloth-yard shafts equipt with wings of gold and whetted on stone, at the left side of Bhima's chest.[51] Piercing through the armour of the high-souled son of Pāndu, those fierce shafts, O monarch, equipt with feathers of *Kankas* and peacocks, sunk deep into his body.[52] Deeply pierced in that battle, Bhima, O Bhārata, suddenly shot at Suvala's son a shaft decked with gold.[53] The mighty Cakuni, however, that scorcher of foes, O king, endued with great lightness of hands, cut off into seven fragments that terrible arrow as it coursed towards him.[54] When his shaft fell down on the Earth, Bhima, O king, became highly enraged, and cut off with a broad-headed arrow the bow of Suvala's son with the greatest ease.[55] The valiant son of Suvala then, casting aside that broken bow, quickly took up another and six and ten broad-headed arrows.[56] With two of those straight and broad-headed arrows, O monarch, he struck Bhima himself;[57] with one he cut off Bhima's standard, and with two, his umbrella. With the remaining four, the son of Suvala pierced the four steeds of his antagonist.[58] Filled with rage at this, the valiant Bhima, O monarch, hurled in that battle a dart made of iron, with its staff adorned with gold.[59] That dart, restless as the tongue of a snake hurled from Bhima's arms, speedily fell upon the car of the high-

soueld son of Suvala.[60] The latter then, filled with wrath, O monarch, took up that same gold-decked dart and hurled it back at Bhimasena.[61] Piercing through the left arm of the high-souled son of Pāndu, it fell down on the Earth like lightning flashed down from the sky.[62] At this, the Dhārtarāshtras, O monarch, set up a loud roar all around. Bhima, however, could not bear that leonine roar of his foes endued with great activity.[63] The mighty son of Pāndu then, quickly taking up another stringed bow, in a moment, O monarch, covered with shafts the soldiers of Suvala's son in that battle, who were fighting reckless of their very lives.[64] Having slain his four steeds, and then his driver, O king, Bhima of great prowess next cut off his antagonist's standard with a broad-headed arrow without losing a moment.[65] Abandoning with speed that steedless car, Cakuni, that foremost of men, stood on the ground, with his bow ready drawn in his hands, his eyes red like blood in rage, and himself breathing heavily. He then, O king, struck Bhima from every side with innumerable arrows.[66] The valiant Bhima, baffling those shafts, cut off Cakuni's bow in rage and pierced Cakuni himself with many keen arrows.[67] Deeply pierced by his powerful antagonist, that scorcher of foes, O king, fell down on the Earth almost lifeless.[68] Then thy son, O monarch, seeing him stupified, bore him away from battle on his car in the very sight of Bhimasena.[69] When that tiger among men, viz., Cakuni, was thus taken up on Duryodhana's car, the Dhārtarāshtra troops, turning their faces from battle, fled away on all sides, inspired with fear on that occasion of great terror due to Bhimasena.[70] Upon the defeat of Suvala's son, O king, by that great bowman, viz., Bhimasena, thy son Duryodhana, filled with great fright, retreated, borne away by his fleet steeds, from regard for his maternal uncle's life.[71] Beholding the king himself turn away from the battle, the troops, O Bhārata, fled away, from the encounters in which each of them had been engaged.[72] Seeing all the Dhārtarāshtra troops turn away from battle and fly in all directions, Bhima, rushing impetuously, fell upon them, shooting many hundreds of shafts.[73] Slaughtered by Bhima, the retreating Dhārtarāsh-

tras, O king, approaching the spot where Karna was, once more stood for battle, surrounding him.[74] Endued with great might and great energy, Karna then became their refuge. Finding Karna, O bull of Bharata's race, thy troops became comforted and stood cheerfully, relying upon one another, like ship-wrecked mariners, O tiger of men, in their distressful plight, when at last they reach an island. They then, once more, making death itself their goal, proceeded against their foes for battle.' "[75-77]

Section LXXVIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When our troops were broken in battle by Bhimasena, what, O Sanjaya, did Duryodhana and Suvala's son say?[1] Or, what did Karna, that foremost of victors, or the warriors of my army in that battle, or Kripa, or Kritavarman, or Drona's son, or Dusçāsana, say?[2] Exceedingly wonderful, I think, is the prowess of Pāndu's son, since, single-handed, he fought in battle with all the warriors of my army![3] Did the son of Rādhā act towards the (hostile) troops according to his vow? That slayer of foes, viz., Karna, O Sanjaya, is the prosperity, the armour, the fame, and the very hope of life, of the Kurus![4] Beholding the army broken by Kunti's son of immeasurable energy, what did Karna, the son of Adhiratha and Rādhā, do in that battle?[5] What also did my sons, difficult of defeat in battle, do or the other kings and mighty car-warriors of our army? Tell me all this, O Sanjaya, for thou art skilled in narration!'[6]

"Sanjaya said,—'In that afternoon, O monarch, the Suta's son of great valour began to smite all the Somakas in the very sight of Bhimasena.[7] Bhima also of great strength began to destroy the Dhārtarāshtra troops. Then Karna, addressing (his driver) Calya, said unto him,—Bear me to the Pānchālas![8] —Indeed, beholding his army in course of being routed by Bhimasena of great intelligence, Karna once more addressed his driver, saying,—Bear me to the Pānchālas only![9]—Thus urged, Calya the ruler of the Madras, endued with great might, urged those white steeds that were fleet as thought, towards the

Chedis, the Pānchālas and the Kārushas.[10] Penetrating then into that mighty host, Calya, that grinder of hostile troops, cheerfully conducted those steeds into every spot that Karna, that foremost of warriors, desired to go to.[11] Beholding that car cased in tiger-skins and looking like a cloud, the Pāndus and the Pānchālas, O monarch, became terrified.[12] The rattle then of that car, like unto the peal of thunder, or the sound of a mountain splitting into fragments, became audible in that dreadful battle.[13] With hundreds upon hundreds of keen arrows sped from the bowstring drawn to his ear, Karna then smote hundreds and thousands of warriors belonging to the Pāndava army.[14] While the unvanquished Karna was employed in achieving those feats, many mighty bowmen and great car-warriors among the Pāndavas encompassed him on all sides.[15] Indeed, Cikhandin, and Bhima, and Dhrishtadyumna the son Prishata, and Nakula, and Sahadeva, and the (five) sons of Draupadi, and Sātyaki, surrounded the son of Rādhā, pouring showers of arrows upon him, from desire of despatching him to the other world.[16] The heroic Sātyaki, that best of men, struck Karna in that engagement with twenty keen shafts in the shoulder-joint.[17] Cikhandin struck him with five and twenty shafts, and Dhrishtadyumna struck him with seven, and the sons of Draupadi with four and sixty, and Sahadeva with seven, and Nakula with a hundred, in that battle.[18] The mighty Bhimasena, in that encounter, filled with rage, struck the son of Rādhā in the shoulder-joint with ninety straight shafts.[19] The son of Adhiratha then, of great might, laughing in scorn, and drawing his excellent bow, let off many keen shafts, afflicting his foes.[20] The son of Rādhā pierced each of them in return with five arrows. Cutting off the bow of Sātyaki as also his standard, O bull of Bharata's race,[21] Karna pierced Sātyaki himself with nine shafts in the centre of the chest. Filled with wrath, he then pierced Bhimasena with thirty shafts.[22] With a broad-headed arrow, O sire, he next cut off the standard of Sahadeva, and with three other arrows, that chastiser of foes afflicted Sahadeva's driver.[23] Within the twinkling of an eye he then deprived the (five) sons of Draupadi of their cars, O bull of Bharata's race, which seemed

exceedingly wonderful.[24] Indeed, with his straight shafts causing those heroes to turn back from the fight, the heroic Karna began to slay the Pānchālas and many mighty car-warriors among the Chedis.[25] Thus struck in that battle, O monarch, the Chedis and the Matsyas, rushing against Karna alone, poured upon him showers of shafts.[26] The Suta's son, however, that mighty car-warrior, began to smite them with his keen shafts. I beheld this exceedingly wonderful feat, O Bhārata,[27] viz., that the Suta's son of great prowess, alone and unsupported in that battle, fought with all those bowmen who contended with him to the utmost of their prowess,[28] and checked all those Pāndava warriors, O monarch, with his shafts. With the lightness of hand, O Bhārata, of the high-souled Karna on that occasion,[29] all the gods as also the *Siddhas* and the *Chāranas* were gratified. All the great bowmen among the Dhārtarāshtras also, O best of men, applauded[30] Karna, that foremost of great car-warriors, that first of all bowmen. Then Karna, O monarch, burnt the hostile army[31] like a mighty and blazing conflagration consuming a heap of dry grass in the summer season. Thus slaughtered by Karna, the Pāndava troops, struck with fear, fled in all directions, at the very sight of Karna. Loud wails arose there among the Pānchālas in that great battle,[32-33] while they were thus struck with the keen shafts sped from Karna's bow. Struck with fear at the noise, the vast host of the Pāndavas,[34]—those enemies of Karna,—regarded him as the one warrior in that battle. Then that crusher of foes, viz., the son of Rādhā, once more achieved an exceedingly wonderful feat,[35] inasmuch as all the Pāndavas, united together, were unable to even gaze at him. Like a swelling mass of water breaking when it comes in contact with a mountain,[36] the Pāndava army broke when it came in contact with Karna. Indeed, O king, the mighty-armed Karna in that battle, burning the vast host of the Pāndavas, stood there like a blazing fire without smoke. With great activity that hero, with his shafts, cut off the arms and the heads of his brave foes, O king, and their ears decked with ear-rings. Swords with hilts of ivory, and standards, and darts, and steeds, and elephants,[37-39] and cars of diverse kinds, O king, and

banners, and axles, and yokes, and wheels of many kinds,[40] were cut off in varrious ways by Karna observant of a warrior's vow. There, O Bhārata with elephants and steeds slain by Karna,[41] the Earth became impassable and miry with flesh and blood. The uneven and even spots also of the field, in consequence of slain horse and foot[42] and broken cars and dead elephants, could no longer be distinguished. The combatants could not distinguish friends from foes[43] in that thick darkness caused by shafts when Karna's (celestial) weapon was displayed. The mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas, O monarch, were completely shrouded with the shafts, decked with gold, that were sped from Karna's bow. Those mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas, O king, in that battle, though struggling vigorously, were repeatedly broken by the son of Rādhā, even as a herd of deer in the forest is routed by an angry lion![44-46] Routing the foremost of Pānchāla car-warriors and (other) foes, Karna of great fame, in that battle, slew the Pāndava warriors like a wolf slaying smaller animals. Beholding the Pāndava army turn away from battle, the Dhārtarāshtra[47-48] bowmen of great might rushed against the retreating host, uttering terrible shouts. Then Duryodhana, O monarch, filled with great delight,[49] caused diverse musical instruments to be beat and blown in all parts of the army. The great bowmen amongst the Pānchālas, those foremost of men, though broken,[50] returned heroically to the fight, making death their goal, The son of Rādhā, however, that bull among men and scorcher of foes, O monarch, in that battle, broke those returned heroes in diverse ways. There, O Bhārata, twenty car-warriors among the Pānchālas and more than a hundred Chedi warriors were slain by Karna with his shafts. Making the terraces of cars and the backs of steeds empty, O Bhārata,[51-53] and slaying the combatants that fought from the necks of elephants, and routing the foot-soldiers, that scorcher of foes, viz., the Suta's son of great bravery, became incapable of being gazed at like the midday Sun and looked resplendent like the Destroyer himself at the end of the *Yuga*. Thus, O monarch, that slayer of foes, that mighty bowman, viz., Karna, having slain foot, horse, car-warriors, and elephants, stood there on his car, In-

deed, like the Destroyer himself of great might standing after slaying all creatures,[54-56] the mighty car-warrior Karna stood alone, having slain the Somakas. The prowess that we then beheld of the Pāñchālas seemed to be exceedingly wonderful,[57] for, though thus struck by Karna, they refused to fly away from that hero at the head of battle. At that time, the king (Duryodhana), and Duççāsana, and Kripa the son of Caradwata,[58] and Açwatthāman, and Kritavarman, and Cakuni also of great might, slaughtered the Pāndava warriors in hundreds and thousands.[59] The two sons also of Karna, O monarch,—those two brothers of prowess incapable of being baffled,—filled with rage, slaughtered the Pāndava army in several parts of the field.[60] The battle that took place was dreadful and cruel and the carnage that occurred was very great. Similarly the Pāndava heroes, viz., Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin[61] and the (five) sons of Draupadi, filled with rage, slaughtered thy host. Even thus a great destruction took place among the Pāndavas everywhere on the field, and even thus thy army also suffered great loss at the hands of the mighty Bhima.' "[62]

SECTION LXXIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Meanwhile Arjuna, O monarch, having slain the four kinds of forces (of the enemy), and having obtained a sight of the angry son of the Suta in that dreadful battle,[1] caused a river of blood to flow there that was tawny with flesh and marrow and bones.[2] Human heads constituted its rocks and stones. Elephants and steeds formed its banks. Full of the bones of heroic combatants, it resounded with the cries of ravens and vultures. Umbrellas were its swans or rafts. And that river ran, bearing away heroes like trees along its current.[3] (Fallen) necklaces constituted its assemblage of lotuses, and head-gears formed its excellent foam. Bows and shafts constituted its fishes; and the crowns of crushed men floated on its surface.[4]* Shields and armour were its eddies,

* I confess I do not understand what is meant by *Narakshudrakapālinim*. The version given is offered tentatively.—T.

and cars were the rafts with which it teemed. And it could be easily forded by persons desirous of victory, while to those that were cowards it was unfordable.[5] Having caused that river to flow, Vibhatsu, that slayer of hostile heroes and bull among men, addressing Vāsudeva, said,[6]—Yonder, O Krishna, the standard of the Suta's son is visible! There, Bhimasena and others are fighting with that great car-warrior! There, the Pānchālas, afeared of Karna, are flying away, O Janārddana![7] Yonder, king Duryodhana, with the white umbrella over his head, along with Karna, looketh exceedingly resplendent as he is engaged in routing the Pānchālas![8] There, Kripa, and Kritavarman, and Drona's son, that mighty car-warrior, are protecting king Duryodhana, themselves protected by the Suta's son![9] There, O Krishna, Calya, well conversant with holding the reins, looketh exceedingly resplendent as, seated on the terrace of Karna's car, he guideth that vehicle![10] Bear me to that mighty car-warrior, for even such is the wish cherished by me! Without slaying Karna in this battle I will never return![11] Otherwise, the son of Rādhā, O Janārddana, will, in my sight, exterminate the mighty car-warriors of the Pārthas and the Srinjayas![12]—Thus addressed, Keçava quickly proceeded on his car against thy army, towards the mighty bowman Karna, for causing a single combat to take place between Karna and Savyasāchin.[13] Indeed, the mighty-armed Hari, at the command of Pāndu's son, proceeded on his car, assuring (by that very act) all the Pāndava troops.[14] The rattle then of Arjuna's vehicle rose loud in that battle, resembling, O sire, the tremendous peal of Vāsava's thunder.[15] With that loud rattle of his car-wheels, the son of Pāndu, of prowess incapable of being baffled and endued with immeasurable soul, advanced, vanquishing (as he came) thy host.[16] Beholding Arjuna of white steeds and having Krishna for his driver thus advance, and seeing the standard of that high-souled one, the king of the Madras, addressing Karna, said,[17]—There cometh that car-warrior having white steeds yoked unto his vehicle and having Krishna for his driver, slaying his foes in battle! There cometh he about whom thou wert enquiring?[18] Yonder standeth the son of

Kuntī, holding his bow *Gāndiva!* If thou canst slay him to-day, great good may then be done to us![19] He cometh, O Karna, desirous of an encounter with thee, slaying, as he cometh, our chief warriors! He is incapable, O son of Rādhā, of being resisted by anybody else! Do thou proceed against that hero of Bharata's race![20] Through fear of Arjuna who is slaying large numbers of his foes, there the Dhārtarāshtra army is speedily breaking on all sides![21] Avoiding all our warriors, Dhananjaya advanceth with great speed, for, as I think, an encounter with thee, judging by his form swelling with rage and energy![22] Blazing with wrath, Pārtha will not stop from desire of battle with anybody else save thee, especially when Vrikodara is being so much afflicted (by thee)![23] Learning that king Yudhishthira the just hath been exceedingly mangled and made carless by thee, and seeing (the plight of) Cikhandin, and Sātyaki, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata,[24] and the (five) sons of Draupadi, and Yudhāmanyu, and Uttamaujas, and the brothers Nakula and Sahadeva,[25] that scorcher of foes, viz., Pārtha, advanceth impetuously on a single car against thee![26] Without doubt, he is advancing with speed against us, avoiding other combatants! Do thou, O Karna, proceed against him, for there is no other bowman (among us that can do so).[27] I do not behold in the world any other bowman, save thee, that would resist the angry Arjuna in battle like the continent (resisting the surging sea)![28] I do not behold any arrangements made for his protection, either on his flanks or at his rear. He advanceth alone against thee! Look after thy success now![29] Thou alone art able to encounter the two Krishnas in battle! That business is thine, O son of Rādhā! Proceed, therefore, against Dhananjaya![30] Thou art the equal of Bhishma, of Drona, of Drona's son, of Kripa! Do thou resist in this great battle the advancing Savyasāchin![31] Indeed, O Karna, slay this Dhananjaya that resembles a snake frequently darting out its tongue, or a roaring bull, or a tiger in the forest![32] There, those kings, those mighty car-warriors of the Dhārtarāshtra army, through fear of Arjuna, are quickly flying away, regardless of one another.[33] Save thee, O Suta's son, there is no other man, O hero, that can, in battle, dispel the fears of those retreating

combatants![34] All those Kurus, O tiger among men, obtaining thee as their refuge in this battle, stand, depending on thee and desirous of thy protection![35] Advance against the son of Pāndu, O son of Rādhā, mustering that courage now with which thou hadst in battle vanquished the almost invincible Vaidehas, the Amvashthas, the Kāmvojas, the Nagnajits, and the Gāndhāras![36] Mustering thy great prowess, O mighty-armed one, proceed against Vāsudeva of Vrishni's race, who is always gratified by the diadem-decked (Arjuna)![37]—

" 'Karna said,—Thou seemest now to be in thy usual frame of mind and thou art now agreeable to me! Do not, O mighty-armed one, entertain any fear of Dhananjaya![38] Behold the might of my arms today, and behold my skill! Single-handed, I will today destroy the mighty host of the Pāndavas, as also those two lions among men, viz., the two Krishnas! I say this truly unto thee![39] I will never return from the field today without slaying those two heroes! Or, slain by those two, I shall today sleep on the field of battle! Victory is uncertain in battle![40] Slaying or slain, I shall today achieve my purpose![41]—

" 'Calya said,—All great car-warriors, O Karna, say that this foremost of car-warriors, (viz., Arjuna), even when alone, is invincible! When, again, he is protected by Krishna, who will venture to vanquish him?[42]—

" 'Karna said,—As far as I have heard, such a superior car-warrior hath never been born on Earth! Behold my prowess, since I will contend in battle with even that Pārtha who is such![43] This prince of Kuru's line, this foremost of car-warriors, careers in battle, borne by his steeds white in hue! Perhaps, he will despatch me to Yama's abode today. Know, however, that with Karna's death, these all will be exterminated![44]* The two arms of this prince are never covered with sweat. They never tremble. They are massive and covered with cicatrices. Firm in the use of weapons, he is possessed of great skill and endued with great lightness of hands. Indeed, there is no warrior equal to the son of Pāndu![45] He taketh a large number of arrows and shooteth them as if they were one.

---

* Referring to the Kuru army.—T.

Quickly fixing them on the bow-string, he propelleth them to the distance of two miles. They always fell on the foe. What warrior is there on Earth that is equal to him?[46] That *Atiratha*, endued with great activity, with Krishna as his ally, gratified the god Agni at Khāndava. There, on that occasion, the high-souled Krishna obtained his discus, and Savyasāchin, the son of Pāndu, obtained his bow *Gāndiva*.[47] There that mighty-armed one, endued with might that knows no decay, also obtained his terrible car unto which are yoked those white steeds, as also his two great celestial and inexhaustible quivers, and many celestial weapons, from the god of fire.[48] In the region of Indra he obtained his conch *Devadatta* and slew innumerable *Daityas*, and all the Kālakeyas. Who is there on Earth that is superior to him?[49] Possessed of greatness of soul, he gratified Mahādeva himself in fair fight, and obtained from him the terrible and mighty weapon *Pāçupata* that is capable of destroying the three worlds.[50] The several Regents of the world, united together, gave him their weapons of immeasurable energy, with which that lion among men quickly destroyed in battle those united *Asuras*, viz., the Kālakhanjas.[51] So also, in Virāta's city, having on a single car vanquished all of us, he snatched from us that wealth of kine and took from all the foremost of car-warriors (portions of) their garments.[52] Challenging that foremost of Kshatriyas, that hero having him of Vrishni's race for his ally, that warrior who is endued with such energy and such attributes, I regard myself, O Calya, to be the foremost of persons in all the world in point of courage![53] He is, again, protected by that Keçava of infuriate energy, who is Nārāyana himself and who is without a rival, that high-souled Vāsudeva, that ever-victorious Vishnu armed with conch, discus, and mace, whose attributes all the worlds, united together, cannot (in narrating) exhaust in ten thousand years. Beholding the two Krishnas together on the same car, fear entereth my heart together with courage.*[54-55]

---

* Some of the Bengal texts read *Jāyate-asāddhyasancha*. The unpronounced *a* before the last word is the negative particle. The sense seems to be that although Karna is not wanting in courage, yet fear also enters

Pārtha is the foremost of all bowmen, while Nārāyana is unrivalled in encounters with the discus. Even such are Vāsudeva, and the son of Pāndu! Indeed, the mountains of Himavat may move from the spot were they stand, but *not* the two Krishnas![56] Both of them are heroes, possessed of great skill, firm in the use of weapons, and mighty car-warriors. Both of them have adamantine frames. Who else, O Calya, save myself, would proceed against Phālguna and Vāsudeva that are even such?[57] The desire cherished by me today, viz., a battle with the son of Pāndu, O ruler of the Madras, will be fulfilled without delay! Soon will that wonderful and unrivalled and beautiful battle take place! Either I will overthrow those two in battle today, or the two Krishnas will today overthrow me![58]—Saying these words unto Calya, Karna, that slayer of foes, began to utter loud roars in that battle, like those of the clouds. Approaching then thy son, that foremost one among the Kurus, and saluted respectfully by him, Karna said unto that prince[59] as also unto those two mighty-armed warriors, viz., Kripa and the Bhoja chief Kritavarman, and the ruler of the Gāndhāras with his son, and the preceptor's son, and his own younger brother, and all the foot-soldiers and horsemen and elephant-riders, these words,[60] viz.,—Rush towards Achyuta and Arjuna and close up their path all around, and cause them to be tired with exertion, so that, ye lords of Earth, I may easily slay those two after ye all will have mangled them deeply![61]—Saying,—So be it!—those foremost of heroes, desirous of slaying Arjuna, speedily proceeded against him. Those mighty car-warriors then, obeying the behest of Karna, began to strike Dhananjaya with innumerable arrows in that battle.[62] Like the great ocean containing a vast quantity of water receiving all rivers male and female, Arjuna received all those warriors in battle.[63] His foes could not notice when he fixed his excellent arrows on the bowstring and when he let them off. All that could be seen was that men and steeds and elephants, pierced with the arrows sped by Dhanan-

---

his heart. His is a mixed feeling at sight of the two Krishnas on the same car.—T.

jaya, continually fell down, deprived of life.[64] Like men with diseased eyes that are unable to gaze at the Sun, the Kauravas on that occasion could not gaze at Jaya who seemed to be possessed of the energy of the all-destroying Sun that rises at the end of the *Yuga*, having arrows for his rays, and *Gāndiva* for his beautiful circular disc.[65] Smiling the while, Pārtha with his own showers of arrows cut off the excellent arrows sped at him by those mighty car-warriors. In return, he struck them with innumerable arrows, drawing his bow *Gāndiva* to a complete circle.[66] As the Sun of fierce rays between the months of *Jaishtha* and *Ashāra* easily drieth up the waters (of the Earth), even so Arjuna, baffling the arrows of his foes, consumed thy troops, O king of kings![67] Then Kripa, and the chief of the Bhojas, and thy son himself, shooting showers of shafts, rushed towards him. Drona's son also, that mighty car-warrior, rushed towards him, shooting his shafts. Indeed, all of them rained their arrows on him, like the clouds pouring torrents of rain on a mountain.[68] The son of Pāndu, however, with great activity and speed, cut off with his own shafts those excellent arrows sped at him with great care in that dreadful battle by those accomplished warriors desirous of slaying him, and pierced the chest of each of his adversaries with three shafts.[69] Having arrows for his fierce rays, the Arjuna-sun, with *Gāndiva* drawn to its fullest stretch constituting his corona, looked resplendent, as he scorched his foes, like the Sun himself between the months of *Jaishtha* and *Ashāra*, within his bright corona.[70] Then Drona's son pierced Dhananjaya with ten foremost of shafts, and Keçava with three, and the four steeds of Dhananjaya with four, and showered many shafts on the Ape on Arjuna's banner.[71] For all that, Dhananjaya cut off the full-drawn bow in his adversary's hand with three shafts, the head of his driver with a razor-faced arrow, and his four steeds with four other shafts, felling last from his enemy's car his standard with three other arrows.[72] The son of Drona then, filled with wrath, took up another costly bow, bright as the body of Takshaka, and decked with gems and diamonds and gold, and resembling a mighty snake caught from the foot of a mountain.[73] String-

ing that bow as he stood on the Earth, and bringing out one after another shafts and weapons, Drona's son, that warrior who excelled in many accomplishments, began to afflict those two unvanquished and foremost of men and pierce them from a near point with many shafts.[74] Then those mighty car-warriors, viz., Kripa and Bhoja and thy son standing at the van of battle, fell upon and shrouded that bull among the Pāndavas, shooting showers of shafts, like the clouds shrouding the dispeller of darkness.[75] Possessed of prowess equal to that of the thousand-armed (Kārttaviryya), Pārtha then showered his shafts on Kripa's bow with arrow fixed on it, his steeds, his standard, and his driver, like the wielder of the thunder in days of yore showering his shafts on (the *Asura)* Vali.[76] His weapons destroyed by Pārtha's shafts, and his standard also having been crushed in that great battle, Kripa was afflicted with as many thousands of arrows by Arjuna as Gangā's son Bhishma before them (viz., on the day of his fall) by the same diadem-decked warrior.[77] The valiant Pārtha then, with his shafts, cut off the standard and the bow of thy roaring son. Destroying next the handsome steeds of Kritavarman, he cut off the latter's standard as well.[78] He then began to destroy with great speed the elephants of the hostile force, as also its cars with their steeds and drivers and bows and standards. Thereupon that vast host of thine broke into a hundred parts like an embankment washed off by the waters.[79] Then Keçava, quickly urging Arjuna's car, placed all his afflicted foes on his right side.[80] Then other warriors, desirous of an encounter, with their well-equipt cars bearing lofty standards, followed Dhananjaya who was proceeding with great speed like Indra proceeding for the slaugther of Vritra.[81] Then those mighty car-warriors, viz., Cikhandin and Sātyaki and the twins, proceeding in the direction of Dhananjaya, checked those foes and, piercing them with keen arrows, uttered terrible roars.[82] Then the Kuru heroes and the Srinjayas, encountering one another with rage, slew one another with straight shafts of great energy, like the *Asuras* and the celestials in days of yore in great battle.[83] Elephant-warriors and horsemen and car-warriors,—all chastisers of foes,—inspired with desire of victory or im-

patient of proceeding to heaven, fell fast on the field. Uttering loud shouts, they pierced one another vigorously with well-shot arrows.[84] In consequence of those high-souled warriors of great courage shooting their arrows at one another in that dreadful battle and by that means causing a darkness there, the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, became enveloped in gloom and the very effulgence of the Sun became totally shrouded.' "[85]

SECTION LXXX.

"Sanjaya said—'Then, O king, Dhananjaya, desirous of rescuing Kunti's son Bhima who, assailed by many foremost of warriors of the Kuru army, seemed to sink (under that attack),[1] avoided, O Bhārata, the troops of the Suta's son and began, with his shafts, to despatch those hostile heroes (that were opposed to Bhima) to the regions of death.[2]* Successive showers of Arjuna's shafts were seen overspread on the sky, while others were seen to slay thy army.[3] Filling the welkin with his shafts that resembled dense flights of feathery creatures, Dhananjaya, O monarch, at that time, became the very Destroyer unto the Kurus.[4] With his broad-headed arrows, and those equipt with heads flat and sharp as razors, and cloth-yard shafts of bright polish, Pārtha mangled the bodies of his foes and cut off their heads.[5] The field of battle became strewn with falling and fallen warriors, some with bodies cut and mangled, some divested of armour, and some deprived of heads.[6] Like the great Vaitarani (separating the regions of life from those of the dead), the field of battle, O king, became uneven and impassable and unsightly and terrible, in consequence of steeds and cars and elephants, which, struck with Dhananjaya's shafts, were mangled and pierced and crushed and cut off in diverse ways.[7-8] The Earth was also covered with broken

---

* The first word of 2 is *Visrijya* and not *Vimridya* as read in many texts. Avoiding Karna's division, Arjuna despatched the assailants of Bhima who seemed to sink under the pressure brought to bear upon him. This seems to be the plain sense of the passage.—T.

shafts and wheels and axles, and with cars that were steedless or that had their steeds and others that were driverless or that had their drivers.[9] Then four hundred well-trained and ever furious elephants, excited with wrath, and ridden by warriors cased in mail of golden hue and adorned with ornaments of gold, and urged by fierce guides with pressure of heels and toes, fell down, struck by the diadem-decked Arjuna with his shafts, like loosened summits, peopled with living creatures, of gigantic mountains.[10-11] Indeed, the Earth became covered with (other) huge elephants struck down by Dhananjaya with his arrows.[12] Like the Sun piercing through masses of clouds, Arjuna's car passed through dense bodies of elephants with juicy secretions flowing adown their bodies and looking like masses of clouds.[13] Phālguna caused his track to be heaped up with slain elephants and men and steeds, and with cars broken in diverse ways, and with lifeless heroes deprived of weapons and engines and of armour, as also with arms of diverse kinds loosened from hands that held them.[14] The twang of *Gāndiva* became tremendously loud, like the peal of thunder in the welkin.[15] The (Dhārtarāshtra) army then, smitten with the shafts of Dhananjaya, broke, like a large vessel on the bosom of the ocean, violently lashed by the tempest.[16] Diverse kinds of fatal shafts, sped from *Gāndiva*, and resembling burning brands and meteors and thunder-bolts, burnt thy army.[17] That mighty host, thus afflicted with Dhananjaya's shafts, looked beautiful like a blazing forest of bamboos on a mountain in the night.[18] Crushed and burnt and thrown into confusion, and mangled and massacred by the diadem-decked Arjuna with his arrows, that host of thine then fled away on all sides.[19] Indeed, the Kauravas, burnt by Savyasāchin, dispersed on all sides, like animals in the great forest frightened at a forest-conflagration.[20] The Kuru host then (that had assailed Bhimasena), abandoning that mighty-armed hero, turned their faces from battle, filled with anxiety.[21] After the Kurus had been routed, the unvanquished Vibhatsu, approaching Bhimasena, stayed there for a moment.[22] Having met Bhima and held a consultation with him, Phālguna informed his brother that the arrows had been extracted from Yudhishthira's body and that the latter was perfectly well,[23]

With Bhimasena's leave, Dhananjaya then proceeded (once more against his foes), causing the Earth and the welkin, O Bhārata, to resound with the rattle of his car.[24] He was then surrounded by ten heroic and foremost of warriors, viz., thy sons, all of whom were Dusçāsana's juniors in age.[25] Afflicting Arjuna with their shafts like hunters afflicting an elephant with burning brands, those heroes, with outstretched bows, seemed to dance, O Bhārata, (on their cars).[26] The slayer of Madhu then, guiding his car, placed all of them to his right. Indeed, he expected that Arjuna would very soon send all of them to Yama's presence.[27] Beholding Arjuna's car proceeding in a different direction, those heroes rushed towards him. Soon, however, Pārtha, with a number of cloth-yard shafts and crescent-shaped arrows, cut off their standards and steeds and bows and arrows, causing them to fall down on the Earth. Then with some broad-headed arrows he cut off and felled their heads decked with lips bit and eyes blood-red in rage. Those faces looked beautiful like an assemblage of lotuses.[28-30] Having slain those ten Kauravas cased in golden mail, with ten broad-headed shafts endued great impetuosity and equipt with wings of gold, that slayer of foes, viz., Arjuna, continued to proceed.' "[31]

SECTION LXXXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Meanwhile ninety Kaurava car-warriors rushed for battle against the ape-bannered Arjuna who was advancing, borne by his steeds of exceeding fleetness.[1] Those tigers among men, having sworn a terrible oath about the other world,* encompassed that tiger among men, viz., Arjuna.[2] Krishna, however, (without minding those warriors), urged the white steeds of Arjuna, endued with great speed and adorned with ornaments of gold and covered with net-works of pearls, towards Karna's car.[3] Those ninety *Samsaptaka* cars pursued Dhananjaya, that slayer of foes, pouring upon him showers of

---

* Such as—"May we sink in ever-lasting hell if we fly away from Arjuna!" *Vide* the oath of the *Samsaptakas* in the beginning of *Drona Parva*.—T.

shafts, as he proceeded towards Karna's car.[4] Then Arjuna, with his keen shafts, cut off those ninety assailants endued with great activity, along with their drivers and bows and standards.[5] Slain by the diadem-decked Arjuna with diverse kinds of shafts, they fell down like *Siddhas* falling down, with their cars, from heaven upon the exhaustion of their merits.[6] After this, many Kauravas, with cars and elephants and steeds, fearlessly advanced against that foremost one of Kuru's race, that chief of the Bharatas, viz., Phālguna.[7] That large force of thy sons, teeming with struggling men and steeds, and swelling with foremost of elephants, then encompassed Dnananjaya, checking his further progress.[8] The mighty Kaurava bowmen shrouded that descendant of Kuru's race with darts and swords and lances and spears and maces and scimitars and arrows.[9] Like the Sun destroying the darkness with his rays, the son of Pāndu destroyed with his own shafts that shower of weapons overspread in the welkin.[10] Then a force of *Mlecchas* riding thirteen hundred ever-infuriate elephants, at the command of thy son, assailed Pārtha in the flank.[11] With barbed arrows and *Nālikas* and cloth-yard shafts and lances and spears and darts and *Kampanas* and short arrows, they afflicted Pārtha on his car.[12] That matchless shower of weapons, some of which were hurled by the elephants with their tusks, Phālguna cut off with his broad-headed shafts and crescent-shaped arrows of great keenness.[13] With excellent arrows of diverse kinds, he struck all those elephants and their standards and banners and riders like Indra striking mountains with thunder-bolts.[14] Afflicted with gold-winged shafts, those huge elephants decked with necklaces of gold, fell down deprived of life, like mountains ablaze with volcanic fires.[15] Amid that roaring and shouting and wailing army of men and elephants and steeds, the twang of *Gāndiva*, O monarch, rose high.[16] Elephants, O king, struck (with shafts), fled away on all sides. Steeds also, their riders slain, wandered in all directions.[17] Cars, O monarch, looking like the changeful forms of vapour in the sky, deprived of riders and steeds, were seen in thousands.[18] Horsemen, O monarch, wandering hither and thither, were seen to fall down deprived of life by the shafts of Pārtha.[19] At that time the might of

Arjuna's arms was seen. (So great was that might) that alone, in that battle, he vanquished horsemen and elephants and car-warriors (that had been assailing him from every side).[20] Then Bhimasena, beholding the diadem-decked Phālguna encompassed, O bull of Bharata's race, by a large (Kaurava) host consisting of three kinds of forces,[21] abandoned the small unslaughtered remnant of the Kaurava car-warriors with whom he had been engaged, and rushed impetuously, O king, to the spot where Dhananjaya's car was.[22] Meanwhile the Kaurava force that still remained after the heavy slaughter, exceedingly weakened, fled away. Bhima (as already said), beholding Arjuna, proceeded towards his brother.[23] The unfatigued Bhima, armed with a mace, destroyed, in that battle, the portion that still remained, after the greater part had been slaughtered by Arjuna, of the Kaurava horse possessed of great might.[24] Fierce as the death-night, subsisting upon men and elephants and steeds as its food, and capable of crushing walls and mansions and gates of cities, that exceedingly terrible mace of his, Bhima made incessantly to descend on men and elephants and steeds around him. That mace, O sire, slew numberless steeds and riders.[25-26] With that mace the son of Pāndu crushed men and steeds cased in steel armour. Struck therewith, they fell down with great noise.[27] Biting the earth with their teeth, and bathed in blood, these, with the crowns of their heads and bows and lower limbs crushed, laid themselves down on the field, supplying all carnivorous creatures with food.[28] Satiated with blood and flesh and marrow, and eating bones as well, that mace (of Bhimasena) became, like the death-night, difficult of being gazed at.[29] Having slain ten thousand horse and numerous foot, Bhima ran hither and thither in rage, armed with his mace.[30] Then, O Bhārata, thy troops, beholding Bhima mace in hand, thought that Yama himself, armed with his fatal bludgeon, was in their midst.[31] The son of Pāndu then, excited with rage, and resembling an infuriate elephant, penetrated into the elephant division (of the Kauravas), like a *Makara* entering the ocean.[32] Having, with his formidable mace, penetrated into that elephant division, the enraged Bhima, within a very short time, despatched it to Yama's abode.[33] We then beheld those in-

furiate elephants with spiked plates on their bodies, falling on every side, with their riders and standards, like winged mountains.[34] Having destroyed that elephant division, the mighty Bhimasena, once more riding on his car, followed Arjuna in his rear.[35] That great host, thus slaughtered, filled with cheerlessness and about to fly away, stood almost inactive, O monarch, assailed on all sides with weapons.[36] Beholding that host looking humble and standing inactive, and almost motionles, Arjuna covered it with life-scorching shafts.[37] Men and steeds and elephants, pierced in that battle with showers of shafts by the wielder of *Gāndiva*, looked beautiful like *Kadamva* flowers with their filaments.[38] Thus struck with Arjuna's shafts that quickly slew men and steeds and cars and elephants, loud wails, O king, arose from the Kuru army.[39] With cries of *Oh* and *Alas*, and exceedingly frightened, and huddling close to one another, thy army began to turn round with great speed.[40] The battle, however, continued between the Kurus and the Pāndavas of great might. There was not a single car-warrior or horseman or elephant-warrior or steed or elephant that was unwounded.[41] Their coats of mail pierced with shafts and themselves bathed in blood, the troops looked blazing like a forest of flowering *Açokas*.[42] Beholding Savyasāchin putting forth his valor on that occasion, the Kauravas became hopeless of Karna's life.[43] Regarding the touch of Arjuna's shafts to be unbearable, the Kauravas, vanquished by the wielder of *Gāndiva*, fled from the field.[44] Deserting Karna in that battle as they were being thus struck with Arjuna's shafts, they fled away in fear on all sides, loudly calling upon the Suta's son (to rescue them).[45] Pārtha, however, pursued them, shooting hundreds of shafts and gladdening the Pāndava warriors headed by Bhimasena.[46] Thy sons then, O monarch, proceeded towards the car of Karna. Sinking, as they seemed to be, in a fathomless ocean, Karna then became an island unto them.[47] The Kauravas, O monarch, like snakes without poison, took Karna's shelter, moved by the fear of the wielder of *Gāndiva*.[48] Indeed, even as creatures, O sire, endued with actions, from fear of death, take the shelter of virtue,[49] thy sons, O ruler of men, from fear of the high-souled son of Pāndu, took the shelter of the

mighty bowman Karna.[50] Then Karna, uninspired with fear, addressed those distressed warriors afflicted with arrows and bathed in blood, saying,—Do not fear ! Come to me ![51]—Beholding thy army vigorously broken by Pārtha, Karna, stretching his bow, stood desirous of slaughtering the foe.[52] Seeing that the Kurus had left the field, Karna, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, reflecting a little, set his heart upon the slaughter of Pārtha and began to draw deep breaths.[53] Bending his formidable bow, Adhiratha's son Vrisha once more rushed against the Pānchālas, in the very sight of Savyasāchin[54] Soon, however, many lords of Earth, with eyes red as blood, poured their arrowy downpours on him like clouds pouring rain upon a mountain.[55] Then thousands of arrows, O foremost of living creatures, shot by Karna, O sire, deprived many Pānchālas of their lives.[56] Loud sounds of wail were uttered by the Pānchālas, O thou of great intelligence, while they were being thus smitten by the Suta's son, that rescuer of friends, for the sake of his friends.' "[57]

SECTION LXXXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the Kurus, O king, had been put to flight by the mighty car-warrior Arjuna of white steeds, the Suta's son Karna began to destroy the sons of the Pānchālas with his mighty shafts, like the tempest destroying congregated masses of clouds.[1] Felling Janamejaya's driver with broad-faced shafts called *Anjalikas*, he next slew the steeds of that Pānchāla warrior. With a number of broad-headed arrows he then pierced both Catānika and Sutasoma and then cut off the bows of both those heroes.[2] Next he pierced Dhrishtadyumna with six arrows, and then, without the loss of a moment, he slew in that encounter the steeds of that prince. Having slain next the steeds of Sātyaki, the Suta's son then slew Viçoka the son of the ruler of the Kaikayas.[3] Upon the slaughter of the Kaikaya prince, the commander of the Kaikaya division, viz., Ugrakarman, rushed with speed and striking Prasena the son of Karna with many shafts of fierce impetuosity, caused him to tremble.[4] Then Karna, with three

crescent-shaped arrows, cut off the arms and the head of his son's assailant, whereupon the latter, deprived of life, fell down upon the ground from his car, like a *Çāla* tree with its branches lopped off with an axe.[5] Then Prasena, with many keen arrows of straight course, covered the steedless grandson of Cini, and seemed to dance upon his car. Soon, however, the son of Karna, struck by the grandson of Cini, fell down.[6] Upon the slaughter of his son, Karna, with heart filled with rage, addressed that bull among the Cinis from desire of slaying him, saying,—Thou art slain, O grandson of Cini!—and sped at him an arrow capable of slaying all foes.[7] Then Cikhandin cut off that arrow with three shafts of his, and struck Karna himself with three other shafts. The fierce son of the Suta then, cutting off with a couple of razor-faced arrows the bow and the standard of Cikhandin, struck[8] and pierced Cikhandin himself with six shafts, and then cut off the head of Dhrishtadyumna's son. The high-souled son of Adhiratha then pierced Sutasoma with a very keen shaft.[9] During the progress of that fierce battle, and after Dhrishtadyumna's son had been slain, Krishna, O lion among kings, addressed Pārtha, saying,—The Pānchālas are being exterminated! Go, O Pārtha, and slay Karna![10]—Thus addressed, the mighty-armed Arjuna, that foremost of men, smiled and then proceeded on his car towards the car of Adhiratha's son, desirous, on that occasion of terror, of rescuing the Pānchālas slaughtered by Karna, that leader of car-warriors.[11] Stretching his *Gāndiva* of loud twang, and fiercely striking his palms with his bowstring, he suddenly created a darkness by means of his arrows and destroyed large numbers of men and steeds and cars and standards.[12] The echoes (of that twang) travelled through the welkin. The birds, (no longer finding room in their own element), took shelter in the caverns of mountains. With his full-drawn bow, Arjuna looked resplendent. Indeed, as the diadem-decked Pārtha, at that terrible moment, fell upon the foe,[13] Bhimasena, that foremost of heroes, proceeded on his car behind that son of Pāndu, protecting his rear. Those two princes then, on their cars, proceeded with great speed towards Karna, encountering their foes along the way.[14] During that

interval, the Suta's son fought fiercely, grinding the Somakas. He slew a large number of car-warriors and steeds and elephants, and covered the ten points of the compass with his shafts.[15] Then Uttamaujas and Janamejaya, and the enraged Yudhāmanyu and Cikhandin, uniting with Prishata's son (Dhrishtadyumna) and uttering loud roars, pierced Karna with many shafts.[16] Those five foremost of Pānchāla car-warriors rushed against Karna otherwise called Vaikartana, but they could not shake him off his car like the objects of the senses failing to shake off the person of purified soul from abstinence.[17] Quickly cutting off their bows, standards, steeds, drivers, and banners, with his shafts, Karna struck each of them with five arrows and then uttered a loud roar like a lion.[18] People then became exceedingly cheerless, thinking that the very Earth, with her mountains and trees, might split at the twang of Karna's bow while that hero, with shafts in hand and touching the bowstring, was employed in shooting at his assailants and slaying his foes.[19] Shooting his shafts with that large and extended bow of his that resembled the bow of Cakra himself, the son of Adhiratha looked resplendent like the Sun, with his multitude of blazing rays, within his corona.[20] The Suta's son then pierced Cikhandin with a dozen keen shafts, and Uttamaujas with half a dozen, and Yudhāmanyu with three, and then each of the other two, viz., the Somaka (Janamejaya) and Prishata's son (Dhrishtadyumna) with three shafts.[21] Vanquished in dreadful battle by the Suta's son, O sire, those five mighty car-warriors then stood inactive, gladdening their foes, even as the objects of the senses are vanquished by a person of purified soul.[22] The five sons of Draupadi then, with other well-equipt cars, rescued those maternal uncles of theirs that were sinking in the Karna-ocean, like persons rescuing from the depths of the ocean ship-wrecked merchants in the sea by means of other vessels.[23] Then that bull among the Cinis, cutting off with his own keen shafts the innumerable arrows sped by Karna, and piercing Karna himself with many keen arrows made entirely of iron, pierced thy eldest son with eight shafts.[24] Then Kripa, and the Bhoja chief (Kritavarman), and thy son, and Karna himself, assailed Sātyaki in return

with keen shafts. That foremost one, however, of Yadu's race fought with those four warriors like the chief of the *Daityas* fighting with the regents of the (four) quarters.[25] With his twanging bow stretched to its fullest limits, and from which shafts flowed incessantly, Sātyaki became exceedingly irresistible like the meridian Sun in the autumnal sky.[26] Those scorchers of foes then, viz., the mighty car-warriors among the Pānchālas, once more riding on their cars and clad in mail and united together, protected that foremost one among the Cinis, like the Maruts protecting Cakra while engaged in afflicting his foes in battle.[27] The battle, fraught with the slaughter of men and steeds and elephants, that then ensued between thy foes and the warriors of thy army, became so fierce that it resembled the encounter in days of old between the gods and the *Asuras*.[28] Car-warriors and elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers, covered with showers of diverse weapons, began to move from one point to another. Struck by one another, they reeled or uttered wails of woe in affliction or fell down deprived of life.[29] When such was the state of affairs, thy son Dusçāsana, the younger brother of the king, fearlessly advanced against Bhima, shooting showers of shafts. Vrikodara also rushed impetuously against him, like a lion springing towards a large *Ruru* deer.[30] The encounter then that took place between those two heroes incensed with each other and who engaged in battle's sport making life itself the stake, became exceedingly fierce, resembling that between Camvara and Cakra in days of old.[31] They struck each other deeply with shafts possessed of great energy and capable of piercing each other's body, like two mighty elephants excited with lust and with juicy secretions incessantly trickling adown their bodies, fighting with each other in the vicinity of a she-elephant in her season.[32] Vrikodara, with great speed, cut off, with a couple of razor-headed arrows, the bow and the standard of thy son. With another winged arrow he pierced his antagonist's forehead and then (with a fourth) cut off from his trunk the head of the latter's driver.[33] Prince Duscāsana, taking up another bow, pierced Vrikodara with a dozen shafts. Himself holding the reins of his steeds, he once more poured over Bhima a shower of straight

arrows.[34] Then Dusçāsana sped a shaft bright as the rays of the Sun, decked with gold, diamonds, and other precious gems, capable of piercing the body of his assailant, and irresistible as the stroke of Indra's thunder.[35] His body pierced therewith, Vrikodara fell, with languid limbs and like one deprived of life and with outstretched arms, upon his own excellent car. Recovering his senses, however, he began to roar like a lion.' "[36]

Section LXXXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Fighting fiercely, prince Dusçāsana achieved the most difficult feats in that encounter. With a single shaft he cut off Bhima's bow, and then with six shafts he pierced his foe's driver.[1] Having achieved those feats, the prince, endued with great activity, pierced Bhima himself with nine shafts. Indeed, the high-souled warrior, without losing a moment, then pierced Bhimasena with many shafts of great energy.[2] Filled with rage at this, Bhimasena, endued with great activity, sped at thy son a fierce dart. Beholding that terrible dart impetuously coursing towards him like a blazing brand, thy high-souled son cut it off with ten shafts shot from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch.[3]* Seeing that difficult feat achieved by him, all the warriors, filled with joy, applauded him highly. Thy son then once more pierced Bhima deeply with another shaft.[4] Blazing with wrath at sight of Dusçāsana, Bhima then addressed him, saying,—Pierced I have been, O hero, quickly and deeply, by thee! Bear now, however, once more, the stroke of my mace![5]—Having said this, the enraged Bhima took up that terrible mace of his for Dusçāsana's slaughter. Once more addressing him, he said,—O thou of wicked soul, I shall today drink thy blood on the field of battle![6]—Thus addressed, thy son sped at Bhima with great force a fierce dart resembling Death itself. Bhima also, his form filled with wrath, whirled his terrible mace and hurled it at his antagonist.[7] That mace, precipitately breaking Dusçāsana's dart, struck thy son on his head. In-

---

* A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

deed, perspiring like an elephant with juicy secretions trickling adown his body, Bhima, in that dreadful battle, hurled his mace at the prince.[8] With that weapon, Bhimasena forcibly threw Dusçāsana down from his car at a distance measured by the length of ten bows. Struck with that impetuous mace, Dusçāsana, thrown down on the ground, began to tremble.[9] All his steeds also, O king, were slain, and his car too was reduced to atoms by that falling weapon. As regards Dusçāsana himself, his armour and ornaments and attire and garlands were all displaced, and he began to writhe, afflicted with agony.[10] Endued with great activity, Bhimasena then recollected, in the midst of that terrible battle and standing as he did amid many foremost warriors of the Kuru army, all the acts of hostility (done towards the Pāndavas) by thy sons.[11] The mighty-armed Bhima of inconceivable feats, O king, beholding Dusçāsana (in that plight), and recollecting the seizure of Draupadi's tresses and her disrobement while she was ill,[12]—indeed, the innocent Bhima, reflecting also upon the diverse other wrongs inflicted on that princess while her husbands sat with faces turned away from the scene,—blazed up in wrath like fire fed with libations of clarified butter.*[13] Addressing Karna and Suyodhana and Kripa and Drona's son and Kritavarman, he said,—Today I shall slay the wretched Dusçāsana! Let all the warriors protect him (if they can)![14]—Having said this, Bhima of exceeding strength and great activity suddenly rushed, from desire of slaying Dusçāsana.[15] Like a lion of fierce impetuosity rushing towards a mighty elephant, Vrikodara, that foremost of heroes, rushed towards Dusçāsana in that battle and attacked him in the very sight of Suyodhana and Karna. Jumping down from his car, he alighted on the ground, and fixed his eyes steadfastly on his fallen foe.[16] Drawing then his whetted sword of keen edge, and trembling with rage, he placed his foot upon the throat of Dusçāsana, and ripping open the breast of his enemy stretched on the ground, quaffed his warm life-blood.[17] Then throwing him down and cutting off, O king, with that sword, the head of thy son, Bhima of

* *Prasikta*, lit., drenched with.—T.

great intelligence, desirous of accomplishing his vow, again quaffed his enemy's blood, little by little as if for enjoying its taste. Then looking at him with wrathful eyes, he said these words :[18-19]—I regard the taste of this blood of my enemy to be superior to that of my mother's milk, or honey, or clarified butter, or good wine that is prepared from honey, or excellent water, or milk, or curds, or skimmed milk, or all other kinds of drink there are on Earth that are sweet as ambrosia or nectar ![20-21]—Once more, Bhima of fierce deeds, his heart filled with wrath, beholding Dusçāsana dead, laughed softly and said,—What more can I do to thee? Death has rescued thee from my hands![22]—They, O king, that saw Bhimasena, while the latter, filled with joy at having quaffed the blood of his foe, was uttering those words and stalking on the field of battle, fell down in fear.[23] They that did not fall down at the sight, saw their weapons drop from their hands. Many, from fear, cried out feebly and looked at Bhima with half-shut eyes.[24] Indeed, all those that stood around Bhima and beheld him drink the blood of Dusçāsana, fled away, overwhelmed with fear, and saying unto one another,—*This one is no human being !*[25]—When Bhima had assumed that form, people, beholding him quaff his enemy's blood, fled away, with Chitrasena, saying unto one another,—*This Bhima must be a Rākshasa !*[26]—Then the (Pānchāla) prince Yudhāmanyu, at the head of his troops, fearlessly pursued the retreating Chitrasena and pierced him with seven keen shafts quickly sped one after another.[27] At this, like a trampled snake of great energy repeatedly darting out his tongue and desirous of vomiting its poison, Chitrasena turned back and pierced the Pānchāla prince with three shafts and his driver with six.[28] The brave Yudhāmanyu then struck off his enemy's head with a shaft equipt with goodly wings and an exceedingly keen point and sped with great care from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch.[29] Upon the fall of his brother Chitrasena, Karna, filled with wrath and displaying his prowess, put the Pāndava host to flight, at which Nakula rushed against that warrior of immeasurable energy.[30] Bhima also, having slain there (at the very sight of Karna) the vindictive Dusçāsana, took up a little

quantity of his blood, and endued as he was with stentorian lungs, said these words in the hearing of all those foremost of heroes of the world:[31]—O wretch among men, here I drink thy life-blood from thy throat! Filled with joy, abuse us once more, saying,—*beast, beast*,—(as thou didst before)![32]—And he continued,—They that danced at us then, saying,—*beast, beast*, —even we will dance at them now, repeating their own words![33] Our sleep at the palace at *Pramānakoti*, the administration of deadly poison to our food, the bites of black cobras, the setting fire to the house of lac,[34] the robbing of our kingdom by gambling, our exile in the woods, the cruel seizure of Draupadi's beautiful tresses,[35] the strokes of shafts and weapons in battle, our miseries at home, the other kinds of sufferings we endured at Virāta's abode,[36]—all these woes borne by us through the counsels of Cakuni and Duryodhana and Rādhā's son, proceeded from thee as their cause![37] Through the wickedness of Dhritarāshtra and his son, we have endured all these woes! Happiness has never been ours![38]—Having said these words, O king, the victorious Vrikodara, once more spoke these words unto Keçava and Arjuna.[39] Indeed, bathed in blood, with blood flowing from his wounds, with face exceedingly red, filled with great wrath, Bhimasena endued with great activity, said these words:—Ye heroes, that which I had vowed in respect of Dusçāsana in battle, I have accomplished today![40] I will soon accomplish my other vow by slaying that second beast, viz., Duryodhana, in this sacrifice of battle! Striking the head of that wicked-souled one with my foot in the presence of the Kauravas, I shall obtain peace![41]—Having said these words, Bhima, filled with great joy, drenched with blood, uttered loud shouts, even as the mighty and high-souled Indra of a thousand eyes had roared after slaying (the *Asura*) Vritra.' "[42]

Section LXXXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the slaughter of Dusçāsana, O king, ten of thy sons, heroes that never retreated from battle, all of whom were great car-warriors, endued with mighty energy,

and filled with the poison of wrath, shrouded Bhima with their shafts.*[1] Nishangin, and Kavachin, and Pāçin, and Dundadhāra, and Dhanurgraha, and Alolupa, and Saha, and Shanda, and Vātavega, and Suvarchasas,[2] these ten, afflicted at the slaughter of their brother, united together and checked the mighty-armed Bhimasena with their shafts.[3] Resisted on all sides with their shafts by those great car-warriors, Bhima, with eyes red as fire with fury, looked resplendent like the Destroyer himself in rage.[4] Pārtha, however, with ten broad-headed shafts of great impetuosity, equipt with golden wings, despatched to Yama's abode those ten Bharata princes decked with golden bracelets.[5] Upon the fall of those ten heroes, thy army fled away in the very sight of the Suta's son, afflicted with the fear of the Pāndavas.[6] Then, O king, a great fear entered the heart of Karna at sight of Bhima's prowess which resembled that of the Destroyer himself unto living creatures.[7] Then Calya, that ornament of assemblies, understanding the state of Karna's mind from a survey of his features, addressed that chastiser of foes in words suited to the hour:[8]—Do not be grieved, O son of Rādhā! This does not become thee! Afflicted with the fear of Bhimasena, these kings are all flying away![9] Exceedingly pained by the calamity that has befallen his brother Dusçāsana in consequence of his blood having been quaffed by the high-souled Bhima, Duryodhana is stupified![10] Kripa and others, and those of the king's brothers that are still alive, with afflicted hearts, their rage quelled by sorrow, are tending Duryodhana, sitting around him.[11] Those heroes, viz., the Pāndavas of sure aim, headed by Dhananjaya, are advancing against thee for battle![12] For these reasons, O tiger among men, mustering all thy prowess and keeping the duties of a Kshatriya before thy eyes, proceed against Dhananjaya![13] The entire burthen (of this battle) has been placed upon thee by the son of Dhritarāshtra! O thou of mighty arms, bear that burthen to the best of thy power and might![14] In victory there will be great fame! In defeat, heaven is certain![15] There, O

* A triplet in the Bengal texts.

son of Rādhā, thy son Vrishasena, filled with wrath at sight of the stupefaction that has overwhelmed thee, is rushing towards the Pāndavas![16]—Hearing these words of Calya of immeasurable energy, Karna, reflecting, concluded unalterably that fighting had become unavoidable.[17] Then Vrishasena, filled with wrath, and riding upon his own car, rushed towards that son of Pāndu, viz., Vrikodara, who, armed with his mace, resembled the Destroyer himself with his fatal rod, and was employed in slaughtering thy troops.[18] That foremost of heroes, viz., Nakula, filled with wrath, rushed at that enemy, of theirs, viz., Karna's son, striking him with arrows, like the victorious Maghavat with joyous heart rushing against (the *Asura*) Jambha.[19] Then the brave Nakula, with a razor-headed shaft, cut off his enemy's standard decked with gems. With a broad-headed arrow, he next cut off the bow also of Karna's son, with a golden belt attached to it.[20] Possessed of mighty weapons, Karna's son then, desirous of showing his regard for Dusçāsana, quickly took up another bow, and pierced Nakula the son of Pāndu with many mighty celestial weapons.[21] The high-souled Nakula then, filled with rage, pierced his antagonist with shafts that resembled large blazing brands. At this, Karna's son also, accomplished in weapons, showered celestial weapons upon Nakula.[22] From rage engendered by the strokes of his enemy's weapons, as also from his own resplendence and the energy of his weapons, the son of Karna blazed up like a fire fed with libations of clarified butter.[23] Indeed, O king, Karna's son then slew with his excellent weapons the beautiful steeds of the delicate Nakula, that were of the Vanāyu breed, white in hue, and decked with trappings of gold.[24] Alighting then from his steedless vehicle, and taking up a bright shield decked with golden moons, and armed also with a sword that was blue as the sky, Nakula, frequently jumping up, careered there like a bird.[25] Performing diverse beautiful evolutions in the air, the son of Pāndu cut off many foremost of men and steeds and elephants. Cut off with that sword, they fell down on the Earth like animals cut off in a horse-sacrifice by the person appointed to that duty.[26] Two thousand well-trained heroes, delighting in battle, hailing from

diverse realms, well-paid, of sure aim, and their limbs smeared with excellent sandal-paste, were quickly cut off by the single-handed Nakula inspired with desire of victory.[27] Then Karna's son, suddenly advancing with great speed against the rushing Nakula in that battle, pierced him from every side with many keen arrows from desire of slaying him.[28] Thus struck with shafts (by Vrishasena), Nakula struck his brave antagonist in return. Pierced by the son of Pāndu, Vrishasena became filled with wrath. Protected, however, in that dreadful battle, by his brother Bhima, the high-souled Nakula achieved such terrible feats on that occasion.[29] Filled with rage, the son of Karna then pierced with eighteen shafts the heroic Nakula who seemed to sport in that battle, while employed, unaided, in destroying the foremost of men and steeds and elephants.[30] Deeply pierced by Vrishasena in that battle, O king, Pāndu's son Nakula, that foremost of men, endued with great activity, became filled with rage and rushed in that encounter against the son of Karna from desire of slaying him.[31] Then Vrishasena poured showers of keen shafts upon Nakula of great energy as the latter precipitately advanced against him in that battle like a hawk with outstretched wings from desire of meat.[32] Baffling, however, his antagonist's showers of shafts, Nakula careered in diverse beautiful motions. Then Karna's son, O king, in that dreadful battle, cut off, with his mighty shafts, the shield, decked with a thousand stars, of Nakula while he was careering with great activity in those beautiful motions.[33] Without losing a moment, that resister of foes, (viz., Vrishasena,) with half a dozen sharp razor-headed shafts, then cut off that naked sword, polished and keen-edged, made of steel, capable of bearing a great strain and of destroying the bodies of all foes, and terrible and fierce as the poison of the snake, of Nakula while he was whirling it rapidly. After this, Vrishasena deeply pierced his antagonist in the centre of his chest with some well-tempered and keen shafts.[34-35] Having achieved those feats in battle that were applauded by all noble persons and that could not be achieved by other men, the high-souled Nakula of great activity, afflicted with those shafts, proceeded to the car, O king, of Bhima-

sena.[36] The steedless son of Mādri, thus afflicted by Karna's son, sprang upon Bhima's car like a lion springing upon a mountain summit, in the sight of Dhananjaya.[37] The high-souled and heroic Vrishasena then, filled with wrath, poured his arrowy showers upon those two mighty car-warriors for piercing those two sons of Pāndu.[38] After the destruction of that car belonging to the son of Pāndu (viz., Nakula,) and after his sword also had been speedily cut off with (Vrishasena's) shafts, many other foremost of Kuru heroes, uniting together, approached the Pāndava brothers, and began to strike them with showers of shafts.[39] Then those two sons of Pāndu, viz., Bhima and Arjuna, filled with wrath, and resembling two fires fed with libations of clarified butter, poured terrible showers of arrows upon Vrishasena and the other assembled warriors around him.[40] The son of the Wind-god then, addressing Phālguna, said,—Behold, Nakula here is being afflicted! The son of Karna is resisting ourselves! Proceed, therefore, against Karna's son![41]—Hearing these words, the diadem-decked (Arjuna) approached the car of his brother Vrikodara. Beholding that hero arrived near, Nakula addressed him, saying,—Do thou speedily slay this one![42]—Thus addressed in that battle by his brother Nakula standing before him, the diadem-decked Arjuna, that formidable hero, precipitately caused his ape-bannered vehicle, guided by Keçava himself, to be driven towards Vrishasena.' "[43]

Section LXXXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Learning that Nakula had been deprived of his car, afflicted with arrows and mangled with the weapons of Karna's son, and had his shafts, bow, and sword cut off, these eleven formidable resisters of all foes, viz., the five heroic sons of Drupada, the grandson of Cini forming the sixth, and the five sons of Draupadi, quickly proceeded on their loud-sounding cars drawn by bounding steeds, with banners waving in the air, and guided by accomplished drivers. Those well-armed warriors began to destroy thy elephants and cars and men and steeds with shafts that resembled formidable

snakes.[1-2] Then Hridikā's son and Kripa and Drona's son and Duryodhana and Cakuni's son and Vrika and Krātha and Devāvridha,—these foremost of Kaurava car-warriors,—speedily proceeded against them, armed with their bows and mounted upon their cars of rattle deep as the roar of elephants or the clouds.[3] These Kaurava warriors, assailing those foremost of men and first of car-warriors, viz., those eleven heroes (of the Pāndava army), O king, with the mightiest of shafts, checked their progress. At this, the Kulindas, riding upon their elephants of impetuous speed that looked like mountain summits and that were of the hue of newly-risen clouds, advanced against those Kaurava heroes.[4] Well-equipt, and covered with gold, those infuriate elephants, born in Himālayan regions and ridden by accomplished warriors longing for battle, looked resplendent like clouds in the welkin, charged with lightning.[5] The prince of the Kulindas then vigorously assailed Kripa and his driver and steeds, with ten shafts made wholly of iron. Struck (in return) with the shafts of Caradwat's son, the prince fell down with his elephant on the ground.[6] The younger brother of that prince then, assailing Kripa's car with a number of lances made wholly of iron and all bright as the rays of the Sun, uttered loud roars. The ruler of the Gāndhāras, however, cut off the head of that warrior while still uttering those roars.[7] Upon the fall of those Kulindas, those mighty car-warriors of thy army, filled with joy, blew their sea-born conchs, and, armed with bows, rushed against their enemies.[8] The battle then that once more took place between the Kurus on the one side and the Pāndus and the Srinjayas on the other, with arrows and scimitars and darts and swords and maces and battle-axes, became fierce and awful and exceedingly destructive of men and steeds and elephants.[9] Car-warriors and steeds and elephants and foot, striking one another, fell down on the ground, making the field of battle look like the welkin when congregated mases of clouds charged with lightning and producing incessant peals of thunder are assailed by fierce winds from all sides.[10] Then the chief of the Bhojas struck the huge elephants, the car-warriors, the innumerable foot, and the horse under Catānika. Struck with Kritavarman's

shafts, these soon fell down on the ground.[11] About this time, struck with Açwatthāman's shafts, three huge elephants equipt with all kinds of weapons, ridden by accomplished warriors, and adorned with lofty standards, fell down lifeless on the ground like gigantic cliffs riven by thunder.[12] Then the third brother of the Kulinda chief assailed thy son Duryodhana with some excellent shafts in the centre of the chest. Thy son, however, pierced him as also his elephant with many whetted shafts.[13] That prince of elephants then, with the prince on his back, fell down, with streams of blood issuing from every part of his body, like a mountain of red chalk in the season of rains, with red streams running adown its breast, tumbling down when riven by the thunder of Cachi's lord.[14] The Kulinda prince, however, having saved himself in time, rode another elephant. Urged by the prince, that animal assailed Krātha with his driver and steeds and car. Pierced, however, with Krātha's shafts, that elephant, with its rider, fell down like a thunder-riven hill.[15] The ruler of the Krāthas, that invincible car-warrior, however, struck with shafts by the prince born on the mountains from the back of another elephant, fell down with his steeds, driver, bow, and standard, like a mighty tree uprooted by the tempest.[16] Then Vrika deeply pierced with a dozen shafts that prince having his abode on the Himavat as he stood on his elephant. The huge beast quickly crushed with his four legs (the Kaurava warrior) Vrika with his steeds and car.[17] That prince of elephants then, with its rider, deeply pierced by the son of Vabhru, advanced impetuously against the latter. Vabhru's son, however, that prince of the Magadhas, afflicted with arrows by Sahadeva's son, fell down.[18] The prince of the Kulindas then, with that elephant of his which was capable of slaying the foremost of warriors with its tusks and body, rushed impetuously towards Cakuni for slaying him. The mountaineer succeeded in afflicting Cakuni greatly. Soon, however, the chief of the Gāndhāras cut off his head.[19] About this time huge elephants and steeds and car-warriors and large bands of foot, struck by Catānika, fell down on the Earth, paralysed and crushed, like snakes beat by the tempest caused

by Garuda's wings.[20] Then a Kulinda warrior (on the Kaurava side), smiling the while, pierced Catānika the son of Nakula with many whetted arrows. Nakula's son, however, with a razor-headed arrow, cut off from his antagonist's trunk his head resembling a lotus.[21] Then Karna's son pierced Catānika with three arrows made wholly of iron and Arjuna also with as many. And he pierced Bhima with three arrows and Nakula with seven, and Janārddana with a dozen.[22] Beholding that feat of Vrishasena, that achiever of superhuman feats, the Kauravas became filled with joy and applauded him greatly. They, however, that were conversant with Dhananjaya's prowess, regarded Vrishasena as a libation already poured on the fire.[23] The diadem-decked Arjuna then, that slayer of hostile heroes, seeing Mādri's son Nakula, that foremost of men, deprived of his steeds in the midst of all, and beholding Janārddana mangled with arrows, rushed in that battle against Vrishasena who was then staying in front of the Suta's son (Karna).[24] Like Namuchi rushing against Indra, Karna's son, that great car-warrior, also rushed, in that battle, against that fierce and foremost of men, viz., Arjuna, that warrior possessing thousands of arrows, as the latter advanced towards him.[25] Unsupported by any one, the high-souled son of Karna, quickly piercing Pārtha with a shaft in that battle, uttered a loud shout, like Namuchi in days of old after having pierced Indra.[26] Once more Vrishasena pierced Pārtha in the left arm-pit with many formidable shafts. Piercing Krishna next with nine arrows, he struck Pārtha again with ten shafts.[27] The white-steeded Arjuna, having before been pierced by Vrishasena with those formidable arrows, became slightly enraged and set his heart on the slaughter of Karna's son.[28] The high-souled and diadem-decked Arjuna then, his brow furrowed from wrath with three lines, quickly sped from the van of battle a number of shafts for the destruction of Vrishasena in that encounter.[29] With eyes red in wrath, that hero capable of slaying Yama himself if the latter fought with him, then laughed terribly and said unto Karna and all the other Kaurava heroes headed by Duryodhana and Drona's son, these words:—Today, O Karna, in thy very sight in this battle, I will despatch the

fierce Vrishasena unto Yama's abode with my keen arrows! People say that all of you, united together, slew my son, endued with great activity, in my absence, and while he was alone and unsupported on his car! I, however, will slay thy son in the very sight of ye all! Let all the Kaurava car-warriors protect him! I will slay the fierce Vrishasena! After that, I will slay thee, O fool, even I, viz., Arjuna, in the midst of battle! Today I will, in battle, slay thee that art the root of this quarrel and that hast become so proud inconsequence of Duryodhana's patronage! Putting forth my strength, I will certainly slay thee in this battle, and Bhimasena will slay this Duryodhana, this wretch among men, through whose evil policy this quarrel born of dice hath arisen![30-34]—Having said these words, Arjuna rubbed the string of his bow and took aim at Vrishasena in that battle, and sped, O king, a number of shafts for the slaughter of Karna's son.[35] The diadem-decked Arjuna then, fearlessly and with great force, pierced Vrishasena with ten shafts in all his vital limbs. With four fierce razor-headed arrows he cut off Vrishasena's bow and two arms and head.[36] Struck with Pārtha's shafts, the son of Karna, deprived of arms and head, fell down on the Earth from his car, like a gigantic *Çāla* adorned with flowers falling down from a mountain summit.[37] Beholding his son thus struck with arrows and fall down from his vehicle, the Suta's son Karna, endued with great activity and scorched with grief on account of the death of his son, quickly proceeded on his car, inspired with wrath, against the car of the diadem-decked Pārtha.[38] Indeed, beholding his son slain in his sight by the white-steeded Arjuna in battle, the high-souled Karna, filled with great wrath, rushed against Krishna and Arjuna.' "*[39]

---

* In numbering the verses of this section, I have followed neither the Bengal nor the Bombay edition, although in the Bombay edition there are in all 39 verses in this section as shown above. Almost all the Bengal texts, so far as this section is concerned, appear to be faulty —T.

SECTION LXXXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the gigantic and roaring Karna, incapable of being resisted by the very gods, advancing like the surging sea, that bull among men, viz., he of Daçārha's race, addressed Arjuna, saying,'—That car-warrior having white steeds and owning Calya for his driver cometh hither with whom thou art to contend in battle! Therefore, O Dhananjaya, summon all thy coolness![2] Behold then, O son of Pāndu, the well-equipt car of Karna! White steeds are yoked unto it and Rādhā's son himself is the warrior that stands upon it![3] Teeming with banners and decked with rows of bells, it looks like a celestial car borne along the welkin by steeds white in hue.[4] Behold also the standard of the high-souled Karna, bearing the device of the elephant's rope, and looking like the bow of Indra himself that devides the firmament by a clear line.[5] Behold Karna as he advanceth from desire of doing what is agreeable to Dhritarāshtra's son, shooting showers of shafts like the clouds pouring torrents of rain![6] There the royal chief of the Madras, stationed on the fore-part of the car, guideth the steeds of Rādhā's son of immeasurable energy![7] Hear the peal of their drums and the fierce blare of their conchs! Hear, O son of Pāndu, the diverse leonine roars coming from every side![8] Hear the terrible twang, silencing all other loud sounds, of the bow *(Vijaya)* stretched by Karna of immeasurable energy![9] There, the mighty car-warriors among the Pānchālas, with their followers, are breaking like a herd of deer in the great forest at the sight of an angry lion![10] It behoveth thee, O son of Kunti, to slay the Suta's son with every care! No other person save thee can venture to bear the shafts of Karna![11] It is well known to me that thou art competent to vanquish in battle the three worlds with all their mobile and immobile creatures including the very gods and the *Gandharvas*![12] What need be said about battling with that puissant one, when people are incapable of even gazing at him, viz., the fierce and terrible Içāna, that great god, the three-eyed *Çarva*, otherwise called *Kapardin*?[13] Thou, however, hadst, by battle, gratified that god of gods

himself, that Civa who is the source of bliss unto all creatures, that deity called *Sthānu !* The other deities also have all given thee boons![14] Through the grace, O Pārtha, of that god of gods, that deity armed with trident, slay Karna, O mighty-armed one, like Indra slaying the *Asura* Namuchi! Let prosperity be ever to thee, O Pārtha, and do thou obtain victory in battle!'[15]—

" 'Arjuna said,—My victory, O Krishna, is certain! There is no doubt in this, since thou, O slayer of Madhu, that art the master of all the worlds, art gratified with me![16] Urge the steeds, O Hrishikeça, and my car, O great car-warrior! Today Phālguna will not return from battle without slaying Karna![17] Behold Karna slain today and cut into pieces with my shafts! Or, O Govinda, thou wilt today behold me slain with (Karna's) arrows![18] That terrible battle, capable of stupifying the three worlds, is at hand! As long as the Earth will last, people will speak of it![19]—Saying these words unto Krishna who is never tired with exertion, Pārtha quickly proceeded on his car against Karna like an elephant against a rival elephant.[20] Once more Pārtha of great energy said unto Krishna, that chastiser of foes, these words, viz.,—Urge the steeds, O Hrishikeca, for time passeth!—Thus addressed by the high-souled son of Pāndu,[21] Keçava wished him victory and urged those steeds fleet as thought. Then that car of Pāndu's son, possessed of great speed, soon reached the front of Karna's car.' "[22]

Section LXXXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Vrishasena slain, Karna, filled with grief and rage, shed tears from his eyes for the death of his son.[1] Endued with great energy, with eyes red as copper from rage, Karna proceeded in the face of his foe, having summoned Dhananjaya to battle.[2] Then those two cars, both possessed of solar effulgence and covered with tiger-skins, when they came together, looked like two Suns close to each other.[3] Both having white steeds and both crushers of foes, those two great bowmen, those two warriors possessed of

solar effulgence, looked resplendent like the Sun and the Moon in the firmament.[4] Beholding those two warriors that resembled Indra and Virochana's son (Vali) carefully preparing for battle for the conquest of the three worlds, all creatures were filled with wonder.[5] Seeing those two warriors rushing towards each other with the clatter of car-wheels, the twang of bows, the sound of palms, the whizz of arrows, and leonine shouts, and seeing also their standards, viz., that of Karna bearing the elephant's rope and that of Pārtha bearing the ape, approach each other, all the lords of Earth became filled with wonder.[6-7] Seeing those two car-warriors engaged with each other, O Bhārata, all the kings uttered leonine shouts and cheered them repeatedly with applause.[8] Beholding that single combat between Pārtha and Karna, thousands of combatants there slapped their arm-pits and waved their garments on the air.[9] The Kauravas beat their musical instruments and blew their numerous conchs for gladdening Karna.[10] Similarly, all the Pāndavas, for gladdening Dhananjaya, caused every point of the compass to resound with the blasts of their trumpets and conchs.[11] With those leonine shouts and the slaps on armpits and other loud cries and roars of brave warriors, tremendous became the noise there on the occasion of that encounter between Karna and Arjuna.[12] People beheld those two tigers among men, those two foremost of car-warriors, stationed on their cars, each armed with his formidable bow, each equipt with arrows and darts, and each owning a lofty standard.[13] Both were clad in mail, both had scimitars tied to their belts, both had white steeds, and both were adorned with excellent conchs. One had Krishna for driver on his car, and the other had Calya. Both of them were great car-warriors and both looked alike.[14] Both possessed of leonine necks and long arms, the eyes of both were red, and both were adorned with garlands of gold. Both were armed with bows that seemed to flash like lightning, and both were adorned with wealth of weapons.[15] Both had yak-tails for being fanned therewith, and both were decked with white umbrellas held over them. Both had excellent quivers and both looked exceedingly handsome.[16] The limbs of both were smeared with red sandal-paste

and both looked like infuriate bulls. Both were broad-necked like the lion, both were broad-chested, and both endued with great strength.[17] Challenging each other, O king, each desired to slay the other. And they rushed against each other like two mighty bulls in a cowpen.[18] They were like a couple of infuriate elephants or of angry mountains or of infant snakes of virulent poison or of all destroying Yamas.[19] Enraged with each other like Indra and Vritra, they looked like the Sun and the Moon in splendour. Filled with wrath, they resembled two mighty planets risen for the destruction of the world at the end of the *Yuga*.[20] Both of them born of celestial fathers, and both resembling gods in beauty, they were of godlike energy. Indeed, they looked like the Sun and the Moon come of their own accord on the field of battle.[21] Both of them endued with great might, both filled with pride in battle, they were armed with diverse weapons. Beholding those two tigers among men, those two heroes endued with the impetuosity of tigers, thy troops, O monarch, were filled with great joy.[22] Seeing those two tigers among men, viz., Karna and Dhananjaya, engaged in battle, a doubt entered the hearts of all as to which of them would be victorious.[23] Both armed with superior weapons, and both well-practised in battle, both made the welkin resound with the slaps on their arm-pits.[24] Both possessed of great celebrity in consequence of prowess and might, they resembled the *Asura* Camvara and the chief of the celestials in respect of their skill in battle.[25] Both equal to Kārtaviryya or Daçaratha's son in battle, both resembled Vishnu himself in energy or Bhava himself in fight.[26] Both had white steeds, O king, and both were borne on foremost of cars. Both of them, again, had foremost of drivers in that great battle.[27] Beholding, O monarch, those two great car-warriors looking resplendent on their cars, the bands of *Siddhas* and *Chāranas* that came there became filled with wonder.[28] The Dhārtarāshtras then, O bull of Bharata's race, with their troops, encompassed the high-souled Karna, that ornament of battle, without losing any time.[29] Similarly the Pāndavas headed by Dhrishtadyumna, filled with joy, encompassed the high-souled Pārtha who was unrivalled in battle.[30]

Karna became the stake, O monarch, of thy army in that battle, while Pārtha became the stake of the Pāndavas.[31] The soldiers of both sides were as members of that assembly and became the spectators of that game. Indeed, as regards the parties engaged in the game of battle, either victory or defeat was certain.[32] Those two then, viz., Karna and Arjuna, for victory or the reverse, began the match between ourselves and the Pāndavas both standing on the field of battle.[33] Skilled in fight, the two heroes, O monarch, in that encounter, became highly enraged with each other and wished to slay each other.[34] Desiring to take each other's life, like Indra and Vritra, O lord, they faced each other like two mighty comets of terrible form.[35] Then in the sky, differences and disputes, accompanied with revilings, arose among the creatures there, O bull of Bharata's race, on the subject of Karna and Arjuna. All the inhabitants of the world, O sire, were heard to differ amongst themselves.[36] The gods, the *Dānavas*, the *Gandharvas*, the *Piçāchas*, the Snakes, the *Rākshasas*, adopted opposite sides in that encounter between Karna and Arjuna.[37] The welkin, O monarch, with all the stars, became anxious on Karna's account, while the wide Earth became so on Pārtha's account, like the mother for her son.[38] The rivers, the seas, the mountains, O best of men, the trees, the deciduous plants and herbs, took the side of the diadem-decked Arjuna.[39] The *Asuras*, the *Yātudhānas*, the *Guhyakas*, O scorcher of foes, and ravens and other rangers of the sky, sided Karna.[40] All the gems and precious jewels, the four *Vedas* with the histories as the fifth, the *Upavedas*, the *Upanishads*, with all their mysteries, and the compilations,[41] and Vāsuki, and Chitrasena, and Takshaka, and Upatakshaka, and all the mountains, and all the offspring of Kadru with their children, all the great snakes endued with poison, and the *Nāgas*, took the side of Arjuna.[42] *Airāvata* and his children, the offspring of Surabhi, the offspring of Vaiçāli, and the *Bhogins*,—these sided Arjuna. The smaller snakes all sided Karna.[43] Wolves and wild stags and all kinds of auspicious animals and birds were, O king, for victory to Pārtha.[44] The *Vasus*, the *Maruts*, the *Sāddhyas*, the *Rudras*, the *Viçwe-*

devas, and the *Açwins*, and Agni and Indra and Soma and Pavana, and the ten points of the compass, became the partisans of Dhananjaya, while all the *Ādityas* sided Karna.[45] The Vaiçyas, the Cudras, the Sutas, and those castes that were of a mixed origin, all, O king, adopted the side of Rādhā's son.[46] The celestials, however, with the *Pitris*, and with all that were numbered with them as also with their followers, and Yama and Vaiçravana and Varuna were on the side of Arjuna. The Brāhmanas, the Kshatriyas, the sacrifices, and those gifts called *Dakshinās*, were for Arjuna.[47] The *Pretas*, the *Piçāchas*, many carnivorous animals and birds, the *Rākshasas* with all the monsters of the sea, the dogs, and the jackals were for Karna.[48] The diverse tribes of celestial and regenerate and royal *Rishis* were for the son of Pāndu. The *Gandharvas* headed by Tumvuru, O king, were on the side of Arjuna.[49] With the offspring of *Pradhā* and *Mauni*, the several classes of *Gandharvas* and *Apsaras*, and many wise sages, having for their vehicles wolves and stags and elephants and steeds and cars and foot and clouds and the wind, came there for witnessing the encounter between Karna and Arjuna.[50-51] The gods, the *Dānavas*, the *Gandharvas*, the *Nāgas*, the *Yakshas*, the birds, the great *Rishis* versed in the *Vedas*, the *Pitris* that subsist upon the gifts called *Swadhā*,[52] and asceticism and the sciences, and the (celestial) herbs with diverse virtues, came, O monarch, and took up their stations in the welkin, making a great noise.[53] Brahman, with the regenerate *Rishis* and the Lords of creatures, and Bhava himself on his car, came to that part of the welkin.[54] Beholding those two high-souled ones, viz., Karna and Dhananjaya, about to encounter each other, Cakra himself said,—Let Arjuna vanquish Karna!—Surya, however, said,—Let Karna vanquish Arjuna![55] Indeed, let my son Karna, slaying Arjuna, gain the victory in this battle!—Let my son, slaying Karna, win the victory![56]—Even thus did Surya and Vāsava those two foremost of personages, who were there and had adopted opposite sides, disputed with each other.[57] Beholding those two high-souled ones, viz., Karna and Dhananjaya, about to engage in battle, the gods and the *Asuras* adopted opposite sides.[58] The three worlds

with the celestial *Rishis* and all the gods and all other creatures, trembled at the sight.[59] The gods were on the side of Pārtha, while the *Asuras* were on that of Karna. Thus all creatures were interested in that encounter, siding this or that leader of car-warriors, *i. e*, the Kuru or the Pāndava hero.[60] Beholding the Self-born Lord of Creation (viz., Brahman), the gods urged him, saying,—Let, O god, the success of these two lions among men be equal![61] Let not the vast universe be destroyed in consequence of this encounter between Karna and Arjuna! O Self-born one, say but the word, let the success of these two be equal![62]—Hearing these words, Maghavat, bowing down unto the Grandsire, represented this unto that god of gods, that foremost one of all intelligent beings, saying,[63]—Formerly it was said by thy holy self that the two Krishnas are always sure to win victory! Let it be (now) as thou hadst then said! Be gratified with me, O holy one![64] At this, Brahman and Içāna replied unto the chief of the celestials, saying,—The victory of the high-souled Vijaya is certain,[65] *i. e.*, of that Savyasāchin who gratified the eater of sacrificial libations in the forest of Khāndava and who, coming to heaven, rendered assistance to thee, O Cakra![66] Karna is on the side of the *Dānavas*. It is proper, therefore, that he should meet with defeat! By this, without doubt, the purposes of the gods will be achieved![67] One's own business, O chief of the celestials, should always be important! The high-souled Phālguna, again, is devoted to truth and to morality! He must always be victorious, without doubt.[68] He by whom the high-souled and holy god having the bull on his standard was gratified, why should not he, O thou of a hundred eyes, be victorious,[69] he, that is, who hath for the driver of his car that Lord of the universe, viz., Vishnu himself? Possessed of great energy of mind and great strength, Pārtha is a hero, accomplished in arms and endued with ascetic merit.[70] Possessed also of great energy of body, he beareth the entire science of weapons. Indeed, Pārtha hath every accomplishment. He ought to be victorious, since that would accomplish the purposes of the gods.[71] In consequence of his greatness, Pārtha transgresses destiny itself, whether favorable or un-

favorable; and when he does so, a great destruction of creatures takes place.[72] When the two Krishnas are excited with wrath, they show regard for nothing. These two bulls among beings are the Creators of all real and unreal things.[73] These two are Nara and Nārāyana, the two ancient and best of *Rishis.* There is none to rule over them. They are rulers over all! Perfectly fearless, they are scorchers of all foes![74] In heaven or among human beings, there is none equal to either of them. The three worlds with the celestial *Rishis* and the *Chāranas* are behind these two.[75]* All the gods and all creatures walk behind them. The entire universe exists in consequence of the power of these two.[76] Let Karna, that bull among men, obtain these foremost regions of bliss here! Let him obtain identity with the *Vasus* or the *Maruts!*[77] Let him, with Drona and Bhishma, be worshipped in heaven, for Vikartana's son is brave and is a hero. Let the victory, however, belong to the two Krishnas![78]—After those two foremost ones among the gods (viz., Brahman and Içāna), had said so, the deity of a thousand eyes, worshipping those words of Brahman and Içāna and saluting all creatures, himself said,[79]—Ye have heard what has been said by the two gods for the benefit of the universe! It will be even so and not otherwise. Stay ye then, with cheerful hearts![80] Hearing these words of Indra, all creatures, O sire, became filled with wonder and applauded, O king, that deity.[81] The celestials then showered diverse kinds of fragrant flowers and blew their trumpets.[82] Indeed, the gods, the *Dānavas,* and the *Gandharvas* all waited there for witnessing that matchless single combat between those two lions among men.[83] The two cars, O king, upon which Karna and Arjuna were stationed, had white steeds yoked unto them both. And both had excellent standards, and both produced a loud rattle.[84] Many foremost of heroes, approaching the brave Vāsudeva and Arjuna as also Calya and Karna, began each to blow his conch.[85] The battle then commenced (between the two warriors), inspiring all timid persons with fear. Fiercely they challenged each other, like

* Literally, "walk behind these two."—T.

Cakra and Camvara.[86] The standards of the two heroes, perfectly bright, looked exceedingly beautiful on their cars, like the planets *Rāhu* and *Ketu* risen in the firmament at the time of the universal dissolution.[87] The elephant's rope on Karna's banner, looking like a snake of virulent poison and made of jewels and gems and exceedingly strong and resembling the bow of Indra, looked resplendent (as it waved in the air).[88] That foremost of apes, again, belonging to Pārtha, with jaws wide open and terrible, and difficult of being gazed at like the Sun himself, inspired fear by his formidable teeth.[89] The impetuous Ape on the standard of the wielder of *Gāndiva*, becoming desirous of battle, rushed from his station and fell upon Karna's standard.[90] Endued with great impetuosity, the Ape, darting forward, struck the elephant's rope with his nails and teeth, like Garuda falling upon a snake.[91] Decked with rows of little bells, hard as iron, and resembling the fatal noose (in the hands of Yama or Varuna), the elephant's rope, filled with wrath, closed with the Ape.[92] Thus in that fierce single combat between those two heroes, which was the result of what had been settled at the time of the match at dice, their standards first battled with each other. Meanwhile the steeds of the one neighed at the steeds of the other.[93] The lotuseyed Keçava pierced Calya with his keen glances. The latter also cast similar glances at the former.[94] Vāsudeva, however, vanquished Calya with those glances of his, while Dhananjaya the son of Kunti vanquished Karna with his glances.[95] Then the Suta's son, smilingly addressing Calya, said,—If Pārtha by any means slays me in battle today,[96] tell me truly, O friend, what thou wilt do after that!—Calya answered, saying,—If thou art slain, I myself will slay both Krishna and Dhananjaya![97]—Once more the ruler of the Madras said,—If, O Karna, the white-steeded Arjuna slays thee in battle today, I myself, on a single car, will slay both Mādhava and Phālguna![98]—

"Sanjaya continued,—'Arjuna also asked Govinda a similar question. Krishna, however, smiling, said unto Pārtha these words of grave import:[99]—The Sun himself may fall down from his place, the Earth herself may split into a thousand fragments; fire itself may become cold. Still Karna will not

be able to slay thee, O Dhananjaya![100] If, however, any such occurrence takes place, know then that the destruction of the universe will be at hand! As regards myself, I will, using my bare arms, slay both Karna and Calya in battle![101]—Hearing these words of Krishna, the ape-bannered Arjuna, smiling, replied unto Krishna who was never fatigued with exertion, saying,[102]—Calya and Karna, united together, are not a match for myself alone, O Janārddana! Thou shalt today, O Krishna, behold Karna with his standard and banners, with Calya and his car and steeds, with his umbrella and armour and darts and shafts and bow, cut into pieces with my shafts in battle![103-4] Thou shalt today behold him with his car and steeds and darts and armour and weapons, reduced to dust like a tree in the forest crushed by a tusker![105] Today the widowhood of the wives of Rādhā's son is at hand! Verily, they must have in their (last night's) dreams seen signs of approaching evil, O Mādhava![106] Verily, thou shalt today see the wives of Karna become widows! I cannot restrain my wrath at what was done before now by this fool of little foresight when he beheld Krishnā dragged to the assembly and when laughing at us he abused us repeatedly in vile words![107-8] Today, O Govinda, thou shalt behold Karna crushed by me like a tree with its load of flowers crushed by an infuriate elephant.[109] Today, O slayer of Madhu, thou shalt, after Karna's fall, hear those sweet words, viz.,—*By good luck, O thou of Vrishni's race, victory hath been thine!*[110]—Thou shalt today comfort the mother of Abhimanyu with a lighter heart for having paid thy debt to the foe! Today thou shalt, filled with joy, comfort thy paternal aunt Kunti![111] Today thou shalt, O Mādhava, comfort Krishnā of tearful face and king Yudhishthira the just with words sweet as nectar!'"[112]—

SECTION LXXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Meanwhile the welkin, filled with gods and *Nāgas* and *Asuras* and *Siddhas* and *Yakshas* and with large bands of *Gandharvas* and *Rākshasas* and *Apsaras*, and re-

generate *Rishis* and royal sages and birds of excellent feathers,* assumed a wonderful aspect.[1] All human beings assembled there beheld those beings of wonderful aspect staying in the sky, and the sky itself resounded with the voice of musical instruments and song and adulatory hymns and laughter and dance, and diverse other kinds of charming sounds.[2] Then the Kaurava and the Pāndava warriors, filled with joy, and causing the Earth and the ten points of the compass to resound with the voice of musical instruments, the blare of conchs, and leonine roars and the din of battle, began to slaughter each other's foes.[3] Teeming with men and steeds and elephants and cars and weapons, unbearable to combatants in consequence of the falling of maces and swords and darts and rapiers, abounding with heroes, and crowded with lifeless bodies, the field of battle, crimsoned with gore, looked exceedingly resplendent.[4] Indeed, the battle between the Kurus and the Pāndavas then resembled that in days of yore between the gods and the *Asuras*. After that fierce and awful battle had commenced between Dhananjaya and Adhiratha's son, each of those two heroes, clad in excellent mail, shrouded the ten points of the compass and the host opposed to him with keen and straight arrows. A darkness having been caused there with the arrows shot on that occasion, neither thy warriors nor the enemy could any longer see anything.[5-6] From fear all the warriors there sought the protection of either Karna or Arjuna like rays of light spread out in the welkin converging towards either the Sun or the Moon. The two heroes then, each baffling with his own the other's weapons like the east and the west winds encountering each other,[7] looked exceedingly resplendent like the Sun and the Moon risen after despelling the darkness caused by the clouds and covering the welkin. Each having encouraged his troops, saying,—*Do not fly away!*—the enemy and thy warriors stood their ground,[8] encircling those two mighty car-warriors like the gods and the *Asuras* standing around Vāsava and Camvara. The two armies then greeted those two best of men with the

* Garuda and his progeny.—T.

sounds of drums and other instruments and with leonine roars,[9] at which those two bulls among men looked beautiful like the Sun and the Moon greeted by roaring clouds gathered around.* Each armed with a formidable bow drawn to a complete circle and looking like a (solar or lunar) corona, those two heroes of great splendour, shooting in that battle thousands of arrows that constituted their rays,[10] resembled two unbearable Suns risen at the end of the *Yuga* for burning the entire universe with its mobile and immobile creatures. Both invincible, both capable of exterminating foes, each desirous of slaying the other, and each displaying his skill upon the other,[11] those two warriors, viz., Karna and the son of Pāndu, closed fearlessly with each other in that dreadful battle, like Indra and the *Asura* Jambha. Invoking the mightiest of weapons then, those two formidable bowmen began, with their terrible shafts,[12] to slay innumerable men and steeds and elephants as also to strike each other, O king! Afflicted once more by those two foremost of men, the troops of both the Kurus and the Pāndavas, consisting of elephants and foot and horse and car-warriors, fled away on all sides like other animals in the forest when assailed by the lion. Then Duryodhana, and the chief of the Bhojas, and Suvala's son, and Kripa, and the son of Caradwat's daughter,[13-14]—these five great car-warriors,—assailed Dhananjaya and Keçava with shafts capable of producing great pain. Dhananjaya, however, with his shafts, cut off at the same time the bows, the quivers, the steeds, the elephants, and the cars with their drivers, of those warriors, and mangling every one of them with excellent shafts, pierced the Suta's son with a dozen arrows. Then a hundred cars, a hundred elephants, and a number of Caka and Tukhāra and Yavana horsemen, accompanied by some of the foremost combatants among the Kāmvojas, quickly rushed against Arjuna from desire of slaying him. Speedily cutting off with the shafts and razor-headed arrows in his hands the excellent weapons of his foes as also their heads,[15-17] and steeds, and ele-

* The second line of 9 and the first of 10, as read in the Bengal texts, are incorrect and unmeaning. I adopt the Bombay readings.—T.

phants, and cars, Dhananjaya felled his contending enemies on the field. Then in the welkin blasts of celestial trumpets were blown by the excellent gods. These were mingled with the praises of Arjuna.[18] Blown by gentle breezes, excellent floral showers, fragrant and auspicious, fell (upon Arjuna's head). Beholding that incident, which was witnessed by gods and men, all creatures, O king, were filled with wonder.[19]* Only thy son and the Suta's son who were both of the same opinion, felt neither pain nor wonder. Then Drona's son, catching hold of Duryodhana's hand,† and adopting a soothing tone, addressed thy son, saying,[20]—Be gratified, O Duryodhana! Make peace with the Pāndavas! There is no need for quarrel. Fie on war! The preceptor, conversant with the mightiest of weapons and like unto *Brahma* itself, hath been slain! Other bulls among men, headed by Bhishma, have also been slain![21] As regards myself, I am unslayable, as also my maternal uncle. Rule the kingdom for ever, (sharing it) with the sons of Pāndu! Dissuaded by me, Dhananjaya will abstain. Janārddana also doth not desire hostilities.[22] Yudhishthira is always engaged in the good of all creatures. Vrikodara is obedient to him. So also are the twins. Peace being made between thee and the Pārthas, all creatures will be benefited through, as it would seem, thy desire![23] Let the kings that are still alive go back to their homes! Let the troops abstain from hostilities! If thou dost not listen to my words, O king, struck by foes in battle thou wilt have to burn with grief![24] Thou hast beheld, as well as the universe, what has been achieved by the single-handed Arjuna decked with diadem and garlands! The slayer of Vala himself could not achieve its like, nor the Destroyer, nor Prachetas, nor the illustrious king of the *Yakshas*![25] Dhananjaya, as regards his merits, is even

---

* In the first line of 19, for *nipetu* &c., the Bengal texts incorrectly read *na petu* &c.—T.

† As the touching of hands was not the custom then, I am inclined to think that *Kiram Karena* &c., means 'squeezing his own hands.' It is almost a stereotyped expression for signifying agony Açwatthāman was pained to see the carnage.—T.

much greater than that. He will never transgress whatever I say unto him. He will always follow thee! Be thou gratified, O king, for the benefit of the universe![26] Thou always honorest me greatly. I, too, bear a great friendship for thee! It is for this that I say so unto thee! I shall dissuade Karna also, provided thou art inclined to peace![27] Discerning persons say that there are four kinds of friends, viz., those that are naturally so, those that are made so by conciliation, those that become so through wealth, and lastly those brought under subjection by the exercise of power. All these elements are owned by thee with regard to the sons of Pāndu.[28] The Pāndavas, O hero, are naturally thy friends. Obtain them again as friends for certain by conciliation. If upon thyself being gratified they agree to become friends, do thou, O king of kings, act in that way![29]—Those beneficial words having been said unto him by his friend, Duryodhana reflected for sometime. Drawing deep breaths, he then, with a cheerless heart, said,—It is as thou, O friend, hast said! Listen, however, to the words that I would say unto thee![30] The wicked-hearted Vrikodara, having slain Dusçāsana like a tiger, spoke words that still dwell in my heart! Thou also heardst the same! How then can there be peace?[31] Arjuna again will not be able to bear Karna in battle, like a tempest whose force is weakened when encountering the mighty mountains of Meru. Nor will the sons of Prithā have the least confidence in me, thinking of the many acts of forceful hostility (done by me towards them).[32] Nor, O preceptor's son of unfading glory, doth it behove thee to say unto Karna now—*Abstain from battle!*—Phālguna is exceedingly tired today. Karna will soon slay him![33]—Having with humility said these words repeatedly unto the preceptor's son, thy son commanded his own troops, saying,—Armed with arrows, rush against and slay these foes! Why stand ye inactive?' "[34]

Section LXXXIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then when the blare of conchs and the peal of drums became very loud, those two foremost of men,

both owning white steeds, viz., the Suta's son Vaikartana and Arjuna, encountered each other in consequence, O king, of thy son's evil policy.[1] Those two heroes endued with great impetuosity, viz., Dhananjaya and Adhiratha's son, closed with each other like two infuriate Himālayan elephants, both of full-grown tusks, fighting with each other for the sake of a she-elephant in her season.[2] Like a mass of clouds encountering another mass, or a mountain encountering a mountain, those two warriors, both pouring showers of arrows, encountered each other, their bows loudly twanging the while, and the wheels of their cars producing a deafening clatter, and their bowstrings and palms emitting loud sounds.[3] Like two mountains, both endued with tall cliffs and abounding with trees and creepers and herbs and both teeming with the diverse other denizens that are natural to them, moving towards each other for an encounter, those two mighty warriors encountered each other, each striking the other with mighty weapons.[4] The combat between the two heroes became furious like that between the chief of the celestials and Virochana's son in days of yore. Incapable of being endured by others and marked by a river whose distasteful water consisted of blood, the limbs of those two heroes, as also their drivers and animals, became exceedingly mangled.[5] Like two large lakes, both teeming with lotuses of diverse kinds and fish and tortoises, and echoing with the voices of diverse kinds of fowl, and softly stirred by the wind, approaching each other, those two cars graced with standards approached each other.[6] Both endued with prowess equal to that of the great Indra, both resembling the great Indra himself, those two mighty car-warriors struck each other with shafts that resembled the great Indra's thunder, like the great Indra himself and (the *Asura*) Vritra.[7] Both the armies consisting of cars and elephants and steeds and foot, all equipt with beautiful armour and ornaments and robes and weapons, and those also that were in the welkin, were inspired with fear upon beholding that encounter of wonderful aspect between Arjuna and Karna.[8] Others among the spectators, filled with joy and uttering leonine shouts, raised their arms, waving their fingers or the pieces of cloth they held, when Arjuna

rushed against the son of Adhiratha, from desire of slaughter, like one infuriate elephant rushing against another.[9] The Somakas then loudly shouted to Pārtha, saying,—Be quick, O Arjuna, go and pierce Karna! Cut off his head without delay, and (with it) the desire of Dhritarāshtra's son for kingdom![10] —Similarly many warriors of ours that were there, said unto Karna,—Proceed, proceed, O Karna, and slay Arjuna with keen shafts! Let the sons of Prithā once more go to the woods for ever![11]—Then Karna first pierced Pārtha in that encounter, with ten mighty shafts. Arjuna pierced him in return with ten keen-pointed shafts, shot with great vigor, in the centre of the chest.[12] Indeed, the Suta's son and Arjuna then mangled each other with many shafts equipt with goodly wings. Desirous of obtaining advantage of each other's *laches* in that dreadful encounter, with cheerful hearts they rushed against each other fiercely.[13] Rubbing his two arms and the string also of *Gāndiva*, that fierce bowman, viz., Arjuna, then sped showers of cloth-yard shafts, and *Nālikas*, and arrows equipt with heads like boar's ears and razors, and *Anjalikas*, and crescent-shaped arrows.[14] Those arrows of Pārtha, O king, spread over the welkin, penetrated into Karna's car like flights of birds, with heads bent down, penetrating in the evening into a tree for roosting there in the night.[15] All those arrows, however, O king, that Arjuna, that victor over all foes, with furrowed brow and angry glances, sped at Karna,—all those successive showers of shafts shot by the son of Pāndu,—were cut off by the Suta's son with his own arrows.[16] The son of Indra then sped at Karna a fiery weapon capable of slaying all foes. Covering the Earth and the welkin and the ten points of the compass and the very course of the Sun with its effulgence, it caused his own body also to blaze up with light.[17] The robes of all the warriors took fire, at which they fled away. Loud sounds also arose there like to what is heard when a forest of bamboos in a wilderness is on fire.[18] Beholding that fiery weapon acting on all sides, the Suta's son Karna of great valor shot in that encounter the *Vāruna* weapon for quenching it. That conflagration then, in consequence of Karna's weapon, became quenched.[19] A large mass of clouds

quickly caused all the points of the compass to be enveloped with darkness. Those clouds whose extremities presented the aspect of mountains, surrounding every side, flowed the Earth with water.[20] That fierce conflagration, though it was such, was still quenched by those clouds within a trice. The entire welkin and all the directions, cardinal and subsidiary, were shrouded by clouds.[21] Thus shrouded by clouds, all the points of the compass became dark and nothing could be seen. Then Arjuna dispelled those clouds caused by Karna, by means of the *Vāyavya* weapon.[22] After this, Dhananjaya, incapable of being over-mastered by foes, inspired *Gāndiva*, its string, and his shafts, with *mantras*, and invoked into existence another weapon that was the favourite of the chief of the celestials and that resembled the thunder in energy and prowess.[23] Then razor-headed arrows, and *Anjalikas*, and crescent-shaped shafts, and *Nālikas*, and cloth-yard shafts and those equipt with heads like the boar's ear, all keen and sharp, issued from *Gāndiva* in thousands, endued with the force and impetuosity of the thunder.[24] Possessed of great might and great energy, those impetuous and keen shafts equipt with vulturine feathers, piercing all the limbs, the steeds, the bow, the yoke, the wheels, and the standard of Karna, quickly penetrated into them like snakes frighten by Garuda penetrating into the Earth. Pierced all over with arrows and bathed in blood, [the high-souled]* Karna then, with eyes rolling in wrath,[25-26] bending his bow of enduring string and producing a twang loud as the roar of the sea, invoked into existence the *Bhārgava* weapon. Cutting off Pārtha's showers of shafts proceeding from the mouth of that weapon of Indra (which Arjuna had shot), Karna,[27] having thus baffled his antagonist's weapon with his own, destroyed cars and elephants and foot-soldiers (of the Pāndava army). Unable to endure the feats of Arjuna in that fierce battle, the mighty car-warrior Karna did this, through the energy of the *Bhārgava* weapon.[28] Filled with wrath and possessed of great activity, the Suta's son, that foremost of men, laughing at the two Krishnas, pierced the foremost of

* This occurs in 27. —T.

Pānchāla warriors with well-shot arrows in that battle.[29] Then the Pānchālas and the Somakas, O king, thus afflicted by Karna with showers of shafts in that encounter, became filled with wrath and uniting together pierced the Suta's son with keen arrows from every side.[30] Quickly cutting off those arrows with his own, the Suta's son, vigorously agitating them in that battle, afflicted with many shafts the cars, the elephants, and the steeds of the Pānchālas.[31] Their bodies pierced with those shafts of Karna, they fell down, deprived of life, on the Earth, making loud sounds, like mighty elephants slain by an angry lion of terrible strength.[32] Having slain those foremost of warriors, those heroes endued with great strength, those leaders of the Pānchāla forces who had always challenged him (to battle), Karna, O king, as he shot his arrows, looked beautiful like a mass of clouds pouring torrents of rain.[33] Then thy warriors, thinking that Karna had won the victory, clapped loudly and uttered leonine roars. O chief of the Kurus, all of them then regarded the two Krishnas as brought by Karna under his power,[34] seeing that valor, incapable of being borne by foes, of the mighty car-warrior Karna. Beholding that weapon of Dhananjaya frustrated by Karna in the midst of battle,[35] the angry son of the Wind-god, with eyes blazing with wrath, began to squeeze his hands. Indeed, the wrathful Bhima, his anger being provoked, drew deep breaths and addressing Arjuna of true aim, said,[36]—How, O Jishnu, could this wretch fallen off from virtue, this Suta's son, putting forth his might in battle, slay so many foremost of Pānchāla warriors, in thy sight?[37] Before now thou couldst not be conquered by the very gods or the *Kālakeyas*. Thou receivedst the touch of the arms of Sthānu himself! How, then, O diadem-decked Arjuna, could the Suta's son pierce thee first with ten long shafts such as are used by car-warriors?[38] That the Suta's son should today have succeeded in baffling the arrows shot by thee, seems to me to be very amazing! Recollect the woes of Krishnā, and those disagreeable, keen, and cutting words that this wicked-souled and fearless son of a Suta used towards us, viz., *Sesame seeds without kernel!*—Recollecting all this, O Savyasāchin, quickly

slay the wretched Karna in battle today![39-40] Why, O diadem-decked Arjuna, dost thou show such indifference (towards this act)? This is not the time for showing thy indifference to Karna's slaughter! That patience with which thou hadst vanquished all creatures and fed Agni at Khāndava,[41] with that patience, slay thou the Suta's son! I also will crush him with my mace!—Then Vāsudeva, beholding Pārtha's shafts baffled by Karna, said unto the former,[42]—What is this, O diadem-decked Arjuna, that Karna should succeed in crushing thy weapons today with his? Why dost thou, O hero, lose thy wits? Markest thou not that the Kauravas, [standing behind Karna], are even now shouting in joy?[43] Indeed, all of them know that thy weapons are being baffled by Karna with his! That patience with which, *Yuga* after *Yuga*, thou hast slain persons having the quality of darkness for their weapon, as also terrible *Kshatriyas*, and *Asuras* born of pride, in many a battle,—with that patience do thou slay Karna today! Putting forth thy might, strike off the head of that foe of thine with this *Sudarçana*, of edge keen as a razor, that I give unto thee, like Cakra striking off the head of his foe Namuchi, with the thunderbolt! That patience with which thou hadst gratified the illustrious deity Mahādeva in the guise of a hunter,[44-46] summoning that that patience once again, O hero, slay the Suta's son with all his followers! After that, bestow upon king Yudhishthira the Earth with her belt of seas, her towns and villages, and wealth, and from off whose surface all foes will have been removed! By that act, O Pārtha, do thou also win unrivalled fame!—Thus addressed (by Krishna), the high-souled Pārtha of exceeding might set his heart upon the slaughter of the Suta's son.[47-48] Indeed, urged by Bhima and Janārddana, and recollecting (his woes), and taking an internal survey of himself, and calling to mind the object for which he had come to this world, he addressed Keçava, saying,[49]—I will now invoke into existence a mighty and fierce weapon for the good of the world and the destruction of the Suta's son! Let me have thy permission, as also Brahman's and Bhava's, and of all those that are conversant with *Brahma*![50]—Having said these words unto

the holy Keçava, Savyasāchin of immeasurable soul bowed unto Brahman and invoked into existence that excellent and irresistible weapon called *Brāhma* which could be applied by the mind alone.[51] Baffling that weapon, however, Karna looked beautiful as he continued, like a cloud pouring torrents of rain, to shoot his shafts. Beholding that weapon of the diadem-decked Arjuna baffled in the midst of battle by Karna,[52] the wrathful and mighty Bhima, blazing up with rage, addressed Arjuna of sure aim and said,—People say that thou art a master of the high *Brāhma* weapon, that mighty means (for achieving the destruction of foes)![53] Do thou then, O Savyasāchin, use another weapon of the same kind!—Thus addressed by his brother, Savyasāchin used a second weapon of the kind. With that, Pārtha of abundant energy shrouded all the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary,[54] with arrows sped from *Gāndiva* that resembled fierce snakes and were like the blazing rays of the Sun. Created by that bull of Bharata's race, those arrows of golden wings, in hundreds upon hundreds,[55] endued with the effulgence of the *Yuga* fire or the Sun, in a moment shrouded the car of Karna. Thence also issued long darts and battle-axes and disci and cloth-yard shafts in hundreds, all of awful forms, at which hostile warriors all around began to be deprived of life. The head of some hostile warrior, severed from his trunk, fell down on the field of battle.[56-57] Another, beholding his fallen comrade, fell down dead on the Earth, through fear. The (right) arm of a third, large and massive as the trunk of an elephant, cut off (by Pārtha), fell down with the sword in grasp.[58] The left arm of a fourth, cut off with a razor-headed arrow, fell down with the shield in it. Even thus, Pārtha, decked with diadem and garlands, wounded and slew all the foremost warriors[59] of Duryodhana's army with his terrible and death-dealing shafts. Vaikartana also, in the midst of that battle, shot thousands of arrows.[60] These, with a loud whizz, fell upon the son of Pāndu like torrents of rain poured from the clouds. Then piercing Bhimasena and Janārddana and the diadem-decked Arjuna of superhuman feats, each with three arrows, Karna of terrible might uttered a loud and awful roar. Struck with

Karna's shafts, the diadem-decked Arjuna, beholding Bhima and Janārddana,[61-62] became unable to endure (the feats of his antagonist). Once more, therefore, Pārtha shot eight and ten arrows. Piercing the beautiful standard of Karna with one of those arrows, he pierced Calya with four and Karna himself with three.[63] With ten other well-shot shafts he then struck the Kaurava warrior Sabhāpati clad in golden mail. Thereupon that prince, deprived of head and arms and steeds and driver and bow and standard,[64] fell down, wounded and dead, from his foremost of cars, like a *Çāla* tree cut down with an axe. Once more piercing Karna with three, eight, twelve, four, and ten arrows,[65] Pārtha slew four hundred elephants equipt with many weapons, and eight hundred car-warriors, and one thousand steeds with riders, and eight thousand brave foot-soldiers.[66] And soon Pārtha made Karna with his driver and car and steeds and standard invisible with straightly coursing shafts. Then the Kauravas, thus slaughtered by Dhananjaya, loudly addressed Adhiratha's son, saying,[67]—Shoot thy arrows and slay the son of Pāndu! Already, he has begun to exterminate the Kurus with his shafts!* Thus urged, Karna, with his best endeavours, incessantly shot many arrows.[68] Capable of cutting the very vitals, those blood-drinking shafts, well sped by Karna, slew large numbers of the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas. Thus those two foremost of all bowmen, those two warriors of great strength that were capable of bearing all foes,[69] those two heroes acquainted with weapons, struck the warriors opposed to them as also each other, with many mighty weapons. Then Yudhishthira clad in golden mail, his arrows having been extracted and himself made sound with *mantras* and drugs by foremost of surgeons well disposed towards him, quickly came to that spot for witnessing (the encounter between Arjuna and Karna). Beholding king Yudhishthira the just arrived there like the resplendent full Moon freed from the jaws of Rāhu and risen in the firmament, all creatures became filled with delight. Beholding those two foremost of warriors, those two first of heroes and slayers of

---

* Read with a slight variation in the Bomay text.—T.

foes, viz., Karna and Pārtha, engaged in fight, the spectators, both celestial and terrestrial, restraining the animals they rode or that were yoked unto their vehicles, stood motionless. As the two heroes, O king, struck each other with many foremost of arrows, O king, the sounds caused by the bows, bowstrings, and palms, of both Dhananjaya and Adhiratha's son, became tremendous and their well sped arrows also caused a deafening whizz. Then the bowstring of the son of Pāndu, stretched with force, broke with a loud noise.[70-74] During the interval thus offered, the Suta's son pierced Pārtha with a hundred small arrows, keen and steeped in oil, winged with the feathers of birds, and resembling snakes freed from their sloughs.[75] He then quickly pierced Vāsudeva with sixty shafts, and then Phālguna again with eight. Surya's son then pierced Bhima with thousands upon thousands of mighty arrows.[76] Having pierced Krishna and Pārtha's standard, Karna felled many amongst the Somakas that followed Pārtha. These, however, in return, shrouded Karna with showers of straight shafts like masses of clouds shrouding the Sun in the welkin.[77] Accomplished in the use of weapons, the Suta's son, stupifying those advancing warriors with his shafts and baffling all the weapons shot by them, destroyed theirs cars and steeds and elephants.[78] And the Suta's son, O king, also afflicted with his arrows many foremost warriors among them. Their bodies pierced with Karna's shafts, they fell down on the ground, deprived of life and making a loud noise as they fell.[79] Indeed, those mighty combatants, afflicted by Karna of terrible strength, perished like a pack of dogs afflicted by an angry lion. And once more many foremost of combatants among the Pānchālas and many such (among the Kauravas) fell down after this, slain by Karna and Dhananjaya.[80] Deprived of life by the mighty Karna with well-armed arrows shot with great force, many fell down, purging the contents of their stomachs. Then thy troops, regarding the victory to be already theirs, clapped furiously and uttered loud leonine roars.[81] Indeed, in that dreadful encounter, all of them regarded the two Krishnas to have been brought by Karna under his power. Then quickly bending his bowstring and baffling all those shafts of Adhi-

ratha's son,[82] Pārtha, filled with rage in consequence of his limbs having been mangled with Karna's arrows, assailed the Kauravas. Rubbing his bowstring, he clapped his palms and suddenly caused a darkness there with the showers of shafts he shot.[83] The diadem-decked Arjuna pierced Karna and Calya and all the Kurus with those arrows. The welkin having been darkened by means of that mighty weapon, the very birds were unable to range in their element, a delicious wind then blew, bearing fragrant odors. Laughing the while, Pārtha forcibly struck Calya's armour with ten arrows.[84] Piercing Karna next with a dozen shafts, he struck him once more with seven. Deeply struck with those winged arrows of fierce energy shot with great force from Pārtha's bow,[85] Karna, with mangled limbs and body bathed in blood, looked resplendent like Rudra at the universal destruction, sporting in the midst of a crematorium at noon or eve, his body dyed with blood.*[86] The son of Adhiratha then pierced Dhananjaya who resembled the chief of the celestials himself (in energy and might) with three arrows, and he caused five other blazing arrows resembling five snakes to penetrate the body of Krishna.[87] Shot with great force, those arrows, decked with gold, pierced through the armour of that foremost of beings and passing out of his body fell upon the Earth. Endued with great energy, they entered the Earth with great force and having bathed (in the waters of the Bhogavati in the nether region) coursed back towards Karna.[88] Those shafts were five mighty snakes that had adopted the side of Takshaka's son (Açwasena whose mother Pārtha had slain at Khāndava). With ten broad-headed arrows shot with great force, Arjuna cut off each of those five snakes into three fragments whereupon they fell down on the Earth.[89] Beholding Krishna's limbs thus mangled with those snakes transformed into arrows sped from Karna's arms, Arjuna decked with diadem and garlands blazed up with wrath like a fire engaged in burning

---

* *Raudra muhurta*,—certain hours are especially regarded as fierce, because appropriated by *Rākshasas* and evil genii for their rounds over the world.—T.

a heap of dry grass.[90] He then pierced Karna in all his vital limbs with many blazing and fatal shafts shot from the bow-string stretched to the very ear. (Deeply pierced), Karna trembled in pain. With the greatest difficulty he stood, summoning all his patience.[91] Dhananjaya having been filled with wrath, all the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, the very splendour of the Sun, and Karna's car, O king, all became invisible with the showers shot by him. The welkin seemed as if it were shrouded by a thick frost.[92] Then that slayer of foes, that bull of Kuru's race, that foremost of heroes, viz., Savyasāchin, O king, soon slew in that battle two thousand foremost of Kuru warriors, with their cars and steeds and drivers, forming the protectors of Karna's car-wheels and wings and his van-guard and rear-guard, and who constituted the very pick of Duryodhana's car-force, and who, urged by Duryodhana, had been fighting with great energy.[93-95] Then thy sons and the Kauravas that were still alive fled away, deserting Karna, and abandoning their dying and the wounded, and their wailing sons and sires.[96] Beholding himself abandoned by the terrified Kurus and seeing the space around him empty, Karna felt no agitation, O Bhārata, but, on the other hand, rushed at Arjuna, with a cheerful heart.' "*[97]

Section XC.

"Sanjaya said,—'Flying away in consequence of the falling of Arjuna's arrows, the broken divisions of the Kauravas, staying at a distance, continued to gaze at Arjuna's weapon swelling with energy and careering around with the effulgence of lightning.[1] Then Karna, with showers of terrible shafts, baffled that weapon of Arjuna while it was still careering in the welkin and which Arjuna had shot with great vigor in that fierce encounter for the destruction of his foe.[2] Indeed, that weapon (of Pārtha) which, swelling with energy, had been consuming the Kurus, the Suta's son now crushed with his

---

* In numbering the *slokas* of this Section I have followed the Bombay edition.—T.

shafts winged with gold. Bending then his own loud-sounding bow of irrefragable string, Karna shot showers of shafts.[3] The Suta's son destroyed that burning weapon of Arjuna with his own foe-killing weapon of great power which he had obtained from Rāma, and which resembled (in efficacy) an *Atharvan* rite. And he pierced Pārtha also with numerous keen shafts.[4] The encounter then, O king, that took place between Arjuna and the son of Adhiratha, became a very dreadful one. They continued to strike each other with arrows like two fierce elephants striking each other with their tusks.[5] All the points of the compass then became shrouded with weapons and the very Sun became invisible. Indeed, Karna and Pārtha, with their arrowy downpours, made the welkin one vast expanse of arrows without any space between.[6] All the Kauravas and the Somakas then beheld a wide-spread arrowy net. In that dense darkness caused by arrows, they were unable to see anything else.[7] Those two foremost of men, both accomplished in weapons, as they incessantly aimed and shot innumerable arrows, O king, displayed diverse kinds of beautiful manœvres.[8] While they were thus contending with each other in battle, sometimes the Suta's son prevailed over his rival and sometimes the diadem-decked Pārtha prevailed over his, in prowess and weapons and lightness of hands.[9] Beholding that terrible and awful passage-at-arms between those two heroes each of whom was desirous of availing of the other's *laches*, all the other warriors on the field of battle became filled with wonder.[10] The beings in the welkin, O king, applauded Karna and Arjuna. Indeed, many of them at a time, filled with joy, cheerfully shouted, sometimes saying,—*Excellent, O Karna!*—and sometimes saying,—*Excellent, O Arjuna!*[11]— During the progress of that fierce encounter, while the Earth was being pressed deep with the weight of cars and the tread of steeds and elephants, the snake Açwasena, who was hostile to Arjuna, was passing his time in the nether region.[12] Freed from the conflagration at Khāndava, O king, he had, from anger, penetrated through the Earth (for going to the subterranean region). That brave snake, recollecting the death of his mother and the enmity he on that account harboured against

Arjuna, now rose from the lower region. Endued with the power of ascending the skies, he soared up with great speed upon beholding that fight between Karna and Arjuna.[13] Thinking that that was the time for gratifying his animosity towards, as he thought, the wicked-souled Pārtha, he quickly entered into Karna's quiver, O king, in the form of an arrow.[14] At that time a net of arrows was seen, shedding its bright arrows around. Karna and Pārtha made the welkin one dense mass of arrows by means of their arrowy downpours.[15] Beholding that wide-spread expanse of arrows, all the Kauravas and the Somakas became filled with fear. In that thick and awful darkness caused by arrows they were unable to see anything else.[16] Then those two tigers among men, those two foremost of all bowmen in the world, those two heroes, fatigued with their exertions in battle, looked at each other.[17] Both of them were then fanned with excellent and waving fans made of young (palm) leaves and sprinkled with fragrant sandal-water by many *Apsaras* staying in the welkin. And Cakra and Surya, using their hands, gently brushed the faces of those two heroes.[18] When at last Karna found that he could not prevail over Pārtha and when he was exceedingly scorched with the shafts of the former, that hero, his limbs very much mangled, set his heart upon that shaft of his which lay singly within a quiver.[19] The Suta's son then fixed on his bowstring that foe-killing, exceedingly keen, snake-mouthed, blazing, and fierce shaft, which had been polished according to rule, and which he had long kept for the sake of Pārtha's destruction.[20] Stretching his bowstring to his ear, Karna fixed that shaft of fierce energy and blazing splendour, that ever-worshipped weapon which lay within a golden quiver amid sandal dust, and aimed it at Pārtha.[21] Indeed, he aimed that blazing arrow, born in Airāvata's race, for cutting off Phālguna's head in battle. All the points of the compass and the welkin became ablaze and terrible meteors and thunder-bolts fell.[22] When that snake of the form of an arrow was fixed on the bowstring, the Regents of the world, including Cakra, set up loud wails. The Suta's son did not know that the snake Açwasena had entered his arrow by the aid of his *Yoga* powers.[23]

Beholding Vaikartana aim that arrow, the high-souled ruler of the Madras, addressing Karna, said,—This arrow, O Karna, will not succeed in striking off Arjuna's head! Searching carefully, fix another arrow that may succeed in striking off thy enemy's head![24]—Endued with great activity, the Suta's son, with eyes burning in wrath, then said unto the ruler of the Madras,—O Calya, Karna never aimeth an arrow twice! Persons like us never become crooked warriors![25]—Having said these words, Karna, with great care, let off that shaft which he had worshipped for many long years. Bent upon winning the victory, O king, he quickly said unto his rival,—Thou art slain, O Phālguna![26]—Sped from Karna's arms, that shaft of awful whiz, resembling fire or the Sun in splendour, as it left the bowstring, blazed up in the welkin and seemed to divide it by a line such as is visible on the crown of a woman dividing her tresses.[27] Beholding that shaft blazing in the welkin, the slayer of Kansa, viz., Mādhava, with great speed and the greatest ease, pressed down with his feet that excellent car, causing it to sink about a cubit deep.[28] At this, the steeds, white as the rays of the Moon and decked in trappings of gold, bending their knees, laid themselves down on the ground. Indeed, seeing that snake (in the form of an arrow) aimed by Karna, Mādhava,[29] that foremost of all persons endued with might, put forth his strength and thus pressed down with his feet that car into the Earth, whereat the steeds, (as already said) bending down their knees, laid themselves down upon the Earth when the car itself had sunk into it.[30]* Then loud sounds arose in the welkin in applause of Vāsudeva. Many celestial voices were heard, and celestial flowers were showered upon Krishna, and leonine shouts also were uttered. When the car had thus been pressed down into the Earth through the exertions of the slayer of Madhu,[31] the excellent ornament of Arjuna's head, celebrated throughout the Earth, the welkin, heaven, and the waters, the Suta's son swept off from the crown of his rival, with that arrow, in consequence of the very nature of that snaky weapon

* The last line of 29 and the two lines of 30 do not occur in the Bombay edition. They are evidently a repetition.—T.

and the great care and wrath with which it had been shot.[32] That diadem, endued with the splendour of the Sun or the Moon or fire or a planet, and adorned with gold and pearls and gems and diamonds, had with great care been made by the puissant Self-born himself for Purandara.[33] Costly as its appearance indicated it was, inspiring terror in the hearts of foes, contributing to the happiness of him that wore it, and shedding a fragrance, that ornament had been given by the chief of the celestials himself with a cheerful heart unto Pārtha while the latter had proceeded to slaughter the foes of the gods.[34] That diadem was incapable of being crushed by Rudra and the Lord of waters and Cakra and Kuvera with *Pināka* and noose and thunder-bolt and the very foremost of shafts. It could not be endured by even the foremost ones among the gods. Vrisha, however, now broke it forcibly with his snake-inspired shaft.[35] Endued with great activity, that wicked-natured snake of fierce form and false vows, falling upon that diadem decked with gold and gems, swept it away from Arjuna's head.[36] That snake, O king, forcibly tore it away from Pārtha's head, quickly reducing into fragments that well-made ornament set over with many a gem and blazing with beauty, like the thunder-bolt riving a mountain-summit decked with lofty and beautiful trees graced with flowers.[37]* Crushed by that excellent weapon, possessed of splendour, and blazing with the fire of (the snake's) poison, that beautiful and much-liked diadem of Pārtha fell down on the Earth like the blazing disc of the Sun from the *Asta* hills.[38] Indeed, that snake forcibly swept away from Arjuna's head that diadem adorned with many gems, like the thunder of Indra felling a beautiful mountain-summit adorned with lofty trees bearing budding leaves and flowers.[39] As the Earth, welkin, heaven, and the waters, when agitated by a tempest, roar aloud, O Bhārata, even such was the roar that arose in all the worlds at that time. Hearing that tremendous noise, people, notwithstanding their efforts to be calm, became extremely agitated and reeled as they stood.[40] Reft of diadem, the dark-complexioned and youthful Pārtha looked beautiful

* A triplet.—T.

like a blue mountain of lofty summit. Binding then his locks with a white cloth, Arjuna stood perfectly unmoved. With that white gear on his head, he looked like the *Udaya* hill illumined with the rays of the Sun.[41] Thus that she-snake (whom Arjuna had killed at Khāndava) of excellent mouth, through her son in the form of an arrow, sped by Surya's son, beholding Arjuna of exceeding energy and might standing with his head at a level with the reins of the steeds, took away his diadem only, that well-made ornament (formerly) owned by Aditi's son and endued with the effulgence of Surya himself. But Arjuna also (as will appear in the sequel) did not return from that battle without causing the snake to succumb to the power of Yama.[42]* Sped from Karna's arms, that costly shaft resembling fire or the Sun in effulgence, viz., that mighty snake who from before had become the deadly foe of Arjuna, thus crushing the latter's diadem, went away.[43] Having burnt the gold-decked diadem of Arjuna displayed on his head, he desired to come at Arjuna once more with great speed. Asked, however, by Karna (who saw him but knew him not), he said these words :[44]—Thou hadst sped me, O Karna, without having seen me. It was for this that I could not strike off Arjuna's head. Do thou quickly shoot me once again, after seeing me well. I shall then slay thy foe and mine too![45]—Thus addressed in that battle by him, the Suta's son said,—Who are you possessed of such fierce form?—The snake answered, saying,—Know me as one that has been wronged by Pārtha! My enemity towards him is due to his having slain my mother![46] If the wielder of the thunder-bolt himself were to protect Pārtha, the latter would still have to go to the domains of the king of the *Pitris!* Do not disregard me! Do my bidding! I will slay thy foe! Shoot me without delay![47]—Hearing those words, Karna said,—Karna, O snake, never desires to have victory in battle today by relying on another's might! Even if I have to slay a hundred Arjunas, I will not, O snake, still shoot the same shaft twice![48]

---

* This verse appears to be one of the *cruces* of Vyāsa. I have followed Nilakantha in interpreting it.—T.

—Once more addressing him in the midst of battle, that best of men, viz., Surya's son Karna, said,—Aided by the nature of my other snaky weapons, and by resolute effort and wrath, I shall slay Pārtha! Be thou happy and go elsewhere![49]—Thus addressed, in battle, by Karna, that prince of snakes, unable from rage to bear those words, himself proceeded, O king, for the slaughter of Pārtha, having assumed the form of an arrow. Of fierce form, the desire he ardently cherished was the destruction of his enemy.[50] Then Krishna, addressing Pārtha in that encounter, said unto him,—Slay that great snake inimical to thee!—Thus addressed by the slayer of Madhu, the wielder of *Gāndiva*, that bowman who was always fierce unto foes, enquired of him, saying,—Who is that snake that advanceth of his own accord against me, as if, indeed, he advanceth right against the mouth of Garuda?[51]—Krishna replied,—Whilst thou, armed with bow, wert engaged at Khāndava in gratifying the god Agni, this snake was then in the sky, his body ensconced within his mother's. Thinking that it was only a single snake that was so staying in the sky, thou killedst the mother![52] Remembering that act of hostility done by thee, he cometh towards thee today for thy destruction! O resister of foes, behold him coming like a blazing meteor, falling from the firmament!—'[53]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then Jishnu, turning his face in rage, cut off, with six keen shafts, that snake in the welkin as the latter was coursing in a slanting direction. His body thus cut off, he fell down on the Earth.[54] After that snake had been cut off by Arjuna, the lord Keçava himself, O king, of massive arms, that foremost of beings, raised up with his arms that car from the Earth.[55] At that time, Karna, glancing obliquely at Dhananjaya, pierced that foremost of persons, viz., Krishna, with ten shafts whetted on stone and equipt with peacock feathers.[56] Then Dhananjaya, piercing Karna with a dozen well-shot and keen arrows equipt with heads like the boar's ear, sped a cloth-yard shaft endued with the energy of a snake of virulent poison and shot from his bowstring stretched to his ear.[57] That foremost of shafts, well shot by Arjuna, penetrated through Karna's armour, and as if suspending his life-breaths, drank his blood and entered the Earth,

its wings also having been drenched with gore.[58] Endued with great activity, Vrisha, enraged at the stroke of that shaft, like a snake beat with a stick, shot many mighty shafts, like a snake of virulent poison vomiting its venom.[59] And he pierced Janārddana with a dozen shafts and Arjuna, with nine and ninety. And once more piercing the son of Pāndu with a terrible shaft, Karna laughed and uttered a loud roar.[60] The son of Pāndu, however, could not endure his enemy's joy. Acquainted with all the vital parts of the human body, Pārtha, possessed of prowess like that of Indra, pierced those vital limbs with hundreds of arrows even as Indra had struck Vala with great energy.[61] Then Arjuna sped ninety arrows, each resembling the rod of Death, at Karna. Deeply pierced with those shafts, Karna trembled like a mountain riven with thunder.[62] The head-gear of Karna, adorned with costly gems and precious diamonds and pure gold, as also his ear-rings, cut off by Dhananjaya with his winged arrows, fell down on the Earth.[63] The costly and bright armour also of the Suta's son that had been forged with great care by many foremost of artists working for a long time, the son of Pāndu cut off within a moment into many fragments.[64] After thus divesting him of his armour, Pārtha then, in rage, pierced Karna with four whetted shafts of great energy. Struck forcibly by his foe, Karna suffered great pain like a diseased person afflicted by bile, phlegm, wind, and fever.[65] Once more Arjuna, with great speed, mangled Karna, piercing his very vitals, with numerous excellent shafts, of great keenness, and sped from his circling bow with much force and speed and care.[66] Deeply struck by Pārtha with those diverse arrows of keen points and fierce energy, Karna (covered with blood) looked resplendent like a mountain of red chalk with streams of red water running adown its breast.[67] Once more Arjuna pierced Karna in the centre of the chest with many straight-coursing and strong shafts made entirely of iron and equipt with wings of gold and each resembling the fiery rod of the Destroyer, like the son of Agni piercing the Krauncha mountains.[68]* Then the Suta's

* Agni's son is the celestial generalissimo Kārtikeya, the slayer of

son, casting aside his bow that resembled the very bow of Cakra, as also his quiver, felt great pain, and stood inactive, stupified, and reeling, his grasp loosened and himself in great anguish.[69] The virtuous Arjuna, observant of the duty of manliness, wished not to slay his enemy while fallen into such distress. The younger brother of Indra then, with great excitement, addressed him, saying,—Why, O son of Pāndu, dost thou become so forgetful ?[70] They that are truly wise never spare their foes, however weak, even for a moment! He that is learned earneth both merit and fame by slaying foes fallen into distress![71] Lose no time in precipitately crushing Karna who is always inimical to thee and who is the first of heroes! The Suta's son, when able, will once more advance against thee as before. Slay him, therefore, like Indra slaying the *Asura* Namuchi![72]—Saying,—So be it, O Krishna!—and worshipping Janārddana, Arjuna, that foremost of all persons in Kuru's race, once more quickly pierced Karna with many excellent arrows like the ruler of heaven piercing the *Asura* Camvara.[73] The diadem-decked Pārtha, O Bhārata, covered Karna and his car and steeds with many calf-toothed arrows, and putting forth all his vigor he shrouded all the points of the compass with shafts equipt with wings of gold.[74] Pierced with those arrows equipt with heads like the calf's tooth, Adhiratha's son of broad chest looked resplendent like an *Açoka* or *Palāça* or *Çālmali* decked with its flowery load or a mountain overgrown with a forest of sandal trees.[75] Indeed, with those numerous arrows sticking to his body, Karna, O monarch, in that battle, looked resplendent like the prince of mountains with its top and glens overgrown with trees or decked with flowering *Karnikāras*.[76] Karna also, shooting repeated showers of arrows, looked, with those arrows constituting his rays, like the Sun coursing towards the Asta hills, with disc bright with crimson rays.[77] Shafts, however, of keen points, sped from Arjuna's arms, encountering in the welkin the blazing arrows, resembling mighty snakes, sped from the arms of Adhiratha's

---

Tāraka. Other traditions represent him as the son of Hara and Pārvati.—T.

son, destroyed them all.[78] Recovering his coolness, and shooting many shafts that resembled angry snakes, Karna then pierced Pārtha with ten shafts and Krishna with half a dozen, each of which looked like an angry snake.[79] Then Dhananjaya desired to shoot a mighty and terrible arrow, made wholly of iron, resembling the poison of the snake or fire in energy, and whose whiz resembled the peal of Indra's thunder, and which was inspired with the force of a high (celestial) weapon.[80] At that time, when the hour of Karna's death had come, *Kāla*, approaching invisibly, and alluding to the Brāhmana's curse,* and desirous of informing Karna that his death was near, told him,—*The Earth is devouring thy wheel!*[81]—Indeed, O foremost of men, when the hour of Karna's death came, the high *Brāhma* weapon that the illustrious Bhārgava had imparted unto him, escaped from his memory. And the Earth also began to devour the left wheel of his car.[82] Then in consequence of the curse of that foremost of Brāhmanas, Karna's car began to reel, having sunk deep into the Earth and having been transfixed at that spot like a sacred tree with its load of flowers standing upon an elevated platform.[83]† When his car began to reel from the curse of the Brāhmana, and when the high weapon he had obtained from Rāma no longer shone in him through inward light, and when his terrible snake-mouthed shaft also had been cut off by Pārtha, Karna became filled with melancholy.[84] Unable to endure all those calamities, he waved his arms and began to rail at righteousness, saying,—They that are conversant with righteousness always say that righteousness protects those that are righteous![85] As regards ourselves, we always endeavour, to the best of our ability and knowledge, to practise righteousness. That righteousness, however, is destroying us now instead of protecting us that are devoted to it. I, therefore, think that righteousness does not always protect its worshippers![86]—While saying these words,

---

* *Vide* Page 150. Verse 41, *Karna Parva*.—T.

† To this day, sacred trees, such as the banian or the *Açwattha*, may be seen in villages and towns, with elevated platforms of brick or earth round their trunks. Upon these platforms the village elders may be seen sitting and smoking and deciding many important causes.—T.

he became exceedingly agitated by the strokes of Arjuna's arrows. His steeds and his driver also were displaced from their usual position. His very vitals having been struck, he became indifferent as to what he did, and repeatedly railed at righteousness in that battle.[87] He then pierced Krishna in the arm with three terrible arrows, and Pārtha too with seven.[88] Then Arjuna sped seven and ten terrible arrows, perfectly straight and of fierce impetuosity, resembling fire in splendour and like unto Indra's thunder in force.[89] Endued with awful impetuosity, those arrows pierced Karna and passing out of his body fell upon the surface of the Earth. Trembling at the shock, Karna then displayed his activity to the utmost of his power.[90] Steadying himself by a powerful effort, he invoked the *Brāhma* weapon. Beholding the *Brāhma* weapon, Arjuna invoked the *Aindra* weapon with proper *mantras*.[91] Inspiring *Gāndiva*, its string, and his shafts also, with *mantras*, that scorcher of foes shot showers of arrows like Purandara pouring rain in torrents.[92] Those arrows endued with great energy and power, issuing out of Pārtha's car, were seen to be displayed in the vicinity of Karna's vehicle. The mighty car-warrior Karna baffled all those shafts displayed in his front.[93] Seeing that weapon thus destroyed, the Vrishni hero, addressing Arjuna, said,—Shoot high weapons, O Pārtha! The son of Rādhā baffles thy shafts![94]—With proper *mantras*, Arjuna then fixed the *Brāhma* weapon on his string, and shrouding all the points of the compass with arrows, Pārtha struck Karna (with many) arrows.[95] Then Karna, with a number of whetted shafts endued with great energy, cut off the string of Arjuna's bow. Similarly he cut off the second string, and then the third, and then the fourth, and then the fifth.[96] The sixth also was cut off by Vrisha, and then the seventh, then the eighth, then the ninth, then the tenth, and then at last the eleventh. Capable of shooting hundreds upon hundreds of arrows, Karna knew not that Pārtha had a hundred strings to his bow.[97] Tying then another string to his bow and shooting many arrows, the son of Pāndu covered Karna with shafts that resembled snakes of blazing mouths.[98] So quickly did Arjuna replace each broken string that Karna could not mark when

it was broken and when replaced. The feat seemed to him to be exceedingly wonderful.[99] The son of Rādhā baffled with his own weapons those of Savyasāchin. Displaying also his own prowess, he seemed to get the better of Dhananjaya at that time.[100] Then Krishna, beholding Arjuna afflicted with the weapons of Karna, said these words unto Pārtha, viz.,—*Approaching Karna, strike him with superior weapons!*[101]—Then Dhananjaya, filled with rage, inspiring with *mantras* another celestial weapon that looked like fire and that resembled the poison of the snake and that was as hard as the essence of adamant,[102] and uniting the *Raudra* weapon with it, became desirous of shooting it at his foe. At that time, O king, the Earth swallowed up one of wheels of Karna's car.[103] Quickly alighting then from his vehicle, he seized his sunken wheel with his two arms and endeavoured to lift it up with a great effort.[104] Drawn up with force by Karna, the Earth, which had swallowed up his wheel, rose up to a height of four fingers' breadth, with her seven islands and her hills and waters and forests.[105] Seeing his wheel swallowed, the son of Rādhā shed tears from wrath, and beholding Arjuna, filled with rage he said these words:[106]—O Pārtha, O Pārtha, wait for a moment, that is, till I lift this sunken wheel![107] Beholding, O Pārtha, the left wheel of my car swallowed through accident by the Earth, abandon (instead of cherishing) this purpose (of striking and slaying me) that is capable of being harboured by only a coward![108] Brave warriors that are observant of the practices of the righteous, never shoot their weapons at persons with dishevelled hair, or at those that have turned their faces from battle, or at a Brāhmana, or at him who joins his palms, or at him who yields himself up or beggeth for quarter, or at one who has put up his weapon, or at one whose arrows are exhausted, or at one whose armour is displaced, or at one whose weapon has fallen off or been broken![109-110] Thou art the bravest of men in the world. Thou art also of righteous behaviour, O son of Pāndu! Thou art well acquainted with the rules of battle. For these reasons, excuse me for a moment,[111] that is, till I extricate my wheel, O Dhananjaya, from the Earth! Thyself staying on

thy car and myself standing weak and languid on the Earth, it behoveth thee not to slay me now![112] Neither Vāsudeva, nor thou, O son of Pāndu, inspires or inspirest me with the slightest fear! Thou art born in the Kshatriya order! Thou art the perpetuator of a high race! Recollecting the teachings of righteousness, excuse me for a moment, O son of Pāndu!'"[113]—

Section XCI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then Vāsudeva, stationed on the car, addressed Karna, saying,—By good luck it is, O son of Rādhā, that thou rememberest virtue! It is generally seen that they that are mean, when they sink into distress, rail at Providence but never at their own misdeeds.[1] Thyself and Suyodhana and Dusçāsana and Cakuni the son of Suvala, had caused Draupadi, clad in a single piece of raiment, to be brought into the midst of the assembly. On that occasion, O Karna, this virtue of thine did not manifest itself![2] When at the assembly Cakuni, an adept in dice, vanquished Kunti's son Yudhishthira who was unacquainted with it, whither had this virtue of thine then gone?[3] When the Kuru king (Duryodhana), acting under thy counsels, treated Bhimasena in that way with the aid of snakes and poisoned food, whither had this virtue of thine then gone?[4] When the period of exile into the words was over as also the thirteenth year,* thou didst not make over to the Pāndavas their kingdom. Whither had this virtue of thine then gone?[5] Thou hadst set fire to tho house of lac at Vārnāvata for burning to death the sleeping Pāndavas. Whither then, O son of Rādhā, had this virtue of thine gone?[6] Thou hadst laughed at Krishnā while she stood in the midst of the assembly, scantily dressed because in her season and obedient to Dusçāsana's will, whither, then, O Karna, had this virtue of thine gone?[7] When invading the apartment reserved for females the innocent Krishnā was dragged, thou didst not interfere. Whither, O son of Rādhā, had this virtue of thine gone?[8] Thyself addressing the princess Draupadi, that lady

---

* The thirteenth was the year of concealment.—T.

whose tread is as dignified as that of the elephant, in these words, viz.,—*The Pāndavas, O Krishnā, are lost. They have sunk into eternal hell. Do thou choose another husband!*—thou hadst looked on the scene with delight! Whither then, O Karna, had this virtue of thine gone?[9] Covetous of kingdom and relying on the ruler of the Gāndhāras, thou hadst summoned the Pāndavas (to a match at dice). Whither then had this virtue of thine gone?[10] When many mighty car-warriors, encompassing the boy Abhimanyu in battle, slew him, whither had this virtue of thine then gone?[11] If this virtue that thou now invokest was nowhere on those occasions, what is the use then of parching thy palate now by uttering that word? Thou art now for the practice of virtue, O Suta, but thou shalt not escape with life![12] Like Nala who was defeated by Pushkara with the aid of dice but who regained his kingdom by prowess, the Pāndavas, who are free from cupidity, will recover their kingdom by the prowess of their arms, aided with all their friends![13] Having slain in battle their powerful foes, they, with the Somakas, will recover their kingdom. The Dhārtarāshtras will meet with destruction at the hands of those lions among men (viz., the sons of Pāndu), that are always protected by virtue!—'[14]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed, O Bhārata, by Vāsudeva, Karna hung down his head in shame and gave no answer.[15] With lips quivering in rage, he raised his bow, O Bhārata, and endued as he was with great energy and prowess, he continued to fight with Pārtha.[16] Then Vāsudeva, addressing Phālguna, that bull among men, said,—O thou of great might, piercing Karna with a celestial weapon, throw him down![17]—Thus addressed by the holy one, Arjuna became filled with rage. Indeed, remembering the incidents alluded to by Krishna, Dhananjaya blazed up with fury.[18] Then, O king, blazing flames of fire seemed to emanate from all the pores of the angry Pārtha's body. The sight seemed to be exceedingly wonderful.[19] Beholding it, Karna, invoking the *Brāhma* weapon, showered his shafts upon Dhananjaya, and once more made an effort to extricate his car.[20] Pārtha also, by the aid of the *Brāhma* weapon, poured arrowy downpours

upon Karna. Baffling with his own weapon the weapon of his foe, the son of Pāndu continued to strike him.[21] The son of Kunti then, aiming at Karna, sped another favourite weapon of his that was inspired with the energy of Agni. Sped by Arjuna, that weapon blazed up with its own energy.[22] Karna, however, quenched that conflagration with the *Vāruna* weapon. The Suta's son also, by the clouds he created, caused all the points of the compass to be shrouded with a darkness such as may be seen in a rainy day.[23] The son of Pāndu, endued with great energy, fearlessly dispelled those clouds by means of the *Vāyavya* weapon in the very sight of Karna.[24] The Suta's son then, for slaying the son of Pāndu, took up a terrible arrow blazing like fire.[25] When that adored shaft was fixed on the bowstring, the Earth, O king, trembled with her mountains and waters and forests.[26] Violent winds began to blow, bearing hard pebbles. All the points of the compass became enveloped with dust. Wails of grief, O Bhārata, arose among the gods in the welkin.[27] Beholding that shaft aimed by the Suta's son, O sire, the Pāndavas, with cheerlees hearts, gave themselves up to great sorrow.[28] That shaft of keen point and endued with the effulgence of Cakra's thunder, sped from Karna's arms, fell upon Dhananjaya's chest and penetrated it like a mighty snake penetrating an anthill.[29] That grinder of foes, viz., the high-souled Vibhatsu, thus deeply pierced in that encounter, began to reel. His grasp became loosened, at which his bow *Gāndiva* dropped from his hand. He trembled like the prince of mountains in an earthquake.[30] Availing of that opportunity, the mighty car-warrior Vrisha, desirous of extricating his car-wheel that had been swallowed up by the Earth, jumped down from his vehicle. Seizing the wheel with his two arms he endeavoured to drag it up, but though possessed of great strength, he failed in his efforts as destiny would have it.[31] Meanwhile the diadem-decked and high-souled Arjuna, recovering his senses, took up a shaft, fatal as the rod of Death, and called *Anjalika*.* Then

* So called because the heads of those arrows were broad as the two hands joined together.—T.

Vāsudeva, addressing Pārtha, said,—Cut off with thy arrow the head of this enemy of thine, viz., Vrisha, before he succeeds in getting up on his car![32]—Applauding those words of the lord Vāsudeva, and while the wheel of his enemy was still sunk, the mighty car-warrior Arjuna took up a razor-headed arrow of blazing effulgence and struck the standard (of Karna) bearing the elephant's rope and bright as the spotless Sun.[33] That standard bearing the device of the costly elephant's rope, was adorned with gold and pearls and gems and diamonds, and forged with care by foremost of artists excelling in knowledge, and possessed of great beauty, and variegated with pure gold.[34] That standard always used to fill thy troops with high courage and the enemy with fear. Its form commanded applause. Celebrated over the whole world, it resembled the Sun in splendour. Indeed, its effulgence was like that of fire or the Sun or the Moon.[35] The diadem-decked Arjuna, with that razor-headed shaft, exceedingly sharp, equipt with wings of gold, possessed of the splendour of fire when fed with libations of clarified butter, and blazing with beauty, cut off that standard of Adhiratha's son, that great car-warrior.[36] With that standard, as it fell, the fame, pride, hope of victory, and everything dear, as also the hearts of the Kurus, fell, and loud wails of *Oh* and *Alas* arose (from the Kuru army).[37] Beholding that standard cut off and thrown down by that hero of Kuru's race possessed of great lightness of hand, thy troops, O Bhārata, were no longer hopeful of Karna's victory.[38] Hastening then for Karna's destruction, Pārtha took out from his quiver an excellent *Anjalika* weapon that resembled the thunder of Indra or the rod of fire and that was possessed of the effulgence of the thousand-rayed Sun.[39] Capable of penetrating the very vitals, besmeared with blood and flesh, resembling fire or the Sun, made of costly materials, destructive of men, steeds, and elephants, of straight course and fierce impetuosity, it measured three cubits and six feet.[40] Endued with the force of the thousand-eyed Indra's thunder, irresistible as *Rākshasas* in the night, resembling *Pināka* or Nārāyana's discus, it was exceedingly terrible and destructive of all living creatures.[41] Pārtha cheerfully took up that great weapon, in the shape of an arrow, which

could not be resisted by the very gods,—that high-souled being which was always adored by the son of Pāndu, and which was capable of vanquishing the very gods and the *Asuras*.[43] Beholding that shaft grasped by Pārtha in, that battle, the entire universe shook with its mobile and immobile creatures. Indeed, seeing that weapon raised (for being sped) in that dreadful battle, the *Rishis* loudly cried out,—Peace be to be universe![43]—The wielder of *Gāndiva* then fixed on his bow that unrivalled arrow, uniting it with a high and mighty weapon. Drawing his bow *Gāndiva*, he quickly said,[44]—Let this shaft of mine be like a mighty weapon capable of quickly destroying the body and heart of my enemy, if I have ever practised ascetic austerities, gratified by superiors, and listened to the counsels of well-wishers![45] Let this shaft, worshipped by me and possessed of great sharpness slay my enemy Karna by that Truth!—Having said these words Dhananjaya let off that terrible shaft for the destruction of Karna,[46]—that arrow fierce and efficacious as a rite prescribed in the *Atharvan* of Angiras, blazing with effulgence, and incapable of being endured by Death himself in battle. And the diadem-decked Pārtha, desirous of slaying Karna, with great cheerfulness, said,—Let this shaft conduce to my victory! Shot by me, let this arrow possessed of the splendour of fire or the Sun take Karna to the presence of Yama![47]—Saying these words, Arjuna, decked with diadem and garlands, cherishing feelings of hostility towards Karna and desirous of slaying him, cheerfully struck his foe with that foremost of shafts which was possessed of the splendour of the Sun or the Moon and capable of bestowing victory.[48] Thus sped by that mighty warrior, that shaft endued with the energy of the Sun caused all the points of the compass to blaze up with light. With that weapon Arjuna struck off his enemy's head like Indra striking off the head of Vritra with his thunder.[49] Indeed, O king, that excellent *Anjalika* weapon inspired with *mantras* into a mighty weapon, the son of Indra cut off the head of Vaikartana in the afternoon.[50] Thus cut off with that *Anjalika*, the trunk of Karna fell down on the Earth.[51] The head also of that commander of the (Kaurava) army, endued with splendour equal to that of the risen Sun

and resembling the meridian Sun of autumn, fell down on the Earth like the Sun of bloody disc dropped down from the *Asta* hills.[52] Indeed, that head abandoned with great unwillingness the body, exceedingly beautiful and always nursed in luxury, of Karna of noble deeds, like an owner abandoning with great unwillingness his commodious mansion filled with great wealth.[53] Cut off with Arjuna's arrow, and deprived of life, the tall trunk of Karna endued with great splendour, with blood issuing from every wound, fell down like the thunder-riven summit of a mountain of red chalk with crimson streams running adown its sides after a shower.[54] Then from that body of the fallen Karna a light passing through the welkin penetrated the Sun. This wonderful sight, O king, was beheld by all the human warriors after the fall of Karna.[55] Then the Pāndavas, beholding Karna slain by Phālguna, loudly blew their conchs. Similarly, Krishna and Dhananjaya also, filled with delight, and losing no time, blew their conchs.[56] The Somakas, beholding Karna slain and lying on the field, were filled with joy and uttered loud shouts with the other troops (of the Pāndava army). In great delight they blew their trumpets and waved their arms and garments.[57] All the warriors, O king, approaching Pārtha, began to applaud him joyfully. Others, possessed of might, danced, embracing each other, and uttering loud shouts, said,—By good luck, Karna hath been stretched on the Earth and mangled with arrows![58]—Indeed, the severed head of Karna looked beautiful like a mountain summit loosened by a tempest, or a quenched fire after the sacrifice is over, or the image of the Sun after it has reached the Asta hills.[59] The Karna-sun, with arrows for its rays, after having scorched the hostile army, was at last caused to be set by the mighty Arjuna-time.[60] As the Sun, while proceeding towards the Asta hills, retires taking away with him all his rays, even so that shaft (of Arjuna) passed out, taking with it Karna's life-breaths.[61] The death hour of the Suta's son, O sire, was the afternoon of that day.* Cut off with the *Anjalika* weapon in that battle, the

* I adopt the Bombay reading of this line, and follow Nilakantha's gloss in interpreting it.—T.

head of Karna fell down along with his body.[62] Indeed, that arrow of Arjuna, in the very sight of the Kaurava troops, quickly took away the head and the body of Karna.[63] Beholding the heroic Karna thrown down stretched on the Earth, pierced with arrows and bathed in blood, the king of the Madras went away on that car deprived of its standard.[64] After the fall of Karna, the Kauravas, deeply pierced with shafts in that battle, and afflicted with fear, fled away from the field, frequently casting their eyes on that lofty standard of Arjuna that blazed with splendour.[65] The beautiful head, graced with a face that resembled a lotus of thousand petals, of Karna whose feats were like those of the thousand-eyed Indra, fell down on the Earth like the thousand-rayed Sun as he looks at the close of day.' "[66]

Section XCII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the troops crushed with arrows in that encounter between Karna and Arjuna, Calya proceeded, filled with wrath, on that car divested of its equipments.[1] Beholding his army deprived of the Suta's son and its cars and steeds and elephants destroyed, Duryodhana, with eyes bathed in tears, repeatedly sighed the very picture of woe.[2] Desirous of beholding the heroic Karna, pierced with arrows and bathed in blood, and stretched on the Earth like the Sun dropped from the skies at will, the warriors came there and stood surrounding the fallen hero.[3] Amongst those belonging to the enemy and thy army that thus stood there, some showed signs of joy, some of fear, some of sorrow, some of wonder, and some gave themselves up to great grief, according to their respective natures.[4] Others amongst the Kauravas, hearing that Karna of mighty energy, had been slain by Dhananjaya, his armour, ornaments, robes, and weapons, having all been displaced, fled in fear like a herd of kine afflicted with exceeding fear at losing its bull.[5] Bhima then, uttering loud roars and causing the welkin to tremble with those awful and tremendous shouts, began to slap his armpits, jump, and dance, frightening the Dhārtarāshtras by those movements.[6] The Somakas and the Srinjayas

also loudly blew their conchs. All the Kshatriyas embraced one another in joy, upon beholding the Suta's son slain at that juncture.[7] Having fought a dreadful battle, Karna was slain by Arjuna like an elephant by a lion. That bull among men, viz., Arjuna, thus accomplished his vow. Indeed, even thus, Pārtha reached the end of his hostility (towards Karna).[8] The ruler of the Madras, with stupified heart, quickly proceeding, O king, to the side of Duryodhana, on that car divested of standard, said in sorrow these words:[9]—The elephants, the steeds, and the foremost of car-warriors of thy army have been slain! In consequence of those mighty warriors, and steeds, and elephants huge as hills, having been slain after coming into contact with one another, thy host looks like the domains of Yama![10] Never before, O Bhārata, has a battle been fought like that between Karna and Arjuna today! Karna had powerfully assailed the two Krishnas today and all others who are thy foes![11] Destiny, however, has certainly flowed, controlled by Pārtha. It is for this that Destiny is protecting the Pāndavas and weakening us! Many are the heroes who, resolved to accomplish thy objects, have been forcibly slain by the enemy.[12] Brave kings, who in energy, courage, and might, were equal to Kuvera or Yama or Vāsava or the Lord of the waters, who were possessed of every merit, who were almost unslayable, and who were desirous of achieving thy object, have in battle been slain by the Pāndavas! Do not, O Bhārata, grieve for this! This is Destiny! Comfort thyself! Success cannot be always attained![*13-14]—Hearing these words of the ruler of the Madras and reflecting on his own evil doings, Duryodhana, with a cheerless heart, became almost deprived of his senses and sighed repeatedly the very picture of woe.'"[15]

SECTION XCIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'What was the aspect of the Kuru and the Srinjaya host on that awful day while it was crushed with arrows and scorched (with weapons) in that encounter be-

* I adopt the Bombay reading of the last line of 14.—T.

tween Karna and Arjuna and while it was flying away from the field ?'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Hear, O king, with attention how that awful and great carnage of human beings and elephants and steeds occurred in battle ![2] When, after Karna's fall Pārtha uttered leonine shouts, a great fright entered the hearts of thy sons.[3] Upon the fall of Karna no warriror of thy army set his heart on rallying the troops or putting forth his prowess.[4] Their refuge having been destroyed by Arjuna, they were then like raftless merchants, whose vessels have wrecked on the fathomless ocean, desirous of crossing the uncrossable main.[5] After the slaughter of the Suta's son, O king, the Kauravas, terrified and mangled with shafts, masterless and desirous of protection, became like a herd of elephants afflicted by lions.[6] Vanquished by Savyasāchin on that afternoon, they fled away like bulls with broken horns or snakes with broken fangs.[7] Their foremost of heroes slain, their troops thrown into confusion, themselves mangled with keen arrows, thy sons, after the fall of Karna, O king, fled away in fear.[8] Divested of weapons and armour, no longer able to ascertain which point of the compass was which, and deprived of their senses, they crushed one another in course of their flight, and looked at one another, afflicted with fear.[9]—*It is me that Vibhatsu is pursuing with speed !—It is me that Vrikodara is pursuing with speed !*—thought every one among the Kauravas who became pale with fear and fell down as they fled.[10] Some on horses, some on cars, some on elephants, and some on foot, mighty car-warriors, endued with great speed, fled away in fear.[11] Cars were broken by elephants, horsemen were crushed by great car-warriors, and bands of foot-soldiers were trod down by bodies of horse, as these fled in fear.[12] Like people without protectors in a forest teeming with beasts of prey and robbers, thy warriors became, after the fall of the Suta's son ![13] They were then like elephants without riders and men without arms. Afflicted with fear, they looked upon the whole world as if it were full of Pārtha.[14] Beholding them fly away afflicted with the fear of Bhimasena, indeed, seeing his troops thus leave the field in thousands, Duryodhana, uttering cries of *Oh* and *Alas*, ad-

dressed his driver, saying,[15]*—Pārtha will never be able to transgress myself standing bow in hand! Urge my steeds slowly behind all the troops![16] Without doubt, if I fight standing in the rear of the army, the son of Kunti will never be able to transgress me even as the vasty deep is unable to transgress its continents.[17] Slaying Arjuna and Govinda and the proud Vrikodara and the rest of my foes, I will free myself from the debt I owe to Karna![18]—Hearing these words of the Kuru king that were so worthy of a hero and honorable man, the charioteer slowly urged his steeds adorned with trappings of gold.[19] Then five and twenty thousand warriors on foot, belonging to thy army, without cars and cavalry and elephants among them, prepared for battle.[20] Bhimasena filled with wrath, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, encompassed them with four kinds of forces and began to strike them with their shafts.[21] In return, those warriors fought with Bhima and Prishata's son. Some amongst them challenged the two heroes by name.[22] Then Bhimasena became filled with rage. Alighting from his car, mace in hand, he fought with those warriors arrived for battle.[23] Observant of the rules of fair fight, Vrikodara, the son of Kunti, came down from his car, and relying upon the might of his arms, began to fight on foot with those foes of his that were on foot.[24] Taking up his massive mace adorned with gold, he began to slaughter them all, like the Destroyer armed with his bludgeon.[25] The Kaurava warriors on foot, filled with rage and becoming reckless of their lives, rushed against Bhima in that battle like insects upon a blazing fire.[26] Those infuriate combatants, difficult of being defeated in battle, approaching Bhimasena, perished in a trice like living creatures upon seeing the Destroyer.[27] The mighty Bhima, armed with mace, careered like a hawk and destroyed all those five and twenty thousand combatants.[28] Having slain that division of heroic warriors, Bhima, of prowess incapable of being baffled and great might, once more stood, with Dhrishtadyumna before him.[29] Possessed of great energy, Dhananjaya

---

* The Bombay reading is *hā hā Kritwā*, &c. This seems to be correct.—T.

proceeded against the (remnant of the) car force (of the Kauravas).[30] The two sons of Mādri, and Sātyaki, filled with joy, rushed with speed against Cakuni and slaughtered the troops of Suvala's son.[31] Having slain with keen shafts his cavalry and elephants in that encounter, they rushed impetuously against Cakuni himself upon which a great battle took place.[32] Meanwhile Dhananjaya, O lord, proceeding against thy car-force, twanged his bow *Gāndiva* celebrated over the three worlds.[33] Beholding that car having white steeds yoked unto it and owning Krishna for its driver, and seeing that Arjuna was the warrior standing on it, thy troops fled away in fear.[34] Five and twenty thousand soldiers on foot, deprived of cars and mangled with shafts, had perished (at the hands of Bhima and Dhrishtadyumna).[35] Having slain them, that tiger among men, that great car-warrior among the Pānchālas, viz., the high-souled Dhrishtadyumna the son of the Pānchāla king,[36] soon showed himself, with Bhimasena before him. That slayer of foes and mighty bowman appeared exceedingly handsome.[37] Beholding Dhrishtadyumna's car which had steeds white as pigeons yoked unto it and whose lofty standard was made of the trunk of a *Kovidāra*, the Kauravas fled away in great fear.[38] The twins (Nakula and Sahadeva) of great fame, and Sātyaki, having pursued with great speed the king of the Gāndhāras who was possessed of lightness of hands in the use of weapons, reappeared (amid the Pāndava ranks).[39] Chekitāna and Cikhandin and the (five) sons of Draupadi, O sire, having slaughtered thy vast army, blew their conchs.[40] All those heroes, although they saw thy troops flying away with faces turned from the field, still pursued them, like bulls pursuing angry bulls after vanquishing them.[41] Pāndu's son Savyasāchin of great might, O king, beholding a remnant of thy army still standing for battle, became filled with wrath.[42] Possessed of great energy, Dhananjaya rushed against that car-force, drawing his bow *Gāndiva* celebrated over the three worlds.[43] Suddenly he shrouded them with showers of arrows. The dust that was raised darkened the scene and nothing could any longer be distinguished.[44] When the Earth was thus shrouded with dust and when darkness covered everything, thy troops, O king, fled on all sides from

fear.[45] When the Kuru army thus broke, the Kuru king, O monarch, viz., thy son, rushed against all his foes advancing against him.[46] Then Duryodhana challenged all the Pāndavas to battle, O chief of Bharata's race, like the *Asura* Vali in days of yore challenging the gods.[47] At this, all the Pāndava heroes, uniting together, rushed against the advancing Duryodhana, shooting and hurling at him diverse weapons and upbraiding him repeatedly.[48] Duryodhana, however, filled with rage, fearlessly slaughtered those enemies of his in hundreds and thousands, with keen shafts.[49] The prowess that we then beheld of thy son was exceedingly wonderful, for alone and unsupported, he fought with all the Pāndavas united together.[50] Duryodhana then beheld his own troops who, mangled with arrows, had set their hearts on flight, gone not far from the field.[51] Rallying them then, O monarch, thy son who was resolved to maintain his honor, gladdening those warriors of his, said these words unto them![52]—I do not see that spot in Earth or on the mountains, whither, if ye fly, the Pāndavas will not slay ye! What use then in flying away?[53] Small is the force that the Pāndavas now have! The two Krishnas also are exceedingly mangled! If all of us stay for battle, victory will certainly be ours![54] If we fly in disunion, the sinful Pāndavas, pursuing us, will certainly slay all of us! For this, it is better that we should die in battle![55] Death in battle is fraught with happiness! Fight, observant of the Kshatriya's duty! He that is dead knows no misery! On the other hand, such a one enjoys eternal bliss hereafter![56] Listen, ye Kshatriyas, ay, all of ye, that are assembled here! When the destroyer Yama spareth neither the hero nor the coward, who is there so foolish of understanding, although observant of a Kshatriya's vow like us, that would not fight?[57] Would ye place yourselves under the power of the angry foe Bhimasena? It behoveth ye not to abandon the duty observed by your sires and grandsires![58] There is no greater sin for a Kshatriya than flight from battle! There is no more blessed path for heaven, ye Kauravas, than the duty of battle! Slain in battle, ye warriors, enjoy heaven without delay!—'[59]

"Sanjaya continued,—'While even these words were being

uttered by thy son, the (Kaurava) warriors, exceedingly mangled, fled away on all sides, regardless of that speech.' "[10]

SECTION XCIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'The ruler of the Madras then, beholding thy son employed in rallying the troops, with fear depicted in his countenance and with heart stupified with grief, said these words unto Duryodhana.[1]

" 'Calya said,—Behold this awful field of battle, O hero, covered with heaps of slain men and steeds and elephants! Some tracts are covered with fallen elephants, huge as mountains, exceedingly mangled, their vital limbs pierced with shafts, lying helplessly, deprived of life, their armour displaced, and the weapons, the shields and the swords with which they were equipt lying scattered about! These fallen animals resemble huge mountains riven with thunder, with their rocks and lofty trees and herbs loosened from them and lying all around![2-3] The bells and iron hooks and lances and standards with which those huge creatures had been equipt are lying on the ground. Adorned with housings of gold, their bodies are now bathed in blood! Some tracts, again, are covered with fallen steeds, mangled with shafts, breathing hard in pain, and vomiting blood.[4] Some of them are sending forth soft wails of pain, some are biting the Earth with rolling eyes, and some are uttering piteous neighs. Portions of the field are covered with horsemen and elephant-warriors fallen off from their animals, and with bands of car-warriors forcibly thrown down from their cars.[5] Some of them are already dead and some are on the point of death. Covered also with the corpses of men and steeds and elephants as also with crushed cars and other huge elephants with their trunks and limbs cut off, the Earth has become awful to look at like the great *Vaitarani* (skirting the domains of Yama).[6] Indeed, the Earth looketh even such, being strewn with other elephants, stretched on the ground with trembling bodies and broken tusks, vomiting blood, uttering soft cries in pain, deprived of the warriors on their backs, divested of the armour that covered their limbs, and reft of the foot-soldiers

that protected their flanks and rear, and with their quivers and banners and standards displaced, their bodies adorned with housings of gold struck deep with the weapons of the foe![7] The Earth looked like the cloud-covered welkin in consequence of being strewn with the fallen bodies of elephant-warriors and horse-men and car-warriors, all of great fame, and of foot-soldiers slain by foes fighting face to face, and divested of armour and ornaments and attire and weapons.[8] Covered with thousands of fallen combatants mangled with arrows, fully exposed to the view, and deprived of consciousness,—with some amongst them whose breaths were returning slowly,—the Earth seemed as if covered with many extinguished fires.[9] With those foremost of heroes among both the Kurus and the Srinjayas, pierced with arrows and deprived of life by Pārtha and Karna, the Earth seemed as if strewn with blazing plants fallen from the firmament, or like the nocturnal firmament itself bespangled with blazing planets of serene light.[10]* The shafts sped from the arms of Karna and Arjuna, piercing through the bodies of elephants and steeds and men and quickly stilling their lives, entered the Earth like mighty snakes entering their holes with heads bent downwards.[11] The Earth has become impassable with heaps of slain men and steeds and elephants, and with cars broken with the shafts of Dhananjaya and Adhiratha's son and with the numberless shafts themselves shot by them![12]† Strewn with well-equipt cars crushed by means of mighty shafts along with the warriors and the weapons and the

---

* Verses 9 and 10 as in the Bengal texts do not agree with those in the Bombay edition In every *sloka* from 1 to 8 diverse differences of reading occur. I have mainly followed the Bengal texts, making an occasional correction by the aid of the Bombay edition.—T.

† Like the previous verses, this also, as read in the Bombay edition, differs in many respects from the form in which it occurs in the Bengal texts. Instead of *Gajairasankhais* of the Bengal texts, the Bombay reading is *Gajaischa-sankhe*. Then for *Avabhinnais* the Bombay reading is *Apaviddhais*. There are other differences again which need not be mentioned. The fact is, it is tiresome to note all or even many of the variations in reading which one meets with by comparing the verses of this section as they occur in the Bengal and the Bombay texts.—T.

standards upon them,—cars, that is, with their traces broken, their joints separated, their axles and yokes and *Trivenus* reduced to fragments, their wheels loosened, their *Upashkaras* destroyed, their *Anukarsnas* cut into pieces, the fastenings of their quivers cut off, and their niches (for the accommodation of drivers) broken,—strewn with those vehicles adorned with gems and gold, the Earth looks like the firmament overspread with autumnal clouds.[13-14] In consequence of well-equipt royal cars deprived of riders and dragged by fleet steeds, as also of men and elephants and cars and horses that fled very quickly, the army has been broken in diverse ways.[15] Spiked maces with golden bells, battle-axes, sharp lances, heavy clubs, mallets, bright unsheathed swords, and maces covered with cloth of gold, have fallen on the field.[16] Bows decked with ornaments of gold, and shafts equipt with beautiful wings of pure gold, and bright unsheathed rapiers of excellent temper, and lances, and scimitars bright as gold,[17] and umbrellas, and fans, and conchs, and arms decked with excellent flowers and gold, and housings of elephants, and standards, and car-fences, and diadems, and necklaces, and brilliant crowns,[18] and yak-tails lying about, O king, and garlands luminous with corals and pearls, and chaplets for the head, and bracelets for both the wrist and the upper arms, and collars for the neck with strings of gold,[19] and diverse kinds of costly diamonds and gems and pearls, and bodies brought up in great luxury, and heads beautiful as the moon, are lying scattered about.[20] Abandoning their bodies and enjoyments and robes and diverse kinds of agreeable pleasures, and acquiring great merit for the devotion they showed to the virtues of their order, they have speedily gone in a blaze of fame to regions of bliss![21] Turn back, O Duryodhana! Let the troops retire! O king, O giver of honors, proceed towards thy camp! There, the Sun is hanging low in the welkin, O lord! Remember, O ruler of men, that thou art the cause of all this![22]—Having said these words, unto Duryodhana, Calya, with heart filled with grief, stopped. Duryodhana, however, at that time, deeply afflicted and deprived of his senses, and with eyes bathed in tears, wept for the Suta's son, saying,—*Oh Karna! Oh Karna!*[23]—Then all the kings

headed by Drona's son, repeatedly comforting Duryodhana, proceeded towards the camp, frequently looking back at the lofty standard of Arjuna that seemed to be ablaze with his fame.[24] At that terrible hour when everything around looked so resplendent, the Kauravas, all of whom had resolved to repair to the other world, their features incapable of recognition owing to the blood that covered them, beholding the Earth, that was drenched with the blood flowing from the bodies of men and steeds and elephants, look like a courtezan attired in crimson robes and floral garlands and ornaments of gold, were unable, O king, to stand there![25-26] Filled with grief at the slaughter of Karna, they indulged in loud lamentations, saying, —*Alas, Karna! Alas, Karna!*—Beholding the Sun assume a crimson hue, all of them speedily proceeded towards their camp.[27] As regards Karna, though slain and pierced with gold-winged shafts whetted on stone and equipt with feathers dyed in blood and sped from *Gāndiva*, yet that hero, lying on the ground, looked resplendent like the Sun himself of bright rays.[28] It seemed that the illustrious Surya, ever kind to his worshippers, having touched with his rays the gore-drenched body of Karna, proceeded, with aspect crimson in grief, to the other ocean from desire of a bath.[29]* Thinking so, the throngs of celestials and *Rishis* (that had come there for witnessing the battle) left the scene for proceeding to their respective abodes. The large crowd of other beings also, entertaining the same thought, went away, repairing as they chose to heaven or the Earth.[30] The foremost of Kuru heroes also, having beheld that wonderful battle between Dhananjaya and Adhiratha's son, which had inspired all living creatures with dread, proceeded (to

* The beauty of this simile will be understood when it is remembered that the custom, observed to this day in India by the relatives of a dead person, is to bathe in a tank or stream soon after receiving the news of death. If again the corpse is touched, the same rite of purification has to be performed. Here, Surya is the sire of Karna, and the latter had also been a devout worshipper of that sire. The setting Sun is, therefore, represented as proceeding to the western ocean for a bath, having witnessed the death of his child and having also touched the body of that child with his rays, the Sanskrit word for ray being *Kara* which stands also for the hand.—T.

their nightly quarters), filled with wonder and applauding (the encounter).[31] Though his armour had been cut off with arrows, and though he had been slain in course of that dreadful fight, still that beauty of features which the son of Rādhā possessed did not abandon him when dead.[32] Indeed, every one beheld the body of the hero to resemble heated gold. It seemed to be endued with life and possessed of the effulgence of fire or the Sun.[33] All the warriors, O king, were inspired with fright at sight of the Suta's son lying dead on the field, like other animals at sight of the lion.[34] Indeed, though dead, that tiger among men seemed ready to utter his commands. Nothing, in that illustrious dead, seemed changed.[35] Clad in a beautiful attire, and possessed of a neck that was very beautiful, the Suta's son owned a face which resembled the full moon in splendour.[36] Adorned with diverse ornaments and decked with *Angadas* made of bright gold, Vaikartana, though slain, lay stretched like a gigantic tree adorned with branches and twigs.[37] Indeed, that tiger among men lay like a heap of pure gold, or like a blazing fire extinguished with the water of Pārtha's shafts.[38] Even as a blazing conflagration is extinguished when it comes in contact with water, the Karna-conflagration was extinguished by the Pārtha-cloud in that battle.[39] Having shot showers of arrows and scorched the ten points of the compass, that tiger among men, viz., Karna, along with his sons, was quieted by Pārtha's energy. He left the world, taking away with him that blazing glory of his own which he had earned on Earth by fair fight.[40] Having scorched the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas with the energy of his weapons, having poured showers of arrows and burnt the hostile divisions,[41] having, indeed, heated the universe like the thousand-rayed Surya of great beauty, Karna, otherwise called Vaikartana, left the world, with his sons and followers.[42] Thus fell that hero who was a *Kalpa* tree unto these swarms of birds represented by suitors. Solicited by suitors he always said,—*I give*—but never the words—*I have not*![43]—The righteous always regarded him as a righteous person. Even such was Vrisha who fell in single combat! All the wealth of that high-souled person had been dedicated to the Brāhmanas. There was

nothing, not even his life, that he could not give away unto the Brāhmanas.[44] He was ever the favourite of ladies, exceedingly liberal, and a mighty car-warrior. Burnt by the weapons of Pārtha, he attained to the highest end.[45]* He, relying upon whom thy son had provoked hostilities, thus went to heaven, taking away with him the hope of victory, the happiness, and the armour of the Kauravas![46] When Karna fell, the rivers stood still. The Sun set with a pale hue. The planet Mercury, the son of Soma, assuming the hue of fire or the Sun, appeared to course through the firmament in a slanting direction.[47] The firmament seemed to be rent in twain; the Earth uttered loud roars; violent and awful winds began to blow. All the points of the horizon, covered with smoke, seemed to be ablaze. The great oceans were agitated and uttered awful sounds.[48] The mountains with their forests began to tremble, and all creatures, O sire, felt pain. The planet Jupiter, afflicting the constellation *Rohini*, assumed the hue of the Moon or the Sun.[49] Upon the fall of Karna, the subsidiary points also of the compass became ablaze. The welkin became enveloped in darkness. The Earth trembled. Meteors of blazing splendour fell. *Rākshasas* and other wanderers of the night became filled with joy.[50] When Arjuna, with that razor-faced shaft, struck off Karna's head adorned with a face beautiful as the Moon, then, O king, loud cries of *Oh* and *Alas* were heard of creatures in heaven, in the welkin, and on the Earth.[51] Having in battle slain his foe Karna who was worshipped by the gods, the *Gandharvas*, and human beings, Prithā's son Arjuna looked resplendent in his energy like the deity of a thousand eyes after the slaughter of Vritra.[52] Then riding on that car of theirs whose rattle resembled the roar of the clouds and whose splendour was like that of the meridian Sun of the autumnal sky, which was adorned with banners and equipt with a standard incessantly producing an awful noise, whose

---

* Some of the Bengal texts read the first line of 45 differently. If that reading be adopted, the translation would run thus,—'He was ever the favorite of men. He was exceedingly liberal. Indeed, he who had always loved to give away, at last met with death.'—T.

effulgence resembled that of the snow or the Moon or the conch or the crystal,[53] and whose steeds were like those of Indra himself, those two foremost of men, viz., the son of Pāndu and the crusher of Keçin, whose energy resembled that of the great Indra, and who were adorned with gold and pearls and gems and diamonds and corals, and who were like fire or the Sun in splendour, fearlessly careered over the field of battle with great speed, like Vishnu and Vāsava mounted on the same chariot.[54-55] Forcibly divesting the enemy of his splendour by means of the twang of *Gāndiva* and the slaps of their palms, and slaying the Kurus with showers of shafts, the Ape-bannered Arjuna, and the Garuda-bannered Krishna,[56] both of whom were possessed of immeasurable prowess,—those two foremost of men,—filled with joy, took up with their hands their loud-sounding conchs adorned with gold and white as snow, and placing them against their lips, blew them simultaneously with those beautiful mouths of theirs, piercing the hearts of their foes with the sound.[57] The blare of *Pāncha-janya* and that of *Devadatta* filled the Earth, the welkin, and heaven.[58] At the sound of the heroic Mādhava's conch as also at that of Arjuna's, all the Kauravas, O best of kings, became filled with fright.[59] Those foremost of men, causing the forests, the mountains, the rivers, and the points of the compass to resound with the blare of their conchs, and filling the army of thy son with fright, gladdened Yudhishthira therewith.[60] As soon as the Kauravas heard the blare of those conchs that were thus being blown, all of them left the field with great speed, deserting the ruler of the Madras and the chief of the Bharatas, O Bhārata, viz., Duryodhana.[61] Then diverse creatures, uniting together, congratulated Dhananjaya, that hero shining resplendent on the field of battle, as also Janārddana, those two foremost of men who then looked like a couple of risen Suns.[62] Pierced with Karna's arrows, those two chastisers of foes, viz., Achyuta and Arjuna, looked resplendent like the bright and many-rayed Moon and the Sun risen after dispelling a gloom.[63] Casting off those arrows, those two mighty warriors, both endued with unrivalled prowess, surrounded by well-wishers and friends, happily entered

their own encampment, like the lords Vāsava and Vishnu duly invoked by sacrificial priests.[64]* Upon the slaughter of Karna in that dreadful battle, the gods, *Gandharvas*, human beings, *Chāranas*, great *Rishis*, *Yakshas*, and great *Nāgas*, worshipped Krishna and Arjuna with great respect and wished them victory (in all things).[65] Having received all their friends then, each according to his age, and applauded by those friends in return for their incomparable feats, the two heroes rejoiced with their friends, like the chief of the celestials and Vishnu after the overthrow of Vali.'"[66]

SECTION XCV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Upon the fall of Karna otherwise called Vaikartana, the Kauravas, afflicted with fear, fled away on all sides, casting their eyes on empty space.[1] Indeed, hearing that the heroic Karna had been slain by the foe, all thy troops, stupified with fear, broke and fled in all directions.[2]† Then, O king, the Kuru leaders, filled with anxiety, desired to withdraw their troops, O Bhārata, whose flight had been endeavoured to be checked by thy son.[3] Understanding their wishes, thy son, O bull of Bharata's race, acted according to the advice of Calya, withdrew the army.[4] Then Kritavarman, O Bhārata, surrounded by the unslaughtered remnant of the Nārāyana troops of thy army, quickly proceeded towards the encampment.[5] Surrounded by a thousand Gāndhāras, Cakuni, beholding the son of Adhiratha slain, proceeded quickly towards the encampment.[6] Caradwat's son Kripa, O king, surrounded by the large elephant force that resembled a mass of clouds, proceeded quickly towards the encampment.[7] The heroic Açwatthāman, repeatedly drawing deep breaths at sight of the victory of the Pāndavas, proceeded quickly towards the encampment.[8] Surrounded by the unslaughtered remnant of the *Samsaptakas* which was still a large force, Suçarman also, O king, proceeded, casting his

---

* Some of the Bengal texts read *Sadasyanindyau* which is unmeaning. Of course, the correct reading is *Sadasyapūtau*.—T.

† The Bombay edition reads the second line of 2 differently.—T.

eyes on those terrified soldiers.[9]* King Duryodhana, deeply afflicted and deprived of everything, proceeded, his heart filled with grief, and a prey to many cheerless thoughts.[10] Calya, that foremost of car-warriors, proceeded towards the camp, on that car deprived of standard, casting his eyes on all sides.[11] The other mighty car-warriors of the Bharata army, still numerous, fled quickly, afflicted with fear, filled with shame, and almost deprived of their senses.[12] Indeed, seeing Karna overthrown, all the Kauravas fled away quickly, afflicted and anxious with fear, trembling, and with voices choked with tears.[13] The mighty car-warriors of the Kuru army fled away in fear, O chief of Kuru's race, some applauding Arjuna, some applauding Karna.[14] Amongst those thousands of warriors of thy army in that great battle, there was not a single person who had still any wish for fight.[15] Upon the fall of Karna, O monarch, the Kauravas became hopeless of life, kingdom, wives, and wealth.[16] Guiding them with care, O lord, thy son, filled with grief and sorrow, set his heart upon resting them for the night.[17] Those great car-warriors also, O monarch, accepting his orders with bent heads, retired from the field with cheerless hearts and pale faces.' "[18]

Section XCVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'After Karna had thus been slain and the Kaurava troops had fled away, he of Daçārha's race, embracing Pārtha from joy, said unto him these words:[1]—Vritra was slain by the wielder of the thunder-bolt. Karna hath been slain by thee. Men will talk (in the same breath) of the slaughter of Vritra and Karna in awful battle.[2] Vritra was slain in battle by the deity of great energy with his thunder. Karna hath been slain by thee with bow and sharp arrows.[3] Go, O son of Kunti, and represent, O Bhārata, unto king Yudhishthira the just, this prowess of thine that is capable of procuring thee great fame and that hath become well-known in the world.[4] Having repre-

---

* The Bengal reading is *Bhayārddितān*, the Bombay reading, *Bhayārddितās*. I adopt the former.—T.

sented unto king Yudhishthira thej ust this slaughter of Karna in battle for compassing which thou hadst been endeavouring for a long course of years, thou wilt be freed from the debt thou owest to the king![5] During the progress of the battle between thyself and Karna, the son of Dharma once came for beholding the field.[6] Having, however, been deeply and exceedingly pierced (with arrows), he could not stay in battle. The king, that bull among men, then went back to his tent.[7]—Pārtha answered Keçava, that bull of Yadu's race, saying,—So be it![—]The latter then cheerfully caused the car of that foremost of car-warriors to turn back.[8] Having said these words unto Arjuna, Krishna addressed the soldiers, saying,—Blessed be ye, stand all of ye carefully, facing the foe![9]—Unto Dhrishtadyumna and Yudhāmanyu and the twin sons of Mādri and Vrikodara and Yuyudhāna, Govinda said,[10]—Ye kings, until we come back having informed the king of Karna's slaughter by Arjuna, stand ye here with care![11]—Having received the permission of those heroes, he then set out for the quarters of the king. With Pārtha in his company, Govinda beheld Yudhishthira,[12] that tiger among kings, lying on an excellent bed of gold. Both of them then, with great joy, touched the feet of the king.[13] Beholding their joy and the extraordinary wounds on their bodies, Yudhishthira regarded the son of Rādhā to be dead and rose quickly from his bed.[14] That chastiser of foes, viz., the mighty-armed monarch, having risen from his bed, repeatedly embraced Vāsudeva and Arjuna with affection. That descendant of Kuru's race then asked Vāsudeva (the particulars of Karna's death).[15] Then the sweet-speeched Vāsudeva, that descendant of the Yadu race, spoke to him of Karna's death exactly as it had happened.[16] Smiling then, Krishna, otherwise called Achyuta, joined his palms and addressed king Yudhishthira whose foes had been killed, saying,[17]—By good luck, the wielder of *Gāndiva*, and Vrikodara the son of Pāndu, and thyself, and the two sons of Mādri, are all safe, having been freed from this battle that has been so destructive of heroes and that made the very hair of the body to stand on end![18] Do thou those acts, O son of Pāndu, which should next be done! The Suta's son Karna, possessed of great might

and otherwise called Vaikartana, hath been slain! By good luck, victory hath become thine, O king of kings! By good luck, thou growest, O son of Pāndu![19] The Earth drinketh today the blood of that Suta's son, that wretch among men, who had laughed at the dice-won Krishnā![20] That foe of thine, O bull of Kuru's race, lieth today on the bare ground, pierced all over with arrows. Behold that tiger among men, pierced and mangled with shafts![21] O thou of mighty arms, rule now, with care, this Earth that is divested of all thy foes, and enjoy with ourselves, all kinds of enjoyable articles!—'[22]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having heard these words of the high-souled Keçava, Yudhishthira, with great joy, worshipped in return that hero of Daçārha's race.—*Good luck, Good luck,* —were the words, O monarch, that he said.[23] And he added,—It is not wonderful, O mighty-armed one, in thee, O son of Devaki, that Pārtha, having obtained thee for his charioteer, should achieve feats that are even superhuman![24]—Then that chief of Kuru's race, that righteous son of Prithā, taking hold of Keçava's right arm adorned with *Angadas*, and addressing both Keçava and Arjuna, said,[25]—Nārada told me that ye two are the gods Nara and Nārāyana, those ancient and best of *Rishis*, that are ever employed in the preservation of righteousness![26] Gifted with great intelligence, the master Krishna-Dwaipāyana, the highly blessed Vyāsa, also, hath repeatedly told me this celestial history![27] Through thy influence, O Krishna, this Dhananjaya the son of Pāndu, facing his foes, hath vanquished them, without ever turning back from any of them![28] Victory, and not defeat, we are certain to have, since thou hast accepted the driversship of Pārtha in battle![29]—Having said these words, King Yudhishthira the just, that tiger among men, mounting his car adorned with gold and having steeds, of ivory white and black tails and fleet as thought harnessed unto it, and surrounded by many Pāndava troops, set out, conversing pleasantly with Krishna and Arjuna along the way, for beholding the field of battle on which thousands of incidents had taken place.[30-31]* Conversing with those two heroes, viz.,

* Differences of reading are noticeable between these two verses as

Mādhava and Phālguna, the king beheld Karna, that bull among men, lying on the field of battle.[32] Indeed, king Yudhisthira beheld Karna pierced all over with arrows like a *Kadamva* flower with straight filaments all around its body.[33] Yudhishthira beheld Karna illuminated by thousands of golden lamps filled with perfumed oil.[34] Having beheld Karna with his son slain and mangled with shafts sped from *Gāndiva*, king Yudhishthira[35] repeatedly looked at him before he could believe his eyes. He then applauded those tigers among men, viz., Mādhava and Phālguna, saying,[36]—O Govinda, today I have become king of the Earth, with my brothers, in consequence of thyself of great wisdom having become my protector and lord![37] Hearing of the slaughter of that tiger among men, viz., the proud son of Rādhā, the wicked-souled son of Dhritarāstra will be filled with despair,[38] as regards both life and kingdom! Through thy grace, O bull among men, we have acquired our objects![39] By good luck, victory hath been thine, O Govinda! By good luck, the enemy hath been slain! By good luck, the wielder of *Gāndiva*, the son of Pāndu, hath been crowned with victory![40] Thirteen years we have passed in wakefulness and great sorrow! O thou of mighty arms, through thy grace, we will sleep happily this night![41]—In this way, O ruler of men, king Yudhishthira the just praised Janārddana greatly as also Arjuna, O monarch![42]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Beholding Karna with his son slain with Pārtha's shafts, that perpetuater of Kuru's race, viz., Yudhishthira, regarded himself as reborn.[43] The kings (in the Pāndava army),—great car-warriors all—filled with joy, approached Kunti's son Yudhishthira and gladdened him greatly.[44] Nakula, and Sahadeva, and Vrikodara the son of Pāndu, and Sātyaki, O king, that foremost of car-warriors among the Vrishnis,[45] and Dhrishtadyumna, and Cikhandin, and others among the Pāndus, the Pānchālas, and the Srinjayas, worshipped the son of Kunti after the slaughter of the Suta's son.[46] Extolling king Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu, those delighters

---

occurring in the Bengal and the Bombay texts. I have adopted the Bengal readings.—T.

in battle, those affectual smiters, those heroes possessed of sureness of aim and longing for victory, also praised those scorchers of foes, viz., the two Krishnas, with speeches fraught with panegyrics. Then those great car-warriors, filled with delight, proceeded towards their own camp.[47-48] Thus occurred that great carnage, making the hair to stand on end, in consequence, O king, of thy evil policy! Why dost thou grieve for it now?' "[49]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing those evil tidings, the Kuru king Dhritarāshtra suddenly fell down on the ground from his excellent seat.[50] Similarly, the royal lady Gāndhāri of great foresight fell down. She indulged in diverse lamentations for the slaughter of Karna in battle.[51] Then Vidura and Sanjaya both raised the fallen monarch and began to comfort him.[52] Similarly the Kuru ladies raised Gāndhāri.[53] Tinking destiny and necessity to be all powerful, that royal ascetic, under that great grief, seemed to lose his senses.[54] His heart filled with anxiety and sorrow, the king, however, did not again swoon away. Comforted by them, he remained silent, indulging in melancholy meditations.[55] He that reads of this great battle, which is like unto a sacrifice, between the high-souled Dhananjaya and Adhiratha's son, as also he that hears this battle read, both obtain, O Bhārata, the fruit of a great sacrifice duly performed.[56] The learned say that the holy and the eternal Vishnu is Sacrifice, and each of those other gods, viz., Agni, Wind, Soma, and Surya, is so. Therefore, he that will, without malice, hear or recite this *Parvan*, will be happy and capable of attaining to every region of bliss.[57] Filled with devotion, men always read this sacred and first of *Samhitās*. They that do so, rejoice, obtaining wealth, and grain, and fame.[58] A man must, therefore, ever hear it without malice. He that does so will obtain all kinds of happiness. With that foremost of persons, Vishnu, and the illustrious Self-born, and Bhava also, become pleased.[59] A Brāhmana, by reading it, would obtain the fruit of having studied the *Vedas*; a Kshatriya obtains strength and victory in battle; Vaiçyas would obtain immense wealth, and Cudras would obtain health and freedom from disease.[60] Then again the illustrious Vishnu

is eternal. And since it is that god who hath been glorified in this *Parvan*, it is for this that the man reading or hearing it becometh happy and acquireth all the objects of his heart. These words of the great *Rishi* (Vyāsa) can never be untrue![61] The merit that may be attained by listening to the recitation of the *Karna Parvan* is equal to his who giveth away unceasingly for a whole year good cows with calves."[62]

FINIS KARNA PARVA.

KARNA PARVA.

PAGE.

After Drona's death the Kuru warriors in grief, with Duryodhana at their head, repair to Drona's son 1
Karna and Duryodhana and Dusçāsana and Cakuni pass the night sleeplessly ... ... ib
When morning comes, they rise and perform their customary rites ... ... ib
Arraying their troops they proceed to battle, making Karna their leader 2
The Pāndavas also proceed to battle ... ... ib
Karna fights for two days and is then slain by Arjuna ib
Sanjaya repairs to Hastināpore and informs Dhritarāshtra of Karna's fall ... ... ib
Janamejaya enquires about the details of the battle ib
Sanjaya repairing to the Kuru city accosts king Dhritarāshtra 3
Dhritarāshtra's lament ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires of Sanjaya about the details of the battle 4
Sanjaya begins his narration 5
The cheerlessness of the Kuru army upon the fall of Drona ib
Duryodhana's spirited address ... ... ib
Karna made generalissimo 5
Karna slain by Arjuna on the second day ... ib
Hearing of Karna's fall in battle Dhritarāshtra swoons away ib
Dhritarāshtra and the ladies restored to their senses ib
The old king enquires whether Duryodhana is still alive ib
Sanjaya informs the king of Dusçāsana's slaughter ... 8
Dhritarāshtra enquires of Sanjaya as to who are dead and who still living among both the Kurus and the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Sanjaya recounts the names of those amongst the Kurus that have fallen ... ... ib

PAGE.

Dhritarāshtra enquires about those of the Pāndava side that have fallen 12
Sanjaya recounts the names of the Pāndava warriors that have fallen in battle ... ... ib
Sanjaya recounts the names of the Kuru warriors that are still alive 15
Dhritarāshtra, foreseeing defeat, once more swoons away 17
Dhritarāshtra's lament for Karna 18
Sanjaya endeavours to comfort the old king ... 20
Continuation of Dhritarāshtra's lament ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the particulars of the battle 27
The Kauravas retire to their encampment after Drona's fall ib
They hold a consultation in the night ... ... ib
Duryodhana enquires of his adviseres as to what should next be done 28
Açwatthāman proposes the installation of Karna as generalissimo ... ... ib
Duryodhana's address to Karna, offering the command of the Kaurava army ... ... ib
Karna accepts the command and promises to slay the Pāndavas ... ... ib
The installation of Karna in the command of the army ib
The Brāhmanas bless Karna ... ... ib
The Kaurava army arrayed for battle 31
The *Makara* array and its details 32
Yudhishthira asks Arjuna to array the Pāndava army 33
The Pāndava troops arrayed in the form of a semi-circle ib
The commencement of battle 34
The fierce slaughter on both sides 35
The encounter between Bhima and Kshemadhurti ... ib
Kshemadhurti slain by Bhima 38
Diverse Pāndava warriors encounter diverse Kuru warriors ib
Encounter between Sātyaki and the two Kaikaya princes ib
Anuvinda slain by Sātyaki 39
Vinda also slain by Ditto 40
Encounter between Crutakarman and Chitrasena the ruler of the Abhisāras 41

PAGE.

Chitrasena slain by Crutākarman 41
Encounter between Pritivindhya and Chitra ... ib
Encounter between Bhima and Drona's son ... 43
The *Siddhas* &c., in the sky applaud both the warriors 45
Bhima and Açwatthāman are both borne away insensible from the field 46
Fierce battle between Arjuna and the *Samsaptakas* ib
Açwatthāman challenges Arjuna 48
Encounter between Arjuna and Açwatthāman ... 49
The immense slaughter caused by Arjuna ... 50
Açwatthāman borne away from the fight by his steeds 53
The heroism of Dandadhāra 54
Arjuna encounters Dandadhāra ... ... ib
Dandadhāra slain by Arjuna 55
Arjuna slays Danda the brother of Dandadhāra ... ib
Arjuna once more proceeds against the *Samsaptakas* ib
The *Samsaptakas* slaughtered by Arjuna ... 57
Krishna describes the dismal sights on the field of battle 58
The heroism of Pāndya 61
Pāndya slaughters the Kuru army ... ... ib
Encounter between Pāndya and Açwatthāman ... 62
Pāndya slain by Açwatthāman 65
The heroism of Karna 66
The carnage caused by Karna 67
Diverse encounters between diverse heroes ... 69
Encounter between Sahadeva and Dusçāsana ... 71
Sahadeva vanquishes Dusçāsana 72
Karna encounters Nakula ... ... ib
Karna defeats Nakula and lets him escape ... 75
Karna makes a great slaughter among the Pānchālas 76
Yuyutsu encounters Uluka 77
Yuyutsu vanquished by Uluka 78
The heroism of Cakuni ... ... ib
Kripa encounters Dhrishtadyumna 80
Dhrishtadyumna confounded before Kripa ... 81
Dhrishtadyumna retreats before Kripa ... ... ib
Kritavarman encounters Cikhandin ... .. ib

PAGE.

Cikhandin worsted by Kritavarman 82
Arjuna encounters diverse heroes 83
Encounter between Duryodhana and Yudhishthira ... 85
The great carnage on the field 87
The encounter between Yudhishthira and Duryodhana continued 89
Duryodhana swoons away 91
Bhima prevents Yudhishthira from slaying Duryodhana ib
Diverse encounters 92
The Kuru army defeated by Arjuna and the other Pāndava heroes 94
The Kaurava army at evening 95
Karna assures Duryodhana that he would slay Arjuna on the morrow ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's grief upon hearing of the defeat of the Kurus 96
Sanjaya rebukes Dhritarāshtra by reminding him of his evil acts 97
When morning comes, Karna repeats his pledge about the slaughter of Arjuna ... ... ib
Karna desires to have Calya for driving his car ... 99
Duryodhana approaches Calya and humbly solicits him to become Karna's driver in that day's battle ... 100
Calya takes offence at the proposal 102
Duryodhana repeats his request in words that do honor to Calya 104
Calya accepts the drivership of Karna's car on the under standing that he (Calya) would utter before Karna whatever words he would think proper ... 105
Duryodhana recites to Calya the history of the triple city and of Brahman's having accepted the drivership of Mahādeva's car on the occasion of the latter's burning that abode of the *Daityas* ... ... ib
Duryodhana recites the history of Karna's preceptor in arms, viz., Rāma and his austerities and the grant of weapons unto him by Civa 118
Duryodhana eulogises Calya as superior to Krishna 123

PAGE.

Calya repeats his promise about holding the reins of Karna's steeds during the second day's battle ... 123
Calya and Karna ride the same car 125
Karna brags about his ability to slay Arjuna ... 126
Calya endeavours to inspire Karna with fear by eulogising the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Karna's boast about his competence to slay Arjuna... 127
Karna expresses his firm determination of encountering Arjuna whatever the consequences 129
Calya again eulogises Arjuna and taunts Karna ... 130
Karna addresses every Pāndava soldier, offering rich rewards in case any of them succeeded in pointing out Arjuna to him in that day's battle 131
Calya scornfully laughs at Karna's offer, answering him that he (Karna) would have a sight of Arjuna without the trouble of seeking him 133
Calya asks Karna to abandon his desire for a single combat with Arjuna 134
Karna repeats his resolution of encountering Arjuna and slaying him ... ... ib
Calya insults Karna in a long speech ... ... ib
Karna's dignified reply 136
Karna's description of the practices of the Madrakas 137
Calya, in reply, recites the story of the crow and the swan 141
The moral of the story as applied to Karna ... 145
Karna recounts to Calya the circumstances of the curse denounced on him by his preceptor Rāma ... 147
He repeats his resolution about achieving extraordinary feats that day 148
Karna suspects Calya of secret friendship with the Pāndavas 149
Karna recounts the circumstances of another curse denounced on him by a Brāhmana whose calf he had killed innocently while practising weapons in the forest 150
Karna again speaks in disparagement of the Madrakas and their customs and pratices 152

PAGE.

Calya speaks in disparagement of the Angas over whom Karna rules... 159
Duryodhana restores peace between Karna and Calya 160
Karna proceeds to battle and assails Yudhishthira ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the disposition of the Kuru forces 161
Sanjaya describes the Kaurava array ... ... ib
At sight of the Kuru army, Yudhishthira asks Arjuna to do what is needful 162
Calya points out to Karna the car of Arjuna ... 163
Calya draws Karna's attention to diverse portents of an unfavorable nature ... ... ib
Karna points out to Calya how the *Samsaptakas* threatened to slay Arjuna 165
Calya points out to Karna the other heroes of the Pāndava army 166
Arjuna assails the *Samsaptakas* with vigor ... 167
Karna assails the Pāndava host with vigor and afflicts Yudhishthira greatly 168
Dhritarāshtra enquires about the particulars of Karna's encounter with Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Karna attacks the Pānchālas and makes a great slaughter 169
Diverse Pāndava heroes assail Karna and his sons ... 170
Karna escapes from the ring made around him by the Pāndavas 173
Karna strikes Yudhishthira with many arrows ... ib
Cikhandin and Sātyaki and many other Pāndava warriors proceed to the rescue of the king ... ... ib
Supported by the Kauravas Karna once more penetrates the Pāndava array ... ... ib
Karna rushes towards Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Yudhisthira addresses Karna in rage 174
Encounter between Karna and Yudhishthira ... ib
The Pāndava leaders assail Karna 175
Karna invokes the *Brāhma* weapon ... ... ib
Continuance of the encounter between Karna and Yudhishthira 176
Karna makes Yudhishthira carless ... ... ib

PAGE.

Yudhishthira retreats before Karna 176
Karna pursues Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Calya counsels Karna not to seize Yudhishthira ... ib
Karna addresses Yudhishthira in an insulting speech and lets him escape 177
Karna makes a great slaughter of the Pāndava forces ib
Yudhishthira urges his warriors to proceed against Karna ib
The Pāndavas headed by Bhimasena proceed against Karna ib
The fierce battle fought between the Kauravas and the Pāndavas 178
The Kauravas break and fly away 179
The Kuru leaders assail Bhima 180
Karna attacks Bhima in the hope that Arjuna would then come up 181
Bhima makes Karna senseless who is thereupon borne away by Calya from the fight 183
Urged by Duryodhana diverse Kuru leaders assail Bhima ib
Bhima slays the Kauravas ... ... ib
Bhima slays five sons of Dhritarāshtra, viz., Vivitsu, Vikata, Saha, Nanda, and Upananda ... 184
Karna once more encounters Bhima ... ... ib
Karna makes Bhima carless 186
Bhima jumps down with his mace in hand ... ib
Bhima slaughters the Kaurava elephants and other forces with his mace ... ... ib
Karna once more assails Yudhishthira and forces him to retreat 187
Bhima, mounting on another car, again proceeds against Karna ... ... ib
Karna turns back from the pursuit of Yudhishthira to meet Bhima... ... ... ib
Sātyaki supports Bhima ... ... ib
Fierce battle between the two sides ... ... ib
Encounter between Arjuna and the *Samsaptakas* ... 191
Arjuna invokes the *Aindra* weapon 193
The *Samsaptakas* inspired with fear 194
Diverse encounters between diverse heroes ... ib

PAGE.

Kritavarman defeated by Dhrishtadyumna ... 197
The heroism of Açwatthāman ... ... ib
Karna slaughters the Pāndavas 200
Bhima slaughters the Kauravas ... ... ib
Duryodhana encounters Nakula and Sahadeva ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna proceeds to the rescue of Nakula and Sahadeva 201
Duryodhana made carless by Dhrishtadyumna ... 202
Duryodhana rescued by his brothers by being taken away from the battle ... ... ib
Karna encounters the Pānchālas and makes a great slaughter among them 203
Karna routs the Pānchālas ... ... ib
The Pāndava leaders rush against Karna ... 204
Bhimasena slaughters the Kurus ... ... ib
Arjuna's address to Vāsudeva upon beholding Karna's prowess 205
Arjuna slays the Kauravas 206
Urged by Duryodhana the *Samsaptakas* once more proceed against Arjuna ... ... ib
Arjuna slays the younger brother of Sudakshina and then Sudakshina himself the chief of the Kāmvojas 207
Beholding the slaughter of the *Samsaptakas*, Drona's son proceeds against Arjuna 208
Fierce encounter between Arjuna and Drona's son ... ib
Krishna urges Arjuna not to spare Açwatthāman ... 209
Arjuna causes Açwatthāman to swoon away on his car ib
Açwatthāman borne away by his driver from the fight 210
Arjuna routs the *Samsaptakas*, Vrikodara the Kurus, and Karna the Pānchālas ... ... ib
Duryodhana's spirited address to the Kuru leaders ... ib
Açwatthāman vows to slay Dhrishtadyumna ... ib
The *Apsaras* rain flowers on the combatants ... 211
Arjuna feels anxious about the safety of Yudhishthira 212
Krishna, while proceeding in search of Yudhishthira, describes the field of battle to Arjuna ... ib

PAGE.

The Kurus and the Pāndavas once more proceed against each other 215
Dhrishtadyumna encounters Karna ... ... ib
Karna encounters Sātyaki 216
Drona's son rushes against Dhrishtadyumna ... ib
Encounter between Dhrishtadyumna and Açwatthāman 217
Dhrishtadyumna worsted in the fight ... ... ib
Arjuna rescues Dhrishtadyumna from Açwatthāman's hands 218
Arjuna makes Açwatthāman senseless on his car ... 219
Arjuna desires to once more proceed against the *Samsaptakas* ... ... ib
Krishna points Yudhishthira out to Arjuna ... ib
Krishna describes the battle to Arjuna 220
Krishna's surmise about Yudhishthira's death ... 221
Krishna describes the heroism and feats of Karna ... ib
Krishna urges Arjuna to assail Karna 222
Krishna informs Arjuna of Yudhishthira's safety ... 223
Krishna applauds the Pānchālas 224
Krishna describes the feats of Bhima ... ... ib
The *Samsaptakas* fly away before Arjuna ... 225
The Pāndavas attack the Kurus with great vigor ... 226
Encounter between Karna and Cikhandin ... ib
Cikhandin worsted in the fight and retreats before Karna 227
Encounter between Dhrishtadyumna and Dusçāsana ib
Dusçāsana applauded by the warriors for his heroism ib
Karna endeavours to rally the retreating Dhārtarāshtras 228
Uluka encounters Sātyaki ... ... ib
Sātyaki makes Cakuni carless ... ... ib
The Kuru army flies before Sātyaki 229
Bhima makes Duryodhana carless and bowless at which the latter flies away from Bhima's presence ... ib
Bhima assailed by the whole of the Kuru army ... ib
Bhima scatters his assailants before him ... ib
Urged by Duryodhana, the Kaurava troops rush against Yudhishthira for seizing him 231
The Pāndava leaders proceed to Yudhishthira's rescue ib

PAGE.
Karna holds them in check 231
Sahadeva wounds Duryodhana ... ... ib
Karna proceeds to rescue the Kuru king ... ib
Karna slaughters the troops of Yudhishthira and forces them to fly away ... ... ib
Yudhishthira attacks Karna with great vigor ... 232
Yudhishthira, severley wounded by Karna, orders his driver to retreat ... ... ib
The Kauravas proceed to seize Yudhishthira ... ib
The Kaikayas and the Pānchālas drive away the pursuers of Yudhishthira 233
Nakula and Sahadeva attack Karna for rescuing Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Karna pierces both Nakula and Sahadeva with many arrows ib
Karna pursues Yudhishthira and slays his steeds ... ib
Karna deprives Nakula of his car 234
Yudhishthira and Nakula ascend Sahadeva's car ... ib
Karna continues to strike Yudhishthira ... ib
Calya induces Karna to turn away from Yudhishthira by pointing out to him the danger of Duryodhana at the hands of Bhima ... ... ib
Yudhishthiras urges Nakula and Sahadeva to proceed to the aid of Bhimasena 235
Açwatthāman encounters Arjuna ... ... ib
Açwatthāman borne away from the field by his steeds ib
The Pāndavas, repeatedly charging the Kauravas, break them and cause them to fly away ... ... ib
Karna invokes the *Bhārgava* weapon 239
The awful effects of the *Bhārgava* weapon upon the Pāndava army ... ... ib
Arjuna expresses to Krishna his desire of encountering Karna 240
Krishna persuades Arjuna to first see Yudhishthira ib
Arjuna meets with Bhima and asks him to bring intelligence of Yudhishthira 241
Bhima fears to leave the battle for incurring the reproach of cowardice ... ... ib

PAGE.

Arjuna goes to see Yudhishthira in the Pāndava camp, upon Bhima agreeing to resist the *Samsaptakas* 241

Arjuna and Keçava arrive at the Pāndava camp and find Yudhishthira resting himself after the fatigue he had undergone 242

Yudhishthira, beholding Arjuna and Keçava return to the camp, hastily concludes that Karna has been slain ib

Yudhishthira gives expression to his feelings under the belief of Karna's death ... ... ib

Arjuna disabuses Yudhishthira of his impression, telling him the real motive of his arrival in camp ... 246

Yudhishthira censures Arjuna for what he believes to be an act of cowardice on Arjuna's part in having run away from the battle, leaving Bhima unsupported to contend against the Kauravas 248

In course of his speech, Yudhishthira several times invokes Arjuna to give up *Gāndiva* to somebody else 250

Arjuna draws his sword for striking off Yudhishthira's head in fulfilment of his vow about the person who would tell him to give up *Gāndiva* 251

Krishna's address to Arjuna on the nature of truth... 252

The story of Valāka who went to heaven by slaying an animal 254

The story of the *Rishi* who went to hell by telling the truth ... ... ib

Krishna suggests that Arjuna by insulting Yudhishthira, his superior, by addressing him as *thou*, would be regarded as fulfilling his vow about slaying the person that asked him to give up *Gāndiva* ... 258

Urged by Krishna, Arjuna insults Yudhisthira in a long speech 259

Having insulted Yudhishthira, Arjuna becomes despondent and desires to strike off his own head ... 261

Krishna urges Arjuna to utter his own praises, as self-praise is equal to self-destruction ... ... ib

Arjuna praises himself ... ... ib

Arjuna begs for Yudhishthira's forgiveness ... 262

PAGE.
Yudhishthira's sorrow 263
Krishna comforts Yudhishthira and induces him to forgive both himself and Arjuna ... ... ib
Yudhishthira and Arjuna reconciled 266
Arjuna proceeds for slaying Karna 267
Krishna's address to Arjuna for raising his spirits ... 268
Arjuna's reply to Krishna 279
Diverse encounters between diverse heroes ... 283
The heroism of Bhima 284
Bhima's driver takes an estimate of his weapons ... 285
Bhima's driver gives him the agreeable intelligence of Arjuna's return to battle 286
Arjuna assails the Kaurava army with great vigor ... 288
Bhima also assails the Kauravas 289
Duryodhana urges Cakuni to encounter Bhima ... 291
Cakuni rescued by Duryodhana 292
The Kauravas fly away and seek shelter in Karna's presence 293
Karna assails the Pānchālas 294
The Pāndavas slaughter the Kauravas and the Kauravas slaughter the Pāndavas 297
Arjuna causes a river of blood to set in on the field of battle ... ... ib
Arjuna asks Krishna to bear him towards Karna ... 298
Krishna proceeds at Arjuna's request ... ... ib
Beholding Arjuna advance, Calya addresses Karna ... ib
Calya urges Karna to slay Arjuna 299
Karna vows to slay Arjuna or be slain by him ... 300
Karna applauds Arjuna ... ... ib
Karna urges the Kuru leaders to assail Arjuna and Krishna and tire them with exertion ... 302
Arjuna receives the vast force of the assailants, without wavering ... ... ib
The great slaughter caused by Arjuna 303
Açwatthāman encounters Arjuna ... ... ib
Açwatthāman supported by Kripa and Kritavarman 304
All of them worsted by Arjuna ... ... ib

PAGE.

Arjuna proceeds to the rescue of Bhima ... 305
Arjuna despatches to Yama's abode the assailants of Bhima ... ... ib
Arjuna meets with Bhima and holds a consultation with him 306
Arjuna proceeds towards Karna 307
He is opposed by ten sons of Dhritarāshtra ... ib
Arjuna slays all of them ... ... ib
Arjuna assailed by ninety *Samsaptaka* warriors ... ib
Arjuna slays all his assailants 308
Arjuna attacked by the *Mlecchas* with their elephant division ... ... ib
Heavy slaughter made by Arjuna ... ... ib
Bhima causes a great carnage of the Kaurava troops 309
Bhima protects Arjuna's rear as Arjuna again proceeds towards Karna 310
Karna attacks the Pānchālas 311
Karna deprives Dhrishtadyumna and Sātyaki of their cars ib
Karna slays the Kaikaya prince Viçoka ... ib
Karna slays the Kaikaya commander Ugrakarman ... 312
Sātyaki slays Prasena the son of Karna ... ib
Karna slays Dhrishtadyumna's son ... ... ib
Krishna urges Arjuna to encounter Karna without delay ib
The Pānchāla leaders assail Karna furiously ... 313
They are all worsted by Karna ... ... ib
The five sons of Draupadi rescue them ... ... ib
Sātyaki assails Karna ... ... ib
Sātyaki assailed by Duryodhana and Kripa and Kritavarman ... ... ib
The Pānchālas vigorously support Sātyaki ... 314
The great slaughter caused in that battle ... ib
Vrikodara encounters Dusçāsana ... ... ib
Vrikodara slays Dusçāsana and drinks his blood ... 316
The Kaurava troops fly away at sight of Bhima ... 317
Yudhāmanyu slays Chitrasena the brother of Karna ib
Bhima's joy at having fulfilled his stern vow about the slaughter of Dusçāsana 318

PAGE.

Bhima assailed by ten sons of Dhritarāshtra ... 319
Bhima slays all of them ... ... ib
Karna struck with fear at the sight of Bhima's prowess ib
Calya encourages Karna ... ... ib
Encounter between Nakula and Vrishasena the son of Karna 320
Nakula, made carless by Vrishasena, mounts upon the vehicle of Bhima 321
Bhima urges Arjuna to proceed against Karna's son Vrishasena 322
Diverse Pāndava heroes encountered by diverse Kaurava heroes... 323
Arjuna encounters Vrishasena 325
Arjuna vows to slay Vrishasena in the sight of Karna 326
Vrishasena slain by Arjuna ... ... ib
Karna, beholding the slaughter of his son, rushes in rage against Arjuna 327
Krishna's address to Arjuna ... ... ib
Arjuna repeats his vow of slaying Karna or being slain by him 328
Sanjaya describes the two warriors, viz., Arjuna and Karna, in detail ... ... ib
The partisans, among other beings, of Arjuna ... 331
Ditto of Karna 332
Dispute between Indra and Surya but the issue of the coming battle ... ... ib
Indra enquires of Brahman about the result ... 333
Brahman answers that Arjuna will succeed ... ib
Indra's address to the celestial spectators ... 334
The ape on Arjuna's banner encounters the elephant's rope on Karna's banner 335
Karna asks Calya as to what Calya would do if Karna fell in battle ... ... ib
Arjuna asks Krishna as to what Krishna would do if Arjuna fell in battle ... ... ib
Krishna assures Arjuna that his defeat is impossible 336
The commencement of the encounter 337

PAGE.

Duryodhana and Kritavarman and Cakuni and Kripa encounter Arjuna 338
Arjuna defeats all of them and covers Karna with his arrows ... ... ib
A floral shower falls upon Arjuna's head from the sky 339
Açwatthāman endeavours to terrify Duryodhana and induce him to make peace with the Pāndavas ... ib
Duryodhana disregards Açwatthāman's advice, expressing his hope that Karna would speedily slay Arjuna 340
Arjuna and Karna close with each other ... 341
Seeing Arjuna's weapons baffled by Karna, Bhima urges Arjuna to put forth his strength properly ... 344
Krishna also urges Arjuna to exert vigorously for slaying Karna 345
Arjuna invokes the *Brhāma* weapon 346
Karna baffles that weapon ... ... ib
Arjuna uses a second weapon of the same kind ... ib
The carnage caused by that weapon among the Kaurava troops ... ... ib
The Kauravas, slaughterd by Arjuna, urge Karna to slay Arjuna without delay 347
King Yudhishthira appears on the field for witnessing the battle ... ... ib
The string of *Gāndiva* breaks in consequence of the force with which Arjuna draws it 348
Karna takes advantage of the interval by piercing Arjuna, Krishna, Bhima, and others, with many arrows... ib
Karna slays many Pāndava warriors ... ... ib
Temporary advantage of Karna ... ... ib
Arjuna speedily recovers his energies and covers Karna and Calya with dense showers of arrows ... 349
Krishna pierced by Karna with five snake-weapons... ib
Arjuna in great wrath pierces Karna in his vital limbs 350
Karna trembles on his car and stands with great difficulty ib
The Kauravas fly away, leaving Karna to fight singly with Arjuna... ... ... ib
Karna baffles Arjuna's weapon ... ... ib

PAGE.

Karna and Arjuna shoot at each other dense showers of arrows 351
The history of the snake Açwasena ... ... ib
Both the warriors are fatigued 352
The *Apsaras* fan them and sprinkle perfumed water upon them ... ... ib
Karna recollects his celebrated snake-shaft and fixes it on his bowstring ... ... ib
Calya fruitlessly endeavours to induce Karna to shoot another shaft 353
Krishna presses down Arjuna's car into the Earth as Karna's shaft courses towards Arjuna ... ib
The snake-shaft, failing to strike off Arjuna's head, breaks the latter's celebrated diadem ... ib
Açwasena, who had through *Yoga* powers, entered the snake-shaft of Karna, baffled in slaying Arjuna, appears unto Karna and asks him to shoot the same weapon again ... ... ib
Karna refuses Açwasena's help in slaying his enemy ib
Açwasena, of his own accord, comes towards Arjuna in the shape of an arrow 356
Arjuna cuts Açwasena into fragments ... ... ib
Arjuna and Karna continue to pierce each other with shafts 357
The Earth begins to devour one of the wheels of Karna's car 359
Karna rails at righteousness at the sight of his calamities ... ... ib
Karna invokes the *Brāhma* weapon 360
Arjuna baffles it with the *Aindra* weapon ... ib
Karna cuts off Arjuna's bowstring eleven times ... ib
Karna begs Arjuna not to strike him till he extricated his wheel 361
Krishna taunts Karna for appealing to virtue and the rules of fair fight by reminding him of all the wrongs done to the Pāndavas by himself and Duryodhana acting according to his counsels ... 362

PAGE.

Karna hangs down his head in shame 363
Karna again invokes the *Brāhma* weapon ... ib
Arjuna baffles it with a *Brāhma* weapon of his own ib
Karna pierces Arjuna in the chest with a mighty shaft at which Arjuna swoons away 364
In the interval Karna fruitlessly endeavours to extricate his car ... ... ib
Recovering his senses, Arjuna takes up an *Anjalika* weapon and inspires it with celestial force ... ib
Arjuna strikes off Karna's head before Karna could mount on his car 366
A light issues from Karna's body when it falls down, and enters the Sun 367
The joy of the Pāndavas at the sight of Karna's fall ib
Duryodhana's grief at Karna's fall 368
Bhima, uttering loud roars, frightens the Kauravas ib
State of the Kaurava army after Karna's fall ... 370
Duryodhana resolves to make a final stand ... 371
Bhimasena and Dhrishtadyumna encounter and slay five and twenty thousand Kaurava troops ... ib
The two sons of Mādri, and Sātyaki, fall upon Cakuni's division and make a great slaughter ... 372
Arjuna rushes against the car force of the Kauravas ib
Duryodhana challenges all the Pāndavas and fights with them with great valor 373
Duryodhana rallies the remnant of his troops and exhorts them to fight ... ... ib
The Kaurava troops fly away, heedless of Duryodhana's words 374
Calya addresses Duryodhana, describing the carnage on the field ... ... ib
Calya urges the withdrawal of the troops to their nightly quarters 376
Duryodhana's grief for Karna ... ... ib
The Kaurava kings retire, headed by Drona's son ... 377
Karna, though slain, lost not his splendour ... ib
The portents that were seen at Karna's fall ... 379

PAGE.

Arjuna and Krishna blow their conchs 380
The celestials worship Arjuna and Krishna for their heroism 381
The order in which the Kauravas retire from the field after the fall of Karna ... ... ib
Krishna urges Arjuna, after the fall of Karna, to present himself to Yudhishthira 382
Yudhishthira greets Arjuna and Krishna when the two repair to him 383
Krishna congratulates Yudhishthira upon his good furtune 384
Yudhishthira ascribes his success to Krishna's influence ib
Yudhishthira comes back to the field to have a look at Karna's body 385
The Pāndava and Pānchāla warriors congratulate Yudhishthira ... ... ib
The fruits of reciting the *Karna Parva* as also of hearing it recited 386

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

PRATĀP CHANDRA RĀY, C. I. E.

ÇALYA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHARATA PRESS.

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

1889.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

THE MAHABHARATA

CALYA PARVA.

SECTION I.

(Çalya-badha Parva).

Having bowed down unto Nārāyana, and Nara the most exalted of male beings, and the goddess Saraswati, must the word JAYA *be uttered.*

Janamejaya said,—"After Karna had thus been slain in battle by Savyasāchin, what did the small (unslaughtered) remnant of the Kauravas did, O regenerate one?[1] Beholding the army (of the Pāndavas) swelling with might and energy, what behaviour did the Kuru prince Suyodhana adopt towards the Pāndavas, thinking it suitable to the hour?[2] I desire to hear all this! Tell me, O foremost of regenerate ones! I am never satiated with listening to the grand feats of my ancestors!"[3]

Vaiçampāyana said,—" After the fall of Karna, O king, Dhritārāshtra's son Suyodhana was plunged deep into an ocean of grief and saw despair on every side.[4] Indulging in incessant lamentations, saying,—*Alas, Oh Karna, Alas, Oh Karna,*—he proceeded with great difficulty to his camp, accompanied by the unslaughtered remnant of the kings on his side.[5] Thinking of the slaughter of the Suta's son, he could not obtain peace of mind, though comforted by those kings with excellent reasons inculcated by the scriptures.[6] Regarding Destiny and Necessity to be all-powerful, the Kuru king firmly resolved on battle.[7] Having duly made Calya the generalissimo of his forces, that bull among kings, O monarch, proceeded for battle, accompanied by that unslaughtered remnant of his forces.[8] Then, O chief of Bharata's race, a terrible battle took place between the troops of the Kurus and those

of the Pāndavas, resembling that between the gods and the *Asuras*.[9] Then Calya, O monarch, having made a great carnage in battle, at last lost a large number of his troops and was slain by Yudhishthira at midday.[10] Then king Duryodhana, having lost all his friends and kinsmen, fled away from the field of battle and penetrated into the depths of a terrible lake from fear of his enemies.[11] On the afternoon of that day, Bhimasena, causing the lake to be encompassed by many mighty car-warriors, summoned Duryodhana and having obliged him to come out, slew him speedily, putting forth his strength.[12] After Duryodhana's slaughter, the three car-warriors (of the Kuru side) that were still unslain (viz., Açwatthāman and Kripa and Kritavarman), filled with rage, O monarch, slaughtered the Pānchāla troops in the night.[13] On the next morning, Sanjaya, having set out from the camp, entered the city (the Kuru capital), cheerless and filled with grief and sorrow.[14] Having entered the city, the *Suta* Sanjaya, raising his arms in grief, and with limbs trembling, entered the palace of the king.[15] Filled with grief, O tiger among men, he wept aloud, saying,—Alas, O king! Alas, all of us are ruined by the slaughter of that high-souled monarch![16] Alas, Time is all-powerful, and crooked in his course, since all our allies, endued with might equal to that of Cakra himself, have been slain by the Pāndavas![17]*—Seeing Sanjaya come back to the city, O king, in that distressful plight, all the people, O best of kings, filled with great anxiety, wept loudly, saying,—*Alas, Oh king!*[18]—The whole city, O tiger among men, including the very children, hearing of Duryodhana's death, sent forth notes of lamentation from every side.[19] We then beheld all the men and women running about, deeply afflicted with grief, their senses gone, and resembling people that are demented.[20] The *Suta* Sañjaya then, deeply agitated, entered the abode of the king and beheld that foremost of monarchs, that lord of men, having wisdom for his eyes.[21]

---

* The Bombay edition reads the first line of 17 differently. If that reading be accepted, the translation would run,—Destiny is all-powerful, O king, and prowess is fruitless!'—T.

Beholding the sinless monarch, that chief of Bharata's race, seated, surrounded by his daughters-in-law and Gāndhāri and Vidura and by other friends and kinsmen that were always his well-wishers,[22] and engaged in thinking on that very subject, viz., the death of Karna, the *Suta* Sanjaya, with heart filled with grief, O Janamejaya, weepingly and in a voice choked with tears, said unto him,—I am Sanjaya, O tiger among men! I bow to thee, O bull of Bharata's race![23-24] The ruler of the Madras, viz., Calya, hath been slain! Similarly Suvala's son Cakuni, and Uluka, O tiger among men, that valiant son of the gamester (Cakuni), have been slain![25] All the *Samsaptakas*, the Kāmvojas together with the Cakas, the *Mlechhas*, the Mountaineers, and the Yavanas, have also been slain![26] The Easterners have been slain, O monarch, and all the Southerners! The Northerners have all been slain, as also the Westerners, O ruler of men![27] All the kings and all the princes have been slain, O monarch! King Duryodhana also has been slain by the son of Pāndu after the manner he had vowed.[28] With his thighs broken, O monarch, he lieth now on the dust, covered with blood. Dhrishtadyumna also hath been slain, O king, as also the unvanquished Cikhandin![29] Uttamaujas and Yudhāmanyu, O king, and the Prabhadrakas, and those tigers among men, viz., the Pānchālas, and the Chedis, have been destroyed.[30] Thy sons have all been slain as also the (five) sons of Draupadi, O Bhārata! The heroic and mighty son of Karna, viz., Vrishasena, hath been slain.[31] All the men (that had been assembled) have been slain. All the elephants have been destroyed. All the car-warriors, O tiger among men, and all the steeds, have fallen in battle.[32] Very few are alive on thy side, O lord! In consequence of the Pāndavas and the Kauravas having encountered each other,[33] the world, stupified by Time, now consists of only women! On the side of the Pāndavas seven are alive, while amongst the Dhārtarāshtras three are so.[34] They are the five (Pāndava) brothers, and Vāsudeva, and Sātyaki, and Kripa, and Kritavarman, and Drona's son, that foremost of victors.[35] These three car-warriors, O monarch, are all that survive, O best of kings, of all the *Akshauhinis* mustered on

thy side, O ruler of men![36] These are the survivors, O monarch, the rest have perished! Making Duryodhana and his hostility (towards the Pāndavas) the cause, the whole world, it seems, hath been destroyed, O bull of Bharata's race, by Time!'"[37]

Vaiçampayana continued,—"Hearing these cruel words, Dhritarāshtra, that ruler of men, fell down, O monarch, on the Earth, deprived of his senses.[38] As soon as the king fell down, Vidura also, of great fame, O monarch, afflicted with sorrow on account of the king's distress, fell down on the Earth.[39] Gāndhāri also, O best of kings, and all the Kuru ladies, suddenly fell down on the ground, hearing those cruel words.[40] That entire conclave of royal persons remained lying on the ground, deprived of their senses and raving deliriously, like figures painted on a large piece of canvas.[41] Then king Dhritarāshtra, that lord of Earth, afflicted with the calamity represented by the death of his sons, slowly and with difficulty regained his life-breaths.[42] Having recovered his senses, the king, with trembling limbs and sorrowful heart, turned his face on every side, and said these words unto Kshattri (Vidura):[43]—O learned Kshatri, O thou of great wisdom, thou, O bull of Bharata's race, art now my refuge! I am lordless and destitute of all my sons![44]—Having said these, he once more fell down, deprived of his senses. Beholding him fallen, all his kinsmen, that were present there,[45] sprinkled cold water over him and fanned him with fans. Comforted after a long while, that lord of Earth,[46] afflicted with sorrow on account of the death of his sons, remained silent, sighing heavily, O monarch, like a snake put into a jar.[47] Sanjaya also wept aloud, beholding the king so afflicted. All the ladies too, with Gāndhāri of great celebrity, did the same.[48] After a long while, O best of men, Dhritarāshtra, having repeatedly swooned, addressed Vidura, saying,[49]—Let all the ladies retire, as also Gāndhāri of great fame, and all these friends! My mind hath become greatly unsettled![50]—Thus addressed, Vidura, repeatedly trembling, slowly dismissed the ladies, O bull of Bharata's race![51] All those ladies retired, O chief of the Bharatas, as also all those friends, beholding the king deeply afflicted.[52]

Then Sanjaya cheerlessly looked at the king, O scorcher of foes, who, having recovered his senses, was weeping in great affliction.[53] With joined hands, Vidura then, in sweet words, comforted that ruler of men who was sighing incessantly."[54]

SECTION II.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After the ladies had been dismissed, Dhritarāshtra, the son of Amvikā, plunged into grief greater than that which had afflicted him before, began, O monarch, to indulge in lamentations.[1] Exhaling breaths that resembled smoke, and repeatedly waving his arms, and reflecting a little, O monarch, he said these words.[2]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Alas, O *Suta*, the intelligence is fraught with great grief that I hear from thee, viz., that the Pāndavas are all safe and have suffered no loss in battle![3] Without doubt, my hard heart is made of the essence of thunder, since it breaketh not upon hearing of the fall of my sons![4] Thinking of their ages, O Sanjaya, and of their sports in childhood, and learning today that all of them have perished, my heart seems to break into pieces![5] Although in consequence of my blindness I never saw their forms, still I cherished a great love for them in consequence of the affection one feels for his children.[6] Hearing that they had passed out of childhood and entered the period of youth and then of early manhood, I became exceedingly glad, O sinless one![7] Hearing today that they have been slain and divested of prosperity and energy, I fail to obtain peace of mind, being overwhelmed with grief on account of the distress that has overtaken them![8] Come, come, O king of kings, to me that am without a protector now! Deprived of thee, O mighty-armed one, what will be my plight?[9] Why, O sire, abandoning all the assembled kings dost thou lie on the bare ground, deprived of life, like an ordinary and wretched king?[10] Having been, O monarch, the refuge of kinsmen and friends, where dost thou go now, O hero, abandoning me that am blind and old?[11] Where now, O king, is that compassion of thine, that love, and that respectfulness? Invincible as thou wert in battle, how, alas, hast

thou been slain by the Pārthas?[12] Who will now, after I will have waked from sleep at the proper hour, repeatedly address me in such endearing and respectful words as,—*O father, O father,—O great king,—O Lord of the world!*[13]—and affectionately clasping my neck with moistened eyes, will seek my orders, saying,—Command me, O thou of Kuru's race!—Address me, O son, in that sweet language once more![14] O dear child, I heard even these words from thy lips, viz.,—This wide Earth is as much ours as it is of Prithā's son![15] Bhagadatta and Kripa and Calya and the two princes of Avanti and Jayadratha and Bhuriçravas and Cala and Somadatta and Vālhika[16] and Açwatthāman and the chief of the Bhojas and the mighty prince of Magadha and Vrihadvala and the ruler of the Kāçis and Cakuni the son of Suvala[17] and many thousands of *Mlecchas* and Cakas and Yavanas, and Sudakshina the ruler of the Kāmvojas and the king of the Trigartas[18] and the grandsire Bhishma and Bharadwāja's son and Gotama's son and Crutāyush and Ayutāyush and Catāyush of great energy,[19] and Jalasandha and Rishyaçringa's son and the *Rākshasa* Alāyudha, and the mighty-armed Alamvusha and the great car-warrior Suvāhu,[20]—these and numerous other kings, O best of monarchs, have taken up arms for my sake, prepared to cast away their very lives in great battle![21] Stationed on the field amidst these, and surrounded by my brothers, I will fight against all the Pārthas and the Pānchālas[22] and the Chedis, O tiger among kings, and the sons of Draupadi and Sātyaki and Kunti-Bhoja and the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha![23] Even one amongst these, O king, excited with rage, is able to resist in battle the Pāndavas rushing towards him![24] What need I say then of all these heroes, every one of whom has wrongs to avenge on the Pāndavas, when united together? All these, O monarch, will fight with the followers of the Pāndavas and will slay them in battle.[25] Karna alone, with myself, will slay the Pāndavas. All the heroic kings will then live under my sway.[26] He who is their leader, viz., the mighty Vāsudeva, will not, he has told me, put on mail for them, O king![27]—Even in this way, O Suta, did Duryodhana often use to speak to me! Hearing what he

said, I believed that the Pāndavas would be slain in battle.[28] When, however, my sons, stationed in the midst of those heroes, and exerting themselves vigorously in battle, have all been slain, what can it be but Destiny?[29] When that lord of the world, viz., the valiant Bhishma, having encountered Cikhandin, met with his death like a lion meeting with his at the hands of a jackal, what can it be but Destiny?[30] When the Brāhmana Drona, that master of all weapons offensive and defensive, has been slain by the Pāndavas in battle, what can it be but Destiny?[31] When Bhuriçravas has been slain in battle, as also Somadatta and king Vālhika, what can it be but Destiny?[32] When Bhagadatta, skilled in fighting from the backs of elephants, has been slain, and when Jayadratha hath been slain, what can it be but Destiny?[33] When Sudakshina has been slain, and Jalasandha of Puru's race, as also Crutāyush and Ayutāyush, what can it be but Destiny?[34] The mighty Pāndya, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, has been slain in battle by the Pāndavas. What can it be but Destiny?[35] When Vrihadvala has been slain and the mighty king of the Māgadhas, and the valiant Ugrāyudha, that type of all bowmen,[36] when the two princes of Avanti (viz., Vinda and Anuvinda) have been slain, and the ruler also of the Trigartas, as also the numerous *Samsaptakas*, what can it be but Destiny?[37] When king Alamvusha, and the *Rākshasa* Alāyudha, and Rishyaçringa's son, have been slain, what can it be but Destiny?[38] When the Nārāyanas have been slain, as also the Gopālas, those troops that were invincible in battle, and many thousands of *Mlecchas*, what can it be but Destiny?[39] When Cakuni the son of Suvala, and the mighty Uluka, called the gamester's son, that hero at the head of his forces, have been slain, what can it be but Destiny?[40] When innumerable high-souled heroes, accomplished in all kinds of weapons offensive and defensive, and endued with prowess equal to that of Cakra himself, have been slain, O *Suta*,[41] when Kshatriyas hailing from diverse realms, O Sanjaya, have all been slain in battle, what can it be but Destiny?[42] Endued with great might, my sons and grandsons have been slain, as also my friends and brethren, What can it be but Destiny?[43] With-

out doubt, man takes his birth, subject to Destiny. That man who is possessed of good fortune meets with good.[44] I am bereft of good fortune, and, therefore, am deprived of my children, O Sanjaya! Old as I am, how shall I now submit to the sway of enemies?[45] I do not think anything else than exile into the woods to be good for me, O lord! Deprived of relatives and kinsmen as I am, I will go into the woods.[46] Nothing else than an exile into the woods can be better for me who am fallen into this plight and who am shorn of my wings, O Sanjaya![47] When Duryodhana has been slain, when Calya has been slain, when Dusçāsana and Vivingça and the mighty Vikarna have been slain,[48] how shall I be able to bear the roars of that Bhimasena who hath alone slain a hundred sons of mine in battle?[49] He will frequently speak of the slaughter of Duryodhana in my hearing. Burning with grief and sorrow, I shall not be able to bear his cruel words!"[50]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Even thus that king, burning with grief and deprived of relatives and kinsmen, repeatedly swooned, overwhelmed with sorrow on account of the death of his sons.[51] Having wept for a long while, Dhritarāshtra, the son of Amvikā, breathed heavy and hot sighs at the thought of his defeat.[52] Overwhelmed with sorrow, and burning with grief, that bull of Bharata's race once more enquired of his charioteer Sanjaya the son of Gavalgana the details of what had happened.[53]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'After Bhishma and Drona had been slain and the Suta's son also overthrown, whom did my warriors make their generalissimo?[54] The Pāndavas are slaying without any delay every one whom my warriors are making their generalissimo in battle.[55] Bhishma was slain at the van of battle by the diadem-decked Arjuna in the very sight of ye all! Even thus was Drona slain in the sight of ye all![56] Even thus was the Suta's son, the valiant Karna, slain by Arjuna in the sight of all the kings![57] Long before, the high-souled Vidura had told me that through the fault of Duryodhana, the population of the Earth would be exterminated.[58] There are some fools that do not see things even though they cast their eyes on them. Those words of Vidura have been even so unto

my foolish self.[59] What Vidura of righteous soul, conversant with the attributes of everything, then said, hath turned out exactly, for the words he uttered were nothing but the truth.[60] Afflicted by fate, I did not then act according to those words. The fruits of that evil course have now manifested themselves. Describe them to me, O son of Gavalgana, once more![61] Who became the head of our army after Karna's fall? Who was that car-warrior who proceeded against Arjuna and Vāsudeva?[62] Who were they that protected the right wheel of the ruler of the Madras in battle? Who protected the left wheel of that hero when he went to battle? Who also guarded his rear?[63] How, when all of you were together, could the mighty king of the Madras, as also my son, be slain, O Sanjaya, by the Pāndavas?[64] Tell me the details of the great destruction of the Bharatas. Tell me how my son Duryodhana fell in battle![65] Tell me how all the Pānchālas with their followers, and Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin and the five sons of Draupadi, fell![66] Tell me how the (five) Pāndavas and the two Sātwatas (viz., Krishna and Sātyaki), and Kripa and Kritavarman and Drona's son, have escaped with life![67] I desire to hear everything about the manner in which the battle occurred and the kind of battle it was! Thou art skilled, O Sanjaya, in narration. Tell me everything!'"[68]

SECTION III.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hear, O king, with attention how that great carnage of the Kurus and the Pāndavas occurred when they encountered each other.[1] After the Suta's son had been slain by the illustrious son of Pāndu, and after the troops had been repeatedly rallied and had repeatedly fled away,[2] and after a terrible carnage had taken place, O foremost of men, of human beings in battle subsequent to Karna's death, Pārtha began to utter leonine roars. At that time a great fear entered the hearts of thy sons.[3] Indeed, after Karna's death, there was no warrior in thy army who could set his heart upon rallying the troops or displaying his prowess.[4] They then looked like ship-wrecked merchants on the fathomless ocean without a

raft to save themselves. When their protector was slain by the diadem-decked Arjuna, they were like persons on the wide sea desirous of reaching some shore of safety.[5] Indeed, O king, after the slaughter of the Suta's son, thy troops, struck with panic and mangled with arrows, were like unprotected men desirous of a protector or like a herd of deer afflicted by a lion.[6] Vanquished by Savyasāchin, they retired in the evening, like bulls with broken horns or snakes shorn of their fangs.[7] Their foremost of heroes slain, themselves thrown into confusion and mangled with keen arrows, thy sons, O king, upon the slaughter of the Suta's son, fled away in fear.[8] Deprived of weapons and coats of mail, all of them lost their senses and knew not in which direction to fly. Casting their eyes on all sides in fear, many of them began to slaughter one another.[9] Many fell down or became pale, thinking,—*It is me whom Vibhatsu is pursuing!—It is me whom Vrikodara is pursuing!*[10]—Some riding on fleet steeds, some on fleet cars, and some on fleet elephants, many great car-warriors fled away from fear, abandoning the foot-soldiers.[11] Cars were broken by elephants, horsemen were crushed by great car-warriors, and bands of foot were smashed and slain by bodies of horse, as these fled away from the field.[12] After the fall of the Suta's son, thy troops became like stragglers from a caravan in a forest abounding with robbers and beasts of prey.[13] Some elephants whose riders had been slain, and others whose trunks had been cut off, afflicted with fear, beheld the whole world to be full of Pārtha.[14] Beholding his troops flying away afflicted with the fear of Bhimasena, Duryodhana then, with cries of *Oh* and *Alas*, addressed his driver, saying,[15]—If I take up my post at the rear of the army, armed with my bow, Pārtha then will never be able to transgress me. Urge the steeds, therefore, with speed.[16] When I will put forth my valor in battle, Dhananjaya the son of Kunti will not venture to transgress me like the ocean never venturing to transgress its continents.[17] To-day, slaying Arjuna with Govinda, and the proud Vrikodara, and the rest of my foes, I will free myself from the debt I owe to Karna.[18]—Hearing these words of the Kuru

king so becoming a hero and an honorable man, his driver slowly urged those steeds adorned with trappings of gold.[19] At that time many brave warriors deprived of elephants and steeds and cars, and five and twenty thousand foot, O sire, proceeded slowly (for battle).[20] Then Bhimasena, filled with wrath, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, encompassing those troops with the assistance of four kinds of forces, destroyed them with shafts.[21] All of them fought vigorously with Bhima and Prishata's son. Many amongst them challenged the two Pāndava heroes, mentioning their names.[22] Surrounded by them in battle, Bhima became enraged with them. Quickly descending from his car, he began to fight, armed with his mace.[23] Relying on the might of his own arms, Vrikodara the son of Kunti, who was on his car, observant of the rules of fair fight, did not fight with those foes who were on the ground.[24] Armed then with that heavy mace of his that was made entirely of iron and adorned with gold and equipt with a sling, and that resembled the Destroyer himself as he becomes at the end of the *Yuga*, Bhima slew them all like Yama slaughtering creatures with his club.[25] Those foot-soldiers, excited with great rage, having lost their friends and kinsmen, were prepared to throw away their lives, and rushed in that battle towards Bhima like insects towards a blazing fire.[26] Indeed, those warriors, filled with rage and invincible in battle, approaching Bhimasena, suddenly perished like living creatures at the glance of the Destroyer.[27] Armed with sword and mace, Bhima careered like a hawk and slaughtered those five and twenty thousand warriors of thine.[28] Having slain that brave division, the mighty Bhima, of prowess incapable of being baffled, once more stood, with Dhrishtadyumna before him.[29] Meanwhile Dhananjaya of great energy proceeded towards the car-division (of the Kurus). The twin sons of Mādri and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, all endued with great strength, cheerfully rushed against Cakuni with great speed from desire of slaying him.[30] Having slain with keen shafts the numerous cavalry of Cakuni, those Pāndava heroes quickly rushed against Cakuni himself, whereupon a fierce battle was fought there.[31] Then Dhananjaya, O king, penetrated into the midst of the car-

division of the Kauravas, stretching his bow *Gāndiva* celebrated over the three worlds.[32] Beholding that car having white steeds yoked unto it and owning Krishna for its driver coming towards them, with Arjuna as the warrior on it, thy troops fled away in fear.[33] Deprived of cars and steeds and pierced with shafts from every side, five and twenty thousand foot-soldiers proceeded towards Pārtha and surrounded him.[34] Then that mighty car-warrior amongst the Pānchālas, (viz., Dhrishtadyumna) with Bhimasena at his head, speedily slew that brave division and stood tirumphant.[35] The son of the Pānchāla king, viz., the celebrated Dhrishtadyumna, was a mighty bowman possessed of great beauty and a crusher of large bands of foes.[36] At sight of Dhrishtadyumna unto whose car were yoked steeds white as pigeons and whose standard was made of a lofty *Kovidāra*, thy troops fled away in fear.[37] The celebrated sons of Mādri, with Sātyaki among them, engaged in the pursuit of the Gāndhāra king who was quick in the use of weapons, speedily appeared to our view.[38] Chekitāna and Cikhandin and the (five) sons of Draupadi, O sire, having slain a large number of thy troops, blew their conchs.[39] Beholding all thy troops flying away with their faces from the field, those (Pāndava) heroes pursued and smote them like bulls pursuing vanquished bulls.[40] Then the mighty Savyasāchin the son of Pāndu, beholding a remnant of thy army still keeping their ground, became filled with rage, O king![41] Suddenly, O monarch, he shrouded that remnant of thy forces with arrows. The dust, however, that was then raised, enveloped the scene, in consequence of which we could not see anything.[42] Darkness also spread over the scene and the field of battle was covered with arrows. Thy troops, O monarch, then fled away in fear on all sides.[43] When his army was thus broken, the Kuru king, O monarch, rushed against both friends and foes.[44] Then Duryodhana challenged all the Pāndavas to battle, O chief of Bharata's race, like the *Asura* Vali in days of yore challenging all the celestials.[45] The Pāndavas then, uniting together and filled with rage, upbraiding him repeatedly and shooting diverse weapons, rushed against the roaring Duryodhana.[46] The latter, however, fearlessly smote his foes with shafts. The prowess

that we then saw of thy son was exceedingly wonderful,[47] since all the Pāndavas together were unable to transgress him. At this time Duryodhana beheld, staying at a little distance from him, his troops, exceedingly mangled with shafts, and prepared to fly away. Rallying them then, O monarch, thy son, resolved on battle and desirous of gladdening them, addressed those warriors, saying,[48-49]—I do not see that spot on plain or mountain whither, if ye fly, the Pāndavas will not slay ye! What use then in flight?[50] The Pāndava army hath now been reduced to a small remnant. The two Krishnas have been exceedingly mangled. If all of us make a stand here, we are certain to have victory.[51] If, however, ye fly away, breaking your array, the Pāndavas, pursuing your sinful selves, will slay ye all! Death in battle, therefore, is for our good![52] Death in the field of battle while engaged in fight according to Kshatriya practices, is pleasant. 'Such death produces no kind of grief. By encountering such a death, a person enjoys eternal happiness in the other world.[53] Let all the Kshatriyas assembled here listen to me! It were better that they should even submit to the power of the angry Bhimasena than that they should abandon the duties practiced by them from the days of their ancestors![54] There is no act more sinful for a Kshatriya than flight from battle! Ye Kauravas, there is not a better path to heaven than the duty of battle![55] The warrior acquires in a day regions of bliss (in the other world) that take many long years for others to acquire!—Fulfilling those words of the king, the great Kshatriya car-warriors[56] once more rushed against the Pāndavas, unable to endure their defeat and firmly resolved to put forth their prowess.[57] Then commenced a battle once more, that was exceedingly fierce, between thy troops and the enemy, and that resembled the one between the gods and the *Asuras*.[58] Thy son Duryodhana then, O monarch with all his troops, rushed against the Pāndavas headed by Yudhishthira.' "[59]

SECTION IV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the fallen boxes of cars* as also the cars of high-souled warriors, and the elephants and foot-soldiers, O sire, slain in battle,[1]—seeing the field of battle assume an aspect as awful as that of the sporting ground of Rudra,—observing the inglorious end obtained by hundreds and thousands of kings,[2]—witnessing also the prowess of Pārtha after the retreat of thy son with grief-stricken heart and when thy troops, filled with anxiety[3] and fallen into great distress, O Bhārata, were deliberating as to what they should next do, hearing also the loud wails of the Kaurava warriors that were being crushed,[4] and marking the displaced and disordered tokens of great kings, the Kuru leader Kripa of great energy, possessed of years and good conduct and filled with compassion,[5] and endued with eloquence, approached king Duryodhana, and angrily said these words unto him :[6]—O Duryodhana, listen, O Bhārata, to these words that I will say unto thee! Having heard them, O monarch, do thou act according to them, O sinless one, if it please thee![7] There is no path, O monarch, that is better than the duty of battle! Having recourse to that path, Kshatriyas, O bull of the Kshatriya order, engage in battle![8] He who lives in the observance of Kshatriya practices fights with son, sire, brother, sister's son, and maternal uncle, and relatives, and kinsmen.[9] If he is slaughtered in battle, there is great merit in it. Similarly, there is great sin if he flies from the field. It is for this that the life of a person desirous of living by the adoption of Kshatriya duties is exceedingly terrible.[10] Unto thee, as regards this, I will say a few beneficial words. After the fall of Bhishma and Drona and the mighty car-warrior Karna,[11] after the slaughter of Jayadratha and thy brothers, O sinless one, and thy son Lakshmana, what is there now for us to do?[12] They, upon whom resting all burdens we had been enjoying sovereignty, have all gone to regions of blessedness attainable by persons conversant with

---

* *Nida*, a niche or box for the driver.—T.

Brahma, casting off their bodies![13] As regards ourselves, deprived of those great car-warriors possessed of numerous accomplishments, we shall have to pass our time in grief, having caused numerous kings to perish![14] When all those heroes were alive, even then Vibhatsu could not be vanquished. Having Krishna, for his eyes, that mighty-armed hero is incapable of being defeated by the very gods![15] The vast (Kaurava) host, approaching his Ape-bearing standard that is lofty as an Indra's pole (set up in the season of spring) and that is effulgent as Indra's bow, hath always trembled in fear.[16] At the leonine roars of Bhimasena and the blare of *Pānchajanya*, and the twang of *Gāndiva*, our hearts will die away within us.[17] Moving like flashes of lightning, and blinding our eyes, Arjuna's *Gāndiva* is seen to resemble a circle of fire.[18] Decked with pure gold, that formidable bow, as it is shaken, looks like lightning's flash moving about on every side.[19] Steeds white in hue and possessed of great speed and endued with the splendour of the Moon or the *Kāça* grass, and that run devouring the skies, are yoked unto his car.[20] Urged on by Krishna, like masses of clouds driven by the wind, and their limbs decked with gold, they bear Arjuna to battle.[21] That foremost of all persons conversant with arms, viz., Arjuna, burnt that great force of thine like a swelling conflagration consuming dry grass in the forest in the season of winter.[22] Possessed of the splendour of Indra himself, while penetrating into our ranks, we have seen Dhananjaya to look like an elephant with four tusks.[23] While agitating thy army and inspiring the kings with fear, we have seen Dhananjaya to resemble an elephant agitating a lake overgrown with lotuses.[24] While terrifying all the warriors with the twang of his bow, we have again seen the son of Pāndu to resemble a lion inspiring smaller animals with dread.[25] Those two foremost of bowmen in all the worlds, those two bulls among all persons armed with the bow, viz., the two Krishnas, clad in mail, are looking exceedingly beautiful.[26] Today is the seventeenth day of this awful battle, O Bhārata, of those that are being slaughtered in the midst of this fight![27] The diverse divisions of thy army are broken and dispersed like autumnal clouds dispersed by the

wind.[28] Savyasāchin, O monarch, caused thy army to tremble and reel like a tempest-tossed boat exposed on the bosom of the ocean.[29] Where was the Suta's son, where was Drona with all his followers, where was I, where wert thou, where was Hridikā's son, where thy brother Dusçāsana accompanied by his brothers, (when Jayadratha was slain)?[30] Upon beholding Jayadratha and finding him within the range of his arrows, Arjuna, putting forth his prowess upon all thy kinsmen and brothers and allies and maternal uncles, and placing his feet upon their heads, slew king Jayadratha in the very sight of all! What then is there for us to do now?[31-32] Who is there among thy troops now that would vanquish the son of Pāndu?[33] That high-souled warrior possesses diverse kinds of celestial weapons. The twang, again, of *Gāndiva* robbeth us of our energies![34] This army of thine that is now without a leader is like a night without the Moon, or like a river that is dried up with all the trees on its banks broken by elephants.[35] The mighty-armed Arjuna of white steeds will, at his pleasure, career amid this thy masterless host, like a blazing conflagration amid a heap of grass![36] The impetuosity of those two, viz., Sātyaki and Bhimasena, would split all the mountains or dry up all the oceans![37] The words that Bhima spoke in the midst of the assembly have all been nearly accomplished by him, O monarch! That which remains unaccomplished will again be accomplished by him![38] While Karna was battling before it, the army of the Pāndavas, difficult to be defeated, was vigorously protected by the wielder of *Gāndiva*.[39] Ye have done many foul wrongs, without any cause, unto the righteous Pāndavas! The fruits of those acts have now come![40] For the sake of thy own objects thou hadst, with great care, mustered together a large force! That vast force as also thyself, O bull of Bharata's race, have fallen into great danger![41] Preserve thy own self now, for self is the refuge of everything! If the refuge is broken, O sire, everything inhering thereto is scattered on every side.[42] He that is being weakened should seek peace by conciliation. He that is growing should make war. This is the policy taught by Vrihaspati.[43] We are now inferior to the sons of Pāndu as regards the strength of our army. There-

fore, O lord, I think peace with the Pāndavas is for our good![44] He that does not know what is for his good or (knowing) disregards what is for his good, is soon divested of his kingdom and never obtains any good.[45] If by bowing unto king Yudhishthira sovereignty may still remain to us, even that would be for our good, and not, O king, to sustain through folly defeat (at the hands of the Pāndavas)![46] Yudhishthira is compassionate. At the request of Vichitraviryya's son and of Govinda, he will allow you to continue king.[47] Whatever Hrishikeça will say unto the victorious king Yudhishthira and Arjuna and Bhimasena, all of them will, without doubt, obey.[48] Krishna will not, I think, be able to transgress the words of Dhritarāshtra of Kuru's race, nor will the son of Pāndu be able to transgress those of Krishna.[49] A cessation of hostilities with the sons of Prithā is what I consider to be for thy good. I do not say this unto thee from any mean motives nor for protecting my life. I say, O king, that which I regard to be beneficial. Thou wilt recollect these words when thou wilt be on the point of death (if thou neglectest them now)![50]—Advanced in years, Kripa the son of Caradwat said these words weepingly. Breathing long and hot breaths, he then gave way to sorrow and almost lost his senses.' "[51]

Section V.

"Sanjaya said,—'Thus addressed by the celebrated son of Gotama, the king (Duryodhana), breathing long and hot breaths, remained silent, O monarch![1] Having reflected for a little while, the high-souled son of Dhritarāshtra, that scorcher of foes, then said these words unto Caradwat's son Kripa:[2]—Whatever a friend should say, thou hast said unto me! Thou hast also, whilst battling, done everything for me, without caring for thy very life![3] The world has seen thee penetrate into the midst of the Pāndava divisions and fight with the mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas endued with great energy.[4] That which should be said by a friend has been said by thee. Thy words, however, do not please me like medicine that pleases the person that is on the point of death.[5] These bene-

ficial and excellent words, fraught with reason, that thou, O mighty-armed one, hast said, do not seem acceptable to me, O foremost of Brāhmanas![6] Deprived by us of his kingdom (on a former occasion), why will the son of Pāndu repose his trust on us! That mighty king was once defeated by us at dice. Why will we again believe my words?[7]* So also, Krishna, ever engaged in the good of the Pārthas, when he came to us as an envoy, was deceived by us. That act of ours was exceedingly ill-judged. Why then, O regenerate one, will Hrishikeça trust my words?[8] The princess Krishnā, while standing in the midst of the assembly, wept piteously. Krishna will never forget that act of ours, nor that act, viz., the deprivation of Yudhishthira by us of his kingdom![9] Formerly it was heard by us that the two Krishnas have the same heart between them and are firmly united with each other! Today, O lord, we have seen it with our eyes![10] Having heard of the slaughter of his sister's son, Keçava passeth his nights in sorrow. We have offended him highly. Why will he forgive us then?[11] Arjuna also, in consequence of Arhimanyu's death, hath become very miserable. Even if solicited, why will he strive for my good?[12] The second son of Pāndu, the mighty Bhimasena, is exceedingly fierce. He has made a terrible vow. He will break but not bend.[13] The heroic twins, breathing animosity against us, when clad in mail and armed with their swords, resemble a pair of Yamas.[14] Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin have drawn their swords against me. Why will those two, O best of Brāhmanas, strive for my good?[15] While clad in a single raiment and in her season, the princess Krishnā was treated cruelly by Dusçāsana in the midst of the assembly and before the eyes of all.[16] Those scorchers of foes, viz., Pāndavas, who still remember the naked Draupadi plunged into distress, can never be dissuaded from battle.[17] Then again, Krishnā the daughter of Drupada, is, in sorrow, undergoing the austerest of penances for my destruction and the success of the objects cherished by her husbands, and sleepeth every day on the bare ground, intending to do so till the end of the

* A triplet in the Bengal texts.—T.

hostilities is attained.[18] Abandoning honor and pride, the uterine sister of Vāsudeva (Subhadrā) is always serving Draupadi as a veritable waiting-woman.[19] Everything, therefore, hath flamed up. That fire can never be quenched. Peace with them hath become impossible in consequence of the slaughter of Abhimanyu.[20] Having also enjoyed the sovereignty of this Earth bounded by the ocean, how shall I be able to enjoy, under favor of the Pāndavas, a kingdom in peace?[21] Having shone like the Sun upon the heads of all the kings, how shall I walk behind Yudhishthira like a slave?[22] Having enjoyed all enjoyable articles and shown great compassion, how shall I lead a miserable life now with miserable men as my companions?[23] I do not hate those mild and beneficial words that thou hast spoken. I, however, do not think that this is the time for peace.[24] To fight righteously is, O scorcher of foes, what I regard to be good policy. This is not the time for acting like a eunuch. On the other hand, this is the time for battle.[25] I have performed many sacrifices. I have given away *Dakshinas* to Brāhmanas. I have obtained the attainment of all my wishes. I have listened to *Vedic* recitations. I have walked upon the heads of my foes.[26] My servants have all been well cherished by me. I have relieved people in distress. I dare not, O foremost of regenerate ones, address such humble words to the Pāndavas.[27] I have conquered foreign kingdoms. I have properly governed my own kingdom. I have enjoyed diverse kinds of enjoyable articles. Religion and profit and pleasure I have pursued. I have paid off my debt to the *Pitris* and to Kshatriya duty.[28] Certainly, there is no happiness here! What becomes of kingdom, and what of good name? Fame is all that one should acquire here. That fame can be obtained by battle, and by no other means.[29] The death that a Kshatriya meets with at home is censurable. Death on one's bed at home is highly sinful.[30] The man who casts away his body in the woods or in battle after having performed sacrifices, obtains great glory.[31] He is no man who dies miserably weeping in pain, afflicted by disease and decay, in the midst of crying kinsmen.[32] Abandoning diverse objects of enjoyment, I shall now, by righteous battle, proceed to the regions of

Cakra, obtaining the companionship of those that have attained to the highest end.[33] Without doubt, the habitation of heroes of righteous behaviour, who never retreat from battle, who are gifted with intelligence and devoted to truth, who are performers of sacrifices, and who have been sanctified in the sacrifice of weapons, is in heaven.[34] The diverse tribes of *Apsaras*, without doubt, joyfully gaze at such heroes when engaged in battle. Without doubt, the *Pitris* behold them worshipped in the assembly of the gods and rejoicing in heaven, in the company of *Apsaras*.[35] We will now ascend the path that is trod by the celestials and by heroes unreturning from battle,[36] that path, viz., which has been taken by our venerable grandsire, by the preceptor endued with great intelligence, by Jayadratha, by Karna, and by Dusçāsana![37] Many brave kings, who had exerted themselves vigorously for my sake in this battle, have been slain. Mangled with arrows and their limbs bathed in blood, they lie now on the bare Earth.[38] Possessed of great courage and conversant with excellent weapons, those kings, who had, again, performed sacrifices as ordained in the scriptures, having cast off their life-breaths in the discharge of their duties, have now become the denizens of Indra's abode.[39] They have paved the way (to that blessed region). That road will once more become difficult in consequence of the crowds of heroes that will hurry along it for reaching that blessed goal.*[40] Remembering with gratitude the feats of those heroes that have died for me, I desire to pay off the debt I owe them, instead of fixing my heart upon kingdom.[41] If, having caused my friends and brothers and grandsires to be slain, I save my own life, the world will, without doubt, censure me.[42] What kind of sovereignty will that be which I will enjoy, destitute of kinsmen

---

* Some texts read *durgamo hi sukham bhavet* for *durgamo hi punarbhavet*. If the former reading be accepted, the meaning will be, 'once difficult, that road will become easy in consequence of the crowds of heroes that will hurry along it for reaching that blessed goal.' Duryodhana, in that case, would be held to be alluding to the many Kshatriyas that would yet die for obtaining regions of bliss in the other world, if the battle, instead of ceasing, were allowed to go on.—T.

and friends and well-wishers, and bowing down unto the son of Pāndu ?[43] I, who have lorded it over the universe in that way, will now acquire heaven by fair fight. It will not be otherwise![44]—Thus addressed by Duryodhana, all the Kshatriyas there applauded that speech and cheered the king, saying,—Excellent, Excellent![45]—Without at all grieving for their defeat, and firmly resolved upon displaying their prowess, all of them, having determined to fight, became filled with enthusiasm.[46] Having groomed their animals then, the Kauravas, delighting at the prospect of battle, took up their quarters (for the night) at a spot little less than two *Yojanas* distant from the field.[47] Having obtained the Saraswati of red waters on the sacred and beautiful table-land at the foot of Himavat, they bathed in that water and quenched their thirst with it. Their spirits raised by thy son, they continued to wait (on their resting ground).[48] Once more rallying their own selves as well as one another, all those Kshatriyas, O king, urged by fate, waited (in their encampment).' "[49]

SECTION VI.

"Sanjaya said,—'On that table-land at the foot of Himavat, those warriors, O monarch, delighting at the prospect of battle and assembled together, passed the night.[1] Indeed, Calya and Chitrasena and the mighty car-warrior Cakuni and Açwatthāman and Kripa and Kritavarman of the Sātwata race,[2] and Sushena and Arishtasena and Dhritasena of great energy and Jayatsena and all these kings passed the night there.[3] After the heroic Karna had been slain in battle, thy sons, inspired with fright by the Pāndavas desirous of victory, failed to obtain peace anywhere else than on the mountains of Himavat.[4] All of them then, O king, who were resolved on battle, duly worspipped the king and said unto him, in the presence of Calya, these words![5]—It behoveth thee to fight with the enemy, after having made some one the generalissimo of thy army, protected by whom in battle we will vanquish our foes![6]—Then Duryodhana, without alighting from his car, [proceeded towards]* that foremost of car-warriors, that hero

---

* These words occur lower down in verse 17.—T.

conversant with all the rules of battle,* (viz., Açwatthāman,) who resembled the Destroyer himself in battle.[7] Possessed of beautiful limbs, of head well-covered, of a neck adorned with three lines like those in a conch-shell, of sweet speech, of eyes resembling the petals of a full-blown lotus, and of a face like that of the tiger, of the dignity of Meru,[8] resembling the bull of Mahādeva as regards neck, eyes, tread, and voice, endued with arms that were large, massive, and well-joined, having a chest that was broad and well-formed,[9] equal unto Garuda on the wind in speed and might, gifted with a splendour like that of the rays of the Sun, rivalling Uçanas himself in intelligence[10] and the Moon in beauty and form and charms of face, with a body that seemed to be made of a number of golden lotuses, with well-made joints,[11] of well-formed thighs and waist and hips, of beautiful feet, beautiful fingers, and beautiful nails, he seemed to have been made by the Creator with great care after recollecting one after another all the beautiful and good attributes of creation.[12] Possessed of every auspicious mark, and clever in every act, he was an ocean of learning. Ever vanquishing his foes with great speed, he was incapable of being forcibly vanquished by foes.[13] He knew, in all its details, the science of weapons consisting of four *padas* and ten *Angas*.† He knew also the four *Vedas* with all their branches, and the *Ākhyānas* as the fifth.[14] Possessed of great ascetic merit, Drona, himself not born of woman, having worshipped the Three-eyed deity with great attention and austere vows, begat him upon a wife not born of woman.[15] Approaching that personage of unrivalled feats, that one who is unrivalled in beauty on Earth, that one who has mastered all branches of learning, that ocean of accomplishments, the faultless Açwatthāman, thy son told him these words:—Thou, O preceptor's son, art today our highest re-

* The correct reading, I apprehend, is *Sarva yuddhavidhānajnam* as in some of the Bengal texts, and not *Sarvayuddhavibhāvajnam*, as in the Bombay edition, although Nilakantha notices the latter in his gloss.

† A *pada* is a great division of a subject, an *anga* being a smaller division, or subdivision.—T.

fuge! Tell us, therefore, who is to be the generalissimo of my forces now, placing whom at our head, all of us, united together, may vanquish the Pāndavas?—[16-18]

"'[Thus addressed,] the son of Drona answered,—Let Calya become the leader of our army! In descent, in prowess, in energy, in fame, in beauty of person, and in every other accomplishment, he is superior![19] Mindful of the services rendered to him, he has taken up our side, having abandoned the sons of his own sister! Owning a large force of his own, that mighty-armed one is like a second (Kārtikeya, the) celestial generalissimo![20] Making that king the commander of our forces, O best of monarchs, we will be able to gain victory, like the gods, after making the unvanquished Skanda their commander![21]—After Drona's son had said these words, all the kings stood, surrounding Calya, and cried victory to him. Having made up their minds for battle, they felt great joy.[22] Then Duryodhana, alighting from his car, joined his hands and addressing Calya, that rival of Drona and Bhishma in battle, who was on his car, said these words:[23]—O thou that art devoted to friends, that time has now come for thy friends when intelligent men examine persons in the guise of friends as to whether they are true friends or otherwise![24] Brave as thou art, be thou our generalissimo at the van of our army. When thou wilt proceed to battle, the Pāndavas, with their friends, will become cheerless, and the Pānchālas will be depressed![25]—

"'Calya answered,—I will, O king of the Kurus, accomplish that which thou askest me to accomplish! Everything I have, viz., my life-breaths, my kingdom, my wealth, is at thy service![26]—

"'Duryodhana said,—I solicit thee with offer of the leadership of my army, O maternal uncle! O foremost of warriors, protect us incomparably, even as Skanda protected the gods in battle![27] O foremost of kings, thyself cause thy own self to be installed in the command as Pāvaka's son Kārtikeya in the command of (the forces of) the celestials: O hero, slay our foes in battle like Indra slaying the *Dānavas!*'"[28]—

Section VII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Hearing these words of the (Kuru) king, the valiant monarch (Calya), O king, said these words unto Duryodhana in reply:[1]—O mighty-armed Duryodhana, listen to me, O foremost of eloquent men! Thou regardest the two Krishnas, when on their car, to be the foremost of car-warriors! They are not, however, together equal to me in might of arms![2] What need I say of the Pāndavas? When angry, I can fight, at the van of battle, with the whole world consisting of gods, *Asuras*, and men, risen up in ams![3] I will vanquish the assembled Pārthas and the Somakas in battle! Without doubt, I will become the leader of thy troops![4] I will form such an array that our enemies will not be able to overmaster it! I say this to thee, O Duryodhana! There is no doubt in this![5]—Thus addressed (by Calya), king Duryodhana cheerfully poured sanctified water, without losing any time, O best of the Bharatas, on the ruler of the Madras, in the midst of his troops, according to the rites ordained in the scriptures, O monarch.*[6] After Calya had been invested with the command, loud leonine roars arose among thy troops and diverse musical instruments also, O Bhārata, were beat and blown.[7]† The Kaurava warriors became very cheerful, as also the mighty car-warriors among the Madrakas. And all of them praised the royal Calya, that ornament of battle, saying,[8]—Victory to thee, O king! Long life to thee! Slay all the assembled foes! Having obtained the might of thy arms, let the Dhārtarāshtras endued with great strength, rule the wide Earth without a foe![‡][9] Thou art capable of vanquishing in battle the three worlds consisting of the gods, the *Asuras*,

---

* *I. e*, formally invested him with the command of the army. The ceremony consisted in pouring sanctified water on the head of the person chosen.—T.

† The Bombay edition reads, wrongly, I think, *Klishtarupas* for *Hrishtarupas*.—T.

‡ Literally, 'with all their foes slain!'—T.

then need be said of the Somakas and the Srinjayas that are mortal?[10]—Thus praised, the mighty king of the Madrakas obtained great joy that is unattainable by persons of unrefined souls.[11]

"'Calya said,—Today, O king, I will either slay all the Pānchālas with the Pāndavas in battle, or, slain by them, proceed to heaven![12] Let the world behold me today careering (on the field of battle) fearlessly! Today let all the sons of Pāndu, and Vāsudeva, and Sātyaki,[13] and the sons of Draupadi, and Dhrishtadyumna, and Cikhandin, and all the Prabhadrakas,[14] behold my prowess and the great might of my bow, and my quickness, and the energy of my weapons, and the strength of my arms, in battle![15] Let the Pārthas, and all the *Siddhas*, with the *Chāranas*, behold today the strength that is in my arms and the wealth of weapons I possess![16] Beholding my prowess today, let the mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas, desirous of counteracting it, adopt diverse courses of action![17] Today I will rout the troops of the Pāndavas on all sides! Surpassing Drona and Bhima and the Suta's son, O lord, in battle. I will career on the field, O Kaurava, for doing what is agreable to thee![18]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'After Calya had been invested with the command, O giver of honors, no one among thy troops, O bull of Bharata's race, any longer felt any grief on account of Karna.[19] Indeed, the troops became cheerful and glad. They regarded the Pārthas as already slain and brought under the power of the ruler of the Madras.[20] Having obtained great joy, thy troops, O bull of Bharata's race, slept that night happily and became very cheerful.[21] Hearing those shouts of thy army, king Yudhishthira, addressing him of Vrishni's race, said these words, in the hearing of all the Kshatriyas:[22]—The ruler of the Madras, viz., Calya, that great bowman who is highly regarded by all the warriors, hath, O Mādhava, been made the leader of his forces by Dhritarāshtra's son![23] Knowing this that has happened, do, O Mādhava, that which is beneficial! Thou art our leader and protector! Do that which should next be done![24]—Then Vāsudeva, O monarch, said unto that king:—I know Ārtāyani, O Bhārata,

truly![25] Endued with prowess and great energy, he is highly illustrious! He is accomplished, conversant with all the modes of warfare, and possessed of great lightness of hand![26] I think that the ruler of the Madras is in battle equal to Bhishma or Drona or Karna, or, perhaps, superior to them.[27] I do not, O ruler of men, even upon reflection, find the warrior who may be a match for Calya while engaged in fight![28] In battle, he is superior in might to Cikhandin and Arjuna and Bhima and Sātyaki and Dhrishtadyumna, O Bhārata![29] The king of the Madras, O monarch, endued with the prowess of a lion or an elephant, will career fearlessly in battle, like the Destroyer himself in wrath amongst creatures at the time of the universal destruction.[30] I do not behold a match for him in battle save thee, O tiger among men, that art possessed of prowess equal to that of a tiger![31] Save thee there is no other person in either heaven or the whole of this world, who, O son of Kuru's race, would be able to slay the ruler of the Madras while excited with wrath in battle![32] Day after day engaged in fight, he agitates thy troops. For this, slay Calya in battle, like Maghavat slaying Camvara.[33] Treated with honor by Dhritarāshtra's son, that hero is invincible in battle! Upon the fall of the ruler of the Madras in battle, thou art certain to have victory! Upon his slaughter, the vast Dhārtarāshtra host will be slain![34] Hearing, O monarch, these words of mine now, proceed, O Pārtha, against that mighty car-warrior, viz., the ruler of the Madras![35] Slay that warrior, O thou of mighty arms, like Vāsava slaying the *Asura* Namuchi! There is no need of showing any compassion here, thinking that this one is thy maternal uncle! Keeping the duties of a Kshatriya before thee, slay the ruler of the Madras![36] Having crossed the fathomless oceans represented by Bhishma and Drona and Karna, do not sink, with thy followers, in the print of a cow's hoof represented by Calya![37] Display in battle the whole of thy ascetic power and thy Kshatriya energy! Slay that car-warrior![38]—Having said these words, Keçava, that slayer of hostile heroes, proceeded to his tent in the evening, worshipped by the Pāndavas.[39] After Keçava had gone, king Yudhishthira the just, dismissing all his brothers and the Somakas,

happily slept that night, like an elephant from whose body the darts have been plucked out.[40] All those great bowmen, viz., the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas, delighted in consequence of the fall of Karna, slept that night happily.[41] Its fever dispelled, the army of the Pāndavas, abounding with great bowmen and mighty car-warriors, having reached the shore as it were, became very happy that night, in consequence of the victory, O sire, it had won by the slaughter of Karna!'"[42]

SECTION VIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'After that night had passed away, king Duryodhana then, addressing all thy soldiers, said,—Arm, ye mighty car-warriors![1]—Hearing the command of the king, the warriors began to put on their armour. Some began to yoke their steeds to their cars quickly, others ran hither and thither.[2] The elephants began to be equipt. The foot-soldiers began to arm. Others, numbering thousands, began to spread carpets on the terraces of cars.[3] The noise of musical instruments, O monarch, arose there, for enhancing the martial enthusiasm of the soldiers.[4] Then all the troops, placed in their proper posts, were seen, O Bhārata, to stand, clad in mail and resolved to make death their goal.[5] Having made the ruler of the Madras their leader, the great car-warriors of the Kauravas, distributing their troops, stood in divisions.[6] Then all thy warriors, with Kripa and Kritavarman and Drona's son and Calya and Suvala's son and the other kings that were yet alive, met thy son, and arrived at this understanding, viz., that none of them would individually and alone fight with the Pāndavas.[7-8] And they said,—He amongst us that will fight alone and unsupported with the Pāndavas, or he that will abandon a comrade engaged in fight, will be stained with the five grave sins and all the minor sins!—And they said,—All of us, united together, will fight with the foe![9]—Those great car-warriors, having made such an understanding with one another, placed the ruler of the Madras at their head and quickly proceeded against their foes.[10] Similarly, all the Pāndavas, having arrayed their troops in great battle, proceeded against the Kauravas,

O king, for fighting with them on every side.[11] Soon, O chief of the Bharatas, that host, whose noise resembled that of the agitated ocean, and which seemed to be wonderful in consequence of its cars and elephants, presented the aspect of the vasty deep swelling with its surges!"[12]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'I have heard of the fall of Drona, of Bhishma, and of the son of Rādhā! Tell me now of the fall of Calya and of my son![13] How, indeed, O Sanjaya, was Calya slain by king Yudhishthira the just? And how was my son Duryodhana slain by Bhimasena of great might?'[14]

"Sanjaya said,—'Hear, O king, with patience, of the destruction of human bodies and the loss of elephants and steeds, as I describe (to thee) the battle![15] The hope became strong, O king, in the breasts of thy sons that, after Drona and Bhishma and the Suta's son had been overthrown, Calya, O sire, would slay all the Pārthas in battle![16] Cherishing that hope in his heart, and drawing comfort from it, O Bhārata, thy son Duryodhana, relying in battle upon that mighty car-warrior, viz., the ruler of the Madras, regarded himself as possessed of a protector.[17]* When after Karna's fall the Pārthas had uttered leonine roars, a great fear, O king, had possessed the hearts of the Dhārtarāshtras.[18] Assuring him duly, the valiant king of the Madras, having formed, O monarch, a grand array whose arrangments were auspicious in every respect,[19] proceeded against the Pārthas in battle. And the valiant king of the Madras proceeded, shaking his beautiful and exceedingly strong bow capable of imparting a great velocity to the shafts sped from it.[20] And that mighty car-warrior was mounted upon a foremost of vehicles having horses of the Sindhu breed yoked unto it. Riding upon his car, his driver made the vehicle look resplendent.[21] Protected by that car, that hero, that brave crusher of foes, (viz., Calya), stood, O monarch, dispelling the fears of thy sons.[22] In the advance (to battle), the king of the Madras, clad in mail, proceeded at the head of the array, accompanied by the brave Madrakas and the invincible sons of Karna.[23] On the left was Kritavarman, surrounded by the

* Both 16 and 17 are triplets.—T.

Trigartas. On the right was Gautama (Kripa) with the Cakas and the Yavanas.[24] In the rear was Açwatthāman surrounded by the Kāmvojas. In the centre was Duryodhana, protected by the foremost of Kuru warriors.[25] Surrounded by a large force of cavalry and other troops, Suvala's son, Cakuni, as also the mighty car-warrior Uluka, proceeded with the others.[26] The mighty bowmen amongst the Pāndavas, those chastisers of foes, dividing themselves, O monarch, into three bodies, rushed against thy troops.[27] Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki proceeded with great speed against the army of Calya.[28] Then king Yudhishthira, accompanied by his troops, rushed against Calya alone, from desire of slaughtering him, O bull of Bharata's race![29] Arjuna, that slayer of large bands of foes, rushed with great speed against that great bowman, viz., Kritavarman, and the *Samsaptakas*.[30] Bhimasena and the great car-warriors among the Somakas rushed, O monarch, against Kripa, desirous of slaughtering their foes in battle.[31] The two sons of Mādri, accompanied by their troops, proceeded against Cakuni and the great car-warrior Uluka at the head of their forces.[32] Similarly, thousands upon thousands of warriors, of thy army, armed with diverse weapons and filled with rage, proceeded against the Pāndavas in that battle.'[33]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'After the fall of the mighty bowmen Bhishma and Drona and the great car-warrior Karna, and after both the Kurus and the Pāndavas had been reduced in numbers, and when, indeed, the Pārthas, possessed of great prowess, became once more angry in battle, what, O Sanjaya, was the strength of each of the armies?'[34-35]

"Sanjaya said,—'Hear, O king, how we and the enemy both stood for battle on that occasion, and what was then the strength of the two armies![36] Eleven thousand cars, O bull of Bharata's race, ten thousand and seven hundred elephants,[37] and full two hundred thousand horse, and three millions of foot, composed the strength of thy army![38] Six thousand cars, six thousand elephants, ten thousand horse, and one million of foot, O Bhārata,[39] were all that composed the remnant of the Pāndava force in that battle. These, O bull of

Bharata's race, encountered each other for battle.[40] Having distributed their forces in this way, O monarch, ourselves, excited with wrath and inspired with desire of victory, proceeded against the Pāndavas, having placed ourselves under the command of the ruler of the Madras.[41] Similarly, the brave Pāndavas, those tigers among men, desirous of victory, and the Pānchālas possessed of great fame, came to battle.[42] Even thus, O monarch, all those tigers among men, desirous of slaughtering their foes, encountered one another at dawn of day, O lord![43] Then commenced a fierce and terrible battle between thy troops and the enemy, the combatants being all engaged in striking and slaughtering one another.' "[44]

Section IX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then commenced the battle between the Kurus and the Srinjayas, O monarch, that was as fierce and awful as the battle between the gods and the *Asuras*.[1] Men, and crowds of cars and elephants, and elephant-warriors and horsemen by thousands, and steeds, all possessed of great prowess, encountered one another.[2] The loud noise of rushing elephants of fearful forms was then heard there, resembling the roars of the clouds in the welkin, in the season of rains.[3] Some car-warriors, struck by elephants, were deprived of their cars. Routed by those infuriate animals, other brave combatants ran on the field.[4] Well-trained car-warriors, O Bhārata, with their shafts, despatched large bodies of cavalry and the footmen that urged and protected the elephants, to the other world.[5] Well-trained horsemen, O king, surrounding great car-warriors, careered on the field, striking and slaying the latter with spears and darts and swords.[6] Some combatants armed with bows, encompassing great car-warriors, despatched them to Yama's abode, the many unitedly battling against individual ones.[7] Other great car-warriors, encompassing elephants and foremost warriors of their own class, slew some mighty one amongst them that fought on the field, careering all around.*[8] Simi-

---

* The Bombay reading, which I adopt, is *Nāgān Rathavarān* &c.—T.

larly, O king, elephants, encompassing individual car-warriors excited with wrath and scattering showers of shafts, despatched them to the other world.[9] Elephant-warrior rushing against elephant-warrior, and car-warrior against car-warrior, in that battle, slew each other with darts and lances and cloth-yard shafts, O Bhārata![10] Cars and elephants and horse, crushing foot-soldiers in the midst of battle, were seen to make confusion worse confounded.[11] Adorned with yak-tails, steeds rushed on all sides, looking like the swans found on the plains at the foot of Himavat. They rushed with such speed that they seemed ready to devour the very Earth.[12] The field, O monarch, indented with the hoofs of those steeds, looked beautiful like a beautiful woman bearing the marks of (her lover's) nails on her person.[13] With the noise made by the tread of heroes, the wheels of cars, the shouts of foot-soldiers, the grunts of elephants,[14] the peal of drums and other musical instruments, and the blare of conchs, the Earth began to resound as if with deafening peals of thunder.[15] In consequence of twanging bows and flashing sabres and the glaring armour of the combatants, all became so confused there that nothing could be distinctly marked.[16] Innumerable arms, lopped off from human bodies, and looking like the tusks of elephants, jumped up and writhed and moved furiously about.[17] The sound made, O monarch, by heads falling on the field of battle, resembled that made by the falling fruits of palmyra trees.[18] Strewn with those fallen heads that were crimson with blood, the Earth looked resplendent as if adorned with gold-colored lotuses in their season.[19] Indeed, with those lifeless heads with upturned eyes, that were exceedingly mangled (with shafts and other weapons), the field of battle, O king, looked resplendent as if strewn with full-blown lotuses.[20] With the fallen arms of the combatants, smeared with sandal and adorned with costly *Keyuras*, the Earth looked bright as if strewn with the gorgeous poles set up in Indra's honor.[21] The field of battle became covered with the thighs of kings, cut off in that battle and looking like the tapering trunks of elephants.[22] Teeming with hundreds of headless trunks and strewn with umbrellas and yak-yails, that vast army looked beautiful like a flowering forest.[23] Then, on the field of

battle, O monarch, warriors careered fearlessly, their limbs bathed in blood and, therefore, looking like flowering *Kinçukas*.[24] Elephants also, afflicted with arrows and lances, fell down here and there like broken clouds dropped from the skies.[25] Elephant-divisions, O monarch, slaughtered by highsouled warriors, dispersed in all directions like wind-tossed clouds.[26] Those elephants, looking like clouds, fell down on the Earth, like mountains riven with thunder, O lord, on the occasion of the dissolution of the world at the end of the *Yuga*.[27] Heaps upon heaps, looking like mountains, were seen, lying on the ground, of fallen steeds with their riders.[28] A river appeared on the field of battle, flowing towards the other world. Blood formed its waters, and cars its eddies. Standards formed its trees, and bones its pebbles.[29] The arms (of combatants) were its alligators, bows its current, elephants its large rocks, and steeds its smaller ones. Fat and marrow formed its mire, umbrellas its swans, and maces its rafts.[30] Abounding with armour and head-gears, banners constituted its beautiful trees. Teeming with wheels that formed its swarms of *Chakravākas*, it was covered with *Trivenus* and *Dandas*.[31] Inspiring the brave with delight and enhancing the fears of the timid, that fierce river set in, whose shores abounded with Kurus and Srinjayas.[32] Those brave warriors, with arms resembling spiked bludgeons, by the aid of their vehicles and animals serving the purposes of rafts and boats, crossed that awful river which ran towards the region of the dead.[33] During the progress of that battle, O monarch, in which no consideration was showed by any body for any one, and which, fraught with awful destruction of the four kinds of forces, therefore, resembled the battle between the gods and the *Asuras* in days of old,[34] some among the combatants, O scorcher of foes, loudly called upon their kinsmen and friends. Some, called upon by crying kinsmen, returned, afflicted with fear.[35] During the progress of that fierce and awful battle, Arjuna and Bhimasena stupified their foes.[36] That vast host of thine, O ruler of men, thus slaughtered, swooned away on the field, like a woman under the influence of liquor.[37] Having stupified that army, Bhimasena and Dhananjaya blew their conchs and uttered

leonine roars.[38] As soon as they heard that loud peal, Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin, placing king Yudhishthira at their head, rushed against the ruler of the Madras.[39] Exceedingly wonderful and terrible, O monarch, was the manner in which those heroes, unitedly and in separate bodies, then fought with Calya.[40] The two sons of Mādri, endued with great activity, accomplished in weapons, and invincible in battle, proceeded with great speed against thy host, inspired with desire of victory.[41] Then thy army, O bull of Bharata's race, mangled in diverse ways with shafts by the Pāndavas eager for victory, began to fly away from the field.[42] That host, thus struck and broken by firm bowmen, O monarch, fled away on all sides in the very sight of thy sons.[43] Loud cries of *Oh* and *Alas*, O Bhārata, arose from among thy warriors, while some illustrious Kshatriyas among the routed combatants, desirous of victory, cried out, saying,—*stop, stop !*[44]—For all that, those troops of thine, broken by the Pāndavas, fled away, deserting on the field their dear sons and brothers and maternal uncles and sisters' sons and relatives by marriage and other kinsmen.[45] Urging their steeds and elephants to greater speed, thousands of warriors fled away, O bull of Bharata's race, bent only upon their own safety !'"[46]

Section X.

"Sanjaya said—'Beholding the army broken, the valiant king of the Madras addressed his driver, saying,—Quickly urge these steeds endued with the fleetness of thought !'[1] Yonder stays king Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu, looking resplendent with the umbrella held over his head.[2] Take me thither with speed, O driver, and witness my might ! The Pārthas are unable to stand before me in battle !'[3]—Thus addressed, the driver of the Madra king proceeded to that spot where stood king Yudhishthira the just of true aim.[4] Calya fell suddenly upon the mighty host of the Pāndavas. Alone, he checked it like the continent checking the surging sea.[5] Indeed, the large force of the Pāndavas, coming against Calya O sire stood

still in that battle, like the rushing sea upon encountering a mountain.[6] Beholding the ruler of the Madras standing for battle on the field, the Kauravas returned, making death their goal.[7] After they had returned, O king, and separately taken up their positions in well-formed array, an awful battle set in, in which blood flowed freely like water.

"The invincible Nakula encountered Chitrasena.[8] These two heroes, both of whom were excellent bowmen, approaching, drenched each other with showers of arrows in that battle, like two pouring clouds risen in the welkin on the south and the north. I could not mark any difference between the son of Pāndu and his antagonist.[9-10] Both of them were accomplished in weapons, both endued with might, and both conversant with the practices of car-warriors. Each bent upon slaying the other, they carefully looked for each other's *laches*.[11] Then Chitrasena, O monarch, with a broad-headed shaft, well-tempered and sharp, cut off Nakula's bow at the handle.[12] Fearlessly then the son of Karna struck the bowless Nakula at the forehead with three shafts equipt with wings of gold and whetted on stone.[13] With a few other keen arrows he then despatched Nakula's steeds to Yama's abode. Next, he felled both the standard and the driver of his antagonist, each with three arrows.[14] With those three arrows sped from the arms of his foe sticking to his forehead, Nakula, O king, looked beautiful like a mountain with three crests.[15] Deprived of his bow and his car, the brave Nakula, taking up a sword, jumped down from his vehicle like a lion from a mountain summit.[16] As, however, he rushed on foot, his antagonist poured a shower of arrows upon him. Possessed of active prowess, Nakula received that arrowy shower on his shield.[17] Getting at the car then of Chitrasena, the mighty-armed hero, viz., the son of Pāndu, conversant with all modes of warfare and incapable of being tired with exertion, ascended it in the very sight of all the troops.[18] The son of Pāndu then cut off from Chitrasena's trunk his diadem-decked head adorned with ear-rings, and graced with a beautiful nose and a pair of large eyes. At this, Chitrasena, endued with the splendour of the Sun, fell down on the terrace of his car.[19] Beholding Chitrasena slain, all the

great car-warriors there uttered loud cries of praise and many leonine roars.[20] Meanwhile the two sons of Karna, viz., Sushena and Satyasena, both of whom were great car-warriors, beholding their brother slain, shot showers of keen shafts.[21] Those foremost of car-warriors rushed with speed against the son of Pāndu like a couple of tigers, O king, in the deep forest rushing against an elephant from desire of slaying him.[22] Both of them poured their keen shafts upon the mighty car-warrior Nakula. Indeed, as they poured those shafts, they resembled two masses of clouds pouring rain in torrents.[23] Though pierced with arrows all over, the valiant and heroic son of Pāndu cheerfully took up another bow after ascending another car, and stood in battle like the Destroyer himself in rage.[24] Then those two brothers, O monarch, with their straight shafts, cut off Nakula's car into fragments.[25] Then Nakula, laughing, smote the four steeds of Satyasena with four whetted and keen shafts in that encounter.[26] Aiming a long shaft equipt with wings of gold, the son of Pāndu then cut off, O monarch, the bow of Satyasena.[27] At this the latter, mounting on another car and taking up another bow, as also his brother Sushena, rushed against the son of Pāndu.[28] The valiant son of Mādri fearlessly pierced each of them, O monarch, with a couple of shafts at the van of battle.[29] Then the mighty car-warrior Sushena, filled with wrath, cut off in that battle, laughing the while, the formidable bow of Pāndu's son with a razor-headed arrow.[30] Then Nakula, insensate with rage, took up another bow and pierced Sushena with five arrows and struck his standard with one.[31] Without losing a moment, he then cut off the bow and the leathern fence of Satyasena also, O sire, at which all the troops there uttered a loud shout.[32] Satyasena, taking up another foe-slaying bow that was capable of bearing a great strain, shrouded the son of Pāndu with arrows from every side.[33] Baffling those arrows, Nakula, that slayer of hostile heroes, pierced each of his antagonists with a couple of shafts.[34] Each of the latter separately pierced the son of Pāndu in return with many straight-coursing shafts. Next they pierced Nakula's driver also with many keen shafts.[35] The valiant Satyasena then, endued with great lightness of hand, cut off without

his brother's help, the shafts of Nakula's car and his bow with a couple of arrows.[36] The *Atiratha* Nakula, however, staying on his car, took up a dart equipt with a golden handle and a very keen point, and steeped in oil and exceedingly bright.[37] It resembled, O lord, a she-snake of virulent poison, frequently darting out her tongue. Raising that weapon he hurled it at Satyasena in that encounter.[38] That dart, O king, pierced the heart of Satyasena in that battle and reduced it into a hundred fragments. Deprived of his senses and life, he fell down upon the Earth from his car.[39] Beholding his brother slain, Sushena, insensate with rage, suddenly made Nakula carless in that battle. Without losing a moment, he poured his arrows over the son of Pāndu fighting on foot.[40] Seeing Nakula carless, the mighty car-warrior Sutasoma, the son of Draupadi, rushed to that spot for rescuing his sire in battle.[41]* Mounting then upon the car of Sutasoma, Nakula, that hero of Bharata's race, looked beautiful like a lion upon a mountain. Then taking up another bow, he fought with Sushena.[42] Those two great car-warriors, approaching each other, and shooting showers of arrows, endeavoured to compass each other's destruction.[43] Then Sushena, filled with rage, struck the son of Pāndu with three shafts and Sutasoma with twenty in the arms and the chest.[44] At this the impetuous Nakula, O monarch, that slayer of hostile heroes, covered all the points of the compass with arrows.[45] Then taking up a sharp shaft endued with great energy and equipt with a semi-circular head, Nakula sped it with great force at Karna's son in that battle.[46] With that arrow, O best of kings, the son of Pāndu cut off from Sushena's trunk the latter's head in the very sight of all the troops. That feat seemed exceedingly wonderful.[47] Thus slain by the illustrious Nakula, Karna's son fell down like a lofty tree on the bank of a river thrown down by the current of the stream.[48] Beholding the slaughter of Karna's sons and the prowess of Nakula, thy army, O bull of Bharata's race, fled away in fear.[49] Their commander, however, viz., the brave and valiant ruler of the

---

* The Bombay edition reads *Mahāratham* for *Mahārathas*.—T.

Madras, that chastiser of foes, then protected, O monarch, those troops in that battle.[50] Rallying his host, O king, Calya stood fearlessly in battle, uttering loud leonine roars and causing his bow to twang fiercely.[51] Then thy troops, O king, protected in battle by that firm bowman, cheerfully proceeded against the foe once more from every side.[52] Those high-souled warriors, surrounding that great bowman, viz., the ruler of the Madras, stood, O king, desirous of battling on every side.[53] Then Sātyaki, and Bhimasena, and those two Pāndavas, viz., the twin sons of Mādri, placing that chastiser of foes and abode of modesty, viz., Yudhishthira, at their head,[54] and surrounding him on all sides in that battle, uttered leonine roars. And those heroes also caused a loud whizz with the arrows they shot and frequently indulged in diverse kinds of shouts.[55] Smilingly, all thy warriors, filled with rage, speedily encompassed the ruler of the Madras and stood from desire of battle.[56] Then commenced a battle, inspiring the timid with fear, between thy soldiers and the enemy, both of whom made death their goal.[57] That battle between fearless combatants, enhancing the population of Yama's kingdom, resembled, O monarch, that between the gods and the *Asuras* in days of yore.[58] Then the ape-bannered son of Pāndu, O king, having slaughtered the *Samsaptakas* in battle, rushed against that portion of the Kaurava army.[59] Smiling, all the Pāndavas, headed by Dhrishtadyumna, rushed against the same division, shooting showers of keen arrows.[60] Overwhelmed by the Pāndavas, the Kaurava host became stupified. Indeed, those divisions then could not discern the cardinal from the subsidiary points of the compass.[61] Covered with keen arrows sped by the Pāndavas, the Kaurava army, deprived of its foremost warriors, wavered and broke on all sides. Indeed, O Kauravya, that host of thine began to be slaughtered by the mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas.[62] Similarly, the Pāndava host, O king, began to be slaughtered in hundreds and thousands in that battle by thy sons on every side with their arrows.[63] While the two armies, exceedingly excited, were thus slaughtering each other, they became much agitated like two streams in the season of rains.[64] During the progress of that dreadful

battle, O monarch, a great fear entered the hearts of thy warriors as also those of the Pāndavas.' "[65]

SECTION XI.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the troops, slaughtered by one another, were thus agitated, when many of the warriors fled away and the elephants began to utter loud cries,[1] when the foot-soldiers in that dreadful battle began to shout and wail aloud, when the steeds, O king, ran in diverse directions,[2] when the carnage became awful, when a terrible destruction set in of all embodied creatures, when weapons of various kinds fell or clashed with one another, when cars and elephants began to be mingled together,[3]—on that occasion when heroes felt great delight and cowards felt their fears enhanced.—when combatants encountered one another from desire of slaughter,[4]—on that awful occasion of the destruction of life,—during the progress of that dreadful sport, that is, of that awful battle that enhanced the population of Yama's kingdom,[5]—the Pāndavas slaughtered thy troops with keen shafts, and, after the same manner, thy troops slew those of the Pāndavas.[6] During the that battle inspiring the timid with terror,—indeed, during the progress of the battle as it was fought on that morning about the hour of sunrise,[7]—the Pāndava heroes of good aim, protected by the high-souled Yudhishthira, fought with thy forces, making death itself their goal.[8] The Kuru army, O thou of the race of Kuru, encountering the proud Pāndavas endued with great strength, skilled in smiting, and possessed of sureness of aim, became weakened and agitated like a herd of she-deer frightened at a forest-conflagration.[9] Beholding that army weakened and helpless like a cow sunk in a mire, Calya, desirous of rescuing it, proceeded against the Pāndava army.[10] Filled with rage, the ruler of the Madras, taking up an excellent bow, rushed for battle against the Pāndava foes.[11] The Pāndavas also, O monarch, in that encounter, inspired with desire of victory, proceeded against the ruler of the Madras and pierced him with keen shafts.[12] Then the ruler of the Madras, possessed of great strength, afflicted that host with showers of keen arrows in

the very sight of king Yudhishthira the just.[13] At that time diverse portents appeared to the view. The Earth herself, with her mountains, trembled, making a loud noise.[14] Meteors, with keen points bright as those of lances equipt with handles, piercing the air, fell upon the Earth from the firmament.[15] Deer and buffaloes and birds, O monarch, in large numbers, placed thy army to their right, O king![16]* The planets Venus and Mars, in conjunction with Mercury, appeared at the rear of the Pāndavas and to the front of all the (Kaurava) lords of Earth.[17] Blazing flames seemed to issue from the points of weapons, dazzling the eyes (of the warriors). Crows and owls in large numbers perched upon the heads of the combatants and on the tops of their standards.[18] Then a fierce battle took place between the Kaurava and the Pāndava combatants assembled together in large bodies.[19] Then, O king, the Kauravas, mustering all their divisions, rushed against the Pāndava army.[20] Of soul incapable of being depressed, Calya then poured dense showers of arrows on Yudhishthira the son of Kunti like the thousand-eyed Indra pouring rain in torrents.[21] Possessed of great strength, he pierced Bhimasena, and the five sons of Draupadi, and the two sons of Mādri by Pāndu, and Dhrishtadyumna, and the grandson of Cini, and Cikhandin also, each with ten arrows equipt with wings of gold and whetted on stone.[22-23] Indeed, he began to pour his arrows like Maghavat pouring rain at the close of the summer season.[24] Then the Prabhadrakas, O king, and the Somakas, were seen felled or falling by thousands, in consequence of Calya's arrows.[25] Multitudinous as swarms of bees or flights of locusts, the shafts of Calya were seen to fall like thunder-bolts from the clouds.[26] Elephants and steeds and foot-soldiers and car-warriors, afflicted with Calya's arrows, fell down or wandered or uttered loud wails.[27] Infuriate with rage and prowess, the ruler of the Madras shrouded his foes in that battle like the Destroyer at the end of the *Yuga*.† The mighty

---

* *I. e*, these animals were seen to pass along the left of the Kuru army, portending a great slaughter and defeat.—T.

† Literally, 'like the Destroyer let loose by Time'.—T.

ruler of the Madras began to roar. aloud like the clouds.[28] The Pāndava army, thus slaughtered by Calya, ran towards Yudhishthira the son of Kunti (for protection).[29] Possessed of great lightness of hand, Calya, having in that battle crushed them with whetted arrows, began to afflict Yudhishthira with a dense shower of shafts.[30] Beholding Calya impetuously rushing towards him with horse and foot, king Yudhishthira, filled with wrath, checked him with keen shafts, even as an infuriate elephant is checked with iron-hooks.[31] Then Calya sped a terrible arrow at Yudhishthira that resembled a snake of virulent poison. Piercing through the high-souled son of Kunti, that arrow quickly fell down upon the Earth.[32] Then Vrikodara, filled with wrath, pierced Calya with seven arrows, and Sahadeva pierced him with five, and Nakula with ten.[33] The (five) sons of Draupadi poured upon that foe-slaying hero, viz., the impetuous Ārtāyani, showers of arrows like a mass of clouds pouring rain upon a mountain.[34] Beholding Calya struck by the Pārthas on every side, both Kritavarman and Kripa rushed in wrath towards that spot.[35] Uluka also of mighty energy, and Cakuni the son of Suvala, and the mighty car-warrior Açwatthāman with smiles on his lips, and all thy sons, protected Calya by every means in that battle.[36] Piercing Bhimasena with three arrows, Kritavarman, shooting a dense shower of shafts, checked that warrior who then seemed to be the embodiment of wrath.[37] Excited with rage, Kripa struck Dhrishtadyumna with many arrows. Cakuni proceeded against the sons Draupadi, and Açwatthāman against the twins.[38] That foremost of warriors, viz., Duryodhana, possessed of fierce energy, proceeded, in that battle, against Keçava and Arjuna, and endued with might, he struck them both with many arrows.[39] Thus hundreds of combats, O monarch, that were fierce and beautiful, took place between thine and the enemy, on diverse parts of the field.[40] The chief of the Bhojas then slew the brown steeds of Bhimasena's car in that encounter. The steedless son of Pāndu, alighting from his car, began to fight with his mace, like the Destroyer himself with his uplifted bludgeon.[41] The ruler of the Madras then slew the steeds of Sahadeva before his eyes, Then Sahadeva slew Calya's son with his sword.[42]

The preceptor Gautama once more fearlessly fought with Dhrishtadyumna, both exerting themselves with great care.[43] The preceptor's son Açwatthāman, without much wrath and as if smiling in that battle, pierced each of the five heroic sons of Draupadi with ten arrows.[44] Once more the steeds of Bhimasena were slain in that battle. The steedless son of Pāndu, quickly alighting from his car,[45] took up his mace like the Destroyer his bludgeon. Excited with wrath, that mighty hero crushed the steeds and the car of Kritavarman. Jumping down from his vehicle, Kritavarman then fled away.[46] Calya also, excited with rage, O king, slaughtered many Somakas and Pāndavas, and once more afflicted Yudhishthira with many keen shafts.[47] Then the valiant Bhima, biting his nether lip, and infuriate with rage, took up his mace in that battle, and aimed it at Calya for the latter's destruction.[48] Resembling the very bludgeon of Yama, impending (upon the head of the foe) like the death-night, exceedingly destructive of the lives of elephants and steeds and human beings,[49] twined round with cloth of gold, looking like a blazing meteor, equipt with a sling, fierce as a she-snake, hard as thunder, and made wholly of iron,[50] smeared with sandal-paste and other unguents like a desirable lady, smutted with marrow and fat and blood, resembling the very tongue of Yama,[51] producing shrill sounds in consequence of the bells attached to it, like unto the thunder of Indra, resembling in shape a snake of virulent poison just freed from its slough, drenched with the juicy seretions of elephants,[52] inspiring hostile troops with terror and friendly troops with joy, celebrated in the world of men, and capable of riving mountain summits,[53] that mace, with which the mighty son of Kunti had in Kailāsa challenged the enraged Lord of Alakā, the friend of Maheçwara,[54]*—that weapon with which Bhima, though resisted by many, had in wrath slain a large number of proud *Guhyakas* endued with powers of illusion on the breasts of Gandhamādana for the sake of procuring *Mandāra* flowers for doing what was agreeable to Draupadi,[55]—uplifting *that*

* *I. e.*, Kuvera, Alakā being the capital or abode of the king of the *Guhyakas* or *Yakshas*.—T.

mace which was rich with diamonds and jewels and gems and possessed of eight sides and celebrated as Indra's thunder,—the mighty-armed son of Pāndu now rushed against Calya.[56] With that mace of awful sound, Bhima, skilled in battle, crushed the four steeds of Calya that were possessed of great fleetness.[57] Then the heroic Calya, excited with wrath in that battle, hurled a lance at the broad chest of Bhima and uttered a loud shout. That lance, piercing through the armour of Pāndu's son, penetrated into his body.[58] Vrikodara, however, fearlessly plucking out the weapon, pierced therewith the driver of Calya in the chest.[59] His vitals pierced, the driver, vomiting blood, fell down with agitated heart. At this the ruler of the Madras came down from his car and cheerlessly gazed at Bhima.[60] Beholding his own feat thus counteracted, Calya became filled with wonder. Of tranquil soul, the ruler of the Madras took up his mace and began to cast his glances upon his foe.[61] Beholding that terrible feat of his in battle, the Pārthas, with cheerful hearts, worshipped Bhima who was incapable of being tired with exertion.' "[62]

Section XII.

'Sanjaya said,—'Seeing his driver fallen, Calya, O king, quickly took up his mace made wholly of iron and stood immovable as a hill.[1] Bhima, however, armed with his mighty mace, rushed impetuously towards Calya who then looked like the blazing *Yuga* fire, or the Destroyer armed with the noose, or the Kailāsa mountain with its formidable crest, or Vāsava with his thunder, or Mahādeva with his trident, or an infuriate elephant in the forest.[2-3] At that time the blare of thousands of conchs and trumpets and loud leonine roars arose there, enhancing the delight of heroes.[4] The combatants of both armies, looking at those two foremost of warriors from every side, applauded them both, saying,—Excellent, Excellent![5] Save the ruler of the Madras, or Rāma, that delighter of the Yadus, there is none else that can venture to endure the impetuosity of Bhima in battle![6] Similarly, save Bhima, there is no other warrior that can venture to endure the force of the

mace of the illustrious king of the Madras in battle![7]—These two combatants then, viz., Vrikodara and the ruler of the Madras, roaring like bulls, careered in circles, frequently jumping up in the air.[8] In that encounter between those two lions among men, no difference could be noticed between them either in respect of their careering in circles or of their wielding the mace.[9] The mace of Calya, wrapped round with a resplendent cloth of gold that looked like a sheet of fire, inspired the spectators with dread.[10] Similarly, the mace of the high-souled Bhima, as the latter careered in circles, looked like lightning in the midst of the clouds.[11] Struck by the ruler of the Madras with his mace, the mace of Bhima, O king, produced sparks of fire in the welkin which thereupon seemed to be ablaze.[12]* Similarly, struck by Bhima with his mace, the mace of Calya produced a shower of blazing coals which seemed exceedingly wonderful.[13] Like two gigantic elephants striking each other with their tusks, or two huge bulls striking each other with their horns, those two heroes began to strike each other with their foremost of maces, like a couple of combatants striking each other with iron-bound clubs.[14]† Their limbs being struck with each other's mace, they soon became bathed in blood and looked handsomer in consequence like two flowering *Kinçukas*.[15] Struck by the ruler of the Madras on both his left and right, the mighty-armed Bhimasena stood immovable like a mountain.[16] Similarly, though struck repeatedly with the force of Bhima's mace, Calya, O king, moved not, like a mountain assailed by an elephant with his tusks.[17] The noise made by the blows of the maces of those two lions among men was heard on all sides like successive peals of thunder.[18] Having ceased for a moment, those two warriors of great energy once more began, with uplifted maces, to career in closer circles.[19] Once more the clash took place between those two warriors of superhuman feats, each having advanced towards the other but eight steps, and each assailing the other with his uplifted iron club.[20] Then,

---

* The correct reading, as in the Bombay edition, is *dahyamānevas khe*.—T.

† *Totras* were clubs with heads of iron.—T.

wishing to get at each other, they once more carcered in circles. Both accomplished (in the use of the mace) they began to display their superiority of skill.[21] Uplifting their terrible weapons, they then again struck each other like mountains striking each other with their crests at the time of an earthquake.[22] Exceedingly crushed with each other's mace in consequence of each other's strength, both those heroes fell down at the same time like a couple of poles set up for Indra's worship.[23] The brave combatants then of both armies, at that sight, uttered cries of *Oh* and *Alas*. Struck with great force in their vital limbs, both of them had become exceedingly agitated.[24] Then the mighty Kripa, taking up Calya, that bull among the Madras, on his own car, quickly bore him away from the field of battle.[25] Within, however, the twinkling of an eye, Bhimasena, rising up, and still reeling as if drunk, challenged, with uplifted mace, the ruler of the Madras.[26] Then the heroic warriors of thy army, armed with diverse weapons, fought with the Pāndavas, causing diverse musical instruments to be blown and beat.[27] With uplifted arms and weapons, and making a loud noise, O monarch, thy warriors headed by Duryodhana rushed against the Pāndavas.[28] Beholding the Kaurava host, the sons of Pāndu, with leonine roars, rushed against those warriors headed by Duryodhana.[29] Then thy son, O bull of Bharata's race, singling out Chekitāna amongst those rushing heroes, pierced him deeply with a lance in the chest.[30] Thus assailed by thy son, Chekitāna fell down on the terrace of his car, covered with blood, and overcome with a deep swoon.[31] Beholding Chekitāna slain, the great car-warriors among the Pāndavas incessantly poured their arrowy showers (upon the Kauravas).[32] Indeed, the Pāndavas, inspired with desire of victory, O monarch, careered beautifully on all sides amonst thy divisions.[33] Kripa, and Kritavarman, and the mighty son of Suvala, placing the ruler of the Madras before them, fought with king Yudhishthira the just.[34] Duryodhana, O monarch, fought with Dhrishtadyumna, the slayer of Bharadwāja's son, that hero endued with abundant energy and prowess.[35] Three thousand cars, O king, despatched by thy son and headed by Drona's son, battled with Vijaya (Arjuna).[36] All those

combatants, O king, had firmly resolved to win victory and had cast off fear with life itself.* Indeed, O king, thy warriors penetrated into the midst of the Pāndava army like swans into a large lake.[37] A fierce battle then took place between the Kurus and the Pāndavas, the combatants being actuated with the desire of slaughtering one another and deriving great pleasure from giving and receiving blows.[38] During the progress, O king, of that battle which was destructive of great heroes, an earthy dust, terrible to behold, was raised by the wind.[39] From only the names we heard (of the Pāndava warriors) that were uttered in course of that battle and from those (of the Kuru warriors) that were uttered by the Pāndavas, we knew the combatants that fought with one another fearlessly.[40] That dust, however, O tiger among men, was soon dispelled by the blood that was shed, and all the points of the compass became once more clear when that dusty darkness was driven away.[41] Indeed, during the progress of that terrible and awful battle, no one among either thy warriors or those of the foe, turned his back.[42] Desirous of attaining to the regions of Brahman and longing for victory by fair fight, the combatants displayed their prowess, inspired with the hope of heaven.[43] For paying off the debt they owed to their masters on account of the sustenance granted by the latter, or firmly resolved to accomplish the objects of their friends and allies, the warriors, with hearts fixed on heaven, fought with one another on that occasion.[44] Shooting and hurling weapons of diverse kinds, great car-warriors roared at or smote one another.[45]—*Slay, pierce, seize, strike, cut off,*—these were the words that were heard in that battle, uttered by thy warriors and those of the foe.[46] Then Calya, O monarch, desirous of slaying him, pierced king Yudhishthira the just, that mighty car-warrior, with many sharp arrows.[47] Conversant with what are the vital limbs of the body, the son of Prithā, however, O monarch, with the greatest ease, struck the ruler of the Madras with four and ten cloth-yard shafts, aiming at the latter's vital limbs.[48] Resisting the son of Pāndu with his

* A mode of expression signifying that they had cast off fear and were ready to lay down their lives.—T.

shafts, Calya of great fame, filled with rage and desirous of slaying his adversary, pierced him in that battle with innumerable arrows equipt with *Kanka* feathers.[49] Once more, O monarch, he struck Yudhishthira with a straight shaft in the very sight of all the troops.[50] King Yudhishthira the just, possessed of great fame and filled with rage, pierced the ruler of the Madras with many keen arrows equipt with feathers of *Kankas* and peacocks.[51] That mighty car-warrior then pierced Chandrasena with seventy arrows, and Calya's driver with nine, and Drumasena with four and sixty.[52] When the two protectors of his car-wheels were (thus) slain by the high-souled son of Pāndu, Calya, O king, slew five and twenty warriors among the Chedis.[53] And he pierced Sātyaki with five and twenty keen arrows, and Bhimasena with seven, and the two sons of Mādri with a hundred, in that battle.[54] While Calya was thus careering in that battle, that best of kings, viz., the son of Prithā, sped at him many shafts that resembled snakes of virulent poison.[55] With a broad-headed arrow, Yudhishththira the son of Kunti then cut off from his car the standard-top of his adversary as the latter stood in his front.[56] We saw the standard of Calya, which was thus cut off by the son of Pāndu in that great battle, fall down like a riven mountain summit.[57] Seeing his standard fallen and observing the son of Pāndu standing before him, the ruler of the Madras became filled with rage and shot showers of shafts.[58] That bull amongst Kshatriyas, viz., Calya of immeasurable soul, poured over the Kshatriyas in that battle dense showers of arrows like the deity of the clouds pouring torrents of rain.[59] Piercing Sātyaki and Bhimasena and the twin sons of Mādri by Pāndu, each with five arrows, he afflicted Yudhishthira greatly.[60] We then, O monarch, beheld a net of arrows spread before the chest of Pāndu's son like a mass of risen clouds.[61] The mighty car-warrior Calya, in that battle, filled with rage, shrouded Yudhishthira with straight shafts.[62] At this, king Yudhishthira, afflicted with those showers of shafts, felt himself deprived of his prowess, even as the *Asura* Jambha had become before the slayer of Vritra.' "[63]

SECTION XIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'When king Yudhishthira the just was thus afflicted by the ruler of the Madras, Sātyaki and Bhimasena and the two sons of Mādri by Pāndu, encompassing Calya with their cars, began to afflict him in that battle.[1] Beholding the unsupported Calya thus afflicted by those great car-warriors (and seeing him successfully repel those attacks), loud sounds of applause were heard, and the *Siddhas* (who witnessed the encounter) became filled with delight. The ascetics, assembled together (for witnessing the battle), declared it to be wonderful.[2] Then Bhimasena in that encounter, having pierced Calya who had become (as his name implied) an iresistible dart in prowess, with one arrow, next pierced him with seven.[3] Sātyaki, desirous of rescuing the son of Dharma, pierced Calya with a hundred arrows and uttered a loud leonine roar.[4] Nakula pierced him with five arrows, and Sahadeva with seven; the latter then once more pierced him with as many.[5] The heroic ruler of the Madras, struggling carefully in that battle, thus afflicted by those mighty car-warriors, drew a formidable bow capable of bearing a great strain and of imparting great force to the shafts sped from it,[6] and pierced Sātyaki, O sire, with five and twenty shafts and Bhima with three and seventy and Nakula with seven.[7] Then cutting off with a broad-headed arrow the bow, with shaft fixed on the string, of Sahadeva, he pierced Sahadeva himself, in that battle, with three and seventy shafts.[8] Sahadeva then, stringing another bow, pierced his maternal uncle of great splendour with five shafts that resembled snakes of virulent poison or blazing fire.[9] Filled with great rage, he then struck his adversary's driver with a straight shaft in that battle and then Calya himself once more with three.[10] Then Bhimasena pierced the ruler of the Madras with seventy arrows, and Sātyaki pierced him with nine, and king Yudhishthira with sixty.[11] Thus pierced, O monarch, by those mighty car-warriors, blood began to flow from Calya's body, like crimson streams running adown the breast of a mountain of red chalk,[12] Calya, however, quickly

pierced in return each of those great bowmen with five arrows, O king, which feat seemed exceedingly wonderful.[13] With another broad-headed arrow, that mighty car-warrior then, O sire, cut off the stringed bow of Dharma's son in that encounter.[14] Taking up another bow, that great car-warrior, viz., the son of Dharma, covered Calya, his steeds, and driver, and standard, and car, with many arrows.[15] Thus shrouded in that battle by the son of Dharma with his shafts, Calya struck the former with ten keen arrows.[16] Then Sātyaki, filled with rage upon beholding the son of Dharma thus afflicted with shafts, checked the heroic ruler of the Madras with clouds of arrows.[17] At this, Calya cut off with a razor-faced arrow the formidable bow of Sātyaki, and pierced each of the other Pāndava warriors with three arrows.[18] Filled with rage, O monarch, Sātyaki of unbaffled prowess then hurled at Calya a lance equipt with a golden staff and decked with many jewels and gems.[19] Bhimasena sped at him a clothyard shaft that looked like a blazing snake; Nakula hurled at him a dart, Sahadeva an excellent mace, and the son of Dharma a *Çataghni*, impelled by the desire of despatching him.[20] The ruler of the Madras, however, quickly baffled in that battle all those weapons, hurled from the arms of those five warriors at him, as these coursed towards his car.[21] With a number of broad-headed arrows Calya cut off the lance hurled by Sātyaki. Possessed of valour and great lightness of hand, he cut off into two fragments the gold-decked shaft sped at him by Bhima.[22] He then resisted with clouds of shafts the terrible dart, equipt with a golden handle, that Nakula sped at him and the mace also that Sahadeva had thrown.[23] With a couple of other arrows, O Bhārata, he cut off the *Çataghni* sped at him by the king, in the very sight of the sons of Pāndu, and uttered a loud leonine roar. The grandson of Cini, however, could not endure the defeat of his weapon in that battle.[24] Insensate with rage, Sātyaki took up another bow, and pierced the ruler of the Madras with two shafts and his driver with three.[25] At this, Calya, O monarch, excited with rage, deeply pierced all of them with ten arrows, like persons piercing mighty elephants with sharp-pointed lances.[26] Thus checked in that battle by

the ruler of the Madras, O Bhārata, those slayers of foes became unable to stay in front of Calya.[27] King Duryodhana, beholding the prowess of Calya, regarded the Pāndavas, the Pānchālas, and the Srinjayas as already slain.[28] Then, O king, the mighty-armed Bhimasena, possessed of great prowess and mentally resolved to cast off his life-breaths, encountered the ruler of the Madras.[29] Nakula and Sahadeva and Sātyaki of great might, encompassing Calya, shot their arrows at him from every side.[30] Though encompassed by those four great bowmen and mighty car-warriors among the Pāndavas, the valiant ruler of the Madras still fought with them.[31] Then, O king, the royal son of Dharma, in that dreadful battle, quickly cut off with a razor-headed arrow one of the protectors of Calya's car-wheels.[32] When that brave and mighty car-warrior, viz., that protector of Calya's car-wheel, was thus slain, Calya of great strength covered the Pāndava troops with showers of arrows.[33] Beholding his troops shrouded with arrows, O monarch, in that battle, king Yudhishthira the just began to reflect in this strain,[34]—Verily, how shall those grave words of Mādhava become true! I hope, the ruler of the Madras, excited with rage, will not annihilate my army in battle![35]—Then the Pāndavas, O elder brother of Pāndu, with cars and elephants and steeds, approached the ruler of the Madras and began to afflict him from every side.[36] Like the wind dispersing mighty masses of clouds, the king of the Madras, in that battle, dispersed that risen shower of arrows and diverse other kinds of weapons in profusion.[37] We then beheld the downpour of gold-winged arrows shot by Calya, coursing through the welkin like a flight of locusts.[38] Indeed, those arrows shot by the ruler of the Madras from the van of battle were seen to fall like swarms of birds.[39] With the gold-decked shafts that issued from the bow of the Madra king, the welkin, O monarch, became so filled that there was not an inch of empty space.[40] When a thick gloom appeared, caused by the arrows shot by the mighty ruler of the Madras owing to his extreme lightness of hands in that dreadful battle,[41] and when they beheld the vast host of the Pāndavas thus agitated by that hero, the gods and the *Gandharvas* became filled with great wonder.[42] Afflicting

with vigor all the Pāndava warriors with his shafts from every side, O sire, Calya shrouded king Yudhishthira the just and roared repeatedly like a lion.[43] The mighty car-warriors of the Pāndavas, thus shrouded by Calya in that battle, became unable to proceed against that great hero for fighting with him.[44] Those, however, amongst the Pāndavas, that had Bhimasena at their head and that were led by king Yudhishthira the just, did not fly away from that ornament of battle, viz., the brave Calya.' "[45]

SECTION XIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Meanwhile Arjuna, in that battle, pierced with many arrows by the son of Drona as also by the latter's followers, viz., the heroic and mighty car-warriors among the Trigartas,[1] pierced Drona's son in return with three shafts, and each of the other warriors with two. Once again, the mighty-armed Dhananjaya covered his enemies with showers of shafts.[2] Though struck with keen arrows and though they looked like porcupines in consequence of those arrows sticking to their limbs, still thy troops, O bull of Bharata's race, fled not from Pārtha in that battle.[3] With Drona's son at their head, they encompassed that mighty car-warrior and fought with him, shooting showers of shafts.[4] The gold-decked arrows, O king, shot by them, speedily filled the terrace of Arjuna's car.[5] Beholding those two great bowmen, those two foremost of all warriors, viz., the two Krishnas, covered with arrows, those invincible (Kaurava) combatants became filled with delight.[6] Indeed, at that time, the *Kuvara*, the wheels, the shaft, the traces, the yoke, and the *Anukarsha*, O lord, of Arjuna's car, became entirely enveloped with arrows.[7] The like of what thy warriors then did unto Pārtha had never before, O king, been either seen or heard.[8] That car looked resplendent with those keen arrows of beautiful wings like a celestial vehicle blazing with hundreds of torches dropped on the Earth.[9] Then Arjuna, O monarch, covered that hostile division with showers of straight shafts like a cloud pouring torrents of rain on a mountain.'[10] Struck in that battle with arrows inscribed with

Pārtha's name, those warriors, beholding that state of things, regarded the field of battle to be full of Pārtha.[11] Then the Pārtha-fire, having arrows for its wonderful flames and the loud twang of *Gāndiva* for the wind that fanned it, began to consume the fuel constituted by thy troops.[12] Then, O Bhārata, heaps of fallen wheels and yokes, of quivers, of banners and standards, with the vehicles themselves that bore them, of shafts and *Anukarshas* and *Trivenus*, of axles and traces and goads, of heads of warriors decked with ear-rings and head-gears, of arms, O monarch, and thighs in thousands, of umbrellas along with fans, and of diadems and crowns, were seen along the tracks of Pārtha's car.[13-16] Indeed, along the track of the angry Pārtha's car, O monarch, the ground, miry with blood, became impassable, O chief of the Bharatas, like the sporting ground of Rudra. The scene inspired the timid with fear and the brave with delight.[17-18] Having destroyed two thousand cars with their fences, that scorcher of foes, viz., Pārtha, looked like a smokeless fire with blazing flames.[19] Indeed, even as the illustrious Agni when he blazes forth (at the end of the *Yuga*) for destroying the mobile and the immobile universe, even so looked, O king, the mighty car-warrior Pārtha.[20] Beholding the prowess of Pāndu's son in that battle, the son of Drona, on his car equipt with many banners, endeavoured to check him.[21] Those two tigers among men, both having white steeds yoked unto their vehicles and both regarded as the foremost of car-warriors, quickly encountered each other, each desirous of slaying the other.[22] The arrowy showers shot by both became exceedingly terrible and were as dense, O bull of Bharata's race, as the torrents of rain poured by two masses of clouds at the close of summer.[23] Each challenging other, those two warriors mangled each other with straight shafts in that battle, like a couple of bulls tearing each other with their horns.[24] The battle between them, O king, was fought equally for a long while. The clash of weapons became terrific[25] The son of Drona then, O Bhārata, pierced Arjuna with a dozen gold-winged arrows of great energy and Vāsudeva with ten.[26] Having shown for a short while some regard for the preceptor's son in that great battle, Vibhatsu then, smiling

the while, stretched his bow *Gāndiva* with force.[27] Soon, however, the mighty car-warrior Savyasāchin made his adversary steedless and driverless and carless, and without putting forth much strength pierced him with three arrows.[28] Staying on that steedless car, Drona's son, smiling the while, hurled at the son of Pāndu a heavy mallet that looked like a dreadful mace with iron spikes.[29] Beholding that weapon, which was decked with cloth of gold, course towards him, the heroic Pārtha, that slayer of foes, cut it off into seven fragments.[30] Seeing his mallet cut off, Drona's son of great wrath took up a terrible mace equipt with iron spikes and looking like a mountain summit. Accomplished in battle, the son of Drona hurled it then at Pārtha.[31] Beholding that spiked mace coursing towards him like the Destroyer himself in rage, Pāndu's son Arjuna quickly cut it off with five excellent shafts.[32] Cut off with Pārtha's shafts in that great battle, that weapon fell down on the Earth, riving the hearts, as it were, O Bhārata, of the (hostile) kings.[33] The son of Pāndu then pierced Drona's son with three other shafts. Though deeply pierced by the mighty Pārtha, Drona's son, however, of great might, relying upon his own manliness, showed no sign of fear or agitation.[34] That great car-warrior, viz., the son of Drona, then, O king, shrouded Suratha with showers of shafts before the eyes of all the Kshatriyas.[35] At this, Suratha, that great car-warrior among the Pānchālas, in that battle, riding upon his car whose rattle was as deep as the roar of the clouds, rushed against the son of Drona[36] Drawing his foremost of bows, firm and capable of bearing a great strain, the Pānchāla hero covered Açwatthāman with arrows that resembled flames of fire or snakes of virulent poison.[37] Seeing the great car-warrior Suratha rushing towards him in wrath, the son of Drona became filled with rage like a snake struck with a stick.[38] Furrowing his brow into three lines, and licking the corners of his mouth with his tongue, he looked at Suratha in rage and then rubbed his bowstring and sped a keen cloth-yard shaft that resembled the fatal rod of Death.[39] Endued with great speed, that shaft pierced the heart of Suratha and passing out entered the Earth, riving her through, like the

thunder-bolt of Cakra hurled from the sky.[40] Struck with that shaft, Suratha fell down on the Earth like a mountain summit riven with thunder.[41] After the fall of that hero, the valiant son of Drona, that foremost of car-warriors, speedily mounted upon the vehicle of his slain foe.[42] Then, O monarch, that warrior, invincible in battle, viz., the son of Drona, well equipt with armour and weapons, and supported by the *Samsaptakas*, fought with Arjuna.[43] That battle, at the hour of noon, between one and the many, enhancing the population of Yama's domains, became exceedingly fierce.[44] Wonderful was the sight that we then beheld, for, noticing the prowess of all those combatants, Arjuna, alone and unsupported, fought with all his foes at the same time.[45] The encounter was exceedingly fierce that thus took place between Arjuna and his enemies, resembling that between Indra, in days of yore, and the vast host of the *Asuras*.' "[46]

Section XV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Duryodhana, O king, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, fought a fierce battle, using arrows and darts in profusion.[1] Both of them, O monarch, shot showers of arrows like showers of rain poured by the clouds in the rainy season.[2] The (Kuru) king, having pierced with five arrows the slayer of Drona, viz., Prishata's son of fierce shafts, once more pierced him with seven arrows.[3] Endued with great might and steady prowess, Dhrishtadyumna, in that battle, afflicted Duryodhana with seventy arrows.[4] Beholding the king thus afflicted, O bull of Bharata's race, his uterine brothers, accompanied by a large force, encompassed the son of Prishata.[5] Surrounded by those *Atirathas* on every side, the Pānchāla hero, O king, careered in that battle, displaying his quickness in the use of weapons.[6] Cikhandin, supported by the Prabhadrakas, fought with two Kuru bowmen, viz., Kritavarman and the great car-warrior Kripa.[7] Then also, O monarch, that battle became fierce and awful since the warriors were all resolved to lay down their lives and since all of them fought, making life the stake.[8] Calya, shooting showers

of shafts on all sides, afflicted the Pāndavas with Sātyaki and Vrikodara amongst them.[9] With patience and great strength, O monarch, the king of the Madras at the same time fought with the twins (Nakula and Sahadeva), each of whom resembled the Destroyer himself in prowess.[10] The great car-warriors among the Pāndavas who were mangled in that great battle with the shafts of Calya, failed to find a protector.[11] Then the heroic Nakula, the son of Mādri, seeing king Yudhishthira the just greatly afflicted, rushed with speed against his maternal uncle.[12] Shrouding Calya in that battle (with many arrows), Nakula, that slayer of hostile heroes smiling the while, pierced him in the centre of the chest with ten other arrows,[13] made entirely of iron, polished by the hands of the smith, equipt with wings of gold, whetted on stone, and propelled from his bow with great force.[14] Afflicted by his illustrious nephew, Calya afflicted his nephew in return with many straight arrows.[15] Then king Yudhishthira, and Bhimasena, and Sātyaki, and Sahadeva the son of Mādri, all rushed against the ruler of the Madras.[16] That vanquisher of foes, viz., the generalissimo of the Kuru army, received in that battle all those heroes that rushed towards him quickly, filling the cardinal and the subsidary points of the compass with the rattle of their cars and causing the Earth to tremble therewith.[17] Piercing Yudhishthira with three arrows and Bhima with seven, Calya pierced Sātyaki with a hundred arrows in that battle and Sahadeva with three.[18] Then the ruler of the Madras, O sire, cut off, with a razor-headed arrow, the bow with arrow fixed on it of the high-souled Nakula. Struck with Calya's shafts, that bow broke into pieces.[19] Taking up another bow, Mādri's son, that great car-warrior, quickly covered the ruler of the Madras with winged arrows.[20] Then Yudhishthira and Sahadeva, O sire, each pierced the ruler of the Madras with ten arrows in the chest.[21] Bhimasena and Sātyaki, rushing at the ruler of the Madras, both struck him with arrows winged with *Kanka* feathers, the former with sixty, and the latter with nine.[22] Filled with rage at this, the ruler of the Madras pierced Sātyaki with nine arrows and once again with seventy straight shafts.[23] Then, O sire, he cut off

at the handle the bow, with arrow fixed on it, of Sātyaki and then despatched the four steeds of the latter to Yama's abode.[24] Having made Sātyaki carless, that mighty car-warrior,- viz., the ruler of the Madras, struck him with a hundred arrows from every side.[25] He next pierced the two angry sons of Mādri, and Bhimasena the son of Pāndu, and Yudhishthira, O thou of Kuru's race, with ten arrows each.[26] The prowess that we then beheld of the ruler of the Madras was exceedingly wonderful, since the Pārthas, even unitedly, could not approach him in that battle.[27] Riding then upon another car, the mighty Sātyaki, of prowess incapable of being baffled, beholding the Pāndavas afflicted and succumbing to the ruler of the Madras, rushed with speed against him.[28] That ornament of assemblies, viz. Calya, on his car, rushed against the car of Sātyaki, like one infuriate elephant against another.[29] The collision that then took place between Sātyaki and the heroic ruler of the Madras, became fierce and wonderful to behold, even like that which had taken place in days of yore between the *Asura* Camvara and the chief of the celestials.[30] Beholding the ruler of the Madras staying before him in that battle, Sātyaki pierced him with ten arrows and said,—Wait, Wait![31]—Deeply pierced by that high-souled warrior, the ruler of the Madras pierced Sātyaki in return with sharp shafts equipt with beautiful feathers.[32] Those great bowmen then, viz., the Pārthas, beholding the king of the Madras assailed by Sātyaki, quickly rushed towards him from desire of slaying that maternal uncle of theirs.[33] The encounter then that took place between those struggling heroes, marked by a great flow of blood, became exceedingly awful like that which takes place between a number of roaring lions.[34] The struggle, O monarch, that took place between them resembled that which takes place between a number of roaring lions fighting with each other for meat.[35] With the dense showers of shafts shot by them, the Earth became entirely enveloped, and the welkin also suddenly became one mass of arrows.[36] All around the field a darkness was caused by those arrows. Indeed, with the shafts shot by these illustrious warriors, a shadow as that of the clouds was caused there.[37] Then, O king, with those blazing shafts sped by the

warriors, that were equipt with wings of gold and that looked like snakes just freed from their sloughs, the points of the compass seemed to be ablaze.[38] That slayer of foes, viz., Calya, then achieved the most wonderful feat, since that hero, alone, and unsupported, contended with many arrows in that battle.[39] The Earth became shrouded with the fierce shafts, equipt with feathers of *Kankas* and peacocks, that fell, sped from the arms of the ruler of the Madras.[40] Then, O king, we beheld the car of Calya careering in that dreadful battle like the car of Cakra in days of yore on the occasion of the destruction of the *Asuras*.'"[41]

Section XVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'Then, O lord, thy troops, with Calya at their head, once more rushed against the Pārthas in that battle with great impetuosity.[1] Although afflicted, still those troops of thine, who were fierce in battle, rushing against the Pārthas, very soon agitated them in consequence of their superior numbers.[2] Struck by the Kurus, the Pāndava troops, in the very sight of the two Krishnas, stayed not on the field, though sought to be checked by Bhimasena.[3] Filled with rage at this, Dhananjaya covered Kripa and his followers, as also Kritavarman, with showers of shafts.[4] Sahadeva checked Cakuni with all his forces. Nakula cast his glances on the ruler of the Madras from one of his flanks.[5] The (five) sons of Draupadi checked numerous kings (of the Kuru army). The Pānchāla prince Cikhandin resisted the son of Drona.[6] Armed with his mace, Bhimasena held the king in check. Kunti's son Yudhishthira resisted Calya at the head of his forces.[7] The battle then commenced once more between those pairs as they stood, among thy warriors and those of the enemy, none of whom had ever retreated from fight.[8] We then beheld the highly wonderful feat that Calya, achieved, since, alone, he fought with the whole Pāndava army![9] Calya then, as he stayed in the vicinity of Yudhishthira in that battle, looked like the planet Saturn in the vicinity of the Moon.[10] Afflicting the king

with shafts that resembled snakes of virulent poison, Calya rushed against Bhima, covering him with showers of arrows.[11] Beholding that lightness of hand and that mastery over weapons displayed by Calya, the troops of both the armies applauded him highly.[12] Afflicted by Calya, the Pāndavas, exceedingly mangled, fled away, leaving the battle, and disregarding the cries of Yudhishthira commanding them to stop.[13] While his troops were thus being slaughtered by the ruler of the Madras, Pāndu's son, king Yudhishthira the just, became filled with rage.[14] Relying upon his prowess, that mighty car-warrior began to afflict the ruler of the Madras, resolved to either win the battle or meet with death.[15] Summoning all his brothers and also Krishna of Madhu's race, he said unto them,—Bhishma, and Drona, and Karna, and the other kings,[16] that put forth their prowess for the sake of the Kauravas, have all perished in battle! Ye all have exerted your valour according to your courage and in respect of the shares allotted to you![17] Only one share, viz., mine, that is constituted by the mighty car-warrior Calya, remains. I desire to vanquish that ruler of the Madras today in battle! Whatever wishes I have regarding the accomplishment of that task I will now tell you![18] These two heroes, viz., the two sons of Mādravati, will become the protectors of my wheels. They are counted as heroes incapable of being vanquished by Vāsava himself![19] Keeping the duties of a Kshatriya before them, these two that are deserving of every honor and are firm in their vows, will fight with their maternal uncle.[20] Either Calya will slay me in battle or I will slay him. Blessed be ye! Listen to these true words, ye foremost of heroes in the world![21] Observant of Kshatriya duties, I will fight with my maternal uncle, ye lords of Earth, firmly resolved to either obtain victory or be slain![22] Let them that furnish cars quickly supply my vehicle, according to the rules of science, with weapons and all kinds of implements in a larger measure than Calya's.[23] The grandson of Cini will protect my right wheel, and Dhrishtadyumna my left. Let Prithā's son Dhananjaya guard my rear today.[24] And let Bhima, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, fight in my front. I shall thus be superior to Calya in the great battle that will occur![25]

—Thus addressed by the king, all his well-wishers did as they were requested.[26] Then the Pāndava troops once more became filled with joy, especially the Pānchālas, the Somakas, and the Matsyas.[27] Having made that vow, the king proceeded against the ruler of the Madras. The Pānchālas then blew and beat innumerable conchs and drums and uttered leonine roars.[28] Endued with great activity and filled with rage, they rushed, with loud shouts of joy, against the ruler of the Madras, that bull among the Kurus.[29]* And they caused the Earth to resound with the noise of the elephants' bells, and the loud blare of conchs and trumpets.[30] Then thy son and the valiant ruler of the Madras, like the Udaya and the Asta hills, received those assailants.[31] Boasting of his prowess in battle, Calya poured a shower of arrows on that chastiser of foes, viz., king Yudhishthira the just, like Maghavat pouring rain.[32] The high-souled king of the Kurus also, having taken up his beautiful bow, displayed those diverse kinds of lessons that Drona had taught him.[33] And he poured successive showers of arrows beautifully, quickly, and with great skill. As he careered in battle, none could mark any *laches* in him.[34] Calya and Yudhishthira, both endued with great prowess in battle, mangled each other, like a couple of tigers fighting for a piece of meat.[35] Bhima was engaged with thy son, that delighter in battle. The Pānchāla prince (Dhrishtadyumna), and Sātyaki, and the two sons of Mādri by Pāndu, received Cakuni and the other Kuru heroes around.[36] In consequence of thy evil policy, O king, there again occurred in that spot an awful battle between thy warriors and those of the foe, all of whom were inspired with the desire of victory.[37] Duryodhana then, with a straight shaft, aiming at the gold-decked standard of Bhima, cut it off in that battle.[38] The beautiful standard of Bhimasena, adorned with many bells, fell down, O giver of honors![39] Once more the king, with a sharp razor-faced arrow, cut off the beautiful bow of

---

* The reading *Kurupungavas* is incorrect. It should be in the accusative form. Then again, I read, following the Bengal texts, *taraswinas* and not *taraswinam* as in the Bombay edition.—T.

Bhima that looked like the trunk of an elephant.[40] Endued with great energy, the bowless Bhima then, putting forth his prowess, pierced the chest of thy son with a dart. At this, thy son sat down on the terrace of his car.[41] When Duryodhana swooned away, Vrikodara once more, with a razor-faced shaft, cut off the head of his driver from his trunk.[42] The steeds of Duryodhana's car, deprived of their driver, ran wildly on all sides, O Bhārata, dragging the car after them, at which loud wails arose (in the Kuru army).[43] Then the mighty car-warrior Açwatthāman, and Kripa, and Kritavarman, followed that car, desirous of rescuing thy son.[44] The (Kaurava) troops (at sight of this) became exceedingly agitated. The followers of Duryodhana became terrified. At that time, the wielder of *Gāndiva*, drawing his bow, began to slay them with his arrows.[45] Then Yudhishthira, excited with rage, rushed against the ruler of the Madras, himself urging his steeds white as ivory and fleet as thought.[46] We then saw something that was wonderful in Yudhishthira, the son of Kunti, for though very mild and soft before, he then became exceedingly fierce.[47] With eyes opened wide and body trembling in rage, the son of Kunti cut off hostile warriors in hundreds and thousands by means of his sharp shafts.[48] Those amongst the soldiers against whom the eldest Pāndava proceeded, were overthrown by him, O king, like mountain summits riven with thunder.[49] Felling cars with steeds and drivers and standards and throwing down car-warriors in large numbers, Yudhishthira, without any assistance, began to sport there like a mighty wind destroying masses of clouds.[50] Filled with rage, he destroyed steeds with riders and steeds without riders and foot-soldiers by thousands in that battle, like Rudra destroying living creatures (at the time of the universal dissolution).[51] Having made the field empty by shooting his shafts on all sides, Yudhishthira rushed against the ruler of the Madras and said,—Wait, Wait![52]—Beholding the feats then of that hero of terrible deeds, all thy warriors became inspired with fear. Calya, however, proceeded against him.[53] Both of them filled with rage, both blew their conchs. Returning and challenging each other, each then encountered the other.[54] Then

Calya covered Yudhishthira with showers of arrows. Similarly, the son of Kunti covered the ruler of the Madras with showers of arrows.[55] Then those two heroes, viz., the ruler of the Madras and Yudhishthira, mangled in that battle with each other's arrows and bathed in blood, looked[56] beautiful like a *Çālmali* and a *Kinçuka* tree decked with flowers. Both possessed of splendour and both invincible in battle, those two illustrious warriors uttered loud roars.[57] Beholding them both, the soldiers could not conclude which of them would be victorious. Whether the son of Prithā would enjoy the Earth, having slain the ruler of the Madras, or, Calya, having slain the son of Pāndu, would bestow the Earth on Duryodhana,[58] could not be ascertained, O Bhārata, by the warriors present there. King Yudhishthira, in course of that battle, placed his foes to his right.[59] Then Calya shot a hundred foremost of arrows at Yudhishthira. With another arrow of great sharpness, he cut off the latter's bow.[60] Taking up another bow, Yudhishthira pierced Calya with three hundred shafts and cut off the latter's bow with a razor-faced arrow.[61] The son of Pāndu then slew the four steeds of his antagonist with some straight arrows. With two other very sharp shafts, he then cut off the two *Pārshni* drivers of Calya.[62] Then with another blazing, well-tempered, and sharp shaft, he cut off the standard of Calya staying in his front. Then, O chastiser of foes, the army of Duryodhana broke.[63] The son of Drona, at this time, speedily proceeded towards the ruler of the Madras who had been reduced to that plight, and quickly taking him up on his own car, fled away quickly.[64] After the two had proceeded for a moment, they heard Yudhishthira roar aloud. Stopping, the ruler of the Madras then ascended another car[65] that had been equipt duly. That best of cars had a rattle deep as the roar of the clouds. Well furnished with weapons and instruments and all kinds of utensils, that vehicle made the hair of foes stand on end.' "[66]

Section XVII.

Sanjaya said,—'Taking up another bow that was very strong and much tougher, the ruler of the Madras pierced Yudhishthira and roared like a lion.[1] Then that bull amongst Kshatriyas, of immeasurable soul, poured upon all the Kshatriyas showers of arrows even like the deity of the clouds pouring rain in torrents.[2] Piercing Sātyaki with ten arrows and Bhima with three and Sahadeva with as many, he afflicted Yudhishthira greatly.[3] And he afflicted all the other great bowmen with their steeds and cars and elephants with many shafts like hunters afflicting elephants with blazing brands.[4] Indeed, that foremost of car-warriors destroyed elephants and elephant-riders, horses and horsemen, and cars and car-warriors.[5] And he cut off the arms of combatants with weapons in grasp and the standards of vehicles, and caused the Earth to be strewn with (slain) warriors like the sacrificial altar with blades of *Kuça* grass.[6] Then the Pāndus, the Pānchālas, and the Somakas, filled with rage, encompassed that hero who was thus slaughtering their troops like all destroying Death.[7] Bhimasena, and the grandson of Cini, and those two foremost of men, viz., the two sons of Mādri, encompassed that warrior while he was fighting with the (Pāndava) king of terrible might. And all of them challenged him to battle.[8] Then those heroes, O king, having obtained the ruler of the Madras, that foremost of warriors, in battle, checked that first of men in that encounter and began to strike him with winged arrows of fierce energy.[9] Protected by Bhimasena, and the two sons of Mādri, and by him of Madhu's race, the royal son of Dharma struck the ruler of the Madras in the centre of the chest with winged arrows of fierce energy.[10] Then the car-warriors and other combatants of thy army, clad in mail and equipt with weapons, beholding the ruler of the Madras exceedingly afflicted with arrows in that battle, surrounded him on all side. at the command of Duryodhana.[11] The ruler of the Madras at this time quickly pierced Yudhishthira with seven arrows

in that battle. The high-souled son of Prithā, O king, in return, pierced his foe with nine arrows in that dreadful encounter.[12] Those two great car-warriors, viz., the ruler of the Madras and Yudhishthira, began to cover each other with arrows washed in oil and shot from their bowstrings stretched to their ears.[13] Those two best of kings, both endued with great strength, both incapable of being defeated by foes, and both foremost of car-warriors, watchful of each other's *laches*, quickly and deeply pierced each other with each other's shafts.[14] The loud noise of their bows, bowstrings, and palms, resembled that of Indra's thunder as those high-souled warriors, viz., the brave ruler of the Madras and the heroic Pāndava, showered upon each other their numberless arrows.[15] They careered on the field of battle like two young tigers in the deep forest fighting for a pierçe of meat. Swelling with pride of prowess, they mangled each other like a couple of infuriate elephants equipt with powerful tusks.[16] Then the illustrious ruler of the Madras, endued with fierce impetuosity, putting forth his vigor, pierced the heroic Yudhishthira of terrible might in the chest with a shaft possessed of the splendour of fire or the Sun.[17] Deeply pierced, O king, that bull of Kuru's race, viz., the illustrious Yudhishthira, then struck the ruler of the Madras with a well-shot shaft and became filled with joy.[18] Recovering his senses within a trice, that foremost of kings (viz., Calya), possessed of prowess equal to that of him of a thousand eyes, with eyes red in wrath, quickly struck the son of Prithā with a hundred arrows.[19] At this, the illustrious son of Dharma, filled with rage, quickly pierced Calya's chest and then, without losing a moment, struck his golden mail with six shafts.[20] Filled with joy, the ruler of the Madras then, drawing his bow and having shot many arrows, at last cut off, with a pair of razor-faced shafts, the bow of his royal foe, viz., that bull of Kuru's race.[21] The illustrious Yudhishthira then, taking a new and more formidable bow in that battle, pierced Calya with many arrows of keen points from every side like Indra piercing the *Asura* Namuchi.[22] The illustrious Calya then, cutting off the golden coats of mail of both Bhima and king Yudhishthira with nine arrows, pierced the arms of both

of them.[23] With another razor-faced arrow endued with the splendour of fire or the Sun, he then cut off the bow of Yudhishthira. At this time Kripa, with six arrows, slew the king's driver who thereupon fell down in front of the car.[24] The ruler of the Madras then slew with four shafts the four steeds of Yudhishthira. Having slain the steeds of the king, the high-souled Calya then began to slay the troops of the royal son of Dharma.[25] When the (Pāndava) king had been brought to that plight, the illustrious Bhimasena, quickly cutting off the bow of the Madra king with an arrow of great impetuosity, deeply pierced the king himself with a couple of arrows.[26] With another arrow he severed the head of Calya's driver, from his trunk the middle of which was encased in mail. Exceedingy excited with rage, Bhimasena next slew, without a moment's delay, the four steeds also of his foe.[27] That foremost of all bowmen, viz., Bhima, then covered with a hundred arrows that hero who, endued with great impetuosity, was careering alone in that battle. Sahadeva, the son of Mādri, did the same. Beholding Calya stupified with those arrows, Bhima cut off his armour with other shafts.[28] His armour having been cut off by Bhimasena, the high-souled ruler of the Madras, taking up a sword and a shield decked with a thousand stars, jumped down from his car and rushed towards the son of Kunti. Cutting off the shaft of Nakula's car, Calya of terrible strength rushed towards Yudhishthira.[29] Beholding him rushing impetuously towards the king, even like the Destroyer himself rushing in rage, Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin and the (five) sons of Draupadi and the grandson of Cini suddenly advanced towards him.[30] Then the illustrious Bhima cut off with ten arrows the unrivalled shield of the advancing hero. With another broad-headed arrow he cut off the sword also of that warrior at the hilt. Filled with joy at this, he roared aloud in the midst of the troops.[31] Beholding that feat of Bhima, all the foremost car-warriors among the Pāndavas became filled with joy. Laughing aloud, they uttered fierce roars and blew their conchs white as the moon.[32] At that terrible noise the army protected by thy heroes became cheerless, covered with sweat, bathed in blood, exceedingly melancholy, and al-

most lifeless.[33] The ruler of the Madras, assailed by those foremost of Pāndava warriors headed by Bhimasena, proceeded (regardless of them) towards Yudhishthira, like a lion proceeding for seizing a deer.[34] King Yudhishthira the just, steedless and driverless, looked like a blazing fire in consequence of the wrath with which he was then excited. Beholding the ruler of the Madras before him, he rushed towards that foe with great impetuosity.[35] Recollecting the words of Govinda, he quickly set his heart on the destruction of Calya. Indeed, king Yudhishthira the just, staying on his steedless and driverless car, desired to take up a dart.[36] Beholding that feat of Calya and reflecting upon the fact that that hero who had been allotted to him as his share still remained unslain, the son of Pāndu firmly set his heart upon accomplishing that which Indra's younger brother had counselled him to achieve.[37] King Yudhishthira the just took up a dart whose handle was adorned with gold and gems and whose effulgence was as bright as that of gold. Rolling his eyes that were wide open, he cast his glances on the ruler of the Madras, his heart filled with rage.[38] Thus looked at, O god among men, by that king of cleansed soul and sins all washed away, the ruler of the Madras was not reduced to ashes. This appreared to us to be exceedingly wonderful, O monarch![39] The illustrious chief of the Kurus then hurled with great force at the king of the Madras that blazing dart of beautiful and fierce handle and effulgent with gems and corals.[40] All the Kuravas beheld that blazing dart emitting sparks of fire as it coursed through the welkin after having been hurled with great force, even like at large meteor falling from the skies at the end of the *Yuga*.[41] King Yudhishthira the just, in that battle, carefully hurled that dart which resembled the Death-night armed with the fatal noose or the foster-mother of fearful aspect of Yama himself, and which, like the Brāhmana's curse, was incapable of being baffled.[42] Carefully the sons of Pāndu had always worshipped that weapon with perfumes and garlands and foremost of seats and the best kinds of viands and drinks. That weapon seemed to blaze like the *Samvartaka* fire and was as fierce as a rite performed according to the *Atharvan* of Angirasa.[43] Created by Tashtri (the

celestial artificer) for the use of Içāna, it was a consumer of the life-breaths and the bodies of all foes. It was capable of destroying by its force the Earth and the welkin and all the receptacles of water and creatures of every kind.[44] Adorned with bells and banners and gems and diamonds and decked with stones of *lapis lazuli* and equipt with a golden handle, Tashtri himself had forged it with great care after having observed many vows. Unerringly fatal, it was destructive of all haters of *Brahma*.[45] Having carefully inspired it with many fierce *mantras*, and endued it with terrible velocity by the exercise of great might and great care, king Yudhishthira hurled it along the best of tracks for the destruction of the ruler of the Madras.[46] Saying in a loud voice the words,—*Thou art slain, O wretch!*—the king hurled it, even as Rudra had, in days of yore, shot his shaft for the destruction of the *Asura* Andhaka, stretching forth his strong (right) arm graced with a beautiful hand, and apparently dancing in wrath.[47] Calya, however, roared aloud and endeavoured to catch that excellent dart of irresistible energy hurled by Yudhishthira with all his might, even as a fire leaps forth for catching a jet of clarified butter poured over it.[48] Piercing through his very vitals and his fair and broad chest, that dart entered the Earth as easily as it would any water without the slightest resistance and bearing away (with it) the world-wide fame of the king (of the Madras).[49] Covered with the blood that issued from his nostrils and eyes and ears and mouth, and that which flowed from his wound, he then looked like the Krauncha mountain of gigantic size when it was pierced by Skanda.[50] His armour having been cut off by that descendant of Kuru's race, the illustrious Calya, strong as Indra's elephant, stretching his arms, fell down on the Earth, like a mountain summit riven by thunder.[51] Stretching his arms, the ruler of the Madras fell down on the Earth, with face directed towards king Yudhishthira the just, like a tall banner erected to the honor of Indra falling down on the ground.[52] Like a dear wife advancing to receive her dear lord about to fall on her breast, the Earth then seemed, from affection, to rise a little for receiving that bull among men as he fell down

with mangled limbs bathed in blood.[53] The puissant Calya, having long enjoyed the Earth like a dear wife, now seemed to sleep on the Earth's breast, embracing her with all his limbs.[54] Slain by Dharma's son of righteous soul in fair fight, Calya seemed to assume the aspect of a goodly fire lying extinguished on the sacrificial platform.[55] Though deprived of his weapons and standard, and though his heart had been pierced, beauty did not yet seem to abandon the lifeless ruler of the Madras.[56] Then Yudhishthira, taking up his bow whose splendour resembled that of Indra's bow, began to destroy his foes in that battle like the prince of birds destroying snakes. With the greatest speed he began to cut off the bodies of his enemies with his keen shafts.[57] With the showers of shafts that the son of Prithā then shot, thy troops became entirely shrouded. Overcome with fear and with eyes shut, they began to strike one another (so stupified were they then). With blood issuing from their bodies, they became deprived of their weapons of attack and defence and divested of their life-breaths.[58] Upon the fall of Calya, the youthful younger brother of the king of the Madras, who was equal to his (deceased) brother in every accomplishment, and who was regarded as a mighty car-warrior, proceeded against Yudhishthira.[59] Invincible in battle and desirous of paying the last dues of his brother, that foremost of men quickly pierced the Pāndava with very many shafts.[60] With great speed king Yudhishthira the just pierced him with six arrows. With a couple of razor-faced arrows, he then cut off the bow and the standard of his antagonist.[61] Then with a blazing and keen arrow of great force and broad-head, he struck off the head of his foe staying before him.[62] I saw that head adorned with ear-rings fall down from the car like a denizen of heaven falling down on the exhaustion of his merits.[63] Beholding his headless trunk, bathed all over with blood, fallen down from the car, the Kaurava troops broke.[64] Indeed, upon the slaughter of the younger brother of the Madras clad in beautiful armour, the Kurus, uttering cries of *Oh* and *Alas*, fled away with speed.[65] Beholding Calya's younger brother slain, thy troops, hopeless of their lives, were inspired with the fear of the Pāndavas and fled, covered with dust.[66]

The grandson of Cini then, viz., Sātyaki, O bull of Bharata's race, shooting his shafts, proceeded against the frightened Kauravas while the latter were flying away.[67] Then Hridikā's son, O king, quickly and fearlessly received that invincible warrior, that irresistible and mighty bowman, as he advanced (against the beaten army).[68] Those two illustrious and invincible heroes of Vrishni's race, viz., Hridikā's son and Sātyaki, encountered each other like two furious lions.[69] Both resembling the Sun in effulgence, they covered each other with arrows of blazing splendour that resembled the rays of the Sun.[70] The arrows of those two lions of Vrishni's race, shot forcibly from their bows, we saw, looked like swiftly-coursing insects in the welkin.[71] Piercing Sātyaki with ten arrows and his steeds with three, the son of Hridikā cut off his bow with a straight shaft.[72] Laying aside his best of bows which was thus cut off, that bull of Cini's race, quickly took up another that was tougher than the first.[73] Having taken up that foremost of bows, that first of bowmen pierced the son of Hridikā with ten arrows in the centre of the chest.[74] Then cutting off his car and the shaft also of that car with many well-shot arrows, Sātyaki quickly slew the steeds of his antagonist as also his two *Pārshni* drivers.[75] The valiant Kripa then, the son of Caradwat, O lord, beholding Hridikā's son made carless, quickly bore him away, taking him up on his car.[76] Upon the slaughter of the king of the Madras and upon Kritavarman having been made carless, the entire army of Duryodhana once more turned its face from the battle.[77] At this time the army was shrouded with a dusty cloud. We could not see anything. The greater portion, however, of thy army fell. They who remained alive had turned away their faces from battle.[78] Soon it was seen that that cloud of earthy dust which had arisen became allayed, O bull among men, in consequence of the diverse streams of blood that drenched it on every side.[79] Then Duryodhana, seeing from a near point his army broken, alone resisted all the Pārthas advancing furiously.[80] Beholding the Pāndvaas on their cars as also Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata and the invincible chief the Ānartas (viz., Sātyaki), the Kuru king covered all of them with sharp arrows.[81] The enemy (as

that time) approached him not, like mortal creatures fearing to approach the Destroyer standing before them. Meanwhile the son of Hridikā, riding upon another car, advanced to that spot.[82] The mighty car-warrior Yudhishthira then quickly slew the four steeds of Kritavarman with four shafts, and pierced the son of Gotama with six broad-headed arrows of great force.[83] Then Açwatthāman, taking up on his car the son of Hridikā who had been made steedless and carless by the (Pāndava) king, bore him away from Yudhishthira's presence.[84] The son of Caradwat pierced Yudhishthira in return with eight arrows, and his steeds also with eight keen shafts.[85] Thus, O monarch, the embers of that battle began to glow here and there, in consequence, O king, of the evil policy of thyself and thy son, O Bhārata![86] After the slaughter of that foremost of bowmen on the field of battle by that bull of Kuru's race, the Pārthas, beholding Calya slain, united together, and filled with great joy, blew their conchs.[87] And all of them applauded Yudhishthira in that battle, even as the celestials, in days of yore, had applauded Indra after the slaughter of Vritra. And they beat and blew diverse kinds of musical instruments, making the Earth resound on every side with that noise.' "[88]

Section XVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the slaughter of Calya, O king, the followers of the Madra king, numbering seventeen hundred heroic car-warriors, proceeded for battle with great energy.[1] Duryodhana riding upon an elephant gigantic as a hill, with an umbrella held over his head, and fanned the while with yak-tails, forbade the Madraka warriors, saying,—*Do not proceed, Do not proceed!*[2]—Though repeatedly forbidden by Duryodhana, those heroes, desirous of slaying Yudhishthira, penetrated into the Pāndava host.[3] Those brave combatants, O monarch, loyal to Duryodhana, twanging their bows loudly, fought with the Pāndavas.[4] Meanwhile hearing that Calya had been slain and that Yudhishthira was afflicted by the mighty car-warriors of the Madrakas devoted to the welfare of the

Madraka king,[5] the great car-warrior Pārtha came there, stretching his bow *Gāndiva*, and filling the Earth with the rattle of his car.[6] Then Arjuna, and Bhima, and the two sons of Mādri by Pāndu, and that tiger among men, viz., Sātyaki, and the (five) sons of Draupadi,[7] and Dhrishtadyumna, and Cikhandin, and the Pānchālas and the Somakas, desirous of rescuing Yudhishthira, surrounded him on all sides.[8] Having taken their places around the king, the Pāndavas, those bulls among men, began to agitate the hostile force like *Makaras* agitating the ocean. Indeed, they caused thy army to tremble like a mighty tempest shaking the trees.[9] Like the great river Ganges agitated by a hostile wind, the Pāndava host, O king, once more became exceedingly agitated.[10] Causing that mighty host to tremble, the illustrious and mighty car-warriors, (viz., the Madrakas), all shouted loudly, saying,—*Where is that king Yudhishthira ?*[11] *Why are not his brave brothers, viz., the Pāndavas, to be seen here? What has become of the Pānchālas of great energy as also of the mighty car-warrior Çikhandin ? Where are Dhrishtadyumna and the grandson of Çini and those great car-warriors, viz., the (five) sons of Draupadi !*[12]—At this, those mighty car-warriors, viz., the sons of Draupadi, began to slaughter the followers of the Madra king who were uttering those words and battling vigorously.[13] In that battle, some, amongst thy troops, were seen to be crushed by car-wheels and some slain by means of their lofty standards.[14] Beholding, however, the heroic Pāndavas, the brave warriors of thy army, O Bhārata, though forbidden by thy son, still rushed against them.[15] Duryodhana, speaking softly, sought to prevent those warriors from fighting with the foe. No great car-warrior, however, amongst them obeyed his behest.[16] Then Cakuni, the son of the Gāndhāra king, possessed of eloquence, O monarch, said unto Duryodhana these words :[17]—How is this that we are standing here, while the Madraka host is being slaughtered before our eyes ? When thou, O Bhārata, art here, this does not look well ![18] The understanding made was that all of us should fight unitedly ! Why then, O king, dost thou tolerate our foes when they are thus slaying our troops ?[19]—

"'Duryodhana said,—Though forbidden by me before, they did not obey my behest. Unitedly have these men penetrated into the Pāndava host![20]—

"'Cakuni said,—Brave warriors, when excited with rage in battle, do not obey the commands of their leaders. It does not behove thee to be angry with those men. This is not the time to stand indifferently![21] We shall, therefore, all of us, united together with our cars and horse and elephants, proceed, for rescuing those great bowmen, viz., the followers of the Madra king![22] With great care, O king, we shall protect one another!—Thinking after the manner of Cakuni, all the Kauravas then proceeded to that place where the Madras were.[23] Duryodhana also, thus addressed (by his maternal uncle), proceeded, encompassed by a large force, against the foe, uttering leonine shouts and causing the Earth to resound with that noise.[24]—*Slay, pierce, seize, strike, cut off,*—these were the loud sounds that were heard then, O Bhārata, among those troops.[25] Meanwhile the Pāndavas, beholding in that battle the followers of the Madra king assailing them unitedly, proceeded against them, arraying themselves in the form called *Madhyama.*[26] Fighting hand to hand, O monarch, for a short while, those heroic warriors, viz., the followers of the Madra king, were seen to perish.[27] Then, whilst we were proceeding, the Pāndavas, united together and endued with great activity, completed the slaughter of the Madrakas, and filled with delight, uttered joyous shouts.[28] Then headless forms were seen to arise all around. Large meteors seemed to fall down from the Sun's disc.[29] The Earth became covered with cars and broken yokes and axles and slain car-warriors and lifeless steeds.[30] Steeds fleet as the wind, and still attached to yokes of cars (but without drivers to guide them) were seen to drag car-warriors, O monarch, hither and thither on the field of battle.[31] Some horses were seen to drag cars with broken wheels, while some ran on all sides, bearing after them portions of broken cars.[32] Here and there also were seen steeds that were hampered in their motions by their traces Car-warriors, while falling down from their cars, were seen to drop down like denizens of heaven on the exhaustion of their merits.[33] When the

brave followers of the Madra king were slain, the mighty car-warriors of the Pārthas, those great smiters, beholding a body of horse advancing towards them, rushed, towards it with speed from desire of victory.[34] Causing their arrows to whizz loudly and making diverse other kinds of noise mingled with the blare of their conchs, those effectual smiters possessed of sureness of aim, shaking their bows, uttered leonine roars.[35] Beholding then that large force of the Madra king exterminated and seeing also their heroic king slain in battle, the entire army of Duryodhana once more turned away from the field.[36] Struck, O monarch, by those firm bowmen, viz., the Pāndavas, the Kuru army fled away on all sides, inspired with fear.' "[37]

SECTION XIX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Upon the fall of that great king and mighty car-warrior, that invincible hero, (viz., Calya) in battle, thy troops as also thy sons almost all turned away from the fight.[1] Indeed, upon the slaughter of that hero by the illustrious Yudhishthira, thy troops were like ship-wrecked merchants on the vasty deep without a raft to cross it.[2] After the fall of the Madra king, O monarch, thy troops, struck with fear and mangled with arrows, were like masterless men desirous of a protector or a herd of deer afflicted by a lion.[3] Like bulls deprived of their horns or elephants whose tusks have been broken, thy troops, defeated by Ajātaçatru, fled away at mid-day.[4] After the fall of Calya, O king, none amongst thy troops set his heart on either rallying the army or displaying his prowess.[5] That fear, O king, and that grief, which had been ours upon the fall of Bhishma, of Drona, and of the Suta's son, O Bhārata, now became ours once more, O monarch![6] Despairing of success upon the fall of the mighty car-warrior Calya, the Kuru army, with its heroes slain and exceedingly confused, began to be cut down with keen shafts. Upon the slaughter of the Madra king, O monarch, thy warriors all fled away in fear.[7] Some on horse-back, some on elephants, some on cars, great car-warriors, with great speed, and foot-soldiers, also, fled away in fear.[8] Two thousand elephants, looking like

hills, and accomplished in smiting, fled away, after Calya's fall, urged on with hooks and toes.[9] Indeed, O chief of the Bharatas, thy soldiers fled on all sides. Afflicted with arrows, they were seen to run, breathing hard.[10] Beholding them defeated and broken and flying away in dejection, the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas, inspired with desire of victory, pursued them hotly.[11] The whizz of arrows and other noises, the loud leonine roars, and the blare of conchs, of heroic warriors, became tremendous.[12] Beholding the Kaurava host agitated with fear and flying away, the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas addressed one another, saying.[13]—Today king Yudhishthira, firm in truth, hath vanquished his enemies! Today Duryodhana hath been divested of his splendour and kingly prosperity![14] Today, hearing of his son's death, let Dhritarāshtra, that king of men, stupified and prostrate on the Earth, feel the most poignant anguish![15] Let him know today that the son of Kunti is possessed of great might among all bowmen! Today that sinful and wicked-hearted king will censure his own self![16] Let him recollect today the time and beneficial words of Vidura! Let him from this day wait upon the Pārthas as their slave! Let that king today experience the grief that had been felt by the sons of Pāndu.[17] Let that king know today the greatness of Krishna! Let him hear today the terrible twang of Arjuna's bow in battle, as also the strength of all his weapons, and the might of his arms in fight![18] Today he will know the awful might of the high-souled Bhima when Duryodhana will be slain in battle even as the *Asura* Vali was slain by Indra![19] Save Bhima of mighty strength, there is none else in this world that can achieve that which was achieved by Bhima himself at the slaughter of Dusçāsana![20] Hearing of the slaughter of the ruler of the Madras who was incapable of defeat by the very gods, that king will know the prowess of the eldest son of Pāndu![21] After the slaughter of the heroic son of Suvala and of all the Gāndhāras he will know the strength, in battle, of the two sons of Mādri by Pāndu![22] Why will not victory be theirs that have Dhananjaya for their warrior, as also Sātyaki, and Bhimasena, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata,[23] and the five sons

of Draupadi, and the two sons of Mādri, and the mighty bowman Cikhandin, and king Yudhishthira?[24] Why will not victory be theirs that have for their protector Krishna, otherwise called Janārddana, that Protector of the universe? Why will not victory be theirs that have righteousness for their refuge?[25] Who else than Yudhishthira the son of Prithā, who hath Hrishikeça, the refuge of righteousness and fame, for his protector, is competent to vanquish in battle Bhishma and Drona and Karna and the ruler of the Madras and the other kings by hundreds and thousands?[26-27]—Saying these words and filled with joy, the Srinjayas pursued thy troops in that battle who had been exceedingly mangled with shafts.[28] Then Dhananjaya of great valour proceeded against the car-division of the foe. The two sons of Mādri and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki proceeded against Cakuni.[29] Beholding them all flying with speed in fear of Bhimasena, Duryodhana, as if smiling the while, addressed his driver, saying,[30]—Pārtha, stationed there with his bow, is transgressing me. Take my steeds to the rear of the whole army.[31] Like the ocean that cannot transgress its continents, Kunti's son Dhananjaya will never venture to transgress me if I take up my stand in the rear.[32] Behold, O driver, this vast host that is pursued by the Pāndavas! Behold this cloud of dust that has arisen on all sides in consequence of the motion of the troops![33] Hear those diverse leonine roars that are so awful and loud! Therefore, O driver, proceed slowly and take up thy position in the rear![34] If I stay in battle and fight the Pāndavas, my army, O driver, will rally and come back with vigor to battle![35]—Hearing these words of thy son that were just those of a hero and man of honor, the driver slowly urged those steeds in trappings of gold.[36] One and twenty thousand foot-soldiers, deprived of elephants and steeds and car-warriors, and who were ready to lay down their lives, still stood for battle.[37] Born in diverse countries and hailing from diverse towns, those warriors maintained their ground, desirous of winning great fame.[38] The clash of those rushing warriors filled with joy became loud and exceedingly terrible.[39] Then Bhimasena, O king, and Dhrishta-

dyumna the son of Prishata, resisted them with four kinds of forces.[40] Other foot-soldiers proceeded against Bhima, uttering loud shouts and slapping their armpits, all actuated by the desire of going to heaven.[41] Those Dhārtarāshtra combatants, filled with rage and invincible in battle, having approached Bhimasena, uttered furious shouts. They then spoke not to one another. Encompassing Bhima in that battle, they began to strike him from all sides.[42] Surrounded by that large body of warriors on foot and struck by them in that battle, Bhima did not stir from where he stood fixed like the Maināka mountain.[43] His assailants, meanwhile, filled with rage, O monarch, endeavoured to afflict that mighty car-warrior of the Pāndavas and checked other combatants (that tried to rescue him).[44] Encountered by those warriors, Bhima became filled with fury. Quickly alighting from his car, he proceeded on foot against them.[45] Taking up his massive mace adorned with gold, he began to slay thy troops like the Destroyer himself armed with his club.[46] The mighty Bhima, with his mace, crushed those one and twenty thousand foot-soldiers who were without cars and steeds and elephants.[47] Having slain that strong division, Bhima, of prowess incapable of being baffled, showed himself with Dhrishtadyumna in his front.[48] The Dhārtarāshtra foot-soldiers, thus slain, lay down on the ground, bathed in blood, like *Karnikāras* with their flowery burthens laid low by a tempest.[49] Adorned with garlands made of diverse kinds of flowers, and decked with diverse kinds of ear-rings, those combatants of diverse races, who had hailed from diverse realms, lay down on the field, deprived of life.[50] Covered with banners and standards, that large host of foot-soldiers, thus cut down, looked fierce and terrible and awful as they lay down on the field.[51] The mighty car-warriors, with their followers, that fought under Yudhishthira's lead, all pursued thy illustrious son Duryodhana.[52] Those great bowmen, beholding thy troops turn away from the battle, proceeded against Duryodhana, but they could not transgress him even as the ocean cannot transgress its continents.[53] The prowess that we then beheld of thy son was exceedingly wonderful, since all the Pārthas, united together, could not

transgress his single self.[54] Then Duryodhana, addressing his own army which had not fled far but which, mangled with arrows, had set its heart on flight, said these words:[55]—I do not see the spot on plain or mountain, whither, if ye fly, the Pāndavas will not pursue and slay ye! What is the use then of flight?[56] The army of the Pāndavas hath been reduced in numbers. The two Krishnas are exceedingly mangled. If all of us make a stand, victory will be certainly ours![57] If ye fly away, losing all order, the sinful Pāndavas, pursuing ye, will slay ye all! If, on the other hand, we make a stand, good will result to us![58] Listen, all ye Kshatriyas that are assailed here! When the Destroyer always slays heroes and cowards, what man is there so stupid that, calling himself a Kshatriya, will not fight?[59] Good will result to us if we stay in the front of the angry Bhimasena! Death in battle, while struggling according to Kshatriya practices, is fraught with happiness![60] Winning victory, one obtains happiness here. If slain, one obtains great fruits in the other world! Ye Kauravas, there is no better path to heaven than that offered by battle! Slain in battle, ye may, without delay, obtain all those regions of blessedness![61]—Hearing these words of his, and applauding them highly, the (Kuru) kings once more rushed against the Pāndavas for battling with them.[62] Seeing them advancing with speed, the Pārthas, arrayed in order of battle, skilled in smiting, excited with rage, and inspired with desire of victory, rushed against them.[63] The valiant Dhananjaya, stretching his bow *Gāndiva* celebrated over the three worlds, proceeded on his car against the foe.[64] The two sons of Mādri, and Sātyaki, rushed against Cakuni, and the other (Pāndava) heroes, smiling, rushed impetuously against thy forces.'"[65]

SECTION XX.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the (Kuru) army had been rallied, Cālwa, the ruler of the *Mlecchas*, filled with rage, rushed against the large force of the Pāndavas,[1] riding on a gigantic elephant, with secretions issuing from the usual limbs, looking

like a hill, swelling with pride, resembling *Airāvata* himself, and capable of crushing large bands of foes.[2] Cālwa's animal sprung from a high and noble breed. It was always worshipped by Dhritarāshtra's son. It was properly equipped and properly trained for battle, O king, by persons well conversant with elephant-lore. Riding on that elephant, that foremost of kings looked like the morning Sun at the close of summer.[3] Mounting on that foremost of elephants, O monarch, he proceeded against the Pāndavas and began to pierce them on all sides with keen and terrible shafts that resembled Indra's thunder in force.[4] While he shot his arrows in that battle and despatched hostile warriors to Yama's abode, neither the Kauravas nor the Pāndavas could notice any *laches* in him, even as the *Daityas*, O king, could not notice any in Vāsava, the wielder of the thunder, in days of yore, while the latter was employed in crushing their divisions.[5] The Pāndavas, the Somakas, and the Srinjayas, beheld that one elephant look like a thousand elephants careering around them even as the foes of the gods had in days of yore beheld the elephant of Indra in battle.[6] Agitated (by that animal), the hostile army looked on every side as if deprived of life. Unable to stand in battle, they then fled away in great fear, crushing one another as they ran.[7] Then the vast host of the Pāndavas, broken by king Cālwa, suddenly fled on all sides, unable to endure the impetuosity of that elephant.[8] Beholding the Pāndava host broken and flying away in speed, all the foremost of warriors of thy army worshipped king Cālwa and blew their conchs white as the moon.[9] Hearing the shouts of the Kauravas uttered in joy and the blare of their conchs, the commander of the Pāndava and the Srinjaya forces, viz., the Pānchāla prince (Dhrishtadyumna), could not, from wrath, endure it.[10] The illustrious Dhrishtadyumna then, with great speed, proceeded for vanquishing that elephant, even as the *Asura* Jambha had proceeded against Airāvata, the prince of elephants that Indra rode, in course of his encounter with Indra.[11] Beholding the ruler of the Pāndavas impetuously rushing against him, Cālwa, that lion among kings, quickly urged his elephant, O king, for the destruction of Drupada's

son.[12] The latter, seeing the animal approaching with precipitancy, pierced it with three foremost of shafts, polished by the hands of the smith, keen, blazing, endued with fierce energy, and resembling fire itself in splendour and force.[13] Then that illustrious hero struck the animal at the frontal globes with five other whetted and foremost of shafts. Pierced therewith, that prince of elephants, turning away from the battle, ran with great speed.[14] Cālwa, however, suddenly checking that foremost of elephants which had been exceedingly mangled and forced to retreat, caused it to turn back, and with hooks and keen lances urged it forward against the car of the Pānchāla king, pointing it out to the infuriate animal.[15] Beholding the animal rushing impetuously at him, the heroic Dhrishtadyumna, taking up a mace, quickly jumped down on the Earth from his car, his limbs stupified with fear.[16] That gigantic elephant, meanwhile, suddenly crushing that gold-decked car with its steeds and driver, raised it up in the air with his trunk and then dashed it down on the Earth.[17] Beholding the driver of the Pānchāla king thus crushed by that foremost of elephants, Bhima and Cikhandin and the grandson of Cini rushed with great speed against that animal.[18] With their shafts they speedily checked the impetuosity of the advancing beast. Thus received by those car-warriors and checked by them in battle, the elephant began to waver.[19] Meanwhile king Cālwa began to shoot his shafts like the Sun shedding his rays on all sides. Struck with those shafts, the (Pāndava) car-warriors began to fly away.[20] Beholding that feat of Cālwa, the Pānchālas, the Srinjayas, and the Matsyas, O king, uttered loud cries of *oh* and *alas* in that battle. All those foremost of men, however, encompassed the animal on all sides.[21] The brave Pānchāla king then, taking up his mace which resembled the lofty crest of a mountain, appeared there. Fearlessly, O king, that hero, that smiter of foes, rushed with speed against the elephant.[22] Endued with great activity, the prince of the Pānchālas, approaching, began to strike with his mace that animal which was huge as a hill and which shed its secretions like a mighty mass of pouring clouds.[23] Its frontal globes suddenly split open, it uttering a loud cry ; and vomiting a profuse quantity of blood, the

animal, huge as a hill, suddenly fell down, even as a mountain falling down during an earthquake.[24] While that prince of elephants was falling down, and while the troops of thy son were uttering wails of woe at the sight, that foremost of warriors among the Cinis cut off the head of king Cālwa with a sharp and broad-headed arrow.[25] His head having been cut off by the Sātwata hero, Cālwa fell down on the Earth along with his prince of elephants, even like a mountain summit suddenly riven by the thunder-bolt hurled by the chief of the celestials.' "[26]

SECTION XXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'After the heroic Cālwa, that ornament of assemblies, had been slain, thy army speedily broke like a mighty tree broken by the force of the tempest.[1] Beholding the army broken, the mighty car-warrior Kritavarman, possessed by heroism and great strength, resisted the hostile force in that battle.[2] Seeing the Sātwata hero, O king, standing in battle like a hill though pierced with arrows (by the foe), the Kuru heroes, who had fled away, rallied and came back.[3] Then, O monarch, a battle took place between the Pāndavas and the returned Kurus who made death itself their goal.[4] Wonderful was that fierce encounter which occurred between the Sātwata hero and his foes, since alone he resisted the invincible army of the Pāndavas.[5] When friends were seen to accomplish the most difficult feats, friends, filled with delight, uttered leonine shouts that seemed to reach the very heavens.[6] At those sounds the Pānchālas, O bull of Bharata's race, became inspired with fear. Then Sātyaki, the grandson of Cini, approached that spot.[7] Approaching king Kshemakirti of great strength, Sātyaki despatched him to Yama's abode, with seven keen shafts.[8] Then the son of Hridikā, of great intelligence, rushed with speed against that bull of Cini's race, that mighty-armed warrior, as the latter came, shooting his whetted shafts.[9] Those two bowmen, those two foremost of car-warriors, roared like lions and encountered each other with great force, both being armed with foremost of weapons.[10]

The Pāndavas, the Pānchālas, and the other warriors, became spectators of that terrible encounter between the two heroes.[11] Those two heroes of the Vrishni-Andhaka race, like two elephants filled with delight, struck each other with long arrows and shafts equipt with calf-toothed heads.[12] Careering in diverse kinds of tracks, the son of Hridikā and that bull of Cini's race soon afflicted each other with showers of arrows.[13] The shafts sped with great force from the bows of the two Vrishni lions were seen by us in the welkin to resemble flights of swiftly coursing insects.[14] Then the son of Hridikā, approaching Sātyaki of true prowess, pierced the four steeds of the latter with four keen shafts.[15] The long-armed Sātyaki, enraged at this like an elephant struck with a lance, pierced Kritavarman with eight foremost of arrows.[16] Then Kritavarman pierced Sātyaki with three arrows whetted on stone and sped from his bow drawn to its fullest stretch and then cut off his bow with another arrow.[17] Laying aside his broken bow, that bull of Cini's race quickly took up another with arrow fixed on it.[18] Having taken up that foremost of bows and stringed it, that foremost of all bowmen, that *Atiratha* of mighty energy and great intelligence and great strength, unable to endure the cutting of his bow by Kritavarman, and filled with fury, quickly rushed against the latter.[19-20] With ten keen shafts that bull of Cini's race then struck the driver, the steeds, and the standard of Kritavarman.[21] At this, O king, the great bowman and mighty car-warrior Kritavarman, beholding his gold-decked car made driverless and steedless,[22] became filled with rage. Uplifting a pointed lance, O sire, he hurled it with all the force of his arm at that bull of Cini's race, desirous of slaying him.[23] Sātyaki, however, of the Sātwata race, striking that lance with many keen arrows, cut it off into fragments and caused it to fall down, stupifying Kritavarman of Madhu's race (with his activity and prowess). With another broad-headed arrow he then struck Kritavarman in the chest.[24] Made steedless and driverless in that battle by Yuyudhāna skilled in weapons, Kritavarman came down on the Earth.[25] The heroic Kritavarman having been deprived of his car by Sātyaki in that single-combat, all the (Kaurava),

troops became filled with a great fear.[26] A great sorrow afflicted the heart of thy sons, when Kritavarman was thus made steedless and driverless and carless.[27] Beholding that chastiser of foes made steedless and driverless, Kripa, O king, rushed at that bull of Cini's race, desirous of despatching him to Yama's abode.[28] Taking Kritavarman upon his car in the very sight of all the bowmen, the mighty-armed Kripa bore him away from the press of battle.[29] After Kritavarman had been made carless and the grandson of Cini had become powerful on the field, the whole army of Duryodhana once more turned away from the fight.[30] The enemy, however, did not see it, for the (Kuru) army was then shrouded with a dusty cloud. All thy warriors fled, O monarch, except king Duryodhana.[31] The latter, beholding from a near point that his own army was routed, quickly rushing, assailed the victorious enemy, alone resisting them all.[32] Fearlessly that invincible warrior, filled with rage, assailed with keen arrows all the Pāndus, and Dhrishtadyumna the son of Prishata, and Cikhandin, and the sons of Draupadi, and the large bands of the Pānchālas, and the Kaikeyas, O sire, and the Somakas![33-34] With firm determination thy mighty son stood in battle, even as a blazing and mighty fire on the sacrificial platform, sanctified with *mantras*. Even thus, king Duryodhana careered all over the field, in that battle.[35] His foes could not approach him then, like living creatures unable to approach the Destroyer. Then the son of Hridikā came there, riding on another car."[36]

SECTION XXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'That foremost of car-warriors, O monarch, viz., thy son, riding on his car and filled with the courage of despair, looked resplendent in that battle like Rudra himself of great valour.[1] With the thousands of shafts shot by him, the Earth became completely covered. Indeed, he drenched his enemies with showers of arrows like the clouds pouring rain on mountain breasts.[2] There was then not a man amongst the Pāndavas in that great battle, or a steed, or an elephant, or a car, who or which was not struck with Duryodhana's arrows.[3]

Upon whomsoever amongst the warriors I then cast my eyes, O monarch, I beheld that every one, O Bhārata, was struck by thy son with his arrows.[4] The Pāndava army was then covered with the shafts of that illustrious warrior even as a host is covered with the dust it raises while marching or rushing to battle.[5] The Earth then, O lord of Earth, was seen by me to be made one entire expanse of arrows by thy son Duryodhana, that bowman possessed of great lightness of hands.[6] Amongst those thousands upon thousands of warriors on the field, belonging to thy side or that of the enemy, it seemed to me that Duryodhana was then the only man.[7] The prowess that we then beheld of thy son seemed to be exceedingly wonderful, since the Pārthas, even uniting together, could not approach his single self.[8] He pierced Yudhishthira, O bull of Bharata's race, with a hundred arrows, and Bhimasena with seventy, and Sahadeva with seven.[9] And he pierced Nakula with four and sixty, and Dhrishtadyumna with five, and the sons of Draupadi with seven, and Sātyaki with three arrows. With a broad-headed arrow, he then, O sire, cut off the bow of Sahadeva.[10] Laying aside that broken bow, the valiant son of Mādri, took up another formidable bow, and rushing against the king, viz., Duryodhana; pierced him with ten shafts in that battle.[11] The great bowman Nakula, possessed of courage, then pierced the king with nine terrible arrows and uttered a loud roar.[12] Sātyaki struck the king with a single straight shaft; the sons of Draupadi struck him with three and seventy, and king Yudhishthira struck him with five. And Bhimasena afflicted the king with eighty shafts.[13] Though pierced thus from every side with numerous arrows by these illustrious warriors, Duryodhana still, O monarch, did not waver, in the presence of all the troops who stood there as spectators.[14] The quickness, the skill, and the prowess of that illustrious warrior were seen by all the men there to exceed those of every creature.[15] Meanwhile the Dhārtarāshtras, O monarch, who had not fled far from that spot, beholding the king, rallied and returned there, clad in mail.[16] The noise made by them when they came back, became exceedingly awful, like the roar of the surging ocean in the season of rains.[17] Approaching their un-

vanquished king in that battle, those great bowmen proceeded against the Pāndavas for fight.[18] The son of Drona resisted in that battle the angry Bhimasena.[19] With the arrows, O monarch, that were shot in that battle, all the points of the compass became completely shrouded, so that the brave combatants could not distinguish the cardinal from the subsidiary points of the compass.[20] As regards Açwatthāman and Bhima sena, O Bhārata, both of them were achievers of cruel feats. Both of them were irresistible in battle. The arms of both contained many cicatrices in consequence of both having repeatedly drawn the bowstring. Counteracting each other's feats, they continued to fight with each other, frightening the whole universe.[21] The heroic Cakuni assailed Yudhishthira in that battle. The mighty son of Suvala, having slain the four steeds of the king, uttered a loud roar, causing all the troops to tremble with fear.[22] Meanwhile the valiant Sahadeva bore away the heroic and vanquished king on his car from that battle.[23] Then king Yudhishthira the just, riding upon another car, (came back to battle), and having pierced Cakuni at first with nine arrows, once more pierced him with five. And that foremost of all bowmen then uttered a loud roar.[24] That battle, O sire, awful as it was, became wonderful to behold. It filled the spectators with delight and was applauded by the *Siddhas* and the *Chāranas*.[25] Uluka of immeasurable soul rushed against the mighty bowman Nakula, in that battle, shooting showers of arrows from every side.[26] The heroic Nakula, however, in that battle, resisted the son of Cakuni with a thick shower of arrows from every side.[27] Both those heroes were well-born and both were mighty car-warriors. They were seen to fight with each other, each highly enraged with the other.[28] Similarly Kritavarman, O king, fighting with the grandson of Cini, that scorcher of foes, looked resplendent, like Cakra battling with the *Asura* Vala.[29] Duryodhana, having cut off Dhrishtadyumna's bow in that battle, pierced his bowless antagonist with keen shafts.[30] Dhrishtadyumna then, in that encounter, having taken up a formidable bow, fought with the king in the sight of all the bowmen.[31] The battle between those two heroes became ex-

ceedingly fierce, O bull of Bharata's race, like the encounter between two wild and infuriate elephants with juicy secretions trickling adown their limbs.[32] The heroic Gautama, excited with rage in that battle, pierced the mighty sons of Draupadi with many straight shafts.[33] The battle that took place between him and those five resembled that which takes place between an embodied being and his (five) senses. It was awful and exceedingly fierce and neither side showed any consideration for the other.[34] The (five) sons of Draupadi afflicted Kripa like the (five) senses afflicting a foolish man. He, on the other hand, fighting with them, controlled them with vigor.[35] Even such and so wonderful, O Bhārata, was that battle between him and them. It resembled the repeated combats, O lord, between embodied creatures and their senses.[36] Men fought with men, elephants with elephants, steeds, with steeds, and car-warriors with car-warriors. Once more, O monarch, that battle became general and awful.[37] Here an encounter was beautiful, there another was awful, and there another was exceedingly fierce, O lord! Many and awful, O monarch, were the encounters that took place in course of that battle.[38] Those chastisers of foes, (belonging to both armies), encountering one another, pierced and slew one another in that dreadful engagement.[39] A dense cloud of dust was then seen there, raised by the vehicles and the animals of the warriors. Thick also, O king, was the dust raised by the running steeds, a dust that was carried from one place to another by the wind.[40] Raised by the wheels of cars and the breaths of the elephants, the dust, thick as an evening cloud, rose into the welkin.[41] That dust having been raised and the Sun himself having been dimmed therewith, the Earth became shrouded, and the heroic and mighty car-warriors could not be seen.[42] Anon that dust disappeared and everything became clear when the Earth, O best of the Bharatas, became drenched with the blood of heroes.[43] Indeed, that dense and awful cloud of dust was allayed. Then, O Bhārata, I could once more see the diverse single combats, O Bhārata,[44] that the combatants fought at noon of day, each according to his strength and his rank, all of which were exceedingly fierce. The blazing splendour of those

feats, O monarch, appeared full in view.[45] Loud became the noise of falling shafts in that battle, resembling that made by a vast forest of bamboos while burning on every side.' "[46]

SECTION XXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'During the progress of that terrible and awful battle, the army of thy son was broken by the Pāndavas.[1] Rallying their great car-warriors, however, with vigorous efforts, thy sons continued to fight with the Pāndava army.[2] The (Kuru) warriors, desirous of thy son's welfare, suddenly returned. Upon their return, the battle once more became exceedingly fierce,[3] between thy warriors and those of the foe, resembling that between the gods and the *Asuras* in days of old. Neither amongst the enemies nor amongst thine was there a single combatant that turned away from that battle.[4] The warriors fought, aided by guess and by the names they uttered. Great was the destruction that occurred as they thus fought with one another.[5] Then king Yudhishthira, filled with great wrath, and becoming desirous of vanquishing the Dhārtarāshtras and their king in that battle,[6] pierced the son of Caradwat with three arrows winged with gold and whetted on stone, and next slew with four others the four steeds of Kritavarman.[7] Then Açwatthāman bore away the celebrated son of Hridikā. Caradwat's son pierced Yudhishthira in return with eight arrows.[8] Then king Duryodhana despatched seven hundred cars to the spot where king Yudhishthira was battling.[9] Those cars ridden by excellent warriors and endued with the speed of the wind or thought, rushed in that battle against the car of Kunti's son.[10] Encompassing Yudhishthira on every side, they made him invisible with their shafts like clouds hiding the Sun from the view.[11] Then the Pāndava heroes headed by Çikhandin, beholding king Yudhishthira the just assailed in that way by the Kauravas, became filled with rage and unable to put up with it.[12] Desirous of rescuing Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, they came to that spot upon their cars possessed of great speed and adorned with rows of bells.[13] Then commenced an awful battle, in which blood

flowed as water, between the Pāndavas and the Kurus, that increased the population of Yama's domains.[14] Slaying those seven hundred hostile car-warriors of the Kuru army, the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas once more resisted (the whole Kuru army).[15] There a fierce battle was fought between thy son and the Pāndavas. We had never before seen or heard of its like.[16] During the progress of that battle in which no consideration was showed by any body for any body, and while the warriors of thy army and those of the foe were falling fast,[17] and the combatants were all shouting and blowing their conchs, and the bowmen were roaring and uttering loud noises of diverse kinds,[18] while, indeed, the battle was raging fiercely and the very vitals of the combatants were being struck, and the troops, O sire, desirous of victory, were rushing with speed,[19] while, verily, everything on Earth seemed to be undergoing a woeful destruction, during that time when innumerable ladies of birth and beauty were being made widows,[20] during, indeed, the progress of that fierce engagement in which the warriors behaved without any consideration for friends and foes, awful portents appeared, presaging the destruction of everything.[21] The Earth, with her mountains and forests, trembled, making a loud noise. Meteors like blazing brands equipt with handles dropped from the sky, O king, on every side on the Earth as if from the solar disc.[22] A hurricane arose, blowing on all sides, and bearing away hard pebles along its lower course. The elephants shed copious tears and trembled exceedingly.[23] Disregarding all these fierce and awful portents, the Kshatriyas, taking counsel with one another, cheerfully stood on the field for battle again, on the beautiful and sacred field called after Kuru, desirous of obtaining heaven.[24] Then Cakuni, the son of the Gāndhāra king, said,—Fight all of ye in front! I, however, will slay the Pāndavas from behind![25]—Then the Madraka warriors, endued with great activity, amongst those on our side that were advancing, became filled with joy and uttered diverse sounds of delight. Others too did the same.[26] The invincible Pāndavas, however, possessed of sureness of aim, once more coming against us, shook their bows and covered us with showers of arrows.[27] The forces of the Madrakas then were

slain by the foe. Beholding this, the troops of Duryodhana once more turned away from the battle.[28] The mighty king of the Gāndhāras, however, once more said these words:—Stop, ye sinful ones! Fight (with the foe)! What use is there of flight?[29]—At that time, O bull of Bharata's race, the king of the Gāndhāras had full ten thousand horsemen capable of fighting with bright lances.[30] During the progress of that great carnage, Cakuni, aided by that force, put forth his valor and assailed the Pāndava army at the rear, slaughtering it with his keen shafts.[31] The vast force of the Pāndus then, O monarch, broke even as a mass of clouds is dispersed on all sides by a mighty wind.[32] Then Yudhishthira, beholding from a near point his own army routed, coolly urged the mighty Sahadeva, saying,[33]—Yonder the son of Suvala, afflicting our rear, stayeth, clad in mail! He slaughtereth our forces! Behold that wicked wight, O son of Pāndu![34] Aided by the sons of Draupadi, proceed towards him and slay Cakuni the son of Suvala! Supported by the Pānchālas, O sinless one, I will meanwhile destroy the car-force of the enemy![35] Let all the elephants and all the horse and three thousand foot, proceed with thee! Supported by these, slay Cakuni![36]—At this, seven hundred elephants ridden by combatants armed with the bow, and five thousand horse, and the valiant Sahadeva,[37] and three thousand foot-soldiers, and the sons of Draupadi, all rushed against Cakuni difficult of defeat in battle.[38] Suvala's son, however, of great valour, O king, prevailing over the Pāndavas and longing for victory, began to slay their forces from the rear.[39] The horsemen, infuriate with rage, belonging to the Pāndavas endued with great activity, penetrated the division of Suvala's son, prevailing over the latter's car-warriors.[40] Those heroic horsemen, staying in the midst of their own elephants, covered the large host of Suvala's son with showers of shafts.[41] In consequence of thy evil counsels, O king, dreadful was the battle that then ensued in which maces and lances were used and in which heroes only took part.[42] The twang of bowstrings was no longer heard there, for all the car-warriors stood as spectators of that fight. At that time no difference could be seen between the contending parties.[43] Both

the Kurus and the Pāndavas, O bull of Bharata's race, beheld the darts hurled from heroic arms course like meteors through the welkin.[44] The entire welkin, O monarch, shrouded with falling swords of great brightness, seemed to become exceedingly beautiful.[45] The aspect presented, O chief of the Bharatas, by the lances hurled all around, became like that of swarms of locusts in the welkin.[46] Steeds, with limbs bathed in blood in consequence of wounds inflicted by horsemen themselves wounded with arrows, dropped down on all sides in hundreds and thousands.[47] Ecountering one another and huddled together, many of them were seen to be mangled and many to vomit blood from their mouths. A thick darkness came there when the troops were covered with a dusty cloud.[48] When that darkness shrouded everything, O king, we beheld those brave combatants, steeds and men,—move away from that spot.[49] Others were seen to fall down on the Earth, vomiting blood in profusion. Many combatants, entangled with one another by their locks, could not stir.[50] Many, endued with great strength, dragged one another from the backs of their horses, and encountering one another thus, slew one another like combatants in a wrestling match.[51] Many deprived of life, were borne away on the backs of the steeds they rode.[51] Many men, proud of their valor and inspired with desire of victory, were seen to fall down on the Earth.[52] The Earth became strewn over with hundreds and thousands of combatants bathed in blood, deprived of limbs, and divested of hair.[53] In consequence of the surface of the Earth being covered with elephant-riders and horsemen and slain steeds and combatants with blood-stained armour and others armed with weapons and others who had sought to slay one another with diverse kinds of terrible weapons, all lying closely huddled together in that battle fraught with fearful carnage, no warrior could proceed far on his horse.[54-55] Having fought for a little while, Cakuni the son of Suvala, O monarch, went away from that spot with the remnant of his cavalry numbering six thousand.[56] Similarly the Pāndava force, covered with blood, and its animals fatigued, moved away from that spot with its remnant consisting of six thousand horse.[57] The blood-stained horsemen

of the Pāndava army then, with hearts intent on battle and prepared to lay down their lives, said,[58]—It is no longer possible to fight here on cars; how much more difficult then to fight here on elephants! Let cars proceed against cars, and elephants against elephants![59] Having retreated, Cakuni is now staying within his own division. The royal son of Suvala will not again come to battle![60]—Then the sons of Draupadi and those infuriate elephants proceeded to the place where the Pānchāla prince Dhrishtadyumna, that great car-warrior, was.[61] Sahadeva also, when that dusty cloud arose, proceeded alone to where king Yudhishthira was.[62] After all those had gone away, Cakuni the son of Suvala, excited with wrath, once more fell upon Dhrishtadyumna's division and began to strike it.[63] Once more a dreadful battle took place, in which the combatants were all regardless of their lives, between thy soldiers and those of the foe, all of whom were desirous of slaying one another.[64] In that encounter of heroes, the combatants first eyed one another steadfastly, and then rushed, O king, and fell upon one another in hundreds and thousands.[65] In that destructive carnage, heads, severed with swords, fell down with a noise like that of falling palmyra fruits.[66] Loud also became the noise, making the very hair to stand on end, of bodies falling down on the ground, divested of armour and mangled with weapons and of falling weapons also, O king, and of arms and thighs severed from the trunk.[67] Striking brothers and sons and even sires with keen weapons, the combatants were seen to fight like birds, for pieces of meat[68] Excited with rage, thousands of warriors, falling upon one another, impatiently struck one another in that battle.[69] Hundreds and thousands of combatants, killed by the weight of slain horsemen while falling down from their steeds, fell down on the field.[70] Loud became the noise of neighing steeds of great fleetness, and of shouting men clad in mail, and of the falling darts and swords, O king, of combatants desirous of piercing the vitals of one another in consequence, O monarch, of thy evil policy.[71-72] At that time, thy soldiers, overcome with toil, spent with rage, their animals fatigued, themselves parched with thirst, mangled with keen weapons, began to turn away

from the battle.[73] Maddened with the scent of blood, many became so insensate that they slew friends and foes alike, in fact, every one they got at.[74] Large numbers of Kshatriyas, O king, inspired with desire of victory, were struck down with arrows, O king, and fell prostrate on the Earth.[75] Wolves and vultures and jackalls began to howl and scream in glee and make a loud noise. In the very sight of thy son, thy army suffered a great loss.[76] The Earth, O monarch, became strewn with the bodies of men and steeds, and covered with streams of blood that inspired the timid with terror.[77] Struck and mangled repeatedly with swords and battle-axes and lances, thy warriors, as also the Pāndavas, O Bhārata, ceased to approach one another.[78] Striking one another according to the measure of their strength, and fighting to the last drop of their blood, the combatants fell down, vomiting blood from their wounds.[79] Headless forms were seen, seizing the hair of their heads (with one hand) and with uplifted swords dyed with blood (in the other).[80] When many headless forms, O king, had thus risen up, when the scent of blood had made the combatants nearly senseless,[81] and when the loud noise had somewhat subsided, Suvala's son (once more) approached the large host of the Pāndavas, with the small remnant of his horse.[82] At this, the Pāndavas, inspired with desire of victory and endued with great activity, rushed towards Cakuni, with foot-soldiers and elephants and cavalry, all with uplifted weapons.[83] Desirous of reaching the end of the hostilities, the Pāndavas, forming a wall, encompassed Cakuni on all sides, and began to strike him with diverse kinds of weapons.[84] Beholding those troops of thine assailed from every side, the Kauravas, with horse, foot, elephants, and cars, rushed towards the Pāndavas.[85] Some foot-soldiers of great courage, destitute of weapons, attacked their foes in that battle, with feet and fists, and brought them down.[86] Car-warriors fell down from cars, and elephant-men from elephants, like meritorious persons falling down from their celestial vehicles upon the exhaustion of their merits.[87] Thus the combatants, engaged with one another in that great battle, slew sires and brothers and friends and sons.[88] Thus occurred that battle, O best of the Bharatas, in which no consideration

was shown by anybody for anyone, and in which lances and swords and arrows fell fast on every side and made the scene exceedingly terrible to behold.' "[89]

SECTION XXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'When the loud noise of battle had somewhat subsided and the Pāndavas had slain large numbers of their foes, Suvala's son (once more) came for fight, with the remnant of his horse numbering seven hundred.[1] Quickly approaching his own soldiers and urging them to battle, he repeatedly said,—Ye chastisers of foes, fight cheerfully![2]—And he asked the Kshatriyas present there, saying,—Where is the king, that great car-warrior?—Hearing these words of Cakuni, O bull of Bharata's race, they answered, saying,—Yonder stayeth that great car-warrior, viz., the Kuru king,[3]—there where that large umbrella, of splendour equal to that of the full moon, is visible,—there where those car-warriors, clad in mail, are staying,[4]—there where that loud noise, deep as the roar of clouds, is being heard! Proceed quickly thither, O king, and thou wilt then see the Kuru monarch![5]—Thus addressed by those brave warriors, Suvala's son Cakuni, O king, proceeded to that spot where thy son was staying, surrounded on all sides by unretreating heroes.[6] Beholding Duryodhana stationed in the midst of that car-force, Cakuni, gladdening all those car-warriors of thine,[7] O king, cheerfully, said these words unto Duryodhana. Indeed, he said the following words in a manner which showed that he regarded all his purposes to have been already achieved.[8]—Slay, O king, the car-divisions (of the Pāndavas)! All their horse have been vanquished by me! Yudhishthira is incapable of being conquered in battle unless one is prepared to lay down his life![9] When that car-force, protected by the son of Pāndu, will have been destroyed, we shall then slay all those elephants and foot-soldiers and others![10]—Hearing these words of his, thy warriors, inspired with desire of victory, cheerfully rushed towards the Pāndava army.[11] With quivers on their backs and bows in their hands, all of them shook their bows and uttered leonine roars.[12] Once,

more, O king, the fierce twang of bows and the slapping of palms and the whiz of arrows shot with force was heard.[13] Beholding those Kuru combatants approach the Pāndava army with uplifted bows, Kunti's son Dhananjaya said unto the son of Devaki these words:[14]—Urge the steeds fearlessly and penetrate this sea of troops! With my keen shafts I shall today reach the end of these hostilities![15] Today is the eighteenth day, O Janārddana, of this great battle that is raging between the two sides![16] The army of those high-souled heroes, which was literally numberless, hath been nearly destroyed! Behold the course of Destiny![17] The army of Dhritarāshtra's son, O Mādhava, which was vast as the ocean, hath, O Achyuta, become, after encountering ourselves, even like the indent caused by a cow's hoof![18] If peace had been made after Bhishma's fall, O Mādhava, everything would have been well! The foolish Duryodhana of weak understanding, however, did not make peace![19] The words that were uttered by Bhishma, O Mādhava, were beneficial and worthy of adoption. Suyodhana, however, who had lost his understanding, did not act according to them.[20] After Bhishma had been struck and thrown down on the Earth, I do not know the reason why the battle proceeded![21] I regard the Dhārtarāshtras to be foolish and of weak understanding in every way, since they continued the battle even after the fall of Cāntanu's son![22] After that when Drona, that foremost of all utterers of *Brahma*, fell, as also the son of Rādhā, and Vikarna, the carnage did not still cease![23] Alas, when a small remnant only of the (Kaurava) army remained after the fall of that tiger among men, viz., Karna, with his sons, the carnage did not still cease![24] After the fall of even the heroic Crutāyush, of also Jalasandha of Puru's race, and of king Crutāyudha, the carnage did not still cease![25] After the fall of Bhuriçravas, of Calya, of Cālwa, O Janārddana, and of the Āvanti heroes, the carnage did not still cease![26] After the fall of Jayadratha, of the *Rākshasa* Alāyudha, of Vālhika, and of Somadatta, the carnage did not still cease![27] After the fall of the heroic Bhagadatta, of the Kāmvoja chief Sadakshina, and of Dusçāsana, the carnage did not still cease![28] Beholding even diverse

heroic and mighty kings, each owning extensive territories, slain in battle, the carnage, O Krishna did not still cease![29] Beholding even a full *Akshauhini* of troops slain by Bhimasena in battle, the carnage did not still cease, in consequence of either the folly or the covetousness of the Dhārtarāshtras![30] What king born in a noble race, a race especially like that of Kuru, save of course the foolish Duryodhana, would thus fruitlessly wage such fierce hostilities?[31] Who is there, possessed of reason and wisdom and capable of discriminating good from evil, that would thus wage war, knowing his foes to be superior to him in merit, strength, and courage?[32] How could he listen to the counsels of another, when, indeed, he could not make up his mind to make peace with the Pāndavas in obedience to the words uttered by thee?[33] What medicine can be acceptable to that person today who disregarded Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, and Drona, and Vidura, while they urged him to make peace?[34] How can he accept good counsels who, from folly, O Janārddana, insolently disregarded his own aged sire as also his own well-meaning mother while speaking beneficial words unto him?[35] It is evident, O Janārddana, that Duryodhana took his birth for exterminating his race! His conduct and his policy, it is seen, point to that line, O lord! He will not give us our kingdom yet! This is my opinion, O Achyuta![36] The high-souled Vidura, O sire, told me many a time that as long as life remained in Dhritarāshtra's son, he would never give us our share of the kingdom![37] Vidura further told me,—As long also as Dhritarāshtra will live, O giver of honors, even that sinful wight will act sinfully towards you![38] Ye will never succeed in vanquishing Duryodhana without battle!—Even thus, O Mādhava, did Vidura of true foresight often speak to me![39] All the acts of that wicked-souled wight, I now find, to be exactly as the high-souled Vidura had said![40] That person of wicked understanding who, having listened to the beneficial and proper words of Jamadagni's son, disregarded them, should certainly be held as standing in the face of destruction.[41] Many persons crowned with ascetic success said as soon as Duryodhana was born, that the entire Kshatriya order would be exterminated in conse-

quence of that wretch.[42] Those words of the sages, O Janārdana, are now being realised, since the Kshatriyas are undergoing almost entire extermination in consequence of Duryodhana's acts! I shall, O Mādhava, slay all the warriors today![43] After all the Kshatriyas will have been slain and the (Kaurava) camp made empty, Duryodhana will then desire battle with us for his own destruction.[44] That will end these hostilities! Exercising my reason, O Mādhava, and reflecting in my own mind, O thou of Vrishni's race, thinking of Vidura's words, and taking into account the acts of the wicked-souled Duryodhana himself, I have come to this conclusion! Penetrate the Bharata army, O hero, for I shall slay the wicked-souled Duryodhana and his army today with my keen shafts![45-46] Slaying this weak army in the very sight of Dhritarāshtra's son, I shall today do what is for Yudhishthira's good![47]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed by Savyasāchin, he of Daçārha's race, reins in hand, fearlessly penetrated that vast hostile force for battle.[48] That was a terrible forest of bows (which the two heroes entered). Darts constituted its prickles. Maces and spiked bludgeons were its paths. Cars and elephants were its mighty trees.[49] Calvalry and infantry were its creepers. And the illustrious Keçava, as he entered that forest on that car decked with many banners and penons, looked exceedingly resplendent.[50] Those white steeds, O king, bearing Arjuna in battle, were seen careering everywhere, urged by him of Daçārha's race![51] Then that scorcher of foes, viz., Savyasāchin, proceeded on his car, shooting hundreds of keen shafts like a cloud pouring showers of rain. Loud was the noise produced by those straight arrows[52] as also by those combatants that were covered with them in that battle by Savyasāchin. Showers of shafts, piercing through the armour of the combatants, fell down on the Earth.[53] Impelled from *Gāndiva*, arrows, whose touch resembled that of Indra's thunder, striking men and elephants and horses, O king, fell in that battle with a noise like that of winged insects.[54] Everything was shrouded with those shafts shot from *Gāndiva*. In that battle, the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, could not be distinguished.[55] The whole world seemed to be

filled with gold-winged shafts, steeped in oil, polished by the hands of the smith, and marked with Pārtha's name.[56] Struck with those keen shafts, and burnt therewith by Pārtha even as a herd of elephants is burnt with burning brands, the Kauravas became languid and lost their strength.[57]* Armed with bow and arrows, Pārtha, resembling the blazing Sun, burnt the hostile combatants in that battle like a blazing fire consuming a heap of dry grass.[58] As a roaring fire of blazing flames and great energy, (arising from embers) cast away on the confines of a forest by its denizens, fast consumes those woods abounding with trees and heaps of dry creepers,[59] even so that hero possessed of great activity and fierce energy and endued with prowess of weapons, and having shafts for his flames, quickly burnt all the troops of thy son from wrath.[60] His gold-winged arrows, endued with fatal force and shot with care, could not be baffled by any armour. He had not to shoot a second arrow at man, steed, or elephant of gigantic size.[61] Like the thunder-wielding Indra striking down the *Daityas*, Arjuna, alone, entering that division of mighty car-warriors, destroyed it with shafts of diverse forms."[62]

Section XXV.

"Sanjaya said,—'Dhananjaya, with his *Gāndiva*, frustrated the purpose of those unreturning heroes struggling in battle and striking their foes.[1] The shafts shot by Arjuna, irresistible and endued with great force and whose touch was like that of the thunder, were seen to resemble torrents of rain poured by a cloud.[2] That army, O chief of the Bharatas, thus struck by Kiritin, fled away in the very sight of thy son.[3] Some deserted their sires and brothers; others, their comrades. Some car-warriors were deprived of their animals. Others lost their drivers. Some had their poles or yokes or wheels broken, O king![4] The arrows of some were exhausted. Some were seen afflicted with arrows. Some, though unwounded, fled in a body,

---

* The Bombay edition reads the first half of the second line of 57 differently.—T.

afflicted with fear.[5] Some endeavoured to rescue their sons, having lost all their kinsmen and animals. Some loudly called upon their sires, some upon their comrades and followers.[6] Some fled, deserting their kinsmen, O tiger among men, and brothers and other relatives, O monarch![7] Many mighty car-warriors, struck with Pārtha's shafts and deeply pierced therewith, were seen to breathe hard, deprived of their senses.[8] Others, taking them up on their own cars, and soothing them for a while, and resting them and dispelling their thirst by offering them drink, once more proceeded to battle.[9] Some, incapable of being easily defeated in battle, deserting the wounded, once more advanced to battle, desirous of obeying the behests of thy son.[10] Some, having slaked their thirst or groomed their animals, and some, wearing (fresh) armour, O chief of the Bharatas,[11] and some, having comforted their brothers and sons and sires, and placed them in camp, once more came to battle.[12] Some, arraying their cars in the order, O king, of superiors and inferiors, advanced against the Pāndavas once more for battle.[13] Those heroes, (on their cars) covered with rows of bells, looked resplendent like *Daityas* and *Dānavas* intent on the conquest of the three worlds.[14] Some, advancing with precipitancy on their vehicles decked with gold, fought with Dhrishtadyumna amid the Pāndava divisions.[15] The Pānchāla prince Dhrishtadyumna, and the great car-warrior Cikhandin, and Catānika the son of Nakula, fought with the car-force of the enemy.[16] The Pānchāla prince then, filled with rage and supported by a large army, rushed against thy angry troops from desire of slaying them.[17] Then thy son, O ruler of men, sped many showers of arrows, O Bhārata, at the Pānchāla prince thus rushing at him.[18] Then, O king, Dhrishtadyumna was quickly pierced with many arrows in his arms and chest by thy son fighting with his bow.[19] Deeply pierced therewith like an elephant with pointed lances, that great bowman then despatched with his shafts the four steeds of Duryodhana to the regions of death. With another broad-headed arrow he next cut off from his trunk the head of his enemy's driver.[20] Then that chastiser of foes, viz., king Duryodhana, having thus lost his car, rode on horseback and

retreated to a spot not remote.[21] Beholding his own army destitute of prowess, thy son, the mighty Duryodhana, O king, proceeded to the place where Suvala's son was.[22] When the Kaurava cars were broken, three thousand gigantic elephants encompassed those car-warriors, viz., the five Pāndavas.[23] Encompassed by that elephant force, O Bhārata, the five brothers looked beautiful, O tiger among men, like the planets surrounded by the clouds.[24] Then the mighty-armed and white-steeded Arjuna, O king, of sureness of aim and having Krishna for his driver, advanced on his car.[25] Surrounded by those elephants huge as hills, he began to destroy those animals with his keen and polished arrows.[26] Each slain with a single arrow, we beheld those huge elephants fallen or falling down, mangled by Savyasāchin.[27] The mighty Bhimasena, himself like an infuriate elephant, beholding those elephants, took up his formidable mace and rushed at them, quickly jumping down from his car, like the Destroyer armed with his club.[28] Seeing that great car-warrior of the Pāndavas with uplifted mace, thy soldiers became filled with fright and passed urine and excreta. The whole army became agitated upon beholding Bhimasena armed with mace.[29] We then beheld those elephants, huge as hills, running hither and thither, with their frontal globes split open by Bhima with his mace and all their limbs bathed in blood.[30] Struck with Bhima's mace, those elephants, running off from him, fell down with cries of pain, like wingless mountains.[31] Beholding those elephants, many in number, with their frontal globes split open, running hither and thither or falling down, thy soldiers were inspired with fear.[32] Then Yudhishthira also, filled with wrath, and the two sons of Mādri, began to slay those elephant-warriors with arrows equipt with vulturine wings.[33] Dhrishtadyumna, after the defeat of the (Kuru) king in battle, and after the flight of the latter from that spot on horse-back, saw that the Pāndavas had all been surrounded by the (Kaurava) elephants.[34] Beholding this, O monarch, Dhrishtadyumna the son of the Pānchāla king proceeded towards those elephants, from desire of slaughtering them.[35] Meanwhile, not seeing Duryodhana in the midst of the car-force, Açwatthāman and Kripa, and Kritavarman of

the Sātwata race, asked all the Kshatriyas there, saying,—Where has Duryodhana gone?[36]—Not seeing the king in the midst of that carnage, those great car-warriors all thought thy son to have been slain. Hence, with sorrowful faces, they enquired after him.[37] Some persons told them that after the fall of his driver, he had gone to Suvala's son.[38] Other Kshatriyas, present there, who had been exceedingly mangled with wounds, said,—What need is there with Duryodhana? See, if he is yet alive! Do you all fight unitedly! What will the king do to you?[39]—Other Kshatriyas, who were exceedingly mangled, who had lost many of their kinsmen, and who were still being afflicted with the arrows of the enemy, said these words in indistinct tones.[40]—Let us slay these forces by whom we are encompassed! Behold, the Pāndavas are coming hither, after having slain the elephants![41] —Hearing these words of theirs, the mighty Açwatthāman, piercing through that irresistible force of the Pānchāla king,[42] proceeded, with Kripa and Kritavarman, to the spot where Suvala's son was. Indeed, those heroes, those firm bowmen, leaving the car-force, repaired (in search of Duryodhana).[43] After they had gone away, the Pāndavas, headed by Dhrishtadyumna, advanced, O king, and began to slay their enemies.[44] Beholding those valiant and heroic and mighty car-warriors cheerfully rushing towards them, thy troops, amongst whom the faces of many had turned pale, became hopeless of their lives.[45] Seeing those soldiers of ours almost deprived of weapons and surrounded (by the foe), I myself, O king, having only two kinds of forces, and becoming reckless of life,[46] joined the five leaders of our army, and fought with the forces of the Pānchāla prince, posting our men on that spot where Caradwat's son was stationed.[47] We had been afflicted with the shafts of Kiritin. Nevertheless, a fierce battle took place between us and the division of Dhrishtadyumna. At last, vanquished by the latter, all of us retreated from that encounter.[48] I then beheld the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki rushing against us. With four hundred cars that hero pursued me in battle.[49] Having escaped with difficulty from Dhrishtadyumna whose steeds had been tired, I fell among the forces of Mādhava even

as a sinner falleth into hell. There a fierce and terrible battle took place for a short while.[50] The mighty-armed Sātyaki, having cut off my armour, became desirous of taking me alive. He seized me while I lay down on the ground insensible.[51] Then within a short while that elephant force was destroyed by Bhimasena with his mace and Arjuna with his arrows.[52] In consequence of those mighty elephants, huge as hills, falling down on every side with crushed limbs, the Pāndava warriors found their way almost entirely blocked up.[53] Then the mighty Bhimasena, O monarch, dragging away those huge elephants, made a way for the Pāndavas to come out.[54] Meanwhile Açwatthāman and Kripa and Kritavarman of the Sātwata race, not seeing that chastiser of foes, viz., Duryodhana, amid the car-division, sought for thy royal son.[55] Abandoning the prince of the Pānchālas, they proceeded to the spot where Suvala's son was, anxious to have a sight of the king during that terrible carnage.' "[56]

Section XXVI.

"Sanjaya said,—'After that elephant division had been destroyed, O Bhārata, by the son of Pāndu, and while thy army was being thus slaughtered by Bhimasena in battle,[1] beholding the latter,—that chastiser of foes,—careering like the all-killing Destroyer himself in rage armed with his club,[2] the remnant of thy unslaughtered sons, those uterine brothers, O king, united together at that time when he of Kuru's race, viz., thy son Duryodhana, could not be seen, and rushed against Bhimasena.[3] They were Durmarshana and Crutānta and Jaitra and Bhurivala and Ravi, and Jayatsena and Sujāta and that slayer of foes, viz., Durvishaha,[4] and he called Durvimochana, and Dushpradharsha, and the mighty-armed Crutarvan. All of them were accomplished in battle.[5] These sons of thine, uniting together, rushed against Bhimasena and shut him up on all sides.[6] Then Bhima, O monarch, once more mounting on his own car, began to shoot keen shafts at the vital limbs of thy sons.[7] Those sons of thine, covered with arrows by Bhimasena in that dreadful battle, began to drag that warrior

like men dragging an elephant from off a cross-way.[8] Excited with rage, Bhimasena, quickly cutting off the head of Durmarshana with a razor-headed arrow, felled it on the Earth.[9] With another broad-headed arrow capable of penetrating every armour, Bhima next slew that mighty car-warrior, viz., thy son Crutānta.[10] Then with the greatest ease, piercing Jayatsena with a cloth-yard shaft, that chastiser of foes, viz., the son of Pāndu, felled that scion of Kuru's race from his car. The prince, O king, fell down and immediately expired.[11] At this thy son Crutarvan, excited with rage, pierced Bhima with a hundred straight arrows winged with vulturine feathers.[12] Then Bhima, inflamed with rage, pierced Jaitra and Ravi and Bhurivala, those three, with three shafts resembling poison or fire.[13] Those mighty car-warriors, thus struck, fell down from their cars, like *Kinçukas* variegated with flowers in the season of spring cut down (by the axeman).[14] Then that scorcher of foes, with another broad-headed arrow of great keenness struck Durvimochana and despatched him to Yama's abode.[15] Thus struck, that foremost of car-warriors fell down on the ground from his car, like a tree growing on the summit of a mountain when broken by the wind.[16] The son of Pāndu next struck thy other two sons at the head of their forces, viz., Dushpradharsha and Sujāta, each with a couple of arrows in that battle. Those two foremost of car-warriors, pierced with those shafts, fell down.[17] Beholding next another son of thine, viz., Durvishaha, rushing at him, Bhima pierced him with a broad-headed arrow in that battle. That prince fell down from his car in the very sight of all the bowmen.[18] Beholding so many of his brothers slain by the single-handed Bhima in that battle, Crutarvan, under the influence of rage, rushed at Bhima,[19] stretching his formidable bow decked with gold and shooting a large number of arrows that resembled poison or fire in energy.[20] Cutting off the bow of Pāndu's son in that dreadful battle, the Kuru prince pierced the bowless Bhima with twenty arrows.[21] Then Bhimasena, that mighty car-warrior, taking up another bow, shrouded thy son with arrows and addressing him, said,—Wait, Wait![22]—The battle that took place between the two was beautiful and fierce, like that which

had occurred in days of yore between Vāsava and the *Asura* Jambha, O lord![23] With the keen shafts, resembling the fatal rods of Yama, sped by those two warriors, the Earth, the sky, and all the points of the compass, became shrouded.[24] Then Crutarvan, filled with rage, took up his bow and struck Bhimasena in that battle, O king, with many arrows on his arms and chest.[25] Deeply pierced, O monarch, by thy son armed with the bow, Bhima became exceedingly agitated like the ocean at the full or the new moon.[26] Filled with wrath, Bhima then, O sire, despatched with his arrows the driver and the four steeds of thy son to Yama's abode.[27] Beholding him carless, Pāndu's son of immeasurable soul, displaying the lightness of his hands, covered him with winged arrows.[28] The carless Crutarvan then, O king, took up a sword and shield. As the prince, however, careered with his sword and bright shield decked with a hundred moons, the son of Pāndu struck off his head from his trunk with a razor-headed arrow and felled it on the Earth.[29] The trunk of that illustrious warrior, rendered headless by means of that razor-headed arrow, fell down from his car, filling the Earth with a loud noise.[30] Upon the fall of that hero, thy troops, though terrified, rushed in that battle against Bhimasena from desire of fighting with him.[31] The valiant Bhimasena, clad in mail, received those warriors rushing quickly at him from among the unslain remnant of that ocean of troops. Approaching him, those warriors encompassed that hero on all sides.[32] Thus surrounded by those warriors of thine, Bhima began to afflict them all with keen shafts like him of a thousand eyes afflicting the *Asuras*.[33] Having destroyed five hundred great cars with their fences, he once more slew seven hundred elephants in that battle.[34] Slaying next ten thousand foot-soldiers with his mighty shafts, as also eight hundred steeds, the son of Pāndu looked resplendent.[35] Indeed, Bhimasena the son of Kunti, having slain thy sons in battle, regarded his object achieved, O lord, and the purpose of his birth accomplished.[36] Thy troops, at that time, O Bhārata, ventured not to even gaze at that warrior who was battling in that fashion and slaying thy men in that way.[37] Routing all the Kurus and slaying those followers of theirs, Bhima then

slapped his arm-pits, terrifying the huge elephants with the noise he produced.[88] Then thy army, O monarch, which had lost a very large number of men, and which then consisted of a very few soldiers, became exceedingly cheerless, O king.' "[89]

SECTION XXVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Duryodhana, O king, and thy son Sudarça, the only two of thy children yet unslain, were at that time in the midst of the (Kaurava) cavalry.[1] Beholding Duryodhana staying in the midst of the cavalry, Devaki's son (Krishna) said unto Dhananjaya the son of Kunti,[2]—A large number of our foes,—kinsmen that had received our protection,—have been slain. There, that bull of Cini's race is returning, having taken Sanjaya captive![3] Both Nakula and Sahadeva, O Bhārata, are fatigued, having fought with the wretched Dhārtarāshtras and their followers![4] Those three, viz., Kripa and Kritavarman and the mighty car-warrior Açwatthāman, have left Duryodhana's side and taken up their position elsewhere![5] Having slain Duryodhana's troops, the Pānchāla prince stayeth yonder, endued with great beauty, in the midst of the Prabhadrakas.[6] There, O Pārtha, Duryodhana stayeth in the midst of his cavalry, with the umbrella held over his head and himself flinging his glances all around![7] Having rearrayed the (remnant of his) army, he stayeth in the midst of his forces. Slaying this one with thy keen shafts, thou mayst achieve all thy objects![8] As long as these troops do not fly away beholding thee, in their midst and witnessing also the destruction of their elephant force, do thou, O chastiser of foes, endeavour to slay Duryodhana![9] Let somebody go to the Pānchāla prince and ask him to come hither. The (Kaurava) troops are all tired, O sire! The sinful Duryodhana will never succeed in escaping![10] Having slain a large number of thy troops in battle the son of Dhritarāshtra wears a proud aspect as if he believes that the Pāndavas have been vanquished![11] Beholding his own troops afflicted and slain by the Pāndavas, the Kuru king will certainly come to battle for his own destruction!—Thus addressed by Krishna, Phālguna replied unto him, say-

ing,[12]—Almost all the sons of Dhritarāshtra, O giver of honors, have been slain by Bhima! Only these two are yet alive! They, however, O Krishna, shall also meet with destruction today![13] Bhishma hath been slain, Drona hath been slain, Karna, otherwise called Vaikartana, hath been slain! Calya the king of the Madras hath been slain, and Jayadratha also, O Krishna, hath been slain![14] Only five hundred horse form the remnant of the troops of Cakuni the son of Suvala! Of cars, only two hundred still remain, O Janārddana! Of elephants there remain only a hundred that are formidable, and of foot only three thousand![15] There remain also Açwatthāman and Kripa and the ruler of the Trigartas and Uluka and Cakuni and Kritavarman of the Sātwata race![16] These, O Mādhava, form the rēmnant of Duryodhana's force! Truly, there is no escape from death for anybody on Earth![17] Although such a tremendous carnage has taken place, behold, Duryodhana is still alive! Today king Yudhishthira, however, will be freed from all his foes! None amongst the enemy will escape me, I ween![18] Even if they be more than men, O Krishna, I shall yet slay all those warriors today, however furious in battle, if only they do not fly away from the field![19] Filled with wrath in today's battle, I shall, by slaying the prince of Gāndhāra with my keen shafts, dispel that sleeplessness which the king has suffered for a long time![20] I shall win back all those valuable possessions which Suvala's son of wicked conduct won from us at the gambling match in the assembly![21] Hearing of the slaughter of their husbands and sons at the hands of the Pāndavas in battle, all the ladies of the city called after the elephant will utter loud wails![22]* Today, O Krishna, our task will be ended! Today Duryodhana shall abandon all his blazing prosperity as also his life-breaths![23] Thou mayst take the foolish son of Dhritarāshtra to be dead, O thou of Vrishni's race, if, O Krishna, he does not today fly away from the battle to be waged by me![24] Those steeds are incapable of enduring the twang of my bow and the slaps of my palms! Proceed thither, O Krishna, for I will slay them![25]

---

* The true reading is *Rotsyanti* and not *Vetsyanti*.—T.

—Thus addressed by Pāndu's son of great force of mind, he of Daçārha's race urged his steeds, O king, towards the division of Duryodhana.[26] Beholding that force (within which Duryodhana was), three mighty car-warriors prepared themselves for assailing it, for Bhimasena and Arjuna and Sahadeva, O sire, together proceeded against it with loud leonine roars from desire of slaying Duroydhana.[27] Beholding those three warriors rushing quickly together with uplifted bows, Suvala's son proceeded towards that spot against those Pāndava foes.[28] Thy son Sudarçana rushed against Bhimasena. Suçarman and Cakuni encountered Kiritin. Thy son Duryodhana on horse-back proceeded against Sahadeva.[29] Then thy son, O ruler of men, with great speed and care, forcibly struck Sahadeva's head with a lance.[30] Thus assailed by thy son, Sahadeva sat down on the terrace of his car, all his limbs bathed in blood and himself sighing like a snake.[31] Regaining his senses then, O king, Sahadeva, filled with rage, covered Duryodhana with keen arrows.[32] Kunti's son Dhananjaya, otherwise called Pārtha, putting forth his prowess, cut off the heads of many brave combatants on horse-back.[33] Indeed, Pārtha, with many arrows, destroyed that (cavalry) division. Having felled all the steeds, he then proceeded against the cars of the Trigartas.[34] At this, the great car-warriors of the Trigartas, uniting together, covered Arjuna and Vāsudeva with showers of shafts[35] Assailing Satyakarman with a razor-headed arrow, the son of Pāndu, possessed of great fame, cut off his adversary's car-shafts.[36] With another razor-headed arrow, O lord, whetted on stone, that celebrated hero, smiling the while, cut off his antagonist's head adorned with bright gold.[37] He next attacked Satyeshu in the sight of all the warriors, like a hungry lion, O king, in the forest, attacking a deer.[38] Having slain him, Pārtha pierced Suçarman with three arrows and then slew all those car-warriors adorned with ornaments of gold.[39] He then proceeded against Suçarman the ruler of Prashthala with great speed, vomiting the virulent poison of his wrath cherished for many long years.[40] Covering him first, O bull of Bharata's race, with a hundred arrows, Arjuna then slew all the steeds of that bowman,[41] Fixing then on his bow-

string a mighty arrow that resembled the rod of Yama, Pārtha, smiling the while, quickly sped it at Suçarman, aiming it at him.[42] Sped by that bowman blazing with wrath, that arrow, reaching Suçarman, pierced through his heart in that battle.[43] Deprived of life, O monarch, Suçarman fell down on the Earth, gladdening all the Pāndavas and paining all thy warriors.[44] Having slain Suçarman in that battle, Pārtha then, with his shafts, despatched the five and thirty sons of that king, all of whom were great car-warriors, to Yama's abode.[45] Slaying next all the followers of Suçarman with his keen arrows, the mighty car-warrior Arjuna proceeded against the remnant of the Bharata host.[46] Bhima, in that battle, filled with rage, O ruler of men, made thy son Sudarçana invisible with his arrows, smiling the while.[47] Filled with rage, the son of Pāndu, smiling the while, cut off from his antagonist's trunk his head with a razor-headed arrow of great sharpness. Deprived of life, the prince fell down on the Earth.[48] Upon the fall of that (Kuru) hero, his followers encompassed Bhima in that battle, shooting showers of whetted arrows at him.[49] Vrikodara, however, with his keen arrows, whose touch resembled that of Indra's thunder, covered that force around him. Within a very short time, Bhima slew them all, O bull of Bharata's race![50] Whilst they were being thus exterminated, many Kaurava leaders of great might, O Bhārata, approached Bhima and began to fight with him.[51] The son of Pāndu, O king, covered all of them with his arrows. Similarly, thy warriors, O monarch, covered the great car-warriors of the Pāndavas with dense showers of arrows from every side.[52] All the warriors then, of both sides, thus engaged in battle with one another, became exceedingly agitated.[53] Struck by one another, the combatants of both armies, O king, began to fall down, wailing aloud for their (deceased) kinsmen.' "[54]

SECTION XXVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'During the progress of that battle which was so destructive of men and steeds and elephants, Suvala's son Cakuni, O king, rushed against Sahadeva.[1] The valiant Saha-

deva, as Cakuni rushed quickly towards him, sped showers of swift arrows at that warrior as numerous as a flight of insects. At that time Uluka also encountered Bhima and pierced him with ten arrows.[3] Cakuni meanwhile, O monarch, having pierced Bhima with three arrows, covered Sahadeva with ninety.[3] Indeed, those heroes, O king, encountering one another in that battle, pierced one another with many keen arrows equipt with *Kanka* and peacock feathers, winged with gold, whetted on stone, and sped from bowstrings drawn to their ears.[4] Those showers of arrows sped from their bows and arms, O monarch, shrouded all the points of the compass like a thick shower of rain poured from the clouds.[5] Then Bhima, filled with rage, and Sahadeva of great valor, both endued with great might, careered in that battle, making an immense carnage.[6] That army, O Bhārata, was covered with hundreds of arrows by those two warriors. In consequence thereof, the welkin, on many parts of the field, became shrouded with darkness.[7] In consequence, O monarch, of steeds, covered with arrows, dragging after them, as they ran, a large number of slain combatants, the tracks on many parts of the field became entirely blocked up.[8] Covered with steeds slain with their riders, with broken shields and lances, O monarch, and with swords and darts and spears all around, the Earth looked variegated as if strewn with flowers.[9] The combatants, O king, encountering one another, careered in battle, filled with wrath and taking one another's life.[10] Soon the field became strewn with heads, beautiful as the filaments of the lotus, adorned with ear-rings and graced with faces set with eyes upturned in wrath and lips bit in rage.[11] Covered also, O monarch, with the severed arms of warriors that resembled the trunks of huge elephants, that were adorned with *Angadas* and cased in leathern fences, and that still held swords and lances and battle-axes,[12] and with headless bodies risen on their feet and bleeding and dancing on the field, and swarming with carnivorous creatures of diverse kinds, the Earth, O lord, presented a frightful aspect![13] After the Bharata army had been reduced to a small remnant, the Pāndavas, filled with delight in that dreadful battle, began to despatch the Kauravas to Yama's

abode.[14] Meanwhile the heroic and valiant son of Suvala's son very forcibly struck Sahadeva in the head with a lance.[15] Exceedingly agitated, O monarch, in consequence of that blow, Sahadeva sat down on the terrace of his car.[16] Beholding Sahadeva in that plight, the valiant Bhima, filled with rage, O Bhārata, held the whole Kuru army in check.[17] With his cloth-yard shafts he pierced hundreds and thousands of hostile warriors, and having pierced them so, that chastiser of foes uttered a leonine roar.[18] Frightened at that roar, all the followers of Cakuni, with their steeds and elephants, precipitately fled away in fear.[19] Beholding them broken, king Duryodhana said unto them:—Stop, ye Kshatriyas unacquainted with morality! Fight! What is the use of flight?[20] That hero who without showing his back casteth away his life-breaths in battle, achieveth fame here and enjoyeth regions of bliss hereafter![21]—Thus exhorted by the king, the followers of Suvala's son once more advanced against the Pāndavas, making death their goal.[22] Awful, O monarch, was the noise made by those rushing warriors, resembling that of the agitated ocean. At this, the field of battle became agitated all around.[23] Beholding those followers of Suvala's son thus advancing to battle, the victorious Pāndavas, O monarch, proceeded against them.[24] Comforted a little, the invincible Sahadeva, O monarch, pierced Cakuni with ten arrows and his steeds with three. With the greatest ease he then cut off the bow of Suvala's son with a number of other arrows.[25] Invincible in battle, Cakuni, however, took up another bow and pierced Nakula with sixty arrows and then Bhimasena with seven.[26] Uluka also, O king, desirous of rescuing his sire in that engagement, pierced Bhima with seven arrows and Sahadeva with seventy.[27] Bhimasena in that encounter pierced Uluka with many keen arrows and Cakuni with four and sixty, and each of the other warriors who fought around them, with three arrows.[28] Struck by Bhimasena with shafts steeped in oil, the Kauravas, filled with rage in that battle, covered Sahadeva with showers of arrows like lightning-charged clouds pouring rain on a mountain breast.[29] The heroic and valiant Sahadeva then, O monarch, cut off, with a broad-headed arrow, the head of Uluka as the latter advanced,

against him.[30] Slain by Sahadeva, Uluka, gladdening the Pāndavas in that battle, fell down on the Earth from his car, all his limbs bathed in blood.[31] Beholding his son slain, Cakuni, O Bhārata, with voice choked in tears and drawing deep breaths, recollected the words of Vidura.[32] Having reflected for a moment with tearful eyes. Cakuni, breathing heavily, approached Sahadeva and pierced him with three arrows.[33] Baffling those arrows sped by Suvala's son with showers of shafts, the valiant Sahadeva, O monarch, cut off his antagonist's bow in that battle.[34] Seeing his bow cut off, O king, Cakuni the son of Suvala took up a formidable scimitar and hurled it at Sahadeva.[35] The latter, however, with the greatest ease, O monarch, cut off in twain that terrible scimitar of Suvala's son as it coursed towards him in that encounter.[36] Beholding his sword cut in twain, Cakuni took up a formidable mace and hurled it at Sahadeva. That mace also, unable to achieve its object, fell down on the Earth.[37] After this, Suvala's son, filled with rage, hurled at the son of Pāndu an awful dart that resembled an impending death-night.[38] With the greatest ease Sahadeva, in that encounter, cut off, with his gold-decked shafts, into three fragments, that dart as it coursed swiftly towards him.[39] Cut off into fragments, that dart adorned with gold fell down on the Earth like a blazing thunder-bolt from the firmament, diverging into many flashes.[40] Beholding that dart baffled and Suvala's son afflicted with fear, all thy troops fled away in fright. Suvala's son himself joined them.[41] The Pāndavas then, eager for victory, uttered loud shouts. As regards the Dhārtarāshtras, almost all of them turned away from the fight.[42] Seeing them so cheerless, the valiant son of Mādri, with many thousand shafts, checked them in that battle.[43] Then Sahadeva came upon Suvala's son as the latter, who was still expectant of victory, was flying away, protected by the excellent cavalry of the Gāndhāras.[44] Recollecting, O king, that Cakuni, who had fallen to his share, was still alive Sahadeva, on his car adorned with gold, pursued that warrior.[45] Stringing his formidable bow and drawing it with great force, Sahadeva, filled with rage, pursued the son of Suvala and vigorously struck him with many shafts equipt with vulturine

feathers and whetted on stone, even like a person striking a mighty elephant with pointed lances.[46] Endued with great energy of mind, Sahadeva, having afflicted his foe thus, addressed him, as if for calling back to his mind (his past misdeeds), in these words:—Adhering to the duties of a Kshatriya, fight (with me) and be a man![47]—Thou hadst, O fool, rejoiced greatly in the midst of the assembly, while gambling with dice! Receive now, O thou of wicked understanding, the fruit of that act![48] All those wicked-souled ones that had ridiculed us then have perished! Only that wretch of his race, viz., Duryodhana, is still alive, and thyself, his maternal uncle![49] Today I shall slay thee, striking off thy head with a razor-headed arrow like a person plucking a fruit from a tree with a stick![50]—Saying these words, O monarch, Sahadeva of great strength, that tiger among men, filled with rage, rushed impetuously against Cakuni.[51] Approaching his enemy, the invincible Sahadeva, that foremost of warriors, forcibly drawing his bow and as if burning his foe with wrath,[52] pierced Cakuni with ten arrows and his steeds with four. Then cutting off his umbrella and standard and bow, he roared like a lion.[53] His standard and bow and umbrella thus cut off by Sahadeva, Suvala's son was pierced with many arrows in all his vital limbs.[54] Once again, O monarch, the valiant Sahadeva sped at Cakuni an irresistible shower of arrows.[55] Filled with rage, the son of Suvala then, single-handed, rushed with speed against Sahadeva in that encounter, desirous of slaying the latter with a lance adorned with gold.[56] The son of Mādri, however, with three broad-headed arrows, simultaneously cut off, without losing a moment, that uplifted lance as also the two well rounded arms of his enemy at the van of battle, and then uttered a loud roar.[57] Endued with great activity, the heroic Sahadeva then, with a broad-headed arrow made of hard iron, equipt with wings of gold, capable of penetrating every armour, and sped with great force and care, cut off from his trunk his enemy's head.[58] Deprived of his head by the son of Pāndu with that gold-decked arrow of great sharpness and splendour like the Sun's, Suvala's son fell down on the Earth in that battle.[59] Indeed, the son of Pāndu, filled with

rage, struck off that head which was the root of the evil policy of the Kurus, with that impetuous shaft winged with gold and whetted on stone.[60] Beholding Cakuni lying headless on the ground and all his limbs drenched with gore, thy warriors, rendered powerless with fear, fled away on all sides with weapons in their hands.[61] At that time thy sons, with cars, elephants, horse, and foot, entirely broken, heard the twang of *Gandiva* and fled away with colorless faces, afflicted with fear and deprived of their senses.[62] Having thrown down Cakuni from his car, the Pāndavas, O Bhārata, became filled with delight. Rejoicing with Keçava among them, they blew their conchs in that battle, gladdening their troops.[63] All of them, with glad hearts, worshipped Sahadeva, and said,—By good luck, O hero, Cakuni of wicked soul, that man of evil courses, hath, with his son, been slain by thee !—' "[64]

Section XXIX.

(Hrada-praveça Parva).

"Sanjaya said,—'After this, the followers of Suvala's son, O monarch, became filled with rage. Prepared to lay down their lives in that dreadful battle, they began to resist the Pāndavas.[1] Resolved to aid Sahadeva in his victory, Arjuna, as also Bhimasena possessed of great energy and resembling an angry snake of virulent poison in aspect, received those warriors.[2] With his *Gāndiva*, Dhananjaya baffled the purpose of those warriors who, armed with darts and swords and lances, desired to slay Sahadeva.[3] Vibhatsu, with his broad-headed arrows, cut off the steeds, the heads, and the arms, with weapons in grasp, of those rushing combatants.[4] The steeds of those foremost of heroes endued with activiy, struck by Savyasāchin, fell down on the Earth, deprived of their lives.[5] King Duryodhana, beholding that carnage of his own troops, O lord, became filled with rage. Assembling together the remnant of his cars which still numbered many hundreds,[6] as also his elephants and horse and foot, O scorcher of foes, thy

son said these words unto those warriors,[7]—Encountering all the Pāndavas with their friends and allies, in this battle, and the prince of Pānchāla also with his own troops, and slaying them quickly, turn back from the fight![8]—Respectfully accepting that command of his, those warriors, difficult of defeat in battle, proceeded once more against the Pārthas in that battle, at the behest of thy son.[9] The Pāndavas, however, covered with their arrows resembling snakes of virulent poison all those warriors, forming the remnant of the Kaurava army, that thus rushed quickly against them in that dreadful battle.[10] That army, O chief of the Bharatas, as it came to battle, was in a moment exterminated by those high-souled warriors; for it failed to obtain a protector.[11] In consequence of the (Kaurava) steeds running hither and thither that were all covered with the dust raised by the army, the cardinal and the subsidiary points of the compass could not be distinguished.[12] Many warriors, issuing out of the Pāndava array, O Bhārata, slew thy troops in a moment in that battle.[13] Eleven *Akshauhinis*, O Bhārata, of troops had been assembled for thy son! All those, O lord, were slain by the Pāndus and the Srinjayas![14] Amongst those thousands upon thousands of high-souled kings on thy side, only Duryodhana now, O monarch, exceedingly wounded, was seen to be alive![15] Casting his eyes on all sides and seeing the Earth empty, himself destitute of all his troops while the Pāndavas, filled with joy in that battle, were roaring aloud in consequence of the accomplishment of all their objects, Duryodhana, O monarch, unable to endure the whiz of the shafts shot by those high-souled heroes, became stupified! Destitute of troops and animals, he set his heart on retreat from the field.'[16-18]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'When my troops were slain and our camp made entirely empty, what was the strength, O Suta, of the troops that still remained to the Pāndavas? I desire to know this. Therefore, tell me, O Sanjaya, for thou art skilled (in narration)![19] Tell me also, O Sanjaya, that which was done by my son, the wicked Duryodhana, that lord of the Earth, the sole survivor of so many men, when he saw his army exterminated!'[20]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Two thousand cars, seven hundred elephants, five thousand horse, and ten thousand foot,[21]—this was the remnant, O monarch, of the mighty host of the Pāndavas! Taking care of this force, Dhrishtadyumna waited in that battle.[22] Meanwhile, O chief of the Bharatas, king Duryodhana, that foremost of car-warriors, saw not in that battle a single warrior on his side.[23] Beholding his enemies roaring aloud and witnessing the extermination of his own army, that lord of Earth, O monarch, viz., Duryodhana, without a companion, abandoned his slain steed, and fled from the field with face turned eastwards.[24] That lord of eleven *Akshauhinis*, viz., thy son Duryodhana, of great energy, taking up his mace, fled on foot towards a lake.[25] Before he had proceeded far on foot, the king recalled the words of the intelligent and virtuous Vidura.[26]—Without doubt, this had been foreseen by Vidura of great wisdom, viz., this great carnage of Kshatriyas and of ourselves in battle![27]—Reflecting on this, the king, with heart burning in grief at having witnessed the extermination of his army, desired to penetrate into the depths of that lake.[28] The Pāndavas, O monarch, with Dhrishtadyumna at their head, filled with rage, O king, rushed against (the small remnant of) thy army.[29] With his *Gāndiva*, Dhananjaya baffled the purpose of the (Kaurava) troops, who, armed with darts and swords and lances, were uttering loud roars.[30] Having, with his sharp shafts, slain those troops with their allies and kinsmen, Arjuna, as he stood on his car having white steeds yoked unto it, looked exceedingly beautiful.[31] Upon the fall of Suvala's son along with horse, cars, and elephants, thy army looked like a large forest laid low (by the wind).[32] In Duryodhana's army then, O monarch, which had numbered many hundred thousands of warriors, not another great car-warrior was seen to be alive,[33] save the heroic son of Drona, and Kritavarman, and Kripa the son of Gotama, O monarch, and that lord of Earth, viz., thy son![34] Dhrishtadyumna, seeing me, laughingly addressed Sātyaki, saying,—What is the use of seizing this one? Nothing will be gained by keeping him alive.[35]—Hearing these words of Dhrishtadyumna, the grandson of Cini, that great car-warrior, uplifting his sharp

sword, prepared to slay me.[36] Just at that juncture, the Island-born Krishna of great wisdom, (viz., Vyāsa), coming there, said, —Let Sanjaya be dismissed alive! By no means should he be slain![37]—Hearing these words of the Island-born, the grandson of Cini joined his hands, and then, setting me free, said unto me,—Peace to thee, O Sanjaya, thou mayst go hence![38]—Permitted by him, myself then, putting off my armour and making over my weapons, set out on the evening on the road leading to the city, my limbs bathed in blood.[39] After I had come about two miles, O monarch, I beheld Duryodhana, standing alone, mace in hand, and exceedingly mangled.[40] His eyes were full of tears and, therefore, he could not see me. I stood cheerlessly before him. He looked accordingly at me without recognising me.[41] Beholding him standing alone on the field and indulging in grief, I also, overwhelmed with sorrow, succeeded not for a little while to speak a single word.[42] Then I said unto him everything about my own capture and my release through the grace of the Island-born.[43] Having reflected for a moment, and regained his senses, he enquired of me after his brothers and his troops.[44] I had seen everything with my eyes and, therefore, told him everything, viz., that his brothers had all been slain and that all his troops had been exterminated.[45] I told the king that we had at that time only three car-warriors left alive, for the Island-born had said so unto me when I set out (from the place where the Pāndavas were).[46] Drawing deep breaths and looking repeatedly at me, thy son touched me with his hand and said,[47]—Except thee, O Sanjaya, there is none else that liveth, amongst those engaged in this battle! I do not see another (on my side), while the Pāndavas have their allies living![48] Say, O Sanjaya, unto that lord, viz., the blind king Dhritarāshtra, that his son Duryodhana hath entered the depths of a lake![49] Destitute of friends such as those (I lately had), deprived of sons and brothers, and seeing his kingdom taken by the Pāndavas, who is there like me that would desire to live?[50] Say all this unto the king and tell him further that I have escaped with life from that dreadful battle, and that, alive, though exceedingly wounded, I shall rest within the depths of this lake![51]—Having said these words unto me, O monarch,

the king entered that lake. That ruler of men, by his power of illusion, then charmed the waters of that lake, making a space for him within them.[52] After he had entered that lake, myself, without anybody on my side, saw those three car-warriors (of our army) coming together to that spot with their tired animals.[53] They were Kripa the son of Caradwat, and the heroic Açwatthāman, that foremost of car-warriors, and Kritavarman of Bhoja's race. Mangled with shafts, all of them came together to that spot.[54] Beholding me, they all urged their steeds to greater speed and coming up to me, said,—By good luck, O Sanjaya, thou livest yet![55]—All of them then enquired after thy son, that ruler of men, saying,—Is our king Duryodhana still alive, O Sanjaya?[56]—I then told them that the king was well in body. I also told them everything that Duryodhana had said unto me. I also pointed out to them the lake that the king had entered.[57] Then Açwatthāman, O king, having heard those words from me, cast his eyes on that extensive lake and began to wail in grief, saying,[58] —Alas, Alas, the king knew not that we are still alive! With him amongst us, we are still quite able to fight with our foes![59]—Those mighty car-warriors, having wept there for a long time, fled away at sight of the sons of Pāndu.[60] Those three car-warriors that formed the remnant of our army took me up on the well-adorned car of Kripa and then proceeded to the Kuru camp.[61] The Sun had set a little before. The troops forming the outposts of the camp, learning that all thy sons had been slain, wept aloud.[62] Then, O monarch, the old men that had been appointed to look after the ladies of the royal household, proceeded towards the city, taking the princesses after them.[63] Loud were the wails uttered by those crying and weeping ladies when they heard of the destruction of the whole army.[64] The women, O king, crying ceaselessly, caused the Earth to resound with their voices like a flight of she-ospreys.[65] They tore their bodies with their nails and struck their heads with their hands, and untied their braids, indulging all the while in loud cries.[66] Filling the air with sounds such as *Oh* and *Alas*, and beating their breasts, they cried aloud and wept and uttered loud shrieks, O mon-

arch![67] Then the friends of Duryodhana, deeply afflicted and made voiceless by their tears, set out for the city, taking the ladies of the royal household with them.[68] The camp-guards quickly fled towards the city, taking with them many white beds overlaid with costly coverlets.[69] Others, placing their wives on cars drawn by mules, proceeded towards the city.[70] Those ladies, O monarch, who while in their houses could not be seen by the very Sun, were now, as they proceeded towards the city, exposed to the gaze of the common people.[71] Those women, O chief of Bharata's race, who were very delicate, now proceeded with speed towards the city, having lost their near ones and kinsmen.[72] The very cowherds and shepherds and common men, filled with panic and afflicted with the fear of Bhimasena, fled towards the city.[73] Even these were filled with a great fear of the Pārthas. Looking at one another, all of them fled towards the city.[74] During the progress of that general flight attended with such circumstances of fear, Yuyutsu, deprived of his senses by grief, thought upon what he should do in view of the emergency that had come.[75]—Duryodhana hath been vanquished in battle by the Pāndavas of terrible prowess! He had eleven *Akshauhinis* of troops under him! All his brothers have been slain![76] All the Kauravas, headed by Bhishma and Drona, have perished! Through the influence of Destiny, only I have been saved![77] All those that were in the Kuru camp have fled! Alas, they are flying on all sides, deprived of energy and destitute of protectors![78] Such a sight had never been seen before! Afflicted with sorrow, with eyes anxious in fear, they are flying away on all sides like a herd of deer, looking at one another![79] Those amongst the counsellors of Duryodhana that are yet alive have fled towards the city, taking with them the ladies of the royal household![80] I think, O lord, that the time hath come when I also should enter the city with them, after taking the permission of Yudhishthira and Vāsudeva!—For this purpose that mighty-armed prince presented himself before both those heroes.[81] King Yudhishthira, who is always compassionate, became highly pleased with him. The mighty-armed Pāndava embraced that child of a Vaiçyā mother and dismissed him affectionately.[82]

Riding upon his own car, he urged his steeds to great speed. He then supervised the removal of the ladies of the royal household to the city.[83] The Sun was setting. With those ladies, Yuyutsu entered the city of Hastināpura, with tearful eyes and with voice choked in grief.[84] He then saw Vidura of great wisdom, sitting with tearful eyes. He had come away from Dhritarāshtra, his heart having been afflicted with great sorrow.[85] Bowing down unto Vidura, he stood before him. Devoted to truth, Vidura addressed him, saying,—By good luck, O son, thou livest amid this general destruction of the Kurus![86] Why, however, hast thou come without king Duryodhana in thy company? Tell me in detail the cause of this![87]—Yuyutsu then said,—After the fall of Cakuni, O sire, with all his kinsmen and friends, king Duryodhana, abandoning the steed he rode, fled away in fear towards the east.[88] After the king had fled away, all the people in the (Kaurava) encampment, agitated with fear, fled towards the city.[89] Then the protectors of the ladies, placing the wives of the king, as also those of his brothers, on vehicles, fled away in fear.[90] Obtaining the permission of king Yudhishthira and Keçava, I set out for Hastināpura, for protecting the people thus flying away![91]—Hearing these words spoken by the son of Dhrishtarāshtra's Vaiçyā wife, Vidura of immeasurable soul, conversant with every usage and feeling what was proper at that hour, applauded the eloquent Yuyutsu.[92] And he said,—Thou hast acted properly, having regard for what has come, in view of this destruction of all the Bharatas of which thou art speaking! Thou hast also, from compassion, maintained the honor of thy race![93] By good luck we behold thee come back with life from this terrible battle that is so destructive of heroes, like creatures beholding the Sun possessed of blazing glory![94] Thou, O son, art now in every way the sole staff of the blind monarch bereft of foresight, afflicted with calamity, struck by Destiny, and who, though repeatedly dissuaded, could not abstain from pursuing his evil policy![95] Take rest here for this day! Tomorrow thou mayst return to Yudhishthira!—Having said these words, Vidura, with tearful eyes,[96] took leave of Yuyutsu and entered the abode of the king,

which resounded with cries of *Oh* and *Alas* uttered by citizens and villagers afflicted with woe.[97] The cheerless mansion seemed to have lost all its beauty; comfort and happiness seemed to have deserted it. It was all empty and pervaded by disorder. Already filled with sorrow, Vidura's grief increased at that sight.[98] Conversant with every duty, Vidura, with a sorrowful heart, entered the palace, drawing deep breaths.[99] As regards Yuyutsu, he passed that night in his own abode. Afflicted with woe, he failed to obtain any joy at the panegyrics with which he was greeted. He passed the time, thinking of the terrible destruction of the Bharatas at one another's hands.' "[100]

SECTION XXX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'After all the Kaurava troops had been slain by the sons of Pāṇḍu on the field of battle, what did those survivors of my army, viz., Kritavarman and Kripa and the valiant son of Drona do? What also did the wicked-souled king Duryodhana then do?'[1-2]

"Sanjaya said,—'After the flight of the ladies of those high-souled Kshatriyas, and after the (Kaurava) camp had become entirely empty, the three car-warriors (thou hast mentioned) became filled with anxiety.[3] Hearing the shouts of the victorious sons of Pāṇḍu, and beholding the camp deserted towards the evening, those three warriors of our side, desirous of rescuing the king, and unable to stay on the field, proceeded towards the lake.[4] Yudhishthira, of virtuous soul, with his brothers in that battle, felt great joy and wandered over the field from desire of slaying Duryodhana.[5] Filled with wrath, the Pāṇḍavas, desirous of victory, searched for thy son. Though, however, they looked very carefully for him, they failed to discover the (Kuru) king.[6] Mace in hand, he had fled with great speed from the field of battle and penetrated into that lake, having, by the aid of his powers of illusion, solidified its waters.[7] When at last the animals of the Pāṇḍavas became very much tired, the latter proceeded to their camp

and rested there with their soldiers.[8] After the Pārthas had retired to their camp, Kripa and Drona's son and Kritavarman of the Sātwata race, slowly proceeded towards that lake.[9] Approaching the lake within which lay the king, they addressed that invincible ruler of men asleep within the water, saying,[10]—Arise, O king, and fight with us against Yudhishthira! Either obtaining victory enjoy the Earth, or, slain, proceed to heaven![11] The forces of the Pāndavas also, O Duryodhana, have all been slain by thee! Those amongst them that are yet alive have been exceedingly mangled![12] They will not be able, O monarch, to bear thy impetuosity, especially when thou shalt be protected by us! Arise, therefore, O Bhārata![13]—

"'Duryodhana said,—By good luck, I see you, ye bulls among men, come back with life from this destructive battle between the Pāndavas and the Kauravas![14] After we have rested awhile and dispelled our fatigue, we shall encounter the enemy and conquer him! Ye also are tired and I myself am exceedingly mangled! The army of the Pāndavas is swelling with might! For these reasons I do not like to fight now![15] These exhortations on your part, ye heroes, are not at all wonderful, for your hearts are noble! Your devotion also to me is great! This, however, is not the time for prowess![16] Resting for this one night, I shall, on the morrow, join you and fight with the foe! In this there is no doubt!—'[17]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed, the son of Drona replied unto the king, who was invincible in battle, saying,—Arise, O king, blessed be thou, we shall yet vanquish the foe![18] I swear by all my religious acts, by all the gifts I have made, by truth itself, and my silent meditations, O king, that I shall today slay the Somakas![19] Let me not obtain the delight resulting from the performance of sacrifices, that delight which is felt by all pious men, if this night passes away without my slaying the Pāndavas in battle![20] Without slaying all the Pānchālas, I will not, O lord, put off my armour! I tell thee this truly. Believe me, O ruler of men'[21]—While they were thus conversing, a number of hunters came there. Fatigued with the weight of meat they carried, they came there, not

of any set purpose, for slaking their thirst.[22] Those huntsmen, O lord, used every day, to procure, with great regard, basketsful of meat for Bhimasena, O king![23] As they sat concealed on the banks of that lake, those men heard every word of that conversation between Duryodhana and those warriors.[24] Finding the Kuru king unwilling to fight, those great bowmen, themselves desirous of battle, began to urge him greatly to adopt their counsels.[25] Seeing those car-warriors of the Kaurava army, and understanding that the king unwilling to fight was staying within the waters[26] and hearing that conversation between those heroes and their master staying within the depths of the lake,—indeed, O monarch, the huntsmen, clearly perceiving that it was Duryodhana who was staying within the lake, formed a resolution.[27] A little while before, the son of Pāndu, while searching for the king, had met those men and asked them the whereabouts of Duryodhana.[28] Recollecting the words that the son of Pāndu had said, those hunters, O king, whisperingly said unto one another,[29]—We will discover Duryodhana (unto the Pāndavas)! The son of Pāndu will then give us wealth! It is evident to us that the celebrated king Duryodhana is here![30] Let us then, all of us, proceed to the spot where king Yudhisthira is, for telling him that the vindictive Duryodhana is concealed within the waters of this lake![31] Let us also, all of us, inform that great bowman, viz., the intelligent Bhimasena, that the son of Dhritarāshtra is concealed here within the waters of this lake![32] Gratified with us, he will give us much wealth! What need of fatiguing ourselves, day after day, with procuring meat and weakening ourselves with such toil?[33]—Having said these words, those huntsmen, filled with joy and longing for wealth, took up their baskets of meat and proceeded towards the (Pāndava) camp.[34] Possessed of sure aim and skilled in smiting, the Pāndavas, O monarch, not seeing in battle Duryodhana who was then concealed, (were resting in their camp).[35] Desirous of reaching the end of that sinful wight's evil policy, they had despatched spies in all directions on the field of battle.[36] All the soldiers, however, that had been despatched on that mission, returned to the camp together and informed king Yudhishthira the just that

no trace could be found of king Duryodhana.[37] Hearing these words of the returned messengers, O bull of Bharata's race, king Yudhishthira became filled with great anxiety and began to breathe heavily.[38] While the Pāndavas, O bull of Bharata's race, were staying in such cheerlessness, those huntsmen, O lord, having come with great speed from the banks of that lake,[39] arrived at the camp, filled with joy at having discovered Duryodhana. Though forbidden, they still entered the camp, in the very sight of Bhimasena.[40] Having approached that mighty son of Pāndu, viz., Bhimasena, they represented everything unto him about what they had seen and heard.[41] Then Vrikodara, that scorcher of foes, O king, giving them much wealth, represented everything unto king Yudhishthira the the just, saying,[42]—Duryodhana, O king, hath been discovered by the huntsmen that supply me with meat! He, O king, for whom thou grievest, now lies within a lake whose waters have been solidified by him![43]—Hearing these agreeable words of Bhimasena, O monarch, Kunti's son Ajātaçatru became, with all his brothers, filled with joy.[44] Having learnt that the mighty bowman Duryodhana had penetrated into the waters of a lake, the king proceeded thither with great speed, with Janārdana at his head.[45] Then a tumultuous noise arose, O monarch, from among the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas all of whom were filled with joy.[46] The warriors uttered leonine roars, O bull of Bharata's race, and shouted loudly. All the Kshatriyas O king, proceeded with great speed towards that lake called *Dwaipāyana*.[47] The rejoicing Somakas all around loudly and repeatedly exclaimed,—*The sinful son of Dhritarāshtra has been found!*[48]—The noise made by the cars of those impetuous warriors who proceeded with great speed, became very loud, O monarch, and touched the heavens.[49] Although their animals were tired, all of them still proceeded with speed behind king Yudhishthira who was bent upon finding out Duryodhana.[50] Arjuna, and Bhimasena, and the two sons of Mādri by Pāndu, and the Pānchāla prince Dhrishtadyumna, and the unvanquished Cikshandin,[51] and Uttamaujas, and Yudhāmanyu, and the mighty car-warrior Sātyaki, and the (five) sons of Draupadi, and those amongst the Pānchālas, O king, that

were yet alive, and all the Pāndavas, and all their elephants, and foot-soldiers by hundreds upon hundreds, all proceeded with Yudhishthira.[52] Possessed of great valour, king Yudhishthira the just, O monarch, arrived at the lake known by the name of Dwaipāyana within which Duryodhana then was. Wide as the ocean itself, its aspect was agreeable and its waters were cool and transparent.[53] Solidifying the waters by means of his power of illusion,—by, indeed, a wonderful method,—thy son Duryodhana, O Bhārata, happened to be within that lake.[54] Indeed, within those waters lay, O lord, that king, armed with his mace, who, O ruler of men, could not be vanquished by any man![55] Staying within the waters of that lake, king Duryodhana heard that tumultuous noise (of the Pāndava army) which resembled the very roar of the clouds.[56] Yudhishthira then, O king, with his brothers, repaired to that lake from desire of slaying Duryodhana.[57] Raising a thick dust, the son of Pāndu caused the Earth to tremble with the sound of his car-wheels and the loud blare of his conch.[58] Hearing the noise made by the army of Yudhishthira, those great car-warriors, viz., Kritavarman and Kripa and the son of Drona, said these words unto the Kuru king:[59]—Filled with joy and longing for victory, the Pāndavas are coming hither! We will, therefore, leave this place. Let it be known to thee![60]—Hearing those words of these heroes endued with great activity, he answered them, saying,—So be it! —and remained (as before) within the waters, having, O lord, solidified them by his powers of illusion.[61] Those car-warriors headed by Kripa, filled with grief, took leave of the king, O monarch, and went away to a place far removed from that spot.[62] Having proceeded far, they beheld a banian, O sire, under whose shade they stopped, greatly tired, and exceedingly anxious about the king and indulging in such thoughts as these.[63]—The mighty son of Dhritarāshtra, having solidified the waters of the lake, lay stretched at the bottom. The Pāndavas have reached that spot, from desire of battle.[64] How will the battle take place? What will become of the king? How will the Pāndavas find out the Kuru king?[65]—Thinking of these things, O king, those heroes, viz., Kripa and

the others, liberated their horses from their cars and prepared to rest there for some time.' "[66]

SECTION XXXI.

"Sanjaya said,—'After those three car-warriors had left that spot, the Pāndavas arrived at that lake within which Duryodhana was resting himself.[1] Having reached the banks of the Dwaipāyana lake, O chief of Kuru's race, they beheld that receptacle of waters enchanted by thy son. Then Yudhishthira, addressing Vāsudeva, said,[2]—Behold, the son of Dhritarāshtra hath applied his power of illusion to these waters! Having enchanted the waters, he lieth within them. He can have now no fear (of injury) from man![3] Having invoked a celestial illusion, he is now within the waters! By an act of deception, that wight conversant with every deception hath sought this refuge! He shall not, however, escape me with life![4] Even if the wielder of the thunder-bolt himself aid him in battle, people, O Mādhava, shall yet behold him slain today![5]—

" 'Vāsudeva said,—With thy own powers of illusion, O Bhārata, destroy this illusion of Duryodhana who is an adept in it! One conversant with illusion should be slain with illusion! This is the truth, O Yudhishthira![6] With acts and means and applying thy power of illusion to these waters, slay, O chief of the Bharatas, this Suyodhana who is the very soul of illusion![7] With acts and means Indra himself slew the *Daityas* and the *Dānavas*! Vali himself was bound by that high-souled one, (viz., Upendra), with the aid of many acts and means![8] The great *Asura* Hiranyāksha, as also that other one, viz., Hiranyakaçipu, was slain by the aid of many acts and means. Without doubt, O king, Vritra also was slain by the aid of acts![9] Similarly was the *Rākshasa* Rāvana of Pulastya's race, with his relatives and followers, slain by Rāma! Relying upon acts and contrivances, do thou also display thy prowess![10] Those two ancient *Daityas*, viz., Tāraka, and Viprachitti of great energy, were in ancient times, O king, slain by the aid of acts and means![11] Similarly Vātāpi and Ilwala, and Triçiras, O lord, and the *Asuras* Sunda and

Upasunda, were all slain by the aid of means![12] Indra himself enjoys heaven by the aid of acts and means! Acts are very efficacious, O king, and nothing else is so, O Yudhishthira![13] *Daityas* and *Dānavas* and *Rākshasas* and kings have been slain by the aid of acts and means. Do thou take, therefore, the help of acts!—'[14]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed by Vāsudeva, Pāndu's son of rigid vows, smiling the while, addressed, O monarch, thy son of great might, who, O Bhārata, was then within the waters of that lake, saying,[15]—Why, O Suyodhana, hast thou done so these waters, after having caused all the Kshatriyas to perish and after having, O king, caused thy own race to be annihilated?[16] Why hast thou entered into this lake today, wishing to save thy own life? Arise, O king, and fight us, O Suyodhana![17] Where, O foremost of men, hath that pride and that sense of honor which thou hadst now gone, since, O king, thou hast enchanted these waters and art now lying within them?[18] All men speak of thee in assemblies as a hero. All that, however, is entirely untrue, I think, since thou art now concealed within these waters![19] Arise, O king, and fight, for thou art a Kshatriya born of a noble race! Thou art a *Kauraveya* in particular! Remember thy birth![20] How canst thou boast of thy birth in Kuru's race when thou concealest thyself within the depths of this lake, having fled away from battle in fear?[21] This is not the eternal duty of a Kshatriya, viz., staying away from battle! Flight from battle, O king, is not the practice of those that are honorable, nor does it lead to heaven![22] How is it that without having attained to the end of this war, inspired though thou wert with the desire of victory, thou stayest now within this lake, after having caused and witnessed the slaughter of thy sons and brothers and sires and relatives and friends and maternal uncles and kinsmen?[23-24] Ever boastful of thy courage, thou art, however, *not* a hero! Falsely dost thou describe thyself, O Bhārata, when thou sayst in the hearing of all men that thou art a hero, O thou of wicked understanding![25] They that are heroes never fly away at sight of foes! Or, tell us, O hero, about (the nature of) that courage in consequence of

which thou hast fled from battle![26] Arise, O prince, and fight, casting off thy fears! Having caused all thy troops and thy brothers to be slain, O Suyodhana,[27] thou shouldst not, if thou art inspired with righteous motives, think now of saving thy life! One like thee, O Suyodhana, that has adopted Kshatriya duties, should not act in this way![28] Relying upon Karna, as also upon Cakuni the son of Suvala, thou hadst regarded thyself immortal and hadst, from folly, failed to understand thy own self![29] Having perpetrated such grievous sin, fight now, O Bhārata! How is it that flight from battle recommends itself to one like thee? Surely, thou forgettest thyself![30] Where is that manliness of thine, O sire, and where, O Suyodhana, is that pride cherished by thee? Where hath that prowess of thine now gone and where also that swelling and great energy which thou hadst?[31] Where is that accomplishment of thine in weapons? Why dost thou lie within this lake now? Arise, O Bhārata, and fight, observing the duties of a Kshatriya![32] Either rule the wide Earth after vanquishing us, or sleep, O Bhārata, on the bare ground, slain by us![33] Even this is thy highest duty, as laid down by the illustrious Creator himself! Act as it has been laid down truly in the scriptures, and be a king, O great car-warrior![34]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus addressed, O monarch, by the intelligent son of Dharma, thy son answered him from within the waters in these words.[35]

" 'Duryodhana said,—It is not at all a matter of surprise, O king, that fear should enter the hearts of living creatures. As regards myself, however, O Bhārata, I have not fled from the field of battle actuated by the fear of life![36] My car was destroyed, my quivers were gone, and my *pārshni* drivers were killed! I was alone, without a single follower to stand by me in battle! It was for this that I desired a little rest![37] It was not for the sake of saving my life, it was not from fear, it was not from grief, O king, that I entered these waters! It was only in consequence of fatigue that I did so![38] Do thou, O son of Kunti, rest awhile with those that follow thee! Rising from this lake I will certainly fight all of you in battle![39]—

"'Yudhishthira said,—All of us have rested sufficiently. For a long while we were engaged in a search after thee! Rise then, even now, O Suyodhana, and give us battle![40] Either slaying the Pārthas in battle make this kingdom that swelleth with prosperity thy own, or slain by us in battle proceed to those regions that are reserved for heroes![41]—

"'Duryodhana said,—They amongst the Kurus, O son of Kuru's race, for whose sake I desired sovereignty, that is, those brothers of mine, O king, all lie dead on the field![42] I do not, again, like to enjoy any longer the Earth that is now shorn of wealth and reft of superior Kshatriyas, and that hath, therefore, become like a widowed lady![43] I, however, still hope to vanquish thee, O Yudhishthira, after curbing the pride, O bull of Bharata's race, of the Pānchālas and the Pāndus![44] There is, however, no longer any need for battle when Drona and Karna have been quieted and when our grandsire Bhishma hath been slain![45] This shorn Earth, O king, now exists for thee! What king is there that would like to rule a kingdom divested of friends and allies?[46] Having caused friends such as I had to be slain and even sons and brothers and sires, and seeing my kingdom wrested by ye, who is there like myself that would like to live?[47] Clad in deer-skins I would retire into the woods! I have no desire for kingdom, deprived as I am of friends and allies, O Bhārata![48] Reft almost entirely of friends and allies, of horses and elephants, this Earth exists for thee, O king! Do thou enjoy her now cheerfully![49] As for myself, clad in deer-skins, I shall go to the woods! Friendless as I am, I have no desire, O lord, for even life![50] Go, O monarch, and rule the Earth destitute of lords, without warriors, reft of wealth, and without citadels, as thou choosest![51]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing these words of poignant grief, the illustrious Yudhishthira addressed thy son Duryodhana who was still within those waters, saying,[52]—Do not utter such ravings of sorrow, O sire, from within the waters! I do not, like Cakuni, feel any compassion for thee, O king, for such words as these![53] Thou mayst now, O Suyodhana, be willing to make a gift of the Earth to me. I, however, do not

wish to rule the Earth thus given by thee![54] I cannot sinfully accept this Earth as a gift from thee! Acceptance of a gift, O king, is not the duty laid down for a Kshatriya![55] I do not, therefore, wish to have the wide Earth thus given away by thee! I shall, on the other hand, enjoy the Earth after vanquishing thee in battle![56] Thou art not now the lord of the Earth! Why then dost thou desire to make a gift of that over which thou hast no dominion? Why, O king, didst thou not then give us the Earth when we, observant of the rules of righteousness and desirous of the welfare of our race, had begged thee for our portion?[57] Having first refused the request of the mighty Krishna, why dost thou now desire to give away the Earth? What is this folly of thine?[58] What king is there who, assailed by foes, would wish to give away his kingdom? O son of Kuru's race, today thou art not competent to give away the Earth![59] Why then dost thou wish to make a gift of that over which thou hast no power? Vanquishing me in battle, rule thou this Earth![60] Thou didst not formerly agree to give me even that much of the Earth which would be covered by the point of a needle![61] How then, O monarch, dost thou make me a gift of the whole Earth? How is it that thou, who couldst not formerly abandon even that much of land which the point of a needle would cover, now wishest to abandon the whole Earth?[62] What fool is there that would, after having obtained such prosperity and ruled the entire Earth, think of making a gift of that Earth to his enemies?[63] Stupified by folly, thou seest not the impropriety of this! Although thou desirest to give away the Earth, thou shalt not yet escape me with life![64] Either rule the Earth after having vanquished us, or go to regions of blessedness after being slain by us![65] If both of us, that is, thyself and myself, be alive, then all creatures will remain in doubt as to whom the victory belongs![66] Thy life, O thou of limited foresight, now depends upon me! If I like, I can suffer thee to live, but thou art not capable of protecting thy own life![67] Thou hadst at one time especially endeavoured to burn us to death and to take our lives by means of snakes and other kinds of poison and by sinking us in water![68] We were also wronged by thee, O king, by the deprivation of our kingdom,

by the cruel words spoken by thee, and by thy maltreatment of Draupadi![69] For these reasons, O wretch, thy life must be taken! Rise, rise, and fight us! That will benefit thee![70]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'In this strain, O king, those heroes, viz., the Pāndavas, flushed with victory, repeatedly spoke there (rebuking and mocking Duryodhana).' "[71]

SECTION XXXII.

(Gadāyuddha Parva).

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Thus admonished (by his foes), how, indeed, did that scorcher of enemies, viz., my heroic and royal son, who was wrathful by nature, then behave?[1] He had never before listened to admonitions such as these! He had, again, been treated by all with the respect that is due to a king![2] He who had formerly grieved to stand in the shade of an umbrella, thinking he had taken another's shelter,—he who could not endure the very effulgence of the Sun in consequence of his sensitive pride, how could he endure these words of his foes?[3] Thou hast, with thy own eyes, O Sanjaya, seen the whole Earth, with even her *Mlecchas* and nomad tribes, depend upon his grace![4] Rebuked thus at that spot by the sons of Pāndu in particular, while lying concealed in such a solitary place after having been deprived of his followers and attendants, alas, what answer did he make unto the Pāndavas upon hearing such bitter and repeated taunts from his victorious enemies? Tell me everything, O Sanjaya, about it![5-6]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Thus rebuked, O monarch, by Yudhishthira and his brothers, thy royal son, lying within those waters, O king of kings, heard those bitter words and became very miserable. Breathing hot and long sighs repeatedly, the king waved his arms again and again, and setting his heart on battle, thus answered from within the waters, the royal son of Pāndu.[7-9]

" 'Duryodhana said,—Ye Pārthas, all of you are possessed of friends, of cars, and of animals! I, however, am alone, cheerless, without a car, and without an animal![10] Alone as

I am, and destitue of weapons, how can I venture to fight on foot, against numerous foes all well-armed and possessed of cars?[11] Do you, however, O Yudhishthira, fight me one at a time! It is not proper that one should in battle fight many endued with courage,[12] especially when that one is without armour, fatigued, afflicted with calamity, exceedingly mangled in his limbs, and destitute of both animals and troops![13] I do not entertain the least fear, O monarch, of either thee, or Vrikodara the son of Prithā, or Phālguna, or Vāsudeva, or all the Pānchālas,[14] or the twins, or Yuyudhāna, or all the other troops thou hast! Standing in battle, alone as I am, I shall resist all of you![15] The fame, O king, of all righteous men hath righteousness for its basis! I say all this to you, observant of both righteousness and fame![16] Rising (from this lake) I shall fight all of you in battle! Like the year that gradually meets with all the seasons, I shall meet with all of you in fight![17] Wait, ye Pāndavas! Like the Sun destroying by his energy the light of all the stars at dawn, I shall today, though weaponless and carless, destroy all of you possessed of cars and steeds![18] Today I shall free myself from the debt I owe to the many illustrious Kshatriyas (that have fallen for me), to Vālhika and Drona and Bhishma and the high-souled Karna,[19] to the heroic Jayadratha and Bhagadatta, to Calya the ruler of the Madras and Bhuriçravas,[20] to my sons, O chief of Bharata's race, and Cakuni the son of Suvala, to all my friends and well-wishers and kinsmen![21] Today I shall free myself from that debt by slaying thee with thy brothers!—Having said these words, the (Kuru) king ceased speaking.[22]

"'Yudhishthira said,—By good luck, O Suyodhana, thou knowest the duties of a Kshatriya! By good luck, O thou of mighty arms, thy heart inclineth to battle![23] By good luck, thou art a hero, O thou of Kuru's race, and, by good luck, thou art conversant with battle, since, single-handed, thou wishest to meet all of us in battle![24] Fight any one of us, taking whatever weapon thou likest! All of us will stand as spectators here![25] I grant thee also, O hero, this (other) wish of thy heart, viz., that if thou slayest any one of us,

thou shalt then become king! Otherwise, slain by us, go to heaven![26]—

"'Duryodhana said,—Brave as thou art, if thou grantest me the option of fighting only one of you, this mace that I hold in my hand is the weapon that I select![27] Let any one amongst you who thinks that he will be my match come forward and fight with me on foot, armed with mace![28] Many wonderful single combats have occurred on cars! Let this one great and wonderful combat with the mace happen today![29] Men (while fighting) desire to change weapons. Let the manner of the fight be changed today, with thy permission![30] O thou of mighty arms, I shall, with my mace, vanquish thee today with all thy younger brothers, as also all the Pānchālas and the Srinjayas and all the other troops thou still hast! I do not cherish the least fear, O Yudhishthira, of even Cakra himself!—[31]

"'Yudhishthira said,—Rise, rise, O son of Gāndhāri, and fight me, O Suyodhana! Alone as thou art, fight us, encountering one at a time, O thou of great might, armed with thy mace![32] Be a man, O son of Gāndhāri, and fight with good care! Today thou shalt have to lay down thy life even if Indra becomes thy ally![33]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'That tiger among men, viz., thy son, could not bear these words of Yudhishthira. He breathed long and heavy sighs from within the water like a mighty snake from within its hole.[34] Struck repeatedly with such wordy goads, he could not endure it at all, like a horse of high breed that cannot endure the whip.[35] Agitating the waters with great force, that valiant warrior rose like a prince of elephants from within the lake, breathing heavily in rage, and armed with his heavy mace that was endued with the strength of adamant and decked with gold.[36] Piercing the solidified waters, thy son rose, shouldering his mace made of iron, like the Sun himself scorching everything with his rays.[37] Endued with great strength, thy son, possessed of great intelligence, began to handle his heavy mace made of iron and equipt with a sling.[38] Beholding him armed with mace and resembling a crested mountain or the trident-wielding Rudra himself cast-

ing angry glances on living creatures, they observed that Bharata chief to shed an effulgence around like the scorching Sun himself in the sky. Indeed, all creatures then regarded that mighty-armed chastiser of foes, as he stood shouldering his mace after rising from the waters, to look like the Destroyer himself armed with his bludgeon.[39-41] Indeed, all the Pānchālas then saw thy royal son to look like the thunder-wielding Cakra or the trident-bearing Hara.[42] Seeing him, however, rise from within the waters, all the Pānchālas and thePāndavas began to rejoice and seize each other's hands.[43] Thy son Duryodhana regarded that action of the spectators to be an insult directed towards him. Rolling his eyes in wrath, and as if burning the Pāndavas with his glances,[44] and contracting his brow into three furrows, and repeatedly biting his nether lip, he addressed the Pāndavas with Keçava in their midst, saying,[45]—Ye Pāndavas, ye shall have to bear the fruit of these taunts! Slain by me today, ye shall, with the Pānchālas, have to repair to the abode of Yama!—'[46]

'Sanjaya continued,—'Rising from the water, thy son Duryodhana stood there, armed with mace, and with limbs bathed in blood.[47] Covered with blood and drenched with water, his body then looked like a mountain shedding water from within it.[48] As he stood armed with mace, the Pāndavas regarded him to be the angry son of Surya himself armed with his bludgeon called *Kinkara*.*[49] With voice deep as that of the clouds or of a bull roaring in joy, Duryodhana then, of great prowess, armed with his mace, summoned the Pārthas to battle.[50]

"'Duryodhana said,—Ye will have, O Yudhishthira, to encounter me one at a time! It is not proper that one hero should fight with many at the same time,[51] especially when that single warrior is divested of armour, fatigued with exertion, covered with water, exceedingly mangled in limbs, and without cars, animals, and troops![52] Let the gods in heaven behold me fight single-handed, destitute of every equipment and deprived of even armour and weapons![53] I shall certainly fight all of

* That is the name of Yama's bludgeon.—T.

you! Thou shalt be judge, as thou hast the necessary qualifications, of the propriety and impropriety of everything!—[54]

"'Yudhishthira said,—How is it, O Duryodhana, that thou hadst not this knowledge when many great car-warriors, uniting together, slew Abhimanyu in battle?[55] Kshatriya duties are exceedingly cruel, unmindful of all considerations, and without the least compassion! Otherwise, how could you slay Abhimanyu under those circumstances?[56] All of you were acquainted with righteousness! All of you were heroes! All of you were prepared to lay down your lives in battle! The high end declared for those that fight righteously is the attainment of the regions of Cakra![57] If this be your duty, viz., that one should never be slain by many, why is it then that Abhimanyu was slain by many acting in accord with thy counsels?[58] All creatures, when in difficulty, forget considerations of virtue. They then view the gates of the other world to be closed.[59] Put on armour, O hero, and bind thy locks! Take everything else, O Bhārata, of which thou standest in need![60] This another wish of thine, O hero, I grant thee in addition, viz., that if thou canst slay him amongst the five Pāndavas with whom thou wishest an encounter, thou shalt then be king! Otherwise, slain (by him), thou shalt proceed to heaven! Except thy life, O hero, tell us what boon we may grant thee!—'[61-62]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Then thy son, O king, cased his body with armour made of gold, and put on a beautiful head-gear adorned with pure gold.[63] Clad in bright armour of gold, he put on that head-gear. Indeed, O king, thy son then looked resplendent like a golden cliff.[64] Clad in mail, armed with mace, and accoutered with other equipments, thy son Duryodhana then, O king, standing on the field of battle, addressed all the Pāndavas, saying,[65]—Amongst you (five) brothers, let any one fight me, armed with mace! As regards myself, I am willing to fight either Sahadeva, or Bhima, or Nakula,[66] or Phālguna, or thee today, O bull of Bharata's race! Accorded an encounter, I will fight any one amongst you and will certainly gain the victory on the field![67] Today I will reach the end of these hostilities that is so difficult to reach, with

the aid, O tiger among men, of my mace wrapped with cloth of gold![68] I think there is none to be my match in an encounter with the mace! With my mace I shall slay all of you one after another![69] Amongst all of you there is no one who is competent to fight fairly with me! It is not proper for me to speak such words of pride with respect to my own self! I shall, however, make these words of mine true in your presence![70] Within this very hour, those words will become either true or false! Let him amongst you take up the mace that will fight with me!—' "[71]

SECTION XXXIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Whilst Duryodhana, O king, was repeatedly roaring in this strain, Vāsudeva, filled with wrath, said these words unto Yudhishthira.[1]—What rash words hast thou spoken, O king, to the effect that *Slaying one amongst us be thou king amongst the Kurus.*—If, indeed, O Yudhishthira, Duryodhana select thee for battle, or Arjuna, or Nakula, or Sahadeva, (what will be the consequence)?[2-3] From desire of slaying Bhimasena, O king, for these thirteen years hath Duryodhana practised with the mace upon a statue of iron![4] How then, O bull of Bharata's race, will our purpose be achieved? From compassion, O best of kings, thou hast acted with great rashness![5] I do not at this moment behold a match (for Duryodhana) except Pritha's son Vrikodara! His practice again, with the mace, is not so great![6] Thou hast, therefore, once more allowed a wretched game of chance to commence as that one in former days between thyself and Cakuni, O monarch![7] Bhima is possessed of might and prowess. King Suyodhana, however, is possessed of skill! In a contest between might and skill, he that is possessed of skill, O king, always prevails![8] Such a foe, O king, thou hast, by thy words, placed in a position of ease and comfort! Thou hast placed thy ownself, however, in a position of difficulty. We have, in consequence of this, been placed in great danger![9] Who is there that would abandon sovereignty within grasp, after having vanquished all his foes and when he hath only one foe to dispose

off and that one plunged in difficulties ?[10] I do not see that man in the world today, be he a god, who is competent to vanquish the mace-armed Duryodhana in battle ![11] Neither thou, nor Bhima, nor Nakula, nor Sahadeva, nor Phālguna, is capable of vanquishing Duryodhana in fair fight! King Duryodhana is possessed of great skill ![12] How then, O Bhārata, canst thou say unto such a foe words such as these, viz.,—*Fight, selecting the mace as the weapon, and if thou canst slay one amogst us, thou shalt then be king?*[13] If Duryodhana encounters Vrikodara amongst us wishing to fight fairly with him, even then our victory would be doubtful. Duryodhana is possessed of great might and great skill.[14] How couldst thou say unto him,—*Slaying only one amongst us be thou king?*—Without doubt, the offspring of Pāndu and Kunti are not destined to enjoy sovereignty ! They have been born for passing their lives in continued exile in the woods or in mendicancy ![15]—

" 'Bhimasena said,—O slayer of Madhu, do not, O delighter of the Yadus, give way to sorrow ! However difficult of reaching it, I shall today reach the end of these hostilities ![16] Without doubt, I shall slay Suyodhana in battle ! It appears, O Krishna, that the victory of Yudhishthira the just is certain ![17] This mace of mine is heavier than Duryodhana's by one and a half times ! Do not, O Mādhava, give way to grief ![18] I dare fight him, selecting the mace as the weapon ! Let all of you, O Janārddana, stand as spectators of the encounter ![19] What do you say of Suyodhana, I would fight with the three worlds including the very gods, even if they be armed with every kind of weapon ![20]—'

"Sanjaya continued,—'After Vrikodara had said these words, Vāsudeva, filled with joy, applauded him highly and said unto him,[21]—Relying on thee, O thou of mighty arms, king Yudhishthira the just will, without doubt, get back his own blazing prosperity after the slaughter of all his foes ![22] Thou hast slain all the sons of Dhritarāshtra in battle ! At thy hands many kings and princes and elephants have met with their fate ![23] The Kalingas, the Māgadha's, the Kuravas, the Westerners, and the Gāndhāras, have all been slain in dreadful

battle, O son of Pāndu![24] Slaying Duryodhana then, O son of Kunti, bestow the Earth with her oceans upon Yudhishthira the just, like Vishṇu (confering the sovereignty of the three worlds) upon the lord of Cachi![25] The wretched son of Dhritarāshtra, obtaining thee for a foe in battle, will, without doubt, meet with his fate! Thou wilt certainly accomplish thy vow by breaking his bones![26] Thou shouldst, however. O son of Prithā, always fight with care with the son of Dhritarāshtra! He is possessed of both skill and strength and always takes delight in battle![27]—Then Sātyaki, O king, applauded the son of Pāndu.[28] The Pānchālas and the Pāndavas, also, headed by king Yudhishthira the just, all applauded those words of Bhimasena.[29] Then Bhima of terrible might addressed Yudhishthira who was staying amid the Srinjayas like the blazing Sun himself, saying,[30]—Encountering this one in battle, I venture to fight with him! This wretch among men is not competent to vanquish me in fight![31] Today I shall vomit that wrath which hath been nursed in my bosom upon Suyodhana the son of Dhritarāshtra like Arjuna throwing fire on the forest of Khāndava![32] I shall today pluck out the dart, O son of Pāndu, that lay so long sticking to thy heart! Be happy, O king, after I shall have laid low this wretch with my mace![33] Today I shall recover, O sinless one, thy wreath of glory! Today Suyodhana shall abandon his life-breaths, his prosperity, and his kingdom![34] Today king Dhritarāshtra also, hearing of his son's slaughter, will remember all those wrongs (that he did unto us) arising from the suggestions of Cakuni![35] —Having said these words, that prince of Bharata's race, possessed of great energy, stood up for battle, like Cakra summoning Vritra (to an encounter).[36] Unable to endure that summons, thy son, of great energy, proceeded to the encounter, like one infuriate elephant proceeding to assail another.[37] The Pāndavas beheld thy son, as he came armed with mace, look like the crested mountain of Kailāsa.[38] Indeed, seeing that mighty son of thine standing alone like a prince of elephants separated from the herd, the Pāndavas became filled with delight.[39] Standing in battle like a very lion, Duryodhana had no fear, no alarm, no pain, no anxiety.[40] Behold-

ing him stand there with uplifted mace like the crested mountain of Kailāsa, Bhimasena, O monarch, addressed him, saying,[41]—Call to thy mind all those wrongs that king Dhritarāshtra and thyself have done unto us! Recollect what happened at Vāranāvata![42] Recollect how Draupadi, while in her season, was maltreated in the midst of the assembly and how king Yudhishthira was defeated at dice through Cakuni's suggestion![43] See now, O thou of wicked soul, the terrible consequence of those acts as also of the other wrongs that thou didst unto the innocent Pārthas![44] It is for thee that that illustrious chief of the Bharatas, the son of Gangā, the grandsire of us all, lieth now on a bed of arrows, struck down (by us)![45] Drona also hath been slain! Karna hath been slain! Calya of great valour hath been slain! Yonder Cakuni also, the root of these hostilities, hath been slain in battle![46] Thy heroic brothers, as also thy sons, with all thy troops, have been slain! Other kings also, possessed of heroism, and never retreating from battle, have been slain.[47] These and many other bulls among Kshatriyas, as also the *Prātikāmin*, that wretch who had seized the tresses of Draupadi, have been slain![48] Thou alone art still alive, thou exterminater of thy race, thou wretch among men! Thee also I shall today slay with my mace! Of this there is no doubt![49] Today, O king, I shall, in battle, quell all thy pride! I shall destroy also thy hope of sovereignty, O king, and pay off all thy misdeeds unto the sons of Pāndu![50]—

"'Duryodhana said,—What use is there of many words? Fight now with me! Today, O Vrikodara, I shall beat out of thee thy desire for battle![51] Why dost thou not behold me, O wretch, standing here for an encounter with the mace? Am I not armed with a formidable mace that looks like a cliff of Himavat?[52] What foe is there, O wretch, that would venture to vanquish me armed with this weapon? If it be a fair fight, Purandara himself, amongst the gods, is not competent for that end![53] For all those wicked deeds of mine to which thou hast referred, thou couldst not (hitherto) do me the slightest injury![54] By exercising my might, I caused ye to dwell in the woods, to serve in another's dwelling, to conceal yourselves in

disguises![55] Your friends and allies also have been slain. Our loss has been equal! If, then, my fall take place in this battle, that would be highly praiseworthy. Or, perhaps, Time will be the cause![56] Up to this day I have never been vanquished in fair fight on the field of battle! If ye vanquish me by deceit, your infamy will certainly last for ever! That act of yours will, without doubt, be unrighteous and infamous![57] Do not, O son of Kunti, roar fruitlessly in this way like autumnal clouds uncharged with water! Show all the strength thou hast in battle now![58]—Hearing these words of his, the Pāndavas with the Srinjayas, all inspired with desire of victory, applauded them highly.[59] Like men exciting an infuriate elephant with clapping of hands, all of them then gladdened king Duryodhana (with those praises and cheers).[60] The elephants that were there began to grunt and the steeds to neigh repeatedly. The weapons of the Pāndavas who were inspired with desire of victory blazed forth of their own accord.' "[61]

Section XXXIV.

"Sanjaya said,—'When that fierce battle, O monarch, was about to commence, and when all the high-souled Pāndavas had taken their seats,[1] indeed, having heard that that battle between those two heroes, both of whom were his disciples, was about to begin, Rāma, whose banner bore the device of the palmyra palm, and who owns the plough for his weapon, came to that spot.[2] Beholding him, the Pāndavas, with Keçava, filled with joy, advanced towards him, and receiving him, worshiped him with due rites.[3] Their worship over, they then, O king, said unto him these words,—Witness, O Rāma, the skill, in battle, of thy two disciples![4]—Rāma then, casting his eyes on Krishna and the Pāndavas, and looking at Duryodhana also of Kuru's race who was standing there armed with mace, said,[5]—Two and forty days have passed since I left home. I had set out under the constellation *Pushya* and have come back under *Çravana*. I am desirous, O Mādhava, of beholding this encounter with the mace between these two disciples of mine![6]—At that time the two heroes, viz., Duryodhana

and Vrikodara, looked resplendent as they stood on the field, both armed with maces.[7] King Yudhishthira, embracing him owning the plough for his weapon, duly enquired about his welfare and bade him welcome.[8] Those two great bowmen, viz., the two illustrious Krishnas, filled with joy, cheerfully saluted the hero having the plough for his weapon and embraced him.[9] Similarly the two sons of Mādri and the five sons of Draupadi saluted Rohini's son of great strength and stood (at a respectful distance).[10] Bhimasen of great strength and thy son, O monarch, both with uplifted maces (in their arms), worshipped Valadeva.[11] The other kings honored him by bidding him welcome, and then all of them said unto Rāma,—Witness this encounter, O thou of mighty arms!—Even thus those mighty car-warriors said unto the high-souled son of Rohini.[12] Endued with immeasurable energy Rāma, having embraced the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas, enquired after the welfare of all the (other) kings. Similarly, all of them, approaching, enquired after his welfare.[13] The hero of the plough, having in return saluted all the high-souled Kshatriyas, and having made courteous enquiries about each according to their respective years,[14] affectionately embraced Janārddana and Sātyaki. Smelling their heads, he enquired after their welfare.[15] Those two, in return, O king, duly worshipped him, their superior, joyfully, like Indra and Upendra worshipping Brahman the Lord of the celestials.[16] Then Dharma's son, O Bhārata, said these words unto that chastiser of foes, viz., the son of Rohini,—Behold, O Rāma, this formidable encounter between the two brothers![17]—Thus worshipped by those great car-warriors, the elder brother of Keçava, of mighty arms and great beauty, took his seat amongst them.[18] Clad in blue robes and possessed of a fair complexion, Rāma, as he sat amidst those kings, looked resplendent like the Moon in the firmament, encompassed by multitudes of stars.[19] Then that dreadful encounter, making the very hair to stand on end, took place between those two sons of thine, O king, for terminating the quarrel (that had raged for many years."[20]

Section XXXV.

Janamejaya said,—'On the eve of the great battle (between the Kurus and the Pāndus), the lord Rāma, with Keçava's leave, had gone away (from Dwārakā) accompanied by many of the Vrishnis.[1] He had said unto Keçava,—'I will render aid neither unto the son of Dhritarāshtra nor unto the sons of Pāndu, but will go whithersoever I like!'[2]—Having said these words, Rāma, that resister of foes, had gone away. It behoveth thee, O Brāhmana, to tell me everything about his return![3] Tell me in detail how Rāma came to that spot, and how he witnessed the battle. In my opinion thou art well-skilled in narration!"[4]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After the high-souled Pāndavas had taken up their post at Upaplavya, they despatched the slayer of Madhu to Dhritarāshtra's presence, for the object of peace, O mighty-armed one, and for the good of all creatures.[5] Having gone to Hastināpura and met Dhritarāshtra, Keçava spoke words of true and especially beneficial import.[6] The king, however, as I have told thee before, listened not to those counsels.[7] Unable to obtain peace, the mighty-armed Krishna, that foremost of men, came back, O monarch, to Upaplavya.[8] Dismissed by Dhritarāshtra's son, Krishna returned (to the Pāndava camp), and upon the failure of his mission, O tiger among kings, said these words unto the Pāndavas:[9]—'Urged by fate, the Kauravas are for disregarding my words! Come, ye sons of Pāndu, with me, (to the field of battle), setting out under the constellation *Pushya!*'[10]—After this, while the troops (of both sides) were being mustered and arrayed, the high-souled son of Rohini, that foremost of all persons endued with might, addressed his brother Krishna, saying,[11]—'O mighty-armed one, O slayer of Madhu, let us render assistance to the Kurus!'—Krishna, however, did not listen to those words of his.[12] With heart filled with rage (at this), that illustrious son of Yadu's race, viz., the wielder of the plough, then set out on a pilgrimage to the Saraswati.[13] Accompanied by all the Yādavas, he set out under the conjunction of the

asterism called *Maitra*. The Bhoja chief (Kritavarman), however, adopted the side of Duryodhana. Accompanied by Yuyudhāna, Vāsudeva adopted that of the Pāndavas.[14] After the heroic son of Rohini had set out under the constellation *Pushya*, the slayer of Madhu, placing the Pāndavas in his van, proceeded against the Kurus.[15] While proceeding, Rāma ordered his servants on the way, saying,—'Bring all things that are necessary for a pilgrimage, that is, every article of use! Bring the (sacred) fire that is at Dwārakā, and our priests.[16] Bring gold, silver, kine, robes, steeds, elephants, cars, mules, camels, and other draft cattle![17] Bring all these necessaries for a sojourn to the sacred waters, and proceed with great speed towards the Saraswati![18] Bring also some priests to be especially employed, and hundreds upon hundreds of foremost Brāhmanas!'—Having given these orders to the servants, the mighty Valadeva[19] set out on a pilgrimage at that time of great calamity to the Kurus. Setting out towards the Saraswati, he visited all the sacred places along her course,[20] accompanied by priests, friends, and many foremost of Brāhmanas, as also with cars and elephants and steeds and servants, O bull of Bharata's race, and with many vehicles drawn by kine and mules and camels.[21] Diverse kinds of necessaries of life were given away, in large measures and in diverse countries unto the weary and worn, children and the old, in response, O king, to solicitations.[22] Everywhere, O king, Brāhmanas were promptly gratified with whatever viands they desired.[23] At the command of Rohini's son, men, at different stages of the journey, stored food and drink in large quantities.[24] Costly garments and bedsteads and coverlets were given away for the gratification of Brāhmanas desirous of ease and comfort.[25] Whatever Brāhmana or Kshatriya solicited whatever thing, that, O Bhārata, was seen to be ungrudgingly given to him.[26] All who formed the party proceeded with great happiness and lived happily. The people (of Valarāma's train) gave away vehicles to persons desirous of making journeys, drinks to them that were thirsty, and savoury viands to them that were hungry, as also robes and ornaments, O bull of Bharata's race, to many![27-28] The road, O king, along which the party proceeded, looked res-

plendent, O hero, and was highly comfortable for all, and resembled heaven itself.[29] There were rejoicings everywhere upon it, and savoury viands were procurable everywhere. There were shops and stalls and diverse objects exposed for sale. The whole way was, besides, crowded with human beings. And it was adorned with various kinds of trees and creatures, and various kinds of gems.[30] The high-souled Valadeva, observant of rigid vows, gave away unto the Brāhmanas much wealth and plentiful sacrificial presents, O king, in diverse sacred spots.[31] That chief of Yadu's race also gave away thousands of milch kine covered with excellent cloths and having their horns cased in gold,[32] many steeds belonging to different countries, many vehicles, and many beautiful slaves.[33] Even thus did the high-souled Rāma give away wealth in diverse excellent *tirthas* on the Saraswati. In course of his wanderings, that hero of unrivalled power and magnanimous conduct at last came to Kurukshetra."[34]

Janamejaya said,—"Tell me, O foremost of men, the features, the origin, and the merits of the several *tirthas* on the Saraswati and the ordinances to be observed while sojourning there![35] Tell me these, in their order, O illustrious one! My curiosity is irrepressible, O foremost of all persons acquainted with *Brahma*!"[36]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The subject of the features and origin of all these *tirthas*, O king, is very large. I shall, however, describe them to thee. Listen to that sacred account in its entirety, O king![37] Accompanied by his priests and friends, Valadeva first proceeded to the *tirtha* called *Prabhāsa*. There, the Lord of the constellations (viz., Soma), who had been affected with phthisis, became freed from his curse. Regaining energy there, O king, he now illuminates the universe. And because that foremost of *tirthas* on Earth had formerly contributed to invest Soma with splendour (after he had lost it), it is, therefore, called *Prabhāsa*."[38-39]

Janamejaya said,—"For what reason was the adorable Soma afflicted with phthisis? How also did he bathe in that *tirtha*?[40] How did he, having bathed in that sacred water, regain his energy? Tell me all this in detail, O great *Muni*!"[41]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Daksha had seven and twenty daughters. O king! These he bestowed (in marriage) upon Soma.[42] Connected with the several constellations, those wives, O king, of Soma of auspicious deeds, served to help men in calculating time.[43] Possessed of large eyes, all of them were unrivalled in beauty in the world. In wealth of beauty, however, Rohini was the foremost of them all.[44] The adorable Soma took great delight in her. She became very agreeable to him, and, therefore, he enjoyed the pleasures of her company (exclusively).[45] In those days of yore, O monarch, Soma lived long with Rohini (exclusively). For this, those other wives of his, viz., they that were called the constellations, became displeased with that high-souled one.[46] Repairing speedily to their sire (Daksha), that Lord of creation, they said unto him,—'Soma doth not live with us! He always payeth court to Rohini only![47] All of us, therefore, O Lord of creatures, shall dwell by thy side, on regulated diet and observant of austere penances!'[48] Hearing these words of theirs, Daksha (saw Soma and) said unto him,—'Behave equally towards all thy wives! Let not a great sin stain thee![49] And Daksha then said unto those daughters of his,—'Go, all of ye, to the presence of Caçin. At my command, he, (otherwise called) Chāndramas, will behave equally towards all of ye![50] Dismissed by him, they then proceeded to the abode of him having cool rays. Still the adorable Soma, O lord of Earth, continued to act as before, for pleased with Rohini alone, he continued to live with her exclusively.[51] His other wives then once more came together to their sire and said unto him,—'Employed in serving thee, we will dwell in thy asylum! Soma does not live with us and is unmindful of thy commands![52] Hearing these words of theirs, Daksha once more said unto Soma,—'Behave equally towards all thy wives! Let me not, O Virochana, course thee![53] Disregarding, however, these words of Daksha, the adorable Soma continued to live with Rohini alone. At this, his other wives became once more angry.[54] Repairing to their sire, they bowed unto him by lowering their heads, and said,—'Soma doth not live with us! Give us thy protection![55] The adorable Chandramas always

lives with Rohini exclusively! He sets no importance to thy words, and does not wish to show us any affection! Therefore, save us so that Soma may accept us all!'[56] Hearing these words, the adorable Daksha, O king, became angry and in consequence thereof hurled the curse of phthisis upon Soma. Thus did that disease overtake the Lord of the stars.[57] Afflicted with phthisis, Caçin began to waste away day by day. He made many endeavours for freeing himself from that disease[58] by performing diverse sacrifices, O monarch! The maker of night, however, could not free himself from that curse. On the other hand, he continued to endure waste and emaciation.[59] In consequence, however, of the wasting of Soma, the deciduous herbs failed to grow. Their juices dried up and they became tasteless, and all of them became deprived of their virtues.[60] And in consequence of this decadence of the deciduous herbs, living creatures also began to decay. Indeed, owing to the wasting of Soma, all creatures began to be emaciated.[61] Then all the celestials, coming to Soma, O king, asked him, saying,—'Why is it that thy form is not so beautiful and resplendent (as before)? Tell us the reason whence hath proceeded this great calamity![62] Hearing thy answer, we shall do what is needed for dispelling thy fear!' Thus addressed, the god having the hare for his mark, replied unto them and informed them of the cause of the curse and of the phthisis with which he was afflicted.[63] The gods then, having heard those words, repaired to Daksha and said,—'Be gratified, O adorable one, with Soma! Let this curse of thine be withdrawn![64] Chandramas is very emaciated! Only a small portion of his may be seen! In consequence of his wasting, O Lord of the celestials, all creatures also are wasting! Creepers and herbs of diverse kinds are also wasting![65] In their waste we ourselves also are suffering emaciation! Without us, what will this universe be? Knowing this, O master of the universe, it behoveth thee to be gratified (with Soma)![66] —Thus addressed, (Daksha) that Lord of creatures, said these words unto the celestials:—'It is impossible to make my words become otherwise![67] By some contrivance, however, ye blessed ones, my words may be withdrawn! Let Caçin

always behave equally towards all his wives!'[68] Having bathed also in that foremost of *tirthas* on the Saraswati, the god having the hare for his mark shall, ye gods, grow once more! These words of mine are true!'[69] For half the month Soma shall wane every day, and for half the month (following) he will wax every day! These words of mine are true!'[70] Proceeding to the western Ocean at the spot where the Saraswati mingles with the Ocean, that vast receptable of waters, let him adore that God of gods (Mahādeva) there! He will then regain his form and beauty!'[71] At this command of the (celestial) *Rishi* (Daksha), Soma then proceeded to the Saraswati. He arrived at that foremost of *tirthas* called *Prabhāsa* belonging to the Saraswati.[72] Bathing there on the day of the new moon, that god of great energy and great effulgence got back his cool rays and continued once more to illumine the worlds.[73] All the creatures also, O monarch, having repaired to Prabhāsa, returned with Soma amongst them to the place where Daksha was.[74] (Receiving them duly) that Lord of creatures then dismissed them. Pleased with Soma, the adorable Daksha once more addressed him, saying,[75]—'Do not, O son, disregard women, and never disregard Brāhmanas! Go, and attentively obey my commands!'[76] Dismissed by him, Soma came back to his own abode. All creatures, filled with joy, continued to live as before.[77] I have thus told thee everything about how the maker of the night had been cursed, and how also Prabhāsa became the foremost of all *tirthas*.[78] On every securring day of the new moon, O monarch, the god having the hare for his mark bathes in the excellent *tirtha* of Prabhāsa and regains his form and beauty.[79] It is for this reason, O lord of Earth, that that *tirtha* is known by the name of *Prabhāsa*, since bathing there, Chandramas regained his great (*Prabhā*) effulgence.[80] After this, the mighty Valadeva of undecaying glory proceeded to *Chamasodbheda*, that is to that *tirtha* which is called by that name.[81] Giving away many costly gifts at that place, the hero having the plough for his weapon passed one night there and performed his ablutions duly.[82] The elder brother of Keçava then proceeded quickly to *Udapāna*. Although the Saraswati seems to be lost there, yet persons crowned with

ascetic success, in consequence of their obtaining great merits and great blessedness at that spot, and owing also to the coolness of the herbs and of the land there, know that the river has an invisible current, O monarch, through the bowels of the Earth there."[33-34]

SECTION XXXVI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Valadeva, (as already said) proceeded next to the *tirtha* called Udapāna in the Saraswati, that had formerly been the residence, O king, of the illustrious (ascetic) Trita.[1] Having given away much wealth and worshipped the Brāhmanas, the hero having the plough for his weapon bathed there and became filled with joy.[2] Devoted to righteousness, the great ascetic Trita had lived there. While in a hole, that high-souled one had drunk the *Soma* juice.[3] His two brothers, dashing him down into that pit, had returned to their home. That foremost of Brāhmanas, viz., Trita, had thereupon cursed them both."[4]

Janamejaya said,—"What is the origin of Udapāna? How did the great ascetic (Trita) fall into a pit there? Why was that foremost of Brāhmanas thrown into that pit by his brothers?[5] How did his brothers, after throwing him into that hole, return to their home? How did Trita perform his sacrifice, and how did he drink *Soma*? Tell me all this, O Brāhmana, if thou thinkest that I can listen to it without impropriety!"[6]

Vaicampāyana continued,—"In a former *Yuga*, O king, there were three brothers that were ascetics. They were called Ekata Dwita, and Trita, and all three were endued with effulgence like that of the Sun.[7] They were like Lords of the creation and were blessed with children. Utterers of *Brahma*, they had, by their penances, acquired the privilege of attaining to the regions of Brahman (after death).[8] With their penances, vows, and self-restraint, their sire Gautama, who was ever devoted to virtue, became highly and always pleased with them.[9] Having obtained great joy in consequence of his sons, the adorable Gautama, after passing a long life here,

went at last to the region (in the other world) that was fit for him.[10] Those kings, however, O monarch, that had been the *Yajamānas* of Gautama, continued to worship Gautama's sons after the sire had proceeded to heaven.[11] Amongst them, however, Trita, by his acts and study (of the *Vedas*), O king, became the foremost, even like his sire Gautama.[12] Then all the highly blessed ascetics, characterised by righteousness, began to worship Trita as they had worshiped his sire Gautama before him.[13] Once upon a time, the two brothers Etaka and Dwita thought of performing a sacrifice and became anxious for wealth.[14] The plan they formed, O scorcher of foes, was to take Trita with them, and calling upon all their *Yajamānas* and collecting the needful number of animals,[15] they would joyfully drink the *Soma* juice and acquire the great merits of sacrifice. The three brothers then, O monarch, did as settled.[16] Calling upon all their *Yajamānas* for (obtaining) animals, and assisting them in their sacrifices and receiving a large number of animals from them, and having duly accepted them in gift in consequence of those priestly services which they rendered, those high-souled and great *Rishis* came towards the East.[17-18] Trita, O king, with a cheerful heart was walking before them. Ekata and Dwita were in his rear, bringing up the animals.[19] Beholding that large herd of animals, they began to reflect as to how they two could appropriate that property without giving a share unto Trita.[20] Hear, O king, what those two sinful wretches, viz., Ekata and Dwita, said while conversing with each other![21] They said,—'Trita is skilled in assisting at sacrifices. Trita is devoted to the *Vedas*. Trita is capable of earning many other kine.[22] Let us two, therefore, go away, taking the kine with us! Let Trita go whithersoever he chooses, without being in our company!'[23] As they proceeded, night came upon them on the way. They then saw a wolf before them. Not far from that spot was a deep hole on the bank of the Saraswati.[24] Trita, who was in advance of his brothers, seeing the wolf, ran in fright and fell into that hole.[25] That hole was fathomless and terrible and capable of inspiring all creatures with fear. Then Trita, O king, that best of ascetics, from within that hole,

began to utter wails of woe. His two brothers heard his cries.[26] Understanding that he had fallen into a pit, his brothers Ekata and Dwita, moved by fear of the wolf as also by temptation, went on, deserting their brother.[27] Thus deserted by his two brothers who were moved by the temptation of appropriating those animals, the great ascetic Trita, O king, while within that lonely well covered with dust[28] and herbs and creepers, thought himself plunged, O chief of the Bharatas, into hell itself like a sinful wretch.[29] He feared to die inasmuch as he had not earned the merit of drinking the *Soma* juice. Possessed of great wisdom, he began to reflect with the aid of his intelligence as to how he could succeed in drinking *Soma* even there.[30] While thinking on that subject, the great ascetic, standing in that pit, beheld a creeper hanging down into it in course of its growth.[31] Although the pit was dry, the sage imagined the existence of water and of sacrificial fires there. Constituting himself the *Hotri* (in imagination),[32] the great ascetic imagined the creeper he saw to be the *Soma* plant. He then mentally uttered the *Richs*, the *Yayushes* and the *Sāmans* (that were neccessary for the performance of a sacrifice).*[33] The pebbles (lying at the bottom of the well) Trita converted into grains of sugar (in imagination). He then, O king, (mentally) performed his ablutions. He conceived the water (he had imagined) to be clarified butter.[34] He allotted to the celestials their respective shares (of those sacrificial offerings). Having next (mentally) drunk *Soma*, he began to utter a loud noise. Those sounds, O king, first uttered by the sacrificing *Rishi*, penetrated into heaven, and Trita completed that sacrifice after the manner laid down by utterers of *Brahma*.[35] During the progress of that sacrifice of the high-souled Trita, the whole region of the celestials became agitated. None knew, however, the cause. Vrihaspati (the preceptor of the gods) heard that loud noise (made by Trita).[36] The priest of the celestials said unto the latter,—Trita is performing a sacrifice. We must go there, ye gods![37] Endued with great ascetic merit, if angry, he is competent to

* Hymns from the three *Vedas*.—T.

create other gods![38]—Hearing these words of Vrihaspati, all the gods, united together, repaired to that spot where the sacrifice of Trita was going on.[39] Having proceeded to that spot, the gods beheld the high-souled Trita installed in the performance of his sacrifice.[40] Beholding that high-souled one resplendent with beauty, the gods addressed him, saying,—'We have come hither for our shares (in thy offerings)![41]—The *Rishi* said unto them,—'Behold me, ye denizens of heaven, fallen into this terrible well, almost deprived of my senses![42] Then Trita, O monarch, duly gave unto them their shares with proper *mantras*. The gods took them and became very glad.[43] Having duly obtained their allotted shares, the denizens of heaven, gratified with him, gave him such boons as he desired.[44] The boon, however, that he solicited was that the gods should relieve him from his distressful situation (in the well).[45] He also said,—'Let him that bathes in this well, have the end that is attained by persons that have drunk *Soma*![46] At these words, O king, the Saraswati with her waves appeared within that well. Raised aloft by her, Trita came up and worshipped the denizens of heaven.[47] The gods then said unto him,—'Be it as thou wishest!' All of them then, O king, went to the place whence they had come, and Trita, filled with joy, proceeded to his own abode.[48] Meeting with those two *Rishis*, viz., his brothers, he became enraged with them. Possessed of great ascetic merit, he said certain harsh words unto them and cursed them, saying,[49]—'Since, moved by covetousness, ye ran away, deserting me, therefore, ye shall become fierce wolves with sharp teeth and range the forest, cursed by me in consequence of that sinful act of yours![50] The offspring also that ye shall have will consist of leopards and bears and apes!' After Trita had said these words, O monarch, his two brothers were seen to be very soon transformed into those shapes in consequence of the words of that truthful sage.[51] Of immeasurable prowess, Valadeva touched the waters of Udapāna. And he gave away diverse kinds of wealth there and worshipped many Brāhmanas.[52] Beholding Udapāna and applauding it repeatedly, Valadeva next proceeded to Vinaçana which also was on the Saraswati."[53]

Section XXXVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Then Valadeva, O king, proceeded to Vinaçana where the Saraswati hath become invisible in consequence of her contempt for Cudras and Ābhiras.[1] And since the Saraswati, in consequence of such contempt, is lost at that spot, the *Rishis*, for that reason, O chief of the Bharatas, always name the place as *Vinaçana*.[2] Having bathed in that *tirtha* of the Saraswati, the mighty Valadeva then proceeded to Subhumika situate on the excellent bank of the same river.[3] There many fair-complexioned *Apsarās*, of beautiful faces, are always engaged in sports of a pure character without any intermission.[4] The gods and the *Gandharvas*, every month, O ruler of men, repair to that sacred *tirtha* which is the resort of Brahman himself.[5] The *Gandharvas* and diverse tribes of *Apsaras* are to be seen there, O king, assembled together and passing the time as happily as they like.[6] There the gods and the *Pitris*, sport in joy, with sacred and auspicious flowers repeatedly rained over them,[7] and all the creepers also were adorned with flowery loads. And because, O king, that spot is the beautiful sporting ground of those *Apsaras*, therefore is that *tirtha* on the excellent bank of the Saraswati called *Subhumika*.[8] Valadeva of Madhu's race, having bathed in that *tirtha* and given away much wealth unto the Brāhmanas, heard the sound of those celestial songs and musical instruments.[9] He also saw there many shadows of gods, *Gandharvas*, and *Rākshasas*. The son of Rohini then proceeded to the *tirtha* of the *Gandharvas*.[10] There many *Gandharvas*, headed by Viçwāvasu and possessed of ascetic merit, pass their time in dance and song of the most charming kind.[11] Giving away diverse kinds of wealth unto the Brāhmanas, as also goats and sheep and kine and mules and camels and gold and silver,[12] and feeding many Brāhmanas and gratifying them with many costly gifts that were desired by them, Valadeva of Madhu's race proceeded thence, accompanied by many Brāhmanas and eulogised by them.[13] Leaving that *tirtha* resorted to by *Gandharvas*, that mighty-armed

chastiser of foes, having but one ear-ring, then proceeded to the famous *tirtha* called *Gargaçrota*.[14] There, in that sacred *tirtha* of the Saraswati, the illustrious Garga of venerable years and soul cleansed by ascetic penances, O Janamejaya, had acquired a knowledge of Time and its course, of the deviations of luminous bodies (in the firmament), and of all auspicious and inauspicious portents.[15-16] That *tirtha*, for this reason, came to be called after his name as *Gargaçrota*. There, O king, highly blessed *Rishis* of excellent vows always waited upon Garga, O lord, for obtaining a knowledge of Time.[17]* Smeared with white sandal-paste O king, Valadeva, repairing to that *tirtha*, duly gave away wealth unto many ascetics of cleansed souls.[18] Having given also many kinds of costly viands unto the Brāhmanas, that illustrious one attired in blue robes then proceeded to the *tirtha* called Cankha.[19] There, on the bank of the Saraswati, that mighty hero having the palmyra on his banner beheld a gigantic tree, called *Mahāçankha*, tall as Meru, looking like the White-mountain, and resorted to by many *Rishis*.[20] There dwell *Yakshas*, and *Vidyādharas*, and *Rākshasas* of immeasurable energy, and *Piçāchas* of immeasurable might, and *Siddhas*, numbering in thousands.[21] All of them, abandoning other kinds of food, observe vows and regulations, and take at due seasons the fruits of that lord of the forest for their sustenance and wander in separate bands, unseen by men, O foremost of human beings! That monarch of the forest, O king, is known for this throughout the world![22-23] That tree is the cause of this celebrated and sacred *tirtha* in the Saraswati. Having given away in that *tirtha* many milch cows, and vessels of copper and iron, and diverse kinds of other vessels, that tiger of Yadu's race,[24] viz., Valadeva, having the plough for his weapon, worshipped the Brāhmanas and was worshipped by them in return. He then, O king, proceeded to the Dwaita lake.[25] Arrived there, Vala saw diverse kinds of ascetics in diverse kinds of attire. Bath-

---

* Garga was a celebrated astronomer and astrologer of ancient India. Certain horoscopes left by him have furnished Oriental scholars with important landmarks on the subject of Hindoo chronology.—T

ing in its waters, he worshipped the Brāhmanas.[26] Having given away unto the Brāhmanas diverse articles of enjoyment in profusion, Valadeva then, O king, proceeded along the southern bank of the Saraswati.[27] The mighty armed and illustrious Rāma of virtuous soul and unfading glory then proceeded to the *tirtha* called *Nāgadhanwāna.*[28] Swarming with numerous snakes, O monarch, it was the abode of Vāsuki of great splendour, the king of the snakes. There four and ten thousand *Rishis* also had their permanent home.[29] The celestials, having come there (in days of yore), had, according to due rites, installed the excellent snake Vāsuki as king of all the snakes. There is no fear of snakes in that place, O thou of Kuru's race![30] Duly giving away many valuables there unto the Brāhmanas, Valadeva then set out with face towards the east and reached, one after another hundreds and thousands of famous *tirthas* that occurred at every step.[31] Bathing in all those *tirthas*, and observing fasts and other vows as directed by the *Rishis*, and giving away wealth in profusion,[32] and saluting all the ascetics who had taken up their residence there, Valadeva once more set out, along the way that those ascetics pointed out to him, for reaching that spot where the Saraswati[33] turns in an eastward direction, like torrents of rain bent by the action of the wind. The river took that course for beholding the high-souled *Rishis* dwelling in the forest of Naimisha.[34] Always smeared with white sandal-paste, Vala, having the plough for his weapon, beholding that foremost of rivers change her course, became, O king, filled with wonder."[35]

Janamejaya said,—"Why, O Brāhmana, did the Saraswati bend her course there in an easterly direction? O best of *Addharyus*, it behoveth thee to tell me everything relating to this![36] For what reason was that delighter of the Yadus filled with wonder? Why, indeed, did that foremost of rivers thus alter her course?"[37]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Formerly, in the *Krita* age, O king, the ascetics dwelling in Naimisha were engaged in a grand sacrifice extending for twelve years.[38] Many were the *Rishis*, O king, that came to that sacrifice. Passing their days, according to due rites, in the performance of that sacrifice, these

highly blessed ones,[39] after the completion of that twelve years, sacrifice at Naimisha, set out in large numbers for sojurning to *tirthas*.[40] In consequence of the number of the *Rishis*, O king, the *tirthas* on the southern banks of the Saraswati all looked like towns and cities.[41] Those foremost of Brāhmanas, O tiger among men, in consequence of their eagerness for enjoying the merits of *tirthas*, took up their abodes on the bank of the river up to the site of Samantapanchaka.[42] The whole region seemed to resound with the loud *Vedic* recitations of those *Rishis* of cleansed souls, all employed in pouring libations on sacrificial fires.[43] That foremost of rivers looked exceedingly beautiful with those blazing *homa* fires all around, over which those high-souled ascetics poured libations of clarified butter.[44] *Vālikhillyas* and *Açmakuttas*, *Dantolukhalinas*, *Samprakshyānas* and other ascetics,[45]* as also those that subsisted on air, and those that lived on water, and those that lived on dry leaves of trees, and diverse others that were observant of diverse kinds of vows, and those that foreswore beds for the bare and hard earth,[46] all came to that spot in the vicinity of the Saraswati. And they made that foremost of rivers exceedingly beautiful, like the celestials beautifying (with their presence) the heavenly stream called Mandākini.[47] Hundreds upon hundreds of *Rishis*, all given to the observance of sacrifices, came thither. Those practicers of high vows, however, failed to find sufficient room on the banks of the Saraswati.[48] Measuring small plots of land with their sacred threads, they performed their *Agnihotras* and diverse other rites.[49] The river Saraswati beheld, O monarch, that large body of *Rishis* penetrated with despair and plunged into anxiety (for want of a broad *thirtha* wherein to perform their rites. For their sake,[50] that foremost of streams came there, having made many abodes for herself in that spot, through kindness for those *Rishis* of

---

* The first were diminutive little creatures, not bigger than the thumb; the second were probably those that husked their corn with only two pieces of stone without using the usual convenient appliances; the third were persons that lived on raw corn, using their teeth for husking it. I have no idea of who the fourth were.—T.

sacred penances, O Janamejaya![51] Having thus, O monarch, turned her course for their sake, the Saraswati, that foremost of rivers, once more flowed in a westerly direction,[52] as if she said,—'I must go hence, having prevented the arrival of these *Rishis* from becoming futile!' This wonderful feat, O king, was accomplished there by that great river.[53] Even thus those receptacles of water, O king, were formed in Naimisha. There, at Kurukshetra, O foremost one of Kuru's race, do thou perform grand sacrifices and rites![54] Beholding those many receptacles of water and seeing that foremost of rivers turn her course, wonder filled the heart of the high-souled Rāma.[55] Bathing in those *tirthas* duly and giving away wealth and diverse other articles of enjoyment unto the Brāhmanas, that delighter of Yadu's race[56] also gave away diverse kinds of food and diverse desirable articles unto them. Worshipped by those regenerate ones, Vala, O king, then set out from that foremost of all *tirthas* on the Saraswati, (viz., *Sapta-Sāraswat*). Numerous feathery creatures have their home there. And it abounded with *Vadari*, *Inguda*, *Kāçmaryya*, *Plaksha*, *Açwattha*, *Vibhitaka*, *Kakkola*, *Palāça*, *Karira*, *Pilu*, and diverse other kinds of trees that grow on the banks of the Saraswati.[57-59] And it was adorned with forests of *Karushakas*, *Vilwas*, and *Amrātakas*, and *Atimuktas* and *Kāshandas* and *Pārijātas*.[60] Agreeable to the sight and most charming, it abounded with forests of plaintains. And it was resorted to by diverse tribes of ascetics, some living on air, some on water, some on fruit, some on leaves, some on raw grain which they husked with the aid only of stones, and some that were called *Vāneyas*. And it resounded with the chaunting of the *Vedas*, and teemed with diverse kinds of animals.[61-62] And it was the favourite abode of men without malice and devoted to righteousness. Valadeva, having the plough for his weapon, arrived at that *tirtha*, called the *Sapta-Sāraswat*, where the great ascetic Mankanaka had performed his penances and became crowned with success."[63]

Section XXXVIII.

Janamejaya said,—"Why was that *tirtha* called *Sapta-Sāraswat*? Who was the ascetic Mankanaka? How did that adorable one become crowned with success? What were his vows and observances?[1] In whose race was he born? What books did that best of regenerate ones study? I desire to hear all this, O foremost of regenerate ones!"[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"O king, the seven Saraswatis cover this Universe! Whithersoever the Saraswati was summoned by persons of great energy, thither she made her appearance.[3] These are the seven forms of the Saraswati, viz.; Suprabhā, Kānchanākshi, Viçālā, Manoramā. Oghavati, Surenu, and Vimalodakā.[4] The Supreme Grandsire had at one time performed a great sacrifice. While that sacrifice was in course of performance on the ground selected, many regenerate ones crowned with ascetic success came there.[5] The spot resounded with the recitation of sacred hymns and the chaunting of the *Vedas*. In the matter of those sacrificial rites, the very gods lost their coolness, (so grand were the preparations).[6] There, O monarch, while the Grandsire was installed in the sacrifice and was performing the grand ceremony capable of bestowing prosperity and every wish,[7] many notable ones conversant with righteousness and profit were present. As soon as they thought of the articles, of which they stood in need, these, O monarch, immediately appeared before the regenerate ones (among the guests) that came there.[8] The *Gandharvas* sang and the diverse tribes of *Apsaras* danced. And they played upon many celestial instruments for all the time.[9] The wealth of provisions procured in that sacrifice satisfied the very gods. What shall I say then of human beings? The very celestials became filled with wonder![10] During the continuance of that sacrifice at Pushkara and in the presence of the Grandsire, the *Rishis*, O king, said,—'This sacrifice cannot be said to possess high attributes,[11] since that foremost of rivers, viz, Saraswati, is not to be seen here!'—Hearing these words, the divine Brahman cheerfully thought of Sara-

swati.[12] Summoned at Pushkara by the Grandsire engaged in the performance of a sacrifice, Saraswati, O king, appeared there, under the name of Suprabhā.[13] Beholding Saraswati quickly pay that regard to the Grandsire, the *Munis* esteemed that sacrifice highly.[14] Even thus that foremost of rivers, viz., the Saraswati, made her appearance at Pushkara for the sake of the Grandsire and for gratifying the *Munis*.[15] (At another time), O king, many *Munis*, mustering together at Naimisha, took up their residence there. Delightful disquisitions occurred among them, O king, about the *Vedas*.[16] There where those *Munis*, conversant with diverse scriptures, took up their abode, there they thought of the Saraswati.[17] Thus thought of, O monarch, by those *Rishis* performing a sacrifice, the highly blessed and sacred Saraswati, for rendering assistance, O king, to those high-souled *Munis* assembled together, made her appearance at Naimisha and came to be called Kānchanākshi.[18-19] That foremost of rivers, worshipped by all, thus came there, O Bhārata! While (king) Gaya was engaged in the performance of a great sacrifice at Gayā,[20] the foremost of rivers, Saraswati, summoned at Gaya's sacrifice, (made her appearance there). The *Rishis* of rigid vows that were there, named this form of hers at Gayā as Viçālā.[21] That river of swift current flows from the sides of Himavat. Ouddālaka had also, O Bhārata, performed a sacrifice.[22] A large concourse of *Munis* had been gathered there. It was on that sacred region, viz., the northern part of Koçala, O king, that that sacrifice of the high-souled Ouddālaka was performed.[23] Before Ouddālaka began his sacrifice, he had thought of the Saraswati. That foremost of rivers came to that region for the sake of those *Rishis*.[24] Worshipped by all those *Munis* clad in barks and deer-skins, she became known by the name of Manoramā as those *Rishis* mentally called her.[25] While, again, the high-souled Kuru was engaged in a sacrifice at Kurukshetra, that foremost of rivers, the highly blessed Saraswati, made her appearance there.[26] Summoned, O monarch, by the high-souled Vaçishtha (who assisted Kuru in his sacrifice), the Saraswati, full of celestial water, appeared at Kurukshetra under the name of Oghavati.[27] Daksha at one time performed

a sacrifice at the source of Gangā. The Saraswati appeared there under the name of the fast flowing Surenu.[28]* Once again, while Brahman was engaged in a sacrifice on the sacred forest of the Himavat mountains, the adorable Saraswati, summoned (by him), appeared there.[29] All these seven forms then came and joined together in that *tirtha* where Valadeva came. And because the seven mingled together at that spot, therefore is that *tirtha* known on Earth by the name of *Sapta-saraswati.*[30] Thus have I told thee of the seven Saraswatis, according to their names. I have also told thee of the sacred *tirtha* called *Sapta-sāraswat.*[31] Listen now to a great feat of Mankanaka, who had from his youth led the life of a *Brahmachārin.* While employed in performing his ablutions in the river,[32] he beheld (one day), O Bhārata, a woman of faultless limbs and fair brows, bathing in the river at will, her person uncovered. At this sight, O monarch, the vital seed of the *Rishi* fell unto the Saraswati.[33] The great ascetic took it up and placed it within his earthen pot. Kept within that vessel, the fluid became divided into seven parts.[34] From those seven portions were born seven *Rishis*, from whom sprung the (nine and forty) *Maruts.* The seven *Rishis* were named Vāyuvega, Vāyuhan, Vāyumandala,[35] Vāyujāta, Vāyuretas, and Vāyuchakra of great energy. Thus were born these progenitors of the diverse *Maruts.*[36] Hear now a more wonderful thing, O king, a fact exceedingly marvellous on Earth, about the conduct of that great *Rishi*, which is well known in the three worlds.[37] In days of yore, after Mankanaka had become crowned with success, O king, his hand, on one occasion, became pierced with a *Kuçā* blade. Thereupon a vegetable juice came out of the wound (and not red blood).[38] Seeing that vegetable juice, the *Rishi* became filled with joy and danced about

---

* Afer the 25th verse, almost all the editions have a single line, noticed by Nilakantha in his gloss, about the *Surenu.* It is evidently an interpolation. In the first enumeration of the seven Saraswatis, Surenu comes *after* Oghavati. The occurrence of this one line, therefore, mentioning Surenu *before* Oghavati, and assigning it a place different from that which is assigned to it in verse 29, leaves little room for doubt, that it is an interpolation.—T.

on the spot. Seeing him dance, all mobile and immobile creatures, O hero, stupified by his energy, began to dance.[39] Then the gods with Brahman at their head, and the *Rishis* possessed of wealth of asceticism, O king, all went to Mahādeva and informed him of the act of the *Rishi* (Mankanaka). And they said unto him,—'It behoveth thee, O god, to do that which may prevent the *Rishi* from dancing!'[40]—Then Mahādeva, seeing the *Rishi* filled with great joy, and moved by the desire of doing good unto the gods, addressed him, saying,[41]—'Why, O Brāhmana, dost thou dance in this way, acquainted as thou art with thy duties? What grave cause is there for such joy of thine, O sage, that, ascetic as thou art, O best of Brāhmanas, and walking as thou dost along the path of virtue thou shouldst act in this way?'[42]

"The *Rishi* said,—'Why, seest thou not, O Bhāhmana, that a vegetable juice is flowing from this wound of mine? Seeing this, O lord, I am dancing in great joy!'[43] Laughing at the *Rishi* who was stupified by passion, the god said,—'I do not, O Brāhmana, at all wonder at this! Behold me!'[44]—Having said this unto that foremost of *Rishis*, Mahādeva of great intelligence struck his thumb with the end of one of his fingers.[45] Thereupon, O king, ashes, white as snow, came out of that wound. Seeing this, the *Rishi* became ashamed, O monarch, and fell at the feat of the god.[46] He understood the god to be none else than Mahādeva. Filled with wonder, he said,—'I do not think that thou art any one else than Rudra, that great and Supreme being![47] O wielder of the trident, thou art the refuge of this universe consisting of gods and *Asuras*! The wise say that this universe hath been created by thee![48] At the universal destruction, everything once more enters thee! Thou art incapable of being known by the gods, how then canst thou be known by me?[49] All forms of being that are in the universe are seen in thee! The gods with Brahman at their head worship thy boon-giving self, O sinless one![50] Thou art everything! Thou art the creator of the gods and it was thou who hadst caused them to be created! Through thy grace, the gods pass their time in joy and perfect fearlessness!' Having praised Mahādeva in this manner, the *Rishi* bowed to

him.[51]—'Let not this absence of gravity, ridiculous in the extreme, that I displayed, O god, destroy my ascetic merit! I pray to thee for this!'[52]—The god, with a cheerful heart, once more said unto him,—'Let thy asceticism increase a thousand-fold, O Brāhmana, through my grace! I shall also always dwell with thee in this asylum!'[53] The man that will worship me in this *tirtha*, viz., Sapta-sāraswat, there will be nothing unattainable by him here or hereafter. Without doubt, such a one shall go to the region called Sāraswat (in heaven), after death!'[54] Even this the history of *Mankanaka* of abundant energy. He was a son begotten by the god of wind upon (the lady) Sukanyā."[55]

Section XXXIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—'Having passed one night there, Rāma, having the plough for his weapon, worshipped the dwellers of that *tirtha* and showed his regard for Mankanaka.[1] Having given wealth unto the Brāmanas, and passed the night there, the hero having the plough for his weapon was worshipped by the *Munis*. Rising up in the morning,[2] he took leave of all the ascetics, and having touched the sacred water, O Bhārata, set out quickly for other *tirthas*.[3] Valadeva then went to the *tirtha* known by the name of Uçanas. It is also called Kapālamochana. Formerly, Rāma (the son of Daçaratha) slew a *Rākshasa* and hurled his head to a great distance. That head, O king, fell upon the thigh of a great sage named Mahodara and stuck to it. Bathing in this *tirtha*, the great *Rishi* became freed from that burthen. The high-souled Kavi (Cukra) had performed his ascetic penances there.[4-5] It was there that the whole science of politics and morals (that goes by Cukra's name) appeared to him by inward light. While residing there, Cukra meditated upon the war of the *Daityas* and the *Dānavas* (with the gods).[6] Arrived at that foremost of *tirthas*, Valadeva, O king, duly made presents unto the high-souled Brāhmanas."[7]

Janamejaya said,—"Why is it called Kapālamochana, where the great *Muni* became freed (from the *Rākshāsa's* head)? For what reason and how did that head stick unto him?"[8]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Formerly, O tiger among kings, the high-souled Rāma (the son of Daçaratha) lived (for sometime) in the forest of Dandaka, from desire of slaying the *Rākshasas.*[9] At Janasthāna he cut off the head of a wicked-souled *Rākshasa* with a razor-headed shaft of great sharpness. That head fell in the deep forest.[10] That head, coursing at will (through the welkin) fell upon the thigh of Mahodara while the latter was wandering through the woods. Piercing his thigh, O king, it stuck to it and remained there.[11] In consequence of that head thus sticking to his thigh, the Brāhmana (Mahodara) of great wisdom could not (with ease) proceed to *tirthas* and other sacred spots.[12] Afflicted with great pain and with putrid matter flowing from his thigh, he went to all the *tirthas* of the Earth (one after another), as heard by us.[13] He went to all the rivers and to the ocean also. (Not finding any relief), the great ascetic spoke of his sufferings to many *Rishis* of cleansed souls[14] about his having bathed in all the *tirthas* without having found the relief he sought. That foremost of Brāhmanas then heard from those sages words of high import[15] about this foremost of *tirthas* situate on the Saraswati, and known by the name of Uçanasa, which was represented as competent to cleanse from every sin and as an excellent spot for attaining to (ascetic) success.[16] That Brāhmana then, repairing to that Ouçanasa *tirtha*, bathed in its waters. Upon this, the *Rākshasa's* head, leaving the thigh, fell into the water.[17] Freed from that (dead) head, the *Rishi* felt great happiness. As regards the head itself, it was lost in the waters.[18] Mahodara then, O king, freed from the *Rākshasa's* head, cheerfully returned, with cleansed soul and all his sins washed away, to his asylum after achieving success.[19] The great ascetic, thus freed, after returning to his sacred asylum, spoke of what had happened to those *Rishis* of cleansed souls.[20] The assembled *Rishis*, having heard his words, bestowed the name of *Kapālamochana* on the *tirtha.*[21] The great *Rishi* Mahodara, repairing once more to that foremost of *tirthas*, drank its water and attained to great ascetic success.[22] He of Madhu's race, having given away much wealth unto the Brāhmanas and worshipped them, then proceeded to the asylum of Rushangu.[23] There,

O Bhārata, Ārshtishena had in former days undergone the austerest of penances. There the great *Muni* Viçwāmitra (who had before been a Kshatriya) became a Brāhmana.[24] That great asylum is capable of granting the fruition of every wish. It is always, O lord, the abode of *Munis* and Brāhmanas.[25] Valadeva of great beauty, surrounded by Brāhmanas, then went to that spot, O monarch, where Rushangu had, in former days, cast off his body.[26] Rushangu, O Bhārata, was an old Brāhmana who was always devoted to ascetic penances. Resolved to cast off his body, he reflected for a long while.[27] Endued with great ascetic merit, he then summoned all his sons and told them to take him to a spot where water was abundant.[28] Those ascetics, knowing their sire had become very old, took that ascetic to a *tirtha* on the Saraswati.[29] Brought by his sons to the sacred Saraswati containing hundreds of *tirthas* and on whose banks dwelt *Rishis* unconnected with the world, that intelligent ascetic[30] of austere penances bathed in that *tirtha* according to due rites, and conversant as that foremost of *Rishis* was with the merits of *tirthas*, then cheerfully said, O tiger among men, unto all his sons who were dutifully waiting upon him these words:[31]—'He that would cast off his body on the northern bank of the Saraswati containing much water, while employed in mentally reciting sacred *mantras*, would never again be afflicted with death!'[32] The righteous-souled Valadeva, touching the water of that *tirtha* and bathing in it, gave considerable wealth unto the Brāhmanas, devoted as he was to them.[33] Possessed of great might and great prowess, Valadeva then proceeded to that *tirtha* where the adorable Grandsire had created the mountains called Lokāloka, where that foremost of *Rishis*, viz., Ārshtishena of rigid vows, O thou of Kuru's race, had by austere penances acquired the status of Brāhmanhood, where the royal sage Sindhudwipa, and the great ascetic Devāpi, and the adorable and illustrious *Muni* Viçwāmitra of austere penances and fierce energy, had all acquired a similar status."[34-35]

Section XL.

Janamejaya said,—"Why did the adorable Ārshtishena undergo the austerest of penances? How also did Sindhudwipa acquire the status of a Brāhmana?[1] How also did Devāpi, O Brāhmana, and how Viçwāmitra, O best of men, acquire the same status? Tell me all this, O adorable one! Great is my curiosity to listen to all this!"[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Formerly, in the *Krita* age, O king, there was a foremost of regenerate persons called Ārshtishena. Residing in his preceptor's house, he attended to his lessons every day.[3] Although, O king, he resided long in the abode of his preceptor, he could not still acquire the mastery of any branch of knowledge or of the *Vedas*, O monarch![4] In great disappointment, O king, the great ascetic performed very austere penances. By his penances he then acquired the mastery of the *Vedas* than which there is nothing superior.[5] Acquiring great learning and a mastery of the *Vedas*, that foremost of *Rishis* became crowned with success in that *tirtha*. He then bestowed three boons on that place.[6] (He said)—'From this day, a person, by bathing in this *tirtha* of the great river (Saraswati), shall obtain the great fruit of a horse sacrifice![7] From this day there will be no fear in this *tirtha* from snakes and wild beasts! By small exertions, again, one shall attain to great results here!'[8] Having said these words, that *Muni* of great energy proceeded to heaven. Even thus the adorable Ārshtishena of great energy became crowned with success.[9] In that very *tirtha*, in the *Krita* age, Sindhudwipa of great energy, and Devāpi also, O monarch, had acquired the high status of Brāhmanhood.[10] Similarly Kuçika's son, devoted to ascetic penances and with his senses under control, acquired the status of Brāhmanhood by practising well-directed austerities.[11] There was a great Kshatriya, celebrated over the world, known by the name of Gādhi. He had a son born to him, of the name of Viçwāmitra of great prowess.[12] King Kauçika became a great ascetic. Possessed of great ascetic merit, he wished to install his son Viçwāmitra on

his throne,[13] himself having resolved to cast off his body. His subjects, bowing unto him, said,—'Thou shouldst not go away, O thou of great wisdom, but do thou protect us from a great fear!'[14] Thus addressed, Gādhi replied unto his subjects, saying,—'My son will become the protector of the wide universe!'[15] Having said these words, and placed Viçwāmitra (on the throne), Gādhi, O king, went to heaven, and Viçwāmitra became king. He could not, however, protect the Earth with even his best exertions.[16] The king then heard of the existence of a great fear of *Rākshasas* (in his kingdom). With his four kinds of forces, he went out of his capital.[17] Having proceeded far on his way, he reached the asylum of Vaçishtha. His troops, O king, caused much mischief there.[18] The adorable Brāhmana Vaçishtha, when he came to his asylum, saw the extensive woods in course of destruction.[19] That best of *Rishis*, viz., Vaçishtha, O king, became angry, O monarch, with Viçwāmitra. He commanded his own *(homa)* cow, saying,—'Create a number of terrible Cavaras!'[20] Thus addressed, the cow created a swarm of men of frightful visages. These encountered the army of Viçwāmitra and began to cause a great carnage everywhere.[21] Seeing this, the troops fled away. Viçwāmitra the son of Gādhi, however, regarding ascetic austerities highly efficacious, set his heart upon them.[22] In this foremost of *tirthas* of the Saraswati, O king, he began to emaciate his own body by means of vows and fasts with fixed resolve.[23] He made water and air and (the fallen) leaves of trees his food. He slept on the bare ground, and observed other vows (enjoined for ascetics).[24] The gods made repeated attempts for impeding him in the observance of his vows. His heart, however, never swerved from the vows (he had proposed to himself).[25] Then, having practised diverse kinds of austerities with great devotion, the son of Gādhi became like the Sun himself in effulgence,[26] The boon-giving Grandsire, of great energy, resolved to grant Viçwāmitra, when he had become endued with ascetic merit, the boon the latter desired.[27] The boon that Viçwāmitra solicited was that he should be permitted to become a Brāhmana. Brahman, the Grandsire of all the worlds, said unto him,—'So be it.'[28] Having by

his austere penances acquired the status of Brāhmanhood, the illustrious Viçwāmitra, after the attainment of his wish, wandered over the whole Earth like a celestial.[29] Giving away diverse kinds of wealth in that foremost of *tirthas*, Rāma also cheerfully gave away milch cows and vehicles and beds, and ornaments, and food and drink of the best kinds, O king, unto many foremost of Brāhmanas, after having worshipped them duly.[30-31] Then, O king, Rāma proceeded to the asylum of Vaka which was not very distant from where he was, that asylum in which, as heard by us, Dālvya-vaka had practised the austerest of penances."[32]

SECTION XLI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"That delighter of the Yadus then proceeded to the asylum (of Vaka) which resounded with the chaunting of the *Vedas*. There the great ascetic, O king, named Dālvya-vaka,[1] poured the kingdom of Dhritarāshtra the son of Vichitravirya as a libation (on the sacrificial fire). By practising very austere penances he emaciated his own body. Endued with great energy, the virtuous *Rishi*, filled with great wrath, (did that act).[2] In former times, the *Rishis* residing in the Naimisha forest had performed a sacrifice extending for twelve years. In course of that sacrifice, after a particular one called *Viçwajit* had been completed, the *Rishis* set out for the country of the Pānchālas.[3] Arived there, they solicited the king for giving them one and twenty strong and healthy calves to be given away as *Dakshinā* (in the sacrifice they had completed).[4] Dālvya-vaka, however, (calling those *Rishis)*, said unto them,—'Do you divide those animals (of mine) among ye! Giving away these (unto ye), I shall solicit a great king (for some)!'[5] Having said so unto all those *Rishis*, Vaka of great energy, that best of Brāhmanas, then proceeded to the abode of Dhritarāshtra.[6] Arrived at the presence of king Dhritarāshtra, Dālvya begged some animals of him. That best of kings, however, seeing that some of his kine had died without any cause, angrily said unto him,—'Wretch of a Brāhmana, take, if thou likest, these

animals that (are dead)!'[8] Hearing these words, the *Rishi*, conversant wtih duties, thought,—'Alas, cruel are the words that have been addressed to me in the assembly!'[9] Having reflected in this strain, that best of Brāhmanas, filled with wrath, set his heart upon the destruction of king Dhritarāshtra.[10] Cutting the flesh from off the dead animals, that best of sages, having ignited a (sacrificial) fire on the *tirtha* of the Saraswati, poured those pieces as libations for the destruction of king Dhritarāshtra's kingdom. Observant of rigid vows, the great Dālvya-vaka, O monarch, poured Dhritarāshtra's kingdom as a libation on the fire, with the aid of those pieces of meat.[12]* Upon the commencement of that fierce sacrifice according to due rites, the kingdom of Dhritarāshtra, O monarch, began to waste away.[13] Indeed, O lord, the kingdom of that monarch began to waste away even as a large forest begins to disappear when men proceed to cut it down with the axe. Overtaken by calamities, the kingdom began to lose its prosperity and life.[14] Seeing his kingdom thus afflicted, the puissant monarch, O king, became very cheerless and thoughtful.[15] Consulting with the Brāhmanas, he began to make great endeavours for freeing his territories (from affliction). No good, however, came of his efforts, for the kingdom continued to waste away.[16] The king became very cheerless. The Brāhmanas also, O sinless one, became filled with grief. When at last the king failed to save his kingdom,[17] he asked his counsellers, O Janamejaya, (about the remedy). The counsellers reminded him of the evil he had done in connection with the dead kine.[18] And they said.—'The sage Vaka is pouring thy kingdom as a libation on the fire with the aid of the flesh (of those animals). Thence is this great waste of thy kingdom!'[19] This is the consequence of ascetic rites. Thence is this great calamity! Go, O king, and gratify that *Rishi* by the side of a receptacle of water on the bank of the Saraswati!'[20] Repairing to the bank of the Saraswati, the king falling at his feet and touching them with his head, joined his hands and said, O thou

---

* Pouring a kingdom on the fire means pouring libations on the fire for the object of destroying a kingdom.—T.

Bharata's race, these words,—'I gratify thee, O adorable one, forgive my offence![21] I am a senseless fool, a wretch inspired with avarice! Thou art my refuge, thou art my protector, it behoveth thee to show me thy grace![22] Beholding him thus overwhelmed with grief and indulging in lamentations like these, Vaka felt compassion for him and freed his kingdom.[23] The *Rishi* became gratified with him, having dismissed his angry feelings. For freeing his kingdom, the sage again poured libations on the fire.[24] Having freed the kingdom (from calamities) and taken many animals in gift, he became pleased at heart and once more proceeded to the Naimisha woods.[25] The liberal-minnded king Dhritarāshtra also, of righteous soul, with a cheerful heart, returned to his own capital full of prosperity.[26]

"In that *tirtha*, Vrihashpati also, of great intelligence, for the destruction of the *Asuras* and the prosperity of the denizens of heaven,[27] poured libations on the sacrificial fire, with the aid of flesh. Upon this, the *Asuras* began to waste away and were destroyed by the gods, inspired with desire of victory, in battle.[28] Having with due rites given unto the Brāhmanas steeds and elephants and vehicles with mules yoked unto them and jewels of great value and much wealth and much corn, the illustrious and mighty-armed Rāma then proceeded, O king, to the *tirtha* called *Yāyāta*.[29-30] There, O monarch, at sacrifice of the high-souled Yayāti the son of Nahusha, the Saraswati produced milk and clarified butter.[31] That tiger among men, viz., king Yayāti, having performed a sacrifice there, went cheerfully to heaven and obtained many regions of blessedness.[32] Once again, O lord, king Yayāti performed a sacrifice there. Beholding his great magnanimity of soul and his immutable devotion to herself, the river Saraswati gave unto the Brāhmanas (invited to that sacrifice) everything for which each of them cherished only a wish in his heart.[33] That foremost of rivers gave unto each where he was, amongst those that were invited to the sacrifice, houses and beds and food of the six different kinds of taste, and diverse other kinds of things.[34] The Brāhmanas regarded those valuable gifts as made to them by the king. Cheerfully they praised

the monarch and bestowed their auspicious blessings upon him.[35] The gods and the *Gandharvas* were all pleased with the profusion of articles in that sacrifice. As regards human beings, they were filled with wonder at sight of that profusion.[36] The illustrious Valadeva, of soul subdued and restrained and cleansed, having the palmyra on his banner, distinguished by great righteousness, and ever giving away the most valuable things, then proceeded to that *tirtha* of fierce current called *Vaçishthāpavāha.*"[37]*

SECTION XLII.

Janamejaya said,—"Why is the current of (the *tirtha* known by the name of) Vaçishthāpavāha so rapid? For what reason did the foremost of rivers bear away Vaçishtha?[1] What, O lord, was the cause of the dispute between Vaçishtha and Viçwāmitra? Questioned by me, O thou of great wisdom, tell me all this! I am never satiated with hearing thee!"[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"A great enemity arose between Viçwāmitra and Vaçishtha, O Bhārata, due to their rivalry in respect of ascetic austerities.[3] The high abode of Vaçishtha was in the *tirtha* called Sthānu on the eastern bank of the Saraswati. On the opposite bank was the asylum of the intelligent Viçwāmitra.[4] There, in that *tirtha*, O monarch, Sthānu (Mahādeva) had practised the austerest penances. Sages still speak of those fierce feats.[5] Having performed a sacrifice there and worshipped the river Saraswati, Sthānu established that *tirtha* there. Hence it is known by the name *Sthānu-tirtha*, O lord.[6] In that *tirtha*, the celestials had, in days of yore, O king, installed Skanda, that slayer of the enemies of the

---

* *Mahādānanityas*,—certain classes of gifts are called *Mahādāna*, such as horses, elephants, houses, boats, &c. None but the most superior classes of Brāhmanas could accept such gifts. The theory is that unless the receiver be pure, he cannot but be contaminated by acceptance. To this day, in *çrāddhas* of Hindoos, such valuable gifts are not accepted by good and respectable Brāhmanas but are taken by persons who have lost their social position.—T.

gods, in the supreme command of their army.[7] Unto that *tirtha* of the Saraswati, the great *Rishi* Viçwāmitra, by the aid of his austere penances, brought Vaiçishtha. Listen to that history.[8] The two ascetics Viçwāmitra and Vaçishtha, O Bhārata, every day challenged each other very earnestly in respect of the superiority of their penances.[9] The great *Muni* Viçwāmitra, burning (with jealousy) at sight of the energy of Vaçishtha, began to reflect on the matter.[10] Though devoted to the performance of his duties, this, however, is the resolution, O Bhārata, that he formed, viz.,—'This Saraswati shall quickly bring, by force of her current, that foremost of ascetics, viz., Vaçishtha, to my presence. After he shall have been brought hither, I shall, without doubt, slay that foremost of regenerate ones.'[11-12] Having settled this, the illustrious and great *Rishi* Viçwāmitra, with eyes red in wrath, thought of that foremost of rivers.[13] Thus remembered by the ascetic, she became exceedingly agitated. The fair lady, however, repaired to that *Rishi* of great energy and great wrath.[14] Pale and trembling, Saraswati, with joined hands, appeared before that foremost of sages.[15] Indeed, the lady was much afflicted with grief, even like a woman who has lost her mighty lord. And she said unto that best of sages,—'Tell me what is there that I shall do for thee!'[16] Filled with rage, the ascetic said unto her,—'Bring hither Vaçishtha without delay, so that I may slay him!' Hearing these words, the river became agitated.[17] With joined hands the lotus-eyed lady began to tremble exceedingly in fear, like a creeper shaken by the wind.[18] Beholding the great river in that plight, the ascetic said unto her,—'Without my scruple, bring Vaçishtha into my presence!'[19] Hearing these words of his, and knowing the evil he intended to do, and acquainted also with the prowess of Vaçishtha that was unrivalled on Earth,[20] she repaired to Vaçishtha and informed him of what the intelligent Viçwāmitra had said unto her.[21] Fearing the curse of both, she trembled repeatedly. Indeed, her heart was on the grievous curse (that either of them might denounce on her). She stood in terror of both.[22] Seeing her pale and plunged into anxiety, the righteous-souled Vaçishtha, that foremost of men, O king, said these words unto her.[23]

"Vaçishtha said,—'O foremost of rivers, save thyself! O thou of rapid current, bear me away, otherwise Viçwāmitra will curse thee! Do not feel any scruple.'[24] Hearing these words of that compassionate *Rishi*, the river began to think, O Kauravya, as to what course would be best for her to follow.[25] Even these were the thoughts that arose in her mind,—'Vaçishtha showeth great compassion for me! It is proper for me that I should serve him!'[26] Beholding then that best of *Rishis* (viz., Vaçishtha) engaged in silent recitation (of *mantras)* on her bank, and seeing Kuçika's son (Viçwāmitra) also engaged in *homa*, Saraswati thought,[27]—'Even this is my opportunity!' Then that foremost of rivers, by her current, washed away one of her banks.[28] In washing away that bank, she bore Vaçishtha away. While being borne away, O king, Vaçishtha praised the river in these words:[29]—'From the Grandsire's *(mānasa)* lake thou hast taken thy rise, O Saraswati! This whole universe is filled with thy excellent waters![30] Wending through the firmament, O goddess, thou impartest thy waters to the clouds! All the waters are thee! Through thee we exercise our thinking faculties![31] Thou art *Pushti*, and *Dyuti*, *Kirti*, and *Siddhi* and *Umā*!* Thou art Speech, and thou art *Swāhā!*† This whole universe is dependent on thee! It is thou that dwellest in all creatures, in four forms!'[32]—Thus praised by that great *Rishi*, Saraswati, O king, speedily bore that Brāhmana towards the asylum of Viçwāmitra and repeatedly represented unto the latter the arrival of the former.[33] Beholding Vaçishtha thus brought before him by Saraswati, Viçwāmitra, filled with rage, began to look for a weapon wherewith to slay that Brāhmana.[34] Seeing him filled with wrath, the river, from fear of (witnessing and aiding in) a Brāhmana's slaughter, quickly bore Vaçishtha away to her eastern bank once more. She thus had obeyed the words of both, although she deceived the son of Gādhi by her act.[35] Seeing that best of *Rishis*, viz., Vaçishtha, borne away, the vindictive Viçwā-

---

* The respective embodiments of growth, splendour, fame, and success; the last is the supreme goddess, Civa's spouse.—T.

† A *mantrā* of great efficacy.—T.

mitra, filled with wrath, addressed Saraswati, saying,[37]—Since, O foremost of rivers, thou hast gone away, having deceived me, let thy current be changed into blood that is acceptable to *Rākshasas*![37] Then, cursed by the intelligent Viçwāmitra, Saraswati flowed for a whole year, bearing blood mixed with water.[38] The gods, the *Gandharvas*, and the *Apsaras*, beholding the Saraswati reduced to that plight, became filled with great sorrow.[39] For this reason, O king, the *tirtha* came to be called *Vaçishthāpavāha* on Earth. The foremost of rivers, however, once more got back her own proper condition."[40]

Section XLIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Cursed by the intelligent Viçwāmitra in anger, Saraswati, in that auspicious and best of *tirthas*, flowed, bearing blood in her current.[1] Then, O king, many *Rākshasas* came, O Bhārata, and lived happily there, drinking the blood that flowed.[2] Exceedingly gratified with that blood, cheerfully and without anxiety of any kind, they danced and laughed there like persons that have (by merit) attained to heaven.[3] After some time had passed away, some *Rishis*, possessed of wealth of asceticism, came to the Saraswati, O king, on a sojourn to her *tirthas*.[4] Those foremost of *Munis*, having bathed in all the *tirthas* and obtained great happiness, became desirous of acquiring more merit. Those learned persons at last came, O king, to that *tirtha* where the Saraswati ran a bloody current. Those highly blessed ones, arriving at that frightful *tirtha*,[6] saw the water of the Saraswati mixed with blood and that innumerable *Rākshasas*, O monarch, were drinking it.[7] Beholding those *Rākshasas*, O king, those ascetics of rigid vows made great endeavours for rescuing the Saraswati from that plight.[8] Those blessed ones of high vows, arrived there, invoked that foremost of rivers and said these words unto her:[9]—'Tell us the reason, O auspicious lady, why this lake in thee hath been afflicted with such distress! Hearing it, we shall endeavour (to restore it to its proper condition).[10] Thus questioned, Saraswati, trembling as she spoke, informed them of everything that had occurred.

Seeing her afflicted with woe, those ascetics told her,[11]—'We have heard the reason. We have heard of thy curse, O sinless lady! All of us shall exert ourselves!'[12] Having said these words unto that foremost of rivers, they then consulted with one another,—'All of us shall emancipate Saraswati from her curse.'[13] Then all those Brāhmanas, O king, worshipping Mahādeva, that Lord of the universe and protector of all creatures, with penances and vows and fasts and diverse kinds of abstenances and painful observances, emancipated that foremost of rivers, viz., the divine Saraswati.[16] Beholding the water of Saraswati purified by those *Munis*, the *Rākshasas* (that had taken up there abode there), afflicted with hunger, sought the protection of those *Munis* themselves.[17] Afflicted with hunger, the *Rākshasas*, with joined hands, repeatedly said unto those ascetics filled with compassion, these words, viz., [18]—All of us are hungry! We have swerved from eternal virtue! That we are sinful in behavior is not of our free will![19] Through the absence of your grace and through our own evil acts, as also through the sexual sins of our women our demerits increase and we have become *Brahma-Rākshasas!* So amongst Vaiçyas and Cudras, and Kshatriyas, those that hate and injure Brāhmanas became *Rākshasas*.[20-21] Ye best of Brāhmanas, make arrangements then for our relief! Ye are competent to relieve all the words![22]—Hearing these words of theirs, those ascetics praised the great river. For the rescue of those *Rākshasas*, with rapt minds those ascetics said,[24] —'The food over which one sneezed, that in which there are worms and insects, that which may be mixed with any leavings of dishes, that which is mixed with hair, that which is trodden upon, that which is mixed with tears,—shall form the portion of these *Rākshasas!*[25] The learned man, knowing all this, shall carefully avoid these kinds of food. He that shall take such food shall be regarded as eating the food of *Rākshasas!*'[26]—Having purified the *tirtha* in this way, those ascetics thus solicited that river for the relief of those *Rākshasas*.[27] Understanding the views of those great *Rishis*, that foremost of rivers caused her body, O bull among men, to assume a new shape called Aruṇā,[28]

Bathing in that new river (a branch of the Saraswati) the *Rikshasas* cast off their bodies and went to heaven.[29] Ascertaining all this, the chief of the celestials, (viz., Indra) of a hundred sacrifices, bathed in that foremost of *tirthas* and became cleansed of a grievous sin."[30]

Janamejaya said,—"For what reason was Indra tainted with the sin of Brāhmanicide? How also did he become cleansed by bathing in that *tirtha*?"[31]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Listen to that history, O ruler of men! Listen to those occurrences as they happened! Hear how Vāsava, in days of yore, broke his treaty with Namuchi![32] (The *Asura*) Namuchi, from fear of Vāsava, had entered a ray of the Sun. Indra then made friends with Namuchi and entered into a covenant with him, saying,[33]—'O foremost of *Asuras*, I shall not slay thee, O friend, with anything that is wet or with anything that is dry! I shall not slay thee in the night or in the day! I swear this to thee by truth'[34] Having made this covenant, the lord Indra one day beheld a fog. He then, O king, cut off Namuchi's head, using the foam of water (as his weapon).[35] The severed head of Namuchi thereupon pursued Indra from behind, saying unto him from a near point these words,—'O slayer of a friend, O wretch!'[36] Urged on incessantly by that head, Indra repaired to the Grandsire and informed him, in grief, of what had occurred.[37] The Supreme Lord of the universe said unto him,—'Performing a sacrifice, bathe with due rites, O chief of the celestials, in Arunā, that *tirtha* which saveth from the fear of sin![38] The water of that river, O Cakra, hath been made sacred by the *Munis!* Formerly the presence of that river at its site was concealed.[39] The divine Saraswati, repaired to the Arunā, and flooded it with her waters. This confluence of Saraswati and Arunā is highly sacred![40] Thither, O chief of the celestials, perform a sacrifice! Give away gifts in profusion! Performing thy ablutions there, thou shalt be freed from thy sin!'[41] Thus addressed, Cakra, at these words of Brahman, O Janamejaya, performed in that abode of Saraswati diverse sacrifices.[42] Giving away many gifts and bathing in that *tirtha*, he of a hundred sacrifices, viz., the piercer of Vala,

duly performed certain sacrifices and then plunged in the Arunā.[43] He became freed from the sin arising out of the slaughter of a Brāhmana. The lord of heaven then returned to heaven with a joyful heart.[44] The head of Namuchi also fell into that stream, O Bhārata, and the *Asura* obtained many eternal regions, O best of kings, that granted every wish."[45]

Vaicampāyana continued,—"The high-souled Valadeva, having bathed in that *tirtha* and given away many kinds of gifts, obtained great merit. Of righteous deeds, he then proceeded to the great *tirtha* of Soma.[46] There, in days of yore, Soma himself, O king of kings, had performed the *Rājasuya* sacrifice. The high-souled Atri, that foremost of Brāhmanas, gifted with great intelligence, became the *Hotri* in that grand sacrifice. Upon the conclusion of that sacrifice, a great battle took place between the gods (on the one side) and the *Dānavas*, the *Daiteyas*, and the *Rākshasas* (on the other). That fierce battle is known after the name of (the *Asura)* Tāraka. In that battle Skanda slew Tāraka.[48] There, on that occasion, (Skanda, otherwise called) Mahāsena, that destroyer of *Daityas*, obtained the command of the celestial forces. In that *tirtha* is a gigantic *Açwattha* tree. Under its shade, Kārtikeya, otherwise called Kumāra, always resides in person."[49]

Section XLIV.

Janamejaya said,—"Thou hast described the merits of the Saraswati, O best of Brāhmanas! It behoveth thee, O regenerate one, to describe to me the investiture of Kumāra (by the gods).[1] Great is the curiosity I feel. Tell me everything, therefore, about the time when and the place where and the manner in which the adorable and puissant lord Skanda was invested (with the command of the celestial forces)! Tell me also, O foremost of speakers, who they were that invested him and who performed the actual rites, and how the celestial generalissimo made a great carnage of the *Daityas!*"[2-3]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"This curiosity that thou feelest is worthy of thy birth in Kuru's race. The words that I shall speak, will, O Janamejaya, conduce to thy pleasure![4] I shall

narrate to thee the investiture of Kumāra and the prowess of that high-souled one, since, O ruler of men, thou wishest to hear it![5] In days of yore the vital seed of Maheçwara coming out, fell into a blazing fire. The consumer of everything, viz., the adorable Agni, could not burn that indestructible seed.[6] On the other hand, the bearer of sacrificial libations, in consequence of that seed, became possessed of great energy and splendour. He could not bear within himself that seed of mighty energy.[7] At the command of Brahman, the lord Agni, approaching (the river) Gangā, threw into her that divine seed possessed of the effulgence of the Sun.[8] Gangā also, unable to hold it, cast it on the beautiful breast of Himavat that is worshipped by the celestials.[9] Thereupon Agni's son began to grow there, overwhelming all the worlds by his energy. Meanwhile (the six) Krittikās beheld that child of fiery splendour.[10] Seeing that puissant lord, that high-souled son of Agni, lying on a clump of heath, all the six Kirttikās, who were desirous of a son, cried aloud, saying,—'This child is mine, this child is mine!'[11] Understanding the state of mind of those six mothers, the adorable lord Skanda sucked the breasts of all, having assumed six mouths.[12] Beholding that puissance of the child, the Krittikās, those goddesses of beautiful forms, became filled with wonder.[13] And since the adorable child had been cast by the river Gangā upon the summit of Himavat, that mountain looked beautiful, having, O delighter of the Kurus, been transfomed into gold![14] With that growing child the whole Earth became beautiful, and it was for this reason that mountains (from that time) came to be producers of gold.[15] Possessed of great energy, the child came to be called by the name of Kārtikeya. At first he had been called by the name of Gāngeya. He became possessed of high ascetic powers.[16] Endued with self-restraint and asceticism and great energy, the child grew up, O monarch, into a person of highly agreeable features like Soma himself.[17] Possessed of great beauty, the child lay on that excellent and golden clump of heath, adored and praised by *Gandharvas* and ascetics.[18] Celestial girls, by thousands, conversant with celestial music and dance, and of very beautiful features, praised him and danced before

him.[19] The foremost of all rivers, viz., Gangā, waited upon that god. The Earth also, assuming great beauty, held the child (on her lap).[20] The celestial priest Vrihaspati performed the usual rites after birth, in respect of that child. The *Vedas*, assuming a fourfold form, approached the child with joined hands.[21] The Science of arms, with its four divisions, and all the weapons, as also all kinds of arrows, came to him.[22] One day, the child, of great energy, saw that god of gods, viz., the lord of Umā, seated with the daughter of Himavat, amid a swarm of ghostly creatures.[23] Those ghostly creatures, of emaciated bodies, were of wonderful features. They were ugly and of ugly features, and wore awkward ornaments and marks.[24] Their faces were like those of tigers and lions and bears and cats and *makaras*. Others were of faces like those of scorpions; other's of faces like those of elephants and camels and owls. And some had faces like those of vultures and jackals.[25] And some there were that had faces like those of cranes and pigeons and *Kurus*. And many amongst them had bodies like those of dogs and porcupines and iguanas and goats and sheep and cows. And some resembled mountains and some oceans, and some stood with uplifted discs and maces for their weapons And some looked like masses of antimony and some like white mountains. The seven *Mātris* also were present there, O monarch.[27] And the *Sāddhyas*, the *Viçwedevas*, the *Maruts*, the *Vasus*, the *Pitris*, the *Rudras*, the *Adityas*, the *Siddhas*, the *Dānavas*, the birds,[28] the self-born and adorable Brahman with his sons, and Vishnu, and Cakra, all went thither for beholding that child of unfading glory.[29] And many of the foremost of celestials and *Gandharvas*, headed by Nārada. and many celestial *Rishis* and *Siddhas* headed by Vrihaspati,[30] and the fathers of the universe, those foremost ones, they that are regarded as gods of the gods, and the *Yāmas* and the *Dhāmas*, all went there.[31] Endued with great strength, the child possessed of great ascetic power, proceeded to the presence of that Lord of the gods, (viz., Mahādeva), armed with trident and *Pināka*.[32] Seeing the child coming. the thought entered the mind of *Çiva*, as it did that of Himavat's daughter and that of Gangā and of Agni,[33] as to whom amongst the four the child

would first approach for honoring him or her. Each of them thought,—'He will come to me!'[34] Understanding that this was the expectation cherished by each of those four, he had recourse to his *Yoga* powers and assumed at the same time four different forms.[35] Indeed, the adorable and puissant lord assumed those four forms in an instant. The three forms that stood behind were Cākha and Viçākha and Naigameya.[36] The adorable and puissant one, having divided his self into four forms, (proceeded towards the four that sat expecting him). The form called Skanda of wonderful appearance proceeded to the spot where Rudra was sitting.[37] Viçākha went to the spot where the divine daughter of Himavat was. The adorable Cākha, which is Kartikeya's *Vāyu* form, proceeded towards Agni. Naigameya, that child of fiery splendour, proceeded to the presence of Gangā.[38] All those four forms, of similar appearance, were endued with great effulgence. The four forms proceeded calmly to the four gods and goddesses (already mentioned). All this seemed exceedingly wonderful.[39] The gods, the *Dānavas*, and the *Rākshasas*, made a loud noise at sight of that exceedingly wonderful incident making the very hair to stand on end.[40] Then Rudra and the goddess Umā and Agni, and Gangā, all bowed unto the Grandsire, that Lord of the Universe.[41] Having duly bowed unto him, O bull among kings, they said these words, O monarch, from desire of doing good unto Kārtikeya:[42]—'It behoveth thee, O Lord of the gods, to grant to this youth, for the sake of our happiness, some kind of sovereignty that may be suitable to him and that he may desire!'[43]—At this, the adorable Grandsire of all the worlds, possessed of great intelligence, began to think within his mind as to what he should bestow upon that youth.[44] He had formerly given away unto the formless ones (gods) all kinds of wealth over which the high-souled celestials, the *Gandharvas*, the *Rākshasas*, ghosts, *Yakshas*, birds, and snakes have dominion. Brahman, therefore, regarded that youth to be fully entitled to that dominion (which had been bestowed upon the gods).[45-46] Having reflected for a moment, the Grandsire, ever mindful of the welfare of the gods, bestowed upon him the status of a generalissimo among all creatures,

O Bhārata![47] And the Grandsire further ordered all those gods that were regarded as the chief of the celestials and other formless beings to wait upon him.[48] Then the gods headed by Brahman, taking that youth with them, together came to Himavat.[49] The spot they selected was the bank of the sacred and divine Saraswati, that foremost of rivers, taking her rise from Himavat, that Saraswati which at *Samantapanchaka*, is celebrated over the three worlds.[50] There, on the sacred bank, possessing every merit, of the Saraswati, the gods and the *Gandharvas* took their seats with hearts well pleased in consequence of the gratification of all their desires."[51]

SECTION XLV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Collecting all articles as laid down in the scriptures for the ceremony of investiture, Vrihaspati duly poured libations on the blazing fire.[1] Himavat gave a seat which was adorned with many costly gems. Kārtikeya was made to sit on that auspicious and best of seats decked with excellent gems.[2] The gods brought thither all kinds of auspicious articles, with due rites and *mantras*, that were necessary for a ceremony of the kind.[3] The diverse gods, viz., Indra and Vishnu, both of great energy, and Surya and Chandramas, and Dhātri, and Vidhātri, and Vāyu, and Agni,[4] and Pushan, and Bhaga, and Aryaman, and Ança, and Vivaswat, and Rudra of great intelligence, and Mitra,[5] and the (eleven) Rudras, the (eight) Vasus, the (twelve) Ādityas, the (twin) Açwins, the Viçwedevas, the Maruts, the Sāddhyas, the Pitris,[6] the Gandharvas, the Apsaras, the Yakhas, the Rākshasas, the Pannagas, innumerable celestial *Rishis*,[7] the Vaikhānasas, the Vālikhillyas, those others (among *Rishis*) that subsist only on air and those that subsist on the rays of the Sun, the descendants of Bhrigu and Angiras, many high-souled Yatis,[8] all the Vidyādharas, all those that were crowned with ascetic success,[9] the Grandsire, Pulastya, Pulaha of great ascetic merits, Angiras, Kaçyapa, Atri, Marichi, Bhrigu, Kratu, Hara, Prachetas, Manu, Daksha,[10] the Seasons, the Planets, and all the luminaries, O monarch, all the rivers in their embodied

forms, the eternal Vedas,[11] the Seas, the Lakes, the diverse *Tirthas*, the Earth, the Sky, the Cardinal and Subsidiary points of the compass, and all the Trees, O king,[12] Aditi the mother of the gods, Hri, Cri, Swāhā, Saraswati, Umā, Cachi Sinivāli, Anumati, Kuhu,[13] the Day of the new Moon, the Day of the full Moon, the wives of the denizens of heaven, Himavat, Vindhya, Meru of many summits,[14] Airāvat with all his followers, the Divisions of time called Kalā, Kāshthā, Fortnight, the Seasons, Night, and Day, O king,[15] the prince of steeds, viz., Ucchaiçravas, Vāsuki the king of the Snakes, Aruna, Gadura, the Trees, the deciduous herbs,[16] and the adorable god Dharma, all came there together. And there came also Kāla, Yama, Mrityu, and the followers of Yama.[17] From fear of swelling the list I do not mention the diverse other gods that came there. All of them came to that ceremony for investing Kārtikeya with the status of generalissimo.[18] All the denizens of heaven, O king, brought there every thing neccessary for the ceremony and every auspicious article.[19] Filled with joy, the denizens of heaven made that high-souled youth, that terror of the *Asuras*, the generalisimo of the celestial forces, after pouring upon his head the sacred and excellent water of the Saraswati from golden jars that contained other sacred articles needed for the purpose.[20-21] The Grandsire of the worlds, viz., Brahman, and Kaçyapa of great energy, and the others (mentioned and) not mentioned, all poured water upon Skanda even as, O monarch, the gods had poured water on the head of Varuna, the lord of waters, for investing him with dominion.[22] The lord Brahman then, with a gratified heart, gave unto Skanda four companions, possessed of great might, endued with speed like that the wind, crowned with ascetic success, and gifted with energy which they could increase at will.[23] They were named Nandisena and Lohitāksha and Ghantākarna and Kumudamālin.[24] The lord Sthānu, O monarch, gave unto Skanda a companion possessed of great impetuosity, capable of producing a hundred illusions, and endued with might and energy that he could enhance at will. And he was the great destroyer of *Asuras*.[25] In the great battle between the gods and the *Asuras*, this companion that

Sthānu gave, filled with wrath, slew, with his hands alone, fourteen millions of *Daityas* of fierce deeds.[26] The gods then made over to Skanda the celestial host, invincible, abounding with celestial troops, capable of destroying the enemies of the gods, and of forms like that of Vishnu.[27] The gods then, with Vāsava at their head, and the *Gandharvas*, the *Yakshas*, the *Rākshasas*, the *Munis*, and the *Pitris*, all shouted,—'Victory (to Skanda)!'[28] Then Yama gave him two companions, both of whom resembled Death, viz., Unmātha and Pramātha, possessed of great energy and great splendour.[29] Endued with great prowess, Surya, with a gratified heart, gave unto Kārtikeya two of his followers named Subhrāja and Bhāswara.[30] Soma also gave him two companions' viz., Mani and Sumani, both of whom looked like summits of the Kailāsa mountain and always used white garlands and white unguents.[31] Agni gave unto him two heroic companions, grinders of hostile armies, who were named Jwālajihbha and Jyoti.[32] Ança gave unto Skanda of great intelligence five companions, viz., Parigha, and Vata, and Bhima of terrible strength, and Dahati and Dahana both of whom were exceedingly fierce and possessed of great energy.[33] Vāsava, that slayer of hostile heroes, gave unto Agni's son two companions, viz., Utkroça and Panchaka who were armed respectively with thunder-bolt and club. These had in battle slain innumerable enemies of Cakra.[34] The illustrious Vishnu gave unto Skanda three companions, viz., Chakra and Vikrama and Cankrama of great might.[35] The Açwins, O bull of Bharata's race, with gratified hearts, gave unto Skanda two companions, viz., Vardhana and Nandana who had mastered all the sciences.[36] The illustrious Dhātri gave unto that high-souled one five companions, viz., Kunda, Kusuma, Kumuda, Damvara and Ādamvara.[37] Tashtri gave unto Skanda two companions named Chakra and Anuchakra both of whom were endued with great strength.[38] The lord Mitra gave unto the high-souled Kumāra two illustrious companions named Suvrata and Satyasandha both of whom were endued with great learning and ascetic merit, possessed of agreeable features, capable of granting boons, and celebrated over the three worlds.[39] Vidhātri gave unto Kārtikeya two

companions of great celebrity, viz., the high-souled Suprabha and Cubhakarman.[40] Pushan gave him, O Bhārata, two companions, viz., Pānitraka and Kālika, both endued with great powers of illusion.[41] Vāyu gave him, O best of the Bharatas, two companions, viz., Vala and Ativala, endued with great might and very large mouths.[42] Varuna, firmly adhering to truth, gave him Ghasa and Atighasa of great might and possessed of mouth like that of the *Timi*.[43] Himavat gave unto Agni's son two companions, O king, viz., Suvarchas and Ativarchas.[44] Meru, O Bhārata, gave him two companions named Kānchana and Meghamālin.[45] Manu also gave unto Agni's son two others endued with great strength and prowess, viz., Sthira and Atisthira.[46] Vindhya gave unto Agni's son two companions named Ucchrita and Agniçringa both of whom fought with large stones.[47] Ocean gave him two mighty companions named Sangraha and Vigraha both armed with mace.[48] Pārvati of beautiful features gave unto Agni's son Unmāda and Pushpadanta and Cankukarna.[49] Vāsuki the king of the snakes, O tiger among men, gave unto the son of Agni two snakes named Jaya and Mahājaya.[50] Similarly the *Sāddhyas*, the *Rudras*, the *Vasus*, the *Pitris*, the Seas, the Rivers, and the Mountains, all endued with great might,[51] gave commanders of forces, armed with lances and battle-axes and decked with diverse kinds of ornaments.[52] Listen now to the names of those other combatants armed with diverse weapons and clad in diverse kinds of robes and ornaments, that Skanda procured.[53] They were Cankukarna, Nikumbha, Padma, Kumud, Ananta, Dwādaçabhuja, Krishna, Upakrishnaka,[54] Ghrānaçravas, Kapiskandha, Kānchanāksha, Jalandhama, Akshasantarjana, Kunadika, Tamobhrakrit,[55] Ekāksha, Dwādaçaksha, Ekajata, Sahaçravāhu, Vikata, Vyāghrāksha, Kshitikampana,[56] Punyanāman, Sunāman, Suvaktra, Priyadarçana, Pariçruta, Kokonada, Priyamālyānulepana,[57] Ajodara, Gajaçiras, Skandhāksha, Catalochana, Jwālājihbha, Karāla, Citakeça, Jati, Hari,[58] Krishnakeça, Jatādhara, Chaturdanshtra, Ashtajibha, Meghanāda, Prithuçravas,[59] Vidyutāksha, Dhanurvaktra, Jāthara, Marutāçana, Udarāksha, Rathāksha, Vajranābha, Vasuprabha,[60] Samudravega, Cailakampin, Vrisha, Meshapra-

vāha, Nanda, Upanandaka.[61] Dhumra, Cweta, Kalinga, Siddhārtha, Varada, Priyaka, Nanda, Gonanda,[62] Ānanda, Pramoda, Swastika, Dhruvaka, Kshemavāha, Suvāha, Siddhapatra,[63] Govraja, Kanakāpida, Gāyana, Hasana, Vāna, Khadga,[64] Vaitāli, Atitāli, Kathaka, Vātika, Hansaja, Pakshadigdhānga, Samudronmādana,[65] Ranotkata, Prahāsa. Cwetāsiddha, Nandaka, Kālakantha, Prabhāsa, Kumbhāndaka,[66] Kālakāksha, Cita, Bhutalonmathana, Yajnavāha, Pravāha, Devajāji, Somapa,[67] Majjāla, Kratha, Krātha, Tuhara, Tuhāra, Chitradeva,[68] Madhura, Suprasāda, Kiritin, Vatsala, Madhuvarna, Kalasodara,[69] Dharmada, Manmathakara, Cuchivaktra, Cwetavaktra, Suvaktra, Chāruvaktra, Pāndura,[70] Dandavāhu, Suvāhu, Rajas, Kokilaka, Achala, Kanakāksha, Vālakarakshaka,[71] Sanchāraka, Kokanada, Gridhrapatra, Jamvuka, Lohājvaktra, Javana, Kumbhavaktra, Kumbhaka,[72] Mundagriva, Krishnaujas, Hansavaktra, Chandrabha, Pānikurchas, Camvuka, Panchavaktra, Cikshaka, Chāsavaktra, Jāmvuka, Kharavaktra, and Kunchaka.[73] Besides these, many other high-souled and mighty companions, devoted to ascetic austerities and regardful of Brāhmanas, were given unto him by the Grandsire.[74] Some of them were in youth; some were old, and some, O Janamejaya, were very young in years. Thousands upon thousands of such came to Kārtikeya.[75] They were possessed of diverse kinds of faces. Listen to me, O Janamejaya, as I describe them! Some had faces like those of tortoises, and some like those of cocks. The faces of some were very long, O Bhārata.[76] Some again, had faces like those of dogs, and wolves, and hares, and owls, and asses, and camels, and hogs.[77] Some had human faces and some had faces like those of sheep, and jackals. Some were terrible and had faces like those of *makaras* and porpoises.[78] Some had faces like those of cats and some like those of biting flies; and the faces of some were very long. Some had faces like those of the mungoose, the owl, and the crow.[79] Some had faces like those of mice and peacocks and fishes and goats and sheep and buffaloes.[80] The faces of some resembled those of bears and tigers and leopards and lions. Some had faces like those of elephants and crocodiles.[81] The faces of some resembled those of Gadura and the rhinoceros and

the wolf. Some had faces like those of cows and mules and camels and cats.[83] Possessed of large stomachs and large legs and limbs, the eyes of some were like stars. The faces of some resembled those of pigeons and bulls.[83] Others had faces like those of *kokilas* and hawks and *Tittiris* and lizards. Some were clad in white robes.[84] Some had faces like those of snakes. The faces of some resembled those of porcupines. Indeed, some had frightful and some very agreeable faces; some had snakes for their clothes. The faces as also the noses of some resembled those of cows.[85] Some had large and protruding stomachs but other limbs very lean; some had large limbs but lean stomachs. The necks of some were very short and the ears of some were very large. Some had diverse kinds of snakes for their ornaments.[86] Some were clad in skins of large elephants, and some in black deer-skins. The mouths of some were on their shoulders.[87] Some had mouths on their stomachs, some on their backs, some on their cheeks, some on their calves, and some on their flanks, and the mouths of many were placed on other parts of their bodies.[88] The faces of many amongst those leaders of troops were like those of insects and worms. The mouths of many amongst them were like those of diverse beasts of prey. Some had many arms and some many heads.[89] The arms of some resembled trees, and the heads of some were on their loins. The faces of some were tapering like the bodies of snakes. Many amongst them had their abodes on diverse kinds of plants and herbs.[90] Some were clad in rags, some in diverse kinds of bones, some were diversely clad, and some were adorned in diverse kinds of garlands and diverse kinds of unguents.[91] Dressed diversely, some had skins for their robes. Some had head-gears; the brows of some were furrowed into lines; the necks of some bore marks like those on conch-shells; some were possessed of great effulgence.[92] Some had diadems, some had five tufts of hair on their heads, and the hair of some were very hard. Some had two tufts, some three, and some seven.[93] Some had feathers on their heads, some had crowns, some had heads that were perfectly bald, and some had matted locks. Some were adorned with beautiful garlands, and the faces of some were very hairy.[94] Battle was

the one thing in which they took great delight, and all of them were invincible by even the foremost ones amongst the gods. Many amongst them were clad in diverse kinds of celestial robes. All were fond of battle.[95] Some were of dark complexion, and the faces of some had no flesh on them. Some had very long backs, and some had no stomachs. The backs of some were very large while those of some were very short. Some had long stomachs and the limbs of some were long.[96] The arms of some were long while those of some were short. Some were dwarfs of short limbs. Some were haunch-backed. Some had short hips. The ears and heads of some were like those of elephants.[97] Some had noses like those of tortoises, some like those of wolves. Some had long lips, some had long hips, and some were frightful, having their faces downwards.[98] Some had very large teeth, some had very short teeth, and some had only four teeth. Thousands among them, O king, were exceedingly terrible, looking like infuriate elephants of gigantic size.[99] Some were of symmetrical limbs, possessed of great splendour, and adorned with ornaments. Some had yellow eyes, some had ears like arrows, some had noses like gavials, O Bhārata![100] Some had broad teeth, some had broad lips, and some had green hair. Possessed of diverse kinds of feet and lips and teeth, they had diverse kinds of arms and heads.[101] Clad in diverse kinds of skins, they spoke diverse kinds of languages, O Bhārata! Skilled in all provincial dialects, those puissant ones conversed with one another.[102] Those mighty companions, filled with joy, gambolled there, cutting capers (around Kārtikeya). Some were long-necked, some long-nailed, some long-legged. Some amongst them were large-headed and some large-armed.[103] The eyes of some were yellow, the throats of some were blue, and the ears of some were long, O Bhārata. The stomachs of some were like masses of antimony.[104] The eyes of some were white, the necks of some were red, and some had eyes of a tawny hue. Many were dark in color and many, O king, were of diverse colors, O Bhārata.[105] Many had ornaments on their persons that looked like yak-tails. Some bore white streaks on their bodies, and some bore red streaks. Some were of diversi-

fied colors and some had golden complexions, and some were endued with splendours like those of the peacock.[106] I shall describe to thee the weapons that were taken by those that came last to Kārtikeya. Listen to me.[107] Some had noses on their uplifted arms. Their faces were like those of tigers and asses. Their eyes were on their backs, their throats were blue, and their arms resembled spiked clubs.[108] Some were armed with *Çatāghnis* and discs, and some had heavy and short clubs. Some had swords and mallets and some were armed with bludgeons, O Bhārata.[109] Some, possessed of gigantic sizes and great strength, were armed with lances and scimitars. Some were armed with maces and *Bhuçundis* and some had spears on their hands.[110] Possessed of high souls and great strength and endued with great speed and great impetuosity, those mighty companions had diverse kinds of terrible weapons in their arms.[111] Beholding the installation of Kārtikeya, those beings of mighty energy, delighting in battle and wearing on their persons rows of tinkling bells, danced around him in joy.[112] These and many other mighty companions, O king, came to the high-souled and illustrious Kārtikeya.[113] Some belonged to the celestial regions, some to the aerial, and some to the regions of the Earth. All of them were endued with speed like that of the wind. Commanded by the gods, those brave and mighty ones became the companions of Kārtikeya.[114] Thousands upon thousands, millions upon millions, of such beings came there at the installation of the high-souled Kārtikeya and stood surrounding him."[115]

SECTION XLVI.

Vaicampāyana said,—"Listen now to the large bands of the *mothers*, those slayers of foes, O hero, that became the companions of Kumāra, as I mention their names.[1] Listen, O Bhārata, to the names of those illustrious mothers. The mobile and immobile universe is pervaded by those auspicious ones.[2] They are Prabhāvati, Viçālākshi, Palitā, Gonasi, Crimati, Vahulā, Vahuputrika,[3] Apsujātā, Gopāli, Vrihadamvālikā, Jayāvati, Mālatikā. Dhruvaratnā, Bhayankari,[4] Vasudāmā,

Sudāmā, Viçokā, Nandini, Ekachudā, Mahāchudā, Chakranemi,[5] Uttejanā, Jayatsenā, Kamalākshi, Cobhanā, Catrunjayā, Krodhanā, Calabhi, Khari,[6] Māgadhi, Cubhavaktrā, Tirthaseni, Gitipriyā, Kalyāni, Kodruromā, Amitāçanā,[7] Meghaswanā, Bhogavati, Subhru, Kanakāvati, Alatākshi, Viryavati, Viddyutjihbhā,[8] Padmāvati, Sunakshatrā, Kandarā, Vahuyojanā, Santānikā, Kamalā, Mahāvalā,[9] Sudāmā, Vahudāmā, Suprabhā, Jaçaswini, Nrityapriyā, Catolukhalamekhalā,[10] Cataghantā, Catānandā, Bhaganandā, Bhāvini, Vapusmati, Chandraçitā, Bhadrakāli,[11] Jhankārikā, Nishkuntikā, Vāmā, Chatwaravāsini, Sumangalā, Swastimati, Vriddhikāmā, Jayapriyā,[12] Ghanadā, Suprsādā, Bhavadā, Janeswari, Edi, Bhedi, Samedi, Vetālojanani,[13] Kanduti, Kālikā, Devamitrā, Tamvusi, Ketaki, Chitrasenā, Achalā,[14] Kukkutikā, Cankshalikā, Cakunikā, Kundarikā, Kokilikā, Kumbhikā, Catodari,[15] Utkrāthini, Jalelā, Mahāvegā, Kankanā, Manojavā, Kantākini, Pradhasā, Putanā,[16] Kheçayā, Antarghati, Vāmā, Kroçanā, Taditprabhā, Mandodari, Tuhundi, Kotarā, Meghavāhini,[17] Subhagā, Lamvini, Lamvā, Vasuchudā, Vikathini, Urddhāvenidharā, Pingākshi, Lohamekhalā,[18] Prithuvaktrā, Madhulikā, Madhukumbhā, Yakshālikā, Matsunikā, Jarāyu, Jarjjarānanā,[19] Khyātā, Dahadahā, Dhamadhamā, Khandakhandā, Pushanā, Manikuttitkā,[20] Amoghā, Lamvapayodharā, Venuvinādharā, Pingākshi, Lohamekshalā,[21] Caçolukamukhi, Krishnā, Kharajanghā, Mahājavā, Ciçumāramukhi, Cwetā, Lohitākshi, Vibhishanā,[22] Jatālikā, Kāmachari, Dirghajihbhā, Valotkatā, Kālehikā, Vāmanikā, Mukutā,[23] Lohitākshi, Mahākāyā, Haripindā, Ekatwachā, Sukusumā, Krishnakarni,[24] Kshurakarni, Chatushkarni, Karnaprāvaranā, Chatushpathaniketā, Gokarni, Mahishānanā,[25] Kharakarni, Mahākarni, Bheriswanamahāswanā, Cankshakumbhaçravā, Bhagadā,[26] Ganā, Suganā, Bhini, Kāmadā, Chatuspatharatā, Bhutirthā, Anyagocharā,[27] Paçudā, Vittadā, Sukhadā, Mahāyaçā, Payodā, Gomahishadā, Suviçālā,[28] Pratishthā, Supratishthā, Rochamānā, Surochanā, Naukarni, Mukhakarni, Vaçirā, Manthini, Ekavaktrā, Megharavā, Meghamāla, and Virochanā.[29] These and many other mothers, O bull of Bharata's race, numbering by thousands, of diverse forms, became the followers of Kārtikeya.[30] Their nails were

long, their teeth were large and their lips also, O Bhārata, were protruding. Of straight forms and sweet features, all of them, endowed with youth, were decked with ornaments.[31] Possessed of ascetic merit, they were capable of assuming any form at will. Not having much flesh on their limbs, they were of fair complexions and endued with splendour like that of gold.[32] Some amongst them were dark and looked like clouds in hue, and some were of the color of smoke, O bull of Bharata's race. And some were endued with the splendour of the morning sun and were highly blessed. Possessed of long tresses, they were clad in robes of white.[33] The braids of some were tied upwards, and the eyes of some were tawny, and some had girdles that were very long. Some had long stomachs, some had long ears, and some had long breasts.[34] Some had coppery eyes and coppery complexions, and the eyes of some were green. Capable of granting boons and of sojourning at will, they were always cheerful.[35] Possessed of great strength, some amongst them partook of the nature of Yama, some of Rudra, some of Soma, some of Kuvera, some of Varuna, some of Indra, and some of Agni, O scorcher of foes.[36] And some partook of the nature of Vāyu, some of Kumāra, some of Brahman, O bull of Bharata's race, and some of Vishnu, and some of Surya, and some of Varāha.[37] Of charming and delightful features, they were beautiful like the *Apsaras*. In voice they resembled the *kokila* and in prosperity they resembled the Lord of Treasures.[38] In battle, their energy resembled that of Cakra. In splendour they resembled fire. In battle they always inspired their foes with terror.[39] Capable of assuming any form at will, in fleetness they resembled the very wind. Of inconceivable might and energy, their prowess also was inconceivable.[40] They have their abodes on trees and open spots and crossings of four roads. They live also in caves and crematoriums, mountains and springs.[41] Adorned in diverse kinds of ornaments, they wear diverse kinds of attire, and speak diverse languages.[42] These and many other tribes (of the mothers), all capable of inspiring foes with dread, followed the high-souled Kārtikeya, at the command of the chief of the celestials.[43] The adorable chastiser of Pāka, O tiger among kings,

gave unto Guha (Kārtikeya) a dart for the destruction of the enemies of the gods.[44] That dart produces a loud whiz and is adorned with many large bells. Possessed of great splendour, it seemed to blaze with light. And Indra also gave him a banner effulgent as the morning sun.[45] Civa gave him a large army, exceedingly fierce and armed with diverse kinds of weapons, and endued with great energy begotten of ascetic penances.[46] Invincible and possessing all the qualities of a good army, that force was known by the name of *Dhananjayā*. It was protected by thirty thousand warriors each of whom was possessed of might equal to that of Rudra himself. That force knew not how to fly from battle.[47] Vishnu gave him a triumphal garland that enhances the might of the wearer. Umā gave him two pieces of cloth, of effulgence like that of the Sun.[48] With great pleasure Gangā gave unto Kumāra a celestial water-pot, begotten of *amrita*, and Vrihaspati gave him a sacred stick.[49] Gadura gave him his favorite son, a peacock of beautiful feathers.[50] Aruna gave him a cock of sharp talons. The royal Varuna gave him a snake of great energy and might.[51] The lord Brahman gave unto that god devoted to *Brahma* a black deer-skin. And the Creator of all the worlds also gave him Victory in all battles.[52] Having obtained the command of the celestial forces, Skanda looked resplendent like a blazing fire of bright flames.[53] Accompanied by those companions and the mothers, he proceeded for the destruction of the *Daityas*, gladdening all the foremost of the gods.[54] That terrible host of celestials, furnished with standards adorned with bells, and equipt with drums and conchs and cymbals, and armed with weapons, and decked with many banners, looked beautiful like the autumnal firmament bespangled with planets and stars.[55] Then that vast assemblage of celestials and diverse kinds of creatures began cheerfully to beat their drums and blow their conchs numbering in thousands.[56] And they also played on their *Patahas* and *Jharjharas* and *Krikachas* and cow-horns and *Ādamvaras* and *Gomukhas* and *Dindimas* of loud sound.[57] All the gods, with Vāsava at their head, praised Kumāra. The celestials and the *Gandharvas* sang and the *Apsaras* danced.[58] Well pleased (with these

attentions) Skanda granted a boon unto all the gods, saying,—I shall slay all your foes,—them, that is, that desire to slay you![59]—Having obtained this boon from that best of gods, the illustrious celestials regarded their foes to be already slain.[60] After Skanda had granted that boon, a loud sound arose from all those creatures inspired with joy, filling the three worlds.[61] Accompanied by that vast host, Skanda then set out for the destruction of the *Daityas* and the protection of the denizens of heaven.[62] Exertion, and Victory, and Righteousness, and Success, and Prosperity, and Courage, and the Scriptures, (in their embodied forms) proceeded in the van of Kārtikeya's army, O king![63] With that terrible force, which was armed with lances and mallets and blazing hands and maces and heavy clubs and arrows and darts and spears, and which was decked with beautiful ornaments and armour, and which uttered roars like those of a proud lion, the divine Guha set out.[64-65] Beholding him, all the *Daityas* and *Rākshasas* and *Dānavas*, anxious with fear, fled away on all sides.[66] Armed with diverse weapons, the celestials pursued them. Seeing (the foe flying away), Skanda, endued with energy and might, became inflamed with wrath.[67] He repeatedly hurled his terrible weapon, viz., the dart (he had received from Agni). The energy that he then displayed resembled a fire fed with libations of clarified butter.[68] While the dart was repeatedly hurled by Skanda of immeasurable energy, meteoric flashes, O king, fell upon the Earth.[69] Thunder-bolts also, with tremendous noise, fell upon the Earth. Everything became as frightful, O king, as it becomes on the day of the universal destruction.[70] When that terrible dart was once hurled by the son of Agni, millions of darts issued from it, O bull of Bharata's race.[71] The puissant and adorable Skanda, filled with joy, at last slew Tāraka, the chief of the *Daityas*, endued with great might and prowess, and surrounded (in that battle) by a hundred thousand heroic and mighty *Daityas*.[72] He then, in that battle, slew Mahisha who was surrounded by eight *Padmas** of *Daityas*. He next slew Tripāda who was sur-

* A very large number.—T.

rounded by a thousand *Ajutas* of *Daityas*.[73] The puissant Skanda then slew Hradodara, who was surrounded by ten *Nikharvas* of *Daityas*, with all his followers armed with diverse weapons.[74] Filling the ten points of the compass, the followers of Kumāra, O king, made a loud noise while those *Daityas* were being slain, and danced and jumped and laughed in joy.[75] Thousands of *Daityas*, O king, were burnt with the flames that issued from Skanda's dart, while others breathed their last, terrified by the roars of Skanda.[76] The three worlds were frightened at the yawns of Skanda's soldiers. The foes were consumed with flames produced by Skanda. Many were slain by his roars alone.[77] Some amongst the foes of the gods, struck with banners, were slain. Some, frightened by the sounds of bells, fell down on the surface of the Earth. Some, mangled with weapons, fell down, deprived of life.[78] In this way the heroic and mighty Kārtikeya slew innumerabte foes of the gods, possessed of great strength, that came to fight with him.[79] Then Vali's son Vāna of great might, getting upon the Krauncha mountain, battled with the celestial host.[80] Possessed of great intelligence, the great generalissimo Skanda rushed against that foe of the gods. From fear of Kārtikeya, he took shelter within the Krauncha mountain.[81] Inflamed with rage, the adorable Kārtikeya then pierced that mountain with that dart given him by Agni.* The mountain was called *Krauncha* (crane) because of the sound it always produced resembled the cry of a crane.[82] That mountain was variegated with *Çāla* trees. The apes and elephants on it were afrighted. The birds that had their abode on it rose up and wheeled around in the welkin. The snakes began to dart down its sides.[83] It resounded also with the cries of leopards and bears in large numbers that ran hither and thither in fear. Other forests on it rang with the cries of hundreds upon hundreds of animals.[84] *Çarabhas* and lions suddenly ran out. In consequence of all this, that mountain, though it was reduced to a very pitiable

* In verse 44 of the previous section it is said that Indra gave him this dart.—T.

plight, still assumed a very beautiful aspect.[85] The *Vidyādharas* dwelling on its summits soared into the air. The *Kinnaras* also became very anxious, distracted by the fear caused by the fall of Skanda's dart.[86] The *Daityas* then, by hundreds and thousands, came out of that blazing mountain, all clad in beautiful ornaments and garlands. The followers of Kumāra, prevailing over them in battle, slew them all,[87] The adorable Skanda, inflamed with rage, quickly slew the son of the *Daitya* chief (Vali) along with his younger brother; even as Indra had slain Vritra (in days before).[88] That slayer of hostile heroes, viz. Agni's son, pierced with his dart the Krauncha mountain, dividing his own self sometimes into many and sometimes uniting all his portions into one.[89] Repeatedly hurled from his hand, the dart repeatedly come back to him. Even such was the might and glory of the adorable son of Agni.[90] With redoubled heroism, and energy and fame and success, the god pierced the mountain and slew hundreds of *Daityas*.[91] The adorable god, having thus slain the enemies of the celestials, was worshipped and honored by the latter and obtained great joy.[92] After the Krauncha mountain had been pierced and after the son of Chanda had been slain; drums were beat, O king, and conchs were blown.[93] The celestial ladies rained floral showers in succession upon that divine lord of *Yogins*.[94] Auspicious breezes began to blow, bearing celestial perfumes. The *Gandharvas* hymned his praises as also great *Rishis* always engaged in the performance of sacrifices.[95] Some speak of him as the puissant son of the Grandsire, viz., Sanatkumāra, the eldest of all the sons of Brahman.[96] Some speak of him as the son of Maheçwara, and some as that of Agni. Some again describe him as the son of Umā or of the Krittikās or of Gangā.[97] Hundreds and thousands of people speak of that Lord of *Yogins*, of blazing form and great might, as the son of one of those, or of either of two of those, or of any one of four of those.[98]

"I have thus told thee, O king, everything about the installation of Kārtikeya. Listen now to the history of the sacredness of that foremost of *tirthas* on the Saraswati.[99] That foremost of *tirthas*, O monarch, after the enemies of the gods

had been slain, became a second heaven.[100] The puissant son of Agni gave unto each of the foremost ones among the celestials diverse kinds of dominion and affluence and at last the sovereignty of the three worlds.[101] Even thus, O monarch, was that adorable exterminater of the *Daityas* installed by the gods as their generalissimo.[102] That other *tirtha*, O bull of Bharata's race, where in days of yore Varuna the Lord of waters had been installed by the celestials, is known by the name of *Taijasa*.[103] Having bathed in that *tirtha* and adored Skanda, Rāma gave unto the Brāhmanas gold and clothes and ornaments and other things.[104] Passing one night there, that slayer of hostile heroes, viz., Mādhava, praising that foremost of *tirthas* and touching its water, became cheerful and happy.[105] I have now told thee everything about which thou hadst enquired, viz., how the divine Skanda was installed by the assembled gods!"[106]

Section XLVII.

Janamejaya said,—"This history, O regenerate one, that I have heard from thee is exceedingly wonderful, viz., this narration, in detail, of the installation, according to due rites, of Skanda![1] O thou possessed of wealth of asceticism, I deem myself cleansed by having listened to this account! My hair stands on end and my mind hath become cheerful![2] Having heard the history of the installation of Kumāra and the destruction of the *Daityas*, great hath been my joy! I feel a curiosity, however, in respect of another matter![3] How was the Lord of the waters installed by the celestials in that *tirtha* in days of yore? O best of men, tell me all that, for thou art possessed of great wisdom and art skilled in narration!"[4]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Listen, O king, to this wonderful history as it transpired truly in a former *kalpa!* In days of yore, in the *Krita* age, O king, all the celestials, duly approaching Varuna, said unto him these words:[5]—'As Cakra, the Lord of the celestials, always protects us from every fear, similarly be thou the Lord of all the rivers![6] Thou always residest O god, in the Ocean, that home of *makaras!* This

Ocean, the lord of rivers, will then be under thy dominion![7] Thou shalt then wax and wane with Soma!'—(Thus addressed) Varuna answered them, saying,—'Let it be so![8] All the celestials then, assembling together, made Varuna having his abode in the Ocean the Lord of all the waters, according to the rites laid down in the scriptures.[9] Having installed Varuna as the Lord of all acquatic creatures and worshipping him duly, the celestials returned to their respective abodes.[10] Installed by the celestials, the illustrious Varuna began to duly protect seas and lakes and rivers and other receptacles of water as Cakra protects the gods.[11] Bathing in that *tirtha* also and giving away diverse kinds of gifts, Valadeva, the slayer of Pralamva, possessed of great wisdom, then proceeded to *Agni tirtha*, that spot, viz, where the eater of clarified butter, disappearing from the view, became concealed within the entrails of the *Çami* wood.[12] When the light of all the worlds thus disappeared, O sinless one, the gods then repaired to the Grandsire of the universe.[13] And they said,—'The adorable Agni has disappeared. We do not know the reason. Let not all creatures be destroyed! Create fire, O puissant Lord!' "[14]

Janamejaya said,—"For what reason did Agni, the Creator of all the worlds, disappear? How also was he discovered by the gods? Tell me all this in detail!"[15]

Vaiçampāyāna said,—"Agni of great energy became very much frightened at the curse of Bhrigu. Concealing himself within the entrails of the *Çami* wood, that adorable god disappeared from the view.[16] Upon the disappearance of Agni, all the gods, with Vāsava at their head, in great affliction, searched for the missing god.[17] Finding Agni then, they saw that god lying within the entrails of the *Çami* wood.[18] The celestials, O tiger among kings, with Vrihaspati at their head, having succeeded in finding out the god, became very glad with Vāsava amongst them.[19] They then returned to the places they had come from. Agni also, from Bhrigu's curse, became an eater of everything as Bhrigu, that utterer of *Brahma*, had said.[20] The intelligent Valarāma, having bathed there, then proceeded to Brahmayoni where the adorable Grandsire of all the worlds had exercised his functions of

creation.[21] In days of yore, the Lord Brahman, having with all the gods bathed in that *tirtha*, created all the *tirthas*, according to due rites, for the celestials.[22] Bathing there and giving away diverse kinds of gifts, Valadeva then proceeded to the *tirtha* called *Kauvera* where the puissant Ailavila, having practised severe auterities, obtained, O king, the Lordship over all treasures.[23] While he dwelt there (engaged in austerities), all kinds of wealth and all the precious gems came to him of their own accord. Valadeva, having repaired to that *tirtha* and bathed in its waters, duly gave much wealth unto the Brāhmanas.[24] Rāma beheld at that spot the excellent woods of Kuvera. In days of yore, the high-souled Kuvera, the chief of the *Yakhas*, having practised the severest austerities there, obtained many boons.[25] There were the lordship of all treasures, the friendship of Rudra possessed of immeasurable energy, the status of a god, the regency over a particular point of the compass (viz., the north), and a son named Nalakuvara. These the chief of the *Yakshas* speedily obtained there, O thou of mighty arms![26] The Maruts, coming there, installed him duly (in his sovereignty). He also obtained for a vehicle a well-equipt and celestial car, fleet as thought, as also all the affluence of a god.[27] Bathing in that *tirtha* and giving away much wealth, Vala using white unguents thence proceeded quickly to another *tirtha*.[28] Populous with all kinds of creatures, that *tirtha* is known by the name of Vadarapāchana. There the fruits of every season are always to be found and flowers and fruits of every kind are always abundant."[29]

SECTION XLVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Rāma (as already said) then proceeded to the *tirtha* called *Vadarapāchana* where dwell many ascetics and *Siddhas*. There the daughter of Bharadwāja, unrivalled on Earth for beauty, named Cruvāvati, practised severe austerities. She was a maiden who led the life of a *Brahmachārini*.[1-2] That beautiful damsel, observing diverse kinds of vows, practised the austerest of penances, moved by the desire of obtaining the Lord of the celestials for her husband.[3]

Many years passed away, O perpetuater of Kuru's race, during which that damsel continually observed those diverse kinds of vows exceedingly difficult of being practised by women.[4] The adorable chastiser of Pāka at last became gratified with her in consequence of that conduct and those penances of hers and that high-regard she showed for him.[5] The puissant Lord of the celestials then came to that hermitage, having assumed the form of the high-souled and regenerate *Rishi* Vaçishtha.[6] Beholding that foremost of ascetics, viz., Vaçishtha, of the austerest penances, she worshipped him, O Bhārata, according to the rites observed by ascetics.[7] Conversant with vows, the auspicious and sweet-speeched damsel addressed him, saying,—'O adorable one, O tiger among ascetics, tell me thy commands, O lord![8] O thou of excellent vows, I shall serve thee, according to the measure of my might! I will not, however, give thee my hand, in consequence of my regard for Cakra![9] I am gratifying Cakra, the lord of the three worlds, with vows and rigid observances and ascetic penances!'[10] Thus addressed by her, the illustrious god, smiling as he cast his eyes on her, and knowing her observances, addressed her sweetly, O Bhārata, saying,[11]—'Thou practisest penances of the austerest kind! This is known to me, O thou of excellent vows! That object also, cherished in thy heart, for the attainment of which thou strivest, O auspicious one,[12] shall, O thou of beautiful face, be accomplished for thee! Everything is attainable by penances. Everything rests on penances.[13] All those regions of blessedness, O thou of beautiful face, that belong to the gods can be obtained by penances. Penances are the root of great happiness.[14] Those men that cast off their bodies after having practised austere penances, obtain the status of gods, O auspicious one! Bear in mind these words of mine![15] Do thou now, O blessed damsel, boil these five jujubes, O thou of excellent vows!' Having said these words, the adorable slayer of Vala went away, taking leave, to mentally recite certain *mantras*[16] at an excellent *tirtha* not far from that hermitage. That *tirtha* came to be known in the three worlds after the name of Indra, O giver of honors![17] Indeed, it was for the purpose of test-

ing the damsel's devotion that the Lord of the celestials acted in that way for obstructing the boiling of the jujubes.[18] The damsel, O king, having cleansed herself, began her task; restraining speech and with attention fixed on it, she sat to her task, without feeling any fatigue.[19] Even thus that damsel of high vows, O tiger among kings, began to boil those jujubes. As she sat employed in her task, O bull among men, day was about to wane but yet those jujubes showed no signs of having been softened.[20] The fuel she had there was all consumed. Seeing the fire about to die away owing to want of fuel, she began to burn her own limbs.[21] The beautiful maiden first thrust her feet into the fire. The sinless damsel sat still while her feet began to be consumed.[22] The faultless girl did not at all mind her burning feet. Difficult of accomplishment, she did it from desire of doing good to the *Rishi* (that had been her guest).[23] Her face did not at all change under that painful process, nor did she feel any cheerlessness on that account. Having thrust her limbs into the fire, she felt as much joy as if she had dipped them into cool water.[24] The words of the *Rishi*, viz.,—*Cook these jujubes well*—were borne in her mind, O Bhārata![25] The auspicious damsel, bearing those words of the great *Rishi* in her mind, began to cook those jujubes although the latter, O king, showed no signs of softening.[26] The adorable Agni himself consumed her feet. For this, however, the maiden did not feel the slightest pain.[27] Beholding this act of hers, the Lord of the three worlds became highly gratified. He then showed himself in his own proper form to the damsel.[28] The chief of the celestials then addressed that maiden of very austere vows, saying,—'I am gratified with thy devotion, thy penances, and thy vows![29] The wish, therefore, O auspicious one, that thou cheerishest shall be accomplished! Casting off thy body, O blessed one, thau shalt in heaven live with me![30] This hermitage, again, shall become the foremost of *tirthas* in the world, capable of cleansing from every sin, O thou of fair eye-brows, and shall be known by the name of *Vadarapāchana*. It shall be celebrated in the three worlds and shall be praised by great *Rishis*.[31] In this very *tirtha*, O auspicious, sinless, and highly blessed one,

the seven *Rishis* had, on one occasion, left Arundhati (the wife of one of them) while they went to Himavat.[33] Those highly blessed ones, of very rigid vows, had gone there for gathering fruits and roots for their sustenance.[33] While they thus lived in a forest of Himavat for procuring their sustenance, a drought occured extending for twelve years.[34] Those ascetics, having made an asylum for themselves, continued to live there. Meanwhile Arundhati devoted herself to ascetic penances (at the spot where she had been left).[35] Beholding Arundhatī devoted to the austerest of vows, the boon-giving and Three-eyed deity (Mahādeva), highly pleased, came there.[36] The illustrious Mahādeva, assuming the form of a Brāhmana, came to her and said,—I desire alms, O auspicious one![37]—The beautiful Arundhati said unto him,—Our store of food hath been exhausted, O Brāhmana! Do thou eat jujubes![38]—Mahādeva replied,—Cook these jujubes, O thou of excellent vows!—After these words, she began to cook those jujubes for doing what was agreeable to that Brāhmana.[39] Placing those jujubes on the fire, the celebrated Arundhati listened to diverse excellent and charming and sacred discourses (from the lips of Mahādeva). That twelve years' drought then passed away (as if it were a single day).[40] Without food, and employed in cooking and listening to those auspicious discourses, that terrible period passed away as if it were a single day to her.[41] Then the seven *Rishis*, having procured fruits from the mountain, returned to that spot. The adorable Mahādeva, highly pleased with Arundhati, said unto her,[42]—Approach, as formerly, these *Rishis*, O righteous one! I have been gratified with thy penances and vows![43]—The adorable Hara then stood confest in his own form. Gratified, he spoke unto them about the noble conduct of Arundhati (in these words),[44]—The ascetic merit, ye regenerate ones, that this lady hath earned, is, I think, much greater than what ye have earned on the breast of Himavat![45] The penances practised by this lady have been exceedingly austere, for she passed twelve years in cooking, herself fasting all the while![46]—The divine Mahādeva then, addressing Arundhati, said unto her,—Solicit thou the boon, O auspicious dame, which is in thy heart![47]—

Then that lady of large eyes that were of a reddish hue addressed that god in the midst of the seven *Rishis*, saying,—If, O divine one, thou art gratified with me, then let this spot be an excellent *tirtha!* Let it be known by the name of *Vadarapāchana* and let it be the favorite resort of *Siddhas* and celestial *Rishis!*[48] So also, O god of gods, let him who observes a fast here and resides for three nights after having cleansed himself, obtain the fruit of a twelve years' fast![49]—The god answered her, saying,—Let it be so!—Praised by the seven *Rishis*, the god then repaired to heaven.[50] Indeed, the *Rishis* had been filled with wonder at sight of the god and upon beholding the chaste Arundhati herself unspent and still possessed of the hue of health and so capable of bearing hunger and thirst.[51] Even thus the pure-souled Arundhati, in days of old, obtained the highest success, like thee, O highly blessed lady, for my sake, O damsel of rigid vows![52] Thou, however, O amiable maiden, hast practised severer penances! Gratified with thy vows, I shall also grant thee this especial boon, O auspicious one,[53] a boon that is superior to what was granted to Arundhati! Through the power of the high-souled god who had granted that boon to Arundhati and through the energy of thyself, O amiable one, I shall duly grant thee another boon now,[54] *viz.*, that the person who will reside in this *tirtha* for only one night and bathe here with soul fixed (on meditation), will, after casting off his body, obtain many regions of blessedness that are difficult of acquisition (by other means)!"[55]—Having said these words unto the cleansed Cruvāvati, the thousand-eyed Cakra of great energy then went back to heaven.[56] After the wielder of the thunderbolt, O king, had departed, a shower of celestial flowers of sweet fragrance fell there, O chief of Bharata's race![57] Celestial kettle-drums also, of loud sound, were beat there. Auspicious and perfumed breezes also blew there, O monarch![58] The auspicious Cruvāvati then, casting off her body, became the spouse of Indra. Obtaining that status through austere penances, she began to pass her time, sporting with him for ever and ever."[59]

Janamejaya said,—"Who was the mother of Cruvāvati,

and how was that fair damsel reared? I desire to hear this, O Brāhmana, for the curiosity I feel is great!"[60]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The vital seed of the regenerate and high-souled *Rishi* Bharadwāja fell upon beholding the large-eyed *Apsarā* Ghritāchi as the latter was passing at one time.[61] That foremost of ascetics thereupon held it in his hand. It was then kept in a cup made of the leaves of a tree. In that cup was born the girl Cruvāvati.[62] Having performed the usual post-genital rites, the great ascetic Bharadwāja, endued with wealth of penances, gave her a name.[63] The name the righteous-souled *Rishi* gave her in the presence of the gods and *Rishis* was Cruvāvati. Keeping the girl in his hermitage, Bharadwāja repaired to the forests of Himavat.[64] That foremost one among the Yadus, viz., Valadeva of great dignity, having bathed in that *tirtha* and given away much wealth unto many foremost of Brāhmanas, then proceeded, with soul well fixed on meditation, to the *tirtha* of Cakra."[65]

SECTION XLIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The mighty chief of the Yadus, having proceeded to Indra's *tirtha*, bathed there according to due rites and gave away wealth and gems unto the Brāhmanas.[1] There the chief of the celestials had performed a hundred horse-sacrifices and given away enormous wealth unto Vrihaspati.[2] Indeed, through the assistance of Brāhmanas conversant with the *Vedas*, Cakra performed all those sacrifices there, according to rites ordained (in the scriptures). Those sacrifices were such that everything in them was unstinted. Steeds of all kinds were brought there. The gifts to Brāhmanas were profuse.[3] Having duly completed those hundred sacrifices, O chief of the Bharatas, Cakra of great splendour came to be called by the name of *Çatakratu*.[4] That auspicious and sacred *tirtha*, capable of cleansing from every sin, thereupon came to be called after his name as *Indra-tirtha*.[5] Having duly bathed there, Valadeva worshipped the Brāhmanas with presents of excellent food and robes. He then proceeded to that auspicious and foremost of *tirthas* called after

the name of Rāma.[6] The highly blessed Rāma of Bhrigu's race, endued with great ascetic merit, repeatedly subjugated the Earth and slew all the foremost of Kshatriyas.[7] (After achieving such feats) Rāma performed in that *tirtha* a *Vājapeya* sacrifice and a hundred horse-sacrifices through the assistance of his preceptor Kaçyapa, that best of *Munis*. There, as sacrificial fee, Rāma gave unto his preceptor the whole Earth with her oceans.[8] The great Rāma, having duly bathed there, made presents unto the Brāmamanas, O Janamejaya, and worshipped them thus.[9] Having made diverse presents consisting of diverse kinds of gems as also kine and elephants and female slaves and sheep and goats, he then retired into the woods.[10] Having bathed in that sacred and foremost of *tirthas* that was the resort of gods and regenerate *Rishis*, Valadeva duly worshipped the ascetics there, and then proceeded to the *tirtha* called Yamunā.[11] Endued with great effulgence, Varuna, the highly blessed son of Aditi, had in days of yore performed in that *tirtha* the *Rājasuya* sacrifice, O lord of Earth![12] Having in battle subjugated both men and celestials and *Gandharvas* and *Rākshasas*, Varuna, O king,[13] that slayer of hostile heroes, performed his grand sacrifice in that *tirtha*. Upon the commencement of that foremost of sacrifices, a battle ensued between the gods and the *Dānavas*, inspiring the three worlds with terror.[14] After the completion of that foremost of sacrifices, viz., the *Rājasuya* (of Varuna), a terrible battle, O Janamejaya, ensued amongst the Kshatriyas.[15] The ever liberal and puissant Valadeva, having worshipped the *Rishis* there, made many presents unto those that desired them.[16] Filled with joy and praised by the great *Rishis*, Valadeva, that hero ever decked with garlands of wild flowers and possessed of eyes like lotus leaves, then proceeded to the *tirtha* called Āditya.[17] There, O best of kings, the adorable Surya of great splendour, having performed a sacrifice, obtained the sovereignty of all luminous bodies (in the universe) and acquired also his great energy.[18] There, in that *tirtha* situate on the bank of that river, all the gods with Vāsava at their head, the *Viçwedevas*, the *Maruts*, the *Gandharvas*, the *Apsaras*,[19] the Island-born (Vyāsa), Cuka, Krishna the slayer

of Madhu, the *Yakshas*, the *Rākshasas*, and the *Piçāchas*, O king,[20] and diverse others, numbering by thousands, all crowned with ascetic success, always reside. Indeed, in that auspicious and sacred *tirtha* of the Saraswati, Vishnu himself, having in days of yore slain the *Asuras* Madhu and Kaitabha, had, O chief of the Bharatas, performed his ablutions.[21-22] The Island-born (Vyāsa) also, of virtuous soul, O Bhārata, having bathed in that *tirtha*, obtained great *Yoga* powers and attained to high success.[23] Endued with great ascetic merit, the *Rishi* Asita-Devala also, having bathed in that very *tirtha* with soul rapt in high *Yoga* meditation, obtained great *Yoga* powers."[24]

SECTION L.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"In that *tirtha* lived in days of yore a *Rishi* of virtuous soul, named Asita-Devala, observant of the duties of domesticity.[1] Devoted to virtue, he led a life of purity and self-restraint. Possessed of great ascetic merit, he was compassionate unto all creatures and never injured any one. In word, deed, and thought, he maintained an equal behaviour towards all creatures.[2] Without wrath, O monarch, censure and praise were equal to him. Of equal attitude towards the agreeable and the disagreeable, he was, like Yama himself, thoroughly impartial.[3] The great ascetic looked with an equal eye upon gold and a heap of pebbles. He daily worshipped the gods and guests, and the Brāhmanas (that came to him). Ever devoted to righteousness, he always practised the vow of *Brahmacharya*.[4] Once upon a time, an intelligent ascetic, O monarch, of the name of Jaigishavya, devoted to *Yoga* and rapt in meditation and leading the life of a mendicant, came to Devala's asylum.[5] Possessed of great splendour, that great ascetic, ever devoted to *Yoga*, O monarch, while residing in Devala's asylum, became crowned with ascetic success.[6] Indeed, while the great *Muni* Jaigishavya resided there, Devala kept his eyes on him, never neglecting him at any time.[7] Thus, O monarch, a long time was passed by the two in days of yore. On one occasion, Devala lost sight of Jaigishavya, that foremost of ascetics.[8] At the hour,

however, of dinner, O Janamejaya, the intelligent and righteous ascetic, leading a life of mendicancy, approached Devala for soliciting alms.[9] Beholding that great ascetic re-appear in the guise of a mendicant, Devala showed him great honors and expressed much gratification.[10] And Devala worshipped his guest, O Bhārata, according to the measure of his abilities, after the rites laid down by the *Rishis* and with great attention for many years.[11] One day, however, O king, in the sight of that great *Muni*, a deep anxiety perturbed the heart of the high-souled Devala.[12] The latter thought within himself,—'Many years have I passed in worshipping this ascetic. This idle mendicant, however, hath not yet spoken to me a single word!'[13]—Having thought of this, the blessed Devala proceeded to the shores of the ocean, journeying through the welkin and bearing his earthen jug with him.[14] Arrived at the coast of the Ocean, that lord of rivers, O Bhārata, the righteous-souled Devala saw Jaigishavya arrived there before him.[15] The lord Asita, at this sight, became filled with wonder and thought within himself,—'How could the mendicant come to the ocean and perform his ablutions even before my arrival?'[16] Thus thought the great *Rishi* Asita. Duly performing his ablutions there and purifying himself thereby, he then began to silently recite the sacred *mantras*.[17] Having finished his ablutions and silent prayers, the blessed Devala returned to his asylum, O Janamejaya, bearing with him his earthen vessel filled with water.[18] As the ascetic, however, entered his own asylum, he saw Jaigishavya seated there.[19] The great ascetic Jaigishavya never spoke a word to Devala but lived in the latter's asylum as if he were a piece of wood.[20] Having beheld that ascetic, who was an ocean of austerities, plunged in the waters of the sea (before his own arrival there), Asita now saw him returned to his hermitage before his own return.[21] Witnessing this power, derived through *Yoga*, of Jaigishavya's penances, Asita-Devala, O king, endued with great intelligence, began to reflect upon the matter.[22] Indeed, that best of ascetics, O monarch, wondered much, saying,—'How could this one be seen in the ocean and again in my hermitage?'[23] While employed in such thoughts, the ascetic Devala,

conversant with *mantras*, then soared aloft, O monarch, from his hermitage into the sky, for ascertaining who Jaigishavya wedded to a life of mendicancy really was.[24] Devala saw crowds of sky-ranging *Siddhas* rapt in meditation, and he saw Jaigishavya reverentially worshipped by those *Siddhas*.[25] Firm in the obervance of his vows and persevering (in his efforts), Devala became filled with wrath at the sight. He then saw Jaigishavya set out for heaven.[26] He next beheld him proceed to the region of the *Pitris*. Devala saw him then proceed to the region of Yama.[27] From Yama's region the great ascetic Jaigishavya was then seen to soar aloft and proceed to the abode of Soma. He was then seen to proceed to the blessed regions (one after another) of the performers of certain rigid sacrifices.[28] Thence he proceeded to the regions of the *Agnihotris* and thence to the region of those ascetics that perform the *Darca* and the *Paurnamāsa* sacrifices.[29] The intelligent Devala then saw him proceed from those regions of persons performing sacrifices by killing animals to that pure region which is worshipped by the very gods.[30] Devala next saw the mendicant proceed to the place of those ascetics that perform the sacrifice called *Chāturmāsya* and diverse others of the same kind. Thence he proceeded to the region belonging to the performers of the *Agnishtoma* sacrifice.[31] Devala then saw his guest repair to the place of those ascetics that perform the sacrifice called *Agnishutta*.[32] Indeed, Devala next saw him in the regions of those highly wise men that perform that foremost of sacrifices, viz., *Vājapeya*, and that other sacrifice in which a profusion of gold is necessary.[33] Then he saw Jaigishavya in the region of those that perform the *Rājasuya* and the *Pundarika*.[34] He then saw him in the regions of those foremost of men that perform the horse-sacrifice and the sacrifice in which human beings are slaughtered.[35] Indeed, Devala saw Jaigishavya in the regions also of those that perform the sacrifice called *Sautrāmani* and that other in which the flesh, so difficult to procure, of all living animals is required.[36] Jaigishavya was then seen in the regions of those that perform the sacrifice called *Dādaçāha* and diverse others of a similar character.[37] Asita next saw his guest sojourning in the region

of Mitrāvaruna and then in that of the Ādityas.[38] Asita then saw his guest pass through the regions of the Rudras, the Vasus, and Vrihaspati.[39] Having soared next into the blessed region called Goloka, Jaigishavya was next seen to pass into these of the *Brahmasatris*.[40] Having by his energy passed through three other regions, he was seen to proceed to those regions that are reserved for women that are chaste and devoted to their husbands.[41] Asita, however, at this point, O chastiser of foes, lost sight of Jaigishavya, that foremost of ascetics, who, rapt in *Yoga*, vanished from his sight.[42] The highly blessed Devala then reflected upon the power of Jaigishavya and the excellence of his vows as also upon the unrivalled success of his *Yoga*.[43] Then the self-restrained Asita, with joined hands and in a reverential spirit, enquired of those foremost of *Siddhas* in the regions of the *Brahmasatris*, saying,[44]—'I do not see Jaigishavya! Tell me where that ascetic of great energy is! I desire to hear this, for great is my curiosity!'[45]

"The *Siddhas* said,—Listen, O Devala of rigid vows, as we speak to thee the truth! Jaigishavya hath gone to the eternal region of Brahman!'"[46]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of those *Siddhas* residing in the regions of the *Brahmasatris*, Asita endeavoured to soar aloft but he soon fell down.[47] The *Siddhas* then, once more addressing Devala, said unto him,—'Thou, O Devala, art not competent to proceed thither, viz., the abode of Brahman, whither Jaigishavya hath gone!'"[48]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing those words of the *Siddhas*, Devala came down, descending from one region to another in due order.[49] Indeed, he repaired to his own sacred asylum very quickly, like a winged insect. As soon as he entered his abode he beheld Jaigishavya seated there.[50] Then Devala, beholding the power derived through *Yoga* of Jaigishavya's penances, reflected upon it with his righteous understanding,[51] and approaching that great ascetic, O king, with humility, addressed the high-souled Jaigishavya, saying,—'I desire, O adorable one, to adopt the religion of *Moksha* (Emancipation)!'[52] Hearing these words of his, Jaigishavya gave

him lessons. And he also taught him the ordinances of *Yoga* and the supreme and eternal duties and their reverse.[53] The great ascetic, seeing him firmly resolved, performed all the acts (for his admission into that religion) according to the rites ordained for that end.[54] Then all creatures, with the *Pitris*, beholding Devala resolved to adopt the religion of *Moksha*, began to weep, saying,—'Alas, who will henceforth give us food!'[55] Hearing these lamentations of all creatures that resounded through the ten points, Devala set his heart upon renouncing the religion of *Moksha*.[56] Then all kinds of sacred fruits and roots, O Bhārata, and flowers and deciduous herbs, in thousands, began to weep, saying,[57]—'The wicked-hearted and mean Devala will, without doubt, once more pluck and cut us! Alas, having once assured all creatures of his perfect harmlessness, he sees not the wrong that he meditates to do!'[58] At this, that best of ascetics began to reflect with the aid of his understanding, saying,—'Which amongst these two, viz., the religion of *Moksha* or that of Domesticity, will be the better for me?*'[59] Reflecting upon this, Devala, O best of kings, abandoned the religion of Domesticity and adopted that of *Moksha*.[60] Having indulged in those reflections, Devala, in consequence of that resolve, obtained the highest success, O Bhārata, and the highest *Yoga*.[61] The celestials then, headed by Vrihaspati, applauded Jaigishavya and the penances of that ascetic.[62] Then that foremost of ascetics, viz., Nārada, addressing the gods, said,—'There is no ascetic penance in Jaigishavya since he filled Asita with wonder!'[63]—The denizens of heaven then, addressing Nārada who said such frightful words, told him,—'Do not say so about the great ascetic Jaigishavya![64] There is no one superior or even equal to this high-souled one in force of energy and penance and *Yoga*!'[65] Even such was the power of Jaigishavya as also of Asita. This is the place of those two, and this the *tirtha* of those two

---

* The religion of Domesticity requires the worship of gods and guests, and the performance of sacrifices. That of *Moksha* does not require the performance of these or any other duties, abstention from injury to creatures and meditation being its chief characteristics.—T.

high-souled persons.[66] Bathing there and giving away wealth unto the Brāhmanas, the high-souled wielder of the plough, of noble deeds, earned great merit and then proceeded to the *tirtha* of *Soma*."[67]

SECTION LI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"There, in that *tirtha*, O Bhārata, where the Lord of stars had in former days performed the *Rājasuya* sacrifice, a great battle was fought in which Tāraka was the root of the evil.[1] Bathing in that *tirtha* and making many presents, the virtuous Vala of cleansed soul proceeded to the *tirtha* of the *Muni* named Sāraswat. There, during a drought extending for twelve years, the sage Sāraswat, in former days, taught the *Vedas* unto many foremost of Brāhmanas."[2-3]

Janamejaya said,—"Why did the sage Sāraswat, O thou of ascetic merit, teach the *Vedas* unto the *Rishis* during a twelve years, drought?"[4]

Vaicampāyana continued,—"In days of yore, O monarch, there was an intelligent sage of great ascetic merit. He was celebrated by the name of Dadhicha. Possessing a complete control over his senses, he led the life of a *Brahmachārin*.[5] In consequence of his excessive ascetic austerities Cakra was afflicted with a great fear. The sage could not be turned (away from his penances) by the offer of even diverse kinds of rewards.[6] At last the chastiser of Pāka, for tempting the sage, despatched unto him the exceedingly beautiful and celestial *Apsarā* by name Alamvushā.[7] Thither where on the banks of the Saraswati the high-souled sage was engaged in the act of gratifying the gods, the celestial damsel named above, O monarch, made her appearance.[8] Beholding that damsel of beautiful limbs, the vital seed of that ascetic of cleansed soul came out. Having fallen into the Saraswati, the latter held it with care.[9] Indeed, O bull among men, the River, beholding that seed, held it in her womb. In time the seed developed into a fœtus and the great river held it so that it might be inspired with life as a child.[10] When the

time came, the foremost of rivers brought forth that child and then went, O lord, taking it with her, to that *Rishi*.[11] Beholding that best of *Rishis* in a conclave, Saraswati, O monarch, while making over the child, said these words:[12]—O regenerate *Rishi*, this is thy son whom I held through devotion for thee! That seed of thine, which fell at sight of the *Apsarā* Alamvushā,[13] had been held by me in my womb, O regenerate *Rishi*, through devotion for thee, and well knowing that that energy of thine would never suffer destruction![14] Given by me, accept this faultless child of thy own!' Thus addressed by her, the *Rishi* accepted the child and felt great joy.[15] Through affection, that foremost of Brāhmanas then smelt the head of his son and held him in a close embrace, O foremost one of Bharata's race, for some time.[16] Gratified with the River, the great ascetic Dadhicha then gave a boon to her, saying.—The *Viçwedevas*, the *Rishis*, and all the tribes of the *Gandharvas* and the *Apsaras*, will henceforth, O blessed one, derive great happiness when oblations of thy water are presented unto them![17] Having said so unto that great river, the sage, gratified and filled with joy, then praised her in these words. Listen to them duly, O king![18]—'Thou hast taken thy rise, O highly blessed one, from the lake of Brahman in days of old. All ascetics of rigid vows know thee, O foremost of rivers![19] Always of agreeable features, thou hast done me great good! This thy great child, O thou of the fairest complexion, will be known by the name of Sāraswat![20] This thy son, capable of creating new worlds, will become known after thy name! Indeed, that great ascetic will be known by the name of Sāraswat![21] During a drought extending for twelve years, this Sāraswat, O blessed one, will teach the *Vedas* unto many foremost of Brāhmanas![22] O blessed Saraswati, through my grace, thou shalt, O beautiful one, always become the foremost of all sacred rivers![23] Even thus was the great River praised by the sage after the latter had granted her boons. The River then, in great joy, went away, O bull of Bharata's race, taking with her that child.[24] Meanwhile, on the occasion of a war between the gods and the *Dānavas*, Cakra wandered through the three worlds in search of weap-

ons.[25] The great god, however, failed to find such weapons as were fit to slay the foes of the celestials.[26] Cakra then said unto the gods,—The great *Asuras* are incapable of being dealt with by me! Indeed, without the bones of Dadhicha, our foes could not be slain![27] Ye best of celestials, repair, therefore, to that foremost of *Rishis* and solicit him, saying,—Grant us, O Dadhicha, thy bones! With them we will slay our foes!'—[28] Beseeched by them for his bones, that foremost of *Rishis*, O chief of Kuru's race, unhesitatingly gave up his life. Having done what was agreeable to the gods, the sage obtained many regions of inexhaustible merit.[29] With his bones, meanwhile, Cakra joyfully caused to be made many kinds of weapons, such as thunder-bolts, disci, heavy maces, and many kinds of clubs and bludgeons.[30] Equal unto the Creator himself, Dadhicha, had been begotten by the great *Rishi* Bhrigu, the son of the Lord of all creatures, with the aid of his austere penances.*[31] Of stout limbs and possessed of great energy, Dadhicha had been made the strogest of creatures in the world. The puissant Dadhicha, celebrated for his glory, became tall like the king of mountains. The chastiser of Pāka had always been anxious on account of his energy.[32] With the thunder-bolt born of *Brahma* energy, and inspired with *mantras*, O Bhārata, Indra made a loud noise when he hurled it, and slew nine and ninety heroes among the *Daityas*.[33] After a long and dreadful time had elapsed since then, a drought, O king, occurred that extended for twelve years.[34] During that drought extending for twelve years, the great *Rishis*, for the sake of sustenance, fled away, O monarch, on all sides.[35] Reholding them scattered in all directions, the sage Sāraswat also set his heart on flight. The river Saraswati then said unto him,[36]—'Thou needst not, O son, depart hence, for I will always supply thee with food even here by giving thee large fishes! Stay thou, therefore, even here!'[37] Thus addressed (by the river), the sage continued to live there and offer oblations of food unto the *Rishis* and the gods. He got also his daily food and thus continued to support both his life-

---

* Nilakantha seems to me to misunderstand this verse —T.

breaths and the gods.[38] After that twelve years' drought had passed away, the great *Rishis* solicited one another for lectures on the *Vedas*.[39] While wandering with famished stomachs, the *Rishis* had lost the knowledge of the *Vedas*. There was, indeed, not one amongst them that could understand the scriptures.[40] It chanced that some one amongst them encountered Sāraswat, that foremost of *Rishis*, while the latter was reading the *Vedas* with concentrated attention.[41] Coming back to the conclave of *Rishis*, he spoke to them of Sāraswat of unrivalled splendour and god-like mien engaged in reading the *Vedas* in a solitary forest.[42] Then all the great *Rishis* came to that spot, and jointly spoke unto Sāraswat, that best of ascetics, these words:[43]—'Teach us, O sage!' Unto them the ascetic replied, saying,—'Become ye my disciples duly!'[44] The conclave of ascetics answered,—'O son, thou art too young in years!' Thereupon he answered the ascetics,—'I must act in such a way that my religious merit may not suffer a diminution![45] He that teaches improperly, and he that learns improperly, are both lost in no time and come to hate each other![46] It is not upon years, or decrepitude, or wealth, or the number of kinsmen, that *Rishis* found their claim to merit! He amongst us is great who is capable of reading and understanding the *Vedas*!'[47] Hearing these words of his, those *Munis* duly became his disciples and obtaining from him their *Vedas* once more began to practise their rites.[48] Sixty thousand *Munis* became disciples of the regenerate *Rishi* Sāraswat for the sake of acquiring their *Vedas* from him.[49] Owning obedience to that agreeable *Rishi* though a boy, the *Munis* each brought a handful of grass and offered it to him for his seat.[50] The mighty son of Rohini, and elder brother of Keçava, having given away wealth in that *tirtha*, then joyfully proceeded to another where lived (in days of yore) an old lady without having passed through the ceremony of marriage."[51]

SECTION LII.

Janamejaya said,—"Why, O regenerate one, did that maiden betake herself to ascetic penances in days of old? For what

reason did she practise penances, and what was her vow?[1] Unrivalled and fraught with mystery is the discourse that I have already heard from thee! Tell me (now) all the particulars in detail regarding how that maid employed herself in penances."[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"There was a *Rishi* of abundant energy and great fame, named Kuni-Garga. That foremost of ascetics, having practised the austerest of penances, O king,[3] created a fair-browed daughter by a fiat of his will. Beholding her, the celebrated ascetic Kuni-Garga became filled with joy. He abandoned his body, O king, and then went to heaven.[4] That faultless and amiable and fair-browed maiden, meanwhile, of eyes like lotus petals, continued to practise severe and very rigid penances. She worshipped the *Pitris* and the gods with fasts.[5] In the practice of such severe penances a long period elapsed. Though her sire had been for giving her away to a husband, she yet did not wish for marriage, for she did not see a husband that could be worthy of her.[6] Continuing to emaciate her body with austere penances, she devoted herself to the worship of the *Pitris* and the gods in that solitary forest.[7] Although engaged in such toil, O monarch, and although she emaciated herself by age and austerities, yet she regarded herself happy.[8] At last when she (became very old so that she) could no longer move even a single step without being aided by any one, she set her heart upon departing for the other world.[9] Beholding her about to cast off her body, Nārada said unto her,—"O sinless one, thou hast no regions of blessedness to obtain in consequence of thy not having cleansed thyself by the rite of marriage![10] O thou of great vows, we have heard this in heaven! Great hath been thy ascetic austerities, but thou hast no claim to regions of blessedness!"[11] Hearing these words of Nārada, the old lady went to a concourse of *Rishis* and said,—"I shall give him half my penances who will accept my hand in marriage!"[12] After she had said those words, Gālava's son, a *Rishi* known by the name of Cringavat, accepted her hand, having proposed this compact to her:[13]—'With this compact, O beautiful lady, I shall accept thy hand, viz., that thou shalt live with me for

only one night!' Having agreed to that compact, she gave him her hand.[14] Indeed, Gālava's son, according to the ordinances laid down and having duly poured libations on the fire, accepted her hand and married her.[15] On that night, she became a young lady of the fairest complexion, robed in celestial attire and decked in celestial ornaments and garlands and smeared with celestial unguents and perfumes.[16] Beholding her blazing with beauty, Gālava's son became very happy and passed one night in her company. At morn she said unto him.[17]—'The compact, O Brāhmana, I had made with thee, hath been fulfilled, O foremost of ascetics! Blessed be thou, I shall now leave thee!'[18] After obtaining his permission, she once more said.—'He that will, with rapt attention, pass one night in this *tirtha* after having gratified the denizens of heaven with oblations of water,[19] shall obtain that merit which is his who observes the vow of *Brahmacharya* for eight and fifty years!'[20] Having said these words, that chaste lady departed for heaven. The *Rishi*, her lord, became very cheerless, by dwelling upon the memory of her beauty.[21] In consequence of the compact he had made, he accepted with difficulty half her penances. Casting off his body he soon followed her, moved by sorrow, O chief of Bharata's race, and forced to it by her beauty.[22] Even this is the glorious history of the old maid that I have told thee! Even this is the account of her *Brahmacharya* and her auspicious departure for heaven!'[23] While there, Valadeva heard of the slaughter of Calya. Having made presents unto the Brāhmanas there, he gave away to grief, O scorcher of foes, for Calya who had been slain by the Pāndavas in battle.[24] Then he of Madhu's race, having come out of the environs of Samantapanchaka, enquired of the *Rishis* about the results of the battle at Kurukshetra[25] Asked by that lion of Yadu's race about the results of the battle at Kurukshetra, those high-souled ones told him everything as it had happened.'[26]

Section XLIII.

"The *Rishis* said,—'O Rāma, this Samantapanchaka is said to be the eternal northern altar of Brahman the Lord of all creatures. There the denizens of heaven, those givers of great boons, performed in days of yore a great sacrifice.[1] That foremost of royal sages, viz., the high-souled Kuru, of great intelligence and immeasurable energy, had cultivated this field for many years. Hence it came to be called *Kurukshetra* (the field of Kuru)!'[3]

"Rāma said,—'For what reason did the high-souled Kuru cultivate this field? I desire to have this narrated by you, ye *Rishis* possessed of wealth of penances!'[3]

"The *Rishis* said,—'In days of yore, O Rāma, Kuru was engaged in perseveringly tilling the soil of this field. Cakra, coming down from heaven, asked him the reason, saying,[4]—Why, O king, art thou employed (in this task) with such perseverance? What is thy purpose, O royal sage, for the accomplishment of which thou art tilling the soil?[5]—Kuru thereupon replied, saying,—O thou of a hundred sacrifices, they that will die upon this plain shall proceed to regions of blessedness after being cleansed of their sins![6]—The lord Cakra, ridiculing this, went back to heaven. The royal sage Kuru, however, without being at all depressed, continued to till the soil.[7] Cakra repeatedly came to him and repeatedly receiving the same reply went away ridiculing him. Kuru, however, did not, on that account, feel depressed.[8] Seeing the king till the soil with unflagging perseverance, Cakra summoned the celestials and informed them of the monarch's occupation.[9] Hearing Indra's words, the celestials said unto their chief of a thousand eyes,—Stop the royal sage, O Cakra, by granting him a boon, if thou canst![10] If men, by only dying there were to come to heaven, without having performed sacrifices to us, our very existence will be endangered![11]—Thus exhorted, Cakra then came back to that royal sage and said,—Do not toil any more! Act according to my words![12] Those men that will die here, having abstained from food with all their senses

awake, and those that will perish here in battle, shall, O king, come to heaven![13] They, O thou of great soul, shall enjoy the blessings of heaven, O monarch!—Thus addressed, king Kuru answered Cakra, saying,—So be it![14]—Taking Kuru's leave, the slayer of Vala, viz., Cakra, then, with a joyful heart, quickly went back to heaven.[15] Even thus, O foremost one of Yadu's race, that royal sage had, in days of yore, tilled this plain and Cakra had promised great merit unto those that would cast off their life-breaths here.[16] Indeed, it was sanctioned by all the foremost ones, headed by Brahman, among the gods, and by the sacred *Rishis*, that on Earth there should be no more sacred spot than this![17] Those men that perform austere penances here, would all, after casting off their bodies, go to Brahman's abode.[18] Those meritorious men, again, that would give away their wealth here, would soon have their wealth doubled.[19] They, again, that will, in expectation of good, reside constantly here, will never have to behold the region of Yama.[20] Those kings that will perform great sacrifices here will reside as long in heaven as Earth herself will last.[21] The chief of the celestials, viz., Cakra, had himself composed a verse here and sang it. Listen to it, O Valadeva![22]—*The very dust of Kurukshetra, borne away by the wind, shall cleanse persons of wicked acts and bear them to heaven*![23]—The foremost ones amongst the gods, as also those amongst the Brāhmanas, and many foremost ones among the kings of the Earth such as Nriga and others, having performed costly sacrifices here, have, after abandoning their bodies, proceeded to heaven.[24] The space between the Tarantuka and the Arantuka and the lakes of Rāma and Chamachakra, is known as Kurukshetra. Samantapanchaka is called the northern (sacrificial) altar of Brahman, the Lord of all creatures.[25] Auspicious and highly sacred and much regarded by the denizens of heaven is this spot that possesses all attributes. It is for this that Kshatriyas slain in battle here obtain sacred regions of eternal blessedness.[26] Even this was said by Cakra himself about the high blessedness of Kurukshetra. All that Cakra said was again approved and sanctioned by Brahman, by Vishnu, and by Maheswara.[27]

Section LIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having visited Kurukshetra and given away wealth there, he of the Sātwata race then proceeded, O Janamejaya, to a large and exceedingly beautiful hermitage.[1] That hermitage was overgrown with *Madhuka* and mango trees, and abounded with *Plakshas* and *Nyagrodhas*. And it contained many *Vilwas* and many excellent jack and *Arjuna* trees.[2] Beholding that goodly asylum with many marks of sacredness, Valadeva asked the *Rishis* as to whose it was.[3] Those high-souled ones, O king, said unto Valadeva,—'Listen in detail, O Rāma, as to whose asylum this was in days of yore![4] Here the god Vishnu in days of yore performed austere penances. Here he performed duly all the eternal sacrifices.[5] Here a Brāhmani maiden, leading from youth the vow of *Brahmacharya*, became crowned with ascetic success. Ultimately, in the possession of *Yoga* powers, that lady of ascetic penances proceeded to heaven.[6] The high-souled Cāndilya, O king, got a beautiful daughter who was chaste, wedded to severe vows, self-restrained, and observant of *Brahmacharya*.[7] Having performed the severest of penances such as are incapable of being performed by women, the blessed lady at last went to heaven, worshipped by the gods and Brāhmanas!' Having heard these words of the *Rishis*, Valadeva entered that asylum.[8] Bidding a farewell to the *Rishis*, Valadeva of unfading glory went through the performance of all the rites and ceremonies of the evening twilight on the side of Himavat and then began to his ascent of the mountain.[9] The mighty Valarāma having the device of the palmyra on his banner had not proceeded far in his ascent when he beheld a sacred and goodly *tirtha* and wondered at the sight.[10] Beholding the glory of the Saraswati as also the *tirtha* called Plakshapraçravana, Vala next reached another excellent and foremost of *tirthas* called Kāravapana.[11] The hero of the plough, of great strength, having made many presents there, bathed in the cool, clear, sacred, and sin-cleansing water (of that *tirtha*).[12] Passing one night there with the

ascetics and the Brāhmanas, Rāma then proceeded to the sacred asylum of the Mitrāvarunas.[13] From Kāravapana he proceeded to that spot on the Yamunā where in days of yore Indra and Agni and Aryaman had obtained great happiness.[14] Bathing there, that bull of Yadu's race, of righteous soul, obtained great happiness. The hero then sat himself down with the *Rishis* and the *Siddhas* there for listening to their excellent talk.[15] There where Rāma sat in the midst of that conclave, the adorable *Rishi* Nārada came (in course of his wanderings).[16] Covered with matted locks and attired in golden rays, he bore in his hands, O king, a staff made of gold and a waterpot made of the same precious metal.[17] Accomplished in song and dance and adored by gods and Brāhmanas, he had with him a beautiful *Vinā* of melodious notes, made of the tortoise-shell.[18] A provoker of quarrels and ever fond of quarrel, the celestial *Rishi* came to that spot where the handsome Rāma was resting.[19] Standing up and sufficiently honoring the celestial *Rishi* of regulated vows, Rāma asked him about all that had happened to the Kurus.[20] Conversant with every duty and usage, Nārada then, O king, told him everything, as it had happened, about the awful extermination of the Kurus.[21] The son of Rohini then, in sorrowful words, enquired of the *Rishi*, saying,—'What is the state of the field? How are those kings now that had assembled there?[22] I have heard everything before, O thou that art possessed of the wealth of penances, but my curiosity is great for hearing it in detail!'[23]

"Nārada said,—'Already Bhishma and Drona and the lord of the Sindhus have fallen! Vikartana's son Karna also hath fallen, with his sons, those great car-warriors![24] Bhuriçravas too, O son of Rohini, and the valiant chief of the Madras have fallen! These and many other mighty heroes that had assembled there,[25] ready to lay down dear life itself for the victory of Duryodhana,—these kings and princes unreturning from battle,—have all fallen![26] Listen now to me, O Mādhava, about those that are yet alive! In the army of Dhritarāshtra's son, only three grinders of hosts are yet alive![27] They are Kripa and Kritavarman and the valiant son of Drona!

These also, O Rāma, have from fear fled away to the ten points of the compass![28] After Calya's fall and the flight of Kripa and the others, Duryodhana, in great grief, had entered the depths of the Dwaipāyana lake.[29] While lying stretched for rest at the bottom of the lake after stupifying its waters, Duryodhana was approached by the Pandavas with Krishna and pierced by them with their cruel words.[30] Pierced with wordy darts, O Rāma, from every side, the mighty and heroic Duryodhana hath risen from the lake, armed with his heavy mace.[31] He hath come forward for fighting Bhima for the present. Their terrible encounter, O Rāma, will take place today![32] If thou feelest any curiosity, then hasten, O Mādhava, without tarrying here! Go, if thou wishest, and witness that terrible battle between thy two disciples!"[33]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of Nārada, Rāma bade a respectful farewell to those foremost of Brāhmanas and dismissed all those that had accompanied him (in his pilgrimage).[34] Indeed, he ordered his attendants, saying,—'Return ye to Dwārakā!' He then descended from that prince of mountains and that fair hermitage called Plakshaprāçravana.[35] Having listened to the discourse of the sages about the great merits of *tirthas*, Rāma of unfading glory sang this verse in the midst of the Brāhmanas:[36]—'Where else is such happiness as that in a residence by the Saraswati? Where else such merits as those in a residence by the Sarawati? Men have departed for heaven, having approached the Saraswati! All should ever remember the Saraswati![37] Saraswati is the most sacred of rivers![37] Saraswati always bestows the greatest happiness on men! Men, after approaching the Saraswati, will not have to grieve for their sins either here or hereafter!'[38] Repeatedly casting his eyes with joy on the Saraswati, that scorcher of foes then ascended an excellent car unto which were yoked goodly steeds.[39] Journeying then on that car of great fleetness, Valadeva, that bull of Yadu's race, desirous of beholding the approaching encounter of his two disciples, arrived on the field."[40]

SECTION LV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Even thus, O Janamejaya, did that terrible battle take place. King Dhritarāshtra, in great sorrow, said these words with reference to it.[1]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Beholding Rāma approach that spot when the mace-fight was about to happen, how, O Sanjaya, did my son fight Bhima?'[2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding the presence of Rāma, thy valiant son Duryodhana of mighty arms, desirous of battle, became full of joy.[3] Seeing the hero of the plough, king Yudhishthira, O Bhārata, stood up and duly honored him, feeling great joy the while. He gave him a seat and enquired about his welfare.[4] Rāma then answered Yudhishthira, in these sweet and righteous words that were highly beneficial to heroes, viz.,[5]—I have heard it said by the *Rishis*, O best of kings, that Kurukshetra is a highly sacred and sin-cleansing spot, equal to heaven itself, adored by gods and *Rishis* and high-souled Brāhmanas.[6] Those men that cast off their bodies while engaged in battle on this field, are sure to reside, O sire, in heaven with Cakra himself![7] I shall, for this, O king, speedily proceed to Samantapanchaka. In the world of gods, that spot is known as the northern (sacrificial) altar of Brahman the Lord of all creatures![8] He that dies in battle on that eternal and most sacred of spots in the three worlds, is sure to obtain heaven![9] Saying,—So be it,—O monarch, Kunti's brave son, the lord Yudhishthira, proceeded towards Samantapanchaka.[10] King Duryodhana also, taking up his gigantic mace, wrathfully proceeded on foot with the Pāndavas.[11] While proceeding thus, armed with mace and clad in armour, the celestials in the welkin applauded him, saying,—Excellent, Excellent!—The *Chāranas* fleet as air,* seeing the Kuru king, became filled with delight.[12] Surrounded by the Pāndavas, thy son, the Kuru king, proceeded, assuming

---

* Nilakantha explains that *Vārtikas* means a class of *Chāranas* that moved with great celerity like that of the air itself.—Tr.

the tread of an infuriate elephant.[13] All the points of the compass were filled with the blare of conchs and the loud peals of drums and the leonine roars of heroes.[14] Proceeding with face westwards to the appointed spot, with thy son (in their midst), they scattered themselves on every side when they reached it.[15] That was an excellent *tirtha* on the southern side of the Saraswati. The ground there was not sandy and was, therefore, selected for the encounter.*[16] Clad in armour, and armed with his mace of gigantic thickness, Bhima, O monarch, assumed the form of the mighty Garuda.[17] With head-gear fastened on his head, and wearing an armour made of gold, licking the corners of his mouth, O monarch, with eyes red in wrath, and breathing hard, thy son, on that field, O king, looked resplendent like the golden Sumeru.[18] Taking up his mace, king Duryodhana of great energy, casting his glances on Bhimasena, challenged him to the encounter like an elephant challenging a rival elephant.[19] Similarly, the valiant Bhima, taking up his adamantine mace, challenged the king like a lion challenging a lion.[20] Duryodhana and Bhima, with uplifted maces, looked in that battle like two mountains with tall summits.[21] Both of them were exceedingly angry; both were possessed of awful prowess; in encounters with the mace both were disciples of Rohini's intelligent son;[22] both resembled each other in their feats and looked like Maya and Vāsava. Both endued with great strength, both resembled Varuna in achievements.[23] Each resembling Vāsudeva, or Rāma, or Viçravana's son (Rāvana), they looked, O monarch, like Madhu and Kaitabha.[24] Each like the other in feats, they looked like Sunda and Upasunda, or Rāma and Rāvana, or Vāli and Sugriva.[25] Those two scorchers of foes looked like Kāla and Mrityu. They then ran towards each other like two infuriate elephants,[26] swelling with pride and mad with passion in the season of autumn and longing for the companionship of a she-elephant in her time. Each seemed to vomit upon the other the poison of his wrath like two fiery snakes.[27] Those

* Both 15 and 16 are differently read in the Bombay edition. The Bengal reading, however, is preferable.—T.

two chastisers of foes cast the angriest of glances upon each other. Both were tigers of Bharata's race, and each was possessed of great prowess.[28] In encounters with the mace, those two scorchers of foes were invincible like lions. Indeed, O bull of Bharata's race, inspired with desire of victory, they looked like two infuriate elephants.[29] Those heroes were unbearable like two tigers accoutered with teeth and claws. They were like two uncrossable oceans lashed into fury and bent upon the destruction of creatures,[30] or like two angry Suns risen for consuming everything. Those two mighty car-warriors looked like an Eastern and a Western cloud agitated by the wind,[31] roaring awfully and pouring torrents of rain in the rainy season. Those two high-souled and mighty heroes, both possessed of great splendour and effulgence,[32] looked like two Suns risen at the hour of the Universal destruction. Looking like two enraged tigers or like two roaring masses of clouds,[33] they became as glad as two maned lions. Like two angry elephants or two blazing fires,[34] those two high-souled ones appeared like two mountains with tall summits. With lips swelling with rage and casting keen glances upon each other,[35] those two high-souled and best of men, armed with maces, encountered each other. Both were filled with joy and each regarded the other as a worthy opponent.[36] and Vrikodara then resembled two goodly steeds neighing at each other, or two elephants grunting at each other.[37] Those two foremost of men then looked resplendent like a couple of *Daityas* swelling with might. Then Duryodhana, O monarch, said these proud words unto Yudhishthira in the midst of his brothers and of the high-souled Krishna and Rāma of immeasurable energy,[38-39]—Protected by the Kaikeyas and the Srinjayas and the high-souled Pānchālas, behold ye with all these foremost of kings, seated together, this battle that is about to take place between me and Bhima!—Hearing these words of Duryodhana, they did as requested.[40-41] Then that large concourse of kings sat down and was seen to look resplendent like a conclave of celestials in heaven.[42] In the midst of that concourse the mighty-armed and handsome elder brother of Keçava, O monarch, as he sat down, was worshipped by all

around him.[43] In the midst of those kings, Valadeva clad in blue robes and possessed of a fair complexion looked beautiful like the moon at full surrounded in the night by thousands of stars.[44] Meanwhile those two heroes, O monarch, both armed with maces and both unbearable by foes, stood there, goading each other with fierce speeches.[45] Having addressed each other in disagreeable and bitter words, those two foremost of heroes of Kuru's race stood, casting angry glances upon each other, like Cakra and Vritra in fight.' "[46]

SECTION LVI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"At the outset. O Janamejaya, a fierce wordy encounter took place between the two heroes. With respect to that, king Dhritarāshtra, filled with grief, said this,[1]—'Oh, fie on man, who hath such an end! My son, O sinless one, had been the lord of eleven *chamus* of troops![2] He had all the kings under his command and had enjoyed the sovereignty of the whole Earth! Alas, he that had been so, was now a warrior proceeding to battle, on foot, shouldering his mace![3] My poor son, who had before been the protector of the universe, was now himself without protection! Alas, he had, on that occasion, to proceed on foot, shouldering his mace! What can it be but Destiny?[4] Alas, O Sanjaya, great was the grief that was felt by my son now!' Having uttered these words, that ruler of men, afflicted with great woe, became silent.[5]

"Sanjaya said,—'Deep-voiced like a cloud, Duryodhana then roared from joy like a bovine bull. Possessed of great energy, he challenged the son of Prithā to battle.[6] When the high-souled king of the Kurus thus summoned Bhima to the encounter, diverse portents of an awful kind became noticeable.[7] Fierce winds began to blow with loud noises at intervals, and a shower of dust fell. All the points of the compass became enveloped in a thick gloom.[8] Thunder-bolts of loud peal fell on all sides, causing a great confusion and making the very hair to stand on end. Hundreds of meteors fell, bursting with a loud noise from the welkin.[9] Rāhu swallowed the Sun

most untimely, O monarch! The Earth with her forests and trees shook greatly.[10] Hot winds blew, bearing showers of hard pebbles along the ground. The summits of mountains fell down on the Earth's surface.[11] Animals of diverse forms were seen to run in all directions. Terrible and fierce jackals, with blazing mouths, howled everywhere.[12] Loud and terrific reports were heard on every side, making the hair to stand on end. The four quarters seemed to be ablaze and many were the animals of ill omen that became visible.[13] The water in the wells on every side swelled up of their own accord. Loud sounds came from every side, without, O king, visible creatures to utter them.[14] Beholding these and other portents, Vrikodara said unto his eldest brother, king Yudhishthira the just,[15]—This Suyodhana of wicked soul is not competent to vanquish me in battle! I shall today vomit that wrath, which I have been cherishing for a long while in the secret recesses of my heart,[16] upon this ruler of the Kurus like Arjuna throwing fire upon the forest of Khāndava! Today, O son of Pāndu, I shall extract the dart that lies sticking to thy heart![17] Slaying with my mace this sinful wretch of Kuru's race, I shall today place around thy neck the garland of Fame![18] Slaying this wight of sinful deeds with my mace on the field of battle, I shall today, with this very mace of mine, break his body into a hundred fragments![19] He shall not have again to enter the city called after the elephant![20] The setting of snakes at us while we were asleep, the giving of poison to us while we ate, the casting of our body into the water at Pramānakoti, the attempt to burn us at the house of lac,[21] the insult offered us at the assembly, the robbing us of all our possessions, the whole year of our living in concealment, our exile into the woods, O sinless one,[22] of all these woes, O best of Bharata's race, I shall today reach the end, O bull of Bharata's line! Slaying this wretch, I shall, in one single day, pay off all the debts I owe him![23] Today, the period of life, of this wicked son of Dhritarāshtra, of uncleansed soul, hath reached its close, O chief of the Bharatas! After this day he shall not again look at his father and mother![24] Today, O monarch, the happiness of this wicked king of the

Kurus hath come to an end! After this day, O monarch, he shall not again cast his eyes on female beauty![25] Today this disgrace of Cāntanu's line shall sleep on the bare Earth, abandoning his life-breaths, his prosperity, and his kingdom![26] Today king Dhritarāshtra also, hearing of the fall of his son, shall recollect all those evil acts that were born of Cakuni's brain![27]—Having said these words, O tiger among kings, Vrikodara of great energy, armed with mace, stood for fight, like Cakra challenging the *Asura* Vritra.[28] Beholding Duryodhana also standing with uplifted mace like mount Kailāsa graced with its summit, Bhimasena, filled with wrath, once more addressed him, saying,[29]—Recall to thy mind that evil act of thyself and king Dhritarāshtra that occurred at Vārnāvata![30] Remember Draupadi who was ill-treated, while in her season, in the midst of the assembly! Remember the deprivation of the king through dice by thyself and Suvala's son![31] Remember that great woe suffered by us, in consequence of thee, in the forest, as also in Virāta's city as if we had once more entered the womb! I shall avenge them all today! By good luck, O thou of wicked soul, I see thee today![32] It is for thy sake that that foremost of car-warriors, viz., the son of Gangā, of great prowess, struck down by Yajnasena's son, sleepeth on a bed of arrows![33] Drona also hath been slain, and Karna, and Calya of great prowess! Suvala's son Cakuni too, that root of this fire of hostilities, hath been slain![34] The wretched *Prātikāmin*, who had seized Draupadi's tresses, hath been slain! All thy brave brothers also, who fought with great valour, have been slain![35] These and many other kings have been slain through thy fault! Thee too I shall slay today with my mace! There is not the slightest doubt in this![36]—While Vrikodara, O monarch, was uttering these words in a loud voice, thy fearless son of true prowess answered him, saying,[37]—What use of such elaborate brag? Fight me, O Vrikodara! O wretch of thy race, today I shall destroy thy desire of battle![38] Mean vermin as thou art, know that Duryodhana is not capable, like an ordinary person, of being terrified by a person like thee![39] For a long time have I cherished this desire! For a long

time hath this wish been in my heart! By good luck the gods have at last brought it about, viz., a mace-encounter with thee![40] What use of long speeches and empty brag, O wicked-souled one! Accomplish these words of thine in acts! Do not tarry at all![41]—Hearing these words of his, the Somakas and the other kings that were present there all applauded them highly.[42] Applauded by all, Duryodhana's hair stood erect with joy and he firmly set his heart on battle.[43] The kings present once again cheered thy wrathful son with claps like persons exciting an infuriate elephant to an encounter.[44] The high-souled Vrikodara the son of Pāndu then, uplifting his mace, rushed furiously at thy high-souled son.[45] The elephants present there grunted aloud and the steeds neighed repeatedly. The weapons of the Pāndavas who longed for victory blazed forth of their own accord.' "[46]

SECTION LVII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Duryodhana, with heart undepressed, beholding Bhimasena in that state, rushed furiously against him, uttering a loud roar.[1] They encountered each other like two bulls encountering each other with their horns. The strokes of their maces produced loud sounds like those of thunder-bolts.[2] Each longing for victory, the battle that took place between them was terrible, making the very hair to stand on end, like that between Indra and Prahlāda.[3] All their limbs bathed in blood, the two high-souled warriors of great energy, both armed with maces, looked like two *Kinçukas* decked with flowers.[4] During the progress of that great and awful encounter, the welkin looked beautiful as if it swarmed with fire-flies.[5]* After that fierce and terrible battle had lasted for some time, both those chastisers of foes became fatigued.[6] Having rested for a little while, those two scorchers of foes, taking up their handsome maces, once again began to ward off each other's attacks.[7] Indeed, when those two war-

---

* This was due to the innumerable sparks of fire generated by the repeated clash of the maces.—T.

riors of great energy, those two foremost of men, both possessed of great might, once more encountered each other after having taken a little rest, they looked like two elephants infuriate with passion and attacking each other for obtaining the companionship of an elephantess in season.[8] Beholding those two heroes, both armed with maces and each equal to the other in energy, the gods and *Gandharvas* and men became filled with wonder.[9] Beholding Duryodhana and Vrikodara both armed with mace, all creatures became doubtful as to who amongst them would be victorious.[10] Those two cousins, those two foremost of mighty men, once again rushing at each other and desiring to take advantage of each other's *laches*, waited each watching the other.[11] The spectators, O king, beheld each armed with his uplifted mace, that was heavy, fierce, and murderous, and that resembled the bludgeon of Yama or the thunder-bolt of Indra.[12] While Bhimasena whirled his weapon, loud and awful was the sound that it produced.[13] Beholding his foe, the son of Pāndu, thus whirling his mace endued with unrivalled impetuosity, Duryodhana became filled with amazement.[14] Indeed, the heroic Vrikodara, O Bhārata, as he careered in diverse courses, presented a highly beautiful spectacle.[15] Both bent upon carefully protecting themselves, as they approached, they repeatedly mangled each other like two cats fighting for a piece of meat.[16] Bhimasena performed diverse kinds of evolutions. He coursed in beautiful circles, advanced, and receded.[17] He dealt blows and warded off those of his adversary, with wonderful activity. He took up various kinds of position (for attack and defence). He delivered attacks and avoided those of his antagonist. He ran at his foe, now turning to the right and now to the left.[18] He advanced straight against the enemy. He made *ruses* for drawing his foe. He stood immovable, prepared for attacking his foe as soon as the latter would expose himself to attack. He circumambulated his foe, and prevented his foe from circumambulating him. He avoided the blows of his foe by moving away in bent postures or jumping aloft.[19] He struck, coming up to his foe face to face, or dealt back-thrusts while moving away from him. Both

accomplished in encounters with the mace, Bhima and Duryodhana thus careered and fought, and struck each other.[20] Those two foremost ones of Kuru's race careered thus, each avoiding the other's blows. Indeed, those two mighty warriors thus coursed in circles and seemed to sport with each other.[21] Displaying in that encounter their skill in battle, those two chastisers of foes sometimes suddenly attacked each other with their weapons,[22] like two elephants approaching and attacking each other with their tusks. Covered with blood, they looked very beautiful, O monarch, on the field.[23] Even thus occurred that battle, awfully and before the gaze of a large multitude, towards the close of the day, like the battle between Vritra and Vāsava. Armed with maces, both began to career in circles.[24] Duryodhana, O monarch, adopted the right *mandala*, while Bhimasena adopted the left *mandala*.[25]* While Bhima was thus careering in circles on the field of battle, Duryodhana, O monarch, suddenly struck him a fierce blow on one of his flanks.[26] Struck by thy son, O sire, Bhima began to whirl his heavy mace for returning that blow.[27] The spectators, O monarch, beheld that mace of Bhimasena look as terrible as Indra's thunder-bolt or Yama's uplifted bludgeon.[28] Seeing Bhima whirl his mace, thy son, uplifting his own terrible weapon, struck him again.[29] Loud was the sound, O Bhārata, produced by the descent of thy son's mace. So quick was that descent that it generated a flame of fire in the welkin.[30] Coursing in diverse kinds of circles, adopting each motion at the proper time, Suyodhana, possessed of great energy, once more seemed to prevail over Bhima.[31] The massive mace of Bhimasena, meanwhile, whirled with his whole force, produced a loud sound as also smoke and sparks and flames of fire.[32] Beholding Bhimasena whirling his mace, Suyodhana also whirled his heavy and adamantine weapon and presented a highly beautiful aspect.[33] Marking

---

* *I. e.*, Duryodhana wheeled around, always turning to his right, while his adversary wheeled around, turning to his left. Both the combatants advanced towards the centre of the lists as they thus wheeled around.—T.

the violence of the wind produced by the whirl of Duryodhana's mace, a great fear entered the hearts of all the Pāndus and the Somakas.[34] Meanwhile those two chastisers of foes, displaying on every side their skill in battle, continued to strike each other with their maces,[35] like two elephants approaching and striking each other with their tusks. Both of them O monarch, covered with blood, looked highly beautiful.[36] Even thus progressed that awful battle before the gaze of thousands of spectators at the close of day, like the fierce battle that took place between Vritra and Vāsava.[37] Beholding Bhima firmly stationed on the field, thy mighty son, careering in more beautiful motions, rushed towards that son of Kunti.[38] Filled with wrath, Bhima struck the mace, endued with great impetuosity and adorned with gold, of the angry Duryodhana.[39] A loud sound with sparks of fire was produced by that clash of the two maces which resembled the clash of two thunderbolts from opposite directions.[40] Hurled by Bhimasena, his impetuous mace, as it fell down, caused the very Earth to tremble.[41] The Kuru prince could not brook to see his own mace thus baffled in that attack. Indeed, he became filled with rage like an infuriate elephant at the sight of a rival elephant.[42] Adopting the left *mandala*, O monarch, and whirling his mace, Suyodhana then, firmly resolved, struck the son of Kunti on the head with his weapon of terrible force.[43] Thus struck by thy son, Bhima the son of Pāndu trembled not, O monarch, at which all the spectators wondered exceedingly.[44] That amazing patience, O king, of Bhimasena, who stirred not an inch though struck so violently, was applauded by all the combatants present there.[45] Then Bhima of terrible prowess hurled at Duryodhana his own heavy and blazing mace adorned with gold.[46] That blow the mighty and fearless Duryodhana warded off by his activity. Beholding this, great was the wonder that the spectators felt.[47] That mace, hurled by Bhima, O king, as it fell baffled of effect, produced a loud sound like that of the thunder-bolt and caused the very Earth to tremble.[48] Adopting the manœvre called *Kauçika*, and repeatedly jumping up, Duryodhana, properly marking the descent of Bhima's mace, baffled the latter.[49] Baffling Bhima-

sena thus, the Kuru king, endued with great strength, at last in rage struck the former in the chest.[50] Struck very forcibly by thy son in that dreadful battle, Bhimasena became stupified and for a time knew not what to do.[51] At that time, O king, the Somakas and the Pāndavas became greatly disappointed and very cheerless.[52] Filled with rage at that blow, Bhima then rushed at thy son like an elephant rushing against an elephant.[53] Indeed, with uplifted mace, Bhima rushed furiously at Duryodhana like a lion rushing against a wild elephant.[54] Approaching the Kuru king, the son of Pāndu, O monarch, accomplished in the use of the mace, began to whirl his weapon, taking aim at thy son.[55] Bhimasena then struck Duryodhana on one of his flanks. Stupified at that blow, the latter fell down on the Earth, supporting himself on his knees.[56] When that foremost one of Kuru's race fell upon his knees, a loud cry arose from among the Srinjayas, O ruler of the world![57] Hearing that loud uproar of the Srinjayas, O bull among men, thy son became filled with rage.[58] The mighty-armed hero, rising up, began to breathe like a mighty-snake, and seemed to burn Bhimasena by casting his glances upon him.[59] That foremost one of Bharata's race then rushed at Bhimasena, as if he would that time crush the head of his antagonist in that battle.[60] The high-souled Duryodhana of terrible prowess then struck the high-souled Bhimasena on the forehead. The latter, however, moved not an inch but stood immovable like a mountain.[61] Thus struck in that battle, the son of Prithā, O monarch, looked beautiful, as he bled profusely, like an elephant of rent temples with juicy secretions trickling adown.[62] The elder brother of Dhananjaya then, that crusher of foes, taking up his hero-slaying mace made of iron and producing a sound loud as that of the thunder-bolt, struck his adversary with great force.[63] Struck by Bhimasena, thy son fell down, his frame trembling all over, like a gigantic *Çāla* in the forest, decked with flowers, uprooted by the violence of the tempest.[64] Beholding thy son prostrated on the Earth, the Pāndavas became exceedingly glad and uttered loud cries. Recovering his consciousness, thy son

then rose, like an elephant from a lake.[65] That ever-wrathful monarch and great car-warrior then, careering with great skill, struck Bhimasena who was standing before him. At this, the son of Pāndu, with weakened limbs, fell down on the Earth.[66] Having by his energy prostrated Bhimasena on the ground, the Kuru prince uttered a leonine roar. By the descent of his mace, whose violence resembled that of the thunder, he had, fractured Bhima's coat of mail.[67] A loud uproar was then heard in the welkin, made by the denizens of heaven and the *Apsaras*. A floral shower, emitting great fragrance, fell, rained by the celestials.[68] Beholding Bhima prostrated on the Earth, and weakened in strength, and seeing his coat of mail laid open, a great fear entered the hearts of our foes.[69] Recovering his senses in a moment, and wiping his face which had been dyed with blood, and mustering great patience, Vrikodara stood up, with rolling eyes, steadying himself with great effort.[70]' "

SECTION LVIII.

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding that fight thus raging between those two foremost heroes of Kuru's race, Arjuna said unto Vāsudeva,[1]—Between these two, who, in thy opinion, is superior? Who amongst them hath what meirt? Tell me this, O Janārddana!—'[2]

" 'Vāsudeva said,—The instruction received by them hath been equal. Bhima, however, is possessed of greater might, while the son of Dhritarāshtra is possessed of greater skill and hath laboured more.[3] If he were to fight fairly, Bhimasena will never succeed in winning the victory. If, however, he fights unfairly, he will surely be able to slay Duryodhana.[4] The *Asuras* were vanquished by the gods with the aid of deception. We have heard this. Virochana was vanquished by Cakra with the aid of deception.[5] The slayer of Vala deprived Vritra of his energy by an act of deception. Therefore, let Bhimasena put forth his prowess, aided by deception![6] At the time of the gambling, O Dhananjaya, Bhima vowed to break the thighs of Suyodhana with his mace in battle.[7] Let this crusher of foes, therefore,

accomplish that vow of his! Let him, with deception, slay the Kuru king who is full of deception.[8] If Bhima, depending upon his might alone, were to fight fairly, king Yudhishthira will have to incur great danger.[9] I tell thee again, O son of Pāndu, listen to me! It is through the fault of king Yudhishthira alone that danger hath once more overtaken us![10] Having achieved great feats by the slaughter of Bhishma and the other Kurus, the king had won victory and fame and had almost attained to the end of the hostilities.[11] Having thus obtained the victory, he placed himself once more in a situation of doubt and peril. This has been an act of great folly on the part of Yudhishthira, O Pāndava,[12] since he hath made the result of the battle depend upon the victory or the defeat of only one warrior! Suyodhana is accomplished, he is a hero; he is again firmly resolved.[13] This old verse uttered by Uçanas hath been heard by us. Listen to me as I recite it to thee with its true sense and meaning![14]—Those amongst the remnant of a hostile force broken flying away for life that rally and come back to the fight, should always be feared, for they are firmly resolved and have but one purpose![*15]—Cakra himself, O Dhananjaya, cannot stand before them that rush in fury, having abandoned all hope of life.[16] This Suyodhana had broken and fled. All his troops had been killed. He had entered the depths of a lake. He had been defeated and, therefore, he had desired to retire into the woods, having become hopeless of retaining his kingdom. What man is there, possessed of any wisdom, that would challenge such a person to a single-combat?[17] I do not know whether Duryodhana may not succeed in snatching the kingdom that had already become ours! For full thirteen years he practised with the mace with great resolution. Even now, for slaying Bhimasena, he jumpeth up

---

[* c f. Lord Byron's lines in *the Corsair* :—

"And flame for flame and blood for blood must tell,
The tide of triumph ebbes that flow'd too well—
When wrath returns to renovated strife,
And all those who fought for conquest strike for life."—T.]

and leapeth transversely![18] If the mighty-armed Bhima do not slay him unfairly, the son of Dhritarāshtra will surely remain king![19]—Having heard those words of the high-souled Keçava, Dhananjaya struck his own left thigh before the eyes of Bhimasena.[20] Understanding that sign, Bhima began to career with his uplifted mace, making many a beautiful circle and many a *Yamaka* and other kinds of manœveres.[21] Sometimes adopting the right *mandala*, sometimes the left *mandala*, and sometimes the motion called *Gomutraka*, the son of Pāndu began to career, O king, stupifying his foe.[22] Similarly, thy son, O monarch, who was well conversant with encounters with the mace, careered beautifully and with great activity, for slaying Bhimasena.[23] Whirling their terrible maces which were smeared with sandal paste and other perfumed unguents, the two heroes, desirous of reaching the end of their hostilities, careered in that battle like two angry Yamas.[24] Desirous of slaying each other, those two foremost of men, possessed of great heroism, fought like two Gaduras desirous of catching the same snake.[25] While the king and Bhima careered in beautiful circles, their maces clashed, and sparks of fire were generated by those repeated clashes.[26] Those two heroic and mighty warriors struck each other equally in that battle. They then resembled, O monarch, two oceans agitated by the tempest.[27] Striking each other equally like two infuriate elephants, their clashing maces produced peals of thunder.[28] During the progress of that dreadful and fierce battle at close quarters, both those chastisers of foes, while battling, became fatigued.[29] Having rested for a while, those two scorchers of foes, filled with rage and uplifting their maces, once more began to battle with each other.[30] When by the repeated descents of their maces, O monarch, they mangled each other, the battle they fought became exceedingly dreadful and perfectly unrestrained.[31] Rushing at each other in that encounter, those two heroes, possessed of eyes like those of bulls and endued with great activity, struck each other fiercely like two baffaloes in the mire.[32] All their limbs mangled and bruised, and covered with blood from head to foot, they looked like a couple of *Kinçukas* on the breast of Himavat.[33] During

the progress of the encounter, when Vrikodara (as a *ruse*) seemed to give Duryodhana an opportunity, the latter, smiling a little, advanced forward.[54] Well-skilled in battle, the mighty Vrikodara, beholding his adversary come up, suddenly hurled his mace at him.[55] Seeing the mace hurled at him, thy son, O monarch, moved away from that spot at which the weapon fell down baffled on the Earth.[56] Having warded off that blow, thy son, that foremost one of Kuru's race, quickly struck Bhimasena with his weapon.[57] In consequence of the large quantity of blood drawn by that blow, as also owing to the violence itself of the blow, Bhimasena of immeasurable energy seemed to be stupified.[58] Duryodhana, however, knew not that the son of Pāndu was so afflicted at that moment. Though deeply afflicted, Bhima sustained himself, summoning all his patience.[59] Duryodhana, therefore, regarded him to be unmoved and ready to return the blow. It was for this that thy son did not then strike him again.[60] Having rested for a little while, the valiant Bhimasena rushed furiously, O king, at Duryodhana who was standing near.[61] Beholding Bhimasena of immeasurable energy, filled with rage and rushing towards him, thy high-souled son, O bull of Bharata's race, desiring to baffle his blow, set his heart on the manœvre called *Avasthāna*. He, therefore, desired to jump upwards, O monarch, for beguiling Vrikodara.[62-63] Bhimasena fully understood the intentions of his adversary. Rushing, therefore, at him, with a loud leonine roar,[64] he fiercely hurled his mace at the thighs of the Kuru king as the latter had jumped up for baffling the first aim.[65] That mace, endued with the force of the thunder and hurled by Bhima of terrible feats, fractured the two handsome thighs of Duryodhana.[66] That tiger among men, viz., thy son, after his thighs had been broken by Bhimasena, fell down, causing the Earth to echo with his fall.[67] Fierce winds began to blow, with loud sounds at repeated intervals. Showers of dust fell. The Earth, with her trees and plants and mountains, began to tremble.[68] Upon the fall of that hero who was the head of all monarchs on Earth, fierce and fiery winds blew with a loud noise and with thunder falling frequently. Indeed, when that lord of Earth fell, large meteors

were seen to flash down from the sky.[49] Bloody showers, as also showers of dust, fell, O Bhārata! These were poured by Magavat, upon the fall of thy son![50] A loud noise was heard, O bull of Bharata's race, in the welkin, made by the *Yakshas*, and the *Rākshasas* and the *Piçāchas*.[51] At that terrible sound, animals and birds, numbering in thousands, began to utter a more frightful noise on every side.[52] Those steeds and elephants and human beings that formed the (unslain) remnant of the (Pāndava) host uttered loud cries when thy son fell. Loud also became the blare of conchs and the peal of drums and cymbals.[53] A terrific noise seemed to come from with the bowels of the Earth. Upon the fall of thy son, O monarch, headless beings of frightful forms, possessed of many legs and many arms, and inspiring all creatures with dread, began to dance and cover the Earth on all sides.[54] Combatants, O king, that stood with standards or weapons in their arms, began to tremble, O king, when thy son fell.[55] Lakes and wells, O best of kings, vomited forth blood. Rivers of rapid currents flowed in opposite directions.[56] Women seemed to look like men, and men to look like women, at that hour, O king, when thy son Duryodhana fell![57] Beholding those wonderful portents, the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas, O bull of Bharata's race, became filled with anxiety.[58] The gods and the *Gandharvas* went away to the regions they desired, talking, as they proceeded, of that wonderful battle between thy sons.[59] Similarly the *Siddhas*, and the *Chāranas* of the fleetest course, went to those places from which they had come, applauding those two lions among men.' "[60]

Section LIX.

"Sanjaya said,—"Beholding Duryodhana felled upon the Earth like a gigantic Cāla uprooted (by the tempest), the Pāndavas became filled with joy.[1] The Somakas also beheld, with hair standing on end, the Kuru king felled upon the Earth like an infuriate elephant felled by a lion.[2] Having struck Duryodhana down, the valiant Bhimasena, approaching the Kuru chief, addressed him, saying,[3]—O wretch, formerly

laughing at the disrobed, Draupadi in the midst of the assembly, thou hadst, O fool, addressed us as—*Cow, Cow!*[4]—Bear now the fruit of that insult!—Having said these words, he touched the head of his fallen foe with his left foot. Indeed, he struck the head of that lion among kings with his foot.[5] With eyes red in wrath, Bhimasena, that grinder of hostile armies, once more said these words. Listen to them, O monarch![6]—They that danced at us insultingly, saying,—*Cow, Cow,*—we shall now dance at them, uttering the same words, viz.,—*Cow, Cow!*[7]—We have no guile, no fire, no match at dice, no deception! Depending upon the might of our own arms we resist and check our foes![8]—Having attained to the other shores of those fierce hostilities, Vrikodara once more laughingly said these words slowly unto Yudhishthira and Keçava and the Srinjayas and Dhananjaya and the two sons of Mādri.[9]—They that had dragged Draupadi, while ill, into the assembly, and had disrobed her there, behold those Dhārtarāshtras slain in battle by the Pāndavas through the ascetic penances of Yajnasena's daughter![10] Those wicked-hearted sons of king Dhritarāshtra who had called us *Sessame seeds without kernel,* have all been slain by us with their relatives and followers! It matters little whether (as a consequence of those deeds) we go to heaven or fall into hell![11]—Once more, uplifting the mace that lay on his shoulders, he struck with his left foot the head of the monarch who was prostrate on the Earth, and addressing the deceitful Duryodhana, said these words.[12] Many of the foremost warriors among the Somakas, who were all of righteous souls, beholding the foot of the rejoicing Bhimasena of narrow heart placed upon the head of that foremost one of Kuru's race, did not at all approve of it.[13] While Vrikodara, after having struck down thy son, was thus bragging and dancing madly, king Yudhishthira addressed him, saying,[14]—Thou hast paid off thy hostility (towards Duryodhana) and accomplished thy vow by a fair or an unfair act! Cease now, O Bhima![15] Do not crush his head with thy foot! Do not act sinfully! Duryodhana is a king! He is, again, thy kinsman! He is fallen! This conduct of thine, O sinless one, is not proper![16] Duryodhana was the lord of eleven *Akshauhinis*

of troops He was the king of the Kurus! Do not, O Bhima, touch a king and a kinsman with thy foot![17] His kinsmen are slain! His friends and counsellors are gone! His troops have been exterminated! He has been struck down in battle! He is to be pitied in every respect! He deserves not to be insulted, for remember that he is a king![18] He is ruined! His friends and kinsmen have been slain! His brothers have been killed! His sons too have been slain! His funeral cake hath been taken away! He is our brother! This that thou doest unto him is not proper![19] *Bhimasena is a man of righteous behaviour!* People used to say this before of thee! Why then, O Bhimasena, dost thou insult the king in this way?[20]—Having said these words unto Bhimasena, Yudhishthira, with voice choked in tears, and afflicted with grief, approached Duryodhana, that chastiser of foes, and said unto him,[21]—O sire, thou shouldst not give way to anger nor grieve for thyself! Without doubt, thou bearest the dreadful consequences of thy own former acts![22] Without doubt, this sad and woful result had been ordained by the Creator himself, viz., that we should injure thee and thou shouldst injure us, O foremost one of Kuru's race![23] Through thy own fault this great calamity has come upon thee, due to avarice and pride and folly, O Bhārata![24] Having caused thy companions and brothers and sires and sons and grandsons and others to be all slain, thou comest now by thy own death![25] In consequence of thy fault thy brothers, mighty car-warriors all, and thy kinsmen, have been slain by us! I think all this to be the work of irresistible Destiny![26] Thou art not to be pitied! On the other hand, thy death, O sinless one, is enviable! It is we that deserve to be pitied in every respect, O Kaurava! We shall have to drag on a miserable existence, reft of all our dear friends and kinsmen![27] Alas, how shall I behold the widows, overwhelmed with grief and deprived of their senses by sorrow, of my brothers and sons and grandsons![28] Thou, O king, departest from this world! Thou art sure to have thy residence in heaven! We, on the other hand, shall be reckoned as creatures of hell, and shall continue to suffer the most poignant grief![29] The grief-afflicted wives of Dhritarāshtra's sons and grand-

sons, those widows crushed with sorrow, will, without doubt, curse us all![30]—Having said these words, Dharma's royal son Yudhishthira, deeply afflicted with grief, began to breathe hard and indulge in lamentations.' "[31]

SECTION LX.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Beholding the (Kuru) king struck down unfairly, what, O *Suta*, did the mighty Valadeva, that foremost one of Madhu's race, say?[1] Tell me, O Sanjaya, what Rohini's son, well-skilled in encounters with the mace and well acquainted with all its rules, did on that occasion![2]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding thy son struck at the thighs, the mighty Rāma, that foremost of smiters, became exceedingly angry.[3] Raising his arms aloft, the hero having the plough for his weapon, in a voice of deep sorrow, said in the midst of those kings,—Oh, fie on Bhima, fie on Bhima![4] Oh, fie, that in such a fair fight a blow hath been struck below the navel! Never before hath such an act as Vrikodara hath done been witnessed in an encounter with the mace![5] No limb below the navel should be struck. This is the precept laid down in treatises! This Bhima, however, is an ignorant wretch, unacquainted with the truths of treatises! He, therefore, acteth as he likes![6]—While uttering these words, Rāma gave way to great wrath. The mighty Valadeva then, uplifting his plough, rushed towards Bhimasena![7] The form of that high-souled warrior of uplifted arms then became like that of the gigantic mountains of Kailāsa variegated with diverse kinds of metals.[8] The mighty Keçava, however, ever bending with humility, seized the rushing Rāma, encircling him with his massive and and well-rounded arms.[9] Those two foremost heroes of Yadu's race, the one dark in complexion and the other fair, looked exceedingly beautiful at that moment, like the Sun and the Moon, O king, on the evening sky![10] For pacifying the angry Rāma, Keçava addressed him, saying,—There are six kinds of advancement that a person may have, viz., one's own advancement, the advancement of one's friends, the advancement of one's friends' friends, the decay of one's enemy, the

decay of one's enemy's friends, and the decay of one's enemy's friends' friends.[11] When reverses happen to one's own self or to one's friends, one should then understand that one's fall is at hand and, therefore, one should at such times look for the means of applying a remedy.[12] The Pāndavas of unsullied prowess are our natural friends. They are the children of our own sire's sister! They had been greatly afflicted by their foes![13] The accomplishment of one's vow is one's duty. Formerly Bhima had vowed in the midst of the assembly that he would in great battle break with his mace the thighs of Duryodhana.[14] The great *Rishi* Maitreya also, O scorcher of foes, had formerly cursed Duryodhana, saying,—*Bhima will, with his mace, break thy thighs!*[15]—In consequence of all this, I do not see any fault in Bhima! Do not give way to wrath, O slayer of Pralamva! Our relationship with the Pāndavas is founded upon birth and blood as also upon an attraction of hearts.[16] In their growth is our growth. Do not, therefore, give way to wrath, O bull among men!—Hearing these words of Vā'sudeva, the wielder of the plough, who was conversant with rules of morality, said,[17]—Morality is well practised by the good. Morality, however, is always afflicted by two things, viz., the desire for Profit entertained by those that covet it, and the desire for Pleasure cherished by those that are wedded to it.[18] Whoever without afflicting Morality and Profit, or Morality and Pleasure, or Pleasure and Profit, followeth all three, viz., Morality, Profit, and Pleasure, always succeeds in obtaining great happiness.[19] In consequence, however, of morality being afflicted by Bhimasena, this harmony of which I have spoken hath been disturbed, whatever, O Govinda, thou mayst tell me![20]—Krishna replied, saying,—Thou art always described as bereft of wrath, and righteous-souled and devoted to righteousness! Calm thyself, therefore, and do not give way to wrath![21] Know that the *Kali* age is at hand. Remember also the vow made by the son of Pāndu! Let, therefore, the son of Pāndu be regarded to have paid off the debt he owed to his hostility and to have fulfilled his vow!—'[22]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Hearing this fallacious discourse

from Keçava, O king, Rāma failed to dispel his wrath and become cheerful. He then said in that assembly,[23]—Having unfairly slain king Suyodhana of righteous soul, the son of Pāndu shall be reputed in the world as a crooked warrior![24] The righteous-souled Duryodhana, on the other hand, shall obtain eternal blessedness! Dhritarāshtra's royal son, that ruler of men, who hath been struck down, is a fair warrior![25] Having made every arrangement for the Sacrifice of battle and having undergone the initiatory ceremonies on the field, and, lastly, having poured his life as a libation upon the fire represented by his foes, Duryodhana has fairly completed his Sacrifice by the final ablutions represented by the attainment of glory![26]—Having said these words, the valiant son of Rohini, looking like the crest of a white cloud, ascended his car and proceeded towards Dwārakā.[27] The Pānchālas with the Vrishnis, as also the Pāndavas, O monarch, became rather cheerless after Rāma had set out for Dwārāvati.[28] Then Vāsudeva, approaching Yudhishthira who was exceedingly melancholy and filled with anxiety, and who hung down his head and knew not what to do in consequence of his deep affliction, said unto him these words.[29]

"'Vāsudeva said,—O Yudhishthira the just, why dost thou sanction this unrighteous act, since thou permittest the head of the insensible and fallen Duryodhana whose kinsmen and friends have all been slain to be thus struck by Bhima with his foot? Conversant as thou art with the ways of morality, why dost thou, O king, witness this act with indifference?—[30-31]

"'Yudhishthira answered,—This act, O Krishna, done from wrath, of Vrikodara's touching the head of the king with his foot, is not agreeable to me, nor am I glad at this extermination of my race![32] By guile were we always deceived by the sons of Dhritarāshtra! Many were the cruel words they spoke to us. We were again exiled into the woods by them.[33] Great is the grief on account of all those acts that is in Bhimasena's heart! Reflecting on all this, O thou of Vrishni's race, I looked on with indifference![34] Having slain the covetous Duryodhana bereft of wisdom and enslaved by his passions,

let the son of Pāndu gratify his desire, be it by righteousness or unrighteousness !—'[35]

"Sanjaya continued,—'After Yudhishthira had said this, Vāsudeva, that perpetuator of Yadu's race, said with difficulty, —Let it be so ![36]—Indeed, after Vāsudeva had been addressed in those words by Yudhishthira, the former, who, always wished what was agreeable to and beneficial for Bhima, approved all those acts that Bhima had done in battle.[37] Having struck down thy son in battle, the wrathful Bhimasena, his heart filled with joy, stood with joined hands before Yudhishthira and saluted him in proper form.[38] With eyes expanded in delight and proud of the victory he had won, Vrikodara of great energy, O king, addressed his eldest brother, saying,[39]—The Earth is today thine, O king, without brawls to disturb her and with all her thorns removed ! Rule over her, O monarch, and observe the duties of thy order ![40] He who was the cause of these hostilities and who fomented them by means of his guile, that wretched wight fond of deception, lieth, struck down, on the bare ground, O lord of Earth ![41] All those wretches headed by Dusçāsana, who used to utter cruel words, as also those other foes of thine, viz., the son of Rādhā, and Cakuni, have been slain ![42] Teeming with all kinds of gems, the Earth, with her forests and mountains, O monarch, once more cometh to thee that hast no foes alive ![43]—

"'Yudhishthira said,—Hostilities have come to an end! King Suyodhana hath been struck down ! The Earth hath been conquered (by us), ourselves having acted according to the counsels of Krishna ![44] By good luck, thou hast paid off thy debt to thy mother and to thy wrath ! By good luck, thou hast been victorious, O invincible hero, and by good luck, thy foe hath been slain !' "—[45]

Section LXI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Beholding Duryodhana struck down in battle by Bhimasena, what, O Sanjaya, did the Pāndavas and the Srinjayas do ?'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Beholding Duryodhana slain by Bhimasena in battle, O king, like a wild elephant slain by a lion,[2]

the Pāndavas with Krishna became filled with delight. The Pānchālas and the Srinjayas also, upon the fall of the Kuru king,[3] waved their upper garments (in the air) and uttered leonine roars. The very Earth seemed to be unable to bear those rejoicing warriors.[4] Some stretched their bows; others drew their bowstrings. Some blew their huge conchs; others beat their drums.[5] Some sported and jumped about, while some amongst thy foes laughed aloud. Many heroes repeatedly said these words unto Bhimasena:[6]—Exceedingly difficult and great hath been the feat that thou hast achieved today in battle, by having struck down the Kuru king, himself a great warrior, with thy mace![7] All these men regard this slaughter of the foe by thee to be like that of Vritra by Indra himself![8] Who else, save thyself, O Vrikodara, could slay the heroic Duryodhana while careering in diverse kinds of motion and performing all the wheeling manœvres (characteristic of such encounters)?[9] Thou hast now reached the other shore of these hostilities, that other shore which none else could reach! This feat that thou hast achieved is incapable of being achieved by any other warrior![10] By good luck, thou hast, O hero, like an infuriate elephant, crushed with thy foot the head of Duryodhana on the field of battle![11] Having fought a wonderful battle, by good luck, O sinless one, thou hast quaffed the blood of Dusçāsana, like a lion quaffing the blood of a buffalo![12] By good luck, thou hast, by thy own energy, placed thy foot on the head of all those that had injured the righteous-souled king Yudhishthira![13] In consequence of having vanquished thy foes and of thy having slain Duryodhana, by good luck, O Bhima, thy fame hath spread over the whole world![14] Bards and eulogists applauded Cakra after the fall of Vritra even as we are now applauding thee, O Bhārata, after the fall of thy foes![15] Know, O Bhārata, that the joy we felt upon the fall of Duryodhana hath not yet abated in the least!—Even these were the words addressed to Bhimasena by the assembled eulogists on that occasion![16] Whilst those tigers among men, viz., the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas, all filled with delight, were indulging in such language, the slayer of Madhu ad-

dressed them, saying,[17]—Ye rulers of men, it is not proper to slay a slain foe with such cruel speeches repeatedly uttered! This wight of wicked understanding hath already been slain![18] This sinful, shameless, and covetous wretch, surrounded by sinful counsellers and ever regardless of the advice of wise friends, met with his death even then[19] when he refused, though repeatedly urged to the contrary by Vidura and Drona and Kripa and Sanjaya, to give unto the sons of Pāndu their paternal share in the kingdom which they had solicited at his hand![20] This wretch is not now fit to be regarded either as a friend or a foe! What use in spending bitter breath upon one who hath now become a piece of wood![21] Mount your cars quickly, ye kings, for we should leave this place! By good luck, this sinful wretch hath been slain with his counsellers and kinsmen and friends![22]—Hearing these rebukes from Krishna, king Duryodhana, O monarch, gave way to wrath and endeavoured to rise.[23] Sitting on his haunches and supporting himself on his two arms, he contracted his eye-brows and cast angry glances at Vāsudeva.[24] The form then of Duryodhana whose body was half raised, looked like that of a poisonous snake, O Bhārata, shorn of its tail.[25] Disregarding his poignant and unbearable pains, Duryodhana began to afflict Vāsudeva with keen and bitter words.[26]—O son of Kansa's slave, thou hast, it seems, no shame, for hast thou forgotten that I have been struck down most unfairly, judged by the rules that prevail in encounters with the mace? It was thou who unfairly caused this act by reminding Bhima with a hint about the breaking of my thighs! Dost thou think I did not mark it when Arjuna (acting under thy advice) hinted it to Bhima?[27-28] Having caused thousands of kings, who always fought fairly, to be slain through diverse kinds of unfair means, feelst thou no shame or no abhorence for those acts?[29] Day after day having caused a great carnage of heroic warriors, thou causedst the grandsire to be slain by plaicing Cikhandin to the fore![30] Having again caused an elephant of the name of Açwatthāman to be slain, O thou of wicked understanding, thou causedst the preceptor to lay aside his weapons Thinkest thou that this is not known to me?[31] While again

that valiant hero was about to be slain by this cruel Dhrishtadyumna, thou didst not dissuade the latter![32] The dart that had been begged (of Cakra as a boon) by Karna for the slaughter of Arjuna, was baffled by thee through Ghatotkacha! Who is there that is more sinful than thou?[33] Similarly, the mighty Bhuriçravas, with one of his arms lopped off and while observant of the *Prāya* vow, was caused to be slain by thee through the agency of the high-souled Sātyaki.[34] Karna had done a great feat for vanquishing Pārtha. Thou, however, causedst Açwasena, the son of that prince of snakes (viz., Takshaka,) to be baffled in achieving his purpose![35] When again the wheel of Karna's car sank in mire and Karna was afflicted with calamity and almost vanquished on that account, —when, indeed, that foremost of men became anxious to liberate his wheel,—thou causedst that Karna to be then slain![36] If ye had fought me and Karna and Bhishma and Drona by fair means, victory then, without doubt, would never have been yours![37] By adopting the most crooked and unrighteous of means thou hast caused many kings observant of the duties of their order and ourselves also to be slain!—[38]

"'Vāsudeva said,—Thou, O son of Gāndhāri, hast been slain with thy brothers, sons, kinsmen, friends, and followers, only in consequence of the sinful path in which thou hast trod![39] Through thy evil acts those two heroes, viz., Bhishma and Drona, have been slain! Karna too hath been slain for having imitated thy behaviour![40] Solicited by me, O fool, thou didst not, from avarice, give the Pāndavas their paternal share, acting according to the counsels of Cakuni![41] Thou gavest poison to Bhimasena! Thou hadst also, O thou of wicked understanding, endeavoured to burn all the Pāndavas with their mother at the palace of lac![42] On the occasion also of the gambling, thou hadst persecuted the daughter of Yajnasena, while in her season, in the midst of the assembly! Shameless as thou art, even then thou becamest worthy of being slain![43] Thou hadst, through Suvala's son well-versed in dice, unfairly vanquished the virtuous Yudhishthira who was unskilled in gambling! For that art thou slain![44] Through the sinful Jayadratha again, Krishnā was on another

occasion persecuted when the Pāndavas, her lords, had gone out ahunting tawards the hermitage of Trinavindu![45] Causing Abhimanyu, who was a child and alone, to be surrounded by many, thou didst slay that hero. It is in consequence of that fault, O sinful wretch, that thou art slain![46] All those unrighteous acts that thou sayest have been perpetrated by us, have in reality been perpetrated by thee in consequence of thy sinful nature![47] Thou hadst never listened to the counsels of Vrihaspati and Uçanas! Thou hadst never waited upon the old! Thou hadst never heard beneficial words![48] Enslaved by ungovernable covetousness and thirst of gain, thou didst perpetrate many unrighteous acts! Bear now the consequences of those acts of thine!—[49]

"'Duryodhana said,—I have studied, made presents according to the ordinance, governed the wide Earth with her seas, and staid over the heads of my foes! Who is there so fortunate as myself![50] That end again which is courted by Kshatriyas observant of the duties of their own order, viz., death in battle, hath become mine! Who, therefore, is so fortunate as myself?[51] Human enjoyments such as were worthy of the very gods and such as could with difficulty be obtained by other kings, had been mine. Prosperity of the very highest kind had been attained by me! Who then is so fortunate as myself?[52] With all my well-wishers, and my younger brothers, I am going to heaven, O thou of unfading glory! As regards yourselves, with your purposes unachieved and torn by grief, live ye in this unhappy world!—'[53]

"Sanjaya continued,—"Upon the conclusion of these words of the intelligent king of the Kurus, a thick shower of fragrant flowers fell from the sky.[54] The *Gandharvas* beat many charming musical instruments. The *Apsaras* in a chorus sang the glory of king Duryodhana.[55] The *Siddhas* uttered loud sounds to the effect,—*Praise to king Duryodhana!*—Fragrant and delicious breezes mildly blew on every side. All the quarters became clear and the firmament looked blue as the *lapis lazuli*.[56] Beholding these exceedingly wonderful things and this worship offered to Duryodhana, the Pāndavas headed by Vāsudeva became ashamed.[57] Hearing (invisible beings

cry out) that Bhishma and Drona and Karna and Bhuriçravas were slain unrighteously, they became afflicted with grief and wept in sorrow.[58] Beholding the Pāndavas filled with anxiety and grief, Krishna addressed them in a voice deep as that of the clouds or the drum, saying,—[59]All of them were great car-warriors and exceedingly quick in the use of weapons! If ye had put forth all your prowess, even then ye could never have slain them in battle by fighting fairly![60] King Duryodhana also could never be slain in a fair encounter! The same is the case with all those mighty car-warriors headed by Bhishma![61] From desire of doing good to you, I repeatedly applied my powers of illusion and caused them to be slain by diverse means in battle.[62] If I had not adopted such deceitful ways in battle, victory would never have been yours, nor kingdom, nor wealth![63] Those four were very high-souled warriors and regarded as *Atirathas* in the world. The very Regents of the Earth could not slay them in fair fight![64] Similarly, the son of Dhritarāshtra, above fatigue as he was, when armed with the mace, could not be slain in fair fight by Yama himself armed with his bludgeon![65] Ye should not take it to heart that this foe of yours hath been slain deceitfully! When the number of one's foes becomes great, then destruction should be effected by contrivances and means![66] The gods themselves, in slaying the *Asuras*, have trod in the same way! That way, therefore, that hath been trod by the gods, may be trod by all![67] We have been crowned with success. It is evening. We had better retire to our tents. Let us all, ye kings, take rest, with our steeds and elephants and cars!—[68]Hearing these words of Vāsudeva, the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas, filled with delight, roared like a multitude of lions.[69] All of them blew their conchs and Mādhava himself blew *Pānchājanya*, filled with joy, O bull among men, at the sight of Duryodhana struck down in battle.'"[70]

SECTION LXII.

"Sanjaya said,—'All those kings, possessed of arms that resembled spiked bludgeons, then proceeded towards their

tents, filled with joy and blowing their conchs on their way.[1] The Pāndavas also, O monarch, proceeded towards our encampment. The great bowman Yuyutsu followed them, as also Sātyaki,[2] and Dhrishtadyumna, and Cikhandin, and the five sons of Draupadi. The other great bowmen also proceeded towards our tents.[3] The Pārthas then entered the tent of Duryodhana, shorn of its splendours and reft of its lord and looking like an arena of amusement after it has been deserted by spectators.[4] Indeed, that pavilion looked like a city reft of festivities, or a lake without its elephant. It then swarmed with women and eunuchs and certain aged counsellors.[5] Duryodhana and other heroes, attired in robes dyed in yellow, formerly used, O king, to wait reverentially, with joined hands, on those old counsellers.[6] Arrived at the pavilion of the Kuru king, the Pāndavas, those foremost of car-warriors, O monarch, dismounted from their cars.[7] At that time, always engaged, O bull of Bharata's race, in the good of his friend, Keçava, addressed the wielder of *Gāndiva*, saying,[8]—Take down thy *Gāndiva* as also the two inexhaustible quivers. I shall dismount after thee, O best of the Bharatas![9] Get thee down, for this is for thy good, O sinless one!—Pāndu's brave son Dhananjaya, did as he was directed.[10] The intelligent Krishna, abandoning the reins of the steeds, then dismounted from the car of Dhananjaya.[11] After the high-souled Lord of all creatures had dismounted from that car, the celestial Ape that topped the standard of Arjuna's vehicle, disappeared there and then.[12] That great vehicle then, which had before been burnt by Drona and Karna with their celestial weapons, quickly blazed forth into flames, O king, without any visible fire having been applied to it.[13] Indeed, the car of Dhananjaya, with its quivers, reins, steeds, yoke, and shaft, fell down, reduced to ashes.[14] Beholding the vehicle thus reduced to ashes, O lord, the sons of Pāndu became filled with wonder, and Arjuna, O king, having saluted Krishna and bowed unto him, said these words, with joined hands and in an affectionate voice,—O Govinda, O divine one, for what reason hath this car been consumed by fire?[15-16] What is this highly wonderful incident that has happened before our eyes? O thou of

mighty arms, if thou thinkest that I can listen to it without harm, then tell me everything!—[17]

"'Vāsudeva said,—"That car, O Arjuna, had before been consumed by diverse kinds of weapons. It was because I had sat upon it during battle that it did not fall into pieces, O scorcher of foes![18] Previously consumed by the energy of *Brahma* weapons, it has been reduced to ashes upon my abondoning it after attainment by thee of thy objects![19]—Then, with a little pride, that slayer of foes, viz., the divine Keçava, embracing king Yudhishthira, said unto him:[20]—By good luck, thou hast won the victory, O son of Kunti! By good luck, thy foes have been vanquished! By good luck, the wielder of *Gāndiva* and Bhimasena the son of Pāndu,[21] and thyself, O king, and the two sons of Mādri, have escaped with life from this battle so destructive of heroes, and have escaped after having slain all your foes![22] Quickly do that, O Bhārata, which should now be done by thee![23] After I had arrived at Upaplavya, thyself, approaching me, with the wielder of *Gāndiva* in thy company, gavest me honey and the customary ingredients, and saidst these words, O lord,[24]—*This Dhananjaya, O Krishna, is thy brother and friend! He should, therefore, be protected by thee in all dangers!*[25]—After thou hadst said these words I answered thee, saying,—*So be it!*—That Savyasāchin hath been protected by me. Victory also hath been thine, O king![26] With his brothers, O king of kings, that hero of true prowess hath come out of this dreadful battle, so destructive of heroes, with life![27]—Thus addressed by Krishna, king Yudhishthira the just, with hair standing on end, O monarch, said these words unto Janārddana.[28]

"'Yudhishthira said,—Who else save thee, O grinder of foes, not excepting the thunder-wielding Purandara himself, could have withstood the *Brahma* weapons hurled by Drona and Karna![29] It was through thy grace that the *Samsaptakas* were vanquished! It was through thy grace that Pārtha had never to turn back from even the fiercest of encounters![30] Similarly, it was through thy grace, O mighty-armed one, that I myself, with my posterity, have, by accomplishing diverse acts one after another, obtained the auspicious end of

prowess and energy![31] At Upaplavya, the great *Rishi* Krishna-Dwaipāyana told me that thither is Krishna where righteousness is, and thither is victory where Krishna is!—'[32]

"Sanjaya continued,—'After this conversation, those heroes entered thy encampment and obtained the military chest, many jewels, and much wealth.[33] And they also obtained silver and gold and gems and pearls and many costly ornaments and blankets and skins,[34] and innumerable slaves male and female, and many other things necessary for sovereignty. Having obtained that inexhaustible wealth belonging to thee, O bull of Bharata's race, those highly-blessed ones, whose foes had been slain, uttered loud cries of exultation.[35] Having unyoked their animals, the Pāndavas and Sātyaki remained there awhile for resting themselves.[36] Then Vāsudeva of great renown said,—We should, as an initiatry act of blessedness, remain out of the camp for this night![37]—Answering,—So be it!—the Pāndavas and Sātyaki, accompanied by Vāsudeva, went out of the camp for the sake of doing that which was regarded as an anspicious act.[38] Arrived on the banks of the sacred stream Oghavati, O king, the Pāndavas, reft of foes, took up their quarters there for that night![39] They then despatched Keçava of Yadu's race to Hastināpura. Vāsudeva of great prowess, causing Dāruka to get upon his car, proceeded very quickly to that place where the royal son of Amvikā was.[40] While about to start on his car having Caivya and Sugriva (and the others) yoked unto it, (the Pāndavas) said unto him, —Comfort the helpless Gāndhāri who hath lost all her sons![41] —Thus addressed by the Pāndavas, that chief of the Sātwatas then proceeded towards Hastināpura and arrived at the presence of Gāndhāri who had all her sons slain.'"[42]

SECTION LXIII.

Janamejaya said,—"For what reason did that tiger among kings, viz., Yudhishthira the just, despatch that scorcher of foes, viz., Vāsudeva, unto Gāndhāri?[1] Krishna had at first gone to the Kauravas for the sake of binging about peace. He did not obtain the fruition of his wishes. In consequence

of this the battle took place.[2] When all the warriors were slain and Duryodhana was struck down, when in consequence of the battle the empire of Pāndu's son became perfectly foeless,[3] when all the (Kuru) camp became empty, all its inmates having fled, when great renown was won by the son of Pāndu, what, O regenerate one, was the cause for which Krishna had once again to go (to Hastināpura)?[4] It seems to me, O Brāhmana, that the cause could not be a light one since it was Janārddana of immeasurable soul had himself to make the journey![5] O foremost of all *Adhyaryus*, tell me in detail what the cause was for undertaking such a mission!"[6]

Vaiçampāyana said.—"The question thou askest me, O king, is, indeed, worthy of thee! I will tell you everything truly as it occurred, O bull of Bharata's race![7] Beholding Duryodhana, the mighty son of Dhritarāshtra, struck down by Bhimasena in contravention of the rules of fair fight,[8] in fact, beholding the Kuru king slain unfairly, O Bhārata, Yudhishthira, O monarch, became filled with great fear,[9] at the thought of the highly-blessed Gāndhāri possessed of ascetic merit.—'She hath undergone severe ascetic austerities and can, therefore, consume the three worlds,'[10]—even thus thought the son of Pāndu. By sending Krishna, Gāndhāri, blazing with wrath, would be comforted before Yudhishthira's own arrival.[11]—'Hearing of the death of her son brought to such a plight by ourselves, she will, in wrath, with the fire of her mind, reduce us to ashes![12] How will Gāndhāri endure such poignant grief, after she hears her son, who always fought fairly, slain unfairly by us?'[13]—Having reflected in this strain for a long while, king Yudhishthira the just, filled with fear and grief, said these words unto Vāsudeva.[14]—'Through thy grace, O Govinda, my kingdom hath been reft of thorns! That which we could not in imagination even aspire to obtain hath now become ours, O thou of unfading glory! Before my eyes, O mighty-armed one, in battle, making the very hair to stand on end, violent were the blows that thou hadst to bear, O delighter of the Yādavas![15-16] In the battle between the gods and the *Asuras*, thou hadst, in days of old, lent thy aid for the destruction of the foes of the gods

and those foes were slain![17] In the same way, O mighty-armed one, thou hast given us aid, O thou of unfading glory! By agreeing to act as our charioteer, O thou of Vrishni's race, thou hast all along protected us![18] If thou hadst not been the protector of Phālguna in dreadful battle, how could then this sea of troops been capable of being vanquished?[19] Many were the blows of the mace, and many were the strokes of spiked bludgeons and darts and short arrows and lances and battle-axes, that have been endued by thee![20] For our sake, O Krishna, thou hadst also to hear many harsh words and endure the fall, violent as the thunder, of weapons in battle![21] In consequence of Duryodhana's slaughter, all this has not been fruitless, O thou of unfading glory! Act thou again in such a way that the fruit of all those acts may not be destroyed![22] Although victory hath been ours, O Krishna, our heart, however, is yet trembling in doubt! Know, O Mādhava, that Gāndhāri's wrath, O mighty-armed one, hath been provoked![23] That highly-blessed lady is always emaciating herself with the austerest of penances! Hearing of the slaughter of her sons and grandsons, she will, without doubt, consume us to ashes! It is time, O hero, I think, for pacifying her![24] Except thee, O foremost of men, what other person is there that is able to even behold that lady of eyes red like copper in wrath and exceedingly afflicted with the ills that have befallen her children?[25] That thou shouldst go there, O Mādhava, is what I think to be proper, for pacifying Gāndhāri, O chastiser of foes, who is blazing with wrath! Thou art the Creator and the Destroyer! Thou art the first cause of all the worlds, thyself being eternal![26] By words fraught with reasons, visible and invisible,* that are all the result of time, thou wilt quickly, O thou of great wisdom, be able to pacify Gāndhāri![27] Our grandsire, the holy Krishna-Dwaipāyana, will be there. O mighty-armed one, it is thy duty to dispel, by all means in thy power, the wrath of Gāndhāri![28]—Hearing these words of king Yudhishthira the just, the perpetuator of Yadu's

* *I. e.*, illustrations drawn from visible objects and those based upon such articles of faith as are not addressed to the senses.—T.

race, summoning Dāruka, said,—'Let my car be equipped![29] Having received Keçava's command, Dāruka in great haste, returned and represented unto his high-souled master that the car was ready.[30] That scorcher of foes and chief of Yadu's race, viz., the lord Keçava, having mounted upon the car, proceeded with great haste to the city of the Kurus.[31] The adorable Mādhava then, riding on his vehicle, proceeded, and arriving at the city called after the elephant entered it.[32] Causing the city to resound with the rattle of his car-wheels as he entered it, he sent word to Dhritarāshtra and then alighted from his vehicle and entered the palace of old king.[33] He there beheld that best of *Rishis*, (viz., Dwaipāyana), arrived before him. Janārddana, embracing the feet of both Vyāsa and Dhritarāshtra,[34] quietly saluted Gāndhāri also. Then the foremost of the Yādavas, viz., Vishnu, seizing Dhritarāshtra by the hand, O monarch, began to weep melodiously.[35] Having shed tears for a while from sorrow,[36] he washed his eyes and his face with water according to rules. That chastiser of foes then said these softly flowing words unto Dhritarāshtra.[37]—'Nothing is unknown to thee, O Bhārata, about the past and the future! Thou art well-acquainted, O lord, with the course of time![38] From a regard for thee, the Pāndavas had endeavoured to prevent the destruction of their race and the extermination of Kshatriyas, O Bhārata![39] Having made an understanding with his brothers, the virtuous Yudhishthira had lived peacefully. He even went to exile after defeat at unfair dice![40] With his brothers he led a life of concealment, attired in various disguises. They also endured every day diverse other woes as if they were quite helpless![41] On the eve of battle I myself came and in the presence of all men begged of thee only five villages.[42] Afflicted by Time, and moved by covetousness, thou didst not grant my request. Through thy fault, O king, all the Kshatriya race hath been exterminated![43] Bhishma, and Somadatta, and Vālhika, and Kripa, and Drona, and his son, and the wise Vidura, always solicited thee for peace. Thou didst not, however, follow their counsels![44] Every one, it seems, when afflicted by Time, is stupified, O Bhārata, since even thou, O king, as regards this matter, didst act so

foolishly![45] What else can it be but the effect of Time? Indeed, Destiny is supreme! Do not, O thou of great wisdom, impute any fault to the Pāndavas![46] The smallest transgression is not discernible in the high-souled Pāndavas, judged by the rules of morality or reason or affection, O scorcher foes![47] Knowing all this to be the fruit of thy own fault, it behoveth thee not to cherish any ill feeling towards the Pāndavas![48] Race, line, funeral cake, and what else depends upon offspring, now depend on the Pāndavas as regards both thyself and Gāndhāri![49] Thyself, O tiger among the Kurus, and the renowned Gāndhāri also, should not harbour malice towards the Pāndavas![50] Reflecting upon all this, and thinking also of thy own transgressions, cherish good feelings towards the Pāndavas, I bow to thee, O bull of Bharata's race![51] Thou knowest, O mighty-armed one, what the devotion is of king Yudhishthira and what his affection is towards thee, O tiger among kings![52] Having caused this slaughter of even foes that wronged him so, he is burning day and night, and hath not succeeded in obtaining peace of mind![53] That tiger among men, grieving for thee and for Gāndhāri, faileth to obtain any happiness.[54] Overwhelmed with shame he cometh not before thee that art burning with grief on account of thy children and whose understanding and senses have been agitated by that grief![55]'—Having said these words unto Dhritarāshtra, that foremost one of Yadu's race, O monarch, addressed the grief-stricken Gāndhāri in these words of high-import:[56]—'O daughter of Suvala, O thou of excellent vows, listen to what I say! O auspicious dame, there is now no lady like thee in the world![57] Thou rememberest, O queen, those words that thou spokest in the assembly in my presence, —those words fraught with righteousness and that were beneficial to both parties,—which thy sons, O auspicious lady, did not obey![58-59] Duryodhana who coveted victory was addressed by thee in bitter words. Thou toldst him then—*Listen, O fool, to these words of mine, viz., thither is victory where righteousness is?*[60]—Those words of thine, O princess, have now been accomplished! Knowing all this, O auspicious lady, do not set thy heart on sorrow![61] Let not

thy heart incline towards the destruction of the Pāndavas! In consequence of the strength of thy penances, thou art able, O highly blessed one, to burn, with thy eyes kindled with rage, the whole Earth with her mobile and immobile creatures!'[62] Hearing these words of Vāsudeva, Gāndhāri said,—'It is even so, O Keçava, as thou sayest![63] My heart, burning in grief, had been unsteadied! After hearing thy words, however, that heart, O Janārddana, hath again become steady![64] As regards the blind old king, now become childless, thou, O foremost of men, with those heroes, viz., the sons of Pāndu, hast become his refuge![65]—Having said so much, Gāndhāri, burning in grief on account of the death of her sons, covered her face with her cloth and began to weep aloud![66] The mighty-armed lord Keçava then comforted the grief-stricken princess with words that were fraught with reasons drawn from visible and invisible instances.[67] Having comforted Gāndhāri and Dhritarāshtra, Keçava of Madhu's race came to know (by intuition) the evil that was meditated by Drona's son.[68] Rising up in haste after worshipping the feet of Vyāsa with a bend of his head, Keçava, O monarch, addressed Dhritarāshtra, saying,[69]—'I take thy leave, O foremost one of Kuru's race! Do not set thy heart on grief! The son of Drona bears an evil purpose. It is for this that I rise so suddenly![70] It seems that he has formed the project of destroying the Pāndavas during the night!'—Hearing these words, both Gāndhāri and Dhritarāshtra said unto Keçava, that slayer of Keçin, these words:—'Go quickly, O mighty-armed one, and protect the Pāndavas![71-72] Let me soon meet thee again, O Janārddana!'—Then Keçava of unfading glory proceeded with Dāruka.[73] After Vāsudeva had departed, O king, Vyāsa, that adored of the whole world, of inconceivable soul, began to comfort king Dhritarāshtra.[74] The righteous-souled Vāsudeva departed, having achieved his mission successfully, from Hastināpura, for seeing the camp and the Pāndavas.[75] Arrived at the camp, he proceeded to the presence of the Pāndavas. Telling them everything (about his mission to the city), he took his seat with them."[76]

SECTION LXIV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Kicked at the head, his thighs broken, prostrated on the ground, exceedingly proud, what, O Sanjaya, did my son then say?'[1] King Duryodhana was exceedingly wrathful and his hostility to the sons of Pāndu was deep-rooted. When, therefore, this great calamity overtook him, what did he next say on the field?'[2]

"Sanjayaa said,—'Listen to me, O monarch, as I describe to thee what happened! Listen, O king, to what Duryodhana said when overtaken by calamity![3] With his thighs broken, the king, O monarch, covered with dust, gathered his flowing locks, casting his eyes on all sides.[4] Having with difficulty gathered his locks, he began to sigh like a snake. Filled with rage and with tears flowing fast from his eyes, he looked at me. He struck his arms against the Earth for a while like an infuriate elephant.[5] Shaking his loose locks, and gnashing his teeth, he began to censure the eldest son of Pāndu. Breathing heavily, he then addressed me, saying,[6]—Alas, I who had Cāntanu's son Bhishma for my protector, and Karna, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, and Gotama's son, and Cakuni, and Drona, that first of all wielders of arms,[7] and Açwatthāman, and the heroic Calya, and Kritavarman, alas, even I have come to this plight! It seems that Time is irresistible![8] I was the lord of eleven *Chamus* of troops and yet I have come to this plight! O mighty-armed one, no one can rise superior to Time![9] Those of my side that have escaped with life from this battle should be informed how I have been struck down by Bhimasena in contravention of the rules of fair fight![10] Many have been the very unfair and sinful acts that have been perpetrated towards Bhuriçravas, and Bhishma, and Drona of great prosperity![11] This is another very infamous act that the cruel Pāndavas have perpetrated, for which, I am certain, they will incur the condemnation of all righteous men![12] What pleasure can a righteously disposed person enjoy at having gained a victory by unfair acts? What wise man, again, is there that would accord his approbation to a person contraven-

ing the rules of fairness?[13] What learned man is there that would rejoice after having won victory by unrighteousness as that sinful wretch, viz., Vrikodara the son of Pāndu, rejoices?[14] What can be more amazing than this, viz., that Bhimasena in wrath should with his foot touch the head of one like me while lying with my thighs broken?[15] Is that person, O Sanjaya, worthy of honor who behaveth thus towards a man possessed of glory, endued with prosperity, living in the midst of friends?[16] my parents are not ignorant of the duties of battle. Instructed by me, O Sanjaya, tell them that are afflicted with grief these words:[17]—I have performed sacrifices, supported a large number of servants properly, governed the whole Earth with her seas! I stayed on the heads of my living foes![18] I gave wealth to my kinsmen to the extent of my abilities, and I did what was agreeable to friends. I withstood all my foes. Who is there that is more fortunate than myself?[19] I have made progresses through hostile kingdoms and commanded kings as slaves. I have acted handsomely towards all I loved and liked. Who is there more fortunate than myself?[20] I honored all my kinsmen and attended to the welfare of all my dependants. I have attended to the three ends of human existence, viz., Religion, Profit, and Pleasure! Who is there more fortunate than myself?[21] I laid my commands on great kings, and honor, unattainable by others, was mine. I always made my journeys on the very best of steeds. Who is there more fortunate than myself?[22] I studied the Vedas and made gifts according to the ordinance. My life has passed in happiness. By observance of the duties of my own order, I have obtained many regions of blessedness hereafter. Who is there more fortunate than myself?[23] By good luck, I have not been vanquished in battle and subjected to the necessity of serving my foes as masters. By good luck, O lord, it is only after my death that my swelling Prosperity abandons me for waiting upon another![24] That which is desired by good Kshatriyas observant of the duties of their order, that death, is obtained by me! Who is there so fortunate as myself?[25] By good luck, I did not suffer myself to be turned away from the path of hostility and to be vanquished like an ordinary person! By

good luck, I have not been vanquished after I had done some base act![26] Like the slaughter of a person that is asleep or that is heedless, like the slaughter of one by the administration of poison, my slaughter hath taken place, for I have been slain as unrighteously, in contravention of the rules of fair fight![27] The highly blessed Açwatthāman, and Kritavarman of the Sātwata race, and Caradwat's son Kripa, should be told these words of mine, viz.,[28]—*You should never repose any confidence upon the Pāndavas, those violaters of rules, who have perpetrated many unrighteous acts!*[29]—After this, thy royal son of true prowess addressed our messagebearers in these words:—I have, in battle, been slain by Bhimasena most unrighteously![30] I am now like a moneyless wayfarer and shall follow in the wake of Drona who has already gone to heaven, of Karna and Calya, of Vrishasena of great energy, of Cakuni the son of Suvala, of Jalasandha of great valour, of king Bhagadatta, of Somadatta's son, that mighty bowman, of Jayadratha the king of the Sindhus, of all my brothers headed by Dusçāsana and equal unto myself, of Dusçāsana's son of great prowess, and of Lakshmana my son, and thousands of others that fought for me![31-34] Alas, how shall my sister, stricken with woe, live sorrowfully, after hearing of the slaughter of her brothers and her husband![35] Alas, what shall be the plight of the old king, my sire, with Gāndhāri, and his daughters-in-law and grand-daughter-in-law![36] Without doubt, the beautiful and large-eyed mother of Lakshmana, made sonless and husbandless, will soon meet with her death![37] If Chārvāka, the mendicant devotee who is a master of speech, learns everything, that blessed man will certainly avenge my death![38] By dying upon the sacred field of Samantapanchaka, celebrated over the three worlds, I shall certainly obtain many eternal regions![39]—Then, O sire, thousands of men, with eyes full of tears, fled away in all directions, having heard these lamentations of the king.[40] The whole Earth, with her forests and seas, with all her mobile and immobile creatures, began to tremble violently, and produce a loud noise. All the points of the compass became murky.[41] The messengers, repairing to Drona's son,

represented to him all that had happened regarding the conduct of the mace-encounter and the fall of the king.[46] Having represented everything unto Drona's son, O Bhārata, all of them remained in a thoughtful mood for a long while and then went away, grief-stricken, to the places they came from.'"[48]

SECTION LXV.

"Sanjaya said,—"Having heard of Duryodhana's fall from the messengers, those mighty car-warriors, viz., the unslain remnant of the Kaurava army,[1] exceedingly wounded with keen shafts, and maces and lances and darts,—those three, viz., Aāwatthāman and Kripa and Kritavarman of the Sātwata race,[2] came quickly on their fleet steeds to the field of battle. They beheld there the high-souled son of Dhritarāshtra prostrate on the ground[3] like a gigantic *Çāla* tree laid low in the forest by a tempest. They beheld him writhing on the bare ground and covered with bloood[4] even like a mighty elephant in the forest laid low by a hunter. They saw him weltering in agony and bathed in profuse streams of blood.[5] Indeed, they saw him lying on the ground like the Sun dropped on the Earth or like the Ocean dried by a mighty wind,[6] or like the full Moon in the firmament with his disc shrouded by a fog. Equal to an elephant in prowess and possessed of long arms, the king lay on the Earth, covered with dust.[7] Around him were many terrible creatures and carnivorous animals, like wealth-coveting dependents around a monarch in state.[8] His forehead was contracted into furrows of rage and his eyes were rolling in wrath. They beheld the king, that tiger among men, full of rage, like a tiger struck down (by hunters).[9] Those great bow-men, viz., Kripa and others, beholding the monarch laid low on the Earth, became stupified.[10] Alighting from their cars, they ran towards the king. Seeing Duryodhana, all of them sat on the Earth around him.[11] Then Drona's son, O monarch, with tearful eyes and breathing like a snake, said these words unto that chief of Bharata's race, that foremost of all the kings

on Earth :[12]—Truly, there is nothing stable in the world of men, since thou, O tiger among men, liest on the bare Earth, stained with dust![13] Thou wert a king who had laid thy commands on the whole Earth! Why then, O foremost of monarchs, dost thou lie alone on the bare ground in such a lonely wilderness?[14] I do not see Dusçāsana beside thee, nor the great car-warrior Karna, nor those friends of thine numbering in hundreds! What is this, O bull among men?[15] Without doubt, it is difficult to learn the ways of Yama, since thou, O lord of all the worlds, thus liest on the bare ground, stained with dust![16] Alas, this scorcher of foes used to walk at the head of all Kshatriyas that had their locks sprinkled with holy water at ceremonies of coronation! Alas, he now eateth the dust! Behold the reverses that Time bringeth on its course![17] Where is that pure white umbrella of thine? Where is that fanning yak-tail also, O king! Where hath that vast army of thine now gone, O best of monarchs?[18] The course of events is certainly a mystery when causes other than those relied upon are at book, since even thou that wert the master of the world hast been reduced to this plight![19] Without doubt, the prosperity of all mortals is very unstable, since thou that wert equal unto Cakra himself hast now been reduced to such a sorry plight![20] —Hearing these words of the sorrowing Açwatthāman, thy son answered him in these words that were suited to the occasion.[21] He wiped his eyes with his hands and shed tears of grief anew. The king then addressed all those heroes headed by Kripa and said,[22]—This liability to death (of all living creatures) is said to have been ordained by the Creator himself. Death comes to all beings in course of Time![23] That death hath now come to me, before the eyes of ye all! I who reigned over the whole Earth have now been reduced to this plight![24] By good luck, I never turned back from battle whatever calamities overtook me! By good luck, I have been slain by those sinful men, by the aid particularly of deception![25] By good luck, while engaged in hostilities, I always displayed courage and perseverance! By good luck, I am slain in battle, along with all my kinsmen and friends![26] By good luck, I

behold you escaped with life from this great slaughter, and safe and sound! This is highly agreeable to me![27] Do not, from affection, grieve for my death! If the Vedas are any authority, I have certainly acquired many eternal regions![28] I am not ignorant of the glory of Krishna of immeasurable energy. He hath not caused me to fall off from the proper observance of Kshatriya duties![29] I have obtained him! On no account should any body grieve for me! Ye have done what persons like ye should do! Ye have always striven for my success. Destiny, however, is incapable of being frustrated![30]—Having said this much, the king, with eyes laved with tears, became silent, O monarch, agitated as he was with agony.[31] Beholding the king in tears and grief, Drona's son flamed up in anger like the fire that is seen at the universal destruction.[32] Overwhelmed with rage, he squeezed his hands, and addressing the king in a voice hoarse with tears, he said these words:[33]—My sire was slain by those wretches with a cruel contrivance! That act, however, doth not burn me so keenly as this plight to which thou hast been reduced, O king![34] Listen to these words of mine that I utter, swearing by Truth itself, O lord, and by all my acts of piety, all my gifts, my religion, and the religious merits I have won![35] I shall today, in the very presence of Vāsudeva, despatch all the Pānchālas, by all means in my power, to the abode of Yama! It behoveth thee, O monarch, to grant me permission![36]—Hearing these words of Drona's son, that were highly agreeable to his heart, the Kuru king addressed Kripa, saying,—O preceptor, bring me without delay a pot full of water![37]—At these words of the king, that foremost of Brāhmanas soon brought a vessel full of water and approached the king.[38] Thy son then, O monarch, said unto Kripa,—Let the son of Drona, O foremost of Brāhmanas, blessed be thou, if thou wishest to do me good, be at my command installed as generalissimo![39] At the command of the king, even a Brāhmana may fight, especially one that has adopted Kshatriya practices! Those learned in the scriptures say this![40]—Hearing these words of the king, Kripa, the son of Caradwat, installed Drona's son as generalissimo,

at the king's command![41] The installation over, O monarch, Açwatthāman embraced that best of kings and left the spot, having caused the ten points to resound with his leonine roars.[42] That foremost of kings, viz., Duryodhana, profusely covered with blood, began to pass there that night so frightful to all creatures.[43] Wending away quickly from the field of battle, O king, those heroes, with hearts agitated by grief, began to reflect anxiously and earnestly.' "[44]

FINIS CALYA PARVA.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CALYA PARVA.

	PAGE.
Janamejaya enquires what the Kauravas did after the fall of Karna	1
Suyodhana's sorrow at Karna's slaughter ...	ib
Ditto resolves on continuing the battle ...	ib
Calya made commander of the Kuru army ...	ib
Calya slain at midday by Yudhishthira ...	2
The flight of Duryodhana from the field ...	ib
Duryodhana slain by Bhimasena	ib
Açwatthāman and Kripa and Kritavarman exterminate the Pāndava army during the night ...	ib
Sanjaya returns to the Kuru city	ib
The grief of the citizens upon hearing of Duryodhana's fall	ib
Sanjaya presents himself before Dhritarāshtra and informs him of the universal destruction ...	3
Dhritarāshtra's grief	4
Dhritarāshtra orders the ladies to retire ...	ib
Vidura comforts Dhritarāshtra	5
Dhritarāshtra's lament	ib
Ditto enquires of Sanjaya about the details of the battle	9
Sanjaya begins his narration	ib
The fear of the Kurus upon the fall of Karna ...	ib
The state of the Kuru army after Karna's fall ...	10
Duryodhana's resolution about withstanding the victors	ib
Bhima and Dhrishtadyumna cause a great carnage	11
Dhananjaya and the other Pāndava heroes attack the Kurus	ib
The Kuru army breaks and flies away	12
Duryodhana's spirited address to his flying troops ...	13
The Kurus rally and rush to battle	ib
Kripa addresses Duryodhana and urges him to make peace with the Pāndavas	14

PAGE.

Duryodhana rejects Kripa's counsels. 19
The Kuru warriors pass the night on the table-land of the Himālayas 21
They urge Duryodhana to continue the battle ... ib
Sanjaya describes the merits of Açwatthāman ... 22
Duryodhana asks Açwatthāman's advice as to who should be made the commander of the Kuru forces 23
Açwatthāman indicates Calya ... ... ib
Duryodhana asks Calya to take the lead of the army ib
Calya accepts the command ... ... ib
Duryodhana asks Calya to slay his foes... ... ib
Calya promises to slay the Pāndavas and the Somakas 24
The Kuru army inspired with cheerfulness ... ib
Calya resolves to slay or be slain 25
Yudhishthira asks Krishna his advice ... ... ib
Krishna thinks Yudhishthira only to be a match for Calya 26
Krishna urges Yudhishthira to himself proceed against Calya and slay him ... ... ib
The Kuru army prepares for battle 27
The Kuru leaders resolve to fight unitedly ... ib
Dhritarāshtra asks Sanjaya the details of Calya's fall 28
Sanjaya begins his narrative ... ... ib
The order in which the Kuru army proceeds to battle ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires after the relative strength of the two armies 29
Sanjaya's answer ... ... ib
The commencement of the battle 30
The fierce slaughter on both sides 32
The Kuru army breaks and flies away 33
The Kuru leaders endeavour to rally their troops ... ib
Calya proceeds against the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Nakula encounters Chitrasena the son of Karna and slays him 34
Nakula encountered by Chitrasena's brothers Satyasena and Sushena 35
Nakula slays Satysena 36

PAGE.

Ditto slays Sushena 36
Rallied by Calya the Kuru army fights the Pāndavas bravely 37
A great slaughter takes place on both sides ... ib
Calya fights his foes with great heroism ... 38
The portents on Earth and in the welkin ... 39
Calya encounters all the Pāndava leaders ... ib
Calya attacks Yudhishthira 40
Calya encountered in return by the Pāndava leaders ib
Diverse encounters between diverse leaders ... ib
Kritavarman flies away before Bhima 42
Bhima, armed with his mace, proceeds against Calya ib
Bhima and Calya assail each other with their maces ib
Bhima and Calya both become insensible ... 44
Kripa takes up Calya on his car ... ... ib
Bhima, recovering his senses, challenges Calya ... ib
Duryodhana slays Chekitāna ... ... ib
Diverse encounters between diverse heroes ... ib
The dust raised by the combatants conceals everything from the view 45
Calya assails Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Yudhishthira repels Calya ... ... ib
Yudhishthira worsted by Calya 46
The Pāndava leaders unitedly assail Calya ... 47
Calya's extraordinary heroism 48
Calya agitates the whole Pāndava army ... 49
The gods and the *Gandharvas* are filled with wonder at Calya's energy ... ... ib
Arjuna encountered by Açwatthāman and the Trigartas 50
The fierce battle between Arjuna and Açwatthāman 51
Açwatthāman encounters the Pānchāla hero Suratha and slays him 52
Arjuna's heroism 53
Duryodhana worsted by Dhrishtadyumna ... ib
Cikhandin fights Kripa and Kritavarman ... ib
Calya encounters Sātyaki 54
The Pāndavas afflicted by the Kurus 56

PAGE.

Dhananjaya covers Kripa and Kritavarman with shafts 56
Yudhishthira withstands Calya ... ... ib
The Pāndavas fly away before Calya 57
Yudhishthira's address to his brothers and Krishna about his resolution to slay Calya ... ... ib
Yudhishthira, properly supported, encounters Calya 58
The extraordinary feats of Yudhishthira in battle... 59
Calya worsted in the fight 60
Açwatthāman bears Calya away on his car ... ib
Calya, riding on another car, comes again to battle 61
The Pāndava leaders assail him ... ... ib
Yudhishthira fights Calya ... ... ib
Calya slays Yudhishthira's steeds 63
Bhimasena cuts off Calya's mail ... ... ib
Yudhishthira slays Calya with a celestial dart ... 65
Yudhishthira encountered by the younger brother of Calya 66
The younger brother of Calya slain by Yudhishthira ib
The Kauravas fly away before Yudhishthira ... ib
Sātyaki pursues the flying Kauravas 67
Kritavarman encounters Sātyaki ... ... ib
Kritavarman worsted by Sātyaki ... ... ib
Kripa rescues Kritavarman... ... ... ib
Duryodhana withstands the Pāndava leaders ... ib
The heroism of Duryodhana 68
Kritavarman returns to the fight on another car ... ib
Yudhishthira makes Kritavarman carless ... ib
Açwatthāman rescues Kritavarman ... ... ib
Kripa encounters Yudhishthira ... ... ib
The Pāndavas blow their conchs in joy ... ib
The followers of Calya resolve to avenge the slaughter of their master ... ... ib
Duryodhana commands them not to proceed to battle ib
Disregarding the commands of Duryodhana they attack Yudhishthira ... ... ib
The Pāndava leaders assail the Madrakas and slaughter them furiously 69

PAGE.

Cakuni urges Duryodhana to proceed to the rescue of the Madrakas 69
The Kaurava heroes proceed to the rescue of the Madrakas 70
The remnant of the Madrakas exterminated by the Pāndavas 71
Duryodhana turns away from the field... ... ib
The Kuru army flies away from the field after Calya's fall ib
The Pāndavas and the Pānchālas congratulate one another ib
Duryodhana's spirited address to his driver upon seeing his troops fly away 73
The remnant of the Kuru army rallies for the fight ib
They are slaughtered by Dhrishtadyumna ... 74
Duryodhana withstands the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Duryodhana rallies a small force 75
The Pāndavas rush against that small force ... ib
The Mleccha ruler Cālwa proceeds against the Pāndavas 76
Cālwa's heroism ... ... ib
The Pāndavas fly away before Cālwa ... ... ib
Cālwa rushes on his elephant against Dhrishtadyumna 77
Cālwa's elephant breaks Dhrishtadyumna's car ... ib
Bhima and Sātyaki check the animal ... ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna attacks Cālwa's beast with his mace ib
Cālwa's elephant slain by Dhrishtadyumna ... ib
Sātyaki cuts off Cālwa's head 78
Kritavarman, rallying a portion of the Kuru army, withstands the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Sātyaki slays Kshemakirti ... ... ib
Encounter between Sātyaki and Kritavarman ... ib
Kritavarman made steedless and driverless and carless by Sātyaki 79
Kripa bears Kritavarman away upon his car ... 80
The entire Kuru army once more breaks and flies away ib
Duryodhana alone resists the Pāndavas ... ib
The extraordinary heroism of Duryodhana ... ib
Seeing Duryodhana's feats, the Kuru army once more rallies and returns to the fight 81
Cakuni makes Yudhishthira carless 82

PAGE.

Sahadeva rescues Yudhishthira 82
Yudhishthira returns to battle on another car ... ib
Diverse encounters between diverse leaders ... ib
The Kuru warriors suddenly return to battle ... 84
Kritavarman worsted by Yudhishthira ... ib
Açwatthāman rescues Kritavarman ... ... ib
Yudhishthira encountered by seven hundred (Kuru) car-warriors ... ... ib
The Pāndava leaders proceed to Yudhishthira's rescue ib
The seven hundred Kuru warriors slain by the Pāndavas 85
The Pānchālas and the Pāndavas encounter the entire Kuru army ... ... ib
Fierce portents in Nature ... ... ib
Cakuni fights with great heroism ... ... ib
Yudhishthira urges Sahadeva to slay Cakuni ... ib
The Pāndava horse assail Cakuni with great vigor ib
Cakuni at the head of six thousand horse moves away from the spot 87
Cakuni attacks Dhrishtadyumna's division ... 88
The fierce battle that ensues upon this... ... ib
Cakuni enquires after Duryodhana 90
Duryodhana urged by Cakuni to attack the Pāndavas ib
The remnant of the Kuru army attacks the Pāndavas ib
Arjuna desires to exterminate the Kurus ... 91
Arjuna's address to Krishna recounting the loss sustained by the Kurus ... ... ib
Arjuna proceeds against the remnant of the Kuru army 93
The arrows of Arjuna fall like dense clouds ... ib
The great slaughter caused by Arjuna 94
Dhrishtadyumna makes Duryodhana carless ... 95
Duryodhana escapes on horse-back ... ... ib
Three thousand (Kaurava) elephants encompass the Pāndava brothers 96
Bhima slays those elephants with his mace ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna also proceeds against those elephants ib
Açwatthāman and Kripa and Kritavarman enquire after the whereabouts of Duryodhana 97

PAGE.

Açwatthāman and Kripa and Kritavarman rush against the Pānchālas 97
Those three Kuru leaders then repair in search of Duryodhana ... ... ib
The Pānchālas fiercely assail the Kurus ... ib
Sanjaya, having escaped from Dhrishtadyumna, is made captive by Sātyaki 98
The Pāndavas exterminate the Kaurava elephants ib
Bhimasena slays eleven of the remaining sons of Dhritarāshtra 99
Bhimasena next slays five hundred car-warriors, ten thousand foot, seven hundred elephants, and eight hundred horse 100
Krishna urges Arjuna to destroy the remnant of Duryodhana's troops for forcing Duryodhana to come to battle 101
Arjuna's reply to Krishna about his resolution to exterminate the Kauravas 102
Arjuna destroys the remnant of the Kaurava horse 103
Ditto proceeds against the Trigarta cars ... ib
Ditto slays Satyeshu ... ... ib
Ditto slays Suçarman 104
Bhima completes the destruction of the Kaurava army ib
Cakuni rushes against Sahadeva ... ... ib
Struck by Cakuni, Sahadeva sits down on his car 106
Bhima and Sahadeva rush furiously against Cakuni's men ib
Cakuni's followers fly away from the field ... ib
The followers of Cakuni, rallied by Duryodhana, come back to battle ... ... ib
Uluka aids his sire Cakuni ... ... ib
Sahadeva slays Uluka ... ... ib
Cakuni assails Sahadeva with great vigor ... 107
Cakuni's division flies away ... ... ib
Cakuni himself flies away ... ... ib
Sahadeva pursues Cakuni ... ... ib
Cakuni slain by Sahadeva 108
The followers of Cakuni attack Sahadeva with fury 109

PAGE.

Arjuna slays them speedily... 109
The last remnant of Kaurava troops slain by the Pāndavas 110
Dhritarāshtra asks Sanjaya about the strength of the Pāndava army after the Kaurava army had been exterminated ... ... ib
Sanjaya recounts the numbers 111
Having witnessed the extermination of his army, Duryodhana abandons his slain steed, and flies away from the field without a companion ... ... ib
Dhrishtadyumna urges Sātyaki to slay Sanjaya ... ib
Sanjaya set free by Sātyaki at the command of Vyāsa 112
Sanjaya meets with Duryodhana ... ... ib
Duryodhana's message, through Sanjaya, to his old sire ib
Sanjaya meets with Açwatthāman and Kripa and Kritavarman 113
The grief of the women in the Kuru camp ... ib
The women and the servants fly to Hastināpura ... 114
Yuyutsu's reflections upon what he should do in view of the total destruction that had overtaken the Kauravas ib
Yuyutsu solicits Yudhishthira's permission to go to Hastināpura ... ... ib
Yuyutsu supervises the removal of the royal ladies to the city 115
Yuyutsu goes to Hastināpura and sees Vidura ... ib
Vidura asks Yuyutsu to stay that night at Hastināpura ib
Yuyutsu passes the night in his own abode in great sorrow 116
Dhritarāshtra asks Sanjaya as to what Açwatthāman and Kripa and Kritavarman did after the flight of Duryodhana ... ... ib
The Pāndavas wander over the field in search of Duryodhana ... ... ib
Tired, they take rest in their camp, with all their troops 117
The three survivors of the Kuru army proceed to the shores of the lake within which Duryodhana lies concealed for taking rest ... ... ib

PAGE.

They ask Duryodhana to come out and fight ... 117
Duryodhana answers them, saying that he would rest for that night and fight on the next morning ... ib
Açwatthāman vows to slay all the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas ... ... ib
Certain hunters overhear the conversation between Duryodhana and the three Kuru leaders ... 118
These carry the news of Duryodhana's whereabouts to Bhimasena ... ... ib
The Pāndavas all start for the side of the lake ... ib
At sight of the Pāndavas coming towards that direction, the three Kuru heroes leave the side of the lake 120
The Pāndavas arrive at the shores of the lake and find its waters stupified by illusion 121
Vāsudeva counsels Yudhishthira to slay Duryodhana by putting forth his powers of illusion ... ib
Yudhishthira tauntingly addresses Duryodhana for having fled from battle 122
Duryodhana answers that his having entered the depths of the lake was due not to fear but to the desire of taking rest 123
Yudhishthira asks Duryodhana to come out immediately and fight his foes 124
Duryodhana answers that his kingdom might be taken by his foes, his own desire being to enter the woods and retire from the world ... ... ib
Yudhishthira taunts him for such an answer, refusing to take the kingdom in gift from one who was unable to retain it by might 125

Gadāyuddha Parva.

Duryodhana agrees to fight his foes one at a time 126
Yudhishthira grants Duryodhana's request, adding if he could slay even one among the five Pāndavas, he would continue king... 127
Duryodhana rises from the lake 128
Ditto challenges the Pāndavas 129

PAGE.

Ditto proposes to fight fairly with one of the five Pāndavas at a time, in the presence of all the Kshatriyas 129
Yudhishthira taunts Duryodhana for his unfair conduct in slaying Abhimanyu 130
Duyodhana, armed with mace, stands ready for battle 131
Krishna reproves Yudhishthira for his rashness in staking everything on the result of such a single combat with Duryodhana ... ... ib
Bhimasena assures Krishna that Duryodhana would be no match for him even in an encounter with the mace 132
Krishna applauds Bhima and urges him to slay Duryodhana ... ... ib
Bhima's boastful address 133
Duryodhana's dignified reply 134
Valarāma makes his appearance on the field when Bhima and Duryodhana are about to fight ... 135
Rāma desires to witness the fight 136
Janamejaya enquires of Vaiçampāyana how Rāma came there 137
Vaiçampāyana begins the narrative of Rāma's pilgrimage to various *tirthas* on the Saraswati ... ib
Origin and history of *Prabhāsa* 139
Daksha's curse on Soma 141
Soma regains his splendour after bathing in *Prabhāsa* 142
The history of Udapāna 143
The history of *Vinaçana* 147
Ditto of Subhumika ... ... ib
Ditto of Gargaçrota 148
Ditto of Cakha ... ... ib
Ditto of Saptasāraswat 152
Ditto of Ucanas 156
The origin of the name Kapālamochana ... ib
How Ārshtisena, Sindhudwipa, Devāpi, and Viçwāmitra acquired the status of Brāhmanas 159
The story of Dālvya-vaka 161
The story of the *tirtha* called Yāyāta 163
Ditto of ditto called Vaçisthāpavāha 164

PAGE.

The story of Indra's curse and his expiation ... 169
The story of the installation of Kārtikeya in the command of the celestial army 170
Kārtikeya's birth 171
Umā and others ask Brahman to give some kind of sovereignty to Kārtikeya 173
Brahman makes Kārtikeya the celestial generalissimo ib.
The investiture of Kārtikeya 174
The gods give Companions to Kārtikeya ... 175
The celestial mothers that assembled round Skanda 181
Skanda, accompanied by the celestial force, proceeds against the *Daityas* and slays Tāraka and Mohisha 185
Ditto slays other *Daitya* leaders 186
Story of the *tirtha* called *Taijasa* and that of the installation of Varuna 188
Story of *Agni-tirtha* 189
Story of the *Kauvera* and Vadara-pāchana *tirthas*... 190
Story of the *tirtha* called after Indra 195
The other *tirthas* visited by Valadeva ... 196
The story of Asita-Devala and Jaigishavya ... 197
Devala adopts the religion of *Moksha* 201
The story of the *Rishi* called Sāraswat ... 202
The story of the old maiden 205
The history of Samantapanchaka 208
Valadeva meets with Nārada on the heights of Himavat 211
Nārada gives Valadeva a brief history of the great battle, including the names of those chiefs that have fallen ... ... ib.
Nārada asks Valadeva to go to the field for witnessing the mace-encounter between Bhima and Duryodhana 212
Valadeva's praise of the Saraswati ... ... ib.
Valadeva comes to the spot selected for the encounter between Bhima and Duryodhana 213
Bhima and Duryodhana as they look on the eve of the encounter 214
The Kshatriya chiefs take their seats as Bhima and Duryodhana prepare for the fight 215

PAGE.

The wordy encounter between the two heroes ... 216
The commencement of the fierce encounter ... 219
The progress of the encounter 220
Arjuna enquires of Krishna about the relative merits of the two combatants and Krishna's answer ... 224
Arjuna slaps his own thigh for reminding Bhimasena of his vow 226
Bhimasena breaks the thighs of Duryodhana by a *ruse* 227
The portents upon Duryodhana's fall ... ... ib
The joy of the Pāndavas and the Somakas ... ib
Bhimasena strikes Duryodhana's head with his left foot 229
Yudhishthira forbids Bhimasena to offer such insult to his fallen foe ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's grief at Duryodhana's fall ... 230
Valadeva's wrath upon seeing Duryodhana struck below the navel and he rushes for slaying Bhima 231
Krishna seizes Valadeva and pacifies him with soft words ib
Valadeva praises Duryodhana and curses Bhimasena 233
Bhima addresses Yudhishthira asking him to take the sovereignty of the Earth 234
The joy of the Pāndava warriors at seeing Duryodhana's fall 235
Bhima praised by the Pāndava warriors ... ib
Krishna asks the Pāndava warriors to forbear insulting Duryodhana ... ... ib
Duryodhana's angry reply to Krishna, charging him with every unfair act in course of the battle ... 236
Krishna reminds Duryodhana of his own evil acts and refers to his miserable end as the inevitable consequence of those acts 237
Duryodhana's boast with his reference to his end which he pronounces to be most glorious ... 238
Celestial showers decend on Duryodhana's head ... ib
Krishna justifies the use of unfair means for the slaughter of the Kuru warriors 239
The Pāndava warriors proceed to the Kuru camp which is entirely deserted 240

PAGE.

Krishna congratulates Yudhishthira on his victory 241
Yudhishthira attributes that victory to Krishna's power ib
The Pāndavas with Sātyaki, at Krishna's suggestion, resolve to pass the night at a spot outside the camp 242
Yudhishthira despatches Krishna to Hastināpura for pacifying the wrath of Gāndhāri ... ... ib
Krishna arrives at Dhritarāshtra's palace ... 245
Krishna comforts Dhritarāshtra ... ... ib
Krishna addresses Gāndhāri 246
Gāndhāri's reply 247
Krishna takes a hasty leave of Dhritarāshtra and Gāndhāri ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra and Gāndhāri ask Krishna to protect the Pāndavas from the wicked designs of Açwatthāman ib
Krishna comes back to the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Sanjaya narrates to Dhritarāshtra the lamentations of Duryodhana while lying on the field with his thighs broken 248
Duryodhana's message to the three survivors of the Kuru army... 250
His instructions to the ordinary message-bearers of his court... ... ... ib
He commands his men to inform his friend Chārvāka of the circumstances of his death ... ... ib
The messengers inform Drona's son of Duryodhana's last words 251
The three survivors of the Kuru army come to Duryodhana where he lies wounded ... ... ib
Açwatthāman's lament at the sight of the fallen monarch and Duryodhana's reply 252
Açwatthāman vows to slay all the Pānchālas and solicits the king's permission 253
Duryodhana commands Kripa to install Açwatthāman as the Kuru generalissimo ... ... ib
The three Kuru heroes take leave of Duryodhana... 254
Duryodhana left alone on the spot where he fell ... ib

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

PRATĀPA CHANDRA RĀY, C. I. E.

SAUPTIKA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHĀRATA PRESS.

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

1890.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

THE MAHABHARATA

SAUPTIKA PARVA.

SECTION I.

Having bowed down unto Nārāyana, and Nara the most exalted of male beings, and unto the goddess Saraswati, must the word JAYA *be uttered!*

"Sanjaya said,—'Those heroes then together proceeded towards the south. At the hour of sunset they reached a spot near the (Kuru) encampment.[1] Letting their animals loose, they became very much frightened. Reaching then a forest, they secretly entered it.[2] They took up their quarters there at no great distance from the encampment. Cut and mangled with many keen weapons, they breathed long and hot sighs, thinking of the Pāndavas.[3] Hearing the loud noise made by the victorious Pāndavas, they feared a pursuit and therefore fled towards the east.[4] Having proceeded for sometime, their animals became tired and they themselves became thirsty. Overpowered by wrath and vindictiveness, those great bowmen could not put up with what had occurred, burning as they did with (grief at) the slaughter of the king. They, however, took rest for a while.[5]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'The feat, O Sanjaya, that Bhima achieved seems to be incredible, since my son who was struck down possessed the strength of ten thousand elephants.[6] In manhood's prime and possessed of an adamantine frame, he was not capable of being slain by any creature! Alas, even that son of mine was struck down by the Pāndavas in battle! Without doubt, O Sanjaya, my heart is made of adamant, since it breaks not into a thousand fragments even after hearing of the slaughter of my hundred sons! Alas, what will be

the plight of myself and my spouse, an old couple destitute of children! I dare not dwell in the dominions of Pāndu's son![7-10] Having been the sire of a king and a king myself, O Sanjaya, how shall I pass my days as a slave obedient to the commands of Pāndu's son![11] Having laid my commands over the whole Earth and having staid over the heads of all, O Sanjaya, how shall I live now as a slave in wretchedness?[12] How shall I be able, O Sanjaya, to endure the words of Bhima who hath, single-handed, slain a full hundred sons of mine?[13] The words of the high-souled Vidura have come to be realised! Alas, my son, O Sanjaya, did not listen to those words![14] What, however, did Kritavarman and Kripa and Drona's son do after my son Duryodhana had been unfairly struck down?"[15]

"Sanjaya said,—"They had not proceeded far, O king, when they stopped, for they beheld a dense forest abounding with trees and creepers.[16] Having rested for a little while, they entered that great forest, proceeding on their cars drawn by their excellent steeds whose thirst had been assuaged.[17] That forest abounded with diverse kinds of animals, and it teemed with various species of birds. And it was covered with many trees and creepers and was infested by numerous carnivorous creatures.[18] Covered with many pieces of water and adorned with various kinds of flowers, it had many lakes overgrown with blue lotuses.[19] Having entered that dense forest, they cast their eyes about and saw a gigantic banian with thousands of branches.[20] Repairing to the shade of that banian, those great car-warriors, O king, those foremost of men, saw that that was the biggest tree in that forest.[21] Alighting from their cars, and letting loose their animals, they cleansed themselves duly and said their evening prayers.[22] The Sun then reached the Asta mountains, and Night, the mother of the universe, came.[23] The firmament, bespangled with planets and stars, shone like an ornamented piece of brocade and presented a highly agreeable spectacle.[24] Those creatures that walk the night began to howl and utter their cries at will, while they that walk the day owned the influence of sleep.[25] Awful became the noise of the night-wandering animals. The carnivorous creatures became full of glee, and the night,

as it deepened, became dreadful.[26] At that hour, filled with grief and sorrow, Kritavarman and Kripa and Drona's son all sat down together.[27] Seated under that banian, they began to give expression to their sorrow in respect of that very matter, viz., the destruction that had taken place of both the Kurus and the Pāndavas.[28] Heavy with sleep, they laid themselves down on the bare earth. They had been exceedingly tired and greatly mangled with shafts.[29] The two great car-warriors, Kripa and Kritavarman, succumbed to sleep. However deserving of happiness and undeserving of misery, they then lay stretched on the bare ground.[30] Indeed, O monarch, those two who had always slept on costly beds now slept, like helpless persons, on the bare ground, afflicted with toil and grief.[31] Drona's son, however, O Bhārata, yielding to the influence of wrath and revenge, could not sleep, but continued to breathe like a snake.[32] Burning with rage he could not get a wink of slumber. That hero of mighty arms cast his eyes on every side of that terrible forest.[33] As he surveyed that forest peopled with diverse kinds of creatures, the great warrior beheld a large banian covered with crows.[34] On that banian thousands of crows roosted in the night. Each perching separately from its neighbour, those crows slept at ease, O Kauravya![35] As, however, those birds were sleeping securely on every side, Açwatthāman beheld an owl of terrible aspect suddenly make its appearance there.[36] Of frightful cries and gigantic body, with green eyes and tawny plumage, its nose was very large and its talons were long. And the speed with which it came resembled that of Garuda.[37] Uttering soft cries, that winged creature, O Bhārata, secretly approached the branches of that banian.[38] That ranger of the sky, that slayer of crows, alighting on one of the branches of the banian, slew a large number of his sleeping enemies.[39] He tore the wings of some and cut off the heads of others with his sharp talons and broke the legs of many. Endued with great strength, he slew many that fell down before his eyes.[40] With the limbs and bodies, O monarch, of the slain crows, the ground covered by the spreading branches of the banian became thickly strewn on every side.[41] Having slain

those crows, the owl became filled with delight like a slayer of foes after having behaved towards his foes according to his pleasure.[42] Beholding that highly suggestive deed perpetrated in the night by the owl, Drona's son began to reflect on it, desirous of framing his own conduct by the light of that example.[43] He said unto himself,—This owl teaches me a lesson in battle. Bent as I am upon the destruction of the foe, the time for the deed has come![44] The victorious Pāndavas are incapable of being slain by me! They are possessed of might, endued with perseverance, sure of aim, and skilled in smiting.[45] In the presence, however, of the king I have vowed to slay them. I have thus pledged myself to a self-destructive act like an insect essaying to rush into a blazing fire![46] If I were to fight fairly with them, I shall, without doubt, have to lay down my life! By an act of guile, however, success may yet be mine and a great destruction may overtake my foes![47] People generally, as also those versed in the scriptures, always applaud those means which are certain over those which are uncertain.[48] Whatever of censure and evil repute this act may provoke ought to be incurred by a person that is observant of Kshatriya practices.[49] The Pāndavas of uncleansed souls have, at every step, perpetrated very ugly and censurable acts that are again full of guile.[50] As regards this matter, certain ancient verses, full of truth, are heard, sung by truth-seeing and righteousness-observing persons, who sang them after a careful consideration of the demands of justice.[51] Those verses are even these:—*The enemy's force, even when fatigued, or wounded with weapons, or employed in eating, or when retiring, or when resting within their camp, should be smitten.*[52] *They should be dealt with in the same way when afflicted with sleep at dead of night, or when reft of commanders, or when broken, or when under the impression of an error.*[53]—Having reflected in this way, the valiant son of Drona formed the resolution of slaying during the night the slumbering Pāndavas and the Pānchālas.[54] Having formed this wicked resolution and pledged himself repeatedly to its execution, he awoke both his maternal uncle and the chief of the Bhojas.[55] Awakened from sleep, those two illustrious and mighty

persons, viz., Kripa and the Bhoja chief, heard Açwatthāman's scheme. Filled with shame, both of them abstained from giving a suitable reply.[56] Having reflected for a short while, Açwatthāman said with tearful eyes,—King Duryodhana, that one hero of great might, for whose sake we were waging hostilities with the Pāndavas, hath been slain! Deserted and alone, though he was the lord of eleven *Akshauhinis* of troops, that hero of unstained prowess hath been struck down by Bhimasena and a large number of wretches banded together in battle![57-58] Another wicked act hath been perpetrated by the vile Vrikodara, for the latter hath touched with his foot the head of a person whose coronal locks underwent the sacred bath![59] The Pānchālas are uttering loud roars and cries and indulging in loud bursts of laughter. Filled with joy, they are blowing their conchs and beating their drums![60] The loud peal of their instruments, mingled with the blare of conchs, is frightful to the ear, and borne by the winds, is filling all the points of the compass.[61] Loud also is the din made by their neighing steeds and grunting elephants and roaring warriors![62] That deafening noise made by the rejoicing warriors as they are marching to their quarters, as also the frightful clatter of their car-wheels, comes to us from the east.[63] So great hath been the havoc made by the Pāndavas on the Dhārtarāshtras that we three are the only survivors of that great carnage![64] Some were endued with the might of a hundred elephants, and some were masters of all weapons. Yet have they been slain by the sons of Pāndu! I regard this to be an instance of the reverses brought about by Time![65] Truly, this is the end to which such acts leads! Truly, although the Pāndavas have achieved such difficult feats, even this should be the result of those feats![66]* If your wisdom hath not been driven away by stupefaction, then say what is proper for us to do in view of this calamitous and grave affair!—' "[67]

---

* Açwatthāman seems to justify his own cruel purpose by regarding it as a just consequence of the dreadful slaughter made by the Pāndavas. The verse seems to be obscure.—T.

"'Kripa said,—We have heard all that thou hast said, O puissant one! Listen, however, to a few words of mine, O mighty-armed one! All men are subjected to and governed by these two forces, viz., Destiny and Exertion. There is nothing higher than these two.[3]* Our acts do not become successful in consequence of destiny alone, nor of exertion alone, O best of men! Success springs from the union of the two.[3] All purposes, high and low, are dependent on a union of those two. In the whole world, it is through these two that men are seen to act as also to abstain.[4]† What result is produced by the clouds pouring upon a mountain? What results are not produced by them pouring upon a cultivated field?[5] Exertion, where destiny is not auspicious, and absence of exertion where destiny is auspicious, both these are fruitless! What I have said before (about the union of the two) is the truth.[6]‡ If the rains properly moisten a well-tilled soil, the seed produces great results. Human success is of this nature.[7] Sometimes, destiny, having settled a course of events, acts of itself (without waiting for exertion). For all that, the wise, aided by skill, have recourse to exertion.[8] All the purposes of human acts, O bull among men, are accomplished by the aid of those two together. Influenced by these two, men are seen to strive or obstain.[9] Recourse may be had to exertion. But exertion succeeds through destiny. It is in consequence also of destiny that one who sets himself to work, depending on exertion, attains to success.[10] The exertion, however, of even a com-

---

* Nilakantha seems to suppose that there is a distinctoin between the *à* and *ni* in the words *ābadhās* and *nibadhās*. The distinction, however, that he makes, is more fanciful than real.—T.

† I do not accept Nilakantha's gloss of the second line of verse.4. What Kripa wishes to inculcate is that both action and inaction (success and failure) spring from these two, viz., destiny and exertion. If there is exertion, and destiny be auspicious, there is success. If there is no exertion, even though destiny be auspicious, or if there is exertion but inauspicious Destiny to contend with, success cannot be achieved.—T.

‡ I prefer the reading *Utthānanchāpyadaivasya*. I, therefore, reject Nilakantha's gloss.—T.

potent man, even when well-directed, is, without the concurrence of destiny, seen in the world to be unproductive of fruit.[11] Those, therefore, among men, that are idle and without intelligence, disapprove of exertion. This, however, is not the opinion of the wise.[12] Generally, an act performed is not seen to be unproductive of fruit in the world. The absence of action, again, is seen to be productive of grave misery.[13] A person obtaining something of itself without having made any efforts, as also one not obtaining anything even after exertion, is not be seen.[14] One who is busy in action is capable of supporting life. He, on the other hand, that is idle, never obtains happiness. In this world of men it is generally seen that they that are addicted to action are always inspired by the desire of earning good.[15]* If one devoted to action succeeds in gaining his object or fails to obtain the fruit of his acts, he does not become censurable in any respect.[16] If any one in the world is seen to luxuriously enjoy the fruits of action without doing any action, he is generally seen to incur ridicule and become an object of hatred.[17] He who, disregarding this rule about action, liveth otherwise,† is said to do an injury to himself. This is the opinion of those that are endued with intelligence.[18] Efforts become unproductive of fruits in consequence of these two reasons, viz., destiny without exertion and exertion without destiny.[19] Without exertion, no act in this world becomes successful. Devoted to action and endued with skill, that person, however, who, having bowed down to the gods, seeks, the accomplishment of his objects, is never lost.[20] The same is the case with one who, desirous of success, properly waits upon the aged, asks of them what is for his good, and obeys their beneficial counsels.[21] Men approved by the old should always be solicited for counsel while one has recourse to exertion. These men are the infalliable root of means and success is dependent on means.[22] He who applies his efforts

* I. e., such a person is never overcome with despair and misanthropy.—T.

† *I. e*, enjoys the fruits of action without himself acting.—T.

after listening to the words of the old, soon reaps abundant fruits from those efforts.[23] That man who, without reverence and respect for others (capable of giving him good counsel), seeks the accomplishment of his purposes, moved by passion, anger, fear, and avarice, soon loses his prosperity.[24] This Duryodhana, stained by covetousness and bereft of foresight, had, without taking counsel, foolishly commenced to seek the accomplishment of an undigested project.[25] Disregarding all his well-wishers and taking counsel with only the wicked, he had, though dissuaded, waged hostilities with the Pāndavas who are his superiors in all good qualities.[26] He had, from the beginning, been very wicked. He could not restrain himself. He did not do the bidding of friends. For all that, he is now burning in grief amid calamity.[27] As regards ourselves, since we have followed that sinful wretch, this great calamity hath, therefore, overtaken us![28] This great calamity has scorched my understanding. Plunged in reflection, I fail to see what is for our good![29] A man that is stupified himself should ask counsel of his friends. In such friends he hath his understanding, his humility, and his prosperity.[30] One's actions should have their root in them.* That should be done which intelligent friends, having settled by their understanding, should counsel.[31] Let us, therefore, repair to Dhritarāshtra and Gāndhāri and the high-souled Vidura and ask them as what we should do.[32] Asked by us, they will say what, after all this, is for our good. We should do what they say. Even this is my certain resolution.[33] Those men whose acts do not succeed even after the application of exertion, should, without doubt, be regarded as afflicted by destiny.—' "[34]

Section III.

"Sanjaya said,—Hearing these words of Kripa that were auspicious and fraught with morality and profit, Açwatthāman, O monarch, became overwhelmed with sorrow and grief.[1]

---

* *I. e.*, one should act in the way directed by them.—T.

Burning with grief as if with a blazing fire, he formed a wicked resolution and then addressed them both, saying,[3]— The faculty of understanding is different in different men. Each man, however, is pleased with his own understanding.[3] Every man regards himself more intelligent than others. Every one respects his own understanding and accords it great praise.[4] Every one's own wisdom is with every one a subject of praise. Every one speaks ill of the wisdom of others, and well of his own, in all instances.[5] Men whose judgments agree with respect to any unattained object even though there be a variety of considerations, become gratified with and applaud one another.[6] The judgments, again, of the same men, overwhelmed with reverses through the influence of time, become opposed to one another.[7] More particularly, in consequence of the diversity of human intellects, judgments necessarily differ when intellects are clouded.[8] As a skilful physician, having duly diagnosed a disease, prescribes a medicine by the application of his intelligence for effecting a cure,[9] even so men, for the accomplishment of their acts, use their intelligence, aided by their own wisdom. What they do is again disapproved by others.[10] A man, in youth, is affected by one kind of understanding. In middle age, the same does not prevail with him, and in the period of decay, a different kind of understanding becomes agreeable to him.[11] When fallen into terrible distress or when visited by great prosperity, the understanding of a person, O chief of the Bhojas, is seen to be much afflicted.[12] In one and the same person, through want of wisdom, the understanding becomes different at different times. That understanding which at one time is acceptable becomes the reverse of that at another time.[13] Having resolved, however, according to one's wisdom, that resolution which is excellent should be endeavoured to be accomplished. Such resolution, therefore, should force him to put forth exertion.[14] All persons, O chief of the Bhojas, joyfully begin to act, even in respect of enterprises that lead to death, in the belief that those enterprises are achievable by them.[15] All men, relying on their own judgments and wisdom, endeavour to accomplish diverse purposes, knowing them to be bene-

ficial.[16] The resolution that has possessed my mind today in consequence of our great calamity, as something that is capable of despelling my grief, I will now disclose unto both of you.[17] The Creator, having formed his creatures, assigned unto each his occupation. As regards the different orders, he gave unto each a portion of excellence.[18] Unto Brāhmanas he assigned that foremost of all things, viz., the *Veda*. Unto the Kshatriya he assigned superior energy. Unto the Vaiçya he gave skill, and unto the Cudra he gave the duty of serving the three other classes.[19] Hence, a Brāhmana without self-restraint is censurable.* A Kshatriya without energy is base. A Vaiçya without skill is worthy of dispraise, as also a Cudra who is bereft of humility (to the other orders).[20] I am born in an adorable and high family of Brāhmanas. Through ill-luck, however, I am wedded to Kshatriya practices.[21] If, conversant as I am with Kshatriya duties, I adopt now the duties of a Brāhmana and achieve a high object (viz., the pacification of self under such injuries), that course would not be consistent with nobleness.[22] I hold an excellent bow and excellent weapons in battle. If I do not avenge the slaughter of my sire, how shall I open my mouth in the midst of men?[23] Paying regard to Kshatriya duties, therefore, without hesitation, I shall today walk in the steps of my high-souled sire and the king![24] The Pānchālas, elated with victory, will trustfully sleep tonight, having put off their armour and in great glee, and filled with happiness at the thought of the victory they have won, and spent with toil and exertion.[25] While sleeping at their ease during the night within their own camp, I shall make a great and terrible assault upon their camp.[26] Like Maghavat slaying the *Dānavas*, I shall, attacking them while senseless and dead in sleep in their camp, slay them all, puting forth my prowess![27] Like a blazing fire consuming a heap of dry grass, I shall slay all of them assembled in one place with their leader Dhrishtadyumna! Having slain the Pānchālas, I shall obtain peace of mind, O best of men![28] While engaged in the act of slaughter,

* For the highest end of the *Vedas* is to inculcate self-restraint.—T.

I shall career in their midst like the wielder of *Pināka*, viz., Rudra himself, in rage among living creatures![29] Having cut off and slain all the Pānchālas today, I shall then, in joy, afflict the sons of Pāndu in battle![30] Taking their lives one after another and causing the Earth to be strewn with the bodies of all the Pānchālas, I shall pay off the debt I owe to my sire![31] I shall today make the Pānchālas follow in the wake, hard to tread, of Duryodhana and Karna and Bhishma and the ruler of the Sindhus![32] Putting forth my might, I shall tonight grind the head, like that of any animal, of Dhrishtadyumna the king of the Pānchālas![33] I shall tonight, O son of Gotama, cut off with my sharp sword, in battle, the sleeping sons of the Pānchālas and the Pāndavas![34] Having exterminated the Pānchāla army tonight while sunk in sleep, I shall, O thou of great intelligence, obtain great happiness and regard myself to have done my duty!—' "[35]

SECTION IV.

"'Kripa said,—By good luck, O thou of unfading glory, thy heart is set today on vengeance! The wielder of the thunder himself will not succeed in dissuading thee today![1] Both of us, however, shall accompany thee in the morning. Putting off thy armour and taking down thy standard, take rest for this night![2] I shall accompany thee, as also Kritavarman of the Sātwata race, clad in mail and riding on our cars, while thou shalt proceed against the foe![3] United with ourselves, thou shalt slay the foe, viz., the Pānchālas with all their followers, tomorrow in press of battle, putting forth thy prowess, O foremost of car-warriors![4] If thou puttest forth thy prowess, thou art quite competent to achieve that feat! Take rest, therefore, for this night. Thou hast kept thyself awake for many a night.[5] Having rested and slept, and having become quite refreshed, O giver of honors, encounter the foe in battle! Thou shalt then slay the enemy, without doubt![6] No one, not even Vāsava amongst the gods, would venture to vanquish thee armed with foremost of weapons, O first of car-warriors![7] Who is there that would, even if he be the chief of the gods himself, fight Drona's son when

the latter proceeds, accompanied by Kripa and protected by Kritavarman ?[8] Therefore, having rested and slept this night, and shaken off fatigue, we shall slay the foe tomorrow morning ![9] Thou art a master of celestial weapons. I also am so, without doubt. This hero of Sātwata's race is a mighty bowman, always skilled in battle.[10] All of us, uniting together, O son, shall succeed in slaying our assembled foes in battle by putting forth our might. Great shall be our happiness then ! Dispelling thy anxieties, rest for this night and sleep happily ![11] Myself and Kritavarman, both armed with bows and capable of scorching our enemies, will, clad in mail, follow thee, O best of men, while thou shalt proceed on thy car against the enemy ![12] Proceeding to their camp. and proclaiming thy name in battle, thou shalt then make a great slaughter of the foe ![13] Tomorrow morning, in broad daylight, having caused a great slaughter among them thou shalt sport like Cakra after the slaughter of great *Asuras !*[14] Thou art quite competent to vanquish the army of the Pānchālas in battle, like the slayer of the *Dānavas* in vanquishing in rage the *Dānava* host ![15] United with myself in battle and protected by Kritavarman, thou art incapable of being withstood by the the wielder of the thunder-bolt himself ![16] Neither I, O son, nor Kritavarman, will ever retreat from battle without having vanquished the Pāndus ![17] Having slain the angry Pānchālas along with the Pāndavas, we shall come away, or slain by them, we shall proceed to heaven ![18] By every means in our power, we two shall render thee assistance in battle tomorrow morning ! O thou of mighty-arms, I tell thee the truth, O sinless one ![19]—Addressed in these beneficial words by his maternal uncle, the son of Drona, with eyes red in rage, answered his uncle, O king, saying,[20]—Where can a person that is afflicted, or one that is under the influence of rage, or one whose heart is always engaged in revolving projects for the acquisition of wealth, or one that is under the power of lust, obtain sleep ?[21] Behold, all these four causes are present in my case ! Any one of these, singly would destroy sleep ![22] How great is the grief of that person whose heart is always thinking of the slaughter of his sire ! My heart is now burn-

ing day and night! I fail to obtain peace![23] The way in which my sire in particular was slain by those sinful wretches hath been witnesed by you all. The thought of that slaughter is cutting all my vitals![24] How could a person like me live for even a moment after hearing the Pānchālas say that they have slain my father?[25] I cannot bear the thought of supporting life without having slain Dhrishtadyumna in battle! In consequence of the slaughter of my father, he hath become slayable by me, as also all with whom he is united![26] Who is there so hard-hearted that would not burn after having heard the lamentations that I have heard of the king lying with broken thighs?[27] Who is there so destitute of compassion whose eyes would not be filled with tears after hearing such words uttered by the king with broken thighs[28]? They whose side was adopted by me have been vanquished. The thought of this enhances my sorrow as a rush of waters enhances the sea.[29] Protected as they are by Vāsudeva and Arjuna, I regard them, O uncle, to be irresistible by the great Indra himself?[30] I am unable to restrain this rising wrath in my heart. I do not behold the man in this world that can assuage this wrath of mine![31] The messengers informed me of the defeat of my friends and the victory of the Pāndavas. That is burning my heart![32] Having, however, caused a slaughter of my enemies during their sleep, I shall then take rest and shall then sleep without anxiety!—'"[33]

SECTION V.

"'Kripa said,—A person who is bereft of intelligence and who hath not his passions under control, cannot, even if he waits dutifully upon his superiors, understand all the considerations of morality. This is my opinion.[1] Similarly, an intelligent person, who does not practice humility, fails to understand the settled conclusions of morality.[2] A brave man, if bereft of understanding, by waiting all his life upon a learned person, fails to know his duties like a wooden laddle unable to taste the juicy soup (in which it may lie immersed).[3] The wise man, however, by waiting upon a learned person for even a moment,

succeeds in knowing his duties like the tongue tasting the juicy soup (as soon as it comes into contact with the latter).[4] That person who is endued with intelligence, who waits upon his superiors, and who has his passions under control, succeeds in knowing all the rules of morality and never disputes with what is accepted by all.[5] An ungovernable, irreverent, and sinful person of wicked soul, perpetrates sin in seeking his welbeing by disregarding destiny.[6] Well-wishers seek to restrain a friend from sin. He who suffers himself to be dissuaded, succeeds in winning prosperity. He that does otherwise, reaps misery.[7] As a person of disordered brains is restrained by soothing words, even so should a friend be restrained by well-wishers. He that suffers himself to be so restrained, never becomes a prey to misery.[8] When a wise friend is about to perpetrate a wicked act, well-wishers possessed of wisdom repeatedly and according to the extent of their power endeavour to restrain him.[9] Setting thy heart on what is truly beneficial, and restraining thyself by thy own self, do my bidding, O son, so that thou mayst not have to repent afterwards![10] In this world, the slaughter of sleeping persons is not applauded, agreeably to the dictates of religion. The same is the case with persons that have laid down their arms and come down from cars and steeds.[11] They also are unslayable who say—*we are thine*!—and they that surrender themselves, and they whose locks are dishevelled, and they whose animals have been killed under them or whose cars have been broken![12] All the Pānchālas will sleep tonight, O lord, divesting themselves of armour. Trustfully sunk in sleep, they will be like dead men.[13] That crooked-minded man who would wage hostility with them then, it is evident, would sink in deep and limitless hell without a raft to save himself.[14] In this world thou art celebrated as the foremost of all persons conversant with weapons. Thou hast not as yet committed even a minute tresspass.[15] When the sun rises next morning and light shall discover all things, thyself, like a second sun in effulgence, wilt conquer the foe in battle![16] This censurable deed, so impossible in one like thee, will look like a red spot on a white sheet. Even this is my opinion.—[17]

"'Açwatthāman said,—Without doubt, it is even so, O maternal uncle, as thou sayest! The Pāndavas, however, have before this, broken the bridge of righteousness into a hundred fragments![18] In the very sight of all the kings, before thy eyes also, my sire, after he had laid down his weapons, was slain by Dhrishtadyumna![19] Karna also, that foremost of car-warriors, after the wheel of his car had sunk and he had been plunged into great distress, was slain by the wielder of *Gāndiva*![20] Similarly Cāntanu's son Bhishma, after he had laid aside his weapons and become disarmed, was slain by Arjuna with Cikhandin placed in his van![21] So also, the mighty bowman Bhuriçravas, while observant of the *Prāya* vow on the field of battle, was slain by Yuyudhāna in total disregard of the cries of all the kings![22] Duryodhana too, having encountered Bhima in battle with the mace, hath been slain unrighteously by the former in the very sight of all the lords of Earth![23] The king was all alone in the midst of a large number of mighty car-warriors standing around him. Under such circumstances was that tiger among men slain by Bhimasena![24] Those lamentations that I have heard, of the king lying prostrate on the Earth with his thighs broken, from the messengers circulating the news, are cutting the very core of my heart![25] The unrighteous and sinful Pānchālas, who have broken down the barrier of virtue, are even such! Why do you not censure them who have transgressed all considerations?[26] Having slain the Pānchālas, those slayers of my sire, in the night when they are buried in sleep, I care not if I am born a worm or a winged insect in my next life![27] That which I have resolved is hurrying me towards its accomplishment. Hurried as I am by it, how can I have sleep and happiness?[28] That man is not yet born in the world, nor will be, who will succeed in baffling this resolution that I have formed for their destruction!—[29]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said these words, O monarch, the valiant son of Drona yoked his steeds to his car at a corner and set out towards the direction of his enemies.[30] Then Bhoja and Caradwat's son, those high-souled persons, addressed him, saying,—Why dost thou yoke the steeds to thy

car? Upon what business art thou bent?[81] We are determined to accompany thee tomorrow, O bull among men! We sympathise with thee in weal and woe! It behoveth thee not to mistrust us!—[82] Remembering the slaughter of his sire, Açwatthāman in rage told them truly about the feat that he had resolved to accomplish.[83] When my sire, having slain hundreds and thousands of warriors with keen shafts, had laid aside his weapons, he was then slain by Dhrishtadyumna![84] I shall slay that slayer today in a similar condition, that is, when he will have laid aside his armour! The sinful son of the king of the Pānchālas I shall today slay by a sinful act![85] It is my resolve to slay like an animal that sinful prince of the Pānchālas in such a way that he may not attain to regions earned by persons slain with weapons![86] Put on your coats of mail without delay and take your bows and swords, and wait for me here, ye foremost of car-warriors and scorchers of foes![87]—Having said these words, Açwatthāman got upon his car and set out towards the direction of the enemy. Then Kripa, O king, and Kritavarman of the Sātwata race, both followed him.[88] While the three proceeded against the enemy, they shone like three blazing fires in a sacrifice, fed with libations of clarified butter.[89] They proceeded, O lord, towards the camp of the Pānchālas within which everybody was asleep. Having approached the gate, Drona's son, that mighty car-warrior, stopped.'"[90]

SECTION VI.

"Dhritarāshtra said.—'Seeing Drona's son stop at the gate of the encampment, what, O Sanjaya, did those two mighty car-warriors, viz., Kripa and Kritavarman, do? Tell me this!'[1]

"Sanjaya said,—'Inviting Kritavarman as also the mighty car-warrior Kripa, Drona's son, filled with rage, approached the gate of the camp.[2] He there beheld a being of gigantic frame, capable of making the very hair to stand on end, and possessed of the effulgence of the Sun or the Moon, guarding the entrance.[3] Round his loins was a tiger-skin dripping with blood, and he had a black deer for his upper garment. He had

for his sacred thread a large snake.[4] His arms were long and massive and held many kinds of uplifted weapons. He had for his *Angadas* a large snake wound round his upper arm. His mouth seemed to blaze with flames of fire.[5] His teeth made his face terrible to behold. His mouth was open and dreadful. His face was adorned with thousands of beautiful eyes.[6] His body was incapable of being described, as also his attire. The very mountains, upon beholding him, would split into a thousand fragments.[7] Blazing flames of fire seemed to issue from his mouth and nose and ears and all those thousands of eyes.[8] From those blazing flames hundreds and thousands of Hrishikeças issued armed with conchs and disci and maces.[9] Beholding that extraordinary being capable of inspiring the whole world with terror, Drona's son, without feeling any agitation, covered him with showers of celestial weapons That being, however, devoured all those shafts shot by Drona's. son.[10] Like the *Vadavā* fire devouring the waters of the ocean, that being devoured the shafts sped by the son of Drona.[11] Beholding his arrowy showers prove fruitless, Açwatthāman hurled at him a long dart blazing like a flame of fire.[12] That dart of blazing point, striking against that being, broke into pieces like a huge meteor at the end of the *yuga* breaking and falling down from the firmament after striking against the Sun.[13] Açwatthāman then, without losing a moment, drew from its sheath an excellent scimitar of the color of the sky and endued with a golden hilt. The scimitar came out like a blazing snake from its hole.[14] The intelligent son of Drona then hurled that excellent scimitar at that being. The weapon, approaching that being. disappeared within his body like a mungoose disappearing in its hole.[15] Filled with rage, the son of Drona then hurled a blazing mace of the proportions of a pole set up in honor of Indra. The being devoured that mace also.[16] At last, when all his weapons were exhausted, Açwatthāman, casting his eyes around, beheld the whole firmament densely crowded with images of Janārddana.[17] Drona's son, divested of weapons, beholding that wonderful sight, recollected the words of Kripa, and turning with grief, said,[18]—He that listens not to the beneficial words of advising

friends, is obliged to repent, being overwhelmed with calamity, even as my foolish self for having disregarded my two well-wishers![19] That fool who, disregarding the way pointed out by the scriptures, seeketh to slay his enemies, falleth off from the path of righteousness and is lost in the trackless wilderness of sin.[20] One should not cast weapons upon kine, Brāhmanas, kings, women, friends, one's own mother, one's own preceptor, a weak man, an idiot, a blind man, a sleeping man, a terrified man, one just risen from sleep, an intoxicated person, a lunatic, and one that is heedless. The preceptors of old always inculcated this truth to men.[21-22] I have, however, by disregarding the eternal way pointed out by the scriptures, and by essaying to tread in a wrong path, fallen into terrible distress![23] The wise have called that to be a terrible calamity when one falls back, through fear, from a great feat after having essayed to achieve it.[24] I am unable, by putting forth only my skill and might, to achieve that which I have vowed! Human exertion is never regarded more efficacious than destiny.[25] If any human action that is commenced does not succeed through destiny, the actor becomes like one who, falling off from the path of righteousness, is lost in the wilderness of sin.[26] The sages speak of defeat as foolishness when one having commenced an act swerves from it through fear.[27] In consequence of the wickedness of my essay, this great calamity has come upon me, otherwise Drona's son would never had been forced to hold back from battle.[28] This being, again, whom I see before me, is most wonderful! He stands there like the uplifted rod of divine chastisement. Reflecting even deeply, I cannot recognise who this being is![29] Without doubt, that being is the terrible fruit of this sinful determination of mine that I had essayed to achieve unrighteously. He standeth there for baffling that determination![30] It seems, therefore, that in my case this falling off from fight had been ordained by destiny. It is not for me to exert for the accomplishment of this my purpose unless destiny becomes favorable![31] I shall, therefore, at this hour, seek the protection of the puissant Mahādeva! He will dispel this dreadful rod of divine chastisement uplifted before me![32] I will take the shelter of that god, that source of

everything beneficial, viz., the lord of Umā, otherwise called Kaparddin, decked with a garland of human skulls, that plucker of Bhaga's eyes, called also Rudra and Hara![33] In ascetic austerities and prowess, he far surpasses all the gods! I shall, therefore, seek the protection of Giriça armed with trident!—' "[34]

SECTION VII.

"Sanjaya said,—"The son of Drona, O monarch, having reflected thus, descended from the terrace of his car and stood, bending his head unto that supreme god.[1] And he said,—I seek the protection of Him called fierce, Sthānu, Civa, Rudra, Sarva, Içāna, Içwara, Giriça, of that boon-giving god who is the Creator and Lord of the universe;[2] of Him whose throat is blue, who is without birth, who is called Cakra, who destroyed the sacrifice of Daksha, and who is called Hara; of Him whose form is the universe, who hath three eyes, who is possessed of multifarious forms, and who is the lord of Umā;[3] of Him who resides in crematoriums, who swells with energy, who is the lord of diverse tribes of ghostly beings, and who is the possessor of undecaying prosperity and power; of Him who wields the skull-topped club, who is called Rudra, who bears matted locks on his head, and who is a *Brahmachārin*![4] Purifying my soul that is so difficult to purify, and possessed as I am of small energy, I adore the Destroyer of the triple city, and offer myself as the victim![5] Hymned thou hast been, deserving art thou of hymns, and I hymn to thy glory! Thy purposes are never baffled! Thou art robed in skins; thou hast red hair on thy head; thou art blue-throated; thou art unbearable; thou art irresistible![6] Thou art pure; thou art the Creator of Brahman; thou art *Bramah*; thou art a *Brahmachārin*; thou art an observer of vows; thou art devoted to ascetic austerities; thou art infinite; thou art the refuge of all ascetics;[7] thou art multiform; thou art the leader of diverse tribes of ghostly beings; thou art three-eyed; thou art fond of those beings called *companions*; thou art always seen by the Lord of treasures; thou art dear to Gauri's heart;[8] thou art the sire of Kumāra; thou art tawny; thou hast for

thy excellent bearer a bovine bull; thou art robed in a subtile attire; thou art most fierce; thou art eager to adorn Umā;[9] thou art higher than all that is high; thou art higher than everything; there is nothing higher than thou; thou art the wielder of weapons; thou art immeasurable, and thou art the protector of all quarters;[10] thou art cased in golden armour; thou art divine thou hast the moon as an ornament on thy brow! With concentrated attention, I seek thy protection, O god![11] For success in getting over this dreadful distress that is so difficult to get over, I sacrifice unto thee, the purest of the pure, offering for thy acceptance the (five) elements of which my body is composed![12]—Knowing this to be his resolution in consequence of his desire to accomplish his object, a golden altar appeared before the high-souled son of Drona.[13] Upon that altar, O king, appeared a blazing fire, filling all the points of the compass, cardinal and subsidiary, with its splendour.[14] Many mighty beings also, of blazing mouths and eyes, of many feet, heads, and arms, adorned with *Angadas* set with gems, and with uplifted arms, and looking like elephants and mountains, appeared there. Their faces resembled those of hares and boars and camels and horses and jackals and cows,[15-16] and bears and cats and tigers and pards, and crows and apes and parrots.[17] And the faces of some were like those of mighty snakes, and others had faces like those of ducks. And all of them were endued with great effulgence. And the faces of some were like those of wood-peckers and jays, O Bhārata,[18] and of tortoises and alligators and porpoises and huge sharks and whales,[19] and of lions and cranes and pigeons and elephants and shags.[20] Some had faces like those of ravens and hawks, some had ears on their hands; some had thousand eyes; some had very large stomachs; and some had no flesh, O Bhārata![21] And some, O king, had no heads, and some, O Bhārata, had faces like those of bears. The eyes of some like fire, and some had fiery complexions.[22] The hair on the heads and bodies of some were blazing, and some had four arms, and some, O king, had faces like those of sheep and goats.[23] The color of some was like that of conchs, and some had faces that resembled conchs, and the ears of some were

like conchs, and some wore garlands made of conchs, and the voices of some resembled the blare of conchs.[24] Some had matted locks on their heads, and some had five tufts of hair, and some had heads that were bald. Some had lean stomachs; some had four teeth, some had four tongues, some had ears straight as arrows, and some had diadems on their brows.[25] Some had strings of grass on their bodies, O monarch, and some had curly hair. Some had head-gears made of cloth, some had coronets, some had beautiful faces, and some were adorned with ornaments.[26] Some had ornaments made of lotuses, and some were decked with flowers. They numbered in hundreds and thousands.[27] Some were armed with *Çatāghnis*, some with thunder, and some had *mushalas* in their hands. Some had *Bhuçundis*, some had nooses, and some had maces in their hands, O Bhārata![28] On the backs of some were slung quivers containing excellent shafts, and all were fierce in battle. Some had standards with banners and bells, and some were armed with battle-axes.[29] Some had large nooses in their uplifted arms, and some had clubs and bludgeons. Some had stout posts in their hands, some had scimitars, and some had snakes with erect heads for their diadems.[30] Some had large snakes (wound round their upper arms) for *Angadas*, and some had beautiful ornaments on their persons. Some were begrimmed with dust, some smutted with mire, and all were attired in white robes and white garments. The limbs of some were blue, while others had limbs that were tawny. And some there were that were beardless.[31] Those beings, called companions, possessed of golden complexions, and filled with joy, played upon drums and horns and cymbals and *Jharjharas* and *Anakas* and *Gomukhas*.[32] And some sang and some danced about uttering loud sounds, and some leapt forward and cut capers and jumped sideways.[33] Endued with great fleetness, they ran about most fiercely, the hair on their heads waving in the air, like huge elephants infuriate with passion and frequently uttering loud roars.[34] Terrible, and of frightful mien, and armed with lances and battle-axes, they were attired in robes of diverse hues and decked with beautiful garlands and unguents,[35] Adorned with *Angadas* decked with

gems, and with uplifted arms, they were endued with great courage. Capable of forcibly slaying all foes, they were irressistible in prowess.[36] Drinkers of blood and fat and other animal matter, they subsisted on the flesh and entrails of animals. Some had their locks tied in tall tufts above their heads. Some had single tufts on their heads; some had rings on their ears; and some had stomachs resembling earthen vessels used for cooking.[37] Some were of very short statures, and some were very high in stature. Some were tall and very fierce. Some had grim features, some had long lips, and the genital limbs of some were very long.[38] Some had costly and diverse kinds of crowns upon their heads; and some had bald heads, and the heads of others were covered with matted locks. They secured capable of bringing down the firmament with the sun, moon, and stars, on Earth, and exterminating the four orders of created things.[39] They know not what it is to fear, and are capable of enduring the frowns of Hara.[40] They always act as they like, and are the lords of the lord of the three worlds. Always engaged in merry sports, they are thorough masters of speech and are perfectly free from pride.[41] Having obtained the eight kinds of divine attributes, they are never elated with pride. The divine Hara is always filled with wonder at their feats.[42] They are devout worshippers of Mahādeva. Adored by them in thought, word, and deed, the great god protects those worshippers of his, looking upon them, in thought, word, and deed, as children of his own loins.[43] Filled with rage, they always drink the blood and fat of all haters of *Brahma*. They always drink also the *Soma* juice endued with four kinds of taste.[44] Having adored the trident-bearing god with Vedic recitations, with *Brahmacharya*, with ascetic austerities, and with self-restraint, they have obtained the companionship of Bhava.[45] The divine Maheçwara, that lord of the past, the present, and the future, as also Pārvati, eat with those diverse tribes of mighty-beings that partake of their own nature.[46] Causing the universe to resound with the peal of diverse kinds of instruments, with noise of laughter, with loud sounds and shrieks and leonine roars, they approached Açwatthāman.[47] Uttering the praises

of Mahādeva and spreading an effulgent light all around, desirous of enhancing the honor of Açwatthāman and the glory of the high-souled Hara, and wishing to ascertain the extent of Açwatthāman's energy, and desirous also of beholding the slaughter during the hour of sleep,[48] armed with terrible and fierce bludgeons and fiery wheels and battle-axes, that crowd of strange beings, endued with terrible forms, came from every side.[49] They were capable of inspiring the three worlds with dread at their sight. The mighty Açwatthāman, however, beholding them, felt no fear.[50] Drona's son, armed with bow, and with fingers cased in fences made of iguana skins, himself offered up his own self as a victim unto Mahādeva.[51] Bows were the fuel, and sharp shafts were the ladles, and his own soul possessed of great might was the libation, O Bhārata, in that act of sacrifice.[52] The valiant and wrathful son of Drona then, with propitiating *mantras*, offered up his own soul as the victim.[53] Having with fierce rites adored Rudra of fierce deeds, Açwatthāman, with joined hands, said these words unto that high-souled god.[54]

"'Açwatthāman said,—Sprung from Angiras's line, I am about to pour my soul, O god, as a libation on this fire! Accept, O lord, this victim![55] In this hour of distress, O Soul of the universe, I offer up my own self as the sacrificial victim, from devotion to thee and with heart concentrated in meditation![56] All creatures are in thee and thou art in all creatures! A union of all high attributes occurs in thee![57] O lord, O thou that art the refuge of all creatures, I wait as a libation for thee, since I am unable to vanquish my foes! Accept me, O god![58]—Having said these words, Drona's son, ascending that sacrificial altar on which a fire blazed brightly, offered himself up as the victim and entered that blazing fire![59] Beholding him stand immovable and with uplifted hands and as an offering unto himself, the divine Mahādeva appeared in person and smilingly said,[60]—With truth, purity, sincerity, resignation, ascetic austerities, vows, forgiveness, devotion, patience, thought, and word,[61] I have been duly adored by Krishna of pure deeds! For this there is none dearer to me than Krishna![62] For honoring him and at his word I have

protected the Pānchālas and displayed diverse kinds of illusion.[63] By protecting the Pānchālas I have honored him. They have, however, been afflicted by Time. The period of their lives hath run out![64]—Having said these words unto the high-souled Açwatthāman, the divine Mahādeva entered Açwatthāman's body after going him an excellent and polished sword.[65] Filled by that divine being, Drona's son blazed up with energy. In consequence of that energy derived from godhead, he became all powerful in battle.[66] Many invisible beings and *Rākshasas* proceeded along his right and his left as he set out, like the lord Mahādeva himself, for entering the camp of his foes.' "[67]

Section VIII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'While Drona's son, that mighty car-warrior, thus proceeded towards the hostile camp, did Kripa and Bhoja stop from fear?[1] I hope those two great car-warriors, checked by vulgar guards, did not fly away secretly, thinking their opponents irresistible?[2] Or, have they, after grinding the camp, the Somakas, and the Pāndavas, followed, while still engaged in battle, the highly glorious path in which Duryodhana has gone?[3] Are those heroes, slain by the Pānchālas, sleeping on the bare Earth? Did they achieve any feat? Tell me all this, O Sanjaya!'[4]

"Sanjaya said,—'When the high-souled son of Drona proceeded towards the camp, Kripa and Kritavarman waited at the gate.[5] Beholding them ready to exert themselves, Açwatthāman became filled with joy, and addressing them whisperingly, O king, said,—If you two exert, you are competent to exterminate all the Kshariyas![6] What need I say, therefore, of this remnant of the (Pāndava) army, particularly when it is buried in sleep?[7] I shall enter the camp and career like Yama! I am sure that you two will act in such a way that no man may escape you with life![8]—Having said these words, the son of Drona entered the vast camp of the Pārthas. Casting off all fear, he penetrated into it by a spot where there was no door.[9] The mighty-armed hero, having entered the camp, proceed-

ed, guided by signs, very softly, towards the quarters of Dhrishtadyumna.[10] The Pānchālas, having achieved great feats, had been much tired in battle. They were sleeping in confidence, assembled together, and by the side of one another.[11] Entering into Dhrishtadyumna's chamber, O Bhārata, Drona's son beheld the prince of the Pānchālas sleeping before him on his bed.[12] He lay on a beautiful sheet of silk upon a costly and excellent bed. Excellent wreaths of flowers were strewn upon that bed and it was perfumed with powdered *Dhupa*.[13] Açwatthāman, O king, awoke with a kick the high-souled prince sleeping trustfully and fearlessly on his bed.[14] Feeling that kick, the prince, irresistible in battle and of immeasurable soul, awaked from sleep and recognised Drona's son standing before him.[15] As he was rising from his bed, the mighty Açwatthāman seized him by the hair of his head and began to press him down on the Earth with his hands.[16] Thus pressed by Açwatthāman with great strength, the prince, from fear as also from sleepiness, was not able to put forth his strength at that time.[17] Striking him with his foot, O king, on both his throat and breast while his victim writhed and roared, Drona's son endeavoured to kill him as if he were any animal.[18] The Pānchāla prince tore Açwatthāman with his nails and at last softly said,—O preceptor's son, slay me with a weapon, do not tarry! O best of men, let me, through thy act, repair to the regions of the righteous![19]—Having said this much, that slayer of foes, viz., the son of the Pānchāla king, assailed with strength by that mighty hero, became silent.[20] Hearing those indistinct sounds of his, Drona's son said,—O wretch of thy race, there is no region for those that slay their preceptors! For this, O thou of wicked understanding, thou deservest not to be slain with any weapon![21]—While saying so, Açwatthāman, filled with rage, began to strike the vital parts of his victim with violent kicks of his heels, and slew his foe like a lion slaying an infuriate elephant.[22] At the cries of that hero while he was being slain, his wives and guards that were in his tent all awaked, O king![23] Beholding somebody crushing the prince with superhuman force, they regarded the assailant to be some preternatural being and, therefore, uttered no cries

from fear.[24] Having despatched him to Yama's abode by such means, Açwatthāman of great energy went out and getting upon his beautiful car stayed on it.[25] Indeed, coming out of Dhrishtadyumna's abode, O king, Açwatthāman caused all the points of the compass to resound with his roars, and then proceeded on his car to other parts of the camp for slaying his foes.[26] After Drona's son, that mighty car-warrior, had gone away, the women and all the guards set up a loud wail of woe.[27] Seeing their king slain, all the wives of Dhrishtadyumna, filled with great sorrow, cried aloud.[28] At that wail of theirs many mighty Kshatriyas, awaking, put on their armour and came there for enquiring after the cause of those cries.[29] Those ladies, terrified at the sight of Açwatthāman, in piteous tones asked the men to pursue him without delay.[30] They said,—Whether he is a *Rākshasa* or a human being, we know not what he is! Having slain the Pānchāla king, he stayeth there![31]—At these words, those foremost of warriors suddenly surrounded Drona's son. The latter slew them all by means of the *Rudra* weapon.[32] Having slain Dhrishtadyumna and all those followers of his, he beheld Uttamaujas sleeping on his bed.[33] Attacking him with his foot on the throat and chest, Drona's son slew that great hero also while the latter writhed in agony.[34] Yudhāmanyu, coming up and believing his comrade to have been slain by a *Rākshasa*, speedily struck Drona's son in the chest with a mace.[35] Rushing towards him, Açwatthāman seized him and brought him down to the ground and slew him like an animal while the latter uttered loud strieks.[36] Having slain Yudhāmanyu thus, that hero proceeded against the other car-warriors of the king, who were all asleep.[37] He slew all those trembling and shrieking warriors like animals in a sacrifice. Taking up his sword then, he slew many others.[38] Proceeding along the diverse paths of the camp one after another, Açwatthāman, accomplished in the use of the sword, beheld diverse *Gulmas* and slew in a trice the unarmed and tired warriors sleeping within them.[39] With that excellent sword he cut off combatants and steeds and elephants. Covered all over with blood, he seemed then to be Death himself

commissioned by Time.[40] Causing his foes to tremble by the repeated blows of his sword that were of three kinds, Açwatthāman became bathed in blood.[41] Covered as he was with blood, and wielding as he did a blazing sword, his form, as he careered in battle, became exceedingly terrible and superhuman.[42] Those who awaked from sleep, O Kauravya, became stupified with the loud noise (they heard around). Beholding Drona's son, they looked at each other's faces and trembled (with fear).[43] Those Kshatriyas, beholding the form of that crusher of foes, believed him to be a *Rākshasa* and closed their eyes.[44] Of terrible form, he careered in the camp like Yama himself, and at last saw the sons of Draupadi and the remnant of the Somakas.[45] Alarmed by the noise, and learning that Dhrishtadyumna had been slain, those mighty car-warriors, viz., the sons of Draupadi, armed with bows, fearlessly poured their shafts on Drona's son.[46] Awaked by their noise, the Prabhadrakas with Cikhandin at their head, began to grind the son of Drona with their arrows.[47] Drona's son, beholding them shower their arrows on him, uttered a loud roar and became desirous of slaying those mighty car-warriors.[48] Recollecting the death of his sire, Açwatthāman became filled with rage. Alighting from the terrace of his car, he rushed furiously (against his enemies).[49] Taking up his bright shield adorned with a thousand moons and his massive and celestial sword decked with gold, the mighty Açwatthāman rushed against the sons of Draupadi and began to lay about him with his weapon.[50] Then that tiger among men, in that dreadful battle, struck Prativindhya in the abdomen, at which the latter, O king, deprived of life, fell down on the Earth.[51] The valiant Sutasoma, having pierced the son of Drona with a lance, rushed at him with his uplifted sword.[52] Açwatthāman, however, cut off Sutasoma's arm with the sword in grasp, and once more struck him in the flank. At this, Sutosoma fell down, bereft of life.[53] The valiant Catānika, the son of Nakula, taking up a car-wheel with his two hands, violently struck Açwatthāman at the chest.[54] The regenerate Açwatthāman violently assailed Catānika after he had hurled that car-wheel. Exceedingly agitated, Nakula' son fell down upon

the Earth, upon which Drona's son cut off his head.[55] Then Crutakarman, taking up a spiked bludgeon, attacked Açwatthāman. Furiously rushing at Drona's son, he assailed him violently on the left part of his forehead.[56] Açwatthāman struck Crutakarman with his excellent sword on the face. Deprived of senses and his face disfigured, he fell down lifeless on the Earth.[57] At this noise, the heroic Crutakirti, that great car-warrior, coming up, poured showers of arrows on Açwatthāman.[58] Baffling those arrowy showers with his shield, Açwatthāman cut off from his enemy's trunk the latter's beautiful head adorned with ear-rings.[59] Then the slayer of Bhishma, viz., the mighty Cikhandin, with all the Prabhadrakas, assailed the hero from every side with diverse kinds of weapons. Cikhandin struck Açwatthāman with an arrow in the midst of his two eye-brows.[60] Filled with rage at this, Drona's son, possessed of great might, approached Cikhandin and cut him in twain with his sword.[61] Having slain Cikhandin, Açwatthāman, filled with rage, rushed furiously against the other Prabhadrakas. He procceded also against the remnant of Virāta's force.[62] Endued with great strength, Drona's son made a heavy carnage amongst the sons, the grandsons, and the followers of Drupada, singling them out one after another.[63] Accomplished in the use of the sword, Açwatthāman then, rushing against other combatants, cut them down with his excellent sword.[64] The warriors in the Pāndava camp beheld that Death-night in her embodied form, a black image, of bloody mouth and bloody eyes, wearing crimson garlands and smeared with crimson unguents, attired in a single piece of red cloth, with a noose in hand, and resembling an elderly lady, employed in chaunting a dismal note and standing full before their eyes, and about to lead away men and steeds and elephants all tied in a stout chord.[65-66] She seemed to take away diverse kinds of spirits, with dishevelled hair and tied together in a chord, as also, O king, many mighty car-warriors divested of their weapons.[67] On other days, O sire, the foremost warriors of the Pāndava camp used to see in their dreams that figure leading away the sleeping combatants and Drona's son smiting them behind![68]

The Pāndava soldiers saw that lady and Drona's son in their dreams every night from the day when the battle between the Kurus and the Pāndavas first commenced.[69] Afflicted before by Destiny, they were now smitten by Drona's son who terrified them all with the frightful roars uttered by him.[70] Afflicted by Destiny, the brave warriors of the Pāndava camp, recollecting the sight they had seen in their dreams, identified it with what they now witnessed.[71] At the noise made, hundreds and thousands of Pāndava bowmen in the camp awoke from their slumbers.[72] Acwatthāman cut off the legs of some, and the hips of others, and pierced some in their flanks, carcering like the Destroyer himself let loose by Time.[73] The Earth, O lord, was soon covered with human beings that were crushed into shapelessness or trodden down by elephants and steeds and with others that roared in great affliction.[74] Many of them loudly exclaimed,—What is this?—Who is this one?—What is this noise?—Who is doing what?—While uttering such shrieks, Drona's son became their Destroyer.[75] That foremost of smiters, viz., the son of Drona, despatched to the regions of Yama all those Pāndus and Srinjayas who were without armour and weapons.[76] Terrified at that noise, many awoke from sleep. Possessed with fear, blinded by sleep, and deprived of their senses, those warriors seemed to vanish (before the fury of Açwatthāman).[77] The thighs of many were paralysed and many were so stupefied that they lost all their energy. Shrieking and possessed with fear, they began to slay one another.[78] Drona's son once more got upon his car of terrible clatter, and taking up his bow despatchedt many with his shafts to Yama's abode.[79] Others that awaked from sleep, brave warriors and foremost of men, as they came towards Açwatthāman, were slain before they could approach him and were thus offered up as victims unto that Death-night.[80] Crushing many with that foremost of cars, he careered through the camp, and covered his foes with repeated showers of arrows.[81] Once again with that beautiful shield of his, adorned with a huundred moons, and with that sword of his which was of the hue of the welkin, he careered amidst his enemies.[82] Like an elephant agitating a large lake, Drona's

son, irresistible in battle, agitated the camp of the Pāndavas.[83] Awaked by the noise, O king, many warriors, afflicted still with sleep and fear. and with senses still under a cloud, ran hither and thither.[84] Many shriekd in harsh tones and many uttered incoherent exclamations. Many succeeded not in obtaining their weapons and armour.[85] The locks of many were dishevelled, and many failed to recognise one another. Having risen from sleep, many fell down, fatigued; some wandered here and there without any purpose.[86] Elephants and steeds, breaking their chords, passed excreta and urine.[87] Many, causing great confusion, huddled together. Amongst these, some, through fear, laid themselves down on the Earth. The animals of the camp crushed them there.[88] While the camp was in this state, *Rākshasas*, O king, utteted loud roars in joy, O chief of the Bharatas![89] That loud noise, O king, uttered by ghostly beings in joy, filled all the points of the compass and the welkin.[90] Hearing the wails of woe, elephants, steeds, breaking their chords, rushed hither and thither, crushing the combatants in the camp.[91] As those animals rushed hither and thiter, the dust raised by them made the night doubly dark.[92] When that thick gloom set in, the warriors in the camp became perfectly stupefied; sires recognised not their sons, brothers recognised not their bothers.[93] Elephants, assailing riderless elephants, and steeds, assailing riderless steeds, assailed and broke and crushed the people that stood in their way.[94] Losing all order, combatants rushed and slew one another, and felling those that stood in their way crushed them into pieces[95] Deprived of their senses and overcome with sleep, and enveloped in gloom, men, impelled by fate, slew their own comrades.[96] The guards, leaving the gates they watched, and those at duty at the outposts leaving the posts they guarded, fled away for their lives, deprived of their senses and not knowing whither they proceeded.[97] They slew one another, the slayers, O lord, not recognising the slain. Afflicted by fate, they cried after their sires and sons.[98] While they fled, abandoning their friends and relatives, they called upon one another, mentioning their families and names.[99] Others, uttering cries of *oh* and *alas*, fell down on the Earth.

In the midst of the battle, Drona's son, recognising them, slew them all.[100] Other Kshatriyas, while being slaughtered, lost their senses, and afflicted by fear, sought to fly away from their camps.[101] Those men that sought to fly away from the camp for saving their lives, were slain by Kritavarman and Kripa at the gate.[102] Divested of weapons and instruments and armour, and with dishevelled hair, they joined their hands. Trembling with fear, they were on the ground. The two Kuru warriors, however, (who were on their cars) gave quarter to none.[103] None amongst those that escaped from the camp was let off by those two wicked persons, viz., Kripa and Kritavarman..[104] Then again, for doing that which was highly agreeable to Drona's son, those two set fire to the Pāndava camp in three places.[105] When the camp was lighted, Açwatthāman, that delighter of his sires, O monarch, careered, sword in hand and smiting his foes with great skill.[106] Some of his brave foes rushed towards him and some ran hither and thither. That foremost of regenerate ones, with his sword, deprived all of them of their lives.[107] The valiant son of Drona, filled with rage, felled some of the warriors, cutting them in twain with his sword as if they were sessame stalks.[108] The Earth, O bull of Bharata's race, became strewn with the fallen bodies of foremost of men and steeds and elephants mingled together and uttering woful wails and cries.[109] When thousands of men had fallen down deprived of life, innumerable headless trunks stood up and fell down.[110] Açwatthāman, O Bhārata, cut off arms adorned with *Angadas* and holding weapons in grasp, and heads, and thighs resembling trunks of elephants, and hands, and feet.[111] The illustrious son of Drona mangled the backs of some, cut off the heads of some, and caused some to turn away from the fight.[112] And he cut off some at the middle, and lopped off the ears of others, and struck others on the shoulders, and pressed down the heads of some into their trunks.[113] As Açwatthāman careered in this way, slaughtering thousands of men, the deep night became more terrible in consequence of the darkness that set in.[114] The Earth became terrible to behold, strewn with thousands of human beings dead and dying and innumerable steeds and elephants.[115] Cut off

by the enraged son of Drona, his foes fell down on the Earth that was then crowded with *Yakshas* and *Rākshasas* and frightful with (broken) cars and slain steeds and elephants.[116] Some called upon their bothers, some upon their sires, and some upon their sons. And some said,—The Dhārtarāshtras in rage could never accomplish such feats in battle as these which *Rākshasas* of wicked deeds are achieving upon us during the hour of sleep! It is only in consequence of the absence of the Pārthas that this great slaughter is going on![117-18] That son of Kunti, who hath Janārddana for his protector, is incapable of being vanquished by gods, *Asuras*, *Gandharvas*, *Yakshas*, and *Rākshasas*![119] Devoted to *Brahma*, truthful in speech, self-restrained, and compassionate towards all creatures, that son of Prithā, called Dhananjaya never slaughters one that is asleep, or one that is heedless, or one that has laid aside his weapons, or one that has joined his hands in supplication, or one that is retreating, or one whose locks have been dishevelled![120] Alas, they are *Rākshasas* of wicked deeds who are perpetrating such terrible acts upon ourselves!—Uttering such words, many laid themselves down.[121] The loud din caused by the cries and groans of human beings died away within a short space of time.[122] The Earth being drenched with blood, O king, that thick and frightful dust soon disappeared.[123] Thousands of men moving in agony, overwhelmed with anxiety, and overcome with despair, were slain by Açwatthāman like Rudra slaying living creatures![124] Many who laid themselves down on the ground clasping one another, and many who sought to fly away, and many who sought to hide themselves, and many who struggled in battle, were all slain by the son of Drona.[125] Burnt by the raging flames and slaugntered by Açwatthāman, the men, losing their senses, slew one another.[126] Before half the night was over, the son of Drona, O monarch, despatched the large host of the Pāndavas unto Yama's abode.[127] That night, so terrible and destructive unto human beings and elephants and steeds filled with joy all creatures that wander in the dark[128] Many *Rākshasas* and *Piçāchas* of various tribes were seen there, gorging upon human flesh and quaffing the blood that lay on the ground.[129]

They were fierce, tawny in hue, terrible, of adamantine teeth, and dyed with blood. With matted locks on their heads, their thighs were long and massive; endued with five feet, their stomachs were large.[130] Their fingers were set backwards. Of harsh temper and ugly features, their voice was loud and terrible. They had rows of tinkling bells tied to their bodies. Possessed of blue throats, they looked very frightful.[131] Exceedingly cruel and incapable of being looked at without fear, and without abhorrence for anything, they came there with their children and wives. Indeed, diverse were the forms seen there of the *Rākshasas* that came.[132] Quaffing the blood that ran in streams, they became filled with joy and began to dance in separate bands.—This is excellent!—This is pure! —This is very sweet!—these were the words they uttered.[133] Other carnivorous creatures, subsisting upon animal food, having gorged upon fat and marrow and bones and blood, began to eat the delicate parts of corpses.[134] Others, drinking the fat that flowed in streams, ran naked over the field. Possessed of diverse kinds of faces, other carnivorous beings of great ferocity, and living upon dead flesh,[135] came there in tens of thousands and millions. Grim and gigantic *Rākshasas* also of wicked deeds, came there in bands as numerous.[136] Other ghostly beings, filled with joy and gorged to satiety, O king, also came there and were seen in the midst of that dreadful carnage.[137] When morning dawned, Açwatthāman desired to leave the camp.[138] He was then bathed in human blood, and the hilt of his sword so firmly adhered in his grasp that his hand and sword, O king, became one![139] Having walked in that path that is never trod (by good warriors), Açwatthāman, after that slaughter, looked like the blazing fire at the end of the *Yuga* after it has consumed all creatures into ashes.[140] Having perpetrated that feat agreeably to his vow, and having trod in that untrodden way, Drona's son, O lord, forgot his grief for the slaughter of his sire.[141] The Pāndava camp, in consequence of the sleep in which all within it were buried, was perfectly still when Drona's son had entered it in the night. After the nocturnal slaughter, when all became once more quiet, Açwatthāman issued from it,[142]

Having issued from the camp, the valiant Açwatthāman met his two compassions and, filled with joy, told them his feat, gladdening them, O king, by the intelligence.[143] Those two, in return, devoted as they were to his good, gave him the agreeable intelligence of how they also had slaughtered thousands of Pānchālas and Srinjayas (at the gates).[144] Even thus did that night prove terribly destructive to the Somakas who had been heedless and buried in sleep.[145] The course of time, without doubt, is irresistible. Those who had exterminated us were themselves exterminated now !![146]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Why is it that that mighty car-warrior, viz., the son of Drona, did not achieve such a feat before although he had resolutely exerted for bestowing victory upon Duryodhana ?[147] For what reason did that great bowman do this after the slaughter of the wretched Duryodhana ? It behoveth thee to tell me this !'[148]

"Sanjaya said,—'Through fear of the Pārthas, O son of Kuru's race, Açwatthāman could not achieve such a feat then ! It was owing to the absence of the Pārthas and the intelligent Keçava as also of Sātyaki, that Drona's son could accomplish it ![149] Who is there, the lord Indra unexcepted, that is competent to slay them in the presence of these heroes ? Besides, O king, Açwatthāman succeeded in accomplishing the feat only because the men were all asleep ![150] Having caused that vast slaughter of the Pāndava forces, those three great car-warriors (viz., Açwatthāman and Kripa and Kritavarman), meeting together, exclaimed,—Good luck ![151]—His two companions congratulated Açwatthāman, and the latter was also embraced by them. In great joy the latter uttered these words :[152]—All the Pānchālas have been slain as also all the sons of Draupadi ! All the Somakas also, as well as all that remained of the Matsyas, have been slaughtered by me ![153] Crowned with success, let us without delay go there where the king is ! If the king be still alive, we will give him this joyful intelligence !—' "[154]

SECTION IX.

"Sanjaya said,—'Having slain all the Pānchālas and the sons of Draupadi, the three Kuru heroes together came to that spot where Duryodhana lay, struck down by the foe.[1] Arrived there, they beheld that life had not been wholly extinct in the king. Jumping down from their cars, they surrounded thy son.[2] The Kuru king, O monarch, was lying there with broken thighs. Almost senseless, his life was about to ebb away. He was vomiting blood at intervals, with down-cast eyes.[3] He was then surrounded by a large number of carnivorous animals of terrible forms, and by wolves and hyenas, that awaited at no great distance for feeding upon his body.[4] With great difficulty the king was keeping off those beasts of prey that stood in expectation of feasting upon him. He was writhing on the Earth in great agony.[5] Beholding him thus lying on the Earth, bathed in his own blood, the three heroes who were the sole survivors of his army, viz., Açwatthāman and Kripa and Kritavarman, became afflicted with grief and sat surrounding him.[6] Encompassed by those three mighty car-warriors who were covered with blood and who breathed hot sighs, the Kuru king looked like a sacrificial altar surrounded by three fires.[7] Beholding the king lying in that highly undeserving plight, the three heroes wept in unendurable sorrow.[8] Wiping the blood from off his face with their hands, they uttered these piteous lamentations in the hearing of the king lying on the field of battle.[9]

"'Kripa said,—There is nothing too difficult for Destiny to bring about, since even this king Duryodhana who was the lord of eleven *Akshauhinis* of troops sleepeth on the bare ground, struck down by the foe and covered with blood![10] Behold, fond as he was of the mace, that mace decked with pure gold still lieth by the side of the king whose splendour still resembles that of pure gold![11] In no battle did that mace abandon this hero! Even now, when he is about to ascend to heaven, that weapon leaveth not this illustrious warrior![12] Behold, that weapon, adorned with pure gold, still lieth by the side of this hero like a loving wife by the side of her lord

stretched on his bed in his chamber of sleep![13] Behold the reverses brought about by Time! This scorcher of foes that used to walk at the head of all crowned kings, now eateth the dust, struck down (by the foe)![14] He who had formerly struck down many foes and caused them to lie on the bare ground, alas, that king of the Kurus lieth today on the bare ground, struck down by foes![15] He to whom hundreds of kings used to bow down in fear, lieth today on the field of battle, surrounded by beasts of prey![16] The Brāhmanas formerly used to wait upon this lord for wealth! Alas, beasts of prey wait upon him today for feeding upon his body!—'[17]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Beholding that chief of Kuru's race lying on the ground, Açwatthāman, O best of the Bharatas, uttered these piteous lamentations:[18]—O tiger among kings, all people indicated thee as the foremost of all bowmen! People also said that (in encounters with the mace) thou, a disciple of Cankarshana, wert like the Lord of treasures, (viz., Kuvera), himself![19] How then, O sinless one, could Bhima notice any laches in thee! Thou wert ever mighty and possessed of skill! He, on the other hand, O king, is a wicked-souled wight![20] Without doubt, O monarch, Time in this world is mightier than everything else, for we behold even thee struck down by Bhimasena in battle![21] Alas, how could the wretched and mean Vrikodara unrighteously strike thee down, thee that wert conversant with every rule of righteousness! Without doubt, Time is irresistible![22] Alas, having summoned thee to a fair fight, Bhimasena, putting forth his might, fractured thy thighs![23] Fie on that wretched Yudhishthira who tolerated the head of one unrighteously struck down in battle to be touched with the foot![24] In all battles warriors will certainly reprobate Vrikodara as long as the world will last. Without doubt, thou hast been struck down unrighteously![25] The valiant Rāma of Yadu's race, O king, always used to say that there is no one equal to Duryodhana in encounters with the mace![26] He of the Vrishni race, O Bhārata, used to boast of thee, O lord, in every assembly, saying,—Duryodhana of Kuru's race is a worthy disciple of mine![27]—Thou hast obtained that end which great *Rishis*

have declared to be the high reward of a Kshatriya slain in battle with his face towards the foe![28] I do not, O bull among men, grieve for thee, O Duryodhana! I grieve only for thy mother Gāndhāri and thy sire, childless as they now are![29] Afflicted with sorrow, they will have to wander over the Earth, begging their food! Fie on Krishna of Vrishni's race, and on Arjuna of wicked understanding![30] They regard themselves conversant with the duties of morality, yet both of them stood indifferent whilst thou wert being slain! How will the other Pāndavas, shameless though they be, O king, speak of the manner in which they have accomplished thy death?[31] Thou art highly fortunate, O son of Gāndhāri, since thou hast been slain on the field of battle, O bull among men, while advancing fairly against the foe![32] Alas, what will be the plight of Gāndhāri who is now childless, and who hath lost all her kinsmen and relatives! What also will be the plight of the blind king![33] Fie on Kritavarman, on myself, as also on the mighty car-warrior Kripa, since we have not yet gone to heaven with thy royal self before us![34] Fie on us, lowest of mortals, since we do not follow thee that wert the grantor of all wishes, the protector of all men, and the benefactor of all thy subjects![35] Through thy power, the abodes of Kripa, of myself, and of my sire, along with those of our dependants, O tiger among men, are full of wealth![36] Through thy grace, ourselves with our friends and relatives have performed many foremost of sacrifices with a profusion of presents to Brāhmanas![37] Where shall such sinful persons as ourselves now go, since thou hast gone to heaven, taking with thee all the kings of the Earth?[38] Since we three, O king, do not follow thee that art about to obtain the highest end (of life), it is for this that we are indulging in such lamentations![39] Deprived of thy companionship, reft of wealth, our memories painfully dwelling upon thy prosperity, alas, what will be our lot since we do not go with thee?[40] Without doubt, O chief of Kuru's race, we shall have to wander in grief on the Earth! Deprived of thee, O king, where can we have peace and where can we have happiness?[41] Going from this world, O monarch, and meeting with those mighty car-warriors (that

have preceded thee), show thy regards to them, at my request, one after another, according to the order of their rank and years![42] Having offered worship to thy preceptor, that foremost of all wielders of bows, tell him, O king, that Dhrishtadyumna hath been slain by me![43] Embrace king Vālhika, that mighty car-warrior, as also the ruler of the Sindhus, and Somadatta, and Bhuriçravas,[44] and the other foremost of kings that have preceded thee to heaven. At my request, embrace all of them and enquire after their welfare!—'[45]

"Sanjaya continued,—'Having said these words unto the king deprived of his senses and lying with broken thighs, Açwatthāman once more cast his eyes on him and uttered these words:[46]—If, O Duryodhana, thou hast any life in thee still, listen to these words that are so pleasant to hear! On the side of the Pāndavas, only seven are alive, and among the Dhārtarāshtras, only we three![47] The seven on their side are the five brothers and Vāsudeva and Sātyaki; on our side, we three are myself and Kripa and Kritavarman![48] All the sons of Draupadi have been slain, as also all the children of Dhrishtadyumna! All the Pānchālas too have been slain as also the remnant of the Matsyas, O Bhārata![49] Behold the vengeance taken for what they had done! The Pāndavas are now childless! While buried in sleep, the men and animals in their camp have all been slain![50] Penetrating into their camp in the night, O king, I have slain Dhrishtadyumna, that wight of sinful deeds, as one kills an animal![51]—Duryodhana then, having heard those words that were so agreeable to his heart, regained his senses and said these words in reply:[52]—That which neither Ganga's son, nor Karna, nor thy sire, could achieve, hath at last been achieved by thee today, accompanied by Kripa and Bhoja![53] Thou hast slain that low wretch (viz., Dhrishtaduymna) who was commander of the Pāndava forces, as also Cikhandin! In consequence of this I regard myself equal to Magavat himself![54] Good be to you all! Let prosperity be yours! All of us will again meet together in heaven!—Having said these words the high-souled king of the Kurus became silent.[55] Casting off his griefs for all his (slain) kinsmen, he then gave up his life-breaths. His

soul ascended to sacred heaven, while his body only remained on Earth.[56] Even thus, O king, thy son Duryodhana breathed his last! Having provoked the battle first, he was slain by his foes at last![57] The three heroes repeatedly embraced the king and gazed steadfastly on him. They then ascended their cars.[58] Having heard these piteous lamentations of Drona's son, I came away at early dawn towards the city.[59] Even thus the armies of the Kurus and the Pāndavas have been destroyed! Great and terrible have been that carnage, O king, caused by thy evil policy![60] After thy son ascended to heaven, I became afflicted with grief and the spiritual sight which the *Rishi* gave hath been lost by me!'"[61]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"The king, hearing of his son's death, breathed long and hot sighs, and became plunged into great anxiety."[62]

SECTION X.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After that night had gone away, the driver of Dhrishtadyumna's car gave intelligence to king Yudhishthira of the great slaughter that had been caused during the hour of sleep.[1]

"The driver said,—"The sons of Draupadi, O king, have been slain, with all the children of Drupada himself, while they were heedless and trustfully asleep in their own camp![2] During the night, O king, thy camp has been exterminated by the cruel Kritavarman, and Kripa the son of Gotama, and the sinful Açwatthāman![3] Slaying thousands of men and elephants and steeds with lances and darts and battle-axes, those men have exterminated thy army![4] While thy army was being slaughtered like a forest cut down with axes, a loud wail was heard rising from thy camp![5] I am the sole survivor, O monarch, of that vast force! I have, O thou of virtuous soul, escaped with difficulty from Kritavarman at a time when he was heedless!'[6]—Hearing these evil tidings, Kunti's son Yudhishthira, however capable of bearing up (against foes), fell down on the Earth, afflicted with grief at the loss of his sons.[7] Advancing forward, Sātyaki held the king in his

embrace. Bhimasena and Arjuna and the two sons of Mādri also stretched forth their arms.[8] Having recovered his senses, the son of Kunti lamented in great affliction, uttering these words rendered indistinct by sorrow: 'Alas, having vanquished the foe, we have ourselves been vanquished in the end![9] The course of events is difficult to be ascertained even by persons endued with spiritual sight! The foe who were vanquished have become victorious! Ourselves, again, while victorious, are vanquished![10] Having slain brothers and friends and sires and sons and well-wishers, and kinsmen, and counsellors, and having vanquished them all, we ourselves are vanquished at last![11] Misery looks like prosperity, and prosperity looks like misery! This our victory has assumed the shape of defeat. Our victory, therefore, has ended in defeat![12] Having won the victory, I am obliged to grieve as an afflicted wretch! How, then, can I regard it as a victory? In reality, I have been doubly defeated by the foe![13] They for whose sake we have incurred the sin of victory by slaying our kinsmen and friends, alas, they, after victory had crowned them, have been vanquished by defeated foes that were heedful![14] Alas, through heedlessness have they been slain that had escaped from even Karna, that warrior who had barbed arrows and *nālikas* for his teeth, the sword for his tongue, the bow for his gaping mouth, and the twang of the bowstring and the sound of palms for his roars,—that angry Karna who never retreated from battle, and who was a very lion among men![15-16] Alas, those princes that succeeded in crossing, by boats constituted by their own excellent weapons, the great Drona-ocean having cars for its deep lakes, showers of arrows for its waves, the ornaments of warriors for its gems, car-steeds for its animals, darts and swords for its fishes, elephants for its alligators, bows for its whirlpools, mighty weapons for its foam, and the signal of battle for its moonrise causing it to swell with energy, and the twang of the bowstring and the sound of palms for its roar,—alas, even those princes have from heedlessness been slain![17-18] There is, in this world, no more powerful cause of death, as regards men, than heedlessness! Prosperity abandons a heedless man from every side, and every kind of misery overtakes him![19] The

tall standard with excellent top that stood on his car was the wreath of smoke that infallibly indicated the Bhishma fire. Shafts constituted its flames, and wrath was the wind that fanned it! The twang of his formidable bow and the sound of his palms constituted the roar of that fire. Armour and diverse kinds of weapons were the *homa* libations that were poured into it. The vast hostile army was the heap of dry forest-grass that was assailed by that fire! Alas, even they that had endured that firece fire whose terrible energy was represented by the mighty weapons in Bhishma's hands, have it last fallen through heedlessness![20-21] A heedless person can never acquire knowledge, asceticism, prosperity, or great renown! Behold, Indra has obtained great happiness after slaying all his foes heedfully![22] Behold, the few survivors among our foes have, through our heedlessness, slain so many sons and grandsons of kings each of whom was really like Indra himself! Alas, they have perished like merchants with rich freights perishing through carelessness in a shallow stream after having crossed the great ocean![23] They whose bodies are now lying on the bare ground, slain by those vindictive wretches, have without doubt ascended to heaven! I grieve, however, for the princess Krishnā! Alas, she will be plunged today in an ocean of grief![24] Hearing of the slaughter of her brothers and sons and her venerable sire, the king of the Pānchālas, without doubt she will fall down senseless on the Earth! Her body emaciated by grief, she will not rise again![25] Unable to bear the grief resulting from such affliction, and worthy as she is of happiness, alas, what will be her plight? Cut to the quick by the slaughter of her sons and brothers, she will be like one scorched by fire![26] Having in deep affliction indulged in these lamentations, that king of Kuru's race then addressed Nakula, saying,—'Go and bring the unfortunate princess Draupadi here along with all her maternal relations![27] Obediently accepting that command of the king who equalled Yama himself in righteousness, Nakula speedily proceeded on his car to the quarters of Draupadi where that princess resided with all the wives of the Pānchāla king.[28] Having despatched the son of Mādri,

Yudhishthira, crushed by grief, proceeded, with tears in his eyes and accompanied by those friends of his, to the field on which his sons had battled and which still teemed with diverse kinds of creatures.[29] Having entered that cursed field abounding with fierce sights, the king saw his sons, well-wishers, and friends, all lying on the ground, covered with blood, their bodies mangled, and heads separated from their trunks.[30] Beholding them in that plight, Yudishthira, that foremost of righteous men, became deeply afflicted. That chief of the Kurus then began to weep aloud and fell down on the Earth, deprived of his senses, along with all his followers."[31]

SECTION XI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Beholding his sons, grandsons, and friends all slain in battle, the king's soul became overwhelmed with great grief, O Janamejaya![1] Recollecting those sons and grandsons and brothers and allies, a deep sorrow took possession of the illustrious monarch.[2] Senseless and trembling, his eyes were bathed in tears. His friends then, themselves filled with anxiety, began to comfort him.[3] At that time, Nakula, skilled in executing errands, arrived there on his car of solar effulgence, accompanied by the princess Krishnā in great affliction.[4] She had been residing at Upaplavya. Having received that heart-rending intelligence about the slaughter of all her sons, she became exceedingly agitated.[5] Trembling like a plantain tree shaken by the wind, the princess Krishnā, arrived at the presence of Yudhishthira, fell down, afflicted by grief.[6] Her face, adorned with eyes resembling a couple of full-blown lotuses, seemed to be darkened by grief like the Sun himself when enveloped in darkness.[7] Beholding her prostrate on the Earth, the wrathful Vrikodara, of prowess incapable of being baffled, advancing hastily, raised her up and clasped her with his arms.[8] The beautiful lady, comforted by Bhimasena, began to weep, and addressing the eldest son of Pāndu with his brothers, said[9],—'By good luck, O monarch, having obtained the whole Earth, thou shalt enjoy her after the slaughter of thy brave sons in the observance of Kshatriya

duties![10] By good luck, O son of Prithā, thou art happy at the thought of having obtained the whole Earth! By good luck, thy thoughts do not dwell on Subhadrā's son whose tread resembled that of an infuriate elephant![11] By good luck, thou dost not, like myself while residing at Upaplavya, recollect thy heroic sons slaughtered in the observance of Kshatriya duties![12] O son of Prithā, hearing of the slaughter of those sleeping heroes by Drona's son of sinful deeds, grief burns me as if I were in the midst of a fire![13] If Drona's son be not made to reap the fruit of that sinful deed of his,—if, putting forth your prowess in battle, thou dost not take the life of that wretch of sinful deeds, along with the lives of all his followers,—then, listen to me, ye Pāndavas, I shall sit here in *Prāya*![14-15] Having said these words, the helpless Krishnā, the daughter of Yajnasena, sat by the side of the eldest son of Pāndu, viz., king Yudhishthira the just.[16] The royal sage Yudhishthira, of righteous soul, seeing his dear queen sit in *Prāya*, addressed her, saying,—'O auspicious lady, O thou that art conversant with morality, all thy sons and brothers have righteously met with a noble death! It behoveth thee not to grieve for them![17-18] As regards Drona's son, he hath gone to a distant forest, O beautiful princess! How shalt thou, O lady, make thyself sure of his fall in battle?'[19]

"Draupadi answered,—'I have heard that Drona's son hath a gem on his head, born with him! I shall see that gem brought to me after the slaughter of that wretch in battle! Placing that gem on thy head, O king, I shall endure to live! Even this is my resolve![20] Having said these words unto the royal son of Pāndu, the beautiful Krishnā approached Bhimasena and said these words of high purpose unto him:[21]—'Remembering the duties of a Kshatriya, O Bhima, it behoveth thee to come to my rescue! Slay that man of sinful deeds like Magavat slaying Camvara![22] There is no one in this world who is equal to thee in prowess! It is known throughout the world how on an occasion of great calamity[23] thou becamest at the town of Vāranāvata the refuge of all the Pārthas! When again we were seen by Hidimva, it was thou that becamest our refuge in the same way![24] Like

Magavat rescuing (his spouse, viz.,) the daughter of Puloma, thou hadst rescued my afflicted self, in Virāta's city, from a great calamity!'[25] Like those great feats, O Pārtha, that thou hast achieved in former days, slay now, O slayer of foes, the son of Drona and be thou happy!'[26]—Hearing these and other piteous lamentations of the princess, Kunti's son Bhimasena of great might could not endure them.[27] He mounted upon his great car adorned with gold, and took his beautiful bow with arrow placed on the string.[28] Making Nakula his charioteer, and resolved upon slaying the son of Drona, he began to stretch his bow and caused his steeds to be urged without delay.[29] Those steeds, fleet as the wind, thus urged, O tiger among men, proceeded with great speed.[30] Possessed of great valor and unfading energy, Bhima set out from the Pāndava camp and proceeded with great celerity along the track of Açwatthāman's vehicle."[31]

SECTION XII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After the irresistible Bhimasena had set out, that bull of Yadu's race, possessed of eyes like lotus petals, addressed Kuru's son Yudhishthira, saying,[1]—'O son of Pāndu, this brother of thine, overwhelmed with grief at the slaughter of his sons, proceedeth alone to battle, from desire of slaying the son of Drona![2] O bull of Bharata's race, of all thy brothers, Bhima is thy dearest! Beholding him fallen into a great danger why dost thou not stir thyself?[3] The weapon called *Brahmaçira*, which that subjugator of hostile towns, viz., Drona, communicated to his son, is capable of consuming the whole world.[4] The illustrious and highly blessed preceptor, that foremost of all wielders of bows, delighted with Dhananjaya, had given him that very weapon.[5] Unable to endure it, his only son then begged it of him. Unwillingly he imparted the knowledge of that weapon to Açwatthāman.[6] The illustrious Drona knew the restlessness of his son. Acquainted with all duties, the preceptor laid this command on him, saying,[7]—Even when overtaken by the greatest danger, O child, in the midst of battle, thou shouldst never

use this weapon, particularly against human beings!"[8]—Even thus the preceptor Drona spoke unto his son. A little while after he again spoke, saying,—O bull among men, thou wilt not, it seems, walk in the path of the righteous![9]—Hearing those bitter words of his sire, the wicked souled Açwatthāman, in despair of obtaining every kind of prosperity, began in grief to wander over the Earth.[10] Then, O chief the Kurus, while you were living in the woods, O Bhārata, he came to Dwārakā and took up his abode there, worshipped by the Vrishnis.[11] One day, after he had taken up his abode in Dwārakā, he came to me, without a companion and when I myself was without anybody by my side, on the sea-coast, and there smilingly addressing me, said,[12]—O Krishna, that weapon, called *Brahmaçira*, worshipped by gods and *Gandharvas*, which my sire, the preceptor of the Bharatas, of prowess incapable of being baffled, had obtained from Agastya after performing the austerest penances, is now with me, O Dāçārha, as much as it is with my sire![13-14] O foremost one of Yadu's race, in exchange for that celestial weapon, give me thy discus which is capable of slaying all foes in battle![15]—While he with joined hands and great importunity thus begged of me my discus, myself, O bull of Bharata's race, from desire of gladdening him, told him these words,[16]—Gods, *Dānavas*, *Gandharvas*, men, birds and snakes, assembled together, are not equal to even a hundredth part of my energy.[17] I have this bow, this dart, this discus, and this mace! I will give thee whichever amongst these thou desirest to have from me![18] Without giving me the weapon thou wishest to give, take from among these weapons of mine whichever thou mayst be able to wield and use in battle![19]—Thus addressed, the illustrious son of Drona, as if challenging me, solicited at my hands my discus of excellent nave and hard as thunder, possessed of a thousand spokes, and made of iron.[20]—Take it,—I said unto him. Thus addressed, he rose suddenly and seized the discus with his left hand.[21] He failed, however, to even move the weapon from the spot on which it lay. He then made preparations for seizing it with his right-hand.[22] Having seized it then very firmly and having put forth all his strength, he still

failed to either wield or move it. At this, Drona's son became filled with sorrow. After he was tired with the exertions he made, he ceased, O Bhārata![22-24] When he withdrew his heart from that purpose, I addressed the anxious and senseless Açwatthāman and said,[25]—He who is always regarded as the foremost of all human beings, that wielder of *Gāndiva*, that warrior having white steeds yoked unto his car, that hero owning the prince of apes for the device on his standard,[26] that hero who, desirous of vanquishing in a wrestling encounter the god of gods, viz., the blue-throated lord of Uma, gratified the great Cankara himself,[27] that Phālguna than whom I have no dearer friend on Earth, that friend to whom there is nothing that I cannot give including my very wives and children,[28] that dear friend Pārtha of unstained acts, never said unto me, O Brāhmana, such words as these which thou hast uttered![29] That son whom I obtained through ascetic penances and observance of austere *Brahmacharya* for twelve years on the breast of Himavat whither I had gone for the purpose,[30] that son of mine, viz., Praddyumna, of great energy and a portion of Sanatkumāra himself, begotten by me upon my wife Rukmini who had practised vows as austere as mine,[31] that hero even never solicited this best of objects, viz., this unrivalled discus, which thou of little understanding hast solicited![32] Rāma of great might never said such words to me! Neither Gada, nor Cāmva, have ever asked that of me which thou hast asked![33] No one among the other great car-warriors of the Vrishni and the Andhaka race residing in Dwārakā has ever asked this of me which thou hast asked![34] Thou art the son of the preceptor of the Bharatas, thou art held in high respect by all the Yādavas! Let me ask thee, O foremost of car-warriors, with whom wouldst thou fight using this weapon?[35]—Thus addressed by me, Drona's son replied, saying,—After offering worship to thee, O Krishna, it was my intention to fight thee, O thou of unfading glory![36] It was for this, O Krishna, that I solicited thee for thy discus which is adored by gods and *Dānavas!* If I had got it I would then have become invincible in the world![37] Having failed, O Keçava, in obtaining

my almost unattainable wish, I am about to leave thee, O Govinda! Address me in fair words now![38] This terrible weapon is held by thee that art the foremost of all terrible persons! Unrivalled art thou for this weapon! There is none else in this world capable of possessing it![39]—Having said these words unto me, the son of Drona, taking many couples of steeds and much wealth and diverse kinds of gems, left Dwārakā.[40] He is wrathful, wicked souled, restless, and very cruel! He knows the weapon called *Brahmaçira*. Vrikodara should be protected from him!' "[41]

SECTION XIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having said these words, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, viz., that delighter of all the Yādavas, mounted upon his excellent car equipt with every kind of powerful weapons.[1] Unto that vehicle were yoked two pairs of foremost steeds of the Kāmvoja breed, that were adorned with garlands of gold. The *Dhur* of that best of cars was of the hue of the morning sun.[2] On the right was yoked the steed known as Caivya; on the left was placed Sugriva; the *Pārshni* was borne by two others called Meghapushpa and Valāhaka.[3] There was seen on that car a celestial standard decked with gems and gold and created by the divine Artificer, and standing high like the *Māyā* (of Vishnu himself).[4] Upon that standard was Vinatā's son (Garuda) shining with great splendour. Indeed, that enemy of snakes perched on the standard-top of Keçava who is Truth embodied.[5] Then Hrishikeça, that foremost of all bowmen, mounted on that car. After him Arjuna of irresistible feats and Yudhishthira the king of the Kurus ascended the same vehicle.[6] Seated on that car, by the side of him of Daçārha's race who wielded the bow called *Çārnga*, the two sons of Pāndu looked exceedingly beautiful, like the twin Açwins seated by the side of Vāsava.[7] Causing them to ascend on that car of his which was adored by all the world, he of Daçārha's race urged those foremost of steeds endued with great fleetness.[8] Those steeds then suddenly flew, taking after them that excellent

vehicle ridden by the two sons of Pāndu and by that bull of Yadu's race.[9] Enduced with great speed, as those animals bore away the wielder of *Çārnga*, loud became the noise caused by their rush, like that of birds coursing through the air.[10] Proceeding with great speed, they soon came up, O bull of Bharata's race, with the mighty bowman Bhimasena in whose wake they had followed.[11] Although those great car-warriors met Bhima, they failed however to stop that son of Kunti, as, filled with wrath, he proceeded fiercely towards the foe.[12] In the very sight of those illustrious and firm bowmen, Bhima, by means of his very fleet steeds, proceeded towards the bank of the river brought down by Bhagiratha.[13] He beheld the high-souled and illustrious and dark-complexioned and island-born Vyāsa sitting near the edge of the water in the midst of many *Rishis*.[14] And he also saw Drona's son of wicked deeds sitting beside them, covered with dust, attired in a piece of cloth made of *Kuça* grass, and smeared all over with clarified butter.[15] The mighty-armed Bhimasena, the son of Kunti, taking up his bow with shaft fixed on it, rushed towards Açwatthāman, and said,—'Wait, wait!'[16] Drona's son, beholding that terrible bowman coming towards him bow in hand, and his two brothers on Janārddana's car,[17] became exceedingly agitated and thought his hour had come. Of soul incapable of being depressed, he called to his mind that high weapon (which he had obtained from his sire).[18] He then took up a blade of grass with his left hand. Fallen into great distress, he inspired that blade of grass with proper *mantras* and converted it into that powerful celestial weapon.[19] Unable to brook the arrows (of the Pāndavas) and the presence of those wielders of celestial weapons, he uttered in wrath these terrible words, viz.,—'For the destruction of the Pāndavas.'[20] Having said these words, O tiger among kings, the valiant son of Drona let off that weapon for stupifying all the worlds.[21] A fire then was born in that blade of grass, which seemed capable of consuming the three worlds like the all-destroying Yama at the end of the *Yuga*."[22]

SECTION XIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"At the very outset the mighty-armed hero of Daçārha's race understood from signs the intention of Drona's son. Addressing Arjuna, he said,[1]—'O Arjuna, O son of Pāndu, the time is come for the use of that celestial weapon which is in thy memory and the knowledge of which was imparted to thee by Drona![2] For protecting thyself as also thy brothers, O Bhārata, shoot in this battle that weapon which is capable of neutralising all weapons![3] Thus addressed by Keçava, Arjuna, that slayer of hostile heroes, quickly alighted from the car, taking with him his bow with shaft fixed on the string.[4] Softly wishing good unto the preceptor's son and then unto himself, and unto all his brothers, that scorcher of foes[5] then bowed unto all the gods and all his superiors and let off his weapon, thinking of the welfare of all the worlds and uttering the words,—'Let Açwatthāman's weapon be neutralised by this weapon![6] That weapon, quickly let off by the wielder of *Gāndiva*, blazed up with fierce flames like the all-destroying fire that appears at the end of the *Yuga*.[7] Similarly, the weapon that had been shot by Drona's son of fierce energy, blazed up with terrible flames within a huge sphere of fire.[8] Numerous peals of thunder were heard; thousands of meteors fell; and all living creatures became inspired with great dread.[9] The entire welkin seemed to be filled with noise and assumed a terrible aspect with those flames of fire. The whole Earth, with her mountains and waters and trees, trembled.[10] Then the two great *Rishis*, viz., Nārada who is the soul of every creature, and the grandsire of all the Bharata princes, (viz., Vyāsa), beholding those two weapons scorching the three worlds, showed themselves there. The two *Rishis* sought to pacify the two heroes Aāwatthāman and Dhananjaya.[11-12] Conversant with all duties and desirous of the welfare of all creatures, the two sages, possessed of great energy, stood in the midst of those two blazing weapons.[13] Incapable of being overwhelmed by any force, those two illustrious *Rishis*, placing themselves between the two weapons, stood like two blazing fires.[14] Incapable of being checked by any creature endued with life, and adored by gods and *Dāna-*

vas, they two acted in this way, neutralising the energy of the two weapons and doing good to all the world.[15]

"The two *Rishis* said,—'Those great car-warriors who have fallen in this battle were acquainted with diverse kinds of weapons. They, however, never shot such a weapon upon human beings. What act of rashness is this, ye heroes, that ye have done?'"[16]

SECTION XV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"At the very sight, O tiger among men, of those two *Rishis* possessed of splendour like that of fire, Dhananjaya quickly resolved to withdraw his celestial shaft.[1] Joining his hands, he addressed those *Rishis*, saying,—'I used this weapon, saying,—Let it neutralise the (enemy's) weapon![2] —If I withdraw this high weapon, Drona's son of sinful deeds will then, without doubt, consume us all with the energy of his weapon.[3] Ye two are like gods! It behoveth you to devise some means by which our welfare as also that of the three worlds may be secured!'[4]—Having said these words, Dhananjaya withdrew his weapon! The withdrawal of that weapon by the gods themselves in battle is exceedingly difficult.[5] Not excepting the great Indra himself, there was nobody save the son of Pāndu, who was capable of withdrawing that high weapon after it had once been let off.[6] That weapon was born of *Brahma* energy. No person of uncleansed soul can bring it back after it is once let off. Only one that leads the life of a *Brahmaçhārin* can do it.[7] If one who has not practised the vow of *Brahmacharya* seeks to bring it back after having shot it, it strikes off his own head and destroys him with all his equipments.[8] Arjuna was a *Brahmachārin* and an observer of vows. Having obtained that almost unobtainable weapon, he had never used it even when plunged into situations of the greatest danger.[9] Observant of the vow of truth, possessed of great heroism, leading the life of a *Brahmachārin*, the son of Pāndu was submissive and obedient to all his superiors. It was for this that he succeeded in withdrawing his weapon.[10] Drona's son, beholding

those two *Rishis* standing before him, could not by his energy withdraw his own terrible weapon.[11] Unable to withdraw the high weapon in battle, Drona's son, O king, with a cheerless heart, said unto the island-born *Rishi* these words.[12]—Threatened by a great danger, and desirous of protecting my life, I let off this weapon, through fear of Bhimasena, O sage![13] This Bhimasena of false behaviour, acted sinfully, O holy one, while slaying the son of Dhritarāshtra in battle![14] It is for this, O regenerate one, that of uncleansed soul as I am, I let off this weapon! I dare not, however withdraw it now![15] Having inspired this irresistible and celestial weapon with the energy of fire, I let it off for the destruction of the Pāndavas.[16] Contrived for the destruction of the Pāndavas, that weapon, therefore, will take away the lives of all the sons of Pāndu.[17] O regenerate one, I have, in wrath, done this sinful deed! I invoked this weapon in battle for the destruction of the Pāndavas![18]

"Vyāsa said,—'Prithā's son Dhananjaya, O child, was acquainted with the weapon called *Brahmaçira*. Neither from wrath, nor for thy destruction in battle, did he shoot this weapon.[19] Arjuna, on the other hand, used it for baffling thy weapon. He has again withdrawn it![20] Having obtained even the *Brahma* weapon through thy sire's instructions, the mighty-armed Dhananjaya did not fall off from a Kshatriya's duties.[21] Arjuna is possessed of such patience, and such honesty. He is, besides, conversant with every weapon. Why dost thou seek to compass the destruction of such a person with all his brothers?[22] That region where the weapon called *Brahmaçira* is baffled by another high weapon, suffers a drought for twelve years for the clouds do not pour a drop of water there for this period![23] For this reason, the mighty-armed son of Pāndu, although he had the power, would not still, from desire of doing good to living creatures, baffle thy weapon with his![24] The Pāndavas should be protected; thy own self should be protected; the kingdom also should be protected. Therefore, O thou of mighty-arms, withdraw this celestial weapon of thine![25] Dispel this wrath from thy heart, and let the Pāndavas be safe! The royal sage Yudhishthira

never desires to win victory by perpetrating any sinful act![26]* Give unto these that gem which is on thy head. Taking that, the Pāndavas will in return grant thee thy life![27]

"Drona's son said,—'This my gem is more valuable than all the wealth that has ever been earned by the Pāndavas and the Kauravas![28] If this gem is worn, the wearer ceases to have any fear from weapons or disease or hunger! He ceases to have any fear of gods and *Dānavas* and *Nāgas*?[29] His apprehensions from *Rākshasas* as also from robbers will cease. Even these are the virtues of this gem of mine![30] I cannot, by any means, part with it![30] That, however, O holy one, which thou sayest, should be done by me. Here is this gem! Here is myself! This blade of grass (inspired into a fatal weapon) will, however,[31] fall into the wombs of the Pāndava women, for this weapon is high and mighty, and incapable of being frustrated! O regenerate one, I am unable to withdraw it, having once let it off![32] I will now throw this weapon into the wombs of the Pāndava women. As regards thy commands in other respects, O holy one, I shall certainly obey them![33]

"Vyāsa said,—'Do then this. Do not, however, entertain any other purpose, O sinless one! Throwing this weapon into the wombs of the Pāndava women, stop thyself!"[34]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"The son of Drona, having heard these words of the island-born, threw that uplifted weapon into the wombs of the Pāndava women.' "[35]

Section XVI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Understanding that that weapon was thrown (into the wombs of the Pāndava women) by Drona's son of sinful deeds, Hrishikeça, with a cheerful heart, said these words unto him:[1]—'A certain Brāhmana of pious vows, beholding Virāta's daughter who is now daughter-in-law to Arjuna, while she was at Upaplavya, said,[2]—While the Kuru line will become extinct, a son will be born to thee. This

---

* I think, the meaning of this is that Yudhishthira would not reign by killing thee.—I

thy son, for that reason, will be called by the name of Parikshit![3]—The words of that pious man shall become true! The Pāndavas shall have a son called Parikshit![4] Unto Govinda, that foremost one of the Sātwata race, while he was saying these words, Drona's son, filled with wrath, replied, saying,[5]—'This, O Keçava, that thou sayest from thy partiality for the Pāndavas, shall not happen! O thou of eyes like lotus petals, my words cannot but be fulfilled![6] Uplifted by me, this weapon of mine shall fall on the fœtus that is in the womb of Virāta's daughter,—upon that fœtus which thou, O Krishna, art desirous of protecting![7]

"The holy one said,—'The fall of this mighty weapon will not be fruitless. The fœtus will die. But being dead, it will live again and have a long life![8] As regards thyself, all wise men know thee for a coward and a sinful wretch! Always engaged in sinful acts, thou art the slayer of children! For this reason, thou must have to bear the fruit of these thy sins![9] For three thousand years thou thalt wander over this Earth, without a companion and without being able to talk with any one![10] Alone and without anybody by thy side, thou shalt wander through diverse countries! O wretch, thou shalt have no place in the midst of men![11] The stench of puss and blood shall emanate from thee, and inaccessible forests and dreary moors shall be thy abode! Thou shalt wander over the Earth, O thou of sinful soul, with the weight of all diseases on thee![12] The heroic Parikshit, attaining to age and a knowledge of the Vedas and the practice of pious vows, shall obtain all weapons from the son Caradwat![13] Having obtained a knowledge of all high weapons, and observant of all Kshatriya duties, that righteous-souled king shall rule the Earth for sixty years![14] More than this, that boy shall become the mighty-armed king of the Kurus, known by the name of Parikshit, before thy very eyes, O thou of wicked soul![15] Though burnt by the energy of thy weapon's fire, I shall revive him! O lowest of men, behold the energy of my austerities and my truth![16]

"Vyāsa said,—'Since, disregarding us, thou hast perpetrated this exceedingly cruel act, and since thy behaviour is such

although thou art a good Brāhmana (by birth),[17] therefore, those excellent words that Devaki's son has said, will, without doubt, be realised in thy case, an adopter as thou hast been of Kshatriya usages![18]

"Açwatthāman said,—'With thyself among all men, O holy one, I shall live! Let the words of this illustrious and foremost of men become true![19]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Drona's son then, having made over his gem to the high-souled Pāndavas, cheerlessly proceeded, before their eyes, to the forest.[20] The Pāndavas, who had killed and chastised all their foes, placed Govinda and the island-born Krishna and the great ascetic Nārada at their head, and taking the gem that was born with Acwatthāman, quickly came back to the intelligent Draupadi who was sitting in observance of the *Prāya* vow.[21-22]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Those tigers among men, borne by their excellent steeds resembling the wind in fleetness, came back, with him of Daçārha's race, to their encampment.[23] Speedily alighting from their cars, those great car-warriors, themselves much more afflicted, beheld, Drupada's daughter Krishnā afflicted with woe.[24] Approaching the cheerless princess stricken with sorrow and grief, the Pāndavas with Keçava, sat round her.[25] Then the mighty Bhimasena, desired by the king, gave that celestial gem unto her and said these words:[26]—'This gem, O amiable lady, is thine! The slayer of thy sons hath been vanquished! Rise, casting off thy sorrow, and recollect the duties of a Kshatriyā lady![27] O thou of black eyes, when Vāsudeva was about to set out (from Upaplavya) on his mission of peace, thou hadst, O timid lady, said even these words unto the slayer of Madhu:[28]—I have no husbands! I have no sons, nor brothers! Nor art thou alive, O Govinda, since the king desires for peace![29]—Those bitter words were addressed by thee to Krishna, that foremost of persons! It behoveth thee to recollect those words of thine that were so consistent with Kshatriya usages![30] The wretched Duryodhana, that obstacle on the way of our sovereignty, has been slain. I have quaffed the blood of the living Dusçāsana![31] We have paid off the debt we owed to

our enemy! People, while talking, will not be able to censure us any longer! Having vanquished Drona's son, we have set him free for the sake of his being a Brāhmana and of the respect that should be shown to our deceased preceptor![53] His fame hath been destroyed, O goddess, only his body remains! He has been divested of his gem and on Earth he has been reft of his weapons![54]

"Draupadi said,—'I desired to only pay off our debt for the injury we have sustained. The preceptor's son is worthy of my reverence as the preceptor himself![55] Let the king bind this gem on his head, O Bhārata!'—The king then, taking that gem, placed it on his head, at the desire of Draupadi and regarding it as a gift from the preceptor.[56] Holding on his head that excellent and celestial gem, the puissant king looked beautiful like a mountain with the moon above it.[56] Though stricken with grief on account of the death of her sons, the princess Draupadi, possessed of great mental strength, gave up her vow. Then king Yudhishthira enquired of the mighty-armed Krishna, saying the following words."[57]

SECTION XVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After all the troops had been slain during the hour of sleep by those three car-warriors, king Yudhishthira in great grief said these words unto him of of Daçārha's race:[1]—How, O Krishna, could my sons, all of whom were mighty car-warriors, be slaughtered by the sinful and wretched Açwatthâman of no great skill in battle?[2] How also could Drona's son slay the children of Drupada, all of whom were accomplished in weapons, possessed of great prowess, and capable of battling with hundreds of thousands of foes?[3] How could he slay that foremost of car-warriors, viz., Dhrishtadyumna, before whom the great bowman Drona himself could not appear?[4] What act was done by the preceptor's son, O bull among men, in consequence of which he succeeded in slaying, single-handed, all our men in battle?'[5]

"The holy one said,—'Verily, Drona's son had sought the aid of that highest of all the gods, viz., the eternal Mahādeva

It was for this that he succeeded in slaying, single-handed, so large a number of warriors.[6] If Mahādeva be gratified, he can bestow even immortality! Giriça can give such valour as will succeed in checking Indra himself.[7] I know Mahādeva truly, O bull of Bharata's race! I know also his various acts of old![8] He, O Bhārata, is the beginning, the middle, and the end of all creatures! This entire universe acts and moves through his energy![9] The puissant Grandsire, desirous of creating living creatures, saw Rudra; and the Grandsire asked him, saying,—Create living creatures without delay![10]—Thus asked, Rudra of twany locks, saying,—So be it!—plunged into the water and practised austerities for a long time, inasmuch as he was sensible of the defects of living creatures.[11] Having waited in expectation of Rudra for a very long time, the Grandsire, by a fiat of his will, invoked into existence another being for making him the creator of all kinds of living things.[12] Beholding Giriça plunged into the waters, this (second) being, said unto his sire,—If there be no being born before me, then I will create living creatures![13] —His sire replied unto him, saying,—There is no other first-born being besides thee! This Sthānu has plunged into the water! Go and create living creatures, without any anxiety![14] —That being then created many living creatures, having Daksha for their first, who created all these creatures of four kinds.[15] As soon, however, as they were created, they ran, O king, towords their sire, afflicted with hunger and desirous of devouring him.[16] The second being whom Brahman had created, thereupon ran towards him, desirous of protection from his own offspring. And he said unto the Grandsire,—O illustrious one, protect me from these, and let these creatures have their food assigned unto them![17]—Then the Grandsire assigned herbs and plants and other vegetables as their food, and unto those that were strong he assigned the weaker creatures as the means of sustenance.[18] Their sustenance having been thus assigned, the newly created creatures all went away to regions they pleased, and cheerfully multiplied by union with their respective species.[19] After the creatures had multiplied and the Grandsire had become well pleased, the first-born

rose from water and beheld the living creation.[20] He saw that diverse kinds of creatures had been created and that they had multiplied by their own energy. At this sight, Rudra became angry and caused his procreative limb to disappear in the bowels of the Earth. The unfading Brahman, soothing him by soft words, said unto him,[21-23]—O Sarva, what wert thou doing so long within the water? For what reason also hast thou caused thy limb of generation to disappear in the bowels of the Earth?[23]—Thus questioned, that lord of the universe wrathfully answered the lord Brahman,—Somebody else has created all these creatures! What purpose then would be served by this limb of mine?[24]* I have, by my austerities, O Grandsire, created food for all these creatures. These herbs and plants also will multiply like those that will subsist upon them![25]—Having said these words, Bhava went away, in cheerlessness and rage, to the foot of the Munjavat mountains for practising severer austerities.'"[26]

SECTION XVIII.

"The holy one said,—'After the *Krita yuga* had elapsed, the gods, desirous of performing a sacrifice, duly made preparations for one according to the directions laid down in the Vedas.[1] They collected clarified butter and the other requisites. And they not only devised what the requisites of their sacrifice should be, but also determined those amongst themselves that should have a share in the sacrificial offerings.[2] Not knowing Rudra truly, the celestials, O king, assigned no share for the divine Sthānu.[3] Seeing that the celestials assigned to him no share in the sacrificial offerings, Sthānu, clad in deer skins, desired to destroy that Sacrifice and with that object constructed a bow.[4] There are four kinds of Sacrifices, viz., the *Loka*-Sacrifice, the Sacrifice of espicial rites, the eternal domestic Sacrifice, and the Sacrifice consist-

---

* The sense seems to be that both food and creatures having been ordained after this fashion, there was no further need of a creative principle. Hence Rudra's wrath.—T.

ing in the gratification derived by man from his enjoyment of the five elemental substances and their compounds. It is from these four kinds of Sacrifice that the universe has sprung.[5]* Kaparddin constructed that bow using as materials the first and the fourth kinds of Sacrifices. The length of that bow was five cubits.[6] The sacred *(mantra) Vashat*, O Bhārata, was made its string. The four parts, of which a Sacrifice consists, became the adornments of that bow.[7] Then Mahādeva, filled with rage, and taking up that bow, proceeded to that spot where the celestials were engaged in their Sacrifice.[8] Beholding the unfading Rudra arrive there attired as a *Brahmachārin* and armed with that bow, the goddess Earth shrank with fear and the very mountains began to tremble.[9] The very wind ceased to move, and fire itself, though fed, did not blaze forth. The stars in the firmament, in anxiety, began to wander in irregular courses.[10] The Sun's splendour decreased. The disc of the Moon lost its beauty. The entire welkin became enveloped in a thick gloom.[11] The celestials, overwhelmed, knew not what to do. Their Sacrifice ceased to blaze forth. The gods were all terrified.[12] Rudra then pierced the embodiment of Sacrifice with a fierce shaft in the heart. The embodied form of Sacrifice, assuming the shape of a deer, fled away, with the god of fire.[13] Approaching heaven in that form, he blazed forth in beauty. Rudra, however, O Yudhishthira, pursued him through the skies.[14] After Sacrifice had fled away, the gods lost their splendours. Having lost their senses, the gods were stupified.[15] Then the

---

* Nilakantha explains the four kinds of sacrifice mentioned here as follows :—*Loka*-sacrifice means the desire cherished by everybody for being regarded as good; *Kriyā*-sacrifice means the especial rites performed on especial occasions; *Griha*-sacrifice is the daily performance of those religious rites that are enjoined in the scriptures, such as the *Agni-hotra*, &c., &c. Lastly, *Nri*-sacrifice is the enjoyment by man of the things amidst which his life is cast and the happiness he derives from that enjoyment. How the universe can be said to depend upon or to have sprung from these four kinds of sacrifice is more than what I can understand.—T.

three-eyed Mahādeva, with his bow, broke in rage the arms of Savitri, and plucked out the eyes of Bhaga and the teeth of Pushna.[16] The gods then fled away, as also all the several parts of Sacrifice. Some amongst them, reeling as they sought to fly away, fell down senseless.[17] The blue-throated Rudra, having agitated them thus, laughed aloud and whirling the horn of his bow, paralysed them.[18] The celestials then uttered a cry. At their command, the string of the bow broke. The string having broken, the bow became stretched into a line.[19] The gods then approached the bowless god of gods and, with the embodied form of Sacrifice, sought the protection of the puissant Mahādeva and endeavoured to gratify him.[20] Gratified, the great god threw his wrath into the water. O king, that wrath, assuming the form of fire, is always employed in consuming that liquid element.[21] He then gave unto Savitri his arms, Bhaga his eyes, and Pushna his teeth. And he also restored the Sacrifices themselves, O Pāndava![22] The world once more became safe and sound. The gods assigned unto Mahādeva all the libations of clarified butter as the share of great deity.[23] O monarch, when Mahādeva had become angry, the whole world had thus become agitated; when he became gratified, everything became safe. Possessed of great energy, the god Mahādeva was gratified with Açwatthāman.[24] It was for this that thy sons, those mighty car-warriors, could be slain by that warrior. It was for this that many other heroes, viz., the Pānchālas, with all their followers, could be slain by him.[25] Thou shouldst not suffer thy mind to dwell on it. It was not Drona's son that accomplished that act. It was done through the grace of Mahādeva. Do now what should next be done.'"[26]

FINIS SAUPTIKA PARVA.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

SAUPTIKA PARVA.

	PAGE.
The three survivors of the Kuru army proceed towards the south	1
At the hour of sunset they reach a spot not far from the field of battle	ib
Hearing the shouts in the Pāndava camp they proceed further and reach a dense forest ...	ib
Dhritarāshtra interrupts Sanjaya by expressing his grief for Duryodhana and then enquires about the acts of the three survivors	2
The survivors, having entered a forest, see a huge banian	ib
All the three lay themselves down for rest and sleep	3
Kripa and Kritavarman fall asleep	ib
Açwatthāman kept awake by wrath and the desire of vengeance	ib
Açwatthāman sees a fierce owl come to that banian and slay a large number of crows roosting on its branches	ib
Açwatthāman, at this sight, forms the wicked resolution of destroying the Pāndava army while buried in sleep	4
Açwatthāman awakes Kripa and Kritavarman, unfolds his project before them, and asks for their advice	5
Kripa dissuades him from the execution of his wicked design	6
Açwatthāman tries to refute Kripa's arguments ...	9
Kripa's rejoinder, promising to aid Açwatthāman if the latter would fight the foe the next morning during daylight	11
Açwatthāman's answer	12
Kripa earnestly remonstrates with Açwatthāman ...	13
Açwatthāman declares his resolution to be unalterable	15
Açwatthāman yokes his steeds to his car and proceeds alone	ib
Kripa and Kritavarman follow him	16
Approaching the Pāndava camp, Açwatthāman stops at the gate	ib

PAGE

He beholds a being of gigantic form ready to resist him 16
Açwatthāman fearlessly fights this being ... 17
The gigantic being devours all the weapons of Açwatthāman ib
Açwatthāman's repentance for his rash deed ... 18
Açwatthāman resolves to seek the protection of Mahādeva ib
His hymn to Mahādeva 19
A golden altar appears before him, with a blazing fire on it 20
Many mighty beings of extraordinary appearance come there ... ... ib
The peculiarities of their features ... ... ib
Açwatthāman feels no fear at the sight 23
He offers himself as a libation, unto Mahādeva, on the fire ib
Mahādeva appears before Açwatthāman ... ib
The great god declares that the period of life of everybody within the camp has run out 24
He gives a sword unto Açwatthāman and fills him with his own energy ... ... ib
Açwatthāman proceeds towards the Pāndava camp, accompanied by many invisible spirits and ghosts and *Rākshasas* ... ... ib
Beholding Kripa and Kritavarman at the gate, Açwatthāman asks them to stand there and slay all that would seek to escape before their eyes ... ib
He enters the Pāndava camp like a thief ... ib
He proceeds, guided by signs, to Dhrishtadyumna's tent 25
Finds the Pānchāla prince fast asleep ... ... ib
Awakes him with a kick ... ... ib
Assails him powerfully before the prince succeeds in rising ib
The prince makes an ineffectual resistance ... ib
Awaked by the noise, the prince's guards do not interfere ib
The prince is slain like an animal ... ... ib
Loud wails of grief burst forth from Dhrishtadyumna's tent, uttered by the women and the sentinels ... 26
Awaked by the noise many Pānchāla warriors arm and rush towards Drona's son ... ... ib
Drona's son slays them all with the *Rudra* weapon ib
Drona's son next slays the sleeping Uttamaujas ... ib

PAGE.

Yudhāmanyu rushes towards Drona's son at this sight and is slain 26
Açwatthāman then slays many unarmed and tired warriors ... ... ib
Açwatthāman encountered by the sons of Draupadi at the head of the Somakas, as also by Cikhandin at the head of the Prabhadrakas 27
The sons of Draupadi are slain one after another ... ib
Açwatthāman next slays Cikhandin and the Prabhadrakas 28
He next slays the remnant of Virāta's force ... ib
Açwatthāman completes the slaughter, aided by the fears of his sleepy foes and the confusion and the darkness around 29
The warriors that seek to escape by the gate are slain by Kripa and Kritavarman... 31
Kripa and Kritavarman set fire to the Pāndava camp in three places ... ... ib
Aided by the light, Açwatthāman careers like Yama and slays many men ... ... ib
Before midnight the vast host of the Pāndavas is slain by Açwatthāman 32
The camp invaded by *Rākshasas* and *Piçāchas* that gorge upon blood and flesh ... ... ib
After achieving the dastardly slaughter, Drona's son forgets his grief for his sire 33
The Pāndava camp once more becomes perfectly still ib
Issuing from the camp, Açwatthāman joins his comrades at the gate 34
Dhritarāshtra inquires why Drona's son did not achieve such a feat before ... ... ib
Sanjaya answers that the absence of the Pāndavas with Vāsudeva, as also the sleep in which the warriors were buried, was the cause of Açwatthāman's success ib
The joy of the three Kuru heroes ... ... ib
They resolve to give intelligence of the slaughter to Duryodhana ... ... ib
They proceed to the spot where Duryodhana lies ... 35

PAGE.

The pitiable state of the Kuru king 35
The grief of the three heroes at the sight ... ib
The lamentations of Kripa ... ... ib
Ditto of Açwatthāman 36
Açwatthāman informs Duryodhana of the slaughter of the Pāndava army 38
Duryodhana's satisfaction at the intelligence ... ib
Duryodhana gives up his life-breaths ... ... ib
The driver of Dhrishtadyumna's car informs Yudhishthira, in the morning, of the extermination of his army 39
The grief of Yudhishthira at the intelligence ... ib
The lamentations of Yudhishthira 40
Yudhishthira despatches Nakula for bringing thither Draupadi and the ladies with her 41
Yudhishthira proceeds to view the slaughter in his camp 42
Yudhishthira falls down senseless at the piteous sight that greets his eyes ... ... ib
Draupadi arrives from Upaplavya ... ... ib
The princess falls down on the earth in a swoon ... ib
Bhima comforts her ... ... ib
Draupadi resolves to sit in *Prāya* if the Pāndavas do not slay Açwatthāman 43
Yudhishthira urges her to forget her sorrows, saying that Açwatthāman is not to be found ... ib
Draupadi insists upon Açwatthāman's slaughter and the deprivation of the gem on his head... ... ib
The princess appeals in particular to Bhimasena ... ib
Making Nakula his driver, Bhimasena sets out in pursuit of Açwatthāman, guided by the track of the latter's car wheels 44
Krishna urges Yudhishthira to make arrangements for the safety of Bhima as Açwatthāman has the *Brahmaçira* weapon capable of exterminating all foes ib
The story of Açwatthāman's acquisition of the *Brahmaçira* weapon ... ... ib
Açwatthāman's adventures at Dwārakā for obtaining Krishna's discus 45

PAGE.

His inability to raise the discus 45
Krishna's reproof of Açwatthāman for his presumption ib
The Pāndavas, with Krishna, proceed in the track of Bhimasena 47
They ask Bhima to stop 48
Bhima refuses to listen to them ... ... ib
The Pāndavas find Açwatthman sitting with Vyāsa ib
Açwatthāman, in fear, lets off the *Brahmaçira* weapon ib
Arjuna shoots the *Brahma* weapon 49
The extraordinary portents in nature ... ... ib
Nārada and Vyāsa, seeking to save the three worlds, stand between the two fires generated by the two weapons ... ... ib
Dhananjaya withdraws his weapon 50
Açwatthāman incapable of withdrawing his weapon 51
Açwatthāman throws his weapon into the womb of Uttarā for slaying her unborn child 52
Krishna revives the child 53
The dreadful curse of Krishna upon Açwatthāman for his wicked act ... ... ib
Vyāsa approves of Krishna's curse 54
Drona's son accepts the curse and gives up the natural gem on his head to the Pāndavas ... ... ib
The Pāndavas return to Draupadi ... ... ib
Bhima comforts Draupadi ... ... ib
Draupadi asks Yudhishthira to place upon his head the gem taken from Açwatthāman 55
Yudhishthira enquires of Krishna about the true cause of Açwatthāman's success in destroying the Pāndava army ... ... ib
Krishna's reply about the glory of Mahādeva ... 56
The great sacrifice of the gods in the *Krita* age ... 57
Destruction of the great sacrifice by Rudra ... 58
Açwatthāman's success attributable to Rudra's aid ... 59

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

LIBRARY OF PRINCETON
JUN 22 1918
THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

PRATAPA CHANDRA RÂY, C. I. E.

STREE PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHARATA PRESS.

No. 1, Raja Gooroo Dass' Street,

1890.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

STREE PARVA,

	PAGE.
Janamejaya enquires of Vaiçampāyana as to what Dhritarāshtra, Yudhishthira, and the three survivors of the Kuru army did after the death of Duryodhana	1
Dhritarāshtra's grief	ib
Sanjaya comforts him and suggests the performance of the obsequious rites of the fallen heroes ...	ib
The lament of Dhritarāshtra	2
Sanjaya rebukes and consoles him	3
Vidura comforts the old king	4
Charmed by Vidura's discourse, Dhritarāshtra asks Vidura to continue his observation on the vanity of human life	7
Vidura continues his discourse	ib
Vidura's discription of human life as it runs from the very beginning	8
Vidura's discription of a wilderness abounding with dangers	10
The meaning of the parable	12
Continuation of Vidura's discourse on human life ...	13
Dhritarāshtra falls down in a swoon	15
His lamentations	ib
Vyāsa comforts Dhritarāshtra by explaining the secret history of the slaughter in battle ...	16
Dhritarāshtra consoled by Vyāsa's speech ...	18
Dhritarāshtra resolves to visit the field of battle with the Kuru ladies in his company ...	20
The Kuru ladies placed on cars under Vidura's supervision	ib
The royal household, with a large number of the citizens, starts from Hastināpura	21
On the way Dhritarāshtra meets with the three survivors of his son's army	22

PAGE.

Kripa endeavours to provoke the wrath of Gāndhāri by relating to her the fall of Duryodhana in unfair fight 22
Kripa and his companions obtain Dhritarāshtra's leave for concealing themselves from the wrath of the Pāndavas 23
Yudhishthira and his brothers set out for meeting Dhritarāshtra ... ... ib
Krishna and Sātyaki accompany the Pāndavas ... ib
The Pāndavas meet the weeping ladies of the royal house on the way 24
They meet with their uncle ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra breaks an iron statue of Bhima ... ib
His grief for having, as he believed, slain Bhima... ib
Krishna rebukes Dhritarāshtra for cherishing wrath against Bhima ... ... ib
The old king, freed from wrath and malice, receives his nephews one after another 27
Vyāsa suddenly comes to Gāndhāri for pacifying her rising wrath against the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Vyāsa's sage counsels to the Kuru queen ... ib
Gāndhāri accepts those counsels 28
Bhima addresses Gāndhāri and extenuates his fault for having slain Duryodhana unfairly ... 29
Gāndhāri deprecates Bhima's act of quaffing Dusçāsana's blood on the field ... ... ib
Bhima denies having really quaffed his cousin's blood 30
Gāndhāri enquires after Yudhishthira... ... ib
Yudhishthira appears before Gāndhāri and invokes her curses on himself for his sinful slaughter by him of all her sons... 31
Gāndhāri's glance blasts a nail of Yudhishthira of one of his foes ... ... ib
Gāndhāri casts off her wrath and receives the Pānadavas with affection ... ... ib
The Pāndavas meet with their mother... ... ib
Prithā's tears at the sight of her sons bearing many scars of arrows and other weapons on their persons ib
Draupadi's grief in the presence of her mother-in-law ib

PAGE.

Prithā comforts her daughter-in-law 31
Gāndhāri also comforts Draupadi 32
Aided by the spiritual sight granted to her by Vāyse, Gāndhāri beholds the field of battle, though distant by many miles, from the spot where she stood... ib
Gāndhāri's lament at sight of her widowed daughters-in-law searching the bodies of their husbands and sons 33
Gāndhāri's lament at the sight of Duryodhana lying on the field... 36
Ditto's lament at sight of Dusçāsana 40
Ditto's ditto at sight of Vikarna 41
Ditto's ditto at sight of Durmukha ... ... ib
Ditto's lament at sight of Abhimanyu 42
Gāndhāri directs Krishna's attention to the lament of Uttarā 43
Gāndhāri's lament at the sight of Karna ... 45
Gāndhāri points out other heroes to Krishna ... 46
Gāndhāri's grief at sight of the fallen Jayadratha and her own widowed daughter ... ... ib
Gāndhāri points out Calya to Krishna... ... 47
Gāndhāri's lament at sight of Bhishma ... 48
Ditto's lament at sight of Drona 49
Gāndhāri points out Somadatta and Bhuriçravas to Krishna 50
Ditto points out Cakuni to Krishna, and reproaches that prince as the cause of the slaughter ... 52
Gāndhāri points out other heroes to Krishna ... ib
Gāndhāri curses Krishna for not having prevented the slaughter of the Kurus and the Pāndavas ... 55
Krishna accepts Gāndhāri's curse 56
Dhritarāshtra enquires of Yudhishthira about the end attained by the warriors slaughtered in the battle ib
Yudhishthira's reply ... ... ib
Yudhishthira orders his men to perform the funeral rites of the fallen warriors 58
The Pāndavas and the Kuru ladies all proceed to the river Gangā for performing the water-rites of their fallen kinsmen 59

PAGE.

Kunti, in a paroxysm of grief, discloses the truth about Karna's birth 59

Yudhishthira's grief on hearing that Karna was his uterine elder brother 60

Yudhishthira causes Karna's wives to be brought before him and performs with them the water-rite in honor of Karna 61

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

STREE PARVA.

SECTION I.

(Jalapradānika Parva).

Bowing down unto Nārāyana, and Nara the foremost of male beings, and unto the goddess Saraswati, must the word JAYA be uttered.

Janamejaya said,—"After Duryodhana had fallen and after all the warriors also had fallen, what, O sage, did king Dhritarāshtra do on receipt of the intelligence?[1] What also did the high-souled Kuru king Yudhishthira the son of Dharma do? What did the three survivors (of the Kuru army, viz.,) Kripa and the others do?[2] I have heard everything about the feats of Açwatthāman. Tell me what happened after that mutual denunciation of curses. Tell me all that Sanjaya said unto the blind old king!"[3]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After he had lost his century of sons, king Dhritarāshtra, afflicted with grief on that account, cheerless, and looking like a tree shorn of its branches, became overwhelmed with anxiety and lost his power of speech.[4] Possessed of great wisdom, Sanjaya, approaching the monarch, addressed him, saying,—'Why dost thou grieve, O monarch? Grief does not serve anypurpose![5] Eight and ten *Akshauhinis* of combatants, O king, have been slain! The Earth hath become desolate, and is almost empty now![6] Kings of diverse realms, hailing from diverse quarters, united with thy son (for aiding him in battle) and have all laid down their lives![7] Let now the obsequial rites of thy sires and sons and grandsons and kinsmen and friends and preceptors be performed in due order!'"[8]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Destitute of sons and counsellors and all his friends, king Dhritarāshtra of great energy suddenly fell down on the Earth like a tree uprooted by the wind.[9]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Destitute as I am of sons and counsellers and all my friends, I shall, without doubt, have to wander in sorrow over the Earth![10] What need have I now of life itself, reft as I am of kinsmen and friends and resembling as I do a bird shorn of its wings and afflicted with decrepitude?[11] Shorn of kingdom, deprived of kinsmen, and destitute of eyes, I cannot, O thou of great wisdom, shine any longer on Earth like a luminary shorn of its splendours![12] I did not follow the counsels of friends, of Jamadagni's son, of the celestial *Rishi* Nārada, and of the island-born Krishna, while they offered me counsel![13] In the midst of the assembly, Krishna told me what was for my good, saying,—A truce to hostilities, O king! Let thy son take the whole kingdom! (Give but five villages to the Pāndavas)!—Fool that I was, for not following that advice, I am now obliged to repent so poignantly![14] I did not listen to the righteous counsels of Bhishma! Alas, having heard of the slaughter of Duryodhana whose roars were as deep as those of a bull,[15] having heard also of the death of Dusçāsana and the extinction of Karna and the setting of the Drona-sun, my heart does not break into pieces![16] I do not, O Sanjaya, remember any evil act committed by me in former days, whose consequences, fool that I am, I am suffering today![17] Without doubt, I committed great sins in my former lives, for which the supreme Ordainer has set me to endure such a measure of grief![18] This destruction of all my kinsmen, this extermination of all my well-wishers and friends, at this old age, has come upon me through the force of Destiny. What other man is there on Earth who is more afflicted than my wretched self?[19] Since it is so, let the Pāndavas behold me this very day firmly resolved to betake myself to the long way that leads to the regions of Brahman!'"[20]*

---

* The sense seems to be that Dhritarāshtra expresses a wish for betaking himself to the woods for preparing himself for death.— T.

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"While king Dhritarāshtra was indulging in such lamentations, Sanjaya addressed him in the following words for dispelling his grief.[21]—'Cast off thy grief, O monarch! Thou hast heard the conclusions of the Vedas and the contents of diverse scriptures and holy writ, from the lips of the old, O king! Thou hast heard those words which the sages said unto Srinjaya while the latter was afflicted with grief on account of the death of his son![22] When thy son, O monarch, caught the pride that is born of youth, thou didst not accept the counsels offered unto thee by thy well-wishers. Desirous of fruit, thou didst not, through covetousness, do what was really for thy benefit![23] Thy own intelligence, like a sharp sword, has wounded thee. Thou didst generally pay court to those that were of wicked behaviour![24] Thy son had Dusçāsana for his counseller, and the wicked-souled son of Rādhā, and the equally wicked Cakuni, and Chritrasena of foolish understanding, and Calya. Thy son (by his own behaviour) made the whole world his enemy.[25] Thy son, O Bhārata, did not obey the words of Bhishma the reverened chief of the Kurus, of Gāndhāri and Vidura, of Drona, O king, of Kripa the son of Caradwat, of the mighty-armed Krishna, of the intelligent Nārada, of many other *Rishis*, and of Vyāsa himself of immeasurable energy![26-27] Though possessed of prowess, thy son was of little intelligence, proud, always desirous of battle, wicked, ungovernable, and discontented.[28] Thou art possessed of learning and intelligence and art always truthful! They that are so righteous and possessed of such intelligence as thou, are never stupified by grief![29] Virtue was regarded by none. Battle was the one word on their lips. For this the Kshatriya order has been exterminated and the fame of thy foes enhanced![30] Thou hadst occupied the position of an umpire, but thou didst not utter one word of salutary advice. Unfitted as thou wert for the task, thou didst not hold the scales evenly.[31] Every person should, at the outset, adopt such a beneficial line of action that he may not have, in the end, to repent for something already done by him.[32] Through affection for thy son, O monarch, thou didst what was agreeable to Duryodhana. Thou art obliged to repent for that now! It

behoveth thee, however, not to give way to grief![33] The man whose eyes are directed towards only the honey without being once directed to the fall, meets with destruction through his covetousness for honey. Such a man is obliged to repent even like thee![34] The man who indulges in grief never wins wealth. By grieving one loses the fruits one desires. Grief is again an obstacle to the acquision of objects dear to us. The man who gives way to grief loses even his salvation.[35] The man who shrouds a burning coal within the folds of his attire and is burnt by the fire that is kindled by it, would be pronounced a fool if he grieves for his injuries.[36] Thyself, with thy son, hadst, with your words, fanned the Pārtha-fire, and with your covetousness acting as clarified butter caused that fire to blaze forth, into consuming flames.[37] When that fire thus blazed forth thy sons fell into it like insects. It behoveth thee not, however, to grieve for them now that they have all been burnt in the fire of the enemy's arrows.[38] The tear-stained face, O king, which thou bearest now is not approved by the scriptures or praised by the wise.[39] These tears, like sparks of fire, burn the dead for whom they are shed. Kill thy grief with thy intelligence, and bear thyself up with the strength of thy own self!"[40] Thus was the king comforted by the high-souled Sanjaya. Vidura then, O scorcher of foes, once again addressed the king, displaying great intelligence."[41]

Section II.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Listen, O Janamejaya, to the nectar-like words that Vidura said unto the son of Vichitravirya and by which he gladdened that bull among men![1]

"Vidura said,—'Rise, O king! Why art thou stretched on the Earth? Bear thyself up with thy own self! O king, even this is the final end of all living creatures![2] Everything massed together ends in destruction; everything that gets high is sure to fall down. Union is certain to end in separation; life is sure to end in death.[3] The Destroyer, O Bhārata, drags both the hero and the coward. Why then, O bull amongst Kshatriyas, should not Kshatriyas engage in battle?[4] He

that does not fight is seen to die. He, again, that fights, is seen to escape with life. When, however, one's time comes, O king, one cannot escape.[5] As regards living creatures, they are non-existent at first. They exist in the period that intervenes. In the end they once more become nonexistent. What matter of grief then is there in this?[6] The man that indulges in grief succeeds not in meeting with the dead. By indulging in grief, one does not himself die. When the course of the world is such, why dost thou indulge in sorrow?[7] Death drags all creatures, even the gods. There is none dear or hateful to death, O best of the Kurus![8] As the wind tears off the tops of all blades of grass, even so, O bull of Bharata's race, Death overmasters all creatures.[9] All creatures are like members of a caravan bound for the same destination. (When death will encounter all) it matters very little whom he meets with first.[10] It behoveth thee not, O king, to grieve for those that have been slain in battle. If the scriptures are any authority, all of them must have obtained the highest end.[11] All of them were versed in the Vedas; all of them had observed vows. Facing the foe, all of them have met with death. What matter of sorrow is there in this?[12] Invisible they had been (before birth). Having come from that unknown region, they have once more become invisible. They are not thine, nor art thou theirs. What grief then is there in such disappearance?[13] If slain, one wins heaven. By slaying, fame is won. Both these, with respect to us, are productive of great merit. Battle, therefore, is not bootless.[14] No doubt, Indra will contrive for them regions capable of granting every wish. These, O bull among men, become the guests of Indra.[15] Men cannot, by sacrifices with profuse gifts, by ascetic penances and by learning, go so speedily to heaven as heroes slain in battle.[16] On the bodies of hostile heroes constituting the sacrificial fire, they poured their arrowy libations. Possessed of great energy, they had in return to endure the arrowy libations (poured upon them by their enemies).[17] I tell thee, O king, that for a Kshatriya in this world there is not a better road to heaven than battle![18] They were all high-souled Kshatriyas; possessed of bravery, they were

ornaments of assemblies. They have attained to a high state of blessedness. They are not persons for whom we should grieve![19] Comforting thyself by thy own self, cease to grieve O bull among men! It behoveth thee not to suffer thyself to be overwhelmed with sorrow and to abandon all action![20] There are thousands of mothers and fathers and sons and wives in this world. Whose are they, and whose are we?[21] From day to day thousands of causes spring up for sorrow and thousands of causes for fear. These, however, affect the ignorant but are nothing to him that is wise.[22] There is none dear or hateful to Time, O best of the Kurus! Time is indifferent to none. All are equally dragged by time.[23] Time causeth all creatures to grow, and it is Time that destroyeth everything. When all else is asleep, Time is awake. Time is irresistible.[24] Youth, beauty, life, possessions, health, and the companionship of friends, all are unstable. He that is wise will never covet any of these.[25] It behoveth thee not to grieve for what is universal. A person may, by indulging in grief, himself perish, but grief itself, by being indulged in, never becomes light.[26] If thou feelest thy grief to be heavy, it should be counteracted by not indulging in it. Even this is the medicine for grief, viz., that one should not indulge in it.[27] By dwelling on it, one cannot lessen it. On the other hand, it grows with indulgence. Upon the advent of evil or upon the bereavement of something that is dear, only they that are of little intelligence suffer their minds to be afflicted with grief.[28] This is neither Profit, nor Religion, nor Happiness, on which thy heart is dwelling.[29] The indulgence of grief is the certain means of one's losing one's objects. Through it, one falls away from the three great ends of life (viz., religion, profit, and pleasure). They that are destitute of contentment, are stupified on the accession of vicissitudes dependent up on the possession of wealth. They, however, that are wise, are, on the other hand, unaffected by such vicissitudes. One should kill mental grief by wisdom, just as physical grief should be killed by medicine. Wisdom hath this power. They, however, that are foolish, can never abtain transquillity of soul.[30-31] The acts of a former life closely follow a man, insomuch that they

lie by him when he lies down, stay by him when he stays, and run with him when he runs.[32] In those conditions of life in which one acts well or ill, one enjoys or suffers the fruit thereof in similar conditons.[33] In those forms (of physical organisation) in which one performs particular acts, one enjoys or suffers the fruits thereof in similar forms.[34] One's own self is one's own friend, as, indeed, one's own self is one's own enemy. One's own self is the witness of one's acts, good and evil.[35] From good acts springs a state of happiness, from sinful deeds springs woe. One always obtains the fruit of one's acts. One never enjoys or suffers weal or woe that is not the fruit of one's own acts.[36] Intelligent persons like thee, O king, never sink in sinful enormities that are disapproved by knowledge and that strike at the very root (of virtue and happiness).' "[37]

Section III.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O thou of great wisdom, my grief has been dispelled by thy excellent words! I desire, however, to again hear thee speak.[1] How, indeed, do those that are wise free themselves from mental grief born of the advent of evils and the bereavement of objects that are dear?'[2]

"Vidura said,—'He that is wise obtains tranquillity by subduing both grief and joy through means by which one may escape from grief and joy.[3] All those things about which we are anxious, O bull among men, is ephemeral. The world is like a plantain tree, without enduring strength.[4] Since the wise and the foolish, the rich and the poor, all, divested of their anxieties, sleep on the crematorium, with bodies reft of flesh and full of bare bones and shrivelled sinews,[5] whom amongst them will the survivors look upon as possessed of distinguishing marks by which the attributes of birth and beauty may be ascertained? (When all are equal in death) why sould human beings, whose understandings are always decieved (by the things of this world) covet one another's rank and position?[6] The learned say that the bodies of men are like houses. In time these are destroyed. There is one being, however, that

is eternal.[7] As a person, casting off one attire, whether old or new, wears another, even such is the case with the bodies of all embodied beings.[8] O son of Vichitravirya, creatures obtain weal or woe as the fruit of their own acts.[9] Through their acts they obtain heaven, O Bhārata, or bliss, or woe. Whether able or unable, they have to bear their burdens which are the result of their own acts.[10] As amongst earthen pots some break while still on the potter's wheel, some while partially shaped, some as soon as brought into shape, some after removal from the wheel, some while in course of being removed, some after removal, some while wet, some while dry, some while being burnt, some while being removed from the kiln, some after removal therefrom, and some while being used, even such is the case with the bodies of embodied creatures.[11-13] Some are destroyed while yet in the womb, some after coming out of the womb, some on the day after, some on the expiration of a fortnight or of a month, some on the expiration of a year or of two years, some in youth, some in middle age, and some when old.[14-15] Creatures are born or destroyed according to their acts in previous lives. When such is the course of the world, why do you then indulge in grief?[16] As men, while swimming in sport on the water, sometimes dive and sometimes emerge, O king, even so creatures sink and emerge in life's stream. They that are of little wisdom suffer or meet with destruction as the result of their own acts.[17-18] They, however, that are wise, observant of virtue, and desirous of doing good unto all living creatures, they, acquainted with the real nature of the appearance of creatures in this world, attain at last to the highest end.'"[19]

SECTION IV.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O foremost of speakers, how may the wilderness of this world be known? I desire to hear this! Asked by me, tell me this!'[1]

"Vidura said,—'I will describe to thee all the acts of creatures from their first conception. At the outset it lives in the admixture of blood and the vital fluid. Then it grows little

by little. Then on the expiry of the fifth month it assumes shape.[2] It next becomes a fœtus with all its limbs completed, and lives in a very impure place, covered with flesh and blood.[3] Then, through the action of the wind, its lower limbs are turned upwards and the head comes downwards. Arriving in this posture at the mouth of the uterus, it suffers manifold woes.[4] In consequence of the contractions of the uterus, the creature then comes out of it, endued with the results of all his previous acts. He then encounters in this world other evils that rush towards him. Calamities proceed towards him like dogs at the scent of meat.[5] Next diverse diseases approach him while he is enchained by his previous acts.[6] Bound by the chains of the senses and women and wealth and other sweet things of life, diverse evil practices also approach him then, O king![7] Seized by these, he never obtains happiness. At that season he succeeds not in obtaining the fruit of his acts, right or wrong. They, however, that set their hearts on reflection, succeed in protecting their souls.[8] The person governed by his senses does not know that death has come at his door. At last, dragged by the messengers of the Destroyer, he meets with destruction at the appointed time.[9] Agitated by his senses, whatever of good and evil he has done has been done at the outset. Having enjoyed or suffered the fruits of these, he once more becomes indifferent to his acts of self-slaugter..[10] Alas, the world is deceived, and covetousness brings it under its dominion! Deprived of understanding by covetousness, wrath, and fear, one knows not one's own self![11] Filled with joy at one's own respectability of birth, one is seen to traduse those that are not high-born! Swelled also with pride of wealth, one is seen to contemt the poor![12] One regards others to be ignorant fools, but seldom takes a survey of one's own self. One attributes faults to others but never desires to punish one's own self.[13] Since the wise and the ignorant, the rich and the poor, the high-born and the low-born, the honored and the dishonored,[14] all go to the place of the dead and sleep there freed from every anxiety, with bodies divested of flesh and full only of bones united by dried up tendons,[15] whom amongst them would the survivors look upon as distinguished

above the others and by what signs would they ascertain the attributes of birth and beauty?[16] When all, stretched after the same fashion, sleep on the bare ground, why then should men, taking leave of their senses, desire to deceive one another?[17] He that, looking at this saying (in the scriptures) with his own eyes or hearing it from others, practiseth virtue in this unstable world of life and adhereth to it from early age, attaineth to the highest end.[18] Learning all this, he that adhereth to Truth, O king, succeedeth in passing over all paths.' "*[19]

SECTION V.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me in detail everything about the ways of that intelligence by which this wilderness of duties may be safely covered![1]

"Vidura said,—'Having bowed down to the Self-create, I will obey thy behest by telling thee how the great sages speak of the wilderness of life.[2] A certain Brāhmana, living in the great world, found himself on one occasion in a large inaccessible forest teeming with beasts of prey.[3] It abounded on every side with lions and tigers and other animals looking like elephants, all of which were engaged in roaring aloud. Such was the aspect of that forest that Yama himself would take fright at it.[4] Beholding the forest, the heart of the Brāhmana became exceedingly agitated. His hair stood on end, and other signs of fear manifested themselves, O scorcher of foes![5] Entering it, he began to run hither and thither, casting his eyes on every point of the compass for finding out somebody whose shelter he might seek.[6] Wishing to avoid those terrible creatures, he ran in fright. He could not succeed, however, in distancing them or freeing himself from their presence.[7] He then saw that that terrible forest was surrounded with a net, and that a frightful woman stood there, stretching her arms.[8] That large forest was also encompassed by many five-headed snakes of dreadful forms, tall as cliffs and touching the

---

* A figurative expression, meaning, obtains all kinds of blessedness.—T.

very heavens.[9] Within it was a pit whose mouth was covered with many hard and unyielding creepers and herbs.[10] The Brāhmana, in course of his wanderings, fell into that invisible pit. He became entangled in those clusters of creepers that were interwoven with one another,[11] like the large fruit of a jack tree hanging by its stalk. He continued to hang there, feet upwards and head downwards.[12] While in that posture, diverse other calamities overtook him. He beheld a large and mighty snake within the pit. He also saw a gigantic elephant near its mouth.[13] That elephant, dark in complexion, had six faces and twelve feet. And the animal gradually approached that pit covered with creepers and trees.[14] About the twigs of the tree (that stood at the mouth of the pit) roved many bees of frightful forms, employed from before in drinking the honey gathered in their comb about which they swarmed in large numbers.[15] Repeatedly they desired, O bull of Bharata's race, to taste that honey which though sweet to all creatures could however, attract children only.[16] The honey (collected in the comb) fell in many jets below. The person who was hanging in the pit continually drank those jets.[17] Employed, in such a distressful situation, in drinking that honey, his thirst, however, could not be appeased. Unsatiated with repeated draughts, the person desired for more.[18] Even then, O king, he did not become indifferent to life. Even there, the man continued to hope for existence. A number of black and white rats were eating away the roots of that tree.[19] There was fear from the beasts of prey, from that fierce woman on the outskirts of that forest, from that snake at the bottom of the well, from that elephant near its top,[20] from the fall of the tree through the action of the rats, and lastly from those bees flying about for tasting the honey.[21] In that plight he continued to dwell, deprived of his senses, in that wilderness, never losing at any time the hope of prolonging his life.'"[22]

Section VI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Alas, great was the distress of that person and very painful his mode of life! Tell me, O first of speakers, whence was his attachment to life and whence his happiness?[1] Where is that region, so unfavourable to the practice of virtue, in which that person resides? Oh, tell me how will that man be freed from all those great terrors?[2] Tell me all this! We shall then exert properly for him. My compassion has been greatly moved by the difficulties that lie in the way of his rescue!'[3]

"Vidura said,—'They that are conversant, O monarch, with the religion of *Moksha* cite this as a simile. Understanding this properly, a person may attain to bliss in the regions hereafter.[4] That which is described as the wilderness is the great world. The inaccessible forest within it is the limited sphere of one's own life.[5] Those that have been mentioned as beasts of prey are the diseases (to which we are subject). That woman of gigantic proportions residing in the forest,[6] is identified by the wise with Decrepitude which destroys complexion and beauty. That which has been spoken of as the pit is the body or physical frame of embodied creatures.[7] The huge snake dwelling in the bottom of that pit is Time, the destroyer of all embodied creatures. It is, indeed, the universal destroyer.[8] The cluster of creepers growing in that pit and attached to whose spreading stems the man hangeth down is the desire for life which is cherished by every creature.[9] The six-faced elephant, O king, which proceeds towards the tree standing at the mouth of the pit is spoken of as the year. Its six faces are the seasons and its twelve feet are the twelve months.[10] The rats and the snakes that are cutting off the tree are said to be days and nights that are continually lessening the periods of life of all creatures. Those that have been described as bees are our desires.[11] The numerous jets that are dropping honey are the pleasures derived from the gratification of our desires and to which men are seen to be strongly addicted.[12] The wise know life's course to be even such. Through that knowledge they succeed in tearing off its bonds.'"[13]

Section VII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Excellent is this parable that thou hast recited! Indeed, thou art acquainted with Truth! Having listened to thy nectar-like speech, I desire to hear thee more!'[1]

"Vidura said,—'Listen to me, O king, I shall once more discourse in detail on those means an acquaintance with which enables the wise to free themselves from the ties of the world![2] As a person, O king, who has to travel a long way, is sometimes obliged to halt when fatigued with toil,[3] even so, O Bhārata, they that are of little intelligence, travelling along the extended way of life, have to make frequent halts in the shape of repeated births in the womb. They, however, that are wise, are freed from that obligation.[4] Men conversant with the scriptures, for this, describe life's course as a long way. The wise also call life's round with all its difficulties as a forest.[5] Creatures, O bull of Bharata's race, whether mobile or immobile, have to repeatedly return to the world. The wise alone escape.[6] The diseases, mental and physical, to which mortals are subject, whether visible or invisible, are spoken of as beasts of prey by the wise.[7] Men are always afflicted and impeded by them, O Bhārata! Then again, those fierce beasts of prey, represented by their own acts in life, never cause any anxiety to them that are of little intelligence.[8] If any person, O monarch, somehow escapes from diseases, Decrepitude, that destroyer of beauty, overwhelms him afterwards.[9] Plunged in a slough by the objects of the different senses, viz., sound and form and taste and touch and scent, man remains there without anything to rescue him thence.[10] Meanwhile, the years, the seasons, the months, the fortnights, the days, and the nights, coming one after another, gradually despoil him of beauty and lessen the period allotted to him.[11] These all are messengers of death. They, however, that are of little understanding, know them not to be such. The wise say that all creatures are governed by the Ordainer through their acts.[12] The body of a creature is called the car. The living principle is the driver of (that car). The

senses are said to be the steeds. Our acts and the understanding are the traces.[13] He who followeth after those running steeds, has to come repeatedly to this world in a round of re-births.[14] He, however, who, being self-restrained, restrains them by his understanding, hath not to come back.[15] They, however, that are not stupified while wandering in this wheel of life that is revolving like a real wheel, do not in reality wander in a round of re-births.[16] He that is wise should certainly take care to prevent the obligation of re-birth. One should not be indifferent to this, for indifference may subject us to it repeatedly.[17] The man, O king, who has restrained his senses and subdued wrath and covetousness, who is contented, and truthful in speech, succeeds in obtaining peace.[18] This body is called the car of Yama. They that are of little intelligence are stupified by it. Such a person, O king, would obtain that which thou hast obtained.[19] The loss of kingdom, of friends, and of children, O Bhārata, and such as these, overtake him who is still under the influence of desire.[20] He that is wise should apply the medicine of intelligence to all great griefs. Indeed, obtaining the medicine of wisdom, which is truly very efficacious and is almost unattainable, the man of restrained soul would kill that serious disease called sorrow.[21] Neither prowess, nor wealth, nor friends, nor well-wishers, can cure a man of his grief so effectually as the self-restrained soul. Therefore, observant of the great duty of abstention from all injuries, or friendship for all creatures, be of pious behaviour, O Bhārata![22] Self-restraint, renunciation, and heedfulness are the three steeds of Brahman. He who rides on the car of his soul, unto which are yoked these steeds with the aid of traces furnished by good conduct, and drives it, casting off all fear of death, proceedeth, O king, to the regions of *Brahma*.[23] That person, O monarch, who gives unto all creatures an assurance of his harmlessness, goes to the highest of regions, *viz.*, the blessed one of Vishnu.[24] The fruit that one obtains by giving an assurance unto all creatures of his harmlessness cannot be obtained by a thousand sacrifices or by daily fasts.[25] Amongst all things there is certainly nothing dearer than self. Death is certainly disliked

by all creatures, O Bhārata! Therefore, compassion should certainly be shown unto all.[26] Endued with diverse kinds of errors, entangled by the net of their own intelligence, they that are wicked and are of good vision, wander repeatedly on the Earth. They, however, that are wise and endued with subtile sight, attain to a union with *Brahma*.'"[27]

—

SECTION VIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Even after hearing the words of Vidura, the chief of the Kurus, afflicted with grief on account of the death of his sons, fell down senseless on the Earth.[1] Beholding him fall down in that state, his friends as also the island-born Vyāsa, and Vidura, and Sanjaya, and other well-wishers, and the attendants who used to wait at the gates and who enjoyed his confidence,[2] sprinkled cool water over his body, and fanned him with palm leaves, and gently rubbed him with their hands. For a long while they comforted the king while in that condition.[3] The monarch, recovering his senses after a long time, wept for a long while, overwhelmed with grief on account of the death of his sons.[4] He said,—'Fie on the state of humanity! Fie on the human body! The woes that are suffered in this life frequently arise from the very state of humanity![5] Alas, O lord, great is the grief, like poison or fire, that one suffers at the loss of sons, of wealth, of kinsmen, and relatives![6] That grief causes the limbs to burn, and our wisdom to be destroyed. Overwhelmed with that grief, a person regards death to be preferable.[7] This calamity that has overtaken me through ill-luck is even like that. It will not, I see, end except with life itself! O best of regenerate ones, I shall, therefore, put an end to my life this very day![8]—Having said these words unto his high-souled sire, that foremost of all persons conversant with *Brahma*, Dhritarāshtra, overwhelmed with grief, became stupified. The king, O monarch, reflecting on his woes, became speechless.[9] Hearing these words of his, the puissant Vyāsa thus spoke unto his son afflicted with grief on account of the death of his children.[10]

"Vyāsa said,—'O mighty-armed Dhritarāshtra, listen to what I say! Thou art possessed of learning, thou hast great intelligence, and thou, O puissant one, art skilled in understanding duties![11] Nothing of that which should be known is unknown to thee, O scorcher of foes! Without doubt, thou knowest the instability of all things doomed to death![12] When the world of life is unstable, when this world itself is not eternal, when life is sure to end in death, why then, O Bhārata, dost thou grieve?[13] Before thy very eyes, O king, the concatenation of facts brought about by Time, making thy son the cause, produced this hostility![14] This destruction of the Kurus, O king, was inevitable. Why then dost thou grieve for those heroes that have attained to the highest end?[15] O thou of mighty-arms, the high-souled Vidura knew everything. With all his might he had endeavoured, O king, to bring about peace![16] It is my opinion that the course marked out by Destiny cannot be controlled by any one, even if one struggles for eternity![17] The course that was settled by the gods was heard directly by me. I will recite it to thee, so that tranquillty of mind may be thine![18] Once before, without any fatigue, I repaired very quickly to the court of Indra. There I beheld all the denizens of heaven assembled together.[19] There were, O sinless one, all the celestial *Rishis* also, headed by Nārada. There, O monarch, I saw also the Earth (in her embodied form).[20] The latter had repaired to the gods for the accomplishment of a particular mission. Approaching the gods, she said,[21]—That which ye all should do for me hath, ye blessed ones, been already promised by you while you were in Brahman's abode! Let that be accomplished soon![22]—Hearing these words of hers, Vishnu, the adored of all the worlds, smilingly addressed her in the midst of the celestial conclave, saying,[23]—The eldest of the hundred sons of Dhritarāshtra, he, *viz.*, who is known by the name of Duryodhana, will accomplish thy business! Through that king, thy purpose will be achieved![24] For his sake, many kings will assemble together on the field of Kuru. Capable of smiting, they will cause one another to be slain through the instrumentality of hard weapons.[25] It is evident,

O goddess, that thy burthen will then be lightened in battle! Go quickly to thy own place and continue to bear the weight of creatures, O beauteous one![26]—From this thou wilt understand, O king, that thy son Duryodhana, born in Gāndhāri's womb, was a portion of Kali, sprung for the object of causing a universal slaughter![27] He was vindictive, restless, wrathful, and difficult of being gratified. Through the influence of Destiny his brothers also became like him.[28] Cakuni became his maternal uncle and Karna his great friend. Many other kings were born on Earth for aiding in the work of destruction.[29] As the king is, so do his subjects become. If the king becomes righteous, even unrighteousness (in his dominions) assumes the shape of righteousness.[30] Servants, without doubt, are affected by the merits and defects of their masters. Those sons of thine, O king, having obtained a bad king, have all been destroyed.[31] Conversant with truth, Nārada knew all this. Thy sons, through their own faults, have been destroyed, O king! Do not grieve for them, O monarch! There is no cause for grief![32] The Pāndavas have not, O Bhārata, the least fault in what has happened! Thy sons were all of wicked souls. It is they that caused this destruction on Earth.[33] Blessed be thou, Nārada had truly informed Yudhishthira of all this in his court on the occasion of the *Rājasuya* sacrifice, saying,[34]—The Pāndavas and the Kauravas, encountering each other, will meet with destruction. Do that, O son of Kunti, which thou shouldst![35]—Hearing these words of Nārada, the Pāndavas became filled with grief. I have thus told thee that which is an eternal secret of the gods![36] This will destroy thy grief and restore to thee a love of thy life-breaths, and cause thee to cherish affection for the Pāndavas, for all that has happened has been due to what had been ordained by the gods.[37] O thou of mighty-arms, I had learnt all this sometime before. I also spoke of it to king Yudhishthira the just on the occasion of his foremost of sacrifices, *viz.*, the *Rājasuya*![38] When I secretly informed him of all this, Dharma's son endeavoured his best for preserving peace with the Kauravas. That, however, which is ordained by the gods proved too powerful (to be frustrated by

him).[39] The fiat, O king, of the Destroyer, is incapable of being baffled any how by mobile and immobile creatures.[40] Thou art devoted to virtue and possessed of superior intelligence, O Bhārata! Thou knowest also that which is the way and that which is not the way of all creatures![41] If king Yudhishthira learns that thou art burning with grief and losing thy senses frequently, he will cast off his very life-breaths![42] He is always compassionate and possessed of wisdom. His kindness extends even to all the inferior creatures. How is it possible, O king, that he will not show compassion to thee, O monarch?[43] At my command, and knowing that that which is ordained is inevitable, as also from kindness to the Pāndavas, continue to bear thy life, O Bhārata![44] If thou livest thus, thy fame will spread in the world. Thou shalt then be able to acquire a knowledge of all duties and find many years for obtaining ascetic merit.[45] This grief for the death of thy sons that has arisen in thy heart, like a blazing fire, should always be extinguished, O king, by the water of wisdom!'"[46]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of Vyāsa of immeasurable energy and reflecting upon them for a little while, Dhritarāshtra said,[47]—'O best of regenerate ones, I am exceedingly afflicted by a heavy load of grief! My senses are repeatedly forsaking me and I am unable to bear up my own self.[48] Hearing, however, these words of thine about what had been ordained by the gods, I shall not think of casting off my life-breaths and shall live and act without indulging in grief![49] Hearing these words of Dhritarāshtra, O monarch, Satyavati's son Vyāsa, disappeared then and there."[50]

Section IX.

Janamejaya said,—"After the holy Vyāsa had departed, what, O regenerate sage, did king Dhritarāshtra do? It behoveth thee to tell me this![1] What also did the Kuru king, the high-souled son of Dharma, do! And how were those three, viz., Kripa and others, do?[2] I have heard of the feats of Açwatthāman and the mutual denouncement of

curses. Tell me what happened next and what Sanjaya next said (unto the old king."[3]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After Duryodhana had been slain and all the troops slaughtered, Sanjaya, deprived of his spiritual sight, came back to Dhritarāshtra.[4]

"Sanjaya said,—'The kings of diverse peoples, that came from diverse realms, have all, O king, gone to the regions of the dead, along with thy sons![5] Thy son, O king, who had constantly been implored (for peace) but who always wished to terminate his hostility (with the Pāndavas by slaughtering them) has caused the Earth to be exterminated.[6] Do thou, O king, cause the obsequial rites of thy sons and grandsons and sires to be performed according to due order!' "[7]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these terrible words of Sanjaya, the king fell down on the Earth and lay motionless like one deprived of life.[8] Approaching the monarch who was lying prostrate on the Earth, Vidura, conversant with every duty, said these words:[9]—'Rise, O king, why dost thou lie down thus? Do not grieve, O bull of Bharata's race! Even this, O lord of Earth, is the final end of all creatures![10] At first creatures are non-existent. In the interin, O Bhārata, they become existent. At the end, they once more become non-existent. What cause of sorrow is there in all this?[11] By indulging in grief, one cannot get back the dead. By indulging in grief, one cannot die himself. When such is the course of the world, why dost thou indulge in grief?[12] One may die without having engaged in battle. One also escapes with life after having engaged in battle. When one's Time comes, O king, one cannot escape![13] Time drags all kinds of creatures. There is none dear or hateful to Time, O best of the Kurus![14] As the wind tears off the ends of all blades of grass, even so all creatures, O bull of Bharata's race, are brought by Time under its influence.[15] All creatures are like members of the same caravan bound for the same destination. What cause of sorrow is there if Time meets with one a little earlier than with another?[16] Those again, O king, that have fallen in battle and for whom thou grievest, are not really objects of thy grief, since all those illustrious ones have gone to

heaven![17] By sacrifices with profuse presents, by ascetic austerities, and by knowledge, people cannot so easily repair to heaven as heroes by courage in battle.[18] All those heroes were conversant with the Vedas; all of them were observant of vows; all of them have perished, facing the foe in battle. What cause of sorrow then is there?[19] They poured their arrowy libations upon the bodies of their brave foes as upon a fire. Foremost of men, they bore in return the arrowy libations poured upon themselves.[20] I tell thee, O king, that there is no better way to heaven for a Kshatriya than through battle![21] All of them were high-souled Kshatriyas, all of them were heroes and ornaments of assemblies. They have attained to a high state of blessedness. One should not grieve for them.[22] Do thou comfort thy own self. Do not grieve, O bull among men! It behoveth thee not to suffer thyself to be overwhelmed with sorrow and abandon all action!"[23]

Section X.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing these words of Vidura, that bull of Bharata's race (viz., Dhritarāshtra,) ordered his car to be yoked. The king once more said,—'Bring Gāndhāri hither without delay, and all the Bharata ladies! Bring hither Kunti also, as well as all the other ladies with her!'[2] Having said these words unto Vidura conversant with every duty, Dhritarāshtra of righteous soul, deprived of his senses by sorrow, ascended on his car.[3] Then Gāndhāri, afflicted with grief on account of the death of his sons, accompanied by Kunti and the other ladies of the royal household, came, at the command of her lord, to that spot where the latter was waiting for her.[4] Afflicted with great grief, they came together to the king. As they met, they accosted each other and uttered loud wails of woe.[5] Then Vidura, who had become more afflicted than those ladies, began to comfort them. Placing those weeping fair ones on the cars that stood ready for them, he set out (with them) from the city.[6] At that time a loud wail of woe arose from every Kuru house. The whole city, including the very children, became exceedingly afflicted with grief.[7] Those ladies that had

not before this been seen by the very gods were now, helpless as they were for the loss of their lords, seen by the common people.[8] With their beautiful tresses all dishevelled, and their ornaments cast off, those ladies, each attired in a single piece of raiment, proceeded most wofully.[9] Indeed, they issued from their houses resembling white mountains, like a dappled herd of deer from their mountain caves after the fall of their leader.[10] Those fair ladies, in successive bevies, O king, came out, filled with sorrow, and ran hither and thither like a herd of fillies on a circus yard.[11] Seizing each other's hands, they uttered loud wails after their sons and brothers and sires. They seemed to exhibit the scene that takes place on the occasion of the universal destruction at the end of the *Yuga*.[12] Weeping and crying and running hither and thither, and deprived of their senses by grief, they knew not what to do.[13] Those ladies who formerly felt the blush of modesty in the presence of even companions of their own sex, now felt no blush of shame, though scantily clad, in appearing before their mothers-in-law.[14] Formerly they used to comfort each other while afflicted with even slight causes of woe. Stupified by grief, they now, O king, refrained from even casting their eyes upon each other.[15] Surrounded by those thousands of wailing ladies, the king cheerlessly issued out of the city and proceeded with speed towards the field of battle.[16] Artizans and traders and Vaiçyas and all kinds of mechanics, issuing out of the city, followed in the wake of the king.[17] As those ladies, afflicted by the wholesale destruction that had overtaken the Kurus, cried in sorrow, a loud wail arose from among them that seemed to pierce all the worlds.[18] All creatures that heard that wail thought that the hour of universal destruction had come when all things would be consumed by the fire that arises at the end of the *Yuga*.[19] The citizens also (of Hastināpura), devoted to the house of Kuru, with hearts filled with anxiety at the destruction that had overtaken their rulers, set up, O king,—a wail that was as loud as that uttered by those ladies."[20]

Section XI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Dhritarāshtra had not proceeded for more than two miles when he met with those three great car-warriors, viz., Caradwat's son Kripa, Drona's son (Açwatthāman), and Kritavarman.[1] As soon as the latter obtained a sight of the blind monarch possessed of great power, the three heroes sighed in grief and with voices choked in tears weepingly addressed him, saying,[2]—'Thy royal son, O king, having achieved the most difficult feats, has, with all his followers, gone to the region of Indra![3] We are the only three car-warriors of Duryodhana's army that have escaped with life. All the others, O bull of Bharata's race, have perished.'[4] Having said these words unto the king, Caradwat's son Kripa, addressing the grief-afflicted Gāndhāri, said these words unto her,[5]—'Thy sons have fallen while engaged in achieving feats worthy of heroes, *i. e.*, while fearlessly fighting in battle and striking down large numbers of foes![6] Without doubt, having obtained those bright worlds that are attainable only by the use of weapons, they are sporting there like celestials, having assumed resplendent forms.[7] Amongst those heroes there was no one that turned back from battle. Every one of them has fallen at the end or edge of weapons. None of them joined his hands, begging for quarter.[8] Death in battle at the end or edge of weapons has been said by the ancients to be the highest end that a Kshatriya can obtain. It behoveth thee not, therefore, to grieve for any of them![9] Their foes, O queen, viz., the Pāndavas, too, have not been more fortunate! Listen, what we, headed by Açwatthāman, have done unto them.[10] Learning that thy son had been slain unrighteously by Bhima, we slaughtered the Pāndavas after entering their camp buried in sleep.[11] All the Pānchālas have been slain. Indeed, all the sons of Drupada, as also all the sons of Draupadi, have been slaughtered.[12] Having caused this carnage of the sons of our foes, we are flying away since we three are incapable of standing in battle with them.[13] Our foes, the Pāndavas, are all heroes and mighty bowmen. They will soon come up with us, filled with rage, for taking vengeance on us.[14] Learn-

ing the slaughter of their sons, those bulls among men, infuriate with rage,—those heroes,—O illustrious lady, will speedily pursue our track.[15] Having caused a carnage (in their sleeping camp) we dare not stay. Grant us permission, O queen! It behoveth thee not to set thy heart on sorrow![16] Grant us thy permission also, O king! Summon all thy fortitude. Do thou also observe the duties of a Kshatriya in their highest form!'[17] Having said these words unto the king, and circumambulating him, Kripa and Kritavarman and Drona's son, O Bhārata,[18] without being able to withdraw their eyes from king Dhritarāshtra possessed of great wisdom, urged their steeds towards the banks of the Ganges.[19] Moving away from that spot, O king, those great car-warriors, with hearts plunged in anxiety, took one another's leave and separated from one another.[20] Caradwat's son Kripa went to Hastināpura; Hridikā's son repaired to his own kingdom; while the son of Drona set out for the asylum of Vyāsa.[21] Even thus those heroes, who had offended the high-souled sons of Pāndu, respectively proceeded to the places they selected, afflicted with fear and casting their eyes on one another.[22] Having met the king thus, those brave chastisers of foes, before the sun rose, went away, O monarch, to the places they chose.[23] It was after this, O king, that the sons of Pāndu, those great car-warriors, encountered the son of Drona, and putting forth their prowess, vanquished him, O monarch, (in the way already related)."[24]

Section XII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After all the warriors had been slaughtered, king Yudhishthira the just heard that his uncle Dhritarāshtra had set out from the city called after the elephant.[1] Afflicted with grief on account of the death of his sons, Yudhishthira, O king, accompanied by his brothers, set out for meeting his uncle filled with sorrow and overwhelmed with grief for the slaughter of his (hundred) sons.[2] The son of Kunti was followed by the high-souled and heroic Krishna of Daçārha's race, and by Yuyudhāna, as also by Yuyutsu.[3]

The princess Draupadi also, burning with grief, and accompanied by those Pānchāla ladies that were with her, sorrowfully followed her lord.[4] Yudhishthira beheld near the banks of the Ganges, O king, the crowd of Bharata ladies afflicted with woe and crying like a flight of she-spreys.[5] The king was soon surrounded by those thousands of ladies who with arms raised aloft in grief, were indulging in loud lamentations and giving expression to all kinds of words, agreeable and disagreeable.[6]—'Where, indeed, is that righteousness of the king, where his truth and compassion, since he has slain sires and brothers and preceptors and sons and friends?[7] How, O mighty-armed one, hath thy heart become tranquil after causing Drona, and thy grandsire Bhishma, and Jayadratha, to be slaughtered?[8] What need hast thou of sovereignty, after having seen thy sires and brothers, O Bhārata, and the irresistible Abhimanyu and the sons of Draupadi, thus slaughtered?'[9]—Passing over those ladies crying like a flight of she-ospreys, the mighty-armed king Yudhishthira the just saluted the feet of his eldest uncle.[10] Having saluted their sire according to custom, those slayers of foes, viz., the Pāndavas, announced themselves to him, each uttering his own name.[11] Dhritarāshtra, exceedingly afflicted with grief on account the slaughter of his sons, then reluctantly embraced the eldest son of Pāndu, who was the cause of that slaughter.[12] Having embraced Yudhishthira the just and spoken a few words of comfort to him, O Bhārata, the wicked-souled Dhritarāshtra sought for Bhima, like a blazing fire ready to burn everythig that would approach it.[13] Indeed, the fire of his wrath, fanned by the wind of his grief, seemed then to be ready to consume the Bhima-forest.[14] Ascertaining the evil intentions cherished by him towards Bhima, Krishna, dragging away the real Bhima, presented an iron statue of the second son of Pāndu to the old king.[15] Possessed of great intelligence, Krishna had, at the very outset, understood the intentions of Dhritarāshtra, and had, therefore, kept such a contrivance ready for baffling them.[16] Seizing with his two arms that iron Bhima, king Dhritarāshtra, possessed of great strength, broke it into pieces, thinking it to be Bhima him-

self in flesh and blood.[17] Endued with might equal to that of ten thousand elephants, the king reduced that statue into fragments. His own breast, however, became considerably bruised and he began to vomit blood.[18] Covered with blood, the king fell down on the ground like a *Pārijāta* tree topped with its flowery burden.[19] His learned charioteer Sanjaya the son of Gavalgana raised the monarch and soothing and comforting him, said,—'Do not act so.'[20] The king then, having cast off his wrath and returned to his normal disposition, became filled with grief and began to weep aloud, saying, —'Alas, Oh Bhima, Alas, Oh Bhima!'[21]—Understanding that he was no longer under the influence of wrath, and that he was truly sorry for having (as he believed) killed Bhima, Vāsudeva, that foremost of men, said these words,[22]—'Do not grieve, O Dhritarāshtra, for thou hast not slain Bhimasena! That is an iron statue, O king, which has been broken by thee![23] Understanding that thou wert filled with rage, O bull of Bharata's race, I dragged the son of Kunti away from within the jaws of Death![24] O tiger among kings, there is none equal to thee in strength of body! What man is there, O mighty-armed one, that would endure the pressure of thy arms?[25] Indeed, as no one can escape with life from an encounter with the Destroyer himself, even so nobody can come out safe from within thy embrace![26] It was for this that yonder iron statue of Bhima, which had been caused to be made by thy son, had been kept ready for thee![27] Through grief for the death of thy sons, thy mind has fallen off from righteousness! It is for this, O great king, that thou seekest to slay Bhimasena![28] The slaughter of Bhima, however, O king, would do thee no good. Thy sons, O monarch, would not be revived by it![29] Therefore, do thou aprove of what has been done by us with a view to secure peace, and do not set thy heart on grief!'"[30]

SECTION XIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Certain maid-servants then came to the king for washing him. After he had been duly washed,

the slayer of Madhu again addressed him, saying,[1]—'Thou hast, O king, read the Vedas and diverse scriptures! Thou hast heard all old histories, and everything about the duties of kings![2] Thou art learned, possessed of great wisdom, and competent to strength and weakness. Why then dost thou cherish such wrath when all that has overtaken thee is the result of thy own fault?[3] I spoke to thee before the battle. Both Bhishma and Drona, O Bhārata, did the same, as also Vidura and Sanjaya. Thou didst not, however, then follow our advice.[4] Indeed, though exhorted by us, thou didst not yet act according to the counsels we offered, knowing that the Pāndavas were superior to thee and thine, O Kauravya, in strength and courage![5] That king who is capable of seeing his own faults and knows the distinctions of place and time, obtains great prosperity![6] That person, however, who, though counselled by well-wishers, does not accept their words, good or bad, meets with distress and is obliged to grieve in conse quence of the evil policy he pursues.[7] Observe thou a different course of life now, O Bhārata! Thou didst not keep thy soul under restraint, but suffered thyself to be ruled by Duryodhana![8] That which has come upon thee is due to thy own fault. Why then dost thou seek to slay Bhima? Recollecting thy own faults, govern thy wrath now![9] That mean wretch who had, from pride caused the princess of Pānchāla to be brought into the assembly, has been slain by Bhimasena in just revenge.[10] Look at thy own evil acts as also at those of thy wicked souled son! The sons of Pāndu are perfectly innocent! Yet have they been treated most cruelly by thee and him!'"[11]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"After he had thus been told nothing but the truth by Krishna,, O monarch, king Dhritarāshtra replied unto Devaki's son, saying,[12]—'It is even so, O thou of mighty arms! What thou sayest, O Mādhava, is perfectly true! It is parental affection, O thou of righteous soul, that caused me to fall away from righteousness![13] By good luck, that tiger among men, the mighty Bhima of true prowess, protected by thee, came not within my embrace![14] Now, however, I am free from wrath and fever. I desire eagerly, O Mādhava to embrace that hero, viz., the second

son of Pāndu!"[15] When all the kings have been dead, when my children are no more, upon the sons of Pāndu depend my welfare and happiness!"[16] Having said these words, the old king then embraced those princes of excellent frames, viz., Bhima, and Dhananjaya, and those two foremost of men, viz., the two sons of Mādri, and wept, and comforted and pronounced blessings upon them."[17]

SECTION XIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Commanded by Dhritarāshtra, those bulls of Kuru's race, viz., the Pāndava brothers, accompanied by Keçava, then proceeded to see Gāndhāri![1] The faultless Gāndhāri, afflicted with grief on account of the death of her hundred sons, recollecting that king Yudhishthira the just had slain all his enemies, wished to curse him.[2] Understanding her evil intentions towards the Pāndavas, the son of Satyavati addressed himself for counteracting them at the very outset.[3] Having cleansed himself by the sacred and fresh water of the Ganges, the great *Rishi*, capable of proceeding everywhere at will with the fleetness of the mind, came to that spot.[4] Capable of seeing the heart of every creature with his spiritual vision and with his mind directed towards it, the sage made his appearance there.[5] Endued with great ascetic merit and ever intent on saying what was for the benefit of creatures, the *Rishi*, addressing his daughter-in-law at the proper moment, said,—'Do not avail of this opportunity for denouncing a curse! On the other hand, utilize it for showing thy forgiveness![6] Thou shouldst not be angry with the Pāndavas, O Gāndhāri! Set thy heart on peace! Restrain the words that are about to fall from thy lips! Listen to my advice![7] Thy son, desirous of victory, had beseeched thee every day for the eighteen days that battle lasted, saying,—O mother, bless me who am fighting with my foes![8]—Implored every day in these words by thy son desirous of victory, the answer thou always gavest him was,—Thither is victory where righteousness is![9]—I do not, O Gāndhāri, remember that any words, spoken by thee have become false! Those words, therefore, that thou, implored by

Duryodhana, saidst unto him, could not be false. Thou art always employed in the good of all creatures.[10] Having without doubt reached the other shore in that dreadful battle of Kshatriyas, the sons of Pāndu have certainly won the victory and a measure of righteousness that is much greater.[11] Thou wert formerly observant of the virtue of forgiveness. Why wouldst thou not observe it now? Subdue unrighteousness, O thou that art conversant with righteousness! There is victory where righteousness is![12] Remembering thy own righteousness and the words spoken by thyself, restrain thy wrath, O Gāndhāri! Do not act otherwise, O thou that art beautiful in speech![13]—Hearing these words, Gāndhāri said,—'O holy one, I do not cherish any ill feelings towards the Pāndavas, nor do I wish that they should perish! In consequence, however, of grief for the death of my sons, my heart is very powerfully agitated![14] I know that I should protect the Pāndavas with as much care as Kunti herself protects them, and that Dhritarāshtra also should protect them as I should![15] Through the fault of Duryodhana and of Cakuni the son of Suvala, and through the action of Karna and Dusçāsana, this extermination of the Kurus hath taken place![16] In this mather the slightest blame cannot attach to Vibhatsu or to Prithā's son Vrikodara, or to Nakula or Sahadeva, or to Yudhishthira himself.[17] While engaged in battle, the Kauravas, swelling with arrogance and pride, have fallen along with many others (that came to their aid). I am not grieved at this![18] But there has been one act done by Bhima in the very presence of Vāsudeva (that moves my resentment)! The high-souled Vrikodara, having challenged Duryodhana to a dreadful encounter with the mace,[19] and having come to know that my son, while careering in diverse kinds of motion in the battle, was superior to him in skill, struck the latter below the navel![20] It is this that moves my wrath! Why should heroes, for the sake of their lives, cast off obligations of duty that have been determined by high-souled persons conversant with every duty?'"[21]

Section XV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing these words of Gāndhāri, Bhimasena, looking like one in fright, said these words for soothing her.[1]—'Be the act righteous or unrighteous, it was done by me through fear and for the object of protecting my own self! It behoveth thee, therefore, to forgive me now![2] Thy mighty son was incapable of being slain by anybody in a fair and righteous battle. It was for this that I did what was unfair.[3] Duryodhana himself had formerly vanquished Yudhishthira unrighteously. He used always to behave guilefully towards us. It was for this that I had recourse to an unfair act.[4] Thy son was then the sole unslain warrior on his side. In order that that valiant prince might not slay me in the mace-encounter and once more deprive us of our kingdom, I acted in that way.[5] Thou knowest all that thy son had said unto the princess of Pānchāla while the latter, in her season, was clad in a single piece of raiment.[6] Without having disposed of Suyodhana it was imposible for us to rule peacefully the whole Earth with her seas. It was for this that I acted in that way.[7] Thy son inflicted many wrongs on us. In the midst of the assembly he had shown his left thigh unto Draupadi.[8] For that wicked behaviour, thy son deserved to be slain by us even then. At the command, however, of king Yudhishthira the just, we suffered ourselves to be restrained by the compact that had been made.[9] By this means, O queen, thy son provoked deadly hostilities with us. Great were our sufferings in the forest (whither we were driven by thy son). Remembering all this, I acted in that way![10] Having slain Duryodhana in battle, we have crossed the end of our hostilities. Yudhishthira has got back his kingdom, and we also have been freed from wrath![11] Hearing these words of Bhima, Gāndhāri said,—'Since thou praisest my son thus (for his skill in battle), he did not deserve such a death! He, however, did all that thou tellest me![12] When Vrishasena, however, had deprived Nakula of his steeds, O Bhārata, thou quaffedst in battle the blood from Duççāsana's body![13] Such an act is cruel and is censured by the good. It suits only

a person that is most disrespectable. It was a wicked act, O Vrikodara, that was then accomplished by thee! It was undeserving of thee!'[14]—Bhima replied, saying,—'It is improper to quaff the blood of even a stranger, what then need be said about quaffing the blood of one's own self? One's brother, again, is like one's own self. There is no difference between them.[15] The blood, however, (that I am regarded to have quaffed) did not, O mother, pass down my lips and teeth! Karna knew this well. My hands only were smeared with (Dusçāsana's) blood.[16] Seeing Nakula deprived of his steeds by Vrishasena in battle, I caused the rejoicing (Kaurava) brothers to be filled with dread.[17] When after the match at dice the tresses of Draupadi were seized, I uttered certain words in rage. Those words are still in my remembrance.[18] I would, for all years to come, have been regarded to have swerved from the duties of a Kshatriya if I had left that vow unaccomplished! It was for this, O queen, that I did that act![19] It behoveth thee not, O Gāndhāri, to impute any fault to me! Without having restrained thy sons in former days, does it behove thee to impute any fault to our innocent selves?'[20]

"Gāndhāri said,—'Unvanquished by any one, thou hast slain a hundred sons of this old man! Oh, why didst thou not spare, O child, even one son of this old couple deprived of kingdom, one whose offences were comparatively lighter?[21] Why didst thou not leave even one crutch for this blind couple?[22] O child, although thou livest unharmed, having slain all my children, yet no grief would have been mine if thou hadst adopted the path of righteousness (in slaying them)!' "[23]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having said these words, Gāndhāri, filled with wrath at the slaughter of all her sons and grandsons, enquired after Yudhishthira, saying,—'Where is the king?'[24] After she had said these words, king Yudhishthira, trembling and with joined hands, approached her and said these soft words unto her,[25]—'Here is Yudhishthira, O goddess, that cruel slayer of thy sons! I deserve thy curses, for I am the cause of this universal destruction! Oh, curse me![26] I have no longer any need for life, for kingdom, for wealth! Having caused such friends to be slain, I have proved myself

to be a great fool and a hater of friends!'[27]—Unto Yudhishthira who spoke such words, who was overcome with fear, and who stood in her presence, Gāndhāri, drawing long sighs, said nothing.[28] Conversant with the rules of righteousness, the Kuru queen, possessed of great foresight, directed her eyes, from within the folds of the cloth that covered them,* to the tip of Yudhishthira's toe, as the prince, with body bent forwards, was about to fall down at her feet. At this, the king, whose nails had before this been all very beautiful, came to have a sore nail on his toe.†[29-30] Beholding this, Arjuna moved away to the rear of Vāsudeva, and the other sons of Pāndu became restless and moved from one spot to another.[31] Gāndhāri then, having cast off her wrath, comforted the Pāndavas as a mother should. Obtaining her leave, those heroes of broad chests then proceeded together to present themselves to their mother, that parent of heroes.[32] Having seen her sons after a long time, Kunti, who had been filled with anxiety on their account, covered her face with her cloth and began to weep.[33] Having wept for sometime with her children, Prithā beheld the wounds and scars of many weapons on their bodies.[34] She then repeatedly embraced and patted each of her sons, and afflicted with grief wept with Draupadi who had lost all her children and whom she saw lying on the bare Earth, indulging in piteous lamentations.[35]

"Draupadi said,—'O venerable dame, where have all your grandsons, with Abhimanyu among them, gone? Beholding thee in such distress, why are they delaying in making their appearance before thee? Deprived as I am of my children, what need have I of kingdom!'[36] Raising the grief-stricken princess of Pānchāla who was weeping thus, Prithā began to comfort that lady of large eyes.[37] Then Kunti, accompanied

---

* Gāndhāri's devotion to her blind lord was such that she always kept her own eyes covered with thick folds of cloth. Because her spouse could not see, therefore, as a Hindu wife, she would not see or use her eyes in this world!—T.

† As soon as Gāndhāri's glance fell upon Yudhishthira's toe, the nail that covered it became burnt and sore.—T.

by the princess of Pānchāla, and followed by her sons, proceeded towards the grief-afflicted Gāndhāri, herself in greater affliction still.[38] Beholding that illustrious lady with her daughter-in-law, Gāndhāri addressed her, saying,—'Do not, O daughter, grieve so! Behold, I too am as much stricken with grief as thou![39] I think, this universal destruction has been brought about by the irresistible course of Time. Inevitable as it was, this dreadful slaughter has not been due to the voluntary agency of human beings![40] Even that has come to pass which Vidura of great wisdom foretold after Krishna's supplication for peace had failed![41] Do not, therefore, grieve in a matter that was inevitable, especially after its occurrence! Having fallen in battle, they should not be grieved for![42] I am in the same predicament with thee! (If thou actest in such a way) who then will comfort us? Through my fault, this foremost of races has been destroyed.'"[43]

Section XVI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having said these words, Gāndhāri, though staying on that spot which was distant from the field of battle, beheld, with her spiritual eye, the slaughter of the Kurus.[1] Devoted to her lord, that highly blessed lady had always practiced high vows. Undergoing the severest penances, she was always truthful in her speech.[2] In consequence of the gift of the boon by the great *Rishi* Vyāsa of sanctified deeds, she became possessed of spiritual knowledge and power. Piteous were the lamentations in which that dame then indulged.[3] Endued with great intelligence, the Kuru dame saw, from a distance, but as if from a near point, that field of battle, terrible to behold and full of wonderful sights, of those foremost of fighters.[4] Scattered all over with bones and hair, and covered with streams of blood, that field was strewn with thousands upon thousands of dead bodies on every side.[5] Covered with the blood of elephants and horses and car-warriors and combatants of others kinds, it teemed with headless trunks and trunkless heads.[6] And it resounded with the cries of elephants and steeds and men and women, and abounded

with jackals and cranes and ravens and *Kankas* and crows.[7] And it was the sporting ground of *Rākshasas* subsisting on human flesh. And it swarmed with ospreys and vultures and resounded with the inauspicious concert of jackals.[8] Then king Dhritárāshtra, at the command of Vyāsa, and all the sons of Pāndu with Yudhishthira at their head,[9] with Vāsudeva and all the Kuru ladies, proceeded to the field of battle.[10] Those ladies, bereaved of their lords, having reached Kurukshetra, beheld their slain brothers and sons and sires and husbands lying on the ground,[11] and in course of being devoured by beasts of prey and wolves and ravens and crows and ghosts and *Piçāchas* and *Rākshasas* and diverse other wanderers of the night.[12] Beholding that carnage which resembled the sights seen on the sporting ground of Rudra, the ladies uttered loud shrieks and quickly alighted from their costly vehicles.[13] Witnessing sights the like of which they had never before witnessed, the Bharata ladies felt their limbs to be deprived of strength and fell down on the ground.[14] Others became so stupified that they lost all their senses. Indeed, the Pānchāla and the Kuru ladies were plunged into unutterable distress.[15] Beholding that dreadful field of battle resounding on every direction with the cries of those grief-stricken ladies, the daughter of Suvala, acquainted with every duty,[16] addressed the lotus-eyed Keçava, that foremost of all men. Witnessing that universal slaughter of the Kurus and filled with grief at the sight, she said these words:[17]—'Behold, O lotus-eyed Mādhava, these daughters-in-law of mine! Deprived of their lords, they are uttering, with deshevelled hair, piteous cries of woe like a flight of she-ospreys![18] Meeting with those dead bodies, they are calling back to their memories the great Bharata chiefs! They are running hither and thither in large bands towards their sons and brothers and sires and husbands![19] Behold, O mighty-armed one, the field is covered with mothers of heroes, all of whom, however, have been bereaved of children! There, those portions again are covered with spouses of heroes, who have, however, been bereaved of their spouses![20] Behold, the field of battle is adorned with those tigers among men, viz., Bhishma and Karna and

Abhimanyu and Drona and Drupada and Calya, as if with blazing fires![21] Behold, it is adorned also with the golden coats of mail, and with the costly gems, of high-souled warriors, and with their *Angadas* and *Keyuras* and garlands![22] Behold, it is strewn with darts and spiked clubs hurled by heroic hands, and swords and diverse kinds of keen shafts and bows![23] Beasts of prey, assembled together, are standing or sporting or lying down as it likes them![24] Behold, O puissant hero, the field of battle is even such! At this sight, O Janārddana, I am burning with grief![25] In the destruction of the Pānchālas and the Kurus, O slayer of Madhu, I think, the five elements (of which everything is made) have been destroyed![26] Fierce vultures and other birds, in thousands, are dragging those blood-dyed bodies, and seizing them by their armour, are devouring them![27] Who is there that could think of the death of such heroes as Jayadratha and Karna and Drona and Bhishma and Abhimanyu?[28] Alas, though incapable of being slain, they have yet been slain, O destroyer of Madhu! Behold, vultures and *Kankas* and ravens and hawks and dogs and jackals are feasting upon them![29] There, those tigers among men, that fought on Duryodhana's side, and took the field in wrath, are now lying like extinguished fires![30] All of them are worthy of sleeping on soft and clean beds. But, alas, plunged into distress, they are sleeping today on the bare ground![31] Bards reciting their praises used to delight them before at proper times. They are now listening to the fierce and inauspicious cries of jackals![32] Those illustrious heroes who used formerly to sleep on costly beds with their limbs smeared with sandal-paste and powdered aloe, alas, now sleep on the dust![33] These vultures and wolves and ravens have now become their ornaments. Repeatedly uttering inauspicious and fierce cries, those creatures are now dragging their bodies![34] Delighting in battle, those heroes, looking cheerful, have still beside them their keen shafts, well-tempered swords, and bright maces, as if life has not yet departed from them![35] Many foremost of heroes, possessed of beauty and fair complexions and adorned with garlands of gold, are sleeping on the ground! Behold, beasts of

prey are dragging and tearing them![36] Others, with massive arms, are sleeping with maces in their embrace, as if those were beloved wives![37] Others, still cased in armour, are holding in their hands their bright weapons. Beasts of prey are not mangling them, O Janārddana, regarding them to be still alive![38] The beautiful garlands of pure gold on the necks of other illustrious heroes, as the latter are being dragged by carnivorous creatures, are scattered about on every side![39] There, those fierce wolves, numbering in thousands, are dragging the golden chains round the necks of many illustrious heroes stilled by death![40] Many, whom bards well-trained to their work, formerly used, with their hymns and eulogies of grave import, to delight every morning,[41] are now surrounded by fair ladies stricken with grief and weeping and crying around them in woe, O tiger of Vrishni's race![42] The faces of those beautiful ladies, O Keçava, though pale, look resplendent still like an assemblage of red lotuses![43] Those Kuru ladies have ceased to weep, with their respective followers and companions. They are all filled with anxiety. Overwhelmed with sorrow, they are running hither and thither.[44] The faces of those fair ones have, with weeping and anger, become resplendent as the morning sun or gold or burnished copper.[45] Hearing each other's lamentations of incomplete sense, those ladies, in consequence of the loud wails of woe bursting from every side, are unable to catch each other's meaning.[46] Some amongst them, drawing long sighs and indulging in repeated lamentations, are stupified by grief and are abandoning their life-breaths![47] Many of them, beholding the bodies (of their sons, husbands, or sires), are weeping and setting up loud wails. Others are striking their heads with their own soft hands.[48] The Earth, strewn with severed heads and hands and other limbs mingled together and gathered in large heaps, looks resplendent with these signs of havoc![49] Beholding many headless trunks of great beauty, and many heads without trunks, those fair ones are lying senseless on the ground for a long while.[50] Uniting particular heads with particular trunks, those ladies, senseless with grief, are again discovering their mistakes, and saying,—This is not this one's

—and are weeping more bitterly![51] Others, uniting arms and thighs and feet, cut off with shafts, are giving way to grief and losing their senses repeatedly (at the sight of the restored forms)![52] Some amongst the Bharata ladies, beholding the bodies of their lords,—bodies that have been mangled by animals and birds and severed of their heads,—are succeeding not in recognising them.[53] Others, beholding their brothers, sires, sons, and husbands slain by foes, are, O destroyer of Madhu, striking their heads with their own hands.[54] Miry with flesh and blood, the Earth has become impassable with arms still holding swords in their grasp, and with heads adorned with ear-rings.[55] Beholding the field strewn with their brothers and sires, and sons, those faultless ladies, who had never before suffered the least distress, are now plunged into unutterable woe![56] Behold, O Janārddana, those numerous bevies of Dhritarāshtra's daughters-in-law, resembling successive multitudes of handsome fillies adorned with excellent manes![57] What, O Keçava, can be a sadder spectacle for me to behold than that presented by those ladies of fair forms who have assumed such an aspect?[58] Without doubt, I must have perpetrated great sins in my former lives, since I am beholding, O Keçava, my sons and grandsons and brothers all slain by foes!' While indulging in such lamentations in grief, Gāndhāri's eyes fell upon her son (Duryodhana)."[59]

Section XVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Beholding Duryodhana, Gāndhāri, deprived of her senses by grief, suddenly fell down on the Earth like an uprooted plantain tree.[1] Having regained her senses soon, she began to weep, repeatedly uttering loud wails at the sight of her son lying on the bare ground, covered with blood.[2] Embracing her son, Gāndhāri indulged in piteous lamentations for him. Stricken with grief, and with senses exceedingly agitated, the Kuru queen exclaimed,—'Alas, O son!' 'Alas, O son!'[3]—Burning with sorrow, the queen drenched with her tears the body of her son, possessed of massive and broad shoulders, and adorned with garlands and

collar. Addressing Hrishikeça who stood near, she said,[4]—'On the eve of this battle, O puissant one, that has exterminated this race, this foremost of kings, O thou of Vrishni's race, said unto me,[5]—In this internecine battle, O mother, wish me victory!—When he said these words, myself, knowing that a great calamity had come upon us, told him even this, O tiger among men, viz.,—Thither is victory where righteousness is![6] And since, O son, thy heart is set on battle, thou wilt, without doubt, obtain those regions that are attainable by (the use of) weapons (and sport there) like a celestial![7]—Even these were the words that I then said unto him. I did not then grieve for my son. I grieve, however, for the helpless Dhritarāshtra bereaved of friends and kinsmen![8] Behold, O Mādhava, my son, that foremost of warriors, wrathful, skilled in weapons, and irresistible in battle, sleeping on the bed of heroes![9] Behold the reverses brought about by Time! This scorcher of foes that used of old to walk at the head of all crowned persons now sleepeth on the dust![10] Without doubt, the heroic Duryodhana, when he sleeps on that bed which is the heroe's, hath obtained the most unattainable end![11] Inauspicious jackals are now delighting that prince asleep on the heroe's bed, who was fermerly delighted by the fairest of ladies sitting round him![12] He who was formerly encircled by kings vieing with one another to give him pleasure, alas, he, slain and lying on the ground, is now encircled by vultures![13] He who was formerly fanned with beautiful fans by fair ladies, is now fanned by (carnivorous) birds with flaps of their wings![14] Possessed of great strength and true prowess, this mighty-armed prince, slain by Bhimasena in battle, sleeps like an elephant slain by a lion![15] Behold Duryodhana, O Krishna, lying on the bare ground, covered with blood, slain by Bhimasena with his mace![16] That mighty-armed one who had in battle assembled together eleven *Akshauhinis* of troops, O Keçava, hath, in consequence of his own evil policy, been now slain.[17] Alas, there that great bowman and mighty car-warrior sleeps, slain by Bhimasena, like a tiger slain by a lion![18] Having disregarded Vidura, as also his own sire, this reckless, foolish, and wicked prince hath succumbed to

death, in consequence of his disregard of the old![19] He who had ruled the Earth, without a rival, for thirteen years, alas, that prince, that son of mine, sleepeth today on the bare ground, slain by his foes![20] Not long before, O Krishna, I beheld the Earth, full of elephants and kine and horses, ruled by Duryodhana![21] Today, O thou of mighty-arms, I see her ruled by another, and destitute of elephants and kine and horses! What need have I, O Mādhava, of life?[22] Behold, again, this sight that is more painful than the death of my son, the sight, *viz.*, of these fair ladies weeping by the side of the slain heroes![23] Behold, O Krishna, the mother of Lakshmana, that lady of large hips, with her tresses dishevelled, that dear spouse of Duryodhana,* resembling a sacrificial altar of gold![24] Without doubt, this damsel of great intelligence, while her mighty-armed lord was formerly alive, used to sport within the embrace of her lord's handsome arms![25] Why, indeed, does not this heart of mine break into a hundred fragments at the sight of my son and grandson slain in battle?[26] Alas, that faultless lady now smells (the head of) her son covered with blood! Now, again, that lady of fair thighs is gently rubbing Duryodhana's body with her fair hand.[27] At one time she is sorrowing for her lord and at another for her son! At one time she looketh on her lord, at another on her son![28] Behold, O Mādhava, striking her head with her hands, she falls upon the breast of her heroic spouse, the king of the Kurus![29] Possessed of complexion like that of the filaments of the lotus, she still looketh beautiful like a lotus. The unfortunate princess now rubbeth the face of her son and now that of her lord![30] If the scriptures and the *Çrutis* be true, without doubt, this king has obtained those regions (of blessedness) that one may win by the use of weapons!'"[31]

---

* Lit., one who dwelt on the breast of Duryodhana.—T.

SECTION XVIII.

'Gāndhāri said,—'Behold, O Mādhava, my century of sons, incapable of fatigue (from exertion in battle), have all been slain by Bhimasena with his mace in battle![1] That which grieves me more today is that these my daughters-in-law, of tender years, deprived of sons and with dishevelled hair, are wandering on the field today![2] Alas, they who formerly walked only on the terraces of goodly mansions with feet adorned with many ornaments, are now, in great affliction of heart, obliged to touch with those feet of theirs this hard Earth miry with blood![3] Reeling in sorrow, they are wandering like inebriated persons, driving away vultures and jackals and crows with difficulty![4]* Behold, that lady of faultless limbs, and slender waist, seeing this terrible carnage, falleth down, overwhelmed with grief![5] Beholding this princess, this mother of Lakshmana, O thou of mighty-arms, my heart is torn with grief![6] These beautiful ladies of fair arms, some seeing their brothers, some their husbands, and some their sons, lying down in death on the bare ground, are themselves falling down, seizing the arms of the slain![7] Listen, O unvanquished one, to the loud wails of those elderly ladies and those others of middle age at sight of this terrible carnage![8] Supporting themselves against broken boxes of cars and the bodies of slain elephants and steeds, behold, O thou of great might, those dames, worn out with fatigue, are resting themselves![9] Behold, O Krishna, some one amongst them, taking up some kinsman's severed head decked with beautiful nose and ear-rings, is standing in grief![10] I think, O sinless one, that both those and myself of little understanding must have committed great sins in our former lives,[11] since, O Janārddana, all our relatives and kinsmen have thus been slain by king Yudhishthira the just! Our acts, righteous or unrighteous, cannot go for nothing, O thou of Vrishni's race![12]† Behold, O Mādhava, those young ladies

---

* The Bengal reading is slightly different.—T.

† *I. e.*, their fruits must have to be enjoyed or suffered.—T.

of beautiful bosoms and abdomen, well-born, possessed of modesty, having black eye-lashes and tresses of the same color on their heads, endued with voice sweet and dear like that of swans, are falling down, deprived of their senses by great grief and uttering piteous cries like flights of cranes![13-14] Behold, O lotus-eyed hero, their beatiful faces resembling-full-blown lotuses, are scorched by the sun![15] Alas, O Vāsudeva, the wives of my proud children possessed of prowess like that of infuriate elephants, are now exposed to the gaze of common people![16] Behold, O Govinda, the shields decked with hundred moons, the standards of solar effulgence, the golden coats of mail, and the collars and cuirasses made of gold,[17] and the head-gears, of my sons, scattered on the Earth, are blazing with splendour like sacrificial fires over which have been poured libations of clarified batter![18] There, Dusçāsana sleepeth, felled by Bhima, and the blood of all his limbs quaffed by that heroic slayer of foes![19] Behold that other son of mine, O Madhava, slain by Bhima with his mace, impelled by Draupadi and the recollection of his woes at the time of the match at dice![20] Addressing the dice-won princess of Pānchāla in the midst of the assembly, this Dusçāsana, desirous of doing what was agreeable to his (elder) brother as also to Karna, O Janārddana, had said,[21]—Thou art now the wife of a slave! With Sahadeva and Nakula and Arjuna, O lady, enter our household now![22]—On that occasion, O Krishna, I said unto king Duryodhana,—O son, cast off (from thy side) the wrathful Cakuni![23] Know that thy maternal uncle is of very wicked soul and exceedingly fond of quarrel! Casting him off without delay, make peace with the Pāndavas, O son![24] O thou of little intelligence, thinkest thou not of Bhimasena filled with wrath! Thou art piercing him with thy wordy shafts like a person striking an elephant with burning brands![25]—Alas, disregarding my words, he vomitted his wordy poison at them like a snake vomitting his poison at a bovine bull,—at them who had already been pierced with his wordy darts![26] There, that Dusçāsana sleepeth, stretching his two massive arms, slain by Bhimasena like a mighty elephant by a lion![27] The very wrathful Bhimasena

perpetrated a most horrible act by drinking in battle the blood of his foe!' "[13]

SECTION XIX.

"Gāndhāri said,—'There, O Mādhava, my son Vikarna, applauded by the wise, lieth on the bare ground, slain by Bhima and mangled horribly![1] Deprived of life, O slayer of Madhu, Vikarna lieth in the midst of (slain) elephants like the moon in the autumnal sky surrounded by blue clouds![2] His broad palm, cased in leathern fence, and scarred by constant wielding of the bow, is pierced with difficulty by vultures desirous of feeding upon it![3] His helpless young wife, O Mādhava, is continually endeavouring, without success, to drive away those vultures desirous of feeding on carrion![4] The youthful and brave and handsome Vikarna, O bull among men, brought up in luxury and deserving of every kind of weal, now sleepeth amid the dust, O Mādhava![5] Though all his vital parts have been pierced with cloth-yard shafts and bearded arrows and *nālikas*, yet that beauty of person which was his hath not forsaken this best of the Bharatas![6] There, my son Durmuksha, that slayer of large bands of foes, sleepeth, with face towards the enemy, slain by the heroic Bhimasena in observance of his vow![7] His face O Krishna, half eaten away by beasts of prey, looketh more handsome, O child, even like the moon on the seventh day of the lighted fortnight![8] Behold, O Krishna, the face of that heroic son of mine, which is even such! How could that son of mine be slain by foes and thus made to eat the dust?[9] O amiable one, how could that Durmukha, before whom no foe could stand, be slain by foes, O subjugator of celestial regions![10] Behold, O slayer of Madhu, that other son of Dhritarāshtra, viz., Chitrasena, slain and lying on the ground, that hero who was the model of all bowmen?[11] Those young ladies, afflicted with grief and uttering piteous cries, are now sitting, with beasts of prey, around his fair form adorned with wreaths and garlands![12] These loud wails of woe, uttered by women, and these cries and roars of beasts of prey,

seem exceedingly wonderful to me, O Krishna![13] Youthful and handsome, and always waited upon and served by the most beautiful ladies, my son Vivinçati, O Mādhava, sleepeth there, stained with dust![14] His armour hath been pierced with arrows. Slain in the midst of the carnage, alas, the heroic Vivingçati is now surrounded and waited upon by vultures![15] Having in battle penetrated the ranks of the Pāndava army, that hero now lieth on the bed of a hero,—on the bed, that is, of an exalted Kshatriya![16] Behold, O Krishna, his very beautiful face, with a smile playing on it, adorned with excellent nose and fair eyebrows, and resembling the resplendent Moon himself![17] Formerly a large number of the most beautiful ladies used to wait upon him, like thousands of celestial girls upon a sporting *Gandharva*![18] Who again could endure my son Dussaha, that slayer of heroic foes, that hero, that ornament of assemblies, that irresistible warrior, that resister of foes?[19] The body of Dussaha, covered with arrows, looks resplendent like a mountain overgrown with flowering *Karnikāras*.[20] With his garland of gold and his bright armour, Dussaha, though deprived of life, looks resplendent yet, like a white mountain or fire!'"[21]

Section XX.

"Gāndhāri said,—'He whose might and courage were regarded, O Keçava, as a one and half times superior to those of his sire and thee, he who resembled a fierce and proud lion,[1] he who, without a follower, alone pierced the impenetrable array of my son, he who proved to be the death of many, alas, he now sleepeth there, having himself succumbed to death![2] I see, O Krishna, the splendour of that son of Arjuna, of that hero of immeasurable energy, viz., Abhimanyu, hath not been dimmed even in death![3] There, the daughter of Virāta, the daughter-in-law of the wielder of *Gāndiva*, that girl of faultless beauty, overwhelmed with grief at sight of her heroic husband, is indulging in lamentations![4] That young wife, viz., the daughter of Virāta, approaching her lord, is gently rubbing him, O Krishna, with her hand![5] Formerly, that highly

intelligent and exceedingly beautiful girl, inebriated with honied wines, used bashfully to embrace her lord, and kiss the face of Subhadrā's son, that face which resembled a full-blown lotus and which was supported on a neck adorned with three lines like those of a conch-shell![6-7] Taking off her lord's golden coat of mail, O hero, that damsel is gazing now on the blood-dyed body of her spouse![8] Beholding her lord, O Krishna, that girl addresses thee and says,—O lotus-eyed one, this hero whose eyes resembled thine, hath been slain![9] In might and energy, and prowess also, he was thy equal, O sinless one! He resembled thee very much in beauty. Yet he sleeps on the ground, slain by the enemy![10]—Addressing her own lord, the damsel says again,—Thou wert brought up in every luxury! Thou usedst to sleep on soft skins of the *Ranku* deer! Alas, does not thy body feel pain today by lying thus on the bare ground?[11] Stretching thy massive arms adorned with golden *Angadas*, resembling a couple of elephant's trunks, and covered with skin hardened by frequent use of the bow, thou sleepest, O lord,[12] in peace, as if exhausted with the toil of too much exercise in the gymnasium! Alas, why dost thou not address me that am weeping so?[13] I do not remember to have ever offended thee! Why dost thou not speak to me then? Formerly, thou usedst to address me even when thou wouldst see me at a distance![14] O reverend sir, whither wilt thou go, leaving behind thee the much-respected Subhadrā, these thy sires that resemble the very celestials, and my own wretched self distracted with woe?[15]—Behold, O Krishna, gathering with her hands the blood-dyed locks of her lord and placing his head on her lap, the beautiful damsel is speaking to him as if he were alive,[16]—How couldst those great car-warriors slay thee in the midst of battle,—thee that art the sister's son of Vāsudeva and the son of the wielder of *Gāndiva*?[17] Alas, fie on those warriors of wicked deeds, viz., Kripa and Karna and Jayadratha and Drona and Drona's son, by whom thou wert deprived of life![18] What was the state of mind of those great car-warriors at that time when they surrounded thee, a warrior of tender years, and slew thee to my grief?[19] How couldst thou, O hero, who had so many

protectors, be slain so helplessly in the very sight of the Pāndavas and the Pānchālas?[20] Beholding thee, O hero, slain in battle by many persons united together, how is that tiger among men, that son of Pāndu, viz., thy sire, able to bear the burden of life?[21] Neither the acquisition of a vast kingdom, nor the defeat of their foes, conduces to the joy of the Pārthas bereft of thee, O lotus-eyed one![22] By the practice of virtue and self-restraint, I shall very soon repair to those regions of bliss which thou hast acquired by the use of weapons! Protect me, O hero, when I repair to those regions![23] When one's hour does not come, one cannot die, since, wretched that I am, I still draw breath after seeing thee slain in battle![24] Having repaired to the region of the *Pitris*, whom else, like me, dost thou address now, O tiger among men, in sweet words mingled with smiles?[25] Without doubt, thou wilt agitate the hearts of the *Apsarās* in heaven, with thy great beauty and thy soft words mingled with smiles![26] Having obtained the regions reserved for persons of righteous deeds, thou art now united, O son of Subhadrā, with the *Apsarās*! While sporting with them, recollect at times my good acts towards thee![27] Thy union with me in this world had, it seems, been ordained for only six months, for on the seventh, O hero, thou hast been bereft of life![28]—O Krishna, the ladies of the royal house of Matsya are dragging away the afflicted Uttarā, baffled of all her purposes, while lamenting in this strain![29] Those ladies, dragging away the afflicted Uttarā, themselves still more afflicted than that girl, are weeping and uttering loud wails at sight of the slain Virāta![30] Mangled with the weapons and shafts of Drona, prostrate on the ground, and covered with blood, Virāta is encompassed by screaming vultures and howling jackals and crowing ravens![31] Those black-eyed ladies, approaching the prostrate form of the Matsya king over which carnivorous birds are uttering cries of joy, are endeavouring to turn the body. Weakened by grief and exceedingly afflicted, they are unable to do what they intend![32] Scorched by the Sun, and worn out with exertion and toil, their faces have become colourless and pale![33] Behold also, O Mādhava, those other children, besides Abhimanyu,

viz., Uttara, Sudakshina the prince of the Kāmvojas, and the handsome Lakshmana, all lying on the field of battle!'"[84]

SECTION XXI.

"Gāndhāri said,—'There the mighty Karna, that great bowman, lieth on the ground! In battle he was like a blazing fire! That fire, however, hath now been extinguished by the energy of Pārtha![1] Behold, Vikartana's son Karna, after having slain many *Atirathas*, has been prostrated on the bare ground, and is drenched with blood![2] Wrathful and possessed of great energy, he was a great bowman and a mighty car-warrior! Slain in battle by the wielder of *Gāndiva*, that hero now sleepeth on the ground![3] My sons, those mighty car-warriors, from fear of the Pāndavas, fought, placing Karna at their head, like a herd of elephants with its leader to the fore![5] Alas, like a tiger slain by a lion, or an elephant by an infuriate elephant, that warrior hath been slain in battle by Savyasāchin![8] Assembled together, O tiger among men, the wives of that warrior, with dishevelled tresses and loud wails of grief, are sitting around that fallen hero![6] Filled with anxiety caused by the thoughts of that warrior, king Yudhishthira the just could not, for thirteen years, obtain a wink of sleep![7] Incapable of being checked by foes in battle like Maghavat himself who is invincible by enemies, Karna was like the all-destroying fire of fierce flames at the end of the *Yuga*, and immoveable like Himavat himself![8] That hero became the protector of Dhritarāshtra's son, O Mādhava! Alas, deprived of life, he now lieth on the bare ground, like a tree prostrated by the wind![9] Behold, the wife of Karna and mother of Vrishasena, is indulging in piteous lamentations and crying and weeping and falling upon the ground![10] Even now she exclaims,—Without doubt, thy preceptor's curse hath pursued thee! When the wheel of thy car was swallowed up by the Earth, the cruel Dhananjaya cut off thy head with an arrow![11] Alas, fie (on heroism and skill)!—That lady, the mother of Sushena, exceedingly afflicted and uttering cries of woe, is falling down, deprived of her senses, at the sight of the mighty-armed and brave Karna prostrated

on the Earth, with his waist still encircled with a belt of gold![12] Carnivorous creatures, feeding on the body of that illustrious hero, have reduced it to very small dimensions. The sight is not gladdening, like that of the moon on the fourteenth night of the dark-fortnight![13] Falling down on the Earth, the cheerless dame is rising up again. Burning with grief on account of the death of her son also, she cometh and smelleth the face of her lord!' "[14]

SECTION XXII.

"Gāndhāri said,—"Slain by Bhimasena, behold, the lord of Avanti lies there! Vultures and jackals and crows are feeding upon that hero! Though possessed of many friends, he lies now perfectly friendless![1] Behold, O slayer of Madhu, having made a great slaughter of foes, that warrior is now lying on the bed of a hero, covered with blood![2] Jackals, and *Kankas*, and other carnivorous creatures of diverse kinds, are dragging him now! Behold the reverses brought about by Time![3] His wives, assembled together, and crying in grief, are sitting around that hero who in life was a terrible slayer of foes but who now lies on the bed of a hero![4] Behold, Pratipa's son Vālhika, that mighty bowman possessed of great energy, slain with a broad-headed shaft, is now lying on the ground like a sleeping tiger![5] Though deprived of life, the color of his face is still exceedingly bright, like that of the moon at full, risen on the fifteenth day of the lighted fortnight![6] Burning with grief on account of the death of his son, and desirous of accomplishing his vow, Indra's son (Arjuna) hath slain there that son of Vriddhakshatra![7] Behold that Jayadratha, who was protected by the illustrious Drona, slain by Pārtha bent on accomplishing his vow, after penetrating through eleven *Akshauhinis* of troops![8] Inauspicious vultures, O Janārddana, are feeding upon Jayadratha, the lord of the Sindhu-Sauviras, full of pride and energy![9] Though sought to be protected by his devoted wives, see, O Achyuta, carnivorous creatures are dragging his body away to a jungle in the vicinity![10] The Kāmvoja and Yavana wives of that

mighty-armed lord of the Sindhus and the Sauviras are waiting upon him for protecting him (from the wild beasts).[11] At that time, O Janārddana, when Jayadratha, assisted by the Kekayas, endeavoured to ravish Draupadi, he deserved to be slain by the Pāndavas![12] From regard, however, for Dusçalā, they set him free on that occasion! Why, O Krishna, did they not show some regard for that Dusçalā once more![13] That daughter of mine, of tender years, is now crying in grief! She is striking her body with her own hands and censuring the Pāndavas![*14] What, O Krishna, can be a greater grief to me than that my daughter of tender years should be a widow and all my daughters-in-law should become lordless![15] Alas, alas, behold, my daughter Dusçalā, having cast off her grief and fears, is running hither and thither in search after the head of her husband![16] He who had checked all the Pāndavas desirous of rescuing their son, after causing the slaughter of a vast force, at last himself succumbed to death![17] Alas, those wives of his, with faces as beautiful as the moon, are carrying, sitting around that irresistible hero who resembled an infuriate elephant!'"[18]

Section XXIII.

"Gāndhāri said,—'There lies Calya, the maternal uncle himself of Nakula, slain in battle, O sire, by the pious and virtuous Yudhishthira![1] He used everywhere, O bull among men, to boast of his equality with thee! That mighty car-warrior, viz., the ruler of the Madras, now lieth, deprived of life![2] When he accepted the drivership of Karna's car in battle, he sought to damp the energy of Karna for giving victory to the sons of Pāndu![3] Alas, alas, behold the smooth face of Calya, beautiful as the moon, and adorned with eyes resembling the petals of the lotus, eaten away by crows![4] There, the tongue of that king, of the complexion of heated gold, lolling out of his mouth, is, O Krishna, being eaten away by carnivorous birds![5] The ladies of the royal house of Madra, uttering loud

---

* I adopt the Bombay reading of the second line.—T.

wails of woe, are sitting around the body of that king, that ornament of assemblies, deprived of life by Yudhishthira![6] Those ladies are sitting around that fallen hero like a herd of she-elephants in their season around their leader sunk in a slough.[7-8] Behold the brave Calya, that giver of protection, that foremost of car-warriors, stretched on the bed of heroes, his body mangled with shafts![9] There, king Bhagadatta of great prowess, the ruler of a mountainous kingdom, the foremost of all wielders of the elephant-hook, lieth on the ground, deprived of life![10] Behold the garland of gold that he still wears on his head, looketh resplendent! Though the body is being eaten away by beasts of prey, that garland still adorns the fair locks on his head![11] Fierce was the battle that took place between this king and Pārtha, making the very hair to stand on end, like that beteen Cakra and the *Asura* Vritra![12] This mighty-armed one, having fought Dhananjaya the son of Prithā, and having reduced him to great straits, was at last slain by his antagonist![13] He who had no equal on Earth in heroism and energy, that achiever of terrible feats in battle, viz., Bhishma, lieth there, deprived of life![14] Behold the son of Cāntanu, O Krishna, that warrior of solar effulgence, stretched on the Earth, like the Sun himself fallen from the firmament at the end of the *Yuga*![15] Having scorched his foes with the fire of his weapons in battle, that valiant warrior, that Sun among men, O Keçava, hath set like the real Sun at evening![16] Behold that hero, O Krishna, who in knowledge of duty was equal to Devāpi himself, now lying on a bed of arrows, so worthy of heroes![17] Having spread his excellent bed of barbed and unbarbed arrows, that hero lieth on it like the divine Skanda on a clump of heath![18] Indeed, the son of Gangā lieth, resting his head on that excellent pillow, consisting of three arrows,—becoming complement of his bed,—given him by the wielder of *Gāndiva*![19] For obeying the command of his sire, this illustrious one drew up his vital seed. Unrivalled in battle, that son of Cāntanu lieth there, O Mādhava![20] Of righteous soul and acquainted with every duty, by the aid of his knowledge relating to both the worlds, that hero, though mortal, is still bearing his life like an im-

mortal![21] When Cāntanu's son lieth today, struck down with arrows, it seems that no other person is alive on Earth that possesseth learning and prowess and that is competent to achieve great feats in battle![22] Truthful in speech, this righteous and virtuous hero, solicited by the Pāndavas, told them the means of his own death![23] Alas, he who had revived the line of Kuru that had become extinct, that illustrious person possessed of great intelligence, hath left the world with all the Kurus in his company![24] Of whom, O Mādhava, will the Kurus enquire of religion and duty after that bull among men, viz., Devavrata, who resembles a god, shall have gone to heaven?[25] Behold Drona, that foremost of Brāhmanas, that preceptor of Arjuna, of Sātyaki, and of the Kurus, lying on the ground![26] Endued with mighty energy, Drona, O Mādhava, was as conversant with the four kinds of arms as the chief of the celestials or Cukra of Bhrigu's race![27] Through his grace, Vibhatsu the son of Pāndu hath achieved the most difficult feats! Deprived of life, he now lies on the ground! Weapons refused to come (at last) at his bidding![28] Placing him at their head, the Kauravas had challenged the Pāndavas. That foremost of all wielders of weapons was at last mangled with weapons![29] As he careered in battle, scorching his foes in every direction, his course resembled that of a blazing conflagration. Alas, deprived of life, he now lies on the ground, like an extinguished fire![30] The handle of the bow is yet in his grasp. The leathern fences, O Mādhava, still encase his fingers. Though slain, he still looketh as if alive![31] The four Vedas, and all kinds of weapons, O Keçava, did not abandon that hero even as these do not abandon the Lord Prajāpati himself.[32] His auspicious feet, deserving of every adoration and adored as a matter of fact by bards and eulogists, and worshipped by disciples, are now being dragged by jackals![33] Deprived of her senses by grief, Kripi wofully attendeth, O slayer of Madhu, on that Drona who hath been slain by Drupada's son![34] Behold that afflicted lady, fallen upon the Earth, with dishevelled hair and face hanging down Alas, she attendeth in sorrow upon her lifeless lord, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, lying on the ground![35] Many

Brahmachārins, with matted locks on their head, are attending upon the body of Drona that is cased in armour rent through and through, O Keçava, with the shafts of Dhrishtadyumna![36] The illustrious and delicate Kripi, cheerless and afflicted, is endeavouring to perform the last rites on the body of her lord slain in battle![37] There, those reciters of *Sāmans*, having placed the body of Drona on the funeral pyre and having ignited the fire with due rites, are singing the three (well-known) *Sāmans*![38] Those *Brahmachārins*, with matted locks on their heads, have piled the funeral pyre of that Brāhmana with bows and darts and car-boxes, O Mādhava![39] Having collected diverse other kinds of shafts, that hero of great energy is being consumed by them! Indeed, having placed him on the pyre, they are singing and weeping.[40] Others are reciting the three (well-known) *Sāmans* that are used on such occasions. Consuming Drona on that fire, like fire in fire,[41] those disciples of his, of the regenerate class, are proceeding towards the banks of Gangā, along the left side of the pyre and having placed Kripi at their head!'"[42]

SECTION XXIV.

"Gāndhāri said,—'Behold the son of Somadatta, who was slain by Yuyudhāna, pecked at and torn by a large number of birds![1] Burning with grief at the death of his son, Somadatta, O Janārddana, (as he lies there) seems to censure the great bowman Yuyudhāna![2] There the mother of Bhuriçravas, that faultless lady, overcome with grief, is addressing her lord Somadatta, saying,[3]—By good luck, O king, thou seest not this terrible carnage of the Bharatas, this extermination of the Kurus, this sight that resembles the scenes occurring at the end of the *Yuga*![4] By good luck, thou seest not thy heroic son, who bore the device of the sacrificial stake on his banner and who performed numerous sacrifices with profuse presents to all, slain on the the field of battle![5] By good luck, thou hearest not those frightful wails of woe uttered amidst this carnage by thy daughters-in-law like the screams of a flight of cranes on the bosom of the sea![6] Thy daughters-in-law, bereaved of both husbands and sons, are

running hither and thither, each clad in a single piece of raiment and each with her black tresses all dishevelled![7] By good luck, thou seest not thy son, that tiger among men, deprived of one of his arms, overthrown by Arjuna, and even now in course of being devoured by beasts of prey![8] By good luck, thou seest not today thy son Cala slain in battle, and Bhuriçravas deprived of life, and thy widowed daughters-in-law plunged into grief![9] By good luck, thou seest not the golden umbrella of that illustrious warrior who had the sacrificial stake for the device on his banner, torn and broken on the terrace of his car![10] There the black-eyed wives of Bhuriçravas are indulging in piteous lamentations, surrounding their lord slain by Sātyaki![11] Afflicted with grief on account of the slaughter of their lord, those ladies, indulging in copious lamentations, are falling down on the Earth with their faces towards the ground, and slowly approaching thee, O Keçava![12] —Alas, why did Arjuna of pure deeds perpetrate such a censurable act, since he struck off the arm of a heedless warrior who was brave and devoted to the performance of sacrifices![13] Alas, Sātyaki did an act that was still more sinful, for he took the life of a person of restrained soul while sitting in the observance of the *prāya* vow![14] Alas, O righteous one, thou liest on the ground, slain unfairly by two foes!—Even thus, O Mādhava, those wives of Bhuriçravas are crying aloud in woe![15] There, those wives of that warrior, all possessed of slender waists, are placing upon their laps the lopped off arm of their lord and weeping bitterly![16]—Here is that arm which used to invade the girdles, grind the deep bosoms, and touch the navel, the thighs, and the hips, of fair women, and loosen the ties of the drawers worn by them![17] Here is that arm which slew foes and dispelled the fears of friends, which gave thousands of kine and exterminated Kshatriyas in battle![18] In the presence of Vāsudeva himself, Arjuna of unstained deeds lopped it off thy heedless self while thou wert engaged with another in battle![19] What, indeed, wilt thou, O Janārddana, say of this great feat of Arjuna while speaking of it in the midst of assemblies! What also will the diadem decked Arjuna himself say of it?[20]—Censuring thee

in this way, that foremost of ladies hath stopped at last! The co-wives of that lady are piteously lamenting with her as if she were their daughter-in-law![21]

"'There the mighty Cakuni, the chief of the Gāndhāras, of prowess incapable of being baffled, hath been slain by Sahadeva, the maternal uncle by the sister's son![22] Formerly, he used to be fanned with a couple of gold-handed fans! Alas, now, his prostrate form is being fanned by birds with their swings![23] He used to assume hundreds and thousands of forms. All the illusions, however, of that individual possessed of great deceptive powers, have been burnt by the energy of the son of Pāndu![24] An expert in guile, he had vanquished Yudhishthira in the assembly by his powers of deception and won from him his vast kingdom! The son of Pāndu, however, hath now won Cakuni's life-breaths![25] Behold, O Krishna, a large number of birds is now sitting around Cakuni! An expert in dice, alas, he had acquired that skill for the destruction of my sons![26] This fire of hostility with the Pāndavas had been ignited by Cakuni, for the destruction of my children as also of himself and his followers and kinsmen![27] Like those acquired by my sons, O puissant one, by the use of weapons, this one too, however wicked-souled, has acquired many regions of bliss by the use of weapons![28] My fear, O slayer of Madhu, is that that crooked person may not succeed in fomenting dissensions even there between my children all of whom are confiding and possessed of candour!'"[29]

Section XXV.

"Gāndhāri said,—'Behold that irresistible ruler of the Kāmvojas, that bull-necked hero, lying amid the dust, O Mādhava, though deserving of being stretched at his ease on Kāmvoja blankets![1] Stricken with great grief, his wife is weeping bitterly at sight of his blood-stained arms, which, however, formerly used to be smeared with sandal-paste![2] Indeed, the beauteous one exclaims,—Even now adorned with beautiful palms and graceful fingers, these two arms of thine resemble a couple of spiked maces, getting within whose clasp

joy never left me for a moment![3] What will be my end, O ruler of men, when I am deprived of thee!—Endued with a melodious voice, the Kāmvoja queen is weeping helplessly and quivering with emotion![4] Behold that bevy of fair ladies there! Although tired with exertion and worn out with heat, yet beauty leaves not their forms like the sightliness of the wreaths worn by the celestials although exposed to the Sun![5] Behold, O slayer of Madhu, the heroic ruler of the Kalingas lying there on the ground, with his mighty arms adorned with a couple of *Angadas*![6] Behold, O Janārddana, those Māgadha ladies crying and standing around Jayatsena the ruler of the Magadhas![7] The charming and melodious wails of those long-eyed and sweet-voiced girls, O Krishna, are stupifying my heart exceedingly![8] With all their ornaments displaced, crying, and afflicted with grief, alas, those ladies of Magadha, worthy of resting on costly beds, are now lying down on the bare ground![9] There, again, those other ladies, surrounding their lord, the ruler of the Koçalas, viz., prince Vrihadvala, are indulging in loud wails![10] Engaged in plucking from his body the shafts with which it was pierced by Abhimanyu with the full might of his arms, those ladies are repeatedly losing their senses![11] The faces of those beautiful ladies, O Mādhava, through toil and the rays of the Sun, are looking like faded lotuses![12] There, the brave sons of Dhrishtadyumna, of tender years and all adorned with garlands of gold and beautiful *Angadas*, are lying, slain by Drona![13] Like insects on a blazing fire, they have all been burnt by falling upon Drona whose car was the chamber of fire, having the bow for its flames and shafts and darts and maces for its fuel![14] Similarly, the five Kekaya brothers, possessed of great courage, and adorned with beautiful *Angadas*, are lying on the ground, slain by Drona and with their faces turned towards that hero![15] Their coats of mail, of the splendour of heated gold, and their tall standards and cars and garlands all made of the same metal, are shedding a bright light on the Earth like so many blazing fires![16] Behold, O Mādhava, king Drupada overthrown in battle by Drona, like a mighty elephant in the forest slain by a huge lion![17] The bright umbrella, white in

hue, of the king of the Pānchālas, shines, O lotus-eyed one, like the moon in the autumnal firmament![18] The daughters-in-law and the wives of the old king, afflicted with grief, having burnt his body on the funeral pyre, are proceeding, keeping the pyre to their right![19] There, those ladies, deprived of their senses, are removing the brave and great bowman, viz., Dhrishtaketu, that bull among the Chedis, slain by Drona![20] This crusher of foes, O slayer of Madhu, this great bowman having baffled many weapons of Drona, lieth there, deprived of life, like a tree uprooted by the wind![21] Alas, that brave ruler of the Chedis, that mighty car-warrior, viz., Dhrishtaketu, after having slain thousands of foes, lies, himself deprived of life![22] There, O Hrishikeça, the wives of the ruler of the Chedis are sitting around his body still decked with fair locks and beautiful ear-rings, though torn by carnivorous birds![23] Those foremost of ladies, placing upon their laps the prostrate form of the heroic Dhrishtaketu born of the Dāçārha race, are crying in sorrow![24] Behold, O Hrishikeça, the son, possessed of fair locks and excellent ear-rings, of that Dhrishtaketu, hacked in battle by Drona with his shafts![25] He never deserted his sire while the latter battled with his foes! Mark, O slayer of Madhu, he does not, even in death, desert that heroic parent![26] Even thus, my son's son, that slayer of hostile heroes, viz., the mighty-armed Lakshmana, hath followed his sire Duryodhana![27] Behold, O Kecava, the two brothers of Avanti, viz., Vinda and Anuvinda, lying there on the field, like two blossoming *Çāla* trees in the spring overthrown by the tempest![28] Clad in golden armour and adorned with *Angadas* of gold, they are still armed with swords and bows! Possessed of eyes like those of a bull, and decked with bright garlands, both of them are stretched on the field![29] The Pāndavas, O Krishna, with thyself, are surely unslayable, since they and thou have escaped from Drona and Bhishma, from Karna the son of Vikartana, from Kripa,[30] from Duryodhana, from the son of Drona, from the mighty car-warrior Jayadratha, from Somadatta, from Vikarna, and from the brave Kritavarman![31] Behold the reverses brought about by Time! Those bulls among men that were capable of slaying the very celes-

tials by force of their weapons, have themselves been slain![82] Without doubt, O Mādhava, there is nothing difficult for destiny to bring about, since even these bulls among men, these heroes, have been slain by Kshatriya warriors![83] My sons endued with great activity were (regarded by me as) slain even then, O Krishna, when thou returnedst unsuccessfully to Upaplavya![84] Cāntanu's son and the wise Vidura told me then,—Cease to bear affection for thy children!—[85]The interviews of those persons could not go for nothing. Soon, O Janārddana, have my sons been consumed into ashes!'"[86]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having said these words, Gāndhāri, deprived of her senses by grief, fell down on the Earth! Casting off her fortitude, she suffered her senses to be stupified by grief![87] Filled with wrath and with sorrow at the death of her sons, Gāndhāri, with agitated heart, ascribed every fault to Keçava.[88]

"Gāndhāri said,—'The Pāndavas and the Dhārtarāshtras, O Krishna, have both been burnt! Whilst they were thus being exterminated, O Janārddana, why wert thou indifferent to them?[89] Thou wert competent to prevent the slaughter, for thou hast a large number of followers and a vast force! Thou hadst eloquence, and thou hadst the power (for bringing about peace)![90] Since deliberately, O slayer of Madhu, thou wert indifferent to this universal carnage, therefore, O mighty-armed one, thou shouldst reap the fruit of this act![91] By the little merit I have acquired through waiting dutifully on my husband, by that merit so difficult to attain, I shall curse thee, O wielder of the discus and the mace![92] Since thou wert indifferent to the Kurus and the Pāndavas whilst they slew each other, therefore O Govinda, thou shalt be the slayer of thy own kinsmen![93] On the thirtysixth year from this, O slayer of Madhu, thou shalt, after causing the slaughter of thy kinsmen and friends and sons, perish by disgustful means within the wilderness![94] The ladies of thy race, deprived of sons, kinsmen, and friends, shall weep and cry even as these ladies of the Bharata race!'"[95]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words, the high-souled Vāsudeva, addressing the venerable Gāndhāri, said un-

to her these words, with a faint smile,[46]—'There is none in the world, save myself, that is capable of exterminating the Vrishnis! I know this well! I am endeavouring to bring it about! In denouncing this curse, O thou of excellent vows, thou hast aided me in the accomplishment of that task![47] The Vrishnis are incapable of being slain by others, be they human beings or gods or *Dānavas!* The Yādavas, therefore, shall fall by one another's hand!'[48] After he of Daçārha's race had said these words, the Pāndavas became stupified. Filled with anxiety, all of them became hopeless of life!'"[49]

Section XXVI.

"The holy one said,—'Arise, arise, O Gāndhāri, do not set thy heart on grief! Through thy fault, this vast carnage has taken place![1] Thy son Duryodhana was wicked-souled, envious, and exceedingly arrogant. Applauding his wicked acts, thou regardest them to be good![2] Exceedingly cruel, he was the embodiment of hostilities, and disobedient to the injunctions of the old. Why dost thou wish to ascribe thy own faults to me?[3] Dead or lost, the person that grieves for what has already occurred, obtaineth more grief. By indulging in grief, one increases it twofold![4] A woman of the regenerate class bears children for the practice of austerities; the cow brings forth offspring for bearing burthens; the mare brings forth her young for acquiring speed of motion; the *Çudrā* woman bears a child for adding to the number of servitors; the *Vaiçayā* woman for adding to the number of keepers of cattle. A princess, however, like thee, brings forth sons for being slaughtered!'"[5]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing these words of Vāsudeva that were disagreeable to her, Gāndhāri, with heart exceedingly agitated by grief, remained silent.[6] The royal sage Dhritarāshtra, however, restraining the grief that arises from folly, enquired of Yudhishthira the just, saying,[7]—'If, O son of Pāndu, thou knowest it, tell me the number of those that have fallen in this battle, as also of those that have escaped with life!'[8]

"Yudhishthira answered,—'One billion six hundred and sixty millions and twenty thousand men have fallen in this battle.[9] Of the heroes that have escaped, the number is twenty-four thousand one hundred and sixty five.'[10]

Dhritarāshtra said,—'Tell me, O mighty-armed one, for thou art conversant with everything, to what ends have those foremost of men attained.'[11]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Those warriors of true prowess that have cheerfully cast off their bodies in fierce battle, have all attained to regions like those of Indra.[12] Knowing death to be inevitable, they that have encountered it cheerlessly, have attained to the companionship of the *Gandharvas*.[13] Those warriors that have fallen at the edge of weapons, while turning away from the field or begging for quarter, have attained to the world of the *Guhyakas*.[14] Those high-souled warriors who, observant of the duties of Kshatriyahood and regarding flight from battle to be shameful, have fallen, mangled with keen weapons, while advancing unarmed against fighting foes, have all assumed bright forms and attained to the regions of Brahman![15-16] The remaining warriors, that have anyhow met with death on the precincts of the field of battle, have attained to the region of the Uttara-Kurus.'[17]

Dhritarāshtra said,—'By the power of what knowledge, O son, thou seest these things like one crowned with ascetic success? Tell me this, O mighty-armed one, if thou thinkest that I can listen to it without impropriety!'[18]

"Yudhishthira said,—'While at thy command I wandered in the forest, I obtained this boon on the occasion of sojourning to the sacred places![19] I met with the celestial *Rishi* Lomaça and obtained from him the boon of spiritual vision. Thus on a former occasion I obtained second sight through the power of knowledge!'[20]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Is it necessary that our people should burn, with due rites, the bodies of both the friendless and the friended slain?[21] What shall we do with those that have none to look after them and that have no sacred fires? The duties that await us are many. Who are these whose (last) rites we should perform?[22] O Yudhishthira, will they obtain

regions of blessedness by the merit of their acts, they whose bodies are now being torn and dragged by vultures and other birds?'"[23]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed, Kunti's son Yudhishthira of great wisdom commanded Sudharman (the priest of the Kauravas) and Dhaumya, and Sanjaya of the *Suta* order,[24] and Vidura of great wisdom, and Yuyutsu of Kuru's race, and all his servants headed by Indrasena, and all the other *Sutas* that were with him,[25] saying,—'Cause the funeral rites of the slain, numbering by thousands, to be duly performed, so that no body may perish for want of persons to take care of them!'[26] At this command of king Yudhishthira the just, Vidura and Sanjaya and Sudharman and Dhaumya and Indrasena and others,[27] procuring sandal aloe and other kinds of wood used on such occasions, as also clarified butter and oil and perfumes and costly silken robes and other kinds of cloth,[28] and large heaps of dry wood, and broken cars and diverse kinds of weapons,[29] caused funeral pyres to be duly made and lighted and then without haste burnt, with due rites, the slain kings in proper order.[30] They properly burnt upon those fires that blazed forth with libations of clarified butter poured in torrents over them, the bodies of Duryodhana and his hundred brothers, of Calya, and Cala, and king Bhuriçravas;[31] of king Jayadratha and Abhimanyu, O Bhārata; of Dusçāsana's son and Lakshmana and king Dhrishtaketu; of Vrihanta and Somadatta and the hundreds of Srinjayas; of king Kshemadhanwan and Virāta and Drupada; of Cikhandin the prince of the Pānchālas, and Dhrishtadyumna of Prishata's race; of the valiant Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas; of the ruler of the Koçalas, the sons of Draupadi, and Cakuni the son of Suvala; of Achala and Vrishaka, and king Bhagadatta; of Karna and his son of great wrath; of those great bowmen, viz., the Kekaya princes, and those mighty car-warriors, viz., the Trigartas; of Ghatotkacha the prince of *Rākshasas*, and the brother of Vaka; of Alamvusha, that foremost of *Rākshasas*, and king Jalasandha; and of hundreds and thousands of other kings.[32-33] The *Pitri-medha* rites in honor of some of the illustrious dead were performed there, while some

sang *Sāmans*, and some uttered lamentations for the dead.[39] With the loud noise of *Sāmans* and *Richs*, and the lamentations of the women, all creatures became stupified that night.[40] The funeral fires, smokeless and blazing brightly (amid the surrounding darkness), looked like luminous planets in the firmament enveloped by clouds.[41] Those among the dead that had come from diverse realms and were utterly friendless, were piled together in thousands of heaps and, at the command of Yudhishthira, were caused to be burnt by Vidura through a large number of persons acting coolly and influenced by goodwill and affection, on pyres made of dry wood.[42-43] Having caused their last rites to be performed, the Kuru king Yudhishthira, placing Dhritarāshtra at his head, proceeded towards the river Gangā."[44]

Section XXVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Arrived at the auspicious Gangā full of sacred water, containing many lakes, adorned with high banks and broad shores, and having a vast bed, they cast off their ornaments, upper garments, and belts and girdles. The Kuru ladies, crying and afflicted with great grief, offered oblations of water unto their sires and grandsons and brothers and kinsmen and sons and reverend seniors and husbands. Conversant with duties, they also performed the water-rite in honor of their friends.[1-3] While those wives of heroes were performing this rite in honor of their heroic lords, the access to the stream became easy, although the paths (made by the tread of many feet) disappeared afterwards.[4*] The shores of the stream, though crowded with those spouses of heroes, looked as broad as the ocean and presented a spectacle of sorrow and cheerlessness.[5] Then Kunti, O king, in a sudden paroxysm of grief, weepingly addressed her sons in these soft words:[6]—'That hero and great bowman, that leader of leaders of car-divisions, that warrior distinguished by every mark of heroism, who hath been slain by Arjuna in battle,[7] that warrior whom, ye sons of Pāndu, ye took for a *Suta's* child born of Rādhā, that hero who shone in the midst of his forces like the lord Surya himself,[8] who battled with all of you and your followers, who

looked resplendent as he commanded the vast force of Duryodhana,[9] who had no equal on Earth for energy, that hero who preferred glory to life,[10] that unretiring warrior firm in truth and never fatigued with exertion, was your eldest brother! Offer oblations of water unto that eldest brother of yours who was born of me by the god of day! That hero was born with a pair of ear-rings and clad in armour, and resembled Surya himself in splendour!'[11-13] Hearing these painful words of their mother, the Pāndavas began to express their grief for Karna. Indeed, they became more afflicted than ever.[13] Then that tiger among men, viz., the heroic Yudhishthira, sighing like a snake, asked his mother,—'That Karna who was like an ocean having shafts for his billows, his tall standard for his vortex,[14] his own mighty arms for a couple of huge alligators, his large car for his deep lake, and the sound of his palms for his tempestous roar, and whose impetuousity none could withstand save Dhananjaya, O mother, wert thou the authoress of that hero's being? How was that son, resembling a very celestial, born of thee in former days?[15-16] The energy of his arms scorched all of us! How, O mother, couldst thou conceal him like a person concealing a fire within the folds of his cloth?[17] His might of arms was always worshipped by the Dhārtarāshtras even as we always worship the might of the wielder of *Gāndiva!*[18] How was that foremost of mighty men, that first of car-warriors, who endured the united force of all lords of Earth in battle, how was he a son of thine?[19] Was that foremost of all wielders of weapons our eldest brother? How didst thou bring forth that child of wonderful prowess?[20] Alas, in consequence of the concealment of this affair by thee, we have been undone! By the death of Karna, ourselves with all our friends have been exceedingly afflicted![21] The grief I feel at Karna's death is a hundred times greater than that which was caused by the death of Abhimanyu and the sons of Draupadi, and the destruction of the Pānchālas and the Kurus! Thinking of Karna, I am burning with grief,

* So large was that concourse of human beings that in consequence of their tread, paths appeared where paths were none. The access to the stream was thus facilitated.—T.

like a person thrown into a blazing fire![22-23] Nothing could have been unattainable by us, not excepting things belonging to heaven! Alas, this terrible carnage, so destructive of the Kurus, would not have occurred!"[24] Copiously indulging in lamentations like these, king Yudhishthira the just uttered loud wails of woe. The puissant monarch then offered oblations of water unto his deceased elder brother.[25] Then all the ladies that crowded the shores of the river suddenly sent up a loud wail of grief.[26] The intelligent king of the Kurus, viz., Yudhishthira, caused the wives and members of Karna's family to be brought before him.[27] Of righteous soul, he performed, with them, the water-rite in honor of his eldest brother. Having finished the ceremony, the king, with his senses exceedingly agitated, rose from the waters of Gangā."[28]

FINIS STREE PARVA.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

PRATĀPA CHANDRA RĀY, C. I. E.

ÇANTI PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHĀRATA PRESS.

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

1890.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

NOTICE.

Of the Eighteen books of which the great Epic of Vyāsa consists, the translation of Eleven books has been completed. The portion that remains represents a little less than a third or a little more than a fourth. Gigantic as the undertaking had appeared to me at the commencement, I was sustained by the hope that the liberality of the Government and the Princes and Chiefs with the Raises and people of India would be sufficient to carry me through it. I cannot say that my expectations in this respect have been falsified. From the Government, as represented by its highest Officials, I have received nothing but uniform kindness and encouragement. The subordinate Officers also have given me every help. To the Princes and Chiefs of India my obligations are every great. The Raises and people also of my country have not entirely abandoned me. The Editors also of the Indian Newspapers have favored me with their active aid and sympathy. It is scarcely necessary for me to say that but for the sympathetic aid obtained from all these quarters I could never have succeeded in doing what I have done.

Grateful, therefore, as I am for this aid obtained from various quarters and for the sympathy and encouragement I have received from Oriental scholars of repute in almost every part of the world, I regret to state that the little success I have been able to achieve has excited the jealousy and envy of some of my own countrymen who, from their culture and pursuits and the sentiments of patriotism with which they are generally credited, were the very last persons that could be expected to stand aloof from a work of this kind, or contemplate it with feelings of dissatisfaction, or offer active opposition to its prosecution and progress. Fortunately their number is small, and their malice, in its impotence, occasionally displays itself in newspaper paragraphs and letters teeming with deliberate misrepresentations and false insinuations, and the value of which is on a par with that of their more pretentious criticisms of the polity under which they live. No country in the world is

perfectly destitute of the exhibition of success, however silently and painfully achieved, being pursued by malignity, but I regret to say that notwithstanding the tall talk in which we often indulge about our own virtues, Bengal has an unenviable distinction in that respect.

The total of the Government grants, representing the value, at the full rate, of 275 copies of the work that have to be supplied in return, is Rs. 17,500. Excluding the small amount of subscriptions at the full and the lower rates, the total of the contributions, representing in part the value at the full rate of a good number of copies supplied in return, has been Rs. 47,825. It should be stated, however, that in obtaining those contributions, more than a third thereof was swallowed up in the travelling charges and pay of agents retained for the purpose. The work having attracted more attention than was anticipated, in both Europe and America, the number of copies have had to be increased twice, so that in reprinting the back numbers of several fascicules a considerable outlay has been incurred. Economy, however, being the soul of every arrangement of the "Dātavya Bhārata Kāryālaya" except in those respects where economy is not practicable or where its adoption would interfere with efficiency, I have been able with the limited resources at my disposal to achieve so much of the work.

It is scarcely necessary at this late decade of the Nineteenth century to vindicate the importance of a translation into English of a work like the "Mahābhārata." The "Mahābhārata" is pre-eminently the encyclopedia of the heroic age of the Hindus. Besides being a repertory of innumerable legends more or less based on facts, it derives its importance from another respect. As an epic, it may or may not, in the judgment o European scholars, rank equally with the *Iliad.* The value, however, of the legends with which it teems to the historian o ancient manners and customs is beyond measure. But apart from all this, the "Mahābhārata," from beginning to end, is interspersed with weighty discourses reflecting every system of philosophical opinion. All that is contained in the Upanishads, all that occurs in the innumerable treatises bearing upon the several professed systems of Hindu philosophy, all shades of opinion on every controverted topic of religion,

morals, and duty, may be found in some shape or other in those discourses. The twelfth book, called *Cānti*, in especial, has this characteristic. The "Rāmāyana," whatever its beauty as a poem, is, on this account, inferior to the "Mahābhārata." It may be more Homeric in chastity and simplicity of diction, but in grandeur of conception and imagery, in historical value as a repertory of legends and a cyclopedia of philosophical opinions, there cannot be any comparison between it and the "Mahābhārata."

As already said, a little more than a fourth of my self-imposed task remains to be accomplished. The sum necessary for the purpose is not much. Besides what may be expected in subscriptions at the full and the lower rates, an amount of Rupees twentyfive to thirty thousand may be sufficient for completing the task. I can scarcely think that they who have so generously supported me hitherto will abandon me at this stage of the work. Having struggled with many difficulties,—difficulties which I could never have hoped to vanquish or even combat with,—I have arrived within sight of the end. The figure which the Sanskrit poet employed while beginning his grand poem called "Raghuvança," applies with a peculiar fitness to my case while commencing the English translation of the "Mahābhārata." I was really like a man setting himself to the task of crossing the shoreless Ocean on a poor raft, disregarding wind and wave. Almost mad as the enterprise was, under the fostering care of Providence I have succeeded in nearing the other shore. Shall He abandon me now when He has brought me so far? The port is crowded with generous spectators all of whom may mark my feeble movements and exhausted condition. Is it possible that all of them will turn away from the sight? Will they not throw down a chord for dragging me in? Experience justifies me in hoping that I will not be abandoned and suffered to sink so near the shore.

Calcutta,
September 15, 1890.

PRATAPA CHANDRA ROY, C. I. E.

THE MAHABHARATA

CĀNTI PARVA.

SECTION I.

(*Rājadharmānuçāsana Parva.*)

Having bowed down unto Nārāyana, and Nara the foremost of male beings, and unto the goddess Saraswati, must the word Jaya be uttered.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having offered oblations of water unto all their friends and kinsmen, the sons of Pāndu, and Vidura, and Dhritarāshtra, and all the Bharata ladies,[1] continued to dwell there (on the banks of the sacred stream). The high-souled sons of Pāndu desired to pass the period of mourning,* which extended for a month, outside the Kuru city.[2] After king Yudhishthira the just had performed the water-rites, many high-souled sages crowned with ascetic success and many foremost of regenerate *Rishis* came there to see the monarch.[3] Among them were the Island-born (Vyāsa), and Nārada, and the great *Rishi* Devala, and Devasthāna, and Kanwa. They were all accompanied by best of their pupils.[4] Many other members of the regenerate order, possessed of wisdom and accomplished in the Vedas, leading lives of domesticity or belonging to the *Snātaka* class, came to behold the Kuru king.[5] Those high-souled ones, as they came, were duly worshipped (by Yudhishthira). The great *Rishis* then took their seats on costly carpets.[6] Accepting the worship suited to that period (of mourning and impurity) that was offered them, they sat in due order around the king.[7] Thousands of Brāhmanas offered consolation and comfort to that king of kings residing on the sacred banks of the Bhāgirathi with heart exceedingly

* Literally, the period of impurity. The period of mourning is the period of impurity, according to the Hindu scriptures. By performing the *Cràddha* rite, one becomes pure again. Till then one can perform no religious rites.—T.

agitated by grief.[8] Then Nārada, after having accosted the *Rishis* with the Island-born for their first, in due time, addressed Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, saying,[9]—'Through the might of thy arms and the grace of Mādhava, the whole Earth, O Yudhishthira, hath been righteously won by thee![10] By good luck, thou hast escaped with life from this dreadful battle! Observant as thou art of the duties of a Kshatriya, dost thou not rejoice, O son of Pāndu?[11] Having slain all thy foes, shalt thou not gratify thy friends, O king? Having obtained this prosperity, I hope, grief doth not afflict thee still?'[12]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Indeed, the whole Earth hath been subjugated by me through my reliance on the might of Krishna's arms, through the grace of the Brāhmanas, and through the strength of Bhima and Arjuna![13] This heavy grief, however, is always sitting in my heart, viz., that through covetousness I have caused this dreadful carnage of kinsmen! Having caused the death of the dear son of Subhadrā, and of the sons of Draupadi, this victory, O holy one, appears to me in the light of a defeat![14-15] What will Subhadrā of Vrishni's race, that sister-in-law of mine, say unto me? What also will the people residing in Dwārakā say unto the slayer of Madhu when he goes thither from this place?[16] This Draupadi, again, who is ever engaged in doing what is agreeable to us, bereaved of sons and kinsmen, is paining me exceedingly![17] This is another topic, O holy Nārada, about which I will speak to thee! In consequence of Kunti having kept her counsels close in respect of a very important matter, great has been my grief![18] That hero who had the strength of ten thousand elephants, who in this world was an unrivalled car-warrior, who was possessed of leonine pride and gait, who was endued with great intelligence and compassion, whose liberality was very great, who practised many high vows,[19] who was the refuge of the Dhārtarāshtras, who was sensitive about his honor, whose prowess was irresistible, who was ready to pay off all injuries and was always wrathful (in battle), who overthrew us in repeated encounters,[20] who was quick in the use of weapons, conversant with every mode of warfare, possessed of great skill, and endued with wonderful valour, (that Karna) was a son of

Kunti, born secretly of her, and therefore a uterine brother of ours![21] Whilst we were offering oblations of water unto the dead, Kunti spoke of him as the son of Surya. Possessed of every virtue, that child had been cast into the water.[22] Having placed him in a basket made of light materials, Kunti committed him to the current of Gangā. He who was regarded by the world as a *Suta's* child born of Rādhā,[23] was really the eldest son of Kunti and, therefore, our uterine brother! Covetous of kingdom, alas, I have unwittingly caused that brother of mine to be slain! It is this that is burning my limbs like a fire burning a heap of cotton![24] The white-steeded Arjuna know him not for a brother! Neither I, nor Bhima, nor the twins, knew him for such! He, however, of excellent bow knew us (for his brothers).[25] We have heard that on one occasion Prithā went to him for seeking our good and addressed him, saying,—Thou art my son![26]—That illustrious hero, however, refused to obey Prithā's wishes. Subsequently, we are informed, he said unto his mother these words:[27]—I am unable to desert Duryodhana in battle! If I do so, it would be a dishonorable, cruel, and ungrateful act![28] If, yielding to thy wishes, I make peace with Yudhishthira, people will say that I am afraid of the white-steeded Arjuna![29] Having vanquished Arjuna with Keçava, therefore, in battle, I will subsequently make peace with Dharma's son!—Even these were his words as we have heard.[30] Thus answered, Prithā once more addressed her son of broad chest and said,—Fight Phālguna then, but spare my four other sons![31]—The intelligent Karna, with joined-hands, then replied unto his trembling mother, saying,—If I get thy four other sons even under my power, I will not slay them![32] Without doubt, O goddess, thou shalt continue to have five sons! If Karna be slain with Arjuna thou shalt have five! If, on the other hand, Arjuna be slain, thou shalt have five, numbering me![33]—Desirous of the good of her children, his mother once more said unto him,—Go, O Karna, do good unto those brothers of thine whose good thou always seekest![34]—Having said these words, Prithā took his leave and came back to her abode. That hero has been slain by Arjuna,—the uterine brother by the

brother![35] Neither Prithā, nor he, had ever disclosed the secret, O lord! That hero and great bowman, was therefore slain by Arjuna in battle![36] Subsequently I have come to know, O best of regenerate ones, that he was my uterine brother! Indeed, at Prithā's words I have come to know that Karna was our eldest-born![37] Having caused my brother to be slain, my heart is burning exceedingly! If I had both Karna and Arjuna for aiding me, I could have vanquished Vāsudeva himself![38] Whilst I was tortured in the midst of the assembly by the wicked-souled sons of Dhritarāshtra, my wrath, suddenly provoked, became cooled at sight of Karna![39] Even while listening to the harsh and bitter words of Karna himself on that occasion of our match at dice,—to the words, that is, that Karna uttered from desire of doing what was agreeable to Duryodhana,[40]—my wrath became cooled at sight of Karna's feet. It seemed to me that Karna's feet resembled the feet of our mother Kunti![41] Desirous of finding out the reason of that resemblance between him and our mother, I reflected for a long time. With even my best exertions I failed to find the cause![42] Why, indeed, did the Earth swallow up the wheels of his car at the time of battle? Why was my brother cursed? It behoveth thee to recite all this to me![43] I desire to hear everything from thee, O holy one! Thou art acquainted with everything in this world and thou knowest both the past and the future!' "[44]

Section II.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"That foremost of speakers, viz., the sage Nārada, thus questioned, narrated everything about the manner in which he who was believed to be a *Suta's* son had been cursed (in former days).[1]

"Nārada said,—It is even so, O mighty-armed one, as thou sayest, O, Bhārata! Nothing could resist Karna and Arjuna in battle![2] This, O sinless one, that I am about to tell thee is unknown to the very gods. Listen to me, O mighty-armed one, as it befell in former days![3] How all the Kshatriyas, cleansed by weapons, should attain to regions of bliss, was the

question. For this, a child was conceived by Kunti in her maidenhood, capable of provoking a general war.[4] Endued with great energy, that child came to have the status of a *Suta*. He subsequently acquired the science of weapons from the preceptor (Drona), that foremost descendant of Angirasa's race.[5] Thinking of the might of Bhimasena, the quickness of Arjuna in the use of weapons, the intelligence of thyself, O king, the humility of the twins, the friendship, from earliest years, between Vāsudeva and the wielder of *Gāndiva*, and the affection of the people for you all, that young man was burnt with envy.[6-7] In early age he made friends with king Duryodhana, led by accident and his own nature and the hate he bore towards you all.[8] Beholding that Dhananjaya was superior to every one in the science of weapons, Karna one day approached Drona in private and said these words unto him,[9]—I desire to be acquainted with the *Brahma* weapon, with all its *mantras* and the power of withdrawing it, for I desire to fight Arjuna![10]—Without doubt, the affection thou bearest to every one of thy pupils is equal to what thou bearest to thy own son! I pray that all masters of the science of weapons may, through thy grace, regard me as one accomplished in weapons![11]—Thus addressed by him, Drona, from partiality for Phālguna, as also from his knowledge of the wickedness of Karna, told him,[12]—None but a Brāhmana, who has duly observed all vows, should be acquainted with the *Brahma* weapon, or a Kshatriya that has practised austere penances, and no other![13] —When Drona had answered thus, Karna, having worshipped him, obtained his leave, and proceeded without delay to Rāma then residing on the Mahendra mountains.[14] Approaching Rāma, he bent his head unto him and said,—I am a Brāhmana of Bhrigu's race!—This procured honor for him.[15] With this knowledge about his birth and family, Rāma received him kindly and said,—Thou art welcome!—at which Karna became highly glad.[16] While residing on the Mahendra mountains that resembled heaven itself, Karna met and mixed with many *Gandharvas*, and *Yakshas*, and *gods*.[17] Residing there, he acquired all the weapons duly, and became a great favorite of the gods, the *Gandharvas*, and the *Rākshasas*.[18] One day he

roved on the sea coast by the side of that asylum. Indeed, Surya's son, armed with bow and sword, wandered alone.[19] While thus employed, O Pārtha, he inadvertently slew, without willing it, the *Homa* cow of a certain utterer of *Brahma* who daily performed his *Agnihotra* rite.[20] Knowing that he had perpetrated that act from inadvertence, he informed the the Brāhmana of it. Indeed, Karna, for the object of gratifying the owner, repeatedly said,—[21]—O holy one, I have killed this thy cow without willing it! Forgive the act![22]—Filled with wrath, the Brāhmana, rebuking him, said these words!—O thou of wicked conduct, thou deservest to be killed! Let the fruit of this act be thine, O thou of wicked soul![23] While fighting him, O wretch, whom thou always challengest, and for whose sake thou strivest so much every day, the Earth shall swallow the wheel of thy car![24] And while the wheel of thy car shall thus be swallowed up by the Earth, thy foe, putting forth his prowess, will cut off thy head, thyself being stupified the while! Leave me, O vile man![25] As thou hast heedlessly slain this my cow, even so will thy foe cut off thy head while thou shalt be heedless![26]—Though cursed, Karna still sought to gratify that foremost of Brāhmanas by offering him kine and wealth and gems. The latter, however, once more answered him,[27]—All the worlds will not succeed in falsifying the words spoken by me! Go hence or remain, do whatever thou likest![28]—Thus addressed by the Brāhmana, Karna, hanging down his head from cheerlessness, returned timidly to Rāma, reflecting on that matter.'"[29]

Section III.

"Nārada said,—'That tiger of Bhrigu's race, (viz., Rāma), was well pleased with the might of Karna's arms, his affection (for him), his self-restraint, and the services he did unto his preceptor.[1] Observant of ascetic penances, Rāma cheerfully communicated, with due forms, unto his penance-observing disciple, everything about the *Brahma* weapon with the *mantras* for withdrawing it.[2] Having acquired a knowledge of that weapon, Karna began to pass his days happily in Bhrigu's

retreat, and endued with wonderful prowess, he devoted himself with great ardour to the science of weapons.[3] One day Rāma of great intelligence, while roving with Karna in the vicinity of his retreat, felt himself very weak in consequence of the fasts he had undergone.[4] From affection begotten by confidence, the tired son of Jamadagni, placing his head on Karna's lap, slept soundly.[5] While his preceptor was thus sleeping (with head) on his lap, a frightful worm, whose bite was very painful and which subsisted on phlegm and fat and flesh and blood, approached the presence of Karna.[6] That blood-drinking worm, approaching Karna's thigh, began to pierce it. Through fear of (awaking) his preceptor, Karna became unable to either throw away or kill that animal.[7] Though his limb was bored through by that worm, O Bhārata, the son of Surya, lest his preceptor should awake, suffered it to do its pleasure.[8] Though the pain was intolerable, Karna bore it with heroic patience, and continued to hold Bhrigu's son on his lap, without quivering in the least and without manifesting any sign of pain.[9] When at last Karna's blood touched the body of Rāma of great energy, the latter awoke and said these words in fear,[10] —Alas, I have been made impure! What is this that thou art doing! Tell me, casting off all fear, what is the truth of this matter![11]—Then Karna informed him of that worm's bite. Rāma saw that worm which resembled a hog in shape.[12] It had eight feet and very keen teeth, and it was covered with bristles that were all pointed like needles. Called by the name of *Alarka*, its limbs were then shrunk (with fear).[13] As soon as Rāma cast his eyes on it, the worm gave up its life-breaths, melting in that blood which it had drawn. All this seemed wonderful.[14] Then in the welkin was seen a *Rākshasa* of terrible form, dark in hue, of a red neck, capable of assuming any form at will, and staying on the clouds.[15]—His object fulfilled, the *Rākshasa*, with joined hands, addressed Rāma, saying,[16]—O best of ascetics, thou hast rescued me from this hell! Blessed be thou, I adore thee, thou hast done me good![17]—Possessed of great energy, the mighty-armed son of Jamadagni said unto him,—Who art thou? And why also didst thou fall into hell? Tell me all this![18] He answered,

—Formerly I was a great *Asura* of the name of Dança. In the *Krita* period, O sire, I was of the same age with Bhrigu![19] I ravished the dearly-loved spouse of that sage. Through his curse I fell down on the Earth in the form of a worm![20] In anger thy ancestor said unto me,—[Subsisting on urine and phlegm, O wretch, thou shalt lead a life of hell![21] I then beseeched him, saying,—[When, O Brāhmana, will this curse end?]—Bhrigu replied unto me, saying,—[This curse shall end through Rāma of my race!][22]—It was for this that I had obtained such a course of life like one of uncleansed soul! O righteous one, by thee, however, I have been rescued from that sinful life![23]—Having said these words, the great *Asura*, bending his head unto Rāma, went away. Then Rāma wrathfully addressed Karna, saying,[24]—O fool, no Brāhmana could endure such agony! Thy patience is like that of a Kshatriya! Tell me the truth, without fear![25]—Thus asked, Karna, fearing to be cursed, and seeking to gratify him, said these words,—O thou of Bhrigu's race, know me for a *Suta*, a race that has sprung from the intermixture of Brāhmanas with Kshatriyas![26] People call me Karna the son of Rādhā! O thou of Bhrigu's race, be gratified with my poor self that has acted from the desire of obtaining weapons![27] There is no doubt in this that a reverend preceptor in the *Vedas* and other branches of knowledge is one's father! It was for this that I introduced myself to thee as a person of thy own race![28]—Unto the cheerless and trembling Karna, prostrated with joined hands upon Earth, that foremost one of Bhrigu's race, smiling though filled with wrath, answered,[29]—Since thou hast, from avarice of weapons, behaved here with falsehood, therefore, O wretch, this *Brahma* weapon shall not dwell in thy remembrance![30]* Since thou art not a Brāhmana, truly this *Brahma* weapon shall not, up to the time of thy death, dwell in thee when thou shalt be engaged with a warrior equal to thyself![†][31] Go

* Literally, "shall not appear to thee by inward light."—T.

† The meaning is this :—"This weapon shall not dwell with thee up to thy last moments. Thou shalt forget it or it shall not appear at thy bidding, when thy death becomes nigh, though at other times, thou mayst be master of it!"—T.

hence, this is no place for a person of such false behaviour as thou! On Earth, no Kshtriya will be thy equal in battle![32]—Thus addressed by Rāma, Karna came away, having duly taken his leave. Arriving then before Duryodhana, he informed him, saying,—I have mastered all weapons!—' "[38]

Section IV.

"Nārada said,—'Having thus obtained weapons from him of Bhriga's race, Karna began to pass his days in great joy, in the company of Duryodhana, O bull of Bharata's race![1] Once on a time, O monarch, many kings repaired to a Self choice at the capital of Chitrāngada, the ruler of the country of the Kālingas.[2] The city, O Bhārata, full of opulence, was known by the name of Rājapura. Hundreds of rulers repaired thither for obtaining the hand of the maiden.[3] Hearing that diverse kings had assembled there, Duryodhana also, on his golden car, proceeded thither, accompanied by Karna.[4] When the festivities commenced in that Self-choice, diverse rulers, O best of kings, came thither for the hand of the maiden.[5] There were amongst them Ciçupāla and Jarāsandha and Bhishmaka and Vakra, and Kapotaroman and Nila and Rukmi of steady prowess,[6] and Crigāla who was ruler of the kingdom of females, and Açoka and Catadhanwan and the heroic ruler of the Bhojas.[7] Besides these, many others who dwelt in the countries of the South, and many preceptors (in arms) of the *mleccha* tribes, and many rulers from the East and the North, O Bhārata, came there.[8] All of them were adorned with golden *Angadas*, and possessed of the splendour of pure gold. Of effulgent bodies, they were like tigers of fierce might.[9] After all those kings had taken their seats, O Bhārata, the maiden entered the arena, accompanied by her nurse and a guard of eunuchs.[10] Whilst being informed of the names of the kings (as she made her round), that maiden of the fairest complexion passed by the son of Dhritarāshtra as she had passed others before him).[11] Duryodhana, however, of Kuru's race could not tolerate that rejection of himself. Disregarding all the kings, he commanded the maiden to stop.[12] Intoxicated with the pride of energy, and relying

upon Bhishma and Drona, king Duryodhana, taking up that maiden on his car, abducted her with force.[13] Armed with sword, clad in mail, and his fingers cased in leathern fences, Karna, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, riding on his car, proceeded along Duryodhana's rear.[14] A great uproar then took place among the kings, all of whom were actuated by the desire for fight.—Put on your coats of mail! Let the cars be made ready!—(These were the sounds that were heard).[15] Filled with wrath, they pursued Karna and Duryodhana, showering their arrows upon them like masses of clouds pouring rain upon a couple of hills,[16] As they thus pursued them, Karna felled their bows and arrows on the ground, each with a single arrow.[17] Amongst them some became bowless, some rushed bow in hand, some were on the point of shooting their shafts, and some pursued them, armed with darts and maces.[18] Possessed of great lightness of hands, Karna, that foremost of all smiters, afflicted them all. He deprived many kings of their drivers, and thus vanquished all those lords of Earth.[19] They then themselves took up the reins of their steeds, and saying, —Go away, go away,—turned away from the battle with cheerless hearts.[20] Protected by Karna, Duryodhana also came away, with a joyous heart, bringing with him the maiden to the city called after elephant.'"[21]

SECTION V.

"Nārada said,—'Hearing of the fame of Karna's might, the ruler of the Magadhas, viz., king Jarāsandha, challenged him to a single combat. Both conversant with celestial weapons, a fierce battle took place between them in which they struck each other with diverse kinds of arms.[2] At last when their arrows were exhausted and bows and swords were broken and they both became carless, they began, possessed of might as they were, to fight with bare arms.[3] While engaged with him in mortal combat with bare arms, Karna was about to sever the two portions of his antognist's body that had been united together by Jarā.[4] The king (of Magadha) then, feeling himself very much pained, cast off all desire of hostility and ad-

dressed Karna, saying,—I am gratified![5]—From friendship he then gave unto Karna the town Mālini. Before this, that tiger among men and subjugator of all foes, (viz., Karna) had been king of the Angas only,[6] but from that time that grinder of hostile forces began to rule over Champā also, agreeably to the wishes of Duryodhana, as thou knowest![7] Thus Karna became famous on Earth for the valour of his arms. When, for thy good, the Lord of the celestials begged of him his (natural) coat of mail and ear-rings,[8] stupified by celestial illusion, he gave away those precious possessions.[9] Deprived of his ear-rings and divested of his natural armour, he was slain by Arjuna in Vāsudeva's presence.[10] In consequence of a Brāhmana's curse, as also of the curse of the illustrious Rāma, of the boon granted to Kunti and the illusion practised on him by Indra,[11] of his depreciation by Bhishma as only half a ear-warrior, at the tale of *Rathas* and *Atirathas*, of the destruction of his energy caused by Calya (with his keen speeches), of Vāsudeva's policy,[12] and, lastly, of the celestial weapons obtained by Arjuna from Rudra and Indra and Yama and Varuna and Kuvera and Drona and the illustrious Kripa,[13] the wielder of *Gāndiva* succeeded in slaying Vikartana's son Karna of effulgence like that of Surya himself![14] Even thus had thy brother been cursed and beguiled by many! As, however, he has fallen in battle, thou shouldst not grieve for that tiger among men!'"[15]

Section VI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having said these words, the celestial *Rishi* Nārada became silent. The royal sage Yudhishthira, filled with grief, became plunged in meditation.[1] Beholding that hero cheerless and unmanned by sorrow, sighing like a snake and shedding copious tears,[2] Kunti, herself filled with grief and almost deprived of her senses by sorrow, addressed him in these sweet words of grave import and well suited to the occasion:[3]—O mighty-armed Yudhishthira, it behoveth thee not to give way to sorrow thus! O thou of great wisdom, kill this grief of thine, and listen to what I say![4] I tried in past times to apprise Karna of his brothership with thee,

The god Surya also, O foremost of all righteous persons, did the same.[5] All that a well-wishing friend, from desire of good, should say unto one, was said unto Karna by that god in a dream and once more in my presence![6] Neither by affliction nor by reasons could Surya or myself succeed in pacifying him or inducing him to unite himself with thee![7] Succumbing to the influence of Time, he became resolved upon wreaking his enmity on thee. As he was bent upon doing injuries unto you all, I myself gave up the attempt.'[8] Thus addressed by his mother, king Yudhishthira, with tearful eyes and heart agitated by grief, said these words:[9]—'In consequence of thyself having concealed thy counsels, this great affliction has overtaken me!' Possessed of great energy, the righteous king then, in sorrow, cursed all the women of the world, saying,—'Henceforth no woman shall succeed in keeping a secret![10]—The king then, recollecting his sons and grandsons and kinsmen and friends, became filled with anxiety and grief.[11] Afflicted with sorrow, the intelligent king, resembling a fire covered with smoke, became penetrated with despair."[12]

Section VII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The righteous-souled Yudhishthira, with an agitated heart and burning with sorrow, began to grieve for that mighty car-warrior Karna.[1] Sighing repeatedly, he addressed Arjuna, saying,—'If, O Arjuna, we had led a life of mendicancy in the cities of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, then this miserable end would not have been ours in consequence of having exterminated our kinsmen![2-3] Our foes, the Kurus, have gained in prosperity, while we have become divested of all the objects of life, for what fruits of righteousness can be ours when we have been guilty of self-slaughter?[4]* Fie on the usages of Kshatriyas, fie on might and valour, and fie on wrath, since through these such a calamity hath overtaken us![5] Blessed are forgiveness, and self-

* The Kurus, our foes, having fallen in battle, have all gone to heaven, while grief has become our lot.—T.

restraint, and purity, with renunciation and humility, and abstention from injury, and truthfulness of speech on all occasions, which are all practised by forest-recluses![6] Full of pride and arrogance, ourselves, however, through covetousness and folly and from desire of enjoying the sweets of sovereignty, have fallen into this plight![7] Beholding those kinsmen of ours that were bent on acquiring the sovereignty of the world slain on the field of battle, such grief hath been ours that one cannot gladden us by giving us the sovereignty of even the three worlds![8] Alas, having slain, for the sake of the Earth, such lords of Earth as deserved not to be slain by us, we are bearing the weight of existence, deprived of friends and reft of the very objects of life![9] Like a pack of dogs fighting one another for a piece of meat, a great disaster has overtaken us! That piece of meat is no longer dear to us! On the other hand, it shall be thrown aside![10] They that have been slain should not have been slain for the sake of even the whole Earth or mountains of gold, or all the horses and kine in this world![11] Filled with envy and a hankering for all earthly objects, and influenced by wrath and pleasure, all of them, betaking themselves to the high way of Death, have repaired to the regions of Yama![12] Practising asceticism and *Brahmacharyya* and truth and renunciation, sires wish for sons endued with every kind of prosperity.[13] Similarly, by fasts and sacrifices and vows and sacred rites and auspicious ceremonies, mothers conceive. They then hold the fœtus for ten months.[14] Passing their time in misery and in expectation of fruit, they always ask themselves in anxiety,—Shall these come out of the womb safely? Shall these live after birth? Shall they grow in might and be objects of regard on Earth? Shall they be able to give us happiness in this and the other world?[15]—Alas, since their sons, youthful in years and resplendent with ear-rings, have been slain, therefore, those expectations of theirs, rendered fruitless, have been abandoned by them![16] Without having enjoyed the pleasures of this world, and without having paid off the debts they owed to their sires and the gods, they have repaired to Yama's abode![17] Alas, O mother, those kings have been slain just at that time when their parents

expected to reap the fruits of their might and wealth![*18] They were always filled with envy and a hankering after earthly objects, and were exceedingly subject to anger and joy. For this, they could not be expected to enjoy at any time or any place the fruits of victory![†19] I think that they among the Pānchālas and the Kurus that have fallen (in this battle) have been lost, otherwise he that has slain would, by that act of his, obtain all regions of bliss![‡20] We are regarded as the cause of the destruction that has overtaken the world. The fault, however, is really ascribable to the sons of Dhritarāshtra.[21] Duryodhana's heart was always set upon guile. Always cherishing malice, he was addicted to deception. Although we never offended him, yet he always behaved falsely towards us![22] We have not gained our object, nor have they gained theirs. We have not vanquished them, nor have they vanquished us. The Dhārtarāshtras could not enjoy this Earth, nor could they enjoy women and music.[23] They did not listen to the counsels of ministers and friends and men learned in the scriptures. They could not, indeed, enjoy their costly gems and well-filled treasury and vast territories.[24] Burning with the hate they bore us, they could not obtain happiness and peace. Beholding our aggrandisement, Duryodhana became colorless, pale and emaciated. Suvala's son informed king Dhritarāshtra of this.[25] As a father full of affection for his son, Dhritarāshtra tolerated the evil policy his son pursued.[26] Without doubt, by disregarding Vidura and the high-souled son of Gangā, and in consequence of his neglect in restraining his wicked and covetous son entirely governed by his

---

* *Sanjāta Valaratnesu* is the true reading.—T.

† The Bombay reading *Jayaphalam* is correct. The Bengal reading *Janmaphalam*, however, is not unmeaning.—T.

‡ What Yudhishthira says here is this: all the warriors that have been slain in this battle have perished, they have not attained to heaven; if, indeed, heaven has been theirs, then the slayers too would obtain heaven, the scriptural ordinance having said so. It is impossible, however, to suppose that men of wrath who have done such wicked deeds should obtain such regions of bliss hereafter.—T.

passions, the king has met with destruction like my poor self.[27] Without doubt, Suyodhana, having caused his uterine brothers to be slain and having cast this old couple into burning grief, hath fallen off from his blazing fame![28] Burning with the hate he bore to us, Duryodhana was always of a sinful heart. What other kinsman of high birth could use such language towards kinsmen as he, from desire of battle, actually used in the presence of Krishna?[29] We also have, through Duryodhana's fault, been lost for eternity, like suns burning everything arround them with their own energy![*30] That wicked-souled wight, that embodiment of hostility, was our evil star. Ales, for Duryodhana's acts alone, this race of ours has been exterminated![31] Having slain those whom we should never have slain, we have incurred the censures of the world.[32] King Dhritarāshtra, having installed that wicked-souled prince of sinful deeds, that exterminter of his race, in the sovereignty, is obliged to grieve today![33] Our heroic foes have been slain. We have committed sin. His possessions and kingdom are gone! Having slain them, our wrath has been pacified. But grief is stupifying me![34] O Dhananjaya, a perpetrated sin is expiated by auspicious acts, by publishing it wieldly, by repentance, by almsgiving, by penances, by sojourn to *tïrthas* after renunciation of everything, by constant meditation on the scriptures.[35] Of all these, he that has practised renunciation is believed to be incapable of committing sins anew.[35] The *Çrutis* declare that he that practises renunciation escapes from birth and death, and obtaining the right road, that person of fixed soul attains to *Brahma*[36] I shall, therefore, O Dhananjaya, go to the woods, with your leave, O scorcher of foes, disregarding all the pairs of opposites, adopting the vow of taciturnity, and walking in the way pointed out by knowledge![*37] O slayer of foes, the *Çrutis* declare it and I myself have seen it with

---

* Teere can be no doubt that *ātmanas* in this verse, as explained by Nilakantha, refers to Duryodhana, being a genetive singular, it cannot refer to *Vayam*.—T.

* *Pairs of oppositis*, such as heat and cold, joy and gref, &c. Comp *Gitā*, p. *ante*.—T.

my eyes, that one who is wedded to this Earth can never obtain every kind of religious merit![38] Desirous of obtaining the things of this Earth, I have committed sin, through which, as the *Çrutis* declare, birth and death are brought about.[39] Abandoning the whole of my kingdom, therefore, and the things of this Earth, I shall go to the woods, escaping from the ties of the world, freed from grief, and without affection for anything![40] Do thou govern this Earth, on which peace has been restored, and which has been divested of all its thorns! O best of Kuru's race, I have no need for kingdom or for pleasure!"[41]—Having said these words, king Yudhishthira the just stopped. His younger brother Arjuna then addressed him in the following words."[42]

Section VIII.

Vyiçampāyana said,—"Like a person unwilling to forgive an insult, Arjuna of keen speech and prowess, and possessed of energy, betraying great fierceness and licking the corners of his mouth, said these words of grave import, smiling the while:[1-2]—'Oh how painful, how distressing! I grieve to see this great agitation of thy heart, since having achieved such a superhuman feat, thou art bent upon forsaking this great prosperity![3] Having slain thy foes, and having acquired the sovereignty of the Earth which has been won through observance of the duties of thy own order, why shouldst thou abandon everything through ficklessness of heart?[4] Where on Earth hath a eunuch or a person of procrastination ever acquired sovereignty? Why then didst thou, insensate with rage, slay all the kings of the Earth?[5] He that would live by mendicancy, cannot, by any act of his, enjoy the good things of Earth! Divested of prosperity and without resources, he can never win fame on Earth or acquire sons and animals.[6] If, O king, abandoning this swelling kingdom, thou livest in the observance of the wretched mode of life led by a mendicant, what will the world say of thee?[7] Why dost thou say that abandoning all the good things of the Earth, divested of prosperity, and reft of resources, thou wilt lead a life of mendi-

cancy like a vulgar person ?[8] Thou art born in this race of kings! Having won by conquest the whole Earth, wishest thou from folly to live in the woods after abandoning everything of virtue and profit ?[9] (If thou retirest into the woods), in thy absence, dishonest men will destroy sacrifices. That sin will certainly pollute thee![10] King Nahusha, having done many wicked acts in a state of poverty cried fie on that state and said that poverty is for recluses![11] Making no provision for the morrow is a practice that suits *Rishis*. Thou knowest this well! That, however, which has been called the religion of royalty depends entirely on wealth.[12] One who robs another of wealth, robs him of his religion as well.* Who amongst us, therefore, O king, would forgive an act of spoliation that is practised on us ?[13] It is seen that a poor man, even when he stands near, is accused falsely. Poverty is a state of sinfulness. It behoveth thee not to applaud poverty, therefore![14] The man that is fallen, O king, grieveth, as also he that is poor! I do not see the difference between a fallen man and a poor man![15] All kinds of meritorious acts flow from the possession of great wealth like a mountain.[16] From wealth spring all religious acts, all pleasures, and heaven itself, O king! Without wealth, a man cannot find the very means of sustaining his life![17] The acts of a person who, possessed of little intelligence suffers himself to be divested of wealth, are all dried up like shallow streams in the summer season.[18] He that has wealth has friends. He that has wealth has kinsmen. He that has wealth is regarded as a true man in the world. He that has wealth is regarded as a learned man.[19] If a person who hath no wealth desires to achieve a particular purpose, he meets with failure. Wealth brings about accessions of wealth, like elephants capturing (wild) elephants.[20] Religious acts, pleasures, joy, courage, wrath, learning, and sense of dignity, all these proceed from wealth, O king![21] From wealth one acquires family honor. From wealth, one's religious merit increases. He that is without wealth hath neither this world,

* Because wealth enables its possessor to practice the rites of religion.—T.

nor the next, O best of men![22] The man that hath no wealth succeeds not in performing religious acts, for these latter spring from wealth, like rivers from a mountain.[23] He that is lean in respect of (his possession of) steeds and kine and servants and guests, is truly lean and not he whose limbs alone are so![24] Judge truly, O king, and look at the conduct of the gods and the *Dānavas.* O king, do the gods ever wish for anything else than the slaughter of their kinsmen (the *Asuras)*?[25] If the appropriation of wealth belonging to others be not regarded as righteous, how, O monarch, will kings practise virtue on this Earth? Learned men have, in the *Vedas,* laid down this conclusion.[26] The learned have laid it down that kings should live, reciting every day the three *Vedas,* seeking to acquire wealth, and carefully performing sacrifices with the wealth thus acquired.[27] The gods, through internecine quarrel, have obtianed footing in heaven. When, the very gods have won their prosperity through internecine quarrels, what fault can there be in such quarrels?[28] The gods, thou seest, act in this way. The eternal precepts of the *Vedas* also sanction it. To learn, teach, sacrifice, and assist at others sacrifices,—these are our principal duties. The wealth that kings take from others becomes the means of their prosperity. We never see wealth that has been earned without doing some injury to others.[29-30] It is even thus that kings conquer this world. Having conquered, they call that wealth theirs just as sons speak of the wealth of their sires as their own. The royal sages that have gone to heaven have declared this to be the duty of kings.[31] Like water flowing on every direction from a swollen ocean, that wealth runs on every direction from the treasuries of kings.[32] This Earth formerly belonged to king Dwilipa, Nahusha, Amvarisha, and Māndhātri. She now belongs to thee![33] A great sacrifice, therefore, with profuse presents of every kind and requiring a vast heap of the Earth's produce, awaits thee! If thou dost not perform that sacrifice, O king, then the sins of this kingdom shall all be thine![34] Those subjects whose king performs a horse-sacrifice with profuse presents, become all cleansed and sanctified by beholding the ablutions at the end of the sacrifice.[35] Mahādeva himself, of universal form, in a

great sacrifice requiring libations of all kinds of flesh, poured all creatures as sacrificial libations and then his own self.[36] Eternal is this auspicious path. Its fruits are never destroyed. This is the great path called *Dāçaratha*. Abandoning it, O king, to what other path wouldst thou betake thyself ?' "[37]

SECTION IX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'For a little while, O Arjuna, concentrate thy attention and fix thy mind and hearing on thy inner soul. If thou listenest to my words in such a frame of mind, they will meet with thy approbation ![1] Abandoning all worldly pleasures, I shall betake myself to that path which is trod by the righteous ! I shall not, for thy sake, tread along the path thou recommendest ![2] If thou askest me what path is auspicious that one should tread alone, I shall tell thee ! If thou dost not desire to ask me, I shall yet, unasked by thee, tell thee of it.[3] Abandoning the pleasures and observances of men of the world, engaged in performing the austerest of penances, I shall wander in the forest, with the animals that have their home there, living on fruits and roots ![4] Pouring libations on the fire at due hours, and performing ablutions at morn and eve, I shall thin myself by reduced diet, and covering myself with skins, bear matted locks on my head.[5] Enduring cold, wind, and heat, as also hunger and thirst and toil, I shall emaciate my body by penances as laid down in the ordinance.[6] Charming to the heart and the ear, I shall daily listen to the clear strains of cheerful birds and animals residing in the woods.[7] I shall enjoy the fragrance of flower-burthened trees and creepers, and see diverse kinds of charming products that grow in the forest.[8] I shall also see many excellent recluses of the forest. I shall not do the slightest injury to any creature, what need be said then of those that dwell in villages and towns ?[9]* Leading a retired life and devoting myself to contemplation, I shall live upon ripe and unripe fruits and gratify the *Pitris*

---

* The sense is that when I will not wrong the denizens of even the woods, there is little chance of my wronging men of the world.—T.

and the deities with offerings of wild fruits and spring water and grateful hymns.[10] Observing in this way the austere regulations of a forest life, I shall pass my days, calmly awaiting the dissolution of my body.[11] Or, living alone and observing the vow of taciturnity, with my head shaved clean, I shall derive my sustenance by begging each day of only one tree.[12]* Smearing my body with ashes, and availing of the shelter of abandoned houses, or lying at the foot of trees, I shall live, casting off all things dear or hateful.[13] Without indulging in grief or joy, and regarding censure and applause, hope and affection, equally, and prevailing over every couple of opposites, I shall live casting off all the things of the world![14] Without conversing with anybody, I shall assume the outward form of a blind and deaf idiot, while living in contentment and deriving happiness from my own soul.[15] Without doing the least injury to the four kinds of movable and immovable creatures, I shall behave equally towards all creatures whether mindful of their duties or following only the dictates of the senses.[16] I shall not jeer at any one, nor shall I frown at anybody. Restraining all my senses, I shall always be of cheerful face.[17] Without asking anybody about the way, proceeding along any route that I may happen to meet with, I shall go on, without taking note of the country or the point of the compass to which or towards which I may go.[18] Regardless of whither I may proceed, I shall not look behind. Divesting myself of desire and wrath, and turning my gaze inwards, I shall go on, casting off pride of soul and body.[19]† Nature always walks ahead: hence, food and drink will somehow be accomplished. I shall not think of those pairs of opposites that stand in the way of such a life.[20] If pure food in even a small measure be not obtainable in the first house (to which I may go) I shall

---

* There is a class of recluses who support life by gathering the fallen fruits of trees. Taking the tree for a living person, they walk under its shade and beg of it its fruits. Those fruits that fall down on such occasions are regarded as the alms granted by the tree to its mendicant guest.—T.

† I follow Nilakantha's gloss in rendering the second line.—T.

get it by going to other houses. If I fail to procure it by even such a round, I shall proceed to seven houses in succession and fill my craving.[21] When the smoke of houses will cease, their hearth-fires having been extinguished, when husking-rods will be kept aside, and all the inmates will have taken their food, when mendicants and guests will cease to wander,[22] I shall select a moment for my round of mendicancy and solicit alms at two, three, or five houses at the most. I shall wander over the Earth, after breaking the bonds of desire.[23] Preserving equability in success and failure, I shall earn great ascetic merit. I shall behave neither like one that is fond of life nor like one that is about to die.[24] I shall not manifest any liking for life or dislike for death. If one strikes off one arm of mine and another smears the other arm with sandal-paste, I shall not wish evil to the one or good to the other.[25] Discarding all those acts conducive to prosperity that one can do in life, the only acts I shall perform will be to open and shut my eyes and take as much food and drink as will barely keep up life.[26] Without ever being attached to action, and always restraining the functions of the senses, I shall give up all desires and purify the soul of all impurities.[27] Freed from all attachments and tearing off all bonds and ties, I shall live free as the wind.[28] Living in such freedom from affections, everlasting contentment will be mine. Through desire, I have, from ignorance, committed great sins![29] A certain class of men, doing both auspicious and inauspicious acts here, maintain their wives, children, and kinsmen, all bound to them in relations of cause and effect.[30]* When the period of their life runs out, casting off their weakened bodies, they take upon themselves all the effects of their sinful acts, for none but the

---

* All the possessions of a man depend upon the acts of a previous life. Wives, children, and kinsmen, therefore, as agents of happiness or the reverse, depend upon one's past acts. They are as effects of pre-existing causes. Then again, they may be causes of effects to be manifested in the next life, for *their* acts also are supposed to affect the next life of him to whom they belong.—T.

actor is burdened with the consequences of his own acts.[31]* Even thus, endued with actions, creatures come into this wheel of life that is continually turning like the wheel of a car, and even thus, coming thither, they meet with their fellow creatures.[32] He, however, who abandons this worldly course of life, which is really a fleeting illusion although it looks eternal, and which is afflicted by birth, death, decrepitude, disease, and pain, is sure to obtain happiness.[33] When, again, the very gods fall down from heaven and great *Rishis* from their respective positions of eminence, who that is acquainted with truths of causes (and effects) would wish to have even heavenly prosperity ?[34]† Insignificant kings, having performed diverse acts relating to the diverse means of king-craft (known by the names of conciliation, gift, &c.) often slay a great king through some contrivance.[35] Reflecting on these circumstances, this nectar of wisdom hath come to me. Having attained it, I desire to get a permanent, eternal, and unchangeable place (for myself) ![36] Always (conducting myself) with such wisdom and acting in this way, I shall, by betaking myself to that fearless path of life, terminate this physical frame that is subject to birth, death, decrepitude, disease, and pain.' "[37]

Section X.

"Bhimasena said.—'Thy understanding, O king, has become blind to the truth, like that of a foolish and unintelligent reciter of the *Veda* in consequence of his repeated recitation of those scriptures.[1] If censuring the duties of kings thou wouldst lead a life of idleness, then, O bull of Bharata's race, this destruction of the Dhārtarāshtras was perfectly uncalled for ![2] Are forgiveness and compassion and pity and abstention from injury not to be found in anybody walking along the path of Kshatriya duties ?[3] If we knew that this was thy intention, we would then have never taken up arms

---

* *I. e.*, they *for* whom he acts do not take the consequences of his acts.—T.

† *Bhavena* is explained by Nilakantha as *swargaiçwaryyena*.—T.

and slain a single creature![4] We would then have lived by mendicancy till the destruction of this body! This terrible battle between the rulers of the Earth would also have never taken place![5] The learned have said that this all that we see is food for the strong. Indeed, this mobile and immobile world is our object of enjoyment for the person that is strong.[6] Wise men acquainted with Kshatriya duties have declared that they who stand in the way of the person taking the sovereignty of the Earth, should be slain.[7] Guilty of that fault, those that stood as enemies of our kingdom have all been slain by us. Having slain them, O Yudhishthira, righteously govern this Earth![8] This our act (in refusing the kingdom) is like that of a person who having dug a well stops in his work before obtaining water and comes up smutted with mire.[9] Or, this our act is like that of a person who having climbed up a tall tree and taken honey therefrom meets with death before tasting it.[10] Or, it is like that of a person who having set out on a long way comes back in despair without having reached his destination.[11] Or, it is like that of a person who having slain all his foes, O thou of Kuru's race, at last falls by his own hand.[12] Or, it is like that of a person afflicted with hunger, who having obtained food, refuses to take it, or of a person under the influence of desire, who having obtained a woman reciprocating his passion, refuses to meet with her.[13] We have become objects of censure, O Bhārata, because, O king, we follow thee that art of feeble understanding, in consequence of thyself being our eldest brother![14] We are possessed of might of arms; we are accomplished in knowledge and endued with great energy. Yet we are obedient to the words of a eunuch as if we were entirely helpless![15] We are the refuge of all helpless persons. Yet, when people see us so, why would they not say that in respect of the acquisition of our objects we are entirely powerless? Reflect on this that I say![16] It has been laid down that (a life of) Renunciation should be adopted, only in times of distress, by kings overcome with decrepitude or defeated by foes![17] Men of wisdom, therefore, do not applaud Renunciation as the duty of a Kshatriya. On the other hand, they that are of clear sight think that the

adoption of that course of life (by a Kshatriya) involves even the loss of virtue.[18] How can those that have sprung from that order, that are devoted to the practices of that order, and that have their refuge in them, censure those duties? Indeed, if those duties be censurable, then why should not the Supreme Ordainer be censured?[19]* It is only those persons that are reft of prosperity and wealth and that are infidels in faith, that have promulgated this precept of the Vedas (about the propriety of a Kshatriya's adoption of a life of Renunciation) as the truth. In reality, however, it is never proper for a Kshatriya to do so.[20] He who is competent to support life by prowess, he who can support himself by his own exertions, does not live, but really falls away from his duty, by the hypocritical externals of a life of Renunciation.[21] That man only is capable of leading a solitary life of happiness in the woods who is unable to support sons and grandsons and the deities and *Rishis* and guests and *Pitris*.[22] As the deer and boars and birds (though they lead a forest life) cannot attain to heaven, even so those Kshatriyas that are not bereft of prowess cannot attain to heaven by leading only a forest life. They should acquire religious merit by other ways.[23] If, O king, anybody were to obtain success from Renunciation, then mountains and trees would surely obtain it![24] These latter are always seen to lead lives of Renunciation. They do not injure any one. They are, again, always aloof from a life of worldliness and are all *Brahmachārins*.[25] If it be the truth that a person's success depends upon his own lot in life and not upon that of others, then (as a person born in the Kshatriya order) thou shouldst betake thyself to action. He that is reft of action can never have success.[26] If they that fill only their own stomachs could attain to success, then all aquatic creatures would obtain it, for these have none else to support save their own selves.[27] Behold, the world moves on, with every creature on it employed in acts proper to its nature! There-

* The sense is, that as the Ordainer cannot be censured, therefore, that which He has ordained for the Kshatriyas cannot be deserving of censure.—T.

fore, one should betake himself to action. The man reft of action can never obtain success.' "[28]

SECTION XI.

"Arjuna said,—'In this connection an old history is cited, viz., the discourse between certain ascetics and Cakra, O bull of Bharata's race![1] Certain well-born Brāhmana youth of little understanding, without the hirsute honors of manhood, abandoning their homes, came to the woods for leading a forest life.[2] Regarding that to be virtue, those youths of abundant resources became desirous of living as *Brahmachārins*, having abandoned their brothers and sires. It so happened that Indra became compassionate towards them.[3] Assuming the form of a golden bird, the holy Cakra addressed them, saying,—That which is done by persons that eat the remnants of a Sacrifice is the most difficult of acts that men can achieve.[4]* Such an act is highly meritorious. The lives of such men are worthy of every praise. Having attained the object of life, those men, devoted to virtue obtain the highest end![5]—Hearing these words, the *Rishis* said,—Lo, this bird applauds those that subsist upon the remnants of Sacrifices! He informs us of it, for we live upon such remnants![6]—The bird then said,—I do not applaud you! Ye are stained with mire and very impure! Living upon offals, ye are wicked! Ye are not persons subsisting upon the remnants of Sacrifice![7]—

" 'The *Rishis* said,—We regard this our course of life to be highly blessed! Tell us, O bird, what is for our good! Thy words inspire us with great faith![8]

" 'The bird said,—If you do not refuse me your faith by arraying yourselves against your better selves, then I shall tell you words that are true and beneficial![9]—

---

* The meaning is that they who perform sacrifices and partake of the sacrificial food after offering it unto gods and guests, acquire such religious merit that the like of it cannot be acquired by other men. Sacrifice, therefore, is the highest act in life and the most meritorious that man can do.—T.

" 'The *Rishis* said,—We shall listen to thy words, O sire, for the different paths are all known to thee! O thou of righteous soul, we desire also to obey thy commands. Instruct us now![10]—

" 'The bird said,—Among quadrupeds the cow is the foremost. Of metals, gold is the foremost. Of words, *mantras*, and of bipeds, Brāhmanas, are the foremost.[11] These *mantras* regulate all the rites of a Brāhmana's life, beginning with those appertaining to birth and the period after it, and ending with those appertaining to death and the crematorium.[12] These Vedic rites are his heaven, path, and foremost of sacrifices. If it were otherwise, how could I find the acts (of persons in quest of heaven) become successful through *mantras*?[13] He who, in this world, adores his soul, firmly regarding it to be a deity of a particular kind, obtains success consistent with the nature of that particular deity.* The seasons measured by half the months lead to the Sun, the Moon, or the Stars.[14]† These three kinds of success, depending upon action, are desired by every creature. The domestic mode of life is very superior and sacred and is called the field (for the cultivation) of success.[15] By what path do those men go that censure action? Of little understanding and deprived of wealth, they incur sin.[16] And since those men of little understanding live by abandon-

---

* The *iti* after *vādi* is really *cti*, the absence of *sandhi* in the proper form is *Arsha*. Literally rendered, the line becomes,—"According to the manner in which the person of firm conviction approaches the Soul, is the success that he gets here. As the *çrutis* declare, if one firmly regards himself to be Civa, the success one attains here and hereafter is after the kind of that deity.—T.

† The brevity of such passages is the chief obstacle to their clear comprehension. Fortunately the allusions are very plain. What is meant by it is that those who die during the lighted fortnights of the summer solstice attain to solar regions of bliss. Those that die during the dark fortnights of the winter solstice, attain to lunar regions. These last have to return after passing their allotted periods of enjoyment and happiness. While those that are freed from attachments, whatever the time of their Death, go to Steller regions which are equal to that of Brahma.—T.

ing the eternal paths of the gods, the paths of the *Rishis*, and the paths of *Brahma*, therefore, they attain to paths disapproved of by the *Çrutis*.[17]* These is an ordinance in the *mantras* which says,—[Ye sacrificer, perform the sacrifice represented by gifts of valuable things! I will give thee the happiness represented by sons, animals, and heaven!]—To live, therefore, in accordance with the ordinance is said to be the highest asceticism of the ascetics. Therefore, ye should perform such sacrifices and such penances in the shape of gifts![18] The due performance of these eternal duties, viz., the worship of the gods, the study of the Vedas, and the gratification of the *Pitris*, as also regardful services unto the preceptor,—these are called the austerest of penances.[19] The gods, by performing such exceedingly difficult penances, have obtained the highest glory and power. I, therefore, tell you to bear the very heavy burthen of the duties of domesticity![20] Without doubt, penances are the foremost of all things and are the root of all creatures. Asceticism, however, is to be obtained by leading a life of domesticity, upon which depends everything.[21] They that eat the remnants of feasts, after duly apportioning the food morning and evening among kinsmen, attain to ends that are exceedingly difficult of attainment.[22-23] They are called eaters of the remnants of feasts who eat after having served guests and gods and *Rishis* and kinsmen.[24] Therefore, those persons that are observant of their own duties, that practise excellent vows and are truthful in speech, become objects of great respect in the world, with their own faith exceedingly strengthened.[25] Free from pride, those achievers of the most difficult feats attain to heaven and live for unending time in the regions of Cakra!—'[26]

"Arjuna continued,—'Those ascetics then, hearing these words that were beneficial and fraught with righteousness, abandoned the religion of Renunciation, saying,—There is nothing in it,—and betook themselves to a life of domesticity.[27]

---

* *I. e.*, without attaining to the companionship of the gods and *Pitris*, and without obtaining *Brahma*, they sink in the scale of being and become worms and vermine.—T.

Therefore, O thou that are conversant with righteousness, calling to thy aid that eternal wisdom, rule the wide world, O monarch, that is now destitute of foes!' "[23]

SECTION XII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—'Hearing these words of Arjuna, O chastiser of foes, Nakula of mighty arms and broad-chest, temperate in speech and possessed of great wisdom, with face whose color then resembled that of copper, looked at the king, that foremost of all righteous persons, and spoke these words, besieging his brother's heart (with reason).[1-2]

"Nakula said,—'The very gods had established their fires in the region called *Viçākha-yupa*. Know, therefore, O king, that the gods themselves depend upon the fruits of action![3]* The *Pitris*, that support (by rain) the lives of even all disbelievers, observing the ordinances (of the Creator as decleared in the Vedas), are, O king, engaged in action.†[4] Know them for downright atheists that reject the declarations of the Vedas (which inculcate action). The person that is learned in the Vedas, by following their declarations in all his acts,[5] attains, O Bhārata, to the highest region of heaven by the way of the deities.‡ This (domestic mode of life again) has been said by all persons acquainted with Vedic truths to be superior to all the (other) modes of life![6] Know this, O king, that the person who in sacrifices gives away his righteously acquired wealth unto those Brāhmanas that are well conversant with the Vedas,[7] and restrains his soul, is, O monarch, regarded as the true Renouncer![8] He, however, who, disregarding (a life of domesticity that is) the source of much happiness, jumps to the next mode of life,—that renouncer of his own self,¶—O monarch, is a renouncer labouring under the quality of darkness.[9] That man

---

* The sense is that the gods themselves have become so by action.—T.

† The first word is compounded of *an* and *āstika*.—T.

‡ *Deva-yāna* is the *Yāna* or way along which the deities have gone, *viz.*, the strict observance of the Vedic rites.—T.

¶ *Renouncer of his own self*, because he dries up his very body by denying himself food.—T.

who is homeless, who roves over the world (in his mendicant rounds) who has the foot of a tree for his shelter, who observes the vow of taciturnity, never cooks for himself, and seeks to restrain all the functions of his senses, is, O Pārtha, a renouncer in the observance of the vow of mendicancy.[10]* That Brāhmana who, disregarding wrath and joy, and especially deceitfulness, always employs his time in the study of the Vedas, is a renouncer in the observance of the vow of mendicancy.[11]† The four different modes of life were at one time weighed in the balance. The wise have said, O king, that when domesticity was placed on one scale, it required the three others to be placed on the other for balancing it.[12] Beholding the result of this examination by scales, O Pārtha, and seeing further, O Bhārata, that domesticity alone contained both heaven and pleasure, that became the way of the great *Rishis* and the refuge of all persons conversant with the ways of the world.[13] He, therefore, O bull of Bharata's race, who betakes to this mode of life, thinking it to be his duty and abandoning all desire for fruit, is a real Renouncer, and not that man of clouded understanding who goes to the woods, abandoning home and its surroundings.[14] A person, again, who, under the hypocritical garb of righteousness, fails to forget his desires (even while living in the woods), is bound by the grim king of death with his deadly fetters round the neck.[15] Those acts that are done from vanity are said to be unproductive of fruit. Those acts, on the other hand, O monarch, that are done from a spirit of renunciation, always bear abundant fruits.[16]‡ Tranquillity, self-restraint, fortitude, truth, purity, simplicity.

---

* Such a person also is not a true Renouncer. For a Kshatriya, again, such a mode of life would be sinful.—T.

† Nilakantha thinks that the object of this verse is to show that even such a life properly appertains to a *Brāhmana* and not to a *Kshatriya*. Therefore, if Yudhishthira would, without reigning, live quietly in the kingdom governed by some brother of his, he would then be equally sinning.—T.

‡ *Acts done from vanity, i. e.,* with the prideful consciousness of one being himself the actor and the arranger of everything. *Acts done from a spirit of renunciation, i. e.,* without hope of reaping their fruits.—T.

sacrifices, perseverance, and righteousness,—these are always regarded as virtues recommended by the *Rishis*.[17] In domesticity, it is said, are acts intended for *Pitris*, gods, and guests. In this mode of life alone, O monarch, are the threefold aims to be attained.[18]* The renouncer that rigidly adheres to this mode of life, in which one is free to do all acts, has not to encounter ruin either here or hereafter.[19] The sinless Lord of all creatures, of righteous soul, created creatures with the intention that they would adore him by sacrifices with profuse presents.[20] Creepers and trees and deciduous herbs, and animals that are clean, and clarified butter, were created as ingridients of sacrifice.[21] For one in the observance of domesticity the performance of sacrifice is fraught with impediments. For this, that mode of life has been said to be exceedingly difficult and unttainable.[22] Those persons, therefore, in the observance of the domestic mode of life, who, possessed of wealth and corn and animals, do not perform sacrifices, earn, O monarch, eternal sin.[23] Amongst *Rishis*, there are some that regard the study of the Vedas to be a sacrifice; and some that regard contemplation to be a great sacrifice which they perform in their minds.[24] The very gods, O monarch, covet the companionship of a regenerate person like this, who in consequence of his treading along such a way which consists in the concentration of the mind, has become equal to *Brahma*.[25] By refusing to spend in Sacrifice the diverse kinds of wealth that thou hast taken from thy foes, thou art only displaying thy want of faith![26] I have never seen, O monarch, a king in the observance of a life of domesticity renouncing his wealth in any other way except in the *Rājasuya*, the *Açwamedha*, and other kinds of Sacrifice![27] Like Cakra, the chief of the celestials, O sire, perform those other sacrifices that are praised by the Brāhmanas![28] That king, through whose heedlessness the subjects are plundered by robbers, and who does not offer protection to those whom he is called upon to govern, is said to be the very embodiment of Kali.[29] If, without giving away steeds, and kine, and female slaves, and elephants adorned

---

* *The threefold aims, i. e.*, Religion, Pleasure, and profit.—T.

with trappings, and villages, and populous regions, and fields, and houses, unto Brāhmanas, we retire into the woods with hearts not harbouring friendly feelings towards kinsmen, even we shall be, O monarch, such *Kalis* of the kingly order![30-31] Those members of the kingly order that do not practise charity and give protection (to others), incur sin. Woe is their portion hereafter and not bliss![32] If, O lord, without performing great sacrifices and the rites in honor of thy deceased ancestors, and if, without bathing in sacred waters, thou betakest thyself to a wandering life,[33] thou shalt then meet with destruction like a small cloud separated from a mass and lashed by the winds! Thou shalt then fall off from both worlds and have to take thy birth in the *Piçācha* order.[34]* A person becomes a true renouncer by casting off every internal and exernal attachment, and not simply by abandoning home for dwelling in the woods.[35] A Brāhmana that lives in the observance of these ordinances in which there are no impediments, does not fall off from this or the other world.[36] Observant of the duties of one's own order,—duties respected by the ancients and practised by the best of men,—who is there, O Pārtha, that would grieve, O king, for having in a trice slain in battle his foes that swelled with prosperity, like Cakra slaying the forces of the *Daityas*?[37] Having in the observance of Kshatriya duties subjugated the world by the aid of thy prowess, and having made presents unto persons conversant with the Vedas, thou canst, O monarch, go to regions higher than heaven itself! It behoves thee not, O Pārtha, to indulge in grief!"[38]

Section XIII.

"Sahadeva said,—'By casting off all external objects only, O Bhārata, one does not attain to success. By casting off even mental attachments, the attainment of success is doubtful.'[1]†

---

* *Antarāla* is thus explained by Nilakantha. The Burdwan translators have quietly dropped it.—T.

† *Cāriram* is contradistinguished from *Vāhyam*. The first is explained as appertaining to or encased in *Carira*, *i. e.*, the mind.—T.

Let that religious merit and that happiness which are his who has cast off external objects but whose mind still internally covets them, be the portion of our foes![2] On the other hand, let that religious merit and that happiness which are his who governs the Earth, having cast off all internal attachments also, be the portion of our friends![3] The word *mama* (mine), consisting of two letters, is Death's self; while the opposite word *na-mama* (not mine), consisting of three letters, is eternal *Brahma*.[4]* *Brahma* and death, O king, entering invisibly into every soul, without doubt, cause all creatures to act.[5] If this being, O Bhārata, that is called Soul, be not ever subject to destruction, then by destroying the bodies of creatures one cannot be guilty of slaughter.[6] If, on the other hand, the soul and the body of a being are born or destroyed together, so that when the body is destroyed the soul also is destroyed, then the way (prescribed in the scriptures) of rites and acts would be futile.[7] Therefore, driving away all doubts about the immortality of the soul, the man of intelligence should adopt that path which has been trodden by the righteous of old and older times.[8] The life of that king is certainly fruitless, who having acquired the entire Earth with her mobile and immobile creatures, does not enjoy her.[9] As regards the man again who lives in the forest upon wild fruits and roots, but whose attachment to things of the Earth has not ceased, such a one, O king, lives within the jaws of Death.[10] Behold, O Bhārata, the hearts and the outward forms of all creatures to be but manifestations of thy own! They that look upon all creatures as their own selves escape from the great fear (of destruction).†[11] Thou art my sire, thou art my protector thou art my brother, and thou art my senior and preceptor! It behoveth thee, therefore, to forgive these incoherent utter-

---

* What Sahadeva wishes to say is that everything that proceeds from selfishness is productive of death, while everything proceeding from an opposite frame of mind leeds to *Brahma* or immortality.—T.

† The meaning entirely depends upon the word *Swabhāvam*, manifestation of self. In the second line, if *Vrittam* be read for *Bhutam*, the sense would remain unaltered. K. P. Singha has translated this verse wrongly —T.

ances in sorrow of a woe-stricken person![12] True or false, this that has been uttered by me, O lord of Earth, has been uttered from a due regard for thee, O best of Bharatas, that I entertain!'"[13]

Section XIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—'When Kunti's son king Yudhishthira the just remained speechless after listening to his brothers who were telling these truths of the Vedas,[1] that foremost of women, viz., Draupadi, of large eyes and great beauty, and noble descent, O monarch, said these words[2] unto that bull among kings seated in the midst of his brothers that resembled so many lions and tigers, and like the leader of an elephantine herd in the midst of a herd of elephants.[3] Ever expectant of loving regards from all her husbands but especially from Yudhishthira, she was always treated with affection and indulgence by the king. Conversant with duties and observant of them in practice,[4] that lady of large hips, casting her eyes on her lord, desired his attention in soothing and sweet words and said as follows.[5]

"Draupadi said,—'These thy brothers, O Pārtha, are crying and drying their palates like *chātakas*, but thou dost not gladden them![6] O monarch, gladden these thy brothers, that resemble infuriate elephants (in prowess), with proper words,—these heroes that have always drunk of the cup of misery![7] Why, O king, while living by the side of the Dwaita lake, didst thou say unto these thy brothers then residing with thee, and suffering from cold and wind and sun, even these words, viz.,—Rushing to battle from desire of victory, we will slay Duryodhana and enjoy the Earth that is capable of granting every wish?[8-9] Depriving great car-warriors of their cars and slaying huge elephants, and strewing the field of battle with the bodies of car-warriors and horsemen and horses, ye chastisers of foes,[10] ye will perform great sacrifices of diverse kinds with presents in profusion! All these sufferings, due to a life of exile in the woods, will then end in happiness![11]—O foremost of all practicers of virtue, having thyself said these words

unto thy brothers then, why, O hero, dost thou depress our hearts now ?[12] A eunuch can never enjoy wealth. A eunuch can never have children even as there can be no fish in a mire (destitute of water) ![13] A Kshatriya without the rod of chastisement can never shine. A Kshatriya without the rod of chastisement can never enjoy the Earth. The subjects of a king that is without the rod of chastisement can never have happiness ![14] Friendship for all creatures, charity, study of the Vedas, penances,—these constitute the duties of a Brāhmana and not of a king, O best of kings ![15] Restraining the wicked, cherishing the honest, and never retreating from battle,—these are the highest duties of kings ![16] He is said to be conversant with duties in whom are forgiveness and wrath, giving and taking, terrors and fearlessness, and chastisement and reward ![17] It was not by study, or gift, or mendicancy, that thou hast acquired the Earth ![18] That force of the enemy, O hero, ready to burst upon thee with all its might, abounding with elephants and horse and cars, strong with three kinds of strength,* protected by Drona and Karna and Açwatthāman and Kripa, has been defeated and slain by thee, O hero ! It is for this that I ask thee to enjoy the Earth ![19-20] (Formerly), O puissant one, thou hadst, O monarch, swayed with might,† the region called Jambu, O tiger among men, abounding with populous districts ![21] Thou hadst also, O ruler of men, swayed with might that other region called Kraunchadwipa situate on the west of the great Meru and equal unto Jambu-dwipa itself ![22] Thou hadst swayed with might, O king, that other region called Cākadwipa on the east of the great Meru and equal to Krauncha-dwipa itself ![23] The region called Bhadrāçwa, on the north of the great Meru and equal to Cākadwipa was also swayed by thee, O tiger among men ![24] Thou hadst

---

* The three kinds of *angas* referred to, as explained by Nilakantha, are (1) the strength that depends on the master, (2) that depending on good counsels, and (3) that depending on the perseverance and the courage of the men themselves. The Burdwan translators have mistranslated the expression, while K. P. Singha has, as usual, quietly dropped it.—T.

† Literally, "crushed with the rod of chastisement."—T.

even penetrated the ocean and swayed with might other regions, too, O hero, and the very islands begirt by the sea and containing many populous provinces![25] Having, O Bhārata, achieved such immeasurable feats, and having obtained (through them) the adorations of the Brāhmanas, how is it that thy soul is not gratified?[26] Seeing these brothers of thine before thee, O Bhārata,—these heroes swelling with might and resembling bulls or infuriate elephants (in prowess),—why dost thou not address them in delightful words?[27] All of you are like celestials! All of you are capable of resisting foes! All of you are competent to scorch your enemies! If only one of you had become by husband, my happiness would even then have been very great![28] What need I say then, O tiger among men, when all of you, numbering five, are my husbands (and look after me) like the five senses inspiring the physical frame?[29] The words of my mother-in-law who is possessed of great knowledge and grest foresight, cannot be untrue! Addressing me, she said,—O princess of Pānchāla, Yudhishthira will ever keep you in happiness, O excellent lady![30]—Having slain many thousands of kings possessed of active prowess, I see, O monarch, that through thy folly thou art about to make that feat futile![31] They whose eldest brother becomes mad, have all to follow him in madness. Through thy madness, O king, all the Pāndavas are about to become mad.[32] If, O monarch, these thy brothers were in their senses, they would then have immured thee with all unbelievers (in a prison) and taken upon themselves the government of the Earth! That person who from dullness of intellect acts in this way never succeeds in winning prosperity.[33] The man that treads along the path of madness should be subjected to medical treatment by the aid of incense and collyrium, of drugs applied through the nose, and of other medicines.[34] O best of the Bharatas, I am the worst of all my sex, since I desire to live on even though I am bereaved of my children![35] Thou shouldst not disregard the words spoken by me and by these brothers of thine that are endeavouring thus (to dissuade thee from thy purpose)! Indeed, abandoning the whole Earth, thou art inviting adversity and danger to come upon thee![36] Thou shinest now, O monarch, even as those two

best of kings, viz., Māndhātri and Amvarisha, regarded by all the lords of Earth, did in former days![37] Protecting thy subjects righteously, govern the goddess Earth with her mountains and forests and islands. Do not, O king, become cheerless![38] Adore the gods in diverse sacrifices! Fight thy foes! Make gifts of wealth and clothes and other objects of enjoyment unto the Brāhmanas, O best of kings!'"[39]

SECTION XV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing these words of Yajnasena's daughter, Arjuna once more spoke, showing proper regard for his mighty-armed eldest brother of unfading glory.[1]

"Arjuna said,—'(The man armed with) the rod of chastisement governs all subjects and protects them. The rod of chastisement is awake when all else is asleep. For this, the wise have characterised the rod of chastisement to be Righteousness itself.[2] The rod of chastisement protects Righteousness and Profit. It protects Pleasure also, O king! For this, the rod of chastisement is identified with the triple objects of life.[3] Corn and wealth are both protected by the rod of chastisement. Knowing this, O thou that art possessed of learning, take up the rod of chastisement and observe the course of the world![4] One class of sinful men desist from sin through fear of the rod of chastisement in the king's hands. Another class desist from similar acts through fear of Yama's rod, and yet another from fear of the next world.[5] Another class of persons desist from sinful acts through fear of society. Thus, O king, in this world, whose course is such, everything is dependent on the rod of chastisement![6] There is a class of persons who are restrained by only the rod of chastisement from devouring one another. If the rod of chastisement did not protect people, they would have sunk in the darkness of hell.[7] The rod of chastisement (*Danda*) has been so named by the wise because it restrains the ungovernable and punishes the wicked.[8] The chastisement of Brāhmanas should be by word of mouth; of Kshatriyas, by giving them only that much of food as would suffice for the support of life; of Vaiçyas, by the imposition

of fines and forfeitures of property, while for Cudras there is no punishment.[9]* For keeping men awake (to their duties) and for the protection of property, ordinances, O king, have been established in the world, under the name of chastisement (or punitive legislation).[10] Thither where Chastisement, of dark complexion and red eyes, stands in an attitude of readiness (to grapple with every offender) and the king is of righteous vision, the subjects never forget themselves.[11] The *Brahmachārin* and the house-holder, the recluse in the forest and the religious mendicant, all these walk in their respective ways through fear of chastisement alone.[12] He that is without any fear, O king, never performs a sacrifice. He that is without fear never giveth away. The man that is without any fear never desires to adhere to any engagement or compact.[13] Without piercing the vitals of others, without achieving the most difficult feats, and without slaying creatures like a fisherman (slaying fish), no person can obtain great prosperity.[14]† Without slaughter, no man has been able to achieve fame in this world or acquire wealth or subjects. Indra himself, by the slaughter of Vritra, became the *great* Indra.[15] Those amongst the gods that are given to slaughtering others are adored much more by men. Rudra, Skanda, Cakra, Agni, Varuna, are all slaughterers.[16] Kāla and Mrityu and Vāyu and Kuvera and Surya, the Vasus, the Maruts, the Sāddhyas, and the Viçwedevas, O Bhārata, are all slaughters.[17] Humbled by their prowess, all people bend to these gods, but not to Brahman or Dhātri or Pushan at any time.[18] Only a few men that are of noble disposition adore in all their acts those among the gods that are equally disposed towards all creatures and

---

* Censure is the only punishment for a Brāhmana offender. A Kshatriya may be punished by taking away all his property, but care should be taken to give him food sufficient for maintaining life. A Vaiçya should be punished by forfeiture of possessions. There is practically no punishment for a Cudra, for being unable to possess wealth, dispossession of wealth cannot be a punishment in his case ; again, service being his duty, the imposition of labour on him cannot be a punishment. For all that, hard work may be imposed upon him.—T.

† A fisherman who would not slay fish would go without food.—T.

that are self-restrained and peaceful.[19] I do not behold the creature in this world that supports life without doing any act of injury to others. Animals live upon animals, the stronger upon the weaker.[20] The mungoose devours mice; the cat devours the mungoose; the dog devours the cat; the dog again is devoured by the spotted leopard.[21] Behold, all things again are devoured by the Destroyer when he comes! This mobile and immobile universe is food for living creatures.[22] This has been ordained by the gods. The man of knowledge, therefore, is never stupified at it. It behoveth thee, O great king, to become that which thou art by birth![23] Foolish (Kshatriyas) alone, restraining wrath and joy, take refuge in the woods. The very ascetics cannot support their lives without killing creatures.[24] In water, on earth, and in fruits, there are innumerable creatures. It is not true that one does not slaughter them. What higher duty is there than supporting one's life?[25]* There are many creatures that are so minute that their existence can only be inferred. With the falling of the eyelids alone, they are destroyed.[26] There are men who subduing wrath and pride betake themselves to ascetic courses of life and leaving villages and towns repair to the woods. Arrived there, those men may be seen to be so stupified as to adopt the domestic mode of life once more.[27] Others may be seen, who (in the observance of domesticity) tilling the soil, uprooting herbs, cutting off trees and killing birds and animals, perform sacrifices and at last attain to heaven.[28] O son of Kunti, I have no doubt in this that the acts of all creatures become crowned with success only when the policy of chastisement is properly applied.[29] If chastisement were abolished from the world, creatures would soon be destroyed. Like fishes in the water, stronger animals prey on the weaker.[30] This truth was formerly spoken by Brahman himself, *viz.*, that chastisement, properly applied, upholds creatures. Behold, the the very fires, when extinguished, blaze up again, in fright, when blown! This is due to the fear of force or chastishment.[31]

---

* The sense is that if in supporting life one kills these creatures, he does not in an way commit sin.—T.

If there were no chastisement in the world distinguishing the good from the bad, then the whole world would have been enveloped in utter darkness and all things would have been confounded.[52] Even they that are breakers of rules, that are atheists and scoffers of the Vedas, afflicted by chastisement, soon become disposed to observe rules and restrictions.[53]* Every one in this world is kept straight by chastisement. A person naturally pure and righteous is scarce. Yielding to the fear of chastisement, man becomes disposed to observe rules and restraints.[54] Chastisement was ordained by the Creator himself for protecting Religion and Profit, for the happiness of all the four orders, and for making them righteous and modest.[55] If chastisement could not inspire fear, then ravens and beasts of prey would have eaten up all other animals and men and the clarified butter intended for sacrifices.[56] If chastisement did not uphold and protect, then nobody would have studied the Vedas, nobody would have milked a milch cow, and no maiden would have married.[57]† If chastisement did not uphold and protect, then ravage and confusion would have set in on every side, and all barriers would have been swept away, and the idea of property would have disappeared.[58] If chastisement did not uphold and protect, people could never duly perform annual sacrifices with large presents.[59] If chastisement did not uphold and protect, no one, to whatever mode of life he might belong, would observe the duties of that mode as declared (in the scriptures), and no one would have succeeded in acquiring knowledge.[60]‡ Neither camels, nor oxen, nor horses, nor mules, nor asses, would, even if yoked thereto, would drag cars and carriages, if chastisement

---

* *Bhogāya* is explained by Nilakantha as *Pālanāya (maryyādāyā)*.

† The meaning seems to be that the milch cow suffers herself to be milked, only through fear of chastisement, and maidens also marry, without practising free love, through fear of chastisement by the king, society, or Yama in the next world.—T.

‡ If this does not come up to the grossness of the doctrine—spare the rod and ruin the child,—it at least is plain that the fear of being regarded a dunce and a fool and of incurring the ridicule or displeasure of the tutor and class-mates, induces one to acquire knowledge.—T.

did not uphold and protect.[41] Upon chastisement depend all creatures. The learned, therefore, say that chastisement is the root of everything. Upon chastisement rests the heaven that men desire, and upon it rests this world also.[42] Thither where foe-destroying chastisement is well applied, no sin, no deception, and no wickedness, is to be seen.[43] If the rod of chastisement be not uplifted, the dog will lick the sacrificial butter. The crow also would take away the first (sacrificial) offering, if that rod were not kept uplifted.[44] Righteously or unrighteously, this kingdom hath now become ours. Our duty now is to abandon grief. Do thou, therefore, enjoy it and perform sacrifices![45] Men that are fortunate, living with their dear wives (and children), eat good food, wear excellent clothes, and cheerfully acquire virtue.[46] All our acts, without doubt, are dependent on wealth; that wealth again is dependent on chastisement. Behold, therefore, the importance of chastisement![47] Duties have been declared for only the maintenance of the relations of the world. There are two things here, *viz.*, abstention from injury and injury prompted by righteous motives. Of these two, that is superior by which righteousness may be acquired.[48]* There is no act that is wholly meritorious, nor any that is wholly wicked. Right or wrong, in all acts, something of both is seen.[49] Subjecting animals to castration, their horns again are cut off. They are then made to bear weights, are tethered, and chastised.[50] In this world that is unsubstantial and rotten with abuses and rendered painful, O monarch, do thou practise the ancient customs of men, following the rules and analogies cited above![51] Perform sacrifices, give alms, protect thy subjects, and practise righteousness! Slay thy foes, O son of Kunti, and protect thy friends![52] Let

---

* The illustration used by the commentator is that it is better to kill the tiger that has invaded the fold than remain quiet for fear of injuring that beast of prey and commit sin. For that slaughter there is merit, for if not slaughtered, the beast will slaughter the kine before the spectator's eyes and the latter would incur sin by passively witnessing the sight. At any rate, to be more general, it is better to injure, says Arjuna, from righteous motives than not to injure from fear of sin.—T.

no cheerlessness be thine, O king, while slaying foes! He that does it, O Bhārata, does not incur the slightest sin![53] He that takes up a weapon and slays an armed foe advancing against him, does not incur the sin of killing a fœtus, for it is the wrath of the advancing foe that provokes the wrath of the slayer.[54] The inner soul of every creature is incapable of being slain. When the soul is incapable of being slain, how then can one be slain by another?[55] As a person enters a new house, even so a creature enters successive bodies.[56] Abandoning forms that are worn out, a creature acquires new forms. People capable of seeing the truth regard this transformation to be death.'"[57]

Section XVI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After the conclusion of Arjuna's speech, Bhimasena of great wrath and energy, mustering all his patience, said these words unto his eldest brother:[1]—'Thou art, O monarch, conversant with all duties! There is nothing unknown to thee! We always wish to imitate thy conduct, but, alas, we cannot do it![2]—*I will not say anything! I will not say anything!*—even this is what I had wished! Impelled, however, by great grief I am constrained to say something! Listen to these words of mine, O ruler of men![3] Through the stupefaction of thy faculties, everything is endangered, and ourselves are being made cheerless and weak![4] How is it that thou that art the ruler of the world, thou that art conversant with all branches of knowledge, sufferest thy understanding to be clouded, in consequence of cheerlessness, like a coward?[5] The righteous and unrighteous paths of the world are known to thee! There is nothing belonging either to the future or the present that is also unknown to thee, O puissant one![6] When such is the case, O monarch, I will indicate, O ruler of men, the reasons in favor of your assuming sovereignty Listen to me with undivided attention![7] There are two kinds of diseases, viz., physical and mental. Each springs from the other. None of them can be seen existing independently.[8] Without doubt, mental diseases spring from

physical ones. Similarly physical diseases spring from mental ones. This is the truth.[9] He that indulgeth in regrets on account of past physical or mental woes, reapeth woe from woe and suffereth double woe.[10] Cold, heat, and wind,—these three are the attributes of the body.* Their existence in harmony is the sign of health.[11] If one of the three prevails over the rest, remedies have been laid down. Cold is checked by heat, and heat is checked by cold.[12] Goodness, passion, and darkness are the three atributes of the mind. The existence of these three in harmony is the sign of (mental) health.[13] If one of these prevails over the rest, remedies have been prescribed. Grief is checked by joy, and joy is checked by grief.[14] One, living in the present enjoyment of this, wishes to recollect his past woes. Another, living in the present suffering of woe, wishes to recollect his past bliss.[15] Thou, however, wert never sad in grief or glad in bliss.† Thou shouldst not, therefore, use thy memory for becoming sad during times of bliss, or glad during times of woe. It seems that Destiny is all-powerful. Or, if it be thy nature, in consequence of which thou art thus afflicted,[16-17] how is it that it does not behove thee to recollect the sight thou sawest before, viz., the scantily-clad Krishnā dragged, while in her season, before the assembly ?‡[18] Why does it not behove thee to recollect our expulsion from the (Kuru) city and our exile (into the woods) dressed in deer-skins, as also our living in the great forests ?[19] Why hast thou forgotten the woes inflicted by Jatāsura, the battle with Chitrasena, and the distress suffered at the hands of the Sindhu king ?[20] Why hast thou forgotten the kick received by the princess Draupadi from Kichaka while

* Otherwise named Phlegm, bile, and wind.—T.

† The sense is that thou wert ever superior to joy and grief and never sufferedst thyself to be elated with joy or depressed with grief.—T.

‡ The argument seems to be this : if it is thy nature to call back thy woes even when happiness is before thee, why dost thou not then recollect the insult to our wife ? The recollection of this insult will fill thee with wrath and convince thee that in slaying thy foes,—those insulters of thy wife,—thou hast acted very properly.—T.

we were living in concealment ?[21] A fierce battle, O chastiser of foes, like that which thou hast fought with Bhishma and Drona is now before thee, to be fought, (however) with thy mind alone ![22] Indeed, that battle is now before thee in which there is no need of arrows, of friends, of relatives and kinsmen, but which will have to be fought with thy mind alone ![23] If thou givest up thy life-breaths before conquering in this battle, then, assuming another body, thou shalt have to fight these very foes again ![24]* Therefore, fight that battle this very day, O bull of Bharata's race, disregarding the concerns of thy body, and aided by thy own acts, conquer and identify thyself with thy mind's foe ![†][25] If thou canst not win that battle, what will be thy condition ? On the other hand, by winning it, O monarch, thou shalt have attained the great end of life ![26] Applying thy intellect to this, and ascertaining the right and the wrong paths of creatures, follow thou the course adopted by thy sires before thee and govern properly thy kingdom.[27] By good luck, O king, the sinful Duryodhana hath been slain with all his followers ! By good luck, thou too hast attained to the condition of Draupadi's locks.[‡][28] Perform with due rites and profuse presents the

---

* The meaning is that in consequence of thy abandonment of prosperity and kingdom and, therefore, of the means of effecting thy salvation by sacrifice and gifts and other acts of piety, thou shalt have to be re-born and to renew this mental battle *with thy doubts.*—T.

† This is a difficult verse, and I am not sure that I have understood it correctly. *Gantavyam* is explained by Nilakantha as connected with *paramavyaktarupasya.* According to Nilakantha, this means that thou shouldst go to, *i. e.*, conquer, and identify thyself with, the *param* or foe of that which is of unmanifest form, *viz.*, the mind ; of course, this would mean that Yudhishthira should identify himself with his own soul, for it is the soul which is his foe and with which he is battling. Such conquest and identification implies the cessation of the battle and, hence, the attainment of tranquillity.—T.

‡ *The condition of Draupadi's locks,*—*i. e.*, thou hast been restored to thy normal condition. Draupadi had kept her locks dishevelled since the day they had been seized by Dusçāsana. After the slaughter of the Kurus, those locks were bound up as before, or restored to their normal condition.—T.

horse-sacrifice. We are thy servants, O son of Prithā, as also Vāsudeva of great energy !' "[29]

SECTION XVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Discontent, heedlessness, attachment to earthly goods, the absence of tranquility, might, folly, vanity, and anxiety,'—affected by these sins, O Bhima, thou covetest soveriegnty ! Freed from desire, prevailing over joy and grief and attaining to tranquillity, strive thou to be happy ![2] That peerless monarch who will govern this unbounded Earth, will have but one stomach ! Why dost thou then applaud this course of life ?[3] One's desires, O bull of Bharata's race, are incapable of being filled in a day, or in many months. Desire, which is incapable of gratification, cannot, indeed, be filled in course of one's whole life.[4] Fire, when fed with fuel, blazeth forth ; when not so fed, it is extinguished. Do thou, therefore, extinguish with little food the fire in thy stomach when it appears.[5] He that is bereft of wisdom seeks much food for his stomach. Conquer thy stomach first. (Thou shalt then be able to conquer the Earth). The Earth being conquered, that which is for thy permanent good will then be won by thee ![6] Thou applaudest worldly desires and enjoyments and prosperity. They, however, that have renounced all enjoyments and reduced their bodies by penances, attain to regions of beatitude.[7] The acquisition and preservation of kingdom is attended with both righteousness and unrighteousness. The desire for them exists in thee. Free thyself, however, from thy great burthens, and adopt Renunciation.[8] The tiger, for filling one stomach of his, slaughters many animals. Other animals destitute of strength and moved by covetousness live upon the tiger's prey.[9]* If kings, accepting earthly possessions, practise

---

* The Bengal tiger acts as a fisher to both animals and men. When the tiger goes on a fishing expedition, what it usually does is to catch large fishes from shallow streams and throw them landwards far from the water's edge. The poor beast is very often followed, unperceived, by the smaller carnivorous animals, and sometimes by bands of fishermen. I have seen large fishes with the claw-marks of the tiger on them exposed for sale in a village market.—T.

Renunciation, they can never have contentment. Behold the loss of understanding that is noticeable in them![10] As a matter of fact, however, they who subsist on leaves of trees, or use two stones only or their teeth alone for husking their grain, or live upon water only or air alone, succeed in conquering hell.[11]* That king who rules this wide unbounded Earth, and that person who regards gold and pebbles equally, amongst these two, the latter is said to have attained the object of his life and not the former.[12] Depending, therefore, upon that which is the eternal refuge of joy both here and hereafter, cease thou to act and hope with respect to thy wishes and cease to bear attachment to them.[13] They that have given up desire and enjoyment have never to grieve. Thou, however, grievest for enjoyments.† Discarding desire and enjoyment, thou mayst succeed in liberating thyself from false speech.[14]‡ There are but two well-known paths (for us), *viz.*, the path of the *Pitris* and the path of the gods. They that perform sacrifices go by the *Pitri*-path, while they that are for salvation, go by the god-path.[15]¶ By penances, by *Brahmacharyya*, by study (of the Vedas), the great *Rishis*, casting off their bodies, proceed to regions that are above the power of Death.[16] Worldly enjoyments have been styled as bonds. They have also been called Action. Liberated from those two sins, (*viz.*, bonds and action), one attains to the highest end.[17] Mention is made of a verse sung (of old) by Janaka who was freed from the pairs of opposites, liberated from desire and enjoyments, and observant of the religion of *Moksha*.[18] (That verse runs thus:)—My

---

* The sense seems to be that unless kings perform such penances they cannot escape hell. Such penances, however, are impossible for them as long as they are in the midst of luxuries. To accept wealth and not use it, therefore, is impracticable.—T.

† *I. e.*, Thou art not liberated from desire.—T.

‡ The false speech, in this instance, consists in professing one's self to be really unattached while enjoying wealth and power, *i. e.*, the hypocritical profession of Renunciation in the midst of luxuries. As already said by Yudhishthira, such Renunciation is impracticable.—T.

¶ The path of the *Pitris* means the course of Vedic rites by which one attains to bliss hereafter. The path of the gods means the abandonment of religious rites for contemplation and pious conduct.—T.

treasures are immense, yet I have nothing! If again the whole of Mithilā were burnt and reduced to ashes, nothing of mine will be burnt!'[19]—As a person on the hill-top looketh down upon men on the plain below, so he that has got up on the top of the mansion of knowledge, seeth people grieving for things that do not call for grief. He, however, that is of foolish understanding, does not see this.[20] He who, casting his eyes on visible things, really seeth them, is said to have eyes and understanding. The faculty called understanding is so called because of the knowledge and comprehension it gives of unknown and incomprehensible things.[21] He who is acquainted with the words of persons that are learned, that are of cleansed souls, and that have attained to a state of *Brahma*, succeeds in obtaining great honors.[22] When one seeth creatures of infinite diversity to be all one and the same and to be but diversified emanations from the same essence, one is then said to have attained *Brahma*.[23]* Those who reach this high state of culture attain to that supreme and blissful end, and not they who are without knowledge, or they who are of little and narrow souls, or they who are bereft of understanding, or they who are without penances. Indeed, everything rests on the (cultivated) understanding!'"[24]

SECTION XVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"When Yudhishthira, after saying these words, became silent, Arjuna, afflicted by that speech of the king, and burning with sorrow and grief, once more addressed his eldest brother, saying,[1]—'People recite this old history, O Bhārata, about the discourse between the ruler of the Videhas and his queen.[2] That history has reference to the words which the grief-stricken spouse of the ruler of the Vide-

---

* This truth has been expressed in various forms of language in various passages of the Mahābhārata. The fact is, the unification of infinite variety and its identification with the Supreme Soul is attainment of *Brahma*. One, therefore, that has attained to *Brahma* ceases to regard himself as separate from the rest of the universe. Selfishness, the root of sin and injury, disappears from him.—T.

has had said to her lord when the latter, abandoning his kingdom, had resolved to lead a life of mendicancy.[3] Casting off wealth and children and wives and precious possessions of various kinds and the established path for acquiring religious merit and fire itself,* king Janaka shaved his head (and assumed the garb of a mendicant).[4] His dear spouse beheld him deprived of wealth, installed in the observance of the vow of mendicancy, resolved to abstain from inflicting any kind of injury on others, free from vanity of every kind, and prepared to subsist upon a handful of barley fallen off from the stalk (and to be got by picking the grains from crevices in the field).[5] Approaching her lord at a time when no one was with him, the queen, endued with great strength of mind, fearlessly and in wrath, told him these words fraught with reason:[6]—Why hast thou adopted a life of mendicancy, abandoning thy kingdom full of wealth and corn? A handful of fallen off barley cannot be proper for thee![7] Thy resolution tallies not with thy acts,† since abandonding thy large kingdom thou covetest, O king, a handful of grain![8] With this handful of barley, O king, shalt thou succeed in gratifying thy guests, gods, *Rishis*, and *Pitris*? This thy labour, therefore, is bootless![9] Alas, abandoned by all these, viz., gods, guests, and *Pitris*, thou leadest a life of wandering mendicancy, O king, having cast off all action![10] Thou wert, before this, the supporter of thousands of Brāhmanas versed in the three Vedas and of many more besides! How canst thou desire to beg of them thy own food today?[11] Abandoning thy blazing prosperity, thou castest thy eyes around like a dog (for his food)! Thy mother hath today been made sonless by thee, and thy spouse, the princess of Koçala, a widow![12] These helpless Kshatriyas, expectant of fruit and religious merit, wait upon thee, placing all their hopes on thee![13] By killing those hopes of theirs, to what regions shalt thou go, O king, especially when salvation is doubtful and creatures are dependent on

---

* *I. e.*, Sacrifices.—T.

† Litterally, 'thy resolution is of one kind, while thy acts are of another kind!'—T.

actions?[14]* Sinful as thou art, thou hast neither this world nor the other, since thou wishest to live, having cast off thy wedded wife?†[15] Why, indeed, dost thou lead a life of wandering mendicancy, abstaining from all actions, after having abandoned garlands and perfumes and ornaments and robes of diverse kinds?[16] Having been, as it were, a large and sacred lake unto all creatures, having been a mighty tree worthy of adoration (and granting its shelter unto all), alas, how canst thou wait upon and worship others?[17] If even an elephant desist from all work, carnivorous creatures coming in packs and innumerable worms would eat it up. What need be said of thyself that art so powerless?[18]‡ How couldst thy heart be set on that mode of life which recommends an earthen pot, and a triple-headed stick, and which forces one to abandon his very clothes[19] and which permits the acceptance of only a handful of barley after abandonment of everything? If, again, thou sayest that kingdom and a handful of barley are the same to thee, then why dost thou abandon the former![20] If, again, a handful of barley becomes an object of attachment with thee, then thy original resolution (of abandoning everything) falls to the ground! If, again, thou canst act up to thy resolution of abandoning everything, then who am I to thee, who art thou to me, and what can be thy grace to me?¶[21] If thou beest inclined to grace, rule then this Earth! They that are desirous of happiness but are very poor and indigent and abandoned

---

* *Paratantreshu* is explained by Nilakantha as "dependent on destiny." If this means the fate that connects one's present life with the acts of a former one, the explanation is not incorrect. The more obvious meaning, however, is "dependent on action."—T.

† A wedded wife is the companion of one's religious acts.—T.

‡ Thou shouldst not, therefore, abandon action.—T.

¶ The meaning seems to be this: if a person can truly act up to his resolution of complete renunciation of everything, then that person stands alone in the midst of the world. and he is nobody's, and nobody is his. Hence, he can neither be pleased nor displeased with any one. King Janaka's abandonment, therefore, of wife and kingdom, is inconsistent with that perfect Renunciation or withdrawal of self within self. He might continue to enjoy his possessions without being at all attached to or affected by them.—T.

by friends may adopt Renunciation.[22] But he who imitates those men by abandoning palatial mansions and beds and vehicles and robes and ornaments, acts improperly, indeed.[23] One always accepts gifts made by others: another always makes gifts. Thou knowest the difference between the two. Who, indeed, of these two should be regarded superior?[24] If a gift be made to one who always accepts gifts, or to one that is possessed of pride, that gift becomes bootless like the clarified butter that is poured upon a forest-conflagration.[25]* As a fire, O king, never dies till it has consumed all that has been thrown into it, even so a beggar can never be silenced till he receives a donative.[26] In this world, the food that is given by a charitable person is the sure support of the pious. If, therefore, the king does not give (food), where will the pious that are desirous of salvation go?[27]† They that have food (in their houses) are house-holders. Mendicants are supported by them. Life flows from food. Therefore, the giver of food is the giver of life.[28] Coming out from among those that lead a domestic mode of life, mendicants depend upon those very persons from whom they come. Those self-restrained men, by doing this, acquire and enjoy fame and power.[29] One is not to be called a mendicant for his having only renounced his possessions, or for his having only adopted a life of dependence on eleemosynary charity. He who renounces the possessions and pleasures of the world in a sincere frame of mind is to be regarded a true mendicant.[30]‡ Unattached at heart though attached in outward show, standing aloof from the world, having broken all his bonds, and regarding friend and foe equally, such a man, O king, is regarded to be emancipate![31] Having shaved their heads clean and adopted the brown robe, men may be seen to betake themselves to a life of wandering

---

* Such libations, to be efficacious, ought to be poured upon fires properly kindled with *mantras*.—T.

† Therefore, Janaka should resume his kingdom and practise charity; otherwise, religious mendicants would be undone.—T.

‡ Such a man might rule even a kingdom without forfeiting his title to be regarded a mendicant, for he might rule without attachment.—T.

mendicancy, though bound by various ties and though ever on the look out for bootless wealth.[32] They who, casting off the three Vedas, their usual occupations, and children, adopt a life of mendicancy by taking up the triple-headed crutch and the brown robe, are really persons of little understanding.[33] Without having cast off wrath and other faults, the adoption of only the brown robe, know, O king, is due to the desire of earning the means of sustenance! Those persons of clean-shaved heads that have set up the banner of virtue, have this only (viz., the acquisition of sustenance) for their object in life.[34] Therefore, O king, keeping thy passions under control, do thou win regions of bliss hereafter by supporting them that are truly pious amongst men of matted locks or clean-shaved heads, naked or clad in rags, or skins or brown robes![35] Who is there that is more virtuous than he who maintains his sacred fire, who performs sacrifices with presents of animals and *Dakshinā*, and who practises charity day and night?[36]'—

"Arjuna continued,—'King Janaka is regarded to have been a truth-knowing person in this world. Even he, in this matter, (viz., the ascertainment of duty) had become stupified. Do not yield to stupefaction![37] Even thus the duties of Domesticity are observed by persons practising charity. By abstaining from injuries of all kinds, by casting off desire and wrath,[38] by being engaged in protecting all creatures, by observing the excellent duty of charity, and lastly by cherishing superiors and persons of age, we shall succeed in attaining such regions of bliss as we like.[39] By duly gratifying gods, guests, and all creatures, by worshipping Brāhmanas, and by truthfulness of speech, we shall certainly attain to desirable regions of bliss.'"[40]

Section XIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I am conversant with both the Vedas and the scriptures that lead to the attainment of *Brahma*. In the Vedas there are precepts of both kinds, viz., those that inculcate action and those that inculcate renouncement of action.[1] The scriptures are confounding and their conclusions

are based upon reasons. The truth, however, that is in the *Mantras*, is duly known to me.[2] Thou art conversant only with weapons and observant of the practices of heroes. Thou art unable to understand truly the sense of the scriptures![3] If thou wert really acquainted with duty, then thou couldst have understood that words such as these ought not to have been addressed to me by even one possessed of the clearest insight into the meaning of the scriptures and acquainted with the truths of religion.[4] That, however, which thou hast said unto me, induced by fraternal affection, has been fit and proper, O son of Kunti! I am, for that, gratified with thee, O Arjuna![5] There is no one equal to thee in the three worlds in all duties connected with battle and in skill in respect of diverse kinds of acts.[6] Thou mayst, therefore, speak of the subtilities connected with those subjects,—subtilities, that is, that are impenetrable by others. It behoveth thee not, however, O Dhananjaya, to doubt my intelligence![7] Thou art conversant with the science of battle, but thou hast never waited upon the aged. Thou knowest not the conclusions arrived at by those that have studied the subject in brief and in detail! Even this is the conclusion of intelligent men whose understandings are bent on achieving salvation, viz., that amongst ascetic penances, renunciation, and knowledge of *Brahma*, the second is superior to the first, and the third is superior to the second.[8-9] This, however, that thou thinkest, viz., that there is nothing superior to wealth, is an error. I will convince thee of it, so that wealth may not again appear to thee in that light.[10] All men that are righteous are seen to be devoted to ascetic penances and the study of the Vedas. The *Rishis* also, that have many eternal regions for them, have the merit of penances.[11] Others possessed of tranquillity of soul, having no enemies, and dwelling in the woods, have, through penances and study of the Vedas, proceeded to heaven.[12] Pious men, by restraining desire for worldly possessions, and casting off that darkness which is born of folly, proceed northward (*i. e.*, by luminous paths) to the regions reserved for practicers of of Renunciation.[13] The path that lies to the south and that leads to regions of light *i. e.*, lunar regions), are reserved for

men devoted to action. These are attained by persons subject to birth and death.[14] That end, however, which persons desirous of salvation have before their eyes, is indescribable. *Yoga* is the best means for attaining to it. It is not easy to explain it (to thee)![15] Those that are learned live, reflecting on the scriptures from desire of finding what is unreal. They are, however, often led away to this and to that in the belief that the object of their search exists in this and that.[16] Having mustered, however, the Vedas, the *Aranyakas*, and the other scriptures, they miss the real like men failing to find solid timber in an uprooted banana plant.[17] Some there are who, disbelieving in its unity, regard the Soul, that dwells in this physical frame consisting of the five elements, to be possessed of the attributes of desire and aversion (and others).[18]* Incapable of being seen by the eye, exceedingly subtile, and inexpressible by words, it revolves in a round (of rebirths) among the creatures of the Earth, keeping before it that which is the root of action.[19]† Having made the Soul advance towards itself which is the spring of every kind of blessedness, having restrained all desires of the mind, and having cast off all kinds of action, one may become perfectly independent and happy.[20] When there is such a path that is trod by the righteous and that is attainable by Knowledge, why, O Arjuna, dost thou applaud wealth which is full of every kind of calamity?[21] Men of olden times that were conversant with the scriptures, O Bhārata,—men that were always engaged in gifts and sacrifices and action, were of this opinion, O Bhārata![22] There are

---

* Refers to the well-known definition of the soul or mind in the *Nāya* philosophy, which says that it is distinguished by the attributes of desire, aversion, and will, pleasure and pain, and the cognitive faculties.

† The soul, though really bereft of attributes, nevertheless revolves in a round among creatures, *i. e.*, enters other bodies on the dissolution of those previously occupied. The reason of this round or continual journey is *Avidyā* or illusion, *viz.*, that absence of true knowledge in consequence of which men engage themselves in action. When freed from this *Avidyā*, action ceases, and the soul becomes displayed in its true nature, which consists in the absence of all attributes.—T.

some fools who, accomplished in the science of argumentation, deny the existence of the Soul, in consequence of the strength of their convictions of a previous life. It is very difficult to make them accept this truth about final emancipation.[23]* Those wicked men, though possessed of great learning, travel all over the Earth, making speeches in assemblies, and deprecating the true doctrine about emancipation.[24] O Pārtha, who else will succeed in understanding that which we do not understand? Indeed, (as those men cannot understand the true meaning of the scriptures), similarly they cannot succeed in knowing those wise and pious persons that are truly great and that have deep acquaintance with the scriptures.[25] O son of Kunti, men acquainted with truth obtain *Brahma* by asceticism and intelligence, and great happiness by Renunciation.[26]' "

Section XX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After Yudhishthira had stopped, the great ascetic Devasthāna, possessed of eloquence, said these words, fraught with reason, unto the king.[1]

"Devasthāna said,—'Phālguna has told thee that there is nothing superior to wealth. I shall discourse to thee on that subject. Listen to me with undivided attention![2] O Ajātaçatru, thou hast righteously won the Earth. Having won her, it behoves thee not, O king, to abandon her without cause![3] Four modes of life are indicated in the Vedas. Do thou, O king, duly pass through them, one after another![4] At present thou shouldst, therefore, perform great sacrifices with profuse presents! Amongst the very *Rishis*, some are engaged in the sacrifice represented by Vedic study, and some in that represented by knowledge.[5] Therefore, O Bhārata, thou must know that the very ascetics also are addicted to action! The

---

* *Hetumantah Panditah* means—learned in the science of reasoning; *Dridhapurve* is explained by Nilkantha as persons endued with strong convictions of a past life; *Sudurāvartah* means difficult of being made to understand.—T.

Vaikhānasās, however, are said to preach[6] that he who does not seek for wealth is superior to him that seeks for it.* I think that he who would follow that precept would incur many faults.[7] Men collect together diverse things (for the performance of sacrifices) simply because of the (Vedic) ordinance. He who, tainted by his own understanding, giveth away wealth to an undeserving person without giving it to the deserving, doth not know that he incurs the sin of killing a fœtus.†[8] The exercise of the duty of charity after discriminating the deserving from the undeserving is not easy.[9] The supreme Ordainer created wealth for Sacrifice, and He created man also for taking care of that wealth and for performing Sacrifice. For this reason, the whole of one's wealth should be applied to sacrifice. Pleasure would follow from it as a natural consequence.[10] Possessed of abundant energy, Indra, by the performance of diverse sacrifices with profuse gifts of valuables, surpassed all the gods. Having got their chiefship by that means, he shineth in heaven. Therefore, everything should be applied to Sacrifices.[11] Clad in deer-skins, the high-souled Mahādeva, having poured his own self as a libation in the sacrifice called *Sarva*, became the first of gods, and surpassing all creatures in the universe and prevailing over them by means of that achievement, shines in resplendence.[12] King Marutta, the son of Avikshit, by the profusion of his wealth, vanquished Cakra himeslf, the chief of the gods. In the great sacrifice he performed, all the vessels were of gold, and Cree-

---

* The sense is that instead of performing sacrifices after acquisition of wealth, it is better not to perform sacrifices if they cannot be performed without wealth. Nilakantha, by interpreting *Dhanahetu* as sacrifices which have wealth for the means of their accomplishment, would come to this meaning directly.—T.

† The last line of 8 and the first line of 9 are to be taken together; *ātmānam* is explained by Nilakantha as meaning something that is regarded as dear as self, *i. e.*, wealth. Such a person incurs the sin of killing a fœtus, because that sin proceeds from killing one's own self. Improper use of wealth is, of course, regarded as killing one's own self.—T.

herself came in person.[13] Thou hast heard that the great king Harishchandra, having performed sacrifices, earned great merit and great happiness. Though a man, he nevertheless vanquished Cakra by his wealth. For this reason everything should be applied to Sacrifice.' "[14]

SECTION XXI.

"Devasthāna said,—'In this connection is cited an old history, viz., the discourse that Vrihaspati, asked by Indra, delivered unto him.[1] Vrihaspati said,—Contentment is the highest heaven, contentment is the highest bliss. There is nothing higher than contentment. Contentment stands as the highest.[2] When one draws away all his desires like a tortoise drawing in all his limbs, then the natural resplendence of his soul soon manifests itself.[3] When one does not fear any creature, nor any creature is frightened at one, when one conquers one's desire and aversion, then is one said to behold one's soul.[4] When one, in deed, word, and thought, seeks to injure nobody and cherish no desire, one is said to attain to *Brahma*.[5] Thus, O son of Kunti, whatever religion is followed by creatures, they obtain corresponding fruits. Awaken thyself by this consideration, O Bhārata![6]* Some praise Peacefulness, some praise Exertion; some there are that praise Contemplation; and some praise both Peacefulness and Exertion.† Some praise Sacrifice; others, Renunciation. Some praise gifts; others, acceptance.[7-8] Some, abandoning everything, live in silent meditation. Some praise sovereignty and the cherishing of subjects,[9] after slaying, cutting, and piercing

---

* The *Crutis* declare that he who frightens others is frightened himself; while he who frightens not, is not himself frightened. The fruits won by a person correspond with his practices. Yudhishthira is, therefore, exhorted to take the sovereignty, for sovereignty, righteously exercised and without attachment, will crown him with bliss hereafter.—T.

† *Naikam na chāpare* is explained by Nilakantha thus. Literally, this means that "it is not that others do not (praise) *ekam* or contemplation," *i. e.*, some there are that praise contemplation or meditation.—T.

(foes). Some are for passing their days in retirement. Observing all this, the conclusion of the learned is[10] that that religion which consists in not injuring any creature is worthy of the approbation of the righteous. Abstention from injury, truthfulness of speech, justice, compassion, self-restraint,[11] procreation (of offspring) upon one's own wives, amiability, modesty, patience,—the practice of these is the best of all religions as said by the self-create Manu himself. Therefore, O son of Kunti, do thou observe this religion with care![12] That Kshatriya, who, conversant with the truths of royal duties, takes sovereignty upon himself, restraining his soul at all times, equally regarding that which is dear and that which is not, and subsisting upon the remains of sacrificial feasts,[13] who is engaged in restraining the wicked and cherishing the righteous, who obliges his subjects to tread in the path of virtue and who himself treads in that path,[14] who at last transmits his crown to his son and batakes himself to the woods, there to live on the products of the wilderness and act according to the ordinances of the Vedas after having cast off all idleness,[15]—that Kshatriya who conducts himself thus, conforming in everything to the well-known duties of kings,—is sure to obtain excellent fruits in both this world and the next. That final emancipation, of which thou speakest, is exceedingly difficult to obtain, and its pursuit is attended with many impediments.[16] They that adopt such duties and practise charity and ascetic penances, that are possessed of the quality of compassion and are freed from desire and wrath,[17] that are engaged in ruling their subjects with righteousness and fighting for the sake of kine and Brāhmanas, attain hereafter to a high end.[18] For this the Rudras, with the Vasus and the Ādityas, O scorcher of foes, and the Sāddhyas and hosts of kings adopt this religion. Practising without heedlessness the duties inculcated by that religion, they attain to heaven through those acts of theirs.' "[19]

Section XXII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After this, Arjuna once more addressed his eldest brother of unfading glory, viz., king Yudhishthira of cheerless heart, and said these words :'—'O thou that art conversant with every kind of duty, having by the practice of Kshatriya duties obtained sovereignty that is so very difficult of acquisition, and having conquered all thy foes, why dost thou burn in grief ?[2] O king, as regards Kshatriyas, death in battle is regarded more meritorious for them than the performance of diverse sacrifices. It is so declared in the ordinance that lays down the duties of Kshatriyas.[3] Penances and Renunciation are the duties of Brāhmanas. Even this is the ordinance (affecting the two orders) about the next world. Indeed, O puissant one, death in battle is laid down for Kshatriyas.[4] The duties of Kshatriyas are exceedingly fierce and are always connected with the use of weapons, and it has been laid down, O chief of the Bharatas, that they should, when the time comes, perish by weapons on the field of battle.[5] The life of even a Brāhmana, O king, that lives in the observance of Kshatriya duties, is not censurable, for Kshatriyas also have sprung from Brahman.[6] Neither Renunciation, nor Sacrifice, nor Penances, nor dependence on the wealth of others, O ruler of men, has been ordained for Kshatriyas![7] Thou art acquainted with all duties and thou art of righteous soul, O bull of Bharata's race! Thou art a wise king, skilled in all acts. Thou canst distinguish what is right in this world from what is wrong![8] Casting off this cheerlessness caused by repentance, address thyself with a strong will to action. The heart of a Kshatriya especially is hard as thunder.[9] Having by the excercise of Kshatriya duties vanquished thy foes and acquired empire without a thorn in its side, conquer thy soul, O ruler of men, and be engaged in the performance of sacrifices and the practice of charity![10] Indra himself, though a Brāhmana, became a Kshatriya in his acts, and battled with his sinful kinsfolk for eight hundred and ten times.[11] Those acts of his, O

monarch, are adorable and worthy of praise. Through them he obtained, as we have heard, the chiefship of the gods.[12] Do thou, therefore, O monarch, perform sacrifices with profuse presents even as Indra did, O ruler of men, and thereby free thyself from thy fever.[13] Do not, O bull among Kshatriyas, grieve thus for what is past! They that have been slain have attained to the highest end, sanctified by weapons and agreeably to the ordinances of the Kshatriya religion.[14] That which has happened was ordained to happen. Destiny, O tiger among kings, is incapable of being resisted!'"[15]

Section XXIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thus addressed by Arjuna of curly hair, the Kuru king born of Kunti remained speechless. Then the Island-born (Vyāsa) said these words.[1]

"Vyāsa said,—'The words of Arjuna, O amiable Yudhishthira, are true. The highest religion, as declared by the scriptures, depends on the duties of domesticity.[2] Thou art acquainted with all duties! Do thou then duly practise the duties prescribed for thee (viz., the duties of domesticity)! A life of retirement in the woods, casting off the duties of domesticity, has not been laid down for thee![3] The gods, *Pitris*, guests, and servants, all depend (for their sustenance) upon the person leading a life of domesticity. Do thou then support all these, O lord of Earth![4] Birds and animals and various other creatures, O ruler of men, are supported by men leading domestic lives. He, therefore, that belongs to that mode of life, is superior (to all others).[5] A life of domesticity is the most difficult of all the four modes of life. Do thou practise that mode of life then, O Pārtha, which is difficult of being practised by persons of unrestrained senses.[6] Thou hast a good knowledge of all the Vedas. Thou hast earned great ascetic merit. It behoveth thee, therefore, to bear like an ox the burthen of thy ancestral kingdom![7] Penances, sacrifices, forgiveness, learning, mendicancy, keeping the senses under control, contemplation, living in solitude, contentment, and knowledge (of *Brahma*), should, O king,

be striven after by Brāhmanas to the best of their ability for the attainment of success.[8] I shall now tell thee the duties of Kshatriyas. They are not unknown to thee! Sacrifice, learning, exertion, ambition,* wielding 'the rod of punishment fierceness, protection of subjects,[9] knowledge of the Vedas, practise of all kinds of penances, goodness of conduct, acquisition of wealth, and gifts to deserving persons,[10]—these, O king, well performed and acquired by persons of the royal order, secure for them both this world and the next, as heard by us.[11] Amongst these, O son of Kunti, wielding the rod of chastisement has been said to be the foremost. Strength must always reside in a Kshatriya, and upon strength depends chastisement.[12] Those duties that I have mentioned are, O king, the principal ones for Kshatriyas and contribute greatly to their success. Vrihaspati, in this connection, sang this verse:[13] —Like a snake devouring a mouse, the Earth devours a king that is inclined to peace and a Brāhmana that is exceedingly attached to a life of domesticity![14]—It is heard again that the royal sage Sudyumna, only by wielding the rod of chastisement, obtained the highest success, like Daksha himself, the son of Prachetas.'[15]

"Yudhishthira said,—'O holy one, by what acts did Sudyumna, that lord of Earth, obtain the highest success? I desire to hear the history of that king!'[16]

"Vyāsa said,—'In this connection is cited this old history. There were two brothers, viz., Cankha and Likhita, of rigid vows.[17] The two brothers had two separate dwellings both of which were beautiful. Situate by the bank of the stream called Vāhudā, both of those residences were adorned with trees that were always burthened with flowers and fruits.[18] Once on a time Likhita came to the residence of his brother Cankha. At that time, however, Cankha had gone out of his asylum on no fixed purpose.[19] Arrived at the asylum of his brother, Likhita plucked many ripe fruits.[20] Obtaining them the regenerate Likhita began to eat them without any qualms of conscience. While still employed in the act of eating,

* Literally, the absence of contentment with present prosperity.—T.

Cankha came back to his retreat.[21] Beholding him eating, Cankha addressed his brother, saying,—Whence have these fruits been obtained and for what reason art thou eating them ?[22]—Approaching his elder brother and saluting him, Likhita smilingly replied, saying,—I have taken them even from this retreat.[23]—Filled with great rage, Cankha said unto him, —Thou hast committed theft by thyself taking these fruits ![24] Go and approaching the king confess to him what thou hast done ! Tell him,—[O best of kings, I have committed the offence of appropriating what was not given to me ![25] Knowing me for a thief and observing the duty of thy order, do thou soon inflict upon me, O ruler of men, the punishment of a thief !][26]—Thus addressed, the highly blessed Likhita of rigid vows, at the command of his brother, proceeded to king Sudyumna.[27] Hearing from his gate-keepers that Likhita had come, king Sudyumna, with his counsellors, advanced (for receiving the sage).[28] Meeting with him, the king addressed that foremost of all persons conversant with duties, saying,— Tell me, O reverend one, the reason of thy coming ! Regard it as already accomplished ![29]—Thus questioned, that regenerate sage said unto Sudyumna,—Do thou promise first that thou wilt achieve it ! It will then behove thee, after hearing me, to accomplish that promise ![30] O bull among men, I ate some fruits that had not been given me by my elder brother ! Do thou, O monarch, punish me for it without delay ![31]—Sudyumna answered,—If the king be regarded as competent to wield the rod of chastisement, he should be regarded, O bull among Brahmanas, as equally competent to pardon.[32] Purified in respect of thy act, O thou of high vows, consider thyself as pardoned ! Tell me now what other wishes thou hast ! I shall certainly accomplish those commands of thine ![33]—'

"Vyāsa continued,—'Thus honored by the high-souled king, the regenerate sage Likhita, however, did not solicit him for any other favor.[34] Then that ruler of Earth caused the two hands of the high-souled Likhita to be cut off, whereupon the latter, bearing the punishment, went away.[35] Returning to his brother Cankha, Likhita, in great affliction, said,— It behoveth thee now to pardon this wretched wight that

hath been duly punished (for what he did)![36]—Cankha said,—I am not angry with thee, nor hast thou injured me, O foremost of all persons conversant with duties! Thy virtue, however, had suffered a shock. I have rescued thee from that plight![37] Proceed without delay to the river Vāhudā and gratify duly, with oblations of water, the gods, *Rishis*, and the *Pitris*, and never again set thy heart on sin![38]—Hearing these words of Cankha, Likhita performed his ablutions in the sacred stream and set about for commencing the water-rite.[39] Upon this, two hands, resembling two lotuses, appeared at the extremeties of his stumps. Filled with wonder he came back to his brother and showed him the two hands.[40] Cankha said unto him,—All this has been accomplished by me through my penances! Do not be surprised at it! Providence hath been the instrument here![41]—Likhita answered,—O thou of great splendour, why didst thou not purify me at first, when, O best of regenerate ones, such was the energy of thy penances?[42]—Cankha said,—I should not have acted otherwise. I am not thy chastiser! The ruler (who has punished thee) has been himself purified, as also thyself, along with the *Pitris*![43]—'

"Vyāsa continued,—'That king, O eldest son of Pāndu, became eminent by this act and obtained the highest success like the lord Dakha himself![44] Even this is the duty of Kshatriyas, viz., the ruling of subjects. Any other, O monarch, would be regarded as a wrong path for them. Do not set thy heart on grief![45] O best of all persons conversant with duty, listen to the beneficial words of this thy brother! Wielding the rod of chastisement, O king, is the duty of kings and not the shaving of the head.' "[46]

Section XXIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Once more the great sage Krishna-Dwaipāyna said these words unto Ajātaçatru the son of Kunti.[1]—'Let these great car-warriors of abundant energy of mind, O monarch, let these brothers of thine, O Yudhishthira the chief of the Bharatas, obtain those wishes of theirs that they cherished while dwelling in the woods! Rule thou the

Earth, O son of Prithā, like (another) Yayāti the son of Nahusha![2-3] Before now misery was yours while ye dwelt in the woods in the observance of ascetic penances! That misery is ended, O tiger among men! Enjoy happiness, therefore, for some time![4] Having, O Bhārata, earned and enjoyed religious merit and wealth and pleasure for some time with thy brothers, thou mayst then, O king, retire into the woods![5] Be freed first, O Bhārata, from the debt thou owest to persons that may beg of thee, to the *Pitris*, and to the gods! Thou mayst then, O son of Kunti, practise all the other modes of life (that come afterwards)![6] Do thou, O son of Kuru's race, perform the sacrifices of *Sarvamedha* and *Açwamedha*. Thou shalt then attain, O monarch, to the highest end hereafter![7] Installing thy brothers also in great sacrifices with plentiful presents (to the Brāhmanas), thou shalt, O son of Pāndu, acquire great fame![8] There is a saying, O tiger among men and best of the Kurus! Listen to it, for by acting according to it, O king, thou shalt not swerve from virtue![9] Those men only, O Yudhishthira, whose practices resemble those of robbers, cause a king by their counsels to betake to a career of war and victory.[10]* That king who, guided by considerations of place and time and moved by an understanding dependent on the scriptures, pardons even a number of robbers, incurs no sin.[11] That king who, realising his tribute of a sixth, doth not protect his kingdom, taketh a fourth part of the sins of his kingdom.[12]† Listen also to that by which a king may not swerve from virtue. By transgressing the scriptures (one incurs sin), while by obeying them one may live fearlessly.[13] That king who, guided by an understanding based upon the scriptures and disregarding lust and wrath, behaves impartially, like a father, towards all his subjects, never incurs sin.[14] O thou of great splendour, if a king, afflicted by destiny, fails to accomplish an act when he should, such failure would not be called a tres-

---

* *Ādadāna* is explained as a robber or one who forcibly takes other people's property. Some texts read *nareçwarah*. The sense would remain unaltered.—T.

† Manu also mentions a sixth of the produce as the king's share.—T.

pass.[15] By force and policy should the king put down his foes. He must not suffer sin to be perpetrated in his kingdom but should cause virtue to be practised.[16] Brave men, those that are respectable in their practices, they that are virtuous in their acts, they that are possessed of learning, O Yudhishthira, Brāhmanas conversant with Vedic texts and rites, and men of wealth, should especially be protected.[17] In determining suits and accomplishing religious acts, they that are possessed of great learning should alone be employed. A prudent king will never repose his confidence upon one individual however accomplished.[18] That king who does not protect his subjects, whose passions are ungovernable, who is full of vanity, who is stained with haughtiness and malice, incurs sin and earns the reproach of tyranny.[19] If the subjects of a king, O monarch, waste away from want of protection and are afflicted by the gods and ground down by robbers, the sin of all this stains the king himself.[20] There is no sin, O Yudhishthira, in doing an act with heartiness, after full deliberation, and consultation with men capable of offering good advice.[21] Our tasks fail or succeed through destiny. If exertion, however, be applied, sin would not touch the king.[22] I shall recite to thee, O tiger among kings, the story of what happened to an ancient king of the name of Hayagriva, O son of Pāndu,[23]—the story, *viz.*, of the heroic Hayagriva of unstained deeds, who after having slain a large number of his foes in battle, was himself defeated and slain while without a follower by his side.[24] Having achieved all that should be done for keeping foes under check and adopted all those foremost of means by which men may be protected, Hayagriva acquired great fame from the battles he fought and is now enjoying great bliss in heaven.[25] Mangled by robbers with weapons, boldly fighting with them, and casting off his life in battle, the high-souled Hayagriva, ever attentive to his (kingly) duties, achieved the object of his life and is now enjoying great bliss in heaven.[26] The bow was his (sacrificial) stake and the bow-string was the cord for tying the victims. Shafts constituted the smaller laddle and the sword the larger one, and blood was the clarified butter that he poured. The car was the altar and the wrath he felt in battle was the fire,

and the four foremost of steeds yoked unto his vehicle were the four *Hotris*.[27] Having poured upon that sacrificial fire his foes as libations and then his own life-breaths at the completion of the sacrifice, that vigorous lion among kings, *viz.*, Hayagriva, became freed from sin and is now sporting in the regions of the gods.[28] Having protected his kingdom with policy and intelligence, the high-souled Hayagriva of resigned self and great strength of mind and accustomed to the performance of sacrifices filled all the worlds with his fame and is now sporting in the region of the gods.*[29] Having obtained the merit dependent on the performance of sacrifices as also every kind of merit that is connected with human affairs, he wielded the rod of chastisement and ruled the Earth with vigor and without pride. For this the virtuous and high-souled Hayagriva is sporting in the region of the gods.[30]† Possessed of learning, practising renunciation, actuated by faith, and full of gratitude, that king, having performed diverse acts, left this world of men and won the regions that are reserved for the intelligent and the wise and those that are of approved usages and behaviour and prepared to cast off their lives in battle.[31] Having studied the Vedas well and the other scriptures also, having ruled his kingdom properly and caused all the four orders to adhere to their respective duties, the high-souled Hayagriva is sporting in joy the regions of the gods. Having won many battles and cherished his subjects, having drunk the *Soma* juice in sacrifices and gratified the foremost of Brāhmanas with presents and judiciously wielded the rod of chastisement over those placed under his sway and at last cast off his life in battle, that king is living happily in heaven.[32] His life was worthy of every praise. Learned and honest men applaud it, deserving as it is of every applause. Having won heaven

---

* *Santyaktātmá* is explained by Nilakantha as without pride or of resigned self. The Bengali translators have wrongly rendered it "having cast off his life."—T.

† *Yoga* is explained as vigor in action, *nyāsa* as the abandonment of pride.—T.

and acquired the regions reserved for heroes, that high-souled monarch of virtuous deeds became crowned with success.' "[33]

SECTION XXV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing the words of the Island-born *Rishi* and seeing Dhananjaya angry, Yudhishthira the son of Kunti saluted Vyāsa and made the following answer.[1]

"Yudhishthira said,—'This earthly sovereignty and the diverse enjoyments (appertaining thereto) fail to give any joy to my heart. On the other hand, this poignant grief (consequent upon the loss of my kinsmen) is eating away its core.[2] Hearing the lamentations of these women who have lost their heroic husbands and children, I fail to attain peace, O sage!' "[3]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed, the virtuous Vyāsa, that foremost of all persons conversant with *Yoga*, possessed of great wisdom and intimately acquainted with the Vedas, said unto Yudhishthira (the following words).[4]

"Vyāsa said,—'No man can acquire anything by his own acts or by sacrifices and worship. No man can give anything to a fellow man. Man acquires everything through Time. The Supreme Ordainer has made the course of Time the means of acquisition.[5] By mere intelligence or study of the scriptures, men, if Time be unfavorable, cannot acquire any earthly possession. Sometimes an ignorant fool may succeed in winning wealth. Time is the efficacious means for the accomplishment of all acts.[6] During times of adversity, neither science, nor incantations, nor drugs, yield any fruits. In times, however, of prosperity, those very things, properly applied, become efficacious and bear success.[7] By Time the winds blow violently; by Time the clouds become rain-charged; by Time tanks become adorned with lotuses of different kinds; by Time trees in the forest become decked with flowers.[8] By Time nights become dark or lighted. By Time the Moon becomes full. If the Time for it does not come, trees do not bear flowers and fruits. If the Time for it does not come, the currents of rivers do not become fierce.[9] Birds and snakes and deer and elephants and other animals never become excited when the Time for it

does not come. If the Time for it does not come, women do not conceive. It is with Time that winter, and summer, and the rainy season come.[10] If the Time for it does not come, no one is born and no one dies. If the Time does not come, the infant does not acquire power of speech. If the Time does not come, one does not acquire youth. It is with Time that the seed sown puts forth its sprouts.[11] If the Time does not come, the Sun does not appear above the horizon, nor, when the Time for it does not come, does he repair to the Asta hills. If the Time for it does not come, the Moon does not wax nor wane, nor the ocean, with its high billows, rise and ebb.[12] In this connection is instanced the old story recited, O Yudhishthira, by king Senajita in grief.[13] The irresistible course of Time affects all mortals. All earthly things, ripened by Time, suffer destruction.[14] Some, O king, slay some men. The slayers, again, are slain by others. This is the language of the world. In reality, however, no one slays and no one is slain.[15] Some one thinks men slay (their fellow men.) Another thinks men do not slay. The truth is that the birth and destruction of all creatures have been ordained to happen in consequence of their very nature.[16] Upon the loss of one's wealth or the death of one's wife or son or sire, one cries out, saying,—Alas, what grief!—and dwelling upon that sorrow always enhances it.[17] Why do you, like a foolish person, indulge in grief? Why do you grieve for them that are subject to grief?* Behold, grief is increased by indulgence as fear is by yielding to fear![18] This body even is not mine! Nothing in this Earth is mine! Or, the things of this Earth belong as much to others as to me! The wise, seeing this, do not suffer themselves to be deluded.[19] There are thousands of causes for sorrow, and hundreds of causes for joy. These every day affect the ignorant only, but not him that is wise.[20] These, in course of Time, become objects of affection or aversion, and appearing as bliss or woe revolve (as if in a wheel) for affecting living creatures.[21] There is only sorrow in this world but no happiness. It is for this that

* And that have, by their death, escaped from all grief.—T.

sorrow only is felt. Indeed, sorrow springs from that affliction called desire, and happiness springs from the affliction called 'sorrow.[22] Sorrow comes after happiness, and happiness after sorrow. One does not always suffer sorrow or always enjoy happiness.[23] Happiness always ends in sorrow, and sometimes proceeds from sorrow itself. He, therefore, that desires eternal happiness must abandon both.[24] When sorrow must arise upon the expiration of happiness, and happiness upon the expiration of sorrow, one should, for that, cast off, like a (snake-bit) limb of one's body, that from which one experiences sorrow or that heart-burning which is nurtured by sorrow or that which is the root of his anxiety.[25]* Be it happines or sorrow, be it agreeable or disagreeable, whatever comes should be borne with an unaffected heart.[26] O amiable one, if thou abstainest, in even a slight measure, from doing whats is agreeable to your wives and children, thou shalt then know who is whose and why so and for what.[27] They that are highly stupid and they that are masters of their souls enjoy happiness here. They, however, that occupy an intermediate place suffer misery.[28] This, O Yudhishthira, is what Senajit of great wisdom said, that person who was conversant with what is good or bad in this world; with duties, and with happiness and misery.[29] He who is grieved at other people's griefs can never be happy. There is no end of gief, and grief arises from happiness itself.[30] Happiness and misery, prosperity and adversity gain and loss, death and life, in their turn, wait upon all creatures. For this reason the wise man of tranquil soul would neither be elated with joy nor be depressed with sorrow.[31] Engaging in battle has been said to be the Sacrifice for a king; a due observance of the science of chastisement is his *Yoga*; and the gift of wealth in sacrifices in the form of *Dakshina* is his Renunciation. All these should be regarded as acts that sanctify him.[32] By governing the kingdom with intelligence and policy, casting off pride, performing sacrifices, and looking at

---

* The Bombay text makes this verse consist of 3 lines. The first line is omitted in the Bengal texts. *Murcchitah* is explained by Nilakantha as *Varddhitah*.—T.

everything and all persons with kindness and imparitiality, a high-souled king, after death, sports in the region of the gods.[33] By winning battles, protecting his kingdom, drinking the *Soma* juice, advancing his subjects, wielding judiciously the rod of chastisement, and casting off his body at last in fight, a king enjoys happiness in heaven.[34] Having studied all the Vedas and the other scriptures duly, having protected the kingdom properly, and having caused all the four orders to adhere to their respective duties, a king becomes sanctified and finally sports in heaven.[35] He is the best of kings whose conduct, even after his death, is applauded by the inhabitants of the city and the country and by his counsellers and friends.' "[36]

SECTION XXVI.

Vaicampāyana said,—"In this connection, the high-souled Yudhishthira said unto Arjuna these words fraught with reason :[1]—'Thou thinkest, O Pārtha, that there is nothing superior to wealth, and that the poor man can neither have heaven, nor happiness, nor the acquisition of his wishes ![2] This however, is not true. Many persons are seen that have been crowned with success through Sacrifice in the shape of Vedic study. Many sages are seen that by devotion to penances have acquired eternal regions (of bliss).[3] They, O Dhananjaya, who always observe the practices of the *Rishis* by betaking themselves to *Brahmacharyya* and who become acquainted with all duties, are regarded by the gods as *Brāhmanas*.[4] O Dhananjaya, thou shouldst always regard those *Rishis* that are devoted to the study of the Vedas and those that are devoted to the pursuit of true knowledge as persons that are truly virtuous ![5] O son of Pāndu, all our acts depend upon those that are devoted to the acquisition of true knowledge.* We know this to be the opinion of the *Vaikhānāsas*, O puissant one ![6] The *Ajās* the *Prishnis* the *Sikatas*, O Bhārata, *Arunas*, and

---

* True knowledge is knowledge of *Brahma*. What is said here is that our conduct (acts) should be framed according to the opinion of persons possessed of such knowledge.—T.

the *Ketavas*, have all gone to heaven through the merit of *Vedic* study.[7] By performing those acts, O Dhananjaya, that are indicated in the Vedas, *viz.*, battle, study of the Vedas, Sacrifices, the restrainment of passion that is so difficult,[8] one goes to heaven by the southern path of the Sun. I have, before this, told thee that those very regions belong to persons that are observant of (Vedic) acts.[9] Thou shalt see, however, that the northern path is travelled by those that are devoted to *Yoga* penances. Those eternal and bright regions to which that path leads belong to men of *Yoga*.[10] Of these two, the northern path is much applauded by those conversant with the *Purānas*. Thou shouldst know that one acquires heaven through contentment. From contentment springs great happiness.[11] There is nothing higher than contentment. Unto the *Yogin* who has controlled wrath and joy, contentment is his high praise and success.[12] In this connection is cited the discourse by Yayāti of old. Listening to that discourse one may succeed in withdrawing all his desires like a tortoise drawing in all his limbs.[13] When one cherishes no fear of anything, when one is not feared by anything, when one cherishes no desire, when one bears no hate, then is one said to have attained to the state of *Brahma*[14] When one does not bear sinfully towards any creature, in act, thought, or word, one is then said to have attained to *Brahma*[15] When one has controlled his pride and folly, and withdrawn himself from all attachments, it is then that that pious man of irradiated soul becomes fit for attaining to that salvation which consists in the annihilation of separate existence.[16] Listen now to me with concentrated attention, O son of Prithā, as I say it unto thee! Some desire virtue; some, good conduct; and some wealth.[17] One may desire wealth (as a means for the acquisition of virtue). The abandonment, however, of such desire would be better for him.* There are many faults attached to

* What the poet says here is this: it is better not to wish for or covet wealth as a means for the performance of sacrifices than to covet it for performing sacrifices. A poor man will act better by not performing sacrifices at all than by performing them with wealth acquired by the usual means.—T.

wealth and consequently to those religious acts that are performed with wealth.[18] We have seen it with our own eyes. It behoveth thee also to see this! He that desires wealth finds it very difficult to abandon that which should by every means be abondoned.[19] Good deeds are very rare in those that amass riches. It is said that wealth can never be acquired without injuring others, and that, when earned, it brings numerous troubles.[20] A person of narrow heart, setting at naught the fear of repentance, commits acts of aggression towards others, tempted by even a little wealth, unconscious all the while of the sin of Brāhmanicide that he incurs by his acts.[21] Obtaining wealth which is so difficult of acquisition, one burns with grief if one has to give a portion if it to one's servants,—with grief, that is, which is equal to what one would feel if one is actually robbed by depredators. If, on the other hand, one does not part with one's wealth, obloquy becomes one's share.[22] One, however, that has no wealth, never becomes the subject of censure. Withdrawn from all attachments, such a person can become happy in all respects by supporting life upon what little he may obtain as alms. No one, however, can be happy by the acquisition of wealth.[23] In this connection certain verses relating to Sacrifices are recited by persons conversant with ancient scriptures.[24] Wealth was created by the Creator for the sake of Sacrifices, and man was created by him for protecting that wealth and performing Sacrifices. For this, all wealth should be applied to Sacrifices. It is not proper that it should be spent for the gratification of desire of enjoyment.[25] The Creator then confers wealth upon mortals for the sake of Sacrifices. Know this, O son of Kunti, thou that art the foremost of all wealthy persons![26] It is for this that the wise think that wealth, without doubt, is nobody's on Earth. One should perform Sacrifices with it and give it away with a trustful heart.[27] One should spend (in gift) what one has acquired, and not waste or spend it in gratifying one's desire of enjoyment. What use is there in amassing wealth when such proper objects exist in which to spend it?[28] Those persons of little understanding that give away (wealth) unto men that have swerved from the duties of their order, have

to subsist hereafter for a hundred years on ordure and dirt.[29] That men give unto the undeserving and refrain from giving unto the deserving is due to inability to discriminate between the deserving and the undeserving. For this reason the practice of even the virtue of charity is difficult.[30] These are the two faults connected with wealth even when acquired, *viz.*, gift to an undeserving person and abstaining to give unto him that is deserving.' "[31]

Section XXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'In consequence of the fall of Abhimanyu of tender years, of the sons of Draupadi, of Dhrishtadyumna, of Virāta, of king Drupada,[1] of Vasusena conversant with every duty, of the royal Dhrishtaketu, and of diverse other kings hailing from diverse regions, in battle,[2] grief does not forsake my wretched self that am a slayer of kinsmen! Indeed, I am inordinately covetous of kingdom and am an exterminater of my own race![3] He upon whose breast and limbs I used to roll in sport, alas, that Gangā's son has been slain by me in battle through lust of sovereignty![4] When I beheld that lion among men, *viz.*, our grandsire, assailed by Cikhandin and trembling and reeling in consequence of Pārtha's shafts that resembled thunder-bolts in energy, when I beheld his tall form pierced all over with blazing arrows and himself become weak like an aged lion, my heart was deeply pained![5-6] When I beheld that afflicter of hostile cars reel like a mountain summit and fall down strengthless on the terrace of his own vehicle with his face turned towards the east, my senses were stupified.[7] That scion of Kuru's race who with bow and shaft in hand had contended in fierce battle for many days with Rāma himself of Bhrigu's line on the field sanctified by Kuru,[8] that son of Gangā, that hero, who, at Bārānasi, for the sake of brides, had, on a single car, challenged to battle the assembled Kshatriyas of the world,[9] he who had burnt by the energy of his weapons that irresistible and foremost of kings *viz.*, Ugrāyudha, alas, that hero has been caused by me to be slain in battle![10] Knowing full well that Cikhandin the prince

of Pānchāla was his destroyer, that hero still refrained from slaying the prince with his shafts. Alas, such a magnanimous warrior was slain by Arjuna![11] O best of sages, at that moment when I beheld the grandsire stretched on the Earth and covered with blood, a violent fever afflicted my heart![12] He who had protected and reared us when we were children, alas, he was caused to be slain by my sinful self that am covetous of kingdom, that am a slayer of reverend seniors, and a perfect fool, for the sake of sovereignty that would last but a few days![13] Our preceptor, the great bowman Drona, adored by all the kings, was approached by me and addressed falsely in respect of his son![14] The memory of that act of mine is burning all my limbs! The preceptor said unto me—Tell me truly, O king, whether my son liveth still![15]—Expecting truth from me, the Brāhmana asked me of all others. By silently uttering the word *elephant*, I behaved falsely towards him![16] Sinful that I am, exceedingly covetous of kingdom, and a slayer of my reverend seniors, I behaved even thus towards my preceptor in battle, throwing off the garb of truth (which I was believed to wear) for I said unto him that Açwatthāman had been killed when, in fact, an elephant of that name had been slain.[17] To what regions shall I go (hereafter), having perpetrated such infamous deeds? I caused also my eldest brother Karna to be slain, that terrible warrior who never retreated from battle! Who is there more sinful than I?[18] Through covetousness I caused Abhimanyu of tender years, that hero who resembled a lion born in the hills, to penetrate into the array that was protected by Drona himself![19] I am like one guilty of infanticide. Sinful as I am, I have not, since then, been able to look Arjuna or the lotus-eyed Krishna in the face![20] I grieve also for Draupadi who is bereft of her five sons like the Earth bereft of her five mountains![21] I am a great offender, a great sinner, and a destroyer of the Earth! Without rising from this seat that I now occupy, I will weaken my body (by starvation) and meet with death![22] Know me who am the slayer of my preceptor as one that has sat down here in the observance of the *Prāya* vow! An exterminater of my race, I must do so in order that I may not be reborn in any of

other orders of being![23]* I shall forego all food and drink, and without moving from this place, O great ascetic, shall dry up my life-breaths that are so dear![24] I pray you with humility, grant me permission in this and go whithersoever you please! Let every one grant me permission. I shall cast off this body of mine!'"[25]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Restraining Prithā's son who, stupified by sorrow on account of his kinsmen, uttered such words, Vyāsa, that best of ascetics, spoke as follows, first telling him,—'This cannot be!'[26]

"Vyāsa said,—'It behoveth thee not, O monarch, to indulge in such poignant grief! I shall repeat what I have once said. All this is Destiny, O puissant one![27] Without doubt, all creatures that are born display at first a union (of diverse materials and forces). Dissolution, however, overtakes them at the end. Like bubbles in water they rise and disappear.[28] All things massed together are sure to crumble away, and all things that rise must fall down. Union ends in dissolution, and life ends in death.[29] Idleness, though temporarily agreeable, ends in misery, and labour with skill, though temporarily painful, ends in happiness. Affluence, Prosperity, Modesty, Contentment, and Fame dwell in labour and skill but not in idleness.[30]† Friends are not competent to bestow happiness, nor foes competent to inflict misery. Similarly, wisdom does not bring wealth nor does wealth bring happiness.[31] Since, O son of Kunti, thou hast been created by thy Maker for engage thyself in Work. Success springs from Work. Thou art not competent, O king, to avoid Work.'"[32]

---

* The meaning is that I must undergo such a severe penance in order that in my next life I may not be born as an inferior animal but may succeed in taking birth among men.—T.

† The first line of 30 is incorrectly read in the Bengal texts. The Bombay reading, which I have adopted, is the right one.—T.

Section XXVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Vyāsa then dispelled the grief of the eldest son of Pāndu, who, burning with sorrow on account of the slaughter of his kinsmen, had resolved to cast off his life-breaths.[1]

Vyāsa said,—'In this connection is cited the old story, O tiger among men, that is known by the name of Açmā's discourse. Listen to it, O Yudhishthira![2] Janaka the ruler of the Videhas, O king, filled with sorrow and grief, questioned a wise Brāhmana of the name of Açmā for the resolution of his doubts.[3]

"'Janaka said,—How should a man desirous of his own good behave upon occasions of the accession and the destruction of both kinsmen and wealth?[4]—

"'Açmā said,—Immediately after the formation of a man's body, joys and griefs attach themselves to it.[5] Although there is a possibility of either of the two overtaking the person, yet whichever actually overtakes him quickly robs him of his reason like the wind driving away gathering clouds.[6] (In times of prosperity) one thinks in this strain, viz.,—*I am of high-birth!—I can do whatever I like!—I am not an ordinary man!*—His mind becomes soaked with such triple vanity.[7] Addicted to all earthly enjoyments, he begins to waste the wealth hoarded by his ancestors. Impoverished in course of time, he regards the appropriation of what belongs to others as even laudable.[8] Like a hunter piercing a deer with his shafts, the king then punishes that wicked wight, that robber of other people's possessions, that transgressor, of law and rule.[9] Without attaining to a hundred years (the usual period of human life), such men scarcely live beyond twenty or thirty years.[10] Carefully observing the behaviour of all creatures, a king should, by the exercise of his intelligence, apply remedies for alleviating the great sorrows of his subjects.[11] The causes of all mental sorrow are two, *viz.*, delusion of the mind and the accession of distress. No third cause exists.[12] All these diverse kinds of woe as also those arising from attachment to earthly enjoyments, that overtake man, are

even such.*[13] Decrepitude and Death, like a pair of wolves, devour all creatures, strong or weak, short or tall.[14] No man can escape decrepitude and death, not even the subjugator of the whole Earth girt by the sea.[15] Be it happiness or be it sorrow that comes upon creatures, it should be enjoyed or borne without elation or depression. There is no method of escape from them.[16] The evils of life, O king, overtake one in early or middle or old age. They can never be avoided, while those (sources of bliss) that are coveted never come.†[17] The absence of what is agreeable, the presence of what is disagreeable, good and evil, bliss and woe, follow Destiny.[18] Similarly, the birth of creatures and their death, and the accessions of gain and loss, are all pre-ordained.[19] Even as scent, color, taste, and touch spring naturally, happiness and misery arise from what has been pre-ordained.[20] Seats and beds and vehicles, prosperity and drink and food, ever approach living creatures according to Time's course.[21]‡ Physicians even get ill. The strong become weak. They that are in the enjoyment of prosperity lose all and become indigent. The course of Time is very wonderful.[22] High-birth, health, beauty, prosperity, and objects of enjoyment, are all won through Destiny.[23] The indigent, although they may not desire it, have many children. The affluent again are seen to be childless. Wonderful is the course of Destiny.[24] The evils caused by disease, fire, water, weapons, hunger, poison, fever, and death, and falls from high places, overtake a man according to the Destiny under which he is born. It is seen in this world that somebody, without sinning, suffers diverse ills, while another, having sinned, is not borne down by the weight of calamity.[25-26] It is seen that somebody in the enjoyment of wealth perishes in youth; while some one that is poor drags on his existence, borne down by decrepitude,

---

* *Even such, i. e.*, spring from such causes.—T.

† Man covets freedom from decay and immortality, but instead of obtaining what he covets or strives for, decay and death become his portion on Earth.—T.

‡ *I. e*, these appear and disappear in course of Time.—T.

for a hundred years.[27] One born in an ignoble race may have a very long life, while one sprung from a noble line perishes soon like an insect.[28] In this world, it is very common that persons in affluent circumstances have no apetite, while they that are indigent can digest chips of wood.[29] Impelled by destiny, whatever sins the man of wicked soul, discontented with his condition, commits, saying—*I am the doer*,—he regards to be all for his good.[30] Hunting, dice, women, wine, brawls, these are censured by the wise. Many persons, however, possessed of even an extensive knowledge of the scriptures, are seen to be addicted to them.[31] Objects, whether coveted or otherwise, come upon creatures in consequence of Time's course. No other cause can be traced.[32] Air, space, fire, moon, sun, day, night, the luminous bodies (in the firmament), rivers, and mountains,—who makes them and who supports them?[33] Cold, and heat, and rain, come one after another in consequence of Time's course. It is even so, O bull among men, with the happiness and the misery of mankind.[34] Neither medicines, nor incantations, can rescue the man assailed by decrepitude or overtaken by death.[35] As two logs of wood, floating on the great ocean, come together and are again (when the time comes) separated, even so creatures come together and are again (when the time comes) separated.[36] Time acts equally towards those men that (are in affluent circumstances and that) enjoy the pleasures of song and dance in the company of women and those helpless men that live upon the food that others supply.[37] In this world a thousand kinds of relationship are contracted such as mother and father and son and wife. In reality, however, whose are they and whose are we?[38] No one can become any one's own, nor can any one become anybody else's own. Our union here with wives and kinsfolk and well-wishers is like that of travellers at a road-side inn.[39]—*Where am I? Where shall I go?—Who am I?—How came I here?—What for and whom should I grieve?*—Reflecting on these questions one obtains tranquillity.[40] Life and its environments are constantly revolving like a wheel, and the companionship of those that are dear is transitory.[41] The union with brother, mother

father, and friend is like of travellers in an inn.[41] Men of knowledge behold, as if with corporeal eyes, the next world that is unseen. Without disregarding the scriptures, one desirous of knowledge should have faith.[42] One possessed of knowledge should perform the rites laid down in respect of the *Pitris* and the gods, practise all religous duties, perform sacrifices, judiciously pursue virtue, profit, and pleasure.[43] Alas, no one understands that the world is sinking in the ocean of Time that is so very deep and that is infested by those huge crocodiles called decripitude and death.[44] Many physicians may be seen afflicted with disease along with all the members of their families, although they have carefully studied the science of Medicine.*[45] Taking bitters and diverse kinds of oily drugs, these succeed not in transcending death like ocean in transcending its continents.[46] Men well-versed in chemistry, notwithstanding chemical compounds applied judiciously, are seen to be broken down by decripitude like trees broken down by elephants.[47] Similarly, persons possessed of ascetic merit, devoted to study of the Vedas, practising charity, and frequently performing sacrifices, succeed not in escaping decrepitude and death.[48] As regards all creatures that have taken birth, neither years, nor months, nor fortnights, nor days, nor nights, that have once passed do ever return.[49] Man, whose existence is so transitory, is forced, in course of Time, whether he will or no, to come upon this inevitable and broad path that has to be trodden by every creature.†[50] Whether the body springs from the creature or the creature springs from the body, one's union, however, with wives and other friends is like that of travellers in a inn.[51]‡ One can not obtain a lasting com-

---

* Litterally, the science of Life.—T.

† This inevitable and broad path is the path of Life. What is said here is that every creature is subject to birth.—T.

‡ The first line of this verse refers to the disputed question of whether the body exists independent of life, or the creature exists independent of the body. This is much disputed by Hindu philosophers. The gross body may be disolved, but the *linga çarira* (composed of the subtilest elements) exists as a case for the unborn Soul. This is maintained by many.—T.

panionship with any one. One cannot obtain such companionship with one's own body. How then can it be had with any one else ?[52] Where, O king, is thy sire today and where thy grandsires ? Thou beholdest them not today and they do not behold thee, O sinless one ![53] No person can see either heaven or hell. The scriptures, however, are the eyes of the virtuous. O king, frame thy conduct according to the scriptures ![54] With a pure heart, one should practise first the vow of *Bramacharyya* and then beget children and then perform sacrifices, for paying off the debt one owes to the *Pitris*, the gods, and men ![55] Performing sacrifices and engaged in procreating (children), after having first observed the vow of *Brahmacharyya*, one who hath wisdom for his eyes, casting off all anxiety of heart, should pay court to heaven, this world, and his own soul.*[56] That king bent upon the practice of virtue who strives judiciously for acquiring Heaven and Earth and who takes of earthly goods just what is ordained (as the king's share) in the scriptures, wins a reputation that spreads over all the worlds and among all creatures, mobile and imobile.[57]—The ruler of the Vidahas, of clear understanding, having heard these words full of reason, became freed from grief, and taking Açmā's leave proceeded towards his abode.[58] O thou of unfading glory, cast off thy griefs and rise up ! Thou art equal to Cakra himself. Suffer thy soul to be gladdened. The Earth has been won by thee in the exercise of Kshatriya duties. Enjoy her, O son of Kunti, and do not disregard my words ?' "[59]

Section XXIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"That foremost of kings. *viz.*, Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, still remaining speechless, Pāndu's son Arjuna addressed Krishna and spoke as follows.[1]

"Arjuna said,—'This scorcher of foes, *viz.*, Dharma's son, is burning with grief on account of his (slaughtered) kinsfolk.

---

* *Param* here is explained by Nilakantha as *Paramātmā*. *Pay court*, *i. e.*, seek to obtain and enjoy them .—T.

Comfort him, O Mādhava![2] Once more, O Janārddana, all of us have fallen into great danger! It behoveth thee, O mighty-armed one, to dispel his grief!'"[3]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by the high-souled Arjuna, the lotus-eyed Govinda of unfading glory turned his face towards the king.[4] Keçava could not by any means be disregarded by Yudhishthira. From his earliest years Govinda was dearer to Yudhishthira than Arjuna himself.[5] Taking up the king's hand adorned with sandal-paste and looking like a column of marble, the mighty-armed Caurin began to speak, gladdening (the hearts of all who listened to him).[6] His face, adorned with teeth and eyes that were very beautiful, shone brightly like a full-blown lotus at sunrise.[7]

"Vāsudeva said,—"Do not, O tiger among men, indulge in such grief that emaciates thy body! They who have been slain in this battle will on no account be got back![8] Those Kshatriyas, O king, that have fallen in this great battle, are even like objects that one acquires in one's dreams and that vanish when one awakes.[9] All of them were heroes and ornaments of battle. They were vanquished while rushing with faces towards their foes. No one amongst them was slain with wounds on the back or while flying away.[10] All of them, having contended with heroes in great battle and having cast off their life-breaths then, have, sanctified by weapons, proceeded to heaven. It behoveth thee not to grieve for them![11] Devoted to the duties of Kshatriyas, possessed of courage, perfectly conversant with the Vedas and their branches, all of them have attained to that blissful end which is obtainable by heroes. It behoveth thee not to grieve for them after hearing of those high-souled lords of Earth, of ancient days, that departed from this world.[12] In this connection is cited the old discourse of Nārada before Srinjaya when the latter was deeply afflicted with grief on account of the death of his son.[13] (Nārada said,)—Subject to happiness and misery, myself, thyself, and all creatures, O Srinjaya, shall have to die. What cause then is there for sorrow![14] Listen to me as I recite the great blessedness of (some) ancient kings! Hear me with concentrated attention! Thou shalt then, O king, cast off

thy grief![15] Listening to the story of those high-souled lords of Earth, abate thy sorrow! O, hear me as I recite their stories to thee in detail![16] By listening to the charming and delightful history of those kings of ancient times, malignant stars may be propitiated and the period of one's life may be increased.[17] We hear, O Srinjaya, that there was a king of the name of Marutta who was the son of Avikshit. Even he fell a prey to death. The gods with Indra and Varuna and Vrihaspati at their head came to the sacrifice, called *Viçwasrij*, performed by that high-souled monarch.* Challenging Cakra the chief of the gods, that king vanquished him in battle.[18-19] The learned Vrihaspati, from desire of doing good unto Indra, had refused to officiate at Marutta's sacrifice. Thereupon Samvarta, the younger brother of Vrihaspati, acceded to the king's request.[20] During the rule of that king, O best of monarchs, the Earth yielded crops without being tilled and was adorned with diverse kinds of ornaments.[21] In the sacrifice of that king, the *Viçwedevas* sat as courtiers, the *Maruts* acted as distributors (of food and presents) and the high-souled *Sāddhyas* were also present.[22] In that sacrifice of Marutta, the *Maruts* drank *Soma*. The sacrificial presents the king made surpassed (in value) those ever made by the gods, the *Gandharvas*, and men.[23] When even that king, O Srinjaya, who transcended thee in religious merit, knowledge, renunciation, and affluence, and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son![24] There was another king of the name of Suhotra the son of Atithi. We hear, O Srinjaya, that even he fell a prey to death. During his rule, Maghavat showered gold for one whole year upon his kingdom.[25] Obtaining that king for her lord, the Earth became in reality (and not in name only as before) *Vasumati*.† The rivers, during the sway of that king, bore golden tortoises, crabs, alligators,

---

* This sacrifice is one in which the performer parts with *all* his wealth.—T.

* *Vasumati* means possessed of wealth (from *Vasu* and the suffix *mat*). The Burdwan Pundits have committed a ridiculous blunder in rendering this verse.—T.

sharks, and porpoises, for the adorable Indra, O king, had showered these upon them.[26-27] Beholding those golden fishes and sharks and tortoises in hundreds and thousands, Atithi's son became filled with wonder.[28] Collecting that vast wealth of gold that covered the Earth, Suhotra performed a sacrifice at Kurujāngala and gave it away unto the Brāhmanas.[29] When that king, O Srinjaya, who transcended thee in the four attributes of religious merit, knowledge, renunciation, and affluence, and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son (that is dead).[30] Thy son never performed a sacrifice and never made gifts. Knowing this, pacify thy mind and do not give way to grief.* We hear also, O Srinjaya, that Vrihadratha the king of the Angas, fell a prey to death.[31] He gave away a hundred thousand steeds. A hundred thousand maidens also, adorned with golden ornaments,[32] he gave away as presents in a sacrifice he performed. A hundred thousand elephants also of the best breed,[33] he gave away as presents in another sacrifice performed by him. A hundred millions also of bulls, adorned with golden chains,[34] with thousands of kine accompanying them, he gave away as sacrificial presents. While the king of Anga performed his sacrifice by the hill called Vishnupada,[35] Indra became intoxicated with the *Soma* he drank, and the Brāhmanas with the presents they received. In the sacrifices, O monarch, numbering by hundreds, that this king performed of old,[36] the presents he made far surpassed those ever made by the gods, the *Gandharvas*, and men. No other man was born, or will ever be born, that gave or will give away so much wealth as was given away by the king of the Angas in the seven sacrifices he performed, each of which was characterised by the consecration of the *Soma*.†[37] When, O Srinjaya, this Vrihadratha even,

---

* The Bengal reading *chainam* in the first line of 31 is better than the Bombay reading *chetya*, which, Nilakantha explains, means *chetanavān bhava*.—T.

† These seven sacrifices were the *Agnishtoma*, the *Atyagnishtoma*, the *Ukthya*, the *Shodashi*, the *Vājapeya*, the *Atirātra*, and the *Aptoryāma*. Each of these required the consecration of the *Soma*.—T.

who was thy superior in the four attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son that is dead.[33] We hear also, O Srinjaya, that Civi the son of Uçinara, fell a prey to death. That king swayed the whole Earth as one sways the leathern shield in his hand.[39] Riding on a single car that proved victorious in every battle, king Civi caused the whole Earth to resound with the rattle of his wheels and subjugated all monarchs.*[40] Uçinara's son Civi gave away, in a sacrifice, all the kine and horses he had, both domestic and wild.[41] The Creator himself thought that no one amonst the kings of the past or the future had or would have the ability to bear the burthen, O Srinjaya, that Uçinara's son Civi, that foremost of kings, that hero who was possessed of prowess equal to that of Indra himself, bore. Do not, therefore, grieve for thy son who never performed any sacrifice nor made any gift.[42-43] Indeed, O Srinjaya, when Civi, who was far superior to thee in the four attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son that is dead![44] We hear, O Srinjaya, that the high-souled Bharata also, the son of Dushmanta and Cakuntalā, who had a vast and well-filled treasury, fell a prey to death.[45] Devoting three hundred horses unto the gods on the banks of Yamunā, twenty on the banks of Saraswati, and fourteen on the banks of Gangā,[46] that king of great energy, in days of old, performed (in this order) a thousand Horse-sacrifices and a hundred *Rājasuyas*.[47] No one amongst the kings of the Earth can imitate the great deeds of Bharata, even as no man can, by the might of of his arms, soar into the welkin.[48] Erecting numerous sacrificial altars, he gave away innumerable horses and untold wealth unto the sage Kanwa.†[49] When even he, O Srinjaya, who was far superior to thee in the four attributes and who

---

* The expression used is "he caused one umbrella only to be set up." The custom is well-known that none but kings could cause umbrellas to be held over their heads.—T.

† Kanwa had brought up in his retreat Bharata's mother Cakuntalā who had been deserted, immediately after her birth, by her mother, Menakā. Bharata himself was born in Kanwa's retreat.—T

was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son that is dead![50] We hear, O Srinjaya, that Rāma also, the son of Daçaratha, fell a prey to death. He always cherished his subjects as if they were the sons of his own loins.[51] In his dominions there were no widows and none that was helpless. Indeed, Rāma in governing his kingdom always acted like his father Dacaratha.[52] The clouds, yielding showers seasonably, caused the crops to grow abundantly. During the period of his rule, food was always abundant in his kingdom.[53] No death occurred by drowning or by fire. As long as Rāma governed it, there was no fear in his kingdom of any disease.[54] Every man lived for a thousand years, and every man was blessed with a thousand children. During the period of Rāma's sway, all men were whole and all men attained the fruition of their wishes.[55] The very women did not quarrel with one another, what need then be said of the men? During his rule his subjects were always devoted to virtue.[56] Contented, crowned with fruition in respect of all the objects of their desire, fearless, free, and wedded to the vow of truth, were all the people when Rāma governed the kingdom.[57] The trees always bore flowers and fruits and were subject to no accidents. Every cow yielded milk filling a *drona* to the brim.[58] Having dwelt, in the observance of severe penances, for four and ten years in the woods, Rāma performed ten Horse-sacrifices of great splendour* and to which the freest access was given to all.[59] Possessed of youth, of a dark complexion, with red eyes, he looked like the leader of an elephantine herd. With arms stretching down to his knees and of handsome face, his shoulders were like those of a lion and the might of his arms was great.[60] Ascending upon the throne of Ayodhyā, he ruled for ten thousand and ten hundred years.[61] When he, O Srinjaya, who transcended thee in the four principal attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son that is dead![62] We hear, O Srinjaya, that king Bhagiratha also died. In one

---

* *Jāruthyān* is explained by Nilakantha as *Stutyān*. It may also mean *Triguna-dakshinān*.—T.

of the sacrifices of that king, intoxicated with the *Soma* he had drunk, Indra,[63] the adorable chastiser of Pāka and the chief of the gods, vanquished, by putting forth the might of his arms, many thousands of *Asuras*.[64] King Bhagiratha, in one of the sacrifices he performed, gave away a million of maidens adorned with ornaments of gold.[65] Each of those maidens sat upon a car and unto each car were attached four steeds. With each car were a hundred elephants, all of the foremost breed and decked with chains of gold.[66] Behind each elephant were a thousand steeds, and behind each steed a thousand kine, and behind each cow a thousand goats and sheep.[67] (The river-goddess) Gangā, named (from before) Bhāgirathi, sat upon the lap of this king dwelling near (her stream), and from this incident came to be called *Urvaçi*.*[68] The triple-coursed Gangā had agreed to be the daughter of Bhagiratha of Ikshāku's race, that monarch ever engaged in the performance of sacrifices with presents in profusion unto the Brāhmanas.†[69] When he, O Srinjaya, who transcended thee in respect of the four principal attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son.[70] We hear, O Srinjaya, that the high-souled Dwilipa also fell a prey to death. The Brāhmanas love to recite his innumerable deeds.[71] In one of his great sacrifices that king, with heart fully assenting, gave away the entire Earth, abounding with wealth, unto the Brāhmanas.[72] In each sacrifice performed by him, the chief priest received as sacrificial fee a thousand elephants made of gold.[73] In one of his sacrifices, the stake (set up for slaughtering the victims) was made of gold and looked exceed-

---

* The legend about the bringing down of Gangâ is very beautiful. Gangà is nothing else than the melted form of Vishnu. For a time she dwelt in the pot *(Kamandalu)* of Brahman. The ancestors of Bhagiratha having perished through Kapila's curse, Bhagiratha resolved to rescue their spirits by calling down Gangà from heaven and causing her sacred waters to roll over the spot where their ashes lay. He succeeded in carrying out his resolution after conquering many difficulties. *Urvaçi* literally means one who sits on the lap.—T.

† *Triple-coursed*, because Ganga is supposed to have one stream in heaven, one on Earth, and a third in the nether regions—.T

ingly beautiful. Discharging the duties assigned to them, the gods having Cakra for their chief, used to seek the protection rofthat king[74]. Upon that golden stake possessed of great effulgence and decked with a ring, six thousand gods and *Gandharvas* danced in joy, and Viçwāvasu himself, in their midst played on his *Vinā* the seven notes according to the rules that egular their combinations. Such was the character of Viçwāvasu's music that every creature (wherever he might be) thought that the great *Gandharva* was playing to him alone.[75-76] No other monarch could imitate this achievement of king Dwilipa. The elephants of that king, intoxicated and adorned with housings of gold, used to lie down on the roads.*[77] Those men proceeded to heaven that succeeded in obtaining a sight even of the high-souled king Dwilipa who was ever truthful in speech and whose bow could bear a hundred foes equal in energy to a hundred Anantas.†[78] These three sounds never ceased in Dwilipa's abode, *viz.*, the voice of Vedic recitations, the twang of bows, and cries of *Let it be given.*[79] When he, O Sanjaya, who transcended thee in the four principal attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son that is dead.[80] Yuvanāçwa's son Māndhātri also, O Sanjaya, we have heard, fell a prey to death. The deities named Maruts extracted that child from his sire's stomach through one of its sides.[81] Sprung from a quantity of clarified butter that had been sanctified by *mantras* (and that had by mistake been quaffed by his sire instead of his sire's spouse), Māndhātri was born in the stomach of the high-souled Yuvanāçwa. Possessed of great prosperity, king Māndhātri conquered the three worlds.[82] Beholding that child of celestial beauty lying on the lap of his sire, the gods asked one another,—From whom shall this child obtain suck?—[83] Then Indra approached him, saying,—He shall obtain suck

---

* The sense, I think, is that such was the profusion of Dwilipa's, wealth that no care was taken for keeping gold-decked elephants within guarded enclosures.—T.

† *Catādhanwan* is explained by Nilakantha as one whose bow is capable of bearing a hundred Anantas.—T

even from me!—From this circumstance, the chief of the deities came to call the child by the name of *Māndhātri.**[84] Form the nourishment of that high-souled child of Yuvanāçwa, the finger of Indra, placed in his mouth, began to yield a jet of milk.[85] Sucking Indra's finger, he grew up (into a stout youth) in a hundred days. In twelve days he looked like one of twelve years.[86] The whole Earth in one day came under the sway of that high-souled and virtuous and brave king who resembled Indra himself for prowess in battle.[87] He vanquished king Angāra, Marutta, Asita, Gaya, and Vrihadratha the king of the Angas.†[88] When Yuvanāçwa's son fought in battle with Angāra, the gods thought that the firmament was breaking with the twang of his bow.[89] The whole Earth from where the Sun rises to where he sets is said to be the field of Māndhātri.[90] Having performed Horse-sacrifices and a hundred *Rājasuyas*, he gave unto the Brāhmanas many *Rohita* fishes.[91] Those fishes were each ten *Yojanas* in length and one in breadth. Those that remained after gratifying the Brāhmanas were divided amongst themselves by the other classes.‡[92] When he, O Sanjaya, who transcended thee in respect of the four principal attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son that is dead.[93] We hear, O Sanjaya, that Yyāti the son of Nahusha also fell a prey to death. Having subjugated the whole world with its seas,[94] he journeyed through it, decking it with successive sacrificial altars the intervals between which were measured by throws of a heavy piece of wood. Indeed, he reached the very shores of the sea as he proceeded performing great sacrifices (on those altars

---

* Literally, "*Me he shall suck.*"—T.

† The Burdwan translators take Asita and Gaya as one person called Asitangaya, and K. P. Singha takes Anga and Vrihadratha to be two different persons. Of course, both are wrong.—T.

‡ The first line of 92 is evidently connected with 91. Nilakantha expressly mentions it. Yet the Burdwan translators have made a mess of this verse 92.—T.

along his way).*[95] Having performed a thousand sacrifices and a hundred *Vājapeyas*, he gratified the foremost of Brāhmanas with three mountains of gold.[96] Having slain many *Daityas* and *Dānavas* duly arrayed in battle, Nahusha's son Yayāti divided the whole Earth (among his children).[97] At last discarding his other sons headed by Yadu and Drahyu, he installed (his youngest son) Puru on his throne and then entered the woods accompanied by his wife.[98] When he, O Srinjaya, who far surpassed thee in the four principal attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son that is dead.[99] We hear, O Srinjaya, that Amvarisha also, the son of Nābhāga, fell a prey to death. That protector (of the world) and foremost of kings was regarded by his subjects as the embodiment of virtue.[100] That monarch, in one of his sacrifices, assigned to the Brāhmanas, for waiting upon them, a million of kings who had themselves performed thousands of sacrifices each.[101] Men of piety praised Amvarisha the son of Nābhāga, saying that such feats had never been achieved before nor would their like be achieved in the future.†[102] Those hundreds upon hundreds and thousands upon thousands of kings (that had at the command of Amvarisha waited at his sacrifices upon the Brāhmanas that came there) became (through Amvarisha's merits) crowned with the fruits of the Horse-sacrifice, and followed their lord by the Southern path (to regions of brightness and bliss).‡[103] When he, O Srinjaya, who far surpassed thee in the four principal attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy child that is dead![104] We hear, O Srinjaya, that Caçavindu also, the son of Chitraratha, fell a prey to

---

* *Camyāpāt* is explained as hurling a heavy piece of wood. What is meant here is that Yayâti, having erected an altar, took up and hurled a heavy piece of wood forwards, and upon the place where it fell, erected another altar. In this way he proceeded till he reached the very sea-shore.—T.

† *Dakshināh* is explained by Nilakantha as men possessed of *Dākshya*. It may mean liberal-minded men.—T.

‡ K. P. Singha has made a ridiculous blunder in rendering this verse.—T.

death. That high-souled king had a hundred thousand wives,[105] and a million of sons. All of them used to wear golden armour and all of them were excellent bowmen.[106] Each of those princes married a hundred princesses, and each princess brought a hundred elephants. With each of those elephants were a hundred cars.[107] With each car were a hundred steeds, all of good breed and all decked with trappings of gold. With each steed were a hundred kine, and with each cow were a hundred sheep and goats.[108] This countless wealth, O monarch, Caçavindu gave away, in a Horse-sacrifice, unto the Brāhmanas.[109] When he, O Srinjaya, who far surpassed thee in the four principal attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy child that is dead.[110] We hear, O Srinjaya, that Gaya also, the son of Amurtharayas, fell a prey to death. For a hundred years, that king subsisted upon the remains of sacrificial food.[111] (Pleased with such devotion) Agni desired to give him boons. The boons solicited by Gaya were,—Let my wealth be inexhaustible even if I give ceaselessly! Let my regard for virtue exist for ever![112]* Let my heart ever take pleasure in Truth, through thy grace, O eater of sacrificial libations!—It hath been heard by us that king Gaya obtained all those wishes from Agni.[113] On days of the new moon, on those of the full moon, and on every fourth month, for a thousand years, Gaya repeatedly performed the Horse-sacrifice.[114] Rising (at the completion of every sacrifice) he gave away a hundred thousand kine and hundreds of mules (unto the Brāhmanas) during this period.[115] That bull among men gratified the gods with *Soma*, the Brāhmanas with wealth, the *Pitris* with *Swadhā*, and the women with the accomplishment of all their wishes.[116] In his great Horse-sacrifice, king Gaya caused a golden ground to made, measuring a hundred cubits in length and fifty in breadth, and gave it away as the sacrificial fee.[117] That fore-

* There is a slight difference of reading in the first half of the second line. Nilakantha explains it with his usual ingenuity. The Bengal reading, with *mè*, is disapproved by him. For all that, the Bengal reading which I have adopted, seems to be preferable.—T

most of men, *viz.*, Gaya the son of Amurttarayas, gave away as many kine as there are sand grains, O king, in the river Gangā.[118] When he, O Srinjaya, who far surpassed thee in the four principal attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son that is dead.[119] We hear, O Srinjaya, that Sankriti's son Rantidova also fell a prey to death. Having undergone the austerest of penances and adored him with great reverence, he obtained these boons from Cakra, having solicited them, saying,—[120] Let us have abundant food and abundant guests! Let not my faith sustain any diminution, and let us not have to ask anything of any person![121]—The animals, both domestic and wild, slaughtered in his sacrifice, used to come to him, *viz.*, the high-souled Rantideva of rigid vows and great fame, of their own accord.[122] The secretions that flowed from the skins of the animals (slaughtered in his sacrifices), produced a mighty and celebrated river which to this day is known by the name of *Charmanwati.*[123] King Rantideva used to make gifts unto the Brāhmanas in an extensive enclosure. When the king said—Unto thee I give a hundred *nishkas!* Unto thee I give a hundred!—the Brāhmanas (without accepting what was offered) made a noise (expressive of refusal).[124] When, however, the king would say—I give a thousand *nishkas!*—the gifts were all accepted. All the vessels and plates in Rantideva's palace, for holding food and other articles,[125] all the jugs and pots, the pans and plates and cups, were of gold.[126] On those sight pass which the guests used to live in Rantideva's abode, twenty thousand and one hundred kine had to be slaughtered.[127] Yet even on such occasions, the cooks, decked in ear-rings, used to proclaim (amongst those that sat down to supper), —There is abundant juice. Eat as much as ye wish, but of flesh we have not as much today as on former occasions![128]—When he, O Srinjaya, who far surpassed thee in the four principal attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son that is dead.[129] We hear, O Srinjaya, that the high-souled Sagara also fell a prey to death. He was of Ikshāku's race, a tiger among men, and of superhuman prowess.[130] Sixty thousand

sons used to walk behind him, like myriads upon myriads of stars waiting upon the Moon in the cloudless firmament of autumn.[131] His sway extended over the whole of this Earth.* He gratified the gods by performing a thousand Horse-sacrifices.[132] He gave away unto deserving Brāhmanas palatial mansions with columns of gold and (other parts) made entirely of that precious metal, containing costly beds and bevies of beautiful ladies with eyes resembling petals of the lotus, and diverse other kinds of valuable objects. At his command, the Brāhmanas divided those gifts among themselves.[133-34] Through anger that king caused the Earth to be excavated whereupon she came to have the ocean on her bosom, and for this, the ocean has come to be called *Sāgara* after his name.[135] When he, O Srinjaya, who far surpassed thee in the four principal atributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son that is dead.[136] We hear, O Srinjaya, that king Prithu also, the son of Vena fell a prey to death. The great *Rishis*, assembling together in the great forest, installed him in the sovereignty of the Earth.[137] And because it was thought that he would advance all mankind, he was, for that reason, called *Prithu* (the advancer). And because also he protected people from injuries (*Kshata*), he was, for that reason, called a *Kshatriya* (protector from injuries).[138] Beholding Prithu the son of Vena, all the creatures of the Earth exclaimed,—We have been lovingly attached to him !—From this circumstance of the loving attachment (to him of all creatures), he came to be called a *Rājā* (one that can inspire attachment).[139] The Earth, during his sway, yielded crops without being tilled, every leaf that the trees had bore honey; and every cow yielded a jugful of milk.[140] All men were hale and all their wishes used to be crowned with fruition. They had no fear of any kind. They used to live, as they pleased, in fields or (or sheltered) houses.[141] When Prithu desired to go over the sea, the waters became solidified. The rivers also never swelled up when he had to

* Literally, 'there was but one umbrella opened on the Earth in his time,.'—T.

cross them but remained perfectly calm. The standard on his car moved freely everywhere (without being obstructed by any impediment).[142] King Prithu, in one of his grand Horse-sacrifices, gave away unto the Brāhmanas one and twenty mountains of gold, each measuring three *nalwas*.*[143] When he, O Srinjaya, who far surpassed thee in the four principal attributes and who was purer than thy son, fell a prey to death, do not grieve for thy son that is dead.[144] Upon what, O Srinjaya, dost thou reflect in silence? It seems, O king, that thou hearest not these words of mine! If thou hast not heard them, then this discourse of mine has been a fruitless rhapsody like medicine or diet to a person on the point of death.[145]—

"'Srinjaya said,—I am attending, O Nārada, to this discourse of thine, of excellent import and perfumed like a garland of flowers,—this discourse upon the conduct of high-souled royal sages of meritorious deeds and great fame, that can certainly dispel grief![146] Thy discourse, O great sage, has not been a fruitless rhapsody! I have been freed from grief at thy very sight! Like one never satiated with drinking nectar, I am not satiated with thy words![147] O thou of true sight, if thou, O lord, be inclined to show thy grace towards this person burning on account of the death of his son, then that son, through that grace of thine, is sure to be revived and to mingle once more with me (in this life)!—[148]

"'Nārada said,—I will give back to thee that son of thine, named Suvarnashthivin, whom Parvata gave thee and who has been bereft of life! Of the splendour of gold, that child shall live a thousand years!—'"[149]

Section XXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How did the son of Srinjaya become *Suvarnashthivin*?† Why also did Parvata give Srinjaya that

---

* The word in the original is *nala*. Nilakantha supposes that it has been so used for the sake of rythm, the correct form being *nalwa*, meaning a distance of four hundred cubits.—T.

† Literally, one whose excretā are gold.—T.

child? And why did he die?[1] When the lives of all men in those days extended for a thousand years, why did Srinjaya's son die in infancy?[2] Or, was he in name only *Suvarnashthivin*? How also did he come to be so? I desire to know all this!![3]

"Krishna said,—'I will recite to thee, O king, the facts as they happened. There are two *Rishis*, the foremost ones in the world, named Nārada and Parvata.[4] Nārada is the maternal uncle and Parvata is his sister's son. With cheerful hearts, the uncle Nārada and the nephew Parvata had, in days of old, O king, left heaven for a pleasant ramble on Earth for tasting clarified butter and rice[5-6] Both of them possessed of great ascetic merit, they wandered over the Earth, subsisting on food taken by human beings.[7] Filled with joy and entertaining great affection for each other, they entered into a compact that, whatever wish, good or bad, would be entertained by one should be disclosed to the other, but on the event of one of them acting otherwise, he should be subject to the other's curse.[8] Agreeing to that understanding, those two great *Rishis*, adored of all the worlds repaired to king Srinjaya the son of Citya and said unto him,[9]—We two, for thy good, shall dwell with thee for a few days. O lord of Earth, do thou attend to all our wants duly!—The king, saying—*So be it*,—set himself to attend upon them hospitably.[10] After a while, one day, the king, filled with joy, introduced to those illustrious ascetics his daughter of the fairest complexion, saying,—This my daughter will wait upon you both.[11] Bright as the filaments of the lotus, she is beautiful and of faultless limbs, accomplished and of sweet manners, and is called Sukumāri by name.—Very well,—said the *Rishis* in reply, upon which the king directed his daughter, telling her,—O child, attend upon these two Brāhmanas as thou wouldst upon the gods or thy sire![12-13]—The virtuous princess, saying—*So be it*—began to attend upon them in obedience to her father's behest.[14] Her dutiful services and her unrivalled beauty very soon inspired Nārada with a tender flame towards her.[15] That tender sentiment began to grow in the heart of the illustrious saint like the moon gradually waxing on the accession of the lighted fortnight.[16] The virtuous Nārada, however, over-

whelmed by shame, could not disclose that burning attachment to his sister's son the high-souled Parvata.[17] By his ascetic power, as also by signs, Parvata understood all. Inflamed with rage, the latter thereupon resolved to curse the love-afflicted Nārada.[18] And he said,—Having of thy own accord made a compact with me that, whatever wish, good or bad, would be cherished by either of us[19] should be disclosed to the other, thou hast violated it! These were thy own words, O Brāhmana! It is for this that I shall curse thee![20] Thou didst not tell me before that thy heart has been pierced by the charms of the maiden Sukumāri! It is for this that I shall curse thee![21] Thou art a *Brahmachārin*. Thou art my preceptor. Thou art an ascetic and a Brāhmana. Yet hast thou broken the compact thou hadst made with me![22] Filled with rage I shall, for this, curse even thee! Listen to me! This Sukumāri shall, without doubt, become thy wife![23] From the time of thy marriage, however, O puissant one, both she and all men shall behold thee an ape, for thy true features having disappeared, an ape shalt thou appear unto all![24]—Hearing these words of his, the uncle Nārada, filled with wrath, cursed his nephew Parvata in return, saying,[25]—Although thou hast ascetic merit and *Brahmacharyya* and truth and self-restraint, and although thou art ever devoted to virtue, thou shalt not yet succeed in proceeding to heaven![26]—Filled with rage and desire of vengeance, they thus cursed and flamed against each other like a couple of infuriate elephants.[27] From that time the high-souled Parvata began to wander over the Earth, respected as he deserved, O Bhārata, for his own energy.[28] Nārada then, that foremost of Brāhmanas, obtained according to due rites the hand of Srinjaya's daughter, the faultless Sukumāri.[29] The princess, however, beheld Nārada exactly as the curse had said. Indeed, just after the last of the wedding *mantras* had been recited, Sukumāri beheld the celestial *Rishi* to have a face like that of an ape. She, however, did not, on that account, disregard her lord. On the other hand, she dedicated her love to him.[30-31] Indeed, the princess, chaste as she was, devoted herself entirely to her lord and did not in her heart even desire any one else among the gods, *Munis*, and *Yakshas* for a husband.[32]

One day, as the illustrious Parvata, in course of his wanderings, entered a solitary forest, he beheld Nārada there.[33] Saluting him, Parvata said,—Show thy grace unto me by permitting me, O puissant one, to go to heaven![34]—Seeing the cheerless Parvata kneeling before him with joined hands, Nārada, himself more cheerless, said unto him,[35]—Thou hadst curst me first, saying,—*Be thou an ape!*—After thou hadst said so unto me, I cursed thee from anger, saying,[36]—*From this day thou shalt not dwell in heaven*!—It was not well of thee, since thou art like a son unto me!—The two saints then freed each other from their mutual curses.[37] Beholding her husband possessed of celestial form and blazing with beauty, Sukumāri fled from him, taking him to be somebody other than her lord.[8] Seeing the beautiful princess flying away from her lord, Parvata addressed her, saying,—This one is even thy husband! Do not entertain any scruple![39] This one is the illustrious and puissant *Rishi* Nārada, that foremost of virtuous persons! He is thy lord, of one soul with thee! Do not have any doubt![40]—Assured in diverse ways by the high-souled Parvata and informed also of the curse on her lord, the princess regained her equanimity. Then Parvata proceeded to heaven and Nārada to his home.'[41]

"Vāsudeva continued,—'The illustrious *Rishi* Nārada, who was himself an actor in this matter, is here. O best of men, asked by thee, he will tell thee everything that happened.'"[42]

SECTION XXXI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The royal son of Pāndu then addressed Nārada, saying,—'O holy one, I desire to hear of the birth of the child whose excreta were gold.'[1] Thus addressed by king Yudhishthira the just, the sage Nārada began to narrate to him all that had occurred in connection with that child of golden excreta.[2]

"Nārada said,—'It is even so, O thou of mighty arms, as Keçava here hath said! Asked by thee I shall now recite the portion that remains of this story.[3] Myself, and my sister's son, the great ascetic Parvata, came (on one occasion) unto Srinjaya, that foremost of all victorious kings, for dwelling with him.[4]

Honored by him with due rites, and with every wish of ours gratified, we took up our residence in his abode.[5] After the season of rains had gone, and when the time came for our own departure, Parvata said unto me these words of grave import suitable to the hour ;[6]—We have, O Brāhmana, dwelt in the abode of this king for some time, highly honored by him. Think of what return we should make ![7]—I then, O monarch, addressed Parvata of blessed aspect, saying,—O nephew, this becomes thee, and, O thou of great power, all this depends upon thyself ![8] Through thy boons let the king be made happy and let him obtain his wishes ! Or, if thou choosest, let him be crowned with success through the ascetic merits of both of us ![9] —After this, Parvata having called king Srinjaya, that foremost of victorious persons, said unto him these words, O bull of Kuru's race.[10]—We have been exceedingly gratified, O king, with thy hospitable attentions given with every sincerity ! With our permission, O foremost of men, think of the boon thou shouldst solicit ![11] Let the boon, however, be such that it may not imply enmity to the gods or destruction to men ![*] Accept then, O king, a boon, for thou deservest one as we think ![12]—Hearing these words, Srinjaya replied,—If ye have been gratified with me, my object then has been gained, for that of itself has been my greatest gain and that is regarded by me as the fruition of all my desires ![13]—Unto Srinjaya who said so, Parvata again said,—Solicit, O king, the fruition of that wish which thou art cherishing in thy heart for a long time ![14]—Srinjaya answered,—I desire a son that shall be heroic and possessed of great energy, firm in his vows and of long life, highly blessed and possessed of splendour equal to that of the Chief himself of the dieties ![15]—At this, Parvata said,—This thy desire shall be fulfilled ! Thy child, however, shall not be long lived, for thy wish for such a son is even for prevailing over the Chief of the gods ![16] Thy son shall be known by the name of *Suvarnashthivin*. He shall be poss-

* The first line of 12 is misunderstood by the Burdwan translators. There can be no doubt, however, that Nilakantha' whom I follow, is right.—T.

essed of splendour like that of the Chief of the gods, but take care to protect him always from that deity![17]—Hearing these words of the high-souled Parvata, Srinjaya began to beseech that saint for ordaining otherwise,[18] saying,—Let my son be long-lived, O *Muni*, through thy ascetic merit!—Parvata, however, said nothing, through partiality for Indra.[19] Beholding the king very cheerless, I said unto him,—Think of me, O king, (in thy distress), and I shall promise to come when thought of by thee![20] Do not grieve, O lord of Earth! I will give thee back thy beloved child, even if he be dead, in his living form![21]—Having said so unto that monarch, both of us left his presence for coming to where we wished, and Srinjaya returned to his abode as he pleased.[22] After some time had elapsed, the royal sage Srinjaya had born unto him a son of great prowess and blazing forth with energy.[23] The child grew up like a large lotus in a lake, and became *Suvarnashthivin* in reality as in name.*[24] This extraordinary fact, O best of the Kurus, soon became widely known over the world. The Chief of the gods also came to know it as the result of Parvata's boon.[25] Fearing humiliation (at the hands of the child when he would grow up), the slayer of Vala and Vritra began to watch for the *laches* of the prince.[26] He commanded his celestial weapon Thunder, standing before him in embodied shape, saying,—Go, O puissant one, and assuming the form of a tiger slay this prince![27] When grown up, this child of Srinjaya may, by his achievements, humiliate me, O Thunder, as Parvata has said![28]—Thus addressed by Cakra, the celestial weapon Thunder, that subjugator of hostile towns, began from that day to continually watch for the *laches* of the prince.[29] Srinjaya, meanwhile, having obtained that child whose splendour resembled that of Indra himself, became filled with joy. The king, accompanied by his wives, and the other ladies of his household, took up his residence in the midst of a forest.†[30] One day, on the shores of the Bhāgirathee, the boy, accompanied by his nurse, ran hither and thither in

---

* *Vide* note in page 91.—T.

† The Burdwan translators have misunderstood this verse.—T.

play.[31] Though only five years of age, his prowess, even then, resembled that of a mighty elephant. While thus employed, the child met a powerful tiger that came upon him suddenly.[32] The infant prince trembled violently as he was being crushed by the tiger and soon fell down lifeless on the Earth. At this sight the nurse uttered loud cries of grief.[33] Having slain the prince, the tiger, through Indra's powers of delusion, vanished there and then.[34] Hearing the voice of the crying nurse, the king, in great anxiety, ran to the spot.[35] He beheld his son there, his blood quaffed off, and lying cheerless on the ground like the moon dropped from the firmament.[36] Taking up on his lap the boy covered with blood, the king, with heart stricken by grief, began to lament piteously.[37] The royal ladies then, afflicted with grief and crying, quickly ran to that spot where king Srinjaya was.[38] In that situation the king thought of me with concentrated attention. Knowing that the king was thinking of me I appeared before him.[39] Stricken with grief as the king was, I recited to him all those stories, O monarch, that this hero of Yadu's race has already recited to thee.[40] I brought Srinjaya's child back to life, with Indra's permission. That which is ordained must occur. It is impossible that it should be otherwise.[41] After this, prince Suvarnashthivin of great fame and energy began to delight the hearts of his parents.[42] Of great prowess, he ascended the throne of his father after the latter had repaired to heaven, and ruled for a period of one thousand and one hundred years.[43] He worshipped the gods in many great sacrifices characterised by profuse presents. Possessed of great splendour, he gratified the gods and the *Pitris*.[44] Having procreated many sons, all of whom by their issue multiplied the race, he went the way of all nature, O king, after many years.[45] Do thou, O foremost of kings, dispel this grief born in thy heart, even as Keçava has counselled thee, as also Vyāsa of austere penances.[46] Rise up, O king, and bear the burthen of this thy ancestral kingdom, and perform high and great sacrifices so that thou mayst obtain (hereafter) whatever regions may be desired by thee!'"[47]

SECTION XXXIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Unto king Yudhishthira who still remained speechless and plunged in grief, the Island-born Vyāsa, that great ascetic conversant with the truths of religion, spoke again.[1]

"Vyāsa said,—'O thou of eyes like lotus petals, the protection of subjects is the duty of kings. Those men that are always observant of duty regard duty to be all powerful.[2] Do thou, therefore, O king, walk in the steps of thy ancestors! With Brāhmanas, penances are a duty. This is the eternal ordinance of the Vedas.[3] Penances, therefore, O bull of Bharata's race, constitute the eternal duty of Brāhmanas. A Kshatriya is the protector of all persons in respect of their duties.*[4] That man who, addicted to earthly possessions, transgresses wholesome restraints, that offender against social harmony, should be chastised with a strong hand.[5] That insensate person who seeks to transgress authority, be he an attendant, a son, or even a saint,—indeed, all men of such sinful nature,—should by every means be chastised or even killed. That king who conducts himself otherwise incurs sin.[6-7] He who does not protect morality when it is being disregarded is himself a trespasser against morality. The Kauravas were trespassers against morality. They have, with their followers, been slain by thee.[8] Thou hast been observant of the duties of thy own order. Why then, O son of Pāndu, dost thou indulge in such grief? The king should slay those that deserve death, make gifts to persons deserving of charity, and protect his subjects according to the ordinance.'[9]

"Yudhishthira said,—'I do not doubt the words that fall from thy lips, O thou of great ascetic merit! Everything appertaining to morality and duty is well known to thee, O foremost of all persons conversant with morality and duty![10] I have, however, for the sake of kingdom, caused many persons

---

* A Kshatriya should protect a Brāhmana in respect of his penances and a Vaiçya in respect of the duties of his order. Whatever impediments a Brāhmana or a Vaiçya might encounter in the discharge of his duties, must be removed by a Kshatriya.—T.

to be slain! Those deeds, O Brāhmana, are burning and consuming me!"[11]

"Vyāsa said,—'O Bhārata, is the Supreme Being the doer, or is man the doer? Is everything the result of Chance in the world, or are the fruits that we enjoy or suffer the results of (previous) action?[12] If man, O Bhārata, does all acts, good or bad, being urged thereto by the Supreme Being, then the fruits of those acts should attach to the Supreme Being himself.[13] If a person cuts down, with an axe, a tree in the forest, it is the person that incurs the sin and not the axe by any means.[14] Or, if it be said that, the axe being only the material cause, the consequence of the act (of cutting) should attach to the animate agent (and not to the inanimate tool), then the sin may be said to belong to the person that has made the axe. This, however, can scarcely be true.[15] If this be not reasonable, O son of Kunti, that one man should incur the consequence of an act done by another, then, guided by this, thou shouldst throw all responsibility upon the Supreme Being.*[16] If, again, man be himself the agent of all his acts virtuous and sinful, then Supreme Director there is none and, therefore, whatever thou hast done cannot bring evil consequences on thee.†[17] No one, O king, can ever turn away from that which is destined. If, again, Destiny be the result of the acts of former lives, then no sin can attach to one in this life even as the sin of cutting down a tree cannot touch the maker of the axe.‡[18] If thou thinkest it is Chance only that acts in the world, then such an act of destruction could never happen nor will ever happen.¶[19] If it is necessary to ascertain what is good and what

---

* *I. e.*, thou shouldst think that the consequences of all acts must attach to the Supreme Being himself, he being the urger of us all.—T.

† *Na para* &. c., *i. e.*, there is no Supreme Being and no next world.—T.

‡ No one being free in this life, all one's acts being the result of previous acts, there can be no responsibility for the acts of this life.—T.

¶ The manner in which this great battle has been brought about shows evidence of design and not mere Chance. Nilakantha reads *hatam* which is evidently wrong. There can be no doubt that the correct reading is *hatham*.—T.

evil in the world, attend to the scriptures. In those scriptures it has been laid down that kings should stand with the rod of chastisement uplifted in their hands.[20] I think, O Bhārata, that acts, good and bad, are continually revolving here as on a wheel, and men obtain the fruits of those acts, good or bad, that they do.[21] One sinful act proceeds from another. Therefore, O tiger among kings, avoid all evil acts and do not thus set thy heart upon grief.[22] Thou shouldst adhere, O Bhārata, to the duties, even if reproachable, of thy own order. This self-destruction, O king, does not look well in thee![23] Expiations, O king, have, been ordained for (evil) acts. He that is alive can perform them, but he that dies fails in their performance.[24] Therefore, O king, without laying down thy life, perform those expiatory acts. If thou dost not perform them thou mayst have to repent in the next world.' "[25]

SECTION XXXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Sons and grandsons and brothers and sires and fathers-in-law and preceptors and maternal uncles and grandsires,[1] many high-souled Kshatriyas, many relatives (by marriage), friends, companions, sisters' sons, and kinsmen, O grandsire,[2] and many foremost of men coming from diverse countries, have fallen! All these, O grandsire, have been caused to be slain by myself alone, from desire of kingdom![3] Having caused so many heroic kings who were always devoted to righteousness and all of whom had quaffed *Soma* in sacrifices, what end shall I attain, O great ascetic![4] Thinking that this Earth has been bereft of many lions among kings, all of whom were in the enjoyment of great prosperity, I burn continually to this day![5] Having witnessed this slaughter of kinsmen and of millions of other men, I burn with grief, O grandsire![6] Oh, what will be the plight of those foremost of ladies who have been deprived of sons, of husbands, and of brothers![7] Reproaching the Pāndavas and the Vrishnis as cruel murderers, those ladies, with emaciated features and plunged in grief, will throw themselves on the Earth![8] Not beholding their sires and brothers and husbands and sons, those ladies, through

affliction, casting off their life-breaths, will go to the abode of Yama, O foremost of Brāhmanas! I have no doubt of this! The course of morality is very subtile. It is plain that we shall be stained with the guilt of slaughtering women for this![9-10] Having slain our kinsmen and friends and thereby committed an inexpiable sin, we shall have to fall into hell with heads downwards![11] O best of men, we shall, therefore, waste our limbs with the austerest of penances! Tell me, O grandsire, to what mode of life I should betake myself then!'"[12]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of Yudhishthira, the Island-born *Rishi*, having reflected keenly for sometime, addressed the son of Pāndu as follows.[13]

"Vyāsa said,—'Remembering the duties of a Kshatriya, O king, do not give way to grief! All those Kshatriyas, O bull among Kshatriyas, have fallen in the observance of their proper duties![14] In the pursuit of great prosperity and of great fame on Earth, those foremost of men, all of whom were liable to death,* have perished through the influence of Time.[15] Thou hast not been their slayer, nor this Bhima, nor Arjuna, nor the twins. It is Time that took away their life-breaths according to the great law of change.[1] Time hath neither mother, nor father, nor anybody for whom he is disposed to show any favor. He is the witness of the acts of all creatures. By him have they been taken away.[17] This battle, O bull of Bharata's race, was only an occasion ordained by him. He causes creatures to be slain through the instrumentality of creatures. This is the manner in which it puts forth its irresistible power.[18] Know that Time (in his dealings with creatures) is dependent upon the bond of action and is the witness of all actions good and bad. It is Time that brings about the fruits, fraught with bliss or woe, of our actions.[19] Think, O mighty-armed one, of the acts of those Kshatriyas that have fallen! Those acts were the causes of their destruction and it is in consequence of them that they have perished.[20] Think also of thy own acts consisting of observances of vows with restrained

* Nilakantha explains this in a different way. He thinks that the expression *Kritāntavidhi-sanjuktāh* means,—'through their own faults.'—T.

soul. And think also how thou hast been forced by the Supreme Ordainer to do such an act (as the slaughter of so many human beings)![21] As a weapon made by a smith or carpenter is under the control of the person that is handling it, and moves as he moves it, similarly this universe, controlled by actions done in Time, moves as those actions move it.[22] Seeing that the births and deaths of creatures take place without any (assignable) cause and in perfect wantonness, grief and joy are perfectly needless.[23] Although this entanglement of thy heart is a mere delusion, still, if it pleasest thee, O king, perform expiatory rites (for washing thyself free of thy so-called sin).[24] It is heard, O Pārtha, that the gods and the *Asuras* fought against each other. The *Asuras* were the elder, and the gods the younger, brothers.[25] Covetous of prosperity, fierce was the battle fought between them. The fight lasted for two and thirty thousand years.[26] Making the Earth one vast expanse of blood, the gods slew the *Daityas* and gained possession of heaven.[27] Having obtained possession of the Earth, a (large) number of Brāhmanas, conversant with the Vedas, armed themselves, stupefied with pride, with the *Dānavas* for giving them help in the fight.[28] They were known by the name of *Çālāvrika* and numbered eight and eighty thousand. All of them, however, were slain by the gods.[29] Those wicked-souled persons who desire the extinction of virtue and who set sinfulness agoing deserve to be slain even as the furious *Daityas* were slain by the gods.[30] If by slaying a single individual a family may be saved, or, if by slaying a single family the whole kingdom may be saved, such an act of slaughter will not be a transgression.[31] Sin, O king, sometimes assumes the form of virtue, and virtue sometimes assumes the form of sin. They, however, that are learned know which is which.[32] Therefore, console thyself, O son of Pāndu, for thou art well versed in the scriptures. Thou hast, O Bhārata, only followed the path formerly trodden by the very gods![33] Men like yourselves never go to hell, O bull of Pāndu's race! Comfort these thy brothers and all thy friends, O scorcher of foes![34] He who deliberately engages himself in sinful acts, and committing sinful acts feels no

shame but continues the same as before,[35] is called (in the scriptures) a great sinner. There is no expiation for him and his sins know no diminution.[36] Thou art born in a noble race. Forced by the faults of others, thou hast most unwillingly done this, and having done this thou repentest of it.[37] The Horse-sacrifice, that grand rite, has been indicated as an expiation for thee! Make preparations for that sacrifice, O monarch, and thou shalt be freed from thy sins.[38] The divine chastiser of Pāka, having vanquished his foes with the assistance of the Maruts, gradually performed a hundred sacrifices and became *Çatakratu*,*[39] Freed from sin, possessed of heaven, and having obtained many regions of bliss and great happiness and prosperity, Cakra, surrounded by the Maruts, is shining in beauty, and illuminating all the quarters with his splendour.[40] The lord of Cachi is adored in the heavens by the *Apsarās*. The *Rishis* and the other gods all worship him with reverence.[41] Thou hast got the Earth through thy prowess. All the kings have been vanquished by thee, O sinless one, through thy prowess.[42] Proceeding with thy friends to their kingdom, O king, install their brothers, sons, or grandsons on their thrones.[43] Behaving with kindness towards even the children in the womb, make thy subjects glad and happy, and rule the Earth.[44] Install on their thrones the daughters of those that have no sons. Women are fond of pleasure and power. Through this means they will cast off their sorrows and become happy.[45] Having comforted the whole empire in this way, O Bhārata, adore the gods in a Horse-sacrifice as the victorious Indra in days of old. It is not proper for us to grieve for those high-souled Kshatriyas, O bull of thy order, (that have fallen in battle).[46] Stupefied by the power of the Destroyer, they have perished in the observance of the duties of their own order.[47] Thou hast discharged the duties of a Kshatriya and obtained the Earth without a thorn in it. Observe thy own duties, O son of Kunti, for then, O Bhārata, thou shalt be able to obtain happiness in the other world!"[48]

---

* The performer of a hundred sacrifices.—T.

Section XXXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'After doing what acts does a man become liable to perform expiation? And what are those acts which he must do for being freed from sin? Tell me this, O grandsire!'[1]

"Vyāsa said,—'Having omitted to do those acts that have been ordained, and done those that have been interdicted, and having behaved deceitfully, a man becomes liable to perform expiation.[2] The person in the observance of the *Brahmacharyya* vow, who rises from bed after the sun has risen, or goes to bed while the sun is setting, one who has a rotten nail or black teeth,[3] one whose younger brother weds first, one who weds before his elder brother is wedded, one who has been guilty of the slaughter of a Brāhmana, one who speaks ill of others, one who weds a younger sister before the elder sister has been wedded, one who weds an elder sister after having wed a younger one,[4] one who falls away from a vow, one who slays any one of the regenerate classes, one who imparts a knowledge of the Vedas to a person unworthy of it, one who does not impart a knowledge thereof to a person that is worthy of it,[5] one who takes many lives, one who sells flesh, one who has abandoned his (sacred) fire, one who sells a knowledge of the Vedas,*[6] one who slays his preceptor or a woman, one born in a sinful family, one who slays an animal wilfully,† one who sets fire to a dwelling house,[7] one who lives by deceit, one who acts in opposition to his preceptor, and one who has violated a compact,—these all are guilty of sins requiring expiation.[8] I shall now mention other acts that men should not do, *viz.*, acts that are interdicted by both the world and the Vedas. Listen to me with concentrated attention![9] The rejection of one's own creed, the practice of other people's creed, assisting at the sacrifice or the religious rites of one that is not worthy of such assistance, eating of food that is forbidden,[10] deserting one that craves protection, neglect in maintaining servants and depen-

---

* *I. e.*, charges his pupils a fee for teaching them the scriptures.—T.

† *I. e.*, *not* in a sacrifice.—T.

dants, selling salt and treacle (and similar other substances), killing of birds and animals,[11] refusal, though competent, to procreate upon a soliciting woman, omission to present the daily gifts (of handfuls of grass to kine and the like),[12] omission to present the *dakshinā*, humiliating a Brāhmana, —these all have been pronounced by persons conversant with duty to be acts that no one should do.[13] The son that quarrels with the father, the person that violates the bed of his preceptor, one that neglects to produce offspring in one's wedded wife, are all sinful, O tiger among men![14] I have now declared to thee, in brief as also in detail, those acts and omistions by which a man becomes liable to perform expiation.[15] Listen now to the circumstances under which men, by even commiting these acts, do not become stained with sin.[16] If a Brāhmana well acquainted with the Vedas takes up arms and rushes against thee in battle for killing thee, thou mayst proceed against him for taking his life. By such an act the slayer does not become guilty of the slaughter of a Brāhmana.*[17] There is a *mantra* in the Vedas, O son of Kunti, that lays this down. I declare unto thee only those practices that are sanctioned by the authority of the Vedas.[18] One who slays a Brāhmana that has fallen away from his own duties and that advances, weapon in hand, with intent to slaughter, does not truly become the slayer of a Brāhmana. In such a case it is the wrath of the slayer that proceeds against the wrath of the slain.[19] A person by drinking alcoholic stimulants in ignorance or upon the advice of a virtuous physician when his life is at peril, should have the regenerating ceremonies performed once more in his case.[20] All that I have told thee, O son of Kunti, about the eating of interdicted food, may be cleansed by such expiatory rites.[21] Connection with the preceptor's wife at the preceptor's command does not stain the pupil. The sage Uddālaka caused his son Cwetaketu to be begotten by a disciple.[22] A person by committing theft for the sake of his preceptor in a season of distress is not stained with sin. One, however,

* *Jighānsiāt* is *Jighānsi* and *iāt*, *i. e.*, may proceed with intention to slay.—T.

that takes to thieving for procuring enjoyments for himself becomes stained.[23] One is not stained by stealing from other than Brāhmanas (in a season of distress and for the sake of one's preceptor). Only one that steals under such circumstances without himself appropriating any portion thereof is untouched by sin.[24] A falsehood may be spoken for saving one's own life or that of another, or for the sake of one's preceptor, or for gratifying a woman, or for bringing about a marriage.[25] One's vow of *Brahmacharyya* is not broken by having wet dreams. In such cases the expiation laid down consists in the pouring of libations of clarified butter on the blazing fire.[26] If the elder brother be fallen or has renounced the world, the younger brother does not incur sin by marrying. Solicited by a woman, connection with her is not destructive of virtue.[27] One should not slay or cause to be slain an animal except in a sacrifice. Animals have become sacred (fit for sacrifice) through the kindness manifested towards them by the Creator himsef in the ordinance laid down by him.[28] By making a gift in ignorance to an undeserving Brāhmana one does not incur sin. The omission (through ignorance) to behave with liberality towards a deserving person does not lead to sin.[29] By casting off an adulterous wife one does not incur sin. By such treatment the woman herself may be purged while the husband may avoid sin.[30] One who knows the true uses of the *Soma* juice, does not incur sin by selling it.* By dismissing a servant who is incompetent to render service one is not touched by sin.[31] I have now said unto thee those acts by doing which one does not incur sin. I shall now speak to thee of expiation in detail.'"[32]

Section XXXVI.

"Vyāsa said,—'By penances, religious rites, and gifts, O Bhārata, a man may wash off his sins if he does not commit them again.[1] By subsisting upon only one meal a day, and

---

* *I. e.*, one who knows that the *Soma* is used in sacrifices for gratifying the gods.—T.

that procured by mendicancy, by doing all his acts himself (without relying on the aid of a servant), by making his round of mendicancy with a human skull in one hand and a *khattānga** in another, by becoming a Brahmachārin and always ready for exertion,[2] by casting off all malice, by sleeping on the bare ground, by publishing his offence to the world, by doing all this for full twelve years, a person can cleanse himself from the sin of having slain a Brāhmana.[3] By perishing upon the weapon of a person living by the use of arms, of one's own will and upon the advice of persons learned in the scriptures, or by throwing one's self down, for three times, with head downwards, upon a blazing fire,[4] or by walking a hundred *Yojanas* all the while reciting the Vedas, or by giving away one's whole property to a Brāhmana conversant with the Vedas,[5] or at least so much as would secure to him a competence for life, or a house properly furnished, and by protecting kine and Brāhmanas, one may be cleansed of the sin of having slain a Brāhmana.[6] By living upon the scantiest diet every day for a space of six years, a person may be cleansed of that sin.† By observing a harder vow with regard to food one may be cleansed in three years.‡[7] By living upon one meal a month, one may be cleansed in course of only a year. By observing, again, an absolute fast, one may be cleansed within a very short time,[8] There is no doubt again that one is cleansed by a Horse-sacrifice. Men that have been guilty of having slain a Brāhmana and that have succeeded in taking the final bath at the completion of the Horse-sacrifice,[9] become cleansed of

---

* A staff with a skull fixed upon it.—T.

† The rule laid down is that he should eat in the morning for the first three days, in the evening for the second three days, eat nothing but what is got without soliciting, for the next three days, and fast altogether for the three days that follow. This is called *Kricchra-bhojana.* Observing this rule for six years, one may be cleansed of the sin of slaying a Brāhmana.—T.

‡ The harder rule referred to is eating in the morning for seven days; in the evening for the next seven days; eating what is got without soliciting, for the next seven days; and fasting altogether for the next seven.—T.

all their sins. This is an injunction of great authority in the *Çrutis*. One, again, by laying down his life in a battle undertaken for the sake of a Brāhmana, becomes cleansed of the sin of having slain a Brāhmana.[10] By giving away a hundred thousand kine unto persons deserving of gifts, one becomes cleansed of the sin of having slain a Brāhmana as also, indeed, of all his sins.[11] One that gives away five and twenty thousand kine of the *kapilā* species and while all of them have calved, becomes cleansed of all his sins.[12] One who, at the point of death, gives away a thousand kine with calves unto poor but deserving persons, becomes freed from sin.[13] That man, O king, who gives away a hundred steeds of the Kāmvoja breed unto Brāhmanas of regulated behaviour, becomes freed from sin.[14] That man, O Bhārata, who gives unto even one person all that he asks for, and who, having given it, does not speak of his act to any one, becomes freed from sin.[15] If a person who has once taken alcohol drinks (as expiation) hot liquor, he sanctifies himself both here and hereafter.[16] By falling from the summit of a mountain or entering a blazing fire, or by going on an everlasting journey after renouncing the world, one is freed from all sins.[17] By performing the sacrifice laid down by Vrihaspati, a Brāhmana who drinks alcoholic liquors may succeed in attaining to the region of Brahman. This has been said by Brahman himself.[18] If a person, after having drunk alcoholic liquor, becomes humble and makes a gift of land, and abstains himself from it ever afterwards, he becomes sanctified and cleansed.[19] The person that has violated his preceptor's bed, should lie down on a sheet of iron after having heated it, and having cut off the emblem of his sex, should leave the world for a life in the woods, with eyes always turned upwards.[20] By casting off one's body, one becomes cleansed of all his evil acts. Women, by leading a regulated life for one year, become cleansed of all their sins.[21] The person who observes a very rigid vow, or gives away the whole of his wealth, or perishes in a battle fought for the sake of his preceptor, becomes cleansed of all his sins.[22] One who uses falsehood before one's preceptor or acts in opposition to him, becomes cleansed of that sin by doing something agree-

able to one's preceptor.[23] One who has fallen off from the vow (of *Brahmacharyya)* may become cleansed of that sin by wearing the hide of a cow for six months and observing the penances laid down in the case of the slaughter of a Brāhmana.[24] One who has been guilty of adultery, or of theft, may become cleansed by observing rigid vows for a year.[25] When one steals another's property, one should, by every means in his power, return to that other property of the value of what has been stolen. One may then be cleansed of the sin (of theft).[26] The younger brother who has married before the marriage of the elder brother, as also the elder brother whose younger brother has married before him, becomes cleansed by observing a rigid vow, with collected soul, for twelve nights.[27] The younger brother, however, should wed again for rescuing his deceased ancestors. Upon such second wedding, the first wife becomes cleansed and her husband himself would not incur sin by taking her.[28] Men conversant with the scriptures declare that women may be cleansed of even the greatest sins by observing the vow of *chāturmāsya,* all the while living upon scanty and cleasnsing food.[29] Persons conversant with the scriptures do not take into account the sins that women may commit at heart. Whatever their sins (of this description), they are cleasnsed by their menstrual course like a metallic plate that is scoured with ashes.[30] Plates (made of the alloy of brass and copper) stained by a Cudra eating off it, or a vessel of the same metal that has been smelt by a cow, or stained by a Brāhmana's *Gandusha,* may be cleansed by means of the ten purifying substances.*[31] It has been laid down that a Brāhmana should acquire and practise the full measure of virtue. For a person of the kingly order it has been laid down that he should acquire and practise a measure of virtue less by a fourth part.[32] So, a Vaiçya should acquire a measure less (than a Kshatriya's) by a fourth and a Cudra less (than a Vaiçya's) by a fourth. The heaviness or lightness of sins (for purposes of expiation) of each of the four orders, should be

---

* These are the five products of the cow, besides earth, water, ashes, acids, and fire.—T.

determined upon this principle.[33] Having slain a bird or an animal, or cut down living trees, a person should publish his sin and fast for three nights.[34] By having intercourse with one with whom intercourse is prohibited, the expiation for one is wandering in wet clothes and sleeping on a bed of ashes.[35] These, O king, are the expiations for sinful acts, according to precedent and reason and scriptures and the ordinances of Brahman himself.[36] A Brāhmana may be cleansed of all sins by reciting the *Gāyatri* in a sacred place, all the while living upon frugal fare, casting off malice, abandoning wrath and hate, unmoved by praise and blame, and abstaining from speeh with all.[37] He should during the day time be under shelter of the sky and should lie down at night even at such a place. Thrice during the day, and thrice during the night, he should also plunge with his clothes into a stream or lake for performing his ablutions.[38] Observant of rigid vows, he should abstain from speech with women, Cudras, and fallen persons. A Brāhmana by observing such regulations may be cleansed of all sins unconsciously committed by him.[39] A person obtains in the other world the fruits, well or ill, of his acts here which are all witnessed by the elements. Be it virtue or be it vice, according to the true measure that one acquires of either, one enjoys or suffers the consequences (even here).[40] By knowledge, by penances, and by righteous acts, therefore, one enhances his weal (even here). One, therefore, may similarly enhance his misery by committing unrighteous acts.[41] One should, therefore, always achieve acts that are righteous and abstain altogether from those that are unrighteous.[42] I have now indicated what the expiations are of the sins that have been mentioned. There is expiation for every sin except those that are called *Mahāpātakas* (highly heinous).[43] As regards sins in respect of unclean food and the like, and improper speeches, &c., they are of two classes, viz., those committed consciously and those that are committed unconsciously.[44] All sins that are committed consciously are grave, while those that are committed unconsciously are trivial or light. There is expiation for both.[45] Indeed, sin is capable of being washed away by (observance of) the ordinances spoken of. Those ordinances, however, have been

laid down only for believers (in god) and those that have faith.[46] They are not for atheists or those that have no faith, or those in whom pride and malice predominate.[47] A person, O tiger among men, that is desirous of weal both here and hereafter, should, O foremost of virtuous men, have recourse to righteous behaviour, to (the counsels of) men that are righteous, and to the duties that have been ordained for him.[48] Therefore, for the reasons already advanced (by me), thou, O king, shalt be cleansed of all thy sins for thou hast slain thy foes in the discharge of thy duties as a king and for the protection of thy life-breaths and thy inheritance.[49] Or, if notwithstanding this, thou still regardest thyself to be sinful, perform expiation! Do not cast away thy life in consequence of such grief that is not becoming a wise man!' "[50]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by the holy *Rishi*, king Yudhishthira the just, having reflected for a short while, said these words unto the sage."[51]

Section XXXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandfather, what food is clean and what unclean, what gift is praiseworthy, and who should be considered deserving and who undeserving (of gifts)!'[1]

"Vyāsa said,—'In this connection is cited the old account of a discourse between the ascetics and that lord of creation, viz., Manu.[2] In the *Krita* age, an assembly of *Rishis*, of rigid vows, having approached the great and puissant lord of creation, Manu, while seated at his ease, solicited him to discourse on duties, saying,[3]—What food should be taken, who is to be regarded a deserving person (for gifts), what gifts should be made, how should a person study, and what penances should one perform and how, and what acts should be done and what acts should not be done! O lord of creation, tell us everything about these![4]—Thus addressed by them, the divine and self-born Manu said unto them,—Listen to me as I expound the duties in brief and in detail![5] In regions which have not been interdicted, silent recitation (of sacred *mantras*, *homa*),

fasts, knowledge of self, sacred rivers, regions inhabited by men devoted to these pious acts,[6]—these have been laid down as acts and objects that are cleansing. Certain mountains also are cleansing, as also the eating of gold and bathing in waters into which have been dipped gems and precious stones.*[7] Sojourn to holy places, and eating of sanctified butter,—these also, without doubt, speedily cleanse a man.[8] No man would ever be called wise, if he indulged his pride. If he wishes to be long-lived, he should for three nights drink hot water (as an expiation for having indulged his pride).[9] Refusal to appropriate what is not given, gift, study (of scriptures), penance, abstention from injury, truth, freedom from wrath, and worship of the gods in sacrifices,—these are the characteristics of virtue.[10] That again which is virtue may, according to time and place, be sin. Thus appropriation (of what belongs to others), untruth, and injury and killing, may under special circumstances, become virtue.†[11] With respect to persons capable of judging, acts are of two kinds, *viz.*, virtuous and sinful. From the worldly and the Vedic points of view again, virtue and sin are good or bad (according to their consequences). From the Vedic point of view, virtue and sin (*i.e.*, everything a man may do or not do), would be classed under *action* and *inaction*. Inaction (*i. e.*, abstention from Vedic rites and adoption of a life of contemplation) leads to emancipation (from rebirth); while the consequences of action (*i. e.*, pratice of Vedic rites) are repeated death and rebirth. From the worldly point of view, acts that are evil lead to evil and those that are good to consequences that are good. From the worldly point of view, therefore, virtue and sin are to be distinguished by the good and the evil character of their conse-

---

* The first line of 7 is read differently in the Bombay edition. Nilakantha accepts it. I think, however, that the Bengal reading is better for its intelligibility.—T.

† *Appropriation &c.*, as in the case of the king imposing fines on offenders and appropriating them to the uses of the state. *Untruth*, as that of the loyal servant or follower for protecting the life of his master. Killing, as that of an offender by the king, or in the exercise of the right of self defence.—T.

quences.*[12-13] Acts that are (apparently) evil, when undertaken from considerations connected with the gods, the scriptures, life itself, and the means by which life is sustained, produce consequnces that are good.†[14] When an act is undertaken from the expectation, however doubtful, that it will produce mischief (to some one) in the future, or when an act is done whose consequence is visibly mischievous, expiation has been laid down.[15] When an act is done from wrath or clouded judgment, then expiation should be performed by giving pain to the body, guided by precedent, by scriptures, and by reason. When anything, again, is done for pleasing or displeasing the mind, the sin arising therefrom may be cleansed by sanctified food and recitation of *mantras*.[16-17] The king who lays aside (in a particular case) the rod of chastisement, should fast for one night. The priest who (in a particular case) abstains from advising the king to inflict punishment, should fast for three nights as an expiation.[18] The person who, from grief, attempts to commit suicide by means of weapons, should fast for three nights.[19] There is no expiation for them that cast off the duties and practices of their order and class, country, and family, and that abandon their very creed.[20] When an occasion for doubt respecting what should be done arises, that should be regarded as the injunction of the scriptures which ten persons versed in Vedic scriptures or three of those that frequently recite them may declare.‡[21] The bull, earth, little ants, worms generated in dirt, and poison, should not be eaten by Brāhmanas.[22] They should not also eat fishes that have no scales, and

* These two verses, as they stand in the original, are exceedingly terse. I have been obliged to interpolate largely for making the English version intelligible. To avoid the look of pedantry, *all* the interpolations have not been enclosed within parantheses.—T.

† Nilakantha explains this verse differently. I think he is not right in taking *açubhānām* for *nichānām*. Why should we do a violence to the word ?—T.

‡ There were, as now, persons with whom the reading or recitation of the scriptures was a profession. The functions of these men were not unlike those of the rhapsodists of ancient Greece.—T.

four-footed aquatic animals like frogs and others, except the tortoise.[23] Water-fowls called *Bhāsas*, ducks, *Suparnas*, *Chakravākas*, diving ducks, cranes, crows, shags, vultures, hawks, owls,[24] as also all four-footed animals that are carnivorous and that have sharp and long teeth, and birds, and animals having two teeth and those having four teeth,[25] as also the milk of the sheep, the she-ass, the she-camel, the newly-calved cow, women, and deer, should not be taken by a Brāhmana.[26] Besides this, the food that has been offered to the manes, that which has been cooked by a woman who has recently brought forth a child, and food cooked by an unknown person, should not be eaten. The milk also of a cow that has recently calved should not be taken.[27] If a Brāhmana takes food that has been cooked by a Kshatriya, it diminishes his energy; if he takes the food provided by a Cudra, it dims his Brāhmanic lustre; and if he takes the food provided by a goldsmith or a woman who has neither husband nor children, it lessens the period of his life.[28] The food provided by an usurer is equivalent to dirt, while that provided by a woman living by prostitution is equivalent to semen. The food also provided by persons that tolerate the unchastity of their wives, and by persons that are ruled by their spouses, is forbidden.[29] The food provided by a person selected (for receiving gifts) at a certain stage of a sacrifice, by one who does not enjoy his wealth or make any gifts, that provided by one who sells *Soma*, or one who is a shoe-maker, by an unchaste woman, by a washerman,[30] by a physician, by persons serving as watchmen, by a multitude of persons, by one who is pointed at by a whole village, by one deriving his support from keep of dancing girls,[31] by persons wedding before their elder brothers are wedded, by professional panegyrists and bards, and by those that are gamblers, the food also which is brought with the left hand or which is stale,[32] the food which is mixed with alcohol, the food a portion of which has been already tasted, and the food that forms the remnant of a feast, should not be taken (by a Brāhmana). Cakes, sugarcanes, potherbs, and rice boiled in sugared milk, if they have lost their relish, should not be taken.[33] The powder of fried barley and of other kinds

of fried grain, mixed with curds, if become stale with age, should not be taken. Rice boiled in sugared milk, food mixed with the *tila* seed, meat, and cakes, that have not been dedicated to the gods,[34] should not be taken by Brāhmanas leading a domestic mode of life. Having first gratified the gods, *Rishis*, guests, *Pitris*, and the household deities, a Brāhmana leading a domestic mode of life should then take his food. A householder by living thus in his own house becomes like a person of the *Bhikshu* order that has renounced the world.[35-36] A man of such behaviour, living with his wives in domesticity, earns great religious merit. No one should make a gift for the sake of acquiring fame, or from fear (of censure and the like) or unto a benefactor.[37] A virtuous man would not make gifts unto persons living by singing and dancing or unto those that are professional jesters, or unto a person that is intoxicated, or unto one that is insane, or unto a thief, or unto a slanderer,[38] or unto an idiot, or unto one that is pale of hue, or unto one that is defective of a limb, or unto a dwarf, or unto a wicked person, or unto one born in a low and wicked family, or unto one that has not been sanctified by the observance of vows.[39] No gift should be made to a Brāhmana destitute of knowledge of the Vedas. Gifts should be made unto him only that is a *Çrotriya*.* An improper gift and an improper acceptance produce evil consequences unto both the giver and the acceptor.[40] As a person who seeks to cross the ocean with the aid of a rock or a mass of catechu sinks along with his support, even so the giver and the acceptor (in such a case) both sink together.[41] As a fire that is covered with wet fuel does not blaze forth, even so the acceptor of a gift who is bereft of penances and study and piety cannot confer any benefit (upon the giver).[42] As water in a (human) skull and milk in a bag made of dog-skin become unclean in consequence of the uncleanness of the vessels in which they are kept, even so the Vedas become fruitless in a person who is not of good behaviour.[43] One may give from compassion unto a low Brāhmana who is without *mantras* and vows, who is ignorant of the

---

* *I. e.*, one possessed of a knowledge of the Vedas.—T.

scriptures and who harbours envy.[44] One may, from compassion, give unto a person that is poor or afflicted or ill. But he should not give unto such a person in the belief that he would derive any (spiritual) benefit from it or that he would earn any religious merit by it.[45] There is no doubt that a gift made to a Brāhmana bereft of the Vedas becomes perfectly fruitless in consequence of the fault of the recipient.[46] As an elephant made of wood or an antelope made of leather, even so is a Brāhmana that has not studied the Vedas. All the three have nothing but names.*[47] As a eunuch is unproductive with women, as a cow is unproductive with a cow, as a bird lives in vain that is featherless, even so is a Brāhmana that is without *mantras*.[48] As grain without kernel, as a well without water, as libations poured on ashes, even so is a gift to a Brāhmana void of learning.[49] An unlearned Brāhmana is an enemy (to all) and is the destroyer of the food that is presented to the gods and *Pitris*. A gift made to such a person goes for nothing. He is, therefore, like unto a robber (of other people's wealth). He can never succeed in acquiring regions of bliss hereafter.[50] I have now told thee in brief, O Yudhishthira, all that was said (by Manu on that occasion). This high discourse should be listened to by all, O bull of Bharata's race!'"[51]

Section XXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O holy and great ascetic, I desire to hear in detail what the duties of kings are and what the duties, in full, of all the four orders![1] I desire also to hear, O foremost of Brāhmanas, what behaviour should be adopted in seasons of distress, and how I may subjugate the world by treading along the path of morality![2] This discourse on expiation, treating (at the same time) of fasts and capable of exciting great curiousity, fills me with joy.[3] The practice of virtue and the discharge of kingly duties are always inconsistent with each

---

* With very slight verbal alterations, this verse, as also the first half of the next, like many others, occurs in Manu, *Vide* Manu, Ch. II, v. 157-58.—T.

other. Always thinking of how one may reconcile the two, my mind is constantly stupified!' "[4]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Then Vyāsa, O monarch, that foremost of all persons conversant with the Vedas, casting his eyes upon that ancient and all-knowing person, *viz.*, Nārada, said,[5]—If, O king, thou wishest to hear of duties and morality in full, then ask Bhishma, O mighty-armed one, that old grandsire of the Kurus![6] Conversant with all duties and possessed of universal knowledge, that son of Bhāgirathi will remove all the doubts in thy heart on the difficult subject of duties.[7] That goddess, *viz.*, the genius of the celestial river of three courses, brought him forth. He saw with his physical eyes all the gods with Indra at their head.[8] Having gratified with his dutiful services the celestial *Rishis* having Vrihaspati at their head, he acquired a knowledge of the duties of kings.[9] That foremost one among the Kurus obtained a knowledge also of that science, with its interpretations, which Uçanas and that regenerate one who is the preceptor of the celestials know.[10] Having practised rigid vows, that mighty-armed one acquired a knowledge of all the Vedas and their branches, from Vaçishtha and from Chyavana of Bhrigu's race.[11] In olden days he studied under the eldest-born son of the Grandsire himself, viz., Sanatkumāra of blazing splendour, well conversant with the truths of mental and spiritual science.[12] He learnt the duties in full of the *Yatis* from the lips of Mārkandeya. That bull among men obtained all weapons from Rāma and Cakra.[13] Although born among human beings, his death itself is still under his own control. Although childless, yet he has many regions of bliss hereafter as heard by us.[14] Regenerate *Rishis* of great merit were always his courtiers. There is nothing among objects that should be known that is unknown to him.[15] Conversant with all duties and acquainted with all the subtile truths of morality, even he will discourse to thee upon duty and morality! Go unto him before he abandons his life-breaths.'[16]! Thus addressed by him, the high-souled son of Kunti, of great wisdom, said the following words unto Satyavati's son Vyāsa, that first of eloquent men.[17]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Having caused a great and horrid

slaughter of kinsmen, I have become an offender against all and a destroyer of the Earth![18] Having caused that Bhishma himself, that warrior who always fought fairly, to be slain by aid of deceit, how shall I approach him for asking him (about duties and morality)?' "[19]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Moved by the desire of benefiting all the four orders, the mighty-armed and high-souled chief of Yadu's race once more addressed that foremost of kings (in the following words).[20]

"Vāsudeva said,—'It behoveth thee not to show such pertinacity in grief. Do that, O best of kings, which the holy Vyāsa has said![21] The Brāhmanas, O mighty-armed one, and these thy brothers of great energy, stand before thee beseechingly like persons beseeching the deity of the clouds at the close of summer.[22] The unslain remnant of the assembled kings, and the people belonging to all the four orders of thy kingdom of Kurujāngala, O king, are here![23] For the sake of doing what is agreeable to these high-souled Brāhmanas, in obedience also to the command of thy reverend senior Vyāsa of immeasurable energy,[24] and at the request of ourselves that are thy well-wishers, and of Draupadi, O scorcher of foes, do what is agreeable to us, O slayer of foes, and what is beneficial to the world!' "[25]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by Krishna, the high-souled king (Yudhishthira) of eyes like lotus petals, rose from his seat for the good of the whole world.[26] That tiger among men, viz., Yudhishthira of great fame, beseeched by Krishna himself, by the Island-born (Vyāsa), by Devasthāna, by Jishnu, by these and many others, cast off his grief and anxiety.[27-28] Fully conversant with the declarations of the *Çrutis*, with the science that treats of the interpretation of those declarations, and with all that men usually hear and all that deserves to be heard, the son of Pāndu obtained peace of mind and resolved upon what he should next do.[29] Surrounded by all of them like the moon by the stars, the king, placing Dhritarāshtra at the head of the train, set out for entering the city.[30] Desirous of entering the city, Kunti's son Yudhishthira, conversant with every duty, offered worship unto the

gods and thousands of Brāhmanas.[31] He then ascended a new and white car covered with blankets and deer-skins, and unto which were yoked sixteen white bullocks possessed of auspicious marks, and which had been sanctified with Vedic *mantras*. Adored by panegyrists and bards, the king mounted upon that car like Soma riding upon his own ambrosial vehicle.[32-33] His brother Bhima of terrible prowess took the reins. Arjuna held over his head a white umbrella of great effulgence.[34] That white umbrella held upon the car looked beautiful like a star-decked white cloud in the firmament.[35] The two heroic sons of Mādri, viz., Nakula and Sahadeva, took up two yak-tails white as the rays of the moon and adorned with gems, for fanning the king.[36] The five brothers, decked with ornaments, having ascended the car, O king, looked like the five elements (that enter into the composition of every body).[37] Riding upon another white car unto which were yoked steeds fleet as thought, Yuyutsu, O king, followed the eldest son of Pāndu behind.[38] Upon his own brilliant car of gold unto which were yoked Caivya and Sugriva, Krishna, with Sātyaki, followed the Kurus.[39] The eldest uncle of Prithā's son, O Bhārata, accompanied by Gāndhāri, proceeded at the head of the train, upon a vehicle borne on the shoulders of men.[40] The other ladies of the Kuru household, as also Kunti and Krishnā, all proceeded on excellent vehicles, headed by Vidura.[41] Behind followed a large number of cars and elephants decked with ornaments, and foot-soldiers and steeds.[42] His praises chaunted by sweet-voiced panegyrists and bards, the king proceeded towards the city called after the elephant.[43] The progress, O mighty-armed one, of king Yudhishthira, became so beautiful that its like had never been seen on Earth. Teeming with healthy and cheerful men, the busy hum of innumerable voices was heard there.[44] During the progress of Prithā's son, the city and its streets were adorned with gay citizens (all of whom had come out for honoring the king).[45] The spot through which the king passed had been decked with white festoons of flowers and innumerable banners. The streets of the city were perfumed with incense.[46] The palace was overlaid with powdered perfumes and flowers and fragrant plants, and hung

over with garlands and wreaths.[47] New metallic jars, full of water to the brim, were kept at the door of every house, and bevies of beautiful maidens of the fairest complexion stood at particular spots.[48] Accompanied by his friends, the son of Pāndu, adored with sweet speeches, entered the city through its well-adorned gate."[49]

SECTION XXXIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"At the time the Pārthas entered the city, thousands upon thousands of the citizens came out to behold the sight.[1] The well-adorned squares and streets, with the crowd swelling at each moment, looked beautiful like the ocean swelling at the rise of the moon.[2] The large mansions that stood on the street-sides, decked with every ornament and full of ladies, seemed to shake, O Bhārata, with their fair freight.[3] With soft and modest voices they uttered the praises of Yudhishthira, of Bhima and Arjuna, and of the two sons of Mādri.[4] And they said,—'Worthy of all praise art thou, O blessed princess of Pānchāla, that waitest by the side of these foremost of men even like Gautami by the side of the (seven) *Rishis!*[5] Thy acts and vows have borne their fruit, O lady!' In this strain, O monarch, the ladies praised the princess Krishnā.[6] In consequence of those praises, O Bhārata, and their speeches with one another, and the shouts of joy (uttered by the men), the city became filled with a loud uproar.[7] Having passed through the streets with such behaviour as befitted him, Yudhishthira then entered the beautiful palace (of the Kurus) adorned with every ornament.[8] The people belonging to the city and the provinces, approaching the palace, uttered speeches that were agreeable to his ears.[9] 'By good luck, O foremost of kings, thou hast vanquished thy enemies, O slayer of foes! By good luck, thou hast recovered thy kingdom through virtue and prowess![10] Be, O foremost of kings, our monarch for a hundred years, and protect thy subjects virtuously like Indra protecting (the denizens of heaven!'[11] Thus adored at the palace-gate with blessed speeches, and accepting the benedictions uttered by the Brāhmanas from every side,[12] the king, graced with victory

and the blessings of his people, entered the palace that resembled the mansion of Indra himself, and then descended from his car.[13] Entering the apartments, the blessed Yudhishthira approached the household gods and worshipped them with gems and scents and floral wreaths.[14] Possessed of great fame and prosperity, the king came out once more and beheld a number of Brāhmanas waiting with auspicious articles in their hands (for pronouncing benedictions on him).[15] Surrounded by those Brāhmanas desirous of uttering benedictions on him, the king looked beautiful like the spotless moon in the midst of the stars.[16] Accompanied by his priest Dhaumya and his eldest uncle, the son of Kunti cheerfully worshipped, with due rites, those Brāhmanas with (gifts of) sweets, gems, and gold in profusion, and kine and robes, O monarch, and with diverse other articles that each desired.[17-18] Then loud shouts of—*This is a blessed day*—arose, filling the entire welkin, O Bhārata. Sweet to the ear, that sacred sound was highly gratifying to the friends and well-wishers (of the Pāndavas).[19] The king heard that sound uttered by those learned Brāhmanas and that was as loud and clear as the sound of a bevy of swans. He listened also to the speeches, fraught with melodious words and grave import, of those persons well-conversant with the Vedas.[20] Then, O king, the peal of drums and the delightful blare of conchs, indicative of triumph, arose.[21] A little while after, when the Brāhmanas had become silent, a *Rākshasa* of the name of Chārvāka, who had disguised himself as a Brāhmana, addressed the king.[22] He was a friend of Duryodhana and stood there in the garb of a religious mendicant. With a rosary, with a tuft of hair on his head, and with the triple staff in his hand, he stood proudly and fearlessly[23] in the midst of all those Brāhmanas that had come there for pronouncing benedictions (upon the king), numbering by thousands, O king, and all of whom were devoted to penances and vows.[24] That wicked wight, desirous of evil unto the high-souled Pāndavas, and without having consulted those Brāhmanas, said these words unto the king.[25]

"Chārvāka said,—'All these Brāhmanas, making me their spokesman, are saying,—Fie on thee! Thou art a wicked

king! Thou art a slayer of kinsmen![26] What shalt thou gain, O son of Kunti, by having thus exterminated thy race? Having slain also thy superiors and preceptor, it is proper for thee to cast away thy life![27]—'Hearing these words of that wicked *Rākshasa*, the Brāhmanas there became deeply agitated. Stung by that speech, they made a loud uproar.[28] And all of them, with king Yudhishthira, O monarch, became speechless from anxiety and shame.[29]

"Yudhishthira said,—'I bow down to ye and beseech ye humbly, be gratified with me! It doth not behove ye to cry fie on me. I shall soon lay down my life!' "*[30]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Then all those Brāhmanas, O king, loudly said,—'These are not our words! Prosperity to thee, O monarch!'[31] Those high-souled persons, conversant with the Vedas, with understandings rendered clear by penances, then penetrated the disguise of the speaker by means of their spiritual sight.[32] And they said,—'This is the *Rākshasa* Chārvāka, the friend of Duryodhana! Having put on the garb of a religious mendicant, he seeks the good of his friend Duryodhana![33] We have not, O thou of righteous soul, said anything of the kind! Let this anxiety of thine be dispelled! Let prosperity attend upon thee with thy brothers!' "[34]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—'Those Brāhmanas then, insensate with rage, uttered the sound *Hun*. Cleansed of all sins, they censured the sinful *Rākshasa* and slew him there (with that very sound).[35] Consumed by the energy of those utterers of *Brahma*, Chārvāka fell down dead, like a tree with all its sprouts blasted by the thunder of Indra.[36] Duly worshipped, the Brāhmanas went away, having gladdened the king with their benedictions. The royal son of Pāndu also, with all his friends, felt great happiness."[37]

---

* *Pratyāsanna-vyasaninam* is explained by Nilakantha as 'I stand near these distressed brothers of mine (for whose sake only I am for accepting sovereignty." This is certainly very fanciful. The plain meaning is, 'I am about to lay down my life."—T.

Section XL.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Then Devaki's son Janārddana of universal knowledge addressed king Yudhishthira who stood there with his brothers, saying,[1]—'In this world, O sire, Brāhmanas are always objects of worship with me. They are gods on Earth, having poison in their speech, and are exceedingly easy to gratify.[2] Formerly, in the Krita age, O king, a *Rākshasa* of the name of Chārvāka, O mighty-armed one, performed austere penances for many years in Vadari.[3] Brahman repeatedly solicited him to ask for boons. At last the *Rākshasa* solicited the boon, O Bhārata, of immunity from fear at the hands of every being in the universe.[4] The Lord of the universe gave that high boon of immunity from fear at the hands of all creatures, subject to the only limitation that he should be careful of how he offended the Brāhmanas.[5] Having obtained that boon, the sinful and mighty *Rākshasa* of fierce deeds and great prowess began to give pain to the gods.[6] The gods, persecuted by the might of the *Rākshasa*, assembling together, approached Brahman, for compassing their foe's destruction.[7] The eternal and unchangeable god answered them, O Bhārata, saying,—I have already arranged the means by which the death of this *Rākshasa* may soon be brought about.[8] There will be a king of the name of Duryodhana. Among men, he will be the friend of this wight. Bound by affection towards him, the *Rākshasa* will insult the Brāhmanas.[9] Stung by the wrong he will inflict upon them, the Brāhmanas, whose might consists in speech, will in wrath censure him, at which he will meet with destruction![10]—Even that *Rākshasa* Chārvāka, O foremost of kings, slain by the curse of the Brāhmanas, lies there, deprived of life! Do not, O bull of Bharata's race, give way to grief![11] Thy kinsmen, O king, have all perished in the observance of Kshatriya duties. Those bulls among Kshatriyas, those high-souled heroes, have all gone to heaven![12] Do thou attend to thy duties now! O thou of unfading glory, let no grief be thine. Slay thy foes, protect thy subjects, and worship the Brāhmanas!'"[13]

Section XLI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The royal son of Kunti, freed from grief and the fever of his heart, took his seat, with face eastwards, on an excellent seat made of gold.[1] On another seat, beautiful and blazing and made of gold, sat, with face directed towards him, those two chastisers of foes, viz., Sātyaki and Vāsudeva.[2] Placing the king in their midst, on his two sides sat Bhima and Arjuna upon two beautiful seats adorned with gems.[3] Upon a white throne of ivory, decked with gold, sat Prithā with Sahadeva and Nakula.[4] Sudharman,* and Vidura, and Dhaumya, and the Kuru king Dhritarāshtra, each sat separately on separate seats that blazed with the effulgence of fire.[5] Yuyutsu and Sanjaya and Gāndhāri of great fame, all sat down where king Dhritarāshtra had taken his seat.[6] The righteous-souled king, seated there, touched the beautiful white flowers, *Swastikas*, vessels full of diverse articles, earth, gold, silver, and gems, (that were placed before him).[7] Then all the subjects, headed by the priest, came to see king Yudhishthira, bringing with them diverse kinds of auspicious articles.[8] Then earth, and gold, and many kinds of gems, and all things in profusion that were necessary for the performance of the coronation rite, were brought there.[9] There were golden jars full to the brim (with water), and those made of copper and silver and earth, and flowers, and fried paddy, and *Kuça* grass, and cow's milk,[10] and (sacrificial) fuel consisting of the wood of *Çami*, *Pippala*, and *Palāsa*, and honey and clarified butter and (sacrificial) laddles made of *Udumvara*, and conchs adorned with gold.†[11] Then the priest Dhaumya, at the request of Krishna, constructed according to rule, an altar gradually inclining towards the east and the north.[12] Causing the high-souled Yudhishthira then, with Krishnā the daughter of Drupada, to be seated upon a handsome seat, called *Sarvatobhadra*, with firm feet and covered with tiger-skin and blaz-

---

* The priest of the Kauravas.—T.

† Cami is the *Accacia suma*; *Pippala* is the *Piper longum*; and *Palāsa* is the *Butea frondosa*. *Udumvara* is the *Ficus glomerata*.—T.

ing with effulgence, began to pour libations of clarified butter (upon the sacrificial fire) with proper *mantras*.[13-14] Then he of Daçārha's race, rising from his seat, took up the sanctified conch, poured the water it contained upon the head of that lord of Earth, viz., Yudhishthira the son of Kunti. The royal sage Dhritarāshtra and all the subjects also did the same[15] at the request of Krishna. The son of Pāndu then, with his brothers, thus bathed with the sanctified water of the conch, looked exceedingly beautiful.[16] Then *Panavas* and *Ānakas* and drums were beat. King Yudhishthira the just duly accepted the gifts made unto him by the subjects. Always giving away presents in profusion in all his sacrifices, the king honored his subjects in return.[17] He gave a thousand *nishkas* unto the Brāhmanas that uttered (especial) benedictions on him. All of them had studied the Vedas and were endued with wisdom and good behaviour.[18] Gratified (with gifts), the Brāhmanas, O king, wished him prosperity and victory, and with voice melodious like that of swans, uttered his praises, saying,[19]—'O Yudhishthira of mighty arms, by good luck, O son of Pāndu, victory has been thine! By good luck, O thou of great splendour, thou hast recovered thy position through prowess![20] By good luck, the wielder of *Gāndiva*, and Bhimasena, and thyself O king, and the two sons of Mādri, are all well,[21] having slain your foes and escaped with life from this battle, so destructive of heroes! Do thou, O Bhārata, attend without delay to those acts that should next be done!'[22] Thus adored by those pious men, king Yudhishthira the just, with his friends, became installed on the throne of a large kingdom, O Bhārata!"[23]

Section XLII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having heard those words, suitable to time and place, of his subjects, king Yudhishthira answered them in the following words:[1]—'Great must be the sons of Pāndu, in sooth, whose merits, true or false, are thus recited by such foremost of Brāhmanas assembled together![2] Without doubt, we are all objects of favor with ye since ye so

freely describe us to be possessed of such attributes![3] King Dhritarāshtra, however, is our father and god. If ye desire to do what is agreeable to me, always render your obedience to him and do what is agreeable to him![4] Having slaughtered all my kinsmen, I live for him alone. My great duty is to always serve him in every respect with watchfulness.[5] If ye, as also my friends, think that I should be an object of favor with you and them, let me then request you all to show the same behaviour towards Dhritarāshtra as ye used to show before![6] He is the lord of the world, of yourselves, and of myself! The whole world, with the Pāndavas, belongs to him.[7] Ye should always bear these words of mine in your minds!' The king then told them to go whithersoever they liked.[8] Having dismissed the citizens and the people of the provinces, the delighter of the Kurus appointed his brother Bhimasena as *Yuvarāja*.[9] And he cheerfully appointed Vidura of great intelligence for assisting him with his deliberations and for overlooking the sixfold requirements of the state.*[10] And he appointed Sanjaya of mature years and possessed of every accomplishment, as general director and supervisor of the finances,[11] And the king appointed Nakula for keeping the register of the forces, for giving them food and pay and for supervising other affairs of the army.[12] And king Yudhishthira appointed Phālguna for resisting hostile forces and chastising the wicked.[13] And he appointed Dhaumya, the foremost of priests, to attend daily to the Brāhmanas and all rites in honor of the gods and other acts of a religious kind.[14] And he appointed Sahadeva to always remain by his side, for the king thought, O monarch, that he should under all circumstances be protected by that brother of his.[15] And the king cheerfully employed others in other acts according as he deemed them fit.[16] That slayer of hostile heroes, viz., the righteous-souled king Yudhishthira, ever devoted to virtue, commanded Vidura and the high-souled Yuyutsu, saying,[17]—'You should always with alacrity and attention do everything that my royal father Dhritarāshtra wishes![18]

---

* These are peace, war, marching, halting, sowing dissensions, and defence of the kingdom by seeking alliances and building forts, &c.—T

Whatever also should be done in respect of the citizens and the residents of the provinces should be accomplished by you in your respective departments, after taking the king's permission.' "[19]

SECTION XLIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After this, king Yudhishthira of magnanimous soul caused the *Çrāddha* rites to be performed for every one of his kinsmen slain in battle.[1] King Dhritarāshtra also of great fame, gave away, for the good of his sons in the other world, excellent food, and kine, and much wealth, and many beautiful and costly gems (unto the Brāhmanas).[2] Yudhishthira, accompanied by Draupadi, gave away much wealth for the sake of Drona and the high-souled Karna, of Dhrishtadyumna and Abhimanyu, of the *Rākshasa* Ghatotkacha the son of Hidimvā, and of Virāta, and his other well-wishers that had served him loyally, and of Drupada and the five sons of Draupadi.[3-4] For the sake of each of these, the king gratified thousands of Brāhmanas with gifts of wealth and gems and kine and clothes.[5] The king performed the *Çraddha* rite for the good, in the next world, of every one of those kings also who had fallen in the battle without leaving kinsmen or friends behind.[6] And the king also, for the good of the souls of all his friends, caused houses to be founded for the distribution of food, and places for the distribution of water, and tanks to be excavted in their names.[7] Thus paying off the the debt he owed to them and avoiding the chance of censure in the world,* the king became happy and continued to protect his subjects virtuously.[8] He showed due honor as before, unto Dhritarāshtra, and Gāndhāri, and Vidura, and unto all the superior Kauravas and unto all the officers.[9] Full of kindness, the Kuru king honored and protected all those ladies also who had, in consequence of the battle, been deprived of their heroic husbands and sons.[10] The puissant king, with great

---

* For if he had acted otherwise, he would have been called thankless.—T.

compassion, extended his favors to the destitute and the blind and the helpless by giving them food, clothes and shelter.[11] Freed from foes and having conquered the whole Earth, king Yudhishthira began to enjoy great happiness."[12]

SECTION XLIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having got back the kingdom, king Yudhishthira of great wisdom and purity, after the ceremony of installation had been over, joining his hands together, addressed the lotus-eyed Krishna of Daçārha's race, saying,[1]—'Through thy grace, O Krishna, through thy policy and might and intelligence and prowess, O tiger among the Yadus,[2] I have got back this ancestral kingdom of mine! O thou of eyes like lotus leaves, I repeatedly bow to thee, O chastiser of foes![3] Thou hast been called the One only Being! Thou hast been said to be the refuge of all worshippers! The regenerate ones adore thee under innumerable names![*4] Salutations to thee, O Creator of the Universe! Thou art the soul of the Universe and the Universe hath sprung from thee! Thou art Vishnu, thou art Jishnu, thou art Hari, thou art Krishna, thou art Vaikuntha, and thou art the foremost of all beings![5] Thou hast, as said in the *Purānas*, taken thy birth seven times in the womb of Aditi. It was thou that tookest birth in the womb of Prishni![†] The learned say that thou art the three *Yugas*![6‡] All thy achievements are sacred! Thou art the lord of our senses! Thou art the great Lord worshipped in sacrifices! Thou art called the great swan! Thou art Three-eyed Cambhu! Thou art One, though known as Vibhu and Dāmodara![7] Thou art the great Boar, thou art Fire, thou art the Sun, thou hast the bull for the device on thy banner, and thou hast Garuda also as thy device! Thou

---

* The literal meaning of *Purusha*, as applied to the Supreme Being, is 'One that pervades all forms in the Universe."—T.

† I. e., Aditi and of Aditi's self as born in different shapes at different times.—T.

‡ *Yugas* may mean either the three ages *Krita*, *Tretā*, and *Dwāpara*; or, the three pairs such as Virtue and Knowledge, Renunciation and Lordship, and Prosperity and Fame.—T.

art the grinder of hostile hosts, thou art the Being that pervadest every form in the universe, and thou art of irresistible prowess![8] Thou art the foremost of all things, thou art fierce, thou art the generalissimo in battle, thou art Truth, thou art the giver of food, and thou art Guha (the celestial generalissimo)! Thyself unfading, thou causest thy foes to fade and waste. Thou art the Brāhmana of pure blood, and thou art those that have sprung from intermixture. Thou art great![9] Thou walkest on high, thou art the mountains, and thou art called *Vrishadarbha* and *Vrishākapi*! Thou art the Ocean, thou art without attributes, thou hast three humps, thou hast three abodes, and thou takest human forms on Earth, descending from heaven![10] Thou art Emperor, thou art *Virāt*, and thou art *Swarāt!** Thou art the Chief of the celestials, and thou art the cause whence the Universe has sprung! Thou art Almighty, thou art exsistence in every form, thou art without form, thou art Krishna, and thou art fire![11] Thou art the Creator, thou art the sire of the celestial physicians, thou art (the sage) Kapila, and thou art the Dwarf![†][12] Thou art Sacrifice embodied, thou art Dhruva,‡ thou art Garuda, and thou art called *Yajnasena*! Thou art Cikhandin, thou art Nahusha, and thou art Vabhru! Thou art the constellation *Punarvasu* extended in the firmament![13] Thou art exceedingly tawny in hue, thou art the sacrifice known by the name of *Uktha*, thou art Sushena, thou art the drum (that sends forth its sound on every side)! The track of thy car-wheels is light! Thou art the lotus of Prosperity, thou art the cloud called *Pushkara*, and thou art decked with floral wreaths![14] Thou art affluent, thou art puissant, thou art the most subtile, and it is thou whom the Vedas describe! Thou art the great

---

* Virāt is one superior to an Emperor, and Swarāt is one superior to a Virāt.—T.

† Vishnu, assuming the form of a dwarf, deluded the *Asura* Vali into giving away unto him the three worlds which he forthwith restored to Indra.—T.

‡ The son of Uttānapāda, who in the *Krita* age had adored Vishnu at a very early age and obtained the most valuable boons.—T.

receptacle of waters, thou art Brahman, thou art the sacred refuge, and thou knowest the abodes of all! Thou art called *Hiranyagarva*, thou art the sacred mantras *swadhā* and *swāhā*, thou art Keçava![15] Thou art the cause whence all this hath sprung, and thou art its dissolution! In the beginning it is thou that createst the universe! This universe is under thy control, O Creator of the universe! Salutations to thee, O wielder of *Çārṅga*, discus, and sword!'[16] Thus hymned by king Yudhishthira the just in the midst of the court, the lotus-eyed Krishna became pleased. That foremost one of the Yādavas then began to gladden the eldest son of Pāndu with many agreeable speeches."[17]

Section XLV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The king dismissed all his subjects, who, commanded by the monarch, returned to their respective homes.[1] Comforting his brothers, Yudhishthira, blazing with beauty, then addressed his brothers Bhima of terrible prowess and Arjuna and the twins, saying,[2]—'Your bodies have, in the great battle, been mangled with diverse kinds of weapons by the foe. Ye are greatly fatigued, grief and anger have scorched your hearts.[3] Through my fault, ye bulls of Bharata's race, ye have suffered the miseries of an exile in the forests like vulgar men![4] In delight and in happy ease enjoy this victory (that ye have won)! After resting yourselves and regaining the full use of your faculties, meet me again in the morning.'[5] After this, the mighty-armed Vrikodara, like Maghavat entering his own beautiful fane, entered the palace of Duryodhana, that was adorned with many excellent buildings and rooms, that abounded with gems of diverse kinds, and that teemed with servants male and female, and that Yudhisthira assigned to him with the approval of Dhritarāshtra.[6-7] The mighty-armed Arjuna also, at the command of the king, obtained the palace of Duççāsana which was not inferior to Duryodhana's and which consisted of many excellent structures and was adorned with a gate-way of gold, and which abounded with wealth and was full of atten-

dants of both sexes.[8-9] The palace of Durmarshana was even superior to that of Dusçāsana. Looking like the mansion of Kuvera himself, it was adorned with gold and every kind of gem.[10] King Yudhishthira gladly gave it to Nakula who deserved it best and who had been emaciated (with the miseries of a life) in the great forest.[11] The foremost of palaces belonging to Durmukha was exceedingly beautiful and adorned with gold. It abounded with beds and beautiful women with eyes like lotus-petals.[12] The king gave it unto Sahadeva who was ever employed in doing what was agreeable to him. Obtaining it, Sahadeva became delighted as the Lord of treasures upon obtaining Kailāsa.[13] Yuyutsu and Vidura and Sanjaya, O monarch, and Sudharman and Dhaumya, proceeded to the abodes they had owned before.*[14] Like a tiger entering his cave in the hills, that tiger among men, viz., Caurin, accompanied by Sātyaki, entered the palace of Arjuna.[15] Feasting on the viands and drinks (that had been kept ready for them), the princes passed the night happily. Awaking in the morning with well-pleased hearts, they presented themselves before king Yudhishthira."[16]

SECTION XLVI.

Janamejaya said,—"It behoveth thee, O learned Brāhmana, to tell me what was next done by Yudhishthira the mighty-armed son of Dharma after he had regained his kingdom![1] It behoveth thee to tell me also, O *Rishi*, what the heroic Hrishikeça, the supreme master of the three worlds, did after this!"[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Listen to me, O king, as I narrate in detail, O sinless one, what the Pāndavas, headed by Vāsudeva, did after this![3] Having obtained his kingdom, O monarch, Kunti's son Yudhishthira appointed each of the four orders of men to their respective duties.[4] The (eldest) son of Pāndu gave unto a thousand high-souled Brāhmanas of the

---

* Sudharman was the priest of the Kurus. How came Dhaumya, who was the priest of the Pāndavas, to have from before an abode in the Kuru capital?—T.

Snātaka order a thousand *Nishkas* each.[5] He then gratified the servants that were dependant on him and the guests that came to him, including persons that were undeserving and those that held heterodox views, by fulfiling their wishes.[6] Unto his priest Dhaumya he gave kine in thousands and much wealth and gold and silver and robes of diverse kinds.[7] Towards Kripa, O monarch, the king behaved in the way one should towards one's preceptor. Observant of vows, the king continued to honor Vidura greatly.[8] That foremost of charitable men gratified all persons with gifts of food and drink and robes of diverse kinds and beds and seats.[9] Having restored peace to his kingdom, the king, O best of monarchs, possessed of great fame, paid due honors unto Yuyutsu and Dhritarāshtra.[10] Placing his kingdom at the disposal of Dhritarāshtra, of Gāndhāri, and of Vidura, king Yudhishthira continued to pass his days happily.[11] Having gratified everybody, including the citizens, in this way, Yudhishthira, O bull of Bharata's race, then proceeded with joined hands to the presence of the high-souled Vāsudeva.[12] He beheld Krishna, of the hue of a blue cloud, seated on a large sofa adorned with gold and gems.[13] Attired in yellow robes of silk and decked with celestial ornaments, his person blazed with splendour like a jewel set on gold.[14] His bosom adorned with the *Kaustubha* gem, he looked like the Udaya mountain decked the rising Sun.[15] So beautiful did he look that simile there is none in the three worlds. Approaching the high-souled one who was Vishnu himself in incarnate form,[16] king Yudhishthira addressed him sweetly and smilingly, saying,—'O foremost of intelligent men, hast thou passed the night happily?[17] O thou of unfading glory, are all thy faculties in their full vigor? O foremost of intelligent persons, is it all right with thy understanding?[18] We have got back our kingdom and the whole Earth has come under our control, O divine lord, through thy grace, O refuge of the three worlds and, O thou of three steps!*

---

* This is an allusion to Krishna's having covered the three worlds with three of his steps for deluding the *Asura* Vali and depriving him of universal sovereignty.—T.

Through thy grace have we won victory and obtained great fame and have not fallen away from the duties of our order!"[19] Unto that chastiser of foes, viz., king Yudhisthira the just who addressed him in that strain the divine Krishna said not a word, for he was then rapt in meditation."[20]

SECTION XLVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How wonderful is this, O thou of immeasurable prowess, that thou art rapt in meditation! O great refuge of the universe, is it all right with the three worlds?[1] When thou hast, O god, withdrawn thyself (from the world), having, O bull among men, adopted the fourth state, my mind has been filled with wonder!*[2] The five life-breaths that act within the body have been controlled by thee into stillness. Thy delighted senses thou hast concentrated within thy mind![3] Both speech and mind, O Govinda, have been concentered within thy understanding. All thy senses, indeed, have been withdrawn into thy soul![4]† The hair on thy body stands erect. Thy mind and understanding are both still. Thou art as immobile now, O Mādhava, as an wooden post or a stone?[5] O illustrious god, thou art as still as the flame of a lamp burning in a place where there is no wind. Thou art as immobile as a mass of rock![6] If I am fit to hear the cause, if it is no secret of thine, dispel, O god, my doubt, for I beg of thee and solicit it as a favor![7] Thou art the Creator and thou art the Destroyer! Thou art destructible and thou art indestructible! Thou art without beginning and thou art

---

* There are three states of consciousness in the case of ordinary men, viz., waking, dream, and sound sleep. The fourth state, realisable by *Yogins* alone, is called *Turiya*. It is the state of perfect unconsciousness of this world, when the soul, abstracted within itself, is said to be fixed upon the Supreme Being or some single object.—T.

† Mind, as used generally in Hindu philosophy, is the seat of the senses and the feelings. *Buddhi* is the Understanding or the cognitive faculties of the Kantian school. The Bombay reading of the second line is correct. It is *Gunādevāh Kshetrajne* &c. Nilakantha correctly explains it as *Çavdādigunabhājodevāh*, i. e., the senses.—T.

without end! Thou art the first and the foremost of Beings![8] O foremost of righteous persons, tell me the cause of this (*Yoga*) abstraction! I solicit thy favor, and am thy devoted worshipper, and bow to thee, bending my head![9] Thus addressed, the illustrious younger brother of Vāsava, recalling his mind, understanding, and the senses to their usual sphere, said these words with a soft smile.[10]

"Vāsudeva said,—'That tiger among men, viz., Bhishma, who is now lying on a bed of arrows, and who is now like unto a fire that is about to go out, is thinking of me. Hence my mind also was concentrated on him.[11] My mind was concentrated upon him the twang of whose bowstring and the sound of whose palms Indra himself was unable to bear.[12] I was thinking of him who having vanquished in a trice all the assembled kings (at the Self-choice of the daughters of the king of Kāçi) abducted the three princesses for the marriage of his brother Vichitraviryya![13] I was thinking of him who fought continually for three and twenty days with Rāma himself of Bhrigu's race and whom Rāma was unable to overcome![14] Collecting all his senses and concentrating his mind by the aid of his understanding, he sought my refuge (by thinking of me). It was for this that I had centered my mind upon him.[15] I was thinking of him whom Gangā conceived and brought forth according to ordinary human laws and whom Vaçishtha took as a pupil.[16] I was thinking of that hero of mighty energy and great intelligence who possesses a knowledge of all the celestial weapons as also of the four Vedas with all their branches.[17] I was thinking of him, O son of Pāndu, who is the favorite disciple of Rāma the son of Jamadagni, and who is the receptacle of all the sciences.[18] I was thinking of that foremost of all persons conversant with morality and duty, of him, O bull of Bharata's race, who knows the Past, the Future, and the Present.[19] After that tiger among kings shall have, in consequence of his own achievements, ascended to heaven, the Earth, O son of Prithā, will look like a moonless night![20] Therefore, O Yudhishthira submissively approaching Gangā's son, viz., Bhishma of terrible prowess, question him about what thou mayst desire to learn![21] O lord of Earth, enquire

of him about the four branches of knowledge (in respect of morality, profit, pleasure, and salvation), about the sacrifices and the rites laid down for the four orders, about the four modes of life, and about the duties in full of kings![22] When Bhishma, that foremost one of Kuru's race, will disappear from the world, every kind of knowledge will disappear with him. It is for this that I urge thee (to go to him now).'[23] Hearing these beneficial words of high import from Vāsudeva, the righteous Yudhishthira, with voice choked in tears, answered Janārddana, saying,[24]—'What thou hast said, O Mādhava, about the eminence of Bhishma, is perfectly true! I have not the slightest doubt regarding it![25] Indeed, I had heard of the high blessedness, as also the greatness, of the illustrious Bhishma from high-souled Brāhmanas discoursing upon it![26] Thou, O slayer of foes, art the Creator of all the worlds. There cannot, therefore, O delighter of the Yādavas, be the slightest doubt in what thou sayest![27] If thy heart be inclined to show grace, O Mādhava, then we shall go unto Bhishma with thyself at our head![28] When the divine Surya shall have turned towards the north, Bhishma will leave (this world) for those regions of bliss that he has won. That descendent of Kuru's race, therefore, O mighty-armed one, deserves to have a sight of thee![29] (If thou grantest my prayer), Bhishma will then obtain a sight of thee that art the first of gods, of thee that art destructible and indestructible! Indeed, O lord, thou it is that art the vast receptacle of *Brahma!*'"[30]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of king Yudhishthira the just, the slayer of Madhu, addressed Sātyaki who was sitting beside him, saying,—'Let my car be yoked![31] At this, Sātyaki quickly left Keçava's presence and going out, commanded Dāruka, saying,—'Let Krishna's car be made ready.'"[32] Hearing the words of Sātyvki, Dāruka speedily yoked Krishna's car. That foremost of vehicles, adorned with gold, decked with a profusion of emeralds, and moon-gems and sun-gems, furnished with wheels covered with gold, possessed of effulgence, fleet as the wind, set in the middle with divers other kinds of jewels, beautiful as the morning sun, equipt with a beautiful standard topped by Garuda, and gay with numer-

ous banners, had those foremost of steeds, fleet as thought, viz., Sugriva and Caivya and the other two, in trappings of gold, yoked unto it. Having yoked it, O tiger among kings, Dāruka, with joined hands, informed Krishna of the fact."[33-35]

SECTION XLVIII.

Janamejaya said,—"How did the grandsire of the Bharatas, who lay on a bed of arrows, cast off his body and what kind of *Yoga* did he adopt ?"[1]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Listen, O king, with pure heart and concentrated attention, as to how, O tiger among the Kurus, the high-souled Bhishma cast off his body ![2] As soon as the Sun, passing the solstitial point, entered in his northerly course, Bhishma, with concentrated attention, caused his soul (as connected with and independent of the body) to enter his soul (in its independent and absolute state).[3] Surrounded by many foremost of Brāhmanas, that hero, his body pierced with innumerable arrows, blazed forth in great beauty like Surya himself with his innumerable rays.[4] Surrounded by Vyāsa conversant with the Vedas, by the celestial *Rishi* Nārada, by Devasthāna, by Açmakasumantu,[5] by Jaimini, by the high-souled Paila, by Cāndilya, by Devarāta, by Maitreya of great intelligence,[6] by Asita and Vaçishtha and the high-souled Kauçika, by Hārita and Lomaça and Atri's son of great intelligence,[7] by Vrihaspati and Cukra and the great sage Chyavana, by Sanatkumāra and Kapila and Vālmaki and Tumvuru and Kuru,[8] by Maudgalya and Rāma of Bhrigu's race, and the great sage Trinavindu, by Pippalāda and Vāyu and Samvarta and Pulaha and Katha,[9] by Kāçyapa and Pulastya and Kratu and Daksha and Parāçara, by Marichi and Angiras and Kāçmya and Gautama and the sage Gālava,[10] by Dhaumya and Vibhānda and Māndavya and Dhaumra and Krishnānubhautika, by Uluka, that foremost of Brāhmanas and the great sage Mārkandeya, by Bhāshkari and Purāna and Krishna and Suta,—that foremost of virtuous persons,[11] surrounded by these and many other highly-blessed sages of great souls and possessed of faith and self-restaint and tranquillity of mind, the Kuru hero looked like the Moon

in the midst of the planets and the stars.[12] Stretched on his bed of arrows, that tiger among men, viz., Bhishma, with pure heart and joined hands, thought of Krishna in mind, word, and act.[13] With a cheerful and strong voice he hymned the praise of the slayer of Madhu, that master of *Yoga*, with the lotus in his navel, that lord of the universe, called Vishnu and Jishnu.[14] With joined hands, that foremost of eloquent men, that puissant one, viz., Bhishma of highly virtuous soul, thus praised Vāsudeva.[15]

"Bhishma said,—'O Krishna, O foremost of Beings, be thou pleased with these words which I utter, in brief and in detail, from desire of hymning thy praises![16] Thou art pure and purity's self! Thou transcendest all! Thou art what people say to be THAT. Thou art the Supreme Lord. With my whole heart I seek thy refuge, O universal Soul and Lord of all creatures![*17] Thou art without beginning and without end. Thou art the highest of the high and *Brahma*. Neither the gods nor the *Rishis* know thee! The divine Creator, called Nārāyana or Hari, alone knows thee![18] Through Nārāyana, the *Riskis*, the *Siddhas*, the great *Nāgas*, the gods, and the celestial *Rishis*, know a little of thee! Thou art the highest of the high and knowest no deterioration![19] The gods, the *Dānavas*, the *Gandharvas*, the *Yakshas*, the *Pannagas*, do not know who thou art and whence art thou![20] All the worlds and all created things live in thee and enter thee (when the dissolution comes). Like gems strung together in a thread, all things that have attributes reside in thee, the Supreme Lord![†21] Having the universe for thy work and the universe for thy limbs, this universe consisting of mind and matter

---

* The Supreme Being is called here and elsewhere *Hansa*, i. e., swan, because as the swan is supposed to transcend all winged creatures in the range of its flight, so the Supreme Being trandscends all creatures in the universe. He is called *That*, as in the Vedic formula of praise,—"Thou art *That*," meaning, "Thou art inconceivable and incapable of being described in words."—T.

† Created things have attributes. It is *Brahma* only that has no attributes, in the sense that no attributes with which we are familiar can be affirmed of him.—T.

resides in thy eternal and all-pervading soul like an line of flowers strung together in a strong thread.[22] Thou art called Hari, of a thousand heads, thousand feet, thousand eyes, thousand arms, thousand crowns, and thousand faces of great splendour. Thou art called Nārāyana, divinity, and the refuge of the universe![23] Thou art the subtilest of the subtile, grossest of the gross, the heaviest of the heavy, and the highest of the high![24] In the *Vāks*, the *Anuvāks*, the *Nishads*, and the *Upanishads*, thou art regarded as the Supreme Being of irresistible force. In the Sāmans also, whose declarations are always true, thou art regarded as Truth's self![*25] Thou art of quadruble soul. Thou art displayed in only the understandings (of all creatures). Thou art the Lord of those that are bound to thee in faith. O god, thou art adored (by the faithful) under four excellent, high, and secret names![†26] Penances are ever present in thee! Performed (by other creatures for gratifying thee), penances live in thy form. Thou art the Universal Soul. Thou art of universal knowledge. Thou art the universe. Thou art omniscient. Thou art the creator of everything in the universe![‡27] Like a couple of sticks generating a blazing fire, thou hast been born of the divine Devaki and Vasudeva for the protection of *Brahma* on Earth.[¶28] For his eternal salvation, the devout wor-

---

* The Vāks are the *mantras*; the Anuvāks are those portions of the Vedas which are called Brāhmanas; the Nishads are those portions of the Vedic ritual which lead to an acquaintance with the gods. The Upanishads are those portions which treat exclusively of the knowledge of the Soul.—T.

† Quadruple soul, *i. e.*, *Brahma*, *Jiva*, *Mind*, and Consciousness. The four names under which the Supreme Being is adored by the faithful are Vāsudeva, Sankarshana, Praddyumna, and Aniruddha.—T.

‡ *Penances are ever present in thee*, in the sense that thou art never without them, penances constituting thy essence. *Performed by creatures, they live in thy limbs*, in the sense that penances performed are never lost.—T.

¶ In ancient India, the *Rishis* living in the woods got their fire by rubbing two sticks together. These they called *Arani*. *Brahma* on Earth is explained by Nilakantha to mean the Vedas, the Brāhmanas, and the Sacrifices.—T.

shipper, with mind withdrawn from everything else and casting off all desires, beholds thee, O Govinda, that art the pure Soul, in his own soul![29] Thou transcendest Surya in glory. Thou art beyond the ken of the senses and the understanding. O lord of all creatures, I place myself in thy hands![30] In the Purānas thou hast been spoken as *Purusha* (all-pervading spirit). On occasions of the commencement of the *Yugas*, thou art said to be *Brahma*, while on occasions of universal dissolution thou art spoken of as Sankarsana. Adorable thou art, and therefore I adore thee![31] Though One, thou hast yet been born in innumerable forms. Thou hast thy passions under complete control. Thy devout worshippers, faithfully performing the rites laid down in the scriptures, sacrifice to thee, O giver of every wish![32] Thou art called the sheath within which the universe lies. All created things live in thee. Like swans and ducks swimming on the water, all the worlds that we see float in thee.[33] Thou art Truth. Thou art One and undeteriorating. Thou art *Brahma*. Thou art That which is beyond mind and Matter. Thou art without beginning, middle, and end. Neither the gods nor the *Rishis* know thee![34] The gods, the *Asuras*, the *Gandharvas*, the *Siddhas*, the *Rishis*, and the the great *Uragas*, with concentrated souls, always adore thee. Thou art the great medicine for all sorrow.[35] Thou art without birth and death. Thou art Divine. Thou art self-create. Thou art eternal. Thou art invisible and beyond ken. Thou art called Hari and Nārāyana, O puissant one.[36] The Vedas declare thee to be the Creator of the universe and the Lord of everything existing in the universe. Thou art the Supreme protector of the universe. Thou knowest no deterioration and thou art that which is called the highest.[37] Thou art of the complexion of gold. Thou art the slayer of *Asuras*. Though One, Aditi brought thee forth in twelve forms.* Salutations to thee that art the soul of the Sun.[38] Salutations to thee in thy form of Soma that is spoken of as the chief of all the regenerate ones and that gratifies with nectar the gods in the lighted fortnight and the *Pitris* in the dark fortnight.[39] Thou

* These are the twelve Adityas or chief gods.—T.

art the One Being of transcendent effulgence dwelling on the other side of thick darkness. Knowing thee one ceases to have any fear of death. Salutations to thee in that form which is an object of knowledge![40]* In the grand *Ukthya* sacrifice, the Brāhmanas adore thee as the great *Rich*. In the great fire-sacrifice, they sing thee as the chief *Adhyaryu* (priest). Thou art the soul of the Vedas. Salutations to thee[41] The *Richs*, the *Yajus*, and the *Sāmans* are thy abode. Thou art the five kinds of sanctified libations (used in sacrifices). Thou art the seven woofs used in the Vedas. Salutations to thee in thy form of Sacrifice![42]† Libations are poured on the *Homa* fire in accompaniment with the seventeen monosyllabic sounds. Thou art the soul of the *Homa*. Salutations to thee![43] Thou art that *Purusha* whom the Vedas sing. Thy name is *Yajus*. The Vedic metres are thy limbs. The sacrifices laid down in the three Vedas are thy three heads. The great sacrifice called *Rathantara* is thy voice expressive of gratification. Salutations to thee in thy form of sacred hymns![44] Thou art the *Rishi* that hadst appeared in the great sacrifice extending for a thousand years performed by the creators of the universe. Thou art the great swan with wings of gold. Salutations to thee in thy from of a swan![‡][45] Roots with all kinds of affixes and suffixes are thy limbs. The *Sandhis* are thy joints. The consonants and the vowels are thy ornaments. The Vedas have declared thee to be the divine word. Salutations to thee in thy form as the Word![§][46]

---

* Thou art pure Knowledge and residest beyond the darkness of ignorance. I bow to thee not in any of those forms in which thou art ordinarily adored but in that form of pure light which *Yogins* only can behold by spiritual sight.—T.

† The five libations are Dhāna, Karambha, Parivāpa, and water. The seven woofs are the seven mantras *(Cchandas)* predominating in the Vedic hymns, such as Gāyatri, &c..—T.

‡ The *Prajāpatis* who are the creators of the universe performed a sacrifice extending for a thousand years. The supreme Being appeared in that sacrifice as an act of grace to the sacrificers.—T.

§ *Sandhis* are those changes of contiguous vowels (in compounding two words) that are required by the rules of euphony. *Akshara* is literally a character or letter; here, word made up of characters or letters.—T.

Assuming the form of a boar whose limbs were constituted by Sacrifice, thou hadst raised the submerged Earth for the benefit of the three worlds. Salutations to thee in thy form of infinite prowess![47] Thou sleepest in *Yoga* on thy snake-decked sofa constituted by the thousand hoods (of the *Nāga*). Salutations to thee in thy form of sleep![48] Thou buildest the bridge for the good (to cross the sea of life) with Truth, with those means by which emancipation may be obtained, and with the means by which the senses may be controlled. Salutations to thee in thy form of Truth![49] Men practising diverse creeds, actuated by desire of diverse fruits, worship thee with diverse rites. Salutations to thee in thy form of Creed![50] From thee have all things sprung. It is thou that excitest all creatures having physical frames containing the principle of desire. Salutations to thee in thy form of Excitement.[51] The great *Rishis* seek thy unmanifest self within the manifest. Called *Kshetrajna*, thou sittest in *Kshetra*. Salutations to thee in thy form of *Kshetra*![*52] Though always conscious and present in self, the Sānkhyas still describe thee as existing in the three states of wakefulness, dream, and sound sleep. They further speak of thee as possessed of sixteen attributes and representing the number seventeen. Salutations to thy form as conceived by the Sānkhyas![53]† Casting off sleep, restraining breath, withdrawn into their own selves, *Yogins* of restrained senses behold thee as eternal light. Salutations to thee in thy *Yoga* form![54] Peaceful *Sannyāsins*, freed from fear of rebirth in consequence of the destruction of all their sins and merits, obtain thee. Salutations to thee in thy form of emancipa-

---

* The manifest is the body. The *Rishis* seek thy unmanifest self within the body, *i. e.*, in their own hearts. *Kshetra* is *budhi* or intelligence. The Supreme Being is called *Kshetrajna* because he knows every mind. Intelligence or mind is one of his forms.—T.

† The sixteen attributes are the eleven senses and the five elements in their subtile forms called *Mahabhutas*. Added to this is Infinity. The Supreme Being, according to the Sānkhya doctrine, is thus the embodiment of the number seventeen. *Thy form as conceived by the Sānkhyas, i. e., thy form as Number.*—T.

tion![55]* At the end of a thousand *Yugas*, thou assumest the form of a fire with blazing flames and consumest all creatures. Salutations to thee in thy form of fierceness![56] Having consumed all creatures and making the universe one vast expanse of water, thou sleepest on the waters in the form of a child. Salutations to thee in thy form as *Māyā* (illusion)![57] From the navel of the Self-born of eyes like lotus leaves, sprung a lotus. On that lotus is established this universe. Salutations to thee in thy form as lotus![58] Thou hast a thousand heads. Thou pervadest everything. Thou art of immeasurable soul. Thou hast subjugated the four kinds of desire that are as vast as the four oceans. Salutations to thee in thy form of *Yoga*-sleep![59] The clouds are in the hair of thy head. The rivers are in the several joints of thy limbs. The four oceans are in thy stomach. Salutations to thee in thy form as water![60] Birth and the change represented by death spring from thee. All things, again, at the universal dissolution, dissolve away in thee. Salutations to thy form as cause![61] Thou sleepest not in the night. Thou art occupied in day time also. Thou observest the good and the bad actions (of all). Salutations to thee in thy form of (universal) observer![62] There is no act which thou canst not do. Thou art, again, ever ready to accomplish acts that are righteous. Salutations to thee in thy form of Work, the form, viz., which is called Vaikuntha![63] In wrath thou hadst, in battle, exterminated thrice seven times the Kshatriyas who had trampled virtue and authority under their feet. Salutations to thee in thy form of Cruelty![64] Dividing thyself into five portions thou hast become the five vital breaths that act within every body and cause every living creature to move. Salutations to thee in thy form of air![65] Thou appearest in every *Yuga* in the forms called month and season and half-year and year, and art the cause of both crea-

---

* In cases of those that are reborn, there is always a residuum of sin and merit for which they have, in their earthly life, to suffer and enjoy. In the case, however, of those that have betaken themselves to a life of renunciation, the great endeavour is to exhaust this residuum.—T.

tion and dissolution. Salutations to thee in thy form of Time![66] Brāhmanas are thy mouth, Kshatriyas are thy two arms, Vaiçyas are thy stomach and thighs, and Cudras live in thy feet. Salutations to thee in thy form of caste![67] Fire constitutes thy mouth. The heavens are the crown of thy head. The sky is thy navel. The Earth is thy feet. The Sun is thy eye. The points of the compass are thy ears. Salutations to thee in thy form as the (three) worlds![68] Thou art superior to Time. Thou art superior to Sacrifice. Thou art higher than the highest. Thyself without origin, thou art the origin of the universe. Salutations to thee in thy form as Universe![69] Men of the world, according to the attributes ascribed to thee by the *Vaiçeshika* theory, regard thee as the Protector of the world. Salutations to thee in thy form of Protector![70] Assuming the forms of food, drink, and fuel, thou increasest the humours and the life-breaths of creatures and upholdest their existence. Salutations to thee in thy form of life![71] For supporting the life-breaths thou eatest the four kinds of food.* Assuming also the form of *Agni* within the stomach, thou digestest that food. Salutations to thee in the form of digesting heat![72] Assuming the form of half-man and half-lion, with tawny eyes and tawny manes, with teeth and claws for thy weapons, thou hadst taken the life of the chief of the *Asuras*. Salutations to thee in thy form of swelling might![73] Neither the gods, nor the *Gandharvas*, nor the *Daityas*, nor the *Dānavas*, know thee truly. Salutations to thy form of exceeding subtility![74] Assuming the form of the handsome, illustrious, and puissant Ananta in the nether region, thou upholdest the world. Salutations to thy form of Might![75] Thou stupefiest all creatures by the bonds of affection and love for the continuance of the creation. Salutations to thee in thy form of stupefaction.†[76] Regarding that knowledge which is conversant with the five elements to be the true

---

* *I. e.* that which is chewed, that which is sucked, that which is licked, and that which is drunk.—T.

† All creatures are stupefied by love and affection. The great end which the *Yogins* propose to themselves is to tear those bonds and rising

Self-knowledge (for which *yogins* strive), people approach thee by knowledge. Salutations to thee in thy form of Knowledge![77] Thy body is immeasurable. Thy understanding and eyes are devoted to every thing. Thou art infinite, being beyond all measure! Salutations to thee in thy form of vastness.[78] Thou hadst assumed the form of a recluse with matted locks on head, staff in hand, a long stomach, and having thy begging bowl for thy quiver.* Salutations to thee in thy form of *Brahma*.‡[79] Thou bearest the trident, thou art the lord of the celestials, thou hast three eyes, and thou art high-souled. Thy body is always besmeared with ashes, and thy phallic emblem is always turned upwards. Salutations to thee in thy form of *Rudra*![80] The half-moon forms the ornament of thy forehead. Thou hast snakes for the holy thread circling thy neck. Thou art armed with *Pināka* and trident. Salutations to thy form of Fierceness.[81] Thou art the soul of all creatures. Thou art the Creator and the Destroyer of all creatures. Thou art without wrath, without enmity, without affection. Salutations to thee in thy form of Peace![82] Everything is in thee. Everything is from thee. Thyself art Everything. Everywhere art thou. Thou art always the All. Salutations to thee in thy form as Everything![83] Salutations to thee whose work is the universe, to thee that art the soul of the universe, to thee from whom hath sprung the universe, to thee that art the dissolution of all things, to thee that are beyond the five (elements that constitute all things)![84] Salutations to thee that art the three worlds, to thee that art above the three worlds! Salutations to thee that art all the directions. Thou art All and thou art the one receptacle of All.[85] Salutations to thee, O divine Lord, O Vishnu, and O eternal origin of all the worlds! Thou, O Hrishikeça, art the Creator, thou art the Destroyer, and thou art invincible![86] I cannot behold that heavenly form in which thou art displayed in the Past, Present, and the Future. I can, however, behold truly

---

superior to all the attractions of the flesh to effect their deliverance or emancipation from rebirth.—T.

* *I. e., Brahmachārin.*—T.

thy eternal form (as confest in thy works)![87] Thou hast filled heaven with thy head, and Earth with thy feet: with thy prowess thou hast filled the three worlds. Thou art Eternal and thou pervadest every thing in the universe![88] The directions are thy arms, the Sun is thy eye, and prowess is thy vital fluid. Thou art the lord of all creatures. Thou standest, shutting up the seven paths of the Wind whose energy is immeasurable.[89] They are freed from all fears that worship thee, O Govinda of unfading prowess, thee that art attired in yellow robes of the color of the *Atasi* flower.[90]* Even one bend of the head unto thee, O Krishna, is equal to the completion of ten Horse-sacrifices. The man that has performed ten Horse-sacrifices is not freed from the obligation of rebirth. The man, however, that bows to Krishna escapes rebirth.[91] They that have Krsihna for their vow, they that think of Krishna in the night, and upon rising from sleep, may be said to have Krishna for their body. Those people (after death) enter Krishna's self even as libations of clarified butter sanctified with *mantras* enter the blazing fire.[92] Salutations to thee that dispellest the fear of hell, to thee, O Vishnu, that art a boat unto them that are plunged amid the eddies of the ocean represented by worldy life![93] Salutations to thee, O God, that art the *Brahmana's* self, to thee that art the benefactor of Brāhmanas and kine, to thee that art the benefactor of the universe, to thee that art Krishna and Govinda![94] The two syllables *Hari* constitute the pecuniary stock of those that sojourn through the wilderness of life and the medicine that effectually cures all worldly predilections, besides being the means that alliviate sorrow and grief.[95]† As Truth is full of Vishnu, as the universe is full of Vishnu, as everything is full of Vishnu, so let my soul be full of Vishnu and my sins be des-

---

* *Linum usitatissimun.* – T.

† *Samsāra* is the world or worldly life characterised by diverse attachments. Reflection on Hari frees one from those attachments. Or, *Samsāra* may mean the repeated deaths and births to which the unemancipated soul is subject. Contemplation of the divine Being may prevent such repeated births and deaths by leading to emancipation.—T.

troyed![96] I seek thy protection and am devoted to thee, desirous of obtaining a happy end. O thou of eyes like lotus petals, O best of gods, do thou think of what will be for my good![97] Thyself without origin, O Vishnu, thou art the origin of Knowledge and Penances. Thus art thou praised! O Janārddana, thus worshipped by me in the Sacrifice constituted by Speech (alone), be, O god, gratified with me![98] The Vedas are devoted to Nārāyana. Penances are devoted to Nārāyana. The gods are devoted to Nārāyana. Everything is always Nārāyana!'"[99]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having uttered these words, Bhishma, with mind concentrated upon Krishna, said,—'Salutations to Krishna!' and bowed unto him.[100] Learning by his *Yoga* prowess of the devotion of Bhishma, Mādhava, otherwise called Hari, (entering his body) bestowed upon him heavenly knowledge compassing the Past, the Present, and the Future, and went away.[101] When Bhishma became silent, those utterers of *Brahma* (that sat around him), with voices choked in tears, adored that high-souled chief of the Kurus in excellent words.[102] Those foremost of Brāhmanas uttered the praises of Krishna also, that first of Beings, and then continued in soft voices to commend Bhishma repeatedly.[103] Learning (by his *Yoga* powers) of the devotion of Bhishma towards him, that foremost of Beings, *viz.*, Mādhava, suddenly rose from his seat and ascended on his car,[104] Keçava and Sātyaki proceeded on one car. On another proceeded those two illustrious princes, *viz.*, Yudhishthira and Dhananjaya.[105] Bhimasena and the twins rode on a third; while those bulls among men, *viz.*, Kripa and Yuyutsu, and that scorcher of foes, *viz.*, Sanjaya of the *Suta* caste, proceeded on their respective cars, each of which looked like a town. And all of them proceeded, causing the Earth to tremble with the rattle of their car-wheels.[106-107] That foremost of men, as he proceeded, cheerfully listened to the speeches, fraught with his praise, that were uttered by the Brāhmanas. The slayer of Keçi, with gladdened heart, saluted the people that waited (along the streets) with joined hands and bent heads."[108]

Section XLIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Then Hrishikeça, and king Yudhishthira, and all those persons headed by Kripa, and the four Pāndavas,[1] riding on those cars looking like fortified cities and decked with standards and banners, speedily proceeded to Kurukshetra with the aid of their fleet steeds.[2] They descended on that field which was covered with hair and marrow and bones, and where millions of high-souled Kshatriyas had cast away their bodies.[3] It abounded also with many a hill formed of the bodies and bones of elephants and steeds, and human heads and skulls lay stretched over it like conch-shells.[4] Variegated with thousands of funeral pyres and teeming with heaps of armour and weapons, the vast plain looked like the drinking garden of the Destroyer himself used and abandoned recently.[5] The mighty car-warriors quickly proceeded, viewing the field of battle haunted by crowds of spirits and thronged with Rākshasas.[6] While proceeding, the mighty-armed Keçava, that delighter of all the Yādavas, spoke unto Yudhishthira about the prowess of Jamadagni's son.[7]—'Yonder, at a distance, O Pārtha, are seen the five lakes of Rāma! There Rāma offered oblations of Kshatriya blood unto the manes of his ancestors![8] It was hither that the puissant Rāma, having freed the Earth of Kshatriyas for thrice seven times, gave up his task.'[9]

"Yudhishthira said,—'I have great doubts in what thou sayest about Rāma's having thrice seven times exterminated the Kshatriyas in days of old.[10] When the very Kshatriya seed was burnt by Rāma, O bull among the Yadus, how was the Kshatriya order revived, O thou of immeasurable prowess?[11] How, O bull of the Yadus, was the Kshatriya order exterminated by the illustrious and high-souled Rāma, and how did it again grow?[12] In frightful car-encounters millions of Kshatriyas were slain. The Earth, O foremost of eloquent men, was strewn with the corpses of Kshatriyas.[13] For what reason was the Kshatriya order thus exterminated in days of yore by Rāma, the high-souled descendant of Bhrigu, O tiger

among the Yadus! O thou of Vrishni's race, remove this doubt of mine, O bird-bannered hero! O Krishna, O younger brother of Vāsudeva, the highest knowledge is from thee.' "

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The puissant elder brother of Gada then narrated unto Yudhishthira of incomparable prowees everything that happened, in full detail, as to how the Earth had become filled with Kshatriyas."[14-.6]

SECTION L.

"Vāsudeva said,—'Listen, O son of Kunti, to the story of Rāma's energy and powers and birth as heard by me from great *Rishis* discoursing upon the subject.[1] Listen to the story of how millions of Kshatriyas were slain by Jamadagni's son and how those that sprung again in the diverse royal races in Bhārata were again slaughtered.[2] Jahnu had a son named Rajas. Rajas had a son named Valākāçwa. King Valākāçwa had a son named Kuçika of righteous behaviour.[3] Resembling the thousand-eyed Indra on Earth, Kuçika underwent the austerest of penances from desire of attaining the chief of the three worlds for a son.[4] Beholding him engaged in the austerest of penances and competent to beget a son, the thousand-eyed Purandara himself inspired the king (with his force).[5] The great lord of the three worlds, viz., the chastiser of Pāka, O king, then became Kuçika's son known by the name of Gādhi.[6] Gādhi had a daughter, O monarch, of the name of Satyavati. The pussiant Gādhi gave her (for wife) unto Richika, a descendant of Bhrigu.[7] Her lord of Bhrigu's race, O delighter of the Kurus, became highly gratified with her for the purity of her behaviour. He cooked the sacrificial food consisting of milk and rice for giving unto Gādhi (her sire) a son.[8] Calling his wife, Richika of Bhrigu's race said,—This portion of the sanctified food should be taken by thee, and this (other) portion by thy mother![9] A son will be born of her that will blaze with energy and be a bull among Kshatriyas. Invincible by Kshatriyas on Earth, he will be the slayer of the foremost of Kshatriyas.[10] As regards thee, O blessed lady, this portion of the food will give thee a son of

great wisdom, an embodiment of tranquillity, endued with ascetic penances, and the foremost of Brāhmanas.[11]—Having said these words unto his wife, the blessed Richika of Bhrigu's race, setting his heart on penances, proceeded to the woods.[12] About this time, king Gādhi, resolved upon a pilgrimage to the holy waters, arrived with his queen at the retreat of Richika.[13] Satyavati, upon this, O king, taking the two portions of the sanctified food, cheerfully and in great haste, represented the words of her lord unto her mother.[14] The queen-mother, O son of Kunti, gave the portion intended for herself unto her daughter, and herself took from ignorance the portion intended for the latter.[15] Upon this, Satyavati, her body blazing with lustre, conceived a child of terrible form intended to become the exterminater of the Kshatriyas.[16] Beholding the Brāhmana child lying within her womb, that tiger among the Bhrigus said unto his wife of celestial beauty these words:[17]—Thou hast been deceived by thy mother, O blessed lady, in consequence of the substitution of the sanctified morsels. Thy son will become a person of cruel deeds and vindictive heart. Thy brother again (born of thy mother) will be a Brāhmana devoted to ascetic penances.[18] Into the sanctified food intended for thee had been placed the seed of the supreme and universal *Brahma*, while into that intended for thy mother had been placed the sum total of Kshatriya energy.[19] In consequence, however, of the substitution of the two portions, O blessed lady, that which had been intended will not happen. Thy mother will obtain a Brāhmana child while thou wilt obtain a son that will become a Kshatriya![20]—Thus addressed by her lord, the highly blessed Satyavati prostrated herself and placing her head at his feet tremblingly said,[21]—It behoveth thee not, O holy one, to speak such words unto me, *viz.*—Thou shalt obtain a wretch among Brāhmanas (or thy son)![22]—

"'Richika said,—This was not intended by me, O blessed lady, in respect of thee! A son of fierce deeds has been conceived by thee simply in consequence of the substitution of the sanctified morsels![23]—

"'Satyavati replied, saying,—If thou wishest, O sage, thou canst create ot her worlds, what need then be said of a child?

It behoveth thee, O puissant one, to give me a son that shall be righteous and devoted to peace![24]—

"'Richika said,—Never was falsehood spoken by me before, O blessed lady, even in jest. What need then be said of (such a solemn occasion as) preparing sanctified food with the aid of Vedic formulæ after igniting a fire?[25] It was ordained of yore by Destiny, O amiable one! I have ascertained it all by my penances. All the descendants of thy father will be possessed of Brāhmanic virtues.[26]—

"'Satyavati said,—O puissant one, let our *grandson* be such, but, O foremost of ascetics, let me have a *son* of tranquil pursuits![27]—

"'Richika said,—O thou of the fairest complexion, there is no distinction, I conceive, between a son and a grandson. It will be, O amiable one, as thou sayest![28]—'

"Vāsudeva continued,—"Then Satyavati brought forth a son in Bhrigu's race who was devoted to penances and characterised by tranquil pursuits, viz., Jamadagni of regulated vows.[29] Kuçika's son Gādhi begot a son named Viçwāmitra. Possessed of every attribute of a Brāhmana, that son (though born in the Kshatriya order) was equal to a Brāhmana.[30] Richika (thus) begat Jamadagni, that ocean of penances. Jamadagni bgot a son of fierce deeds.[31] The foremost of men, that son mastered the sciences, including the science of arms. Like unto a blazing fire, that son was Rāma, the exterminater of the Kshatriyas.[32] Having gratified Mahādeva on the mountains of Gandhamādana, he begged weapons of that great god, especially the axe of fierce energy in his hands.[33] In consequence of that unrivalled axe of fiery splendour and irresistible sharpness, he became unrivalled on Earth.[34] Meanwhile the mighty son of Kritaviryya, viz., Arjuna of the Kshatriya order and ruler of the Haihayās, endued with great energy,[35] highly virtuous in behaviour, and possessed of a thousand arms through the grace of (the great *Rishi*) Dattātreya, having subjugated in battle, by the might of his own arms, the whole Earth with her mountains and seven islands, became a very powerful emperor and (at last) gave away the Earth unto the Brāhmanas in a horse-sacrifice.[36-37] On a certain occasion,

solicited by the thirsty god of fire, O son of Kunti, the thousand-armed monarch of great prowess gave alms unto that deity.[38] Springing from the point of his shafts, the god of fire, possessed of great energy, desirous of consuming (what was offered), burnt villages and towns and kingdoms and hamlets of cowherds.[39] Through the prowess of that foremost of men, viz., Kārtaviryya of great energy, the god of fire burnt mountains and great forests.[40] Assisted by the king of the Haihayās, the god of fire, caused by the wind to blaze forth with energy, consumed the uninhabited but delightful retreat of the high-souled Āpava.[41] Possessed of great energy, Āpava, O mighty-armed king, seeing his retreat consumed by the powerful Kshatriya, cursed that monarch in wrath, saying,[42]—Since, O Arjuna, without excepting these my specious woods, thou hast burnt them, therefore, Rāma (of Bhrigu's race) will lop off thy (thousand) arms![43]—The mighty Arjuna, however, of great prowess, always devoted to peace, ever regardful of Brāhmanas and disposed to grant protection (unto all classes), and charitable and brave, O Bhārata,[44] did not think of that curse denounced on him by that high-souled *Rishi*. His powerful sons, always haughty and cruel, in consequence of that curse, became the indirect cause of his death. The princes, O bull of Bharata's race, seized and brought away the calf of Jamadagni's *homa* cow,[45-46] without the knowledge of Kārtaviryya the ruler of the Haihayās. For this reason a dispute took place between the high-souled Jamadagni (and the Haihayās).[47] The puissant Rāma, the son of Jamadagni, filled with wrath, lopped off the arms of Arjuna and brought back, O monarch, his sire's calf which was wandering within the inner enclosures of the king's palace.[48] Then the foolish sons of Arjuna, repairing together to the retreat of the high-souled Jamadagni,[49] felled with the points of their lances, O king, the head of that *Rishi* from off his trunk while the celebrated Rāma was out for fetching sacred fuel and grass.[50] Inflamed with wrath at the death of his father and inspired with vengeance, Rāma vowed to free the Earth of Kshatriyas and took up arms.[51] Then that tiger among the Bhrigus, possessed of great energy, putting forth his prowess, speedily slaughtered all the sons

and grandsons of Kārtaviryya.[52] Slaughtering thousands of Haihayās in rage, the descendant of Bhrigu, O king, made the Earth miry with blood.[53] Possessed of great energy, he quickly reft the Earth of all Kshatriyas. Filled then with compassion, he retired into the woods.[54] Afterwards, when some thousands of years had passed away, the puissant Rāma, who was wrathful by nature, had imputations cast upon him (of cowardice).[55] The grandson of Viçwāmitra and son of Raivya, possessed of great ascetic merit, named Parāvasu, O monarch, began to cast imputations on Rāma in public, saying,[56]—O Rāma, were not those righteous men, viz., Pratarddana and others, who were assembled at a sacrifice at the time of Yayāti's fall, Kshatriyas by birth ?[57] Thou art not of true vows, O Rāma ! Thine is an empty boast among people ! Through fear of Kshatriya heroes thou hast betaken thyself to the mountains ![58]—The descendant of Bhrigu, hearing these words of Parāvasu, once more took up arms and once more strewed the Earth with hundreds of Kshatriya bodies.[59] Those Kshatriyas, however, O king, counting by hundreds, that were spared by Rāma, multiplied (in time) and became mighty monarchs on Earth.[60] Rāma once more slaughtered them quickly, not sparing the very children, O king ! Indeed, the Earth became once more strewn with the bodies of Kshatriya children of premature birth.[61] As soon as Kshatriya children were born, Rāma slaughtered them. Some Kshatriya ladies, however, succeeded in protecting their children (from Rāma's wrath).[62] Having made the Earth destitute of Kshatriyas for thrice seven times, the puissant Bhārgava, at the completion of a horse-sacrifice, gave away the Earth as sacrificial present unto Kaçyapa.[63] For preserving the remnant of the Kshatriyas, Kaçyapa, O king, pointing with his hand that still held the sacrificial ladle, said these words,[64]—O great sage, repair to the shores of the southern ocean ! It behoveth thee not, O Rāma, to reside within (what is) my dominion ![65]—At these words, Ocean suddenly created for Jamadagni's son, on his other shore, a region called Surpāraka.[66] Kaçyapa also, O monarch, having accepted the Earth in gift, and made a present of it unto the Brāhmanas, entered the great forest.[67]

Then Cudras and Vaiçyas, acting most wilfully, began to unite themselves, O bull of Bharata's race, with the wives of Brāhmanas.[68] When anarchy sets in on Earth, the weak are oppressed by the strong, and no man is master of his own property.[69] Unprotected duly by Kshatriyas observant of virtue, and oppressed by the wicked in consequence of that disorder, the Earth quickly sank to the lowest depths.[70] Beholding the Earth sinking from fear, the high-souled Kaçyapa held her on his lap; and since the great *Rishi* held her on his lap (*uru*) therefore is the Earth known by the name of *Urvi*.[71] The goddess Earth, for protection's sake, gratified Kaçyapa and begged of him a king.[72]

"'The Earth said,—There are, O regenerate one, some foremost of Kshatriyas concealed by me among women. They were born in the race of the Haihayās. Let them, O sage, protect me![73] There is another person of Puru's race, viz., Viduratha's son, O puissant one, who has been brought up among bears in the Rikshavat mountains.[74] Another, viz., the son of Saudāsa, has been protected, through compassion, by Pāraçara of immeasurable energy and ever engaged in sacrifices.[75] Though born in one of the regenerate orders, yet like a Cudra he does everything for that *Rishi* and has, therefore, been named *Sarvakarman* (servant of all work).[76] Civi's son of great energy, viz., Gopati by name, has been brought up in the forest among kine. Let him, O sage, protect me![77] Pratarddana's son, named Vatsa of great might, has been brought up among calves in a cowpen. Let that one of the royal order protect me.[78] Dadhivāhana's grandson and Diviratha's son was concealed and protected on the banks of Gangā by the sage Gautama.[79] His name is Vrihadratha. Possessed of great energy and adorned with numerous blessed qualities, that blessed prince has been protected by wolves and the mountains of Griddhrakuta.[80] Many Kshatriyas belonging to the race of Marutta have been protected. Equal unto the lord of Maruts in energy, they have been brought up by Ocean.[81] These children of the Kshatriya order have been heard of as existing in different places. They are living among artizans and goldsmiths. If they protect me I shall then stay

unmoved.[82] Their sires and grandsires have been slain for my sake by Rāma of great prowess. It is my duty, O great sage, to see that their funeral rites are duly performed.[83] I do not desire that I should be protected by my present rulers. Do thou, O sage, speedily make such arrangements that I may exist (as before).—'[84]

"Vāsudeva continued,—'The sage Kaçyapa then, seeking out those Kshatriyas of great energy whom the goddess had indicated, installed them duly as kings (for protecting her).[85] Those Kshatriya races that are now extant are the progeny of those princes. That which thou hast questioned me, O son of Pāndu, happened in days of yore even thus."[86]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Conversing thus with Yudishthira that foremost of righteous persons, the high-souled Yādava hero proceeded quickly on that car, illumining all the points of the compass like the divine Surya himself."[87]

SECTION LI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"King Yudhishthira, hearing of those feats of Rāma, became filled with wonder and said unto Janārddana,[1]—'O thou of Vrishni's race, the prowess of the high-souled Rāma, who in wrath had freed the Earth of Kshatriyas, was like that of Cakra himself![2] The scions of Kshatriyas, troubled with the fear of Rāma, were concealed (and brought up) by kine, Ocean, pards, bears, and apes![3] Worthy of every praise is this world of men and fortunate are they that reside in it where a feat, that was again so righteous, was accomplished by a Brāhmana![4] After this discourse was ended, those two illustrious persons, viz., Krishna of unfading glory and Yudhishthira proceeded thither where the puissant son of Gangā lay on his bed of arrows.[5] They then beheld Bhishma stretched on his arrowy bed and resembling in splendour the evening Sun covered with his own rays.[6] The Kuru hero was surrounded by many ascetics like he of a hundred sacrifices by the deities of heaven. The spot on which he lay was highly sacred, being situate on the banks of the river Oghavati.[7] Beholding him from a distance, Krishna and

Dharma's royal son, and the four Pāndavas, and the others headed by Cwaradwat,[8] alighted from their vehicles and collecting their restless minds and concentrating all their senses, approached the great *Rishis*.[9] Saluting those foremost of *Rishis* headed by Vyāsa, Govinda and Sātyaki and the others approached the son of Gangā.[10] Beholding Gangā's son of great ascetic merit, the Yadu and Kuru princes, those foremost of men, took their seats, surrounding him.[11] Seeing Bhishma looking like a fire about to die out, Keçava with a rather cheerless heart addressed him as follows.[12]

"Keçava said,—'Are thy perceptions now as clear as before? I hope thy understanding, O foremost of eloquent men, is not clouded?[13] I hope thy limbs are not tortured by the pain arising from the wounds inflicted by shafts? From mental grief also the body becomes weak.[14] In consequence of the boon granted to thee by thy sire, the righteous Cāntanu, thy death, O puissant hero, depends on thy own will! I myself have not that merit in consequence of which thou hast obtained this boon![15] The minutest pin (inserted) within the body produces pain. What need then be said, O king, of hundreds of arrows that have pierced thee?[16] Surely, pain cannot be said to afflict thee! Thou art competent, O Bhārata, to instruct the very gods regarding the origin and dissolution of living creatures![17] Possessed of great knowledge, everything belonging to the Past, the Future, and the Present, is well known to thee![18] The dissolution of created beings and the reward of righteousness, are well known to thee, O thou of great wisdom, for thou art an ocean of virtue and duty![19] While living in the enjoyment of swelling sovereignty, I beheld thee forego female intercourse though sound of limbs and perfectly hale and though surrounded by female companions![20] Except Cāntanu's son Bhishma of great energy and firmly devoted to righteousness, possessed of heroism and having virtue for the only object of his pursuit, we have never heard of any other person in the three worlds that could, by his ascetic power, though lying on a bed of arrows and on the point of death, still have such complete mastery over death (as to keep it thus a bay).[21-22] We have never heard of anybody else that was so devoted to

truth, to penances, to gifts, to the performance of sacrifices, to the science of arms, to the Vedas, and to the protection of persons soliciting protection, and that was so harmless to all creatures, so pure in behaviour, so self-restrained, and so bent upon the good of all creatures, and that wss also so great a car-warrior as thee![23-24] Without doubt, thou art competent to subjugate, on a single car, the gods, *Gandharvas Asuras, Yakshas*, and *Rākshasas*![25] O mighty-armed Bhishma, thou art always spoken of by the Brāhmanas as the ninth of the Vasus. By thy virtues, however, thou hast surpassed them all and art equal unto Vāsava himself![26] I know, O best of persons, that thou art celebrated for thy prowess, O foremost of beings, among even the very gods![27] Among men on Earth, O foremost of men, we have never seen nor heard of any one possessed of such attributes as thee![28] O thou of the royal order, thou surpassest the gods themselves in respect of every attribute! By thy ascetic power thou canst create a universe of mobile and immobile creatures. What need then be said of thy having acquired many blessed regions by means of thy foremost of virtues?[29] Dispel now the grief of the eldest son of Pāndu who is burning with sorrow on account of the slaughter of his kinsmen.[30] All the duties that have been declared in respect of the four orders about the four modes of life are well known to thee![31] Everything again that is indicated in the four branches of knowledge, in the four *Hotras*, O Bhārata, as also those eternal duties that are laid down in *Yoga* and Sānkhya philosophy,[32] the duties too of the four orders and those duties that are not inconsistent with their declared practices,—all these, along with their interpretations, —O son of Gangā, are known to thee![33] The duties that have been laid down for those sprung from an intermixture of the four orders and those laid down for particular countries and tribes and families, and those declared by the Vedas and by men of wisdom, are all well known to thee![34] The subjects of histories and the Purānas are all known to thee. All the scriptures treating of duty and practice dwell in thy mind.[35] Save thee, O bull among men, there is no other person that can remove the doubts that may arise in respect

of those subjects of knowledge that are studied in the world.[26] With the aid of thy intelligence, do thou, O prince of men, drive the sorrow felt by the son of Pāndu! Persons possessed of so great and such varied knowledge live only for comforting men whose minds have been stupefied.'"[27]

Section LI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing those words of Vāsudeva of great intelligence, Bhishma, raising his head a little, said these words with joined hands.[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Salutations to thee, O divine Krishna! Thou art the origin and thou art the dissolution of all the worlds. Thou art the Creator and thou art the Destroyer. Thou, O Hrishikeça, art incapable of being vanquished by any one![2] The universe is thy handiwork. Thou art the soul of the universe and the universe hath sprung from thee! Salutations to thee! Thou art the end of all created things. Thou art above the five elements.[3] Salutations to thee that art the three worlds and that art again above the three worlds. O lord of *Yogins*, salutations to thee that art the refuge of everything![4] O foremost of beings, those words which thou hast said regarding me have enabled me to behold thy divine attributes as manifest in the three worlds. (In consequence of that kindness,) O Govinda, I also behold thy eternal form.[5-6] Thou standest shutting up the seven paths of the Wind possessed of immeasurable energy. The firmament is occupied by thy head, and the Earth by thy feet.[7] The points of the compass are thy two arms, and the Sun is thy eye, and Cakra constitutes thy prowess! O thou of unfading glory, thy person, attired in yellow robes that resemble the hue of the *Atasi* flower, seem to us to be like a cloud charged with flashes of lightning. Think of that, O best of gods, which would be good, O thou of lotus eyes, for my humble self, that am devoted to thee, that seek thy protection, and that am desirous of obtaining a blissful end!'[8-9]

"Vāsudeva said,—'Since, O bull among men, thy devotion to me is very great, for this, O prince, I have displayed my

celestial form to thee![10] I do not, O foremost of kings, display myself unto one that is not devoted to me, or unto a devotee that is not sincere, or unto one, O Bhārata, that is not of restrained soul.[11] Thou art devoted to me and art always observant of righteousness. Of a pure heart, thou art always self-restrained and ever observant of penances and gifts.[12] Through thy own penances, O Bhishma, thou art competent to behold me. Those regions, O king, are ready for thee whence there is no return![*13] Six and fifty days, O foremost one of Kuru's race, still remain for thee to live! Casting off thy body, thou shalt then, O Bhishma, obtain the blessed reward of thy acts![14] Behold, those deities and the Vasus, all endued with forms of fiery splendour, riding on their cars, are waiting for thee invisibly till the moment of the sun's entering on his northerly course![15] Subject to universal time, when the divine Surya turns to his northerly course, thou, O foremost of men, shalt go to those regions whence no man of knowledge ever returns to this Earth![16] When thou, O Bhishma, wilt leave this world for that, all Knowledge, O hero, will expire with thee! It is for this, that all these persons, assembled together, have approached thee for listening to discourses on duty and morality![17] Do thou then speak words of truth, fraught with morality and profit and *Yoga*, unto Yudhishthira who is firm in truth but whose learning has been clouded by grief on account of the slaughter of his kinsmen, and do thou, by this, quickly dispel that grief of his!'"[18]

Section LII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing these words of Krishna fraught with morality and profit, Cāntanu's son Bhishma answered him in the following words.[1]

"Bhishma said,—'O master of all the worlds, O mighty-armed one, O Civa, O Nārāyana, O thou of unfading glory, hearing the words spoken by thee I have been filled with joy![2] But what words (of instruction), O master of speech, can I

---

* *I. e.*, One that goes thither is not subject to rebirth.—T.

say in thy presence, when especially all the subjects of speech have been dealt with in thy speech?*[3] Whatever in either world should be done or is done, proceeds from thy intelligent self, O god![4] That person who is competent to discourse on the subject of heaven in the presence of the chief of the gods himself is competent to discourse on the interpretation of morality and pleasure and profit and salvation in thy presence![5] My mind, O slayer of Madhu, is exceedingly agitated by the pain of arrow-wounds. My limbs are weak. My understanding is not clear.[6] I am so afflicted, O Govinda, by these shafts resembling poison or fire that I have not the power to utter anything![7] My strength is abandoning me. My life-breaths are hastening to leave me. The very vitals of my body are burning. My understanding is clouded.[8] From weakness my utterance is becoming indistinct. How then can I venture to speak? O enhancer of (the glory of) Daçārha's race, be gratified with me![9] O mighty-armed one, I will not say anything! Pardon me (for my unwillingness)! The very master of speech (Vrihaspati), in speaking in thy presence, will be overcome by hesitation![10] I cannot any longer distinguish the points of the compass, nor the sky from the Earth! Through thy energy, O slayer of Madhu, I am only barely alive![11] Do thou, therefore, thyself speak for the good of king Yudhishthira the just, for thou art the ordainer of all the ordinances![12] How, O Krishna, when thou, the eternal creator of the universe, art present, can one like me speak (on such subjects) like a disciple in the presence of the preceptor?'[13]

'Vāsudeva said,—'The words spoken by thee are worthy of thee that art the foremost one of Kuru's race, thee that art endued with great energy, thee that art of great soul, and thee that art possessed of great patience and conversant with every subject![14] Regarding what thou hast said unto me about the pain of thy arrow wounds, receive, O Bhishma, this boon that I grant thee, O puissant one, from my grace![15]

---

* The Vedas constitue the speech of the Supreme Being. Everything about morality occurs in them.—T.

Discomfort and stupefaction and burning and pain and hunger and thrist shall not, O son of Gangā, overcome thee, O thou of unfading glory![16] Thy perceptions and memory, O sinless one, shall be unclouded.* Thy understanding shall not fail thee![17] Thy mind, O Bhisma, freed from the qualities of passion and darkness, will always be subject to the quality of goodness, like the moon emerged from the clouds.[18] Thy understanding will penetrate whatever subject connected with duty, morality, or profit, thou wilt think upon![19] O tiger among kings, obtaining celestial vision, thou wilt, O thou of immeasurable prowess, succeed in beholding the four orders of created things![20] Endued with the eye of knowledge, thou wilt, O Bhishma, behold, like fishes in a limpid stream, all created things that thou mayst endeavour to recollect!' "[21]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Then these great *Rishis*, with Vyāsa amongst them, adored Krishna with hymns from the *Richs*, the *Yajus*, and the *Sāmans*.[22] A celestial shower of flowers belonging to every season fell on that spot where he of Vrishni's race, with Gangā's son and the son of Pāndu were.[23] Celestial instruments of every kind played in the welkin and the tribes of the *Apsaras* began to sing. Nothing of evil and no portent of any evil kind were seen there.[24] An auspicious, pleasant, and pure breeze, bearing every kind of fragrance, began to blow. All the points of the compass became clear and quiet, and all the animals and birds began to rove in peace.[25] Soon after, like a fire at the extremity of a great forest, the divine Surya of a thousand rays was seen to descend to the west.[26] The great *Rishis* then, rising up, saluted Janārddana and Bhishma and king Yudhishthira.[27] Upon this, Keçava, and the sons of Pāndu, and Sātyaki, and Sanjaya, and Caradwat's son Kripa, bowed in reverence to those sages.[28] Devoted to the practice of righteousness, those sages, thus worshipped by Keçava and others, speedily proceeded to their respective abodes, saying,—'We will return tomorrow.'[29] After this, Keçava and the Pāndavas, saluting

* Literally, "Everything thou knowest shall appear to thee by inward light."—T.

Bhishma and circumambulating him, ascended their handsome cars.[30] Those heroes then proceeded, accompanied by many other cars decked with golden *Kuvaras*, and infuriate elephants looking like mountains, and steeds fleet as Garudas, and foot-soldiers armed with bows and weapons.[31] That army, moving with great speed, proceeded in two divisions, one in the van and the other in the rear of those princes. The scene resembled the two currents of the great river Narmadā at the point where it is divided by the Rikshavat mountains standing across it.[32] Gladdening that great host, the divine Chandramas rose before it in the firmament, once more inspiring with moisture, by his own force, the terrestial herbs and plants whose juice had been sucked up by the Sun.[33] Then that bull of Yadu's race and the sons of Pāndu, entering the (Kuru) city whose splendour resembled that of the city of Indra itself, proceeded to their respective mansions like tired lions seeking their caves."[34]

SECTION LIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The slayer of Madhu, retiring to his bed, slept happily.[1] Awaking when half a *Yāma* was wanting to usher in the day, he addressed himself for contemplation. Fixing all his senses, he meditated on the eternal *Brahma*.[2] Then a batch of well-trained and sweet-voiced persons, conversant with hymns and the *Purānas*, began to utter the praises of Vāsudeva, that lord of all creatures and creator of the universe.[3] Others, keeping time by clapping of hands, began to recite sweet hymns, and vocalists began to sing. Conch-shells and drums were blown and beat by thousands.[4] The delightful sound also of *Vinās*, *Panavas*, and bamboo flutes, was heard. The spacious mansion of Krishna, in consequence thereof, seemed to laugh with music.[5] In the palace of king Yudhishthira also sweet voices were heard, uttering auspicious wishes, and the sound of songs too and musical instruments.[6] Then he of Daçārha's race performed his ablutions. Joining his hands, the mighty-armed hero of unfading glory silently recited his secret *mantras* and kindling a fire

poured libations of clarified butter upon it.[7] Giving away a thousand kine unto a thousand Brāhmanas all of whom were fully conversant with the four Vedas, he caused them to utter benedictions upon him.[8] Touching next diverse kinds of auspicious articles and beholding himself in a clear mirror, Krishna addressed Sātyaki, saying,[9]—'Go, O descendant of Cini, and repairing to Yudhishthira's abode, ascertain whether that king of great energy is dressed for visiting Bhishma.'[10] At these words of Krishna, Sātyaki, proceeding quickly to the royal son of Pāndu, said unto him,[11]—'The foremost of cars, belonging to Vāsudeva of great intelligence, stands ready, O king, for Janārddana will go to see Gangā's son![12] O righteous king of great splendour, he is waiting for thee! It behoveth thee now to do what should be done next!'—Thus addressed, Dharma's son Yudhishthira answered as follows.[13]

"Yudhishthira said,—'O Phālguna of unrivalled splendour, let my foremost of cars be made ready. We should not be accompanied (today) by the soldiers, but we shall proceed ourselves.[14] That foremost of righteous persons, *viz.*, Bhishma, should not be vexed. Let the guards, therefore, O Dhananjaya, stop today.[15] From this day Gangā's son will speak of things that are great mysteries. I do not, therefore, O son of Kunti, wish that there should be a miscellaneous gathering (in Bhishma's presence).'"[16]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of the king, Kunti's son Dhananjaya, that foremost of men (went out and coming back) represented unto him that his best of cars stood harnessed for him.[17] King Yudhishthira, and the twins, and Bhima and Arjuna, the five resembling the five elements, then proceeded towards Krishna's abode.[18] While the high-souled Pāndavas were coming, Krishna of great intelligence, accompanied by the grandson of Cini, mounted on his car.[19] Saluting one another from their cars and each enquiring of the other whether the night had been passed happily by him, those bulls among men proceeded, without stopping, on those foremost of cars whose rattle resembled the roar of the clouds.[20] Krishna's steeds, viz., Valāhaka and Meghapushpa and Caivya and Sugriva were urged by Dāruka.[21]

The animals, urged by him, O king, proceeded, indenting the Earth with their hoofs.[22] Endued with great strength and great speed, they flew onwards, devouring the very skies. Traversing the sacred field of Kuru,[23] the princes proceeded to that spot where the puissant Bhishma on his bed of arrows was lying, surrounded by those great *Rishis*, like Brahman himself in the midst of the gods.[24] Then Govinda and Yudhishthira and Bhima and the wielder of Gāndiva and the twins and Sātyaki, alighting from their vehicles, saluted the *Rishis* by raising their right hands.[25] Surrounded by them, king Yudhishthira, like the moon in the midst of the stars, approached Gangā's son like Vāsava proceeding towards Brahman.[26] Overcome with fear, the king timidly cast his eyes on the mighty-armed hero lying on his bed of arrows like the Sun himself dropped from the firmament."[27]

SECTION LIV.

Janamejaya said,—"When that tiger among men, of righteous soul and great energy, firmly adhering to truth and with passions under complete control, viz., the son of Cāntanu and Gangā, named Devavrata or Bhishma of unfading glory, lay on a hero's bed with the sons of Pāndu sitting around him, tell me, O great sage, what converse ensued in that meeting of heroes after the slaughter of all the troops!"[1-3]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"When Bhishma, that chief of the Kurus, lay on his bed of arrows, many *Rishis* and *Siddhas*, O king, headed by Nārada, came to that spot.[4] The unslain remnant of the (assembled) kings with Yudhishthira at their head, and Dhritarāshtra and Krishna and Bhima and Arjuna and the twins also came there.[5] Those high-souled persons, approaching the grandsire of the Bharatas who looked like the Sun himself dropped from the firmament, indulged in lamentations for him.[6] Then Nārada of godlike features, reflecting for a short while, addressed all the Pāndavas and the unslain remnant of the kings, saying,[7]—'The time, I think, has come for you to question Bhishma (on subjects of morality and religion), for Gangā's son is about to expire like the Sun that

is on the point of setting![8] He is about to cast off his life-breaths. Do you all, therefore, solicit him to discourse to you. He is acquainted with the varied duties of all the four orders.[9] Old in years, after abandoning his body he will obtain high regions of bliss. Solicit him, therefore, without delay, to clear the doubts that exist in your minds!'[10] Thus addressed by Nārada, those princes approached Bhishma, but unable to ask him anything looked at one another.[11] Then Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu, addressing Hrishikeça, said,—"There is no one else than Devaki's son that can question the grandsire![12] O foremost one of Yadu's race, do thou, therefore, O slayer of Madhu, speak first! Thou, O sire, art the foremost of us all and thou art conversant with every duty and practice!'[13] Thus addressed by the son of Pāndu, the illustrious Keçava of unfading glory, approaching the unconquerable Bhishma, spoke unto him as follows.[14]

"Vāsudeva said,—'Hast thou, O best of kings, passed the night happily? Has thy understanding become unclouded?[15] Does thy knowledge, O sinless one, shine in thee by inward light?[16] I hope thy heart no longer feels pain and thy mind is no longer agitated?'[17]

"Bhishma said,—'Burning, stupefaction, fatigue, exhaustion, illness, and pain, through thy grace, O thou of Vrishni's race, have all left me in a single day![18] O thou of incomparable splendour, all that is past, all that is future, and all that is present, I behold as clearly as a fruit placed in my hands![19] All the duties declared in the Vedas, all those laid down in the *Vedāntas*, I behold clearly, O thou of unfading glory, in consequence of the boon thou hast granted to me![20] The duties that have been declared by persons of learning and righteous behaviour, dwell in my remembrance. I am conversant also, O Janārddana, with the duties and practices prevailing in particular countries and among particular tribes and families.[21] Everything relating again to the four modes of life has come back to my recollection. I am acquainted also, O Keçava, with the duties that relate to king-craft![22] Whatever should at whatever time be said, I would say, O Janārddana! Through thy grace, I have acquired an auspicious understanding![23]

Strengthened by meditation on thee, I feel as if I have become a young man again. Through thy favor, O Janārdana, I have become competent to discourse on what is beneficial (for the world)![24] Why, however, O holy one, dost thou not thyself discourse to Pāndu's son upon all that is good? What explanation hast thou to give in respect of this? Tell me quickly, O Mādhava![25]

"Vāsudeva said,—"Know, O thou of Kuru's race, that I I am the root of fame and of everything that leads to good. All things, good or bad, proceed from me.[26] Who on Earth will wonder if the Moon be said to be of cool rays? Similarly, who will wonder if I were described as one possessed of the full measure of fame?[27]* I have, however, resolved to enhance thy fame, O thou of great splendour! It is for this, O Bhishma, that I have just inspired thee with great intelligence![28] As long, O lord of Earth, as the Earth will last, so long will thy fame travel with undiminished lustre through all the worlds![29] Whatever, O Bhishma, thou wilt say unto the inquiring son of Pāndu, will be regarded on Earth to be as authoritative as the declarations of the Vedas![30] That person who will conduct himself here according to the authority of thy declarations, will obtain hereafter the reward of every meritorious act![31] For this reason, O Bhishma, I have imparted to thee celestial understanding so that thy fame may be enhanced on Earth![32] As long as a man's fame lasts in the world, so long are his achievements said to live.[33] The unslain remnant of the (assembled) kings are sitting around thee, desirous of listening to thy discourses on mortality and duty. Do thou speak unto them, O Bhārata![34] Thou art old in years and thy behaviour is consistent with the ordinances of the *Çrutis*. Thou art well conversant with the duties of kings and with every other science of duty.[35] No one has ever noticed the slightest transgression in thee from thy every birth. All the kings know thee to be conversant with all the sciences of morality and duty.[36] Like a sire unto his sons do

---

* The sense is, I who have already the full measure of fame can scarcely add to my fame by doing or saying anything.—T.

thou, therefore, O king, discourse unto them of high morality. Thou hast always worshipped the *Rishis* and the gods.[37] It is obligatory on thee to discourse on these subjects in detail unto persons desirous of listening to discourses on morality and duty. A learned person, especially when solicited by the righteous, should discourse on the same. The sages have declared this to be a duty.[38] O pussiant one, if thou dost not speak on such subjects, thou wilt incur sin! Therefore, questioned by thy sons and grandsons, O learned one, about the eternal duties (of men), do thou, O bull among the Bharatas, discourse unto them on the subject!'"[39]

SECTION LV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Endued with great energy, the delighter of the Kurus, (viz, Bhishma,) said,—'I shall discourse on the subject of duty! My speech and mind have become steady, through thy grace, O Govinda, since thou art the eternal soul of every being![1] Let the righteous-souled Yudhishthira question me about morality and duty. I shall then be much gratified and shall speak of all duties.[2] Let the son of Pāndu, that royal sage of virtuous and great soul, upon whose birth all the Vrishnis were filled with joy, question me![3] Let the son of Pāndu, who has no equal among all the Kurus, among all persons of righteous behaviour, and among men of great celebrity, put questions to me![4] Let the son of Pāndu, in whom are intelligence, self-restraint, *Brahmacharya*, forgiveness, righteousness, mental vigor and energy, put questions to me.[5] Let the son of Pāndu, who always by his good offices honors his relatives and guests and servants and others that are dependent on him, put questions to me.[6] Let the son of Pāndu, in whom are truth and charity and penances, heroism, peacefulness, cleverness, and fearlessness, put questions to me.[7] Let the righteous-souled son of Pāndu, who would never commit a sin influenced by desire of pleasure or profit or from fear, put questions to me.[8] Let the son of Pāndu, who is ever devoted to truth, to forgiveness, to knowledge, and to guests, and who always makes gifts unto

the righteous, put questions to me.' Let the son of Pāndu, who is ever engaged in sacrifices and study of the Vedas and the practice of morality and duty, who is ever peaceful and who has heard all mysteries, put questions to me.'[10]

"Vāsudeva said,—'King Yudhishthira the just, overcome with great shame and fearful of (thy) curse, does not venture to approach thee.[11] That lord of Earth, O monarch, having caused a great slaughter, ventures not to approach thee from fear of (thy) curse.[12] Having pierced with shafts those that deserved his worship, those that were devoted to him, those that were his preceptors, those that were his relatives and kinsmen, and those that were worthy of his highest regard, he ventures not to approach thee![13]

"Bhishma said,—'As the duty of the Brāhmanas consists of the practice of charity, study, and penances, so the duty of Kshatriyas is to cast away their bodies, O Krishna, in battle![14] A Kshatriya should slay sires and grandsires and brothers and preceptors and relatives and kinsmen that may engage with him in unjust battle. This is their declared duty.[15] That Kshatriya, O Keçava, is said to be acquainted with his duty who slays in battle his very preceptors if they happen to be sinful and covetous and disregardful of restraints and vows.[16] That Kshatriya is said to be acquainted with his duty who slays in battle the person that from covetousness disregards the eternal barriers of virtue.*[17] That Kshatriya is said to be acquainted with his duty who in battle makes the Earth a lake of blood, having the hair of slain warriors for the grass and straw floating on it, and having elephants for its rocks, and standards for the trees on its banks.[18] A Kshatriya, when challenged, should always fight in battle, since Manu has said that a righteous battle (in the case of a Kshatriya) leads to both heaven and fame on Earth.' "[19]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"After Bhishma had spoken thus, Dharma's son Yudhishthira, with great humility, approached the Kuru hero and stood in his sight.[20] He seized the feet of Bhishma who in return gladdened him with affectionate

* Literally,—'the eternal bridge of virtue.'—T.

words. Smelling his head, Bhishma asked Yudhishthira to take his seat.[21] Then Gangā's son, that foremost of bowmen, addressed Yudhishthira, saying,—'Do not fear, O best of the Kurus! Ask me, O child, without any anxiety.'"[22]

SECTION LVI.

Vaiçampāyaṇa said,—"Having bowed unto Hrishikeça, and saluted Bhishma, and taken the permission of all the seniors assembled there, Yudhishthira began to put questions unto Bhishma.[1]

"Yudhishthira said,—"Persons conversant with duty and morality say that kingly duties constitute the highest science of duty. I also think that the burden of those duties is exceedingly onerous. Do thou, therefore, O king, discourse on those duties![2] O grandsire, do thou speak in detail on the duties of kings! The science of kingly duties is the refuge of the whole world of life.[3] O thou of Kuru's race, Morality, Profit, and Pleasure are dependent on kingly duties. It is also clear that the practices that lead to emancipation are equally dependent on them.[4] As the reins are in respect of the steed or the iron hook in respect of the elephant, even so the science of kingly duties constitutes the reins for checking the world.[5] If one becomes stupefied in respect of the duties observed by royal sages, disorder would set in on Earth and everything will become confused.[6] As the Sun, rising, dispels inauspicious darkness, so this science destroys every kind of evil consequence in respect of the world.[7] Therefore, O grandsire, do thou, for my sake, discourse on kingly duties in the first instance, for thou, O chief of the Bharatas, art the foremost of all persons conversant with duties![8] O scorcher of foes, Vāsudeva regards thee as the first of all intelligent persons! Therefore, all of us expect the highest knowledge from thee![9]

"Bhishma said,—'Bowing unto Dharma who is Supreme, unto Krishna who is *Brahma* in full, and unto the Brāhmanas, I shall discourse on the eternal duties (of men)![10] Hear from me, O Yudhishthira, with concentrated attention, the whole range of kingly duties described with accurate details, and

other duties that thou mayst desire to know.[11] In the first place, O foremost one of Kuru's race, the king should, from desire of pleasing (his subjects), wait with humility upon the gods and the Brāhmanas, always bearing himself agreeably to the ordinance.[12] By worshipping the deities and the Brāhmanas, O perpetuater of Kuru's race, the king pays off his debt to duty and morality, and receives the respect of his subjects.[13] O son, thou shouldst always exert with promptitude, O Yudhishthira, for without promptitude of exertion mere destiny never accomplishes the objects cherished by kings.[14] These two, viz., exertion and destiny, are equal (in their operation). Of them, I regard exertion to be superior, for destiny is ascertained from the results of what is begun with exertion.[15] Do not indulge in grief if what is commenced ends disastrously, for thou shouldst then exert thyself in the same act with redoubled attention. This is the high duty of kings.[16] There is nothing which contributes so much to the success of kings as Truth. The king who is devoted to Truth finds happiness both here and hereafter.[17] As regards *Rishis* also, O king, Truth is their great wealth. Similarly, as regards kings, there is nothing that so much inspires confidence in them as Truth.[18] The king that is possessed of every accomplishment and good behaviour, that is self-restrained, humble, and righteous, that has his passions under control, that is of handsome features and not too enquiring,* never loses prosperity.[19] By administering justice, by attending to these three, viz., concealment of his own weaknesses, ascertainment of the weaknesses of foes, and keeping his own counsels, as also by the observance of conduct that is straightforward, the king, O delighter of the Kurus, obtains prosperity.[20] If the king becomes mild, everybody disregards him. On the other hand, if he becomes fierce, his subjects then become troubled. Therefore, do thou observe both kinds of behaviour.[21] O foremost of liberal men, the Brāhmanas should never be punished by thee, for the Brāhmana, O son of Pāndu, is the foremost of beings on the Earth.[22] The high-souled

* In the sense of being liberal. A king should not too minutely enquire into what is done with the things belonging to him.—T.

Manu, O king of kings, hath sung two *Çlokas.* In respect of thy duties, O thou of Kuru's race, thou shouldst always bear them in mind.[23]—Fire hath sprung from water, the Kshatriya from the Brāhmana, and iron from stone. The three (viz., fire, Kshatriya, and iron,) can exert their force on every other thing, but coming into contact with their respective progenitors, their force becomes neutralised.[24] When iron strikes stone, or fire battles with water, or Kshatriya cherishes enmity towards Brāhmana, these three soon become weak.[25]—When this is so, O monarch, (you will see that) the Brāhmanas are worthy of worship. They that are foremost among the Brāhmanas are gods on Earth. Duly worshipped, they uphold the Vedas and the Sacrifices.[26] But they, O tiger among kings, that desire to have such honor however much they may be impediments to the three worlds, should ever be repressed by the might of thy arms.[27] The great *Rishi* Uçanas, O son, sang two *Çlokas* in days of old. Listen to them, O king, with concentrated attention.[28]—The righteous Kshatriya, mindful of his duties, should chastise a Brāhmana that may be a very master of the Vedas if he rushes to battle with an uplifted weapon.[29] The Kshatriya, conversant with duties, that upholds righteousness when it is tresspassed against, does not, by that act, become a sinner, for the wrath of the assilant justifies the wrath of the chastiser.[30]—Subject to these restrictions, O tiger among kings, the Brāhmanas should be protected. If they become offenders, they should then be exiled beyond thy dominions.[31] Even when deserving of punishment, thou shouldst, O king, show them compassion. If a Brāhmana becomes guilty of Brāhmanicide, or of violating the bed of his preceptor or other revered senior, or of causing miscarriage,[32] or of treason against the king, his punishment should be banishment from thy dominions. No corporal chastisement is laid down for them.[33] Those persons that show respect towards the Brāhmanas should be favored by thee (with offices in the state). There is no treasure more valuable to kings than that which consists in the selection and assemblage of servants.[34] Among the six kinds of citadels indicated in the scriptures, indeed, among every kind of citadel, that which consists of (the ready

service and the love of the) subjects is the most impregnable.[75] Therefore, the king who is possessed of wisdom should always show compassion towards the four orders of his subjects. The king who is of righteous soul and truthful speech succeeds in gratifying his subjects.[76] Thou must not, however, O son, always behave with forgiveness towards everybody, for the king that is mild is regarded as the worst of his kind like an elephant that is reft of fierceness.[37] In the scriptures composed by Vrihaspati, a *Çloka* was sung in days of old applicable to the present matter. Hear it, O king, as I recite it![38] —If the king happens to be always forgiving, the lowest of persons prevails over him, even as the driver who sits on the head of the elephant he guides.[79]—The king, therefore, should not always be mild. Nor should he always be fierce. He should be like the vernal sun, niether cold nor so hot as to produce perspiration.[40] By the direct evidence of the senses, by conjecture, by comparisons, and by the canons of the scriptures, O monarch, the king should study friends and foes.[41] O thou of great liberality, thou shouldst avoid all those evil practices that are called *Vyasanas*. It is not necessary that thou shouldst never indulge in them. What, however, is needed is that thou shouldst not be attached to them.[42] He that is attached to those practices is prevailed over by every one. The king who cherishes no love for his people inspires the latter with anxiety.[43] The king should always bear himself towards his subjects as a mother towards the child of her womb. Hear, O monarch, the reason why this becomes desirable.[44] As the mother, disregarding those objects that are most cherished by her, seeks the good of her child alone, even so, without doubt, should kings conduct themselves (towards their subjects).[45] The king that is righteous, O foremost one of Kuru's race, should always behave in such a manner as to avoid what is dear to him, for the sake of doing that which would benefit his people.[46] Thou shouldst not ever, O son of Pāndu, abandon fortitude. The king that is possessed of fortitude and who is known to inflict chastisement on wrongdoers, has no cause of fear.[47] O foremost of speakers, thou shouldst not indulge in jests with thy servants! O tiger among

kings, listen to the faults of such conduct.[48] If the master mingles too freely with them, dependents begin to disregard him. They forget their own position and most truly transcend that of the master.[49] Ordered to do a thing, they hesitate, and divulge the master's secrets. They ask for things that should not be asked for, and take the food that is intended for the master.[50] They go to the length of displaying their wrath and seek to outshine the master. They even seek to predominate over the king, and accepting bribes and practising deceit, obstruct the business of the state.[51] They cause the state to rot with abuses by falsifications and forgeries. They make love with the female guards of the palace and dress in the same style as their master.[52] They become so shameless as to indulge in eructations and the like, and expectorate in the very presence of their master, O tiger among kings, and they do not fear to even speak of him with levity before others.[53] If the king becomes mild and disposed to jest, his servants, disregarding him, ride on steeds and elephants and cars as good as the king's.*[54] His counsellers, assembled in court, openly indulge in such speeches as—This is beyond thy power! This is a wicked attempt.[55]—If the king becomes angry, they laugh; nor are they gladdened if favors be bestowed upon them, though they may express joy for other reasons.[56] They disclose the secret counsels of their master and bruit his evil acts. Without the least anxiety they set at naught the king's commands.[57] If the king's jewels, or food, or the necessaries of his bath, or unguents, be not forthcoming, the servants, in his very presence, do not show the least anxiety.[58] They do not take what rightfully belongs to them. On the other hand, without being content with what has been assigned to them, they appropriate what belongs to the king.[59] They wish to sport with the king as with a bird tied in a string, and always give the people to understand that the king is very intimate with them and loves them dearly.[60] If the king becomes mild and disposed to jest, O Yudhishthira, these and many other evils spring from it.' "[61]

---

* Literally, 'worthy of being used by the king.'—T.

SECTION LVII.

"Bhishma said,—'The king, O Yudhishthira, should always be ready for action. That king is not worthy of praise who, like a woman, is destitute of exertion.[1] In this connection, the holy Uçanas has sung a *Çloka*, O monarch. Listen to it with attention, O king, as I recite it to thee.[2]—Like a snake swallowing up mice, the Earth swallows up these two, viz., the king that is averse to battle and the Brāhmana that is exceedingly attached to wives and children.*[3]—It behoveth thee, O tiger among kings, to bear this always in thy heart! Make peace with those foes with whom (according to the ordinance) peace should be made, and wage war with them with whom war should be waged.[4] Be he thy preceptor or be he thy friend, he that acts inimically towards thy kingdom consisting of seven limbs, should be slain.†[5] There is an ancient *Çloka* sung by king Marutta, agreeably to Vrihaspati's opinion, O monarch, about the duty of kings.[6] According to the eternal provision, there is punishment for even the preceptor if he becomes haughty and disregardful of what should be done and what should not, and if he transgresses all restraints.[7]—Vāhu's son, king Sagara, of great intelligence, from desire of doing good to the citizens, exiled his own eldest son Asamanjas.[8] Asamanjas, O king, used to drown the children of the citizens in the Sarayu. His sire, therefore, rebuked him and sent him to exile.[9] The *Rishi* Uddālaka cast off his favorite son Cwetaketu (afterwards) of rigid penances, because the latter used to invite Brāhmanas with deceptive promises of entertainment.[10] The happiness of their subjects, observance of truth, and sincerity of behaviour are the eternal duty of kings.[11] The king should not covet the wealth of others. He should in time give what should be given. If the king becomes possessed of prowess, truthful in speech, and forgiving in temper, he would never fall away from prosperity.[12] With

---

* Literally, 'the Brāhmana that would not leave his home.' This verse has been quoted in this very *Parvan* previously.—T.

† The seven limbs are the king, counsellers, friends, treasury, territory, and forts.—T.

soul cleansed of vices, the king should be able to govern his wrath, and all his conclusions should be conformable to the scriptures. He should also always pursue morality and profit and pleasure and salvation (judiciously).[13] The king should always conceal his counsels in respect of these three, (viz., morality, profit, and pleasure). No greater evil can befall the king than the disclosure of his counsels.[14] Kings should protect the four orders in the discharge of their duties. It is the eternal duty of kings to prevent a confusion of duties in respect of the different orders.[15] The king should not repose confidence (on others than his own servants), nor should be repose full confidence (on even his servants). He should, by his own intelligence, look after the merits and defects of the six essential requisites of sovereignty.[16]* The king who is observant of the *laches* of his foes, and judicious in the pursuit of morality, profit, and pleasure, who sets clever spies for ascertaining secrets and seeks to wean away the officers of his enemies by presents of wealth, deserves applause.[17] The king should administer justice like Yama and amass wealth like Kuvera. He should also be observant of the merits and defects of his own acquisitions and losses and of his own dominions.[18] He should feed those that have not been fed, and enquire after those that have been fed. Possessed of sweet speech, he should speak with a smiling (and not with a sour) countenance.[19] He should always wait upon those that are old in years, and repress procrastination. He should never covet what belongs to others.[20] He should firmly follow the behaviour of the righteous and, therefore, observe that behaviour carefully. He should never take wealth from those that are righteous. Taking the wealth of those that are not righteous he should give it unto them that are righteous.[21] The king should himself be skilful in smiting. He should practise liberality. He should have his soul under control.

---

* These six are peace (with a foe that is stronger), war (with one of equal strength), (marching to invade the dominions of one who is weaker), halting, seeking protection (if weak, in one's own fort), and sowing dissensions (among the chief officers of the enemy).—T.

He should dress himself with splendour. He should make gifts in season and be regular in his meals. He should also be of good behaviour.[22] The king desirous of obtaining prosperity should always bind to his service men that are brave, devoted, incapable of being deceived by foes,* well-born, healthy, well-behaved, and connected with families that are well-behaved, respectable, never inclined to insult others, conversant with all the sciences, possessing a knowledge of the world and its affairs, never unmindful of the future state of existence, always observant of their duties, honest, and steadfast like mountains. There should be no difference between him and them as regards objects of enjoyment. The only distinction should consist in his umbrella and his power of passing orders.[23-25] His conduct towards them, before or behind, should be the same. The king who behaves in this way never comes to grief.[26] That crooked and covetous king who suspects every body and who taxes his subjects heavily, is soon deprived of life by his own servants and relatives.[27] That king, however, who is of righteous behaviour and who is ever engaged in attracting the hearts of his people, never sinks when attacked by foes. If overcome, he soon regains his position.[28] If the king is not wrathful, if he is not addicted to evil practices and not severe in his punishments, if he succeeds in keeping his passions under control, he then becomes an object of confidence unto all like the Himavat mountains (unto all creatures).[29] He is the best of kings who hath wisdom, who is possessed of liberality, who is ready to take advantage of the *laches* of foes, who has agreeable features, who is conversant with what is good and what is bad for each of the four orders of his subjects, who is prompt in action, who has his wrath under control, who is not vindictive, who is high-minded, who is not wrathful by disposition, who is engaged in sacrifices and other religious acts, who is not given to boasting, and who vigoursly prosecutes to completion all works commenced by him.[30-32] He is the best of kings in

---

* *Asambhāryān* is explained by Nilkantha as 'incapable of being overreached by foes."—T.

whose dominions men live fearlessly like sons in the house of their sire.[33] He is the best of kings whose subjects have not to hide their wealth and are conversant with what is good and what is bad for them.[34] He, indeed, is a king whose subjects are engaged in their respective duties and do not fear to cast off their bodies when duty calls for it ; whose people, protected duly, are all of peaceful behaviour, obedient, docile, tractable, unwilling to engage in disputes, and inclined to liberality. That king earns eternal merit in whose dominions there is no wickedness and dissimulation and deception and envy.[35-36] That king truly deserves to rule who honors knowledge, who is devoted to the scriptures and the good of his people, who treads in the path of the righteous, and who is liberal.[37] That king deserves to rule whose spies, and counsels, and acts accomplished and unaccomplished, remain unknown to his enemies.[38] The following verse was sung in days of old by Uçanas of Bhrigu's race, in the narrative called Rāmacharita, on the subject, O Bhārata, of kingly duties.[39]—One should first select a king (in whose dominions to live). Then should he select a wife, and then earn wealth. If there be no king, what would become of his wife and acquisitions ?[40]—Regarding those that are desirous of kingdom, there is no other eternal duty more obligatory than the protection (of subjects). The protection the king grants to his subjects upholds the world.[41]* Manu the son of Prachetas sang these two verses respecting the duties of kings. Listen to them with attention.[42]—These six persons should be avoided like a leaky boat on the sea, viz., a preceptor that does not speak, a priest that has not studied the scriptures,[43] a king that does not grant protection, a wife that utters what is disagreeable, a cowherd that likes to rove within the village, and a barber that is desirous of going to the woods.†—' "[44]

---

* In the sense that without royal protection, the world would soon come to grief.—T.

† The duties of the cowherd should lead him to the fields. If without manifesting any inclination for going to the fields he likes to loiter

Section LVIII.

"Bhishma said,—'Protection of the subject, O Yudhishthira, is the very cheese of kingly duties. The divine Vrihaspati does not applaud any other duty (so much as this one).[1] The divine Kavi (Uçanas) of large eyes and austere penances, the thousand-eyed Indra, and Manu the son of Prachetas,[2] the divine Bharadwāja, and the sage Gauraçiras, all devoted to *Brahma* and utterers of *Brahma*, have composed treatises on the duties of kings.[3] All of them praise the duty of protection, O foremost of virtuous persons, in respect of kings! O thou of eyes like lotus leaves and of the hue of copper, listen to the means by which protection may be secured![4] Those means consist of the employment of spies and servants, giving them their just dues without haughtiness, the realisation of taxes with considerateness, never taking anything (from the subject) capriciously and without cause, O Yudhishthira,[5] the selection of honest men (for the discharge of administrative functions), heroism, skill, and cleverness (in the transaction of business), truth, seeking the good of the people, producing discord and disunion among the enemy by fair or unfair means,[6] the repair of buildings that are old or on the point of falling away, the infliction of corporal punishments and fines regulated by observance of the occasion,[7] never abandoning the honest, granting employment and protection to persons of respectable birth, the storing of what should be stored, companionship with persons of intelligence,[8] always gratifying the soldiery, supervision over the subjects, steadiness in the transaction of business, filling the treasury,[9] absence of blind confidence on the guards of the city, producing disloyalty among the citizens of a hostile town, carefully looking after the friends and allies

---

within the village, he should not be employed. Similarly the barber's duties require his presence within the village. If without being present there he likes to wander in the woods, he should never be employed, for it may then be presumed that he is wanting in that skill which experience and habit bring. These two verses are often quoted in conversation by both learned and unlearned equally.—T.

living in the midst of the enemy's country,[10] strictly watching the servants and officers of the state, personal observation of the city, distrust of servants, comforting the enemy with assurances,[11] steadily observing the dictates of policy, readiness for action, never disregarding an enemy, and casting off those that are wicked.[12] A readiness for exertion in kings is the root of kingly duties. This has been said by Vrihaspati. Listen to the verses sung by him.[13]—By exertion the *amrita* was obtained; by exertion the *Asuras* were slain; by exertion Indra himself obtained sovereignty in heaven and on Earth.[14] The hero of exertion is superior to the heroes of speech. The heroes of speech gratify and worship the heroes of exertion.*[15] The king that is destitute of exertion, even if possessed of intelligence, is always overcome by foes like a snake that is bereft of poison.[16] The king, even if possessed of strength, should not disregard a foe however weak. A spark of fire can produce a conflagration and a particle of poison can kill.[17] With only one kind of force, an enemy from within a fort, can afflict the whole country of even a powerful and prosperous king.[18] The secret speeches of a king, the amassing of troops for obtaining victory, the crooked purposes in his heart, similar intents for accomplishing particular objects,[19] and the wrong acts he does or intends to do, should be concealed by putting on an appearance of candour. He should act righteously for keeping his people under subjection.[20] Persons of crooked minds cannot bear the burden of extensive empire. A king who is mild cannot obtain superior rank the acquisition of which depends upon labor.[21] A kingdom, coveted by all like meat, can never be protected by candour and simplicity. A king, O Yudhishthira, should, therefore, always conduct himself with both candour and crookedness.[22] If in protecting his subjects a king falls into danger, he earns great merit. Even such should be the conduct of kings.[23] I have now told thee a portion only of the duties of kings. Tell me, O best of the Kurus, what more you wish to know!'"[24]

---

* Eloquent Brāhmanas learned in the scriptures are heroes of speech. Great Kshatriya kings are heroes of exertion.—T.

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"The illustrious Vyāsa and Devasthāna and Açwa, and Vāsudeva and Kripa and Sātyaki and Sanjaya,[26] filled with joy, and with faces resembling full-blown flowers, said,—'Excellent! Excellent!' and hymned the praises of that tiger among men, *viz.*, Bhishma, that foremost of virtuous persons.[26] Then Yudhishthira, that chief of Kuru's race, with a cheerless heart and eyes bathed in tears, gently touched Bhishma's feet and said,[27]—'O grandsire, I shall tomorrow enquire after those points about which I have my doubts, for today, the sun, having sucked the moisture of all terrestrial objects, is about to set!'[23] Then Keçava and Kripa and Yudhishthira and others, saluting the Brāhmanas (assembled there) and circumambulating the son of the great river, cheerfully ascended their cars.[29] All of them observant of excellent vows then bathed in the current of the Drishadwati. Having offered oblations of water unto their ancestors and silently recited the sacred *mantras* and done other auspicious acts, and having adored the evening twilight with due rites, those scorchers of foes entered the city called after the elephant."[30]

Section LIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Rising from their beds the next day and performing the morning rites laid down in the scriptures, the Pāndavas and the Yādavas set out (for the spot where Bhishma lay) on their cars resembling fortified towns.[1] Proceeding to the field of Kuru and approaching the sinless Bhishma, they enquired of that foremost of car-warriors if he had passed the night happily.[2] Saluting all the *Rishis*, and blessed by them in return, the princes took their seats around Bhishma.[3] Then king Yudhishthira the just possessed of great energy, having worshipped Bhishma duly, said these words with joined hands.[4]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Whence arose the word *Rājan*, O king, that is used, O Bhārata, on Earth? Tell me this, O scorcher of foes![5] Possessed of hands and arms and neck like others, having an understanding and senses like those of

others, subject like others to the same kinds of joy and grief, endued with back, mouth, and stomach similar to those of the rest of the world,[6] having vital fluids and bones and marrow and flesh and blood similar to those of the rest of the world, inhaling and exhaling breaths like others, possessed of life-breaths and bodies like other men,[7] resembling others in birth and death, in fact, similar to others in respect of all the attributes of humanity, for what reason does one man, *viz.*, the king, govern the rest of the world numbering many men possessed of great intelligence and bravery ?[8] Whence is it that one man rules the wide world teeming with brave and energetic and high born men of good behaviour ? Why do all men seek to obtain his favour ?[9] Why is it that if one man becomes delighted, the whole world becomes delighted, and if that one man is troubled the whole world becomes troubled ?[10] I desire to hear this in detail, O bull of Bharata's race ! O foremost of speakers, discourse to me on this fully ![11] O king, there cannot but be a grave reason for all this since it is seen that the whole world bows down to one man as to a god !'[12]

"Bhishma said,—'With concentrated attention, O tiger among kings, listen to it in detail as to how in the Krita age sovereignty first began.[13] At first there was no sovereignty, no king, no chastisement, and no chastiser. All men used to protect one another righteously.[14] As they thus lived, O Bhārata, righteously protecting one another, they found the task (after sometime), to be painful. Error then began to assail their hearts.[15] Having become subject to error, the perceptions of men, O prince, came to be clouded, and thence their virtue began to decline.[16] When their perceptions were dimmed and when men became subject to error, all of them became covetous, O chief of the Bharatas ![17] And because men sought to obtain objects which they did not possess, another passion called lust (of acquisition) got hold of them.[13] When they became subject to lust, another passion, named wrath, soon soiled them. Once subject to wrath, they lost all consideration of what should be done and what should not.[19] Unrestrained sexual indulgence set in. Men began to utter what they chose. All distinctions between food that is

clean and unclean and between virtue and vice disappeared.[20] When this confusion set in amongst men, the Vedas disappeared. Upon the disappearance of the Vedas, righteousness was lost.[21] When both the Vedas and righteousness were lost, the gods were possessed by fear. Overcome with fear, O tiger among men, they sought the protection of Brahman.[22] Having gratified the divine Grandsire of the universe, the gods, afflicted with grief, said unto him, with joined hands;[23]—O god, the eternal Vedas have been afflicted in the world of men by covetousness and error! For this, we have been struck with fear.[24] Through loss of the Vedas, O Supreme Lord, righteousness also has been lost! For this, O Lord of the three worlds, we are about to descend to the level of human beings![25] Men used to pour upwards while we used to pour downwards. In consequence, however, of the cessation of all pious rites among men, great distress will be our lot.*[26] Do thou then, O Grandsire, think of that which would benefit us, so that the universe, created by thy power, may not meet with destruction![27]—Thus addressed, the Self-born and divine Lord said unto them,—I shall think of what will do good to all! Ye foremost of gods, let your fears be dispelled![28]—The Grandsire then composed by his own intelligence a treatise consisting of a hundred thousand lessons. In it were treated the subjects of Virtue, Profit, and Pleasure.[29] The Self-born designated them as the triple aggregate. He treated of a fourth subject called emancipation whose meaning and attributes are different.[30] The triple aggregate in respect of emancipation also, according to the attributes of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness, and another, (a fourth *viz.*, the practice of duty without hope of bliss or reward in this or the other world), were treated in it.† Another triple aggregate connected with Chastisement,

---

* Men, by pouring libations of clarified butter on sacrificial fires, feed the gods. The latter, fed by those libations, pour rain on the Earth whence men derive their sustenance. Men, therefore, are said to pour upwards and the gods pour downwards.—T.

† I adopt the Bombay reading and Nilakantha's explanation.—T.

viz., Conservation, Growth, and Destruction, was treated in it.*[31] Another aggregate of six consisting of the hearts of men, place, time, means, overtacts, and alliances, and causes, were treated in it.[32] The religious rites laid down in the three Vedas, knowledge, and the acts necessary for the support of life, (*viz.*, agriculture, trade, &c), O bull of Bharata's race, and the very extensive branch of learning called punitive legislation, were laid down in it.[33] The subjects also of behaviour towards counsellors, of spies, the indications of princes, of secret agents possessed of diverse means, of envoys and agents of other kinds,[34] conciliation, fomenting discord, gifts, and chastisement, O king, with toleration as the fifth, were fully treated of there.[35] Deliberations of all kinds, counsels for producing disunion, the errors of deliberation, the results of the success or failure of counsels,[36] treaties of three kinds, viz., bad, middling, and good, made through fear, good offices, and gifts of wealth, were described in detail.[37] The four kinds of time for making journeys, the details of the aggregate of three, the three kinds of victory, viz., that secured righteously, that won by wealth,[38] and that obtained by deceitful ways, were described in detail. The three kinds of attributes, viz., bad middling, and good, of the aggregate of five (viz., counsellors, kingdom, fort, army, and treasury,) were also treated in it.[39] Chastisements of two kinds, viz., open and secret, were indicated. The eight kinds of open chastisement, as also the eight kinds of secret chastisement, were dealt with in detail.[40] Cars, elephants, horse, and foot-soldiers, O son of Pāndu, impressed labourers, crew, and paid attendants (of armies), and guides taken from the country which is the seat of war, these are the eight[41] instruments, O Kauravya, of open chastisement or forces acting openly. The use and administration of movable and immovable poison were also mentioned in respect of the three kinds of things, viz., wearing apparel, food, and incantations. Enemies, allies, and neutrals,—these also were describ-

---

* Conservation in respect of the wealth of traders and merchants; Growth in respect of the penances of ascetics; and Destruction in respect of thieves and wicked men. All these depend upon Chastisement.—T.

ed.[42-43] The diverse characteristics of roads (to be taken, as dependent on stars and planets, &c.), the attributes of the soil (on which to encamp), protection of self, superintendence of the construction of cars and other utensils of war and use,[44] the diverse means for protecting and improving men, elephants, cars, and steeds, the diverse kinds of battle array, strategies, and manœvres in war,[45] planetary conjunctions foreboding evil, calamitous visitations (such as earthquakes), skillful methods of warfare and retreat, knowledge of weapons and their proper keep,[46] the disorders of troops and how to get rid of them, the means of inspiring the army with joy and confidence, diseases, times of distress and danger, knowledgo of guiding foot-soldiers in battle,[47] the methods of sounding alarms and notifying orders, inspiring the enemy with fear by display of standards, the diverse methods of afflicting the enemy's kingdom by means of robbers and fierce wild-tribes,[48] and fire-raisers and poisoners and forgers, by producing disunion among the chief officers of hostile armies, by cutting down crops and plants,[49] by destroying the efficiency of the enemy's elephants, by producing alarms, by honoring those among the enemy's subjects that are well disposed towards the invader, and by inspiring the enemy with confidence,[50] the waste, growth, and harmony of the seven essential requisites of sovereignty, capacity for (projected) works, the means for accomplishing them, the methods of extending the kingdom,[51] the means of winning over persons residing in the enemy's territory, the chastisement and destruction of those that are strong,[52] the exact administration of justice, the extermination of the wicked, wrestling, shooting and throwing and hurling of weapons, the methods of making presents and of storing requisite things,[53] feeding the unfed and supervision over those that have been fed, gifts of wealth in season, freedom from the vices called *Vyasanas*,[54] the attributes of kings, the qualifications of military officers, the sources of the aggregate of three and its merits and faults,[55] the diverse kinds of evil intents, the behaviour of dependents, suspicion against every one, the avoidance of heedlessness,[56] the acquisition of objects unattained, the improving of objects already

acquired, gifts to deserving persons of what has thus been improved,[57] expenditure of wealth for pious purposes, for acquiring objects of desire, and for dispelling danger and distress, were all treated in that work.[58] The fierce vices, O chief of the Kurus, born of wrath, and those born of lust, in all of ten kinds, were mentioned in that treatise.[59] The four kinds of vices which the learned say are born of lust, *viz.*, hunting, gambling, drinking, and sexual indulgence, were mentioned by the Self-born in that work.[60] Rudeness of speech, fierceness, severity of chastisement, infliction of pain on the body, suicide, and frustrating one's own objects, these are the six kinds of faults born of wrath, that have also been mentioned.[61] Diverse kinds of machines and their actions have been described there. Devastation of the enemy's territories, attacks upon foes, the destruction and removal of landmarks and other indications,[62] the cutting down of large trees (for depriving the enemy and the enemy's subjects of their refreshing shade), siege of forts, supervision of agriculture and other useful operations, the storage of necessaries, robes and attire (of troops), and the best means of manufacturing them, were all described.[63] The characteristics and uses of *Panavas*, *Ānakas*, conchs, and drums, O Yudhishthira, the six kinds of articles (viz., gems, animals, lands, robes, female slaves, and gold) and the means of acquiring them (for one's own self) and of destroying them (for injuring the foe),[64] pacification of newly acquired territories, honoring the good, cultivating friendship with the learned, knowledge of the rules in respect of gifts and religious rites such as *homa*,[65] the touch of auspicious articles, attention to and adornment of the body, the manner of preparing and using food, piety of behaviour,[66] the attainment of prosperity by following in one path, truthfulness of speech, sweetness of speech, observance of acts done on occasions of festivity and social gatherings and those done within the household,[67] the open and secret acts of persons in all places of meeting, the constant supervision of the behaviour of men, the immunity of Brāhmanas from punishment, the reasonable infliction of punishment, honors paid to dependents in consideration of kinship and merit,[68-69] the protection of subjects

and the means of extending the kingdom, the counsels that a king, who lives in the midst of a dozen kings, should pursue in respect of the four kinds of foes, the four kinds of allies, and the four kinds of neutrals,[70] the two and seventy acts laid down in medical works about the protection, exercise, and improvement of the body, and the practices of particular countries, tribes, and families, were all duly treated in that work.[71] Virtue, Profit, and Pleasure, and Emancipation, were also described in it. The diverse means of acquisition, the desire for diverse kinds of wealth, O giver of profuse presents,[72] the methods of agriculture and other operations that form the chief source of the revenue, and the various means for producing and applying illusions, the methods by which stagnant water is rendered foul, were laid down in it.[73] All those means, O tiger among kings, by which men might be prevented from deviating from the path of righteousness and honesty, were all described in it.[74] Having composed that highly beneficial treatise, the divine Lord cheerfully said unto the deities having Indra for their head, these words:[75]—For the good of the world and for establishing the triple aggregate (viz., Virtue, Profit, and Pleasure), I have composed this science representing the very cheese of speech![76] Assisted by chastisement, this science will protect the world. Dealing rewards and punishments, this science will operate among men.[77] And because men are led (to the acquisition of the objects of their existence) by chastisement, or, in other words, chastisement leads or governs every thing, therefore will this science be known in the three worlds as *Dandaniti* (science of chastisement).*[73] Containing the essence of all the attributes of the aggregate of six, this science will always be much regarded

* The Burdwan Pundits have generally been very careless in translating the *Cānti Parvam*. Their version is replete with errors in almost every page. They have rendered verse 78 in a most ridiculous way. The first line of the verse merely explains the etymology of the word *Dandaniti*, the verb *ni* being used first in the passive and then in the active voice. The *idam* refers to the world, *i. e.*, men in general. K. P. Singha's version of the *Cānti* is better, and, of course, gives the correct sense of this verse.—T.

by all high-souled persons. Virtue, Profit, Pleasure, and Salvation have all been treated in it.[79]—After this, the lord of Umā,—the divine and multiform Civa of large eyes, the source of all blessings,—first studied and mastered it.[80] In view, however, of the gradual decrease of the period of life of human beings, the divine Civa abridged that science of grave import compiled by Brahman.[81] The abridgment, called *Vaiçālāksha*, consisting of ten thousand lessons, was then received by Indra devoted to Brahman and endued with great ascetic merit.[82] The divine Indra also abridged it into a treatise consisting of five thousand lessons and called it *Vāhudantaka*.[83] Afterwards the puissant Vrihaspati, by his intelligence, further abridged the work into a treatise consisting of three thousand lessons and called it *Vārhaspatya*.[84] Next, that preceptor of *Yoga*, of great celebrity, viz., Kavi of immeasurable wisdom, reduced it further into a work of a thousand lessons.[85] In view of the period of men's lives and the general decrease (of every thing), great *Rishis* did thus, for benefiting the world, abridge that science.[86] The gods then, approaching that lord of creatures, viz., Vishnu, said unto him,—Indicate, O god, that one among mortals who deserves to have superiority over the rest![87]—The divine and puissant Nārāyana, reflecting a little, created by a fiat of his will a son born of his energy, named Virajas.[88] The highly blessed Virajas, however, did not desire sovereignty on Earth. His mind, O son of Pāndu, inclined to a life of renunciation.[89] Virajas had a son named Krittimat. He too renounced pleasure and enjoyment.* Krittimat had a son named Karddama. Karddama also practised severe austerities.[90] The lord of creatures, Karddama, begot a son named Ananga. Ananga became a protector of creatures, pious in behaviour, and fully conversant with the science of chastisement.[91] Ananga begot a son named Ativala, well versed in policy. Obtaining extensive empire after the demise of his sire, he became a slave of his passions.[92] Mrityu, O king, had a daughter born of her mind. Named Sunitā

* Literally, 'rose above the five,' in the sense of having renounced the world. The Burdwan Pundits erroneously render it "died."—T.

and celebrated over the three worlds, she (was married to Ativala and) gave birth to a son named Vena.[93] Vena, a slave of wrath and malice, became unrighteous in his conduct towards all creatures. The *Rishis*, those utterers of *Brahma*, slew him with *Kuça* blades (as their weapon) inspired with *mantras*.[94] Uttering *mantras* the while, those *Rishis* pierced the right thigh of Vena. Thereupon, from that thigh, came out a short-limbed person on Earth,[95] resembling a charred brand, with blood-red eyes and black hair. Those utterers of *Brahma* said unto him,—*Nishida* (sit) here![96]—From him have sprung the *Nishādas*, viz., those wicked tribes that have the hills and the forests for their abode, as also those hundreds and thousands of others, called Mlecchas, residing on the Vindhya mountains.[97] The great *Rishis* then pierced the right arm of Vena. Thence sprang a person who was a second Indra in form.[98] Clad in mail, armed with scimitars, bows, and arrows, and well-versed in the science of weapons, he was fully acquainted with the Vedas and their branches.[99] All the ordinances of the science of chastisement, O king, (in their embodied forms) came to that best of men. The son of Vena then, with joined hands, said unto those great *Rishis*,[100] —I have attained an understanding that is very keen and that is observant of righteousness. Tell me in detail what I shall do with it![101] That useful task which you will be pleased to indicate, I shall accomplish without hesitation![102]— Thus addressed, the gods that were present there, as also the *Rishis*, said unto him,—Do thou fearlessly accomplish all those tasks in which righteousness ever resides![103] Disregarding what is dear and what not so, look upon all creatures with an equal eye. Cast off at a distance lust and wrath and covetousness and honor,[104] and, always observing the dictates of righteousness, do thou punish with thy own hands the man, whoever he may be, that deviates from the path of duty![105] Do thou also swear that thou wouldst, in thought, word, and deed, always maintain the religion inculcated on Earth by the Vedas![106] Do thou further swear that thou wouldst fearlessly maintain the duties laid down in the Vedas with the aid of the science of chastisement, and that thou wouldst never

act with caprice![107] O puissant one, know that Brāhmanas are exempt from chastisement, and pledge further that thou wouldst protect the world from an intermixture of castes![108]—Thus addressed, Vena's son replied unto the deities headed by the *Rishis*, saying,—Those bulls among men, viz., the highly blessed Brāhmanas, shall ever be worshipped by me.[109]—Those utterers of *Brahma* then said unto him,—Let it be so![110]—Then Cakra, that vast receptacle of *Brahma*, became his priest.[110] The Vālakhillyas became his counsellers, and the Sāraswats his companions. The great and illustrious *Rishi* Garga became his astrologer.[111] This high declaration of the Crutis is current among men that Prithu is the eighth from Vishnu. A little before, two persons named Suta and Magadha had come into existence. They became his bards and panegyrists.[112] Gratified, Prithu, the royal son of Vena, possessed of great prowess, gave unto Suta the land lying on the sea-coast, and unto Magadha the country since known as Māgadha.[113] We have heard that the surface of the Earth had before been very uneven. It was Prithu who made the terrestrial surface level.[114] In every *Manwantara*, the Earth becomes uneven.* Vena's son removed the rocks and rocky masses lying all around,[115] O monarch, with the horn of his bow. By this means the hills and mountains became enlarged. Then Vishnu, and the deities with Indra,[116] and the *Rishis*, and the Regents of the world, and the Brāhmanas, assembled together for crowning Prithu (as the king of the world). The Earth herself, O son of Pāndu, in her embodied form, came to him, with a tribute of gems and jewels.[117] Ocean, that lord of rivers, and Himavat, the king of mountains, and Cakra, O Yudhishthira, bestowed upon him inexhaustible wealth.[118] The great Meru, that mountain of gold, gave unto him heaps of that precious metal. The divine Kuvera, borne on the shoulders of human beings, that lord of *Yakshas* and *Rākshasas*,[119] gave him wealth enough for gratifying the needs of religion, profit, and pleasure. Steeds, cars, elephants, and men, by millions,[120] O son

---

* A *Manwantara* is a very long period of time, not unequal to a geological age.—T.

of Pāndu, started into life as soon as Vena's son thought of them. At that time there was neither decrepitude, nor famine, nor calamity, nor disease (on Earth).[121] In consequence of the protection afforded by that king, nobody had any fear from reptiles and thieves or from any other source.[122] When he proceeded to the sea, the waters used to be solidified. The mountains gave him way, and his standard was never obstructed anywhere.[123] He drew from the Earth, as a milcher from a cow, seven and ten kinds of crops for the food of *Yakshas*, and *Rākshasas*, and *Nāgas*, and other creatures.[124] That high-souled king caused all creatures to regard righteousness as the foremost of all things; and because he gratified all the people, therefore, was he called *Rājan* (king).[125] And because he also healed the wounds of Brāhmanas, therefore, he earned the name of *Kshatriya*. And because the Earth (during his reign) became celebrated for the practice of virtue, therefore, she came to be called by many as *Prithivi*.*[126] The eternal Vishnu himself, O Bhārata, confirmed his power, telling him,—No one, O king, shall transcend thee![127]—The divine Vishnu entered the body of that monarch in consequence of his penances. For this reason, the entire universe offered divine worship unto Prithu numbered among human gods.†[128] O king, thy kingdom should always be protected by the aid of the science of chastisement! Thou shouldst also, by careful observation made through the movements of thy spies, protect it in such a way that no one may be able to injure it.‡[129] All good acts, O king, lead to the good (of the monarch). The conduct of a king should be regulated by his own intelligence as also by the opportunities and means that may offer themselves.§[130]

---

* Verse 126 has been wrongly rendered in K. P. Singha's verson.—T.

† "Numbered among human gods", *i. e.*, among kings.—T.

‡ The correct reading is *chāranichpanda* as given in the Bombay edition. -T.

§ In both the vernacular versions the second line of 130 has been rendered wrongly. The two lines are quite unconnected with each other. Nilakantha rightly supposes that *Kāryyam* is understood after *Mahikshitah*. *Kārana*, however, is not *kriyā* as explained by Nilakantha but opportunities and means.—T.

What other cause is there in consequence of which the multitude live in obedience to one, save the divinity of the monarch? At that time a golden lotus was born from Vishnu's brow.[131] The goddess Cree was born of that lotus. She became the spouse of Dharma of great intelligence. Upon Cree, O son of Pāndu, Dharma begot *Artha*.[132] All the three, *viz.*, *Dharma* and *Artha* and *Çree*, were established in sovereignty.* A person, upon the exhaustion of his merit, comes down from heaven to Earth,[133] and takes birth as a king conversant with the science of chastisement. Such a person becomes endued with greatness and is really a portion of Vishnu on Earth. He becomes possessed of great intelligence and obtains superiority over others.[134] Established by the gods, no one transcends him. It is for this reason that everybody acts in obedience to one, and it is for this that the world cannot command him.[135] Good acts, O king, lead to good. It is for this that the multitude obey his words of command, though he belongs to the same world and is possessed of similar limbs.[136] He who once beheld Prithu's amiable face became obedient to him. Thenceforth he began to regard him as handsome, wealthy, and highly blessed.*[137] In consequence of the might of his sceptre, the practice of morality and just behaviour became so visible on Earth. It is through that reason that the Earth became overspread with virtue.[138]

"'Thus, O Yudhishthira, the histories of all past events, the origin of the great *Rishis*, the holy waters, the planets and stars and asterisms, the duties in respect of the four modes of life, the four kinds of *Homa*, the characteristics of the four orders of men, and the four branches of learning, were all treated of in that work (of the Grandsire).[139-140]

---

* Nilakantha explains this verse erroneously. He thinks that the meaning is—"The king becomes obedient to that person who beholds his face to be amiable, &c., &c." It should be borne in mind that Bhishma is answering Yudhishthira's query as to why the whole world adores one man. One of the reasons is a mysterious influence which induces every man who beholds the amiable face of the king to render him homage.—T.

Whatever objects or things, O son of Pāndu, there are on Earth, were all included in that treatise of the Grandsire. Histories and the Vedas and the science of *Nyāya* were all treated in it, as also penances, Knowledge, abstention from injury in respect of all creatures, truth, falsehood, and high morality.[141-143] Worship of persons old in years, gifts, purity of behaviour, readiness for exertion, and compassion towards all creatures, were very fully described in it.[142] There is no doubt in this! Since that time, O monarch, the learned have begun to say that there is no difference between a god and a king.[144] I have now told thee everything about the greatness of kings. What other subject is there, O chief of the Bharatas, upon which I shall next have to discourse?'"[145]

SECTION LX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After this, Yudhishthira, saluted his grandsire, viz., the son of Gangā, and with joined hands and concentrated attention, once more asked him, saying,'—'What are the general duties of the four orders of men, and what the especial duties of each order? What mode of life should be adopted by which order? What duties are especially called the duties of kings?[2] By what means does a kingdom grow, and what are those means by which the king himself grows? How also, O bull of Bharata's race do the citizens and the servants of the king grow?[3] What sorts of treasuries, punishments, forts, allies, counsellors, priests, and preceptors, should a king avoid?*[4] Whom should the king trust in what kinds of distress and danger? From what evils should the king gaurd himself firmly? Tell me all this, O grandsire!'[5]

"Bhishma said,—'I bow down to Dharma who is great, and to Krishna who is *Brahma*! Having bowed down also unto the Brāhmanas (assembled here), I shall discourse on duties that are eternal.[6] The suppression of wrath, truthfulness of speech,

---

* The difference between a *Ritwija* and a *Purohita* is that the former is engaged on especial occasions, while the services of the latter are permanent and constant.—T.

justice, forgiveness, begetting children upon one's own wedded wives, purity of conduct, avoidance of quarrel, simplicity, and maintenance of dependents,—these nine duties belong to all the four orders (equally).[7] Those duties, however, which belong exclusively to Brāhmanas, I shall now tell thee! Self-restraint. O king, has been declared to be the first duty of Brāhmanas. Study of the Vedas, and patience in undergoing austerities, (are also their other duties). By practising these two, all their acts are accomplished.[8] If while engaged in the observance of his own duties, without doing any improper act, wealth comes to a peaceful Brāhmana possessed of knowledge,[9] he should then marry and seek to beget children and should also practise charity and perform sacrifices. It has been declared by the wise that wealth thus obtained should be enjoyed by distributing it (among deserving persons and relatives).[10] By his study of the Vedas all the pious acts (laid down for the Brāhmana) are accomplished. Whether he does or does not achieve anything else, if he devotes himself to the study of the Vedas he becomes (by that) known as a Brāhmana or the friend of all creatures.[11] I shall also tell thee, O Bhārata, what the duties are of a Kshatriya. A Kshatriya, O king, should give but not beg, should himself perform sacrifices but not officiate as a priest in the sacrifices of other's.[12] He should never teach (the Vedas) but study (them with a Brāhmana preceptor). He should protect the people. Always exerting himself for the destruction of robbers and wicked people, he should put forth his prowess in battle.[13] Those among Kshatriya rulers who perfom great sacrifices, who are possessed of a knowledge of the Vedas, and who gain victories in battle, become foremost of those that acquire many blessed regions hereafter by their merit.[14] Persons conversant with the old scriptures do not applaud that Kshatriya who returns unwounded from battle.[15] This has been declared to be the conduct of a wretched Kshatriya.* There is no higher duty for him than the suppression of robbers.[16] Gifts, study, and sacrifices, bring prosperity to kings. Therefore, a king who desires to acquire religous merit

* Viz., returning unwounded from battle.—T.

should engage in battle.[17]* Establishing all his subjects in the observance of their respective duties, a king should cause all of them to do everything according to the dictates of righteousness.[18] Whether he does or does not do any other act, if only he protects his subjects, he is regarded to accomplish all religious acts and is called a Kshatriya and the foremost of men.[19] I shall now tell thee, O Yudhishthira, what the eternal duties of the Vaiçya are. A Vaiçya should make gifts, study the Vedas, perform sacrifices, and acquire wealth by fair means.[20] With proper attention he should also protect and rear all (domestic) animals as a sire protecting his sons. Anything else that he will do will be regarded as improper for him.[21] By protecting the (domestic) animals he would obtain great happiness. The Creator, having created the (domestic) animals, bestowed their care upon the Vaiçya.[22] Upon the Brāhmana and the Kshatriya he conferred (the care of) all creatures. I shall tell thee what the Vaiçya's profession is and how he is to earn the means of his sustenance.[23] If he keeps (for others) six kine, he may take the milk of one cow as his remuneration ; and if he keeps (for others) a hundred kine, he may take a single pair as such fee. If he trades with other's wealth, he may take a seventh part of the profits (as his share). A seventh also is his share in the profits arising from the trade in horns, but he should take a sixteenth if the trade be in hoofs. If he engages in cultivation with seeds supplied by others, he may take a seventh part of the yield. This should be his annual remuneration.[24] A Vaiçya should never desire that he should not tend cattle. If a Vaiçya desires to tend cattle, no one else should be employed in that task.[25] I should tell thee, O Bhārata, what the duties of a Cudra are. The Creator intended the Cudra to become the servant of the other three orders.[26] For this, the service of the three other classes is the duty of the Cudra. By such service of the other three, a Cudra may obtain great happiness.[27] He should wait upon the three other classes according to their order of seniority.

---

* For, without battle, he cannot extend his kingdom and acquire wealth to give away and meet the expenses of sacrifices.—T.

A Cudra should never amass wealth,[28] last, by his wealth, he makes the numbers of the three superior classes obedient to him. By this he woul incur sin. With the king's permission, however, a Cudra, for performing religious acts, may earn wealth.[29] I shall now tell thee the profession he should follow and the means by which he may earn his livelihood.[30] It is said that Cudras should certainly be maintained by the (three) other orders.[31] Worn out umbrellas, turbans, beds and seats, shoes, and fans, should be given to the Cudra servants.*[32] Torn clothes, which are no longer fit for wear, should be given away by the regenerate classes unto the Cudra. These are the latter's lawful acquisitions.[33] Men conversant with morality say that if the Cudra approaches any one belonging to the three regenerate orders from desire of doing menial service, the latter should assign him proper work.[34] Unto the sonless Cudra his master should offer the funeral cake. The weak and the old amongst them should be maintained.† The Cudra should never abandon his master whatever the nature or degree of the distress into which the latter may fall.[35] If the master loses his wealth, he should with excessive zeal be supported by the Cudra servant. A Cudra cannot have any wealth that is his own. Whatever he possesses belongs lawfully to his master.‡[36] Sacrifice has been laid down as a duty of the three other orders. It has been ordained for the Cudra also, O Bhārata! A Cudra, however, is not competent to utter *swāhā* and *sadhā* or any other Vedic *mantra*.[37] For this reason, the Cudra, without observing the vows laid down in the

---

* A *Beshtana* is literally a cloth tied round (the head); hence, a turban or *pāgree*. The word *Oucira* is applied to both beds and seats. The Hindu *Upānaha* had wooden soles.—T.

† The Burdwan Pundits understand this verse to mean that the Cudra should offer the funeral cake unto his sonless master and support masters if old and weak. There can be little doubt that they are wrong.—T

‡ *Atirekena* evidently means 'with excessive zeal.' Nilakantha explains it as 'with greater zeal than that which is shown in supporting his own relations.' It cannot mean, as K. P. Sinha puts it, 'with the surplus left after supporting his own relations.'—T.

Vedas, should worship the gods in minor sacrifices called *Pāka-yajnas*. The gift called *Purna-pātra* is declared to be the *Dakshinā* of such sacrifices.*[38] It has been heard by us that in days of old a Cudra of the name of Paijavana gave a *Dakshinā* (in one of his sacrifices) consisting of a hundred thousand *Purnapātras*, according to the ordinance called *Aindrāgni*.†[39] Sacrifice (as has been already said), O Bhārata, is as much laid down for the Cudra as for the three other classes. Of all sacrifices, devotion has been laid down to be the foremost.‡[40] Devotion is a high deity. It cleanses all sacrificers. Then again Brāhmanas are foremost of gods unto their respective Cudra attendants.[41] They worship the gods in sacrifices, for obtaining the fruition of various wishes. The members of the three other classes have all sprung from the Brāhmanas.§[42] The Brāhmanas are the gods of the very gods. Whatever they would say would be for thy great good. Therefore, all kinds of sacrifices naturally appertain to all the four orders. The obligation is not one whose discharge is optional.[43] The Brāhmana, who is conversant with *Richs*, *Yajus*, and *Sāmans*, should always be worshipped as a god. The Cudra, who is without *Richs* and *Yajus* and *Sāmans*, has *Prajāpati* for his god.¶[44] Mental sacrifice, O sire, is laid down for

---

* A *Pāka-yajna* is a minor sacrifice, such as the propitiation of a planet foreboding evil, or worship offered to the inferior deities called Viewedevas. A *Purnapātra* is literally a large dish or basket full of rice. It should consist of 256 handfuls. Beyond a *Purnapātra*, the Cudra should not give any other *Dakshinā* in any sacrifice of his.—T.

† This ordinance lays down that the *Dakshina* should be a hundred thousand animals such as kine or horses. In the case of this particular Cudra, that ordinance (without its *mantras*) was followed, and a hundred thousand *Purnapātras* were substituted for kine or horses of that number.—T.

‡ Hence the Cudra, by devotion to the members of the three other classes, may earn the merit of sacrifices though he is not competent to utter *mantras*.—T.

§ For this reason Cudras earn the merit of the sacrifices performed by their Brāhmana masters and progenitors.—T.

¶ The Brāhmana conversant with the Vedas is himself a god. The Cudra, though incompetent to read the Vedas and utter Vedic *mantras*,

all the orders, O Bhārata! It is not true that the gods and other (superior) persons do not manifest a desire to share the offerings in such sacrifices of even the Cudra.* For, this reason, the sacrifice that consists in devotion is laid down for all the classes.†[45] The Brāhmana is the foremost of gods. It is not true that they that belong to that order do not perform the sacrifices of the other orders. The fire called *Vitāna*, though procured from Vaiçyas and inspired with *mantras*, is still inferior.‡ The Brāhmana is the performer of the sacrifices of the three other orders.[46] For this reason all the four orders are holy. All the orders bear towards one another the relation of consanguinity, through the intermediate classes. They have all sprung from Brāhmanas. In ascertaining (the priority or subsequence of men in respect of their creation) it will appear that amongst all the orders the Brāhmana was created first. Originally Sāman was one; Yajus was one, and Rich was one.§[47] In this connection, persons conversant with ancient histories cite a verse, O king, sung in praise of sacrifice by the Vaikhānasa *Munis* on the occasion of performing a sacrifice of theirs.[48]—Before or after sun rise, a person of subdued senses, with heart filled with devotion, poureth

---

has *Prajāpati* for his god whom he can worship with rites other than those laid down in the Vedas. The Brāhmanas have *Agni* for their god, and the Kshatriyas, *Indra*. *Upadravah* means a servant or attendant, hence, a Cudra.—T.

* Sacrifices are performed by the body, by words, and by the mind. The Brāhmana can perform sacrifices by all the three. The Kshatriya and the Vaicya cannot perform sacrifices by means of their bodies. They must employ Brāhmanas in their sacrifices. These two orders, however, can utter *mantras* and perform mental sacrifices. The Cudra alone cannot employ his body or utter *mantras* in sacrifices. The only sacrifice in his case is the mental sacrifice. A mental sacrifice is a resolve to give away in honor of the gods or unto the gods without the aid of the Vedic ritual. The resolve must be followed by actual gifts.—T.

† *I. e.*, for the Cudras also.—T.

‡ All sacrificial fires, as a rule, are procured from the houses of Vaicyas. The sacrificial fire of the Cudra is called *Vitāna*.—T.

§ Though originally one, the Vedas have become diverse. Similarly from the Brāhmana, who was created first, all the rest have sprung.—T.

libations on the (sacrificial) fire according to the ordinance. Devotion is a mighty agent.[49]—With regard to *homas* again, that variety which is called *skanna* is the initial one, while that which is called *askanna* is the last (but foremost in point of merit). Sacrifices are multifarious. Their rites and fruits again are multifarious.[50] That Brāhmana possessed of devotion who, endued with scriptural learning, is acquainted with them all, is competent to perform sacrifices.[51] That person who desires to perform a sacrifice is regarded as righteous even if he happens to be a thief, a sinner, or the worst of sinners.[52] The *Rishis* applaud such a man. Without doubt they are right. This then is the conclusion that all the orders should always and by every means in their power perform sacrifices.[53] There is nothing in the three worlds equal to sacrifice. Therefore, it has been said that every one, with heart free from malice, should perform sacrifices, aided by devotion which is sacred, to the best of his power and according as he pleases.' "[54]

Section LXI.

"Bhishma said,—'O mighty-armed one, listen now to me, O thou of prowess incapable of being baffled, as I mention the names of the four modes of life and the duties in respect of each![1] The four modes are Vānprastha, Bhaikshya, Gārhastya of great merit, and Brahmacharyya which is adopted by Brāhmanas.[2] Undergoing the purificatory rite in respect of bearing matted locks, after having gone through the rite of regeneration and performed for sometime the rites in respect of the sacred fire and studied the Vedas,[3] one should, with cleansed soul and senses under restraint, having first carefully performed all the duties of the mode called Gārhastya, proceed, with or without his wife, to the woods for adoption of the mode called Vānaprastha.[4] Having studied the scriptures called Āranyakas, having drawn up his vital fluid and having retired from all worldly affairs, the virtuous recluse may then attain to an absorbtion with the eternal Soul knowing no decay.[5] These are the indications of *Munis* that have drawn up their vital fluid. A learned Brāhmana, O king, should

first practise and perform them.[6] The Brāhmana, O king, that is desirous of emancipation, it is well known, is competent to adopt the Bhaikshya mode after having gone through the mode called Brahmacharyya.[7] Sleeping at that place (in the course of his wanderings) where evening overtakes him, without desire of bettering his situation, without a home, subsisting on whatever food is obtained (in charity), given to contemplation, practising self-restraint, with the senses under control,[8] without desire, regarding all creatures equally, without enjoyments, without dislike to anything, the Brāhmana possessed of learning, by adopting this mode of life, attains to absorbtion with the eternal Soul that knows no decay.[9] The person leading the Gārhastya mode of life should, after studying the Vedas, accomplish all the religious acts laid down for him. He should beget children and enjoy pleasures and comforts. With careful attention he should accomplish all the duties of this mode of life that is applauded by ascetics and that is extremely difficult to go through (without transgressions).[10] He should be satisfied with his own wedded wife and should never approach her except in her season. He should observe the ordinances of the scriptures, should not be cunning and deceitful. He should be abstemious in diet, devoted to the gods, grateful, mild, destitute of cruelty, and forgiving.[11] He should be of a tranquil heart, tractable, and attentive in making offerings to the gods and the *Pitris*. He should always be hospitable to the Brāhmanas. He should be without pride, and his charity should not be confined to any one sect. He should also be always devoted to the performance of the Vedic rites.[12] In this connection, the illustrious and great *Rishis* cite a verse sung by Nārāyana himself, of grave import and endued with high ascetic merit. Listen to me as I repeat it.[13]—By truth, simplicity, worship of guests, acquisition of morality and profit, and enjoyment of one's own wedded wives, one should enjoy diverse kinds of happiness both here and hereafter.[14]—The great *Rishis* have said that support of sons and wives, and study of the Vedas, form the duties of those that lead this high mode of life.[15] That Brāhmana who, always engaged in the performance of sacrifices, duly goes

through this mode of life and properly discharges all its duties, obtains blessed rewards in heaven.[16] Upon his death, the rewards desired by him become deathless. Indeed, these wait upon him for eternity like menials ever on the alert to execute the commands of their master.*[17] Always attending to the Vedas, silently reciting the *mantras* obtained from his preceptor, worshipping all the deities, O Yudhishthira, dutifully waiting upon and serving his preceptor with his own body smeared with clay and filth,[18] the person leading the *Brahmacharyya* mode of life should always observe rigid vows and, with senses under control, should always pay attention to the instructions he has received. Reflecting on the Vedas and discharging all the duties (in respect of contemplation and overt acts), he should live, dutifully waiting upon his preceptor and always bowing unto him. Unengaged in the six kinds of work (such as officiating in the sacrifices of others,) and never engaged with attachment to any kind of acts,[19-20] never showing favor or disfavour to any one, and doing good even unto his enemies,—these, O sire, are the duties laid down for a *Brahmachārin* !'"[21]

SECTION LXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell us those duties in respect of persons like ourselves which are auspicious, productive of happiness in the future, benevolent, approved by all, pleasant, and agreeable !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The four modes of life, O puissant one, have been laid down for the Brāhmana. The other three orders do not adopt them, O best of the Bharatas ![2] Many acts, O king, leading to heaven and especially fit for the kingly order, have already been declared. Those, however, cannot be referred to in reply to thy present query, for all of them have been duly laid down for such Kshatriyas as are not disinclined to pitilessness.[3] That Brāhmana who is addicted to the practices of Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Cudras, incurs cen-

---

* Literally, 'with eyes, head, and face on all sides.'—T.

sure in this world as a person of wicked soul and goes to hell in the next world.[4] Those names which are applied among men to slaves and dogs and wolves and (other) beasts, are applied, O son of Pāndu, to the Brāhmana who is engaged in pursuits that are improper for him.[5] That Brāhmana who, in all the four modes of life, is duly engaged in the sixfold acts (of regulating the breath, contemplation, &c.), who performs all his duties, who is not restless, who has his passions under control,[6] whose heart is pure and who is ever engaged in penances, who has no desire of bettering his prospects, and who is charitable, has inexhaustible regions of bliss in the other world.[7] Every one derives his own nature from the nature of his acts in respect of their circumstances, place, and means and motives.[8] Thou shouldst, therefore, O king, regard the study of the Vedas, which is fraught with such high merit, to be equal with the exertion of kingly power, or the pursuits of agriculture, trade, and hunting.[9] The world is set agoing by Time. Its operations are settled by the course of Time. Man does all his acts, good, bad, and indifferent, entirely influenced by Time.' "*[10] Those amongst the good acts of a man's past life that exert the greatest influence on the next, are liable to be exhausted. Men, however, are always engaged in those acts to which their propensities lead. Those propensities again, lead a living being to every direction.' "†[11]

SECTION LXIII.

"Bhishma said,—'Drawing the bowstring, destruction of foes, agriculture, trade, tending cattle, and serving others for wealth, these are improper for a Brāhmana.[1] An intelligent Brāhmana, leading a domestic mode of life, should duly perform the six Vedic acts. The retirement of a Brāhmana into

---

* The sense seems to be that influenced by past acts every one acts in subsequent lives. If he is a hunter in this life, it is because the influence of many cruel acts of a past life pursues him even in this.—T.

† Men, therefore, have not always balances of good acts to their credit. They are, however, free agents ; the new acts they do determine the character of their next lives.—T.

the woods, after having duly discharged all the duties of the domestic mode of life, is applauded.[2] A Brāhmana should avoid service of the king, wealth obtained by agriculture, sustenance derived from trade, all kinds of crooked behaviour, companionship with any but his wedded wives, and usury.[3] That wretched Brāhmana who falls away from his duties and whose behaviour becomes wicked, becomes, O king, a Cudra. The Brāhmana who weds a Cudra woman, who becomes vile in conduct or a dancer or a village servant or does other improper acts, becomes a Cudra.[4] Whether he recites the Vedas or not, O king, if he does such improper acts, he becomes equal to a Cudra and on occasions of feeding he should be assigned a place amongst Cudras.[5] Such Brāhmanas become equal to Cudras, O king, and should be discarded on occasions of worshipping the gods.*[6] Whatever presents of food dedicated to the gods and the *Pitris* are made unto Brāhmanas that have transgressed all restraints or become impure in behaviour or addicted to wicked pursuits and cruel acts or fallen away from their legitimated duties, confer no merit (on the giver). For this reason, O king, self-restraint and purity and simplicity have been laid down as the duties of a Brāhmana. Besides these, O monarch, all the four modes of life were laid down by Brahman for him.[7] He that is self-restrained, has drunk the *Soma* in sacrifices, is of good behaviour, has compassion for all creatures and patience to bear everything, has no desire of bettering his position by acquisition of wealth, is frank and simple, mild, free from cruelty, and forgiving, is truly a Brāhmana, and not he that is sinful in acts.[8] Men desirous of acquiring virtue, seek the assistance, O king, of Cudras and Vaiçyas and Kshatriyas. If, therefore, the members of these (three) orders do not adopt peaceful duties (so as to be able to assist others in the acquisition of virtue), Vishnu, O son of Pāndu, never extends his grace to them.[9] If Vishnu be not pleased, the happiness of all men in heaven, the merit arising from the duties laid down for the four orders, the declarations of the Vedas, all kinds

* I. e., their services as priests should not be taken.—T.

of sacrifices, and all other religious acts of men, and all the duties in respect of the several modes of life, become lost.[10]

"'Listen now, O son of Pāndu, to those duties that should be observed in the four modes of life. These should be known by the Kshatriya who desires the members of the three (other) orders (in his kingdom) to strictly adhere to the respective duties of those modes.[11] For a Cudra who is desirous of hearing (such scriptures as are not forbidden in his case),* who has accomplished his duties, who has begotten a son, between whom and the superior orders there is not much difference in consequence of the purity of his conduct, all the modes of life have been laid down excepting the observence of universal peacefulness and self-restraint (which are not necessary for him).[12-13] For a Cudra practising all these duties, as also for a Vaiçya, O king, and a Kshatriya, the Bhikshu mode of life has been laid down.[14] Having discharged the duties of his order, and having also served the king, a Vaiçya of venerable years, with the king's permission, may betake himself to another mode of life.[15] Having studied the Vedas duly and the treatises on the duties of kings, O sinless one, having begotten children and performed other acts of a like nature, having quaffed the *Soma*[16] and ruled over and protected all his subjects righteously, O foremost of speakers, having performed the Rājasuya, the horse sacrifice, and other great sacrifices,[17] having invited learnd Brāhmanas for reciting the scriptures and made presents unto them according to their deserts, having obtained victories small or great in battle,[18] having placed on his throne the son of his loins or some Kshatriya of good birth for the protection of his subjects,[19] having worshipped the *Pitris* by performing with due rites the sacrifices laid down for honoring them, having attentively worshipped the gods by performing sacrifices and the *Rishis* by studying the Vedas,[20] the Kshatriya, who in old age desires another mode of life, may, O king, adopt it by leaving that

* Although I adopt Nilakantha's explanation of *sucrushu* here, yet I think that word may be taken here, as elsewhere, to have been used the sense of one doing menial) service.—T.

one which immediately precedes it, and by that means he is sure to obtain (ascetic) success.[21] A Kshatriya, for leading the life of a *Rishi*, O king, may adopt the Bhikshu mode of life; but he should never do so for the sake of enjoying the pleasures of the world. Having left the domestic mode of life, he may adopt the life of mendicancy by begging what would barely support his life.[22] A life of mendicancy is not obligatory upon the three orders (viz., Kshatriyas, Vaiçyas, and Cudras), O giver of profuse presents! Inasmuch, however, as they can adopt it if they choose, this mode of life, therefore, is open to all the four orders.[23] Amongst men, the highest duties are those which are practised by Kshatriyas. The whole world is subject to the might of their arms. All the duties, principal and subordinate, of the three other orders, are dependent (for their observance) upon the duties of the Kshatriya. The Vedas have declared this.[24] Know that as the foot-prints of all other animals are engulfed in those of the elephant, even so all the duties of the other orders, under every circumstance, are engulfed, in those of the Kshatriya.[25] Men conversant with the scriptures say that the duties of the other three orders afford small relief or protection, and produce small rewards. The learned have said that the duties of the Kshatriya afford great relief and produce great rewards.[26] All duties have kingly duties for their foremost. All the orders are protected by them. Every kind of Renunciation occurs in kingly duties, O monarch, and Renunciation has been said to be an eternal virtue and the foremost of all.*[27] If the science of chastisement disappears, the Vedas will disappear. All those scriptures also that inculcate the duties of men become lost. Indeed, if these ancient duties belonging to the Kshatriyas be abandoned, all the duties in respect of all the modes of life, become lost.[28] All kinds of renunciation are seen in kingly duties; all kinds of initiation

* The king is entitled to a sixth of the merits acquired by his subjects. The total merit, therefore, of the king, arising from Renunciation, is very great. Besides, the merit of every kind of renunciation belongs to him in that way.—T.

occur in them ; all kinds of learning are connected with them ; and all kinds of worldly behaviour enter into them.[29] As animals, if slaughtered by the vulgar, become the means of destroying the virtue and the religious acts of the slaughterers, even so all other duties, if deprived of the protection given by kingly duties, become liable to attack and destruction, and men, full of anxiety, disregard the practices laid down for them.' "[30]

SECTION LXIV.

"Bhishma said,—'The duties in respect of all the four modes of life, those of *yatis*, O son of Pāndu, and the customs relating to the conduct of men in general, are all included in kingly duties.[1] All these acts, O chief of the Bharatas, occur in Kshatriya duties. If the functions of royalty are disturbed, all creatures are overtaken by evil.[2] The duties of men are not obvious. They have, again, many outlets.* Led by many (false) systems, their eternal nature is sometimes offended against.[3] Others who pin their faith to the conclusions arrived at by men, without really knowing anything about the truths of duties (as declared in the scriptures), find themselves at last landed and confounded on faiths whose ultimate ends are unknown.[4] The duties imposed upon Kshatriyas are plain, productive of great happiness, evident in respect of their results, free from deceit, and beneficial to the whole world.[5] As the duties of the three orders, as also of Brāhmanas and of those that have retired from the world, O Yudhishthira, have before this been said to be all included within those of that sacred mode of life (called Gārhastya), even so, the whole world, with all good actions, are subject to kingly duties.[6] I have told thee, O monarch, how many brave kings had, in days of old, repaired to that lord of all creatures, *viz.*, the divine and puissant Vishnu of great prowess, for resolving their doubts

---

* Probably, in the sense of there being exceptions and limitations in respect to them.—T.

about the science of chastisement.*[7] Those kings, mindful of the declarations of the scriptures enforced by examples, waited in days of old upon Nārāyana, after having weighed each of their acts against the duties of each of the modes of life.†[8] Those deities, *viz.*, the Sāddhyas, the Vasus, the Açwins, the Rudras, the Viçwas, the Maruts, and the Siddhas, created in days of old by the first of gods, are all observant of Kshatriya duties.[9] I shall now recite to thee a history fraught with the conclusions of both morality and profit. In days of old when the *Dānavas* had multiplied and swept away all barriers and distinctions,‡[10] the powerful Māndhātri, O monarch, became king. That ruler of the Earth, viz., king Māndhātri, performed a great sacrifice from desire of beholding[11] the puissant Nārāyana, that god of gods, without beginning, middle, and end.[12] In that sacrifice he worshipped with humility the great Vishnu. The supreme Lord, assuming the form of Indra, showed himself unto him.[13] Accompanied by many good kings he offered his adorations to that puissant deity.[14] This high discourse took place between that lion among kings and that illustrious god in the form of Indra, touching Vishnu of great effulgence.[15]

"'Indra said,—What is your object, O foremost of virtuous persons, in thus seeking to behold that Ancient and First of gods, *viz.*, Nārāyana, of inconceivable energy, and infinite illusions?[16] Neither myself, nor Brahman himself, can obtain a sight of that god of universal form! I shall grant thee what other objects may be in thy heart, for thou art the foremost of mortals![17] Thy soul abides on peace; thou art devoted to righteousness; thou hast thy senses under control; and thou art possessed of heroism! Thou seekest unflinchingly to do what is agreeable to the gods. For the sake also of thy in-

---

* *I. e.*, for ascertaining whether kingly duties are superior to those laid down for the several modes of life.—T.

† The sense seems to be that having failed, after such comparison, to resolve their doubts, they waited upon Vishnu.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, 'spread confusion on Earth.'—T.

telligence, devotion, and high faith, I shall grant thee whatsoever boons may be desired by thee![18]—

"'Māndhātri said,—I bend my head for gratifying thee. Without doubt, however, I desire to see the first of gods, O divine lord! Casting off all (earthly) desires, I wish to earn religious merit, and to lead the foremost mode of life, that path of the good, highly regarded by all![19] By exercising the high duties of a Kshatriya, I have earned many regions of inexhaustible merit in the other world, and I have also, through those duties, spread my fame. I do not, however, know how to discharge those duties, the foremost in the world, that have flowed from the first of gods![20]—

"'Indra said,—They that are not kings, however observant they may be of their duties, cannot easily attain the highest rewards of duty. Kingly duties first flowed from the original god. Other duties flowed afterwards from his body.[21] Infinite were the other duties, with those of the Vānaprastha mode of life, that were created afterwards. The fruits of all those are exhaustible. Kingly duties, however, are distinguished above them. In them are included all other duties. For this reason Kshatriya duties are said to be the foremost of all.[22] In days of old, Vishnu, by acting according to Kshatriya duties, forcibly suppressed and destroyed his foes and thereby afforded relief to the gods and the *Rishis* of immeasurable energy.[23] If the divine Vishnu of inconceivable energy had not slain all his foes among the *Asuras*, then the Brāhmanas, and (Brahman) the Creator of the worlds, and Kshatriya duties, and the duties that first flowed from the Supreme deity, would all have been destroyed.[24] If that first and foremost of gods had not, by putting forth his prowess, subjugated the Earth with all her *Asuras*, then all the duties of the four orders and all the duties in respect of the four modes of life would all have been destroyed in consequence of the destruction of Brāhmanas.[25] The eternal duties (of men) had all suffered destruction. It was by the exercise of Kshatriya duties that they were revived.*

---

* The Bengal reading *sātwatāh* seems to be an error. The Bombay text has *cāçwatāh*.—T.

In every *Yuga*, the duties of Brāhmanas in respect of attaining to *Brahma* first set in. These, however, are all protected by kingly duties. The latter, on this account, are regarded as the foremost.[26] Casting away life in battle, compassion for all creatures, knowledge of the affairs of the world, protection of men, rescuing them from danger, relieving the distressed and the oppressed,—all these occur among Kshatriya duties practised by kings,[27] Persons that do not regard wholesome restraints and that are governed by lust and wrath, do not commit overt acts of sin from fear of kings. Others that are docile and of righteous behaviour succeed, in consequence of the same influence, in performing all their duties. For this reason Kshatriya duties are regarded to be righteous.[28] Without doubt, all creatures live happily in the world, protected by kings exercising Kshatriya duties like children protected by their parents.[29] Kshatriya duties are the foremost of all duties. Those eternal duties, regarded as the first in the world, embrace the protection of every creature. Themselves eternal, they lead to eternal emancipation.' "[30]

Section LXV.

" 'Indra said,—Kshatriya duties, O king, which are possessed of such energy, which include in their exercise all other duties, and which are the foremost of all duties, should be observed by persons that are, like thee, so high-souled and so employed in seeking the good of the world. If those duties are not properly discharged, all creatures would be overtaken by ruin.[1] The king, possessed of compassion for all creatures should regard these to be the foremost of his duties, *viz.*, reclaiming the land for cultivation and fertilizing it, performance of great sacrifices for cleansing himself, a disregard for begging, and protection of subjects.[2] Abandonment (gift) is said by the sages to be the foremost of virtues. Of all kinds of abandonment, again, that of the body in battle, is the foremost. Thou hast seen with thy own eyes how the rulers of the Earth, ever observant of Kshatriya duties,[3] having duly waited upon their preceptors and acquired great learning, at

last cast off their bodies, engaged in battle with one another. The Kshatriya, desirous of acquiring religious merit, should, after having gone through the Brahmacharyya mode, should lead a life of domesticity which is always meritorious.[4] In adjudicating upon ordinary questions of right (between his subjects), he should be thoroughly impartial. For causing all the orders to be observant of their respective duties, for the protection they afford to all, for the diverse contrivances and means and the prowess[5] and exertion (with which they seek the accomplishment of their objects), Kshatriya duties, which include all other duties within their scope, are said to be the foremost. The other orders are able to observe their respective duties in consequence of kingly duties. For this reason the former are said to be dependent upon the latter in respect of the merit they produce.*[6] Those men who disregard all wholesome restraints and who are too much attached to the pursuit of worldly objects are said to be of the nature of brutes. They are compelled to act with justice by the exercise of kingly duties. Those duties, therefore, are said to be the foremost of all.[7] That course of conduct which has been prescribed for Brāhmanas who follow the three Vedas, and those modes of life that have been laid down for Brāhmanas, should, before everything else, be observed by every Brāhmana. If a Brāhmana acts otherwise, he should be punished like a Cudra.[8] The duties of the four modes of life and the ritual prescribed in the Vedas, O king, should ever be followed by a Brāhmana. Know that he has no other duties.[9] For a Brāhmana acting otherwise, a Kshatriya should not make any arrangment for sustenance. His religious merit grows in consequence of his acts. A Brāhmana, indeed, is like *Dharma's* self.[10] That Brāhmana who is employed in acts that are not laid down for him, deserves no respect. If not engaged in his proper acts, he should not be trusted.[11] These are the duties that appertain to the several orders. Kshatriyas should take care of them so that their observance may be improved. Even these are the duties of Kshatriyas. For these reasons also, kingly

---

* *Yena* is explained by Nilakantha to mean *Kshātra-dharmena*.—T.

duties and no others, are the foremost of all. They are, as I believe, the duties of heroes, and they that are heroes are foremost in practising them![12]—

"'Māndhātri said,—What duties should be performed by the Yavanas, the Kirātas, the Gāndhāras, the Chinas, the Cavaras, the Barbaras, the Cakas, the Tushāras, the Kankas, the Palhavas, the Andhras, the Madrakas, the Paundras, the Pulindas, the Ramathas, the Kāmvojas, the several castes that have sprung up from Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas, the Vaiçyas, and the Cudras, that reside in the dominions of (Arya) kings? What are those duties again to the observance of which kings like ourselves should force those tribes that subsist by robbery?[13-15] I desire to hear all this! O illustrious god, instruct me! O chief of all the deities, thou art the friend of us Kshatriyas![16]—

"'Indra said,—All the robber tribes should serve their mothers and fathers, their preceptors and other seniors, and recluses living in the woods.[17] All the robber tribes should also serve their kings. The duties and rites inculcated in the Vedas should also be followed by them.[18] They should perform sacrifices in honor of the *Pitris*, dig wells, (and dedicate them to universal service), give water to thirsty travellers, give away beds and make other seasonable presents unto Brāhmanas.[19] Abstention from injury, truth, suppression of wrath, supporting Brāhmanas and kinsmen by giving them their dues, maintenance of wives and children, purity, peacefulness,[20] making presents to Brāhmanas at sacrifices of every kind, are duties that should be practised by every person of this class who desires his own prosperity. Such a person should also perform all kinds of *Pāka-yajnas* with costly presents of food and wealth.[21] These and similar duties, O sinless one, were laid down in olden days for persons of this class. All these acts which have been laid down for all others should be done by persons of also the robber class, O king![22]—

"'Māndhātri said,—In the world of men, such wicked men may be seen living in disguise among all the four orders and in all the four modes of life.[23]—

"'Indra said,—Upon the disappearance of kingly duties

and of the science of chastisement, all creatures became exceedingly afflicted, O sinless one, in consequence of the tyranny of kings.[24] After the expiry of this the *Krita* age, a confusion will set in, regarding the different modes of life, and innumerable Bhikshus will appear with sectarial marks of different kinds.[25] Disregarding the *Purānas* and the high truths of religion, men, urged by lust and wrath, will deviate into wrong paths.[26] When sinful men are restrained (from wicked acts) by high-souled persons with the aid of the science of chastisement, then religion, which is superior to everything and eternal, and which is the source of everything good, becomes firmly established.[27] The gifts, and libations, and offerings to the *Pitris*, of the man that disregards the king who is superior to every one, become fruitless.[28] The very gods do not disregard a virtuous king who is truly an eternal god.[29] The divine Lord of all creatures, having created the universe, intended the Kshatriya to rule men regarding their inclinations and disinclinations in respect of duties.[30] I respect and worship that person who, aided by his understanding, watches the course of the duties performed by men. Upon such supervision rest Kshatriya duties!—'[31]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having said these words, the divine and puissant Nārāyana in the form of Indra, accompanied by the Maruts, repaired to his eternal abode of inexhaustible felicity.[32] When, O sinless one, duties as practised by the good had such a course way in days of old, what man of cleansed soul and learning is there that would disregard the Kshatriya?[33] Like blind men lost on the way, creatures acting and abstaining unrighteously meet with destruction.[34] O tiger among men, do thou adhere to that circle (of duties) that was first set agoing and to which the ancients had recourse! I know, O sinless one, that thou art quite competent to do this!'"[35]

SECTION LXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast spoken to me about the four modes of human life. I desire to know more of them. Do thou discourse on them in detail!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'O Yudhishthira of mighty-arms, all the duties that are practised in this world by the righteous are known to thee as well as they are known to me.[2] O foremost of virtuous persons, listen now to me about what thou askest, *viz.*, the merit (that a king acquires) in consequence of the duties practised by others leading other modes of life.*[3] All the merits, O son of Kunti, that belong to persons practising the duties of the four modes of life, attach, O foremost of men, to righteous kings.[4] A king who is not governed by lust and hate, who rules with the aid of the science of chastisement, and who looks equally on all creatures, O Yudhishthira, attains to the object of the Bhaikshya mode of life.†[5] That king who is possessed of knowledge, who makes gifts to deserving persons on proper occasions, who knows how to favour and punish, who conducts himself in all things according to the injunctions of the scriptures, and who has tranquillity of soul, attains to the object of the Gārhastya mode of life.[6] That king who always worships those that are deserving of worship by giving them their due, completely attains, O son of Kunti, to the object of the Bhaikshya mode of life.[7] That king, O Yudhishthira, who rescues from distress, to the best of his power, his kinsmen and relatives and friends, attains to the object of the Vānaprastha mode of life.[8] That king who on every occasion honors those that are foremost among men and those that are foremost among *Yatis*, attains, O son of Kunti,

---

* Nilakantha thinks that *Lingāntargatam* means omniscient. He is for taking this verse to mean—'Listen now to those duties about which thou askest my ommiscient self.' Bhishma having acquired ommiscience through Krishna's boon, refers to it here. The interpretation seems to be very far-fetched.—T.

† That object is *Brahma*.—T.

to the object of the Vānaprastha mode of life.[9] That king, O Pārtha, who daily makes offerings unto the *Pitris*, and large offerings unto all living creatures including men, attains to the object of the same mode of life.[10-11] That king, O tiger among men, who grinds the kingdoms of others for protecting the righteous, attains to the object of the same mode of life.[12] In consequence of the protection of all creatures, as also of the proper protection of his own kingdom, a king earns the merit of as many sacrifices as the number of creatures protected, and accordingly attains to the object of the Sannyāsa mode of life.[13] Study of the Vedas every day, forgiveness, and worship of preceptors, and services rendered to one's own teacher, lead to the attainment of the object of Brahmacharyya.[14] That king who silently recites his *mantras* every day and who always worships the gods according to the ordinance, attains, O tiger among men, to the object of the Gārhastya mode of life.[15] That king who engages in battle with the resolve of protecting his kingdom or meeting with death, attains to the object of the Vānaprastha mode of life.[16] That king, O Bhārata, who always behaves towards all creatures with righteousness and sincerity, attains to the object of the Vānaprastha mode of life.[17] That king who gives unto persons leading a Vānaprastha mode of life and unto Brāhmanas versed in the three Vedas, attains to the object of the Vānaprastha mode of life.[18] That king who displays compassion towards all creatures and abstains entirely from cruelty, O Bhārata, attains to the objects of all the modes of life.[19] That king, O Yudhishthira, who shows compassion to the young and the old, O son of Kunti, under every circumstance, attains to the objects of every mode of life.[20] That king, O perpetuater of Kuru's race, who affords relief to all oppressed people that seek his protection, attains to the object of the Gārhastya mode of life.[21] That king who protects all creatures mobile and immobile, and honors them as they deserve, attains to the object of the Gārhastya mode of life.[22] Bestowing favors and inflicting punishments upon the wives of brothers elder and younger and upon their sons and grandsons, are the domestic duties of a king and these constitute his best penances.[23]

By honoring those that are righteous and deserving of worship and protecting those that have (by their penances) acquired a knowledge of self, a king, O tiger among men, attains to the object of the Gārhastya mode of life.[24] Inviting to his home, O Bhārata, persons that have betaken themselves to that Vānaprastha and other modes of life, and treating them with food, constitute the domestic duties of a king.[25] That king who duly adheres to the duties laid down by the Creator, obtains the blessed merits of all the modes of life.[26] That king, O son of Kunti, in whom no vitue is wanting, that foremost of men, O Yudhishthira, is said by the learned to be a person in the observance of the Vānaprastha and all the other modes of life.[27] That king who duly honors the office or rank which deserves honor, the race or family which deserves honor, and those old men that deserve honor, is said, O Yudhishthira, to live in all the modes of life.*[28] A king, O son of Kunti, by observing the duties of his country and those of his family, acquires O tiger among men, the merits of all the modes of life.[29] That king who at proper seasons bestows upon righteous persons affluence or gifts of value, earns the merits, O king, of all the modes of life.[30] That king, O son of Kunti, who while overcome with danger and fear still keeps his eye on the duties of all men,† earns the merits of all the modes of life.[31] The king obtains a share of the merits earned under his protection by righteous people in his dominions.[32] On the other hand, if kings, O tiger among men, do not protect the righteous people within their dominions, they then take the sins of the latter (of omission and commission).[33] Those men also, O Yudhishthira, who assist kings (in protecting their subjects), become equally entitled, O sinless one, to a share of the merits earned by others (in consequence of that protection).[34] The learned say that the Gārhastya, which we have adopted, is superior to all the other

* *I. e.*, such a man acquires the merits of all the modes of life.—T.

† *Dasadharmagatam* is explained by Nilakantha as 'overcome with fear &c.' 'Keeps his eye on the duties of all men,' *i. e.*, protects all men in the discharge of their duties.—T.

modes of life. The conclusions in respect of it are very clear. It is certainly sacred, O tiger among men.[35] That man who regards all creatures to be like his own self, who never does any harm and has his wrath under control, obtains great happiness both here and hereafter.*[36] A king can easily cross the ocean of the world, with kingly duties as his boat possessed of great speed, urged on by the breeze of gifts, having the scriptures for its tackle and intelligence for the strength of its helmsman, and kept afloat by the power of righteousness.[37] When the principle of desire in his heart is withdrawn from every earthly object, he is then regarded as one resting on his understanding alone. In this state he soon attains to *Brahma*.†[38] Becoming cheerful by meditation and by restraining desire and other passions of the heart, O tiger among men, a king, engaged in discharging the duty of protection, succeeds in obtaining great merit.[39] Do thou, therefore, O Yudhishthira, exert thyself carefully in protecting Brāhmanas of pious deeds and devoted to the study of the Vedas, as also all other men.[40] By exercising the duty of protection only, O Bhārata, the king earns merit that is a hundred times greater than what is earned by recluses in their asylums within the wood.[41]

" 'I have now described, O eldest son of Pāndu, the diverse duties of men. Do thou adhere to kingly duties that are eternal and that have been practised by great men since days of old.[42] If thou employest thyself with concentrated attention to the duty of protecting (thy subjects), O tiger among men, thou mayst then, O son of Pāndu, obtain the merits of all the four modes of life and of all the four orders of men !' "[43]

---

* If this verse has a reference to kings, *nyastadandah* would mean one who punishes without wrath.—T.

† In this and the preceding verse, *Satwa*, without being taken as used for intelligence, may be taken to mean 'the quality of goodness' as well.—T.

Section LXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast said what the duties are of the four modes of life and of the four orders. Tell me now, O grandsire, what are the principal duties of a kingdom.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The (election and) coronation of a king is the first duty of a kingdom. A kingdom in which anarchy prevails becomes weak and is soon afflicted by robbers.*[2] In kingdoms torn by anarchy, righteousness cannot dwell. The inhabitants devour one another. An anarchy is the worst possible of states.[3] The *Çrutis* declare that in crowning a king, it is Indra that is crowned (in the person of the king). A person who is desirous of prosperity should worship the king as he should worship Indra himself.[4] No one should dwell in kingdoms torn by anarchy. Agni does not convey (to the gods) the libations that are poured upon him in kingdoms where anarchy prevails.[5] If a powerful king approaches kingdoms weakened by anarchy, from desire of annexing them to his dominions,[6] the people should go forward and receive the invader with respect. Such conduct would be consistent with wise counsels. There is no evil greater than anarchy.[7] If the powerful invader be inclined to equity, everything will be right. If, on the other hand, he be enraged, he may exterminate all.[8] That cow which cannot be easily milked has to suffer much torture. On the other hand, that cow which is capable of being easily milked, has not to suffer any torture whatever.[9] The wood that bends easily does not require to be heated. The tree that bends easily, has not to suffer any torture (at the hands of the gardener).[10] Guided by these instances, O hero, men should bend before those that are powerful. The man that bends his head to a powerful person really bends his head to Indra.[11] For these reasons, men desirous of prosperity should (elect and) crown some person

---

* *Anidram* is explained by Nilakantha as a kingdom where anarchy prevails, sleeplessness being its certain indication.—T.

as their king. They who live in countries where anarchy prevails cannot enjoy their wealth and wives.[12] During times of anarchy, the sinful man derives great pleasure by robbing the wealth of other people When, however, his (ill-got) wealth is snatched by others, he wishes for a king.[13] It is evident, therefore, that in times of anarchy the very wicked even cannot be happy. The wealth of one is snatched away by two. That of those two is snatched away by many acting together.[14] He who is not a slave is made a slave. Women, again, are forcibly abducted. For these reasons the gods created kings for protecting the people.[15] If there were no king on Earth for wielding the rod of chastisement, the strong would then have preyed on the weak after the manner of fishes in the water.[16] It hath been heard by us that men, in days of old, in consequence of anarchy, met with destruction, devouring one another like stronger fishes devouring the weaker ones in the water. It hath been heard by us that a few amongst them then, assembling together, made certain compacts, saying,[17]—He who becomes harsh in speech, or violent in temper, he who seduces or abducts other people's wives or robs the wealth that belongs to others, should be cast off by us.[18] For inspiring confidence among all classes of the people, they made such a compact and lived for some time.[19] Assembling after some time they proceeded in affliction to the Grandsire, saying,—Without a king, O divine lord, we are going to destruction. Appoint some one as our king![20] All of us shall worship him and he shall protect us!—Thus solicited, the Grandsire asked Manu. Manu, however, did not assent to the proposal.[21]

"'Manu said,—I fear all sinful acts. To govern a kingdom is exceedingly difficult, especially among men who are always false and deceitful in their behaviour.'—'[22]

"Bhishma continued,—'The inhabitants of the Earth then said unto him,—Do not fear! The sins that men commit will touch those only that commit them (without staining thee in the least)! For the increase of thy treasury, we will give thee a fiftieth part of our animals and precious metals and a tenth part of our grain! When our maidens also will become desirous of wedding, we shall, when the question

of down comes up, give thee the most beautiful ones among them[23-24] Those amongst men who will become the foremost of all in the use of weapons and in riding animals and other vehicles, shall proceed behind thee like the deities behind Indra![25] With thy strength enhanced in this way, and becoming invincible and possessed of great prowess, thou wilt be our king and protect us happily like Kuvera protecting the *Yakshas* and the *Rākshasas*![26] A fourth part of the merit which men will earn under thy protection will be thine![27] Strengthened by that merit so easily obtained by thee, do thou protect us, O king, like He of a hundred sacrifices protecting the deities![28] Like the Sun scorching everything with his rays, go out for winning victories. Crush the pride of foes and let righteousness always triumph (in the world)![29]—Thus addressed by those inhabitants of the Earth, Manu, possessed of great energy, proceeded, accompanied by a large force. Of high descent, he seemed then to blaze with prowess.[30] Beholding the might of Manu, like the gods eyeing the might of Indra, the inhabitants of the Earth became inspired with fear and set their hearts upon their respective duties.[31] Manu then made his round through the world, checking everywhere all acts of wickedness and setting all men to their respective duties, like a rain-charged cloud (in its mission of beneficence).[32]

"'Thus, O Yudhishthira, those men on Earth who desire prosperity should first elect and crown a king for the protection of all![33] Like disciples humbling themselves in the presence of preceptors or the gods in the presence of Indra, all men should humble themselves before the king.[34] One that is honored by his own people becomes an object of regard with his foes also, while one that is disregarded by his own is overridden by foes.[35] If the king be overridden by his foes, all his subjects become unhappy. Therefore, umbrellas and vehicles and outward ornaments,[36] and viands, and drinks, and mansions, and seats, and beds, and all utensils for use and show, should be assigned to the king.[37] By such means the king will succeed in discharging his duties of protection (the better) and become irresistible. He should speak with smiles. Ad-

dressed sweetly by others, he should address others sweetly.[28] Grateful (to those that serve him), firmly devoted (to those that deserve his respect), and with passions under control, he should give unto others their due. Looked upon by others, he should look at them mildly, sweetly, and handsomely.'"[29]

SECTION LXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Why, O bull of Bharata's race, have the Brāhmanas said that the king, that ruler of men, is a god?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old story, O Bhārata, of the discourse of Vrihaspati unto Vasumanas.[2] There was a king of Koçala, possessed of great intelligence, named Vasumanas. On a certain occasion he questioned the great sage Vrihaspati of much wisdom.[3] Conversant with the requirements of humility, king Vasumanas, ever devoted to welfare of all, having observed the proper humilities and having circumambulated the great sage and bowed unto him duly, enquired of the virtuous Vrihaspati about the ordinances in respect of a kingdom, moved by the desire of securing the happiness of men.[4-5]

"'Vasumanas said,—By what means do creatures grow and by what are they destroyed? O thou of great wisdom, by adoring whom do they succeed in obtaining eternal happiness?[6]—Thus questioned by the Koçala king of immeasurable energy, Vrihaspati of great wisdom discoursed unto him coolly about the respect that should be paid to kings.[7]

"'Vrihaspati said,—The duties of all men, O thou of great wisdom, may be seen to have their root in the king. It is through fear of the king only that men do not devour one another.[8] It is the king that brings peace on Earth, through due observance of duties, by checking all disregard for wholesome restraints and all kinds of lust. Achieving this, he shines in glory.[9] As, O king, all creatures become unable to see one another and sink in utter darkness if the sun and the moon do not rise,[10] as fishes in shallow water and birds in a spot safe from danger dart and rove as they please

(for a time) and repeatedly attack[11] and grind one another with force and then meet with certain destruction,[12] even so men sink in utter darkness and meet with destruction if they have no king to protect them, like a herd of cattle without the herdsman to look after them.[13] If the king did not exercise the duty of protection, the strong would forcibly appropriate the possessions of the weak, and if the latter refuse to surrender them with ease, their very lives would be taken.[14] Nobody then, with reference to any article in his possession, would be able to say—*This is mine.*—Wives, sons, food, and other kinds of property, would not then exist.[15] Ruin would overtake everything if the king did not exercise the duty of protection. Wicked men would forcibly appropriate the vehicles and robes and ornaments and precious stones and other kinds of property belonging to others, if the king did not protect.[16] In the absence of protection by the king, diverse kinds of weapons would fall upon those that are righteous in their practices, and unrighteousness would be adopted by all.[17] In the absence of royal protection men would disregard or even injure their very mothers and fathers if aged, their very preceptors and guests and seniors[18] If the king did not protect, all persons possessed of wealth would have to encounter death, confinement, and persecution, and the very idea of property would disappear.[19] If the king did not protect, everything would be exterminated prematurely, and every part of the country would be overrun by robbers, and everybody would fall into terrible hell.[20] If the king did not protect, all restrictions about marriage and intercourse (due to consanguinity and other kinds of relationship) would cease; all affairs relating to agriculture and trade would fall into confusion; morality would sink and be lost; and the three Vedas would disappear.[21] Sacrifices, duly completed with presents according to the ordinance, would no longer be performed; no marriage would take place; society itself would cease to exist, if the king did not exercise the duty of protection.[22] The very bulls would not cover cows and milk-jars would not be churned, and men living by rearing kine would meet with destruction, if the king did not exercise the duty of

protection.[23] In the absence of royal protection, all things, inspired with fear and anxiety and becoming senseless and uttering cries of woe, would meet with destruction in no time.[24] No sacrifices extending for a year and completed with presents according to the ordinances would occur if the king did not exercise the duty of peotection.[25] In the absence of royal protection Brāhmanas would never study the four Vedas or undergo austerities or be cleansed by knowledge and rigid vows.[26] In the absence of royal protection, the slayer of a person guilty of the slaughter of a Brāhmana would not obtain any reward; on the other hand, the person guilty of Brāhmanicide would enjoy perfect immunity.[27] In the absence of royal protection, men would snatch other people's wealth from their very hands, and all wholesome barriers would be swept away, and everybody, inspired with fear, would seek safety in flight.[28] In the absence of royal protection, all kinds of injustice would set in; an intermixture of castes would take place; and famine would ravage the kingdom.[29] In consequence again of royal protection, men can everywhere sleep fearlessly and at their ease without shutting their houses and doors with bolts and bars.[30] Nobody would bear the evil speeches of others, far less actual assaults, if the king did not righteously protect the Earth.[31]* If the king exercises the duty of protection, women decked with every ornament may fearlessly wander everywhere without male relatives to attend upon them.[32] Men become righteous and without injuring serve one another because the king exercises the duty of protection.[33] In consequence of royal protection the members of the three orders are enabled to perform high sacrifices and devote themselves to the acquisition of learning with attention.[34] The world depends upon agriculture and trade and is protected by the Vedas. All these again are duly pro-

---

* The sense seems to be that men patiently bear the injuries inflicted upon them by others, without seeking to right themselves by force, because they can invoke the king to punish the offenders. If there were no kings, immediate vengeance for even the slightest injuries would be the universal practice.—T.

tected by the king exercising his principal duty.[25] Since the king, taking a heavy load upon himself, protects his subjects with the aid of a mighty force, it is for this that the people are able to live in happiness.[26] Who is there that will not worship him in whose existence the people exist and in whose destruction the people are destroyed ?[27] That person who does what is agreeable and beneficial to the king and who bears (a share of) the burthen of kingly duties that strike every caste with fear, conquers both this and the other world.[28]* That man who even thinks of doing an injury to the king, without doubt meets with grief here and goes to hell hereafter.[29] No one should disregard the king by taking him for a man, for he is really a high divinity in human form.[40] The king assumes five different forms according to five different occasions. He becomes Agni, Āditya, Mrityu, Vaiçravana, and Yama.[41] When the king, deceived by falsehood, burns with his fierce energy the sinful offenders before him, he is then said to assume the form of Agni.[42] When he observes through his spies the acts of all persons and does what is for the general good, he is then said to assume the form of Āditya.[43] When he destroys in wrath hundreds of wicked men with their sons, grandsons, and relatives, he is then said to assume the form of the Destroyer.[44] When he restrains the wicked by inflicting upon them severe punishments and favours the righteous by bestowing rewards upon them, he is then said to assume the form of Yama.[45] When he gratifies with profuse gifts of wealth those that have rendered him valuable services, and snatches away the wealth and precious stones of those that have offended him,[46] indeed, when he bestows prosperity upon some and takes it away from others, he is then, O king, said to assume the form of Kuvera on Earth.[47] No person who is possessed of cleverness, who is capable of work, who desires the acquisition of virtue, and who is free from malice, should ever spread evil reports about the king. No man, by acting against the king, can ever make himself happy,[48] even if he happens to be the

---

* *I. e.*, becoming foremost and happy here, attains to blessedness hereafter.—T.

king's son or brother or companion or one whom the king regards as his second self. Fire, having the wind for his urger, blazing forth (among articles that are inflamable), may leave a remnant.[49]* The wrath of the king, however, leaves not anything to the person that incurs it. Whatever belongs to the king should be avoided from a distance.[50]† One should turn away from what belongs to the king as he would from death itself. A person by appropriating what belongs to the king speedily meets with destruction like a deer upon touching poison.[51] The man of intelligence should protect as his own what belongs to the king.[52] They that appropriate wealth belonging to the king sink senseless into a deep hell of eternal gloom and infamy.[53] Who is there that will not worship the king who is adored by such terms as delighter of the people, giver of happiness, possesser of prosperity, the foremost of all, healer of injuries, lord of Earth, and protector of men?[54] That man, therefore, who desires his own prosperity, who observes all wholesome restraints, who has his soul under control, who is the master of his passions, who is possessed of intelligence and memory, and who is clever (in the transaction of business), should always be attached to the king.[55] The king should duly honor the minister who is grateful, endued with wisdom, large-hearted, loyal, possessed of mastery over his senses, virtuous, and observant of the dictates of policy.[56] The king should entertain the man who is loyal, grateful, virtuous, possessed of self-control, brave magnanimous in his acts, and competent to accomplish tasks without the assistance of others.[57] Knowledge makes men proud. The king makes men humble. The man who is afflicted by the king can never obtain happiness. On the other hand, the man who is favoured by the king becomes happy.[58] The king is the heart of his people; he is their great refuge; he is their glory; and he is their highest happiness. Those men, O monarch, who are

---

* The Wind is said to be the charioteer of Fire, because whenever there is a conflagration, the Wind, appearing, aids in extending it.—T.

† *I. e.*, no one should covet the possessions of the king.—T.

attached to the king, succeed in conquering both this and the other world.[59] Having governed the Earth with the aid of the qualities of self-restraint, truth, and friendship, and having adored the gods by great sacrifices, the king, earning great glory, obtains an eternal abode in heaven.[60]—That best of monarchs, *viz.*, the heroic Vasumanas, ruler of Koçala, thus instructed by Vrihaspati the son of Angiras, began thenceforth to protect his subjects.' "[61]

Section LXIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What other special duties remain for the king to discharge? How should he protect his kingdom and how subdue his foes?[1] How should he employ his spies? How should he inspire confidence in the four orders of his subjects, his own servants, wives, and sons, O Bhārata?'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O monarch, with attention to the diverse duties of kings,—to those acts which the king or one that is in the position of a king should first do.[3] The king should first subdue himself and then seek to subdue his foes. How should a king who has not been able to conquer his own self be able to conquer his foes?[4] The conquest of these, *viz.*, the aggregate of five, is regarded as the conquest of self. The king that has succeeded in subduing his senses is competent to resist his foes.[5] He should place bodies of foot-soldiers in his forts, frontiers, towns, parks, and pleasure gardens, O delighter of the Kurus,[6] as also in all places where he himself goes, and within his own palace, O tiger among men![7] He should employ as spies men looking like idiots or like those that are blind and deaf. These should all be persons who have been thoroughly examined (in respect of their ability), who are possessed of wisdom, and who are able to endure hunger and thirst.[8] With proper attention, the king should set his spies upon all his counsellors and friends and sons,[9] in his city and the provinces, and in the dominions of the chiefs under him. His spies should be so employed that they may not know one another.[10] He should also, O bull of Bharata's race, know the spies of his foes by himself setting spies

in shops and places of amusement, amid concourses of people, among beggars,[11] in his pleasure gardens and parks, in meetings and conclaves of the learned, in the country, in public places, in places where he holds his own court, and in the houses of the citizens.[12] The king possessed of intelligence may thus ascertain the spies despatched by his foes. If these be known, the king may derive much benefit, O son of Pāndu![13] When the king, by a survey of his own, finds himself weak, he should then, consulting with his counsellers, make peace with a foe that is stronger.[14] The king that is wise should speedily make peace with a foe, even when he knows that he is not weak, if any advantage is to be derived from it.[15] Engaged in protecting his kingdom with righteousness, the king should make peace with those that are possessed of every accomplishment, capable of great exertion, virtuous, and honest.[16] When the king finds himself threatened with danger and about to be overtaken by ruin, he should slay all offenders whom he had overlooked before and all such persons as are pointed at by the people.[17] A king should have nothing to do with that person who can neither benefit nor injure him, or with one who cannot rescue himself from distress.[18] As regards military operations, a king who is confident of his own strength, should, at the head of a large force, cheerfully and with courage give the order to march, without proclaiming his destination, against one destitute of allies and friends or already at war with another and (therefore) heedless (of danger from other quarters), or one weaker than himself, having first made arrangements for the protection of his own capital.*[19-20] A king should not for ever live in subjection to another possessed of greater prowess. Though weak, he should seek to afflict the stronger, and resolved upon this, continue to rule his own.†[21] He should afflict the kingdom of the stronger one by means of weapons, fire, and application

---

* *Kalya* means able or strong; *anākrandam* is 'without allies;' *anantaram* means 'without friends'; and *Vyāsaktam* is 'engaged at war with another.'—T.

† *Tatparah* is explained by Nilakantha as *Karshanaparah*.—T.

of poison. He should also cause dissensions amongst his counsellers and servants.[22] Vrihaspati has said that a king possessed of intelligence should always avoid war for the acquisition of territory. The acquisition of dominion should be made by the three well-known means (of conciliation, gift, and disunion).[23] The king that is possessed of wisdom should be gratified with those acquisitions that are made by means of conciliation, gift, and disunion.[24] The king, O delighter of the Kurus, should take a sixth of the incomes of his subjects as tribute for meeting the expenses of protecting them.[25] He should also forcibly take away wealth, much or little (as the case may require), from the ten kinds of offenders mentioned in the scriptures, for the protection of his subjects.[26] A king should, without doubt, look upon his subjects as his own children. In determining their disputes, however, he should not show compassion.[27] For hearing the complaints and answers of disputants in judicial suits, the king should always appoint persons possessed of wisdom and a knowledge of the affairs of the world, for the state really rests upon a proper administration of justice.[28] The king should set honest and trustworthy men over his mines, salt, grain, ferries, and elephant corps.[29] The king who always wields with propriety the rod of chastisement earns great merit. The proper regulation of chastisement is the high duty of kings and deserves great applause.[30] The king should be conversant with the Vedas and their branches, possessed of wisdom, engaged in penances, charitable, and devoted to the performance of sacrifices.[31] All these qualities should permanently reside in a king. If the king fails to administer justice, he can neither have heaven nor fame.[32] If a king be afflicted by a stronger one, the former, if possessed of intelligence, should seek refuge in a fort.[33] Assembling his friends for consultation, he should devise proper means. Adopting the policy of conciliation and of producing dissensions, he should devise means for waging on war with the assailant.[34] He should set the inhabitants of the woods on the high roads, and, if necessary, cause whole villages to be removed, transplanting all the inhabitants to minor towns or the outskirts of great cities.[35] Repeatedly assuring his wealthy

subjects and the principal officers of the army, he should cause the inhabitants of the open country to take refuge in such forts as are well-protected.[36] He should himself withdraw all stores of grain (from the open country into his forts). If that becomes impossible, he should destroy them completely by fire.[37] He should set men for destroying the crops on the fields of the enemy (by producing disunion among the enemy's subjects). Failing to do this, he should destroy those crops by means of his own troops.[38] He should destroy all the bridges over the rivers in his kingdom. He should bale out the waters of all the tanks in his dominions, or, if incapable of baling them out, cause them to be poisoned.[39] Disregarding the duty of protecting his friends, he should, in view of both present and future circumstances, seek the protection of the ruler of another kingdom who may happen to be the foe of his foe and who may be competent to deal with his foe on the field of battle.*[40] He should destroy all the smaller forts in his kingdom. He should also cut down all the smaller trees excepting those called *Chaitya*.†[41] He should cause the branches of all the larger trees to be lopped off, but he should not touch the very leaves of those called *Chaitya*.[42] He should raise outer ramparts round his forts, with embrasures in them, and fill his trenches with water, driving pointed stakes at their bottom and filling them with crocodiles and sharks.[43] He should keep small openings in his walls for making sallies from his fort, and carefully make arrangements for their defence like that of the greater gates.‡[44] In all his gates he should plant destructive engines. He should plant on the ramparts (of his forts) *Çataghnis* and other weapons.[45] He should store wood for fuel and dig and repair wells for supply of water to the garrison.[46] He should cause all houses made of grass and straw to be plastered over with mud, and if

---

* I follow Nilakantha in reading this verse.—T.

† *Chaitya* trees are those that are regarded holy and unto which worship is offered by the people.—T.

‡ Nilakantha thinks that *ucchāsa* means breath or air. The small doors, he thinks, are directed to be kept for the admission of air.—T.

it is the summer month, he should, from fear of fire, withdraw (into a place of safety) all the stores of grass and straw.[47] He should order all food to be cooked at night. No fire should be ignited during the day, except for the daily *homa*.[48] Particular care should be taken of the fires in smitheries and lying-in rooms. Fires kept within the houses of the inhabitants should be well covered.[49] For the effectual protection of the city, it should be proclaimed that condign punishment will overtake the person who ignites fires by the day time.[50] During such times, all beggars, cartmen, eunuchs, lunatics, and mimes, should, O foremost of men, be driven out of the town, for if they are permitted to remain, evil will follow.[51] In places of public resort, in *tirthās*, in assemblies, and in the houses of the citizens, the king should set competent spies.*[52] The king should cause wide roads to be constructed, and order shops, and places for the distribution of water, to be opened at proper stations.[53] Depots (of diverse necessaries), arsenals, camps and quarters for soldiers, stations for the keep of horses and elephants, encampments of soldiers,[54] trenches, streets and bypaths, houses and gardens for retirement and pleasure, should be so ordered that their sites may not be known to others, O Yudhishthira.[55] A king who is afflicted by a hostile army should gather wealth, and store oil and fat and honey, and clarified butter, and medicines of all kinds,[56] and charcoal and *munja* grass, leaves, arrows, scribes and draftsmen, grass, fuel, poisoned arrows,[57] weapons of every kind such as darts, swords, lances, and others. The king should store such articles.[58] He should especially keep ready drugs of every kind, roots and fruits, the four kinds of physicians,[59] actors and dancers, athletes, and persons capable of assuming diverse disguises. He should decorate his capital and gladden all his subjects.[60] The king should lose no time in bringing under his control such persons as may happen to inspire him with fear, be they his servants or counsellors or citizens or neighbouring monarchs.[61] After any task of the king has been accomplished, he should reward those that have aided in its accomplishment

* The *tirthas* are eighteen in number, such as the council-room, &c.—T.

with wealth and other proportionate gifts and thankful speeches.[62] It has been laid down in the scriptures, O delighter of the Kurus, that a king pays off his debt when he discomfits his foe or slays him outright.*[63] A king should take care of seven things. Listen to me as I recite them. They are his own self, his counsellers, his treasury, his machinery for awarding punishments, his friends,[64] his provinces, and his capital. He should with care protect his kingdom which consists of these seven limbs.[65] That king, O tiger among men, who is conversant with the aggregate of six, the triple aggregate, and the high aggregate of three, succeeds in winning the sovereignty of the whole Earth.[66] Listen, O Yudhishthira, to what has been called the aggregate of six. These are ruling in peace after concluding a treaty (with the foe), marching to battle, producing disunion among the foe,[67] concentration of forces for inspiring the foe with fear, preparedness for war with readiness for peace, and alliances with others.[68] Listen now with attention to what has been called the triple aggregate. They are decrease, maintenance of what is, and growth. The high aggregate of three consists[69] of Virtue, Profit, and Pleasure. These should be pursued judiciously. By the aid of virtue, a king succeeds in ruling the Earth for ever.[70] Touching this matter, Angirasa's son Vrihaspati himself has sung two verses. Blessed be thou, O son of Devaki, it behoveth thee to hear them.[71]—Having discharged all his duties and having protected the Earth, and having also protected his cities, a king attains to great happiness in heaven.[72] What are penances to that king, and what need has he of sacrifices who protects his people properly? Such a king should be regarded as one conversant with every virtue!'—[73]

"Yudhishthira said,—'There is the science of chastisement, there is the king, and there are the subjects. Tell me, O grandsire, what advantage is derived by one of these from the others.'[74]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen to me, O king, as I describe, O Bhārata, the great blessedness of the science of chastisement,

---

* *Pays off his debt*, i. e., discharges his obligations to the subjects.—T.

in sacred words of grave import.[75] The science of chastisement forces all men to the observance of the duties of their respective orders. Duly administered, it forces people to virtuous acts.*[76] When the four orders attend to their respective duties, when all wholesome barriers are maintained, when peace and happiness are made to flow from the science of chastisement, when the people become freed from all fear,[77] and the three higher orders endeavour, according to their respective duties, to maintain harmony, know that men become truly happy at such times![78] Whether it is the king that makes the age, or, it is the age that makes the king, is a question about which thou shouldst not entertain any doubt. The truth is that the king makes the age.[79] When the king rules with a complete and strict reliance on the science of chastisement, the foremost of ages called *Krita* is then said to set in.†[80] Righteousness sets in the *Krita* age. Nothing of unrighteousness exists then. The hearts of men belonging to all the four orders do not take any pleasure in unrighteousness.[81] Without doubt, all men succeed in acquiring the objects they desire and preserving those that have been acquired. All the Vedic rites become productive of merit.[82] All the seasons become delightful and free from evil. The voice, pronunciation, and minds of all men become clear and cheerful.[83] Diseases disappear and all men become long-lived. Wives do not become widows, and no person becomes a miser.[84] The Earth yields crops without being tilled, and herbs and plants grow in luxuriance. Barks, leaves, fruits, and roots, become vigorous and abundant.[85] No unrighteousness is seen. Nothing but righteousness exists. Know these to be the characteristics, O Yudhishthira, of the Krita age![86] When the king relies upon only three of the four parts of the science of chastisement leaving out a fourth, the age called *Tretâ* sets in.[87] A fourth part of unrighteousness follows in the train

---

* The ablative has here the sense of "towards."—T.

† The correct reading seems to be *çreshtham* and not *srishtam*. If the latter reading be preferred, it would mean "the age called *Krita* that comes in Time's course."—T.

of such observance (of the great science) by three-fourths. The Earth yields crops but waits for tillage. The herbs and plants grow (depending upon tillage).[88] When the king observes the great science by only a half, leaving out the other half, then the age that sets in is called *Dwāpara.*[89] A moiety of unrighteousness follows in the train of such observance of the great science by half. The Earth requires tillage and yields crops by half.[90] When the king, abandoning the great science totally, oppresses his subjects by evil means of diverse kinds, the age that sets in is called *Kali.*[91] During the age called Kali, unrighteousness becomes full and nothing of righteousness is seen. The hearts of men, of all the orders, fall away from their respective duties.[92] Cudras live by adopting lives of mendicancy, and Brāhmanas live by serving others. Men fail to acquire the objects they desire and preserve those already acquired. Intermixture of the four orders takes place.[93] Vedic rites fail to produce fruits. All the seasons cease to be delightful and become fraught with evil.[94] The voice, pronunciation, and minds of men lose vigor. Diseases appear, and men die prematurely.[95] Wives become widows, and many cruel men are seen. The clouds do not pour seasonably, and crops fail.[96] All kinds of moisture also fail, when the king does not, with proper attention to the great science protect the subjects.[97] The king is the creator of the *Krita* age, of the *Tretā*, and of the *Dwāpara.* The king is the cause of the fourth age (called *Kali*).[98] If he causes the Krita age, he attains to everlasting heaven. If he causes the Tretā age, he acquires heaven for a period that is limited.[99] If he causes the Dwāpara, he attains to blessedness in heaven according to the measure of his merits. By causing the Kali age, the king incurs a heavy load of sin.[100] Stained by wickedness, he rots in hell for innumerable years, for sinking in the sins of his subjects, he incurs great sin and infamy himself.[101] Keeping the great science in his view, the Kshatriya possessed of learning should strive to acquire those objects which he desires and protect those that have been already acquired.[102] The science of chastisement, which establishes all men in the observance of their respective duties, which is

the groundwork of all wholesome distinctions, and which truly upholds the world and sets it agoing, if properly administered, protects all men like the mother and the father protecting their children.[103] Know, O bull among men, that the very lives of creatures depend upon it. The highest merit a king can acquire is acquaintance with the science of chastisement and administering it properly.[104] Therefore, O thou of Kuru's race, protect thy subjects righteously, with the aid of that great science! By protecting thy subjects and adopting such a conduct, thou wilt surely attain to such blessedness in heaven as is difficult of acquisition.' "[105]

SECTION LXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'By adopting that conduct, O thou that art conversant with every kind of behaviour, can a king succeed in easily acquiring, both here and hereafter, objects productive of happiness in the end?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—"There are these thirtysix virtues (which a king should observe). They are connected with thirtysix others. A virtuous person, by attending to those qualities, can certainly acquire great merit.[2] The king should observe his duties without wrath and malice. He should not abandon kindness. He should have faith. He should acquire wealth without persecution and cruelty. He should pursue pleasure without attachments.[3] He should, with cheerfulness, utter what is agreeable, and be brave without brag. He should be liberal but should not make gifts to persons that are unobserving. He should have prowess without cruelty.[4] He should make alliances, avoiding those that are wicked. He should not act with hostility towards friends. He should never employ persons not devoted to him as his spies and secret agents. He should never accomplish his objects by persecution.[5] He should never disclose his purposes before persons that are wicked. He should speak of the merits of others but never his own. He should take wealth from his subjects but never from those that are good. He should never employ or take the assistance of persons that are wicked.[6] He should never inflict punishment with-

out careful enquiry. He should never disclose his counsels. He should give away, but not to persons that are covetous. He should repose confidence on others but never on those that have injured him.[7] He should not cherish malice. He should protect his wedded wives. He should be pure and should not always be melted by compassion. He should not indulge much in female companionship. He should take food that is wholesome and never that which is otherwise.[8] He should without pride pay regards to those that deserve them, and serve his preceptors and seniors with sincerity. He should worship the gods without pride. He should seek prosperity, but never do anything that brings infamy.[9] He should wait (upon his seniors) with humility. He should be clever in business but should always wait for the proper time. He should comfort men and never send them away with empty speeches. Having favored a person, he should not abandon him.[10] He should never strike in ignorance. Having slain his foe he should never indulge in sorrow. He should display wrath, but should never do so when there is no occasion. He should be mild, but never to those that have offended.[11] Conduct thyself thus while ruling thy kingdom if thou wishest to have prosperity! The king that behaves otherwise incurs great danger.[12] That king who observes all these virtues that I have mentioned, reaps many blessings on Earth and great rewards in heaven.' "[13]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of Cāntanu's son, king Yudhishthira, docile in receiving instruction, possessed of great intelligence, and protected by Bhima and others, then worshipped his grandsire and from that time began to rule according to that teaching."[14]

Section LXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, in what way should the king protect his subjects so as to be able to avoid grief and so as not to offend against righteousness?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall recite, O king, those eternal duties in brief, for if I were to mention them in detail, I would never

attain to their end.[2] Thou shouldst worship those Brāhmanas that are devoted to their duties, possessed of learning, regular in worshipping the gods, observant of high vows, and endued with other accomplishments, when they come to thy abode, and employ them in officiating in thy sacrifices.[3] With thy priest accompanying thee, thou shouldst rise up when they approach, and touch and worship their feet, and do every other act that is necessary.[4] Doing these acts of piety and discharging other acts that are for thy own good, thou shouldst (by presents) cause those Brāhmanas to utter benedictions on thee for the success of thy purposes.[5] Endued with sincerity, and wisdom and intelligence, O Bhārata, thou shouldst adopt truth and avoid lust and wrath.[6] That foolish king who pursues Profit without driving away lust and wrath, fails to acquire virtue and ultimately sacrifices Profit as well.[7] Never employ those that are covetous and foolish in matters connected with Pleasure and Profit. Thou shouldst always employ in all thy acts those that are free from covetousness and possessed of intelligence.[8] Stained with lust and wrath and unskilled in the transaction of business, foolish persons, if vested with authority in matters of Profit, always oppress the people by diverse contrivances productive of mischief.[9] With a sixth part, upon fair calculation, of the yield of the soil, as his tribute, with fines and forfeitures levied upon offenders, with the imposts, according to the scriptures, upon merchants and traders in return for the protection granted to them, a king should fill his treasury.*[10] Realising this just tribute and governing the kingdom properly, the king should, with heedfulness, act in such a way that his subjects may not feel the pressure of want.[11] Men become deeply devoted to that king who discharges the duty of protection properly, who is endued with liberality, who is steady in the observance of righteousness, who is vigilant, and who is free from lust and hate.[12] Never desire to fill thy treasury by acting unrighteously or from covetousness. That king who does not act in accordance with the scriptures fails to earn wealth and religious merit.[13] That

* *I. e.*, these are the true sources of the royal revenue.—T.

king who is mindful only of the means of acquiring wealth, never succeeds in acquiring both religious merit and wealth. The wealth again that he acquires (by such means) is seem to be lavished on unworthy objects.*[14] That avaricious king who through folly oppresses his subjects by levying taxes not sanctioned by the scriptures, is said to wrong his own self.[15] As a person desirous of milk never obtains any by cutting off the udders of a cow, similarly a kingdom afflicted by improper means, never yields any profit to the king.†[16] He who treats a milch cow with tenderness always obtains milk from it. Similarly, the king who rules his kingdom by the aid of proper means, reaps much fruit from it.[17] By protecting a kingdom properly and ruling it by the aid of judicious means, a king, O Yudhishthira, may succeed in always obtaining much wealth.[18] The Earth, well protected by the king, yields crops and gold (to the ruler and the ruled) even like a gratified mother yielding milk to her child.[19] Imitate the example, O king, of the flowerman and not of the charcoal-maker. Becoming such and discharging the duty of protection, thou mayst be able to enjoy the Earth for ever.‡[20] If in attacking an enemy's kingdom thy treasury becomes exhausted, thou mayst refill it by taking wealth from all except Brāhmanas.[21] Let not thy heart be moved, even when thou art in great distress, upon seeing Brāhmanas possessed of wealth. I need not speak then of what thou shouldst do when thou art in affluence.[22] Thou shouldst give them wealth to the best of thy power and as they deserve, and protect them, comforting them on all occasions. By conducting thyself in this way, thou mayst acquire such regions hereafter as are most difficult of acquisition.[23] Adopting such virtuous behaviour, do

---

* The meaning is that if a king attends only to the acquisition of wealth, he may succeed in acquiring wealth, but he will never succeed in earning religious merit.—T.

† Literally, 'never flourishes.'—T.

‡ The charcoal-maker uproots trees and plants, and burns them for producing his stock-in-trade. The flowerman, on the other hand, waters his trees and plants, and gathers only their produce.—T.

thou protect thy subjects. Thou mayst then obtain, O delighter of the Kurus, fame that is everlasting, high, and pure.[24] Protect thy subjects righteously, O son of Pāndu, for no regret or pain will then be thine.[25] Protection of the subject is the highest duty of the king, since compassion to all creatures and protecting them from injury has been said to be the highest merit.[26] Persons conversant with duties regard that to be the highest merit of the king, when, engaged in protecting all creatures, the king displays compassion towards them.[27] The sin a king incurs by neglecting for a single day to protect his subjects from fear is such that he does not attain to the end of his sufferings (for it) in hell till after a thousand years.[28] The merit a king earns by protecting his subjects righteously for a single day is such that he enjoys its reward in heaven for ten thousand years.[29] All those regions that are acquired by persons leading duly the Gārhastya, the Brahmacharyya, and the Vānaprastha modes of life, are soon acquired by a king by only protecting his subjects righteously.[30] Do thou, O son of Kunti, observe with great care this duty (of protection). Thou shalt then obtain the reward of righteousness and no grief and pain will be thine. Thou shalt, O son of Pāndu, obtain great prosperity in heaven.[31] Merit like this is impossible to be acquired by persons that are not kings. A person, therefore, who is a king, and no other, can succeed in earning such reward of virtue.[32] Possessed of intelligence, thou hast obtained a kingdom. Do thou protect thy subjects righteously. Gratify Indra with offerings of *Soma* and thy friends and well-wishers with the objects of their wishes!'"[33]

SECTION LXXII.

"Bhishma said,—'That person, O king, who would protect the good and punish the wicked, should be appointed as his priest by the king.[1] In this connection is cited the old story about the discourse between Pururavas the son of Aila and Mātariçwan.[2]

"'Pururavas said,—Whence has the Brāhmana sprang and

whence the three other orders? For what reason also has the Brāhmana become the foremost? It behoveth thee to tell me all this![3]—

"'Mātariçwan answered,—The Brāhmana, O best of kings, has sprung from the mouth of Brahman. The Kshatriya has sprung from his two arms, and the Vaiçya from his two thighs.[4] For waiting upon these three orders, O ruler of men, a fourth order, *viz.*, the Cudra, sprung into life, being created from the feet (of Brahman).[5] Originally created thus, the Brāhmana takes birth on Earth as the lord of all creatures, his duty being the keep of the Vedas and the other scriptures.*[6] Then, for ruling the Earth and wielding the rod of chastisement and protecting all creatures, the second order, *viz.*, the Kshatriya was created.[7] The Vaiçya was created for supporting the two other orders and himself by cultivation and trade, and, finally, it was ordained by Brahman that the Cudra should serve the three orders as a menial.[8]—

"'Pururavas said,—Tell me truly, O god of Wind, to whom does this Earth righteously belong! Does it belong to the Brāhmana or to the Kshatriya?[9]—

"'The god of Wind said,—Everything that exists in the universe belongs to the Brāhmana in consequence of his birth and precedence. Persons conversant with morality say this.[10] What the Brāhmana eats is his own. The place he inhabits is his own. What he gives away is his own. He deserves the veneration of all the (other) orders. He is the first-born and the foremost.[11] As a woman, in the absence of her husband, accepts his younger brother for him, even so the Earth, in consequence of the refusal of the Brāhmana, has accepted his next-born, *viz.*, the Kshatriya, for her lord. This is the first rule. In times, however, of distress, there is an exception to this.[12] If thou seekest to discharge the duties of thy order and wishest to obtain the highest place in heaven, then give unto the Brāhmana all the land thou mayst succeed in conquering,[13] unto him that is possessed of learning and virtuous conduct, that is conversant with duties and observant of

* *Dharmakosha* literally means the 'repositary of all duties.'—T.

penances, that is satisfied with the duties of his order and not covetous of wealth.[14] The well-born Brāhmana, possessed of wisdom and humility guides the king in every matter by his own great intelligence.[15] By means of sound counsels he causes the king to earn prosperity. The Brāhmana points out to the king the duties the latter is to observe.[16] As long as a wise king, observant of the duties of his order, and bereft of pride, is desirous of listening to the instructions of the Brāhmana, so long is he honored and so long does he enjoy fame. The priest of the king, therefore, has a share in the merit that the king acquires.[17] When the king behaves himself thus, all his subjects, relying upon him, become virtuous in their behaviour, attentive to their duties, and freed from every fear.[18] The king obtains a fourth part of those righteous acts which his subjects, properly protected by him, perform in his kingdom.[19] The gods, men, *Pitris*, *Gandharvas*, *Uragas*, and *Rākshasas*, all depend upon sacrifices for their support. In a country destitute of a king, there can be no sacrifice.[20] The gods and the *Pitris* subsist on the offerings made in sacrifices. Sacrifice, however, depends upon the king.[21] In the season of summer, men desire comfort from the shade of trees, cool water, and cool breezes. In the season of winter they derive comfort from fire, warm clothes, and the sun.[22] The heart of man may find pleasure in sound, touch, taste, vision, and scent. The man, however, who is inspired with fear, finds no pleasure in all these things.[23] That person who dispells the fears of men obtains great merit. There is no gift so valuable in the three worlds as the gift of life.[24] The king is Indra. The king is Yama. The king is Dharma. The king assumes different forms. The king sustains and supports everything.—' "[25]

Section LXXIII.

"Bhishma said,—'The king, with an eye to both religious merit and profit whose considerations are often very intricate, should, without delay, appoint a priest possessed of learning and intimate acquaintance with the Vedas and the (other)

scriptures.[1] Those kings that have priests possessed of virtuous souls and conversant with policy, and that are themselves possessed of such attributes, enjoy prosperity in every direction.[2] Both the priest and the king should have such qualities as are worthy of regard and should be observant of vows and penances. They would then succeed in supporting and agrandising the subjects and the deities, the *Pitris* and the children.*[3] It is laid down that they should be possessed of similar hearts and should be each other's friends. In consequence of such friendship between Brāhmana and Kshatriya, the subjects become happy.[4] If they do not regard each other, destruction would overtake the people. The Brāhmana and the Kshatriya are said to be the progenitors of all men.[5] In this connection is cited the old story about the discourse between Aila's son and Kaçyapa. Listen to it, O Yudhishthira![6]

"'Aila's son said,—When the Brāhmana forsakes the Kshatriya or the Kshatriya forsakes the Brāhmana, who amongst them should be regarded superior and upon whom do the other orders rely and maintain themselves?[7]—

"'Kaçyapa said,—Ruin overtakes the kingdom of the Kshatriya when the Brāhmana and Kshatriya contend with each other. Robbers infest that kingdom in which confusion prevails, and all good men regard the ruler to be a *Mleccha*.[8] Their oxen do not thrive, nor their children. Their pots (of milk) are not churned, and no sacrifices are performed there. The children do not study the Vedas in kingdoms where Brāhmanas abandon Kshatriyas.[9] In their houses wealth does not increase. Their children do not become good and do not study the scriptures and perform sacrifices. Those Kshatriyas that abandon Brāhmanas become impure in blood and assume the nature of robbers.[10] The Brāhmana and the Kshatriya are connected with each other naturally, and each protects the other. The Kshatriya is the cause of the Brāhmana's growth and the Brāhmana is the cause of the Kshatriya's growth.[11] When

---

* *Children* is a pleonasm for *subjects*, suggested by the word *Pitris* to which it is antithetical.—T.

each helps the other, both attain to great prosperity. If their friendship, existing from days of old, breaks, a confusion sets over everything.[12] No person desirous of crossing the ocean of life succeeds in his task even as a small boat floating on the bosom of the sea. The four orders of men become confounded and destruction overtakes all.[13] If the Brāhmana who is like a tree is protected, it then showers gold and honey. If, on the other hand, it is not protected, it then showers tears and sin.[14] When Brāhmanas fall away from the Vedas and (in the absence of a Kshatriya ruler) seek protection from the scriptures, then Indra does not pour rain seasonably and diverse kinds of calamities ceaselessly afflict the kingdom.[15] When a sinful wretch having slain a woman or a Brāhmana does not incur obloquy in assemblies of fellowmen and has not to stand in fear of the king, then danger threatens the Kshatriya ruler.[16] In consequence of the sins perpetrated by sinful men, the god Rudra appears in the kingdom. Indeed, the sinful by their sins bring upon them that god of vengeance. He then destroys all, the honest and the wicked alike (without making any distinction).[17]—

"'Aila said,—Whence does Rudra spring? What also is his form? Creatures are seen to be destroyed by creatures. Tell me all this, O Kaçyapa! Whence does the god Rudra spring?[18]—

"'Kaçyapa said,—Rudra exists in the hearts of men. He destroys the bodies themselves in which he dwells as also the bodies of others. Rudra has been said to be like atmospheric visitations and his form is like that of the wind-gods.[19]—

"'Aila said,—The Wind does not, by blowing, visibly destroy men on *all* occasions, nor does the deity of the clouds do so by pouring rain. On the other hand, it is seen among men that they lose their senses and are slain through lust and malice.[20]—

"'Kaçyapa said,—Fire, blazing forth in one house, burneth a whole quarter or an entire village. Similarly, this deity stupifies the senses of some one and then that stupefaction touches all, the honest and the wicked alike, without any distinction.[21]—

"'Aila said,—If chastisement touches all, *viz.*, the honest and the wicked alike, in consequence of the sins perpetrated by the sinful, why should men, in that case, do acts that are good? Indeed, why should they abstain from wicked acts?[22]—

"'Kaçyapa said,—By avoiding all connection with the sinful, one becomes pure and stainless. In consequence, however, of their being mixed with the sinful, the sinless are overtaken by chastisement. Wood that is wet, if mixed with wood that is dry, is consumed by fire in consequence of such co-existence. The sinless, therefore, should never mingle with the sinful.—[23]

"'Aila said,—The Earth holds the honest and the wicked. The sun warms the honest and the wicked. The wind blows equally for them. Water cleanses them equally!—[24]

"'Kaçyapa said,—Such, indeed, is the course of this world, O prince! It is not so, however, hereafter. In the other world, there is great difference of condition between the person that acts righteously and him that acts sinfully.[25] The regions that meritorious men acquire are full of honey and possessed of the splendour of gold or of a fire upon which clarified butter has been poured. Those regions also are likened to the navel of ambrosia. The meritorious person enjoys great felicity there. Death, decrepitude, and sorrow, are not there.[26] The region for the sinful is hell. Darkness and ceaseless pain are there, and it is full of sorrow. Sinking in infamy, the man of sinful deeds indulges in regret there for many years.[27] In consequence of a disunion between Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas, unbearable griefs afflict the people. Knowing this, a king should appoint a (Brāhmana) priest possessed of experience and wide knowledge.[28] A king should first install the priest in his office, and then cause his own coronation. This has been laid down in the ordinance. The ordinances declare that the Brāhmana is the foremost of all creatures. Men acquainted with the Vedas say that the Brāhmana was created first.[29] In consequence of the precedence of his birth, all things that are good in this world are vested in him. The rightful owner of all the best things that have flowed from the Creator, the Brāhmana is also, for such precedence, worthy of the respect and the worship of all creatures.[30] A king, however,

powerful, should, according to the dictates of the scriptures, bestow upon the Brāhmana whatever is best and distinguished above others.[31] The Brāhmana contributes to the aggrandisement of the Kshatriya, and the Kshatriya to the aggrandisement of the Brāhmana. Brāhmanas should, therefore, be especially and always worshipped by kings.—' "[32]

SECTION LXXIV.

"Bhishma said,—'It is said that the preservation and growth of the kingdom rest upon the king. The preservation and growth of the king rests upon the king's priest.[1] That kingdom enjoys true felicity where the invisible fears of the subjects are dispelled by the Brāhmana and all visible fears are dispelled by the king with the might of his arms.[2] In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse between king Muchukunda and Vaiçravana.[3] King Muchukunda, having subjugated the whole Earth, repaired to the lord of Alakā for testing his strength.[4] King Vaiçravana created (by ascetic power) a large force of *Rākshasas*. These grinded the forces led by Muchukunda.[5] Beholding the slaughter of his army, king Muchukunda, O chastiser of foes, began to rebuke his own learned priest (Vaçishtha).[6] Thereupon that foremost of righteous persons, *viz.*, Vaçishtha, underwent very severe penances and, causing those *Rākshasas* to be slain, ascertained the true course upon which Muchukunda was bent.[7] When king Vaiçravana's troops were being slaughtered, he showed himself unto Muchukunda and said these words.

" 'The Lord of treasures said,—Many kings of old, more powerful than thou art, aided by their priests, had never approached me thus.[9] All of them were skilled in weapons and all of them were possessed of might. Regarding me as the grantor of weal and woe, they approached me for offering worship.[10] In truth, if thou hast might of arms, it behoves thee to display it. Why dost thou act so proudly, aided by Brāhmana might?[11]—Enraged at these words, Muchukunda, without pride and fear, said unto the Lord of treasures these words fraught with reason and justice.[12]—The Self-born Brah-

man created the Brāhmana and the Kshatriya. They have a common origin. If they apply their forces separately, they would never be able to uphold the world.[13] The power of penances and *mantras* was bestowed upon Brāhmanas; the might of arm and of weapons was bestowed upon Kshatriyas.[14] Aggrandised by both kinds of might, kings should protect their subjects. I am acting in that way. Why dost thou, O lord of Alakā, rebuke me then?[15]—Thus addressed, Vaiçravana said unto Muchukunda and his priest,—I never, without being ordered (by the Self-create) bestow sovereignty upon any one. Nor do I ever, without being ordered, take it away from any one. Know this, O king![16] Do thou rule then the whole Earth without bounds!—Thus addressed, king Muchukunda replied, saying,[17]—I do not, O king, desire to enjoy sovereignty obtained in gift from thee! I desire to enjoy sovereignty obtained by the might of my own arms!'[18]—

"Bhishma continued,—'At these words of Muchukunda, Vaiçravana, seeing the king fearless in the observance of Kshatriya duties, became filled with surprise.[19] King Muchukunda, devoted to Kshatriya duties, continued to rule the entire Earth obtained by the might of his own arms.[20] That virtuous king who rules his kingdom, aided by and yielding precedence to the Brāhmana, succeeds in subjugating the whole Earth and achieving great fame.[21] The Brāhmana should every day perform his religious rites and the Kshatriya should always be armed with weapons. Between them they are the rightful owners of everything in the universe.' "[22]

Section LXXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, that conduct by which a king succeeds in aggrandising his subjects and earning regions of felicity in the other world.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The king should be liberal and should perform sacrifices, O Bhārata! He should be observant of vows and penances, and should be devoted to the duty of protecting his subjects.[2] Righteously protecting all his subjects, he should honor all righteous persons by standing up

when they come and by making gifts unto them.[3] If the king regards it, righteousness becomes regarded everywhere. Whatever acts and things are liked by the king are liked by his subjects.[4] Unto his foes the king should always be like Death, with the rod of chastisement uplifted in his hands. He should exterminate robbers everywhere in his kingdom and never pardon any one from caprice.[5] The king, O Bhārata, earns a fourth part of the merit that his subjects earn under his protection.[6] By only protecting his subects the king acquires a fourth part of the merit that his subjects acquire by study, by gifts, by pouring libations, and by worshipping the gods,[7] The king acquires a fourth part of also the sin that his subjects commit in consequence of any distress in tho kingdom arising from the king's neglect in discharging the duty of protection.[8] Some say that the king earns a moiety, and some say the full measure, of whatever sin is caused by his becoming cruel and untruthful in speech.[9] Listen now to the means by which the king may be cleansed of such sins. If the king fails to restore to a subject the wealth that has been stolen away by thieves, he should then compensate the injured man from his own treasury, or, in case of inability, with wealth obtained from his dependents.[10] All the orders should protect the wealth of a Brāhmana even as they should the Brāhmana's body or life. The person that offends against Brāhmanas should be exiled from the kingdom.[11] Everything is protected by protecting the Brāhmana's wealth. Through the grace of the Brāhmana, which may thus be secured, the king becomes crowned with success.[12] Men seek the protection of a competent king like creatures seeking relief from the clouds or birds seeking refuge in a large tree.[13] A cruel and covetous king, with lustful soul and ever seeking the gratification of his desires never succeeds in protecting his subjects.'[14]

"Yudhishthira said,—'I do not, for a moment, desire the happiness that sovereignty bestows or sovereigny itself for its own seek. I desire it, however, for the sake of the merit one may acquire from it. It seems to me that no merit is attached to it.[15] No need for sovereignty then by which no merit can be acquired! I shall, therefore, retire into the woods from

desire of earning merit. Laying aside the rod of chastisement, and subduing my senses, I shall go to the woods which are sacred and seek to acquire the merit of righteousness by becoming an ascetic subsisting upon fruits and roots.'[1-17]

"Bhishma said,—'I know, O Yudhishthira, what the nature of thy heart is, and how inoffensive is thy disposition. Thou wilt not, however, by inoffensiveness alone, succeed in ruling thy kingdom.[18] Thy heart is inclined to mildness, thou art compassionate, and thou art exceedingly righteous. Thou art without energy, and thou art virtuous and full of mercy. People, therefore, do not regard thee much.[19] Follow the conduct of thy sire and grandsire. Kings should never adopt that conduct which thou desirest to adopt.[20] Never be touched by such anxiety (after doing thy duty), and never adopt such inoffensiveness of conduct. By becoming so, thou wouldst not succeed in earning that merit of righteousness which arises from protecting subjects.[21] The behaviour thou wishest to adopt, impelled by thy own intelligence and wisdom, is not consistent with those blessings which thy sire Pāndu or thy mother Kunti used to solicit for thee.[22] Thy sire always solicited for thee courage, might, and truth. Kunti always solicited for thee high-mindedness and liberality.[23] The offerings with *Swahā* and *Swadhā* in *Çrāddhas* and sacrifices are always asked from children by the *Pitris* and the deities.[24] Whether gifts and study and sacrifices and the protection of subjects be meritorious or sinful, thou hast been born to practise and perform them.[25] The fame, O son of Kunti, is never tarnished of men that even fail in bearing the burthens which are placed on them and unto which they are yoked in life.[26] Even a horse, if properly trained, succeeds in bearing, without falling down, a burthen. (What need then be said of thee that art a human being ?) One incurs no censure if only his acts and words be proper, for success is said to depend upon acts (and words).[27] No person, be he a man virtuously following the domestic mode of life, or be he a king, or be he a *Brahmachārin*, has ever succeeded in conducting himself without tripping.[2] It is better to do an act which is good and in which there is small merit than to totally abstain from all

acts, for total abstention from acts is very sinful.[29] When a high-born and righteous person succeeds in obtaining affluence, the king then succeeds in obtaining prosperity in all his affairs.[30] A virtuous king, having obtained a kingdom, should seek to subdue some by gifts, some by force, and some by sweet words.[31] There is no one more virtuous than he upon whom high-born and learned persons rely from fear of losing their means of sustenance and depending upon whom they live in contentment.'[32]

"Yudhishthira said,—'What acts, O sire, are conducive to heaven? What is the nature of the great felicity that is derived from them? What also is the high prosperity that may be obtained thence? Tell me all this, if thou knowest!'[33]

"Bhishma said,—'That man from whom a person afflicted with fear obtains relief even for a moment, is the most worthy of heaven amongst us. This that I tell thee is very true.[34] Be thou cheerfully the king of the Kurus, O foremost one of Kuru's race, acquire heaven, protect the good, and slay the wicked![35] Let thy friends, together with all honest men, derive their support from thee, like all creatures from the deity of the clouds and like birds from a large tree with delicious fruits.[36] Men seek the protection of that person who is dignified, courageous, capable of smiting, compassionate, with senses under control, affectionate towards all, and equitable, and just.'"[37]

Section LXXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, amongst Brāhmanas some are engaged in the duties proper to their order, while others are engaged in other duties. Tell me the difference between these two classes!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Those Brāhmanas, O king, that are possessed of learning and beneficent features, and that look upon all creatures with an equal eye, are said to be equal to *Brahma*.[2] They that are conversant with the *Richs*, the *Yajus*, and the *Sāmans*, and who are devoted to the practices of their order, are, O king, equal to the very gods.[3] Those,

however, amongst them that are not well-born and not devoted to the duties of their order, and are, besides, wedded to evil practices, are like Cudras.[4] A virtuous king should realise tribute from and impress without pay into the public service those Brāhmanas that are not possessed of Vedic lore and that have not their own fires to worship.[5] They that are employed in courts of justice for summoning people, they that perform worship for others for a fee, they that perform the sacrifices of Vaiçyas and Cudras, they that officiate in sacrifices on behalf of a whole village, and they that make voyages on the ocean,—these five are regarded as *Chandālas* among Brāhmanas.*[6] They amongst them that become *Ritwijas*, *Purohitas*, counsellers, envoys, and messengers, become, O king, equal to Kshatriyas.†[7] They amongst them that ride horses or elephants or cars or become foot-soldiers, become, O king, equal to Vaiçyas.[8] If the king's treasury is not full, he may realise tribute from these. In realising tribute, the king, however, should except those Brāhmanas that are (for their conduct) equal to the gods or *Brahma*.[9] The Vedas say that the king is the lord of the wealth belonging to all the orders except Brāhmanas. He can take the wealth of those Brāhmanas also that have fallen away from their legitimate duties.[10] The king should never be indifferent towards those Brāhmanas that are not observant of their duties. For the sake of making his people virtuous, he should punish and separate them from their betters.[11] That king, O monarch, in whose territories a Brāhmana becomes a thief, is regarded by the learned to be the author of that misdeed.[12] Persons conversant with the Vedas declare that if a Brāhmana versed in the Vedas and observant of vows becomes, through want of sustenance, a thief, it is the duty of the king to provide for his support.[13] If, after provision has been made for his support, he does not

---

* *Mahāpathika* is believed to mean a person making a voyage by the sea or the ocean. The literal meaning seems to be 'a person making a long or distant voyage'—T.

† A *Ritwij* is a priest employed on a special occasion. A *Purohita* is one who always acts as a priest.—T.

abstain from thefts, he should then, O scorcher of foes, be banished from the kingdom with all his kinsmen.' "[14]

Section LXXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Of whose wealth, O bull of Bharata' race, is the king regarded to be the lord? And what conduct also should the king adopt? Discourse to me on this, O grandsire!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The Vedas declare that the king is the lord of the wealth that belongs to all persons except Brāhmanas, as also of those Brāhmanas that are not observant of their proper duties.[2] The king should not spare those Brāhmanas that are not observant of their duties. The righteous say that this is the ancient custom of kings.[3] That king, O monarch, in whose dominion a Brāhmana becomes a thief, is regarded to be the author of that misdeed. The king it is that becomes sinful on that account.[4] In consequence of such a circumstance, kings regard themselves to be worthy of reproach. All righteous kings, therefore, provide Brāhmanas with the means of support.[5] In this connection is cited the old narrative of the speech made by the king of the Kaikeyas unto a *Rākshasa* while the latter was about to abduct him away.[6] Of rigid vows and possessed of Vedic lore, the king of the Kaikeyas, O monarch, while living in the woods, was forcibly seized on a certain occasion by a *Rākshasa*.[7]

"'The king said,—There is no thief in my territories, nor any person of wicked behaviour, nor any one that drinks alcohol. There is no one in my dominions who has not his sacred fire or who does not perform sacrifices. How then hast thou been able to possess my heart?[8] There is no Brāhmana in my dominions who is not possessed of learning or who is not observant of vows or who has not drunk *Soma*. There is no one who has not his sacred fire or who does not perform sacrifices. How then hast thou been able to possess my soul?[9] In my dominions no sacrifice has been performed without completing it by *Dakshinā*. No one in my dominions studies the Vedas who is not observant of vows. How then hast thou

been able to possess my soul?[10] The Brāhmanas in my kingdom teach, study, sacrifice, officiate at others' sacrifices, give, and receive gifts. All of them are observant of those six acts.[11] The Brāhmanas in my kingdom are all devoted to the performance of the duties of their order. Worshipped and provided for, they are mild, and truthful in speech. How then hast thou been able to possess my soul?[12] The Kshatriyas in my kingdom are all devoted to the duties of their order. They never beg but give, and are conversant with truth and virtue. They never teach but study, and perform sacrifices but never officiate at the sacrifices of others. They protect the Brāhmanas and never fly from battle. How then hast thou been able to possess my soul?[13-14] The Vaiçyas in my dominion are all observant of the duties of their order. With simplicity and without deceit they derive their sustenance from agriculture, cattle-keeping, and trade. They are all heedful, observant of religious rites and excellent vows, and truthful in speech.[15] They give to guests what is their due, are self-restrained, and pure, and attached to their relatives and kinsmen. How then hast thou been able to possess my heart?[16] The Cudras in my kingdom, observant of the duties of their order, humbly and duly serve and wait upon the other three orders without entertaining any malice towards them. How then hast thou been able to possess my heart?[17] I support the helpless and the old, the weak, the ill, and women (without guardians), by supplying them with all their necessaries. How then hast thou been able to possess my heart.[18] I am never an exterminater of the special customs of families and of countries existing duly from days of old. How then hast thou been able to possess my heart?[19] The ascetics in my kingdom are protected and worshipped. They are always honored and entertained with food. How then hast thou been able to possess my heart?[20] I never eat without feeding others from my dishes. I never go to other people's wives. I never sport or recreate alone. How then hast thou been able to possess my heart?[21] No one in my kingdom who is not a *Brahmachārin* begs his food, and no one who leads the Bikshu mode of life desires to be a *Brah-*

machārin. No one who is not a *Ritwij* pours libations (of clarified butter) upon the sacrificial fire. How then hast thou been able to possess my soul?[22] I never disregard the learned or the old or those that are engaged in penances. When the whole population sleeps, I keep myself awake (for watching and protecting). How then hast thou been able to possess my heart?[23] My priest possesses knowledge of self. He is given to penances, and is conversnt with all duties. Possessed of great intelligence, he has the fullest power over my kingdom.[24] By gifts I desire to acquire knowledge, and by truth and the protection of Brāhmanas, I desire to attain regions of blessedness in heaven. By service I attach myself to my preceptors. I have no fear of *Rākshasas!*[25] In my kingdom there are no widows, no wicked Brāhmanas, no Brāhmana that has fallen away from his duties, no decietful person, no thief, no Brāhmana that officiates in the sacrifices of people for whom he should never officiate, and no perpetrator of sinful deeds. I have no fear of *Rākshasas.*[26] There is no space in my body, of even two fingers' breadth, that does not bear the scar of a weapon-wound. I always fight for the sake of righteousness. How hast thou been able to possess my heart?[27] The people of my kingdom always invoke blessings upon me in order that I may always be able to protect kine and Brāhmanas and perform sacrifices. How then hast thou been able to possess me?[28]—

"The *Rākshasa* said,—Since thou art observant of thy duties under all circumstances, therefore, O king of the Kaikeyas, go back to thy abode! Blessed be thou, I leave thee![29] They, O king of the Kaikeyas, who protect kine and Brāhmanas and all their subjects, have nothing to fear from *Rākshasas*, and much less from sinful persons.[30] Those kings that give the lead to Brāhmanas and whose might depends upon that of the Brāhmanas, and whose subjects discharge the duties of hospitality, always succeed in acquiring heaven![31]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Thou shouldst, therefore, protect the Brāhmanas. Protected by thee, they will protect thee in return. Their blessings, O king, would surely descend upon kings of righteous behavior.[32] For the sake of righteousness,

those Brāhmanas that are not observant of the duties of their order should be chastised and separated (into a distinct class) from their betters.[33] A king who conducts himself in this way towards the people of his city and the provinces, obtains prosperity here and residence in heaven with Indra.' "[34]

SECTION LXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'It has been said that in seasons of distress a Brāhmana may support himself by the practice of Kshatriya duties. Can he, however, at any time, support himself by the practice of the duties laid down for the Vaiçyas ?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'When a Brāhmana loses his means of support and falls into distress, he may certainly betake himself to the practices of a Vaiçya and derive his support by agriculture and keeping cattle, if, of course, he is incompetent for Kshatriya duties.'[2]

"Yudhishthira said,—'If a Brāhmana, O bull of Bharata's race, betakes himself to the duties of a Vaiçya, what articles may he sell without losing his prospect of heaven ?'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Wines, salt, sessamum seeds, animals having manes, bulls, honey, meat, and cooked food, O Yudhishthira,[4] under all circumstances, a Brāhmana should avoid. A Brāhmana, by selling these, would sink into hell.[5] A Brāhmana, by selling a goat, incurs the sin of selling the god of fire; by selling a sheep, the sin of selling the god of water; by selling a horse, the sin of selling the god of the sun; by selling cooked food, the sin of selling land; and by selling a cow, the sin of selling Sacrifice and the *Soma* juice. These, therefore, should not be sold (by a Brāhmana).[6] They that are good do not applaud the purchase of uncooked food by giving cooked food in exchange. Uncooked food, however, may be given for procuring cooked food, O Bhārata![7]*—We will eat this cooked food of thine. Thou mayst cook these

---

* *Ama* is raw food, such as paddy or uncooked rice, or fruits, &c.—T.

raw things (that we give in exchange).—In a compact of this kind there is no sin.[8] Listen, O Yudhishthira, I shall speak to thee of the eternal practice, existing from days of old, of persons conducting themselves according to approved usages![9]—I give thee this. Give me this other thing in return!—Exchange by such agreement is righteous. To take things by force, however, is sinful.[10] Even such is the course of the old usage followed by the *Rishis* and others. Without doubt, this is righteous.'[11]

"Yudhishthira said,—'When, O sire, all the orders, giving up their respective duties, take up arms against the king, then, of course, the power of the king decreases.[12] By what means should the king then become the protector and refuge of the people? Resolve this doubt of mine, O king, by speaking to me in detail!'[13]

"Bhishma said,—'By gifts, by penances, by sacrifices, by peacefulness, and by self-restraint, all the orders headed by the Brāhmanas should, on such occasions, seek their own good.[14] Those amongst them that are endued with Vedic strength, should rise up on every side and like the gods strengthening Indra contribute (by Vedic rites) to enhance the strength of the king.[15] Brāhmanas are said to be the refuge of the king while his power suffers decay. A wise king seeks the enhancement of his power by means of the power of the Brāhmanas.[16] When the king, crowned with victory, seeks the re-establishment of peace, all the orders then betake themselves to their respective duties.[17] When robbers, breaking through all restraints, spread devastation around, all the orders may take up arms. By so doing they incur no sin, O Yudhishthira!'[18]

"Yudhishthira said,—'If all the Kshatriyas become hostile towards the Brāhmanas, who then will protect the Brāhmanas and their Vedas? What then should be the duty of the Brāhmanas and who will be their refuge?'[19]

"Bhishma said,—'By penances, by *Brahmacharyya*, by weapons, and by (physical) might, applied with or without the aid of deceit, the Kshatriyas should be subjugated.[20] If the Kshatriya misconducts himself, especially towards Brāhmanas,

the Vedas themselves will subjugate them. The Kshatriyas have sprung from the Brāhmanas.[21] Fire has sprung from water; the Kshatriya from the Brāhmana; and iron from stone. The energy of fire, the Kshatriya, and iron, are irresistible. But when these come into contact with the sources of their origin, their force becomes neutralised.[22] When iron strikes stone, or fire battles with water, or the Kshatriya becomes hostile to the Brāhmana, then the strength of each of those three becomes destroyed.[23] Thus, O Yudhishthira, the energy and might, howsoever great and irresistible, of Kshatriyas become quelled as soon as they are directed against the Brāhmanas.[24] When the energy of the Brāhmanas becomes mild, when Kshatriya energy becomes weak, when all men misbehave themselves towards the Brāhmanas,[25] they that engage in battle then, casting off all fear of death, for protecting the Brāhmanas, morality, and their own selves,[26]—those persons, moved by righteous indignation and possessed of great strength of mind, succeed in winning high regions of bliss hereafter. All persons should take up arms for the sake of Brāhmanas.[27] Those brave persons that fight for Brāhmanas attain to those felicitous regions in heaven that are reserved for persons that have always studied the Vedas with attention, that have performed the austerest of penances, and that have, after fasting, cast off their bodies into blazing fires.[28] The Brāhmana, by taking up arms for the three other orders, does not incur sin. People say that there is no higher duty than casting off life under such circumstances.[29] I bow to them and blessed be they that thus lay down their lives in seeking to chastise the enemies of Brāhmanas. Let us attain to that region which is intended for them. Manu himself has said that those heroes repair to the region of Brahman.[30] As persons become cleansed of all their sins by undergoing the final bath in a horse-sacrifice, even so they that die at the edge of weapons while fighting wicked people, become cleansed of all their sins.[31] Righteousness becomes unrighteousness, and unrighteousness becomes righteousness, according to place and time. Such is the power of place and time (in determining the charactor of human acts).[32] The friends of humanity,

by doing even acts of cruelty, have attained to high heaven. Righteous Kshatriyas, by doing even sinful acts, have attained to blessed ends.*[33] The Brāhmana, by taking up arms on these three occasions, does not incur sin, *viz.*, for protecting himself, for compelling the other orders to betake themselves to their duties, and for chastising robbers!'[34]

"Yudhishthira said,—'If when robbers raise their heads and an intermixture of the orders begins to take place in consequence of confusion, and Kshatriyas become incompetent, some powerful person other than a Kshatriya seeks to subdue those robbers for the sake of protecting the people,[35]† indeed, O best of kings, if that powerful person happens to be a Brāhmana or a Vaiçya or a Cudra, and if he succeeds in protecting the people by righteously wielding the rod of chastisement,[36] is he justified in doing what he does or is he restrained by the ordinances from accomplishing that duty? It seems that others, when the Kshatriyas prove so wretched, should take up weapons.'[37]

"Bhishma said,—'Be he a Cudra or be he the member of any other order, he that becomes a raft on a raftless current, or a means of crossing where means there are none, certainly deserves respect in every way.[38] That person, O king, relying upon whom helpless men, oppressed and made miserable by robbers, live happily,[39] deserves to be lovingly worshipped by all as if he were a near kinsman. The person, O thou of Kuru's race, that dispels the fears of others, always deserves respect.[40] What use is there of bulls that would not bear burthens, or of kine that would not yield milk, or of a wife that is barren? Similarly, what need is there for a king that is not competent to grant protection?[41] As an elephant made

---

* The allusion is to such men as Utanka and Parāçara, who, although they performed such cruel acts as the snake-sacrifice and the *Rākshasa*-sacrifice, were none-the-less entitled to heaven. So Kshatriya kings, by invading the kingdoms of their foes and slaying thousands of men and animals, are nevertheless regarded to be righteous and ultimately go to heaven.—T.

† *Kshatrārthe*, i. e., for protecting the subjects. *Anya* means some one who is not a Kshatriya. *Abhibhavet* means 'subdues.'—T.

of wood, or a deer made of leather, as a person without wealth, or one that is a eunuch, or a field that is sterile,[42] even so is a Brāhmana that is void of Vedic lore and a king incapable of granting protection. Both of them are like a cloud that does not pour rain.[43] That person who always protects the good and restrains the wicked, deserves to become a king and to govern the world.' "[44]

SECTION LXXIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What, O grandsire, should be the acts and what the behaviour of persons employed as priests in our sacrifices? What sort of persons should they be, O king? Tell me all this, O foremost of speakers!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'It is laid down for those Brāhmanas that are elligible as priests that they should be conversant with the *Chhandas* including the *Sāmans*, and all the rites inculcated in the *Çrutis*, and that they should be able to perform all such religious acts as lead to the prosperity of the king.[2] They should be devotedly loyal and utter agreeable speeches in addressing kings. They should also be friendly towards one another, and cast equal eyes on all.[3] They should be devoid of cruelty, and truthful in speech. They should never be usurers, and should always be simple and sincere. One that is peaceful in temper, destitute of vanity, modest, charitable, self-restrained, and contented, possessed of intelligence, truthful, observant of vows, and harmless to all creatures, without lust and malice, and endued with the three excellent qualities,[5] devoid of envy and possessed of knowledge, deserves the seat of Brahman himself. Persons with such qualities, O sire, are the best of priests and deserve every respect.'[6]

"Yudhishthira said,—'There are Vedic texts about the gift of *Dakshinā* in sacrifices. There is no ordinance, however, which lays down that so much should be given.[7] This ordinance (about the gift of *Dakshinā*) has not proceeded from motives connected with the distribution of wealth. The command of the ordinance, in consequence of the provision in cases of incapacity, is terrible. That command is blind to

the competence of the sacrificer.[9]* The audition occurs in the Vedas that a person should, with devotion, perform a sacrifice. But what can devotion do when the sacrifice is stained by falsehood ?'[9]†

"Bhishma said,—'No man acquires blessedness or merit by disregarding the Vedas or by deceit or falsehood. Never think that it is otherwise.[10] *Dakshinā* constitutes one of the limbs of sacrifice and conduces to the nourishment of the Vedas. A sacrifice without *Dakshinā* can never lead to salvation.[11] The efficacy, however, of a single *Purnapātra* is equal to that of any *Dakshinā* however rich. Therefore, O sire, every one belonging to the three orders should perform sacrifices.‡[12] The Vedas have settled that *Soma* is as the king himself to the Brāhmanas. Yet they desire to sell it for the sake of performing sacrifices, though they never wish to sell it for gaining a livelihood.[13] *Rishis* of righteous behaviour have declared, agreeably to the dictates of morality, that a sacrifice performed with the proceeds of the sale of *Soma* serves to extend sacrifices.§[14] These three, *viz.*, a person, a sacrifice, and *Soma*, must be of good character. A person that is of bad character is neither for this nor for the other world.[15] This audition has been heard by us that the sacrifice which high-souled Brāhmanas perform by wealth earned by excessive physical labour,

---

* *Idam cāstram Pratidhanam na* is thus explained by Nilakantha. In cases of incapacity, again, to give the prescribed *Dakshinā*, the sacrificer is directed to give away *all* he has. This direction or command is certainly terrible, for who can make up his mind to part with *all* his wealth for completing a sacrifice ?—T.

† The falsehood consists in finding substitutes for the *Dakshinās* actually laid down. They are morsels of cooked food for a living cow, a grain of barley for a piece of cloth ; a copper coin for gold ; &c.—T.

‡ The fact is that although the sacrificer may not be able to give the *Dakshinā* actually laid down in the Vedas, yet by giving its substitute he does not lose any merit, for a single *Purnapātra* (256 handfuls of rice) is as efficacious, if given away with devotion, as the richest *Dakshinā*.—T.

§ Ie., such a sacrifice, instead of producing no merit, becomes the means of extending the cause of sacrifices. In other words, such a sacrifice is fraught with merit.—T.

is not productive of great merit.[16] There is a declaration in the Vedas that penances are higher than sacrifices. I shall now speak to thee of penances. O learned prince, listen to me![17] Abstention from injury, truthfulness of speech, benevolence, compassion,—these are regarded as penances by the wise and not the emaciation of the body.[18] Disregard of the Vedas, disobedience to the dictates of the scriptures, and violation of all wholesome restraints, are productive of self-destruction.[19] Listen, O son of Prithā, to what has been laid down by those that pour ten libations upon the fire at ten times of the day.—For them that perform the sacrifice of penance, the *Yoga* they endeavour to effect with *Brahma* is their ladle; the heart is their clarified butter; and high knowledge constitutes their *Pavitra*.[20]* All kinds of crookedness mean death, and all kinds of sincerity are called *Brahma*. This constitutes the subject of knowledge. The rhapsodies of system builders cannot affect this.[21]—' "

SECTION LXXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'The most trifling act, O grandsire, cannot be accomplished by any man if unaided. What then need be said of the king (who has to govern a kingdom)?[1] What should be the behaviour and what the acts of the king's minister? Upon whom should the king repose confidence and upon whom he should not.'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'Kings, O monarch, have four kinds of friends. They are he that has the same object, he that is devoted, he that is related by birth, and he that has been won over (by gifts and kindness).[3] A person of righteous soul, who would serve one and not both sides, is the fifth in the enumeration of the king's friends. Such a person adopts that side on which righteousness is, and accordingly acts righteously.[4] With respect to such a person, the king should never disclose such purposes of his as would not enlist his sympathy.

---

* A *Pavitra* is made by a couple of *Kusa* blades for sprinkling clarified butter upon the sacrificial fire.—T.

Kings desirous of success are obliged to adopt both kinds of paths, righteous and unrighteous.[5] Of the four kinds of friends, the second and the third are superior, while the first and the fourth should ever be regarded with suspicion. In view, however, of those acts which the king should do in person, he should always regard with suspicion all the four.[6] The king should never act heedlessly in the matter of watching his friends. A king that is heedless is always overpowered by others.[7] A wicked man assumes the garb of honesty, and he that is honest becomes otherwise. A foe may become a friend and a friend may become a foe.[8] A man cannot always be of the same mind. Who is there that would trust him completely? All the chief acts, therefore, of a king he should accomplish in his own presence.[9] A complete reliance (on his ministers) is destructive of both morality and profit. A want of trust again in respect of all is worse than death.[10] Trustfulness is premature death. One incurs danger by trustfulness. If one trusts another completely, he is said to live by the sufferance of the trusted person.[11] For this reason every one should be trusted as also mistrusted. This eternal rule of policy, O sire, should be kept in view.[12] One should always mistrust that person who would, upon one's demise, obtain one's wealth. The wise declare such a person to be one's enemy.[13] A person whose joy knows no bounds upon beholding the aggrandisement of the king and who feels miserable upon seeing the king's decay, furnishes the indications of one of the best friends of the king.[14] He whose fall would be brought about by thy fall, should be trusted by thee completely even as thou shouldst trust thy sire. Thou shouldst, to the best of thy power, aggrandise him as thou winnest aggrandisement for thyself.[15-16] One who, in even thy religious rites, seeks to rescue thee from harm, would seek to rescue thee from harm's way in every other business. Such a one should be regarded as thy best friend. They, on the other hand, that wish one harm are one's foes.[17] That friend is said to be like thy own self who is inspired with fear when calamity overtakes thee and with joy when prosperity shines on thee.[18] A person possessed of beauty, fair complexion, excellent voice,

liberality, benevolence, and good birth, cannot be such a friend.[19] That person who is possessed of intelligence and memory, who is clever in the transaction of business, who is naturally averse from cruelty, who never indulges in wrath, and who, whether regarded or disregarded is never dissatisfied,[20] be he thy priest or preceptor or honored friend, should always receive thy worship if he accepts the office of thy counseller and resides in thy abode.[21-22] Such a person may be informed of thy most secret counsels and the true state of all thy affairs religious or pertaining to matters of profit. Thou mayst confide in him as in thy own sire.[23] One person should be appointed to one task, and not two or three. These may not tolerate each other. It is always seen that several persons, if set to one task, disagree with one another.[24] That person who achieves celebrity, who observes all restraints, who never feels jealous of others that are able and competent, who never does any evil act,[25] who never abandons righteousness from lust or fear or covetousness or wrath, who is clever in the transaction of business, and who is possessed of wise and weighty speech, should be thy foremost of ministers.[26] Persons possessed of good birth and good behaviour, who are liberal and who never indulge in brag, who are brave and respectable, and learned and full of resources,[27] should be appointed as ministers for supervising all thy affairs. Honored by thee and gratified with wealth, they would act for thy good and be of great help to thee.[28] Appointed to offices connected with profit and other important matters, they always bring about great prosperity.[29] Moved by a feeling of healthy rivalry, they discharge all duties connected with profit, holding consultations with one another when necessary.[30] Thou shouldst fear thy kinsmen as thou shouldst death itself. A kinsman can never bear a kinsman's prosperity even as a feudatory chief cannot bear to see the prosperity of his overlord.[31] None but a kinsman can feel joy at the destruction of a kinsman adorned with sincerity, mildness, liberality, modesty, and truthfulness of speech.[32] They, again, that have no kinsmen, cannot be happy. No men can be more contemptible than they that are destitute of kinsmen,

A person that has no kinsmen is easily overriden by foes.[33] Kinsmen constitute the refuge of one that is afflicted by other men, for kinsmen can never bear to see a kinsman afflicted by other people.[34] When a kinsman is persecuted by even his friends, every kinsman of the persecuted regards the injury to be inflicted upon himself. In kinsmen, therefore, there are both merits and faults.[35] A person destitute of kinsmen never shows favors to any one nor humbles himself to any one. In kinsmen, therefore, both merit and demerit may be marked.[36] One should, for this reason, always honor and worship his kinsmen in words and acts, and do them agreeable offices without injuring them at any time.[37] Mistrusting them at heart, one should behave towards them as if he trusted them completely. Reflecting upon their nature, it seems that they have neither faults nor merits.[38] A person who heedfully conducts himself in his way finds his very foes disarmed of hostility and converted into friends.[39] One who always conducts himself in this way amid kinsmen and relatives and bears himself thus towards friends and foes, succeeds in winning everlasting fame.' "[40]

Section LXXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'If one does not succeed in winning over one's kinsmen and relatives (by this course), they that are intended for becoming friends become foes. How should one, then, conduct one's self so that the hearts of both friends and foes may be won?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old history of a discourse between Vāsudeva and the celestial sage Nārada.[2] On a certain occasion Vāsudeva said,—Neither an illiterate and foolish friend, nor a learned friend of fickle soul, deserves, O Nārada, to know one's secret counsels.[3] Relying on thy friendship for me, I shall say something to thee, O sage! O thou that canst go to heaven at thy pleasure, one should speak to another if one be convinced of the intelligence of that other![4] I never behave with slavish obsequiousness towards my kinsmen by flattering speeches about their

prosperity. I give them half of what I have, and forgive their evil speeches.[5] As a fire-stick is grinded by a person desirous of obtaining fire, even so my heart is grinded by my kinsmen with their cruel speeches. Indeed, O celestial *Rishi*, those cruel speeches burn my heart every day.[6] Might resides in Sankarshana; mildness in Gada; and as regards Praddyumna, he surpasses even myself in beauty of person. (Although I have all these on my side) yet I am helpless, O Nārada![7] Many others among the Andhakas and the Vrishnis are possessed of great prosperity and might, and daring courage and constant perseverance.[8] He on whose side they do not range themselves meets with destruction. He, on the other hand, on whose side they do range themselves, achieves everything. Dissuaded (in turns) by both (*viz.*, Āhuka and Akrura,) I do not side either of them.[9] What can be more painful for a person than to have both Āhuka and Akrura on his side? What, again, can be more painful for one than not to have both of them on his side?*[10] I am like the mother of two brothers gambling against each other, invoking victory to both.[11] I am thus, O Nārada, afflicted by both. It behoveth thee to tell me that which is for the good of both myself and my kinsmen!—[12]

"'Nārada said,—Calamities, O Krishna, are of two kinds, *viz.*, external and internal. They arise, O thou of Vrishni's race, from one's own acts or from the acts of others.[13] The calamity that has now overtaken thee is an internal one and is born of thy own acts. Valadeva and others of the Bhoja race are partisans of Akrura,[14] and have taken up his side either for the sake of wealth, or mere caprice, or moved by words or by hate. As regards thyself, thou hast given away wealth obtained by thee to another.[15] Though possessed of men

---

* The fact is that Āhuka and Akrura were bitterly opposed to each other. Both of them, however, loved Krishna. Āhuka always advised Krishna to shun Akrura, and Akrura always advised him to shun Āhuka. Krishna valued the friendship of both and could ill dispense with either. What he says here is that to have them both is painful and yet *not* to have them both is equally painful.—T.

who should be your friends, thou hast, however, by thy own act, brought calamity over thy head. Thou canst not take back that wealth, even as one cannot swallow again the food that he has vomited himself.[16] The kingdom cannot be taken back from Babhru and Ugrasena (unto whom it has been given). Thyself, O Krishna, cannot, in particular, take it back (from them) from fear of producing intestine dissensions.[17] Supposing the endeavour succeeds, it will do so after much trouble and after the accomplishment of the most difficult feats. A great slaughter and a great loss of wealth will ensue, perhaps, even total destruction.[18] Use then a weapon that is not made of steel, that is very mild and yet capable of piercing all hearts. Sharpening and resharpening that weapon correct the tongues of thy kinsmen !—[19]

" 'Vāsudeva said,—What is that weapon, O sage, which is not made of steel, which is mild, which still pierces all hearts, and which I must use for correcting the tongues of my kinsmen ?—[20]

" 'Nārada said,—'The giving of food to the best of thy power, forgiveness, sincerity, mildness, and honor to whom honor is due,—these constitute a weapon that is not made of steel.[21] With soft words alone turn away the wrath of kinsmen about to utter cruel speeches, and mollify their hearts and minds and slanderous tongues.[22] None who is not a great man with cleansed soul and possessed of accomplishments and friends can bear a heavy burthen. Take up this great weight (of governing the Vrishnis) and bear it on thy shoulders.[23] All oxen can bear heavy burthens on a level road. The stronger ones only among them can bear such burthens on a difficult road.[24] From disunion destruction will spring and overtake all the Bhojas and the Vrishnis ! Thou, O Keçava, art the foremost one among them. Do thou act in such a manner that the Bhojas and the Vrishnis may not meet with destruction.[25] Nothing but intelligence and forgiveness, restraint of the senses, and liberality, are present in a person of wisdom.[26] Advancing one's own race is always praiseworthy and glorious and conducive to long life. Do thou, O Krishna, act in such a way that destruction may not overtake thy

kinsmen.[27] There is nothing unknown to thee in respect of policy and the art of war, O lord![28] The Yādavas, the Kukuras, the Bhojas, the Andhakas, and the Vrishnis, are all dependent on thee even as all the worlds and all the regents of those worlds, O mighty-armed one! The *Rishis*, O Mādhava, always pray for thy advancement.[29] Thou art the lord of all creatures. Thou knowest the past, the present, and the future. Thou art the foremost one among all the Yādavas. Relying on thee, they expect to live in happiness!—' "[30]

SECTION LXXXII.

"Bhishma said,—'This that I have told thee constitutes the first means. Listen now, O Bhārata, to the second means. That man who seeks to advance the interests of the king should always be protected by the king.[1] If a person, O Yudhishthira, that is paid or unpaid, comes to thee for telling thee of the damage done to thy treasury when its resources are being embezzled by a minister,[2] thou shouldst grant him an audience in private and protect him also from the (impeached) minister. The ministers guilty of peculation seek, O Bhārata, to slay such informants.[3] They who plunder the royal treasury combine together for opposing the person who seeks to protect it, and if the latter be left unprotected, he is sure to be ruined.[4] In this conection also an old story is cited of what the sage Kālakavrikshiya had said unto the king of Koçala.[5] It hath been heard by us that once on a time the sage Kālakavrikshiya came to Kshemadarçin who had ascended the throne of the kingdom of Koçala.[6] Desirous of examining the conduct of all the officers of Kshemadarçin, the sage, with a crow kept within a cage in his hand, repeatedly travelled through every part of that king's dominions.[7] And he spoke unto all the men and said,—Study ye the corvine science! The crows tell me the present, the past, and the future![8]—Proclaiming this in the kingdom, the sage, accompanied by a large number of men, began to observe the misdeeds of all the officers of the king.[9] Having ascertained all the affairs in respect of that kingdom, and having learnt

that all the officers appointed by the king were guilty of malversation,[10] the sage, with his crow, came to see the king. Of rigid vows, he said unto the king,—I know everything (about thy kingdom)![11]—Arrived at the presence of the king, he said unto his minister adorned with the insignia of his office that he had been informed by his crow that the minister had done such a misdeed in such a place,[12] and that such and such persons know that he had plundered the royal treasury! My crow tells me this. Admit or prove the falsehood of the accusation quickly![13]—The sage then proclaimed the names of other officers who had similarly been guilty of embezzlement, adding,—My crow never says anything that is false![14]—Thus accused and injured by the sage, all the officers of the king, O thou of Kuru's race, (united together and) pierced his crow, while the sage slept, at night.[15] Beholding his crow pierced with a shaft within the cage, the regenerate *Rishi*, repairing to Kshemadarçin in the morning said unto him,[16]—O king, I seek thy protection! Thou art all powerful and thou art the master of the lives and wealth of all! If I receive thy command I can then say what is for thy good! Grieved on account of thee whom I regard as a friend, I have come to thee, impelled by my devotion and ready to serve thee with my whole heart![17] Thou art being robbed of thy wealth, I have come to thee for disclosing it without showing any consideration for the robbers. Like a driver that urges a good steed, I have come hither for awakening thee whom I regard a friend![18] A friend who is alive to his own interests and desirous of his own prosperity and aggrandisement, should forgive a friend that intrudes himself forcibly, impelled by devotion and wrath, for doing what is beneficial![19]—The king replied unto him, saying,—Why should I not bear anything thou wilt say, since I am not blind to what is for my good?[20] I grant thee permission, O regenerate one! Tell me what thou pleasest. I shall certainly obey the instructions thou wilt give me, O Brāhmana![21]—

"'The sage said,—Ascertaining the merits and faults of thy servants, as also the dangers thou incurrest at their hands, I have come to thee, impelled by my devotion, for

representing everything to thee![22] The teachers (of mankind) have of old declared what the curses are, O king, of those that serve others. The lot of those that serve the king is very painful and wretched.[23] He who has any connection with kings is said to have connection with snakes of virulent poison. Kings have many friends as also many enemies.[24] They that serve kings have to fear all of them. Every moment, again, they have fear from the king himself, O monarch.[25] A person serving the king cannot (with impunity) be guilty of heedlessness in doing the king's work. Indeed, a servant who desires to win prosperity should never display heedlessness in the discharge of his duties.[26] His heedlessness may move the king to wrath, and such wrath may bring down destruction (on the servant). Carefully learning how to behave himself, one should sit in the presence of the king as he should in the presence of a blazing fire.[27] Prepared to lay down life itself at every moment, one should serve the king attentively, for the king is all powerful and master of the lives and the wealth of all, and, therefore, like unto a snake of virulent poison.[28] He should always fear to indulge in evil speeches before the king, or to sit cheerlessly or in irreverent postures, or to wait in attitudes of disrespect or to walk disdainfully or display insolent gestures and disrespectful motions of the limbs.[29] If the king becomes gratified, he can shower prosperity like a god. If he becomes enraged he can consume to the very roots like a blazing fire.[30] This, O king, was said by Yama. Its truth is seen in the affairs of the world. I shall now (acting according to these precepts) do that which would enhance thy prosperity.[31] Friends like ourselves can give unto friends like thee the aid of their intelligence in seasons of peril. This crow of mine, O king, has been slain for doing thy business.[32] I cannot, however, blame thee for this. Thou art not loved by those (that have slain this bird). Ascertain who are thy friends and who thy foes. Do everything thyself without surrendering thy intelligence to others.[33] They who are on thy establishment are all peculators. They do not desire the good of thy subjects. I have incurred their hostility.[34] Conspiring with those servants

that have constant access to thee, they covet the kingdom after thee by compassing thy destruction. Their plans, however, do not succeed in consequence of unforeseen circumstances.[5] Through fear of those men, O king, I shall leave this kingdom for some other asylum. I have no worldly desire, yet those persons of deceitful intentions have shot this shaft at my crow, and have, O lord, despatched the bird to Yama's abode. I have seen this, O king, with eyes whose vision has been improved by penances.[6-7] With the assistance of this single crow I have crossed this kingdom of thine that is like a river abounding with alligators and sharks and crocodiles and whales.[8] Indeed, with the assistance of that bird, I have passed through thy dominions like unto a Himālayan valley, impenetrable and inaccessible in consequence of trunks of (fallen) trees and scattered rocks and thorny shrubs and lions and tigers and other beasts of prey.[9] The learned say that a region inaccessible in consequence of gloom can be passed through with the aid of a light, and a river that is unfordable can be crossed by means of a boat. No means, however, exist for penetrating or passing through the labyrynth of kingly affairs.[10] Thy kingdom is like an inaccessible forest enveloped with gloom. Thou (that art the lord of it) canst not trust it. How then can I?[11] Good and evil are regarded here in the same light. Residence here cannot, therefore, be safe. Here a person of righteous deeds meets with death, while one of unrighteous deeds incurs no danger.[12] According to the requirements of justice, a person of unrighteous deeds should be slain but never one who is righteous in his acts. It is not proper, therefore, for one to stay in this kingdom long. A man of sense should leave this country soon.[13] There is a river, O king, of the name of Sitā. Boats sink in it. This thy kingdom is like that river. An all-destructive net seems to have been cast around it.[14] Thou art like the fall that awaits collectors of honey, or like attractive food containing poison. Thy nature now resembles that of dishonest men and not that of the good. Thou art like a pit, O king, abounding with snakes of virulent poison.[15] Thou resembleest, O king, a river full of sweet water but exceedingly difficult of access,

with steep banks overgrown with *Kāviras* and thorny canes.[46] Thou art like a swan in the midst of dogs, vultures, and jackals.[47] Grassy parasites, deriving their sustenance from a mighty tree, swell into luxuriant growth, and at last covering the tree itself overshadow it completely.[48] A forest conflagration sets in, and catching those grassy plants first, consumes the lordly tree with them. Thy ministers, O king, resemble those grassy parasites of which I speak. Do thou check and correct them.[49] They have been nourished by thee. But conspiring against thee, they are destroying thy prosperity.[50] Concealing (from thee) the faults of thy servants, I am living in thy abode in constant dread of danger, even like a person living in a room with a snake within it or like the lover of a hero's wife. My object is to ascertain the behaviour of the king who is my fellow-lodger.[51] I wish to know whether the king has his passions under control, whether his servants are obedient to him, whether he is loved by them, and whether he loves his subjects. For the object of ascertaining all these points, O best of kings, I have come to thee![52] Like food to a hungry person, thou hast become dear to me. I dislike thy ministers, however, as a person whose thirst has been slaked dislikes drink.[53] They have found fault with me because I seek thy good. I have no doubt that there is no other cause for that hostility of theirs to me.[54] I do not cherish any hostile intentions towards them. I am engaged in only marking their faults. As one should fear a wounded snake, every one should fear a foe of wicked heart!*—[55]

"'The king said,—Reside in my palace, O Brāhmana! I shall always treat thee with respect and honor, and always worship thee![56] They that will dislike thee shall not dwell with me. Do thou thyself do what should be done next unto those persons (of whom thou hast spoken)![57] Do thou see, O

---

* The belief is still current that a wounded snake is certain to seek vengeance even if the person that has wounded it places miles of distance between himself and the reptile. The people of this country, therefore, always kill a snake outright and burn it in fire if they ever strike it.—T.

holy one, that the rod of chastisement is wielded properly and that everything is done well in my kingdom. Reflecting upon everything, do thou guide me in such a way that I may obtain prosperity!—[58]

" 'The sage said,—Shutting thy eyes in the first instance to this offence of theirs (*viz.*, the slaughter of the crow,) do thou weaken them one by one. Prove their faults then and strike them one after another.[59] When many persons become guilty of the same offence, they can, by acting together, soften the very points of thorns. Lest thy ministers (being suspected, act against thee and) disclose thy secret counsels, I advise thee to proceed with such caution.[60] As regards ourselves, we are Brāhmanas, naturally compassionate and unwilling to give pain to any one. We desire thy good as also the good of others, even as we wish the good of ourselves.[61] I speak of myself, O king! I am thy friend. I am known as the sage Kālakavrikshiya.[62] I always adhere to truth. Thy sire regarded me lovingly as his friend. When distress overtook this kingdom during the reign of thy sire, O king,[63] I performed many penances (for driving it off), abandoning every other business. From my affection for thee I say this unto thee so that thou mayst not again commit the fault (of reposing confidence on undeserving persons).[64] Thou hast obtained a kingdom without trouble. Reflect upon everything connected with its weal and woe. Thou hast ministers in thy kingdom. But why, O king, shouldst thou be guilty of heedlessness?[65]—After this, the king of Koçala took a minister from the Kshatriya order, and appointed that bull among Brāhmanas (*viz.*, the sage Kālakavrikshiya,) as his *Purohita*.[66] After these changes had been effected, the king of Koçala subjugated the whole Earth and acquired great fame. The sage Kālakavrikshiya worshipped the gods in many grand sacrifices performed for the king.[67] Having listened to his beneficial counsels, the king of Koçala conquered the whole Earth and conducted himself in every respect as the sage directed.' "[68]

SECTION LXXXIII.

"Yudhishthira said.—'What should be the characteristics, O grandsire, of the legislators, the ministers of war, the courtiers, the generalisimos, and the counsellors of a king?'[1]*

"Bhishma said,—'Such persons as are possessed of modesty, self-restraint, truth, sincerity, and courage to say what is proper, should be thy legislators.[2] They that are always by thy side, that are possessed of great courage, that are of the regenerate caste, possessed of great learning, well-pleased with thee, and endued with perseverance in all acts, should, O son of Kunti, be desired by thee for becoming thy ministers of war at all seasons of distress, O Bhārata![3] One who is of high descent, who, treated with honor by thee, always exerts his powers to the utmost on thy behalf, and who will never abandon thee in weal or woe, illness or death, should be entertained by thee as a courtier.[4] They that are of high birth, that are born in thy kingdom, that have wisdom, beauty of form and features, great learning, and dignity of behaviour, and that are, besides, devoted to thee, should be employed as officers of thy army.[5] Persons of low descent and covetous dispositions, who are cruel and shameless, would court thee. O sire, as long as their hands would remain wet.'† They that are of good-birth and good behaviour, that can read all signs and gestures, that are destitute of cruelty, that know what the requirements are of place and time, that always seek the good of their master in all acts, should be appointed as ministers by the king in all his affairs.[7] They that have been won over with gifts of wealth, honors, regardful receptions, and means of procuring felicity, and who on that account may be regarded by thee as persons inclined to benefit thee in all thy affairs, should always be made sharers of thy happiness.[8]

---

* I follow Nilakantha in his explanation of the words used in this verse.—T.

† I. e., as long as they are paid and have in their hands what has been given to them.—T.

They that are unchangeable in conduct, possessed of learning and good behaviour, observant of excellent vows, large-hearted, and truthful in speech, will always be attentive to thy affairs and will never abandon thee.[9] They, on the other hand, that are disrespectable, that are not observant of restraints, that are of wicked souls, and that have fallen away from good practices, should always be compelled by thee to observe all wholesome restraints.[10] When the question is which of two sides should be adopted, thou shouldst not abandon the many for adopting the side of one. When, however, that one person transcends the many in consequence of the possession of many accomplishments, then thou shouldst, for that one, abandon the many.[11] These are regarded as marks of superiority, *viz.*, prowess, devotion to pursuits that bring fame, and observance of wholesome restraints.[12] He, again, that honors all persons possessed of ability, that never indulges in feelings of rivalry with persons possessed of no merit, that never abandons righteousness from lust or fear or wrath or covetousness,[13] that is adorned with humility, that is truthful in speech and forgiving in temper, that has his soul under control, that has a sense of dignity, and that has been tried in every situation, should be employed by thee as thy counseller.[14] High descent, purity of blood, forgiveness, cleverness, and purity of soul, bravery, gratefulness, and truth, are, O son of Pritha, marks of superiority and goodness.[15] A wise man who conducts himself in this way,* succeeds in disarming his very foes of their hostility and converting them into friends.[16] A king that has his soul under restraint, that is possessed of wisdom, and that is desirous of prosperity, should carefully examine the merits and demerits of his ministers.[17] A king desirous of prosperity and of shining in the midst of his contemporaries, should have for ministers persons connected with his trusted friends, possessed of high birth, born in his own kingdom, incapable of being corrupted, unstained by adultery and similar vices, well tested, belonging to good families, possessed of learning, sprang from sires and grandsires that held similar

---

I. e., shows these virtues in his conduct.—T.

offices, and adorned with humility.[18-19] The king should employ five such persons to look after his affairs as are possessed of intelligence unstained by pride, a disposition that is good, energy, patience, forgiveness, purity, loyalty, firmness, and courage, whose merits and faults have been well tested, who are of mature years, who are capable of bearing burthens, and who are free from deceipt.[20-21] Men that are wise in speech, that are possessed of heroism, that are full of resources under difficulties, that are of high birth, that are truthful, that can read signs, that are free from cruelty,[22] that are conversant with the requirements of place and time, and that desire the good of their masters, should be employed by the king as his ministers in all affairs of the kingdom.[23] One who is bereft of energy and who has been abandoned by friends can never work with perseverance. Such a man, if employed, fails in almost every business.[24] A minister possessed of little learning, even if blessed with high birth and attentive to virtue, profit, and pleasure, becomes incompetent in choosing proper courses of action.[25] Similarly, a person of low descent, even if possessed of great learning, always errs, like a blind man without a guide, in all acts requiring dexterity and foresight.[26] A person, again, who is of infirm purposes, even if possessed of intelligence and learning, and even if conversant with means, cannot long act with success.[27] A man of wicked heart and possessed of no learning may set his hand to work but he fails to ascertain what the results will be of his work.[28] A king should never repose trust on a minister that is not devoted to him. He should, therefore, never disclose his counsels to a minister that is not devoted to him.[29] Such a wicked minister, combining with the other ministers of the king, may ruin his master, like fire consuming a tree by entering its entrails through the holes in its body with the aid of the wind.[30] Giving way to wrath, a master may one day pull down a servant from his office or reprove him, from rage, in harsh words, and restore him to power again.[31] None but a servant devoted to the master can bear and forgive such treatment. Ministers also become sometimes highly offended with their royal masters.[32] That

one, however, amongst them, who subdues his wrath from desire of doing good to his master,—that person who is a sharer with the king of his weal and woe,—should be consulted by the king in all his affairs.[33] A person who is of crooked heart, even if he be devoted to his master and possessed of wisdom and adorned with numerous virtues, should never be consulted by the king.[34] One who is allied with foes and who does not regard the interests of the king's subjects, should be known as an enemy. The king should never consult with him.[35] One who is possessed of no learning, who is not pure, who is stained with pride, who pays court to the king's enemies, who indulges in brag, who is unfriendly, wrathful, and covetous, should not be consulted by the king.[36] One who is a stranger, even if he be devoted to the king and possessed of great learning, may be honored by the king and gratified with assignment of the means of sustenance, but the king should never consult him in his affairs.[37] A person whose sire was unjustly banished by royal edict should not be consulted by the king even if the king may have subsequently bestowed honors upon him and assigned to him the means of sustenance.[38] A well-wisher whose property was once confiscated for a slight transgression, even if he be possessed of every accomplishment, should not still be consulted by the king.[39] A person possessed of wisdom, intelligence, and learning, who is born within the kingdom, who is pure and righteous in all his acts, deserves to be consulted by the king.[40] One who is endued with knowledge and wisdom, who is acquainted with the dispositions of friends and foes, who is such a friend of the king as to be his second self, deserves to be consulted.[41] One who is truthful in speech and modest and mild, and who is a hereditary servant of the king, deserves to be consulted.[42] One who is contented and honored, who is truthful and dignified, who hates wickedness and wicked men, who is conversant with policy and the requirements of time, and who is courageous, deserves to be consulted by the king.[43] One who is competent to win over all men by conciliation should be consulted, O monarch, by the king that is desirous of ruling according to the dictates of the

science of chastisement.[44] One upon whom the inhabitants of both the capital and the provinces repose confidence for his righteous conduct, who is competent to fight and conversant with the rules of policy, deserves to be consulted by the king.[45] Therefore, men possessed of such qualities, men conversant with the dispositions of all and desirous of achieving high acts, should be honored by the king and made his ministers. Their number also should not be less than three.*[46] Ministers should be employed in observing the *laches* of their masters, of themselves, of the subjects, and of the foes of their master. The kingdom has its root in the counsels of policy that flow from ministers, and its growth proceeds from the same source.[47] Ministers should act in such a way that the enemies of their master may not be able to detect his laches. On the other hand, when *their* laches become visible, they should then be assailed. Like the tortoise protecting its limbs by withdrawing them within its shell, ministers should protect their own counsels. They should, even thus, conceal their own laches.[48] Those ministers of a kingdom that succeed in concealing their counsels are said to be possessed of wisdom. Counsels constitute the armour of a king, and the limbs of his subjects and officers.[49] A kingdom is said to have its roots in spies and secret agents, and its strength is said to lie in counsels of policy. If masters and ministers follow each other for deriving support from each other, subduing pride and wrath, and vanity and envy, they may then both become happy.[50] A king should also consult with such ministers as are free from the five kinds of deceit.[51] Ascertaining well, in the first instance, the different opinions of the three amongst them whom he has consulted, the king should, for subsequent deliberation, repair to his preceptor for informing him of those opinions and his own. His preceptor should be a Brāhmana well versed in all matters of virtue, profit, and pleasure. Repairing, for such subsequent deliberation, to him, the king

---

* *Tryavarāh* is explained by Nilakantha as "not less than three." The number laid down generally is five. In no case it should be less than three.—T.

should, with collected mind, ask his opinion. When a decision is arrived at after deliberation with him, the king should then, without attachment, carry it out into practice.[52-53] They that are conversant with the conclusions of the science of consultation say that kings should always hold consultations in this way. Having settled counsels in this way, they should then be reduced to practice, for then they will be able to win over all the subjects.[54] There should be no dwarfs, no hump-backed persons, no one of an emaciated constitution, no one who is lame or blind, no one who is an idiot, no woman, and no eunuch, at the spot where the king holds his consultations. Nothing should move there before or behind, above or below, or in transverse directions.[55] Getting up on a boat, or repairing to an open space destitute of grass or grassy bushes and whence the surrounding land may be clearly seen, the king should hold consultations at the proper time, avoiding faults of speech and gestures.' "[56]

Section LXXXIV.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, O Yudhishthira, the old account of a conversation between Vrihaspati and Cakra is cited.[1]

" 'Cakra said,—What is that one act, O regenerate one, by accomplishing which with care, a person may become the object of regard with all creatures and acquire great celebrity?—[2]

" 'Vrihaspati said,—Agreeableness of speech, O Cakra, is the one thing by practising which a person may become an object of regard with all creatures and acquire great celebrity.[3] This is the one thing, O Cakra, which gives happiness to all. By practising it, one may always obtain the love of all creatures.[4] The person who does not speak a word and whose face is always furrowed with frowns, becomes an object of hatred with all creatures. Abstention from agreeable speeches makes him so.[5] That person who, upon beholding others, addresses them first and does so with smiles, succeeds in making every one gratified with him.[6] Even gifts, if not made

with agreeable speeches, do not delight the recipients, like rice without curry.[7] If even the possessions of men, O Cakra, be taken away with sweet speeches, such sweetness of behaviour succeeds in reconciling the robbed.[8] A king, therefore, that is desirous of even inflicting chastisement should utter sweet words. Sweetness of speech never fails of purpose, while, at the same time it never pains any heart.[9] A person of good acts and good, agreeable, and sweet speeches, has no equal.—'[10]

" 'Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by his priest, Cakra began to act according to those instructions. Do thou also, O son of Kunti, practise this virtue!' "[11]

Section LXXXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O foremost of kings, what is that method by which a king ruling his subjects may, in consequence of it, obtain great blessedness and eternal fame?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'A king of cleansed soul and attentive to the duty of protecting his subjects earns merit and fame, both here and hereafter, by conducting himself righteously.'[2]

"Yudhishthira said,—'With whom should the king behave in what way? Asked by me, O thou of great wisdom, it behoveth thee to tell me everything duly![3] Those virtues of which thou hast already spoken with respect to a person, cannot, it is my belief, be found to exist in any single individual.'[4]

"Bhishma said,—'Thou art endued with great intelligence, O Yudhishthira! It is even so as thou sayest. The person is very rare who is possessed of all those good qualities.[5] To be brief, conduct like this (*viz.*, the presence of all the virtues spoken of,) is very difficult to be met with even upon careful search. I shall, however, tell thee what kinds of ministers should be appointed by thee.[6] Four Brāhmanas, learned in the Vedas, possessed of a sense of dignity, belonging to the *Sanātaka* order, and of pure behaviour, and eight Kshatriyas, all of whom should be possessed of physical strength and capable of wielding weapons,[7] and one and twenty Vaiçyas, all of whom should be possessed of wealth, and three Cudras,

every one of whom should be humble and of pure conduct and devoted to his daily duties,[8] and one man of the *Suta* caste, possessed of a knowledge of the *Purānas* and the eight cardinal virtues, should be thy ministers. Every one of them should be fifty years of age, possessed of a sense of dignity, free from envy,[9] conversant with the *Çrutis* and the *Smritis*, humble, impartial, competent to readily decide in the midst of disputants urging different courses of action, free from covetousness,[10] and from the seven dreadful vices called *Vyasanas*. The king should consult with those eight ministers and hold the lead among them.[11] He should then publish in his kingdom, for the information of his subjects, the results of such deliberation. Thou shouldst always, adopting such a conduct, watch over thy people.[12] Thou shouldst never confiscate what is deposited with thee or appropriate as thine the thing about whose ownership two persons may dispute. Conduct such as this would spoil the administration of justice. If the administration of justice be thus injured, sin will afflict thee,[13] and afflict thy kingdom as well, and inspire thy people with fear as little birds at the sight of the hawk. Thy kingdom will then melt away like a boat wrecked on the sea.[14] If a king governs his subjects with unrighteousness, fear takes possession of his heart and the door of heaven is closed against him.[15] A kingdom, O bull among men, has its root in righteousness. That minister, or king's son, who acts unrighteously, occupying the seat of justice,[16] and those officers who, having accepted the charge of affairs, act unjustly, moved by self-interest, all sink in hell along with the king himself.[17] Those helpless men who are oppressed by the powerful and who indulge on that account in piteous and copious lamentations, have their protector in the king.[18] In cases of dispute between two parties, the decision should be based upon the evidence of witnesses. If one of the disputants has no witnesses and is helpless, the king should give the case his best consideration.[19] The king should cause chastisement to be meted out to offenders according to the measure of their offences. They that are wealthy should be punished with fines and confiscations; they that are poor, with loss of liberty.[20] Those that

are of very wicked conduct should be chastised by the king with even corporal inflictions. The king should cherish all good men with agreeable speeches and gifts of wealth.[21] He who seeks to compass the death of the king should be punished with death to be effected by diverse means. The same should be the punishment of one who becomes guilty of arson or theft or such co-habitation with women as may lead to a confusion of castes.[22] A king, O monarch, who inflicts punishments duly and conformably to the dictates of the science of chastisement, incurs no sin by the act. On the other hand, he earns merit that is eternal.[23] That foolish king who inflicts punishments capriciously, earns infamy here and sinks into hell hereafter.[24] One should not be punished for the fault of another. Reflecting well upon the (criminal) code, a person should be convicted or acquitted.[25] A king should never slay an envoy under any circumstances. That king who slays an envoy sinks into hell with all his ministers.[26] That king observant of Kshatriya practices who slays an envoy that faithfully utters the message with which he is charged, causes the manes of his deceased ancestors to be stained with the sin of killing a fœtus.[27] An envoy should possess these seven accomplishments, *viz.*, he should be high-born, of a good family, eloquent, clever, sweet-speeched, faithful in delivering the message with which he is charged, and endued with a good memory.[28] The aid-de-camp of the king that protects his person should be endued with similar qualities. The officer also that guards his capital or citadel should possess the same accomplishments.[29] The king's minister should be conversant with the conclusions of the scriptures and competent in directing wars and making treaties. He should, further, be intelligent, possessed of courage, modest, and capable of keeping secrets.[30] He should also be of high birth, endued with strength of mind, and pure in conduct. If possessed of these qualities, he should be regarded worthy. The commander of the king's forces should be possssed of similar accomplishments.[31] He should also be conversant with the different kinds of battle array and with the uses of engines and weapons. He should be able to bear exposure to rain, cold heat, and wind, and watchful of the

laches of foes.[33] The king, O monarch, should be able to lull his foes into a sense of security. He should not, however, himself trust any one. The reposing of confidence on even his own son is not to be approved of.[38] I have now, O sinless one, declared to thee what the conclusions of the scriptures are Refusal to trust any one has been said to be one of the highest mysteries of king-craft.' "[34]

Section LXXXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What should be the kind of city within which the king should himself dwell? Should he select one already made or should he cause one to be especially constructed? Tell me this, O grandsire!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'It is proper, O Bhārata, to enquire about the conduct that should be followed and the defences that should be adopted with respect to the city in which, O son of Kunti, a king should reside![2] I shall, therefore, discourse to thee on the subject, referring especially to the defences of citadels. Having listened to me, thou shouldst make the arrangements required and conduct thyself attentively as directed.[3] Keeping his eye on the six different kinds of citadels, the king should build his cities containing every kind of affluence and every other article of use in abundance.[4] Those six varieties are water-citadels, earth-citadels, hill-citadels, human-citadels, mud-citadels, and forest-citadels.*[5] The king, with his ministers and the army thoroughly loyal to him, should reside in that city which is defended by a citadel, which contains an abundant stock of rice and weapons, which is protected with impenetrable walls and a trench, which teems with elephants and steeds and cars, which is inhabited by men possessed of learning and versed in the

---

* Water-citadels are those that are surrounded on all sides by a river or rivers, or the sea. Earth-citadels are those that are built on plains, fortified with high walls and encircled with trenches all around. Humancitadels are unfortified cities properly protected by guards and a loyal population.—T.

mechanical arts, where provisions of every kind have been well stored, whose population is virtuous in conduct and clever in business and consists of strong and energetic men and animals, which is adorned with many open squares and rows of shops, where the behaviour of all persons is righteous, where peace prevails, where no danger exists, which blazes with beauty and resounds with music and songs, where the houses are all spacious, where the residents number among them many brave and wealthy individuals, which echoes with the chaunt of Vedic hymns, where festivities and rejoicings frequently take place, and where the deities are always worshipped.*[6-10] Residing there, the king should be employed in filling his treasury, increasing his forces, enhancing the number of his friends, and establishing courts of justice. He should check all abuses and evils in both his cities and provinces.[11] He should be employed in collecting provisions of every kind and in filling his arsenals with care. He should also increase his stores of rice and other grain, and strengthen his counsels (with wisdom).[12] He should, further, enhance his stores of fuel, iron, chaff, charcoal, timber, horns, bones, bamboos, marrow, oils and ghee, fat, honey, medicines,[13] flax, resinous exhudations, rice, weapons, shafts, leather, catgut (for bow-strings), canes, and strings and cords made of *munja* grass and other plants and creepers.[14] He should also increase the number of tanks and wells containing large quantities of water, and should protect all juicy trees.†[15] He should entertain with honor and attention preceptors (of different sciences), *Ritwijas*, and priests, mighty bowmen, persons skilled in architecture, astronomers and astrologers, and physicians,[16] as also all men possessed of wisdom and intelligence and self-restraint and cleverness and courage and learning and high-birth and energy of mind, and capable of close application to all kinds of work.[17] The king should honor the righteous and chastise the unrighteous. He should, acting with

---

* Nilakantha says that this has reference to the second variety of citadels mentioned in the previous verse.—T.

† Such as banian, peepul, &c. These afford refreshing shade to sunburnt travellers.—T.

resolution, set the several orders to their respective duties.[18] Ascertaining properly, by means of spies, the outward behaviour and the state of mind of the inhabitants of his city and provinces, he should adopt those measures that may be required.[19] The king should himself supervise his spies and counsels, his treasury, and the agencies for inflicting chastisements. Upon these everything may be said to depend.[20] With spies constituting his sight, the king should ascertain all the acts and intentions of his foes, friends, and neutrals.[21] He should then, with heedfulness, devise his own measures, honoring those that are loyal to him and punishing those that are hostile.[22] The king should always adore the gods in sacrifices and make gifts without giving pain to anybody. He should protect his subjects, never doing anything that may obstruct or thwart righteousness.[23] He should always maintain and protect the helpless, the masterless, and the old, and women that are widows.[24] The king should always honor the ascetics and make unto them gifts, at proper seasons, of cloths and vessels and food.[25] The king should, with attentive care, inform the ascetics (within his dominions) of the state of his own self, of all his measures, and of the kingdom, and should always behave with humility in their presence.[26] When he sees ascetics of high birth and great learning that have abandoned all earthly objects, he should honor them with gifts of beds and seats and food.[27] Whatever the nature of the distress into which he may fall, he should confide in an ascetic. The very robbers repose confidence upon persons of that character.[28] The king should place his wealth in charge of an ascetic and should take wisdom from him. He should not, however, always wait upon them or worship them on all occasions.*[29] From among those residing in his own kingdom, he should select one for friendship. Similarly, he should select another from among those that reside in the kingdom of his foe. He should select a third from among those residing in the forests, and a

* 'Take wisdom,' i. e., consult with them. 'Should not always wait upon them, &c.,' lest robbers should kill them, suspecting them to be depositaries of the king's wealth.—T.

fourth from among these dwelling in the kingdoms paying tribute to him.[20] He should show hospitality towards and bestow honors upon them, and assign them the means of sustenance. He should behave towards the ascetics dwelling in the kingdoms of foes and in the forests in the same way as towards those that reside in his own kingdom.[21] Engaged in penances and of rigid vows, they would, if calamity overtakes the king and if he solicits protection, grant him what he wants.[22] I have now told thee in brief the indications of the city in which the king should reside.' "[23]

SECTION LXXXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How, O king, may a kingdom be consolidated, and how should it be protected? I desire to know this. Tell me all this, O bull of Bharata's race!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen to me with concentrated attention. I shall tell thee how a kingdom may be consolidated, and how also it may be protected.[2] A headman should be selected for each village. Over ten villages (or ten headmen) there should be one superintendent. Over two such superintendents there should be one officer (having the control, therefore, of twenty villages). Above the latter should be appointed persons under each of whom should be a century of villages; and above the last kind of officers, should be appointed men each of whom should have a thousand villages under his control.[3] The headman should ascertain the characteristics of every person in the village and all the faults also that need correction. He should report everything to the officer (who is above him and is) in charge of ten villages. The latter, again, should report the same to the officer (who is above him and is) in charge of twenty villages.[4] The latter, in his turn, should report the conduct of all the persons within his dominion to the officer (who is above him and is) in charge of a hundred villages.[5] The village headman should have control over all the produce and the possessions of the village. Every headman should contribute his share for maintaining the lord of ten villages, and the latter should do the same for supporting the lord of

twenty villages.[6] The lord of a hundred villages should receive every honor from the king and should have for his support a large village, O chief of the Bharatas, populous and teeming with wealth.[7] Such a village, so assigned to a lord of a hundred villages, should be, however, within the control of the lord of a thousand villages. That high officer, again, *viz.*, the lord of a thousand villages, should have a minor town for his support.[8] He should enjoy the grain and gold and other possessions derivable from it. He should perform all the duties of it's wars and other internal affairs pertaining to it.[9] Some virtuous minister, with watchfulness, should exercise supervision over the administrative affairs and mutual relations of those officers. In every town, again, there should be an officer for attending to every matter relating to his jurisdiction.[10] Like some planet of dreadful form moving above all the asterisms below, the officer (with plenary powers) mentioned last should move and act above all the officers subordinate to him. Such an officer should ascertain the conduct of those under him through his spies.[11] Such high officers should protect the people from all persons of murderous disposition, all men of wicked deeds, all who rob the wealth of other people, and all who are full of deceit, and all of whom are regarded to be possessed by the devil.[12] Taking note of the sales and the purchases, the state of the roads, the food and dress, and the stocks and profits, of the those that are engaged in trade, the king should levy taxes on them.[13] Ascertaining on all occasions the extent of the manufactures, the receipts and expences of those that are engaged in them, and the state of the arts, the king should levy taxes upon the artisans in respect of the arts they follow.[14] The king, O Yudhishthira, may take high taxes, but he should never levy such taxes as would emasculate his people.[15] No tax should be levied without ascertaining the outturn and the amount of labour that has been necessary to produce it. Nobody would work or seek for outturns without sufficient cause.[16]* The

* The sense seems to be that if a sufficient margin of profit, capable of maintaining one at ease, be not left, one would refrain absolutely

king should, after reflection, levy taxes in such a way that he and the person who labours to produce the article taxed may both share the value.[17] The king should not, by his thirst, destroy his own foundations as also those of others. He should always avoid those acts in consequence of which he may become an object of hatred to his people. Indeed, by acting in this way he may succeed in winning popularity.[18] The subjects hate that king who earns a notoriety for voraciousness of appetite (in the matter of taxes and imposts). Whence can a king who becomes an object of hatred have prosperity? Such a king can never acquire what is for his good.[19] A king who is possessed of sound intelligence should milk his kingdom after the analogy of (men acting in the matter of) calves. If the calf be permitted to suck, it grows strong, O Bhārata, and bears heavy burthens.[20] If, on the other hand, O Yudhishthira, the cow be milked too much, the calf becomes lean and fails to do much service to the owner. Similarly, if the kingdom be drained much, the subjects fail to achieve any act that is great.[21] That king who protects his kingdom himself and shows favour to his subjects (in the matter of taxes and imposts) and supports himself upon what is easily obtained, succeeds in earning many grand results.[22] Does not the king then obtain wealth sufficient for enabling him to cope with his wants?* The entire kingdom, in that case, becomes to him his treasury, while that which is his treasury becomes his bed chamber.[23] If the inhabitants of the cities and the provinces be poor, the king should, whether they depend upon him immediately or mediately, show them compassion to the best of his power.[24] Chastising all robbers that infest the outskirts, the king should protect the people of his villages and make them happy. The subjects, in that case, becoming sharers of the king's weal and woe, feel exceedingly gratified with him.[25] Thinking, in the first instance,

---

from work. The king, therefore, in taxing the out-turns of work, should leave such a margin of profit to the producers.—T.

* The sense is that the subjects then, on occasions of their sovereign's wants, hasten to place their resources at his disposal.—T.

of collecting wealth, the king should repair to the chief centres of his kingdom one after another and endeavour to inspire his people with fright.[26] He should say unto them,—Here, calamity threatens us. A great danger has arisen in consequence of the acts of the foe! There is every reason, however, to hope that the danger will pass away, for the enemy, like a bamboo that has flowered, will very soon meet with destruction.[27] Many foes of mine, having risen up and combined with a large numbers of robbers, desire to put our kingdom into difficulties, for meeting with destruction themselves.[28] In view of this great calamity fraught with dreadful danger, I solicit your wealth for devising the means of your protection.[29] When the danger passes away, I will give you what I now take. Our foes, however, will not give back what they (if unopposed) will take from you by force.[30] On the other hand, (if unopposed), they will even slay all your relatives beginning with your very spouses! You certainly desire wealth for the sake of your children and wives.[31] I am glad at your prosperity, and I besuch you as I would my own children. I shall take from you what it may be within your power to give me. I do not wish to give pain to any one.[32] In seasons of calamity, you should, like strong bulls, bear such burthens. In seasons of distress, wealth should not be so dear to you![33]—A king conversant with the considerations relating to Time should, with such agreeable, sweet, and complimentary words, send his agents and collect imposts from his people.[34] Pointing out to them the necessity of repairing his fortifications and of defraying the expenses of his establishment and other heads, inspiring them with the fear of foriegn invasion, and impressing them with the necessity that exists for protecting them and enabling them to ensure the means of living in peace, the king should levy imposts upon the Vaiçyas of his realm.[35] If the king disregards the Vaiçyas, they become lost to him, and abandoning his dominions remove themselves to the woods. The king should, therefore, behave with leniency towards them.[36] The king, O son of Prithā, should always conciliate and protect the Vaiçyas, adopt measures for inspiring them with a sense of security

and for ensuring them in the enjoyment of what they possess, and always do what is agreeable to them.[37] The king, O Bhārata, should always act in such a way towards the Vaiçyas that their productive powers may be enhanced. The Vaiçyas increase the strength of a kingdom, improve its agriculture, and develop its trade.[38] A wise king, therefore, should always gratify them. Acting with heedfulness and leniency, he should levy mild imposts upon them.[39] It is always easy to behave with goodness towards the Vaiçyas. There is nothing productive of greater good to a kingdom, O Yudhishthira, than the adoption of such behaviour towards the Vaiçyas of the realm.' "[40]

Section LXXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, how should the king behave if, notwithstanding his great wealth, he desires for more!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'A king, desirous of earning religious merit, should devote himself to the good of his subjects and protect them according to considerations of place and time and to the best of his intelligence and power.[2] He should, in his dominions, adopt all such measures as would in his estimation secure their good as also his own.[3] A king should milk his kingdom like a bee gathering honey from plants.* He should act like the keeper of a cow who draws milk from her without boring her udders and without starving the calf.[4] The king should (in the matter of taxes) act like the leech drawing blood mildly. He should conduct himself towards his subjects like a tigress in the matter of carrying her cubs, touching them with her teeth but never piercing them therewith.[5] He should behave like a mouse which though possessed of sharp and pointed teeth still cuts the feet of sleeping animals in such a manner that they do not at all become conscious of it.[6] A little by little should be taken from a growing subject and by this means should he be shorn. The demand

---

* I. e., without injuring the source.—T.

should then be increased gradually till what is taken assumes a fair proportion.[7] The king should enhance the burthens of his subjects gradually like a person gradually increasing the burthens of a young bullock. Acting with care and mildness, he should at last put the reins on them.[8] If the reins are thus put, they would not become untractable. Indeed, adequte measures should be employed for making them obedient. Mere entreaties to reduce them to subjection would not do.[9] It is impossible to behave equally towards all men. Conciliating those that are foremost, the common people should be reduced to obedience.[10] Producing disunion (through the agency of their leaders) among the common people who are to bear the burthens, the king should himself come forward to conciliate them and then enjoy in happiness what he will succeed in drawing from them.[11] The king should never impose taxes unseasonably and on persons unable to bear them. He should impose them gradually and with conciliation, in proper season and according to due forms.[12] These contrivances that I declare unto thee are legitimate means of kingcraft. They are not reckoned as methods fraught with deceit. One who seeks to govern steeds by improper methods only makes them furious.[13] Drinking-shops, public women, pimps, actors, gamblers and keepers of gaming houses, and other persons of this kind,[14] who are sources of disorders to the state, should all be checked. Residing within the realm, these afflict and injure the better classes of the subjects.[15] Nobody should ask anything of any one when there is no distress. Manu himself in days of old has laid down this injunction in respect of all men.*[16] If all men were to live by asking or begging and abstain from work, the world would doubtless come to an end.[17] The king alone is competent to restrain and check. That king who does not restrain his

---

* The Bengal reading of the first line of this verse is vicious. The Bombay reading *kinchidanāpadi* (for *Kasyānchidāpadi*) is the correct one. The commentator explains that this has reference to alms, loans, and taxes. Both the Bengali translators have made nonsense of this and the following verse.—T.

subjects (from sin) earns a fourth part of the sins committed by his people (in consequence of the absence of royal protection). This is the declaration of the *Çrutis*.[18] Since the king shares the sins of his subjects like their merits, he should, therefore, O monarch, restrain those subjects of his that are sinful.[19] The king that neglects to restrain them becomes himself sinful. He earns (as already said) a fourth part of their sins as he does a fourth part of their merits.[20] The following faults of which I speak should be checked. They are such as impoverish every one. What wicked act is there that a person governed by passion would not do?[21] A person governed by passion indulges in stimulants and meat, and appropriates the wives and the wealth of other people, and sets a bad example (for imitation by others).[22] They that do not live upon alms may beg in seasons of distress. The king should, observant of righteousness, make gifts unto them from compassion but not from fear.[23] Let there be no beggars in thy kingdom, nor robbers. It is the robbers (and not virtuous men) that give unto beggars. Such givers are not real benefactors of men.[24] Let such men reside in thy dominions as advance the interests of others and do them good, but not such as exterminate others.[25] Those officers, O king, that take from the subjects more than what is due should be punished. Thou shouldst then appoint others so that these will take only what is due.[26] Agriculture, rearing of cattle, trade and other acts of a similar nature, should be caused to be carried on by many persons on the principle of division of labor.*[27] If a person engaged in agriculture, cattle-rearing, or trade, becomes inspired with a sense of insecurity (in consequence of theives and tyrannical officers), the king, as a consequence, incurs infamy.[28] The king should always honor those subjects of his that are rich and should say unto them,—Do ye, with me, advance the interests of the people![29]—In every kingdom, they that are wealthy constitute an estate in the realm. Without doubt, a wealthy person is the foremost

---

* *Karmabhedatah* is explained differently by Nilakantha. He thinks that it means 'lest those acts suffer injury.'—T.

of men.*[30] He that is wise, or courageous, or wealthy, or influential, or righteous, or engaged in penances, or truthful in speech, or gifted with intelligence, assists in protecting (his fellow-subjects).[31]

"'For these reasons, O monarch, do thou love all creatures, and display the qualities of truth, sincerity, absence of wrath, and abstention from injury![33] Thou shouldst thus wield the rod of chastisement, and enhance thy treasury and support thy friends and consolidate thy kingdom thus, practising the qualities of truthfulness and sincerity and supported by thy friends, treasury, and forces!'"[33]

SECTION LXXXIX.

"Bhishma said,—'Let not such trees as yield edible fruits be cut down in thy dominions. Fruits and roots constitute the property of the Brāhmanas. The sages have declared this to be an ordinance of religion.[1] The surplus, after supporting the Brāhmanas, should go to the support of other people. Nobody should take anything by doing an injury to the Brāhmanas.[2]† If a Brāhmana, afflicted for want of support, desires to abandon a kingdom for obtaining livelihood (elsewhere), the king, O monarch, should, with affection and respect, assign unto him the means of sustenance.[3] If he does not still abstain (from leaving the kingdom), the king should repair to an assembly of Brāhmanas and say—Such a Brāhmana is leaving the kingdom. In whom shall my people then find an authority for guiding them?[4]‡—If after this, he does not give up his intention of leaving, and says anying, the king should say unto him—Forget the past!—This, O son

---

* *Anga* is literally a part. The idea, however, is that the wealthy form an estate in the realm. *Kakud* is the hump of the bull. The meaning, of course, is that the man of wealth occupies a very superior position.—T.

† I. e, before the Brāhmanas get their fill.—T.

‡ The Brāhmanas are authorities for guiding other men. When, therefore, a particular Brāhmana leaves the kingdom, the people lose in him a friend, teacher, and guide.—T.

of Kunti, is the eternal way of royal duty.*[5] The king should further say unto him,—Indeed, O Brāhmana, people say that that only should be assigned to a Brāhmana which would be just sufficient for maintaining him. I, however, do not accept that opinion. On the other hand, I think that if a Brāhmana seeks to leave a kingdom for the king's neglect in providing him with means of support, such means should be assigned to him, and, further, if he intends to take that step for procuring the means of luxury, he should still be requested to stay and supplied with even those means.†[6]—Agriculture, cattle-rearing, and trade, provide all men with the means of living. A knowledge of the Vedas, however, provide them with the means of obtaining heaven.[7] They, therefore, that obstruct the study of the Vedas and the cause of Vedic practices, are to be regarded as enemies of society.‡ It is for the extermination of these that Brahman created Kshatriyas.[8] Subdue thy foes, protect thy subjects, worship the deities in sacrifices, and fight battles with courage, O delighter of the Kurus.[9] A king should protect those that deserve protection. The king who does this is the best of rulers. Those kings that do not exercise the duty of protection live a vain life.[10] For the benefit of all his subjects the king should always seek to ascertain the acts and thoughts of all, O Yudhishthira; and for that reason he should set spies and secret agents.$[11] Protecting others from thy own, and thy own from others, as also others from others, and thy own from thy own, do thou always

---

* The king should dissuade in the manner indicated in verse 4. If that does not suffice, and if the person intending to leave refers to the king's previous neglect, the king should ask forgiveness and, of course, assign him the means of maintenance.—T.

† The original is elliptical in construction. The *etat* of the first line has been supplied in the translation. In rendering the second line, the second half should come first. The Burdwan version, as usual, is erroneous. K. P. Sing's also is incomplete and inaccurate.—T.

‡ The word used is *Dasyus*, literally, robbers; here, enemies of society and order.—T.

$ Some texts read *Voddhyaryam* for *Boddhyaryam*, and *bhunjita* for *yunjita*.—T.

cherish thy people.[12] Protecting his own self first from every one, the king should protect the Earth. Men of knowledge have said that everything has its root in self.[13] The king should always reflect upon these, *viz.*,—What are his *laches*. to what evil habits he is addicted, what are the sources of his weakness, and what are the sources of his faults.[14] The king should cause secret and trusted agents to wander through the kingdom for ascertaining whether his conduct as displayed on the previous day has or has not met with the approbation of the people.[15] Indeed, he should ascertain whether his conduct is or is not generally praised, or, is or is not acceptable to the people of the provinces, and whether he has or has not succeeded in earning a good name in his kingdom.[16] Amongst those that are virtuous and possessed of wisdom, those that never retreat from battle, and those that do not reside in thy kingdom, those that are dependent on thee,[17] and those that are thy ministers, as well as those that are independent of party, they that praise or blame thee should never be objects of disregard with thee, O Yudhishthira![18]* No man, O sire, can succeed in earning the good opinion of all persons in the world. All persons have friends, foes, and neutrals, O Bhārata![19]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Among persons all of whom are equal in might of arms and accomplishments, whence does one acquire superiority over all the rest, and whence does that one succeed in ruling over them?'[20]

"Bhishma said,—'Creatures that are mobile devour things that are immobile; animals again that have teeth devour those that have no teeth; wrathful snakes of virulent poison devour smaller ones of their own species. (Upon this principle, among human beings also, the king, who is strong, preys upon those that are weak.)[21] The king, O Yudhishthira, should always be heedful of his subjects as also of his foes. If he becomes heedless, they fall upon him like vultures (on carrion).[22] Take care, O king, that the traders in thy king-

---

* I. e., thou shouldst care for such opinion, without being angry with those that censure or blame thee.—T.

dom, who purchase articles at prices high and low (for sale), and who in course of their journeys have to sleep or take rest in forests and inaccessible regions,* be not afflicted by the imposition of heavy taxes.[23] Let not the agriculturists in thy kingdom leave it through oppression ; they, who bear the burthens of the king, support the other residents also of the kingdom.[24]† The gifts made by thee in this world support the gods, *Pitris*, men, *Nāgas*, *Rākshasas*, birds, and animals.[25] These, O Bhārata, are the means of governing a kingdom and protecting its rulers. I shall again discourse to thee on the subject, O son of Pāndu !' "[26]

SECTION XC.

"Bhishma said,—'That foremost of all persons conversant with the Vedas, *viz.*, Utatthya of Angirasa's race, discoursed cheerfully (on a former occasion) unto Yuvanāçwa's son Māndhātri.[1] I shall now, O Yudhishthira, recite to thee everything that Utatthya, that foremost of all persons conversant with the Vedas, had said unto that king.[2]

" 'Utatthya said,—One becomes a king for acting in the interests of righteousness and not for conducting himself capriciously. Know this, O Māndhātri ; the king is, indeed, the protector of the world.[3] If the king acts righteously, he attains to the position of a god.‡ On the other hand, if he acts unrighteously, he sinks into hell.[4] All creatures rest upon righteousness. Righteousness, in its turn, rests upon the king. That king, therefore, who upholds righteousness, is truly a king,[5] That king who is endued with a righteous soul and with every kind of grace is said to be an embodiment of virtue. If a king fails to chastise unrighteousness, the gods desert his mansion and he incurs obloquy among men.[6] The efforts of

---

* I. e., they who have to undergo such privations in carrying on their useful occupation should not be taxed heavily.—T.

† The correct reading is *bharanti*. *Taranti* also may give the same meaning. K. P. Singha has erroneously rendered the second line.—T.

‡ I. e., goes to heaven.—T.

men who are observant of their own duties are always crowned with success. For this reason all men seek to obey the dictates of righteousness which are productive of prosperity.[7] When sinfulness is not restrained, righteous behaviour comes to an end and unrighteous increases greatly.[8] When sinfulness is not restrained, no one can, according to the rights of property as laid down in the scriptures, say—This thing is mine and this is not mine.[9]—When sinfulness prevails in the world, men cannot own and enjoy their own wives and animals and fields and houses.[10] The deities receive no worship, the *Pitris* no offerings in *Çrāddhas*, and guests no hospitality, when sinfulness is not restrained.[11] The regenerate classes do not study the Vedas, or observe high vows, or spread out sacrifices, when sinfulness is not restrained.[12] The minds of men, O king, become weak and confounded like those of persons wounded with weapons, when sinfulness is not restrained.[13] Casting their eyes on both the worlds, the *Rishis* made the king, that superior being, intending that he should be the embodiment of righteousness on Earth.*[14] He is called *Rājan* in whom righteousness shines. That king, again, in whom there is no righteousness, is called a *Vrishala*.†[15] The divine *Dharma* (Righteousness) has another name, viz., *Vrisha*. He who weakens *Vrisha* is known by the name of *Vrishala*. A king should, therefore, advance the cause of Righteousness.[16] All creatures grow in the growth of righteousness, and decay with its decay. Righteousness, therefore, should never be permitted to decay.[17] Righteousness is called *Dharma* because it aids the acquisition and preservation of wealth (*Dhana*). The sages, O king, have declared that *Dharma* restrains and set bounds to all evil

---

* Bhishma says that this discourse is very old. Probably this verse has reference to the writer's idea of the motives that impelled the *Rishis* of *Brahmavarta* when they devised for their Indian colony the kingly form of government.—T.

† This verse gives the etymology of the words *Rājan* and *Vrishala*. He in whom righteousness shines (*rājate*) is a *Rājan*; and he in whom righteousness, called *Vrisha*, disappears, is a *Vrishala*. *Vide* next verse.—T.

acts of men.[18] The Self-born (Brahman) created *Dharma* for the advancement and growth of creatures. For this reason, a king should act according to the dictates of *Dharma* for benefiting his subjects.[19] For this reason also, O tiger among kings, *Dharma* has been said to be the foremost of all things. That foremost of men who rules his subjects righteously is called a king.[20] Disregarding lust and wrath, observe thou the dictates of righteousness. Among all things, O chief of Bharata's race, that conduce to the prosperity of kings, righteousness is the foremost.[21] *Dharma*, again, has sprung from the Brāhmana. For this reason, the Brāhmana should always be worshipped. Thou shouldst, O Mādhātri, gratify with humility the wishes of Brāhmanas.[22] By neglecting to gratify the wishes of Brāhmanas, the king brings danger on himself. In consequence of such neglect, he fails to obtain any accession of friends while his foes increase in number.[23] In consequence of malice towards the Brāhmanas springing from his folly, the goddess of prosperity who had formerly dwelt with him became enraged and deserted the *Asura* Vali the son of Virochana.[24] Deserting the *Asura* she repaired to Indra the chief of the deities. Beholding the goddess living with Purandara, Vali indulged in many vain regrets.[25] This, O puissant one, is the result of malice and pride. Be thou awakened, O Māndhātri, so that the goddess of prosperity may not in wrath desert thee![26] The Crutis declare that Unrighteousness begat a son named Pride upon the goddess of prosperity. This Pride, O king, led many among the gods and the *Asuras* to ruin.[27] Many royal sages also have suffered destruction on his account. Do thou, therefore, awaken, O king! He who succeeds in conquering him becomes a king. He, on the other hand, who suffers himself to be conquered by him, becomes a slave.[28] If, O Māndhātri, thou wishest for an eternal life (of felicity), live as a king should that does not indulge these two, *viz.*, Pride and Unrighteousness![29] Abstain from companionship with him that is intoxicated (with pride), him that is heedless (of the dictates of honesty), him that is a scoffer of religion, him that is insensate, and forbear to pay court to all of them when united.[30] Keep thy self aloof from

the company of ministers whom thou hast once punished and especially of women, as also from mountains and uneven lands and inaccessible fastnesses and elephants and horses and (noxious) reptiles. Thou shouldst also give up wandering in the night, and avoid the faults of stinginess and vanity and boastfulness and wrath.[32] Thou shouldst never have intercourse with unknown women, or those of equivocal sex, or those that are lewd, or those that are the wives of other men, or those that are unmarried virgins.[33] When the king does not restrain vice, a confusion of castes follows, and sinful *Rākshasas*, and persons of neutral sex, and children destitute of limbs or possessed of thick tongues, and idiots, begin to take birth in even respectable families.[34] Therefore, the king should take particular care to act righteously for the benefit of his subjects.[35] If a king acts heedlessly, a great evil becomes the consequence. Unrighteousness increases, causing a confusion of castes.[36] Cold sets in during the summer months, and disappears when its proper season comes. Drought and flood and pestilence afflict the people.[37] Ominous stars arise and awful comets appear on such occasions. Diverse other portents, indicating destruction of the kingdom, make their appearance.[38] If the king does not take measures for his own safety and does not protect his subjects, the latter first meet with destruction and then destruction seizes the king himself.[39] Two persons combining together snatch the wealth of one, and many acting in concert rob the two. The virginity of maidens is defloured. Such a state of things is said to arise from the king's faults.[40] All rights of property come to an end among men, when the king, abandoning righteousness, acts heedlessly.—' "[41]

Section XCI.

"'Utathya said,—If the deity of the clouds pours rain seasonably and the king acts virtuously, the prosperity that ensues maintains the subjects in felicity.[1] That washerman who does not know how to wash away the filth of cloth without taking away its dye, is very unskilful in his profession.[2] That person among Brāhmanas or Kshatriyas or Vaiçyas who,

having fallen away from the proper duties of his order, has become a Cudra, is truly to be compared to such a washerman.[3] Menial service attaches to the Cudra; agriculture to the Vaiçya; the science of chastisement to the Kshatriya; and *Brahmacharyya*, penances, *mantras*, and truth, attach to the Brāhmana.[4] That Kshatriya who knows how to correct the faults of behaviour of the other orders and to wash them clean like a washerman, is really their father and deserves to be their king.[5] The respective ages called *Krita*, *Tretā*, *Dwāpara*, and *Kali*, O bull of Bharata's race, are all dependent on the conduct of the king. It is the king who constitutes the age.[6]* The four orders, the Vedas, and the duties in respect of the four modes of life, all become confused and weakened when the king becomes heedless.[7] The three kinds of Fire, the three Vedas, and sacrifices with *Dakshinā*, all become lost when the king becomes heedless.[8] The king is the creator of all creatures, and the king is their destroyer. That king who is of righteous soul is regarded as the creator, while he that is sinful is regarded as the destroyer.[9] The king's wives, sons, kinsmen, and friends, all become unhappy and indulge in grief when the king becomes heedless.[10] Elephants and steeds and kine and camels and mules and asses and other animals all lose their vigor when the king becomes unrighteous.[11] It is said, O Māndhātri, that the Creator created Power (represented by the king) for the object of protecting Weakness. Weakness is, indeed, a great being, for everything depends upon it.[12]† All creatures worship the king. All creatures are the children of the king. If, therefore, O

---

* The address *Bharatarshabha* is misplaced, seeing that it is Uttathya who is speaking and Māndhātri who is listening. The sense of the verse is that it is the king who causes the age, for if he acts righteously, the age that sets in is *Krita*; if, on the other hand, he acts sinfully, he causes the *Kali* age to set in; &c., &c.,—T.

† He who protects Weakness wins heaven, while he who persecutes it goes to hell. Weakness, thus, is a great thing. Its power, so to say, is such that it can lead to heaven and hell every one with whom it may come into contact.—T.

monarch, the king becomes unrighteous, all creatures come to grief.[13] The eyes of the weak, of the *Muni*, and of the snake of virulent poison, should be regarded as unbearable. Do not, therefore, come into (hostile) contact with the weak.[14] Thou shouldst regard the weak as always subject to humiliation. Take care that the eyes of the Weak do not burn thee with thy kinsmen.[15] In a race scorched by the eyes of the weak, no children take birth. Such eyes burn the race to its very roots. Do not, therefore, come into (hostile) contact with the weak![16] Weakness is more powerful than even the greatest Power, for that Power which is scorched by Weakness becomes totally exterminated.[17] If a person, who has been humiliated or struck, fails, while shrieking for assistance, to obtain a protector, divine chastisement overtakes the king and brings about his destruction.[18] Do not, O sire, while in enjoyment of Power, take wealth from those that are Weak. Take care that the eyes of the Weak do not burn thee like a blazing fire![19] The tears shed by weeping men afflicted with falsehood slay the children and animals of those that have uttered those falsehoods.[20] Like a cow a sinful act perpetrated does not produce immediate fruits.* If the fruit is not seen in the perpetrater himself, it is seen in his son or in his son's son, or daughter's son.[21] When a weak person fails to find a rescuer, the great rod of divine chastisement falls (upon the king).[22] When all the subjects of a king (are obliged by distress to) live like Brāhmanas, by mendicancy, such mendicancy brings destruction upon the king.[23] When all the officers of the king posted in the provinces unite together and act with injustice, the king is then said to bring about a state of unmixed evil upon his kingdom.[24] When the officers of the king extort wealth, by unjust means or acting from lust or avarice, from persons piteously soliciting for mercy, a great destruction then is sure to overtake the king.[25] A mighty tree, first starting into life, grows into large proportions. Numerous creatures then come and seek its shelter. When, however, it is cut down or consumed in a conflagration, those

---

* The keeper of a cow has to wait, till it is calved, for milk.—T.

that had recourse to it for shelter all become homeless.[26]* When the residents of a kingdom perform acts of righteousness and all religious rites, and applaud the good qualities of the king, the latter reaps an accession of affluence. When, on the other hand, the residents, moved by ignorance, abandon righteousness and act unrighteously, the king becomes overtaken by misery.[27] When sinful men whose acts are known are allowed to move among the righteous (without being punished for their misdeeds), Kali then overtakes the rulers of those realms.† When the king causes chastisement to overtake all wicked people, his kingdom thrives in prosperity.[28] The kingdom of that king certainly thrives who pays proper honors to his ministers and employs them in measures of policy and in battles. Such a ruler enjoys the wide Earth for ever.[29] That king who duly honors all good acts and good speeches succeeds in earning great merit.[30] The enjoyment of good things after sharing them with others, paying proper honors to the ministers, and subjugation of persons intoxicated with strength, are said to constitute the great duty of a king.[31] Protecting all men by words, body, and deeds, and never forgiving his son himself (if he has offended), constitute the great duty of the king.[32] The maintenance of those that are weak by sharing with them the things he has and thereby increasing their strength, constitutes the duty of the king.[33] Protection of the kingdom, extermination of robbers, and conquering in battle, constitute the duty of the king.[34] Never to forgive a person however dear if he has committed an offence by act or word, constitutes the duty of the king.[35] Protecting those that solicit shelter as he would protect his own children, and never depriving one of the honors to which he is entitled, constitute the duty of the king.‡[36] Adoring the deities, with a devoted heart, in sacrifices completed by presents, and subdu-

* The sense is, I suppose, that if the king be overtaken by destruction, his officers also do not escape.—T.

† *Rājnah*, Nilakantha thinks, is an accusative plural.—T.

‡ Some texts read *Sāranikān*, meaning traders that make journeys and voyages.—T.

ing lust and envy, constitute the duty of the king.[37] Wiping the tears of the distressed, the helpless, and the old, and inspiring them with joy, constitute the duty of the king.[38] Aggrandising friends, weakening foes, and honoring the good, constitute the duty of the king.[39] Cheerfully observing the obligations of truth, always making gifts of land, entertaining guests, and supporting dependents, constitute the duty of the king.[40] That king who favors those that deserve favors and chastises those that deserve chastisement, earns great merit both here and hereafter.[41] The king is Yama himself. He is, O Māndhātri, the god (incarnate) unto all that are righteous. By subduing his senses he succeeds in acquiring great affluence. By not subduing them he incurs sin.*[42] Paying proper honors unto *Ritwijas* and priests and preceptors, and doing good offices unto them, constitute the duty of the king.[43] Yama governs all creatures without observing distinctions. The king should imitate him in his behaviour by restraining all his subjects duly.[44] The king is said to resemble the Thousand-eyed (Indra) in every respect. That, O bull among men, should be regarded as Righteousness which is regarded as such by him.[45] Thou shouldst, without being heedless, cultivate forgiveness, intelligence, patience, and the love of all creatures. Thou shouldst also ascertain the strength and weakness of all men and learn to distinguish between right and wrong.[46] Thou shouldst conduct thyself with propriety towards all creatures, make gifts, and utter agreeable and sweet words. Thou shouldst maintain the residents of thy city and the provinces in happiness.[47] A king who is not clever, never succeeds in protecting his subjects. Sovereignty, O sire, is a very heavy burthen to bear.[48] Only that king who is possessed of wisdom and courage, and who is conversant

---

* The king is God (incarnate) unto all righteous men, because they may expect everything from him. As regards the second line, the meaning depends upon *bharati*, which, as the commentator explains, means, "obtains affluence or prosperity." For *Pātukah* some texts read *Pāvakah*. The meaning then would be "becomes as a fire", i. e., destroys his own roots, or, probably, "becomes destructive to others."—T.

with the science of chastisement, can protect a kingdom. He, on the other hand, who is without energy and intelligence, and who is not versed in the great science, is incompetent to bear the burthen of sovereignty.[49] Aided by ministers of handsome features and good birth, clever in business, devoted to their master, and possessed of great learning, thou shouldst examine the hearts and acts of all men including the very ascetics in the forests.[50] Conducting thyself thus, thou wilt be able to learn the duties of all orders of men. That will aid thee in observing thy own duties whether when thou art in thy country or when thou repairest to other realms.[51] Amongst these three objects, *viz.*, Virtue, Profit, and Pleasure, Virtue is the foremost. He that is of virtuous soul obtains great happiness both here and hereafter.[52] If men be treated with honor, they can abandon (for the sake of the honor thou mayst give them) their very wives and sons. By attaching good men to himself (by doing good offices unto them), by gifts, sweet words,[53] heedfulness, and purity of behaviour, a king may win great prosperity. Do not, therefore, O Māndhātri, be heedless to these qualities and acts.[54] The king should never be heedless in looking after his own laches as also after those of his foes. He should act in such a way that his foes may not be able to detect his laches, and he should himself assail them when theirs are visible.[55] This is the way in which Vāsava, and Yama, and Vruna, and all the great royal sages have acted. Do thou observe the same conduct.[56] Do thou, O great king, adopt this behaviour which was followed by those royal sages. Do thou soon, O bull of Bharata's race, adopt this heavenly road.[57] The gods, the *Rishis*, the *Pitris*, and the *Gandharvas*, possessed of great energy, sing the praises, both here and hereafter, of that king whose conduct is righteous!—"[58]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by Utatthya, O Bhārata, Māndhātri unhesitatingly did as he was directed, and became the sole lord of the wide Earth.[59] Do thou also, O king, act righteously like Māndhātri. Thou wilt then, after ruling the Earth, obtain an abode in heaven!' "[60]

Section XCII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How should a righteous king, who is desirous of adhering to a course of righteousness, behave? I ask thee this, O foremost of men! Answer me, O grandsire!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old story of what Vāmadeva gifted with great intelligence and acquainted with the true import of everything sang in ancient times.[2] Once upon a time, king Vāsumanas, possessed of knowledge and fortitude and purity of behaviour, asked the great *Rishi* Vāmadeva of high ascetic merit, saying,[3]—Instruct me, O holy one, in words fraught with righteousness and of grave import, as to what that conduct is by observing which I may not fall away from the duties prescribed for me![4]—Unto him of a golden complexion and seated at his ease like Yayāti the son of Nahusha, that foremost of ascetics, viz., Vāmadeva, of great energy, said as follows.[5]

"'Vāmadeva said,—Do thou act righteously. There is nothing superior to Righteousness. Those kings that are observant of righteousness succeed in conquering the whole Earth.[6] That king who regards Righteousness to be the most efficacious means for accomplishing his objects, and who acts according to the counsels of those that are righteous, blazes forth with righteousness.[7] That king who disregards Righteousness and desires to act with brute force, soon falls away from Righteousness and loses both Righteousness and Profit.[8] That king who acts according to the counsels of a vicious and sinful minister becomes a destroyer of righteousness and deserves to be slain by his subjects with all his family. Indeed, he very soon meets with destruction.[9] That king who is incompetent to discharge the duties of state-craft, who is governed by caprice in all his acts, and who indulges in brag, soon meets with destruction even if he happen to be the ruler of the whole Earth.[10] That king, on the other hand, who is desirous of

prosperity, who is free from malice, who has his senses under control, and who is gifted with intelligence, thrives in affluence like the ocean swelling with the waters discharged into it by a hundred streams.[11] He should never consider himself to have a sufficiency of Virtue, enjoyments, wealth, intelligence, and friends.[12] Upon these depends the conduct of the world. By listening to these counsels, a king obtains fame, achievements, prosperity, and subjects.[13] Devoted to virtue, that king who seeks the acquisition of virtue and wealth by such means, and who begins all his measures after reflecting upon their objects, succeeds in obtaining great prosperity.[14] That king who is illiberal, and without affection, who afflicts his subjects by undue chastisements, and who is rash in his acts, soon meets with destruction.[15] That king who is not gifted with intelligence fails to see his own faults. Covered with infamy here, he sinks into hell hereafter.[16] If the king gives proper honor to them that deserve it, makes gifts, and recognises the value of sweet speeches by himself uttering them on all occasions, his subjects then dispel the calamities that overtake him as if these had fallen upon themselves.[17] That king who has no instructor in the ways of righteousness and who never asks others for counsels, and who seeks to acquire wealth by means that caprice suggests, never succeeds in enjoying happiness long.[18] That king, on the other hand, who listens to the instructions of his preceptor in matters connected with virtue, who supervises the affairs of his kingdom himself, and who in all his acquisitions is guided by considerations of virtue, succeeds in enjoying happiness for a long time.—' "[19]

Section XCIII.

" 'Vāmadeva continued,—When the king, who is powerful, acts unrighteously towards the weak, they who take their birth in his race imitate the same conduct.[1] Others, again, imitate that wretch who sets sin agoing. Such imitation of the man ungoverned by restraints soon brings destruction upon the kingdom.[2] The conduct of a king who is observant

of his proper duties, is accepted by men in general as a model for imitation. The conduct, however, of a king who falls away from his duties, is not tolerated by his very kinsfolk.*[3] That rash king who, disregarding the injunctions laid down in the scriptures, acts with high-handedness in his kingdom, very soon meets with destruction.[4] That Kshatriya who does not follow the conduct observed from days of old by other Kshatriyas conquered or unconquered, is said to fall away from Kshatriya duties.[5] Having seized in battle a royal foe that did some good to the conqueror on a former occasion, that king who, does not, actuated by malice, pay him honors, is said to fall away from Kshatriya duties.[6] The king should display his power, live cheerfully, and do what is necessary in seasons of danger. Such a ruler becomes the beloved of all creatures and never falls away from prosperity.[7] If thou dost disservice to any person, thou shouldst, when the turn comes, do him service. One who is not loved becomes an object of love if he does what is agreeable.[8] Untruthful speeches should be avoided. Thou shouldst do good to others without being solicited. Thou shouldst never abandon righteousness from lust or wrath or malice.[9] Do not give harsh answers when questioned by anybody. Do not utter undignified speeches. Never be in a hurry to do anything. Never indulge in malice. By such means is a foe won over.[10] Do not give way to exclusive joy when anything agreeable occurs, nor suffer thyself to be overwhelmed with sorrow when anything disagreeable occurs. Never indulge in grief when thy pecuniary resources are exhausted, and always remember the duty of doing good to thy subjects.[11] That king who always does what is agreeable by virtue of his disposition achieves success in all his measures and is never shorn of prosperity.[12] The king should always, with heedfulness, cherish that devoted servant who abstains from doing what is injurious to his master and who always does what is for his good.[13] He should

---

* K. P. Singha, I think, translates this verse erroneously. The Burdwan version is correct. The speaker, in this verse, desires to illustrate the force of righteous conduct.—T.

appoint in all great affairs persons that have subjugated their senses, that are devotedly loyal and of pure behaviour, and that are possessed of ability.[14] That person, who by the possession of such qualifications pleases the king and who is never heedless in taking care of the interests of his master, should be appointed by the king in the affairs of his kingdom.[15] On the other hand, the king becomes divested of prosperity by appointing to important offices men that are fools and slaves of their senses, that are covetous and of disrespectable conduct, that are deceitful and hypocritical, that are malicious, wicked-souled, and ignorant, that are low-minded, and addicted to drink, gambling, women, and hunting.[16-17] That king, who, first protecting his own self, protects others that deserve protection, feels the satisfaction of finding his subjects growing in prosperity. Such a king succeeds also in obtaining greatness.[18] A king should, by secret agents that are devoted to him, watch the conduct and acts of other kings. By such means can he obtain superiority.[19] Having injured a powerful king, one should not comfort himself with the thought that he (the injurer) lives at a great distance from the injured. Such kings when injured fall upon the injurer like the hawk swooping down upon its prey, in moments of heedlessness.[20] A king whose power has been consolidated and who is confident of his own strength, should assail a neighbour who is weaker than himself but never one that is stronger.[21] A king who is devoted to virtue, having acquired the sovereignty of the Earth by prowess, should protect his subjects righteously and slaughter foes in battle.[22] Everything belonging to this world is destined to destruction. Nothing here is durable. For this reason, the king, adhering to righteousness, should protect his subjects righteously.[23] The defence of forts, battle, administration of justice, consultations on questions of policy, and keeping the subjects in happiness, these five acts contribute to enlarge the dominions of a king.[24] That king who takes proper care of these is regarded to be the best of kings. By always attending to these, a king succeeds in protecting his kingdom.[25] It is impossible, however, for one man to supervise all these matters at all times. Making over such supervision to his

ministers, a king may govern the Earth for ever.*[26] The people make such a person their king who is liberal, who shares all objects of enjoyment with others, who is possessed of a mild disposition, who is of pure behaviour, and who will never abandon his subjects.[27] He is obeyed in the world who, having listened to counsels of wisdom, accepts them, abandoning his own opinions.[28] That king who does not tolerate the counsels of a well-wisher in consequence of their opposition to his own views, who listens with inattention to what is said unto him in opposition to his views,[29] and who does not always follow the conduct of high and noble persons conquered or unconquered, is said to fall away from the duties of Kshatriyas.[30] From ministers that have once been chastised, from women in especial, from mountains and inaccessible regions, from elephants and horses and reptiles,[31] the king should always, with heedfulness, protect his own self.† That king who, abandoning his chief ministers, makes favourites of low persons, soon falls into distress, and never succeeds in compassing the (intended) ends of his measures.[32] That king of infirm soul, who, yielding to the influence of wrath and malice, does not love and honor those amongst his kinsmen that are possessed of good qualities, is said to live on the very verge of destruction.[33] That king, who attaches to himself accomplished persons by doing good to them even though he may not like them at heart, succeeds in enjoying fame for ever.[34] Thou shouldst never impose taxes unseasonably. Thou shouldst not be grieved at the occurrence of anything disagreeable, nor rejoice exceedingly at anything agreeable. Thou shouldst always set thyself to the accomplishment of good acts.[35] Who amongst the dependent kings is truly devoted to thee, and who is loyal to thee from fear, and who amongst them has faults,

---

* *Teshu*, i. e., unto the ministers already spoken of.—T.

† The sense of the passage is that the king should not ride vicious elephants and horses, should guard himself against poisonous reptiles and the arts of women, and should take particular care while ascending mountains or entering inaccessible regions such as forests and woody valleys.—T.

should always be ascertained by thee.[36] The king, even if he be powerful, should trust them that are weak, for in moments of heedlessness the weak may assail the powerful like a flock of vultures seizing their prey.[37] A man of sinful soul seeks to injure his master even if the latter be sweet-speeched and possessed of every accomplishment. Do not, therefore, place thy confidence upon such men.[38] Nahusha's son Yayāti, in declaring the mysteries of king-craft, said that a person engaged in ruling men should slay even foes that are contemptible.—' "[39]

SECTION XCIV.

" 'Vāmadeva said,—The king should win victories without battles. Victories achieved by battles are not spoken of highly, O monarch, by the wise.[1] When the sovereign's own power has not been confirmed, he should not seek to make new acquisitions. It is not proper that a king whose power has not been consolidated should seek to make such acquisitions.[2] The power of that king whose dominions are wide and abound with wealth, whose subjects are loyal and contented, and who has a large number of officers, is said to be confirmed.[3] That king whose soldiery are contented, gratified (with pay and prize), and competent to deceive foes, can, with even a small force, subjugate the whole Earth.[4] The power of that king whose subjects, whether belonging to the cities or the provinces, have compassion for all creatures, and possessed of wealth and grain, is said to be confirmed.[5] When the king thinks that his power is greater than that of a foe, he should then, aided by his intelligence, seek to acquire the latter's territories and wealth.[6] A king whose resources are increasing, who is compassionate unto all creatures, who never loses any time by procrastination, and who is careful in protecting his own self, succeeds in earning advancement.[7] That king who behaves deceitfully towards his own people that have not been guilty of any fault, shears his own self like a person cutting down a forest with an axe.[8] If the king does not always attend to the task of slaying his foes, the latter do

not diminish. That king, again, who knows to kill his own wrath, finds no enemies.[9] If the king be possessed of wisdom, he would never do any act that is disapproved by good men, He would, on the other hand, always engage himself in such acts as would lead to his own benefit and that of others.[10] That king who, having accomplished all his duties, becomes happy in the approbation of his own conscience, has never to incur the reproach of others and indulge in regrets.[11] That king who observes such conduct towards men succeeds in subjugating both the worlds and enjoy the fruits of victory.—'[12]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by Vāmadeva, king Vasumanas did as he was directed. Without doubt, thyself also, following these counsels, shalt succeed in conquering both the worlds.' "[13]

Section XCV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'If a Kshatriya desires to subjugate another Kshatriya in battle, how should the former act in the matter of that victory? Questioned by me, do thou answer it!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The king, with or without an army at his back, entering the dominions of the king he would subjugate, should say unto all the people,—I am your king! I shall always protect you![2] Give me the just tribute or encounter me in battle!—If the people accept him for their king, there need not be any fighting.[3] If, without being Kshatriyas by birth, they show signs of hostility, they should then, observant as they are of practices not laid down for them, be sought to be restrained by every means.[4] People of the other orders do take up arms (for resisting the invader) if they behold the Kshatriya unarmed for fight, incapable of protecting himself, and making too much of the enemy.'*[5]

---

* The sense is that although it is laid down that kings should fight with those only that are of the kingly order, yet when Kshatriyas do not arm themselves but in their stead the other orders, for resisting an invader, the latter may fight for putting down those that so arm themselves against him.—T.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, how should that Kshatriya king conduct himself in fight who advances against another Kshatriya king?'[6]

"Bhishma said,—'A Kshatriya must not put on armour for fighting a Kshatriya unclad in mail. One should fight one, and abandon the opponent when the latter becomes disabled.[7]* If the enemy comes clad in mail, his opponent also should put on mail. If the enemy advances backed by an army, one should, backed by an army, challenge him to battle.[8] If the enemy fights aided by deceit, he should be met with the aid of deceit. If, on the other hand, he fights fairly, he should be resisted with fairs means.[9] One should not on horse-back proceed against a car-warrior. A car-warrior should proceed against a car-warrior. When an antagonist has fallen into distress, he should not be struck; nor should one that has been frightened, nor one that has been vanquished.†[10] Neither poisoned nor barbed arrows should be used. These are the weapons of the wicked. One should fight righteously, without yielding to wrath or desiring to slay.[11] A weak or wounded man should not be slain, or one that is sonless; or one whose weapon has been broken; or one that has fallen into distress; or one whose bowstring has been cut; or one that has lost his vehicle. A wounded opponent should either be sent to his own home, or, if brought to the victor's quarters, should have his wounds attended to by skilful surgeons.[12] When in consequence of a quarrel between righteous kings, a righteous warrior falls into distress, (his wounds should be attended to and) when cured he should be set at liberty.

---

* The Bengal reading of this verse, which I adopt, is better than the Bombay reading. The Bengal reading is more consistent with what follows in verse 8. If the Bombay reading be adopted, the translation would run thus:—"One should not fight a Kshatriya in battle unless he has put on armour. One should fight with one, after challenging in these words:—'Shoot, for I am shooting at thee!'" K. P. Singha's rendering is substantially correct. The Burdwan version, as usual, is wrong.—T.

† The distress referred to here is of being unhorsed or deprived of car or of weapons, &c.—T.

This is the eternal duty.[13] Manu himself, the son of the Self-born (Brahman), has said that battles should be fought fairly. The righteous should always act righteously towards those that are righteous. They should adhere to righteousness without destroying it.[14] If a Kshatriya, whose duty it is to fight righteously, wins a victory by unrighteous means, he becomes sinful. Of deceitful conduct, such a person is said to slay his own self.[15] Such is the practice of those that are wicked. Even he that is wicked should be subdued by fair means. It is better to lay down life itself in the observance of righteousness than to win victory by sinful means.[16] Like a cow, O king, perpetrated sin does not immediately produce its fruits. That sin overwhelms the perpetrator after consuming his roots and branches.[17] A sinful person, acquiring wealth by sinful means, rejoices greatly. But the sinner, gaining advancement by sinful ways, becomes wedded to sin.[18] Thinking that virtue has no efficacy, he jeers at men of righteous behaviour. Disbelieving in virtue, he at last meets with destruction.[19] Though enmeshed in the noose of Varuna, he still regards himself immortal. Like unto a large leathern bag puffed up with wind, the sinner dissociates himself entirely from virtue. Soon, however, he disappears like a tree on the river side washed away with its very roots.[20] Then people, beholding him resemble an earthen pot broken on a stony surface, speak of him as he deserves. The king should, therefore, seek both victory and the enhancement of his resources, by righteous means.' "[21]

Section XCVI.

"Bhishma said,—'A king should never desire to subjugate the Earth by unrighteous means even if such subjugation would make him the sovereign of the whole Earth. What king is there that would rejoice after obtaining victory by unfair means ?[1] A victory stained by unrighteousness is uncertain and never leads to heaven. Such a victory, O bull of Bharata's race, weakens both the king and the Earth.[2] A warrior whose armour has fallen off, or who begs for quarter,

saying—I am thine,—or joining his hands, or who has laid aside his weapon, may simply be seized but never slain.[3] If a hostile king be vanquished by the troops of the invader, the latter should not himself fight his vanquished foe. On the other hand, he should bring him to his palace and pursuade him for a whole year to say—I am thy slave !—Whether he says or does not say this, the vanquished foe, by living for a year in the house of his victor, gains a neew lease of life.*[4] If a king succeeds in bringing by force a maiden from the house of his vanquished foe, he should keep her for a year and ask her whether she would wed him or any one else. If she does not agree, she should then be sent back. He should behave similarly in respect of all other kinds of wealth (such a slaves) that are acquired by force.[5] The king should never appropriate the wealth confiscated from thieves and others awaiting execution. The kine taken from the enemy by force should be given away to the Brāhmanas so that they may drink the milk of those animals. The bulls taken from the enemy should be set to agricultural work or returned to the enemy.†[6] It is laid down that a king should fight one that is a king. One that is not a king should never strike one that is a king.[7] If a Brāhmana, desirous of peace, fearlessly goes between two contending armies, both should immediately abstain from fight.[8] He would break an eternal rule that would slay or wound such a Brāhmana. If any Kshatriya breaks that rule, he would become a wretch of his order.[9] In addition to this, that Kshatriya who destroys righteousness and transgresses all wholesome barriers does not deserve to be reckoned as a Kshatriya and should be driven from society.[10] A king desirous of obtaining victory should never follow such conduct. What gain can be greater than victory won righteously ?[11] The excitable classes (of a kingdom recently conquered) should, without delay, be conciliated with soothing speeches and gifts.

---

* The original is very elliptical. I, therefore, expand it after the manner of the commentator. Regarding the last half of the second line, I do not follow Nilkantha in his interpretation.—T.

† This verse also is exceedingly elliptical in the original.—T.

This is a good policy for the king to adopt.[12] If instead of doing this, these men be sought to be governed with impolicy, they would then leave the kingdom and side with (the victor's) foes and wait for the accession of calamities (in order that they may then make head against the victor).[13] Discontented men, watching for the calamities of the king, promptly side with the latter's foes, O monarch, in times of danger.[14] An enemy should not be deceived by unfair means. Nor should he be wounded mortally. For, if struck mortally, his very life may pass away.*[15] If a king possessed of little resources be gratified therewith, he would regard life alone to be much.†[16] That king whose dominions are extensive and full of wealth, whose subjects are loyal, whose servants and officers are all contented, is said to have his roots firm.[17] That king whose *Ritwijas* and priests and preceptors and others about him that are well-versed in the scriptures and deserving of honors are all duly respected, is said to be conversant with the ways of the world.[18] It was by such behaviour that Indra got the sovereignty of the world. It is by this behaviour that earthly kings succeed in obtaining the status of Indra.[19] King Pratarddana, subjugating his foes in great battle, took all their wealth, including their very grain and medicinal herbs, but left their land untouched.[20] King Divodāsa, after subjugating his foes, brought away the very remnants of their sacrificial fires, their clarified butter (intended for libations), and their food. For this reason he was deprived of the merit of his conquests.‡[21] King Nābhāga (after his conquests) gave away whole kingdoms with their rulers as sacrificial presents unto the Brāhmanas, excepting the wealth of learned Brāhmanas and ascetics.[22] The behaviour, O Yudhishthira, of all the righteous kings of old,

---

* The sense seems to be that in fighting with the aid of deceit, the enemy should not be slain outright, such slaughter being sinful. Slaying an enemy, however, in fair fight is meritorious.—T.

† This verse is not intelligible, nor does it seem to be connected with what goes before.—T.

‡ The meaning is that king Pratarddana took what is proper to be taken and hence he incurred no sin. King Divodāsa, however, by taking what he should not have taken, lost all the merit of his conquests.—T.

was excellent, and I approve of it wholly.[23] That king who desires his own prosperity should seek for conquests by the aid of every kind of excellence but never with that of deceit or with pride.'"[24]

SECTION XCVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'There are no practices, O king, more sinful than those of the Kshatriyas! In marching or in battle, the king slays large multitudes.*[1] By what acts then does the king win regions of felicity? O bull of Bharata's race, tell me this, O learned one, unto me that desire to know!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'By chastising the wicked, by attaching and cherishing the good, by sacrifices and gifts, kings become pure and cleansed.[3] It is true, kings desirous of victory afflict many creatures, but after victory they advance and aggrandise all.[4] By the power of gifts, sacrifices, and penances, they destroy their sins, and their merit increases in order that they may be able to do good to all creatures.[5] The reclaimer of a field, for reclaiming it, takes up both paddy blades and weeds. His action, however, instead of destroying the blades of paddy, makes them grow more vigorously.[6] They that wield weapons, destroy many that deserve destruction. Such extensive destruction, however, causes the growth and advancement of those that remain.[7] He who protects people from plunder, slaughter, and affliction, he, in consequence of thus protecting their lives from robbers, comes to be regarded as the giver of wealth, of life, and of food.[8] The king, therefore, by thus adoring the deities by means of a union of all sacrifices whose *Dakshinā* is the dispelling of every body's fear, enjoys every kind of

---

* Nilakantha takes *Mahājanam* to mean the Vaicya traders that accompany all forces. Following him, the vernacular translators take that word in the same sense. There can be little doubt, however, that this is erroneous. The word means "vast multitudes." Why should Yudhishthira refer to the slaughter of only the Vaicyas in the midst of troops as his reason for supposing Kshatriya practices to be sinful? *Apayāna* means "flight," I prefer to read *Avayāna* meaning 'march.'—T.

felicity here and attains to a residence in Indra's heaven hereafter.*[9] That king who, going out, fights his foes in battles that have arisen for the sake of Brāhmanas, and lays down his life, comes to be regarded as the embodiment of a sacrifice with illimitable presents.[10] If a king, with his quivers full of shafts, shoots them fearlessly at his foes, the very gods do not see any one on Earth that is superior to him.[11] In such a case, equal to the number of shafts with which he pierces the bodies of his enemies, is the number of regions that he enjoys, eternal and capable of granting every wish.[12] The blood that flows from his body cleanses him of all his sins along with the very pain that he feels on the occasion.[13] Persons conversant with the scriptures say that the pains a Kshatriya suffers in battle operate as penances for enhancing his merit.[14] Righteous persons, inspired with fear, stay in the rear, soliciting life from heroes that have rushed to battle, even as men solicit rain from the clouds.[15] If those heroes, without permitting the beseechers to incur the dangers of battle, keep them in the rear by themselves facing those dangers and defend them at that time of fear, great becomes their merit.[16] If, again, those timid persons, appreciating that deed of bravery, always respect those defenders, they do what is proper and just. By acting otherwise they cannot free themselves from fear.[17] There is great difference between men apparently equal. Some rush to battle, amid its terrible din, against armed ranks of foes.[18] Indeed, the hero rushes against crowds of foes, adopting the road to heaven. He, however, who is inspired with dastardly fear, seeks safety in flight, deserting his comrades in danger.[19] Let not such wretches among men be born in thy race! The very gods with Indra at their head send calamities unto them that desert their comrades in battle and come home with unwounded limbs. He who desires to save his own life-breaths by deserting his comrades, should be slain with sticks or stones or rolled in a mat

---

* The protection of subjects is likened here to the performance of a sacrifice that has the merit of all sacrifices. The final present in that sacrifice is the dispelling of everybody's fear.—T.

of dry grass for being burnt to death. Those amongst the Kshatriyas that would be guilty of such conduct should be killed after the manner of killing animals.*[20-22] Death on a bed of repose, after ejecting phlegm and urine and uttering piteous cries, is sinful for a Kshatriya.[23] Persons acquainted with the scriptures do not applaud the death which a Kshatriya encounters with unwounded body.[24] The death of a Kshatriya, O sire, at home is not praiseworthy. They are heroes. Any unheroic act of theirs is sinful and inglorious.[25] In disease, one may be heard to cry, saying,—What sorrow! How painful! I must be a great sinner!—With face emaciated and stench issuing from his body and clothes, the sick man plunges his relatives into grief.[26] Coveting the condition of those that are hale, such a man (amidst his tortures) repeatedly desires for death itself. One that is a hero, having dignity and pride, does not deserve such an inglorious death.[27] Surrounded by kinsmen and slaughtering his foes in battle, a Kshatriya should die at the edge of keen weapons.[28] Moved by desire of enjoyment and filled with rage, a hero fights furiously and does not feel the wounds inflicted on his limbs by foes.[29] Encountering death in battle, he earns that high merit fraught with fame and the respect of the world which belongs to his order and ultimately obtains a residence in Indra's heaven.[30] The hero, by not showing his back in fight and contending by every means in his power, in utter recklessness of life itself, at the van of battle, obtains the companionship of Indra.[31] Wherever the hero has encountered death in the midst of foes without displaying ignoble fear or cheerlessness, he has succeeded in earning regions hereafter of eternal bliss.'"[32]

SECTION XCVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, what regions are earned by unreturning heroes by encountering death in battle?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, O Yudhishthira, is

---

* *I. e.*, not at the weapon's edge, but otherwise.—T.

cited the old story of the discourse between Amvarisha and Indra.[2] Amvarisha the son of Nābhāga, having repaired to heaven that is so difficult of acquisition, beheld his own generalissimo in those celestial regions in the company of Indra.[3] The king saw his puissant general blazing with every kind of energy, endued with celestial form, seated on a very beautiful car, and sojourning (in that vehicle) up and up towards still higher regions.[4] Beholding the prosperity of his general Sudeva, and observing how he sojourned through regions that were still higher, the high-souled Amvarisha, filled with surprise, addressed Vāsava, in the following words.[5]

"'Amvarisha said,—Having duly governed the whole Earth bounded by the seas, having from desire of earning religious merit practised all those duties that are common to the four orders as declared by the scriptures,[6] having practised with rigid austerity all the duties of the Brahmacharyya mode, having waited with dutiful obedience upon my preceptors and other reverend seniors, having studied with due observances the Vedas and the scriptures on kingly duties,[7] having gratified guests with food and drink, the *Pitris* with offerings in *Çraddhas*, the *Rishis* with attentive study of the scriptures and with initiation (under proper forms into the mysteries of religion), and the gods with many excellent and high sacrifices,[8] having duly observed Kshatriya duties according to the injunctions of the scriptures, having cast my eyes fearlessly upon hostile troops, I won many victories in battle, O Vāsava![9] This Sudeva, O chief of the deities, was formerly the generalissimo of my forces. It is true, he was a warrior of tranquil soul. For what reason, however, has he succeeded in transcending me?[10] He never worshipped the gods in high and great sacrifices. He never gratified the Brāhmanas (by frequent and costly presents) according to the ordinance. For what reason then, has he succeeded in transcending me?—[11]

"'Indra said,—Regarding this Sudeva, O sire, the great sacrifice of battle had often been spread out by him. The same becomes the case with every other man that engages in fight.[12] Every warrior accoutred in armour, by advancing against foes in battle array, becomes installed in that sacrifice. Indeed,

it is a settled conclusion that such a person, by acting in this way, comes to be regarded as the performer of the sacrifice of battle![13]—

"'Amvarisha said,—What constitute the libations in that sacrifice? What constitute its liquid offerings? What is its *Dakshinā*? Who, again, are regarded its *Ritwijas*? Tell me all this, O performer of a hundred sacrifices![14]—

"'Indra said,—Elephants constitute the *Ritwijas* of that sacrifice, and steeds are its *Addhyaryus*. The flesh of foes constitutes its libations, and blood is its liquid offering.*[15] Jackals and vultures and ravens, as also winged shafts, constitute its *Sadasyas*. These drink the remnants left of the liquid offering in this sacrifice and eat the remnants of its libations.[16] Heaps of lances and spears, of swords and darts and axes, blazing, sharp, and well-tempered, constitute the ladles of the sacrificer.[17] Straight, sharp, and well-tempered arrows, with keen points and capable of piercing the bodies of foes, impelled from well-stretched bows, constitute its large double-mouthed ladles.[18] Sheathed in scabbard made of tiger-skin and equipt with handle made of ivory, and capable of cutting off the elephant's trunk, the sword forms the *Sphis* of this sacrifice.[19]† The strokes inflicted with blazing and keen lances and darts and swords and axes, all made of hard iron, constitute its profuse wealth procured from the respectable people by agreement in respect of the amount and period.[20] The blood that runs over the field in consequence of the fury of the attack, constitutes the final libation, fraught with great merit and capable of granting every wish, in the *Homa* of this sacrifice.[21] *Cut, Pierce,* and such other sounds, that are heard in the front ranks of the array, constitute the *Sāmans* sung by its Vedic chaunters in the abode of Yama.[22] The front ranks of the enemy's array constitute the vessel for the keep of its libations. The crowd of elephant and steeds and

---

* *Ajya* is any liquid substance, generally of course clarified butter, that is poured upon the sacrificial fire.—T.

† *Sphis* is the wooden stick with which lines are drawn on the sacrificial platform.—T.

men equipt with shields are regarded to constitute the *Çyenachit* fire of that sacrifice.[23] The headless trunks that rise up after thousands have been slaughtered constitute the octagonal stake, made of *Khadira* wood, for the hero who performs that sacrifice.[24] The shrieks that elephants utter when urged on with hooks, constitute its *Ida* mantras. The kettle-drums, with the slaps of palms forming the *Vashats*, O king, are its *Trisāmān Udgātri*.[25] When the property of a Brāhmana is being taken away, he who casts off his body that is so dear for protecting that property, does, by that act of self-devotion, acquire the merit of a sacrifice with infinite presents.[26] That hero who, for the sake of his master, displays prowess at the van of the array and shows not his back through fear, earns those regions of felicity that are mine.[27] He who strews the altar of the sacrifice constituted by battle, with swords cased in blue scabbards and severed arms resembling heavy bludgeons succeeds in winning regions of felicity like mine.[28] That warrior who, resolved upon obtaining victory, penetrates into the midst of the enemy's ranks without waiting for any assistance, succeeds in winning regions of felicity like mine.[29] That warrior who in battle causes a river of blood to flow, terrible and difficult to cross, having kettle-drums for its frogs and tortoises, the bones of heroes for its sands, blood and flesh for its mire, swords and shields for its rafts, the hair of slain warriors for its floating weeds and moss, the crowds of steeds and elephants and cars for its bridges, standards and banners for its bushes of cane, the bodies of slain elephants for its boats and huge alligators, swords and scimitars for its larger vessels, vultures and *Kankas* and ravens for the rafts that float upon it,—that warrior who causes such a river, difficult of being crossed by even those that are possessed of courage and power and which inspires all timid men with dread, is said to complete the sacrifice by performing the final ablutions.[30-34] That hero whose altar (in such a sacrifice) is strewn over with the (severed) heads of foes, of steeds, and of elephants, obtains regions of felicity like mine.[35] The sages have said that that warrior who regards the van of the hostile army as the chambers of his wives, who looks upon the van of his own army as the vessel for the

keep of sacrificial offerings, who takes the combatants standing to his south for his *Sadasyas* and those to this north as his *Agniddhras*, and who looks upon the hostile forces as his wedded wife, succeeds in winning all regions of felicity.*[26-37] The open space lying between two hosts drawn up for fight constitutes the altar of such a sacrificer, and the three Vedas are his three sacrificial fires. Upon that altar, aided by the recollection of the Vedas, he performs his sacrifice.[38] That inglorious warrior who, turning away from the fight in fear, is slain by foes, sinks into hell. There is no doubt in this.[39] That warrior, on the other hand, whose blood drenches the sacrificial altar already strewn with hair and flesh and bones, certainly succeeds in attaining a high end.[40] That powerful warrior who, having slain the commander of the hostile army, mounts the vehicle of his fallen antagonist, comes to be regarded as possessed of the prowess of Vishnu himself and the intelligence of Vrihaspati, the preceptor of the celestials.[41] That warrior who can seize alive the commander of the hostile army or his son or some other respected leader, succeeds in winning regions of felicity like mine.[42] One should never grieve for a hero slain in battle. A slain hero, if nobody grieves for him, goes to heaven and earns the respect of its denizens.[43] Men do not desire to dedicate (for his salvation) food and drink. Nor do they bathe (after receiving the intelligence), nor go into mourning for him. Listen to me as I enumerate the felicity that is in store for such a person.[44] Foremost of *Apsarās*, numbering by thousands, go out with great speed (for receiving the spirit of the slain hero) coveting him for their lord.[45] That Kshatriya, who duly observes his duty in battle, acquires by that act the merit of penances and of righteousness. Indeed, such conduct on his part conforms with the eternal path of duty. Such a man obtains the merits of all the four modes of life.[46] The aged and the children should not be slain; nor one that is a woman;

---

* The van of the hostile army is the palace of his wives, for he goes thither as cheerfully as he does to such a mansion. *Agniddhras* are those priests that have charge of the sacrificial fires.—T.

nor one that is flying away; nor one that holds a straw in his lips;* nor one that says—*I am thine.*[47] Having slain in battle Jambha, Vritra, Vala, Pāka, Catamāya, Virochana, the irresistible Namuchi, Camvara of innumerable illusions, Viprachitti,—all these sons of Diti and Danu,—as also Prahlādha, I myself have become the chief of the celestials.[48-49]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of Cakra and approving of them, king Amvarisha comprehended how warriors succeed (by battle as their means) in compassing success for themselves (in respect of winning regions of beatitude in heaven).' "[50]

Section XCIX.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old story of the battle between Pratarddana and the ruler of Mithilā.[1] The ruler of Mithilā, *viz.*, Janaka, after installation in the sacrifice of battle, gladdened all his troops (on the eve of fight). Listen to me, O Yudhishthira, as I recite the story.[2] Janaka, the high-souled king of Mithilā, conversant with the truth of everything, showed both heaven and hell unto his own warriors.[3] He addressed them, saying,—Behold, these are the regions, endued with great splendour, for those that fight fearlessly! Full of *Gandharva* girls, those regions are eternal and capable of granting every wish![4] There, on the other side, are the regions of hell, intended for those that fly away from battle! They would have to rot there for eternity in everlasting ingloriousness![5] Resolved upon casting away your very lives, do ye conquer your foes! Do not fall into inglorious hell! The laying down of life (in battle) constitutes, in respect of heroes, their happy door of heaven![6] —Thus addressed by their king, O subjugater of hostile towns, the warriors of Mithilā, gladdening their rulers, vanquished their foes in battle. They that are of firm souls should take their stand in the van of battle.[7] The car-warriors should be

---

* To take up a straw and hold it between the lips is an indication of unconditional surrender.—T.

placed in the midst of elephants. Behind the car-warriors should stand the horsemen. Behind the last should be placed the foot-soldiers all accoutred in mail.[8] That king who forms his array in this manner always succeeds in vanquishing his foes. Therefore, O Yudhishthira, the array of battle should always be thus formed.[9] Filled with wrath, heroes desire to win blessedness in heaven by fighting fairly. Like *Makaras* agitating the ocean, they agitate the ranks of the foe.[10] Assuring one another, they should gladden those (amongst them) that are cheerless. The victor should protect the land newly conquered (from acts of aggression). He should not cause his troops to pursue too much the routed foe.[11] The onset is irressistible of persons that rally after rout and that, despairing of safety, assail their pursuers. For this reason, O king, thou shouldst not cause thy troops to pursue too much the routed foe.[12] Warriors of courage do not wish to strike them that run away with speed. That is another reason why the routed foe should not be pursued hotly.[13] Things that are immobile are devoured by those that are mobile; creatures that are toothless are devoured by those that have teeth; water is drunk by the thirsty; cowards are devoured by heroes.[14] Cowards sustain defeat though they have, like the victors, similar backs and stomachs and arms and legs. They that are afflicted with fear bend their heads and joining their hands stay before those that are possessed of courage.[15] This world rests on the arms of heroes like a son on those of his sire. He, therefore, that is a hero deserves respect under every circumstance.[16] There is nothing higher in the three worlds than heroism. The hero protects and cherishes all, and all things depend upon the hero.' "[17]

SECTION C.

"Yudhishthira said,—"Tell me, O grandsire, how kings desirous of victory should, O bull of Bharata's race, lead their troops to battle even by offending slightly against the rules of righteousness!"[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Some say that Righteousness is made

stable by Truth; some, by Reasoning; some, by good behaviour; and some, by the application of means and contrivances.*[2] I shall presently tell thee what the means and contrivances, productive of immediate fruit, are. Robbers, transgressing all wholesome bounds, very often become destroyers of property and religious merit.[3] For resisting and restraining them, I shall tell thee what the contrivances are, as indicated in the scriptures. Listen to me as I speak of those means for the success of all acts.[4] Both kinds of wisdom, straight and crooked, should be within call of the king. Though acquainted with it, he should not, however, apply that wisdom which is crooked (for injuring others). He may use it for resisting the dangers that may overtake him.[5] Enemies frequently injure a king by producing disunion (among his ministers or troops or allies or subjects). The king, conversant with deceit, may, by the aid of deceit, counteract those enemies.[6] Leathern armour for protecting the bodies of elephants, armour of the same material for bovine bulls, bones, thorns, and keen-pointed weapons made of iron, coats of mail, yak-tails,[7] sharp and well-tempered weapons, all kinds of armour yellow and red, banners and standards of diverse hues,[8] swords, and lances and scimitars of great sharpness and battle-axes, and spears and shields, should be manufactured and stored in abundance.[9] The weapons should all be properly whetted. The soldiers should be inspired with courage and resolution. It is proper to set the troops in motion in the month of *Chaitra* or *Agrahāyana*.[10] The crops ripen about that time and water also does not

---

* I do not understand how this is an answer to Yudhishthira's question. Nilkantha thinks that Truth, in the above, means the ordinances in respect of Kshatriya duties; that *Upapatti*, which I understand, means Reasoning (or Conclusion), indicates a disregard for life, for those ordinances lead to no other conclusion. Good behaviour, according to him, means encouraging the soldiers, speaking sweetly to them, and promoting the brave, &c., Means and contrivances consist in punishing desertion and cowardliness, &c. If Nilakantha be right, what Bhishma says is that battles (which, of course, are intended for the protection of Righteousness) become possible in consequence of these four causes.—T.

become scarce. That time of the year, O Bhārata, is neither very cold nor very hot.[11] Troops should, therefore, be moved at that time. If the enemy, however, be overtaken by distress, troops should immediately be set in motion (without waiting for such a favourable time). These (two) are the best occasions for the motion of troops with a view to subjugate foes.[12] That road which has abundance of water and grass along it, which is level and easy of march, should be adopted (in moving the troops). The regions lying near the road (on both its sides) should previously be well ascertained through spies possessed of skill and having an intimate knowledge of the woods.[13] The troops must not, like animals, be marched through woody regions. Kings desirous of victory should, therefore, adopt good roads for marching their troops.[14] In the van should be placed a division of brave men, endued with strength and high birth. As regards forts, that which has walls and a trench full of water on every side and only one entrance, is worthy of praise.[15] In respect of invading foes, resistance may be offered from within it. In pitching the camp, a region lying near the woods is regarded as much better than one under the open sky by men conversant with war and possessed of military accomplishments. The camp should be pitched for the troops not far from such a wood.[16-17] Pitching the camp at such a place, planting the foot-soldiers in a position of safety, and collision with the foe as soon as he comes, are the means for warding off danger and distress.[18] Keeping the constellation called *Ursa Major** behind them, the troops should fight, taking up their stand like hills. By this means, one may vanquish even foes that are irresistible.[19] The troops should be placed in such a position that the wind, the sun, and the planet Cukra† should blow and shine from behind them. As means for ensuing victory, the wind is superior to the Sun, and the sun is superior to Cukra, O

---

* The seven stars of this constellation are supposed to be the seven great *Rishis*, *viz.*, Marichi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasishtha.—T.

† Venus.—T.

Yudhishthira.[20] Men conversant with war approve of a region that is not miry, not watery, not uneven, and not abounding with bricks and stone, as well fitted for the operations of cavalry.[21] A field that is free from mire and holes is fitted for car-warriors. A region that is overgrown with bushes and large trees and that is under water is fitted for elephant-warriors.[22] A region that has many inaccessible spots, that is overgrown with large trees and topes of cane bushes, as also a mountainous or woody tract, is well fitted for the operations of infantry.[23] An army, O Bhārata, which has a large infantry force, is regarded very strong. An army in which cars and horsemen predominate is regarded to be very effective in a clear (unrainy) day.[24] An army, again, in which foot-soldiers and elephants predominate becomes effective in the rainy season. Having attended to these points (about the characters of the different kinds of forces and the manner of marching, quartering, and leading them), the king should turn his attention to the characteristics of place and time.[25] That king, who having attended to all these considerations, sets out under a proper constellation and on an auspicious lunation, always succeeds in obtaining victory by properly leading his troops.[26] No one should slay those that are asleep or thirsty or fatigued, or those whose accoutrements have fallen away, or one that has set his heart on final emancipation,* or one that is flying away, or one that is walking (unprepared) along a road, or one engaged in drinking or eating,[27] or one that is mad, or one that is insane, or one that has been wounded mortally, or one that has been exceedingly weakened by his wounds, or one that is staying trustfully, or one that has begun any task without having been able to complete it,† or one that is skilled in some especial art (as mining, &c.), or one that is in grief, or one that goes out of the camp for

* Like Bhuricravas on the field of Kurukshetra.—T.

† Probably, one that has begun a sacrifice extending for a long period. The Yādava hero Akrura avoided challenges to battle by beginning a sacrifice. See *Harivança*, the sections on the Sāmantaka stone.—T.

procuring forage or fodder, or men who set up camps or are camp-followers,[28] or those that wait at the gates of the king or of his ministers, or those that do menial services (unto the chiefs of the army), or those that are chiefs of such servants.[29] Those amongst thy warriors that break the ranks of foes, or rally thy retreating troops, should have their pay doubled and should be honored by thee with food, drink, and seats equal to thy own.[30] Those amongst such that are chiefs of ten soldiers should be made chiefs of a hundred. That heedful hero again (amongst them) who is the chief of a hundred soldiers should be made the chief of a thousand.[31] Collecting together the principal warriors, they should be addressed, saying,—Let us swear to conquer, and never to desert one another![32] Let those that are inspired with fear stay here! Let those also stay here that would cause their chiefs to be slain by themselves neglecting to act heroically in the press of battle![33] Let such men come as would never break away from battle or cause their own comrades to be slain! Protecting their own selves as also their comrades, they are certain to slay the enemy in fight.[34] The consequence of flying away from battle are loss of wealth, death, infamy, and reproach. Disagreeable and cutting speeches have to be heard by that man who flies away from battle,[35] who loses his lips and teeth,* who throws away all his weapons, or who suffers himself to be taken as a captive by the foe. Let such evil consequences always evertake the warriors of our foes![36] Those that fly away from battle are wretches among men. They simply swell the tale of human beings on earth. For true manhood, however, they are neither here nor hereafter.[37] Victorious foes, O sire, proceed cheerfully, their praises recited the while by bards, in pursuit of the flying combatants.[38] When enemies, coming to battle tarnish the fame of a person, the misery the latter feels is more poignant, I think, than that of death itself.[39] Know that victory is the root of religious merit and of every kind of happiness. That which is regarded as the highest

* A form of expression meaning shameless.—T.

misery by cowards is cheerfully borne by those that are heroes.*[40] Resolved upon acquiring heaven, we should fight, regardless of life itself, and determined to conquer or die, attain a blessed end in heaven![41] Having taken such an oath, and prepared to throw away life itself, heroes should courageously rush against the enemy's ranks.[42] In the van should be placed a division of men armed with swords and shields. In the rear should be placed the car-division. In the space intervening should be placed other classes of combatants.[43] This should be the arrangement made for assailing the foe. Those combatants in the army that are veterans should fight in the van. They would protect their comrades behind them.[44] Those amongst the army that would be regarded as foremost for strength and courage, should be placed in the van. The others should stand behind them.[45] They that are inspired with fear should, with care, be comforted and encouraged. These weaker combatants should be placed on the field (without being withdrawn) for at least showing the number of the army (to the foe).†[46] If the troops are few, they should be drawn close together for the fight. At times, if their leader wishes, the close array may be extended wide. When a small number of troops is to fight with a great many, the array called *Suchimukha* should be formed.‡[47] When a small force is engaged with a larger one, the leader of the former may shake hands with his men and utter loud cries to the effect—The enemy has broken! The enemy has broken!—[48] Those amongst them that are endued with strength should resist the enemy, loudly saying unto their comrades,—Fresh friends have arrived! Fearlessly strike at your foes!—[49] Those that are in advance of the rest should utter loud shouts and make diverse kinds of noises, and should

---

* This refers to death and physical pain, as explained by Nilakantha.—T.

† *Skandha*, Nilakantha thinks, means *Samuha* here.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, the soldiers should be so drawn up as to form a wedge-like appearance with a narrow head.—T.

blow and beat *Krakachas*, cow-horns, drums, cymbals, and kettle-drums.'"[50]

Section CI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Of what disposition, of what behaviour, of what form, how accoutred, and how armed should the combatants be in order that they may be competent for battle?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'It is proper that those weapons and vehicles should be adopted (by particular bodies of combatants) with which they have become familiar by use. Brave soldiers, adopting those weapons and vehicles, engage in battle.[2] The Gāndhāras, the Sindhus, and the Sauviras fight best with their nails and lances. They are brave and endued with great strength. Their armies are capable of vanquishing all forces.[3] The Uçinaras are possessed of great strength and skilled in all kinds of weapons. The Easterners are skilled in fighting from the backs of elephants and are conversant with all the ways of unfair fight.[4] The Yavanas, the Kāmvojas, and those that dwell around Mathurā are well skilled in fighting with bare arms. The Southerners are skilled in fighting sword in hand.[5] It is well known that person possessed of great strength and great courage are born in almost every country. Listen to me as I describe their indications.[6] They that have voices and eyes like those of the lion or the tiger, they that have a gait like that of the lion and the tiger, and they that have eyes like those of the pigeon or the snake, are all heroes capable of grinding hostile ranks.*[7] They that have a voice like deer, and eyes like those of the leopard or the bull, are possessed of great activity. They whose voice resembles that of bells, are excitable, wicked, and wrathful.[8] They that have a voice deep as that of the clouds, that have wrathful faces or faces like those of camels, they that have hooked noses and tongues, are possessed of great speed and can shoot or hurl

---

* *Kulinga* has many meanings. Nilakantha thinks that the word, as used here, means 'snake.'—T.

their weapons to a great distance.[9] They that have bodies curved like that of the cat, and thin hair and thin skin, become endued with great speed and restlessness and almost invincible in battle.[10] Some that are possessed of eyes closed like those of the iguana, disposition that is mild, and speed and voice like the horse's, are competent to fight all foes.[11] They that are of well-knit and handsome and symmetrical frames, and broad chests, that become angry upon hearing the enemy's drum or trumpet, that take delight in affrays of every kind,[12] that have eyes indicative of gravity, or eyes that seem to shoot out, or eyes that are green, they that have faces darkened with frowns, or eyes like those of the mungoose, are all brave and capable of casting away their lives in battle.[13] They that have crooked eyes and broad foreheads and cheek-bones not covered with flesh and arms strong as thunder-bolts and fingers bearing circular marks, and make that is lean and arteries and nerves that are visible,[14] rush with great speed when the collision of battle takes place. Resembling infuriate elephants, they become irresistible.[15] They that have greenish hair ending in curls, that have flanks, cheeks, and faces fat and full of flesh, that have elevated shoulders and broad necks, that have fearful visages and fat calves,[16] that are fiery like (Vāsudeva's horse) Sugriva or like the offspring of Garuda the son of Vinatā, that have round heads, large mouths, faces like those of cats,[17] shrill voice and wrathful temper, that rush to battle, guided by its din, that are wicked in behaviour and full of haughtiness, that are of terrible countenances, and that live in the outlying districts,[18] are all reckless of their lives and never fly away from battle. Such troops should always be placed in the van. They always slay their foes in fight and suffer themselves to be slain without retreating.[19] Of wicked behaviour and outlandish manners, they regard soft speeches as indications of defeat. If treated with mildness, they always exhibit wrath against their sovereign.' "[20]

Section CII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What are the well-known indications, O bull of Bharata's race, of the (future) success of an army? I desire to know them!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall tell thee, O bull of Bharata's race, all the well-known indications of the (future) success of an army.[2] When the gods become angry and men are urged by fate, persons of learning, beholding everything with the eye of heavenly knowledge,[3] perform diverse auspicious acts and expiatory rites including *homa* and the silent recitation of *mantras*, and thus allay all evils.*[4] That army in which the troops and the animals are all undepressed and cheerful, O Bhārata, is sure to win a decided victory.[5] The wind blows favorably from behind such troops. Rainbows appear in the sky. The clouds cast their shadows upon them and at times the sun shines upon them.[6] The jackals become auspicious to them, and ravens and vultures as well. When these show such regard to the army, high success is sure to be won by it.[7] Their (sacrificial) fires blaze up with a pure splendour, the light going upwards and the smokeless flames slightly bending towards the south. The libations poured thereon emit an agreeable fragrance. These have been said to be the indications of future success.[8] The conchs and drums, blown and beat, send forth loud and deep peals. The combatants become filled with alacrity. These have been said to be the indications of future success.[9] If deer and other quadrupeds be seen behind or to the left of those that have already set out for battle or of those that are about to set out, they are regarded auspicious. If they appear to the right of the warriors while about to engage in slaughter, that is regarded as an indication of success. If, however, they make their appearance in the van of such persons, they indicate disaster

* The object of these two verses is to indicate that a learned astrologer and a learned priest are certain means for procuring victories by warding off all calamities caused by unpropitious fate and the wrath of the gods.—T.

and defeat.[10] If these birds, *viz.*, swans and cranes and *Çatapatras* and *Chāshas* utter auspicious cries, and all the able-bodied combatants become cheerful, these are regarded as indications of future success.[11] They whose array blazes forth with splendour and becomes terrible to look at in consequence of the sheen of their weapons, machines, armour, and standards, as also of the radiant complexion of the [illegible] of the vigorous men that stand within it, always succeed in vanquishing their foes.[12] If the combatants of a host be of pure behaviour and modest deportment and attend to one another in loving kindness, that is regarded as an indication of future success.[13] If agreeable sounds and odors and sensations of touch prevail, and if the combatants become inspired with gratitude and patience, that is regarded as the root of success.[14] The crow on the left of a person engaged in battle and on the right of him who is about to engage in it, is regarded auspicious. Appearing at the back, it indicates non-fulfilment of the objects in view, while its appearance in the front forebodes danger.[15] Even after enlisting a large army consisting of the four kinds of forces, thou shouldst, O Yudhishthira, first behave peacefully. If thy endeavours after peace fail, then mayst thou engage in battle.[16] The victory, O Bhārata, that one acquires by battle is very inferior. Victory in battle, it seems, is dependent on caprice or destiny.[17] When a large army breaks and the troops begin to fly away, it is exceedingly difficult to check their flight. The impetuosity of the flight resembles that of a mighty current of water or of a frightened herd of deer.[18] Some have broken. For this, without adequate cause, others break, even they that are brave and skilled in fight. A large army, consisting of even brave soldiers, is like a large herd of *Ruru* deer.*[19] Sometimes

* If a single deer takes fright and runs in a particular direction, the whole herd follows it, without knowing the cause. The simile is peculiarly appropriate in the case of large armies, particularly of Asiatic hosts. If a single division takes to flight, the rest follow it. Fear is very contageous. The Bengal reading *janghā* is evidently incorrect. The Bombay reading is *sanjha*. The Burdwan translators have attempted the impossible feat of finding sense by adhering to the

again it may be seen that even fifty men, resolute and relying upon one another, cheerful and prepared to lay down their lives, succeed in grinding enemies numerically much superior.[20] Sometimes even five, or six, or seven men, resolute and standing close together, of high descent and enjoying the esteem of those that know them, vanquish foes much superior to them in number.[21] The collision of battle is not desirable as long as it can be avoided. The policy of conciliation, of producing disunion, and making gifts should first be tried; battle, it is said, should come after these.[22] At the very sight of a (hostile) force, fear paralyses the timid, even as at the sight of the blazing bolt of heaven they ask—*Oh, upon what would it fall?**[23]—Having ascertained that a battle is raging, the limbs of those that go to join it, as also of him that is conquering, perspire profusely.†[24] The entire country, O king, (that is the seat of war), becomes agitated and afflicted, with all its mobile and immobile population. The very marrow of embodied creatures scorched with the heat of weapons, languishes with pain.[25] A king should, therefore, on all occasions, apply the arts of conciliation, mixing them with measures of severity. When people are afflicted by foes, they always show a disposition to come to terms.‡[26] Secret agents should be sent for producing disunion amongst the allies of the foe. Having produced disunion, it is very desirable that peace should then be made with that king who happens to be more powerful than the foe (sought to be crushed).[27] If the invader does not proceed in this way, he

---

incorrect reading. The fact is, they did not suspect the viciousness of the text.—T.

* I have endeavoured to give the very construction of the original. It is curious to see how the Burdwan Pundits have misunderstood this simple verse.—T.

† *Samiti* is explained by Nilakantha to mean battle, and *vijayasya* as *vijigishamānasya*. Unless it be an instance of a cruce, *vijayasya* can scarcely be understood in such a sense.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, the king should try conciliation, sending at the same time an invading force, or making an armed demonstration. Such politic measures succeed in bringing about peace.—T.

can never succeed in completely crushing his foe. In dealing with the foe, care should be taken for hemming him in from all sides.[28] Forgiveness always comes to those that are good. It never comes to those that are bad. Listen now, O Pārtha, to the uses of forgiveness and of severity.[29] The fame of a king who displays forgiveness after conquest spreads more widely. The very foes of a person that is of a forgiving disposition trust him even when he becomes guilty of a grave transgression.[30] Camvara has said that having afflicted a foe first, forgiveness should be shown afterwards, for a wooden pole, if made straight without the application of heat in the first instance, very soon assumes its former state.[31] Persons skilled in the scriptures do not, however, applaud this. Nor do they regard this as an indication of a good king. On the other hand, they say that a foe should be subdued and checked, like a sire subduing and checking a son, without wrath and without destroying him.[32] If, O Yudhishthira, a king becomes severe, he becomes an object of hatred with all creatures. If, on the other hand, he becomes mild, he becomes disregarded by all. Do thou, therefore, practice both severity and mildness.[33] Before smiting, O Bhārata, and while smiting, utter sweet words; and after having smitten, show them compassion and let them understand that thou art grieving and weeping for them.[34] Having vanquished an army, the king should address the survivors, saying,—I am not at all glad that so many have been slain by my troops! Alas, the latter, though repeatedly dissuaded by me, have not obeyed my directions![35] I wish they (that are slain) were all alive! They do not deserve such death! They were all good men and true, and unretreating from battle. Such men, indeed, are rare![36] He that has slain such a hero in battle, has surely done that which is not agreeable to me!—Having uttered such speeches before the survivors of the vanquished foe, the king should in secret honor those amongst his own troops that have bravely slain the foe.[37] For soothing the wounded slayers for their sufferings at the hand of the foe, the king, desirous of attaching them to himself, should even weep, seizing their hands affectionately.[38] The king should thus, under all cir-

cumstances, behave with conciliation. A king that is fearless and virtuous, becomes the beloved of all creatures.[39] All creatures, also, O Bhārata, trust such a ruler. Winning their trust, he succeeds in enjoying the Earth as he pleases.[40] The king should, therefore, by abandoning deceitfulness, seek to obtain the trust of all creatures. He should also seek to protect his subjects from all fears if he seek to enjoy the Earth.' "[41]

SECTION CIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, how should a king behave towards a foe that is mild, towards one that is fierce, and towards one that has many allies and a large force!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited, O Yudhishthira, the old narrative of the discourse between Vrihaspati and Indra.[2] Once on a time, that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, Vasava, the chief of the celestials, joining his hands, approached Vrihaspati, and saluting him, said these words.[3]

" 'Indra said,—How, O regenerate one, should I behave towards my foes? How should I subdue them by means of contrivances, without exterminating them?[4] In a collision between two armies, victory may be won by either side. In what way should I behave so that this blazing prosperity that I have won and that scorches all my enemies, may not desert me?[5]—Thus addressed, Vrihaspati, skilled in Virtue, Profit, and Pleasure, possessed of a knowledge of kingly duties, and endued with great intelligence, answered Indra in the following words.[6]

" 'Vrihaspati said,—One should never wish to subdue his foes by quarrel. Excited with wrath and bereft of forgiveness, boys only seek quarrel.[7] One that desires the destruction of a foe should not put that foe on his guard. On the other hand, one should never exhibit one's wrath or fear or joy. He should conceal these within his own bosom.[8] Without trusting one's foe in reality, one should behave towards him as if one trusted him completely. One should always speak sweet words unto one's foes and never do anything that is dis-

agreeable.[9] One should abstain from fruitless acts of hostility as also from insolence of speech. As a fowler, carefully uttering cries similar to those of the birds he wishes to seize or kill,[10] captures and brings them under his power, even so should a king, O Purandara, being his foes under subjection and then slay them if he likes.[11] Having overcome one's foes, one should not sleep at ease. A foe that is wicked raises his head again like a fire carelessly put out making its appearance again.[12] When victory may be won by either side, a hostile collision of arms should be avoided. Having lulled a foe into security, one should reduce him into subjection and gain one's object.[13] Having consulted with his ministers and with intelligent persons conversant with policy, a foe that is disregarded and neglected, being all along unsubdued at heart,[14] smites the disregarder at the proper season, especially when the latter makes a false step. By employing trusted agents of his own, such a foe would also render the other's forces inefficient by producing disunion.[15] Ascertaining the beginning, the middle, and the end of his foes,* a king should in secret cherish feelings of hostility towards them. He should corrupt the forces of his foe, ascertaining everything by positive proof,[16] using the arts of producing disunion, making gifts, and applying poison. A king should never live in companionship with his foes.[17] A king should wait long and then slay his foes. Indeed, he should wait, expecting the opportunity, so that he might come down upon his foe at a time when the latter would not expect him in the least. A king should never slay a large number of the troops of his foe, although he should certainly do that which would make his victory decisive.[18] The king should never do such an injury to his foe as would rankle in the latter's heart.† Nor should he cause wounds by wordy darts and shafts. If the opportunity comes, he should strike at him, without letting

---

* *I. e.*, ascertaining everything regarding him.—T.

† The French had taken Alsace and Lorraine. That was an impolitic step, though, perhaps, Germany also, by taking back those provinces after they had been completely Frenchified, has committed the same mistake. Such injuries rankle in the heart and are never forgotten.—T.

it slip. Such, O chief of the gods, should be the conduct of a king desirous of slaying his foes towards those that are his foes.[19] If an opportunity, with respect to the man who waits for it, once passes away, it can never be had again by the person desirous of acting.[20] Acting according to the opinions of the wise, a king should only break the strength of his foe. He should never, when the opportunity is not favorable, seek to accomplish his objects. Nor should he, when the opportunity is at hand, persecute his foe.*[21] Giving up lust and wrath and pride, the king should, acting with heedfulness, continually watch for the *laches* of his foes.[22] His own mildness, the severity of his punishments, his inactivity and heedlessness, O chief of the gods, and the deceitful contrivances well applied (by his foes), ruin a foolish ruler![23] That king who can conquer these four faults and counteract the deceitful contrivances of his enemies, succeeds, without doubt, in smiting them all.[24] When only one minister (without needing any help) is competent to accomplish a secret object (of the king), the king should consult with that one minister only in respect of such secret object. Many ministers, if consulted, endeavour to throw the burden of the task upon one another's shoulders and even give publicity to that object which should be kept secret.[25] If consultation with one be not proper, then only should the king consult with many. When foes are unseen, divine chastisement should be invoked upon them; when seen, the army, consisting of four kinds of forces, should be moved.†[26] The king should first use the arts of producing disunion, as also those of conciliation. When the time for each particular means comes, that particular means should be applied.[27] At times, the king should even prostrate him-

---

* *I. e.* ruin him outright.—T.

† *Brahma-dandah* is the chastisement through the gods. When foes are not seen, *i. e.*, when they are at a distance, the king should employ his priest to perform the rites of the *Atharvan* for bringing destruction upon them. In the case, however, of foes being seen, i. e., when they are near, he should move his troops without depending upon *Atharvan* rites.—T.

self before a powerful foe. It is again desirable that acting heedfully himself, he should seek to compass the victor's destruction when the latter becomes heedless.[28] By prostrating one's self, by gift of tribute, by uttering sweet words, one should humble one's self before a more powerful king. One should (when the occasion for such acts comes) never do anything that may arouse the suspicions of one's powerful foe.[29] The weaker ruler should, under such circumstances, carefully avoid every act that may awaken suspicion. A victorious king, again, should not trust his vanquished foes, for they that are vanquished always remain wakeful.[30] There is nothing, O best of deities, that is more difficult of accomplishment than the acquisition of prosperity, O ruler of the immortals, by persons of a restless disposition.[31] The very existence of persons of restless disposition is fraught with danger. Kings should, therefore, with close attention, ascertain their friends and foes.[32] If a king becomes mild, he is disregarded. If he becomes fierce, he inspires people with dread. Therefore, do not be fierce. Do not, again, be mild. But be both fierce and mild![33] As a rapid current ceaselessly eats away the high bank and causes large landslips, even so heedlessness and error cause a kingdom to be ruined.[34] Never attack many foes at the same time. By applying the arts of conciliation, or gift, or production of disunion, O Purandara,[35] they should be grinded one by one. As regards the remnant, (being few in number,) the victor may behave peacefully towards them. An intelligent king, even if competent for it, should not begin to crush all (his foes) at once.*[36] When a king happens to have a large army consisting of sixfold forces† and teeming with horse, elephants, cars, foot, and engines, all devoted to him,[37] when he thinks himself superior to his foe in many respects upon a fair comparison, then should he openly smite the foe with-

---

* *Nipunam* is explained by Nilakantha as *Kuçalam*; and after *ārabhet*, *pestum* is understood. The Burdwan version of 35 and 36 is utter nonsense.—T.

† The sixfold forces are foot, horse, elephants, cars, treasury, and traders following the camp.—T.

out hesitation.[38] If the foe be strong, the adoption of a policy of conciliation (towards him) is not worthy of approbation. On the other hand, chastisement by secret means is the policy that should be adopted. Nor should mildness of behaviour be adopted towards such foes, nor repeated expeditions, for loss of crops, poisoning of wells and tanks, and suspicion in respect of the seven branches of administration, should be avoided.*[39] The king should, on such occasions, apply diverse kinds of deception, diverse contrivances for setting his foes against one another, and different kinds of hypocritical behaviour. He should also, through trusted agents, ascertain the doings of his foes in their cities and provinces.[40] Kings, O slayer of Vala and Vritra, pursuing their foes and entering their towers, seize and appropriate the best things that are obtainable there, and devise proper measures of policy in their own cities and dominions.[41] Making gifts of wealth unto them in private, and confiscating their possessions publicly, without, however, injuring them materially, and proclaiming that they are all wicked men that have suffered for their own misdeeds, kings should send their agents to the cities and provinces of their foes.[42] At the same time, in their own cities, they should, through other persons conversant with the scriptures, adorned with every accomplishment, acquainted with the ordinances of the sacred books, and possessed of learning, cause incantations and foe-killing rites to be performed.[43]—

"'Indra said,—What are the indications, O best of regenerate ones, of a wicked person! Questioned by me, tell me how am I to know who is wicked![44]—

"'Vrihaspati said,—A wicked person is he who proclaims the faults of others at their back; who is inspired with envy at the accomplishments of others, and who remains silent when

---

* I adopt Nilakantha's explanation of this verse. Loss of crops, &c. are the inevitable consequences of expeditions. The king, on such occasions, is obliged also to take particular care of the seven branches of administration. As these are all unpleasant, they should be avoided.—T.

the merits of other people are proclaimed in his presence, feeling a reluctance to join in the chorus.[45] Mere silence on such occasions is no indication of wickedness. A wicked person, however, at such times breathes heavily, bites his lips, and shakes his head.[46] Such a person always mixes in society and speaks irrelevantly.* Such a man never does what he promises, when the eye of the person to whom he has given the assurance is not upon him. When the eye of the person assured is on him, the wicked man does not even allude to the subject.[47] The wicked man eats by himself (and not with others on the same board), and finds fault with the food placed before him, saying,—All is not right today as on other days.—His disposition shows itself in the circumstances connected with his sitting, lying, and riding.[48] Sorrowing on occasions of sorrow, and rejoicing on occasions of joy, are the indications of a friend. An opposite behaviour furnishes the indications of an enemy.[49] Keep in thy heart these sayings, O ruler of the gods! The disposition of wicked men can never be concealed.[50] I have now told thee, O foremost of deities, what the indications of a wicked person are. Having listened to the truths laid down in the scriptures, follow them duly, O ruler of the celstials!—"[51]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having heard these words of Vrihaspati, Purandara, employed in subduing his foes, acted strictly according to them. Bent upon victory, that slayer of foes, when the opportunity came, obeyed these instructions and reduced all his enemies to subjection!' "[52]

Section CIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How should a righteous king, who is opposed by his own officers, whose treasury and army are no longer under his control, and who has no wealth, conduct himself for acquiring happiness?'[1]

---

* *I. e.*, starts such subjects for conversation as do not arise naturally, for what he has in view is the proclaiming of the faults of other people, a topic in which he alone is interested and not his hearers.—T.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, the story of Kshemadarçin is often recited. I shall narrate that story to thee. Listen to it, O Yudhishthira![2] It has been heard by us that in days of old, when prince Kshemadarçin had become weak in strength and fallen into great distress, he repaired to the sage Kālakavrikshiya and saluting him humbly, said unto him these words.*[3]

" 'The king said,—What should a person like me who deserves wealth but who has, after repeated efforts, failed to recover his kingdom, do, O Brāhmana, excepting suicide,[4] thieving and robbery, acceptance of refuge with others, and other acts of meanness of a similar kind? O best of men, tell me this![5] One like thee that is conversant with morality and full of gratefulness is the refuge of a person afflicted by disease either mental or physical![6] Man should cast off his desires. By acting in that way, by abandoning joy and sorrow, and earning the wealth of knowledge, he succeeds in obtaining felicity.†[7] I grieve for them that adhere to worldly happiness as dependent on wealth. All that, however, vanishes like a dream.[8] They that can abandon vast wealth achieve a very difficult feat. As regards ourselves, we are unable to abandon that wealth which is even no longer existent.‡[9] I am divested of prosperity and have fallen into a miserable and joyless plight! Instruct me, O Brāhmana, what happiness I may yet strive for![10]—Thus addressed by the intelligent prince of Koçala, the sage Kālakavrikshiya of great splendour made the following answer.[11]

" 'The sage said,—Thou hast, it seems, already understood it. Possessed of knowledge as thou art, thou shouldst act as

---

* In the Bengal texts there is an error of reading, *viz.*, *Catru* for *Yatra* in the first line of verse 3. The Burdwan Pundits repeat the error in their vernacular version. K. P. Singha, of course, avoids it.—T.

† The Bengal texts, in the second line of verse 7, contain an error. *Caktincha* is evidently a misreading for *Cokancha*. The Burdwan version, as a matter of course, repeats the error, while K. P. Singha avoids it.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, though dispossessed of my kingdom, I cannot yet cast off the hope of recovering it.—T.

thou thinkest. Thy belief is right, *viz., All this that I see is unstable, myself as also everything that I have !*[12]—Know, O prince, that those things which thou regardest as existing are in reality non-existent. The man of wisdom knows this, and accordingly is never pained whatever the distress that may overwhelm him.[13] Whatever has taken place and whatever will take place are all unreal. When thou wilt know this which should be known by all, thou shalt be freed from unrighteousness.[14] Whatever things had been earned and acquired by those that came before, and whatever was earned and acquired by those that succeeded them, have all perished. Reflecting on this, who is there that will yield to grief?[15] Things that were, are no more. Things that are, will again be (no more). Grief has no power to restore them. One should not, therefore, indulge in grief.[16] Where, O king, is thy sire today, and where thy grandsire? Thou seest them not today, nor do they see thee now![17] Reflecting on thy own instability, why dost thou grieve for them? Reflect with the aid of thy intelligence, and thou wilt understand that verily thou shalt cease to be![18] Myself, thyself, O king, thy friends, and thy foes, shall, without doubt, cease to be. Indeed, everything will cease to be.[19] Those men that are now of twenty or thirty years of age will, without doubt, all die within the next hundred years.[20] If a man cannot have the heart to give up his vast possessions, he should then endeavour to think that his possessions, are not his own and by that means seek to do good to himself.*[21] Acquisitions that are future should be regarded by one as not one's own. Acquisitions that have disappeared, should also be regarded by one as not one's own. Destiny should be regarded as all powerful. They that think in this strain are said to be possessed of wisdom. Such a habit of looking at things is an attribute of the good.[22] Many persons who are equal or superior to thee in intelligence and exertion, though deprived of wealth, are not only alive

* *I. e.* he should think that his wealth has been given to him for the sake of friends and relatives and others. He will then succeed in practising charity.—T.

but are never ruling kingdoms.[23] They are not, like thee, They do not indulge in grief like thee. Therefore, cease thou to grieve in this way! Art thou not superior to those men, or at least equal to them in intelligence and exertion?[24]—

"'The king said,—I regard the kingdom which I had with all its appendages to have been won by me without any exertion. All powerful Time, however, O regenerate one, has swept it away.[25] The consequence, however, that I see, of my kingdom having been swept away by Time as by a stream, is that I am obliged to support myself upon whatever I obtain (by charity)![26]—

"'The sage said,—Moved by the knowledge of what is true (in life), one should never grieve for either the past or the future. Be thou of such a frame of mind, O prince of Koçala, in respect of every affair that may engage thy attention![27] Desiring to obtain only that which is obtainable and not that which is unobtainable, do thou enjoy thy present possessions and never grieve for that which is absent.[28] Be thou delighted, O prince of Koçala, with whatever thou succeedest in winning with ease. Even if divested of prosperity, do not grieve for it but seek to preserve a pure disposition.[29] Only an unfortunate man who is of a foolish understanding, when deprived of former prosperity, censures the supreme Ordainer, without being contented with his present possessions.[30] Such a person regards others, however undeserving, as men blessed with prosperity. For this reason, they that are possessed of malice and vanity and filled with a sense of their own importance, suffer more misery still. Thou, however, O king, art not stained by such vices.[31-32] Endure the prosperity of others although thou art thyself divested of prosperity. They that are possessed of dexterity succeed in enjoying that prosperity which is vested in others.* Prosperity leaves the person that hates others.[33] Men possessed of righteous behaviour and wisdom and conversant with the duties of *Yoga* renounce prosperity and sons and grandsons of their

---

* Nilakantha explains *Kucalāh* as *nirmatsarāh*, and *anyatra* as *Catrau*. I do not follow him.—T.

own accord.[34] Others, regarding earthly wealth to be exceedingly unstable and unattainable, dependant as it is upon ceaseless action and effort, are also seen to renounce it.*[35] Thou seemest to be possessed of wisdom. Why dost thou then grieve so piteously, desiring things that should not be desired, that are unstable, and that are dependant on others?[36] Thou desirest to enquire after that particular frame of mind (which would enable thee to enjoy felicity notwithstanding the loss of thy possessions). The advice I give thee is to renounce all those objects of desire! Objects that should be avoided appear in the guise of those that should be striven for, while those that should be striven for appear in the guise of objects that should be avoided.[37] Some lose their wealth in the pursuit of wealth. Others regard wealth as the root of infinite happiness, and, therefore pursue it eagerly.[38] Some again, delighted with wealth, think that there is nothing superior to it. In his eager desire for the acquisition of wealth, such a person loses all other objects of life.[39] If, O prince of Koçala, a person loses that wealth which had been earned with difficulty and which had been proportionate to his desires, he then, overcome by the inactivity of despair, gives up all desire of wealth.[40] Some persons of righteous souls and high birth betake themselves to the acquisition of virtue. These renounce every kind of worldly happiness from desire of winning felicity in the other world.[41] Some persons lay down life itself, moved by the desire of acquiring wealth. These do not think that life has any use if dissociated from wealth.[42] Behold their pitiable condition! Behold their foolishness! When life is so short and uncertain, these men, moved by ignorance, set their eyes on wealth![43] Who is there that would set his heart upon hoarding when destruction is its end, upon life when death is its end, and upon union when separation is its end?[44] Sometimes man renounces wealth, and sometimes wealth renounces man. What man possessed of knowledge is

---

* The Bengal texts read *Vidhitsā dhanameva cha.* This is evidently erroneous. The correct reading, as given in the Bombay text, is *Vidhitsā-sādhaneva cha*, Both the Bengali versions are incorrect.—T.

there that would feel grieved at the loss of wealth? There are many other persons in the world that lose wealth and friends.[45] Behold, O king, with thy intelligence, and thou wilt understand that the calamities which overtake men are all due to the conduct of men themselves! Do thou, therefore, (as a remedy), restrain thy senses and mind and speech![46] For, if these become weak and productive of evil there is no man who can keep himself free from temptation of external objects by which he is always surrounded. As no one can form an adiquate idia of the past nor can foresee the future, there being many intervals of time and place, a person like thee who is possessed of such wisdom and such prowess, never indulges in grief for union and separation, for good or evil.[47] A person of such mildness of disposition, well-restrained soul, and settled conclusions, and observant of *Brahmacharyya* vows, never indulges in grief and never becomes restless from desire of acquiring or fear of losing anything of small value.[48] It is not fit that such a man should adopt a deceitful life of mendicancy, a life that is sinful and wicked and cruel and worthy of only a wretch among men.[49] Do thou repair to the great forest and lead a life of happiness there, all alone and subsisting upon fruits and roots, restraining speech and soul, and filled with compassion for all creatures.[50] He that cheerfully leads such a life in the forest, with large-tusked elephants for companions, with no human being by his side, and contented with the produce of the wilderness, is said to act after the manner of the wise.[51] A large lake, when it becomes turbid, resumes its tranquillity of itself. Similarly, a man of wisdom, when disturbed in such matters, becomes tranquil of himself. I see that a person that has fallen into such a plight as thine may live happily even thus![52] When thy prosperity is almost impossible to recover, and when thou art without ministers and counsellers, such a course is open to thee! Dost thou hope to reap any benefit by depending upon destiny?—' "[53]

Section CV.

"'The sage said,—If, on the other hand, O Kshatriya, thou thinkest that thou hast any prowess still, I shall discourse to thee about that line of policy which thou mayst adopt for recovering thy kingdom.[1] If thou canst follow that line of policy and seek to exert thyself, thou canst still recover thy prosperity. Listen attentively to all that I say unto thee in detail![2] If thou canst act according to those counsels, thou mayst yet obtain vast wealth, indeed, thy kingdom and kingly power and great prosperity![3] If thou likest it, O king, tell me, for then I shall speak to thee of that policy![4]—

"'The king said,—Tell me, O holy one, what thou wishest to say. I am willing to hear and act according to thy counsels. Let this my meeting with thee today be fruitful of consequences (to myself)![5]—

"'The sage said,—Renouncing pride and desire and wrath and joy and fear, wait upon thy very foes, humbling thyself and joining thy hands.[6] Do thou serve Janaka the ruler of Mithilā, always performing good and pure deeds. Firmly devoted to truth, the king of Videha will certainly give thee great wealth.[7] Thou shalt then become the right arm of that king and obtain the trust of all persons. As a consequence of this, thou shalt then succeed in obtaining many allies possessed of courage and perseverance, pure in behaviour, and free from the seven principal faults.[8] A person of restrained soul and having his senses under control, by adhering to his duties, succeeds in raising himself and gladdening others.[9] Honored by Janaka possessed of intelligence and prosperity, thou shalt certainly become the right arm of that ruler and enjoy the confidence of all.[10] Having then mustered a large force and held consultations with good ministers, do thou cause disunion among thy foes and, setting them against one another, break them all like a person breaking a *vilwa* with a *vilwa*. Or, making peace with the foes of thy foe, destroy the latter's power.*[11] Thou shalt then cause thy foe to be attached to

* The *Vilwa* is the fruit of the *Egle marmelos*.—T.

such good things as are not easily attainable, to beautiful women and cloths, beds and seats and vehicles, all of very costly kinds, and houses,[12] and birds and animals of diverse species, and juices and perfumes and fruits, so that thy foe may be ruined of himself.*[13] If one's foe be thus managed, or if indifference is to be shown towards him, one that is desirous of acting according to good policy, should never suffer that foe to know it at all.[14] Following the behaviour that is approved by the wise, do thou enjoy every kind of pleasure in the dominions of thy foe, and imitating the conduct of the dog, the deer, and the crow, behave, with apparent friendship, towards thy enemies.[15] Cause them to undertake achievements that are mighty and difficult to accomplish. See also that they engage in hostilities with powerful enemies.[16] Drawing their attention to pleasant gardens and costly beds and seats, do thou, by offering such objects of enjoyment, drain thy enemy's treasury.[17] Advising thy enemy to perform sacrifices and make gifts, do thou gratify the Brāhmanas. The latter, (having received those presents through thy hands), will do good to thee in return (by performing penances and Vedic rites), and devour thy enemy like wolves.[18] Without doubt, a person of righteous deeds obtains a high end. By such deeds men succeed in earning regions of the utmost felicity in heaven.[19] If the treasury of thy foes be exhausted (by either righteous or unrighteous deeds), every one of them, O prince of Koçala, may be reduced to subjection.[20] The treasury is the root of felicity in heaven and victory on Earth. It is in consequence of their treasuries that foes enjoy such happiness. The treasury, therefore, should by every means be drained. Do not applaud Exertion in the presence of thy foe, but speak highly of Destiny.[21] Without doubt, the man who relies too much on acts appertaining to the worship of the gods soon meets with destruction. Cause thy enemy to perform the great sacrifice called *Viçwajit* and divest him by

* The sense seems to be that by causing thy foe to be attached to these things, the treasury of thy foe is likely to be exhausted. If this can be brought about, thy foe will soon be ruined.—T.

that means of all his possessions.[22] Through this thy object will be fulfilled. Thou mayst then inform thy enemy of the fact that the best men in his kingdom are being oppressed (with exactions for refilling the exhausted treasury), and indicate some eminent ascetic conversant with the duties of *Yoga* (who will wean thy foe from all earthly possessions).[23] Thy enemy will then desire to adopt renunciation and retire into the woods, solicitous of salvation. Thou shalt then, with the aid of drugs prepared by boiling highly efficacious herbs and plants, and of artificial salts, destroy the elephants and steeds and men (of thy enemy's dominions).[24] These and many other well-devised schemes are available, all connected with fraud. An intelligent person can thus destroy the population of a hostile kingdom with poison.—' "[25]

Section CVI.

" 'The king said,—I do not desire, O Brāhmana, to support life by deceit or fraud. I do not desire wealth, however great, which is to be earned by unrighteous means.[1] At the very outset of our present discourse I excepted these means. By the adoption of only such means as would not lead to censure, of such means as would benefit me in every respect,[2] by practising only such acts as are not harmful in their consequences, I desire to live in this world! I am incapable of adopting these ways that thou pointest out to me! Indeed, these instructions do not become thee!—[3]

" 'The sage said,—These words, O Kshatriya, that thou speakest indicate thee to be possessed of righteous feelings! Indeed, thou art righteous in disposition and understanding, O thou of great experience![4] I shall strive for the good of you both, *viz.*, for thyself and him.* I shall cause a union, eternal and incapable of breach, to be brought about between thee and that king.[5] Who is there that would not like to have a minister like thee that art born of a noble race, that abstainest from all acts of unrighteousness and cruelty, that

---

* *I. e.*, for the ruler of Videhas.—T.

art possessed of great learning, and that art well versed in the art of government and of conciliating all persons?[6] I say this because, O Kshatriya, though divested of kingdom and plunged into great misery, thou still desirest to live adopting a behaviour that is righteous![7] The ruler of the Videhas, firmly adhering to truth, will come to my abode soon. Without doubt, he will do what I will urge him to do!—'[8]

'Bhishma continued,—'The sage, after this, inviting the ruler of the Videhas, said these words unto him.—This personage is of royal birth. I know his very heart.[9] His soul is as pure as the surface of a mirror or the disc of the autumnal moon. He has been examined by me in every way. I do not see any fault in him.[10] Let there be friendship between him and thee. Do thou repose confidence on him as on myself. A king who is without a (competent) minister cannot govern his kingdom even for three days.[11] The minister should be courageous as also pessessed of great intelligence. By these two qualities one may conquer both the worlds. Behold, O king, these two qualities are necessary for ruling a kingdom![12] Righteous kings have no such refuge as a minister possessed of such attributes. This high-souled person is of royal descent. He walketh along the path of the righteous.[13] This one who always keeps righteousness in view has been a valuable acquisition. If treated by thee with honor, he will reduce all thy foes to subjection.[14] If he engages in battle with thee, he will do what as a Kshatriya he should do. Indeed, if after the manner of his sires and grandsires he fights for conquering thee,[15] it will be thy duty to fight him, observant as thou art of the Kshatriya duty of conquering antagonists. Without engaging in battle, however, do thou, at my command, employ him under thee from desire of benefiting thyself.[16] Cast thy eyes on righteousness, giving up covetousness that is improper. It behoveth thee not to abandon the duties of thy order from lust or desire of battle.[17] Victory, O sire, is not certain. Defeat also is not certain. Remembering this, peace should be made with an enemy by giving him food and other articles of enjoyment.[18] One may see victory and defeat in his own case. They that seek to

exterminate a foe are sometimes exterminated themselves in course of their efforts![19]—Thus addressed, king Janaka, properly saluting and honoring that bull among Brāhmanas who deserved every honor, replied unto him, saying,[20]—Thou art of great learning and great wisdom. That which thou hast said from desire of benefiting us, is certainly advantageous for both of us.[21] Such a course of conduct is highly beneficial (to us). I have no hesitation in saying this![22]—The ruler of Videha then, addressing the prince of Koçala, said these words.—In observance of Kshatriya duties as also with the aid of policy, I have conquered the world.[23] I have, however, O best of kings, been conquered by thee with thy good qualities! Without cherishing any sense of humiliation (if thou remainest by my side), live thou with me as a victor![*24] I honor thy intelligence, and I honor thy prowess. I do not disregard thee, saying that I have conquered thee! On the other hand, live thou with me as a victor![25] Honored duly by me, O king, thou wilt go to my abode!—Both the kings then worshipped that Brāhmana, and trusting each other, proceeded to the capital of Mithilā.[26] The ruler of the Videhas, causing the prince of Koçala to enter his abode, honored him, who deserved every honor, with offerings of water to wash his feet, honey and curds and the usual articles.[27] King Janaka also bestowed upon his guest his own daughter and diverse kinds of gems and jewels. This (the establishment of peace) is the high duty of kings; victory and defeat are both uncertain!'"[28]

Section CVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast, O scorcher of foes, described the course of duties, the general conduct, the means of livelihood, with their results, of Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Cudras.[1] Thou hast discoursed also on the duties of kings, the subject of their treasuries, the means of filling them, and the topic of conquest and victory.

---

* *Jitavat* is explained by Nilakantha as *prāpta jaya*.—T.

Thou hast spoken also of the characteristics of ministers, the measures that lead to the advancement of the subjects,[2] the characteristics of the sixfold limbs of a kingdom, the qualities of armies, the means of distinguishing the wicked, and the marks of those that are good,[3] the attributes of those that are equal, those that are inferior, and those that are superior, the behaviour which a king desirous of advancement should adopt towards the masses,[4] and the manner in which the weak should be protected and cherished. Thou hast discoursed on all these subjects, O Bhārata, laying down instructions that are plain according to what has been inculcated in sacred treaties.[5] Thou hast spoken also of the behaviour that should be adopted by kings desirous of conquering their foes. I desire now, O foremost of intelligent men, to listen to the behaviour that one should observe towards the multitude of courageous men that assemble round a king![*6] I desire to hear how these may grow, how they may be attached to the king, O Bhārata, how may they succeed in subjugating their foes and in acquiring friends.[7] It seems to me that disunion alone can bring about their destruction. I think it is always difficult to keep counsels secret when many are concerned.[8] I desire to hear all this in detail, O scorcher of foes! Tell me also, O king, the means by which they may be prevented from falling out with the king![9]

"Bhishma said,—'Between the aristocracy on the one side and the kings on the other, avarice and wrath, O monarch, are the causes that produce enmity.[†10] One of these parties (*viz.*, the king,) yields to avarice. As a consequence, wrath takes possession of the other (the aristocracy). Each intent upon weakening and wasting the other, they both meet with destruction.[11] By employing spies, contrivances of policy, and physical force, and adopting the arts of conciliation, gifts,

---

* The wood is *Gana*. It literally means an assemblage. There can be no doubt that throughout this lesson the wood has been employed to denote the aristocracy of wealth and blood that surround a throne.—T.

† If the king, moved by avarice, taxes them heavily, the aristocracy resent it and seek to pull down the king.—T.

and disunion, and applying other methods for producing weakness, waste, and fear, the parties assail each other.[12] The aristocracy of a kingdom, having the charateristics of a compact body, become dissociated from the king if the latter seeks to take too much from them. Dissociated from the king, all of them become dissatisfied, and acting from fear side with the enemies of their ruler.[13] If again the aristocracy of a kingdom be disunited amonst themselves, they meet with destruction. Disunited, they fall an easy prey to foes. The nobles, therefore, should always act in concert.[14] If they be united together, they may earn acquisitions of value by means of their strength and prowess. Indeed, when they are thus united, many outsiders seek their alliance.[15] Men of knowledge applaud those nobles that are united with one another in bonds of love. If united in purpose, all of them can be happy.[16] They can (by their example) establish righteous courses of conduct. By behaving properly, they advance in prosperity.[17] By restraining their sons and brothers and teaching them their duties, and by behaving kindly towards all persons whose pride has been quelled by knowledge,* the aristocracy advance in prosperity.[18] By always attending to the duties of setting spies and devising means of policy, as also to the matter of filling their treasuries, the aristocracy, O thou of mighty arms, advance in prosperity.[19] By showing proper reverence for them that are possessed of wisdom and courage and perseverance and that display steady prowess in all kinds of work, the aristocracy advance in prosperity.[20] Possessed of wealth and resources, of knowledge of the scriptures and of all arts and sciences, the aristocracy rescue the ignorant masses from every kind of distress and danger.[21] Wrath (on the part of the king), rupture,† terror, chastisement, persecution, oppression, and executions, O chief of the Bharatas, speedily cause the aristocracy to fall away from the king and side with the king's enemies.[22] They, therefore, that are the leaders of the aristocracy should be honored

* *I. e.*, learned men of humility.—T.

† Probably, with the king —T.

by the king. The affairs of the kingdom, O king, depend to a great extent upon them.[23] Consultations should be held with only those that are the leaders of the aristocracy, and secret agents should be placed, O crusher of foes, with them only. The king should not, O Bhārata, consult with every member of the aristocracy.[24] The king, acting in concert with the leaders, should do what is for the good of the whole order. When, however, the aristocracy becomes separated and disunited and destitute of leaders, other courses of action should be followed.[25] If the members of the aristocracy quarrel with one another and act, each according to his own resources, without combination, their prosperity dwindles away and diverse kinds of evil occur.[26] Those amongst them that are possessed of learning and wisdom should tread down a dispute as soon as it happens. Indeed, if the seniors of a race look on with indifference, quarrels break out amongst the members. Such quarrels bring about the destruction of a race and produce disunion among the (entire order of the) nobles.[27] Protect thyself, O king, from all fears that arise from within. Fears, however, that arise from outside are of little consequence. The first kind of fear, O king, may cut thy roots in a single day.[28] Persons that are equal to one another in family and blood, influenced by wrath or folly or covetousness arising from their very natures, cease to speak with one another. This is an indication of defeat. It is not by courage, nor by intelligence, nor by beauty, nor by wealth,[29] that enemies succeed in destroying the aristocracy. It is only by disunion and gifts that it can be reduced to subjugation. For this reason, combination has been said to be the great refuge of the aristocracy.' "*[30-31]

---

* The Burdwan Pundits make a mess of the last two verses. In 31, there is an incorrect reading in the Bengal texts. It is *Pradhānāccha* for *pradānāccha*. The Burdwan version repeats the error. K. P. Singha, of course, avoids it, but his version is rather incomplete.—T.

SECTION CVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'The path of duty is long. It has also, O Bhārata, many branches. What, however, according to thee, are those duties that most deserve to be practiced ?[1] What acts, according to thee, are the most important among all duties, by the practice of which I may earn the highest merit both here and hereafter ?'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'The worship of mother, father, and preceptor is most important according to me. The man who attends to that duty here, succeeds in acquiring great fame and many regions of felicity.[3] Worshipped with respect by thee, whatever they will command thee, be it consistent with righteousness or inconsistent with it, should be done unhesitatingly, O Yudhishthira ![4] One should never do what they forbid. Without doubt, that which they command should always be done.*[5] They are the three worlds. They are the three modes of life. They are the three Vedas. They are the three sacred fires.[6] The father is said to be the *Gārhapatya* fire; the mother, the *Dakshina* fire; and the preceptor is that fire upon which libations are poured. These three fires are, of course, the most eminent. If thou attendest with heedfulness to these three fires, thou wilt succeed in conquering the three worlds.[7] By serving the father with regularity, one may cross this world. By serving the mother in the same way, one may attain to regions of felicity in the next. By serving the preceptor with regularity, one may obtain the region of *Brahma*.[8] Behave properly towards these three, O Bhārata, thou shalt then obtain great fame in the three worlds, and blessed be thou, great will be thy merit and reward ![9] Never transgress them in any act. Never eat before they eat, nor eat anything that is better than what they eat. Never impute any fault to them. One should always serve them with humility. That is an act of high

* Literally, "One should not follow that course of duty which they do not indicate. That again is duty which they command. This is settled."—T.

merit.[10] By acting in that way, O best of kings, thou mayst obtain fame, merit, honor, and regions of felicity hereafter. He who honors these three is honored in all the worlds.[11] He, on the other hand, who disregards these three, fails to obtain any merit from any of his acts. Such a man, O scorcher of foes, acquires neither this world nor the next.[12] He who always disregards these three seniors never obtains fame either here or hereafter. Such a man never earns any good in the next world.[13] All that I have given away in honor of those three has become a hundred-fold or a thousand-fold of its actual measure. It is in consequence of that merit that even now, O Yudhishthira, the three worlds are clearly before my eyes![14] One Āchāryya is superior to ten Brāhmanas learned in the Vedas. One Upādhyaya is again superior to ten Āchāryyas. The father, again, is superior to ten Upādhyayas.[15] The mother, again, is superior to ten fathers, or, perhaps, the whole world, in importance. There is no one that deserves such reverence as the mother.[16] In my opinion, however, the preceptor is worthy of greater reverence than the father or even the mother. The father and the mother are authors of one's being.[17] The father and the mother, O Bhārata, only create the body. The life, on the other hand, that one obtains from one's preceptor, is heavenly. That life is subject to no decay and is immortal.[18] The father and the mother, however much they may offend, should never be slain. By not punishing a father and a mother, (even if they deserve punishment), one does not incur sin. Indeed, such reverend persons, by enjoying impunity, do not stain the king. The gods and the *Rishis* do not withhold their favors from such persons as strive to cherish even their sinful fathers with reverence.[19] He who favors a person by imparting to him true instruction, by communicating the Vedas, and giving knowledge which is immortal, should be regarded as both a father and mother. The disciple, in grateful recognition of what the instructor has done, should never do anything that would injure the latter.[20] They that do not reverence their preceptors after receiving instruction from them by obeying them dutifully in

thought and deed, incur the sin of killing a fœtus. There is no sinner in this world like them.* Preceptors always show great affection for their disciples. The latter should, therefore, show their preceptors commensurate reverence.[21] He, therefore, that wishes to earn that high merit which has existed from ancient days, should worship and adore his preceptors and carefully divide with them every object of enjoyment.[22] With him who pleases his father is pleased Prajāpati himself. He who pleases his mother gratifies the Earth herself.[23] He who pleases his preceptor gratifies *Brahma* by his act. For this reason, the preceptor is worthy of greater reverence than either the father or the mother.[24] If preceptors are worshipped, the very *Rishis*, and the gods, together with the *Pitris*, are all pleased. Therefore, the preceptor is worthy of the highest reverence.[25] The preceptor should never be disregarded in any manner by the disciple. Neither the mother nor the father deserves such regard as the preceptor.[26] The father, the mother, and the preceptor, should never be insulted. No act of theirs should be found fault with. The gods and the great *Rishis* are pleased with him that behaves with reverence towards his preceptors.[27] They that injure in thought and deed their preceptors, or fathers, or mothers, incur the sin of killing a fœtus. There is no sinner in the world equal to them.[28] That son of the sire's loins and the mother's womb, who, being brought up by them and when he comes to age, does not support them in his turn, incurs the sin of killing a fœtus. There is no sinner in the world like unto him.[29] We have never heard that these four, *viz.*, he who injures a friend, he who is ungrateful, he who slays a woman, and he who slays a preceptor, ever succeed in cleansing themselves.[30] I have now told thee generally all that a person should do in this world. Besides those duties that I have indicated, there is nothing productive of greater felicity. Thinking of all duties, I have told thee their essence.' "[31]

---

* *Pratyāsannāh* is explained by Nilakantha in a different way. I think, his interpretation is far-fetched.—T.

SECTION CIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How, O Bhārata, should a person act who desires to adhere to virtue? O bull of Bharata's race, possessed as thou art of learning, tell me this, questioned by me![1] Truth and falsehood exist, covering all the worlds. Which of these two, O king, should a person adopt that is firm in virtue?[2] What again is truth? What is falsehood? What, again, is eternal virtue? On what occasions should a person tell the truth, and on what occasion should he tell an untruth?'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'To tell the truth in consistent with righteousness. There is nothing higher than truth. I shall now, O Bhārata, say unto thee that which is not generally known to men.[4] There where falsehood would assume the aspect of truth, truth should not be said. There, again, where truth would assume the aspect of falsehood, even falsehood should be said.[5] That ignorant person incurs sin who says truth which is dissociated from righteousness. That person is said to be conversant with duties who can distinguish truth from falsehood.*[6] Even a person that is disrespectable, that is of uncleansed soul, and that is very cruel, may succeed in earning great merit as the hunter Valāka by slaying the blind beast (that threatened to destroy all creatures).†[7] How extraordinary it is that a person of foolish understanding, though desirous of acquiring merit (by austere penances) still committed a sinful act![‡] An owl again, on the banks of the Ganges, (by doing an unrighteous deed) obtained great merit.$

**I. e.* who knows when truth becomes as harmful as untruth, and untruth becomes as righteous as truth.—T.

† Vide *ante, Karna Parvan.*—T.

‡ Alludes to *ante, Karna Parvan.* The Rishi, by pointing out the place where certain innocent persons had concealed themselves while flying from a company of robbers, incurred the sin of murder.—T.

$ The allusion is to the story of an owl going to heaven for having, with his beaks, broken a thousand eggs laid by a she-serpent of deadly poison. The Burdwan Pundits have made nonsense of the first line of verse 8. There is no connection between the first and the second lines of this verse. K. P. Singha has rendered it correctly.—T.

The question thou hast asked me is a difficult one, since it is difficult to say what righteousness is. It is not easy to indicate it. No one in discoursing upon righteousness, can indicate it accurately.[8-9] Righteousness was declared (by Brahman) for the advancement and growth of all creatures. Therefore, that which leads to advancement and growth is righteousness.[10] Righteousness was declared for restraining creatures from injuring one another. Therefore, that is Righteousness which prevents injury to creatures.[11] Righteousness (*Dharma*) is so called because it upholds all creatures. In fact, all creatures are upheld by Righteousness. Therefore, that is Righteousness which is capable of upholding all creatures.[12] Some say that Righteousness consists in what has been inculcated in the *Çrutis*. Others do not agree to this. I would not censure them that say so. Everything, again, has not been laid down in the *Çrutis*.[13]* Sometimes men (robbers), desirous of obtaining the wealth of some one, make enquiries (for facilitating the act of plunder). One should never answer such enquiries. That is a settled duty.[14] If by maintaining silence, one succeeds in escaping, one should remain silent. If, on the other hand, one's silence at a time when one must speak rouses suspicion,[15] it would be better on such an occasion to say what is untrue than what is true. This is a settled conclusion. If one can escape from sinful men by even a (false) oath, one may take it without incurring sin.[16] One should not, even if one be able, give away his wealth to sinful men. Wealth given to sinful men afflicts even the giver.[17] If a creditor desires to make his debtor pay off the loan by rendering bodily service, the witnesses would all be liars, if, summoned by the creditor for establishing the truth of the contract, they did not say what should be said. When life is at

---

* This refers to the well-known definition of *Dharma* ascribed to Vacishtha, *viz.*, "That which is laid down in the *Crutis* and the *Smritis* is *Dharma*." The defect of this definition is that the *Crutis* and the *Smritis* do not include every duty. Hence Vacishtha was obliged to add that where these are silent, the examples and practices of the good ought to be the guides of men. &c.—T.

risk, or on occasions of marriage, one may say an untruth.[18-19] One that seeks for virtue, does not commit a sin by saying an untruth, if that untruth be said to save the wealth and prosperity of others or for the religious purposes.[20] Having promised to pay, one becomes bound to fulfill his promise. Upon failure, let the self-appropriator be forcibly enslaved. If a person without fulfilling a righteous engagement acts with impropriety, he should certainly be afflicted with the rod of chastisement for having adopted such behaviour.*[21] A deceitful person, falling away from all duties and abandoning those of his own order, always wishes to betake himself to the practices of *Asuras* for supporting life.[22] Such a sinful wretch living by deceit should be slain by every means. Such sinful men think that there is nothing in this world higher than wealth.[23] Such men should never be tolerated. No one should eat with them. They should be regarded to have fallen down in consequence of their sins. Indeed, fallen away from the condition of humanity and shut out from the grace of the gods, they are even like evil genii.[24] Without sacrifices and without penances as they are, forbear from their companionship. If their wealth be lost, they commit even suicide which is exceedingly pitiable.[25] Among those sinful men there is no one to whom thou canst say,—This is thy duty. Let thy heart turn to it!—Their settled convictions are that there is nothing in this world that is equal to wealth.[26] The person that would slay such a creature would incur no sin. He who kills him kills one that has been already killed by his own acts. If slain, it is the dead that is slain.[27] He who vows to destroy those persons of lost senses should keep his vows.† Such sinners are, like the crow and the vulture, dependent on deceit for their living. After the dissolution of their (human) bodies, they take rebirth as crows and vultures.[28] One should, in any matter, behave towards another as that other behaves

---

* The Burdwan translator has made a mess of verse 21. K. P. Singha quietly leaves it out. The fact is, *Swakāryastu* is *Swakāri astu*, meaning, 'let the appropriator be."—T.

† The construction is elliptical. *Yah samayam chikirshet tat kurvit.*—T.

in that matter. A practicer of deceit should be resisted with deceit, while one that is honest should be treated with honesty.' "[23]

SECTION CX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Creatures are seen to be afflicted by diverse means and almost continually. Tell me, O grandsire, in what way can one overcome all those difficulties ?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Those members of the regenerate class that duly practise, with restrained souls, the duties that have been laid down in the scriptures for the several modes of life, succeed in overcoming all these difficulties.[2] They that never practise deceit, they whose behaviour is restrained by salutary restrictions, and they that control all worldly desires, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[3] They that do not speak when addressed in evil language, they that do not injure others when injured themselves, they that give but do not take, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[4] They that always give hospitable shelter to guests, they that do not indulge in malice, they that are constantly engaged in the study of the Vedas, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[5] Those persons who, conversant with duties, adopt that behaviour towards parents which they should, they that abstain from sleeping during the day, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[6] They that do not commit any kind of sin in thought, word, and deed, they that never injure any creature, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[7] Those kings that do not, under the influence of passion and covetousness, levy oppressive taxes, and those that protect their own dominions, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[8] They that go to their own wedded wives in season without seeking the companionship of other women, they that are honest and attentive to their *Agni-hotras*, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[9] They that are possessed of courage and that, casting away all fear of death, engage in battle, desirous of victory by fair means, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[10] They that always speak truth in this world even when life is at stake, and that are examplars for all creatures to imitate,

succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[11] They whose acts never deceive, whose words are always agreeable, and whose wealth is always well spent, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[12] Those Brāhmanas that never study the Vedas at hours not intended for study, and that practise penances with devotion, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[13] Those Brāhmanas that betake themselves to a life of celebacy and *Brahmacharyya*, that perform penances, and that are cleansed by learning, Vedic knowledge, and proper vows, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[14] They that have checked all the qualities that appertain to Passion and Darkness, that are possessed of high souls, and that practise the qualities that are called Good, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[15] They of whom no creature stands in fear and those that do not fear any creature themselves, they that look upon all creatures as their own self, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[16] Those bulls among men that are good, that are never inspired with grief at the sight of other people's prosperity, and that abstain from all kinds of ignoble behaviour, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[17] They that bow to all the gods, that listen to the doctrines of all creeds, that have faith, and that are endued with tranquil souls, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[18] They that do not desire honor for themselves, that give honors unto others, that bow down unto those that deserve their worship, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[19] They that perform *Çrāddhas* on the proper lunar days, with pure minds, from desire of offspring, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[20] They that restrain their own wrath and pacify the wrath of others, and that never get angry with any creature, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[21] They that abstain, from their birth, from honey and meat and intoxicating drinks, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[22] They that eat for only supporting life, that seek the companionship of women for the sake only of offspring, and that open their lips for only speaking what is true, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[23] They that worship with devotion the god Nārāyana, that Supreme Lord of all creatures, that origin and destruction of the universe, succeed in overcoming all difficul-

ties.[24] This Krishna here, of eyes red as the lotus, clad in yellow robes, endued with mighty arms,—this Krishna who is our well-wisher, brother, friend, and relative,—is Nārāyana of unfading glory.[25] He covers all the worlds like a leathern case, at his own pleasure. He is the puissant Lord, of inconceivable soul! He is Govinda, the foremost of all beings![26] This Krishna who is ever engaged in doing what is agreeable and beneficial to Jishnu, as also to thee, O king, is that foremost of all beings, that irresistible one, that abode of eternal felicity![27] They that with devotion seek the refuge of this Nārāyana, called also Hari, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[28] They that read these verses about the overcoming of difficulties, that recite them to others, and that speak of them unto Brāhmanas, succeed in overcoming all difficulties.[29] I have now, O sinless one, told thee all those acts by which men may overcome all difficulties both here and hereafter!' "[30]

SECTION CXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—Many persons here that are not really of tranquil souls appear in outward form as men of tranquil souls. There are again others that are really of tranquil souls but that appear to be otherwise. How, O sire, shall we succeed in knowing these people?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is recited the old story of the discourse between a tiger and a jackal. Listen to it, O Yudhishthira![2] In ancient times, in a city called Purikā, full of affluence, there was a king named Paurika. That worst of beings was exceedingly cruel and took a delight in injuring others.[3] On the expiry of the period of his life he obtained an undesirable end. In fact, stained by the evil acts of his human life, he was reborn as a jackal.[4] Remembering his former prosperity, he became filled with grief and abstained from meat even when brought before him by others.[5] And he became compassionate unto all creatures, and truthful in speech, and firm in the observance of austere vows. At the appointed time he took food which consisted of fruit that had dropped from the trees.[6] That jackal dwelt in a vast

crematorium and liked to dwell there. And as it was his birth place, he never wished to change it for a finer locality.[7] Unable to endure the purity of his behaviour, the other members of his species endeavoured to make him alter his resolve by addressing him in the following words fraught with humility:[8]—Though residing in this terrible crematorium, thou desirest yet to live in such purity of behaviour. Is not this a perversity of understanding on thy part, since thou art by nature an eater of carrion ?[9] Be thou our like ! All of us will give thee food. Eat that which ought always to be thy food, abandoning such purity of conduct ![10]—Hearing these words of theirs, the jackal replied unto them, with rapt attention, in these sweet words fraught with reason and inculcating harmlessness to all :[11]—My birth has been low. It is conduct, however, that determines the race.* I desire to behave in such a way that my fame may spread.[12] Although my habitation is this crematorium, yet listen to my vows in respect of behaviour. One's own self is the cause of one's acts. The mode of life to which one may betake is not the cause of one's religious acts.[13] If one, while in the observance of a particular mode of life slays a Brāhmana, will not the sin of Brāhmanicide attach to him ? If, on the other hand, one gives away a cow while one is not in the observance of any perticular mode of life, will that pious gift produce no merit ?[14] Moved by the desire of getting what is agreeable, ye are engaged in only filling your stomachs. Stupified by folly ye do not see the three faults that are in the end.[15] I do not like to adopt the life led by you, fraught as it is with evil both here and hereafter, and characterised as it is by such censurable loss of virtue occasioned by discontentment and temptation ![16]—A tiger, celebrated for prowess, happened to overhear this conversation, and accordingly, taking the jackal for a learned

---

* The meaning is that though born in a low race, that is no reason why I should act like a low person. It is conduct that determines the race and not the race that determines conduct. There may be pious persons, therefore, in every race, The Burdwan version of this line is simply ridiculous.—T.

person of pure behaviour, offered him such respectful worship as was suited to his own self and then expressed a wish for appointing him his minister.[17]

" 'The tiger said,—O righteous personage, I know what thou art! Do thou attend to the duties of government with myself! Enjoy whatever articles may be desired by thee, abandoning whatever may not suit thy taste![*18] As regards ourselves, we are known to be of a fierce disposition. We inform thee before-hand of this. If thou behavest with mildness, thou wilt be benefited and reap advantages for thyself![19] —Honoring these words of that high-souled lord of all animals, the jackal, hanging down his head a little, said these words fraught with humility.[20]

" 'The jackal said,—O king of beasts, these words of thine with reference to myself are such as befit thee! It is also worthy of thee that thou shouldst seek for ministers of pure behaviour and conversant with duties and worldly affairs![21] Thou canst not maintain thy greatness without a pious minister, O hero, or with a wicked minister that is on the look out for putting an end to thy very life![22] Thou shouldst, O highly blessed one, regard those amongst thy ministers that are devoted to thee, that are conversant with policy, that are independent of one another, desirous of crowning thee with victory, unstained by covetousness, free from deceit, possessed of wisdom, ever engaged in thy good, and endued with great mental vigor, even as thou regardest thy preceptors or parents![23-24] But, O king of beasts, as I am perfectly contented with my present position, I do not desire to change it for anything else. I do not covet luxurious enjoyments or the happiness that arises from them.[25] My conduct, again, may not agree with that of thy old servants. If they happen to be of wicked conduct, they will produce disunion between thee and me.[26] Dependence upon another, even if that other happens to be possessed of splendour, is not desirable or praise-worthy.[27] I am of cleansed soul. I am highly blessed.

---

* *Yātrām* means, as explained by the commentator, the duties of government.—T.

I am incapable of showing severity to even sinners. I am of great foresight. I have capacity for great exertion. I do not look at small things. I am possessed of great strength. I am successful in acts. I never act fruitlessly. I am adorned with every object of enjoyment.[28] I am never satisfied with a little. I have never served another. I am, besides, unskilled in serving. I live according to my pleasure in the woods.[29] All who live by the side of kings have to endure great pain in consequence of evil speeches against themselves. Those, however, that reside in the woods pass their days, fearlessly and without anxiety, in the observance of vows.[30] The fear that arises in the heart of a person who is summoned by the king is unknown to persons passing their days contentedly in the woods, supporting life upon fruits and roots.[31] Simple food and drink obtained without effort, and luxurious food procured with fear, widely differ from each other. Reflecting upon these two, I am of opinion that there is happiness where there is no anxiety.[32] A few only amongst those that serve kings are justly punished for their offences. A large number of them, however, suffer death under false accusations.[33] If, notwithstanding all this, thou appointest me, O king of beasts, as thy minister, I wish to make a compact with thee in respect of the behaviour thou shouldst always adopt towards me.[34] Those words that I shall speak for thy good should be listened to and regarded by thee. The provision which thou wilt make for me shall not be interfered with by thee.[35] I shall never consult with thy other ministers. If I do, desirous of superiority as they are, they will then impute diverse kinds of faults to me.[36] Meeting with thee alone and in secret I shall say what is for thy good. In all matters connected with thy kinsmen, thou shalt not ask me what is for thy good or what is otherwise.[37] Having consulted with me thou shalt not punish thy other ministers afterwards. Yielding to rage thou shalt not punish my followers and dependents![38]—Thus addressed by the jackal, the king of beasts answered him, saying,—Let it be so!—and showed him every honor. The jackal then accepted the ministership of the tiger.[39] Beholding the jackal treated with res-

pect and honored in all his acts, the old servants of the king, conspiring together, began ceaselessly to display their hatred towards him.[40] Those wicked persons at first strove to gratify and win him over with friendly behaviour and make him tolerate the diverse abuses that existed in the state.[41] Despoilers of other people's property, they had long lived in the enjoyment of their perquisites. Now, however, being ruled by the jackal, they were unable to appropriate anything belonging to others.[42] Desirous of advancement and prosperity, they began to tempt him with sweet speeches. Indeed, large bribes even were offered to allure his heart. Possessed of great wisdom, the jackal showed no signs of yeilding to those temptations.[43] Then some amongst them, making a compact amongst themselves for effecting his destruction, took away the well-dressed meat that was intended for and much desired by the king of beasts, and placed it secretly in the house of the jackal.[44] The jackal knew who had stolen the meat and who had conspired to do it. But though he knew everything, he tolerated it for a particular object.[45] He had made a compact with the king at the time of his accepting the ministership, saying,—Thou desirest my friendship, but thou shalt not, O monarch, mistrust me without cause![46]—

"Bhishma continued,—'When the king of beasts, feeling hungry, came to eat, he saw not the meat that was to have been kept ready for his dinner. The king then ordered,—Let the thief be found out![47]—His deceitful ministers represented unto him that the meat kept for him had been stolen away by his learned minister, the jackal, that was so proud of his own wisdom.[48] Hearing of this injudicious act on the part of the jackal, the tiger became filled with rage. Indeed, the king, giving way to his wrath, ordered his minister to be slain.[49] Beholding the opportunity, the former ministers addressed the king, saying,—The jackal is ever ready to take away from all of us the means of sustenance![50]—Having represented this, they once more spoke of the jackal's act of robbing the king of his food. And they said,—Such then is his act! What is there that he would not venture to do?[51] He is not as thou hadst heard. He is righteous in speech but his real

disposition is sinful.[52] A wretch in reality, he has disguised himself by putting on a garb of virtue. His behaviour is really sinful. For serving his own ends he had practised austerities in the matter of diet and of vows.[53] If thou disbelievest this, we will give thee ocular proof!—Having said this, they immediately caused that meat to be discovered by entering the jackal's abode.[54] Ascertaining that the meat was brought back from the jackal's house and hearing all those representations of his old servants, the king ordered, saying,—Let the jackal be slain![55]—Hearing these words of the tiger, his mother came to that spot for awakening her son's good sense with beneficial counsels.[56] The venerable dame said,—O son, thou shouldst not accept this accusation fraught with deceit. Wicked individuals impute faults to even an honest person, moved by envy and rivalry.[57] Enemies desirous of a quarrel cannot endure the elevation of an enemy brought about by his high feats. Faults are ascribed to even a person of pure soul engaged in penances.[58] With respect to even an ascetic living in the woods and employed in his own (harmless) acts, are raised three parties, *viz.*, friends, neutrals, and foes.[59] They that are rapacious hate them that are pure. The idle hate the active. The unlearned hate the learned. The poor hate the rich. The unrighteous hate the righteous. The ugly hate the beautiful.[60] Many amongst the learned, the unlearned, the rapacious, and the deceitful, would falsely accuse an innocent person even if the latter happens to be possessed of the virtues and intelligence of Vrihaspati himself.[61] If meat had really been stolen from thy house in thy absence, remember, the jackal refuses to take any meat that is even given to him. Let this fact be well considered (in finding out the thief).[62] Wicked persons sometimes put on the semblance of the good, and they that are good sometimes wear the semblance of the wicked. Diverse kinds of aspect are noticeable in creatures. It is, therefore, necessary to examine which is which.[63] The firmament seems to be like the solid base of a vessel. The fire-fly seems to be like the actual spark of fire. In reality, however, the sky has no base and there is no fire in the fire-fly.[64] You see, there is necessity, therefore, for scrutiny in

respect of even such things as are addressed to the eye. If a person ascertains everything after scrutiny, he is never called upon to indulge in any kind of regret afterwards.[65] It is not at all difficult, O son, for a master to put his servant to death. Forgiveness, however, in persons possessed of power, is always praiseworthy and productive of renown.[66] Thou hadst made the jackal thy first minister. In consequence of that act, thou hadst earned great fame among all neighbouring chiefs. A good minister cannot be obtained easily. The jackal is thy well-wisher. Let him, therefore, be supported.[67] That king who regards a really innocent person falsely accused by his enemies to be guilty, soon meets with destruction in consequence of the wicked ministers that lead him to that conviction![68]—After the tiger's mother had concluded her speech, a righteous agent of the jackal, stepping out of that phalanx of his foes, discovered everything about the manner in which that false accusation had been made.[69] The jackal's innocence being made manifest, he was acquitted and honored by his master. The king of beasts affectionately embraced him again and again.[70] The jackal, however, who was well conversant with the science of policy, burning with grief, saluted the king of beasts and solicited his permission for throwing away his life by observing the *Prāya* vow.[71] The tiger, casting upon the virtuous jackal his eyes expanded with affection and honoring him with reverential worship, sought to dissuade him from the accomplishment of his wishes.[72] The jackal, beholding his master agitated with affection, bowed down to him and in a voice choked with tears said these words:[73]—Honored by thee first, I have afterwards been insulted by thee! Thy behaviour towards me is calculated to make me an enemy of thine! It is not proper, therefore, that I should any longer dwell with thee![74] Servants that are discontented, that have been driven from their offices, or degraded from the honors that were theirs, that have brought destitution upon themselves, or have been ruined by their enemies (through the wrath of their master),[75] that have been weakened, that are rapacious, or enraged, or alarmed, or deceived (in respect of their employers), that have

suffered confiscation, that are proud and desirous of achieving great feats but deprived of the means of earning wealth,[76] and that burn with grief or rage in consequence of any injury done to them, always wait for calamities to overtake their masters. Deceived, they leave their masters and become effective intruments in the hands of his foes.*[77] I have been insulted by thee and pulled down from my place. How wilt thou trust me again? How shall I (on my part) continue to dwell with thee?[78] Thinking me to be competent thou tookest me, and having examined me thou hadst placed me in office. Violating the compact then made (between us) thou hast insulted me.[79] If one speaks of a certain person before others as possessed of righteous behaviour, one should not, if desirous of maintaining one's consistency, afterwards describe the same person as wicked.[80] I who have thus been disregarded by thee cannot any longer enjoy thy confidence. On my part, when I shall see thee withdraw thy confidence from me, I shall be filled with alarm and anxiety.[81] Thyself suspicious and myself in alarm, our enemies will be on the look out for opportunities for injuring us. Thy subjects will, as a consequence, become anxious and discontented. Such a state of things has many faults.[82] The wise do not regard that situation happy in which there is honor first and dishonor afterwards.[83] It is difficult to reunite two that have been separated, as, indeed, it is difficult to separate two that are united. If persons reunited after separation approach one another again, their behaviour cannot be affectionate.[84] No servant is to be seen who is moved (in what he does) by only the desire of benefiting his master. Service proceeds from the motive of doing good to the master as also to one's own self. All acts are undertaken from selfish motives. Unselfish acts or motives are very rare.[85] Those kings whose hearts are restless and unquiet cannot acquire a true knowledge of men. Only one in a hundred can be found who is either able

---

* Nilakantha explains *aparasādhanāh* as *aparasa adhanāh*, i. e., without *rasa* or affection and without *dhana* or wealth. This is very far-fetched.—T.

or fearless.[6] The prosperity of men, as also their fall, comes of itself. Prosperity and adversity, and greatness, all proceed from weakness of understanding.*—'[87]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having said these conciliatory words fraught with virtue, pleasure, and profit, and having gratified the king, the jackal retired to the forest.[88] Without listening to the entreaties of the king of beasts, the intelligent jackal cast off his body by sitting in *prāya* and proceeded to heaven (as the reward of his good deeds on Earth).' "[89]

Section CXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What acts should be done by a king, and what are those acts by doing which a king may become happy? Tell me this in detail, O thou that art the foremost of all persons acquainted with duties!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall tell thee what thou wishest to know! Listen to the settled truth about what should be done in this world by a king and what those acts are by doing which a king may become happy![2] A king should not behave after the manner disclosed in the high history of a camel of which we have heard. Listen to that history then, O Yudhishthira![3] There was, in the *Krita* age, a huge camel who had recollection of all the acts of his former life. Observing the most rigid vows, that camel practised very severe austerities in the forest.[4] Towards the conclusion of his penances, the puissant Brahman became gratified with him. The Grandsire, therefore, desired to grant him boons.[5]

" 'The camel said,—Let my neck, O holy one, become long through thy grace, so that, O puissant lord, I may be able to seize any food that may lie even at the end of even a hundred *Yojanas*![6]—The high-souled giver of boons said,—Let it be so!—The camel then, having obtained that boon, returned to his own forest.[7] The foolish animal, from the day of obtaining the boon, became idle. Indeed, the wretch, stupified by fate,

---

* Perhaps the sense is that men of vigorous understanding think all states to be equal.—T.

did not from that day go out for grazing.[8] One day, while extending his long neck of a hundred *Yojanas*, the animal was engaged in picking his food without any labour, a great storm arose.[9] The camel, placing his head and a portion of the neck within the cave of a mountain, resolved to wait till the storm would be over. Meanwhile it began to pour in torrents, deluging the whole Earth.[10] A jackal, with his wife, drenched by the rain and shivering with cold, dragged himself with difficulty towards that very cave and entered it quickly for shelter.[11] Living as he did upon meat, and exceedingly hungry and tired as he was, O bull of Bharata's race, the jackal, seeing the camel's neck, began to eat as much of it as he could. The camel, when he perceived that his neck was being eaten, strove in sorrow to shorten it.[13] But as he moved it up and down, the jackal and his wife, without losing their hold of it, continued to eat it away.[14] Within a short time the camel was deprived of life. The jackal then, having (thus) slain and eaten the camel, came out of the cave after the storm and shower had ceased.[15] Thus did that foolish camel meet with his death. Behold, what a great evil followed in the train of idleness![16] As regards thyself, avoiding idleness and restraining thy senses, do everything in the world with proper means. Manu himself has said that victory depends upon intelligence.[17] All acts that are accomplished with the aid of intelligence are regarded as the foremost, those achieved with the aid of arms are middling, those achieved with the aid of feet are inferior, while those done by carrying loads are the lowest.[18] If the king is clever in the transaction of business and restrains his senses, his kingdom endures. Manu himself has said that it is with the aid of the intelligence that an ambitious person succeeds in achieving victories.[19] In this world, O Yudhishthira, they who listen to wise counsels that are not generally known, that are, O sinless one, possessed of allies, and that act after proper scrutiny, succeed in achieving all their objects.[20] A person possessed of such aids succeeds in ruling the entire Earth.[21] O thou that art possessed of prowess like that of Indra himself, this has been said by wise men of ancient times

conversant with the ordinances laid down in the scriptures! I, also, with sight directed to the scriptures, have said the same to thee! Exercising thy intelligence, do thou act in this world, O king!'"[22]

SECTION CXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me O bull of Bharata's race, how a king, without the usual aids, having obtained a kingdom that is so precious a possession, behave himself towards a powerful foe?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old story of the discourse between the Ocean and the Rivers.[2] In days of old, eternal Ocean, that lord of Rivers, that refuge of the foes of the celestials, asked all the Rivers for resolving this doubt that had arisen in his mind.[3]

"'The Ocean said,—Ye Rivers, I see that all of you, with your full currents, bring away trees of large trunks, tearing them off with their roots and branches! Ye do not, however, ever bring to me a cane![4] The canes that grow on your banks are of mean stems and destitute of strength. Do you refuse to wash them down through contempt, or are they of any use to you?[5] I desire, therefore to hear what the motive is that inspires all of you! Indeed, why is it that canes, are not washed down by any of you, uprooted from the banks where they grow?—Thus addressed, the River Gangā replied unto Ocean, that lord of all Rivers, in these words of grave import, fraught with reason, and, therefore, acceptable to all.[7]

"'Gangā said,—Trees stand in one and the same place and are unyielding in respect of the spot where they stand. In consequence of this disposition of theirs to resist our currents, they are obliged to leave the place of their growth. Canes, however, act differently.[8] The cane, beholding the advancing current, bends to it. The others do not act in that way. After the current has passed away, the cane resumes its former posture.[9] The cane knows the virtues of Time and opportunity. It is docile and obedient. It is yielding, without being stiff. For these reasons, it stands where it grows, without having to

come with us.[10] Those plants, trees, and creepers that bend and rise before the force of wind and water, have never to suffer discomfiture (by being taken up by the roots).—'[11]

"Bhishma continued,—That person who does not yield to the power of a foe that has advanced in might and that is competent to imprison or kill, soon meets with destruction.*[12] That man of wisdom who acts after ascertaining fully the strength and weakness, the might and energy, of himself and his foe, has never to suffer discomfiture.[13] An intelligent man, therefore, when he sees his enemy to be more powerful than himself, should adopt the behaviour of the cane. That is an indication of wisdom.''[14]

SECTION CXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How, O Bhārata, should a learned man adorned with modesty behave, O chastiser of foes, when assailed with harsh speeches in the midst of assemblies by an ignorant person swelling with conceit?'†[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O lord of Earth, how the subject has been treated of (in the scriptures) how a person of good soul should endure in this world the abusive speeches of persons of little intelligence.[2] If a person, when abused by another, do not yield to wrath, he is then sure to take away (the merit of) all the good deeds that have been done by the abuser. The endurer, in such a case, communicates the demerit of all his own bad acts to the person who under the influence of wrath indulges in abuse.[3] An intelligent man should disregard an utterer of abusive language who resembles, after all, only a *Tittibha* uttering dissonant cries‡. One who yields to hate is said to live in vain. A fool may often be heard to say —Such a respectable man was addressed by me in such words amid such an assembly of men!—and to even boast of that

---

* The true policy, therefore, is to wait for the time when the foe becomes weak.—T.

† *Mridustikshnena* is better than *Mridutikshnena*.—T.

‡ A bird that is identified by Dr. Wilson with the *Parra Jacana*.—T.

wicked act.[5] He would add,—Abused by me, the man remained silent as if dead with shame!—Even thus does a shameless man boast of an act about which no one should boast.[6] Such a wretch among men should carefully be disregarded. The man of wisdom should endure everything that such a person of little intelligence may say.[7] What can a vulgar fellow do by either his praise or blame? He is even like a crow that caws uselessly in the woods.[8] If those who accuse others by only their words could establish those accusations by such means, then, perhaps, their words would have been regarded to be of some value. As a fact, however, their words are as effective as those uttered by fools invoking death upon them with whom they quarrel.*[9] That man simply proclaims his bastardy who indulges in such conduct and words. Indeed, he is even like a peacock that dances while showing such a part of his body as should be ever concealed from the view.†[10] A person of pure conduct should never even speak with that wight of sinful conduct who does not scruple to utter anything or do anything.[11] That man who speaks of one's merits when one's eye is upon him and who speaks ill of one when one's eye is withdrawn from him, is really like a dog. Such a person loses all his regions in heaven and the fruits of any knowledge and virtue that he may have.‡[12] The man who speaks ill of one when one's eye is not upon him, loses without delay the fruits of all his libations on fire and of the gifts he may make unto even a hundred persons.[13] A man of wisdom, therefore, should unhesitataingly avoid a person of such sinful heart who deserves to be avoided by all honest men, as he would avoid the flesh of the dog.[14] That wicked-souled wretch who proclaims the faults of a high-souled person, really

---

* In India, the commonest form of verbal abuse among ignorant men and women is—'Do thou meet with death,' or, 'Go thou to Yama's house!' What Bhishma says is that as these words are uttered in vain, even so the verbal accusations of wicked men prove perfectly abortive.T.

† The Burdwan Pundits have totally misunderstood the first line of this verse. K. P. Singha has rendered it correctly.—T.

‡ A dog is an unclean animal in Hindu estimation.—T.

publishes (by that act) his own evil nature even as a snake displays his hood (when interfered with by others).[15] The man of sense who seeks to counteract such a back-biter ever engaged in an occupation congenial to himself, finds himself in the painful condition of a stupid ass sunk in a heap of ashes.[16] A man who is ever engaged in speaking ill of others should be avoided like a furious wolf, or an infuriate elephant roaring in madness, or a fierce dog.[17] Fie on that sinful wretch who has betaken himself to the path of the foolish who has fallen away from all wholesome restraints and modesty, who is always engaged in doing what is injurious to others, and who is regardless of his own prosperity.[18] If an honest man wishes to exchange words with such wretches when they seek to humiliate him, he should be counselled in these words:—Do not suffer thyself to be afflicted! A wordy encounter between a high and a low person is always disapproved by persons of tranquil intelligence.[19] A slanderous wretch, when enraged, may strike another with his palms, or throw dust or chaff at another, or frighten another by showing or grinding his teeth. All this is well known.[20] That man who endures the reproaches and slanders of wicked-souled wights uttered in assemblies, or who reads frequently these instructions, never suffers any pain occasioned by speech.'"[21]

SECTION CXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, O thou that art possessed of great wisdom, I have one great doubt that perplexes me! Thou shouldst, O king, resolve it! Thou art an advancer of our family.[1] Thou hast discoursed to us upon the slanderous speeches uttered by wicked-souled wretches of bad conduct. I desire, however, to question thee further![2] That which is beneficial to a kingdom, that which is productive of the happiness of the royal line, that which is productive of good and advancement in the future and the present,[3] that which is good in respect of food and drink and as regards also the body, are topics upon which I wish thee to discourse![4] How should a king who has been placed on the throne and

who continues to occupy it, surrounded by friends, ministers, and servants, gratify his people?[5] That king who, led away by his affections and predilections, becomes devoted to evil associates, and who pays court to wicked men in consequence of his being enthralled by his senses,[6] finds all servants of good birth and blood disaffected towards him. Such a king never succeeds in obtaining those objects the accomplishment of which depends upon one's having a number of good servants about him.[7] It behoveth thee that art equal to Vrihaspati himself in intelligence to discourse to me upon these duties of kings which are difficult to be ascertained and thereby remove my doubts![8] Thou, O tiger among men, art ever engaged in accomplishing the good of our race. For this reason thou always discoursest to us on the duties of king-craft. Kshatri (Vidura) also, possessed of great wisdom, always gives us valuable instruction.[9] Hearing instructions from thee that are productive of good to our race and kingdom, I shall be able to pass my days in happiness like a person gratified with having quaffed the deathless *Amrita*![10] What classes of servants are to be regarded as inferior and what as possessed of every accomplishment? Aided by what class of servants or by servants of what kind of birth, is it advisible to discharge the duties of ruling?[11] If the king choose to act alone and without servants, he can never succeed in protecting his people. All persons, however, of high birth covet the acquisition of sovereignty![12]

"Bhishma said,—'The king, O Bhārata, cannot alone rule his kingdom. Without servants to aid him, he cannot succeed in accomplishing any object. Even if he succeeds in gaining any object, he cannot (if alone), retain it.[13] That king whose servants are all possessed of knowledge and wisdom, who are all devoted to the good of their master, and who are of high birth and tranquil disposition, succeeds in enjoying the happiness connected with sovereigny.[14] That king whose ministers are all well born, incapable of being weaned away from him (by means of bribes and other influences), who always live with him, who are engaged in giving advice to their master, who are possessed of wisdom and goodness, who

have a knowledge of the relations of things,[15] who can provide for future events and contingencies, who have a good knowledge of the virtues of time, and who never grieve for what is past, succeeds in enjoying the happiness that attaches to sovereignty.[16] That king whose servants share with him his griefs and joys, who always do what is agreeable to him, who always direct their attention to the accomplishment of their master's objects, and all of whom are faithful, succeeds in enjoying the happiness that attaches to sovereignty.[17] That king whose subjects are always cheerful, and high-minded, and who always tread in the path of the righteous, succeeds in enjoying the happiness attached to sovereignty.[18] He is the best of kings all the sources of whose income are managed and supervised by contented and trustworthy men well acquainted with the means of increasing the finances.[19] That king succeeds in obtaining affluence and great merit whose repositaries and barns are supervised by incorruptible, trustworthy, dovoted, and uncovetous servants always bent upon gathering.[20] That king in whose city justice is administered properly with the result of such administration leading to the well known results of fining the plaintiff or the defendant if his case is untrue, and in which criminal laws are administered even after the manner of Cankha and Likhita,* succeeds in earning the merit that attaches to sovereignty.[21] That king who attaches his subjects to himself by kindness, who is conversant with the duties of kings, and who attends to the aggregate of six, succeeds in earning the merit that attaches to sovereignty.' "[22]

SECTION CXVI.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the following history of olden times. That history is regarded as a high precedent amongst good and wisemen.[1] That history has connection with the present topic. I heard it in the hermitage of Rāma the son of Jamadagni, recited by many foremost of *Rishis*.[2] In a certain large forest uninhabited by human beings, there lived an ascetic upon fruits and roots, observing

rigid vows, and with his senses under control.[3] Observant also of stringent regulations and self-restraint, of tranquil and pure soul, always attentive to Vedic recitations, and of heart cleansed by fasts, he adopted a life of goodness towards all creatures.[4] Possessed of great intelligence, as he sat on his seat, the goodness of his behaviour having been known to all the creatures that lived in that forest, they used to approach him with affection.[5] Fierce lions and tigers, infuriate elephants of huge size, leopards, rhinoceroses, bears, and other animals of fierce aspect,[6] subsisting upon blood, used to come to the *Rishi* and address him the usual questions of polite enquiry. Indeed, all of them behaved towards him like disciples and slaves and always did unto him what was agreeable.[7] Coming to him they addressed the usual enquiries, and then went away to their respective quarters. One domestic animal, however, lived there permanently, never leaving the *Muni* at any time.[8] He was devoted to the sage and exceedingly attached to him. Weak and emaciated with fasts, he subsisted upon fruits and roots and water, and was tranquil and of inoffensive aspect.[9] Lying at the feet of that high-souled *Rishi* as the latter sat, the dog, with a heart like that of a human being, became exceedingly attached to him in consequence of the affection with which he was treated.[10] One day a leopard of great strength came there, subsisting upon blood. Of a cruel disposition and always filled with delight at the prospect of prey, the fierce animal looked like a second Yama.[11] Licking the corners of his mouth with the tongue, and lashing his tail furiously, the leopard came there, hungry and thirsty, with wide open jaws, desirous of seizing the dog as his prey.[12] Beholding that fierce beast coming, O king, the dog, in fear of his life, addressed the *Muni* in these words. Listen unto them, O monarch![13]—O holy one, this leopard is a foe of the dogs! It wishes to slay me! O great sage, do thou act in such a way that all my fears from this animal may be dispelled through thy grace! O thou of mighty arms, without doubt thou art possessed of omniscience![14]—Acquainted with the thoughts of all creatures, the sage felt that the dog had ample cause for fear. Possessed of the six

attributes and capable of reading the voices of all animals, the sage said the following words.[15]

" 'The sage said,—Thou shalt have no fear of death from leopards any longer! Let thy natural form disappear and be thou a leopard, O son![16]—At these words, the dog was transformed into a leopard with skin bright as gold. With stripes on his body and with large teeth, thenceforth he began to live in that forest fearlessly.[17] Meanwhile, the leopard, seeing before him an animal of his own species, immediately forsook all feelings of animosity towards it.[18] Sometime after, there came into the hermitage a fierce and hungry tiger with open mouth. Licking the corners of his mouth with the tongue, and eagerly desirous of drinking blood, that tiger began to approach towards the animal that had been transformed into a leopard.[19] Beholding the hungry tiger of terrible teeth approach that forest, the (transformed) leopard sought the *Rishi's* protection for saving his life.[20] The sage, who showed great affection for the leopard in consequence of the latter's living in the same place with him, forthwith transformed his leopard into a tiger powerful for all foes.[21] The tiger seeing a beast of his own species did him no injury, O king. The dog, having in course of time been transformed into a powerful tiger subsisting upon flesh and blood, abstained from his former food which had consisted of fruits and roots.[22] Indeed, from that time, O monarch, the transformed tiger lived, subsisting upon the other animals of the forest, like a true king of beasts.' "[23]

SECTION CXVII.

"Bhishma said,—'The dog transformed into a tiger, gratified with the flesh of slain beasts, slept at his ease. One day as he lay on the yard of the hermitage, an infuriate elephant came there, looking like a risen cloud.[1] Of huge stature, with rent cheeks, having signs of the lotus on his body, and with broad frontal globes, the animal had long tusks and a voice deep as that of the clouds.[2] Beholding that infuriate elephant, proud of his strength, approaching towards him, the tiger, agitated with fear, sought the protection of the

Rishi.[3] That best of sages thereupon transformed the tiger into an elephant. The real elephant, seeing an individual of his own species, huge as a mass of clouds, became terrified.[4] The *Rishi's* elephant then, freckled with the dust of lotus filaments, dived delightfully into lakes overgrown with lotuses and wandered by their banks indented with rabbit holes.[5] A considerable time elapsed in this way. One day as the elephant was cheerfully striding along the vicinity of the hermitage, there came before him unto that spot a maned lion born in a mountain cave and accustomed to slay elephants.[6-7] Beholding the lion coming, the *Rishi's* elephant, from fear of life, began to tremble and sought the protection of the sage.[8] The sage thereupon transformed that prince of elephants into a lion. As the wild lion was an animal of the same species with himself, the *Rishi's* lion no longer feared him. On the other hand, the wild lion, seeing a stronger beast of his own species before him, became terrified.[9] The *Rishi's* lion began to dwell in that hermitage within the forest. Through fear of that animal, the other animals no longer ventured to approach the hermitage. Indeed, they all seemed to be inspired with fear about the safety of their lives.[10] Sometime after, one day, a slayer of all animals, possessed of great strength inspiring all creatures with fright,[11] having eight legs and eyes on the forehead, *viz.*, a *Çarabha*, came to that spot. Indeed, he came to that very hermitage for the object of slaying the *Rishi's* lion.[12] Seeing this, the sage transformed his lion into a Carabha of great strength.[13] The wild *Çarabha*, beholding the *Rishi's Çarabha* before him to be fiercer and more powerful than himself, quickly fled away from that forest.[14] Having been thus transformed into a *Çarabha* by the sage, the animal lived happily by the side of his transformer.[15] All the animals then that dwelt in the vicinity became inspired with the fear of that *Çarabha*. Their fear and the desire of saving their lives led them all to fly away from that forest.[16] Filled with delight, the *Çarabha* continued every day to slay animals for his food. Transformed into a carnivorous beast, he no longer affected fruits and roots upon which he had formerly lived.[17] One day that ungrateful

beast who had first been a dog but who was now transformed into a Carabha, eagerly thirsting for blood, wished to slay the sage.[18] The latter, by ascetic power, saw it all by his spiritual knowledge. Possessed of great wisdom, the sage, having ascertained the intentions of the beast, addressed him in these words.[19]

"The sage said,—O dog, thou wert first transformed into a leopard! From a leopard thou wert then made a tiger! From a tiger thou wert next transformed into an elephant with the temporal juice trickling adown thy cheeks! Thy next transformation was into a lion![20] From a mighty lion thou wert then transformed into a *Çarabha!* Filled with affection for thee, it was I that transformed thee into these diverse shapes! Thou didst not, and dost not, belong by birth, to any of those species![21] Since, however, O sinful wretch, thou desirest to slay me who have done thee no injury, thou shalt return to thy own species and be a dog again![22]— After this, that mean and foolish animal of wicked soul, transformed into a *Çarabha*, once more assumed, in consequence of the *Rishi's* curse, his own proper form of a dog.'"[23]

SECTION CXVIII.

"Bhishma said,—'Having once more assumed his proper form, the dog became very cheerless. The *Rishi*, reproving him, drove the sinful creature from his hermitage.[1] An intelligent king should, guided by this precedent, appoint servants, each fit for the office assigned to him, and exercise proper supervison over them, having first ascertained their qualifications in respect of truthfulness and purity, sincerity, general disposition, knowledge of the scriptures, conduct, birth, selfrestraint, compassion, strength, energy, dignity, and forgiveness.[3] A king should never take a minister without first having examined him. If a king gathers round him persons of low birth, he can never be happy.[4] A person of high birth, even if persecuted without any fault by his royal master, never sets his heart, in consequence of the respectability of his blood, upon injuring his master.[5] An individual, however,

that is mean and of low birth, having obtained even great affluence from his connection with some honest man, becomes an enemy of the latter if only he is reproached in words.*[6] A minister should be possessed of high birth and strength; he should be forgiving and self-restrained, and have all his senses under control; he should be free from the vice of rapacity, contented with his just acquisitions, delighted with the prosperity of his master and friends,[7-8] conversant with the requirements of place and time, ever employed in attaching men to himself or his master by doing good offices to them, always attentive to his duties, desiring the good of his master, always heedful,[9] faithful in the discharge of his own duties, a thorough master of the art of war and peace, conversant with the king's requirements in respect of the great aggregate of three, beloved by both the citizens and the inhabitants of the provinces,[10] acquainted with all kinds of battle-array for piercing and breaking the enemy's ranks, competent to inspire the forces of his master with cheerfulness and joy, capable of reading signs and gestures, acquainted with all requirements in respect of march,[11] skilled in the art of training elephants, free from pride, confident of his own powers, clever in the transaction of business, always doing what is right,[12] of righteous conduct, surrounded by righteous friends, of sweet speech, possessed of agreeable features, capable of leading men, well-versed in policy, possessed of accomplishments, energetic in action,[13] active, possessed of ingenuity, of a sweet temper, modest in address, patient, brave, rich, and capable of adapting his measures to the requirements of place and time.[14] That king who succeeds in obtaining such a minister can never be humiliated or overpowered by any one. Indeed, his kingdom gradually spreads over the Earth like the light of the moon.[15] A king, again, who is conver-

* The antithesis consists, as pointed out by Nilakantha, in this, *viz.*, the man of high birth, even if ruined undeservedly, would not injure his master. The man, however, that is of low birth, would become the foe of even a kind master if only a few words of censure be addressed to him.—T.

sant with the scriptures, who regards righteousness to be superior to everything, who is always engaged in protecting his subjects, and who is possessed of the following virtues, obtains the love of all.[16] He should be patient, forgiving, pure in conduct, severe when the occasion requires it, acquainted with the efficacy of exertion, respectful in his behaviour towards all his seniors, possessed of a knowledge of the scriptures, ready to listen to the instructions and counsels of those that are competent to instruct and give counsel, capable of judging correctly amid different or opposite courses of action suggested to him,[17] intelligent, of a retentive memory, ready to do what is just, self-restrained, always sweet-speeched, forgiving even unto enemies,[18] practising charity personally, possessed of faith, of agreeable features, ready to extend the hand of succour to persons plunged in distress, possessed of ministers that always seek his good,[19] free from the fault of egotism, never without a wife,* and undisposed to do anything with haste. He should always reward his ministers when they achieve anything signal. He should love those that are devoted to him.[20] Avoiding idleness, he should always attach men to himself by doing good to them. His face should always be cheerful. He should always be attentive to the wants of his servants and never give way to wrath. He should, besides, be magnanimous.[21] Without laying aside the rod of chastisement, he should wield it with propriety. He should make all men about him act righteously. Having spies for his eyes, he should always supervise the concerns of his subjects, and should be conversant in all matters connected with virtue and wealth. A king that is possessed of these hundred qualifications earns the love of all. Every ruler should strive to be such.[22] The king should also, O monarch, search for good warriors (to enlist in his army) that should all be possessed of the necessary qualifications, for aiding him in protecting his kingdom.[23] A king that desires his own advancement should never disregard his army. That king whose

---

* Nilakantha explains that *na nirdhandvah* means *na nishparigrahah*.—T.

soldiers are brave in battle, grateful, and versed in the scriptures, whose army consists of foot-soldiers conversant with the treatises on religion and duty, whose elephant-warriors are fearless, whose car-warriors are skilled in their own mode of fighting and well-versed in shooting arrows and in wielding other weapons, succeeds in subjugating the whole Earth.[25] That king who is always employed in attaching all men to himself, who is ready for exertion, who is rich in friends and allies, becomes the foremost of rulers.[26] A king who has succeeded in attaching all men unto himself, may, O Bhārata, with the aid of even a thousand horsemen of courage, succeed in conquering the whole Earth.' "[27]

Section CXIX.

"Bhishma said,—'That king who, guided by the lesson to be drawn from the story of the dog, appoints his servants to offices for which each is fit, succeeds in enjoying the happiness that is attached to sovereignty! A dog should not, with honors, be placed in a position above that for which he is fit. If a dog be placed above that situation which is fit for him, he becomes intoxicated with pride.[2] Ministers should be appointed to offices for which they are fit and should possess such qualifications as are needed for their respective occupations. Appointments on unfit persons are not at all approved.[3] That king who confers on his servants offices for which each is fit, succeeds, in consequence of such merit, to enjoy the happiness attaching to sovereignty.[4] A *Çarabha* should occupy the position of a *Çarabha*; a lion should swell with the might of a lion; a tiger should be placed in the position of a tiger; and a leopard should be placed as a leopard.[5] Servants should, according to the ordinance, be appointed to offices for which each is fit. If thou wishest to achieve success, thou shouldst never appoint servants in situations higher than what they deserve.[6] That foolish king who, transgressing precedent, appoints servants to offices for which they are not fit, fails to gratify his people.[7] A king that desires to possess accomplished servants should never appoint persons that are destitute of intelligence,

that are low-minded, that are without wisdom, that are not masters of their senses, and that are not of high birth.[8] Men that are honest, possessed of high birth, brave, learned, destitute of malice and envy, high-minded, pure in behaviour, and clever in the transaction of business, deserve to be appointed as ministers.[9] Persons that are possessed of humility, ready in the performance of their duties, tranquil in disposition, pure in mind, adorned with diverse other gifts of nature, and are never the objects of calumny in respect of the offices they hold, should be the intimate associates of the king.[10] A lion should always make a companion of a lion. If one that is not a lion becomes the companion of a lion, one earns all the advantages that belong to a lion.[11] That lion, however who, while engaged in discharging the duties of a lion, has a pack of dogs only for his associates, never succeeds in consequence of such companionship, in accomplishing those duties.[12] Even thus, O ruler of men, may a king succeed in subjugating the whole Earth if he has for his ministers men possessed of courage, wisdom, great learning, and high birth.[13] O foremost of royal masters, kings should never entertain a servant that is destitute of learning and sincerity and wisdom and great wealth.[14] Those men that are devoted to the services of their master are never stopped by any impediments.* Kings should always speak in soothing terms unto those servants that are always engaged in doing good to their masters.[15] Kings should always, with great care, look after their treasuries. Indeed, kings have their roots in their treasuries. A king should always seek to swell his treasury.[16] Let thy barns, O king, be filled with corn. And let their keep be entrusted to honest servants. Do thou seek to increase thy wealth and corn.[17] Let thy servants, skilled in battle, be always attentive to their duties. It is desirable that they should be skilful in the management of steeds.[18] O delighter of the Kurus, attend to the wants of thy kinsmen and friends! Be thou surrounded with friends and relatives! Seek thou the good of thy city![19] By citing the precedent of the

---

† Literally, 'proceed like unreturning arrows.'—T.

dog I have instructed thee about the duties thou shouldst adopt towards thy subjects. What further dost thou wish to hear?' "[20]

SECTION CXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast, O Bhārata, discoursed upon the many duties of king-craft that were observed and laid down in days of old by persons of ancient times conversant with kingly duties.[1] Thou hast, indeed, spoken in detail of those duties as approved by the wise. Do thou, however O bull of Bharata's race, speak of them in such a way that one may succeed in retaining them in memory!'*[2]

"Bhishma said,—'The protection of all creatures is regarded as the highest duty of the Kshatriya. Listen now to me, O king, as to how the duty of protection is to be exercised.[3] A king conversant with his duties should assume many forms even as the peacock puts forth plumes of diverse hues.[4] Keenness, crookedness, truth, and sincerity, are the qualities that should be present in him. With thorough impartiality, he should practise the qualities of goodness if he is to earn felicity.[5] He must assume that particular hue or form which is beneficial in view of the particular object which he seeks to accomplish.† A king who can assume diverse forms succeeds in accomplishing even the most subtile objects.[6] Dumb like the peacock in autumn, he should conceal his counsels. He should speak little, and the little he speaks should be sweet. He should be of good features and well-versed in the scriptures.[7] He should always be heedful in respect of those gates through which dangers may come and overtake him, like men taking care of breaks in embankments through which the waters of large tanks may rush and flood their fields and houses. He should seek the refuge of Brāhmanas crowned

---

* *I. e.*, 'speak in brief of them, or give us an abridgment of thy elaborate discourses.'—T.

† *I. e.*, as the commentator explains, keenness when he punishes, and harmlessness when he shows favor.—T.

with ascetic success even as men seek the refuge of lordly rivers generated by the rain-water collected within mountain lakes. That king who desires to amass wealth should act like religious hypocrites in the matter of keeping a coronal lock.*[8] The king should always have the rod of chastisement uplifted in his hands. He should always act heedfully (in the matter of levying his taxes) after examining the incomes and expenses of his subjects, like men repairing to a full-grown palmyra for drawing its juice.†[9] He should act equitably towards his own subjects; cause the crops of his enemies to be crushed by the tread of his cavalry, march against foes when his own wings have become strong; and observe all the sources of his own weakness.[10] He should proclaim the faults of his foes; crush those that are their partizans; and collect wealth from outside like a person plucking flowers from the woods.[11] He should destroy those foremost of monarchs that swell with might and stand with uplifted heads like mountains, by seeking the shelter of unknown shades‡ and by ambuscades and sudden attacks.[12] Like the peacock in the season of rains, he should enter his nightly quarters alone and unseen. Indeed, he should enjoy, after the manner of the peacock, within his inner apartments, the companionship of his wives.[13] He should not put off his mail. He should himself protect his own self, and avoid the nets spread out for him by the spies and secret agents of his foes.[14] He should also win over the affections of the spies of his enemies, but exterpate them when opportunity

---

* *I. e.*, 'should assume the qualities (such as keenness, &c.,) necessary for his object.' K. P. Singha's version of the last line of 8 is erroneous. The Burdwan version is right.—T.

† *Vrihadvrikshamivāsravat* is explained by Nilakantha as *Vrihantak Vrikshāh Yatra*; *āsravat* is explained as *rasamprasravat*. I think *Vrihadvriksham* may be taken as a full-grown palmyra (1) tree. The sense is that as men always draw the juice from a full-grown tree and not from a young one, even so the king should take care as to how taxes should be laid upon subjects that are unable to bear them.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, by tampering with the governors of the citadels and the garrisons of his foes, as the commentator explains.—T.

occurs. Like the peacocks the king should kill his powerful and angry foes of crooked policy,[15] and destroy their force and drive them away from home. The king should also like the peacocks do what is good to him, and glean wisdom from every where as they collect insects even from the forest.[16] An wise and peacock-like king should thus rule his kingdom and adopt a policy which is beneficial to him.[17] By exercising his own intelligence, he should settle what he is to do. By consulting with others he should either abandon or confirm such resolution. Aided by that intelligence which is sharpened by the scriptures, one can settle his courses of action. In this consists the usefulness of the scriptures.[18] By practising the arts of conciliation, he should inspire confidence in the hearts of his enemies. He should display his own strength. By judging of different courses of action in his own mind he should, by exercising his own intelligence, arrive at conclusions.[19] The king should be well-versed in the arts of conciliating policy, he should be possessed of wisdom; and should be able to do what should be done and avoid what should not. A person of wisdom and deep intelligence does not stand in need of counsels or instruction.[20] A wise man who is possessed of intelligence like Vrihaspati, if he incurs obloquy, soon regains his disposition like heated iron dipt in water. A king should accomplish all objects, of his own or of others, according to the means laid down in the scriptures.[22] A king conversant with the ways of acquiring wealth should always employ in his acts such men as are mild in disposition, possessed of wisdom and courage and great strength.[23] Beholding his servants employed in acts for which each is fit, the king should act in conformity with all of them like the strings of a musical instrument, stretched to proper tension, according with their intended notes.[24] The king should do good to all persons without transgressing the dictates of Righteouness. That king stands immovable as a hill whom everybody regards—*He is mine.*[25]—Having set himself to the task of adjudicating between litigants, the king, without making any difference between persons that are liked and those that are disliked by him, should uphold justice.[26] The king should appoint in all his offices such men as are con-

versant with the characteristics of particular families, of the masses of the people, and of different countries; as are mild in speech; as are of middle age; as have no faults; as are devoted to good acts; as are never heedless; as are free from rapacity; as are possessed of learning and self-restraint; and as are firm in virtue and always prepared to uphold the interests of both virtue and profit.[27-28] In this way, having ascertained the course of actions and their final objects, the king should accomplish them heedfully; and instructed in all matters by his spies, he may live in cheerfulness.[29] That king who never gives way to wrath and joy without sufficient cause, who supervises all his acts himself, and who looks after his income and expenditure with his own eyes, succeeds in obtaining great wealth from the Earth.[30] That king is said to be conversant with the duties of king-craft who rewards his officers and subjects publicly (for any good they do), who chastises those that deserve chastisement, who protects his own self, and who protects his kingdom from every evil.[31] Like the Sun shedding his rays upon everything below, the king should always look after his kingdom himself, and aided by his intelligence he should supervise all his spies and officers.[32] The king should take wealth from his subjects at the proper time. He should never proclaim what he does. Like an intelligent man milking his cow every day, the king should milk his kingdom every day.[33] As the bee collects honey from flowers gradually, the king should draw wealth gradually from his kingdom for storing it.[34] Having kept apart a sufficient portion, that which remains should be spent upon acquisition of religious merit and the gratification of the desire for pleasure. That king who is acquainted with duties and who is possessed of intelligence would never waste what has been stored.[35] The king should never disregard any wealth for its littleness; he should never disregard foes for their powerlessness; he should, by exercising his own intelligence, examine his own self; he should never repose confidence upon persons destitute of intelligence.[36] Steadiness, cleverness, self-restraint, intelligence, health, patience, bravery, and attention to the requirements of time

and place,—these eight qualities lead to the increase of wealth be it small or be it much. A little fire, fed with clarified butter, may blaze forth into a conflagration. A single seed may produce a thousand trees. A king, therefore, even when he hears that his income and expenditure are great, should not disregard the smaller items.[38] A foe, whether he happens to be a child, a young man, or an aged one, succeeds in slaying a person who is heedless. An insignificant foe, when he becomes powerful, may exterminate a king. A king, therefore, who is conversant with the requirements of time is the foremost of all rulers.[39] A foe, strong or weak, guided by malice, may very soon destroy the fame of a king, obstruct the acquisition of religious merit by him; and deprive him of even his energy. Therefore, a king that is of regulated mind should never be heedless when he has a foe.[40] If a king possessed of intelligence desire for affluence and victory, he should, after surveying his expenditure, income, savings, and administration, make either peace or war. For this reason the king should seek the aid of an intelligent minister.[41] Blazing intelligence weakens even a mighty person; by intelligence may power that is growing be protected; a growing foe is weakened by the aid of intelligence; therefore, every act that is undertaken conformably to the dictates of intelligence is deserving of praise.[42] A king possessed of patience and without any fault, may, if he likes, obtain the fruition of all his wishes, with the aid of even a small force. That king, however, who wishes to be surrounded by a train of self-seeking flatterers,* never succeeds in winning even the smallest benefit.[43] For these reasons, the king, should act with mildness in taking wealth from his subjects. If a king continually oppresses his people, he meets with extinction like a flash of lightning that blazes forth only for a second.[44] Learning, penances, vast wealth, indeed, everything, can be earned by exertion. Exertion, as it occurs in embodied creatures, is governed by intelligence. Exertion, therefore, should be regarded as the foremost of all things.[45] The human body

* *I. e*, that king who is vain and covetous.—T.

is the residence of many intelligent creatures of great energy, of Cakra, of Vishnu, of Saraswati, and of other beings. A man of knowledge, therefore, should never disregard the body.*[46] A covetous man should be subjugated by constant gifts. He that is covetous is never satiated with appropriating other people's wealth. Every one, however, becomes covetous in the matter of enjoying happiness. If a person, therefore, becomes destitute of wealth, he becomes destitute of virtue and pleasure (which are objects attainable by wealth).[47] A covetous man seeks to appropriate the wealth, the enjoyments, the sons and daughters, and the affluence of others. In covetous men every kind of fault may be seen. The king, therefore, should never take a covetous man for his minister or officer.[48] A king (in the absence of proper agents) should despatch even a low person for ascertaining the disposition and acts of his foes. A ruler possessed of wisdom should frustrate all the endeavours and objects of his enemies.[49] That trustful and high-born king who seeks instruction from learned and virtuous Brāhmanas and who is protected by his ministers, succeeds in keeping all his tributary chiefs under proper control.†[50] O prince of men, I have briefly discoursed to thee of all the duties laid down in the scriptures. Attend to them, aided by thy intelligence. That king who, in obedience to his preceptor, attends to these, succeeds in ruling the whole Earth.[51] That king who disregards the happiness that is derivable from policy and seeks for that which chance may bring, never succeeds in enjoying the happiness that attaches to sovereignty or in winning regions of bliss hereafter.‡[52] A king that is heedful, by properly attending to the requirements of war and peace, succeeds in slaying even such foes as are eminent for wealth, worshipped for intelligence and good con-

---

* Whether it belongs to himself or to any other person.—T.

† Verses 49 and 50 have been rendered wrongly by the Burdwan Pundits.—.

‡ The sense seems to be that a king should always be guided by the precepts of the science of king-craft without depending upon chance.—T.

duct, possessed of accomplishments, brave in battle, and ready for exertion.[53] The king should discover those means which are furnished by different kinds of acts and measures. He should never depend upon destiny. One that sees faults in faultless persons never succeeds in winning prosperity and fame.[54] When two friends engage in accomplishing one and the same act, a wise man always applauds him among the two that takes upon himself the heavier share of the work.[55] Do thou practise these duties of kings that I have told thee. Set thy heart upon the duty of protecting men. Thou mayst then easily obtain the reward of virtue. All the regions of felicity hereafter are dependent upon merit!"*[56]

SECTION CXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, thou hast now finished thy discourse upon the duties of kings. From what thou hast said it seems that Chastisement occupies a high position and is the lord of everything, for everything depends upon Chastisement.[1] It seems, O puissant one, that Chastisement, which is possessed of great energy and which is present everywhere, is the foremost of all beings among either gods and *Rishis* and high-souled *Pitris* and *Yakshas* and *Rakshas* and *Piçāchas* and *Sādhyas*, or living beings in this world including beasts and birds.[2-3] Thou hast said that the entire universe, mobile and immobile, including gods, *Asuras*, and men, may be seen to depend upon Chastisement.[4] I now desire, O bull of Bharata's race, to know truly who Chastisement is. Of what kind is he? What is his form? What is his disposition?[5] Of what is he made? Whence is his origin? What are his features? What is his splendour? How does he remain wakeful among living creatures so heedfully?[6] Who is he that remains eternally wakeful, protecting this universe? Who is he that is known to be the foremost of all things? Who, indeed, is that

---

* I. e., he who earns religious merit is sure to obtain such regions; and as great merit may be acquired by properly discharging kingly duties, one may, by such conduct, win much felicity hereafter.—T.

high personage called Chastisement? What is that upon which Chastisement depends? And what is his course?'[7]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O descendant of Kuru, who Chastisement is and why he is called also *Vyavahāra!* That upon whom all things depend is called Chastisement.[8] Chastisement is that by which righteousness is kept up. He is sometimes called *Vyavahāra.* In order that the righteousness of a king that is heedfully awake may not suffer extinction, (Chastisement has come to be called by that name).[9] It is for this reason that the name *Vyavahāra* becomes applicable to it.* In olden days Manu, O king, declared first of all this truth, *viz.*,[10]—He who protects all creatures, the loved and the odious equally, by impartially wielding the rod of Chastisement, is said to be the embodiment of righteousness.[11]—These words that I have said were, O king, first, uttered in days of old by Manu. They represent the high words of Brahman.[12] And because these words were spoken first, therefore, they are known as the *first words.* And since it is by Chastisement that the misappropriation of other people's possessions is stopped, therefore Chastisement has come to be called by the name of *Vyavahāra.*[13] The aggregate of three always rests on well-applied Chastisement. Chastisement is a great god. In form he looks like a blazing fire.[14] His complexion is dark like that of the petals of the blue lotus. He is equipt with four teeth, has four arms and eight legs and many eyes. His ears are pointed like shafts and his hair stands upright.[15] He has matted locks and two tongues. His face has the hue of copper, and he is clad in a lion's skin.† That irresistible deity assumes such a fierce shape.[16]

---

* *Vyavahāra* is *vi* and *avahāra*, hence that through which all kinds of misappropriation are stopped. It is a name applied to Law and administration of justice.—T.

† The commentator, in a long note, gives very fanciful explanations touching every one of these peculiarities of form. He understands *Mrigarāja* to mean the black antelope. I cannot reject the obvious meaning of the word. The object of the poet is simply to create a form that is frightful.—T.

Assuming again the form of the sword, the bow, the mace, the dart, the trident, the mallet, the arrow, the thick and short club, the battle-axe, the discus, the noose, the heavy bludgeon, the rapier, the lance, and in fact of every kind of weapon that exists on Earth, Chastisement moves in the world.[17-18] Indeed, Chastisement moves on Earth, piercing and cutting and afflicting and lopping off and dividing and striking and slaying and rushing against its victims.[19] These, O Yudhishthira, are some of the names which Chastisement bears, *viz.*, Sword, Sabre, Righteousness, Fury, the Irresistible, the Parent of prosperity, Victory, Punisher, Checker, the Eternal, the Scriptures, Brāhmana, *Mantra*, Avenger, the Foremost of first Legislators, Judge, the Undecaying, God, the individual whose course is irresistible, the Ever-agoing, the First-born, the individual without affections, the Soul of Rudra, the eldest Manu, and the great Benefiter.[20-22] Chastisement is the holy Vishnu. He is the puissant Nārāyana. And because he always assumes a terrible form, therefore he is called *Mahāpurusha*.[23] His wife Morality is also known by the names of Brahman's Daughter, Lakshmi, Vritti, Saraswati, and Mother of the universe. Chastisement thus has many forms.[24] Blessing and curse, pleasure and pain, righteousness and unrighteousness, strength and weakness, fortune and misfortune, merit and demerit, virtue and fault,[25] desire and aversion, season and month, night and day and hour, heedfulness and heedlessness, joy and anger, peace and self-restraint,[26] destiny and exertion, salvation and condemnation, fear and fearlessness, injury and abstention from injury, penances and sacrifice and rigid abstinence, poison and healthy food,[27] the beginning, the middle, and the end, the result of all murderous acts, insolence, insanity, arrogance, pride, patience, policy, impolicy,[28] powerlessness and power, respect, disrespect, decay and stability, humility, charity, fitness of time and unfitness of time,[29] falsehood, wisdom, truth, belief, disbelief, impotence, trade, profit, loss, success, defeat,[30] fierceness, mildness, death, acquisition and non-acquisition, agreement and disagreement, that which should be done and that which should not be done, strength and weakness,[31] malice and good will, righte-

ousness and unrighteousness, shame and shamelessness, modesty, prosperity and adversity,[32] energy, acts, learning, eloquence, keenness of understanding,—all these, O Yudhishthira, are forms of Chastisement in this world! Hence, Chastisement is exceedingly multiform.[33] If Chastisement had not existed, all creatures would have grinded one another. Through fear of Chastisement, O Yudhishthira, living creatures do not slay one another.[34] The subjects, O king, always protected by Chastisement, enhance the might of their ruler. It is for this that Chastisement is regarded as the foremost refuge of all.[35] Chastisement, O king, quickly sets the world on the path of righteousness. Dependent upon truth, righteousness exists in the Brāhmanas.[36] Endued with righteousneas, foremost of Brāhmanas become attached to the Vedas. From the Vedas the sacrifices flow. Sacrifices gratifiy the deities.[37] The deities, being gratified, commend the denizens of the Earth to Indra. For benefiting the denizens of the Earth, Indra gives them food (in the form of rain, without which crops and vegetation would fail).[38] The life of all creatures depends upon food. From food creatures derive their support and growth. Chastisement (in the form of the Kshatriya ruler) remains wakeful amongst them.[39] For serving this object, Chastisement assumes the form of a Kshatriya among men. Protecting men, he remains awake, always heedful and never decaying.[40] Chastisement has again these other eight names, *viz.*, God, Man, Life, Power, Heart, the Lord of all creatures, the Soul of all things, and the Living creature.[41] God gave both affluence and the rod of chastisement to the king who is possessed of strength (in the form of military forces) and who is a combination of five ingredients.*[42] Nobility of blood, ministers of great wealth, knowledge, the different kinds of forces (such as strength of body, energy of mind, &c.), with the eight objects mentioned below, and the other force (*viz.* that which depends upon a well-filled treasury), should be sought for by the king, O Yudhishthira.[43] Those eight objects

* These are Righteousness, Law, Chastisement, God, and Living creature.—T.

are elephants, horses, cars, foot-soldiers, boats, impressed labourers (for following the camp and doing other work), increase of population, and cattle such as sheep, &c.).[44] Of the army equipt in mail and with other accoutrements, car-warriors, elephant-warriors, cavalry, infantry, officers, and surgeons constitute the limbs.[45] Beggars, principal judges, astrologers, performers of propitiatory and *Atharvan* rites, treasury, allies, grain, and all other requisites,[46] constitute the body, composed of seven attributes and eight limbs, of a kingdom. Chastisement is another powerful limb of a kingdom. Chastisement (in the form of an army) is the author of a kingdom.[47] God himself has, with great care, sent Chastisement for the use of the Kshatriya. This eternal universe is impartial Chastisement's self.[48] There is nothing more worthy of respect by kings than Chastisement by which the ways of Righteousness are pointed out. Brahman himself, for the protection of the world and for establishing the duties of different individuals, sent down (or created) Chastisement."[49] There is another kind of *Vyavahāra* arising out of the disputes of litigants which also has sprung from Brahman. Principally characterised by a belief in either of the two parties, that Vyavahāra is seen to be productive of good,[50] There is another kind of Vyavahāra which has the Veda for its soul. It is also said to have the Veda for its cause. There is, O tiger among kings, a (third) kind of Vyavahāra which is connected with family customs but which is consistent with the scriptures.*[51] That Vyavahāra which has, as above, been

---

* The nearest approach in English to what is meant here by Vyavahāra is Law. Three kinds of Vyavahāra or Law are here spoken of. The first is the ordinary Law, according to which the disputes of litigants are decided. It includes both civil and criminal law It is quaintly described here as *Vattri-pratyaya-lakshana*, *i. e.*, 'characterised by a belief in either of two litigant parties.' When a suit, civil or criminal, is instituted, the king or those that act in the king's name must call for Evidence and decide the matter by believing either of the two parties. Then follows restoration or punishment. In either case, it is a form of Chastisement. The second kind of Vyavahāra or Law is the ecclisiastical law of the Vedas. These are the precepts or in-

said to be characterised by a belief in either of two litigant parties, should be known by us as inhering in the king. It should be also known by the name of Chastisement, as also by the name of Evidence.[52] Although Chastisement is seen to be regulated by Evidence, yet it has been said to have its soul in Vyavahāra. That which has been called Vyavahāra is really based upon Vedic precepts.[53] That Vyavahāra which has been indicated to have the Vedas for its soul is Morality or duty. It is also productive of good unto persons believing in duty and morality, men of cleansed souls have spoken of that Vyavahāra as they have done of ordinary law.*[54] The third kind of Vyavahāra is also a protector of men. and it has also its roots in the Veda, O Yudhishthira! It upholds the three worlds. It has Truth for its soul and it is productive of prosperity.[55] That which is Chastisement has been seen by us to be eternal Vyavahāra. That which has been said to be Vyavahāra is verily the Veda.[56] That which is the Veda is morality and duty. That which is morality and duty is the path of Righteousness. This last it was which in the beginning had been the Grandsire Brahman, that Lord of all creatures.[57] Brahman is the Creator of the entire universe with the gods and *Asuras* and *Rāshasas* and human

---

junctions laid down in those sacred books for regulating every part of human duty. The third kind of Vyavahāra or Law is the particular customs of families or races. It is also called *kulāchāra*. Where Kulāchāra is not inconsistent or in open variance of the established civil or criminal Law, or is not opposed to the spirit of the ecclisiastical law as laid down in the Vedas. it is upheld. (Even the British courts of law. uphold Kulāchāra, interpreting it very strictly.) What Bhishma says here is that even Kulāchāra should not be regarded as inconsistent with the scriptures (Vedas and *Smritis*).—T.

* In verse 52 Bhishma says that the first kind of Vyavahāra or Law, *i. e.*, the ordinary civil and criminal law of a realm, must be regarded as resting on the *king*. But as this kind of Law has the Veda for its soul and has originally flowed from Brahman, a king incurs no sin by administering it and by inflicting chastisement in its administration. The purport, in brief, of verse 54 is that Manu and others, in speaking of Morality and duty have said that it is as binding as the ordinary law that is administered by kings.—T.

beings and snakes, and of every other thing.[58] Hence that Vyavahāra which is characterised by a belief in either of two litigant parties has also flowed from him. For this reason He has laid down the following in respect of Vyavahāra:[59]—Neither mother, nor father, nor brother, nor wife, nor priest, is unpunishable with that king who rules agreeably to his duty.'"[60]

SECTION CXXII.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old story that follows. There was among the Angas a king of great splendour, called Vasuhoma.[1] That king was always engaged in acts of piety, and accompanied by his spouse he always practised the most rigid penances. He repaired to the spot called *Munjaprishtha* held in high esteem by the *Pitris* and the celestial *Rishis*.[2] There, on that peak of Himavat, near the golden mountains of Meru, (the great Brāhmana here) Rāma, sitting under the shade of a well-known banian, had tied his matted locks together.*[3] From that time, O monarch, the spot, which is a favorite haunt of Rudra, came to be called *Munjaprishtha* by *Rishis* of rigid vows.[4] King Vasuhoma, residing in that spot, acquired many pious attributes and, having gained the esteem of the Brāhmanas, came to be regarded as a celestial *Rishi* in holiness.[5] One day, that crusher of foes, that friend of Cakra, *viz.*, king Māndhātri of great soul, came to Vasuhoma on his mountain retreat.[6] Arrived there, Māndhātri, beholding king Vasuhoma of austere penances, stood before the latter in an attitude of humility.[7] Vasuhoma offered unto his guest water to wash his feet, and the *Arghya* consisting of the usual articles, and enquired of him about the well-being or otherwise of his kingdom consisting of seven limbs.[8] After this, Vasuhoma addressed his royal guest who faithfully followed the practices of the rightoous men of old, saying,—What, O king, shall I do for thee?[9]—

---

* *Jatāharamādiçat* may also mean 'ordered the removal of his matted locks',—in other words, 'had a shame'.—T.

Thus addressed, O delighter of the Kurus, Māndhātri, that best of kings, highly gratified, answered Vasuhoma of great wisdom seated at his ease, in the following words.[10]

"'Māndhātri said,—Thou hast, O king, studied all the doctrines of Vrihaspati! O best of men, the doctrines laid down by Uçanas also are known to thee![11] I desire to know what is the origin of Chastisement. What was awake before Chastisement? What also is said to be its end?[12] How came Chastisement to depend upon the Kshatriya? Tell me all this, O thou of great wisdom! I come to thee as a disciple ready to give thee the tutorial fee!*—[13]

"'Vasuhoma said,—Listen, O king, as to how Chastisement, that upholder of the world, arose. The soul of righteousness, it is eternal, and was created for maintaining the due government of all creatures![14] It hath been heard by us that once upon a time, the Grandsire of all the worlds, *viz.*, the divine Brahman, desiring to perform a sacrifice, failed to find a priest possessed of qualifications like himself.[15] For this reason he conceived in his brain and held the fœtus there for many long years. After a thousand years had passed away, the great god sneezed. In that act, the fœtus fell from his head.[16] The divine being, O chastiser of foes, that thus took birth from Brahman was called by the name of Kshupa. Possessed of great powers, he became a lord of creatures. That Kshupa became the priest, O king, in the sacrifice of the high-souled Grandsire.[17] Upon the commencement of that sacrifice, of Brahman, O best of kings, Chastisement disappeared in consequence of the visible form that the Grandsire was then obliged to assume.†[18] Chastisement having disappeared, a great confusion set in among all creatures. There was no longer any distinction between what should be done and what should not. All distinction, again, between clean and unclean food ceased.[19] Men ceased to distinguish between what

---

* *I. e.* to acknowledge thee as a tutor.—T.

† The sense is that inasmuch as the Grandsire, who was the governor of the universe, assumed the mild and peaceful aspect of a sacrificer, Chastisement which had dwelt in his furious form could no longer exist.—T.

drink was allowable and what drink was otherwise. All creatures began to injure one another. There were no restraints in the matter of the union of the sexes. All idea of property ceased.[20] All creatures began to rob, and snatching meat from one another. The strong began to slay the weak. Nobody cherished the slightest consideration for his neighbour.[21] The Grandsire then, having worshipped the divine and eternal Vishnu, addressed that great boon-giving god, saying,[22]—It behoveth thee, O Keçava, to show mercy on the present occasion! Let it be so ordained by thee that the confusion that has occurred may disappear![23]—Thus addressed, that foremost of deities, armed with an enormous *Çula*,* having reflected long, created his ownself into the form of Chastisement.[24] From that form, having Righteousness for its legs, the goddess Saraswati created *Danda-niti* (Science of Chastisement) which very soon became celebrated over the world.[25] After this the great god armed with the enormous *Çula*, having again reflected for sometime, appointed a few among the gods as the lords or rulers of their respective classes.[26] It was then that he made the divine Indra of a thousand eyes the ruler of the deities. Yama the son of Vivaswat was made the lord of the *Pitris*.[27] Kuvera was made the lord of treasures and of all the *Rākshasas*. Meru was made the king of the mountains, and Ocean was made the lord of the rivers.[28] The pussiant Varuna was installed into the sovereignty of the waters and of the *Asuras*. Death was made the lord of life and all living things, and Fire was appointed as the lord of all things possessed of energy.[29] The puissant Içāna the high-souled and eternal Mahādeva, of three eyes, was made the lord of the Rudras.[30] Vaçishtha was made the lord of the Brāhmanas, and Jātavedas was made the chief of the Vasus. Surya was made the lord of all luminous bodies, and Chandramas was made the king of Stars and constellations.[31] Ançumat was made the lord of all herbs, and the puissant and foremost of deities, *viz.*, Kumāra or Skanda, of twelve arms, was made the chief of

* Though *Cula* is mentioned, yet it is Vishnu and *not* Mahādeva, that is implied. Generally, the word means any weapon.—T.

all the spirits and ghostly beings (that wait upon Mahādeva).[32] Time, possessing the seeds of both destruction and growth, was made the sovereign of all creatures, as also of the four portions of Death (*viz.*, weapons, diseases, Yama, and acts,) and lastly of grief and joy.[33] The *Çrutis* declare that the supreme god Mahādeva, that lord of lords, O king, armed with *Çula*, is the chief of the Rudras.[34] The rod of chastisement was given to Brahman's son of subsequent birth, *viz.*, Kshapa, that lord of all creatures and the foremost one of all virtuous persons.[35] Upon the completion of that sacrifice according to due rites, Mahādeva, after doing proper reverence, made over Chastisement, that protector of Righteousness, unto Vishnu.*[36] Vishnu gave it to Angiras; and Angiras, that foremost of ascetics, made it over to Indra and Marichi. Marichi gave it to Bhrigu.[37] Bhrigu gave that rod intended for the protection of righteousness unto all the *Rishis*. The *Rishis* gave it unto the Regents of the world, and the Regents made it over again to Kshupa.[38] Kshupa then made it over to Manu the son of Surya. The deity of *Çrāddhas* (viz., Manu), gave it unto his sons for the sake of true righteousness and wealth.[39] Chastisement should be inflicted with discrimination, guided by righteousness and not by caprice. It is intended for restraining the wicked. Fines and forfeitures are intended for striking alarm, and not for filling the king's treasury.[40] The maiming of one's body or the infliction of death should not proceed from trivial causes. The infliction of physical pain by diverse means, hurling from tops of mountains, and banishment also, should not proceed from similar causes.[41] Surya's son Manu gave the rod of chastisement (to his sons) for the protection of the world. Chastisement, in the hands of successive holders, remains awake, protecting all creatures.[42] At the top of the scale, the divine Indra is awake (with the

---

* The whole account contains more than one inconsistency. The commentator is silent. I think the inconsistencies are incapable of being explained. It is very probable that there have been interpolations in the passage. Verse 34 is probably an interpolation, as also Verse 36.—T.

rod of chastisement); after him, Agni of blazing flames; after him, Varuna; after Varuna, Prajāpati;[43] after Prajāpati, Righteousness whose essence consists of restraint;* after Righteousness, the son of Brahman, *viz.*, the eternal Law;[44] after Law, Energy is awake, employed in the act of protection; after Energy, the herbs (offered in sacrifices for supporting the gods, and used as food and medicines); after the herbs, the mountains;[45] after the mountains, all kinds of juices and their attributes; after these, the goddess Niriti; after Niriti, the planets and the luminous bodies in heaven;[46] after these, the Vedas; after the Vedas, the puissant form of Vishnu with equine head; after him, the almighty and eternal Grandsire *viz.*, Brahman;[47] after the Grandsire, the divine and blessed Mahādeva; after Mahādeva, the Viçwedevas; after them, the great *Rishis*;[48] after the *Rishis*, the divine Soma; after Soma, the deities who are all eternal; after the deities, know that the Brāhmanas are awake.[49] After the Brāhmanas, the Kshatriyas are righteously protecting all creatures. The eternal universe, consisting of mobile and immobile creatures, is kept awake by the Kshatriyas.[50] Creatures are kept awake in this world, and Chastisement is awake among them. Possessed of splendour resembling that of the Grandsire himself, Chastisement keeps together and upholds everything.†[51] Time, O Bhārata, is always awake, in the beginning, the middle, and the end. The master of all the worlds, the lord of all creatures, the puissant and blessed Mahādeva, the god of gods, is always awake. He is called by these names also, *viz.*, Kaparddin, Cankara, Rudra, Bhava, Sthānu, and the lord of Umā.[52-53] Thus Chastisement also keeps awake in the beginning, the middle, and the end. A virtuous king should rule properly, guided by Chastisement!—[54]

"Bhishma continued,—'That person who listens to this teaching of Vasuhoma, and having listened to it conducts

---

* *I. e.*, Self-denial or discipline.—T.

† I have not the faintest idea of what is intended by these verses, *viz.*, 43 to 51. Nilakantha is silent. It is very doubtful if they have really any meaning.—T.

himself according to its tenour, is sure to obtain the fruition of all his wishes.[65] I have now, O bull among men, told thee everything as to who Chastisement is, that restrainer of the universe which is governed by righteousness!'"[66]

SECTION CXXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I wish, O sire, to hear the settled conclusions on the subject of Virtue, Wealth, and Pleasure! Depending upon which of these does the course of life proceed?[1] What are the respective roots of Virtue, Wealth, and Pleasure? What are again the results of those three? They are sometimes seen to mingle with one another, and sometimes to exist separately and independently of one another!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'When men in this world endeavour with good hearts to achieve Wealth with the aid of Virtue, then those three *viz.*, Virtue, Wealth, and Pleasure, may be seen to co-exist in a state of union in respect of time, cause, and action.*[3] Wealth has its root in Virtue, and Pleasure is said to be the fruit of Wealth. All the three again have their root in Will. Will is concerned with objects.[4] All objects, again, in their entirety exist for gratifying the desire of enjoyment. Upon these then does the aggregate of three depend. Entire abstraction from all objects is Emancipation.[5] It is said that Virtue is sought for the protection of the body, and Wealth is for the acquition of Virtue. Pleasure is only the gratification of the senses. All the three have, therefore, the quality of Passion.†[6] Virtue, Wealth, and Pleasure, when sought for the

---

* The commentator illustrates this by the action of a virtuous husband seeking congress with his wedded wife in the proper season. There is religious merit in the performance of the rites known by the name of *Garbhādhān*: there is pleasure in the act itself; and lastly, wealth or profit in the form of a son is also acquired.—T.

† There are three qualities or attributes that characterise human acts, *viz.*, Goodness, Passion, and Darkness,. *Vide* the later sections of the *Bhagavadgitā*. Such Virtue and Wealth and Pleasure, therefore, are not very high objects of pursuit. Things possessing the attribute of Goodness only are worthy of pursuit.—T.

sake of heaven and such other rewards, are said to be remote because the rewards themselves are remote. When sought, however, for the sake of Knowledge of Self, they are said to be proximate. One should seek them when they are of such a character.* One should not cast them off even mentally. If virtue, Wealth, and Pleasure are to be abandoned, one should abandon them when one has freed one's self by ascetic penances.†[7] The aim of the triple aggregate is towards emancipation. Would that man could obtain it! One's acts, undertaken and completed with even the aid of intelligence may or may not lead to the expected results.[8] Virtue is not always the root of Wealth, for other things than Virtue lead to Wealth (such as service, agriculture, &c.) There is again a contrary opinion (for some say that Wealth is earned through chance or birth or like causes). In some instances, Wealth acquired has been productive of evil. Other things again than Wealth (such as fasts and vows) have led to the acquisition of Virtue. As regards this topic, therefore, a dullard whose understanding has been debased by ignorance, never succeeds in acquiring the highest aim of Virtue and Wealth *viz.*, Emancipation.[9] Virtu's dross consists in the desire of reward; the dross of Wealth consists in hoarding it; when purged of these impurities, they are productive of great results.[10] In this connection is cited the narrative of the discourse that took place in days of old between Kāmandaka and Āngarishtha.[11] One day, king Āngarishtha, having waited for the opportunity, saluted the *Rishi* Kāmanda as he was seated at his ease and asked him the following questions.[12]—If a king, forced by lust and folly, commits sin for which he afterwards repents, by what acts, O *Rishi*, can those sins be destroyed?[13] If again a man, impelled by ignorance, does what is sinful in the belief that he is acting righteously, how shall the king put a stop to that sin come into vogue among men?—[14]

---

* *I. e.*, one should seek virtue for only compassing purity of soul; Wealth in order that one may spend it in acts undertaken without desire of fruit; and Pleasure for only supporting the body.—T.

† *Dharmādinkāmanaishthikān*, *i. e.*, having Dharma for the first and Kāma for the last,' hence Virtue, Wealth, and Pleasure.—T.

"'Kāmanda said,—That man who, abandoning Virtue and Wealth, pursues only Pleasure, reaps as the consequence of such conduct the destruction of his intelligence.[15] The destruction of intelligence is followed by heedlessness that is at once destructive of both Virtue and Wealth. From such heedlessness proceed dire atheism and systematic wickedness of conduct.[16] If the king does not restrain those wicked men of sinful conduct, all good subjects then live in fear of him like the inmate of a room within which a snake has concealed itself.[17] The subjects do not follow such a king. Brāhmanās and all pious persons also act in the same way. As a consequence the king incurs great danger, and ultimately the risk of destruction itself.[18] Overtaken by infamy and insult, he has to drag on a miserable existence. A life of infamy, however, is equal to death.[19] Men learned in the scriptures have indicated the following means for checking sin. The king should always devote himself to the study of the three Vedas. He should respect the Brāhmanas and do good offices unto them.[20] He should be devoted to righteousness. He should make alliances (of marriage) with high families. He should wait upon high-minded Brāhmanas adorned with the virtue of forgiveness.[21] He should perform ablutions and recite sacred *mantras* and thus pass his time happily. Banishing all wicked subjects from himself and his kingdom, he should seek the companionship of virtuous men.[22] He should gratify all persons by sweet speeches or good acts. He should say unto all—*I am yours*,—and proclaim the virtues of even his foes.[23] By pursuing such conduct he may soon cleanse himself of his sins and win the high regard of all. Without doubt, by conduct such as this all his sins will be destroyed.[24] Thou shouldst accomplish all those high duties which thy seniors and preceptors would indicate. Thou art sure to obtain great blessings through the grace of thy seniors and preceptors!—' "[25]

SECTION CXXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—All persons on Earth, O foremost of men, applaud virtuous behaviour. I have, however, great

doubts with respect to this subject of their praise.[1] If the topic be capable of being understood by us, O foremost of virtuous men, I desire to hear everything about the way in which virtuous behaviour can be acquired.[2] How, indeed, is that behaviour acquired, O Bhārata! I desire to hear it. Tell me also, O foremost of speakers, what have been said to be the characteristics of that behaviour!'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Formerly, O giver of honors, Duryodhana while burning with grief at sight of that well-known prosperity belonging to thee and thy brothers at Indraprastha and for the jeers he received in consequence of his mistakes at the grand mansion, had asked his father Dhritarāshtra the same question. Listen to what transpired on that occasion, O Bhārata![4-5] Having seen that grand mansion of thine and that high prosperity of which thou wert master, Duryodhana, while sitting before his father, spake of what he had seen to the latter.[6] Having heard the words of Duryodhana, Dhritarāshtra, addressing his son and Karna, replied unto him as follows.[7]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—Why dost thou grieve, O son! I desire to hear the cause in detail. If after ascertaining the reasons they appear to be adequate, I shall then endeavour to instruct thee![8] O subjugator of hostile towns, thou too hast obtained great affluence. All thy brothers are ever obedient to thee, as also all thy friends and relatives.[9] Thou coverest thy limbs with the best robes. Thou eatest the richest food.* Steeds of the best kind bear thee. Why then hast thou become pale and emaciated?—[10]

"'Duryodhana said,—Ten thousands of high-souled Snātaka Brāhmanas (daily) eat at Yudhishthira's palace off plates of gold![11] Beholding his excellent mansion adorned with excellent flowers and fruits, his steeds of the *Tittiri* and the *Kalmāsha* breeds, his robes of diverse kinds,[12] indeed, beholding that high prosperity of my enemies, *viz.*, the sons of Pāndu,—a prosperity that resembles the high affluence of Vaiçravana himself,—I am burning with grief, O Bhārata!—[13]

---

* *Piçitaudanam* is food mixed with pounded meat; a kind of *Pilau*, or, perhaps, *Kābāb*.—Tr.

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—If thou wishest, O sire, to win prosperity like that of Yudhishthira or that which is even superior to it, do thou then, O son, endeavour to be of virtuous behaviour![14] Without doubt, one may, by behaviour alone, conquer the three worlds. There is nothing impossible of attainment by persons of virtuous behaviour.[15] Māndhātri conquered the whole world in course of only one night, Janamejaya, in course of three; and Nābhāga, in course of seven.[16] All these kings were possessed of compassion and virtuous behaviour. For this reason the Earth came to them of their own accord, won over by their virtues!—[17]

"'Duyodhana said,—I desire to hear, O Bhārata, how that behaviour may be acquired, that behaviour, *viz.*, in consequence of which the Earth was won so speedily (by the kings named by thee)!—[18]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—In this connection, the following old narrative is cited. It was formerly recited by Nārada on the subject of virtuous behaviour.[19] In days of yore, the *Daitya* Prahlāda, by the merit of his behaviour, snatched from the high-souled Indra his sovereignty and reduced the three worlds to subjection.[20] Cakra then, with joined hands, approached Vrihaspati. Possessed of great wisdom, the chief of the celestials addressed the great preceptor, saying,—I desire thee to tell me what is the source of felicity![21]—Thus addressed, Vrihaspati said unto him that Knowledge (leading to emancipation) is the source of the highest felicity.[22] Indeed, Vrihaspati indicated Knowledge to be the source of supreme felicity. Indra, however, once more asked him as to whether there was any thing higher than that.[23]

"'—Vrihaspati said,—There is something, O son, that is still higher. The high-souled Bhārgava (Uçanas) will instruct thee better. Repair to him, blessed be thou, and enquire of him, O chief of the celestials![24]—Possessed of great ascetic merit and endued with great splendour, the chief of the celestials then repaired to Bhārgava and obtained from him, with a gratified heart, a knowledge of what was for his great good.[25] Obtaining the permission of the high-souled Bhārgava, the performer of a hundred sacrifices once more asked the sage as

to whether there was anything higher (as the means for the acquisition of felicity) than what the sage had already told him.[26] The omniscient Bhārgava said,—The high-souled Prahlāda has better knowledge!—Learning this, Indra became highly delighted.[27] The chastiser of Pāka, possessed of great intelligence, assumed the form of a Brāhmana, and repairing to Prahlāda, asked him, saying,—I desire to hear what conduces to felicity![28] Prahlāda answered the Brāhmana, saying,—O chief of regenerate ones, I have no time, being wholly occupied in the task of ruling the three worlds! I cannot, therefore, instruct thee![29]—The Brāhmana said,—O king, when thou mayst have leisure, I desire to listen to thy instructions about what course of conduct is productive of good![30]—At this answer, king Prahlāda became delighted with that utterer of *Brāhma*. Saying—So be it!—he availed of a favorable opportunity for imparting to the Brāhmana the truths of knowledge.[31] The Brāhmana duly observed towards Prahlāda the conduct which a disciple should observe towards his preceptor, and began with his whole heart to do what Prahlāda desired.[32] Many a time the Brāhmana enquired, saying,—O chastiser of foes, by what means hast thou been able to win the sovereignty of the three worlds? Tell me, O righteous king, what those means are!—Prahlāda, O monarch, answered the question the Brāhmana asked.[33]

"'—Prahlāda said,—I do not, O regenerate one, feel any pride in consequence of my being a king, nor do I cherish any hostile feelings towards the Brāhmanas! On the other hand, I accept and follow the counsels of policy they declare unto me based upon the teachings of Cukra.[34] In complete trustfulness they say unto me what they wish to say, and restrain me from courses that are unrighteous or improper. I am ever obedient to the teachings of Cukra. I wait upon and serve the Brāhmanas and my seniors. I bear no malice.[35] I am of righteous soul. I have conquered wrath. I am self-restrained, and all my senses are under my control. Those regenerate ones that are my instructors pour beneficial instructions upon me like bees dropping honey into the cells of their comb.[36] I taste the nectar dropped by those learned men, and like the

Moon among the constellations I live among the members of my race.*[37] Even this is nectar on Earth, even this is the clearest eye, *viz.*, listening to the teachings of Cukra from the lips of Brāhmanas and acting according to them.[38] In these consist the good of a man!—Thus said Prahlāda unto that utterer of *Brahma.* Served dutifully by him, the chief of the *Daityas* once more said,[39]—O foremost of regenerate ones, I am exceedingly gratified with thee in consequence of thy dutiful behaviour towards me! Ask of me the boon thou desirest, blessed be thou, for verily I shall grant thee what thou wilt ask![40]—The Brāhmana answered the chief of the *Daityas*, saying,—Very well. I will obey thee!—Prahlāda, gratified with him, said,—Take what thou wishest![41]—

"'—The Brāhmana said,—If, O king, thou hast been gratified with me and if thou wishest to do what is agreeable to to me, I desire then to acquire thy behaviour! Even this is the boon that I solicit!†[42]—At this, though delighted, Prahlāda became filled with a great fear. Indeed, when this boon was indicated by the Brāhmana, the *Daitya* chief thought that the solicitor could not be a person of ordinary energy.[43] Wondering much, Prahlāda at last said,—Let it be so!—Having, however, granted the boon, the *Daitya* chief became filled with grief.[44] The Brāhmana, having received the boon, went away, but Prahlāda, O king, became penetrated by a deep anxiety and knew not what to do.[45] While the *Daitya* chief sat brooding over the matter, a flame of light issued out of his body. It had a shadowy form of great splendour[46] and huge proportions. Prahlāda asked the form, saying,—Who art thou?—The form answered, saying,—I am the embodiment of thy Behaviour. Cast off by thee I am going away.[47] I shall henceforth, O king, dwell in that faultless and foremost of Brāhmanas who had become thy devoted disciple!—Having said these words, the form disappeared and soon after entered

---

* *Vāgagravidyānīm* is explained by Nilakantha to mean persons whose learning is at the end of their tongues and not buried in books; hence, persons of sharp memory.—T.

† The asker wishes to *rob* Prahlāda of his conduct.—T.

the body of Cakra.[48] After the disappearance of that form, another of similar shape issued out of Prahlāda's body. The *Daitya* chief addressed it, saying,—Who art thou?[49]—The form answered, saying,—Know me, O Prahlāda, for the embodiment of Righteousness. I shall go there where that foremost of Brāhmanas is, for, O chief of the *Daityas*, I reside there where Behaviour dwells![50]—Upon the disappearance of Righteousness, a third form, O monarch, blazing with splendour, issued out of the body of the high-souled Prahlāda.[51] Asked by Prahlāda as to who he was, that form possessed of great effulgence answered, saying,—Know, O chief of the *Daityas*, that I am Truth! I shall leave thee, following the way of Righteousness![52]—After Truth had left Prahlāda, following in the wake of Righteousness, another great person issued out of Prahlāda's body. Asked by the *Daitya* king, the mighty being answered,—I am the embodiment of Good deeds! Know, O Prahlāda, that I live there where Truth lives![53]—After this one had left Prahlāda, another being came out, uttering loud and deep cries. Addressed by Prahlāda, he answered,—Know that I am Might. I dwell there where Good deeds are![54]—Having said these words, Might went away to that place whither Good deeds had gone. After this, a goddess of great effulgence issued out of Prahlāda's body.[55] The *Daitya* chief asked her and she answered him saying that she was the embodiment of Prosperity, adding,—I dwelt in thee, O hero, O thou of prowess incapable of being baffled! Cast off by thee, I shall follow in the wake of Might.[56]—The high-souled Prahlāda, penetrated with great fear, once more asked the goddess, saying,—Where dost thou go, O goddess, O thou that dwellest amid lotuses?[57] Thou art ever devoted to truth, O goddess, and thou art the first of deities! Who is that foremost of Brāhmanas (who was my disciple)? I desire to know the truth!—[58]

"'—The goddess of Prosperity said,—Devoted to the vow of Brahmacharyya, that Brāhmana who was instructed by thee was Cakra. O puissant one, he robbed thee of that sovereignty which thou hadst over the three worlds.[59] O righteous one, it was by thy behaviour that thou hadst reduced

the three worlds to subjection. Knowing this, the chief of the celestials robbed thee of thy behaviour![60] Righteousness and Truth and Good deeds and Might and myself, O thou of great wisdom, all have our root verily in Behaviour!—'[61]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having said these words, the goddess of Prosperity went away, as also all the rest, O Yudhishthira! Duryodhana, once more addressing his father, said these words:[62]—O delighter of the Kurus, I wish to know the truth about Behaviour! Tell me the means by which it may be acquired!—[63]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—Those means were indicated by the high-souled Prahlāda while discoursing unto Indra. Listen, however, O ruler of men, as to how in brief Behaviour may be acquired.[64] Abstention from injury, by act, thought, and word, in respect of all creatures, compassion, and gift, constitute behaviour that is worthy of praise.[65] That act or exertion by which others are not benefited, or that act in consequence of which one has to feel shame, should never be done.[66] That act, on the other hand, should be done in consequence of which one may win praise in society. O best of the Kurus, I have now told thee in brief as to what Behaviour is![67] If O king, persons of wicked behaviour do ever win prosperity, they do not enjoy it long, O son, and are seen to be exterminated by the root!—[68]

"'Dhritarāshtra continued,—Knowing all this truly, do thou, O son, be of good behaviour, if thou desirest to obtain prosperity greater than that of Yudhishthira!—'[69]

"Bhishma continued,—'Even this was what king Dhritarāshtra said unto his son. Do thou act according to these instructions, O son of Kunti, and thou wilt then surely obtain their fruit!'"[70]

SECTION CXXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast said, O grandsire, that behaviour is the first (of requisites for a man)! Whence, however, does Hope arise? Tell me what it is![1] This great doubt has taken possession of my mind. There is no other

person than thee, O subjugator of hostile towns, who can remove it![2] O grandsire, I had great hope in respect of Suyodhana that when a battle was about to ensue, (in consequence of his own obstinacy), he would, O lord, do what was proper![3] In every man hope is great. When that hope is destroyed, great is the grief that succeeds and which, without doubt, is equal to almost death itself.[4] Fool that I am, Dhritarāshtra's wicked-souled son, Duryodhana, destroyed the hope I had cherished! Behold, O king, the foolishness of my mind![5] I think that hope is vaster than a mountain with all its trees! Or, perhaps, it is vaster than the firmament itself. Or, perhaps, O king, it is really immeasurable.[6] Hope, O chief of the Kurus, is exceedingly difficult of being understood and equally difficult of being subdued. Beholding this last attribute of Hope, I ask, what else is so unconquerable as this?"[7]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall narrate to thee, O Yudhishthira, in this connection, the discourse between Sumitra and Rishabha that took place in olden times. Listen to it![8] A royal sage of the Haihaya race, Sumitra by name, went out ahunting. He pursued a deer, having pierced it with a straight shaft.[9] Possessed of great strength, the deer ran ahead, with the arrow sticking to him. The king was possessed of great strength, and accordingly pursued with great speed his large prey.[10] The animal, endued with fleetness, quickly cleared a low ground and then a level plain.[11] The king, young, active, and strong, and armed with bow and sword and cased in mail, still pursued it.[12] Unaccompanied by anybody, in chasing the animal through the forest the king crossed many rivers and streams and lakes and copses.[13] Endued with great speed, the animal, at its will, showing itself now and then to the king, ran on with great speed.[14] Pierced with many shafts by the king, that denizen of the wilderness, O monarch, as if in sport, repeatedly lessened the distance between itself and the pursuer.[15] Repeatedly putting forth its speed and traversing one forest after another, it now and then showed itself to the king at a near point.[16] At last that crusher of foes, taking up a very superior shaft, sharp, terrible, and capable of penetrating into the very vitals, fixed it on his bowstring.[17]

The animal then, of huge proportions, as if laughing at the pursuer's efforts suddenly distanced him by reaching a point full four miles ahead of the range of the shaft.[18] That arrow of blazing splendour accordingly fell on the ground. The deer entered a large forest but the king still continued the chase.' "[19]

SECTION CXXVI.

"Bhishma said,—'The king, having entered that large forest, came upon an asylum of ascetics. Fatigued with the toil he had undergone, he sat himself down for rest.[1] Beholding him armed with bow, worn out with toil, and hungry, the ascetics approached him and honored him in due form.[2] Accepting the honors offered by the *Rishis*, the king enquired of them about the progress and advancement of their penances.[3] Duly answering the enquiries of the king, those *Rishis* endued with wealth of asceticism asked that tiger among rulers about the reason that led his steps to that retreat.[4] And they said,—Blessed be thou, in pursuit of what delightful object hast thou, O king, come to this asylum, walking on foot and armed with sword and bow and arrows?[5] We wish to hear whence thou art coming, O giver of honors! Tell us also in what race thou art born and what thy name is![6]—Thus addressed, O bull among men, the king proceeded to duly give unto all those Brāhmanas an account of himself, O Bhārata, saying,[7]—I am born in the race of the Haihayas. By name I am called Sumitra, and I am the son of Mitra. I chase herds of deer, slaying them in thousands with my arrows. Accompanied by a large force and my ministers and the ladies of my household, I came out on a hunting expedition. I pierced a deer with an arrow, but the animal with the shaft sticking to his body ran with great speed.[8-9] In chasing it I have, without a set purpose, arrived at this forest and find myself in your presence, shorn of splendour, toil-worn, and with hope disappointed.[10] What can be more pitiable than this, viz., that I have arrived at this asylum, spent with fatigue, shorn of the signs of royalty, and dis-

appointed of my hopes![11] I am not at all sorry, ye ascetics, at my being now shorn of the signs of royalty or at my being now at a distance from my capital. I feel, however, a poignant grief in consequence of my hope having been disappointed![12] The prince of mountains, viz., Himavat, and that vast receptacle of waters, *viz.*, the ocean, cannot, for its vastness, measure the extent of the firmament.[13] Ye ascetics, similarly, I also cannot discern the limit of hope. Ye that are endued with wealth of penances are omniscient! There is nothing unknown to you![14] Ye are also highly blessed! I, therefore, solicit you for resolving my doubt! Hope as cherished by man, and the wide firmament,[15] which of these two appears vaster to you? I desire to hear in detail what is so unconquerable as hope.[16] If the topic be one upon which it is not improper for ye to discourse, then tell me all about it without delay! I do not wish, ye foremost of regenerate ones, to hear anything from you that may be a mystery improper to discourse upon![17] If again the discourse be injurious to your penances, I would not wish you to speak. If the question asked by me be a worthy topic of discourse,[18] I would then wish to hear the cause in detail. Devoted to penances as ye are, do ye all instruct me on the subject!' "[19]

SECTION CXXVII.

"Bhishma said,—'Then that best of *Rishis*, *viz.*, the regenerate Rishava, sitting in the midst of all those *Rishis*, smiled a little and said these words:[1]—Formerly, O tiger among kings, while sojourning among sacred places, I arrived, O lord, at the beautiful asylum of Nara and Nārāyana.[2] There lies the delightful spot called Vadari, and there also is that lake in the firmament (whence the sacred Gangā takes her rise).* There the sage Açwaçiras, O king, (always) reads the eternal Vedas.[3] Having performed my ablutions in that lake and offered with due rites oblations of water unto the *Pitris* and the gods, I entered the asylum.[4] Within

* This lake is at a great height on the Himalayas.—T.

that retreat the *Rishis* Nara and Nārāyana always pass their time in true pleasure.* Not far from that spot I repaired to another retreat for taking up my abode.[5] While seated there I beheld a very tall and emaciated *Rishi*, clad in rags and skins, approaching towards me. Possessed of the wealth of penances, he was named Tanu.[6] Compared, O mighty-armed one, with other men, his height seemed to be eight times greater. As regards his leanness, O royal sage, I can say that I have never beheld its like.[7] His body, O king, was as thin as one's little finger. His neck and arms and legs and hair were all of extraordinary aspect.[8] His head was proportionate to his body, and his ears and eyes also were the same. His speech, O best of kings, and his movements were exceedingly feeble.[9] Beholding that exceedingly emaciated Brāhmana I became very cheerless and frightened. Saluting his feet, I stood before him with joined hands.[10] Having informed him of my name and family, and having told him also the name of my father, O bull among men, I slowly sat myself down on a seat that was indicated by him.[11] Then, O monarch, that foremost of virtuous men, *viz.*, Tanu, began to discourse in the midst of the *Rishis* dwelling in that asylum upon topics connected with Righteousness and Profit.[12] While engaged in discourse, a king, possessed of eyes like lotus petals and accompanied by his forces and the ladies of his household, came to that spot on a car drawn by fleet steeds.[13] The name of that king was Viradyumna. Of handsome features, he was possessed of great fame. His son's name was Bhuridyumna. The child had been missing, and the sire, exceedingly cheerless, came there in course of his wanderings amid the forest in pursuit of the missing one.[14]—I shall find my son here!—I shall find my son here!—Dragged on by hope in this way, the king wandered through that forest in those days.[15] Addressing the emaciated *Rishi* he said,—Without doubt, that highly virtuous son of mine is exceedingly difficult to be traced by me. Alas, he was my

* The spirits of those two immortal sages are supposed to dwell for ever, in this retreat, in the enjoyment of true happiness.—T.

only child. He is lost and can nowhere be found![16] Though incapable of being found out, my hope, however, of finding him is very great! Filled with that hope (which is being constantly disappointed), I am verily on the point of death![17] —Hearing these words of the king, that foremost of *Munis*, *viz.*, the holy Tanu, remained for a short while with head hanging down and himself buried in contemplation.[18] Beholding him buried in contemplation, the king became exceedingly cheerless. In great grief he began to say slowly and softly,[19]—What, O celestial *Rishi*, is unconquerable and what is greater than hope? O holy one, tell me this if I may hear it without impropriety!—[20]

"'The *Muni* said,—A holy and great *Rishi* had been insulted by thy son. He had done it through ill-luck, moved by his foolish understanding.[21] The *Rishi* had asked thy son for a golden jar and vegetable barks. Thy son contemptously refuged to gratify the ascetic.[22] Thus treated by thy son, the great sage became disappointed!—Thus addressed, the king worshipped that ascetic who was worshipped by all the world. Of virtuous soul, Viradyumna sat there, spent with fatigue even as thou, O best of men, now art.[23] The great *Rishi*, in return, offered the king, according to the rites observed by the dwellers of the forest, water to wash his feet and the usual ingredients that make up the *Arghya*.[24] Then all the *Rishis*, O tiger among kings, sat there, surrounding that bull among men like the stars of the constellation of *Ursa Major* surrounding the Pole star.[25] And they asked the unvanquished king as to the cause of his arrival at that asylum.—'"[26]

SECTION CXXVIII.

"'—The king said,—I am a king called by the name of Viradyumna. My fame has spread in all directions. My son Bhuridyumna hath been lost. It is in quest of him that I have come to this forest.[1] Ye foremost of Brāhmanas, that child was my only son and, ye sinless ones, he is of very tender years! He cannot, however, be found here. I am wandering everywhere for finding him out!—[2]

" 'Rishava continued,—After the king had said these words, the ascetic Tanu hung down his head. He remained perfectly silent, without uttering a single word in answer.[3] In former days that Brāhmana had not been much honored by the king. In disappointment, O monarch, he had for that reason practised austere penances for a long time ;[4] resolving in his mind that he should never accept anything in gift from either kings or members of any other order.[5] And he said to himself,—Hope agitates every man of foolish understanding. I shall drive away hope from my mind !—Even such had been his determination. Viradyumna once more questioned that foremost of ascetics in these words :—[6]

" '—The king said,—What is the measure of the thinness of Hope ? What on Earth is exceedingly difficult of acquisition ? Tell me this, O holy one, for thou art well conversant with morality and profit !—[7]

" 'Rishava continued,—Himself recollecting all the past incidents (about his own disregard at the hands of the king) and calling them back to the recollection of the king also, that holy Brāhmana of emaciated body addressed the king and said the following words :—[8]

" '—The sage said,—There is nothing, O king, that equals Hope in slenderness. I had solicited many kings and found that nothing is so difficult of acquisition as an image that Hope sets before the mind !—[9]

" '—The king said,—At thy words, O Brāhmana, I understand what is slender and what is not so.* I understand also how difficult of acquisition are the images set by Hope before the mind. I regard these words of thine as utterances of *Çruti*.[10] O thou of great wisdom, one doubt, however, has arisen in my mind. It behoveth thee, O sage, to explain it in detail unto me that ask thee ![11] What is slender than thy body ? Tell me this, O holy one, if, of course, O best of sages, the topic be one which may be discoursed upon without impropriety !—[12]

---

* *I. e.*, Hope is slender ; while things unconnected with Hope are the reverse.—T.

"'—The emaciated sage said,—A contented applicant is exceedingly difficult to meet with. Perhaps, there is none such in the world. Something rarer still O sire, is the person that never disregards an applicant.[13] The hope that rests upon such persons as do not, after passing their promises, do good to others according to the best of their powers and according as the applicants deserve, is slender than even my body.*[14] The hope that rests upon an ungrateful man, or upon one that is cruel, or one that is idle, or one that injures others, is slenderer than even my body.[15] The hope cherished by a sire that has but one son, of once more seeing that son after he has been lost or missed, is slenderer than even my body.[16] The hope that old women entertain of bringing forth sons, O king, and that is cherished by rich men, is slenderer than even my body.[17] The hope that springs up in the hearts of grown up maidens of marriage when they hear any body only talk of it in their presence, is slenderer than even my body!†[18]—Hearing these words, O monarch, king Viradyumna, and the ladies of his household, prostrated themselves before that bull among Brāhmanas and touched his feet with their bent heads.—[19]

"'—The king said,— I beg thy grace, O holy one! I wish to meet with my child. What thou hast said, O best of Brāhmanas, is very true! There is no doubt of the truth of thy utterances!—[20]

"'Rishabha continued,—The holy Tanu, that foremost of virtuous persons, smiling, caused, by means of his learning and his penances the king's son to be brought to that spot.[21] Having caused the prince to be brought thither, the sage rebuked the king (his father).‡ That foremost of virtuous

---

* The sense is that such persons should always be distrusted. Yet there are men who hope for good from them. Such hope, the sage says, is slenderer than his slender body.—T.

† The word *mayā* repeated in verses 14 to 18 is explained by Nilakantha as having the sense of *mattah*. The meaning, of course, is very plain. Yet the Burdwan translator has strangely misunderstood it. K. P. Singha, of course, gives an accurate version.—T.

‡ For the king's disregard of the sage in former days.—T.

persons then displayed himself to be the god of righteousness.[22] Indeed, having displayed his own wonderful and celestial form, he entered an adjacent forest, with heart freed from wrath and the desire of revenge.[23] I saw all this, O king, and heard the words I have said. Drive off thy hope, that is even slenderer (than any of those which the sage indicated)!—'[24]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed, O monarch, by the high-souled Rishabha, king Sumitra speedily cast off the hope that was in his heart and which was slenderer (than any of the kinds of hope indicated by the emaciated *Rishi*).[25] Do thou also, O son of Kunti, hearing these words of mine, be calm and collected like Himavat.[26] Overcome with distress* thou hast questioned me and heard my answer. Having heard it, O monarch, it behoves thee to dispel these regrets of thine!' "[27]

SECTION CXXIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Like one that drinks nectar I am never satiated with listening to thee as thou speakest! As a person possessing a knowledge of self is never satiated with meditation, even so I am never satiated with hearing thee![1] Do thou, therefore, O grandsire, discourse once more upon morality! I am never satiated with drinking the nectar of thy discourses upon morality!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse between Gotama and the illustrious Yama.[3] Gotama owned a wide retreat on the Pāripātra hills. Listen to me as to how many years he dwelt in that abode. For sixty thousand years that sage underwent ascetic austerities in that asylum.[4] One day, the Regent of the world, Yama, O tiger among men, repaired to that great sage of cleansed soul while he was engaged in the severest austerities. Yama beheld the great ascetic Gotama of rigid penances.[5] The regenerate sage, understanding that it was Yama who had

---

* The distress, which Yudhishthira felt at the thought of the slaughter in battle.—T.

come, speedily saluted him and sat with joined hands in an attentive attitude (waiting for his commands).[6] The royal Dharma, beholding that bull among Brāhmanas, duly saluted him (in return) and addressing him asked what he was to do for him.[7]

" 'Gotama said,—By doing what acts does one liberate one's self from the debt one owes to one's mother and father? How also does one succeed in winning regions of pure bliss that are so difficult of attainment?—[8]

" 'Yama said,—Devoting one's self to the duty of truth, and practising purity and penances, one should ceaselessly worship one's mother and father.[9] One should also perform Horse-sacrifices with presents in profusion unto the Brāhmanas. By such acts one wins many regions (of felicity) of wonderful aspect.' "[10]

Section CXXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What course of conduct should be adopted by a king shorn of friends, having many enemies, possessed of an exhausted treasury, and destitute of troops, O Bhārata![1] What, indeed, should be his conduct when he is surrounded by wicked ministers, when his counsels are all divulged, when he does not see his way clearly before him,[2] when he assails another kingdom, when he is engaged in grinding a hostile kingdom, and when though weak he is at war with a stronger ruler? What, indeed, should be the conduct of a king the affairs of whose kingdom are ill-regulated, and who disregards the requirements of place and time, who is unable, in consequence of his oppressions, to bring about peace and cause disunion among his foes? Should he seek the acquisition of wealth by evil means, or should he lay down his life without seeking wealth?'[3-4]

"Bhishma said,—'Conversant as thou art with duties, thou hast, O bull of Bharata's race, asked me a question relating to a mystery (in connection with duties).*[5] Without being

---

* *I. e.*, this is not a subject upon which one can or should discourse before miscellaneous audiences.—T.

questioned, O Yudhishthira, I could not venture to discourse upon this duty! Morality is very subtile. One understands it, O bull of Bharata's race, by the aid of the texts of scriptures. By remembering what one has heard and by practising good acts, some one in some place may become a righteous person.[6] By acting with intelligence the king may or may not succeed in acquiring wealth.* Aided by thy own intelligence do thou think what answer should be given to thy question on this head.[7] Listen, O Bhārata, to the means, fraught with great merit, by which kings may conduct themselves (during seasons of distress). For the sake of true morality, however, I would not call those means righteous.[8] If the treasury be filled by oppression, conduct like this brings the king to the verge of destruction. Even this is the conclusion of all intelligent men who have thought upon the subject.[9] The kind of scriptures or science which one always studies gives him the kind of knowledge which it is capable of giving. Such Knowledge verily becomes agreeable to him.[10] Ignorance leads to barrenness of invention in respect of means. Contrivance of means, again, through the aid of knowledge, becomes the source of great felicity. Without entertaining any scruples and any malice,† listen to these instructions.[11] Through the decrease of the treasury, the king's forces are decreased. The king should, therefore, fill his treasury (by any means) like to one creating water in a wilderness which is without water.[12] Agreeably to this code of quasi-morality practised by the ancients, the king should, when the time for it comes,‡ show compassion to his people. This is eternal duty.[13] For men that are able and competent,$ the duties are of one kind. In seasons of distress, however, one's duties are of a different kind. Without wealth a king may (by penances and the like) acquire religious merit. Life, however, is much more important than religious merit.

---

* *I. e.*, by ingenious contrivances a king may succeed in filling his treasury, or his best ingenuity and calculations may fail.—T.

† *I. e.* with a pure heart.—T.

‡ *I. e.* when the season of distress is over.—T.

$ *I. e.* under ordinary situations or circumstances.—T.

(And as life cannot be supported without wealth, no such merit should be sought which stands in the way of the acquisition of wealth).[14] A king that is weak, by acquiring only religious merit, never succeeds in obtaining just and proper means for sustenance; and since he cannot, by even his best exertions, acquire power by the aid of only religious merit,[15] therefore the practices in seasons of distress are sometimes regarded as not inconsistent with morality. The learned, however, are of opinion that those practices lead to sinfulness.[16] After the season of distress is over, what should the Kshatriya do? He should (at such a time) conduct himself in such a way that his merit may not be destroyed. He should also act in such a way that he may not have to succumb to his enemies.* Even these have been declared to be his duties. He should not sink in despondency.[17] He should not (in times of distress) seek to rescue (from the peril of destruction) the merit of others or of himself. On the other hand, he should rescue his own self. This is the settled conclusion.† There is this Cruti, *viz.*, that it is settled that Brāhmanas, who are conversant with duties, should have proficiency in respect of duties. Similarly, as regards the Kshatriya, his proficiency should consist in exertion, since might of arms is his great possession.[18-19] When a Kshatriya's means of support are gone, what should he not take excepting what belongs to ascetics and what is owned by Brāhmanas?[20] Even as a Brāhmana in a season of distress may officiate at the sacrifice of a person for whom he should never officiate (at other and ordinary times) and eat forbidden food, so there is no doubt that a Kshatriya (in distress) may take wealth from every one except ascetics and Brāhmanas.[21] For one afflicted (by an enemy and seeking the means of escape) what can be an improper outlet? For a person im-

---

* *I. e.*, he should perform expiations and do good to them whom he has injured, so that these may not remain discontented with him.—T.

† *He should not seek to rescue the merit of others or of himself*, i. e., he should not, at such times, refrain from any act that may injure his own merit or that of others; in other words, he may disregard all considerations about the religious merits of others and of himself. His sole concern at such a time should be to save himself, that is, his life.—T.

mured (within a dungeon and seeking escape) what can be an improper path? When a person becomes afflicted, he escapes by even an improper outlet.[22] For a Kshatriya that has, in consequence of the weakness of his treasury and army, become exceedingly humiliated, neither a life of mendicancy nor the profession of a Vaiçya or that of a Cudra has been laid down.[23] The profession ordained for a Kshatriya is the acquisition of wealth by battle and victory. He should never beg of a member of his own order. The person who supports himself at ordinary times by following the practices primarily laid for him, may in seasons of distress support himself by following the practices laid down in the alternative.[24] In a season of distress, when ordinary practices cannot be followed, a Kshatriya may live by even unjust and improper means. The very Brāhmanas, it is seen, do the same when their means of living are destroyed.[25] When the Brāhmanas (at such times) conduct themselves thus, what doubt is there in respect of Kshatriyas? This is, indeed, settled. Without sinking into despondency and yielding to destruction, a Kshatriya may (by force) take what he can from persons that are rich.[26] Know that the Kshatriya is the protecter and the destroyer of the people. Therefore, a Kshatriya in distress should take (by force) what he can, with a view to (ultimately) protect the people.[27] No person in this world, O king, can support life without injuring other creatures. The very ascetic leading a solitary life in the depths of the forest is no exception.[28] A Kshatriya should not live, relying upon destiny,* especally he, O chief of the Kurus, who is desirous of ruling.[29] The king and the kingdom should always mutually protect each other. This is an eternal duty.[30] As the king protects, by spending all his possessions, the kingdom when it sinks into distress, even so should the kingdom protect the king when he sinks into distress.[31] The king, even at the extremity of distress, should never give up† his treasury, his

* *Cankhalikhitam i. e.*, that which is written on the forehead by the Ordainer.—T.

† Literally, "cause to be removed.—T.

machinery for chastising the wicked, his army, his friends and allies, and other necessary institutions and the chiefs existing in his kingdom.[32] Men conversant with duty say that one must keep one's seeds, deducting them from one's very food. This is a truth cited from the treatise of Camvara well-known for his great powers of illusion.[33] Fie on the life of that king whose kingdom languishes. Fie on the life of that man who from want of means goes to a foreign country for a living.[34] The king's roots are his treasury and army. His army, again, has its roots in his treasury. His army is the root of all his religious merits. His religious merits, again, are the root of his subjects.[35] The treasury can never be filled without oppressing others. How then can the army be kept without oppression? The king, therefore, in seasons of distress, incurs no fault by oppressing his subjects for filling the treasury.[36] For performing sacrifices many improper acts are done. For this reason a king incurs no fault by doing improper acts (when the object is to fill his treasury in a season of distress).[37] For the sake of wealth practices other than those which are proper are followed (in seasons of distress). If (at such times) such improper practices be not adopted, evil is certain to result. All those institutions that are kept up for working destruction and misery exist for the sake of collecting wealth.* Guided by such considerations, an intelligent king should settle his course (at such times).[38] As animals and other things are necessary for sacrifices, as sacrifices are for purifying the heart, and as animals, sacrifices, and purity of the heart are all for final emancipation, even so policy and chastisement exist for the treasury, the treasury exists for the army, and policy and treasury and army all the three exist for vanquishing foes and protecting or enlarging the kingdom.[39] I shall here cite an example illustrating the true ways of morality. A large tree is cut down for making of it a sacrificial stake. In cutting it, other trees that stand in its way have also to be cut down. These also, in falling down, kill others standing on the spot.[40-41] Even so they that stand in the way of

* The army and the criminal courts.—T.

making a well-filled treasury must have to be slain. I do not see how else success can be had![42] By wealth, both the worlds, *viz.*, this and the other, can be had, as also Truth and religious merit. A person without wealth is more dead than alive.[43] Wealth for the performance of sacrifices should be acquired by every means. The demerit that attaches to an act done in a season of distress is not equal to that which attaches to the same act if done at other times, O Bhārata![44] The acquisition of wealth and its abandonment cannot both be possibly seen in the same person, O king! I do not see a rich man in the forest.[45] With respect to every wealth that is seen in this world, every one contends with every one else, saying,—This shall be mine,—This shall be mine![46]—There is nothing, O scorcher of foes, that is so meritorious for a king as the possession of a kingdom. It is sinful for a king to oppress his subjects with heavy impositions at ordinary times. In a season, however, of distress, it is quite different.[47] Some acquire wealth by gifts and sacrifices; some who have a liking for penances acquire wealth by penances; some acquire it by the aid of their intelligence and cleverness.[48] A person without wealth is said to be weak, while he that has wealth becomes powerful. A man of wealth may acquire everything. A king that has a well-filled treasury succeeds in accomplishing everything.[49] By his treasury a king may earn religious merit, gratify his desire for pleasure, obtain the next world, and this also. The treasury, however, should be filled by the aid of righteousness and never by unrighteous practices, such, that is, as pass for righteous in times of distress.' "[50]

SECTION CXXXI.

(Apaddharmānuçāsana Parva).

"Yudhishthira said,—'What, besides this, should be done by a king that is weak and procrastinating, that does not engage in battle from anxiety for the lives of his friends, that is always under the influence of fear, and that cannot keep his counsels secret?[1] What, indeed, should that king do whose cities and kingdom have been partitioned and appropriated by foes, who is divested of wealth, who is incapable (through such poverty) of honoring his friends and attaching them to himself, whose ministers are disunited or bought over by his enemies, who is obliged to stand in the face of foes, whose army has dwindled away, and whose heart has been agitated by some strong enemy?'[2-3]

"Bhishma said,—'If the invading enemy be of pure heart and if he be conversant with both morality and profit, a king of the kind you have indicated should, with no loss of time, make peace with the invader and bring about the restoration of those portions of the kingdom that have already been conquered.[4] If, again, the invader be strong and sinful and seek to obtain victory by unrighteous means, the king should make peace with him, too, by abandoning a portion of his territories.[5] If the invader be unwilling to make peace, the king should then abandon his very capital and all his possessions for escaping from danger. If he can save his life he may hope for similar acquisitions in future.[6] What man conversant with morality is there that would sacrifice his own self, which is a more valuable possession, for encountering that danger from which escape can be had by the abandonment of his treasury and army?[7] A king should protect the ladies of his household. If these fall into the hands of the enemy, he should not show any compassion for them (by incurring the risk of his own arrest in delivering them). As long as it is in his power, he should never surrender his own self to the enemy.'[8]

"Yudhishthira said,—'When his own are dissatisfied with him, when he is oppressed by invaders, when his treasury is

exhausted, and when his counsels are divulged, what should the king then do?'[9]

"Bhishma said,—'A king, under such circumstances, should (if his enemy be righteous) seek to make peace with him. If the enemy be unrighteous), he should then put forth his valor. He should, by such means, seek to cause the foe to withdraw from his kingdom; or, fighting bravely, he should lay down his life and ascend to heaven.[10] A king can conquer the whole Earth with the help of even a small force if that force be loyal, cheerful, and devoted to his good.[11] If slain in battle, he is sure to ascend to heaven. If he succeed in slaying (his enemies), he is sure to enjoy the Earth. By laying down one's life in battle, one obtains the companionship of Indra himself.[12]

SECTION CXXXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'When practices fraught with high morality and beneficial to the world, (*viz.*, those that appertain to righteous rule) disappear, when all the means and resources for the support of life fall into the hands of robbers,[1] when, indeed, such a calamitous time sets in, by what means should a Brāhmana, O grandsire, who from affection is unable to desert his sons and grandsons, subsist?'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'When such a time sets in, the Brāhmana should live by the aid of knowledge. Everything in this world is for them that are good. Nothing here is for them that are wicked.[3] He who, making himself an instrument of acquisition, takes wealth from the wicked and gives it unto them that are good, is said to be conversant with the morality of adversity.[4] Desirous of maintaining his rule, the king, O monarch, without driving his subjects to indignation and rebellion, may take what is not freely given by the owner, saying—*This is mine!*[5]—That wise man who, cleansed by the possession of knowledge and might and of righteous conduct at other times, acts censurably in such seasons, does not really deserve to be censured.[6] They who always support themselves by putting forth their might never like any other method

of living. They that are endued with might, O Yudhishthira, always live by the aid of prowess.[7] The ordinary scriptures that exist (for seasons of distress) without exceptions of any kind, should be practised by a king (at such times). A king, however, that is endued with intelligence, while following those scriptures, would do something more.*[8] At such times, however, the king should not oppress *Ritwijas* and *Purohitas* and preceptors and Brāhmanas, all of whom are honored and held in high esteem. By oppressing them, even at such times, he incurs reproach and sin.[9] This that I tell thee is regarded as an authority in the world. Indeed, this is the eternal eye (by which practices in seasons of distress are to be viewed). One should be guided by this authority. By this is to be judged whether a king is to be called good or wicked.[10] It is seen that many persons residing in villages and towns, actuated by jealousy and wrath, accuse one another. The king should never, at their words, honor or punish any body.[11] Slander should never be spoken. If spoken, it should never be heard. When slanderous converse goes on, one should close one's ears or leave the place outright.[12] Slanderous converse is the characteristic of wicked men. It is an indication of depravity. They, on the other hand, O king, who speak of the virtues of others in assemblies of the good, are good men.[13] As a pair of sweet-tempered bulls, governable and well-broken and used to bear burthens, put their necks to the yoke and drag the cart willingly, even so should the king bear his burthens (in seasons of distress).[14]

---

* The commentator explains it in the following way. The ordinary texts, without exceptions of any kind, laid down for seasons of distress, permit a king to fill his treasury by levying heavy contributions on both his own subjects and those of hostile kingdoms. An ordinary king, at such a time, acts in this way. A king, however, that is endued with intelligence, while levying such contributions, takes care to levy them upon those that are wicked and punishable among his own subjects and among the subjects of other kingdoms, and refrains from molesting the good. Compare the conduct of Warren Hastings in exacting a heavy tribute, when his own treasury was empty, from Cheyt Sing, whose unfriendliness for the British power was a matter of notoriety.—T.

Others say that a king (at such times) should conduct himself in such a way that he may succeed in gaining a large number of allies. Some regard ancient usage as the highest indication of righteousness.[15] Others, *viz.*, they that are in favour of the conduct pursued by Cankha towards Likhita, do not hold this opinion. They do not advance such an opinion through either malice or covetousness.*[16] Examples are seen of even great *Rishis* who have laid down that even preceptors, if addicted to evil practices, should be punished. But approvable authority there is none for such a proposition.[17] The gods may be left to punish such men when they happen to be vile and guilty of wicked practices. The king who fills his treasury by having recourse to fraudulent devices, certainly falls away from righteousness.[18] That code of morality which is honored in every respect by those that are good and in affluent circumstances, and which is approved by every honest heart, should be followed.[19] He is said to be conversant with duty who knows duty as depending on all the four foundations. It is difficult to find out the reasons on which duties stand even as it is difficult to find out the legs of the snake.†[20] As a hunter of beasts discovers the track of a shaft-struck deer by observing spots of blood on the ground, even so should one seek to discover the reasons of duties.[21] Thus should a man tread with humility along the path trod by the good. Such, indeed, was the conduct of the great royal sages of old, O Yudhishthira!"[22]

---

* The sense seems to be that there are persons who hold that priests and Brāhmanas should never be punished or taxed. This is the eternal usage, and, therefore, this is morality. Others who approve of the conduct of Cankha towards his brother Likhita on the occasion of the latter's appropriating a few fruits belonging to the former, are of a different opinion. The latter class of persons, Bhishma says, are as sincere as the former in their opinion. They cannot be blamed for holding that even priests and Brāhmanas may be punished when offending.—T.

† *Duty depending on all the four foundations, i. e.*, as laid down in the Vedas as laid down in the *Smritis*; as sanctioned by ancient usage and custom; and as approved by the heart or one's own conscience.—T.

Section CXXXIII.

"Bhishma said,—'The king should, by drawing wealth from his own kingdom as also from the kingdoms of his foes, fill his treasury. From the treasury springs his religious merit, O son of Kunti, and it is in consequence of the treasury that the roots of his kingdom extend.[1] For these reasons the treasury must be filled; and when filled, it should be carefully protected (by putting a stop to all useless expenditure), and even sought to be increased. This is the eternal practice.[2] The treasury cannot be filled by (acting with) purity and righteousness, nor by (acting with) heartless cruelty. It should be filled by adopting a middle course.[3] How can a weak king have a treasury? How again can a king who has no treasury have strength? How can a weak man have a kingdom? Whence again can one without a kingdom obtain prosperity?[4] For a person of high rank, adversity is like death. For this reason the king should always increase his treasury, and army, and allies and friends.[5] All men disregard a king with an empty treasury. Without being gratified with the little that such a king can give, his servants never express any alacrity in his business.[6] In consequence of his affluence, the king succeeds in obtaining great honors. Indeed, affluence conceals his very sins, like robes concealing such parts of a feminine form as should not be exposed to the view.[7] Those with whom the king has formerly quarreled become filled with grief at the sight of his new affluence. Like dogs they once more take service under him, and though they wait only for an opportunity to slay him, he takes to them as if nothing has happened.[8] How, O Bhārata, can such a king obtain happiness? The king should always exert for acquiring greatness.[9] He should never bend down in humility* Exertion is manliness. He should rather break at an unfavorable opportunity than bend before any one. He should rather repair to the forest and live there with the

* *I. e.*, yield with ease.—T.

wild animals.[16] But he should not still live in the midst of ministers and officers who have like robbers broken through all restraints. Even the robbers of the forest may furnish a large number of soldiers for the accomplishment of the fiercest of deeds, O Bhārata![11] If the king transgresses all wholesome restraints, all people become filled with alarm. The very robbers who know not what compassion is, dread such a king.*[12] For this reason, the king should always establish rules and restraints for gladdening the hearts of his people. Rules in respect of even very trivial matters are hailed with delight by the people.[13] There are men who think that this world is nothing and the future also is a myth. He that is an athiest of this type, though his heart is agitated by secret fears, should never be trusted.[14] If the robbers of the forest, while observing other virtues, commit depredations in respect only of property, those depredations may be regarded as harmless. The lives of thousands of creatures are protected in consequence of robbers observing such restraints.[15] Slaying an enemy who is flying away from battle, ravishment of wives, ingratitude, plundering the property of a Brāhmana, depriving a person of the whole of his property,[16] violation of maidens, continued occupation of villages and towns as their lawful lords, and adulterous congress with other people's wives,—these are regarded as wicked acts among even robbers, and robbers should always abstain from them.[17] It is again certain that those kings who strive (by making peace) to inspire confidence upon themselves in the hearts of the robbers, succeed, after watching all his ins and outs, in exterminating him.[18] For this reason, in dealing with robbers, it is necessary that they should not be exterminated outright.† They should be sought to be brought under the king's sway. The king should never behave with cruelty towards them, thinking

* Grammatically, the last line may mean,—'The very robbers dread a king destitute of compassion'.—T.

† Their wives and children ought to be saved, and their habitations and wearing apparel and domestic utensils, &c., should not be destroyed.—T.

that he is more powerful than they.[19] Those kings that do not exterminate them outright have no fear of extermination themselves. They, however, that do exterminate them have always to live in fear in consequence of that act.' "[20]

SECTION CXXXIV.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, persons acquainted with the scriptures declare this text in respect of duty, *viz.*, for a Kshatriya possessed of intelligence and knowledge, (the earning of) religious merit and (the acquisition of) wealth constitute his obvious duties. He should not, by subtile discussions on duty and unseen consequences in respect of a future world, abstain from accomplishing those two duties.[1] As it is useless to argue, upon seeing certain foot-prints on the ground, whether they are the wolf's or not, even so is all discussion upon the nature of righteousness and the reverse: Nobody in this world ever sees the fruits of righteousness and unrighteousness.[2] A Kshatriya, therefore, should seek the acquisition of power. He that is powerful is master of everything. Wealth leads to the possession of an army. He that is powerful* obtains intelligent advisers.[3] He that is without wealth is truly fallen. A little (of anything in the world) is regarded as the dirty remnant of a feast.† If a strong man does even many bad acts, nobody, through fear, says or does anything (for censuring or checking him). If Righteousness and Power be associated with Truth, they can then rescue men from great perils.[4] If, however, the two be compared, Power will appear to be superior to Righteousness. It is from Power that Righteousness springs. Righteousness rests upon Power as all immobile things upon the Earth.[5] As smoke depends upon the wind (for its motion), even so Righteousness depends upon Power. Righteousness which is the weaker of

---

* *I. e.*, 'he that has wealth and forces.'—T.

† The sense seems to be that a poor man can have only a little of all earthly things. That little, however, is like the remnant of a strong man's dinner.—T.

the two depends for its support upon a tree.[6] Righteousness is dependent on them that are powerful even as pleasure is dependent upon them that are given to enjoyment. There is nothing that powerful men cannot do. Everything is pure with them that are powerful.[7] A powerless man, by committing evil acts can never escape. Men feel alarmed at his conduct even as they are alarmed at the appearance of an wolf.[8] One fallen away from a state of affluence leads a life of humiliation and sorrow. A life of humiliation and reproach is like death itself.[9] The learned have said that when in consequence of one's sinful conduct one is cast off by friends and companions, one is pierced repeatedly by the wordy darts of others and one has to burn with grief on that account.[10] Professors of scriptures have said with respect to the expiation of sinfulness that one should (if stained with sinfulness) study the three Vedas, wait upon and worship the Brāhmanas,[11] gratify all men by looks, words, and acts, cast off all meanness, marry in high families,[12] proclaim the praises of others while confessing one's own worthlessness, recite *mantras*, perform the usual water-rites, assume a mildness of behaviour, and abstain from speaking much,[13] and perform austere penances, seek the refuge of Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas. Indeed, one who has committed many evil acts, should do all this, without being angry at the reproaches uttered by men.[14] By conducting one's self in this way, one may soon become cleansed of all his sins and regain the regard of the world. Indeed, one wins great respect in this world and great rewards in the next, and enjoys diverse kinds of happiness here by following such conduct and by sharing his wealth with others.' "[15]

SECTION CXXXV.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old story of a robber who having in this world been observant of restraints did not meet with destruction in the next.[1] There was a robber of the name of Kāyavya, born of a Kshatriya father and a Nishāda mother. Kāyavya was a practiser of Kshatriya

duties. Capable of smiting, possessed of intelligence and courage, conversant with the scriptures, destitute of cruelty, devoted to the Brāhmanas, and worshipping his seniors and preceptors with reverence, he protected the ascetics in the observance of their practices. Though a robber, he still succeeded in winning felicity in heaven.[2-3] Morning and evening he used to excite the wrath of the deer by chasing them. He was well conversant with all the practices of the Nishādas as also of all animals living in the forest.[4] Well acquainted with the requirements of time and place, he roved over the mountains. Acquainted as he was with the habits of all animals, his arrows never missed their aim, and his weapons were strong.[5] Alone, he could vanquish many hundreds of troops. He worshipped his old, blind, and deaf parents in the forest every day.[6] With honey and flesh and fruits and roots and other kinds of excellent food, he hospitably entertained all persons deserving of honor and did them many good offices.[7] He showed great respect for those Brāhmanas that had retired from the world for taking up their residence in the woods. Killing the deer, he often took flesh to them.[8] As regards those that were unwilling, from fear of others, to accept gifts from him because of the profession he followed, he used to repair to their abodes before dawn and leave flesh at their doors.*[9] One day many thousands of robbers, destitute of compassion in their conduct and regardless of all restraints, desired to elect him as their leader.[10]

"'The robbers said,—Thou art acquainted with the requirements of place and time. Thou hast wisdom and courage. Thy firmness also is great in everything thou undertakest! Be thou our foremost of leaders, respected by us all![11] We will do as thou wilt direct! Protect us duly, even as a father or mother!—[12]

"'Kāyavya said,—Never kill ye a woman, or one that from fear keeps away from the fight, or one that is a child, or one that is an ascetic! One that abstains from fight should never

* It is always reproachful to accept gifts from persons of questionable character.—T.

be slain, nor should women be seized or brought away with force![13] None of you should ever slay a woman amongst all creatures. Let Brāhmanas be always blessed and you should always fight for their good.[14] Truth should never be sacrificed. The marriages of men should never be obstructed. No injury should be inflicted on those houses in which the deities, the *Pitris*, and guests are worshipped.[15] Amongst creatures, Brāhmanas deserve to be exempted by you in your plundering excursions. By giving away even your all, you should worship them.[16] He who incurs the wrath of the Brāhmanas, he for whose discomfiture they wish, fails to find a rescuer in the three worlds.[17] He who speaks ill of the Brāhmanas and wishes for their destruction, himself meets with destruction like darkness at sunrise.[18] Residing here, ye shall acquire the fruits of your valour. Troops shall be sent against those that will refuse to give us our dues.[19] The rod of chastisement is intended for the wicked. It is not intended for self-aggrandisement. They who oppress the good deserve death, it is said.[20] They who seek to aggrandise their fortunes by afflicting kingdoms in unerupulous ways, very soon come to be regarded as vermin in a dead body.[21] Those robbers again that would conduct themselves by conforming to these restraints of the scriptures, would soon win salvation although leading a plundering life![22]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Those robbers, thus addressed, obeyed all the commands of Kāyavya. By desisting from sin, they obtained great prosperity.[23] By behaving himself in such a way, by thus doing good to the honest and by thus restraining the robbers from bad practices, Kāyavya won great success (in the next world).[24] He who always thinks of this narrative of Kāyavya will not have any fear from the denizens of the forest, in fact, from any earthly creature.[25] Such a man will have no fear from any creature, O Bhārata! He will have no fear from wicked men. If such a man goes to the forest, he will be able to live there with the security of a king.'"[26]

SECTION CXXXVI.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, *viz.*, the method by which a king should fill his treasury, persons acquainted with the scriptures of olden days cite the following verses sung by Brahman himself.[1] The wealth of persons who are given to the performance of sacrifices, as also the wealth dedicated to the deities, should never be taken. A Kshatriya should take the wealth of such persons as never perform religious rites and sacrifices and as are on that account regarded to be equal to robbers.[2] All the creatures that inhabit the Earth and all the enjoyments that appertain to sovereignty, O Bhārata, belong to the Kshatriyas. All the wealth of the Earth belongs to the Kshatriya and not to any person else.[3] That wealth the Kshatriya should use for keeping up his army and for the performance of sacrifices. Tearing up such creepers and plants as are not of any use, men burn them for cooking such vegetables as serve for food.*[4] Men conversant with duty have said that his wealth is useless who does not, with libations of clarified butter, feed the gods, the *Pitris*, and men.[5] A virtuous ruler, O king, should take away such wealth. By that wealth a large number of good people can be gratified. He should not, however, hoard that wealth in his treasury.[6] He who makes himself an instrument of acquisition and taking away wealth from the wicked gives them to those that are good, is said to be conversant with the whole science of morality.[7] A king should extend his conquests in the next world according to the measure of his power, and as gradually as vegetable products are seen to grow. As some ants are seen to grow from no adequate cause, even so sacrifice springs from no adequate cause.†[8] As

---

* The king should similarly, by punishing the wicked, cherish the good.—T.

† The sense seems to be that sacrifice proceeds more from an internal desire than from a large sum of money lying in the treasury. If the desire exists, money comes gradually for accomplishing it. The force of the simile consists in the fact that ants (probably white ants) are seen to gather and multiply from no ostensible cause.—T.

flies and gnats and ants are driven off from the bodies of kine and other domestic cattle (at the time of milking them), even so should all persons who are averse to the performance of sacrifices should be similarly driven off from the kingdom. This is consistent with morality.[9] As the dust that lies on the Earth, if pounded between two stones, becomes finer and finer, even so questions of morality, the more they are reflected upon and discussed, become finer and finer.' "[10]

SECTION CXXXVII.

"Bhishma said,—'These two, *viz.*, one that provides for the future, and one possessed of presence of mind, always enjoy happiness. The man of procrastination, however, is lost.[1] In this connection, listen attentively to the following excellent story of a procrastinating person in the matter of settling his course of action.[2] In a lake that was not very deep and which abounded with fishes, there lived three *Çakula* fishes that were friends and constant companions.[3] Amongst those three, one had much forethought and always liked to provide for what was coming. Another was possessed of great presence of mind. The third was procrastinating.[4] One day certain fishermen coming to that lake began to bale out its waters to a lower ground through diverse outlets.[5] Beholding the water of the lake gradually decreasing, the fish that had much foresight, addressing his two companions on that occasion of danger, said,[6]—A great danger is about to overtake all the acquatic creatures living in this lake. Let us speedily go to some other place before our path becomes obstructed![7] He that resists future evil by the aid of good policy, never incurs serious danger. Let my counsels prevail with you! Let us all leave this place![8]—That one amongst the three who was procrastinating then answered,—It is well said. There is, however, no need of such haste. This is my deliberate opinion![9]—Then the other fish, who was noted for presence of mind, addressed his procrastinating companion and said,—When the time for anything comes, I never fail to provide for it according to policy.[10]—Hearing the answers

of his two companions, he of great forethought and considerable intelligence immediately set out by a current and reached another deep lake.[11] The fishermen, seeing that all the water had been baled out, shut in the fishes that remained by diverse means.[12] Then they began to agitate the little water that remained, and as they began to catch the fish, the procrastinating *Çakula* was caught with many others.[13] When the fishermen began to tie to a long string the fishes they had caught, the *Çakula* who was noted for presence of mind thrust himself into the company of those that had been so tied and remained quietly among them,[14] biting the string, for he thought that he should do it to give the appearance of being caught. The fishermen believed that all the fishes attached to the string had been caught.[15] They then removed them to a piece of deep water for washing them. Just at that time the *Çakula* noted for presence of mind, leaving the string, quickly escaped.[16] That fish, however, who had been procrastinating, foolish and senseless and without intelligence as he was, and, therefore, unable to escape, met with his death.[17]

"'Thus every one meets with destruction, like the procrastinating fish, who from want of intelligence cannot divine the hour of danger.[18] That man, again, who regarding himself clever does not seek his own good in proper time, incurs great danger like the *Çakula* who had presence of mind.[19] Hence these two only, *viz.*, he that has much forethought and he that has presence of mind, succeed in obtaining happiness. He, however, that is procrastinating meets with destruction.[20] Diverse are the divisions of time, such as *Kāshthā*, *Kalā*, *Muhurta*, day, night, *Lava*, month, fortnight, the six seasons, *Kalpa*, year.[21] The divisions of the Earth are called place. Time cannot be seen. As regards the success of any object or purpose, it is achieved or not achieved according to the manner in which the mind is set to think of it.[22] These two, *viz.*, the person of forethought and the person of presence of mind, have been declared by the *Rishis* to be the foremost of men in all treatises on morality and profit and in those dealing with emancipation.[23] One, however, that does everything after reflection and scrutiny, one that avails of proper means for

the accomplishment of one's objects, always succeeds in achieving much. Those again that act with due regard to time and place succeed in winning results better than the mere man of foresight and the man of presence of mind.' "[24]

SECTION CXXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast, O bull of Bharata's race, said that that intelligence which provides against the future, as well as that which can meet present emergencies, is everywhere superior, while procrastination brings about destruction.[1] I desire, O grandsire, to hear of that superior intelligence aided by which a king, conversant with the scriptures and well versed with morality and profit, may not be stupified even when surrounded by many foes.[2] I ask thee this, O chief of Kuru's race! It behoveth thee to discourse to me on this![3] I desire to hear everything, conformable to what has been laid down in the scriptures, about the manner in which a king should conduct himself when he is assailed by many foes.[4] When a king falls into distress, a large number of foes, provoked by his past acts, range themselves against him and seek to vanquish him.[5] How may a king, weak and alone, succeed in holding up his head when he is challenged on all sides by many powerful kings leagued together?[6] How does a king at such times make friends and foes! How should he, O bull of Bharata's race, behave at such a time towards both friends and foes?[7] When those that have all the indications of friends really become his foes, what should the king then do if he is to obtain happiness?[8] With whom should he make war and with whom should he make peace? Even if he be strong, how should he behave in the midst of foes![9] O scorcher of foes, this I regard to be the highest of all questions connected with the discharge of kingly duties. There are few men for listening to the answer of this question and none to answer it[10] save Cāntanu's son Bhishma firmly wedded to truth and having all his senses under control! O thou that art highly blessed, reflect upon it and discourse to me on it'![11]

"Bhishma said,—'O Yudhishthira, this question is certainly worthy of thee! Its answer is fraught with great happiness. Listen to me, O son, as I declare to thee, O Bhārata, all the duties not generally known that should be practised in seasons of distress.[12] A foe becomes a friend, and a friend also becomes a foe. The course of human actions, through the combination of circumstances, becomes very uncertain.[13] As regards, therefore, what should be done and what should not, it is necessary that paying heed to the requirements of time and place, one should either trust one's foes or make war.[14] One should, even exerting one's self to one's best, make friends with men of intelligence and knowledge that desire one's welfare. One should make peace with even one's foes, when, O Bhārata, one's life-breaths cannot otherwise be saved.[15] That foolish man who never makes peace with foes, never succeeds in winning any gain or acquiring any of those fruits for which others endeavour.[16] He again who makes peace with foes and quarrels with even friends after a full consideration of circumstances, succeeds in obtaining great fruits.[17] In this connection is cited the old story of the discourse between a cat and a mouse at the foot of a banian.'[18]

"Bhishma continued,—'There was a large banian in the midst of an extensive forest. Covered with many kinds of creepers, it was the resort of diverse kinds of birds.[19] It had a large trunk from which numerous branches extended in all directions. Delightful to look at, the shade it afforded was very refreshing. It stood in the midst of the forest, and animals of diverse species lived on it.[20] A mouse of great wisdom, named Palita, lived at the foot of that tree, having made a hole there with a hundred outlets.[21] On the branches of the tree there lived a cat, of tho name of Lomaça, in great happiness, daily dovouring a large number of birds.[22] Sometime after, a *Chandāla* came into the forest and built a hut for himself. Every evening after sunset he spread his traps.[23] Indeed, spreading his nets made of leathern strings he went back to his hut, and happily passing the night in sleep, returned to the spot at the dawn of day.[24] Diverse kinds of animals fell into his traps every night. And it so

happened that one day the cat, in a moment of heedlessness, was caught in the snare.[25] O thou of great wisdom, when his foe the cat who was at all times an enemy of the mouse species was thus caught in the net, the mouse Palita came out of his hole and began to rove about fearlessly.[26] While trustfully roving through the forest in search of food, the mouse after a little while saw the meat (that the *Chandāla* had spread there as lure).[27] Getting upon the trap, the little animal began to eat the flesh. Laughing mentally, he even got upon his enemy entangled helplessly in the net.[28] Intent on eating the flesh, he did not mark his own danger, for as he suddenly cast his eyes he saw a terrible foe of his arrived at that spot.[29] That foe was none else than a restless mungoose of coppery eyes, of the name of Harita. Living in underground holes, its body resembled the flower of a reed.[30] Allured to that spot by the scent of the mouse, the animal came there with great speed for devouring his prey. And he stood on his haunches, with head upraised, licking the corners of his mouth with his tongue.[31] The mouse beheld at the same time another foe living in the holes of trees, then sitting on the branch of the banian. It was a night-wandering owl of the name of Chandraka of sharp beaks.[32] Having become an object of sight with both the mungoose and the owl, the mouse, in great alarm, began to think in this strain.[33]—At such a season of great danger, when death itself is staring me in the face, when there is fear on every side, how should one act that wishes for one's good ?[34]—Encompassed on all sides by danger, seeing fear in every direction, the mouse, filled with alarm for his safety, made a high resolution.[35]—Warding off even innumerable dangers by hundreds of means, one should always save one's life. Danger, at the present moment, encompasses me on every side ![36] If I were to descend from this trap on the ground, without adequate precautions, the mungoose will surely seize and devour me. If I remain on this trap, the owl will surely seize me. If, again, the cat succeeds in disentangling himself from the net, he also is certain to devour me ![37] It is not proper, however, that a person of our intelligence should lose his wits. I shall, therefore, strive my

best to save my life, aided by proper means and intelligence.[38] A person possessed of intelligence and wisdom and conversant with the science of policy never sinks, however great and terrible the danger that threatens him.[39] At present, however, I do not behold any other refuge than this cat. He is an enemy. But he is in distress. The service that I can do him is very great.[40] Sought to be made a prey by three foes, how should I now act for saving my life? I should now seek the protection of one of those foes, *viz.*, the cat.[41] Taking the aid of the science of policy, let me counsel the cat for his good, so that I may, with my intelligence, escape from all the three.[42] The cat is my great foe, but the distress into which he has fallen is very great. Let me try whether I can succeed in making this foolish creature understand his own interests. Having fallen into such distress, he may make peace with me.[43] A person when afflicted by a stronger one should make peace with even an enemy. Professors of the science of policy say that even this should be the conduct of one who having fallen into distress seeks the safety of his life.[44] It is better to have a learned person for an enemy than a fool for a friend. As regards myself, my life now rests entirely in the hands of my enemy the cat.[45] I shall now address the cat on the subject of his own liberation. Perhaps, at this moment, it would not be wrong to take the cat for an intelligent and learned foe!—Even thus did that mouse, surrounded by foes, pursue his reflections.[46] Having reflected in this strain, the mouse, conversant with the science of Profit and well acquainted with occasions when war should be declared and peace made, gently addressed the cat, saying,[47]—I address thee in friendship, O cat! Art thou alive? I wish thee to live! I desire the good of us both![48] O amiable one, thou hast no cause for fear. Thou shalt live in happiness! I shall rescue thee, if, indeed, thou dost not slay me![49] There is an excellent expedient in this case, which suggests itself to me, and by which you may obtain your escape and I may obtain great benefit.[50] By reflecting earnestly I have hit upon that expedient for thy sake and for my sake, for it will benefit both

of us.[51] There are the mungoose and the owl, both waiting with evil intent. Only so long, O cat, as they do not attack me, is my life safe![52] There that wretched owl with restless glances and horrid cries is eyeing me from the branch of that tree! I am exceedingly frightened by it.[53] Friendship, as regards the good, is seven-paced.* Possessed of wisdom as thou art, thou art my friend. I shall act towards thee as a friend. Thou needst have no fear now.[54] Without my help, O cat, thou wilt not succeed in tearing the net. I, however, shall cut the net for serving thee, if thou abstain from killing me![55] Thou hast lived on this tree and I have lived at its foot. Both of us have dwelt here for many long years. All this is known to thee.[56] He upon whom nobody places his trust, and he who never trusts another, are never applauded by the wise. Both of them are unhappy.[57] For this reason, let our love for each other increase, and let there be union amongst us both. Men of wisdom never applaud the endeavour to do an act when its opportunity has passed away.[58] Know that this is the proper time for such an understanding amongst us. I wish that thou shouldst live, and thou also wishest that I should live.[59] A man crosses a deep and large river by a piece of wood. It is seen that the man takes the piece of wood to the other side, and the piece of wood also takes the man to the other side.[60] Like this, our compact also will bring happiness to both of us. I will rescue thee, and thou also wilt rescue me![61]—Having said these words that were beneficial to both of them, that were fraught with reason and on that account highly acceptable, the mouse Palita waited in expectation of an answer.[62]

"'Hearing these well-chosen words, fraught with reason and highly acceptable,' that the mouse said, the mouse's foe possessed of judgment and forethought, *viz.*, the cat, said these words in reply.[63] Endued with great intelligence, and possessed of eloquence, the cat, reflecting upon his own state, praised

* The meaning is that as regards good men, they become friends in no time. By taking only seven steps in a walk together, two such men become friends.—T.

the words of the speaker and honored him by gentle words in return.[64] Possessed of sharp foreteet and hhaving eyes that resembled the stones called *lapis lazuli*, the cat, called Lomaça, gently eyeing the mouse, answered as follows :[65]—I am delighted with thee, O amiable one ! Blessed be thou that wishest me to live ! Do that, without hesitation, which thou thinkest to be of beneficial consequences ![66] I am certainly in great distress. Thou art, if possible, in greater distress still ! Let there be a compact between us without delay ![67] I will do that which is opportune and necessary for the accomplishment of our business, O puissant one ! If thou rescuest me, thy service will go for nothing.[68] I place myself in thy hands ! I am devoted to thee ! I shall wait upon and serve thee like a disciple ! I seek thy protection and shall always obey thy behests ![69]—Thus addressed, the mouse Palita, addressing in return the cat who was completely under his control, said these words of grave import and high wisdom :[70]—Thou hast spoken most magnanimously. It could scarcely be unexpected from one like thee ! Listen to me as I disclose the expedient I have hit upon for benefiting both of us.[71] I will crouch myself beneath thy body. I am exceedingly frightened at the mungoose ! Do thou save me ! Kill me not ! I am competent to rescue thee ![72] Protect me also from the owl, for that wretch too wishes to seize me for his prey. I shall cut the noose that entangles thee. I swear by Truth, O friend ![73]—Hearing these judicious words fraught with reason, Lomaça, filled with delight, cast his eyes upon Palita and applauded him with exclamations of welcome.[74] Having applauded Palita, the cat, disposed to friendliness, reflected for a moment, and gladly said without losing any time,[75]—Come quickly to me ! Blessed be thou, thou art, indeed, a friend dear to me as life ! O thou of great wisdom, through thy grace I have almost got back my life ![76] Whatever it is in my power to do for thee now, tell me and I shall do it. Let there be peace between us, O friend ![77] Liberated from this danger, I shall, with all my friends and relatives, do all that may be agreeable and beneficial to thee.[78] O amiable one, freed from this distress, I

shall certainly seek to gladden thee, and worship and honor thee on every occasion in return for thy services.[79] A person by doing even abundant services in return never becomes equal to the person that did him good in the first instance. The former does those services for the sake of services received. The latter, however, should be held to have acted without any such motive.[80]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'The mouse, having thus made the cat understand his own interests, trustfully crouched beneath his enemy's body.[81] Possessed of learning, and thus assured by the cat, the mouse trustfully laid himself thus under the breast of the cat as if it were the lap of his father or mother.[82] Beholding him thus ensconced within the body of the cat, the mungoose and the owl both became hopeless of seizing their prey.[83] Indeed, seeing that close intimacy between the mouse and the cat, both Harita and Chandraka became alarmed and filled with wonder.[84] Both of them had strength and intelligence. Clever in seizing their prey, though near, the mungoose and the owl felt themselves unable to wean the mouse and the cat from that compact.[85] Indeed, beholding the cat and the mouse make that covenant for accomplishing their mutual ends, the mungoose and owl both left that spot and went away to their respective abodes.[86] After this, the mouse Palita, conversant with the requirements of time and place, began, as he lay under the body of the cat, to cut the strings of the noose slowly, waiting for the proper time to finish his work.[87] Distressed by the strings that entangled him, the cat became impatient upon seeing the mouse slowly cutting away the noose.[88] Beholding the mouse employed so slowly in the work, the cat wishing to expedite him in the task, said:[89]—How is it, O amiable one, that thou dost not proceed with haste in thy work? Dost thou disregard me now, having thyself succeeded in thy object? O slayer of foes, do thou cut these strings quickly! The hunter will soon come here![90]—Thus addressed by the cat who had become impatient, the mouse possessed of intelligence said these beneficial words fraught with his own good unto the cat who did not seem to possess much

wisdom:[91]—Wait in silence, O amiable one! Expedition is not necessary! Drive all thy fears! We know the requirements of time. We are not wasting time![92] When an act is begun at an improper time, it never becomes profitable when accomplished. That act, on the other hand, which is began at the proper time, always produces splendid fruits.[93] If thou be freed at an improper time, I shall have to stand in great fear of thee! Therefore, do thou wait for the proper time. Do not be impatient, O friend![94] When I shall see the hunter approach towards this spot armed with weapons, I shall cut the strings at that moment of fear to both of us![95] Freed then, thou wilt ascend the tree. At that time thou wilt not think of anything else save the safety of thy life.[96] And when thou, O Lomaça, wilt fly away in fear, I shall enter my hole and thou wilt get upon the tree![97]—Thus addressed by the mouse in words that were beneficial to him, the cat, possessed of intelligence and eloquence, and impatient of saving his life, replied unto the mouse in the following words.[98] Indeed, the cat, who had quickly and properly done his own part of the covenant, addressing the mouse who was not expeditious in discharging his part, said,[99]—I rescued thee from a great danger with considerable promptness. Alas, honest persons never do the business of their friends in this way. Filled with delight while doing it, they do it otherwise![100] Thou shouldst do what is for my good with greater expedition. O thou of great wisdom, do thou exert a little so that good may be done to both of us![101] If, on the other hand, remembering our former hostility thou art only suffering the time to slip away, know, O wicked wight, that the consequence of this act of thine will surely be to lessen the duration of thy own life![*102] If I have ever, before this, unconsciously done thee any wrong, thou shouldst not bear it in remembrance. I beg thy forgiveness. Be gratified with me![103]—After the cat had said these words, the mouse, possessed of intelligence and

* Virtue prolongs life, and sin and wickedness always shorten it. This is laid down almost everywhere in the Hindu scriptures.—T.

wisdom and knowledge of the scriptures, said these excellent words unto him:[104]—I have, O cat, heard what thou hast said in furtherance of thy own object. Listen, however, to me as I tell thee what is consistent with my own objects![105] That friendship in which there is fear and which cannot be kept up without fear, should be maintained with great caution like the hand (of the snake-charmer) from the snake's fangs![106] The person that does not protect himself after having made a covenant with a stronger individual, finds that covenant to be productive of injury instead of benefit.[107] Nobody is nobody's friend; nobody is nobody's wellwisher; persons become friends or foes only from motives of interest.[108] Interest enlists interest even as tame elephants catch wild individuals of their species. After, again, an act has been accomplished, the doer is scarcely regarded. For this reason, all acts should be so done that something may remain to be done.[109] When I shall set thee free, thou wilt, afflicted by the fear of the hunter, fly away for thy life without ever thinking of seizing me.[110] Behold, all the strings of this net have been cut by me. Only one remains to be cut! I will cut that also with haste. Be comforted, O Lomaça![111] —While the mouse and the cat were thus talking with each other, both in serious danger, the night gradually wore away. A great fear, however, penetrated the heart of the cat.[112] When at last morning came, the *Chandàla*, whose name was Parigha, appeared on the scene. His visage was frightful. His hair was black and twany. His hips were very large and his aspect was very fierce. Of a large mouth that extended from ear to ear, and exceedingly filthy, his ears were very long. Armed with weapons and accompanied by a pack of dogs, the grim-looking man appeared on the scene.[113-14] Beholding that individual who resembled a messenger of Yama, the cat became filled with fear. Penetrated with fright, he addressed Palita and said,—What shalt thou do now?[115]—The mouse very quickly cut the remaining string that held fast the cat. Freed from the noose, the cat ran with speed and got upon the banian.[116] Palita also, freed from that situation of danger and from the presence of a terrible foe, quickly fled

and entered his hole. Lomaça meanwhile had climbed the high tree.[117] The hunter, seeing everything, took up his net. His hopes frustrated, he also quickly left that spot.[118] Indeed, O bull of Bharata's race, the *Chandāla* returned to his abode. Liberated from that great peril, and having obtained back his life which is so very valuable, the cat from the branches of that tree addressed the mouse Palita then staying within the hole, and said,[119]—Without having conversed with me, thou hast suddenly run away. I hope thou dost not suspect me of any evil intent? I am certainly grateful and thou hast done me a great service.[120] Having inspired me with trustfulness and having given me my life, why dost thou not approach me at a time when friends should enjoy the sweetness of friendship?[121] Having made friends, he that forgets them afterwards, is regarded a wicked person and never succeeds in obtaining friends at times of danger and need.[122] I have been, O friend, honored and served by thee to the best of thy power. It behoveth thee to enjoy the company of my poor self who has become thy friend.[123] Like disciples worshipping their preceptor, all the friends I have, all my relatives and kinsmen, will honor and worship thee![124] I myself too shall worship thee with all thy friends and kinsmen. What grateful person is there that will not worship the giver of his life?[125] Be thou the lord of both my body and home! Be thou the disposer of all my wealth and possessions![126] Be thou my honored counseller and do thou rule me like a father! I swear by my life that thou hast no fear from us.[127] In intelligence thou art Uçanas himself. By the power of thy understanding thou hast conquered us. Possessed of the strength of policy, thou hast given us our life![128]—Addressed in such soothing words by the cat, the mouse, conversant with all that is productive of the highest good, replied in these sweet words that were beneficial to himself:[129]—I have heard, O Lomaça, all that thou hast said. Listen now as I say what appears to me.[130] Friends should be well examined. Foes also should be well studied. In this world, a task like this is regarded by even the learned as a difficult one depending upon acute intelligence.[131] Friends assume the guise of foes, and foes assume

the guise of friends. When compacts of friendship are formed, it is difficult for the parties to understand whether the other parties are really moved by lust and wrath.[132] There is no such thing as a foe. There is no such thing in existence as a friend. It is force of circumstances that creates friends and foes.[133] He who regards his own interests ensured as long as another person lives and thinks them indangered when that other person will cease to live, takes that other person for a friend and considers him so as long as those interests of his are not clashed against.[134] There is no condition that deserves permanently the name either of friendship or hostility. Both friends and foes arise from considerations of interest and gain.[135] Friendship becomes changed into enemity in the course of time. A foe also becomes a friend. Self-interest is very powerful.[136] He who reposes blind trust on friends and always behaves with mistrust towards foes without paying any regard to considerations of policy, finds his life to be unsafe.[137] He who, disregarding all considerations of policy, sets his heart upon an affectionate union with either friends or foes, comes to be regarded as a person whose understanding has been unhinged.[138] One should not repose trust upon a person undeserving of trust, nor should one trust too much a person deserving of trust. The danger that arises from blind reposing of confidence is such that it cuts the very roots (of the person that reposes such confidence).[139] The father, the mother, the son, the maternal uncle, the sister's son, and other relatives and kinsmen, are all guided by considerations of interest and profit.[140] Father and mother may be seen to discard the dear son if fallen.* People take care of their own selves. Behold the efficacy of self-interest![141] O thou that art possessed of great wisdom, his escape is very difficult who immediately after he is freed from danger seeks the means of his enemy's happiness![142] Thou camest down from the tree-top to this very spot. Thou couldst not, from levity of understanding, ascertain that a net had been spread here.[143] A

* *I. e.*, if excasted for irreligious practices.—T.

person, possessed of levity of understanding, fails to protect his own self. How can he protect others? Such a person, without doubt, ruins all his acts.[144] Thou tellest me in sweet words that I am very dear to thee! Hear me, however, O friend, the reasons that exist on my side.[145] One becomes dear from an adequate cause. One becomes a foe from an adequate cause. This whole world of creatures is moved by the desire of gain (in some form or other). One never becomes dear to another (without cause).[146] The friendship between two uterine brothers, the love between husband and wife, depends upon interest. I do not know any kind of affection between any persons that does not rest upon some motive of self-interest.[147] If, as is sometimes seen, uterine brothers or husband and wife having quarreled reunite together from a natural affection, such a thing is not to be seen in persons unconnected with one another.[148] One becomes dear for one's liberality. Another becomes dear for his sweet words. A third becomes so in consequence of his religious acts. Generally, a person becomes dear for the purpose he serves.[149] The affection between us arose from a sufficient cause. That cause exists no longer. On the other hand, from adequate reason, that affection between us has come to an end.[150] What is that reason, I ask, for which I have become so dear to thee, besides thy desire of making me thy prey? Thou shouldst know that I am not forgetful of this.[151] Time spoils reasons. Thou seekest thy own interests. Others, however, possessed of wisdom, understand their own interests. The world rests upon the example of the wise. Thou shouldst not address such words to a person possessed of learning and competent to understand his own interests.[152] Thou art powerful. The reason of this affection that thou showest for me now is ill-timed. Guided, however, by my own interests, I myself am firm in peace and war that are themselves very unstable.[153] The circumstances under which peace is to be made or war declared are changed as quickly as the clouds change their form. This very day thou wert my foe. This very day, again, thou wert my friend. This very day thou hast once more become my enemy. Behold the levity of the

considerations that move living creatures![154] There was friendship between us as long as there was reason for its existence. That reason, dependant upon time, has passed away. Without it, that friendship also has passed away.[155] Thou art by nature my foe. From circumstances thou becomest my friend. That state of things has passed away. The old state of enemity that is natural has come back.[156] Thoroughly conversant as I am with the dictates of policy that have been thus laid down, tell me, why shall I enter today, for thy sake, the net that is spread for me?[157] Through thy power I was freed from a great danger. Through my power thou hast been freed from a similar danger. Each of us has served the other. There is no need of uniting ourselves again in friendly intercourse.[158] O amiable one, the object thou hadst has been accomplished. The object I had has also been accomplished. Thou hast now no need for me except to make me your food.[159] I am thy food. Thou art the eater. I am weak. Thou art strong. There cannot be a friendly union between us when we are situated so unequally.[160] I understand thy wisdom. Having been rescued from the net, thou applaudest me so that thou mayst succeed in easily making food of me.[161] Thou wert entangled in the net for the sake of food. Thou hast been freed from it. Thou feelest now the pangs of hunger. Having recourse to that wisdom which arises from a study of the scriptures, thou seekest verily to eat me up today.[162] I know that thou art hungry. I know that this is thy hour for taking food. Thou art seeking for thy prey, with thy eyes directed towards me.[163] Thou hast sons and wives. Thou seekest still friendly union with me and wishest to treat me with affection and do me services. O friend, I am incapable of acceding to this proposal.[164] Seeing me with thee, why will not thy dear spouse and thy loving children cheerfully eat me up?[165] I shall not, therefore, unite with thee in friendship. The reason no longer exists for such a union. If, indeed, thou dost not forget my good offices, think of what will be beneficial to me and be comfortable.[166] What person is there possessed of any wisdom that will place himself under the power of a foe that is not

distinguished for righteousness, that is in pangs of hunger, and that is on the look out for a prey?-[167] Be happy then, I will presently leave thee. I am filled with alarm even if I behold thee from a distance. I shall not mingle with thee, cease in thy attempts, O Lomaça![168] If thou thinkest that I have done thee a service, follow then the dictates of friendship when I may happen to rove trustfully or heedlessly. Even that will be gratitude in thee![169] A residence near a person possessed of strength and power is never applauded. Even if the danger that existed be regarded to have passed away, I should always stand in fear of one more powerful than myself.[170] If thou dost not seek thy own interests (of the kind indicated), tell me then what is there that I should do for thee. I shall certainly give thee everything except my life.[171] For protecting one's own self one should give up one's very children, and kingdom, and jewels, and wealth. One should sacrifice one's all for protecting one's own self.[172] If a person lives he can recover all the affluence that he may have to give unto foes for protecting his life.[173] It is not desirable to give up life like one's wealth. Indeed, one's own self should always be protected by, as I have already said, giving up one's wives and wealth.[174] Persons who are mindful of protecting their own selves and who do all their acts after a proper consideration and survey, never incur danger as the consequence of their acts.[175] They that are weak always know him for a foe who is possessed of greater strength. Their understanding, firm in the truths of the scriptures, never loses its steadiness![176]—'

"'Thus rebuked soundly by the mouse Palita, the cat, blushing with shame, addressed the mouse and said the following words.[177]

"'Lomaça said,—Truly I swear by thee that to injure a friend is in my estimation very censurable. I know thy wisdom. I know also that thou art devoted to my good.[178] Guided by the science of profit, thou hast said that there is cause for a breach between thee and me. It doth not behove thee, however, O good friend, to take me for what I am not![179] I cherish a great friendship for thee in consequence

of thy having granted me my life. I am, again, acquainted with duties. I am an appreciater of other people's merits. I am very grateful for services received.[180] I am devoted to the service of friends. I am, again, especially devoted to thee. For these reasons, O good friend, it behoveth thee to reunite thyself with me.[181] If I am commanded by thee, I can, with all my kinsmen and relatives, lay down my very life. They that are possessed of learning and wisdom see ample reason for placing their trust in persons of such mental disposition as ourselves. O thou that art acquainted with the truths of morality, it behoveth thee not to cherish any suspicion in respect of me![182]—Thus addressed by the cat, the mouse, reflecting a little, said these words of grave import unto the former.[183]—Thou art exceedingly good! I have heard all that thou hast said and am glad to hear thee! For all that, however, I cannot trust thee! It is impossible for thee, by such eulogiums or by gifts of great wealth, to induce me to unite with thee again.[184] I tell thee, O friend, that they who are possessed of wisdom never place themselves, when sufficient reason there is not, under the power of a foe.[185] A weak person having made a compact with a stronger one when both are threatened by foes, should (when that common danger passes away) conduct himself heedfully and by considerations of policy. Having gained his object, the weaker of the two parties should not again repose confidence on the stronger.[186] One should never trust a person who does not deserve to be trusted. Nor should one repose blind confidence upon a person deserving of trust. One should always endeavour to inspire others with confidence in himself. One should not, however, himself repose confidence in foes.[187] For these reasons one should, under all circumstances, protect his own self. One's possessions and children and everything are so long valuable as one is alive.[188] In brief, the highest truth of all treatises on policy is Mistrust. For this reason, mistrust of all persons is productive of the greatest good.[189] However weak people may be, if they mistrust their foes, the latter, even if strong, never succeed in getting them under power.[190] O cat, one like myself should always guard

one's life from persons like thee. Do thou also protect thy own life from the *Chandāla* whose rage has been excited![*191] —While the mouse thus spake, the cat, frightened at the mention of the hunter, hastily leaving the branch of the tree, ran away with great speed.[192] Having thus displayed his power of understanding, the mouse Palita also, conversant with the truths of scripture and possessed of wisdom, entered another hole.'[193]

"Bhishma continued,—'Even thus the mouse Palita possessed of wisdom, though weak and alone, succeeded in baffling many powerful foes.[194] One possessed of intelligence and learning should make peace with a powerful foe. The mouse and the cat owed their escape to their reliance upon each other's services.[195] I have thus pointed out to thee the course of Kshatriya duties at great length. Listen now to me in brief.[196] When two persons who were once engaged in hostilities make peace with each other, it is certain that each of them has it in his heart to over-reach the other.[197] In such a case he that is possessed of wisdom succeeds by the power of his understanding in over-reaching the other. He, on the other hand, who is destitute of wisdom suffers himself, in consequence of his heedlessness, to be over-reached by the wise.[198] It is necessary, therefore, that in fear one should seem to be fearless, and while really mistrusting others one should seem to be trustful. One who acts with such heedfulness never trips, or tripping, is never ruined.[199] When the time comes for it, one should make peace with an enemy; and when the time comes, one should wage war with even a friend. Even thus should one conduct himself, O king, as they have said that are conversant with the considerations of peace (and war).[200] Knowing this, O monarch, and bearing the truths of scripture in mind, one should, with all his senses about him and without heedlessness, act like a person in fear before the cause of fear actually presents itself.[201] One should, before the cause of fear has actually come, act like a person in fear, and make peace with foes. Such

---

[*] The correct reading is *Jātakilwishāt*.—T.

fear and heedfulness lead to keenness of understanding.[203] If one acts like a man in fear before the cause of fear is at hand, one is never filled with fear when that cause is actually present. From the fear, however, of a person who always acts with fearlessness, very great fear is seen to arise.*[203]—*Never cherish fear,*—such counsel should never be given to any one. The person that cherishes fear moved by a consciousness of his weakness, always seeks the counsel of wise and experienced men.[204] For these reasons, one should, when in fear, seem to be fearless, and when mistrusting (others) should seem to be trustful. One should not, in view of even the gravest acts, behave towards others with falsehood.[205] Thus have I recited to thee, O Yudhishthira, the old story (of the mouse and the cat). Having listened to it, do thou act duly in the midst of thy friends and kinsmen.[206] Deriving from that story a high understanding, and learning the difference between friend and foe and the proper time for war and peace, thou wilt discover means of escape when overwhelmed with danger.[207] Making peace, at a time of common danger, with one that is powerful, thou shouldst act with proper consideration in the matter of uniting thyself with the foe (when the common danger has passed away). Indeed, having gained thy object, thou shouldst not trust the foe again.[208] This path of policy is consistent with the aggregate of three (*viz.*, Virtue, Profit, and Pleasure), O king! Guided by this *Çruti*, do thou win prosperity by once more protecting thy subjects![209] O son of Pāndu, always seek the companionship of Brāhmanas in all thy acts! Brāhmanas constitute the great source of benefit both in this world and the next.[210] They are teachers of duty and morality. They are always grateful, O puissant one! If worshipped, they are sure to do thee good. Therefore, O

* The sense, of course, is that such a man, when filled with fear, becomes unable to ward off his dangers and calamities. Prudence requires that one should fear as long as the cause of fear is not at hand. When, however, that cause has actually presented itself, one should put forth one's courage.—T.

king, thou shouldst always worship them.[211] Thou wilt then, O king, duly obtain kingdom, great good, fame, achievements, and progeny in their proper order.[212] With eyes directed to this history of peace and war between the mouse and the cat, this history couched in excellent words and capable of sharpening the intelligence, a king should always conduct himself in the midst of his foes.' "[213]

SECTION CXXXIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast laid it down, O mighty one, that no trust should be placed upon foes. But how would the king maintain himself if he were not to trust anybody?[1] From trust, O king, thou hast said, great danger arises to kings. But how, O monarch, can a king, without trusting others, conquer his foes?[2] Kindly remove this doubt of mine. My mind has become confused, O grandsire, at what I have heard thee say on the subject of mistrust!'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O king, to what happened at the abode of Brahmadatta, viz., the conversation between Pujani and king Brahmadatta.[4] There was a bird named Pujani who lived for a long time with king Brahmadatta in the inner apartments of his palace at Kāmpilya.[5] Like the bird *Jiva-jivaka*, Pujani could mimic the cries of all animals. Though a bird by birth, she had great knowledge and was conversant with every truth.[6] While living there, she brought forth an offspring of great splendour. At the very same time the king also got by his queen a son.[7] Pujani, who was grateful for the shelter of the king's roof, used every day to go to the shores of the ocean and bring a couple of fruits for the nourishment of her own young one and the infant prince.[8] One of those fruits she gave to her own child and the other she gave to the prince.[9] The fruits she brought were sweet as nectar, and capable of increasing strength and energy. Every day she brought them and every day she disposed of them in the same way. The infant prince derived great strength from the fruit of Pujani's giving that he ate.[10] One day the infant prince, while borne on the arms of his nurse,

saw the little offspring of Pujani. Getting down from the nurse's arms, the child ran towards the bird, and moved by childish impulse, began to play with it, relishing the sport highly.[11] At length, raising the bird which was of the same age with himself in his hands, the prince pressed out its young life and then came back to his nurse.[12] The dam, O king, who had been out in her search after the accustomed fruits, returning to the palace, beheld her young one lying on the ground, killed by the prince.[13] Beholding her son deprived of life, Pujani, with tears gushing down her cheeks, and heart burning with grief, wept bitterly and said,[14]—Alas, nobody should live with a Kshatriya or make friends with him or take delight in any intercourse with him! When they have any object to serve, they behave with courtesy. When that object has been served, they cast off the instrument.[15] The Kshatriyas do evil unto all. They should never be trusted. Even after doing an injury they always seek to soothe and assure the injured for nothing.[16] I shall certainly take due vengeance, for this act of hostility, upon this cruel and ungrateful betrayer of confidence.[17] He has been guilty of a triple sin in taking the life of one that was born on the same day with him and that was being reared with him in the same place, that used to eat with him, and that was dependent on him for protection![18]—Having said these words unto herself, Pujani, with her talons, pierced the eyes of the prince, and deriving some comfort from that act of vengeance, once more said,[19]—A sinful act, perpetrated deliberately, assails the doer without any loss of time. They, on the other hand, who avenge an injury, never lose their merit by such conduct.[20] If the consequence of a sinful act be not seen in the perpetrator himself, they would certainly be seen, O king, in his sons or son's sons or daughter's sons![21] —Brahmadatta, beholding his son blinded by Pujani, and regarding the act to have been a proper vengeance for what his son had done, said these words unto Pujani.[22]

"'Brahmadatta said,—An injury was done by us to thee. Thou hast avenged it by doing an injury in return. The account has been squared. Do not leave thy present abode. On the other hand, continue to dwell here, O Pujani![23]—

"'Pujani said,—If a person having once injured another continues to reside with that other, they that are possessed of learning never applaud his conduct. Under such circumstances it is always better for the injurer to leave his old place.[24] One should never place one's trust upon the soothing assurances received from an injured party. The fool that trusts such assurances soon meets with destruction. Animosity is not quickly cooled.[25] The very sons and grandsons of persons that have injured each other meet with destruction (in consequence of the quarrel descending like an inheritance). In consequence again of such destruction of their offspring, they lose the next world also.[26] Amongst men that have injured one another, mistrust would be productive of happiness. One that has betrayed confidence should never be trusted in the least.[27] One who is not deserving of trust should not be trusted; nor should too much trust be placed upon a person deserving of trust. The danger that arises from blind confidence brings about a destruction that is complete. One should seek to inspire others with confidence in one's self. One, however, should never repose confidence on others.[28] The father and the mother are only the foremost of friends. The wife is merely a vessal for drawing the seeds. The son is only one's seed. The brother is a foe. The friend or companion requires to have his palms oiled if he is to remain so. One's own self it is that enjoys or suffers one's happiness or misery.[29] Amongst persons that have injured one another, it is not advsiable that there should be (real) peace. The reason no longer exists for which I lived here.[30] The mind of a person who has once injured another, becomes naturally filled with mistrust, if he sees the injured person worshipping him with gifts and honors. Such conduct, especially when displayed by those that are strong, always fills the weak with alarm.[31] A person possessed of intelligence should leave that place where he first meets with honor in order to meet only with dishonor and injury next. In spite of any subsequent honor that he might obtain from his enemy, he should behave in this way.[32] I have dwelt in thy abode for a long time, all along honored by thee! A cause of enmity, however, has at last arisen. I should, therefore, leave this place without any hesitation.—[33]

"'Brahmadatta said,—One who does an injury in return for an injury received is never regarded as offending. Indeed, the avenger squares his account by such conduct. Therefore, O Pujani, continue to reside here without leaving this place!—[34]

"'Pujani said,—No friendship can once more be cemented between a person that has injured and him that has inflicted an injury in return. The hearts of both cannot forget what has happened.—[35]

"'Brahmadatta said,—It is necessary that a union should take place between an injurer and the avenger of that injury. Mutual animosity, upon such a union, has been seen to cool. No fresh injury also has followed in such cases.—[36]

"'Pujani said,—Animosity (springing from mutual injuries) can never die. The person injured should never trust his foes, thinking—O, I have been soothed with assurances of good will!—In this world, men frequently meet with destruction in consequence of (misplaced) confidence. For this reason it is necessary that we should no longer meet each other.[37] They who cannot be reduced to subjection by the application of even force and sharp weapons, can be conquered by (insincere) conciliation like (wild) elephants through a (tame) she-elephant.—[38]

"'Brahmadatta said,—'From the fact of two persons residing together, even if one inflicts upon the other deadly injury, an affection arises naturally between them, as also mutual trust, as in the case of the Chāndāla and the dog.[39] Amongst persons that have injured one another, co-residence blunts the keenness of animosity. Indeed, that animosity does not last long, but disappears quickly like water poured upon the leaf of a lotus.—[40]

"'Pujani said,—Hostility springs from five causes. Persons possessed of learning know it. Those five causes are woman, land, harsh words, natural incompatability, and injury.*[41]

---

* The hostility between Krishna and Ciçupāla was due to the first of these causes; that between the Kurus and the Pāndavas to the second; that betwern Drona and Drupada to the third; that between the cat and the mouse to the fourth; and that between the bird and the king (in the present story) to the fifth.—T.

When the person with whom hostility occurs happens to be a man of liberality, he should never be slain, particularly by a Kshatriya, openly or by covert means. In such a case, the man's fault should be properly weighed.*[42] When hostility has arisen with even a friend, no further confidence should be reposed upon him. Feelings of animosity lie hid like fire in wood.[43] Like the *Aurvya* fire within the waters of the ocean, the fire of animosity can never be extinguished by gifts of wealth, by display of prowess, by conciliation, or by scriptural learning.[44] The fire of animosity, once ignited,—the result of an injury once inflicted,—is never extinguished, O king, without consuming out the right one of the parties.[45] One, having injured a person, should never trust him again as one's friend, even though one might have (after the infliction of the injury) worshipped him with wealth and honors. The fact of the injury inflicted fills the injurer with fear.[46] I never injured thee. Thou also didst never do me an injury For this reason I dwelt in thy abode. All that is changed, and at present I cannot trust thee !—[47]

"'Brahmadatta said,—It is Time that does every act. Acts are of diverse kinds, and all of them proceed from Time. Who therefore, injures whom.?†[48] Birth and Death happen in the same way. Creatures act (*i. e.*, take birth and live) in consequence of Time, and it is in consequence also of Time that they cease to live.[49] Some are seen to die at once. Some die one at a time. Some are seen to live for long periods. Like fire consuming the fuel it gets, Time consumes all creatures.[50] O blessed lady, I am, therefore, not the cause of your sorrow, nor art thou the cause of mine. It is Time that always ordains the weal and woe of embodied creatures.[51] Do thou then continue to dwell here according to thy pleasure, with affection for me and without fear of

---

* The sense seems to be that the act which has led to the hostility should be calmly considered by the enemy before he gives way to wrath.—T.

† If it is Time that does all acts, there can be no individual responsibility.—T.

any injury from me. What thou hast done has been forgiven by me. Do thou also forgive me, O Pujani!—[62]

"'Pujani said,—If Time, according to thee, be the cause of all acts, then of course nobody can cherish feelings of animosity towards anybody on Earth. I ask, however, why do friends and kinsmen, when friends and kinsmen are slain, seek to avenge the latter?[53] Why also did the gods and the *Asuras* in days of yore smite each other in battle? If it is Time that causes weal and woe and birth and death,[54] why do physicians then seek to administer medicines to the sick? If it is Time that is moulding everything, what need is there of medicines?[55] Why do people, deprived of their senses by grief, indulge in such delirious rhapsodies? If Time, according to thee, be the cause of acts, how can religious merit be acquired by persons performing religious acts?[56] Thy son killed my child. I have injured him for that. I have by that act, O king, become liable to be slain by thee.[57] Moved by grief for my son, I have done this injury to thy son. Listen now to the reason why I have become liable to be killed by thee.[58] Men wish for birds either to kill them for food or to keep them in cages for sport. There is no third reason besides such slaughter or immurement for which men would seek individuals of our species.[59] Birds, again, from fear of being either killed or immured by men, seek safety in flight. Persons conversant with the Vedas have said that death and immurement are both painful.[60] Life is dear unto all. All creatures are made miserable by grief and pain. All creatures wish for happiness.[61] Misery arises from various sources. Decrepitude, O Brahmadatta, is misery. The loss of wealth is misery. The adjacence of anything disagreeable or evil is misery. Separation or dissociation from friends and agreeable objects is misery.[62] Misery arises from death and immurement. Misery arises from causes connected with women and from other natural causes. The misery that arises from the death of children alters and afflicts all creatures very greatly.[63] Some foolish persons say that there is no misery in other's misery.*

* *I. e.*, they are indifferent to other people's sorrow.—T.

Only he who has not felt any misery himself can say so in the midst of men.[64] He, however, that has felt sorrow and misery, would never venture to say so. One that has felt the pangs of every kind of misery feels the misery of others as one's own.[65] What I have done to thee, O king, and what thou hast done to me, cannot be washed away by even a hundred years.[66] After what we have done to each other, there cannot be a reconciliation. As often as thou wilt happen to think of thy son, thy animosity towards me will become fresh.[67] If a person after avenging an injury, desires to make peace with the injured, the parties cannot be properly reunited even like the fragments of an earthen vessel.[68] Men conversant with scriptures have laid it down that trust never produces happiness. Uçanas himself sang two verses unto Prahlāda in days of old.[69] He who trusts the words, true or false, of a foe, meets with destruction like a seeker of honey, in a pit covered with dry grass.[70]* Animosities are seen to survive the very death of enemies, for persons are not wanting to speak of the quarrels of deceased sires before their surviving children.[71] Kings extinguish animosities by having recourse to conciliation but, when the opportunity comes, break their foes into pieces like earthen jars full of water dashed upon stone.[72] If the king does injury to any one, he should never trust him again. By trusting a person who has been injured, one has to suffer great misery.—[73]

"'Brahmadatta said,—No man can obtain the fruition of any object by withholding his trust (from others). By cherishing fear one always is obliged to live as a dead person.—[74]

"'Pujani said,—He whose feet have become sore, certainly meets with a fall if he seeks to move, move he may howsoever cautiously.[75] A man who has got sore eyes, by opening them against the wind, finds them exceedingly pained by the wind.[76] He who, without knowing his own strength, sets foot on a wicked path and persists in walking along it, soon

* Honey-seekers direct their steps through hill and dale by marking intently the course of the flight of bees. Hence they meet with frequent falls.—T.

loses his very life as the consequence.[77] The man who, destitute of exertion, tills his land, disregarding the season of rain, never succeeds in obtaining a harvest.[78] He who takes every day food that is nutritive, be it bitter or astringent or palatable or sweet, enjoys a long life.[79] He, on the other hand, who disregards wholesome food and takes that which is injurious without an eye to consequences, soon meets with death.[80] Destiny and Exertion exist, depending upon each other. They that are of high souls achieve good and great feats, while eunuchs only pay court to Destiny.[81] Be it harsh or be it mild, an act that is beneficial should be done. The unfortunate man of inaction, however, is always overwhelmed by all sorts of calamity.[82] Therefore, abandoning everything else, one should put forth his energy. Indeed, disregarding everything, men should do what is productive of good to themselves.[83] Knowledge, courage, cleverness, strength, and patience, are said to be one's natural friends. They that are possessed of wisdom pass their lives in this world with the aid of those five.[84] Houses, precious metals, land, wife, and friends,—these are said by the learned to be secondary sources of good. A man may obtain them everywhere.[85] A person possessed of wisdom may be delighted everywhere. Such a man shines everywhere. He never inspires anybody with fear. If sought to be frightened, he never yields to fear himself.[86] The wealth, however little, that is possessed at any time by an intelligent man is certain to increase. Such a man does every act with cleverness. In consequence of self-restraint, he succeeds in winning great fame.[87] Home-keeping men of little understandings have to put up with termagant wives that eat up their flesh like the progeny of a crab eating up their dam.[88] There are men who through loss of understanding become very cheerless at the prospect of leaving home. They say unto themselves, —These are our friends! This is our country! Alas, how shall we leave these?[89]—One should certainly leave the country of one's birth if it be afflicted by plague or famine. One should live in one's own country, respected by all, or repair to a foreign country for living there.[90] I shall, for

this reason, repair to some other region. I do not venture to live any longer in this place, for I have done a great wrong to thy child, O king![91] One should from a distance abandon a bad wife, a bad son, a bad king, a bad friend, a bad alliance, and a bad country.[92] One should not place any trust on a bad son. What joy can one have in a bad wife? There can not be any happiness in a bad kingdom. In a bad country one cannot hope to obtain a livelihood.[93] There can be no lasting companionship with a bad friend whose attachment is very uncertain. In a bad alliance, when there is no necessity for it, there is disgrace.[94] She, indeed, is a wife who speaks only what is agreeable. He is a son who makes the sire happy. He is a friend in whom one can trust. That, indeed, is one's country where one earns one's living.[95] He is a king of strict rule who does not oppress, who cherishes the poor and in whose territories there is no fear.[96] Wife, country, friends, son, kinsmen, and relatives, all these one can have if the king happens to be possessed of accomplishments and virtuous eyes.[97] If the king happens to be sinful, his subjects, in consequence of his oppressions, meet with destruction. The king is the root of one's triple aggregate (i. e., Virtue, Wealth, and Pleasure). He should protect his subjects with heedfulness.[98] Taking from his subjects a sixth share of their wealth, he should protect them all. That king who does not protect his subjects is truly a thief.[99] That king who, after giving assurances of protection, does not, from rapacity, fulfil them,—that ruler of sinful soul,—takes upon himself the sins of all his subjects and ultimately sinks into hell.[100] That king, on the other hand, who, having given assurances of protection, fulfils them, comes to be regarded as a universal benefactor in consequence of his protecting all his subjects.[101] The lord of all creatures, *viz.*, Manu, has said that the king has seven attributes: he is mother, father, preceptor, protector, fire, Vaiçravana, and Yama.[102] The king by behaving with compassion towards his people is called their father. The subject that behaves falsely towards him takes birth in his next life as an animal or a bird.[103] By doing good to them and by cherishing the poor, the king

becomes a mother unto his people. By scorching the wicked he comes to be regarded as fire, and by restraining the sinful he comes to be called Yama.[104] By making gifts of wealth unto those that are dear to him, the king comes to be regarded as Kuvera, the grantor of wishes. By giving instruction in morality and virtue, he becomes a preceptor, and by exercising the duty of protection he becomes the protector.[105] That king who delights the people of his cities and provinces by means of his accomplishments, is never divested of his kingdom in consequence of such observance of duty.[106] That king who knows how to honor his subjects never suffers misery either here or hereafter.[107] That king whose subjects are always filled with anxiety or overburdened with taxes, and overwhelmed by evils of every kind, meets with defeat at the hands of his enemies.[108] That king, on the other hand, whose subjects grow like a large lotus in a lake, succeeds in obtaining every reward here and at last meets with honor in heaven.[109] Hostility with a person that is powerful is, O king, never applauded. That king who has incurred the hostility of one more powerful than himself, loses both kingdom and happiness.—'[110]

"Bhishma continued,—'The bird, having said these words, O monarch, unto king Brahmadatta, took the king's leave and proceeded to the region she chose.[111] I have thus recited to thee, O foremost of kings, the discourse between Brahmadatta and Pujani. What else dost thou wish to hear?" '[112]

SECTION CXL.

"Yudhishthira said,—'When both righteousness and men, O Bhārata, decay in consequence of the gradual lapse of *Yuga*, and when the world becomes afflicted by robbers, how, O Grandsire, should a king then behave?'*[1]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall tell thee, O Bhārata, the policy the king should pursue amid such distress. I shall tell thee

---

* Everything decays in course of time. *Vide* the characteristics of the different *Yugas*, *ante*.—T.

how he should bear himself at such a time, casting off compassion.[2] In this connection is cited the old story of the discourse between Bhāradwāja and king Catrunjaya.[3] There was a king name Catrunjaya among the Sauviras. He was a great car-warrior. Repairing to Bhāradwāja, he asked the *Rishi* about the truths of the science of Profit, saying,[4]—How can an unacquired object be acquired? How, again, when acquired, can it be increased? How also, when increased, can it be protected? And how, when protected, should it be used?[5]—Thus questioned about the truths of the science of Profit, the regenerate *Rishi* said the following words fraught with excellent reason unto that ruler for explaining those truths.[6]

" 'The Rishi said,—The king should always stay with the rod of chastisement uplifted in his hand. He should always display his prowess. Himself without *laches*, he should mark the laches of his foes. Indeed, his eye should ever be used for that purpose.[7] At the sight of a king who has the rod of chastisement ever uplifted in his hand, every one is struck with fear. For this reason, the king should rule all creatures with the rod of chastisement.[8] Men possessed of learning and knowledge of truth applaud Chastisement. Hence, of the four requisites of rule, *viz.*, Conciliation, Gift, Disunion, and Chastisement, Chastisement is said to be the foremost.[9] When the foundations of that which serves for a refuge are cut away, all the refugees perish. When the roots of a tree are cut away, how would the branches live?[10] A king possessed of wisdom should cut away the very roots of his foe. He should then win over and bring under his sway the allies and partisans of that foe.[11] When calamities overtake the king, he should, without losing time, counsel wisely, display his prowess properly, fight with ability, and even retreat with wisdom.[12] In speech only should the king exhibit his humility, but at heart he should be sharp as a razor. He should cast off lust and wrath, and speak sweetly and mildly.[13] When the occasion comes for intercourse with an enemy, a king possessed of foresight should make peace, without reposing blind trust on him. When the business is over, he

should quickly turn away from the new ally.[14] One should conciliate a foe with sweet assurances as if he were a friend. One, however, should always stand in fear of that foe as of a room within which there is a snake.[15] He whose understanding is to be dominated by thee (with the aid of thine) should be assured by references to the past. He who is of wicked understanding should be assured by promises of future good.[16] The person, however, that is possessed of wisdom, should be assured by present services. The person who is desirous of achieving prosperity should join hands, swear, use sweet words, worship by bending down his head, and shed tears.*[17] One should bear one's foe on one's shoulders as long as time is unfavorable. When, however, the opportunity has come, one should break him into fragments like an earthen jar on a stone.[18] It is better, O monarch, that a king should blaze up for a moment like charcoal of ebony-wood than that he should smoulder and smoke like chaff for many years.[19] A man who has many purposes to serve should not scruple to deal with even an ungrateful person. If successful, one can enjoy happiness. If unsuccessful, one loses esteem.[20] Therefore, in accomplishing the acts of such persons, one should, without accomplishing them completely, always keep something unfinished. A king should do what is for his good, imitating a *kokila*, a boar, the mountains of Meru, an empty chamber, an actor, and a devoted friend.†[21] The king should frequently, with heedful application, repair to the houses of his foes, and even if calamities befall them, ask them about their good.[22] They that are idle never win affluence; nor they that are destitute of manliness and exertion; nor they that are

---

* *I. e.*, do any of these or all as occasion may require.—T.

† The king should imitate the *kokila* by causing his own friends or subjects to be maintained by others; he should imitate the boar by tearing up his foes by their very roots; he should imitate the mountains of Meru by presenting such a front that nobody may transgress him; he should imitate an empty chamber by keeping room enough for storing acquisitions; he should imitate the actor by assuming different guises; and lastly, he should imitate a devoted friend in attending to the interests of his loving subjects.—T.

stained by vanity; nor they that fear unpopularity; nor they that are always procrastinating.[23] The king should act in such a way that his foe may not succeed in detecting his laches. He should, however, himself mark the laches of his foe. He should imitate the tortoise which conceals its limbs. Indeed, he should always conceal his own holes.[24] He should think of all matters connected with finance like a crane.* He should put forth his prowess like a lion. He should lie in wait like a wolf and fall upon and pierce his foes like a shaft.[25] Drink, dice, women, hunting, and music,—these he should enjoy judiciously. Addiction to these is productive of evil.[26] He should make his bow of bamboos; he should sleep like the deer; he should be blind when it is necessary that he should be so, or he should even be deaf when it is necessary to be deaf.[27] The king possessed of wisdom should put forth his prowess, regardful of time and place. If these are not favorable, prowess becomes futile.[28] Marking timeliness and untimeliness, reflecting upon his own strength and weakness, and improving his own strength by comparing it with that of the enemy, the king should address himself to action.[29] That king who does not crush a foe reduced to subjection by military force, provides for his own death like the crab when she conceives.[30] The king should put forth blossoms but not fruits. Putting forth fruits he should be difficult of climbing; and though unripe he should seem to be ripe. If he conducts himself in such a way then would he succeed in upholding himself against all foes.[31] The king should first strengthen the hopes (of those that approach him as suitors). He should then put obstacles in the way of the fulfilment of those hopes. He should say that those obstacles are merely due to occasion. He should next represent that those occasions are really the results of grave causes.[32] As long as the cause of fear does not actually come, the king should make all his arrangements like a person inspired with fear. When, however, the cause of fear comes upon

* The crane sits patiently by the water side for hours together in expectation of fish.—T.

him, he should smite fearlessly.[33] No man can reap good without incurring danger. If, again, he succeeds in preserving his life amid danger, he is sure to earn great benefits.*[34] A king should ascertain all future dangers; when they are present, he should conquer them; and lest they grow again, he should, even after conquering them, think them to be unconquered.[35] The abandonment of present happiness and the pursuit of that which is future, is never the policy of a person possessed of intelligence.[36] That king who having made peace with a foe sleeps happily in trustfulness is like a man who sleeping on the top of a tree awakes after a fall.[37] When one falls into distress, one should raise one's self by any means in one's power, mild or stern; and after such rise, when competent, one should practise righteousness.[38] The king should always honor the foes of his foes. He should take his own spies as agents employed by his foes.[39] The king should see that his own spies are not recognised by his foe. He should make spies of athiests and ascetics and send them to the territories of his enemies,[40] Sinful thieves, who offend against the laws of righteousness and who are thorns in the side of every person, enter gardens and places of amusement and houses set up for giving drinking water to thirsty travellers and public *serais* and drinking spots and houses of ill fame and *tirthas* and public assemblies. These should be recognised and arrested and put down.[41-42] The king should not trust the person that does not deserve to be trusted; nor should he trust too much the person that is deserving of trust. Danger springs from trust. Trust should never be placed without previous examination.[43] Having by plausible reasons inspired confidence in the enemy, the king should smite him when he makes a false step.[44] The king should fear him from whom there is no fear; he should also always fear them that should be feared. Fear that arises from an unfeared one may lead to total extermination.[45] By attention (to the acquisition of religious merit), by taciturnity, by the reddish garb of ascetics, and wearing matted locks and skins, one

---

* *I. e.*, if he passes safely through the danger.—T.

should inspire confidence in one's foe, and then (when the opportunity comes) one should jump upon him like the wolf.[46] A king desirous of prosperity should not scruple to slay son or brother or father or friend, if any of these seek to thwart his objects.[47] The very preceptor, if he happens to be arrogant, ignorant of what should be done and what should not, and a treader of unrighteous paths, deserves to be restrained by chastisement.[48] Even as certain insects of sharp stings cut off all the flowers and fruits of the trees on which they sit, the king should, after having inspired confidence in his foe by honors and salutations and gifts, turn against him and shear him of everything.[49] Without piercing the very vitals of others, without accomplishing many stern deeds, without slaughtering living creatures after the manner of the fisherman, one cannot acquire great prosperity.[50] There is no separate species of creatures called foes or friends. Persons become friends or foes according to the force of circumstances.[51] The king should never allow his foe to escape even if the foe should indulge piteous lamentations. He should never be moved by these; on the other hand, it is his duty to destroy the person that has done him an injury.[52] A king desirous of prosperity should take care to attach to himself as many men as he can, and to do them good. In behaving towards his subjects he should always be free from malice. He should also, with great care, punish and check the wicked and disaffected.[53] When he intends to take wealth, he should say what is agreeable. Having taken wealth, he should say similar things. Having struck off one's head with his sword, he should grieve and shed tears.[54] A king desirous of prosperity should draw others unto himself by means of sweet words, honors, and gifts. Even thus should he bind men unto his service.[55] The king should never engage in fruitless disputes. He should never cross a river with the aid only of his two arms. To eat cow-horns is fruitless and never invigorating. By eating them one's teeth are broken while the taste is not gratified.[56] The triple aggregate has three disadvantages with three inseparable adjuncts. Carefully considering those adjuncts, the disadvantages should be

advoided.*[57] The unpaid balance of a debt, the unquenched remnant of a fire, and the unslain remnant of foes, repeatedly grow and increase. Therefore, all those should be completely extinguished and exterminated.[58] Debt, which always grows, is certain to remain unless wholly extinguished. The same is the case with defeated foes and neglected maladies. These always produce great fear. (One should, therefore, always eradicate them).[59] Every act should be done thoroughly. One should be always heedful. Such a minute thing as a thorn, if extracted badly, leads to obstinate gangrene.[60] By slaughtering its population, by tearing up its roads and otherwise injuring them, and by burning and pulling down its houses, a king should destroy a hostile kingdom.[61] A king should be far-sighted like the vulture, motionless like a crane, vigilant like a dog, valiant like a lion, fearful like a crow, and penetrate the territories of his foes like a snake with ease and without anxiety.[62] A king should win over a hero by joining his palms, a coward by inspiring him with fear, and a covetous man by gifts of wealth while with an equal he should wage war.[63] He should be mindful of producing disunion among the leaders of sects and of conciliating those that are dear to him. He should protect his ministers from disunion and destructions.[64] If the king becomes mild, the people disregard him. If he becomes stern, the people feel it as an affliction. The rule is that he should be stern when the occasion requires sternness, and mild when the occasion requires mildness.[65] By mildness should the mild be cut. By mildness one may destroy that which is fierce. There is

---

* The triple aggregate consists of Virtue, Wealth, and Pleasure. The disadvantages all arise from an injudicious pursuit of each. Virtue stands as an impediment in the way of Wealth ; Wealth stands in the way of Virtue ; and Pleasure stands in the way of both. The inseparable adjuncts of the three, in the case of the vulgar, are that Virtue is practised as a means of Wealth ; Wealth is sought as a means of Pleasure ; and Pleasure is sought for gratifying the senses. In the case of the truly wise, those adjuncts are purity of the soul as the end of Virtue ; performance of sacrifices as the end of Wealth ; and upholding of the body as the end of Pleasure.—T.

nothing that mildness cannot effect. For this reason, mildness is said to be sharper than fierceness.[66] That king who becomes mild when the occasion requires mildness and who becomes stern when sternness is required, succeeds in accomplishing all his objects, and in putting down his foes.[67] Having incurred the animosity of a person possessed of knowledge and wisdom, one should not draw comfort from the conviction that one is at a distance (from one's foe). Far-reaching are the arms of an intelligent man by which he injures when injured.[68] That should not be sought to be crossed which is really uncrossable. That should not be snatched from the foe which the foe would be able to recover. One should not seek to dig at all if by digging one would not succeed in getting at the root of the thing for which one digs. One should never strike him whose head one would not cut off.[69] A king should not always act in this way. This course of conduct that I have laid down should be pursued only in seasons of distress. Inspired by the motive of doing thee good I have said this for instructing thee as to how thou shouldst bear thyself when assailed by foes.—"[70]

"Bhishma continued,—'The ruler of the kingdom of the Sauviras, hearing these words spoken by that Brāhmana inspired with the desire of doing him good, obeyed those instructions cheerfully and obtained with his kinsmen and friends blazing prosperity.' "[71]

Section CXLI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'When high righteousness suffers decay and is transgressed by all, when unrighteousness becomes righteousness, and righteousness assumes the form of its reverse,[1] when all wholesome restraints disappear, and all truths in respect of righteousness are disturbed and confounded, when people are oppressed by kings and robbers,[2] when men of all the four modes of life become stupified in respect of their duties, and all acts lose their merit, when men see cause of fear on every direction in consequence of lust and covetousness and folly,[3] when all creatures cease to trust one

another, when they slay one another by deceitful means and deceive one another in their mutual dealings,[4] when houses are burnt down throughout the country, when the Brāhmanas become exceedingly afflicted, when the clouds do not pour a drop of rain, when every one's hand is turned against every one's neighbour,[5] when all the necessaries of life fall under the power of robbers, when, indeed, such a season of terrible distress sets in, by what means should a Brāhmana live[6] who is unwilling to cast off compassion and his children? How, indeed, should a Brāhmana maintain himself at such a time? Tell me this, O grandsire![7] How also should the king live at such a time when sinfulness overtakes the world? How, O scorcher of foes, should the king live so that he might not fall away from both righteousness and profit?'[8]

"Bhishma said,—'O mighty-armed one, the peace and prosperity of subjects,* sufficiency and seasonableness of rain, disease, death, and other fears, are all dependent on the king.[9]† I have no doubt also in this, O bull of Bharata's race, that *Krita*, *Treta*, *Dwāpara*, and *Kali*, as regards their setting in, are all dependent on the king's conduct.[10] When such a season of misery as has been described by thee sets in, the righteous should support life by the aid of judgment.[11] In this connection is cited the old story of the discourse between Viçwāmitra and the Chāndāla in a hamlet inhabited by Chāndālas.[12] Towards the end of *Tretā* and the beginning of Dwāpara, a frightful drought occurred, extending for twelve years, in consequence of what the gods had ordained.[13] At that time which was the end of Tretā and the commencement of Dwāpara, when the period came for many creatures superannuated by age to lay down their lives,[14] the thousand-eyed deity of heaven poured no rain. The planet Vrihaspati

---

* Literally, 'preservation of what has been got, and acquisition of what is desired.'—T.

† These depend on the king, *i. e*, if the king happen to be good, prosperity, &c., are seen. On the other hand, if the king become oppressive and sinful, prosperity disappears, and every kind of evil sets in.—T.

began to move in a retrograde course, and Soma, abandoning his own orbit, receded towards the south.[15] Not even could a dew-drop be seen, what need then be said of clouds gathering together? The rivers all shrank into narrow streamlets.[16] Everywhere lakes and wells and springs disappeared and lost their beauty in consequence of that order of things which the gods brought about.[17] Water having become scarce, the places set up by charity for its distribution became desolate.* The Brāhmanas abstained from sacrifices and recitation of the Vedas. They no longer uttered *Vashats* and performed other propitiatory rites.[18] Agriculture and keep of cattle were given up. Markets and shops were abandoned. Stakes for tethering sacrificial animals disappeared. People no longer collected diverse kinds of articles for sacrifices. All festivals and amusements perished.[19] Everywhere heaps of bones were visible and every place resounded with the shrill cries and yells of fierce creatures.† The cities and towns of the Earth became empty of inhabitants. Villages and hamlets were burnt down.[20] Some afflicted by robbers, some by weapons, and some by bad kings, and in fear of one another, began to fly away.[21] Temples and places of worship became desolate. They that were aged were forcibly turned out of their houses. Kine and goats and sheep and buffaloes fought (for food) and perished in large numbers. The Brāhmanas began to die on all sides.[22] Protection was at an end. Herbs and plants were dried up. The Earth became shorn of all her beauty and exceedingly awful like the trees in a crematorium.[23] In that period of terror, when righteousness was nowhere, O Yudhishthira, men in hunger lost their senses and began to eat one another.[24] The very *Rishis*, giving up their vows and aban-

---

* In India, during the hot months, charitable persons set up shady thatches by the sides of streets for the distribution of cool water and raw sugar and oat soaked in water. Among any of the principal roads running through the country, one may, during the hot months, still see hundreds of such institutions affording real relief to thirsty travellers.—T.

† Such as *Rākshasas* and *Piçāchas* and carnivorous birds and beasts.—T.

doning their fires and deities, and deserting their retreats in the woods, began to wander hither and thither (in search of food).[25] The holy and great *Rishi* Viçwāmitra, possessed of great intelligence, wandered homeless and afflicted with hunger.[26] Leaving his wife and son in some place of shelter, the *Rishi* wandered, fireless* and homeless, and regardless of food clean and unclean.[27] One day he came upon a hamlet, in the midst of a forest, inhabited by cruel hunters addicted to the slaughter of living creatures.[28] The little hamlet abounded with broken jars and pots made of earth. Dog-skins were spread here and there. Bones and skulls, gathered in heaps, of boars and asses, lay in different places.[29] Cloths stript from the dead lay here and there, and the huts were adorned with garlands of used up flowers.† Many of the habitations again were embellished with sloughs cast off by snakes.[30] The place resounded with the loud crowing of cocks and hens and the dissonant bray of asses. Here and there the inhabitants disputed with one another, uttering harsh words in shrill voices.[31] Here and there were temples of gods bearing devices of owls and other birds. Resounding with the tinkle of iron bells, the hamlet abounded with canine packs standing or lying on every side.[32] The great *Rishi* Viçwāmitra, urged by pangs of hunger and engaged in search after food, entered that hamlet and endeavoured his best to find something to eat.[33] Though the son of Kuçika begged repeatedly, yet he failed to obtain any meat or rice or fruit or root or any other kind of food.[34] He then, exclaiming—Alas, great is the distress that has overtaken me!—fell down from weakness in that hamlet of the Chāndālas.[35] The sage began to reflect, saying to himself,—What is best for me to do now? —Indeed, O best of kings, the thought that occupied him was of the means by which he could avoid immediate death.[36] He beheld, O king, a large piece of flesh, of a dog that had recently been slain with a weapon, spread on the floor of a Chāndāla's hut.[37] The sage reflected and arrived at

---

* Abandoning his *Homa* fire.—T.

† *I. e.*, flowers already offered to the deities.—T.

the conclusion that he should steal that meat. And he said unto himself,—I have no means now of sustaining life.[38] Theft is allowable in a season of distress for even an eminent person. It will not detract from his glory. Even a Brāhmana for saving his life may do it. This is certain.[39] In the first place one should steal from a low person. Failing such a person one may steal from one's equal. Failing an equal, one may steal from even an eminent and righteous man.[40] I shall then, at this time when my life itself is ebbing away, steal this meat. I do not see demerit in such theft. I shall, therefore, rob this haunch of dog's meat.[41]—Having formed this resolution, the great sage Viçwāmitra laid himself down for sleep in that place where the Chāndāla was.[42] Seeing sometime after that the night had advanced and that the whole Chāndāla hamlet had fallen asleep, the holy Viçwāmitra, quietly rising up, entered that hut.[43] The Chāndāla who owned it, with eyes covered with pleghm, was lying like one asleep. Of disagreeable visage, he said these harsh words in a broken and dissonant voice.[44]

" 'The Chāndāla said,—Who is there, engaged in undoing the latch ? The whole Chāndāla hamlet is asleep. I, however, am awake and not asleep. Whoever thou art, thou art about to be slain !—These were the harsh words that greeted the sage's ears.[45] Filled with fear, his face crimson with the blushes of shame, and his heart agitated by anxiety caused by that act of theft which he had attempted, he answered, saying,[46]—O thou that art blest with a long life, I am Viçwāmitra ! I have come here in the pangs of hunger. O thou of righteous understanding, do not slay me, if thy sight be clear ![47]—Hearing these words of that great *Rishi* of cleansed soul, the Chāndāla rose up in terror from his bed and approached the sage.[48] Joining his palms from reverence and with eyes bathed in tears, he addressed Kuçika's son, saying,—What do you seek here in the night, O Brāhmana ![49]—Conciliating the Chāndāla, Viçwāmitra said,—I am exceedingly hungry and about to die of starvation ! I desire to take away that haunch of dog's meat ![50] Being hungry I have become sinful. One solicitous of food has no shame. It is

hunger that is urging me to this misdeed. It is for this that I desire to take away that haunch of dog's meat![51] My life-breaths are languishing. Hunger has destroyed my Vedic lore. I am weak and have lost my senses. I have no scruple about clean or unclean food. Although I know that it is sinful still I wish to take away that haunch of dog's meat.[52] After I had failed to obtain any alms, having wandered from house to house in this your hamlet, I set my heart upon this sinful act of taking away this haunch of dog's meet.[53] Fire is the mouth of the gods. He is also their priest. He should, therefore, take nothing save things that are pure and clean. At times, however, that great god becomes a consumer of everything. Know that I have now become even like him in that respect![54]—Hearing these words of the great *Rishi*, the Chāndāla answered him, saying,—Listen to me! Having heard the words of truth that I say, act in such a way that thy religious merit may not perish![55] Hear, O regenerate *Rishi*, what I say unto thee about thy duty. The wise say that a dog is less clean than a jackal. The haunch, again, of a dog is a much worse part than other parts of his body.[56] This was not wisely resolved by thee, therefore, O great *Rishi*, this act that is inconsistent with righteousness, this theft of what belongs to a Chāndāla, this theft, besides, of food that is unclean![57] Blessed be thou, do thou look for some other means for preserving thy life. O great sage, let not thy penances suffer destruction in consequence of this thy strong desire for dog's meat![58] Knowing as thou dost the duties laid down in the scriptures, thou shouldst not do an act whose consequence is a confusion of duties.* Do not cast off righteousness, for thou art the foremost of all persons observant of righteousness![59]—Thus addressed, O king, the great *Rishi* Viçwāmitra, afflicted by hunger, O bull of Bharata's race, once more said,[60]—A long time has passed away without my having taken any food! I do not see any means again for

* No one of the three regenerate orders should take dog's meat. If thou takest such meat, where would then the distinction be between persons of those orders and men like Chāndālas?—T.

preserving my life![61] One should, when one is dying, preserve one's life by any means in one's power without judging of their character. Afterwards, when competent, one should seek the acquisition of merit.[62] The Kshatriyas should observe the practices of Indra. It is the duty of the Brāhmanas to behave like Agni. The Vedas are fire. They constitute my strength. I shall, therefore, eat even this unclean food for appeasing my hunger![63] That by which life may be preserved should certainly be accomplished without scruple. Life is better than death. Living, one may acquire virtue.[64] Solicitous of preserving my life, I desire, with the full exercise of my understanding, to eat this unclean food. Let me receive thy permission.[65] Continuing to live I shall seek the acquisition of virtue and shall destroy by penances and by knowledge the calamities consequent on my present conduct, like the luminaries of the firmament destroying even the thickest gloom![66]—

"'The Chāndāla said,—By eating this food one (like thee) cannot obtain long life. Nor can one (like thee) obtain strength (from such food), nor that gratification which ambrosia offers. Do thou seek for some other kind of alms! Let not thy heart incline towards eating dog's meat! The dog is containly an unclean food to members of the regenerate classes![67]—

"'Viçwāmitra said,—Any other kind of meat is not be easily had during a famine like this! Besides, O Chāndāla, I have no wealth (wherewith to buy food)! I am exceedingly hungry. I cannot move any longer! I am utterly hopeless! I think that all the six kinds of taste are to be found in that piece of dog's meat![68]—

"'The Chāndāla said,—Only the five kinds of five-clawed animals are clean food for Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas, as laid down in the scriptures. Do not set thy heart upon what is unclean (for thee.)'[69]—

"'Viçwāmitra said,—The great *Rishi* Agastya, while hungry, ate up the *Asura* named Vātāpi. I am fallen into distress. I am hungry. I shall, therefore, eat that haunch of dog's meat.'[70]—

" 'The Chāndāla said,—Do thou seek some other alms. It behoves thee not to do such a thing! Verily, such an act should never be done by thee. If, however, it pleases thee, thou mayst take away this piece of dog's meat![71]—

" 'Viçwāmitra said,—They that are called good are authorities in matters of duty. I am following their example. I now regard this dog's haunch to be better food than anything that is highly pure.[72]—

" 'The Chāndāla said,—That which is the act of an unrighteous person can never be regarded as an eternal practice. That which is an improper act can never be a proper one. Do not commit a sinful act by deception![73]—

" 'Viçwāmitra said,—A man who is a *Rishi* cannot do what is sinful.* In the present case, deer and dog, I think, are the same (both being animals). I shall, therefore, eat this dog's haunch![74]—

" 'The Chāndāla said,—Solicited by the Brāhmanas, the *Rishi* (Agastya) did that act. Under the circumstances it could not be a sin. That is righteousness in which there is no sin. Besides, the Brāhmanas, who are the preceptors of the three other orders, should be protected and preserved by every means.[75]—

" 'Viçwāmitra said,—I am a Brāhmana. This my body is a friend of mine. It is very dear to me and is worthy of the highest reverence from me! It is from the desire of sustaining the body that the wish is entertained by me of taking away that dog's haunch. So eager have I become that I have no longer any fear of thee and thy fierce brethren![76]—

" 'The Chāndāla said,—Men lay down their lives but they still do not set their hearts on food that is unclean. They obtain the fruition of all their wishes even in this world by conquering hunger. Do thou also conquer thy hunger and obtain those rewards![77]—

" 'Viçwāmitra said,—As regards myself, I am observant of rigid vows and my heart is set on peace. For preserving the root of all religous merit, I shall eat food that is unclean.[78] It

* Agastya was a *Rishi*. He could not do what was sinful.—T.

is evident that such an act would be regarded as righteous in a person of cleansed soul. To a person, however, of uncleansed soul the eating of dog's flesh would appear sinful. Even if the conclusion to which I have arrived be wrong (and if I eat this dog's meat) I shall not, for that act, become one like thee ![79]—

" 'The Chāndāla said,—It is my settled conclusion that I should endeavour my best to restrain thee from this sin. A Brāhmana by doing a wicked act falls off from his high state. It is for this that I am reproving thee ![80]—

" 'Viçwāmitra said,—Kine continue to drink, regardless of the croaking of the frogs. Thou canst lay no claim to what constitutes righteousness (and what not). Do not be a self-eulogiser ![81]—

" 'The Chāndāla said,—I have become thy friend. For this reason only I am preaching to thee. Do what is beneficial. Do not, from temptation, do what is sinful.'[82]—

" 'Viçwāmitra said,—If thou be a friend desirous of my happiness, do thou then raise me up from this distress! In that case, relinquishing this dog's haunch, I may consider myself saved by the aid of righteousness (and not by that of sinfulness) ![83]—

" The Chāndāla said,—'I dare not make a present of this piece of meat to thee, nor can I quietly suffer thee to rob me of my own food. If I give thee this meat and if thou take it, thyself being a Brāhmana, both of us will become liable to sink in regions of woe in the next world ![84]—

" 'Viçwāmitra said,—By committing this sinful act today I shall certainly save my life which is very sacred. Having saved my life I shall afterwards practise virtue and cleanse my soul. Tell me which of these two is preferable (to die without food, or to save my life by taking this food that is unclean) ?[85]—

" 'The Chāndāla said,—In discharging the duties that appertain to one's order or race, one's own self is the best judge (of its propriety or impropriety). Thou thyself knowest which of those two acts is sinful. He who would regard dog's meat as clean food, I think, would in matters of food abstain from nothing ![86]—

" 'Viçwāmitra said,—In accepting (an unclean present) or in eating (unclean food) there is sin. When one's life, however, is in danger, there is no sin in accepting such a present or eating such food. Besides, the eating of unclean food, when unaccompanied by slaughter and deception and when the act will provoke only mild rebuke, is not a matter of much consequence.[87]—

" 'The Chāndāla said,—If this be thy reason for eating unclean food, it is then clear thou dost not regard the Veda and Ārya morality ! Taught by what thou art going to do, I see, O foremost of Brāhmanas, that there is no sin in disregarding the distinctions between food that is clean and food that is unclean ![88]—

" 'Viçwāmitra said,—It is not seen that a person incurs a grave sin by eating (forbidden food). That one becomes fallen by drinking wine is only a wordy precept (for restraining men from drinking). The other forbidden acts (of the same species), whatever they be,—in fact, every sin,—cannot destroy one's merit.[89]

" 'The Chāndāla said,—That learned person who takes away dog's meat from an unworthy place (like this), from an unclean wretch (like me), from one who (like me) leads such a wicked life, commits an act that is opposed to the behaviour of those that are called good. In consequence, again, of his connection with such a deed, he is certain to suffer the pangs of repentance ![90]—'

"Bhishma continued,—The Chāndāla, having said these words unto Kuçika's son, became silent. Viçwāmitra then, of cultivated understanding, took away that haunch of dog's meat.[91] The great ascetic, having possessed himself of that piece of dog's meat for saving his life, took it away into the woods and wished with his wife to eat it.[92] He resolved that having first gratified the deities according to due rites, he should then eat that haunch of dog's meat at his pleasure.[93] Igniting a fire according to the *Brāhma* rites, the ascetic, agreeably to those rites that go by the name of *Aindrāgneya*, began himself to cook that meat into sacrificial *Charu*.[94] He then, O Bhārata, began the ceremonies in honor of the gods

and the *Pitris*, by dividing that *Charu* into as many portions as were necessary, according to the injunctions of the scriptures, and by invoking the gods with Indra at their head (for accepting their shares).[95] Meanwhile, the chief of the celestials began to pour copiously. Reviving all creatures by those showers, he caused plants and herbs to grow once more.[96] Viçwāmitra, however, having completed the rites in honor of the gods and the *Pitris* and having gratified them duly, himself ate that meat.[97] Burning all his sins afterwards by his penances, the sage, after a long time, acquired the most wonderful (ascetic) success.[98] Even thus, when the end in view is the preservation of life itself, should a high-souled person possessed of learning and acquainted with means rescue his own cheerless self when fallen into distress, by all means in his power.[99] By having recourse to such understanding one should always preserve his life. A person, if alive, can win religious merit and enjoy happiness and prosperity.[100] For this reason, O son of Kunti, a person of cleansed soul and possessed of learning should live and act in this world, relying upon his own intelligence in discriminating between righteousness and its reverse.' "[101]

Section CXLII.

" Yudhishthira said,—If that which is so horrible and which like falsehood should never be an object of regard, be cited (as duty), then what act is there from which I should forbear ? Why also should not robbers then be respected ?[1] I am stupified ! My heart is pained ! All the ties that bind me to morality are loosened ! I cannot tranquillise my mind and venture to act in the way suggested by you !"[2]

"Bhishma said,—'I do not instruct thee in respect of duty, taught by what I have heard from the Vedas alone ! What I have told thee is the result of wisdom and experience. This is the honey that the learned have gathered.[3] Kings should gather wisdom from various sources. One cannot accomplish his course through the world with the aid of a morality that is one-sided.[4] Duty must spring from the

understanding; and the practices of those that are good should always be ascertained, O son of Kuru! Attend to these words of mine![5] Only kings that are possessed of superior intelligence can rule, expecting victory. A king should provide for the observance of morality by the aid of his understanding and guided by knowledge derived from various sources.[6] The duties of a king can never be discharged by rules drawn from a morality that is one-sided. A weak-minded king can never display wisdom (in the discharge of his duties) in consequence of his not having drawn any wisdom from the examples before him.[7] Righteousness sometimes takes the shape of unrighteousness. The latter also sometimes takes the shape of the former. He who does not know this, becomes confounded when confronted by an actual instance of the kind. Before the occasion comes, one should, O Bhārata, comprehend the circumstances under which righteousness and its reverse become confused.[8] Having acquired this knowledge, a wise king should, when the occasion comes, act accordingly, aided by his judgment. The acts he does at such a time are misunderstood by ordinary people.[9] Some persons are possessed of true knowledge. Some persons have false knowledge. Truly ascertaining the nature of each kind of knowledge, a wise king derives knowledge from them that are regarded as good.[10] They that are really breakers of morality find fault with the scriptures. They that have themselves no wealth proclaim the inconsistencies of the treatises on the acquisition of wealth.[11] Those who seek to acquire knowledge for the object only of carring their sustenance by it, are, O king, sinful besides being enemies of morality.[12] Wicked men, of immature understandings, can never know things truly, even as persons unconversant with scriptures are unable in all their acts to be guided by reason.[13] With eyes directed to the faults of the scriptures, they decry the scriptures. Even if they understand the true meaning of the scriptures, they are still in the habit of proclaiming that scriptural injunctions are unsound.[14] Such men, by decrying the knowledge of others proclaim the superiority of their own knowledge. They have words for their weapons and words for their arrows

and speak as if they are real masters of their sciences.[15] Know, O Bhārata, that they are traders in learning and *Rākshasas* among men. By the aid of mere pretexts they cast off that morality which has been established by good and wise men.[16] It has been heard by us that the texts of morality are not to be understood by either discussion or one's own intelligence. Indra himself has said that this is the opinion of the sage Vrihaspati.[17] Some are of opinion that no scriptural text has been laid down without a reason. Others again, even if they properly understand the scriptures, never act according to them.[18] One class of wise men declare that morality is nothing else than the approved course of the world. The man of true knowledge should find out for himself the morality laid down for the good.[19] If even a wise man speaks of morality under the influence of wrath or confusion of understanding or ignorance, his deliverances go for nothing.[20] Discourses on morality made with the aid of an intelligence that is derived from the true letter and spirit of the scriptures, are worthy of praise and not those which are made with the help of anything else. Even the words heard from an ignorant person, if in themselves they be fraught with sense, come to be regarded as pious and wise.[21] In days of old, Uçanas said unto the Daiteyas this truth, which should remove all doubts, that scriptures are no scriptures if they cannot stand the test of reason.[22] The possession or absence of knowledge that is mixed with doubts is the same thing. It behoves thee to drive off such knowledge after tearing it up by the roots.[23] He who does not listen to these words of mine is to be regarded as one that has suffered himself to be misled. Dost thou not see that thou wert created for the accomplishment of fierce deeds?[24] Behold me, O dear child, how, by betaking myself to the duties of the order of my birth, I have despatched innumerable Kshatriyas to heaven! There are some that are not delighted with me for this.[25] Goat, hare, and Kshatriya, were created by Brahman for a similar purpose (*viz.*, for being useful to everybody). A Kshatriya, therefore, should incessantly seek the happiness of all creatures.[26] The sin that attaches to killing a person that should not be killed

is equal to that which is incurred by not killing one who deserves to be killed. Even such is the established order of things which a weak-minded king thinks of never attending to.[27] Therefore, a king should display severity in making all his subject observe their respective duties. If this is not done, they will prowl like wolves, devouring one another.[28] He is a wretch among Kshatriyas in whose territories robbers go about plundering the property of other people like crows taking little fishes from water.[29] Appointing high-born men possessed of Vedic knowledge as thy ministers, do thou govern the Earth, protecting thy subjects righteously.[30] That Kshatriya who, ignorant of the established customs and contrivances, improperly levies taxes upon his people, is regarded as a eunuch of his order.[31] A king should neither be severe nor mild. If he rules righteously he deserves praise. A king should not cast off both the qualities; on the other hand, becoming severe (on occasions demanding severity), he should be mild when it is necessary to be so.[32] Painful is the observance of Kshatriya duties. I bear a great love for thee. Thou art created for the accomplishment of severe acts. Therefore, do thou rule thy kingdom![33] Cakra possessed of great intelligence has said that in times of distress the great duty of a king is chastising the wicked and protecting the good.'[34]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Is there any such rule (in respect of kingly duties) which should, under no circumstances, be violated? I ask thee this, O foremost of virtuous persons! Tell me, O grandsire!'[35]

"Bhishma said,—'One should always worship Brāhmanas venerable for learning, devoted to penances, and rich in conduct conformable to the injunctions of the Vedas. This, indeed, is a high and sacred duty.[36] Let thy conduct towards the Brāhmanas be always that which thou observest towards the gods. The Brāhmanas, if enraged, can inflict diverse kinds of wrong, O king.[37] If they be gratified, high fame will be thy share. If otherwise, great will be thy fear. If gratified, the Brāhmanas become like nectar. If enraged they become like poison.' "[38]

Section CXLIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, O thou of great wisdom, O thou that are conversant with every kind of scripture, tell me what the merit is of one who cherishes a suppliant that craves for protection !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Great is the merit, O monarch, in cherishing a suppliant. Thou art worthy, O best of the Bharatas, of asking such a question.[2] Those high-souled kings of old, *viz.*, Civi and others, O king, attained to great bliss in heaven by having protected suppliants.[3] It is heard that a pigeon received with respect a suppliant foe according to due rites and even fed him with his own flesh.'[4]

"Yudhishthira said,—'How, indeed, did a pigeon in days of old feed a suppliant foe with his own flesh ? What also was the end, O Bhārata, that he won by such conduct ?'[5]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O king, to this excellent story that cleanses the hearer of every sin, the story, *viz.*, that Bhrigu's son (Rāma) had recited to king Muchukunda.[6] This very question, O son of Prithā, had been put to Bhrigu's son by Muchukunda with due humility.[7] Unto him desirous of listening with humility the son of Bhrigu narrated this story of how a pigeon, O monarch, won success (entitling him to the highest heavenly bliss).[8]

"'The sage said,—O mighty-armed monarch, listen to me as I narrate to thee this story that is fraught with truths connected with Virtue, Profit, and Pleasure.[9] A wicked and terrible fowler, resembling the Destroyer himself, used in days of old to wander through the great forest.[10] He was black as a raven and his eyes were of a bloody hue. He looked like Yama himself. His legs were long, his feet short, his mouth large, and his cheeks protruding.[11] He had no friend, no relative, no kinsman. He had been cast off by them all for the exceedingly cruel life he led.[12] Indeed, a man of wicked conduct should be renounced from a distance by the wise, for he who injures his own self cannot be expected to do good to others.[13] Those cruel and wicked-souled

men that take the lives of other creatures are always like poisonous snakes, a source of trouble to all creatures.[14] Taking his nets with him, and killing birds in the woods, he used to sell the meat of those winged creatures, O king, (for livelihood).[15] Following such conduct, the wicked-souled wretch lived for many long years without ever understanding the sinfulness of his life.[16] Accustomed for many long years to sport with his wife in the forest in the pursuit of this profession, and stupified by destiny, no other profession was liked by him.[17] One day as he was wandering through the forest intent on his business, a great storm arose that shook the trees and seemed about to uproot them.[18] In a moment dense masses of clouds appeared on the sky, with flashes of lightning playing amidst them, presenting the aspect of a sea covered with merchant boats and vessels.[19] He of a hundred sacrifices having entered the clouds with a large supply of rain, in a moment the Earth became flooded with water.[20] While yet the rain fell in torrents, the fowler lost his senses through fear. Trembling with cold and agitated with fear, he roved through the forest.[21] The killer of birds failed to find any high spot (which was not under water). The paths of the forest were all submerged.[22] In consequence of the force of the shower, many birds were deprived of life or dropped down on the ground. Lions and bears and other animals, availing of some high spots they had found, lay down to rest.[23] All the denizens of the forest were filled with fear in consequence of that frightful storm and shower. Frightened and hungry, they roamed through the woods in packs small and large.[24] The fowler, however, with limbs stiffened by cold, could neither stop where he was nor move. While in this state he eyed a she-pigeon lying on the ground, stiffened with cold.[25] The sinful wight, though himself in the same predicament, beholding the bird, picked her up and immured her in a cage. Himself overwhelmed with affliction, he scrupled not to overwhelm a fellow-creature with affliction.[26] Indeed, the wretch, through force of habit alone, committed that sin even at such a time. He then beheld in the midst of that forest a lordly tree blue as the clouds.[27] It was the

resort of myriads of birds desirous of shade and shelter. It seemed to have been placed there by the Creator for the good of all creatures like a good man in the world.[28] Soon the sky cleared and became spangled with myriads of stars, presenting the aspect of a magnificent lake smiling with blooming lilies.[29] Turning his eyes towards the clear firmament rich with stars, the fowler began to advance, still trembling with cold. Beholding the sky cleared of clouds, he cast his eyes on all sides and seeing that night was already upon him, he began to think,[30]—My home is at a great distance from where I am!—He then resolved to pass the night under the shade of that tree.[31] Bowing down to it with joined hands, he addressed that monarch of the forest, saying,—I am a suppliant for shelter unto all the deities that have this tree for their resort![32]—Having said these words, he spread some leaves for a bed, and laid himself down on it, resting his head on a stone. Though overwhelmed with affliction, the man soon fell asleep.' "[33]—

Section CXLIV.

"Bhishma said,—'In one of the branches of that tree, a pigeon with beautiful feathers, O king, lived for many years with his family.[1] That morning his wife had gone out in search of food but had not yet returned. Seeing that night had come and his wife still unreturned, the bird began to indulge in lamentations.[2]—Oh, great has been the storm and painful the shower that came today! Alas, thou hast not yet returned, O dear wife! Woe is on me, what can be the cause that she has not yet come to us![3] Is everything right with that dear spouse of mine in the forest? Separated from her, this my home appears to me empty![4] A house-holder's home, even if filled with sons and grandsons and daughters-in-law and servants, is regarded empty if destitute of the housewife.[5] One's house is not one's home; one's wife only is one's home. A house without the wife is as desolate as the wilderness.[6] If that dear wife of mine, of eyes fringed with red, of variegated plumes, and of sweet voice, does not come

back today, my life itself will cease to be of any value.[7] Of excellent vows, she never eats before I eat, and never bathes before I bathe. She never sits before I sit down, and never lies before I lie down.[8] She rejoices if I rejoice, and becomes sorry when I am sorry. When I am away she becomes cheerless, and when I am angry she ceases not to speak sweetly.[9] Ever devoted to her lord and ever relying upon her lord, she was ever employed in doing what was aggreable to and beneficial for her lord. Worthy of praise is that person on Earth who owns such a spouse![10] That amiable creature knows that I am fatigued and hungry. Devoted to me and constant in her love, my famous spouse is exceedingly sweet-tempered and worships me devoutly![11] Even the foot of a tree is one's home if one lives there with one's spouse as a companion! Without one's spouse, a very palace is truly a desolate wilderness![12] One's spouse is one's associate in all one's acts of virtue, profit and pleasure. When one sets out for a strange land one's wife is one's trusted companion.[13] It is said that the wife is the richest possession of her lord. In this world the wife is the only associate of her lord in all the concerns of life.*[14] The wife is ever the best of medicines that one can have in sickness and woe.[15] There is no friend like unto the wife. There is no refuge better than the wife. There is no better ally in the world than the wife in acts undertaken for the acquisition of religious merit.[16] He that has not in his house a wife that is chaste and of agreeable speech, should go to the woods. For such a man there is no difference between home and wilderness.'"[17]

---

* The idea is that man comes alone into the world and goes out of it alone. Only the wife is his true associate, for she alone is a sharer of his merits, and without her no merit can be won. The Hindu idea of marriage is a complete union. From the day of marriage the two persons become *one* individual for the performance of all religious and other acts.—T.

Section CXLV.

"Bhishma said,—'Hearing these piteous lamentations of the pigeon on the tree, the she-pigeon seized by the fowler began to say to herself as follows.[1]

" 'The she-pigeon said,—Whether I have any merit or not, verily there is no limit to my good fortune when my dear lord thus speaks of me![2] She is no wife with whom her lord is not content. In the case of women, if their lords be gratified with them all the deities also become so.[3] Since the marriage union takes place in the presence of fire, the husband is the wife's highest deity.[4] That wife with whom her husband is not pleased becomes consumed into ashes, even like a creeper adorned with bunches of flowers in a forest conflagration![5]—Having reflected thus, the she-pigeon, afflicted with woe, and immured by the fowler within his cage, thus spoke unto her woe-stricken lord.[6]—I shall say what is now beneficial for thee. Hearing me follow thou my counsel! O dear lord, be thou the rescuer of a suppliant![7] This fowler lies here by thy abode, afflicted with cold and hunger! Do him the duties of hospitality![8] The sin that a person commits by slaying a Brāhmana or that mother of the world, *viz.*, a cow, is equal to that which one incurs by suffering a suppliant to perish (from want of help).[9] Thou art possessed of knowledge of self. It ever behoves one like thee, therefore, to follow that course which has been ordained for us as pigeons by the order of our birth.*[10] It has been heard by us that the house-holder who practises virtue according to the measure of his abilities, wins hereafter inexhaustible regions of bliss.[11] Thou hast sons. Thou hast progeny. O bird, casting off all kindness for thy own body, therefore, and for winning virtue and profit, offer worship to this fowler so that his heart may be pleased![12] Do not, O bird, indulge in

---

* The sense seems to be that our strength, though little, should be employed by us in attending to the duties of hospitality in our own way.—T.

any grief on my account. (See. how unimportant I am !) Thou mayst continue to live, taking other wives ![13]—The amiable she-pigeon, overcome with sorrow, and casting her eyes upon her lord from the fowler's cage within which she had been immured, said these words unto him.' "[14]

SECTION CXLVI.

"Bhishma said,—'Hearing these words fraught with morality and reason that were spoken by his wife, the pigeon became filled with great delight and his eyes were bathed in tears of joy.[1] Beholding that fowler whose avocation was the slaughter of birds, the pigeon honored him scrupulously according to the rites laid down in the ordinance.[2] Addressing him, he said,—Thou art welcome today ! Tell me what I shall do for thee ! Thou shouldst not repine ! This is thy home.*[3] Tell me quickly what I am to do and what is thy pleasure ! I ask thee this in affection, for thou hast solicited shelter at our hands.[4] Hospitality should be shown to even one's foe when he comes to one's house. The tree withdraws not its shade from even the person that approaches it for cutting it down.[5] One should, with scrupulous care, do the duties of hospitality towards a person that craves for shelter. Indeed, one is especially bound to do so if one happens to lead a life of domesticity that consists of the five sacrifices.[6] If one, while leading a life of domesticity, does not, from want of judgment, perform the five sacrifices, one loses, according to the scriptures, both this and the next world.[7] Tell me then trustfully and in intelligible words what thy wishes are ! I will accomplish them all. Do not set thy heart on grief ![8]—Hearing these words of the bird, the fowler replied unto him, saying,—I am stiff with cold. Let provision be made for warming me ![9]—Thus addressed, the bird gathered together a number of dry leaves on the ground, and

---

* Literally, 'thou art at home,' meaning I will not spare any trouble in making thee feel and enjoy all the comforts of home in this place.—T.

taking a single leaf in his beaks speedily went away for fetching fire.[10] Proceeding to a spot where fire is kept, he obtained a little fire and came back to the spot. He then set fire to those dry leaves,[11] and when they blazed forth into a vigorous conflagration, he addressed his guest, saying,—Do thou trustfully and without fear warm thy limbs![12]—Thus addressed, the fowler said,—So be it!—and set himself to warm his stiffened limbs. Recovering (as it were) his life-breaths, the fowler said unto his winged host,[13]—Hunger is afflicting me. I wish thee to give me some food!—Hearing his words the bird said,[14]—I have no stores by which to appease thy hunger! We, denizens of the woods, always live upon what we get every day.[15] Like the ascetics of the forest we never hoard for the morrow!'—Having said these words, the bird's face became pale (from shame).[16] He began to reflect silently as to what he should do and mentally deprecated his own method of living.[17] Soon, however, his mind became clear. Addressing the slaughterer of his species, the bird said,—I shall gratify thee! Wait for a moment![18]—Saying these words he ignited a fire with the help of some dry leaves, and filled with joy, said,[19]—I heard in former days from high-souled *Rishis* and gods and *Pitris* that there is great merit in honoring a guest.[20] O amiable one, be kind to me! I tell thee truly that my heart is set upon honoring thee that art my guest![21]—Having formed this resolution, the high-souled bird, with a smiling face, thrice circumambulated that fire and then entered its flames.[22] Beholding the bird enter that fire, the fowler began to think, and asked himself, —What have I done![23] Alas, dark and terrible will be my sin, without doubt, in consequence of my own acts! I am exceedingly cruel and worthy of reprobation![24]—Indeed, observing the bird lay down his life, the fowler, deprecating his own acts, began to indulge in copious lamentations like these.'"[25]

Section CXLVII.

"Bhishma said,—'The fowler, seeing the pigeon fall into the fire, became filled with compassion and once more said,[1]—Alas, cruel and senseless that I am, what have I done! I am certainly a mean wretch! Great will be my sin for everlasting years![2]—Indulging in such self-reproaches he began to say repeatedly,—I am unworthy of credit! My understanding is wicked! I am ever sinful in my resolves![3] Alas, abandoning all kinds of honorable occupation, I have become a fowler! A cruel wretch that I am, without doubt, this high-souled pigeon, by laying down his own life, has read me a grave lesson![4] Abandoning wives and sons, I shall certainly cast off my very life-breaths that are so dear! The high-souled pigeon has taught me that duty![5] From this day, denying every comfort to my body, I shall wear it out even as a shallow tank in the season of summer![6] Capable of bearing hunger, thirst, and penances, reduced to emaciation, and covered with visible veins all over, I shall, by diverse kinds of fasts, practise such vows as have a reference to the other world![7] Alas, by giving up his body, the pigeon has shown the worship that should be paid to a guest! Taught by his example, I shall henceforth practise righteousness. Righteousness is the highest refuge (of all creatures)! Indeed, I shall practise such righteousness as has been seen in the righteous pigeon, that foremost of all winged creatures![8]—Having formed such a resolution and said these words, that fowler, once of fierce deeds, proceeded to make an unreturning tour of the world,* observing for the while the most rigid vows.[9] He threw away his stout staff, his sharp-pointed iron-stick, his nets and springes, and his iron cage, and set at liberty the she-pigeon that he had seized and immured.' "[10]

---

* *Mahāprasthāna* is literally an unreturning departure. When a person leaves home for wandering through the world till death puts a stop to his wanderings, he is said to go on *Mahāprasthāna*.—T.

Section CXLVIII.

"Bhishma said,—'After the fowler had left that spot, the she-pigeon, remembering her husband and afflicted with grief on his account, wept copiously and indulged in these lamentations:[1]—I cannot, O dear lord, recollect a single instance of thy having done me an injury! Widows, even if mothers of many children, are still miserable! Bereft of husband, a woman becomes helpless and an object of pity with her friends.[2] I was always cherished by thee, and in consequence of the great respect thou hadst for me I was always honored by thee with sweet, agreeable, charming, and delightful words![3] I sported with thee in valleys, in springs of rivers, and on delightful tops of trees![4] I was also made happy by thee while roving with thee through the skies! I used to sport with thee before, O dear lord, but where are those joys now?[5] Limited are the gifts of the father, of the brother, and of the son to a woman. The gifts that her husband alone makes to her are unlimited! What woman is there that would not, therefore, adore her lord?[6] A woman has no protector like her lord, and no happiness like her lord. Abandoning all her wealth and possessions, a woman should take to her lord as her only refuge.[7] Life here is of no use to me, O lord, now that I am separated from thee! What chaste woman is there that would, when deprived of her lord, venture to bear the burden of life?[8]—Filled with sorrow and indulging in such piteous lamentations, the she-pigeon, devoted to her lord, cast herself on the blazing fire.[9] She then beheld her (deceased) husband adorned with bracelets, seated on a (celestial) car, and adored by many high-souled and meritorious beings standing around him.[10] Indeed, there he was in the firmament, decked with fine garlands and attired in excellent robes, and adorned with every ornament. Around him were innumerable celestial cars ridden by beings who had acted meritoriously while in this world.[11] Seated on his own celestial car, the bird ascended to heaven, and obtaining proper honors for his deeds in this world, continued to sport in joy, accompanied by his wife.'"[12]

Section CXLIX.

"Bhishma said,—'The fowler, O king, happened to see that pair while seated on their celestial car. Beholding the couple he became filled with sorrow (at the thought of his own misfortune) and began to reflect upon the means of obtaining the same end.[1] And he said to himself,—I must, by austerities like those of the pigeon, attain to such a high end!—Having formed this resolution, the fowler, who had lived by the slaughter of birds, set out on an unreturning journey.[2] Without any endeavor (for obtaining food) and living upon air alone, he cast off all affections from desire of acquiring heaven.[3] After he had proceeded for some distance, he saw an extensive and delightful lake full of cool and pure water, adorned with lotuses and teeming with diverse kinds of water-fowl.[4] Without doubt, the very sight of such a lake is capable of slaking the desire for drink of a thirsty person. Emaciated with fasts, the fowler, however, O king,[5] without casting his eyes upon it, gladly penetrated a forest inhabited by beasts of prey, having ascertained previously its wide extent. After he had entered the forest, he became much afflicted by sharp-pointed thorns.[6] Lascerated and torn by prickles, and covered all over with blood, he began to wander in that forest destitute of men but abounding with animals of diverse species.[7] Sometime after, in consequence of the friction of some mighty trees caused by a powerful wind, a widespread conflagration arose.[8] The raging element, displaying a splendour like to what it assumes at the end of the *Yuga*, began to consume that large forest teeming with tall trees and thick bushes and creepers.[9] Indeed, with flames fanned by the wind and myriads of sparks flying about in all directions, the all-consuming deity began to burn that dense forest abounding with birds and beasts.[10] The fowler, desirous of casting off his body, ran with a delighted heart towards that spreading conflagration.[11] Consumed by that fire the fowler became cleansed of all his sins and attained, O best of the Bharatas, to high success.[12] The fever of his

heart dispelled, he at last beheld himself in heaven, shining in splendour like Indra in the midst of *Yakshas* and *Gandharvas* and persons crowned with ascetic success.[13] Thus, indeed, the pigeon and his devoted spouse, with the fowler, ascended to heaven for their meritorious acts.[14] The woman who thus follows her lord speedily ascends to heaven and shines in splendour there like the she-pigeon of whom I have spoken.[15] Even this is the old history of the high-souled fowler and the pigeon. Even thus did they earn a highly meritorious end by their righteous acts.[16] No evil befalls the person who listens every day to this story or who recites it every day, even if error invades his mind.*[17] O Yudhishthira, O foremost of all righteous persons, the protection of a suppliant is truly a high act of merit! Even the slayer of a cow, by practising this duty, may be cleansed of sin.[18] That man, however, will never be cleansed who slays a suppliant. By listening to this sacred and sin-cleansing story one becomes freed from distress and attains to heaven at last.' "[19]

SECTION CL.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O best of the Bharatas, when a person commits sin from want of judgment, how may he be cleansed from it? Tell me everything about it!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall in this connection recite to thee the old narrative, applauded by the *Rishis*, of what the regenerate Indrota, the son of Cunaka, said unto Janamejaya.[2] There was, in days of yore, a king possessed of great energy, called Janamejaya, who was the son of Parikshit. That lord of Earth on one occasion, from want of judgment, became guilty of killing a Brāhmana.[3] Upon this, all the Brāhmanas together with his priests abandoned him. Burning day and night with regret, the king retired into the woods.[4] Deserted by his subjects too, he took this step for achieving high merit. Consumed by repentance, the monarch underwent the most

---

* The theory is that all distresses arise originally from mental error which clouds the understanding. Vide *Bhagavadgitā*.—T.

rigid austerities.[5] For washing himself of the sin of Brāhmanicide he interrogated many Brāhmanas, and wandered from country to country over the whole Earth![6] I shall now tell thee the story of his expiation. Burning with the remembrance of his sinful act, Janamejaya wandered about.[7] One day, in course of his wanderings, he met Indrota, the son of Cunaka, of rigid vows, and approaching him touched his feet.[8] The sage, beholding the king before him, reproved him gravely, saying,—Thou hast committed a great sin. Thou hast been guilty of fœticide. Why hast thou come here?[9] What business hast thou with us? Do not touch me by any means! Go, go away! Thy presence does not give us pleasure![10] Thy person smells like blood. Thy appearance is like that of a corpse. Though impure, thou seemest to be pure, and though dead thou movest like a living being![11] Dead within, thou art of impure soul, for thou art ever intent upon sin! Though thou sleepest and wakest, thy life, however, is passed in great misery![12] Thy life, O king, is useless! Thou livest most miserably! Thou hast been created for ignoble and sinful deeds.[13] Sires wish for sons from desire of obtaining diverse kinds of blessings, and hoping they would perform penances and sacrifices, worship the gods, and practise renunciation.*[14] Behold, the whole race of thy ancestors has fallen into hell in consequence of thy acts! All the hopes thy sires had placed upon thee have become fruitless![15] Thou livest in vain, for thou art always inspired with hatred and malice towards the Brāhmanas,—them, that is, by worshipping whom other men obtain long life, fame, and heaven![16] Leaving this world (when the time comes), thou shalt have to fall (into hell) with head downwards and remain in that posture for innumerable years in consequence of thy sinful deeds![17] There thou shalt be tortured by vultures and peacocks having iron beaks. Returning thence into this world, thou shalt have to take birth in a wretched order of creatures![18] If thou thinkest, O king, that this world is nothing and that the next world is the shadow of

---

* Making gifts, &c.—T.

a shadow, the myrmidons of Yama in the infernal regions will convince thee, dispelling thy unbelief!' "[19]—

Section CLI.

"Bhishma said,—'Thus addressed, Janamejaya replied unto the sage, saying,—Thou rebukest one that deserves to be rebuked! Thou censurest one that is deserving of censure![1] Thou upbraidest me and my acts. I implore thee to be graceful towards me! All my acts have been sinful. I burn, however, with repentance as if I am in the midst of blazing fire![2] My mind, in remembrance of my deeds, is exceedingly cheerless. Verily, I am much afraid of Yama![3] How can I bear to live without extracting that dart from my heart? O Caunaka, suppressing all thy wrath, instruct me now![4] Formerly I used to show great regard for Brāhmanas. I solemnly declare that I shall once more show the same regard for them! Let not my line be extinct! Let not the race in which I am born sink into the dust![5] It is not proper that they who have wronged Brāhmanas and have for that, in consequence of the injunctions of the Vedas, forfeited all claim to the respect of the world and to social intercourse with their fellowmen, should have any bearer of their names for continuing their races![6] I am overwhelmed with despair. I, therefore, repeat my resolves (about mending my conduct). I pray you to protect me like sages that do not accept gifts protecting the poor.[7] Sinful wights abstaining from sacrifices never attain to heaven.* Leaving (this world), they have to pass their time in the pits of hell like Pulindas and Khasas.†[8] Ignorant as I am, give me wisdom like a learned preceptor to his pupil or like a sire to his son! Be gratified with me, O Caunaka![9]—

"'Caunaka said,—What wonder is there that a person

---

* Here *amum* (the accusative of *adas*) evidently means 'that' and not 'this.' I think the reference, therefore, is to heaven and not to this world.—T.

† These are *Mlecchas* tribes of impure behaviour.—T.

destitute of wisdom should do many improper acts? Knowing this, a person of real wisdom is never angry with creatures (when they become guilty of folly).*[10] By ascending upon the top of wisdom's palace, one grieves for others, one's own self being then too pure for becoming an object of other people's grief. In consequence of one's wisdom one surveys all creatures in the world like a person on a mountain-top surveying people below.[11] The person who becomes an object of censure with good men, who hates good men and who hides himself from their view, never succeeds in obtaining any blessing and never understands the propriety of acts.[12]† Thou knowest what the energy and the nobility of the Brāhmana is as laid down in the Veda and other scriptures. Act now in such a way that tranquillity of heart may be thine and let Brāhmanas be thy refuge![13] If the Brāhmanas cease to be angry with thee, that will ensure thy felicity in heaven. If, again, thou repentest in sin, thy sight will be clear and thou wilt succeed in beholding righteousness![14]—

"'Janamejaya said,—I am repenting for my sins. I will never again seek to extinguish virtue! I desire to obtain blessedness. Be thou gratified with me![15]—

"'Caunaka said,—Dispelling arrogance and pride, O king, I wish thee to show regard for me![‡] Employ thyself in the good of all creatures, ever remembering the mandates of righteousness.[16] I am not reproving thee from fear or narrowness of mind or covetousness! Listen now, with these Brāhmanas here, to the words of truth I utter![17] I do not ask for anything. I shall, however, instruct thee in the ways of righteousness. All persons will croak and bray and cry fie on me (for what I am going to do).[18] They will even call me sinful. My kinsmen and friends will discard me.[§]

---

* The Bombay edition reads this verse differently.—T.

† Read differently in the Bombay edition.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, for my instructions.—T.

§ So great was the repugnance felt for the slayer of a Brāhmana that to even talk with him was regarded a sin. To instruct such a man in the truths of the Vedas and of morality was to desecrate religion itself.—T.

Without doubt, however, my kinsmen and friends, hearing the words I speak, will succeed in vigorously crossing the difficulties of life.[19] Some that are possessed of great wisdom will understand (my motives) rightly. Know, O child, what my views are, O Bhārata, in respect of the Brāhmanas![20] Do thou (after listening to me) act in such a way that they may, through my efforts, obtain every blessing! Do thou also, O king, pledge thy word that thou wilt not again injure the Brāhmanas![21] —

"'Janamejaya said,—I swear, touching even thy feet, that I shall never again, in thought, word, or deed, injure the Brāhmanas!—'"[22]

Section CLII.

"'Caunaka said,—I shall for these reasons discourse to thee of righteousness, to thee whose heart has been exceedingly agitated! Possessed of knowledge and great strength, and with a contented heart, thou seekest righteousness of thy own will![1] A king, first becoming exceedingly stern, then shows compassion and does good to all creatures by his acts. This is certainly very wonderful.[2] People say that that king who commences with sternness burns the whole world. Thou wert stern before. But thou turnest thy eyes on righteousness now![3] Forsaking luxurious food and all articles of enjoyment, thou hast betaken thyself for a long time to rigid penances. All this, O Janamejaya, is certain to appear wonderful to those kings that are sunk in sin.[4] That he who has affluence should become liberal, or that he who is endued with wealth of asceticism should become reluctant to spend it, is not at all wonderful. It has been said that the one does not live at a distance from the other.*[5] That which

* This version of 5 is offered tentatively. That a person possessed of affluence should become charitable is not wonderful. An ascetic, again, is very unwilling to exercise his power. (Witness Agastya's unwillingness to create wealth for gratifying his spouse). What is meant by these two persons not living at a distance from each other is that the same cause which makes an affluent person charitable operates to make an ascetic careful of the kind of wealth he has.—T.

is ill-judged produces misery in abundance. That, on the other hand, which is accomplished with the aid of sound judgment leads to excellent results.*[6] Sacrifice, gift, compassion, the Vedas, and truth, O lord of Earth,—these five,—are cleansing. The sixth is penance well-performed. This last, O Janamejaya, is highly cleansing for kings.[7] By betaking thyself to it properly, thou art certain to earn great merit and blessedness. Sojourn to sacred spots has also been said to be highly cleansing.[8] In this connection are cited the following verse sung by Yayāti :—That mortal who would earn life and longevity should, after having performed sacrifices with devotion, renounce them (in old age) and practise penances.[9]—The field of Kuru has been said to be sacred. The river Saraswati has been said to be more so. The *tirthas* of the Saraswati are more sacred than the Saraswati herself; and the *tirtha* called Prithudaka is more sacred than all the *tirthas* of the Saraswati. One that has bathed in Prithudaka and drunk its waters will not have to grieve for a premature death.[10] Thou shouldst go to *Mahasaras*, to all the *tirthas* designated by the name of Pushkara, to Prabhāsa, to the northern lake Mānasa, and to Kālodaka. Thou shalt then regain life and acquire longevity.[11] Lake Mānasa is on the spot where the Saraswati and the Driçadwati mingle with each other. A person possessed of Vedic knowledge should bathe in these places. Manu has said that liberality is the best of all duties, and that renunciation is better than liberality.[12] In this connection is cited the following verse composed by Satyavat. (One should act) as a child full of simplicity and destitute of either merit or sin.[13] As regards all creatures there is in this world neither misery nor happiness. (That which is called misery and that which is called happiness are the results of a diswrought imagination). Even this is the true nature of all living creatures.[14] Of all creatures, their lives are superior who have betaken themselves to renunciation and abstained from acts both meritorious and sinful. I shall now tell thee those acts which

* That which is *asamikshitam* is *samagram kārpanyam*.—T.

are best for a king.[15] By putting forth thy might and liberality do thou conquer heaven, O king! That man who possesses the attributes of might and energy succeeds in attaining to righteousness.*[16] Do thou rule the Earth, O king, for the sake of the Brāhmanas and for the sake of happiness. Thou usedst formerly to condemn the Brāhmanas. Do thou gratify them now.[17] Though they have cried fie on thee and though they have deserted thee, do thou still, guided by knowledge of self, solemnly pledge thyself never to injure them! Engaged in acts proper for thee, seek what is for thy highest good.[18] Amongst rulers some one becomes as cool as snow; some one, as fierce as fire; some one becomes like a plough (uprooting all enemies); and some one, again, becomes like a thunder-bolt (suddenly scorching his foes).[19] He who wishes to prevent self-destruction should never mix with wicked wights for general or special reasons.[20] From a sinful act committed only once, one may cleanse one's self by repenting for it. From a sinful act committed twice, one may cleanse one's self by vowing never to commit it again.[21] From such an act committed thrice, one may cleanse one's self by the resolution to bear one's self righteously ever afterwards. By committing such an act repeatedly, one may cleanse one's self by a sojourn to sacred places. One who is desirous of obtaining prosperity should do all that results in blessedness.[22] They who live amidst fragrant odors themselves become fragrant in consequence. They, on the other hand, who live in the midst of foul stench themselves become foul.[23] One devoted to the practice of ascetic penances is soon cleansed of all one's sins. By worshipping the (*homa*) fire for a year, one stained by diverse sins becomes purified.[24] One guilty of fœticide is cleansed by worshipping the fire for three years. One guilty of fœticide becomes cleansed at even a hundred *Yojanas* from Mahāsara, or the *tirthas* called Pushkara, or Prabhāsa, or Mānasa on the north, if only one

---

* Nilakantha explains that *bala* here means patience (strength to bear), and *ojas* (energy) means restraint of the senses.—T.

sets out for any of them.*[25] A slayer of creatures is cleansed of his sins by saving from imminent peril as many creatures of that particular species as have been slain by him.[26] Manu has said that by diving in water after thrice reciting the *Aghamarshana mantras*, one reaps the fruits of the final bath in a Horse-sacrifice.†[27] Such an act very soon cleanses one of all one's sins, and one regains in consequence the esteem of the world. All creatures become obedient to such a person, like helpless idiots (obedient to those that surround them).[28] The gods and *Asuras*, in days of yore, approaching the celestial preceptor Vrihaspati, O king, humbly enquired of him, saying,—Thou knowest, O great *Rishi*, the fruits of virtue, as also the fruits of those other acts that lead to hell in the next world.[29] Does not that person succeed in liberating himself from both merit and sin with whom the two (weal and woe) are equal? Tell us, O great *Rishi*, what the fruits of righteousness are, and how does a righteous person dispel his sins?[30]—

"'Vrihaspati answered,—If, having committed sin through folly, one does meritorious acts understanding their nature, one succeeds, by such righteousness, in cleansing one's self from sin even as a piece of dirty cloth is washed clean by means of some saline substance.[31] One should not boast after having committed sin. By having recourse to faith and by freeing one's self from malice, one succeeds in obtaining blessedness.[32] That person who covers the faults, even when exposed, of good men, obtains blessedness even after commit-

---

* Both the vernacular translators have rendered the second line of verse 25 wrongly. They seem to think that a person by setting out for any of the sacred waters from a distance of a hundred *yojanas* becomes cleansed. If this meaning be accepted, then no man who lives *within* a hundred *yojanas* of any of them has any chance of being cleansed. The sense, of course, is that such is the efficacy of these *tirthas* that a man becomes cleansed by approaching even to a spot within a hundred *yojanas* of their several sites.—T.

† These *mantras* form a part of the morning, noon, and evening prayer of every Brāhmana. Aghamarshana was a Vedic *Rishi* of great sanctity.—T.

ting faults.[33] As the sun rising at morn dispels all darkness, one dispels all one's sins by acting righteously.—'[34]

"Bhishma continued,—'Indrota the son of Cunaka, having said these words unto king Janamejaya, assisted him, by his ministrations, in the performance of the Horse-sacrifice.[35] The king, cleansed of his sins, and regaining blessedness, shone with splendour like a blazing fire, and that slayer of foes then entered his kingdom like Soma in his full form entering heaven.' "[36]

Section CLIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Hast thou, O grandsire, ever seen or heard of any mortal restored to life after having succumbed to death?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O king, to this story of the discourse between a vulture and a jackal as it happened of old. Indeed, the occurrence took place in the forest of Naimisha.[2] Once upon a time a Brāhmana had, after great difficulties, obtained a son of large expansive eyes. The child died of infantile convulsions.[3] Some (amongst his kinsmen), exceedingly agitated by grief and indulging in loud lamentations, took up the boy of tender years, that sole wealth of his family.[4] Taking the deceased child they proceeded in the direction of the crematorium. Arrived there they began to take the child from one another's breast and cry more bitterly in grief.[5] Recollecting with heavy hearts the former speeches of their darling again and again, they were unable to return home casting the body on the bare ground.[6] Summoned by their cries, a vulture came there and said these words:—Go ye away and do not tarry, ye that have to cast off but one child![7] Kinsmen always go away leaving on this spot thousands of men and thousands of women brought here in course of Time.[8] Behold, the whole universe is subject to weal and woe! Union and disunion may be seen in turns.[9] They that have come to the crematorium bringing with them the dead bodies of kinsmen, and they that sit by those bodies (from affection), themselves disappear from the world in consequence of their

own acts when the allotted periods of their own lives run out.[10] There is no need of your lingering in the crematorium, this horrible place, that is full of vultures and jackals and that abounds with skeletons and inspires every creature with dread![11] Whether friend or foe, no one ever comes back to life having once succumbed to the power of Time. Such, indeed, is the fate of all creatures.[12] In this world of mortals, every one that is born is sure to die. Who shall restore to life one that is dead and gone on the way ordained by the Destroyer?[13] At this hour when men are about to close their daily toil, the Sun is retiring to the *Asta* hills. Go ye to your homes, casting off this affection for the child![14]—Hearing these words of the vulture, the grief of the kinsmen seemed to abate, and placing the child on the bare ground they prepared to go away.[15] Assuring themselves of the fact that the child had died and despairing of seeing him again, they began to retrace their steps, indulging in loud lamentations.[16] Assured beyond doubt, and despairing of restoring the dead to life, they cast off that offspring of their race, and prepared to turn back from that spot.[17] At this time a jackal, black as a raven, issued out of his hole and addressed those departing kinsmen, saying,—Surely, ye that are kinsmen of that deceased child have no affection![18] There the Sun still shineth in the sky, ye fools! Indulge your feelings, without fear! Multifarious are the virtues of the hour. This one may come back to life![19] Spreading a few blades of *Kuça* grass on the ground and abandoning that dear child on the crematorium, why do ye go away with hearts of steel and casting off every affection for the darling?[20] Surely, ye have no affection for that sweet-speeched child of tender years, whose words, soon as they left his lips, used to gladden you greatly![21] Behold the affection that even birds and beasts bear towards their offspring! Theirs is no return for bringing up their young ones![22] Like the sacrifices of the *Rishis* (that are never undertaken from desire of fruit or rewards) the affection of quadrupeds, of birds, and insects, bears no reward in heaven.[23] Though delighting in their children they are never seen to derive any benefit

from the latter either here or hereafter. Yet they cherish their young ones with affection![24] Their children, growing up, never cherish them in age. Yet are not they grieved when they do not behold their little ones?[25] Where, indeed, is affection to be seen in human beings that they would own the influence of grief?* Where would you go leaving here this child who is the perpetuater of his race?[6] Do you shed tears for him for some time, and do you look at him a little longer with affection! Objects so dear are, indeed, difficult to abandon.[27] It is friends and not others that wait by the side of him that is weak, of him that is prosecuted in a court of law, of him that is borne towards the crematorium.[28] Life-breaths are dear unto all, and all feel the influence of affection. Behold the affection that is cherished by even those that belong to the intermediate species![†][29] How, indeed, can you go away, casting off this boy of eyes large as the petals of the lotus, and handsome as a newly-married youth washed clean and adorned with floral garlands?[30]—Hearing these words of the jackal that had been indulging in such expressions of touching grief, the men turned back for the sake of the corpse.[31]

"'The vulture said,—Alas, ye men destitute of strength of mind, why do ye turn back at the bidding of a cruel and mean jackal of little intelligence?[32] Why do you mourn for that compound of five elements deserted by their presiding deities, no longer tenanted (by the soul), motionless, and stiff as a piece of wood? Why do you not grieve for your own selves?[33] Do you practise austere penances by which you will succeed in cleansing yourselves from sin! Everything may be had by means of penances. What will lamentations do?[34] Ill-luck is born with the body.[‡] It is in

---

* In the first line of 26 the correct reading is *Kutah* and not *Kritah* as adopted by the Burdwan translators.—T.

† *I. e.*, beasts and birds. The vernacular translators wrongly render it—'Behold the affection that is cherished by those that are good towards even the beasts and birds!'—T.

‡ The correct reading is *Murttinā* (as in the Bombay text) and not *Mrityunā*. The Burdwan version adopts the incorrect reading.—T.

consequence of that ill-luck that this boy has departed, plunging you into infinite grief![35] Wealth, kine, gold, precious gems, children, all have their root in penances. Penances again are the result of *yoga* (union of the soul with Godhead).[36] Amongst creatures, the measure of weal or woe is dependant on the acts of a previous life. Indeed, every creature comes into the world, taking with him his own measure of weal and woe.[37] The son is not bound by the acts of the sire, or the sire by those of the son. Bound by their own acts good and bad, all have to travel by this common road.[38] Duly practise all the duties, and abstain from acts of unrighteousness! Reverentially wait, according to the directions of the scriptures, upon the gods and the Brāhmanas![39] Cast off sorrow and cheerlessness, and abstain from parental affection! Leave the child on this exposed ground, and go ye away without delay![40] The acter alone enjoys the fruits of acts, good or bad, that he does. What concern have kinsmen with them?[41] Casting off a (deceased) kinsman however dear, kinsmen leave this spot. With eyes bathed in tears, they go away, ceasing to display affection for the dead.[42] Wise or ignorant, rich or poor, every one succumbs to Time, endued with acts good and bad.[43] What will you do by mourning? Why do you grieve for one that is dead? Time is the lord of all, and in obedience to his very nature he casts an equal eye on all things.[44] In pride of youth or in helpless infancy, bearing the weight of years or lying in the mother's womb, every one is subject to be assailed by Death. Such, indeed, is the course of the world!—[45]

" 'The jackal said,—Alas, the affection cherished by your weeping selves that are overwhelmed with grief for your deceased child has been lessened by that light-brained vulture![46] Even this must be the case, since in consequence of his well-applied words fraught with tranquillity and capable of producing conviction, there that one goes back to the town, casting off affection that is so difficult to abandon![47] Alas, I had supposed that great is the grief felt by men indulging in loud lamentations for the death of a child and for the corpse on a crematorium, like that of kine bereft of calves![48]

Today, however, I understand what the measure of grief is of human beings on earth! Witnessing their great affection I had shed tears myself![49] (It seems however, that their affection is not strong!) One should always exert. Thence does one succeed through destiny. Exertion and destiny, joining together, produce fruits.[50] One should always exert with hopefulness. How can happiness be had from despondency? Objects of desire may be won by resolution. Why then do you go back so heartlessly?[51] Where do you go, abandoning in the wilderness this son of your own loins, this perpetuater of the race of his sires?[52] Stay here till the sun sets and the evening twilight comes. You may then take away this boy with yourselves or stay here with him![53]—

"'The vulture said,—I am, ye men, a full thousand years of age today, but I have never seen a dead creature, male or female or of ambiguous sex, revive after death![54] Some die in the womb; some die soon after birth; some die (in infancy) while crawling (on all fours); some die in youth; and some in old age.[55] The fortunes of all creatures, including even beasts and birds, are unstable. The periods of life of all mobile and immobile creatures are fixed beforehand.[56] Bereaved of spouses and dear ones and filled with sorrow for (the death of) children, men leave this spot every day with agonised hearts for returning home.[57] Leaving on this spot both friends and foes numbering by thousands, kinsmen afflicted with grief go back to their homes.[58] Cast off this lifeless body which has no longer any animal heat in it and which is as stiff as a piece of wood! Why then do you not go away, leaving the body of this child which has become like a piece of wood and whose life has entered a new body?[59] This affection (which ye are displaying) is unmeaning, and this hugging of the child is fruitless. He does not see with his eyes or hear with his ears.[60] Leaving him here, go ye away without delay![61] Thus addressed by me in words which are apparently cruel but which in reality are fraught with reason and have a direct bearing with the high religion of emancipation, go ye back to your respective homes![62]— Addressed thus by the vulture endued with wisdom and know-

ledge and capable of imparting intelligence and awakening the understanding, those men prepared themselves to turn their backs upon the crematorium. Grief, indeed, increaseth to twice its measure at sight of its object and at the remembrance of the acts of that object (in life).[63] Having heard these words of the vulture, the men resolved to leave the spot. Just at that time the jackal, coming thither with quick steps, cast his eyes on the child lying in the sleep of death.[64]

"'The jackal said,—Why, indeed, do you leave, at the vulture's bidding, this child of golden complexion, adorned with ornaments, and capable of giving the obsequial cake to his ancestors?[65] If you abandon him, your affection will not come to an end, nor these piteous lamentations! On the other hand, your grief will certainly be greater.[66] It is heard that a Cudra named Camvuka having been slain and righteousness having been upheld by Rāma of true prowess, a (dead) Brāhmana child was restored to life.*[67] Similarly the son of the royal sage Cweta had died (prematurely). But the monarch, devoted to virtue, succeeded in reviving his dead child.[68] After the same manner, in your case also, some sage or deity may be willing to grant your desire and show compassion to you that are crying so piteously!'[69]—Thus addressed by the jackal, the men, afflicted with grief and full of affection for the child, retraced their steps, and placing the child's head on their laps one after another, began to indulge in copious lamentations. Summoned by their cries, the vulture, coming to that spot, once more spoke unto them as follows.

---

* The allusion is to the story of Rāma having restored a dead Brāhmana boy. During Rāma's righteous reign there were no premature deaths in his kingdom. It happened, however, one day that a Brāhmana father came to Rāma's court and complained of the premature death of his son. Rāma instantly began to enquire after the cause. Some sinful act in some corner of the kingdom, it was suspected, had caused the deed. Soon enough Rāma discovered a Cudra of the name of Camvuka engaged in the heart of a deep forest in ascetic penances. The king instantly cut off the man's head inasmuch as a Cudra by birth had no right to do what that man was doing. As soon as righteousness was upheld, the deceased Brāhmana boy revived. (*Rāmāyana, Uttara kāndam*).—T.

"'The vulture said,—Why are you bathing this child with your tears? Why are you pressing him in this fashion with the touch of your palms? At the command of the grim king of justice the child has been sent to that sleep which knows no waking.[71] Those that are endued with the merit of penances, those that are possessed of wealth, those that have great intelligence, in fact, all succumb to death. Even this is the place intended for the dead.[72] It is always to be seen that kinsmen, casting off thousands of kinsmen young and old, pass their nights and days in grief, rolling on the bare ground.[73] Cease this ardour in putting on the trappings of woe. That this child would come back to life is what passes belief.[74] He will not get back his life at the bidding of the jackal. If a person once dies and takes leave of his body, his body never regains animation.[75] Hundreds of jackals, by laying down their own lives,* will not succeed in reviving this child in hundreds of years.[76] If, however, Rudra, or Kumāra, or Brahman, or Vishnu, grant him a boon, then only may this child come back to life![77] Neither the shedding of tears, nor the drawing of long sighs, nor copious lamentations, will bring back this one to life![78] Myself, the jackal, you all, and all the kinsmen of this one, with all our merits and sins, are on the same road (that this one has taken).[79] For this reason one possessed of wisdom should, from a distance, avoid behaviour that displeases others, harsh speeches, the infliction of injury on others, the enjoyment of other people's wives, and sin and falsehood![80] Carefully seek righteousness, truth, the good of others, justice, compassion for all creatures, sincerity, and honesty![81] They incur sin who, while living, do not cast their eyes upon their mothers and fathers and kinsmen and friends![82] What will you do, by crying, for him after death, that sees not with his eyes and that stirs not in the least?[83]—Thus addressed, the men, overwhelmed with sorrow and burning with grief on account of their affection for the child, departed for their homes, leaving the body (on the crematorium).[84]

* Literally, 'by giving up their own bodies.'—T.

"'The jackal said,—Alas, terrible is this world of mortals! Here no creature can escape. Every creature's period of life, again, is short. Beloved friends are always departing.[85] It abounds with vanities and falsehoods, with accusations and evil reports! Beholding again this incident that enhances pain and grief, I do not for a moment like this world of men![86] Alas, fie on you, ye men, that thus turn back, like foolish persons, at the vulture's bidding, though you are burning with grief on account of the death of this child![87] Ye cruel wights, how can you go away, casting off parental affection upon hearing the words of a sinful vulture of uncleansed soul?[88] Happiness is followed by misery, and misery by happiness. In this world which is enveloped by both happiness and misery, none of these two exists uninterruptedly.[89] Ye men of little understandings, whither would ye go, casting off on the bare ground this child of so much beauty, this son that is an ornament of your race?[90] Verily, I cannot dispel the idea from my mind that this child endued with comeliness and youth and blazing with beauty is alive![91] It is not meet that he should die.* It seems that ye are sure to obtain happiness! Ye that are afflicted with grief on account of the death of this child will surely have good luck today![92] Anticipating the probability of inconvenience and pain (if you remain here for the night) and fixing your hearts on your own comfort, whither would you, like persons of little intelligence, go, leaving this darling?†—'[93]

"Bhishma continued,—'Even thus, O king, the kinsmen of the deceased child, unable to decide upon what they should do, were, for the accomplishment of his own purpose, induced by that sinful jackal who uttered agreeable falsehoods,—that denizen of the crematorium who wandered every night in quest of food,—to stay in that place.[94-95]

"'The Vulture said,—Dreadful is this spot, this wilderness, that resounds with the screech of owls and teems with

---

* *I. e.*, he is sure to come back to life.—T.

† Verse 92 and the first line of 93 are differently read in the Bombay text. The Bengal readings are better.—T.

spirits and *Yakshas* and *Rākshasas*.[96] Terrible and awful, its aspect is like that of a mass of blue clouds. Casting off the dead body, finish the funeral rites![97] Indeed, throwing away the body, accomplish those rites before the sun sets and before the points of the horizon become enveloped in gloom![98] The hawks are uttering their harsh cries. Jackals are howling fiercely. Lions are roaring. The sun is setting.[99] The trees on the crematorium are assuming a dark hue in consequence of the blue smoke of the funeral pyres. The carnivorous denizens of this place, afflicted with hunger, are yelling in rage.[100] All those creatures of horrible forms that live in this frightful place, all those carnivorous animals of grim features that haunt this desert, will soon assail you.[101] This wilderness is certainly frightful. Danger will overtake you.[102] Indeed, if you listen to these false and fruitless words of the jackal against your own good sense, verily, all of you are sure to be destroyed![103]—

"'The jackal said,—Stay where you are! There is no fear even in this desert as long as the sun shines. Till the god of day sets, do ye remain here hopefully, induced by parental affection![104] Without any fear, indulging in lamentations as ye please, continue to look at this child with eyes of affection. Frightful though this wilderness be, no danger will overtake you.[105] In reality this wilderness presents an aspect of quiet and peace. It is here that the *Pitris* by thousands took leave of the world. Wait as long as the sun shines! What are this vulture's words to you?[106] If with stupified understandings ye accept the cruel and harsh speeches of the vulture, then your child will never come back to life!'[107]—

"Bhishma continued,—'The vulture then addressed those men, saying that the sun had set. The jackal said that it was not so. Both the vulture and the jackal felt the pangs of hunger and thus addressed the kinsmen of the dead child.[108] Both of them had girded up their loins for accomplishing their respective purposes. Exhausted with hunger and thirst, they thus disputed, having recourse to the scriptures.[109] Moved (alternately) by these words, sweet as nectar, of those two creatures, *viz.*, the bird and the beast, both of whom were

endued with the wisdom of knowledge, the kinsmen at one time wished to go away and at another to stay there.[110] At last, moved by grief and cheerlessness, they waited there, indulging in bitter lamentations. They did not know that the beast and the bird, skilled in accomplishing their own purposes, had only stupified them (by their addresses).[111] While the bird and the beast, both possessed of wisdom, were thus disputing and while the kinsmen of the deceased child sat listening to them, the great god Cankara, urged by his divine spouse (Umā), came there with eyes bathed in tears of compassion.[112] Addressing the kinsmen of the deceased child, the god said,—I am Cankara the giver of boons!—With hearts heavy with grief, those men prostrated themselves before the great deity and said unto him in reply,[113]—Bereft of this one who was our only child, all of us are on the point of death! It behoveth thee to grant us life by granting life to this our son![114]—Thus solicited, the illustrious deity, taking up a quantity of water in his hands, granted unto that dead child life extending for a hundred years.[115] Ever employed in the good of all creatures, the illustrious wielder of *Pināka* granted a boon unto both the jackal and the vulture in consequence of which their hunger was appeased.[116] Filled with delight and having achieved great prosperity, the men bowed unto the god. Crowned with success, they then, O king, left that spot in great joy.[117] Through persistent hopefulness and firm resolution and the grace of the great god, the fruits of one's acts are obtained without delay.[118] Behold, the combination of circumstances and the resolution of those kinsmen! While crying with agonised hearts, their tears were wiped and dried up![119] Behold, how within only a short time, through their steadiness of resolution, they obtained the grace of Cankara, and their afflictions dispelled, they were made happy![120] Indeed, through Cankara's grace, O chief of the Bharatas, those sorrowing kinsmen were filled with amazement and delight at the restoration of their child to life![121] Then, O king, casting off that grief of which their child had been the cause, those Brāhmanas, filled with delight, quickly went back to their town, taking the restored child with them,

Behaviour like this has been laid down for all the four orders.[123] By frequently listening to this auspicious story fraught with virtue, profit, and salvation, a man obtains happiness both here and hereafter.' ".[23]

SECTION CLIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'If a person, weak, worthless, and light-hearted, O grandsire, doth from folly provoke, by means of unbecoming and boastful speeches, a powerful foe always residing in his vicinity, competent to do good (when pleased) and chastise (when displeased), and always ready for action, how should the former, relying on his own strength, act when the latter advances against him in wrath and from desire of exterminating him?'[1-3]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited, O chief of the Bharatas, the old story of the discourse between Cālmali and Pavana.[4] There was a lordly (*Çālmali*) tree on one of the heights of Himavat. Having grown for many centuries, he had spread out his branches wide around. His trunk also was huge and his twigs and leaves were innumerable.[5] Under his shade toil-worn elephants in rut, bathed in sweat, used to rest, and many animals of other species also.[6] The circumference of his trunk was four hundred cubits, and dense was the shade of his branches and leaves. Loaded with flowers and fruits, it was the abode of innumerable parrots male and female.[7] In travelling along their routes, caravans of merchants and traders, and ascetics residing in the woods, used to rest under the shade of that delightful monarch of the forest.[8] One day, the sage Nārada, O bull of Bharata's race, seeing the wide-extending and innumerable branches of that tree and the circumference of his trunk, approached and addressed him, saying,[9]—O, thou art delightful! O, thou art charming! O foremost of trees, O Cālmali, I am always delighted at thy sight![10] O charming tree, delightful birds of diverse kinds, and elephants and other animals, cheerfully live on thy branches and under their shade![11] Thy branches, O wide-branched monarch of the forest, and thy trunk are gigantic! I never see any of

them broken by the god of wind ![12] Is it, O child, the case that Pavana is pleased with thee and is thy friend so that he protects thee always in these woods ?[13] The illustrious Pavana possessed of great speed and force moveth from their sites the tallest and strongest trees, and even mountain summits ![14] That sacred bearer of perfumes, blowing (when he wills) drieth up rivers and lakes and seas, including the very nether region ![15] Without doubt, Pavana protects thee through friendship. It is for this reason that, though possesssed of innumerable branches, thou art still graced with leaves and flowers ![16] O monarch of the forest, this thy verdure is delightful since these winged creatures, O child, filled with joy, sport on thy twigs and branches ![17] During the season when thou puttest forth thy blossoms, the sweet notes of all these denizens of thy branches are heard separately when they indulge in their melodious songs.[18] Then, again, O Cā'mali, these elephants that are the ornaments of their species, bathed in sweat and indulging in cries (of delight), approach thee and find happiness here ![19] Similarly, diverse other species of animals inhabiting the woods, contribute to adorn thee ! Indeed, O tree, thou lookest beautiful even like the mountains of Meru peopled by creatures of every kind.[20] Resorted to also by Brāhmanas crowned with ascetic success, by others engaged in penances, and by *Yatis* devoted to contemplation,* this thy region, I think, resembles heaven itself ! "—[21]

SECTION CLV.

" 'Nārada said,—Without doubt, O Cālmali, the terrible and irresistible god of wind always protects thee from friendliness or amity.[1] It seems, O Cālmali, that a close intimacy has come to subsist between thee and the Wind. It seems thou hast said unto him these words, *viz.,—I am thine* !—and

---

* The word *çramana* is used in Brāhmanical literature to signify a certain order of ascetics or *yatis* that have renounced work for meditation. It is also frequently employed to mean a person of low life or profession. It should be noted, however, that in Buddhistic literature the word came to be exclusively used for Buddhistic monks.—T.

it is for this reason that the Wind-god protects thee ![2] I do not see the tree or mountain or mansion in this world that may not, I think, be broken by the Wind.[3] Without doubt, thou standest here with all thy branches and twigs and leaves, simply because, O Cālmali, thou art protected by the Wind for some reason or reasons (unknown to us) !—[4]

"'The Cālmali said,—The Wind, O regenerate one, is neither my friend nor mate nor well-wisher. Indeed, he is neither my great Ordainer that he should protect me ![5] My fierce energy and might, O Nārada, are greater than the Wind's. In truth, the strength of the Wind comes up to about only an eighteenth part of mine ![6] When the Wind comes in rage, tearing up trees and mountains and other things, I curb his strength by putting forth mine.[7] Indeed, the Wind that breaks many things has himself been repeatedly broken by me. For this reason, O celestial *Rishi*, I am not afraid of him even when he comes in wrath !—[8]

"'Nārada said,—O Cālmali, thy perception seems to be thoroughly perverse. There is no doubt in this. There is no created thing which is equal to the Wind in strength.[9] Even Indra, or Yama, or Vaiçravana, or Varuna the lord of the waters, is not equal to the god of wind in might. What need, therefore, be said of thee that art only a tree ?[10] Whatever creature in this world, O Cālmali, does whatever act, the illustrious Wind-god it is that is at all times the cause of that act, since it is he that is the giver of life.[11] When that god exerts himself with propriety, he makes all living creatures live at their ease. When, however, he exerts improperly, calamities overtake the creatures of the world.[12] What else can it be than weakness of understanding which induces thee to thus withhold thy worship from the god of wind, that foremost of creatures in the universe, that being deserving of worship ?[13] Thou art worthless and of a wicked understanding. Indeed, thou indulgest only in unmeaning brag ! Thy intelligence being confounded by wrath and other evil passions, thou speakest only untruths, O Cālmali ![14] I am certainly angry with thee for thy indulging in such speeches ![15] I shall myself report to the god of wind all these derrogatory words of thine.[16] *Chan-*

danas, and *Syandanas*, and *Çālas*, and *Saralas* and *Devadārus* and *Vetasas* and *Dhanwanas* and other trees of good souls that are far stronger than thou art, have never, O thou of wicked understanding, uttered such invectives against the Wind.[17] All of them know the might of the Wind as also the might that is possessed by each of them. For these reasons those foremost of trees bow down their heads in respect to that deity.[18] Thou, however, through folly, knowest not the infinite might of the Wind. I shall, therefore, repair to the presence of that god (for apprising him of thy contempt for him)!—' "[19]

SECTION CLVI.

"Bhishma continued,—"Having said these words unto the Cālmali, that foremost of all persons conversant with *Brahma*, viz., Nārada, represented unto the god of wind all that the Cālmali had said about him.[1]

" 'Nārada said,—There is a certain Cālmali on the breast of Himavat, adorned with branches and leaves. His roots extend deep into the Earth and his branches spread wide around. That tree, O god of wind, disregards thee![2] He spoke many words fraught with abuse of thyself. It is not proper, O Wind, that I should repeat them in thy hearing.[3] I know, O Wind, that thou art the foremost of all created things. I know too that thou art a very superior and very mighty being, and that in wrath thou resemblest the Destroyer himself!—'[4]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of Nārada, the god of wind, wending to that Cālmali, addressed him in rage and said as follows.[5]

" 'The Wind-god said,—O Cālmali, thou hast spoken in derrogation of me before Nārada. Know that I am the god of wind. I shall certainly show thee my power and might![6] I know thee well. Thou art no stranger to me. The puissant Grandsire, while engaged in creating the world, had for a time rested under thee.[7] It is in consequence of this incident that I have hitherto shown thee grace. O worst of trees, it is for

this that thou standest unharmed, and not in consequence of thy own might!' Thou regardest me lightly as if I were a vulgar thing. I shall show myself unto thee in such a way that thou mayst not again disregard me!'[9]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed, the Cālmali laughed in derision and replied, saying,—O god of wind, thou art angry with me! Do not forbear showing the extent of thy might![10] Do thou vomit all thy wrath upon me! By giving way to thy wrath, what wilt thou do to me? Even if thy might had been thy own (instead of being derived) I would not still have been afraid of thee! I am superior to thee in might. I should not be frightened at thee![11] They are really strong that are strong in understanding. They, on the other hand, are not to be regarded strong that are possessed of only physical strength![12]—Thus addressed, the Wind-god said,—Tomorrow I shall test thy strength!—After this, night came.[13] The Cālmali, concluding mentally what the extent is of the Wind's might and beholding his ownself to be inferior to the god, began to say to himself,[14]—All that I said to Nārada is false! I am certainly inferior in might to the Wind. Verily, he is strong in his strength.[15] The Wind, as Nārada said, is always mighty. Without doubt, I am weaker than other trees.[16] But in intelligence no tree is my equal. Therefore, relying upon my intelligence I shall look at this fear that arises from the Wind.[17] If the other trees in the forest all rely upon the same kind of intelligence, then, verily, no injury can result to them from the god of wind when he becomes angry.[18] All of them, however, are destitute of understanding, and, therefore, they do not know, as I know, why or how the Wind succeeds in shaking and tearing them up!—' "[19]

SECTION CLVII.

"Bhishma said,—"Having settled this in his mind, the Cālmali, in sorrow, himself caused all his branches, principal and subsidiary, to be cut off.[1] Casting off his branches and leaves and flowers, at morn the tree looked steadily at the Wind as he came towards him.[2] Filled with rage and breath-

ing hard, the Wind advanced, felling large trees, towards that spot where the Cālmali stood.[3] Beholding him divested of top and branches and leaves and flowers, the Wind, filled with joy, smilingly addressed that lord of the forest which had before such a gigantic appearance, these words.[4]

"'The Wind said,—Filled with rage, O Cālmali, I would have done to thee precisely what thou hast done to thyself by lopping off all thy branches![5] Thou art now divested of thy proud top and flowers, and thou art now without thy shoots and leaves. In consequence of thy own evil counsels, thou hast been brought under my power!—'[6]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of the Wind, the Cālmali felt great shame. Remembering also the words that Nārada had said, he began to repent greatly for his folly.[7] Even in this way, O tiger among kings, a weak and foolish person, by provoking the enmity of a powerful one, is at last obliged to repent like the Cālmali in story.[8] Even when possessed of equal might, people do not suddenly wage hostilities with those that have injured them. On the other hand, they display their might gradually, O king![9] A person of foolish understanding should never provoke the hostility of one that is possessed of intelligence. In such cases the intelligence of the intelligent man penetrates (the subject upon which it is employed) like fire penetrating a heap of dry grass.[10] Intelligence is the most precious possession that a person can have. Similarly, O king, a man can have nothing here more valuable than might.[11] One should, therefore, overlook the wrongs inflicted by a person possessed of superior strength, even as one should overlook (from compassion) the acts of a child, an idiot, or one that is blind or deaf. The wisdom of this saying is witnessed in thy case, O slayer of foes![12] The eleven *Akshauhinis* (of Duryodhana), O thou of great splendour, and the seven (collected by thyself), were not, in might, equal to the single-handed Arjuna of high soul.[13] All the troops (of Duryodhana), therefore, were routed and slain by that illustrious Pāndava, that son of Pāka's chastiser, as he coursed on the field of battle, relying on his own strength.[14] I have, O Bhārata, discoursed to thee of the duties of kings

and the morality of duties in detail. What else, O king, dost thou wish to hear!'"[15]

SECTION CLVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I desire, O bull of Bharata's race, to hear in detail the source from which sin proceeds and the foundation upon which it rests!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Hear, O king, what the foundation is of sin! Covetousness alone is a great destroyer (of merit and goodness). From covetousness proceeds sin.[2] It is from this source that sin and irreligiousness flow, together with great misery. This covetousness is the spring of also all the cunning and hypocrisy in the world. It is covetousness that makes men commit sin.[3] From covetousness proceeds wrath; from covetousness flows lust; and it is from covetousness that loss of judgment, deception, pride, arrogance, and malice,[4] as also vindictiveness, shamelessness, loss of prosperity, loss of virtue, anxiety, and infamy, spring.[5] Miserliness, cupidity, desire for every kind of improper act, pride of birth, pride of learning, pride of beauty, pride of wealth,[6] pitilessness for all creatures, malevolence towards all, trustlessness in respect of all, insincerity towards all,[7] appropriation of other people's wealth, ravishment of other people's wives, harshness of speech, anxiety, propensity to speak ill of others,[8] violent craving for the indulgence of lust, gluttony, liability to premature death, violent propensity towards malice, irresistible liking for falsehood, unconquerable apetite for indulging the passions, insatiable desire for indulging the ear,[9] evil-speaking, boastfulness, arrogance, abstention from duties, rashness, and perpetration of every kind of evil act,—all these proceed from covetousness.[10] In life, men are unable, whether infants or youths or men, to abandon covetousness. Such is the nature of covetousness that it never decays even with the decay of life.[11] Like the ocean that can never be filled by the constant discharge of even innumerable rivers of immeasurable depths, covetousness is incapable of being gratified by acquisitions to any extent.[12] That covetousness, however,

which is never gratified by acquisitions and satiated by the accomplishment of desires, that which is not known in its real nature by the gods, the *Gandharvas*, the *Asuras*, the great snakes, and, in fact, by all classes of beings, that irresistible passion, along with that folly which invites the heart to the unrealities of the world, should ever be conquered by a person of cleansed soul.[13-14] Pride, malice, slander, crookedness, and incapacity to hear other people's good, are vices, O descendant of Kuru, that are to be seen in persons of uncleansed soul under the domination of covetousness.[15] Even persons of great learning who bear in their minds all the voluminous scriptures, and who are competent to dispel the doubts of others, show themselves in this respect to be of weak understandings and feel great misery in consequence of this passion.[16] Covetous men are wedded to envy and wrath. They are outside the pale of good behaviour. Of crooked hearts, the speeches they utter are sweet. They resemble, therefore, dark pits whose mouths are covered with grass.[17] They attire themselves in the hypocritical cloak of religion. Of low minds, they rob the world, setting up (if need be) the standard of religion and virtue. Relying upon the strength of apparent reasons, they create diverse kinds of schisms in religion. Intent upon accomplishing the purposes of cupidity, they destroy the ways of righteousness.[18] When wicked-souled persons under the domination of covetousness apparently practise the duties of righteousness, the consequence that results is that the desecrations committed by them soon become current among men.[19] Pride, wrath, arrogance, insensibility, paroxysms of joy and sorrow, and self-importance, all these, O descendant of Kuru, are to be seen in persons swayed by covetousness.[20] Know that they who are always under the influence of covetousness are wicked. I shall now tell thee of those about whom thou askest, *viz.*, those who are called good and whose practices are pure.[21] They who have no fear of an obligation to return to this world (after death), they who have no fear of the next world, they who are not addicted to animal food and who have no liking for what is agreeable and no dislike for

what is otherwise,[22] they to whom good behaviour is ever dear, they in whom there is self-restraint, they to whom pleasure and pain are equal, they who have truth for their high refuge,[23] they who give but not take, they who have compassion, they who worship *Pitris*, gods, and guests, they who are always ready to exert themselves (for the good of others),[24] they who are universal benefactors, they who are possessed of great courage (of mind), they who observe all the duties laid down in the scriptures, they who are devoted to the good of all, they who can give their all and lay down their very lives for others, are regarded as good and virtueus, O Bhārata![25] Those promoters of righteousness are incapable of being forced away from the path of virtue. Their conduct, conformable to the model set by the righteous men of old, can never be otherwise.[26] They are perfectly fearless; they are tranquil; they are mild; and they always adhere to the right path. Full of compassion, they are always worshipped by the good.[27] They are free from lust and wrath. They are not attached to any worldly object. They have no pride. They are observant of excellent vows. They are always objects of regard. Do thou, therefore, always wait upon them and seek instruction from them.[28] They never acquire virtue, O Yudhishthira, for the sake of wealth or of fame. They acquire it, on the other hand, because it is a duty like that of cherishing the body.[29] Fear, wrath, restlessness, and sorrow do not dwell in them. Theirs is not the outward garb of religion for misleading their fellow men. There is no mystery with them.[30] They are perfectly contented. Theirs is no error of judgment arising from covetousness. They are always devoted to truth and sincerity. Their hearts never fall away from righteousness. Thou shouldst show thy regard for them always, O son of Kunti![31] They are never delighted at any acquisition or pained at any loss. Without attachment to anything, and freed from pride, they are wedded to the quality of Goodness, and they cast an equal eye on all.[32] Gain and loss, weal and woe, the agreeable and the disagreeable, life and death, are equal in the eyes of those men of firm tread, engaged in the pursuit of (divine) knowledge, and devoted to

the path of tranquillity and righteousness.[53] Keeping thy senses under restraint and without yielding to heedlessness, thou shouldst always worship those high-souled persons who bear such love for virtue. O blessed one, one's words become productive of good only through the favor of the gods. Under other circumstances, words produce evil consequence.*' "[54]

SECTION CLIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast said, O grandsire, that the foundation of all evils is covetousness. I wish, O sire, to hear of ignorance in detail !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The person who commits sin through ignorance, who does not know that his end is at hand, and who always hates those that are of good behaviour, soon incurs infamy in the world.[2] In consequence of ignorance one sinks into hell. Ignorance is the spring of misery. Through ignorance one suffers afflictions and incurs great danger.'[3]

"Yudhishthira said,—'I desire, O king, to hear in detail the origin, the place, the growth, the decay, the rise, the root, the inseparable attribute, the course, the time, the cause, and the consequence, of ignorance. The misery that is felt here is all born of ignorance !†'[4-5]

"Bhishma said,—'Attachment, hate, loss of judgment, joy, sorrow, vanity, lust, wrath, pride, procrastination, idleness,[6] desire, aversion, jealousy, envy, and all other sinful acts are all known by the common name of ignorance.‡[7] Hear now, O king, in detail, about its tendency, growth, and other features after which thou enquirest.[3] These two, *viz.*, ignorance and covetousness, know, O king, are the same (in subs-

---

* This is how Nilakantha seems to explain the line. Bhishma is anxious about the effect of his instructions. He says that those instructions would bear fruit if the gods will it; otherwise, his words would go for nothing, however carefully he might speak.—T.

† The commentator explains that including the first, altogether 12 questions are put by Yudhishthira.—T.

‡ This is an answer to the first question. *viz.*, the general aspect of ignorance.—T.

tance). Both are productive of the same fruits and same faults, O Bhārata![9] Ignorance has its origin in covetousness. As covetousness grows, ignorance also grows. Ignorance exists there where covetousness exists. As covetousness decreases, ignorance also decreases. It rises with the rise of covetousness Manifold again is the course that it takes.[10] The root of covetousness is loss of judgment. Loss of judgment, again, is its inseparable attribute. Eternity is ignorance's course. The time when ignorance appears is when the objects of covetousness are not won.[11] From one's ignorance proceeds covetousness, and from the latter proceeds ignorance. (Covetousness, therefore, is both the cause and consequence of ignorance). Covetousness is productive of all faults. For these reasons every one should avoid covetousness.[12] Janaka, and Yuvanāçwa, and Vrishadarbhi, and Prasenajit, and other kings acquired heaven in consequence of their having repressed covetousness.[13] Do thou also in the sight of all persons, avoid covetousness by a strong resolution, O chief of the Kurus! Avoiding covetousness thou shalt obtain happiness both here and in the next world.'".[14]

Section CLX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, O thou of virtuous soul, what, indeed, is said to be productive of great merit* for a person attentively engaged in the study of the Vedas and desirous of acquiring virtue?[1] That which is regarded in this world as productive of high merit is of diverse kinds as set forth in the scriptures. Tell me, O grandsire, about that which is regarded as such both here and hereafter![2] The path

---

* The word *Creayas* has a peculiar meaning. It implies, literally, the best of all things; hence, ordinarily, in such passages, it means beautitude or the highest happiness that one may acquire in heaven. It means also those acts of virtue by which that happiness may be acquired. It should never be understood as applicable to anything connected with earthly happiness, unless, of course, the context would imply it.—T.

of duty is long and has innumerable branches, O Bhārata! Amongst those duties what are those few that should, according to thee, be preferred to all others for observance?[3] Tell me, O king, in detail, about that which is so comprehensive and which is so many-branched!'[4]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall speak to thee of that by which thou mayst attain to high merit. Possessed as thou art of wisdom, thou shalt be gratified with the knowledge I will impart to thee, like a person gratified with having quaffed nectar![5] The rules of duty that have been uttered by the great *Rishis*, each relying upon his own wisdom, are many. The highest among them all is self-restraint.[6] Those amongst the ancients that were acquainted with truth said that self-restraint leads to the highest merit. As regards the Brāhmana in particular, self-restraint is his eternal duty.[7] It is from self-restraint that he obtains the due fruition of his acts. Self-restraint, in his case, surpasses (in merit) charity and sacrifice and study of the Vedas.[8] Self-restraint enhances (his) energy. Self-restraint is highly sacred. Through self-restraint a man becomes cleansed of all his sins and endued with energy, and as a consequence, attains to the highest blessedness.[9] We have not heard that there is any other duty in all the worlds that can equal self-restraint. Self-restraint, according to all virtuous persons, is the highest of virtues in this world.[10] Through self-restraint, O foremost of men, a person acquires the highest happiness both here and hereafter. Endued with self-restraint, one acquires great virtue.[11] The self-restrained man sleeps in felicity and awakes in felicity, and moves through the world in felicity. His mind is always cheerful.[12] The man who is without self-restraint always suffers misery. Such a man brings upon himself many calamities all born of his own faults.[13] It has been said that in all the four modes of life self-restraint is the best of vows. I shall now tell thee those indications whose sum total is called self-restraint.[14] Forgiveness, patience, abstention from injury, impartiality, truth, sincerity, conquest of the senses, cleverness, mildness, modesty, steadiness,[15] liberality, freedom from wrath, contentment, sweetness of speech, benevolence,

freedom from malice,—the union of all these is self-restraint.[16] It also consists, O son of Kuru, of veneration for the preceptor and universal compassion. The self-restrained man avoids both adulation and slander. Depravity, infamy, false speech,[17] lust, covetousness, pride, arrogance, self-glorification, fear, envy and disrespect, are all avoided by the self-restrained man.[18] He never incurs obloquy. He is free from envy. He is never gratified with small acquisitions (in the form of earthly happiness of any kind). He is even like the ocean which can never be filled.*[19] The man of self-restraint is never bound by the attachments that arise from earthly connections like to those involved in sentiments like these,—*I am thine, Thou art thine, They are in me, and I am in them.*[20] Such a man, who adopts the practices of either cities or the woods, and who never indulges in slander or adulation, attains to emancipation.[21] Practising universal friendliness, and possessed of virtuous behaviour, of cheerful soul and endued with knowledge of soul, and liberated from the diverse attachments of the Earth, great is the reward that such a person obtains in the world to come.[22] Of excellent conduct and observant of duties, of cheerful soul and possessed of learning and knowledge of self, such a man wins esteem while here and attains to a high end hereafter.[23] All acts that are regarded as good on Earth, all those acts that are practised by the righteous, constitute the path of the ascetic possessed of knowledge. A person that is good never deviates from that path.[24] Retiring from the world and betaking himself to a life in the woods, that learned person having a complete control over the senses who treads in that path, in quiet of expectation of his decease, is sure to attain to the state of *Brahma.*[6] He

* The sense is that such a man never sets his heart upon things of the Earth, and accordingly these, when acquired, can never satisfy him. His aspirations are so great and so high above anything this Earth can give him that the attainment of even the region of *Brahma* cannot, as the commentator explains, gratify him. At first sight this may look like want of contentment. But in reality, it is not so. The grandeur of his aspirations is sought to be enforced. Contentment applies only to ordinary acquisitions, including even blessedness in heaven.—T.

who has no fear of any creature and of whom no creature is afraid, has, after the dissolution of his body, no fear to encounter.*[26] He who exhausts his merits (by actual enjoyment) without seeking to store them up, who casts an equal eye upon all creatures and practises a course of universal friendliness, attains to *Brahma*.[27] As the track of birds along the sky or of fowl over the surface of water cannot be discerned, even so the track of such a person (on Earth) does not attract notice.[28] For him, O king, who abandoning home adopts the religion of emancipation, many bright worlds wait to be enjoyed by him for eternity.[29] If, abandoning all acts, abandoning penances in due course, abandoning the diverse branches of study, in fact, abandoning all things (upon which worldly men set their hearts),[30] one becomes pure in his desires, liberated from all restraints,† of cheerful soul, conversant with self, and of pure heart, one then wins esteem in this world and at last attains to heaven.[31] That eternal region of the grandsire, which is sprung from Vedic penances, and which is concealed in a cave, can be won by only self-restraint.‡[32] He who takes pleasure in true knowledge, who has become enlightened, and who never injures any creature, has no fear of coming back to this world, far less, any fear in respect of the other.$[33] There is only one fault in self control. No second fault is noticeable in it. A person who has self-control is regarded by men as weak and imbecile.[34] O thou of great wisdom, this attribute has only one fault. Its merits are many. By forgiveness (which is only another form of self-control), the man of self-control may easily acquire innumerable worlds.[35] What need has a man of self-control for a forest ? Similarly, O Bhārata,

---

* *I. e.*, such a man is sure of attaining to a blessed end.—T.

† Such as distinctions of caste, of dress, of food, &c., *&c.*,—T.

‡ A reference to the region of *Brahma*, which is supposed to be located within every heart. One reaches that region through penances and self-denial. The sense, of course, is that his is that pure felicity of the heart who has succeeded in driving off all evil passions therefrom.—T.

$ The word used here is *Buddhasya* (genetive of *Buddha*). May not this verse be a reference to the Buddhistic idea of a *Buddha* ?—T.

of what use is the forest to him that has no self-control? That is a forest where the man of self-control dwells, and that is even a sacred asylum!' "[36]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of Bhishma, Yudhishthira became highly gratified as if he had quaffed nectar.[37] Again the king asked that foremost of virtuous men. That perpetuater of Kuru's race (questioned by his grandson) once more began to cheerfully discourse (on the topic raised)."[38]

SECTION CLXI.

"Bhishma said,—They that are possessed of knowledge say that everything has penance for its root. That foolish person who has not undergone penances does not meet with the rewards of even his own acts.[1] The puissant Creator created all this universe with the aid of penances. After the same manner, the *Rishis* acquired the Vedas through the power of penances.[2] It was by the aid of penances that the Grandsire created food, fruits and roots. It is by penance that persons crowned with ascetic success behold the three worlds, with rapt souls.[3] Medicines and all antidotes to injurious substances, and the diverse acts (seen here), produce their intended results through the aid of penance. The accomplishment of all purposes depends upon penance.[4] Whatever things there are that are apparently unattainable are sure to be won by the aid of penance. Without doubt, the *Rishis* obtained their sixfold divine attributes through penance.[5] A person that drinks alcoholic stimulants, one that appropriates the possessions of others without their consent, one guilty of fœticide, one that violates one's preceptor's bed, are all cleansed by penance properly practised.[6] Penances are of many kinds. They exhibit themselves through various outlets. Of all kinds of penance, however, that one may practice after abstaining from pleasure and enjoyment, abstention from food is the highest and best.[7] The penance involved in abstention from food is superior, O king, to even compassion, truthfulness of speech, gifts, and restraining the senses.[8] There is

no act more difficult to accomplish than gift. There is no mode of life that is superior to serving one's mother. There is no creature superior to those that are conversant with the three Vedas. Similarly, Renunciation constitutes the highest penance.[9] People keep their senses under control for taking care of their virtue and heaven. In respect of such control over the senses as also in the acquisition of virtue, there is no penance higher than abstention from food.[10] The *Rishis*, the gods, human beings, beasts, birds, and whatever other creatures there are, mobile or immobile,[11] are all devoted to penances, and whatever success they win is won through penance. Thus it was through penance that the gods acquired their superiority.[12] These (luminaries in the firmament) that have got their shares of felicity, are always the results of penance. Without doubt, through penance the very status of godhead may be acquired!'"[13]

SECTION CLXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Brāhmanas and *Rishis* and *Pitris* and the gods all applaud the duty of truth. I desire to hear of truth. Discourse to me upon it, O grandsire![1] What are the indications, O king, of truth? How may it be acquired? What is gained by practising truth, and how? Tell me all this!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'A confusion of the duties of the four orders is never applauded. That which is called Truth always exists in a pure and unmingled state in every one of those four orders.[3] With those that are good, Truth is always a duty. Indeed, Truth is an eternal duty. One should reverentially bow unto Truth. Truth is the highest refuge (of all).[4] Truth is duty; Truth is penance; Truth is *Yoga*; and Truth is the eternal *Brahma*. Truth has been said to be Sacrifice of a high order.* Everything rests upon Truth.[5] I shall now tell thee the forms of Truth one after another, and its indications also in due order.[6] It behoveth thee to hear also as to

---

* *I. e.*, both are equally efficacious.—T.

how Truth may be acquired. Truth, O Bhārata, as it exists in all the world, is of thirteen kinds.[7] The forms that Truth assumes are impartiality, self-control, forgiveness, modesty, endurance, goodness,[8] renunciation, contemplation, dignity, fortitute. compassion, and abstention from injury. These, O great monarch. are the thirteen forms of Truth.[9] Truth is immutable, eternal, and unchangable. It may be acquired through practices which do not militate with any of the other virtues. It may also be acquired through *Yoga*.[10] When desire and aversion, as also lust and wrath, are destroyed, that attribute in consequence of which one is able to look upon one's own self and one's foe, upon one's good and one's evil, with an unchanging eye, is called impartiality.[11] Self-control consists in never wishing for another man's possessions, in gravity and patience and capacity to allay the fears of others in respect to one's own self, and immunity from disease. It may be acquired through knowledge.[12] Devotion to the practice of liberality and the observance of all duties are regarded by the wise as constituting goodwill. One comes to acquire universal good-will by constant devotion to truth.[13] As regards unforgiveness and forgiveness, it should be stated that the attribute through which an esteemed and good man endures both what is agreeable and disagreeable, is said to be forgiveness. This virtue may well be acquired through the practice of truthfulness.[14] That virtue in consequence of which an intelligent man, contented in mind and speech, achieves many good deeds and never incurs the censure of others, is called modesty. It is acquired through the aid of righteousness.[15] That virtue which forgives for the sake of virtue and profit is called endurance. It is a form of forgiveness. It is acquired through patience, and its purpose is to attach people to one's self.[16] The casting off of affections as also of all earthly possessions, is called renunciation. Renunciation can never be acquired except by one who is divested of wrath and malice.[17] That virtue in consequence of which one does good, with watchfulness and care, to all creatures is called goodness. It hath no particular shape and consists in the divestment of all selfish attachments.[18]

That virtue owing to which one remains unchanged in happiness and misery is called fortitude. That wise man who desires his own good always practices this virtue.[19] One should always practise forgiveness and devotedness to truth. That man of wisdom who succeeds in casting off joy and fear and wrath, succeeds in acquiring fortitude.[20] Abstention from injury as regards all creatures in thought, word, and deed, kindness, and gift, are the eternal duties of those who are good.[21] These thirteen attributes, though apparently distinct from one another, have but one and the same form, *viz.*, Truth. All these, O Bhārata, support Truth and strengthen it.[22] It is impossible, O monarch, to exhaust the merits of Truth. It is for these reasons that the Brāhmanas, the *Pitris*, and the gods, applaud Truth.[23] There is no duty which is higher than Truth, and no sin more heinous than untruth. Indeed, Truth is the very foundation of righteousness. For this reason one should never destroy Truth.[24] From Truth proceed gifts, and sacrifice with presents, as well as the threefold *Agnihotras*, the Vedas, and everything else that leads to righteousness.[25] Once on a time a thousand Horse-sacrifices and Truth were weighed against each other in the balance. Truth weighed heavier than a thousand Horse-sacrifices.' "[26]

SECTION CLXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O thou of great wisdom, everything about that from which spring wrath and lust, O bull of Bharata's race, and sorrow and loss of judgment, and inclination to do (evil to others), and jealousy and malice and pride, and envy, and slander, and incapacity to bear the good of others, and unkindness, and fear. Tell me everything truly and in detail about all these!'[1-2]

"Bhishma said,—'These thirteen vices are regarded as very powerful foes of all creatures. These, O monarch, approach and tempt men from every side.[3] They goad and afflict a heedless man or one that is insensate. Indeed, as soon as they see a person, they assail him powerfully like wolves jump-

ing upon their prey.[4] From these proceed all kinds of grief. From these proceed all kinds of sin. Every mortal, O foremost of men, should always know this.[5] I shall now speak to thee of their origin, of the objects upon which they rest, and of the means of their destruction, O lord of Earth! Listen, first, O king, with undivided attention, to the origin of wrath truly and in detail![6] Wrath springs from covetousness. It is strengthened by the faults of others. Through forgiveness it remains dormant, and through forgiveness it disappears.[7] As regards lust, it springs from resolution. Indulgence strengthens it. When the man of wisdom resolutely turns away from it, it disappears and dies.[8] Envy of others proceeds from between wrath and covetousness. It disappears in consequence of compassion and knowledge of self. In consequence of compassion for all creatures, and of that disregard for all worldly objects (that Knowledge brings in its train), it disappears. It also arises from seeing the faults of other people. But in men of intelligence it quickly disappears in consequence of true knowledge.*[9] Loss of judgment has its origin in ignorance and proceeds from sinfulness of habit. When the man whom this fault assails begins to take delight in (the company and counsels of) wise men, the vice at once and immediately hides its head.[10] Men, O thou of Kuru's race, see conflicting scriptures. From that circumstance springs the desire for diverse kinds of action. When true Knowledge has been gained, that desire is allayed.[11] The grief of an embodied creature proceeds from affection which is awakened by separation. When, however, one learns that the dead do not return (whatever the grief one may feel for them), it subsides.[12] Incapacity to bear other people's good proceeds from wrath and covetousness. Though compassion for every creature and in conse-

* In the Bengal texts, verse 9 is a triplet. In the second line the correct reading is *nirvedāt* and not *nirdeçāt*. *Avadya* is fault. *Vinivartate* is understood at end of the third line, as suggested by Nilakantha. Both the Bengali versions of 9 are incomplete, the Burdwan being also incorrect.—T.

quence of a disregard for all earthly objects, it is extinguished.[13] Malice proceeds from the abandonment of truth and indulgence in wickedness. This vice, O child, disappears in consequence of one's waiting upon the wise and good.[14] Pride, in men, springs from birth, learning, and prosperity. When those three, however, are truly known, that vice instantly disappears.[15] Jealousy springs from lust and delight in low and vulgar people. In consequence of wisdom it is destroyed.[16] From errors (of conduct) inconsistent with the ordinary course of men, and through disagreeable speeches expressive of aversion, slander takes its rise. It disappears, O king, upon a survey of the whole world.[17] When the person that injures is powerful and the injured one is unable to avenge the injury, hate shows itself. It subsides, however, through kindliness.[18] Compassion proceeds from a sight of the helpless and miserable persons with whom the world abounds. That sentiment disappears when one understands the strength of virtue.*[19] Covetousness in all creatures spring from ignorance. Beholding the instability of all objects of enjoyment, it suffers destruction.[20] It has been said that tranquillity of soul can alone subdue all these thirteen faults. All these thirteen faults stained the sons of Dhritarāshtra. Thyself, always desirous of truth, hast conquered all of those vices in consequence of thy regard for seniors.' "[21]

Section CLXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I know what benevolence is, in consequence of my observation of persons that are good. I do not however, know them that are malevolent, nor the nature of their acts, O Bhārata.[1] Indeed, people avoid malevolent persons of cruel deeds even as they avoid thorns and pitfalls and fire.[2] It is evident, O Bhārata, that he who is malevolent is sure to burn (with misery) both here and here-

* The commentator explains that compassion, like the faults enumerated above, agitates the heart and should be checked for the sake of individual happiness or tranquillity of soul.—T.

after. Therefore, O thou of Kuru's race, tell me what, in truth, the acts of such a person are!'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Malevolent persons always do wicked acts and feel an irresistible inclination for doing them. They slander others and incur obloquy themselves. They always regard themselves as cheated of what is their due.[4] A malevolent person brags of his own acts of charity. He sees others with malicious eyes. He is very mean. He is deceitful, and full of cunning. He never gives others their dues. He is arrogant. He keeps evil company and is always boastful.[5] He fears and suspects all with whom he comes into contact. He is of foolish understanding. He practises miserliness. He praises his associates. He cherishes an inordinate aversion and hatred for all recluses who have retired into the woods.[6] He takes delight in injuring others. He is utterly regardless of distinguishing the merits and faults of others. He is full of lies. He is discontented. He is exceedingly covetous, and always acts cruelly.[7] Such a person regards a virtuous and accomplished man as a pest, and thinking everybody else to be like himself never trusts any one.[8] Such a person proclaims the faults of other people however unsuspected those faults might be. With regard to such faults, however, as are similar to those that stain his own self, he does not refer to them even remotely, for the sake of the advantage he reaps from them.[9] He regards the person that does him good as a simpleton whom he has cleverly deceived. He is filled with regret for having at any time made any gift of wealth even unto a benefactor.[10] Know him for a malevolent and a wicked person who quietly and alone takes edibles and drinks and other kinds of food that are regarded choice, even when persons are standing by with wishful eyes.[11] He, on the other hand, who dedicates the first portion to Brāhmanas and takes what remains, dividing it with friends and kinsmen, attains to great felicity in the next world and infinite happiness here.[12] I have now, O chief of the Bharatas, said unto thee what the indications are of the wicked and malevolent man. Such a person should always be avoided by a man of wisdom.'"[13]

Section CLXVI.

"Bhishma said,—'For enabling such pious and impoverished Brāhmanas as have been robbed of their wealth (by thieves), as are engaged in the performance of sacrifices, as are well conversant with all the Vedas, and as are desirous of acquiring the merit of righteousness, to discharge their obligations to preceptors and the *Pitris*, and pass their days in reciting and studying the scriptures, wealth and knowledge, O Bhārata, should be given.*[1-2] Unto those Brāhmanas that are not poor, only the *Dakshina*,† O best of the Bharatas, should be given ! As regards those that have fallen away (in consequence of their sinful deeds) from the status of Brāhmana, uncooked food should be given to them outside the limits of the sacrificial altar.‡[3] The Brāhmanas are the Vedas themselves and all the Sacrifices with large presents. Desirous of excelling one another, they always perform sacrifices, impelled by their virtuous inclinations. The king should, therefore, make presents of diverse kinds of valuable wealth unto them.[4] That Brāhmana who hath a sufficiency of stores for feeding his family for three or more years, deserves to drink the *Soma*.$[5] If notwithstanding the presence of a virtuous king on the throne, the sacrifice begun by any body, but especially by a Brāhmana, cannot be completed for want of only a fourth part of the estimated expenses,[6] then the king should, for the completion of that sacrifice, take away from his kinsmen the wealth of a Vaiçya that is possessed of a large flock of cattle but that is averse from sacrifices

---

* In India, from the remotest times, preceptors are excluded from charging their pupils any fees for the instruction they give. No doubt, a final fee, called *Gurudakshinā*, is demandable, but that is demandable after the pupil has completed his studies. To sell knowledge for money is a great sin. To this day in all the indegenous *toles* of the country, instruction is imparted free of all charges. In addition to this, the pupils are fed by their preceptors. The latter, in their turn, are supported by the charity of the whole country.—T.

† *Dakshinā* is the present or gift made in sacrifices.—T.

‡ *Vahirvedichākrita* &c. is the correct reading.—T.

$ *I. e.*, such a person may perform a grand sacrifice in which *Soma* is offered to the gods and drunk by the sacrificer and the priests.—T.

and abstains from quaffing *Soma*.[7] The Cudra has no competence for performing a sacrifice. The king should, therefore, take away (wealth for such a purpose) from a Cudra house of ours.*[8] The king should also, without any scruple, take away from their kinsmen the wealth of him who does not perform sacrifices though possessed of a hundred kine and also of him who abstains from sacrifices though possessed of a thousand kine.[9] The king should always publicly take away the wealth of such a person as does not practise charity. By acting in this way the king earns great merit.[10] Listen again to me. That Brāhmana who has been forced by want to abstain from six meals,† may take away without permission, according to the rule of a person that cares only for today without any thought of the morrow, only what is necessary for a single meal, from the husking tub or the field or the garden or any other place of even a man of low pursuits. He should, however, whether asked or unasked, inform the king of his act.‡[11-12] If the king be conversant with duty he should not inflict any punishment upon such a Brāhmana. He should remember that a Brāhmana becomes afflicted with hunger only through the fault of the Kshatriya.¶[13] Having ascertained a Brāhmana's learning and behaviour, the king should make a provision for him, and protect him as a father protects the son of his own loins.[14] On the expiry of every year, one should perform the *Vaiçyānara* sacrifice (if he is unable to perform any animal or *Soma* sacrifice). They who are conversant with religion say that the practice of an act laid down in the alternative, is not destructive of virtue.[15] The *Viçwedevas*, the *Saddhyas*, the Brāhmanas, and great *Rishis*, fearing death in seasons

---

* The Burdwan translator, misled by the particle *nah*, supposes that this verse contains an injunction *against* the spoliation of a Cudra. The fact is, the *nah* here is equal to 'ours'.—T.

† *I. e.*, who has fasted for three whole days.—T.

‡ *Acwastana vidhāna* is the rule of providing only for today without thinking of the morrow.—T.

¶ The sense, of course, is that if a Brāhmana starves, that is due to the kings having neglected his duty of providing for him.—T.

of distress, do not scruple to have recourse to such provisions in the scriptures as have been laid down in the alternative.[16] That man, however, who while able to live according to the primary provision, betakes himself to the alternative, comes to be regarded as wicked person and never succeeds in winning any felicity in heaven.[17] A Brāhmana conversant with the Vedas should never speak of his energy and knowledge to the king. (It is the duty of the king to ascertain it himself).[18] Comparing again the energy of a Brāhmana with that of the king, the former will always be found to be superior to the latter.[19] For this reason the energy of the Brāhmanas can scarcely be borne or resisted by a king. The Brāhmana is said to be creator, ruler, ordainer, and god.[20] No word of abuse, no dry speeches, should be addressed to a Brāhmana. The Kshatriya should cross all his difficulties by the aid of the might of his arms.[21] The Vaiçya and the Cudra should conquer their difficulties by wealth; the Brāhmana should do so by *mantras* and *homa*. None of these, *viz.*, a maiden, a youthful woman, a person unacquainted with *mantras*, an ignorant wight,[22] or one that is impure, is competent to pour libations on the sacrificial fire. If any of these do so, he or she is sure to fall into hell, with him for whom they act. For this reason, none but a Brāhmana conversant with the Vedas and skilled in all sacrifices should become the pourer of sacrificial libations.[23] They who are conversant with the scriptures say that that man who, having kindled the sacrificial fire, does not give away the dedicated food as *Dakshinā*, is not the kindler of a sacrificial fire.[24] A person should, with his senses under control, and with proper devotion, do all the acts of merit (indicated in the scriptures). One should never worship the deities in sacrifices in which no *Dakshinā* is given.[25] A sacrifice not completed with *Dakshinā*, (instead of producing merit) brings about the destruction of one's children, animals, and heaven. Such a sacrifice destroys also the senses, the fame, the achievements, and the very period of life, that one has.[26] Those Brāhmanas that lie with women in their season, or who never perform sacrifices, or whose families have no members conversant with the

Vedas, are regarded as Cudras in act.*[27] That Brāhmana who, having married a Cudra girl, resides for twelve continuous years in a village which has only a well for its water supply, becomes a Cudra in act.[28] That Brāhmana who summons to his bed an unmarried maiden, or suffers a Cudra, thinking him worthy of respect, to sit upon the same carpet with him, should sit on a bed of dry grass behind some Kshatriya or Vaiçya and give him respect in that fashion.† It is by this manner that he can be cleansed. Listen, O king, to my words on this subject.[29] The sin that a Brāhmana commits in a single night by respectfully serving a member of a lower order or by sporting with him in the same spot or on the same bed, is cleansed by observing the practice of sitting behind a Kshatriya or a Vaiçya on a bed of dry grass for three continuous years.[30] A falsehood spoken in jest is not sinful; nor one that is spoken to a woman, O king, nor one that is spoken on an occasion of marriage; nor one spoken for benefiting one's preceptor; nor one spoken for saving one's own life. These five kinds of falsehood in speech, it has been said, are not sinful.[31] One may acquire useful knowledge from even a person of low pursuits, with devotion and reverence. One may take up gold, without any scruple, from even an unclean place.[32] A woman that is the ornament of her sex may be taken (for wife) from even a vile race. *Amrita*, if extracted from poison, may be quaffed; women, jewels and other valuables, and water, can never, according to the scriptures, be impure or unclean.[33] For the benefit of Brāhmanas and kine, and on occasions of transfusion of castes, even a Vaiçya may take up weapons for his own safety.[34] Drinking alcoholic liquors, killing a Brāhmana, and the violation of the preceptor's bed, are sins that, if committed consciously, have no expiation. The only expiation laid down for them is death.[35] The same may be said

---

* This verse is read differently in the Bombay text.—T.

† I follow Nilakantha in rendering *abrāhmanam manyamānah*. It may also mean 'regarding himself to be a fallen Brāhmana (for the time being.'—T.

of stealing gold, and the theft of a Brāhmana's property. By drinking alcoholic liquors, by having congress with one with whom congress is prohibited,[36] by mingling with a fallen person, and (a person of any of the other three orders) by having congress with a Brāhmani woman, one becomes inevitably fallen.[37] By mixing with a fallen person for one whole year in such matters as officiation in sacrifices and teaching and sexual congress, one becomes fallen. One, however, does not become so by mixing with a fallen person in such matters as riding on the same vehicle, sitting on the same seat, and eating in the same line.[38] Excluding the five grave sins that have been mentioned above, all other sins have expiations provided for them. Expiating those sins according to the ordinances laid down for them, one should not again indulge in them.[39] In the case of those who have been guilty of the first three of these five sins, (*viz.*, drinking alcoholic liquors, killing a Brāhmana, and violation of the preceptor's bed), there is no restriction for their (surviving) kinsmen about taking food and wearing ornaments, even if their funeral rites remain unperformed when they die. The surviving kinsmen should make no scruple about such things on such occasions.[40] A virtuous man should, in the observance of his duties, discard his very friends and reverend seniors. In fact, until they perform expiation, they that are virtuous should not even talk with those sinners.* A man that has acted sinfully destroys his sin by acting virtuously afterwards and by penances.[41] By calling a thief a thief, one incurs the sin of theft. By calling a person thief who, however, is not a thief, one incurs a sin just double the sin of theft.[42] The maiden who suffers her virginity to be defloured incurs three-fourths of the sin of Brāhmanicide, while the man that deflours her incurs a sin equal to a fourth part of that of Brāhmanicide.[43] By slandering Brāhmanas or by striking them, one sinks in infamy for a hun-

---

* Verse 41 is a triplet. The second line, as read both in the Bengal and the Bombay texts, seems to be vicious. The reading noticed by Nilakantha in his notes is certainly better. I adopt it accordingly.—T.

dred years.[44] By killing a Brāhmana one sinks into hell for a thousand years. No one, therefore, should speak ill of a Brāhmana or slay him.[45] If a person strike a Brāhmana with a weapon, he will have to live in hell for as many years as the grains of dust that are soaked by the blood flowing from the wounded.[46] One guilty of fœticide becomes cleansed if he dies of wounds received in battle fought for the sake of kine and Brāhmanas. He may also be cleansed by casting his person on a blazing fire.*[47] A drinker of alcoholic liquors becomes cleansed by drinking hot alcohol. His body being burnt with that hot drink, he is cleansed through death in the other world.† A Brāhmana stained by such a sin obtains regions of felicity by such a course and not by any other.[48] For violating the bed of a preceptor, the wicked-souled and sinful wretch becomes cleansed by the death that results from embracing a heated female figure of iron.[49] Or, cutting off his organ and testicles and bearing them in his hands, he should go on in a straight course towards the south-west and then cast off his life.[50] Or, by meeting with death for the sake of benefiting a Brāhmana, he may wash off his sin. Or, after performing a horse-sacrifice or a cow-sacrifice or an *Agnishtoma*, he may regain esteem both here and hereafter.[51] The slayer of a Brāhmana should practise the vow of *Brahmacharyya* for twelve years and devoting himself to penances, wander, holding in his hands the skull of the slain all the time and proclaiming his sin unto all.[52] He should even adopt such a course, devoted to penances and leading the life of an ascetic. Even such is the expiation provided for

* It should be noted that the word fœticide used in such texts frequently means all sins that are regarded as equivalent to fœticide. Hence, killing a Brāhmana is fœticide. &c.—T.

† There is a material difference of reading in this verse. Following the Bengal texts, the above version is given. The Bombay text runs as follows: 'upon his body being burnt therewith, *or* by death, he becomes cleansed.' The Bombay text seems to be vicious. Drinking is regarded as one of the five heinous sins. The severer injuction contained in the Bengal texts seems, therefore, to be the correct reading.—T

one who slays a woman quick with child, knowing her condition.[53] The man that knowingly slays such a woman incurs double the sin that follows from Brāhmanicide. A drinker of alcoholic liquor should live on frugal fare, practising *Brahmacharyya* vows, and sleep on the bare ground,[54] and perform, for more than three years the sacrifice next to the *Agnishtoma*. He should then make a present of a thousand kine with one bull (unto a good Brāhmana). Doing all this, he would regain his purity.[55] Having slain a Vaiçya one should perform such a sacrifice for two years and make a present of a hundred kine with one bull. Having slain a Cudra, one should perform such a sacrifice for one year and make a present of a hundred kine with one bull. Having slain a dog or bear or camel, one should perform the same penance that is laid down for the slaughter of a Cudra.[56] For slaying a cat, a *chasa*, a frog, a crow, a reptile, or a rat, it has been said, one incurs the sin of animal slaughter, O king![57] I shall now tell thee of other kinds of expiations in their order. For all minor sins one should repent or practise some vow for one year.[58] For congress with the wife of a Brāhmana conversant with the Vedas, one should for three years practise the vow of *Brahmacharyya*, taking a little food at the fourth part of the day. For congress with any other woman (who is not one's wife), one should practise similar penances for two years.[59] For taking delight in a woman's company by sitting with her on the same spot or on the same seat, one should live only on water for three days. By doing this he may cleanse himself of his sin. The same is laid down for one who befouls a blazing fire (by throwing impure things on it).[60] He who, without adequate cause, casts off his sire or mother or preceptor, surely becomes fallen, O thou of Kuru's race, as the conclusion is of the scriptures. Only food and clothes should be given, as the injunction is,[61] unto a wife guilty of adultery or one confined in a prison. Indeed, the vows that are laid down for a male person guilty of adultery should be caused to be observed by also a woman who is guilty of the same.[62] That woman who abandoning a husband of a superior caste, has congress with

a vile person (of a lower order), should be caused by the king to be devoured by dogs in a public place in the midst of a large concourse of spectators.*[63] A wise king should cause the male person committing adultery under such circumstances to be placed upon a heated bed of iron and then, placing faggots underneath, burn the sinner thereon.[64] The same punishment, O king, is provided for the woman that is guilty of adultery. The wicked sinner who does not perform expiation within a year of the commission of the sin incurs demerit that is double of what attaches to the original sin.[65] One who associates with such a person for two years must wander over the Earth, devoting himself to penances and living upon eleemosynary charity. One associating with a sinner for four years should adopt such a mode of life for five years.†[66] If a younger brother weds before his elder brother, then the younger brother, the elder brother, and the woman that is married, all three, in consequence of such wedding, become fallen.[67] All of them should observe the vows prescribed for a person who has neglected his sacrificial fire, or practise the vow of *Chāndrāyana* for a month, or some other painful vow, for cleansing themselves of their sin.[68] The younger brother, wedding, should give his wife unto his unmarried elder brother. Afterwards, having obtained the permission of the elder brother, the younger brother may take back his wife. By such means may all three be cleansed of their sin.[69] By slaying animals save a cow, the slayer is not stained. The learned know that man has dominion over all the lower animals.[70] A sinner, holding in his hand a yak-tail and an earthen pot, should go about, proclaiming his sin. He should every day beg of only seven families,[71] and live upon what may thus be earned. By doing this for twelve days he may be cleansed of his sin. He who becomes unable to bear in his hand the yak-tail while practising this vow, should observe the vow of mendicancy (as stated above) for one

* The true reading is *nigacchati* and not *niyacchati*. The Burdwan translator has misunderstood the word *pāpam* in this verse.—T.

† The Burdwan translator wrongly renders this verse.—T.

whole year.[72] Amongst men such expiation is the best. For those that are able to practise charity, the practise of charity has been laid down in all such cases.[73] Those who have faith and virtue may cleanse themselves by giving away only one cow.[74] One who eats or drinks the flesh, ordure, or urine, of a dog, a boar, a man, a cock, or a camel, must have his investiture of the sacred thread re-performed.[75] If a *Soma*-drinking Brāhmana inhales the scent of alcohol from the mouth of one that has drunk it, he should drink warm water for three days or warm milk for the same period.[76] Or, drinking warm water for three days he should live for that period upon air alone. These are the eternal injunctions laid down for the expiation of sin, especially for a Brāhmana who has committed these sins through ignorance and want of judgment.' "[77]

SECTION CLXVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Upon the completion of this discourse, Nakula who was an accomplished swordsman thus questioned the Kuru grandsire lying on his bed of arrows.[1]

"Nakula said,—'The bow, O grandsire, is regarded as the foremost of weapons in this world. My mind, however, inclines towards the sword, since when the bow, O king, is cut off or broken, when steeds are dead or weakened, a good warrior, well-trained in the sword, can protect himself by means of his sword.*[2-3] A hero armed with the sword can, single-handed, withstand many bowmen and many antagonists armed with maces and darts.[4] I have this doubt, and I feel curious to know the truth. Which, O king, is really the foremost of weapons in all battles?[5] How was the sword first created and for what purpose? Who also was the first preceptor in that weapon? Tell me all this, O grandsire!' "[6]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of the intelligent son of Mādri, the virtuous Bhishma, that complete master of the science of the bow, stretched upon his bed of arrows, made this answer fraught with many refined words of

---

* Nilakantha correctly explains the connection of *Susamçitah*.—T.

delightful import, melodious with vowels properly placed, and displaying considerable skill, unto the high-souled Nakula, that disciple of Drona, endued with skilful training.[7-9]

"Bhishma said,—Hear the truth, O son of Mādri, about what thou hast asked me! I am excited by this question of thine, like a hill of red-chalk.*[10] In ancient times the universe was one vast expanse of water, motionless and skyless, and without this Earth occupying any space in it.[11] Enveloped in darkness, and intangible, its aspect was exceedingly awful. Utter silence reigning all over, it was immeasurable in extent. In his own proper time the Grandsire (of the universe) took his birth.[12] He then created wind, and fire, and the sun also of great energy. He also created the sky, the heavens, the nether regions, Earth, the directions,[13] the firmament with the moon and the stars, the constellations, the planets, the year, the seasons, the months, the two fortnights (lighted and dark) and the smaller divisions of time.[14] The divine Grandsire then, assuming a visible form, begot (by power of his will) some sons possessed of great energy.[15] They are the sages Marichi, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vaçishtha, Angiras, and the mighty and puissant lord Rudra,[16] and Prachetas. The last begat Daksha, who in his turn begat sixty daughters. All those daughters were taken by regenerate sages for the object of begetting children upon them.[17] From them sprang all the creatures of the universe, including the gods, *Pitris*, *Gandharvas*, *Apsaras*, diverse kinds of *Rākshasas*,[18] birds and animals and fishes, monkeys, great snakes, and diverse species of fowl that range the air or sport on the water,[19] and vegetables, and all beings that are oviparous or viviparous or born of filth. In this way the whole universe consisting of mobile and immobile creatures sprang into existence.[20] The universal Grandsire, having thus evoked into existence all mobile and immobile creatures, then promulgated the eternal religion laid down in the Vedas.[21] That

* Nilakantha explains that the question of Nakula excited the heart of Bhishma and caused a flow of blood through his wounds. Hence Bhishma compares himself to a hill of red-chalk.—T.

religion was accepted by the gods, with their preceptors and priests, the *Adityas*, the *Vasus*, the *Rudras*, the *Sāddhyas*, the *Maruts*, the *Açwins*,[22] Bhrigu, Atri, Angiras, the *Siddhas*, Kaçyapa rich in penances, Vaçishtha, Gautama, Agastya, Nārada, Parvata,[23] the Vālkhillya *Rishis*, those other *Rishis* known under the names of Prabhāsas, the Sikatas, the *Ghritapas*, the Somavāyavyas, the Vaiçwānaras, the *Marichipas*,[24] the Ākrishtas, the Hansas, those born of Fire, the Vānaprasthas, and the Praçnis. All of them lived in obedience to Brahman.[25] The foremost of the Dānavas, however, setting at naught the commands of the Grandsire, and yielding to wrath and covetousness, began to cause the destruction of righteousness.[26] They were Hirānyakaçipu, and Hiranyāksha, and Virochana, and Camvara, and Viprachitti, and Prahlāda, and Namuchi, and Vali.[27] These and many other Daityas and Dānavas, transcending all restraints of duty and religion, sported and took delight in all kinds of wicked acts.[28] Regarding themselves equal in point of birth with the gods, they began to challenge them and the sages of pure behaviour.[29] They never did any good to the other creatures of the universe or showed compassion for any of them. Disregarding the three well-known means, they began to persecute and afflict all creatures by wielding only the rod of chastisement.[30] Indeed, those foremost of *Asuras*, filled with pride, forsook every friendly intercourse with other creatures. Then the divine Brahman, accompanied by the regenerate sages,[31] proceeded to a delightful summit of Himavat, extending for a hundred *Yojanas* in area, adorned with diverse kinds of jewells and gems, and upon whose surface the stars seemed to rest like so many lotuses on a lake.[32] On that prince of mountains, O sire, overgrown with forests of flowering trees, that foremost of the gods, *viz.*, Brahman, stayed for sometime for accomplishing the business of the world.[33] After the lapse of a thousand years, the puissant lord made arrangements for a grand sacrifice according to the ordinances laid down in the scriptures.[34] The sacrificial altar became adorned with *Rishis* skilled in sacrifice and competent to perform all acts appertaining thereto, with faggots of sarificial fuel, and with blazing

fires.[35] And it looked exceedingly beautiful in consequence of the sacrificial plates and vessels having been all made of gold. All the foremost ones among the gods took their seats on it.[36] The platform was further adorned with *Sadasyas* all of whom consisted of high regenerate *Rishis*. I have heard from the *Rishis* that soon something very awful occurred in that sacrifice.[37] It is heard that a creature sprang (from the sacrificial fire) scattering the flames around him, and whose splendour equalled that of the Moon himself when he rises in the firmament spangled with stars.[38] His complexion was dark like that of the petals of the blue lotus. His teeth were keen. His stomach was lean. His stature was tall. He seemed to be irresistible and possessed of exceeding energy.[39] Upon the appearance of that being, the Earth trembled. The Ocean became agitated with mountain billows and awful eddies.[40] Meteors, foreboding great disasters, shot through the sky. The branches of trees began to fall down. All the points of the compass became unquiet. Inauspicious winds began to blow. All creatures began to quake with fear every moment.[41] Beholding that awful agitation of the universe and that Being sprung from the sacrificial fire, the Grandsire said these words unto the great *Rishis*, the gods, and the *Gandharvas*![42]—This Being was thought of by me. Possessed of great energy, his name is *Asi* (sword or scimitar). For the protection of the world and the destruction of the enemies of the gods, I have created him![43]—That being then, abandoning the form he had first assumed, took the shape of a sword of great splendour, highly polished, sharp-edged, and risen like the all-destructive Being at the end of the *Yuga*.[44] Then Brahman made over that sharp weapon to the blue-throated Rudra who has for the device on his banner the foremost of bulls, for enabling him to put down irreligion and sin.[45] At this, the divine Rudra of immeasurable soul, praised by the great *Rishis*, took up that sword and assumed a different shape.[46] Putting forth four arms, he became so tall that though standing on the Earth he touched the very sun with his head. With eyes turned upwards, and with every limb extended wide, he began to vomit flames of fire from his mouth.[47] Assuming diverse

complexions such as blue and white and red, and wearing a black deer-skin studded with stars of gold,[48] he bore on his forehead a third eye that resembled the sun in splendour. His two other eyes, one of which was black and the other tawny, shone very brightly.[49] The divine Mahādeva, the bearer of the *Çula*, the tearer of Bhaga's eye, taking up the sword whose splendour resembled that of the all-destructive *Yuga* fire,[50] and wielding a large shield with three high bosses which looked like a mass of dark clouds adorned with flashes of lightning, began to perform diverse kinds of evolutions. Possessed of great prowess, he began to whirl the sword in the sky, desirous of an encounter.[51] Loud were the roars he uttered, and awful the sound of his laughter. Indeed, O Bhārata, the form then assumed by Rudra was exceedingly terrible.[52] Hearing that Rudra had assumed that form for achieving fierce deeds, the *Dānavas*, filled with joy, began to come towards him with great speed,[53] showering huge rocks upon him as they came, and blazing brands of wood, and diverse kinds of terrible weapons made of iron and each endued with the sharpness of a razor.[54] The *Dānava* host, however, beholding that foremost of all beings, the indestructible Rudra, swelling with might, became stupified and began to tremble.[55] Although Rudra was alone and single-handed, yet so quickly did he move on the field of battle with the sword in his arm that the *Asuras* thought there were a thousand similar Rudras battling with them.[56] Tearing and piercing and afflicting and cutting and lopping off and grinding down, the great god moved with celerity among the thick masses of his foes like a forest-conflagration amid heaps of dry grass spread around.[57] The mighty *Asuras*, broken by the god with the whirls of his sword, with arms and thighs and chests cut off and pierced, and with heads severed from their trunks, began to fall down on the Earth.[58] Others among the *Dānavas*, afflicted with strokes of the sword, broke and fled in all directions, cheering one another as they fled.[59] Some penetrated into the bowels of the Earth; others got under the cover of mountains. Some went upwards; others entered the depths of the sea.[60] During the progress o fthat dreadful and fierce

battle, the Earth became miry with flesh and blood and horrible sights presented themselves on every side.[61] Strewn with the fallen bodies of *Dānavas* covered with blood, the Earth looked as if overspread with mountain summits overgrown with *Kinçukas*.[62] Drenched with gore, the Earth looked exceedingly beautiful, like a fair-complexioned lady intoxicated with alcohol and attired in crimson robes.[63] Having slain the *Dānavas* and re-established Righteousness on Earth, the auspicious Rudra cast off his awful form and assumed his own beneficient shape.[64] Then all the *Rishis* and all the celestials adored that god of gods with loud acclamations wishing him victory.[65] The divine Rudra, after this, gave the sword, that protector of religion, dyed with the blood of *Dānavas*, unto Vishnu with due adorations.[66] Vishnu gave it unto Marichi. The divine Marichi gave it unto all the great *Rishis*. The latter gave it to Vāsava.[67] Vāsava gave it to the Regents of the world. The Regents, O son, gave that large sword to Manu the son of Surya.[68] At the time of giving it unto Manu, they said,—Thou art the lord of all men! Protect all creatures with this sword containing religion within its womb.[69] Duly meting out chastisement unto those that have transgressed the barriers of virtue for the sake of the body or the mind, they should be protected conformably to the ordinances but never according to caprice.[70] Some should be punished with wordy rebukes, and with fines and forfeitures. Loss of limb or death should never be inflicted for slight reasons.[71]—These punishments, consisting of wordy rebukes as their first, are regarded as so many forms of the sword. These are the shapes that the sword assumes in consequence of the transgressions of persons under the protection (of the king).*[72] In time Manu installed his own son Kshupa in the sovereignty of all creatures, and gave him the sword for their protection.[73] From Kshupa it was taken by Ikshāku, and from Ikshāku by Pururavas. From Pururavas it was taken by Āyus, and from Āyus by Nahusha.[74] From Nahusha it was taken by

---

* *Durvārāni*, *Durvārādini*, *Durvāchādini* are some of the readings of the first line.—T.

Yayāti, and from Yayāti by Puru. From Puru it was taken by Amurttaraya. From Amurttaraya it descended to the royal Bhumiçaya.[75] From Bhumiçaya it was taken by Dushmanta's son Bharata. From Bharata, O monarch, it was taken by the righteous Ailavila.[76] From Ailavila it was taken by king Dhundumāra. From Dhundumāra it was taken by Kāmvoja, and from Kāmvoja it was taken by Muchukunda.[77] From Muchukunda it was taken by Marutta, and from Marutta by Raivata. From Raivata it was taken by Yuvanāçwa, and from Yuvanāçwa by Raghu.[78] From Raghu it was taken by the valiant Harināçwa. From Harināçwa the sword was taken by Sunaka, and from Sunaka by the righteous-souled Uçinara. From the last it was taken by the Bhojas and the Yādavas.[79] From the Yadus it was taken by Civi. From Civi it descended to Pratarddana. From Pratarddana it was received by Ashtaka, and from Ashtaka by Prishadaçwa.[80] From Prishadaçwa it was received by Bharadwāja, and from the last by Drona. After Drona it was taken by Kripa. From Kripa that best of swords has been obtained by thee with thy brothers.[81] The constellation under which the sword was born is Kritikā. Agni is its deity, and Rohini is its *Gotra.** Rudra is its high preceptor.[82] The sword has eight names which are not generally known. Listen to me as I mention them to you. If one mentions these names, O son of Pāndu one may always win victory![83] Those names then are *Asi*, *Vaiçasana*, *Khadga*, sharp-edged, difficult of acquisition, *Çrigarbha*, victory, and protector of righteousness.[84] Of all weapons, O son of Madravati, the sword is the foremost. The Purānas truly declare that it was first wielded by Mahādeva.[85] As regards the bow, again, O chastiser of foes, it was Prithu who first created it. It was with the aid of this weapon that that son of Vena, while he governed the Earth virtuously for many years, milked her of crops and grain in profusion.[86] It behoveth thee, O son of Mādri, to regard what the *Rishis* have said, as conclusive proof. All persons skilled in battle should worship the sword.[87] I have now told

* Literally, family or clan; here, origin.—T.

thee truly the first portion of thy query, in detail, about the origin and creation of the sword, O bull of Bharata's race![88] By listening to this excellent story of the origin of the sword, a man succeeds in winning fame in this world and eternal felicity in the next.' "[89]

SECTION CLXVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"When Bhishma, after having said this, became silent, Yudhishthira (and the others) returned home. The king, addressing his brothers with Vidura forming the fifth, said,[1]—'The course of the world rests upon Virtue, Wealth, and Desire. Amongst these three, which is the foremost, which the second, and which the last, in point of importance?[2] For subduing the triple aggregate (*viz.*, lust, wrath, and covetousness), upon which of the first three (*viz.*, Virtue, Wealth, and Desire) should the mind be fixed? It behoveth you all to cheerfully answer this question in words that are true![3] Thus addressed by the Kuru chief, Vidura, who was conversant with the science of Profit, with the course of the world, and with truth (that concerns the real nature of things), and possessed of great brilliancy of intellect, spoke first these words, recollecting the contents of the scriptures.[4]

"Vidura said,—'Study of the various scriptures, asceticism, gift, faith, performance of sacrifices, forgiveness, sincerity of disposition, compassion, truth, self-restraint,—these constitute the possessions of Virtue.[5] Do thou adopt Virtue. Let not thy heart ever turn away from it! Both Virtue and Profit have their roots in these. I think that all these are capable of being included in one term.[6] It is by Virtue that the *Rishis* have crossed (the world with all its difficulties). It is upon Virtue that all the worlds depend (for their existence). It is by Virtue that the gods attained to their position of superiority. It is upon Virtue that Profit or Wealth rests.[7] Virtue, O king, is foremost in point of merit. Profit is said to be middling. Desire, it is said by the wise, is the lowest of the three.[8] For this reason, one should live with res-

trained soul, giving his attention to Virtue most. One should also behave towards all creatures as he should towards himself.' "[9]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"After Vidura had finished what he had to say, Prithā's son Arjuna, well-skilled in the science of Profit, and conversant also with the truths of both Virtue and Profit, urged on (by the drift of Yudhishthira's question), said these words.[10]

"Arjuna said,—'This world, O king, is the field of action. Action, therefore, is applauded here. Agriculture, trade, keep of cattle, and diverse kinds of arts,[11] constitute what is called Profit. Profit, again, is the end of all such acts. Without Profit or Wealth, both Virtue and (the objects of) Desire cannot be won. This is the declaration of the *Çruti*.[12] Even persons of uncleansed souls, if possessed of diverse kinds of Wealth, are able to perform the highest acts of virtue and gratify desires that are apparently difficult of being gratified.[13] Virtue and Desire are the limbs of Wealth as the *Çruti* declares. With the acquisition of Wealth, both Virtue and the objects of Desire may be won.[14] Like all creatures worshipping Brahman, even persons of superior birth worship a man possessed of Wealth.[15] Even they that are attired in deer-skins and bear matted locks on their heads, that are self-restrained, that smear their bodies with mire, that have their senses under complete control, even they that have bald heads and that are devoted *Brahmachārins*, and that live separated from one another, cherish a desire for Wealth.[16] Others attired in yellow robes, bearing long beards, graced with modesty, possessed of learning, contented, and freed from all attachments,[17] become desirous of Wealth. Others, following the practices of their ancestors, and observant of their respective duties, and others desirous of heaven, do the same.[18] Believers and unbelivers, and those that are rigid practicers of the highest *Yoga* all certify to the excellence of Wealth.*[19] He is said to be truly possessed of Wealth who cherishes his dependants with objects of enjoyment, and afflicts his foes with punishments.

* The second line of 19 is unintelligible.—T.

Even this, O foremost of intelligent men, is truly my opinion.[20] Listen, however, now to these two (*viz.*, Nakula and Sahadeva) who are about to speak!' "[21]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"After Arjuna had ceased, the two sons of Mādri, *viz.*, Nakula and Sahadeva, said these words of high import.[22]

"Nakula and Sahadeva said,—'Sitting or lying, walking or standing, one should strive after the acquisition of Wealth even by the most vigorous of means.[23] If Wealth, which is difficult of acquisition and highly agreeable, be earned, the person that has earned it, without doubt, is seen to obtain all the objects of Desire.[24] That Wealth which is connected with Virtue, as also that Virtue which is connected with Wealth, is certainly like nectar.* For this reason our opinions are as follows.[25] A person without Wealth cannot gratify any desire; similarly, there can be no Wealth in one that is destitute of Virtue. He, therefore, who is outside the pale of both Virtue and Wealth, is an object of fear unto the world.[26] For this reason, one should seek the acquisition of Wealth with a devoted mind, without disregarding the requirements of Virtue. They who believe in (the wisdom of) this saying succeed in acquiring whatever they desire.[27] One should first practise Virtue; next acquire Wealth without sacrificing Virtue; and then seek the gratification of Desire; for this should be the last act of one who has been successful in acquiring Wealth.' "[28]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"The twin sons of the Açwins, after having said these words, remained silent. Then Bhimasena began to say the following.[29]

"Bhimasena said,—'One without Desire never wishes for Wealth. One without Desire never wishes for Virtue. One who is destitute of Desire can never feel any wish. For this reason, Desire is the foremost of all the three.[30] It is under the influence of Desire that the very *Rishis* devote themselves to penances, subsisting upon fruits, or living upon

---

* *Taddhitwā* is *tat hi twā*. Nilakantha thinks that *twā* here is *twam*.—T.

roots or air only.[31] Others possessed of Vedic lore are engaged upon the Vedas and their branches or upon rites of faith and sacrificial acts, or upon making gifts or accepting them.[32] Traders, agriculturists, keepers of cattle, artists and artizans, and those who are employed in rites of propitiation, all act from Desire.[33] Some there are that dive into the depths of the ocean, induced by Desire. Desire, indeed, takes various forms. Everything is pervaded by the principle of Desire.[34] A man outside the pale of Desire never is, was, or will be, seen in this world. This, O king, is the truth. Both Virtue and Wealth are based upon Desire.[35] As butter represents the essence of curds, even so is Desire the essence of Profit and Virtue. Oil is better than oil-seeds. *Ghee* is better than sour milk.[36] Flowers and fruits are better than wood. Similarly, Desire is better than Virtue and Profit. As honeyed juice is extracted from flowers, so is Desire said to be extracted from these two. Desire is the parent of Virtue and Profit. Desire is the soul of these two.[37] Without Desire the Brāhmanas would never give either sweets or wealth unto Brāhmans. Without Desire the diverse kinds of action that are seen in the world would never have been seen. For these reasons, Desire is seen to be the foremost of the triple aggregate.[38] Approaching beautiful damsels attired in excellent robes, adorned with every ornament, and exhilarated with sweet wines, do thou sport with them. Desire, O king, should be the foremost of the three with us![39] Reflecting upon the question to its very roots, I have come to this conclusion. Do not hesitate to accept this conclusion, O son of Dharma! These words of mine are not of hollow import. Fraught with righteousness as they are, they will be acceptable to all good men.[40] Virtue, Profit, and Desire should all be equally attended to. That man who devotes himself to only one of them is certainly not a superior person. He is said to be middling who devotes himself to only two of them. He, on the other hand, is the best of his species who attends to all the three.'[41] Having said these words in brief as also in detail, unto those heroes, Bhima possessed of wisdom, surrounded by friends, smeared with sandal-paste, and

adorned with excellent garlands and ornaments, remained silent.*[42] Then king Yudhishthira the just, that foremost of virtuous men, possessed of great learning, properly reflecting for a while upon the words spoken by all of them, and thinking all those speeches to be false-philosophy, himself spoke as follows.[43]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Without doubt, all of you have settled conclusions in respect of the scriptures, and all of you are conversant with authorities. These words fraught with certainty that you have spoken have been heard by me.[44] Listen now, with concentrated attention, to what I say unto you. He who is not employed in merit or in sin, he who does not attend to Profit, or Virtue, or Desire, who is above all faults, who regards gold and a brick-bat with equal eyes, becomes liberated from pleasure and pain and the necessity of accomplishing his purposes.[45] All creatures are subject to birth and death. All are liable to waste and change. Awakened repeatedly by the diverse benefits and evils of life, all of them applaud Emancipation. We do not know, however, what Emancipation is.[46] The Self-born and divine Brahman has said that there is no Emancipation for him who is bound with ties of attachment and affection. They, however, that are possessed of learning seek Extinction. For this reason, one should never regard anything as either agreeable or disagreeable.†[47] This view seems to be the best. No one in this world can act as he pleases. I act

---

* In the Bengal texts, 41 is made a triplet, and 42 is made to consist of a single line; 42 again is represented as Vaiçampāyana's speech. This is evidently an error; 41 is a couplet. 42 also is so. *Rājna* &c., refer to Bhima. K. P. Singha avoids the error; the Burdwan translator, as usual, makes a mess of 41 by taking it to be a triplet.—T.

† There can be very little doubt that the second line has a distinct reference to the principal article of faith in *Buddhism*. Emancipation here is identified with Extinction or Annihilation. The word used is *Nirvāna*. The advice given is abstention from attachments of every kind. These portions of the *Cānti* are either interpolations, or were written after the spread of Buddhism.—T.

precisely as I am made (by a superior power) to act. The great Ordainer makes all creatures proceed as He wills. The Ordainer is Supreme. Know this, all of you.*[48] No one can, by his acts, obtain what is unobtainable. That which is to be, takes place. Know this. And since one who has withdrawn himself from the triple aggregate may succeed in winning Emancipation, it seems, therefore, that Emancipation is productive of the highest good!' "[49]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having listened to all these foremost words fraught with reason and acceptable to the heart, Bhima and others were filled with delight and joining their hands, bowed unto that prince of Kuru's race.[50] Indeed, those foremost of men, O king, having heard that speech of the monarch, well adorned with sweet letters and syllables, acceptable to the heart, and divested of dissonant sounds and words, began to applaud Yudhishthira highly.[51] The high-souled son of Dharma, in return, possessed of great energy, praised his convinced auditors; and once more the king addressed the son of the foremost of rivers, possessed of a high soul, for enquiring about duties."[52]

Section CLXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, O thou that art possessed of great wisdom, I shall ask thee a question. It behoveth thee, O enhancer of the happiness of the Kurus, to discourse to me fully upon it![1] What kind of men are said to be of gentle disposition? With whom may the most delightful friendship exist? Tell us also who are able to do good presently and in the future![2] I am of opinion that neither swelling wealth, nor relatives, nor kinsmen, occupy that place which well-wishing friends occupy![3] A friend capable of listening to beneficial counsels, and also of doing good, is

---

* The doctrine set forth in 48 is the doctrine of either universal Necessity as expounded by Leibniz, or that of Occasional Causes of the Cartesian school. In fact, all the theories about the government of the universe are strangely jumbled together here.—T.

exceedingly rare! It behoveth thee, O foremost of virtuous men, to discourse fully on these topics!'[4]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen to me, O Yudhishthira, as I speak to thee, in detail, of those men with whom friendships may be formed and those with whom friendships may not be formed.[5] One that is covetous, one that is pitiless, one that has renounced the duties of his order, one that is dishonest, one that is a knave, one that is mean, one that is of sinful practices, one that is suspicious of all, one that is idle,[6] one that is procrastinating, one that is of a crooked disposition, one that is an object of universal obloquy, one that dishonors the life of his preceptor, one that is addicted to the seven well-known vices, one that casts off distressed friends, one possessed of a wicked soul, one that is shameless,[7] one whose sight is ever directed towards sin, one that is an atheist, one that is a slanderer of the Vedas, one whose senses are not restrained, one that gives free indulgence to lust,[8] one that is untruthful, one that is deserted by all, one that transgresses all restraints, one that is deceitful, one that is destitute of wisdom, one that is envious, one that is wedded to sin,[9] one whose conduct is bad, one whose soul has not been cleansed, one that is cruel, one that is a gambler, one that always seeks to injure friends, one that covets wealth belonging to others,[10] that wicked-souled wight who never expresses satisfaction with what another may give him according to the extent of his means, one that is never pleased with his friends, O bull among men,[11] one that becomes angry on occasions that do not justify anger, one that is of restless mind, one that quarrels without cause, that sinful wight who feels no scruple in deserting well-meaning friends,[12] that wretch who is always mindful of his own interests and who, O king, quarrels with friends when these do him a very slight injury or inflict on him a wrong unconsciously,[13] one who acts like a foe but speaks like a friend, one who is of preverse perceptions, one who is blind (to his own good), one who never takes delight in what is good for himself or others, should be avoided.[14] One who drinks alcoholic liquors, one who hates others, one who is wrathful, one who is destitute of compassion, one who is

pained at the sight of other's happiness, one who injures friends, one who is always engaged in taking the lives of living creatures,[15] one who is ungrateful, one who is vile, should be avoided. Alliances (of friendship) should never be formed with any of them. Similarly no alliance (of friendship) should be formed with him who is ever intent upon marking the faults of others. Listen now to me as I indicate the persons with whom alliances (of friendship) may be formed.[16] They that are well-born, they that are possessed of eloquence and politeness of speech, they that are endued with knowledge and science, they that are of handsome and agreeable features, they that are possessed of merit and other accomplishments, they that are free from covetousness, they that are never exhausted by labour,[17] they that are good to their friends, they that are grateful, they that are possessed of varied information and knowledge, they that are destitute of avarice, they that are possessed of agreeable qualities, they that are firm in truth, they that have subdued their senses,[18] they that are devoted to athletic and other exercises, they that are of good families, they that are perpetuaters of their races,* they that are destitute of faults, they that are possessed of fame, should be accepted by kings for forming alliances (of friendship) with them.[19] They, again, O monarch, who become pleased and contented if one behaves with them according to the best of one's powers, they who never get angry on occasions that do not justify anger, they who never become displeased without sufficient cause,[20] those persons who are well conversant with the science of Profit and who, even when annoyed, succeed in keeping their minds tranquil, they who devote themselves to the service of friends at personal sacrifice,[21] they who are never estranged from friends, but who continue unchanged (in their attachment) like a red blanket made of wool (which does not easily change its color),† they who never disregard, from wrath, those that are poor, they who never dishonor youth-

---

* *I. e.*, they that have wives and have procreated children.—T.

† *Raktamivāvikam*, and not *Raktamivādhikam*, is the correct reading. The Burdwan translator accepts the incorrect reading.—T.

ful women by yielding to lust and loss of judgment,[22] they who never point out wrong paths to friends, they who are trustworthy, they who are devoted to the practice of righteousness, they who regard gold and brick-bats with an equal eye, they that adhere with firmness to friends and well-wishers,[23] they who muster their own people and seek the accomplishment of the business of friends, regardless of their own dignity and casting off all the marks of their own respectability,[24] should be regarded as persons with whom alliances (of friendship) should be made. Indeed, the dominions of that king spread on every direction, like the light of the lord of the stars, who makes alliances of friendship with such superior men.[25] Alliances should be formed with men that are well-practised in weapons, that have completely subdued their wrath, that are always strong in battle and possessed of high birth, good behaviour, and varied accomplishments.[26] Amongst those vicious men, O sinless one, that I have mentioned, the vilest, O king, are those that are ungrateful and that injure friends. Those persons of wicked behaviour should be avoided by all. This, indeed, is a settled conclusion.'[27]

"Yudhishthira said,—'I desire to hear in detail this description. Tell me who they are that are called injurers of friends and ungrateful persons!'[28]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall recite to thee an old story whose incidents occurred in the country, O monarch, of the *Mlecchas* that lies to the north.[29] There was a certain Brāhmana belonging to the middle country. He was destitute of Vedic learning. (One day), beholding a prosperous village, the man entered it from desire of obtaining charity.*[30] In that village lived a robber possessed of great wealth, conversant with the distinctive features of all the orders (of men), devoted to the Brāhmanas, firm in truth, and always engaged in making gifts.[31] Repairing to the abode of that robber, the Brāhmana begged for alms. Indeed, he solicited a house to live in

* The true reading is *Brahmavarjjitah* and not that word in the accusative. Both the Bengali versions have adhered to the incorrect reading of the Bengal texts.—T.

and such necessaries of life as would last for one year.[32] Thus solicited by the Brāhmana, the robber gave him a piece of new cloth with its ends complete,* and a widowed woman possessed of youth.[33] Obtaining all those things from the robber, the Brāhmana became filled with delight. Indeed, Gautama began to live happily in that commodious house which the robber assigned to him.[34] He began to help the relatives and kinsmen of the female slave he had got from the robber chief. In this way he lived for many years in that prosperous village of hunters.[35] He began to practise with great devotion the art of archery. Every day, like the other robbers residing there, Gautama, O king, went into the woods and slaughtered wild cranes in abundance. Always engaged in slaughtering living creatures, he became well-skilled in that act and soon bade farewell to compassion. In consequence of his intimacy with robbers he became one like one of them.[36-37] Living happily in that robber village for many months, large was the number of wild cranes that he slew.[38] One day another Brāhmana came to that village. He was dressed in rags and deer-skins and bore matted locks on his head. Of highly pure behaviour, he was devoted to the study of the Vedas.[39] Of a humble disposition, frugal in fare, devoted to the Brāhmanas, thoroughly conversant with the Vedas, and observant of *Brahmacharyya* vows, that Brāhmana had been a dear friend of Gautama and belonged to that part of the country from which Gautama had emigrated.[40] In course of his wanderings, as already said, the Brāhmana came to that robber village where Gautama had taken up his abode. He never accepted any food if given by a Cudra and, therefore, began to search for the house of a Brāhmana there (for accepting the duties of hospitality).†[41] Accordingly he wandered in every direction in that village teeming with robber-families. At last that foremost of Brāhmanas came to

---

† *I. e.*, it was not a piece torn off from a full piece, but both its *daças* or ends were there.—T.

* To this day there are many Brāhmanas in India who are *açudra-pratigrāhins*, *i. e.*, who accept no gift, however rich, from a Cudra.—T.

the house owned by Gautama.[42] It so happened that just at that time Gautama also, returning from the woods, was entering his abode. The two friends met.[43] Armed with bow and sword, he bore on his shoulders a load of slaughtered cranes, and his body was smeared with the blood that trickled down from the bag on his shoulders.[44] Beholding that man who then resembled a cannibal and who had fallen away from the pure practices of the order of his birth, entering his house, the newly-arrived guest, recognising him, O king, said these words:[45]—What is this that thou art doing here through folly? Thou art a Brāhmana, and the perpetuater of a Brāhmana family! Born in a respectable family belonging to the Middle country, how is it that thou hast become like a robber in thy practices?[46] Recollect, O regenerate one, thy famous kinsmen of former times, all of whom were well-versed in the Vedas! Born in their race, alas, thou hast become a stigma to it![47] Awake thy self by thy own exertions! Recollecting the energy, the behaviour, the learning, the self-restraint, the compassion (that are thine by the order of thy birth), leave this thy present abode, O regenerate one![48]—Thus addressed by that well-meaning friend of his, O king, Gautama answered him in great affliction of heart, saying,[49] —O foremost of regenerate ones, I am poor. I am destitute also of a knowledge of the Vedas! Know, O best of Brāhmanas, that I have taken up my abode here for the sake of wealth alone![50] At thy sight, however, I am blest today. We shall together set out of this place tomorrow! Do thou pass the night here with me![51]—Thus addressed, the newly-arrived Brāhmana, full of compassion as he was, passed the night there, refraining to touch anything. Indeed, though hungry and requested repeatedly, the guest refused to touch any food in that house.' "[52]

Section CLXIX.

"Bhishma said,—'After that night had passed away and that best of Brāhmanas had left the house, Gautama, issuing from his abode, began to proceed towards the sea, O Bhārata![1]

On the way he beheld some merchants that used to make voyages on the sea. With that caravan of merchants he proceeded towards the ocean.[2] It so happened, however, O king, that that large caravan was assailed, while passing through a mountain valley, by an infuriate elephant. Almost all the persons were slain.[3] Somehow escaping from that great danger, the Brāhmana fled towards the north for saving his life, not knowing whither he proceeded.[4] Separated from the caravan and led far away from that spot, he began to wander alone in a forest, like a *Kimpurusha*.*[5] At last coming upon a road that led towards the ocean, he journeyed on till he reached a delightful and heavenly forest abounding with flowering trees.[6] It was adorned with mango trees that put forth flowers and fruits throughout the year. It resembled the very woods of Nandana (in heaven) and was inhabited by *Yakshas* and *Kinnaras*.[7] It was also adorned with *Çālas* and palmyras and *Tamālas*, with clusters of black aloes, and many large sandal trees.[8] Upon the delightful table-lands that he saw there, fragrant with perfumes of diverse kinds, birds of the foremost species were always heard to pour forth their melodies.[9] Other winged denizens of the air, called *Bhārundas* and having faces resembling those of human beings, and those called *Bhulingas*, and others belonging to mountainous regions and to the sea, warbled sweetly there.[10] Gautama proceeded through that forest, listening, as he went, to those delightful and charming strains of nature's choristers.[11] On his way he beheld a very delightful and level spot of land covered with golden sands and resembling heaven itself, O king, for its beauty.[12] On that plot stood a large and beautiful banian with a spherical top. Possessed of many branches that corresponded with the parent tree in beauty and size, that banian looked like an umbrella set over the plain.[13] The spot underneath that manificient tree was drenched with water perfumed with the most fragrant sandal. Endued with great beauty and abounding with delicious flowers

---

* *Kimpurusha* is half-man and half-horse. The body is supposed to be that of a horse, and the face that of a man.—T.

all around, the spot looked like the court of the Grandsire himself.[14] Beholding that charming and unrivalled spot, abounding with flowering trees, sacred, and looking like the abode of a very celestial, Gautama became very much delighted.[15] Arrived there, he sat himself down with a well-pleased heart. While sitting there, O son of Kunti, a delicious, charming, and auspicious breeze, bearing the perfume of many kinds of flowers, began to blow softly, cooling the limbs of Gautama and filling him with celestial pleasure, O monarch![16-17] Fanned by that perfumed breeze, the Brāhmana became refreshed, and in consequence of the pleasure he felt he soon fell asleep. Meanwhile the sun set behind the Asta hills.[18] When the resplendant luminary entered his chambers in the west and the evening twilight came, a bird that was the foremost of his species, returned to that spot, which was his home, from the regions of Brahman.[19] His name was Nādijangha and he was a dear friend of the creator. He was a prince of Cranes, possessed of great wisdom, and a son of (the sage) Kaçyapa.[20] He was also known extensively on Earth by the name of *Rājdharman*. Indeed, he surpassed everyone on Earth in fame and wisdom. The child of a celestial maiden, possessed of great beauty and learning, he resembled a celestial in splendour.[21] Adorned with the many ornaments that he wore and that were as brilliant as the sun himself, that child of a celestial girl seemed to blaze with beauty.[22] Beholding that bird arrived at that spot, Gautama became filled with wonder. Exhausted with hunger and thirst, the Brāhmana began to cast his eyes on the bird from desire of slaying him.[23]

"'Rājdharman said,—Welcome, O Brāhmana! By good luck have I got thee today in my abode! The sun is set. The evening twilight is come![24] Having come to my abode, thou art today my dear and excellent guest! Having received my worship according to the rites laid down in the scriptures, thou mayst go whither thou wilt tomorrow morning!—' "[25]

Section CLXX.

"Bhishma said,—'Hearing these sweet words, Gautama became filled with wonder. Feeling at the same time a great curiosity, he eyed Rājdharman without being able to withdraw his gaze from him.[1]

"'Rājdharman said,—O Brāhmana, I am the son of Kaçyapa by one of the daughters of (the sage) Dhaksha. Possessed of great merits, thou art my guest today! Thou art welcome, O foremost of Brāhmanas!—'[2]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having offered him hospitality according to the rites laid down in the scriptures, the crane made an excellent bed of the *Çīla* flowers that lay all around.[3] He also offered him several large fishes caught from the deep waters of the Bhāgirathi.[4] Indeed, the son of Kaçyapa offered for the acceptance of his guest Gautama a blazing fire and certain large fishes.[5] After the Brāhmana had eaten and became gratified, the bird possessing wealth of penances began to fan him with his wings for driving off his fatigue.[6] Seeing his guest seated at his ease, he asked him about his pedigree. The man answered, saying,—I am a Brāhmana known by the name of Gautama!—and then remained silent.[7] The bird gave his guest a soft bed made of leaves and perfumed with many fragrant flowers. Gautama laid himself down on it, and felt great happiness.[8] When Gautama had laid himself down, the eloquent son of Kaçyapa, who resembled Yama himself in his knowledge of duties, asked him about the cause of his arrival there.[9] Gautama answered him, saying,—I am, O large-souled one, very poor! For earning wealth* I am desirous of going to the sea![10]—The son of Kaçyapa cheerfully told him,—It behoveth thee not to feel any anxiety! Thou shalt succeed, O foremost of Brāhmanas, and shalt return home with property.[11] The sage Vrihaspati hath spoken of four kinds of means for the acquisition of wealth, *viz.*, inheritance, sudden accessions due to

---

* Literally, 'for obtaining goods.—T.

luck or the favor of the gods, acquisition by labour, and acquisition through the aid or kindness of friends.[12] I have become thy friend. I cherish good feelings towards thee! I shall, therefore, exert in such a way that thou mayst succeed in acquiring wealth![13]—The night passed away and morning came. Seeing his guest rise cheerfully from bed, the bird addressed him, saying, Go, O amiable one, along this very route and thou art sure to succeed![14] At the distance of about three *Yojanas* from this place, there is a mighty king of the *Rākshasas*. Possessed of great strength, his name is Virupāksha, and he is a friend of mine![15] Go to him, O foremost of Brāhmanas! That chief, induced by my request, will, without doubt, give thee as much wealth as thou desirest![16] —Thus addressed, O king, Gautama cheerfully set out from that place, eating on the way, to his fill, fruits sweet as ambrosia.[17] Beholding the sandal and aloe and birch trees that stood along the road, and enjoying their refreshing shade, the Brāhmana proceeded quickly.[18] He then reached the city known by the name of Meruvraja. It had large porches made of stone, and high walls of the same material. It was also surrounded on every side with a trench, and large pieces of rock and engines of many kinds were kept ready on the ramparts.[19] He soon became known to the *Rākshasa* chief of great intelligence, O king, as a dear guest sent unto him by the chief's friend (the crane). The chief received Gautama very gladly.[20] The king of the *Rakshasas* then, O Yudhishthira, commanded his attendants, saying,—Let Gautama be soon brought hither from the gate![21]—At the command of the king, certain persons, quick as hawks, issued from the splendid palace of their ruler, and proceeding to the gate accosted Gautama.[22] The royal messengers, O monarch, said unto that Brāhmana,—Come quickly, the king desires to see thee![23] Thou mayst have heard of the king of the *Rakshasas*, Virupāksha by name, possessed of great courage. Even he is impatient of seeing thee! Come quickly and tarry not![24]—Thus addressed, the Brāhmana, forgetting his toil in his surprise, ran with the messengers. Beholding the great affluence of the city, he became filled with wonder.[25] Soon he entered the

king's palace in the company of the messengers, solicitous of obtaining a sight of the king of the *Rāhshasas*.'"[26]

SECTION CLXXI.

"Bhishma said,—'Led into a spacious apartment, Gautama was introduced to the king of the *Rakshasas*. Worshipped by the latter (with the usual offerings), he took his seat on an excellent seat.[1] The king asked him about the race of his birth and his practices, his study of the Vedas and his observance of the *Brahmacharyya* vow. The Brāhmana, however, without answering the other queries, only stated his name and race.[2] The king, having ascertained only the name and the race of his guest, and seeing that he was destitute of Brāhmanic splendour and Vedic studies, next enquired about the country of his residence.[3]

"'The *Rākshasa* said,—Where is thy residence, O blessed one, and to what race does thy wife belong? Tell us truly. Do not fear. Trust us without anxiety![4]—

"'Gautama said,—I belong by birth to the Middle country. I live in a village of hunters. I have married a Cudrā spouse who had been a widow. All this that I tell you is the truth![5]

"Bhishma continued,—'The king then began to reflect as to what he should do. Indeed, the king began to think how he might succeed in acquiring merit.[6] He said unto himself, —This man is by birth a Brāhmana. He is, again, a friend of the high-souled Rājdharman. He has been sent to me by that son of Kaçyapa.[7] I must do what is agreeable to my friend. He is very intimate with me. Indeed, he is my brother, and a dear relative. He is truly a friend of my heart.[8] On this day of the month of Kārtika, a thousand Brāhmanas of the foremost order are to be entertained in my house. This Gautama also shall be entertained with them and I shall give wealth unto him too.[9] This is a sacred day. Gautama has come hither as a guest. The wealth that is to be given away (unto the Brāhmanas) is ready. What is there then to think of![10]— Just about this time a thousand Brāhmanas, possessed of great learning, with persons purified by baths and adorned

(with sandal-paste and flowers), and attired in long robes of linen, came to the palace.[11] The *Rākshasa* king Virupāksha, O monarch, received the guests, as they came, duly and according to the rites laid down in the scriptures.[12] At the command of the king, skins were spread out for them. The royal servants then, O best of the Bharatas, placed mats of *Kuça* grass on the ground.*[13] Those foremost of Brāhmanas, having been duly worshipped by the king, sat down on those seats. The *Rākshasa* chief once more worshipped his guests, as provided by the ordinance, with sesame seeds, green blades of grass, and water.[14] Some amongst them were selected for representing the Viçwedevas, the *Pitris*, and the deities of fire. These were smeared with sandal-paste, and flowers were offered unto them. They were also adored with the other kinds of costly offerings.[15] After such worship, every one of them looked as effulgent as the moon in the firmament. Then bright and polished plates of gold, adorned with engravings,[16] and filled with excellent food prepared with *ghee* and honey, were given unto those Brāhmanas. Every year (on the days of full moon) of the month of *Ashāda* and *Māgha*, a large number of Brāhmanas used to receive from the *Rākshasa* chief, after proper honors, the best kinds of food that they desired. Especially, on the day of full moon in the month of Kārtika, after the expiry of autumn, the king used to give unto the Brāhmanas much wealth of diverse kinds, including gold, silver, jewels, gems, pearls,[17-19] diamonds of great value, stones of the *lapis lazuli* variety, deer-skins, and skins of the *Ranku* deer. Indeed, O Bhārata, throwing a heap of wealth of many kinds for giving it away as *Dakshinā* (unto his regenerate guests),[20] the mighty Virupāksha, addressing those foremost of Brāhmanas, said unto them,—Take from these jewels and gems as much as ye wish and can hope to bear away![21]—And

* At such entertainments, Hindus, to this day, sit on separate seats when eating. If any body touches anybody else's seat, both become impure and can not eat any longer. Before eating, however, when talking or hearing, the guests may occupy a common seat, *i. e.*, a large mat or blanket or cloth, &c., spread out on the floor.—T.

he also used to say unto them, O Bhārata, these words:—Taking those plates of gold and vessels which you have used for your dinner, go ye away, O foremost of Brāhmanas![22]—When these words were uttered by the high-souled *Rākshasa* king (on the occasion of that particular feast), those bulls among Brāhmanas took as much wealth as each desired.[23] Worshipped with those costly jewels and gems, those best of Brāhmanas, attired in excellent robes, became filled with delight.[24] Once more, the *Rākshasa* king, having restrained the *Rākshasas* that had come to his palace from diverse lands, addressed those Brāhmanas and said,[25]—This one day, ye regenerate ones, ye need have no fear from the *Rākshasas* here! Sport ye as ye wish, and then go away with speed![26]—The Brāhmanas then, leaving that spot, went away in all directions with great speed. Gautama also, having taken up a heavy quantity of gold without any loss of time, went away.[27] Carrying the burthen with difficulty, he reached that same banian (under which he had met the crane). He sat himself down, fatigued, toil-worn, and hungry.[28] While Gautama was resting there, that best of birds, *viz.*, Rājadharman, O king, came there. Devoted to friends, he gladdened Gautama by bidding him welcome.[29] By flapping his wings he began to fan his guest and dispel his fatigue. Possessed of great intelligence, he worshipped Gautama and made arrangements for his food.[30] Having eaten and refreshed himself, Gautama began to think,—Heavy is this load that I have taken of bright gold, moved by covetousness and folly! I have a long way to travel. I have no food by which to support life on my way.[31-32] What should I do for supporting life?—Even these were his thoughts then. It so happened that even upon much thinking he failed to see any food which he could eat on the way.[33] Ungrateful as he was, O tiger among men, even this was the thought that he then conceived.—This prince of cranes, so large and containing a heap of flesh, stayeth by my side![34] Slaying and bagging him, I shall leave this spot and go along with great speed!—'"[35]

Section CLXXII.

"Bhishma said,—'There, under that banian, for the protection of his guest, the prince of birds had kindled and kept up a fire with high and blazing flames.*[1] On one side of the fire, the bird slept trustfully. The ungrateful and wicked-souled wretch prepared to slay his sleeping host.[2] With the aid of that blazing fire he killed the trustful bird, and having despatched him, became filled with delight, never thinking there was sin in what he did.[3] Peeling off the feathers and the down, he roasted the flesh on that fire. Then taking it up with the gold he had brought, the Brāhmana fled quickly from that spot.[4] The next day, the *Rākshasa* king, Virupāksha, addressing his son, said,—Alas, O son, I do not behold Rājdharman, that best of birds, today![5] Every morning he repairs to the regions of Brahman for adoring the Grandsire. While returning, he never goes home without paying me a visit.[6] These two mornings and two nights have passed away without his having come to my abode. My mind, therefore, is not in peace. Let my friend be enquired after.[7] Gautama, who came here, is without Vedic studies and destitute of Brāhmanic splendour. He has found his way to the abode of my friend. I greatly fear, that worst of Brāhmanas has slain Rājdharman![8] Of evil practices and wicked understanding, I read him through by the signs he showed. Without compassion, of cruel and grim visage, and wicked, that vilest of men is like a robber. That Gautama has gone to the abode of my friend. For this reason my heart has become extremely anxious![9] O son, proceeding hence with great speed to the abode of Rājdharman, ascertain whether that

---

* *Agni* or fire is a deity that is said to have Vāyu (the wind-god) for his charioteer. The custom, to this day, with all travellers in India is to kindle a large fire when they have to pass the night in woods and forests or uninhabited places. Such fires always succeed in scaring off wild beasts. In fact, even tigers, raging with hunger, do not approach the place where a blazing fire is kept up.—T.

pure-souled bird is still alive! Do not tarry![10]—Thus addressed by his sire, the prince, accompanied by other *Rākshasas*, proceeded with great speed. Arrived at the foot of that banian, he saw the remains of Rājdharman.[11] Weeping with grief, the son of the intelligent king of the *Rākshasas*, ran with great speed and to the utmost of his power, for seizing Gautama.[12] The *Rākshasas* had not to go far when they succeeded in catching the Brāhmana and discovering the body of Rājdharman destitute of wings, bones, and feet.[13] Taking the captive with them, the *Rākshasas* returned with great speed to Meruvraja, and showed the king the mutilated body of Rājdharman, and that ungrateful and sinning wretch, *viz.*, Gautama.[14] Beholding the remains of his friend, the king, with his counsellers and priest, began to weep aloud. Indeed, loud was the voice of lamentation that was heard in his abode.[15-16] The entire city of the *Rakshasa* king,—men, women, and children,—became plunged in woe. The king then addressed his son, saying,—Let this sinful wretch be slain! Let these *Rakshasas* here feast merrily on his flesh![17] Of sinful deeds, of sinful habits, of sinful soul, and inured to sin, this wretch, I think, should be slain by you![18]—Thus addressed by the *Rākshasa* king, many *Rākshasas* of terrrible prowess expressed their unwillingness to eat the flesh of that sinner.[19] Indeed, those wanderers of the night, addressing their king, said,—Let this vilest of men be given away to the robbers![20]—Bending their heads to their king, they told him so, adding,—It behoveth thee not to give us this sinful wretch for our food![21]—The king said unto them,—Let it be so! Let this ungrateful wight be given to the robbers then without delay![22]—Thus addressed by him, the *Rākshasas*, armed with lances and battle-axes, hacked that vile wretch into pieces and gave them away to the robbers.[23] It so happened, however, that the very robbers refused to eat the flesh of that vile man. Though cannibals, O monarch, they would not eat an ungrateful person.[24] For one that slays a Brāhmana, for one that drinks alcohol, for one that steals, for one that has fallen away from a vow, there is expiation, O king, But there is no expiation for an ungrateful person![25] That

cruel and vile man who injures a friend and becomes ungrateful, is not eaten by the very cannibals nor by the worms that feed on carrion.' "[26]

SECTION CLXXIII.

"Bhishma said,—'The *Rākshasa* king then caused a funeral pyre to be made for that prince of cranes and adorned it with jewels and gems, and perfumes, and costly robes.[1] Setting fire to it with the body of that prince of birds, the mighty chief of the *Rākshasas* caused the obsequial rites of his friend to be performed according to the ordinance.[2] At that time, the auspicious goddess Surabhi, the daughter of Daksha, appeared in the sky above the place where the pyre had been set up. Her breasts were full of milk.*[3] From her mouth, O sinless monarch, froth mixed with milk fell upon the funeral pyre of Rājdharman.[4] At this, the prince of cranes became revived. Rising up, he approached his friend Virupāksha, the king of the *Rākshasas*.[5] At this time, the chief of the celestials himself came to the city of Virupāksha. Addressing the *Rākshasa* king, Indra said,—By good luck, thou hast revived the prince of cranes![6]—The chief of the deities further recited to Virupāksha the old story of the curse denounced by the Grandsire upon that best of birds named Rājdharman.[7] Addressing the king he said,—Once on a time, O monarch, this prince of cranes absented himself from the region of Brahman (when his presence was expected). In wrath the Grandsire said unto this prince of birds,[8]—Since this vile crane hath not presented himself today in my assembly, therefore, that wicked-souled one shall not soon die (so as to be able to leave the Earth)![9]—In consequence of these words of the Grandsire, the prince of cranes, though slain by Gautama, has come back to life, through the virtue of the nectar with which his body was drenched![10]—After Indra had become silent, Rājadharman, having bowed unto the chief of the celestials, said,—O first of gods, if thy heart be inclined towards me for grace, then let my dear friend

---

* Surabhi is the celestial cow sprung from the sage Daksha.—T.

Gautama be restored to life!*[11]—Hearing these words of his, Vāsava, O foremost of men, sprinkled nectar over the Brāhmana Gautama and restored him to life.[12] The prince of cranes, approaching his friend Gautama who still bore on his shoulders the load of gold (that he had got from the king of the *Rākshasas*), embraced him and felt great joy.[13] Then Rājadharman, that prince of cranes, dismissing Gautama of sinful deeds, together with his wealth, returned to his own abode.[14] At the due hour he repaired (the next day) to the Grandsire's region. The latter honored the high-souled bird with such attentions as are shown to a guest.[15] Gautama also, returning to his home in the village of the hunters, begot many sinful children upon his Cudrā wife.[16] A heavy curse was denounced upon him by the gods to the effect that having begotten, within a few years,† upon the body of his re-married wife many children, that ungrateful sinner should sink into a terrible hell for many years.[17] All this, O Bhārata, was recited to me formerly by Nārada. Recollecting the incidents of this grave story, O bull of Bharata's race, I have recited to thee all its details duly.[18] Whence can an ungrateful person derive fame? Where is his place? Whence can he have happiness? An ungrateful person does not deserve to be trusted. One that is ungrateful can never escape.[19] No person should injure a friend. He that injures a friend sinks into terrible and everlasting hell.[20] Every one should be grateful, and every one should seek to benefit his friends. Everything may be obtained from a friend. Honors may be obtained from friends.‡[21] In consequence of friends one may enjoy various objects of enjoyment. Through the exertions of friends, one may escape from various kinds of danger and distress. He that is wise would honor his friends with his

---

* The second line of 11 is vicious as printed in the Bengal texts.—T.

† Whether the word is *chirāt* or *achirāt* is difficult to make out.—T.

‡ In Sanskrit the ablative has sometimes the sense of 'through'! Here, *mitrāt* means both from and through. What is said is that wealth, honors, &c., may be acquired through friends, *i, e.*, the latter may give wealth or be instrumental in its acquisition; &c.—T.

best attentions.[22] An ungrateful, shameless, and sinful wight should be shunned by those that are wise. One that injures his friends is a wretch of his race. Such a sinful wight is the vilest of men.[23] I have thus told thee, O foremost of all virtuous men, what the characteristics are of that sinful wretch who is stained by ingratitude and who injures his friend. What else dost thou wish to hear?' "[24]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words spoken by the high-souled Bhishma, Yudhishthira, O Janamejaya, became highly gratified."[25]

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CANTI PARVA.

Rājadharmānuçāsana Parva.

	PAGE.
After the completion by Yudhishthira of the water-rites, many *Rishis* come to him ...	1
Nārada congratulates Yudhishthira upon his success	2
Yudhishthira's lament for the loss of his kinsmen ...	ib
Yudhishthira inquires of Nārada why the Earth had swallowed up the wheels of Karna's car ...	3
Nārada recites to Yudhishthira the story of Karna's pupilage and the curse denounced on him by a Brāhmana whose cow Karna had inadvertantly slain	ib
Nārada recites the story of Karna's extraordinary powers of endurance in consequence of which his real caste becomes known to his preceptor who thereupon curses him for his deceit ...	7
The story of Karna's heroism in aiding the abduction of the princess of the Kalingas by Duryodhana at a self-choice	9
Jarāsandha worsted by Karna	10
Kunti consoles Yudhishthira by telling him that neither she nor Surya could dissuade Karna from fighting the Pāndavas	11
Yudhishthira's lament	12
Yudhishthira wishes to renounce the sovereignty ...	16
Arjuna's address to Yudhishthira justifying the battle and applauding the acquisition of wealth ...	ib
Unmoved by Arjuna's words, Yudhishthira desires to lead the life of a religious recluse	19
Bhima's address to Yudhishthira applauding sovereignty	22

PAGE.

Arjuna recites the story of the discourse between Cakra and certain youths desirous of leading a forest life 25
Nakula's address to Yudhishthira against renunciation and applauding a life of domesticity ... 28
Sahadeva's address to Yudhishthira recommending a life of action with the soul freed from attachments... 32
Draupadi's address to Yudhishthira reminding him of his former counsels 33
Arjuna's address in applause of him who wields the rod of Chastisement 36
The character of Chastisement ... ... ib
Bhima's second address to Yudhishthira 41
Bhima urges Yudhishthira to subdue his grief ... 43
Yudhishthira's reply to Bhima, exposing the folly of earthly enjoyments 44
Arjuna recites the story of the discourse between the ruler of the Videhas and his queen, in which the latter exposed the claims of a life of poverty and renunciation 46
Yudhishthira's reply to Arjuna on the vanity of wealth 50
Devasthāna's address to Yudhishthira, pointing out that the period had not come when the king could retire into the woods 53
Continuation of Devasthāna's address recommending the assumption of sovereignty with soul freed from attachment 55
Arjuna's address to Yudhishthira justifying the slaughter of foes in battle 57
Vyāsa's address to Yudhishthira dissuading him from a life of retirement and applauding a life of domesticity 58
The story of Cankha and Likhita 59
Likhita, instructed by his brother, goes to king Sudyumna and solicits the just sentence of the law ... 60
Likhita's hands are cut off ... ... ib

PAGE.

Likhita's hands grow again 61
King Sudyumna, by having justly wielded the rod of chastisement, ascended to heaven ... ib
Continuation of Vyāsa's address in which he exhorts Yudhishthira to grant the wishes of his brothers ... ... ib
Vyāsa urges Yudhishthira to perform sacrifices and imitate the great monarchs of old ... 62
Yudhisthira declares to Vyāsa that earthly rule can give him no delight 65
Vyāsa's reply pointing out the virtues of Time ... ib
Vyāsa applauds the merits of sovereignty as the means of acquiring heaven 68
Yudhishthira's reply to Arjuna applauding a life of *yoga* and austerities 69
Yudhishthira's censure of himself for his cupidity and for the slaughter he caused of his kinsmen ... 71
Vyāsa comforts Yudhisthira by explaining the action of Destiny and exhorts him to Work ... 73
Vyāsa recites the story of Açma's discourse to Janaka 74
Arjuna asks Krishna to dispel Yudhishthira's grief ... 78
Krishna asks Yudhishthira not to grieve for men who died heroically in battle in the observance of Kshatriya duties 79
Krishna repeats Nārada's consolations to Srinjaya on the death of Srinjaya's child ... ... ib
The stories of ancient monarchs recited by Nārada to Srinjaya 80
Srinjaya gets back his child through Nārada's grace... 91
The story of Nārada and Parvata wandering over the Earth under a compact of telling each other their inmost thoughts 92
They arrive at Srinjaya's court ... ... ib
Nārada smitten by the charms of Srinjaya's daughter... ib
Nārada cursed by Parvata for his reticence ... 93
Nārada curses Parvata in return ... ... ib

PAGE.

Nārada marries the princess Sukumāri but she beholds her as an ape 93
Nārada and Parvata, in consequence of each other's curse, lose the power of going to heaven ... ib
Nārada and Parvata are reconciled and withdraw their mutual curses 94
Parvata grants a boon to king Srinjaya in the form of a son 95
Indra slays the child by ordering his weapon Thunder to assume the form of a tiger and spring upon the victim while in the nurse's arms... 97
Revived by Nārada, the young prince Suvarnasthivin rules righteously for many years ... ib
Exhortation to Yudhishthira to shake off his grief and assume the reins of rule ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's fears about the guilt of slaughter having stained him 100
Vyāsa repeats his observations on Time as the all-powerful and universal agent for the production of all events 101
Vyāsa recomends Expiation 102
Ditto recites the old history of the battle between the gods and the *Asuras* ... ... ib
Ditto recommends the performance of the Horse-sacrifice ... ... ib
Ditto indicates the acts for which there should be expiation 105
Ditto declares that by Penances, religious rites, and gifts one may wash off sins if one does not commit them anew 106
Diverse kinds of expiation for diverse kinds of sins ... 107
Ditto in reply to Yudhishthira declares what food is clean and what unclean 111
Yudhishthira desires to hear of the duties of kings and of the four different orders... ... 116
Vyāsa directs Yudhishthira to apply to Bhishma for discourses on kingly duties 117

PAGE.

Vyāsa's eulogium on Bhishma 117
Krishna exhorts Yudhishthira to rise up, shaking off his grief 118
Yudhishthira with his brothers and the other kings headed by Dhritarāshtra, sets out for Hastināpura... ib
The procession described 119
The citizens welcome Yudhishthira and Draupadi ... 120
Yudhishthira enters the palace 121
The Brāhmanas bless the king ... ... ib
Chārvāka utters curses on the king ... ... ib
The Brāhmanas curse Chārvāka and slay him on the spot with only their yells 122
Krishna recites the story of Chārvāka's penances and the boon he had got from Brahman ... 123
Brahman had made only one reservation in respect of Chārvāka's immortality, *viz.*, the curse of the Brāhmanas in a body ... ... ib
The ceremony of Yudhishthira's installation on the throne described 124
The king makes gifts to the Brāhmanas 125
The Brāhmanas all bless him and his brothers ... ib
Yudhishthira's speech to the people ... ... ib
Yudhishthira enjoins respect for his aged uncle ... 126
Ditto judiciously disposes of the high appointments of state ... ... ib
Ditto causes the obsequial rites to be performed in honor of the slaughtered heroes 127
Yudhishthira's acts of kindness to the ladies widowed in the battle ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's adorations to Krishna 128
Yudhishthira assigns to his brothers proper residences from among the palaces of the Kuru princes slaughtered in battle 130
The princes pass a happy night in their respective abodes 131
Yudhishthira's gifts unto diverse persons... ... 132
Yudhishthira proceeds to accost Krishna ... ... ib

PAGE.

Yudhishthira finds Krishna rapt in *yoga* meditation... 133
Ditto utters a hymn to Krishna ... ... ib
Krishna awakes 134
Krishna's eulogium on Bhishma ... ... ib
Krishna asks Yudhishthira to resort to Bhishma for instruction ... ... ib
Yudhishthira requests Krishna to grant Bhishma a sight of his divine person 135
Krishna asks Sātyaki to order for his car ... ib
Description of the bed of arrows on which Bhishma lay 136
The grand hymn of Bhishma to Krishna... ... 137
Krishna, moved by Bhishma's adorations, enters his form in spirit 146
Krishna and Sātyaki and the Pāndavas set out on their cars towards the spot where Bhishma lies ... 147
Yudhishthira asks Krishna on the way about the exploits of Rāma the regenerate hero ... ib
Krishna recites the story of Rāma 148
The slaughter of Jamadagni by the Haihaya Kshatriyas 151
Rāma in rage exterminates the Kshatriyas ... 152
Rāma, after the completion of a Horse-sacrifice, gives away the whole Earth as *Dakshinā* to the sage Kaçyapa ... ... ib
Kaçyapa asks Rāma to retire from the world and take up his abode on the shores of the Southern ocean ... ... ib
Kaçyapa makes a present of the Earth to the Brāhmanas ... ... ib
Sinful practices set in for want of Kshatriyas to put them down 153
The Earth begs of Kaçyapa for a king ... ... ib
The Earth had protected some scions of royalty by having concealed them from Rāma's wrath ... ib
The names of the Kshatriyas thus protected ... ib
Kaçyapa, seeking out those Kshatriyas, installs them as kings for ruling the Earth 154

PAGE.

Yudhishthira's eulogium on Rāma 154
Beholding from a distance the spot on which Bhishma lies, Yudhishthira and others descend from their cars 155
Seeing Bhishma on the point of death, Krishna addresses him kindly ... ... ib
Krishna's eulogium on Bhishma 156
Bhishma's salutations to Krishna 157
Ditto beholds the eternal form of Krishna ... ib
Krishna's assurances to Bhishma 158
Krishna asks Bhishma to instruct Yudhishthira ... ib
Bhishma alleges physical weakness and mental darkness as reasons for inability to obey Krishna... 159
Krishna, by his grace, removes Bhishma's pain and grants him power to recollect everything and behold the universe as a plum on his palm ... 160
The *Rishis* sitting around Bhishma adore Krishna ... ib
Celestial showers of flowers and songs of *Apsaras* in honor of Krishna ... ... ib
Yudhishthira and others, with Krishna, return, after having saluted Bhishma 161
Krishna passes the night happily ... ... ib
The morning rites performed by him ... ... ib
Music and song welcome him at early dawn ... ib
Sātyaki sees Yudhishthira and apprises him of Krishna's readiness to accompany him to the presence of Bhishma 162
Yudhishthira asks Arjuna to see that his car is made ready ... ... ib
Ditto with Arjuna and others proceed to Krishna's abode ... ... ib
The princes set out 163
Arrived near Bhishma, Yudhishthira eyes him timidly ... ... ib
Nārada urges the Pāndavas to take advantage of the short span of life still left to Bhishma for soliciting him to discourse on morality ... ib

PAGE.

Yudhishthira requests Krishna to put questions to Bhishma 164
Krishna salutes Bhishma ... ... ib
Bhishma's cheerful answer ... ... ib
Bhishma enquires of Krishna why he (Bhishma) is desired to discourse on morality and the duties of kings when Krishna's divine self is best fitted to do so 165
Krishna's answer, explaining his motive which is only the enhancement of Bhishma's glory ... ib
Bhishma consents to discourse on morality and duty 166
Bhishma desires Yudhishthira to question him ... ib
Krishna introduces Yudhishthira to Bhishma ... 167
Bhishma consoles Yudhishthira, saying that what he had done he had done in observance of Kshatriya duties ... ... ib
Yudhishthira humbly shows himself to Bhishma and touches his feet ... ... ib
Yudhishthira solicits Bhishma to discourse on kingly duties which are regarded as the root of all other duties in the world 168
Bhishma bows to Dharma and begins his dicourse ... ib
Bhishma sets forth the general duties of kings ... 169
Continuation of Bhishma's discourse, inculcating readiness of action for the king 173
Continuation of Bhishma's discourse, inculcating that protection is the very cheese of kingly duties 177
The *Rishis* and the princes express their delight with the discourse 179
The *Rishis* and the princes leave Bhishma for the night ... ... ib
They present themselves before Bhishma the next morning ... ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires about the origin of the word *Rājan* (king) ... ... ib

PAGE.

Bhishma's answer... 180
The population of the Earth becomes sinful ... ib
The gods approach Brahman for a remedy ... 181
The grand treatise composed by Brahman ... ib
The contents of that treatise... ... ... ib
Brahman, addressing the gods, says that his Work, aided by Chastisement, would protect the world ... 185
Civa studies the great work 186
Civa abridges it for Indra ... ... ib
Indra abridges further ... ... ib
Vrihaspati abridges it further ... ... ib
Kavi or Cukra abridges further ... ... ib
The gods approach Vishnu for a consultation for the good of the world ... ... ib
Vishnu creates Virajas ... ... ib
The progeny of Virajas ... ... ib
The birth of Vena 187
Vena becomes sinful and is slain by the *Rishis* ... ib
From Vena's body springs a black dwarf... ... ib
Next from the same springs a fairer form (called Prithu) ... ... ib
The honors paid to Prithu ... ... ib
Prithu makes the Earth level... 188
Prithu restores Righteousness on Earth 189
The origin of the word *Kshatriya* ... ... ib
Ditto of the word *Prithivi* (Earth) ... ... ib
Vishnu confirms Prithu's power and enters his form ... ib
Prithu cames to be regarded as a god on Earth ... ib
Dharma, *Artha*, and *Çree* become established in Sovereignty 190
Everybody becomes obedient to Prithu ... ... ib
Resume of the contents of the Grandsire's great treatise ... ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires about the general duties of the four orders and the special duties of each of the orders 191
Bhishma begins his discourse... ... ... ib

PAGE.
The exclusive duties of the Brāhmana 192
Ditto of the Kshatriyas ... ... ib
Ditto of the Vaiçyas 193
Ditto of the Cudras ... ... ib
The four modes of life specified 197
The four modes are laid down for only the Brāhmanas... 199
What duties are improper for a Brāhmana ... 200
The duties which should be observed in the several modes of life, stated more specifically ... 202
The nature of kingly duties 204
Discourse between Māndhātri and Indra 205
Indra's praise of Kshatriya duties 207
The duties of Yavanas and Mlecchas set forth ... 209
The discourse on the four modes of life continued by Bhishma 211
What should be the characteristics of kingdoms ... 215
People desiring happiness must choose a king ... 217
Why the king is regarded as a god on Earth ... 218
Bhishma in answer recites the discourse between Vrihaspati and Vasumanas ... ... ib
Vrihaspati's description of the evils of anarchy ... ib
The king unites five godheads in himself... ... 221
The especial duties of the king 223
The duties of the king in case of an invasion by a stronger monarch 225
The blessedness of the science of Chastisement ... 229
The six and thirty virtues that a king should possess 231
The way in which the king should discharge the duty of protection 233
The qualifiactions of the king's priest 235
Bhishma recites the story of Pururavas and Mātariçwan ... ... ib
The order of birth of the four classes 236
The right of dominion that appertains to the Brāhmana ... ... ib
The king should appoint a priest 237

PAGE.

The effects of a disunion between Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas 238
Who Rudra is and what his acts are 239
If chastisement touches the wicked and the good equally, why the good should yet abstain from acts of wickedness 240
The preservation and growth of the king rest upon the king's priest 241
The story of Muchukunda prevailing through the spiritual power of his priest Vaçishtha, over king Vaiçravana ... ... ib
The conduct by which a king aggrandises his subjects and wins regions of felicity hereafter ... 242
Yudhishthira sees no merit in Sovereignty and wishes to retire into the woods ... ... ib
Bhishma urges Yudhishthira to put forth manliness and exertion 244
The difference between Brāhmanas engaged in their own duties and those amongst them that are not so engaged 245
The king is the lord of all wealth except what belongs to the Brāhmanas... 247
The story of the king of the Kaikeyas seized by a *Rakshasa*, and his release ... ... ib
Whether a Brāhmana in seasons of distress, can practise, for livelihood, the duties of a Vaiçya ... 250
What articles a Brāhmana may sell if he betakes to the pratices of a Vaiçya ... ... ib
How the king should behave when he is opposed by all the orders of men 251
If Kshatriyas become hostile to Brāhmanas, how the latter should be protected ... ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires whether upon an anarchy happening, any man that protects and rules acquires merit... 253
Bhishma answers in the affirmative ... ... ib
A king that does not or cannot protect is useless ... ib

PAGE.

The kind of persons that are eligible as royal priests... 254
Yudhishthira enquires about the limits or measure of the *Dakshinā* ... ... ib
Bhishma's answer fraught with grave wisdom ... 255
Who should and who should not be trusted by the king 256
How the king should conduct himself for winning over kinsmen and friends 259
Nārada's instructions to Vāsudeva ... ... ib
The second means by which the king may win kinsmen and friends 262
The story of Kālakavrikshiya and Kshemadarçin the king of the Koçalas ... ... ib
The qualifications of legislators, ministers, courtiers, and counsellors 268
The merits of agreeableness of speech 273
With whom should the king behave in what way ? ... 274
The kind of city which a king should have ... 277
How a kingdom should be consolidated and how it should be protected 280
How the king should behave if he wishes for wealth 284
The king should not cut down trees yielding edible fruits 287
Yudhishthira enquires how one man acquires superiority over the rest 289
Bhishma's answer... ... ... ib
The noble discourse of Utathya to Māndhātri about the king's power being only a trust for the good of his people and not for the gratification of his own caprices 290
Continuation of Utathya's discourse 293
Power was created for protecting Weakness ... 294
Weakness more powerful than the greatest Power ... 295
How a righteous king desirous of acting righteously should behave 299
The discourse of Vāmadeva to Vasumanas ... ib

PAGE.

The consequences that result from the king's acting unrighteously 300
Continuation of Vāmadeva's discourse 304
How a Kshatriya should act who desires to subjugate another 305
A king should never desire to subjugate the Earth by unrighteous means 307
Yudhishthira's condemnation of Kshatriya practices... 310
Bhishma points out that by chastising the wicked, protecting the good, performing sacrifices, &c., the king cleanses himself ... ... ib
The regions of felicity acquired by unreturning heroes 312
The story of Amvarisha, Indra, and Sudeva ... 313
The address of Janaka to his soldiers 317
How kings should lead their troops to battle ... 318
How the troops should be accoutred, armed, and disposed for battle 324
Indications of courage ... ... ib
What the indications are of the future success of an army 327
How a king should behave towards a foe that is mild, towards one that is fierce, and towards one that has many allies 330
The discourse between Vrihaspati and Indra ... ib
Vrihaspati recommends conciliation or lulling a foe into security 331
Other means ... ... ib
A king should never slay a large number of the defeated troops ... ... ib
Continuation of Vrihaspati's discourse 332
The indications of wicked persons 333
How a righteous king deprived of his kingdom should act 335
The discourse between Kshemadarçin and Kālakavrikshiya 336
Continuation of the discourse 341

PAGE.

The king's reply discountenancing deceit and fraud ... 343
How the king should behave towards the aristocracy ... 346
Important duties in brief 349
The relative superiority of parents and preceptors ... 350
The characteristics of truth and falsehood ... 352
How may creatures avoid difficulties 355
How may good and wicked men be recognised ... 357
The story of the pious jackal who acted as minister to the tiger ... ... ib
The story of the camel who had obtained a long neck 365
The discourse between Ocean and Rivers regarding the latters' never washing away a cane ... 367
How a man of worth should behave when insulted with harsh words in an assembly 368
The qualifications of persons that may be employed by the king 371
The story of the dog who by favor of the *Rishi* became a *Çarabha* and was, for misconduct, retransformed into his own canine form ... 373
Continuation of Bhishma's discourse on the qualifications of servants 377
Continuation of ditto 379
How the king should exercise the duty of protection... 381
Yudhishthira enquires about the origin and character of Chastisement 387
Bhishma's discourse on Chastisement 388
The discourse between Vasuhoma and Māndhātri ... 393
Bhishma's discourse on Virtue, Wealth, and Pleasure 398
How may one acquire a virtuous behaviour ... 401
Bhishma recites the discourse of Dhritarāshtra to Duryodhana ... ... ib
The story of Indra's taking away from Prahlāda the latter's prosperity 403
The characteristics of Hope 406
The discourse between Sumitra and Rishava ... 407

PAGE.

The story of Viradyumna and the loss of his son ... 410
The discourse between Gotama and Yama ... 414
How may a king in great danger and distress and shorn of friends behave 415

Āpaddharmānuçāsana Parva.

Yudhishthira enquires of Bhishma what should be done by a weak and timid king as also by one that is in great distress 421
Bhishma's answer recommending peace by even the surrender of territory ... ... ib
The king should never surrender his person as long as he can avoid doing it ... ... ib
If the invading enemy be righteous, the assailed king should make peace 422
If otherwise, the assailed should fight bravely and fall ... ... ib
How a Brāhmana should subsit in times of calamity ... ib
Bhishma begins his exposition of the morality of adversity ... ... ib
At times of calamity the king may take from the wicked for giving it to the good ... ... ib
At such times censurable acts do not become censurable ... ... ib
The king should never oppress Brāhmanas even at such times 423
Slanderous discourses should be avoided ... ... ib
The indications of righteousness 424
Difficulty in finding the course of duty ... ... ib
How should a king fill his treasury 425
The king should establish laws which he should never transgress ... ... ib
The two duties of a Kshatriya are the acquisition of religious merit and of wealth 427
The merits of Power ... ... ib
The s tory of the robber who gained heaven ... 429

PAGE.

What wealth should not be taken by the king ... 431
Who enjoy happiness 432
The story of the three fishes ... ... ib
How a king should behave who is weak and threatened on all sides by powerful foes ... 434
The story of the mouse, the cat, the owl, the mungoose, and the hunter 435
Continuation of the story 440
The wisdom of the mouse in selecting the proper moment for extricating the cat 442
The cat's desire for friendship with the mouse ... 443
The mouse's answer ... ... ib
The moral of the story illustrated by Bhishma ... 449
The merits of distrust 451
The story of the bird Pujani and king Brahmadatta ... ib
How a king should behave when there is a general decadence of Righteousness 460
The story of Bharadwāja's discourse to king Catrunjaya 461
The king should have the rod of Chastisement always uplifted in his hands ... ... ib
The diverse other duties of the king 462
When there is terrible distress around, how a Brāhmana should live 468
Bhishma's reply ... ... ib
Description of a terrible famine 469
Description of a Chandāla hamlet 470
Viçwāmitra, in rage of hunger, desires to steal a dog's haunch 471
The *Rishi* discovered by the Chandāla who owns the haunch ... ... ib
Discourse between the *Rishi* and the Chandāla ... 472
The *Rishi* takes away the dog's haunch for saving his life... 477
Yudhishthira's distress at this possible act of impiety cited as a duty ... ... ib
Bhishma's reply ... ... ib

PAGE.

Kings should gather wisdom from various sources and not from the Vedas alone 477
Scriptures are no scriptures if they cannot stand the test of reason 479
The sin of killing a person is equal to the sin of not killing one that deserves to be killed ... 480
Yudhishthira enquires after the merits of saving suppliants 481
The story of the hunter and the pigeon ... ... ib
Description of a storm and shower 482
The hunter seizes a she-pigeon ... ... ib
The lament of the male pigeon for the she-pigeon ... ib
The she-pigeon's answer to her lord, from within the hunter's cage 485
The male pigeon desires to do the duties of hospitality to the distressed hunter 487
The fowler's repentance 488
The lament of the she-pigeon for the Death of her spouse 489
The couple of pigeons ascend to heaven 490
The fowler takes to rigid penances and at last ascends to heaven ... ... ib
The discourse between Indrota and king Janamejaya... 491
Indrota rebukes Janamejaya for the six of Brāhmanicide that stains him 492
Janamejaya meekly endures the reproof 493
Janamejaya seeks instruction from Indrota ... 494
Indrota discourses to the repentant king on the means of cleansing himself 495
The story of the Vulture and the Jackal and the restoration of a dead child to life 499
Civa shows himself unto the weeping kinsmen of the dead child 508
Civa restores the dead child to life ... ... ib
Yudhisthira asks Bhishma as to how a weak king who incurs the wrath of a powerful one behave in the hour of danger 509

PAGE.

Bhishma recites the story of the *Çālmali* who having dared the Wind-god, saved himself by causing his branches to be lopped off ... 509
Covetousness is the cause of sin 515
Discourse on Ignorance 518
Self-restraint is the highest of virtues 520
Penance is the root of everything 523
Discourse on Truth and its indications 524
The thirteen virtues comprised in Tenth... ... 525
Truth heavier than a hundred Horse-sacrifices ... 526
Discourse on the thirteen vices that are powerful foes of all 527
The indications of malevolent persons 529
How should Brāhmanas be provided for 530
The five kinds of falsehood that are not sinful ... 533
The three sins that have no expiation ... ... ib
Different kinds of expiation for different kinds of sin 535
Nakula's question about the superiority of the sword as a weapon 538
Origin of the creation 539
The *Dānavas* disregard the behests of the Grandsire 540
The Grandsire creates the Sword 541
Rudra wields the Sword ... ... ib
Rudra, with that weapon, slays the *Dānavas* ... 542
The transmission of the Sword from taker to taker ... 543
Yudhishthira's question to Vidura and his own brothers about the triple aggregate 545
Vidura's answer assigning precedence to Virtue ... ib
Arjuna's answer assigning precedence to Wealth or Profit 546
Nakula and Sahadeva agree with Arjuna ... 547
Bhima's answer assigning precedence to Desire ... ib
Yudhishthira applauds withdrawal from the triple aggregate and Emancipation 549
With whom friendship should be avoided... ... 551

PAGE.

History of an ungrateful person 553
Gautama, a Brāhmana of good birth but destitute of education, takes up his abode in a village of robbers 554
A former acquaintance possessed of learning encounters him and exhorts him to leave his sinful mode of life 555
Gautama leaves home in search of wealth ... 556
Gautama meets with a prince of cranes 557
Gautama becomes a guest of the bird ... ... ib
Gautama is directed by the bird to the chief of the *Rākshasas* 559
Gautama goes to Meruvraja the capital of the *Rākshasa* chief ... ... ib
Gautama comes away with much wealth 562
On his way home Gautama meets with and is received hospitably by the prince of cranes ... ib
Gautama ungratefully slays the bird 563
Gautama seized by the messengers of the *Rākshasa* king 564
Gautama hacked to pieces by the *Rākshasas* ... ib
The very robbers of the forest refuse to feast on Gautama's flesh ... ... ib
The prince of cranes revived by Indra 565
The story of the Grandsire's curse on the crane ... ib
The crane asks Indra to revive Gautama ... 566
Gautama, revived, goes back to his sinful mode of life in the village of the robbers ... ... ib
Bhishma's observations on ingratitude ... ... ib

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE.

LIBRARY OF PRINCETON
JUN 28 1918
THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

PRATAPA CHANDRA RAY, C. I. E.

ÇANTI PARVA.

VOL. II.

CALCUTTA :

BHARATA PRESS.

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

1891.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

NOTICE.

With the completion of the *Āpaddharma* of the *Çānti Parvan*, a little less than three-fourths of the Mahābhārata has been completed. That which remains is a little more than a fourth part of the whole. Before commencing the *Mokshadharma* of the *Çānti* it is necessary for me to say a few words regarding the nature of the difficulties with which I have to cope.

In the first place, I desire to draw attention to the literary difficulties that lie in the way of an English version of the *Çānti* and of portions of the *Anuçāsana*. The *Çānti* has been characterised by the author himself (*vide* Anukramanikā) as the fruit of the Mahābhārata-tree. The learning of the poet, and his capacity for speculations on mental and moral philosophy, have been shown in it. The doctrines of the *yoga* have been set forth. The results of the *Dharma-çāstras* have been laid down in brief, aphoristic sentences. To be understood, the *Çānti* requires to be deeply studied. A mere perusal will yield no pleasure. Deep thought is necessary to apprehend and appreciate. In the original Sanskrit itself, there are sections and verses that defy the commentators. Of the two Bengali versions, K. P. Singha's is undoubtedly better. But then the scholars employed by Babu Singha chose to proceed on a very objectionable plan. They systematically ignored all such passages as gave them any difficulty. It is true they have sins of commission as well to answer for as sins of omission. But then the latter are so many in number as to have made their labours incomplete. The Burdwan version is very faulty. It is replete with errors of every description.

The ideas in the *Çānti* are peculiar to Hindu philosophy and Hindu ecclesiastical law. Even when fully understood in the original, they present the greatest possible difficulty to the translator who wishes to render them into the English tongue. Western scholars have long ago agreed that in translating from Sanskrit, a closely literal version is much more desirable than any flowing writing agreeable to the ear and embellished here and there, for keeping up the pretence of its being a translation, with words and phrases peculiar to oriental modes

of thinking. The value of a closely literal version, for historical, philosophical, philological, and various other purposes, is so great that a version of a different character is looked upon by most Oriental scholars as worse than useless. It has been my endeavour to assist at the production of as faithful a version of the original Sanskrit as is possible. Each verse has been numbered. To those desirous of studying the original but who cannot be expected to do it without help, such a version is simply invaluable. The structure of the English sentence, or its collocation, may appear to the general English reader as strange or harsh or even unnatural. But then he should invariably take the sentence to be a literal reproduction of the original with only such changes as are absolutely needed by the idiom of the new language. The oddest structure, according to his ideas, or any highly un-English collocation he may mark, is not due to any inability on the part of the translator to produce a better and more readable English sentence. Often it becomes very difficult for the translator to resist the temptation of making an involved period more easy and more consonant with the canons of modern English composition. The fact is, in almost every case, the order of the original is sought to be preserved as much as possible in the English version. In doing this, the translator may offend some critics of style, but there can be no doubt that he observes more obediently the only canon that eminent scholars have taught, both by precept and example, for the guidance of translators reproducing into modern tongues compositions of genius belonging to ancient times.

The difficulties again of correctly understanding many portions of the *Çānti* where philosophical discussions about the mind, the soul, the *yoga*, the nature of *Dharma*, and similar topics, occur, are simply enormous. The commentators have showed much learning, but then their learning is useless. They seek to interpolate their own observations between words of the text, to stretch or limit the significations of particular words, and conclude where they can with such citations from the *Çrutis*, the *Upanishads*, and Institutes, as seem to them to confirm their views. Such explanations, instead of helping, only puzzle the reader. Often again, the

plainest sentences are interpreted as learnedly figurative. Altogether the commentators cannot always be taken as faithful guides for their readiness to view the original through the colored medium of preconceived ideas of their own.

The literary difficulties, although grave, may be mastered with the aid of patience and of living teachers. It cannot be expected that in interpreting such old works, abounding with what have been called cruces, there will be no difference of opinion or even no downright errors. The English versions of many passages are necessarily tentative. As the first effort of the kind, scholars who have themselves attempted such tasks will, I am sure, be inclined to pardon mistakes where these do occur. If, in spite of the care taken for ensuring accuracy and correctness, errors creep into the version, I can only lament. The Sanskrit adage says,—*Yatne krite yadi na siddhyati, ko-atra doshah.*

The greatest difficulty, however, with which I have to contend is the want of funds to carry on the enterprise to its completion. Mr. H. Witton, who has ever taken a sympathetic interest in my humble labours, writing to me from Hamilton, Canada, says:—"I am afraid that it is easier to secure financial assistance in the inceptive stages of an enterprise than when it has passed the half-way stage." That is precisely my case. My successive tours through a great part of the country in search of pecuniary aid have broken down my health. The poison of permanent disease has been imbibed. There is a well-known saying current amongst us, that he who succeeds in causing the recitation of the Mahābhārata to be completed in his house has to depart from this world. This is explained by some as due to the sins of omission and commission on the part of the reciters or readers employed. Pious men explain it on the supposition that the person is called away, as the result of his high merit, from an unhappy to a happy world. Upon the introduction of printing into this country, the Pundits refused to see the sacred works pass through the Press. The adage referred to above received an expansion. Every man, it came to be said, who would complete the publication or translation of any sacred work, would have to depart from this world in a childless state. Of

actual examples of this, there have been many. I have no progeny the prospect of whose death would unman me. I only hope that the saying may be literally verified in my case also, for then I shall have the satisfaction of having *completed* my task before departing. The adage is not so unkind as one at the first sight may take it, for it does not prophesy death during the *progress* of such a work. That at any rate is an encouragement.

As long, however, as life remains, I will not spare myself. I will tax all my energies in finding the funds necessary. The work is pre-eminently one which suits a Rajah or a mendicant. I am not a Rajah. I can, however, without shame, betake myself to mendicancy. Many nobler men in antiquity, in this land of Bhārata, voluntarily giving up kingdoms and empires, betook themselves to mendicancy for supporting their lives. Surely, with such examples before me, I can betake myself to a similar mode of life for a task that has nothing to do with the filling of my own stomach. Let me be a mendicant then and appeal to the generous in all lands.

To the different Local Governments, the Supreme Government, and the Secretary of State, my obligations have been very great for the support I have obtained from each of them. To the native princes and chiefs, also, of India my obligations are scarcely less. Many Oriental scholars of great repute, belonging to Europe and America, have aided me with sympathy and a few of them with even money. Without their sympathy I could never have succeeded in making the progress I have made. Individual Officials, also, in India have helped me greatly. Where there have been so many persons and personages all of whom have extended to me the hand of friendship and help, it would be invidious to mention particular names. For all that, I cannot help naming a few who have been particularly kind to me. Sir Steuart Bayley, Sir Auckland Colvin, General Stewart, Mr. Ilbert, Sir W. W. Hunter, General Sir George Chesney, and Sir Charles Aitchison have all befriended me from the very commencement of the undertaking. Without their help, accorded to me most liberally, I could never have succeeded in tiding over the difficulties of even the first stages of my work.

During the second stage, besides all those distinguished Officials who continued to help me as before, I have derived material aid from the Marquis of Dufferin and Ava, Sir Donald Mackenzie Wallace, General Sir Frederick Roberts, Sir Charles Elliott, Sir John Ware Edgar, and Sir Alfred Croft. Among non-officials I have derived much sympathy and encouragement from the late lamented Mr. Robert Knight, Mr. J. O. B. Saunders, and others. Amongst scholars in continental Europe I have received much kindness and assistance from M. Barth and M. St. Hilaire, both so well-known in the annals of Oriental learning, and Professor Jacobi of Germany. It was to the exertions of M. A. Barth and M. Barthelamy St. Hilaire that I owe the grant I have obtained from the Republic of France. The rule about patronage was rescinded by the authorities in France for granting me help, for no foreign publication, particularly an incomplete one, is accorded such favor. In England I have obtained the greatest help from Professor Max Muller and Dr. Reinhold Rost. The former by sending me a translation he had transcribed in his own hand, of the first few sections of the *Adi Parvan*, showed me the way. Without such help I could never have ventured to undertake the publication of an English version of the great Hindu Epic. As regards Dr. Rost, I owe him the first idea of an English translation of the Mahābhārata. Whenever again my energies have flagged in view of the difficulties of my situation, a kind letter from him, full of sympathy and advice, has instantly filled me with hope, dispelling all gloom and cheerlessness. In America I have received material help from Mr. Wm. Emmette Coleman of San-Francisco, Professor Lanman of Cambridge, U. S. A., Professor H. Reese of Maryland, and Mr. H. B. Witton of Hamilton, Canada.

When I have so many persons and personages to help me I have no reason to despair. As yet Bengal only has done very little for my enterprise. I had received the largest measure of support from my own countrymen while issuing my Bengali and Sanskrit Mahābhārata and Rāmāyana. I have done nothing to forfeit the sympathy and kindness of my countrymen. Amongst the orthodox, there seems to be a feel-

ing that every attempt to translate the Hindu scriptures into a foreign tongue is an act of impiety. I humbly ask those countrymen of mine who entertain such a feeling to carefully consider the matter. The Hindu religion may not be proselytising. But objects other than those connected with proselytism, and every one of which is highly important, may be served by publishing our scriptures more widely. Is it forgotten that in Bengal itself there is a large class of readers unable to read the Mahābhārata in Sanskrit and unwilling to read it in Bengali? Will not the study of the original itself be materially aided by the English translation? Then again the political advantages of such a translation cannot be inconsiderable. In the preface put forth with the first fascicule, I said that "... Viewed also in the light of a means to an end, the end, *viz.*, of understanding the wishes and aspirations of the Indian races for purposes of better government, the study of Sanskrit may be dispensed with if all that is contained in the great Sanskrit works of antiquity becomes obtainable by Englishmen through the medium of translation. Any effort, therefore, that is made towards unlocking Manu and Yājnavalkya, Vyāsa and Vālmiki, to Englishmen at home or in India, cannot but be regarded as a valuable contribution to the cause of good Government."

To my orthodox countrymen, therefore, I repeat that they should not view the English translation of the great work of Vyāsa as an act of impiety or that it is useless so far as they are concerned. It is, as I said before, a contribution to the cause of good government, as helping the rulers to better understand the ruled.

In conclusion I appeal humbly and respectfully to all my countrymen, not of Bengal alone but of India. Ours, as I have often said, is the land of charity. If all come forward with what each can easily spare, a hundred such enterprises as mine may each be completed a hundred times.

Calcutta,
September, 5th, 1891.

Pratāpa Chandra Rāy.

THE MAHABHARATA

ÇANTI PARVA.

SECTION CLXXIV.

(Mokshadharma Parva.)

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast, O grandsire, discoursed upon the auspicious duties (of persons in distress) connected with the duties of kings. It behovest thee now, O king, to tell me those foremost of duties which belong to those who lead the (four) modes of life!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Religion hath many doors. The observance of (the duties prescribed by) religion can never be futile. Duties have been laid down with respect to every mode of life. (The fruits of those duties are invisible, being attainable in the next world). The fruits, however, of Penance directed towards the Soul are obtainable in this world.*[2] Whatever be the object to which one devotes oneself, that object, O Bhārata, and nothing else, appears to one as the highest of acquisitions fraught with the greatest of blessings.[3] When one reflects properly, (one's heart being purified by such reflection),

---

* It is very difficult to literally translate such verses. The word *Bharma* is sometimes used in the sense of Religion or the aggregate of duties. At other times it simply means a duty or the course of duties prescribed for a particular situation. *Tapah* is generally rendered penance. Here, however, it has a direct reference to *cravana* (hearing), *manana* (contemplation), and *nidhidhyāsana* (abstraction of the soul from everything else for absolute concentration). The grammar of the second half of the first line is *Sati apretya* &c., *Sat* being that which is real, hence, the Soul, or the Supreme Soul, of which every individual Soul is only a portion.—T.

one comes to know that the things of this world are as valueless as straw. Without doubt, one is then freed from attachment in respect of those things.[4] When the world, O Yudhishthira, which is full of defects, is so constituted, every man of intelligence should strive for the attainment of the emancipation of his soul.'[5]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, by what frame of soul should one kill his grief when one loses one's wealth, or when one's wife, or son, or sire, dies!'[6]

"Bhishma said,—'When one's wealth is lost, or one's wife or son or sire is dead, one certainly says to oneself,—Alas, this is a great sorrow!—But then one should, by the aid of Reflection, seek to kill that sorrow.[7] In this connection is cited the old story of the speech that a regenerate friend of his, coming to Senajit's court, made to that king.[8] Beholding the monarch agitated with grief and burning with sorrow on account of the death of his son, the Brāhmana addressed that ruler of very cheerless heart and said these words:[9]—Why art thou stupified? Thou art without any intelligence! Thyself an object of grief, why dost thou grieve (for others)? A few days hence others will grieve for thee, and in their turn they will be grieved for by others still![10] Thyself, myself, and others who wait upon thee, O king, shall all go to that place whence all of us have come!—[11]

"'Senajit said,—What is that intelligence, what that penance, O learned Brāhmana, what that concentration of thought, O thou that hast wealth of asceticism, what that knowledge, and what that learning, by acquiring which thou dost not yield thyself to sorrow?—[12]

"'The Brāhmana said,—Behold, all creatures,—the superior, the middling, and the inferior,—in consequence of their respective acts, are entangled in grief![13] I do not regard even my own self to be mine. On the other hand, I regard the whole world to be mine. I again think that all this (which I see) is as much mine as it belongs to others! Grief cannot approach me in consequence of this thought.[14] Having acquired such an understanding, I do not yield either to joy or to grief.[15] As two pieces of wood floating on the ocean

come together at one time and are again separated, even such is the union of (living) creatures in this world.[16] Sons, grandsons, kinsmen, relatives, are all of this kind. One should never feel affection for them, for separation with them is certain.[17] Thy son came from an invisible region. He has departed and become invisible. He did not know thee. Thou didst not know him. Who art thou and for whom dost thou grieve ?[18] Grief arises from the disease constituted by desire. Happiness again results from the disease of desire being cured. From joy springs sorrow, and sorrow arises repeatedly.[19] Sorrow comes after joy, and joy after sorrow. The joys and sorrows of human beings are revolving on a wheel.[20] After happiness sorrow has come to thee. Thou shalt again have happiness. No one suffers sorrow for ever, and no one enjoys happiness forever.[21] The body is the refuge of both sorrow and happiness.* Whatever acts an embodied creature does with the aid of his body, the consequence thereof he has to suffer in that body.[22] Life springs with the springing of the body into existence. The two exist together, and the two perish together.†[23] Men of uncleansed souls, wedded to worldly things by various bonds, meet with destruction like embankments of sand in water.[24] Woes of diverse kinds, born of ignorance, act like pressers of oil-seeds, for assailing all creatures in consequence of their attachments, these press them like oil-seeds in the oil-making machine represented by the round of rebirths (to which they are subject).[25] Man, for the sake of his wife (and others), commits numerous evil acts, but suffers singly diverse kinds of misery both in this and the next world.[26] All men, attached to children and wives and kinsmen and relatives, sink in the miry sea of grief like wild elephants, when destitute of strength, sinking in a miry slough.[27] Indeed, O lord, upon loss of wealth or son or kinsmen or relatives, man suffers great distress, which resembles,

---

* And not the Soul, as the commentator explains. With the death of the body joy and grief disappear.—T.

† The art by which the body could, as in Egypt, be preserved for thousands of years was not known to the *Rishis*.—T.

as regards its power of burning, a forest conflagration.[28] All this, viz., joy and grief, existence and non-existence, is dependent upon destiny.[29] One having friends as one destitute of friends, one having foes as one destitute of foes, one having wisdom as one destitute of wisdom, each and every one amongst these, obtains happiness through destiny.[30] Friends are not the cause of one's happiness. Foes are not the cause of one's misery. Wisdom is not competent to bring an accession of wealth; nor is wealth competent to bring an accession of happiness.[31] Intelligence is not the cause of wealth, nor is stupidity the cause of penury. He only that is possessed of wisdom, and none else, understands the order of the world.[32] Amongst the intelligent, the heroic, the foolish, the cowardly, the idiotic, the learned, the weak, or the strong, happiness comes to him for whom it is ordained.[33] The cow belongs to the calf, to the cowherd that owns her, and to the thief. Indeed, she belongs to him who drinks her milk.*[34] They whose understandings are absolutely dormant, and they who have attained to that state of the mind which lies beyond the sphere of the intellect, succeed in enjoying happiness. Only they that are between these two classes, suffer misery.[35]† They that are possessed of wisdom delight in the two extremes but not in the states that are intermediate. The sages have said that the attainment of any of these two

---

* The commentator explains the sense of this as follows:—The cow belongs to him who drinks her milk. Those who derive no advantage from her have no need for showing her any affection. One should not covet what is above one's want. It has been said, that (to a thirsty or hungry or toil-worn man), a little quantity of vaccine milk is of more use than a hundred kine; a small measure of rice more useful than a hundred barns filled with grain; half a little bed, of more use than a large mansion.—T.

† I follow Nilakantha in rendering this verse. His interpretation is plausible. *Mudatamāh*, according to him, are those who are in deep sleep. There are four stages of Consciousness. These are (1) wakefulness; (2) dream, (3) dreamless or deep slumber, and (4) *Turiya* or absolute *Samādhi* (which the *Yogin* only can attain to).—T.

extremes constitutes happiness. Misery consists in the states that are intermediate between the two.*[36] They who have succeeded in attaining to real felicity (which *samādhi* can bring), and who have become freed from the pleasures and pains of this world, and who are destitute of envy, are never agitated by either the accession of wealth or its loss.[37] They who have not succeeded in acquiring that intelligence which leads to real felicity, but who have transcended folly and ignorance (by the help of a knowledge of the scriptures), give way to excessive joy and excessive misery.[38] Men destitute of all notions of right or wrong, insensate with pride and with success over others, yield to transports of delight like the gods in heaven.†[39] Happiness must end in misery. Idleness is misery ; while cleverness (in action) is the cause of happiness. Affluence and prosperity dwell in one possessed of cleverness, but not in one that is idle.[40] Be it happiness or be it misery, be it agreeable or be it disagreeable, what comes to one should be enjoyed or endured with an unconquered heart.[41] Every day a thousand occasions for sorrow, and a hundred occasions for fear assail the man of ignorance and folly but not the man that is possessed of wisdom.[42] Sorrow can never touch the man that is possessed of intelligence, that has acquired wisdom, that is mindful of listening to the instructions of his betters, that is destitute of envy, and that is self-restrained.[43] Relying upon such an understanding, and protecting his heart (from the influences of desire and the passions), the man of wisdom should conduct himself here. Indeed, sorrow is unable to touch him who is conversant with that Supreme Self from which everything springs and unto which everything disappears.‡[44] The very root of that for

---

* The two extremes, of course, are dreamless slumber and *Turiya* or *Samādhi*. The two intermediate ones are wakefulness and sleep with dream.—T.

† *Pride* in consequence of having insulted or humiliated others ; and success over others such as victories in battle and other concerns of the world.—T.

‡ The first half of the second line is read variously. The sense, however, in effect, remains unaltered. What is said here is that the

which grief, or heart-burning, or sorrow is felt or for which one is impelled to exertion, should, even if it be a part of one's body, be cast off.[45] That object, whatever it may be, in respect of which the idea of *meum* is cherished, becomes a source of grief and heart-burning.[46] Whatever objects, amongst things that are desired, are cast off, become sources of happiness. The man that pursues objects of desire meets with destruction in course of the pursuit.[47] Neither the happiness that is derived from a gratification of the senses nor that great felicity which one may enjoy in heaven, approaches to even a sixteenth part of the felicity which arises from the destruction of all desire.[48] The acts of a former life, right or wrong, visit, in their consequences, the wise and the foolish, the brave and the timid.[49] It is even thus that joy and sorrow, the agreeable and the disagreeable, continually revolve (as on a wheel) among living creatures.[50] Relying upon such an understanding, the man of intelligence and wisdom lives at ease. A person should disregard all his desires, and never allow his wrath to get the better of him.[51] This wrath springs in the heart and grows there into vigor and luxuriance. This wrath that dwells in the bodies of men and is born in their minds, is spoken of by the wise as Death.[52] When a person succeeds in withdrawing all his desires like a tortoise withdrawing all its limbs, then his soul, which is self-luminous, succeeds in looking into itself.*[53] That object, whatever it may be, in respect of which the idea of *meum* is cherished, becomes a source of grief and heart-burning.†[54] When a person himself feels no fear, and is feared by no one, when he cherishes no desire and no aversion, he is then said to attain to the state of *Brahma*.[55] Casting off both truth and falsehood, grief and

---

man who succeeds in attaining to a state of *Brahma* by true *Samādhi* or abstraction from the world, can never be touched by grief.—T.

* In all treaties on *Yoga* it is said that when the first stage is passed, the neophyte succeeds in looking at his own self. The meaning seems to be that he experiences a sort of double existence so that he succeeds in himself looking at his own self.—T.

† This is the same as 46. The Bombay edition does not repeat it.—T.

joy, fear and courage, the agreeable and the disagreeable, thou mayst become of tranquil soul.[56] When a porson abstains from doing wrong to any creature, in thought, word, or deed, he is then said to attain to a state of *Brahma.*[57] True happiness is his who can cast off that thirst which is incapable of being cast off by the misguided, which does not decay with decrepitude, and which is regarded as a fatal disease.[58] In this connection, O king, are heard the verses sung by Pingalā about the manner in which she had acquired eternal merit even at a time that had been very unfavorable.[59] A fallen woman of the name of Pingalā, having repaired to the place of assignation, was denied the company of her lover through an accident. At that time of great misery, she succeeded in acquiring tranquility of soul.[60]

" '—Pingala said,—Alas, I have for many long years lived, all the while overcome by phrensy, by the side of that dear Self in whom there is nothing but tranquility! Death has been at my door. Before this, I did not, however, approach that Essence of Purity.[61] I shall cover this house of one column and nine doors (by means of true Knowledge).* What woman is there that regards that dear Supreme Soul, even when He is so near, as truly dear ?†[62] I am now awake. I have been roused from the sleep of ignorance. I am no longer influenced by desire. Human lovers, who are really the embodied forms of hell, shall no longer deceive me by approaching me lustfully.[63] Evil produces good through destiny or the acts of a former life. Roused (from the sleep of ignorance), I have cast off all desire for worldly objects. I have acquired a complete mastery over my senses.[64] One freed from desire and hope sleeps in felicity. Freedom from hope and desire is felicity. Having driven off desire and hope, Pingalā sleeps in felicity !—'[65]

---

* The house referred to is the body. The single column on which it is supported is Ignorance, and the nine doors are the eyes, the ears, the nostrils, &c. &c.—T.

† The sense is that women always regard their human lovers as dear without regarding the Supreme Being to be so, although He is always with them.—T.

"Bhishma continued,—'Consoled with these and other words uttered by the learned Brāhmana, king Senajit (casting off his grief), experienced delight and became very happy.' "[66]

SECTION CLXXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Time, which is destructive of every created thing, is passing on.* Tell me, O grandsire, what is that good thing which should be sought !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, O king, is cited the old narrative of a discourse between sire and son, O Yudhishthira![2] A certain Brāhmana, O Pārtha, who was devoted to the study of the Vedas, got a very intelligent son who (for this) was called Medhāvin.†[3] One day, the son, well conversant with the truths of the religion of Emancipation, and acquainted also with the affairs of the world, addressed his sire devoted to the study of the Vedas.[4]

"'The son said,—What should a wise man do, O father, seeing that the period of human life is passing away so very quickly? O father, tell me the course of duties that one should perform, without omitting to mention the fruits! Having listened to thee, I desire to observe those duties!—[5]

"'The sire said,—O son, observing the *Brahmacharyya* mode of life, one should first study the Vedas. He should then wish for children for rescuing his ancestors. Setting up his fire next, he should seek to perform the (prescribed) sacrifices according to due rites. At last, he should enter the forest for devoting himself to contemplation!—[6]

"'The son said,—When the world is thus surrounded on all sides and is thus assailed, and when such irresistible things of fatal consequences fall upon it, how can you say these words so calmly?—[7]

"'The sire said,—How is the world assailed? What is that by which it is surrounded? What, again, are those irresistible things of fatal consequences that fall upon it? Why dost thou terrify me thus?—[8]

---

* *I. e.*, is coursing on, without waiting for any one.—T.

† Literally, *Intelligent*.—T.

"The son said,—Death is that by which the world is assailed. Decrepitude encompasses it. Those irresistible things that come and go away are the nights (that are continually lessening the period of human life).[9] When I know that Death tarries for none (but approaches steadily towards every creature), how can I pass my time without covering myself with the garb of knowledge ?*[10] When each succeeding night, passing away, lessens the allotted period of one's existence, the man of wisdom should regard the day to be fruitless.[11] (When death is approaching steadily) who is there that would, like a fish in a shallow water, feel happy ? Death comes to a man before his desires have been gratified.[12] Death snatches away a person when he is engaged in plucking flowers and when his heart is otherwise set, like a tigress bearing away a ram.[13] Do thou, this very day, accomplish that which is for thy good. Let not this Death come to thee ! Death drags its victims before their acts are accomplished.[14] The acts of tomorrow should be done today, those of the afternoon in the forenoon. Death does not wait to see whether the acts of its victim have all been accomplished or not.[15] Who knows that Death will not come to him even today ? In prime of age one should betake oneself to the practice of virtue. Life is transitory. If virtue be practised, fame here and felicity hereafter will be the consequences.[16] Overwhelmed by ignorance, one is ready to exert for sons and wives. Achieving virtuous or vicious acts, one brings them up and aggrandises them.[17] Like a tiger bearing away a sleeping deer, Death snatches away the man addicted to the gratification of desire and engaged in the enjoyment of sons and animals.[18] Before he has been able to pluck the flowers upon which he has set his heart, before he has been gratified by the acquisition of the objects of his desire, Death bears him away like a tiger bearing away its prey.[19] Death overpowers a man while the latter is still in the midst of the happiness that accrues from the

* The true reading is *Jnānena* and not *ajnānena*. Then, in the last foot, the word is *a-pihitah* and not *apihitah*. The practicles *ava* and *api* frequently drop the initial *a*. Hence *a-pihitah* means *not* covered.—T.

gratification of desire, and while still thinking,—This has been done; this is to be done; this has been half-done![20]—Death bears away the man, however designated according to his profession, attached to his field, his shop, or his home, before he has obtained the fruit of his acts.[21] Death bears away the weak, the strong, the brave, the timid, the idiotic, and the learned, before any of these obtains the fruits of his acts.[22] When death, decrepitude, disease, and sorrow arising from diverse causes, are all residing in thy body, how is it that thou livest as if thou art perfectly hale?[23] As soon as an embodied creature is born, Decrepitude and Death pursue him for (effecting) his destruction. All existent things, mobile and immobile, are affected by these two.[24] The attachment which one feels for dwelling in villages and towns (in the midst of fellowmen) is said to be the very mouth of Death. The forest, on the other hand, is regarded as the fold within which the senses may be penned up. This is declared by the *Çrutis*.*[25] The attachment a person feels for dwelling in a village or town (in the midst of men) is like a cord that binds him effectually. They that are good break that cord and attain to emancipation, while they that are wicked do not succeed in breaking them.[26] He who never injures living creatures by thought, word, or deed, is never injured by such agencies as are destructive of life and property.†[27] Nothing can resist the messengers (Disease and Decrepitude) of Death when they advance except Truth which devours Untruth. In Truth is immortality.‡[28] For these reasons one should practise the vow of Truth; one should devote oneself to a union with Truth; one should accept Truth for one's Veda; and restraining one's senses, one should vanquish the Destroyer by Truth.[29] Both Immortality and Death are planted

---

* The word used in the text is *Devānām* (of the gods). There can be no doubt, however, that the word *deva* is here used for implying the senses.—T.

† *I. e.*, wild beasts and lawless men.—T.

‡ *Asatyājyam* and *Asatyādyam* are both correct. The sense is the same. The first means 'having untruth for the libation (that it eats up).' The second means 'having untruth for the food (it devours).'—T.

in the body. One comes to Death through ignorance and loss of judgment; while Immortality is achieved through Truth.[30] I shall, therefore, abstain from injury and seek to achieve Truth, and transgressing the sway of desire and wrath, regard pleasure and pain with an equal eye, and attaining tranquillity, avoid Death like an immortal![31] Upon the advent of that season when the Sun will progress towards the north, I shall, restraining my senses, set myself to the performance of the *Çānti*-sacrifice, the *Brahma*-sacrifice, the Word-sacrifice, the Mind-sacrifice, and the Work-sacrifice.*[32] How can one like me worship his Maker in animal-sacrifices involving cruelty, or sacrifices of the body such as *Piçāchas* only can perform and such as produce fruits that are transitory?†[33] That person whose words, thoughts, penances, renunciation, and *yoga* meditation, all rest on *Brahma*, succeeds in earning the highest good.[34] There is no eye which is equal to (the eye of) Knowledge. There is no penance like (that involved in) Truth. There is no sorrow equal to (that involved in) attachment. There is no happiness like (that which is obtainable from) renunciation.[35] I have sprung from Brahma through *Brahma*. I shall devote myself to *Brahma*, though I am childless. I shall return to *Brahma*. I do not require a son for rescuing me.[36] A Brāhmana can have no wealth like to the state of being alone, the state in consequence of which he is capable of regarding everything with an equal eye, the practice of truthfulness, good behaviour, patience, abstention from injury, simplicity, and

---

* *Cānti* is tranquillity. The *Cānti*-sacrifice is the endeavour to practice self-denial in everything; in other words, to restrain all sorts of propensities or inclinations. The *Brahma*-sacrifice is reflection on the truths laid down in the *Upanishads*. The Word-sacrifice consists in the silent recitation (*yapa*) of the *Pranava* or *Om*, the initial *mantra*. The Mind-sacrifice is contemplation of the Supreme Soul. The Work-sacrifice consists in baths, cleanliness, and waiting upon the preceptor.

† Both readings are correct, *viz.*, *Kshetrayajna* and *Kshatrayajna*. *Kshetra* is, of course, the body. If the latter reading be accepted, the meaning will be 'a sacrifice like that of a Kshatriya, *i. e.*, a battle.' Hence, all kinds of acts involving cruelty.—T.

avoidance of all rites and visible sacrifices.[37] What use hast thou, O Brāhmana, of wealth or kinsmen and relatives, of wives, when thou shalt have to die? Seek thy Self which is concealed in a cave. Where are thy grandsires and where thy sire?*[38]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Do thou also, O monarch, conduct thyself in that way in which the sire (in this story), conduct himself, devoted to the religion of Truth, after having listened to the speech of his son.' "[39]

SECTION CLXXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, whence and how happiness and misery come to those that are rich, as also those that are poor, but who live in the observance of different practices and rites!'†[1]

"Bhishma continued,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of what was sung by Campāka who had obtained tranquillity and achieved emancipation for himself.[2] In former times a certain Brāhmana, rendered miserable by a bad wife, bad dress, and hunger, and living in the observance of the vow of renunciation, told me these verses.‡[3]—Diverse kinds of sorrow and happiness overtake, from the day of birth, the person that is born on the Earth.[4] If he could ascribe either

---

* Or, seek *Brahma* in thy understanding. The word *Atman* is often synonymous with Supreme Self.—T.

† The commentator explains that the object of Yudhishthira's question is this: in the preceeding section or lesson it has been inculcated that one may seek the acquisition of the religion of *moksha* or emancipation even when he is young. Yudhishthira enquires whether wealth (so necessary for the performance of sacrifices) is needed for the acquisition of that religion. If wealth be necessary, the poor then would not be able to acquire that religion. Hence the enquiry about the way in which joy and sorrow come to the wealthy and to the poor.—T.

‡ The verses are said to be old. Nilakantha accordingly supposes that it was *not* Campāka who recited them to Bhishma, but some one else. I follow the commentator; but the grammar of the concluding verse of this section must have to be twisted for supporting him.—T.

of them to the action of Destiny, he would not then feel glad when happiness came or miserable when sorrow overtook him.[5] Though thy mind is divested of desire, thou bearest yet a heavy load. Thou dost not seek to achieve thy good (*i. e.*, emancipation). Art thou not successful in controlling thy mind?[6] If thou goest about, having renounced home and desirable possessions, thou shalt taste real happiness. A person divested of everything sleepeth in happiness, and awaketh in happiness.[7] Complete poverty, in this world, is happiness. It is a good regimen, it is the source of blessings, it is freedom from danger. This foeless path is unattainable (by persons cherishing desire) and is easily attainable (by those that are freed from desire).[8] Casting my eyes on every part of the three worlds, I do not behold the person who is equal to a poor man of pure conduct and without attachment (to worldly things).[9] I weighed poverty and sovereignty in a balance. Poverty weighed heavier than sovereignty and seemed to possess greater merits.[10] Between poverty and sovereignty there is this great distinction, *viz.*, that the sovereign, possessed of affluence, is always agitated by anxiety and seems to be within the very jaws of death.[11] As regards, however, the poor man, who in consequence of the divestment of all wealth has freed himself from hopes and emancipated himself, neither fire, nor foe, nor death, nor robbers, can get the better of him.[12] The very gods applaud such a man who wanders about according to his will, who lies down on the bare ground with his arm for a pillow, and who is possessed of tranquillity.[13] Affected by wrath and cupidity, the man of affluence is stained by a wicked heart. He casts oblique glances and makes dry speeches. He becomes sinful, and his face is always darkened with frowns.[14] Biting his lips, and excited with wrath, he utters harsh and cruel words. If such a man desires to even make a gift of the whole world, who is there that would like to even look at him?[15] Constant companionship with Prosperity stupifies a person of weak judgment. It drives off his judgment like the wind driving off the autumnal clouds. Companionship with Prosperity induces him to think,—I am possessed of beauty! I am

possessed of wealth![16] I am high-born! I meet with success in whatever I undertake! I am not an ordinary human being!—His heart becomes intoxicated in consequence of these three reasons.[17] With heart deeply attached to worldly possessions, he wastes the wealth hoarded by his sires. Reduced to want, he then regards the appropriation of other people's wealth as blameless.[18] At this stage, when he transgresses all barriers and begins to appropriate the possessions of others from every side, the rulers of men obstruct and afflict him like sportsmen afflicting with keen shafts a deer that is espied in the woods.[19] Such a man is then overwhelmed with many other afflictions of a similar kind that originate in fire and weapons.[20] Therefore, disregarding all worldly propensities (such as desire for children and wives) together with all fleeting unrealities (such as the body, &c.,) one should, aided by one's intelligence, apply proper medicine for the cure of those painful afflictions.[21] Without Renunciation one can never attain to happiness. Without Renunciation one can never obtain what is for one's highest good. Without Renunciation one can never sleep at ease. Therefore, renouncing everything, make happiness thy own![22]—All this was said to me in past times at Hāstinapore by a Brāhmana about what Campāka had sung. For this reason, I regard Renunciation to be the foremost of things.' "[23]

SECTION CLXXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'If any person, desiring to accomplish acts (of charity and sacrifices), fails to find (the necessary) wealth, and thirst of wealth overwhelms him, what is that which he must do for obtaining happiness?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'He that regards everything (*viz.*, joy and sorrow, honor and insult, &c.,) with an equal eye, that never exerts (for gratifying his desire for earthly possessions), that practises truthfulness of speech, that is freed from all kinds of attachment, and that has no desire for action, is, O Bhārata, a happy man.[2] These five, the ancients say, are the means for the acquisition of perfect tranquillity or eman-

cipation. These are called Heaven. These are Religion. These constitute the highest happiness.[3] In this connection is cited the old narrative of what Manki had sung, when freed from attachments. Listen to it, O Yudhishthira![4] Desirous of wealth, Manki found that he was repeatedly doomed to disappointments. At last with a little remnant of his property he purchased a couple of young bulls with a yoke for training them (to agricultural labour).[5] One day the two bulls, properly tied to the yoke, were taken out for training (in the fie'ds). Shying at the sight of a camel that lay down on the road, the animals suddenly ran towards the camel,[6] and fell upon its neck. Enraged at finding the bulls fall upon its neck, the camel, endued with great speed, rose up and ran at a quick pace, bearing away the two helpless creatures dangling on either side of its neck.[7] Beholding his two bulls thus borne away by that strong camel, and seeing that they were on the point of death, Manki began to say,[8]—If wealth be not ordained by destiny, it can never be acquired by even a clever man exerting with attention and confidence and accomplishing with skill all that is necessary towards that end.[9] I had, before this, endeavoured by diverse means and with devotion to earn wealth. Behold this misfortune brought about by destiny to the property I had![10] My bulls are borne away, rising and falling, as the camel is running in an uneven course. This occurrence seems to be an accident.*[11] Alas, those dear bulls of mine are dangling on the camel's neck like a couple of gems! This is only the result of Destiny. Exertion is futile in what is due to Chance.[12] Or, if the existence of anything like Exertion (as an agent in the production of results) be admitted, a deeper search would discover Destiny to

---

* *Kākatāliyam* is, literally, 'after the manner of the crow and the palmyra fruit.' The story is that once when a crow perched upon a palmyra tree, a fruit (which had been ripe) fell down. The fruit fell because of its ripeness. It would be a mistake to accept the sitting of the crow as the cause of the fall. The perching was only an accident. Yet men very frequently, in tracing causes, accept accidents for inducing causes. Such men are said to be deceived by 'the fallacy of the crow and the palmyra fruit.'—T.

be at the bottom.*[13] Hence, the person that desires happiness should renounce all attachment. The man without attachments, no longer cherishing any desire for earning wealth, can sleep happily.[14] Ho, it was well-said by Cuka while going to the great forest from his father's abode, renouncing everything !†[15]—Amongst these two, *viz.*, one who obtains the fruition of all his wishes, and one who casts off every wish, the latter, who renounces all, is superior to the former who obtains the fruition of all.[16] No one could ever attain to the end of desire.‡ Only he that is destitute of knowledge and judgment feels an avidity for protecting his body and life.[17]—Forbear from every desire for action. O my Soul that art possessed by cupidity, adopt tranquillity by freeing thyself from all attachments ! Repeatedly hast thou been deceived (by desire and hope). How is it that thou dost not still free thyself from attachments ?[18] If I am not one that deserves destruction at thy hands, if I am one with whom thou shouldst sport in delight, then, O my wealth-coveting Soul, do not induce me towards cupidity ![19] Thou hast repeatedly lost thy hoarded wealth ! O my wealth-coveting and foolish Soul, when wilt thou succeed in emancipating thyself from the desire of wealth ?[20] Shame on my foolishness ! I have become a toy of thine ! It is thus that one becomes a slave of others.[21] No one born on Earth did ever attain to the end of desire, and no one that will take birth will succeed in attaining to it. Casting off all acts, I have at last been roused from sleep ! I am now awake ![22] Without doubt, O Desire, thy heart is as hard as adamant, since though affected by a hundred distresses, thou dost not break into a hundred pieces ![23] I know thee, O Desire, and all those

---

* Exertion to be successful must depend on circumstances. The combination of circumstances is destiny.—T.

† It is difficult to resist the belief that many of the passages of the *Cānti* are later additions. Cuka was the son of Vyāsa. To quote a saying of Cuka (or, as he was called Cukadeva Goswāmin), if Vyāsa was the real writer of this passage, is rather suspicious.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, arrive at such a point that nothing was left for him to desire.—T.

things that are dear to thee! Seeking what is dear to thee, I shall feel happiness in my own Self.*[24] O Desire, I know thy root. Thou springest from Will.†—I shall, therefore, avoid Will. Thou shalt then be destroyed with thy roots.[25] The desire for wealth can never be fraught with happiness. If acquired, great is the anxiety that the acquirer feels. If lost after acquisition, that is felt as death. Lastly, respecting acquisition itself, it is very uncertain.[26] Wealth cannot be got by even the surrender of one's person. What can be more painful than this? When acquired, one is never gratified with its measure, but one continues to seek it.[27] Like the sweet water of the Ganges, wealth only increases one's hankering. It is my destruction. I am now awakened. Do thou, O Desire, leave me![28] Let that Desire which has taken refuge in this my body,—this compound of (five) elements,—go whithersoever it chooses and live happily whithersoever it likes.‡[29] Ye all that are not of the Soul, I have no joy in you, for ye follow the lead of Desire and Cupidity! Abandoning all of you I shall take refuge in the quality of Goodness.$[30] Beholding all creatures in my own body and my own mind, and devoting my reason to *Yoga*, my life to the instructions of the wise, and soul to *Brahma*,[31]

---

* *I. e.*, with the view of doing thee good, I shall emancipate myself from all attachments and enjoy the blessedness of tranquillity.—T.

† Here the theory of desire seems to be reversed. Desire is mere wish after anything. When its gratification is sought, the form it assumes is that of determination or will. If, however, *Kāma* be taken as the formulated desire after specific objects, then, perhaps, the will may be regarded as its foundation, at least, in respect of the distress and difficulties that come in its train.—T.

‡ I think the Bombay reading of this verse is incorrect. *Bhutagrāmah* (nom. sing.) should be *Bhutagrāmam* (accusative sing.). The *Yah* is *Kāma*. It is Desire that is exhorted to go away whithersoever it chooses. If the *elements* be thus exhorted, then it is *death* that the speaker desires. This would be inconsistent with the spirit of the passage.—T.

$ The use of the plural *Yushmāshu* might lead at first sight to take it as standing for the elements. It is plain, however, that it refers to all attributes that are founded on *Rajas* and *Tamas*.—T.

I shall happily rove through the world, without attachment and without calamities of any kind, so that thou mayst not be able to plunge me again into such sorrows !*[32] If I continue to be agitated by thee, O Desire, I shall necessarily be without a path (by which to effect my deliverance). Thou, O Desire, art always the progenitor of thirst, of grief, and of fatigue and toil.[33] I think the grief that one feels at the loss of wealth is very keen and far greater than what one feels under any other circumstances. Kinsmen and friends disregard him that has lost his wealth.[34] With various kinds of humiliation that number by thousands, there are many faults in property that are more painful still. On the other hand, the very small happiness that resides in wealth is mingled with pain and sorrow.†[35] Robbers slay, in the sight of all, the person that is possessed of wealth, or afflict him with various kinds of severity, or always fill him with fear.[36] At last, after a long time, I have understood that the desire for wealth is fraught with sorrow. Whatever the object, O Desire, upon which thou settest thy heart, thou forcest me to pursue it ! Thou art without judgment. Thou art a fool. Thou art difficult of being contented. Thou canst not be gratified. Thou burnest like fire.[37] Thou dost not enquire (in pursuing an object) whether it is easy or difficult of attainment. Thou canst not be filled to the brim, like the nether region. Thou wishest to plunge me into sorrow. From this day, O Desire, I am incapable of living with thee ![38] I who had felt despair, at first, at the loss of my property, have now attained to the high state of perfect freedom from attachments. At this moment I no longer think of thee and thy train.[39] I had, before this, felt great misery

---

* *Beholding all creatures in my own body and mind*, i. e., identifying myself with all creatures or never taking them as distinct and separated from me ; in other words, professing and practising the principle of universal love.—T.

† The two lines are antithetical. What is said here is that though there is misery in property, there is no real happiness in affluence. Hence Nilakantha is right in supposing that the last word of the first line is not *dhane* but *adhane*, the *Sandhi* being Arsha.—T.

on thy account. I do not (now) regard myself as destitute of intelligence. Having adopted Renunciation in consequence of the loss of my property, I now can rest, freed from every kind of fever.[40] I cast thee off, O Desire, with all the passions of my heart. Thou shalt not again dwell with me or sport with me.[41] I shall forgive them that will slander or speak ill of me. I shall not injure even when injured. If anybody from aversion speaks disagreeable words of me, disregarding those words I shall address him in agreeable speeches. In contentment of heart and with all my senses at ease, I shall always live upon what may be got by me.[42] I shall not contribute to the gratification of the wishes entertained by thee that art my foe. Freedom from attachment, emancipation from desire, contentment, tranquillity, truth, self-restraint, forgiveness, and universal compassion, are the qualities that have now come to me.[43] Therefore, let Desire, cupidity, thirst, miserliness, avoid me. I have now adopted the path of Goodness.[44] Having cast off Desire and Cupidity, great is my happiness now. I shall no longer yield to the influence of Cupidity and no longer suffer misery like a person of uncleansed soul.[45] One is sure to obtain happiness according to the measure of the desires he may be able to cast off. Truly, he who yields himself up to Desire always suffers misery.[46] Whatever passions connected with Desire are cast off by a person, all appertain to the quality of Passion. Sorrow and shamelessness and discontent all arise from Desire and Wealth.[47] Like a person plunging in the hot season into a cool lake, I have now entered into *Brahma*. I have abstained from work. I have freed myself from grief. Pure happiness has now come to me.[48] The felicity that results from the gratification of Desire, or that other purer felicity which one enjoys in heaven, does not come up to even a sixteenth part of that which arises upon the abandonment of all kinds of thirst![49] Killing the principle of desire, which with the body makes an aggregate of seven, and which is a bitter foe, I have entered the immortal city of *Brahma* and shall pass my days there in happiness like a king![50]—Relying upon such intelligence, Manki freed himself from attachments, casting off all desires

and attaining to *Brahma*, that abode of the highest felicity.[51] Indeed, in consequence of the loss of his two bulls Manki attained to immortality. Indeed, because he cut the very roots of desire, he attained, through that means, to high felicity.' "[52]

SECTION CLXXVIII.

"Bhishma continued,—'In this connection is also cited the old narrative of the verses sung by Janaka the ruler of the Videhas, who had attained to tranquillity of soul.[1] What the monarch said was,—Unlimited is my wealth. At the same time I have nothing. If the whole of (my kingdom) Mithilā be consumed in a conflagration, I shall incur no loss.[2]—In this connection is also cited the speech of Vodhya uttered in respect of this very topic, *viz.*, freedom from attachments. Listen to it, O Yudhishthira![3] Once on a time the royal son of Nahusha (Yayāti) questioned the *Rishi* Vodhya who had, in consequence of the abandonment of desire, attained to tranquillity of soul and who had an intimate acquaintance with the scriptures.[4] The monarch said,—O thou of great wisdom, give me instructions about tranquillity. What is that understanding relying upon which thou succeedest in wandering over the world in tranquillity of soul and disengaged from all acts?[5]—

" 'Vodhya said,—I conduct myself according to the instructions of others but never instruct others myself. I shall, however, mention the indications of those instructions (according to which my conduct is framed). Thou mayst catch their spirit by reflection.[6] My six preceptors are Pinglā, the osprey, the snake, the bee in the forest, the maker of shafts (in the story), and the maiden (in the story)![*7]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Hope is very powerful (in agitating the heart), O king! Freedom from hope is high felicity!

---

* Nilakantha explains that by *Sāraṅga* here is meant the bee. The *anweshanam* following it is 'going behind.' The whole compound means 'imitation of the bee in the forest.'—T.

Reducing hope to an absence of expectation, Pinglā sleeps in peace.*[8] Beholding an osprey with meat in his beaks, others, that have not found any meat, assail and destroy him. A certain osprey, by altogether abstaining from meat, obtained felicity.[9] To build a house for one's ownself is productive of sorrow and not of happiness. The snake, taking up his residence in another creature's abode, lives in felicity.[10] The ascetics live happily, betaking themselves to mendicancy, without being injured by any creature, like bees at the forest.[11] A certain maker of shafts, while employed at his work, was so deeply attentive to it that he did not notice the king who passed by his side.[12] When many are together, dispute ensues. Even when two reside together, they are sure to converse. I, however, wander alone like the anklet made of sea-shells in the wrist of the maiden in the story.†—' "[13]

Section CLXXIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O thou that art conversant with the conduct of men, tell me by what conduct a person may succeed in this world, freed from grief. How also should a person act in this world so that he may attain to an excellent end?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old story of the discourse between Prahlāda and the sage Ājagara.[2] Once on a time king Prahrāda of great intelligence questioned a wandering Brāhmana of great intelligence and a cleansed and tranquil soul.[3]

" 'Prahrāda said,—Freed from desire, with a cleansed soul, possessed of humility and self-restraint, without desire of action, free from malice, agreeable in speech, endued with dignity and intelligence and wisdom, thou livest (in simplicity) like

---

* The allusion is to the story of Pingalā in Section 74 *ante*.—T.

† The story, evidently a very ancient one, is given in full in the *Bhāgavat*. Once on a time, a maiden, residing in her father's house, wished to feed secretly a number of Brāhmanas. While removing the grain from the barn, her anklets, made of shells, began to jingle. Fearing discovery through that noise, she broke all her anklets except one for each hand.—T,

a child.[4] Thou never covetest any kind of gain, and never grievest at any kind of loss! Thou art always contented, O Brāhmana, and dost not seem to regard anything in the world![5] While all other creatures are being borne away in the current of desire and passion, thou art perfectly indifferent to all acts appertaining to Religion, Profit, and Pleasure. Thou seemest to be in a state of quietude (without the possibility of agitation).[6] Disregarding all the objects of the senses, thou movest like an emancipated self, only witnessing everything, (but never taking part in anything).[7] What, O sage, is thy wisdom, what thy learning, and what thy behaviour (in consequence of which all this becomes possible)? Tell me this without delay, if, O Brāhmana, thou thinkest it will do me good!—'[8]

"Bhishma continued,—'That intelligent Brāhmana who was well-conversant with the duties of the world, thus questioned by Prahrāda, answered him in sweet words of grave import.[9] Behold, O Prahrāda, the origin of creatures, their growth, decay, and death, are traceable to no (intelligible) cause. It is for this that I do not indulge in either joy or sorrow.*[10] All the propensities (for action) that exist in the universe may be seen to flow from the very natures of the creatures (to which they inhere). All things (in the universe) are dependent on their respective natures. Hence, I am not delighted with anything.†[11] Behold, O Prahrāda, all kinds of union have an aptitude for disunion. All acquisitions are certain to end in destruction. Hence I never set my heart upon the acquisition of any object.[12] All things possessed of

---

* *Animittatah* is explained by Nilakantha as one that has no cause, *i. e., Brahma.* The commentator would take this speech as a theistic one. I refuse to reject the plain and obvious meaning of the word. All phases of speculative opinion are discussed in the *Cānti.* It is very possible that a religious indifferentism is preached here.—T.

† The sense of the passage is that as everything depends upon its own nature, it cannot, by its action, either gladden or grieve me. If a son be born to me I am not delighted. If he dies, I am not grieved. His birth and death depend upon his own nature as a mortal. I have no power to alter that nature or affect it in any way.—T.

attributes are certain to meet with destruction. What remains there for a person then to do who (like me) is conversant with both the origin and the end of things?[13] Of all things, large or small, born in the ocean of waters, the end is noticeable.[14] I see also the death, which is manifest, O chief of *Asuras*, of all things, mobile and immobile, belonging to the land.[15] O best of *Dānavas*, death comes in season unto even the strongest of winged creatures which range the sky.[16] I see again that the luminous bodies, large and small, which move in the firmament, fall down when their time comes.[17] Beholding all created things to be thus liable to be affected by death, possessed of knowledge, and thinking all things to be possessed of the same nature, I sleep in peace without any anxiety of heart.[18] If I get without trouble a copious repast I do not scruple to enjoy it. On the other hand, I pass many days together without eating anything.[19] Sometimes people feed me with costly viands in profusion, sometimes with a small quantity, sometimes with even less, and sometimes I get no food whatever.[20] I sometimes eat only a portion of a grain; sometimes the dry sesame cakes from which the oil has been pressed out. I sometimes eat rice and meat and other food of the richest kind.[21] Sometimes I sleep on an elevated bedstead of the best kind. Sometimes I sleep on the bare ground. Sometimes my bed is made within a fine palace or mansion.[22] I am sometimes clad in rags, sometimes in sackcloth, sometimes in raiments of fine texture, sometimes in deer-skins, sometimes in robes of the costliest kind.[23] I never reject such enjoyments as are consistent with virtue and as are obtained by me without effort. I do not, at the same time, strive for attaining to such objects as are difficult of acquisition.[24] The rigid vow I have adopted is called Ā*jagara*.* That vow can secure immortality. It is auspicious and griefless. It is in-

* The word *Ajagara* implies 'after the manner of a big snake that cannot move.' It is believed that such snakes, without moving, lie in the same place in expectation of prey, eating when anything comes near, famishing when there is nothing.—T.

comparable and pure. It is consistent with the counsels of the wise. It is disapproved by persons of foolish understanding who never follow it. With a pure heart I conduct myself according to it.[25] My mind never swerves from this vow. I have not swerved from the practices of my order. I am abstemious in everything. I know the past and the present. Divested of fear and wrath and cupidity and errors of judgment, I follow this vow with a pure heart.[26] There are no restrictions in respect of food and drink and other objects of enjoyment for one practising this vow. As everything is dependent on destiny, there is no observance of the considerations of time and place for one like us. The vow I follow contributes to true happiness of the heart. It is never observed by those that are wicked. I follow it with a pure heart.[27] Induced by cupidity, men pursue different kinds of wealth. If baffled in the pursuit, they become depressed by sorrow. Reflecting properly upon all this by the aid of my intelligence which has penetrated the truths of things, I follow this vow with a pure heart.[28] I have seen persons in distress seeking, for the acquisition of wealth, the shelter of men good and bad. Devoted to tranquillity and with my passions under control, I follow this vow with a pure heart.[29] Beholding, by the aid of truth, that happiness and misery, loss and gain, attachment and renunciation, death and life, are all ordained by destiny, I follow this vow with a pure heart.[30] Divested of fear and attachment and errors of judgment and pride, and endued with wisdom, intelligence, and understanding, and devoted to tranquillity, and hearing that large snakes without moving enjoy the fruit that comes to them of itself, I follow their practice with a pure heart.[31] Without restrictions of any kind in respect of bed and food, endued by my nature with Self-restraint, abstemiousness, pure vows, truth, and purity of conduct, and without any desire to store (for future use) the rewards of action, I follow, with a delighted and pure heart, this vow.[32] All causes of sorrow have fled from me in consequence of my having driven off the object of desire. Having received an accession of light, I follow this vow with a pure heart, for controlling my soul

which is thirsty and unrestrained but which is capable (under proper culture) of depending upon itself (without the necessity of external objects to keep it engaged).[33] Without paying any heed to the concerns towards which my heart, mind, and words would like to lead me, and marking that the happiness which is connected with these is both difficult of acquisition and fleeting in respect of duration, I follow this vow with a pure heart.[34] Learned men possessed of great intelligence, desirous of proclaiming their own feats, have while establishing their own theories and censuring those of others, said this and that on this topic which is incapable of being settled by disputation.[35] Foolish men fail to understand this vow in a proper light. I, however, see it to be destructive of Ignorance. Regarding it also as fraught with immortality and as a remedy against diverse kinds of evil, I wander among men, having subdued all faults and having freed myself from thirst (after worldly goods) !—'[36]

"Bhishma continued,—'That high-souled person who, having freed himself from attachments and divested himself of fear, cupidity, foolishness, and wrath, follows this `*Ajagara* vow, or indulges in this sport, as it may be called, certainly succeeds in passing his days in great delight.' "[37]

Section CLXXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Which of these, O grandsire, *viz.*, kinsmen, or acts, or wealth, or wisdom, should be the refuge of a person ? Questioned by me, answer me this !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Wisdom is the refuge of creatures. Wisdom is regarded as the highest of acquisitions. Wisdom is the highest felicity in the world. Wisdom is heaven in the estimation of the good and virtuous.[2] It was through wisdom that Vali, Prahrāda, Namuchi, and Manki, when they lost their (earthly) prosperity, succeeded in acquiring felicity. What is there that is superior to wisdom ?[3] In this connection is cited the old story of the discourse between Indra and Kāçyapa. Listen to it, O Yudhishthira ![4] Once on a time a prosperous Vaiçya, in the enjoyment of prosperity,

and proud of his affluence, threw down, by negligently driving his car, a *Rishi's* son of rigid vows, named Kāçyapa, devoted to penances.[5] Prostrated on the ground, the young man, in exceeding pain, gave way to his wrath; and under the influence of despair resolved, saying,—I shall cast off my life! A poor man has no need of life in this world![6]—While the Brāhmana was lying in that state, silent and agitated, deprived of energy and on the point of death, Indra appeared on the scene in the form of a jackal and addressing him, said,[7]—All (inferior) creatures covet birth in the human race. Among men again, the status of a Brāhmana is much desired.[8] Thou, O Kāçyapa, art a human being! Amongst human beings, thou art again a Brāhmana. Among Brāhmanas, thou art again one that is conversant with the *Vedas*. Having obtained that which is attainable with very great difficulty, it behoveth thee not to give up life from folly![9] All kinds of (worldly) acquisitions are fraught with pride. The declaration of the *Çrutis* in that respect is perfectly true. Thou lookest the picture of contentment. In forming such a resolve (which is so derrogatory of thy own self) about casting off thy life, thou actest from cupidity![10] O, they are crowned with success that have hands! I eagerly wish for the status of those creatures that have hands![11] We covet hands as eagerly as you covet riches. There is no acquisition that is more valuable than the acquisition of hands.[12] Behold, O Brāhmana, I cannot extract this thorn that has entered my body, or crush these insects and worms that are biting and afflicting me greatly![13] They that have bestowed upon them two hands with ten fingers, succeed in throwing away or crushing the worms (by scratching) that bite their limbs.[14] They succeed in constructing shelters for themselves from rain, cold, and heat. They succeed also in enjoying excellent clothes for themselves, good food, comfortable beds, and excellent habitations.[15] Living on this Earth, they that have hands enjoy kine and other animals and cause them to carry burthens or drag their vehicles, and by the aid of diverse means bring those animals under sway (for their own purposes).[16] Those living creatures that are without tongues,

that are helpless, of little strength, and destitute of hands, bear all the several kinds of misery (indicated above). By good luck, O ascetic, thou art not like them.[17] By good luck, thou art not a jackal, nor a worm, nor a mouse, nor a snake, nor a frog, nor an animal of any other miserable order.[18] With this measure of gain (that thou hast won), thou shouldst, O Kāçyapa, be contented ! How happy, again, shouldst thou feel at the thought that amongst living creatures thou art a superior Brāhmana ![19] These worms are biting me ! For want of hands I am unable to drive them off. Behold this my miserable plight ![20] I do not cast off life because to do so is a very sinful act, and lest, indeed, I fall into a more miserable order of existence ![21] This order of existence, *viz.*, that of a jackal, to which I now belong is rather tolerable. Miserable as it is, there are many orders of existence below it that are more miserable still.[22] By birth certain classes of creatures become happier than others who become subject to great woe. But I never see that there is any order of being which can be said to be in the possession of perfect happiness.[23] Human beings, obtaining affluence, next wish for sovereignty. Having achieved sovereignty their next wish is for the status of gods. Having won that status they then wish for the chiefdom of the celestials.[24] If thou becomest affluent, thou wilt never succeed in becoming a king (for thou art a Brāhmana by birth), nor in becoming a god (because, in reality, thy status of Brāhmanahood is equal if not superior to that of a god). If by any means (led away by the alluring prospect of heavenly bliss) thou becomest a god (instead of attaining to a superior position), thou wilt then covet for the chiefdom of the gods. In no condition wilt thou be contented.[25] Contentment does not result from acquisition of desirable objects. Thirst is never slaked although there is profusion of water.* The thirst for acquisition only blazes up with each fresh acquisition like a fire with new faggots thrown into it.[26] In thee there is grief. But joy also dwells in thee. Both happiness and misery dwell in

---

* The meaning is that even copious drafts do not slake thirst permanently, for after being slaked, it is sure to return.—T.

thee. Why then shouldst thou yield to grief?[27] One should shut up, like birds in a cage, the very springs, *viz.*, the understanding and the senses, of all one's desires and acts.[28] There can be no cutting of a second head, nor of a third hand. That which does not exist can produce no fear.[29] One that is not acquainted with the enjoyment a certain object affords, never feels a desire for that object. Desires arise from the actual experience of the pleasures that touch, or sight, or hearing gives.[30] Thou hast no idea of the taste of the wine called *Vāruni* or of the meat of the birds called *Ladwaka.* There is no drink and no food more delicious than these.[31] Thou hast no idea also, O Kāçyapa, of every other superior kind of drink and food that exists among men, for thou hast never tasted it.[32] Without doubt, therefore, not to taste, not to touch, not to see, should be the vow of a man if he is to win happiness.[33] Creatures that have hands, without doubt, become strong and earn wealth. Men are reduced by men to a state of sevitude,[34] and are repeatedly afflicted (at the hands of their own species) with death, imprisonment, and other tortures. Although such their condition yet even they (without yielding to grief) laugh and sport and indulge in merriment.[35] Others again, though endued with might of arms, and possessed of knowledge and great energy of mind, follow censurable, sinful, and miserable professions.[36] They seek to change such professions for other pursuits (that are more dignified) but then they are bound by their own acts (of a previous life) and by the force of Destiny.[37] The vilest man of the *Pukkasa* or the *Chāndāla* orders never wishes to cast off his life. He is quite contented with the order of his birth. Behold the illusion in this respect![38] Beholding those amongst thy species that are destitute of arms, or struck with palsy, or afflicted with other diseases, thou canst regard thyself as very happy and possessed of valuable accompaniments amongst the members of thy own order.[39] If this thy regenerated body remains safe and sound, and free from disease, and all thy limbs remain perfect, thou art sure of never incurring any reproach amongst men.[40] It would not behove thee, O Brāhmana, to cast off thy life even if any blame,

founded on fact and capable of bringing about thy dismission from caste, attached to thee! Rise, and practise virtue. It is not meet that thou shouldst throw away thy life![41] If, O regenerate one, thou listen to me and place credence on my words, thou wilt then obtain the highest reward of the religion inculcated in the Vedas![42] Do thou set thyself to Vedic studies, and duly maintain thy sacred fire, and observe truth, and self-restraint, and charity. Never compare thyself boastfully with another.[43] They who, by devoting themselves to the study of the Vedas, become competent for performing sacrifices for themselves and others, have no need to indulge in any kind of regrets or fear any kind of evil.[44] They that are born under an auspicious constellation on an auspicious lunation and at an auspicious hour, strive their best for performing sacrifices, practising charity, and procreating children, and desiring to pass their time cheerfully in those acts, at last win very great happiness.*[45] They, on the other hand, that are born under evil constellations, inauspicious lunations, and at evil hours, become destitute of sacrifices and progeny and at last fall into the *Asura* order.†[46] In my former life I had much useless learning. I always sought for reasons and had very little faith. I was a slanderer of the Vedas. I was destitute of the (fourfold) objects of life, and was devoted to that science of argumentation which is based upon ocular or tangible proofs.‡[47] I used to utter words based on (plausible) reasons. Indeed, in assemblies, I always spoke of reasons (and never of faith). I used to speak irreverently of the declarations of the *Çrutis* and address Brāhmanas in domineering tones.[48] I was an unbeliever, sceptical of everything, and though really ignorant, proud of my learning. This status of

---

* In the Bengal texts, 44 is made a triplet. The correct reading, however, is to take 44 as a couplet and 45 as a triplet. Nilakantha points out that *Icchantaste* &c., is grammatically connected with 45.—T.

† The auspicious constellations are such as *Pushyā* and others; the inauspicious ones are Mulā, Açleshā, Maghā, &c.; *yajnaprasava* may also mean the *fruits* of sacrifices.—T.

‡ *Anwikshikim* may also mean 'microscopic.'—T.

a jackal that I have obtained in this life is the consequence, O regenerate one, of those sins of mine![49] If even after hundreds of days and nights I that am a jackal can once again obtain the status of humanity,[50] I shall then pass my life in contentment, heedful of the true objects of existence, and engaged in sacrifices and gifts. I shall then know what should be known, and avoid what should be avoided![51]—Thus addressed, the ascetic Kāçyapa, rising up, said,—O, thou art certainly possessed of knowledge and great intelligence! I am really surprised at all this![52]—With eye whose vision was extended by knowledge, the Brāhmana then beheld that being who had addressed him to be Indra the chief of the gods and the lord of Cachi.[53] Kāçyapa then worshipped that god having the best of steeds for the animal that bore him. Receiving afterwards the god's permission, the Brāhmana returned to his abode.' "[54]

SECTION CLXXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, if gifts, sacrifices, penances, and dutiful services rendered to preceptors, are productive of wisdom and high felicity.'*[1]

"'Bhishma said,—'If the mind becomes affected by desire, wrath, and other evil passions, it then runs towards sin. If one's acts are stained by sin, one is obliged to dwell in painful regions.[2] Sinful men take birth in indigent circumstances and repeatedly suffer the pangs of famine, woe, fear, and death.[3] Those that are virtuous in their acts, and possessed of faith, and that have their senses under control, become born as affluent men and repeatedly sport in festivities and heaven and happiness.[4] Unbelivers, with their arms manacled,

---

* The word *dattam*, generally rendered 'gifts' or 'charity,' means and includes protection of suppliants, abstention from injury as regards all creatures, and actual gifts made outside the sacrificial altar. Similarly, the maintenance of the sacred fire, penances, purity of conduct, the study of the Vedas, hospitality to guests, and offer of food to the Viçwedevas, are all included in the word *Ishta* which is ordinarily rendered 'sacrifice.'—T.

are sent to regions rendered inaccesible by carnivorous beasts and elephants and full of terrors in consequence of snakes and robbers. What more need be said of them?[5] They, on the other hand, who have reverence for gods and guests, who are liberal, who are fond of good and honest men, go, in consequence of their acts of charity, along that happy way which belongs to persons of cleansed souls.[6] They that have no reverence for virtue are as vile among men as seedless grains among corn or the gnat among birds.[7] That which is ordained in consequence of the acts of a past life pursues the actor even if the latter strives his best for leaving it behind.* It sleeps when he sleeps and does whatever else he does.†[8] Like his shadow it rests when he rests, proceeds when he proceeds, and acts when he acts.[9] Whatever acts a man does he has certainly to obtain the fruits thereof.[10] Death is dragging all creatures who are surely destined to fall (into orders of existence they deserve) and who are surely liable to enjoy or suffer that which has been ordained as the consequence of their acts.[11] The acts of a past life develop their consequences in their own proper time even as flowers and fruits, without extraneous efforts of any kind, never fail to appear when their proper time comes.[12] After the consequences, as ordained, of the acts of a past life, have been exhausted (by enjoyment or sufference), honor and disgrace, gain and loss, decay and growth, no longer flow or appear in respect of any one. This happens repeatedly.‡[13] A creature while still in the mother's womb enjoys or suffers the happiness or the misery that has been ordained for him in consequence of his own

---

* *I. e.*, even if he seeks to avoid it.—T.

† *I. e.*, becomes his inseparable associate.—T.

‡ What is meant is that if once the consequences of the acts of a past life are exhausted, the creature (with respect to whom such exhaustion takes place) is freed from all vicissitudes of life. Lest, however, such creatures become emancipated, the orthodox view is that a balance is always left of both merit and demerit, so that a new birth must take place, and the consequences of what is thus left as a balance must begin to be enjoyed or suffered. This is not referred to here, but this is the view of all orthodox Hindus.—T.

acts.[14] In childhood or youth or old age, at whatever period of life one does an act good or bad, the consequences thereof are sure to visit him in his next life at precisely the same period.[15] As a calf recognises and approaches its parent in the midst of even a thousand kine, even so the acts of a past life recognise and visit the doer in his new life.[16] Washed in water a (dirty) piece of cloth becomes clean. Similarly, men burning in repentance obtain endless happiness by proper penances.*[17] Those that can take up their residence in the woods and by performing austerities for a long period can wash themselves of their sins, succeed in obtaining the objects on which they set their hearts.[18] As no one can mark the track of birds in the sky or of fishes in the water, similarly the track of persons whose souls have been cleansed by knowledge cannot be marked by any.†[19] There is no need of any more eloquence or any more reference to sinful acts. Suffice it to say that one should, with proper judgment and as befits one best, do what is for one's good. (This is the means by which wisdom and high felicity may be achieved.' "[20]

SECTION CLXXXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Whence has this universe, consisting of mobile and immobile creatures, been created? Whom does it go to when destruction sets in? Tell me this, O grandsire![1] Indeed, by whom has this universe with its oceans, its firmament, its mountains, its clouds, its lands, its fire, and its wind, been created![2] How were all objects created?

---

* The first word of this verse is diversely read. The reading I adopt is *samunnam*, meaning drenched in water. If it be *samjuktam* it would mean united, with filth, of course. Another reading is *samswinnam*, meaning 'drenched with sweat.' Nilakantha explains *upavāshah* here as equivalent to the renunciation of all earthly possessions. Ordinarily, it means 'fasts.'—T.

† This verse often occurs in the *Cānti Parvan*. It is difficult to understand in what sense it is said that the track of the virtuous cannot be marked. Perhaps, it is intended that such men do not leave any history or record behind them, they having abstained from all kinds of action good or bad.—T.

Whence this division into separate orders of existence? Whence are their purity and impurity, and the ordinances about virtue and vice?[3] Of what kind is the life of living creatures? Where also do they go who die? Tell us everything about this and the other world!'[4]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the sacred words that Bhrigu said in reply to the questions of Bharadwāja.[5] Beholding the great *Rishi* Bhrigu blazing with energy and splendour, seated on the Kailāsa summit, Bharadwāja addressed him in the following words:[6]—

"'Bharadwāja said,—By whom was this world with its ocean, its firmament, its mountains, its clouds, its lands, its fire, and its wind, created?[7] How were all creatures first created? Whence this distinction of castes? Whence the purity and the impurity (of behaviour), and whence the ordinances about virtue and vice, for living creatures?[8] Of what kind is the life of living creatures? Where do they go who die? It behoveth thee to tell me everything about this and the other world![9]—Thus addressed about his doubts by Bharadwāja, the illustrious and regenerate *Rishi* Bhrigu who resembled *Brahma* itself, replied unto him, saying these words:[10]—

"'Bhrigu said,—There is a Primeval Being, known to the great *Rishis*, of the name of *Mānasa*. He is without beginning and without end. That Divine Being is incapable of being penetrated by weapons. He is without decay and is Immortal.[11] He is said to be Unmanifest. He is Eternal, Undecaying, and Unchangeable. Through Him are creatures born and through Him they die.[12] He first created a Divine Being known by the name of *Mahat*.*[13] *Mahat* created Consciousness. That Divine Being created Space. That puissant Being is the holder of all created objects.[14] From Space was born Water, and from Water were born Fire and Wind. Through the union of Fire and Wind was born the Earth.[15] Self-born *Mānasa* then created a divine Lotus pregnant with Energy. From that Lotus sprang Brahman,

* *Mānasa* means 'appertaining to the mind,' or, rather, the Will. *Mahat* literally means great.—T.

that Ocean of Veda.*[16] The *Çrutis* say that as soon as born, that divine Being uttered the words—*I am He !*—For this He came to be called by the name of Consciousness. He has all created things for his body and He is their Creator.† These five elements that we see are that Brahman of great energy.[17] The Mountains are his bones. The Earth is his fat and flesh. The Oceans are his blood. Space is his stomach.[18] The Wind is his breath. Fire is his energy. The rivers are his arteries and veins. Agni and *Soma*, otherwise called the Sun and the Moon, are called his eyes.[19] The firmament above is his head. The Earth is his two feet. The cardinal and subsidiary points of the horizon are his arms. Without doubt, He is incapable of being known and His Soul is inconceivable by even persons crowned with ascetic success.[20] That Divine Being, who pervades the whole universe, is also known by the name of *Ananta* (Infinite). He lives in Consciousness, and is incapable of being known by persons of uncleansed souls.[21] Asked by thee I have now told thee of Him who created Consciousness for evoking into existence all created objects, and from whom this universe has sprung !—[22]

" 'Bharadwāja said,—What is the extent of the firmament, of the points of the horizon, of the surface of this Earth, and of the Wind ? By telling me the truth, solve my doubts !—[23]

" 'Bhrigu said,—The sky thou seest above is Infinite. It is the abode of persons crowned with ascetic success and of divine beings. It is delightful, and consists of various regions. Its limits cannot be ascertained.[24] The Sun and the Moon cannot see, above or below, beyond the range of their own rays. There where the rays of the Sun and the Moon cannot reach are luminaries‡ which are self-effulgent and

---

* Veda is here used in the sense of Knowledge and Power.—T.

† *Sarvabhutātmakrit* is explained by Nilakantha thus. He who is *Sarvabhutātman* is again *bhutakrit*. On the authority of the *Crutis* the commentator adds,—ya ete pancha ākācādayodhātavo-dhārana-karmānah sa eva Brahmā.—T.

‡ The word *Devāh* here is evidently used in the sense of luminous or shining ones and *not* in that of gods or deities.—T.

which possess splendour like that of the Sun or the fire.[25] Know this, O giver of honors, that possessed of far-famed splendour, even these last do not behold the limits of the firmament in consequence of the inaccessibility and infinity of those limits.[26] This Space which the very gods cannot measure is full of many blazing and self-luminous worlds each above the other.[27] Beyond the limits of land are oceans of water. Beyond water is darkness. Beyond darkness is water again, and beyond the last is fire.[28] Downwards, beyond the nether regions, is water. Beyond water is the region belonging to the great snakes. Beyond that is sky once more, and beyond the sky is water again.[29] Even thus there is water and sky alternately without end. Even such are the limits of the Divinity represented by water. The very gods are unable to ascertain the limits of fire and wind and water.[30] The nature of fire, wind, water, and land, is like that of space. They are distinguished through want of true Knowledge.[31] Sages read in diverse scriptures the limits that have been declared of the three worlds and the ocean.[32] Who is there, however, that would set limits to what cannot be grasped by vision and what is inaccessible (in all its parts)?[33] If even it becomes possible to ascertain the limits of the firmament which is the track of the gods and beings crowned with ascetic success, it can never be possible to set limits to that which is limitless and known by the name of the Infinite, to that which corresponds with the name by which it is known, *viz.*, what has been called the high-souled *Mānasa*?[34] When again His form is sometimes contracted and sometimes expanded, how can any one else except one that is equal to Him, be able to comprehend His limits?[35] From the Lotus (of which I have already spoken) was first created the Omniscient lord Brahman, endued with form, of essence comprised of Righteousness, and the Creator of all mobile and immobile things.—[36]

" 'Bharadwāja said,—If Brahman sprang from the Lotus, then it is the Lotus that should be regarded as the First-born and not Brahman. Why, however, is Brahman said to be the first? Do thou remove this doubt of mine!'—[37]

" 'Bhrigu said,—The Earth it is that is called that Lotus. It was created for giving a seat unto that form of Mānasa which became Brahman.[38] Reaching up to heaven itself, the Sumeru became the pericarp of that Lotus. Remaining within it, the puissant Lord of the Universe created all the worlds.—' "[39]

SECTION CLXXXIII.

" 'Bharadwāja said,—Tell me, O best of Brāhmanas, how the puissant Brahman, residing within Meru, created these diverse kinds of objects !—[1]

" 'Bhrigu said,—The great Mānasa (in his form of Brahman) created the diverse kinds of objects by fiat of Will. For the protection then of all creatures, he first created water.[2] Water is the life of life of all creatures, and it is water which aids their growth. If there be no water, all creatures would perish. The whole univere is pervaded by water.[3] Earth, mountains, clouds, and all things which have form, should all be known as transformations of water. They have all been produced by the solidification of that element.—[4]

" 'Bharadwāja said,—How did water spring ? How Fire and Wind ? How also was the Earth created ? I have great doubts on these points !—[5]

" 'Bhrigu said,—O regenerate one, in very ancient times called the *Brahma-kalpa*, high-souled *Rishis* of the regenerate order, when they assembled together, felt this very doubt about the creation of the universe.[6] Restraining speech, they remained immovable, engaged in (ascetic) contemplation. Having given up all food, they subsisted upon air alone, and remained thus for a thousand celestial years.[7] At the end of that period, certain words as sacred as those of the Vedas simultaneously reached the ears of all. Indeed, this celestial voice was heard in the firmament to say :[8]—Formerly there was only infinite Space, perfectly motionless and immovable. Without sun, moon, stars, and wind, it seemed to be asleep.[9] Then water sprang into existence like something darker within darkness. Then from the pressure of water arose

wind.[10] As an empty vessel without a hole appears at first to be without any sound, but when filled with water, air appears and makes a great noise,[11] even so when infinite Space was filled with water, the wind arose with a great noise, penetrating through the water.*[12] That wind, thus generated by the pressure of the ocean of water, still moveth. Coming into (unobstructed) Space, its motion is never stopped.[13] Then in consequence of the friction of wind and water, fire possessed of great might and blazing energy, sprang into existence, with flames directed upwards. That fire dispelled the darkness that had covered Space.[14] Assisted by the wind, fire drew Space and Water together. Indeed, combining with the wind, fire became solidified.[15] While falling from the sky, the liquid portion of fire solidified again and became what is known as the Earth.[16] The Earth or land, in which everything is born, is the origin of all kinds of taste, of all kinds of scent, of all kinds of liquids, and of all kinds of animals.—' "[17]

SECTION CLXXXIV.

" 'Bharadwāja said,—When the high-souled Brahman has created thousands of creatures, why is it that only these five elements which he created first, which pervade all the universe and which are *great creatures*, have come to have the name of *creatures* applied to them exclusively ?†—[1-2]

" 'Bhrigu said,—All things that belong to the category of the Infihite or the Vast receive the appellation of *Great*. It is for this reason that these five elements have come to be called Great creatures.[3] Activity is wind. The sound that is heard is space. The heat that is within it is fire. The liquid juices occuring in it are water. The solidified matter, *viz.*, flesh and bones, are Earth. The bodies (of living creatures) are thus made of the five (primeval) elements.[4] All mobile

---

* The *Rishis* supposed that the pouring of water *created* the air instead only of displacing it.—T.

† All created things are called *Bhutas*, but the five principal elements *viz.*, fire, air, earth, water, and space, are especially called *Bhutas* or *Mahābhutas*.—T.

and immobile objects are made of these five elements. The five senses also of living creatures partake of the five elements. The ear partakes of the properties of space. The nose of earth ; the tongue of water ; touch of wind ; and the eyes of light (or fire).—[5]

"'Bharadwāja said,—If all mobile and immobile objects be composed of these five elements, why is it that in all immobile objects those elements are not visible ?[6] Trees do not appear to have any heat. They do not seem to have any motion. They are again made up of dense particles. The five elements are not noticeable in them.[7] Trees do not hear ; they do not see ; they are not capable of the perceptions of scent or taste. They have not also the perception of touch. How then can they be regarded as composed of the five (primal) elements ?[8] It seems to me that in consequence of the absence of any liquid material in them, of any heat, of any earth, of any wind, and of any empty space, trees cannot be regarded as compounds of the five (primal) elements.—[9]

"'Bhrigu said,—Without doubt, though possessed of density, trees have space within them. The putting forth of flowers and fruits is always taking place in them.[10] They have heat within them in consequence of which leaf, bark, fruit, and flower, are seen to droop. They sicken and dry up. That shows they have perception of touch.[11] Through sound of wind and fire and thunder, their fruits and flowers drop down. Sound is perceived through the ear. Trees have, therefore, ears and do hear.[12] A creeper winds round a tree and goes about all its sides. A blind thing cannot find its way. For this reason it is evident that trees have vision.[13] Then again trees recover vigor and put forth flowers in consequence of odors good and bad, of the sacred perfume of diverse kinds of *dhupas*. It is plain that trees have scent.*[14] They drink water by their roots. They catch diseases of diverse kinds. Those diseases again are cured by different operations. From this it is evident that trees have perception of

* This is certainly curious as showing that the ancient Hindus knew how to treat diseased plants and restore them to vigor.—T.

taste.[15] As one can suck up water through a bent lotus-stalk, trees also, with the aid of the wind, drink through their roots.[16] They are susceptible of pleasure and pain, and grow when cut or lopped off. From these circumstances I see that trees have life. They are not inanimate.[17] Fire and wind cause the water thus sucked up to be digested. According, again, to the quantity of the water taken up, the tree advances in growth and becomes humid.[18] In the bodies of all mobile things the five elements occur. In each the proportions are different. It is in consequence of these five elements that mobile objects can move their bodies.[19] Skin, flesh, bones, marrow, and arteries and veins, that exist together in the body are made of earth.[20] Energy, wrath, eyes, internal heat, and that other heat which digests the food that is taken, these five, constitute the fire that occurs in all embodied creatures.*[21] The ears, nostrils, mouth, heart, and stomach, these five, constitute the element of space that occurs in the bodies of living creatures.[22] Phlegm, bile, sweat, fat, blood, are the five kinds of water that occur in mobile bodies.[23] Through the breath called *Prāna* a living creature is enabled to move. Through that called *Vyāna*, they put forth strength for action. That called *Apāna* moves downward. That called *Samāna* resides within the heart.[24] Through that called *Udāna* one eructates and is enabled to speak in consequence of its piercing through (the lungs, the throat, and the mouth). These are the five kinds of wind that cause an embodied creature to live and move.[25] The properties of scent an embodied creature knows through the earth-element in him. From the water-element he perceives taste. From the fire-element represented by the eyes, he perceives forms, and from the wind-element he obtains the perception of touch.[26] Scent, touch, taste, vision, and sound, are regarded as the (general) properties of every mobile and immobile object. I shall first speak of the several kinds of scent.[27] They are agreeable, disagreeable, sweet, pungent, far-going, varied, dry,

---

* K. P. Singha wrongly renders this verse. The Burdwan translator is right.—T.

indifferent.[28] Of these nine kinds is scent which is founded upon the earth-element. Light is seen by the eyes, and touch through the wind-element.[29] Sound, touch, vision and taste are the properties of water. I shall speak (in detail) now of the perception of taste. Listen to me.[30] High-souled *Rishis* have spoken of diverse kinds of taste. They are sweet, saltish, bitter, astringent, sour, and pungent.[31] These are the six kinds of taste appertaining to the water-element.[32] Light contributes to the vision of form. Form is of diverse kinds. Short, tall, thick, four-cornered, round,[33] white, black, red, blue, yellow, reddish, hard, bright, smooth, oily, soft, and terrible.[34] These are the sixteen different kinds of form which constitutes the property of light or vision. The property of the wind-element is touch. Touch is of various kinds:[35] warm, cold, agreeable, disagreeable, indifferent, burning, mild, soft, light, and heavy.[36] Both sound and touch are the two properties of the wind-element. These are the eleven properties that appertain to the wind.[37] Space has only one property. It is called sound. I shall now tell thee the different kinds of sound.[38] They are the seven original notes called *Shadaja*, *Rishabha*, *Gāndhāra*, *Madhyama*, *Dhaivata*, *Panchama*, and *Nishāda*.[39] These are the seven kinds of the property that appertains to space. Sound inheres like the Supreme Being in all space though attached especially to drums and other instruments.[40] Whatever sound is heard from drums small and large, and conchs, and clouds, and cars, and animate and inanimate creatures, are all included in these seven kinds of sound already enumerated.[41] Thus sound, which is the property of space, is of various kinds. The learned have said sound to be born of space. When raised by the different kinds of touch, which is the property of the wind, it may be heard. It cannot, however, be heard, when the different kinds of touch are inceptive. The elements, mingling with their counter-parts in the body, increase and grow.[42-43] Water, fire, wind, are always awake in the bodies of living creatures. They are the roots of the body. Pervading the five life-breaths (already mentioned) they reside in the body.—' "[44]

Section CLXXXV.

"'Bharadwāja said,—How does bodily fire or heat, entering the body, reside there? How also does the wind, obtaining space for itself, cause the body to move and exert?—[1]

"Bhrigu said,—'I shall, O regenerate one, speak to thee of the course in which the wind moves, and how, O sinless one, that mighty element causes the bodies of living creatures to move and exert![2] Heat resides within the head (brain) and protects the body (from perishing). The wind or breath called *Prāna*, residing within the head and the heat that is there, cause all kinds of exertion.[3] That *Prāna* is the living creature, the universal soul, the eternal Being, and the Mind, Intellect, and Consciousness of all living creatures, as also all the objects of the senses.*[4] Thus the living creature is, in every respect, caused by *Prāna* to move about and exert. Then in consequence of the other breath called *Samāna*, every one of the senses is made to act as it does.[5] The breath called *Apāna*, having recourse to the heat that is in the urethra and the abdomenal intestines, moves, engaged in carrying out urine and fæces.[6] That single breath which operates in these three, is called *Udāna* by those that are conversant with science.[7] That breath which operates, residing in all the joints of men's bodies, is called *Vyāna*.[8] There is heat in the bodies of living creatures which is circulated all over the system by the breath *Samāna*. Residing thus in the body, that breath operates upon the different kinds of watery and other elementary substances and all bad humours.[9] That heat, residing between *Apāna* and *Prāna*, in the region of the navel, operates, with the aid of those two breaths, in digesting all food that is taken by a living creature.[10] There is a duct beginning from the mouth down to the anal canal. Its extremity is called the anus. From this main duct numerous subsidiary ones branch out in the bodies of all living crea-

---

* Both the Bengal and the Bombay texts read *bhutāni*. The correct reading, however, appears to be *bhutānām*.—T.

tures.*[11] In consequence of the rush of the several breaths named above (through these ducts), those breaths mingle together. The heat (that dwells in *Prāna*) is called *Ushman*. It is this heat that causes digestion in all creatures possessed of bodies.[12] The breath called *Prāna*, the bearer of a current of heat, descends (from the head) downwards to the extremity of the anal canal and thence is sent upwards once more. Coming back to its seat in the head, it once more sends down the heat it bears.[13] Below the navel is the region of digested matter. Above it is that for the food which is taken. In the navel are all the forces of life that sustain the body.[14] Urged by the ten kinds of breaths having *Prāna* for their first, the ducts (already mentioned), branching out from the heart, convey the liquid juices that food yields, upwards, downwards, and in transverse directions.†[15] The main duct leading from the mouth to the anus is the path by which *Yogins*, vanquishers of fatigue, of perfect equanimity in joy and sorrow, and possessed of great patience, succeed in attaining to *Brahma* by holding the soul within the brain.‡[16] Even thus is heat planted in the breaths called *Prāna* and *Apāna* and others, of all embodied creatures. That heat is always burning there like a fire placed in any (visible) vessel.—' "[17]

---

* The word rendered duct is *Crotās*. It may also be rendered 'channel.' Very likely the principal artery or aorta is meant.—T.

† Notwithstanding much that is crude anatomy and crude physiology in these sections, it is evident, however, that certain glimpses of truth were perceived by the *Rishis* of ancient times. Verse 15 shows that the great discovery of Harvey in modern times was known in ancient India.—T.

‡ In works on *yoga* it is laid down that the main duct should be brought under the control of the will. The soul may then, by an act of volition, be withdrawn from the whole physical system into the convolutions of the brain in the head. The brain, in the language of *yogins*, is a lotus of a thousand leaves. If the soul be withdrawn into it, the living creature will then be liberated from the necessity of food and sleep, &c., and will live on from age to age, absorbed in contemplation of divinity and in perfect beatitude.—T.

Section CLXXXVI.

"'Bharadwāja said,—If it is the wind that keeps us alive, if it is the wind that causes us to move and exert, if it is the wind that causes us to breathe and to speak, then it seems that life is worth little.[1] If the animal heat (that digests all food) be of the nature of fire, and if it is that fire which assists at digestion by dissolving the food we take, then life is worth little.[2] When an animal dies, that which is called its life is never seen leaving it. Only the breath leaves it, and the internal heat becomes extinguished.[3] If life were nothing else than wind, or if life depended only on the wind, then it could have been seen like the external sea of air, and when passing out it would have mingled with that air.[4] If life depended upon air, and if it ended with the escape of that air from the body, it would then mingle with another portion of air (that exists externally) like a portion of water escaping into the great ocean and thereby only changing the place of its residence.[5] If a quantity of water be thrown into a well, or if the flame of a lamp be thrown into a blazing fire, either of them, entering a homogeneous element, loses its independent or separate existence. If life were air, it also, when the animal died, would mingle with the great ocean of air outside.[6] How can we say that there is life in this animal body which is made up of the five (primal) elements? If one of those elements disappear, the union of the other four becomes dissolved.[7] The element of water drieth up if food be not taken. The element of air disappears if the breath be restrained. The element of space disappears if the excretions cease. So also the element of fire becomes extinguished if food does not go in.[8] The element of earth breaks into pieces in consequence of disease, wounds, and other sufferings. If only one of the five becomes afflicted, the union, being dissolved, the five go away into five different directions.[9] When the body which is a union of the five elements, becomes separated into five ingredients, whither doth life go? What doth it then know?

What doth it then hear? What doth it then say?[10] This cow (that is given away to a holy Brāhmana), it is said, will rescue me in the other world. The animal, however, that is given away, itself dies. Whom then will this cow rescue?[11] The taker of the cow (in gift) and the giver are both equal (in being both subject to death). Both of them meet with extinction in this world. How then will they meet again?[12] How will the person that has been eaten up by birds, or that has been broken into pieces by a fall from a mountain summit, or that has been consumed by fire, regain life?[13] The root of a tree that has been cut down does not grow up again. Only the seeds put forth sprouts. Where is the person who having died comes back (to some sort of new existence)?[14] Only seeds were originally created. All this universe is the result of seeds in succession. They that die, die to perish. Seeds result from seeds.—' "[15]

Section CLXXXVII.

" 'Bhrigu said,—There is no destruction of the living creature, or of what is given, or of our other acts. The creature that dies only goes into another form. The body alone dissolves away.[1] The living creature, though depending upon the body, does not meet with destruction when the body is destroyed. It is not seen after the destruction of the physical frame just as fire is not seen after the consumption of the fuel with which it was ignited.—[2]

" 'Bharadwāja said,—If there is no destruction of the living creature like that of fire, I submit, fire itself is not seen after consumption of the fuel (that ignited it).[3] When the supply of fuel is stopped, the fire becomes extinguished, and, as far as I know, becomes annihilated. That should surely be regarded to have met with destruction which has no longer any action, which furnishes no proof of its existence, and which no longer occupies any space!—[4]

" 'Bhrigu said,—It is true that upon the consumption of fuel fire is no longer seen. It mingles with space because there is no longer any visible object in which to inhere, and

hence it becomes incapable of perception by us.[5] Similarly, upon leaving the body, the creature lives in space, and can not be seen in consequence of its extreme subtility as is doubtless the case with fire.[6] It is fire or heat that sustains the breaths called *Prāna* and the others. Know that that heat (thus existing) is called life or the living agent. That heat which is the sustainer of the breaths, becomes extinguished in consequence of the suppression of breath.[7] Upon that heat in the physical frame being extinguished, the frame itself loses animation. Falling down, it is transformed into earth, for that is its ultimate destination.[8] The breath that is in all mobile and immobile objects mingles with space, and the heat that is in them follows that breath.[9] These three (*viz.*, space, air, and fire) mingle together. The other two, (*viz.*, water and earth), exist together in the form of earth.[10] There is wind where space is, and there is fire where wind is. They are formless, it should be known, and become endued with form only in respect of embodied creatures.—[11]

"'Bharadwāja said,—If in the physical frames of all living creatures there are heat and wind and earth and space and water, what then are the indications of the living agent? Tell me these, O sinless one![12] I desire to know the nature of the life that is in the bodies of living beings,—bodies made up of the five primal elements, engaged in the five acts, endued with the five senses and possessed of animation.[13] Upon the dissolution of the body which is a union of flesh and blood, and a mass of fat and sinews and bones, that which is the living agent cannot be seen.[14] If this body, composed of the five elements, be destitute of what is called life, who or what then is that which feels misery upon the appearance of either bodily or mental pain?[15] The living agent hears what is said, with the aid of the ears. It, however, happens again, O great *Rishi*, that the same agent hears not when the *Mind* is otherwise engaged. It seems, therefore, that that which is called the living agent serves no purpose.[16] The whole scene that the living agent sees with eyes acting in concert with the mind, the eye beholds not, even when lying before it, if the mind be otherwise engaged.[17]

Then again, when it is under the influence of sleep, that agent neither sees nor smells, nor hears, nor speaks, nor experiences the perceptions of touch and taste.[18] Who or what then is that which feels joy, becomes angry, gives way to sorrow, and experiences tribulation? What is that which wishes, thinks, feels aversion, and utters words?—[19]

"'Bhrigu said,—The mind also is made of the five elements in common with the body. For this reason it is of no consequence with respect to the acts mentioned by thee. Only the one internal Soul sustaineth the body. It is he that perceives smell and taste and sound and touch and form and other properties (that exist in external nature).[20] That Soul, pervading all the limbs, is the witness (of the acts) of the mind endued with five attributes and residing within the body composed of the five elements. It is he who feels pleasure and pain, and when separated from him the body no longer experiences them.[21] When there is no longer any perception of form or of touch, when there is no heat in the fire that resides within the body,—indeed, when that animal heat becomes extinguished,—the body, in consequence of its abandonment by the Soul, meets with destruction.[22] This whole universe is composed of water. Water is the form of all embodied creatures. In that water is the Soul which is displayed in the mind. That Soul is the Creator Brahman who exists in all things.[23] When the Soul becomes endued with vulgar attributes, it comes to be called *Kshetrajna*. When freed from those attributes, it comes to be called *Paramātman* or Supreme Soul.[24] Know that Soul. He is inspired with universal benevolence. He resides in the body like a drop of water in a lotus.[25] Know well that which is called *Kshetrajna* and which has universal benevolence. Darkness, Passion, and Goodness are the three attributes of the living agent.[26] The learned say that the Soul has Consciousness and exists with the attributes of life. The Soul exerts and causes everything to exert. Persons that have a knowledge of the Soul say that the Soul is different from life. It is the Supreme Soul that has created the seven worlds and sets them agoing.[27] There is no destruc-

tion of the living agent when the dissolution of the body takes place. Men destitute of intelligence say that it dies. That is certainly untrue. All that the living agent does is to go from one unto another body. That which is called death is only the dissolution of the body.[28] It is thus that the Soul, wrapped in diverse forms, migrates from form to form, unseen and unnoticed by others. Persons possessed of true Knowledge behold the Soul by their keen and subtile intelligence.[29] The man of wisdom, living on frugal fare, and with heart cleansed of all sins, devoting himself to *yoga* meditation, succeeds every night, before sleep and after sleep, in beholding his Soul by the aid of his Soul.*[30] In consequence of a contented heart, and by abandoning all acts good and bad, one can obtain infinite happiness by depending upon one's own Soul.[31] The king, of fiery effulgence, residing within the mind is called the living agent. It is from that Lord of everything that this creation has sprung. Even this is the conclusion to be arrived at in the enquiry into the origin of creatures and the soul.—' "[32]

Section CLXXXVIII.

" 'Bhrigu said,—Brahman first created a few Brāhmanas who came to be called *Prajāpatis* (lords of creation). Possessed of splendour equal to that of the fire or the Sun, they were created out of the energy of that First-born Being.[1] The puissant Lord then created Truth, Duty, Penance, the eternal Vedas, all kinds of pious acts, and Purity, for enabling creatures to attain to heaven (by practising them).[2] After this, the Deities and the Dānavas, the Gandharvas, the Daityas, the Asuras, the great-snakes, the Yakshas, the Rākshasas, the Serpents, the Piçāchas, and human beings[3]

---

* It is often said that in an advanced stage of *yoga*, one is enabled to behold one's Soul, or, a sort of double existence is realised in consequence of which the Soul becomes an object of internal survey to the Soul itself. Very probably, writers on *yoga* employ this language in a figurative sense.—T.

with their four divisions, *viz.*, Brāhmanas, Kshatriyas, Vaiçyas, and Cudras, O best of regenerate ones, and all the other orders of creatures that exist, were created.[4] The complexion the Brāhmanas obtained was white; that which the Kshatriyas obtained was red; that which the Vaiçyas got was yellow; and that which was given to the Cudras was black.*[5]—

"'Bharadwāja said,—If the distinction between the four orders (of human beings) be made by means only of color (attribute), then it seems that all the four orders have been mingled together.[6] Lust, wrath, fear, cupidity, grief, anxiety hunger, toil, possess and prevail over all men. How can men be distinguished by the possession of attributes?[7] The bodies of all men emit sweat, urine, fæces, phlegm, bile, and blood. How then can men be distributed into classes?[8] Of mobile objects the number is infinite; the species also of immobile objects is innumerable. How then can objects of such very great diversity be distributed into classes?—[9]

"'Bhrigu said,—There is really no distinction between the different orders. The whole world at first consisted of Brāhmanas. Created (equal) by Brahman, men have, in consequence of their acts, become distributed into different orders.[10] They that became fond of indulging desires and enjoying pleasures, possessed of the attributes of severity and wrath, endued with courage, and unmindful of the duties of piety and worship,—those Brāhmanas possessing the attribute of Passion,—became Kshatriyas.[11] Those Brāhmanas again who, without attending to the duties laid down for them, became possessed of both the attributes of Goodness and Passion, and took to the professions of cattle-rearing and agriculture, became Vaiçyas.[12] Those Brāhmanas again that became fond of untruth and injuring other creatures, possessed of cupidity,—

---

* The commentator explains that the words expressive of hue or color really mean attributes. What is intended to be said is that the Brāhmanas had the attribute of Goodness (*Satwa*); the second order had the attribute of Passion (*Rajas*); the third got a mixture of the two, *i. e.*, both goodness and passion (*Satwa* and *Rajas*); while the lowest order got the remaining attribute, *viz.*, Darkness (*Tamas*).—T.

engaged in all kinds of acts for a living, and fallen away from purity of behaviour, and thus wedded to the attribute of Darkness, become Cudras.[13] Separated by these occupations, Brāhmanas, falling away from their own order, become members of the other three orders. All the four orders, therefore, have always the right to the performance of all pious duties and of sacrifices.[14] Even thus were the four orders at first created equal by Brahman who ordained for all of them (the observances disclosed in) the words of *Brahma* (in the Vedas). Through cupidity alone, many fell away, and become possessed by ignorance.[15] The Brāhmanas are always devoted to the scriptures on *Brahma*; and mindful of vows and restraints, are capable of grasping the conception of *Brahma*. Their penances, therefore, never go for nothing.[16] They amongst them are not Brāhmanas that are incapable of understanding that every created thing is Supreme *Brahma*. These, falling away, become members of diverse (inferior) orders.[17] Losing the light of knowledge, and betaking themselves to an unrestrained course of conduct, they take birth as Piçāchas and Rākshasas and Pretas and as individuals of diverse *Mleccha* species.[18] The great *Rishis* who at the beginning sprang into life (through Brahman's Will) subsequently created, by means of their penances, men devoted to the duties ordained for them and attached to the rites laid down in the Eternal Vedas.[19] That other Creation, however, which is eternal and undecaying, which is based upon *Brahma* and has sprung from the Primeval God, and which has its refuge upon *yoga*, is a mental one.*—"[20]

---

* The distinction here laid down seems to be this: the eternal creation is due to the *yoga* or mental action of the Primeval Deity. That creation which *we* behold is the result of the penances of those sages who were *first* created. Perhaps, what is intended to be said is that the principle of life, of life proceeding from life, and primal matter with space, &c., are all due to the fiat of God; while all visible and tangible objects, resulting from the action of those principles and from primal matter and space, are attributable to the ancient sages.—T.

SECTION CLXXXIX.

"'Bharadwāja said,—By what acts does one become a Brāhmana? By what, a Kshatriya? O best of regenerate ones, by what acts again does one become a Vaiçya or a Cudra? Tell me this, O foremost of speakers!—[1]

"'Bhrigu said,—That person is called a Brāhmana who has been sanctified by such rites as those called *jāta* and others; who is pure in behaviour; who is engaged in studying the Vedas; who is devoted to the six well-known acts (of ablutions every morning and evening, silent recitation of *mantras*, pouring libations on the sacrificial fire, worshipping the deities, doing the duties of hospitality to guests, and offering food to the *Viçwedevas*;)[2] who is properly observant of all pious acts; who never takes food without having offered it duly to gods and guests; who is filled with reverence for his preceptor; and who is always devoted to vows and truth.[3] He is called a Brāhmana in whom are truth, gifts, abstention from injury to others, compassion, shame, benevolence,* and penance.[4] He who is engaged in the profession of battle, who studies the Vedas, who makes gifts (to Brāhmanas) and takes wealth (from those he protects), is called a Kshatriya.[5] He who earns fame from keep of cattle, who is employed in agriculture and the means of acquiring wealth, who is pure in behaviour and attends to the study of the Vedas, is called a Vaiçya.†[6] He who takes a pleasure in eating every kind of food, who is engaged in doing every kind of work, who is impure in behaviour, who does not study the Vedas, and whose conduct is unclean, is said to be a Cudra.[7] If these characteristics be observable in a Cudra, and

---

* The word *Ghrinā* may also mean aversion. Of course, here it would mean, if used in that sense, aversion for all unrighteous acts.—T.

† The first half of the first line of 6 is differently read in the Bombay edition. Both readings are noticed by Nilakantha. I have adhered to the Bengal reading, though the Bombay reading is clearer in sense. *Viçati* is a transitive verb having *pratisthā* or some such noun for its object. The literal meaning is 'He who acquires fame &c.'—T.

if they be not found in a Brāhmana, then such a Cudra is no Cudra, and such a Brāhmana is no Brāhmana.[8] By every means should cupidity and wrath be restrained. This, as also self-restraint, are the highest results of Knowledge.[9] Those two passions (*viz.*, cupidity and wrath), should, with one's whole heart, be resisted. They make their appearance for destroying one's highest good.[10] One should always protect one's prosperity from one's wrath, one's penances from pride; one's knowledge from honor and disgrace; and one's soul from error.[11] That intelligent person, O regenerate one, who does all acts without desire of fruit, whose whole wealth exists for charity, and who performs the daily *Homa*, is a real Renouncer.* One should conduct oneself as a friend to all creatures, abstaining from all acts of injury.[12] Rejecting the acceptance of all gifts, one should, by the aid of one's own intelligence, be a complete master of one's passions. One should live in one's soul where there can be no grief. One would then have no fear here and attain to a fearless region hereafter.[13] One should live always devoted to penances, and with all passions completely restrained; observing the vow of taciturnity, and with soul concentrated on itself; desirous of conquering the unconquered senses, and unattached in the midst of attachments.[14] All things that can be perceived by the senses are called Manifest. All, however, that is Unmanifest, that is beyond the ken of the senses, that can be ascertained only by the subtile senses, should be sought to be known.†[15] If there be no faith, one will never

---

* Here the speaker describes the character of *Karma-sannyāsa* (renunciation of acts). *Samārambha* generally means all kinds of acts. Here, however, only sacrifices and other scriptural rites are intended. I follow Nilakantha in rendering the second line, although the plain meaning would seem to be "who poureth everything in gift."—T.

† The gross world is perceivable by the ordinary senses. Behind the gross world is a subtile one which the subtile senses, i. e., the senses when sharpened by *yoga*, can perceive. With death, the gross body alone is dissolved. The subtile body or form, called the *Linga-carira*, and made up of what is called the *Tanmātrā* of the primal elements, remains. Even that retains all the characteristics of the

succeed in attaining to that subtile sense. Therefore, one should hold oneself in faith. The mind should be united with *Prāna*, and *Prāna* should then be held within *Brahma*.[16] By dissociating oneself from all attachments, one may obtain absorption into *Brahma*. There is no need of attending to any other thing. A Brāhmana can easily attain to *Brahma* by the path of Renunciation.[17] The indications of a Brāhmana are purity, good behaviour, and compassion unto all creatures.—' "[18]

SECTION CLXC.

" 'Bhrigu said,—Truth is *Brahma*; Truth is Penance; it is Truth that creates all creatures. It is by Truth that the whole universe is upheld; and it is with the aid of Truth that one goes to heaven.[1] Untruth is only another form of Darkness. It is Darkness that leads downwards. Those who are afflicted by Darkness and covered by it fail to behold the lighted regions of heaven.[2] It has been said that Heaven is Light and that Hell is Darkness. The creatures that dwell in the universe may obtain both heaven and hell.[3] In this world also, truth and untruth lead to opposite courses of conduct and opposite indications, such as Righteousness and Unrighteousness, light and darkness, pleasure and pain.[4] Amongst these, that which is Truth is Righteousness; that which is Righteousness is Light; and that which is Light is Happiness. Similarly, that which is Untruth is Unrighteousness; that which is Unrighteousness is Darkness; and that which is Darkness is Sorrow or Misery.[5] In this respect it is said that they that are possessed of wisdom, beholding that the world of life is overwhelmed with sorrow both bodily and mental, and with happiness that is sure to end in misery, never suffer themselves to be stupified.[6] He that is wise will strive to rescue himself from sorrow. The happiness of

---

world in an incipient form. The *Linga-carira* also must be destroyed before absorption into *Brahma* can take place.—T.

living creatures is unstable both here and hereafter.*[7] The happiness of creatures that are overwhelmed by Darkness disappears like the splendour of the Moon when afflicted by Rāhu.†[8] Happiness is said to be of two kinds, *viz.*, bodily and mental. Both in this and the other world, the visible and the invisible fruits (of action) are specified (in the Vedas) for the sake of happiness.‡ There is nothing more important than happiness among the fruits or consequences of the triple aggregate. Happiness is desirable. It is an attribute of the Soul. Both Virtue and Profit are sought for its sake. Virtue is its root. This, indeed, is its origin. All acts have for their end the attainment of happiness.—[9]

"'Bharadwāja said,—You have said that happiness is the highest object. I do not comprehend this. This attribute of the soul that (you say) is so desirable is not sought by the *Rishis* who are regarded to be engaged in something promising a higher reward. It is heard that the Creator of the three worlds, *viz.*, the puissant Brahman, lives alone, observant of the vow of *Brahmacharyya*. He never devotes himself to the happiness obtainable from the gratification of desire. Also, the divine Master of the universe, the lord of Umā, reduced *Kāma* (the deity of desire) to extinction. For this reason we say that happiness is not acceptable to high-souled people. Nor does it appear to be a high attribute of the Soul. I cannot put faith in what thy divine self has said, *viz.*, that there is nothing higher than happiness. That there are two kinds of consequences in respect of our acts, *viz.*, the springing of happiness from good acts and of sorrow from sinful acts, is only a saying that is current in the world.[10]

---

* The felicity that is obtained in heaven is not everlasting, being limited in point of duration by the degree or measure of merit that is achieved here.—T.

† The Paurānic theory of both the solar and the lunar eclipse is that the Sun and the Moon are sought to be devoured by the *Daitya* Rāhu.—T.

‡ The sense seems to be that the Vedas declare those fruits in order that men may strive for them when they lead to happiness.—T.

" 'Bhrigu said,—On this it is said as follows: from Untruth springs Darkness. They that are overwhelmed by Darkness pursue only Unrighteousness and not Righteousness, being overmastered by wrath, covetousness, malice, falsehood, and similar evils. They never obtain happiness either here or hereafter. On the other hand, they are afflicted by various kinds of disease and pain and trouble. They are also tortured by Death, imprisonment, and diverse other griefs of that kind, and by the sorrows attending on hunger and thirst and toil. They are also pained by the numerous bodily griefs that arise from rain and wind and burning heat and exceeding cold. They are also overwhelmed by numerous mental griefs caused by loss of wealth and separation from friends, as also by griefs caused by decrepitude and death.[11] They that are not touched by these diverse kinds of physical and mental afflictions, know what happiness is.[12] These evils are never found in heaven. There delicious breezes blow. In heaven there is also perpetual fragrance. In heaven there is no hunger, no thirst, no decrepitude, no sin.[13] In heaven there is perpetual happiness. In this world there is both happiness and misery. In hell there is only misery. Therefore, happiness is the highest object of acquisition.[14] The Earth is the progenitrix of all creatures. Females partake of her nature. The male animal is like Prajāpati himself. The vital seed, it should be known, is the creative energy.[15] In this way did Brahman ordain in days of old that the creation should go on. Each, affected by his own acts, obtains happiness or misery.*—' "[16]

Section CLXCI.

" 'Bharadwāja said,—What has been said to be the consequence of gift? What of Righteousness? What of conduct? What of Penances well-performed? What of the study and recitation of the Vedas? And what of pouring libations upon the fire?—[1]

---

* Nearly the whole of this section is in prose.—T.

" 'Bhrigu said,—By pouring libations on the sacred fire, sin is burnt. By study of the Vedas one obtains blessed tranquillity. By gift one obtains pleasures and articles of enjoyment. By Penances, one acquires blessed heaven.[2] Gift is said to be of two kinds : gifts for the other world, and those for this. Whatever is given to the good attends the giver in the other world.[3] Whatever is given to those that are not good produces consequences enjoyable here. The consequences of gifts are commensurate with the gifts themselves.—[4]

" 'Bharadwāja said,—What course of duties should be performed by whom ? What also are the characteristics of duty ? How many kinds of duty are there ? It behoveth thee to tell me these !*[5]

" 'Bhrigu said,—Those wise men who are engaged in practising the duties laid down for them succeed in obtaining heaven as their reward. By doing otherwise people become guilty of folly.—[6]

" 'Bharadwāja said,—It behoveth thee to tell me about the four modes of life that were formerly laid down by Brahman, and the practices ordained for each of them.—[7]

" 'Bhrigu said,—In days of yore, the divine Brahman, for benefiting the world, and for the protection of righteousness, indicated four modes of life.† Amongst them, residence in the abode of the preceptor is mentioned as the first (in order of time). He who is in this mode of life should have his soul cleansed by purity of conduct, by Vedic rites, and by restraints and vows and humility. He should worship the morning and evening twilights, the Sun, his own sacred fire, and the deities. He should cast off procrastination and idleness. He should cleanse his soul by saluting his preceptor, by studying the Vedas, and by listening to his preceptor's instructions. He should perform his ablutions thrice, (*viz.*,

---

* It is difficult to understand in what senses the word *Dharma* is used in the three successive questions here.—T.

† In the first line the correct reading is *Brahmanī* and not *Brahmarshi*. The answer attributed to Bhrigu settles this.—T.

morning, noon, and evening).[8] He should lead a celebate existence ; attend to his sacred fire ; dutifully serve his preceptor ; daily go out on a round of mendicancy (for supporting himself) ; and give ungrudginly unto his preceptor the whole of what is obtained in alms. Willingly accomplishing everything that the commands of his preceptor may indicate, he should be ready to receive such Vedic instruction as his preceptor may give him as a favour.* On this subject is a verse : That Brāhmana who obtains his Veda by attending with reverence upon his preceptor, succeeds in attaining to heaven and obtains the fruition of all his desires.[9] The Domestic mode of life is called the second (in point of time). We shall explain to you all the pious acts and indications of that mode. Those who having completed their residence in the preceptor's abode return home, who are of pious conduct, who desire the fruits of a virtuous course of behaviour with spouses in their company, have this mode of life ordained for them. In it Virtue, Wealth, and Pleasure, may all be obtained. It is (thus) suited to the cultivation of the triple aggregate. Acquiring wealth by irreproachable acts, or with wealth of high efficacy which is obtained from recitation of the Vedas, or living upon such means as are utilised by the regenerate *Rishis*,† or with the produce of mountains and mines, or with

---

* A pupil should never *solicit* his preceptor for instruction. He should attend only when the preceptor calls him. To this day, the rule is rigidly observed in all *Toles* throughout India. It should be added to the credit of those engaged in teaching that they very seldom neglect their pupils. The story is authentic of the grandfather of the great Bāneswar Vidyālankār of Nuddea, himself as great a professor as Bāneswar, of continuing to teach his pupils in the outer apartments even after receiving intelligence of his son's death within the inner apartments of the family dwelling. The fact is, he was utterly obsorbed in his work, that when his good lady, moved by his apparent heartlessness, came out to tax him he answered her, in thorough absence of mind, saying,—Well, do not be disturbed. If I do not weep for my son, I will do so for that grand child in your arms.—The pupils at last recalled him to the realities of the hour.—T.

† *I. e.*, by picking up fallen grains from the field after the crop has been cut away and removed by the owner.—T.

the wealth represented by the offerings made in sacrifices and on the termination of vows and other observances, and those made unto deities, the house-holder should lead this mode of life. That mode of life is regarded as the root of all the others. They who are residents in the abodes of preceptors, they who lead lives of mendicancy, and others who live in the observance of vows and restraints to which they are pledged, derive from this mode the means they live upon, the offerings they make unto the *Pitris* and the deities, and, in short, their entire support.[10] The third mode of life is called the Forest-life. For those that lead it, there is no storing of wealth and articles.* Generally, these pious and good men, subsisting upon good food, and engaged in studying the Vedas, roam over the Earth for sojourning to *tirthas* and visiting diverse realms. Standing up, advancing forward, sweet speeches uttered in sincerity, gifts according to the measure of the giver's competence, offer of seats and beds of the best kind, and presents of excellent food, are some of the means for showing them regard.[11] On this subject there is a verse: If a guest turns away from a house with expectations unfulfilled, he is supposed to take away the merits of the householder and leave the latter all his misdeeds.[12] Then again in the domestic mode of life the deities are gratified by sacrifices and other religious rites; the *Pitris* by the performance of obsequial rites; the *Rishis* by cultivation of (Vedic) knowledge, by listening to the instructions of preceptors, and by committing to memory the scriptures; and lastly the Creator by begetting children.†[13] On this subject there are two verses: One in the observance of this mode of life should speak unto all creatures words breathing affection and agreeable to the ears. To give pain, to inflict mortifications,

---

* *Upashkāra* means renunciation.—T.

† It is generally said that by procreating offspring, one gratifies the *Pitris* or pays off the debt one owes to one's deceased ancestors. Here Bhrigu says that by that act one gratifies the Creator. The idea is the same that forms the root of the command laid on the Jews,—Go and multiply!—T.

and harsh words, are all censurable.[14] Insult, arrogance, and deceit, also should be avoided. Abstention from injury, truth, and absence of wrath, produce the merit of penances in all the (four) modes of life.[15] In the domestic mode of life these are allowed, *viz.*, the use and enjoyment of floral garlands, ornaments, robes, perfumed oils and unguents; enjoyment of pleasures derived from dancing and music both vocal and instrumental and all sights and scenes that are agreeable to the sight; the enjoyment of various kinds of viands and drinks belonging to the principal orders of edibles, *viz.*, those that are swallowed, those that are lapped, those that are quaffed, and those that are sucked; and the enjoyment of pleasures derivable from sports and every kind of amusement and the gratification of desires.[16] That man who in the observance of this mode of life seeks the acquisition of the triple aggregate (*viz.*, Religion, Wealth, and Pleasure) with that of the great end of the three attributes of Goodness and Passion and Darkness,* enjoys great happiness here and at last attains to the end that is reserved for persons that are virtuous and good.†[17] Even that house-holder who observes the duties of his mode of life by following the practice of picking up fallen grains of corn from the cracks of fields and who abandons sensual pleasure and attachment to action, does not find it difficult to obtain heaven.—' "[18]

Section CLXCII.

" 'Bhrigu said,—Forest recluses seeking the acquisition of virtue sojourn to sacred waters and rivers and springs, and undergo penances in lone and secluded woods abounding with deer and buffaloes and boars and tigers and wild elephants. They forsake all kinds of robes and food and enjoyments for which people living in society have a taste. They subsist abstemiously upon wild herbs and fruits and roots and leaves

---

* The end of these attributes is *Moksha* or Emancipation.—T.

† *Cishta* is explained by Nilakantha as one who has been properly instructed by wise preceptors.—T.

of diverse kinds. The bare ground is their seat. They lie down on the bare earth or rocks or pebbles or gravel or sand or ashes. They cover their limbs with grass and animal skins and barks of trees. They never shave their heads and beards or pare their nails. They perform their ablutions at regular intervals. They pour libations on the ground, as also on the sacred fire at the proper time without fail. They never enjoy any rest till completion of their daily gathering of the sacred fuel (for their *homa* fires) and sacred grass and flowers (for sacrifice and worship) and till they have swept and rubbed clean (their sacrificial altars). They bear without the least regard cold and heat and rain and wind, and, therefore, the skin of their bodies is cracked all over; and in consequence of observing and laying down for themselves various kinds of rites and vows and acts, their flesh and blood and skin and bones become emaciated.* Endued with great patience and fortitude, they live, always practising the quality of Goodness.[1] That person who, with restrained soul, observes such a course of duties originally ordained by regenerate *Rishis*, burns all his sins like fire and obtains regions of felicity difficult of attainment.[2]

"'I shall now describe the conduct of those called *Parivrājakas*. That is as follows: freeing themselves from attachment to the sacred fire, wealth, spouse and children, and robes, seats, beds, and such other objects of enjoyment, and breaking the bonds of affection, they roam about, regarding with an equal eye a clump of earth or rock and gold. They never set their hearts on the acquisition or enjoyment of the triple aggregate. They cast an equal eye on foes and friends and neutrals or strangers. They never injure, in thought, word, or deed, immobile things or creatures that are viviparous, or oviparous or born of filth, or called vegetables. They have no homes. They roam over hills and mountains, upon shores of rivers or seas, under shades of

---

* *Niyama* is explained by the commentator as a rite; *upayoga* as a vow about food; *charyyā* as an act like sojourning to sacred waters; *vihita* is *vidhāna*.—T.

trees, and among temples of deities. They may go to towns or villages for residence. In a town, however, they should not live for more than five nights, while in a village their residence should never exceed one night. Entering a town or a village, they should, for the support of life, repair to the abodes of only Brāhmanas of liberal deeds.* They should never ask for any alms but accept what is thrown into the (wooden) bowls they carry. They should free themselves from lust, wrath, pride, cupidity, delusion, miserliness, deceit, slander, vanity, and injury to living creatures.[3] On this subject there are some verses: that person who, observing the vow of taciturnity, roveth without giving any creature cause of fear, is never inspired with any fear himself by any creature.[4] That learned person who performs the *Agnihotra* (not by kindling an external fire but) with the aid of the fire that is in his own body,—indeed, who poureth libations into his own mouth and upon the fire that exists in his own body,—succeeds in attaining to numerous regions of felicity in consequence of that fire being fed with such libations obtained by a life of eleemosynation.[5] That person of regenerate birth who observes in the aforesaid way this mode of life having Emancipation for its end, with a pure heart and with an understanding freed from resolution, attains to *Brahma* after the manner of a tranquil ray of light that is not fed by any blazing fuel.—[6]

"'Bharadwāja said,—Beyond this region (that we inhabit) there is a region that we have heard but never seen. I desire to know all about it. It behoveth thee to describe it to me!—[7]

"'Bhrigu said,—Towards the north, on the other side of Himavat, which is sacred and possessed of every merit, there is a region that is sacred, blessed, and highly desirable. That

---

* The Hindus had no poor laws. The injunctions of their scriptures have always sufficed to maintain their poor, particularly their religious mendicants. The mendicants themselves are restrained from disturbing the house-holders often. None again save the well-to-do were to be visited by the mendicants, so that men of scanty means might not be compelled to support the recluses.—T.

is called the other world.*[3] The men that inhabit that region are righteous in act, pious, of pure hearts, freed from cupidity and errors of judgment, and not subject to afflictions of any kind.[9] That region is, indeed, equal to heaven, possessed as it is of such excellent attributes. Death comes there at the proper season. Diseases never touch the inhabitants.†[10] Nobody cherishes any desire for the wives of other people. Every one is devoted to his own wife. These people do not afflict or kill one another, or covet one another's things. There no sin occurs, no doubt arises.‡[11] There the fruits of all (religious) acts are visible. There some enjoy seats and drinks and viands of the best kind, and live within palaces and mansions.[12] There some, adorned with ornaments of gold, surround themselves with every article of enjoyment. There are, again, some that eat very abstemiously, for only keeping body and soul together.[13] There some, with great toil, seek to hold the life-breaths.$ Here, (in this region that is inhabited by us), some men are devoted to righteousness and some to deceit. Some are happy and some miserable; some are poor and some rich.[14] Here toil, and fear, and delusion, and painful hunger make their appearance. Here cupidity for wealth is also seen, a passion that stupifies even those that are learned amongst men.[15] Here diverse opinions prevail, broached by those that do deeds which are righteous or

---

* The words used by Bharadwāja in the question are capable of being construed as an enquiry after the next world. Bhrigu also, in his answer, uses the word *Paro-lokah*. The reference to Himavat, therefore, is explained by the commentator as metaphorical. The whole answer of Bhrigu, however, leaves little room for doubt that the sage speaks of a region on Earth and not in the invisible world after death.—T.

† Nilakantha would read *amritya* for *mritya*. It is a forced correction for keeping up the metaphorical sense.—T.

‡ All knowledge there is certain.—T.

$ *I. e.* to practise *yoga*. The Bengal reading is *dhāranām*. The commentator goes on explaining all the verses as metaphorical. Considerable ingenuity is displayed by him, and he even cites the *Crutis* in support.—T.

sinful. That man possessed of wisdom who knows all those opinions which may be divided into two kinds, is never stained by sin.[16] Deceit with fraud, theft, slander, malice, oppression, injury, treachery, and untruth,[17] are vices that detract from the merit of his penances who practises them. He, on the other hand, possessed of learning, who avoids them, finds the merit of his penances increased.[18] Here there is much reflection about acts that are righteous and those that are unrighteous. This region that we inhabit is the field of action. Having done good and evil here, one obtains good for his good acts and evil for acts that are evil.*[19] Here the very Creator in days of yore, and all the gods with the *Rishis*, having performed proper penances, became cleansed and attained to *Brahma*.†[20] The northern portion of the Earth is highly auspicious and sacred. Those belonging to this region (that we inhabit) that are doers of righteous deeds or that show regard for *yoga*, become born in that region. Others (that are of a different disposition) take their births in the intermediate species. Some again, when their allotted periods run out, become lost on Earth.‡[21-22] Employed in feeding upon one another and stained by cupidity and delusion, these men return to this very region without being able to go (after death) to that northern region.[23] Those men of wisdom who with vows and observant of

---

* This at least is a verse that evidently refers to the other or the next world, and, therefore, lends color to the supposition that through out the whole passage, it is the next world and no fictitious region north of the Himālayas that is described. Some western scholars, think that a verbal translation is all that is neccessary. Such passages, however, are incapable of being so rendered. The translator must make his choice of either taking the verses in a plain or a metaphorical sense. If he inclines towards the latter, he cannot possibly give a verbal version. The genius of the two tongues are quite different.—T.

† Pushkara in Rajputanah is supposed to be the spot where Brahman underwent his penances.—T.

‡ The Burdwan translator makes a mess of this verse. 21 runs into 22 as explained by the commentator. K. P. Sing avoids the blunder, although in rendering the last line of 22 he becomes rather inaccurate.-T.

Brahmacharyya listen with veneration to the instructions of preceptors, succeed in knowing the ends reserved for all classes of men.[24] I have now told thee in brief the course of duties ordained by Brahman. He, indeed, is said to be possessed of intelligence who knows what is righteousness and what its reverse in this world !—'[25]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus, O king, did Bhrigu speak unto Bharadwāja of great energy. Of soul highly virtuous, the latter became filled with wonder and worshipped the great sage with veneration.[26] Thus, O monarch, the origin of the universe has been narrated to thee in detail. What, O thou of great wisdom, dost thou wish to hear after this ?' "[27]

Section CLXCIII.

"Yudhisthira said,—'I think, O grandsire, that thou art acquainted with everything. O thou that are conversant with duties, I desire to hear thee discourse to me, O sinless one, of the ordinances about conduct !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'They that are of bad conduct, of bad acts, of wicked understanding, and exceeding rashness, are called evil or wicked men. They, however, that are called good are distinguished by purity of conduct and practices.[2] They are good men who never answer calls of nature on the high roads, in cowpens, or in fields overgrown with paddy.[3] Having finished the necessary acts one should perform his ablutions in river-water and gratify the deities with oblations of water. This is said to be the duty of all men.[4] Surya should be always worshipped. One should not sleep after sunrise. Morning and evening the prayers (ordained in the scriptures) should be said, sitting with face turned towards the East and towards the West respectively.[5] Washing the five limbs,* one should eat silently with face turned towards the East. One should never disparage the food which one is to eat. One should eat food that is good to the taste.[6]

---

* The five limbs which should be washed before eating are the two feet, the two hands, and the face.—T.

After eating one should wash one's hands and rise.* One should never go to sleep at night with wet feet. The celestial *Rishi* Nārada said that these are indications of good conduct.[7] One should every day circumambulate a sacred spot, a bull, a sacred image, a cowpen, a place where four roads meet, a pious Brāhmana, and a sacred tree.[8] One should not make distinctions between one's guests and attendants and kinsmen in matters of food. Equality (in this respect) with servants is applauded.[9] Eating (twice a day) morning and evening is an ordinance of the gods. It is not laid down that one should eat (once more) at any intermediate period. He who eats according to this rule acquires the merit of a fast.†[10] At the hours ordained for *Homa* one should pour libations on the sacred fire. Without seeking the companionship of other people's wives, the man of wisdom who seeks his own wife in her season acquires the merit of *Brahmacharyya*.[11] The remnants of a Brāhmana's dish are like ambrosia. They are like the lacteal sustentation that is yeilded by the mother's breast. People highly prize those remnants. The good, by eating them, attain to Brahma.[12] He who pounds turf to clay (for making sacrificial altars), or he who cuts grass (for making sacrificial fuel), or he who uses his nails only (and not weapons of any kind) for eating (sanctified meat), or he who always subsists on the remnants of Brāhmanas' dishes, or he who acts, induced by desire for reward, has not to live long in the world.‡[13] One who has abstained from meat (under any vow) should not take meat

---

* This may be a general direction for washing one's hand after eating; or, it may refer to the final *Gandusha*, *i. e.*, the act of taking a little water in the right hand, raising it to the lips, and throwing it down, repeating a short formula.—T.

† The Burdwan translator has misunderstood this verse completely.

‡ It is difficult to understand what this verse means. Nilakantha proposes two different kinds of interpretation. What then is *Sankusuka* or *Canku-cuka*? The above version is offered tentatively. The commentator imagines that the true sense of the verse is that it declares such men to be unable to attain to *Mahadāyu* which is *Brahma* and not long life.—T.

even if it be sanctified with *mantras* from the *Yajurveda.* One should also avoid the flesh about the vertebral column (of any animal) and the flesh of animals not slain in sacrifices.*[14] Whether at one's own place or in a strange land, one should never cause one's guest to fast. Having obtained alms and other fruits of optional acts, one should offer them to one's seniors.[15] One should offer seats to one's seniors and salute them with respect. By worshipping one's seniors, one obtains long life, fame, and prosperity.[16] One should never behold the Sun at the moment of rising, nor should one turn one's gaze towards a naked woman that is another man's spouse. Congress with one's wife (in her season) is not sinful but it is an act that should always be done in privacy.[17] The heart of all sacred spots and shrines is the Preceptor. The heart of all pure and cleansing things is Fire. All acts done by a good and pious person are good and laudable, including even the touching of the hair of a cow's tail.[18] Every time one meets with another, one should make polite enquiries. The saluting of Brāhmanas every morning and evening is ordained.[19] In temples of gods, amid cows, in performing the rites of religion laid down for Brāhmanas, in reading the Vedas, and in eating, the right hand should be raised.†[20] The worship of Brāhmanas, morning and evening, according to due rites, produces great merit. In consequence of such worship abundant become the stock-in-trade of the marchant, and the produce of the agriculturist. Great also becomes the yield of all kinds of corn and copious becomes the supply of all articles that the senses can enjoy.[21] When giving edibles to another (seated at his dish), one should say—*Is it sufficient?*—When presenting drink, one should ask—*Will it gratify?*—and when giving sweetened milk and rice, or sugared

---

* *Prishtāmāngsa* is explained by the commentator as 'the meat forming the remnant of a *Crāddha* offering.' I do not see the necessity of discarding the obvious meaning.—T.

† In the sense of being moved or used. The commentator adds that the sacred thread also should be wound round the thumb, as the *Grihya-sutras* declare.—T.

gruel of barley, or milk with sesame or pease, one should ask—*Has it fallen* ?*[22]—After shaving, after spitting, after bathing, and after eating, people should worship Brāhmanas with reverence. Such worship is sure to bestow longevity on sickly men.[23] One should not pass urine with face turned towards the Sun, nor should one see one's own excreta. One should not lie on the same bed with a woman nor eat with her.[24] In addressing seniors one should never apply the pronoun *you* to them, or take their names. Thouing or the taking of names is not censurable in addressing inferiors or equals in age.†[25] The hearts of sinful men betray the sins committed by them. Those sinful men that conceal their conscious sins from good men meet with destruction.[26] Only ignorant fools seek to conceal the sins which they commit consciously. It is true that human beings do not see those sins, but the gods see them.[27] A sin concealed by another sin leads to fresh sins. An act of merit, again, if concealed by an act of merit, increases the merit. The acts of a virtuous man always follow in the wake of Virtue.[28] A man destitute of understanding never thinks of the sins committed by him. Those sins, however, overtake the doer that has fallen away from the scriptures. As Rāhu comes to Chandra (at his proper time), those sinful acts come to the foolish man.‡[29] The objects that are stored with expectation are scarcely enjoyed. Such storing is never applauded by the wise, for death waits for no one (but snatches his prey whether the latter be ready or unready).[30] The wise have said that the righteousness of all creatures is

---

* In every instance, the person who receives should say—*All-sufficient, Gratify to the fill,* and *Has fallen copiously,* or words to that effect. *Krisara* or *Kricara* is food made of rice and pease, or rice and sesame; probably what is now called *Khichree.*—T.

† The polite form of address is *Bhavān.* It is in the third person singular. The second person is avoided, being too direct.—T.

‡ It is not plain in what way the sinful acts come to the sinner. The Hindu idea, of course, is that the consequences of those deeds visit the doer without fail. This verse, however, seems to say that the recollection of those sins forces itself upon the sinner and makes him miserable in spite of himself.—T.

an attribute of the mind. For this reason, one should, in one's mind, do good to all.*[31] One should practise virtue singly. In the practise of virtue one has no need for the help of others. If one obtains only the ordinances of the scriptures, what can an associate do?†[32] Righteousness is the origin of mankind. Righteousness is the ambrosia of the gods. After death, men enjoy, through Righteousness, eternal happiness.' "[33]

SECTION CLCXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, what and of what nature is that which is called by the name of *Adhyātma* and which is laid down for every person.‡[1] O thou that are acquainted with *Brahma*, whence has this universe, consisting of mobile and immobile things, been created? When universal destruction sets in, to whom does it go? It behoveth thee to discourse to me upon this topic!'$[2]

"Bhishma said,—'This *Adhyātma*, O son of Prithā, that thou askest me about, I will presently discourse upon. It is, O sire, highly agreeable and productive of great felicity.[3] Great teachers have (before this) shown the truths about

---

* The Hindu moralist, in this verse, declares the same high morality that Christ himself preached. Merit or sin, according to him, does not depend on the overt act alone. Both depend on the mind. Hence the injunction against even mentally harming others.—T.

† The sense seems to be that if one succeeds in ascertaining the ordinances about virtue or piety, but if the mind be sinful, no associate can be of any help. The mind alone is the cause of virtue and piety.—T.

‡ *Adhyātma* is anything that depends on the mind. Here it is, as explained by the commentator, used for *yoga-dharma* as depending upon or as an attribute of the mind. Generally speaking, all speculations on the character of the mind and its relations with external objects are included in the word *Adhyātma*.—T.

$ After Bhrigu's discourse to Bharadwāja this question may seem to be a repetition. The commentator explains that it arises from the declaration of Bhishma that Righteousness is a property of the mind, and is, besides, the root of everything. (V. 31, sec. 193, *ante*). Hence the enquiry about *Adhyātma* as also about the origin of all things.—T.

the Creation and the Destruction (of the universe). Knowing those truths, a person may obtain, even in this world, great satisfaction and felicity. Such knowledge may lead also to the acquisition of great fruits, and it is highly beneficial to all creatures.[4] Earth, air, space, water, and light numbered as the fifth, are regarded as Great Creatures. These constitute both the origin and the destruction of all created objects.[5] Unto Him from whom these great primal elements take their origin, they return repeatedly, severing themselves from all creatures (into whose compositions they enter), even like the waves of the ocean (subsiding into that from which they seem to take their rise).[6] As the tortoise stretches its limbs and withdraws them again, even so the Supreme Soul creates all objects and again withdraws them into Himself.[7] The Creator places the five primal elements in all created objects in different proportions. The living creature, however, does not see it (through ignorance).[8] Sound, the organs of hearing, and all holes,—these three,—spring from Space as their progenitor. Touch, action, and skin are the triple attributes of the Wind.[9] Form, eye, and digestion are the triple attributes of Fire or Energy. Taste, all liquid secretions, and the tongue represent the three attributes of Water.[10] Scents, the nose, and the body are the triple properties of Earth. The great (primal) elements are five. The mind is the sixth.[11] The senses and the mind, O Bhārata, are (the sources of all) the perceptions of a living creature.* The seventh is called the understanding; and the eigth is the Soul.†[12] The senses are for perceiving; the

---

* The word rendered 'perceptions' is *Vijnānāni*. 'Cognitions' would, perhaps, be better.—T.

† Generally, in Hindu philosophy, particularly of the Vedānta school, a distinction is conceived between the mind, the understanding, and the soul. The mind is the seat or source of all feelings and emotions as also all our perceptions, or those which are called cognitions in the Kantian school, including Comparison which (in the Kantian school) is called the Vernuft or Reason. This last is called the Understanding or *buddhi*. The soul is regarded as something distinct from both the body and the mind. It is the Being to whom the body and the mind be-

mind (unable to deal with those perceptions) produces uncertainty. The understanding reduces all knowledge to certainty. The Soul exists as a witness (without acting).[13] All that is above the two feet, all that is behind, and all that is above, are seen by the Soul. Know that the Soul pervades the entire being without any space being left unoccupied.[14] All men should know the senses, the mind, and the understanding fully. The three states or qualities called Darkness, Passion, and Goodness, exist, dependent on the senses, the mind, and the understanding.*[15] Man, by apprehending with the aid of his intelligence, the manner in which creatures come and leave the world, is sure to gradually attain to steadfast tranquillity.[16] The three qualities (already mentioned, *viz.*, Darkness, Passion, and Goodness), lead the understanding (to worldly attachments). In this respect, the Understanding (or Intelligence) is identical with the Senses and the Mind. The Understanding, therefore, is identical with the six (the five senses and the mind), and also with the objects comprehended by it. When, however, the Understanding is destroyed, the three qualities (of Darkness, Passion, and Goodness) are incapable of leading to action.†[17] This universe of immobile and mobile things consists of that Intelligence. It is from that Intelligence that everything arises and it is into it that everything subsides. For

---

long. It is represented as inactive, and as the all-seeing witness within the physical frame. It is a portion of the Supreme Soul.—T.

* Goodness includes all the higher moral qualities of man. Passion means love, affection, and other emotions that appertain to worldly objects. Darkness means anger, lust, and such other mischievous propensities.—T.

† I follow Nilakantha in his grammatical exposition of this verse. The meaning, however, is scarcely clear. The identity of the Understanding or intelligence with the senses and the mind may be allowed so far as the action of the three qualities in leading all of them to worldly attachments is concerned. But what is meant by the identity of the Understanding with all the objects it comprehends ? Does Bhishma preach Idealism here ? If nothing exists except as it exists in the Understanding, then, of course, with the extinction of the Understanding, all things would come to an end.—T.

this reason the scriptures indicate that everything is a manifestation of Intelligence.[18] That by which one hears is the ear. That by which one smells is called the organ of scent, and that by which one distinguishes the tastes is called the tongue.[19] By the coat that covers the body one acquires perception of touch. That which is called the Intelligence undergoes modifications.* When the Intelligence desires anything it comes to be called Mind.[20] The foundations upon which the Intelligence rests are five in number, each serving a different purpose. They are called the senses. The invisible principle, *viz.*, Intelligence, rests on them.[21] The Intelligence that exists in a living creature concerns itself with the three states (called Darkness, Passion, and Goodness). Sometimes it obtains joy and sometimes misery.[22] Sometimes it becomes divested of both joy and misery. Even thus the Intelligence exists in the minds of all men.[23] Sometimes the Intelligence, which is made up of the triple states (already mentioned, transcends those three states (by *yoga*), like the lord of rivers, *viz.*, the Ocean, with his surges, transgressing his high continents.†[24] That Intelligence which transcends the three qualities exist in the mind in a pure state of (unmodified) existence alone. The quality of Darkness, however, that impels to action, soon pursues it.[25] At that time the Intelligence sets all the senses to action. The properties of the three are even thus: joy dwells in Goodness; sorrow in Passion; delusion in Darkness.[26] All the states that exist (of the mind) are included in the three (that have

---

* Brown and other followers of Reid, whether they understood Reid or not, regarded all the perceptions as only particular modifications of the mind. They denied the objective existence of the world.—T.

† The commentator explains this verse thus, although as regards the second line he stretches it a little. If Nilakantha be right, K. P. Singha must be wrong. Generally, however, it is the known incapacity of the ocean to transgress its continents that supplies poets with illustrations. Here, however, possibly, the rarity of the phenomenon, *viz.*, the ocean's transgressing its continents, is used to illustrate the rare fact of the Intelligence, succeeding by *yoga* power, in transcending the attributes of *Rajas*, *Tamas*, and *Satwa*.—T.

been named). I have now, O Bhārata, told thee about the course of the Understanding.[27] An intelligent man should subdue all his senses. The three qualities of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness, are always attached to living creatures.[28] Three kinds of intelligence also are noticeable in every creature, *viz.*, that which depends upon Goodness, that upon Passion, and that upon Darkness, O Bhārata.[29] The quality of Goodness brings happiness; the quality of Passion produces sorrow; and if these two combine with the quality of Darkness, then neither happiness nor sorrow is produced (but, instead, only delusion or error).[30] Every state of happiness that appears in the body or the mind is said to be due to the quality of Goodness.[31] A state of sorrow, disagreeable to oneself, that comes, is due to nothing but the quality of Passion. One should never think of it with fear.*[32] That state, again, which is allied with delusion and error, and in consequence of which one knows not what to do, which is unascertainable and unknown, should be regarded as belonging to the quality of Darkness.†[33] Gladness, satisfaction, delight, happiness, tranquillity of heart, these are the properties of the state of Goodness. Man sometimes obtains a measure of them.[34] Discontent, heart-burning, grief, cupidity, vindictiveness, are all indications of the state of Passion. They are seen with or without adequate causes for producing them.[35] Disgrace, delusion, error, sleep and stupifaction, that overtake one through excess of ill-luck, are the various properties of the state of Darkness.‡[36] That person whose mind is far-reaching, capable of extending in all directions, mistrustful in respect of winning the objects it desires, and well-restrained, is happy both here and hereafter.$[37] Mark the distinction between those two subtile

---

* On the other hand, directing one's thoughts boldly to it, one should ascertain its cause and dispel that cause, which, as stated here, is Passion.—T.

† The first two words of the second line are those of verse 5 of Sec. I, Manu.—T.

‡ *Kathanchit* is explained by Nilakantha as 'due to great ill-luck.'—T.

$ I do not follow Nilakantha in rendering this verse.—T.

things, *viz.*, Intelligence and the Soul. One of these (*viz.*, Intelligence), puts forth the qualities. The other (*viz.*, the Soul), does nothing of the kind.[38] A gnat and a fig may be seen to be united with each other. Though united, each however is distinct from the other.[39] Similarly, Intelligence and Soul, though distinguished from each other, by their respective natures, yet they may always be seen to exist in a state of union. A fish and water exist in a state of union. Each, however, is different from the other. The same is the case with Intelligence and Soul.[40] The qualities do not know the Soul, but the Soul knows them all. The Soul is the spectator of the qualities and regards them all as proceeding from itself.[41] The Soul, acting through the senses, the mind, and the understanding numbering as the seventh, all of which are inactive and have no self-consciousness, discovers the objects (amid which it exists) like a (covered) lamp showing all objects around it by shedding its rays through an apperture in the covering.[42] The understanding or Intelligence creates all the qualities. The Soul only beholds them (as a witness). Even such is certainly the connection between the Intelligence and the Soul.*[43] There is no refuge on which either Intelligence or Soul depends. The Understanding creates the mind, but never the qualities.[44] When the Soul, by means of the mind, sufficiently restrains the rays that emanate from the senses, it is then that it

---

* The Soul is said to be only a witness or spectator and not an actor. The *Rishis* understood by the soul the being to whom the mind, the senses, &c., all belong. Could the idea of the inactive and unsinning Soul have arisen from observation of the moral principle or Conscience which discriminates between right and wrong, and acts, therefore, as an impartial judge, or watches everything like an uninterested spectator? European moralists generally attribute two other functions to the Conscience, *viz.*, impelling us to do the right and avoid the wrong, and approving when right is done and wrong avoided. But these functions may easily be attributed to some other principle. At any rate, when the question is one of nomenclature only, the last two functions may be taken away and the word Soul applied to indicate the Conscience as the faculty of discrimination only.—T.

becomes manifest (to the Understanding) like a lamp burning within a vessel that covers it.[45] That person who renounces all ordinary acts, practises penances, devotes himself to study the Soul, taking a delight therein, and regards himself as the Soul of all creatures, acquires a high end.[46] As an acquatic fowl, while moving over the waters, is never drenched in that element, even thus does a person of wisdom move (in the world) among creatures.[47] By the aid of one's intelligence one should act in the world after this fashion, without grief, without joy, with an equal eye for all, and destitute of malice and envy.[48] One living in this way succeeds in creating the qualities (instead of being oneself affected by them), like a spider creating threads.* The qualities should, indeed, be regarded as the threads of the spider.[49] Some say that the qualities in respect of such men are not lost. Some say that they are all lost. Those who say that they are not lost rely upon the revealed scriptures (*viz.*, the *Çrutis*), which do not contain any declaration to the contrary. They, on the other hand, who say that the qualities are all lost rely on the *Smritis*. Reflecting upon both these opinions, one should judge oneself as to which of them is right.[50-51] One should thus get over this hard and knotty question which is capable of disturbing the understanding by doubt, and thereby win happiness. When that doubt will be removed, one will no longer have to indulge in sorrow of any kind.[52] Men of filthy hearts may by knowledge obtain success like persons plunging in a well-filled stream purifying themselves of all filth.[53] One who has to cross a large river does not feel happy at only seeing the other shore. If the case were otherwise, (*i. e.*, if by only beholding the other shore one could reach it by a boat), then might one become happy. The matter is otherwise with one acquainted with Truth. The mere knowledge of Truth

* The qualities here referred to are those of *Satwa* (goodness), *Rajas* (passion), and *Tamas* (darkness). What is meant by this verse is that such a person transcends the qualities instead of the qualities transcending him and his acts.—T.

will bring him happiness. As soon as such knowledge begins to bear fruits, the person may be regarded to have reached the other shore. They who thus know the Soul as freed from all wordly objects and is but the One, are said to obtain high and excellent knowledge.*[54] A person by knowing the origin and the end of all creatures, which is even such, and by reflecting upon the matter, gradually obtains infinite happiness.[55] He that has understood the triple aggregate (*viz.*, that it is liable to destruction instead of being eternal), and reflecting upon it, casts it away, succeeds by *yoga* to behold the Truth and obtain perfect felicity.[56] The Soul is incapable of being seen unless the senses, which are employed on diverse objects and are difficult of being controlled, be all duly restrained.[57] He that knows this is really wise. What other indication is there of a wise man? Acquiring this knowledge, men possessed of intelligence regard themselves to be crowned with success.[58] That which inspires the Ignorant with fear can never inspire fear in persons of Knowledge. There is no higher end for anybody (than Emancipation). In consequence, however, of the excess or otherwise of good qualities, the sages say that differences are observable in respect of the degree of Emancipation.[59] A person by acting without expectation of fruits succeeds (by those acts) in annihilating his sinful acts of a former period. To one possessed of wisdom, the acts of a former period (thus washed off) and those of this life also (which are accomplished without expectation of fruit), do not become productive of any disagreeable consequence (such as immurement in hell). But how can acts, if he continues to be engaged in accomplishing acts, bring about what is agreeable (*viz.*, Emancipation)?†[60]

---

* Nilakantha takes the third line as elliptical and is for supplying *te labhante.*—T.

† I follow the commentator in his exposition of this verse. *Anavisandhipurvakam* is explained as *nishkāmam. Ubhayam* is *prāchinamaihikam cha karmam. Apriyam* is equivalent to *vadham.* The substance of *priyam &c.*, is thus given : *Moksham prati tu karmanah kāranatwam duranirastam.*—T.

People censure a person that is afflicted (with lust, envy, and other evil passions). Those vices hurl the person in his next life into diverse kinds of inferior orders.*[61] Mark with close attention the vicious in this world who grieve exceedingly for the loss of their possessions (such as sons and wives, &c.) Behold also those that are gifted with judgment and who never grieve when thrown into similar circumstances! Those that are conversant with both, (*i. e.*, with gradual Emancipation and immediate Emancipation) deserve to be called truly wise.†' "[62]

SECTION CXCV.

"Bhishma said,—'I shall now, O son of Prithā, discourse to thee upon the four kinds of *yoga* medidation. The great *Rishis*, obtaining a knowledge of the same, attain to eternal success even here.[1] Great *Rishis*, gratified with knowledge, with hearts set upon Emancipation, and conversant with *yoga*, act in such a way that their *yoga* meditation may get on properly.[2] These, O son of Prithā, being freed from the faults of the world, never come back (for rebirth). Liberated from liability to rebirth, they live in their original Soul-

---

* Aturam is explained as pierced by lust, wrath, *&c.* *Asuyate* is equivalent to *dhikkaroti.* *Janah* is explained by the commentator as *parikshakah*, but it would be better to take it as standing for people generally. *Tasya* is an instance of the genetive for the accusative. *Tat* refers to *nindyam karma*; *sarvatah* means *sarvāshu yonishu.* *Janayati-Janena dadāti.* The object of the verse is to show that sinful acts produce fear both here and hereafter.—T.

† *Loka* is in the locative case, the final vowel indicating the locative having been dropped for *sandhi.* *Nirāvisham* is an adverb, equivalent to *samyak-abhiniveçam kurvan.* *Tattadeva* means "those and those," *i. e.*, possessions, such as *putradārādikam.* *Kuçalān* is *sārāsaravivekanipunān.* *Ubhayam* is explained as *krama-mukhin* and *sadyomuktim.* Bhishma here points out the superiority of the latter kind of Emancipation over the former; hence, Vedic acts or rites must yeild to that *yoga* which drills the mind and the understanding and enables them to transcend all earthly influences.—T.

state.*[3] Freed from the influence of all pairs of opposites (such as heat and cold, joy and sorrow, &c.), ever existing in their own (original) state, liberated (from attachments), never accepting anything (in gift), they live in places free from the companionship of wives and children, without others with whom disputes may arise, and favorable to perfect tranquillity of heart.[4] There such a person, restraining speech, sits like a piece of wood, crushing all the senses, and with mind undividedly united by the aid of meditation (with the Supreme Soul).[5] He has no perception of sound through the ear; no perception of touch through the skin; no perception of form through the eye; no perception of taste through the tongue.[6] He has no perception also of scents through the organ of smell. Immersed in *yoga*, he would abandon all things, rapt in meditation.[7] Possessed of great energy of mind, he has no desire for anything that excites the five senses. The wise man, withdrawing his five senses into the mind, should then fix the unstable mind with the five senses (into the Intellect).[8] Possessed of patience, the *yogin* should fix his mind which always wanders (among worldly objects), so that his five gates (under the influence of training) may be made stable in respect of things that are themselves unstable. He should, in the firmament of the heart, fix his mind into the path of meditation, making it independent of the body or any other refuge.[9] I have spoken of the path of meditation as the first, since the *yogin* has first to crush his senses and the mind (and direct them to that path).[10] The mind, which constitutes the sixth, when thus restrained, seeks to flash out like the capricious and flighty lightning moving in frolic among the clouds.[11] As a drop of water on a (lotus) leaf is unstable and moves about in all directions, even so becomes the *yogin's* mind when first fixed on the path of meditation.[12] When fixed, for a while the mind stays in that path. When, however, it strays again into the path

* The soul-state is the state of purity. One falls away from it in consequence of worldly attachments. One may recover it by *yoga* which aids one in liberating oneself from those attachments.—T.

of the wind, it becomes as flighty as the wind.[13] The person conversant with the ways of *yoga*-meditation, undiscouraged by this, never regarding the loss of the toil undergone, casting aside idleness and malice, should again direct his mind to meditation.[14] Observing the vow of silence, when one begins to set his mind on *yoga*, then discrimination, knowledge, and power to avoid evil, are gained by him.*[15] Though feeling annoyed in consequence of the flightiness of his mind, he should fix it (in meditation). The *yogin* should never despair, but seek his own good.[16] As a heap of dust or ashes or of burnt cow-dung, when drenched with water, does not seem to be soaked,[17] indeed, as it continues dry if drenched partially, and requires incessant drenching before it becomes thoroughly soaked,[18] even thus should the *yogin* gradually control all his senses. He should gradually withdraw them (from all objects). The man that acts in this way succeeds in controlling them.[19] One, O Bhārata, by oneself directing one's mind and senses to the path of meditation, succeeds in bringing them under perfect control by steadfast *yoga*.[20] The felicity that he feels who has succeeded in controlling his mind and senses is such that its like can never be obtained through Exertion or Destiny.†[21] United with such felicity, he continues to take a pleasure in the act of meditation. Even in this way *yogins* attain to *Nirvāna* which is highly blessed.' "[22]

Section CXCVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast discoursed on the four modes of life and their duties. Thou hast also spoken of

---

* The three words used here are *vichāra*, *viveka*, and *vitarka*. They are technical terms implying different stages of progress in *yoga*. The commentator explains them at length.—T.

† Everything that man has is the product of either exertion or destiny; of exertion, that is, as put forth in overt acts, and destiny as dependent on the acts of a past life or the will of the gods or pure chance. *Yoga* felicity is unattainable through either of these two means.—T.

the duties of kings. Thou hast recited many histories of diverse kinds and connected with diverse topics.[1] I have also heard from thee, O thou of great intelligence, many discourses connected with morality. I have, however, one doubt. It behoveth thee to resolve it![2] I wish, O Bhārata, to hear of the fruits that silent Reciters of sacred *mantras* acquire (by their practice). What are the fruits that have been indicated for such men? What is that region to which they go after death?[3] It behoveth thee also, O sinless one, to tell me all the rules that have been laid down in respect of such silent recitation? When the word Reciter is uttered, what shall I understand by it? Is such a man to be regarded as following the ordinances of *Sānkhya* or *yoga* or *work*?*[4] Or, is such a man to be regarded as observing the ordinances about (mental) sacrifices? How is the path of the Reciters to be called? Thou art, as I think, of universal knowledge. Tell me all this!'—[5]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old history of what transpired between Yama, Time, and a certain Brāhmana.[6] Sages conversant with the means of attaining to Emancipation have spoken of two methods, *viz.*, the *Sānkhya* and the *yoga*. Amongst these, in the former, which is otherwise called the *Vedānta*, Renunciation has been preached with respect to silent recitation. The declarations of the Vedas preach Abstention (from rites), are fraught with tranquillity, and are concerned with *Brahma*.†[7] Indeed, the two paths spoken of by sages bent on achieving what is for their good, viz., *Sānkhya* and *yoga*, are such that they are both con-

---

* Sānkhya is understood by the commentator as implying Vedānta-vichāra.—T.

† This verse is a triplet. The commentator explains that *Vedānta* in the second line means *Sānkhya*. I think this is said because of the agreement between the *Vedānta* and the *Sānkhya* in this respect notwithstanding their difference in other respects. The object of the verse is to say that according to the *Sānkhya*, there is no necessity for silent recitation of *mantras*. Mental meditation, without the utterance of particular words, may lead to *Brahma*.—T.

cerned and again unconcerned (with silent recitations).*[8] The manner in which silent recitation is connected (with each of the two paths) and the cause I shall now explain. In both, as in the case of silent recitation, are needed the subduing of the senses and the fixing of the mind (after withdrawal from external objects);[9] as also Truth, keeping up of the (sacred) fire, residence in solitude, meditation, penance, self-restraint, forgiveness, benevolence, abstemiousness in respect of food,[10] withdrawal from worldly attachments, the absence of talkativeness, and tranquillity. These constitute a Sacrifice in acts (leading to the fruition of desire about heaven or felicity in next life).† Listen now to the course that consists of abstention (from acts).[11] The manner in which the acts of the Reciter observing the vow of *Brahmacharyya* may cease, I will presently declare. Such a person should conduct himself in every way according to what has been (already) said by me.‡[12] Betaking himself to the path of abstention, he should seek to existinguish his dependence on both the External and the Internal.[13] Sitting on *kuça* grass, with *kuça* in hand, and binding his coronal locks with *kuça*, he should surround himself with *kuça* and have *kuça* for robes.[14] Bowing unto all earthly concerns, he should take leave of them and never think of them. Assuming equability by the aid of his mind, he should fix his mind on the mind itself.[15] Reciting the highly beneficial composition (*viz.*, the *Gāyatri*), he meditates with the aid of his intellect on *Brahma* alone. Afterwards he leaves

---

* Both declare, as the commentator explains, that as long as one does not succeed in beholding one's Soul, one may silently recite the *Pranava* or the original word *Om*. When, however, one succeeds in beholding one's Soul, then may one give up such recitation.—T

† There are two paths which one in this world may follow. One is called *Pravirtti dharma* and the other *Nivirtti dharma*. The first is a course of actions; the second of abstention from action. The attributes indicated in 10 and 11 belong to the first course or path. They are, therefore, called *Pravarttaka yajna* or Sacrifice having its origin in *Pravirtti* or action.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, he should first cleanse his heart by observing the virtues above enumerated.—T.

off even that, being then absorbed in concentred contemplation.*[16] In consequence of his dependance on the strength of the *Gāyatri* which he recites, this concentered contemplation will come of itself. By penances he attains to purity of soul, and self-restraint, and cessation of aversion and desire.[17] Freed from attachment and delusion, above the influence of all pairs of opposites (such as heat and cold, joy and sorrow, &c.), he never grieves and never suffers himself to be drawn towards worldly objects. He does not regard himself as the actor nor as the enjoyer or sufferer of the consequences of his acts.[18] He never, through selfishness, fixes his mind on anything. Without being employed in the acquisition of wealth, he abstains also from disregarding or insulting others, but not from work.[19] The work in which he is employed is that of meditation; he is devoted to meditation, and seeks meditation unalterably. By meditation he succeeds in bringing about concentred contemplation, and then gradually leaves off meditation itself.[20] In that state he enjoys the felicity which attaches to the abandonment of all things. Having thoroughly mastered the principle of desire, he casts off his life-breaths and then enters into the *Brahmic* body.[21] Or, if he does not desire to enter into the *Brahmic* body, he at once goes upwards into the region of *Brahma* and has never to undergo rebirth.[22] Having become tranquillity's self, and being freed from all kinds of calamity, such a person, by depending upon his own intelligence, succeeds in attaining to that Soul which is pure and immortal and which is without a stain.' "[23]

SECTION CXCVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast said that as regards Reciters, they obtain this very high end.† I beg to enquire

---

* *Samādhi* is that meditation in which the senses having been all withdrawn into the mind, the mind, as explained previously, is made to dwell on *Brahma* alone.—T.

† The end declared by Bhishma in the previous section is the success of *yoga*, or freedom from decrepitude and death, or death at will,

whether this is their only end or there is any other to which they attain.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen with concentrated attention, O puissant monarch, to the end that silent Reciters attain, and to the diverse kinds of hell into which they sink, O bull among men![2] That Reciter who does not at first conduct himself according to the method that has been laid down, and who connot complete the ritual or course of discipline laid down, has to go to hell.*[3] That Reciter who goes on without faith, who is not contented with his work, and who takes no pleasure in it, goes to hell, without doubt.[4] They who follow the ritual with pride in their hearts, all go to hell. That Reciter who insults and disregards others has to go to hell.[5] That man who betakes himself to silent recitation under the influence of stupifaction and from desire of fruit, obtains all those things upon which his heart becomes set.†[6] That Reciter whose heart becomes set upon the attributes that go by the name of divinity, has to incur hell and never becomes freed from it.‡[7] That Reciter who betakes himself to recitation under the influence of attachments (to Earthly objects such as wealth, wives, &c.), obtain those objects upon which their hearts are set.[8] That Reciter of wicked understanding and uncleansed soul who sets himself to his work with an unstable mind, obtains an unstable end or goes into hell.[9] That Reciter who is not endued with wisdom and

---

or absorption into *Brahma*, or independent existence in a beatific condition.—T.

* It should be noted that 'hell,' as here used, means the opposite of Emancipation. A Reciter may attain to the joys of heaven, but compared to Emancipation, they are hell, there being the obligation of re-birth attached to them.—T.

† Even this is a kind of hell, for there is re-birth attached to it.—T.

‡ *Aiçwaryya* or the attributes of godhead are certain extraordinary powers attained by *yogins* and Reciters. They are the power to become minute or huge in shape, or go whithersoever at will, &c. These are likened to hell, because of the obligation of re-birth that attaches to them. Nothing less than Emancipation or the absorption into the Supreme Soul is the end that should be striven for.—T.

who is foolish, becomes stupified or deluded; and in consequence of such delusion has to go to hell where he is obliged to indulge in regrets.*[10] If a person of even firm heart, resolving to complete the discipline, betakes to recitation, but fails to attain to completion in consequence of his having freed himself from attachments by a violent stretch without genuine conviction of their inutility or harmful character, he also has to go to hell.'†[11]

"Yudhishthira said,—When the Reciter attains to the essence of that which exists in its own nature (without being anything like created or born objects), which is Supreme, which is indescribable and inconceivable, and which dwells in the syllable *om* forming the subject of both recitation and meditation, (indeed, when Reciters attain to a state of *Brahma*), why is it that they have again to take birth in embodied forms?'[12]

"Bhishma said,—'In consequence of the absence of true knowledge and wisdom, Reciters obtain diverse descriptions of hell. The discipline followed by Reciters is certainly very superior. These, however, that I have spoken of are the faults that appertain to it.' "[13]

SECTION CXCVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me what description of hell is obtained by a Reciter? I feel, O king, a curiosity to know this. It behoveth thee to discourse to me on the subject!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Thou hast sprung from a portion of the god of righteousness. Thou art by nature observant of righteousness. Listen, O sinless one, with undivided attention, to these words resting on righteousness as their basis.[2] Those regions that are owned by the high-souled gods, that

---

* In the Bengal texts there is a vicious line beginning with *Prajnâ* &c. The Bombay text omits it, making both 10 and 11 couplets, instead of taking 11 as a triplet.—T.

† *Na samyuktah* is explained by the commentator as *aviraktopi hathena tyaktabhogah.*—T.

are of diverse aspects and colors, of diverse descriptions and productive of diverse fruits,[3] and that are of great excellence, those cars again that move at the will of the riders, those beautiful mansions and hells, those various pleasure-gardens embellished with golden lotuses,[4] those regions that belong to the four Regents and Cukra and Vrihaspati and the Maruts and Viçwedevas and Sāddhyas and the Açwins,[5] and the Rudras and the Ādityas and the Vasus, and other denizens of heaven, are, O sire, spoken of as hells, when compared with the region of the Supreme Soul.[6] The region last spoken of is without any fear (of change for the worse), increate (and therefore, in its true nature), without pain of any kind (such as ignorance and delusion), without any agreeable or disagreeable element, beyond the reach of the three attributes (of *Satwa*, *Rajas*, and *Tamas*), freed from the eight incidents (*viz.*, the five primal elements, the senses, the mind, and the intellect), without the three (distinctions between the knower, the known, and act of knowing);[7] freed also from the four attributes (seeing, hearing, thinking, and knowing),* without the fourfold causes (of knowledge), without joy and delight and sorrow and disease.[8] Time (in his forms of past, present, and future) arises there for use. Time is not the ruler there. That supreme region is the ruler of Time as also of Heaven.[9] That Reciter who becomes identified with his Soul (by withdrawing everything into it) goes thither. He has, after this, never to feel any sorrow. This region is called Supreme. The other regions (of which I have first spoken) are hell.[10] I have not told thee of all those regions that are called hell. Indeed, in comparison with that foremost of regions all the others are called hell.' "[11]

---

* For there no forms exist to become the objects of such functions. All is pure knowledge there, independent of those ordinary operations that help created beings to acquire knowledge.—T.

Section CXCIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hadst referred to the dispute between Time, Mrityu, Yama, Ikshāku, and a Brāhmana. It behoveth thee to narrate the story in full.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In connection with this subject that I am discoursing upon, is cited the old history of what transpired between Surya's son Ikshāku and a certain Brāhmana,[2] and Time and Mirtyu. Listen to me as to what occurred, and what was the conversation that took place between them, and the place where it happened.[3] There was a certain Brahmana of great fame and pious behaviour. He was a Reciter. Possessed of great wisdom, he was conversant with the six *Angas* (of the Vedas). He was of the Kuçika race and son of Pippalāda.*[4] He acquired (by his austerities) spiritual insight into the *Angas*.† Residing at the foot of Himavat, he was devoted to the Vedas.[5] Silently reciting the *Gayatri* composition, he practised severe austerities for attaining to *Brahma*. A thousand years passed over his head while he was engaged in the observance of vows and fasts.[6] The goddess (of *Gāyatri* or Sāvitri) showed herself to him and said,—I am gratified with thee!—Continuing to recite the sacred *mantra*, the Brāhmana remained silent and spoke not a word to the goddess.[7] The goddess felt compassion for him and became highly gratified. Then that progenitrix of the Vedas applauded that recitation in which the Brāhmana had been engaged.[8] After finishing his recitation (for that day) the Brāhmana stood up and, bending his head, prostrated himself before the goddess's feet. The righteous-souled Reciter, addressing the goddess, said,[9]—By good luck, O goddess, thou hast been gratified with me and shown thyself

---

* The six *Angas* are *Cikshā*, *Kalpa*, *Vyākarana*, *Nirukta*, *Cchanda*, and *Jyotish*.—T.

† *I. e.*, an insight not obtained in the ordinary way but by intuition.—T.

to me! If, indeed, thou art gratified with me, the boon I ask is that my heart may take pleasure in the act of recitation!—[10]

"'Sāvitri said,—What dost thou ask, O regenerate *Rishi*? What wish of thine shall I accomplish? Tell me, O foremost of Reciters, everything will be as thou wishest![11]—Thus addressed by the goddess, the Brāhmana, conversant with duties, replied, saying,—Let my wish about continuing my recitations go on increasing every moment![12] Let also, O auspicious goddess, the absorption of my mind into *Samādhi* be more complete!—The goddess sweetly said,—Let it be as thou wishest![13]—Desiring to do good to the Brāhmana, the goddess once again addressed him, saying,—Thou shalt not have to go to hell, *i. e.*, thither where great Brāhmanas go![14] Thou shalt go into the region of *Brahma* which is increate and free from every fault. I go hence, but that which thou hast asked me shall happen![*15] Go on reciting with restrained soul and rapt attention! The god Dharma will in person come to thee! Time, Mrityu and Yama also will all approach thy presence. There will be a dispute here between them and thee on a question of morality!'—[16]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having said these words the goddess went back to her own abode. The Brāhmana continued engaged in recitation for a thousand celestial years. Restraining wrath, and always controlling self, he passed his time, firmly devoting himself to truth and freed from malice.[17] Upon the completion of his observance by the intelligent Brāhmana, Dharma, gratified with him, showed his person unto that regenerate individual.[18]

"'Dharma said,—O regenerate one, behold me who am Dharma! I have come here for seeing thee! Thou hast won the reward of this recitation in which thou hadst been engaged. Listen to me as to what that reward is![19] Thou hast won all the regions of felicity which appertain to either gods or men. O good man, thou shalt ascend above all the

---

* K. P. Singha mistranslates the word *sādhaye*. It means 'I go,' and not 'I will strive &c.' The Burdwan-translator is correct.—T.

abodes of the deities![20] O ascetic, cast off thy vital breaths then, and go unto whatever regions thou pleasest! By casting off thy body thou wilt win many regions of felicity!—[21]

"'The Brāhmana said,—What business have I with those regions of felicity of which thou speakest? O Dharma, go whithersoever thou pleasest! I will not, O puissant lord, cast off this body which is subject to much happiness and misery!—[22]

"'Dharma said,—Thy body, O foremost of ascetics, should certainly be cast off. Do thou ascend to heaven, O Brāhmana! Or, tell us what else would please thee, O sinless one!—[23]

"'The Brāhmana said,—I do not, O puissant lord, wish to reside in heaven itself without this body of mine! Leave me, O Dharma! I have no desire to go to heaven itself without my own body!—[24]

"'Dharma said,—Without (thus) setting thy heart on thy body, cast it off and be happy! Go into regions that are free from the attribute of Passion. Indeed, going thither, thou shalt never have to feel any misery!—[25]

"'The Brāhmana said,—O highly-blessed one, I take great pleasure in recitation. What need have I for those eternal regions of which thou speakest? Indeed, O puissant lord, I do not desire to go to heaven with even this body of mine!—[26]

"'Dharma said,—If thou dost not wish to cast off thy body, behold, O regenerate one, there is Time, and there is Mrityu, and there is Yama, who are all approaching thee!'—[27]

"Bhishma continued,—'After Dharma had said this, Vivaswat's son (Yama), Time, and Mrityu,—the trio (who snatch away all creatures from the Earth), approached that Brāhmana, O blessed king, and addressed him thus.[28]

"'Yama said,—I am Yama. I say unto thee that a high reward awaits thee for these well-performed penances of thine, and for this pious conduct that thou hast observed!—[29]

"'Time said,—Thou hast won a high reward which is, indeed, commensurate with this course of recitation that thou hast finished! The time is come for thee to ascend to heaven. I am Time and I have come to thee!—[30]

" 'Mrityu said,—O thou that art conversant with righteousness, know me for Mrityu herself in her own proper form! I have come to thee in person, urged by Time, for bearing thee hence, O Brāhmana!—[31]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—Welcome to Surya's son, to Time possessed of high soul, to Mrityu, and to Dharma! What shall I accomplish for you all!—'[32]

"Bhishma continued,—'In that meeting, the Brāhmana gave them water to wash their feet, and the usual articles of the *Arghya*. Highly gratified, he then addressed them, saying,—What shall I do for you all by exerting my own might?[33]—Just at that time, O monarch, (king) Ikshāku, who had set out on a sojourn to holy waters and shrines, came to that spot where those deities had been assembled together.[34] The royal sage Ikshāku bowed his head and worshipped them all. That best of kings then enquired after the welfare of all of them.[35] The Brāhmana gave the king a seat, as also water to wash his feet, and the usual *Arghya*. Having next made the usual enquiries of courtesy, he said,[36]—Thou art welcome, O great monarch! Tell me all thy wishes! Let thy noble self tell me what I shall have to accomplish for thee by putting forth my might!—[37]

" 'The king said,—I am a king. Thou art a Brāhmana in the observance of the six well-known duties. (I cannot ask), I will give thee some wealth. That is well-known. Tell me how much I shall give thee!—[38]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—There are two kinds of Brāhmanas, O monarch! Morality or righteousness also is of two kinds: addiction to work, and abstention from work. As regards myself, I have abstained from acceptance of gifts.[39] Give presents unto them, O king, that are addicted to the duty of work and acceptance. I shall not, therefore, accept anything in gift. On the other hand, I ask thee, what is for thy good? What, indeed, shall I give thee? Tell me, O foremost of kings, and I shall accomplish it with the aid of my penances!—[40]

" 'The king said,—I am a Kshatriya. I do not know how to say the word—*Give*. The only thing, O best of regenerate

persons, that we can say (by way of asking) is—*Give (us) battle!*—[41]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—Thou art content with the observance of the duties of thy order. Similarly I am content with the duties of mine, O king! There is, therefore, little difference between us. Do thou as thou pleasest!—[42]

" 'The king said,—Thou saidst these words first, *viz.,—I shall give thee according to my might!*—I, therefore, solicit thee, O regenerate one,—Give me the fruits of this recitation (which thou hast gone through)!—[43]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—Thou wert boasting that thy utterances always solicit battle. Why then dost thou not solicit battle with me?—[44]

" 'The king said,—It has been said that Brāhmanas are armed with the thunder of speech, and that Kshatriyas have might of arms. Hence, O learned Brāhmana, this wordy warfare has set in between thee and me!—[45]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—As regards myself, even that is my resolution today! What shall I give thee according to my might? Tell me, O king of kings, and I shall give thee, having wealth of my own. Do not tarry!—[46]

" 'The king said,—If, indeed, thou desirest to give me anything, then give me the fruits thou hast earned by practising recitation for these thousand years!—[47]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—Take the highest fruit of the recitations I have gone through. Indeed, take half, without any scruple, of that fruit![48] Or, O king, if thou wishest, take without any scruple the entire fruits of my recitations!—[49]

" 'The king said,—Blessed be thou, I have no need for the fruits of thy recitations which I have solicited. Blessings on thy head! I am about to leave thee. Tell me, however, what those fruits are (of thy recitations)!—[50]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—I have no knowledge of the fruits I have won. I have, however, given thee those fruits that I have acquired by recitation. These, *viz.*, Dharma and Time, and Yama, and Mrityu, are witnesses (of the act of gift).—[51]

" 'The king said,—What will the fruits, that are unknown, of these thy observances, do for me? If thou dost not tell

me what the fruits are of thy recitations, let those fruits be thine, for without doubt I do not wish for them !—[52]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—I will not accept any other utterance (from thee). I have given thee the fruits of my recitations. Let, O royal sage, both thy words and mine become true ![53] As regards my recitations, I never cherished any specific desire to accomplish. How then, O tiger among kings, should I have any knowledge of what the fruits are of those recitations ?[54] Thou saidst,—Give !—I said—I give ! —I shall not falsify these words. Keep the truth. Be calm ![55] If thou refusest to keep my word, O king, great will be thy sin due to falsehood ![56] O chastiser of foes, it does not become thee to utter what is untrue. Similarly, I dare not falsify what I have uttered.[57] I have, before this, unhesitatingly said,—*I give !*—If, therefore, thou art firm in truth, accept my gift.[58] Coming here, O king, thou didst solicit of me the fruits of my recitations. Therefore, take what I have given away, if, indeed, thou art firm in truth ![59] He who is addicted to falsehood hath neither this world nor the next. Such a person fails to rescue his (deceased) ancestors. How again shall he succeed in doing good to his (unborn) progeny ?[60] The rewards of sacrifices and gifts, as also of fasts and religious observances, are not so efficacious in rescuing (a person from evil and hell) as Truth, O bull among men, in both this and the next world ![61] All the penances that have been undergone by thee and all those that thou wilt undergo in the future for hundreds and thousands of years do not possess efficacy greater than that of Truth.[62] Truth is the one undeteriorating *Brahma.* Truth is the one undeteriorating Penance. Truth is the one undeteriorating Sacrifice. Truth is the one undeteriorating Veda.[63] Truth is awake in the Vedas. The fruits attached to Truth have been said to be the highest. From Truth arise Righteousness and Self-restraint. Everything rests on Truth.[64] Truth is the Vedas and their branches. Truth is Knowledge. Truth is the Ordinance. Truth is the observance of vows and fasts. Truth is the Primeval Word *Om.*[65] Truth is the origin of creatures. Truth is their progeny. It is by Truth that the Wind moves.

It is by Truth that the Sun gives heat.[66] It is by Truth that Fire burns. It is on Truth that Heaven rests. Truth is Sacrifice, Penance, Vedas, the utterance of *Sāmans*, *Mantras*, and Saraswati.[67] It hath been heard by us that once on a time Truth and all religious observances were placed on a pair of scales. When both were weighed, that scale on which Truth was, was seen to be heavier.[68] There is Truth where Righteousness is. Everything increaseth through Truth. Why, O king, dost thou wish to do an act that is stained with falsehood ?[69] Be firm in Truth. Do not act falsely, O monarch ! Why wouldst thou falsify the words—*Give (me)!* —which thou hast uttered ?[70] If thou refusest, O monarch, to accept the fruits that I have given thee of my recitations, thou shalt then have to wander over the world, fallen away from Righteousness ![71] That person who does not give after having promised, and he also that does not accept after having solicited, are both stained with falsehood. It behoveth thee, therefore, not to falsify thy own words !—[72]

" 'The king said,—To fight and to protect (subjects) are the duties of Kshatriyas. It is said that Kshatriyas are givers (of presents). How then shall I take anything from thee (in gift) ?[73]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—I never insisted on thee, O king, (for accepting anything from me in the first instance). I did not seek thy house. Thyself, coming here, didst solicit me. Why then dost thou not take ?—[74]

" 'Dharma said,—Know ye both that I am Dharma himself ! Let there be no dispute between you ! Let the Brāhmana become endued with the reward attaching to gift, and let the monarch also obtain the merit of Truth !—[75]

" 'Heaven said,—Know, O great king, that I am Heaven's self in my embodied form, come hither in person. Let this dispute between you cease. You are both equal in respect of the merit or rewards that you have earned !—[76]

" 'The king said,—I have no use with Heaven. Go, O Heaven, to the place you have come from ! If this learned Brāhmana desires to repair to thee, let him take the rewards that I have won (by my acts in life) !—[77]

"'The Brāhmana said,—In my younger days I had, through Ignorance, stretched my hand (for acceptance of gifts). At present, however, I recite the *Gāyatri*, observing the duty of abstention.*[78] Why dost thou, O king, tempt me thus, *me* who have for a long time observed the duty of abstention? I shall myself do what my duty is. I do not wish to have any share of the rewards won by thee, O monarch! I am devoted to penances and to study of the Vedas, and I have abstained from acceptance!—[79]

"'The king said,—If, O Brāhmana, thou art really to give me the excellent reward of thy recitation, then let half that reward be mine, thyself taking at the same time half the reward that I myself have won by my acts![80] Brāhmanas are engaged in the duty of acceptance. Persons born in the royal order are engaged in the duty of giving. If thou art not unaware of the duties (laid down for both the orders), let our fruits be equal (according to the suggestion I have made).[81] Or, if thou dost not wish to be my equal in respect of our rewards, take then the whole of the rewards that I may have won! Do take the merit I have won if thou wishest to show me grace!—'[82]

"Bhishma continued,—'At this time two individuals of very ungainly aspect came there. Each had his arm upon the other's shoulder; both were ill-dressed. They said these words:[83]—Thou owest me nothing!—I really owe thee!—If we dispute in this way, here is the king who ruleth individuals![84]—I say truly, thou owest me nothing!—Thou speakest falsely. I do owe thee a debt![85]—Both of them, waxing very hot in dispute, then addressed the king, saying,—See, O monarch, that none of us may become stained with sin!—'[6]

"'Virupa said,—I owe my companion Vikrita, O monarch, the merits of the gift of a cow. I am willing to pay off that debt. This Vikrita, however, refuses to take repayment!†—'[7]

---

* Work and Abstention from work are the two courses of duty prescribed or followed.—T.

† It seems that Vikrita had given away a cow. He had then made a gift to Virupa of the merit he had won by that righteous act.—T.

" 'Vikrita said,—This Virupa, O monarch, oweth me nothing. He speaks a falsehood with the appearance of truth, O king !—[88]

" 'The king said,—Tell me, O Virupa, what is that which thou owest thy friend here. It is my resolution to first hear thee and then do what is proper !—[89]

" 'Virupa said,—Hear attentively, O king, all the circumstances in detail about how I owe my companion, *viz.*, this Vikrita, O ruler of men ![90] This Vikrita had, in bygone days, for the sake of winning merit, O sinless one, given away an auspicious cow, O royal sage, unto a Brāhmana devoted to penances and the study of the Vedas.[91] Going unto him, O king, I begged of him the reward of that act. With a pure heart, Vikrita made a gift to me of that reward.[92] I then, for my purification, did some good acts. I also purchased two *kapilā* cows with calves, both of which used to yield large quantities of milk.[93] I then made a present, according to due rites and with proper devotion, of those two cows unto a poor Brāhmana living by the *Unccha** method. Having formerly accepted the gift from my companion, I desire, O lord, even here, to give him in return twice the reward !† The circumstances being such, O tiger among men, who amongst us two shall be innocent and who guilty (according to your judgment) ?[94-95] Disputing with each other about this, we have both come to thee, O monarch ! Whether thou judgest rightly or wrongly, establish both of us in peace.[96] If this my companion does not wish to take from me in return a gift equal to what he gave me, thou shalt have to judge patiently and set us both on the right track !—[97]

" 'The king said,—Why do you not accept payment that is sought to be made of the debt that is owing to thee ? Do not delay, but accept payment of what thou knowest is thy due !—[98]

---

* Picking solitary grains from the crevices in the fields after the crops have been gathered and taken away.—T.

† He gave me the merit he won by giving away one cow. I wish to give him in return the merit I have won by giving away two cows.—T.

" 'Vikrita said,—This one says that he owes me. I say unto him that what I gave I give away. He doth not, therefore, owe me anything. Let him go whithersoever he wishes.—[99]

" 'The king said,—He is ready to give thee. Thou, however, art unwilling to take. This does not seem proper to me! I think that thou deservest punishment for this. There is little doubt in this!—[100]

" 'Vikrita said,—I made a gift to him, O royal sage! How can I take it back? If I am guilty in this, do thou pronounce the punishment, O puissant one!—[101]

" 'Virupa said,—If thou refusest to take when I am ready to give, this king will certainly punish thee, for he is an upholder of justice.—[102]

" 'Vikrita said,—Solicited by him I gave him what was my own. How shall I now retake that? Thou mayst go away. Thou hast my leave!—[103]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—Thou hast heard, O king, the words of these two. Do thou take without scruple that which I have pledged myself to give thee!—[104]

" 'The king said,—This matter is, indeed, as deep (in importance) as an unfathomable pit. How will the pertinacity of this Reciter end?[105] If I do not accept what has been given by this Brāhmana, how shall I avoid being stained with a great sin?[106]—The royal sage then said unto the two disputants,—Go ye both, having won your respective objects. I should see that kingly duties, vested in me, may not become futile.[107] It is settled that kings should observe the duties laid down for them. To my misfortune, however, the course of duties prescribed for Brāhmanas has possessed my wretched self!*—[108]

---

* Verses 107 and 108 are rather obscure. What the king says in 107 seems to be that you two have referred your dispute to me who am a king. I cannot shirk my duty, but am bound to judge fairly between you. I should see that kingly duties should not, so far as I am concerned, become futile. In 108 he says, being a king I should discharge the duties of a king, *i. e.*, I should judge disputes, and *Give*, if need be, but never *take*. Unfortunately, the situation is such that I am obliged to act as a Brāhmana by *taking* what this particular Brāhmana is desirous of offering.—T.

"'The Brāhmana said,—Accept, O king! I owe thee! Thou didst solicit it, and I also have become pledged (to give thee)! If, however, thou refuse to take, O monarch, I shall without doubt curse thee!—[109]

"'The king said,—Fie on kingly duties, the settled conclusion about the operation of which is even such! I should, however, take what thou givest, for only this reason, *viz.*, rendering the two courses of duty exactly equal.*[110] This my hand, that was never before (stretched forth for acceptance of gifts) is now stretched forth (for acceptance as also) for giving away. Give me what thou owest me!—[111]

"'The Brāhmana said,—If I have won any fruits by reciting the *Gayatri*, accept them all!—[112]

"'The king said,—These drops of water, behold, O foremost of Brāhmanas, have fallen upon my hand. I also desire to give thee. Accept my gift. Let there be equality between us (through thy accepting my gift as I have accepted thine)![113]

"'Virupa said,—Know, O king, that we two are Desire and Wrath. It hath been by us that thou hast been induced to act in this way! Thou hast made a gift in return to the Brāhmana. Let there be equality between thee and this regenerate person in respect of regions of felicity in the next world.[114] This Vikrita really does not owe me anything. We appealed to thee for thy own sake. Time, Dharma, Mrityu, and we two,[115] have examined everything about thee, here in thy very presence, by producing this friction between thee and that Brāhmana. Go now, as thou choosest, to those regions of felicity which thou hast won by means of thy deeds!—[116]

"Bhishma continued,—'I have now told thee how Reciters obtain the fruits (of their recitation) and what, indeed, is

---

* This verse also seems to be very obscure. The king's natural inclination, it seems, prompts him to oblige the Brāhmana by accepting his gift. The ordinances about kingly duties restrain him. Hence his condemnation of those duties. In the second line, he seems to say that he is morally bound to accept the gift, and intends to make a gift of his own merits in return. The result of this act, he thinks, will be to make both courses of duty (*viz.*, the Kshatriya and the Brāhmana's) produce the same kind of rewards in the next world.—T.

their end, what the spot, and what the regions, that a Reciter may win.[117] A Reciter of *Gāyatri* goes to the supreme god Brahman, or repairs to Agni or enters the region of Surya.[118] If he sports there in his (new) energetic form, then stupified by such attachment, he catches the attributes of those particular regions.*[119] The same becomes the case with him if he goes to Soma, or Vāyu, or Earth, or Space. The fact is, he dwells in all these, with attachment, and displays the attributes peculiar to those regions.[120] If, however, he goes to those regions after having freed himself from attachments, and feels a mistrust (respecting the felicity he enjoys) and wishes for That Which is Supreme and Immutable, he then enters even That.[121] In that case he attains to the ambrosia of ambrosia, to a state free from desire and destitute of separate consciousness. He becomes *Brahma's* self, freed from the influence of opposites, happy, tranquil, and without pain.†[122] Indeed, he attains to that condition which is free from pain, which is tranquillity's self, which is called *Brahma*, whence there is no return, and which is styled the One and Immutable.[123] He becomes freed from the four means of apprehension,‡ the six conditions, and also the other six and ten attributes.$ Transcending the Creator (Brahman), he attains to absorption into the One Supreme Soul.[124] Or, if under the influence of attachments, he wishes not for such absorption, but desires to have a separate existence as dependent on that Supreme Cause of everything, then he obtains the fruition of everything for which he cherishes a wish.[125] Or, if he looks (with aversion) upon all regions of felicity, which have been (as previously stated) called hells, he then, driving off desire and freed from everything, enjoys

---

* This is not Emancipation, but merely terminable felicity.—T.

† Attains to Emancipation or Absorption into the essence of *Brahma*.—T.

‡ These are Direct knowledge (through the senses), Revelation, Inference, and Intuition.—T.

$ The first six are Hunger, Thirst, Grief, Delusion, Disease, and Death. The other sixteen are the five breaths, the ten senses, and the mind.—T.

supreme felicity even in those very regions.*[126] Thus, O monarch, I have discoursed to thee about the end attained by Reciters. I have told thee everything. What else wishest thou to hear?' "[127]

SECTION CC.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, what reply was given by either the Brāhmana or the monarch to Virupa after the conclusion of the latter's speech.[1] What kind of end was it, amongst those described by thee, that they obtained? What, indeed, was the discourse that happened between them, and what did they do there?'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'The Brāhmana, saying,—Let it be as thou hast said,—worshipped Dharma and Yama and Time and Mrityu and Heaven, all of whom were worthy of worship.[3] He also worshipped all those foremost of Brāhmanas that had come there by bending his head unto them. Addressing the monarch then, he said,[4]—Endued with the reward of my recitations, O royal sage, attain thou to a position of eminence! With thy leave I shall set myself to my recitations again.[5] O thou of great might, the goddess Sāvitri gave me a boon, saying,—Let thy devotion to recitation be continuous!—[6]

" 'The king said,—If thy success (in recitation) has become fruitless (in consequence of thy having given away those fruits unto me), and if thy heart be set upon practising again, go, O learned Brāhmana, half and half with me, and let the reward of thy recitations themselves be thine!†—[7]

---

* I think K. P. Singha misunderstands this verse. Three different ends are spoken off. One is absorption into *Brahma*; the other is enjoyment of ordinary felicity, which, of course, is terminable, and the last is the enjoyment of that felicity which is due to a freedom from desire and attachments. 126 speaks of this last kind of felicity.—T.

† In the second line *sārddham* is *not* an indeclinable; or, if it be taken as such, the sense may still remain unaltered. What the monarch does is to call upon the Brāhmana to share with the monarch the rewards that the monarch had won.—T.

"'The Brāhmana said,—Thou hast made strenuous efforts before all these persons (for making me a sharer of the rewards in store for thee as the consequences of thy own acts). Let us then become equal in respect of our rewards (in next life), and let us go to receive that end which is ours.[8]—Knowing the resolve to which they came there, the chief of the gods came to that spot, accompanied by the deities and the Regents of the world.[9] The *Sāddyas*, the *Viçwas*, the *Mantras*, diverse kinds of loud and sweet music, the Rivers, the Mountains, the Seas, the Sacred Waters,[10] the Penances, the Ordinances about *yoga*, the Vedas, the Sounds that accompany the singing of the *Sāmans*, Saraswati, Nārada, Parvata, Viçwāvasu, the Hāhās, the Huhus,[11] the *Gandharva* Chitrasena with all the members of his family, the Nāgas, the *Siddhas*, the *Munis*, the god of gods, *viz.*, Prajāpati,[12] and the inconceivable and thousand-headed Vishnu himself, came there. Drums and trumpets were beat and blown in the firmament.[13] Celestial flowers were rained down upon those high-souled beings. Bands of *Apsaras* danced all around.[14] Heaven, in his embodied form, came there. Addressing the Brāhmana, he said,—Thou hast attained to success! Thou art highly blessed!—Next addressing the monarch, he said,—Thou also, O king, hast attained to success![15]—Those two persons then, O monarch, (*viz.*, the Brāhmana and the king), having done good to each other, withdrew their senses from the objects of the world.[16] Fixing the vital breaths *Prāna* and *Apāna* and *Samāna* and *Udāna* and *Vyāna* in the heart, they concentred the mind in *Prāna* and *Apāna* united together.[17] They then placed the two united breaths in the abdomen, and directed their gaze to the tip of the nose and then immediately below the two eye-brows. They next held the two breaths, with the aid of the mind, in the spot that intervenes between the two eye-brows, bringing them there very gradually.[18] With bodies perfectly inactive, they were absorbed with fixed gaze. Having control over their souls, they then placed the soul within the brain.[19] Then piercing the crown of the high-souled Brāhmana a fiery flame of great splendour ascended to heaven.[20]

Loud exclamations of woe, uttered by all creatures, were then heard on all sides. Its praises hymned by all, that splendour then entered Brahman's self.[21] The Great grandsire, advancing forward, addressed that splendour which had assumed a form of the tallness of a span saying,—Welcome![22] And once more he uttered these sweet words:—Verily, Reciters attain to the same end with the *yogins*.[23] The attainment by the *yogin* of his end is an object of direct vision unto all these (here assembled). As regards Reciters, there is this distinction, that the honor is ordained for them of Brahman's advancing forward to receive them (after their departure from Earth).*[24] Dwell thou in me!—Thus spoke Brahman and once more imparted consciousness into that splendour. Indeed, the Brāhmana then, freed from all anxieties, entered the mouth of the Creator.[25] The monarch (Ikshāku) also, after the same manner, entered the divine Grandsire like that foremost of Brāhmanas.[26] The (assembled) deities saluted the Self-born and said,—A very superior end is, indeed, ordained for Reciters![27] This exertion (that we have seen thee put forth) is for Reciters. As regards ourselves, we came hither for beholding it! Thou hast made these two equal, rendered them equal honor, and bestowed upon them an equal end![28] The high end that is reserved for both *yogins* and Reciters has been seen by us today! Transcending all regions (of felicity), these two are capable of going whithersoever they wish!—[29]

"'Brahman said,—He also that would read the great *Smriti* (*viz.*, the Vedas,) and he too who would read the other auspicious *Smritis* that follow the former, (*viz.*, Manu's and the rest), would, in this way, attain to the same region with me.[30] He also who is devoted to *yoga* will, without doubt, acquire in this manner, after death, the regions that are mine.[31] I go hence. Go ye all to your respective places for the accomplishment of your ends.—'[32]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having said these words, that

---

* The sense seems to be that *yogins* attain to *Brahma* even here; whereas Reciters attain to him after death.—T.

foremost of gods disappeared there and then. The assembled deities, having previously taken his leave, returned to their respective abodes.[33] All those high-souled beings, having honored Dharma, proceeded with well-pleased hearts, O monarch, walking behind that great deity.[34] These are the rewards of reciters and this their end. I have described them to thee as I myself had heard of them. What else, O monarch, dost thou wish to hear of?' "[35]

SECTION CCI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What are the fruits of the *yoga* represented by Knowledge, of all the Vedas, and of the (various) observances and vows? How also may the creature-soul be known? Tell me this, O grandsire!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse between that lord of creatures, *viz.*, Manu, and the great *Rishi* Vrihaspati.[2] In days of old the foremost of celestial *Rishis*, *viz.*, Vrihaspati, who was a disciple of Manu, bowed to his preceptor and addressing that lord and first of all creatures, said,[3]—What is the cause (of the universe)? Whence have the ordinances (about sacrifices and other pious observances) flowed? What are those fruits which the learned say are attached to Knowledge? Tell me also truly, O illustrious one, what is that which the very Vedas have not been able to reveal?[4] What are those fruits which are adored by eminent personages conversant with the science of *Artha*, with the Vedas, and with the *Mantras*, through sacrifices and plentiful gifts of kine? Whence do those fruits arise? Where are they to be found?[5] Tell me also this old history, *viz.*, whence have the Earth, all earthly objects, wind, sky, acquatic creatures, water, heaven, and the denizens of heaven, all sprung?[6] Man's inclinations tend towards that object about which he seeks knowledge. I have no knowledge of that Ancient and Supreme one. How shall I rescue myself from a false display of inclinations towards Him?*[7] The *Riks*,

---

* The fact is, I do not know anything of Him, but still I profess to

all the *Sāmans*, all the *Yajuses*, the *Chchhandas*, Astronomy, *Nirukta*, Grammar, *Sankalpa*, and *Çikshā*, I have studied. But I have no knowledge of the nature of the great creatures (the five primal elements) that enter into the composition of everything.*[8] Tell me all I have asked thee, by using only simple assertions and distinguishing adjectives or attributives. Tell me what the fruits are of Knowledge and what those fruits that are attached to sacrifices and other religious rites. Explain to me how also an embodied being departs from his body and how he attains to another body !—[9]

" 'Manu said,—That which is agreeable to one is said to constitute one's happiness. Similarly that which is disagreeable to one is said to constitute one's misery.—By this I shall obtain happiness and keep off misery—from a sentiment like this flow all religious acts.[10] The efforts for the acquisition of Knowledge, however, arise from a sentiment for avoiding both happiness and misery.†[11] The ordinances about sacrifices and other observances, that occur in the Vedas, are all connected wish desire. He, however, who liberates himself from desire, succeeds in attaining to *Brahma*. That man who, from desire of winning happiness, walks in the path of acts which are of diverse kinds, has to go to hell.—‡[12]

---

worship him. This is false behaviour. How shall I be rescued from such falsehood ? This is what Vrihaspati says.—T.

* The *Chchandas* are the rules of Prosody as applicable to the Vedic hymns. The course of the stars or *yotish* is astronomy. It forms an *Anga* of the Vedas. *Nirukta* furnishes rules for interpreting obscure passages of the Vedas, and also gives the meanings of technical or obscure words used therein. *Sankalpa* is the description of religious rites. *Cikshā* is the science of Pronunciation as applied to the Vedic hymns and *mantras*.—T.

† They who believe that happiness is not eternal and that, therefore, they should not pursue it, withdraw themselves from pious acts which lead to that happiness. They seek Knowledge as the best means for avoiding all that is transitory and changeful. They seek *moksha* or complete Emancipation which has been described in the previous sections.—T.

‡ The meaning of 'hell' as applied in such passages has been explained before.—T.

"Vrihaspati said,—'Men's aspirations are concerned with the acquisition of the agreeable which ends in happiness, and the avoidance of the disagreeable which brings misery. Such acquisition and such avoidance again are accomplished by acts.—*[13]

" 'Manu said,—It is by liberating oneself from acts that one succeeds in entering into *Brahma*. The ordinances about acts have flowed for that very end.† The ordinances about acts tempt only those whose hearts are not free from desire. By liberating oneself from acts (as already said) one acquires the highest state.[14] One desirous of felicity (Emancipation), betaking oneself to religious rites, becomes purified (from attachments) by acts having for their object the purification of the soul, and at last wins great splendour. By liberating oneself from acts, one acquires the highest end, *viz.*, *Brahma*, which is very much above the reward that acts give.[15] Creatures have all been created by Mind and Act. These again are the two best paths adored by all. Outward acts produce fruits that are transitory as also eternal. For acquiring the latter there is no other means than abandonment of fruits by the mind.‡[16] As the eye, when night passes away and the veil of darkness is removed from it, leads its possessor by its own power, so the Understanding, when it becomes

---

* This is a highly aphoristic line. I give the sense by expanding the words. By 'acts' here is meant 'sacrifices and other religious observances.' The intention of Vrihaspati is to enforce the propriety of acts, for without acts, the ends of life cannot, he maintains, be secured.

† The sense is that one should devote oneself to acts as a sort of preparation. Afterwards one should abandon them for obtaining the higher end. Acts, therefore, have their use, and help one, though mediately, in the acquisition of *Brahma*.—T.

‡ *The Mind and Acts have created all things.* This has been explained in the last verse of section 190 *ante*. *Both are good paths*, for by both, good end may be attained, *viz.*, the highest, by drilling the mind, as also (mediately) by acts (as explained in verse 14 above). The fruits of actions must be mentally abandoned if the highest end is to be attained; *i. e.*, acts may be gone through, but their fruits should never be coveted.—T.

endued with Knowledge, succeeds in beholding all evils that are worthy of avoidance.*[17] Snakes, sharp-pointed *kuça* blades, and pits, men avoid when they perceive them lie on their way. If some tread upon or fall into them, they do so through ignorance. Behold the superiority of the fruits of knowledge (over those of ignorance)![18] *Mantras* applied duly, sacrifices, the presents called *Dakshinā*, gift of food, and concentration of the mind (for divine contemplation),—these are the five acts that are said to be productive of fruits, there being none else.[19] Acts have (the three) attributes (of *Satwa*, *Rajas*, and *Tamas*) for their soul. The Vedas say this. (The Vedas consist of *Mantras*). The *Mantras*, therefore, have the same three attributes, since it is with *Mantras* that acts are to be accomplished. The ritual also must be liable to the same three attributes. The fruits of action depend upon the mind. It is the embodied creature that enjoys those fruits.†[20] All excellent kinds of sound, form, taste, touch, and scent, are the fruits of acts, being attainable in the region of acts (*i. e.*, heaven). As regards, however, the fruits of knowledge, man acquires them even here before death.‡[21] Whatever acts are accomplished by

---

* Nilakantha explains the grammar of the first line differently. His view is *yathā chakshurupah pranetā nāyako &c.* A better construction would be *yathī chakshu pranetah* (*bhavati*) &c.—T.

† This verse may be said to furnish the key of the doctrine of *karma* or acts and why acts are to be avoided by persons desirous of *Moksha* or Emancipation. *Acts have three attributes*: for some are *Sātwika* (good), as sacrifices undertaken for heaven, &c.; some are *Rājasika* (of the quality of Passion), as penances and rites accomplished from desire of superiority and victory ; and some are *Tāmasika* (of the quality of Darkness), as those undertaken for injuring others, notably the *Attharvan* rites of *Mārana*, *Uchātana*, &c. ; this being the case, the *Mantras*, without which acts cannot be accomplished, are necessarily subject to the same three attributes. The same is the case with the rituals prescribed. It follows, therefore, that the mind is the chief cause of the kind of fruits won, *i. e.*, it is the motive that determines the fruit, *viz.*, of what kind it is to be. The enjoyer of the fruit, of course, is the embodied creature.—T.

‡ There can be no doubt that Nilakantha explains this verse

means of the body, one enjoys the fruits thereof in a state of physical existence. The body is, indeed, the frame-work to which happiness inheres, as also the frame-work to which misery inheres.*[22] Whatever acts are accomplished by means of words, their fruits are to be enjoyed in a state in which words can be spoken. Similarly, whatever acts are accomplished by the mind, their fruits are enjoyed in a state in which one is not freed from the mind.†[23] Devoted to the fruits of acts, whatever kind of acts (*Sātwika* or *Rājasika* or *Tāmasika*) a person covetous of fruits accomplishes, the fruits, good or bad, that he actually enjoys partake of their character.[24] Like fishes going against a current of water, the acts of a past life come to the actor. The embodied creature experiences happiness for his good acts, and misery for his evil ones.[25] Him from whom this universe hath sprung, Him by knowing whom persons of cleansed souls transgress this world, Him who has not been expressed by Vedic *mantras* and words, I will now indicate. Listen to me as I speak of that highest of the high.[26] Himself liberated from the several kinds of taste and scent, and sound and touch and form, He is incapable of being grasped by the senses, unmanifest, without color, the One, and He has created the five kinds of objects‡ for His creatures.[27] He is neither female, nor

---

correctly. It is really a crux. The words *Naro na samsthānagatah prabhuh syāt* must be taken as unconnected and independent. *Na samsthānagatah* is before death. *Prabhuh* is *adhikāri (jnānphale* being understood). K. P. Singha gives the sense correctly, but the Burdwan translator makes nonsense of the words.—T.

* The object of this verse, as explained by the commentator, is to inculcate the truth that the result of all acts accomplished by the body is heaven where one in a physical state (however subtile) enjoys those fruits. If Emancipation is to be sought, it must be attained through the mind.—T.

† The sense depends upon the word *acts*. If *acts* are accomplished by the mind, their fruits must be enjoyed by the person in a state in which he will have a mind. Emancipation cannot be achieved by either recitation (*Japa*) or *Dhyāna* (meditation), for both these are *acts*. Perfect liberation from *acts* is necessary for that great end.—T.

‡ *viz.*, Taste, &c.,—T.

male, nor of the neuter sex. He is neither existent, nor non-existent, nor existent-nonexistent.* Only those that are acquainted with *Brahma* behold Him. He knoweth no detioration.—' "[23]

SECTION CCII.

"'Manu said,—From that eternal and undeteriorating One first sprung Space; from space came Wind; from wind came Light; from light came Water. From water sprung the Universe; and from the universe, all things that occur in it.[1] The bodies of all (earthly) things, (after dissolution), first enter into water, thence to light or heat, thence to the wind, and thence to space. They that seek Emancipation have not to return from space. On the other hand, they attain to *Brahma*.[2] The refuge of Emancipation, *viz.*, *Brahma*, is neither hot, nor cold, neither mild nor fierce, neither sour nor astringent, neither sweet nor bitter. He is not endued with sound, or scent, or form. He transcends all these and everything, and is without dimensions.*[3] The skin perceives touch; the tongue, taste; the nose, scent; the ears, sounds; and the eye, forms. Men not conversant with *Adhyātma* succeed not in beholding what is above these.[4] Having withdrawn the tongue from tastes, the nose from scents, the ears from touch, and the eye from forms, one succeeds in beholding one's own self (as independent of the senses and the mind and, therefore, of attributes.†[5] It hath been said that that which is the Cause of the actor, the act, the material with which the act is done, the place and the time of the act, and the inclinations and propensities in respect of happiness and misery, is called the Self (or Soul).[6] That which pervades everything, which does everything (assuming

---

* *Existent*, like atoms; *non-existent*, like space; *existent-nonexistent*, like *Mayà* or illusion.—T.

† *Aswabhàvam* is explained by the commentator as *Pramàtri-twàdi vihinam*.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, one sees one's own soul.—T.

the forms of living creatures), that which exists in the universe even as the *mantras* declare,* that which is the cause of all, that which is the highest of the high, and that which is One without a second and does all things, is the Cause. Everything else is effect.[7] It is seen that a person, in consequence of the acts performed by him, obtains results both good and evil, which (though apparently incompatible with each other, still) dwell together in harmony. Indeed, as the good and evil fruits born of their own acts dwell together in the bodies of creatures which are their refuge, even so Knowledge dwells in the body.†[8] As a lighted lamp, while burning, discovers other objects before it, even so the five senses which are like lamps set on high trees, find out their respective objects when lighted by Knowledge.‡[9] As the various ministers of a king, uniting together, give him counsel, even so the five senses that are in the body are all subservient to Knowledge. The latter is superior to all of them.[10] As the flames of fire, the current of the wind, the rays of the sun, and the waters of rivers, go and come repeatedly, even so the bodies of embodied creatures are going and coming repeatedly.¶[11] As a person by taking up an axe cannot, by cutting open a piece of wood, find either smoke or fire in

---

* *I. e.*, which, though one, divides itself into a thousand forms like the image of the moon in a piece of agitated water.—T.

† The analogy consists in this: good and evil fruits, though incompatible, dwell together; similarly, knowledge, though not material, resides in the material body. Of course, knowledge is used here in the sense of the mind or the understanding.—T.

‡ It is difficult to understand why the idea of lamps set on trees is introduced here.—T.

¶ The analogy is thus explained. Fire, when fed, bursts into flames. When not fed, it dies out, but is not destroyed, for with new fuel the flames may be brought back. The current of the wind ceases, but does not suffer extinction; for if it did, there would be no current again. The same is the case with the rays of the Sun. They die in the night, to reappear in the morning. The rivers are dried up in summer and refilled during the rains. The body, once dissolved, appears in another form. It will be seen that the weakness of the reasoning is due only to incorrect notions about the objects referred to.—T.

it, even so one cannot, by cutting open the arms and feet and stomach of a person, cannot see the principle of knowledge, which, of course, has nothing in common with the stomach, the arms, and the feet.[12] As again one beholds both smoke and fire in wood by rubbing it against another piece, so a person of well-directed intelligence and wisdom, by uniting (by means of *yoga*) the senses and the soul, may view the Supreme Soul which, of course, exists in its own nature.*[13] As in the midst of a dream one beholds one's own body lying on the ground as something distinct from one's own self, even so a person, endued with the five senses, the mind, and the understanding, beholds (after death) his own body and then goes from one into another form.†[14] The Soul is not subject to birth, growth, decay, and destruction. In consequence of the acts of life being endued with effects, the Soul, clothed in body, passes from this body (when deprived of animation) into another, unseen by others.‡[15] No one can behold with the eye the form of the Soul. The Soul cannot, again, form the subject of any one's touch. With those (*i. e.*, the senses), the Soul accomplishes no act. The senses do not approach the Soul. The Soul, however, apprehends them all.[16] As anything, placed in a blazing fire before a spectator, assumes a certain color in consequence of the light and heat that operates upon it, without taking any other hue

---

* *Exists in its own nature, i. e.*, inaffected by attributes and qualities and accidents.—T.

† Some of the Bengal texts read *sumahān* and *subuddhih* in the second line. Of course, this is incorrect. The true reading is *samānah* and *sabuddhih*, meaning 'with mind and with understanding.' In the Bombay edition occurs a misprint, *viz.*, *sumanāh* for *samanāh*. Nilakantha cites the correct readings.—T.

‡ The Burdwan translator misunderstands the word *Linga* as used in both 14 and 15. K. P. Singha also wrongly renders that word as it occurs in 15. The commentator rightly explains that *Linga* has no reference to *Linga-çarira* or the invisible body composed of the *tanmātra* of the primal elements, but simply means the gross body. In 14, he says, *Lingat sthuladehāt, Lingam tadeva dehāntaram.* In 15, *anena Lingena Cavibhutena. Adristhah* means *alakshitah.* A little care would have removed such blunders.—T.

or attribute, even so the Soul's form is seen to take its color from the body.[17] After the same manner, man, casting off one body, enters another, unseen by all. Indeed, casting off his body to the (five) great primal elements, he assumes a form that is similarly made of the same (five) elements.[18] The embodied creature (upon the destruction of his body) enters space, wind, fire, water, and earth in such a way that each particular element in his body mingles with the particular element (out of his body) with whose nature it is consonant. The senses also, which are engaged in diverse occupations and dependent on the five elements (for the exercise of their functions), enter these five elements that call forth their functions.[19] The ear derives its capacity from space; and the sense of scent from the earth. Form, which is the property of the eye, is the consequence of light or fire. Fire or heat has been said to be the dependent cause of water. The tongue which has for its property taste becomes merged into water. The skin which has touch for its property becomes lost in the wind whose nature it partakes.[20] The fivefold attributes, (*viz.*, sound, &c.) dwell in the (five) great creatures (*viz.*, the five primal elements). Those fivefold objects of the senses (*viz.*, space, &c.) dwell in the (five) senses. All these again (*viz.*, the fivefold attributes, the fivefold elements, and the five senses) follow the lead of the mind. The mind follows the lead of the Understanding, and the Understanding follows the lead of That which exists in its true and undefiled nature (*viz.*, the Supreme Soul).*[21] The doer in his new body receives all the good and bad acts done by him as also all acts done by him in his past existence. All these acts done in this life and the next ones to come follow the mind even as acquatic animals pass along a genial current.[22] As a quickly-moving and restless thing becomes an object of sight, as a minute object appears to be possessed of large dimensions (when seen through spectacles), as a mirror shows a person his own face (which cannot otherwise

* The commentator cites the *Gitā* which furnishes a parallel passage, viz., *Indriyāni parāṇyāhurindriyebhyah param manah*, &c.—T.

be seen), even so the Soul (though subtile and invisible) becomes an object of the Understanding's apprehension.—' "*[23]

SECTION CCIII.

" 'Manu said,—The mind united with the senses, recollects after a long time the impressions of objects received in the past. When the senses are all suspended (in respect of their functions),† the Supreme (the Soul), in the form of the Understanding, exists in its own true nature.[1] When the Soul (at such a time) does not in the least regard all those objects of the senses in respect of their simultaniety or the reverse in point of time but mustering them from all directions holds them before it together, it necessarily happens that he wanders among all things that are incongruous. He is, therefore, the (silent) Witness. Hence the Soul encased in body is something having a distinct and independent existence.‡[2] There is *Rajas*, there is *Tamas*, and there is *Satwa* the third. There are again three states of the understanding, *viz.*, waking, dreaming, and sound sleep. The Soul has knowledge of the pleasures and pains, which are all contradictory, of those states, and which partake of the nature of the threefold attributes first mentioned.$ The Soul enters the

---

* This verse seems to show that the *Rishis* had knowledge of spectacles, and probably also, of microscopes. The instrument that shewed minute objects must have been very well known, otherwise some mention would have been made of it by name. The commentator calls it *upanetra*.—T.

† By death on sleep.—T.

‡ *Yugapat* means simultaneous; *atulyakālam* means differing in point of time in respect of occurrence; *kritsnam* qualifies *indriyārthān*; *Vidwān* means *Sākshi*; and *ekah*, independent and distinct. What is intended to be said here is that when the soul, in a dream, musters together the occurrences and objects of different times and places, when, in fact, congruity in respect of both time and place does not apply to it, it must be regarded to have an existence that is distinct and independent of the senses and the body.—T.

$ The object of this is to show that the Soul has only knowledge of the pleasures and pains arising in consequence of *Satwa* and *Rajas* and

senses like the wind entering the fire in a piece of wood.*[3] One cannot behold the form of the Soul by one's eye, nor can the sense of touch, amongst the senses, apprehend it. The Soul is not, again, an object of apprehension by the ear. It may, however, be seen by the aid of the *Çrutis* and the instructions of the wise. As regards the senses, that particular sense which apprehends it loses upon such apprehension its existence as a sense.†[4] The senses cannot themselves apprehend their respective forms by themselves. The Soul is omniscient (inasmuch as it apprehends both the knower and the known). It beholds all things. Being omniscient, it is the Soul that beholds the senses (without, as already said, the senses being able to apprehend it).[5] Nobody has seen the other side of the Himavat mountains, nor the reverse of the moon's disc. Yet it cannot be said that these do not exist.[6] Similarly, though never apprehended by the senses, yet nobody can say that the Soul, which dwells in all creatures, which is subtile, and which has knowledge for its essence, does not exist.[7] People see the world reflected on the moon's disc in the form of spots. Though seeing, they do not know that it is the world that is so reflected there. Even such is the knowledge of the Soul. That knowledge must come of itself. The Soul depends upon the Soul itself.[8] Men of wisdom, reflecting on the formlessness of visible objects before birth and after destruction, behold by the aid of intelligence, the formlessness of objects that have apparent

---

Tamas and in connection with the three states of the understanding due to the same three attributes. The Soul, however, though knowing them, does not enjoy or suffer them. He is only the silent and inactive Witness of everything.—T.

* The object of the simile is to show that as wind is a separate entity although existing *with* the fire in a piece of wood, so the Soul, though existing *with* the senses is distinct from them.—T.

† The Bengal texts read *indriyānām* which I adopt. The Bombay edition reads *indriyendriyam*, meaning the sense of the senses, in the same way as the *Crutis* declare that it is the *Prāna* of *Prāna*, the eye of the eye, the ear of the ear, &c. *Cravanena darçanam tathā kritam* is, "apprehended by the ear" *i. e.*, as rendered above, "apprehended through the aid of the *Crutis*".—T.

forms. So also although the Sun's motion cannot be seen, yet persons, by watching its rising and setting, conclude that the sun has motion.*[9] Similarly, those who are endued with wisdom and learning behold the Soul by the aid of the lamp of intelligence, though it is at a great distance from them, and seek to merge the fivefold elements, which are near, into *Brahma*.†[10] Verily, an object cannot be accomplished without the application of means. Fishermen catch fish by means of nets made of strings.[11] Animals are captured by employing animals as the means. Birds are caught by employing birds as the means. Elephants are taken by employing elephants. In this way the Soul may be apprehended by the principle of knowledge.[12] We have heard that only a snake can see a snake's legs. After the same manner one beholds, through Knowledge, the Soul encased in subtile form and dwelling within the gross body.[13] People cannot, through their senses, know the senses. Similarly mere Intelligence at its highest cannot behold the Soul which is supreme.[14] The moon, on the fifteenth day of the dark fortnight cannot be seen in consequence of its form being hid. It cannot be said, however, that destruction overtakes it. Even such is the case with the Soul dwelling in the body.[15] On the fifteenth day of the dark fortnight, the gross body

---

* The commentator uses the illustration of a tree. Before birth the tree was not; and after destruction, it is not; only in the interim, it is. Its formlessness or nothingness is manifest from these two states, for it has been said that that which did not exist in the past and will not exist in the future cannot be regarded as existing in the present. *Tadgatāh* is explained by the commentator as *udayāstamanagatāh* or *taddarçinah*.—T.

† Both the vernacular translators render the second line incorrectly. The first line is elliptical, and would be complete by supplying *āsannam paçyanti*. The paraphrase of the second line is *Pratyāsannam Jneyam Jnānābhisamhitam (prati) ninisante*. *Jneyam* is explained by the commentator as *prapancham*. *Jnānābhisamhitam* means that which is known by the name of Knowledge, *i. e.*, *Brahma*, which has many similar names some of which the commentator quotes such as Satyam (truth), *Jnānam* (knowledge), Anantam (infinite), Vijnānam (true knowledge), Anandam (joy or happiness).—T.

of the moon becomes invisible. After the same manner the Soul, when liberated from the body, cannot be apprehended.[16] As the moon, gaining another point in the firmament begins to shine once more, similarly the Soul, obtaining a new body, begins to manifest itself once more.[17] The birth, growth, and disappearance of the moon can all be directly apprehended by the eye. These phenomena, however, appertain to the gross form of that luminary. The like are not the attributes of the Soul.[18] The moon, when it shows itself after its disappearance on the fifteenth day of the dark fortnight, is regarded as the same luminary that had become invisible. After the same manner, notwithstanding the changes represented by birth, growth, and age, a person is regarded as the same individual without any doubt of his identity.[19] It cannot be distinctly seen how Rāhu approaches and leaves the moon. After the same manner the Soul cannot be seen how it leaves one body and enters another.*[20] Rāhu becomes visible only when it exists with the sun or the moon. Similarly the Soul becomes an object of apprehension only when it exists with the body.[21] When liberated from the sun or the moon, Rāhu can no longer be seen. Similarly, the Soul, liberated from the body, can no longer be seen.[22] Then again, as the moon, even when it disappears on the fifteenth day of the dark fortnight, is not deserted by the constellations and the stars, the Soul also, even though separated from the body, is not deserted by the fruits of the acts it has achieved in that body.—' "[23]

---

* *Tamas* is another name for Rāhu. The first line, therefore, refers to the manner in which an eclipse occurs. There is no absolute necessity, however, for taking it as an allusion to the eclipse. The meaning may be more general. Every day, during the lighted fortnight, the moon gains in appearance, as, indeed, every day, during the dark fortnight, it loses in appearance. It may, therefore, be said that darkness approaches it or leaves it for eating it away or discovering it more and more. The actual process of covering and discovering cannot be noticed. This circumstance may be taken as furnishing the simile. In verse 21. similarly, *tamas* is capable of a wider meaning. In 22, the word *Rahu* is used. It should be explained, however, that Rāhu is no imaginary

Section CCIV.

"'Manu said.—As in a dream this manifest (body) lies (inactive) and the enlivening spirit in its subtile form, detaching itself from the former, walks forth, after the same manner, in the state called deep slumber (or death), the subtile form with all the senses becomes inactive, and the Understanding, detached from it, remains awake. The same is the case with Existence and Non-Existence.*[1] As when a piece of water is clear, images reflected in it can be seen by the eye, after the same manner, if the senses be unperturbed, the Soul is capable of being viewed by the understanding.[2] If, however, the piece of water gets stirred, the person standing by it can no longer see those images. Similarly, if the senses become perturbed, the Soul can no longer be seen by the understanding.[3] Ignorance begets Delusion. Delusion affects the mind. When the mind becomes vitiated, the five senses which have

---

monster as the Purānas describe but the descending node of the moon, *i. e.*, a portion of space in and about the lunar orbit.—T.

* This is a very difficult verse and the distictions involved in it are difficult to catch. Of course, I follow the commentator in rendering it. What is said here is that in a dream, *Vyakta* (manifest body) lies inactive, while the *Chetanam* (the subtile form) walks forth. In the state called *Sushupti* (deep slumber which is like death), the *indriyasamyuktam* (the subtile form) is abandoned, and *Jnānam* (the Understanding), detached from the former, remains. After this manner, *abhava* (non-existence, *i. e.*, Emancipation) results from the destruction of *bhavah* or existence as subject to its known conditions of dependence on time, manner of apprehension, *&c.*, for Emancipation is absorption into the Supreme Soul which is independent of all the said conditions. The commentator explains that these observations become necessary to show that Emancipation is possible. In the previous section the speaker drew repeated illustrations for showing that the soul, to be manifest, depended on the body. The hearer is, therefore, cautioned against the impression that the soul's dependence on the body is of such an indissoluble kind that it is incapable of detachment from the body, which of course, is necessary for Emancipation or absorption into the Supreme Soul.—T.

the mind for their refuge become vitiated also.[4] Surcharged with Ignorance, and sunk in the mire of worldly objects, one cannot enjoy the sweets of contentment or tranquillity. The Soul (thus circumstanced), undetatched from its good and evil acts, returns repeatedly unto the objects of the world.[5] In consequence of sin one's thirst is never slaked. One's thirst is then slaked when one's sin is destroyed.[6] In consequence of attachment to worldly objects, which has a tendency to perpetuate itself, one wishes for things other than those for which one should wish, and accordingly fails to attain to the Supreme.*[7] From the destruction of all sinful deeds, knowledge arises in men. Upon the appearance of Knowledge, one beholds one's Soul in one's understanding even as one sees one's own reflection in a polished mirror.[8] One obtains misery in consequence of one's senses being unrestrained. One obtains happiness in consequence of one's senses being restrained. Therefore, one should restrain one's mind by self-effort from objects apprehended by the senses.†[9] Above the senses is the mind; above the mind is the understanding; above the understanding is the Soul; above the Soul is the Supreme or Great.[10] From the Unmanifest hath sprung the Soul; from the Soul hath sprung the understanding; from the understanding hath sprung the mind. When the mind becomes associated with the senses, then it apprehends sound and the other objects of the senses.[11] He who casts off those objects, as also all that are manifest, he who liberates himself from all things that arise from primordial matter, being so freed, enjoys immortality.‡[12] The Sun rising diffuses his rays. When he sets, he withdraws unto himself those very rays that were diffused by him.[13] After the same manner, the Soul, entering the body, obtains the fivefold

---

* *Cāçwatasya* is an instance of *Bhāvapradhānonirdeça*, *i. e.*, of a reference to the principal attribute connected by it.—T.

† *Indriaih rupyante* or *nirupyante*, hence *Indriyarupāni*.—T.

‡ The objects to be abandoned are those which the senses apprehend and those which belong to primordial matter. Those last, as distinguished from the former, are, of course, all the *linga* or subtile forms or existents which are made up of the *tanmātrā* of the grosser elements.—T.

objects of the senses by diffusing over them his rays represented by the senses. When, however, he turns back, he is said to set by withdrawing those rays unto himself.*[14] Repeatedly led along the path that is created by acts, he obtains the fruits of his acts in consequence of his having followed the practice of acts.†[15] Desire for the objects of the senses keeps away from a person who does not indulge in such desire. The very principle of desire, however, leaves him who has behold his soul, which, of course, is entirely free from desire‡.[16] When the Understanding, freed from attachment to the objects of the senses, becomes fixed in the mind, then does one succeed in attaining to *Brahma*, for it is there that the mind with the understanding withdrawn into it can possibly be extinguished.[17] *Brahma* is not an object of touch, or of hearing, or of taste, or of sight, or of smell, or of any deductive inference from the Known. Only the Understanding (when withdrawn from everything else) can attain to it.[18] All objects that the mind apprehends through the senses are capable of being withdrawn into the mind; the mind can be withdrawn into the understanding; the Understanding can be withdrawn into the Soul, and the Soul into the Supreme.¶[19] The senses cannot contribute to the success of the mind. The mind cannot apprehend the Understanding. The Understanding cannot apprehend the mani-

---

* Or, regains his real nature.—T.

† I adopt the Bombay reading *āptavān* instead of the Bengal reading *ātmavit*. *Pravittam Dharmam*, as explained previously, is that *Dharma* or practice in which there is *pravitti* and not *nivirtti* or abstention.—T.

‡ The sense is this: by abstaining from the objects of the senses one may conquer one's desire for them. But one does not succeed by that method in totally freeing oneself from the very principle of desire. It is not till one succeeds in beholding one's soul that one's principle of desire itself becomes suppressed.—T.

¶ The separate existence of an objective world is denied in the first clause here. All objects of the senses are said here to have only a subjective existence; hence the possibility of their being withdrawn into the mind. The latest definition of matter, in European philosophy, is that it is a permanent possibility of sensations.—T.

fested Soul. The Soul, however, which is subtile, beholds these all.—' "[20]

SECTION CCV.

" 'Manu said,—Upon the appearance of physical and mental sorrow, one does not become able to practise *yoga*. It is advisable, therefore, for one not to brood over such sorrow.[1] The medicine for sorrow is abstention from brooding over it. When sorrow is brooded over, it comes aggressively and increases in violence.[2] One should relieve mental sorrow by wisdom, while physical sorrow should be cured by medicaments. Wisdom teaches this. One should not, while under sorrow, behave like a child.[3] The man of wisdom should never cherish a desire for youth, beauty, length of life, accumulation of wealth, health, and the companionship of those that are dear, all of which are transitory.[4] One should not grieve singly for a sorrow that affects a whole community. Without grieving, one should, if one sees an opportunity, seek to apply a remedy.[5] Without doubt, the measure of sorrow is much greater than that of happiness in life. To one who is content with the objects of the senses, death that is disagreeable comes in consequence of his stupifaction.[6] That man who avoids both sorrow and happiness succeeds verily in attaining to *Brahma*. Such persons, who are possessed of wisdom, have never to grieve.*[7] Worldly possessions bring about sorrow. In protecting them thou canst not have any happiness. They are again earned with misery. One should not, therefore, regard their loss.†[8] Pure Knowledge (or *Brahma*) is regarded (by ignorance) as existing in the diverse forms that are) objects of Knowledge. Know that mind is only an attribute of Knowledge. When the mind becomes united with the faculties of knowledge, then the Understand-

---

* *Te* is explained by the commentator as *Brahmābhigatāh*. K. P. Singha wrongly renders the last foot of the second line. The Burdwan version is correct.—T.

† *Te* in the first line is equal to *taca*.—T.

ing (which bodies forth the forms of things) sets in.*[9] When the Understanding, freed from the attributes of action, becomes directed towards the mind (after being withdrawn from outward objects), then does it succeed in knowing *Brahma* by meditation or *yoga* ending in complete absorption (*samādhi*).[10] The Understanding, flowing from Ignorance, and possessed of the senses and attributes, runs towards external objects, like a river issuing from a mountain summit and flowing towards other regions.[11] When the Understanding, withdrawn into the mind, succeeds in absorbing itself into contemplation that is free from attributes, it attains to a knowledge of *Brahma* like the touch of gold on a touchstone.[12] The mind is the apprehender of the objects of the senses. It must first be extinguished (before *Brahma* can be attained). Dependent upon the attributes of objects that are before it, the mind can never show that which is without attributes.[13] Shutting up all the doors constituted by the senses, the Understanding should be withdrawn into the mind. In this state, when absorbed in contemplation, it attains to the knowledge of *Brahma*.[14] As the fivefold great creatures (in their gross form) upon the destruction of the attributes by which they are known, become withdrawn (into their subtile form called *Tanmātrā*), after the same manner the Understanding may dwell in the mind alone, with the senses all withdrawn from their objects.[15] When the Understanding, though possessed of the attribute of certainty, dwells in the mind, busied with the internal, even then it is nothing but the mind (without being anything superior to it).[16] When the mind or consciousness, which attains to excellence through contemplation, succeeds in identifying attributes with what are considered as their possessors, then can it cast off all attributes and attain to *Brahma* which is without attributes.†[17] There is no indication that is fit enough

---

* I follow the commentator in so far as he is intelligible. It is evident that the words *Jnanam* and *Jneyam* are used in the original not consistently throughout.—T.

† The meaning seems to be this: ordinary men regard all external

for yielding a knowledge of what is Unmanifest (*viz.*, *Brahma*). That which cannot form the subject of language, cannot be acquired by any one.[18] With cleansed soul, one should seek to approach the Supreme *Brahma*, through the aid afforded by penances, by inferences, by self-restraint, by the practices and observances as laid down for one's own order, and by the Vedas.[19] Persons of clear vision (besides seeing the Supreme within themselves) seek him in even external forms by freeing themselves from attributes. The Supreme, which is called by the name of *Jneya* (*viz.*, that which should be known), in consequence of the absence of all attributes or of its own nature, can never be apprehended by argument.[20] When the Understanding becomes freed from attributes then only can it attain to *Brahma*. When unemancipated from attributes, it falls back from the Supreme. Indeed, such is the nature of the understanding that it rushes towards attributes and moves among them like fire among fuel.[21] As in the state called *Sushupti* (deep and dreamless slumber) the five senses exist freed from their respective functions, after the same manner the Supreme *Brahma* exists high above *Prakriti*, freed from all its attributes.[22] Embodied creatures thus betake themselves to action in consequence of attributes. When they abstain therefrom, they attain to Emancipation. Some again (by action) go to heaven.[23] The living creature, primordial nature, the understanding, the objects of the senses, the senses, consciousness, conviction of personal identity, are called creatures (for they are subject to destruction).[24] The original creation of all these flowed from the Supreme. Their second or succeeding creation is due to the action of couples or pairs (of opposite sexes) and is confined to all things save the primal five,

---

objects as possessing an independent existence, and their attributes also as things different from the substances which own them. The first step to attain to is the conviction that attributes and substances are the same, or that the attributes are the substances. This accords with European *Idealism*. The next stage, of course, is to annihilate the attributes themselves by contemplation. The result of this is the attainment of *Brahma*.—T.

and is restrained by laws in consequence of which the same species produce the same species.[25] From righteousness (living) creatures obtain a high end, and from sinfulness they earn an end that is low. He who is unemancipated from attachments, encounters rebirth; while he who is emancipated therefrom, attains to Knowledge (or *Brahma*).—' "[26]

SECTION CCVI.

" 'Manu said,—When the fivefold attributes are united with the five senses and the mind, then is *Brahma* seen by the individual like a thread passing through a gem.[1] As a thread, again, may lie within gold or a pearl or a coral or any object made of earth,[2] even so one's soul, in consequence of one's own acts, may live within a cow, a horse, a man, an elephant, or any other animal, or within a worm or an insect.[3] The good deeds an individual performs in a particular body produce rewards that the individual enjoys in that particular body.[4] A soil, apparently drenched with one particular kind of liquid, supplies to each different kind of herb or plant that grows on it the sort of juice it requires for itself. After the same manner, the Understanding, whose course is witnessed by the Soul, is obliged to follow the path marked out by the acts of previous lives.*[5] From knowledge springs desire. From desire springs resolution. From resolution flows action. From action proceed fruits (*i. e.*, consequences good and bad).[6] Fruits, therefore, are dependent on actions as their cause. Actions have the understanding for their cause. The understanding has knowledge for its cause; and knowledge has the Soul for its cause.[7] That excellent result which is achieved in consequence of the destruction of knowledge, of fruits, of the understanding, and of acts, is called Knowledge of *Brahma*.†[8] Great and high is that self-

---

* *Antarâtmânudarçini* is explained by the commentator as "that which has the *Antarâtman* for its *anudarçin* or witness. The Burdwan translator is incorrect in rendering the second line.—T.

† The first 'knowledge' refers to the perception of the true connec-

existent Essence which yogins behold. They that are devoid of wisdom, and whose understandings are devoted to worldly possessions never behold that which exists in the Soul itself.[9] Water is superior to the Earth in extension ; Light is superior to Water ; Wind is superior to Light ;[10] Space is superior to Wind ; Mind is superior to Space ; Understanding is superior to Mind ; Time is superior to Understanding.[11] The divine Vishnu, whose is this universe, is superior to Time. That god is without beginning, middle, and end.[12] In consequence of his being without beginning, middle, and end, he is Unchangeable. He transcends all sorrow, for sorrow has limits.*[13] That Vishnu hath been called the Supreme *Brahma.* He is the refuge or object of what is called the Highest. Knowing Him, they that are wise, freed from everything that owns the power of Time, attain to what is called Emancipation.[14] All these (that we percieve) are displayed in attributes. That which is called *Brahma,* being without attributes, is superior to these † Abstention from acts is the highest religion. That religion is sure to lead to deathlessness (Emancipation).[15] The *Richs,* the *Yajuses,* and the *Sāmans,* have for their refuge the body. They flow from the end of the tongue. They cannot be acquired without effort and are subject to destruction.[16] *Brahma,* however, cannot be acquired in this way, for (without depending upon the body) it depends upon that (*viz.*, the knower or Soul) which has the body for its refuge. Without beginning, middle, or end, *Brahma* cannot be acquired by exertion (like to what is

---

tion between the Soul and the not-Soul. 'Fruits' mean the physical forms that are gained in new births. The destruction of the understanding takes place when the senses and the mind are withdrawn into it and all of them, united together, are directed towards the Soul. *Jneyapratishthitam Jnànam* means, of course, knowledge of *Brahma.*—T.

* The commentator explains that sorrow arises from the relation of the knower and the known. All things that depend upon that relation are transitory. They can form no part of what is eternal and what transcends that relation.—T.

† I take the obvious meaning, instead of the learned explanation offered by Nilakantha.—T.

necessary for the acquirement of the Vedas).[17] The *Richs*, the *Sāmans*, the *Yajuses*, have each a beginning. Those that have a beginning have also an end. But *Brahma* is said to be without beginning.[18] And because *Brahma* hath neither beginning nor end, it is said to be infinite and unchangeable. In consequence of unchangeableness, *Brahma* transcends all sorrow as also all pairs of opposites.[19] Through unfavorable destiny, through inability to find out the proper means, and through the impediments offered by acts, mortals succeed not in beholding the path by which *Brahma* may be reached.[20] In consequence of attachment to worldly possessions, of a vision of the joys of the highest heaven, and of coveting something other than *Brahma*, men do not attain to the Supreme.*[21] Others beholding worldly objects covet their possession. Desirous of such objects, they have no longing for *Brahma* in consequence of its transcending all attributes.†[22] How shall he that is attached to attributes which are inferior, arrive at a knowledge of Him that is possessed of attributes that are superior? It is by inference that one can arrive at a knowledge of Him that transcends all things in attributes and form.[23] By subtile intelligence alone can we know Him. We cannot describe Him in words. The mind is seizable by the mind, the eye by the eye‡.[24] By knowledge the understanding can be purified of its dross. The understanding may be employed for purifying the mind. By the mind should the senses be controlled. Achieving all this, one may attain to the Unchangeable.[25] One who has, by contemplation, become freed from attachments, and who has been enriched by the possession of a discerning mind, succeeds in attaining to *Brahma* which is without desire and

---

* The very *Yogins*, if led away by the desire of acquiring extraordinary powers and the beatitude of the highest heaven, do not behold the Supreme.—T.

† *Gunán*, literally, attributes; hence objects possessed of attributes.—T.

‡ That which is called the external world has no objective existence. It is purely subjective. Hence, it is the mind that sees and hears and touches the mind itself.—T.

above all attributes. As the wind keeps away from the fire that is embedded within a piece of wood, even so persons that are agitated (by desire for worldly possessions) keep away from that which is Supreme.[26] Upon the destruction of all earthly objects, the mind always attains to That which is higher than the Understanding ; while upon their separation the mind always acquires that which is below the Understanding. That person, therefore, who, in conformity with the method already described, becomes engaged in destroying earthly objects, attains to absorption into the body of *Brahma.**[27] Though the Soul is unmanifest, yet when clothed with qualities, its acts become manifest. When dissolution (of the body) comes, it once more becomes unmanifest. The Soul is really inactive. It exists, united with the senses that are productive of either happiness or sorrow.[28] United with all the senses and endued with body, it takes refuge in the five primal elements. Through want of power, however, it fails to act when deprived of force by the Supreme and Unchangeable.[29] No man sees the end of this Earth, but know this, *viz.*, that the Earth's end will surely come.† Man, agitated here (by at-

---

* This verse is a crux. There can be no doubt that Nilakantha's explanation is correct. Only, as regards *budhyavara* I am dispossed to differ from him very slightly. The grammar of the first line is thus: 'Gunādāne manah sadā budhiparāya ; viprayoge cha teshām budhyavarāya.' Now 'Gunādāna' means the 'ādāna' (destruction) of 'guna.' (The root dā means to cut). What is meant by the destruction of 'guna' or attributes or earthly objects is merging them in the *budhi* by *yoga* ; in other words, a withdrawal of the senses into the mind, and the senses and the mind into the understanding. "Viprayoge cha teshām" means 'in their separation,' *i. e.*, when these objects are believed to be real and as existing independently of the mind. The result of this would be the acquisition of 'budhyavara,' implying the acquisition of those very objects. In the case of yogins, whose minds may be in such a frame, the powers called 'aiçwaryya' are acquired. There is no especial necessity, however, for taking the case of yogins.—T.

† What is said here is that Happiness and Sorrow have an end, though it may not be seen, and the Soul will surely come to its final resting place. This accords with the doctrine of infinite spiritual improvement.—T.

tachments), is surely led to his last refuge like the wind leading a vessel tossed on the sea to a safe harbour at last.[30] The Sun, spreading his rays, becomes the possessor of an attribute, (*viz.*, the lighter of the world); withdrawing his rays (at the hour of setting), he once more becomes an object divested of attributes. After the same manner, a person, abandoning all distinctions (attachments), and betaking himself to penances, at last enters the indestructible *Brahma* which is divested of all attributes.[31] By discerning Him who is without birth, who is the highest refuge of all righteous persons, who is self-born, from whom everything springs and unto whom all things return, who is unchangeable, who is without beginning, middle, and end, and who is certainty's self and supreme, a person attains to immortality (Emancipation).—' "[32]

SECTION CCVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, O thou of great wisdom, I desire to hear in detail, O chief of the Bharatas, of that lotus-eyed and indestructible one, who is the Creator of everything but who has been created by none, who is called Vishnu (in consequence of his pervading everything), who is the origin of all creatures and unto whom all creatures return, who is known by the names of Nārāyana and Hrishikeça and Govinda and Keçava, and who is incapable of being vanquished by any one!'[1-2]

"Bhishma said,—'I have heard of this subject from Jamadagni's son Rāma while he discoursed on it, from the celestial *Rishi* Nārada, and from Krishna-Dwaipāyana.[3] Asita-Devala, O son, Vālmiki of austere penances, and Mārkandeya, speak of Govinda as the Most Wonderful and the Supreme.[4] Keçava, O chief of Bharata's race, is the divine and puissant Lord of all. He is called *Purusha*, and pervades everything, having made himself many.[5] Listen now, O Yudhishthira of mighty arms, to those attributes which great Brāhmanas say are to be met with in the high-souled wielder of *Çārnga*.[6] I shall also, O prince of men, recite to thee those acts which

persons conversant with old histories ascribe to Govinda.[7] He is said to be the Soul of all creatures, the high-souled one, and the foremost of all beings. He created (by his will) the fivefold elements, *viz.*, Wind, Light, Water, Space, and Earth.[8] That puissant Lord of all things, that high-souled one, that foremost of all beings, having created the Earth, laid himself down on the surface of the waters.[9] While thus floating upon the waters, that foremost of all beings, that refuge of every kind of energy and splendour, created Consciousness, the first-born of all beings in the universe.[10] We have heard that He created Consciousness along with the Mind,—Consciousness which is the refuge of all created things. That Consciousness upholds all creatures and both the past and the future.[11] After that great Being, O mighty-armed one, *viz.*, Consciousness, had sprung, an exceedingly beautiful lotus, possessed of effulgence like the Sun's, grew out of the navel of the Supreme Being (floating on the waters).[12] Then, O son, the illustrious and divine Brahman, the Grandsire of all creatures, sprang into existence from that lotus, irradiating all the points of the horizon with his effulgence.[13] After the high-souled Grandsire had, O mighty-armed one, thus sprung from the primeval lotus, a great *Asura* of the name of Madhu, having no beginning, started into birth, springing from the attribute of Darkness (*Tamas*).[14] The foremost of all Beings (*viz.*, the Supreme Divinity,) for benefiting Brahman, slew that fierce *Asura* of fierce deeds, engaged even then in the fierce act (of slaying the Grandsire).[15] From this slaughter, O son, (of the *Asura* named Madhu), all the gods and the Dānavas and men came to call that foremost of all righteous persons by the name of Madhusudana (slayer of Madhu).*[16] After this, Brahman created, by a fiat of his will, seven sons with Daksha completing the tale. They were Marichi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu,

---

* *Rishavam sarvasāttwām* literally means 'the bull of *Sāttwatas*.' Ordinarily, it is an appellation of Krishna, the prince of the *Sāttwatas* or Yādavas. Here, however, the word is used to signify persons prizing the attribute of Goodness; hence righteous persons.—T.

(and the already-mentioned Daksha).[17] The eldest born, *viz.*, Marichi, begat, by a fiat of his will, a son named Kaçyapa, full of energy and the foremost of all persons conversant with *Brahma*.[18] From his toe, Brahman had, even before the birth of Marichi, created a son. That son, O chief of Bharata's race, was Daksha, the progenitor of creatures.*[19] Unto Daksha were first born three and ten daughters, O Bhārata, the eldest of whom was called Diti.[20] Marichi's son Kaçyapa, O sire, who was conversant with all duties and their distinctions, who was of righteous deeds and great fame, became the husband of those thirteen daughters.[21] The highly blessed Daksha (besides the three and ten already spoken of) next begat ten other daughters. That progenitor of creatures, *viz.* the righteous Daksha, bestowed these upon Dharma.[22] Dharma became father of the Vasus, the Rudras of immeasurable energy, the Viçwedevas, the Sāddhyas, and the Maruts, O Bhārata.[23] Daksha next begat seven and twenty other younger daughters. The highly blessed Soma became the husband of them all.[24] The other wives of Kaçyapa gave birth to Gandharvas, horses, birds, kine, Kimpurushas, fishes, and trees and plants.[25] Aditi gave birth to the Ādityas, the foremost ones among the gods, and possessed of great strength. Amongst them Vishnu took birth in the form of a dwarf. Otherwise called Govinḍa, he became the foremost of them all.[26] Through his prowess, the prosperity of the gods increased. The Dānavas were vanquished. The offspring of Diti were the Asuras.[27] Danu gave birth to the Dānavas having Viprachitti for their foremost. Diti gave birth to all the Asuras of great strength.[28]

"'The slayer of Madhu also created the Day and the Night, and the Seasons in their order, and the Morn and the Even.[29] After reflection, he also created the clouds, and all the (other) immobile and mobile objects. Possessed of abundant energy, he also created the Viçwas and the Earth with all things upon her.[30] Then the highly blessed and puissant Krishna,

---

* *Prajāpati* literally means 'lord of creatures.' It is a name applied to those sons of Brahman who begat children.—T.

O Yudhishthira, once again created from his mouth a century of foremost Brāhmanas.[31] From his two arms, he created a century of Kshatriyas, and from his thighs a century of Vaiçyas. Then, O bull of Bharata's race, Keçava created from his two feet a century of Cudras.[32] Possessed of great ascetic merit, the slayer of Madhu, having thus created the four orders of men, made Dhātri (Brahman) the lord and ruler of all created beings.[33] Of immeasurable effulgence, Brahman became also the expositor of the knowledge of the Vedas. And Keçava made him called Virupāksha the ruler of the spirits and ghosts and of those female beings called the *Mātrikas* (mothers).[34] And he made Yama the ruler of the *Pitris* and of all sinful men.* The Supreme Soul of all creatures also make Kuvera the lord of all treasures.[35] He then created Varuna the lord of waters and governor of all acquatic animals. The puissant Vishnu made Vāsava the chief of all the deities.[36] In those times, men lived as long as they chose to live, and were without any fear of Yama.[37] Sexual congress, O chief of the Bharatas, was then not necessary for perpetuating the species. In those days, offspring were begotten by fiat of the will.[38] In the age that followed, *viz.*, Tretā, children were begotten by touch alone. The people of that age even, O monarch, were above the necessity of sexual congress.[39] It was in the next age, *viz.*, Dwāpara, that the practice of sexual congress originated, O king, to prevail among men. In the Kali age, O monarch, men have come to marry and live in pairs.[40]

"'I have now told thee of the supreme Lord of all creatures. He is also called the Ruler of all and everything. I shall now, O son of Kunti, speak to thee about the sinful creatures of the Earth. Listen to me!†[41] Those men, O king, are born in the southern region and are called An-

---

* *Samavartin* is another name for Yama the punisher of the wicked.—T.

† *Nirapekshān* is explained by Nilakantha as *nirayameva ikshante tān*, *i. e.* those who have their gaze directed towards hell alone. The Burdwan translator takes it as indicative of houseless or nomadic habits, upon what authority, it is not plain.—T.

dhrakas, Guhas, Pulindas, Cavaras, Chuchukas, Madrakas.*[42] Those that are born in the northern region, I shall also mention. They are Yaunas, Kāmvojas, Gāndhāras, Kirātas, and Barbbaras.[43] All of them, O sire, are sinful, and move on this Earth, characterised by practices similar to those of Chāndālas and ravens and vultures.[44] In the Krita age, O sire, they were nowhere on Earth. It is from the Treta that they have had their origin and began to multiply, O chief of Bharata's race.[45] When the terrible period came, joining Treta and the Dwāpara, the Kshatriyas, approaching one another, engaged in battle.†[46]

" 'Thus, O chief of Kuru's race, this universe was started into birth by the high-souled Krishna. That observer of all the worlds, *viz.*, the celestial *Rishi* Nārada, has said that Krishna is the Supreme God.‡[47] Even Nārada, O king, admits the supremacy of Krishna, and his eternity, O mighty-armed chief of Bharata's race.¶[48] Thus, O mighty-armed one, is Keçava of unvanquishable prowess. That lotus-eyed one is not a mere man. He is inconceivable !' "[49]

---

* K. P. Singha takes *Naravara* as the name of a tribe. Of course, it is a careless blunder.—T.

† I think K. P. Singha misunderstands this verse. All the texts agree in reading it in the same way. To take it, therefore, as implying that the sinful races, by warring with one another, suffered destruction is doing violence to the word *Rājānah*. There can be no doubt that *Sandhyākāla* means the period of junction between the two ages (Tretā and Dwāpara). It is called terrible. It was at this time that that dreadful famine occurred which compelled the royal sage Viçwāmitra to subsist on a canine haunch. *Vide ante.*—T.

‡ The correct reading is Mahātmanā (instrumental)implying *Krishna*. The Bengal reading *Mahātmavān* is vicious. K. P. Singha has rendered the verse correctly. The Burdwan translator, with Nilakantha's note before him (for he uses the very words of the commentator), adheres to the vicious reading and mistranslates the verse.—T.

¶ This verse evidently shows that there was dispute about Krishna's supremacy, as Professor Weber guesses. The Krishna-cult was at first confined among a small minority. Ciçupāla's and Jarāsandha's unwillingness to admit the divinity of Krishna distinctly points to this.—T.

SECTION CCVIII.

"Yudhishthira asked,—'Who were the first *Prajāpatis*, O bull of Bharata's race? What highly-blessed *Rishis* are there in existence and on which points of the compass do each of them dwell?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Hear me, O chief of the Bharatas, about what thou askest me! I shall tell thee who the *Prajāpatis* were and what *Rishis* are mentioned as dwelling on which point of the horizon.[2] There was at first one Eternal, Divine, and Self-born Brahman. The Self-born Brahman begat seven illustrious sons.[3] They were Marichi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and the highly-blessed Vaçishtha who was equal to the Self-born himself.[4] These seven sons have been mentioned in the *Purānas* as seven Brahmans. I shall now mention all the *Prajāpatis* who came after these.[5] In Atri's race was born the eternal and divine Varhi the ancient, who had penances for his origin. From Varhi the ancient sprang the ten *Prachetasas*.[6] The ten *Prachetasas* had one son between them, *viz.*, the Prajāpati called by the name of Daksha. This last has two names in the world, *viz.*, Daksha and Ka.[7] Marichi had one son called Kaçyapa. This last also has two names. Some call him Arishtanemi, and some Kaçyapa.[8] Atri had another son born of his loins, *viz.*, the handsome and princely Soma of great energy. He performed penances for a thousand celestial *Yugas*.[9] The divine Aryaman and they who were born unto him as his sons, O monarch, have been described as setters of commands, and creators of all creatures.[10] Caçavindu had ten thousand wives. Upon each of them their lord begat a thousand sons,'[11] and so the tale reached ten hundred thousand. Those sons refused to call any body else save themselves as *Prajāpati*.[12] The ancient Brāhmanas bestowed an appelletion on the creatures of the world, derived from Caçavindu. That extensive race of the Prajāpati Caçavindu became in time the progenitor of the Vrishni race.[13] These that I have mentioned are noted as the illustrious *Prajāpatis*. After this, I shall

mention the deities that are the lords of the three worlds.[14] Bhaga, Ança, Aryyaman, Mitra, Varuna, Sāvitri, Dhātri, Vivaswat of great might,[15] Tashtri, Pushan, Indra, and Vishnu known as the twelfth,—these are the twelve Ādityas, all sprung from Kaçyapa.[16] Nāsatya and Daçra are mentioned as the two Açwins. These two are the sons of the illustrious Mārtanda, the eighth in the above tale.[17] These were called first the gods and the two classes of *Pitris*. Tashtri had many sons. Amongst them were the handsome and famous Viçwarupa,[18] Ajaikapāt, Ahi, Bradhna, Virupāksha, and Raivata. Then there were Hara and Vahurupa, Tryamvaka the chief of the Deities,[19] and Sāvitrya, Jayanta and Pināki the invincible. The highly blessed Vasus, eight in number, have formerly been enumerated by me.[20] These were reckoned as gods at the time of the Prajāpati Manu. These were at first called the gods and the *Pitris*.[21] Amongst the Siddhas and the Sāddhyas there were two classes in consequence of conduct and youth. The deities were formerly considered to be of two classes, *viz.*, the *Ribhus* and the *Maruts*.[22] Thus have the *Viçwas*, the gods, and the Açwins, been ennumerated. Amongst them, the Ādityas are Kshatriyas, and the Maruts are Vaiçyas.[23] The two Açwins, engaged in severe penances, have been said to be Cudras. The deities sprung from Angirasa's line have been said to be Brāhmanas. This is certain.[24] Thus have I told thee about the fourfold order among the gods. The person who, after rising from his bed at morn, recites the names of these deities,[25] becomes cleansed of all his sins whether committed by himself intentionally or unintentionally, or whether born of his intercourse with others. Yavakrita, Raivya, Arvāvasu, Parāvasu,[26] Ausija, Kākshivat, and Vala, have been said to be the sons of Angiras. These, and Kanwa son of the *Rishi* Medhātithi, and Varhishada,[27] and the well-known seven *Rishis* who are the progenitors of the three worlds, all reside in the East. Unmucha, Vimucha, Sastyātreya of great energy,[28] Pramucha, Idhmavāha, and the divine Dridavrata, and Mitrāvaruna's son Agastya of great energy,[29] these regenerate *Rishis* all reside in the South. Ushangu, Karusha, Dhaumya,

Parivyādha of great energy,[30] and those great *Rishis* called Ekata, Dwita, and Trita, and Atri's son, *viz.*, the illustrious and puissant Sāraswat,[31] these high-souled ones reside in the West. Ātreya, and Vaçishtha, and the great *Rishi* Kāçyapa,[32] and Gautama, Bharadwāja, and Viçwāmitra the son of Kuçika, and the illustrious son of the high-souled Richika,[33] *viz.*, Jamadagni,—these seven live in the North. Thus have I told thee about the great *Rishis* of fiery energy that live in the different points of the compass.[34] Those high-souled ones are the witnesses of the universe, and are the creators of all the worlds. Even thus do they dwell in their respective quarters.[35] By reciting their names one is cleansed of all one's sins. A person by sojourning to those points becomes cleansed of all his sins and succeeds in returning home in safety.' "[36]

Section CCIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, O thou of great wisdom and invincible prowess in battle, I wish to hear in detail of Krishna who is immutable and omnipotent.[1] O bull among men, tell me truly everything about his great energy and the great feats achieved by him in days of old.[2] Why did that puissant one assume the form of an animal, and for achieving what particular act? Tell me all this, O mighty warrior!'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Formerly, on one occasion, while out ahunting, I arrived at the hermitage of Mārkandeya. There I beheld diverse classes of ascetics seated by thousands.[4] The *Rishis* honored me by the offer of honey and curds. Accepting their worship, I reverentially saluted them in return.[5] The following that I shall recite was narrated there by the great *Rishi* Kaçyapa. Listen with close attention to that excellent and charming account.[6] In former days, the principal *Dānavas*, endued with wrath and cupidity, and mighty *Asuras* having Naraka for their first, numbering by hundreds and drunk with might,[7] and innumerable other *Dānavas* that were invincible in battle, became exceedingly

jealous of the unrivalled prosperity of the gods.[8] Oppressed (at last) by the *Dānavas*, the gods and the celestial *Rishis*, failing to obtain peace, fled away in all directions.[9] The denizens of heaven saw the Earth looking like one sunk in sore distress. Overspread with mighty *Dānavas* of terrible mein, the Earth seemed to be oppressed with a heavy weight. Cheerless and grief-stricken, she seemed as if going down into the nether depths.[10] The Ādityas, struck with fear, repaired to Brahman, and addressing him, said,—How, O Brahman, shall we continue to bear these oppressions of the *Dānavas*?[11]—The Self-born answered them, saying,—I have already ordained what is to be done in this matter.[12] Endued with boons, and possessed of might, and swelling with pride, those senseless wretches do not know that Vishnu of invisible form,[13] that god incapable of being vanquished by the very deities all acting together, hath assumed the form of a boar. That Supreme Deity, rushing to the spot whither those wretches among *Dānavas*,[14] of terrible aspect, are dwelling in thousands below the Earth, will slay them all!—Hearing these words of the Grandsire, those foremost ones among the deities felt great joy.[15] Sometime after, Vishnu of mighty energy, encased in the form of a Boar, penetrating into the nether regions, rushed against those offspring of Diti.[16] Beholding that extraordinary creature, all the *Daityas*, uniting together and stupified by Time, quickly proceeded against it for exerting their strength, and stood surrounding it.[17] Soon after, they all rushed against that Boar and seized it simultaneously. Filled with rage they endeavoured to drag the animal from every side.[18] Those foremost of *Dānavas*, of huge bodies, possessed of mighty energy, swelling with strength, succeeded not, however, O monarch, in doing anything to that Boar.[19] At this they wondered much and then became filled with fear. Numbering in thousands, they regarded that their last hour had come.[20] Then that Supreme God of all the gods, having *yoga* for his soul and *yoga* for his companion, became rapt in *yoga*, O chief of the Bharatas, and began to utter tremendous roars, agitating, those Daityas and Dānavas.[21] All the worlds and the ten

points of the compass resounded with those roars, which, for this reason, agitated all creatures and filled them with fear.[22] The very gods with Indra at their head became terror-stricken. The whole universe became stilled in consequence of that sound. It was a dreadful time.[23] All mobile and immobile beings became stupified by that sound. The Dānavas, terrified by that sound,[24] began to fall down lifeless, paralysed by the energy of Vishnu. The Boar, with its hoofs, began to pierce those enemies of the gods, those denizens of the nether regions, and tear their flesh, fat, and bones.[25] In consequence of those tremendous roars, Vishnu came to be called by the name of *Sanātana.**[26] He is also called *Padmanābha.* He is the foremost of *yogins.* He is the Preceptor of all creatures, and their supreme Lord. All the tribes of the gods then repaired to the Grandsire.[27] Arrived at the presence, those illustrious ones addressed the Lord of the universe, saying,—What sort of noise is this, O puissant one? We do not understand it. Who is this one, or whose is this sound at which the universe hath been stupified?[28] With the energy of this sound or of its maker, the gods and the Dānavas have all been deprived of their senses![29]—Meanwhile, O mighty-armed one, Vishnu in his porcine form hove in sight of the assembled gods, his praises hymned by the great *Rishis.*[30]

"'The Grandsire said,—That is the Supreme God, the Creator of all beings, the Soul of all creatures, the foremost of all *yogins.* Of huge body and great strength, he cometh here, having slain the foremost ones among the Dānavas.[31] He is the Lord of all beings, the master of *yoga*, the great ascetic, the Soul of all living beings. Be still, all of you! He is Krishna, the destroyer of all obstacles and impediments.†[32] That Supreme God, of immeasurable splendour, that great refuge of all blessings, having achieved a most

---

* This is certainly a very fanciful etymology of the word *Sanātana* which ordinarily implies eternal.—T.

† *Atmā Atmanah* is explained by Nilakantha as *jibasya pāramārthikam swarupam.*—T.

difficult feat that is incapable of being accomplished by others, has returned to his own unmixed nature.*[33] It is He from whose navel the primeval lotus had sprung. He is the foremost of *yogins*. Of supreme soul, He is the creator of all beings. There is no need for sorrow or fear or grief, ye foremost of gods![34] He is the Ordainer. He is the Creating Principle. He is all-destroying Time. It is He who upholds all the worlds. These roars that have alarmed you are being uttered by that high-souled one.[35] Of mighty arms, He is the object of universal worship. Incapable of deterioration, that lotus-eyed one is the origin of all beings and their lord.—' "[36]

Section CCX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O sire, that high *yoga* by which, O Bhārata, I may obtain Emancipation! O foremost of speakers, I desire to know everything about that *yoga* truly.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse between a preceptor and his disciple on the subject of Emancipation.[2] There was a regenerate preceptor who was the foremost of *Rishis*. He looked like a mass of splendour. Possessed of a high soul, he was firm in truth and a complete master of his senses.[3] Once on a time, a disciple of great intelligence and close attention, desirous of obtaining what was for his highest good, touched the preceptor's feet, and standing with joined hands before him, said,[4]—If, O illustrious one, thou hast been gratified with the worship I have offered thee, it behoveth thee to solve a great doubt of mine![5] Whence am I and whence art thou? Tell me this fully. Tell me also what is the final cause. Why also, O best of regenerate ones, when the material cause in all beings is the same, their origin and destruction happen in such dissimilar ways? It beseems thee, O thou of great learning, also to explain the object of the declarations in the Vedas (about the difference of rites in

---

* *Swamātmānam* is *Pratyakyāthātmyam*.—T.

respect of different classes of men), the meaning of the injunctions of the *Smritis* and of those injunctions which apply to all classes of men !*—[6-7]

" 'The preceptor said,—Listen, O disciple, O thou of great wisdom ! This that thou hast asked me is undisclosed in the very Vedas and is the highest subject for thought or discourse. It is called *Adhyātma* and is the most valuable of all branches of learning and of all sacred institutes.[8] Vāsudeva is the Supreme (cause) of the universe. He is the origin of the Vedas (*viz., Om*). He is Truth, Knowledge, Sacrifice, Renunciation, Self-restraint, and Righteousness.[9] Persons conversant with the Vedas know Him as All-pervading, Eternal, Omnipresent, the Creator and the Destroyer, the Unmanifest, *Brahma,* Immutable.[10] Hear now from me the story of Him who took his birth in Vrishni's race. A Brāhmana should hear the greatness of that God of gods, *viz.,* Him called Vishnu of immeasurable energy, from the lips of Brāhmanas. A person of the royal order should hear it from persons of that order. One who is a Vaiçya should hear it from Vaiçyas, and a high-souled Cudra should hear it from Cudras.[11-12] Thou deservest to hear it. Listen now to the auspicious account of Krishna, that narrative which is foremost of all narratives. Vāsudeva is the Wheel of Time, without beginning and without end. Existence and Non-existence are the attributes by which His real nature is known.[13] The universe revolves like a wheel, depending upon that Lord of all beings. O best of men, Keçava, that foremost of all beings, is said to be that which is Indestructible, that which is Unmanifest, that which is Immortal, *Brahma,* and Immutable.[14] The highest of the high, and without change or deterioration himself, he created the *Pitris,* the gods, the *Rishis.* the *Yakshas,* the *Rākshasas,* the *Nāgas,* the *Asuras,* and human beings.[15] It is He who also created the Vedas and the eternal duties and customs of men. Hav-

---

* The sense is that when all men are equal in respect of their material cause, why are such differences in the *crutis* and the *smritis* about the duties of men ?—T.

ing reduced everything into non-existence, he once more, in the beginning of a (new) *yuga*, creates *Prakriti* (primordial matter).[16] As the diverse phenomena of the several seasons appear one after another according to the season that comes, after the like manner creatures start forth into existence at the beginning of every (celestial) *yuga*.[17] Corresponding with those creatures that start into life is the knowledge of rules and duties that have for their object the regulation of the world's course.*[18] At the end of every (celestial) *yuga* (when universal destruction sets in) the Vedas and all other scriptures disappear (like the rest). In consequence of the grace of the Self-born, the great *Rishis*, through their penances, first re-acquire the lost Vedas and the scriptures.[19] The Self-born (Brahman) first acquired the Vedas. Their branches called the *Angas* were first acquired by (the celestial preceptor) Vrihaspati. Bhrigu's son (Cukra) first acquired the science of morality that is so beneficial for the universe.[20] The science of music was acquired by Nārada; that of arms by Bharadwāja; the history of the celestial *Rishis* by Gargya; that of medicine by the dark-complexioned son of Atri.[21] Diverse other *Rishis*, whose names are connected therewith, promulgated diverse other sciences such as Nāya, (Vaiçeshika, Sānkhya, Pātanjala, &c.). Let that *Brahma* which those *Rishis* have indicated by arguments drawn from reason, by means of the Vedas, and by inferences drawn from the direct evidence of the senses, be adored.[22] Neither

---

* The meaning seems to be this: in the beginning of every celestial *yuga*, *i. e.*, when the Supreme Being awaking from sleep desires to create creatures anew, all creatures or beings start again into life. With such starting of every being, the rules that regulate their relations and acts also spring up, for without a knowledge of those rules, the new creation will soon be a chaos and come to an end. Thus when man and woman start into life, they do not eat each other but combine to perpetuate the species. With the increase of the human species, again, a knowledge springs up in every breast of the duties of righteousness and of the diverse other practices, all of which help to regulate the new creation till the Creator himself, at the end of the *yuga*, once mo re withdraws everything into himself.—T.

the gods nor the *Rishis* were (at first) able to apprehend *Brahma* which is without beginning and which is the highest of the high. Only the divine creator of all things, *viz.*, the puissant Nārāyana, had knowledge of *Brahma.*[23] From Nārāyana, the *Rishis*, the foremost ones among the deities and the *Asuras*, and the royal sages of old, derived the knowledge of that highest medicine for the cure of sorrow.[24] When primordial matter produces existences through the action of the primal energy, the universe with all its potencies begins to flow from it.[25] From one lighted lamp thousands of other lamps are capable of being lighted. After the same manner, primordial matter produces thousands of existent things. In consequence, again, of its infinity, primordial matter is never exhausted.[26] From the Unmanifest flows the Understanding determined by acts. The Understanding produces Consciousness. From Consciousness proceeds Space. From Space proceeds Wind.[27] From the Wind proceeds Heat. From Heat proceeds Water, and from Water is produced the Earth. These eight constitute primordial *Prakriti.* The universe rests on them.[28] From those Eight have originated the five organs of knowledge, the five organs of action, the five objects of the (first five) organs, and the one, *viz.*, the Mind, forming the sixteenth, which is the result of their modification.[29] The ear, the skin, the two eyes, the tongue, and the nose are the five organs of knowledge. The two feet, the lower duct, the organ of generation, the two arms, and speech, are the five organs of action.[30] Sound, touch, form, taste, and smell are the five objects of the senses, covering all things. The Mind dwells upon all the senses and their objects.[31] In the perception of taste, the Mind it is that becomes the tongue, and in speech it is the Mind that becomes words. Endued with the different senses, it is the Mind that becomes all the objects that exist in its apprehension.[32] These sixteen, existing in their respective forms, should be known as deities. These worship Him who creates all knowledge and dwells within the body.[33] Taste is the attribute of water; scent is the attribute of earth; hearing is the attribute of space; vision is the attribute of fire

or light ;[34] and touch should be known as the attribute of the wind. This is the case with all creatures at all times.[35] The Mind, it has been said, is the attribute of existence. Existence springs from the Unmanifest (or *Prakriti*) which, every intelligent person should know, rests in That which is the Soul of all existent beings.[36] These existences, resting upon the supreme Divinity that is above *Prakriti* and that is without any inclination for action, uphold the entire universe of mobiles and immobiles.[37] This sacred edifice of nine doors* is endued with all these existences. That which is high above them, *viz.*, the Soul, dwells within it, pervading it all over. For this reason it is called *Purusha*.[38] The Soul is without decay and not subject to death. It has knowledge of what is manifest and what is unmanifest. It is again all-pervading, possessed of attributes, subtile, and the refuge of all existences and attributes.[39] As a lamp discovers all objects great or small (irrespective of its own size), after the same manner the Soul dwells in all creatures as the principle of knowledge (regardless of the attributes or accidents of those creatures).[40] Urging the ear to hear what it hears, it is the Soul that hears. Similarly employing the eye, it is the Soul that sees. This body furnishes the means by which the Soul derives knowledge. The bodily organs are not the doers, but it is the Soul that is the doer, of all acts.[41] There is fire in wood, but it can never be seen by cutting open a piece of wood. After the same manner, the Soul dwells within the body, but it can never be seen by dissecting the body.[42] The fire that dwells in wood may be seen by employing proper means, *viz.*, rubbing the wood with another piece of wood. After the same manner, the Soul which dwells within the body may be seen by employing proper means, *viz.*, *yoga*.[43] Water must exist in rivers. Rays of light are always attached to the sun. After the same manner, the Soul has a body. This connection does not cease because of the constant succession of bodies that the Soul has to enter.†[44]

---

* *I. e.*, the body.—T.

† What is meant seems to be this: there can be no river without

In a dream, the Soul, endued with the fivefold senses, leaves the body and roves over wide areas. After the same manner, when death ensues, the Soul (with the senses in their subtile forms) passes out of one body for entering another.[45] The Soul is bound by its own former acts. Bound by its own acts done in one state of existence, it attains to another state. Indeed, it is led from one into another body by its own acts which are very powerful in respect of their consequences.[46] How the owner of a human body, leaving off his body, enters another, and then again into another, how, indeed, the entire range of beings is the result of their respective acts (of past and present lives), I will presently tell you.' "[47]

Section CCXI.

"Bhishma said,—'All immobile and mobile beings, distributed into four classes, have been said to be of unmanifest birth and unmanifest death. Existing only in the unmanifest Soul, the Mind is said to possess the attributes of the unmanifest.*[1] As a vast tree is ensconced within a small unblown *Açwatha* flower and becomes observable only when it comes out, even so birth takes place from what is unmanifest.[2] A piece of iron, which is inanimate, runs towards a piece of loadstone. Similarly, inclinations and propensities due to natural instincts, and all else, run towards the Soul in a

---

water. A river cannot exist without water. When a river is mentioned, water is implied. The connection between a river and water is not an accident but a necessary one. The same may be said of the sun and its rays. After the same manner, the connection between the Soul and the body is a necessary one and not an accident. The Soul cannot exist without a body. Of course, the ordinary case only is referred to here, for by *yoga*, one can dissociate the Soul from the body and incorporate it with *Brahma*.—T.

* The mind has no existence except as it exists in the Soul. The commentator uses the illustration of the second moon seen by the eye in water &c., for explaining the nature of the mind. It has no real existence as dissociated from the Soul.—T.

new life.*[3] Indeed, even as those propensities and possessions born of Ignorance and Delusion, and inanimate in respect of their nature, are united with the Soul when reborn, after the same manner, those other propensities and aspirations of the Soul that have their gaze directed towards *Brahma* become united with it, coming to it directly from *Brahma* itself.†[4] Neither earth, nor sky, nor heaven, nor things, nor the vital breaths, nor virtue and vice, nor anything else, existed before, save the Chit-Soul. Nor have they any necessary connection with even the Chit-Soul defiled by Ignorance.‡[5] The Soul

---

* 'Swabhāvahetujā bhāvāh' is explained by the commentator as the virtuous and vicious propensities. (Swabhāva purvasamskāra ; sa eva heturyeshām karmanām tajjāh bhāvāh). 'All else,' of course, means Avidyā or Māyā, which flows directly from *Brahma* without being dependent on past acts. The meaning then is this: as soon as the Soul takes a new form or body, all the propensities and inclinations, as dependent on its past acts, take possession of it. Avidyā or Māyā also takes possession of it.—T.

† Both the vernacular translators have wrongly rendered this verse, notwithstanding the help they have derived from Nilakantha's gloss. The fact is, the gloss itself sometimes requires a gloss. Verses 3 and 4 are connected with each other. In verse 3, the speaker mentions two analogies, *viz.*, first, that of iron, which is inanimate, following the loadstone, and, second, of 'Swabhāvahetujā bhāvāh,' (meaning, as already explained, all such consequences as are born of the acts of previous lives), as also 'anyadapi,' *i. e.*, all else of a similar nature, meaning, of course, the consequences of 'Avidyā' or 'Māya' which flow directly from *Brahma* instead of former acts. In verse 4, reference is again made to 'avyaktajābhavāh,' meaning propensities and possessions born of 'Avidyā' or 'Māyā.' This is only a repetition, in another form, of what has already been stated in the second line of verse 3. The commentator explains this very clearly in the opening words of his gloss. *After* this comes the reference to the higher propensities and aspirations that are in the Soul. The grammar of the line is this: 'Tadvat kartuh kāranalakshanāh (bhāvāh) kāranāt abhisanghatāh.' The plain meaning, of course, is that like all the darker and indifferent propensities and possessions that come to the Soul in its new life, born of the acts of past lives, all the higher aspirations also of the Soul come to it from *Brahma* direct. The word 'kārana' is used in both instances for *Brahma* as the Supreme Cause of everything.—T.

‡ The sense is this: In the beginning there was nothing save the

is eternal. It is indestructible. It occurs in every creature. It is the cause of the Mind. It is without attributes. This universe that we perceive hath been declared (in the Vedas) to be due to Ignorance or Delusion. The Soul's apprehensions of form, &c., are due to past desires.*[6] The Soul, when it becomes endued with those causes (*viz.*, desires), is lead to the state of its being engaged in acts. In consequence of that condition, (for those acts again produce desires to end in acts anew and so on),—this vast wheel of existence revolves, without beginning and without end.†[7] The Unmanifest, *viz*, the Understanding with the desires), is the nave of that wheel.

Chit-Soul. Existent objects exist only because of Ignorance having defiled the Soul. Their connection again with the Soul is not absolute and necessary. That connection may be destroyed without the Soul losing anything. What is intended to be conveyed by this verse is that at first, *i. e.* before the creation, there was nothing, except *jiva* or the Soul with Knowledge alone for its indicating attribute. The things mentioned, *viz.*, Earth, &c., were not. Nor do they inhere to *jiva* with even Ignorance or Delusion for its indicating attribute, *i. e.*, to the *born* Soul. The born Soul may seem to manifest all those attributes, but it is really independent of or separate from them. Their connection with the Soul, as already said, is neither absolute nor eternal. In the next verse, the speaker explains the nature of those manifestations.—T.

* The connection between Earth, &c., with the Soul has before been said to be neither absolute nor eternal. Whence then that connection? In 6, it is said that all the apprehensions of the Soul with regard to earth, &c., are due to Ignorance or Delusion flowing directly from *Brahma* and assailing it thereafter. The apprehension of the Soul that it is a man or an animal, that it has a body, that it is acting, &c., are, to borrow the commentator's illustration, just like that of one's being a king in a dream who is not, however, really a king, or of one's being a child who is not, however, really a child. Being eternal or without beginning, its first existence under the influence of Delusion is untraceable. As long, again, as it has Knowledge alone for its attribute, it remains indestructible, *i. e.*, free from the mutations of existence. It occurs in every creature, *i. e.*, in man and beast.—T.

† The sense seems to be this: In consequence of desires the Soul manifests itself in some form of existence. In that state it acts. Those acts again lead to desires anew, which, in their turn, bring on new forms or states of existence. The circle of existence or life thus goes on, without beginning and without end.—T.

The Manifest, (*i. e.*, the body with the senses), constitutes its assemblage of spokes. The perceptions and acts from its circumference. Propelled by the quality of *Rajas* (Passion), the Soul presides over it (witnessing its revolutions).[8] Like oilmen pressing oilseeds in their machine, the consequences born of Ignorance, assailing the universe (of creatures) which is moistened by *Rajas*, press or grind it in that wheel.[9] In that succession of existences, the living creature, seized by the idea of Self in consequence of desire, engages in acts. In the union of cause and effect, those acts again become (new) causes.*[10] Effects do not enter into causes. Nor do causes enter into effects. In the production of effects, Time is the Cause.[11] The primordial essences (eight in number as mentioned before), and their modifications (sixteen in number), fraught with causes, exist in a state of union, in consequence of their being always presided over by the Soul.[12] Like dust following the wind that moves it, the creature-Soul, divested of body, but endued still with inclinations born of Passion and Darkness and with principles of causes constituted by the acts of the life that is over, moves on, following the direction that the Supreme Soul gives it.[13] The Soul, however, is never touched by those inclinations and propensities. Nor are these touched by the Soul that is superior to them. The wind, which is naturally pure, is never stained by the dust it bears away.†[14] As the wind is truly separate from the dust it bears away, even so, the man of wisdom should know, is the connection between that which is called existence or life and the Soul. No one should

---

* The Cause is Ignorance. The Effect is the body and the senses or a particular form of existence. When the creature, in consequence of this union, engages in acts, these latter become causes for new states of existence.—T.

† The object of this verse is to reiterate the doctrine that the possession of the body and the senses, &c., does not alter the state of the Soul. The Soul is really unattached to these though it may apparently exist in a state of union with them, like the wind, which existing in a state of apparent union with the dust it bears away is even at such times pure by itself and as a substance, exists separately.—T.

take it that the Soul, in consequence of its apparent union with the body and the senses and the other propensities and beliefs and unbeliefs, is really endued therewith as its neccessary and absolute qualities. On the other hand, the Soul should be taken as existing in its own nature.[15] Thus did the divine *Rishi* solve the doubt that had taken possession of his disciple's mind. Notwithstanding all this, people depend upon means consisting of acts and scriptural rites for casting off misery and winning happiness.[16] Seeds that are scorched by fire do not put forth sprouts. After the same manner, if everything that contributes to misery be consumed by the fire of true knowledge, the Soul escapes the obligation of rebirth in the world.' "[17]

Section CCXII.

"Bhishma said,—'Persons engaged in the practice of acts regard the practice of acts highly. Similarly, those that are devoted to Knowledge do not regard anything other than Knowledge.[1] Persons fully conversant with the Vedas and depending upon the utterances contained in them, are rare. They that are more intelligent desire the path of abstention from acts as the better of the two, *viz.*, heaven and emancipation.*[2] Abstention from acts is observed by those that are possessed of great wisdom. That conduct, therefore, is laudable. The intelligence which urges to abstention from acts, is that by which one attains to Emancipation.[3] Possessed of body, a person, through folly, and endued with wrath and cupidity and all the propensities born of Passion and Darkness, becomes attached to all earthly objects.[4] One,

---

* The Vedas contain declarations of both kind, *i. e.*, they urge to action as also to abstention from action. The former is necessary as a stepping stone to the latter. Such men are rare as understand the declarations of the Vedas in this way and as conform by their conduct to those declarations thus. What is seen, on the other hand, is that some betake themselves to acts and some to abstention from acts. The second line of the verse has been expanded a little in the translation, following Nilakantha's gloss.—T.

therefore, who desires to destroy one's connection with the body, should never indulge in any impure act. On the other hand, one should create by one's acts a path for attaining to emancipation, without wishing for regions of felicity (in the next world).*[5] As gold, when united with iron, loses its purity and fails to shine, even so Knowledge, when existing with attachment to earthly objects and such other faults, fails to put forth its splendour.†[6] He who, influenced by cupidity and following the dictates of desire and wrath, practises unrighteousness, transgressing the path of righteousness, meets with complete destruction.‡[7] One who is desirous of benefiting oneself should never follow, with excess of attachments, earthly possessions represented by the objects of the senses. If one does it, wrath and joy and sorrow arise from one another (and make one miserable).[8] When every one's body is made up of the five original elements as also of the three attributes of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness, whom shall one adore and whom shall one blame with what words?[9] Only they that are fools become attached to the objects of the senses. In consequence of folly they do not know that their bodies are only modifications of earth.§[10] As a house made of earth is plastered over with earth, even so this body which is made of earth is kept from destruction by food which is only a modification of earth.[11] Honey and oil and milk and butter and meat and salt and treacle and grain of all kinds and fruit and roots are all modifications

---

* *Deha-yāpanam* means destruction of the connection the body has with the soul. In the second line, the performance of acts is prescribed only as a preparation, for acts contribute to purity of the Soul. Acts should not, the speaker says, be performed from desire of fruit, *viz.*, heaven, by one desirous of Emancipation. K. P. Singha omits the first line of the verse, but gives the sense of the second line correctly. The Burdwan translator misunderstands the gloss he quotes and makes nonsense of the verse.—T.

† *Vipakkam* is explained by Nilakantha as *pākahinam*; and *apakka-kashāyākhyam* as *apakka-kashāye pumsi ākhyā upadeçah yasya tam &c.*—

‡ *Anuplavan* is *anusaran*; *ākramya* means *upamridya*.—T.

§ *Vijnāna* here means the loss or absence of knowledge.—T.

of earth and water.[12] Recluses living in the wilderness, giving up all longing (for rich and savoury food), take simple food, that is again unsavoury, for only supporting the body.[13] After the same manner, a person that dwells in the wilderness of the world, should be ready for labour and should take food for passing through life, like a patient taking medicine.*[14] A person of noble soul, examining all things of an earthly nature that come upon him, by the aid of truth, purity, candour, a spirit of renunciation, enlightenment, courage, forgiveness, fortitude, intelligence, reflection, and austerities, and desirous of obtaining tranquillity, should restrain his senses.[15-16] All creatures, stupified, in consequence of Ignorance, by the attributes of Goodness and Passion and Darkness, are continually revolving like a wheel.[17] All faults, therefore, that are born of Ignorance, should be closely examined and the idea of Self, which has its origin in Ignorance, and which is productive of misery, should be avoided.[18] The fivefold elements, the senses, the attributes of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness, the three worlds with the Supreme Being himself, and acts, all rest on Self-consciousness.†[19] As Time, under its own laws, always displays the phenomena of the seasons one after another, even so one should know that Consciousness in all creatures is the inducer of acts.‡[20] *Tamas* (from which proceeds Consciousness) should be known as productive of delusions. It is like

---

* *Yāthārtham*, *i. e.*, for the true objects of his life, *viz.*, for acting righteously and accomplishing emancipation.—T.

† At first there was only *jiva* or the Soul having knowledge alone for its attribute. When it became clothed with Ignorance, the universe sprang up around it. Consciousness is due to that union of the Soul with Ignorance. Hence, all things rest on Consciousness, and Consciousness is the root of all sorrow.—T.

‡ The sense of this verse seems to be this: if all things rest on Consciousness which is an attribute of Ignorance or Delusion, why then this uniformity instead of the irregularity that characterises all perceptions in dreams? The answer is that the uniformity is the result of past acts, of acts which are due to Consciousness. These produce uniformity of perceptions even as time, subject to its own laws, produces the phenomena of the seasons with uniformity.—T.

Darkness and is born of Ignorance. To the three attributes of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness are attached all the joys and sorrows (of creatures).[21] Listen now to those consequences that spring from the attributes of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness. Contentment, the satisfaction that arises from joy, certainty, intelligence, and memory,—these are the consequences born of the attribute of Goodness. I shall now mention the consequences of Passion and Darkness.[22] Desire, wrath, error, cupidity, stupifaction, fear, and fatigue, belong to the attribute of Passion. Cheerlessness, grief, discontent, vanity, pride, and wickedness, all belong to Darkness.[23] Examining the gravity or lightness of these and other faults that dwell in the Soul, one should reflect upon each of them one after another (for ascertaining which of them exist, which have become strong or weak, which have been driven off, and which remain).'[24]

"Yudhishthira said,—'What faults are abandoned by persons desirous of Emancipation? What are those that are weakened by them? What are the faults that come repeatedly (and are, therefore, incapable of being got rid of)? What, again, are regarded as weak, through stupifaction, (and, therefore, as permissible)?[25] What, indeed, are those faults upon whose strength and weakness a wise man should reflect with the aid of intelligence and of reasons? I have doubts upon these subjects. Discourse to me on these, O grandsire!'[26]

"Bhishma said,—'A person of pure Soul, by extracting all his faults by their roots, succeeds in obtaining Emancipation. As an axe made of steel cuts a steel chain (and accomplishing the act becomes broken itself), after the same manner, a person of cleansed Soul, destroying all the faults that spring from Darkness and that are born with the Soul (when it is reborn), succeeds in dissolving his connection with the body (and attaining Emancipation).*[27] The qualities having

* I have expanded the last line for bringing out the meaning of the word *naçyati* clearly. Of course, I follow Nilakantha's explanation of the simile.—T.

their origin in Passion, those that spring from Darkness, and those stainless ones characterised by purity, (*viz.*, those included under the quality of Goodness), constitute as it were the seed from which all embodied creatures have grown. Amongst these, the attribute of Goodness alone is the cause through which persons of cleansed Souls succeed in attaining to Emancipation.[28] A person of cleansed soul, therefore, should abandon all the qualities born of Passion and Darkness. Then again when the quality of Goodness becomes freed from those of Passion and Darkness, it becomes more resplendent still.[29] Some say that sacrifices and other acts performed with the aid of *mantras*, and which certainly contribute to the purification of the Soul, are evil or cruel acts. (This view is not correct.) On the other hand, those acts are the chief means for dissociating the Soul from all worldly attachments, and for the observance of the religion of tranquillity.[30] Through the influence of the qualities born of Passion, all unrighteous acts are performed, and all acts fraught with earthly purposes as also all such acts as spring from desire are accomplished.[31] Through qualities born of Darkness, one does all acts fraught with cupidity and springing from wrath. In consequence of the attribute of Darkness, one embraces sleep and procrastination and becomes addicted to all acts of cruelty and carnal pleasure.[32] That person, however, who, possessed of faith and scriptural knowledge, is observant of the attribute of Goodness, attends only to all good things and becomes endued with (moral) beauty and a soul free from every taint.' "[33]

Section CCXIII.

"Bhishma said,—'From the attribute of Passion arises delusion or loss of judgment. From the attribute of Darkness, O bull of Bharata's race, arise wrath and cupidity and fear and pride. When all these are destroyed, one becomes pure.[1] By obtaining purity, a person succeeeds in arriving at the knowledge of the Supreme Soul which is resplendent with effulgence, incapable of deterioration, without change,

pervading all things, having the unmanifest for his refuge, and the foremost of all the deities.[3] Invested in His *māyā*, men fall away from knowledge and become senseless, and in consequence of their knowledge being darkened, yield to wrath.*[3] From wrath, they become subject to desire. From desire spring cupidity and delusion and vanity and pride and selfishness. From such selfishness proceed various kinds of acts.†[4] From acts spring diverse bonds of affection and from those bonds of affection springs sorrow or misery and from acts fraught with joy and sorrow proceeds the liability to birth and death.‡[5] In consequence of the obligation of birth, the liability is incurred of a residence within the womb, due to the union of vital seed and blood. That residence is defiled with excreta and urine and phlegm, and always fouled with blood that is generated there.[6] Overwhelmed by thirst, the Chit-Soul becomes bound by wrath and the rest that have been enumerated above. It seeks, however, to escape those evils. In respect of this, women must be regarded as instruments which set the stream of Creation agoing.[7] By their nature, women are *Kshetra*, and men are *Kshetrajna* in respect of attributes. For this reason, persons of wisdom should not pursue women in especial (among other objects of the world).$[8] Indeed, women are like frightful *mantra-*

---

* In the *Crutis* it is said that *Brahma* has two attributes, Vidyā (Knowledge), and Avidyā (Ignorance) with Māyā (delusion). It is in consequence of this Māyā that *chit-souls* or *jivas* become attached to worldly things. It is in consequenee of this Māya that persons, even when they understand that all is nought, cannot totally dissociate themselves from them.—T.

† *Māna* is explained by the commentator as worship of one's own self ; *Darpa* is freedom from all restraints ; and *Ahankāra* is a complete disregard of others and centering all thoughts on one's own self. Here *Ahankāra* is *not* Consciousness.—T.

‡ *Kritalakshanāh* is explained by the commentator as *Kritaswikārāh*.—T.

$ The force of the simile lies in this: *Prakriti* binds *Kshetrajna* or the Soul and obliges it to take birth, &c. Women are *Prakriti*, men are Souls. As the Soul should seek to avoid the contact of *Prakriti* and strive for emancipation, even so should men seek to avoid women. It should be added that women, in almost all the dialects of India

powers. They stupify persons reft of wisdom. They are sunk in the attribute of Passion. They are the eternal embodiment of the senses.*[9] In consequence of the keen desire that men entertain for women, offspring proceed from them, due to (the action of) the vital seed. As one casts off from one's body such vermin as take their birth there but as are not on that account any part of oneself, even so should one cast off those vermin of one's body that are called children, who, though regarded as one's own, are not one's own in reality.[10] From the vital seed as from sweat (and other filth) creatures spring from the body, influenced by the acts of previous lives or in the course of nature. Therefore, one possessed of wisdom should feel no regard for them.†[11] The attribute of Passion rests on that of Darkness. The attribute of Goodness, again, rests on that of Passion. Darkness which is unmanifest overspreads itself on Knowledge, and causes the phenomena of Intelligence and Conciousness.‡[12] That knowledge possessing the attributes

---

derived from Sanskrit, are commonly called *Prakriti* or symbols of *Prakriti*, thus illustrating the extraordinary popularity of the philosophical doctrine about *Prakriti* and *Purusha*.—T.

* *Kritya* is *mantra*-power or the efficacy of *Atharvan* rites. What is said here is that women are as frightful as *Atharvan* rites which can bring destruction upon even unseen foes. *Rajasi antarhitāh* means that they are sunk so completely in that attribute as to become invisible, *i. e.*, competely enveloped by that attribute.—T.

† The sense is this : parasitical vermin spring from sweat and other filth emited by the body. Children spring from the vital seed. In the former case, it is *Swabhāva* (nature) that supplies the active energy. In the latter, the undying influence of previous acts and propensities supply the active force. One's offspring, therefore, are like the parasitical vermin on one's body. Wisdom should teach disregard or indifference for either.—T.

‡ This is a repetition of what has been asserted in various forms before. *Rajas* (passion) is the cause of *Pravritti* or propensity for acts. *Sattwa* (goodness) is enlightenment or the higher aspirations that lead to *Brahma*. Both rest on *Tamas* (Darkness), the first immediately, the last mediately. *Chit* or *Jiva* is pure Knowledge. When overtaken by *Tamas* or *Avyakta*, it becomes clothed with that existence which is

of Intelligence and Conciousness has been said to be the seed of embodied Souls. That, again, which is the seed of such knowledge is called the *Jiva* (or *Chit*-Soul).* In consequence of acts and the virtue of time, the Soul goes through birth and repeated rounds of rebirth.[13] As in a dream the Soul sports as if invested with a body which, of course, is due to the action of the mind, after the same manner, it obtains in the mother's womb a body in consequence of attributes and propensities having (past) acts for their origin.[14] Whatever senses, while it is there, are awakened by past acts as the operating cause, become generated in Consciousness in consequence of the mind co-existing with attachments.†[15] In consequence of the past thoughts of sound that are awakened in it, the Soul, subjected to such influences, receives the organ of hearing. Similarly, from attachment to forms, its eye is produced, and from its longing after scent its organ of smelling.[16] From thoughts of touch it acquires the skin. In the same way the fivefold breaths are acquired by it, *viz.*, *Prāna Apāna*, *Vyāna*, *Udāna*, and *Samāna*, which contribute to keep the body agoing.[17] Encased in body with all limbs fully developed in consequence (as shown above) of past acts, the

---

called life or which we realise in the world, the conditions of that life being Consciousness and Intelligence.—T.

* The *Chit* or Soul is all Knowledge. When overspread with Ignorance or Darkness, it becomes manifested by Intelligence and Consciousness, *i. e.*, assumes a form or body. Knowledge overspread by Darkness, therefore, or Knowledge with the attributes of Intelligence and Consciousness, is the cause of *Chit* or Soul or *Jiva* assuming a body. Such knowledge, therefore, is called the *seed* of the body. Then, again, the *tadvijam* (the second expression), *i. e*, the foundation on which knowledge overspread by ignorance (or knowledge with the attributes of intelligence and consciousness) rests, is, of course, pure Knowledge or *chit* or *jiva* or Soul as it existed before life. It is only another form of repeating a statement made several times before. Both the vernacular translators have misunderstood the last half of the second line.—T.

† The meaning, of course, is that while in the mother's womb, the Soul remembers the acts of past lives, and those acts influence and determine the growth of its senses as also the character it will display in its new life.—T.

Soul takes birth, with sorrow, both physical and mental, in the beginning, middle, and end.[18] It should be known that sorrow springs from the very fact of acceptance of body (in the womb). It increases with the idea of Self. From renunciation of these (attachments which are the cause of birth), sorrow meets with an end. He that is conversant with sorrow's end attains to Emancipation.*[19] Both the origin and the destruction of the senses rest in the attribute of Passion. The man of wisdom should act with proper scrutiny with the aid of the eye constituted by the scriptures.†[20] The senses of knowledge, even if they succeed in earning all their objects, never succeed in overwhelming the man that is without thirst. The embodied Soul, by making its senses weak, escapes the obligation of rebirth.‡' "[21]

SECTION CCXIV.

"Bhishma said,—'I shall now tell thee what the means are (for conquering the senses) as seen with the eye of the scriptures. A person, O king, will attain to the highest end by the help of such knowledge and by framing his conduct accordingly.[1] Amongst all living creatures man is said to be the foremost. Among men, those that are regenerate have been called the foremost ; and amongst the regenerate,

---

* I do not follow Nilakantha in his grammatical exposition of the second line. That exposition seems to be very farfetched. Besides, *tebhyah tyāgāt* for *teshām tyāgāt* is no violence to grammar, the use of the ablative in this sense not being unfrequent in these writings.—T.

† Women have before (*vide* verse 9 of this section) been said to be the embodiment of the senses and as *antarhitāh* in *Rajas* or Passion. The senses, therefore, are, it is concluded here, originated in *Rajas*. By the destruction, again, of *Rajas*, they may be destroyed. What is wanted, therefore, is the conquest of *Rajas* or Passion. This may be effected with the aid of the eye whose vision has been sharpened by scriptural knowledge.—T.

‡ After *indriyārthān*, as explained by the commentator, *prāpyāpi* is understood. There are two classes of *indriyas*, *viz*, those of knowledge and those for the performance of acts. *Escapes the obligation of rebirth*, *i. e.*, attains to Emancipation.—T.

they that are conversant with the Vedas.[2] These last are regarded as the souls of all living creatures. Indeed, those Brāhmanas that are conversant with the Vedas are regarded as all-seeing and omniscient. They are persons who have become conversant with *Brahma*.[3] As a blind man, without a guide, encounters many difficulties on a road, so has a person destitute of knowledge to encounter many obstacles in the world. For this reason those that are possessed of knowledge are regarded as superior to the rest.[4] Those that are desirous of acquiring virtue practise diverse kinds of rites according to the dictates of the scriptures. They do not, however, succeed in attaining to Emancipation, all that they gain being those good qualities of which I shall presently speak.*[5] Purity of speech, of body, and of mind, forgiveness, truth, steadiness, and intelligence,—these good qualities are displayed by righteous persons observant of both kinds of religion.[6] That which is called *Brahmacharyya* (religion of abstention or *yoga*) is regarded as the means of attaining to *Brahma*. That is the foremost of all religions. It is by the practice of that religion that one obtains the highest end (*viz.*, Emancipation).[7] *Brahmacharyya* is divested of all connection with the five vital breaths, mind, understanding, the five senses of perception, and the five senses of action. It is on that account free from all the perceptions that the senses give. It is heard only as a word, and its form, without being seen, can only be conceived.[8] It is a state of existence depending only on the mind. It is free from all connection with the senses. That sinless state should be attained to by the understanding alone.[9] He that practises it duly attains to *Brahma*; he that practises it half and half, attains to the

---

* *Arthasāmanyam* is explained by Nilakantha as *phalasāmyam Mokshākhyam niratiçayam*. The Burdwan translator, while using the very words of the commentator, mistranslates this verse. The speaker desires to show the difference between the religion of *Pravritti* or acts and that of *Nivritti* or abstention from acts. Those that follow the former cannot attain to Emancipation. What they gain are certain good qualities mentioned in the next verse, which, however, are equally gained by the followers of the religion of *Nivritti*.—T.

condition of the gods; while he that practises it indifferently, takes birth among Brāhmanas and possessed of learning attains to eminence.[10] *Brahmacharyya* is exceedingly difficult to practise. Listen now to the means (by which one may practise it). That regenerate person who betakes himself to it should subdue the quality of Passion as soon as it begins to manifest itself or as soon as it begins to be powerful.[11] One that has betaken oneself to that vow should not speak with women. He should never cast his eyes on an undressed woman. The sight of women, under even indifferent circumstances, fills all weak-minded men with Passion.[12] If a person (while observing this vow) feels a desire for woman rising in his heart, he should (as an expiation) observe the vow called *Krichcchra* and also pass three days in water.* If desire is entertained in course of a dream, one should, diving in water, mentally repeat for three times the three *Riks* by Aghamarshana.†[13] That wise man who has betaken himself to the practice of this vow should, with an extended and enlightened mind, burn the sins in his mind which are all due to the quality of Passion.[14] As the duct that bears away the refuse of the body is very closely connected with the body, even so the embodied Soul is very closely connected with the body that confines it.[15] The different kinds of juices, passing through the network of arteries, nourish men's wind and bile and phlegm, blood and skin and flesh, intestines and bones and marrow, and the whole body.[16] Know that there are ten principal ducts. These assist the functions of the five senses. From those ten branch out thousands of other ducts that are minuter in form.[17] Like rivers filling the ocean at the proper season, all these ducts, containing juices, nourish the body.[18] Leading to the heart there is a duct called *Manovaha*. It draws from every part

---

* The vow of *Krichcchra* consists of certain fasts. *Pass three days in water*, *i. e.*, stand in a tank or stream with water up to the chin.—T.

† The three *Riks* begin with *Ritancha Satyancha &c.* Every Brāhmana who knows his morning and evening prayers knows these three *Riks* well.—T.

of the human body the vital seed which is born of desire.[19] Numerous other ducts branching out from that principal one extend into every part of the body and bearing the element of heat cause the sense of vision (and the rest).[20] As the butter that lies within milk is churned up by churning rods, even so the desires that are generated in the mind (by the sight or thought of women) draw together the vital seed that lies within the body.[21] In the midst of even our dreams passion having birth in imagination assails the mind, with the result that the duct already named, *viz.*, *Manovahā*, throws out the vital seed born of desire.[22] The great and divine *Rishi* Atri is well conversant with the subject of the generation of the vital seed. The juices that are yeilded by food, the duct called *Manovaha*, and the desire that is born of imagination,—these three are the causes that originate the vital seed which has Indra for its presiding deity. The passion that aids in the emission of this fluid is, therefore, called *Indriya*.[23] Those persons who know that the course of vital seed is the cause of (that sinful state of things called) intermixture of castes, are men of restrained passions. Their sins are regarded to have been burnt off, and they are never subjected to rebirth.[24] He that betakes himself to action simply for the purpose of sustaining his body, reducing with the aid of the mind the (three) attributes (of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness) into a state of uniformity, and brings at his last moments the vital breaths to the duct called *Manovaha*, escapes the obligation of rebirth.*[25] The Mind is sure

---

* "With the aid of the mind" means *yoga*. *Dehakarmā* means one whose acts are undertaken only for the purpose of sustaining the body, *i. e.*, one who does no act that is not strictly necessary for supporting life; hence, as the commentator explains, one who is free from all propensities leading to external objects. *Manovaham prānān nudan*, *i. e.*, bringing or sending the vital breaths to the duct called *Manovaha* or *Sushumnā*. Though a physical act, its accomplishment becomes possible only by a long course of penances consisting in the withdrawal of the mind from external objects. "Reducing the (three) attributes to a state of uniformity," as explained by the commentator, means "arriving at "Nirvikalpa," *i. e.*, at that state of knowledge which is independent of the senses.—T.

to gain Knowledge. It is the Mind that takes the form of all things. The minds of all high-souled persons, attaining to success through meditation, become freed from desire, eternal, and luminous.*[26] Therefore, for destroying the mind (as mind), one should do only sinless deeds, and freeing oneself from the attributes of Passion and Darkness, one is sure to attain to an end that is very desirable.†[27] Knowledge (ordinarily) acquired in younger days becomes weakened with decrepitude. A person, however, of ripe understanding succeeds, through the auspicious effects of past lives, in destroying his desires.‡[28] Such a person, by transcending the bonds of the body and the senses like a traveller crossing a path full of obstacles, and transgressing all faults he sees, succeeds in tasting the nectar (of Emancipation).' "[29]

---

* The Knowledge here spoken of is that knowledge which is independent of the senses. What the speaker says is that such Knowledge is no myth but is sure to arise. When it arises, its possessor comes to know that the external world, &c., is only the mind transformed, like the sights seen and sounds heard and thoughts cherished in a dream. In the second line the results of that knowledge are declared. The mind of a Mahātmā is *mantra-siddha*, *i. e.*, has won success by the meditation of the initial *mantra* or *om*; it is *nitya*, *i. e.*, eternal, meaning probably that though the result of *Māyā* or *Avidyā*, it is no longer subject to rebirth; it is *virajas*, *i. e.*, free from desire and passion; and lastly it is *Jyotishmat* or luminous, meaning Omniscient and Omnipotent. The commentator cites a passage from Vaçishtha's treatise on *yoga* which declares the same results as consequent on the attainment of Knowledge. It is, of course, implied that in attaining to such a state, the mind as mind must be destroyed or merged into the Soul, and the Soul, with knowledge only for its attribute, must exist. In the previous verse emancipation after death has been spoken of. In this, *jivanmukti* or emancipation in life is referred to.—T.

† "Freeing oneself from the attributes of Passion and Darkness," *i. e.*, by practising the religion of abstention from acts.—T.

‡ *Ādatte* from *dā* meaning to cut or destroy. *Mānasamvalam*, as explained by the commentator, is *sankalpam*, *i. e*, desires or purposes. The man of ripe understanding, by doing this, attains to that knowledge which is not subject to decay with age. Hence, such knowledge is superior to knowledge acquired in the ordinary way.—T.

Section CCXV.

"Bhishma said,—'Living creatures, by being attached to objects of the senses which are always fraught with evil, become helpless. Those high-souled persons, however, who are not attached to them, attain to the highest end.[1] The man of intelligence, beholding the world overwhelmed with the evils constituted by birth, death, decrepitude, sorrow, disease, and anxieties, should exert for the attainment of Emancipation.[2] He should be pure in speech, thought, and body; he should be free from pride. Of tranquil soul and possessed of knowledge, he should lead a life of mendicancy, and pursue happiness without being attached to any worldly object.[3] Again, if attachment be seen to possess the mind in consequence of compassion to creatures, he should, seeing that the universe is the result of acts, show indifference in respect of compassion itself.*[4] Whatever good acts are performed, or whatever sin (is perpetrated), the doer tastes the consequences. Hence, one should, in speech, thought, and deed, do only acts that are good.†[5] He succeeds in obtaining happiness who practises abstention from injuring (others), truthfulness of speech, honesty towards all creatures, and forgiveness, and who is never heedless.[6] Hence one, exercising one's intelligence, should dispose one's mind, after training it, on peace towards all creatures.‡[7] That man who

---

* Compassion may sometimes lead to excess of attachment, as in the case of Bharata towards his little deer. The universe is the result of acts because acts determine the character of the life the soul assumes. In the case of Bharata, he was obliged to take birth as a deer in his next life in consequence of all his thoughts in the previous life having been centred on a deer.—T.

† K. P. Singha wrongly translates this verse. *Tat* should be supplied before *açnute*; there is a redundant *vā* in the first line. The Burdwan translator renders it correctly.—T.

‡ The *budhi* here refered to is intelligence cleansed by scriptures. *Samāhitam manah* is, as explained by the commentator, mind freed from anger and malice, &c., *i. e.*, properly trained.—T.

regards the practice of the virtues enumerated above as the highest duty, as conducive to the happiness of all creatures, and as destructive of all kinds of sorrow, is possessed of the highest knowledge, and succeeds in obtaining happiness. Hence (as already said), one should, exercising one's intelligence, dispose one's mind, after training it, on peace towards all creatures.[8] One should never think of doing evil to others. One should not covet what is far above one's power to attain. One should not turn one's thoughts towards objects that are non-existent. One should, on the other hand, direct one's mind towards knowledge by such persistent efforts as are sure to succeed.*[9] With the aid of the declarations of the *Çrutis* and of persistent efforts calculated to bring success, that Knowledge is sure to flow. One that is desirous of saying good words or observing a religion that is refined of all dross,[10] should utter only truth that is not fraught with any malice or censure. One that is possessed of a sound heart should utter words that are not fraught with dishonesty, that are not harsh, that are not cruel, that are not evil, and that are not characterised by garrulity. The universe is bound in speech. If disposed to renunciation (of all worldly objects) then should one proclaim,†[11-12] with a mind fraught with humility and a cleansed understanding, one's own evil acts.‡ He who betakes himself to action, impelled thereto by propensities fraught with the attribute of Passion,[13] obtains

---

* "One should not covet &c.," like kingdoms and thrones in the case of ordinary men "Non-existent objects," such as sons and wives that are dead or that are unborn or unwed.—T.

† *Samsāra*, as explained by the commentator, means both this and the other world. It is bound in speech in this sense, *viz.*, that whatever is spoken is never destroyed and affects permanently both the speaker and the listener, so that not only in one life, but in the infinite course of lives, the speaker will be affected for good or for evil by the words that escape his lips. This fully accords with the discovery of modern science, so eloquently and poetically enunciated by Babbage, of the indestructibility of force or energy when once applied. How appalling is the sanction (which is *not* a myth) under which evil-speaking is forbidden !—T.

‡ Such self-disclosure destroys the effects of these acts and prevents their recurrence.—T.

much misery in this world and at last sinks into hell. One should, therefore, practise self-restraint in body, speech, and mind.[14] Ignorant persons bearing the burdens of the world are like robbers laden with their booty of straggling sheep (secreted from herds taken out for pasture). The latter are always regardful of roads that are unfavorable to them (owing to the presence of the king's watch).*[15] Indeed, as robbers have to throw away their spoil if they wish for safety, even so should a person cast off all acts dictated by Passion and Darkness if he is to obtain felicity.[16] Without doubt, a person that is without desire, free from the bonds of the world, contented to live in solitude, abstemious in diet, devoted to penances, and with senses under control,[17] that has burnt all his sorrows by (the acquisition of) knowledge, that takes a pleasure in practising all the particulars of *yoga* discipline, and that has a cleansed soul, succeeds, in consequence of his mind being withdrawn into itself, in attaining to *Brahma* or Emancipation.†[18] One endued with patience and a cleansed soul should, without doubt, control one's understanding. With the understanding (thus disciplined), one should next control one's mind, and then with the mind overpower the objects of the senses.[19] Upon the mind being thus brought under control and the senses being all subdued, the senses will become luminous and gladly enter into *Brahma*.[20] When one's senses are withdrawn into the mind, the result that occurs is that *Brahma* becomes manifested in it. Indeed, when the senses are destroyed, and the soul returns to the attribute of pure existence, it comes to be regarded as transformed into *Brahma*.[21] Then again, one should never make a display of one's *yoga* power. On the other hand, one should always exert to restrain one's senses by practising the rules of *yoga*. Indeed,

---

* Robbers laden with booty are always in danger of seizure. Even so unintelligent men bearing the burdens of life are always liable to destruction.—T.

† *Nishprachārena* means *Niruddhena* as explained by the commentator.—T.

one engaged in the practice of *yoga* rules should do all those acts by which one's conduct and disposition may become pure.*[22] (Without making one's *yoga* powers the means of one's subsistence) one should rather live upon broken grains of corn, ripe beans, dry cakes of seeds from which the oil has been pressed out, potherbs, half-ripe barley, flour of fried pulses, fruits, and roots, obtained in alms.†[23] Reflecting upon the characteristics of time and place, one should according to one's inclinations observe, after proper examination, vows and rules about fasts.[24] One should not suspend an observance that has been begun. Like one slowly creating a fire, one should gradually extend an act that is prompted by knowledge. By doing so, *Brahma* gradually shines in one like the Sun.[25] The Ignorance which has Knowledge for its resting ground, extends its influence over all the three states (of waking, dreaming, and dreamless slumber). The Knowledge, again, that follows the Understanding, is assailed by Ignorance.‡[26] The evil-hearted person fails to obtain a knowledge of the Soul in consequence of taking it as united with the three states although in reality it transcends them all. When, however, he succeeds in apprehending the limits under

---

* I adopt the reading *prakāçeta* and the interpretation that Nilakantha puts upon it.—T.

† K. P. Singha translates these words very carelessly. The Burdwan translator, by following the commentator closely, has produced a correct version. *Kulmàsha* means ripe grains or seeds of the Phaselous radiatus. *Pinyàka* is the cake of mustard seeds or sesamum after the oil has been pressed out. *Yāvaka* means unripe barley, or, as the commentator explains, raw barley powdered and boiled in hot water.—T.

‡ What is meant by the first line of the verse is this. The Soul had, before the creation, only Knowledge for its attribute. When Ignorance or Delusion, proceeding from Supreme *Brahma*, took possession of it, the Soul became an ordinary creature, *i. e*, consciousness, mind, &c., resulted. This Ignorance, therefore, established itself upon Knowledge and transformed the original character of the Soul. What is stated in the second line is that ordinary knowledge which follows the lead of the understanding is affected by ignorance, the result of which is that the Soul takes those things that really spring from itself to be things different from itself and possessing an independent existence.—T.

which the two, *viz.*, union with the three states and separation from them, are manifested, it is then that he becomes divested of attachment and attains to Emancipation.[27] When such an apprehension has been attained, one transcends the effects of age, rises superior to the consequences of decrepitude and death, and obtains *Brahma* which is eternal, deathless, immutable, and undeteriorating.' "[28]

SECTION CCXVI.

"Bhishma said,—'The *yogin* who wishes to always practise sinless *Brahmacharyya* and who is impressed with the faults attaching to dreams, should, with his whole heart, seek to abandon sleep.[1] In dreams, the embodied soul, affected by the attributes of Passion and Darkness, seems to become possessed of another body and move and act influenced by desire.*[2] In consequence of application for the acquisition of knowledge and of continued reflection and recapitulation, the *yogin* remains always awake. Indeed, the *yogin* can keep himself continually awake by devoting himself to knowledge.[3] On this topic it has been asked what is this state in which the embodied creature thinks himself surrounded by and engaged in objects and acts? True it is that the embodied being, with its senses really suspended, still thinks itself to be possessed of body with all the senses of knowledge and of action.[4] As regards the question started, it is said that that master of *yoga*, named Hari, comprehends truly how it happens. The great *Rishis* say that the explanation offered by Hari is correct and consistent with reason.[5] The learned say that it is in consequence of the senses being worn out with fatigue, dreams are experienced by all creatures. (Though the senses are suspended) the mind, however, never disappears (or becomes inactive) and hence arise dreams. This

---

* The correct reading, I apprehend, is *upagatasprihah* and not *apagatasprihah*. Nilakantha is silent. All that he says is that the first verse has reference to *yogins*, the second to *yogins* and non-*yogins* alike. Both the vernacular translators adhere to *apagatasprihah*.—T.

is said by all to be their noted cause.[6] As the imaginings of a person that is awake and engaged in acts, are due only to the creative power of the mind, after the same manner the impressions in a dream appertain only to the mind.[7] A person with desire and attachment obtains those imaginings (in dreams) based upon the impressions of countless lives in the past. Nothing that impresses the mind once is ever lost, and the Soul being cognisant of all those impressions causes them to come forth from obscurity.*[8] Whichever among the three attributes of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness is brought about by the influence of past acts and by whichever amongst them the mind is affected for the time being in whatever way, the elements (in their subtile forms) display or indicate accordingly (in the way of images).†[9] After images have thus been produced, the particular attribute of Goodness or Passion or Darkness that may have been brought by past acts rises in the mind and conduces to its last result, *viz.*, happiness or misery.[10] Those images having wind, bile, and phlegm for their chief causes, which men apprehend through ignorance and in consequence of propensities fraught with Passion and Darkness, cannot, it has been said, be

---

* I expand verse 8 a little for giving its meaning more clearly than a literal version would yield. All the impressions, it is said here, in dreams, are due either to the impressions of this life or those received by the mind in the countless lives through which it has passed. All those impressions, again, are well known to the Soul though memory may not retain them. Their reappearance in dreams is due to the action of the Soul which calls them up from the obscurity in which they are concealed. Avicena's theory of nothing being ever lost that is once acquired by the mind and the recollection of a past impression being due to a sudden irradiation of the divine light, was, it seems, borrowed from Hindu philosophy.—T.

† The sense is this: a particular attribute among the three, *viz.*, Goodness or Passion or Darkness, is brought to the mind by the influence of past acts of either this or any previous life. That attribute immediately affects the mind in a definite way. The result of this is that the elements in their subtile forms actually produce the images that correspond with or appertain to the affecting attribute and the manner in which it affects the mind.—T.

easily discarded.*[11] Whatever objects again a person perceives in the mind (while wakeful) through the senses in a state of perspicacity are apprehended by the mind in dreams while the senses are obscured in respect of their functions.†[12] The Mind exists unobstructedly in all things. This is due to the nature of the Soul. The Soul should be comprehended. All the elements and the objects they compose exist in the Soul.‡[13] In the state called dreamless slumber (*sushupti*), the manifest human body which, of course, is the door of dreams, disappears in the mind. Occupying the body the mind enters the Soul which is unmanifest and upon which all existent and non-existent things depend, and becomes transformed into a wakeful witness with certainty of apprehension. Thus dwelling in pure Consciousness which is the soul of all things, it is regarded by the learned as transcending both Consciousness and all things in the universe.$[14] That *yogin* who in consequence of desire covets any of the divine attributes (of Knowledge or Renunciation, &c.,) should

---

* Nothing less than *yoga* can discard or destroy them, for they really spring from desires generated by past acts.—T.

† The Bombay reading *Manohrishyan* is better.—T.

‡ Both the external and the internal worlds are due to Consciousness, which, in its turn, arises from delusion affecting the Soul. That which is called the Mind is only a product of the Soul. The world both external and internal, is only the result of Mind as explained in previous sections. Hence the Mind exists in all things. What is meant by all things existing in the Soul is that the Soul is omniscient and he who succeeds in knowing the Soul wins omniscience.—T.

$ The body is called the door of dreams because the body is the result of past acts, and dreams cannot take place till the Soul, through past acts, becomes encased in a body. What is meant by the body disappearing in the mind is that in dreamless slumber the mind no longer retains any apprehension of the body. The body being thus lost in the mind, the mind (with the body lost in it) enters the Soul, or becomes withdrawn into it. *Nidarçanam* is explained as *Nischitadarçanam Sākshirupam.* The sense of the verse is that in dreamless slumber the senses are withdrawn into the mind; the mind becomes withdrawn into the Soul. It is the Soul alone that then lives in its state of original purity, consciousness and all things which proceed from it disappearing at the time.—T.

regard a pure mind to be identical with the object of his desire. All things rest in a pure mind or soul.*[15] This is the result attained to by one who is engaged in penances. That *yogin*, however, who has crossed Darkness or ignorance, becomes possessed of transcending effulgence. When Darkness or ignorance has been transcended, the embodied Soul becomes Supreme *Brahma*, the cause of the universe.†[16] The deities have penances and Vedic rites. Darkness (or pride and cruelty), which is destructive of the former, has been adopted by the *Asuras*. This, *viz.*, *Brahma*, which has been said to have Knowledge only for its attribute, is difficult of attainment by either the deities or the *Asuras*.[17] It should be known that the qualities of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness belong to the deities and the *Asuras*. Goodness is the attribute of the deities; while the two others belong to the *Asuras*.[18] *Brahma* transcends all those attributes. It is pure Knowledge. It is Deathlessness. It is pure effulgence. It is undeteriorating. Those persons of cleansed souls who know *Brahma* attain to the highest end.[19] One having knowledge for one's eye can say this much with the aid of reason and analogy. *Brahma* which is indestructible can be comprehended by only withdrawing the senses and the mind (from external objects into the soul itself).' "‡[20]

Section CCXVII.

"Bhishma said,—'He cannot be said to know *Brahma* who does not know the four topics (*viz.*, dreams, dreamless slumber, *Brahma* as indicated by attributes, and *Brahma* as

---

* *I. e.*, the mind becoming pure, he gains omniscience and omnipotence.—T.

† The Burdwan translator, using the very words of Nilakantha, jumbles them wrongly together and makes utter nonsense of both the original and the gloss.—T.

‡ *Brahma* cannot, as the commentator properly explains, be seized like a creature by the horns. All that one can do is to explain its nature by reason and analogy. It can be comprehended only in the way indicated, *i. e.*, by *Pratyāhāra*.—T.

transcending all attributes), as also what is Manifest (*viz.*, the body), and what is Unmanifest (the chit-soul), which the great *Rishi* (Nārāyana) has described as *Tattwam.**[1] That which is manifest should be known as liable to death. That which is unmanifest (*viz.*, the chit-soul) should be known as transcending death. The *Rishi* Nārāyana has described the religion of *Pravritti.*[2] Upon that rests the whole universe with its mobile and immobile creatures. The religion of *Nivritti* again leads to the unmanifest and eternal *Brahma.*†[3] The Creator (Brahman) has described the religion of *Pravritti. Pravritti* implies rebirth or return. *Nivritti*, on the other hand, implies the highest end.[4] The ascetic who desires to discriminate with exactitude between good and evil, who is always bent on understanding the nature of the Soul, and who devotes himself to the religion of *Nivritti*, attains to that high end.‡[5] One desirous of accomplishing this, should know both the Unmanifest and *Purusha* of which I shall speak presently. That, again, which is different from both the Unmanifest and *Purusha*, and which transcends them both,[6] and which is distinguished from all beings, should be particularly viewed by one possessed of intelligence.¶ Both *Prakriti* and *Purusha* are without

---

* The commentator thinks that the *Rishi* alluded to in this verse is Nārāyana, the companion and friend of Nara, both of whom had their retreat on the heights of Vadari where Vyāsa afterwards settled himself. *Tattwa* here does not, the commentator thinks, mean a topic of discourse but that which exists in original purity and does not take its color or form from the mind. *Anāropitam rupam yasya tat.*—T.

† The religion of *Pravritti* consists of acts. It cannot liberate one from rebirth. The whole chain of existences, being the result of acts, rests upon the religion of *Pravritti.* The religion of *Nivritti*, on the other hand, or abstention from acts, leads to Emancipation or *Brahma.*—T.

‡ *Nidarçarkah* is explained by the commentator as equivalent to *drashtum ichchan.*—T.

¶ *Avyakta* or Unmanifest is *Prakriti* or primordial matter both gross and subtile. That which transcends both *Prakriti* and *Purusha* is, of course, the Supreme Soul or *Brahma. Viçesham* is explained by the commentator as 'distinguished from everything else by its attributes.'—T.

beginning and without end. Both are incapable of being known by their likes.[7] Both are eternal and indestructible. Both are greater than the greatest (of beings). In these they are similar. There are points of dissimilarity again between them. (Of these I shall speak presently).[8] *Prakriti* is fraught with the three attributes (of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness). It is also engaged in creation. The true attributes of *Kshetrajna* (*Purusha* or the Soul) should be known to be different.*[9] *Purusha* is the apprehender of all the transformations of *Prakriti* (but cannot be apprehended himself.) He transcends (in respect of his original nature) all attributes. As regards *Puruska* and the Supreme Soul again, both of them are incomprehensible. In consequence again of both of them being without attributes by which they can be distinguished, both are highly distinguished from all else.†[10] A turbaned person has his head circled with three folds of a piece of cloth. (The person, however, is not identical with the turban he wears).[11] After the same manner the embodied Soul is invested with the three attributes of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness. But though thus invested, the Soul is not identical with those attributes.[12] Hence these four topics, which are covered by these fourfold considerations, should be understood.‡ One who understands all this is never stupified when one has to draw conclusions (in respect of all subjects of enquiry).[13] He that is desirous of attaining to high prosperity should become pure in mind, and betaking himself to austere practices in respect of the body and the senses, should devote himself to *yoga* without desire of fruits.[14] The

* *I. e.*, as the commentator explains, *Purusha* is non-creating and transcends the three attributes.—T.

† *Asamhatau* is explained by the commentator as *atyantaviviktau*. *Purushau* implies the two *Purushas*, *i. e.*, the Chit-Soul and the Supreme Soul.—T.

‡ The four topics are these: the points of resemblance between Prakriti and Purusha; the points of difference between them: the points of resemblance between *Purusha* and *Içwara*; and the points of difference between them. The four considerations that cover these topics are absence of beginning and end, existence as *chit* and in animation, distinction from all other things, and the notion of activity.—T.

universe is pervaded by *yoga* power secretly circulating through every part of it and illumining it brightly. The sun and the moon shine with effulgence in the firmament of the heart in consequence of *yoga* power.[15] The result of *yoga* is Knowledge. *Yoga* is talked of very highly in the world.* Whatever acts are destructive of Passion and Darkness constitute *yoga* in respect of its real character.[16] *Brahmacharyya* and abstention from injury are said to constitute *yoga* of the body ; while restraining mind and speech properly are said to constitute *yoga* of the mind.[17] The food that is obtained in alms from regenerate persons conversant with the ritual is distinguished from all other food. By taking that food abstemiously, one's sins born of Passion begin to fade.[18] A *yogin* subsisting upon such food finds his senses gradually withdrawn from their objects. Hence, he should take only that measure of food which is strictly necessary for the support of his body.[19] (Another advice that may be offered is that) that knowledge which one obtains gradually by mind devoted to *yoga* should cheerfully be made one's own during one's last moments by a forcible stretch of power.†[20] The embodied Soul, when divested of *Rajas*, (does not immediately attain to Emancipation but) assumes a subtile form with all the senses of perception and moves about in space. When his mind becomes unaffected by acts, he, in consequence of such renunciation, (loses that subtile form and) becomes merged in *Prakriti*, (without, however, yet attaining to *Brahma* or Emancipation which transcends *Prakriti*).‡[21] After the destruction of this gross body, one who through absence of heedlessness escapes from all the three bodies (*viz.*,

---

* "Yoginastam prapaçyanti bhagavantam sanātanam"—even this is what people always say of *yoga* and *yogins*.—T.

† The commentator in a long note explains that what is really implied by this verse is that one should betake oneself to some sacred spot such a Kāçi for casting off one's life there. Death at Kāçi is sure to lead to Emancipation, for the theory is that Civa himself becomes the instructor and leads one to that high end.—T.

‡ 'When divested of *Rajas*,' *i. e.*, freed from the senses and the propensities derived from their indulgence.—T.

the gross, the subtile, and the *kārana*) succeeds in attaining to Emancipation.* The birth and death of creatures always depend upon the cause constituted by original Ignorance (or Avidyā).[22] When knowledge of *Brahma* arises, necessity no longer pursues the person. Those, however, that accept what is the reverse of truth (by believing that to be Self which is really not-Self) are men whose understandings are always taken up with the birth and death of all existent things. (Such people never dream even of Emancipation)†[23] Supporting their bodies by aid of patience, withdrawing their hearts (from all external objects) by the aid of their understanding, and withdrawing themselves from the world of senses, some *yogins* adore the senses in consequence of their subtility.‡[24] Some amongst them, with mind cleansed by *yoga*, proceeding according to (the stages indicated in) the scriptures and reaching the highest, succeed in knowing it by the aid of the understanding and dwell in that which is the highest and which without resting on any other thing rests

---

* *Ādehāt* is explained by the commentator as *Dehapātāt*. *Dehāntāt* applies to the destruction of all the three bodies. By the destruction (after death) of the gross body is meant escape from the obligation of rebirth. The *kārana* body is a subtiler form of existence than the *Linga-çarira*: it is, of course, existence in *Prakriti* as mentioned in verse 21.—T.

† *Parapratyasarge* means on the rise of a knowledge of *Brahma*. *Niyati* is Necessity, in consequence of which *jiva* goes through an endless wheel of existences; *Bhāvāntaprabhavaprajnā* is *bhāvānāmantaprabhavayorevaprajnā yeshām*. The object of the verse is to show that such mistaken persons as take the body, the senses, &c., and all which are not-Self, to be Self, are always taken up with the idea that things die and are born, but that there is nothing like emancipation or a complete escape from rebirth.—T.

‡ 'By the aid of patience' is explained by the commentator as without leaving their seats and changing the *yoga* attitude, &c. 'Withdrawing themselves from the world of senses' means attaining to a state that is perfectly independent of the senses and, therefore, of all external objects. 'Adore the senses in consequence of their subtility,' as explained by the commentator, is thinking of *Prāna* and the *Indriyas* as Self or Soul. I do not understand how this amounts to the statement that such *yogins* attain to *Brahma*.—T.

on itself.*[25] Some worship *Brahma* in images. Some worship Him as existing with attributes. Some repeatedly realise the highest Divinity which has been described to be like a flash of lightning and which is again indestructible.†[26] Others who have burnt their sins by penances, attain to *Brahma* in the end. All these high-souled persons attain to the highest end.[27] With the eye of scripture one should observe the subtile attributes of these several forms, as distinguished by attributes, of *Brahma* that are (thus) worshipped by men. The *yogin* who has transcended the necessity of depending on the body, who has cast off all attachments, and whose mind is devoted to *yoga* abstraction, should be known as another instance of Infinity, as the Supreme Divinity, or as that which is Unmanifest.‡[28] They whose hearts are devoted to the acquisition of knowledge succeed first in freeing themselves from the world of mortals. Subsequently, by casting off attachments they partake of the nature of *Brahma* and at last attain to the highest end.[29]

"'Thus have persons conversant with the Vedas spoken of the religion that leads to the attainment of *Brahma*. They who follow that religion according to the measure of their respective knowledge all succeed in obtaining the highest end.[30] Even those persons who succeed in acquiring a knowledge that is incapable of being shaken (by the assaults of scepticism) and that makes its possessors free from attach-

---

* 'Proceeding according to (the stages indicated in) the scriptures' alludes to the well-known verses in the *Gitā*, beginning with *Indriyebhyah parāhyarthā* &c. The several stages, as mentioned in those verses, are as follows: "Superior to the senses are their objects. Superior to the objects is the mind. Superior to the mind is the understanding. Superior to the understanding is the Soul. Superior to the Soul is the Unmanifest. Superior to the Unmanifest is *Purusha* (*Brahma*). There is nothing above *Purusha*." *Dehāntam* is explained as that which is superior to *Avyakta* or Unmanifest, hence *Brahma* or *Purusha*.—T.

† A flash of lightning repeatedly realised becomes a mass of blazing light. Perhaps this is intended by the speaker.—T.

‡ In the Bengal texts, verse 28 is a triplet. In the second line the correct reading is *Dehāntam*.—T.

ments of every kind, attain to various high regions after death and become emancipate according to the measure of their knowledge.[31] Those persons of pure hearts who have imbibed contentment from knowledge, and who have cast off all desires and attachments, gradually approach in respect of their nature nearer and nearer to *Brahma* which has the unmanifest for his attribute, which is divine, and without birth and death.[32] Realising that *Brahma* dwells in their Souls, they become themselves immutable and have never to return (to the Earth). Attaining to that supreme state which is indestructible and eternal, they exist in felicity.[33] The knowledge with respect to this world is even this: it exists (in the case of erring persons). It does not exist (in the case of those who have not been stupified by error). The whole universe, bound up in desire, is revolving like a wheel.[34] As the fibres of a lotus-stalk overspread themselves into every part of the stalk, after the same manner the fibres of desire, which have neither beginning nor end, spread themselves over every part of the body.[35] As a weaver drives his threads into a cloth by means of his shuttle, after the same manner the threads that constitute the fabric of the universe are woven by the shuttle of Desire.[36] He who properly knows transformations of *Prakriti*, *Prakriti* herself, and *Purusha*, becomes freed from Desire and attains to Emancipation.*[37] The divine *Rishi* Nārāyana, that refuge of the universe, for the sake of compassion towards all creatures, clearly promulgated these means for the acquisition of immortality.' "[38]

Section CCXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'By following what conduct, O thou that art conversant with all courses of conduct, did Janaka the ruler of Mithilā, versed in the religion of Emancipation, succeed in attaining to Emancipation, after casting off all worldly enjoyments ?'[1]

---

* *Vikāra*, *Prakriti*, and *Purusha*, or Effects, their material Cause and the Supreme Soul.—T.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the following old narrative of the particular conduct by which that ruler, thoroughly conversant with all courses of conduct, succeeded in achieving the highest felicity.[2] There was a ruler in Mithilā of the name of Janadeva of Janaka's race. He was ever engaged in reflecting upon the courses of conduct that might lead to the attainment of *Brahma*.[3] A century of preceptors always used to live in his palace, lecturing him upon the diverse courses of duty followed by people who had betaken themselves to diverse modes of life.*[4] Given to the study of the Vedas, he was not very well satisfied with the speculations of his instructors on the character of the Soul, and in their doctrines of extinction upon the dissolution of the body or of rebirth after death.[5] Once upon a time a great ascetic of the name of Panchaçikha the son of Kapilā, having roamed over the whole world, arrived at Mithilā.[6] Endued with correct conclusions in respect of all speculations about the diverse duties connected with renunciation, he was above all pairs of opposites (such as heat and cold, happiness and misery), and of doubts he had none.[7] He was regarded as the foremost of *Rishis*. Dwelling wherever he pleased, he desired to place before the reach of all men eternal felicity that is so difficult of attainment.[8] It seemed that he went about, amazing the world, having assumed the form of none else than that great *Rishi*, that lord of creatures, whom the followers of the Sānkhya doctrine knew by the name of Kapila.[9] He was the foremost of all the disciples of Āsuri and was called the undying. He had performed a mental Sacrifice that had lasted for a thousand years.*[10] He was firm in mind, and had completed all the rites and sacrifices that are enjoined in the scriptures and that lead to the attainment of *Brahma*. He was fully conversant with the

---

* *Nānāpāshandavāshinah* is another reading which is noticed by the commentator. It is explained as 'censurers of diverse sects of Lokāyatikas.'—T.

† *Panchaçrotas* implies the mind which is said to have five currents.—T.

five sheathes that cover the Soul.* He was devoted to the five acts connected with the adoration of *Brahma*, and had the five qualities (of tranquillity, self-restraint, &c.). Known (as already said) by the name of Panchaçikha, he had approached one day a large concourse of *Rishis* following the Sānkhya doctrines and enquired of them about the highest object of human acquisition, *viz.*, the Unmanifest or that upon which the five *Purushas* or sheathes (already named) rest.†[11-12] For the sake of obtaining a knowledge of the Soul, Āsuri had enquired of his preceptor. In consequence of the latter's instructions and of his own penances, Āsuri understood the distinction between the body and the Soul and had acquired celestial vision.‡[13] In that concourse of ascetics, Āsuri made his exposition of the Immutable, One, and Indestructible *Brahma* which is seen in diverse forms.[14] Panchaçikha became a disciple of Āsuri. He lived on human milk. There was a certain Brāhmani of the name of Kapilā. She was the wife of Āsuri.$[15] Panchaçikha was accepted by her as a son and he used to suck her breasts. In consequence of this, he came to be known as the son of Kapilā and his understanding became fixed on *Brahma.*[16] All this, about the circumstances of his birth and those that led to his becoming the son of Kapilā, was said unto me by the divine *Rishi.*¶ The latter also told me about the omniscience

---

* These are the *annamaya*, the *prānamaya*, the *manomaya*, the *vijnānamaya*, and the *ānandamaya*. For particulars, *vide* Wilson's Dict.—T.

† The verb used is *nyavedayat*, literally, 'represented,' *i. e.*, 'started' for discourse, or enquired into. The Burdwan translator renders it 'exposed' or 'promulgated.' which, I think, is incorrect.—T.

‡ The Burdwan translator makes a ridiculous blunder by supposing that Āsuri obtained this knowledge in consequence of the questions of his disciple. The fact is, *samprishtah*, as correctly explained by the commentator, means *samyak prishta praçno yasya*. K. P. Singha avoids the error.—T.

$ *Kutumvini* means a matron or the wife of a house-holder.—T.

¶ Either Mārkandeya or Sanatkumāra, according to the commentator.—T.

of Panchaçikha.[17] Conversant with all courses of duty, Panchaçikha, after having himself acquired high knowledge, (came to Janaka) and knowing that that king had equal reverence for all his preceptors, began to amaze that century of preceptors (by an exposition of his doctrine fraught) with abundant reasons.[18] Observing the talents of Kāpileya, Janaka became exceedingly attached to him, and abandoning his hundred preceptors, began to follow him in particular.[19] Then Kāpileya began to discourse unto Janaka, who had according to the ordinance bent his head unto him (as a disciple should) and who was fully competent to apprehend the sage's instructions, upon that high religion of Emancipation which is explained in Sānkhya treatises.[20] Setting forth in the first place the sorrows of birth, he spoke next of the sorrows of (religious) acts. Having finished that topic he explained the sorrows of all states of life ending even with that in the high region of the Creator.*[21] He also discoursed upon that Delusion for whose sake is the practice of religion, and acts, and their fruits, and which is highly untrustworthy, destructible, unsteady, and uncertain.†[22] Sceptics say that when death (of the body) is seen and is a matter of direct evidence witnessed by all, they who maintain, in consequence of their faith in the scriptures, that something distinct from the body, called the Soul, exists, are necessarily vanquished in argument.[23] They also urge that one's death means the extinction of one's Soul, and that sorrow, decrepitude, and disease imply (partial) death of the Soul. He that maintains, owing to error, that the Soul is distinct from the body and exists after the loss of body, cherishes an opinion that is unreasonable.‡[24] If that be regarded as existent which does not

* I slightly expand *Sarvanirvedam* according to the explanation given by Nilakantha. The Sānkhya doctrine proceeds upon the hypothesis that all states of life imply sorrow. To find a remedy for this, *i. e.*, to permanently escape all sorrow, is the end of that philosophy.—T.

† These are the characteristics of that Delusion under which man takes birth in this world and goes on living till he can permanently conquer all sorrow.—T.

‡ The construction of the first foot is *Atmano mrityuh Anātmā*,

really exist in the world, then it may be mentioned that the king, being regarded so, is really never liable to decrepitude or death. But is he, on that account, to be really believed to be above decrepitude and death ?*[25] When the question is whether an object exists or does not exist, and when that whose existence is asserted presents all the indications of non-existence, what is that upon which ordinary people rely in settling the affairs of life ?[26] Direct evidence is the root of both inference and the scriptures. The scriptures are capable of being contradicted by direct evidence. As to inference, its evidentiary effect is not much.[27] Whatever be the topic, cease to reason on inference alone. There is nothing else called *jiva* than this body.[28] In a banian seed is contained the capacity to produce leaves and flowers and fruits and roots and bark. From the grass and water that is taken by a cow are produced milk and butter, substances whose natures are different from that of the producing causes. Substances of different kinds when allowed to decompose in water for sometime produce spirituous liquors whose nature is quite different from that of those substances that produce them. After the same manner, from the vital seed is produced the body and its attributes, with the understanding, consciousness, mind, and other possessions. Two pieces of wood, rubbed together, produce fire. The stone called *Suryakānta*, coming in contact with the rays of the Sun, produces fire. Any solid metallic substance, heated in fire, dries up water when coming in contact with it. Similarly the material body produces the mind and its attributes of perception, memory, imagniation, &c. As the loadstone moves iron, similarly the senses are controlled by the mind.†[29] Thus reason the

---

meaning the Soul's death (or that which is called death) is the Soul's extinction. Verse 24 recites the opinion of the sceptics, not that of the speaker. K. P. Singha mistranslates the verse. The Burdwan translator renders it correctly.—T.

* This and all the following verses are statements of the sceptic's arguments.—T.

† Verse 29 is highly terse. The words are grammatically unconnect-

sceptics. The sceptics, however, are in error. For the disappearance (of only the animating force) upon the body becoming lifeless (and not the simultaneous extinction of the body upon the occurrence of that event) is the proof (of the truth that the body is not the Soul but that the Soul is something separate from the body and outlives it certainly. If, indeed, body and Soul had been the same thing, both would have disappeared at the same instant of time. Instead of this, the dead body may be seen for sometime *after* the occurrence of death. Death, therefore, means the flight from the body of something that is different from the body). The supplication of the deities by the very men who deny the separate existence of the Soul is another good argument (for the proposition that the Soul is separate from the body or has an existence that may be independent of a gross material case. The deities to whom these men pray are incapable of being seen or touched. They are believed to exist in subtile forms. Really, if a belief in deities divested of gross material forms does no violence to their reason, why should the existence of an immaterial Soul alone do their reason such violence ?) Another argument against the sceptic is that his proposition implies a destruction of acts, (for if body and Soul die together, the acts also of this life would perish,—a conclusion which no man can possibly come to if he is to explain the inequalities of condition witnessed in the universe).*[30] These that have been mentioned, and that have material forms, cannot possibly be the

---

ed with one another. Only a few substantives have been used. These represent the heads of the different arguments urged by sceptics for showing the non-existence of anything besides the body which is seen and felt. I have, of course, followed the commentator in his elaboration of the sense of the verse. There can be no doubt that the commentator is right.—T.

* Some idea may be formed by the English reader of the extreme terseness of these verses by attending to the elaborations contained within the parantheses above. The exigencies of English grammar as also of perspicuity have obliged me to use, even in the portions unenclosed, more words than what occur in the original Sanskrit. All these verses are *cruces* intended to stagger Ganeça.—T.

causes (of the immaterial Soul and its immaterial accompaniments of perception, memory, and the like). The identity of immaterial existences with objects that are material cannot be comprehended. (Hence objects that are themselves material cannot by any means be causes for the production of things immaterial).[31] Some are of opinion that there is rebirth and that it is caused by Ignorance, the desire for acts, cupidity, heedlessness, and adherence to other faults.[32] They say that Ignorance (Avidyā) is the soil. Acts constitute the seed that is placed in that soil. Desire is the water that causes that seed to grow. In this way they explain rebirth.[33] They maintain that that ignorance being ingrained in an imperceptible way, one mortal body being destroyed, another starts up immediately from it; and that when it is burnt by the aid of knowledge, the destruction of existence itself follows, or the person attains to what is called *Nirvana.*[34] This opinion also is erroneous. [This is the doctrine of the Buddists.] It may be asked that when the being that is thus reborn is a different one in respect of its nature, birth, and purposes connected with virtue and vice, why should it then be regarded to have any identity with the being that was? Indeed, the only inference that can be drawn is that the entire chain of existences of a particular being is not really a chain of connected links (but that existences in succession are unconnected with one another).*[35] Then, again, if the being that is the result

* Both the vernacular translators have rendered this verse wrongly. The fact is, without clearly understanding either the text or the gloss, they have used bits of the gloss without being able to convey any intelligible idea. The gloss sometimes requires a gloss to make it intelligible. The commentator says that the theory of rebirth mentioned in verse 34 is that of the Sugatas or Buddhists. That theory is refuted in verse 35. The objection to the Buddhistic theory is that mere ignorance and *karma* cannot explain rebirth. There must be an indestructible Soul. This the Buddhists do not allow, for they believe that *Nirvāna* or annihilation is possible. The argument, as sketched, proceeds in the this way: the being that is the result of the rebirth is apparently a different being. What right have we to assert its identity with the being that existed before? Ignorance and *karma* cannot *create* a Soul

of a rebirth be really different from what it was in a previous phase of existence, it may be asked what satisfaction can arise to a person from the exercise of the virtue of charity, or from the acquisition of knowledge or of ascetic power, since the acts performed by one are to concentre upon another person in another phase of existence (without the performer himself being existent to enjoy them) ?[86] Another result of the doctrine under refutation would be that one in this life may be rendered miserable by the acts of another in a previous life, or having become miserable may again be rendered happy. By seeing, however, what actually takes place in the world, a proper conclusion may be drawn with respect to the unseen.*[87] The separate Consciousness that is the result of rebirth is (according to what may be inferred from the Buddhistic theory of life) different from the Consciousness that had preceded it in a previous life. The manner, however, in which the rise or appearance of that separate Consciousness is explained by that theory does not seem to be consistent or reasonable. The Consciousness (as it existed in the previous life) was the very reverse of eternal, being only transitory, extending as it did till dissolution of the body. That which had an end cannot be taken as the cause for the production of a second Consciousness appearing after the occurrence of the end. If, again, the very loss of the previous Consciousness be regarded as the cause of the production of the second Consciousness, then upon the death of a human body being brought about by a heavy bludgeon, a second body would arise from the body that is

---

though they may affect the surroundings of the Soul in its new birth. The objections to the Buddhistic theory become clearer in the verses that follow.—T.

* The sense is this : it is never seen in the world that the acts of one person affect for good or for evil another person. If Chaitra exposes himself to the night air, Maitra never catches cold for it. This direct evidence should settle the controversy about the unseen, *viz.*, whether the acts of one in a previous life can affect another in a subsequent life if there be no identity between the two beings in two lives.—T.

thus deprived of animation.*[38] Once more, their doctrine of extinction of life (or *Nirvāna* or *Sattwasankhaya*) is exposed to the objection that that extinction will become a recurring phenomenon like that of the seasons, or the year, or the *yuga*, or heat, or cold, or objects that are agreeable or disagreeable.†[39] If for the purpose of avoiding these objections, the followers of this doctrine assert the existence of a Soul that is permanent and unto which each new Consciousness attaches, they expose themselves to the new objection that that permanent substance, by being overcome with decrepitude, and with death that brings about destruction, may in time be itself weakened and destroyed. If the supports of a mansion are weakened by time, the mansion itself is sure to fall down at last.‡[40] The senses, the mind, wind, blood, flesh, bones, (and all the constituents of the body), one after another, meet with destruction and enter each into its own productive cause.$[41] If again the existence of an

---

* It is needless to say that I have considerably elaborated the second line of the verse, as a literal rendering would have been entirely unintelligible. For example's sake I give that rendering ; "That which is separate Consciousness is also different. That from which it is, does not recommend itself."—T.

† If (as has already been said) the second Consciousness be the resulting effect of the loss or destruction itself of the previous Consciousness, then destruction is not annihilation, and, necessarily, after *Nirvana* has been once attained, there may be a new Consciousness or new birth, and thus, after having again attained to *Nirvāna* the same result may follow. The Buddhistic *Nirvāna*, therefore, cannot lead to that final Emancipation which is indicated in the Brāhmanical scriptures.—T.

‡ The Buddhists then, according to this argument, are not at all benefited by asserting the existence of a permanent Soul unto which each repeated Consciousness may inhere. The Soul, according to the Brāhmanical scriptures, has no attributes or possessions. It is eternal, immutable, and independent of all attributes. The affirmance of attributes with respect to the Soul directly leads to the inference of its destructibility, and hence the assertion of its permanency or indestructibility under such conditions is a contradiction in terms, according to what is urged in this verse.—T.

$ The commentator explains that the object of this verse is to point out that the senses, when destroyed, merge into their productive causes

eternal Soul be asserted that is immutable, that is the refuge of the understanding, consciousness, and other attributes of the usual kind, and that is dissociated from all these, such an assertion would be exposed to a serious objection, for then all that is usually done in the world would be unmeaning, especially with reference to the attainment of the fruits of charity and other religious acts. All the declarations in the *Çrutis* inciting to those acts, and all acts connected with the conduct of men in the world, would be equally unmeaning, for the Soul being dissociated from the understanding and the mind, there is no one to enjoy the fruits of good acts and Vedic rites.*[42] Thus diverse kinds of speculations arise in the mind. Whether this opinion is right or that is right, there is no means of settling.[43] Engaged in reflecting on those opinions, particular persons follow particular lines of speculation. The understandings of these, directed to particular theories, become wholly taken up with them and are at last entirely lost in them.[44] Thus all men are rendered miserable by pursuits good or bad. The Vedas alone, bringing them back to the right path, guide them along it, like grooms conducting their elephants.†[45] Many men, with weakened minds, covet objects that are fraught with great happiness. These, however, have soon to meet with a much larger measure of sorrow, and then, forcibly torn from their

---

or the substances of which they are the attributes. Of course, those causes or substances are the elements or primordial matter. This leads to the inference that though attributes may meet with destruction, yet the substances (of which they are attributes) may remain intact. This may save the Buddhist doctrine, for the Soul, being permanent and owning consciousness, &c., for its attributes, may outlive, like primordial matter, the destruction of its attributes. But the speaker urges that this doctrine is not philosophical and the analogy will not hold. Substance is conjunction of attributes. The attributes being destroyed, the substance also is destroyed. In European philosophy too, matter, as an unknown essence to which extension, divisility, &c., inhere, is no longer believed or considered as scientific.—T.

* Here the speaker attacks the orthodox Brāhmanical doctrine of the character of the Soul.—T.

† Possibly because they are based on Revelation.—T.

coveted meat, they have to own the sway of death.[46] What use has one, who is destined to destruction and whose life is unstable, with kinsmen and friends and wives and other possessions of this kind? He who encounters death after having cast off all these, passes easily out of the world and has never to return.[47] Earth, space, water, heat, and wind, always support and nourish the body. Reflecting upon this, how can one feel any affection for one's body? Indeed, the body, which is subject to destruction, has no joy in it.—Having heard these words of Panchaçikha that were free from deception, unconnected with delusion (because discouraging sacrifices and other Vedic acts), highly salutary, and treating of the Soul, king Janadeva became filled with wonder, and prepared himself to address the *Rishi* once more.' "[48-49]

Section CCXIX.

"Bhishma said,—'Janadeva of the race of Janaka, thus instructed by the great *Rishi* Panchaçikha, once more asked him about the topic of existence or non-existence after death.[1]

" 'Janaka said,—O illustrious one, if no person retains any knowledge after departing from this state of being, if, indeed, this is true, what then is the difference between Ignorance and Knowledge? What do we gain then by knowledge and what do we lose by ignorance?[2] Behold, O foremost of regenerate persons, that if Emancipation be such, then all religious acts and vows end only in annihilation! Of what avail would then the distinction be between heedfulness and heedlessness?[3] If Emancipation means dissociation from all objects of pleasurable enjoyment or an association with objects that are not lasting, for what then would men cherish a desire for action, or, having set themselves to action, continue to devise the necessary means for the accomplishment of desired ends? What then is the truth (in connection with this topic)?'[4]—

"Bhishma continued,—'Beholding the king enveloped in thick darkness, stupified by error, and become helpless, the learned Panchaçikha tranquillised him by once more address-

ing him in the following words.[5]—In this (*viz.*, Emancipation) the consummation is not Extinction. Nor is that consummation any kind of Existence (that one can readily conceive). This that we see is a union of body, senses, and mind. Existing independently as also controlling one another, these go on acting.[6] The materials that constitute the body are water, space, wind, heat, and earth. These exist together (forming the body) according to their own nature. They disunite again according to their own nature.[7] Space and wind and heat and water and earth,—these five objects in a state of union constitute the body. The body is not one element.[8] Intelligence, stomachic heat, and the vital breaths, called *Prāna*, &c., that are all wind,—these three are said to be organs of action. The senses, the objects of the senses (*viz.*, sound, form, &c.), the power (dwelling in those objects) in consequence of which they become capable of being perceived, the faculties (dwelling in the senses) in consequence of which they succeed in perceiving them, the mind, the vital breaths called *Prāna*, *Apāna* and the rest, and the various juices and humours that are the results of the digestive organs, flow from the three organs already named.*[9] Hearing, touch, taste, vision, and scent,—these are the five senses. They have derived their attributes from the mind which, indeed, is their cause.[10] The mind, existing as an attribute of *Chit*, has three states, *viz.*, pleasure, pain, and absence of both pleasure and pain.[11] Sound, touch, form, taste, scent, and the objects to which they inhere,—these till the moment of one's death are causes for the production of one's knowledge.[12] Upon the senses rest all acts (that lead to heaven), as also renunciation (leading to the attainment of *Brahma*), and also the ascertainment of truth in respect of all topics of enquiry. The learned say that ascertainment (of truth) is the highest object of existence, and that it is the seed or root of Emancipation; and with respect to Intelligence, they say that that leads

* The first five are the effects of Intelligence; the vital breaths, of wind; and the juices and humours, of stomachic heat.—T.

to Emancipation and *Brahma.**[13] That person who regards this union of perishable attributes (called the body and the objects of the senses) as the Soul, feels, in consequence of such imperfection of knowledge, much misery that proves again to be unending.[14] Those persons, on the other hand, who regard all worldly objects as not-Soul, and who on that account cease to have any affection or attachment for them, have never to suffer any sorrow, for sorrow, in their case, stands in need of some foundation upon which to rest.[15] In this connection there exists the unrivalled branch of knowledge which treats of Renunciation. It is called *Samyagvadha.* I shall discourse to thee upon it. Listen to it for the sake of thy Emancipation.[16] Renunciation of acts is (laid down) for all persons who strive earnestly for Emancipation. They, however, who have not been taught correctly (and who on that account think that tranquillity may be attained without renunciation) have to bear a heavy burthen of sorrow.[17] Vedic sacrifices and other rites exist for renunciation of wealth and other possessions. For renunciation of all enjoyments, exist vows and fasts of diverse kinds. For renunciation of pleasure and happiness, exist penances and *yoga.* Renunciation, however, of everything, is the highest kind of renunciation.[18] This that I shall presently tell thee is the one path pointed out by the learned for that renunciation of everything. They that betake themselves to that path succeed in driving off all sorrow. They, however, that deviate from it reap distress and misery.†[19] First speaking of the five organs of knowledge having the mind for the sixth, and all of which dwell in the understanding, I shall tell thee of the five organs of action having strength for their sixth.[20] The two hands constitute two organs of action. The two legs are the two organs for moving from

---

* Intelligence is called *avyaya* because it leads to Emancipation which is such. It is also called *mahat* because of its power to lead to *Brahma* which is *mahat. Tattwanischaya* is called the seed of Emancipation because it leads to Emancipation.—T.

† That path consists of *yoga.*—T.

one place to another. The sexual organ exists for both pleasure and the continuation of the species. The lower duct, leading from the stomach downwards, is the organ for expulsion of all used-up matter.[21] The organs of utterance exist for the expression of sounds. Know that these five organs of action appertain or belong to the mind. These are the eleven organs of knowledge and of action (counting the mind). One should quickly cast off the mind with the understanding.*[22] In the act of hearing, three causes must exist together, *viz.*, the two ears, sound, and the mind. The same is the case with the perception of touch; the same with that of form; the same with that of taste and smell.†[23] These fifteen accidents or attributes are needed for the several kinds of perception indicated. Every man, in consequence of them, becomes conscious of three separate things in respect of those perceptions (*viz.*, a material organ, its particular function, and the mind upon which that function acts).[24] There are again (in respect of all perceptions of the mind) three classes, *viz.*, those that appertain to Goodness, those that appertain to Passion, and those that appertain to Darkness. Into them run three kinds of consciousness, including all feelings and emotions.[25] Raptures, satisfaction, joy, happiness, and tranquillity, arising in the mind from any perceptible cause or in the absence of any apparent cause, belong to the attribute of Goodness.[26] Discontent, regret, grief, cupidity, and vindictiveness, causeless or occasioned by any perceptible cause, are the indications of the attribute known as Passion.[27] Wrong judgment, stupefaction, heedlessness, dreams, and sleepiness, however caused, belong to the attribute of Darkness.[28] Whatever state of consciousness exists, with respect to either the body or the mind, united with joy or satisfaction, should be regarded as due to

---

* By casting off the mind one casts off the five organs of action. By casting off the understanding, one casts off the organs of knowledge with the mind.—T.

† *I. e.*, in each of these operations three causes must exist together.—T.

the quality of Goodness.[29] Whatever state of consciousness exists united with any feeling of discontent or cheerlessness should be regarded as occasioned by an accession of the attribute of Passion into the mind.[30] Whatever state, as regards either the body or the mind, exists with error or heedlessness, should be known as indicative of Darkness which is incomprehensible and inexplicable.[31] The organ of hearing rests on space; it is space itself (under limitations); Sound has that organ for its refuge. (Sound, therefore, is a modification of space). In perceiving sound, one may not immediately acquire a knowledge of the organ of hearing and of space. But when sound is perceived, the organ of hearing and space do not long remain unknown. (By destroying the ear, sound and space may be destroyed; and, lastly, by destroying the mind, all may be destroyed).[32] The same is the case with the skin, the eyes, the tongue, and the nose constituting the fifth. They exist in touch, form, taste, and smell. They constitute the faculty of perception and they are the mind.*[33] Each employed in its own particular function, all the five organs of action and the five others of knowledge exist together, and upon the union of the ten dwells the mind as the eleventh and upon the mind the understanding as the twelfth.[34] If it be said that these twelve do not exist together, then the consequence that would result would be that there would be death in dreamless slumber. But as there is no death in dreamless slumber, it must be conceeded that these twelve exist together as regards themselves but separately from the Soul. The co-existence of those twelve with the Soul that is referred to in common speech is only a common form of speech with the vulgar for ordinary purposes of the world.[35] The dreamer, in consequence of the appearance of past sensual impressions, becomes conscious of his senses in their subtile forms, and endued as he already is with the three attributes (of goodness, passion, and darkness), he regards

---

* The inferenee is that the functions being destroyed, the organs are destroyed, and the mind also is destroyed, or, the mind being destroyed, all are destroyed.—T.

his senses as existing with their respective objects and, therefore, acts and moves about with an imaginary body after the manner of his own self while awake.*[26] That dissociation of the Soul from the understanding and the mind with the senses, which quickly disappears, which has no stability, and which the mind causes to arise only when influenced by darkness, is felicity that partakes, as the learned say, of the nature of darkness and is experienced in this gross body only. (The felicity of Emancipation certainly differs from it).†[27] Over the felicity of Emancipation also, the felicity, *viz.*, which is awakened by the inspired teaching of the Vedas and in which no one sees the slightest tincture of sorrow,—the same indescribable and truth-concealing darkness seems to spread itself (but in reality the felicity of Emancipation is unstained by darkness).‡[28] Like again to what occurs in dreamless slumber, in Emancipation also, subjective and objective existences (from Consciousness to objects of the senses, all included), which have their origin in one's acts, are all discarded. In some, that are overwhelmed

---

* The commentator correctly explains that *nā* in *nānuparyyeta* is the Nom. sing. of *nri* (man), meaning here, of course, the dreamer. Nilakantha's ingenuity is certainly highly commendable.—T.

† *Uparamam* is *yugapadbhāvasy ı uchchedam* or extinction of the state of association of the Soul with the understanding, the mind, and the senses. This dissociation of the Soul from the understanding, &c., is, of course, Emancipation. Emancipation, however, being eternal, the temporary dissociation of the Soul from the understanding, &c., which is the consequence of dreamless sleep, is the result of *Tamas* or Darkness. That dissociation is certainly a kind of felicity, but then it differs from the felicity of Emancipation, which is everlasting, and which is not experienced in the gross body.—T.

‡ In this verse the speaker points out that the felicity of Emancipation may at first sight seem to be like the felicity of dreamless sleep, but that is only an error. In reality the former is untouched or unstained by darkness. *Na krichchhramanupaçyati* is the reading I take, meaning "in which no one sees the slightest tincture of sorrow." The kind of sorrow referred to is the sorrow of duality or consciousness of knower and known. In Emancipation, of course, there cannot be any consciousness of duality. Both the vernacular versions are thoroughly unmeaning.—T.

by *Avidyā*, these exist, firmly grafted with them. Unto others who have transcended Avidyā and have won knowledge, they never come at any time.*[39] They that are conversant with speculations about the character of Soul and not-Soul, say that this sum total (of the senses, &c.,) is body (*kshetram*). That existent thing which rests upon the mind is called Soul (*kshetrajna*).[40] When such is the case, and when all creatures, in consequence of the well-known cause (which consists of ignorance, desire, and acts whose beginning cannot be conceived), exist, due also to their primary nature (which is a state of union between Soul and body), (of these two) which then is destructible, and how can that (*viz.*, the Soul,) which is said to be eternal, suffer destruction ?†[41] As small rivers falling into larger ones lose their forms and names, and the larger ones (thus enlarged) rolling into the ocean, lose their forms and names too, after the same manner occurs that form of extinction of life called Emancipation.‡[42] This being the case, when *jiva*, which is characterised by attributes, is received into the Universal Soul, and when all

---

* In this verse the speaker again points out the similarity between dreamless sleep and Emancipation. In both *swakarmapratyayah Gunah* is discarded. *Gunah*, as explained by Nilakantha, means here the whole range of subjective and objective existences from Consciousness to gross meterial objects, *swakarmapratyayah* means *karmahetukāvirbhāva, i. e.*. having acts for the cause of their manifestation ; this refers to the theory of rebirth on account of past acts.—T.

† The sense of this verse is this : all creatures are perceived to exist. That existence is due to the welf-known cause constitued by Avidyā and desire and acts. They exist also in such a way as to display a union between the body and Soul. For all common purposes of life we treat creatures that we perceive to be really existing. The question then that arises is—which (the body or the Soul) is destructible ?—We cannot answer this question in any way we like, for "çwāçwato vā katham uchcchedavān bhavet," (*i. e.*, how can the Soul, which is said by the learned to be Eternal, be regarded as destructible) ? "Vartamāneshu" should be treated as "Laukikavyavāreshu" "Uchcchedah" is, of course, equivalent to "Uchcchedavān."—T.

‡ *I. e.*, the gross body disappears in the subtile ; the subtile into the *kārana* (potential) form of existence ; and this last into the Supreme Soul.—T.

its attributes disappear, how can it be the object of mention by differentiation ?[43] One who is conversant with that understanding which is directed towards the accomplishment of Emancipation and who heedfully seeks to know the Soul, is never soiled by the evil fruits of his acts even as a lotus leaf though dipped in water is never soaked by it.[44] When one becomes freed from the very strong bonds, many in number, occasioned by affection for children and spouses and love for sacrifices and other rites, when one casts off both joy and sorrow and transcends all attachments, one then attains to the highest end and entering into the Universal Soul becomes incapable of differentiation.[45] When one has understood the declarations of the *Çrutis* that lead to correct inferences (about *Brahma*) and has practiced those auspicious virtues which the same and other scriptures inculcate, one may lie down at ease, setting at nought the fears of decrepitude and death. When both merits and sins disappear, and the fruits, in the form of joy and sorrow, arising therefrom, are destroyed, men, unattached to everything, take refuge at first on *Brahma* invested with personality, and then behold impersonal *Brahma* in their understandings.*[46] *Jiva* in course of its downwards descent under the influence of Avidyā lives here (within its cell formed by acts) after the manner of a silk-worm residing within its cell made of threads woven by itself. Like the freed silk-worm again that abandons its cell, *jiva* also abandons its house generated by its acts. The final result that takes place is that its sorrows are then destroyed like a clump of earth falling with violence upon a rocky mass.†[47] As

---

* Merit and sin, and with them their effects in the form of happiness and misery both here and hereafter, are said to be destroyed when men become unattached to every thing and practise the religion of abstention or *nivritti*. The paraphrase of the second line is *asaktāh alepamākāçam āsthāya mahati alingameva pacyanti*. "Alepamākāçam āsthāya" is explained by the commentator as "Sagunam Brahma āsthāya."—T.

† *Urnanābha* is a generic term for all worms that weave threads from within their bellies. It does not always mean the spider. Here, it implies a silk worm. The analogy then becomes complete.—T.

the *Ruru* casting off its old horns or the snake casting off its slough goes on without attracting any notice, after the same manner a person that is unattached casts off all his sorrows.[43] As a bird deserts a tree that is about to fall down upon a piece of water and thus severing itself from it alights on a (new) resting place, after the same manner the person freed from attachments casts off both joy and sorrow and dissociated even from his subtile and subtiler forms attains to that end which is fraught with the highest prosperity.*[49] Their own ancestor Janaka, the chief of Mithilā, beholding his city burning in a conflagration, himself proclaimed,—*In this conflagration nothing of mine is burning!*[50]—King Janadeva, having listened to these words capable of yielding immortality and uttered by Panchaçikha, and arriving at the truth after carefully reflecting upon everything that the latter had said, cast off his sorrows and lived on in the enjoyment of great felicity.[51] He who reads this discourse, O king, that treats of emancipation and who always reflects upon it, is never pained by any calamity, and freed from sorrow, attains to emancipation like Janadeva the ruler of Mithilā after his meeting with Panchaçikha.'"[52]

Section CCXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'By doing what does one acquire happiness, and what is that by doing which one meets with woe? What also is that, O Bhārata, by doing which one becomes freed from fear and sojourns here crowned with success (in respect of the objects of life)?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The ancients who had their understandings directed to the *Çrutis*, highly applauded the duty of self-restraint for all the orders generally but for the Brāh-

---

This body is the result of Avidyā and acts. When Avidyā and acts are destroyed, Emancipation is attained to.—T.

* *Nipatity asaktah* is wrongly rendered by the Burdwan translator. K. P. Singha gives the sense correctly but takes *nipatati* for *utpatati*.—T.

manas in especial.[2] Success in respect of religious rites never occurs in the case of one that is not self-restrained. Religious rites, penances, truth,—all these are established upon self-restraint.[3] Self-restraint enhances one's energy. Self-restraint is said to be sacred. The man of self-restraint becomes sinless and fearless and wins great results.[4] One that is self-restrained sleeps happily and wakes happily. He sojourns happily in the world and his mind always remains cheerful.[5] Every kind of excitement is quietly controlled by self-restraint. One that is not self-restrained fails in a similar endeavour. The man of self-restraint beholds his innumerable foes (in the form of lust, desire, and wrath, &c.), as if these dwell in a separate body.[6] Like tigers and other carnivorous beasts, persons destitute of self-restraint always inspire all creatures with dread. For controlling these men, the Self-born (Brahman) created kings.[7] In all the (four) modes of life, the practice of self-restraint is distinguished above all other virtues. The fruits of self-restraint are much greater than those obtainable in all the modes of life.[8] I shall now mention to thee the indications of those persons who prize self-restraint highly.* They are nobility, calmness of disposition, contentment, faith,[9] forgiveness, invariable simplicity, the absence of garrulity, humility, reverence for superiors, benevolence, compassion for all creatures, frankness,[10] abstention from talk upon kings and men in authority, from all false and useless discourses, and from applause and censure of others. The self-restrained man becomes desirous of emancipation and, quietly bearing present joys and griefs, is never exhilarated or depressed by prospective ones.[11] Destitute of vindictiveness and all kinds of guile, and unmoved by praise and blame, such a man is well-behaved, has good manners, is pure of soul, has firmness or fortitude, and is a complete master of his passions.[12] Receiving honors in this world, such a man in after life goes to heaven. Causing all creatures to acquire what they cannot acquire without his

---

* *Samudayah* is explained by the commentator as equivalent to *hetu*.—T.

aid, such a man rejoices and becomes happy.*[12] Devoted to universal benevolence, such a man never cherishes animosity for any one. Tranquil like the ocean at a dead calm, wisdom fills his soul and he is ever cheerful.[14] Possessed of intelligence, and deserving of universal reverence, the man of self-restraint never cherishes fear of any creature and is feared by no creature in return.[15] That man who never rejoices even at large acquisitions and never feels sorrow when overtaken by calamity, is said to be possessed of contented wisdom. Such a man is said to be self-restrained. Indeed, such a man is said to be a regenerate being.[16] Versed with the scriptures and endued with a pure soul, the man of self-restraint, accomplishing all those acts that are done by the good, enjoys their high fruits.[17] They, however, that are of wicked soul never betake themselves to the path respresented by benevolence, forgiveness, tranquillity, contentment, sweetness of speech, truth, liberality, and comfort.[18] Their path consists of lust and wrath and cupidity and envy of others and boastfulness. Subjugating lust and wrath, practising the vow of Brahmacharyya and becoming a complete master of his senses,[19] the Brāhmana, exerting himself with endurance in the austerest of penances, and observing the most rigid restraints, should live in this world, calmly waiting for his time like one seeming to have a body though fully knowing that he is not subject to destruction.' "[20]

Section CCXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'The three regenerate classes, who are addicted to sacrifices and other rites, sometimes eat the remnants, consisting of meat and wine, of sacrifices in honor of the deities, from motives of obtaining children and heaven What, O grandsire, is the character of this act ?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Those who eat forbidden food without being observant of the sacrifices and vows ordained in the

---

* Giving food and clothes to the poor and needy in times of scarcity is referred to.—T.

Vedas are regarded as wilful men. (They are regarded as fallen even here). Those, on the other hand, who eat such food in the observance of Vedic sacrifices and vows and induced by the desire of fruits in the shape of heaven and children, ascend to heaven but fall down on the exhaustion of their merits.'*[2]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Common people say that fasting is *tapa* (penance). Is fasting, however, really so, or is penance something different ?'[3]

" Bhishma said,—'People do regard fast, measured by months or fortnights or days, as penance. In the opinion, however, of the good, such is not penance. On the other hand, fast is an impediment to the acquisition of the knowledge of the Soul.†[4] The renunciation of acts (that is so difficult for all) and humility (consisting in the worship of all creatures and consideration for them all) constitute the highest penance. That is distinguished above all kinds of penance. He who betakes himself to such penance is regarded as one that is always fasting and that is always leading a life of *Brahmacharyya*.[5] Such a Brāhmana will become a *Muni* always, a deity evermore, and sleepless forever, and one engaged in the pursuit of virtue only, even if he lives in the bosom of a family.[6] He will become a vegetarian always, and pure for ever. He will become an eater always of ambrosia, and an adorer always of gods and guests.[7] Indeed, he will be regarded as one always subsisting on sacrificial remnants, as one ever devoted to the duty of hospitality, as one always full of faith, and as one ever worshipping gods and guests.'[8]

---

* The reading I adopt is *Vrataluvdhāh*. If, however, the Bengal reading *vrataluptāh* be adopted, the meaning would be "such men are deceived by their vows," the sense being that though acquiring heaven and the other objects of their desire, yet they fall down upon exhaustion of their merit and never attain to what is permanent, *viz.*, emancipation, which is attainable by following the religion of *nivritti* only.—T.

† The object of Bhishma's two answers is to show that the giving of pain to others (sacrificing animals) is censurable, and the giving of pain to one's own self is equally censurable.—T.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How can one practising such penance come to be regarded as one that is always fasting or as one that is ever devoted to the vow of Brahmacharyya, or as one that is always subsisting upon sacrificial remnants or as one that is ever regardful of guests ?'[9]

"Bhishma said,—'He will be regarded as one that is always fasting if he eats once during the day and once during the night at the fixed hours without eating anything during the interval.[10] Such a Brāhmana, by always speaking the truth and by adhering always to wisdom, and by going to his wife only in her season and never at other times, becomes a *Brahmachārin* (celebate).[11] By never eating meat of animals not killed for sacrifice, he will become a strict vegetarian. By always becoming charitable he will become ever pure, and by abstaining from sleep during the day he will become one that is always wakeful.[12] Know, O Yudhishthira, that that man who eats only after having fed his servants and guests becomes an eater always of ambrosia.[13] That Brāhmana who never eats till gods and guests are fed, wins, by such abstention, heaven itself.[14] He is said to subsist upon sacrificial remnants who eats only what remains after feeding the gods, the *Pitris*, servants, and guests.[15] Such men win numberless regions of felicity in next life. To their homes come, with Brahman himself, the gods and the *Apsaras*.[16] They who share their food with the deities and the *Pitris* pass their days in constant happiness with their sons and grandsons, and at last, leaving off this body, attain to a very high end.' "[17]

Section CCXXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'In this world, O Bhārata, acts good and bad attach themselves to man for the purpose of producing fruits for enjoyment or endurance.[1] Is man, however, to be regarded as their doer or is he not to be regarded so ? Doubt fills my mind with respect to this question. I desire to hear this in detail from thee, O grandsire !'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, O Yudhishthira, is

cited the old narrative of a discourse between Prahlāda and Indra.[3] The chief of the *Daityas, viz.*, Prahlāda, was unattached to all worldly objects. His sins had been washed away. Of respectable parentage, he was possessed of great learning. Free from stupifaction and pride, ever observant of the quality of goodness, and devoted to various vows,[4] he took praise and censure equally. Possessed of self-restraint, he was then passing his time in an empty chamber. Conversant with the origin and the destruction of all created objects mobile and immobile,[5] he was never angry with things that displeased him and never rejoiced at the accession of objects that were agreeable. He cast an equal eye upon gold and a clump of earth.[6] Steadily engaged in study of the Soul and in acquiring Emancipation, and firm in knowledge, he had arrived at fixed conclusions in respect of truth.[7] Acquainted with what is supreme and what is not so among all things, omniscient and of universal sight, as he was seated one day in a solitary chamber with his senses under complete control, Cakra approached him, and desirous of awakening him, said these words :[8]—O king, I behold all those qualities permanently residing in thee by which a person wins the esteem of all![9] Thy understanding seems to be like that of a child, free from attachment and aversion. Thou knowest the Soul. What, thinkest thou, is the best means by which a knowledge of the Soul may be attained?[10] Thou art now bound in cords, fallen off from thy former position, brought under the sway of thy foes, and divested of prosperity. Thy present circumstances are such as may well inspire grief. Yet how is it, O Prahlāda, that thou dost not indulge in grief?[11] Is this due, O son of Diti, to the acquisition of wisdom or is it on account of thy fortitude? Behold thy calamities, O Prahlāda, and yet thou seemest like one that is happy and tranquil![12]—Thus urged by Indra, the chief of the Daityas, endued with firmness and with determinate conclusions in respect of truth, replied unto the former in these sweet words indicative of great wisdom.[13]

"'Prahlāda said,—He who is unacquainted with the origin and the destruction of all created objects, is, in consequence

of such ignorance, stupified. He, however, who is conversant with these two things, is never stupified.[14] All kinds of entities and non-entities come into being or cease in consequence of their own nature. No kind of personal exertion is needed (for the production of such phenomena).*[15] In the absence, therefore, of personal exertion, it is evident that no personal agent exists for the production of all this that we perceive. But though (in reality) the person (or the *chit*) never does anything, yet (through the influence of Ignorance) a consciousness in respect of agency overspreads itself on it.[16] He who regards himself as the doer of acts good or bad, possesses a wisdom that is vitiated. Such a person is, according to my judgment, unacquainted with the truth.†[17] If, O Cakra, the being called person were really the actor, then all acts undertaken for his own benefit would certainly be crowned with success. None of those acts would be defeated.[18] Among even persons struggling their utmost the suspension of what is not desired and the occurrence of what is desired are not to be seen. What becomes then of personal exertion?[19] In the case of some, we see that without any exertion on their part, what is not desired is suspended and what is desired is accomplished. This then must be the result of Nature.[20] Some persons again are seen to present extraordinary aspects, for though possessed of superior intelligence they have to solicit wealth from others that are vulgar in features and endued with little intelligence.[21] Indeed, when all qualities, good or bad, enter a person, urged by Nature, what ground is there for one to boast (of one's superior possessions)?[22] All these flow from Nature. This is my settled conclusion. Even Emancipation and knowledge of self, according to me, flow from the same source.[23]

---

* Existence comes into being and ceases. Non-existence also comes into being and ceases. This is the grammatical construction. The words, of course, imply only the appearance and disappearance of all kinds of phenomena.—T.

† This refers to the theory set forth in the previous sections about the Soul's real inactivity amidst its seeming activity in respect of all acts.—T.

"'In this world all fruits, good or bad, that attach themselves to persons, are regarded as the result of acts. I shall now discourse to thee in full on the subject of acts. Listen to me.[24] As a crow, while eating some food, proclaims the presence of that food (to the members of its species) by its reapeated cawing, after the same manner all our acts only proclaim the indications of Nature.[25] He who is acquainted with only the transformations of Nature but not with Nature that is supreme and exists by herself, feels stupifaction in consequence of his ignorance. He, however, who undersands the difference between Nature and her transformations is never stupified.[26] All existent things have their origin in Nature. In consequence of one's certainty of conviction in this respect, one would never be affected by pride or arrogance.[27] When I know what the origin is of all the ordinances of morality and when I am acquainted with the instability of all objects, I am incapable, O Cakra, of indulging in grief. All this is endued with an end.[28] Without attachments, without pride, without desire and hope, freed from all bonds, and dissociated from everything, I am passing my time in great happiness, engaged in beholding the appearance and disappearance of all created objects.[29] For one that is possessed of wisdom, that is self-restrained, that is contented, that is without desire and hope, and that beholds all things with the light of self-knowledge, no trouble or anxiety exists, O Cakra![30] I have no affection or aversion for either Nature or her transformations. I do not behold any one now who is my foe nor any one who is mine own.[31] I do not, O Cakra, at any time covet either heaven, or this world, or the nether regions. It is not the case that there is no happiness in understanding the Soul. But the Soul, being dissociated from everything, cannot enjoy felicity. Hence I desire nothing.[32]

"'Cakra said,—Tell me the means, O Prahlāda, by which this kind of wisdom may be attained and by which this kind of tranquillity may be made one's own. I solicit thee!—[33]

"'Prahlāda said,—By simplicity, by heedfulness, by cleansing the Soul, by mastering the passions, and by waiting

upon aged seniors, O Cakra, a person succeeds in attaining to Emancipation.[34] Know this, however. that one acquires wisdom from Nature, and that the acquisition of tranquillity also is due to the same cause. Indeed, everything else that thou perceivest is due to Nature.—'[35]

"Thus addressed by the lord of the *Daityas*, Cakra became filled with wonder, and commended those words, O king, with a cheerful heart.[36] The lord of the three worlds then, having worshipped the lord of the *Daityas*, took his leave and proceeded to his own abode.' "[37]

Section CCXXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, by adopting what sort of intelligence may a monarch, who has been divested of prosperity and crushed by Time's heavy bludgeon, still live on this Earth !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse between Vāsava and Virochana's son Vali.[2] One day Vāsava, after having subjugated all the *Asuras*, repaired to the Grandsire and joining his hands bowed to him and enquired after the whereabouts of Vali.[3]—Tell me, O Brahman, where may I now find that Vali whose wealth continued undiminished even though he used to give it away as largely as he wished ![4] He was the god of wind. He was Varuna. He was Surya. He was Soma. He was Agni that used to warm all creatures. He became water (for the use of all). I do not find where he now is. Indeed, O Brahman, tell me where I may find Vali now ![5] Formerly it was he who used to illumine all the points of the compass (as Surya) and to set (when evening came). Casting off idleness, it was he who used to pour rain upon all creatures at the proper season. I do not now see that Vali. Indeed, tell me, O Brahman, where I may find that chief of the *Asuras* now !—[6]

"'Brahman said,—It is not becoming in thee, O Maghavat, to thus enquire after Vali now ! One should not, however, speak an untruth when one is questioned by another . For

this reason I shall tell thee the whereabouts of Vali.[7] O lord of Cachi, Vali may now have taken his birth among camels or bulls or asses or horses, and having become the foremost of his speices may now be staying in an empty apartment![8]—

"'Cakra said,—If, O Brahman, I happen to meet with Vali in an empty apartment, shall I slay him or spare him? Tell me how I shall act!—[9]

"'Brahman said,—Do not, O Cakra, injure Vali! Vali does not deserve death. Thou shouldst, on the other hand, O Vāsava, solicit instruction from him about morality, O Cakra, as thou pleasest!'[10]—

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by the divine Creator, Indra roamed over the Earth, seated on the back of Airāvata and attended by circumstances of great splendour.[11] He succeeded in meeting with Vali, who, as the Creator had said, was living in an empty apartment, clothed in the form of an ass.[12]

"'Cakra said,—Thou art now, O Dānava, born as an ass subsisting on chaff as thy food. This thy order of birth is certainly a low one. Dost thou or dost thou not grieve for it?[13] I see what I had never seen before, *viz.*, thyself brought under the sway of thy enemies, divested of prosperity and friends, and shorn of energy and prowess.[14] Formerly thou usedst to make progresses through the worlds, with thy train consisting of thousands of vehicles and thousands of kinsmen, and to move along, scorching everybody with thy splendour and counting us as nought![15] The Daiteyas, looking up to thee as their protector, lived under thy sway! Through thy power, the Earth used to yeild crops without waiting for tillage. Today, however, I behold thee overtaken by this dire calamity! Dost thou or dost thou not indulge in grief for this?[16] When formerly thou usedst, with pride reflected in thy face, to divide on the eastern shores of the ocean thy vast wealth among thy kinsmen, what then was the state of thy mind?[17] Formerly, for many years, when blazing with splendour, thou usedst to sport, thousands of celestial damsels used to dance before thee.[18] All of them were adorned with garlands of lotuses and all

had companions bright as gold. What, O lord of Dānavas, was the state of thy mind then and what is it now?[19] Thou hadst a very large umbrella made of gold and adorned with jewells and gems. Full two and forty thousand Gandharvas used in those days to dance before thee.*[20] In thy sacrifices thou hadst a stake that was very large and made entirely of gold. On such occasions thou wert to give away millions upon millions of kine. What, O Daitya, was the state of thy mind then?[21] Formerly, engaged in sacrifice, thou hadst gone round the whole Earth, following the rule of the hurling of the *çamyā*. What was the state of thy mind then?†[22] I do not now behold that golden jar of thine, nor that umbrella of thine, nor those fans! I behold not also, O king of the *Asuras*, that garland of thine which was given to thee by the Grandsire!—[23]

"'Vali said,—Thou seest not now, O Vāsava, my jar and umbrella and fans. Thou seest not also my garland, that gift of the Grandsire.[24] Those precious possessions of mine about which thou askest are now buried in the darkness of a cave. When my time comes again, thou wilt surely behold them again![25] This conduct of thine, however, does not become thy fame or birth. Thyself in prosperity, thou desirest to mock me that am sunk in adversity![26] They that have acquired wisdom, and have won contentment therefrom, they that are of tranquil souls, that are virtuous and good among creatures, never grieve in misery nor rejoice in happiness.[27] Led, however, by a vulgar intelligence, thou indulg-

---

* The Burdwan translator renders the second line as "six thousand Gandharvas used to dance before thee the seven kinds of dance."—T.

† Both the vernacular translators have misunderstood this verse. A *çamyā* is explained as a little wooden cone measuring about six and thirty fingers' breadth in altitude. What Vali did was to go round the Earth (*anup ryyagāh, i. e., parihrityagatavān*) throwing or hurling a *çamyā*. When thrown from a particular point by a strong man, the *çamyā* clears a certain distance. This space is called a *Devayajana*. Vali went round the globe, performing sacrifices upon each such Devayajana.—T.

est in brag, O Purandara! When thou shalt become like me thou shalt not then indulge in speeches like these!—' "[28]

SECTION CCXXIV.

"Bhishma said,—'Once more, laughing at Vali who was sighing like a snake, Cakra addressed him for saying something more pointed than what he had said before.*[1]

" 'Cakra said,—Formerly, attended by a train consisting of thousands of vehicles and kinsmen, thou usedst to make thy progresses, scorching all the worlds with thy splendour and regarding us as nought.[2] Thou art now, however, deserted by both kinsmen and friends. Beholding this miserable plight that has overtaken thee, dost thou or dost thou not indulge in grief?[3] Formerly all the worlds were under thy sway and great was thy joy. I ask, dost thou or dost thou not indulge in grief now, for this fall of thine in respect of external splendour?—[4]

" 'Vali said,—Considering all this to be transitory,—due, indeed, to the course of time,—I do not, O Cakra, indulge in grief! These things have an end.[5] These bodies that creatures have, O chief of the celestials, are all transitory. For that reason, O Cakra, I do not grieve (for this asinine form of mine). Nor is this form due to any fault of mine.[6] The animating principle and the body come into existence together, in consequence of their own nature. They grow together, and meet with destruction together.[7] Having obtained this form of existence I have not been permanently enslaved by it. Since I know this, I have no cause for sorrow in consequence of that knowledge.[8] As the final resting place of all rivers is the ocean, even so the end of all embodied creatures is death. Those persons that know this well are never stupified, O wielder of the thunder-bolt![9] They, however, who, overwhelmed with Passion and loss of judgment, do not know this, they whose understanding is

---

* *Pravyāhārāya* is explained by the commentator as *prakrishṭoktaye*.—T.

lost, sink under the weight of misfortune.[10] A person who acquires a keen understanding succeeds in destroying all his sins. A sinless person acquires the attribute of Goodness, and having acquired it becomes cheerful.[11] They, however, that deviate from the attribute of Goodness, and obtain repeated rebirths, are obliged to indulge in sorrow and grief, led on by desire and the objects of the senses.[12] Success or the reverse, in respect of the attainment of all objects of desire, life or death, the fruits of action that are represented by pleasure or pain, I neither dislike nor like.[13] When one slays another, one slays only that other's body. That man, who thinks that it is he who slays another, is himself slain. Indeed, both of them are ignorant of the truth, *viz.*, he who slays and he who is slain.*[14] That person, O Maghavat, who having killed or vanquished any one brags of his manliness, should know that he is not the actor but that the act (of which he boasts) has been accomplished by a real agent (who is different).[15] When the question comes as to who is it that causes the creation and the destruction of things in the world, it is generally regarded that some person (who has himself been caused or created) has caused the act (of creation or destruction). Know, however, that the person who is so regarded has (as already said) a creator.[16] Earth, light or heat, space, water, and wind constituting the fifth—from these do all creatures spring. (When this is known to me) what sorrow can I feel (for this change in my condition)?[17] One that is possessed of great learning, one that

---

* I follow Nilakantha's gloss in rendering this verse. *Hatam* is explained as *nirjivam-deham, i. e.*, the body divested of Soul. 'He who slays another is himself slain' means that a person who regards his own self as the slayer is steeped in ignorance, for the Soul is never an actor. By thinking that he is the actor a person invests his Soul with the attributes of the body and the senses. Such a man (as already said) is *Hatah* or slain (*i. e.*, steeped in ignorance). Comparing this with verse 19 of Sec. II of the *Gitā*, we find that the same thing is asserted there in a slightly different way. 'He who regards the Soul as the slayer and he who regards it as slain are both mistaken. The Soul does not slay nor is slain.'—T.

has not much of learning, one that is possessed of strength, one that is destitute of strength, one that is possessed of personal beauty, and one that is very ugly, one that is fortunate and one that is not blessed by fortune,[18] are all swept away by Time, which is too deep to be fathomed, by its own energy. When I know that I have been vanquished by Time, what sorrow can I feel (for this alteration in my circumstances)?[19] One that burns anything burns a thing that has been already burnt. One that slays, only slays a victim already slain. One that is destroyed has been before destroyed. A thing that is acquired by a person is that which is already arrived and intended for his acquisition.[20] This Time is like an ocean. There is no island in it. Where, indeed, is its other shore? Its boundary cannot be seen. Reflecting even deeply, I do not behold the end of this continuous stream that is the great ordainer of all things and that is certainly celestial.[21] If I did not understand that it is Time that destroys all creatures, then, perhaps, I would have felt the emotions of joy and pride and wrath, O lord of Cachi![22] Hast thou come here to condemn me, having ascertained that I am now bearing the form of an ass that subsits upon chaff and that is now passing his days in a lonely spot remote from the habitations of men?[23] If I wish, even now I can assume various awful forms beholding any one of which thou wouldst beat a hasty retreat from my presence.[24] It is Time that gives everything and again takes away everything. It is Time that ordains all things. Do not, O Cakra, brag of thy manliness.[25] Formerly, O Purandara, on occasions of my wrath everything used to become agitated. I am acquinted, however, O Cakra, with the eternal attributes of all things in the world.[26] Do thou also know the truth. Do not suffer thyself to be filled with wonder. Affluence and its origin are not under one's control.[27] Thy mind seems to be like that of a child. It is the same as it was before. Open thy eyes, O Maghavat, and adopt an understanding established on certitude and truth.[28] The gods, men, the *Pitris*, the *Gandharvas*, the snakes, and the *Rākshasas*, were all under my sway in days gone by,

Thou knowest this, O Vāsava![29] Their understandings stupified by ignorance, all creatures used to flatter me, saying,—Salutations to that point of the compass whither Virochana's son Vali may now be staying![30]—O lord of Cachi, I do not at all grieve when I think of that honor (which is no longer paid to me). I feel no sorrow for this fall of mine! My understanding is firm in this respect, *viz.*, that I will live obedient to the sway of the Ordainer.[31] It is seen that some one of noble birth, possessed of handsome features, and endued with great prowess, lives in misery, with all his counsellers and friends. This happens because of its having been ordained.*[32] Similarly, some one born in an ignoble race, devoid of knowledge, and with even a stain on his birth, is seen, O Cakra, to live in happiness with all his counsellers and friends. This also happens because of its having been ordained.[33] An auspicious and beautiful woman, O Cakra, is seen to pass her life in misery. Similarly, an ugly woman with every inauspicious mark is seen to pass her days in great happiness.[34] That we have now become so is not due to any act of ours, O Cakra! That thou art now so is not due, O wielder of the thunderbolt, to any act of thine?[35] Thou hast not done anything, O thou of a hundred sacrifices, in consequence of which thou art now enjoying this affluence. Nor have I done anything in consequence of which I have now been divested of affluence. Affluence and its reverse come one after another.[36] I now behold thee blazing with splendour, endued with prosperity, possessed of beauty, placed at the head of all the deities, and thus roaring at me.[37] This would never be but for the fact of Time standing near after having assailed me. Indeed, if Time had not assailed me I would have today killed thee with only a blow of my fists notwithstanding the fact of thy being armed with the thunder.[38] This, however, is not the time for putting forth my prowess. On the other hand, the time that has come is for adopting a behaviour of peace and tranquillity.

---

* Compare this with the saying usually credited to Napoleon that St. Helena was written in the book of Fate.—T.

It is Time that establishes all things. Time works upon all things and leads them to their final consummation.*[39] I was the worshipped lord of the Dānavas. Burning all with my energy, I used to roar in strength and pride. When Time hath assailed even myself, who is there whom he will not assail?[40] Formerly, O chief of the deities, singly I bore the energy of all the twelve illustrious Ādityas with thyself amongst them.[41] It was I that used to bear up water and then to shower it as rain, O Vāsava! It was I that used to give both light and heat unto the three worlds.[42] It was I that used to protect and it was I that used to destroy. It was I that gave and it was I that took. It was I that used to bind and it was I that used to unbind. In all the worlds I was the one puissant master.[43] That sovereign sway which I had, O chief of the celestials, is no more. I am now assailed by the forces of Time. Those things, therefore, are no longer seen to shine in me.[44] I am not the doer (of acts that are apparently done by me). Thou art not the doer (of acts done by thee). None else, O lord of Cachi, is the doer (of those acts). It is Time, O Cakra, that protects or destroys all things.†[45] Persons conversant with the Vedas say that Time (Eternity) is *Brahma*. The fortnights and months are his body. That body is invested with days and nights as its robes. The seasons are his senses. The year is his mouth.[46] Some people, in consequence of their superior intelligence, say that all this (*viz.*, the entire universe) should be conceived as *Brahma*. The Vedas, however, teach, that the five sheathes that invest the Soul should be regarded as *Brahma*.[47] *Brahma* is deep and inaccessible like a vast ocean of waters. It hath been said that it hath neither beginning nor end, and that it is both indestructible and destructible.‡[48] Though it is without attributes by itself,

---

* The original, if literally rendered, would be 'Time cooks everything.'—T.

† *Bhujyante* is explained by the commentator as equivalent to *pālyante* or *samhriyante*.—T.

‡ *Brahma* is indestructible as *jiva* or Soul, and is destructible as displayed in the form of not-Self.—T.

yet it enters all existent objects and as such assumes attributes. Those persons that are conversant with truth regard *Brahma* as eternal.[49] Through the action of Ignorance, *Brahma* causes the attribute of materiality to invest the Chit or Soul which is immaterial spirit (having knowledge only for its attribute). That materiality, however, is not the essential attribute of the Soul, for upon the appearance of a knowledge of the true cause of everything, that materiality ceases to invest the Soul.*[50] *Brahma* in the form of Time is the refuge of all creatures. Where wouldst thou go transcending that Time? Time or *Brahma*, indeed, cannot be avoided by running nor by staying still.[51] All the five senses are incapable of perceiving *Brahma*. Some have said that *Brahma* is Fire; some that he is Prajāpati;[52] some that he is the Seasons; some that he is the Month; some that he is the Fortnight; some that he is the Days; some that he is the Hours; some that he is the Morning; some that he is the Noon; some that he is the Evening;[53] and some that he is the Moment. Thus diverse people speak diversely of him who is single. Know that he is Eternity, under whose sway are all things.[54] Many thousands of Indras have passed away, O Vāsava, each of whom was possessed of great strength and prowess. Thou also, O lord of Cachi, shalt have to pass away after the same manner.[55] Thee, too, O Cakra, that art possessed of swelling might and that art the chief of the deities, when thy hour comes, all-powerful Time will extinguish![56] Time sweeps away all things. For this reason, O Indra, do not brag! Time is incapable of being quieted by either thee or me or by those gone before us![57] This regal prosperity that thou hast attained and that thou thinkest to be beyond compare, had formerly been possessed by me. It is unsubstantial and unreal. She does not dwell long in one place.[58] Indeed, she had dwelt in thousands of Indras before thee, all of whom, again, were very much superior to thee! Unstable as she is, deserting me she

* I expand verse 50 for giving its sense as a literal version would be unintelligible.—T.

hath now approached thee, O chief of the deities![59] Do not, O Cakra, indulge in such brag again! It behooveth thee to become tranquil! Knowing thee to be full of vanity, she will very soon desert thee!—' "[60]

SECTION CCXXV.

"Bhishma said,—'After this, he of a hundred sacrifices beheld the goddess of Prosperity, in her own embodied form that blazed with splendour, issue out of the form of the high-souled Vali.[1] The illustrious chastiser of Pāka, beholding the goddess blazing with radiance, addressed Vali in these words, with eyes expanded in wonder.[2]

" 'Cakra said,—O Vali, who is this one, thus shining with splendour, thus decked with head-plumes, thus adorned with golden bracelets on her upper arms, and thus emitting a halo of glory on all sides in consequence of her energy that is issuing out of thy body.'—[3]

" 'Vali said,—I do not know whether she is an *Asura* damsel or a celestial one or a human one. Thou mayst or mayst not ask her thyself. Do what pleases thee!—[4]

" 'Cakra said,—O thou of sweet smiles, who art thou that art possessed of such radiance and adorned with plumes that thus issuest from the body of Vali! I do not know thee! Kindly tell me thy name![5] Who, indeed, art thou that thus standest here as Māyā herself, blazing with thy own splendour, after having deserted the lord of the *Daityas?* O, tell me this as I question thee![6]—

" 'Cree said,—Virochana did not know me. This Vali also that is the son of Virochana knows me not. The learned called me by the name of *Dusshahā.** Some knew me by the name of *Vidhitsā.*†[7] I have other names also, O Vāsava! They are *Bhuti, Lakshmi,* and *Çree.*‡ Thou knowest me not, O Cakra, nor doth any one among the deities know me![8]

---

* One that is borne with great difficulty.—T.

† Literally, the desire for action; hence abundance or plenty that is the result of action or labour.—T.

‡ All these names imply plenty and prosperity.—T.

"'Cakra said,—O lady that is difficult of being borne, why do you desert Vali now after having lived in him for a long time? Is it due to any act of mine or is it due to any act that Vali has done?—[9]

"'Cree said,—Neither the Creater nor the Ordainer rules me. It is Time that moves me from one place to another. Do not, O Cakra, disregard Vali!—[10]

"'Cakra said,—For what reason, O goddess adorned with plumes, do you desert Vali? Why also do you approach me (for living in me)? Tell me this, O thou of sweet smiles![11]—

"'Cree said,—I live in truth, in gifts, in good vows, in penances, in prowess, and in virtue! Vali hath fallen off from all these.[12] Formerly he was devoted to the Brāhmanas. He was truthful and had controlled his passions. Latterly, however, he began to cherish feelings of animosity towards the Brāhmanas and touched clarified butter with soiled hands.*[13] Formerly he was always engaged in the performance of sacrifices. At last, blinded by ignorance and afflicted by Time he began to boast before all persons, saying that his adorations towards me were ceaseless.[14] Deserting him (for these faults) I shall henceforth, O Cakra, dwell in thee! Thou shouldst bear me without heedlessness, and with penances and prowess.—[15]

"'Cakra said,—O thou that dwellest amid lotuses, there is not a single person among gods, men, and all creatures, that can bear thee for ever!—[16]

"'Cree said,—Truly, O Purandara, there is none among gods, *Gandharvas*, *Asuras*, or *Rakshasas*, that can bear me for ever!—[17]

"'Cakra said,—O auspicious lady, tell me how I should conduct myself so that thou mayst dwell in me always! I shall certainly obey thy behests. It behooveth thee to answer me truly!—[13]

"'Cree said,—O chief of the deities, I shall tell thee as to how I may be enabled to dwell in thee always! Divide me

---

* *I. e.*, with hands not washed after rising from his meals or while going on with his meals.—T.

into four parts according to the ordinance laid down in the Vedas !—[19]

" 'Cakra said,—I shall assign thee habitations according to their strength and power in bearing thee. As regards myself, I shall always take care, O Lakshmi, that I may not offend thee in any way ![20] Amongst men, the Earth, that progenitrix of all things, bears them all. She shall bear a fourth part of thyself. I think she hath the strength to do it !—[21]

" 'Cree said,—Here, I yield up a quarter of myself. Let it be established on the Earth. Do thou, after this, make a proper disposition, O Cakra, for my second quarter !—[22]

" 'Cakra said,—The waters, among men, in their liquid form, do various services to human beings. Let the waters bear a fourth part of thy person. They have the strength to bear a portion of thine ![23]

" 'Cree said,—I yield up another quarter of mine that is to be established in the waters. Do thou, after this, O Cakra, assign a proper place for my third quarter !—[24]

" 'Cakra said,—The Vedas, the sacrifices, and the deities are all established in Fire. Fire will bear thy third quarter, when it is placed therein.—[25]

" 'Cree said,—Here I yeild up my third quarter which is to be placed in Fire. Do thou, O Cakra, after this, assign a proper place for my last quarter !—[26]

" 'Cakra said,—They that are good among men, devoted to Brāhmanas, and truthful in speech, may bear thy fourth quarter. The good have the power to bear it !—[27]

" 'Cree said,—Here, I yeild up my fourth quarter that is to be placed among the good. My portions thus assigned to different creatures, do thou continue to protect me, O Cakra !—[28]

" 'Cakra said,—Listen to these words of mine ! I have thus distributed thee among different creatures. Those among creatures that will offend against thee shall be chastised by me.—The chief of the Daityas, *viz.*, Vali, thus deserted by Cree, then said these words.[29]

" 'Vali said,—At present the Sun shines as much in the

east as in the west, and as much in the north as in the south.[30] When, however, the Sun, withdrawing himself from all sides, will shine only upon the region of Brahman that is situate in the middle of Sumeru, then will again occur a great battle between the gods and the *Asuras*, and in that fight I shall certainly vanquish all of you![31] When the Sun, withdrawing himself from all sides, will shine fixedly upon only the region of Brahman, then will again occur a great battle between the gods and the *Asuras*, and in that fight I shall surely conquer all of you!*—[32]

" 'Cakra said,—Brahman hath commanded me, saying that I should never kill thee. It is for this reason, O Vali, that I do not hurl my thunderbolt upon thy head![33] Go whithersoever thou wishest, O chief of the Daityas! O great *Asura*, peace to thee! No time will come when the Sun will shine from only the meridian.[34] The Self-born (Brahman) hath before this ordained the laws that regulate the Sun's motions. Giving light and heat to all creatures, he goes on ceaselessly.[35] For six months he travels in a northward course and then for the other six in a southward course. The Sun travels by these courses (one after another), creating winter and summer for all creatures!—'[36]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by Indra, O Bhārata, Vali the chief of the *Daityas* proceeded towards the south. Purandara proceeded towards the north.[37] The thousand eyed Indra, after having listened to this speech of Vali which was characterised by an entire absence of pride, then ascended the skies.' "[38]

---

* The commentator explains that according to the Paurānic theory, the world stands all around the mountains of Meru. The region of Brahman stands on its top. The Sun travels round Meru and shines over all the directions or points of the compass. This happens in the age called the *Vaivaswata Manwantara* (the age or epoch of Manu the son of Vivaswat). But after the lapse of this age, when the *Sāvarnika Manwantara* comes, the sun will shine upon only the region on the top of Meru, and all around there will be darkness.—T.

Section CCXXVI.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is also cited the old narrative of the discourse between him of a hundred sacrifices and the *Asura* Namuchi, O Yudhishthira.[1] When the *Asura* Namuchi, who was conversant with the birth and the death of all creatures, was sitting, divested of prosperity but untroubled at heart like the vast ocean in perfect stillness, Purandara addressed him these words :[2]—Fallen off from thy place, bound with cords, brought under the sway of thy foes, and divested of prosperity, dost thou, O Namuchi, indulge in grief or passest thou thy days cheerfully ?—[3]

" 'Namuchi answered,—By indulging in such sorrow as cannot be warded off one only wastes one's body and gladdens one's foes. Then, again, no one can lighten another's sorrow by taking any portion of it upon oneself. For these reasons, O Cakra, I do not indulge in sorrow. All this that thou seest hath one end.*[4] Indulgence in sorrow destroys personal comeliness, prosperity, life, and virtue itself, O chief of the deities ![5] Without doubt, suppressing that sorrow which comes upon oneself and which is born of an improper disposition of the mind, one possessed of true knowledge should reflect in one's mind of that which is productive of the highest good and which dwells in the heart itself.†[6] When one sets one's mind upon what is for one's highest good, without doubt, the result that takes place is that one's objects are all accomplished.‡[7] There is One ordainer, and no second. His control extends over the being that lies within the womb. Controlled by the great Ordainer I go on as He sets me on, like water running along a downward path.[8]

---

* *I. e.*, all things are destructible instead of being eternal.—T.

† The commentator explains that *Hriddyam* means *Hritstham swarupam*. By *Kallyānam*, of course, *Moksha* or Emancipation is intended.—T.

‡ As explained in previous verses, one striving to attain Emancipation must set himself to *yoga*. As a consequence of *yoga*, one acquires (without wishing for them) many wonderful powers. The accomplishment of one's objects then follows as a matter of course.—T.

Knowing what is existence and what emancipation, and understanding also that the latter is superior to the former, I do not, however, strive for attaining to it. Doing acts that tend towards the direction of virtue and also those that tend towards the opposite direction, I go on as He sets me on.[9] One gets those things that are ordained to be got. That which is to happen actually happens.[10] One has repeatedly to reside in such wombs in which one is placed by the Ordainer. One has no choice in the matter.[11] That person is never stupified, who when placed in any particular condition, accepts it as that which he was ordained to be placed in.[12] Men are affected by pleasure and pain that come by turns in course of Time. There is no personal agency (in the matter of pleasure or pain to any one). In this lies sorrow, *viz.*, that he that dislikes sorrow regards himself as the actor.*[13] Amongst *Rishis*, gods, great *Asuras*, persons fully conversant with the three Vedas, and ascetics in the forest, who is there whom calamities do not approach? Those, however, that are conversant with the Soul and the not-Soul never fear calamities.[14] The person of wisdom, naturally standing immovable like Himavat, never gives way to wrath; never suffers himself to be attached to the objects of the senses; never languishes in sorrow or rejoices in happiness. When overwhelmed with even great afflictions, such a person never gives way to grief.[15] That person is a very superior one whom even great success cannot gladden and even dire calamities connot stupify, and who bears pleasure and pain, and that which is between them both, with an unmoved heart.[16] Into whatever condition a person may fall, he should summon cheerfulness without yielding to sorrow. Indeed, even

---

* The sense is this: a wise man never regards himself as the actor; and hence never feels sorrow. Whatever sorrow overtakes him he views unmoved and takes it as the result of what had been ordained. Not so the foolish man. He deems himself to be the actor and looks upon sorrow as the result of his own acts. Hence, he cannot view it unmoved. Sorrow, therefore, lies in one's regarding oneself as the actor; the true view being that one instead of being an actor is only an instrument in the hands of the grat Ordainer.—T.

thus should one drive off from one's self one's swelling grief that is born in one's mind and that is (if not dispelled) sure to give pain.[17] That assembly of learned persons engaged in the discussion of duties based upon both the *Çrutis* and the *Smritis* is not a good assembly,—indeed, that does not deserve to be called by the name of assembly,—entering which a wicked man does not become penetrated with fear (born of his wicked deeds). That man is the foremost of his species who having dived into an enquiry after righteousness succeeds in acting according to the conclusions to which he arrives.*[18] The acts of a wise man are not easily comprehensible. He that is wise is never stupified when afflictions come upon him. Even if he falls away from his position like Gautama in his old age, in consequence of the direst calamity, he does not suffer himself to be stupified.†[19] By any of these, viz., *mantras*, strength, energy, wisdom, prowess, behaviour, conduct, or the affluence of wealth, can a person acquire that which has not been ordained to be acquired by him? What sorrow then is there for the non-acquisition of that upon which one has set one's heart?[20] Before I was born, they that have the matter in their hands had ordained what I am to do and suffer. I am fulfilling what was thus ordained for me. What then can death do to me?[21] One obtains only that which has been ordained to be obtained. One goes thither wither it was ordained that one is to go. Those sorrows and joys only are obtained that are ordained to be obtained.[22] That man who, knowing this fully, does not suffer himself

---

* The object of this verse is to show that right conclusions in respect of duties are very rare.—T.

† This is a hard hit. The listener, *viz.*, Indra, had violated, under circumstances of the most wicked deception, the chastity of Gautama's spouse Ahalyā. Gautama had to punish his wife by converting her into a stone. This punishment, however, reacted upon Gautama inasmuch as it put a stop to his leading any longer a life of domesticity. In spite of such a dire affliction Gautama did not suffer his cheerfulness to depart from his heart. The effect of the allusion is to tell Indra that the speaker is not like him but like Gautama, *i. e.*, that Namuchi was not the slave of his passions but that he was the master of his senses and the heart.—T.

to be stupified, and who is contented under both happiness and sorrow, is regarded as the foremost of his species.—' "[23]

Section CCXXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What, indeed, is good for a man that is sunk in dire distress, when loss of friends or loss of kingdom, O monarch, has occurred ?[1] In this world, O bull of Bharata's race, thou art the foremost of our instructors ! I ask thee this. It behooveth thee to tell me what I ask !'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'For one that has been divested of sons and wives and pleasures of every kind and wealth, and that has been plunged into dire distress, fortitude is of the highest good, O king ! The body is never emaciated of one that is always possessed of fortitude.[3] Grieflessness bears happiness within it, and also health that is a superior possession. In consequence again of this health of body, one may again acquire prosperity.[4] That wise man, O sire, who adheres to a course of righteous conduct (while afflicted by distress) succeeds in acquiring prosperity, patience, and perseverance in the accomplishment of all his objects.[5] In this connection is once more cited the old narrative of the discourse between Vali and Vāsava, O Yudhishthira ![6] After the battle between the gods and the *Asuras*, in which a large number of *Daityas* and *Dānavas* fell, had come to an end, Vali became king. He was deceived by Vishnu who once more established his sway over all the worlds. He of a hundred sacrifices was once more invested with the sovereignty of the deities.[7] After the rule of the deities had thus been re-established, and the four orders of men had been re-established in the practice of their respective courses of duty, the three worlds once more swelled with prosperity, and the Self-born became glad of heart.[8] At that time, accompanied by the Rudras, the Vasus, the Ādityas, the Açwins, the celestial *Rishis*, the *Gandharvas*, the *Siddhas*, and other superior orders of beings, the puissant[9] Cakra, seated in splendour on his four-tusked prince of elephants, called Airāvata, made a progress through all the worlds.[10]

One day, while thus engaged, the wielder of the thunderbolt beheld Virochana's son Vali within a certain mountain cave on the sea-shore. Seeing the prince of Dānavas, he approached him.[11] Beholding the chief of the deities, *viz.*, Indra, thus seated on the back of Airāvata and surrounded by the several orders of the celestials, the prince of the Daityas showed no signs of sorrow or agitation.[12] Indra also, seeing Vali staying unmoved and fearless, addressed him from the back of his foremost of elephants, saying,[13]—How is it, O Daitya, that thou art so unmoved? Is it due to thy heroism or to thy having waited with reverence upon aged persons? Is it due to thy mind having been cleansed by penances? To whatever cause it may be due, this frame of mind is certainly very difficult of attainment.[14] Hurled from a position that was certainly the highest, thou art now divested of all thy possessions and thou hast been brought under the sway of thy foes! O son of Virochana, what is that by having recourse to which thou dost not grieve although the occasion is for grief?[15] Formerly, when thou wert invested with the sovereignty of thy own order, unrivalled pleasures were thine. Now, however, thou art divested of thy wealth and jewels and sovereignty. Tell us why thou art so unmoved.[16] Thou wert before this a god, seated on the throne of thy sire and grandsires. Beholding thyself stript today by thy foes, why dost thou not grieve?[17] Thou art bound in Varuna's noose and hast been struck with my thunderbolt. Thy wives have been taken away and thy wealth also. Tell us why thou dost not indulge in grief![18] Divested of prosperity and fallen away from affluence, thou indulgest not in grief! This, indeed, is something that is very remarkable! Who else, O Vali, than one like thee, could venture to bear the burthen of existence after being shorn of the sovereignty of the three worlds?[19]—Hearing without any pain these and other cutting speeches that Indra addressed to him, asserting the while his own superiority over him, Vali the son of Virochana fearlessly answered his interrogator, saying the following words.[20]

"'Vali said,—When calamities have oppressed me, O

Cakra, what dost thou gain by such brag now? Today I behold thee, O Purandara, stand before me with the thunderbolt upraised in thy hand![21] Formerly, however, thou couldst not bear thyself so. Now thou hast by some means gained that power. Indeed, who else than thou could utter such cruel speeches?[22] That person who, though able to punish, shows compassion towards a heroic foe vanquished and brought under his sway, is truly a very superior individual.[23] When two persons fight, victory in the battle is certainly dubious. One of the two certainly becomes victorious, and the other becomes vanquished.[24] O chief of the deities, let not thy disposition be such! Do not imagine that thou hast become the sovereign of all creatures after having conquered all with thy might and prowess![25] That we have become so is not, O Cakra, the result of any act of ours.* That thou hast become so, O wielder of the thunderbolt, is not the result of any act of thine![26] What I am now thou wilt be in the future. Do not disregard me, thinking that thou hast done an exceedingly difficult feat.[27] A person obtains happiness and misery one after another in course of Time. Thou hast, O Cakra, obtained the sovereignty of the universe in course of Time but not in consequence of any especial merit in thee![28] It is Time that leads me on in his course. That same Time leads thee also onward. It is for this that I am not what thou art today, and thou also art not what we are![*29] Dutiful services done to parents, reverential worship of deities, due practice of any good quality,—none of these can bestow happiness on any one.[30] Neither knowledge, nor penances, nor gifts, nor friends, nor kinsmen, can rescue one that is afflicted by Time.[31] Men are incapable of averting, by even a thousand means, an impending calamity. Intelligence and strength go for nothing in such cases.[32] There is no rescuer of men that are afflicted by Time's course. That thou, O Cakra, regardest thyself as the actor lies at the root of all sorrow.[33]

---

* The *we* here is the pronoun of dignity, applying to the speaker only and not to both the speaker and the listener.—T.

If the ostensible doer of an act is the real actor thereof, that doer then would not himself be the work of some one else, (*viz.*, the Supreme Being). Hence, because the ostensible doer is himself the product of another, that another is the Supreme Being above whom there is nothing higher.[34] Aided by Time I had vanquished thee. Aided by Time thou hast vanquished me. It is Time that is the mover of all beings that move. It is Time that destroys all beings.[35] O Indra, in consequence of thy intelligence being of the vulgar species thou seest not that destruction awaits all things! Some, indeed, regard thee highly as one that has acquired by his own acts the sovereignty of the universe.[36] For all that, how can one like us that know the course of the world, indulge in grief in consequence of having been afflicted by Time, or suffer our understanding to be stupified, or yield to the influence of error?[37] Shall my understanding or that of one like me, even when we are overwhelmed by Time, coming in contact with a calamity, suffer itself to be destroyed like a wrecked vessel at sea?*[38] Myself, thyself, and all those who will in future become the chiefs of the deities, shall have, O Cakra, to go the way along which hundreds of Indras have gone before thee![39] When thy hour matures itself, Time will surely destroy thee like me,—thee that art now so invincible and that now blazest with unrivalled splendour![40] In Time's course many thousands of Indras and of deities have been swept off *yuga* after *yuga*. Time, indeed, is irresistible![41] Having attained to thy present position, thou regardest thyself very highly, even as the Creator of all beings, the divine and eternal Brahman![42] This position of thine had been attained by many before thee. With none did it prove stable or unending. In consequence, however, of a foolish understanding, thou alone regardest it to be immutable and eternal.[43] Thou trustest in that which is not deserving of trust. Thou deemest that to be eternal which is not eternal. O chief of the deities, one that is

---

* The sentence is an interrogative one. The Burdwan translator mistakes the meaning. K. P. Singha is correct.—T.

overwhelmed and stupified by Time really regards oneself after this manner.[44] Led by folly thou regardest thy present regal prosperity to be thine. Know, however, that it is never stable in respect of either thee or me or others.[45] It had belonged to innumerable persons before thee. Passing over them it has now become thine. It will stay with thee, O Vāsava, for sometime and then prove its instability. Like a cow abandoning one drinking ditch for another, it will surely desert thee for somebody else.[46] So many sovereigns have gone before thee that I venture not to make an enumeration. In the future also, O Purandara, innumerable sovereigns will rise after thee.[47] I do not behold those rulers now that had formerly enjoyed this Earth with her trees and plants and gems and living creatures and waters and mines.[48] Prithu, Aila, Maya, Bhima, Naraka, Camvara, Açwagriva, Puloman, Swarbhānu, whose standard was of immeasurable height, Prahrāda, Namuchi, Daksha, Vipprachitti, Virochana, Hrinisheva, Suhotra, Bhurihan, Pushavat, Vrisha,[49-50] Satyepsu, Rishava, Vāhu, Kapilāçwa, Virupaka, Vāna, Kārttaçwara, Vahni, Viçwadangshtra, Nairiti,[51] Sankocha, Varitāksha, Varāha, Açwa, Ruchiprabha, Viçwajit, Pratirupa, Vrishānda, Vishkara, Madhu,[52] Hiranyakaçipu, the Dānava Kaitabha, and many others that were Daiteyas and Dānavas and Rākshasas,[53] these and many more unnamed, belonging to remote and remoter ages, great Daityas and foremost of Dānavas, whose names we have heard,[54]—indeed, many foremost of Daityas of former times,—have gone away, leaving the Earth. All of them were afflicted by Time. Time proved stronger than all of them.[55] All of them had worshipped the Creator in hundreds of sacrifices. Thou art not the one person that hast done so. All of them were devoted to righteousness and all of them always performed great sacrifices.[56] All of them were capable of sojourning through the skies, and all were heroes that never showed their backs in battle. All of them had very strong frames and all had arms that resembled heavy bludgeons.[57] All of them were masters of hundreds of illusions, and all could assume any form they wished. We have never heard that having

engaged in battle any of them had ever sustained a defeat.[58] All were firm observers of the vow of truth, and all of them sported as they wished. Devoted to the Vedas and Vedic rites, all of them were possessors of great learning.[59] Possessed of great might, all of them had acquired the highest prosperity and affluence. But none of those high-souled sovereigns had the least tincture of pride in consequence of sovereignty.[60] All of them were liberal, giving unto each what each deserved. All of them behaved properly and duly towards all creatures.[61] All of them were the offspring of Daksha's daughters. Endued with great strength, all were lords of the creation. Scorching all things with their energy, all of them blazed with splendour. Yet all of them were swept off by Time.[62] As regards thee, O Cakra, it is evident that when thou shalt have, after enjoying the Earth, to leave her, thou wilt not be able to control thy grief![63] Cast off this desire that thou cherishest for objects of affection and enjoyment. Cast off this pride that is born of prosperity. If thou actest in this manner, thou wilt then be able to bear the grief that attends the loss of sovereignty.[64] When the hour of sorrow comes, do not yield to sorrow. Similarly, when the hour of joy comes, do not rejoice. Disregarding both the past and the future, live contentedly with the present.[65] When Time that never sleeps came upon me that had always been heedful of my duties, turn thy heart to the ways of peace, O Indra, for that same Time will very soon come over thee![66] Thou piercest me with thy words, and thou seemest to be bent upon inspiring dread in me. Indeed, finding me collected, thou regardest thy own self very highly.[67] Time had first assailed me. It is even now behind thee. I was at first vanquished by Time. It was for that reason that thou didst afterwards succeed in vanquishing me for which thou roarest in pride thus![68] Formerly, when I happened to become angry, what person was there on Earth that could stand before me in battle? Time, however, is stronger. He has overwhelmed me. It is for this reason, O Vāsava, that thou art able to stand before me! Those thousand (celestial years), that are the measure

of thy sway, will surely come to an end.[69] Thou shalt then fall and thy limbs will become as miserable as mine now even though I am possessed of mighty energy. I have fallen away from the high place that is occupied by the sovereign of the three worlds. Thou art now the actual Indra in heaven.[70] In this delightful world of living beings, thou art now, in consequence of Time's course, an object of universal adoration. Canst thou say what is that by having done which thou hast become Indra today and what also is that by having done which we have fallen off from the position we had?[71] Time is the one creator and destroyer. Nothing else is cause (in the universe for the production of any effect). Decline, fall, sovereignty, happiness, misery, birth, and death,[72]—a learned person by encountering any of these neither rejoices nor indulges in sorrow. Thou, O Indra, knowest us. We also, O Vāsava, know thee![73] Why then dost thou brag in this fashion before me, forgetting, O shameless one, that it is Time that has made thee what thou art? Thou didst thyself witness what my prowess was in those days![74] The energy and might I used to display in all my battles, furnish sufficient evidence. The Ādityas, the Rudras, the Sāddhyas, the Vasus,[75] and the Maruts, O lord of Cachi, were all vanquished by me. Thou knowest it well thyself, O Cakra, that in the great encounter between the gods and the *Asuras*,[76] the assembled deities were quickly routed by me by the fury of my attack. Mountains with their forests and the denizens that lived in those forests, were repeatedly hurled by us.[77] Many were the mountain summits with craggy edges that I broke on thy head. What, however, can I do now? Time is incapable of being resisted.[78] If it were not so, do not think that I would not have ventured to kill thee with that thunderbolt of thine with even a blow of my fist. The present, however, is not the hour with me for the display of prowess. The hour that has come is such that I should adopt tranquillity now and tolerate everything. It is for this reason, O Cakra, that I put up with all this insolence of thine. Know, however, that I am less able to bear insolence than even thou.[79]

Thou braggest before one who, upon his time having been matured, is surrounded on all sides by Time's conflagration and bound strongly in Time's cords.[80] Yonder stands that dark individual who is incapable of being resisted by the world. Of fierce form, he stands there, having bound me like an inferior animal bound with cords.[81] Gain and loss, happiness and misery, lust and wrath, birth and death, captivity and release,—these all one encounters in Time's course.[82] I am not the actor. Thou art not the actor. He is the actor who, indeed, is omnipotent. That Time ripens me (for throwing me down) like a fruit that has appeared on a tree.[83] There are certain acts by doing which one person obtains happiness in Time's course. By doing those very acts another obtains misery in the course of Time.[84] Versed as I am with the virtues of Time, it behooves me not to indulge in grief when it is Time that has assailed me. It is for this reason, O Cakra, that I do not grieve. Grief cannot do us any good. The grief of one that indulges in grief never dispels one's calamity. On the other hand, grief destroys one's power. It is for this that I do not indulge in grief !—[85-86]

"Thus addressed by the chief of the *Daityas*, he of a hundred sacrifices, *viz.*, the puissant and thousand-eyed chastiser of Pāka, restrained his wrath and said these words :—[87]

" 'Cakra said,—Beholding this upraised arm of mine, equipt with the thunderbolt, and those nooses of Varuna, who is there whose understanding would not be agitated, including the very Destroyer himself that compasses the death of all beings ?[88] Thy understanding, however, so firm and so endued with visions of the truth, hath not been agitated ! O thou of invincible prowess, verily, thou art unmoved today in consequence of thy fortitude ![89] Beholding all things in this universe to be fleeting, who is there in it, endued with body, that would venture to repose confidence on either his body or all the objects of his desire ?[90] Like thyself I also know that this universe is not eternal, and that it has been thrown into Time's conflagration that is dreadful

though hidden from the veiw, that is continuously burning, and that is truly endless.[91] Every one is assailed here by Time. Nothing among beings that are subtile or gross enjoys an immunity from Time's sway. All things are being cooked in Time's cauldren.[92] Time has no master. Time is ever heedful. Time is always cooking all things within itself. No one who has once entered the domain of Time which is ceaselessly going on, can escape therefrom.[93] All embodied beings may be heedless of Time, but Time is heedful and is broad awake behind them. No one has ever been seen to have driven off Time from him.[94] Ancient and eternal, and the embodiment of justice, Time is uniform in respect of all living creatures. Time cannot be avoided, and there is no retrogression in its course.[95] Like a usurer adding up his interest, Time adds up its subtile portions represented by *kalās*, and *lavas*, and *kāshthās*, and *kshanas*, and months, and days and nights.[96] Like the current of a river washing away a tree whose roots are reached by it, Time, getting at him who says,—*This I will do today but this other act I will do tomorrow*—sweeps him away.[97] Time sweeps away one and men exclaim—*I saw him a little while before! How has he died?*[98]—Wealth, comforts, rank, prosperity, all fall a prey to Time. Approaching every living creature, Time snatches away his life. All things that proudly raise their heads high are destined to fall down.[99] That which is existent is only another form of the non-existent. Every thing is transitory and unstable. Such a conviction is, however, difficult to come at.[100] Thy understanding, so firm and endued with true vision, is unmoved. Thou dost not, even mentally, realise what thou wert sometime before![101] Time that is strong, assailing the universe, cooks it within itself and sweeps away everything without consideration of seniority of years or the reverse. For all that, one that is being dragged by Time is unconscious of the noose thrown round one's neck.[102] People, attached to jealousy and vanity and cupidity, to lust, wrath, and fear, to desire, heedlessness, and pride, suffer themselves to be stupified.[103] Thou, however, art acquainted with the truth of existence. Thou

art possessed of learning and endued with wisdom and penance. Thou beholdest Time as clearly as if it were an emblic myrobalan on the palm of thy hand![104] O son of Virochana, fully conversant art thou with the topic of Time's conduct! Thou art well versed in all branches of knowledge. Thou art of cleansed Soul and a thorough master of thy passions. Thou art, for this, an object of affection with all persons endued with wisdom.[105] Thou hast, with thy understanding, fully comprehended the whole universe. Though thou hast enjoyed every kind of happiness, thou wert never attached to anything, and hence thou hast not been stained by anything.[106] The qualities of Passion and Darkness do not soil thee for thou hast conquered thy senses. Thou waitest only upon thy Soul which is divested of both joy and sorrow.[107] The friend of all creatures, without animosity, with thy heart set upon tranquillity, beholding thee thus, my heart is inclined to compassion towards thee.[108] I do not desire to afflict an enlightened person like thee by keeping him in an enchained condition. Abstention from injury is the highest religion. I feel compassion towards thee.[109] These nooses of Varuna, with which thou hast been bound, will loosen in Time's course in consequence of the misconduct of men. Blessed be thou, O great *Asura!*[110] When the daughter-in-law will set the aged mother-in-law to work, when the son, through delusion, will command the sire to work for him,[111] when Cudras will have their feet washed by Brāhmanas and have sexual congress fearlessly with women of regenerate families,[112] when men will discharge the vital seed into forbidden wombs, when the refuse of houses will begin to be carried upon plates and vessels made of white brass, and when sacrificial offerings intended for the deities will begin to be borne upon forbidden vessels,[113] when all the four orders will transgress all restraints, then these bonds of thine will begin, one by one, to loosen![114] From us thou hast no fear. Wait quietly. Be happy. Be divested of all sorrow. Let thy heart be cheerful. Let no illness be thine![115]—Having said these words unto him, the divine Indra, having the prince of

elephants for his vehicle, left that spot. Having vanquished all the *Asuras*, the chief of the deities rejoiced in gladness and became the one sole lord of all the worlds.[116] The great *Rishis* hymned the praises of that lord of all mobile and immobile creatures. The deity of fire once more began to bear the libations of clarified butter that were poured (by all) into his visible form, and the great god took charge of the nectar that was committed to his care.[117] His praises hymned by the foremost of Brāhmanas engaged in sacrifices, the lord Indra, blazing with splendour, his wrath pacified, and his heart tranquillised, became gladdened, and returning to his own abode in heaven, began to pass his days in great happiness.*' "[118]

Section CCXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, the indications of future greatness and future fall in respect of a person!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The mind itself, blessed be thou, indicates the premonitory symptoms of one's future prosperity and future fall.[2] In this connection is cited the old story of the discourse between Cree and Cakra. Listen to it, O Yudhishthira![3] The great ascetic Nārada, of energy whose effulgence is as immeasurable as *Brahma* itself, with sins all destroyed, capable of beholding through the prosperity of his penances both this and the other world at once, and the equal of the celestial *Rishis* dwelling in the region of the Creator, roved according to his pleasure through the triple world.[4-5] One day, rising up at dawn, he wished to perform his ablutions, and for that purpose went to the river Gangā as she issued out of the pass known by the name of Dhruva, and plunged into the stream.†[6] At that time the thousand-

---

* These things had not happened for many days in consequence of the wickedness of the *Asuras*. With the victory of Indra, sacrifices returned, and with them universal peace.—T.

† The words are '*Dhruvadwārabhavām*. The commentator is silent. Probably a Himālayan pass. The Vernacular translators think it is

eyed Indra also, the wielder of the thunder-bolt, and the slayer of Camvara and Pāka, came to the very shore where Nārada was.[7] The *Rishi* and the deity, both of souls under perfect command, finished their ablutions, and having completed their silent recitations, sat together.[8] They employed the hour in reciting and listening to the excellent narratives told by the great celestial *Rishis* descriptive of many good and high deeds. Indeed, with concentrated attention the two were engaged in such pleasant discourse on ancient history.*[9] While sitting there they beheld the rising Sun casting his thousand rays right before him. Seeing the full orb, both of them stood up and hymned his praises.[10] Just at that time they beheld in the sky, in a direction opposite to that of the rising star of day, some luminous object, resplendent as blazing fire and that seemed to be a second star of day. And they saw, O Bhārata, that that luminous object was gradually approaching towards them both.[11] Riding upon Vishnu's vehicle adorned with Gadura and Surya himself, that object blazed forth with unrivalled splendour, and seemed to illumine the three worlds.[12] The object they saw was none other than Crce herself, attended by many Apsarās endued with splendid beauty. Indeed, she looked like a large solar disc herself, possessed of effulgence resembling that of fire.[13] Adorned with ornaments that looked like veritable stars, she wore a wreath that resembled a garland of pearls. Indra saw that goddess called Padmā having her habitation in the midst of lotuses.[14] Descending from her foremost of cars, that unrivalled lady began to approach towards the lord of the three worlds and the calestial *Rishi* Nārada.[15] Followed

---

the region of the Pole-star that is intended. Dhruva is a name of Brahman the Creator. It may mean, therefore, the river as it issues out of Brahman's *loka* or region. The Paurānic myth is that issuing from the foot of Vishnu the stream enters the Kamandalu of Brahman and thence to the Earth.—T.

* The reader of Lord Lytton's works may, in this connection, be reminded of the discourse between *Mejnour* and the neophyte introduced to him by Zanoni, in course of their evening rambles over the ridges of the Appenines.—T.

by Nārada, Maghavat also proceeded towards that lady. With joined hands, he offered himself up to her,[16] and versed as he was with all things, he worshipped her with reverence and sincerity never surpassed. The adorations over, the lord of celestials, O king, addressed Cree in the following words.[17]

"'Cakra said,—O thou of sweet smiles, who, indeed, art thou and for what business hast thou come here? O thou of fair brows, whence dost thou come and whither wilt thou proceed, O auspicious lady?—[18]

"'Cree said,—In the three worlds full of the seeds of auspiciousness, all creatures, mobile and immobile, strive with their whole hearts to win an association with me.[19] I am that Padmā, that Cree decked with lotuses, who sprung from the lotus that blooms at the touch of the rays of Surya, for the prosperity of all creatures.[20] I am called Lakshmi, Bhuti, and Cree, O slayer of Vala! I am Faith, I am Intelligence, I am Affluence, I am Victory, and I am Immutability![21] I am Patience, I am Success, and I am Prosperity. I am Swāhā, I am Swadhā, I am Reverence, and I an Fate, and I am Memory.[22] I dwell at the van and on the standards of victorious and virtuous sovereigns, as also in their homes and cities and dominions.[23] I always reside, O slayer of Vala, with those foremost of men, *viz.*, heroes panting after victory and unretreating from battle.[24] I also reside for ever with persons that are firmly attached to virtue, that are endued with great intelligence, that are devoted to *Brahma*, that are truthful in speech, that are possessed of humility, and that are liberal.[25] Formerly I dwelt with the *Asuras* in consequence of my disposition of being bound by truth and merit. Seeing, however, that the *Asuras* have assumed adverse natures, I have left them and wish to reside in thee!—[26]

"'Cakra said,—O thou of fair face, in consequence of what behaviour of the *Asuras* didst thou dwell with them? What didst thou see there for which thou hast come hither, having deserted the *Daityas* and the *Dānavas*?—[27]

"'Cree said,—I attach myself steadfastly to those that are devoted to the duties of their own order, to those that never fall away from patience, to those that take a pleasure in

walking along the path which leads to heaven.[28] I always reside with those that are distinguished for liberality, for study of the scriptures, for sacrifices, for other scriptural rites, and for worship of *Pitris*, deities, preceptors, seniors, and guests.[29] Formerly the Dānavas used to keep their abodes clean, to keep their women under control, to pour libations on the sacrificial fire, to wait dutifully on their preceptors, to restrain their passions, to be obedient to the Brāhmanas, and to be truthful in speech.[30] They were full of faith; they kept their wrath under control; they practised the virtue of charity; they never envied others; they used to maintain their friends and advisers, and their spouses; they were never jealous.[31] Formerly they never assailed one another, filled with wrath. They were all contented and never felt pain at the sight of other people's affluence and prosperity.[32] They were all charitable and economical; of repectable conduct, and endued with compassion. They were exccessively inclined to grace, possessed of simplicity of conduct, steadfast in faith, and had their passions under complete control.[33] They used to keep their servants and counsellers contented, and were grateful and endued with sweet speech. They used to serve every one as each deserved in consequence of his position and honor. They were endued with shame. They were of rigid vows.[34] They used to perform their ablutions on every sacred day. They used to smear themselves properly with perfumes and auspicious unguents. They were also given to adorn their persons duly. They were observant of fasts and penances, were trustful, and utterers of Vedic hymns.[35] The Sun never rose upon them while they lay asleep. They never outslept the moon. They always abstained from curds and pounded barley.[36] They used every morning to look at clarified butter and other auspicious articles, and with senses withdrawn they used to recite the Vedas and worship Brāhmanas with gifts.[37] Their discourse was always virtuous, and they never accepted gifts. They always went to sleep at midnight and never slept during the day.[38] They always used to take pleasure in showing compassion for the distressed, the helpless, the aged, the weak,

the sick, and women, and enjoyed all their possessions by sharing these with them.[39] They always used to assure and comfort the agitated, the cheerless, the anxious, the terrified, the diseased, the weak and emaciated, the robbed, and the afflicted.[40] They followed the dictates of virtue and never injured one another. They were ready and well-disposed for action of every kind (that deserved to be accomplished). They used to serve and wait with reverence upon seniors and aged individuals.[41] They duly worshipped *Pitris*, deities, and guests, and ate every day what was left after gratifying these. They were firmly devoted to truth and penances.[42] None amongst them ate singly any food that was good, and none had congress with other people's wives. As regards compassion, they behaved towards all creatures as towards their own selves.[43] They never allowed the emission of the vital seed into empty space, into inferior animals, into forbidden wombs, or on sacred days.[44] They were always distinguished for gifts, for cleverness, for simplicity, for hopeful exertion, for humility, for friendliness, for forgiveness.[45] And, O puissant one, truth, charity, penance, purity, compassion, soft speeches, and absence of animosity towards friends,—all these were always in them.[46] Slumber, procrastination, fretfulness, envy, and want of foresight, discontent, melancholy, cupidity, never assailed them.[47] In consequence of the *Dānavas* having been distingushed for these good qualities, I dwelt with them from the beginning of the creation for many *yugas* together.[48] Times were altered, and that alteration brought about an alteration in the character of the *Dānavas*. I saw that virtue and morality deserted them and that they began to own the sway of lust and wrath.[49] Persons, though themselves inferior in attainments, began to cherish animosities towards seniors in age possessed of superior qualifications, and while the latter, possessed of virtue and merit, used to speak upon proper topics in the midst of assemblies, the former began to ridicule or laugh at them.[50] When reverend seniors in age came, the younger individuals, seated at their ease, refused to adore the former by rising up and saluting them with respect.[51] In the pre-

sence of sires, sons began to exercise power (in matters that concerned sires alone). They that were not in receipt of wages accepted service and shamelessly proclaimed the fact.[52] Those amongst them that succeeded in amassing great wealth by doing unrighteous and censurable deeds came to be held in esteem.*[53] During the night they began to indulge in loud screams and shrieks. Their *homa* fires ceased to send bright and upward flames. Sons began to lord it over sires, and wives dominated over husbands.[54] Mothers, fathers, aged seniors, preceptors, guests, and guides ceased to command respect for their superior status. People ceased to bring up with affection their own offspring but began to desert them.[55] Without giving away the defined portion in alms and reserving the fixed portion for offering it unto the gods, every one ate what he had. Indeed, without offering their goods to the deities in sacrifices and without sharing them with the *Pitris*, the gods, guests, and reverend seniors, they apropriated them to their own use shamelessly.[56] Their cooks no longer professed any consideration for purity of mind, deed, and word. They ate what had been left uncovered.[57] Their corn lay scattered in yards, exposed to devastation by crows and rats. Their milk remained exposed, and they began to touch clarified butter with hands unwashed after eating.†[58] Their spades, domestic knives, baskets, and dishes and cups of white brass, and other utensils began to lie scattered in their houses.[59] Their housewifes abstained from looking after these. They no longer attended to the repairs of their houses and walls. Tethering their animals they abstained from giving them food and drink.‡[60] Disregard-

---

* K. P. Singha wrongly translates this verse.—T.

† It is difficult to give to non-Hindoo peoples the idea of what is *uchcchishta*. The hand becomes *uchcchishta* when set to food that is being eaten. Without washing that hand with pure water, it is never used by a Hindoo for doing any work. The food that remains in a dish after some portion of it has been eaten is *uchcchishta*. The idea is peculiar to Hindooism and is not to be seen among other races or peoples in the world.—T.

‡ *Yavasa* is pasture grass.—T.

ing children that only looked on, and without having fed their dependants, the *Dānavas* ate what they had.[61] They began to prepare *pāyasa* and *kriçara* and dishes of meat and cakes and *çashkuli* (not for gods and guests) but for their own selves, and commenced to eat the flesh of animals not killed in sacrifices.*[62] They used to sleep even after sun had risen. They made night of their morns. Day and night, disputes and quarrels waxed in every house of theirs.[63] They that were not respectable amongst them no longer showed any respect for those that deserved respect while the latter were seated in any place. Fallen off from their defined duties, they ceased to reverence those that had betaken themselves to the woods for leading a life of peace and divine contemplation. Intermixture of castes freely commenced among them. They ceased to attend to purity of person or mind.[64] Brāhmanas learned in the Vedas ceased to command respect among them. Those again that were ignorant of the *Richs* were not condemned or punished. Both were treated on a footing of equality,—those, that is, that deserved respect and those that deserved no respect.[65] Their servant girls became wicked in behaviour, and began to wear necklaces of gold and other ornaments and fine robes, and used to remain in their houses or go away before their very eyes.[66] They began to derive great pleasure from sports and diversions in which their women were dressed as men and their men as women.[67] Those amongst their ancestors that were affluent had made gifts of wealth unto deserving persons. The descendants of the donors, even when in prosperous conditions, began to resume, for their unbelief, those gifts.[68] When difficulties threatened the accomplishment of any purpose and friend sought the counsel of friend, that purpose was frustrated by the latter even if he had any interest of the slightest value to subserve by frustrating it.[69] Amongst even their better classes have appeared traders and dealers in goods,

---

* *Pāyasa* is a kind of pudding prepared of rice boiled in sugared milk. *Kriçara* is milk, sesamum, and rice. *Cashkuli* is a sort of pie, made of rice or barley boiled in sugared water.—T.

intent upon taking the wealth of others. The Cudras amongst them have taken to the practice of penances.[70] Some amongst them have begun to study, without making any rules for regulating their hours and food. Others have begun to study, making rules that are useless. Disciples have abstained from rendering obedience and service to preceptors. Preceptors again have come to treat disciples as friendly companions.[71] Fathers and mothers are worn out with work, and have abstained from indulging in festivities. Parents in old age, divested of power over sons, have been forced to beg their food of the latter.[72] Amongst them, even persons of wisdom, conversant with the Vedas, and resembling the ocean itself in gravity of deportment, have begun to betake themselves to agriculture and such other pursuits. Persons who are illiterate and ignorant have begun to be fed at *Çrāddhas*.[73]* Every morning, disciples, instead of approaching preceptors for making dutiful enquiries, for ascertaining what acts awaited accomplishment, and for seeking commissions which they are to discharge, are themselves waited upon by preceptors who discharge those functions.[74] Daughters-in-law, in the presence of their husbands' mothers and fathers, rebuke and chastise servants and maids, and summoning their husbands lecture and rebuke them.[75] Sires, with great care, seek to keep sons in good humour, or, dividing through fear their wealth among children, live in woe and affliction.†[76] Even persons enjoying the friendship of the victims, beholding the latter deprived of wealth in conflagrations or by robbers or by the king, have begun to indulge in laughter from feelings of mockery.[77] They have become ungrateful and unbelieving and sinful and addicted to adulterous congress with even the spouses of their preceptors. They have betaken themselves to eating forbidden food. They have transgressed all bounds and restraints. They have become divested of that

---

* No merit attaches to the act of feeding an illiterate person.—T.

† The correct reading is *Vyabhajat*. The Bengal reading *vyabhayat* would imply a tautology, for the second line would then give the same meaning as the first.—T.

splendour which had distinguished them before.[78] In consequence of these and other indications of wicked conduct and the reversal of their former nature, I shall not, O chief of the gods, dwell among them any longer.[79] I have, therefore, come to thee of my own accord. Receive me with respect, O lord of Cachi! Honored by thee, O chief of the celestials, I shall receive honor from all other deities.[80] There where I reside, the seven other goddesses with Jayā for their eighth, who love me, who are inseparably associated with me, and who depend upon me, desire to live.[81] They are Hope, Faith, Intelligence, Contentment, Victory, Advancement, and Forgiveness. She who forms the eighth, *viz.*, Jayā, occupies the foremost place amongst them, O chastiser of Pāka.[82] All of them and myself, having deserted the *Asuras*, have come to thy domains. We shall henceforth reside among the deities who are devoted to righteousness and faith.—[83]

"'After the goddess had said so, the celestial *Rishi* Nārada, and Vāsava the slayer of Vritra, for gladdening her, offered her a joyful welcome.[84] The god of wind,—that friend of Agni,—then began to blow gently through heaven, bearing delicious odors, refreshing all creatures with whom he came into contact, and contributing to the felicity of every one of the senses.[85] All the deities, (hearing the news) assembled together in a pure and desirable spot and waited there in expectation of beholding Maghavat seated with Lakshmi beside him.[86] Then the thousand-eyed chief of the gods, accompanied by Cree and his friend the great *Rishi*, and riding upon a splendid car drawn by green horses, came into that assembly of the celestials, receiving honor from all.[87] Then the great *Rishi* Nārada, whose prowess was known to all the celestials, observing a sign that the wielder of the thunderbolt made and which Cree herself approved of, welcomed the advent of the goddess there and proclaimed it as exceedingly auspicious.[88] Heaven's firmament became clear and bright and began to shower nectar upon the region of the self-born Grandsire. The celestial kettle-drums, though struck by none, began to beat, and all the points of the horizon, becoming clear, seemed ablaze with splendour.[89]

Indra began to pour rain upon crops that commenced to appear each at its proper season. No one then deviated from the path of righteousness. The Earth became adorned with many mines filled with jewels and gems, and the chaunt of Vedic recitations and other melodious sounds swelled up on the occasion of that triumph of the celestials.[90] Human beings, endued with firm minds, and all adhering to the auspicious path that is trod by the righteous, began to take pleasure in Vedic and other religious rites and acts. Men and gods and *Kinnaras* and *Yakshas* and *Rakshas* all became endued with prosperity and cheerfulness.[91] Not a flower,—what need then be said of fruits,—dropped untimely from a tree even if the god of wind shook it with force. All the kine began to yield sweet milk whenever milked by men, and cruel and harsh words ceased to be uttered by any one.[92] They who, from desire of advancement, approach before assemblies of Brāhmanas, and read this narrative of the glorification of Cree by all the deities with Indra at their head,—deities that are competent to grant every wish,—succeed in winning great prosperity.[93] These then, O chief of the Kurus, are the foremost indications of prosperity and adversity. Urged on by thee, I have told thee all. It behooves thee to bear thyself according to the instructions conveyed herein, understanding them after careful reflection !' "[94]

SECTION CCXXIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'By what disposition, what course of duties, what knowledge, and what energy, does one succeed in attaining to *Brahma* which is immutable and which is beyond the reach of primordial nature ?'*[1]

"Bhishma said,—'One that is engaged in the practice of the religion of *nivritti*, that eats abstemiously, and that has his senses under complete control, can attain to *Brahma* which

* Everything else is liable to be affected by primordial nature. Only the Supreme Soul cannot be affected. Hence, *Brahma* is often said to be "above *Prakriti*." *Prakriti*, here, is of course used in its largest sense.—T.

is immutable and which is above primordial nature.[2] In this connection is cited the old narrative, O Bhārata, of the discourse between Jaigishavya and Asita.[3] Once on a time Asita-Devala addressed Jaigishavya who was possessed of great wisdom and fully acquainted with the truths of duty and morality.[4]

" 'Devala said,—Thou art not gladened when praised. Thou dost not give way to wrath when blamed or censured. What, indeed, is thy wisdom? Whence hast thou got it? And what, indeed, is the refuge of that wisdom?—'[5]

"Bhishma said,—'Thus questioned by Devala, the pure Jaigishavya of austere penances, said those words of high import, fraught with full faith, and profound sense.[6]

" 'Jaigishavya said,—O foremost of *Rishis*, I shall tell thee of that which is the highest end, that which is the supreme goal, that which is tranquillity, in the estimation of all persons of righteous acts.[7] They, O Devala, who behave uniformly towards those that praise them and those that blame them, they who conceal their own vows and good acts,[8] they who never indulge in recriminations, they who never say even what is good when it is calculated to injure (instead of producing any benefit), they who do not desire to return injury for injury received, are said to be men possessed of wisdom.*[9] They never grieve for what is yet to come. They are concerned with only what is before them and act as they should. They never indulge in sorrow for what is past or even call it to their minds.[10] Possessed of power and regulated minds, they do at their pleasure, according to the way in which it should be done, what waits for them to do in respect of all objects, O Devala, if solicited regardfully thereto.†[11] Of mature knowledge, of great wisdom, with wrath

---

* The second line of verse 8, and the last clause of the first line of verse 9, are wrongly rendered by both the Vernacular translators. K. P. Singha omits certain portions, while the Burdwan translator, as usual, writes nonsense. The verb is *nihnuvanti*, meaning 'conceal,' *i. e.*, 'do not brag of.' The verb *vadishyanti* is to be repeated after *ahite hitam*. For *hitam ahitam* may be read by way of antithesis.—T.

† K. P. Singha mistranslates this verse.—T.

under complete control, and with their passions kept under sway, they never do an injury to any one in thought, word, or deed.[12] Destitute of envy, they never injure others, and possessed of self-control, they are never pained at the sight of other people's prosperity.[13] Such men never indulge in exaggerated speeches, or set themselves in praising others, or in speaking ill of them. They are again never affected by praise and blame uttered by others in respect of them.[14] They are tranquil in respect of all their desires, and are engaged in the good of all creatures. They never give way to wrath, or indulge in transports of joy, or injure any creature.[15] Untying all the knots of their hearts, they pass on very happily. They have no friends nor are they the friends of others.[16] They have no foes nor are they the foes of other creatures. Indeed, men that can live in this way can pass their days for ever in happiness.[17] O best of regenerate ones, they who acquire a knowledge of the rules of morality and righteousness, and who observe those rules in practice, succeed in winning joy, while they who fall off from the path of righteousness are afflicted by anxieties and sorrow.[18] I have now betaken myself to the path of righteousness. Decried by others, why shall I get annoyed with them, or praised by others, why shall I be pleased ?[19] Let men obtain whatsoever objects they please from whatsoever pursuits in which they engage ! (I am indifferent to acquisitions and losses). Praise and blame are unable to contribute to my advancement or the reverse.[20] He that has understood the truths of things becomes gratified with even disregard as if it were ambrosia. The man of wisdom is truly annoyed with regard as if it were poison.[21] He who is freed from all faults sleeps fearlessly both here and hereafter even if insulted by others. On the other hand, he who insults him, suffers destruction.[22] Those men of wisdom who seek to attain to the highest end, succeed in obtaining it by observing conduct such as this.[23] The man who has vanquished all his senses is regarded to have performed all the sacrifices. Such a person attains to the highest rung, *viz.*, that of *Brahma*, which is eternal and which transcends the reach of primordial nature.[24] The very

gods, the *Gandharvas*, the *Piçāchas*, and the *Rākshāsas*, cannot reach the rung which is his who has attained to the highest end.' "[25]

Section CCXXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What man is there who is dear to all, who gladdens all persons, and who is endued with every merit and every accomplishment?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection I shall recite to thee the words that Keçava, asked by Ugrasena, said unto him on a former occasion.[2]

" 'Ugrasena said,—All persons seem to be very solicitous of speaking of the merits of Nārada. I think that celestial *Rishi* must really be possessed of every kind of merit. I ask thee, tell me this, O Keçava!—[3]

" 'Vāsudeva said,—O chief of the Kukuras, listen to me as I mention in brief those good qulities of Nārada with which I am acquainted, O king! Nārada is as learned in the scriptures as he is good and pious in his conduct.[4] And yet, on account of his conduct, he never cherishes pride that makes one's blood so hot. It is for this reason that he is worshipped everywhere.[5] Discontent, wrath, levity, and fear, these do not exist in Nārada. He is free from procrastination, and possessed of courage. For this he is worshipped everywhere.[6] Nārada deserves the respectful worship of all. He never falls back from his words through desire or cupidity. For this he is worshipped everywhere.[7] He is fully conversant with the principles that lead to the knowledge of the soul, disposed to peace, possessed of great energy, and a master of his senses. He is free from guile, and truthful in speech. For this he is worshipped with respect everywhere.[8] He is distinguished by energy, by fame, by intelligence, by knowledge, by humility, by birth, by penances, and by years. For these he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[9] He is of good behaviour. He dresses and houses himself well. He eats pure food. He loves all. He is pure in body and mind. He is sweet-speeched. He is free from envy and

malice. For this he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[10] He is certainly always employed in doing good to all people. No sin dwells in him. He never rejoices at other people's misfortunes. For this he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[11] He always seeks to conquer all earthly desires by listening to Vedic recitations and attending to the *Purānas*. He is a great renouncer and he never disregards any one.* For this he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[12] He casts an equal eye on all; and, therefore, he has no one whom he loves and none whom he hates. He always speaks what is agreeable to the hearer. For this he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[13] He is possessed of great learning in the scriptures. His conversation is varied and delightful. His knowledge and wisdom are great. He is free from cupidity. He is free also from deception. He is large-hearted. He has conquered wrath and cupidity. For this he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[14] He has never quarelled with any one for any subject connected with profit or pleasure. All faults have been torn away by him. For this he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[15] His devotion (to *Brahma*) is firm. His soul is blameless. He is well versed in the *Çrutis*. He is free from cruelty. He is beyond the influence of delusion or faults. For this he is worshipped everywhere with respect.[16] He is unattached to all such things as are objects of attachment (for others). For all that he seems to be attached to all things.† He is never long subject to the influence of any doubt. For this he is every-

---

* The Burdwan translator misunderstands the word *anavajnātā*. K. P. Singha skips over it.—T.

† The sense is this: though really unattached, he seems to be attached. In this there is especial merit. A man doing the duties of a householder, without, however, being attached to wife and children and possessions, is a very superior person. Such a one has been compared to a lotus leaf, which, when dipt in water, is never soaked or drenched by it. Some, seeing the difficulty of the combat, fly away. In this there is little merit. To face all objects of desire, to enjoy them, but all the while to remain so unattached to them as not to feel the slightest pang if dissociated from them, is more meritorious.—T.

where worshipped with respect.[17] He has no yearning for objects connected with profit and pleasure. He never glorifies his own self. He is free from malice. He is mild in speech. For this he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[18] He observes the hearts, different from one another, of all men, without blaming any of them. He is well versed in all matters connected with the origin of things.[19] He never disregards or shows hatred for any kind of science. He lives according to his own standard of morality. He never suffers his time to pass away fruitlessly. His soul is under his control. For this he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[20] He has toiled in subjects that deserve the application of toil. He has earned knowledge and wisdom. He is never satiated with *yoga*. He is always attentive and ready for exertion. He is ever heedful. For this he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[21] He has never to feel shame for any deficiency of his. He is very attentive. He is always engaged by others in accomplishing what is for their good. He never divulges the secrets of others. For this he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[22] He never yields to transports of joy on occasions of making even valuable acquisitions. He is never pained at losses. His understanding is firm and stable. His soul is unattached to all things. For this he is everywhere worshipped with respect.[23] Who, indeed, is there that will not love him who is thus possessed of every merit and accomplishment, who is clever in all things, who is pure in body and mind, who is entirely auspicious, who is well versed with the course of time and its opportuneness for particular acts, and who is well acquainted with all agreeable things?—' "[24]

SECTION CCXXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I desire, O thou of Kuru's race, to know what the origin and what the end is of all creatures; what the nature of their meditation is and what their acts; what the divisions are of time, and what the allotted periods of life in the respective epochs?[1] I desire also to know in

full the truth about the genesis and the conduct of the world; the arrival of creatures into the world and the manner of their going on. Indeed, whence their creation and destruction?[2] O best of virtuous persons, if thou art minded to favor us, do tell us this about which I ask thee![3] Having heard before this the excellent discourse of Bhrigu unto the regenerate sage Bharadwāja which thou didst recite, my understanding, purged of ignorance,[4] has become exeedingly attached to *yoga*, and withdrawn from worldly objects rests upon heavenly purity. I ask thee about the subject, therefore, once more. It behooves thee to discourse to me (more elaborately)![5]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection I shall recite to thee an old narrative of what the divine Vyāsa said unto his son Cuka when the latter had questioned the former.[6] Having studied the illimitable Vedas with all their branches and the Upanishads, and desirous of leading a life of *Brahmacharyya* in consequence of his having earned excellence of religious merit,[7] Cuka addressed these very questions, about which his doubts had not been solved, to his father the island-born *Rishi* who had removed (by study and contemplation) all doubts connected with the topic of the true import of duties.[8]

"'Cuka said,—It behooveth thee to tell me who the Creator is of all beings, as fixed by a knowledge of time,* and what the duties are that should be accomplished by a Brāhmana![9]

"'Bhishma said,—Unto his son who had questioned him, the sire, having a knowledge of both the past and the future, conversant with all duties and endued with omniscience, thus discoursed on the subject.[10]

"'Vyāsa said,—Only *Brahma*, which is without beginning and without end, unborn, blazing with effulgence, above decay, immutable, indestructible, inconceivable, and transcending knowledge, exists before the Creation.†[11] The

---

* "Kālajnānena nishthitam" are the words of the original. Vyāsa's answer is taken up with assigning limits to the successive periods of Creation and Non-existence, or the durations of Brahman's wakeful and sleeping periods.—T.

† *Agre* is explained by the commentator as *srishteh prāk*.—T.

Rishis, measuring time, have named particular portions by particular names. Five and ten winks of the eye make what is called a *Kāshthā*. Thirty *Kāshthās* would make what is called a *Kalā*. Thirty *Kalās*, with the tenth part of a *Kalā* added, make what is known as a *Muhurta*. Thirty *Muhurtas* make up one day and night. Thirty days and nights are called a month, and twelve months are called a year.[12-13] Persons conversant with mathematical science say that a year is made up of two *ayanas* (dependent on the sun's motion), *viz.*, the northern and the southern.[14] The sun makes the day and the night for the world of man. The night is for the sleep of all living creatures, and the day is for the doing of action.[15] A month of human beings is equal to a day and night of the *Pitris*. That division (as regards the *Pitris*) consists in this: the lighted fortnight (of men) is their day which is for the doing of acts; and the dark fortnight is their night for sleep.[16] A year (of human beings) is equal to a day and night of the gods. The division (as regards the gods) consists in this: the half year for which the sun travels from the vernal to the autumnal equinox is the day of the deities, and the half year for which the sun travels from the latter to the former is their night.[17] Computing by the days and nights of human beings about which I have told thee, I shall speak of the day and night of Brahman and his years also.[18] I shall, in their order, tell thee the number of years, that are (thus) for different purposes computed differently, in respect of the Krita, the Tretā, the Dwāpara, and the Kali *yugas*.[19] Four thousand years (of the deities) is the duration of the first or Krita age. The morning of that epoch consists of four hundred years and its evening is of four hundred years. (The total duration, therefore, of the Krita *yuga* is four thousand and eight hundred years of the deities).[20] As regards the other *yugas*, the duration of each gradually decreases by a quarter in respect of both the substantive period with the conjoining portion and the conjoining portion itself. (Thus the duration of the Tretā is three thousand years and its morning extends for three hundred years and its evening for three hundred.

The duration of the Dwāpara also is two thousand years, and its morning extends for two hundred years and its evening also for two hundred. The duration of the Kali *yuga* is one thousand years, and its morning extends for one hundred years and its evening for one hundred).*[21] These periods always sustain the never-ending and eternal worlds. They who are conversant with *Brahma*, O child, regard this as Immutable *Brahma*.[22] In the Krita age all the duties exist in their entirety, along with Truth. No knowledge or object came to men of that age through unrighteous or forbidden means.†[23] In the other *yugas*, duty, ordained in the Vedas, is seen to gradually decline by a quarter in each. Sinfulness grows in consequence of theft, untruth, and deception.[24] In the Krita age, all persons are free from disease and crowned with success in respect of all their objects, and all live for four hundred years. In the Tretā, the period of life decreases by a quarter.[25] It has also been heard by us that, in the succeeding *yugas*, the words of the Vedas, the periods of life, the blessings (uttered by Brāhmanas), and the fruits of Vedic rites, all decrease gradually.[26] The duties set down for the Krita *yuga* are of one kind. Those for the Tretā are otherwise. Those for the Dwāpara are different. And those for the Kali are otherwise. This is in accordance with that decline that marks every succeeding *yuga*.[27] In the Krita, Penance occupies the foremost place. In the Tretā, Knowledge is

---

* The *Krita* extends in all for 4,800 years. The Tretā for 3,600; the Dwāpara for 2,400; and the Kali for 1,200. These are, however, the years of the deities. Verses 15–17 and 20–21 occur in Manu, Chap. I.—T.

† This verse occurs in Manu, corresponding with 81 of Chap. I. The reading, however, in Manu is slightly different, for the last clause is *Manushyānupavartate*. In rendering verse 23, I take this reading and follow Medhātithi's gloss. If Nilakantha's gloss and the reading in both the Bengal and the Bombay texts be followed, the passage would run thus.—"No instruction or precept of that age ran along unrighteous ways, since that was the foremost of all ages." Nilakantha explains *parah* as *sa cha parah*. K. P. Singha skips over the difficulty and the Burdwan translator, as usual, gives an incorrect version.—T.

foremost. In Dwāpara, Sacrifice has been said to be the foremost. In the Kali *yuga*, only Gift is the one thing that has been laid down.[28] The learned say that these twelve thousand years (of the deities) constitute what is called a *yuga*. A thousand such *yugas* compose a single day of Brahman.*[29] The same is the duration of Brahman's night. With the commencement of Brahman's day the universe begins to start into life. During the period of universal dissolution the Creator sleeps, having recourse to *yoga*-meditation. When the period of slumber expires, He awakes.[30] That then which is Brahman's day extends for a thousand such *yugas*. His night also extends for a thousand similar *yugas*. They who know this are said to know the day and the night.[31] On the expiry of His night, Brahman, waking up, modifies the indestructible *chit* by causing it to be overlaid with Avidyā. He then causes Consciousness to spring up, whence proceeds Mind which is identical with the Manifest.' "†[32]

SECTION CCXXXII.

"'Vyāsa said,—*Brahma* is the effulgent seed from which, existing as it does by itself, hath sprung the whole universe consisting of two kinds of being, viz., the mobile and the immobile.‡[1] At the dawn of His day, waking up, He creates

---

* The total comes up to 12,000 years. These constitute a *Devayuga*. A thousand Devayugas compose a day of Brahman. Verse 28 occurs in Manu, Chap. I.—T.

† The reader who has gone through the previous Sections can have no difficulty in understanding this. The external world is nothing but Mind transformed. Mind, therefore, is spoken of here as *Vyaktātmaka* or that which is the soul of the *vyakta* or that is manifest, or that which is the *vyakta*, or between which and the *vyakta* there is no difference whatever. Some of the Bengal texts do not conclude Section 231 with the 32nd verse but go on and include the whole of the 232nd Section in it. This, however, is not, to be seen in the Bombay texts, as also in some of the texts of Bengal that I have seen.—T.

‡ 'Tejomayam' is explained by the Commentator as 'Vāsanāmayam' or having the principle of desire or wish within it, otherwise Creation could not take place. 'Yasya' is used for 'yatah.'—T.

with the help of Avidyā this universe. At first springs up that which is called Mahat. That Mahat is speedily transformed into Mind which is the soul of the Manifest.*[2] Overwhelming the Chit, which is effulgent, with Avidyā, Mind creates seven great beings.† Urged by the desire of creating, Mind, which is far-reaching, which has many courses, and which has desire and doubt for its principal indications, begins to create diverse kinds of objects by modifications of itself. First springs from it Space. Know that its property is Sound.[3-4] From Space, by modification, arises the bearer of all scents, *viz.*, the pure, and mighty Wind. It is said to possess the attribute of Touch.[5] From Wind also, by modification, springs Light endued with effulgence. Displayed in beauty, and called also Cukram, it starts into existence thus, possessing the attribute of Form.[6] From Light, by modification, arises Water having Taste for its attribute. From Water springs Earth having Scent for its attribute. These are said to represent initial creation.‡[7] These, one after another, acquire the attributes of the immediately preceding ones from which they have sprung. Each has not only its own special attribute but each succeeding one has the attributes of all the preceding ones. (Thus Space has only Sound for its attribute. After Space comes Wind, which has, therefore, both Sound and Touch for its attributes. From Wind comes Light or Fire, which has Sound, Touch, and Form for its attributes. From Light is Water, which has Sound, Touch, Form, and Taste for its attributes. From Water is Earth, which has Sound, Touch, Form, Taste, and Scent for its attributes).[8] If anybody, perceiving Scent in Water, were from ignorance to say that it belongs to Water, he would fall into an error, for Scent is the attribute of Earth though

---

* By Mahat is meant Pure or Subtile Intelligence. The Manifest starts into existence from Mind or has Mind for its soul. Hence, as explained in previous Sections, Mind is called 'Vyaktātmakam.'—T.

† These seven great Beings or entities are Mahat, the same speedily transformed into Mind, and the five elemental entities of Space, &c.—T.

‡ Verse 4, 5, 6, and 7 occur in Manu, corresponding with the latter's 75, 76, 77, and 78 of Chap. I.—T.

it may exist in a state of attachment with Water and also Wind.[9] These seven kinds of entities, possessing diverse kinds of energy, at first existed separately from one another. They could not create objects without all of them coming together into a state of commingling.[10] All these great entities coming together, and commingling with one another, form the constituent parts of the body which are called limbs.*[11] In consequence of the combination of those limbs, the sum total, invested with form and having six and ten constituent parts, becomes what is called the body. (When the gross body is thus formed), the subtile Mahat, with the unexhausted residue of acts, then enters that combination called the gross body.†[12] Then the original Creator of all beings, having by his Māyā divided Himself, enters that subtile form

---

* Chit or Jiva is called *Purusha* or resider in body, because when overlaid with Avidyā by the Supreme Soul, it is not possible for it to exist in any other way than by being invested with a covering or case made of primordial matter determined by the power of acts. Here, however, it means limbs or *avayavam*.—T.

† What is stated in verses 10, 11, and 12 is this: the seven great entities, in their gross form, are unable, if separate, to produce anything. They, therefore, combine with one another. Thus uniting, they first form the 'āçrayanam' of 'carira,' *i. e.*, the constituent parts of the body. They, at this stage, must be known by the name of *Purusha* or *avayava*, *i. e.*, mere limbs. When these limbs again unite, then 'murtimat shodacātmakam cariram bhavati,' *i. e.*, the full body, possessed of form and having the six and ten attributes, comes into existence. Then the subtile *Mahat* and the subtile *bhuts*, with the unexhausted residue of acts, enter it. The plural form 'mahānti' is used because, as the Commentator explains, 'pratipurusham mahatādinām bhinnatwapratipādanārtham,' *i. e.*, the same 'mahat,' by entering each different form, apparently becomes many. Thus there are two bodies, one gross, and the other subtile called 'linga çarira.' The residue of acts is thus explained: all creatnres enjoy or suffer the effects of their good and bad acts. If, however, the consequences of acts good and bad be all exhausted, there can be no rebirth. A residue, therefore, remains, in consequence of which rebirth becomes possible. Creation and destruction, again, are endlessly going on. The beginning of the *first* Creation is inconceivable. The Creation here described is one of a series. This is further explained in the verses that follow.—T.

for surveying or overlooking everything. And inasmuch as he is the original Creator of all beings he is on that account called the Lord of all beings.*[13] It is he who creates all beings mobile and immobile. After having thus assumed the form of Brahman he creates the worlds of the gods, the *Rishis*, the *Pitris*, and men ;[14] the rivers, the seas and the oceans, the points of the horizon, countries and provinces, hills and mountains, and large trees, human beings, *Kinnaras*, *Rākshasas*, birds, animals domestic and wild, and snakes.[15] Indeed, he creates both kinds of existent things, *viz.*, those that are mobile and those that are immobile ; and those that are destructible and those that are indestructible. Of these created objects each obtains those attributes which it had during the previous Creation ;[16] and each, indeed, obtains repeatedly the same attributes at every subsequent Creation. Determined in respect of character by either injuriousness or peacefulness, mildness or fierceness, righteousness or unrighteousness, truthfulness, or untruthfulness, each creature, at every new creation, obtains that particular attribute which it had cherished before. It is in consequence of this that that particular attribute attaches to it.[17] It is the Ordainer himself who attaches variety to the great entities (of Space, Earth, &c.), to the objects of the senses (such as form, &c.), and to size or bulk of existent matter, and appoints the relations of creatures with those multiform entities.[18] Amongst men who have devoted themselves to the science of things, there are some who say that, in the production of

---

* The six and ten parts are the five gross *bhutas*, and the eleven senses of knowledge and action including mind. The great creatures are the tanmātrā of the gross elements, *i. e.*, their subtile forms. At first the gross body (with the principle of growth) is formed. Into it enters the subtile body or the linga-çarira. At first (as already said) the gross elements come together. Then the subtile ones with the residue of acts. Then enters the Soul which is *Brahma* itself. The Soul enters into the subtile form for witnessing, or surveying. All creatures are only manifestations of that Soul due to the accident of Avidyā or Māyā. *Tapas* means, as the Commentator explains, *ālochana*.—T.

effects, Exertion is supreme. Some learned persons say that Destiny is supreme, and some that it is Nature which is the agent.[19] Others say that Acts flowing from (personal) exertion, and Destiny, produce effects, aided by Nature. Instead of regarding any of these as singly competent for the production of effects, they say that it is the union of all three that produces all effects.[20] As regards this subject,* some say that such is the case; some, that such is not the case; some, that both of these are not the case; and some that it is not that the reverse of both are not. These, of course, are the contentions of those that depend on Acts, with reference to objects. They, however, whose vision is directed to truth regard *Brahma* as the cause.†[21] Penance is the highest good for living creatures. The roots of penance are tranquillity and self-restraint. By penance one obtains all things that one wishes for in one's mind.[22] By penance one attains to that Being who creates the universe. He who (by penance) succeeds in attaining to that Being becomes the puissant master of all beings.[23] It is by penance that the *Rishis* are enabled to read the Vedas ceaselessly. At the outset the Self-born caused those excellent Vedic sounds, that are embodiments of knowledge and that have neither beginning nor end, to (spring up and) flow on (from preceptor to disciple). From those sounds have sprung all kinds of actions.[24] The names of the *Rishis*, all things that have been created, the varieties of form seen in existent things, and the course of all actions, have their origin in the Vedas.‡[25]

---

* *I. e.*, this variety of Being and this variety of relations.—T.

† *Anubhe* is explained as *ubhayavyatiriktam*. *Sattwasthāh* are those that depend upon the realiy existent, *i e.*, those that regard *Brahma* as the sole cause competent for the production of all effects.—T.

‡ It is exceedingly difficult to understand the true meaning of these verses. A verbal translation is not calculated to bring out the sense. Apparently, the statement that all things are contained in the Vedas is nonsense. In reality, however, what is intended to be said is that as the Vedas are Speech or Words, the Creator had to utter words symbolizing his ideas before creating anything. It is remarkable that there is a close resemblance between the spirit of the first chapter of Genesis with what is contained in the *çrutis* on the subject of Crea-

Indeed, the Supreme Master of all beings, in the beginning, created all things from the words of the Vedas. Truly, the names of the *Rishis*, and all else that has been created, occur in the Vedas. Upon the expiration of his night (*i. e.*, at the dawn of his day), the Increate Brahman creates, from prototypes that existed before, all things which are, of course, well-made by Him.*[26] In the Vedas hath been indicated the topic of the Soul's Emancipation, along with the ten means constituted by study of the Vedas, adoption of the domestic mode of life, penances, observance of duties common to all the modes of life, sacrifices, performance of all such acts as lead to pure fame, meditation which is of three kinds, and that kind of emancipation which is called success (*Siddhi*) attainable in this life.†[27] That incomprehensible *Brahma* which has been declared in the words of the Vedas, and which has been indicated more clearly in the Upanishadas by those who have an insight into the Vedas, can be realised by

---

tion. Let there be Earth, and there was Earth, says the inspired poet of Genesis. Nilakantha cites exactly similar words from the *çrutis* as those which Brahman uttered for creating the Earth, such as,—"Bhuriti vyāharan sa Bhumimasrijat." Then the four modes of life with the duties of each, the modes of worship, &c., were also indicated; hence, all acts also are in the Vedas which represent the original wor ls of *Brahma*.—T.

* All things are *Sujāta* or well-made by him. In Genesis it is said that God uttered particular words and particular objects sprang into existence, and He saw that they were *good*.—T.

† The first line contains only technical terms. *Nāma* means *Rigveda*. Hence, it stands for study of all the Vedas. *Bheda* stands for half, *i. e.*, for the wife, who must be associated with her husband in all religious acts. *Tapah* is penance; hence it stands for all kinds of observances like *chāndrāyana*, and modes of life, *vānaprastha*, &c., *Karma* means such acts as the saying of morning and evening prayers, &c. *Yajna* is sacrifice like *yotishtoma*, &c. *Akhyā* means such acts as lead to good fame, like the digging of tanks, the making of roads, &c. *Aloka*, meaning meditation, is of three kinds. Lastly, comes *Siddhi*, meaning that emancipation which is arrived at by one during this life. The instrumental plural *kramaih* should be construed as "daçabhih kramaih nāmadibhi sahitā Vedeshu prochyate" K. P. Singha has correctly rendered the verse, omitting reference to *Siddhi*. The Burdwan translator has totally misunderstood it.—T.

gradually following the practices referred to above.*[28] Unto a person who thinks he has a body, this consciousness of duality, fraught again with that of pairs of opposites, is born only of acts in which he is engaged. (That consciousness of duality ceases during dreamless slumber or when Emancipation has been attained.) That person, however, who has attained to Emancipation, aided by his knowledge, forcibly drives off that consciousness of duality.[29] Two *Brahmas* should be known, *viz.*, the *Brahma* represented by sound (*i. e.*, the Vedas), and secondly that which is beyond the Vedas and is supreme. One that is conversant with *Brahma* represented by sound succeeds in attaining to *Brahma* that is Supreme.[30] The slaughter of animals is the sacrifice laid down for the Kshatriyas. The growing of corn is the sacrifice laid down for the Vaiçyas. Serving the three other orders is the sacrifice laid down for the Cudras. Penances (or worship of *Brahma*) is the sacrifice laid down for the Brāhmanas.[31] In the Krita age the performance of sacrifices was not necessary. Such performance became necessary in the Tretā age. In the Dwāpara, sacrifices have begun to fall off. In the Kali, the same is the case with them.[32] In the Krita age, men, worshipping only one *Brahma*, looked upon the *Richs*, the *Sāmans*, the *Yajushes*, and the rites and sacrifices that are performed from motives of advantage, as all different from the object of their worship, and practiced only *yoga* by means of penances.[33] In the Tretā age, many mighty men appeared that swayed all mobile and immobile objects.[34] (Though the generality of men in that age were not naturally inclined to the practice of righteousness yet those great leaders forced them to such practice.) Accordingly, in that age, the Vedas, and sacrifices, and the distinctions between the several orders, and the four modes of life,

---

* *Gahanam* is explained by the commentator as *duravagāham Brahma*; *vedavādeshu* means, according to him, the rites and observances laid down in the Vedas. It is better, however, to take it literally, *i. e.*, for the words of the Vedas. *Vedānteshu* means 'in the Upanishads,' which come *after* the Vedas. Both the Vernacular translators have misunderstood this verse.—T.

existed in a compact state. In consequence, however, of the decrease in the period of life in Dwāpara, all these, in that age, fall off from that compact condition.[35] In the Kali age, all the Vedas become so scarce that they may not be even seen by men. Afflicted by iniquity, they suffer extermination along with the rites and sacrifices laid down in them.[36] The righteousness which is seen in the Krita age is now visible in such Brāhmanas as are of cleansed souls and as are devoted to penances and the study of the scriptures.[37] As regards the other *yugas*, it is seen that without at once giving up the duties and acts that are consistent with righteousness, men, observant of the practices of their respective orders, and conversant with the ordinances of the Vedas, are led by the authority of the scriptures, to betake themselves from motives of advantage and interest to sacrifices and vows and sojourns to sacred waters and spots.*[38] As in the season of rains a large variety of new objects of the immobile order are caused to come forth into life by the showers that fall from the clouds, even so many new kinds of duty or religious observances are brought about in each new *yuga*.[39] As the same phenomena reappear with the reappearance of the seasons, even so, at each new Creation the same attributes appear in each new Brahman and Hara.[40] I have, before this, spoken to thee of Time which is without beginning and without end, and which ordains this variety in the universe. It is that Time which creates and swallows up all creatures.[41] All the in-

---

* This verse is, no doubt, pleonastic. The Commentator interprets it in the way I have rendered it. *Yathādharmam*, according to him, means 'without transgressing acts and duties consistent with virtue;' 'yathāgamam' means 'following the authority of the scriptures;' 'vikriyate' implies 'do from motives of advantage and gain.' The sense seems to be that in the three other *yugas* men, without absolutely abandoning virtue, perform good acts and Vedic sacrifices and rites and scriptural vows and observances, from motives of low gain and not because as a preparation for Emancipation. Thus in even the Kali age, Vedic rites are not absolutely unknown. The motive, however, from which these are undertaken is connected with some low or sordid gain.—T.

numerable creatures that exist subject to pairs of opposites and according to their respective natures, have Time for their refuge. It is Time that assumes those shapes and it is Time that upholds them.*[42] I have thus discoursed to thee, O son, on the topics about which thou hadst inquired, *viz.*, Creation, Time, Sacrifices and other rites, the Vedas, the real actor in the universe, action, and the consequences of action !—' "[43]

Section CCXXXIII.

" 'Vyāsa said,—I shall now tell thee how, when his day is gone and his night comes, he withdraws all things unto himself, or how the Supreme Lord, making this gross universe exceedingly subtile, merges everything into his Soul.[1] When the time comes for universal dissolution, a dozen Suns, and Agni with his seven flames, begin to burn. The whole universe, wrapt by those flames, begins to blaze forth in a vast conflagration.[2] All things mobile and immobile that are on the Earth first disappear and merge into the substance of which this planet is composed.[3] After all mobile and immobile objects have thus disappeared, the Earth, shorn of trees and herbs, looks naked like a tortoise shell.[4] Then water takes up the attribute of earth, *viz.*, scent. When earth becomes shorn of its principal attribute, that element is on the eve of dissolution.[5] Water then prevails. Surging into mighty billows and producing awful roars, only water fills this space and moves about or remains still.[6] Then the attribute of water is taken by Heat, and losing its own attribute, water finds rest in that element.[7] Dazzling flames of fire, ablaze all around, conceal the Sun that is in the centre of space. Indeed, then, space itself, full of those fiery flames, burns in a vast conflagration.[8] Then Wind comes and takes the attribute, *viz.*, form, of Heat or Light, which thereupon becomes extinguished, yielding to Wind, which, possessed of great might, begins to be awfully agitated.[9]

---

* Samayah sthānam matam ; sa eva bhutāni bhavati ; sa eva tān dadhāti. This is the construction, as explained by the Commentator.—T.

The Wind, obtaining its own attribute, *viz.*, sound, begins to traverse upwards and downwards and transversely along all the ten points.[10] Then Space takes the attribute, *viz.*, sound, of Wind, upon which the latter becomes extinguished and enters into a phase of existence resembling that of unheard or unuttered sound.[11] Then Space is all that remains, that element whose attribute, *viz.*, sound, dwells in all the other elements, divested of the attributes of form, and taste, and touch, and scent, and without shape of any kind, like sound in its unmanifest state of existence.[12] Then sound, which is the attribute of space, is swallowed up by Mind which is the essence of all things that are manifest. Thus Mind which in itself is unmanifest withdraws all that is manifested by Mind. This withdrawal of Mind as displayed into Mind as undisplayed or subtile, is called the destruction of the vast external universe.*[13] Then Chandramas, having made Mind to (thus) withdraw its attribute into itself, swallows it up. When Mind, ceasing to exist, thus enters into Chandramas, the other attributes that are owned by Içwara are all that remain.[14] This Chandramas, which is called also *Sankalpa*, is then, after a very long time, brought under Içwara's sway, the reason being that that Sankalpa has to perform a very difficult act, *viz.*, the destruction of Chitta or the faculties that are employed in the process called judgment. When this has been effected, the condition reached is said to be of high Knowledge.[15] Then Time swallows up this Knowledge, and as the *Çruti* declares, Time itself, in its turn, is swallowed up by Might

* From what has been said in the previous Sections, the reader will have no difficulty in understanding what is meant by 'abhivyaktātmakam manah.' It is Mind that is the essence of all that is 'abhivyakta' or manifest. That Mind swallows up the attribute of Space. Hence it is 'avyaktam' that swallows up the 'manaso vyaktam.' This swallowing up is 'Brāhmah sampratisancharah' or destruction of the outward universe in its manifest vastness. The Commentator gives the substance of the verse in these words:—'manahkalpito virāt manasi eva liyate.' From the verses that follow it would seem that the object of this section is to describe the yogin's 'pratyāhār' and not the actual dissolution of the universe.—T.

or Energy. Might or energy, however, is (again) swallowed up by Time, which last is then brought under her sway by Vidyā.[16] Possessed of Vidyā, Içwara then swallows up non-existence itself into his Soul. That is Unmanifest and Supreme *Brahma*. That is Eternal, and that is the Highest of the High.[17] Thus all existent creatures are withdrawn into *Brahma*.[18] Truly hath this, which should be conceived (with the aid of the scriptures) and which is a topic of Science, been thus declared by Yogins possessed of Supreme Souls, after actual experience.[19] Even thus doth Unmanifest *Brahma* repeatedly undergo the processes of Elaboration and Withdrawal (*i. e.*, Creation and Destruction), and even thus are Brahman's Day and Night each consisting of a thousand *yugas*.*—' "[20]

Section CCXXXIV.

" 'Vyāsa said,—That which thou hadst asked me about the Creation of all beings, I have now narrated to thee in full. Listen to me as I tell thee now what the duties are of a Brāhmana.[1] The rituals of all ceremonies for which sacrificial fees are enjoined, commencing with *Jātakarma* and ending with *Samāvartana*, depend for their performance

---

* Verses 16 and 17 are exceedingly difficult. The Commentator has shown great learning in expounding them. Unfortunately, the subject is a *yoga* mystery, and the explanation and illustrations of the Commentator refer to things beyond the reach of ordinary experience and intelligence. The words Chandramas, Kāla, and Valam, and Akāça also and Ghosa (in verse 17), are technical terms of *yoga*. I referred the passage to more than one learned Pundit. My referees are of opinion that a *yoga* mystery is here expounded, which yogins alone can understand. European scholars will probably smile at the statement that there is a hidden meaning in these words. Most readers will take the verses for nonsense. Reflection, however, has convinced me that *yoga* is not nonsense. One who has not studied the elements of Geometry or Algebra cannot, however intelligent, hope to understand at once a proposition of the Principia or the theorem of De Moivre. Failing to give the actual sense, I have contented myself with giving a verbal translation.—T.

upon a preceptor competent in the Vedas.*[2] Having studied all the Vedas and having displayed a submissive behaviour towards his preceptor during his residence with him, and having paid the preceptor's fee, the youth should return home with a thorough knowledge of all sacrifices.†[3] Receiving the permission of his preceptor, he should adopt one of the four modes of life and live in it in due observance of its duties till he casts off his body.[4] He should either lead a life of domesticity with spouses and engaged in creating offspring, or live in the observance of *Brahmacharyya*; or in the forest in the company of his preceptor, or in the practice of the duties laid down for a *yati*.[5] A life of domesticity is said to be the root of all the other modes of life. A self-restrained householder who has conquered all his attachments to worldly objects always attains to success (in respect of the great object of life).[6] A Brāhmana, by begetting children, by acquiring a knowledge of the Vedas, and by performing sacrifices, pays off the three debts he owes.‡ He should then enter the other modes of life, having cleansed himself by his acts.[7] He should settle in that place which he may ascertain to be the most sacred spot on Earth, and he should strive, in all matters that lead to fame, for attaining to a position of eminence.[8] The fame of Brāhmanas increases through penances that are very austere, through mastery of the various branches of knowledge,

---

* *Jātakarma* is the ceremony that is performed with certain Vedic *mantras* immediately after a child's birth. There are many such ceremonies to be performed till *Samāvartana* or return from the preceptor's home after completion of the period of pupilage. These ceremonies are necessarily such that they must be performed by the child's father or somebody else whom the latter might call in.—T.

† In this country, no fees are charged for tuition The pupil, however, after completing his studies, may give his preceptor a final fee which is determined by the choice of the preceptor himself and which varies according to the means of the pupil leaving the preceptor's home for his own.—T.

‡ By begetting children, one pays off one's debt to ancestors; by studying the Vedas, one pays off one's debt to the *Rishis*; and by performing sacrifices one pays off one's debt to the deities.—T.

through sacrifices, and through gifts.[9] Indeed, a person enjoys endless regions of the righteous (in the next world) as long as his deeds or the memory thereof lasts in this world.[10] A Brāhmana should teach, study, officiate at other people's sacrifices, and offer sacrifices himself. He should not give away in vain or accept other people's gifts in vain.[11] Wealth, sufficient in quantity, that may come from one who is assisted in a sacrifice, from a pupil, or from kinsmen (by marriage) of a daughter, should be spent in the performance of sacrifice or in making gifts. Wealth coming from any of these sources should never be enjoyed by a Brāhmana singly.*[12] For a Brāhmana leading a life of domesticity there is no means save the acceptance of gifts for the sake of the deities, or *Rishis*, or *Pitris*, or preceptor, or the aged, or the diseased, or the hungry.†[13] Unto those that are persecuted by unseen foes, or those that are striving to the best of their power to acquire knowledge, one should make gifts from his own possessions, including even cooked food, more than one can fairly afford.‡[14] Unto a deserving person there is nothing that cannot be given. They that are good and wise deserve to have even the prince of steeds, called Uchchaiçravas, belonging to Indra himself.¶[15] Of high vows, (king) Satyasandha, having, with due humility, offered his own life-breaths for saving those of a Brāhmana, ascended to heaven.[16] Sankriti's son Rantideva, having given only lukewarm water to the high-souled Vaçishtha, ascended to heaven

---

* It is a deadly sin to take anything from the father-in-law or other relatives (by marriage) of a daughter. What is got from such sources is, to this day, spent freely. Those persons that sell their daughters in marriage are universally esteemed as fallen.—T.

† The fact is, the duty of the householder obliges him to worship the deities and the *Pitris*, and to become hospitable to the others named. The Brāhmana, however, has no ostensible means for discharging this duty. The only means open to him is acceptance of gifts. In his case, acceptance, therefore, for such ends is not productive of demerit.—T.

‡ *Kritādapi* is explained by the Commentator as *pakkīnnādapi*.—T.

¶ The sense is that there is no gift which is too valuable for such persons.—T.

and received high honors there.[17] Atri's royal son Indradamana, possessed of great intelligence, having given diverse kinds of wealth to a deserving person, acquired diverse regions of felicity in the next world.[18] Uçinara's son Civi, having given away his own limbs and the dear son of his loins for the sake of a Brāhmana, ascended to heaven from this world.[19] Pratarddana, the ruler of Kāçi, having given away his very eyes to a Brāhmana, obtained great fame both here and hereafter.[20] King Devāvridha, having given away a very beautiful and costly umbrella, with eight golden ribs, proceeded to heaven with all the people of his kingdom.[21] Sankriti of Atri's race, possessed of great energy, having given instruction to his disciples on the subject of Impersonal *Brahma*, proceeded to regions of great felicity.[22] Amvarisha of great prowess, having given unto the Brāhmanas eleven *Arvudas* of kine, proceeded to heaven with all the people of his kingdom.[23] Sāvitri, by giving away her ear-rings, and king Janamejaya, by giving away his own body, both proceeded to high regions of felicity.[24] Yuvanāçwa the son of Vrishādabha, by giving away diverse kinds of gems, a fine mansion, and many beautiful women, ascended to heaven.[25] Nimi, the ruler of the Videhas, gave away his kingdom, Jamadagni's son (Rāma) gave away the whole Earth ; and Gaya gave away the Earth with all her towns and cities, unto the Brāhmanas.[26] Once when the clouds ceased to pour, Vaçishtha, resembling Brahman himself, kept alive all creatures like Prajāpati keeping them alive (by his energy and kindness).[27] Karandha's son Marutta of cleansed soul, by giving away his daughter to Angiras, speedily ascended to heaven.[28] Brahmadatta, the ruler of the Pānchālas, possessed of superior intelligence, by giving away two precious jewels called *Nidhi* and *Çankha* unto some of the foremost of the Brāhmanas, obtained many regions of felicity.[29] King Mitrasaha, having given his own dear wife Mayadanti unto the high-souled Vaçishtha, ascended to heaven with that wife of his.[30] The royal sage Sahasrajit, possessed of great fame, having cast off dear life itself for the sake of a Brāhmana, ascended to regions of

great felicity.[31] King Catadyumna, having given to Mudgala a mansion made of gold and full of every object of comfort and use, ascended to heaven.[32] The king of the Cālwas, known by the name of Dyutimat, possessed of great prowess, gave unto Richika his entire kingdom and ascended to heaven.[33] The royal sage Madirāçwa, by giving away his daughter of slender waist to Hiranyahasta, ascended to such regions as are held in esteem by the very gods.[34] The royal sage Lomapāda, of great prowess, by giving away his daughter Cāntā to Rishyaçringa, obtained the fruition of all his wishes.[35] King Prasenajit, of great energy, by giving away a hundred thousand kine with calves, ascended to excellent regions of felicity.[36] These and many others, possessed of great and well-ordered souls and having their senses under control, ascended, by means of gifts and penances, to heaven.[37] Their fame will last as long as the Earth herself will last. All of them have, by gifts and sacrifices and procreation of issue, proceeded to heaven.' "[38]

Section CCXXXV.

"Vyāsa said,—The knowledge called *Trayi* which occurs in the Vedas and their branches should be acquired. That knowledge is to be derived from the Richs, the Sāmans, and the sciences called *Varna* and *Akshara*. There are, besides, the Yajushes and the Atharvans. In the six kinds of acts indicated in these, dwells the Divine Being.[1] They that are well-versed in the declarations of the Vedas, that have knowledge of the Soul, that are attached to the quality of Goodness, and that are highly blessed, succeed in understanding the origin and the end of all things.[2] A Brāhmana should live in the observance of the duties laid down in the Vedas. He should do all his acts like a good man of restrained soul. He should earn his livelihood without injuring any creature.[3] Having derived knowledge from the good and wise, he should control his passions and propensities. Well-versed in the scriptures, he should practise those duties that have been laid down for him, and do all acts in this

world guided by the quality of goodness. Leading even the domestic mode of life, the Brāhmana should be observant of the six acts already spoken of.*[4] His heart full of faith, he should worship the deities in the five well-known sacrifices. Endued with patience, never heedless, having self-control, conversant with duties, with a cleansed soul, divested of joy, pride, and wrath, the Brāhmana should never sink in languor.[5] Gifts, study of the Vedas, sacrifices, penances, modesty, guilelessness, and self-restraint,—these enhance one's energy and destroy one's sins.[6] One endued with intelligence should be abstemious in diet and should conquer one's senses. Indeed, having subdued both lust and wrath, and having washed away all his sins, he should strive for attaining to *Brahma*.[7] He should worship the Fire and Brāhmanas, and bow to the deities. He should avoid all kinds of inauspicious discourse, and all acts of unrighteous injury.[8] This preliminary course of conduct is first laid down for a Brāhmana. Subsequently, when knowledge comes, he should engage himself in acts, for in acts is success.†[9] The Brāhmana who is endued with intelligence succeeds in crossing the stream of life that is so difficult to cross and that is so furious and terrible, that has the five senses for its waters that has cupidity for its source, and that has wrath for its mire.[10] He should never shut his eyes to the fact that Time stands behind him in a threatening attitude,—Time who is the great stupifier of all things, and who is armed with very great and irresistible force issuing from the great Ordainer himself.[11] Generated by the current of Nature, the universe is being ceaselessly carried along.[12] The mighty river of Time, overspread with eddies constituted by the years, having the months for its waves and the seasons for its current, the fortnights for its floating straw and grass,[13] and the rise and fall of the eyelids for its froth, the days and the nights for its water, and desire and lust for its terrible crocodiles, the Vedas and sacrifices for its rafts,[14] and the righteousness

---

* The first and the 4th Verses are triplets in the Bengal texts.—T.

† These are, of course, religious acts.—T.

of creatures for its islands, and Profit and Pleasure for its springs, truthfulness of speech and Emancipation for its shores, benevolence for the trees that float along it,[15] and the *yugas* for the lakes along its course,—the mighty river of Time,—which has an origin as inconceivable as that of *Brahma* itself, is ceaselessly bearing away all beings created by the great Ordainer towards the abode of Yama.*[16] Persons possessed of wisdom and patience always succeed in crossing this awful river by employing the rafts of knowledge and wisdom. What, however, can senseless fools, destitute of similar rafts, do (when thrown into that furious stream) ?[17] That only the man of wisdom succeeds in crossing this stream and not he that is unwise, is consistent with reason. The former beholds from a distance the merits and faults of everything. (Accordingly, he succeeds in adopting or rejecting what is deserving of adoption or rejection).[18] The man, however, of unstable and little understanding, and whose soul is full of desire and cupidity, is always filled with doubt. Hence the man destitute of wisdom never succeeds in crossing that river. He also who sits inactively (in doubt) can never pass it over.[19] The man destitute of the raft of wisdom, in consequence of his having to bear the heavy weight of great faults, sinks down. One that is seized by the crocodile of desire, even if possessed of knowledge, can never make know-

---

* In the Bengal texts Verse 12 consists of one line. This, I think, is correct. Verses 13, 14, 15, and 16 form one sentence. Verse 12 is complete by itself. The *udaka* in *kālodaka* should be taken as meaning stream or river, otherwise *ahorātrajalena* would be pleonastic. Again *arthakāmajalena*, to avoid redundancy, should be taken as implying the springs that supply the water. *Vihingsā-taruvāhinā* is, 'having benevolence for the trees that float on its waters.' This idea is beautiful. Creatures that are being borne away in the stream of Time may catch these trees of benevolence for saving themselves. The Burdwan translator misunderstands *vihingsā* and makes nonsense of the idea. Altogether, though highly ornate, the metaphors are original. Of course, the idea is eminently oriental, Eastern rhetoric being fond of spinning out metaphors and similies, which, in the hands of Eastern poets, become highly elastic.—T.

ledge one's raft.*[20] For these reasons the man of wisdom and intelligence should strive to float over the stream of Time (without sinking in it). He, indeed, succeeds in keeping himself afloat who becomes conversant with *Brahma*.[21] One born in a noble race, abstaining from the three duties of teaching, officiating at other's sacrifices, and accepting gifts, and doing only the three other acts, *viz.*, studying, sacrificing, and giving, should, for those reasons, strive to float over the stream. Such a man is sure to cross it aided by the raft of wisdom.[22] One who is pure in conduct, who is self-restrained and observant of good vows, whose soul is under control, and who is possessed of wisdom, certainly wins success in this and the other world.[23] The Brāhmana leading a domestic mode of life should conquer wrath and envy, practise the virtues already named, and, worshipping the deities in the five sacrifices, eat after having fed the deities, *Pitris*, and guests.[24] He should conform to those duties which are observed by the good; he should, do all his acts like a person of governed soul; and he should without injuring any creature, draw his sustenance by adopting a course that is not censurable.[25] One who is well-versed in the truths of the Vedas and the other branches of knowledge, whose behaviour is like that of a person of well-governed soul, who is endued with a clear vision, who observes those duties that are laid down for his order, who does not, by his acts produce an intermixture of duties,[26] who attends to the observances set down in the scriptures, who is full of faith, who is self-restrained, who is possessed of wisdom, who is destitute of envy and malice, and who is well conversant with the distinctions between righteousness and iniquity, succeeds in crossing all his difficulties.[27] That Brāhmana who is possessed of fortitude, who is always heedful, who is self-restrained, who is conversant with righteousness, whose soul is under control, and who has transcended joy, pride, and wrath, has never to languish in grief.[28] This is the

---

* K. P. Singha misunderstands this verse. The Burdwan translator is also inaccurate.—T.

course of conduct that was ordained of old for a Brāhmana. He should strive for the acquisition of Knowledge, and do all the scriptural acts. By living thus, he is sure to obtain success.[29] One who is not possessed of clear vision does wrong even when one wishes to do right. Such a person, by even exercising his judgment, does such acts of virtue as partake the nature of iniquity.[30] Desiring to do what is right one does what is wrong. Similarly, desiring to do what is wrong, one does what is right. Such a person is a fool. Not knowing the two kinds of acts, one has to undergo repeated rebirths and deaths.' "[31]

Section CCXXXVI.

" 'Vyāsa said,—If Emancipation be desirable, then knowledge should be acquired. For a person who is borne now up and now down along the stream of Time or life, knowledge is the raft by which he can reach the shore.[1] Those wise men who have arrived at certain conclusions (regarding the character of the soul and that which is called life) by the aid of wisdom, are able to assist the ignorant in crossing the stream of time or life with the raft of knowledge. They, however, that are ignorant, are unable to save either themselves or others.[2] He who has freed himself from desire and all other faults, and who has emancipated himself from all attachments, should attend to these two and ten requirements of yoga, *viz.*, place, acts, affection, objects, means, destruction, certainty, eyes, food, suppression, mind, and survey.*[3]

---

* The place should be a level spot, not impure (such as a crematorium, &c.), free from *kankars*, fire, and sand, &c.; solitary and free from noise and other sources of disturbance. Acts include abstention from food and sports and amusements, abstention from all kinds of work having only worldly objects to accomplish, abstention also from sleep and dreams. Affection means that for good disciples or for progress in *yoga*. Objects refer to sacred fuel, water, and suppression of expectancy and anxiety, &c.. Means refer to the seat to be used, the manner of sitting, and th attitude of the body. Destruction refers to the conquest of desire and attachments, *i. e.*, renunciation of all attractive things. Certainty means the unalterable belief that what is said about *yoga* in the Vedas and by

He who wishes to obtain superior Knowledge, should, by the aid of his understanding, restrain both speech and mind. He who wishes to have tranquillity, should, by the aid of his knowledge, restrain his soul.[4] Whether he becomes compassionate or cruel, whether he becomes conversant with all the Vedas or ignorant of the *Richs*, whether he becomes righteous and observant of sacrifices or the worst of sinners, whether he becomes eminent for prowess and wealth or plunged into misery, that person who directs his mind towards these (attributes that I have spoken of), is sure to cross the ocean of life which is so difficult to cross.[6] Without speaking of the results of the attainment of *Brahma* by yoga, it may be said that he who sets himself to only enquire after the Soul transcends the necessity of observing the acts laid down in the Vedas.[7] The body with *jiva* within it is an excellent car. When sacrifices and religious rites are made its *upastha*, shame its *varutha*, Upāya and Apāya its *kuvara*, the breath called Apāna its *aksha*, the breath called Prāna its *yuga*, knowledge and the allotted period of existence its points for tying the steeds, heedfulness its handsome *vandhura*, the assumption of good behaviour its *nemi*, vision, touch, scent, and hearing its four steeds, wisdom its *nābhi*, all the scriptures its *pratoda*, certain knowledge of the scriptural declarations its driver, the soul its firmly-seated rider, faith and self-restraint its fore-runners, renunciation its inseparable companion following behind and bent upon doing it good, purity the path along which it goes, meditation (or union with *Brahma*) its goal, then may that car reach *Brahma* and shine there in effulgence.*[8-11] I shall now tell thee the

---

preceptors is true. (The Nom. sing. inflection stands for the instrumental plural). Eyes include the other senses. All these should be restrained. Food means pure food. Suppression refers to the subjugation of our natural inclination towards earthly objects. Mind here has reference to the regulation of the will and its reverse, *viz.*, irresolution. Survey means reflection on birth, death, decrepitude, disease, sorrow, faults, &c. In giving these meanings, I, of course, follow Nilakantha —T.

* Notwithstanding Nilakantha's gloss which shows great ingenuity and which has been apparently followed by both of them, the Verna-

speedy means that should be adopted by the person who would equip his car in such a fashion for passing through this wilderness of the world in order to reach the goal constituted by *Brahma* that is above decrepitude and destruction.[12] To set the mind upon one thing at a time is called *Dhāranā.** The Yogin, observing proper vows and restraints, practises in all seven kinds of *Dhāranā.* There are, again, as many kinds of *Dhāranās* arising out of these, upon subjects that are near or remote.†[13] Through these the Yogin

---

cular translators have misunderstood portions of these Verses which sketch out the course of life which one desirous of attaining to Emancipation or *Brahma* is to follow. Particular virtues or attributes have been represented as particular limbs of the car. It does not appear that there is (except in one or two instances) any especial aptitude in any of those virtues or attributes for corresponding with one instead of with another limb of the figurative car. *Upastha* is that part of the car on which the driver sits. *Varutha* is the wooden fence round a car for protecting it against the effects of collision. Shame is the feeling that withdraws us from all wicked acts. *Kuvara* is the pole to which the yoke is attached Upāya and Apàya, which have been called the *kuvara*, are 'means' and 'destruction' as explained in Verse 3 above. *Aksha* is the wheel. *Yuga* is the yoke. *Vandhura* is that part of the *yuga* where it is attached to the pole, *i. e.*, its middle, about which appears something like a projecting knob. *Nemi* is the circumference of the wheel. *Nābhi* is the central portion of the car upon which the rider or warrior is seated. *Pratoda* is the goad with which the driver urges the steeds. The Commentator explains that *jiva-yuktah* means having such a *jiva* as is desirous of attaining to Emancipation or *Mokshа.* Such elaborate figures are favourite conceits of Oriental poets.—T.

* Adopting the Kantian distribution of the mental phenomena, *viz.*, the three great divisions of Cognitive faculties, Pleasure and Pain, and Desire and Will, Sir William Hamilton subdivides the first (*viz*, the Cognitive faculties), into the acquisitive faculty, the retentive faculty, the reproductive faculty, the representative faculty, and reason or judgment by which concepts are compared together. *Dhāranā* corresponds with the exercise of the Representative faculty or the power by which the mind is held to or kept employed upon a particular image or notion. It is this faculty that is especially trained by *yogins.* Indeed, the initial step consists in training it to the desirable extent.—T.

† The seven kinds of *Dhāranās* appertain respectively to Earth, Wind, Space, Water, Fire, Consciousness, and Understanding.—T.

gradually acquires mastery over Earth, Wind, Space, Water, Fire, Consciousness, and Understanding. After this he gradually acquires mastery over the Unmanifest.*[14] I shall now describe to thee the conceptions in their order that are realised by particular individuals amongst those that are engaged in *yoga* according to the rules and ordinances that have been laid down. I shall tell thee also of the nature of the success that attaches to *yoga* commenced (according to rules) by him who looks within his own self.†[15] The Yogin, that abandons his gross body, following the instructions of his preceptor, beholds his soul displaying the following forms in consequence of its subtility. To him, in the first stage, the welkin seems to be filled with a subtile substance like foggy vapour.‡[16] Of the Soul which has been freed from the body, even such becomes the form. When this fog disappears, a second (or new) form becomes visible.[17] For then the Yogin beholds within himself, in the firmament of his heart, the form of Water. After the disappearance of water, the form of Fire displays itself.[18] When this disappears, the form that becomes perceivable is that of Wind as effulgent as a well-tempered weapon of high polish. Gradually the form displayed by Wind becomes like that of the thinnest gossamer.[19] Then having acquired whiteness, and also, the subtilety of air, the Brāhman's soul is said to attain the supreme whiteness and subtilety of Ether.[20] Listen to me as I tell thee the consequences of these diverse conditions

---

* All these have been explained lower down.—T.

† The construction of both these lines is difficult to understand. The prose order of the line is 'yogatah yuktesu (madhye) yasya yathā ete vikramāh (tathā vakshyāmi); ātmani paçyatah (janasya) yuktasya yogasya (yathā) siddhi (tathā vakshyāmi).' 'Yogatah' means 'upāyatah,' *i. e.*, according to rules and ordinances. 'Vikramāh' is used in a peculiar sense, *viz.*, 'anubhavakramāh,' *i. e.*, the order of conception or conceptions in their order. 'Atmanipaçyatah' means 'of him who looks into himself,' *i. e.*, who withdraws his mind from the outer world and turns it to view his own self. Without Nilakantha's aid, such verses would be thoroughly unintelligible.—T.

‡ *Paçyatah* means 'of that which sees, *i. e.*, of the ātman or Soul.'—T.

when they occur. That Yogin who has been able to achieve the conquest of the Earth-element, attains by such lordship to the power of Creation.[21] Like a second Prajāpati endued with a nature that is perfectly imperturbable, he can from his own body create all kinds of creatures. With only his toe, or with his hand or feet,[22] that person can singly cause the whole Earth to tremble who has achieved the lordship of the Wind. Even this is the attribute of the Wind as declared in the *Çruti*. The Yogin who has achieved the lordship of Space, can exist brightly in Space in consequence of his having attained to uniformity with that element, and can also disappear at will.[23] By lordship over Water, one can (like Agastya) drink up rivers, lakes, and oceans. By lordship over Fire, the Yogin becomes so effulgent that his form cannot be looked at. He becomes visible only when he extinguishes the fire within him. When the Yogin succeeds in extinguishing his consciousness of individuality, these five elements come within his sway.[24] When the Understanding, which is the soul of the five elements and of the consciousness of individuality,* is conquered the Yogin attains to Omnipotence, and perfect Knowledge (or perception freed from doubt and uncertainty) with respect to all things comes to him.[25] In consequence of this, the Manifest becomes merged into the Unmanifest or Supreme Soul from which the world emanates and becomes what is called Manifest.†[26] Listen now to me in detail as I expound the science of the Unmanifest. But first of all listen to me about all that is Manifest as expounded in the Sānkhya system of philosophy.[27] In both the Yoga and the Sānkhya systems, five and twenty topics of knowledge have been

---

* The Understanding is called the *soul* of the five elements and of the consciousness of individuality because these six things rest on it or have it for their refuge. The reader will easily understand this from what has been said in the previous Sections.—T.

† It is from the Unmanifest or the Supreme Soul that the world or all that is Manifest, springs or emanates. The Yogin, in consequence of his superior knowledge, apprehends all that is Manifest to be but the Unmanifest Supreme Soul.—T.

treated in nearly the same way. Listen to me as I mention their chief feautures.[28] That has been said to be Manifest which is possessed of these four attributes, *viz.*, birth, growth decay, and death.[29] That which is not possessed of these attributes is said to be Unmanifest. Two Souls are mentioned in the Vedas and the sciences that are based upon them.[30] The first (which is called Jivātman) is endued with the four attributes already mentioned, and has a longing for the four objects or purposes (*viz.*, Religion, Wealth, Pleasure, and Emancipation). This soul is called Manifest, and it is born of the Unmanifest (Supreme Soul). It is both Intelligent and not-Intelligent.[31] I have thus told thee about *Sattwa* (inert matter) and *Kshetrajna* (immaterial spirit). Both kinds of Soul, it is said in the Vedas, become attached to objects of the senses.[32] The doctrine of the Sānkhyas is that one should keep oneself aloof or dissociated from objects of the senses. That Yogin who is freed from attachment and pride, who transcends all pairs of opposites such as pleasure and pain, heat and cold, &c., who never gives way to wrath or hate, who never speaks an untruth,[33] who though slandered or struck still shows friendship for the slanderer or the striker, who never thinks of doing ill to others, who restrains these three, *viz.*, speech, acts, and mind,[34] and who behaves uniformly towards all creatures, succeeds in approaching the presence of Brahman. That person who cherishes no desire for earthly objects, who is not unwilling to take what comes, who is dependent on earthly objects to only that extent which is necessary for sustaining life,[35] who is free from cupidity, who has driven off all grief, who has restrained his senses, who goes through all necessary acts, who is regardless of personal appearance and attire, whose senses are all collected (for devotion to the true objects of life), whose purposes are never left unaccomplished,*[36] who bears himself with equal friendliness towards all creatures, who

* 'Na kriti na,' *i. e.*, 'kriti eva.' 'Nirākriti' 'is regardless of dress and appearance.' K. P. Singha wrongly translates both these words.—T.

regards a clod of earth and a lump of gold with an equal eye, who is equally disposed towards friend and foe, who is possessed of patience, who takes praise and blame equally,*[37] who is free from longing with respect to all objects of desire, who practises Brahmacharyya, and who is firm and steady in all his vows and observances, who has no malice or envy for any creature in the universe, is a Yogin who according to the Sānkhya system succeeds in winning Emancipation.[39] Listen now to the way and the means by which a person may win Emancipation through Yoga (or the system of Patanjali). That person who moves and acts after having transcended the puissance that the practice of Yoga brings about (in the initial stages), succeeds in winning Emancipation.†[39] I have thus discoursed to thee on those topics (*viz.*, Emancipation according to the Sānkhya system and that according to the Yoga system) which are dissimilar if the speaker be disposed to treat them as such (but which, in reality, are one and the same).‡ Thus can one transcend all pairs of opposites. Thus can one attain to *Brahma.*§—' "[40]

SECTION CCXXXVII.

" 'Vyāsa said,—Borne up and down in life's ocean, he that is capable of meditation seizes the raft of Knowledge and for achieving his Emancipation adheres to Knowledge itself

---

* *I. e*, who has neither friend nor foe. This means that he regards all creatures with an equal eye, showing particular favor to none, and having no dislike for any. Coldness of heart is not implied, but impartial and equal benevolence for all. Taking praise and blame equally, *i. e.*, never rejoicing at praise nor grieving at blame.—T.

† It is said that with the practice of Yoga, during the first stages, certain extraordinary powers come to the Yogin whether he wishes for them or not. In a previous Section it has been said that that Yogin who suffers himself to be led away by these extraordinary acquisitions, goes to hell, *i. e*, fails to attain to Emancipation beside which heaven itself with the status of Indra is only hell. Hence, he who transcends the puissance that Yoga brings about becomes Emancipate.—T.

‡ *Vide* Gitā, Verses 4 and 5, Chap. V.—T.

§ 'Brahmānam' is ārsha for *Brahmam.*—T.

(without extending his arms hither and thither for catching any other support).*—[1]

"'Cuka said,—What is that Knowledge? Is it that learning by which, when error is dispelled, the truth becomes discovered? Or, is it that course of duties consisting of acts to be done or achieved, by the aid of which the object sought may be understood or attained? Or, is it that course of duties, called absention from acts, by which an extinction of the Soul is to be sought? Do tell me what it is, so that by its aid, the two, *viz.*, birth and death, may be avoided!—†[2]

"'Vyāsa said,—That fool who, believing that all this exists in consequence of its own Nature without, in fact, an existent refuge or foundation, fills by such instruction the aspirations of disciples, dispelling by his dialectical ingenuity the reasons the latter might urge to the contrary, succeeds not in attaining to any truth.‡[3] They again who firmly believe that all Cause is due to the Nature of things, fail to acquire any truth by even listening to (wiser) men or the *Rishis* (who are capable of instructing

---

* 'Dhirah' is explained as 'dhyānavān.' 'Cānti' has reference to Emancipation, for it is Emancipation alone that can give tranquillity or final rest. The Commentator points out that in this Verse the speaker shows a decided preference for the Sānkhya philosophy.—T.

† I follow Nilakantha's gloss in rendering the words Vidyā, Pravirtti, and Nivritti, as used in this Verse. By the first, the Commentator thinks, is meant that course of instruction in consequence of which error may be dispelled and truth acquired. The usual illustration of the cord and the snake is given. The former may be mistaken for the latter, but when the mistake ceases, correct apprehension follows. Pravritti has been sufficiently indicated in the text in which the words of the gloss have been incorporated. By Nivritti is meant the doctrine of the Cunyavādis and Lokayātikas (evidently the Buddhists) who seek annihilation or extinction as the only true Emancipation. Both the Vernacular translators are wrong. The Burdwan translator, as usual, citing the very words of the gloss, misunderstands them completely.—T.

‡ The construction of the first line is 'yastu achetanah bhāvam vinā swabhāvena (sarvam bhāti iti) paçyan, &c. &c., pushyate, (sa na kinchana labhate).' Bhāvam' is explained as 'adhishthānasattam.' The Commentator is of opinion that the speaker refers in this Verse to the Cunyavadis.—T.

them).*[4] Those men of little intelligence who stop (in their speculations), having adopted either of these doctrines, indeed, those men who regard Nature as the cause, never succeed in obtaining any benefit for themselves.†[5] This belief in Nature (as the producing and the sustaining Cause), arising as it does from a mind acting under the influence of error, brings about the destruction of the person who cherishes it. Listen now to the truth with respect to these two doctrines that maintain (1) that things exist by their own Nature and (2) that they flow (in consequence of their own Nature) from others that are different from and that precede them.‡[6] Wise men apply themselves to agriculture and tillage, and the acquisition of crops (by those means) and of vehicles (for locomotion) and seats and carpets and houses.[7] They attend also to the laying of pleasure-gardens, the construction of commodious mansions, and the preparation of medicines for diseases of every kind.[8] It is wisdom (which consists in the application of means) that leads to the fruition of purposes. It is wisdom that wins beneficial results. It is wisdom that enables kings to exercise and enjoy sovereignty although they are possessed of attributes equal to those of persons over whom they rule.¶[9] It is by wisdom that the high

---

* The Bombay text reads *Putwātrinamishikāmvā.*—T.

† *Enam* is singular. The Commentator thinks it should be taken distributively. In Verse 3, the doctrine of the Nihilists (Cunyavādis) has been referred to. In Verse 4, that of the Lokayātikas. In both, Nature is spoken of as the cause, with this difference that the former regard the universe to be only an erroneous impression of an existent entity, while the latter regard it as a real entity flowing from and manifesting itself under its own Nature. Both doctrines, the speaker says, are false.—T.

‡ Both the Vernacular transl ators skip over the word 'paribhāva' in the second line of Verse 6. The Commentator correctly explains that 'swabhāva' in 6 means 'swasyaiva bhāvah sattākāranam iti, ekah pakshah.' 'Paribhāva,' he explains, is 'paritah swasya itareshām bhāvah.' The first refers to the Nihilists, the second to the Lokayātikas ; or to Verses 3 and 4 respectively.—T.

¶ It is by wisdom that all these results are achieved. Wisdom is the application of means for the accomplishment of ends. Nature,

and the low among beings are distinguished. It is by wisdom that the superior and the inferior ones among created objects are understood. It is wisdom or knowledge that is the highest refuge of all things.*[10] All the diverse kinds of created things have four kinds of birth. They are viviparous, oviparous, vegetables, and those born of filth.[11] Creatures, again, that are mobile should be known to be superior to those that are immobile. It is consistent with reason that intelligent energy, inasmuch as it differentiates (all non-intelligent matter), should be regarded as superior to (non-intelligent) matter.†[12] Mobile creatures, that are innumerable, are of two kinds, *viz.*, those that have many legs and those that have two. The latter, however, are superior to the former.[13] Bipeds, again, are of two species, *viz.*, those that live on land and those that are otherwise. Of these, the former are superior to the latter. The superior ones eat diverse kinds of cooked food.‡[14] Bipeds moving on land are of two kinds, *viz.*, middling or intermediate, and those that are foremost. Of these, the middling or intermediate are regarded as superior (to the

---

never rears palaces or produces vehicles and the divers other comforts that man enjoys. He that would rely upon Nature for these would never obtain them however long he might wait. The need for exertion, both mental and physical, and the success which crowns that exertion furnish the best answer, the speaker thinks, to both the Nihilists and the Lokayātikas. The word 'tulyalakshanāh' is skipped over by both the Bengali translators.—T.

* By *para* is meant the Chit or Soul, by *avara*, all else, *i. e.*, non-ego or matter. The words Prajnā, Jnāna, and Vidyā are all, as used here, equivalent. The second line of this Verse is wrongly rendered by both the Bengali translators, the Burdwan translator, as usual, not understanding the words of the gloss he quotes.—T.

† It is difficult to render the word *cheshtā* as used here. Ordinarily it implies effort or action. It is plain, however, that here it stands for intelligent energy, implying both mental and physical effort or action, for its function is to distinguish or differentiate.—T.

‡ The *itarāni* in 14 do not refer to Piçāchas as rendered by K. P. Singha, but to birds which are called *Khechara* or denizens of the sky or air. Khechara may include Piçāchas, but these are also *Bhuchara* or denizens of the surface of the Earth.—T.

former) in consequence of their observance of the duties of caste.*[15] The middling or intermediate ones are said to be of two kinds, *viz.*, those that are conversant with duties, and those that are otherwise. Of those, the former are superior in consequence of their discrimination in respect of what should be done and what should not.[16] Those conversant with duties are said to be of two kinds, *viz.*, those that are acquainted with the Vedas and those that are otherwise. Of these the former are superior, for the Vedas are said to dwell in them.†[17] Those that are acquainted with the Vedas are said to be of two kinds, *viz.*, those that lecture on the Vedas and those that are otherwise. Of these, the former, who are fully conversant with the Vedas, with the duties and the rites laid down in them, and the fruits of those duties and rites, are superior in consequence of their publishing all those duties and rites. Indeed, all the Vedas with the duties laid down in them are said to flow from them.[18-19] Preceptors of the Vedas are of two kinds, *viz.*, those that are conversant with the Soul and those that are otherwise. Of these the former are superior in consequence of their knowledge of what is meant by Birth and Death.‡[20] As regards duties, they are, again, of two kinds, (*viz.*, Pravritti and Nivritti). He who is conversant with duties is said to be omniscient

---

* The Commentator explains that for ascertaining who are *uttama* or foremost, the middling or intermediate ones are first spoken of and their distinctions mentioned in the following verses. Of course, the foremost *are* foremost, and the intermediate ones can never be superior to them. For all that, the intermediate ones are observers of the duties of caste ; the foremost ones are not so, they having transcended such distinctions ; hence, tentatively, the ignorant or popular opinion is first taken, to the effect that the observers of caste are superior to those who do not observe *Jātidharma*.—T.

† This probably means that as the Vedas had not been reduced to writing, their contents rested or dwelt in the memories of men versed in them.—T.

‡ To understand what is birth and what is death, and to avoid birth (and, therefore, death), are the highest fruits of knowledge of the Soul. Those that have no knowledge of the Soul have to travel in a round of repeated rebirths.—T.

or possessed of universal knowledge. Such a man is a Renouncer. Such a man is firm in the accomplishment of his purposes. Such a man is truthful, pure (both outwardly and inwardly), and possessed of puissance.*[21] The gods know him for a Brāhmana who is devoted to knowledge of *Brahma* (and not him who is conversant with only the duties of Pravritti). Such a man is versed also in the Vedas and earnestly devoted to the study of the Soul.†[22] They that have true knowledge behold their own Soul as existing both in and out. Such men, O child, are truly regenerate and such men are gods.‡[23] Upon these rests this world of Beings, in them dwell this whole universe. There is nothing that is equal to their greatness.[24] Transcending birth and death and distinctions and acts of every kind, they are the lords of the four kinds of creatures and are the equals of the Self-born himself.$—' "[25]

SECTION CCXXXVIII.

" 'Vyāsa said,—These then are the obligatory acts ordained for Brāhmanas. One possessed of knowledge always attains to success by going through (the prescribed) acts.[1]

---

* *I. e.*, of power that comes of Yoga.—T.

† The word *para* (the locative form of which is used here) always means that which is high or foremost. It is frequently employed to mean either *Brahma* or the Soul, and as Soul is regarded to be a part of *Brahma*, *para* has but one and the same meaning. The Burdwan translator takes it for "Scriptures other than the Vedas.' K. P. Singha skips over it. Of course, *çavda-Brahma* stands for the Vedas.—T.

‡ To look upon everything in the universe as one's own Soul is the highest aspiration of a righteous person. It is *yoga* that enables one to attain to this highest ideal of existence. One who realises this is said to be a true Brāhmana, a really regenerate person, in fact, a god on Earth. Adhiyajna and Adhidaivata are words that signify the Soul.—T.

$ What the distinction is between *anta* and *nidhan* is not obvious. The Commentator is silent. K. P. Singha translates the verse correctly. The Burdwan translator makes utter nonsense of the words in the second line.—T.

If no doubt arises in respect of acts, then acts done are sure to lead to success. The doubt to which we refer is this: whether acts are obligatory or whether they are optional.*[2] As regards this (doubt about the true character of acts, it should be said that) if acts are ordained for man for inducing knowledge (by which alone *Brahma* or Emancipation is to be attained, even then) they should be regarded as obligatory (and not optional). I shall now discourse on them by the light of inferences and experience. Listen to me.†[3] With respect to acts some men say that Exertion is their cause. Others say that Necessity is their cause. Others, again, maintain that Nature is the cause.[4] Some say that acts are the result of both Exertion and Necessity. Some maintain that acts flow from Time, Exertion, and Nature. Some say that of the three, (*viz.*, Exertion, Necessity, and Nature), one only (and not the other two) is the cause. Some are of opinion that all three combined are the cause.‡[5] Some persons that are engaged in the performance of acts say, with respect to all objects, that they exist, that they do not exist, that they cannot be said to exist, that they cannot be said not to exist, that it is not that they cannot be said to

---

* Whether 'karma is swabhāva or jnānam,' means (as the Commentator explains) whether it is obligatory or optional. 'Jnānam,' of course, means here 'jnāna-janakam,' *i. e.*, leading to knowledge. Knowledge is essential to success or emancipation. If acts become necessary for leading to knowledge, the doubt may then arise that they cease to be obligatory, for knowledge may be supposed to be attainable otherwise than by acts. K. P. Singha translates this verse correctly, the Burdwan translator incorrectly, and, as usual, misunderstands the gloss completely.—T.

† The first line of this verse is exceedingly terse. The construction, as explained by the Commentator, is 'Tatra (samçaye) purusham prati Jnānam (jnānajanakam) chet (karma) syāt, (tarhi) sa (eva) Vedabidhih.' One cannot help admiring Nilakantha for his patience and ingenuity.—T.

‡ 'Daiva' is explained by the Commentator as 'Grahāh' or 'Kālah.' I think, it is used to signify some kind of blind force whose origin is untraceable. Hence, I render it Necessity. 'Vritti' in Verse 5 is evidently Exertion, for the word implies course of conduct. 'Avivekam' is 'samuchchayam' or a combination of all the three.—T.

exist, and lastly, that it is not that they cannot be said not to exist. (These then are the diverse views entertained by men). They, however, that are Yogins, behold *Brahma* to be the universal cause.[6] The men of the Tretā, the Dwāpara, and the Kali Yugas are inspired with doubts. The men, however, of the Krita Yuga are devoted to penances, possessed of tranquil souls, and observant of righteousness.*[7] In that age all men regard the Richs, the Sāmans, and the Yajushes as identical notwithstanding their apparent diversity. Analysing desire and aversion, they worship only penance.†[8] Devoted to the practice of penances, steadfast in them, and rigid in their observance, one obtains the fruition of all desires by penances alone.[9] By penance one attains to that by becoming which one creates the universe. By penance one becomes that in consequence of which one becomes the puissant master of all things.‡[10] That *Brahma* has been expounded in the declarations of the Vedas. For all that, *Brahma* is inconceivable by even those that are conversant with those declarations. Once more has *Brahma* been declared in the Vedānta. *Brahma*, however, cannot be beheld by means of acts.$[11] The sacrifice ordained for

---

* 'Inspired with doubt,' with reference to the declarations of the Crutis. 'Possessed of tranquil souls,' *i. e.*, not penetrated by doubts of any kind.—T.

† In the Tretā and the other Yugas people are seen professing attachment or devotion to one only of the Vedas and not to the others, be it the Richs, the Sāmans, or the Yajushes. The speaker, dissatisfied with this, refers to the Krita age as one in which such differences of faith were not observable. The men of that age regarded all the Vedas equally, and, in fact, as even identical.—T.

‡ Jiva or Chit becomes puissant and succeeds in creating the universe by means of penance. By penance one attains to *Brahma*, and, therefore, universal puissance. This has been sufficiently explained in the previous Sections.—T.

$ This is one of the most important Verses in this Section, for, as the Commentator explains, this furnishes the answer to the question proposed in the previous Section, *viz.*, 'what is that knowledge ?' In the Vedas both acts and knowledge have been spoken of. In the province of acts, *Brahma* has been represented as Indra and the other gods. *Brahma*, therefore, as spoken of there, is 'gahana' or hidden to

Brāhmanas consists in *yapa* (meditation and recitation), that for Kshatriyas consists in the slaughter of (clean) animals for the gratification of the deities; that for Vaiçyas consists in the production of crops and the keep of domestic animals; and that for Cudras in menial service of the three other orders.[12] By observing the duties laid down for him and by studying the Vedas and other scriptures, one becomes a *Dwija* (regenerate). Whether one does any other act or not, one becomes a Brāhmana by becoming the friend of all creatures.*[13] In the beginning of Tretā, the Vedas and sacrifices and the divisions of caste and the several modes of life existed in their entirety. In consequence, however, of the duration of life being decreased in Dwāpara, those are overtaken by decline.[14] In the Dwāpara age as also in the Kali, the Vedas are overtaken by perplexity. Towards the close of Kali again, it is doubtful if they ever become even visible to the eye.†[15] In that age, the duties of the respective orders disappear, and men become afflicted by iniquity. The juicy attributes of kine, of the earth, of water, and (medicinal and edible) herbs, disappear.‡[16] Through (universal) iniquity the Vedas disappear and with them all the duties inculcated in them as also the duties in respect of the four modes of life. They who remain observant of the duties of their own order become afflicted, and all mobile and immobile objects undergo a change for the worse.$[17] As

---

(or inconceivable by) even those that are conversant with that province or sphere of the Vedas. In the Vedānta, again, knowledge or *Vidyā* has been spoken of as the means by which to attain to *Brahma*. The knowledge or Vidyā, therefore, which is the subject of the question, is not what is implied by *Pravritti dharma* or by *Nivritti* as used in Verse 2 of the previous Section.—T.

* The second line of this verse corresponds with the second line of Verse 87 of Chap. II of Manu.—T.

† 'They are seen and not seen' is an idiomatic expression for 'becoming invisible.'—T.

‡ *I. e.*, kine do not yield copious and sweet milk; the soil ceases to be fertile; water ceases to be sweet; and the medicinal and edible herbs lose their virtues of healing as also their flavour.—T.

$ The Commentator thinks that 'Swadharmasthah' is connected

the showers of heaven cause all products of the Earth to grow, after the same manner the Vedas, in every age, cause all the *angas* to grow.*[18] Without doubt, Time assumes diverse shapes. It has neither beginning nor end. It is Time which produces all creatures and again devours them. I have already spoken of it to thee.[19] Time is the origin of all creatures; Time is that which makes them grow; Time is that which is their destroyer; and lastly it is Time that is their ruler. Subject to pairs of opposites (such as heat and cold, pleasure and pain, &c.), creatures of infinite variety rest on Time according to their own natures (without being otherwise than what they have been ordained by supreme *Brahma*).†[20]

Section CCXXXIX.

"Bhishma said,—'Thus addressed (by his sire), Cuka, highly applauding these instructions of the great *Rishi*, set himself about asking the following question relating to the import of duties that lead to Emancipation.[1]

"'Cuka said,—By what means doth one possessed of wisdom, conversant with the Vedas, observant of sacrifices, endued with wisdom, and free from malice, succeeds in attaining to *Brahma* which is incapable of being apprehended by either direct evidence or inference, and unsusceptible of being indicated by the Vedas?[2] Asked by me, tell me by what

---

with 'açramah' in the first line. I prefer the more obvious construction.—T.

* 'Varshati' means 'Pushnāti.' 'Angāni' means the observances necessary for the practice of Yoga as also all kinds of rites and vows. The Vedas cause these to grow, and they, in their turn, aid all students of the Vedas in achieving their purposes.—T.

† 'Prabhavah' is 'uttpattih' or origin; 'sthānam' is 'poshanam.' Both the Varnacular translators skip over the last word, thinking that 'prabhavasthānam' is one word. The Commentator notices them as separate. In the beginning of the second line, *yatra* is understood. 'Swabhāvena' is explained by the Commentator as 'Brahmabhāvena, na tu vikritena rupena.' I think the explanation is correct, and have adopted it accordingly in the text.—T.

means is *Brahma* to be apprehended? Is it by penance, by Brahmacharyya, by renunciation of everything, by intelligence, by aid of the Sānkhya philosophy, or by Yoga?[3] By what means may what kind of singleness of purpose be attained by men, with respect to both, *viz.*, the mind and the senses? It behooveth thee to expound all this to me!*—[4]

"'Vyāsa said,—No man ever attains to success by means other than the acquisition of knowledge, the practice of penances, the subjugation of the senses, and renunciation of everything.†[5] The great entities (five in number) represent the first (or initial) creation of the Self-born. They have been very largely placed in embodied creatures included in the world of life.‡[6] The bodies of all embodied creatures are derived from earth. Their humours are from water. Their eyes are said to be derived from light. Prāna, Apāna, (and the three other vital breaths.) have the wind for their refuge. And, lastly, all unoccupied apertures within them (such as the nostrils, the cavities of the ear, &c.,) are of Space.[7] In the feet (of living creatures) is Vishnu. In their arms is Indra. Within the stomach is Agni desirous of eating. In the ears are the points of the horizon (or the compass) representing the sense of hearing. In the tongue is speech which is Saraswati.§[8] The ears, skin, eyes, tongue, and nose forming the fifth, are said to be the senses of knowledge. These exist for the purposes of apprehension of their res-

---

* 'Yatha' in the first line of Verse 4 means, as the Commentator explains, 'yat prakārakam.'—T.

† The Commentator points out that by these four words the four modes of life are indicated.—T.

‡ The Commentator explains that this means that amongst embodied creatures they that are ignorant take those great entities which really non-ego for either the ego or its possessions.—T.

§ The Commentator explains that the object of this Verse is to show that the Yoga view of the Soul being only the enjoyer but not the actor, is not correct. On the other hand, the Sānkhya view of the Soul being neither the enjoyer nor the actor, is true. The deities, remaining in the several senses, act and enjoy. It is through ignorance that the Soul ascribes to itself their enjoyments and their actions.—T.

pective objects.[9] Sound, touch, form, taste, and scent forming the fifth, are the objects of the (five) senses. These should always be regarded as separate from (or independent of) the senses.[10] Like the charioteer setting his well-broken steeds along the paths he pleases, the mind sets the senses (along directions it pleases). The mind, in its turn, is employed by the Understanding sitting in the heart.*[11] The mind is the lord of all these senses in respect of employing them in their functions and guiding or restraining them. Similarly, the Understanding is the lord of the mind (in employing, and guiding or restraining it).†[12] The senses, the objects of the senses, the attributes of those objects represented by the word Nature, understanding, mind, the vital breaths, and Jiva dwell in the bodies of all embodied creatures.‡[13] The body within which the Understanding dwells has no real existence. The body, therfore, is not the refuge of the Understanding. Primordial Nature (Prakriti) having the three attributes (of Goodness and Passion and Darkness) is the refuge of the Understanding which exists only in the form of a sound. The Soul also is not the refuge of the Understanding. It is Desire that creates the Understanding. Desire, however, never creates the three attributes.$[14] The

---

* I render 'Bhutātmā' by Understanding, following the Commentator who uses the words 'buddhyupādhirjivah' for explaining it.—T.

† 'Niyama' and 'Visarga' are explained by the Commentator as 'destruction' and 'creation.' I prefer to take them as meaning 'guiding or restraining,' and 'employing.' Practically, the explanations are identical.—T.

‡ What is meant by the objects of the senses residing within the bodies of living creatures is that (as the Commentator explains) their concepts exist in 'the cavity of the heart' (probably, mind,) so that 'when necessary or called for, they appear (before the mind's eye). 'Swabhāva' is explained as 'attributes like heat and cold, &c.'—T.

$ This is a very difficult verse. I have rendered it, following Nilakantha's gloss. In Verse 13 the speaker lays down what entities dwell in the body. In 14 he expounds the nature of Sattwa which the Commentator takes to mean buddhi or Understanding. He begins with the statement that 'Sattwasya āçrayah nāsti.' This does not mean that the Understanding has no refuge, for that would be absurd, but it means that the āçraya of the Understanding, *i. e.*, that in which

man of wisdom, capable of subduing his senses, beholds the seventeenth, *viz.*, the Soul, as surrounded by six and ten attributes, in his own Understanding by the aid of the mind.[15] The Soul cannot be beheld with the aid of the eye or with that of all the senses. Transcending all, the Soul becomes visible by only the light of the mind's lamp.[16] Divested of the properties of sound and touch and form, without taste and scent, indestructible and without a body (either gross or subtile) and without senses, it is nevertheless beheld within the body.[17] Unmanifest and supreme, it dwells in all mortal bodies. Following the lead of the preceptor and the Vedas, he who beholds it hereafter becomes *Brahma's* self.[18] They that are possessed of wisdom look with an equal eye upon a Brāhmana possessed of knowledge and disciples, a cow, an elephant, a dog, and a Chandāla.*[19] Transcending all things, the Soul dwells in all creatures mobile and immobile. Indeed, all things

---

the Understanding dwells, *viz.*, the body, does not exist, the true doctrine being that the body has no real existence but that it exists like to its image in a dream. The body being non-existent, what then is the real refuge of the Understanding? The speaker answers it by saying Gunah, implying that primeval Prakriti characterised by the three attributes is that real refuge. Then it is said that Chetanā (by which is implied the Soul here) is not the refuge of the Understanding for the Soul is dissociated from everything and is incapable of transformation of any kind. The question is then mentally started,—May not the Gunas be the qualities of the Understanding (instead of being, as said above, its refuge)? For dispelling this doubt, it is stated that Sattwa is the product of Tejas (Desire). The Gunas are *not* the product of Tejas. Hence the Gunas, which have a different origin, cannot be the properties of Sattwa. The Gunas exist independently of Desire. Thus the Understanding, which has Desire for its originating cause, rests on the Gunas or has them for its refuge. In this Verse, therefore, the nature of the body, the Understanding, and the Gunas, is expounded. The grammatical construction of the first line is exceedingly terse.—T.

* Such men behold *Brahma* in all things. *Abhijanah* is explained by the Commentator as *çishyakulādih*. This seems to be the true meaning of the word here.—T.

are pervaded by it.*[20] When a living creature beholds his own Soul in all things, and all things in his own Soul, he is said to attain to *Brahma*.[21] One occupies that much of the Supreme Soul as is commensurate with what is occupied in one's own soul by Vedic sound.† He that can always realise the identity of all things with his own self certainly attains to immortality.[22] The very gods are stupified in the track of that trackless man who constitutes himself the soul of all creatures, who is engaged in the good of all beings, and who desires to attain to (*Brahma* which is) the final refuge (of all things).‡[23] Indeed, the track which is pursued by men of knowledge is as invisible as that of birds in the sky or of fish in water.[24] Time, of its own power, cooks all entities within itself. No one, however, knows That in which Time, in its turn, is itself cooked.$[25] That (of which I speak) does not occur above, or in the middle or below, or in transverse or in any other direction. That is no tangible entity is not to be found in any place.¶[26] All these worlds are within That. There is nothing in these worlds that exists out of That. Even if one goes on ceaselessly with the celerity of a shaft impelled from the bow-string,[27] even

---

* In rendering this word *tatam* (where it occurs in the Gitā), it has been shown that to take it as equivalent to 'spread' is incorrect. In such connections, it is evident that it means 'pervaded.'—T.

† If I have understood the gloss aright, this is what the first line of 21 means. 'Vedātmā' is explained as Vedic sound, *i. e.*, the instructions inculcated in the Vedas. The word 'ātmā' in the second clause means simply oneself or a person or individual. The sense then is this. The Vedas teach that all is one's soul. The extent to which one succeeds in realising this is the measure of one's attainment of *Brahma*. If one can realise it fully, one attains to *Brahma* fully. If partially, one's attainment of *Brahma* also is partial.—T.

‡ The track of such a person, it is said, is as invisible as the skies. The Commentator explains that the very gods become stupified in respect of the object which such a man seeks, that object, of course, being *Brahma*.—T.

$ That, of course, in which Time is cooked, is *Brahma*.—T.

¶ By this the speaker says that *Brahma* is not be found in any particular spot however holy.—T.

if one goes on with the speed of the mind itself, one would not still reach the end of that which is the cause of all this.* That is so gross that there is nothing grosser.[28] His hands and feet extend everywhere. His eyes, head, and face are everywhere. His ears are everywhere in the universe. He exists overwhelming all things.[29] That is minuter than the minutest, that is the heart of all entities. Existing, without doubt, that is still imperceptible.[30] Indestructible and destructible,—these are the dual forms of existence of the (Supreme) Soul. In all mobile and immobile entities the existence it displays is destructible; while the existence it displays in *Chaitanya* is celestial, immortal, and indestructible.[31] Though the lord of all existent beings both mobile and immobile, though inactive and divested of attributes, it enters nevertheless the well-known mansion of nine doors and becomes engaged in action.†[32] Men of wisdom who are capable of beholding the other shore say that the Unborn (or the Supreme Soul) becomes invested with the attribute of action in consequence of motion, pleasure and pain, variety of form, and the nine well-known possessions.‡[33] That indestructible Soul which is said to be invested with the attribute of action is nothing else than that indestructible Soul which is said to be inactive. A person of knowledge, by attaining to that indestructible essence, gives up for good both life and birth.—' "§[34]

---

* Because *Brahma* is infinite.—T.

† 'Niyatah' is explained by the Commentator as 'achanchalah,' and 'Vaçi' as without the fault of 'upādhi.' 'Hansati, *i. e.*, Gachchati ite,' hence 'gatimān.'—T.

‡ The sense is that the Soul residing within the body is identical with the Supreme Soul, and men of wisdom only know it.—T.

§ The construction is 'Hansoktancha yat aksharam tat (eva) kutstham aksharam,' meaning that there is no difference between Jivátman and Paramātman. Both are identical.—T.

Section CCXL.

"'Vyāsa said,—O excellent son, asked by thee, I have told thee truly what the answer to thy question should be according to the doctrine of Knowledge as expounded in the Sānkhya system![1] Listen now to me as I expound to thee all that should be done (for the same end) according to the Yoga doctrine. The uniting together of Intellect and Mind, and all the Senses,[2] and the all-pervading Soul is said to be Knwoledge of the foremost kind. That Knowledge should be acquired (through the preceptor's aid) by one that is of a tranquil disposition, that has mastered his senses, that is capable (by meditation) of turning his gaze on the Soul, that takes a pleasure in (such) meditation, that is endued with intelligence and pure in acts. One should seek to acquire this Knowledge by abandoning those five impediments of Yoga which are known to the wise,[3-4] *viz.*, desire, wrath, cupidity, fear, and sleep. Wrath is conquered by tranquillity of disposition. Desire is conquered by giving up all purposes.[5] By reflecting with the aid of the understanding upon topics worthy of reflection,* one endued with patience succeeds in abandoning sleep. By steady endurance one should restrain one's organs of generation and the stomach (from unworthy or sinful indulgence). One should protect one's hands and feet by (using) one's eyes.[6] One should protect one's eyes and ears by the aid of one's mind, and one's mind and speech by one's acts. One should avoid fear by heedfulness, and pride by waiting upon the wise.[7] Subduing procrastination, one should, by these means, subdue these impediments of Yoga. One should pay one's adorations to fire and the Brāhmanas, and one should bow one's head to the deities.[8] One should avoid all kinds of inauspicious discourse, and speech that is fraught with malice, and words that are painful to other minds. *Brahma* is the effulgent seed (of everything). It is, again,

* 'Sattwena' is explained as 'by intelligence or the understanding.'—T.

the essence of that seed whence is all this.*[9] *Brahma* became the eye, in the form of this mobile and immobile universe, of all entities that took birth.† Meditation, study, gift, truth, modesty, simplicity, forgiveness,[10] purity of body, purity of conduct, and subjugation of the senses, these enhance one's energy, which (when enhanced) destroys one's sins.[11] By behaving equally towards all creatures and by living in contentment upon what is acquired easily and without effort, one attains to the fruition of all one's objects and succeeds in obtaining knowledge.[12] Cleansed of all sins, endued with energy, abstemious in diet, with senses under complete control, one should, after having subdued both desire and wrath, seek to attain to *Brahma*.‡[13] Firmly uniting the senses and the mind (having drawn them away from all external objects), with gaze fixed inwards, one should, in the still hours of evening or in those before dawn, place one's mind upon the understanding.[14] If even one of the five senses of a human being be kept unrestrained, all his wisdom may be seen to escape through it like water through an unstopped hole at the bottom of a leathern bag.[15] The mind in the first instance should be sought to be restrained by the Yogin after the manner of a fisherman seeking at the outset to render that one among the fish powerless from which there is the greatest danger to his nets. Having first subdued the mind, the Yogin should then proceed to subdue his ears, then his eyes, then his

---

* The construction, as explained by the Commentator, is 'Brahma tejomayam çukram ; yasya çukrasya sarvam idam tasyāpi Brahma rasah.' The last word means 'sārah'.—T.

† Both the Vernacular translators have skipped over this line. The meaning is this ; *Brahma* opened his eyes for becoming many, as the Crutis declare, and thereupon he became many. Thus, as the Commentator explains, 'Ikshana-kartrittena sarvātmakatwam gatam,' or 'by a glance *Brahma* became the Soul of all things mobile and immobile.—T.

‡ The Commentator explains that 'Brahmanah padam' means 'prakritim.' He thinks, therefore, that the last clause of the second line means "should seek to subdue *prakriti* which is the 'layasthānam' of 'mahattattwa.'" I prefer the obvious sense of the words.—T.

tongue, and then his nose.[16] Having restrained these, he should fix them on the mind. Then withdrawing the mind from all purposes, he should fix it on the understanding.[17] Indeed, having restrained the five senses, the Yati should fix them on the mind. When these with the mind for their sixth become concentred in the understanding,[18] and thus concentred remain steady and untroubled, then *Brahma* becomes perceptible like a smokeless fire of blazing flames or the Sun of effulgent radiance.[19] Indeed, one then beholds in oneself one's soul like lightning-fire in the skies. Everything then appears in it and it appears in everything in consequence of its infinitude.[20] Those high-souled Brāhmanas that are possessed of wisdom, that are endued with fortitude, that are possessed of high knowledge, and that are engaged in the good of all creatures, succeed in beholding it.[21] Engaged in the observance of austere vows, the Yogin who conducts himself thus for six months, seated by himself on an isolated spot, succeeds in attaining to an equality with the Indestructible.*[22] Annihilation, extension, power to present varied aspects in the same person or body, celestial scents, and sounds, and sights, the most agreeable sensations of taste and touch, pleasurable sensations of coolness and warmth, equality with the wind,[23] capability of understanding (by inward light) the meaning of scriptures and every work of genius, companionship of celestial damsels,—acquiring all these by Yoga the Yogin should disregard them and merge them all in the Understanding.†[24] Restraining speech and the senses one should practise Yoga

---

* 'Parimitam Kālam' is explained by the Commentator as equivalent to six months as the *çrutis* declare.—T.

† These 2 Verses set forth the Yoga ideal. By the practice of Yoga all these are capable of being acquired or attained. But then the Yogin who suffers himself to be led away by those valuable possessions is said to fall in hell, for enjoyment of this kind is nothing but hell compared to the high object for which Yogins should strive. Pramoha, Bhrama, and Āvarta, are technical terms. Equality with the wind means speed of motion, power to disappear at will, and capacity to move through the skies.—T.

during the hours after dusk, the hours before dawn, and at dawn of day, seated on a mountain summit, or at the foot of a goodly tree, or with a tree before him.*[25] Restraining all the senses within the heart, one should, with faculties concentred, think on the Eternal and Indestructible like a man of the world thinking of wealth and other valuable possessions. One should never, while practising Yoga, withdraw one's mind from it.[26] One should with devotion betake oneself to those means by which one may succeed in restraining the mind that is very restless. One should never permit oneself to fall away from it.[27] With the senses and the mind withdrawn from everything else, the Yogin (for practice) should betake himself to empty caves of mountains, to temples consecrated to the deities, and to empty houses or apartments, for living there.[28] One should not associate with another in either speech, act, or thought. Disregarding all things, and eating very abstemiously, the Yogin should look with an equal eye upon objects acquired or lost.[29] He should behave after the same manner towards one that praises and one that censures him. He should not seek the good or the evil of one or the other.[30] He should not rejoice at an acquisition or suffer anxiety when he meets with failure or loss. Of uniform behaviour towards all beings, he should imitate the wind.†[31] Unto one whose mind is thus turned to itself, who leads a life of purity, and who casts an equal eye upon all things,—indeed, unto one who is ever engaged in Yoga thus for even six months,—*Brahma* as represented by sound appears very vividly.‡[32] Beholding all men afflicted with anxiety (on

---

* A 'chaitya' is a sacred or a large tree which stands firm on its roots and about which all round a platform of earth is raised. 'Vrikshāgra' means 'in the front of a tree,' probably implying 'under the shade of its spreading branches'.—T.

† The Commentator explains that he should imitate the wind by becoming 'asangah,' *i. e.*, unattached to all things. 'Aniketah' means without a house or fixed abode.—T.

‡ It is difficult to understand what is meant by 'Cavda-Brahmātivartate.' I follow the Commentator. 'Brahma as represented by sound,

account of earning wealth and comfort), the Yogin should view a clod of earth, a piece of stone, and a lump of gold with an equal eye. Indeed, he should withdraw himself from this path (of earning wealth), cherishing an aversion for it, and never suffer himself to be stupified.[33] Even if a person happens to belong to the inferior order, even if one happens to be a woman, both of them, by following in the track indicated above, will surely attain to the highest end.*[34] He that has subdued his mind beholds in his own self, by the aid of his own understanding the Increate, Ancient, Undeteriorating, and Eternal *Brahma*,—That, *viz.*, which cannot be attained to except by fixed senses,—That which is subtiler than the most subtile, and grosser than the most gross, and which is Emancipation's self.†—'[35]

"'Bhishma continued,—'By ascertaining from the mouths of preceptors and by themselves reflecting with their minds upon these words of the great and high-souled Rishi spoken so properly, persons possessed of wisdom attain to that equality (about which the scriptures say) with Brahman himself, till, indeed, the time when the universal dissolution comes that swallows up all existent beings !‡' "[36]

---

is, of course, 'Pranavah' or 'Om,' the mystic monosyllable standing for the trinity. K. P. Singha, taking 'Cavda-Brahma' for an accusative, regards it as implying,—'such a man transcends all Vedic rites.' This is precisely the meaning attached to it by the Commentator where it occurs in Verse 7 of Sec. 236 *ante*.—T.

* The inferior order here refered to is, of course, the Cudra order. The Commentator points out that whereas only the three superior orders are regarded to be eligible for the study of Sānkhya and for inculcation of such *Crutis* as 'Tattwamasi' (That thou art), here Vyasa lays down that as regards the Yoga path, *all* are eligible to betake themselves to it.—T.

† 'Fixed senses,' *i. e.*, when the senses are fixed on the mind and the mind on the understanding. 'Ajaram' is immutable or unchanging, or that in which there is no change for the worse (or for the better). By subtility is indicated the incapacity of being apprehended, and by 'mahattaram' is meant infinity.—T.

‡ The 'anu' in 'anudriçya' is explained as 'Guruvachanamanu.' This

SECTION CCXLI.

"'Cuka said,—The declarations of the Vedas are twofold. They once lay down the command,—Do all acts.—They also indicate (the reverse, saying),—Give up acts.—I ask,—Whither do persons go by the aid of Knowledge and whither by the aid of acts?*[1] I desire to hear this. Do tell me this. Indeed, these declarations about knowledge and acts are dissimilar and even contradictory.[2]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed, the son of Parāçara said these words unto his son:—I shall expound to thee the two paths, *viz.*, the destructible and the indestructible, depending respectively upon acts and knowledge. Listen with concentrated attention, O child, to me as I tell thee the place that is reached by one with the aid of knowledge, and that other place which is reached with the aid of acts. The difference between these two places is as great as the limitless sky.[3-4] The question that thou hast asked me has given me as much pain as an atheistic discourse gives to a man of faith.[5] These are the two paths upon which the Vedas are established: the duties (acts) indicated by *Pravritti*, and those based on *Nivritti* that have been treated of so excellently.†[6] By acts a living creature is destroyed. By knowledge, however, he becomes emancipated. For this reason, Yogins who behold the other side of the ocean of life never betake themselves to acts.[7] Through acts one is forced to take rebirth, after death, with a body composed of the six and ten ingredients. Through knowledge, however, one becomes transformed into that which is Eternal, Un-

---

seems to be the true meaning, otherwise 'avekshya' would be pleonastic, 'ābhutagatim' is 'bhutasaṁplavaparyantam,' *i. e*, till the destruction of all beings. 'Imam' is 'çāstraprasiddham.'—T.

* The Vedas proclaim the efficacy of both acts and knowledge. Acts are not laid down for those that have knowledge.—T.

† 'Subhāshitah' is explained by the Commentator as 'ayam tu paramo dharmah yat yogena ātma darçanam.'—T.

manifest, and Immutable.[8] One class of persons, that are however of little intelligence, applaud acts. In consequence of this they have to assume bodies (one after another) ceaselessly.[9] Those men whose perceptions are keen in respect of duties and who have attained to that high understanding (which leads to knowledge), never applaud acts even as persons that depend for their drinking water upon the supply of streams never applaud wells and tanks.[10] The fruit that one obtains of acts consists of pleasure and pain, of existence and non-existence. By knowledge one attains to that whither there is no occasion for grief;[11] whither one becomes freed from both birth and death; whither one is not subject to decrepitude; whither one transcends the state of conscious existence;*[12] whither is *Brahma* which is Supreme, Unmanifest, immutable, ever-existent, imperceptible, above the reach of pain, immortal, and transcending destruction;[13] whither all become freed from the influence of all pairs opposites (like pleasure and pain, &c.), as also of wish or purpose.† Reaching that stage, they cast equal eyes on everything, become universal friends and devoted to the good of all creatures. There is a wide gulf, O son, between one devoted to knowledge and one devoted to acts.[14] Know that the man of knowledge, without undergoing destruction, remains existent for ever like the moon on the last day of the dark fortnight existing in a subtile (but undestroyed) form.[15] The great *Rishi* (Yājnavalkya in Vrihadāranyaka) has said this more elaborately. As regards the man devoted to acts, his nature may be inferred from beholding the new-born moon which appears like a bent thread in the firmament.‡[16] Know, O son, that the person of acts takes rebirth with a body with eleven entities, for its ingredients, that are the

---

* 'Na vartate' does not mean 'annihilated,' but, as the Commentator explains, 'aham asmi iti na jānāti ātmānam.'—T.

† 'Mānasena karmanā' is explained by the Commentator as 'sankalpena.'—T.

‡ The meaning is this: the man of acts is like the new-born moon, *i. e.*, subject to growth and decay.—T.

results of modification, and with a subtile form that represents a total of six and ten.*[17] The deity who takes refuge in that (material) form, like a drop of water on a lotus leaf, should be known as *Kshetrajna* (Soul), which is Eternal, and which succeeds by Yoga in transcending both the mind and the understanding.†[18] Tamas, Rajas, and Sattwa are the attributes of the Understanding. The understanding is the attribute of the individual soul residing within the body. The individual soul, in its turn, comes from the Supreme Soul.‡[19] The body with the soul is said to be the attribute of *jiva*. It is *jiva* that acts and causes all bodies to live. He who has created the seven worlds is said by those that are acquainted with what is *Kshetra* (and what is Kshetrajna) to be above *jiva*.—' "[20]

SECTION CCXLII.

"'Cuka said,—I have now understood that there are two kinds of creation, *viz.*, one commencing with *kshara*, (which is universal), and which is from the (universal) Soul. The other, consisting of the senses with their objects, is traceable to the puissance of the Understanding. This last transcends the other and is regarded to be the foremost.§[1] I desire,

---

* This has been explained in a previous Section.—T.

† The Soul resides in the body without partaking any of the attributes of the body. It is, therefore, likened to a drop of water on a lotus leaf, which, though on the leaf, is not yet attached to it, insomuch that it may go off without at all soaking or drenching any part of the leaf. 'Yogajitātmakam' is 'yogena jito niruddha ātmā chittam yena tam,' as explained by the Commentator.—T.

‡ Literally, 'Tamas and Rajas and Sattwa have the attribute of Jiva for their essence.' The particular attribute of Jiva here referred to is the 'Jnānamaya kosha.' Jiva, again, is an accident of the Soul. The Soul comes from the Supreme Soul. Thus the chain of existence is traced to the Supreme Soul. In Verse 20 again it is said that the body, which by itself is inanimate, when it exists with the Soul, is an accident of Jiva as uninvested with attributes.—T.

§ I follow Nilakantha substantially in his interpretation of this verse. Two kinds of creation are here referred to as those of which

however, to once more hear of that course of righteousness which runs in this world, regulated by the virtue of Time and according to which all good men frame their conduct.*[2] In the Vedas there are both kinds of declarations, *viz.*, do acts and avoid acts. How shall I succeed in ascertaining the propriety of this or that? It behooveth thee to expound this clearly.†[3] Having obtained, through thy instructions, a thorough knowledge of the course of conduct of human beings, having purified myself by the practice of only righteousness, and having cleansed my understanding, I shall, after casting off my body, behold the indestructible Soul.‡[4]—

" 'Vyāsa said,—The course of conduct that was first established by Brahman himself was duly observed by the wise and pious persons of old, *viz.*, the great *Rishis* of ancient times.[5] The great *Rishis* conquer all the worlds by the practice of Brahmacharyya. Seeking all things that are good for himself by fixing the mind on the understand-

---

Vyāsa has spoken in the previous Sections. The first is 'Ksharāt prabhriti yah sargah,' meaning that creation which consists of the four and twenty entities commencing with 'Kshara' or Prakriti. The other creation, consisting of the senses with their objects, represents 'buddhaiçwaryya' or the puissance of the 'buddhi,' these being all 'buddhikalpitāh.' This second creation is also 'atisargah,' which means, according to the Commentator, 'utkrishtah' and which is also 'pradhānah' or foremost, the reason being 'bandhakatwam' or its power to bind all individuals. I take 'atisargah' to mean 'derivative creation,' the second kind of creation being derived from or based upon the other, or (as I have put it in the text) transcends or overlies the other.—T.

* It is explained in previous Sections how the course of righteousness is regulated by the character of the particular Yuga that sets in.—T.

† Vyāsa has already exnlained the character of the two apparently hostile declarations. The meaning of Cuka's question, therefore, is that if the two declarations are only apparently hostile,—if, as explained in the Gitā, they are identical,—how is that identity to be clearly ascertained? The fact is, Cuka wishes his sire to explain the topic more clearly.—T.

‡ 'The course of conduct of human beings,' *i. e.*, the distinctions between right and wrong. 'Vimuktātmā' is taken by the Commentator to imply 'taktadehah.' The second line may also mean 'having cast off (by Yoga) the consciousness of body, I shall behold my own Soul.'—T.

ing,*[6] practising severe austerities by residing in the forest and subsisting on fruit and roots, by treading on sacred spots, by practising universal benevolence,[7] and by going on his rounds of mendicancy at the proper time to the huts of forest recluses when these become smokeless and the sound of the husking rod is hushed, a person succeeds in attaining to *Brahma*.†[8] Abstaining from flattery and from bowing thy head to others, and avoiding both good and evil, live thou in the forest by thyself, appeasing hunger by any means that comes by the way.—[9]

" 'Cuka said,—The declarations of the Vedas (already referred to in respect of acts) are, in the opinion of the vulgar, contradictory. Whether this is authoritative or that is so, when there is this conflict, how can they be said to be scriptural ?‡[10] I desire to hear this: how can both be regarded as authoritative ? How, indeed, can Emancipation be obtained without violating the ordinance about the obligatory character of acts ?[11]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed, the son of Gandhavati, *viz.*, the *Rishi*, applauding these words of his son possessed of immeasurable energy, replied unto him, saying the following.[12]

" 'Vyāsa said,—One that is a Brahmachārin, one that leads a life of domesticity, one that is a forest recluse, and one that leads a life of (religious) mendicancy, all reach the same high end by duly observing the duties of their res-

---

* I do not follow the Commentator in his interpretation of this line.—T.

† 'When the huts become smokeless,' *i. e.*, when the cooking and the eating of the inmates are over. 'When the sound of the husking rod is hushed,' *i. e.*, when the pestle for cleaning rice no longer works, and consequently when the inmates are not likely to be able to give much to the mendicant.—T.

‡ There is an apparent conflict between the two declarations. If both are authoritative, they cannot be regarded to be scriptural declarations in consequence of their conflict. If one is so and the other not so, the scriptural character of the latter at least is lost. The scriptures cannot but be certain and free from fault. How then (the question proceeds) is the scriptural character of both to be maintained ?—T.

pective modes of life.[13] Or, if one and the same person, freed from desire and aversion, practises (one after another) all these four modes of life according to the ordinances that have been laid down, he is certainly fitted (by such conduct) to understand *Brahma*.[14] The four modes of life constitute a ladder or flight of steps. That flight is attached to *Brahma*. By ascending that flight one succeeds in reaching the region of *Brahma*.[15] For the fourth part of his life, the Brahmachārin, conversant with the distinctions of duty and freed from malice, should live with his preceptor or his preceptor's son.[16] While residing in the preceptor's house, he should go to bed after the preceptor has gone to his, and rise therefrom before the preceptor rises from his.* All such acts again as should be done by the disciple, as also those which should be done by a menial servant,[17] should be accomplished by him. Finishing these, he should humbly take his stand by the side of the preceptor. Skilled in every kind of work, he should conduct himself like a menial servant, doing every act for his preceptor.[18] Having accomplished all acts (without leaving any portion undone), he should study, sitting at the feet of his preceptor, with eager desire to learn. He should always behave with simplicity, avoid evil speech, and take lessons only when his preceptor invites him for it.†[19] Become pure in body and mind, and acquiring cleverness and other desirable virtues, he should now and then speak what is agreeable. Subduing his senses, he should look at his preceptor without eyes of longing curiosity.‡[20] He should never eat before his preceptor has

---

* The Burdwan translator makes a ridiculous blunder in rendering 'Jaghanyaçāyi,' which he takes to mean 'sleeping on a wretched bed.' 'Jaghanya' implies, here as elsewhere, subsequence in point of time.—T.

† Both the Vernacular translators have misunderstood the last part of the second line. It does not mean that the disciple should approach the preceptor when summoned, implying that he should be prompt to answer the summons, but that he should not disturb his preceptor by clamouring for lessons or instruction. He should go to his preceptor for taking lessons only when his preceptor summons him for it.—T.

‡ Meaning, he should cast submissive or humble glances instead of staring boldly or rudely.—T.

eaten; never drink before his preceptor has drunk; never sit down before his preceptor has sat down; and never go to bed before his preceptor has gone to bed.[21] He should gently touch his preceptor's feet with upturned palms, the right foot with the right hand and the left foot with the left.[22] Reverentially saluting the preceptor, he should say unto him:—O illustrious one, teach me! I shall accomplish this (work), O illustrious one! This (other work) I have already accomplished! O regenerate one, I am ready to accomplish whatever else thy reverend self may be pleased to command![23]—Having said all this, and having duly offered himself unto him (thus), he should accomplish whatever acts of his preceptor wait for accomplishment, and having completed them inform the preceptor once more of their completion.[24] Whatever scents or tastes the Brahmachārin may abstain from while actually leading a life of Brahmacharyya may be used by him after his return from the preceptor's abode. This is consistent with the ordinance.[25] Whatever observances have been elaborately laid down for Brahmachārins (in the scriptures) should all be regularly practised by him. He should, again, be always near his preceptor (ready within call).[26] Having contributed to his preceptor's gratification in this way to the best of his powers, the disciple should, from that mode of life, pass into the others (one after another) and practise the duties of each.[27] Having (thus) passed a fourth part of his life in the study of the Vedas, and observance of vows and fasts, and having given the preceptor the (final) fee, the disciple should, according to the ordinance, take his leave and return home (for entering into a life of domesticity.*[28] Then, having taken spouses, obtaining them in the ways indicated in the ordinances, and having carefully established the domestic fire, he

* Learning was never sold in this country in ancient times. The final fee is not a return for the services of the preceptor but a token of gratitude from the pupil. Its value depended upon the ability of the disciple, though there are stories in the scriptures of disciples coming to grief on account of their persistent forwardness in pressing the acceptance of this fee. *Vide* the story of Gālava in the Udyoga Parvan.—T.

should, observant all the while of vows and fasts, become a house-holder and pass the second period of life.—' "[29]

SECTION CCXLIII.

" 'Vyāsa said,—'Observant of meritorious vows, the householder, for the second period of his life, should dwell in his house, having taken spouses according to the ways indicated in the ordinance and having established a fire (of his own).[1] As regards the domestic mode of life, four kinds of conduct have been laid down by the learned. The first consists of keeping a store of grain sufficient to last for three years. The second consists of keeping a store to last for one year.[2] The third consists of providing for the day without thinking of the morrow. The fourth consists of collecting grain after the manner of the pigeon.* Of these, each succeeding one is superior in point of merit to that which precedes it, according to what has been laid down in the scriptures.†[3] A householder observing the first kind of conduct may practise all the six well-known duties (*viz.*, sacrifice on his own account, sacrifice on that of others, teaching, learning, making gifts, and accepting gifts). He who observes the second kind of conduct should practise three only of these duties (*viz.*, learning, giving, and taking). He who observes the third kind of conduct should practise only two of the duties of domesticity (*viz.*, learning and giving). The householder practising the fourth kind of domesticity should observe only one duty (*viz.*, learning the scriptures).[4] The duties of the householder are all said to be exceedingly meritorious. The householder should never cook any food for only his own use; nor should he slaughter animals (for

---

* The fourth kind of conduct, called 'kāpoti,' is also called 'unccha.' It consists of collecting such seeds of grain as have fallen down from the ears and as have been abandoned by the reapers.—T.

† Thus the second is more meritorious than the first, the third than the second, and the fourth than the third. The fourth or last, therefore, is the first in point of merit.—T.

food) except in sacrifices.*[5] If it be an animal which the householder desires to kill (for food), or if it be a tree which he wishes to cut down (for fuel), he should do either act according to the ritual laid down in the *Yajushes* for that much is due to both animate and inanimate existences. The householder should never sleep during the day, or during the first part of the night, or during the last part thereof.[6] He should never eat twice between morning and evening, and should never summon his wife to bed except in her season. In his house, no Brāhmana should be suffered to remain unfed or unworshipped.[7] He should always worship such guests as are presenters of sacrificial offerings, as are cleansed by Vedic lore and observance of excellent vows, as are high-born and conversant with the scriptures,[8] as are observers of the duties of their own order, as are self-restrained, mindful of all religious acts, and devoted to penances. The scriptures ordain that what is offered to the deities and the *Pitris* in sacrifices and religious rites is meant for the service of guests like these.[9] In this mode of life the scriptures ordain that a share of the food (that is cooked) should be given unto every creature (irrespective of his birth or character), unto one, that is, who for the sake of show keeps his nails and beard, unto one who from pride displays what his own (religious) practices are, unto one who has improperly abandoned his sacred fire, and even unto one who has injured his preceptor. One leading a domestic mode of life should give (food) unto Brahmachārins and Sanyāsins.[10-11] The house-holder should every day become an eater of *Vighasa*, and should every day eat *amrita*. Mixed with clarified butter, the remains of the food that is offered in sacrifices constitute *amrita*.[12] That householder who eats after having fed (all relatives and)

* It is said that the householder who cooks must give a share of the cooked food to a Brahmachārin or Yati or any one who comes as a guest. If he does not do it but eats the whole of what has been cooked, he is regarded as eating what belongs to a Brāhmana. This, of course, is a high sin.—T.

servants is said to eat *Vighasa*. The food that remains after the servants have been fed is called *Vighasa*, and that which is left after the presentation of sacrificial offerings is called *amrita*.[13] One leading a domestic mode of life should be content with his own wedded wife. He should be self-restrained. He should avoid malice and subdue his senses.[14] He should never quarrel with his *Ritwik*, *Purohita*, and preceptor, with his maternal uncle and guests and dependants, with the aged and the young in years, with those that are afflicted with diseases, with those that practise as physicians, with kinsmen, relatives, and friends, with his parents, with women that belong to his own paternal family, with his brother and son and wife, with his daughter, and with his servants.[15-16] By avoiding disputes with these, the householder becomes cleansed of all sins. By conquering such disputes, he succeeds in conquering all the regions of felicity (in the world hereafter). There is no doubt in this.*[17] The preceptor (if duly reverenced) is able to lead one to the regions of Brahman. The father (if reverenced) can lead to the regions of Prajāpati. The guest is puissant to lead to the region of Indra. The *Ritwij* has power in respect of the regions of the deities. Female relatives of the paternal line have lordship in respect of the regions of the Apsaras, and kinsmen (by blood), in respect of the region of the Viçwedevas.[18] Relatives by marriage and collateral kinsmen have power in respect of the several quarters of the horizon (*viz.*, north, &c.), and the mother and the maternal uncle have power over the Earth. The old, the young, the afflicted, the wasted, have power over the sky.†[19] The eldest brother is like unto the sire himself (to all his younger brothers). The wife and the son are one's own body. One's

---

* The Commentator supposes that these relatives and kinsmen are named because of the great likelihood there is of disputes arising with them on account of shares of inheritance.—T.

† The sense is this: these various persons, if duly reverenced by the householder, are able to send the latter to the places indicated or make him comfortable in those places.—T.

menial servants are one's own shadow. The daughter is an object of great affection.[20] For these reasons a householder endued with learning, observant of duties, and possessed of endurance, should bear without warmth or anxiety of heart every kind of annoyance and even censure from the last-named relatives.[21] No righteous householder should do any act, urged by considerations of wealth. There are three courses of duty in respect of a life of domesticity. Of these, that which comes next (in the order of enumeration) is more meritorious than the preceding one.*[22] As regards the four (principal) modes of life also, the same rule of merit applies, *viz.*, the one that comes after is superior to the one preceding it. (Accordingly, domesticity is superior to Brahmacharyya, forest life is superior to domesticity, and a life of mendicancy or complete renunciation is superior to a forest life).[23] One desirous of prosperity should accomplish all those duties and rites that have been ordained in the scriptures in respect of those modes.[24] That kingdom grows in prosperity where these highly deserving persons live, *viz.*, those that lead a life of domesticity according to the Kumbhadhānya method, they that lead it according to the Unccha method, and they that lead it according to the Kāpoti method.†[25] That man who cheerfully leads a life of domesticity in the observance of those duties, succeeds in sanctifying ten generations of his ancestors above and ten generations of descendants below.[26] A householder, duly observing the duties of domesticity, obtains an end that yields felicity equal to what occurs in the regions attained by great kings and emperors. Even this is the end that has been ordained for those who have subdued their senses.[27] For all high-souled householders heaven has been ordained. That heaven is equipt with delightful cars for each (moving at

---

* *Vide* verses 2 and 3 of this Section. Of the four courses, the first or 'Kuçaladhānya' is left out here. The three others, of course, are the 'Kumbhadhānya,' the 'Açwastana' (otherwise called 'Uncchaçila),' and the 'Kāpoti.' The Burdwan translator makes a blunder in enumerating the three kinds of domesticity here referred to.—T.

† The Burdwan version of this Verse is incorrect.—T.

the will of the rider). Even that is the delightful heaven indicated in the Vedas.[28] For all householders of restrained souls, the regions of heaven constitute the high reward.[29] The Self-born Brahman ordained that the domestic mode of life should be the productive cause of heaven. And since it has been so ordained, a person, by gradually attaining to the second mode of life, obtains happiness and respect in heaven.[30] After this comes that high and superior mode of life, called the third, for those that are desirous of casting off their bodies. Superior to that of householders, that is the life of forest recluses,—of those, that is, who waste their bodies (by diverse kinds of austerities) into skeletons overlaid with dried skins. Listen as I discourse to thee upon it !—' "[31]

SECTION CCXLIV.

"Bhishma said,—'Thou hast been told what the duties of domesticity are as ordained by the wise. Listen now, O Yudhishthira, to what those duties are that have been next spoken of.[1] Gradually abandoning the domestic mode, one should enter the third mode which is excellent. It is the mode that belongs to persons who living with their wives afflict themselves by means of austerities. It is the mode practised by those that live as forest recluses.[2] Blessed be thou, O son, listen to the duties observed by those that lead this mode of life in which occur the practices of all men and all modes of life. Listen, indeed, to the duties of those that are denizens of sacred spots and that have betaken to this mode after proper deliberation !'[3]

" 'Vyāsa said,—When the householder beholds wrinkles on his body and white hair on his head, and children of his children, he should then retire into the forest.[4] The third part of his life he should pass in the observance of the *Vānaprastha* mode. He should attend to those fires to which he had attended while a householder. Desirous of sacrificing, he should also adore the deities (according to the rituals ordained).[5] Observant of vows and abstemious in

diet, he should eat only once, the time thereof being the sixth part of the day. He should be always heedful. Attending to his fires, he should keep some kine, waiting upon them dutifully.* He should attend to all the rituals of a sacrifice.[6] He should live upon rice growing indegenously, upon wheat growing under similar circumstances, upon grain of other kinds, growing wildly (and belonging to none). He should eat what remains after feeding guests. In this the third mode of life, he should present offerings of clarified butter in the five well-known Sacrifices.†[7] Four kinds or courses of conduct have been laid down for observance in the Vānaprastha mode of life. Some collect only what is needed for the day. Some collect stores to last for a month.[8] Some store grain and other necessaries sufficient to last for twelve years. Forest recluses may act in these ways for worshipping guests and performing sacrifices.[9] They should during the season of rains, expose themselves to rain and betake themselves to water during the autumn. During the summer they should sit in the midst of four fires with the sun burning overhead. Throughout the year, however, they should be abstemious in diet.‡[10] They sit and sleep on the bare earth. They stand on only their toes. They content themselves with the bare earth and with small mats of grass (owning no other furniture for seat or bed). They perform their ablutions morning, noon, and evening (preparatory to sacrifices).[11] Some amongst them use only their teeth for cleaning grain. Others use only stones for that purpose.$ Some

---

* The cow is a sacred animal and there is merit in feeding and properly tending a cow. Forest recluses kept kine for merit as also for *homa* or sacrifice with the *ghee* obtained from them. The story of Vaçistha's cow is well-known.—T.

† These five are Agnihotra, Darçapurnamāshi, Chaturmāsya, Pacu-sacrifice, and Soma-sacrifice.—T.

‡ The Burdwan translator misunderstands the word 'abhrāvakācāh.' It is a well-known word occurring in almost every lexicon. Wilson explains it correctly.—T.

$ *I. e.*, they do not use a regular husking or cleaning apparatus for cleaning the grain they use as food.—T.

amongst them drink, only during the lighted fortnight, the gruel of wheat (or other grain) boiled very lightly.*[12] Others drink similar gruel only during the dark fortnight. Some eat what only comes by the way (without seeking to obtain it). Some, adopting rigid vows, live upon only roots, some upon only fruits, some upon only flowers, duly observing the method followed by the Vaikhānashas.[13] These and diverse other observances are adopted by those men of wisdom and piety. The fourth is (the mode called Renunciation) based upon the Upanishads.[14] The duties laid down for it may be observed in all the modes of life equally. This mode differing from the others comes *after* domesticity and forest life.[15] In this very Yuga, O son, many learned Brāhmanas conversant with the truths of all things, have been known to observe this mode. Agastya, the seven *Rishis* (*viz.*, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Vaçishtha, Nārada, and Kratu), Madhucchandas, Aghamarshana,[16] Sānkriti, Sudivātandi who lived whithersoever he pleased and was content to take what came (without ever seeking for anything),† Ahoviryya, Kāvya, Tāndya, the learned Medhātithi,[17] Karmanirvāka of mighty energy, and Cunyapāla who had exerted himself greatly (for acquiring ascetic puissance), were the authors of this course of duties, and themselves observing them have all proceeded to heaven.[18] Many great *Rishis*, O son, who had the puissance to behold immediately the fruits of their ascetic merit,‡ those numerous ascetics who are known by the name of Yāyāvaras, many *Rishis* of very austere penances and possessed of accurate knowledge in respect of distinctions of duty,[19] and many other Brāhmanas too numerous to mention, adopted the forest

---

* So that a very small portion of the grain comes out or mixes with the water.—T.

† *I. e.*, who had no fixed residence and who never sought with any effort for the necessaries of life. The Burdwan translator takes both 'yathāvāsah' and 'akritācramah' for two independent names of *Rishis* instead of taking them as adjectives of Sudivātandi.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, whose wishes were immediately crowned with success, in respect of both blessings and curses, &c.—T.

mode of life. The Vaikhānasas, the Vālikhilyas, the Saikatas,[20] all of whom were devoted to austere penances,* who were steadfast in virtue, who had subdued their senses, and who used to behold the fruits of their penances immediately, adopted this mode of life and finally ascended to heaven.[21] Freed from fear and not counted among the stars and planets, these have become visible in the firmament as luminous bodies.† When the fourth or last part of life is reached, and when one is weakened by decrepitude and afflicted by disease, one should abandon the forest mode of life (for the fourth mode called Renunciation). Performing a sacrifice that is capable of being completed in a single day and in which the *Dakshinā* should be everything of which he may he possessed,[22-23] he should himself perform his own *Çrāddha.* Withdrawn from every other object, he should devote himself to his own self, taking pleasure in himself, and resting also on his own self.‡ He should establish all his sacrificial fires (thenceforth) upon his own self, and give up all kinds of ties and attachments.[24] (In case he fails to attain to complete Renunciation) he should always perform such sacrifices and rites as are completed in a single day.$ When, however, from performance of the (ordinary) sacrifices of sacrificers, the Sacrifice in Self proceeds,[25] then (may he discontinue all ordinary sacrifices, and) unto the three fires duly sacrifice in his own Self for the sake of his Emancipation.¶ Without finding fault with his food he should

---

* 'Nirānandāh' is explained as 'krichchrachāndrāyanādiparatwāt.'—

† 'Anakshtrāh' is explained by the Commentator as 'different from stars and planets but still freed from darkness' and, therefore, effulgent or luminous. 'Anādhrishyāh' is fearless.—T.

‡ 'Atmayāji' is explained as one who performs his own *çrāddha* or obsequial rites. The Sandhi in the next word is ārsha; 'ātmakrida' is one who does not take a pleasure in wife or children but whose source of pleasure is his own self; Similarly, 'ātmācraya' is one who without depending upon kings or others takes refuge in himself.—T.

$ Such sacrifices, for example, as those called *Brahma-yajna*, &c —T

¶ 'Yājinām yajna' is the sacrifice of ordinary sacrifices, *i. e.*, the usual sacrifices consisting of tangible offerings unto the deities, and

eat five or six mouthfuls, offering them duly unto the five vital airs uttering (every time the well-known) *mantras* of the Yajurveda.*[26] Engaged in the observance of austerities while leading the life of a forest recluse, one should shave off one's hair and bristles and pare off one's nails, and having cleansed oneself by acts, pass into the fourth and last mode of life that is fraught with great holiness.†[27] That regenerate person who enters the fourth mode of life, giving pledges of assurance unto all creatures, succeeds in earning many regions of blazing effulgence hereafter and ultimately attains to the Infinite.‡[28] Of excellent disposition and conduct, with sins all washed off, the person who is conveasant with his own self never desires to do any act for either this or the other world. Divested of wrath, freed from error, without anxiety and without friendship, such a person lives in this world like one totally uninterested in its concerns.[29] One (in the observance of Sannyāsa) should not feel reluctance in discharging the duties included in *Yama*

---

performed with the aid of Vedic *mantras*. The ablative implies cause. 'Atmani ijyā' is sacrifice in Self, *i. e.*, Yoga. The meaning of the first line, therefore, is 'when through performance of ordinary sacrifices and rites, the mind becomes pure and the sacrificer is enabled to practise Yoga.' 'Unto the three fires he should duly sacrifice in his own self' means, of course, that without any longer adoring his fires by visible rites and actual recitation of *mantras*, he should, for the sake of Emancipation, worship in his own self or seek the extinction of mind and understanding in Yoga.—T.

* To this day every orthodox Brāhmana or Kshatriya or Vaicya never eats without offering at the outset five small moutfuls unto the five vital breaths, *viz.*, Prāna, Apāna, Samāna, Udāna, and Vyāna.—T.

† 'Vāpya' or Vāpayitwā means causing or obtaining a shave. The Burdwan translator makes a blunder by supposing it to mean 'parivyāpta.' The Sannyāsa mode of life, it is well-known, can never be entered without a previous shave. K. P. Singha gives the correct version.—T.

‡ It is difficult to render the word 'abhaya' into English. 'To give *abhaya* to all creatures' is to pledge oneself to a life of total harmlessness, or to practise universal compassion or benevolence. Abstention from every kind of injury is the great duty of the fourth mode of life.—T.

and those also that walk behind them (and are included in *niyama*). Such a one should with energy live according to the ordinances in respect of his own mode, and throw away Vedic study and the sacred thread that is indicative of the order of his birth. Devoted to righteousness and with his senses under complete control, such a one, possessed of knowledge of self, attains undoubtedly to the end for which he strives.*[30] After the third is the fourth mode of life. It is very superior, and fraught with numerous high virtues. It transcends in point of merit the three other modes of life. It is said to occupy the very highest place. Listen to me as I discourse upon the duties that belong to that mode which is pre-eminent and which is the high refuge of all !—' "[31]

Section CCXLV.

" 'Cuka said,—While living in the due observance o the duties of the forest mode of life, how should one, who seeks to attain to That which is the highest object of knowledge, set one's soul on Yoga according to the best of one's power ?[1]—

" 'Vyāsa said,—Having acquired purity (of conduct and body) by the practice of the first two modes of life, *viz.*,

---

* The duties included in *yama* (as explained by the Commentator) are universal benevolence, truthfulness, faith, Brahmacharyya, and freedom from attachment. Those that are included in *niyama* are purity (of body and mind), contentment, study of the Vedas, meditation on the Supreme, &c. 'Swacāstra sutra' means the 'sutras' of his own 'cāstras,' *i. e.*, the duties laid down in respect of that Sannyāsa which he has adopted ; the chief of which is enquiry after the Soul or Self ; 'Bhutimanta' implies Vedic recitation and the sacred thread. He who has taken to Sannyāsa should display energy in these, *i. e.*, persistently enquire after the Soul and throw away all caste-marks, and other indications. 'The desirable end' is, of course, gradual Emancipation or that obtained at once. Following the Commentator, K. P. Singha gives the correct version. The Burdwan version, containing the very words of the gloss, is based upon a complete misconception of their meaning.—T.

Brahmacharyya and domesticity, one should, after that, set one's soul on Yoga in the third mode of life. Listen now with concentrated attention to what should be done for attaining to the highest object of acquisition !*[2] Having subdued all faults of the mind or heart by easy means in the practice of the first three modes of life (*viz.*, pupilage, domesticity, and seclusion), one should pass into the most excellent and the most eminent of all the modes, *viz.*, Sannyāsa or Renunciation.[3] Do thou then pass thy days, having acquired that purity. Listen also to me. One should, alone and without anybody to assist him or bear him company, practise Yoga for attaining to success (in respect of one's highest object of acquisition).[4] One who practises Yoga without companionship, who beholds everything as a repetition of his own self, and who never discards anything (in consequence of all things being pervaded by the Universal Soul), never falls away from Emancipation. Without keeping the sacrificial fires and without a fixed habitation, such a person should enter a village for only begging his food.[5] He should provide himself for the day without storing for the morrow. He should betake himself to penances, with heart fixed on the Supreme.† Eating little and that even under proper regulations, he should not eat more than once a day.[6] The other indications of a (religious) mendicant are the human skull, shelter under trees, rags for wearing, solitude unbroken by the companionship of any one, and indifference to all creatures.‡[7] That person into

---

* The Commentator correctly explains that by the first line of this Verse, Vyāsa answers his son's question. The two modes referred to are the first and the second, and *not* the second and the third as K. P. Singha in his Vernacular version wrongly states. Having answered the question, the speaker (in the second line) proceeds to indicate the simple or straight path for reaching the highest object of man's endeavour, *viz.* *Paramārtham* or *Brahma*.—T.

† 'Bhāva samāhitah' is explained as 'chitta-samādhānavān.'—T.

‡ The skull is to be used as a drinking vessel. 'Kuchela,' which I render 'rags,' is supposed by the Commentator to signify reddish or brown cloth which has, from age, lost its color.—T.

whom words enter like affrighted elephants into a well, and from whom they never come back to the speaker, is fit to lead this mode of life which has Emancipation for its object.*[8] The mendicant (or Renouncer) should never take note of the evil acts of any person. He should never hear what is said in dispraise of others. Especially should he avoid speaking evil of a Brāhmana.[9] He should always say only what is agreeable to the Brāhmanas. When anything is said in dispraise (of himself), he should (without answering) remain perfectly silent. Such silence, indeed, is the medical treatment prescribed for him.[10] That person in consequence of whose single self the place he occupies becomes like the eastern sky, and who can make a spot teeming with thousands of men and things appear to himself perfectly solitary or unoccupied, is regarded by the deities to be a true *Brāhmana.*†[11] Him the gods know for a Brāhmana who clads himself with whatever comes by the way, who subsists upon whatever he gets, and who sleeps on whatever spot he finds.[12] Him the gods know for a Brāhmana who is afraid of company as of a snake; of the full measure of gratification (from sweet viands and drinks) as of hell; and of women as of a corpse.‡[13] Him the gods

---

* Elephants, when hurled into a well, become utterly helpless and unable to come out. That person, therefore, into whom words enter like elephants into a well, is he who answers not the evil speeches of others. What is said here is that only a person of such forbearance should betake himself to mendicancy or Sannyāsa.—T.

† I have given a closely literal version of this verse. The Commentator explains that the first line refers to the person who deems himself to be everything and everything to be himself. The second line refers to the same individual who, by Yoga, can withdraw his senses and the mind and consequently make the most populous place appear as totally solitary or unoccupied. This is the Yoga process called *Pratyāhāra* and is described in Section 233 *ante.* The Burdwan translator gives an incorrect version. K. P. Singha follows the Commentator.—T.

‡ 'Suhitya', whence 'sauhitya', means not satiety but the full measure of gratification from eating. The speaker wishes to lay down that a mendicant or renouncer should never take food to the full mea-

know for a Brāhmana who is never glad when honored and never angry when insulted, and who has given assurances of compassion unto all creatures.[14] One in the observance of the last mode of life should not view death with joy. Nor should he view life with joy. He should only wait for his hour like a servant waiting for the behest (of his master).[15] He should purify his heart of all faults. He should purify his speech of all faults. He should cleanse himself of all sins. Destitute as he is of foes, what fear can assail him ?[16] He who fears no creature and whom no creature fears, can have no fear from any quarter, freed as he is from error of every kind.[17] As the foot-prints of all other creatures that move upon legs are engulphed within those of elephants, after the same manner all ranks and conditions are absorbed within Yoga.*[18] After the same manner, every other duty and observance is supposed to be engulphed within the one duty of abstention from injury (to all creatures).† He lives an everlasting life of felicity who avoids injuring other creatures.[19] One who abstains from injury, who casts an equal eye upon all creatures, who is devoted to truth, who is endued with fortitude, who has his senses under control, and who grants protection to all beings, attains to an end that is beyond compare.[20] The

---

sure of gratification. He should eat without completely appeasing his hunger.—T.

* I follow the Commentator in his exposition of 'kaunjara' which he derives as 'kun (earth or the body which is made of earth) jarayati iti kunjarah,' *i. e.*, a Yogin in Samādhi. The sense seems to be that the fruits of Yoga include or absorb the fruits of every other act. The rank and status of Indra himself is absorbed within what is attained to by Yoga. There is no kind of felicity that is not engulphed in the felicity of Emancipation, which Yoga alone can confer.—T.

† The Commentator thinks that by the 'one duty of abstention from injury' is implied the fourth mode of life or Sannyāsa. What is said, therefore, in the first line of 19 is that the observance of the single duty of harmlessness includes that of every other duty ; or, what amounts to the same thing, the fourth mode of life is singly capable of giving merit which all the others may give together.—T.

condition called death succeeds not in transcending such a person who is content with self-knowledge, who is free from fear, and who is divested of desire and expectancy. On the other hand, such a person succeeds in transcending death.[21] Him the gods know for a Brāhmana who is freed from attachments of every kind, who is observant of penances, who lives like space which while holding everything is yet unattached to all things, who has nothing which he calls his own, who leads a life of solitude, and whose is tranquillity of soul.[22] The gods know him for a Brāhmana whose life is for the practice of righteousness, whose righteousness is for the good of them that wait dutifully upon him, and whose days and nights exist only for the acquisition of merit.*[23] The gods know him for a Brāhmana who is freed from desire, who never exerts (for doing such acts as are done by worldly men), who never bends his head unto any one, who never flatters another, and who is free from attachments of every kind.[24] All creatures are pleased with happiness and filled with fear at the prospect of grief. The man of faith, therefore, who should feel distressed at the prospect of filling other creatures with grief, must abstain entirely from acts of every kind.†[25] The gift of assurances of harmlessness unto all creatures transcends in point of merit all other gifts. He who, at the outset, foreswears the religion of injury, succeeds in attaining to Emancipation (in which or) whence is the assurance of harmlessness unto all creatures.‡[26]

---

* 'Haryyartham' means 'for the sake of *Hari*,' *i. e.*, one who takes away merit, implying a disciple or attendant. Some texts read 'Ratyartham,' meaning 'for the happiness (of others).'—T.

† Because all acts are fraught with injury to others. Whether 'acts' be taken in its general sense or in the particular sense of "religious acts," their character is so.—T.

‡ Both the Vernacular translators have completely misunderstood the second line of this Verse. The Commentator correctly explains that 'Tikshnām tanum' means the religion of injury, *i. e*, the religion of sacrifices and acts. 'So' for 'sa' is ārsha ; as also 'anantyam' for 'ānantyam' which, of course, implies 'moksham' or Emancipation. The Commentator correctly supplies 'yatah' after 'āpnoti' and shows

That man who does not pour into his open mouth even the five or six mouthfuls that are laid down for the forest recluse, is said to be the navel of the world, and the refuge of the universe. The head and other limbs, as also the acts good and bad, become possessed by Fire.[27] Such a man, who sacrifices in his own self, makes a libation of his senses and mind into the fire that dwells within the limited space of his own heart. In consequence again of his pouring such a libation into such a fire within his own self, the universe with all creatures including the very gods, becomes gratified.*[28] They who apprehend the *Jiva*-soul that is endued with effulgence, that is enveloped in three cases, that has three attributes for its characteristics, to be *Içwara* partaking of that which is foremost, *viz.*, the nature of the Supreme Soul, become objects of great regard in all the worlds. The very gods with all human beings speak highly of their merits.[29] He who succeeds in beholding in the soul that resides in his own body all the Vedas, space and the other objects of perception, the rituals that occur in the scriptures, all those entities that are comprehensible in sound only, and the superior nature of the Supreme Soul, is sought to be worshipped by the very deities as the foremost of all beings.[30] He who sees in the soul that resides within his body that foremost of beings which is not attached to the Earth, which is immeasurable in even the (measureless) firmament, which is made of gold, which is born of the egg and resides within the egg, which is equipt with many feathers, and which has two wings like a bird, and which is rendered effulgent by many rays of light, is sought to be worshipped by the very

---

that 'prajābhyah' is equivalent 'prajānām.' The last clause of the second line, therefore, means 'sa moksham āpnoti, yatah prajābhyah (or prajānām) abhayam.' The dative, *not* ablative as the Vernacular translators take it, is not bad grammar, although the genetive is more agreeable with usage.—T.

* It is difficult to understand what is really meant by the second line of 27 and the two lines of 28. A tentative version is offered here, following the actual words used in the original.—T.

deities as the foremost of all beings.*[31] The very deities worship him in whose understanding is set the wheel of Time, which is constantly revolving, which knows no decay, which swallows up the period of existence of every creature, which has the six seasons for its naves, which is equipt with two and ten radii consisting of the two and ten months, which has excellent joints, and towards whose gaping mouth proceeds this universe (ready to be devoured).†[32] The Supreme Soul is the capacious unconsciousness of dreamless slumber. That Unconsciousness is the body of the universe. It pervadeth all created things. *Jiva*, occupying a portion of that capacious unconsciousness, gratifies the deities. These last, being gratified, gratify the open mouth of that unconsciousness.‡[33] Endued with effulgence as also with the

* All these expressions apply to the supreme Soul. Immeasurable in the firmament implies that the Supreme Being is vaster than the firmament. 'Made of gold' means, as the Commentator explains, 'Chit having knowledge only for its attribute.' 'Born of the egg,' *i. e.*, belonging to the universe. 'Within the egg' means 'capable of being apprehended in the heart.' 'Equipt with many feathers,' *i. e.*, having many limbs each of which is presided over by a particular deity. The two wings are absence of attachment or complete dissociation from everything, and joy and gladness and aptitude for enjoyment. 'Rendered effulgent by many rays of light,' *i.* e., transformed into a living and active agent by means of eyes, ears, &c.—T.

† The sense is that he who understands the wheel of Time is a person worthy of universal regard. The excellent joints of that wheel are the *parva* days, *viz.*, those sacred lunations on which religious rites are performed.—T.

‡ I give a literal version of Verse 33, following the Commentator as regards the meaning of 'samprasādam.' The sense, however, of the verse is this: *Brahma*, in the previous Sections, has often been spoken of as 'Sushupti' or the unconsciousness of dreamless slumber. The universe flows from *Brahma*. Unconsciousness, therefore, is the cause or origin or body of the universe. That unconsciousness, therefore, pervades all things, *viz.*, gross and subtile. *Jiva*, finding a place within that unconsciousness existing in the form of gross and subtile, gratifies the deities, *prāna* and the senses. These, thus gratified by *jiva*, at last gratify the open mouth of the original unconsciousness that waits to receive or swallow them. All these verses are based upon the figurative ideas that find expression in the Upanishads.—T.

principle of eternity, *Jivá* is without a beginning. It acquires (by following particular paths) infinite regions of eternal happiness. He of whom no creature is afraid has never to fear any creature.[34] He who never does anything censurable and who never censures another, is said to be a truly regenerate person. Such a man succeeds in beholding the Supreme Soul. He whose ignorance has been dispelled and whose sins have been washed away, never enjoys either here or hereafter the happiness that is enjoyed by others (but attains to complete Emancipation).[35] A person in the observance of the fourth mode of life wanders on the Earth like one unconnected with everything. Such a one is freed from wrath and error. Such a one regards a clod of earth and a lump of gold with an equal eye. Such a man never stores anything for his use. Such a one has no friends and foes. Such a one is utterly reckless of praise or blame, and of the agreeable and the disagreeable.—' "[36]

SECTION CCXLVI.

"'Vyāsa said,—The *Jiva*-soul is endued with all those entities that are modifications of Prakriti. These do not know the Soul but the Soul knows them all.[1] Like a good driver proceeding with the aid of strong, well-broken, and high-mettled steeds along the paths he selects, the Soul acts with the aid of these, called the senses, having the mind for their sixth.[2] The objects of the senses are superior to the senses themselves. The mind is superior to those objects. The understanding is superior to the mind. The Soul, also called *Mahat*, is superior to the understanding.[3] Superior to *Mahat* is the Unmanifest (or Prakṛiti). Superior to the Unmanifest is *Brahma*. There is nothing Superior to *Brahma*. That is the highest limit of excellence and the highest goal.[4] The Supreme Soul is concealed in every creature. It is not displayed for ordinary men to behold. Only Yogins with subtile vision behold the Supreme Soul with the aid of their keen and subtile understandings.[5] Merging the senses having the mind for their sixth and all the objects

of the senses into the inner Soul by the aid of the Understanding, and reflecting upon the three states of consciousness, *viz.*, the object thought, the act of thinking, and the thinker,[6] and abstaining by contemplation from every kind of enjoyment, equipping his mind with the knowledge that he is *Brahma's* self, laying aside at the same time all consciousness of puissance, and thereby making his Soul perfectly tranquil, the Yogin obtains that to which immortality inheres.[7] That person, however, who happens to be the slave of all his senses and whose ideas of right and wrong have been confounded, already liable as he is to death, actually meets with death by such surrender of self to (the passions).*[3] Destroying all desires, one should merge the gross Understanding into one's subtile Understanding. Having thus merged the gross into the subtile Understanding, one is sure to become a second Kālanjara mountain.†[9] By purifying his heart, the Yogin transcends both righteousness and its reverse. By purifying his heart and by living in his own true nature, he attains to the highest happiness.‡[10] The indication of that purity of heart (of

* 'Smriti' is memory. One whose 'smriti' is lost means one whose conceptions of right and wrong are confounded. 'Atmanah sampradānena' is 'by the surrender of oneself' to one's own passions or 'Kāmādibhyah' as the Commentator explains.—T.

† 'Chittam' is explained by the Commentator as the gross Understanding, and 'Sattwa' as the subtile Understanding. The Understanding that is concerned with the images brought in by the mind or the senses is called gross; while that which is concerned with ideas about *Brahma* is called subtile. 'Kālanjara' is explained by the Commentator either as standing for the mountain of that name, *i. e.*, irremovable as the mountain so called; or, as one who destroys the effect of Time, *i. e.*, one who subdues Time itself instead of being subdued by that universal conqueror.—T.

‡ The purification here referred to consists in transcending the consciousness of duality. Righteousness should be avoided because of its incapacity to lead to Emancipation which is much higher than heaven. 'Atmani sthitwā' means living in one's real or true nature, *i. e.*, merging everything into the Soul. This is attained when the consciousness of duality is transcended.—T.

which I speak) is that one who has attained to it experiences that state of unconsciousness (with respect of all one's surroundings) which one experiences in dreamless slumber. The Yogin who has attained to that state lives like the steady flame of a lamp that burns in a place where the atmosphere is perfectly still.[11] Becoming abstemious in diet, and having cleansed his heart, that Yogin who applies his Soul to the Soul succeeds in beholding the Soul in the Soul.*[12] This discourse, O son, intended for thy instruction, is the essence of all the Vedas. The truths herein disclosed are incapable of being understood by the aid of inference alone or by that of mere study of the scriptures. One must understand it oneself by the aid of faith.[13] By churning the wealth that is contained in all religious works and in all dicourses based on truth, as also the ten thousand *Richs*, this nectar hath been raised.[14] As butter from curds and fire from wood, even hath this been raised for the sake of my son,—this that constituteth the knowledge of all truly wise men.[15] This discourse, O son, fraught with solid instruction, is intended for delivery unto *Snātakas*.† It should never be imparted to one that is not of tranquil soul, or one that is not self-restrained, or one that hath not undergone penances.[16] It should not be communicated to one that is not conversant with the Vedas, or one that doth not humbly wait upon one's preceptor, or one that is not free from malice, or one that is not possessed of sincerity and candour, or one that is of reckless behaviour.[17] It should never be communicated to one whose intellect hath been consumed by the science of disputation, or one that is vile or low. Unto that person, however, who

---

* 'Atmānam' in the first line is the Jiva-soul, and 'ātmani' is the Supreme Soul. In the second line also, the same distinction is observed between the two words.—T.

† Brāhmanas, who having completed the study of the Vedas have betaken themselves to the domestic mode of life, are so called. Here, probably, the reference is to persons having faith in the Vedas and of pure conduct.—T.

is possessed of fame, or who deserveth applause (for his virtues), or who is of tranquil soul, or possessed of ascetic merit,[18] unto a Brāhmana who is such, unto one's son or dutiful disciple, this discourse containing the very essence of duties should be communicated, but on no account should it be communicated to others.[19] If any person make a gift of the whole Earth with all her treasures, unto one conversant with truth, the latter would still regard the gift of this knowledge to be very much superior to that gift.[20] I shall now discourse to thee on a subject that is a greater mystery than this, a subject that is connected with the Soul, that transcends the ordinary understandings of human beings, that has been beheld by the foremost of *Rishis*, that has been treated in the Upanishads, and that forms the topic of thy inquiry.[21] Tell me what, after this, is in thy mind? Tell me in what thou hast still any doubt? Listen, for here I am, O son, seated before thee! Upon what, indeed, shall I once more speak to thee?—' "[22]

SECTION CCXLVII.

"Cuka said,—'O illustrious one, O foremost of *Rishis*, once again discourse to me on *Adhyātma* more elaborately! Tell me what, indeed, is *Adhyātmā* and whence does it come?*[1]

"'Vyāsa said,—That, O son, which is regarded as *Adhyātmā* with reference to human beings, I shall now mention to thee, and listen to the explanation I give (of *Adhyātma*).[2] Earth, water, light, wind, and space, are the great entities that form the component parts of all creatures, and though really one are yet regarded different like the waves of the ocean (which though identical with respect to their constituent substance are yet counted as different

---

* 'Adhyātma' is topic bearing on the Soul. Here it signifies the seven and twenty usual topics of philosophical discourse, *viz.*, the five organs of action, the five organs of knowledge, the mind and three others called Chitta, &c., the five vital breaths, the five elementary substances, Desire, Acts, and Avidyā.—T.

from one another).[3] Like a tortoise stretching out its limbs and withdrawing them again, the great entities (already named), by dwelling in numberless small forms, undergo transformations (called creation and destruction).[4] All this universe of mobile and immobile objects hath for its component parts these five entities. Everything, in respect of its creation and destruction, is referrible to this fivefold entity.[5] These five entities occur in all existent things. The Creator of all things however, hath made an unequal distribution of those entities (by placing them in different things in different proportions) for serving different ends.*[6]—

" 'Cuka said,—How may one succeed in understanding that unequal distribution (of the five great entities of which thou speakest) in the diverse things of the universe? Which amongst them are the senses and which the attributes? How may this be understood ?[7]—

" 'Vyāsa said,—I shall explain thee this duly one after another. Listen with concentrated attention to the subject as I expound how what I have said actually happens.[8] Sound, the sense of hearing, and all the cavities within the body,—these three—have space for their origin. The vital breaths, the action of the limbs, and touch form the attributes of the wind.[9] Form, eyes, and the digestive fire within the stomach, are originated by light. Taste, tongue, and all the humours,—these three,—are from water.[10] Scent, nose, and the body,—these three,—are the attributes of earth. These then, as I have expounded to thee, are the transformations of the five (great) entities in connection with the senses.[11] Touch is said to be the attribute of the wind; taste of water; form of light. Sound is said to have its origin in space, and scent is said to be the property of earth.[12] Mind, Understanding, and Nature,—these three, —spring from their own previous states, and attaining (at each rebirth) to a position higher than the attributes (which form their respective objects,) do not transcend those attri-

* The second clause of the second line is explained by the Commentator as 'yasmin karmani nimitte sati yat anupaçyati'.—T.

butes.*[13] As the tortoise stretches out its limbs and withdraws them once again within itself, even so the Understanding creates the senses and once again withdraws them into itself†[14] The consciousness of personal identity that arises in respect of that which is above the soles of the feet and below the crow of the head, is principally due to the action of the Understanding.‡[15] It is the understanding that is transformed into the (five) attributes (of form, scent, &c.,) It is the Understanding also that is transformed into the (five) senses with the mind for the sixth. When the Understanding is absent, where are the attributes ?§[16] In man there are five senses. The mind is called the sixth

---

* The grammatical construction is 'Gunebhyah paramāgatāh gunān na ativartante'. The meaning is this : Mind, Understanding, and Nature (or individual disposition of man or animal or vegetable, &c.,) are all due to their own previous states, Nature in particular being the result of the desires of a past state of existence. Such being their origin, they too are due to the five entities named. As regards their functions, it is said that having reached to that which is 'Gunebhyah parama', *i.*, *e.*, 'Crotrādikāryam swrupam', they do not transcend the 'gunas' themselves ; or, in other words, having become endued with the faculty or power of seizing particular attributes (such as scent, form, &c.,) they actually seize or apprehend them.—T.

† In other words, the senses and the mind are nothing but the Understanding displayed in a particular shape or form. The principal function of the mind is to cherish and discard impressions. The Understanding is 'niçchayātmikā' or engaged in arriving at certainty of conclusions.—T.

‡ Everything above the soles of the feet and below the crown of the head, is, of course, the whole body or self or the person. 'Asmin kritye' is, 'aham iti yat darçanam tasmin karaniye.' There can be no doubt that the Commentator correctly explains the meaning.—T.

§ 'Neniyate' is, as the Commentator explains, an instance of 'karmakartari prayogah'. Hence, the meaning is that both the attributes of form &c., and the senses with the mind which apprehend those attributes, are the Understanding itself, so that when the Understanding is not, these also are not. The object of this Verse is to establish the identity of the Understanding with the senses, the mind, and the attributes which the senses and the mind apprehend. Both the Vernacular versions are inaccurate.—T.

(sense). The Understanding is called the seventh. The Soul is the eighth.[17] The eyes (and the other senses) are for only receiving impressions of form (and scent &c.). The mind exists for doubting (the accuracy of those impressions). The Understanding settles those doubts. The Soul is said to only witness every operation without mingling with them.[18] Rajas, Tamas, and Sattwa,—these three,—arise from their own counterparts. These exist equally in all creatures (*viz.*, the deities and human beings, &c.). These are called attributes and should be known by the actions they induce.*[19] As regards those actions, all such states which one becomes conscious of in oneself as united with cheerfulness or joy and which are tranquil and pure, should be known as due to the attribute of Sattwa.[20] All such states in either the body or the mind, as are united with sorrow, should be regarded as due to the influence of the attribute called Rajas.[21] All such states again as exist with stupifaction (of the senses, the mind or the understanding) whose cause is unascertainable, and which are incomprehensible (by either reason or inward light), should be known as ascribable to the action of Tamas.[22] Delight, cheerfulness, joy, equanimity, contentment of heart, due to any known cause or arising otherwise, are all effects of the attribute of Sattwa.[23] Pride, untruthfulness of speech, cupidity, stupifaction, vindictiveness, whether arising from any known cause or otherwise, are indications of the quality of Rajas.[24] Stupifaction of judgment, heedlessness, sleep, lathargy, and indolence, from whatever cause these may arise, are to be known as indications of the quality of Tamas.†—' "[25]

---

* The three attributes of Rajas, Tamas, and Sattwa do not spring from any different thing but from their own counterparts existing in a previous state of existence or life. They arise from their respective states as they had existed with the *Chitta* or Understanding in a previous life. Hence *Chitta*, and the objects of the senses and the senses also arising from it, are all affected by these three Gunas.—T.

† The last word in the first line is not *prabodhitā* but *aprabodhitā*.—T.

Section CCXLVIII.

"'Vyāsa said,—The mind creates (within itself) numerous ideas (of objects or existent things). The Understanding settles which is which. The heart discriminates which is agreeable and which disagreeable. These are the three forces that impel to acts.[1] The objects of the senses are superior to the senses. The mind is superior to those objects. The Understanding is superior to mind. The Soul is regarded as superior to Understanding.[2] (As regards the ordinary purposes of man) the Understanding is his Soul. When the Understanding, of its own motion, forms ideas (of objects) within itself, it then comes to be called Mind.*[3] In consequence of the senses being different from one another (both in respect of their objects and the manner of their operation), the Understanding (which is one and the same) presents different aspects in consequence of its different modifications. When it hears, it becomes the organ of hearing, and when it touches, it becomes the organ of touch.[4] Similarly, when it sees, it becomes the organ of vision, and when it tastes, it becomes the organ of taste, and when it smells, it becomes the organ of scent. It is the Understanding that appears under different guises (for different functions) by modification.[5] It is these modifications of the Understanding that are called the senses. Over them is placed as their presiding chief (or overseer) the invisible Soul. Residing in the body, the Understanding exists in the three states (of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas).[6] Sometimes it obtains cheerfulness, sometimes it gives way to grief; and sometimes its condition becomes such that it is united with

---

* In the original, the word 'ātman' is used in various senses. Sometimes it stands for the Jiva-soul, sometimes for the Supreme Soul, sometimes for essence or the principal portion of anything, sometimes for one's own self, and sometimes even for the person or body. It is not difficult to distinguish in which sense the word is used (in what place.—T.

neither cheerfulness nor grief.[7] The Understanding, however, whose chief function (as already said) is to create entities, transcends those three states even as the ocean, that lord of rivers, prevails against the mighty currents of the rivers that fall into it.*[8] When the Understanding desires for anything, it comes to be called by the name of Mind. The senses, again, though (apparently different) should all be taken as included within the Understanding.[9] The senses, which are engaged in bearing impressions of form, scent, &c., should all be subdued.†[10] When a particular sense becomes subservient to the Understanding, the latter, though in reality not different (from that sense), enters the Mind in the form of existent things. Even this is what happens with the senses one after another (separately and not simultaneously) with reference to the ideas that are said to be apprehended by them‡[11] All the three states that exist, (*viz.*, Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas), inhere to these three (*viz.*, Mind, Understanding, and Consciousness), and like the spokes of a car-wheel acting in consequence of their attach-

---

* 'Velā' is tide or current. The Understanding, although it exists with the three states of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas, can yet transcend them by Yoga. The ordinary and extraordinary states of the Understanding are spoken of in this Verse.—T.

† The Bengal texts make this a Verse of one line. In the Bombay text, Verse 9 is made a triplet, so that this line is included in it. 'Medhyāni' is explained as 'medhā, rupādi jnānam, tatra tāni'.—T.

‡ If I have understood this Verse correctly, the theory of perception here laid down is a sort of idealism which has not, perhaps, its counterpart in European metaphysics. The senses are first said to be only modifications of the understanding. The mind also is only a modification of the same. A particular sense, say the eye, becomes subservient to the understanding at a particular moment. As soon as this happens, the understanding, though in reality it is only the eye, becomes united with the eye, and entering the mind raises an image there, the consequence of which is that that image is said to be seen. External world there is, of course, none, as independent of mind and understanding. That which is called a tree is only an idea or image created in the mind by the understanding with the aid of the sense of vision.—T.

ment to the circumference of the wheel, they follow the different objects (that exist in Mind, Understanding, and Consciousness).*[12] The mind must make a lamp of the senses for dispelling the darkness that shuts out the knowledge of the Surreme Soul. This knowledge that is acquired by Yogins with the aid of the especial agency of Yoga, is acquired without any especial efforts by men that abstain from worldly objects.†[13] The universe is of this nature (*viz.*, it is only a creation of the understanding). The man of knowledge, therefore, is never stupified (by attachment to things of this world). Such a man never grieves, never rejoices, and is free from envy (at seeing another possessing a larger share of earthly objects).[14] The Soul is incapable of being seen with the aid of the senses whose nature is to wander among all (earthly) objects of desire. Even righteous men, whose senses are pure, fail to behold the soul with their aid what then should be said of the vicious whose senses are impure ?[15] When, however, a person, with the aid of his mind, tightly holds their reins, it is then that his

---

* The speaker here combats the theory that the qualities of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas inhere to the objects themselves of the senses. His own view is that they inhere to the mind, the understanding, and Consciousness. The qualities may be seen to exist with objects, but in reality they only follow objects in consequence of their permanent connection with the mind, the understanding, and consciousness which have agency in the production of objects. The Commentator cites the instance of a wife's beautiful and symmetrical limbs. These excite pleasure in the husband, envy in a co-wife, and desire (mixed with pain at its not being gratified) in a weak-hearted gazer. All the while the limbs remain unchanged. Then again, the husband is not always pleased with them, nor is the co-wife always filled with envy at their sight, nor is the gazer always agitated. Like the spokes of a wheel which are attached to the circumference and which move with the circumference, the qualities of Sattwa, &c., attached to the mind, understanding and consciousness, move along with them, *i. e.*, follow those objects in the production of which the mind, &c., are causes.—T.

† This version of Verse 13 is offered tentatively. I give the substance without following the exact order of the original. Compare this verse with 42 of Section 194 *ante*,—T.

Soul discovers itself like an object (unseen in darkness) appearing to the view in consequence of the light of a lamp.[16] Indeed, as all things become visible when the darkness that envelopes them is dispelled, even the soul becomes visible when the darkness that covers it is removed.*[17] As an aquatic fowl, though moving on the water, is never drenched by that element, after the same manner the Yogin of freed soul is never soiled by the imperfections of the three attributes (of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas).[18] After the same manner, the man of wisdom, by even enjoying all earthly objects without being attached to any of them, is never soiled by faults of any kind (that arise in the case of others from such enjoyment).[19] He who avoids acts after having done them duly,† and takes delight in the one really existent entity, *viz.*, the Soul, who has constituted himself the soul of all created beings, and who succeeds in keeping himself aloof from the three attributes,[20] obtains an understanding and senses that are created by the Soul. The qualities are incapable of apprehending the Soul. The Soul, however, apprehends them always.[21] The Soul is the witness that beholds the qualities and duly calls them up into being. Behold, this is the difference between the Understanding and the Soul both of which are exceedingly subtile.[22] One of them creates the qualities. The other never creates them. Though they are different from each other by nature, yet they are always united.[23] The fish living in the water is different from the element in which it lives. But as the fish and the water forming its home are always united, after the same manner Sattwa and Kshetrajna exist in a state of union. The gnat born within a rotten fig is really not the fig but different from it. Nevertheless, as the gnat and the fig are seen to be united with each other, even so are Sattwa and Kshetrajna.[24] As the blade in a clump of grass

---

* As soon as the darkness of the understanding is dispelled and true knowledge succeeds, the Soul becomes visible.—T.

† *I. e.*, who adopts the Sannyāsa or the last mode of life after having duly gone through the preceding modes.—T.

though distinct from the clump, nevrtheless exists in a state of union with it, even so these two, though different from each other and each exists in its own self, are to be seen in a state of constant union.—' "[25]

SECTION CCXLIX.

"'Vyāsa said,—The objects by which one is surrounded are created by the Understanding. The Soul, without being connected with them, stands aloof, presiding over them. It is the Understanding that creates all objects. The three primary qualities are continually being transformed (for the production of objects). The Kshetrajna or Soul, endued with puissance, presides over them all, without, however, mingling with them.*[1] The objects which the Understanding creates partake of its own nature. Indeed, as the spider creates threads (which partakes of its own material substance), the objects created by the Understanding partake of the nature of the Understanding.[2] Some maintain that the qualities, when driven away by Yoga or knowledge, do not cease to exist. They say this because when once gone, the indications only of their return are not perceptible, (But that is no evidence of their actual destruction). Others say that when dispelled by knowledge, they are at once destroyed never to return.†[3] Reflecting upon these two opinions properly, one should strive one's best according to the way one thinks proper. It is by this way that one should attain to eminence and take refuge in one's own Soul

---

* 'Gunān' in the first line means 'Vishayán', in the second line it means 'Sattwàdin'. 'Vikriyatah' is 'vikâram bhajamànān. How the Understanding creates objects has been explained in the previous Sections.—T.

† 'Na nivartante' is explained by the Commentator as 'na ghatādivat naçyanti kintu rajjuragādiva bádha eva &c., and he concludes by saying that according to this theory, 'niranvayanāça eva gunānām', or, in other words, that the Gunas are not so destroyed by knowledge that they do not return.—T.

alone.*[4] The Soul is without beginning and without end. Comprehending his Soul properly, man should move and act, without giving way to wrath, without indulging in joy, and always free from envy.[5] Cutting by this means the knot that is in one's heart, the knot whose existence is due to the operation of the faculties of the Understanding, which is hard (to open or cut), but which nevertheless is capable of being destroyed by knowledge, one should live happily, without giving way to grief (for anything that happens), and with one's doubts dispelled.[6] Know that they who mingle in the affairs of this world are as distressed in body and mind as persons ignorant of the art of swimming when they slip from the land and fall into a large and deep river.[7] The man of learning, however, being conversant with the truth, is never distressed, for he feels like one walking over solid land. Indeed, he who apprehends his Soul to be such, *viz.*, as presenting only the character of *Chit* which has knowledge alone for its indication, is never distressed.[8] Indeed, a person, by thus comprehending the origin and end of all creatures, and by thus apprehending their inequalities or distinctions, succeeds in attaining to high felicity.[9] This knowledge is the possession of a Brāhmana in especial by virtue of his birth. Knowledge of the Soul, and felicity like that which has been adverted to, are each fully sufficient to lead to emancipation.†[10] By acquiring such knowledge one really becomes learned. What else is the indication of a person of knowledge? Having acquired such knowledge, they that are wise among men regard themselves crowned with success and become emancipate.‡[11] Those

* According to the speaker then, there is not much practical difference between the two opinions here adverted to, and one's course of conduct will not be much affected by either of the theories that one may, after reflection, adopt.—T.

† 'Janmasàmartham' is explained as 'certain to be acquired by virtue of birth or of the practice of the duties laid down for one's own order'. 'Parāyanam' is 'moksha-pràpakam'.—T.

‡ The Bengal reading 'buddhah' is preferable to the Bombay reading 'Cudhah' which would be pleonastic in view of what follows in the second line.—T.

things that become sources of fear unto men destitute of knowledge do not become sources of fear unto those that are endued with knowledge. There is no end higher than the eternal end which is obtained by a person possessed of knowledge.[12] One beholds with aversion all earthly objects of enjoyment which are, of course, fraught with faults of every kind. Another, beholding others betake themselves with pleasure to such objects, is filled with sorrow. As regards this matter, however, behold, they that are conversant with both objects, *viz.*, that which is fictitious and that which is not so, never indulge in sorrow and are truly happy.*[13] That which a man does without expectation of fruits destroys his acts of a former life. The acts, however, of such a person both of this and his previous life cannot lead to Emancipation. On the other hand, such destruction of former acts and such acts of this life cannot lead to what is disagreeable (*viz.*, hell,) even if the man of wisdom engages in acts.—' "†[14]

SECTION CCL.

" 'Cuka said,—Let thy reverence tell me of that which is the foremost of all duties, indeed, of that duty than which no higher one exists in this world.—[1]

" 'Vyāsa said,—I shall now tell thee of duties having a very ancient origin and laid down by the *Rishis*, duties that are distinguished above all others. Listen to me with undivided attention![2] The senses that are maddening should carefully be restrained by the understanding like a sire restraining his own inexperienced children liable to fall into

---

* 'Lokam' is explained as 'lokyate iti lokah', *i. e.*, 'objects of enjoyment such as wife, &c.; 'āturam, is 'afflicted with faults or defects'. 'Ubhayam kritâkritam' is, as the Commentator explains, 'cokāçokarupam' or 'āropitam and anāropitam'.—T.

† Many of the verses of this and the previous Section correspond with those of Section 194 *ante*. Many verbal changes, however, are noticeable. In consequence of those changes, the meaning sometimes becomes slightly and sometimes materially different.—T.

diverse evil habits.[3] The withdrawal of the mind and the senses from all unworthy objects and their due concentration (upon worthy objects) is the highest penance. That is the foremost of all duties. Indeed, that is said to be the highest duty.[4] Directing, by the aid of the understanding, the senses having the mind for their sixth, and without, indeed, thinking of worldly objects which have the virtue of inspiring innumerable kinds of thought, one should live contented with one's own self.[5] When the senses and the mind, withdrawn from the pastures among which they usually run loose, come back for residing in their proper abode, it is then that thou wilt behold in thy own self the Eternal and Supreme Soul.*[6] Those high-souled Brāhmanas that are possessed of wisdom succeed in beholding that Supreme and Universal Soul which is like unto a blazing fire in effulgence.[7] As a large tree endued with numerous branches and possessed of many flowers and fruit does not know in which part it has flowers and in which it has fruits,[8] after the same manner the Soul, as modified by birth and other attributes, does not know whence it has come and whither it is to go. There is, however, an inner Soul, which beholds (knows) everything.†[9] One sees the Soul oneself with the aid of the lighted lamp of knowledge. Beholding, therefore, thyself with thy own self, cease to regard thy body as thyself and attain thou to omniscience.[10] Cleansed of all sins, like unto a snake that has cast off its slough, one attains to high intelligence here and becomes free from every anxiety and the obligation of acquiring a new body (in a subsequent birth).[11] Its current

---

* 'Gocharebhyah', literally, pastures, is used here to signify all external and internal objects upon which the senses and the mind are employed. Their proper home or abode is said to be *Brahma.*—T.

† The absence of anything like precision in the language employed in such verses frequently causes confusion. The word 'ātmā' as used in the first line is very indefinite. The Commentator thinks it implies 'achetanabuddhi', *i. e.*, the perishable Understanding. I prefer, however, to take it as employed in the sense of Chit as modified by birth. It comes, I think, to the samething in the end. The 'inner Soul' is, perhaps, the Soul or Chit as unmodified by birth and attributes.—T.

spreading in diverse directions, frightful is this river of life bearing the world onward in its course. The five senses are its crocodiles. The mind and its purposes are the shores.[12] Cupidity and stupifaction of judgment are the grass and straw that float on it, covering its bosom. Lust and wrath are the fierce reptiles that live in it. Truth forms the *tirtha* by its miry banks. Falsehood forms its surges, anger its mire.[13] Taking its rise from the Unmanifest, rapid is its current, and incapable of being crossed by persons of uncleansed souls. Do thou, with the aid of the understanding, cross that river having desires for its alligators![14] The world and its concerns constitute the ocean towards which that river runs. Genus and species constitute its unfathomable depth that none can understand. One's birth, O child, is the source from which that stream takes its rise. Speech constitutes its eddies. Difficult to cross,[15] only men of learning and wisdom and understanding succeed in crossing it. Crossing it, thou wilt succeed in freeing thyself from every attachment, acquiring a tranquil heart, knowing the Soul, and becoming pure in every respect.[16] Relying then on a purged and elevated understanding, thou wilt succeed in becoming *Brahma's* self. Having dissociated thyself from every worldly attachment, having acquired a purified Soul and transcending every kind of sin,[17] look thou upon the world like a person looking from the mountain top upon creatures creeping below on the Earth's surface! Without giving way to wrath or joy, and without forming any cruel wish, thou wilt succeed in beholding the origin and the destruction of all created objects.[18] They that are endued with wisdom regard such an act to be the foremost of all things. Indeed, this act of crossing the river of life is regarded by the foremost of righteous persons, by ascetics conversant with the truth, to be the highest of all acts that one can accomplish.[19] This knowledge of the all-pervading Soul is intended to be imparted to one's son. It should be inculcated unto one that is of restrained senses, that is honest in behaviour, and that is docile or submissive.[20] This knowledge of the Soul, of which I have just now spoken to

thee, O child, and the evidence of whose truth is furnished by the Soul itself, is a mystery,—indeed, the greatest of all mysteries, and the very highest knowledge that one can attain.[21] *Brahma* hath no sex,—male, female, or neuter. It is neither sorrow nor happiness. It hath for its essence the past, the future, and the present.[22] Whatever one's sex, male or female, the person that attains to the knowledge of *Brahma* hath never to undergo rebirth. This duty (of Yoga) hath been inculcated for attaining to exemption from rebirth.*[23] These words that I have used for answering thy question lead to Emancipation in the same way as the diverse other opinions advanced by diverse other sages that have treated of this subject. I have expounded the topic to thee after the manner in which it should be expounded. Those opinions sometimes become productive of fruit and sometimes not. (The words, however, that I have used are of a different kind, for these are sure to lead to success.)†[24] For this reason, O good child, a preceptor, when asked by a contented, meritorious, and self-restrained son or disciple, should, with a deligated heart, inculcate, according to their true import, these instructions that I have inculcated for the benefit of thee my son !—" '[25]

SECTION CCLI.

" 'Vyāsa said,—One should not show any affection for scents and tastes and other kinds of enjoyment. Nor should one accept ornaments and other articles contributing to the enjoyment of the senses of scent and taste. One should not covet honor and achievements and fame. Even this is the

---

* 'Abhavapratipattyartham' is explained by the Commentator as 'for the attainment of the unborn or the soul'.—T.

† The Commentator explains the first line thus: 'yathā sarvāni matāni tathā etāni vachānsi me'. He takes the words 'yathā tathā kathitāni mayā' as implying that 'I have treated of the topic *yathātathyena*.'—T.

behaviour of a Brāhmana possessed of vision.*[1] He that hath studied all the Vedas, having waited dutifully on his preceptor and observed the vow of Brahmacharyya, he that knows all the Richs, Yajushes, and Sāmans, is not a regenerate person.†[2] One that behaves towards all creatures as if one is their kinsman, and one that is acquainted with *Brahma,* is said to be conversant with all the Vedas. One that is divested of desire, (being contented with knowledge of the Soul), never dies. It is by such a behaviour and such a frame of mind that one becomes a truly regenerate person.‡[3] Having performed only various kinds of religious rites and diverse sacrifices completed with gift of *Dakshinā,* one does not acquire the status of a Brāhmana if one is devoid of compassion and hath not given up desire.$[4] When one ceases to fear all creatures and when all creatures cease to fear one, when one never desires for anything nor cherishes aversion for anything, then is one said to attain to the status of *Brahma.*[5] When one abstains from injuring all creatures in thought, speech, and act, then is one said to acquire the status of *Brahma.*[6] There is only one kind of bondage in this world, *viz.*, the bondage of desire, and no other. One that is freed from the bondage of desire attains to the status of *Brahma.*[7] Freed from desire like the Moon emerged from murky clouds, the man of wisdom, purged of all stains, lives in patient expectation of his time.[8] That person into whose mind all sorts of desire enter like diverse

---

* The Commentator explains that 'tasya tasya' has reference to 'gandhādeh'. 'Prachārah' means 'vyavahāra'. 'Paçyatah' is 'Vidushah'.—T.

† *I. e.*, one that only knows the Vedas and has observed the vow of Brahmacharyya is not a superior Brāhmana. To become so requires something more.—T.

‡ I follow the Commentator closely in rendering this verse. 'Sarvavit' is taken in the sense of 'Brahmavit'. 'Akāmah' is one contented with knowledge of Self. Such a man, the Crutis declare, never dies or perishes. The two negatives in the last clause nullify each other. The Burdwan translator, with the gloss before him, for he cites copiously from it, misunderstands the negatives. K. P. Singha is correct.—T.

$ 'Avidhānāt' is explained as 'dayānaishkāmyayorananusaranāt',—T.

streams falling into the ocean without being able to enhance its limits by their discharge, succeeds in obtaining tranquillity, but not he who cherishes desire for all earthly objects.[9] Such a person becomes happy in consequence of the fruition of all his wishes, and not he who cherishes desire for earthly objects. The latter, even if he attains to heaven, has to fall away from it.*[10] The Vedas have truth for their recondite object. Truth hath the subjugation of the senses for its recondite object. The subjugation of the senses hath charity for its recondite object. Charity hath penance for its recondite object.[11] Penance hath renunciation for its recondite object. Renunciation hath happiness for its recondite object. Happiness hath heaven for its recondite object. Heaven hath tranquillity for its recondite object.†[12] For the sake of contentment thou shouldst wish to obtain a serene understanding which is a precious possession, being indicative of Emancipation, and which, scorching grief and all purposes or doubts together with thirst, destroys them completely in the end.‡[13] One possessed of those six attributes, *viz.*, contentment, grieflessness, freedom from attachment, peacefulness, cheerfulness, and freedom from envy, is sure to become full or complete.$[14] They that, transcending all

---

* 'Kāmakāntah' is explained as 'kāmaih kāntah,' *i. e.*, 'manoharah'.—T.

† Heaven is *Brahma* invested with attributes. Tranquillity of soul is *Brahma* uninvested with attributes. 'Upanishat' is explained as 'rahasyam'. This I render 'recondite object'. The sense of the verse is that each of the things mentioned is useless without that which comes next; and as tranquillity or *Brahma* uninvested with attributes is the ultimate end, the Vedas and truth, &c., are valuable only because they lead to tranquillity.—T.

‡ Both the Vernacular translators have rendered this Verse wrongly. In the first place, 'ichechasi' is equivalent to 'ichecheta'. 'Santoshât' is 'for the sake of santosha'. 'Sattwam' is 'buddhiprasādam'. 'Manas' is explained as 'sankalpa or samçaya'. The grammatical order is çokamanasoh santāpya kledanam'. The Commentator adds 'santāpamiti namulantam', *i. e.*, formed by the suffix *namul*.—T.

$ 'Samagrah' is literally 'full or complete,' implying that such a man becomes 'jnāna-triptah'. Only five attributes are mentioned in this Verse, but *santosha* mentioned in Verse 13 should be taken to make up six.—T.

consciousness of body, know the Soul which resides within the body and which is understood by only persons of wisdom with the aid of the six entities (already mentioned, *viz.*, the Vedas and truth &c.) when endowed with only the attribute of Sattwa, and with the aid also of the other three (*viz.*, instruction, meditation, and Yoga), succeed in attaining to Emancipation.*[15] The man of wisdom, by understanding the Soul which presides within the body, which is divested of the attributes of birth and death, which exists in its own nature, which being uninvested with attributes requires no act of purification, and which is identical with *Brahma*, enjoys beatitude that knows no termination.[16] The gratification that the man of wisdom obtains by restraining his mind from wandering in all directions and fixing it wholly on the Soul is such that its like cannot be attained by one through any other means.[17] He is said to be truly conversant with the Vedas who is conversant with that which gratifies one whose stomach is empty, which pleases one who is indigent, and which invigorates one whose limbs are dry.[18] Suspending his senses that have been duly restrained from unworthy indulgence, he who lives engaged in Yoga meditation, is said to be a Brāhmana. Such a person is said to be distinguished above others. Such a person is said to derive his joys from the Soul.[19] With reference to one who lives after having weakened desire and devoting himself to the highest topic of existence, it should be said that his happi

---

* Both the Vernacular translators have rendered this Verse incorrectly. In the first place 'shadbhih' has reference to the six things mentioned in Verses 11 and 12 above. These six again should be 'satwagunopetaih' *i. e.*, destitute of the attributes of Rajas and Tamas, Unless freed from those two, even the six, of themselves, will not lead to knowledge of the Soul. 'Tribhih' has reference to 'Cravana, manana, and nididhyāsana'. 'Ihastham' is 'residing within the body'. 'Pretya' implies transcending consciousness of body or 'jivati eva dehe dehàbhimànàdutthäya'. 'Tam gunam' is 'mukta-lakshanam'. The sense, in simple words, is this: transcending all consciousness of body they that succeed in knowing the Soul which resides within the body become emancipated. The first line of the Verse simply points out *how* the Soul may be known.—T.

ness is continuously enhanced like the lunar disc (in the lighted fortnight).*[20] Like the Sun dispelling darkness, felicity dispels the sorrows of that Yogin who transcends both the gross and the subtile elements, as also *Mahat* and the Unmanifest.†[21] Decrepitude and death cannot assail that Brāhmana who has got beyond the sphere of acts, who has transcended the destruction of the *Gunas* themselves, and who is no longer attached to worldly objects.‡[22] Indeed, when the Yogin, freed from everything, lives in a state transcending both attachment and aversion, he is said to transcend in even this life his senses and all their objects.[23] That Yogin, who having transcended Prakriti attains to the Highest Cause, becomes freed from the obligation of a return to the world in consequence of his having attained to that which is the highest.—' "$[24]

SECTION CCLII.

" 'Vyāsa said,—Unto a disciple that wishes to enquire after Emancipation after having transcended all pairs of opposites and accomplished the concerns of both profit and religion, an accomplished preceptor should first recount all that has been said in the foregoing section, which is elaborate, on the topic of Adhyātma.¶[1] Space, wind, light,

---

* 'Anweti' is explained as 'vardhate'.—T.

† The reading I adopt is 'saviçeshāni' and *not* 'aviçeshāni' although the latter is not incorrect. In treatises on *yoga*, 'viçeshāh' imply the gross elements and the eleven senses including the mind. 'Aviçeshâh' imply the five subtile elements (tanmātrāni) and *buddhi*. By 'Gunān' is meant here Mahat and Avyakta or Prakriti. If 'aviçeshāni' be taken, the reference to the subtile elements would imply that the grosser ones have already been transcended.—T.

‡ 'Atikrāntaguna-kshayam', *i. e.*, one who has transcended disregards the very puissance that the destruction of the *gunas* is said to bring about.—T.

$ 'Kāryyatām' is Prakriti which alone is active, Purusha being inactive. 'Paramam kāranam' is, of course, *Brahma* uninvested with attributes.—T.

¶ 'Dwandwāni' is governed by 'anushthitah'. 'Mahat' here is ela-

water, and earth counted as the fifth, and *bhāva* and *abhāva* and time, exist in all living creatures having the five for their constituent ingredients.*[2] Space is unoccupied interval. The organs of hearing consist of space. One conversant with the science of entities endued with form should know that space has sound for its attribute.[3] The feet (that assist at locomotion) have wind for their essence. The vital breaths are made of wind. The sense of touch (skin) has wind for its essence, and touch is the attribute of wind.[4] Heat, the digestive fire in the stomach, light that discovers all things, the warmth that is in the body, and eye counted as the fifth, are all of light which has form of diverse colors for its attribute.[5] Liquified discharges, solubility, and all kinds of liquid matter are of water. Blood, marrow, and all else (in the body) that is cool, should be known to have water for their essence. The tongue is the sense of taste, and taste is regarded as the attribute of water.[6] All solid substances are of earth, as also bones, teeth, nails, beard, the bristles on the body, hair, nerves, sinews, and skin.[7] The nose is called the sense of scent. The object of that sense, *viz.*, scent, should be known as the attribute of earth.[8] Each subsequent element possesses the attribute or attributes of the preceding one besides its own.† In all living creatures again are the (three) supplementary entities (*viz.*, avidyā, kāma, and karma).‡ The *Rishis* thus declared the five elements and

---

borate. The speaker, having first discussed the subject elaborately, intends to speak of it in brief in this Section.—T:

* 'Panchasu' is explained by the Commentator as 'Panchātmakeshu'. Hence, he properly points out that 'bhāva' and 'abhāva' and 'kāla' are included by the speaker within 'bhutas' or primary elements. 'Bhāva' implies the four entities called karma, sāmānya, viçesha, and samavāya. By 'abhāva' is meant a negative state with respect to certain attributes not possessed by a thing. We cannot think of a thing without thinking of it as uninvested with certain attributes watever other attributes it may possess.—T.

† Enlarged, the construction of the original becomes thus: 'uttareshu (bhuteshu) (purvabhuta) gunāh (santi).—T.

‡ 'Uttarāh' imply the three entities known by the names of Avidyā

the effects and attributes flowing from or belonging to them.[9] The mind forms the ninth in the calculation, and the understanding is regarded as the tenth. The Soul, which is infinite, is called the eleventh. It is regarded as this all and as the highest.[10] The mind has doubt for its essence. The understanding discriminates and causes certainty. The Soul (which, as already said, is infinite,) becomes known as Jiva invested with body (or jivātman) through consequences derived from acts.*[11] That man who looketh upon the entire assemblage of living creatures to be unstained though endued with all these entities having time for their essence, has never to recur to acts affected by error.—' "†[12]

SECTION CCLIII.

"'Vyāsa said,—Those that are conversant with the scriptures behold, with the aid of acts laid down in the scriptures, the Soul which is clothed in a subtile body and is exceedingly subtile and which is dissociated from the gross

---

(Ignorance), Kāma (desire), and Karma (acts). This part of the Verse is skipped over by the Vernacular translators.—T.

* *I e.*, the soul, when invested with Avidyā and desire becomes a living creature and engages in acts. It is through consequences then that are derived from acts that the infinite Soul (or Chit) becomes Jivātman.—T.

† This is a very difficult Verse and no wonder that both the Vernacular versions are defective. K. P. Singha gives the substance, skipping over many of the words. The Burdwan translator, though citing largely from the gloss, misunderstands both Verse and gloss completely. The grammatical construction is this: 'Ebhih sarvaih kālātmakaih bhāvaih anwitam sarvam yah akalusham paçyati (sah) samoham karma nānuvartate'. 'Sarvam' here refers to 'prānijātam' or the entire assemblage of living creatures. 'Kālātmakaih bhāvaih' is punyapāpádi samskàràtmabhih'. 'Bhāvaih' is taken by the Commentator as equivalent to 'bhávanâbhih'. I prefer to take it in the sense of entity. He who looks upon these as 'akalusham', *i. e.* as unstained Chit, (that is, he who has a knowledge of the Soul,) becomes freed from 'samoham karma', *i. e.*, succeeds in becoming 'nishkàmah' in consequence of his acquaintance with 'átmatattwa'.—T.

body in which it re sides.*[1] As the rays of the Sun that course in dense masses through every part of the firmament are incapable of being seen by the naked eye though their existence is capable of being inferred by reason, after the same manner, existent beings freed from gross bodies and wandering in the universe are beyond the ken of human vision.†[2] As the effulgent disc of the Sun is beheld in the water in a counter-image, after the same manner the Yogin beholds within gross bodies the existent self in its counter-image.‡[3] All those souls again that are encased in subtile forms after being freed from the gross bodies in which they resided, are perceptible to Yogins who have subjugated their senses and who are endued with knowledge of the soul. Indeed, aided by their own souls, Yogins behold those invisible beings.[4] Whether asleep or awake, during the day as in the night, and during the night as in day time, they who apply themselves to Yoga after casting off all the creations of the understanding and the *Rajas* born of acts, as also the very puissance that Yoga begets, succeed in keeping their *linga* form under complete control.§[5-6] The *jiva*

---

* 'Conversant with the scriptures', *i. e.*, Yogin; 'acts laid down in the scriptures' are the practices connected with Yoga. 'Caririnam', the Commentator takes, implies the Soul as invested with a subtile body; of course, 'Caririn' as distinguished from 'Cariram' generally means the Soul or the owner of the Cariram without reference to the body. Hence, the word cannot be taken as referring to the Soul as uninvested with the linga-carira.—T.

† I follow the Commentator in his exposition of this Verse. 'Sahitāh' is 'nividāh'; 'driçyamānāh' is explained as 'though unseen by the eye is yet realised through instruction and by the aid of reason.'—T.

‡ 'Tapah' is 'raçmi-mandalam'. 'Prati-rupam' is 'pratyupā-dhi'. 'Satwam' is 'satwapradhāna-lingam'. The sense, in simple words, seems to be that the Yogin beholds within his own body and those of others the Souls or Chits residing there as invested in subtile forms.—T.

§ Both 'àtmachintitam' and 'karmajam rajas' are governed by 'Jahatām'. The first means all that is 'kalpitah' in self, *i. e.*, the creations of the understanding or the mind, implying, of course, the objects of the senses or the external world. The second means 'kàmādi vyasanam', *i. e.*, the calamities constituted by desire, &c., 'Pradhànàdwaidhamuktah' is one who is freed from identity with.

that dwells in such Yogins, always endued with the seven subtile entities, (*viz.*, Mahat, consciousness, and the five tanmātrā of the five elemental entities,) roves in all regions of bliss, freed from decrepitude and death. I say 'always,' and 'freed from death' only in accordance with the common form of speech, for in reality, that *linga* form is terminable.*[7] That man, however, who (without having been able to transcend them) is under the influence of his mind and understanding, discriminates, even in his dreams, his own body from that of another and experiences (even then) both pleasure and pain.†[8] Yes, in even his dreams he enjoys happiness and suffers misery; and yielding to wrath and cupidity, meets with calamities of various kinds.[9] In his dreams he acquires great wealth and feels highly gratified: accomplishes meritorious acts, and sees (and hears, &c.,) as he does in his wakeful hours.[10] Wonderful it is to note that *jiva*, which has to lie within the uterus and amid much internal heat, and which has to pass a period of full ten months in that place, is not digested and reduced to destruction like food within the stomach.[11] Men overwhelmed by the qualities of Rajas and Tamas never succeed in beholding within the gross body the Jiva-soul which is a portion of the Supreme Soul of transcendent effulgence and which lies within the heart of every creature.[12] They who betake themselves to the science of Yoga for the purpose of obtaining (a knowledge) of that Soul succeed in transcending the

---

Pradhána or the Universal cause; hence, the puissance that Yoga brings about. Such Yogins have their subtile forms under complete control under all conditions and at all times. They can enter at will into other forms. 'Satwátma' is 'linga-dehah'.—T

* 'Satatam' qualifies 'anwitah'. 'Nityam' qualifies 'charishnuh.' 'Sadànityah' is explained by the Commentator as in reality terminable, though the words *always* &c., have been used. The plain meaning of the Verse is that Yogins, in their linga body, rove everywhere, not excluding the most blissful regions in heaven itself.—T.

† The meaning is this: like Yogins, ordinary men even have the 'linga-çariram'. In dreams, the gross body is inactive. Only the subtile body acts and feels. The Burdwan translator misunderstands this Verse completely.—T.

inanimate and gross body, the imperceptible *lingā* body, and the *kārana* body that is not destroyed on the occasion of even the universal destruction.*[13] Amongst the duties that have been laid down for the different modes of life including the fourth mode (or Sanyāsa), these to which I have adverted, which have *yoga* for their foremost, and which imply a cessation of every operation of the Mind and the Understanding, have been laid down by Cāndilya (in the Chāndogya Upanishad).†[14] Having comprehended the seven subtile entities (*viz.*, the senses, the objects of the mind, Mind, Understanding, Mahat, Unmanifest or Prakriti, and Purusha), having comprehended also the Supreme cause of the universe with the six attributes (*viz.*, omniscience, contentment, unlimited comprehension, independence, eternal wakefulness, and omnipotence), and lastly having understood that the universe is only a modification of Avidyā endued with the three qualities, one succeeds in beholding, (guided by the scriptures), high Brahma.‡—' "[15]

SECTION CCLIV.

" 'Vyāsa said,—There is a wonderful tree, called Desire, in the heart of man. It is born of the seed called Error. Wrath and Pride constitute its large trunk. The wish for

---

* 'Atikrāmanti' is understood at the end of the Verse. 'Vajropamāni' is explained by the Commentator as 'so undying that they are not destroyed at even the universal destruction ; hence, of course, the kārana bodies'. The kārana bodies are the potentialities, existing in the tanmātrā of the elemental substances, of forming diverse kinds of linga bodies in consequence of the acts of *Jiva* in previous periods of existence.—T.

† 'Etat' is 'maduktam vākyam' ; 'yogam' implies 'yogapradhānam'. 'Samādhau samam' has reference to 'yogam'. What the speaker wishes to say in this verse is that 'dhyāna' is not laid down for Sanyāsins alone but it is laid down for all others as well.—T.

‡ 'Pradhānam' is Avidyā or Ignorance. 'Viniyoga' is 'Viparināma'. The particle *anu* is always interpreted as 'following' the scriptures or some special branch of knowledge that treats of the subject spoken of.—T.

action is the basin around its foot (for holding the water that is to nourish it).[1] Ignorance is the root of that tree, and heedlessness is the water that gives it sustenance. Envy constitutes its leaves. The evil acts of past lives supply it with vigor.[2] Loss of judgment and anxiety are its twigs; grief forms its large branches; and fear is its sprout. Thirst (after diverse objects) that is (apparently) agreeable forms the creepers that twine round it on every side.[3] Cupidinous men, bound in chains of iron, sitting around that fruit-yielding tree, pay their adorations to it, in expectation of obtaining its fruit.*[4] He who, subduing those chains, cutteth down that tree and seeks to cast off both sorrow and joy, succeeds in attaining to the end of both.†[5] That foolish man who nourishes this tree by indulgence in the objects of the senses is destroyed by those very objects in which he indulges after the manner of a poisonous pill destroying the patient to whom it is administered.‡[6] A dexterous person, however, by the aid of Yoga, forcibly teareth up and cutteth with the sword of *samādhi*, the far-reaching root of this tree.$[7] One who knows that the end of all acts undertaken from only the desire of fruit is rebirth or chains that bind, succeeds in transcending all sorrow.[8] The body is said to be a city. The understanding is said to be its mistress. The mind dwelling within the body is the minister of that mistress whose chief function is to decide.[9] The senses are the citizens that are employed by the mind (upon the service of the mistress). For cherish-

---

* The correct reading is 'āyasaih' meaning 'made of iron', and *not* 'āyāsaih'. K. P. Singha adheres to the incorrect reading. The chains of iron here are either the diverse longings cherished by worldly men, or, perhaps, the bodies with which men are invested.—T.

† The dual genetive 'duhkhayoh' is used because worldly 'sukha' also is regarded as 'duhkha'. 'Tyajamānah' is equivalent to 'tyaktum ichchan'. It is an instance of 'hetau çānach'.—T.

‡ 'Yena' is explained as 'Stryādinā hetunā'. 'Sah' is Stryādih' 'Samrohati' is 'Varddhayati'. 'Tam' is 'Varddhakam'.—T.

$ 'Uddhriyate' is literally 'tears up'. The use of the word 'asinā' suggests also 'cutting'. The root of the tree, of course, is 'Avidyā' or Ignorance.—T.

ing those citizens the mind displays a strong inclination for acts of diverse kinds. In the matter of those acts, two great faults are observable, *viz.*, Tamas and Rajas.*[10] Upon the fruits of those acts rest those citizens along with the chiefs of the city (*viz.*, Mind, Understanding, and Consciousness).† The two faults (already spoken of) live upon the fruits of those acts that are accomplished by forbidden means.[11] This being the case, the understanding, which of itself is unconquerable (by either Rajas or Tamas), descends to a state of equality with the mind (by becoming as much tainted as the mind is that serves it). Then again the senses, agitated by the stained mind, lose their own stability.[12] Those objects again for whose acquisition the understanding strives (regarding them to be beneficial) become productive of grief and ultimately meet with destruction. Those objects, after destruction, are recollected by the mind, and accordingly they afflict the mind even after they are lost.[13] The understanding is afflicted at the same time, for the mind is said to be different from the understanding only when the mind is considered in respect of its chief function of receiving impressions about whose certainty it is no judge. In reality, however, the mind is identical with the under-

---

* K. P. Singha wrongly translates the first line. The Burdwan translator quotes the gloss without understanding it. The first half of the first line, literally rendered, is 'the senses are the mind-citizens', meaning, as the Commentator rightly explains, that they are citizens under the lead of the mind. 'Tadartham' means 'for the sake of the senses,' *i. e.*, 'for cherishing them'. 'Parākritih' is 'mahati kriyā pravrittih' 'Tadartham' is 'kriyāphalam', i. e., happiness or misery. The meaning, in brief, is this : the body is a city. The understanding is its mistress. The mind is her principal servitor. The senses are the citizens under the lead of the mind. In order to cherish the senses the mind engages in acts productive of visible and invisible fruits, *i. e.*, sacrifices and gifts, and the acquisition of houses and gardens, &c. Those acts are liable to two faults, *viz.*, Rajas and Tamas. The senses (both in this life and the succeeding ones) depend upon the fruits (happiness or misery) of those acts.—T.

† The meaning is this : the senses, the mind, the understanding, &c. are all due to acts. These, therefore, are said to rest upon acts and draw their sustenance therefrom.—T.

standing.* The Rajas (productive of only sorrow and evil of every kind) that is in the understanding then overwhelms the Soul itself that lies over that Rajas-stained understanding like an image upon a mirror.†[14] It is the mind that first unites in friendship with Rājas. Having united itself, it seizes the soul, the understanding, and the senses (like a false minister seizing the king and the citizens after having conspired with a foe) and makes them over to Rajas (with which it has united itself).—' "[15]

SECTION CLV.

"Bhishma said,—'Do thou, O son, O sinless one, listen once more, with feelings of great pride, to the words that fell from the lips of the Island-born *Rishi* on the subject of the enumeration of the entities.[1] Like unto a blazing fire (for having transcended all ignorance), the great *Rishi* said these words unto his son who resembled a fire wrapped in smoke.‡ Instructed by what he said, I also, O son, shall again expound to thee that certain knowledge (which dispels ignorance).[2] The properties possessed by earth are immobility, weight, hardness, productiveness, scent, density, capacity to absorb scents of all kinds, cohesion, habitableness (in respect of vegetables and animals), and that attribute of the mind which is called patience or the capacity to bear.[3] The properties of water are coolness, taste, moisture, liquidity, softness, agreeableness, tongue, fluidity, capacity to be congealed, and power to melt many earthy products.§[4]

---

* I expand the first line of 14 for giving the meaning clearly.—T.

† The sense is that the understanding being stained or afflicted, the Soul also becomes stained or afflicted. 'Enam' is 'ātmānam'. Vidhritam' is 'placed like an image upon a mirror.'—T.

‡ Because the son had not yet obtained the light of full knowledge.—T.

§ It is curious to note how carelessly this Verse is rendered in the Burdwan version. In the Bengal texts there is a misprint, *viz.*, 'tathā' for 'rasah'. The Burdwan translator does not notice it, but gives just eight qualities instead of ten. Capacity to be consealed is to be inferred from *cha*. K. P. Singha is correct.—T.

The properties of fire are irresistible energy, inflammability, heat, capacity to soften, light, sorrow, disease, speed, fury, and invariably upward motion.[5] The properties of the wind are touch that is neither hot nor cool, capacity to assist the organs of speech, independence (in respect of motion), strength, celerity, power to assist all kinds of emission or discharge, power to raise other objects, breaths inhaled and exhaled, life (as the attribute of Chit), and birth (including death).[6] The properties of space are sound, extension, capacity of being enclosed, absence of refuge for resting upon absence of all necessity for such refuge, status of being unmanifest, capacity for modification, incapacity for producing resistance, material cause for producing the sense of hearing, and the unoccupied portions of the human body.[7] These are the fifty properties, as declared, that constitute, the essences of the five element ary entities.*[8] Patience, reasoning or disputation, remembrance, forgetfulness or error, imagination, endurance, propensity towards good, propensity towards evil, and restlessness,—these are the properties of the mind.[9] Destruction of both good and evil thoughts (*i. e.*, dreamless slumber), perseverance, concentration, decision, and ascertainment of all things resting upon direct evidence, constitute the five properties of the understanding.'[10]

"Yudhishthira said,—'How can the understanding be said to have five properties? How again, can the five senses be spoken of as properties (of the five elementary entities)? Expound to me, O grandsire, all this that seems to be very abstruse!'[11]

"Bhishma said,—'The understanding is said to possess altogether sixty properties, for the understanding includes

---

* The *Rishis*, it is evident, regarded an entity not as an unknown substance to which certain known properties inhered, but as the sum total of those properties themselves. So far as the human mind is concerned, there is no warrant for the proposition that matter is an unknown substance to which extension and divisibility, &c., inhere; on the other hand, matter, as it appears to us, is only extension, divisibility, &c, existing in a combined state.—T.

the five elements.* All those properties exist in a state of union with the Soul. The Vedas declare, O son, that the elements, their (fifty) properties, (together with the mind and the understanding and their nine and five properties) are all created by Him who is above all deterioration. These (one and seventy) entities, therefore, are not eternal (like the Soul).[12] The theories contradicting the Revelation that have in the previous Verses, O son, been placed before thee (about the origin of the Universe and its other incidents), are all defective in the eye of reason. Carefully attending, however, in this world to all that I have said unto thee about the Supreme *Brahma*, do thou, after attaining to the puissance that the knowledge of *Brahma* offers, seek to win tranquillity of heart.' "†[13]

SECTION CCLVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'These lords of Earth that lie on the Earth's surface amid their respective hosts, these princes endued with great might, are now reft of animation.[1] Every one of these mighty monarchs was possessed of strength equal to that of ten thousand elephants. Alas! these have all been slain by men possessed of equal prowess and might![2] I do not behold any one else (in the world) that could slay

---

* The elements are five in number. Their properties number fifty. The five especial properties of the understanding should be added to those five and fifty. The total, therefore, of the properties of the understanding comes up to sixty.—T.

† This is a difficult Verse. 'Anāgatam' is 'āgama-viruddham'. The grammatical construction, as explained by the Commentator, is this: 'tat (tasmin or purvaçlokokte vishaye yat) anāgatam tava uktam tat chintākalilam. (Twam tu) samprati iha (loke) tat (maduktam) bhutārtha-tattwam sarvam avāpya bhuta-prabhavāt çāntabuddhi bhava.' Bhutārthah is *Brahma*, and 'bhutaprabhāvāt' is 'Brahmaiçwaryyāt'. (This is an instance of the ablative with 'lyap' understood). What Bhishma wishes Yudhishthira to do is not so much to attend to the various theories about the origin of the universe but to carefully attend to the method of attaining to *Brahma*. To be of tranquil heart, of course, implies the possession of a 'nirvrittikā buddhi'.—T.

any of these men in battle.* All of them were endued with great prowess, great energy, and great strength.[3] Possessed also of great wisdom, they are now lying on the bare ground, deprived of life. With respect to all these men that are deprived of life, the word that is used is that they are *dead.*[4] Of terrible prowess, all these kings are said to be dead. On this subject a doubt has arisen in my mind. Whence is animation and whence is death ?[5] Who is it that dies ? (Is it the gross body, the subtile body, or the Soul, that dies ?) Whence is death ? For what reason also doth death take away (living creatures) ? O grandsire, tell me this, O thou that resemblest a celestial !'[6]

"Bhishma said,—'In days of old, in the Krita age, O son, there was a king of the name of Anukampaka. His cars and elephants and horse and men having been reduced in number, he has brought under the sway of his foes in battle.[7] His son, named Hari, who resembled Nārāyana himself in strength, was in that battle slain by his foes along with all his followers and troops.[8] Afflicted with grief on account of the death of his son, and himself bought under the sway of foes, the king devoted himself thence to a life of tranquillity. One day, while wandering without a purpose he met the sage Nārada on the Earth.[9] The monarch told Nārada all that had happened, *viz.*, the death of his son in battle and his own capture by his enemies.[10] Having heard his words, Nārada, possessed of wealth of penances, then recited to him the following narrative for dispelling his grief on account of the death of his son.[11]

"'Nārada said,—Listen now, O monarch, to the following narrative of rather lengthy details as these had occurred. I myself heard it formerly, O king ![12] Endued with great energy, the Grandsire, at the time of the creation of the universe, created a large number of living beings. These

---

* *I. e.*, they could be slain by only their equals who were engaged with them, meaning that all those warriors were very superior men. They could not possibly be slain by others than those with whom they fought.—T.

multiplied greatly, and none of them met with death.[13] There was no part of the universe that was not overcrowded with living creatures, O thou of unfading glory! Indeed, O king, the three worlds seemed to swell with living beings, and became as it were breathless.[14] Then, O monarch, the thought arose in the Grandsire's mind as to how he should destroy that overgrown population. Reflecting on the subject, the Self-born, however, could not decide what the means should be by which the destruction of life was to be brought about.[15] Thereupon, O king, Brahman gave way to wrath, and in consequence of his wrath a fire issued out of his body. With that fire born of his wrath, the Grandsire burnt all the quarters of the universe, O monarch.[16] Indeed, that conflagration born of the Divine lord's anger, O king, burnt heaven and Earth and the firmament and the whole universe with all its mobile and immobile beings.[17] Truly, when the Grandsire thus gave way to wrath, all mobile and immobile beings began to be consumed by the irresistible energy of that passion.[18] Then the divine and auspicious Sthānu, that slayer of hostile heroes, that lord of the Vedas and the scriptures, filled with compassion, sought to gratify Brahman.[19] When Sthānu came to Brahman from motives of benevolence, the great God, burning with energy, addressed him, saying,[20]—Thou deservest boons at my hands! What desire of thine shall I accomplish? I shall do thee good by accomplishing whatever is in thy breast!—,"[21]

Section CCLVII.

"'Sthānu said,—Know, O lord, that my solicitations to thee are in behalf of the created beings of the universe! These beings have been created by thee. Do not be angry with them, O Grandsire![1] By the fire born of thy energy, O illustrious one, all the created beings are being consumed! Beholding them placed in such a plight, I am penetrated with compassion. Do not be angry with them, O lord of the universe![2]—

"'The lord of all created beings said,—I am not angry, nor is it my wish that all the created beings should cease to exist. It is only for lightening the burthen of the Earth that destruction is desireable.[3] The goddess Earth, afflicted with the weight of creatures, solicited me, O Mahādeva, for destroying them, especially as she seemed to sink under their burthen into the water.[4] When after exercising my intelligence for even a long while I could not hit upon the means by which to accomplish the destruction of this overgrown population, it was then that wrath took possession of my breast!—[5]

"'Sthānu said,—Do not give way to wrath, O lord of the deities, with respect to this matter about the destruction of living creatures! Be gratified! Let not these mobile and immobile beings be destroyed![6] All tanks, all kinds of grass and herbs, all immobile beings, and all mobile creatures also of the four varieties,[7] are being consumed. The whole universe is about to be denuded of beings. Be gratified, O divine lord! O thou of righteous heart, even this is the boon that I solicit at thy hands![8] If destroyed, these creatures would not come back! Therefore, let this energy of thine be neutralised by thy own energy![9] Actuated by compassion for all created beings, find some means so that, O Grandsire, these living creatures may not burn![10] Oh, let not these living creatures perish with even their descendants thus destroyed! Thou hast appointed me as the presider over the Consciousness of all living creatures, O Lord of all the lords of the universe![11] All this mobile and immobile universe of life, O lord of the universe, hath sprung from thee! Pacifying thee, O god of gods, I beg of thee that living creatures may repeatedly come back into the world, undergoing repeated deaths![12]—

"'Nārada continued,—Hearing these words of Sthānu, the divine Brahman of restrained speech and mind himself suppressed that energy of his within his own heart.[13] Suppressing that fire that had been devastating the universe, the illustrious Brahman, adored of all, and possessed of illimitable puissance, then arranged for both birth and death

in respect of all living creatures.[14] After the Self-born had withdrawn and suppressed that fire, there came out, from all the outlets of his body, a lady[15] attired in robes of black and red, with black eyes, black palms, wearing a pair of excellent ear-rings, and adorned with celestial ornaments.[16] Having sprung from Brahman's body, the lady took her station on his right. The two foremost of deities thereupon looked at her.[17] Then, O king, the puissant Self-born, the original Cause of all the worlds, saluted her and said,—O Death, slay these creatures of the universe![18] Filled with anger and resolved to bring about the destruction of created beings, I have called thee!* Do thou, therefore, commence to destroy all creatures foolish or learned![19] O lady, slay all created beings without making exception in anybody's favour. At my command thou wilt win great prosperity![20]—Thus addressed, the goddess Death, adorned with a garland of lotuses, began to reflect sorrowfully and shed copious tears.[21] Without allowing her tears, however, to fall down, she held them, O king, in her joined hands. She then beseeched the Self-born, impelled by the desire of doing good to mankind.' "[22]

SECTION CCLVIII.

" 'Nārada said,—The large-eyed lady, controling her grief by an effort of her own, addressed the Grandsire, with joined hands and bending in an attitude of humility like a creeper.[1] And she said,—How, O foremost of speakers, shall a lady like me that has sprung from thee proceed to accomplish such a terrible feat,—a feat, that is, which is sure to inspire all living creatures with dread?[2] I fear to do aught that is iniquitous! Do thou appoint such work for me as is righteous! Thou seest that I am frightened. Oh, cast a compassionate glance upon me![3] I shall not be able to cut off living creatures,—infants, youths,

---

* In the case of gods and *Rishis*, thinking and summoning are the same.—T.

and aged ones,—who have done me no injury! O lord of all creatures, I bow to thee, be gratified with me![4] I shall not be able to cut off dear sons and loved friends and brothers and mothers and fathers! If these die (through my act), their surviving relatives will surely curse me. I am filled with fear at the prospect of this![5]* The tears of the sorrow-stricken survivors will burn me for eternity. I am very much afraid of them (whose relatives I shall have to cut off). I seek thy protection![6] All sinful creatures (slain by me) will have to sink into the infernal regions. I seek to gratify thee, O boon-giving god! Extend to me thy grace, O puissant lord![7] I seek the gratification of this wish, O Grandsire, of all the worlds. O foremost of all the gods, I seek, through thy grace, even this object, *viz.*, permission to undergo severe austerities![8]—

"'The Grandsire said,—O Death, thou hast been intended by me for the destruction of all creatures! Go, and set thyself to the task of slaying all! Do not reflect (upon the propriety or otherwise of this act)![9] This must certainly be. It cannot be otherwise. O sinless one, O lady of faultless limbs, do thou accomplish the behest I have uttered![10]—Thus addressed, O thou of mighty arms, the lady called Death, O conqueror of hostile cities, spoke not a word, but humbly stood there with her eyes upturned towards the puissant Lord of all creatures.[11] Brahman addressed her repeatedly, but the lady seemed to be herself deprived of life. Beholding her thus, the god of gods, that lord of lords, became silent.[12] Indeed, the Self-born, by an effort of his will, became gratified. Smiling, the lord of all the worlds then cast his eyes on the universe.[13] It has been heard by us that when that unconquered and illustrious lord subdued his wrath, the lady (called Death) went away from his side.[14] Leaving Brahman's side without having promised to accomplish the destruction of living creatures, Death quickly proceeded, O king, to the sacred spot known by the

---

* The Commentator explains that the accusatives in the first line of Verse 5 are governed by 'hareyam' in the previous Verse.—T.

name of Dhenuka.[15] There the goddess practised the severest austerities for five and ten billions of years, all the while standing upon one foot.[16]* After she had practised such exceedingly severe austerities in that place, Brahman of great energy once more said unto her,[17]—Do thou accomplish my behest, O Death!—Disregarding this command, the lady once more practised penances standing upon one foot for twenty billions of years, O giver of honors! And once more O son, she led a life in the woods with the deer for another long period consisting of ten thousand billions of years.†[18-19] And once more, O foremost of men, she passed twice ten thousand years, living upon air only as her sustenance. Once again, O monarch, she observed the excellent vow of silence[20] for eight thousand years, passing the whole time in water. Then that maiden, O best of kings, went to the river Kauçiki.[21] There she began to pass her days in the observance of another vow, living the while upon only water and air. After this, O monarch, the blessed maiden proceeded to the Ganges and thence to the mountains of Meru.[22] Moved by the desire of doing good to all living creatures, she stood perfectly motionless there like a piece of wood. Proceeding thence to the summit of Himavat where the deities had performed their great sacrifice,[23] she stood there for another hundred billions of years, supporting her weight upon only the toes of her feet, with the object of gratifying the Grandsire with such an act of austerity.[24] Wending thither, the Creator and Destroyer of the universe again addressed her, saying,—Upon what art thou engaged, O daughter? Accomplish those words of mine![25]—Addressing the divine Grandsire, the maiden once more said,—I am unable to cut off living creatures, O god! I seek to gratify thee (so that I may be excused this behest)![26]—Frightened at the prospect of iniquity as she then was and employed in beseeching

---

* A Padmaka consists of ten digits, *i. e.*, a thousand millions or a billion according to the French method of calculation.—T.

† To lead a life in the woods with the deer and after the manner of the deer confers great merit. *Vide* the story of Yayāti's daughter Mādhavi in the Udyoga Parvan *ante*.—T.

the Grandsire for being excused obedience to his command, the Grandsire silenced her, and once more addressed her, saying,[27]—No iniquity shall be thine, O Death! Do thou, O auspicious maiden, set thyself to the task of destroying living creatures! That which I have uttered, O amiable girl, cannot certainly be falsified![28] Eternal righteousness shall now take refuge in thee! Myself and all the deities shall always be employed in seeking thy good![29] This other wish that is in thy heart I grant thee! Living creatures shall be afflicted by disease, and (dying) shall not cast the blame on thee![30] Thou shalt become a male in all male beings, a female in all female beings, and a eunuch in all those that are of the third sex.[31]*—Thus addressed by Brahman, O king, the maiden at last said, with joined hands unto that high-souled and undeteriorating lord of all the deities, these words:—I am unable to obey thy command![32]—The great God, without relenting, again said unto her,—O Death, do thou kill men![33] I shall so ordain that thou shalt not incur any iniquity by doing this, O auspicious lady! Those tear-drops that I see have fallen from thy eyes, and that thou still holdest in thy joined hands, shall take the form of terrible diseases and even they shall destroy men when their hours come![34] When the end comes of living creatures, thou shalt despatch Desire and Wrath together against them. Immeasurable merit shall be thine. Thou shalt not incur iniquity, being thyself perfectly equal in thy behaviour![†][35] By doing this thou wilt only observe righteousness instead of sinking thyself into iniquity. Do thou, therefore, set thy heart upon the task at hand, and addressing Desire and Wrath begin to slay all living creatures![36]—Thus addressed, that lady, called by the name of Death, became afraid of Brahman's curse and answered him, saying,—Yes!—From

---

* The Commentator explains that this means that Death would attain to the status of all-pervading *Brahma*. Even this is the boon that the Self-born grants her for protecting her against iniquity and allaying her fears.—T.

† *I. e.*, being freed from wrath and aversion.—T.

that time she began to despatch Desire and Wrath at the last hours of living creatures and through their agency to put a stop to their life-breaths.[37] Those tears that Death had shed are the diseases by which the bodies of men become afflicted. At the destruction, therefore, of living creatures, one should not, understanding with the aid of the intelligence (to what cause such destruction is due), give way to grief.[38] As the senses of all creatures disappear when the latter become plunged into dreamless sleep and return once more when they awake, after the same manner all human beings, upon the dissolution of their bodies, have to go into the other world and return thence to this, O lion among kings![39] The element called wind, that is endued with terrible energy and mighty prowess and deafening roars, operates as the life in all living creatures. That wind, when the bodies of living creatures are destroyed, escaping from the old becomes engaged in diverse functions in diverse new bodies. For this reason the wind is called the lord of the senses and is distinguished above the other elements constituting the gross body.[40] The gods, without exception, (when their merits cease), have to take birth as mortal creatures on Earth. Similarly, all mortal creatures also, (when they acquire sufficient merit), succeed in attaining to the status of gods. Therefore, O lion among kings, do not grieve for thy son. Thy son has attained to heaven and is enjoying great happiness there![41]—It was thus, O monarch, that Death was created by the Self-born and it is in this way that she cuts off duly all living creatures when their hours come. The tears she had shed became diseases, which, when their last hours come, snatch away all beings endued with life.'"[42]

SECTION CCLIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'All men that inhabit this Earth are filled with doubts in respect of the nature of righteousness. Who is this that is called Righteousness? Whence also does Righteousness come? Tell me this, O Grandsire![1] Is Righteousness for service in this world or is it for service

in the next world? Or, is it for service both here and hereafter? Tell me this, O grandsire!"[2]

"Bhishma said,—'The practices of the good, the *Smritis*, and the Vedas, are the three indications (sources) of righteousness. Besides these, the learned have declared that the purpose (for which an act is accomplished) is the fourth indication of righteousness.*[3] The *Rishis* of old have declared what acts are righteous and also classified them as superior or inferior in point of merit. The rules of righteousness have been laid down for the conduct of the affairs of the world.[4] In both the worlds, that is, here and hereafter, righteousness produces happiness as its fruit. A sinful person, unable to acquire merit by subtile ways, becomes stained with sin only.[5] Some are of opinion that sinful persons can never be cleansed of their sins. In seasons of distress, a person by even speaking an untruth acquires the merit of speaking the truth, even as a person who accomplishes an unrighteous act acquires by that very means the merit of having done a righteous act. Conduct is the refuge of righteousness. Thou shouldst know what righteousness is, aided by conduct.†[6] (It is the nature of man that he neither sees nor proclaims his own faults but notices and proclaims those of others.) The very thief, stealing what belongs to others, spends the produce of his theft in acts of apparent virtue.

---

* Vaçishtha's work commences with the query—What is dharmah? The first answer is 'Anything consistent with the Crutis and the Smritis. Then comes 'Cishtãchàrah' or the conduct of those called çishta or good.—T.

† However casuists may argue and moralists pretend, a lie like that of Sir Henry Lee for saving his prince from the hands of Cromwell (vide *Woodstock*), or like that of the goldsmith's son, even when he was dying, for saving the prince Chevalier from the hands of his would-be captors, is excusable in the estimation of many and even meritorious according to some. The world again is agreed that if an adulterer be called into the witness box, perjury would be a venal offence compared with the meanness of betraying the honor of a confiding woman. Hence, the exclusion of such a witness (according to almost every system of law) in trials for adultery. The *Rishis* wrote for men and not angels. The conduct referred to is that of the good and pious.—T.

During a time of anarchy, the thief takes great pleasure in appropriating what belongs to others.[7] When others, however, rob him of what he has acquired by robbery, he then wishes forthwith for a king (for invoking punishment on the head of the offenders). At even such a time, when his indignation for offended rights of property is at its highest, he secretly covets the wealth of those that are contented with their own.[8] Fearlessly and without a doubt in his mind (when he is himself the victim of a robbery) he repairs to the king's palace, with a mind cleansed of every sin. Within even his own heart he does not see the stain of any evil act.*[9] To speak the truth is meritorious. There is nothing higher than truth. Everything is upheld by truth, and everything rests upon truth.[10] Even the sinful and ferocious, swearing to keep the truth amongst themselves, dismiss all grounds of quarrel and uniting with one another set themselves to their (sinful) tasks, depending upon truth. If they behaved falsely towards one another, they would then be destroyed without doubt.[11] One should not take what belongs to others. That is an eternal obligation. Powerful men regard it as one that has been introduced by the weak.[12] When, however, the destiny of these men becomes adverse, this injunction then meets with their approval. Then again they that surpass others in strength or prowess do not necessarily become happy.†[13] Therefore, do not ever set thy heart on any act that is wrong. One behaving in this way hath no fear of dishonest men or thieves or the king. Not having done any injury to any one, such a man lives fearlessly and with a pure heart.[14] A thief fears every body, like a deer driven from the woods into the midst of an inhabited village. He thinks other people to be as sinful as himself.[15]

---

* In explaining Verse 7, the Commentator uses the words that I have enclosed within paranthesis. According to him, Verse 9 hath reference to the robbed thief while he goes to the king for invoking justice.—T.

† This is another reason why one should not give away to intoxication of might and should not set at naught the eternal injunction against taking what belongs to another. K. P. Singha incorrectly translates this line.—T.

One that is of pure heart is always filled with cheerfulness and hath no fear from any direction. Such a person never sees his own misconduct in others.[16]* Persons engaged in doing good to all creatures have said that the practice of charity is another high duty. They that are possessed of wealth think that this duty has been laid down by those that are indigent.[17] When, however, those wealthy men meet with poverty in consequence of some turn of fortune, the practice of charity then recommends itself to them. Men that are exceedingly wealthy do not necessarily meet with happiness.†[18] Knowing how painful it is to himself, a person should never do that to others which he dislikes when done to him by others.‡[19] What can one who becomes the lover of another man's wife say to another man (guilty of the same transgression)? It is seen, however, that even such a one, when he sees his lady with another lover, becomes unable to forgive the act.$[20] How can one who wishes to himself draw breath think of preventing another by a murderous act from doing the same? Whatever wishes one entertains with respect to one's own self, one should certainly cherish with respect to another.[21] With the surplus wealth one may happen to own one should relieve the wants of the indigent. It is for this reason that the Creator ordained the practice of increasing one's wealth (by trade or laying it out at interest).¶[22] One should walk along that path by pro-

---

* Implying that such a man is always alive to his own faults. He never thinks that others are guilty of an offence which he, in a moment of temptation, may have committed.—T.

† K. P. Singha mistranslates this line.—T.

‡ The construction is not at all difficult; yet both the Vernacular translators have misunderstood it, the Burdwan version being thoroughly unintelligible. This is only another form of the well known saying —'Do to others as you would that they should do to you.'—T.

$ The Burdwan translator gives an incorrect version of the second line: 'yad' is equivalent to 'yadi': 'anyasya' stands for 'anyam'. The genetive inflection is used for the accusative. 'Tatah' stands for 'tasmin', implying 'aupapatye vishaye'. 'Kuryat' is 'driggochari-kuryat'.—T.

¶ The surplus should not be coveted for its own sake but for such use.—T.

ceeding along which one may hope to meet with the deities; or, at such times when wealth is gained, adherence to the duties of sacrifice and gift is laudable.[23]* The sages have said that the accomplishment of objects by means of agreeable (pacific) means is righteousness. See, O Yudhishthira, that even this is the criterion that has been kept in view in declaring the indications of righteousness and iniquity.†[24] In days of old the Creator ordained righteousness endowing it with the power of holding the world together. The conduct of the good, that is fraught with excellence, is subjected to (numerous) restraints for acquiring righteousness which depends upon many delicate considerations.[25] The indications of righteousness have now been recounted to thee, O foremost one of Kuru's race! Do not, therefore, at any time set thy understanding upon any act that is wrong.'"[26]

SECTION CCLX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou sayest that righteousness or duty depends upon delicate considerations, that it is indicated by the conduct of those that are called good, that it is fraught with restraints (from numerous acts), and that its indications are also contained in the Vedas. It seems to me, however, that I have a certain inward light in consequence of which I can discriminate between right and wrong by inferences.‡[1] Numerous questions that I had intended to ask thee have all been answered by thee. There is one question, however, that I shall presently ask. It is not prompted, O king, by desire of empty disputation.[2] All these embodied creatures, it seems, take birth, exist, and leave their bodies, of their own nature. Duty and its reverse, therefore, connot be ascertained, O Bhārata, by study of the scriptures

---

* The second line is incorrectly rendered by K. P. Singha.—T.

† 'Priyābhyupagatam' is 'priyena prāptam' and not 'hingsayā'.—T.

‡ I am not sure that I have understood the original correctly. Nilakantha says that the sense intended to be conveyed is that Yudhishthira finds fault with Bhishma's previous discourse on the indications of righteousness.—T.

alone.*[3] The duties of a person who is well off are of one kind. Those of a person who has fallen into distress are of another kind. How can duty respecting seasons of distress be ascertained by reading the scriptures alone?†[4] The acts of the good, thou hast said, constitute righteousness (or duty). The good, however, are to be ascertained by their acts. The definition, therefore, has for its foundation, a begging of the question, with the result that what is meant by conduct of the good remains unsettled.[5] It is seen that some ordinary person commits unrighteousness while apparently achieving righteousness. Some extraordinary person again may be seen who achieves righteousness by committing acts that are apparently unrighteous.‡[6] Then, again, the proof (of what I say) has been furnished by even those that are well conversant with the scriptures themselves, for it has been heard by us that the ordinances of the Vedas disappear gradually in every successive age.[7] The duties in the Krita age are of one kind. Those in the Treta are of

---

* The argument, as explained by the Commentator is this: Bhishma has said that righteousness and its reverse arise from one's acts producing happiness or misery to others, and that they both affect one's future life in respect of the happiness and misery enjoyed or endured therein. But living creatures says Yudhishthira, are seen to take their births, exist, and die, of their own nature. Nature, therefore, seems to be the efficient cause of birth, existence, and death, and not the declarations in the Crutis, consistent though those declarations be with considerations of felicity or the reverse. The study of the Vedas, therefore, cannot alone lead to a knowledge of righteousness and its reverse.—T.

† Distress may be of infinite variety. Derrogation also from duty may, therefore, be of infinite variety. It is impossible to note these derrogations (justifiable in view of the degree of distress felt) in any code of morals however comprehensive.—T.

‡ The Commentator cites the example of Cudras listening to forbidden scriptures in expectation of merit. They commit sin by such acts. Then again high Brâhmanas like Agastya, by cursing the denizens of the Dandaka forest, achieved great merit. In persons universally called ordinary or even low, indications are observable of good behaviour, and in those acknowledged to be good and respectable, acts may be noticed that are not good. That, therefore, which is called the conduct of the good is extremely unascertainable.—T.

another kind, and those in the Dwāpara are again different. The duties in the Kāli age, again, are entirely of another kind. It seems, therefore, that duties have been laid down for the respective ages according to the powers of human beings in the respective ages.[8] When, therefore, all the declarations in the Vedas do not apply equally to all the ages, the saying that the declarations of the Vedas are true is only a popular form of speech indulged in for popular satisfaction. From the *Çrutis* have originated the *Smritis* whose scope again is very wide.[9] If the Vedas be authority for everything, then authority would attach to the *Smritis* also for the latter are based on the former. When, however, the Crutis and the *Smritis* contradict each other, how can either be authoritative?[10] Then again it is seen that when some wicked persons of great might cause certain portions of certain courses of righteous acts to be stopped, these are destroyed for ever.*[11] Whether we know it or not know it, whether we are able to ascertain it or not to ascertain it, the course of duty is finer than the edge of a razor and grosser than even a mountain.[12] Righteousness (in the form of sacrifices and other religious acts) at first appears in the form of the romantic edifices of vapour seen in the distant sky. When, however, it is examined by the learned, it disappears and becomes invisible.†[13] Like the small ponds at which cattle drink or the shallow aqueducts along culti-

---

* The commentator cites the instance of the stoppage of the Horse-sacrifice in consequence of the interference of Indra with Janamejaya while the latter was bent upon celebrating one for the acquisition of merit.—T.

† The vapoury edifices and forms seen in the distant sky are called 'Gandharva-nagara' from the popular belief that they are cities or towns inhabited by the Gandharvas, a class of beings superior to men. These appear to the view only to disappear very soon. What the speaker wishes to say is that sacrifices and religious acts at first appear romantic and delightful in consequence of the fruits they hold forth, *viz.*, heaven and felicity. But when they are examined by the light of philosophy, they disappear or shrink into nothingness, for as acts, they are transitory and their consequences too are of the same character.—T.

vated fields, that dry up very soon, the eternal practices inculcated in the Smritis, falling into discontinuance, at last disappear totally (in the Kali age).[14] Amongst men that are not good some are seen to become hypocrites (in respect of the acquisition of righteousness) by suffering themselves to be urged by desire. Some become so, urged by the wishes of others. Others, numbering many, tread in the same path, influenced by diverse other motives of a similar character.[15]* It cannot be denied that such acts, (though accomplished by persons under the influence of evil passions) are righteous. Fools, again, say that righteousness is an empty sound among those called good. They ridicule such persons and regard them as men destitute of reason.[16] Many great men, again, turning back (from the duties of their own order) betake themselves to the duties of the kingly order. No such conduct, therefore, is to be seen (as observed by any man), which is fraught with universal benevolence.†[17] By a certain course of conduct one becomes really meritorious. That very course of conduct obstructs another in the acquisition of merit. Another, by practising at his pleasure that conduct, it is seen, remains unchanged.‡[18] Thus that conduct by which one becomes meritorious impedes another in the acquisition of merit. One may thus see that all courses of conduct are seen to lose singleness of purpose and character.[19] It seems, therefore, that only that which

---

* The object of this Verse is to shew that it is extremely difficult to ascertain who the good are whose conduct should be taken as the standard of righteousness.—T.

† The Commentator cites the instance of Drona and others of that class. These men must be regarded as Mahäjanas and Sàdhus, but how can their conduct be regarded as righteous? What Yudhishthira means to say is that the standards of righteousness or that by which a good man may be known, is difficult of ascertainment.—T.

‡ The examples of Viçwāmitra, Jāmadagnya, and Vaçishtha are cited by the Commentator. The first won pre-eminence by his mastery over weapons. The second lost his character as a Brāhmana by the profession of arms. The third lost nothing although he punished Viçwāmitra's insolence by using even carnal weapons.—T.

the learned of ancient times called righteousness is righteousness to this day; and through that course of conduct (which the learned so settled) the distinctions and limitations (that govern the world) have become eternal.*' "[20]

SECTION CCLXI.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the conversation of Tulādhāra with Jājali on the topic of righteousness.[1] There was once a Brāhmana of the name of Jājali who lived in a certain forest, practising the ways of a forest-recluse.†[1] Of austere penances, he proceeded on a certain occasion towards the sea-shore, and arrived there began to practise the most severe penances.[2] Observing many vows and restraints, his food regulated by many rules of fast, his body clad in rags and skins, bearing matted locks on his head his entire person smeared with filth and clay, that Brāhmana possessed of intelligence passed many years there, suspending speech (and engaged in Yoga meditation).[3] Possessed of great energy, that regenerate ascetic, O monarch, while living within the waters (of the sea), roamed through all the worlds with the speed of the mind, desirous of seeing all things.‡[4] Having beheld the whole Earth bounded by the ocean and adorned with rivers and lakes and woods, the ascetic one day, while sitting under the water, began to think in this strain.[5]—In this world of mobile and immobile creatures there is none equal to me!

---

* What Yudhishthira says here is that righteousness or virtue or duty does not depend upon the Crutis or the Smritis, nor upon considerations of happiness or misery. On the other hand, righteousness is arbitrary in respect of its standard, that being called righteous which was called so by the learned of ancient times. As regards happiness or misery, its cause is eternal nature.—T.

† 'In this connection', *i. e.*, the subject of the true cause to which is to be ascribed the dispensation of happiness or its reverse.—T.

‡ His gross body was within the water. Neverthless, by Yoga power, he was able to rove over the world in his subtile body and behold everything he wished to see.—T.

Who can roam with me among the stars and planets in the firmament and dwell again within the waters![6] Unseen by the *Rākshasas* while he repeated this to himself, the Piçāchas said unto him,—It behoves thee not to say so![7] There is a man, named Tulādhāra, possessed of great fame and engaged in the business of buying and selling. Even he, O best of regenerate persons, is not worthy of saying such words as thou sayest![8]—Thus addressed by those beings, Jājali of austere penances replied unto them, saying,—I shall see that famous Tulādhāra who is possessed of such wisdom![9] —When the *Rishi* said those words, those superhuman beings raised him from the sea, and said unto him,—O best of regenerate persons, go thou along this road![10]—Thus addressed by those beings, Jājali proceeded onwards with a cheerless heart. Arrived at Bārānasi he met Tulādhāra whom he addressed, saying the following words.[11]

"Yudhishthira said,—'What, O sire, are those difficult feats that Jājali had performed before in consequence of which he had acquired such high success? It behoveth thee to describe them to me!'[12]

"Bhishma said,—'Jājali had become engaged in penances of the severest austerities. He used to perform ablutions morning and evening.[13] Carefully tending his fires, he was devoted to the study of the Vedas. Well conversant with the duties laid down for forest recluses, Jājali, (in consequence of his practices) seemed to blaze with effulgence.*[14] He continued to live in the woods, engaged all the while in penances. But he never regarded himself as one that had acquired any merit by his acts. In the season of rains he slept under the open sky. In autumn he sat in water.[15] In summer he exposed himself to the sun and the wind. Still he never regarded himself as one that had acquired any merit through such acts. He used to sleep on diverse kinds of painful beds and also on the bare earth.[16] Once on a time, that ascetic, while standing under the sky in the

* 'Criyà' is explained by the Commentator as implying the possession of Vedic lore.—T.

season of rains, received on his head repeated downpours from the clouds.[17] He had to pass through the woods repeatedly. What with exposure to the rains and what with the filth they caught, the locks of that sinless Rishi became entangled and intertwined with one another.[18] On one occasion that great ascetic, abstaining entirely from food and living upon air alone, stood in the forest like a post of wood. Unmoved at heart, he stood there, without once stirring an inch.[19] While he stood there like a wooden post, perfectly immovable, O Bhārata, a pair of *Kulinga* birds, O king, built their nest on his head.[20] Filled with compassion, the great *Rishis* suffered that feathery couple in building their nest among his matted locks with shreds of grass.[21] And as the ascetic stood there like a post of wood, the two birds lived on his head in happy trustfulness.[22] The season of rains passed away and autumn came. The couple, urged by desire, approached each other according to the law of the Creator, and in complete trustfulness laid their eggs, O king, on the head of that *Rishi*.[23] Of rigid vows and possessed of energy, the ascetic knew it. Knowing what the birds had done, Jājali moved not. Firmly resolved to acquire merit, no act that involved the slightest injury to others could recommend itself to him.[24] The feathery couple going away and returning every day from and to his head, happily and trustfully lived there, O puissant king![25] When in the progress of time the eggs became mature and young ones came out, they began to grow up in that nest, for Jājali moved not in the least.[26] Firm in the observance of his vows, the righteous-souled *Rishi* continued to hold and protect those eggs by standing on that very spot perfectly motionless and rapt in Yoga meditation.[27] In course of time the young ones grew and became equipt with wings. The *Muni* knew that the young *Kulingas* had attained to that stage of development.[28] That foremost of intelligent men, steady in the observance of vows, one day beheld those young ones and became filled with pleasure.[29] The parent-birds, seeing their young ones equipt with wings, became very happy and continued to dwell in the *Rishi's* head with them

in perfect trustfulness.[30] The learned Jājali saw that when the young birds became equipt with wings they took the air every evening and returned to his head without having proceeded far). He still stood motionless on that spot.[31] Sometime after he saw that, left by their parents, they went out by themselves and returned again by themselves. Jājali still moved not.[32] A little while after, the young birds going away in the morning passed the whole day out of his sight but came back in the evening for dwelling in the nest.[33] Sometime after, leaving their nest for five days at a stretch, they returned on the sixth day. Jājali still moved not.[34] Subsequently, when their strength became fully developed, they left him and returned not at all even after many days.[35] At last, on one occasion, leaving him, they came not even after a month. Then, O king, Jājali left that spot.[36] When they had thus gone away for good, Jājali wondered much, and thought that he had achieved ascetic success. Then pride penetrated his heart.[37] Firm in the observance of vows, the great ascetic, seeing the birds thus leave him after having been reared on his head, thought highly of himself, and became filled with delight.[38] He then bathed in a stream and poured libations on the sacred fire, and paid his adorations to the rising Sun.[39] Indeed, having thus caused those *chataka* birds to grow on his head, Jājali, that foremost of ascetics, began to slap his armpits and proclaim loudly through the sky,—*I have won great merit!*[40]—Then an invisible voice arose in the sky and Jājali heard these words :—Thou art not equal, O Jājali, to Tulādhāra in point of righteousness![41] Possessed of great wisdom, that Tulādhāra lives at Bārānasi. Even he is not fit to say what thou sayest, O regenerate one![42]—Hearing these words, Jājali became filled with wrath, and desirous of meeting with Tulādhāra, O monarch, began to roam over the whole Earth, observing the vow of silence and passing the night at that spot where evening overtook him.*[43] After

* This was a new vow that Jājali began to observe, the vow, *viz.*, of travelling over the entire Earth, sleeping there where evening overtook him.—T.

a considerable time he reached the city of Bārānasi, and saw Tulādhāra engaged in selling miscellaneous articles.*[45] As soon as the shop-keeper Tulādhāra beheld the Brāhmana arrived at his place, he cheerfully stood up and worshipped the guest with proper salutations.†[45]

"'Tulādhāra said,—Without doubt, O Brāhmana, it is known to me that thou hast come to *me*. Listen, however, O foremost of regenerate persons, to what I say![46] Living on a low land near the sea-shore thou hadst undergone very austere penances. But thou hadst no consciousness of having achieved righteousness or merit.[47] When thou hadst at last attained to ascetic success, certain birds were born on thy head. Thou tookest great care of the little creatures.[48] When at last those birds became equipt with wings and when they began to leave thy head for going hither and thither in search of food, it was then that, in consequence of having thus assisted at the birth of those *Chatakas*, thou camest to feel the impulse of pride, O Brāhmana, thinking thou hadst achieved great merit.‡[49] Then, O foremost of regenerate persons, thou heardst in the sky a voice that referred to me. The words thou hadst heard filled thee with wrath, and as the consequence thereof thou art here! Tell me, what wish of thine I shall accomplish, O best of Brāhmanas!—'"[50]

SECTION CCLXII.

"Bhishma said,—'Thus addressed by the intelligent Tulādhāra on that occasion, Jājali of great intelligence, that foremost of ascetics, said these words unto him.[1]

"'Jājali said,—Thou sellest all kinds of juices and scents, O son of a trader, as also (barks and leaves of) large trees

---

* A Buniya's shop is a miscellaneous depot. It contains chiefly spices and drugs, but there is no article for domestic use that may not be found in such a shop.—T.

† 'Bhāndajivanah' is one who lays out capital and lives upon its profits.—T.

‡ 'Chārin' is 'sancharanam' for food.—T.

and herbs and their fruits and roots.[2] How hast thou succeeded in acquiring a certitude or stability of understanding? Whence hath this knowledge come to thee? O thou of gteat intelligence, tell me all this in detail![3]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by that Brāhmana possessed of great fame, Tulādhāra of the Vaiçya order, well acquainted with the truths touching the interpretations of morality and contented with knowledge, discoursed to Jājali who had undergone severe penances, upon the ways of morality.*[4]

" 'Tulādhāra said,—O Jājali, I know morality, which is eternal, with all its mysteries. It is nothing else than that ancient morality which is known to all, and which consists of universal friendliness, and is fraught with beneficence to all creatures.†[5] That mode of living which is founded upon a total harmlessness towards all creatures or (in case of actual necessity) upon a minimum of such harm, is the highest morality. I live according to that mode, O Jājali![6] This my house hath been built with wood and grass cut by other people's hands. Lacdye, the roots of Nymphœa lotus, filaments of the lotus, diverse kinds of good scents,‡[7] and many kinds of liquids, O regenerate *Rishi*, with the exception of wines, I purchase from other people's hands and sell without cheating.[8] He, O Jājali, is said to know what morality or righteousness is, who is always the friend of all creatures and who is always engaged in the good of all crea-

---

* In some of the Bengal texts, Verse 4 consists of 3 lines. The 3rd line, however, is omitted in the Bombay edition.—T.

† The Commentator observes that in the second line the speaker explains what morality with its mysteries is.—T.

‡ 'Padmaka' or 'Padma-kāshta' is the rootstock of Nymphœa lotus. A kind of medicinal wood also is indicated by it, which is brought from Malwa and Southern India. To this day, it enters into the composition of many drugs used by Hindu physicians. 'Tunga' is either the filaments of the lotus, or the tree called Punnāga which is identified with the Calophyllum inophyllum of the Linnean genera. The Bombay reading 'parichcchinnaih' for 'parachcchinnaih' does not seem to be correct.—T.

tures, in thought, word, and deed.[9] I never solicit any one, I never quarrel with any one; I never cherish aversion for any one. I never cherish desire for anything. I cast equal eyes upon all things and all creatures. Behold, O Jājali, this is my vow![10] My scales are perfectly even, O Jājali, with respect to all creatures.*[11] I neither praise nor blame the acts of others, viewing this variety in the world, O foremost of Brāhmanas, to be like the variety observable in the sky.†[12] Know, O Jājali, that I cast equal eyes upon all creatures. O foremost of intelligent men, I see no difference between a clod of earth, a piece of stone, and a lump of gold.[13] As the blind, the deaf, and they that are destitute of reason, are perfectly consoled for the loss of their senses, after the same manner am I consoled, by their example, (for the enjoyments I abstain from).‡[14] As they that are overtaken by decrepitude, they that are afflicted by disease, and they that are weakened and emaciated, have no relish for enjoyments of any kind, after the same manner I have ceased to feel any relish for wealth or pleasure or enjoyments.[15] When a person fears nothing and is not feared himself, when he cherishes no desire and hath no aversion for anything, he is then said to attain to *Brahma*.[16] When a person does not conduct himself sinfully towards any creature in thought, word, or deed, then is he said to attain to *Brahma*.[17] There is no past, no future. There is no morality or righteousness. He who is not an object of fear with any creature

---

* In the Bengal editions, Verse 11 consists of one line. In the Bombay text, it is included with the 10th Verse which is made a triplet. The meaning is that weighing creatures I regard all of them as equal. In my scales a Brāhmana does not weigh heavier than a Chāndāla, or an elephant heavier than a dog or cat.—T.

† The sense is this: there is variety in this world. It is, however, like the variety of aspects which the sky shows. It is the same Godhead that manifests itself in diverse forms even as it is the same sky that puts forth various aspects in consequence of the appearance and disappearance of clouds.—T.

‡ 'Devairapihita-dwārāh' means persons whose doors (senses) have been closed by the deities; *i. e.*, men with senses that are defective or lost.—T.

succeeds in attaining to a state in which there is no fear.*[18] On the other hand, that person who for harshness of speech and severity of temper, is a source of trouble unto all creatures even as death itself, certainly attains to a state which abounds with fear.[19] I follow the practices of high-souled and benevolent men of advanced years who with their children and children's children live in the due observance of the ordinance laid down in the scriptures.†[20] The eternal practices (laid down in the Vedas) are entirely given up by one who suffers himself to be stupified by some errors that he may have noticed in the conduct of those that are admittedly good and wise. One, however, that is endued with learning, or one that has subdued one's senses, or one that is possessed of strength of mind, succeeds in attaining to Emancipation, guided by that very conduct.‡[21] That wise man who, having restrained his senses, practiseth, with a heart cleansed from all desire of injuring others, the conduct that is followed by those called good, is sure, O Jājali, to acquire the merit of righteousness (and Emancipation which is its fruit).[22] In this world, as in a river, a piece of wood that is being borne away by the current as it pleases, is seen to come into contact (for some time) with another piece that is being similarly borne away. There, on the current, other pieces of wood that had been joined together, are seen to again separate from one another. Grass, sticks, and cowdung cakes are

---

* That state is *Brahma*, and there is no fear of return from it. Hence, it is called 'abhayam padam.'—T.

† The Commentator explains that the mention of 'putra-pautrinām' indicates that 'kulāchāra' or family practices (if not very cruel) are authoritative.—T.

‡ The correct reading seems to be 'vimuchyate.' The sense is this: there is an eternal course of righteousness as laid down in the Vedas. That which is called the conduct of the good may sometimes be stained by some errors. Fools, led by this, give up righteousness itself. On the other hand, wise men, avoiding those errors, take what is good and are saved. An old saying is cited by the Commentator to the effect that when all is threatened, a wise man gives up half for saving the remainder. A fool, however, gives up the whole when only half is threatened with destruction.—T.

seen to be united together. This union is due to accident and not to purpose or design.*[23-24] He of whom no creature is frightened in the least is himself, O ascetic, never frightened by any creature.[25] He, on the other hand, O learned man, of whom every creature is frightened as of a wolf, becomes himself filled with fear as aquatic animals when forced to leap on the shore from fear of the roaring *Vadavā* fire.†[26] This practice of universal harmlessness hath arisen even thus. One may follow it by every means in one's power. He who has followers and he who has wealth may seek to adopt it. It is sure to lead also to prosperity and heaven.‡[27] In consequence of their ability to dispel the fears of others, men possessed of wealth and followers are regarded as foremost by the learned. They that are for ordinary happiness practise this duty of universal harmlessness for the sake of fame ; while they that are truly skilled, practise the same for the sake of attaining to *Brahma*.$[28] Whatever fruits one enjoys by penances, by sacrifices, by practising liberality, by speaking the truth, and by paying court to wisdom, may all be had by practising the duty of harmlessness.[29] That person who gives unto all creatures the assurance of harmlessness obtains the merit of

---

* The word 'iha' in Verse 23 is the only indication of the speaker's desire to allude to the union of relatives in this world.—T.

† K. P. Singha quietly omits the second half of the second line. The Burdwan translator, as usual, blunders in rendering it. The fact is, 'kroçatah' is *not* an adjective of 'vrikāt', but stands for the roaring Vadavā fire. The Commentator distinctly mentions 'drishtānte Vadavāgnih.'—T.

‡ Both the Vernacular translators have misunderstood this Verse.—T.

$ 'Alpahrillekhāh' is explained by the Commentator as 'alpam vāhyasukham hridilekheva pratishthitam yeshām' ; hence, men who seek ordinary felicity, *viz.*, that which has a termination. The 'patāvah' are, of course, the truly wise, *i. e.*, those that seek felicity that is unending. 'Kritsna' is *Brahma* ; 'tadartham abhayadānamitinirnaya yeshām', *i. e.*, the truly wise practise it for the sake of *Brahma*. It is almost impossible to understand Verses such as these without the aid of the Commentator.—T.

all the sacrifices and at last wins fearlessness for himself as his reward. There is no duty superior to the duty of abstention from injuring other creatures.[30] He of whom, O great ascetic, no creature is frightened in the least, obtains for himself fearlessness of all creatures.[31] He of whom everybody is frightened as one is of a snake ensconced within one's (sleeping) chamber, never acquires any merit in this world or in the next.[32] The very gods, in their search after it, become stupified in the track of that person who transcends all states, the person, *viz.*, who constitutes himself the soul of all creatures and who looketh upon all creatures as identical with his own self.*[33] Of all gifts, the assurance of harmlessness to all creatures is the highest (in point of merit). I tell thee truly, believe me, O Jājali![34] One who betakes himself to acts at first wins prosperity, but then (upon the exhaustion of his merit) he once more encounters adversity.[35] Beholding the destruction of (the merits of) acts, the wise do not applaud acts.[36] There is no duty, O Jājali, that is not prompted by some motive (of happiness). Duty, however, is very subtile. Duties have been laid down in the Vedas for the sake of both *Brahma* and heaven.†[37] The subject of duties hath many secrets and mysteries. It is so subtile that it is not easy to understand it fully. Amongst diverse conflicting ordinances, some succeed in comprehending duty by observing the acts of the good.‡[38] Why dost

---

* 'Padaishinah' has reference to 'Devāh'. The sandhi in 'Devāpi, is ārsha. 'The deities become stupified in his track', *i. e.*, fail to see or find it out, for such a man is 'apadah', *i. e.*, transcends the highest regions of felicity, such as even the region of Brahman, because of their non-eternity. Such a man attains to *Brahma*, which is infinite and eternal.—T.

† 'Bhuta' is explained by the Commentator as *Brahma*, and 'Bhavya' as heaven or the regions of felicity in the next world. In the Vedas both kinds of duties occur, such as Camah, &c., for *Brahma*, and sacrifices, &c., for heaven.—T.

‡ The Commentator cites some conflicting ordinances about the slaughter of kine. The subject of duty, is thus confused, contradictory declarations being noticeable in the Vedas.—T.

thou not consume them that emasculate bulls and bore their noses and cause them to bear heavy burthens and bind them and put them under diverse kinds of restraint,[39] and that eat the flesh of living creatures after slaying them? Men are seen to own men as slaves,[40] and by beating, by binding, and by otherwise subjecting them to restraints, cause them to labour day and night. These people are not ignorant of the pain that results from beating and chains.*[41] In every creature that is endued with the five senses live all the deities. Surya, Chandramas, the god of wind, Brahman, Prāna, Kratu, and Yama, (these dwell in living creatures).[42] There are men that live by trafficking in living creatures! When they earn a living by such a sinful course, what scruples need they feel in selling dead carcases? The goat is Agni. The sheep is Varuna. The horse is Surya. Earth is the deity Virāt.[43] The cow and the calf are Soma. The man who sells these can never obtain success. But what fault can attach to the sale of oil, or of Ghrita, or honey, or drugs, O regenerate one?[44] There are many animals that grow up in ease and comfort in places free from gnats and biting insects. Knowing that they are loved dearly by their mothers, men persecute them in diverse ways,[45] and lead them into miry spots abounding with biting insects. Many draft animals are oppressed with heavy burthens. Others, again, are made to languish in consequence of treatment not sanctioned by the scriptures.[46] I think that such acts of injury done to animals are no way distinguished from fœticide. People regard the profession of agriculture to be sinless. That profession, however, is certainly fraught with cruelty.[47] The iron-faced plough wounds the soil and many creatures that live in the soil. Cast thy eyes, O Jājali, on those bullocks yoked to the plough![48] Kine are called in the Crutis the Unslayable. That man perpetrates a great sin who slays

---

* 'Badha' here means striking or beating. If taken in the sense of 'death' the meaning would be putting some to death so that others may be frightened. These Verses are a noble protest against the institution of slavery.—T.

a bull or a cow.*[49] In days of yore, many Rishis with restrained senses addressed Nahusha, saying,—Thou hast, O king, slain a cow which is declared in the scriptures to be like unto one's mother! Thou hast also slain a bull, which is declared to be like unto the Creator himself!†[50] Thou hast perpetrated an evil act, O Nahusha, and we have been exceedingly pained at it!—For cleansing Nahusha, however, they divided that sin into a hundred and one parts and converting the fragments into diseases cast them among all creatures.‡[51] Thus, O Jājali, did those highly-blessed *Rishis* cast that sin on all living creatures, and addressing Nahusha who had been guilty of fœticide, said,—We shall not be able to pour libations in thy sacrifice![52]—Thus said those high-souled Rishis and Yatis conversant with the truths of all things, having ascertained by their ascetic power that king Nahusha had not been intentionally guilty of that sin.§[53] These, O Jājali, are some of the wicked and dreadful practices that are current in this world. Thou practisest them because they are practised by all men from ancient times, and not because they agree with the dictates of thy cleansed understanding.[54] One should practise what one considers to be one's duty, guided by reasons, instead of blindly follow-

---

* Some texts read 'Prishadhro-gāmlavanniva', meaning 'Prishadhra perpetrated a great sin by killing a cow (mistaking it for a tiger, as the story goes).—T.

† The cow is called the mother because of the use to which she is subservient. Her milk nourishes every infant as much as the mother's bosom. The bull, again, is Prajāpati, because like Prajāpati he creates offspring and assists man in the production of food —T.

‡ Nahusha had killed a cow and a bull for honoring the *Rishis*. The latter, however, expressed their dissatisfaction at the act, and cleansed him of the sin in the manner indicated in the text. The Commentator cites the instance of how Indra was cleansed of the sin of Brāhmanicide. The *Rishis*, in compassion, distributed the sin among all beings of the feminine sex. That sin manifests itself in their periodical flows and the consequent impurity —T.

§ The Commentator explains that the Rishis addressed Nahusha in that style even when they knew that he had not intentionally slain the cow and the bull. The object of the speaker is to show the enormity of the act when done intentionally.—T.

ing the practices of the world. Listen now, O Jājali, as to what my behaviour is towards him that injures and him that praises me![55] I regard both of them in the same light. I have none whom I like and none whom I dislike. The wise applauded such a course of conduct as consistent with duty or religion.[56] Even this course of conduct, which is consistent with reasons, is followed by Yatis. The righteous always observe it with eyes possessed of improved vision.—' "[57]

SECTION CCLXIII.

" 'Jājali said,—This course of duty that thou, O holder of scales, preachest closes the door of heaven against all creatures and puts a stop to the very means of their subsistence.[1] From agriculture comes food. That food offers subsistence even to thee. With the aid of animals and of crops and herbs, human beings, O trader, are enabled to support their existence.[2] From animals and food sacrifices flow. Thy doctrines smack of atheism. This world will come to an end if the means by which life is supported have to be abandoned!—[3]

" 'Tulādhāra said,—I shall now speak on the subject of the means of sustenance. I am not, O Brāhmana, an athiest! I do not blame Sacrifices. The man, however, is very rare that is truly conversant with Sacrifice.[4] I bow to that Sacrifice which is ordained for Brāhmanas. I bow also to them that are conversant with that Sacrifice! Alas, the Brāhmanas, having given up the Sacrifice that is ordained for them, have betaken themselves to the performance of Sacrifices that are for Kshatriyas.*[5] Many persons of faith, O regenerate one, that are covetous and fond of wealth, without having understood the true meaning of the declarations of the Crutis, and proclaiming things that are really false but that have the show of truth, have introduced

---

* The fact is, all Sacrifices in which injury is done to animal and vegetable life are Sacrifices for Kshatriyas. The only Sacrifice that Brāhmanas should perform is *Yoga*.—T.

many kinds of Sacrifices, saying,[6]—This should be given away in this Sacrifice ! This other thing should be given away in this other Sacrifice ! The first of this is very laudable !—The consequence, however, of all this, O Jājali, is that theft and many evil acts spring up.*[7] It should be known that only that sacrificial offering which was acquired by righteous means can gratify the gods. There are abundant indications in the scriptures that the worship of the deities may be accomplished with bows, with libations poured on the fire, with recitation or chaunting of the Vedas, and with plants and herbs.[8] From their religious acts unrighteous persons get wicked offspring. From covetous men are born children that are covetous, and from those that are contented spring children that are contented.[9] If the sacrificer and the priest suffer themselves to be moved by desire of fruit (in respect of the Sacrifices they perform or assist in), their children take the stain. If, on the other hand, they do not yield to desire of fruit, the children born to them become of the same kind. From Sacrifices spring progeny like clear water from the firmament.[10] The libations poured on the sacrificial fire rise up to the Sun. From the Sun springs rain. From rain springs food. From food are born living creatures.[11] In former days, men righteously devoted to Sacrifices used to obtain therefrom the fruition of all their wishes. The Earth yielded crops without tillage. The blessings uttered by the *Rishis* produced herbs and plants.†[12] The men of former times never performed Sacrifices from desire of fruits and never regarded themselves as called upon

---

* Sacrifices are always attractive for the fame they bring. Their performance depends upon wealth. The acquisition of wealth leads to the commission of many evil acts.—T.

† The sense is that in former days when the true meaning of Sacrifice was understood and all men performed them without being urged by the desire of fruit, the beneficial consequences that flowed were the production of crops without tillage (and without injury to animals that live in holes and burrows). The good wishes the Rishis cherished for all creatures were sufficient to produce herbs and plants and trees. May not this be taken as an indication of the traditional idea of the happiness of Eden before the fall of man ?—T.

to enjoy those fruits. Those who somehow perform Sacrifices, doubting the while their efficacy,[13] take birth in their next lives as dishonest, wily, and greedy men exceedingly covetous of wealth. That man who by the aid of false reasoning holds up all the authoritative scriptures as fraught with evil, is certain to go, for such sinful act of his, into the regions of the sinful. Such a man is certainly possessed of a sinful soul, O foremost of Brāhmanas, and always remains here, bereft of wisdom.*[14-15] That man who regards those acts obligatory which have been laid down in the Vedas and directed to be accomplished every day, who is penetrated with fear if he fails to accomplish them any day, who takes all the essentials of Sacrifice as identical with *Brahma*, and who never regards himself as the actor, is truly a Brāhmana.†[16] If the acts of such a person become incomplete, or if their completion be obstructed by all unclean animals, even then those acts are, as heard by us, of superior efficacy. If, however, those acts are done from desire of fruit (and their completion be obstructed by such impediments) then expiation would become necessary.[17] They who covet the acquisition of the highest object of life (*viz.*, Emancipation), who are bereft of cupidity in respect of all kinds of worldly wealth, who discard all provision for the future, and who are freed from envy, betake themselves to practice of truth

---

* 'Bereft of wisdom' is explained by the Commentator as implying the non-attainment of Emancipation.—T.

† This Verse is exceedingly terse and condensed. In the second line, the words 'Brahmaiva vartate loke', literally rendered, mean 'who believes that only Brahma exists in the world'. The Commentator takes these words as implying 'who regards every essential of Sacrifice as *Brahma*'. Although I have followed the Commentator, yet I think his interpretation to be rather far-fetched. Why may not the words be taken in a literal sense? He who takes *Brahma* to be all things and all things to be *Brahma*, becomes sinless and deserves to be called a Brāhmana. The last words of the second line simply mean 'who does not regard his own self as the actor.' The view expressed in the Gitā is that we should do all acts believing ourselves to be only agents or instruments of the Supreme deity. Acts are His, we are only His tools. Such a conviction is sure to guard us against all evil acts.—T.

and self-restraint as their Sacrifice.*[18] They that are conversant with the distinction between body and soul, that are devoted to Yoga, and that meditate on the *Pranava*, always succeed in gratifying others.†[19] The universal Brahma (*viz.*, *Pranava*), which is the soul of all the deities, dwells in him who is conversant with Brahma. When, therefore such a man eats and is gratified, all the deities, O Jājali, become gratified and are contented.‡[20] As one who is gratified with all kinds of taste feels no desire for any particular taste, after the same manner one who is gratified with knowledge hath everlasting gratification which to him is a source of perfect bliss.[21] Those wise men who are the refuge of righteousness and whose delight is in righteousness, are persons that have certain knowledge of what is to be done and what should not be done. One possessed of such wisdom always regards all things in the universe to have sprung from his own self.$[22] Some that are endued with knowledge, that strive to reach the other shore (of this ocean of life), and that are possessed of faith, succeed in attaining to the region of Brahman, which is productive of great blessings, highly sacred, and

---

* What is said in Verse 17 is that when Sacrifices are done from a sense of duty, their incompleteness notwithstanding, they become efficacious. It is only when they are performed from desire of fruit that expiation becomes necessary if their completion be obstructed by any cause. Having thus applauded the Sacrifices (represented by acts) of the truly wise, other kinds of Sacrifice are indicated in Verse 18 K. P. Singha translates 18 correctly. The Burdwan version is erroneous.—T.

† 'Swayajna' is literally 'sacrifice in one's own self'; hence, Yoga. 'Brahmam vedam' is *Pranava* or 'Om' —T.

‡ K. P. Singha erroneously translates this verse. The Burdwan version so far as it goes, is correct. 'Sarvam Brahma' is explained as *Pranava*, which is 'akhilam daivatam', for the Crutis declare that 'Omkārah sarvadaivatyah'. 'Brahmani' is 'Brahmavidi' What is intended to be said in this Verse is that when such a man eats and is gratified, the whole universe becomes gratified. In the Vana Parvan, Krishna, by swallowing a particle of potherb gratified the hunger of thousands of Durvāsā's pupils.—T.

$ Such a man regards all things as Brahma, and himself as Brahma.—T.

inhabited by righteous persons,—a region which is freed from sorrow, whence there is no return, and where there is no kind of agitation or pain.[23-24] Such men do not covet heaven. They do not adore Brahma in costly Sacrifices. They walk along the path of the righteous. The Sacrifices they perform are performed without injury to any creature.*[25] These men know trees and herbs and fruits and roots as the only sacrificial offerings. Covetous priests, for they are desirous of wealth, never officiate at the sacrifices of these (poor) men.[26] These regenerate men, although all their acts have been completed, still perform sacrifices from desire of doing good to all creatures and constituting their own selves as sacrificial offerings.†[27] For this reason, cupidinous priests officiate at the Sacrifices of only those misguided persons who, without endeavouring to attain to Emancipation, seek for heaven. As regards those, however, that are really good, they always seek, by accomplishing their own duties, to cause others to ascend to heaven. Looking at both these kinds of behaviour, O Jājali, I have (abstained from injuring any creature in the world and have) come to regard all creatures with an equal heart.‡[28] Endued with wisdom, many foremost of Brāhmanas perform Sacrifices (which with respect to their fruits are of two kinds, for some of them lead to Emancipation whence there is no return, and others lead to regions of bliss whence there is return). By performing those Sacrifices, they proceed, O great ascetic, along paths trodden by the gods.[29] Of one class of Sacrificers (*viz.*, they who sacrifice

---

* K. P. Singha blunders in rendering the second half of the first line. 'Yaçah', the Commentator explains, is 'Mahadyaçah' or Brahma. 'The path of the righteous', the Commentator thinks, is Yoga.—T.

† *I. e.*, they perform mental Sacrifices.—T.

‡ 'For this reason', *i. e.*, because they cannot officiate at the Sacrifices of those that are truly good. In the second line, (28 is a triplet), the nominative 'sādhavah' is understood. The meaning is that such men, that is, the truly good, accomplish their own duties not for benefiting their own selves but for the good of others. What is said in the third line is that observing both kinds of behaviour, *i. e.*, that of the good and that of the misguided, I follow the path of the former by abstaining from every kind of injury.—T.

from desire of fruit) there is return (from the region which they reach). Of those, however, that are truly wise (*viz.*, those who sacrifice without being urged thereto by desire of fruit,) there is no return. Although both classes of sacrificers, O Jājali, proceed along the path trodden by the deities, (in consequence of the sacrifices they perform), yet such is the difference between their ultimate ends.*[30] In consequence of the success that attends the purposes formed in the minds of such men, bulls, without being forced thereto, willingly set their shoulders to the plough for assisting at tillage and to the yoke for dragging their cars, and kine pour forth milk from udders untouched by human hands.[31] Creating sacrificial stakes (and other necessaries of Sacrifice) by simple fiats of the will, they perform many kinds of Sacrifice well completed with abundant presents.† One who is of such a cleansed soul may slaughter a cow (as an offering in Sacrifice).‡[32] They, therefore, that are not of that kind should perform Sacrifices with herbs and plants (and not animals). Since Renunciation hath such merit, it is for that reason that I have kept it before my eyes in speaking to thee.§[33] The gods know him for a Brāhmana who has given up all desire of fruit, who hath no exertion in respect of worldly acts, who never bows down his head unto any one, who never utters the praises of others, and who is endued with strength though his acts have all been

---

* 'Yajneshu' is 'among Sacrifices'. 'Yāni' has reference to the different kinds of Sacrifices, *viz.*, those performed from desire of fruit and consequently productive of Return, and those not performed from desire of fruit and consequently leading to Emancipation. 'Tena' stands for 'tena Yajnena'. What the speaker wishes to lay down is that only a certain class of sacrificers succeed in attaining to an end whence there is no return.—T.

† The sense seems to be that they perform mental Sacrifices, and not actual sacrifices after having created by Yoga-power all the necessary articles.—T.

‡ The sin of slaughtering a cow will not touch such a person, his soul being above the influence of acts.—T.

§ *I. e.*, I have for this reason spoken in praise of Renunciation and not that frame of mind in which one acts from desire of fruit.—T.

weakened.*[34] What, O Jajali, will be the end of him who doth not recite the Vedas unto others, who doth not perform Sacrifices (properly), who doth not make gifts unto (deserving) Brāhmanas, and who followeth an avocation in which every kind of desire is indulged? By properly reverencing, however, the duties that appertain to Renunciation, one is sure of attaining to *Brahma*.†[35]—

"'Jājali said,—We had never before, O son of a trader, heard of these recondite doctrines of ascetics that perform only mental Sacrifices. These doctrines are exceedingly difficult of comprehension. It is for this reason that I ask thee (about them). The sages of olden days were not followers of these doctrines of Yoga. Hence the sages that have succeeded them have not propounded them (for general acceptance).‡[36] If thou sayest that only men of brutish minds fail to achieve sacrifices in the soil of the Soul, then, O son of a trader, by what acts would they succeed in accomplishing their happiness? Tell me this, O thou of great wisdom! Great is my faith in thy words!§[37]—

---

* These are, of course, the indications of complete Renunciation. Such a man never bends his head to another and never flatters another, for he is above all want.—T.

† Verse 35 is a triplet. In the first two lines the speaker say that one who does not accomplish the acts specified, fails to attain to a desirable end. In the last line, 'idam' refers to the duties of a true Brāhmana or the indications of Renunciation as laid down in Verse 34. 'Daivatam kritwā' is explained by the Commentator as 'Daivatamiva sevanīyam kritwā'. 'Yajnam' is Vishnu or Brahma as the Crutis declare.—T.

‡ The Munis referred to in the first line are those mentioned in Verse 31 above. They are the 'atmayājins' or mental sacrificers. 'Kashtam' is 'gahanam'. 'Asya' in the second line refers to the particular 'Yoga' of those Munis. Lest the Yoga propounded by Tulādhāra be regarded as altogether new, a circumstance that would detract from their merit, the Commentator explains the words 'nātah' as preceded by 'Avekshamanā api' understood.—T

§ 'Yasmin' here is equivalent to 'Yadi', it being, as the Commentator explains, 'Vibhaktipratirupakam avyayam'. 'Eva' is equivalent to 'Evam', meaning 'Twadukta prakārena'; 'ātmatirtha' means 'ātmaiva tirtham or Yajnabhumistatra'. 'Prapnuyāt' in the second line stands for 'prāpnuyun'. The use of the singular for the plural is *ārsha*.—T.

"'Tulādhāra said,—Sometimes sacrifices performed by some persons do not become sacrifices (in consequence of the absence of faith of those that perform them). These men, it should be said, are not worthy of performing any sacrifice (internal or external). As regards the faithful, however, only one thing, *viz.*, the cow, is fit for upholding all sacrifices by means of full libations of clarified butter, milk, and curds, the hair at end of her tail, her horns, and her hoofs.*[38] (The Vedas declare that sacrifices cannot be performed by an unmarried man.) In performing sacrifices, however, according to the mode I have pointed out, (*viz.*, by abstaining from slaughter of animals and dedicating only clarified butter, &c.,), one may make Faith one's wedded wife, for dedicating such (innocent) offerings to the deities. By duly reverencing such sacrifices, one is sure to attain to *Brahma.*†[39] To the exclusion of all animals (which are certainly unclean as offerings in sacrifices), the rice-ball is a worthy offering in sacrifices. All rivers are as sacred as the Saraswati, and all mountains are sacred.[40] O Jājali, the Soul is itself a *tirtha.* Do not wander about on the Earth for visiting sacred places! A person, by observing these duties (that I have spoken of and that do not involve injury to other creatures), and by seeking the acquisition of merit agreeably to his own

---

* What is said here is this: the sacrifices of some men become lost through absence of faith. These men, it is plain, are not worthy of performing any kind of sacrifice internal or external. The performance of sacrifice, however, is easy. The cow and her products can minister to all sacrifices. In the case of those that are able, full libations of clarified butter, of milk, and of curds, are sufficient to enable them to perform whatever sacrifice they wish. As regards those that are poor, the dust of a cow's hoof and the water in which a cow's tail and horns have been washed, are quite sufficient to enable them to perform their sacrifices. 'Purnāhuti' should not, I think, be taken as different from clarified butter, &c.—T.

† All these Verses are exceedingly terse. 'Anena vidhinā' is the mode which the speaker himself advocates, *viz.*, the performance of sacrifices without slaughter of animals. 'Niyojayam' is an instance '*hetau* çatri'. After 'prakaroti' 'Craddhām' is understood. 'Ishtam' here means 'Yāgam'. 'Yajnam' (as in Verse 35 above) is 'Brahma'.—T.

ability, certainly succeeds in obtaining blessed regions hereafter.*[41]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'These are the duties, O Yudhishthira, which Tulādhāra applauded,—duties that are consistent with reason, and that are always observed by those that are good and wise.' "[42]

SECTION CCLXIV.

" 'Tulādhāra said,—See with thy own eyes, O Jājali, who, *viz.*, those that are good or those that are otherwise, have adopted this path of duty that I have spoken of! Thou shalt then understand properly how the truth stands.[1] Behold, many birds are hovering in the sky! Amongst them are those that were reared on thy head, as also many hawks and many others of other species.[2] Behold, O Brāhmana, those birds have contracted their wings and legs for entering their respective nests. Summon them, O regenerate one![3] There, those birds, treated with affection by thee, are displaying their love for thee that art their father! Without doubt, thou art their father, O Jājali! Do thou summon thy children![4]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Then those birds, summoned by Jājali, made answer agreeably to the dictates of that religion which is not fraught with injury to any creature.†[5] All acts that are done without injuring any creature become serviceable (to the doer) both here and hereafter. Those acts, however, that involve injury to others, destroy faith, and faith being destroyed, involves the destroyer in ruin.[6] The sacrifices of those that regard acquisition and non-acquisition in

---

* 'The soul is itself a *tirtha*.' A *tirtha*, of course, is a spot containing a piece of sacred water. One should seek the acquisition of merit in the soul instead of going to places called sacred and lying in different parts of the Earth. 'According to his own ability' means 'according to the best of his power.' If one can perform a sacrifice with clarified butter, one should not do it with the dust of a cow's hoofs.—T.

† 'Dharmasya vachanāt kila' is explained by the Commentator as 'Dharmasya ahingsātmakasya samvandhino vachanāt.' I think the words may also mean, 'obeying the voice of Dharma.'—T.

the same light, that are endued with faith, that are self-restrained, that have tranquil minds, and that perform sacrifices from a sense of duty (and not from desire of fruit), become productive of fruit.*[7] Faith with respect to *Brahma* is the daughter of Surya, O regenerate one. She is the protectress and she is the giver of good birth. Faith is superior to the merit born of (Vedic) recitations and meditation.†[8] An act vitiated by defect of speech is saved by Faith. An act vitiated by defect of mind is saved by Faith. But neither speech nor mind can save an act that is vitiated by want of Faith.‡[9] Men conversant with the occurrences of the past recite in this connection the following verse sung by Brahman. The offerings in sacrifices of a person that is pure (in body and acts) but wanting in Faith, and of another that is impure (in body and acts) but endued with Faith, the deitics had regarded as equal (in respect of their worthiness of acceptance). The food, again, of a person conversant with the Vedas but miserly in behaviour, and that of a usurer that is liberal in conduct,$[10-11] the deities after careful consideration, had held to be equal (in respect of their worthiness of acceptance). The supreme Lord of all creatures, (*viz.*, Brahman,) then told them that they had committed an error.[12] The food of a liberal person is sanctified by Faith. The food, however, of the person that is void of Faith is lost in consequence of such want of Faith. The food of a liberal usurer is acceptable but not the food of a miser.¶[13] Only one person

---

* The two negatives in the second line amount to an affirmative assertion.—T.

† 'Vaivaswati' is 'apertaining to Vivaswat or prakāçarupachidātmā', hence 'Brahma-vishayini'. 'Daughter of Surya' means 'Sātwiki'. Faith is 'vahirvāngmanasi', *i. e*, 'is the outward form of speech and mind', implying that it 'transcends (the merit born of) speech (recitation) and mind (meditation)'.—T.

‡ 'Defects of speech' are the incorrect utterance of *mantras*. 'Defects of mind' are such as listlessness, haste, &c.—T.

$ 'Kadarya' is explained by the Commentator as 'miserly'. I think it may be taken also in a more extended sense. Then again 'vārdhushi' is a usurer and not necessarily a dealer in corn.—T.

¶ The Commentator is entirely silent upon this Verse. The two

in the world, *viz.*, he that is bereft of Faith, is unfit to make offerings to the deities. The food of only such a man is unfit to be eaten. This is the opinion of men conversant with duties.[14] Want of Faith is a high sin. Faith is a cleanser of sins. Like a snake casting off its slough, the man of Faith succeeds in casting off all his sins.[15] The religion of abstention with Faith is superior to all things considered sacred. Abstaining from all faults of behaviour, he who betakes himself to Faith, becomes sanctified.[16] What need hath such a person of penances, or of conduct, or of endurance? Every man has Faith. Faith, however, is of three kinds, *viz.*, as affected by Sattwa, by Rajas, and by Tamas, and according to the kind of Faith that one has, one is named.[17] Persons endued with goodness and possessed of insight into the true import of morality have thus laid down the subject of duties. We have, as the result of our enquiries, got all this from the sage Dharmadarçana.[18] O thou of great wisdom, betake thyself to Faith, for thou shalt then obtain that which is superior. He who has Faith (in the declarations of the Crutis), and who acts according to their import (in the belief that they are good for him), is certainly of righteous soul. O Jājali, he who adheres to his own path (under the influence of Faith) is certainly a superior person.[19]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'After a short while, Tulādhāra and Jājali, both of whom had been endued with great wisdom, ascended to heaven and sported there in great happiness,*[20] having reached their respective places earned by their

---

Bengali versions have proceeded in two different ways. The four classes of persons indicated in the previous Verses are (1) he that is destitute of faith but is (outwardly) pure, (2) he that has faith but is not (outwardly) pure, (3) a miserly person possessed of learning, and (4) a usurer endued with liberality. The answer of Brahman, without touching other points, refers particularly to faith. The liberal man's food is sanctified by faith. The food of him that has no faith is lost. For this reason the liberal man's food, even if he happens to be a usurer, is worthy of acceptance, and not so the food of the miser even though he may be possessed of Vedic lore.—T.

* The Commentator takes the word 'divam' as implying 'hārdākāçam'.

respective acts. Many truths of this kind were spoken of by Tulādhāra.[21] That eminent person understood this religion (of abstention from injury) completely. These eternal duties were accordingly proclaimed by him.[22] The regenerate Jājali, O son of Kunti, having heard these words of Tulādhāra of celebrated energy, betook himself to tranquillity. In this way many truths of grave import were uttered by Tulādhāra, illustrated by examples for instruction. What other truths dost thou wish to hear?' "[23]

SECTION CCLV.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited an old narrative of what was recited by king Vicharakhu through compassion for all creatures.[1] Beholding the mangled body of a bull, and hearing the exceedingly painful groans of the kine in a cow-slaying sacrifice, and observing the cruel Brāhmanas gathered there for assisting at the ceremonies, that king*[2] uttered these words:—Prosperity to all the kine in the world!—When the slaughter had commenced, these words expressive of a blessing (to those helpless animals) were pronounced.[3] And the monarch further said,—Only those that are transgressors of defined limits, that are destitute of intelligence, that are atheists and sceptics, and that desire the acquisition of celebrity through sacrifices and religious rites, speak highly of the slaughter of animals in sacrifices.†[4] The righteous-souled Manu has applauded (the observance of) harmlessness in all (religious) acts. Indeed, men slaughter

---

They sported (not in the ordinary felicity of heaven but) in the puissance of Yoga.'—T.

* 'Gograhe' is explained by the Commentator as 'a sacrifice in which kine are slain'. 'Yajnavātasya' is an instance of the genetive for the accusative. It means 'Yajnavātsthān nirddayān Brāhmaṇān'. The expression may also mean 'in the cowpen within the sacrificial enclosure'.—T.

† 'Avyaktaih' is explained by the Commentator as 'Yajnādi-dwāraiva khyātimichechadbhih'.—T.

animals in sacrifices, urged by only the desire of fruit.*[5] Hence, guided by authority (in respect of slaughter and abstention from slaughter or harmlessness) one conversant (with the scriptures) should practise the true course of duty which is exceedingly subtile. Harmlessness to all creatures is of all duties the highest.[6] Living in the vicinity of an inhabited place and inuring oneself to the observance of rigid vows, and disregarding the fruits indicated of Vedic acts, one should give up domesticity, adopting a life of Renunciation. Only they that are mean are urged by the desire of fruit.†[7] Reverentially mentioning sacrifices and trees and sacrificial stakes, men do not eat tainted meat. This practice, however, is not worthy of applause.‡[8] Wine, fish, honey, meat, alchohol, and preparations of rice and sesame seeds, have been introduced by knaves. The use of these (in sacrifices) is not laid down in the Vedas.[9] The hankering after these arises from pride, error of judgment, and cupidity. They that are true Brāhmanas realise the presence of Vishnu in every sacrifice.[10] His worship, it has been laid down, should be made with agreeable *Pāyasa*. (The leaves and flowers of) such trees as have been indicated in the Vedas,[11] whatever act is regarded as worthy and whatever else is held as pure by persons of pure hearts and cleansed natures and

---

* 'Kāmakāra' may also mean 'recklessness'. 'Vahirvedyām' is 'on the outer Vedi or altar'. The actual slaughter takes place on this *vedi*. The Burdwan translator misunderstands the word.—T.

† 'Upāsya' is explained by the Commentator as 'living *near* an inhabited place'. 'Vedakritāh Crutih' are the fruits indicated in the Vedas of the acts laid down in them. 'Achārah' has reference to the duties of the domestic mode of life. 'Achārah' should be made 'anāchārah', *i. e.*, should not be followed. The Sannyāsa mode of life is thus recommended.—T.

‡ The meaning is this : ordinary men abstain from tainted meat, regarding all meat as tainted which is obtained from animals that are not killed in sacrifices and in course of religious acts. The speaker, however, holds that this practice is not worthy of applause, for *all* meat is tainted, including that of animals slain in sacrifices. K. P. Singha gives the sense correctly though his rendering is not literal. The Burdwan translator, misunderstanding text and Commentary, jumbles them together and gives an incorrect rendering.—T.

those eminent for knowledge and holiness, are all worthy of being offered to the Supreme Deity and not unworthy of His acceptance.*[12]—'

"Yudhishthira said,—'The body and all sorts of dangers and calamities are continually at war with each other. How, therefore, will a person who is totally free from the desire of harming and who on this account will not be able to act, succeed in keeping up his body ?'†[13]

"Bhishma said,—One should, when able, acquire merit and act in such a way that one's body may not languish and suffer pain, and that death may not come.' "‡[14]

Section CCLXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou, O grandsire, art our highest preceptor in the matter of all acts that are difficult of accomplishment (in consequence of the commands of superiors on the one hand and the cruelty that is involved in them on the other). I ask, how should one judge of an act in respect of either one's obligation to do it or of abstaining from it ? Is it to be judged speedily or with delay ?'

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old story of what occurred with respect Chirakārin born in the race of Angirasa.[2] Twice blessed be the man that reflects long before he acts ! One that reflects long before he acts is certainly possessed of great intelligence. Such a man never offends in respect of any act.[3] There was once a man of great wisdom, of the name of Chirakārin, who was the son

---

* Hence there is no need for sacrifices with slaughter of animals, and alchohol, &c.—T.

† The sense is this : dangers are always seeking to destroy the body. The body is always seeking to destroy those destroyers. This perpetual war or struggle implies the desire to injure. How then, asks Yudhishthira, is it possible for any man to lead a perfectly harmless life, harm being implied in the very fact of continued existence ?—T.

‡ The sense, of course, is that one should acquire religious merit without wasting one's body ; one should not, that is, cause one's body to be destroyed for the sake of earning merit.—T.

of Gautama. Reflecting for a long time upon every consideration connected with proposed acts, he used to do all he had to do.[4] He came to be called by the name of Chirakārin because he used to reflect long upon all matters, to remain awake for a long time, to sleep for a long time, and to take a long time in setting himself to the accomplishment of such acts as he accomplished.[5] The calamour of being an idle man stuck to him. He was also regarded as a foolish person, by every person of a light understanding and destitute of foresight.[6] On a certain occasion, witnessing an act of great fault in his wife, the sire Gautama, passing over his other children, commanded in wrath this Chirakārin, saying,—Slay thou this woman![7]—Having said these words without much reflection, the learned Gautama, that foremost of persons engaged in the practice of *Yoga*, that highly blessed ascetic, departed for the woods.[8] Having after a long while assented to it, saying,—So be it,—Chirakārin, in consequence of his very nature, and owing to his habit of never accomplishing any act without long reflection, began to think for a long while (upon the propriety or otherwise of what he was commanded by his sire to do).[9]—How shall I obey the command of my sire and yet how avoid slaying my mother? How shall I avoid sinking, like a wicked person, into sin in this situation in which contradictory obligations are dragging me into opposite directions?[10] Obedience to the commands of the sire constitutes the highest merit. The protection of the mother again is a clear duty. The status of a son is fraught with dependence. How shall I avoid being afflicted by sin?[11] Who is there that can be happy after having slain a woman, especially his mother? Who again can obtain prosperity and fame by disregarding his own sire?[12] Regard for the sire's behest is obligatory. The protection of my mother is equally a duty. How shall I so frame my conduct that both obligations may be discharged?[13] The father places his own self within the mother's womb and takes birth as the son, for continuing his practices, conduct, name, and race.[14] I have been begotten as a son by both my mother and my father. Knowing as I do my own origin, why

should I not have this knowledge (of my relationship with both of them)?[15] The words uttered by the sire while performing the initial rite after birth, and those that were uttered by him on the occasion of the subsidiary rite (after the return from the preceptor's abode) are sufficient (evidence) for settling the reverence due to him and, indeed, confirm the reverence actually paid to him.*[16] In consequence of his bringing up the son and instructing him, the sire is the son's foremost of superiors and the highest religion. The very Vedas lay it down as certain that the son should regard what the sire says as his highest duty.[17] Unto the sire the son is only a source of joy. Unto the son, however, the sire is all in all. The body and all else that the son owns have the sire alone for their giver.[18] Hence, the behests of the sire should be obeyed without ever questioning them in the least. The very sins of one that obeys one's sire are cleansed (by such obedience).[19] The sire is the giver of all articles of enjoyment, of all articles of food, of instructions in the Vedas, and of all other knowledge regarding the world. (Prior to the son's birth) the sire is the performer of such rites as Garbhādhāna and Simantonnayana.†[20] The sire is religion. The sire is heaven. The sire is the highest penance. The sire being gratified, all the deities are gratified.[21] Whatever words are pronounced by the sire become blessings that attach to the son. The words expressive of joy that the sire utters cleanse the son of all his sins.[22] The flower is seen to

* On the occasion of the 'Jāta-karma' the sire says 'be thou as hard as adamant', and 'be thou an axe (unto all my foes)'. The 'upakarma' or subsidiary rite is performed on the occasion of the 'samāvartana' or return from the preceptor's abode. It is called subsidiary because it does not occur among the rites laid down in the Grihya Sutras. The words uttered on that occasion are,—'Thou art my ownself, O son!'—T.

† 'Bhogya' implies such articles as dress, &c. 'Bhojya' implies food, &c. 'Pravachana' is instruction in the scriptures. 'Garbhādhāna' is the ceremonial in connection with the attainment of puberty by the wife. 'Simantonnayana' is performed by the husband in the fourth, sixth, or eighth month of gestation, the principal rite being the putting of the minium mark on the head of the wife. The mark is put on the line of partition of her locks.—T.

fall away from the stalk. The fruit is seen to fall away from the tree. But the sire, whatever his distress, moved by parental affection, never abandons the son.[23] These then are my reflections upon the reverence due from the son to the sire. Unto the son the sire is not an ordinary object. I shall now think upon (what is due to) the mother.[24] Of this union of the five (primal) elements in me due to my birth as a human being, the mother is the (chief) cause as the fire-sticks of fire.*[25] The mother is as the fire-stick with respect to the bodies of all men. She is the panacea for all kinds of calamities. The existence of the mother invests one with protection; the reverse deprives one of all protection.[26] The man who, though divested of prosperity, enters his house, uttering the words—O mother!—hath not to indulge in grief. Nor doth decrepitude ever assail him.[27] A person whose mother exists, even if he happens to be possessed of sons and grandsons and even if he counts a hundred years, looks like a child of but two years of age.[28] Able or disabled, lean or robust, the son is always protected by the mother. None else, according to the ordinance, is the son's protector.[29] Then doth the son become old, then doth he become stricken with grief, then doth the world look empty in his eyes, when he becomes deprived of his mother.[30] There is no shelter (protection against the sun) like the mother. There is no refuge like the mother. There is no defence like the mother. There is no one so dear as the mother.[31] For having borne him in her womb the mother is the son's *Dhātri*. For having been the chief cause of his birth, she is his *Janani*. For having nursed his young limbs into growth, she is called *Amva*. For bringing forth a child possessed of courage she is called *Virasu*.[32] For nursing and looking after the son she is called *Çuçru*. The mother is one's own body. What rational man is there that would slay his mother to

* In India in every house two sticks were kept for producing fire by rubbing. These were replaced by the flint-stone and a piece of steel. Of course, Bryant and Mays' matches have now replaced those primitive arrangements almost everywhere, and in the hands of children have become a source of great danger to both life and property.—T.

whose care alone it is due that his own head did not lie on the street-side like a dry gourd?[33] When husband and wife unite themselves for procreation, the desires cherished with respect to the (unborn) son are cherished by both, but in respect of their fruition more depends upon the mother than on the sire.*[34] The mother knows the family in which the son is born and the father who has begotten him. From the moment of conception the mother begins to show affection to her child and take delight in him. (For this reason the son should behave equally towards her). On the other hand, the scriptures declare that the offspring belong to the father alone.[35] If men, after accepting the hands of wives in marriage and pledging themselves to earn religious merit without being dissociated from them, seek congress with other people's wives, they then cease to be worthy of respect.†[36] The husband, because he supports the wife, is called *Bhartri*, and because he protects her he is on that account called *Pati*. When these two functions disappear from him, he ceases to be both *Bhartri* and *Pati*.‡[37] Then again woman can commit no fault. It is man only that commits faults. By perpetrating an act of adultery, the man only becomes stained with guilt.$[38] It has been said that the husband is the

---

* 'Prāna' is the organ of generation. 'Samçlesha' is union. The desires cherished are indicated in the Grihya Sutras. 'Let our child be fair of complexion'. 'Let him be long-lived'. Though both parents cherish such wishes, yet their fruition depends more on the mother than the father. This is a scientific truth.—T.

† The sense seems to be this. The mother only has correct knowledge of who the father is. The commands of the father, therefore, may be set aside on the ground of the suspicion that attaches to his very status as father. Then, again, if the father be adulterous, he should not be regarded on account of his sinfulness. Chirakārin asks, 'How shall I know that Gautama is my father'? How again shall I know that he is not sinful?'—T.

‡ The object of this verse is to indicate that when Gautama had ceased to protect his wife he had ceased to be her husband. His command, therefore, to slay her could not be obeyed.—T.

$ The Commentator argues that 'man being the tempter, takes the guilt upon himself; woman, being the tempted, escapes the guilt.'—T.

highest object with the wife and the highest deity to hero. My mother gave up her sacred person to one that came to her in the form and guise of her own husband.[39] Women can commit no fault. It is man who becomes stained with fault. Indeed, in consequence of the natural weakness of the sex as displayed in every act, and their liability to solicitation, women cannot be regarded as offenders.[40] Then again the sinfulness (in this case) is evident of Indra himself who (by acting in the way he did) caused the recollection of the request that had been made to him in days of yore by woman (when a third part of the sin of Brāhmanicide of which Indra himself was guilty was cast upon her sex). There is no doubt that my mother is innocent.[41] She whom I have been commanded to slay is a woman. That woman is again my own mother. She occupies, therefore, a place of greater reverence. The very beasts that are irrational know that the mother is unslayable.[42] The sire must be known to be a combination of all the deities together. To the mother, however, attaches a combination of all mortal creatures and all the deities.*[43]—In consequence of his habit of reflecting long before acting, Gautama's son Chirakārin, by indulging in those reflections, passed a long while (without accomplishing the act he had been commanded by his sire to accomplish). When many days had expired, his sire Gautama returned.[44] Endued with great wisdom, Medhātithi of Gautama's race, engaged in the practice of penances, came back (to his retreat), convinced, after having reflected for that long time, of the impropriety of the chastisement he had commanded to be inflicted upon his wife.[45] Burning with grief and shedding copious tears, for repentance had come to him in consequence of the beneficial effects of that calmness of temper which is brought about by a knowledge of the scriptures, he uttered these words.[46]—The lord of the three

* The sense is this: the sire is all the deities together, for by reverencing the sire, all the deities are pleased. The mother, however, is all mortal and immortal creatures together, for by gratifying her one is sure to obtain success both here and hereafter.—T.

worlds, *viz.*, Purandara, came to my retreat, in the guise of a Brāhmana asking for hospitality.[47] He was received by me with (proper) words, and honored with a (proper) welcome, and presented in due form with water to wash his feet and the usual offerings of the *Arghya.* I also granted him the rest he had asked for.[48] I further told him that I had obtained a protector in him. I thought that such conduct on my part would induce him to behave towards me as a friend. When, however, notwithstanding all this, he misbehaved himself, my wife Ahalyā could not be regarded to have committed any fault.[49] It seems that neither my wife, nor myself, nor Indra himself who while passing through the sky had beheld my wife (and become deprived of his senses by her extraordinary beauty), could be held to have offended. The blame really attaches to the carelessness of my Yoga puissance.*[50] The sages have said that all calamities spring from envy, which, in its turn, arises from error of judgment. By that envy, also, I have been dragged from where I was and plunged into an ocean of sin (in the form of wife-slaughter)![51] Alas, I have slain a woman,—a woman that is again my wife—one, that is, who, in consequence of her sharing her lord's calamities came to be called by the name of *Vāsitā*,—one that was called *Bhāryyā* owing to the obligation I was under of supporting her! Who is there that can rescue me from this sin?[52] Acting heedlessly I commanded the high-souled Chirakārin (to slay that wife of mine)! If on the present occasion he proves true to his name then may he rescue me from this guilt![53] Twice blessed be thou, O Chirakārika! If on this occasion thou hast delayed accomplishing the work, then art thou truly worthy of thy name![54] Rescue me, and thy mother, and the penances I have achieved, as also thy own

---

* 'Dharmasya' is explained by the Commentator as 'Yogadharmasambandhi.' Probably, Gautama blames his own carelessness in not having provided, by Yoga-puissance, against the commission of the offence. The Commentator observes that the *Rishi's* exculpation of Indra himself is due to his own purity of nature and the entire absence of a desire to wrong other people. In reality, however, there can be no doubt that it was Indra who was to blame.—T.

self, from grave sins! Be thou really a Chirakārika today![55] Ordinarily, in consequence of thy great wisdom thou takest a long time for reflection before achieving any act. Let not thy conduct be otherwise today! Be thou a true Chirakārika today![56] Thy mother had expected thy advent for a long time. For a long time did she bear thee in her womb. O Chirakārika, let thy habit of reflecting long before acting be productive of beneficial results today![57] Perhaps my son Chirakārika is delaying today (to achieve my bidding) in view of the sorrow it would cause me (to see him execute that bidding)! Perhaps, he is sleeping over that bidding, bearing it in his heart (without any intention of executing it promptly). Perhaps, he is delaying, in view of the grief it would cause both him and me, reflecting upon the circumstances of the case![58]—Indulging in such repentance, O king, the great *Rishi* Gautama then beheld his son Chirakārin sitting near him.[59] Beholding his sire come back to their abode, the son Chirakārin, overwhelmed with grief, cast away the weapon (he had taken up) and bowing his head began to pacify Gautama.[60] Observing his son prostrated before him with bent head, and beholding also his wife almost petrified with shame, the *Rishi* became filled with great joy.[61] From that time the high-souled *Rishi*, dwelling in that lone hermitage, did not live separately from his spouse or his heedful son.[62] Having uttered the command that his wife should be slain he had gone away from his retreat for accomplishing some purpose of his own. Since that time his son had stood in an humble attitude, weapon in hand, for executing that command on his mother.[63] Beholding that son prostrated at his feet, the sire thought that, struck with fear, he was asking for pardon for the offence he had committed in taking up a weapon (for killing his own mother).[64] The sire praised his son for a long time, and smelt his head for a long time, and for a long time held him in a close embrace, and blessed him, uttering the words—Do thou live long![65]—Then, filled with joy and contented with what had occurred, Gautama, O thou of great wisdom, addressed his son and said these words:[66]—Blessed be thou, O Chirakārika!

Do thou always reflect long before acting! By thy delay in accomplishing my bidding thou hast today made me happy for ever![67]—That learned and best of *Rishis* then uttered these verses upon the subject of the merits of such cool men as reflect for a long lime before setting their hands to any action.[68]—If the matter is the death of a friend, one should accomplish it after a long while. If it is the abandonment of a project already begun, one should abandon it after a long while. A friendship that is formed after a long examination lasts for a long time.[69] In giving way to wrath, to haughtiness, to pride, to disputes, to sinful acts, and in accomplishing all disagreeable tasks, he that delays long deserves applause![70] When the offence is not clearly proved against a relative, a friend, a servant, or a wife, he that reflects long before inflicting the punishment is applauded.[71]—Thus, O Bhārata, was Gautama pleased with his son, O thou of Kuru's race, for that act of delay on the latter's part in doing the former's bidding.[72] In all acts a man should, in this way, reflect for a long time and then settle what he should do. By conducting himself in this way one is sure to avoid grief for a long time.[73] That man who nurses his wrath for a long while, who reflects for a long time before setting himself to the performance of any act, never[74] does any act which brings repentance. One should wait for a long while upon those that are aged, and sitting near them show them reverence. One should attend to one's duties for a long time and be engaged for a long while in ascertaining them.[75] Waiting for a long time upon those that are learned, and reverentially serving for a long time those that are good in behaviour, and keeping one's soul for a long while under proper restraint, one succeeds in enjoying the respect of the world for a long time.[76] One engaged in instructing others on the subject of religion and duty, should, when asked by another for information on those subjects, take a long time to reflect before giving an answer. He may then avoid indulging in repentance (for returning an incorrect answer whose practical consequences may lead to sin).[77]—As regards Gautama of austere penances, that *Rishi*, having

adored the deities for a long while in that retreat of his, at last ascended to heaven with his son.' "[78]

SECTION CCLXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How, indeed, should the king protect his subjects without injuring anybody. I ask thee this, O grandsire, tell me, O foremost of good men !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the conversation between Dyumutsena and king Satyavat.[2] We have heard that upon a certain number of individuals having been brought out for execution at the command of his sire (Dyumutsena), prince Satyavat said certain words that had never before been said by anybody else.[3]*—Sometimes righteousness assumes the form of iniquity, and iniquity assumes the form of righteousness. It can never be possible that the killing of individuals can ever be a righteous act.[4]—

"Dyumutsena said,—'If the sparing of those that deserve to be slain be righteousness, if robbers be spared, O Satyavat, then all distinctions (between virtue and vice) would disappear.[5]—*This is mine,—This (other) is not his,*—ideas like these (with respect to property) will not (if the wicked be not punished) prevail in the Kali age. (If the wicked be not punished) the affairs of the world will come to a deadlock. If thou knowest how the world may go on (without punishing the wicked), then discourse to me upon it ![6]—

" 'Satyavat said,—'The three other orders (*viz.*, the Kshatriyas, Vaiçyas, and Cudras) should be placed under the control of the Brāhmanas. If those three orders be kept within the bonds of righteousness, then the subsidiary classes (that have sprung from intermixture) will imitiate them in their practices.[7] Those amongst them that will transgress

---

* *I. e.*, prince Satyavat said that the persons brought out for execution should not be executed. The power of kings did not extend over the lives of their subjects. In other words, the prince argued against the propriety of inflicting capital punishments upon even grave offenders.—T.

(the commands of the Brāhmanas) shall be reported to the king.—This one heeds not my commands!—upon such a complaint being preferred by a Brāhmana, the king shall inflict punishment upon the offender.[8] Without destroying the body of the offender the king should do that unto him which is directed by the scriptures. The king should not act otherwise, neglecting to reflect properly upon the character of the offence and upon the science of morality.[9] By slaying the wicked, the king (practically) slays a large number of individuals that are innocent. Behold, by slaying a single robber, his wife, mother, father, and children are all slain (because they become deprived of the means of life). When injured by a wicked person, the king should, therefore, reflect deeply on the question of chastisement.[10]* Sometimes a wicked man is seen to imbibe good behaviour from a righteous person. Then again from persons that are wicked good children may be seen to spring.[11] The wicked, therefore, should not be torn up by the roots. The extermination of the wicked is not consistent with eternal practice. By smiting them gently they may be made to expiate their offences.[12] By depriving them of all their wealth, by chains and immurement in dungeons, by disfiguring them, (they may be made to expiate their guilt). Their relatives should not be persecuted by the infliction of capital sentences on them. If in the presence of the *Purohita* and others,†[13] they give themselves up to him from desire of protection, and swear, saying,—O Brāhmana, we shall never again commit any sinful act,[14]—they would then deserve to be let off without any punishment. This is the command of the Creator himself. Even the Brāhmana that wears a deer-skin and the wand (of mendicancy) and has his head shaved, should be punished (when he transgresses).‡[15] If great men transgress, their

---

* Verse 10 is a triplet.—T.

† The Burdwan translator gives a very incorrect version of this Verse. He misunderstands both text and commentary completely. K. P. Singha is correct.—T.

‡ The Commentator explains that the object of this line is to show that the very Sannyāsin, when he offends, deserves to be chastised.

chastisement should be proportionate to their greatness. As regards them that offend repeatedly, they do not deserve to be dismissed without punishment as on the occasion of their first offence.*[16]—

"Dyumatsena said,—As long as those barriers within which men should be kept are not transgressed, so long are they designated by the name of Righteousness.[17] If they who transgressed those barriers were not punished with death, those barriers would soon be destroyed. Men of remote and remoter times were capable of being governed with ease.†[18] They were very truthful (in speech and conduct). They were little disposed to disputes and quarrels. They seldom gave way to wrath, or, if they did, their wrath never became ungovernable. In those days the mere crying of *fie* on offenders was sufficient punishment. After this came the punishment represented by harsh speeches or censures.[19] Then followed the punishment of fines and forfeitures. In this age, however, the punishment of death has become current. The measure of wickedness has increased to such an extent that by slaying one others cannot be restrained.‡[20] The robber has no connection with men, with the deities, with the *Gandharvas*, and with the *Pitris*. What is he to whom? He is not anybody to any one. This is the declaration of the *Çrutis*.$[21] The robber takes away the ornaments of corpses from cemeteries, and wearing apparel from men

---

K. P. Singha misunderstands the line completely. The Burdwan version is correct.—T.

* Both the Vernacular versions of this Verse are incorrect. The first half of the first line should be taken independently. The Commentator explains that after 'gariyāmsam' the words 'api çāsyu' should be supplied. 'Aparādhe tu punah punah, &c.,' is said of offenders in general, and not eminent offenders only.—T.

† *I. e.*, punishments were not necessary in former times, or very light ones were sufficient. The Burdwan version of this Verse is thoroughly ridiculous.—T.

‡ Hence, extermination is the punishment that has become desirable.—T.

$ Hence, by slaying them no injury is done to any one in this or the other world.—T.

afflicted by spirits (and, therefore, deprived of senses). That man is a fool who would make any covenant with those miserable wretches or exact any oath from them (for relying upon it).*[22]—

"'Satyavat said,—If thou dost not succeed in making honest men of those rogues and in saving them by means unconnected with slaughter, do thou then exterminate them by performing some sacrifice.†[23] Kings practise severe austerities for the sake of enabling their subjects go on prosperously in their avocations. When thieves and robbers multiply in their kingdoms they become ashamed. They, therefore, betake themselves to penances for suppressing thefts and robberies and making their subjects live happily.[24] Subjects can be made honest by being only frightened (by the king). Good kings never slay the wicked from motives of retribution. (On the other hand, if they slay, they slay in sacrifices, when the motive is to do good to the slain). Good kings abundantly succeed in ruling their subjects properly with the aid of good conduct (instead of cruel or punitive inflictions).[25] If the king acts properly, the superior subjects imitate him. The inferior people, again, in their turn, imitate their immediate superiors. Men are so constituted

---

* 'Padma' means, the ornaments of corpses. Grave-stealers there were in every country. 'Picāchāt' is 'Picāchopahatāt'. Evidently, idiots and mad men were the persons who were regarded to have been possessed by evil spirits. 'Daivatam' is an accusative which, like, 'Samayam' is governed by the transitive verb 'Kurvita'. 'Yah kaschit' means 'yah kaschit mudah, na tu prājnah'. The Burdwan version of this Verse shows that the person entrusted with this portion of the *Cānti* was altogether incompetent for the task. K. P. Singha gives the meaning correctly.—T.

† The Commentator supposes that after 'sādhun' the word 'kartum' is understood. The line may also be taken as meaning,—'If thou dost not succeed in rescuing the honest without slaying (the wicked)'. 'Bhuta bhavya' is sacrifice. The prince speaks of exterminating the rogues by slaying them as animals in a sacrifice because of the declaration in the Crutis that those killed in sacrifices ascend to heaven, purged of all their sins. Such acts, therefore, seem to be merciful to the prince, compared to death by hanging or on the block.—T.

that they imitiate those whom they regard as their betters.*[26] That king who, without restraining himself, seeks to restrain others (from evil ways) becomes an object of laughter with all men in consequence of his being engaged in the enjoyment of all worldly pleasures as a slave of his senses.[27] That man who, through arrogance or error of judgment, offends against the king in any way, should be restrained by every means. It is by this way that he is prevented from comitting offences anew.[28] The king should first restrain his own self if he desires to restrain others that offend. He should punish heavily (if necessary) even friends and near relatives.[29] In that kingdom where a vile offender does not meet with heavy afflictions, offences increase and righteousness decreases without doubt.[30] Formerly, a Brāhmana endued with clemency and possessed of learning, taught me this. Verily, to this effect, O sire, I have been instructed by also our grandsires of olden days,[31] who gave such assurances of harmlessness to people, moved by pity. Their words were,—In the Krita age, kings should rule their subjects by adopting ways that are entirely harmless.[32] In the Tretā age, kings conduct themselves according to ways that conform with righteousness fallen away by a fourth from its full complement. In the Dwāpara age, they proceed according to ways conforming with righteousness fallen away by a moiety, and in the age that follows, according to ways conforming with righteousness fallen away by three-fourths.[33] When the Kali age sets in, through the wickedness of kings and in consequence of the nature of the epoch itself, fifteen parts of even that fourth portion of righteousness disappear, a sixteenth portion thereof being all that then remains of it.[34] If, O Satyavat, by adopting the method first mentioned, (*viz.*, the practice of harmlessness), confusion sets in, the king, considering the period of human life, the strength of human beings, and the nature of the time that has come,

---

* The world thus improves in conduct and morality through the king only behaving in a proper way. Cruel punishments are scarcely needed to reform the world.—T.

should award punishments.*[35] Indeed, Manu, the son of the Self-born, has, through compassion for human beings, indicated the way by means of which men may adhere to knowledge (instead of harmfulness) for the sake of emancipation.—' "†[36]

SECTION CCLXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast already explained to me, O grandsire, how the religion of Yoga, which leads to the six well-known attributes, may be adopted and practised without injuring any creature. Tell me, O grandsire, of that religion which leads to both results, *viz.*, Enjoyment and Emancipation![1] Amongst these two, *viz.*, the duties of domesticity and those of Yoga, both of which lead to the same end, which is superior!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'Both courses of duty are highly blessed. Both are extremely difficult of accomplishment. Both are productive of high fruits. Both are practised by those that are admittedly good.[3] I shall presently discourse to thee on the authoritativeness of both those courses of duty, for dispelling thy doubts about their true import. Listen to me with concentrated attention.[4] In this connection is instanced the old narrative of the discourse between Kapila and the cow. Listen to it, O Yudhishthira!‡[5] It has been heard by us that in days of old when the deity Tashtri came to the palace of king Nahusha, the latter, for discharging the duties of hospitality, was on the point of killing a cow agreeably

---

* The period of human life decreases proportionately in every succeeding age, as also the strength of human beings. In awarding punishments, the king should be guided by these considerations.—T.

† The word 'satya' is used here for 'Emancipation'. 'Mahaddharmaphalam' is true knowledge, so called because of its superiority to heaven, &c., The way pointed out by Manu is, of course, the religion of harmlessness. In Verse 35, there is an address to prince Satyavat. It seems, as I have pointed out, that Verses 32 to 35 represent the words of the grandsire to whom the prince refers in Verse 31.—T.

‡ The redundant syllable is Arsha.—T.

to the true, ancient, and eternal injunction of the Vedas.[6] Beholding that cow tied for slaughter, Kapila of liberal soul, ever observant of the duties of Satwa, always engaged in restraining his senses, possessed of true knowledge, and abstemious in diet,[7] having acquired an excellent understanding that was characterised by faith, perfectly fearless, beneficial, firm, and ever directed towards truth, uttered this word once, *viz.*,—*Alas, ye Vedas !*—At that time a *Rishi*, of the name of Syumaraçmi, entering (by Yoga power) the form of that cow, addressed the Yati Kapila, saying,—Hist, O Kapila ![8] If the Vedas be deserving of censure (in consequence of those declarations in them that sanction the slaughter of living creatures), whence have those other duties (fraught with entire harmlessness to all creatures) come to be regarded as authoritative ?*[9] Men devoted to penances and endued with intelligence, and who have the Crutis and knowledge for their eyes, regard the injunctions of the Vedas, which have been declared through and compiled by the *Rishis*, to be the words of God himself.†[10] What can anybody say (by way of censure or praise) with respect to the contents of the Vedas when these happen to be the words of the Supreme Being himself who is freed from desire of fruit, who is without the fever (of envy and aversion), who is addicted to nothing, and who is destitute of all exertion (in consequence of the immediate fruition of all his wishes) ?[11]—

" 'Kapila said,—I do not censure the Vedas. I do not wish to say anything in derogation of them. It hath been heard by us that the different courses of duty laid down for the different modes of life, all lead to the same end.[12] The Sanyāsin attains to a high end. The forest-recluse also attains to a high end. Both the other two also,

---

* Both acts and knowledge have been pointed out in the Vedas. The Vedas, therefore, being authority for both, one or the other cannot be censured or applauded.—T.

† 'Arsha' means here Vedic injunctions declared through the mouths of inspired Rishis and compiled by Rishis. 'Viditātmanah' is the Supreme Being himself. The object of the speaker is to show that no part of the Vedas can be censured, for every word in them is equally authoritative, all being God's own.—T.

viz., the householder and the Brahmachārin, reach the same end.[13] All the four modes of life have always been regarded as *Deva-yāna* ways. The relative strength or weakness of these, as represented by their relative superiority or inferiority, hath been declared in the character of their respective ends.*[14]—Knowing these, accomplish acts which lead to heaven and other blessings,—this is a Vedic declaration.—Do not accomplish acts,—this also is another binding declaration of the Vedas.[15] If abstention from acts be meritorious, then their accomplishment must be exceedingly reprehensible. When the scriptures stand thus, the strength or weakness of particular declarations must be very difficult to ascertain.[16] If thou knowest of any course of duty which is superior to the religion of harmlessness, and which depends upon direct evidence instead of that of the scriptures, do thou then discourse to me upon it![17]—

" 'Syumaraçmi said,—One should perform sacrifices from desire of heaven,—this Cruti is constantly heard by us. Thinking first of the fruit (that is to be attained), one makes preparations for sacrifice.[18] Goat, horse, sheep, cow, all species of birds, domestic or wild, and herbs and plants, are food of (other) living creatures. This is heard by us.†[19] Food again has been directed to be taken day after day morning and evening. Then again the Cruti declares that animals and grain are the limbs of Sacrifice.‡[20] The Lord of

---

* 'Deva-yānāh' is explained by the Commentator as 'Devam ātmānam yānti ebhiriti', *i. e.*, those by which the Soul is reached. The relative strength or weakness of the four modes of life hath been thus indicated. The Sanyāsin attains to *Moksha* or Emancipation; the forest recluse to the region of Brahman; the house-holder attains to heaven (region of the deities presided over by Indra), and the Brahmachārin attains to the region of the *Rishis*.—T.

† The Commentator explains that having commenced with the assertion that men should sacrifice from desire of heaven, the speaker fears that the hearer may deny the very existence of heaven. Hence, he takes a surer ground for justifying slaughter, *viz.*, the ground that is connected with the consideration of food. Living creatures must eat in order to live. The very support of life requires the slaughter of life. Slaughter, therefore, is justified by the highest necessity.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, these are the essential requisites of sacrifice.—T.

the universe created them along with Sacrifice. The puissant Lord of all creatures caused the deities to perform sacrifices with their aid.[21] Altogether seven (domestic) and seven (wild) animals are indicated as fit for sacrifice. Instead of all being equally fit, each succeeding one is inferior to each preceding one. The Vedas again declare that the whole universe is appointed for sacrifice. Him also that is called *Purusha* the Vedas have appointed for the same purpose.*[22] This again hath been sanctioned by men of remote and remoter times. What man of learning is there that does not select, according to his own ability, individuals from among living creatures for sacrifice?†[23] The inferior animals, human beings, trees, and herbs, all wish for the attainment of heaven. There is no means, however, except sacrifice, by which they can obtain the fruition of that desire.[24] The deciduous herbs, animals, trees, creepers, clarified butter, milk, curds, meat and other approved things (that are poured on the sacrificial fire), land, the points of the compass, faith, and time which brings up the tale to twelve,[25] the Richs, the Yajushes, the Sāmans, and the sacrificer himself bringing up the tale to sixteen, and Fire which should be known as the householder,—these seventeen are said[26] to be the limbs of Sacrifice. Sacrifice, the Cruti declares, is the root of the world and its course. With clarified butter, milk, curds, dung, curds mixed with milk, skin, the hair in her tail, horns, and hoofs, the cow alone is able to furnish all the necessaries of sacrifice. Particular ones amongst these that are laid down for particular sacrifices,[27-28] coupled with Ritwijas and presents (to the priests themselves and other Brāhmanas) together sustain Sacrifices.‡ By collecting these things to-

---

* The seven domestic animals are cow, goat, man, horse, sheep, mule, and ass. The seven wild ones are lion, tiger, boar, buffalo, elephant, bear, and monkey.—T.

† 'Vichinwita' is 'Vivechayet', with 'ālamvārtham' understood; 'ātmanah' is equivalent to 'jivāt'.—T.

‡ All the products of the cow that are named here are not required in all sacrifices. Some are required in some, others in others. Those then that *are* required, when coupled with Ritwijas and Dakshinā, complete the respective sacrifices or uphold or sustain them.—T.

gether, people accomplish sacrifices.*[29] This Cruti, consistent with the truth, is heard that all things have been created for the performance of Sacrifice. It was thus that all men of ancient times set themselves to the performance of sacrifices.[30] As regards that person, however, who performs sacrifices because of the conviction that sacrifices should be performed and not for the sake of fruit or reward, it is seen that he does not injure any creature or bear himself with hostility to anything, or set himself to the accomplishment of any worldly task.†[31] Those things that have been named above as the limbs of sacrifice, and those other things that have been mentioned as required in sacrifices and that are indicated in the ordinances, all uphold one another (for the completion of sacrifices) when used according to the approved ritual.‡[32] I behold also the *Smritis* compiled by the *Rishis*, into which the Vedas have been introduced. Men of learning regard them as authoritative in consequence of their following the *Brāhmanas*.§[33] Sacrifices have the Brāhmanas for their progenitor, and truly they rest upon the Brāhmanas. The whole universe rests upon sacrifice, and sacrifice rests upon the universe.¶[34] The syllable *Om* is the root from which the Vedas have sprung. (Every rite, therefore, should commence with the utterance of that syllable of vast import). Of him who has uttered for him the syllables Om, Namas, Swāhā, Sadhā, and Vashat, and who has, according to the extent of his ability, performed sacrifices and other rites,[35] there is no fear in respect of next life in all the three worlds. Thus say the Vedas, and sages crowned with ascetic success, and the foremost of *Rishis*.[36] He in

* 'Samhritya' means 'Ekikritya' and not 'destroying' as the Burdwan translator wrongly takes it.—T.

† The Burdwan translator, notwithstanding the clear language of both text and Commentary, wrongly connects the first line of Verse 31 with the last line of 30, and makes nonsense of both Verses.—T.

‡ By taking the two lines of 32 with the last line of 31, the Burdwan translator makes nonsense of the passage.—T.

§ 'Brāhmanas' here means that part of the Vedas which contains the ritual.—T.

¶ Each constitutes the refuge of the other.—T.

whom are the Richs, the Yajushes, the Sāmans, and the expletives necessary for completing the rythm of the Sāmans according to the rules laid down in Vedic grammars, is, indeed, a Brāhmana.*[37] Thou knowest, O adorable Brāhmana, what the fruits are of Agnihotra, of the Soma-sacrifice, and of the other great sacrifices.[38] I say, for this reason, one should sacrifice and asist at other people's sacrifices, without scruples of any kind. One who performs such sacrifices as lead to heaven (such as Yotishtoma, &c.) obstains high rewards hereafter in the form of heavenly beatitude.[39] This is certain, *viz.*, that they who do not perform sacrifices have neither this world nor the next. They who are really conversant with the declarations of the Vedas regard both kinds of declarations (*viz.*, those that incite to acts and those that preach abstention) as equally authoritative.—' "[40]

Section CCLXIX.

"'Kapila said,—Beholding that all the fruits that are attainable by acts are terminable instead of being eternal, Yatis, by adopting self-restraint and tranquillity, attain to *Brahma* through the path of knowledge. There is nothing in any of the worlds that can impede them (for by mere fiats of the will they crown all their wishes with success).[1] They are freed from the influence of all pairs of opposites. They never bow down their heads to anything or any creature. They are above all the bonds of want. Wisdom is theirs. Cleansed they are from every sin. Pure and spotless they live and rove about (in great happiness).[2] They have, in their own understandings, arrived at settled conclusions in respect of all destructible objects and at a life of Renunciation (by comparing the two together). Devoted to Brahma, already become like unto Brahma, they have taken refuge in Brahma.[3] Transcending grief, and freed from (the quality of) Rajas, theirs are acquisitions that are eternal. When the high end that is these men's is within reach of attainment, what

---

* There are many such expletives, such as 'hāyi', 'hāvu', &c.,—T.

need has one for practising the duties of the domestic mode of life ?*[4]

" 'Syumaraçmi said,—If, indeed, that be the highest object of acquisition, if that be truly the highest end (which is attained by practising Renunciation) then the importance of the domestic mode of life becomes manifest, because without the domestic mode no other mode of life ever becomes possible.[5] Indeed, as all living creatures are able to live in consequence of their dependence on their respective mothers, after the same manner the three other modes of life exist in consequence of their dependence upon the domestic mode.[6] The householder who leads the life of domesticity, performs sacrifices, and practises penances. Whatever is done by anybody from desire of happiness has for its root the domestic mode of life.[7] All living creatures regard the procreation of offspring as a source of great happiness. The procreation of offspring, however, becomes impossible in any other mode of life (than domesticity).[8] Every kind of grass and straw, all plants and herbs (that yield corn or grain), and others of the same class that grow on hills and mountains, have the domestic mode of life for their root. Upon these depend the life of living creatures. And since nothing else is seen (in the universe) than life, domesticity may be looked upon as the refuge of the entire universe†[9] Who then speaks the truth that says that domesticity cannot lead to the acquisition of Emancipation ? Only those that are destitute of

---

* For, as the Commentator explains, one who has acquired an empire does not seek the dole of charity. In view of the high end that Renunciation is certain to bring, what need has a person of the domestic mode of life which leads to rewards that are insignificant compared to the other.—T.

† 'Varhi' is grass or straw. 'Oshadhi' here implies paddy and other grain. 'Vahiranyā adrijā' implies 'other kinds of Oshadhi born on mountains,' *i. e.*, the Soma and other useful hill plants and shrubs. 'Teshāmapi mulam gārhastyam' should be supplied after the first line. Domesticity is the root of these, because these are cultivated or collected by persons leading the domestic mode of life. The argument in the second line is this: 'Oshadhibhyah prānah', 'prānāt vahih na kinchit driçyate', 'atah viçwasyāpi mulam gārhastyam'.—T.

faith and wisdom and penetration,[10] only those that are destitute of reputation, that are idle and toil-worn, that have misery for their share in consequence of their past acts, only those that are destitute of learning, behold the plenitude of tranquillity in a life of mendicancy.[11] The eternal and certain distinctions (laid down in the Vedas) are the causes that sustain the three worlds. That illustrious person of the highest order who is conversant with the Vedas, is worshipped from the very date of his birth.[12] Besides the performance of *Garbhādhāna*, Vedic *mantras* become necessary for enabling persons of the regenerate classes to accomplish all their acts in respect of both this and the other world.*[13] In cremating his body (after death), in the matter of his attainment of a second body, in that of his drink and food after such attainment, in that of giving away kine and other animals for helping him to cross the river that divides the region of life from that of Yama, in that of sinking the funeral cakes in water, Vedic *mantras* are necessary.[14] Then again the three classes of *Pitris*, *viz.*, the Archishmats, the Varhishads, and the Kravyāds, approve of the necessity of *mantras* in the case of the dead, and *mantras* are allowed to be efficient causes (for attainment of the objects for which these ceremonies and rites have been directed to be performed).[15] When the Vedas say this so loudly and when again human beings are said to owe debts to the *Pitris*, the *Rishis*, and the gods, how can any one attain to Emancipation ?†[16]

---

* Literally rendered, the words are,—'Without doubt, Vedic *mantras* enter into persons of the regenerate classes in respect of acts whose effects are seen and acts whose effects instead of being seen depend upon the evidence of the scriptures.' Practically, what is said here is that all the acts of a Brāhmana are performed with the aid of Vedic *mantras*.—T.

† *Mantras* are necessary in cremating a Brāhmana's dead body. *Mantras* are needed for assisting the dead spirit to attain to a brilliant form (either in the next world or in this if there be rebirth). These *mantras* are, of course, uttered in *Crādhas*. After the dead spirit has been provided, with the aid of *mantras*, with a body, food and drink are offered to him with the aid of *mantras*. Kine and animals are given away by the representatives of the dead for enabling the dead ancestor

This false doctrine (of incorporeal existence called Emancipation), apparently dressed in colors of truth, but subversive of the real purport of the declarations of the Vedas, has been introduced by learned men reft of prosperity and eaten up by idleness.[17] That Brāhmana who performs sacrifices according to the declarations of the Vedas is never seduced by sin. Through sacrifices, such a person attains to high regions of felicity along with the animals he has slain in those sacrifices, and himself, gratified by the acquisition of all his wishes succeeds in gratifying those animals by fulfilling their wishes.[18] By disregarding the Vedas, by guile, or by deception, one never succeeds in attaining to the Supreme. On the other hand, it is by practising the rites laid down in the Vedas that one succeeds in attaining to *Brahma*.[19]—

"'Kapila said,—(If acts are obligatory, then) there are the *Darça*, the *Paurnamāsha*, the *Agnihotra*, the *Chāturmāshya*, and other acts for the man of intelligence. In their performance is eternal merit. (Why then betake to acts involving cruelty ?)[20] Those that have betaken themselves to the Sanyāsa mode of life, that abstain from all acts, that are endued with patience, that are cleansed (of wrath and every fault), and that are conversant with *Brahma*, succeed by such knowledge of *Brahma* in paying off the debts (thou speakest of) to the gods, (the *Rishis*, and the

---

to cross the Vaitarani (the river that flows between the two worlds) and for enabling him to become happy in heaven. The funeral cake, again, according to the ordinance, is sunk in water for making it easily attainable by him to whom it is offered. By becoming a human being one inherits three debts. By study he pays off his debt to the *Rishis*: by the performance of sacrifices he pays off his debt to the gods, and by begetting children he frees himself from the debt he owes to the *Pitris*. The argument then is this: when the Vedas, which are the words of Supreme Godhead, have laid down these *mantras* for the attainment of such objects in the next world, how can Emancipation (which involves an incorporeal existence transcending the very *Kārana* form) be possible ? The very declarations of the Vedas in favor of acts are inconsistent with incorporeal existence or with the negation of existence with dual consciousness of knower and known.—T.

Pitris,) represented to be so very fond of libations poured in sacrifices.[21]* The very gods become stupified in tracing the track of that trackless person who constitutes himself the soul of all creatures and who looks upon all creatures with an equal eye.[22] Through instructions received from the preceptor one knows that which dwells within this frame to be of a four-fold nature, having besides four doors and four mouths. In consequence of (their possession of) two arms, the organ of speech, the stomach, and the organ of pleasure, the very gods are said to have four doors. One should, therefore, strive one's best to keep those doors under control.†[23] One should not gamble with dice. One should not appropriate what belongs to another. One should not assist at the sacrifice of a person of ignoble birth. One should not, giving way to wrath, smite another with hands or feet. That intelligent man who conducts himself in this way is said to

---

* The mention of 'Devân' implies, as the Commentator points out *Rishis* and also *Pitris*. The *amrita* here that these covet is, of course, the Sacrificial libation. 'Brahma-sajnitāh' implies 'conversant with Brahma,' for the Crutis say that 'Brahmavid Brahmaiva bhavati.'—T.

† The terseness of the original has not been removed in the translation. 'Enam' is the universal Soul dwelling within this physical frame. It refers to the person who constitutes himself to be the soul of all creatures or one who is conversant with *Brahma* or has become *Brahma* itself. That soul is said to have a fourfold nature, *viz.*, it is *virāt* (all-embracing), *sutra* (fine as the finest thread and pervading everything), *antaryāmin* (possessed of omniscience), and *cuddha* (stainless). Its four mouths, by which are meant the four sources of enjoyment or pleasure, are the body, the senses, the mind, and the understanding. What the speaker wishes to point out by this is the *Bhoktritwa* (power of enjoyment) of the soul. The *Kattritwa* (power of action) is then pointed out by the mention of the doors which are the two arms, the organ of speech, the stomach, and the organ of pleasure (generation). These last operate as doors for shutting or confining the soul within its chamber. They are the screens or *āvaranas* that conceal its real nature. The very gods feel their force, being unable to transcend them or their demands. He who would transcend them and shine in his own stainless nature should seek to control or restrain them. Practically, it is Yoga that is recommended for enabling one to attain to the position of the universal Soul.—T.

have his hands and feet well-controlled.[24] One should not indulge in vociferous abuse or censure. One should not speak words that are vain. One should forbear from knavery and from calumniating others. One should observe the vow of truthfulness, be sparing of speech, and always heedful. By conducting oneself in this way one will have one's organ of speech well-restrained.[25] One should not abstain entirely from food. One should not eat too much. One should give up covetousness, and always seek the companionship of the good. One should eat only so much as is needed for sustaining life. By conducting oneself in this way one succeeds in properly controlling the door represented by one's stomach.[26] One should not, O hero, lustfully take another wife when one has a wedded spouse (with whom to perform all religious acts). One should never summon a woman to bed except in her season. One should confine oneself to one's own wedded spouse without seeking congress with other women. By conducting oneself in this way one is said to have one's organ of pleasure properly controlled.[27] That man of wisdom is truly a regenerate person who has all his four doors, viz., the organ of pleasure, the stomach, the two arms (and two feet), and the organ of speech, properly controlled.[28] Everything becomes useless of that person whose doors are not well controlled. What can the penances of such a man do? What can his sacrifices bring about? What can be achieved by his body?[29] The gods know him for a Brāhmana who has cast off his upper garment, who sleeps on the bare ground, who makes his arm a pillow, and whose heart is possessed of tranquillity.*[30] That person who, devoted to contemplation, singly enjoys all the happiness that wedded couples enjoy, and who turns not his attention to the joys and griefs of others, should be known for a Brāhmana.†[31] That man who

---

* 'One who has cast off his upper garment' is one who clothes himself very scantily for only the sake of decency and not for splendour.—T.

† 'Dwandwārāma' very likely means here the joys of wedded couples and not 'the pleasures derived from pairs of opposites.' The sense seems to be this that man is a Brāhmana who, without marry-

rightly understands all this as it exists in reality and its multiform transformations, and who knows what the end is of all created objects, is known by the gods for a Brāhmana.*[32] One who hath no fear from any creature and from whom no creature hath any fear, and who constitutes himself the soul of all creatures, should be known for a Brāhmana.[33] Without having acquired purity of heart which is the true result of all pious acts such as gifts and sacrifices, men of foolish understandings do not succeed in obtaining a knowledge of what is needed in making one a Brāhmana even when explained by preceptors. Destitute of a knowledge of all this, these men desire fruits of a different kind, *viz.*, heaven and its joys.†[4] Unable to practise even a small part of that good conduct which has come down from remote times, which is eternal, which is characterised by certitude, which enters as a thread in all our duties, and by adopting which men of knowledge belonging to all the modes of life convert their respective duties and penances into terrible weapons for destroying the ignorance and evils of worldliness, men of foolish understandings regard acts that are productive of visible fruits, that are fraught with the highest puissance, and that are deathless, as fruitless after all and as deviations (from the proper course) not sanctioned by the scriptures. In truth, however, that conduct, embracing as it does practices the very opposite of those that are seen in seasons of distress, is the very essence of heedfulness and is never affected by lust and

---

ing, succeeds in enjoying singly all the felicity that attaches to married life.—T.

* In reality all things are, of course, *Brahma*. Their external aspects are only transformations. The end of all creatures is death and rebirth till absorption takes place into *Brahma* by means of Yoga.—T.

† The original is very terse. I have expanded it, following the Commentator. 'Dāna-yajna kriyā phalam' is 'chitta cuddhi' or purity of heart ; 'antarena' is equivalent to 'vina' ; 'anujānanti' governs 'Brahmanyam' understood.' 'Anyat phalam' in the second line implies heaven and its joys (which satisfy ordinary men). The particle 'anu' before 'jānanti' is taken to imply 'gurum anu,' *i. e.* 'following the instructions of preceptors.'—T.

wrath and other passions of a similar kind.*—[35-37] As regards sacrifices again, it is very difficult to ascertain all their particulars. If ascertained, it is very difficult to observe them in practice. If practiced, the fruits to which they lead are terminable. Mark this well. (And marking this, do thou betake thyself to the path of knowledge) !—[38]

"'Syumaraçmi said,—The Vedas countenance acts and discountenance them. Whence then is their authority when their declarations thus contradict each other? Renunciation of acts, again, is productive of great benefit. Both these paths have been indicated in the Vedas. Do thou discourse to me on this subject, O Brāhmana !'[39]

"'Kapila said,—Betaking yourselves to the path of the good (*viz.*, Yoga), do you in even this life realise its fruits by the direct evidence of your senses ! What, however, are

---

* These three Verses run together and are extremely abstruse. There can be no doubt that the Commentator is right. The construction is this : 'Yam sadāchāram āçritya samçritānām swakarmabhih (sahitam) tapah ghoratwam āgatam, tam (sadāchāram) purānam çāçwatam dhruvam dharmeshu cha sutritam kinchit charitum açaknuvantah phalavantī vyushtimanti dhruvāni cha karmāni (mudāh) vigunāni &c., paçyanti.' The second line of 36 stands by itself as an explanatory sentence referring to some of the characteristics of the 'sadāchāra' that is spoken of. 'Samçritānām' refers to men observing the different modes of life ; 'ghoratwan āgatam' is 'samsārāndhakāranāçakam bhavati.' What is meant by this is that the penances of such men, along with the duties they are called upon to observe by the particular mode of life they follow, become a terrible weapon, in consequence of their 'sadāchārah,' for destroying the evils of worldliness. The 'sadāchārah' spoken of here is 'nishkāmadharmah.' The latter is no new-fangled theory of men of learning but is 'purānam, çāçwatam, and dhruvam.' The 'phalavanti, vyushtimanti, and dhruvāni karmāni' which fools regard to be 'vigunānī and anaikāntikāni' are, of course, those acts which are included within the word 'Yoga'. In brief, the speaker, in these three verses, wishes to inculcate that wise men, whatever their mode of life, observe its duties. But by virtue of the 'nishkāma dharma' they follow, they convert those duties and their penances into efficient means for dispelling the darkness of ignorance. Fools, on the other hand, unable to practise that 'nishkāma dharma,' look upon it and Yoga itself as fruitless and valueless although the rewards these confer are visible.—T.

the visible results of those other objects which you (men of acts) pursue ?[40]

"'Syumaraçmi said,—O Brāhmana, I am Syumaraçmi by name ! I have come here for acquiring knowledge. Desirous of doing good to myself I have started this conversation in artless candour and not from desire of disputation.[41] This dark doubt has taken possession of my mind. O illustrious one, solve it to me ! Thou hast said that they who betake themselves to the path of the good, (*viz.*, Yoga), by which *Brahma* is attained, realise its fruits by the direct evidence of their senses. What, indeed, is that which is so realisable by the direct evidence of the senses and which is pursued by yourselves ?[42] Avoiding all sciences that have disputation only for their foremost object, I have so studied the Āgama as to have duly mastered their true meaning. By Āgama I understand the declarations of the Vedas. I also include in that word those sciences based on logic which have for their object the bringing out of the real meaning of the Vedas.*[43] Without avoiding the duties laid down for the particular mode of life which one may lead, one should pursue the practices laid down in Āgama. Such observance of the practices laid down in Āgama crowns one with success. In consequence of the certainty of the conclusions of Āgama, the success to which the latter leads may be said to be almost realisable by direct evidence.[44] As a boat, that is tied to another bound for a different port, cannot take its passengers to the port they desire to reach, even so ourselves, dragged by our acts due to past desires, can never cross the interminable river of birth and death (and reach the haven of rest and peace we may have in view). Discourse to me on this topic, O illustrious one ! Teach me as a preceptor teaches a disciple ![45] No one can be found amongst men that has completely renounced all worldly

---

* The sciences that have disputation only for their foremost object, are, according to the Commentator, the sciences of the Lokayātikas, the Saugatas (or Buddhists), the Kāpālikas. &c., The other sciences based on Logic that are included within the word Āgama are the two Mimāmsās, Sāukhya, and Pātanjala.—T.

objects, nor one that is perfectly contented with oneself, nor one that has transcended grief, nor one that is perfectly free from disease, nor one that is absolutely free from the desire to act (for one's own benefit), nor one that has an absolute distaste for companionship, nor one that has entirely abstained from acts of every kind.[46] Even men like yourself are seen to give way to joy and indulge in grief as persons like ourselves. Like other creatures the senses of persons like yourselves have their functions and objects.[47] Tell me, in what then, if we are to investigate the question of happiness, consists pure felicity for all the four orders of men and all the four modes of life who and which have, as regards their inclinations, the same resting ground.[48]—

" 'Kapila said,—Whatever the *Çāstras* according to which one performs the acts one feels inclined to do, the ordinances laid down in it for regulating those acts never become fruitless. Whatever again the school of opinion according to which one may conduct oneself, one is sure to attain to the highest end by only observing the duties of self-restraint or Yoga.[49] Knowledge assists that man in crossing (this interminable river of life and death) who pursues knowledge. That conduct, however, which men pursue after deviating from the path of knowledge, afflicts them (by subjecting them to the evils of life and death).[50] It is evident that ye are possessed of knowledge and dissociated from every worldly object that may produce distress. But have any of you at any time succeeded in acquiring that knowledge in consequence of which everything is capable of being viewed as identical with one Universal Soul?*[51] Without a correct apprehension of the scriptures, some there are, fond only of disputation, who, in consequence of being overwhelmed by desire and aversion, become the slaves of pride and arrogance.[52] Without having correctly understood the meaning of scrip-

* 'Aikātmyam' is explained by the Commentator as 'Eka eva dwaita darçana hina ātmā yatra bhavati'. Practically, it is that state of the mind in which one percieves one's identity with everything in the universe. This is that true knowledge which brings about Emancipation or is Emancipation itself.—T.

tural declarations, these robbers of the scriptures, these depredators of *Brahma*, influenced by arrogance and error, refuse to pursue tranquillity and practise self-restraint.*[53] These men behold fruitlessness on every side, and if (by chance) they succeed in obtaining the puissance of knowledge they never impart it to others for rescuing them. Made up entirely of the quality of *Tamas*, they have *Tamas* only for their refuge.[54] One becomes subject to all the incidents of that nature which one imbibes. Accordingly, of him who hath *Tamas* for his refuge, the passions of envy, lust, wrath, pride, falsehood, and vanity, continually grow, for one's qualities have one's nature for their spring.[55] Thinking in this strain and beholding these faults (through the aid of instructions secured from preceptors), Yatis, who covet the highest end, betake themselves to Yoga, leaving both good and ill.†[56]—

"'Syumaraçmi said,—O Brāhmana, all that I have said (about the laudable character of acts and the opposite character of Renunciation) is strictly conformable to the scriptures. It is, however, very true that without a correct apprehension of the meaning of the scriptures, one does not feel inclined to obey what the scriptures really declare.[57] Whatever conduct is consistent with equity is consistent with the scriptures. Even that is what the Cruti declares. Similarly, whatever conduct is inconsistent with equity is inconsistent with the scriptures. This also is declared by the Cruti.[58] It is certain that no one can do an act that is scriptural by transgressing the scriptures. That again is unscriptural which is against the Vedas. The Cruti declares this.[59] Many men, who believe only what directly appeals to their senses, behold only this world (and not what is

---

* They are called 'robbers of the scriptures' because they always seek to rob the scriptures of their true meaning. They are 'depredators of *Brahma*' because they deny the very existence of Godhead. 'Nirārambhāh' is 'Camādyārambha-çunyāh.'—T.

† The particle 'anu' means 'following the instructions of preceptors. 'Samyame' refers to 'Dhāranà, Dhyāna, and Samādhi.' Some texts read 'Siddhānte' for 'samyame'.—T.

addressed in the scriptures to Faith). They do not behold what the scriptures declare to be faults. They have, accordingly, like ourselves, to give way to grief. Those objects of the senses with which men like you are concerned are the same with which other living creatures are concerned. (Yet in consequence of your knowledge of the soul and their ignorance of it, how vast is the difference that exists between you and them![60] All the four orders of men and all the four modes of life, however different their duties, seek the same single end (*viz.*, the highest happiness). Thou art possessed of unquestioned talents and abilities. For ascertaining that particular course of conduct (amongst those various duties) which is well calculated to accomplish the desired end, thou hast, by discoursing to me on the Infinite *(Brahma)*, filled my soul with tranquillity. As regards ourselves, in consequence of our inability to understand the Soul we are destitute of a correct apprehension of the reality. Our wisdom is concerned with things that are low, and we are enveloped in thick darkness.[61-62] (The course of conduct, however, that thou hast indicated for enabling one to attain to Emancipation, is exceedingly difficult of practice). Only he who is devoted to Yoga, who has discharged all his duties, who is capable of roving everywhere depending only on his own body, who has brought his soul under perfect control, who has transcended the requirements of the science of morality and who disregards the whole world (and everything belonging to it), can transgress the declarations of the Vedas with respect to acts, and say that there is Emancipation.*[63-64] For one, however, who lives in the midst of relatives, this course of conduct is exceedingly difficult to follow. Gift, study of the Vedas, sacrifices, begetting offspring, simplicity of dealing,[65] when by practising even these no one succeeds in attaining to Emancipation, fie on him who seeks to attain to it, and on Emancipation itself that is

---

* What is intended to be said here is that only a life of Renunciation, so hard to follow, can lead to Emancipation. The Burdwan translator makes nonsense of the second line of 64 by connecting it with the first line of 65. K. P. Singha omits it entirely.—T.

sought! It seems that the labour spent upon attaining to it is all fruitless.[66] One becomes chargeable with atheism if one disregards the Vedas by not doing the acts they direct. O illustrious one, I desire to hear without delay about that (Emancipation) which comes in the Vedas after the declarations in favor of acts.[67] Do tell me the truth, O Brāhmana! I sit at thy feet as a disciple. Teach me kindly! I wish to know as much about Emancipation as is known to thee, O learned one![68]—' "

SECTION CCLXX.

" 'Kapila said,—The Vedas are regarded as authoritative by all. People never disregard them. *Brahma* is of two kinds, viz., *Brahma* as represented by sound, and *Brahma* as Supreme (and intangible).*[1] One conversant with Brahma represented by sound succeeds in attaining to Supreme Brahma. Commencing with the rites of *Garbhādhāna*, that body which the sire creates with the aid of Vedic *mantras* is cleansed (after birth) by Vedic *mantras*.[2]† When the body has been cleansed with purificatory rites (performed with the aid of Vedic *mantras*), the owner thereof comes to be called a Brāhmana and becomes a vessel fit for receiving knowledge of *Brahma*. Know that the reward of acts is purity of heart which only leads to Emancipation. I shall presently speak to thee of that.[3] Whether purity of heart has been

---

* The Vedas are 'Cavda-Brahma' or Brahma as represented by sound.—T.

† I have expanded this Verse, following the lead of the Commentator. Some idea may be given of the extreme terseness of such Verses by offering a literal rendering :—'That lump of matter which is made a (human) body by what is contained in the Veda, is (afterwards) made (a body by the same means).' One approaches one's wife after performing the rite of Garbhàdhâna. In this rite, different deities are invoked to develop different organs and parts of the body of the child to be begotten. Thus begotten, the body of the child is, subsequent to birth, cleansed or purified. All this requires the aid of Vedic *mantras*. What Kapila wishes to teach is that commencing with acts, knowledge should finally be acquired.—T.

attained or not (by performance of acts) is what can be known to the person himself who has attained it. It can never be known with the aid of either the Vedas or inference. They that cherish no expectations, that discard every kind of wealth by not storing anything for future use, that are not covetous, and that are free from every kind of affection and aversion, perform sacrifices because of the conviction that their performance is a duty. To make gifts unto deserving persons is the end (right use) of all wealth.[4-5] Never addicted at any time to sinful acts, observant of those rites that have been laid down in the Vedas, capable of crowning all their wishes with fruition, endued with certain conclusions through pure knowledge,[6] never giving way to wrath,—never indulging in envy, free from pride and malice, firm in Yoga.* of unstained birth, unstained conduct, and unstained learning, devoted to the good of all creatures,[7] there were in days of yore many men, leading lives of domesticity and thoroughly devoted to the their own duties, there were many kings also of the same qualifications, devoted to Yoga, (like Janaka, &c.,) and many Brāhmanas also of the same character (like Yājnavalkya and others).†[8] They behaved equally towards all creatures and were endued with perfect sincerity. Contentment was theirs, and certainty of knowledge. Visible were the rewards of their righteousness, and pure were they in behaviour and heart. They were possessed of faith in *Brahma* of both forms.‡[9] At first making their hearts pure, they duly observed all (excellent) vows. They were observant of the duties of righteousness on even occasions of distress and great difficulty, without falling off in any particular.[10] Uniting together they used to perform meritorious acts. In this they found great happiness. And inasmuch as they never tripped, they had never to perform any

---

* Yoga is the only way to true knowledge, hence Jnâna-nishthah is Yoga-nishthah.—T.

† These and men like these are pointed out as persons deserving of gifts.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, in Brahma as possessed of attributes and as freed from attributes.—T.

expiation.[11] Relying as they did upon the true course of righteousness, they became endued with irresistible energy. They never followed their own understandings in the matter of earning merit but followed the dictates of the scriptures alone for that end. Accordingly they were never guilty of guile in the matter of performing acts of righteousness.*[12] In consequence of their observing unitedly the absolute ordinances of the scriptures without betaking themselves ever to the rites laid down in the alternative, they were never under the necessity of performing expiation.†[13] There is no expiation for men living in the observance of the ordinances laid down in the scriptures. The Cruti declares that expiation exists for only men that are weak and unable to follow the absolute and substantive provisions of the sacred law.[14] Many Brāhmanas there were of this kind in days of old, devoted to the performance of sacrifices, of profound knowledge of the Vedas, possessed of purity and good conduct, and endued with fame.[15] They always worshipped *Brahma* in the sacrifices, and were free from desire. Possessed of learning they transcended all the bonds of life. The sacrifices of these men, their (knowledge of the) Vedas, their acts performed in obedience to the ordinances,[16] their study of the scriptures at the fixed hours, and the wishes they entertained, freed as they were from lust and wrath, observant as they were of pious conduct and acts notwithstanding all difficulties,[17] renowned as they were for performing the duties of their own order and mode of life, purified as their souls were in consequence of their very nature, characterised as they were by thorough sincerity, devoted as

---

* 'Mátrà' is explained as 'miyante vishayà anyá' *i. e.*, the understanding. What is meant by guile in the practice of righteousness may be exemplified as follows. Individual grains of barley may be given away instead of cloths by one unable to obtain clothes for gift. But one giving away barley grains when perfectly able to give away cloths would be guilty of guile.—T.

† The scriptures frequently lay down ordinances in the alternative. The absolute or substantive provisions are for the able. Those in the alternative are for them that are unable.—T.

they were to tranquillity, and mindful as they were of their own practices,[18] were identical with Infinite *Brahma.* Even this is the eternal Cruti heard by us.* The penances of men that were so high-souled, of men whose conduct and acts were so difficult of observance and accomplishment,[19] of men whose wishes were crowned with fruition in consequence of the strict discharge of their duties, became efficacious weapons for the destruction of all earthly desires. The Brāhmanas say that that Good Conduct, which is wonderful, whose origin may be traced to very ancient times, which is eternal and whose characteristics are unchangeable, which differs from the practices to which even the good resort in seasons of distress and represents their acts in other situations, which is identical with heedfulness, over which lust and wrath and other evil passions can never prevail, and in consequence of which there was (at one time) no transgression in all mankind, subsequently came to be distributed into four subdivisions, corresponding with the four modes of life, by persons unable to practise its duties in minute detail and entirety.†[20-22] They that are good, by duly observing that course of Good Conduct after adoption of the Sanyāsa mode of life, attain to the highest end. They also that betake themselves to the forest mode reach the same high end (by duly observing that conduct).[23] They too that observe the domestic mode of life attain to the highest end (by duly practising the same conduct); and lastly, those that lead the Brahmacharyya mode obtain the same (end by a due observance of the same con-

---

* What is meant by the sacrifices, &c., of such men being identical with Infinite Brahma is that these men were identical with *Brahma* and whatever they did was *Brahma.* They had no consciousness of self, or they did nothing for self. They were the Soul of the universe.—T.

† What is said here in effect is that at first there was only one course of duties, called 'sadāchāra' or good conduct, for all men. In progress of time men became unable to obey all its dictates in their entirety. It then became necessary to distribute those duties into four subdivisions corresponding with the four modes of life.—T.

duct.)* Those Brāhmanas are seen to shine in the firmament as luminaries shedding beneficent rays of light all around.[24] Those myriads of Brāhmanas have become stars and constellations set in their fixed tracks. In consequence of contentment (or Renunciation) they have all attained to Infinity as the Vedas declare.[25] If such men have to come back to the world through the wombs of living creatures, they are never stained by sins which have the unexhausted residue of previous acts for their originating cause.[26] Indeed, one who has led the life of a Brahmachārin and waited dutifully upon his preceptor, who has arrived at settled conclusions (in respect of the soul), and who has devoted himself to Yoga thus, is truly a Brāhmana. Who else would deserve to be called a Brāhmana?[27] When acts alone determine who is a Brāhmana and who is not, acts (good or bad) must be held to indicate the happiness or misery of a person. As regards those that have by conquering all evil passions acquired purity of heart, we have heard the eternal Cruti that, in consequence of the Infinity to which they attain (through beholding the universal soul) and of the knowledge of *Brahma* (they acquire through the declarations of Crutis),[28] they behold everything to be *Brahma*. The duties (of tranquillity, self-restraint, abstention from acts, renunciation, devotion, and the abstraction of Samādhi) followed by those men of pure hearts, that are freed from desire, and that have Emancipation only for their object, for acquisition of the knowledge of *Brahma*, are equally laid down for all the four orders of men and all the four modes of life. Verily, that knowledge is always acquired by Brahmanas of pure hearts

---

* Both K. P. Singha and the Burdwan translator have completely misunderstood Verse 23 and the first line of 24, which, as the Commentator explains, should be construed together. The construction is 'Tam (sadāchāram) santah grihebhyah nishkramya eva (sanyāsam kritwaiva) vidhivatprāpya paramām gatim gachchanti'. 'Anye santo 'vanamāçritāh tam vidhivat prāpya &c.' Similarly, 'Grihamevābhisamçritya anye santah &c.' 'Jato-anye &c.' Thus, all the four modes, commencing with the last, are spoken of.—T.

and restrained soul.*[29-30] One whose soul is for Renunciation based upon contentment is regarded as the refuge of true knowledge. Renunciation, in which is that knowledge which leads to Emancipation, and which is highly necessary for a Brāhmana, is eternal (and comes down from preceptor to pupil for ever and ever).†[31] Renunciation sometimes exists mixed with the duties of other modes. But whether existing in that state or by itself, one practises it according to the measure one's strength (that depends upon the degree of one's absence of worldly desires). Renunciation is the cause of supreme benefit unto every kind of person. Only he that is weak. fails to practise it. That pure-hearted man who seeks to attain to *Brahma* becomes rescued from the world (with its misery).‡[32]

---

* It is impossible for any one to read the Burdwan version of such Verses without pitying the Pundit responsible f its accuracy. Without understanding the Commentary in the least, the words of the great Commentator have been reproduced in the Burdwan version in a strange order, rejecting some of the connecting links without any excuse, and making the collocation utterly unintelligible K. P. Singha gives the substance very briefly without endeavouring to translate the words. And yet the Verse presnts almost no difficulty. The last line of 29 and the first line of 30 make one sentence. 'Chaturthopanishaddharmah' is explained by the Commentator as implying 'parmātma-vishayini vidyā, tadartham dharmah'. There are four states of consciousness: 1st, wakefulness; 2nd, dream; 3rd, dreamless slumber (sushupti); and 4th, *Turiya*, which is reached by *samādhi* (abstraction of Yoga-meditation), and in which *Brahma* becomes realisable. What is said in these two lines is simply this: the duties (dharmah), relating to the 'Chaturthopanishat' or, the Knowledge of Paramātman, are 'sādhāranah' or common to all the four orders of men and modes of life. Those duties, of course, are çama, dama, uparama, titikshā, çraddhā, samādhi. What is said in the last line of 30 is that Brāhmanas of pure hearts and restrained souls always succeed (by the help of those duties) in acquiring or attaining to that *Turiya* or consciousness of *Brahma*.—T.

† 'Apavargamati' is explained by the Commentator as 'apavargapradā vidyā or Brahmasākshātkārarupā vrittiryasminiti'. 'Nityah' is 'āvaçyakah'. 'Yatidharmah' is a life of Renunciation. What is meant by 'sanātanah' is 'sampradāyāgatah'.—T.

‡ 'Sādhārana' is opposed to 'kevala'. 'Yathāvalam' implies 'yathāvairāgyam'. 'Gachchatām Gachchatām' means 'purushamātrasya-

"'Syumaraçmi said,—Amongst those that are given up to enjoyment (of property), they that make gifts, they that perform scrifices, they that devote themselves to the study of the Vedas, and they that betake themselves to a life of Renunciation after having acquired and enjoyed wealth and all its pleasures,[33] when they depart from this world, who is it that attains to the foremost place in heaven? I ask thee this, O Brāhmana! Do thou tell me truly![34]—

"'Kapila said,—Those who lead a life of domesticity are certainly auspicious and acquire excellence of every kind. They are unable, however, to enjoy the felicity that attaches to Renunciation. Even thou mayst see this!*[35]

"'Syumaraçmi said,—Ye depend upon knowledge as the means (for the attainment of Emancipation). Those who lead lives of domesticity have planted their faith in acts. It has, however, been said that the end of all modes of life is Emancipation.†[36] No difference, therefore, is observable between them in respect of either their superiority or inferiority of puissance. O illustrious one, do thou tell me then how stands the matter truly![37]—

"'Kapila said,—Acts only cleanse the body. Knowledge, however, is the highest end (for which one strives).‡ When all faults of the heart are cured (by acts), and when the felicity of *Brahma* becomes established in knowledge,[38] benevolence, forgiveness, tranquillity, compassion, truthfulness, and candour, abstention from injury, absence of pride, modesty, renunciation, and abstention from work are attained.[39] These constitute the path that lead to *Brahma*. By those one

---

vanigvyadhädeh'. The Burdwan translator misses the sense altogether and K. P. Singha quietly passes over the entire second line of this triplet. 'Durvala' means he who is wanting in 'vairāgya'.—T.

* The Commentator explains that the object of this verse is to show that even if there be equality in respect of the end that is attained in next life, there is more of real felicity in a life of Renunciation than in a life of enjoyment. The Burdwan translator misses the sense entirely.—T.

† The Burdwan translator gives a very erroneous version of this verse.—T.

‡ For by Knowledge Emancipatoin is obtained.—T.

attains to what is the Highest. That the cure of all faults of the heart is the result of acts becomes intelligible to the wise man when these are attained.[40] That, indeed, is regarded as the highest end which is obtained by Brāhmanas endued with wisdom, withdrawn from all acts, possessed of purity and the certitude of knowledge.[41] One who succeeds in acquiring a knowledge of the Vedas, of that which is taught by the Vedas (*viz.*, *Brahma* as represented in acts), and the minutiæ of acts, is said to be conversant with the Vedas. Any other man is only a bag of wind.*[42] One who is conversant with the Vedas knows everything, for everything is established on the Vedas. Verily, the present, past, and future all exist in the Vedas.†[43] This one conclusion is deducible from all the scriptures, *viz.*, that this universe exists and does not exist. To the man of knowledge this (all that is perceived) is both *sat* and *asat*. To him, this all is both the end and the middle.‡[44] This truth rests upon all the Vedas, *viz.*, that when complete Renunciation takes place one obtains what is sufficient. Then again the highest contentment follows and rests upon Emancipation,§[45] which is absolute, which

---

* 'Vātarechaka' is 'vastrā' or a bellows. What is implied is, perhaps, that such a man breathes or lives in vain.—T.

† 'Nāsti' is explained by the Commentator as the past and the future. 'Nishthā' is 'swarupam'. Literally, what is said is that everything is the Vedas, or the Vedas are everything. This is, perhaps, only an exaggerated mode of saying that the Vedas deal with everything.—T.

‡ The sense seems to be that while they that are ignorant regard the universe to be as existent and durable as the thunder or adamant, the man of knowledge regards it to be truly non-existent though it puts forth the appearance of existence.—T.

§ I have endeavoured to give a literal version of Verse 45. It is difficult, however, to seize the meaning from such versions. The word used in the first line is 'Tyāga', implying Renunciation. The Commentator correctly explains that this is that complete Renunciation which takes place in 'Samādhi' or the perfect abstraction of Yoga. 'Samāptam' is 'samyak āptam (bhavati)'. This 'samyak' is *Brahma*. Similarly, 'santosha' is not ordinary contentment but 'Brahmānanda' or the Supreme felicity of one who has attained to *Brahma*. The meaning then is this: in the complete abstraction of Yoga (*i. e.*, Samādhi) is

exists as the soul of all mortal and immortal things, which is well-known as such universal soul, which is the highest object of knowledge as being identical with all mobile and immobile things, which is full, which is perfect felicity, which is without duality, which is the foremost of all things, which is *Brahma*, which is Unmanifest and the cause also whence the Unmanifest has sprung, and which is without deterioration of any kind.*[46] Ability to subdue the senses, forgiveness, and abstention from work in consequence of the absence of desire,—these three are the cause of perfect felicity. With the aid of these three qualities, men having understanding for their eyes succeed in reaching that *Brahma* which is increate, which is the prime cause of the universe, which is unchangeable, and which is beyond destruction. I bow to that *Brahma*, which is identical with him that knows it !†—' "[47]

SECTION CCLXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'The Vedas, O Bhārata, discourse of Religion, Profit, and Pleasure. Tell me, however, O grandsire, the attainment of which (amongst these three) is regarded as superior !'[1]

Brahma. This all the Vedas teach. In Emancipation again is the Supreme felicity of *Brahma*. 'Apavargah' is not annihilation but Emancipation, which is existence in *Brahma* without the dual consciousness of knower and known.—T.

* I have followed the Commentator in his exposition of almost all the adjectives in the text.—T.

† The grammatical construction of this verse is very difficult to catch. There can be no doubt that the Commentator is right. 'Tejah, kshamā, çāntih,'—these three are 'anāmayam çubham', *i. e.*. 'nirduhkhasya sukhasya prāptau hetuh.' 'Tathā' separates these from what follows. 'Abidham', 'Vyoma', 'Sanātanam', and 'dhruvam' are governed by 'gamyate'. 'Etaih sarvaih' refers to 'Tejah' and the two others. 'Abidham' is explained as 'akittrimam ;' 'vyoma' as 'jagatkāranam'. The Burdwan translator gives a correct version, although his punctuation is incorrect. He errs, however, in *not* taking 'anāmayam çubham' as one and the same. K. P. Singha errs in connecting 'anâmayam' with what follows 'tathâ'.—T.

"Bhishma said,—'I shall, in this connection, recite to thee the ancient narrative of the benefit that Kundadhāra in days of old had conferred upon one who was devoted to him.[2] Once on a time a Brāhmana destitute of wealth sought to acquire virtue, induced by the desire of fruit. He continually set his heart upon wealth for employing it in the celebration of sacrifices. For achieving his purpose he set himself to the practice of the austerest penances.[3] Resolved to accomplish his purpose, he began to worship the deities with great devotion. But he failed to obtain wealth by such worship of the deities.[4] He thereupon began to reflect, saying unto himself,—What is that deity, hitherto unadored by men, who may be favorably disposed towards me without delay ?[5]—While reflecting in this strain with a cool mind, he beheld stationed before him that retainer of the deities, *viz.*, the Cloud called Kundadhāra.[6] As soon as he beheld that mighty-armed being, the Brāhmana's feelings of devotion were excited, and he said unto himself,—This one will surely bestow prosperity upon me ! Indeed, his form indicates as much ![7] He lives in close proximity to the deities. He has not as yet been adored by other men. He will verily give me abundant wealth without any delay ![8]—The Brāhmana then, having concluded thus, worshipped that Cloud with *dhupas* and perfumes and garlands of flowers of the most superior kind, and with diverse kinds of offerings.[9] Thus worshipped, the Cloud became very soon pleased with his worshipper, and uttered these words fraught with benefit to that Brāhmana :[10] —The wise have ordained expiation for one guilty of Brāhmanicide, or of drinking alcohol, or of stealing, or of neglecting all meritorious vows. There is no expiation, however, for one that is ungrateful.*[11] Expectation hath a child named Iniquity. Wrath, again, is regarded to be a child of Envy. Cupidity is the child of Deceit. Ingratitude, however, is barren (and hath no offspring).[12]—After this, that Brāhmana, stretched on a bed of *Kuṣa* grass, and penetrated

* 'Nishkriti' is literally escape. There is escape for those referred to ; of course, the escape is to be sought by expiation. There is none for an ingrate, for ingratitude is inexpiable.—T.

with the energy of Kundadhāra, beheld all living beings in a dream.[13] Indeed, in consequence of his absence of passion, penances, and devotion, that Brāhmana of cleansed soul and standing aloof from all (carnal) enjoyments beheld in the night that effect of his devotion to Kundadhāra.[14] Indeed, O Yudhishthira, he beheld the high-souled Manibhadra of great effulgence stationed in the midst of the deities, employed in giving his orders.[15] There the gods seemed to be engaged in bestowing kingdoms and riches upon men, induced by their good deeds, and in taking them away when men fell off from goodness.*[16] Then, O bull of Bharata's race, Kundadhāra of great effulgence, bending himself low, prostrated himself on the ground before the gods in the presence of all the *Yakshas*.[17] At the command of the gods the high-souled Manibhadra addressed the prostrate Kundadhāra and said,—What does Kundadhāra want?[18] —Thereupon Kundadhāra replied,—If, indeed, the gods are pleased with me, there, that Brāhmana reverences me greatly! I pray for some favor being shown to him, something, that is, that may bring him happiness![19]—Hearing this, Manibhadra, commanded by the gods, once more said unto Kundadhāra of great intelligence these words,[20]—Rise, Rise up, O Kundadhāra! Thy suit is successful! Be thou happy! If this Brāhmana be desirous of wealth, let wealth be given to him,[21] that is, as much wealth as this thy friend desires! At the command of the gods I shall give him untold wealth![22] —Kundadhāra then, reflecting upon the fleeting and unreal character of the status of humanity, set his heart, O Yudhishthira, upon inclining the Brāhmana to penances.[23] Indeed, Kundadhāra said,—I do not, O giver of wealth, beg for wealth on behalf of this Brāhmana. I desire the bestowal of another favor upon him![24] I do not solicit for this devotee of mine mountains of pearls and gems or even the whole Earth with all her riches! I desire, however, that he should be virtuous![25] Let his heart find pleasure in virtue! Let him have virtue for her stay! Let virtue be the foremost of

---

* 'Açubheshu' is explained as 'açubheshu karmashu upasthiteshu'.—T.

all objects with him! Even this is the favor that meets with my approval![26]—Manibhadra said,—The fruits of virtue are always sovereignty and happiness of diverse kinds. Let this one enjoy those fruits, always freed from physical pain of every kind![27]—'

"'Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed, Kundadhāra, however, of great celebrity, repeatedly solicited virtue alone for that Brāhmana. The gods were highly pleased at it.[28] Then Manibhadra said,—The gods are all pleased with thee as also with this Brāhmana. This one shall become a virtuous-souled person. He shall devote his mind to virtue![29]—The Cloud, Kundadhāra, became delighted, O Yudhishthira, at thus having been successful in obtaining his wish. The boon that he had got was one that was unattainable by anybody else.[30] The Brāhmana then beheld scattered around him many delicate fabrics of cloth. Without minding them at all (although so costly), the Brāhmana came to disrelish the world.[31]

"'The Brāhmana said,—When this one doth not set any value upon good deeds, who else will? I had better go to the woods for leading a life of righteousness.*—'[32]

"Bhishma continued,—'Cherishing a distaste for the world, and through the grace also of the gods, that foremost of Brāhmanas entered the woods and commenced to undergo the austerest of penances.[33] Subsisting upon such fruits and roots as remained after serving the deities and guests, the mind of that regenerate person, O monarch, was firmly set upon virtue.[34] Gradually, the Brāhmana, renouncing fruits and roots, betook himself to leaves of trees as his food. Then renouncing leaves, he took to water only as his subsistence.[35]

---

* The Brāhmana evidently refers to the indifference of Kundadhāra towards him. He had thought that Kundadhāra would, in return for his adorations, grant him wealth. Disappointed in this, he says, when Kundadhāra does not mind my adorations, who else will? I had, therefore, better give up all desire for wealth and retire into the woods. The passage, however, seems to be inconsistent with the Brāhmana's indifference to the fine fabrics of cloth lying around him.—T.

After that he passed many years by subsisting upon air alone. All the while, however, his strength did not diminish. This seemed exceedingly marvellous.[36] Devoted to virtue and engaged in the practice of the severest austerities, after a long time he acquired spiritual vision.[37] He then reflected, saying unto himself,—If, being gratified with anybody I give him wealth, my speech would never be untrue.*[38]—With a face lighted up by smiles, he once more began to undergo severer austerities.[39] And once more, having won (higher) success, he thought that he could, by a fiat of the will, then create the very highest objects.—If, gratified with any person whatsoever I give him even sovereignty, he will immediately become a king, for my words will never be untrue![40]—While he was thinking in this way, Kundadhāra, induced by his friendship for the Brāhmana and no less by the ascetic success which the Brāhmana had achieved, showed himself, O Bhārata, (unto his friend and devotee).[41] Meeting with him the Brāhmana offered him worship according to the observances ordained. The Brāhmana, however, felt some surprise, O king.[42] Then Kundadhāra addressed the Brāhmana, saying, —Thou hast now got an excellent and spiritual eye! Behold with this vision of thine the end that is attained by kings, and survey all the worlds besides![43]—The Brāhmana then, with his spiritual vision, beheld from a distance thousands of kings sunk in hell.[44]

"'Kundadhāra said,—After having worshipped me with devotion thou hadst got sorrow for thy share, what then would have been the good done to thee by me, and what the value of my favour?[45] Look, look, for what end do men desire the gratification of carnal enjoyments! The door of heaven is closed un to men![46]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'The Brāhmana then beheld many men living in this world, embracing lust, and wrath, and

---

* Persons who have won ascetic success utter a wish and it is immediately fulfilled. 'I give thee this,' and forthwith what is given in words appears bodily, ready to be taken and appropriated. The words of such persons do not follow their meanings, but meanings follow their words.—T.

cupidity, and fear, and pride, and sleep, and procrastination, and inactivity.[47]

" 'Kundadhāra said,—With these (vices) all human beings are enchained. The gods are afraid of men. These vices, at the command of the gods, mar and disconcert on every side.*[48] No man can become virtuous unless permitted by the gods. (In consequence of their permission) thou hast become competent to give away kingdoms and wealth through thy penances!—'[49]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed, the righteous-souled Brāhmana, bending his head unto that Cloud, prostrated himself on the ground, and said,—Thou hast, indeed, done me a great favour![50] Unconscious of the great affection shown by thee towards me, I hadst, through the influence of desire and cupidity, failed to display good will towards thee![51]—Then Kundadhāra said unto that foremost of regenerate persons,—I have forgiven thee!—and having embraced him with his arms disappeared there and then.[52] The Brāhmana then roamed through all the worlds, having attained to ascetic success through the grace of Kundadhāra.[53] Through the puissance gained from virtue and penances, one acquires competence to sail through the skies and to fructify all one's wishes and purposes, and finally attain to the highest end.[54] The gods and Brāhmanas and Yakshas and all good men and Chāranas always adore those that are virtuous but never those that are rich or given up to the indulgence of their desires.[55] The gods are truly propitious to thee since thy mind is devoted to virtue. In wealth there may be a very little happiness but in virtue the measure of happiness is very great.' "[56]

---

* The Burdwan translator makes nonsense of this Verse. He forgets his grammar so completely as to take 'etaih' as qualifying 'lokāh'.—T.

Section CCLXXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Amongst the diverse kinds of sacrifices, all of which, of course, are regarded to have but one object (*viz.*, the cleansing of the heart or the glory of God), tell me, O grandsire, what that sacrifice is which has been ordained for only the sake (or acquisition) of virtue and not for the acquisition of either heaven or wealth !*'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection I shall relate to thee the history, formerly recited by Nārada, of a Brāhmana who for performing sacrifices, lived according to the *unccha* mode.[2]

"Nārada said,—In one of the foremost of kingdoms that was distinguished again for virtue, there lived a Brāhmana. Devoted to penances and living according to the *unccha* mode, that Brāhmana was earnestly engaged in adoring Vishnu in sacrifices.†[3] He had Cyāmāka for his food, as also Suryaparni and Suvarchala and other kinds of potherbs that were bitter and disagreeable to the taste. In consequence, however, of his penances, all these tasted sweet.‡[4] Abstaining from injuring any creature, and lead-

---

* The Verse is not difficult; the Commentator, again, is very clear. The Burdwan translator, however, while citing the very words of the commentary, totally misunderstands them and makes utter nonsense of them. 'Ekārthānâm' is explained as 'Ekam chittaçuddhih Içwarapritirvā tadarthānām madhye'. The question asked is 'dharmārtham yo yajnah samāhitah (viniyuktah) tadeva vruhi' and not that 'Yajna' which 'sukhārthārtham (bhavati).'—T.

† One that subsists upon grains of corn picked up from the fields after the reapers have abandoned them is called a person leading the *unccha* mode of life. The Burdwan translator commits the ridiculous error of taking 'uncchavrittih' as the *name* of the Brāhmana. The Commentator supposes that 'Yajna' here implies 'Vishnu', as expounded in the Crutis.—T.

‡ 'Cyāmāka' is a variety of pady called *Panicum frumentaceum.* 'Suryaparni' is otherwise called 'Māshaparni' (*Ayurvedārtha chandrikā*). It is identified with *Tiramus labialis*, syn—*Glycine deblis.* 'Suvarchalā' is a name applied to various plants. Here, very probably, 'Brāhmiçāka', or *Herpestes Monniera* (syn. *Gratiola Monniera*, Linn) is intended.—T.

ing the life of a forest recluse, he attained to ascetic success. With roots and fruits, O scorcher of foes, he used to adore Vishnu in sacrifices that were intended to confer heaven upon him.*[5] The Brāhmana, whose name was Satya, had a wife named Pushkaradhārini. She was pure-minded, and had emaciated herself by the observance of many austere vows. (Herself having been of a benevolent disposition, and her husband being thus addicted to sacrifices that were cruel), she did not approve of the conduct of her lord. Summoned, however, to take her seat by his side as his spouse (for the performance of a sacrifice),[6] she feared to incur his curse and, therefore, comported herself with his conduct. The garments that invested her body consisted of the (cast off) plumes of peacocks.[7] Although unwilling, she still performed that sacrifice at the command of her lord who had become its *Hotri*. In that forest, near to the Brāhmana's asylum, lived a neighbour of his, *viz.*, the virtuous Parnāda of Cukra's race, having assumed the form of a deer. He addressed that Brāhmana, whose name was Satya, in articulate speech and said unto him these words:—Thou wouldst be acting very improperly,†[8-9] if this sacrifice of thine were accomplished in such a manner as to be defective in *mantras* and other particulars of ritual! I, therefore, ask thee to slay and cut me into pieces for making libations therewith on thy sacrificial fire! Do this and becoming blameless ascend to heaven![10]—Then the presiding goddess of the solar disc, *viz.*, Sāvittri, came to that sacrifice in her own embodied form and insisted upon

---

* *I. e.*, he never slaughtered living animals for offering them in sacrifices because of his inability to procure them. He, therefore. substituted vegetable products for those animals. His sacrifices, intended to take him to heaven, were really cruel in intention.—T.

† Following the Bombay text, I read the last line of 8 as "Cukrasya punarājātih Parnādonāmadharmavit," or "Cukrasya punarājnābhih &c."; 'ājātih' is a 'descendant'. If 'ājnābhih' be taken as the reading it would mean 'at the repeated commands of Cukra'. The Bengal reading 'apadhyānāt adharmavit' seems to be vicious. Both the vernacular versions are incorrect; K. P. Singha supplying something of his own will for making sense of what he writes, and the Burdwan translator writing nonsense as usual,—T.

that Brāhmana in doing what he was desired by that deer to do. Unto that goddess, however, who thus insisted, the Brāhmana replied, saying,—I shall not slay this deer who lives with me in this same neighbourhood !*[11]—Thus addressed by the Brāhmana, the goddess Sāvittri desisted and entered the sacrificial fire from desire of surveying the nether world, and wishing to avoid the sight of (other) defects in that sacrifice.†[12] The deer then, with joined hands, once more begged of Satya (to be cut into pieces and poured into the sacrificial fire). Satya, however, embraced him in friendship and dismissed him, saying,—Go !‡[13]—At this, the deer seemed to leave that place. But after he had gone eight steps he returned, and said,—Verily, do thou slay me! Truly do I say, slain by thee I am sure to attain to a righteous end ![14] I give thee (spiritual) vision. Behold the celestial Apsaras and the beautiful vehicles of the high-souled Gandharvas ![15]—Beholding (that sight) for a protracted space of time, with longing eyes, and seeing the deer (solicitous of sacrifice), and thinking that residence in heaven is attainable by only slaughter, he approved (of the counsels the deer had given).[16] It was Dharma himself who had become a deer that lived in those woods for many years. (Seeing the Brāhmana tempted by the prospect he beheld), Dharma provided for his salvation and counselled him, saying,—This (*viz.*, slaughter of living creatures) is not conformable to the ordinances about Sacrifice.$[17]—The penances, which had been of very large

---

* K. P. Singha wrongly translates this verse; for once, the Burdwan translator is correct.—T.

† Both the vernacular versions of this Verse were incorrect. The Commentator explains that the grammar is 'rasātalam didrikshuh sā Yajnāpâvakam pravishtā.' 'Yajne duçcharitam kinnu, 'samipavarti mudo janah' *i. e.*, fearing to see many other defects in the sacrifice which was being celebrated by an ignorant person.—T.

‡ 'Vaddhānjalim' is an abverb, qualifying 'ayāchata'. The Burdwan translator wrongly takes it as an adjective of 'Satyam'.—T.

$ In Verse 8, it is said that it was a descendant of Cukra, *viz.*, the virtuous Parnāda, who had become a deer and lived in those woods as the Brāhmana's neighbour. Here it is said that it was the deity Dharma who had become so. The two statements may be reconciled sup-

measure, of that Brāhmana whose mind had entertained the desire of slaying the deer, diminished greatly in consequence of that thought itself. The injuring of living creatures, therefore, forms no part of sacrifice.*[18] Then the illustrious Dharma, (having assumed his real form), himself assisted that Brāhmana, by discharging the priestly office, to perform a sacrifice. The Brāhmana, after this, in consequence of his (renewed) penances, attained to that state of mind which was his spouse's.†[19] Abstention from injury is that religion which is complete in respect of its rewards. The religion, however, of cruelty is only thus far beneficial that it leads to heaven (which has a termination). I have spoken to thee of that religion of Truth which, indeed, is the religion of those that are utterers of *Brahma*.‡' "[20]

Section CCLXXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'By what means doth a man become sinful, by what doth he achieve virtue, by what doth he attain to renunciation, and by what doth he win Emancipation ?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—Thou knowest all duties. This question that thou askest is only for confirmation of thy conclusions. Listen now to Emancipation, and Renunciation, and Sin, and Virtue to their very roots ![2] Perceiving any one of the five objects, (*viz.*, form, taste, scent, sound, and touch), desire runs after it at first. Indeed, obtaining them within the purview of the senses, O chief of Bharata's race, desire or

---

posing that Dharma first became the *Rishi* Parnāda and then, as Parnāda, was metamorphosed into a deer. 'Tasya nishkritim ādhatta' is explained by the Commentator in a very far-fetched way. He takes these words to mean that Dharma, who had become a deer, provided at this juncture for his liberation from that metamorphosis. I think 'tasya' has reference to the misled Brāhmana.—T.

* 'Yajnā' is explained as 'yajnāya hitā.—T.

† 'Samādhānam' is the absorption of meditation, or that state of mind in which one has no longer any affection for the world. 'Bhāryyāyāh' is genetive, but the Burdwan translator takes it for the instrumental singular.—T.

‡ 'Yo dharmah' is the reading I take, and not 'no dharmāh'.—T

aversion springs up.*[3] One then, for the sake of that object, (*i. e.*, for acquisition of what is liked and avoidance of what is disliked) strives and begins acts that involve much labour. One endeavours one's best for repeatedly enjoying those forms and scents (and the three other objects of the remaining three senses) that appear very agreeable.[4] Gradually, attachment, and aversion, and greed, and errors of judgment arise.[5] The mind of one overwhelmed by greed and error and affected by attachment and aversion is never directed to virtue. One then begins with hypocrisy to do acts that are good.[6] Indeed, with hypocrisy one then seeks to acquire virtue, and with hypocrisy one likes to acquire wealth. When one succeeds, O son of Kuru's race, in winning wealth with hypocrisy,[7] one set one's heart to such acquisition wholly. It is then that one begins to do acts that are sinful, notwithstanding the admonitions of well-wishers and the wise, unto all which he makes answers plausibly consistent with reason and conformable to the injunctions of the scriptures.[8] Born of attachment and error, his sins, of three kinds, rapidly increase, for he thinks sinfully, speaks sinfully, and acts sinfully.[9] When he fairly starts on the way of sin, they that are good mark his wickedness. They, however, that are of a disposition similar to that of the sinful man, enter into friendship with him.[10] He succeds not in winning happiness even here. Whence then would he succeed in winning happiness hereafter? It is thus that one becomes sinful. Listen now to me as I speak to thee of one that is righteous.[11] Such a man inasmuch as he seeks the good of others, succeeds in winning good for himself. By practising duties that are fraught with other people's good, he attains at last to a highly agreeable end.[12] He who, aided by his wisdom, succeeds beforehand in beholding the faults above-adverted to, who is skilled in judging of what is happiness and what is sorrow and how each is brought about, and who waits with reverence upon those that are good,[13] makes progress in achieving virtue,

---

* The Commentator explains the grammar as 'panchānām (madhye ekam) artham prāpya, &c.'—T.

both in consequence of his habit and such companionship of the good. The mind of such a person takes delight in virtue, and he lives on, making virtue his support.[14] If he sets his heart on the acquisition of wealth, he desires only such wealth as may be acquired in righteous ways.[15] Indeed, he waters the roots of only those things in which he sees merit. In this way doth one become righteous and acquires friends that are good.[16] In consequence of his acquisition of friends, of wealth, and of children, he sports in happiness both here and hereafter. The mastery (in respect of enjoyment) that a living creature attains over sound, touch, taste, form, and scent, O Bhārata, represents the fruit of virtue.* Remember this. Having obtained the fruit of virtue, O Yudhishthira, such a man does not give himself up to joy.[17-18] Without being contented with such (visible) fruits of virtue he betakes himself to Renunciation, led on by the eye of knowledge. When, having acquired the eye of knowledge, he ceases to take pleasure in the gratification of desire, in taste and in scent,[19] when he does not allow his mind to run towards sound, touch and form, it is then that he succeeds in freeing himself from desire†. He does not, however, even then cast off virtue or righteous acts.[20] Beholding then all the worlds to be liable to destruction, he strives to cast off virtue (with its rewards in the form of heaven and its happiness) and endeavours to attain to Emancipation by the (well-known) means.‡[21] Gradually abandoning all sinful acts he betakes himself to Renunciation, and becoming righteous-souled succeeds at last in attaining to Emancipation.[22] I have now told thee, O son, of that about which

---

* This is the mastery or puissance that is brought about by Yoga, so that the person succeeds, by fiats of the will, in creating whatever he desires.—T.

† The Burdwan translator gives a ridiculous version of this verse. He cites the Commentator's words without understanding them aright.—T.

‡ What he does is to abandon 'sakāmah dharmah' for betaking himself to 'nishkāmah dharmah' or the practice of duties without desire of fruit, for only such a course of conduct can lead to Emancipation.—T.

thou hadst asked me, *viz.*, the topics of Sin, Righteousness, Renunciation, and Emancipation, O Bharata![23] Thou shouldst, therefore, O Yudhishthira, adhere to virtue in all situations. Eternal is the success, O son of Kunti, of thee that adherest to righteousness!'"*[24]

SECTION CCLXXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast said, O grandsire, that Emancipation is to be won by means and not otherwise. I desire to hear duly what those means are![1]

"Bhishma said,—'O thou of great wisdom, this enquiry that thou hast addressed to me and that is connected with a subtle topic, is really worthy of thee, since thou, O sinless one, always seekest to accomplish all thy objects by the application of means![2] That state of mind which is present when one sets oneself to make an earthen jar for one's use, disappears after the jar has been completed. After the same manner, that cause which urges persons who regard virtue as the root of advancement and prosperity ceases to operate with them that seek to achieve Emancipation.†[3] That path which leads to the Eastern Ocean is not the path by which one can go to the Western Ocean. There is only one path that leads to Emancipation. (It is not identical with any of those that lead to any other object of acquisition). Listen to me as I discourse on it to thee in detail.[4] One should, by practising forgiveness, exterminate wrath, and by abandoning all purposes, root out desire. By prac-

---

* By 'dharma' here is meant 'nishkāma dharma', for the fruits of 'sakāma dharma' are *not* eternal, heaven like all things else having an end.—T.

† What is said in this Verse is this: when a man wants an earthen jar, he works for creating one. When he has got one, he no longer finds himself in the same state of mind, his want having been satisfied. Similarly, with men desirous of heaven and earthly prosperity as the reward of virtue, the means is *Pravirtti* or acts. This or these cease to operate with those who having acquired such virtue set themselves for the achievement of Emancipation, for with them the religion of *Nivritti* is all-in-all.—T.

tising the quality of *Satwa** one should cônquer sleep.[5] By heedfulness one should keep off fear, and by contemplation of the Soul one should conquer breath.† Desire, aversion, and lust, one should dispel by patience;[6] error, ignorance, and doubt, by study of truth. By pursuit after knowledge one should avoid *insouciance* and inquiry after things of no interest.‡[7] By frugal and easily digestible fare one should drive off all disorders and diseases. By contentment one should dispel greed and stupefaction of judgment, and all worldly concerns should be avoided by a knowledge of the truth.$[8] By practising benevolence one should conquer iniquity, and by regard for all creatures one should acquire virtue. One should avoid expectation by the reflection that it is concerned with the future; and one should cast off wealth by abandoning desire itself.[9] The man of intelligence should abandon affection by recollecting that everything (here) is transitory. He should subdue hunger by practising Yoga. By practising benevolence one should keep off all ideas of self-importance, and drive off all sorts of craving by adopting contentment.[10] By exertion one should subdue procrastination, and by certainty all kinds of doubt, by taciturnity loquaciousness, and by courage every kind of fear.¶[11] Speech and

---

* *I. e.*, by abandoning all kinds of idleness, as explained by the Commentator.—T.

† *I. e.*, by Yoga-meditation one should regulate and finally suspend one's breath. The Yogin can suspend all physical functions and yet live on from age to age.—T.

‡ 'Nidrā' here is explained as 'ananusandhāna' or the absence of inquisitiveness or curiosity. By 'pratibhā' is meant inquiry after improper things or things that are of no interest.—T.

$ The truth is that the world is unreal and has an end.—T.

¶ Hunger is to be subdued by Yoga, *i. e.*, by regulating the wind within the body. Doubt is to be dispelled by certainty; this implies that certain knowledge should be sought for by driving off doubt. The Commentator thinks that this means that all sceptical conclusions should be dispelled by faith in the scriptures. By 'fear,' in this Verse, is meant the source of fear, or the world. That is to be conquered by the conquest of the six, *i. e.*, desire, wrath, covetousness, error, pride, and envy.—T.

mind are to be subdued by the Understanding, and the Understanding, in its turn, is to be kept under control by the eye of knowledge. Knowledge, again, is to be controlled by acquaintance with the Soul, and finally the Soul is to be controlled by the Soul.*[12] This last is attainable by those that are of pure acts and endued with tranquillity of soul,† the means being the subjugation of those five impediments of Yoga of which the learned speak.[13] By casting off desire and wrath and covetousness and fear and sleep, one should, restraining speech, practise the observances that are favorable to Yoga,[14] *viz.*, contemplation, study, gift, truth, modesty, candour, forgiveness, purity of heart, purity in respect of food, and the subjugation of the senses.[15] By these one's energy is increased, sins are dispelled, wishes crowned with fruition, and knowledge (of diverse kinds) gained.[16] When one becomes cleansed of one's sins and possessed of energy and frugal of fare and the master of one's senses, one then, having conquered both desire and wrath, seeks to attain to *Brahma*.[17] The avoidance of ignorance (by listening to and studying the scriptures), the absence of attachment (in consequence of Renunciation), freedom from desire and wrath (by adoption of contentment and forgiveness), the puissance that is won by Yoga, the absence of pride and haughtiness, freedom from anxiety (by subjugation of every kind of fear), absence of attachment to anything like home and family,[18]—these constitute the path of Emancipation. That path is delightful, stainless, and pure. Similarly, the restraining of speech, of body, and of mind, when practised

---

* What is laid down here is the same course of training that is indicated for Yoga. First, the senses are to be merged into the mind, then the mind is to be merged into the Understanding, then the Understanding is to be merged into the Soul or what is known as the Ego. This Ego is to be merged at last into the Supreme Soul. When the Ego is understood, it comes to be viewed as *Brahma*.—T.

† 'Pure acts' are of course, those that are included in 'Nishkāma dharmah', and 'tranquillity of soul' is the cleansing of the soul by driving away all passions and desires.—T.

from the absence of desire, constitutes also the path of Emancipation.' "[10]*

SECTION CCLXXV.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse that took place between Nārada and Asita-Devala.[1] Once on a time Nārada, beholding that foremost of intelligent men, *viz.*, Devala of venerable years, seated at his ease; questioned him about the origin and the destruction of all creatures.[2]

"'Nārada said,—Whence, O Brāhmana, hath this universe, consisting of mobile and immobile objects, been created? When again the all-embracing destruction comes, into whom doth it merge? Let thy learned self discourse to me on this!—[3]

"'Asita said,—Those from which the Supreme Soul, when the time comes, moved by the desire of existence in manifold forms, creates all creatures, are said by persons conversant with objects to be the five great essences.†[4] (After this) Time, impelled by the Understanding, creates other objects from those (five primal essences).‡ He that says that

---

* Such restraint of speech, &c., or 'niyamah' is 'yogah'. 'Kāmato-anyathā' is 'kāma-vaiparityena'. The sense, the Commentator adds, is that one should not desire 'yoga-siddhi', for then, as has been repeatedly indicated in the previous Sections, the Yogin would fall into hell and succeed not in attaining to Emancipation, heaven itself being hell in comparison with the felicity of Emancipation. K. P. Singha quietly skips over the last line and the Burdwan translator offers a ridiculously incorrect version.—T.

† 'Yebhyah' means 'the materials from which'. 'Srijati' has 'Paramātmā' for its nominative (understood). 'Kāle' is the time of creation as selected by the Supreme Soul in his own wisdom. 'Bhāvaprachoditah' is 'induced by the desire of becoming many, or led by the desire of existence as many or in infinite diversity'.—T.

‡ 'Kāla' here is, perhaps, the embodiment of the abstract idea of life or living creatures. Impelled by the Understanding, 'Kāla' or Life sets itself to the creation of other creatures. These last also are equally the result of the same five primal essences.—T.

there is anything else besides these (*i. e.*, the five primal essences, Kāla, and the Understanding), says what is not true.[5] Know, O Nārada, that these five are eternal, indestructible, and without beginning and without end. With Kāla as their sixth, these five primal essences are naturally possessed of mighty energy.[6] Water, Space, Earth, Wind, and Heat,—these are those five essences. Without doubt, there is nothing higher or superior to these (in point of puissance or energy.[7] The existence of nothing else (than these five) can be affirmed by any one agreeably to the conclusions derivable from the Crutis or arguments drawn from reason. If any one does assert the existence of anything else, then his assertion would verily be idle or vain. Know that these six enter into the production of all effects. That of which are all these (which thou perceivest) is called *Asat*.*[8] These five, and Kāla (or Jiva), the potencies of past acts, and Ignorance,—these eight eternal essences are the causes of the birth and destruction of all creatures.†[9] When creatures are destroyed it is into these that they enter; and when they take birth, it is again from them that they do so. Indeed, after destruction, a creature resolves itself into those five primal essences.[10] His body is made of earth; his ear has its origin in space; his eye hath light for its cause; his life (motion) is of wind; and his blood is

---

* The construction of the second line is this: 'etān shad abhinivrittān (sarvashu kāryeshu anugatān) vettha,; then 'ete yasya rāçayah (kāryāni, tat asat)'. The sense of the last clause is that this all is the effect of those primal essences. This all, therefore, is *of* those essences. The latter are included in the word *asat*, or unreal, as distinguished from *sat* or real or substantial. The Soul is *sat*, everything else is *asat*.—T.

† In previous Sections it has been explained how when the Chit, which has pure knowledge for its attribute, becomes invested with Ignorance, it begins to attract the primal essences towards itself in consequence of the potencies of past acts and take birth in various shapes. (The idea of past acts is due to the infinite cycles of creation and destruction, the very first creation being inconceivable.) The causes of creation are, therefore, the five primal essences, Jiva (or *chit*), the protencies of past acts, and Ignorance.—T.

of water, without doubt.[11] The two eyes, the nose, the two ears, the skin, and the tongue (constituting the fifth), are the senses. These, the learned know, exist for perception of their respective objects.*[12] Vision, hearing, smelling, touching, and tasting are the functions of the senses. The five senses, are concerned with five objects in five ways. Know, by the inference of reason, their similitude of attributes.†[13] Form, scent, taste, touch, and sound, are the five properties that are (respectively) apprehended by the five senses in five different ways.[14] These five properties, *viz.*, form, scent, taste, touch, and sound, are not really apprehended by the *senses* (for these are inert), but it is the Soul that apprehends them *through* the senses.[15] That which is called Chitta is superior to the multitude of senses. Superior to Chitta is Manas. Superior to Manas is Buddhi, and superior to Buddhi is *Kshettrajna.*‡[16] At first a living creature perceives different objects through the senses. With Manas he reflects over them, and then with the aid of Buddhi he arrives at certitude of knowledge. Possessed of Buddhi, one arrives at certainty of conclusions in respect of objects perceived through the senses.[17] The five senses, Chitta, Mind, and Understanding (which is the eighth in the tale),—these are regarded as organs of knowledge by those conversant

---

* 'Jnānāni' is 'Jnāna-kāranāni', *i. e.*, perceptions for causes of perception.—T.

† The second line of 13 is very condensed. The meaning is this; the eye is the sense of vision. Vision or sight is its function. The object it apprehends is form. The eye has light for its cause, and form is an attribute of light. Hence the eye seizes or apprehends form. By the inference of reason, there is similitude, in respect of attribute or property, between the eye, vision, and form. The Commentator explains this clearly. 'Drashtri-darçana-driçyānām trayānāmapi gunātmatyam upapannam'. This is indicated with a little variation in the next verse. K. P. Singha skips over the line. The Burdwan translator gives an incorrect version.—T.

‡ *Manas* is mind, *Budhhi* is understanding, and *Kshettrajna* is the Soul. What, however, is *Chitta* is difficult to ascertain, unless it means vague or indefinite perception. In some systems of philosophy the Chitta is placed above the Understanding.—T.

with the science of Adhyātma.[18] The hands, the feet, the anal duct, the membrum virile, the mouth (forming the fifth in the tale), constitute the five organs of action.[19] The mouth is spoken of as an organ of action because it contains the aparatus of speech, and that of eating. The feet are organs of locomotion and the hands for doing various kinds of work.[20] The anal duct and the membrum virile are two organs that exist for a similar purpose, *viz.*, for evacuation. The first is for evacuation of stools, the second for that of urine as also of the vital seed when one feels the influence of desire.[21] Besides these, there is a sixth organ of action. It is called muscular power. These then are the names of the six organs of action according to the (approved) treatises bearing on the subject. I have now mentioned to thee the names of all the organs of knowledge and of action, and all the attributes of the five (primal) essences.*[22] When in consequence of the organs being fatigued, they cease to perform their respective functions, the owner of those organs, because of their suspension, is said to sleep.[23] If when the functions of these organs are suspended, the functions of the mind do not cease, but on the other hand the mind continues to concern itself with its objects, that condition of Consciousness is called Dream.[24] During wakefulness there are three states of the mind, *viz.*, that connected with Goodness, that with Passion, and that with Darkness. In dream also the mind becomes concerned with the same three states. Those very states, when they appear in dreams, connected with pleasurable actions, come to be regarded with applause.[25] Happiness, success, knowledge, and absence of attachment are the indications of (the wakeful man in whom is present) the attribute of Goodness. Whatever states (of Goodness, Passion, or Darkness) are experienced by living creatures, as exhibited in acts, during their hours of wakefulness, reappear in memory during their hours of sleep when they dream. The passage of our notions as they exist during wakefulness

---

* The Bengal reading 'yathāgamam' is preferable to the Bombay reading 'yathāmama'.—T.

into those of dreams, and that of notions as they exist in dreams into those of wakefulness, become directly apprehensible in that state of consciousness which is called dreamless slumber. That is eternal, and that is desirable.*[26-27] There are five organs of knowledge, and five of action; with muscular power, mind, understanding, and Chitta, and with also the three attributes of *Satwa*, *Rajas*, and *Tamas*, the tale, it has been said, comes up to seventeen. The eighteenth in the enumeration is he who owneth the body. Indeed, he who lives in this body is eternal.[28] All those seventeen (with *Avidyā* or Ignorance making eighteen), dwelling in the body, exist attached to him who owns the body. When the owner disappears from the body, those eighteen (counting *Avidyā*) cease to dwell together in the body.[29] Or, this body made up of the five (primal) essences is only a combination (that must dissolve away). The eighteen attributes (including *Avidyā*), with him that owneth the body, and counting stomachic heat numbering twentieth in the tale, form that which is known as the Combination of the Five.[30] There is a Being called Mahat, which, with the aid of the wind (called *Prāna*), upholds this combination containing the twenty things that have been named, and in the matter of the destruction of that body the wind (which is generally spoken of as the cause) is only the instrument in the hands of that

---

* The first line of 27 is grammatically connected with the last line of 26. The second line of 27 is very abstruse. The grammatical construction is this:—'tayorbhāvayorgamanam (sushuptau) pratyaksham (drishtam); (tadeva) nityam, ipsitam (cha).' What is meant by this is that in ordinary men, the notions during wakefulness are not the notions they cherish during dreams: nor are their notions during dreams identifiable with those they entertain while wakeful. There is similarity but not identity. In eternal Sushupti, however, which is Emancipation, the notions of wakefulness pass into those of dream and those of dream pass into those of wakefulness, *i. e.*, both (or, rather, the same, for there is then perfect identity between them) become directly apprehensible in Sushupti or Emancipation. Sushupti or Emancipation, therefore, is a state, in which there is neither the consciousness of wakefulness nor that of dream, but both run together, their differences disappearing totally.—T.

same Mahat.[31] Whatever creature is born is resolved once more into the five constituent elements upon the exhaustion of his merits and demerits; and urged again by the merits and demerits won in that life enters into another body resulting from his acts.*[32] His abodes always resulting from Avidyā, desire, and acts, he migrates from body to body, abandoning one after another repeatedly, urged on by Time, like a person abandoning house after house in succession.[33] They that are wise, and endued with certainty of knowledge, do not give way to grief upon beholding this (migration). Only they that are foolish, erroneously supposing relationships (where relationship in reality there is none) indulge in grief at sight of such changes of abode.[34] This *Jiva* is no one's relation; there is none again that may be said to belong to him. He is always alone, and he himself creates his own body and his own happiness and misery.[35] This *Jiva* is never born, nor doth he ever die. Freed from the bond of body, he succeeds sometimes in attaining to the highest end.[36] Deprived of body, because freed through the exhaustion of acts from bodies that are the results of merits and demerits, Jiva at last attains to *Brahma*.[37] For the exhaustion of both merits and demerits, Knowledge hath been ordained as the cause in the Sānkhya school. Upon the exhaustion of merit and demerit, when *Jiva* attains to the status of *Brahma*,† (they that are learned in the scriptures) behold (with the eye of the scriptures) the attainment of *Jiva* to the highest end.—' "[38]

---

* This is a triplet.—T.

† 'Brahmabhāva' is explained as follows: when one succeeds in understanding Brahma, one is said to attain to Brahma, as the Crutis declare. The Commentator explains that 'paçyanti' is used with reference to those that are learned in the scriptures. They 'behold' the attainment of the highest end by Jiva *not* with their physical eyes but with the eye of the scriptures, for they that are themselves emancipated cannot be said to behold the emancipation of another. This is grave trifling for explaining the use of the word 'paçyanti'.—T.

Section CCLXXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Cruel and sinful that we are, alas, we have slain brothers and sires and grandsons and kinsmen and friends and sons![1] How, O grandsire, shall we dispel this thirst for wealth! Alas, through that thirst we have perpetrated many sinful deeds.'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of what was said by the ruler of the Videhas unto the enquiring Māndavya.[3] The ruler of the Videhas said.—I have nothing (in this world), yet I live in great happiness. If the whole of Mithilā (which is said to be my kingdom) burn in a conflagration nothing of mine will be burnt down.[4] Tangible possessions, how valuable soever, are a source of sorrow to men of knowledge; while possessions of even little value fascinate the foolish.*[5] Whatever happiness exists here, derivable from the gratification of desire, and whatever heavenly happiness exists of high value, do not come up to even a sixteenth part of the felicity that attends the total disappearance of desire.[6] As the horns of a cow grow with the growth of the cow itself, after the same manner the thirst for wealth increases with increasing acquisitions of wealth.[7] Whatever the object for which one feels an attachment, that object becomes a source of pain when it is lost.[8] One should not cherish desire. Attachment to desire leads to sorrow. When wealth has been acquired, one should apply it to purposes of virtue. One should even then give up desire.†[9]

---

* The Commentator points out that possessions of value include even the region of Brahman. Men of knowledge, who seek Emancipation, do not set any value on even the joys of the region of the Creator.—T.

† The Commentator explains that one should not cherish the desire for wealth even for the sake of acquiring virtue therewith. When, however, wealth is obtained without effort, such wealth should be applied to the acquisition of virtue. One is also directed to give up the desire of acquiring wealth (by even innocent means), the reason being that desire, when cherished, is sure to increase and get the better of one's heart.—T.

The man of knowledge always looks upon other creatures even as he looks upon himself. Having cleansed his soul and attained to success, he casts off everything here.*[10] By casting off both truth and falsehood, grief and joy, the agreeable and disagreeable, fearlessness and fear, one attains to tranquillity, and becomes free from every anxiety.[11] That thirst (for earthly things) which is difficult of being cast off by men of foolish understanding, which wanes not with the wane of the body, and which is regarded as a fatal disease (by men of knowledge), one who succeeds in casting off is sure to find felicity.[12] The man of virtuous soul, by beholding his own behaviour that has become bright as the moon and free from evil of every kind, succeeds in happily attaining to great fame both here and hereafter![13]—Hearing these words of the king, the Brāhmana became filled with joy, and applauding what he heard, Māndavya betook himself to the path of Emancipation.' "[14]

SECTION CCLXXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Time, that is fraught with terror unto all creatures, is running his course. What is that source of good after which one should strive? Tell me this, O grandsire!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of a discourse between a sire and son. Listen to it, O Yudhishthira![2] Once on a time, O son of Prithā, a regenerate person devoted to only the study of the Vedas had a very intelligent son who was known by the name of Medhāvin.[3] Himself conversant with the religion of Emancipation, the son one day asked his father who was not conversant with that religion and who was engaged in following the precepts of the Vedas, this question.[4]

" 'The son said,—What should a man of intelligence do,

---

* The Commentator observes that the first line means that the man of knowledge should wish for happiness to all, and never wish sorrow to any one. 'Sarvam' includes virtue and vice. Of course, the practice of *nishkāma dharma* is recommended.—T.

O sire, knowing that the period of existence allotted to men runs fast away ? Tell me this truly and in proper order, O father, so that, guided by thy instructions I may set myself to the acquisition of virtue.[5]—

" 'The sire said,—Having studied the Vedas all the while observing the duties of *Brahmacharyya*, O son, one should then desire for offspring for the sake of rescuing one's sires. Having established one's fire then and performing the sacrifices that are ordained, one should then retire into the woods and (having lived as a forest-recluse) one should then become a *Muni* (by casting off everything and calmly waiting for dissolution).[6]—

" 'The son said,—When the world is thus assailed and thus besieged on all sides, and when such irresistible (bolts) are falling in every direction, how can you speak so calmly ?—[7]

" 'The sire said,—How is the world assailed ? By what is it besieged ? What are those irresistible bolts that are falling on every side ? Dost thou frighten me with thy words ?[8]—

" 'The son said,—The world is assailed by Death. It is besieged by Decrepitude. Days and Nights are continually falling (like bolts). Why do you not take heed of these ?[9] When I know that Death does not wait here for any one (but snatches all away suddenly and without notice) how can I possibly wait (for his coming) thus enveloped in a coat of Ignorance and (heedlessly) attending to my concerns ?[10] When as each night passes away the period of every one's life wears away with it, when, indeed, one's position is similar to that of a fish in a piece of shallow water, who can feel happy ?[11] Death encounters one in the very midst of one's concerns, before the attainment of one's objects, finding one as unmindful as a person while engaged in plucking flowers.*[12]

---

* All Brāhmanas have to pluck flowers in the morning for offering them to the deities they worship. The task takes many minutes, because a good many have to be plucked for the purpose. Being a daily occupation and going as they do to places where flowers abound, the act of plucking goes on while the plucker is mentally engaged with other things.—T.

That which is kept for being done tomorrow should be done today; and that which one thinks of doing in the afternoon should be done in the forenoon. Death does not wait, mindful of one's having done or not done one's acts.[13] Do today what is for thy good (without keeping it for tomorrow)! See that Death, who is irresistible, may not overcome thee (before accomplishing thy acts). Who knows that Death will not come to one this very day?[14] Before one's acts are completed, Death drags one away. One should, therefore, commence to practise virtue while one is still young (without waiting for one's old age), for life is uncertain.[15] By acquiring virtue one is sure to win eternal happiness both here and hereafter. Overpowered by folly one girds up one's loins for acting on behalf of one's sons and wives.[16] By accomplishing acts foul or fair, one gratifies these (relatives). Him possessed of sons and animals, and with mind devotedly attached to them,[17] Death seizes and runs away like a tiger bearing away a sleeping deer.* While still engaged in winning diverse objects of desire, and while still unsated with their enjoyment,[18] Death seizes him and runs away like a she-wolf seizing a sheep and running away with it.—*This has been done,—this remains to be done,—this other is half done,*[19]—one may say thus to oneself; but Death, unmindful of one's desire to finish one's unfinished acts, seizes and drags one away. One that has not yet obtained the fruit of what one has already done, amongst those attached to action,[20] one busied with one's field or shop or house, Death seizes and carries away. The weak, the strong, the wise, the brave, the idiotic, the learned,[21] or him that has not yet obtained the gratification of any of his desires, Death seizes and bears away. Death, decrepitude, disease, sorrow, and many things of a similar kind,[22] are

---

* The Bengal reading 'suptam vyāghro mrigamiva &c.' is preferable to the Bombay reading 'suptam vyāghram mahaughovā &c.' If the Bombay reading be accepted, the meaning would be 'Him Death snatches away *as a mighty wave sweeps away a sleeping tiger.*' The idea of a sleeping tiger being swept away by a surging wave is very unfamiliar.—T.

incapable of being avoided by mortals. How then, O father, canst thou sit so at thy ease? As soon as an embodied creature is born, Decrepitude and Death come and possess him for his destruction.[23] All these forms of existence, mobile and immobile, are possessed by these two (*viz.*, Decrepitude and Death). When the soldiers that compose Death's army are on their march, nothing can resist them,[24] except that one thing, *viz.*, the power of Truth, for in Truth alone Immortality dwells. The delight that one feels of residing in the midst of men is the abode of Death.[25] The Cruti declares that that which is called the forest is the true fold for the *Devas*, while the delight one feels in dwelling in the midst of men is, as it were, the cord for binding the dweller (and making him helpless).*[26] The righteous cut it and escape. The sinful do not succeed in cutting it (and freeing themselves). He who does not injure other creatures in thought, word, and deed,[27] and who never injures others by taking away their means of sustenance, is never injured by any creature.† For these reasons, one should practise the vow of truth, be steadily devoted to the vow of truth,[28] and should desire nothing but the truth. Restraining all one's senses and looking upon all creatures with an equal eye, one should vanquish Death with the aid of Truth. Both Immortality and Death are planted in the body.[29] Death is encountered from folly, and Immortality is won by Truth. Transcending desire and wrath, and abstaining from injury, I shall adopt Truth and happily achieving what is for my good, avoid Death like an Immortal. Engaged in the Sacrifice that is constituted by Peace, and employed also in the Sacrifice of *Brahma*, and restraining my senses,[30-31] the Sacrifices I shall perfom are those of speech, mind, and acts,

---

* 'Devas' here evidently refer to the senses. The senses are, as it were, cattle. Their true fold is the forest and not peopled cities and towns. In the forest there are no temptations to try them as in the midst of cities and towns.—T.

† 'Jivitārthāpanayanaih' is connected with 'hinsati'. To take it (as the Burdwan translator does) as an adjective qualifying 'prānibhih' would be incorrect.—T.

when the sun enters his northerly course.* How can one like me perform an Animal Sacrifice which is fraught with cruelty?[32] How can one like me, that is possessed of wisdom, perform like a cruel Piçācha, a Sacrifice of Slaughter after the manner of what is laid down for the Kshatriyas,—a Sacrifice that is, besides, endued with rewards that are terminable? In myself have I been begotten by my own self. O father, without seeking to procreate offspring, I shall rest myself on my own self![33] I shall perform the Sacrifice of Self, I need no offspring to rescue me.† He whose words and thoughts are always well-restrained,[34] he who has Penances and Renunciation, and Yoga, is sure to attain to everything through these. There is no eye equal to Knowledge. There is no reward equal to Knowledge.[35] There is no sorrow equal to attachment. There is no happiness equal to Renunciation.[36] For a Brāhmana there can be no wealth like residence in solitude, an equal regard for all creatures, truthfulness of speech, steady observance of good conduct, the total abandonment of the rod (of chastisement), simplicity, and the gradual abstention from all acts.‡[37] What need hast thou with wealth and what need with relatives and friends, and what with spouses? Thou art a Brāhmana and thou hast death to encounter! Search thy own Self that is concealed in a cave. Whither have thy grandsires gone and whither thy sire too?$[38]—'

"Bhishma said,—'Hearing these words of his son, the sire

---

* The Sacrifice of Peace is opposed to the Sacrifice of Slaughter. The Sacrifice of Brahma is Yoga which leads to a knowledge of the Soul. The Sacrifice of Speech is Vedic recitation or Yapa. The Sacrifice of Mind is contemplation, and that of Acts is baths, performance of other acts of purity, waiting dutifully upon the preceptor, &c.—T.

† To perform the Sacrifice of Self is to merge the Soul in the Supreme Soul.—T.

‡ The Bombay reading 'danda-vidhānam' is a blunder for the Bengal reading 'danda-nidhānam'. To interpret 'vidhānam' as equivalent to abandonment or giving up, by taking the prefix 'vi,' in the sense of 'vigata' would be an act of violence to the word.—T.

$ The 'guhā' or cave referred to is the body.—T.

acted in the way that was pointed out, O king! Do thou also act in the same way, devoted to the religion of Truth!'"[39]

SECTION CCLXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Of what behaviour must a man be, of what acts, of what kind of knowledge, and to what must he be devoted, for attaining to Brahma's place which transcends Prakriti and which is unchangeable?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'One that is devoted to the religion of Emancipation, frugal in fare, and the master of one's senses, attains to that high place which transcends Prakriti and is unchangeable.*[2] Retiring from one's home, regarding gain and loss in the same light, restraining the senses, and disregarding all objects of desire even when they are ready (for enjoyment), one should adopt a life of Renunciation.†[3] Neither with eye, nor with word, nor in thought, should one disparage another. Nor should one speak evil of any person either in or out of his hearing.[4] One should abstain from injuring any creature, and conduct oneself observing the course of the Sun.‡ Having come into this life, one should not behave with unfriendliness towards any creature.[5] One should disregard opprobrious speeches, and never in arrogance deem oneself as superior to another. When sought to be angered by another, one should still utter agreeable speeches. Even when caluminated, one should not calumninate in return.[6] One should not behave in a friendly or an unfriendly way in the midst of human beings. One should not go about many houses in one's round of mendicancy.

---

* By 'Prakriti', as explained in previous Sections, is meant primal nature consisting of the five great essences of earth, water,&c.,—T.

† 'Samupodeshu' is explained as 'upsthiteshu api', *i. e.*, even when such objects are present and ready for enjoyment.—T.

‡ 'Maitrāyangatah', as explained by the Commentator, is 'Suryavat-pratyaha-vibhinna-mārgah', *i. e.*, roving like the Sun every day in a different path. The object of the speaker is to lay it down that one solicitous of Emancipation should never confine oneself to one spot, but rove or wander over the world without owning a fixed habitation or home. K. P. Singha translates the word wrongly.—T.

Nor should one go to any house having received a previous invitation (to dinner).*[7] Even when bespattered with filth (by others), one should, resting firmly in the observance of one's duties, refrain from addressing such bespatterers in disagreeable speeches. One should be compassionate. One should abstain from returning an injury. One should be fearless; one should refrain from self-laudation.[8] The man of restrained senses should seek his dole of charity in a householder's abode when the smoke has ceased to rise from it, when the sound of the husking rod is hushed, when the hearth-fire is extinguished, when all the inmates have finished their meals, or when the hour is over for setting the dishes.†[9] He should content himself with only as much as is barely necessary for keeping body and soul together. Even that much of food which produces gratification should not be coveted by him. When he fails to obtain what he wants, he should not suffer himself to cherish discontent. Success, again, in obtaining what he wants, should not make him glad.‡[10] He should never wish for such things as are

---

* In the first line, the Bengal reading 'madhye na chācharet' is better than 'madhye cha nācharet'. 'Pradakshinam' is 'anukulam', and 'savyam' is 'pratikulam'. The grammar of the second line is not difficult. Besides, the Commentator explains it clearly. The Burdwan translator, leaving out the words 'bhaikshachairyām' and taking 'anāpannah' as equivalent to 'vipadāpannah,' gives a thoroughly ridiculous version. K. P. Singha, also, is not correct. The Commentator explains that 'charyām' means 'anekagrihātanam;' 'anāpannam' is 'akurvan.' The second foot is unconnected with the first.—T.

† 'Muni', here, is one who has restrained his senses, or who has betaken himself to the path of Renunciation. 'Pātrasamchāra', I think, is the act of setting the dishes for those who are to dine off them. The Commentator explains that it means 'the motion of those who are to distribute the food.' Of course, their motions from the kitchen to the dining hall and back are implied if the word is taken for 'setting of dishes.' The sense remains unaltered. The Muni must be abstemious and hence he should select an hour like this for begging his dole, when there would be very little in the house to give.—T.

‡ 'Mātrā' is a technical word signifying the taking of food to the extent of only gratification of hunger, or, as explained by Chakrapāni Datta in his Commentary on Charaka, 'triptimātram.' When 'mātrā'

coveted by ordinary men. He should never eat at any body's house when respectfully invited thereto. One like him should reprobate such gains as are obtained with honor.*[11] He should never find fault (on account of staleness, &c.) with the food placed before him, nor should he applaud its merits. He should covet a bed and a seat that are removed from the haunts of men.[12] The places he should seek are such as a deserted house, the foot of a tree, a forest, or a cave. Without allowing his practices to be known by others, or concealing their real nature by appearing to adopt others (that are hateful or repulsive), he should enter his own Self.†[13] By association with Yoga and dissociation from company, he should be perfectly equable, steadily fixed, and uniform. He should not earn either merit or demerit by means of acts.‡[14] He should be always gratified, well contented, of cheerful face and cheerful senses, fearless, always engaged in mental recitation of sacred *mantras*, silent, and wedded to a life of Renunciation.[15] Beholding the repeated formation and dissolution of his own body with the senses that result from and resolve into the elemental essences, and seeing also the advent and departure of (other) creatures, he should become free from desire and learn to cast equal eyes upon all, subsisting upon both

---

is to be disregarded, clothes, &c., need not be mentioned. 'Vihanyeta' is equivalent to 'hinsito na syāt.'—T.

* The second line is passed over by K. P. Singha. What is meant by it is that when such a man is respectfully presented with any thing, he should hold it in reprobation. *Vide* the Sanatsujātiya Sections in *Udyoga Parvan*, particularly the Verses beginning with "Yatra akathayamānasya &c."—T.

† The second line is skipped over by K. P. Singha. The Burdwan translator gives a wrong version. The Commentator explains that 'anyām' refers to 'paiçāchim', and 'anyatra' to 'ātmani.' In the Sanatsujātiya Sections also, a Brāhmana's practices are directed to be concealed. 'To enter his own Self' is to turn Self on Self, *i. e.*, to withdraw oneself from everything for understanding and contemplating the Soul.—T.

‡ By totally abstaining from acts he should avoid both merit and demerit.—T.

cooked and uncooked food. Frugal in respect of his fare, and subjugating his senses, he achieves tranquillity of Self by Self.*[16] One should control the (rising) impulses of words, of the mind, of wrath, of envy, of hunger, and of lust. Devoted to penances for cleansing his heart, he should never allow the censures (of others) to afflict his heart.[17] One should live, having assumed a status of neutrality with respect to all creatures, and regard praise and blame as equal. This, indeed, is the holiest and the highest path of the Sannyāsa mode of life.[18] Possessed of high soul, the Sannyāsin should restrain his senses from all things and keep himself aloof from all attachments. He should never repair to the places visited by him and the men known to him while leading the prior modes of life. Agreeable to all creatures, and without a fixed home, he should be devoted to the contemplation of Self.[19] He should never mingle with house-holders and forest-recluses. He should eat such food as he may obtain without effort (and without having thought of it beforehand).† He should never suffer joy to possess his heart.[20] To those that are wise such a life of Renunciation is the means for the attainment of Emancipation. To those, however, that are fools the practice of these duties is exceedingly burthensome. The sage Hārita declared all this to be the path by which Emancipation is to be achieved.[21] He who sets forth from his home, having assured all creatures of his perfect harmlessness, attains to many bright regions of felicity which prove unending or eternal.—' "[22]

---

* This is a triplet. The Burdwan translator misses the meaning of the first half of the first line. The Commentator explains that 'abhyastam' is continuous; 'bhautikam' is 'tattwajātam, ātmanodehendriyādi.' Hence, 'bhutānām' means 'anyeshām bhutānām.'—T.

† To think beforehand of the food one is to take is to convert oneself into a gourmand. The Sannyāsin, without thinking of the food he would take, and without mentally indulging in a foretaste thereof, should take what he gets without exertion.—T.

SECTION CCLXXIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'All men speak of ourselves as highly fortunate. In truth, however, there is no person more wretched than ourselves.[1] Though honored by all the world, O best of the Kurus, and though we have been born among men, O grandsire, having been begotten by the very gods, yet when so much sorrow has been our lot,[2] it seems, O reverend chief, that birth alone in an embodied form is the cause of all sorrow! Alas, when shall we adopt a life of Renunciation that is destructive of sorrow?*[3] Sages of rigid vows freed from the seven and ten (*i. e.*, the five breaths, mind, understanding, and the ten organs of knowledge and action), from the five faults of Yoga (*viz.*, desire, wrath, covetousness, fear, and sleep) that constitute the chief causes (for binding man to repeated rounds of earthly life), and from the other eight, *viz.*, the five objects of the senses and the three attributes (of *Satwa*, *Rajas*, and *Tamas*), have never to incur rebirth. When, O scorcher of foes, shall we succeed in abandoning sovereignty for adopting a life of Renunciation?'[4-5]

"Bhishma said,—'Everything, O great monarch, hath an end. Everything hath bounds assigned to it! Even rebirth, it is well known, hath an end. In this world there is nothing that is immutable.[6] Thou thinkest, O king, that this (*viz.*, the affluence with which thou art invested) is a fault. That it is not so is not true, in regard to our present topic of disquisition. Ye, however, are conversant with virtue, and have readiness. It is certain, therefore, that ye shall attain to the end of your sorrow (*viz.*, Emancipation) in time.†[7] Jiva equipt with body, O king, is not the author

---

* 'Sanjnakam' from the root 'jnā' meaning 'mārana' or killing.—T.

† The two negatives in the first line are equivalent to an affirmative. 'Prasangatah' is explained by the Commentator in a slightly different way. Affluence, in consequence of the attachment it generates, stands in the way of Emancipation. Hence, *i. e.*, in consequence of

of his merits and demerits (or their fruits as represented by happiness and misery). On the other hand, he becomes enveloped by the Darkness (of Ignorance having attachment and aversion for its essence) that is born of his merits and demerits.*[8] As the wind impregnated with dust of antimony once again seizes the efflorescence of realgar and (though itself destitute of color) assumes the hues of the substances which it has seized and tinges the different points of the compass (which represent its own hueless progenitor *viz.*, space,)[9] after the same manner, Jiva, though himself colorless, assumes a hue in consequence of being enveloped by Darkness and variegated by the fruits of action, and travels from body to body (making his own stainless and immutable progenitor appear as stained and changeful).†[10] When Jiva succeeds in dispelling by means of Knowledge the Darkness that invests him in consequence of Ignorance, then Immutable Brahma becomes displayed (in all His glory).[11] The Sages say that reversion to Immutable Brahma is incapable of being achieved by Acts. Thyself, others in the world, and the deities too, should reverence them that have achieved Emancipation. All the great *Rishis* never desist from culture of Brahma ‡[12] In this connection is cited that discourse

---

this consideration, the king's opinion regarding affluence, is correct. With respect to the certainty of attaining to Emancipation, compare *Gitā*, 'Vahunām janmanāmante jnānavān mām prapadyate, &c.'—T.

* The object of this Verse, as explained by the Commentator, is to exhort Yudhishthira to strive after Emancipation without being at all moved by his happiness or misery which (as stated here) come to Jiva as accidents.—T.

† The wind has space for its progenitor. Jiva has the stainless and immutable Chit for his progenitor. Like the wind, which is hueless, catching hues from surrounding objects and making its own hueless progenitor look as if it has hues, Jiva also, though in reality stainless, catches stains from Ignorance and Acts and makes his own progenitor, the stainless and immutable Chit, display stains of every kind. This is how the Commentator puts the simile, supplying the points that have been omitted in the text.—T.

‡ These aphorisms are very abstruse. What is meant by saying that the attainment of Brahma does not depend upon Acts is this: Acts are terminable, Their consequences also are terminable, Acts,

which was sung (by the preceptor of the Daityas) in days of old. Listen, O monarch, with undivided attention to the course of conduct that was followed by the Daitya Vritra after he became divested of all his prosperity.[13] Depending only upon his intelligence, he did not indulge in sorrow, in the midst of his enemies, although he had been defeated, although he was friendless, and although he was deprived of sovereignty, O Bhārata![14] Unto Vritra, when in days of old he was reft of sovereignty, (his preceptor) Uçanas said,—I hope, O Dānava, that in consequence of thy defeat thou dost not cherish any grief?[15]—

"'Vritra said,—Without doubt, having understood, by the aid of truth and penances, the advent and departure of all living creatures, I have ceased to indulge in either grief or joy.[16] Urged by Time creatures sink helplessly in hell. Some again, the sages say, go to heaven. All these pass their time in contentment.[17] Passing their allotted periods in heaven and hell, and with some portion of their merits and demerits unexhausted (by enjoyment and sufferance), they repeatedly take birth, impelled by Time.[18] Chained by the bonds of Desire, creatures pass through myriads of intermediate life and fall helplessly into hell.*[19] I have seen that creatures come and go even thus. The lesson inculcated in the Scriptures is that one's acquisitions correspond with

---

therefore, can never be the means by which Brahma can be attained, for Brahma is interminable and eternal, not like the felicity of heaven which is changeful. The only means by which Jiva may revert to Brahma is by dispelling Ignorance through Knowledge; or, as the Upanishads declare, one attains to it as one gets one's forgotten necklace of gold, which all the while is on the neck though sought for with assiduity everywhere. K. P. Singha misunderstands it completely. What is meant by the direction about reverencing persons who have attained to Brahma is this: the existence of Brahma and the possibility of Jiva's reverting to that Immutable status are matters that depend upon the conception of such men. Brahma, again, is so difficult to keep, that the great sages never desist for a moment from the culture that is necessary for its retention.—T.

* Intermediate *i. e.*, as animals and birds and reptiles and worms, &c.—T.

one's acts.*[20] Creatures take birth as men or as intermediate animals or as gods and go to hell. Having acted in lives that are past in such a way as to deserve them, all creatures, subject to the ordinances of the Destroyer, meet with happiness and misery, the agreeable and the disagreeable. Having enjoyed the measure of weal or woe that corresponds with their acts, creatures always come back by the old path,†[21-22] which is measured by the measure of acts !—Then the illustrious Uçanas addressed the *Asura* Vritra who was thus talking of the highest refuge of the creation, saying,—O intelligent Daitya, why, O child, dost thou utter such foolish rhapsodies ?[23]—

" 'Vritra said,—The severe penances which I underwent from greed of victory are well known to thee as also to other sages ![24] Appropriating diverse scents and diverse kinds of tastes that other creatures had for enjoying, I swelled up with my own energy, afflicting the three worlds.[25] Decked with myriads of effulgent rays I used to rove through the skies (on my celestial car), incapable of being defeated by any creature and fearing none.[26] I achieved great prosperity through my penances and lost it again through my own acts. Relying on my fortitude, however, I do not grieve for this change.[27] Desirous (in days of yore) of fighting the great Indra, the high-souled ruler of the heavens, I beheld in that battle the illustrious Hari, the puissant Nārāyana,‡[28] He who is called Vaikuntha, Purusha, Ananta, Cukla, Vishnu, Sanātana, Munjakeça, Hariçmaçru, and the Grandsire

---

* *I. e.*, if righteous, one attains to happiness; if otherwise, to the reverse.—T.

† Verse 21 and the first line of 22 are grammatically connected.—T.

‡ 'Me' in the second line is equivalent to 'Mayā'. 'Tatah' is 'tatra yuddhakāle'. Hari had come to aid Indra, and hence Vritra had beheld him. He is called Hari because he takes away one's sins. Besides the well-known derivation of the word Nārāyana, the Commentator here offers another, *viz.*, the 'ayanam or layasthānam' of 'Nāra' or 'Jivasangha'.—T.

of all creatures.*[29] Without doubt, there is still a remnant (to be enjoyed by me) of the rewards attaching to that penance represented by a sight of the great Hari! It is in consequence of that unexhausted remnant that I have become desirous of asking thee, O illustrious one, about the fruits of action!†[30] Upon which order (of men) hath been established high Brahma prosperity? In what manner, again, doth high prosperity fall off?[31] From whom do creatures spring and live? Through whom again do they act? What is that high Fruit by attaining to which a creature succeeds in living eternally as Brahma?[32] By what Act or by what Knowledge can that fruit be achieved? It behooveth thee, O learned Brāhmana, to expound these to me!—[33]

"'Recapitulated by me, O lion among kings, listen, with undivided attention, O bull of men, with all thy brothers, to what the sage Uçanas then said after he had been thus addressed by that prince of Dānavas!'"[34]

Section CCLXXX.

"'Uçanas said,—I bow to that divine and illustrious and puissant Being who holds this Earth with the firmament in his arms.[1] I shall speak to thee of the pre-eminent greatness of that Vishnu whose head, O best of the Dānavas, is that Infinite place (called Emancipation)!—[2]

---

* 'Vaikuntha' has various etymologies. The Commentator inclines to explain it as 'one who brings together all creatures'. 'Purusha' is full; as applied to Nārāyana, it, of course, means one who has no defect but who is the sole representative of fulness. 'Cukla' is 'Cuddha' or pure. 'Vishnu' is all-pervading. 'Sanātana' is 'kutastha' or uniform or immutable. 'Munjakeça' is possessed of yellow hair, or hair of the hue of Munja grass. 'Hari-çmaçru' is having a tawny beard.—T.

† Penances are meritorious. The very sight of Hari that I obtain was as efficacious as a course of the austerest penances. Of course, in consequence of that and my other penances great have been the rewards that I have enjoyed. It seems, however, that the full measure of rewards has not been reaped; the remnant is to be enjoyed by me now, for I am about to ask thee about the fruits of Acts. Sacred and highly auspicious is my enquiry. To make it is, in itself, a reward.—T.

"'While they were thus conversing with each other there came unto them the great sage Sanatkumāra of righteous soul for the purpose of dispelling their doubts.[3] Worshipped by the prince of Asuras and by the sage Uçanas, that foremost of sages sat down on a costly seat.[4] After Kumāra of great wisdom had been seated (at his ease), Uçanas said unto him,—Discourse to this chief of the Dānavas on the pre-eminent greatness of Vishnu![5]—Hearing these words, Sanatkumāra uttered the following, fraught with grave import, upon the pre-eminent greatness of Vishnu unto the intelligent chief of the Dānavas.[6]—Listen, O Daitya, to everything about the greatness of Vishnu. Know, O scorcher of foes, that the entire universe rests on Vishnu![7] O thou of mighty arms, it is He who creates all creatures mobile and immobile. In course of Time it is He, again, who withdraws all things and in Time it is He who once more casts them forth from Himself.[8] Into Hari all things merge at the universal destruction and from Him all things again come forth. Men possessed of scriptural lore cannot obtain him by such lore. Nor can He be obtained by Penances, nor by Sacrifices. The only means by which He can be attained is by restraining the Senses.[9] Not that sacrifices are entirely useless towards such an end. For one, by relying upon both external and internal acts, and upon one's own mind, can purify (them) by one's own understanding. By such means, one succeeds in enjoying Infinity in the world.*[10] As a goldsmith purifies the dross of his metal by repeatedly casting it into the fire with very persistent offorts of his own,[11] after the same manner Jiva succeeds in cleansing himself by his course through hundreds of births. Some one may be seen to purify himself in only one life by mighty efforts.[12] As

---

* 'Vāhya' acts are, of course, sacrifices and other religious acts; by 'ābhyantara' acts are meant 'çānti, dānti, uparati, titikshā, and samādhi,' *i. e.*, the usual course of mental training necessary for Yoga. What the speaker intends to lay down in this Verse is that sacrifices are not entirely useless. These may lead to 'chitta-çuddhi' or the cleansing of the heart, which, when attained, leads to knowledge of Him or the Soul or to Emancipation or Infinity.—T.

one should with care wipe stains from off one's person before they become thick, after the same manner one should, with vigorous efforts, wash off one's faults.*[13] By mixing only a few flowers with them, grains of sesame cannot be made to cast off their own odor (and become at once fragrant). After the same manner, one cannot, by cleansing one's heart only a little, succeed in beholding the Soul.[14] When, however, those grains are perfumed repeatedly with the aid of a large quantity of flowers, it is then that they cast off their own odor and assume that of the flowers with which they are mixed.[15] After this manner, faults, in the form of attachments to all our environments, are dispelled by the understanding in course of many lives, with the aid of a large dose of the attribute of *Sattwa*, and by means of efforts born of practice.†[16] Listen, O Dānava, by what means creatures attached to acts and those unattached to them attain to the causes that lead to their respective states of mind.‡[17] Listen to me with undivided attention. I shall, in their due order, discourse to thee, O puissant Dānava, as to how creatures betake themselves to action and how they give up action.$[18] The Supreme Lord creates all creatures mobile and immobile. He is without beginning and without end. Unendued with attributes of any kind, he assumes attributes (when he chooses to create). He is the universal Destroyer, the Refuge of all things, the supreme Ordainer, and pure Chit.¶[19] In all creatures it is He who dwells as the

---

* The comparison lies in the fact of the desirability of the two acts. No one likes the stains the body may catch to remain unwashed or unwiped off. Similarly, no one should neglect to wash off the faults that the heart may catch. There is no comparison between the two acts with regard to the degree of effort necessary to accomplish each.—T.

† 'Efforts born of practice' refer to both external and internal *Sādhana*.—T.

‡ 'Karmaviçeshān' is explained by the Commentātor as equivalent to 'rāga-virāga-hetun.'—T.

$ 'Sampravartante' and 'tishthanti' are thus explained by the Commentator.—T.

¶ In the previous Verses the speaker describes the training that one should undergo. In this and the following ones, he speaks of the object

mutable and the immutable. It is He who, having eleven modifications for His essence, drinketh this universe with His rays.*[20] Know that the Earth is His feet. His head is constituted by Heaven. His arms, O Daitya, are the several points of the compass or the horizon. The intermediate space is His ears.[21] The light of His eye is the Sun, and His mind is in the Moon. His Understanding dwells always in Knowledge, and His tongue is in Water.†[22] O best of Dānavas, the Planets are in the midst of His brows. The stars and constellations are from the light of His eyes. The Earth is in His feet, O Dānava![23] Know also that the attributes of *Rajas, Tamas,* and *Sattwa* are of Him. He is the fruit (or end) of all the modes of life, and He it is who should be known as the fruit (or reward) of all (pious) acts (such as Yapa and Sacrifice, &c.)‡[24] The Highest and Immutable, He is also the fruit of abstention from all work. The *Chchandas* are the hair on His body, and *Akshara* (or *Pranava*) is His word.[25] The diverse orders (of men) and the modes of life are His refuge. His mouths are many. Duty (or religion) is planted in his heart. He is Brahma, He is the highest Righteousness; He is *Sat,* and He is *Asat.*$[26] He is Cruti. He is the scriptures. He is the Sacrificial vessels. He is

---

to be known. 'Creemān' is explained as 'āçriyate it çri, *i. e*, upādhi, tadvān'. 'Hari' is 'Samharatā'. 'Nārāyana' is 'sarvācrayah'. 'Prabhu' is 'sarvaniyantā'. 'Deva' is 'dyotate iti, *i. e.*, Chinmātrah'. These etymologies must be grasped for understanding this Verse.—T.

* The 'mutable' in all creatures is the combination of the five primal essences. The 'immutable' in them is Jiva, or Chit as invested with Ignorance. The eleven modifications that constitute His essence are the eleven senses of knowledge and action with the mind. Equipt with these eleven He drinketh the universe, *i. e.*, enjoys it. The 'rays' are these senses themselves. Equipt with the senses He enjoys the universe *with* the senses.—T.

† 'His mind is *in* the Moon', *i. e.*, His mind is the Moon. The expression 'waters in the Ganges,' implies a distinction that does not exist between container and contained, for 'Ganges' means the water so named.—

‡ The *sandhi* between 'sa' and 'ācramānām' is *ārsha.*—T.

$ 'Dharma' has various meanings all of which, however, are closely created with one another. As 'duty' or the assemblage of all acts which we should do, it is both Righteousness and Religion.—T.

the six and ten Ritwijas. He is all the Sacrifices. He is the Grandsire (Brahman), He is Vishnu, He is the twin Açwins, and He is Purandara.*[27] He is Mitra, He is Varuna, He is Yama, He is Kuvera the lord of treasures. Although the Ritwijas seem to behold Him as separate, He is, however, known to them as one and the same. Know that this entire universe is under the control of One divine Being.†[28] The Veda that is in the soul, O prince of Daityas, regards the unity of various creatures. When a living creature realises this unity in consequence of true knowledge, he is then said to attain to Brahma.[29] The period of time for which one creation exists or for which it ceases to exist is called a *Kalpa*. Living creatures exist for a thousand millions of such Kalpas. Immobile creatures also exist for an equal period. The period for which a particular creation exists is measured by many thousands of lakes (in the following way), O Daitya![30] Conceive a lake that is one *Yajana* in width, one *Kroça* in depth, and five hundred *Yojanas* in length. Imagine many thousands of such lakes.[31] Seek then to dry up those lakes by taking from them, only once a day, as much water as may be taken up with the end of a single hair. The number of days that would pass in drying them up completely by this process represents the period that is occupied by the life of one creation from its first start to the time of its destruction.‡[32] The highest Evidence (for all things) says that creatures have six colors, *viz.*, Dark, Tawny, Blue, Red, Yellow, and White. These colors proceed from mixtures in various proportions of the three attributes of Rajas, Tamas, and Sattwa. Where Tamas predominates, Sattwa falls below the mark, and Rajas keeps to the mark, the result is the color called Dark. When

---

* The Sacrificial 'grahas' or pātras' (vessels) are called after the names of the deties Indra, Vāyu. Soma, &c. The sixteen Ritwijas are Brahman, Hotri, Adhyaryu, Udgātri, &c.—T.

† Verses 21 to 28 show the unity of the Divine Being. The variety perceived is only apparent, not real.—T.

‡ Verses 31 and 32 are not difficult; yet the Burdwan translator makes nonsense of the same.—T.

Tamas predominates as before, but the relations between Sattwa and Rajas are reversed, the result is the color called Tawny. When Rajas predominates, Sattwa falls below the mark, and Tamas keeps to the mark, the result is the color called Blue. When Rajas predominates as before and the proportion is reversed between Sattwa and Tamas, the result is the intermediate color called Red. That color is more agreeable (than the preceding one). When Sattwa predominates, Rajas falls below the mark and Tamas keeps to the mark, the result is the color called Yellow. It is productive of happiness. When Sattwa predominates and the proportion is reversed between Rajas and Tamas, the result is the color called White. It is productive of great happiness.*[33] The White is the foremost color. It is sinless in consequence of its being free from attachment and aversion. It is without grief, and free from the toil involved in *Pravritti*. Hence, White, O prince of Dānavas, leads to success (or Emancipation). Jiva, O Daitya, having undergone thousands of births derived through the womb, attains to success.†[34] That success is the identical end which the divine Indra declared after having studied many auspicious scriptural treatises and which has for its essence the apprehension of the Soul. The end again that creatures obtain is dependant on their color, and color, in its turn, depends upon the character of the Time that sets in, O Daitya !‡[35] The stages of existence, O Daitya, through which

---

* This is further elaborated in the Vishnu Purāna Part I, Sec. V. There are three primary creations, *viz.*, Mahat, the five primal essences in their subtile forms, and the senses. From the six colors again six other creations have spring. To the Dark color is due all immobile creatures; to the Tawny, all the intermediate order of creatures (*viz.*, the lower animals and birds, &c.); to the Blue are due human beings; to the Red, the Prājāpatyas; to the Yellow, the deities; and to the White are due the Kumāra *i. e.*, Sanatkumāra and others.—T.

† Emancipation is so difficult.—T.

‡ The construction of the first line is this:—'çubham darçanam (auspicious scriptures) gatwā (prāpya) Devah yām gatim (identical with) darçanam (ātmānubhavātmikām) āha.' 'Gati' is naturally dependent on 'Varna,' and 'Varna' upon 'Time' or acts.—T.

Jiva must pass are not unlimited. They are fourteen hundreds of thousands in number. In consequence of them Jiva ascends, stays, and falls down as the case may be.*[36] The end that is attained by a Jiva of dark hue is very low, for he becomes addicted to acts that lead to hell and then has to rot in hell.† The learned say that in consequence of his wickedness, the continuance (in such form) of a Jiva is measured by many thousands of Kalpas.‡[37] Having passed many hundred thousands of years in that condition, Jiva then attains to the color called Tawny (and becomes born as an intermediate creature). In that condition he dwells (for many long years), in perfect helplessness. At last when his sins are exhausted (in consequence of his having endured all the misery they are capable of bringing), his mind, casting off all attachments, cherishes Renunciation.$[38] When Jiva becomes endued with the quality of Sattwa, he then dispels everything connected with Tamas by the aid of his intelligence, and exerts (for achieving what is for his good).

---

* There are ten senses of knowledge and action. To this must be added Manas, Buddhi, Ahankāra, and Chitta, which are sometimes called the four *Karanas*. In consequence of these fourteen, fourteen different kinds of merit and demerit may be achieved by Jiva who is their possessor. These fourteen kinds of merit and of demerit also, are subdivided into hundreds of thousands each. Jiva, in course of his wanderings through the universe, ascends in the scale of Being, stays in particular rungs, and falls down from them into lower rungs, accordingly. What the speaker wishes to inculcate is that these fourteen should always be directed towards the attribute of *Sattwa* or Goodness.—T.

† This hue, it should be noted, leadeth to Jiva's transformation as an immobile object. A creature of Dark hue becomes addicted to wicked acts and rots in hell. His existence as an immobile object is hell itself.—T.

‡ 'Prajāvisargah' is the period for which one Creation lasts, being equal to what is called a Kalpa.—T.

$ The Dark and the Tawny hues or their corresponding states of existence, *viz*, the immobile and the intermediate, are regarded as states of endurance. Hence, when the misery that is their portion has been fully endured, the recollection is suddenly irradiated into the mind, of the righteousness that distinguished Jiva in ages far remote. 'Aniça' is helpless or cheerless.—T.

As the result of this, Jiva attains to the color called Red. If the quality of Sattwa, however, be not gained, Jiva then travels in a round of re-births in the world of men, having attained to the color called Blue.*[39] Having attained to that end (*viz.*, Humanity,) and having been afflicted for the duration of one creation by the bonds born of his own acts Jiva then attains to the color called Yellow (or becomes a Deity). Existing in that condition for the space of a hundred creations, he then leaves it (for becoming a human being) to return to it once more.†[40] Having attained to the Yellow color, Jiva exists for thousands of Kalpas, sporting as a Deva. Without, however, being emancipated (even then), he has to stay in hell, enjoying or enduring the fruits of his acts of past Kalpas and wandering through nine and ten thousand courses.‡ Know that Jiva then becomes freed from the hell (of acts) as represented by heaven or godship. After the same manner, Jiva gets off from the other births (corresponding with the other colors).[41-42] Jiva sports for many long Kalpas in the world of Devas. Falling thence, he once more obtains the status of Humanity. He then stays in that condition for the space of a hundred and eight Kalpas. He then attains once more to the status of a Deva.

---

* 'Cha' at the end of the second line is equivalent to 'vā.' Unless 'cha' be taken as equivalent to 'vā' the Verse would yield no meaning. After Tawny comes Blue, *i. e.*, after attainment of existence as an Intermediate creature Jiva attains to Humanity. This occurs when Sattwa does not predominate. Hence 'anyathā' should be supplied after 'upaiti.'—T.

† 'Vyatite' is a finite verb in the indicative mood, as pointed out by the Commentator. It comes from root *i* with suffix 'vi.' After 'çate' supply 'jāte sati.' The Burdwan translator takes it as a participial adjective in the locative singular, which is, of course, wrong. The version he gives of this line is most ridiculous, containing as it does a self-contradictory assertion. K. P. Singha gives the right meaning.—T.

‡ When Jiva becomes a Deva, he has still the ten senses, the five *Prānas*, and the four internal possessions of mind, understanding, Chitta, and Ahankāra, amounting in all to nineteen. These nineteen impel him to thousands of acts. Hence, even when transformed into Deva, Jiva is *not* freed from acts, but is in *niraya* or hell acts being, under all circumstances, equivalent to hell.—T.

If while in the status of humanity (for the second time) he falleth through (evil acts as represented by) Kāla (in the form of Kali), he then sinks into the Dark color and thus occupies the very lowest of all stages of existence.

"'—I shall tell thee now, O foremost of Asuras, how Jiva succeeds in effecting his Emancipation.[43-44] Desirous of Emancipation, Jiva, relying upon seven hundred kinds of acts every one of which is characterised by a predominence of the attribute of *Sattwa*, gradually courses through Red and Yellow and at last attains to White. Arrived here, Jiva travels through several regions that are most adorable and that have the Eight well-known regions of felicity beneath them, and all the while pursues that stainless and effulgent form of existence which is Emancipation's self.*[45] Know that the Eight (already referred to and) which are identical with the Sixty (subdivided into) hundreds, are, unto those that are highly effulgent, only creations of the mind (without having any real or independent existence). The highest object of acquisition with one that is White of hue, is that condition (called *Turiya*) which transcends the three other states of consciousness, *viz.*, Wakefulness and Dream and Dreamless slumber.†[46] As regards that Yogin who is unable

---

* 'Vyuha' implies the varied forms of one and the same thing. 'Daivāni' is Sattwa-pradhānāni'. The five senses with the mind and the understanding form a total of seven. The acts achieved through each of these may be subdivided a hundredfold. As these seven possessions adhere to Jiva till he becomes Emancipate, he acts through these seven in a variety of ways. Relying, therefore, upon these seven hundred kinds of acts (which are but varied forms of one and the same thing, *viz.*, Action), Jiva successively becomes Red and Yellow and White. Arrived at White, he courses through certain highly effulgent regions which are superior to the region of Brahman himself, and which leave behind or beneath them the Eight *Puris* (by which, perhaps, is meant the *puri* of Indra, that of Varuna, &c., or, Kāçi, Mathurā, Māyā, &c., or symbolical stages of progress, which are fraught with great felicity). Those highly effulgent and adorable regions are obtainable by Knowledge alone or the fruit of Yoga.—T.

† This is an exceedingly abstruse Verse. The Burdwan version, in which unconnected bits of the Commentary have been jumbled together, is utter nonsense. K. P. Singha skips over nearly the whole

to abandon the felicities that Yoga-puissance brings about, he has to dwell (in one and the same body) for one century of Kalpas in auspiciousness and after that in four other regions (called Maha, Jana, Tapa, and Satya). Even that is the highest end of one belonging to the sixth color, and who is Unsuccessful though crowned with Success, and who has transcended all attachments and passions.*[47] That

---

Verse. Tht Eight *puris* referred to in the previous Verse are here stated to be identical with the Sixty well-known incidents of even Cukla or White existence. This tale of Sixty is arrived at in this way: 1st, the state of wakefulness; 2nd, the gross body made up of the five primal essences; 3rd, the five attributes of sound, scent, form, taste, and touch; these come up to 7. Then come the ten senses of action and knowledge; the five breaths; mind, understanding, consciousness, and Chitta; these form 19. Then come Avidyā, Kāma, and Karma. With Soul or the Beholder, the sum comes up to 30. The number becomes doubled when the state of Dream is taken into consideration, for like Wakefulness existing with the 29, Dream also exists with the 29. With those that are effulgent, *i. e.*, with Beings that are Cukla or White, these 60 are simply 'mano-viruddhāni' or 'manomātrāni eva'. Unlike other Beings in lower spheres of existence, they that are effulgent or Cukla do not regard the states of Wakefulness and Dream as different but as the same. Hence, the 'parā gati' of such Beings is a state of existence that transcends both Wakefulness and Dream, and transcends Dreamless slumber also (for in Dreamless slumber the 30 exist suspended, to be revived with the return of wakefulness), and is identical with the fourth state called Turiya.—T.

* What the speaker wishes to lay down here is that even he that is 'Jivan-mukta' or has achieved his Emancipation though living like others, is incapable of transcending the effects of his past acts. Every kind of existence or life (save that which is identical with Brahma) is 'anishta' or inauspiciousness. That Yogin who is Jivan-mukta but who is not able to cast off the felicities of Yoga-puissance, resides, in one and the same body, for a full century of Kalpas, in a superior form of life, and after the expiry of that century of Kalpas, he passes through four other regions named Maha, Jana, Tapa, and Satya. Now, *this* is the end of such a Yogin, who, of course, belongs to the sixth color which is White, and who is freed from attachments, and who is unsuccessful though successful, *i. e.*, who has achieved Yoga-success but who has not still been able to achieve that success which consists in beholding Brahma or 'Brahma-sākshātkāra'. By 'aniçah' in this Verse is meant that Yogin who is incapable of casting off the

Yogin, again, who falls off from Yoga practices (after having attained the measure of eminence described already) resides in heaven for a century of Kalpas with the unexhausted remnant of his past acts (to be exhausted by enjoyment or endurance as the case may be), and with the seven (*viz.*, the five senses of knowledge and mind and understanding) purged of all stains in consequence of their predisposition or proneness towards the attribute of Sattwa. After the expiry of that period, such a person has to come to the world of men where he attains to great eminence.*[48] Turning back from the world of men, he departs for attaining to new forms of existence that run higher and higher in the upward scale. While engaged in this, he courseth through seven regions for seven times, his puissance being always increased in consequence of his Samādhi and the re-awakening from it.†[49]

---

felicities brought about by Yoga-puissance. K. P. Singha gives the substance of the Verse not very accurately. The Burdwan translator, in the version he gives, introduces three nominatives in the three sentences into which he splits it, *viz.*, Jiva, the Yogin who is unable to cast off the felicities brought about by Yoga-puissance, and the Yogin who has achieved 'Brahma-sākshātkāra', without understanding that all three refer to one and the same person.—T.

* 'Aniçah' here means one who, after having attained to eminence by Yoga, falls off from Yoga. 'Tatra' means heaven or the superior regions that are his in consequence of Yoga-eminence. For a century of Kalpas such a person has to dwell in heaven, with the unexhausted remnant of his past acts to go through or exhaust by enjoying or suffering their consequences. All the while, however, his existence is characterised by his senses, *i. e*, the senses of knowledge with mind and understanding, being always predisposed towards the attribute of Sattwa. Upon the expiry of that century of Kalpas, such a person, without ascending, descends to the world of men, but then here eminence of station becomes his.—T.

† 'Saptakritwāh' is seven times. 'Paraiti' is 'courseth through.' 'Lokān' refers to the seven regions called respectively, Bhu, Bhuva, Swah, Maha, Jana, Tapa, and Satya (or Brahmaloka). What is intended to be said here is this: If the Yogin, having attained to only the first stage of Yoga, dies, he ascends to heaven. Thence falling down on Earth, he becomes an Emperor and thus conquers the Earth or Bhu. In this way, as the Yogin gradually ascends in the path of Yoga, he ascends higher and higer. In this Verse 'Samhāra-vikshepa' has been

The Yogin who is desirous of final Emancipation suppresses by Yoga-knowledge the seven, and continues to dwell in the world of life, freed from attachments; and taking those seven for certain means of grief, he casts them off and attains afterwards to that state which is Indestructible and Infinite. Some say that that is the region of Mahādeva; some, of Vishnu; some, of Brahman; some, of Cesha; some, of Nara; some, of the effulgent Chit; and some, of the All-pervading.*[50] When universal destruction comes, those persons who have succeeded in completely consuming by Knowledge their gross and subtle and *kārana* bodies, always enter into Brahma. All their Senses also which have action for their essence and which are not identical with Brahma, merge into the same.[51] When the time of universal destruction comes, those Jivas who have attained to the position of Devas and who have an unexhausted remnant of the fruits of acts to enjoy or endure, revert to those stages of life in the subsequent Kalpa which had been theirs in the previous one. This is due to the similarity of every successive Kalpa to every previous one.[52] Those again whose acts, at the time of universal destruction, have been exhausted by enjoyment or endurance in respect of their fruits, falling down from heaven, take birth among men, in the subsequent Kalpa, for without Knowledge one cannot destroy one's acts in even a hundred Kalpas.

---

used to signify Samādhi and awakening from Samādhi, for in the first the universe is destroyed, and in the second it is re-created. At the end, he reaches the region of Satya or Brahma. Thence even he has to return if he has not been able to achieve 'Brahma-sākshātkāra'.—T.

* The seven that the Yogin desirous of Emancipation casts off are either the seven regions already referred to, *viz.*, Bhu, Bhuva, Swah, Maha, Jana, Tapa, and Satya, or the five senses of knowledge with mind and understanding. 'Samhāram' is equivalent to 'Samhritya', having been formed by the suffix *namul.* 'Upaplavāni' are sources of grief or misfortune. The first 'Devasya' refers to Mahādeva. The Caivas call that region Kailāsa. The Vaishnavas call it Vaikuntha. The Hairnya-garbhas call it Brahman's or Brahmaloka. Cesha is Ananta, a particular form of Nārāyana. They who call it the region of Nara are, of course, the Sānkhyas, for these regard Emancipation as the goal of Jiva or every creature. The 'Devasya vishnoh' (in the third line) is 'Dyotamānasya Brahmanah', *i. e.*, 'Chinmātrasya', or of

All superior Beings again, endued with similar powers and similar forms, revert to their respective destinies at a new creation after a universal destruction, ascending and descending precisely in the same manner as during the creation that is dissolved.*[53] As regards, again, the person who is conversant with Brahma, as long as he continues to enjoy and endure the unexhausted remnant of his acts of previous Kalpas, it is said that all creatures and the two stainless sciences live in his body. When his Chitta becomes cleansed by Yoga, and when he practises Samyama, this perceptible universe appears to him as only his own fivefold senses.†[54] Enquiring with a cleansed mind, Jiva attains to a high and stainless end. Thence he attains to a spot which knows no deterioration, and thence attains to eternal Brahma that is so difficult of acquisition.‡[55] Thus, O thou

---

the pure Chit when uninvested with Ignorance or Avidyā. The Aupanishadas regard it as the region of Para-Brahma. The Commentator clearly points out what the seven regions are. K. P. Singha, misunderstanding the Verse, mentions only five ; the Burdwan translator six.—T.

* This Verse is not at all difficult ; yet the Burdwan translator makes utter nonsense of it. K. P. Singha gives the substance of the first line, but skips over the second. Without giving a literal version of the first line I expand it, following the lead of the Commentator.—T.

† 'Sa' here indicates the person conversant with Brahma. The construction is 'Sa yāvat saçeshabhuk asti tāvat prajāh tathaiva te çukle devyau cha tadangeshu (vartante). 'Etat' in the second line is this 'pari-driçyamānam viyadādi'. What the speaker wishes to inculcate in this Verse is that unto one conversant with Brahma, the whole universe up to complete identity with Brahma is as contiguous as a plum in the palm of the hand. When the Chitta is cleansed by Yoga as practised by Dhyāna, Dhāranā, and Samādhi, then the perceptible universe appears to him as identical with his own senses. The two white sciences referred to are 'Parāvidyâ' and 'Aparāvidyā', *i. e.*, all knowledge including that of Brahma.—T.

‡ 'Cuddhena manasā'—with a cleansed mind, *i. e.*, with the aid of Cravana (hearing), Manana (attention), Dhyāna (contemplation), and Abhyàsa (repeated meditation). Two stages are indicated in this Verse. The first is the attainment of the çuddhàm and paramàmgatim or the stainless and high end. This is equivalent to Brahma-sákshàtkàra. After this comes the second stage, which is the 'avyayam sthānam' or

of great might, I have discoursed to thee of the eminence of Nārāyana![56]—

"'Vritra said,—These words of thine, I see, perfectly according with the truth. Indeed, when this is so, I have no (cause of) grief. Having listened to thy words, O thou of great powers of mind, I have become freed from sorrow and sin of every kind.[57] O illutrious Rishi, O holy one, I see this wheel of Time, endued with mighty energy, of the most effulgent and Infinite Vishnu, has been set in motion. Eternal is that station from which all kinds of creation spring. That Vishnu is the Supreme Soul. He is the foremost of Beings. In Him this entire universe rests![58]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Having said these words, O son of Kunti, Vritra cast off his life-breaths, uniting his soul (in Yoga, with the Supreme Soul), and attained to the highest station.'[59]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, whether this Janārddana (Krishna) is that illustrious and puissant Lord of whom Sanatkumāra spoke unto Vritra in days of old.'[60]

"Bhishma said,—'The Highest Deity, endued with the six attributes (of puissance, &c.,) is at the Root. Staying there, the Supreme Soul, with his own energy, creates all these diverse existent things.*[61] Know that this Keçava who knows no deterioration is from His eighth portion. Endued with the highest Intelligence, it is this Keçava who creates the three worlds with an eighth portion (of His energy).[62] Coming immediately after Him who lies at the Root, this Keçava who is eternal (compared with all other existent things), changes at the end of each Kalpa. He,

---

the spot which knows no deterioration, *i. e.*, Emancipation. This is identical with the attainment of Eternal Brahma which is 'dushprāpam' or difficult of attainment.—T.

* The Commentator says that the object of this Verse is to inculcate the Impersonality of God. God is at the Root of all things, *i. e.*, (as the Commentator supposes according to the teaching of the Vedànta philosophy) He exists in His own unmodified nature, even as pure Chit. Both Vidyà (Knowledge) and Avidyá (Ignorance or illusion) exist in Him. In consequence of the latter he is 'Bhagaván', *i. e.*, endued with the six grand attributes of puissance, &c.—T.

however, who lies at the Root and who is endued with supreme might and puissance, lies in the waters when universal destruction comes (in the form of the potential Seed of all things). Keçava is that Creator of pure Soul who courseth through all the eternal worlds.*[63] Infinite and Eternal as He is, He fills all space (with emanations from Himself) and courseth through the universe (in the form of everything that constitutes the universe). Freed as He is from limitations of every kind such as the possession of attributes would imply, he suffers himself to be invested with Avidyā and awakened to Consciousness, Keçava of Supreme Soul creates all things. In Him rests this wondrous universe in its entirety.'[64]

"Yudhishthira said,—'O thou that art conversant with the highest object of knowledge, I think that Vritra saw beforehand the excellent end that awaited him. It is for this, O grandsire, that he was happy and did not yield to grief (in vew of his coming Death).[65] He who is White of hue, who has taken birth in a pure or stainless race, and who has attained to the rank of a Sāddhya, doth not, O sinless one, come back (into the world for re-birth). Such a person, O grandsire, is freed from both hell and the status of all intermediate creatures.[66] He, however, O king, who has attained to either the Yellow or the Red hue, is seen sometimes to be overwhelmed by Tamas and fall among the order of Intermediate creatures.[67] As regards ourselves, we are exceedingly afflicted and attached to objects that are productive of sorrow or indifference or joy. Alas, what will the end be to which we shall attain? Will it be the Blue or the Dark which is the lowest of all hues!'[68]

"Bhishma continued,—'Ye are Pāndavas! Ye have been born in a stainless race! Ye are of rigid vows. Having sported in joy in the regions of the gods, ye shall come back to the world of men.[69] Living happily as long as the creation lasts, all of you at the next new creation will be admitted

---

* In the form of all things,—causes and effects—which constitute them.—T.

among the gods, and enjoying all kinds of felicities ye will at last be numbered among the *Siddhas*! Let no fear be yours. Be you cheerful!' "[70]

SECTION CCLXXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How great was the love of virtue possessed by Vritra of immeasurable energy, whose knowledge was incomparable and whose devotion to Vishnu was so great![1] The status occupied by Vishnu of immeasurable energy is exceedingly difficult of apprehension. How, O tiger among kings, could Vritra (who was an Asura) comprehend it (so well)?[2] Thou hast spoken of Vritra's acts. I too have listened to thee in full faith. In consequence, however, of my seeing that one point (in thy discourse) is unintelligible (and that, therefore, it requires explanation), my curiosity has been roused for questioning thee again.*[3] How, indeed, was Vritra, who was virtuous, devoted to Vishnu, endued with knowledge of truth derivable from a just comprehension of the *Upanishads* and *Vedānta*, vanquished by Indra, O foremost of men?[4] O chief of the Bharatas, resolve me this doubt! Indeed, tell me, O tiger among kings, how Vritra was vanquished by Cakra!†[5] O grandsire, O thou of mighty arms, tell me in detail how the battle took place (between the chief of the deities and the foremost of Asuras). My curiosity to hear it is very great!'[6]

"Bhishma said,—'In days of yore, Indra, accompanied by the celestial forces, proceeded on his car, and beheld the Asura Vritra stationed before him like a mountain.[7] He was full five hundred Yojanas in height, O chastiser of foes, and three hundred Yojanas in circumference.[8] Beholding that form of Vritra, which was incapable of being vanquished

---

* 'Avyakta-darçanāt' is explained by the Commentator in this way. Vritra was a firm devotee of Vishnu. He did not, therefore, deserve defeat and fall. How, then, was he vanquished by Indra? 'Avyaktam' is equivalent to 'aspashtam.'—T.

† The word used in Verse 4 is 'vinihatah' and that in Verse 5 is 'nirjitah.' There can be no doubt that both imply the same idea.—T.

by the three worlds united together, the celestials became penetrated with fear and full of anxiety.[9] Indeed, suddenly seeing that gigantic form of his antagonist, O king, Indra was struck with palsy in the lower extremities.[10] Then, on the eve of that great battle between the deities and the Asuras, there arose loud shouts from both sides, and drums and other musical instruments began to beat and blow.[11] Beholding Cakra stationed before him, O thou of Kuru's race, Vritra felt neither awe nor fear, nor was he disposed to muster all his energies for the fight.*[12] Then the encounter commenced, inspiring the three worlds with terror, between Indra the chief of the deities and Vritra of high soul.[13] The entire welkin was enveloped by the combatants of both sides with swords and axes and lances and darts and spears and heavy clubs and rocks of diverse sizes and bows of loud twang and diverse kinds of celestial weapons and fires and burning brands.[14-15] All the celestials with the Grandsire at their head, and all the highly-blessed *Rishis*, came to witness the battle,[16] on their foremost of cars; and the *Siddhas* also, O bull of Bharata's race, and the *Gandharvas*, with the Apsaras, on their own beautiful and foremost of cars, came there (for the same purpose).[17] Then Vritra, that foremost of virtuous persons, quickly overwhelmed the welkin and the chief of the deities with a thick shower of rocks.[18] The celestials, at this, filled with rage, dispelled with their showers of arrows that thick downpour of rocks showered by Vritra in battle.[19] Then Vritra, O tiger among the Kurus, possessed of mighty strength and endued with large powers of illusion, stupified the chief of the deities by fighting wholly with the aid of his powers of illusion.[20] When he of a hundred sacrifices, thus afflicted by Vritra, was overcome by stupifaction, the sage Vaçishtha restored him to his senses by uttering *Sāmans*.†[21]

---

* 'Asthā' is efforts.—T.

† 'Rathāntara' is another name for certain Sāmans, which are so called because of men being able to cross the world with their aid as by a car. (*Ratha* car, and *tri* to cross.—T.

" 'Vaçishtha said,—Thou art the foremost of the gods, O chief of the deities, O slayer of Daityas and Asuras! The strength of the three worlds is in thee! Why, then, O Cakra, dost thou languish so![22] There, Brahman, and Vishnu, and Civa, that lord of the universe, the illustrious and divine Soma, and all the highest *Rishis*, (stand, beholding thee)![23] Do not, O Cakra, yield to weakness, like an ordinary person! Firmly resolved on battle, slay thy foes, O chief of the celestials![24] There, that Master of all the worlds, *viz.*, the Three-eyed (Civa), the adored of all the worlds, is eyeing thee! Cast off this stupifaction, O chief of the celestials![25] There, those regenerate *Rishis*, headed by Vrihaspati, are praising thee, for thy victory, in celestial hymns!*—'[26]

"Bhishma continued,—'While Vāsava of great energy was thus being restored to consciousness by the high-souled Vaçishtha, his strength became greatly enhanced.[27] The illustrious chastiser of Pāka then, relying upon his intelligence, had recourse to high Yoga and with its aid dispelled these illusions of Vritra.[28] Then Vrihaspati, the son of Angiras, and those foremost of *Rishis* possessed of great prosperity, beholding the prowess of Vritra, repaired to Mahādeva, and impelled by the desire of benefiting the three worlds, urged him to destroy the great *Asura*.[29] The energy of that illustrious lord of the universe thereupon assumed the character of a fierce fever and penetrated the body of Vritra the lord of *Asuras*.†[30] The illustrious and divine Vishnu, adored of all the worlds, bent upon protecting the universe, entered the thunderbolt of Indra.[31] Then Vrihaspati of great intelligence, and Vaçishtha of exceeding energy, and all the other foremost of *Rishis*, repairing to Him of a hundred sacrifices,[32] *viz.*, the boon-giving Vāsava, the adored of all the worlds, addressed him, saying,—Slay Vritra, O puissant one, without delay!—[33]

---

* 'Praising thee, for thy victory, &c.,' *i. e.*, the *Rishis* are uttering hymns of praise for conferring victory on thee!—T.

† 'Raudrah' may mean also 'appertaining to *Rudra*, which is another name of Mahādeva.—T.

"'Maheçwara said,—Yonder, O Cakra, stands the great Vritra, accompanied by a great force! He is the soul of the universe, capable of going everywhere, endued with large powers of illusion, and possessed of great celebrity.'[34] This foremost of Asuras is, therefore, incapable of being vanquished by even the three-worlds united together. Aided by Yoga, do thou slay him, O chief of the deities. Do not disregard him![35] For full sixty thousand years, O chief of the celestials, Vritra had practised the severest penances for obtaining strength. Brahman gave him the boons he had solicited,[36] *viz.*, the greatness that belongs to Yogins, large powers of illusion, excess of might, and superabundant energy.[37] I impart to thee my energy, O Vāsava! The Dānava has now lost his coolness. Do thou, therefore, slay him now with thy thunderbolt!—[38]

"'Cakra said,—Before thy eyes, O foremost of gods, I shall, through thy grace, slay with my thunderbold this invincible son of Diti!—'[39]

"Bhishma continued,—'When the great Asura or Daitya was overtaken by that fever (born of Mahādeva's energy), the deities and the *Rishis*, filled with joy, uttered loud cheers.[40] At the same time drums, and conchs of loud blare, and kettle-drums and tabors began to beat and blow by thousands.[41] Suddenly all the *Asuras* became afflicted with the loss of memory. In a trice, their powers of illusion also disappeared.[42] The Rishis and the deities, ascertaining the foe to be thus possessed, uttered the praises of both Cakra and Içāna, and began to urge the former (to make no delay in destroying Vritra).[43] The form that Indra assumed on the eve of the encounter, while seated on his car and while his praises were being hymned by the Rishis, became such that none could look at it without awe.'"*[44]

---

* This account of the encounter between Vritra and Indra is substantially different from what occurs in the *Vana Parvan*. Then again the part the Rishis are made to take in the slaughter of the Asura is certainly censurable. The great Rishis, even for benefiting the three

Section CCLXXXII.

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O king, to me as I tell thee the symptoms that appeared on the body of Vritra when he was overtaken by that fever (born of the energy of Mahādeva).[1] The heroic Asura's mouth began to emit flames of fire. He became exceedingly pale. His body began to tremble all over. His breath became hard and thick.[2] His hair stood on end. His memory, O Bhārata, issued out of his mouth in the form of a fierce, dreadful, and inauspicious jackal. Burning and blazing meteors fell on his right and left.[3] Vultures and *kankas* and cranes, gathering together, uttered fierce cries, as they wheeled over Vritra's head.[4] Then, in that encounter, Indra, adored by the gods, and armed with the thunderbolt, looked hard at the Daitya as the latter sat on his car.[5] Possessed by that violent fever, the mighty Asura, O monarch, yawned and uttered inhuman cries.*[6] While the Asura was yawning, Indra hurled his thunderbolt at him. Endued with exceedingly great energy and resembling the fire that destroys the creation at the end of the Yuga, that thunderbolt overthrew in a trice Vritra of gigantic form.[7] Loud shouts were once more uttered by the gods on all sides when they beheld Vritra slain, O bull of Bharata's race![8] Having slain Vritra, Maghavat, that foe of the Dānavas, possessed of great fame, entered heaven with that thunderbolt pervaded by Vishnu.[9] Just then, O thou

---

worlds, would not certainly injure any creature. In the above account, Vaçishtha and Vrihaspati and the others are very much represented as persons who have bet largely on Indra's success. In the account occurring in the *Vana Parvan*, Indra is represented as standing in aweful dread of Vritra and hurling his thunderbolt without even deliberate aim, and refusing to believe that his foe was dead till assured by all the deities. The present account seems to be a much older one than that in the *Vana Parvan*.—T.

* 'Amānusham' is litterally 'inhuman.' The use of such words are due to temporary forgetfulness in such connections. Like Homer, Vyāsa also nods.—T.

of Kuru's race, the sin of Brāhmanicide (in her embodied form), fierce and awful and inspiring all the worlds with dread, issued out of the body of the slain Vritra.[10] Of terrible teeth and awful mien, hideous for ugliness, and dark and tawny, with hair dishevelled, and dreadful eyes, O Bhārata,[11] with a garland of skulls round her neck, and looking like an (Atharvan) Incantation (in its embodied form) O bull of Bharata's race, covered all over with blood, and clad in rags and barks of trees, O thou of righteous soul,[12] she came out of Vritra's body. Of such dreadful form and mien, O monarch, she sought the wielder of the thunderbolt (for possessing him).[13] A little while after, O thou of Kuru's race, the slayer of Vritra, on some purpose connected with the good of the three worlds, was proceeding towards heaven.[14] Beholding Indra of great energy thus proceeding on his mission, she seized the chief of the deities and from that moment stuck to him.*[15] When the sin of Brāhmanicide thus stuck to his person and inspired him with terror, Indra entered the fibres of a lotus-stalk and dwelt there for many long years.[16] But the sin of Brāhmanicide pursued him closely. Indeed, O son of Kuru, seized by her, Indra became deprived of all his energies.[17] He made great efforts for driving her from him, but all those efforts proved abortive.[18] Seized by her, O bull of Bharata's race, the chief of the deities at last presented himself before the Grandsire and worshipped him by bending his head low.[19] Understanding that Cakra was possessed by the sin of Brāhmanicide,† Brahman began to reflect, O best of the Bharatas, (upon the means of freeing his suppliant).[20] The Grandsire at last, O thou of mighty arms, addressed Brāhmanicide in a sweet voice as if from the desire of pacifying her, and said,[21]—O amiable one, let the chief of the celestials, who is a favorite

---

* 'Vadhyā' is the sin of slaughter in her embodied form.—T.

† 'Dwijapravaravadhyā' means the slaughter of a superior person of the regenerate order. Indeed, Vritra was a lineal descendant of the great sage Kaçyapa, the common progenitor of the Devas and Asuras. Then, again, Vritra was certainly a very superior person.—T.

of mine, be freed from thee! Tell me, what shall I do for thee? What wish of thine shall I accomplish?—[22]

"'Brāhmanicide said,—When the Creator of the three worlds, when the illustrious god adored by the universe, hath been pleased with me, I regard my wishes as already accomplished. Let my residence be now appointed![23] Desirous of preserving the worlds, this rule had been made by thee! It was thou, O lord, that hadst introduced this important ordinance.*[24] As thou hast been gratified with me, O righteous Lord, O puissant Master of all the worlds, I shall certainly leave Cakra! But grant me an abode to dwell in!—'[25]

"Bhishma continued,—'The Grandsire replied unto Brāhmanicide, saying,—So be it!—Indeed, the Grandsire discovered means for dispelling Brāhmanicide from the person of Indra.[26] The Self-create recollected the high-souled Agni. The latter immediately presented himself to Brahman and said these words:[27]—O illustrious and divine Lord, O thou that are without any defect, I have appeared before thee! It behooveth thee to say what I shall have to accomplish!—[28]

"'Brahman said,—I shall divide this sin of Brāhmanicide into several portions. For freeing Cakra from her, do thou take a fourth portion of that sin!—[29]

"'Agni said,—How shall I be rescued from her, O Brahman? O puissant Lord, do thou appoint the way! I desire to know the means (of my own rescue) in detail, O adored of all the worlds![30]—

"'Brahman said,—Unto that man who, overwhelmed by the quality of *Tamas*, will abstain from offering thee as an oblation, when he beholds thee in thy blazing form, seeds, herbs, and juices,[31] that portion of Brāhmanicide which thou wilt take upon thyself shall immediately enter, and leaving thee shall dwell in him! O carrier of oblations, let the fever of thy heart be dispelled![32]—'

"Bhishma said,—'Thus addressed by the Grandsire, the

---

* The rule or ordinance referred to is about the killer of a Brāhmana being liable to be overtaken by the sin of Brāhmanicide.—T.

eater of oblations and sacrificial offerings accepted his command. A fourth of that sin then entered his person, O king![33] The Grandsire then summoned the trees, the herbs, and all kinds of grass to him, and solicited them to take upon themselves a fourth of that sin.[34] Addressed by him, the trees and herbs and grasses became as much agitated as Agni had been at the request, and they replied unto the Grandsire, saying,[35]—How shall we, O Grandsire of all the worlds, be ourselves rescued from this sin? It behooveth thee not to afflict us that have already been afflicted by the fates![36] O god, we have always to endure heat and cold and the showers (of the clouds) driven by the winds, in addition to the cutting and the tearing (that we have to suffer at the hands of men)![37] We are willing, O Lord of the three worlds, to take at thy command (a portion of) this sin of Brāhmanicide. Let the means, however, of our rescue be pointed out to us![38]—'

"'Brahman said,—This sin that you shall take shall possess the man who through stupifaction of judgment will cut or tear any of you when *Parva* days come![39]—'

"Bhishma said,—'Thus addressed by the high-souled Brahman, the trees and herbs and grasses adored the Creator and then went away without tarrying there.[40] The Grandsire of all the worlds then summoned the Apsaras and gratifying them with sweet words, O Bhārata, said,[41]—This foremost of ladies, *viz.*, Brāhmanicide, has come out of Indra's person. Solicited by me, do you take a fourth portion of her into your own persons (for saving the Chief of the deities)![42]—

"'The Apsarās said,—O Lord of all the gods, at thy command we are fully willing to take a portion of this sin. But, O Grandsire, do thou think of the means by which we ourselves may be freed from (the effects of) this understanding (that we make with thee)![43]—

"'Brahman said,—Let the fever of your hearts be dispelled! The portion of this sin that you will take upon yourselves shall leave you for instantly possessing that man who will seek congress with women in their menstrual season!'—[44]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by the Grandsire, O bull of Bharata's race, the diverse tribes of the Apsarās, with cheerful souls, repaired to their respective places and began to sport in delight.[45] The illustrious Creator of the three worlds, endued with great ascetic merit, then recollected the Waters which immediately came to him.[46] Arrived at the presence of Brahman of immeasurable energy, the Waters bowed unto him and said these words :[47]—We have come before thee, O chastiser of foes, at thy command ! O puissant Master of all the worlds, tell us what we are to accomplish !'[48]—

"'Brahman said,—This dreadful sin hath taken possession of Indra in consequence of his having slain Vritra. Take ye a fourth part of Brāhmanicide ![49]—

"'The Waters said,—Let it be as thou commandest, O master of all the worlds. It behooveth thee, however, O puissant Lord of ours, to think of the means by which we may (in our turn) be rescued from (the consequence of) this understanding ![50] Thou art the Lord of all the deities, and the supreme refuge of the universe ! Who else is there to whom we may pay our adorations so that he may relieve us from distress ![51]—

"'Brahman said,—Unto that man who stupified by his understanding and regarding ye lightly will cast into ye phlegm and urine and excreta,[52] this one shall immediately go and thenceforth reside in him. It is in this way, verily I say unto ye, that your rescue shall be accomplished ![53]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Then the sin of Brāhmanicide. O Yudhishthira, leaving the chief of the deities, proceeded to the abodes that were ordained for her at the Grandsire's command.[54] It was thus, O ruler of men, that Indra had become afflicted by that dreadful sin, (and it was thus that he got rid of her). With the Grandsire's permission Indra then resolved to perform a Horse-sacrifice.[55] It is heard, O monarch, that Indra having been thus possessed by the sin of Brāhmanicide afterwards became cleansed of her through that Sacrifice.[56] Regaining his prosperity and slaying thousands of foes, great was the joy that Vāsava obtained,

O lord of Earth![57] From the blood of Vritra, O son of Prithā, were born high-crested cocks. For this reason those fowls are unclean (as food) for the regenerate classes, and those ascetics that have undergone the rite of initiation![58] Under all circumstances, O king, do thou accomplish what is agreeable to the twice-born, for these, O monarch, are known as gods on Earth![59] It was in this way, O thou of Kuru's race, that the mighty Asura Vritra was slain by Cakra of immeasurable energy by the aid of subtle intelligence and through the application of means.[60] Thou also, O son of Kunti, unvanquished on Earth, wilt become another Indra and the slayer of all thy foes![61] Those men who, on every *Parva* day, will recite this sacred narrative of Vritra in the midst of Brāhmanas shall never be stained by any sin.[62] I have now recited to thee one of the greatest and most wonderful feats of Indra connected with Vritra. What else dost thou wish to hear?'"[63]

Section CCLXXXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, thou art possessed of great wisdom and thoroughly conversant with every branch of learning. From this very narrative of the slaughter of Vritra the wish has arisen in my mind of asking thee a question.[1] Thou hast said, O ruler of men, that Vritra was (first) stupified by Fever, and that then, O sinless one, he was slain by Vāsava with the thunderbolt.[2] How did this Fever, O thou of great wisdom, arise? O lord, I desire to hear in detail of the origin of Fever!'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O king, to the origin, celebrated over all the world, of Fever! I shall speak in detail on this topic, fully explaining how Fever first sprang into existence, O Bhārata![4] In days of yore, O monarch, there was a summit, named Sāvitri, of the mountains of Meru. Worshipped by all the worlds, it was endued with great splendour and adorned with every kind of jewels and gems.[5] That summit was immeasurable in extent and thither no one

could go.* On that mountain summit the divine Mahādeva used to sit in splendour as if on a bed-stead adorned with gold.[6] The daughter of the king of mountains, sitting by his side, shone in brilliance.† The high-souled deities, the Vasus of immeasurable energy,[7] the high-souled Açwins, those foremost of physicians, and king Vaiçravana waited upon by many a Guhyaka,[8]—that lord of the Yakshas, endued with prosperity and puissance, and having his abode on the summit of Kailāsa,—all waited upon the high-souled Mahādeva. And the great sage Uçanas,[9] and the foremost of Rishis having Sanatkumāra for their first, and the other celestial Rishis headed by Angiras,[10] and the Gandharva Viçwāvasu, and Nārada and Parvata, and the diverse tribes of Apsaras, all came there to wait upon the Master of the universe.[11] A pure and auspicious breeze, bearing diverse kinds of perfumes, blew there. The trees that stood there were adorned with the flowers of every season.[12] A large number of Vidyādharas and Siddhas and ascetics too, O Bhārata, repaired thither for waiting upon Mahādeva, that Lord of all creatures.[13] Many ghostly beings also, of diverse forms and aspects, and many dreadful Rākshasas and mighty Piçāchas,[14] of diverse aspects, mad with joy, and armed with diverse kinds of uplifted weapons, forming the train of Mahādeva, were there, every one of whom resembled a blazing fire in energy.[15] The illustrious Nandi stood there at the command of the great god, blazing with his own energy and armed with a lance that resembled a flame of fire.[16] Gangā also, that foremost of all Rivers and born of all sacred waters in the universe, waited there in her embodied form, O son of Kuru's race, upon that illustrious deity.[17] Thus adored by the celestial Rishis and the gods, the illustrious Mahādeva of immeasurable energy dwelt on that summit of Meru.[18]

"After sometime had passed away, the Prajāpati Daksha‡

---

* 'Anādhrisyam' is, literally, unvanquishable.—T.

† Umā or Pārvati, the daughter of Himavat, the spouse of Civa.—T.

‡ The Self-create Brahman at first created, by fiats of his holy

commenced to perform a Sacrifice according to the ancient rites (laid down in the Vedas).[19] Unto that Sacrifice of Daksha, all the deities headed by Cakra, assembling together, resolved to repair.[20] It hath been heard by us that the high-souled deities, with the permission of Mahādeva, mounted their celestial cars resembling the fire or the Sun in splendour, and proceeded to that spot (on the Himavat) whence the Ganges is said to issue.[21] Beholding the deities depart, the excellent daughter of the king of mountains, addressed her divine spouse, *viz.*, the Lord of all creatures, and said,[22]—O illustrious one, whither are those deities headed by Cakra going? O thou that art conversant with the truth, tell me truly, for a great doubt has filled my mind![23]—

"'Maheçwara said,—O lady that art highly blessed, the excellent Prajāpati Daksha is adoring the gods in a Horse-sacrifice! These denizens of heaven are proceeding even thither![24]—

"'Umā said,—Why, O Mahādeva, dost thou not proceed to that Sacrifice? What objection is there of thy going to that place?[25]—

"'Maheçwara said,—O highly blessed lady, the deities in days of yore made an arrangement in consequence of which no share was assigned to me of offerings in all Sacrifices.[26] Agreeably to the course that was sanctioned in consequence of that arrangement, O thou of the fairest complexion, the deities do not give me, following the old custom, any share of the sacrificial offerings![27]—

"'Umā said,—O illustrious one, among all beings thou art the foremost in puissance. In merit, in energy, in fame, and in prosperity, thou yieldest to none, and thou art, indeed, superior to all![28] In consequence, however, of this disability in respect of a share (in the Sacrificial offerings) I am

---

will, certain beings who were charged to procreate for filling the universe with living creatures. These are the *Prajāpatis* or lords of all creatures. Amongst them was Daksha. Other accounts represe Daksha as the grandson of Brahman.—T.

filled with great grief, O sinless one, and a tremour overtakes me from head to foot![29]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'The goddess (Pārvati), having said these words unto her divine spouse, the Lord of all creatures, O monarch, remained silent, her heart burning the while in grief.[30] Then Mahādeva, understanding what was in her heart and what her thoughts were (for wiping off that disgrace), addressed Nandi, saying,—Wait here (by the goddess)![31] Summoning all his Yoga force, that Lord of all lords of Yoga, that god of gods, that wielder of Pināka, possessed of mighty energy, quickly proceeded to the place (where Daksha was sacrificing) accompanied by all his terrible followers and destroyed that Sacrifice. Amongst these followers of his, some uttered loud cries, and some laughed terribly,[32-33] and some, O king, extinguished the (Sacrificial) fires with blood; and some, possessed of awful faces, pulling up the sacrificial stakes, began to whirl them. Others began to devour those that were ministering to the Sacrifice.[34] Then that Sacrifice, thus afflicted on every side, assumed the form of a deer and sought to fly away through the skies.[35] Ascertaining that the Sacrifice was running away in that form, the puissant Mahādeva began to pursue him with bow and arrow.[36] In consequence of the wrath that then filled the heart of that foremost of all gods, possessed of immeasurable energy, a dreadful drop of sweat appeared on his forehead.[37] When that drop of sweat fell down on the Earth, there forthwith appeared a blazing fire resembling the (all destructive) conflagration that appears at the end of the Yuga.[38] From that fire issued a dreadful being, O monarch, of very short stature, possessed of blood-red eyes and a green beard.[39] His body was covered entirely with hair like a hawk's or an owl's, and his hair stood erect. Of dreadful aspect, his complexion was dark and his attire blood-red. Like a fire burning a heap of dry grass or straw, that Being of great energy quickly consumed the embodied form of Sacrifice.[40] Having accomplished that feat, he then rushed towards the deities and the Rishis that had assembled there. The deities, filled with fear, fled in all directions.[41] In con-

sequence of that Being's tread, the Earth, O monarch, began to tremble.*[43] Exclamations of *Oh* and *Alas* arose throughout the universe. Marking this, the puissant Grandsire, showing himself unto Mahādeva, addressed him in the following words.[43]

" 'Brahman said,—O puissant one, the deities will henceforth yield thee a share of the sacrificial offerings! O Lord of all the deities, let this wrath of thine be withdrawn by thee![44] O scorcher of foes, there, those gods, and the Rishis, in consequence of thy wrath, O Mahādeva, have become exceedingly agitated![45] This Being also, that hath sprung from thy sweat, O foremost of gods, shall wander among creatures, O righteous-souled one, under the name of Fever![46] O puissant one, if the energy of this Being remains all collected together, then the entire Earth herself will not be able to bear him. Let him, therefore, be distributed into many parts![47]—When Brahman had said these words, and when his proper share was appointed of the sacrificial offerings, Mahādeva replied unto the Grandsire of great energy, saying,—So be it![48]—Indeed, the wielder of Pināka, *viz.*, Bhava, smiled a little and became filled with joy. And he accepted the share that the Grandsire appointed of the offerings in sacrifices.[49] Conversant with the properties of everything, Mahādeva then distributed Fever into many portions, for the peace of all creatures. Listen, O son, as to how he did this![50] The heat that is perceptible in the heads of elephants the bitumen of mountains,† the moss that floats on water, the slough of snakes,[51] the sores that appear in the hoofs of bulls, the sterrile tracts of Earth that are full of saline matter, the dulness of vision of all animals,[52] the diseases that appear in the throats of horses, the crests appearing on the heads of peacocks, the eye-disease

---

* There are three vocatives in this Verse, expressive, of course, of great surprise. I ommit them in the translation.—T.

† A kind of substance like lac that oozes out of the stones of certain mountains during the hot months. It is also called Cilājit, is taken internally by many men in the belief that it increases digestion and strength.—T.

of the koel,* each of these was named Fever by the high-souled Mahādeva.[53] This is what has been heard by us. The liver-disease also of sheep, and the hiccup of parrots are also each known as forms of Fever. To this must be added the toil that tigers undergo, for that also, O righteous king, is known as a form of Fever.[54] Besides these, O Bhārata, amongst men, Fever enters all bodies at the time of birth, of death, and on other occasions.[55] This then that is called Fever is known to be the dreadful energy of Maheçwara. He is endued with authority over all creatures and should, therefore, be held in respect and worshipped by all.[56] It was by him that Vritra, that foremost of virtuous persons, was overtaken when he yawned. It was then that Cakra hurled his thunderbolt at him.[57] The thunderbolt, penetrating the body of Vritra, O Bhārata, divided him in twain. Divided in twain by the thunderbolt, the mighty Asura possessed of great Yoga powers, proceeded to the region of Vishnu of immeasurable energy.[58] It was in consequence of his devotion to Vishnu that he had succeeded in overwhelming the whole universe. And it was in consequence of his devotion to Vishnu that he ascended, when slain, to the region of Vishnu.[59] Thus, O son, adverting to the story of Vritra have I recited to thee the narrative in detail of Fever! Upon what else shall I speak to thee?[60] That man who will read this account of the origin of Fever with close attention and cheerful heart shall become free from disease and shall always have happiness for his share. Filled with gladness he shall have all the wishes accomplished upon which he may set his heart.' "[61]

Section CCLXXXIV.

Janamejaya said,—"How, O Brāhmana, was the Horse-sacrifice of the Prajāpati Daksha, the son of Prachetas, destroyed during the age of Vaivaswata Manu?[1] Understanding that the goddess Umā had become filled with rage and

---

* The Indian cuckoo, noted for his clear musical *kuhus*. This is the favorite bird of Indian poets.—T.

grief, the puissant Mahādeva, who is the soul of all things, gave way to wrath. How, again, through his grace, was Daksha enabled to reunite the divided limbs of that Sacrifice? I desire to know all this. Tell me all this, O Brāhmana, truly as it occurred."[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"In days of yore Daksha made arrangements for performing a Sacrifice on the breast of Himavat in that sacred region inhabited by Rishis and Siddhas where the Ganges issues out of the mountains.[3] Overgrown with trees and creepers of diverse kinds, that spot abounded with Gandharvas and Apsaras. Surrounded by crowds of Rishis, Daksha, that foremost of virtuous men,[4] that progenitor of creatures, was waited upon by the denizens of the Earth, the firmament, and the heavens, with their hands joined together in reverence.[5] The gods, the Dānavas, the Gandharvas, the Piçāchas, the Snakes, the Rākshasas, the two Gandharvas named Hāhā and Huhu, Tumvuru and Nārada,[6] Viçwāvasu, Viçwasena, the Gandharvas and the Apsaras, the Ādityas, the Vasus, the Rudras, the Sāddhyas, the Maruts,[7] all came there with Indra for sharing in the Sacrifice. The drinkers of heat, the drinkers of Soma, the drinkers of smoke, the drinkers of Ājya,[8] the Rishis, and the Pitris, came there with the Brāhmanas. These, and many other living creatures belonging to the four orders,[9] *viz.*, viviporous and oviparous and filth-born and vegetable, were invited to that Sacrifice. The gods also, with their spouses, respectfully invited thereto, came on their celestial cars and seated thereon shone like blazing fires.[10] Beholding them, the Rishi Dadhichi became filled with grief and wrath, and said,—'This is neither a Sacrifice nor a meritorious rite of religion, since Rudra is not adored in it.[11] Ye are certainly exposing yourselves to death and chains! Alas, how untoward is the course of time! Stupified by error you do not behold that destruction awaits you! A terrible calamity stands at your door in course of this great Sacrifice! Ye are blind to it!'[12] Having said these words, that great Yogin saw into the future with eyes of (Yoga) contemplation. He beheld Mahādeva, and his divine

spouse, viz., that giver of excellent boons,[13] (seated on the summit of Kailāsa) with the high-souled Nārada sitting beside the goddess. Conversant with Yoga, Dadhichi became highly gratified, having ascertained what was about to happen.[14] All the deities and others that had come there were of one mind with reference to the omission to invite the Lord of all creatures. Dadhichi alone, desirous of leaving that spot, then said,[15]—By worshipping one who should not be worshipped, and by refusing to worship him who should be worshipped, a man incurs the sin of homicide for ever.[16] I have never before spoken an untruth, and an untruth I shall never speak. Here in the midst of the gods and the Rishis I say the truth![17] The Protector of all creatures, the Creator of the universe, the Lord of all, the Puissant master, the taker of sacrificial offerings, will soon come to this Sacrifice and you all shall see him![18]

"Daksha said,—'We have many Rudras armed with lances and bearing matted locks on their heads. They are eleven in number. I know them all, but I do not know who this (new Rudra) Maheçwara is![19]

"Dadhichi said,—'This seems to be the counsel of all that are here, *viz.*, that Maheçwara should not be invited. As, however, I do not behold any god that can be said to be superior to him, I am sure that this proposed Sacrifice of Daksha will certainly be overtaken by destruction![20]

"Daksha said,—'Here, in this vessel of gold, intended for the Lord of all Sacrifices, is the sacrificial offering sanctified by *mantras* and (rites) according to the ordinance. I intend to make this offering unto Vishnu who is beyond compare. He is puissant and the Master of all, and unto Him should sacrifices be performed![21]

"Meanwhile," continued Vaiçampāyana, "the goddess Umā, sitting with her lord, said these words.

"Umā said,—'What are those gifts, what those vows, and what those penances, that I should make or undergo by means of which my illustrious husband may be able to obtain a half or a third share of the offerings in sacrifices.[22] Unto his wife who was agitated with grief and who repeated these

words the illustrious Mahādeva said with a joyous countenance,—'Thou dost not know me, O goddess! Thou Knowest not, O thou of delicate limbs and low belly, what words are proper to be addressed to the Lord of Sacrifices![23] O lady of large eyes, I know that it is only the sinful, who are bereft of contemplation, that do not understand me.* It is through thy power of illusion that the deities with Indra at their head and the three worlds all become stupified.†[24] It is to me that the chaunters utter their praises in Sacrifices. It is to me that the Sāman-singers sing their *Rathantaras.* It is to me that Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas perform their Sacrifices. And it is to me that the Addharyus dedicate the shares of sacrificial offerings!'[25]

"The goddess said,—'Persons of even ordinary abilities applaud themselves and indulge in brag in the presence of their spouses. There is no doubt in this.'[26]

"The holy one said,—'O Queen of all the gods, I do not certainly applaud my own self. Behold now, O lady of slender waist, what I do! Behold the Being that I will create, O thou of the fairest complexion, for (destroying) this Sacrifice (that has displeased thee), O my beautiful spouse![27]—'

"Having said these words unto his spouse Umā who was dearer to him than his own life, the puissant Mahādeva created from his mouth a terrible Being whose very sight could make one's hair stand on its end. The blazing flames that emanated from his body rendered him exceedingly awful to behold. His arms were many in number and in each was a weapon that struck the beholder with fear.[28] That Being, thus created, stood before the great god, with joined hands, and said,—'What commands shall I have to accomplish?' Maheçwara answered him, telling,—'Go and destroy the

---

* *I. e.*,—Thou, however, art not so; therefore, it is a matter of surprise that thou shouldst not yet know me. The sense is not at all difficult, but K. P. Singha skips over it.—T.

† Both the Vernacular translators have erred in rendering this line. What Mahādeva says to Umā is,—how is it that you have thus been stupified? It is thou that stupifiest others! To see thee stupified has created surprise in me!—T.

Sacrifice of Daksha!'[29]—Thus ordered, that Being of leonine prowess who had issued from the mouth of Mahādeva, desired to destroy the Sacrifice of Daksha, without putting forth all his energy and without the assistance of any one else, for dispelling the wrath of Umā.[30] Urged by her wrath, the spouse of Maheçwara, herself assuming a dreadful form that is known by the name of Mahākāli, proceeded in the company of that Being who had issued from Mahādeva's mouth, for witnessing with her own eyes the act of destruction which was her own (for it was she who had impelled her lord to accomplish it for her sake). That mighty Being, then set out, having obtained the permission of Mahādeva and having bowed his head unto him.[31] In energy, strength, and form, he resembled Maheçwara himself who had created him. Indeed, he was the living embodiment of (Mahādeva's) wrath.[32] Of immeasurable might and energy, and of immeasurable courage and prowess, he came to be called by the name of Virabhadra—that dispeller of the goddess's wrath. He then created from the pores of his body a large number of spirit-chiefs known by the name of Raumyas.[33] Those fierce bands of spirits, endued with terrible energy and prowess and resembling Rudra himself on that account, rushed with the force of thunder to that place where Daksha was making preparations for his sacrifice, impelled by the desire of destroying it. Possessed of dreadful and gigantic forms, they numbered by hundreds and thousands.[34] They filled the sky with their confused cries and shrieks. That noise filled the denizens of heaven with fear.[35] The very mountains were riven and the Earth trembled. Whirlwinds began to blow. The Ocean rose in a surge.[36] The fires that were kindled refused to blaze up. The Sun became dimmed. The Planets, the stars, and constellations, and the Moon, no longer shone.[37] The Rishis, the gods, and human beings, looked pale. A universal darkness spread over Earth and sky. The insulted Rudras began to set fire to everything.[38] Some amongst them of terrible form began to smite and strike. Some tore up the sacrificial stakes. Some began to grind and others to crush.[39] Endued with the speed of wind or thought, some

began to rush close and far. Some began to break the sacrificial vessels and the celestial ornaments. The scatterea fragments strewed the ground like stars bespangling the firmament.[40] Heaps of excellent viands, of bottles of drink, and of edibles there were that looked like mountains. Rivers of milk ran on every side, with clarified butter and *Pāyasa* for their mire,[41] creamy curds for their water, and crystalised sugar for their sands. Those rivers contained all the six tastes. There were lakes of treacle that looked very beautiful.[42] Meat of diverse kinds, of the best quality, and othed edibles of various sorts, and many excellent varieties of drink, and several other kinds of food that might be licked and sucked,[43] began to be eaten by that army of spirits with diverse mouths. And they began to cast off and scatter those varieties of food in all directions. In consequence of Rudra's wrath, every one of those gigantic Beings looked like the all-destructive Yuga-fire.[44] Agitating the celestial troops they caused them to tremble with fear and fly away in all directions. Those fierce spirits sported with one another, and seizing the celestial damsels shoved and hurled them on all sides.[45] Of fierce deeds, those Beings, impelled by Rudra's wrath, very soon burnt that Sacrifice although it was protected with great care by all the deities.[46] Loud were the roars they uttered which struck every living creature with dread. Having torn off the head of Sacrifice they indulged in glee and shouts.[47] Then the gods headed by Brahman, and that progenitor of creatures, *viz.*, Daksha, joining their hands in reverence, addressed that mighty Being, saying,—'Tell us, who thou art.'[48]—

"Virabhadra said,—'I am neither Rudra nor his spouse the goddess Umā. Nor have I come here for partaking of the fare (provided in this Sacrifice). Knowing the fact of Umā's wrath, the puissant Lord who is the soul of all creatures has given way to wrath.[49] I have not come here for seeing these foremost of Brāhmans. I have not come here urged by curiosity. Know that I have come here for destroying this Sacrifice of yours.[50] I am known by the name of Virabhadra and I have sprung from the wrath of Rudrr

This lady (who is my companion), and who is called Bhadrakāli, hath sprung from the wrath of the goddess. We have both been despatched by that god of gods, and we have accordingly come here.[51] O foremost of Brāhmanas, seek the protection of that Lord of the deities, the spouse of Umā! It is preferable to incur even the wrath of that foremost of gods than to obtain boons from any other Deity![52]—Hearing the words of Virabhadra, Daksha, that foremost of all righteous persons, bowed down unto Maheçwara and sought to gratify him by uttering the following hymn.[53]—'I throw myself at the feet of the effulgent Içāna, who is Eternal, Immutable, and Indestructible; who is the foremost of all gods, who is endued with high soul, who is the Lord of all the universe![54]—[Here follow five and half *çlokas* which appear to be interpolations]. His praises having thus been hymned, the great god, Mahādeva, suspending both *Prana* and *Apāna* (the two foremost of the five life-breaths) by shutting his mouth properly,[60] and casting (benignant) glances on every side, showed himself there. Possessed of many eyes, that vanquisher of all foes, that Lord of even the gods of all gods, suddenly arose from within the pit in which was kept the sacrificial fire.[61] Possessed of the effulgence of a thousand Suns, and looking like another Samvartaka, the great god smiled gently (at Daksha) and addressing him, said,—'What, O Brāhmana, shall I do for you?'[62]—At this juncture, the preceptor of all the deities adored Mahādeva with the Vedic verses contained in the *Moksha* sections. Then that progenitor of all creatures, *viz.*, Daksha, joining his hands in reverence, filled with dread and fear, exceedingly agitated, and with face and eyes bathed in tears, addressed the great god in the following words:—[63]

"Daksha said,—'If the great god has been gratified with me,—if, indeed, I have become an object of favor with him, —if I have deserved his kindness,—if the great Lord of all creatures is disposed to grant me boons,[64]—then let all these articles of mine that have been burnt, eaten, drunk, swallowed, destroyed, broken, and polluted,—let all these articles,[65] collected in course of many long years, and with great care

and effort, go not for nothing! Let these articles be of use to me! Even this is the boon I crave!'[66]—Unto him the illustrious Hara, the tearer of Bhaga's eyes, said,—'Let it be as thou sayest!'—Even these were the words of that illustrious progenitor of all creatures, that god of three eyes, that protector of righteousness.*[67] Having obtained that boon from Bhava, Daksha knelt down to him and adored that deity having the bull for his mark, by uttering his thousand and eight names.' "[68]

SECTION CCLXXXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'It behooveth thee, O sire, to tell me those names by which Daksha, that progenitor of creatures, adored the great deity. O sinless one, a reverent curiosity impels me to hear them!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Hear, O Bhārata, what the names, both secret and proclaimed, are of that god of gods, that deity of extraordinary feats, that ascetic of secret vows.[2]

" 'Daksha said,—I bow to thee, O lord of all the gods of gods, to the destroyer of the forces of the *Asuras!* Thou art the paralyser of the strength of the celestial chief himself! Thou art adored by both gods and Dānavas![3] Thou art thousand-eyed, thou art fierce-eyed, and thou art three-eyed! Thou art the friend of the ruler of the Yakshas. Thy hands and feet extend in all directions to all places. Thy eyes also and head and mouth are turned on all sides.[4] Thy ears too are everywhere in the universe, and thou art thyself everywhere, O Lord! Thou art shaft-eared, thou art large-eared, and thou art pot-eared! Thou art the receptacle of the Ocean![5] Thy ears are like those of the elephant, or of the bull, or like extended palms. Salutations to thee! Thou hast a hundred stomachs, a hundred revolutions, and a hundred tongues. I bow to thee![6] The utterers of the

---

* Mahādeva is called 'Virupāksha' in consequence of his three eyes, the third eye making his features dreadful to behold. He is also called 'Tryaksha' for his possession of three eyes.—T.

Gāyatri sing thy praises in uttering the Gāyatri, and the worshippers of the Sun adore thee in adoring the Sun. The *Rishis* regard thee as Brahman, as Indra, and as the (illimitable) firmament above.[7] O thou of mighty form, the Ocean and the Sky are thy two forms. All the deities dwell in thy form even as kine dwell within the fold.[8] In thy body I behold Soma, and Agni, and the lord of the Waters, and Āditya, and Vishnu, and Brahman, and Vrihaspati.[9] Thou, O illustrious one, art Cause and Effect and Action and Instrument of everything unreal and real, and thou art Creation and Destruction.[10] I bow unto thee that art called Bhava and Sarva and Rudra. I bow unto thee that art the giver of boons.[11] I bow always unto thee that art the Lord of all creatures. Salutations to thee that art the slayer of Andhaka.[12] Salutations to thee that hast three matted locks, to thee that hast three heads, to thee that art armed with an excellent trident; to thee that hast three eyes and that art, therefore, called Tryamvaka and Trinetra! Salutations to thee that art the destroyer of the triple city![13] Salutations to thee that art called Chanda, and Kunda; to thee that art the (universal) egg and also the bearer of the (universal) egg; to thee that art the holder of the ascetic's stick, to thee that hast ears everywhere, and to thee that art called Dandimunda![14] Salutations to thee whose teeth and hair are turned upwards, to thee that art stainless and white, and that art stretched all over the universe; to thee that art red, to thee that art tawny, and to thee that hast a blue throat![15] Salutations to thee that art of incomparable form, that art of dreadful form, and that art highly auspicious! To thee that art Surya, that hast a garland of Suryas round thy neck, and that hast standards and flags bearing the device of Surya.[16] Salutations to thee that art the Lord of spirits and ghosts, to thee that art bull-necked, and that art armed with the bow; to thee that crushest all foes, to thee that art the personification of chastisement, and to thee that art clad in leaves (of trees) and rags.[17] Salutations to thee that bearest gold in thy stomach, to thee that art cased in golden mail, to thee that art gold-crested, to

thee that art the lord of all the gold in the world![18] Salutations to thee that hast been adored, that deservest to be adored, and that art still being adored; to thee that art all things, that devourest all things, and that art the soul of all things![19] Salutations to thee that art the *Hotri* (in sacrifices), that art the (Vedic) *mantras* uttered (in sacrifices), and that ownest white flags and standards. Salutations to thee that art the navel of the universe, that art both cause and effect in the form of the five primal elements, and that art the coverer of all covers.[20] Salutations to thee that art called Kriçanāça, that art of thin limbs, and that art thin. Salutations to thee that art always cheerful and that art the personification of confused sounds and voices.[21] Salutations to thee that art about to be stretched on the Earth, that art already stretched, and that standest upright. Salutations to thee that art fixed, that art running, that art bald, and that bearest matted locks on thy head.[22] Salutation to thee that art fond of dancing and that strikest thy puffed cheeks making thy mouth a drum.* Salutations to thee that art fond of lotuses that blow in rivers, and that art always fond of singing and playing on musical instruments.[23] Salutations to thee that art the eldest-born, that art the foremost of all creatures, and that art the crusher of the *Asura* Vala. Salutations to thee that art the Master of Time, that art the personification of Kalpa; that art the embodiment of all kinds of destruction great and small.[24] Salutations to thee that laughest awfully and as loud as the beat of a drum, and that observest dreadful vows! Salutations for ever to thee that art fierce, and that hast ten arms.[25] Salutations to thee that art armed with bones and that art fond of the ashes of funeral pyres. Salutations to thee that art awful, that art terrible to behold, and that art

---

* Every worshipper of Mahādeva must fill his mouth with air and then, shutting his lips, strike his cheeks, letting the air gently out at each stroke, and helping it with air from the lungs for keeping the current steady. By doing this a kind of noise is made like *Bom Bom, Babam Bom.* Mahādeva is himself fond of this music and is represented as often making it.—T.

an observer of dreadful vows and practices.[26] Salutations to thee that ownest an ugly mouth, that hast a tongue resembling a scimitar, and that hast large teeth. Salutations to thee that art fond of both cooked and uncooked meat, and that regardest the gourded *Vinā* as highly dear.[27] Salutations to thee that causest rain, that helpest the cause of righteousness, that art identifiable with the form of Nandi, and that art Righteousness's self! Salutations to thee that art ever moving like wind and the other forces, that art the controller of all things, and that art always engaged in cooking all creatures (in the cauldron of Time).*[28] Salutations to thee that art the foremost of all creatures, that art superior, and that art the giver of boons. Salutations to thee that hast the best of garlands, the best of scents, and the best of robes, and that givest the best of boons to the best of creatures.[29] Salutations to thee that art attached, that art freed from all attachments, that art of the form of Yoga-contemplation, and that art adorned with a garland of *Akshas*. Salutations to thee that art united as cause and disunited as effects, and that art the form of shadow and of light.[30] Salutations to thee that art amiable, and that art frightful, and that art exceedingly so. Salutations to thee that art auspicious, that art tranquil, and that art most tranquil.[31] Salutations to thee that art of one leg and many eyes, and that hast only one head; to thee that art fierce, to thee that art gratified with little offerings, and thee that art fond of equity.[32] Salutations to thee that art the artficer of the universe, and that art ever united with the attribute of tranquility. Salutations to thee that bearest a foe-frightening bell, that art of the form of the jingle made by a bell, and that art of the form of sound when it is not perceptible by the ear.†[33] Salutations to thee that art like a thousand

---

* 'Vrisha' is explained by the Commentator as 'vrishti-kartri;' 'Vrishya' as 'Dharmavriddhikartri;' 'Go-vrisha' as 'Nandirupa;' 'Katankata' as Nityagamanaçila;' 'Danda' as 'Niyantri.'—T.

† Godhead is frequently likened to 'anāhataçavda' or sound not perceptible by the ear, or sound in its nascent state.—T.

bells jingled together, and that art fond of a garland of bells, that art like the sound that the life-breaths make, that art of the form of all scents and of the confused noise of boiling liquids.[34] Salutations to thee that art beyond three *Huns*, and that art fond of two *Huns*. Salutations to thee that art exceedingly tranquil, and that hast the shade of mountain trees for thy habitation.*[35] Thou art fond of the heart-flesh of all creatures, that cleansest from all sins, and that art of the form of sacrificial offerings. Salutations to thee that art of the form of Sacrifice, that art the Sacrificer himself, that art the Brāhmana into whose mouth is poured the sacrificial butter, and that art the fire into which is poured the butter inspired with *mantras*.†[36] Salutations to thee that art of the form of (sacrificial) Ritwijas, that hast thy senses under control, that art made of Sattwa, and that hast Rajas also in thy make. Salutations to thee that art of the form of the banks of Rivers, of Rivers themselves, and of the lord of all Rivers (*viz.*, the Ocean)![37] Salutations to thee that art the giver of food, that art the lord of all food, and that art identical with him that takes food! Salutations to thee that hast a thousand heads and a thousand feet;[38] to thee that hast a thousand tridents uplifted in thy hands, and a thousand eyes! Salutations to thee that art of the form of the rising Sun, and that art of the form of a child,[39] that art the protector of attendants all of whom are of the form of children,‡ and that art, besides, of the form of children's toys. Salutations to thee that art old, that art covetous, that art already agitated, and that art about to be agitated[40] Salutations to thee that hast locks of

---

* 'Huns' are mystic sounds that stand as emblems for various things. 'Beyond three Huns' means, perhaps, 'beyond the influence of wrath.'—T.

† In Sacrifices the butter is poured with *mantras* into the mouth of a selected Brāhmana who represents the gods, and into also the sacred fire. What is said here is that the great god is of the form of that Brāhmana and of the sacred fire.—T.

‡ This alludes to the sports of Krishna in the groves of Vrinda with the rustic children who were his companions.—T.

hair marked by the current of the Ganges, and that hast locks of hair resembling blades of *Munja* grass! Salutations to thee that art gratified with the six (well-known) acts, and that art devoted to the performance of the three acts.*[41] Salutations to thee that hast assigned the duties of the respective modes of life. Salutations to thee that deservest to be praised in sounds, that art of the form of sorrow, and that art of the form of deep and confused noise.[42] Salutations to thee that hast eyes both white and tawny, as also dark and red. Salutations to thee that hast conquered thy vital breaths, that art of the form of weapons, that rivest all things, and that art exceedingly lean.[43] Salutations to thee that always discoursest of Religion, Pleasure, Profit, and Emancipation. Salutations to thee that art a Sānkhya, that art the foremost of Sānkhyas, and that art the introducer of the Sānkhya-Yoga!†[44] Salutations to thee that hast a car and that art without a car (for thy journeys).‡ Salutations to thee that hast the intersections of four roads for thy car; to thee that hast the skin of a black deer for thy upper garments, and that hast a snake for thy sacred thread.[45] Salutations to thee that art Içāna, that art of body as hard as thunderbolt, and that art of green locks. Salutations to

---

* The sacred stream of the Ganges, issuing out of Vishnu's feet, is held by Brahman in his *Kamandalu* or jar. Thence it issues out, and coursing through the heavens fall down on the head of Civa for Civa alone is mighty enough to bear that fall. The matted locks of Civa bear the mark of the fall. The six well-known acts here referred to are Yajana, Yājana, Adhyayana, Adhyāpana, Dāna, and Pratigraha (*i. e.*, performing sacrifices, assisting at the sacrifices of others, studying, teaching, making gifts, and accepting gifts). The three acts in which Civa is engaged are Yajana, Adhyayana, and Dāna, (*i. e.*, the first, the third, and the fifth in the above enumeration.—T.

† The Commentator explains that by 'Sānkhya' the speaker means 'the propounder of the sceptical philosophy.' By 'Sānkhya-mukhya' (which I render 'the foremost of Sānkhyas') is meant 'follower of the theistic philosophy of Pātanjala.' By 'Sānkhya-yoga' is meant both 'Vedānta' and 'Yoga.'—T.

‡ 'That hast a car and that hast no car' means, as the Commentator explains, 'capable of coursing, without obstruction, through Water, Fire, Wind, and Space.'—T.

thee that art of three eyes, that art the lord of Amvikā, that art manifest, and that art Unmanifest.*[46] Salutations to thee that art Desire, that art the Giver of all desires, that art the Killer of all desires, and that art the discriminator between the gratified and the ungratified. Salutations to thee that art all things, the Giver of all things, and the Destroyer of all things. Salutations to thee that art the hues which appear in the evening sky.[47] Salutations to thee that art of mighty strength, that art of mighty arms, that art a mighty Being, and that art of great effulgence.' Salutations to thee that lookest like a mighty mass of clouds, and that art the embodiment of eternity! Salutations to thee that art of well-developed body, that art of emaciated limbs, that bearest matted locks on thy head, and that art clad in barks of trees and skins of animals.[48] Salutations to thee that hast matted locks as effulgent as the Sun or the Fire, and that hast barks and skins for thy attire. Salutations to thee that art possessed of the effulgence of a thousand Suns, and that art ever engaged in penances.[49] Salutations to thee that art the excitement of Fever and that art endued with matted locks drenched with the waters of the Ganges characterised by hundreds of eddies. Salutations to thee that repeatedly revolvest the Moon, the Yugas, and the clouds.†[50] Thou art food, thou art he who eats that food; thou art the giver of food, thou art the grower of food; and thou art the creator of food. Salutations to thee that cookest food and that eatest cooked food, and that art both wind and fire![51] O Lord of all the lords of the gods, thou art the four orders of living creatures, *viz.*, the viviparous, the oviparous, the filth-born, and vegetables.[52] Thou art the Creator of the mobile and the immobile universe, and thou art their Destroyer! O foremost of all persons conversant with *Brahma*, they that are conversant with *Brahma* regard thee as *Brahma*![53] The utterers of Brahma say that thou

---

* 'Içāna' is 'much desired' or 'much coveted by all persons.'—T.

† *I. e.*, thou createst and destroyest these repeatedly or settest them in motion.—T.

art the Supreme source of Mind, and the Refuge upon which Space, Wind, and Light rest. Thou art the Richs and the Sāmans, and the syllable Om.[54] O foremost of all deities, those utterers of *Brahma* that sing the Sāmans constantly sing thee when they utter the syllables Hāyi-Hāyi, Huvā-Hāyi, and Huvā-Hoyi.*[55] Thou art made up of the Yajushes, of the Richs, and of the offerings poured on the sacrificial fire. The hymns contained in the Vedas and the Upanishads adore thee!†[56] Thou art the Brāhmanas and the Kshatriyas, the Vaiçyas, and the Cudras, and the other castes formed by intermixture. Thou art those masses of clouds that appear in the sky; thou art Lightning; and thou art the roar of thunder![57] Thou art the year, thou art the seasons, thou art the month, and thou art the fortnight. Thou art Yuga, thou art the time represented by a twinkle of the eye, thou art *Kāshthā*, thou art the Constellations, thou art the Planets, thou art Kalā.[58] Thou art the tops of all trees, thou art the highest summits of all mountains. Thou art the tiger among the lower animals, thou art Garuda among birds, and thou art Ananta among snakes.[59] Thou art the ocean of milk among all oceans, and thou art the bow among instruments for hurling weapons. Thou art the thunder among weapons, and thou art Truth among vows.[60] Thou art Aversion and thou art Desire: thou art attachment and thou art stupifaction (of judgment): thou art Forgiveness and thou art Unforgiveness. Thou art Exertion, and thou art Patience: thou art Cupidity: thou art Lust and thou art Wrath: thou art Victory and thou art Defeat.[61] Thou art armed with mace, and thou art armed with shaft: thou art armed with the bow, and thou bearest the *Khattānga* and the *Jharjhara* in thy hands. Thou art he who cuttest down and piercest and smitest. Thou art he who leads (all creatures) and he who gives them pain and grief.[62] Thou art Righteousness which is marked by ten virtues; thou art Wealth

---

* These are syllables with all singers of the Sāmans utter for lengthening short words in order to keep up the metre.—T.

† *I. e.*, He who is adored in these hymns is thyself and no other.—T.

or Profit of every kind; and thou art Pleasure! Thou art Gangā, thou art the Oceans, thou art the Rivers, thou art the lakes, and thou art the tanks.[63] Thou art the thin creepers, thou art the thicker creeping plants, thou art all kinds of grass, and thou art the deciduous herbs. Thou art all the lower animals and thou art the birds. Thou art the origin of all objects and acts, and thou art that season which yields fruits and flowers.[64] Thou art the beginning and thou art the end of the Vedas; thou art the *Gāyatri*, and thou art Om.[65] Thou art Green, thou art Red, thou art Blue, thou art Dark, thou art of Bloody hue, thou art of the color of the Sun, thou art Tawny, thou art Brown, and thou art Dark-blue.*[66] Thou art without color, thou art of the best color, thou art the maker of colors, and thou art without comparison. Thou art of the name of Gold, and thou art fond of Gold.[67] Thou art Indra, thou art Yama, thou art the Giver of boons, thou art the Lord of wealth, and thou art Agni. Thou art the Eclipse, thou art the Fire called Chitrabhānu, thou art Rāhu, and thou art the Sun.[68] Thou art the fire upon which sacrificial butter is poured. Thou art he who pours the butter. Thou art He in honor of whom the butter is poured, thou art the butter itself that is poured, and thou art the puissant Lord of all. Thou art those sections of the Brāhmans that are called *Trisuparna*; thou art all the Vedas; and thou art the sections called Catarudriya in the Yajushes.[69] Thou art the holiest of holies, and the auspicious of all auspicious things. Thou animatest the inanimate body. Thou art the Chit that dwellest in the human form. Invested with attributes, thou becomest subject to Destruction. Thou art Jiva, that is He who is never subject to destruction when uninvested with attributes. Thou art full yet thou becomest liable to decay and death in the form of the body which is Jiva's accompaniment.[70] Thou art the breath of life, and thou art Sattwa, thou art Rajas, thou art Tamas, and thou art not subject to error. Thou art the breaths called Prāna, Apāna, Samāna, Udāna,

---

* These are the ten colors known to the Rishis.—T.

and Vyāna.[71] Thou art the opening of the eye and the shutting of the eye. Thou art the act of Sneezing and thou art the act of Yawning. Thou art of red eyes which are ever turned inwards. Thou art of large mouth and large stomach.*[72] The bristles on thy body are like needles. Thy beard is green. Thy hair is turned upwards. Thou art swifter than the swiftest. Thou art conversant with the principles of music both vocal and instrumental, and fond of both vocal and instrumental music.†[73] Thou art a fish roving in the waters, and thou art a fish entangled in the net. Thou art full, thou art fond of sports, and thou art of the form of all quarrels and disputes. Thou art Time, thou art bad time, thou art time that is premature, and thou art time that is over-mature.‡[74] Thou art the killing, thou art the razor (that kills), and thou art that which is killed. Thou art the auxilliary and thou art the adversary, and thou art destroyer of both auxiliaries and adversaries. Thou art the time when clouds appear, thou art of large teeth, and thou art Samvartaka and Valāhaka.$[75] Thou art manifest in the form of splendour. Thou art concealed in consequence of being invested with Māyā (or illusion). Thou art He who connects creatures with the fruits of their acts. Thou hast a bell in thy hand. Thou playest with all mobile and immobile things (as with thy toys). Thou art the cause of all causes. Thou art *Brahma* (in the form of *Pranava*), thou art Swāhā; thou art the bearer of the Danda, thy

---

* 'Lohitāntargatā-drishtih' is explained by the Commentator as 'Lohitā antargatā cha drishtirasya.' By 'red eyes' is, of course, meant eyes of the color of the lotus. By 'eyes turned inwards' is meant one whose gaze is upon his soul, *i. e.*, one who is engaged in *Samādhi*.—T.

† 'Chalāchalah' is explained as exceedingly *chalah* or swift. 'Achalah' is 'nāsti chalo yasmāt'; hence 'chaleshu (api) achalah' is swift amongst the swift, or swifter than the swiftest.—T.

‡ The great god is a fish wandering in the waters, *i. e.*, as Jiva, wanders in space; he is a fish in the net, *i. e.*, as Jiva, invested with Darkness or Illusion, is obliged to take birth.—T.

$ 'Meghakāla' is the time when clouds appear, *i. e.*, the time of the universal deluge. Samvartaka and Valāhaka are the two clouds that appear on the occasion of the universal destruction.—T.

head is bald, and thou art he who has his words, deeds, and thoughts under control.*[76] Thou art the four Yugas, thou art the four Vedas, thou art he from whom the four (Sacrificial) fires have flowed.† Thou art the Director of all the duties of the four modes of life. Thou art the maker of the four Orders.[77] Thou art always fond of dice. Thou art cunning. Thou art the chief of the spirits distributed into *ganas* (clans), and their ruler. Thou art adorned with red garlands and attired in robes that are red. Thou sleepest on the mountain-breast, and thou art fond of the red hue.[78] Thou art the artizan : thou art the foremost of artists ; and it is thou from whom all arts have flowed. Thou art the tearer of the eyes of Bhaga ; thou art Fierce, and thou art he who destroyed the teeth of Pushan.‡[79] Thou art Swāhā, thou art Swadhā, thou art Vashat, thou art Salutation's form, and thou art the words *Namas-Namas* uttered by all worshippers. Thy observances and thy penances are not known to others. Thou art *Pranava* ; thou art the firmament bespangled with myriads of stars.[80] Thou art Dhātri, and Vidhātri, and Sandhātri, Vidhātri, and the Refuge of all things in the form of the Supreme cause, and thou art independent of all Refuge. Thou art conversant with *Brahma*, thou art Penance, thou art Truth, thou art the soul of Brahmacharyya, and thou art Simplicity.$[81] Thou art the soul of all creatures, thou art the Creator of all creatures, thou art absolute Existence, and thou art the Cause whence the Past, the Present, and

---

* 'Mili-Mili' is explained by the Commentator differently. According to him, one connected with all things as cause is 'Mili.' It is duplicated to show that Civa is always so. I prefer taking the word as meaning 'cause of causes.' 'The bearer of *Danda*, with, again, a bald head' is a 'Paramahangsa,' *i. e.*, one who has renounced the world and its ways.—T.

† The four Sacrificial fires are Tretā, Āvasathya, Dakshina, and Sahya.—T.

‡ 'Cilpikā' is one who is not well-skilled, or is ill-skilled, in the arts. It implies a common artizan.—T.

$ 'Dhātri' is 'ādikartri' or Vishnu. 'Vidhātri' is the four-headed Brahman. 'Sandhātri' is he who joins all things into one ; the second 'Vidhātri' means the designer of destinies.—T.

the Future, have sprung. Thou art Earth, thou art Firmament, and thou art Heaven. Thou art Eternal, thou art Self-restrained, and thou art the great god.[82] Thou art initiated, and thou art not initiated. Thou art forgiving; thou art unforgiving; and thou art the chastiser of all who are rebellious. Thou art the lunar month, thou art the cycle of the Yugas (*i. e., Kalpa*), thou art Destruction, and thou art Creation.[83] Thou art Lust, thou art the vital seed, thou art subtile, thou art gross, and thou art fond of garlands made of Karnikāra flowers. Thou hast a face like that of Nandi, thou hast a face that is terrible, thou hast a handsome face, thou hast an ugly face, and thou art without a face.[84] Thou hast four faces, thou hast many faces, and thou hast a fiery face when engaged in battles. Thou art gold-stomached (*i. e.*, Nārāyana), thou art (unattached to all things like) a bird (unattached to the Earth whence it derives its food and to which it belongs), thou art Ananta (the lord of mighty snakes), and thou art Virāt (hugest of the huge).[85] Thou art the destroyer of Unrighteousness, thou art called Mahāpārçwa, thou art Chandadhāra, and thou art the chief of the spirit-clans. Thou lowedst like a cow, thou wert the protector of kine, and thou hast the lord of bulls for thy attendant.*[86] Thou art the protector of the three worlds, thou art Govinda, thou art the director of the senses, and thou art incapable of being apprehended by the senses. Thou art the foremost of all creatures, thou art fixed, thou art immobile, thou tremblest not, and thou art of the form of trembling!†[87] Thou art incapable of being resisted, thou art the destroyer of all poisons, thou art incapable of being borne, (in battle), and thou art incapable of being transcended, thou canst not be made to tremble, thou canst not be measured, thou canst not be vanquished, and thou art

---

* The identity of Maheçwara with Nārāyana or Krishna is here preached. In his incarnation of Krishna, Vishnu sported with the children of the cowherds of Vrinda and sportively lowed as a cow. He also protected the kine of Vrinda from floods, poison, &c. 'Govrisheçwara' is 'Nandi,' the attendant of Mahādeva.—T.

† The word 'Go' in 'Gomārgah' is used to signify the senses.—T.

victory.*[88] Thou art of swift speed, thou art the Moon, thou art Yama (the universal destroyer), thou bearest (without flinching) cold and heat and hunger and weakness and disease. Thou art all mental agonies, thou art all physical diseases, thou art the curer of all diseases, and thou art those diseases themselves which thou curest.[89] Thou art the destroyer of my Sacrifice which had endeavoured to escape in the form of a deer. Thou art the advent and the departure of all diseases. Thou hast a high crest. Thou hast eyes like lotus-petals. Thy habitation is in the midst of a forest of lotuses.[90] Thou bearest the ascetic's staff in thy hands. Thou hast the three Vedas for thy three eyes. Thy chastisements are fierce and severe. Thou art the destroyer of the egg (whence the universe springs). Thou art the drinker of both poison and fire, thou art the foremost of all deities, thou art the drinker of Soma, thou art the lord of the Maruts.†[91] Thou art the drinker of Nectar. Thou art the Master of the universe. Thou shinest in glory, and thou art the lord of all the shining ones. Thou protectest from poison and death, and thou drinkest milk and Soma. Thou art the foremost of the protectors of those that have fallen off from heaven, and thou protectest him who is the first of the deities.‡[92] Gold is thy vital seed. Thou art male, thou art female, thou art neuter. Thou art an infant, thou art a youth, thou art old in years with thy teeth worn out,

* 'Durvāranah' is explained by the Commentator as 'irrestible when coming as Death.' 'Durvishahah' is 'destroyer of all kinds of poison in thy form of Amrita.' 'Durddharshah' is incapable of being frightened. 'Durvishah' is incapable of being measured.—T.

† 'Vishāgnipāh' is drinker of poison and fire. Civa is represented as the acceptor of all things that are rejected by others. In this consists his true divinity, for to the Deity nothing in the universe can be unacceptable or worthy of being cast off. The ashes of the funeral pyre are his, the poison produced by the churning of the ocean was his. He saved the universe by swallowing the poison on that occasion.—T.

‡ 'Tushitādyapāh' is the correct reading. Thou protectest him who is the 'ādya' of the 'tushitas', *i. e.*, thou protectest Brahman himself.—T.

thou art the foremost of Nāgas, thou art Cakra, thou art the Destroyer of the universe, and thou art its Creator.[93] Thou art Prajāpati, and thou art adored by the Prajāpatis, thou art the supporter of the universe, thou hast the universe for thy form, thou art endued with great energy, and thou hast faces turned towards all directions. The Sun and the Moon are thy two eyes, and the Grandsire is thy heart. Thou art the Ocean. The goddess Saraswati is thy speech, and Fire and Wind are thy might. Thou art Day and Night. Thou art all acts including the opening and the shutting of the eye.[94] Neither Brahman, nor Govinda, nor the ancient Rishis, are competent to understand thy greatness, O auspicious deity, truly.[95] Those subtile forms which thou hast are invisible to us. Rescue me and, O, protect me as the sire protects the son of his loins![96] O, protect me! I deserve thy protection! I bow to thee, O sinless one! Thou, O illustrious one, art full of compassion for thy devotees. I am always devoted to thee![97] Let him be always my protector who stayeth alone on the other side of the ocean, in a form that is difficult to be apprehended, and overwhelming many thousands of persons![*98] I bow to that Soul of Yoga who is beheld in the form of an effulgent Light by persons that have their senses under control, that are possessed of the attribute of Sattwa, that have regulated their breaths, and that have conquered sleep.†[99] I bow to him who is endued with matted locks, who bears the ascetic's staff in his hand, who is possessed of a body having a long abdomen, who has a *kamandalu* tied to his back, and who is the Soul of Brahman.[100] I bow to Him who is the soul of water, in whose hair are the clouds, in the joints of whose body are the rivers, and in whose stomach are the four oceans.[101] I

---

* The Commentator explains that what is meant by Mahādeva's staying 'alone' is that he is the knower, the known, and knowledge. 'On the other side of the ocean' means 'on the other side of desire and attachment, &c.,' 'Overwhelming many thousands of persons' means 'overwhelming all creatures', *i. e.*, transcending them by his energy and knowledge.—T.

† Of course, Yogins are spoken of.—T.

seek the protection of Him who, when the end of the Yuga comes, devours all creatures and stretches himself (for sleep) on the wide expanse of water that covers the universe.[102] Let him who entering Rāhu's mouth drinketh Soma in the night and who becoming Swarbhānu devoureth Surya also, protect me !*[103] The deities, who are mere infants and who have all sprung from thee after Brahman's creation, enjoy their respective shares (in sacrificial offerings). Let them (peacefully) enjoy those offerings made with Swāhā and Swadhā, and let them derive pleasure from those presents. I bow to them.†[104] Let those Beings that are of the stature of the thumb and that dwell in all bodies, always protect and gratify me.‡[105] I always bow to those Beings who dwelling within embodied creatures make the latter cry in grief without themselves crying in grief, and who gladden them without themselves being glad.[106] I always bow to those Rudras who dwell in rivers, in oceans, in hills and mountains, in mountain-caves, in the roots of trees, in cowpens, in inaccessibls forests, in the intersections of roads, in roads, in open squares, in banks (of rivers and lakes and oceans), in elephant-sheds, in stables, in car-sheds, in deserted gardens and houses, in the five primal elements, and in the cardinal and subsidiary directions. I bow repeatedly unto them that dwell in the space amidst the Sun and the Moon, as also in rays of the Sun and the Moon, and them that dwell in the nether regions, and them that have betaken themselves to Renunciation and other superior practices for the sake of the Supreme.§[107-110] I bow always unto them that

---

* The eclipses of both the Moon and the Sun are caused, according to the Paurānic mythology, by Rāhu devouring the Moon and the Sun at certain well-known intervals. Rāhu is an *Asura* whose head only is still alive. *Vide* Adi Parvan, Sec. On Churning of the Ocean.—T.

† 'Garbhāh' means embryos or infants in the womb. The deities are referred to by this word, for they are embryos that have been born in Mahādeva. 'Patitāh' has 'twattah' understood after it. 'Anu' means 'after', *i. e.*, 'after Brahman's creation'.—T.

‡ These Beings are Rudras or portions of the great Rudra.—T.

§ 'Tasmaih paramgatāh',—'param' is 'utkrishtam' *i. e.*, Renunciation

are unnumbered, that are unmeasured, and that have no form, unto those Rudras, that is, that are endued with infinite attributes.[111] Since thou, O Rudra, art the Creator of all creatures, since, O Hara, thou art the Master of all creatures, and since thou art the indwelling Soul of all creatures, therefore wert thou not invited by me (to my Sacrifice).[112] Since thou art He who is adored in all sacrifices with plentiful gifts, and since it is Thou that art the Creator of all things, therefore I did not invite thee![113] Or, perhaps, O god, stupified by thy subtle illusion I failed to invite thee![114] Be gratified with me, blessed be thyself, O Bhava, with me possessed by the quality of Rajas! My Mind, my Understanding, and my Chitta all dwell in thee, O god![115]—'

"'Hearing these adorations, that Lord of all creatures, *viz.*, Mahādeva, ceased (to think of inflicting further injuries on Daksha). Indeed, highly gratified, the illustrious deity addressed Daksha, saying,[116]—O Daksha of excellent vows, pleased have I been with these adorations of thine. Thou needst not praise me more! Thou shalt attain to my companionship![117] Through my grace, O progenitor of creatures, thou shalt earn the fruit of a thousand horse-sacrifices, and a hundred Vājapeyas (in consequence of this one uncompleted sacrifice of thine)![118]—

"'Once more, Mahādeva, that thorough master of words, addressed Daksha and said unto him these words fraught with high consolation:—Be thou the foremost of all creatures in the world![119] Thou shouldst not, O Daksha, entertain any feelings of grief for these injuries inflicted on thy Sacrifice! It has been seen that in former *Kalpas* too I had to destroy thy Sacrifice![*120] O thou of excellent vows, I shall grant thee again some more boons. Take them from thee! Dispelling this cheerlessness that overspreads thy face, listen to

---

and other superior practices. 'Tasmai' is 'for the sake of That', *i. e.*, for 'Içwarah'.—T.

* Hence, in this, the present Kalpa too, I am obliged to do the same, for all Kalpas must be similar in respect of the events that transpire in them.—T.

me with undivided attention.[121] With the aid of arguments addressed to reason the deities and the Dānavas have extracted from the Vedas consisting of six branches and from the systems of Sānkhya and Yoga a creed in consequence of which they have practised the austerest penances for many long years.[122] The religion, however, which I have extracted, is unparalleled, and productive of benefits on every side. It is open to men in all modes of life to practise it. It leads to Emancipation. It may be acquired in many years or through merit by persons who have restrained their senses. It is shrouded in mystery. They that are divested of wisdom regard it as censurable.[123] It is opposed to the duties laid down in respect of the four orders of men and the four modes of life, and agrees with those duties in only a few particulars. They that are well-skilled in the science of (drawing) conclusions (from premises) can understand its propriety; and they who have transcended all the modes of life are worthy of adopting it.[124] In days of yore, O Daksha, this auspicious religion called Pāçupata had been extracted by me. The proper observance of that religion produces immense benefits.[125] Let those benefits be thine, O highly blessed one! Cast off this fever of thy heart!—Having said these words, Mahādeva, with his spouse (Umā) and with all his attendants disappeared from the view of Daksha of immeasurable prowess.[126] He who would recite this hymn that was first uttered by Daksha or who would listen to it when recited by another, would never meet with the smallest evil and would attain to a long life.[127] Indeed, as Civa is the foremost of all the deities, even so is this hymn, agreeable with the Crutis, is the foremost of all hymns.[128] Persons desirous of fame, kingdom, happiness, pleasure, profit, and wealth, as also those desirous of learning, should listen with feelings of devotion to the recital of this hymn.[129] One suffering from disease, one distressed by pain, one plunged into melancholy, one afflicted by thieves or by fear, and one under the displeasure of the king in respect of his charge, becomes freed from fear (by listening or reciting this hymn).[130] By listening or reciting this hymn, one, in even this earthly body of

his, attains to equality with the spirits forming the attendants of Mahādeva. One becomes endued with energy and fame, and cleansed of all sin (through the virtue of this hymn).[131] Neither Rākshasas, nor Piçāchas, nor ghosts, nor Vināyakas, create disturbances in his house where this hymn is recited.[132] That woman, again, who listens to this hymn with pious faith, observing the while the practices of Brahmacharyya, wins worship as a goddess in the family of her sire and that of her husband.*[133] All the acts of that person become always crowned with success who listens or recites with rapt attention to the whole of this hymn.[134] In consequence of the recitation of this hymn all the wishes one forms in one's mind and all the wishes one clothes in words become crowned with fruition.[135] That man obtains all objects of enjoyment and pleasure and all things that are wished for by him, who, practising self-restraint, makes according to due rites offerings unto Mahādeva, Guha, Umā, and Nandi, and after that utters their names without delay, in proper order and with devotion.[136] Such a man, departing from this life, ascends to heaven, and has never to take birth among the intermediate animals or birds. This was said even by the puissant Vyāsa the son of Parāçara.' "[137]

Section CCLXXXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, what is Adhyātma with respect to man and whence does it arise !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Aided by the science of Adhyātma one may know everything. It is, again, superior to all things. I shall, with the help of my intelligence, explain to thee that Adhyātma about which thou askest me. Listen, O son, to my explanation.[2] Earth, Wind, Space, Water, and Light forming the fifth, are the great essences. These are (the causes of) the origin and the destruction of all creatures.[3] The bodies of living creatures (both subtile and gross), O bull of Bharata's race, are the result of the combination of

---

* 'Mātri-pakshe' seems to be a misreading for 'bhattri-pakshe'.—T.

the virtues of these five. Those virtues (whose combinations produce the bodies of creatures) repeatedly start into existence and repeatedly merge (into the original cause of all things, *viz.*, the Supreme Soul.*[4] From those five primal essences are created all creatures, and into those five great elements all creatures resolve themselves, repeatedly, like the infinite waves of the Ocean rising from the Ocean and subsiding into that which causes them.[5] As a tortoise stretches forth its legs and withdraws them again into itself, even so the infinite number of creatures spring from (and enter) these five fixed great essences.[6] Verily, sound springs from Space, and all dense matter is the attribute of Earth. Life is from Wind. Taste is from Water. Form is said to be the property of Light.[7] The entire mobile and immobile universe is thus these five great essences existing together in various proportions. When Destruction comes, the infinite diversity of creatures resolve themselves into those five, and once more, when Creation begins, they spring from the same five.[8] The Creator places in all creatures the same five great essences in proportions that He thinks proper.[9] Sound, the ears, and all cavities,—these three,—have Space for their producing cause. Taste, all watery or juicy substances, and the tongue, are said to be the properties of Water.[10] Form, the eye, and the digestive fire in the stomach, are said to partake of the nature of Light. Scent, the organ of smelling, and the body, are the properties of Earth.[11] Life touch, and action are said to be the properties of Wind. I have thus explained to thee, O king, all the properties of the five primal essences.[12] Having created these, the Supreme Deity, O Bhārata, united with them Sattwa, Rajas, Tamas, Time, Consciousness of functions, and Mind forming the sixth.†[13]

---

* By 'gunāh', which I have rendered 'virtues,' is, of course, intended all that constitute the body, including mind and understanding, all, in fact, that become the accompaniments of the Soul.—T.

† 'Karma-buddhi' is to be taken as one. It means the consciousness or apprehension of functions. Each sense or organ instinctively knows what its object is and apprehends that object immediately. This apprehension of its own functions, which every sense possesses,

That which is called the Understanding dwells in the interior of what thou seest above the soles of the feet and below the crown of the head.[14] In man the senses (of knowledge) are five. The sixth (sense) is the Mind. The seventh is called the Understanding. The Kshetrajna or Soul is the eighth.[15] The senses and that which is the Actor should be ascertained by apprehension of their respective functions. The conditions or states called Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas, depend upon the senses for their refuge or formation.[16] The senses exist for simply seizing the impressions of their respective objects. The Mind has doubt for its function. The Understanding is for ascertainment. The Kshetrajna is said to be only an inactive witness (of the functions of the others).[17] Sattwa, Rajas, Tamas, Time, and Acts, O Bhārata, these attributes direct the Understanding. The Understanding is the senses and the five fore-mentioned attributes.*[18] When the Understanding is not, the senses with the mind, and the five other attributes (*viz.*, Sattwa, Rajas, Tamas, Time, and Acts), cease to be. That by which the Understanding sees is called the eye. When the Understanding hears, it is called the ear. When she smells, she becomes the sense of scent; and when she tastes the various objects of taste, she comes to be called by the name of tongue.[19] When again she feels the touch of the various objects of touch, she becomes the sense of touch. It is the Understanding that becomes modified diversely and frequently. When the Understanding desires anything, she becomes Mind.[20] The five senses with the Mind, which separately constitute the foundations (of the Understanding), are the creations of the Understanding. They are called *Indriyas*. When they become

---

is here designated as 'Karma-buddhi'. 'Mana-shashthāni' here simply means 'mind completing the tale of six'. It has no reference to the five senses having the mind for the sixth, for the senses have already been named in the previous Verses.—T.

* Acts here means the acts of past lives, or the desires dwelling in an incipient form, due to the acts of past lives. The Commentator explains that the 'cha' in the second line means the five attributes indicated in the first line.—T.

stained, the Understanding also becomes stained.*[21] The Understanding, dwelling in Jiva, exists in three states. Sometimes she obtains joy; sometimes she indulges in grief;[22] and sometimes she exists in a state that is neither pleasure nor pain. Having for her essence these conditions or states, (*viz.*, Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas), the Understanding revolves through these three states.†[23] As the lord of rivers, *viz.*, the surging Ocean, always keeps within his continents, even so the Understanding, which exists in connection with the (three) states, exists in the Mind (including the senses).[24] When the state of Rajas is awakened, the Understanding becomes modified into Rajas. Transports of delight, joy, gladness, happiness, and contentedness of heart,[25] these, when somehow excited, are the properties of Sattwa. Heart-burnning, grief, sorrow, discontentedness, and unforgiveness,‡[26] arising from particular causes, are the result of Rajas. Ignorance, attachment and error, heedlessness, stupefaction, and terror,[27] meanness, cheerlessness, sleep, and procrastination, —these, when brought about by particular causes, are the properties of Tamas.[28] Whatever state of either body or mind, connected with joy or happiness, arises, should be regarded as due to the state of Sattwa.[29] Whatever, again, is fraught with sorrow and is disagreeable to oneself, should be regarded as arising from Rajas. Without commencing any such act, one should turn one's attention to it (for avoiding it).[30] Whatever is fraught with error or stupifaction in either body or mind, and is inconceivable and mysterious, should be known as connected with Tamas.[31] Thus have I explained to thee that all things in this world dwell in the Understanding. By knowing this one becomes wise. What

---

* The word 'Buddhyā' in the first line is taken by the Commentator as an instrumental and not as a genetive. Hence he takes it that 'Kalpitāni' is understood after it.—T.

† *I. e.*, occupies them one after another.—T.

‡ 'Murti' is a misreading for 'apurti' or discontentedness. The Burdwan translator retains 'murti' in his Bengali version. It is not clear which reading K. P. Singha adopts. The Bengali substitute he gives is 'murchcchā' or stupefaction.

else can be the indication of wisdom?[32] Know now the difference between these two subtile things, *viz.*, Understanding and Soul. One of these, *viz.*, the Understanding, creates attributes. The other, *viz.*, the Soul, does not create them.[33] Although they are, by nature, distinct from each other, yet they always exist in a state of union. A fish is different from the water in which it dwells, but the fish and the water must exist together.[34] The attributes cannot know the Soul. The Soul, however, knows them. They that are ignorant regard the Soul as existing in a state of union with the attributes like qualities existing with their possessors. This, however, is not the case, for the Soul is truly only an inactive Witness of everything.[35] The Understanding has no refuge.* That which is called life (involving the existence of the Understanding) arises from the effects of the attributes coming together. Others (than these attributes which are created by the Understanding), acting as causes, create the Understanding that dwells in the body. No one can apprehend the attributes in their real nature or form of existence.[36] The Understanding, as already said, creates the attributes. The Soul simply beholds them (as an inactive Witness). This union that exists between the Understanding and the Soul is eternal.[37] The indwelling Understanding apprehends all things through the Senses which are themselves inanimate and unapprehending. Really the senses are only like lamps (that throw their light for discovering objects to others without themselves being able to see them).[38] Even this is the nature (of the Senses, the Understanding, and the Soul). Knowing this, one should live cheerfully, without yielding to either grief or joy. Such a man is said to be beyond the influence of pride.[39] That the Understanding creates all these attributes is due to her own nature,—even as a spider weaves threads (in consequence of her own nature). These attributes should be known as the threads the spider weaves.[40] When destroyed,

---

* *I. e.* there are no materials of which it is constituted. Hence Sa ttwa or Buddhi has no 'āçrayah' or 'upādāna.'—T.

the attributes do not cease to exist; only, their existence ceases to be visible. When, however, a thing transcends the ken of the senses, its existence (or otherwise) is affirmed by inference. This is the opinion of one set of persons. Others affirm that with destruction the attributes cease to be.[41] Untying this knotty problem addressed to the understanding and reflection, and dispelling all doubt, one should cast off sorrow and live in happiness.*[42] As men unacquainted with its bottom become distressed when they fall upon this Earth which is like a river filled with the waters of stupefaction, even so is that man afflicted who falls away from that state in which there is a union with the Understanding.†[43] Men of knowledge, however, conversant with Adhyātma and armed with fortitude, are never afflicted, because they are capable of crossing to the other shore of those waters. Indeed, Knowledge is an efficient raft (in that river).[44] Men of knowledge have not to encounter those frightful terrors which alarm them that are destitute of knowledge. As regards the righteous, none of them attains

---

* What the speaker inculcates in Verses 41 and 42 is this: some are of opinion that with the apparent destruction of the body, the attributes that make up the body do not cease to exist. It is true that they cease to become apprehensible by the senses; but then, though removed from the ken of the senses, their existence may be affirmed by inference. The argument is that if destroyed, their reappearance would be impossible. The reappearance, however, is certain. (For rebirth is a doctrine that is believed to be a solemn truth requiring no argument to prove it). Hence, the attributes, when apparently destroyed, do continue to exist. They are regarded as then inhering to the *linga* or subtile body. The counter opinion is that when destroyed they are destroyed for ever. The latter opinion is condemmed by the speaker.—T.

† In the second line the word is 'Gādhamavidwāngsah,' *i. e.*, 'ignorant of its bottom or depth.' K. P. Singha gives the meaning correctly, without translating the Verse literally. The Burdwan translator makes nonsense of it. Both, however, wrongly take 'agādha' as the final word in 'yathāgādha,' forgetting that 'agādham' is a masculine adjective incapable of qualifying 'nadim' which is feminine. 'Ayam' is Jiva. The last clause is to be taken as 'buddhiyogam *anuprachyuta* ayam tathā.'—T.

to an end that is superior to that of any other person amongst them. Indeed, the righteous show, in this respect, an equality.[45] As regards the man of Knowledge, whatever acts have been done by him in past times (while he was steeped in Ignorance) and whatever acts fraught with great iniquity he does (after attainment of Knowledge), he destroys both by Knowledge as his sole means. Then, again, upon the attainment of Knowledge he ceases to perpetrate these two evils, *viz.*, censuring the wicked acts of others and doing any wicked acts himself under the influence of attachment.' "*[46]

SECTION CCLXXXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Living creatures always stand in fear of sorrow and death. Tell me, O grandsire, how the occurrence of these two may be prevented.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, O Bhārata, is cited the old narrative of the discourse between Nārada and Samanga.[2]

" 'Nārada said,—(While others salute their superiors by only a bend of the head) thou salutest thy superiors by prostrating thyself on the ground till thy chest comes into contact with the ground. Thou seemest to be engaged in cross-

---

* This is not a difficult Verse, yet both the vernacular translators have misunderstood it. What is said in the first line is this: 'yat vahudosham karoti, yat (cha) purākritam, ekatah cha dushayati.' Both the finite verbs have 'jnānin' (the man of Knowledge) for their nominative understood. 'Dushayati' means 'naçyati' or destroys. The meaning then is that the man of Knowledge destroys his sinful acts of both this and past lives. The Commentator cites the well-known simile of the lotus leaf not being drenched or soaked with water even when dipt in water. Now, this is the unseen fruit of Knowledge. In the second line, the visible fruits are indicated. The man of Knowledge refrains from censuring the wicked acts of others and from perpetrating any wicked act himself. 'Yat cha dushayati' means 'yat parakritam anishtam dushayati or nindati;' 'yat karoti' means 'yat swayam rāgādi-doshat karoti;' tadubhayam apriyam (sa) na karoti,' the reason being 'dwaitadarçanābhāvah'. Such a man truly regards the universe as identifiable with himself.—T.

ing (the river of life) with thy hands.* Thou seemest to be always free from sorrow and exceedingly cheerful.[3] I do not see that thou hast the least anxiety. Thou art always content and happy and thou seemest to sport (in felicity) like a child![4]—

"'Samanga said,—O giver of honors, I know the truth about the Past, the Present, and the Future. Hence I never become cheerless.†[5] I know also what the beginning of acts is in this world, what the accession of their fruits, and how varried are those fruits. Hence I never yield to sorrow.‡[6] Behold, the illiterate, the destitute, the prosperous, O Nārada, the blind, idiots and madmen, and ourselves also, all live.$[7] These live by virtue of their acts of past lives. The very deities, who exist freed from diseases, exist (in that state) by virtue of their past acts. The strong and the weak, all, live by virtue of past acts. It is fitting, therefore, that thou shouldst hold us in esteem.[8] The owners of thousands live. The owners of hundreds also live. They that are overwhelmed with sorrow live. Behold, we too are living![9] When we, O Nārada, do not give way to grief, what can the practice of the duties (of religion) or the ovservance of (religious) acts do to us? And since all joys and sorrows also are not unending, they are, therefore, unable to

---

* *I. e.*, in even thy direst distress thou dependest on thyself. To cross the fearful river of Life without a raft and with the aid of only one's bare arms implies great self-dependence.—T.

† That which did not exist and will not exist, exists not at the present moment. Everything, therefore, which is of the nature of *asat* is non-existent. Our sorrows are connected with the *asat*. Knowing this, I have cast off all sorrow.T.

‡ I have understood that acts are for sorrow; that the fruits also of acts are for sorrow in spite of the apparent character of some; and that the fruits of acts are varied, sometimes other fruits appearing than those expected. Hence, I do not indulge in sorrow, for I avoid acts and do not grieve for not obtaining the fruits of acts or for the accession of fruits other than those apparently agreeable.—T.

$ The sense is that we who avoid acts, are *not* dead; in fact, we live quite as others do; and those others, how unequally circumstanced! The Burdwan translator makes nonsense of the first line simple though it is.—T.

agitate us at all.*[10] That for which men are said to be wise, indeed, the very root of wisdom, is the freedom of the senses from error. It is the senses that yield to error and grief. One whose senses are subject to error can never be said to have attained wisdom.[11] That pride which is indulged by a man subject to error is only a form of the error to which he is subject. As regards the man of error, he has neither this world nor the next. It should be remembered that griefs do not last for ever and that happiness cannot be had always.†[12] Worldly life with all its vicissitudes and painful incidents, one like me would never adopt. Such a one would not care for desirable objects of enjoyments, and would not think at all of the happiness their possession may bring about, or, indeed, of the griefs that present themselves.‡[13] One capable of resting on one's own self would never covet the possessions of others; would not think of gains unacquired, would not feel delighted at the acquisition of even immense wealth; and would not yield to sorrow at the loss of wealth.[14] Neither friends, nor wealth, nor high birth, nor scriptural learning, nor *mantras*, nor energy, can succeed in rescuing one from sorrow in the next world. It is only by conduct that one can attain to felicity there.[15] The Understanding of the man unconversant with Yoga can never be directed towards Emancipation. One unconversant with Yoga can never have happiness. Patience and the resolution to cast off sorrow, these two indicate the advent of happiness.[16] Anything agreeable leads to pleasure. Pleasure in-

---

* Ignorance lies at the root of sorrow. By casting off ignorance, we have avoided sorrow. Hence, neither religion or religious acts such as Sacrifices, &c., can do us any good or harm. As regards happiness and misery again, these two cannot agitate us at all, since we know their value, both being ephemeral in comparison to the period for which we are to exist.—T.

† Hence, no one should indulge in pride, saying,—'I am happy', nor yield to sorrow, saying,—'I am miserable'. Both happiness and misery are transitory. The man of wisdom should never suffer himself to be agitated by these transitory states of his mind.—T.

‡ The first word is read either as 'bhavātmakam' or 'bhāvātmakam'. The first means 'samsāra-rupam'; the second, 'driçyātmakam'.—T.

duces pride. Pride, again, is productive of sorrow. For these reasons, I avoid all these.[17] Grief, Fear, Pride,—these that stupify the heart,—and also Pleasure and Pain, I behold as (an unconcerned) witness since my body is endued with life and moves about.*[18] Casting off both wealth and pleasure, and thirst and error, I wander over the Earth, freed from grief and every kind of anxiety of heart.[19] Like one that has drunk nectar I have no fear, here or hereafter, of death, or iniquity, or cupidity, or anything of that kind.[20] I have acquired this knowledge, O Brāhmana, as the result of my severe and indestructible penances. It is for this reason, O Nārada, that grief, even when it comes to me, does not succeed in afflicting me.—' "[21]

Section CCLXXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, what is beneficial for one that is unconversant with the truths of the scriptures, that is always in doubt, and that abstains from self-restraint and the other practices having for their object the knowledge of the Soul.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Worshipping the preceptor, always waiting reverentially upon those that are aged, and listening to the scriptures (when recited by competent Brāhmanas),—these are said to be of supreme benefit (to a person like the one thou hast described.)[2] In this connection also is cited the old narrative of the discourse between Gālava and the celestial Rishi Nārada.[3] Once on a time Gālava, desirous of obtaining what was for his benefit, addressed Nārada freed from error and fatigue, learned in the scriptures, gratified with knowledge, a thorough master of his senses, and with soul devoted to Yoga, and said,[4]—Those virtues, O Muni, by the possession of which a person becomes respected in the world, I see, dwell permanently in thee![5] Thou art freed from

---

* I am obliged to behold them because I am a living being having a body; but then I behold them as an unconcerned witness.—T.

error and, as such, it behooveth thee to remove the doubts that fill the minds of men like ourselves that are subject to error and that are unacquainted with the truths of the world.[6] We do not know what we should do, for the declarations of the scriptures generate an inclination for (the acquisition of) Knowledge simultaneously with the inclination for acts. It behooveth thee to discourse to us on these subject.*[7] O illustrious one, the different *āçramas* approve different courses of conduct.—*This* is beneficial,—*This* (other) is beneficial,—the scriptures exhort us often in this wise.†[8] Beholding the followers of the four āçramas, who are thus exhorted by the scriptures and who fully approve of what the scriptures have laid down for them, thus travelling in diverse courses, and seeing that ourselves also are equally content with our own scriptures, we fail to understand what is truly beneficial.[9] If the scriptures were all uniform, then what is truly beneficial would have become manifest. In consequence, however, of the scriptures being multifarious, that which is truly beneficial becomes invested with mystery.[10] For these reasons, that which is truly beneficial seems to me to be involved in confusion. Do thou then, O illustrious one, discourse to me on the subject. I have approached thee (for this). O, instruct me![11]—

" 'Nārada said,—The Āçramas are four in number, O child! All of them serve the purposes for which they have been designed; and the duties they preach differ from one another. Ascertaining them first from well-qualified precep-

---

* The scriptures contain both kinds of instruction. There are declarations that are entirely in favor of Acts or observances. There are again declarations in favor of Knowledge. What the speaker asks is that the Rishi should discourse upon what the speaker should do, *i. e.*, whether he should betake to the acquisition of Knowledge or to the doing of acts.—T.

† *I. e.*, Each Açrama speaks of particular observances and courses of conduct as beneficial. This, therefore, is a source of confusion to men of plain understandings. Is there no distinction then among duties or observances in respect of their beneficial character? This is the question propounded. The Commentator thinks by the word āçramas is meant the four principal faiths and *not* the four modes of life.—T.

tor's, reflect upon them, O Gālava!*[12] Behold, the announcements of the merits of those Āçramas are varied in respect of their form, divergent in respect of their matter, and contradictory in respect of the observances they embrace.†[13] Observed with gross vision, verily, all the Āçramas refuse to clearly yield their true intent (which, of course, is knowledge of Self). Others, however, endued with subtle sight, behold their highest end.‡[14] That which is truly beneficial, and about which there is no doubt, *viz.*, good offices to friends, and suppression of enemies,[15] and the acquisition of the aggregate of three (*viz.*, Religion, Profit, and Pleasure), has been declared by the wise to be supreme excellence.§ Abstention from sinful acts, constancy of righteous disposition, good behaviour towards those that are good and pious,—these, without doubt, constitute excellence.[16] Mild-

---

* I retain the word 'āçrama' in the English version as it is very doubtful in what sense it has been used in the original. The Commentator explains that by four 'āçramas' are meant the four principal forms of creed prevalent at one time in India. The first is that there is no such thing as virtue or righteousness. This is ascribed to Cākya Singha or Buddha. The second is that righteousness consists in only the worship of trees, &c., The third is that that only is righteousness which the Vedas have laid down. The fourth is that transcending righteousness and its reverse there is something for whose attainment one should strive. 'Yathā' samkalpitāh' is explained by the Commentator as 'yo yena çreyastena bhāvitastasya tadeva çreyah.'—T.

† 'Gunoddeçam' is 'Gunakirtanam' or the announcement of merits.' What Nārada says here is this: the āçramas are four. The merits of each have been proclaimed by their respective founders. The principal merit each claims is that it leads to knowledge of Self. Now, the announcement is 'nānārupam;' it is also 'prithak;' and lastly, it is 'viprasthitam' or contradictory, for, as the Commentator points out, that which a particular āçrama announces to be righteous is according to another unrighteous. Both the vernacular translators give incorrect versions.—T.

‡ 'Te' refers to āçramas. 'Abhipretam' is 'ātma-tatwarupam'. 'Yānti' is equivalent to 'prāpayanti'.—T.

§ 'Mitrānām' is taken by the Commentator to be equivalent to 'sarva-bhut-ābhayapradānām', *i. e.*, they who have given the pledge of harmlessness to all creatures. By enemies is meant here the envious and harmful.—T.

ness towards all creatures, sincerity of behaviour, and the use of sweet words,—these, without doubt, constitute excellence.[17] An equitable apportionment of what one has among the deities, the Pitris, and guests, and adherence to servants, —these, without doubt, constitute excellence.[18] Truthfulness of speech is excellent. The knowledge, however, of truth, is very difficult of acquisition. I say that that is truth which is exceedingly beneficial to creatures.*[19] The renunciation of pride, the suppression of heedlessness, contentment, living by one's own self,—these are said to constitute supreme excellence.[20] The study of the Vedas, and of their branches, according to the well-known rules, and all enquiries and pursuits having for their sake the acquisition of knowledge,—these, without doubt, are excellent.[21] One desirous of achieving what is excellent should never enjoy sound and form and taste and touch and scent, to excess and should not enjoy them for their sake alone.[22] Wandering in the night, sleep during the day, indulgence in idleness, roguery, arrogance, excessive indulgence and total abstention from all indulgence in objects of the senses, should be reliquished by one desirous of achieving what is excellent.†[23] One should not seek self-elevation by depreciating others. Indeed, one should, by one's merits alone, seek distinction over persons that are distinguished but never over those that are inferior.[24] Men really destitute of merit and filled with a sense of self-admiration depreciate men of real merit, by asserting their own virtues and affluence.[25] Swelling with a sense of their own importance, these men, when none interferes with them (for bringing them to a right sense of what they are), regard themselves to be superior to men of real distinction.[26] One

---

* In previous Sections the nature of Truth has been discussed. A formal truth may be as sinful as a lie, and a lie may be as meritorious as a Truth. Hence, the ascertainment of Truth is not easy.—T.

† 'Atiyoga' and 'ayoga' are well-known words which have no chance of being misunderstood in the way in which they have been misunderstood by both the vernacular translators. Indeed, K. P. Singha blunders ridiculously, while the Burdwan translator limits them to only the use of food, supposing the Commentator's concrete examples exhaust the meaning.—T.

possessed of real wisdom and endued with real merits, acquires great fame by abstaining from speaking ill of others and from indulging in self-praise.[27] Flowers shed their pure and sweet fragrance without trumpeting forth their own excellence. Similarly, the effulgent Sun scatters his splendours in the firmament in perfect silence.[28] After the same manner those men blaze in the world with celebrity who by the aid of their intelligence, cast off these and similar other faults and who do not blaze forth their own virtues.[29] The fool can never shine in the world by bruiting about his own praise. The man, however, of real merit and learning obtains celebrity even if he be concealed in a pit.[30] Evil words, uttered with whatsoever vigor of voice, die out (in no time). Good words, uttered however softly, blaze forth in the world.[31] As the Sun shows his fiery form (in the gem called Suryakānta), even so the multitude of words, of little sense, that fools filled with vanity utter, display only (the meanness of) their hearts.[32] For these reasons men seek the acquisition wisdom of various kinds. It seems to me that of all acquisitions that of wisdom is the most valuable.[33] One should not speak until one is asked; nor should one speak when one is asked improperly. Even if possessed of intelligence and knowledge, one should still sit in silence like an idiot (until one is asked to speak and asked in proper form).[34] One should seek to dwell among honest men devoted to righteousness and liberality and the observance of the duties of their own order.[35] One desirous of achieving what is excellent should never dwell in a place where a confusion occurs in the duties of the several orders.*[36] A person may be seen to live who abstains from all works (for earning the means of his living) and who is well-content with whatever is got without exertion. By living amid the righteous, one succeeds in acquiring pure righteousness. After the same manner, one by living amid the sinful, becomes stained with sin.†[37]

---

* *I. e.*, where an intermingling takes place of the four orders of men, *viz.*, where *Varna-sankara* occurs.—T.

† Mere companionship with the righteous leads to righteous acts; while that with the sinful leads to acts of sinfulness.—T.

As the touch of water or fire or the rays of the moon immediately convey the sensation of cold or heat, after the same manner the impressions of virtue and vice become productive of happiness or misery.[38] They that are eaters of Vighasa eat without taking any notice of the flavours of the edibles placed before them. They, however, that eat carefully discriminating the flavours of the viands prepared for them, should be known as persons still tied by the bonds of action.*[39] The righteous man should leave that place where a Brāhmana discourses on duties unto disciples desirous of acquiring knowledge, as based on reasons, of the Soul, but who do not enquire after such knowledge with reverence.†[40] Who, however, will leave that spot where exists in its entirety that behaviour between disciples and preceptors which is consistent with what has been laid down in the scriptures?[41] What learned man desirous of respect being paid to himself will dwell in that place where people bruit about the faults of the learned even when such have no foundations to stand upon?‡[42] Who is there that will not leave that place, like a garment whose end has caught fire, where covetous men seek to break down the barriers of virtue?[43] One should remain and dwell in that place, among good men of righteous disposition, where persons endued with humility are engaged in fearlessly practising the duties of religion.[44] There where men practise the duties of religion for the sake of acquiring wealth and other temporal advantages, one should not dwell,

---

* 'Anuvishayam' is 'vishayam anu vartate' *i. e.*, 'rasah' or flavour. An eater of 'vighasa' is a good or pious man. What is said here is that such men eat for only filling their stomachs and not because eating is a source of enjoyment or gratification. 'Atmavishayān' is 'Buddhervişeshato-vandhakān', *i. e.*, 'rasa-viçeshān.'—T.

† 'Agamayamānām' is 'Agamam pramānajam Jnānam ātmana ichchhatām'.—T.

‡ 'Akāçasthāh' is 'nirālamvanāh', *i. e.*, men who have no foundations to stand upon. The Bombay text reads 'dosham', the Bengal texts, 'doshān'; the sense remains unaltered. The Bombay reading is 'ātmapujābhikāma', while the Bengal reading is the same word in the plural form. I accept the singular form and take it as qualifying 'panditah'.—T.

for the people of that place are all to be regarded as sinful.[45] One should fly away with all speed from that place, as if from a room in which there is a snake, where the inhabitants, desirous of obtaining the means of life, are engaged in the practise of sinful deeds.[46] One desirous of what is beneficial should, from the beginning, relinquish that act in consequence of which one becomes stretched as it were on a bed of thorns and in consequence of which one becomes invested with the desires born of the deeds of past lives.*[47] The righteous man should leave that kingdom where the king and king's officers exercise equal authority and where they are given to the habit of eating before feeding their relatives (when the latter come as guests).†[48] One should dwell in that country where Brāhmanas possessed of a knowledge of the scriptures are fed first; where they are always devoted to the due observance of religious duties, and where they are engaged in teaching disciples and officiating at the sacrifices of others.[49] One should unhesitatingly dwell in that country where the sounds Swāhā, Swadhā, and Vashat are duly and continuously uttered.‡[50] One should leave that kingdom, like poisoned meat, where one sees Brāhmanas obliged to betake themselves to unholy practices, being tortured by want of the means of life.[51] With a contented heart and deeming all his wishes as already gratified a righteous man should dwell in that country whose inhabitants cheerfully give away before even they are solicited.[52] One should live

---

* Some of the Bengal texts read 'khattàm'. The Bombay reading is 'khatwām'. The Commentator explains that 'khatwām samārudhah' 'Tibra duhkha-grastah'. 'Anucayi' means 'purvakarma-vāsanāvān'. The sense seems to be this : the desires born of one's past acts, *i. e*, acts of previous lives, adhere to the mind. Nothing can wipe them off, save Nivritti and 'Tattwa-jnānam' or knowledge of truth. One should, therefore, practise the religion of Nivritti and seek to acquire knowledge of Truth.—T.

† Both the vernacular translators quietly skip over the word 'pratyan-an-tārāh'.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, where the people are virtuous and given to the performance of their duties.—T.

and move about, among good men devoted to acts of righteousness, in that country where chastisement falleth upon those that are wicked and where respect and good offices are the portion of those that are of subdued and cleansed souls.[53] One should unhesitatingly dwell in that country whose king is devoted to virtue and which the king rules virtuously, casting off desires and possessed of prosperity, and where severe chastisement is dealt to those that visit self-controlled men with the consequences of their wrath, those that act wickedly towards the righteous, those that are given to acts of violence, and those that are covetous.*[54-55] Kings endued with such a disposition bring about prosperity to those that dwell in their kingdoms when prosperity is on the point of leaving them.†[56] I have thus told thee, O son, in answer to thy enquiry, what is beneficial or excellent. No one can describe, in consequence of its exceedingly high character, what is beneficial or excellent for the Soul.‡[57] Many and high will the excellences be, through the observance of the duties laid down for him, of the man who for earning his livelihood during the time of his sojourn here conducts himself in the way indicated above and who devotes his soul to the good of all creatures.—' "$[53]

---

* 'Kāmeçah' is possessor of all objects of desire or enjoyment. The sense is this: where the king, casting off desire, wins prosperity for himself; *i. e.*, though possessed of wealth is not attached to wealth. The expression may also mean 'master of desire', *i. e.*, where the king casts off desire and masters his desires without allowing the latter to master him.—T.

† 'Pratyupsthite' is 'pritipatwena upasthite', *i. e.*, 'hiyamāne sati'.—T.

‡ I am not sure that I have understood aright the second line of this Verse. It may also mean, 'No one is able to enumerate all that is beneficial for the Soul in consequence of the wideness of the subject.—T.

$ 'Vrittim' has 'uddiçya' understood after it. The Bombay text reads 'prānihitātmanah'; the Bengal reading is 'pranihitātmanah'. If the Bengal reading be accepted, it would mean 'whose soul is fixed or established on Yoga'. 'Tapasā' is explained by the Commentator as 'swadharmena', in view of the question of Gālava which Nārada answers.

Section CCXXXIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How, O grandsire, should a king like us behave in this world, keeping in view the great object of acquisition? What attributes, again, should he always possess so that he may be freed from attachments!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall in this connection recite to thee the old narrative that was uttered by Arishtanemi unto Sagara who had sought his counsel.[2]

"'Sagara said,—What is that good, O Brāhmana, by doing which one may enjoy felicity here? How, indeed, may one avoid grief and agitation? I wish to know all this!—'[3]

"Bhishma continued,—Thus addressed by Sagara, Arishtanemi of Tarkshya's race, conversant with all the scriptures, regarding the questioner to be every way deserving of his instructions, said these words.*[4]—The felicity of Emancipation is true felicity in the world. The man of ignorance knows it not, attached as he is to children and animals and possessed of wealth and corn.[5] An understanding that is attached to worldly objects and a mind suffering from thirst,—these two baffle all skilful treatment. The ignorant man who is bound in the chains of affection is incapable of acquiring Emancipation.†[6] I shall presently speak to thee of all the bonds that spring from the affections. Hear them with attention. Indeed, they are capable of being heard with profit by one that is possessed of knowledge.[7] Having procreated children in due time and married them when they become young men, and having ascertained them to be competent for earning their livelihood, do thou free thyself from all attachments and rove

---

The sense, however, would remain unaltered if it be taken as standing for Self-control or penances.—T.

* 'Sampadam' is explained by the Commentator as 'upodeca-yogyatā-criyam.'—T.

† Some texts read 'cakyam'; the reading 'cakyah' also occurs. If the former be accepted, it must be taken as referring to 'taddwayam' as the Commentator explains. No alteration in sense occurs by adhering to the one reading or the other.—T.

about in happiness.[8] When thou seest thy dearly-cherished wife grown old in years and attached to the son she has brought forth, do thou leave her in time, keeping in view the highest object of acquisition (*viz.*, Emancipation).[9] Whether thou obtainest a son or not, having during the first years of thy life duly enjoyed with thy senses the objects that are addressed to them, free thyself from attachments and rove about in happiness.[10] Having indulged the senses with their objects, thou shouldst suppress the desire of further indulging them. Freeing thyself then from attachments, thou shouldst rove in felicity, contenting thyself with what is obtained without effort and previous calculation, and casting an equal eye upon all creatures and objects.*[11] Thus, O son, have I told thee in brief (of what the way is for freeing thyself from attachments). Hear me now, for I shall presently tell thee, in detail, the desirability of the acquisition of Emancipation.†[12] Those persons who live in this world freed from attachments and fear, succeed in obtaining happiness. Those persons, however, who are attached to worldly objects, without doubt, meet with destruction.[13] Worms and ants (like men) are engaged in the acquisition of food and are seen to die in the search. They that are freed from attachments are happy, while they that are attached to worldly objects meet with destruction.[14] If thou desirest to attain to Emancipation thou shouldst never bestow thy thoughts on thy relatives, thinking,—How shall these exist without me ?[15] —A living creature takes birth by himself, and grows by himself, and obtains happiness and misery, and death by himself.[16] In this world people enjoy and obtain food and raiment and other acquisitions earned by either their parents or themselves. This is the result of the acts of past lives, for nothing can be had in this life which is not the result of the past.[17] All creatures live on the Earth, protected by their own acts, and obtaining their food as the result of what is

---

* In the second line some of the Bengal texts read 'lobhesu.' The correct reading is 'lokeshu.' Both the vernacular translators adhere to the wrong reading.—T.

† 'Mokshārtha' is 'moksha-prayojanah.'—T

ordained by Him who assigns the fruits of acts.[18] A man is but a lump of clay, and is always himself completely dependent on other forces. One, therefore, being oneself so infirm, what rational consideration can one have for protecting and feeding one's relatives?[19] When thy relatives are carried away by Death in thy very sight and in spite of even thy utmost efforts to save them, that circumstance alone should awaken thee.[20] In the very life-time of thy relatives and before thy own duty is completed of feeding and protecting them, thyself mayst meet with death and abandon them.[21] After thy relatives have been carried away from this world by death, thou canst not know what becomes of them there,—that is, whether they meet with happiness or misery. This circumstance ought to awaken thee.[22] When in consequence of the fruits of their own acts thy relatives succeed in maintaining themselves in this world whether thou livest or diest, reflecting on this thou shouldst do what is for thy own good.*[23] When this is known to be the case, who in the world is to be regarded as whose? Do thou, therefore, set thy heart on the attainment of Emancipation. Listen now to what more I shall say unto thee.[24] That man of firm Soul is certainly emancipate who has conquered hunger and thirst and such other states of the body, as also wrath and cupidity and error.[25] That man is always emancipate who does not forget himself, through folly, by indulging in gambling and drinking and concubinage and the chase.[26] That man who is really touched by sorrow in consequence of the necessity there is of eating every day and every night for supporting life, is said to be cognisant of the faults of life.[27] One who,

* The argument contained in these Verses is this : as thou dost not know what becomes of thy relatives when they die, thou canst not help them then. It seems plain, therefore, that when thou shalt die, thy relatives will not be able to do thee any good. Hence, thou gainest nothing by bestowing thy thoughts on thy relatives, forgetting thy own great concern, *viz.*, the acquisition of Emancipation. Similarly, when thy relatives live and suffer irrespective of thy life or death, and thou too must enjoy or endure irrespective of their existence or efforts, it is meet that thou shouldst not be forgetful of thy own highest good by busying thyself with the concerns of thy relatives.—T.

as the result of careful reflection, regards his repeated births to be only due to sexual congress with women, is held to be freed from attachments.[28] That man is certainly emancipate who knows truly the nature of the birth, the destruction, and the exertion (or acts) of living creatures.[29] That man becomes certainly freed who regards (as worthy of his acceptance) only a handful of corn, for the support of life, from amidst millions upon millions of carts loaded with grain, and who disregards the difference between a shed of bamboo and reeds and a palatial mansion.*[30] That man becomes certainly freed who beholds the world to be afflicted by death and disease and famine.†[31] Indeed, one who beholds the world to be such succeeds in becoming contented; while one who fails to behold the world in such a light, meets with destruction. That man who is contented with only a little, is regarded as freed.[32] That man who beholds the world to consist of eaters and edibles (and himself as different from both), and who is never touched by pleasure and pain which are born of illusion, is regarded as emancipate.[33] That man who regards a soft bed on a fine bedstead and the hard soil as equal, and who regards good *çāli* rice and hard thick rice as equal, is emancipate.[34] That man who regards linen and cloth made of grass as equal, and in whose estimation cloth of silk and barks of trees are the same, and who sees no difference between clean sheepskin and unclean leather, is emancipate.[35] That man who looks upon this world as the result of the combination of the five primal essences, and who behaves himself in this, world, keeping this notion foremost, is emancipate.[36] That man who regards pleasure and pain as equal, and gain and loss as on a par, in whose estimation victory and defeat differ not,

---

* The sense is that one who takes only a handful of corn for the support of life even when millions upon millions of carts loaded with corn await his acceptance, is certainly to be regarded as freed. Literally rendered, the second line is—'who beholds a shed of bamboo or reeds in a palace,' meaning, of course, as put above, 'one who sees no difference between the two.'—T.

† 'Avritti' is want of the means of sustaining life; hence, scarcity or famine.—T.

to whom like and dislike are the same, and who is unchanged under fear and anxiety, is wholly emancipate.[37] That man who regards his body which has so many inperfections, to be only a mass of blood, urine and excreta, as also of disorders and diseases, is emancipate.[38] That man becomes emancipated who always recollects that this body, when overtaken by decrepitude, becomes assailed by wrinkles and white hairs and leanness and paleness of complexion and a bending of the form.[39] That man who recollects his body to be liable to loss of virility, and weakness of sight, and deafness, and loss of strength, is emancipate.[40] That man who knows that the very Rishis, the deities, and the Asuras are beings that have to depart from their respective spheres to other regions, is emancipate.[41] That man who knows that thousands of kings possessed of even great offence and power have departed from this Earth, succeeds in becoming emancipate.[42] That man who knows that in this world the acquisition of objects is always difficult, that pain is abundant, and that the maintenance of relatives is ever attended with pain, becomes emancipate.*[43] Beholding the abundant faults of children and of other men, who is there that would not adore Emancipation ?[44] That man who, awakened by the scriptures and the experience of the world, beholds every human concern in this world to be unsubstantial, becomes emancipate.[45] Bearing in mind these words of mine, do thou conduct thyself like one that has become emancipated, whether it is a life of domesticity that thou wouldst lead or pursue Emancipation without suffering thy understanding to be confounded.†[46]—Hearing these words of his with attention, Sagara, that lord of Earth, acquired those virtues which

---

* The sense is that as the maintenance of wives and children is painful, one should withdraw from the world and retire into solitude.—T.

† The sense seems to be this. Is it a life of domesticity that thou wouldst lead ? There is no harm in thy doing this, provided thou behavest in the way pointed out. Is it Emancipation that thou wouldst pursue (in the usual way, *i. e.*, by retiring into solitude and betaking thyself to Sannyāsa ? Thou mayst then behave in the way pointed out, and, indeed, that is the way of Sannyāsa which leads to Emancipation.—T.

are productive of Emancipation and continued, with their aid, to rule his subjects.' "[47]

SECTION CCXC.

"Yudhishthira said,—'This curiosity, O sire, is always dwelling in my mind. O grandsire of the Kurus, I desire to hear everything about it from thee![1] Why was the celestial Rishi, the high-souled Uçanas, called also Kavi, engaged in doing what was agreeable to the Asuras and disagreeable to the deities?[2] Why was he engaged in diminishing the energy of the deities? Why were the Dānavas always engaged in hostilities with the foremost of the deities?[3] Possessed of the splendour of an immortal, for what reason did Uçanas obtain the name of Cukra? How also did he acquire such superior excellence? Tell me all about these things.[4] Though possessed of great energy, why does he not succeed in travelling to the centre of the firmament? I desire, O grandsire, to learn everything about all these matters!'*[5]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O king, with attention to all this as it occurred truly. O sinless one, I shall narrate these matters to thee as I have heard and understood them.[6] Of firm vows and honored by all, Uçanas, that descendant of Bhrigu's race, became engaged in doing what was disagreeable to the deities for an adequate cause.†[7] The royal Kuvera, the chief of the Yakshas and the Rakshas, is the lord of the treasury of Indra, that master of the universe.‡[8] The great ascetic Uçanas, crowned with Yoga-success, entered the person of Kuvera, and depriving the lord of treasures of his liberty by means of

---

* The planet Venus is supposed to be the sage Uçanas or Cukra.—T.

† The Commentator explains the allusion by saying that formerly Vishnu, induced by the deities, used his discus for striking off the head of Ucanas' mother. Hence the wrath of Uçanas against the deities and his desire to succour their foes, the Dānavas.—T.

‡ The construction of this Verse is very difficult. The order of the words is,—Indrotha jagatah prabhuh. Dhanada &c., tasya koçasya prabhavishnuh.—T.

Yoga, robbed him of all his wealth.*[9] Seeing his wealth taken away from him; the lord of treasures became highly displeased. Filled with anxiety, and his wrath also being excited, he went to that foremost of gods, *viz.*, Mahādeva.[10] Kuvera represented the matter unto Çiva of immeasurable energy, that first of gods, fierce and amiable, and possessed of various forms.[11] And he said,—Uçanas, having spiritualised himself by Yoga, entered my form and depriving myself of liberty, has taken away all my wealth. Having by Yoga entered my body he has again left it.[12]—Hearing these words, Maheçwara of supreme Yoga-powers became filled with rage. His eyes, O king, became blood-red, and taking up his lance he waited (ready to strike down Uçanas).[13] Indeed, having taken up that foremost of weapons, the great god began to say,—Where is he? Where is he?—Meanwhile, Uçanas, having ascertained the purpose of Mahādeva (through Yoga-power) from a distance, waited in silence.[14] Indeed, having ascertained the fact of the wrath of the high-souled Maheçwara of superior Yoga-power, the puissant Uçanas began to reflect as to whether he should go to Maheçwara or fly away or remain where he was.[15] Thinking, with the aid of his severe penances, of the high-souled Mahādeva, Uçanas of soul crowned with Yoga-success, placed himself on the point of Mahādeva's lance.[16] The bow-armed Rudra, understanding that Uçanas, whose penances had become successful and who had converted himself into the form of pure Knowledge, was staying at the point of his lance (and finding that he was unable to hurl the lance at one who was upon it), bent that weapon with his hand.[17] When the fierce-armed and puissant Mahādeva of immeasurable energy had thus bent his lance (into the form of a bow), that weapon came to be called from that time by the name of *Pināka.*†[18] The lord of Umā, beholding

---

* Persons crowned with Yoga-success are competent to enter the bodies of others and deprive the latter of the power of will. Indeed, the belief is that the latter then become mere automata incapable of acting in any other way except as directed by the enlivening possessor.—T.

† The etymology of 'Pināka' is 'pāninā anāmayat.' The initial and

Bhārgava thus brought upon the palm of his hand, opened his mouth. The chief of the gods then threw Bhārgava into his mouth and swallowed him at once.[19] The puissant and high-souled Uçanas of Bhrigu's race, entering the stomach of Maheçwara, began to wander there.'[20]

"Yudhishthira said,—'How, O king, could Uçanas succeed in wandering within the stomach of that foremost of superior intelligence? What also did that illustrious god do while the Brāhmana was within his stomach?'*[21]

"Bhishma said,—'In days of yore, (having swallowed up Uçanas), Mahādeva of severe vows entered the waters and remained there like an immovable stake of wood, O king, for millions of years (engaged in Yoga-meditation).[22] His Yoga penances of the austerest type having been over, he rose from the mighty lake. Then that primeval god of the gods, viz., the eternal Brahman, approached him,[23] and enquired after the progress of his penances and after his welfare. The deity having the bull for his emblem answered, saying,—My penances have been well practised.[24]—Of inconceivable soul, possessed of great intelligence, and ever devoted to the religion of truth, Cankara saw that Uçanas within his stomach had become greater in consequence of those penances of his.†[25] That foremost of Yogins, (*viz.*, Uçanas,) rich with that wealth of penances and the wealth (he had appropriated from Kuvera), shone brightly in the three worlds, endued with great energy.‡[26] After this, Mahādeva armed with Pināka, that soul of Yoga, once more betook himself to Yoga-meditation. Uçanas, however, filled with anxiety, began to wander within the stomach of the great god.[27] The great ascetic began

---

final letter of 'pāni' (pi) and the middle letter of 'anāmayat' (nā), with the suffix 'ka' make 'Pināka.'—T.

* The last half of the last line may be taken as applying to Uçanas.—T

† The 'vriddhim' that Mahādeva saw could not be his own, for the greatest cannot be greater. The Commentator, therefore, is right in holding that 'vriddhim' refers to the greatness of Uçanas within Mahādeva's stomach.—T.

‡ The 'sa' refers to Uçanas and not to Mahādeva, as the Commentator rightly points out.—T.

to hymn the praises of the god from where he was, desirous of finding an outlet for escape. Rudra, however, having stopped all his outlets, prevented him from coming out.[28] The great ascetic Uçanas, however, O chastiser of foes, from within Mahādeva's stomach repeatedly addressed the god, saying,—Show me thy kindness![29]—Unto him Mahādeva said, —Go out through my urethra!—He had stopped up all other outlets of his body.[30] Confined on everyside and unable to find out the outlet indicated, the ascetic began to wander hither and thither, burning all the while with Mahādeva's energy.[31] At last he found the outlet and issued through it. In consequence of this fact he came to be called by the name of *Çukra*, and it is in consequence of that fact he also became unable to attain (in course of his wanderings) the central point of the firmament.[32] Beholding him come out of his stomach and shining brightly with energy, Bhava, filled with anger, stood with lance uplifted in his hand.[33] The goddess Umā then interposed and forbade the angry lord of all creatures, viz., her spouse, to slay the Brāhmana. And in consequence of Umā's having thus prevented her lord from accomplishing his purpose, the ascetic Ucanas (from that day) became the son of the goddess.[34]

" 'The goddess said,—This Brāhmana no longer deserves to be slain by thee. He has become my son. O god, one who comes out of thy stomach does not deserve slaughter at thy hands![35]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Pacified by these words of his spouse, Bhava smiled and said repeatedly these words, O king, viz.,—Let this one go withersoever he likes![36]—Bowing unto the boon-giving Mahādeva and to also his spouse the goddess Umā, the great ascetic Uçanas, endued with superior intelligence, proceeded to the place he chose.[37] I have thus narrated to thee, O chief of the Bharatas, the story of the high-souled Bhārgava about which thou hadst asked me.' "[38]

Section CCXCI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O thou of mighty arms, tell me, after this, what is beneficial for us. O grandsire, I am never satiated with thy words which seem to me like Amrita.[1] What are those good acts, O best of men, by accomplishing which a man succeeds in obtaining what is for his highest benefit both here and hereafter, O giver of boons!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection I shall narrate to thee what the celebrated king Janaka had enquired, in days of yore, of the high-souled Parāçara.[3]—What is beneficial for all creatures both in this world and the next? Do thou tell me what should be known by all in this connection![4]—Thus questioned, Parāçara, possessed of great ascetic merit and conversant with the ordinances of every religion,* said these words, desirous of favouring the king.[5]

" 'Parāçara said,—Righteousness earned by acts is of supreme benefit both in this world and the next. The sages of old have said that there is nothing higher than Righteousness.[6] By accomplishing the duties of righteousness a man becomes honored in heaven. The Righteousness, again, of embodied creatures, O best of kings, consists in the ordinances (laid down in the scriptures) on the subject of acts.† All good men belonging to the several modes of life, establishing their faith on that righteousness, accomplish their respective duties.‡[7] Four methods of living, O child, have been ordained in this world. (Those four methods are the acceptance of gifts for Brāhmanas; the realisation of taxes for Kshatriyas; agriculture for Vaiçyas; and service of the

---

* *I. e.*, the religions of all the orders and all the modes of life.—T.

† The scriptural injunctions are that one should sacrifice in honor of the gods, pour libations on the sacred fire, make gifts, &c. In these exists Righteousness.—T.

‡ The grammar of the third line is a little involved. 'Tasmin' refers to 'Dharme'. Supply 'nishthāvantah' after 'tasmin'. The sense, of course, is that believing in the efficacy of righteousness, people of all modes of life accomplish the duties of their respective modes.—T.

three other classes for the Cudras). Wherever men live the means of support come to them of themselves.[8] Accomplishing by various ways acts that are virtuous or sinful (for the purpose of earning their means of support), living creatures, when dissolved into their five constituent elements, attain to diverse ends.*[9] As vessels of white brass, when steeped in liquified gold or silver, catch the hue of these metals, even so a living creature, who is completly dependant upon the acts of his past lives, takes his color from the character of those acts.[10] Nothing can sprout forth without a seed. No one can obtain happiness without having accomplished acts capable of leading to happiness. When one's body is dissolved away (into its constituent elements), one succeeds in attaining to happiness only in consequence of the good acts of previous lives.[11] The sceptic argues, O child, saying,—I do not behold that anything in this world is the result of destiny or the virtuous and sinful acts of past lives. Inference cannot establish the existence or operation of destiny.† The deities, the Gandharvas and the Dānavas have become what they are in consequence of their own nature (and not of their acts of past lives).[12] People never recollect in their next lives the acts done by them in previous ones. For explaining the acquisition of fruits in any particular life people seldom name the four kinds of acts alleged to have been accomplished in past lives.‡[13] The declarations having the Vedas for

---

* The sinful become intermediate animals. The virtuous attain to heaven. They that are both virtuous and sinful attain to the status of humanity, They that acquire Knowledge become Emancipate.--T.

† Destiny here means the result of the acts of past lives.—T.

‡ The reading I adopt is 'jātikritam karma &c.' Hence, this Verse also represents the arguments of the sceptic or the Chārvākas. The four kinds of acts are Nitya, Naimittika, Kāmya, and Nishiddhya. If, however, for 'jātikritam karma &c.,' the reading 'yāntyakritam karma' be adopted, the meaning would be—'In one's next life one does not meet with fruits that are not the results of one's acts of past life. This must be so, for the opposite opinion would imply the destruction of acts and their consequences. Then again such an opinion would conflict with the received opinion of mankind, for men, when they obtain the fruits of

their authority have been made for regulating the conduct of men in this world, and for tranquillizing the minds of men. These (the sceptic says), O child, cannot represent the utterances of men possessed of true wisdom.[14] This opinion is wrong. In reality, one obtains the fruits of whatever among the four kinds of acts one does with the eye, the mind, the tongue, and muscles.*[15] As the fruit of his acts, O king, a person sometimes obtains happiness wholly, sometimes misery in the same way, and sometimes happiness and misery blended together. Whether righteous or sinful, acts are never destroyed (except by enjoyment or endurance of their fruits).†[16] Sometimes, O child, the happiness due to good acts remains concealed and covered in such a way that it does not display itself in the case of the person who is sinking in life's ocean till his sorrows disappear.[17] After sorrow has been exhausted (by endurance), one begins to enjoy (the fruits of) one's good acts. And know, O king, that upon the exhaustion of the fruits of good acts, those of sinful acts begin to manifest themselves.[18] Self-restraint, forgiveness, patience, energy, contentment, truthfulness of speech, modesty, abstention from injury, freedom from the evil practices called *vyasana*, and cleverness,—these are

---

any act, always recollect the four kinds of acts of a past life for explaining the accession of those fruits.—T.

* Verses 12 to 14 represent the theory of the sceptic, and I have rendered them as such. Only by reading Verse 13 as 'yāntyakritam karma &c.,' the Commentator points out that it may be taken as an observation of Parāçara himself. As regards Verse 15, it represents the *ipse dixit* of the speaker. He does not think that the sceptic is at all entitled to a reply. It is scarcely necessary to say that the Burdwan translator makes a thorough mess of these Verses. K. P. Singha gives the substance correctly.—T.

† The Commentator shows that this is an answer to the sceptic's averment about Nature being the cause of everything. Fire is hot by nature, therefore, it does not become hot at one time, cold at another, and lukewarm at another time. One becomes either wholly happy or wholly unhappy or wholly happy and unhappy at the same time. Man's nature sould not be such. The difference of state is produced by difference of causes.—T.

productive of happiness.[19] No creature is eternally subject to the fruits of his good or bad acts. The man possessed of wisdom should always strive to collect and fix his mind.[20] One never has to enjoy or endure the good and bad acts of another. Indeed, one enjoys and endures the fruits of only those acts that one does oneself.[21] The person that casts off both happiness and misery walks along a particular path, (the path, *viz.*, of knowledge). Those men, however, O king, who suffer themselves to be attached to all worldly objects, tread along a path that is entirely different.[22] A person should not himself do that act which, if done by another, would call down his censure. Indeed, by doing an act that one censures in others, one incurs ridicule.[23] A Kshatriya bereft of courage, a Brāhmana that takes every kind of food, a Vaiçya unendued with exertion (in respect of agriculture and other money-making pursuits), a Cudra that is idle (and, therefore, averse to labour), a learned person without good behaviour, one of high birth but destitute of righteous conduct, a Brāhmana fallen away from truth, a woman that is unchaste and wicked,[24] a Yogin endued with attachments, one that cooks food for one's own self, an ignorant person employed in making a discourse, a kingdom without a king, and a king that cherishes no affection for his subjects and who is destitute of Yoga,—these all, O king, are deserving of pity !—' "*[25]

---

* A Brāhmana is precluded from eating many things. Many things again that he is competent to eat, he cannot eat on all days of the year. In fact, there are many rules for regulating the fare of a Brāhmana. To this day, an orthodox Brāhmana abstains from many kinds of food. A Brāhmana, therefore, who is unscrupulous in respect of his food, is no Brāhmana and deserves to be pitied. Similarly, a man who cooks food for himself is an object of pity. Raw food, such as fruits, &c., one may take without offering a share thereof to guests and others. But cooked food can never be taken without a share thereof being given to others. 'Yaticha Brahmachāricha pakkānnaswāminavubhau', hence he that takes cooked food without giving a share to these is said to eat 'Brahmaswam' or that which belongs to a Brāhmana.—T.

Section CCXCII.

"'Parāçara said,—That man who, having obtained this car, viz., his body endued with mind, goes on, curbing with the reins of knowledge the steeds represented by the objects of the senses, should certainly be regarded as possessed of intelligence.[1] The homage (in the form of devotion to and concentrated meditation on the Supreme) by a person whose mind is dependant on itself and who has cast off the means of livelihood, is worthy of high praise,—that homage, namely, O regenerate one, which is the result of instructions received from one who has succeeded in transcending acts but not obtained from the mutual discussion of men in the same state of progress.*[2] Having obtained the allotted period of life, O king, with such difficulty, one should not diminish it (by indulgence of the senses). On the other hand, man should always exert, by righteous acts, for his gradual advancement.†[3] Among the six different colors that Jiva attains at different periods of his existence, he who falls away from a superior color deserves obloquy and censure. Hence, one that has attained to the result of good acts should conduct oneself in such a way as to avoid all acts stained by the quality of

---

* This is a very abstruse Verse. The grammatical construction of the first line is 'açritena manasā vrittihinasya sevā çasyate'. 'Açritena' is 'nirālamvanena'. By 'sevā' is meant homage paid to the Supreme in the form of devotion and concentrated meditation. It implies, of course, a thorough reliance on God. 'Vrittihina' is one who has cast off the means of livelihood, implying one who abstains from worldly objects. In the second line, 'dwija' is a vocative. 'Nirvrittā' is 'nishpannā', qualifying 'sevā'. 'Atihastāt' is 'from one who has transcended the use of the hand, *i. e.*, the necessity of acts. 'Atihastānirvrittā' means 'obtained from a competent preceptor'. In brief, what is stated here is that such 'sevā' should be learnt from competent preceptors and not by discussion among persons in the stage of spiritual progress.—T.

† The object of this Verse, the Commentator points out, is to show the desirability of practising that 'sevā' soon or without loss of time.—T.

Rajas.*[4] Man attains to a superior color by righteous acts. Unable to acquire a superior hue, for such acquisition is extremely difficult, a person, by doing sinful acts only slays himself (by sinking into hell and falling down into an inferior color).[5] All sinful acts that are committed unconsciously or in ignorance are destroyed by penances. A sinful act, however, that is committed knowingly, produces much sorrow.[6] Hence, one should never commit sinful acts which have for their fruit only sorrow.[7] The man of intelligence would never do an act that is sinful in character even if it lead to the greatest advantage, just as a person that is pure would never touch a Chāndāla.†[8] How miserable is the fruit I see of sinful acts! Through sin the very vision of the sinner becomes perverse, and he confounds his body and its unstable accompaniments with the Soul!‡[9] That foolish man who does not succeed in betaking himself to Renunciation in this world becomes afflicted with great grief when he departs to the next world.$[10] An uncolored cloth, when dirty, can be cleaned, but not a piece of cloth that is dyed with black; even so, O king, listen to me with care, is it the case with sin.[11] That man who, having knowingly committed sin, acts righteously for expiating that sin, has to enjoy and endure the fruits of his good and bad acts separately.¶[12] The utterers of Brahma maintain, under the authority of what has

---

* In the discourse of Sanatkumāra to Vritra, these six colors have been mentioned, and the nature of the acts by which one attains to a superior color or falls down from a superior to an inferior one. *Vide* Sec. 280, ante.—T.

† A particular kind of Chāndāla is called 'kuçalin'.—T.

‡ 'Pratyāpannasya' is 'viparita-drishteh'. 'Nātmā' is 'dehādih' 'Tatah' is 'pāpāddhetoh'. 'Virochate' is 'viçeshena ātmatwena rochate.—T.

$ 'Pratyāpattih' is 'Vairāgyam' or Renunciation. As regards 'Prasthitasya' it may be taken either as implying one that is dead or one that has betaken himself to Yoga. In the latter case, the Verse would mean that that man who betakes himself to Yoga without adopting Renunciation meets with much sorrow.—T.

¶ The object of this Verse is to show that conscious sin can never be destroyed by expiation. The only means by which sin can be destroyed is by enduring its fruits.—T.

been laid down in the Vedas, that all acts of injury committed in ignorance are cancelled by acts of righteousness.[13] A sin, however, that is committed consciously is never cancelled by righteousness. Thus say the regenerate utterers of Brahma who are conversant with the scriptures of Brahman.[14] As regards myself, my view is that whatever acts are done, be they righteous or sinful, be they done knowingly or otherwise, remain (and are never destroyed unless their fruits are enjoyed or endured).*[15] Whatever acts are done by the mind with full deliberation, produce, according to their grossness or subtility, fruits that are gross or subtile.†[16] Those acts, however, O thou of righteous soul, which are fraught with great injury, if done in ignorance, do without fail produce consequences and even consequences that lead to hell, with this difference that those consequences are disproportionate in point of gravity to the acts that produce them.‡[17] As to those acts (of a doubtful or unrighteous nature) that may be done by the deities or ascetics of reputation, a righteous man should never do their like or, informed of them, should never censure them.$[18] That man who, reflecting with his mind,

---

* The Burdwan translator makes utter nonsense of this Verse. 'Guna-yuktam' is explained by the Commentator as equivalent to 'punyakarma'. 'Prakāçam' is equivalent to 'buddhipurvakam prakāçya or jnātwā'. It is formed by the suffix 'namul'.—T.

† 'Yathātatham' is 'sthula-sukshma-tāratamyena.' The sense is that all acts done knowingly produce fruits according to their nature. If gross, the fruits produced are gross; if subtile, the fruits produced are subtile.—T.

‡ The speaker's opinion is that all acts are productive of fruits. If good, the fruits are good. If bad, the fruits are bad. There is this difference, however, between acts done knowingly and those done in ignorance: the former produce commensurate fruits, *i. e.*, if gross, their fruits are gross; if subtile, the fruits are subtile; but the latter produce fruits that are not so, so that even if heinous, the fruits do not involve a large but only a small measure of misery. There is no other difference between the two kinds of acts.—T.

$ The object of this Verse is to show that such acts form the exception and they are kept out of my sight in this discourse on acts. The Rishi Viçwāmitra caused the death of the hundred sons of Vaçishtha, and yet he had not to go to hell for it.—T.

O king, and ascertaining his own ability, accomplishes righteous acts, certainly obtains what is for his benefit.[19] Water poured into an unbaked vessel gradually becomes less and less and finally escapes altogether. If kept, however, in a baked vessel, it remains without its quantity being diminished. After the same manner, acts done without reflection with the aid of the understanding do not become beneficial; while acts done with judgment remain with undiminished excellence and yield happiness as their result.[20] If into a vessel containing water other water be poured, the water that was originally there increases in quantity; even so all acts done with judgment, be they equitable or otherwise, only add to one's stock of righteousness.[21-22] A king should subjugate his foes and all who seek to assert their superiority, and he should properly rule and protect his subjects. One should ignite one's sacred fires and pour libations on them in diverse sacrifices, and retiring into the woods in either one's middle or old age, should live there (practising the duties of the two last modes of life).[23] Endued with self-restraint, and possessed of righteous behaviour, one should look upon all creatures as on one's ownself. One should again reverence one's superiors. By the practice of truth and of good conduct, O king, one is sure to obtain happiness.—' "[24]

Section CCXCIII.

" 'Parāçara said,—Nobody in this world does good to another. Nobody is seen to make gifts to others. All persons are seen to act for their own selves.[1] People are seen to cast off their very parents and their uterine brothers when these cease to be affectionate. What need be said then of relatives of other degrees ?[2]* Gifts to a distinguished person and acceptance of the gifts made by a distinguished person

---

* The sense seems to be that when even such near relatives are cast off if found to be wanting in affection, the fact cannot be gainsaid that people never do good to others except when they hope to benefit themselves by such acts.—T.

both lead to equal merit. Of these two acts, however, the making of a gift is superior to the acceptance of a gift.*[3] That wealth which is acquired by proper means and increased also by proper means, should be protected with care for the sake of acquiring virtue. This is an accepted truth.[4] One desirous of acquiring righteousness should never earn wealth by means involving injury to others. One should accomplish one's acts according to one's power, without zealously pursuing wealth.[5] By giving water, whether cold or heated by fire, with a devoted mind, unto a (thirsty) guest, according to the best of one's power, one earns the merit that attaches to the act of giving food to a hungry man.[6] The high-souled Rantideva obtained success in all the worlds by worshipping the ascetics with offerings of only roots and fruits and leaves.[7] The royal son of Civi also won the highest regions of felicity by having gratified Surya along with his companion with offerings of the same kind.[8] All men, by taking birth, incur debts to gods, guests, servants, Pitris, and their own selves. Every one should, therefore, do his best for freeing himself from those debts.[9] One frees oneself from one's debt to the great Rishis by studying the Vedas. One pays off one's debts to the gods by performing sacrifices. By performing the rites of the Crāddha one is freed from one's debts to the Pitris. One pays off one's debt to one's fellow men by doing good offices to them.[10] One pays off the debts one owes to one's own self by listening to Vedic recitations and reflecting on their import, by eating the remnants of sacrifices, and by supporting one's body. One should duly discharge all the acts, from the beginning, that one owes to one's servants.[11] Though destitute of wealth, men are seen to attain to success by great exertions.† Munis by duly adoring the deities, and by duly pouring libations of clarified butter on the sacred fire,

---

* What is intended to be said is that the acceptance of a gift from a superior person is equal in point of merit to a gift made by a poor person. A wealthy man, by making a gift, earns greater merit than by accepting a gift.—T.

† *I. e.*, by Dhyāna and Dhāranā.—T.

have been seen to attain to ascetic success.[12] Richika's son became the son of Viçwāmitra. By adoring the deities who have shares in sacrificial offerings, with Richs, (he attained to success in after life).[13] Uçanas became Cukra by having gratified the god of gods. Indeed, by hymning the praises of the goddess (Umā), he sports in the firmament, endued with great splendour.*[14] Then, again, Asita and Devala, and Nārada and Parvata, and Kākshivat, and Jamadagni's son Rāma, and Tāndya possessed of cleansed soul,[15] and Vaçishtha, and Jamadagni, and Viçwāmitra, and Atri, and Bharadwāja, and Hariçmaçru, and Kundadhāra, and Crutāçravas,[16] —these great Rishis, by adoring Vishnu with concentrated minds with the aid of Richs, and by penances, succeeded in attaining to success through the grace of that great deity endued with intelligence.[17] Many undeserving men, by adoring that good deity, obtained great distinction. One should not seek for advancement by achieving any wicked or censurable act.[18] That wealth which is earned by righteous ways is true wealth. Fie on that wealth, however, which is earned by unrighteous means. Righteousness is eternal. It should never, in this world, be abandoned from desire of wealth.[19] That righteous-souled person who keeps his sacred fire and offers his daily adorations to the deities is regarded as the foremost of righteous persons. All the Vedas, O foremost of kings, are established on the three sacred fires (called Dakshina, Gārhapatya, and Āhavaniya).[20] That Brāhmana is said to possess the sacred fire whose acts exist in their entirety. It is better to at once abandon the sacred fire than to keep it, abstaining the while from acts.[21] The sacred fire, the mother, the father who has begotten, and the preceptor, O tiger among men, should all be duly waited upon and served with humility.[22] That man who, casting off all feelings of pride, humbly waits upon and serves them that are venerable for age, who is possessed of learning and destitute of lust, who looketh upon all creatures with an eye of love, who has

* This has reference to Uçanas's attaining to the status of a planet (Venus) in the firmament.—T.

no wealth, who is righteous in his acts, and who is destitute of the desire of inflicting any kind of harm (upon any one), that truly respectable man is worshipped in this world by those that are good and pious.*—' "[23]

Section CCXCIV.

" 'Parāçara said,—The lowest order, it is proper, should derive their sustenance from the three other orders. Such service, rendered with affection and reverence, makes them righteous.†[1] If the ancestors of any Cudra were not engaged in service, he should not still engage himself in any other occupation (than service). Truly, he should apply himself to service as his occupation.[2] In my opinion, it is proper for them to associate, under all circumstances, with good men devoted to righteousness, but never with those that are wicked.[3] As in the Eastern hills, jewels and metals blaze with greater splendour in consequenee of their adjacence to the Sun, even so the lowest order blazes with splendour in consequence of their association with the good.[4] A piece of white cloth assumes that hue with which it is dyed. Even such is the case with Cudras.‡[5] Hence also, one should attach oneself to all good qualities but never to qualities that are evil. The life of human beings in this world is fleeting and transitory.[6] That wise man who, in happiness as also in misery, achieves only what is good, is regarded as a true observer of the scriptures.[7] That man who is endued with intelligence would never do an act which is dissociated from virtue, however high may the advantages be of that act. Indeed, such an act is not regarded as truly beneficial.[8] That lawless king who, snatching thousands of kine from their lawful owners, gives them away (unto deserv-

---

* 'Nadāntah' is one word. It means 'Hinsā-çunyah.' 'Dānti cchinatti iti dānta.' Its reverse is 'Nadāntah.'—T.

† 'Nirddishtā' refers to 'Sevā.'—T.

‡ *I. e.*, they take the hues of the society they keep. Hence, it is very desirable for them to live with the good.—T.

ing persons), acquires no fruit (from that act of giving) beyond an empty sound (expressive of the act he does). On the other hand, he incurs the sin of theft.[9] The Self-born at first created the Being called Dhātri held in universal respect. Dhātri created a son who was engaged in upholding all the worlds.*[10] Worshipping that deity, the Vaiçya employs himself, for the means of his support, in agriculture and the rearing of cattle. The Kshatriyas should employ themselves in the task of protecting all the other classes. The Brāhmanas should only enjoy.[11] As regards the Cudras, they should engage themselves in the task of humbly and honestly collecting together the articles that are to be offered in sacrifices, and in cleaning altars and other places where sacrifices are to be performed. If each order acts in this way, righteousness would not suffer any diminution.[12] If righteousness is preserved in its entirety, all creatures inhabiting the Earth would be happy. Beholding the happiness of all creatures on Earth, the deities in heaven become filled with gladness.[13] Hence, that king who, agreeably to the duties laid down for his order, protects the other classes, becomes worthy of respect. Similarly, the Brāhmana that is employed in studying the scriptures, the Vaiçya that is engaged in earning wealth,[14] and the Cudra that is always engaged in serving the three other classes with concentrated attention, become objects of respect. By conducting themselves in other ways, O chief of men, each order is said to fall away from virtue.[15] Keeping aside gifts by thousands, even twenty *cowries* that one may give painfully, having earned them righteously, will be productive of the great benefit.[16] Those persons, O king, who make gifts unto Brāhmanas after reverencing them duly, reap excellent fruits commensurate with those gifts.[17] That gift is highly prized which the donor makes after seeking out the donee and honoring him properly. That gift is middling which the donor makes upon solicitation.[18] That gift, however, which is made contemptously and without any reverence, is said to be very inferior

---

* This son of Dhātri is the god of the clouds.—T.

(in point of merit). Even thus is what those utterers of the truth, *viz.*, the sages, say.[19] While sinking in this ocean of life, man should always seek to cross that ocean by various means. Indeed, he should so exert himself that he might be freed from the bonds of this world.[20] The Brāhmana shines by self-restraint; the Kshatriya by victory; the Vaiçya by wealth; while the Cudra always shines in glory through cleverness in serving (the three other orders).—' "[21]

SECTION CCXCV.

" 'Parāçara said,—In the Brāhmana, wealth acquired by acceptance of gifts, in the Kshatriya that won by victory in battle, in the Vaiçya that obtained by following the duties laid down for his order, and in the Cudra that earned by serving the three other orders,[1] however small its measure, is worthy of praise, and spent for the acquisition of virtue is productive of great benefits. The Cudra is said to be the constant servitor of the three other classes.[2] If the Brāhmana, pressed for a living, betakes himself to the duties of either the Kshatriya or the Vaiçya, he does not fall off from righteousness. When, however, the Brāhmana betakes himself to the duties of the lowest order, then does he certainly fall off.[3] When the Cudra is unable to obtain his living by service of the three other orders, then trade, rearing of cattle, and the practice of the mechanical arts are lawful for him to follow.[4] Appearance on the boards of a theatre and disguising oneself in various forms, exhibition of puppets, the sale of spirits and meat, and trading in iron and leather,[5] should never be taken up for purposes of a living by one who had never before been engaged in those professions every one of which is regarded as censurable in the world. It hath been heard by us that if one engaged in them can abandon them, one then acquires great merit.[6] When one that has become successful in life behaves sinfully in consequence of one's mind being filled with arrogance, one's acts under such circumstances can never pass for authority.[7] It is heard in the Purānas that formerly mankind were

self-restrained, that they held righteousness in great esteem; that the practices they followed for livelihood were all consistent with propriety and the injunctions laid down in the scriptures; and that the only punishment that was required for chastising them when they went wrong was the crying of fie on them.*[8] At the time of which we speak, O king, Righteousness, and nothing else, was much applauded among men. Having achieved great progress in righteousness, men in those days worshipped only all good qualities that they saw.[9] The *Asuras*, however, O child, could not bear that righteousness which prevailed in the world. Multiplying (in both number and energy), the Asuras (in the form of Lust and Wrath) entered the bodies of men.[10] Then was pride generated in men that is so destructive of righteousness. From pride arose arrogance, and from arrogance arose wrath.[11] When men thus became overwhelmed with wrath, conduct implying modesty and shame disappeared from them, and then they were overcome by heedlessness.[12] Afflicted by heedlessness, they could no longer see as before, and as the consequence thereof they began to oppress one another and thereby acquire wealth without any compunction.[13] When men became such, the punishment of only crying fie on offenders failed to be of any effect. Men, showing no reverence for either the gods or Brāhmanas, began to indulge their senses to their fill.†[14] At that time the deities repaired to that foremost of gods, *viz.*, Civa, possessed of patience, of multiform aspect, and endued with the foremost of attributes,

---

* The Burdwan translator gives a most ridiculous version of the expression 'Dhigdandaçāsanāh.' Unable to catch the sense, which however is certainly very plain, he actually interprets the words to mean 'living under the sway of *king Dhigdanda*. K. P. Singha gives the correct meaning.—T.

† In this Verse also, the Burdwan translator takes 'Dhigdanda' as the name of a king. He gives an equally ridiculous version of the second line. 'Abhyagachchan' is explained by the Commentator as having 'vishayān' understood after it. The sense is that they began to enjoy all objects of the senses to an excess. Both 'Devān' and 'Brāhmanān' are accusatives governed by 'Avamanya.' K. P. Singha translates both the lines correctly.—T.

and sought his protection.[15] The deities imparted unto him their conjoined energy, and thereupon the great god, with a single shaft, felled on the Earth those three Asuras, *viz.*, Desire, Wrath, and Cupidity, who were staying in the firmament, along with their very habitations.*[16] The fierce chief of those Asuras, possessed of fierce prowess, who had struck the Devas with terror, was also slain by Mahādeva armed with the lance.†[17] When this chief of the Asuras was slain, men once more obtained their proper natures, and once more began to study the Vedas and the other scriptures as in former times.[18] Then the seven ancient Rishis came forward and installed Vāsava as the chief of the gods and the ruler of heaven. And they took upon themselves the task of holding the rod of chastisement over mankind.[19] After the seven Rishis came king Viprithu (to rule mankind), and many other kings, all belonging to the Kshatriya order for separately ruling separate groups of human beings.[20] (When Mahādeva dispelled all evil passions from the minds of creatures) there were, in those ancient times, certain elderly men from whose minds all wicked feelings did not fly away.[21] Hence, in consequence of that wicked state of their minds and of those incidents that were connected with it, there appeared many kings of terrible prowess who began to indulge in only such acts as were fit for Asuras.[22] Those human beings that are exceedingly foolish adhere to those wicked acts, establish them as authorities, and follow them in practice to this day.‡[23] For this reason, O king, I say

---

* This Verse is taken as a metaphorical statement. The three Asuras are, of course, Kāma, Krodha, and Lobha. 'Gaganagāh' (staying in the firmament) is interpreted as 'existing in Māyā.' 'Sapurāh' as 'with their gross, subtile, and potential forms;' 'felled on the Earth' is explained as 'merged into the pure chit.' The whole is taken to imply a spiritual destruction of all the evil passions and a restoration of man to his original state of purity.—T.

† This chief of the Asura passions was *Mahāmoha* or great Heedlessness. The word *Devas* here is taken to mean the senses. Of course, if Verse 16 be not taken metaphorically, then may *Devas* be taken in its ordinary sense of the deities.—T.

‡ The genius of the two languages being different, it is very diffi-

unto thee, having reflected properly with the aid of the scriptures, that one should abstain from all acts that are fraught with injury or malice and seek to acquire a knowledge of the Soul.*[24] The man possessed of wisdom would not seek wealth for the performance of religious rites by ways that are unrighteous and that involve an abandonment of morality. Wealth earned by such means can never prove beneficial.[25] Do thou then become a Kshatriya of this kind! Do thou restrain thy senses, be agreeable to thy friends, and cherish, according to the duties of thy order, thy subjects, servants, and children![26] Through the union of both prosperity and adversity (in man's life), there arise friendships and animosities. Thousands and thousands of existences are continually revolving (in respect of every Jiva), and in every mode of Jiva's existence these must occur.†[27] For this reason, be thou attached to good qualities of every kind, but never to faults. Such is the character of good qualities that if the most foolish person, bereft of every virtue, hears himself praised for any good quality, he becomes filled with joy.[28] Virtue and sin exist, O king, only among men. These do not exist among creatures other than man.[29] One should, therefore, whether in need of food and other necessaries of life or transcending such need, be of virtuous disposition, acquire knowledge, always look upon all creatures as one's own self, and abstain totally from inflicting any kind of injury.[30] When one's mind becomes divested of desire, and

---

cult to render the phraseology of the first line. Literally rendered, the line would read 'they remain or stay on those acts, and establish them.' Besides being unidiomatic, the sentence would be unmeaning. 'To stay or remain on any act' is to adhere to it. 'To establish it' is to regard it as a precedent and cause it to be regarded by others as a precedent.—T.

* 'Samsiddhādhigamam' is explained by the Commentator thus: 'Samsiddhah' is 'nityasiddhah,' *i. e.*, 'ātman;' 'tadadhigamam' is 'ātmajnānam.'—T.

† The very gods are subject to prosperity and adversity, and their effects of loves and hates. There is no mode of life in which these may not be found.—T.

when all Darkness is dispelled from it, it is then that one succeeds in obtaining what is auspicious.—' "[31]

SECTION CCXCVI.

"'Parāçara said,—I have now discoursed to thee on what the ordinances are of the duties in respect of one that leads the domestic mode of life. I shall now speak to thee of the ordinances about penances. Listen to me as I discourse on the topic.[1] It is generally seen, O king, that in consequence of sentiments fraught with Rajas and Tamas, the sense of *meum*, born of attachment, springs up in the heart of the householder.[2] Betaking oneself to the domestic mode of life, one acquires kine, fields, wealth of diverse kinds, spouses, children, and servants.[3] One that becomes observant of this mode of life continually casts one's eye upon these objects. Under these circumstances, one's attachments and aversions increase, and one ceases to regard one's (transitory) possessions as eternal and indestructible.[4] When a person becomes overwhelmed by attachment and aversion, and yields himself up to the mastery of earthly objects, the desire of enjoyment then seizes him, taking its rise from heedlessness, O king.[5] Thinking that person to be blessed who has the largest share of enjoyments in this world, the man devoted to enjoyment does not, in consequence of his attachment thereto, see that there is any other happiness besides what waits upon the gratification of the senses.[6] Overwhelmed with cupidity that results from such attachment, he then seeks to increase the number of his relatives and attendants, and for gratifying these latter he seeks to increase his wealth by every means in his power.[7] Filled with affection for children, such a person then commits, for the sake of acquiring wealth, acts that he knows to be evil, and gives way to grief if his wealth be lost.[8] Having earned honors and always guarding against the defeat of his plans, he betakes himself to such means as would gratify his desire of enjoyment. At last he meets with destruction as the inevitable consequence of the conduct he pursues.[9] It is well known, however, that

true felicity is theirs that are endued with intelligence, that are utterers of the eternal Brahma, that seek to accomplish only acts that are auspicious and beneficial, and that abstain from all acts that are optional and spring from desire alone.*[10] From loss of all such objects in which are centred our affections, from loss of wealth, O king, and from the tyranny of physical diseases and mental anguish, a person falls into despair.[11] From this despair arises an awakening of the soul. From such awakening proceeds study of the Scriptures. From contemplation of the import of the scriptures, O king, one sees the value of penance.[12] A person possessed of the knowledge of what is essential and what accidental, O king, is very rare,—he, that is, who seeks to undergo penances, impressed with the truth that the happiness one derives from the possession of such agreeable objects as spouses and children leads ultimately to misery.†[13] Penances, O child, are for all. They are ordained for even the lowest order of men, (*viz.*, Cudras). Penances set the self-restrained man having the mastery over all his senses on the way to heaven.[14] It was through penances that the puissant Lord of all creatures, O king, observing vows at particular intervals, created all existent objects.[15] The Ādityas, the Vasus, the Rudras, Agni, the Açwins, the Māruts, the Viçwedevas, the Sāddhyas, the Pitris, the Maruts,[16] the Yakshas, the Rākshasas, the Gandharvas, the Siddhas and the other denizens of heaven, and, indeed, all other celestials whatever, O child, have all been crowned with success through their penances.[17] Those Brāhmanas whom Brahman created at the outset, succeeded through their penances in honoring not the Earth alone but the heaven also in which they roved at pleasure.[18] In this world of mortals, they that

---

* After 'sukham' supply 'bhavati' or some such verb. 'Tyajatām' stands by itself and refers to 'kāmya karma,' meaning, 'they that abstain from such acts as are not *nitya* but as are only *kāmya* or optional.—T.

† The sense is that those who betake themselves to penances as the consequence of despair, are many. Those men, however, are very rare who adopt penances, being at once impressed that the happiness of domesticity is unreal and ends in misery.—T.

are kings, and those others that are householders born in high families, have all become what they are only in consequence of their penances.*[19] The silken robes they wear, the excellent ornaments that adorn their persons, the animals and vehicles they ride, and the seats they use are all the result of their penances.[20] The many charming and beautiful women, numbering by thousands, that they enjoy, and their residence in palatial mansions, are all due to their penances.[21] Costly beds and diverse kinds of delicious viands become theirs that act righteously.[22] There is nothing in the three worlds, O scorcher of foes, that penances cannot attain. Even those that are destitute of true knowledge win Renunciation as the consequence of their penances.†[23] Whether in affluent circumstances or miserable, a person should cast off cupidity, reflecting on the scriptures, with the aid of his mind and understanding, O best of kings.[24] Discontent is productive of misery. (Discontent is the result of cupidity.) Cupidity leadeth to the stupefaction of the senses. The senses being stupified, one's wisdom disappears like knowledge not kept up by continued application.[25] When one's wisdom disappears, one fails to discriminate what is proper from what is improper. Hence, when one's happiness is destroyed (and one becomes subject to misery) one should practise the austerest of penances.‡[26] That which is agreeable is called happiness. That which is disagreeable is said to be misery. When penances are practised, the result is happiness. When they are not practised, the result is misery. Behold the

---

* *I. e.*, their penances of past lives.—T.

† I am not sure that I have correctly understood the second line of this Verse. 'Akritakarmanām' is explained by the Commentator as 'anutpannatattwajnānānām,' and 'upabhogaparityāgah' is Renunciation or 'Vairāgyam' 'phalāni' has 'tapasah' understood before it. But why 'phalāni' instead of 'phalam ?—T.

‡ The second line of this Verse concludes the argument. The 'tasmāt' has reference to all the statements before, and *not* to only the first line of 26. The statement in the second line is the same as the second line of Verse 13 above.—T.

fruits of practising and abstaining from penances!*[27] By practising stainless penances, people always meet with auspicious consequences of every kind, enjoy all good things, and attain to great fame.†[28] He, however, who, by abandoning (stainless penances,) betakes himself to penances from desire of fruit, meets with many disagreeable consequences, and disgrace and sorrow of diverse kinds, as the fruits thereof, all of which have worldly possessions for their cause.‡[29] Notwithstanding the desirability of practising righteousness, penances, and gifts, the wish springs up in his mind of accomplishing all kinds of forbidden acts. By thus perpetrating diverse kinds of sinful acts, he goes to hell.$[30] That person, O best of men, who, in both happiness and misery, does not fall away from the duties ordained for him, is said to have the scriptures for his eye.[31] It is said that the pleasure one derives from the gratification of one's senses of touch, tongue, sight, scent, and hearing, O monarch, lasts only so long as a shaft urged from the bow takes in falling down upon the Earth.[32] Upon the cessation of that pleasure, which is so short-lived, one experiences the most keen agony. It is only the senseless that do not applaud the felicity of Emancipation that is unrivalled.[33] Beholding the misery that attends the gratification of the senses, they that are possessed of wisdom cultivate the virtues of tranquillity and self-restraint for the purpose of attaining to Emancipa-

---

* I expand the second line a little for making it intelligible.—T.

† By 'stainless penances' is meant 'nishkāmam tapah' or penances undertaken without desire of fruit.—T.

‡ 'Tyaktwā' has 'nishkalmasham tapah' understood after it. The order of the words is 'Phalārthi apriyāni &c., vishyātmakam tat phalam prāpnoti.' The distinction between 'nishkāmam' and 'sakāmam tapah' is this: through the former one attains to happiness. Even the earthly wealth he earns becomes fraught with happiness; through the latter, however, one meets with diverse kinds of sorrow resulting from the earthly possessions he succeeds in obtaining.—T.

$ The grammar of the first line is this: 'Dharme tapasi dāne cha (*sati* avihitakarme) vidhitsā &c.' If 'vidhitsā' be taken with 'dharme &c.,' the verse would be unmeaning.—T.

tion. In consequence of their righteous behaviour, wealth, and pleasure can never succeed in afflicting them.*[34] Householders may, without any compunction, enjoy wealth and other possessions that are obtained without Exertion. As regards, however, the duties of their order (that are laid down in the scriptures), these, I am of opinion, they should discharge with the aid of Exertion.†[35] The practice of those that are honored, that are born in high families, and that have their eyes always turned towards the import of the scriptures, is incapable of being followed by those that are sinful and that are possessed of unrestrained minds.[36] All acts that are done by man under the influence of vanity, meet with destruction. Hence, for them that are respectable and truly righteous there is no other act in this world to do than penance.‡[37] As regards, those householders, however, that are addicted to acts, they should, with their whole

---

* The first line is difficult to construe. 'Tatah' means 'in consequence of the pain that attends the gratification of the senses.' 'Sarvasya' refers to 'vivekinah'; 'jyāyase phalārtham' is 'for the sake of the highest fruit,' which, of course, is Emancipation. 'Gunāh' is 'çama, dama, &c.'—T.

† The Commentator points out that the object of this Verse is to show that everything one owns or does is not the result of past acts. Spouses, food, drink, &c., one obtains as the result of past acts or 'prāravdha karma' In respect of these, 'purushakāra' or Exertion is weak. Hence, to put forth Exertion for their acquisition would not be wise. As regards the acquisition of righteousness, however, there Exertion is efficacious. Hence, one should, with Exertion, seek to conform to one's own duties as laid down in the scriptures. Without such a distinction between destiny (prāravdha) and Exertion (purushakāra), the injunctions and interdictions of the Scriptures would be unmeaning. The Burdwan translator, citing portions of the Commentary without at all understanding them, makes utter nonsense of the Verse. K. P. Singha gives the meaning correctly.—T.

‡ Sacrifices and all other acts, undertaken from a sense of vanity, are destructible as regards their consequences, for heaven is terminable. Penances, however, that are undertaken without desire of fruit are not so, for these lead to Emancipation. 'Teshām' refers to those mentioned in the first line of Verse 37. It should not be taken to mean men in general, as the Burdwan translator wrongly does.—T.

hearts, set themselves to acts. Following the duties of their order, O king, they should with cleverness and attention perform sacrifices and other religious rites.[38] Indeed, as all rivers, male and female, have their refuge in the Ocean, even so men belonging to all the other orders have their refuge in the householder.—' "[39]

SECTION CCXCVII.

" 'Janaka said,—Whence, O great Rishi, does this difference of color arise among men belonging to the different orders? I desire to know this. Tell me this, O foremost of speakers![1] The Crutis say that the offspring one begets is one's own self. Originally sprung from Brahman, all the inhabitants of the Earth should have been Brāhmanas. Sprung from Brāhmanas, why have men betaken themselves to practices distinguished from those of Brāhmanas.—[2]

" 'Parāçara said,—It is as thou sayst, O king! The offspring procreated is none else than the procreator himself. In consequence, however, of a falling away from penance, this distribution into classes of different colors has taken place. When the soil becomes good and the seed also is good, the offspring produced becomes meritorious. If, however, the soil and seed become otherwise or inferior, the offspring that will be born will be inferior.[3-4] They that are conversant with the scriptures know that when the Lord of all creatures set himself to create the worlds, some creatures sprung from his mouth, some from his arms, some from his thighs, and some from his feet.[5] They that thus sprung from his mouth, O child, came to be called Brāhmanas. They that sprung from his arms were named Kshatriyas. They, O king, that sprung from his thighs were the wealthy class called the Vaiçyas. And, lastly, they that were born of his feet were the serving class, *viz.*, the Cudras.[6] Only these four orders of men, O monarch, were thus created. They that belong to classes over and other than these are said to have sprung from an intermixture of these.[7] The Kshatriyas called Atirathas, Amvashthas, Ugras, Vaidehas, Cwapākas, Pukkasas,

Stenas, Nishādas, Sutas, Māgadhas, Ayogas, Karanas, Vrātyas, and Chandālas, O monarch, have all sprung from the four original orders by intermixture with one another.—[8-9]

"'Janaka said,—When all have sprung from Brahman alone, how came human beings to have diversity in respect of race? O best of ascetics, an infinite diversity of races is seen in this world.[10] How could men devoted to penances attain to the status of Brāhmanas, though of indiscriminate origin? Indeed, those born in pure wombs and those in impure, all became Brāhmanas.—[11]

"'Parāçara said,—O king, the status of high-souled persons that succeeded in cleansing their souls by penances could not be regarded as affected by their low births.[12] Great Rishis, O monarch, by begetting children in indiscriminate wombs, conferred upon them the status of Rishis by means of their power of asceticism.[13] My grandfather Vaçishtha, Rishyaçringa, Kaçyapa, Veda, Tāndya, Kripa, Kākshivat, Kamatha, and others,[14] and Yavakrita, O king, and Drona, that foremost of speakers, and Āyu, and Matanga, and Datta, and Drupada, and Mātsya,[15]—all these, O ruler of the Videhas, obtained their respective positions through penance as the means.[16] Originally only four *Gotras* (races) arose, O monarch, *viz.*, Angiras, Kaçyapa, Vaçishtha, and Bhrigu.[17] In consequence of acts and behaviour, O ruler of men, many other *Gotras* came into existence in time. The names of those *Gotras* have been due to the penances of those that have founded them. Good people use them.—[18]

"'Janaka said,—Tell me, O holy one, the especial duties of the several orders. Tell me also what their common duties are. Thou art conversant with everything.—[19]

"'Parāçara said,—Acceptance of gifts, officiation at the sacrifices of others, and the teaching of pupils, O king, are the especial duties of the Brāhmanas. The protection of the other orders is proper for the Kshatriya.[20] Agriculture, cattle-rearing, and trade are the occupations of the Vaiçyas. While service of the (three) regenerate classes is the occupation, O king, of the Cudras.[21] I have now told thee what the especial duties are of the four orders, O monarch.

Listen now to me, O child, as I tell thee what the common duties are of all the four orders.[22] Compassion, abstention from injury, heedfulness, giving to others what is due to them, Crāddhas in honor of deceased ancestors, hospitality to guests, truthfulness, subjugation of wrath,[23] contentedness with one's own wedded wives, purity (both internal and external), freedom from malice, knowledge of Self, and Renunciation,—these duties, O king, are common to all the orders.[24] Brāhmanas, Kshatriyas, and Vaiçyas,—these are the three regenerate orders. All of them have an equal right to the performance of these duties, O foremost of men.[25] These three orders, betaking themselves to duties other than those laid down for them, come to grief, O monarch, (and fall down from their own status), even as they go up and acquire great merit by taking for their model some righteous individual of their respective classes who is duly observant of his own duties.[26] The Cudra never falls down (by doing forbidden acts); nor is he worthy of any of the rites of regeneration. The course of duties flowing from the Vedas is not his. He is not interdicted, however, from practising the three and ten duties that are common to all the orders.[27] O ruler of the Videhas, Brāhmanas learned in the Vedas, O monarch, regard a (virtuous) Cudra as equal to Brahman himself. I, however, O king, look upon such a Cudra as the effulgent Vishnu of the universe, the foremost one in all the worlds.*[28] Persons of the lowest order, desiring to exterminate the evil passions (of lust and wrath, &c.), may betake themselves to the observance of the conduct of the good; and, indeed, while so acting, they may earn great merit by performing all rites that lead to advancement, omitting the *mantras* that are utterable by the other orders

* 'Kam' is 'Brahmānam.' The Commentator explains that Brahman (the Creator) is equivalent to Brāhmana; and that Vishnu is equivalent to Kshatriya. What is said, therefore, in this Verse, (according to him) is that a Cudra, by practising the common duties of all the four orders, succeeds in his next life in becoming a Brāhmana. Thus say Brāhmanas learned in the scriptures; but the opinion of Parāçara is that such a Cudra, in his next life, takes birth as a Kshatriya.—T.

while performing the self-same ceremonies.[29] Wherever persons of the lowest order adopt the behaviour of the good, they succeed in attaining to happiness in consequence of which they are able to pass their time in felicity both here and hereafter.—[30]

"'Janaka said,—O great ascetic, is man stained by his acts or is he stained by the order or class in which is born? A doubt has arisen in my mind. It behooveth thee to expound this to me.—[31]

"'Parāçara said,—Without doubt, O king, both, *viz.*, acts and birth, are sources of demerit. Listen now to their difference.[32] That man who, though stained by birth, does not commit, sin, abstains from sin notwithstanding birth and acts.[33] If, however, a person of superior birth perpetrates censurable acts, such acts stain him. Hence, of the two, *viz.*, acts and birth, acts stain man (more than birth).—*[34]

"'Janaka said,—What are those righteous acts in this world, O best of all regenerate persons, the accomplishment of which does not inflict any injury upon other creatures?—[35]

"'Parāçara said,—Hear from me, O monarch, about what thou askest me, *viz.*, those acts free from injury which always rescue man.[36] Those who, keeping aside their domestic fires, have dissociated themselves from all worldly attachments, become freed from all anxieties. Gradually ascending step by step, in the path of Yoga, they at last behold the stage of highest felicity (*viz.*, Emancipation).† Endued with faith and humility, always practising self-restraint, possessed of keen intelligence, and abstaining from all acts, they attain to eternal felicity.[38] All classes of men, O king, by properly accomplishing acts that are righteous, by speaking the truth,

---

* I am not sure that I have understood these two Verses correctly. Verse 33 is evidently a cruce.—T.

† 'Yathākarmam' means 'from one stage to another.' 'Karmapatham' is 'yogam.' The stages here referred to are 'vichāra', 'vitarka,' 'Ananda', and 'Asmitā.' What is stated in this Verse is that one who casts off all attachments, and who devotes himself to Yoga, succeeds in attaining to the felicity of Emancipation.—T.

and by abstaining from unrighteousness, in this world, ascend to heaven. In this there is no doubt.—' "[39]

SECTION CCXCVIII.

" 'Parāçara said,—The sires, the friends, the preceptors, and the spouses of the preceptors of men that are destitute of devotion, are unable to give to those men the merits that attach to devotion. Only they that are firmly devoted to such seniors, that speak what is agreeable to them, that seek their welfare, and that are submissive to them in behaviour, can obtain the merit of devotion.[1] The sire is the highest of deities with his children. It is said that the sire is superior to the mother. The attainment of Knowledge is regarded as the highest acquisition. They that have subjugated the objects of the senses, (by attaining to Knowledge) acquire what is highest (*viz.*, Emancipation).[2] That Kshatriya prince who, repairing to the field of battle, receives wounds amid fiery shafts flying in all directions and burns therewith, certainly repairs to regions that are unattainable by the very deities and, arrived there, enjoys the felicity of heaven in perfect contentment.[3] A Kshatriya should not, O king, strike one that is fatigued, or one that is frightened, or one that has been disarmed, or one that is weeping, or one that is unwilling to fight, or one that is unequipt with mail and cars and horse and infantry, or one that has ceased to exert in the fight, or one that is ill, or one that cries for quarter, or one that is of tender years, or one that is old.[4] A Kshatriya should, in battle fight one of his order who is equipt with mail and cars and horse and infantry, who is ready for exertion, and who occupies a position of equality.[5] Death at the hands of one that is equal or of a superior is laudable, but not that at the hands of one that is low, or of one that is a coward, or of one that is a wretch. This is well known.[6] Death at the hands of one that is sinful, or of one that is of low birth and wicked conduct, O king, is inglorious and leads to hell.[7] One whose period of life has run out cannot be rescued by anybody. Similarly, one whose period of life has

not been exhausted can never be slain by any one.*[8] One should prevent one's affectionate seniors from doing unto one (for one's benefit) such acts as are done by menials, as also all such acts as are fraught with injury to others. One should never desire to extend one's own life by taking the lives of others.†[9] When they lay down their lives, it is laudable for all house-holders observant of the duties of men living in sacred places to lay down their lives on the banks of sacred streams.‡[10] When one's period of life becomes exhausted, one dissolves away into the five elements. Sometimes this occurs suddenly (through accidents) and sometimes it is brought about by (natural) causes.§[11] He who, having obtained a body, brings about its dissolution (in a sacred place by means of some inglorious accident), becomes invested with another body of a similar kind. Though set on the path of Emancipation, he yet becomes a traveller and attains to another body like a person repairing from one room into another.¶[12] In the matter of such a man's attainment of a second body (notwithstanding his death in a sacred spot) the only cause is his accidental death. There is no second cause. That new body which embodied creatures obtain (in consequence of the accidental character of their deaths in sacred

---

* The Burdwan translator wrongly renders the second line of this Verse. All the texts read this line in the same way.—T.

† 'Snigdhais' implies affectionate seniors such as mothers, &c.; 'karmāni' is explained by the Commentator as 'abhyanga-karmāni,' *i. e.*, the rubbing of oil, *&c.* Such acts, when children are ill, are often done unto them by mothers. This is forbidden, for they are menial offices which seniors should never be permitted to perform.—T.

‡ 'Vināçamabhikānkhatām' is explained in the alternative by the Commentator in a very fanciful way. 'Kriyāvatām' is explained as 'observant of the duties of Tirthavāsins.'—T.

§ The Commentator is for explaining the second line exoterically.—T

¶ 'Dehāt' is 'Deham prāpya.' 'Yena' is 'yena pumsā.' 'Upapāditam' has reference to 'panchatwam' in the previous Verse. The sense of the Verse is this: he who meets with a sudden death in a *tirtha* or sacred place, does not become emancipated but obtains another body in his next life similar to the one he loses. 'Adhyānam gatakah' is that though set or placed on the path of Emancipation, yet he becomes a traveller: this is due to the inglorious manner of his dissolution.—T.

places) comes into existence and becomes attached to Rudras and Pichāchas.*[13] Learned men, conversant with Adhyātma, say that the body is a conglomeration of arteries and sinews and bones and much repulsive and impure matter and a compound of (primal) essences, and the senses and objects of the senses born of desire, all having an outer cover of skin close to them. Destitute (in reality) of beauty and other accomplishments, this conglomeration, through force of the desires of a previous life, assumes a human form.†[14-15] Aabandoned by the owner, the body becomes inanimate and motionless. Indeed, when the primal ingredients return to their respective natures, the body mingles with the dust.[16] Caused by its union with acts, this body reappears under circumstances determined by its acts. Indeed, O ruler of the Videhas, under whatever circumstances this body meets with disolution, its next birth, determined by those circumstances, is seen to enjoy and endure the fruits of all its past acts.[17] Jiva, after dissolution of the body it inhabited, does not, O king, take birth in a different body immediately.[18] It roves through the sky for sometime like a spacious cloud. Obtaining a new receptacle, O monarch, it then takes birth again.[19] The soul is above the mind. The mind is above the senses. Mobile creatures, again, are foremost of all created objects.[20] Amongst mobile creatures those that have two legs are superior. Amongst two-legged creatures, those that are regenerate are superior.[21] Amongst those that are regenerate they that are possessed of wisdom are superior. Amongst them that are possessed of wisdom they that have succeeded in acquiring a knowledge of the soul are superior.

---

* The object of this Verse is to show that the man dying in a sacred place becomes reborn as a Rudra or a Piçācha and quickly attains to Emancipation in consequence of his contiguity to Civa. 'Mokshabhuteshu' is 'Moksha-yogyeshu.' The neuter form of 'taddeham' is *ārsha*.—T.

† 'Gunānāncha' in the second line of Verse 14 refers to the objects of the senses, which, as explained in previous Sections, have no independent existence, for they exist only as they exist in desire. The compound of the primal essences and the other things mentioned assumes different shapes through the force of the desires of previous lives.—T.

Amongst those that are possessed of a knowledge of the soul, they that are endued with humility are superior.[22] Death follows birth in respect of all men. This is settled. Creatures, influenced by the attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas, pursue acts which have an end.*[23] That man is regarded as righteous who meets with dissolution when the Sun is in the northern declension, and at a time and under a constellation both of which are sacred and auspicious,[24] He is righteous who, having cleansed himself of all sins and accomplished all his acts according to the best of his power and having abstained from giving pain to any man, meets with death when it comes.[25] The death that one meets with by taking poison, by hanging, by burning, at the hands of robbers, and at the teeth of animals, is said to be an inglorious one.†[26] Those men that are righteous never incur such or similar deaths even if they be afflicted with mental and physical diseases of the most agonising kind.[27] The lives of the righteous, O king, piercing through the Sun, ascend into the regions of Brahman. The lives of those that are both righteous and sinful rove in the middle regions. The lives of those that are sinful sink into the lowest depths. There is one only foe (of man) and not another. That foe is identifiable with Ignorance, O king. Overwhelmed by it, one is led to perpetrate acts that are frightful and exceedingly cruel.[28-29] That foe for resisting which one should put forth one's power by waiting upon the aged according to the duties laid down in the Crutis,—that foe which cannot be overcome except by steady endeavours,—meets with destruction, O king, only when it is crushed by the shafts of wisdom.‡[30] The man desirous of achieving merit should at first study the Vedas and observe penances, becoming a Brahma-

---

* Acts are all perishable in respect of their consequences.—T.

† It is difficult to give foreigners an idea of what is called *Apamrityu*. All deaths that are caused by such accidents as involve ignominy are called Apamrityu. Death from snake-bite, from a fall, by drowning at the horns of an animal, &c., are instances of Apamrityu.—T.

‡ Both 'yasya' and 'sa' refer to the foe called 'Ignorance.' 'Rājaputra' is a vocative. 'Paraiti' is 'naçyati.'—T.

chārin. He should next, entering the domestic mode of life, perform the usual Sacrifices. Establishing his race, he should then enter the forest, restraining his senses, and desirous of winning Emancipation.[31] One should never emasculate oneself by abstaining from every enjoyment. Of all births, the status of humanity is preferable even if one has to become a Chāndāla.[32] Indeed, O monarch, that order of birth (*viz.*, humanity) is the foremost, since by becoming a human being one succeeds in rescuing one's self by meritorious acts.[33] Men always perform righteous acts, O lord, guided by the authority of the Crutis, so that they may not fall away from the status of humanity.[34] That man who, having attained to the status of humanity that is so difficult of attainment, indulges in malice, disregards righteousness and yields himself up to desire, is certainly betrayed by his desires.*[35] That man who looks upon all creatures with eyes guided by affection, regarding them worthy of being cherished with loving aid, who disregards all kinds of wealth,[36] who offers them consolation, gives them food, addresses them in agreeable words, and who rejoices in their happiness and grieves in their griefs, has never to suffer misery in the next world.[37] Repairing to the Saraswati, the Naimisha woods, the Pushkara waters, and the other sacred spots on Earth, one should make gifts, practise renunciation, render one's aspect amiable, O king, and purify one's body with baths and penances.[38] Those men who meet with death within their houses should have the rites of cremation performed upon their persons. Their bodies should be taken to the crematorium on vehicles and there they should be burnt according to the rites of purification that have been laid down in the scriptures.[39] Religious rites, beneficial ceremonies, the performance of sacrifices, officiation at the sacrifices of others, gifts, the doing of other meritorious acts, the performance, according to the best of one's power, of all that has been ordained in the case of one's deceased ancestors,—all these one does for benefiting one's own self.[40] The Vedas with their six branches,

---

* 'Vanchate' is preceded by 'kāmena' understood.—T.

and the other scriptures, O king, have been created for the good of him who is of stainless acts.—'[41]

"Bhishma continued,—'All this was said by that high-souled sage unto the ruler of the Videhas, O king, in days of old for his benefit.' "[42]

SECTION CCXCIX.

"Bhishma said,—'Once again Janaka, the ruler of Mithilā, questioned the high-souled Parāçara endued with certain knowledge in respect of all duties.[1]

" 'Janaka said,—What is productive of good? What is the best path (for living creatures)? What is that which being accomplished is never destroyed? What is that spot repairing whither one has not to come back? Tell me all this, O thou of high intelligence!—[2]

" 'Parāçara said,—Dissociation (from attachments) is the root of what is good.* Knowledge is the highest path. Penances practised are never destroyed. Gifts also, made to deserving persons, are not lost.[3] When one, breaking the bonds of sin, begins to take pleasure in righteousness, and when one makes that highest of all gifts, *viz.*, the pledge of harmlessness unto all creatures, then does one achieve success.[4] He who gives away thousands of kine and hundreds of horses (to deserving persons), and who gives unto all creatures the pledge of harmlessness, receives in return the pledge of harmlessness from all.[5] One may live in the midst of all kinds of wealth and enjoyment, yet, if blessed with intelligence, one does not live in them; while he that is destitute of intelligence lives wholly in objects of enjoyment that are even unsubstantial.†[6] Sin cannot attach to a man of wisdom even as water cannot drench the leaves of the lotus. Sin adheres more firmly to him who is without attachment even

---

* It has been explained in previous Sections that 'çreyas' or 'niçreyas' means good or excellent as applied to moral merit.—T.

† By 'buddhimān' is meant the man who is freed from attachment Similarly, by 'durbuddhih' is meant the man who is the slave of attachments.—T.

as lac and wood adhere firmly to each other.[7] Sin, which cannot be extinguished except by endurance of its fruits, never abandons the doer. Verily, the doer, when the time comes, has to endure the consequences arising from it.*[8] They, however, that are of cleansed souls and that realise the existence of Brahma, are never afflicted by the fruits of their acts.[9] Heedless in respect of one's senses of knowledge and of action, one that is not conscious of one's wicked acts, and whose heart is attached to both good and bad, becomes afflicted with great fear.[10] One who at all times becomes entirely freed from attachments and who completely subjugates the passion of wrath, is never stained by sin even if he lives in the enjoyment of worldly objects.[11] As a dyke created across a river, if not washed away, causes the waters thereof to swell up, even so the man who, without being attached to objects of enjoyments, creates the dyke of righteousness whose materials consist of the limitations set down in the scriptures, has never to languish. On the other hand, his merits and penances increase.[12] As the pure gem (called Suryya-kānta) absorbs and attracts to itself, according to the law governing the case, the rays of the Sun, even so, O tiger among kings, does Yoga proceed by help of concentrated attention.†[13] As sesame seeds, in consequence of their repeated intermingling with (fragrant) flowers, become in respect of quality very agreeable, even so the quality of Sattwa arises in men in proportion to the measure of their association with persons of cleansed souls.‡[14] When one

---

* 'Kāranāpekshi' is thus explained by the Commentator: 'kāranāphaladānātmikā kriyā tannirvrittyapekshi.' The sense is that sin can never be destroyed except by endurance of its fruits.—T.

† The sense is that after the manner of the fabulous gem, Jiva attracts to itself, through Yoga, the status of Brahma.—T.

‡ The Burdwan translator, without understanding the commentary, makes utter nonsense of this Verse. K. P. Singha is not far wrong, but he does not bring out the principal point which is sought to be inculcated here. Sesame seeds are repeatedly mixed with fragrant flowers. The more they are so mixed the more fragrant do they become. After the same manner, men acquire the quality of Sattwa by associating with

becomes desirous of dwelling in heaven, one casts off one's spouses and wealth and rank and vehicles and diverse kinds of good acts. Indeed, when one attains to such a frame of mind, one's understanding is said to be dissociated from the objects of the senses.[15] That man (on the other hand) who, with understanding attached to the objects of the senses, becomes blind to what is for his real good, is dragged (to his ruin) by his heart which runs after all worldly objects, like a fish (dragged to its ruin) by the bait of meat.[16] Like unto the body that is made up of different limbs and organs, all mortal creatures exist depending upon one another. They are as destitute of vigor as the pith of the bannana plant. (Left to themselves) they sink in the world's ocean like a boat (made of weak materials).[17] There is no fixed time for the acquisition of righteousness. Death waits for no man. When man is constantly running towards the jaws of Death, the accomplishment of righteous acts is proper at all times.[18] Like a blind man who, with attention, is capable of moving about his own house, the man of wisdom, with mind set on Yoga, succeeds in proceeding along the track (he should follow).*[19] It has been said that death arises in consequence of birth. Birth is subject to the sway of death. One unacquaintod with the course of the duties of Emancipation revolves like a wheel between birth and death, unable to free oneself from that fate.[20] One who walketh along the track recommended by the understanding earns happiness both here and hereafter. The Diverse are fraught with misery ; while the Few are productive of happiness. Fruits represented by the not-Soul are said to constitute the Diverse. Renunciation is (said to constitute the Few and that is) productive of the soul's happiness.†[21] As the lotus

---

persons of cleansed souls. The measure of Sattwa is dependant on the measure of the association.—T.

* The track is that of knowledge. Vide Verse 3 above.—T.

† Having used the words 'vistarāh' (Diverse) and 'samkshepāh' (Few), in the second line of this triplet, the speaker explains their meaning in the third. By 'Diverse' is meant all those fruits that consist of unstable enjoyments ; hence, the diverse acts laid down in the Vedas and other

stalk quickly leaves the mire attached to it, even so the Soul can speedily cast off the mind.*[22] It is the mind that at first inclines the Soul to Yoga. The latter then merges the former into itself. When the Soul achieves success in Yoga, it then beholds itself uninvested with attributes.†[23] Engaged amid the objects of the senses, one who regards such engagement to be one's employment falleth away from one's true employment in consequence of such devotion to those objects.[24] The soul of the wise man attains, through its righteous acts, to a state of high felicity in heaven, while that of the man who is not possessed of wisdom sinks very low or obtains birth among intermediate creatures.[25] As a liquid substance, if kept in a baked earthen vessel, does not escape therefrom but remains undiminished, after the same manner one's body with which one has undergone austerities enjoys (without rejecting) all objects of enjoyment (up to what are contained in the region of Brahman himself).[26] Verily, that man who enjoys worldly objects can never be emancipate. That man, on the other hand, who casts off such objects (in this world), succeeds in enjoying great happiness hereafter.[27] Like one afflicted with congenital blindness and, therefore, incapable of seeing his way, the sensualist, with soul confined in an opaque case, seems to be surrounded by a mist and fails to see (the true object for which he should strive).[28] As merchants, going across the

scriptures. By 'Few' is meant Renunciation, or abstention from acts. What is said, therefore, in this Verse is this: they that betake themselves to acts, which have for their fruits all sorts of enjoyment, meet with misery; while they that abstain from acts or practise Renunciation meet with happiness. Both the Vernacular versions are incorrect.—T.

* It is difficult to understand what is meant by this Verse. By progress in Yoga, the Soul can certainly cast off the mind and other attributes by which it is invested. The simile is unintelligible. The stalk of the lotus has its roots in mire. Does the first line mean, therefore, that the stalk speedily springs upwards and leaves the mire at its roots?—T.

† The Commentator explains that the intention of this Verse is to explain that the universe which is created by the mind is destroyed afterwards by the mind itself.—T.

sea, make profits proportioned to their capital, even so creatures, in this world of mortals, attain to ends according to their respective acts.[29] Like a snake devouring air, Death wanders in this world made up of days and nights in the form of Decrepitude and devours all creatures.[30] A creature, when born, enjoys or endures the fruits of acts done by him in his previous lives. There is nothing agreeable or disagreeable which one enjoys or endures without its being the result of the acts one has done in one's previous lives.[31] Whether lying or proceeding, whether sitting idly or engaged in his occupations, in whatever state a man may be, his acts (of past lives) good or bad, always approach him.[32] One that has attained to the other shore of the ocean, wishes not to cross the main for returning to the shore whence he had sailed.*[33] As the fisherman, when he wishes, raises with the help of his chord his boat sunk in the waters (of a river or lake), after the same manner the mind, by the aid of Yoga-contemplation, raises Jiva sunk in the world's ocean and unemancipated from consciousness of body.†[34] As all rivers running towards the ocean, unite themselves with it, even so the mind, when engaged in Yoga, becomes united with primal Prakriti.‡[35] Men whose minds become bound by diverse chains of affection, and who are engulped in ignorance, meet with destruction like houses of sand in water.$[36] That embodied creature who regards his body as only a house and

---

* The sense is that one who has cast off objects of enjoyment and become emancipate, does not obtain rebirth.—T.

† I follow the Commentator in his exposition of this Verse. The practice of fishermen (in India) is to sink their boats when they leave them for their homes, and to raise them again when they require them the next day. They do not leave their boats afloat for fear of the injury the waves may do to them by tossing them too much.—T.

‡ By 'Prakriti' here is meant the harmony of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas. As long as these three qualities are in harmony with one another, *i. e.*, as long as there is no preponderance in any of them over the other two, so long there cannot be creation or the operations of the *buddhi* or understanding.—T.

$ In this Verse the word 'Prakriti' is used in an entirely different sense. It means here Ignorance.—T.

purity (both external and internal) as its sacred water, and who walks along the path of the understanding, succeeds in attaining to happiness both here and hereafter.*[37] The Diverse are productive of misery; while the Few are productive of happiness. The Diverse are the fruits represented by the not-Soul. Renunciation (which is identical with Few) is productive of the soul's benefit.†[38] One's friends who spring up from one's determination, and one's kinsmen whose attachment is due to (selfish) reasons, one's spouses and sons and servants, only devour one's wealth.[39] Neither the mother, nor the father, can confer the slightest benefit upon one in the next world. Gifts constitute the diet upon which one can subsist. Indeed, one must have to enjoy the fruits of one's own acts.‡[40] The mother, the son, the sire, the brother, the wife, and friends, are like lines traced with gold by the side of gold itself.$[41] All acts, good and bad, done in past lives come to the doer. Knowing that everything one enjoys

---

* 'Cariragriha-sanjnasya' is 'of one who regards his body to be an accompaniment of the Soul instead of regarding it to be the Soul.' 'Who regards purity as its sacred water,' *i. e.*, who, without resorting to the sacred waters whither others go for cleansing themselves, thinks that purity, both internal and external, is capable of cleansing him.—T.

† Vide note to Verse 21 above.—T.

‡ The object of the Verse is to show that one should not, for the sake of friends and kinsmen and spouses and children, abstain from pursuing one's true end. The practice of charity again is the true diet which supports a man.—T.

$ 'Astāpadapada' is a weight of gold. The word, as used in this Verse, means a quantity of gold. Whether the reading be 'mudreva' or 'sutrena,' the sense remains unchanged. What is said here is that the mother, &c., are like lines traced with gold by the side of real gold; *i. e.*, the mother &c., are of no value or use in the acquisition of prosperity. K. P. Singha misses the meaning. The Burdwan translator, however, makes a most ridiculous exhibition of himself. Without understanding the Commentary at all, in fact, not having been able to read the words of the Commentary aright, he has produced a ridiculous jargon that is utterly unintelligible. 'Daksha' is a vocative, meaning 'possessed of cleverness.' The words 'he daksha yathā &c.,' of the Commentator are read by the Burdwan Pundit as 'deha-kshaya &c.'—T.

or endures at present is the result of the acts of past lives, the soul urges the understanding on different directions (so that it may act in such a way as to avoid all unpleasant fruits).[42] Relying on earnest endeavour, and equipt with proper aids, he who sets himself to accomplish his tasks never meets with failure.[43] As the rays of light never abandon the Sun, even so prosperity never abandons one who is endued with undoubting faith.[44] That act which a man of stainless soul does with faith and earnestness, with the aid of proper means, without pride, and with intelligence, becomes never lost.[45] A creature obtains from the very time of his abode in the mother's womb all his own acts good and bad that were achieved by him in his past lives. Death, which is irresistible, aided by Time which brings about the destruction of life, leads all creatures to their end like wind scattering the dust of sawed timber.*[46] Through acts good and bad performed by himself in his past lives, man obtains gold and animals and spouses, and children, and honor of birth, and possessions of value, and his entire affluence.—'[47]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed conformably to the truth by the sage, Janaka, that foremost of righteous persons, O king, heard everything the Rishi said and obtained great happiness from it.' "[48]

SECTION CCC.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, learned men praise truth, self-restraint, forgiveness, and wisdom. What is thy opinion of these virtues?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection I shall recite to thee an old narrative, O Yudhishthira, of the discourse between the Sādhyas and a Swan.[2] Once on a time the Unborn and eternal Lord of all creatures (*viz.*, Brahman), assuming the form of a golden Swan, wandered through the three worlds till in course of his wanderings he came upon the Sādhyas.[3]

---

* 'Aparihāravān' is incapable of being resisted. 'Samagatih' is wind. 'Açmasāra-vihitam' is 'made by means of iron or the saw.' 'Açmasāra' stands here for 'krakacha' or 'karapatra.'—T.

"'The Sādhyas said,—O lord, we are the deities called Sādhyas. We like to question thee. Indeed, we would ask thee about the religion of Emancipation. Thou art well acquainted with it.[4] We have heard, O bird, that thou art possessed of great learning, and eloquent and wise of speech. O bird, what dost thou think is the highest of all objects? O high-souled one, in what does thy mind find pleasure?[5] Do thou, therefore, O foremost of birds, instruct us as to what that one act is which thou regardest as the foremost of all acts, and by doing which, O chief of the feathery creation, one may soon be freed from all bonds!—[6]

"'The Swan said,—Ye who have drank Amrita, I have heard that one should have recourse to these, *viz.*, penances, self-restraint, truth, and subjugation of the mind. Untying all the knots of the heart, one should also bring under one's control both what is agreeable and what is disagreeable.*[7] One should not wound the vitals of others. One should not be an utterer of cruel speeches. One should never take scriptural lectures from a person that is mean. One should never utter such words as inflict pain on others, as cause others to burn (with misery), and as lead to hell.[8] Wordy shafts fall from the lips. Pierced therewith one (to whom they are directed) burns incessantly. Those shafts do not strike any other part than the very vitals of the person aimed. Hence he that is possessed of learning should never aim them at others.[9] If a person deeply pierces a man of wisdom with wordy shafts, the wise man should then adopt peace (without giving way to wrath). The man who, though sought to be angered, rejoices without yielding to anger, taketh away from the provoker all his merits.[10] That man of righteous soul, who, full of joy and freed from malice, subdues his blazing wrath which, if indulged, would lead him to speak ill of others and verily become his foe, takes

---

* The Commentator explains that by 'tapah' is meant the practice or observance of one's own duties. 'Damah' is restraining the senses. 'Satyam' is truthfulness of speech, and 'ātmaguptih' is subjugation of the mind. The knots are attachments and desires, &c.—T.

away the merits of others.[11] As regards myself, I never answer when another speaks ill of me. If assailed, I always forgive the assault. The righteous are of opinion that forgiveness and truth and sincerity and compassion are the foremost (of all virtues).[12] Truth is the arcanum of the Vedas. The arcanum of Truth is self-restraint. The arcanum of self-restraint is Emancipation. This is the teaching of all the scriptures.[13] I regard that person to be a Brāhmana and Muni who subjugates the rising impulse of speech, the impulse of wrath appearing in the mind, the impulse of thirst (after unworthy things), and the impulses of the stomach and the organ of pleasure.[14] One who does not yield to wrath is superior to one who does. One who practises renunciation is superior to one who does not. One who possesses the virtues of manhood is superior to one who has them not. One who is endued with knowledge is superior to one who is destitute of it.[15] Assailed with harsh speeches one should not assail in return. Indeed, one who, under such circumstances, renounces wrath, succeeds in burning the assailer and taking away all his merits.*[16] That person who when assailed with harsh speeches does not utter a harsh word in reply, who when praised does not utter what is agreeable to him that praises, who is endued with such fortitude as not to strike in return when struck and not to even wish evil to the striker, finds his companionship always coveted by the gods.[17] He that is sinful should be forgiven as if he were righteous by one that is insulted, struck, and calumniated. By acting in this way one attains to success.[18] Though all my objects have been fulfilled, yet I always wait reverentially on those that are righteous. I have no thirst. My wrath hath been suppressed. Seduced by covetousness I do not fall away from the path of righteousness. I do not also approach any one (with solicitations) for wealth.†[19] If

---

* *I. e*, the assailer, finding his victim forgiving, himself burns with repentance.—T.

† 'Vishayena yāmi' is the correct reading; *i. e.*, the *n* here is palatal, and 'vishayena' is in the instrumental case. The Bengal reading is vicious, for it reads 'Vishaye nayāmi.'—T.

cursed I do not curse in return. I know that self-restraint is the door of immortality. I disclose unto you a great mystery. There is no status that is superior to that of humanity.[20] Freed from sin like the Moon from murky clouds, the man of wisdom, shining in resplendence, attains to success by patiently waiting for his time.[21] A person of restrained soul, who becomes the object of adoration with all by becoming the foremost of the supporting pillars of the universe, and towards whom only agreeable words are said by all, attains to the companionship of the deities.[22] Revilers never come forward to speak of the merits of a person as readily as they speak of his demerits.[23] That person whose speech and mind are properly restrained and always devoted to the Supreme, succeeds in attaining to the fruits of the Vedas, Penances, and Renunciation.[24] The man of wisdom should never revile (in return) those that are destitute of merit, by uttering their dispraise and by insults. He should not extol others (being extolled by them) and should never injure themselves.[25] The man endued with wisdom and learning regards revilement as nectar. Reviled, he sleeps without anxiety. The reviler, on the other hand, meets with destruction.[26] The sacrifices that one performs in anger, the gifts one makes in anger, the penances one undergoes in anger, and the offerings and libations one makes to the sacred fire in anger, are such that their merits are robbed by Yama. The toil of an angry man becomes entirely fruitless.[27] Ye foremost of immortals, that person is said to be conversant with righteousness whose four doors, *viz.*, the organ of pleasure, the stomach, the two arms, and speech, are well restrained.[28] That person who, always practising truth and self-restraint and sincerity and compassion and patience and renunciation, becomes devoted to the study of the Vedas, does not covet what belongs to others, and pursues what is good with a singleness of purpose, succeeds in attaining to heaven.[29] Like a calf sucking all the four teets of its dam's udders, one should devote oneself to the practice of all these virtues. I do not know whether anything exists that is more sacred than Truth.[0] Having roved

among both human beings and the deities, I declare it that Truth is the only means for reaching heaven even as a ship is the only means for crossing the ocean.[31] A person becomes like those with whom he dwells, and like those whom he reverences, and like to what he wishes to be.[32] If a person waits with reverence on him who is good or him who is otherwise, if he waits with reverence on a sage possessed of ascetic merit or on a thief, passes under his way and catches his hue like a piece of cloth catching the dye in which it is steeped.[33] The deities always converse with those that are possessed of wisdom and goodness. They, therefore, never entertain the wish for even seeing the enjoyments in which men take pleasure. The person who knows that all objects of enjoyment (which human beings cherish) are characterised by vicissitudes, has few rivals, and is superior to the very Moon and the Wind.*[34] When the Purusha that dwells in one's heart is unstained, and walks in the path of the righteous, the gods take a pleasure in him.[35] The gods from a distance cast off those that are always devoted to the gratification of their organs of pleasure and the stomach, that are addicted to theiving, and that always indulge in harsh speeches, even if they expiate their offences by performing the proper rites.[36] The gods are never pleased with one of mean soul, with one who observes no restrictions in the matter of food, and with one who is of sinful deeds. On the other hand, the gods associate with those men that are observant of the vow of truth, that are grateful, and that are engaged in the practice of righteousness.[37] Silence is better than speech. To speak the truth is better than silence. To speak again, truth that is connected with righteousness

---

* The Moon is endued with nectar, and, therefore, might have been such a man's equal; but the Moon waxes and wanes; therefore, the Moon cannot approach to an equality with such a man who is the same under all changes. Similarly, the wind, though unstained by the dust it bears, is not the equal of such a man; for the wind is changeful, having slow, middling, and quick motion. The Burdwan translator makes utter nonsense of the reference to the Moon and the wind. K. P. Singha gives the sense correctly.—T.

is better than to speak the truth. To speak that which, besides being true and righteous, is agreeable, is better than to speak truth connected with righteousness.—[38]

"'The Sādhyas said,—By what is this world covered? For what reason does one fail to shine? For what cause do people cast off their friends? For what reason do people fail to attain to heaven?—[39]

"'The Swan said,—The world is enveloped by (the darkness of) Ignorance. Men fail to shine in consequence of malice. People cast off friends, induced by covetousness. Men fail to attain to heaven in consequence of attachment.—[40]

"'The Sāddhyas said,—Who alone among the Brāhmanas is always happy? Who alone amongst them can observe the vow of silence though dwelling in the midst of many? Who alone amongst them, though weak, is still regarded as strong? And who alone amongst them does not quarrel?—[41]

"'The Swan said,—He alone amongst the Brāhmanas that is possessed of wisdom is always happy. He alone amongst the Brāhmanas that is possessed of wisdom succeeds in observing the vow of silence though dwelling in the midst of many. He alone amongst the Brāhmanas who is possessed of wisdom, though actually weak, is regarded as strong. He alone amongst them that has wisdom succeeds in avoiding quarrel.*—[42]

"'The Sāddhyas said,—In what consists the divinity of the Brāhmanas? In what their purity? In what their impurity? And in what their status of humanity?—[43]

"'The Swan said,—In the study of the Vedas is the divinity of the Brāhmanas. In their vows and observances is their purity. In obloquy is their impurity. In death is their humanity.†—'[44]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus have I recited to thee the

---

* The Commentator explains that the object of this Verse is to show the merits of that man whose ignorance has disappeared.—T.

† *I. e.*, when Brāhmanas incur obloquy they are said to become impure; they are again regarded as possessing the status of humanity only because they die.—T.

excellent narrative of the discourse between the Sāddhyas (and the Swan.) The body (both gross and subtile) is the origin of acts, and existence or Jiva is truth.'"[45]

SECTION CCCI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'It behooveth thee to explain to me, O sire, what the difference is between the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems of philosophy. O foremost one of Kuru's race, everything is known to thee, O thou that art conversant with all duties!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The followers of Sānkhya praise the Sānkhya system and those regenerate persons that are Yogins praise the Yoga system. For establishing the superiority of their respective systems, each calls his own system to be better.[2] Men of wisdom devoted to Yoga assign proper and very good reasons, O crusher of foes, for showing that one that does not believe in the existence of God cannot attain to Emancipation.[3] Those regenerate persons, again, that are believers in the Sānkhya doctrines advance good reasons for showing that one, by acquiring true knowledge of all ends, becomes dissociated from all worldly objects,[4] and, after departing from this body, it is plain, becomes Emancipate, and that it cannot be otherwise. Men of great wisdom have thus expounded the Sānkhya philosophy of Emancipation.[5] When reasons are thus balanced on both sides, those that are assigned on that side which one is otherwise inclined to adopt as one's own, should be accepted. Indeed, those words that are said on that side should be regarded as beneficial. Good men may be found on both sides. Persons like thee may adopt either opinion.[6] The evidences of Yoga are addressed to the direct ken of the senses; those of Sānkhya are based on the scriptures. Both systems of philosophy are approved by me, O Yudhishthira.[7] Both those systems of science, O king, have my concurrence and are concurred in by those that are good and wise. If practised duly according to the instructions laid down, both would, O king, cause a person

to attain to the highest end.[8] In both systems purity is equally recommended as also compassion towards all creatures, O sinless one. In both, again, the observance of vows has been equally laid down. Only the scriptures that point out their paths are different.'[9]

"Yudhishthira said,—'If the vows, the purity, the compassion, and the fruits thereof recommended in both systems be the same, tell me, O grandsire, for what reason then are not their scriptures (in respect of the paths recommended) the same?'[10]

"Bhishma said,—'By casting off, through the aid of Yoga, these five faults, *viz.*, attachment, heedlessness, affection, lust, and wrath, one attains to Emancipation.[11] As large fishes, breaking through the net, pass into their own element (for ranging in felicity), after the same manner Yogins, (breaking through lust and wrath, &c.,) become cleansed of all sins and attain to the felicity of Emancipation.[12] As powerful animals, breaking through the nets in which hunters enmesh them, escape into the felicity of freedom, after the same manner, Yogins, freed from all bonds, attain to the sinless path that leads to Emancipation.[13] Truly, O king, breaking through the bonds born of cupidity, Yogins, endued with strength, attain to the sinless and auspicious and high path of Emancipation.[14] Feeble animals, O monarch, entangled in nets, are, without doubt, destroyed. Even such is the case with persons destitute of the puissance of Yoga.[15] As weak fishes, O son of Kunti, fallen into the net, become entangled in it, even so, O monarch, men destitute of the puissance of Yoga, encounter destruction (amid the bonds of the world).[16] As birds, O chastiser of foes, when entangled in the fine nets of fowlers, (if weak) meet with their ruin but if endued with strength effect their escape,[17] after the same manner does it happen with Yogins, O chastiser of foes. Bound by the bonds of action, they that are weak meet with destruction, while they that are possessed of strength break through them.[18] A small and weak fire, O king, becomes extinguished when large logs of timber are placed upon it. Even so the Yogin that is weak,

O king, meets with ruin (when brought into contact with the world and its attachments).[19] The same fire, however, O monarch, when it becomes strong, would (without being extinguished) burn with the aid of the wind, the whole Earth.[20] After the same manner, the Yogin, when grown in strength, burning with energy, and possessed of might, is capable of scorching the entire Universe like the Sun that rises at the time of the universal dissolution.[21] As a weak man, O king, is swept away by a current, even so is a weak Yogin helplessly carried away by objects of the senses.[22] An elephant withstands a mighty current. After the same manner, a Yogin, having acquired Yoga-puissance, withstands all objects of the senses.[23] Independent of all things, Yogins, endued with Yoga-puissance and invested with lordship, enter into (the hearts of) the very lords of creation, the Rishis, the deities, and the great Beings in the universe.[24] Neither Yama, nor the Destroyer, nor Death himself of terrible prowess, when angry, ever succeeds in prevailing over the Yogin, O king, who is possessed of immeasurable energy.[25] The Yogin, acquiring Yoga-puissance, can create thousands of bodies and with them wandereth over the Earth.[26] Some amongst them enjoy objects of the senses and then once more set themselves to the practice of the austerest penances, and once again, like the Sun (withdrawing his rays), withdraw themselves from such penances.*[27] The Yogin, who is possessed of strength and whom bonds bind not, certainly succeeds in attaining to Emancipation.[28] I have now discoursed to thee, O monarch, on all these powers of Yoga. I shall once more tell thee what the subtile powers of Yoga are with their indications.[29] Hear, O chief of Bharata's race, the subtile indications of the *Dhāranā* and the *Samādhi* of the Soul (such as Yoga brings about).†[30] As a bowman who is heedful and attentive succeeds in striking the aim, even so the Yogin with absorbed soul, without doubt, attains to Eman-

* The examples of Viçwāmitra and others may be cited in this instance.—T.

† Dhāranā is holding the soul in self-reflection, preventing it the while from wandering. Samādhi is complete abstraction.—T.

cipation.[31] As a man, fixing his mind on a vessel full of some liquid (placed on his head) heedfully ascends a flight of steps,[32] even so the Yogin, fixed and absorbed in his soul, cleanses it and makes it as effulgent as the Sun.[33] As a boat, O son of Kunti, that is tossed on the bosom of the sea is very soon taken by a heedful boatman to the other shore,[34] even so the man of knowledge, by fixing his soul in *Samādhi*, attains to Emancipation, which is so difficult to acquire, after casting off his body, O monarch.[35] As a heedful charioteer, O king, having yoked good steeds (unto his car) takes the car-warrior to the spot he wishes,[36] even so the Yogin, O monarch, heedful in *Dhāranā*, soon attains to the highest spot (*viz.*, Emancipation) like a shaft let off from the bow reaching the object aimed at.[37] The Yogin who stays immovably after having entered his self into the soul, destroys his sins and obtains that indestructible spot which is the possession of those that are righteous.[38] That Yogin who, heedfully observant of high vows, properly unites, O king, his Jiva-soul with the subtile Soul in the navel, the throat, the head, the heart, the chest, the sides, the eye, the ear, and the nose, burns all his acts good and bad of even mountain like proportions, and having recourse to excellent Yoga, attains to Emancipation.'[39-41]

"Yudhishthira said,—'It behooveth thee to tell me, O grandsire, what the kinds of diet are by taking which, and what the things are by conquering which, the Yogin, O Bhārata, acquires Yoga-puissance.'[42]

"Bhishma continued,—'Engaged, O Bhārata, in subsisting upon broken grains of rice and sodden cakes of sesame, and abstaining from oil and butter, the Yogin acquires Yoga-puissance.[43] By subsisting for a long time on powdered barley unmixed with any liquid substance, and by confining himself to only one meal a day, the Yogin, of cleansed soul, acquires Yoga-puissance.[44] By drinking only water mixed with milk, first only once during the day, then once during a fortnight, then once during a month, then once during three months, and then once during a whole year, the Yogin acquires Yoga-puissance.[45] By abstaining entirely from meat,

O king, the Yogin of cleansed soul acquires puissance.*[46] By subjugating lust, and wrath, and heat, and cold and rain, and fear, and grief, and the breath, and all sounds that are agreeable to men, and objects of the senses,[47] and the uneasiness, so difficult to conquer, that is born of abstention from sexual congress, and thirst that is so terrible, O king, and the pleasures of touch, and sleep, and procrastination that is almost unconquerable, O best of kings,[48] high-souled Yogins, divested of attachments, and possessed of great wisdom, aided by their understandings, and equipt with wealth of contemplation and study, cause the subtile soul to stand confest in all its glory.[49] This high (Yoga) path of learned Brāhmanas is exceedingly difficult to tread. No one can walk along this path with ease.[50] That path is like a terrible forest which abounds with innumerable snakes and crawling vermin, with (concealed) pits occurring everywhere, without water for slaking one's thirst, and full of thorns, and inaccessible on that account.[51] Indeed, the path of Yoga is like a road along which no edibles occur, which runs through a desert having all its trees burnt down in a conflagration, and which has been rendered unsafe by being infested with bands of robbers. Very few young men can pass safely through it (for reaching the goal).[52] Like unto a path of this nature, few Brāhmanas can tread along the Yoga-path with ease and comfort. That man who, having betaken himself to this path, ceases to go forward (but turns back after having made some progress), is regarded as guilty of many faults.[53] Men of cleansed souls, O lord of Earth, can stay with ease upon Yoga-contemplation which is like the sharp edge of a razor. Persons of uncleansed souls, however, cannot stay on it.[54] When Yoga-contemplation becomes disturbed or otherwise obstructed, it can never lead the Yogin to an auspicious end even as a vessel that is without a captain cannot take the passengers to the other shore.[55] That man, O son of Kunti,

* 'Akhandam' is 'Sarvakālam'; 'uposhya' is 'tyaktwā.' K. P. Singhh wrongly translates this Verse. He takes 'mānsam' for 'māsam'; but no difference of reading occurs between the Bengal and the Bombay texts.—T.

who practises Yoga-contemplation according to due rites succeeds in casting off both birth and death, and happiness and sorrow.[56] All this that I have told thee has been stated in the diverse treatises bearing upon Yoga. The highest fruits of Yoga are seen in persons of the regenerate order.[57] That highest fruit is identification with Brahma. The high-souled Yogin, possessed of greatness, can enter into and come out of, at his will, Brahman himself who is the lord of all deities, and the boon-giving Vishnu, and Bhava, and Dharma, and the six-faced Kārtikeya, and the (spiritual) sons of Brahman, the quality of Darkness that is productive of much pain, and that of Passion, and that of Sattwa which is pure, and Prakriti which is the highest, and the goddess Siddhi who is the spouse of Varuna, and all kinds of energy, and all-enduring patience, and the bright lord of stars in the firmament with the stars twinkling all around, and the Viçwas, and the (great) snakes, and the Pitris, and all the mountains and hills, and the great and terrible oceans, and all the rivers, and the rain-charged clouds, and serpents, and trees, and Yakshas, and the cardinal and subsidiary points of the compass, and the Gandharvas, and all male persons and all female ones also.[58-61] This discourse, O king, that is connected with the Supreme Being of mighty energy should be regarded as auspicious. The Yogin has Nārāyana for his soul. Prevailing over all things (through his contemplation of the Supreme deity), the high-souled Yogin is capable of creating all things.'"[62]

Section CCCII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O king, thou hast duly propounded unto me, in the way in which it should be, the path of Yoga which is approved by the wise, after the manner of a loving preceptor unto his pupil.[1] I ask now about the principles of the Sānkhya philosophy. Do thou discourse to me on those principles in their entirety. Whatever knowledge exists in the three worlds is known to thee!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen now to what the subtile prin-

ciples are of the followers of the Sānkhya doctrine all of whom have a clear knowledge of the soul. Those principles have been established by all the great and puissant Yatis having Kapila for their first.[3] In that doctrine, O chief of men, no errors are discoverable. Many, indeed, are its merits. In fact, there is no fault in it.[4] Comprehending with the aid of knowledge that all objects exist with faults, indeed, understanding that the objects—so difficult to cast off—with which human beings and Piçāchas and Rākshasas and Yakshas and snakes and Gandharvas and Pitris and those that are wandering in the intermediate orders of being (such as birds and animals) and great birds (such as Garuda and others) and the Maruts and royal sages and regenerate sages and Asuras and Viçwedevas and the celestial Rishis and Yogins invested with supreme puissance and the Prajāpatis and Brahman himself are engaged, and understanding truly what the highest limit is of one's period of existence in this world, and apprehending also the great truth, O foremost of eloquent men, about what is called felicity here,[5-10] and having a clear knowledge of what the sorrows are that overtake when the hour comes all those that are concerned with (transitory) objects, and knowing full well the sorrows of those that have fallen into the intermediate orders of being and of those that have sunk into hell,[11] perceiving all the merits and all the faults of heaven, O Bhārata, and all the demerits that attach to the declarations of the Vedas and all the excellencies that are connected with them,[12] recognising the faults and merits of the Yoga and the Sānkhya systems of philosophy,[13] realizing also that the quality of Sattwa has ten properties, that of Rajas has nine, and that of Tamas has eight, that the Understanding has seven properties,[14] the Mind has six, and Space has five, and once more conceiving that the Understanding has four properties and Tamas has three,[15] and Rajas has two and Sattwa has one, and truly apprehending the path that is followed by all objects when destruction overtakes them and what the course is of self-knowledge,[16] the Sānkhyas, possessed of knowledge and experience and exalted by their perceptions of causes,

and acquiring thorough auspiciousness, attain to the felicity of Emancipation like the rays of the Sun, or the Wind, taking refuge in Space.*[17] Vision is attached to form; the sense of scent to smells; the ear to sound; the tongue to juices;[18] and the skin (or body) to touch. The Wind has for its refuge Space. Stupefaction has Tamas (Darkness) for its refuge. Cupidity has the objects of the senses for its refuge.[19] Vishnu is attached to (the organs of) motion. Cakra is attached to (the organs of) strength. The deity of fire is attached to the stomach. Earth is attached to the Waters. The Waters have Heat (or fire) for their refuge.[20] Heat attaches itself to the Wind; and the Wind has Space for its refuge; and Space has Mahat for its refuge; and Mahat has the Understanding for its foundation.[21] The Understanding has its refuge in Tamas; Tamas has Rajas for its refuge; Rajas is founded upon Sattwa; and Sattwa is attached to the Soul.[22] The Soul has the glorious and puissant Nārāyana for its refuge. That glorious deity has Emancipation for his refuge. Emancipation is independent of all

* The ten properties included in Sattwa or Goodness are gladness, cheerfulness, enthusiasm, fame, righteousness, contentment, faith, sincerity, liberality, and lordship. The nine properties included in Rajas or Passion are belief in the deities, (ostentatious) charity, enjoyment and endurance of happiness and sorrow, disunion, exhibition of manliness, lust and wrath, intoxication, pride, malice, and disposition to revile. The eight qualities included in Tamas or Darkness are unconsciousness, stupefaction, excess of stupefaction, muddiness of the understanding, blindness (of results), sleep, heedlessness, and procrastination. The seven incidents of Buddhi or the Understanding are Mahat, consciousness, and the five subtile essences. The six incidents of Mind are Mind and the five senses. The five incidents appertaining to Space are space, water, wind, light, and earth. According to a different school of philosophy, Buddhi or the Understanding is said to have four incidents appertaining to it, *viz.*, doubt, ascertainment, pride, and memory. Tamas (Darkness) also is otherwise regarded to have only three incidents, *viz.*, inability of comprehension, partial comprehension, and totally erroneous comprehension. Rajas (Passion) is (according to this school) regarded as having only the two incidents of inclination (to act) and sorrow. Sattwa has but one incident, *viz*, Enlightenment.—T.

refuge.[23] Knowing that this body, that is endued with six and ten possessions, is the result of the quality of Sattwa, understanding fully the nature of the physical organism and the character of the Chetanā that dwells within it,[24] recognising the one existent Being that lives in the body, *viz.*, the Soul, which stands aloof from every concern of the body and in which no sin can attach, realising the nature of that second object, *viz.*, the acts of persons attached to the objects of the senses,[25] understanding also the character of the senses and the sensual objects which have their refuge in the Soul, appreciating the difficulty of Emancipation and the scriptures that bear upon it,[26] knowing fully the nature of the vital breaths called Prāna, Apāna, Samāna, Vyāna, and Udāna, as also the two other breaths, *viz.*, the one going downward and the other moving upward,[27] indeed, knowing those seven breaths ordained to accomplish seven different functions, ascertaining the nature of the Prajāpatis and the Rishis and the high paths, many in number, of virtue or righteousness,[28] and the seven Rishis and the innumerable royal Rishis, O scorcher of foes, and the great celestial Rishis and the other regenerate Rishis endued with the effulgence of the Sun,[29] beholding all these falling away from their puissance in course of many long ages, O monarch, hearing of the destruction of even of all the mighty beings in the universe,[30] understanding also the inauspicious end that is attained, O king, by creatures of sinful acts, and the miseries endured by those that fall into the river Vaitarani in the realms of Yama,[31] and the inauspicious wanderings of creatures through diverse wombs, and the character of their residence in the unholy uterus in the midst of blood and water[32] and phlegm and urine and fæces, all of foul smell, and then in bodies that result from the union of blood and the vital seed, of marrow and sinews,[33] abounding with hundreds of nerves and arteries and forming an impure mansion of nine doors, comprehending also what is for his own good and what those diverse combinations are which are productive of good,[34] beholding the abominable conduct of creatures whose natures are characterised by Darkness or Passion or Goodness, O chief

of Bharata's race,[35]—conduct that is reprehended, in view of its incapacity to acquire Emancipation, by the followers of the Sānkhya doctrine who are fully conversant with the Soul, beholding the swallowing up of the Moon and the Sun by Rāhu,[36] the falling of stars from their fixed positions and the diversions of constellations from their orbits, knowing the sad separation of all united objects,[37] and the diabolical behaviour of creatures in devouring one another, seeing the absence of all intelligence in the infancy of human beings and the deterioration and destruction of the body,[38] marking the little attachment creatures have to the quality of Sattwa in consequence of their being overwhelmed by wrath and stupefaction, beholding also only one among thousands of human beings resolved to struggle after the acquisition of Emancipation,[39] understanding the difficulty of attaining to Emancipation according to what is stated in the scriptures, seeing the marked solicitude that creatures manifest for all unattained objects and their comparative indifference to all objects that have been attained,[40] marking the wickedness that results from all objects of the senses, O king, and the repulsive bodies, O son of Kunti, of persons reft of life,[41] and the residence, always fraught with grief, of human beings, O Bhārata, in houses (in the midst of spouses and children), knowing the end of those terrible and fallen men who become guilty of slaying Brāhmanas,[42] and of those wicked Brāhmanas that are addicted to the drinking of alcoholic stimulants, and the equally sad end of those that become criminally attached to the spouses of their preceptors,[43] and of those men, O Yudhishthira, that do not properly reverence their mothers, as also of those that have no reverence and worship to offer to the deities,[44] understanding also, with the help of that knowledge (which their philosophy imparts), the end that overtakes all perpetrators of wicked acts, and the diverse ends that overtake those who have taken birth among the intermediate orders,[45] ascertaining the diverse declarations of the Vedas, the courses of seasons, the fading of years, of months,[46] of fortnights, and of days, beholding directly the waxing and the waning

of the Moon,[47] seeing the rising and the ebbing of the seas, and the diminution of wealth and its increase once more,[48] and the separation of united objects, the lapse of Yugas, the destruction of mountains, the drying up of rivers,[49] the deterioration of (the purity of) the several orders and the end also of that deterioration occurring repeatedly, beholding the birth, decrepitude, death, and sorrows of creatures,[50] knowing truly the faults attaching to the body and the sorrows to which human beings are subject, and the vicissitudes to which the bodies of creatures are subject,[51] and understanding all the faults that attach to their own souls, and also all the inauspicious faults that attach to their own bodies, (the followers of the Sānkhya philosophy succeed in attaining to Emancipation).'[52]

"Yudhishthira said,—'O thou of immeasurable energy, what are those faults that thou seest attaching to one's body? It behooveth thee to expound this doubt to me fully and truly!'[53]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O slayer of foes! The Sānkhyas or followers of Kapila, who are conversant with all paths and endued with wisdom, say that there are in all five faults, O puissant one, in the human body.[54] They are Desire and Wrath and Fear and Sleep and Breath.[55] These faults are seen in the bodies of all embodied creatures. They that are endued with wisdom cut the root of wrath with the aid of Forgiveness. Desire is cut off by casting off all purposes.[56] By cultivation of the quality of Goodness (Sattwa) sleep is conquered, and Fear is conquered by cultivating Heedfulness. Breath is conquered by abstemiousness of diet, O king.[57] Truly understanding *gunas* by the aid of hundreds of *gunas*, and faults by hundreds of faults, and diverse causes by hundreds of causes,[58] ascertaining that the world is like the froth of water, enveloped by hundreds of illusions flowing from Vishnu, like a painted edifice, and as unsubstantial as a reed,[59] beholding it to be (as terrible as) a dark pit, or as unreal as bubbles of water, for the years that compose its age are as shortlived (compared to the duration of eternity) as bubbles, seeing it exposed to immediate destruction, bereft of happi-

ness, having certain ruin for its end and from which it can never escape,[60] sunk in Rajas and Tamas, and utterly helpless like an elephant sunk in mire,—noting all this—the Sānkhyas, O king, endued with great wisdom, casting off all affection arising from one's relations towards one's children,[61] by the aid, O king, of that extensive and all-embracing knowledge which their system advocates, and cutting off quickly, with the weapon of knowledge and the bludgeon of penances, O Bhārata, all inauspicious scents born of Rajas and all scents of a like nature arising from Tamas and all auspicious scents arising from Sattwa and all pleasures of the touch (and of the other senses) born of the same three qualities and inhering to the body,[62-63]—indeed, O Bhārata, aided by the Yoga of knowledge, these Yatis crowned with success,—cross the Ocean of life. That Ocean, so terrible, has sorrow for its waters. Anxiety and grief constitute its deep lakes. Disease and death are its gigantic alligators. The great fears that strike the heart at every step are its huge snakes.[64] The deeds inspired by Tamas are its tortoises. Those inspired by Rajas are its fishes. Wisdom constitutes the raft for crossing it. The affections entertained for objects of the senses are its mire. Decrepitude constitutes its region of grief and trouble.* Knowledge, O chastiser of foes, is its island. Acts constitute its great depth. Truth is its shores. Pious observances constitute the verdant weeds floating on its bossom.† Envy constitutes its rapid and mighty current. The diverse sentiments of the heart constitute its mines. The diverse kinds of gratification are its valuable gems. Grief and fever are its winds. Misery and thirst are its mighty eddies. Painful and fatal diseases are its huge elephants. The assemblage of bones are its flights of steps, and phlegm is its froth. Gifts are its pearl-banks. The lakes of blood are its corals. Loud laughter constitutes its roars. Diverse sciences are its impassability. Tears are its brine. Renun-

* 'Durga' is an inaccessible region such as a forest or wilderness which cannot be passed through except with great pain and danger.—T.

† The correct reading seems to be 'sthita-vratati-samkulam.'—T.

ciation of company constitutes the high refuge (of those that seek to cross it). Children and spouses are its unnumbered leeches. Friends and kinsmen are the cities and towns on its shores. Abstention from injury, and Truth, are its boundary line. Death is its storm-wave. The knowledge of Vedānta is its island (capable of affording refuge to those that are tossed upon its waters). Acts of compasson towards all creatures constitute its life-buoys,* and Emancipation is the priceless commodity offered to those voyaging on its waters in search of marchandise. Like its substantive prototype with its equine head disgorging flames of fire, this ocean too has its fiery terrors. Having transcended the liability, that is so difficult to transcend, of dwelling within the gross body, the Sānkhyas enter into pure space.†[65-72] Surya then bears, with his rays, those righteous men that are practicers of the Sānkhya doctrines. Like the fibres of the lotus-stalk conveying water to the flower into which they all converge, Surya, drinking all things from the universe, conveys them unto those good and wise men.‡[73] Their attachments all destroyed, possessed of energy, endued with wealth of penances, and crowned with success, these Yatis, O Bhārata, are borne by

---

* 'Udadhi' is, literally, a water-jar. In this country most people, while swimming, use water-jars as buoys. The mouth of the jar being dipped into the water, the air confined within it serve to support heavy weights. I have heard that the most rapid currents are crossed by milk-maids in this way, all the while bearing milk pails on their heads.—T.

† In the second line of 72, 'dustaram-janma' means 'janma-yuktam dustaram.'—T.

‡ The sense seems to be that by practising the Sānkhya doctrines men cease to have any regard for even their gross bodies. They succeed in realising their existence as independent of all earthly or heavenly objects. What is meant by the Sun bearing them in his rays and conveying to them all things from every part of the universe is that these men acquire great puissance. This is not the puissance of Yoga but of knowledge. Everything being regarded as unsubstantial and transitory, the position of Indra himself, or of Brahman, is looked upon as undesirable and unworthy of acquisition. Sincere conviction of this kind and the course of canduct that is conformable to it is literally puissance of the highest kind, for all the purposes of puissance are capable of being served by it.—T.

that wind[74] which is subtile, cooling, fragrant, and delicious to the touch, O Bhārata! In fact, that wind which is the best of the seven winds, and which blows in regions of great felicity,[75] conveys them, O son of Kunti, to that which is the highest end in space.* Then space into which they are carried, O monarch, conveys them to the highest end of Rajas.†[76] Rajas then bears them to the highest end of Sattwa. Sattwa then bears them, O thou of pure soul, to the Supreme and puissant Nārāyana.[77] The puissant and pure-souled Nārāyana at last, through himself, bears them to the Supreme Soul. Having reached the Supreme Soul, those stainless persons, who have (by that time) become the body of (what is called) That,‡[78] attain to immortality, and they have never afterwards to return from that position, O king! That is the highest end, O son of Prithā, which is attained by those high-souled men who have transcended the influence of all pairs of opposites.' "[79]

"Yudhishthira said,—'O sinless one, have those persons of firm vows, after they have attained to that excellent position which is fraught with puissance and felicity, any recollection of their lives including birth and death?[80] It behooveth thee to tell me properly what the truth is in this respect. O thou of Kuru's race, I do not think it proper to question any one else than thee![81] Observing the scriptures bearing upon Emancipation, I find this great fault in the subject (for certain scriptures on the topic declare that consciousness disappears in the emancipate state, while other scriptures declare the very reverse of this). If, having attained to that high state, the Yatis continue to live in consciousness,[82] it would seem, O king, that the religion of Pravritti is superior. If, again, consciousness disappears from the emancipate state and one who has become eman-

---

* This is taken as meaning that the Sānkhyas are conveyed to the firmament of the heart. Perhaps, what is intended by it is that they become withdrawn from all external objects and even the impressions of all external things.—T.

† Perhaps, this means the pleasures of heaven.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, they who have identified themselves with Brahma.—T.

cipate only resembles a person sunk in dreamless slumber, then nothing can be more improper than to say that there is really no consciousness in Emancipation (for all that happens in dreamless slumber is that one's consciousness is temporarily overshadowed and suspended, but never lost, for it returns when one awakes from that slumber).*'[83]

"Bhishma said,—'However difficult it may be to answer it, the question which thou hast asked, O son, is proper. Verily, the question is of such a kind that even they that are possessed of great learning become stupefied in answering it, O chief of Bharata's race.[84] For all that, hear what the truth is as expounded by me. The high-souled followers of Kapila have set their high understandings on this point.'[85] The senses of knowledge, O king, planted in the bodies of embodied creatures, are employed in their respective functions of perception. They are the instruments of the Soul, for it is through them that that subtile Being perceives.†[86] Disunited with the Soul, the senses are like lumps of wood, and are, without doubt, destroyed (in respect of the functions they serve) like the froth that is seen on the bosom of the ocean.‡[87] When the embodied creature, O scorcher of foes,

---

* Yudhishthira's question seems to be this. Is there or is there not consciousness in the emancipate state? Different scriptures answer this question differently. If it be said that there is consciousness in that state, then why discard heaven and its pleasures, or the religion of Pravritti or acts which leads to those pleasures? Where is the necessity then of Sannyāsa or the religion of Nivritti or abstention from all acts? On the supposition of there being consciousness in the emancipate state, the Religion of Pravritti should be taken as superior. If, on the other hand, the existence of consciousness be denied, that would be an error. 'Dukshataram' is 'ayuktaram.'—T.

† Although I make use of the word 'perceive' yet remembering that the mind is included among the senses and regarded as the sixth sense, the functions of recollection, representation, &c., are also implied by the word 'paçyati.' The Burdwan translator gives a ridiculously erroneous version of this Verse.—T.

‡ The Commentator explains that the simile of the froth is introduced in consequence of its disappearance with the disappearance of water. K. P. Singha is incorrect in taking the instance of froth as illustrative of the *quickness* of the destruction.—T.

sinks into sleep along with his senses, the subtile Soul then roves among all objects like the wind through space.*[88] The subtile Soul, during slumber, continues to see (all forms) and touch all objects of touch, O king, and take in other perceptions, as well as when it is awake.[89] In consequence of their inability to act without their director, the senses, during sleep, all become extinguished in their respective places (and lose their powers) like snakes deprived of poison.†[90] At such times, the subtile Soul, repairing into the respective places of all the senses, without doubt, discharges all their functions.‡[91] All the qualities of Sattwa, all the attributes of the Understanding, O Bhārata,[92] as also those of Mind, and Space, and Wind, O thou of righteous soul, and all the attributes of liquid substances,[93] of Water, O Pārtha, and of Earth,—these senses with these qualities,—O Yudhishthira, which inhere to Jiva-souls, are along with the Jiva-soul itself, overwhelmed by the Supreme Soul or Brahma. Acts also, good and bad, overwhelm that Jiva-soul. Like disciples waiting upon their preceptor with reverence, the senses too wait upon the Jiva-soul.[94-95] When the Jiva-soul transcends Prakriti, it attains to Brahma that is without change, that is highest, that is Nārāyana, that is beyond all pairs of opposites, and that transcends Prakriti.[96] Freed from both merit and demerit, the Jiva-soul, entering the Supreme Soul which is divested of all attributes, and which is the home of all auspiciousness, does not return thence, O Bhārata.[97] What remains, O son, is the mind with the senses, O Bhārata. These have to come back once more at the appointed season for doing the bidding of their great Master.$[98] Soon after, O son of Kunti, (when this body is

---

* 'Sarvatra' does not mean 'through every part of the sleeper's body' as K. P. Singha takes it, but 'sarvavishaye' as the Commentator correctly explains it.—T.

† 'Iha' is 'sapne.' 'Aniçah' is 'nāsti içah or pravartakah yasya.'—T.

‡ For the Soul, in dreams, sees and hears and touches and smells, &c., precisely as it does while awake.—T.

$ The sense seems to be that a person who becomes emancipate in this life becomes so in Samādhi. When the state of Samādhi is over, his mind and senses return; and returning they do the bidding of the

cast off) the Yati striving after Emancipation, endued as he is with knowledge and desirous as he is of Guna, succeeds in attaining to that peace of Emancipation which is his who becomes bodiless.*[99] The Sānkhyas, O king, are endued with great wisdom. They succeed in attaining to the highest end by means of this kind of knowledge. There is no knowledge that is equal to this.[100] Do not yield to any kind of doubt. The Knowledge which is described in the system of the Sānkhyas is regarded as the highest. That knowledge is immutable and is eternally fixed. It is eternal Brahma in fulness.[101] It has no beginning, middle, and end. It transcends all pairs of opposites. It is the cause of the creation of the universe. It stands in fulness. It is without deterioration of any kind. It is uniform, and everlasting. Thus are its praises sung by the wise.[102] From it flow creation and destruction and all modifications. The great Rishis speak of it and applaud it in the scriptures.[103] All learned Brāhmanas and all the deities and all righteous men regard it as flowing from Brahma, Supreme, Divine, Infinite, Immutable, and Undeteriorating.[104] All Brāhmanas again that are attached to objects of the senses adore and applaud it by ascribing to it attributes that belong to illusion.† The same is the view of Yogins well observant of penances and meditation and of Sānkhyas of immeasurable insight.[105] The Crutis declare, O son of Kunti, that the Sānkhya form of philosophy is the form of that Formless One. The cognitions

---

Supreme, *i. e.*, bring about both happiness and misery, which, of course, are the consequences of the acts of past lives, though that happiness and misery are not felt. In the next Verse is said that these men very soon leave their bodies and become freed from rebirth.—T.

* There are two kinds of Emancipation ; one is attainable here, in this body. It is 'Jivan-mukti' ; the other is 'Videha-kaivalya' or that which becomes one's when one is bodiless. In 98, Jivan-mukti has been spoken of. In this Verse, the observations apply to 'Videha-kaivalya.'—T.

† 'Vadanti' is 'stuvanti.' Such men hymn its praises by regarding it as the Supreme Deity possessed of attributes. Those attributes, of course, are the result of illusion, for in its real nature there can be no attributes in Brahma.—T.

(according to that philosophy) have, O chief of Bharata's race, been said to be the knowledge of Brahma.*[106]

"'There are two kinds of creatures on Earth, O lord of Earth, *viz.*, mobile and immobile. Of these, those that are mobile are superior.[107] That high knowledge, O king, which exists in persons conversant with Brahma, and that which occurs in the Vedas, and that which is found in other scriptures, and that in Yoga, and that which may be seen in the diverse Purānas, are all, O monarch, to be found in Sānkhya philosophy.†[108] Whatever knowledge is seen to exist in high histories, whatever knowledge occurs, O king, in the sciences appertaining to the acquisition of wealth as approved by the wise, whatever other knowledge exists in this world,—all these,—flow, O high-souled monarch, from the high knowledge that occurs among the Sānkhyas.[109] Tranquillity of soul, high puissance, all subtile knowledge of which the scriptures speak, penances of subtile force, and all kinds of felicity, O king, have all been duly ordained in the Sānkhya system.[110] Failing to acquire, O son of Prithā, that complete knowledge which is recommended by their system, the Sānkhyas attain to the status of deities and pass many years in felicity. Lording it over the celestials as they will, they fall, upon the expiration of the allotted period, among learned Brāhmanas and Yatis.‡[111] Casting off this body, those regenerate ones that follow the Sānkhya system enter into the superior state of Brahma like the celestials entering into the firmament, by devoting themselves wholly to that adorable system which is theirs and

---

*'Brahma is knowledge without duality, *i. e.*, knowledge without the consciousness of knower and known. The knowledge or cognition of an object, when the object is annihilated, assumes the form of that knowledge which is called Brahma.—T.

† The Commentator explains that the object of this Verse is to show that among mobile creatures those endued with knowledge are superior, and among all kinds of knowledge, the knowledge occurring in the Sānkhya system is the highest.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, if in consequence of any defect of practice or *Sādhana*, the Sānkhyas fail to attain to Emancipation, they at least become translated into gods.—T.

which is worshipped by all wise men.[112] Those regenerate persons that are devoted to the acquisition of that knowledge which is recommended in the Sānkhya system, even if they fail to attain to eminence, are never seen to fall among intermediate creatures, or to sink into the status of sinful men.[113] That high-souled person who is fully conversant with the vast, high, ancient, ocean-like, and immeasurable Sānkhya system that is pure and liberal and agreeable, becomes, O king, equal to Nārāyana.[114] I have now told thee, O god among men, the truth about the Sānkhya system. It is the embodiment of Nārāyana, of the universe as it exists from the remotest time.* When the time of Creation comes, He causes the Creation to start into life, and when the time comes for destruction, He swallows up everything. Having withdrawn everything into his own body he goes to sleep,—that inner Soul of the universe.' "†[115]

Section CCCIII.

"Yudhisthira said,—'What is that which is called Undeteriorating and by attaining to which no one has to come back? What, again, is that which is called Deteriorating, and by attaining to which one has to return once more?[1] O slayer of foes, I ask thee the distinction that exists O thou of mighty arms, between the Deteriorating and the Undeteriorating ones for understanding them both truly, O delighter of the Kurus.[2] Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas, speak of thee as an Ocean of knowledge. Highly-blessed Rishis and Yatis of high souls do the same.[3] Thou hast very few days to live. When the Sun turns from his southern path for entering into the northern, thou shalt attain to thy high end.[4] When thou shalt leave us, from whom shall we hear of all that is beneficial for us? Thou art the lamp of Kuru's race. Indeed, thou art always blazing with the light of knowledge.[5] O perpetuater of Kuru's

---

* *I. e.*, it is everything.—T.

† That Nārāyana who does all this is the embodiment of the Sānkhya system.—T.

race, I desire, therefore, to hear all this from thee. Listening to thy discourses that are always sweet like nectar, my curiosity, without being satiated, is always increasing!'[6]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall, in this connection, relate to thee the old narrative of the discourse that took place between Vaçishtha and king Karāla of Janaka's race.[7] Once on a time when that foremost of Rishis, *viz.*, Vaçishtha, endued with the effulgence of the Sun, was seated at his ease, king Janaka asked him about that highest knowledge which is for our supreme good.[8] Highly proficient in that department of knowledge which is concerned with the Soul and possessed of certain conclusions in respect of all branches of that science,[9]* as Maitrāvaruni, that foremost of Rishis, was seated, the king, approaching him with joined hands, asked him in humble words, well pronounced and sweet and destitute of all controversial spirit, this question,[10]—O holy one, I desire to hear of Supreme and Eternal Brahma by attaining to which men of wisdom have not to come back.[11] I desire also to know that which is called Destructible and That into which this universe enters when destroyed. Indeed, what is That which is said to be indestructible, auspicious, beneficial, and free from evil of every kind?—'[12]

"'Vaçishtha said,—Hear, O lord of Earth, as to how this universe is destroyed, and of That which was never destroyed and which will never be destroyed at any time.[13] Twelve thousand years, (according to the measure of the celestials,) make a Yuga. Four such Yugas, taken a thousand times, make a Kalpa which measures one day of Brahman.†[14] Brahman's night also, O king, is of the same measure. When Brahman himself is destroyed,‡ Cambhu of formless soul and

---

* The Commentator explains the compound 'Adhyātmagatiniçchayam' differently.—T.

† Both the Vernacular translators render this Verse wrongly.—T.

‡ 'Yasyānte' is explained by the Commentator as implying 'Brahmanah ante,' and not 'at the end of that night.' The line occurs in Manu (Chap. I, 74.) where 'ante' refers to Brahman's day and night. Vaçishtha here refers to Mahāpralaya, and not any intermediate Pralaya.—T.

to whom the Yoga attributes of Animā, Laghimā, &c., naturally inhere, awakes, and once more creates that First or Eldest of all creatures, possessed of vast proportions, of infinite deeds, endued with form, and identifiable with the universe. That Cambhu is otherwise called Içāna (the lord of everything). He is pure Effulgence, and transcends all deterioration,[15-16] having his hands and feet stretching in all directions, with eyes and head and mouth everywhere, and with ears also in every place. That Being exists, overwhelming the entire universe.[17] The eldest-born Being is called Hiranyagarbha. This holy one has (in the Vedānta) been called the Understanding. In the Yoga scriptures, He is called the Great, and Virinchi, and the Unborn.[18] In the Sānkhya scriptures, He is indicated by diverse names, and regarded as having Infinity for his Soul. Of diverse forms and constituting the soul of the universe, He is regarded as One and Indestructible.[19] The three worlds of infinite ingredients have been created by Him without assistance from any source and have been overwhelmed by him. In consequence of His manifold forms, He is said to be of universal form.[20] Undergoing modifications He creates Himself by Himself. Endued with mighty energy, He first creates Consciousness and that Great Being called Prajāpati endued with Consciousness.[21] The Manifest (or Hiranyagarbha) is created from the Unmanifest. This is called by the learned the Creation of Knowledge. The creation of Mahān (or Virāt) and Consciousness, by Hiranyagarbha, is the Creation of Ignorance.*[22] Ascription of attributes (worthy of worship) and the destruction thereof, called respectively by the names of Ignorance and Knowledge by persons learned in the interpretation of the Crutis, then arose, referring to this, that, or the other of the three (*viz.*, Akshara, Hiranyagarbha, or Virāt).†[23] Know,

---

* In the creation of Mahān or Prajāpati or Virāt, and of Consciousness, the element of Tamas or Ignorance predominates.—T.

† This is a very abstruse Verse. I am not sure that I have understood it correctly. What is said here seems to be this: from Akshara arose Hiranyagarbha; from Hiranyagarbha arose Virāt. This, that, or the other is worshipped by ordinary men, while persons possessed of

O king, that the creation of the (subtile) elements from Consciousness is the third.* In all kinds of Consciousness is the fourth creation which flows from modification of the third.[24] This fourth creation comprises Wind and Light and Space and Water and Earth, with their properties of sound, touch, form, taste, and scent.[25] This aggregate of ten arose, without doubt, at the same time. The fifth creation, O monarch, is that which has arisen from combinations of the primal elements (named above).[26] This comprises the ear, the skin, the eyes, the tongue, and the nose forming the fifth, and speech, and the two hands, and the two legs, and the lower duct, and the organs of generation.[27] The first five of these constitute the organs of knowledge, and the last five the organs of action. All these, with mind, arose simultaneously, O king.[28] These constitute the four and twenty topics that exist in the forms of all living creatures. By understanding these properly, Brāhmanas possessed of insight into the truth have never to yield to sorrow.[29] In the three worlds a combination of these, called body, is possessed by all embodied creatures. Indeed, O king, a combination of those is known as such in deities and men and Dānavas,[30] in Yakshas and spirits and Gandharvas, and Kinnaras and great snakes, and Chāranas and Piçāchas,[31] in celestial Rishis and Rākshasas, in biting flies, and worms, and gnats, and vermin born of filth and rats, and dogs and Cwapākas and Chaineyas and Chandālas and Pukkasas,[32] in elephants and steeds and asses and tigers, and trees, and kine. Whatever other crea-

---

real insight do not invest any of them with attributes worthy of worship. The speaker says that the ascription of attributes, called Ignorance, and the non-ascription (or destruction of that ascription,) called Knowledge, (with respect to Virāt or Hiranyagarbha or Akshara), then arose. It might be asked that when there were no men as yet to worship or to condemn such worship, how could the two arise? The answer is that the two, in their subtile forms, came into existence and were afterwards availed of by men when men came into being,—T.

* From Akshara or the Indestructible is Hiranyagarbha. From Hiranyagarbha is Mahān or Virāt, and Consciousness. From the last are the subtile elements.—T.

tures exist in water or space or on earth, for there is no other place in which creatures exist as we have heard, have this combination.[33-4] All these, O sire, included within the class called Manifest, are seen to be destroyed day after day. Hence, all creatures produced by union of these four and twenty are said to be destructible.[35]

" 'This then is the Indestructible. And since the universe, which is made up of Manifest and Unmanifest, meet with destruction, therefore, it is said to be Destructible.[36] The very Being called Mahān who is the eldest-born is always spoken of as an instance of the Destructible. I have now told thee, O monarch, all that thou hadst asked me.[37] Transcending the four and twenty topics already adverted to is the twenty fifth called Vishnu. That Vishnu, in consequence of the absence of all attributes, is not a topic (of knowledge) though as that which pervades all the topics, he has been called so by the wise.[38] Since that which is destructible has caused all this that is Manifest, therefore, all this is endued with form. The twentyfourth, which is Prakriti, is said to preside over all this (which has sprung from her modifications). The twentyfifth, which is Vishnu, is formless and, therefore, cannot be said to preside over the universe.*[39] It is that Unmanifest (Prakriti), which, when endued with body (in consequence of union with Chit) dwells in the hearts of all creatures endued with body. As regards eternal Chetana (the Indestructible), although he is without attributes and without form, yet he (in consequence of a union with Prakriti) assumes all forms.[40] Uniting with Prakriti which has the attributes of birth and death, he also assumes the attributes of birth and death. And in consequence of such union he becomes an object of perception and though in

---

* The meanings of such Verses depend upon the grammatical significations of certain words that are used. They can scarcely be rendered accurately into any other language not derived from Sanskrit. What is said here is that it is Prakriti which must be said to be the *Adhishthātri* of the universe. Vishnu is not so. Vishnu, Brahma, Akshara, or the Indestructible, however, is said to *cover* or *pervade* the universe (vyāpnoti). Vishnu is *Vyāpaka* but not *Adhishthātri*.—T.

reality divested of all attributes yet he comes to be invested therewith.[41] It is in this way that the Mahat-Soul (Hiranyagarbha), becoming united with Prakriti and invested with Ignorance, undergoes modifications and becomes conscious of Self.[42] Uniting with the attributes of Sattwa and Rajas and Tamas, he becomes identified with diverse creatures belonging to diverse orders of Being, in consequence of his forgetfulness and his waiting upon Ignorance.[43] In consequence of his birth and destruction arising from the fact of his dwelling in union with Prakriti, he thinks himself to be no other than what he apparently is. Regarding himself as this or that, he follows the attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas.[44] Under the influence of Tamas, he attains to diverse kinds of conditions that are affected by Tamas. Under the influences of Rajas and Sattwa, he attains similarly to conditions that are affected by Rajas and Sattwa.[45] There are three colors in all, *viz.*, White, Red, and Dark. All those colors appertain to Prakriti (so that He it is who becomes White or Red or Dark according as the nature of the Prakriti is with which He becomes identified for the time being).[46] Through Tamas one goes to hell. Through Rajas one attains to (and remains in) the status of humanity. Through Sattwa, people ascend to the regions of the deities and become sharers of great felicity.[47] By adhering to sin continuously one sinks into the intermediate order of beings. By acting both righteously and sinfully one attains to the status of humanity. By acting only righteously, one attains to the status of the deities.[48] In this way the twentyfifth, *viz.*, Akshara (the Indestructible), the wise say, by union with the unmanifest (Prakriti), becomes transformed into Kshara (destructible). By means of knowledge, however, the Indestructible becomes displayed in His true nature.—' "[49]

SECTION CCCIV.

"'Vaçishtha said,—Thus in consequence of his forgetfulness the Soul follows Ignorance and obtains thousands of bodies one after another.[1] He attains to thousands of births

among the intermediate orders and sometimes among the very gods in consequence of his union with (particular) attributes and the puissance of attributes.*[2] From the status of humanity he goes to heaven and from heaven he comes back to humanity, and from humanity he sinks into hell for many long years.[3] As the worm that fabricates the cocoon shuts itself completely on every side by means of the threads it weaves itself, even so the Soul, though in reality transcending all attributes, invests himself on every side with attributes (and deprives himself of liberty).†[4] Though transcending (in his real nature) both happiness and misery, it is thus that he subjects himself to happiness and misery. It is thus also that, though transcending all diseases, the Soul regards himself to be afflicted by headache and opthalmia and toothache and affections of the throat and abdominal dropsy, and burning thirst, and enlargement of glands, and cholera, and vitiligo, and leprosy, and burns, and asthma and phthisis, and epilepsy, and whatever other diseases of diverse kinds are seen in the bodies of embodied creatures.[5-7] Regarding himself, through error, as born among thousands of creatures in the intermediate orders of being, and sometimes among the gods, he endures misery and enjoys the fruits of his good deeds.[8] Invested with Ignorance he regards himself as robed sometimes in white cloth and sometimes in full dress consisting of four pieces, or as lying on floors (instead of on beds on bedsteads) or with hands and feet contracted like those of frogs, or as seated upright in the attitude of ascetic contemplation, or as clad in rags or as lying or sitting under the canopy of heaven or within mansions built of bricks and stone or on rugged stones or on ashes or bare stones or on the bare earth or on beds or on battlefields or in water or in mire or on wooden planks or on diverse kinds of beds; or,

---

* In the previous Section it has been said that through Tamas he takes birth among the intermediate orders, through Rajas among human beings, and through Sattwa among gods. The root 'kshi' in 'Gunakshayāt' means 'aiçaryya' or puissance.—T.

† The soul weaves a cocoon with attributes (or, acts which result from attributes), and though free deprives himself of freedom.—T.

impelled by desire of fruit, he regards himself as clad in a scant piece of cloth made of grass or as totally nude or as robed in silk or in skin of the black antelope or in cloth made of flax or in sheep-skin or in tiger-skin or in lion-skin or in fabric of hemp, or in barks of birch or in cloths made of the produce of prickly plants, or in vestures made of threads woven by worms or of torn rags or in diverse other kinds of cloth too numerous to mention. The soul regards himself also as wearing diverse kinds of ornaments and gems, or as eating diverse kinds of food.[9-15] He regards himself as sometimes eating at intervals of one night, or once at the same hour every day, or as at the fourth, the sixth, and the eighth hour every day,[16] or as once in six or seven or eight nights, or as once in ten or twelve days,[17] or as once in a month, or as eating only roots, or fruits, or as subsisting upon air or water alone, or on cakes of sesame husk, or curds or cowdung,[18] or the urine of the cow or potherbs or flowers or moss or raw food,[19] or as subsisting on fallen leaves of trees or fruits that have fallen down and lay scattered on the ground, or diverse other kinds of food, impelled by the desire of winning (ascetic) success.[20] The Soul regards himself as adopting the observance of Chāndrāyana according to the rites ordained in the scriptures, or diverse other vows and observances, and the courses of duty prescribed for the four modes of life, and even direlections of duty,[21] and the duties of other subsidiary modes of life included in the four principal ones, and even diverse kinds of practices that distinguish the wicked and sinful. The Soul regards himself as enjoying retired spots and the delightful shades of mountains and the cool vicinity of springs and fountains,[22] and solitary river banks and secluded forests, and sacred spots dedicated to the deities, and lakes and waters withdrawn from the busy haunts of men,[23] and lone mountain caves affording the accomodation that houses and mansions afford. The Soul regards himself as employed in the recitation of different kinds of hidden *mantras* or as observing different vows[24] and rules and diverse kinds of penances, and sacrifices of many kinds, and rites of diverse sorts.[25] The Soul regards himself as adopting sometimes the ways of

traders and merchants and the practices of Brāhmánas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Cudras, and gifts of diverse kinds unto those that are destitute or blind or helpless.[26] In consequence of his being invested with Ignorance, the Soul adopts the different attributes of Sattwa and Rajas and Tamas, and Righteousness and Wealth and pleasure.[27] Under the influence of Prakriti, the Soul, undergoing modifications himself, observes and adopts and practises all these and regards himself as such. Indeed, the Soul regards himself as employed in the utterance of the sacred *mantras* Swāhā and Swadhā and Vashat, and in bowing unto those he regards as his Superiors;[28] in officiating in the sacrifices of others, in teaching pupils, making gifts and accepting them; in performing sacrifices and studying the scriptures, and doing all other acts and rites of this kind.[29] The Soul regards himself as concerned with birth and death and disputes and slaughter. All these, the learned say, constitute the path of acts good and bad.[30] It is the goddess Prakriti who causes birth and death. When the time approaches for universal Destruction, all existent objects and attributes are withdrawn by the Supreme Soul which then exists alone[31] like the Sun withdrawing at evening all his rays; and when the time comes for Creation He once more creates and spreads them out like the Sun shedding and spreading out his rays when morning comes. Even thus the Soul, for the sake of sport, repeatedly regards himself invested with all these conditions,[32] which are his own forms and attributes, infinite in number, and agreeable to himself. It is in this way that the Soul, though really transcending the three attributes, becomes attached to the path of acts and creates by modification Prakriti invested with the attributes of birth and death and identical with all acts and conditions which are characterised by the three attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas. Arrived at the path of action, the Soul regards particular acts to be endued with particular characteristics and productive of particular ends.[33-34] O monarch, the whole of this universe has been blinded by Prakriti and all things have been diversely overwhelmed (through Prakriti) by the attributes

of Rajas and Tamas.[35] It is in consequence of the Soul being invested by Prakriti that these pairs of opposites, productive of happiness and woe, repeatedly come. It is in consequence of this Ignorance that Jiva regards these sorrows to be his and imagines them as pursuing him.[36] Indeed, O monarch, through that Ignorance it is that Jiva imagines he should anyhow cross those sorrows, and that he should, going into the regions of the gods, enjoy the felicity that awaits all his good acts. It is through Ignorance that he thinks he should enjoy and endure these delights and these woes here in this world.[37-38] Through Ignorance Jiva thinks, —I should secure my happiness. By continually doing good acts, I may have happiness in this life till its close and I shall be happy in all my future lives.[39] Through, again, the (evil) acts I do in this life unending sorrow may become mine. The status of humanity is fraught with great misery, for from it one sinks into hell.[40] From hell, it will take many long years before I can come back to the status of humanity. From humanity I shall attain to the status of the gods. From that superior status I shall have to come back again to humanity[41] and thence to sink into hell once more!—One who always regards this combination of the primal elements and the senses, with the Chit's reflection in it, to be thus invested with the characteristics of the Soul,[42] has repeatedly to wander among gods and human beings and to sink into hell. Being always invested with the idea of meum, Jiva has to make a round of such births.[43] Millions upon millions of births have to be gone through by Jiva in the successive forms he assumes, all of which are liable to death. He who does acts in this way, which are all fraught with good and bad fruits,[44] has in the three worlds to assume successive forms and to enjoy and endure fruits corresponding therewith. It is Prakriti that causes acts fraught with good and bad acts;[45] and it is Prakriti that enjoys and endures the fruits thereof in the three worlds. Indeed, Prakriti follows the course of acts. The status of the intermediate beings, of humanity, and of the gods, as well,[46]—these three fields,—should be known as originating in Prakriti. Prakriti has

been said to be destitute of all attributes. Her existence is affirmed only in consequence of her acts (beginning with Mahat).[47] After the same manner, Purusha (or Soul), though without attributes himself, has his existence affirmed in consequence of the acts which the body does when it receives his reflection. Although the Soul is not subject to modificatsons of any kind, and is the active principle that sets Prakriti in motion,[48] yet entering a body that is united with the senses of knowledge and action, he regards all the acts of those senses as his own. The five senses of knowledge beginning with the ear,[49] and those of action beginning with speech, uniting with the attributes of Sattwa and Rajas and Tamas, become engaged in numerous objects. Jiva imagines that it is he who does the acts of his life and that the senses of knowledge and action belong to him,[50] although in reality he has no senses. Indeed, though unequipt with body, he imagines that he has a body. Though destitute of attributes, he regards himself as endued therewith; and though transcending Time, imagines himself to be under Time's control.[51] Though destitute of understanding, he still regards himself as endued with it, and though transcending the (four and twenty) topics, regards himself as one included among them. Though deathless, he still regards himself as liable to death, and though motionless regards himself to be endued with motion.[52] Though not possessed of a material case, he still regards himself as possessed of one; and though unborn, he still regards himself as invested with birth. Though transcending penances, he still regards as engaged in penances, and though he has no end (after which to strive), he still regards himself as liable to attain to ends (of diverse kinds).[53] Though not endued with motion and birth, he still regards himself as endued with both, and though transcending fear, still regards himself as liable to fear. Though Indestructible, he still regards himself Destructible. Invested with Ignorance, the Soul thus thinks of himself.—' "[54]

SECTION CCCV.

"'Vaçishtha said,—It is thus, in consequence of his Ignorance and his association with others that are invested with Ignorance, that Jiva has recourse to millions and millions of births every one of which has dissolution in the end.[1] In consequence of his transformation into Chit invested with Ignorance, Jiva betakes himself to millions of abodes, every one of which is liable to end in destruction, among intermediate beings and men and the deities.[2] In consequence of Ignorance, Jiva, like Chandramas, has to wax and wane thousands and thousands of times. This is truly the nature of Jiva when invested with Ignorance. Know that Chandramas has in reality full sixteen portions. Only fifteen of these are subject to increase and decrease. The sixteenth (*i. e.*, that portion which remains invisible and which appears on the night of the Newmoon) remains constant. After the manner of Chandramas, Jiva too has full sixteen portions. Only fifteen of these, (*viz.*, Prakriti with Chit's reflection, the ten senses of knowledge and action, and the four inner faculties,) appear and disappear. The sixteenth (*viz.*, Chit in its purity) is subject to no modification.[4] Invested with Ignorance, Jiva repeatedly and continually takes birth in the fifteen portions named above. With the eternal and immutable portion of Jiva the primal essences become united and this union takes place repeatedly.[5] That sixteenth portion is subtile. It should be known as Soma (eternal and immutable). It is never upheld by the senses. On the other hand, the senses are upheld by it.[6] Since those sixteen portions are the cause of the birth of creatures, creatures can never, O monarch, take birth without their aid. They are called Prakriti. The destruction of Jiva's liability to be united with Prakriti is called Emancipation.[7] The Mahat-Soul, which is the twenty-fifth, if it regards that body of sixteen portions called the Unmanifest,* has to assume it

* Made of Chit and Not-Chit combined.—T.

repeatedly. In consequence of not knowing That which is stainless and pure, and for its devotion to what is the result of a combination of both Pure and Impure,[8-9] the Soul, which is in reality pure, becomes, O king, Impure. Indeed, in consequence of its devotion to Ignorance, Jiva, though characterised by Knowledge, becomes repeatly associated with Ignorance.[10] Though, O monarch, free from error of every kind, yet in consequence of its devotion to the three attributes of Prakriti, it becomes endued with those attributes.—' "[11]

SECTION CCCVI.

" 'Janaka said,—O holy one, it has been said that the relation between male and female is like that which subsists between the Indestructible and the Destructible (or Purusha and Prakriti).[1] Without a male, a female can never conceive. Without a female, a male also can never create a form.[2] In consequence of their union with each other, and each depending upon the attributes of the other, forms (of living creatures) are seen to flow. This is the case with all orders of being.[3] Through each other's union for purposes of (sexual) congress, and through each depending upon the attributes of the other, forms (of living creatures) flow in menstrual seasons. I shall tell to thee the indications thereof.[4] Hear what the attributes are that belong to the sire and what those are that belong to the mother. Bones, sinews, and marrow, O regenerate one, we know, are derived from the sire.[5] Skin, flesh, and blood, we hear, are derived from the mother. Even this, O foremost of regenerate persons, is what may be read of in the Veda and other scriptures.[6] Whatever is read as declared in the Vedas and in other scriptures is regarded as authority. The authority, again, of the Vedas and other scriptures (not inconsistent with the Vedas), is eternal.[7] If Prakriti and Purusha be always united together in this way by each opposing and each depending on the other's attributes,[8] I see, O holy one, that Emancipation cannot exist. Thou, O holy one, art possessed of spiritual vision so that thou seest all things as

if they are present before thy eyes. If, therefore, there be any direct evidence of the existence of Emancipation, do thou speak of it to me.[9] We are desirous of attaining to Emancipation. Indeed, we wish to attain to That which is auspicious, bodiless, not subject to decrepitude, eternal, beyond the ken of the senses, and having nothing superior to it!—[10]

"'Vaçishtha said,—What thou sayest about the indications of the Vedas and the other scriptures (in respect of this matter) is even so. Thou takest those indications in the way in which they should be taken.[11] Thou bearest, however, in thy understanding, only the texts of the Vedas and the other scriptures. Thou art not, O monarch, truly conversant with the real meaning of those texts.[12] That person who bears in his understanding merely the texts of the Vedas and the other scriptures without being conversant with the true sense or meaning of those texts, bears them fruitlessly.[13] Indeed, one who holds the contents of a work in memory without comprehending their meaning, is said to bear an useless burthen. He, however, who is conversant with the true meaning of a treatise, is said to have studied that treatise to purpose.[14] Questioned regarding the meaning of a text, it behooveth one to communicate that meaning which he has comprehended by a careful study.[15] That person of dull intelligence who refuses to expound the meanings of texts in the midst of a conclave of the learned, that person of foolish understanding, never succeeds in expounding the meaning correctly.*[16] An ignorant person, going to expound the true meaning of treatises, incurs ridicule. Even those possessed of a knowledge of the Soul have to incur ridicule on such occasions (if what they go to explain has not been acquired by study).[17] Listen now to me, O monarch, as to how the subject of Emancipation

* The sense seems to be that the obligation to explain a treatise in the midst of a conclave always stimulates the best faculties, and if it is a conclave of the learned, the friction of intellects is sure to bring out the correct sense.—T.

has been explained (by preceptors to disciples from days of old) among high-souled persons conversant with the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems of philosophy.[18] That which the Yogins behold is precisely that which the Sānkhyas strive after to attain. He who sees the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems to be one and the same is said to be endued with intelligence.[19] Skin, flesh, blood, fat, bile, marrow, and sinews, and these senses (of both knowledge and action), about which thou wert speaking unto me, exist.[20] Objects flow from objects; the senses from the senses. From body one obtains a body, as a seed is obtained from seed.[21] When the Supreme Being is without senses, without seed, without matter, without body, He must be divested of all attributes; and in consequence of His being so, how, indeed, can He have attributes of any kind?[22] Space and other attributes arise from the attributes of Sattwa and Rajas and Tamas, and disappear ultimately in them. Thus the attributes arise from Prakriti and disappear in Prakriti.[23] Skin, flesh, blood, fat, bile, marrow, bones, and sinews,—these eight, that are made of Prakriti, know, O king, may sometimes be produced by the vital seed alone (of the male).[24] The Jiva-soul and the universe are said to both partake of Prakriti characterised by the three attributes of Swatta, Rajas, and Tamas. The Supreme Soul is different from both the Jiva-soul and the universe.[25] As the seasons, though unendued with forms, are nevertheless inferred from the appearance of particular fruits and flowers, after the same manner, Prakriti, though formless, is inferred from the attributes of Mahat and the rest that spring from it.[26] In this way, from the existence of Chaitanya in the body, the Supreme Soul, divested of all attributes whatever and perfectly stainless, is inferred.[27] Without beginning and destruction, without end, the overseer of all things, and auspicious, that Soul, only in consequence of its identifying itself with the body and other attributes, comes to be taken as invested with attributes.[28] Those persons that are truly conversant with attributes know that only objects endued with attributes can have attributes but that That which transcends all attri-

butes can have none.[29] When the Jiva-soul conquers all attributes born of Prakriti and which it assumes under error, only then does it behold the Supreme Soul.[30] Only the highest Rishis conversant with the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems know that Supreme Soul which Sānkhyas and Yogins and believers in all other systems say is beyond the Understanding, which is regarded as Knower and endued with the highest wisdom in consequence of its casting off all consciousness of identification with Prakriti, which transcends the attribute of Ignorance or Error, which is Unmanifest, which is beyond all attributes, which is called the Supreme, which is dissociated from all attributes, which ordains all things, which is Eternal and Immutable, which overrules Prakriti and all the attributes born of Prakriti, and which, transcending the four and twenty topics of enquiry, forms the twentyfifth.[31-33] When men of knowledge, who stand in fear of birth, of the several conditions of living consciousness, and of death, succeed in knowing the Unmanifest, they succeed in understanding the Supreme Soul at the same time.[34] An intelligent man regards the unity of the Jiva-soul with the Supreme Soul as consistent with the scriptures and as perfectly correct ; while the man destitute of intelligence looks upon the two as different from each other. This forms the distinction between the man of intelligence and the man that is destitute of it.[35] The indications of both Kshara and Akshara (Destructible and Indestructible) have now been said unto thee. Akshara is Onneness or Unity, while multiplicity or variety is said to be Kshara.[36] When one begins to study and understand properly the five and twenty topics of enquiry, one then comprehends that the Oneness of the Soul is consistent with the scriptures and its multiplicity is what is opposed to them.[37] These are the several indications of what is included in the tale of topics or principles created and what transcends that tale. The wise have said that the tale of topics numbers only five and twenty.[38] That which transcends the topics is beyond that number and forms the twentysixth. The study or comprehension of created things (numbered five and twenty)

according to their aggregates (of five) is the study and comprehension of topics. Transcending these is That which is eternal.—' "[39]

SECTION CCCVII.

" 'Janaka said,—Thou hast, O foremost of Rishis, said that Unity is the attribute of that which is Akshara (Indestructible) and variety or multiplicity is the attribute of what is known as Kshara (Destructible). I have not, however, clearly understood the nature of these two. Doubts are still lurking in my mind.[1] Ignorant men look upon the Soul as endued with the incident of multiplicity. They, however, that are possessed of knowledge and wisdom regard the Soul to be one and the same. I, however, have a very dull understanding. I am, therefore, unable to comprehend how all this can happen.[2] The causes also that thou hast assigned for the unity and the multiplicity of Akshara and Kshara I have almost forgotten in consequence of the restlessness of my understanding.[3] I, therefore, desire to hear thee once more discourse to me on those same incidents of unity and multiplicity, on him who is knowing, on what is destitute of knowledge, on Jiva-soul, Knowledge, Ignorance, Akshara, Kshara, and on the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems, in detail and separately and agreeably to the truth.—[4-5]

" 'Vaçishtha said,—I shall tell thee what thou askest! Listen, however, to me, O monarch, as I expound to thee the practices of Yoga separately.[6] Contemplation, which constitutes an obligatory practice with Yogins, is their highest puissance.* Those conversant with Yoga say that that Contemplation is of two kinds.[7] One is the concentration of the mind, and the other is called Prānāyāma (regulation of breath). Prānāyāma is said to be endued with substance; while concentration of mind is unendued with it.†[8] Except-

---

* For it enables them to conquer Ignorance.—T.

† When Prānāyāma is performed with the aid of *mantras* or *yapa*, it is said to be *saguna* or *sagarbha* or endued with substance. Concentration of mind, however, is made without the aid of such *yapa*.—T.

ing the three times when a man passes urine and stools and eats, one should devote the whole of his time to contemplation.[9] Withdrawing the senses from their objects by the aid of the mind, one possessed of intelligence, having made oneself pure, should, agreeably to the two and twenty modes of transmitting the Prāna breath, unite the Jiva-soul with That which transcends the four and twentieth topic (called Ignorance or Prakriti)* which is regarded by the wise as dwelling in every part of the body and as transcending decay and destruction.[10-11] It is by means of those two and twenty methods that the Soul may always be known, as heard by us. It is certain that this practice of Yoga is his whose mind is never affected by evil passions. It is not any other person's.[12] Dissociated from all attachments, abstemious in diet, and subduing all the senses, one should fix one's mind on the Soul, during the first and the last part of the night,[13] after having, O king of Mithilā, suspended the functions of all the senses, quieted the mind by the understanding, and assumed a posture as motionless as that of a block of stone.[14] When men of knowledge, conversant with the rules of Yoga, become as fixed as a stake of wood, and as immovable as a mountain, then are they said to be in Yoga.[15] When one does not hear, and smell, and taste, and see; when one is not conscious of any touch; when one's mind becomes perfectly free from every purpose;[16] when one is not conscious of any thing, when one cherishes no thought, when one becomes like a piece of wood, then is one called by the wise to be in perfect Yoga.[17] At such a time one shines like a lamp that burns in a place where there is no wind; at such a time one becomes freed even from one's subtile form, and perfectly united with Brahma. When one attains to such progress, one has no longer to ascend or to fall among intermediate beings.[18] When persons like ourselves say that there has been a complete

---

* The two and twenty 'sanchodanas' or 'Preranas' are the two and twenty modes of transmitting the Prāna breath from the toe of the foot to the crown of the head. That which transcends Prakriti is the Supreme Soul.—T.

identification of the Knower, the Known, and Knowledge, then is the Yogin said to behold the Supreme Soul.*[19] While in Yoga, the Supreme Soul displays itself in the Yogin's heart like a blazing fire, or like the bright Sun, or like the lightning's flame in the sky.[20] That Supreme Soul which is Unborn and which is the essence of nectar, that is seen by high-souled Brāhmanas endued with intelligence and wisdom and conversant with the Vedas,[21] is subtiler than what is subtile and greater than what is great. That Soul, though dwelling in all creatures, is not seen by them.[22] The Creator of the worlds, He is seen only by a person endued with wealth of intellegence when aided by the lamp of the mind. He dwells on the other shore of thick Darkness and transcends him called Içwara.†[23] Persons conversant with the Vedas and endued with omniscience call Him the dispeller of Darkness, stainless, transcending Darkness, without attributes and endued therewith.[24]

" 'This is what is called the Yoga of Yogins. What else is the indication of Yoga? By such practices do Yogins succeed in beholding the Supreme Soul that transcends destruction and decay.[25] This much that I have told thee in detail concerns about the science of Yoga. I shall now discourse to thee of that Sānkhya philosophy by which the Supreme Soul is seen through the gradual destruction of errors.‡[26] The Sānkhyas, whose system is built on Prakriti, say that Prakriti, which is Unmanifest, is the foremost. From Prakriti, they say, O monarch, the second principle called Mahat, is produced.[27] It is heard by us that from Mahat flows the third principle called Consciousness. The Sānkhyas blessed with sight of the Soul say that from Consciousness flow the five subtile essences of sound, form, touch, taste, and

---

* The reading I adopt is 'na-kathyate.'—T.

† 'Atmanah' is 'Içwarāt parah.'—T.

‡ 'Parisankhyanadarçanam' is explained by the Commentator thus: 'Parisankhyānam' is 'parivarjanam,' *i. e.*, the gradual 'pravilāpam' of errors; 'tena darçanam or sākshātkāram.'—T.

scent.[28] All these eight they call by the name of Prakriti. The modifications of these eight are sixteen in number. They are the five gross essences of space, light, earth, water, and wind, and the ten senses of action and of knowledge including the mind.[29] Men of wisdom devoted to the Sānkhya path and conversant with all its ordinances and dispensations regard these four and twenty topics as embracing the whole range of Sānkhya enquiry.[30] That which is produced becomes merged in the producing cause. Created by the Supreme Soul one after another, these principles are destroyed in a reverse order.[31] At every new Creation, the Gunahs start into existence in the lateral order (as stated above), and (when Destruction comes) they merge (each into its progenitor) in a reverse order, like the waves of the ocean disappearing in the ocean that gives them birth.[2] O best of kings, this is the manner in which the Creation and the Destruction of Prakriti takes place. The Supreme Being is all that remains when Universal Destruction takes place; and it is He that assumes multifarious forms when Creation starts into life.[33] This is even so, O king, as ascertained by men of knowledge. It is Prakriti that causes the Over-presiding Purusha to thus assume diversity and revert back to unity. Prakriti also herself has the same indications.[34] One fully conversant with the nature of the topics of enquiry knows that Prakriti also assumes the same kind of diversity and unity, for when Destruction comes she reverts into unity and when Creation flows she assumes diversity of form.[35] The Soul makes Prakriti, which contains the principles of production or growth, to assume manifold forms. Prakriti is called Kshetra (or soil). Transcending the four and twenty topics or principles is the Soul which is Great. It presides over that Prakriti or Kshetra.[36] Hence, O great king, the foremost of Yatis say that the Soul is the Presider. Indeed, it has been heard by us that in consequence of the Soul's presiding over all Kshetras, He is called the Presider.[37] And because He knows that Unmanifest Kshetra, He is, therefore, also called Kshetrajna (Knower of Kshetra). And because also the Soul enters

into Unmanifest Kshetra (*viz.*, the body), therefore is He called Purusha.[38] Kshetra is something quite different from Kshetrajna. Kshetra is Unmanifest. The Soul, which transcends the four and twenty principles, is called the Knower.[39] Knowledge and the object known are different from each other. Knowledge, again, has been said to be Unmanifest, while the object of knowledge is the Soul which transcends the four and twenty principles.[40] The Unmanifest is called Kshetra, Sattwa (understanding), and also Içwara (the supreme Lord); while Purusha, which is the twentyfifth principle has nothing superior to it and is not a principle (for it transcends all principles and is only called a principle conventionally).[41] This much, O king, is an account of the Sānkhya philosophy. The Sānkhyas call Prakriti the cause of the universe, and merging all the grosser principles into the Chit behold the Supreme Soul.[42] Rightly studying the four and twenty topics along with Prakriti, and ascertaining their true nature, the Sānkhyas succeed in beholding That which transcends the four and twenty topics or principles.*[43] Jiva in reality is that very Soul which transcends Prakriti and is beyond the four and twenty topics. When he succeeds in knowing that Supreme Soul by dissociating himself from Prakriti, he then becomes identifiable with the Supreme Soul.[44] I have now told thee everything about the Sānkhya System truly. Those who are conversant with this philosophy succeed in attaining to tranquillity.[45] Indeed, as men whose understandings are subject to error have direct cognisance of all objects of the senses, men freed from error have direct cognisance of Brahma.[46] They that succeed in attaining to that state have never to come back to this world after the dissolution of their bodies; while as regards those that are said to be emancipate in this life, puissance, and that indescribable felicity which attaches itself to Samādhi, and immutability, become theirs, in consequence of their having attained to the nature of the

* The Commentator explains that 'nistattwah' means 'nirgatam tattwa n aproksham yasmāt.' —T.

Indestructible.*[47] They who behold this universe as many (instead of seeing it as one and uniform) are said to see incorrectly. These men are blind to Brahma. O chastiser of foes, such persons have repeatedly to come back into the world and assume bodies (in diverse orders of Being).[48] They who are conversant with all that has been said above become possessed of omniscience, and accordingly when they pass from this body no longer become subject to the control of any more physical frames.[49] All things, (or the entire universe), have been said to be the result of the Unmanifest. The Soul, which is the twentyfifth, transcends all things. They who know the Soul have no fear of returning to the world.—' "[50]

Section CCCVIII.

" 'Vaçishtha said,—I have thus far discoursed to thee on the Sānkhya philosophy. Listen now to me as I tell thee what is Vidyā (Knowledge) and what is Avidyā (Ignorance), one after the other.[1] The learned say that that Prakriti, which is fraught with the attributes of Creation and Destruction, is called Avidyā; while Purusha, who is freed from the attributes of Creation and Destruction and who transcends the four and twenty topics or principles, is called Vidyā.[2] Listen to me first as I tell thee what is Vidyā among successive sets of other things, as expounded in the Sānkhya philosophy.[3] Among the senses of knowledge and those of action, the senses of knowledge are said to constitute what is known as Vidyā. Of the senses of knowledge and their objects, the former constitute Vidyā as has been heard by us.[4] Of objects of the senses and the mind, the wise have said that the mind constitutes Vidyā. Of mind and the five subtile essences, the five subtile essences constitute Vidyā.[5]

---

* 'Param,' 'Aparam,' and 'Avyayam' are theirs in consequence of 'Akshara-bhavatwa.' 'Aparam' means 'satyakāmatwa, satyasamkalpatwa, &c.,' *i. e.*, puissance. 'Param' is the indescribable felicity of Samādhi. The Crutis declare that a knower of Brahma becomes Brahma.—T.

Of the five subtile essences and Consciousness, Consciousness constitutes Vidyā. Of Consciousness and Mahat, Mahat, O king, is Vidyā.[6] Of all the topics or principles beginning with Mahat, and Prakriti, it is Prakriti, which is unmanifest and supreme, that is called Vidyā. Of Prakriti, and that called Vidhi which is Supreme, the latter should be known as Vidyā.[7] Transcending Prakriti is the twentyfifth (called Purusha) who should be known as Vidyā. Of all Knowledge, that which is the Object of Knowledge has been said to be the Unmanifest, O king.*[8] Again, Knowledge has been said to be Unmanifest, and the Object of knowledge to be that which transcends the four and twenty. Once more, Knowledge has been said to be Unmanifest, and the Knower is that which transcends the four and twenty. I have now told thee what is truly the import of Vidyā and Avidyā.[9] Listen now to me as I tell thee all that has been said about the Indestructible and the Destructible. Both Jiva and Prakriti have been said to be Indestructible, and both of them have been said to be Destructible.[10] I shall tell thee the reason of this correctly as I have understood it. Both Prakriti and Jiva are without beginning and without end or destruction. Both of them are regarded as supreme (in the matter of Creation).[11] Those that are possessed of knowledge say that both are to be called topics or principles. In consequence of its attributes of (repeated) Creation and Destruction, the Unmanifest (or Prakriti) is called Indestructible.[12] That Unmanifest becomes repeatedly modified for the purpose of creating the principles.[13] And because the principles beginning with Mahat are produced by Purusha as well, and because also Purusha and the Unmanifest are mutually dependant upon each other, therefore is Purusha also, the twentyfifth, called Kshetra (and hence Akshara or Indestructible).†[14] When the Yogin

* Hence, as the Commentator explains, by knowing what is called the Unmanifest, one is capable of attaining to omniscience.—T.

† What is stated here is this: the Unmanifest or Prakriti, by modification, produces Mahat and the other principles. But the agency of Purusha also is necessary for such production, for Prakriti can do nothing without Purusha, and Purusha also can do nothing

withdraws and merges all the principles into the Unmanifest Soul (or Brahma), then the twentyfifth (*viz.*, Jiva or Purusha) also, with all those principles, disappears into it.[15] When the principles become merged each into its progenitor, then the one that remains is Prakriti. When Kshetrajna too,* O son, becomes merged into his own producing cause,[16] then (all that remains is Brahma and, therefore), Prakriti with all the principles in it becomes Kshara (or meets with destruction), and attains also to the condition of being without attributes in consequence of her dissociation from all the principles.[17] Thus it is that Kshetrajna, when his knowledge of Kshetra disappears, becomes, by his nature, destitute of attributes, as it has been heard by us.[18] When he becomes Kshara he then assumes attributes. When, however, he attains to his own real nature, he then succeeds in understanding his own condition of being really destitute of attributes.[19] By casting off Prakriti and beginning to realise that he is different from her, the intelligent Kshetrajna then comes to be regarded as pure and stainless.[20] When Jiva ceases to exist in a state of union with Prakriti, then does he become identifiable with Brahma. When, however, he exists united with Prakriti, he then, O king, seems to be different from Brahma.[21] Indeed, when Jiva shows no affection for Prakriti and her principles, he then succeeds in beholding the Supreme and having once beheld Him wishes not to fall away from that felicity.[22] When the Knowledge of truth dawns upon him, Jiva begins to lament in this strain :—Alas, how foolishly have I acted by falling through ignorance into this frame composed of Prakriti like a fish entangled in a net![23] Alas, through Ignorance, I have migrated from body to body like a fish from water to water thinking that water is the element in which alone it can live.[24] Indeed, like a fish that

---

without Prakriti. The principles of Mahat and the rest, therefore, may be said to have their origin as much in Purusha as in Prakriti. Besides, the two being naturally dependent on each other, if Prakriti be called Kshara, Purusha also may be so called.—T.

* *I. e.*, Jiva or Purusha.—T.

does not know anything else than water to be its element, I also have never known anything else them children and spouses to be any own![25] Fie on me that, through ignorance, am repeatedly migrating from body to body in forgetfulness (of the Supreme Soul)![26] The Supreme Soul alone is my friend. I have capacity for friendship with Him. Whatever be my nature and whoever I may be, I am competent to be like Him and to attain to an identity with Him.[27] I see my similarity with Him. I am, indeed, like Him. He is stainless. It is evident that I am of the same nature.[28] Through Ignorance and stupefaction, I have become associated with Inanimate Prakriti. Though really without attachments, I have passed this long time in a state of attachment with Prakriti.[29] Alas, by her was I so long subdued without having been able to know it. Various are the forms,—high, middling, and low,—that Prakriti assumes. Oh, how shall I dwell in those forms ?*[30] How shall I live conjointly with her ? In consequence only of my ignorance I repair to her companionship. I shall now be fixed (in Sānkhya or Yoga).[31] I shall no longer keep her companionship. For having passed so long a time with her, I should think that I was so long deceived by her, for myself being really exempt from modification, how could I keep company with one that is subject to modification ?[32] She cannot be held to be responsible for this. The responsibility is mine, since turning away from the Supreme Soul I become of my own accord attached to her.[33] In consequence of that attachment, myself, though formless in reality, had to abide in multifarious forms. Indeed, though formless by nature I become endued with forms in consequence of my sense of *meum*, and thereby insulted and distressed.[34] In consequence of my sense of *meum* concerning the results of Prakriti, I am forced to take birth in diverse orders of Being. Alas, though really destitute of any sense of *meum*, yet in consequence of affecting it, what diverse acts of an evil nature have been committed

---

* High, such as gods; middling, such as human beings; and low, such as animals.—T.

by me in those orders in which I took birth while I remained in them with a soul that had lost all knowledge! I have no longer anything to do with him who, with essence made up of consciousness, divides herself into many fragments and who seeks to unite me with them. It is only now that I have been awakened and have understood that I am by nature without any sense of *meum* and without that consciousness which creates the forms of Prakriti that invest me all around.[35-37] Casting off that sense of *meum* which I always have with respect to her and whose essence is made up of consciousness, and casting off Prakriti herself, I shall take refuge in Him who is auspicious.[38] I shall be united with Him, and not with Prakriti which is inanimate. If I unite with Him, it will be productive of my benefit. I have no similarity of nature with Prakriti![39]—The twenty-fifth, (*viz.*, Jiva), when he thus succeeds in understanding the Supreme, becomes able to cast off the Destructible and attain to identity with that which is Indestructible and which is the essence of all that is auspicious.[40] Destitute of attributes in his true nature and in reality Unmanifest, Jiva becomes invested with what is Manifest and assumes attributes. When he succeeds in beholding that which is without attributes and which is the origin of the Unmanifest, he attains, O ruler of Mithilā, to identity with the same.[41]

" 'I have now told thee what the indications are of what is Indestructible and what is Destructible, according to the best of my knowledge and according to what has been expounded in the scriptures.[42] I shall now tell thee, according to what I have heard, as to how Knowledge that is subtile, stainless, and certain, arises. Do thou listen to me.[43] I have already discoursed to thee what the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems are according to their respective indications as expounded in their respective scriptures. Verily, the science that has been expounded in Sānkhya treatises is identical with what has been laid down in the Yoga scriptures.[44] The knowledge, O monarch, which the Sānkhyas preach, is capable of awakening every one. In the Sānkhya scriptures, that Knowledge has been inculcated very clearly

for the benefit of disciples.[45] The learned say that this Sānkhya system is very extensive. Yogins have great regard for that system as also for the Vedas.[46] In the Sānkhya system no topic or principle transcending the twenty-fifth is admitted. That which the Sānkhyas regard as their highest topic or principle has been duly described (by me).[47] In the Yoga philosophy, it is said that Brahma, which is the essence of knowledge without duality, becomes Jiva only when invested with Ignorance. In the Yoga scriptures, therefore, both Brahma and Jiva are spoken of.—' "[48]

SECTION CCCIX.

" 'Vaçishtha said,—Listen now to me as I discourse to thee on Buddha (Supreme Soul) and Abuddha (Jiva) which is the dispensation of the attributes (of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas). Assuming many forms (under the influence of illusion) the Supreme Soul, becoming Jiva, regards all those forms as real.*[1] In consequence of (his regarding himself identical with) such transformations, Jiva fails to understand the Supreme Soul, for he bears the attributes (of Sattwa and Rajas and Tamas) and creates and withdraws into himself what he creates.[2] Ceaselessly for his sport, O monarch, does Jiva undergo modifications, and because he is capable of understanding the action of the Unmanifest, therefore is he called Budhyamāna (the Comprehender).†[3] The Unmanifest or Prakriti can at no time comprehend Brahma which is really without attributes even when it manifests itself with attributes. Hence is Prakriti called

---

* 'Buddha' is 'Bodha' or pure Knowledge. 'Abuddha' is the reverse of 'Buddha.' The Supreme Soul is Knowledge, while Jiva is Ignorance.—T.

† In consequence of Jiva's union with or attachment to Prakriti, Jiva takes this object for a vessel, that for a mountain, and that other for a third. When knowledge comes, Jiva succeeds in understanding that all his impressions are erroneous and that the external world is only a modification of Self. In consequence of Jiva's capacity to comprehend this, he is called Budhyamāna or Comprehender.—T.

Unintelligent.[4] There is a declaration of the Crutis to the effect that if ever Prakriti does succeed in knowing the twentyfifth (*i. e.*, Jiva), Prakriti then (instead of being something differentiated from Jiva) becomes identified with Jiva who is united with her. (As regards, however, the Supreme Soul, which is ever disunited and dissociated, and which transcends the twentyfifth, Prakriti can never comprehend it). In consequence of this (*viz.*, his attachment to or union with Prakriti), Jiva or Purusha, who is not manifest and which in his real nature is not subject to modifications, comes to be called as the Unawakened or Ignorant.[5] Indeed, because the twentyfifth can comprehend the Unmanifest, he is, therefore, called Budhyamāna (or Comprehender). He cannot, however readily comprehend[6] the twentysixth, which is stainless, which is Knowledge without duality, which is immeasurable, and which is eternal. The twentysixth, however, can know both Jiva and Prakriti, numbering the twentyfifth and the twentyfourth respectively.[7] O thou of great effulgence, only men of wisdom succeed in knowing that Brahma which is Unmanifest, which inheres in its real nature to all that is seen and unseen, and which, O son, is the one independent essence in the universe.*[8] When Jiva considers himself different from what he truly is, (*i. e.*, when he regards himself as fat or lean, fair or dark, a Brāhmana or a Cudra), it is only then that he fails to know the Supreme Soul and himself and Prakriti with which he is united.[9] When Jiva succeeds in understanding Prakriti (and knowing that she is something different from him) then he is said to be restored to his true nature and then does he attain to that high understanding which is pure and stainless (and which is concerned with Brahma).[10] When Jiva succeeds, O tiger among kings, in attaining to

---

* 'Driçya' and 'Adriçya' are the Seen and the Unseen, that is the gross and the subtile, or effects and causes. 'Swabhāvena anugatām' is 'inhering (unto all of them) in its own nat ure,' that is, Brahma pervades all things and unites with them without itself being changed as regards its own nature. 'Vudhyate' has 'manishibhih' understood after it.—T.

that excellent understanding, he then attains to that Pure Knowledge (without duality) which is called the twenty-sixth (or Brahma). He then casts off the Unmanifest or Prakriti which is fraught with the attributes of Creation and Destruction.[11] When Jiva succeeds in knowing Prakriti which is unintelligent and subject to the action of the three attributes of Sattwa, and Rajas and Tamas, he then becomes destitute of attributes himself. In consequence of his thus understanding the Unmanifest (to be something different from him), he succeeds in acquiring the nature of the Supreme Soul.[12] The learned say that when he is freed from the attributes (of Sattwa and Rajas and Tamas) and united in nature with the Supreme Soul, then does Jiva become identified with that Soul. The Supreme Soul is called Tattwa as well as Not-Tattwa, and transcends decay and destruction.*[13] O giver of honors, the Soul, though it has the manifest principles (*viz.*, the body) for its resting place, yet it cannot be said to have acquired the nature of those principles. The wise say that (including the Jiva-soul) there are five and twenty principles in all.[14] Indeed, O son, the Soul is not to be regarded as possessed of any of the principles (Mahat and the rest). Endued with Intelligence, it transcends the principles. It casts off quickly even that principle which is the indication of the Knowing (or awakened) one.†[15] When Jiva comes to regard himself as the twentysixth which is divested of decay and destruction, it is then that, without doubt, he succeeds by his own force in attaining to similarity with the twentysixth.[16] Though awakened by the twentysixth which is Pure Intelligence, Jiva still becomes subject to Ignorance. This is the cause of Jiva's multifariousness (in respect of forms) as explained in

---

* 'Tattwa' is explained by the Commentator as 'anāropitarupam,' *i. e.*, uninvested with any form in consequence of Ignorance; 'Not-Tattwa' is 'nityāparoksham,' *i. e.*, always within the ken of the understanding.—T.

† That indication is 'I am Brahma.' Such conviction or knowledge even, which characterises those that are awakened or Buddha, is cast off by the twentysixth.—T.

the Crutis and the Sānkhya scriptures.[17] When Jiva, who is endued with Chetana (and Unintelligent Prakriti), loses all Consciousness of a distinct or individual Self, then does he, losing his multifariousness, resume his Oneness.[18] O ruler of Mithilā, when Jiva, who is found to be in union with happiness and misery and who is seldom free from the consciousness of Self, succeeds in attaining to a similarity with the Supreme Soul which is beyond the reach of the understanding, then does he become freed from virtue and vice.[19] Indeed, when Jiva, attaining to the twentysixth which is Unborn and Puissant and which is dissociated from all attachments, succeeds in comprehending it thoroughly, he himself becomes possessed of puissance and entirely casts off the Unmanifest or Prakriti.[20] In consequence of understanding the twentysixth, the four and twenty principles seem to Jiva to be unsubstantial or of no value. I have thus told thee, O sinless one, according to the indications of the Crutis, the nature of the Unintelligent (or Prakriti), and of Jiva, as also of that which is Pure Knowledge (*viz.*, the Supreme Soul), agreeably to the truth. Guided by the scriptures, variety and oneness are thus to be understood.[21-22] The difference between the gnat and the Udumvara, or that between the fish and water, illustrates the difference between the Jiva-soul and the Supreme Soul.*[23] The Multiplicity and Oneness of these two are to be understood in this way. This is called Emancipation, *viz.*, this comprehension or knowledge of oneself as something distinct from Unintelligent or Unmanifest Prakriti.[24] The twentyfifth, which resides in the bodies of living creatures, should be emancipated by making him know the Unmanifest or the Supreme Soul which transcends the under-

* These examples are often used to explain the difference between the Jiva-soul and the Supreme Soul. The Udumvara is the fruit of the *Ficus glomerata*. When ripe and broken, the hollow centre is seen to contain many full-grown gnats. The gnat lives in the fruit but is not the fruit, just as the fish though living in the water is not the water that is its home Jiva, after the same way, though living in the Supreme Soul, is not the Supreme Soul.—T.

standing.[25] Indeed, that twentyfifth is capable of attaining to Emancipation in this way only and not through any other means, it is certain. Though really different from the Kshetra in which he resides for the time being, he partakes of the nature of that Kshetra in consequence of his union with it.*[26] Uniting with what is Pure, he becomes Pure. Uniting with the Intelligent, he becomes Intelligent. By uniting, O foremost of men, with one that is Emancipate, he becomes Emancipated.[27] By uniting with one that has been freed from attachments of every kind, he becomes freed from all attachments. By uniting with one striving after Emancipation, he himself, partaking of the nature of his companion, strives after Emancipation.[28] By uniting with one of pure deeds, he becomes pure and of pure deeds and endued with blazing effulgence. By uniting with one of unstained soul, he becomes of unstained soul himself.[29] By uniting with the One independent Soul, he becomes One and Independent. Uniting with One that is dependent on One's Own Self, he becomes of the same nature and attains to Independence.—[30]

"'—O monarch, I have duly told thee all this that is perfectly true. Candidly have I discoursed to thee on this subject, *viz.*, the Eternal and Stainless and Primeval Brahma.[31] Thou mayst impart this high knowledge, capable of awakening the soul, unto that person, O king, who though not conversant with the Vedas is, nevertheless, humble and has a keen desire for acquiring the knowledge of Brahma.[32] It should never be imparted unto one that is wedded to falsehood, or one that is cunning or roguish, or one that is without any strength of mind, or one that is of crooked understanding, or one that is jealous of men of knowledge, or one that gives pain to others. Listen to me as I say who they are unto whom this knowledge may safely be communicated.[33] It should be given to one that is endued with faith, or one that

* 'Parah' is 'Anyah' or 'Chidātman.' 'Paradharmā' means 'partaking of the nature of Kshetra in which he resides. 'Sametya' is 'kshetrena iva ekibhuya.'—T.

is possessed of merit, or one that always abstains from speaking ill of others, or one that is devoted to penances from the purest of motives, or one that is endued with knowledge and wisdom, or one that is observant of the sacrifices and other rites laid down in the Vedas, or one that is possessed of a forgiving disposition, or one that is inclined to take compassion on and do good to all creatures ;[34] or one that is fond of dwelling in privacy and solitude, or one that is fond of discharging all acts laid down in the scriptures, or one that is averse to quarrels and disputes, or one that is possessed of great learning, or one endued with wisdom, or one possessed of forgiveness and self-restraint and tranquillity of soul.[35] This high knowledge of Brahma should never be communicated to one that is not possessed of such qualifications. It has been said that by imparting this knowledge to one that cannot be regarded as a fit receptacle for holding it, no advantage or good fruit can arise.[36] Unto one that is not observant of any vows and restraints, this high knowledge should never be communicated even if he gives in exchange the whole Earth full of gems and wealth of every kind. Without doubt, however, O king, this knowledge should be given to one that has conquered one's senses.[37] O Karāla, let no fear be thine any longer, since thou hast heard all this regarding high Brahma from me today! I have discoursed to thee duly about high and holy Brahma that is without beginning and middle (and end) and that is capable of dispelling all kinds of grief.[38] Beholding Brahma whose sight is capable of dispelling both birth and death, O king, which is full of auspiciousness, which removes all fear, and which is productive of the highest benefit, and having acquired this essence of all knowledge, cast off all error and stupefaction today![39] I had acquired this knowledge from the eternal Hiranyagarbha himself, O king, who communicated it to me for my having carefully gratified that great Being of very superior Soul. Asked by thee today, I have, O monarch, communicated the knowledge of eternal Brahma to thee just as I had myself acquired it from my teacher. Indeed, this high knowledge that is the refuge of

all persons conversant with Emancipation has been imparted to thee exactly as I had it from Brahman himself !—'[40-41]

"Bhishma continued,—'I have thus told thee of high Brahma, agreeably to what the great Rishi (Vaçishtha) had said (unto king Karāla of Janaka's race), by attaining to which the Twentyfifth (or Jiva) has never to return.[42] Jiva, in consequence of his not knowing truly the Supreme Soul which is not subject to decay and death, is obliged to frequently come back into the world. When, however, Jiva succeeds in acquiring that high knowledge, he has no longer to come back.[43] Having heard it, O king, from the celestial Rishi, I have, O son, communicated to thee that high knowledge productive of the highest good.[44] This knowledge was obtained from Hiranyagarbha by the high-souled Rishi Vaçishtha. From that foremost of Rishis, *viz.*, Vaçishtha, it was acquired by Nārada.[45] From Nārada I have acquired that knowledge which is truly identifiable with the eternal Brahma. Having heard this discourse of high import, fraught with excellent words, do not, O foremost of the Kurus, yield any longer to grief.[46] That man who knows Kshara and Akshara becomes freed from fear. He, indeed, O king, is obliged to cherish fear who is destitute of this knowledge.[47] In consequence of Ignorance (of Brahma), the man of foolish soul hath repeatedly to come back into this world. Indeed, departing from this life, he has to be born in thousands and thousands of orders of Being, every one of which hath death in the end.[48] Now in the world of the deities, now among men, and now among intermediate orders of Being, he has to appear again and again. If in course of time he succeeds in crossing that Ocean of Ignorance in which he is sunk, he then succeeds in avoiding rebirth altogether and attaining to identity with the Supreme Soul.[49] The Ocean of Ignorance is terrible. It is bottomless and called the Unmanifest. O Bhārata, day after day, creatures are seen to fall and sink in that Ocean.[50] Since thou, O king, hast been freed from that eternal and limitless Ocean of Ignorance, thou hast, therefore, become freed from Rajas and also Tamas.' "[51]

SECTION CCCX.

"Bhishma said,—'Once on a time a king of Janaka's race, while ranging the uninhabited forests in pursuit of deer, saw a superior Brāhmana or Rishi of Bhrigu's race.[1] Bowing with his head unto the Rishi who was seated at his ease, king Vasuman took his seat near him and obtaining his permission put to him this question :[2]—O holy one, what is productive of the highest benefit, both here and hereafter, to man who is endued with an unstable body and who is the slave of his desires ?[3] Properly honored by the king, and thus questioned, that high-souled Rishi possessed of ascetic merit then said these words unto him that were highly beneficial.[4]

" 'The Rishi said,—If thou desirest both here and hereafter what is agreeable to thy mind, do thou then, with restrained senses, abstain from doing what is disagreeable to all creatures.[5] Righteousness is beneficial unto them that are good. Righteousness is the refuge of those that are good. From Righteousness have flowed the three worlds with their mobile and immobile creatures.[6] O thou that art eagerly desirous of enjoying all agreeable objects, how is it that thou art not yet satiated with objects of desire ? Thou seest the honey, O thou of little understanding, but art blind to the fall.*[7] As one desirous of earning the fruits of knowledge should set oneself to the acquisition of knowledge, even so one desirous of earning the fruits of Rrighteousness should set oneself to the acquisition of Righteousness.[8] If a wicked man, from desire of virtue, strives to accomplish an act that is pure and stainless, the fulfilment of his desire becomes impossible. If, on the other hand, a good man, impelled by the desire of earning virtue, strives to accomplish an act that is even difficult, its accomplishment be-

* This is a simile very often used for illustrating the danger of pursuing objects of the senses. Collectors of honey used to rove over mountains, guided by the sight of flying bees. These men frequently met with death from falls from precipices.—T,

comes easy for him.[9] If, while residing in the woods, one acts in such a way as to enjoy all the pleasures of a residence amidst men in towns, one comes to be looked upon not as a forest recluse but as a denizen of towns. Similarly, if one, while residing in towns, acts in such a way as to enjoy the felicity that attaches to the life of a forest recluse, one comes to be looked upon not as a denizen of towns but as a forest recluse.[10] Ascertaining the merits of the religion of Acts and that of Abstention from acts, do thou, with concentrated senses, be devoted to the practices of righteousness that appertain to thought, word, and deed.[11] Judging of the propriety of time and place, purified by the observance of vows and other cleansing rites, and solicited (by them), do thou, without malice, make large gifts unto them that are good.*[12] Acquiring wealth by righteous means, one should give it away unto those that are deserving. One should make gifts, casting off anger; and having made gifts one should never give way to sorrow nor proclaim those gifts with one's own mouth.[13] The Brāhmana who is full of compassion, who is pure, who has his senses under control, who is truthful in speech, who is observant of candour, and whose birth is pure, has been regarded as a person deserving of gifts.[14] A person is said to be pure in birth when he is born of a mother that has only one husband and that belongs to the same order to which her husband belongs. Indeed, such a Brāhmana, conversant with the three Vedas, *viz.*, Rich, Yajush, and Sāman, possessed of learning, duly observant of the six duties (of sacrificing on his own account, officiating at the sacrifices of others, learning, teaching, making gifts, and receiving gifts), has been regarded as deserving of gifts.[15] Righteousness becomes unrighteousness, and unrighteousness becomes righteousness, according to the character of the doer, of time, and of place.†[16] Sin is

* The Burdwan translator renders this Verse incorrectly.—T.

† This has been repeatedly laid down in the Hindu scriptures. Gifts produce no merit unless made to deserving persons. If made to the undeserving, instead of ceasing to produce any merit, they become positively sinful. The considerations of time and place also are to be

cast off like the filth on one's body,—a little with a little exertion and a greater quantity when the exertion is greater.[17] A person, after purging his bowels, should take *ghee*, which operates most beneficially on his system (as a healthy tonic). After the same manner, when one has cleansed oneself of all faults and sets oneself to the acquisition of righteousness, that righteousness, in the next world, proves to be productive of the highest happiness.[18] Good and evil thoughts exist in the minds of all creatures. Withdrawing the mind from evil thoughts, it should always be directed towards good thoughts.[19] One should always reverence the practices of one's own order. Do thou strive, therefore, to act in such a way that thou mayst have faith in the practices of thy own order.[20] O thou that art endued with an impatient soul, betake thyself to the practice of patience. O thou that art of a foolish understanding, seek thou to be possessed of intelligence! Destitute of tranquillity, seek thou to be tranquil, and bereft of wisdom as thou art, do thou seek to act wisely![21] He who moves in the companionship of the righteous succeeds, by his own energy, in acquiring the means of accomplishing what is beneficial for him both in this and the next world. Verily, the root of that benefit (which thus becomes his here and hereafter) is unwavering firmness.[22] The royal sage Mahābhisha, through want of this firmness, fell from heaven. Yayāti, also, though his merits had become exhausted (in consequence of his boastfulness and though he was hurled down from heaven) succeeded in regaining regions of felicity through his firmness.[23] Thou art sure to attain to great intelligence, as also to what is for thy highest good, by paying court to virtuous and learned persons possessed of ascetic merit.—'[24]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of the sage, king Vasuman, possessed of a good disposition, withdrawing

---

attended to. By failing to attend to them, sin is incurred where merit is expected. Truth becomes as sinful as a lie, under particular circumstances; and a falsehood becomes as meritorious as truth under circumstances. The Hindu scriptures make circumstances the test of acts.—T.

his mind from the pursuits of desire, set it upon the acquisition of Righteousness.' "[25]

SECTION CCCXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'It behooveth thee, O grandsire, to discourse to me on that which is freed from duty and its reverse, which is freed from every doubt, which transcends birth and death, as also virtue and sin, which is auspiciousness, which is eternal fearlessness, which is Eternal and Indestructible, and Immutable, which is always Pure, and which is ever free from the toil of exertion.'[1-2]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall in this connection recite to thee the old narrative, O Bhārata, of the discourse between Yājnavalkya and Janaka.[3] Once on a time the famous king Daivarāti of Janaka's race, fully conversant with the import of all questions, addressed this question to Yājnavalkya, that foremost of Rishis.[4]

" 'Janaka said,—O regenerate Rishi, how many kinds of senses are there? How many kinds also are there of Prakriti? What is the Unmanifest and highest Brahma? What is higher than Brahma?[5] What is Birth and what Death? What are the limits of Age? It behooveth thee, O foremost of Brāhmanas, to discourse on all these topics unto me that am solicitous of obtaining thy grace![6] I am ignorant while thou art an Ocean of knowledge. Hence, I ask thee! Verily, I desire to hear thee discourse on all these subject!—[7]

" 'Yājnavalkya said,—Hear, O monarch, what I say in answer to these questions of thine. I shall impart to thee the high knowledge which Yogins value, and especially that which is possessed by the Sānkhyas.[8] Nothing is unknown to thee. Still thou askest me. One, however, that is questioned, should answer. This is the eternal practice.[9] Eight principles have been called by the name of Prakriti, while sixteen have been called modifications. Of Manifest, there are seven. These are the views of those persons who are conversant with the science of Adhyātma.[10] The Unmanifest (or original Prakriti), Mahat, Consciousness, and the five

subtile elements of Earth, Wind, Space, Water, and Light,[11] —these eight are known by the name of Prakriti. Listen now to the enumeration of those called modifications. They are the ear, the skin, the eye, the tongue, and the nose;[12] and sound, touch, form, taste, and scent, as also speech, the two arms, the two feet, the lower duct (within the body), and the organs of pleasure.*[13] Amongst these, the ten beginning with sound, and having their origin in the five great principles,† are called Viçesha. The five senses of knowledge are called Saviçesha, O ruler of Mithilā.[14] Persons conversant with the science of Adhyātma regard the Mind as the sixteenth. This is conformable to thy own views as also to those of other learned men well acquainted with the truths about principles.[15] From the Unmanifest, O king, springs the Mahat-soul. The learned say this to be the first creation relating to Pradhāna (or Prakriti).[16] From Mahat, O king of men, is produced Consciousness. This has been called the second creation having the Understanding for its essence.‡[17] From Consciousness hath sprung the Mind which is the essence of sound and the others that are the attributes of space and the rest. This is the third creation, said to relate to Consciousness.[18] From Mind have sprung the great elements, (numbering five), O king! Know that this is the fourth creation called mental, as I say.[19] Persons conversant with the primal elements say that Sound and Touch and Form and Taste and Scent are the fifth creation, relating to the Great (primal) elements.[20] The creation of the Ear, the Skin, the Eye, the Tongue, and the Scent, forms the sixth and is regarded as having for its essence multiplicity of thought.[21] The senses that come after the Ear and the others (*i. e.*, the senses of action) then arise, O monarch. This is called seventh creation and relates to the senses of

---

* These, including Mind, form the tale of sixteen called Vikriti or modifications of Prakriti.—T.

† These are the subtile principles or Tanmātrās, and not the gross elements.—T.

‡ 'Mahat' is sometimes called 'Buddhi;' hence the creation of Consciousness from Mahat must be creation relating to Buddhi.—T.

Knowledge.[22] Then, O monarch, come the breath that rises upward (*viz.*, Prāna) and those that have a transverse motion (*viz.*, Samāna, Udāna, and Vyāna). This is the eighth creation and is called Ārjjava.*[23] Then come those breaths that course transversely in the lower parts of the body (*viz.*, Samāna, Udāna, and Vyāna) and also that called Apāna coursing downwards. This, the ninth creation, is also called Ārjjava, O king.[24] These nine kinds of creation, and these principles, O monarch, which latter number four and twenty, are declared to thee according to what has been laid down in the scriptures.[25] After this, O king, listen to me as I tell thee the durations of time as indicated by the learned in respect of these principles or attributes.—' "[26]

SECTION CCCXII.

" 'Yājnavalkya said,—Listen to me, O foremost of men, as I tell thee what the duration of time is in respect to the Unmanifest (or the Supreme Purusha). Ten thousand Kalpas are said to constitute a single day of his.[1] The duration of his night is equal. When his night expires, he awakes, O monarch, and first creates herbs and plants which constitute the sustenance of all embodied creatures.[2] He then creates Brahman who springs from a golden egg. That Brahman is the form of all created things, as has been heard by us.[3] Having dwelt for one whole year within that egg, the great ascetic Brahman, called also Prajāpati (Lord of all creatures), came out of it and created the whole Earth, and the Heaven above.[4] The Lord then, it is read in the Vedas, O king, placed the sky between Heaven and Earth separated from each other.[5] Seven thousand and five hundred Kalpas measure the day of Brahman.[6] Persons conversant with the science of Adhyātma say that his night also is of an equal duration. Brahman, called Mahān, then creates

---

* 'Arjjava' means 'relating to straight paths or courses,' so called from the straight courses of these winds or breaths. By reference to these breaths is intended the other limbs of the physical system besides those already indicated.—T.

Consciousness called Bhuta and endued with excellent essence.*[7] Before creating any physical bodies out of the ingredients called the Great elements, Mahān or Brahma, endued with penances, created four others called his sons. They are the sires of the original sires, O best of kings, as heard by us.†[8] It hath been also heard by us, O monarch, that the senses (of knowledge) along with the four inner faculties, have sprung from the (five Great elements called) Pitris, and that the entire universe of mobile and immobile Beings has been filled with those Great elements.‡[9] The puissant Consciousness created the five Bhutas. These are Earth, Wind, Space, Water, and Light numbering the fifth.[10] This Consciousness (who is a Great Being and) from whom springs the third creation, has five thousand Kalpas for his night, and his day is of equal duration.[11] Sound, Touch, Form, Taste, and Scent,—these five are called Viçesha. They inhere into the five great Bhutas.[12] All creatures, O king, incessantly pervaded by these five, desire one another's companionship, become subservient to one another;[13] and challenging one another, transcend one another; and led by those immutable and seductive principles, creatures kill one another and wander in this world, entering into numerous intermediate orders of Being.$[14] Three thousands

---

* 'Rishi' here means 'Mahān' or Great. Consciousness is said to have an excellent essence, and is also a Bhuta because of its capacity to produce the Great Bhutas five in number.—T.

† These, the Commentator explains, are Mind, Buddhi or Understanding, Consciousness, and Chitwa, considered as Vyashti instead of as Samashthi. These are the sires of the primeval sires, *i. e.*, from these sprung the Mahābhutas or Great creatures (*viz.*, the five primal Elements).—T.

‡ 'Devāh' is explained by the Commentator as meaning the Senses and the four inner faculties. 'Devaih,' he thinks, refers to the Bhutas or Great elements. Literally rendered, the Verse would read as 'the Devas are the children of the Pitris; with the Devas, all the worlds of mobile and immobile Being have been covered.' It is not safe to reject the lead the Commentator.—T.

$ These two Verses refer to the power of the attributes of sound &c., over Jiva. Loves and hates, and all kinds of relationship of Jiva are due to the action of the attributes named.—T.

of Kalpas represent the duration of their day. The measure of their night also is the same.*[15] The Mind roveth over all things, O king, led on by the Senses. The Senses do not perceive anything. It is the Mind that perceives through them.[16] The Eye sees forms when aided by the Mind but never by itself. When the Mind is distracted, the Eye fails to perceive with even the object fully before it.[17] It is commonly said that the Senses perceive. This is not true, for it is the Mind that perceives through the Senses.[18] When the cessation takes place of the activity of the Mind, the cessation of the activity of the Senses follows. That is the cessation of the activity of the Senses which is the cessation of the activity of the Mind. One should thus regard the Senses to be under the domination of the Mind.[19] Indeed, the Mind is said to be the Lord of all the Senses. O thou of great fame, these are all the twenty Bhutas in the Universe.—' "[20]

SECTION CCCXIII.

" 'Yājnavalkya said,—I have, one after another, told thee the order of the creation, with their total number, of the various principles, as also the extent of the duration of each. Listen now to me as I tell thee of their destruction.[1] Listen to me how Brahman, who is eternal and undecaying, and who is without beginning and without end, repeatedly creates and destroys all created objects.[2] When his day expires and night comes, he becomes desirous of sleep. At such a time the unmanifest and holy one urges the Being called Mahārudra, who is conscious of his great powers, (for destroying the world).[3] Urged by the unmanifest, that Being, assuming the form of Surya of hundreds of thousands of rays, divides himself into a dozen portions each resembling a blazing fire.[4] He then consumes with his energy, O monarch, without any loss of time, the four kinds of created beings,

---

* The duration here given has reference to the day and the night of the Mahābhutas.—T.

viz., viviparous, oviparous, filth-born, and vegetable.[5] Within the twinkling of the eye all mobile and immobile creatures being thus destroyed, the Earth becomes on every side as bare as a tortoise shell.[6] Having burnt everything on the face of the Earth, Rudra of immeasurable might, then quickly fills the bare Earth with Water possessed of great force.[7] He then creates the Yuga-fire which dries up that Water (into which the bare Earth has been dissolved). The Water disappearing, the great element of Fire continues to blaze fiercely.[8] Then comes the mighty Wind of immeasurable force, in his eight forms, who swallows up quickly that blazing fire of transcendant force, possessed of seven flames, and identifiable with the heat that exists in every creature. Having swallowed up that fire, the Wind courses in every direction, upwards, downwards, and transversely.[9-10] Then Space of immeasurable existent swallows up that Wind of transcendant energy. Then Mind cheerfully swallows up that immeasurable Space.[11] Then that Lord of all creatures, *viz.*, Consciousness, who is the Soul of everything, swallows up the Mind. Consciousness, in his turn, is swallowed up by the Mahat-soul who is conversant with the Past, the Present, and the Future.[12] The incomparable Mahat-soul or Universe is then swallowed up by Cambhu, that Lord of all things, to whom the Yoga attributes of Animā, Laghimā, Prāpti, &c., naturally inhere, who is regarded as the Supreme and pure Effulgence that is Immutable.[13] His hands and feet extend over every part ; his eyes and head and face are everywhere, his ears reach every place, and he exists overwhelming all things.[14] He is the heart of all creatures ; His measure is of a digit of the thumb. That Infinite and Supreme Soul, that Lord of all, thus swallows up the Universe.[15] After this, what remains is the Undecaying and the Immutable One who is without defect of any kind, who is the Creator of the Past, the Present, and the Future ; and who is perfectly faultless.[16] I have thus, O monarch, duly told thee of Destruction. I shall now discourse to thee on the subjects of Adhyātma, Adhibhuta, and Adhidaivata.—' "[17]

Section CCCXIV.

"'Yājnavalkya said,—Brāhmanas conversant with the topics of enquiry speak of the two feet as Adhyātma, the act of walking as Adhibhuta, and Vishnu as Adhidaivatam (of those two limbs.[1] The lower duct (anal canal) is Adhyātma; its function of throwing out the excreta is Adhibhuta, and Mitra (Surya) is the Adhidaivata (of that organ).[2] The organ of generation is called Adhyātma. Its agreeable function is called Adhibhuta, and Prajāpati is its Adhidaivata.[3] The hands are Adhyātma; their function as represented by acts is Adhibhuta; and Indra is the Adhidaivata of those limbs.[4] The organs of speech are Adhyātma; the words uttered by them are Adhibhuta; and Agni is their Adhidaivata.[5] The eye is Adhyātma; vision or form is its Adhibhuta; and Surya is the Adhidaivata of that organ.[6] The ear is Adhyātma; sound is Adhibhuta; and the points of the horizon are its Adhidaivata.[7] The tongue is Adhyātma; taste is its Adhibhuta; and Water is its Adhidaivata.[8] The sense of scent is Adhyātma; odor is its Adhibhuta; and Earth is its Adhidaivata.[9] The skin is Adhyātma; touch is its Adhibhuta; and Wind is its Adhidaivata.[10] Mind has been called Adhyātma; that with which the Mind is employed is Adhibhuta; and Chandramas is its Adhidaivata.[11] Consciousness is Adhyātma; conviction in one's identity with Prakriti is its Adhibhuta; and Mahat or Buddhi is its Adhidaivata.[12] Buddhi is Adhyātma; that which is to be understood is its Adhibhuta; and Kshetrajna is its Adhidaivata.[13] I have thus truly expounded to thee, O king, with its details taken individually, the puissance of the Supreme (in manifesting Himself in different forms) in the beginning, the middle, and the end, O thou that art fully conversant with the nature of the original topics or principles.[14] Prakriti, cheerfully and of her own accord, as if for sport, O monarch, produces, by undergoing modifications herself, thousands and thousands of combinations of her original transformations called Gunahs.[15] As men can light thousands of lamps from but a single lamp, after the same manner Prakriti, by modification, multiplies into thousands

of existent objects the (three) attributes (of Sattwa and Rajas and Tamas) of Purusha.[16] Patience, joy, prosperity, satisfaction, brightness of all faculties, happiness, purity, health, contentment, faith,[17] liberality, compassion, forgiveness, firmness, benevolence, equanimity, truth, acquittance of obligations, mildness, modesty, calmness,[18] external purity, simplicity, observance of obligatory practices, dispassionateness, fearlessness of heart, disregard for the appearance or otherwise of good and evil as also for past acts,[19]—appropriation of objects only when obtained by gift, the absence of cupidity, regard for the interests of others, compassion for all creatures,—these have been said to be the qualities that attach to the attribute of Sattwa.[20] The tale of qualities attaching to the attribute of Rajas consists of pride of personal beauty, assertion of lordship, war, disinclination to give, absence of compassion, enjoyment and enduring of happiness and misery,[21] pleasure in speaking ill of others, indulgence in quarrels and disputes of every kind, arrogance, discourtesy, anxiety, indulgence in hostilities,[22] sorrow, appropriation of what belongs to others, shamelessness, crookedness, disunions, roughness, lust, wrath, pride,[23] assertion of superiority, malice, and calumny. These are said to spring from the attribute of Rajas. I shall now tell thee of that assemblage of qualities which springs from Tamas.[24] They are stupefaction of judgment, obscuration of every faculty, darkness, blind darkness. By darkness is implied death, and by blind darkness is meant wrath.[25] Besides these, the other indications of Tamas are greediness in respect of all kinds of food, ceaseless appetite for both food drink,[26] taking pleasure in scents and robes and sports and beds and seats and sleep during the day and calumny and all kinds of acts proceeding from heedlessness,[27] taking pleasure, from ignorance (of purer sources of joy) in dancing and instrumental and vocal music, and aversion for every kind of religion. These, indeed, are the indications of Tamas—' "[28]

Section CCCXV.

" 'Yājnavalkya said,—These three, O foremost of men, (*viz.*, Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas), are the attributes of Prakriti. These attach to all things of the universe and always inhere to them.[1] The Unmanifest Purusha endued with the six Yoga attributes transforms himself by himself into hundreds and thousands and millions and millions of forms (by embracing these three attributes).[2] Those that are conversant with the science of Adhyātma say that unto the attribute of Sattwa is assigned a high, unto Rajas a middling, and unto Tamas, a low place in the universe.[3] By the aid of unmixed righteousness one attains to a high end (*viz.*, that of the deities or other celestial beings). Through righteousness mixed with sin one attains to the status of humanity. While through unmixed sin one sinks into a vile end (by becoming an animal or a vegetable, &c.)[4] Listen now to me, O king, as I speak to thee of the intermixture or compounds of the three attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas.[5] Sometimes Rajas is seen existing with Sattwa. Tamas also exists with Rajas. With Tamas may also be seen Sattwa. Then also may Sattwa and Rajas and Tamas be seen existing together and in equal proportions. They then constitute the Unmanifest or Prakriti.[6] When the Unmanifest (Purusha) becomes endued with only Sattwa, he attains to the regions of the deities. Endued with both Sattwa and Rajas, he takes birth among human beings.[7] Endued with Rajas and Tamas, he takes birth among the intermediate order of Being. Endued with all three, *viz.*, Sattwa and Rajas and Tamas, he attains to the status of humanity.[8] Those high-souled persons that transcend both righteousness and sin, attain, it is said, to that place which is eternal, immutable, undecaying, and immortal.[9] Men of knowledge attain to births that are very superior, and their place is faultless and undecaying, transcending the ken of the senses, free from ignorance, above birth and death, and full of light that dispels all kinds of darkness.[10] Thou hadst asked me about the nature of the Supreme residing in the Unmanifest, (*viz.*,

Purusha). I shall tell thee. Listen to me, O king. Even when residing in Prakriti, He is said to reside in His own nature without partaking of the nature of Prakriti.*[11] Prakriti, O king, is inanimate and unintelligent. When presided over by Purusha, then only can she create and destroy.—[12]

"'Janaka said,—Both Prakriti and Purusha, O thou of great intelligence, are without beginning and without end. Both of them are without form. Both of them are undecaying.[13] Both of them, again, are incomprehensible. How then, O foremost of Rishis, can it be said that one of them is inanimate and unintelligent? How, again, is the other said to be animate and intelligent? And why is the latter called Kshetrajna?[14] Thou, O foremost of Brāhmanas, art fully conversant with the entire religion of Emancipation. I desire to hear in detail of the religion of Emancipation in its entirety.[15] Do thou discourse to me then of the existence and Oneness of Purusha, of his separateness from Prakriti, of the deities which attach to the body,[16] of the place to which embodied creatures repair when they die, and that place to which they may ultimately, in course of time, be able to go.[17] Tell me also of the Knowledge described in the Sānkhya system, and of the Yoga system separately. It behooveth thee also to speak of the premonitory symptoms of death, O best of men. All these topics are well known to thee even as an (emblic) myrobalan in thy hand!—' "[18]

Section CCCXVI.

"'Yājnavalkya said,—That which is without attributes, O son, can never be explained by ascribing attributes to it. Listen, however, to me as I expound to thee what is possessed of attributes and what is devoid of them.[1] High-souled Munis conversant with the truth regarding all the topics or principles say that when Purusha seizes attributes like a

---

* 'Prakritisthah' means 'in his own Prakriti or nature.' The sense of the line is that Purusha, even when residing in the case that Prakriti provides him with, does not partake of the nature of Prakriti but continues to be undefiled by her.—T.

crystal catching the reflection of a red flower, he comes to be called as possessed of attributes; but when freed from attributes like the crystal freed from reflection, he comes to be viewed in his real nature, that is, as beyond all attributes.*[2] Unmanifest Prakriti is by her nature endued with attributes. She cannot transcend them. Destitute of intelligence by nature, she becomes attached to attributes.[3] Unmanifest Prakriti cannot know anything, while Purusha, by his nature, is possessed of knowledge.—There is nothing higher than myself,—even this is what Purusha is always conscious of.[4] For this reason the unmanifest (or Prakriti), although naturally inanimate and unintelligent, still becomes animate and intelligent in consequence of her union with Purusha who is Eternal and Indestructible instead of remaining in her own nature due to her destructibility.†[5] When Purusha, through ignorance, repeatedly becomes associated with attributes, he fails to understand his own real nature and therefore he fails to attain to Emancipation.[6] In consequence of Purusha's lordship over the principles that flow from Prakriti, he is said to partake of the nature of those principles. In consequence also of his agency in the matter of creation, he is said to possess the attribute of creation.[7] In consequence of his agency in the matter of Yoga, he is said to possess the attribute of Yoga. For his lordship over those particular principles known by the name of Prakriti, he is said to possess the nature of Prakriti.‡[8] For his agency

---

* I expand this Verse for bringing out the meaning. A verbal rendering will become unintelligible.—T.

† This is a difficult Verse. I am not sure that I have understood it correctly. The sense seems to be that Prakriti, which is really unintelligent and incapable of enjoyment or endurance, becomes intelligent and capable of enjoyment or endurance in consequence of being united with Purusha who is intelligent. Thus when pleasurable or painful sensations are felt, it is the body that seems to feel it only in consequence of the Soul that presides over it.—T.

‡ The first line of 7 is the same in sense as the second line of 8. In the Bombay text, only the second line of 8 occurs, while the first line of 7 has been justly omitted. In fact, *Tattwa* and the *Prakritis* are the same thing.—T.

in the matter of creating the seeds (of all immobile objects), he is said to partake of the nature of those seeds. And because he causes the several principles or attributes to start into life, he is, therefore, said to be subject to decay and destruction (for those principles themselves are subject thereto).[9] In consequence, again, of his being the witness of everything, and in consequence also of there being nothing else than he, as also for his consciousness of identity with Prakriti, Yatis crowned with ascetic success, conversant with Adhyātma, and freed from fever of every kind, regard him as existing by himself without a second, immutable, unmanifest (in the form of Cause), unstable, and manifest (in the form of effects).[10] This is what has been heard by us. Those Sānkhyas, however, that depend upon Knowledge only (for their Emancipation) and the practice of compassion for all creatures, say that it is Prakriti which is One but Purushas are many.*[11] As a matter of fact, Purusha is different from Prakriti which though unstable, still appears as stable. As a blade of reed is different from its outer cover, even so is Purusha different from Prakriti.[12] Indeed, the worm that is ensconced within the Udumvara should be known as different from the Udumvara. Though existing with the Udumvara, the worm is not to be regarded as forming a portion of the Udumvara.[13] The fish is distinct from the water in which it lives, and the water is distinct from the fish that lives in it. Though the fish and water exist together, yet it is never drenched by water.[14] The fire that is contained in an earthen saucepan is distinct from the earthen saucepan, and the saucepan is distinct from the fire it contains. Although the fire exists in and with the saucepan, yet it is not to be regarded as forming any part of it.[15] The lotus-leaf that floats on a piece of water is distinct from the piece of water on which it floats. Its co-existence with water does not make it a portion of the water.[16] The perennial existence of those objects in and with those mentioned, is never correctly understood by ordinary people.[17] They who behold

* This refers to the opinion of the atheistic Sānkhyas.—T.

Prakriti and Purusha in any other light are said to possess a vision that is incorrect. It is certain that they have repeatedly to sink into terrible hell.[18] I have thus told thee the philosophy of the Sānkhyas, that excellent science by which all things have been correctly ascertained. Ascertaining the nature of Purusha and Prakriti in this way, the Sānkhyas attain to Emancipation.[19] I have also told thee of the systems of those others that are conversant with the great principles of the universe. I shall now discourse to thee on the science of the Yogins.—' "[20]

SECTION CCCXVII.

" 'Yājnavalkya said,—I have already spoken to thee of the science of the Sānkhyas. Listen now to me as I truly discourse on the science of the Yogins as heard and seen by me, O best of kings![1] There is no Knowledge that can compare with that of the Sānkhyas. There is no puissance that compares with that of Yoga. These two ordain the same practices, and both are regarded as capable of leading to Emancipation.[2] Those men that are not blest with intelligence regard the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems to be different from each other. We, however, O king, look upon them as one and the same, according to the conclusion to which we have arrived (after study and reflection).[3] That which the Yogins have in view is the very same which the Sānkhyas also have in view. He who sees both the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems to be one and the same is to be regarded as truly conversant with the topics or principles that ordain the universe.[4] Know, O king, that the vital breaths and the senses are the chief means for practising Yoga. By only regulating those breaths and the senses, Yogins wander everywhere at their will.*[5] When the gross body is des-

---

* By the word 'Rudra' is meant *Prāna* and the other breaths. The Commentator explains that the etymology is 'utkramana kāle dehinam rodayanti iti Rudrāh Prānāh.' By regulating the vital breaths and the Senses, Yogins attain to Yoga-puissance and succeed in roving wherever they please in their *linga-çarira* or subtile bodies.—T.

troyed, Yogins, endued with subtile bodies possessed of the eight Yoga attributes (of Animā, Laghimā, Prāpti, &c.), wander over the universe, enjoying (in that body) all kinds of felicities, O sinless one.[6] The wise have, in the scriptures, spoken of Yoga as conferring eight kinds of puissance. They have spoken of Yoga as possessed of eight limbs.*[7] Indeed, O king, they have not spoken of any other kind of Yoga. It has been said that the practices of Yogins, excellent as these are (for their results), are of two kinds. Those two kinds, according to the indications occurring in the scriptures, are practices endued with attributes and those freed from attributes.[8] The concentration of the mind (on the sixteen objects named), with simultaneous regulation of the breath, O king, (is one kind). The concentration of the mind (in such a way as to destroy all difference between the contemplater, the object contemplated, and the act of contemplation) along with subjugation of the senses, (is of another kind). The first kind of Yoga is said to be that possessed of attributes ; the second kind is said to be that freed from attributes.†[9] Then, again, Regulation of the breath is Yoga with attributes. In Yoga without attributes, the mind, freed from its functions, should be fixed. Only the regulation of the breath which is said to be endued with attributes should, in the first instance, be practised, for, O ruler of Mithilā, if the breath (that is inhaled and suspended) be exhaled without mentally reflecting the while upon a definite image (furnished by a limited *mantra*), the wind in the neophyte's system will increase to his great injury.‡[10] In the first Yāma of the night,

* The Eight limbs of Yoga are Prānāyāma, Pratyāhāra, Dhyāna, Dhāranā, Tarka, Samādhi, with the two additional ones of Yama and Niyama.—T.

† In the first line of 9, the word 'Prānāyāma' is used to mean regulation of the vital breaths. In the second line, the same word implies the 'āyāmah or nigrahah' of the senses with the mind. By 'Dhārana' is meant the fixing of the mind, one after another, on the sixteen things named in treatises on Yoga. By 'ekāgratā' of the mind is meant that concentration in which there is no longer any consciousness of difference between 'Dhyātri, Dheya, and Dhyāna.'—T.

‡ It is difficult for those who do not practise Prānāyāma to under-

twelve ways of holding the breath are recommended. After sleep, in the last Yāma of the night, other twelve ways of doing the same have been laid down.[11] Without doubt, one endued with tranquillity, of subdued senses, living in retirement, rejoicing in one's own self, and fully conversant with the import of the scriptures, should (regulating one's breath in these four and twenty ways) fix one's Soul (on the Supreme Soul).*[12] Dispelling the five faults of the five senses, *viz.*, (withdrawing them from their objects of) sound, form, touch, taste, and scent,[13] and dispelling those conditions called Pratibhā and Apavanga, O ruler of the Mithilās, all the senses should be fixed upon the mind.[14] The mind should then be fixed on Consciousness, O king ; Consciousness should next be fixed on Intelligence or Buddhi, and Buddhi should then be fixed on Prakriti.[15] Thus merging these one after another, Yogins contemplate the Supreme Soul which is One, which is freed from Rajas, which is stainless, which is Immutable and Infinite and Pure and without defect,[16] who is Eternal Purusha, who is unchangeable, who is Indivisible, who is without decay and death, who is everlasting, who transcends diminution, and which is Immutable Brahma.[17] Listen now, O monarch, to the indications of one that is in Yoga. All the indications of cheerful contentment that are his who is slumbering in contentment are seen in the person, that is in Samādhi.[18] The person in Samādhi, the wise say, looks like the fixed and upward flame of a lamp that is full of

---

stand this fully. The fact is, in Saguna Prānāyāma, when the breath is inhaled, the inhalation is measured by the time taken up in mentally reciting a well-known mantra. So when the inhaled breath is suspended, the suspension is measured by the time taken in mentally reciting a particular mantra. When, therefore, the suspended breath should be exhaled, it should be done by similarly measuring the time of exhaling. For beginners, this Saguna Prānāyāma is recommended. Of course only exhalation has been spoken of ; but it applies equally to inhalation and suspension. These three processes, in Yoga language, are Puraka, Kumbhaka, and Rechaka —T.

* 'Ekāntāçilin' neans a 'Sannyāsin ;' 'ātmārāma' is one who takes pleasure in one's soul instead of in spouses and children.—T.

oil and that burns in a breezeless spot.[19] He is like a rock which is incapable of being moved in the slightest degree by even a heavy downpour from the clouds.[20] He is incapable of being moved by the din of conchs and drums, or by songs, or the sound of hundreds of musical instruments beat or blown together. Even this is the indication of one in Samādhi.[21] As a man of cool courage and determination, while ascending a flight of steps with a vessèl full of oil in his hands, does not spill even a drop of the liquid if frightened and threatened by persons armed with weapons, even so the Yogin, when his mind has been concentrated and when he beholds the Supreme Soul in Samādhi, does not, in consequence of the entire stoppage of the functions of his senses at such a time, move in the slightest degree. Even these should be known to be the indications of the Yogin while he is in Samādhi.[22-24] While in Samādhi, the Yogin beholds Brahma which is Supreme and Immutable, and which is situated like a blazing Effulgence in the midst of thick Darkness.[25] It is by this means that he attains, after many years, to Emancipation after casting off this inanimate body. Even this is what the eternal Cruti declares.[26] This is called the Yoga of the Yogins. What else is it ? Knowing it, they that are endued with wisdom regard themselves as crowned with success.—' "[27]

Section CCCXVIII.

" 'Yājnavalkya said,—Listen now to me, with attention, O king, as to what the places are to which those who die have to go. If the Jiva-soul escapes through the feet, it is said that the man goes to the region of Vishnu.[1] If through the calves, it has been heard by us that the man repairs to the regions of the Vasus. If through the knees, he attains to the companionship of those deities that are called Sādhyas.[2] If through the lower duct, the man attains to the regions of Mitra. If through the posteriors, the man returns to the Earth, and if through the thighs to the region of Prajāpati.[3] If through the flanks, the man attains to the regions of the

Maruts, and if through the nostrils, to the region of Chandramas. If through the arms, the man goes to the region of Indra, and if through the chest, to that of Rudra.[4] If through the neck, the man repairs to the excellent region of that foremost of ascetics known by the name of Nara. If through the mouth, the man attains to the region of the Viçwedevas, and if through the ears, to the region of the deities of the several points of the horizon.[5] If through the nose, the man attains to the region of the Wind-god; and if through the eyes, to the region of Agni. If through the brows, the man goes to the region of the Açwins; and if through the forehead, to that of the Pitris.[6] If through the crown of the head, the man attains to the region of the puissant Brahman, that foremost of the gods. I have thus told thee, O ruler of Mithilā, the several places to which men repair according to the manner in which their Jiva-souls escape from their bodies.[7] I shall now tell thee the premonitory indications, as laid down by the wise, of those who have but one year to live.[8] One who, having previously seen the fixed star called Arandhati, fails to see it, or that other star called Dhruva,* or one that sees the full Moon or the flame of a burning lamp to be broken towards the south, has but one year to live.[9] Those men, O king, who can no longer see images of themselves reflected in the eyes of others, have but one year to live.[10] One who being endued with lustre loses it, or being endued with wisdom loses it,—indeed, one whose inward and outward nature is thus changed,—has but six months more to live.[11] He who disregards the deities, or quarrels with the Brāhmanas, or one who being naturally of a dark complexion becomes pale of hue, has but six months more to live.[12] One who sees the lunar disc to have many holes like a spider's web, or one who sees the solar disc to have similar holes, has but one week more to live.[13] One who, when smelling fragrant scents in places of worship, perceives them to be as offensive as the scent of corpses, has but one week more to live.[14] The

* The pole-star.—T.

depression of the nose or of the ears, the discolor of the teeth or of the eye, the loss of all consciousness, and the loss also of all animal heat, are symptoms indicating death that very day.[15] If, without any perceptible cause a stream of tears suddenly flows from one's left eye, and if vapours be seen to issue from one's head, that is a sure indication that the man will die before that day expires.[6] Knowing all these premonitory symptoms, the man of cleansed soul should day and night unite his soul with the Supreme Soul (in Samādhi).[17] Thus should he go on till the day comes for his dissolution. If, however, instead of wishing to die he desires to live in this world, he casts off all enjoyments,—all scents and tastes,—O king, and lives on in abstinence. He thus conquers death by fixing his soul on the Supreme Soul.[18-19] Indeed, the man who is blessed with knowledge of the Soul, O monarch, practises the course of life recommended by the Sānkhyas and conquers death by uniting his Soul with the Supreme Soul.[20] At last, he attains to what is entirely indestructible, which is without birth, which is auspicious, and immutable, and eternal, and stable, and which is incapable of being attained to by men of uncleansed souls.—' "[21]

SECTION CCCXIX.

" 'Yājnavalkya said,—Thou hast asked me, O monarch, of that Supreme Brahma which resides in the Unmanifest. Thy question relates to a deep mystery. Listen to me with close attention, O king![1] Having conducted myself with humility according to the ordinances laid down by the Rishis I obtained the Yajushes, O king, from Surya.[2] With the austerest penances I formerly adored the heat-giving deity. The puissant Surya, O sinless one, gratified with me, addressed me, saying,[3]—Solicit thou, O regenerate Rishi, the boon upon which thou hast set thy heart, however difficult it may be of acquisition. I shall, with cheerful Soul, grant it to thee. It is very difficult to incline me to grace![4]—

Bowing unto him with a bend of my head, that foremost of heat-giving luminaries was addressed by me in these words, —I have no knowledge of the Yajushes. I desire to know them without loss of time![5]—The holy one, thus solicited, told me,—I shall impart the Yajushes unto thee. Made up of the essence of speech, the goddess Saraswati will enter into thy body.[6]—The deity then commanded me to open my mouth. I did as I was commanded. The goddess Saraswati then entered into my body, O sinless one.[7] At this, I began to burn. Unable to endure the pain I plunged into a stream. Not understanding that what the high-souled Surya had done for me was for my good, I became even angry with him.[8] While I was burning with the energy of the goddess, the holy Surya told me,—Do thou endure this burning sensation for only a little while. That will soon cease and thou wilt be cool.[9] Indeed, I became cool. Seeing me restored to ease, the Maker of light said unto me,—The whole Vedas, with even those parts that are regarded as its appendix, together with the Upanishads, will appear in thee by inward light, O regenerate one![10] The entire Catapathas also thou wilt edit, O foremost of regenerate ones. After that, thy understanding will turn to the path of Emancipation.[11] Thou wilt also attain to that end which is desirable and which is coveted by both Sānkhyas and Yogins!—Having said these words unto me, the divine Surya proceeded to the Asta hills.[12] Hearing his last words, and after he had departed from the spot where I was, I came home in joy and then remembered the goddess Saraswati.[13] Thought of by me, the auspicious Saraswati appeared instantly before my eyes, adorned with all the vowels and the consonants and having placed the syllable Om in the van.[14] I then, according to the ordinance, offered unto the goddess the usual Arghya, and dedicated another to Surya, that foremost of all heat-giving deities. Discharging this duty I took my seat, devoted to both those deities.[15] Thereupon the entire Catapatha Brāh manas, with all their mysteries and with all their abstracts as also their appendices, appeared of themselves before my mental vision, at which I became filled

with great joy.*[16] I then taught them to a hundred good disciples and there by did what was disagreeable to my high-souled maternal uncle (Vaiçampāyana) with the disciples gathered round him.†[17] Then, shining in the midst of my disciples like the Sun himself with his rays, I took the management of the Sacrifice of thy high-souled sire, O king.[18] In that Sacrifice, a dispute arose between me and my maternal uncle as to who should be permitted to appropriate the Dakshinā that was paid for the recitation of the Vedas.[19] In the very presence of Devala, I took half of that Dakshinā, (the other half going to my maternal uncle).[19] Thy sire and Sumanta and Paila and Jaimini and other ascetics all acquiesced in that arrangement.‡[20]

"'I had thus got from Surya the five times ten Yajushes, O monarch. I then studied the Purānas with Romaharshan.[21] Keeping before me those (original) Mantras and the goddess

---

* 'Chakre' literally means 'I made.' The Commentator explains it as equivalent to 'swayam āvirabhut.'—T.

† 'Vipriya' evidently means 'what is not agreeable.' There was evidently a dispute between Yājnyvalkya and his maternal uncle Vaiçampāyana, the celebrated disciple of Vyāsa. This dispute is particularly referred to in the next Verse. Vaiçampāyana had been a recognised teacher of the Vedas and had collected a large number of disciples around him. When, therefore, the nephew Yājnavalkya, having obtained the Vedas from Surya, began to teach them, he was naturally looked upon with a jealousy, which culminated (as referred to in the next Verse) into an open dispute about the Dakshinā to be appropriated in the Sacrifice of Janaka. The Burdwan translator incorrectly renders the word 'vipriya' which he takes to mean as 'very agreeable.' In the Vishnu Purāna it is mentioned that a dispute took place between Yājnavalkya and Paila. The latter's preceptor, Vyāsa, came, and taking his side, asked Yājnavalkya to return him the Vedas which he had obtained from him. Yājnavalkya vomitted forth the Vedas. These were instantly devoured by two other Rishis in the form of Tittiri birds. These afterwards promulgated the Taittiriya Upanishads.—T.

‡ This shows that I was then regarded as the equal of Vaiçampāyana himself in the matter of Vedic knowledge. Sumanta and Paila and Jaimini, with Vaiçampāyana, were the Rishis that assisted the great Vyāsa in the task of arranging the Vedas.—T.

Saraswati, I then, O king, aided by the inspiration of Surya, set myself to compile the excellent Catapatha Brāhmanas, and succeeded in achieving the task never before undertaken by any one else. That path which I had desired to take has been taken by me and I have also taught it to my disciples.[22-23] Indeed, the whole of those Vedas with their abstracts have been imparted by me to those disciples of mine. Pure in mind and body, all those disciples have, in consequence of my instructions, become filled with joy.[24] Having established (for the use of others) this knowledge consisting of fifty branches which I had obtained from Surya, I now meditate on the great object of that knowledge (*viz.*, Brahma).[25] The Gandharva Viçwāvasu, well conversant with the Vedānta scriptures, desirous, O king, of ascertaining what is beneficial for the Brāhmanas in this knowledge and what truth occurs in it, and what is the excellent object of this knowledge, once questioned me. He put to me altogether four and twenty questions, O king, relating to the Vedas. Finally, he asked me a question, numbered twentyfifth which relates to that branch of knowledge which is concerned with the inferences of ratioscination. Those questions are as follow :—What is universe and what is not-universe? What is Açwā and what Açwa? What is Mitra? What is Varuna?[26-28] What is Knowledge? What is the Object of knowledge? What is Unintelligent? What is Intelligent? Who is Ka? Who is possessed of the principle of change? Who is not possessed of the same? What is he that devours the Sun and what is the Sun? What is Vidyā and what is Avidyā?[29] What is Vedya and what Avedya? What is Immobile and what Mobile? What is without beginning, what is Indestructible, and what is Destructible? These were the excellent questions put to me by that foremost of Gandharvas.[30] After king Viçwāvasu, that foremost of Gandharvas, had asked me these questions one after another, I answered them properly.[31] At first, however, I told him,—Wait for a brief space of time, till I reflect on thy questions!—So be it,—the Gandharva said, and sat in silence.[32] I then thought once again of the goddess Saraswati in my mind. The

replies then to those questions naturally arose in my mind like butter from curds.[33] Keeping in view the high science of inferential ratioscination, I churned with my mind, O monarch, the Upanishads and the supplementary scriptures relating to the Vedas.[34] The fourth science then that treats of Emancipation, O foremost of kings, and on which I have already discoursed to thee, and which is based upon the twentyfifth, *viz.*, Jiva, I then expounded to him.*[35] Having said all this, O monarch, to king Viçwāvasu, I then addressed him, saying,—Listen now to the answers that I give unto the several questions that thou hast put to me.[36] I now turn to the question which, O Gandharva, thou askest, *viz.*,—what is Universe and what is Not-universe?—The Universe is Unmanifest and original Prakriti endued with the principles of birth and death which are terrible (to those that are desirous of Emancipation).[37] It is, besides, possessed of the three attributes (of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas), in consequence of its producing principles all of which are fraught with those attributes.† That which is Not-universe is Purusha divested of all attributes. By Açwā and Açwa are meant the female and the male,[38] *i. e.*, the former is Prakriti and the latter is Purusha. Similarly, Mitra is Purusha, and Varuna is Prakriti.‡[39] Knowledge, again, is said to be Prakriti, while the object to be known is called Purusha. The Ignorant (Jiva), and the Knowing or Intelligent are both Purusha without attributes, (for it is Purusha that becomes Jiva when invested with Ignorance).[40] Thou hast asked what is Kah, who is endued with change, and who is unendued therewith. I answer, Kah is Purusha.$ That

* This is called the Fourth Science, the three others being the three Vedas, Agriculture, and the Science of Morality and Chastisement.—T.

† Prakriti is regarded as something in which Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas reside in exactly equal proportions. All the principles of Mahat, &c., which flow from Prakriti, are characterised by these three attributes in diverse measure.—T.

‡ By Mitra is meant here the deity giving light and heat. By Varuna is meant the waters that compose the universe.—T.

$ 'Kah,' the Commentator explained, is 'ānandah' or felicity.—T.

which is endued with change is Prakriti. He that is not endued therewith is Purusha.[41] Similarly, that which is called Avedya (the unknowable) is Prakriti; and that which is called Vedya is Purusha.[42] Thou hast asked me about the Mobile and the Immobile. Listen to what my answer is. That which is mobile is Prakriti, which, undergoing modifications, constitutes the cause of Creation and Destruction. The Immobile is Purusha, for without himself undergoing modifications he assists at Creation and Destruction.[43] (According to a different system of philosophy) that which is Vedya is Prakriti; while that which is Avedya is Purusha. Both Prakriti and Purusha are said to be unintelligent, stable, indestructible,[44] unborn, and eternal, according to the conclusions arrived at by philosophers conversant with the topics included in the name of Adhyātma.[45] In consequence of the indestructibility of Prakriti in the matter of Creation, Prakriti, which is unborn, is regarded as not subject to decay or destruction. Purusha, again, is indestructible and unchangeable, for change it has none.[46] The attributes that reside in Prakriti are destructible, but not Prakriti herself. The learned, therefore, call Prakriti indestructible. Prakriti also, by undergoing modifications, operates as the cause of Creation. The created results appear and disappear, but not original Prakriti. Hence also is Prakriti called indestructible. Thus have I told thee the conclusions of the fourth Science based on the principles of ratioscinative inference and having Emancipation for its end.[47] Having acquired, by the science of ratioscinative inference and by waiting upon preceptors, the Richs, the Sāmans, and the Yajushes, all the obligatory practices should be observed and all the Vedas studied with reverence, O Viçwāvasu![48] O foremost of Gandharvas, they who study the Vedas with all their branches but who do not know the Supreme Soul from which all things take their birth and into which all things merge when destruction comes, and which is the one object whose knowledge the Vedas seek to inculcate,—indeed, they who have no acquaintance with that which the Vedas seek to establish,—study the Vedas to no purpose and

bear their burthen of such study in vain.[49-50] If a person desirous of butter churns the milk of the she-ass, without finding what he seeks he simply meets with a substance that is as foul of smell as ordure.[51] After the same manner, if one, having studied the Vedas, fails to comprehend what is Prakriti and what is Purusha, one only proves one's own foolishness of understanding and bears a useless burthen (in the form of Vedic lore).*[52] One should, with devoted attention, reflect on both Prakriti and Purusha, so that one may avoid repeated birth and death.[53] Reflecting upon the fact of one's repeated births and deaths and avoiding the religion of acts that is productive at best of destructible results, one should betake oneself to the indestructible religion of Yoga.[54] O Kāçyapa, if one continuously reflects on the nature of the Jiva-soul and its connection with the Supreme Soul, one then succeeds in divesting oneself of all attributes and in beholding the Supreme Soul.[55] The Eternal and Unmanifest Supreme Soul is regarded by men of foolish understandings to be different from the twentyfifth or the Jiva-soul. They are endued with wisdom that behold both these as truly one and the same.[56] Frightened at repeated births and deaths, the Sānkhyas and Yogins regard the Jiva-soul and the Supreme Soul to be one and the same.—[57]

"'—Viçwāvasu then said,—Thou hast, O foremost of Brāhmanas, said that Jiva-soul is indestructible and truly undistinguished from the Supreme Soul. This, however, is difficult to understand. It behooveth thee to once more discourse on this topic to me.[58] I have heard discourses on this subject from Jaigishavya, Asita, Devala, the regenerate sage Parāçara, the intelligent Vārshaganya, Bhrigu, Panchaçikha, Kapila, Cuka, Gautama, Ārshtisena, the high-souled Garga, Nārada, Āsuri, the intelligent Paulastya, Sanatkumāra, the high-souled Cukra, and my sire Kaçyapa. Subse-

* The camparison lies in the folly of the two persons indicated. One churning ass's milk for butter is only a fool. Similarly, one failing to understand the nature of Prakriti and Purusha from the Vedas is only a fool.—T.

quently I heard the discourses of Rudra and the intelligent Viçwarupa, of several of the deities, of the Pitris, and the Daityeas. I have acquired all that they say, for they generally discourse that eternal object of all knowledge.[58-63] I desire, however, to hear what thou mayst say on those topics with the aid of thy intelligence. Thou art the foremost of all persons, and a learned lecturer on the scriptures, and endued with great intelligence.[64] There is nothing that is unknown to thee. Thou art an ocean of the Crutis, as described, O Brāhmana, in the world of both the deities and the Pitris.[65] The great Rishis residing in the region of Brahma say that Āditya himself, the eternal lord of all luminaries, is thy preceptor (in the matter of this branch of knowledge).[66] O Yājnavalkya, thou hast obtained the entire science, O Brāhmana, of the Sānkhyas, as also the scriptures of the Yogins in particular.[67] Without doubt, thou art enlightened, fully conversant with the mobile and immobile universe. I desire to hear (thee discourse on that knowledge, which may be likened to clarified butter endued with solid grains.[68]

"'Yājnavalkya said,—Thou art, O foremost of Gandharvas, competent to comprehend every knowledge. As, however, thou askest me, do thou hear me then discourse to thee according as I myself have obtained it from my preceptor.[69] Prakriti, which is unintelligent, is apprehended by Jiva. Jiva, however, cannot be apprehended by Prakriti, O Gandharva.[70] In consequence of Jiva being reflected in Prakriti, the latter is called Pradhāna by Sānkhyas and Yogins conversant with the original principles as indicated in the Crutis.[71] O sinless one, the other, beholding, beholds the twentyfourth (Prakriti) and the twentyfifth (Soul); not beholding, it beholds the twentysixth.*[72] The twentyfifth

* I give a literal rendering of this Verse for showing how difficult it is to understand the meaning. The Commentator correctly explains the sense which is as follows: 'anyah' or the other is the Soul as distinguished from its reflection upon Prakriti, that is, the Soul in its real character as independent of Prakriti. What is said here is that when the Soul, in its real character beholds, or acts as a witness of

thinks that there is nothing higher than itself. In reality, however, though beholding, it does not behold That (*viz.*, the Twentysixth) which beholds it.*[73] Men possessed of wisdom should never accept the Twentyfourth (*viz.*, Prakriti, which is unintelligent or inert) as identifiable with the Twentyfifth or the Soul which has a real and independent existence. The fish live in water. It goes thither impelled by its own nature.[74] As the fish, though living in the water, is to be regarded as separate from it, after the same manner is the Twentyfifth to be apprehended, *i. e.*, though the Twentyfifth exists in a state of contact with the Twentyfourth or Prakriti, it is, however, in its real nature, separate from and independent of Prakriti. When overwhelmed with the consciousness of *meum* or Self, and when unable to understand its identity with the Twentysixth, in fact, in consequence of the illusion that invests it, of its co-existence with Prakriti, and of its own manner of thinking, the Jiva-soul always sinks down, but when freed from such consciousness it goes upwards.[75-76] When the Jiva-soul succeeds in apprehending that it is one, and Prakriti with which it resides is another, then only does it, O regenerate one, succeed in beholding the Supreme Soul and attaining to the condition of Oneness with the universe.[77] The Supreme is one, O king, and the Twentyfifth (or Jiva-soul) is another. In

everything (*i. e.*, as exists in the states of wakefulness and dream), becomes conscious of both itself (the Twentyfifth) and Prakriti (the Twentyfourth) when, however, it ceases to behold or act as such witness (*i. e.*, in the state of dreamless slumber or Yoga-samādhi), it succeeds in beholding the Supreme Soul or the Twentysixth. In simple language what is said here is that the Soul becomes conscious of both itself and Prakriti in the state of wakefulness and dream. In Samādhi alone, it beholds the Supreme Soul.—T.

* What is said here is that the Twentysixth or the Supreme Soul always beholds the Twentyfifth or the Jiva-soul. The latter, however, filled with vanity, regards that there is nothing higher than it. It can easily, in Yoga-samādhi, behold the Twentysixth. Though thus competent to behold the Supreme Soul, it fails ordinarily to behold it. The Commentator sees in this Verse a reputation of the doctrine of the Chārvākas and the Saugatas who deny that there is a Twentysixth Tattwa or even a Twentyfifth which they identify with the Twentyfourth.—T.

consequence, however, of the Supreme overlying the Jiva-soul, the wise regard both to be one and the same.*[73] For these reasons, Yogins and followers of the Sānkhya system of philosophy, terrified by birth and death, blessed with sight of the Twentysixth, pure in body and mind, and devoted to the Supreme Soul, do not welcome the Jiva-soul as indestructible.† When one beholds the Supreme Soul and losing all consciousness of individuality becomes identified with the Supreme, one then becomes omniscient, and possessed of such omniscience one becomes freed from the obligation of rebirth. I have thus discoursed to thee truly, O sinless one, about Prakriti which is unintelligent, and Jiva-soul which is possessed of intelligence, and the Supreme Soul which is endued with omniscience, according to the indications occurring in the Crutis. That man who beholds not any difference between the knower and the known, and who beholds not the difference between knowledge and the known, is both Kevala and not-Kevala, is the original cause of the universe, is both Jiva-soul and the Supreme Soul.‡—[70-83]

---

* 'Tatsthānāt' is explained by the Commentator as 'varasya avarādhisthānāt,' *i. e.*, in consequence of 'vara' overlying the 'avara.' The instance of the string and the snake is cited. At first the string is erroneously taken for the snake. When the error is dispelled, the string appears as the string. Thus the Supreme and the Jiva-soul come to be taken as one when true knowledge comes.—T.

† The ordinary doctrine is that the Jiva-soul is indestructible, for it is both unborn and deathless, its so-called births and deaths being only changes of the forms which Prakriti undergoes in course of her association with it, an association that continues as long as the Jiva-soul does not succeed in effecting its emancipation. In this Verse the ordinary doctrine is abandoned. What is said here is that the Jiva-soul is *not* deathless, for when it becomes identified with the Supreme Soul, that alteration may be taken as its death.—T.

‡ This is a very difficult Verse. 'Paçya' and 'apaçya' are 'drashtri' and 'driçya,' *i. e.*, knower and known (or Soul and Prakriti). 'Kshemaya' and 'Tattwa' are 'drik' and 'driçya' *i. e.*, knowledge and known. One that sees no difference between these, that is, one that regards all things as one and the same, is both 'Kevala' and 'not-Kevala,' &c., meaning that such a person, though still appearing as a Jiva (to others) is in reality identifiable with the Supreme Soul.—T.

"'—Viçwāvasu said,—O puissant one, thou hast duly and adequately discoursed on that which is the origin of all the deities and which is productive of Emancipation. Thou hast said what is true and excellent. May inexhaustible blessings always attend thee, and may thy mind be ever united with intelligence!—[83]

"'Yājnavalkya continued,—Having said those words, the prince of Gandharvas proceeded towards heaven, shining in resplendence of beauty. Before leaving me, the high-souled one duly honored me by taking the accustomed turns round my person, and I looked upon him, highly pleased.[84] He inculcated the science he had obtained from me unto those celestials that dwell in the regions of Brahman and other deities, unto those that dwell on Earth, unto also the denizens of the nether regions, and unto them that had adopted the path of Emancipation, O king.[85] The Sānkhyas are devoted to the practices of their system. The Yogins are devoted to the practices inculcated by their system. Others there are that are desirous of achieving their Emancipation. Unto these latter this science is productive of visible fruits.[86] O lion among kings, Emancipation flows from Knowledge. Without Knowledge it can never be attained. The wise have said it, O monarch. Hence, one should strive one's best for acquiring true Knowledge in all its details, by which one may succeed in freeing oneself from birth and death.[87] Obtaining knowledge from a Brāhmana or a Kshatriya or Vaiçya or even a Cudra who is of low birth, one endued with faith should always show reverence for such knowledge. Birth and death cannot assail one that is endued with faith.[88] All orders of men are Brāhmanas. All are sprung from Brahman. All men utter Brahma.* Aided by an understanding that is derived from and directed to Brahma,

* This may mean that as all men speak, and as speech is Brahma, all men must be regarded as utterers of Brahma. If, again, Brahma be taken to mean the Vedas in especial, it may imply that all men utter the Vedas or are competent to study the Vedas. Such an exceedingly liberal sentiment from the mouth of Yājnavalkya is compatible only with the religion of Emancipation which he taught.—T.

I inculcate this science treating of Prakriti and Purusha. Indeed, this whole universe is Brahma.[89] From the mouth of Brahman sprung the Brāhmanas; from his arms, sprung the Kshatriyas; from his navel, the Vaiçyys; and from his feet, the Cudras. All the orders, (having sprung in this way) should not be regarded as differing from one another.[90] Impelled by Ignorance, all men meet with death and attain, O king, to birth that is the cause of acts.* Divested of Knowledge, all orders of men, dragged by terrible Ignorance, fall into varied orders of being due to the principles that flow from Prakriti.[91] For this reason, all should, by every means, seek to acquire Knowledge. I have told thee that every person is entitled to strive for its acquisition. One that is possessed of Knowledge is a Brāhmana. Others, (*viz.*, Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Cudras) are possessed of knowledge. Hence, this science of Emancipation is always open to them all. This, O king, has been said by the Wise.[92] The questions thou hadst asked me have all been answered by me agreeably to the truth. Do thou, therefore, cast off all grief. Go thou to the other end of this enquiry. Thy questions were good. Blessings on thy head for ever!—'[93]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus instructed by the intelligent Yājnavalkya, the king of Mithilā became filled with joy.[94] The king honored that foremost of ascetics by walking round his person. Dismissed by the monarch, he departed from his court. King Daivarāti, having obtained the knowledge of the religion of Emancipation, took his seat,[95] and touching a million of kine and a quantity of gold and a measure of gems and jewells, gave them away unto a number of Brāhmanas.[96] Installing his son in the sovereignty of the Videhas, the old king began to live, adopting the practices of the Yatis.[97] Thinking meanly of all ordinary duties and their derelections (as laid down in the scriptures), the king began to study the science of the Sānkhyas and the Yogins in their entirety.[98] Regarding himself to be Infinite, he

* The doctrine is that unless acts are destroyed, there can be no Emancipation.—T.

began to reflect on only the Eternal and Independent One. He cast off all ordinary duties and their derelections, Virtue and Vice, Truth and Falsehood,[99] Birth and Death, and all other things appertaining to the principles produced by Prakriti.[100] Both Sānkhyas and Yogins, agreeably to the teachings of their sciences, regard this universe to be due to the action of the Manifest and the Unmanifest.[101] The learned say that Brahma is freed from good and evil, is self-dependent, the highest of the high, Eternal, and Pure. Do thou, therefore, O monarch, become Pure![102] The giver, the receiver of the gift, the gift itself, and that which is ordered to be given away, are all to be deemed as the unmanifest Soul. The Soul is the Soul's one possession. Who, therefore, can be a stranger to one? Do thou think always in this way. Never think otherwise.[103-4] He who does not know what is Prakriti possessed of attributes and what is Purusha transcending attributes, only he, not possessed as he is of knowledge, repairs to sacred waters and performs sacrifices.[105] Not by study of the Vedas, not by penances, not by sacrifices, O son of Kuru, can one attain to the status of Brahma. Only when one succeeds in apprehending the Supreme or Unmanifest, one comes to be regarded with reverence.[106] They who wait upon Mahat attain to the regions of Mahat. They who wait upon Consciousness, attain to the spot that belongs to Consciousness. They who wait upon what is higher attain to places that are higher than these.[107] Those persons, learned in the scriptures, who succeed in apprehending Eternal Brahma which is higher than Unmanifest Prakriti, succeed in obtaining that which transcends birth and death, which is free from attributes, and which is both existent and non-existent.[108] I got all this knowledge from Janaka. The latter had obtained it from Yājnavalkya. Knowledge is very superior. Sacrifices cannot compare with it. With the aid of Knowledge one succeeds in crossing the world's ocean which is full of difficulties and dangers. One can never cross that ocean by means of sacrifices.[109] Birth and death, and other impediments, O king, men of knowledge say, one cannot pass

over by ordinary exertion.* Men attain to heaven through sacrifices, penances, vows, and observances. But they have again to fall down therefrom on the Earth.[110] Do thou, therefore, adore with reverence that which is Supreme, most pure, blessed, stainless, and sacred, and which transcends all states (being Emancipation itself). By apprehending Kshetra, O king, and by performing the Sacrifice that consists in the acquisition of Knowledge, thou wilt really be wise.[111] In former time, Yājnavalkya did that good to king Janaka which is derivable from a study of the Upanishads. The Eternal and Immutable Supreme was the topic about which the great Rishi had discoursed to the king of Mithilā. It enabled him to attain to that Brahma which is auspicious and immortal, and which transcends all kinds of sorrow.' "[112]

Section CCCXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Having acquired great power and great wealth, and having obtained a long period of life, how may one succeed in avoiding death ?'[1] By which of these means, *viz.*, penances, or the accomplishment of the diverse acts (laid down in the Vedas), or by knowledge of the Crutis, or the application of medicines, can one succeed in avoiding decrepitude and death ?'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of Panchaçikha who was a Bhikshu in his practices and Janaka.[3] Once on a time Janaka, the ruler of the Videhas, questioned the great Rishi Panchaçikha, who was the foremost of all persons conversant with the Vedas and who had all his doubts removed in respect of the purpose and import of all duties.[4] The King said,—By what conduct, O holy one, may one transcend Decrepitude and Death ? Is it by penances, or by the understanding, or by religious acts (like sacrifices and vows), or by study and knowledge of

---

* Literally, 'these are not obstacles caused by external nature,' and are, therefore, irremovable by personal exertion of the ordinary kind.—T.

the scriptures ?[5]—Thus addressed by the ruler of the Videhas the learned Panchaçikha, conversant with all invisible things, answered, saying,—There is no prevention of these two (*viz.*, decrepitude and death) ; nor is it true that these cannot be prevented under any circumstances.[6] Neither days, nor nights, nor months, cease to go on. Only that man who, though transitory, betakes himself to the eternal path (of the religion of Nivirti or abstention from all acts) succeeds in avoiding birth and death.[7] Destruction overtakes all creatures. All creatures seem to be ceaselessly borne along the infinite current of time. Those that are borne along the infinite current of time which is without a raft (to rescue) and which is infested by those two mighty alligators, *viz.*, decrepitude and death, sink down without anybody coming to their assistance.[8] As one is swept along that current, one fails to find any friend for help and one fails to be inspired with interest for any one else.[9] One meets with spouses and other friends only on one's road. One had never before enjoyed this kind of companionship with any one for any length of time.[10] Creatures, as they are borne along the current of time, become repeatedly attracted towards one another like masses of clouds moved by the wind meeting one another with loud sound.[11] Decrepitude and death are devourers of all creatures, like wolves. Indeed, they devour the strong and the weak, the short and the tall.[12] Among creatures, therefore, which are all so transitory, only the Soul exists eternally. Why should he, then, rejoice when creatures are born and why should he grieve when they die ?[13] Whence have I come ? Who am I ? Whither shall I go ? Whose am I ? Before what do I rest ? What shall I be ? For what reason then dost thou grieve for what ?[14] Who else than thou wilt behold heaven or hell (for what thou doest) ? Hence, without throwing aside the scriptures, one should make gifts and perform sacrifices !—' "[15]

Section CCCXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Without abandoning the domestic mode of life, O royal sage of Kuru's race, who ever attained to Emancipation which is the annihilation of the Understanding (and the other faculties)? Do tell me this![1] How may the gross and the subtile form be cast off? Do thou also, O grandsire, tell me what the supreme excellence of Emancipation is.'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse between Janaka and Sulabhā, O Bhārata![3] In days of yore there was a king of Mithilā, of the name of Dharmadhyaja, of Janaka's race. He was devoted to the practices of the religion of Renunciation.[4] He was well conversant with the Veda, with the scriptures on Emancipation, and with the scriptures bearing on his own duty as a king. Subjugating his senses, he ruled this Earth.[5] Hearing of his good behaviour in the world, many men of wisdom, well-conversant with wisdom, O foremost of men, desired to imitate him.[6] In the same *Satya* Yuga, a woman of the name of Sulabhā, belonging to the mendicant order, practised the duties of Yoga and wandered over the whole Earth.[7] In course of her wanderings over the Earth, Sulabhā heard from many Dandins of different places that the ruler of Mithilā was devoted to the religion of Emancipation.[8] Hearing this report about king Janaka and desirous of ascertaining whether it was true or not, Sulabhā became desirous of having a personal interview with Janaka.[9] Abandoning, by her Yoga powers, her former form and features, Sulabhā assumed the most faultless features and unrivalled beauty.[10] In the twinkling of an eye and with the speed of the quickest shaft, the fair-browed lady of eyes like lotus-petals repaired to the capital of the Videhas.[11] Arrived at the chief city of Mithilā teeming with a large population, she adopted the guise of a mendicant and presented herself before the king.[12] The monarch, beholding her delicate form, became filled with wonder and enquired who she was, whose she was, and whence she came.'[13] Welcoming her, he assigned her an

excellent seat, honored her by offering water to wash her feet, and gratified her with excellent refreshments.[14] Refreshed duly and gratified with the rites of hospitality offered unto her, Sulabhā, the female mendicant, urged the king, who was surrounded by his ministers and seated in the midst of learned scholars, (to declare himself in respect of his adherence to the religion of Emancipation).[15] Doubting whether Janaka had succeeded in attaining to Emancipation by following the religion of Nivirtti, Sulabhā, endued with Yoga-power, entered the understanding of the king by her own understanding.[16] Restraining, by means of the rays of light that emanated from her own eyes, the rays issuing from the eyes of the king, the lady, desirous of ascertaining the truth, bound up king Janaka with Yoga bonds.*[17] That best of monarchs, priding himself upon his own invincibleness and defeating the intentions of Sulabhā, seized her resolution with his own resolution.†[18] The king, in his subtile form, was without the royal umbrella and sceptre. The lady Sulabhā, in hers, was without the triple stick. Both staying then in the same (gross) form, thus conversed with each other. Listen to that conversation as it happened between the monarch and Sulabhā.[19]

"Janaka said,—O holy lady, to what course of conduct art thou devoted? Whose art thou? Whence hast thou come? After finishing thy business here, whither wilt thou go?[20] No one can, without questioning, ascertain another's acquaintance with the scriptures, or age, or order of birth. Thou shouldst, therefore, answer these questions of mine, when thou hast come to me.[21] Know that I am truly freed from all vanity in respect of my royal umbrella and sceptre. I wish to know thee thoroughly. Thou art deserving, I hold,

* 'Sanchodayishyanti' implies 'questioned.' Here it means 'questioning the king internally' or by Yoga power.—T.

† 'Utsmayan' is explained by the Commentator as 'priding himself upon his own invincibleness.' 'Asyā bhāvam' implies 'her determination to make the king dumb.' 'Viçeshayan' is 'abhibhavan.'—T.

of my respect.*[22] Do thou listen to me as I speak to thee on Emancipation, for there is none else (in this world) that can discourse to thee on that topic. Hear me also as I tell thee who that person is from whom in days of old I acquired this distinguishing knowledge.†[23] I am the beloved disciple of the high-souled and venerable Panchaçikha, belonging to the mendicant order, of Parāçara's race.[24] My doubts have been dispelled and I am fully conversant with the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems, and the ordinances in respect of sacrifices and other rites, which constitute the three well-known paths of Emancipation.‡[25] Wandering over the Earth and pursuing the while the path that is pointed out by the scriptures, the learned Panchaçikha formerly dwelt in happiness in my abode for a period of four months in the rainy season.[26] That foremost of Sānkhyas discoursed to me, agreeably to the truth, and in an intelligible manner suited to my comprehension, on the several kinds of means for attaining to Emancipation. He did not, however, command me to give up my kingdom.[27] Freed from attachments, and fixing my Soul on supreme Brahma, and unmoved by companionship, I live, practising in its entirety that triple conduct which is laid down in treatises on Emancipation.[28] Renunciation (of all kinds of attachments) is the highest means prescribed for Emancipation. It is from Knowledge that Renunciation, by which one becomes freed, is said to flow.[29] From Knowledge arises the endeavour after Yoga,

---

* 'Sammantum' is explained by the Commentator as equivalent to 'samyak jnātum.'—T.

† It is difficult to say in what sense the word 'vaiçeshikam' is used here. There is a particular system of philosophy called Vaiçeshika or Kānāda, the system believed to have been originally promulgated by a Rishi of the name of Kānāda. That system has close resemblance to the atomic theory of European philosophers. It has many points of striking resemblance with Kapila's system or Sānkhya. Then, again, some of the original principles, as enunciated in the Sānkhya system, are called by the name of Viçesha.—T.

‡ The mention of 'Vidhi' indicates, as the Commentator explains, 'Karmakānda.' The value of 'Karma' in the path of Emancipation, is to purify the Soul.—T.

and through that endeavour one attains to knowledge of Self or Soul. Through knowledge of Self one transcends joy and grief. That enables one to transcend death and attain to high success.[30] That high intelligence (knowledge of Self) has been acquired by me, and accordingly I have transcended all pairs of opposites. Even in this life have I been freed from stupefaction and have transcended all attachments.[31] As a soil, saturated with water and softened thereby, causes the (sown) seed to sprout forth, after the same manner, the acts of men cause rebirth.[32] As a seed, fried on a pan or otherwise, becomes unable to sprout forth although the capacity for sprouting was there,[33] after the same manner my understanding having been freed from the productive principle constituted by desire, by the instructions of the holy Panchaçikha of the mendicant order, it no longer produces its fruit in the form of attachment to the objects of the senses.[34] I never experience love for my spouse or hate for my foes. Indeed, I keep aloof from both, beholding the fruitlessness of attachment and wrath.[35] I regard both persons equally, *viz.*, him that smears my right hand with sandal-paste and him that wounds my left.[36] Having attained my (true) object, I am happy, and look equally upon a clod of earth, a piece of stone, and a lump of gold. I am freed from attachments of every kind, though am engaged in ruling a kingdom. In consequence of all this I am distinguished over all bearers of triple sticks.[37] Some foremost of men that are conversant with the topic of Emancipation say that Emancipation has a triple path. (These are knowledge, Yoga, and sacrifices and rites). Some regard Knowledge having all things of the world for its object as the means of Emancipation. Some hold that the total renunciation of acts (both external and internal) is the means thereof.[38] Another class of persons conversant with the scriptures on Emancipation say that Knowledge is the single means. Others, *viz.*, Yatis, endued with subtile vision, hold that acts constitute the means.[39] The high-souled Panchaçikha, discarding both the opinions about knowledge and acts, regarded the third as the only means or path of

Emancipation.[40] If men leading the domestic mode of life be endued with Yama and Niyama, they become the equals of Sannyāsins. If, on the other hand, Sannyāsins be endued with desire and aversion and spouses and honor and pride and affection, they become the equals of men leading domestic modes of life.*[41] If one can attain to Emancipation by means of knowledge, then may Emancipation exist in triple sticks (for there is nothing to prevent the bearers of such sticks from acquiring the needful knowledge). Why then may Emancipation not exist in the umbrella and the sceptre as well, especially when there is equal reason in taking up the triple stick and the sceptre ?†[42] One becomes attached to all those things and acts with which one has need for the sake of one's own self for particular reasons.‡[43] If a person, beholding the faults of the domestic mode of life, casts it off for adopting another mode (which he considers to be fraught with great merit), he cannot, for such rejection and adoption, be regarded as one that is at once freed from all attachments, (for all that he has done has been to attach himself to a new mode after having freed himself from a previous one).§[44] Sovereignty is fraught with the rewarding and the chastising of others. The life of a mendicant is equally fraught with the same (for mendicants also reward

---

* K. P. Singha wrongly translates this Verse.—T.

† 'There is equal reason in taking up &c.,' implies that the bearing of the sceptre is only a mode of life like that of holders of the triple stick. Both the king and the Sannyāsin are free to acquire knowledge and both, therefore, may attain to Emancipation notwithstanding their respective emblems. In the emblems themselves there is no efficacy or disqualification.—T.

‡ The object of this Verse is to show that all persons, led by interest, become attached to particular things. The littleness or greatness of those things cannot aid or bar people's way to Emancipation. 'I may be a king,' says Janaka, 'and thou mayst be a mendicant. Neither thy mendicancy nor my royalty can aid or obstruct our Emancipation. Both of us, by Knowledge, can achieve what we wish, notwithstanding our outward surroundings.—T.

§ Hence, by changing my royal life for that of a bearer of the triple stick I can gain nothing.—T.

and chastise those they can). When, therefore, mendicants are similar to kings in this respect, why would mendicants only attain to Emancipation, and not kings?[45] Notwithstanding the possession of sovereignty, therefore, one becomes cleansed of all sins by means of knowledge alone, living the while in Supreme Brahma.[46] The wearing of brown cloths, shaving of the head, bearing of the triple stick, and the Kamandalu,—these are the outward signs of one's mode of life. These have no value in aiding one to the attainment of Emancipation.[47] When, notwithstanding the adoption of these emblems of a particular mode of life, Knowledge alone becomes the cause of one's Emancipation from sorrow, it would appear that the adoption of mere emblems is perfectly useless.[48] Or, if, beholding the mitigation of sorrow in it, thou hast betaken thyself to these emblems of Sanyāsa, why then should not the mitigation of sorrow be beheld in the umbrella and the sceptre to which I have betaken myself?[49] Emancipation does not exist in poverty; nor is bondage to be found in affluence. One attains to Emancipation through Knowledge alone, whether one is indigent or affluent.[50] For these reasons, know that I am living in a condition of freedom, though ostensibly engaged in the enjoyment of religion, wealth, and pleasure, in the form of kingdom and spouses, which constitute a field of bondage (for the generality of men).[51] The bonds constituted by kingdom and affluence, and the bondage of attachments, I have cut off with the sword of Renunciation whetted on the stone of the scriptures bearing upon Emancipation.[52] As regards myself then, I tell thee that I have become freed in this way. O lady of the mendicant order, I cherish an affection for thee. But that should not prevent me from telling thee that thy behaviour does not correspond with the practices of the mode of life to which thou hast betaken thyself![53] Thou hast great delicacy of formation. Thou hast beauty. Thou hast an exceedingly shapely form. Thy age is young. Thou hast all these, and thou hast Niyama (subjugation of the senses). I doubt it verily.[54] Thou hast stopped up my body (by entering into me with the aid of

thy Yoga power) for ascertaining as to whether I am really emancipated or not. This act of thine ill-corresponds with that mode of life whose emblems thou bearest.[55] For a Yogin that is endued with desire, the triple stick is unfit. As regards thyself, thou dost not adhere to thy stick. As regards those that are freed, it behoves even them to protect themselves from fall.*[56] Listen now to me as to what thy transgression has been in consequence of thy contact with me and thy having entered into my gross body with the aid of thy understanding.[57] To what reason is thy entrance to be ascribed into my kingdom or my palace? At whose sign hast thou entered into my heart?†[58] Thou belongest to the foremost of all the orders, being, as thou art, a Brāhmana woman. As regards myself however, I am a Kshatriya. There is no union for us two. Do not help to cause an intermixture of colors.[59] Thou livest in the practice of those duties that lead to Emancipation. I live in the domestic mode of life. This act of thine, therefore, is another evil thou hast done, for it produces an unnatural union of two opposite modes of life.[60] I do not know whether thou belongest to my own *gotra* or dost not belong to it. As regards thyself also, thou dost not know who I am (*viz.*, to what *gotra* I belong). If thou art of my own *gotra*, thou hast, by entering into my person, produced another evil,—the evil, *viz.*, of unnatural union.[61] If, again, thy husband be alive and dwelling in a distant place, thy union with me has produced the fourth evil of sinfulness, for thou art not one with whom I may be lawfully united.[62] Dost thou perpetrate all these sinful acts, impelled by the motive of accomplish-

---

* 'Yukte' in the first line means 'in the Yogin.' The Bombay reading 'Tridandanke' is a mistake for 'Tridandakam.' The Bombay text reads 'na muktasyāsti gopanā,' meaning that 'there is no relief for one that has fallen down after having arisen in Yoga.' The Bengal text reads 'vimuktasya' I adopt the Bengal reading.—T.

† What the king says is that he, the king, had made no assignation with the lady in consequence of which she could be justified in entering his body. The word 'Sannikarsha' here means 'sanketa.' Both the Vernacular translators render this word wrongly.—T.

ing a particular object? Dost thou do these from ignorance or from perverted intelligence?[63] If, again, in consequence of thy evil nature thou hast thus become thoroughly independent or unrestrained in thy behaviour, I tell thee that if thou hast any knowledge of the scriptures, thou wilt understand that everything thou hast done has been productive of evil.[64] A third fault attaches to thee in consequence of these acts of thine, a fault that is destructive of peace of mind. By endeavouring to display thy superiority, the indication of a wicked woman is seen in thee.[65] Desirous of asserting thy victory as thou art, it is not myself alone whom thou wishest to defeat, for it is plain that thou wishest to obtain a victory over even the whole of my court (consisting of these learned and very superior Brāhmanas).[66] By casting thy eyes in this way towards all these meritorious Brāhmanas, it is evident that thou desirest to humiliate them all and glorify thyself (at their expense).[67] Stupefied by thy pride of Yoga-puissance that has been born of thy jealousy (at sight of my power,) thou hast caused a union of thy understanding with mine and thereby hast really mingled together nectar with poison.[68] That union, again, of man and woman, when each covets the other, is sweet as nectar. That association, however, of man and woman when the latter, herself coveting, fails to obtain an individual of the opposite sex that does not covet her, is, instead of being a merit, only a fault that is as noxious as poison.[69] Do not continue to touch me. Know that I am righteous. Do thou act according to thy own scriptures. The enquiry thou hadst wished to make, *viz.*, whether I am or I am not emancipated, has been finished.[70] It behoves thee not to conceal from me all thy secret motives. It behoves thee not, that thus disguisest thyself, to conceal from me what thy object is, that is, whether this call of thine has been prompted by the desire of accomplishing some object of thy own or whether thou hast come for accomplishing the object of some other king (that is hostile to me).[71] One should never appear deceitfully before a king; nor before a Brāhmana; nor before one's wife when that wife is possessed of every wifely virtue,

Those who appear in deceitful guise before these three very soon meet with destruction.[72] The power of kings consists in their sovereignty. The power of Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas is in the Vedas. Women wield a high power in consequence of their beauty and youth and blessedness.[73] These then are powerful in the possession of these powers. He, therefore, that is desirous of accomplishing his own object should always approach these three with sincerity and candour. Insincerity and deceit fail to produce success (in these three quarters).[74] It behooveth thee, therefore, to apprise me of the order to which thou belongest by birth, of thy learning and conduct and disposition and nature, as also of the object thou hast in view in coming to this place!—"[75]

"Bhishma continued,—'Though rebuked by the king in these unpleasant, improper, and ill-applied words, the lady Sulabhā was not at all abashed.[6] After the king had said these words, the beautiful Sulabhā then addrest herself for saying the following words in reply that were more handsome than her person.[77]

" 'Sulabhā said,—O king, speech ought always to be free from the nine verbal faults and the nine faults of judgment. It should also, while setting forth the meaning with perspicuity, be possessed of the eighteen well-known merits.*[78] Ambiguity, ascertainment of the faults and merits of premises and conclusions, weighing the relative strength or weakness of those faults and merits, establishment of the conclusion, and the element of persuasiveness or otherwise that attaches to the conclusion thus arived at,—these five characteristics appertaining to the sense—constitute the authoritativeness of what is said.[79] Listen now to the characteristics of these requirements beginning with ambiguity, one after another, as I expound them according to the combinations.[80] When knowledge rests on distinction in consequence of the objects to be known being different from one another, and when (as regards the comprehension of the subject) the understanding rests upon many points one after

* These faults and merits are set forth in the Verses that follow.—T.

another, the combination of words (in whose case this occurs) is said to be vitiated by ambiguity.*[81] By ascertainment (of faults and merits), called Sankhyā, is meant the establishment, by elimination, of faults or merits (in premises and conclusions), adopting tentative meanings.†[82] Krama, or weighing the relative strength or weakness of the faults or merits (ascertained by the above process), consists in settling the propriety of the priority or subsequence of the words employed in a sentence. This is the meaning attached to the word Krama by persons conversant with the interpretation of sentences or texts.[83] By Conclusion is meant the final determination, after this examination of what has been said on the subjects of religion, pleasure, wealth, and Emancipation, in respect of what it particularly is that has been said in the text.‡[84] The sorrow born of wish or aversion

---

* 'Saukshmyam' is literally 'minuteness.' It means ambiguity here. I have rendered Verse 81 very closely to give the reader an idea of the extreme terseness of these Verses. For bringing out the meaning of the Verse, the following illustration may serve. A sentence is composed containing some words each of which is employed in diverse senses, as the well-known Verse of Parāçara which has been interpreted to sanction the remarriage of Hindu widows. Here, the objects indicated by the words used are varied. Definite knowledge of the meaning of each word is arrived at by means of distinctions, *i. e.*, by distinguishing each meaning from every other. In such cases, the understanding, before arriving at the definite meaning, rests in succession upon diverse points, now upon one, now upon another. Indeed, the true meaning is to be arrived at in such cases by a process of elimination. When such processes become necessary for seizing the sense of any sentence, the fault is said to be the fault of minuteness or ambiguity.—T.

† To take the same example: first take the well-known words of Parāçara as really sanctioning the remarriage of widows. Several words in the Verse would point to this meaning, several others would not. Weighing probalities and reasons, let the meaning be tentatively adopted that second husbands *are* sanctioned by the Rishi for the Hindu widow. This is Sankhyā.—T.

‡ Having tentatively adopted the meaning that second husbands are sanctioned by the Verse referred to, the conclusion should be either its acceptance or rejection. By seeing the incompatibility of the tentative meaning with other settled conclusions in respect of other

inceases to a great measure. The conduct, O king, that one pursues in such a matter (for dispelling the sorrow experienced) is called Prayojanam.*[85] Take it for certain, O king, at my word, that these characteristics of Ambiguity and the others (numbering five in all), when occurring together, constitute a complete and intelligible sentence.†[86] The words I shall utter will be fraught with sense, free from ambiguity (in consequence of each of them not being symbols of many things), logical, free from pleonasm or tautology, smooth, certain,[87] free from bombast, agreeable or sweet, truthful, not inconsistent with the aggregate of three, (*viz.*, Righteousness, Wealth, and Pleasure), refined (*i. e.*, free from Prākrita),[88] not elliptical or imperfect, destitute of harshness or difficulty of comprehension, characterised by due order, not far-fetched in respect of sense, corrected with one another as cause and effect, and each having a specific object.‡[89] I shall not tell thee anything, prompted by desire or wrath or fear or cupidity or abjectness or deceipt or shame or compassion or pride. (I answer thee because it

---

texts of other winters, the tentative meaning is capable of being rejected, and the final conclusion arrived at, to the effect, that the second husband is to be taken only according to the Niyoga-vidhi and not by marriage.—T.

* By 'prayojanam' is meant the conduct one pursues for gratifying one's wish to acquire or avoid any object. Wish, in respect of either acquisition or avoidance, if ungratified, becomes a source of pain. The action or conduct that one adopts for removing that pain is called 'Prayojanam.' In the Gautama-sutras it is said that 'yamarthamadhikritya pravartate, tat prayojanam.' The two definitions are identical.—T.

† By occurrence of these five characteristics together is meant that when these are properly attended to by a speaker or writer, only then can his sentence be said to be complete and intelligible. In Nyāya philosophy, the five requisites are 'Pratijnā,' 'Hetu,' 'Udāharana,' 'Upanaya,' and 'Nigamana.' In the Mimānsā philosophy, the five requisites have been named differently. 'Vishaya,' 'Samçaya,' 'Purvapaksha,' 'Uttara,' and 'Nirnaya.'—T.

‡ These characteristics, the Commentator points out, though numbering sixteen, include the four and twenty mentioned by Bhojadeva in his Rhetoric called "Saraswati-kanthābharana."—T.

is proper for me to answer what thou hast said).[90] When the speaker, the hearer, and the words said, thoroughly agree with one another in course of a speech, then does the sense or meaning come out very clearly.[91] When, in the matter of what is to be said, the speaker shows disregard for the understanding of the hearer by uttering words whose meaning is understood by himself, then, however good those words may be, they become incapable of being seized by the hearer.*[92] That speaker, again, who, abandoning all regard for his own meaning, uses words that are of excellent sound and sense, awakens only erroneous impressions in the mind of the hearer. Such words in such connection become certainly faulty.[93] That speaker, however, who employs words that are, while expressing his own meaning, intelligible to the hearer as well, truly deserves to be called a speaker. No other man deserves the name.[94] It behooveth thee, therefore, O king, to hear with concentrated attention these words of mine, fraught with meaning and endued with wealth of vocables.[95] Thou hast asked me who I am, whose I am, whence I am coming, &c. Listen now to me, O king, with undivided mind, as I answer these questions of thine.[96] As lac and wood, as grains of dust and drops of water, exist commingled when brought together, even so are the existences of all creatures.†[97] Sound, touch, taste, form, and scent, these, and the senses, though diverse in respect of their essences, exist yet in a state of commingling like lac and wood.[98] It is again well known that nobody asks any

---

* 'Parārtham' means, as the Commentator explains, 'of excellent sense.' It does not mean 'Paraprayojanam' as wrongly rendered by the Burdwan translator. The latter's version of the text is thoroughly unmeaning.—T.

† What Sulabhā says here is this: the great primal elements are the same whether they make up this body or that other body; and then it is the same Chit that pervades every combination of the great elements. The object of this observation is to show that Janaka should not have asked these questions about Sulabhā, he and she being essentially the same persons. To regard the two as different would indicate obscuration of vision.—T.

of these, saying, who art thou? Each of them also has no knowledge either of itself or of the others.[99] The eye cannot see itself. The ear cannot hear itself. The eye, again, cannot discharge the functions of any of the other senses, nor can any of the senses discharge the functions of any sense save its own.[100] If all of them even combine together, even then they fail to know their own selves as dust and water mingled together cannot know each other though existing in a state of union. In order to discharge their respective functions, they await the contact of objects that are external to them.[101] The eye, form, and light, constitute the three requisites of the operation called Seeing. The same, as in this case, happens in respect of the operations of the other senses and the ideas which is their result.[102] Then, again, between the functions of the senses (called vision, hearing, &c.,) and the ideas which are their result (*viz.*, form, sound, &c.), the mind is an entity other than the senses and is regarded to have an action of its own. With its help one distinguishes what is existent from what is non-existent for arriving at certainty (in the matter of all ideas derived from the Senses).[103] With the five senses of knowledge and five senses of action, the mind makes a total of eleven. The twelfth is the Understanding. When doubt arises in respect of what is to known, the Understanding comes forward and settles all doubts (for aiding correct apprehension).[104] After the twelfth, Sattwa is another principle numbering the thirteenth. With its help creatures are distinguished as possessing more of it or less of it in their constitutions.*[105] After this, Consciousness (of self) is another principle (numbering the fourteenth). It helps one to an apprehension of self as distinguished from what is not self.[106] Desire is the fifteenth principle, O king. Unto it inheres the whole universe.†[107] The sixteenth principle is

* What is meant by this is that when creatures are said to possess more of Sattwa and less of Sattwa, Sattwa seems to be a principle that is existent in the constitutions of creatures.—T.

† By the word 'Kalā' is meant the 16 principles beginning with Prāna. What is intended to be said is that as long as the principle of

Avidyā. Unto it inhere the seventeenth and the eighteenth principles called Prakriti and Vyakti (*i.*, *e.*, Māyā and Prakāsa).[108] Happiness and sorrow, decrepitude and death, acquisition and loss, the agreeable and the disagreeable,—these constitute the nineteenth principle and are called couples of opposites.[109] Beyond the nineteenth principle is another, *viz.*, Time, called the twentieth. Know that the births and deaths of all creatures are due to the action of this twentieth principle.[110] These twenty exist together. Besides these, the five Great primal elements, and existence and non-existence, bring up the tale to seven and twenty. Beyond these, there are three others, named Vidhi, Cukra, and Vala, that make the tale reach thirty.*[111-12] That in which these ten and twenty principles occur is said to be body.[112] Some persons regard unmanifest Prakriti to be the source or cause of these thirty principles. (This is the view of the atheistic Sānkhya school). The Kānadas of gross vision regard the Manifest (or atoms) to be their cause.[113] Whether the Unmanifest or the Manifest be their cause, or whether the two (*viz.*, the Supreme or Purusha and the Manifest or atoms) be regarded as their cause, or, fourthly,[114] whether the four together (*viz.*, the Supreme or Purusha and his Māyā and Jiva and Avidyā or Ignorance) be the cause, they that are conversant with Adhyātma behold Prakriti as the cause of all creatures.[115] That Prakriti which is Unmanifest, becomes manifest in the form of these principles. Myself, thyself, O monarch, and all others that are endued with body, are the result of that Prakriti (so far as our bodies are concerned).[116] Insemination and other (embryonic) conditions are due to the mixture of the vital seed and blood. In consequence of insemination the result which first appears

---

Desire exists, rebirth becomes possible. The universe, therefore, rests on the principle of Desire or Vāsanā. The senses, &c., all arise from this principle of Vāsanā.—T.

* By 'Vidhi' is meant that righteousness and its reverse which constitute the seed of Desire. By 'Cukra' is meant that which helps that seed to grow or put forth its rudiments. By 'Vala' is meant the exertion that one makes for 'gratifying one's desire'.—T.

is called by the name of 'Kalala.'[117] From 'Kalala' arises what is called Vudvud (bubble). From the stage called 'Vudvuda' springs what is called 'Peçi.' From the condition called 'Peçi' that stage arises in which the various limbs become manifested. From this last condition appear nails and hair.[118] Upon the expiration of the ninth month, O king of Mithilā, the creature takes its birth so that, its sex being known, it comes to be called a boy or girl.[119] When the creature issues out of the womb, the form it presents is such that its nails and fingers seem to be of the hue of burnished copper. The next stage is said to be infancy, when the form that was seen at the time of birth becomes changed.[120] From infancy youth is reached, and from youth, old age. As the creature advances from one stage into another, the form presented in the previous stage becomes changed.[121] The constituent elements of the body, which serve diverse functions in the general economy, undergo change every moment in every creature. Those changes, however, are so minute that they cannot be noticed.*[122] The birth of particles, and their death, in each successive condition, cannot be marked, O king, even as one cannot mark the changes in the flame of a burning lamp.†[123] When such is the state of the bodies of all creatures,—that is, when that which is called the body is changing incessantly even like the rapid locomotion of a steed of good mettle,—who then has come whence or not whence,[124] or whose is it or whose is it not, or whence does it not arise? What connection does there exist between creatures and their own

---

* The fact then of continual change of particles in the body was well-known to the Hindu sages. This discovery is not new of modern physiology. Elsewhere it has been shown that Harvey's great discovery about the circulation of the blood was not unknown to the Rishis.—T.

† The instance mentioned for illustrating the change of corporal particles is certainly a very happy one. The flame of a burning lamp, though perfectly steady (as in a breezeless spot), is really the result of the succesive combustion of particles of oil and the successive extinguishment of such combustion. Both this and the previous Verse have been rendered inaccurately by K. P. Singha.—T.

bodies?*[125] As from the contact of flint with iron, or from two sticks of wood when rubbed against each other, fire is generated, even so are creatures generated from the combination of the (thirty) principles already named.[126] Indeed, as thou thyself seest thy own body in thy body and as thou thyself seest thy soul in thy own soul, why is it that thou dost not see thy own body and thy own soul in the bodies and souls of others?[127] If it is true that thou seest an identity with thyself and others, why then didst thou ask me who I am and whose?[128] If it is true that thou hast, O king, been freed from the knowledge of duality that (erroneously) says—this is mine and this other is not mine,—then what use is there with such questions as Who art thou, whose art thou, and whence dost thou come?[129] What indications of Emancipation can be said to occur in that king who acts as others act towards enemies and allies and neutrals and in victory and truce and war?[130] What indications of Emancipation occur in him who does not know the true nature of the aggregate of three as manifested in seven ways in all acts and who, on that account, is attached to that aggregate of three?†[131] What indications of Emancipation exist in him who fails to cast an equal eye on the agreeable, on the weak, and the strong? Unworthy as thou art of it, thy pretence to Emancipation should be put down by thy counsellers![132] This thy endeavour to attain to Emancipation (when

---

* Hence the questions of Janaka, asking as to who the lady was or whose, were futile.—T.

† The seven ways are as follow: Righteousness and Wealth and Pleasure independently and distinct from one another count three; then the first and second, the first and third, and second and third, count three; and lastly, all three existing together. In all acts, one or other of these seven may be found. The first and second exist in all acts whose result is the righteous acquisition of wealth; the first and third exist in the procreation of children in lawful wedlock; the second and third in ordinary acts of worldly men. Of acts in which all three combine, the rearing of children may be noticed, for it is at once a duty, a source of wealth, and a pleasure. K. P. Singha omits all reference to these seven ways, while the Burdwan translator, misunderstanding the gloss, makes utter nonsense of it.—T.

thou hast so many faults) is like the use of medicine by a patient who indulges in all kinds of forbidden food and practices.[133] O chastiser of foes, reflecting upon spouses and other sources of attachment, one should behold these in one's own soul. What else can be looked upon as the indication of Emancipation?[134] Listen now to me as I speak in detail of these and certain other minute sources of attachment appertaining to the four well-known acts (of lying down for slumber, enjoyment, eating, and dressing) to which thou art still bound though thou professest thyself to have adopted the religion of Emancipation.[135] That man who has to rule the whole world must, indeed, be a single king without a second. He is obliged to live in only a single palace.[136] In that palace he has again only one sleeping chamber. In that chamber he has, again, only one bed on which at night he is to lie down.[137] Half that bed again he is obliged to give to his Queen-consort. This may serve as an example of how little the king's share is of all he is said to own.[138] This is the case with his objects of enjoyment, with the food he eats, and with the robes he wears. He is thus attached to a very limited share of all things. He is, again, attached to the duties of rewarding and punishing.[139] The king is always dependent on others. He enjoys a very small share of all he is supposed to own, and to that small share he is forced to be attached (as well as others are attached to their respective possessions). In the matter also of peace and war, the king cannot be said to be independent?[140] In the matter of women, of sports and other kinds of enjoyment, the king's inclinations are exceedingly circumscribed. In the matter of taking counsel and in the assembly of his councillors what independence can the king be said to have?[141] When, indeed, he sets his orders on other men, he is said to be thoroughly independent. But then the moment after, in the several matters of his orders, his independence is barred by the very men whom he has ordered.*[142] If the king desires to sleep, he cannot gratify

* The king may order some men to do somethings. These men,

his desire, resisted by those who have business to transact with him. He must sleep when permitted, and while sleeping he is obliged to wake up for attending to those that have urgent business with him.[47]—Bathe, touch, drink, eat, pour libations on the fire, perform sacrifices, speak, hear,—these are the words which kings have to hear from others and hearing them have to slave to those that utter them.[144] Men come in batches upon batches to the king and solicit him for gifts. Being, however, the protector of the general treasury, he cannot make gifts unto even the most deserving.[145] If he makes gifts, the treasury becomes exhausted. If he does not, disappointed solicitors look upon him with hostile eyes. He becomes vexed and as the result of this, misanthropical feelings soon invade his mind.[146] If many wise and heroic and wealthy men reside together, the king's mind begins to be filled with distrust in consequence. Even when there is no cause of fear, the king entertains fear of those that always wait upon and worship him.[147] Those I have mentioned, O king, also find fault with him. Behold, in what way the king's fears may arise from even them![148] Then again all men are kings in their own houses. All men, again, in their own houses are householders. Like kings, O Janaka, all men in their own houses chastise and reward.[149] Like kings others also have sons and spouses and their own selves and treasuries and friends and stores. In these respects the king is not different from other men.[150]—The country is ruined,—the city is consumed by fire,—the foremost of elephants is dead,—at all this the king yields to grief like others, little regarding that these impressions are all due to ignorance and error.[151] The king is seldom freed from mental griefs caused by desire and aversion and fear. He is generally afflicted also by headaches and diverse diseases of the kind.[152] The king is afflicted (like others) by all couples of opposites (as pleasure and pain, &c). He is alarmed at everything.

---

after obeying those orders, return to him to report the fact of what they have accomplished. The king is obliged to grant them interviews for listening to them.—T.

Indeed, full of foes and impediments as kingdom is, the king, while he enjoys it, passes nights of sleeplessness.[153] Sovereignty, therefore, is blessed with an exceedingly small share of happiness. The misery with which it is endued is very great. It is as unsubstantial as burning flames fed by straw or the bubbles of froth seen on the surface of water.[154] Who is there that would like to obtain sovereignty, or having acquired sovereignty can hope to win tranquillity? Thou regardest this kingdom and this palace to be thine.[155] Thou thinkest also this army, this treasury, and these counsellers to belong to thee. Whose, however, in reality are they, and whose are they not? Allies, ministers, capital, provinces, punishment, treasury, and the king,[156]—these seven which constitute the limbs of a kingdom exist, depending upon one another, like three sticks standing with one another's support. The merits of each are set off by the merits of the others. Which of them can be said to be superior to the rest?[157] At those times those particular ones are regarded as distinguished above the rest when some important end is served through their agency. Superiority, for the time being, is said to attach to that one whose efficacy is thus seen.[158] The seven limbs already mentioned, O best of kings, and the three others, forming an aggregate of ten, supporting one another, are said to enjoy the kingdom like the king himself.*[159] That king who is endued with great energy and who is firmly attached to Kshatriya practices, should be satisfied with only a tenth part of the produce of the subject's field. Other kings are seen to be satisfied with less than a tenth part of such produce.[160] There is no one who owns the kingly office without some one else owning it in the world, and there is no kingdom without a king.†

---

* The Commentator explains that the three others are Vriddhi, Kshaya, and Sthāna, all of which arise from policy. Some of the seven limbs are inanimate, such as the Treasury. But it is said that the Treasury supports the ministers, and the ministers support the Treasury.—T.

† Hence, when every kingdom has a king, and kings too are many, no one should indulge in pride at the thought of his being a king.—T.

If there be no kingdom, there can be no righteousness, and if there be no righteousness, whence can Emancipation arise ?[161] Whatever merit is most sacred and the highest, belongs to kings and kingdoms.* By ruling a kingdom well, a king earns the merit that attaches to a Horse-sacrifice with the whole Earth given away as Dakshinā. (But how many kings are there that rule their kingdoms well ?)[162] O ruler of Mithilā, I can mention hundreds and thousands of faults like these that attach to kings and kingdoms.[163] Then, again, when I have no real connection with even my body, how then can I be said to have any contact with the bodies of others ? Thou canst not charge me with having endeavoured to bring about an intermixture of casts.[164] Hast thou heard the religion of Emancipation in its entirety from the lips of Panchaçikha, together with its means, its methods, its practices, and its conclusion ?†[165] If thou hast prevailed over all thy bonds and freed thyself from all attachments, may I ask thee, O king, why thou preservest thy connections still with this umbrella and those other appendages of royalty ?[166] I think that thou hast not listened to the scriptures, or, thou hast listened to them without any advantage, or, perhaps, thou hast listened to some other treatises looking like the scriptures.[167] It seems that thou art possessed only of worldly knowledge, and that like an ordinary man of the world thou art bound by the bonds of touch and spouses and mansions and the like.[168] If it be true that thou hast been emancipated from all bonds, what harm have I done thee by entering thy person with only my Intellect ?[169] With Yatis, among all orders of men, the custom is to dwell in uninhabited or deserted abodes. What harm then have I done to whom by entering thy under-

---

* The object of this Verse is to show that as Janaka rules his kingdom without being attached to it, he cannot lay claim to the merit that belongs to kings.—T.

† 'Upāya' or 'means' implies here the attitude of sitting (as in Yoga). 'Upanishad' or 'method' implies 'çravana and manana,' *i. e.*, listening and thinking. 'Upāsanga' or 'practices' imply the several limbs of 'Dhyāna,' &c.; 'Niçchaya' or 'conclusion' has reference to Brahma.—T.

standing which is truly empty of real knowledge?[170] I have not touched thee, O king, with my hands, or arms, or feet, or thighs, O sinless one, or with any other part of the body.[171] Thou art born in a high race. Thou hast modesty. Thou hast foresight. Whether the act has been good or bad, my entrance into thy body has been a private one, concerning us two only. Was it not improper for thee to publish that private act before all thy court?[172] These Brāhmanas are all worthy of respect. They are foremost of preceptors. Thou also art entitled to their respect, being their king. Doing them reverence, thou art entitled to receive reverence from them.[173] Reflecting on all this, it was not proper for thee to proclaim before these foremost of men the fact of this congress between two persons of opposite sexes, if, indeed, thou art really acquainted with the rules of propriety in respect of speech.[174] O king of Mithilā, I am staying in thee without touching thee at all even like a drop of water on a lotus leaf that stays on it without drenching it in the least.[175] If, notwithstanding this, thou still feelest my touch, how can it be believed that through the instructions of Panchaçikha of the mendicant order, thy knowledge has become abstracted from the sensual objects to which it relates?[176] Thou hast, it is plain, fallen off from the domestic mode of life but thou hast not yet attained to Emancipation that is so difficult to arrive at. Thou stayest between the two, pretending that thou hast reached the goal of Emancipation.[177] The contact of one that is emancipated with another that has been so, or of Purusha with Prakriti, cannot lead to an intermingling of the kind thou dreadest.[178] Only those that regard the soul to be identical with the body, and that think the several orders and modes of life to be really different from one another, are open to the error of supposing an intermingling to be possible. My body is different from thine. But my soul is not different from thy soul. When I am able to realise this, I have not the slightest doubt that my understanding is really not staying in thine though I have entered into thee by Yoga.*[179] A pot is

* I expand this Verse fully.—T.

borne in the hand. In the pot is milk. On the milk is a fly. Though the hand and pot, the pot and milk, and the milk and the fly, exist together, yet are they all distinct from each other.[180] The pot does not partake the nature of the milk. Nor does the milk partake the nature of the fly. The condition of each is dependent on itself, and can never be altered by the condition of that other with which it may temporarily exist.[181] After this manner, color and practices, though they may exist together with and in a person that is emancipate, do not really attach to him. How then can an intermingling of orders be possible in consequence of this union of myself with thee?[182] Then, again, I am not superior to thee in color. Nor am I a Vaiçya, nor a Cudra. I am, O king, of the same order with thee, born of a pure race.[183] There was a royal sage of the name of Pradhāna. It is evident that thou hast heard of him. I am born in his race, and my name is Sulabhā.[184] In the sacrifices performed by my ancestors, the foremost of the gods, *viz.*, Indra, used to come, accompanied by Drona and Cataçringa, and Chakradwāra (and other presiding geniuses of the great mountains).[185] Born in such a race, it was found that no husband could be obtained for me that would be fit for me. Instructed then in the religion of Emancipation, I wander over the Earth alone, observant of the practices of asceticism.[186] I practise no hypocrisy in the matter of the life of Renunciation I follow. I am not a thief that appropriates what belongs to others. I am not a confuser of the practices belonging to the different orders. I am firm in the practices that belong to that mode of life to which I properly belong.[187] I am firm and steady in my vows. I never utter any word without reflecting on its propriety. I did not come to thee, without having deliberated properly, O monarch![188] Having heard that thy understanding has been purified by the religion of Emancipation, I came here from desire of some benefit. Indeed, it was for enquiring of thee about Emancipation that I had come.[189] I do not say it for glorifying myself and humiliating my opponents. But I say it, impelled by sincerity only. What I say is that he that is emancipated

never indulges in that intellectual gladiatorship which is implied by a dialectical disputation for the sake of victory. He, on the other hand, is really emancipate who devotes himself to Brahma, that sole seat of tranquillity.*[190] As a person of the mendicant order resides for only one night in an empty house (and leaves it the next morning), even after the same manner I shall reside for this one night in thy person (which, as I have already said, is like an empty chamber, being destitute of true knowledge).[191] Thou hast honored me with both speech and other offers that are due from a host to a guest. Having slept this one night in thy person, O ruler of Mithilā, which is as it were my own chamber now, tomorrow I shall depart.—'[192]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words fraught with excellent sense and with reason, king Janaka failed to return any answer thereto.†' "[193]

Section CCCXXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How was Cuka the son of Vyāsa, in days of old, won over to Renunciation? I desire to hear thee recite the story. My curiosity in this respect is irrepresssible.[1] It behooveth thee, O thou of Kuru's race, to discourse to me on the conclusions in respect of the Unmanifest (Cause), the Manifest (Effects), and of the Truth (or Brahma) that is in, but unattached to, them, as also of the acts of the self-born Nārāyana, as they are known to thy understanding.'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'Beholding his son Cuka living fearlessly as ordinary men do in practices that are considered harmless by them, Vyāsa taught him the entire Vedas and then discoursed to him one day in these words.[3]

" 'Vyāsa said,—O son, becoming the master of thy senses,

---

* The 'na' in the second line is connected with 'Vyāyachchhate.'—T.

† The object of this Verse is to show that the words uttered by Sulabhā were unanswerable. To attain to Emancipation one must practice a life of Renunciation instead of continuing in the domestic mode.—T.

do thou subdue extreme cold and extreme heat, hunger and thirst, and the wind also, and having subdued them (as Yogins do), do thou practise righteousness.[4] Do thou duly observe truth and sincerity, and freedom from wrath and malice, and self-restraint and penances, and the duties of benevolence and compassion.[5] Rest thou on truth, firmly devoted to righteousness, abandoning all sorts of insincerity and deceit. Do thou support thy life on what remains of food after feeding gods and guests.[6] Thy body is as transitory as the froth on the surface of water. The Jiva-soul is sitting unattached in it as a bird on a tree. The companionship of all agreeable objects is exceedingly short-lived. Why then, O son, dost thou sleep in such forgetfulness?[7] Thy foes are heedful and awake and ever-ready (to spring on thee) and always watchful of their opportunity. Why art thou so foolish as not to know this?*[8] As the days are going one after another, the period of thy life is being lessened. Indeed, when thy life is being incessantly shortened, why dost thou not run to preceptors (for learning the means of rescue)?[9] Only they that are destitute of faith (in the existence of next life) set their hearts on things of this world that have the only effect of increasing flesh and blood. They are totally unmindful of all that is concerned with the next world.[10] Those men that are stupified by erroneous understandings display a hatred for righteousness. The man who walks after those misguided persons that have betaken themselves to devious and wrong paths is afflicted equally with them.[11] They, however, that are contented, devoted to the scriptures, endued with high souls, and possessed of great might, betake themselves to the path of righteousness. Do thou wait upon them with reverence and seek instruction from them.[12] Do thou act according to the instructions received from those wise men whose eyes are set upon righteousness. With understanding cleansed by such lessons and rendered superior, do thou then restrain thy heart which is ever ready to deviate from

* These foes are, of course, the passions.—T.

the right course.[13] They whose understandings are always concerned with the present, who fearlessly regard the to-morrow as something quite remote,—they who do not observe any restrictions in the matter of food,—are really senseless persons that fail to understand that this world is only a field of probation.*[14] Repairing to the flight of steps constituted by Righteousness, do thou ascend those steps one after another. At present thou art like a worm that is employed in weaving its cocoon round itself and thereby depriving itself of all means of escape.[15] Do thou keep to thy left, without any scruple, the athiest who transgresses all restraints, who is situated like a house by the side of a fierce and encroaching current, (for the destruction he courts), and who (to others) seems to stand like a bamboo with its tall head erected in pride.†[16] Do thou with the raft of Yoga, cross the ocean of the world whose waters are constituted by the five senses, having Desire and Wrath and Death for its fierce monsters, and owning birth for its votex.[17] Do thou cross, with the raft of Righteousness, the world that is affected by Death and afflicted by Decrepitude, and upon which the thunder-bolts constituted by days and nights are falling incessantly.[18] When Death is seeking thee at all moments, *viz.*, when thou art sitting or lying down, it is certain that Death may get thee for his victim at any time. Whence art thou to obtain thy rescue![19] Like the she-wolf snatching away a lamb, Death snatches away one that is still engaged in earning wealth and still un-

---

* Literally, 'the world is only a field of action,' implying that creatures, coming here, have to act: these actions lead to rewards and punishments, both here and hereafter. The way to Emancipation is, as has been often shown before, by exhausting the consequences of acts by enjoyment or sufferance and by abstaining from further acts by adopting the religion of Nivritti.—T.

† 'Kulapātam' is explained by the Commentator as 'Mahānadipuram.' In 'Naram &c., 'venumivoddhritam' (as in the Bombay text) or 'venumivoddhatam' (is in the Bengal text) is rather unintelligible unless it be taken in the sense in which I have taken it. K. P. Singha mistranslates 'Kulapātam,' and the Burdwan translator misunderstands both 'kulapātam' and 'venumivoddhatām.'—T.

satisfied in the indulgence of his pleasures.[20] When thou art destined to enter into the dark, do thou hold up the blazing lamp made of righteous understanding and whose flame has been well-husbanded out.[21] Falling into various forms one after another in the world of men, a creature obtains the status of Brāhmanhood with great difficulty. Thou hast obtained that status. Do thou then, O son, endeavour to maintain it (properly).*[22] A Brāhmana hath not been born for the gratification of desire. On the other hand, his body is intended to be subjected to mortification and penances in this world so that incomparable happiness may be his in the next world.[23] The status of Brāhmanhood is acquired with the aid of long-continued and austere penances. Having acquired that status, one should never waste one's time in the indulgence of one's senses. Always engaged in penances and self-restraint and desirous of what is for thy good, do thou live and act, devoted to peace and tranquillity.[24] The period of life, of every man, is like a steed. The nature of that steed is unmanifest. The (sixteen) elements (mentioned before) constitute its body. Its nature is exceedingly subtile. Kshanas, and Trutis, and Nimeshas are the hair on its body. The twilights constitute its shoulder-joints. The lighted and the dark fortnights are its two eyes of equal power. Months are its other limbs. That steed is running incessantly.[25] If thy eyes be not blind, beholding then that steed incessantly moving forward in its invisible course, do thou set thy heart on righteousness, after hearing what thy preceptors have to say on the question of the next world.[26] They that fall away from righteousness and that conduct themselves recklessly, that always display malice towards others and betake themselves to evil ways, are obliged to assume (physical) bodies in the regions of Yama and suffer diverse afflictions in consequence of their unrighteous acts of diverse kinds.†[27] That king who is devoted to

* *I. e.*, to uphold it by doing the duties of a Brāhmana.—T.

† 'Prachalita-dharma &c.,' implies those that have fallen away from righteousness. The Burdwan translator misunderstands the Verse. 'Kāranābhih' is 'kriābhih.'—T.

righteousness and who protects and chastises the good and the wicked with discrimination, attains to those regions that belong to men of righteous deeds. By doing diverse kinds of good acts, he attains to such felicity as is faultless and as is incapable of being attained to by undergoing even thousands of births.*[28] Furious dogs of frightful mien, crows of iron beaks, flocks of ravens and vultures and other birds, and blood-sucking worms, assail the man who transgresses the commands of his parents and preceptors when he goes to hell after death.†[29] That sinful wretch who, in consequence of his recklessness, transgresses the ten boundaries that have been fixed by the Self-born himself, is obliged to pass his time in great affliction in the wild wastes that occur in the dominions of the king of Pitris.‡[30] That man who is tainted with cupidity, who is in love with untruth, who always takes a delight in deception and cheating, and who does injuries to others by practising hypocrisy and deception, has to go to deep hell and suffer great woe and afflictions for his acts of wickedness.[31] Such a man is forced to bathe in the broad river called Vaitarani whose waters are scalding, to enter into a forest of trees whose leaves are as sharp as swords, and then to lie down on a bed of battle axes. He has thus to pass his days in frightful hell in great affliction.[32] Thou beholdest only the regions of Brahman and other deities, but thou art blind to that which is the highest (*viz.*, Emancipation). Alas, thou art ever blind also to that which brings Death on its train (*viz.*, decrepitude and old age) !$[33]

---

* The Commentator explains that this Verse is for assuring Yudhishthira that kings are competent to obtain felicity in the next world. 'Anupagatam' is explained by the Commentator as 'not attainable in even thousands of births.'—T.

† 'Rudhirapāh' is blood-sucking worms. 'Uparatam' is dead.—T.

‡ The ten boundaries or commandments, as mentioned by the Commentator, are the five positive ones, *viz.*, Purity, Contentment, Penances, Study of the Vedas, Meditation on God, and the five negatives ones, *viz.*, abstention from cruelty, from untruth, from theft, from non-observance of vows, and from acquisition of wealth.—T.

$ 'Chirasya' is grammatically connected with 'na vudhyase,' meaning that 'thou art *always* blind &c.' The Burdwan translator misunder-

Go (along the path of Emancipation)! Why tarriest thou? A frightful terror, destructive of thy happiness, is before thee! Do thou take prompt steps for achieving thy Emancipation![34] Soon after death thou art sure to be taken before Yama at his command. For obtaining felicity in the next world, strive to attain to righteousness through the practice of difficult and austere vows.[35] The puissant Yama, regardless of the sufferings of others, very soon takes the lives of all persons, that is, of thyself and thy friends. There is none capable of resisting him.[36] Very soon the wind of Yama will blow before thee (and drive thee to his presence). Very soon wilt thou be taken to that dread presence all alone. Do thou then achieve what will be for thy good there.[37] Where now is that Death-wind which will blow before thee very soon? (Art thou mindful of it?) Very soon will the points of the compass, when that moment arrives, begin to whirl before thy eyes. (Art thou mindful of that?)[38] O son, soon (when that moment comes) will thy Vedas disappear from thy sight as thou goest helplessly into that dread presence. Do thou, therefore, set thy heart on Yoga abstraction which is possessed of great excellence.*[39] Do thou seek to attain that one only treasure so that thou mayst not have to grieve at the recollection (after Death) of thy former deeds good and bad all of which are characterised by error.†[40] Decrepitude very soon weakens thy body and robs thee of thy strength and limbs and beauty. Do thou, therefore, seek that one only treasure.[41] Very soon the Destroyer, with Disease for his charioteer, will with a strong hand, for taking thy life, pierce and break thy body. Do thou, therefore, practise austere penances.[42] Very soon will those terrible wolves that reside within thy body,

---

stands it completely and takes it as equivalent to 'achirena.' K. P. Singha skips over it.—T.

* The Burdwan translator gives a ridiculous version of this Verse.—T.

† 'Kevalam nidhim' is literally, 'one only treasure.' It may imply either Samādhi or Brahma. Acts, whether good or bad, all arise from error. Abstention from acts is the true way to Emancipation.—T.

assail thee from every side. Do thou endeavour, therefore, to achieve acts of righteousness.*[43] Very soon wilt thou, all alone, behold a thick darkness, and very soon wilt thou behold golden trees on the top of the hill. Do thou, therefore, hasten to achieve acts of righteousness.†[44] Very soon will those evil companions and foes of thine, (*viz.*, the senses), dressed in the guise of friends, swerve thee from correct vision. Do thou, then, O son, strive to achieve that which is of the highest good.[45] Do thou earn that wealth which has no fear from either kings or theives, and which one has not to abandon even at Death.[46] Earned by one's own acts, that wealth has never to be divided among co-owners. Each enjoys that wealth (in the other world) which each has earned for himself.[47] O son, give that to others by which they may be able to live in the next world. Do thou also set thyself to the acquisition of that wealth which is indestructible and durable.[48] Do not think that thou shouldst first enjoy all kinds of pleasures and then turn thy heart on Emancipation, for before thou art satiated with enjoyment thou mayst be overtaken by Death. Do thou, in view of this, hasten to do acts of goodness.‡[49] Neither mother, nor son, nor relatives, nor dear friends even when solicited with honors, accompany the man that dies. To the regions of Yama one has to go oneself, unaccompanied by any one.[50] Only those deeds, good and bad, that one did before death accompany the man that goes to the other world.[51] The gold and gems that one has earned by good and bad means do not become productive of any benefit to one when one's body meets with dissolution.[52] Of men that have gone to the other world, there is no witness, better than the soul, of all acts done and undone in life.[53] That when the

---

* The passions are spoken of as wolves.—T.

† The sight of golden trees is a premonitory sign of Death.—T.

‡ Literally rendered, the Verse would run thus: 'Before the cooking is complete of the Yāvaka of a rich man, in fact, while it is still uncooked, thou mayst meet with death. Do thou, therefore, hasten.' By 'Yāvaka' is meant a particular kind of food made of ghee and flower of barley.—T.

acting-Chaitanya (Jiva-soul) enters into the witness-Chaitanya, the destruction of the body takes place, is seen by Yoga-intelligence when Yogins enter the firmament of their hearts.*[54] Even here, the god of Fire, the Sun, and the Wind,—these three reside in the body. These, beholding as they do all the practices of one's life, become one's witnesses.[55] Days and Nights,—the former characterised by the virtue of displaying all things and the latter characterised by the virtue of concealing all things,—are running incessantly and touching all things (and thereby lessening their allotted periods of existence). Do thou, therefore, be observant of the duties of thy own order.†[56] The road in the other world (that leads to the regions of Yama), is infested by many foes (in the form of iron-beaked birds and wolves) and by many repulsive and terrible insects and worms. Do thou take care of thy own acts, for only acts will accompany you along that road.[57] There one has not to share one's acts with others, but every one enjoys or endures the fruits of those acts which every one has himself performed.[58] As Apsaras and great Rishis attain to fruits of great felicity, after the same manner, men of righteous deeds, as the fruits of their respective righteous acts, obtain in the other world cars of transcendent brightness that move everywhere at the will of the riders.[59] Men of stainless deeds and cleansed souls and pure birth obtain in the next world fruits that correspond with their own righteous acts in this life.[60] By walking along the high road constituted by the duties of domesticity, men acquire happy ends by attaining to the region of Prajāpati or Vrihaspati or of him of a hundred sacrifices.[61] I can give thee thousands and thousands of instructions. Know, however, that the puissant

---

* In Verse 53 it is said that the Soul is the witness in the other world of all acts and omissions in this life. In Verse 54, what is said is that the existence of the Soul, when the body is not, is possible, for Yogins, in Yoga, live in their Souls, unconscious the while of their bodies. The entrance of the acting-Chaitanya into that Chaitanya which survives as the witness means the death of the body.—T.

† The Burdwan translator gives an erroneous version of this Verse.—

cleanser (*viz.*, Righteousness), keeps all foolish persons in the Dark.*[62] Thou hast passed four and twenty years. Thou art now full five and twenty years of age. Thy years are passing away. Do thou begin to lay thy store of righteousness.[63] The Destroyer that dwells within error and heedlessness will very soon deprive thy senses of their respective powers. Do thou, before that consummation is brought about, hasten to observe thy duties, relying on thy body alone.†[64] When it is thy duty to go along that road in which thyself only shalt be in front and thyself only in the rear, what need then hast thou with either thy body or thy spouse and children ?‡[65] When men have to go individually and without companions to the region of Yama, it is plain that in view of such a situation of terror, thou shouldst seek to acquire that one only treasure (*viz.*, Righteousness or Yoga-samādhi).[66] The puissant Yama, regardless of the afflictions of others, snatches away the friends and relatives of one's race by the very roots. There is no one that can resist him. Do thou, therefore, seek to acquire a stock of righteousness.[67] I impart to thee these lessons, O son, that are all agreeable with the scriptures I follow. Do thou observe them by acting according to their import.[68] He who supports his body by following the duties laid down for his own order, and who makes gifts for earning whatever fruits

---

* I think the sense is that only righteousness can bring a man to the path that leads to happiness, and not mere instructions howsoever repeated.—T.

† The Commentator explains that 'Pramādagah' is equivalent to 'Pramādagrihavāsin' and refers to 'Antakah.' 'Chamum' is 'Indriyasenām.' 'Grahitām' is body. 'Yathā grahitām' is 'dehamanatikramya.' In this Verse 'purā' may mean either 'in the near future' or 'soon,' or 'purā' may mean 'before,' *i. e.*, 'before the Destroyer makes thy senses so, &c.'—T.

‡ 'The road in which thyself shalt be in front and thyself in the rear' is the road of Self-knowledge. The Burdwan translator does not understand how the first line comes to mean 'Knowledge of Self; accordingly, though he uses the word 'ātmajnāna' (following the Commentator), yet he erroneously repeats some of the words of used in the line.—T.

may attach to such acts, becomes freed from the consequences that are born of ignorance and error.*[69] The knowledge which a man of righteous deeds acquires from Vedic declarations leads to omniscience. That omniscience is identical with the science of the highest object of human aquisition (*viz.*, Emancipation). Instruction, imparted to the grateful, become beneficial (in consequence of their leading to the attainment of that highest object of human acquisition).†[70] The pleasure that one takes in living amidst the habitations of men is truly a fast-binding cord. Breaking that cord, men of righteous deeds repair to regions of great felicity. Wicked men, however, fail to break that bond.[71] What use hast thou of wealth, O son, or with relatives, or with children, since thou hast to die? Do thou employ thyself in seeking for thy soul which is hidden in a cave. Where have all thy grandsires gone?[72] Do that today which thou wouldst keep for tomorrow. Do that in the forenoon which thou wouldst keep for the afternoon. Death does not wait for any one, to see whether one has or has not accomplished one's task.[73] Following the body after one's death (to the crematorium), one's relatives and kinsmen and friends come back, throwing it on the funeral pyre.[74] Without a scruple do thou avoid those men that are sceptics that are destitute of compassion, and that are devoted to wicked ways, and do thou endeavour to seek, without listlessness or apathy, that which is for thy highest good.[75] When, therefore, the world is thus afflicted by Death, do thou, with thy whole heart, achieve righteousness, aided all

---

* The last word of the second line is 'muchyate' and not 'yujyate.' If 'yujyate' be adhered to, the meaning would be 'freed from the consequences of ignorance and error, he would succeed in attaining to Brahma.'—T.

† This is a very abstruse Verse. I have renderd it, following the lead of the Commentator. 'Crutam,' he explains, is 'the knowledge, born of Vedic declarations like *Tattwamasi &c.*' 'Sarvamaçnute' is equivalent to 'samastam Brahmāndam vyāpnoti,' meaning 'such knowledge leads to *sarvātmyam, i. e.*, omniscience.' 'Tadetat &c.,' is 'that omniscience is the *darçanam* of parampurushārtha or Mokhsa.' 'Kritajna upadishtam artham' is 'samhitam.'—T.

the while by unswerving patience.[76] That man who is well conversant with the means of attaining to Emancipation and who duly discharges the duties of his order, certainly attains to great felicity in the other world.[77] For thee that dost not recognise death in the attainment of a different body and that dost not deviate from the path trod by the righteous, there is no destruction. He that increases the stock of righteousness is truly wise. He, on the other hand, that falls away from righteousness is said to be a fool.[78] One that is engaged in the accomplishment of good deeds attains to heaven and other rewards as the fruits of those deeds; but he that is devoted to wicked deeds has to sink in hell.[79] Having acquired the status of humanity, so difficult of acquisition, that is the stepping-stone to heaven, one should fix one's soul on Brahma so that one may not fall away once more.[80] That man whose understanding, directed to the path of heaven, does not deviate therefrom, is regarded by the wise as truly a man of righteousness and when he dies his friends should indulge in grief.[81] That man whose understanding is not restless and which is directed to Brahma and who has attained to heaven, becomes freed from a great terror (*viz.*, hell).[82] They that are born in retreats of ascetics and that die there, do not earn much merit by abstaining all their life from enjoyments and the indulgence of desire.[83] He, however, who though possessed of objects of enjoyment casts them off and engages himself in the practice of penances, succeeds in acquiring everything. The fruits of the penances of such a man are, I think, much higher.[84] Mothers and sires and sons and spouses, by hundreds and thousands, every one had and will have in this world. Who, however, were they and whose are we?*[85] I am quite alone. I have no one whom I may call mine. Nor do I belong to any one else. I do not see that person whose I am, nor do I see him whom I

* The sense is that in course of our repeated rebirths we have got these relations repeatedly and will get them as repeatedly. But we are, in reality, quite unconnected with them. Their union with us is like the union of pieces of wood floating in a river, now joined together temporarily, now separated.—T.

may call mine.[86] They have nothing to do with thee. Thou hast nothing to do with them. All creatures take birth agreeably to their acts of past lives. Thou also shalt have to go hence (for taking birth in a new order) determined by thy own acts.[87] In this world it is seen that the friends and followers of only those that are rich behave towards the rich with devotion. The friends and followers of those, however, that are poor fall away during even the life-time of the poor.[88] Man commits numerous evil acts for the sake of his wife (and children). From those evil acts he derives much distress both here and hereafter.[89] The wise man beholds the world of life devastated by the acts performed by every living being. Do thou, therefore, O son, act according to all the instructions I have given thee![90] The man possessed of true vision, beholding this world to be only a field of action, should, from desire of felicity in the next world, do acts that are good.[91] Time, exerting his irresistible strength, cooks all creatures (in his own cauldron), with the aid of his ladle constituted by months and seasons, the sun for his fire, and days and nights for his fuel,—days and nights, that is, that are the witnesses of the fruits of every act done by every creature.[92] For what purpose is that wealth which is not given away and which is not enjoyed? For what purpose is that strength which is not employed in resisting or subjugating one's foes? For what purpose is that knowledge of the scriptures which does not impel one to deeds of righteousness? And for what purpose is that soul which does not subjugate the senses and abstain from evil acts?—'[93]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having heard these beneficial words spoken by the Island-born (Vyāsa), Cuka, leaving his sire, proceeded to seek a preceptor that could teach him the religion of Emancipation.' "*[94]

---

† 'Mokshadaiçikam' is explained by the Commentator as 'Mokshahdeshatāram.' K. P. Singha wrongly renders this word. This Section is called 'pāvakādhyayanam,' meaning 'chitta-çodhakādhyayanam,' that is, the Lesson which, when read and mastered, is to lead to the cleansing of the heart.—T.

SECTION CCCXXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'If there is any efficacy in gifts, in sacrifices, in penances well-performed, and in dutiful services rendered to preceptors and other reverend seniors, do thou, O grandsire, speak of the same to me!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'An understanding associated with evil causes the mind to fall into sin. In this state one stains one's acts, and then falls into great distress.[2] Those that are of sinful acts have to take birth as persons of very indigent circumstances. From famine to famine, from pain to pain, from fear to fear, is their change. They are more dead than those that are dead.[3] Possessed of affluence, from joy to joy, from heaven to heaven, from happiness to happiness, proceed they that are possessed of faith, that are self-restrained, and that are devoted to righteous deeds.[4] They that are unbelievers have to pass, with groping hands, through regions infested by beasts of prey and elephants and pathless tracts teeming with snakes and robbers and other causes of fear. What more need be said of these?[5] They, on the other hand, that are endued with reverence for gods and guests, that are liberal, that have proper regard for persons that are good, and that make gifts in sacrifices, have for theirs the path (of felicity) that belongs to men of cleansed and subdued souls.[6] Those that are not righteous should not be counted among men even as grains without kennel are not counted among grain and as cockroaches are not counted among birds.[7] The acts that one does, follow one even when one runs fast. Whatever acts one does, lie down with the doer when the doer lays himself down.[8] Indeed, the sins one does, sit when the doer sits, and run when he runs. The sins act when the doer acts, and, in fact, follow the doer like his shadow.[9] Whatever the acts one does by whatever means and under whatever circumstances, are sure to be enjoyed and endured (in respect of their fruits) by the doer in his next life.[10] From every side Time is always dragging all creatures, duly observing the rule in respect of the distance to which they are thrown and which is commensurate

with their acts.*[11] As flowers and fruits, without being urged, never suffer their proper time to pass away without making their appearance, even so the acts one has done in past life make their appearance at the proper time.[12] Honor and dishonor, gain and loss, destruction and growth, are seen to set in. No one can resist them (when they come). None of them is enduring, for disappear it must after appearance.[13] The sorrows one suffers is the result of one's acts. The happiness one enjoys flows from one's acts. From the time when one lies within the mother's womb one begins to enjoy and endure one's acts of a past life.[14] Whatever acts good and bad one does in childhood, youth, or old age, one enjoys and endures their consequences in one's next life in similar ages.[15] As the calf recognises its dam even when the latter may stand among thousands of her species, after the same manner the acts done by one in one's past life come to one in one's next life (without any mistake) although one may live among thousands of one's species.[16] As a piece of dirty cloth is whitened by being washed in water, after the same manner, the righteous, cleansed by continuous exposure unto the fire of fasts and penances, at last attain to unending happiness.[17] O thou of high intelligence, the desires and purposes of those whose sins have been washed off by long-continued penances well-performed, become crowned with fruition.[18] The track of the righteous cannot be discerned even as that of birds in the sky or that of fishes in the water.[19] There is no need of speaking ill of others; nor of reciting the instances in which others have tripped. On the other hand, one should always do what is delightful, agreeable, and beneficial to one's own self.†' "[20]

---

* Time, as a personified agent, is throwing all creatures at unequal distances. Some are thrown near and some to a great distance. These distances are regulated by the nature of the acts done by the creatures thrown. Some are cast among insects, some among animals, some among men. Throwing or hurling them thus, Time drags them again, the binding-cords being always in his hands.—T.

* Both the Vernacular translators have misunderstood the first line

Section CCCXXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, how the high-souled Cuka of austere penances took birth as the son of Vyāsa, and how did he succeed in attaining to the highest success ?[1] Upon what woman did Vyāsa, endued with wealth of asceticism, beget that son of his ? We do not know who was Cuka's mother, nor do we know anything of the birth of that high-souled ascetic.[2] How was it that, when he was a mere boy, his mind became directed to the knowledge of the subtile (Brahma) ? Indeed, in this world no second person can be seen in whom such predilections could be marked at so early an age.[3] I desire to hear all this in detail, O thou of great intelligence. I am never satiated with hearing thy excellent and nectar-like words.[4] Tell me, O grandsire, in their proper order, of the greatness, and the knowledge of Cuka and of his union with the (Supreme) Soul !'[5]

"Bhishma continued,—'The Rishis did not make merit depend upon years or decrepitude or wealth or friends. They said that he amongst them was great that studied the Vedas.[6] All this that thou enquirest about has penances for its root. That penance, again, O son of Pāndu, arises from the subjugation of the senses.[7] Without doubt, one incurs fault by giving one's senses the reins. It is only by restraining them that one succeeds in earning success.[8] The merit that attaches to a thousand Horse-sacrifices or a hundred Vājapeyas cannot come up to even a sixteenth portion of the merit that arises from Yoga.[9] I shall, on the present occasion, recite to thee the circumstances of Cuka's birth, the fruits he won of his penances, and the foremost end he achieved (by his acts),—topics that are incapable of being understood by persons of uncleansed souls.[10] Once on a time on the

---

of this Verse although there is no difficulty in it. Apastamva says 'drishto dharma-vyatikramah : Sāhasancha purveshām.' What Bhishma says here is that one should not speak of those instances of 'Vyatikramah' and 'Sāhasam.'—T.

summit of Meru adorned with *Karnikāra* flowers, Mahādeva sported, accompanied by the terrible spirits that were his associates.[11] The daughter of the king of mountains, *viz.*, the goddess Pārvati, was also there. There, at the close vicinity of that summit, the Island-born (Vyāsa) underwent extraordinary austerities.[12] O best of the Kurus, devoted to the practices of Yoga, the great ascetic, withdrawing himself by Yoga into his own Soul, and engaged in Dhāranā, practised many austerities for the sake of (obtaining) a son.[13] The prayer he addressed to the great God was,—O puissant one, let me have a son that will have the puissance of Fire and Earth and Water and Wind and Space.[14] Engaged in the austerest of penances, the Island-born Rishi begged of that great God who is incapable of being approached by persons of uncleansed souls, (not by words but) by his Yoga-resolution.[15] The puissant Vyāsa remained there for a hundred years, subsisting on air alone, engaged in adoring Mahādeva of multifarious form, the lord of Umā.[16] Thither all the regenerate Rishis and royal sages and the Regents of the world and the Sādhyas along with the Vasus, and the Ādityas, the Rudras, and Surya and Chandramas, and the Maruts, and the Oceans, and the Rivers,[17] and the Açwins, the Deities, the Gandharvas, and Nārada, and Parvata, and the Gandharva Viçwāvasu, and the Siddhas, and the Apsaras.[18] There Mahādeva, called also by the name of Rudra, sat, decked with an excellent garland of Karnikāra flowers, and blazed with refulgence like the Moon with his rays.[19] In those delightful and celestial woods populous with deities and heavenly Rishis, the great Rishi remained, engaged in high Yoga-contemplation, from desire of obtaining a son.[20] His strength suffered no diminution, nor did he feel any pain. At this the three worlds were much amazed.[21] While the Rishi, possessed of immeasurable energy, sat in Yoga, his matted locks, in consequence of his energy, were seen to blaze like flames of fire.[22] The illustrious Mārkandeya it was from whom I heard of this. He used always to recite to me the acts of the deities.[23] It is for this that the matted locks of the high-souled and

(Island-born) Krishna, thus enblazed by his energy on that occasion, seem to this day to be endued with the complexion of fire.[24] Gratified with such penances and such devotion, O Bhārata, of the Rishi, the great God resolved (to grant him his wish).[25] The Three-eyed deity, smiling with pleasure, addressed him and said,—O Island-born one, thou shalt get a son like to what thou wishest![26] Possessed of greatness, he shall be as pure as Fire, as Wind, as Earth, as Water, and as Space![27] He shall be possessed of the consciousness of his being Brahma's self; his understanding and soul shall be devoted to Brahma, and he shall completely depend upon Brahma so as to be identifiable with it!—' "[28]

SECTION CCCXXV.

"Bhishma said,—'The son of Satyavati, having obtained this high boon from the great God, was one day employed in rubbing his sticks for making a fire.[1] While thus engaged, the illustrious Rishi, O king, beheld the Apsarā Ghritāchi, who, in consequence of her energy, was then possessed of great beauty.[2] Beholding the Apsarā in those woods, the illustrious Rishi Vyāsa, O Yudhishthira, became suddenly smitten with desire.[3] The Apsarā (Ghritāchi), seeing the Rishi's heart troubled by desire, transformed herself into a she-parrot and came to that spot.[4] Although he beheld the Apsarā disguised in another form, the desire that had arisen in the Rishi's heart (without disappearing) spread itself over every part of his body.[5] Summoning all his patience, the ascetic endeavoured to suppress that desire. With all his effort, however, Vyāsa did not succeed in controlling his agitated mind. In consequence of the inevitability of what was to happen, the Rishi's heart was attracted by Ghritāchi's fair form.[6] He set himself more earnestly to the task of making a fire for suppressing his emotion, but in spite of all his efforts his vital seed came out.[7] That best of regenerate ones, however, O king, continued to rub his stick without feeling any scruples for what had happened. From the seed that fell, was born a son unto him, called Cuka.[8] In

consequence of this circumstance attending his birth, he came to be called by the name of Cuka. Indeed, it was thus that that great ascetic, that foremost of Rishis and highest of Yogins, took his birth from the two sticks (his father had for making fire).[9] As in a sacrifice a blazing fire sheds its effulgence all around when libations of clarified butter are poured upon it, after the same manner did Cuka take his birth, blazing with effulgence in consequence of his own energy.[10] Assuming the excellent form and complexion that were his sire', Cuka, O son of Kuru, of cleansed Soul, shone like a smokeless fire.[11] The foremost of rivers, *viz.*, Gangā, O king, coming to the breast of Meru, in her own embodied form, bathed Cuka (after his birth) with her waters.[12] There fell from the welkin, O son of Kuru, an ascetic's stick and a dark deer-skin for the use, O monarch, of the high-souled Cuka.[13] The Gandharvas sang repeatedly and the diverse tribes of Apsaras danced ; and celestial kettle-drums of loud sound began to beat.[14] The Gandharva Viçwāvasu, and Tumvuru and Nārada, and those other Gandharvas called by the names of Hāhā, and Huhu, eulogised the birth of Cuka.[15] There the regents of the world with Cakra at their head came, as also the deities and the celestial and the regenerate Rishis.[16] The Wind-god poured showers of celestial flowers upon the spot.[17] The entire universe, mobile and immobile, became filled with joy.[18] The high-souled Mahādeva of great effulgence, accompanied by the Goddess, and moved by affection, came there and soon after the birth of the Muni's son invested him with the sacred thread.[19] Cakra, the chief of the gods, gave him, from affection, a celestial Kamandalu of excellent form, and some celestial robes.[20] Swans and Catapatras and cranes by thousands, and many parrots and Chāsas, O Bhārata, wheeled over his head.[21] Endued with great splendour and intelligence, Cuka, having obtained his birth from the two sticks, continued to live there, engaged the while in the attentive observance of many vows and fasts.[22] As soon as Cuka was born, the Vedas with all their mysteries and all their abstracts, came for dwelling in him, O king, even as

they dwell in his sire.[23] For all that, Cuka selected Vrihaspati, who was conversant with all the Vedas together with their branches and commentaries, for his preceptor, remembering the universal practice.*[24] Having studied all the Vedas together with all their mysteries and abstracts, as also all the histories and the science of governmet, O puissant monarch,[25] the great ascetic returned home, after giving his preceptor the tuition-fee. Adopting the vow of a Brahmachārin, he then commenced to practise the austerest penances. concentrating all his attention thereon.[26] In even his childhood, he became an object of respect with the gods and Rishis for his knowledge and penances.[27] The mind of the great ascetic, O king, took no pleasure in the three modes of life with the domestic among them, keeping in view, as he did, the religion of Emancipation.' "[28]

Section CCCXXVI.

"Bhishma said,—'Thinking of Emancipation, Cuka approached his sire, and possessed as he was of humility and desirous of achieving his highest good, he saluted his great preceptor and said,'—Thou art well versed in the religion of Emancipation. Do thou, O illustrious one, discourse to me upon it, so that supreme tranquillity of mind, O puissant one, may be mine![2]—Hearing these words of his son, the great Rishi said unto him,—Do thou study, O son, the religion of Emancipation and all the diverse duties of life![3]—At the command of his sire, Cuka, that foremost of all righteous men, mastered all the treatises on Yoga, O Bhārata, as also the science promulgated by Kapila.[4] When Vyāsa beheld his son to be possessed of the resplendence of the Vedas, endued with the energy of Brahma, and fully conversant with the religion of Emancipation, he addressed him,[5] saying,—Go thou to Janaka the ruler of Mithilā.

---

* Although the Vedas came to Cuka of their own accord, yet he was, in deference to the universal custom, obliged to formally acquire them from a preceptor.—T.

The king of Mithilā will tell thee everything for thy Emancipation.[6]—Bearing the command of his sire, O king, Cuka proceeded to Mithilā for enquiring of its king about the truth of duties and the Refuge of Emancipation.[7] Before he set out, his sire further told him,—Do thou go thither by that path which ordinary human beings take. Do not have recourse to thy Yoga-puissance for proceeding through the skies.—At this Cuka was not at all surprised (for he was humble by nature).[8] He was further told that he should proceed thither with simplicity and not from desire of pleasure.—Along your way do not seek for friends and spouses, since friends and spouses are causes of attachment to the world.[9] Although the ruler of Mithilā is one in whose sacrifices we officiate, still thou shouldst not indulge in any feeling of superiority while living with him. Thou shouldst live under his direction and in obedience to him. Even he will dispel all thy doubts.*[10] That king is well versed in all duties and well acquainted with the scriptures on Emancipation. He is one for whom I officiate in sacrifices. Thou shouldst, without any scruple, do what he bids.[11]—Thus instructed, the righteous-souled Cuka proceeded to Mithilā on foot although he was able to traverse through the skies over the whole Earth with her seas.[12] Crossing many hills and mountains, many rivers, many waters and lakes, and many woods and forests abounding with beasts of prey and other animals,[13] crossing the two *Varshas* of Meru and Hari successively and next the *Varsha* of Himavat, he came at last to the *Varsha* known by the name of Bharata.[14] Having seen many countries inhabited by Chins and Huns, the great ascetic at last reached Āryāvarta.[15] In obedience to the commands of his sire and bearing them constantly in his mind, he gradually passed along his way on the Earth

* Vyāsa was the priest or Ritwija of the house of Mithilā and as such the kings of Mithilā were his 'Yājyas' or 'Yajamānas.' The duty of a 'Yajamāna' is to reverence every member of the priest's family. The sire, therefore, cautions the son that he should not, while living with the king of Mithilā, assert his superiority over him in any respect.—T.

like a bird passing through the air.[16] Passing through many delightful towns and populous cities, he saw diverse kinds of wealth without waiting to observe them.[17] On his way he passed through many delightful gardens and planes and many sacred waters.[18] Before much time had passed he reached the country of the Videhas that was protected by the virtuous and high-souled Janaka.[19] There he beheld many populous villages, and many kinds of food and drink and viands and habitations of cowherds swelling with men and many herds of cattle.[20] He beheld many fields abounding with paddy and barley and other grain, and many lakes and waters inhabited by swans and cranes and adorned with beautiful lotuses.[21] Passing through the Videha country teeming with well-to-do people, he arrived at the delightful gardens of Mithilā rich with many species of trees.[22] Abounding with elephants and horses and cars, and peopled by men and women, he passed through them without waiting to observe any of the things that were presented to his eye.[23] Bearing that burthen in his mind and ceaselessly dwelling upon it (*viz.*, the desire of mastering the religion of Emancipation), Cuka of cheerful soul and taking delight in internal survey only, reached Mithilā at last.[24] Arrived at the gate, he sent word through the keepers. Endued with tranquillity of mind, devoted to contemplation and Yoga, he entered the city, having obtained permission.[25] Proceeding along the principal street abounding with well-to-do men, he reached the king's palace and entered it without any scruples.[26] The porters forbade him with rough words. Thereat, Cuka, without any anger, stopped and waited.[27] Neither the sun nor the long distance he had walked had fatigued him in the least. Neither hunger, nor thirst, nor the exertion he had made, had weakened him. The heat of the Sun had not scorched or pained or distressed him in any degree.[28] Among those porters there was one who felt compassion for him, beholding him staying there like the midday Sun in his effulgence.[29] Worshipping him in due form and saluting him properly, with joined hands he led him to the first chamber of the palace.[30] Seated there, Cuka, O son,

began to think of Emancipation only. Possessed of equable splendour he looked with an equal eye upon a shaded spot and one exposed to the Sun's rays.[31] Very soon after, the king's minister, coming to that place with joined hands, led him to the second chamber of the palace.[32] That chamber led to a spacious garden which formed a portion of the inner apartments of the palace. It looked like a second Chaitraratha. Beautiful pieces of water occurred here and there at regular intervals. Delightful trees, all of which were in their flowering season, stood in that garden.[33] Bevies of damsels, of transcendent beauty, were in attendance. The minister led Cuka from the second chamber to that delightful spot. Ordering those damsels to give the ascetic a seat, the minister left him there.[34] Those well-dressed damsels were of beautiful features, possessed of excellent hips, young in ears, clad in red robes of fine texture, and decked with many ornaments of burnished gold.[35] They were well skilled in agreeable conversation and maddening revelry, and thorough mistresses of the arts of dancing and singing. Always opening their lips with smiles, they were equal to the very Apsarās in beauty.[36] Well-skilled in all the acts of dalliance, competent to read the thoughts of men upon whom they wait, possessed of every accomplishment, fifty damsels, of a very superior order and of easy virtue, surrounded the ascetic.[37] Presenting him with water for washing his feet, and worshipping him respectfully with the offer of the usual articles, they gratified him with excellent viands agreeable to the season.[38] After he had eaten, those damsels then, one after another, singly led him through the grounds, showing him every object of interest, O Bhārata.[39] Sporting and laughing and singing, those damsels, conversant with the thoughts of all men, entertained that auspicious ascetic of noble soul.[40] The pure-souled ascetic born in the fire-sticks, observant without scruples of any kind of his duties, having all his senses under complete control, and a thorough master of his wrath, was neither pleased nor angered at all this.[41] Then those foremost of beautiful women gave him an excellent seat.[42] Washing

his feet and other limbs, Cuka said his evening prayers, sat on that excellent seat, and began to think of the object for which he had come there.[43] In the first part of the night, he devoted himself to Yoga. The puissant ascetic, passed the middle portion of the night in sleep.[44] Very soon waking up from his slumber, he went through the necessary rites of cleansing his body, and though surrounded by those beautiful women, he once again devoted himself to Yoga.[45] It was in this way, O Bhārata, that the son of the Island-born Krishna passed the latter part of that day and the whole of that night in the palace of king Janaka.' "[46]

SECTION CCCXXVII.

"Bhishma said,—'The next morning, king Janaka, O Bhārata, accompanied by his minister and the whole household, came to Cuka, placing his priest in the van.[1] Bringing with him costly seats and diverse kinds of jewells and gems, and bearing the ingredients of the *Arghya* on his own head, the monarch approached the son of his reverend preceptor.[2] The king, taking with his own hands, from the hands of his priest, that seat adorned with many gems, overlaid with an excellent sheet, beautiful in all its parts, and exceedingly costly, presented it with great reverence to his preceptor's son Cuka.[3-4] After the son of (the Island-born) Krishna had taken his seat on it, the king worshipped him according to prescribed rites. At first offering him water to wash his feet, he then presented him the *Arghya* and kine.[5] The ascetic accepted that worship offered with due rites and *mantras*. That foremost of regenerate persons, having thus accepted the worship offered by the king,[6] and taking the kine also that were presented to him, then saluted the monarch. Possessed of great energy, he next enquired after the king's welfare and prosperity.[7] Indeed, O king, Cuka embraced in his enquiry the welfare of the monarch's followers and officers also. Receiving Cuka's permission, Janaka sat down with all his followers.[8] Endued with a high soul and possessed of high birth, the monarch, with joined hands, sat down

on the bare ground and enquired after the welfare and unabated prosperity of Vyāsa's son.[9] The monarch then asked his guest the object of his visit.[10]

" 'Cuka said,—Blessed be thou, my sire said unto me that his Yajamāna, the ruler of the Videhas, known all over the world by the name of Janaka, is well versed in the religion of Emancipation.[11] He commanded me to come to him without delay, if I had any doubts requiring solution in the matter of the religion of either Pravritti or Nivritti. He gave me to understand that the king of Mithilā would dispel all my doubts.[12] I have, therefore, come hither, at the command of my sire, for the purpose of taking lessons from thee. It behooveth thee, O foremost of all righteous persons, to instruct me![13] What are the duties of a Brāhmana, and what is the essence of those duties that have Emancipation for their object. How also is Emancipation to be obtained? Is it obtainable by the aid of knowledge or by that of penances?—[14]

" 'Janaka said,—Hear what the duties are of a Brāhmana from the time of his birth. After his investiture, O son. with the sacred thread, he should devote his attention to the study of the Vedas.[15] By practising penances and dutifully serving his preceptor and observing the duties of Brahmacharyya, O puissant one, he should pay off the debt he owes to the deities and the Pitris, and cast off all malice.[16] Having studied the Vedas with close attention and subjugated his senses, and having given his preceptor the tuition-fee, he should, with the permission of his preceptor, return home.[17] Returning home, he should betake himself to the domestic mode of life and wedding a spouse confine himself to her, and live freeing himself from every kind of malice, and having established his domestic fire.[18] Living, in the domestic mode, he should procreate sons and grandsons. After that, he should retire to the forest, and continue to worship the same fires and entertain guests with cordial hospitality.[19] Living righteously in the forest, he should at last establish his fire in his soul, and freed from all pairs of opposites, and casting off all attachments from the soul, he should pass his

days in the mode called Sannyāsa which is otherwise called the mode of Brahma.—[20]

" 'Cuka said,—If one succeeds in attaining to an understanding cleansed by study of the scriptures and to true conceptions of all things, and if the heart succeeds in freeing itself permanently from the effects of all pairs of opposities, is it still necessary for such a person to adopt, one after another, the three modes of life called Brahmacharyya, Gārhastya, and Vānaprastha?[21] This is what I ask thee. It behooveth thee to tell me. Indeed, O ruler of men, do tell me this according to the true import of the Vedas!—[22]

" 'Janaka said,—Without the aid of an understanding cleansed by study of the scriptures and without that true conception of all things which is known by the name of Vijnāna, the attainment of Emancipation is impossible. That cleansed understanding, again, it is said, is unattainable without one's connection with a preceptor.[23] The preceptor is the helmsman, and knowledge is the boat (aided by whom and which one succeeds in crossing the ocean of the world). After having acquired that boat, one becomes crowned with success. Indeed, having crossed the ocean, one may abandon both.[24] For preventing the destruction of all the worlds and for preventing the destruction of acts (upon which the worlds depend); the duties appertaining to the four modes of life were practised by the wise of old.[25] By abandoning acts, good and bad, agreeably to this order of acts, one succeeds, in course of many births, in attaining to Emancipation.*[26] That man who, through penances performed in course of many births, succeeds in obtaining a cleansed mind and understanding and soul, certainly becomes able to attain to Emancipation (in a new birth) in even the very first mode, (*viz.*, Brahmacharyya).†[27] When, having attained to a cleansed understanding, Emancipation becomes his and

---

* It is certain that one must abandon all acts before one can attain to Emancipation. But then acts should not be cast off all at once. It is according to this order that they should be abandoned, *i. e.*, in the order of the several modes.—T.

† The 'karanas' are the inner faculties.—T.

in consequence thereof he becomes possessed of knowledge in respect of all visible things, what desirable object is there to attain by observing the three other modes of life?*[28] One should always cast off faults born of the attributes of Rajas and Tamas. Adhering to the path of Sattwa, one should know Self by Self.†[29] Beholding one's self in all creatures and all creatures in one's self, one should live (without being attached to anything) like acquatic animals living in water without being drenched by that element.[30] He who succeeds in transcending all pairs of attributes and resisting their influence, succeeds in casting off all attachments, and attains to infinite felicity in the next world, going thither like a bird soaring into the sky from below.[31] In this connection, there is a saying sung of old by king Yayāti and borne in remembrance, O sire, by all persons conversant with the scriptures bearing upon Emancipation.[32] The effulgent ray (*i. e.*, the Supreme Soul) exists in one's Soul and not anywhere else. It exists equally in all creatures. One can see it oneself if one's heart be devoted to Yoga.[33] When a person lives in such a way that another is not inspired with fear at his sight, and when a person is not himself inspired with fear at the sight of others, when a person ceases to cherish desire and hate, he is then said to attain to Brahma.[34] When a person ceases to entertain a sinful attitude towards all creatures in thought, word, and deed, he is then said to attain to Brahma.‡[35] By restraining the mind and the soul, by casting off malice that stupifies the mind, and by throwing off desire and stupefaction, one is said to attain to Brahma.[36] When a person assumes an equality of attitude in respect of all objects of hearing and vision (and the operations of the other senses) as also in respect of all living creatures, and transcends all pairs of opposites, he is then said to attain to Brahma.[37]

---

* *I. e.*, when Emancipation and omniscience have been attained in the very first mode of life, no further need exists for conforming to the three other modes of life.—T.

† *I. e.*, behold the Supreme Soul by his own Soul.—T.

‡ Instead of 'pāpakam' some texts read 'pāvakam,' meaning 'of the nature of fire.'—T.

When a person casts an equal eye upon praise and dispraise, gold and iron, happiness and misery,[38] heat and cold, good and evil, the agreeable and the disagreeable, life and death, he is then said to attain to Brahma.[39] One observing the duties of the mendicant orders should restrain one's senses and the mind even like a tortoise withdrawing its out-stretched limbs.*[40] As a house enveloped in darkness is capable of being seen with the aid of a lighted lamp, after the same manner can the soul be seen with the aid of the lamp of the understanding.[41] O foremost of intelligent persons, I see that all this knowledge that I am communicating to thee dwells in thee. Whatever else should be known by one desirous of learning the religion of Emancipation is already known to thee.[42] O regenerate Rishi, I am convinced that through the grace of thy preceptor and through the instructions thou hast received thou hast already transcended all objects of the senses.†[43] O great ascetic, through the grace of that sire of thine, I have attained to omniscience, and hence I have succeeded in knowing thee.[44] Thy knowledge is much greater than what thou thinkest thou hast. Thy perceptions also that result from intuition are much greater than what thou thinkest thou hast. Thy puissance also is much greater than thou art conscious of.[45] Whether in consequence of thy tender age, or of the doubts thou hast not been able to dispel, or of the fear that is due to the unattainment of Emancipation, thou art not conscious of that knowledge due to intuition although it has arisen in thy mind.[46] After one's doubts have been dispelled by persons like us, one succeeds in opening the knots of one's heart and then, by a righteous exertion one attains to and becomes conscious of that knowledge.[47] As regards thyself, thou art one that hast already acquired knowledge. Thy intelligence is steady and tranquil. Thou art free from covetousness. For all that,

---

* After 'manasā,' 'saha' is understood. It does not mean that the senses are to be restrained *by* the mind, but the words imply that the mind *and* the senses are to be restrained. K. P. Singha renders the line correctly. The Burdwan translator, as usual, is careless.—T.

† K. P. Singha skips over this Verse.—T.

O Brāhmana, one never succeeds in attaining to Brahma, which is the highest object of acquisition, without exertion.[48] Thou seest no distinction between happiness and misery. Thou art not covetous. Thou hast no longing for dancing and song. Thou hast no attachments.[49] Thou hast no attachment to friends. Thou hast no fear in things that inspire fear. O blessed one, I see that thou castest an equal eye upon a lump of gold and a clod of earth.[50] Myself and other persons possessed of wisdom, behold thee established in the highest and indestructible path of tranquillity.[51] Thou stayest, O Brāhmana, in those duties which obtain for the Brāhmana that fruit which should be his and which is identical with the essence of the object represented by Emancipation. What else hast thou to ask me?—' "[52]

Section CCCXXVIII.

"Bhishma said,—'Having heard these words of king Janaka, Cuka of cleansed soul and settled conclusions began to stay in his Soul by his Soul, having of course seen Self by Self.*[1] His object being accomplished, he became happy and tranquil, and without putting further questions to Janaka, he proceeded northwards to the mountains of Himavat with the speed of the wind and like the wind.†[2] Those mountains abounded with diverse tribes of Apsaras and echoed with many soft sounds. Teeming with thousands of Kinnaras and Bhringarājas,‡[3] it was adorned, besides, with many Madgus and Khanjaritas and many Jivajivakas of variegated hue.[4] And there were many peacocks also of gorgeous colors, uttering their shrill but melodious cries.[5] Many bevies of swans also, and many flights of gladdened Kokilas too, adorned the place. The prince of birds, *viz.*, Garuda, dwelt on that summit constantly.[6] The four Regents

---

* *I. e.*, he turned his soul's gaze on his soul and withdrew himself from every worldly object.—T.

† He no longer walked like ordinary men. Without trailing along the solid support of the Earth, he proceeded through the sky.—T.

‡ Popularly, Bhimarāja, the *Lanius Malabaricus*.—T.

of the world, the deities, and diverse classes of *Rishis*, used always to come there from desire of doing good to the world.[7] It was there that the high-souled Vishnu had undergone the severest austerities for the object of obtaining a son.[8] It was there that the celestial generalissimo named Kumāra, in his younger days, disregarding the three worlds with all the celestial denizens, threw down his dart, piercing the Earth therewith. Throwing down his dart, Skanda, addressing the universe, said,[9]—If there be any person that is superior to me in might, or that holds Brāhmanas to be dearer, or that can compare with me in devotion to the Brāhmanas and the Vedas, or that is possessed of energy like unto me,[10] let him draw up this dart or at last shake it!—Hearing this challenge, the three worlds became filled with anxiety, and all creatures asked one another, saying,—Who will raise this dart?[11]—Vishnu beheld all the deities and Asuras and Rākshasas to be troubled in their senses and mind.[12] He reflected upon what should be the best to be done under the circumstances. Without being able to bear that challenge in respect of the hurling of the dart, he cast his eyes on Skanda the son of the Fire-god.[13] The pure-souled Vishnu caught hold of the blazing dart with his left hand, and began to shake it.[14] When the dart was being thus shaken by Vishnu possessed of great might, the whole Earth with her mountains, forests, and seas, shook with the dart.[15] Although Vishnu was fully competent to raise the dart, still he contented himself with only shaking it. In this, the puissant lord only kept the honor of Skanda intact.[16] Having shaken it himself, the divine Vishnu, addressing Prahlāda, said,—Behold the might of Kumāra! None else in the universe can raise this dart![17] Unable to bear this, Prahlāda resolved to raise the dart. He seized it, but was unable to shake it at all.[18] Uttering a loud cry, he fell down on the hill-top in a swoon. Indeed, the son of Hiranya-kaçipu fell down on the Earth.[19] Repairing towards the northern side of those grand mountains, Mahādeva, having the bull for his sign, had undergone the austerest penances.[20] The asylum where Mahādeva had

undergone those austerities is encompassed on all sides with a blazing fire. Unapproachable by persons of uncleansed souls, that mountain is known by the name of Āditya.[21] There is a fiery girdle all around it, of the width of ten Yojanas, and it is incapable of being approached by Yakshas and Rākshasas and Dānavas.[22] The illustrious god of Fire, possessed of mighty energy, dwells there in person, employed in removing all impediments from the side of Mahādeva of great wisdom who remained there for a thousand celestial years, all the while standing on one foot.[23] Dwelling on the side of that foremost of mountains, Mahādeva of high vows (by his penances) scorched the deities greatly.*[24] At the foot of those mountains, in a retired spot, Parāçara's son of great ascetic merit, *viz.*, Vyāsa, taught the Vedas unto his disciples.[25] Those disciples were the highly blessed Sumanta, Vaiçampāyana, Jaimini of great wisdom, and Paila of great ascetic merit.[26] Cuka proceeded to that delightful asylum where his sire, the great ascetic Vyāsa, was dwelling, surrounded by his disciples.[27] Seated in his asylum, Vyāsa beheld his son approach like a blazing fire of scattered flames, or resembling the Sun himself in effulgence.[28] As Cuka approached, he did not seem to touch the trees or the rocks of the mountain. Completely dissociated from all objects of the senses, and engaged in Yoga, the high-souled ascetic came, resembling, in speed, a shaft let from a bow.[29] Born on the fire-sticks, Cuka, approaching his sire, touched his feet. With becoming formalities he then accosted the disciples of his sire.[30] With great cheerfulness he then detailed to his father all the particulars of his conversation with king Janaka.[31] Vyāsa the son of Parāçara, after the arrival of his puissant son, continued to dwell there on the Himavat, engaged in teaching his disciples and his son.[32] One day as he was seated, his disciples, all well-skilled in the Vedas, having their senses

* It is believed that a person, by performing austere penances, scorches the three worlds. It is in consequence of this effect of penances that the superior deities were always compelled by the Asuras and Dānavas to grant them whatever boons they solicited.—T.

under control, and endued with tranquil souls, sat themselves around him.[33] All of them had thoroughly mastered the Vedas with their branches. All of them were observant of penances. With joined hands they addressed their preceptor in the following words.[34]

"'The disciples said,—We have, through thy grace, been endued with great energy. Our fame also has spread. There is one favor that we humbly solicit thee to grant us.[35]—Hearing these words of theirs, the regenerate Rishi answered them, saying,—Ye sons, tell me what that boon is which ye wish I should grant you![36]—Hearing this answer of their preceptor, the disciples became filled with joy. Once more bowing their heads low unto their preceptor and joining their hands,[37] all of them in one voice said, O king, these excellent words:—If our preceptor has been pleased with us, then, O best of sages, we are sure to be crowned with success![38] We all solicit thee, O great Rishi, to grant us a boon. Be thou inclined to be graceful to us. Let no sixth disciple (besides us five) succeed in attaining to fame![39] We are four. Our preceptor's son forms the fifth. Let the Vedas shine in only us five! Even this is the boon that we solicit![40]—Hearing these words of his disciples, Vyāsa, the son of Parāçara, possessed of great intelligence, well conversant with the meanings of the Vedas, endued with a righteous soul, and always engaged in thinking of objects that confer benefits on a person in the world hereafter, said unto his disciples these righteous words fraught with great benefit:—The Vedas should always be given unto him who is a Brāhmana, or unto him who is desirous of listening to Vedic instructions, by him who eagerly wishes to attain to a residence in the region of Brahman![41-42] Do ye multiply. Let the Vedas spread (through your exertions). The Vedas should never be imparted unto one that has not formally become a disciple. Nor should they be given unto one who is not observant of good vows. Nor should they be given for dwelling in one that is of uncleansed soul.[43] These should be known as the proper qualifications of persons that can be accepted as disciples (for the communication of Vedic

knowledge). No science should be imparted unto one without a proper examination of one's character.[44] As pure gold is tested by heat, cutting, and rubbing, after the same manner disciples should be tested by their birth and accomplishments.[45] Ye should never set your disciples to tasks to which they should not be set, or to tasks that are fraught with danger. One's knowledge is always commensurate with one's understanding and diligence in study.[46] Let all disciples conquer all difficulties, and let all of them meet with auspicious success. Ye are competent to lecture on the scriptures unto persons of all the orders. Only ye should, while lecturing, address a Brāhmana, placing him in the van.[47] These are the rules in respect of the study of the Vedas. This again is regarded as a high task. The Vedas were created by the Self-born for the purpose of praising the deities therewith.[48] That man who, through stupefaction of intellect, speaks ill of a Brāhmana well-conversant with the Vedas, is certain to meet with humiliation in consequence of such evil-speaking.[49] He who, disregarding all righteous rules, solicits knowledge, and he who, disregarding the rules of righteousness, communicates knowledge, either of them falls off and instead of that affection which should prevail between preceptor and disciple, such questioning and such communication are sure to produce distrust and suspicion.[50] I have now told ye everything about the way in which the Vedas should be studied and taught. Ye should act in this way towards your disciples, bearing these instructions in your minds !—' "[51]

Section CCCXXIX.

"Bhishma said,—'Hearing these words of their preceptor, Vyāsa's disciples endued with great energy, became filled with joy and embraced one another.[1] Addressing one another, they said,—That which has been said by our illustrious preceptor in view of our future good, will live in our remembrance and we shall certainly act according to it.[2]—Having said this unto one another with joyful hearts, the

disciples of Vyāsa, who were thorough masters of words, once more addressed their preceptor and said,[3]—If it pleases thee, O puissant one, we wish to descend from this mountain to the Earth, O great ascetic, for the purpose of subdividing the Vedas![4]—Hearing these words of his disciples, the puissant son of Parāçara replied unto them in these beneficial words that were fraught, besides, with righteousness and profit,[5]—You may repair to the Earth or to the regions of the celestials as ye like. You should always be heedful, for the Vedas are such that they are always liable to be misunderstood![*6]—Permitted by their preceptor of truthful speech, the disciples left him after circumambulating him and bowing their heads unto him.[7] Descending upon the Earth they performed the Agnishtoma and other sacrifices; and they began to officiate at the sacrifices of Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas.[8] Happily passing their days in the domestic mode of life, they were treated by the Brāhmanas with great respect. Possessed of great fame and prosperity, they were employed in teaching and officiating in sacrifices.[9] After his disciples had gone away, Vyāsa remained in his asylum, with only his son in his company. Passing his days in anxious thoughtfulness, the great Rishi, possessed of wisdom, kept silent, sitting in a retired corner of the asylum.[10] At that time Nārada of great ascetic merit came to that spot for seeing Vyāsa, and addressing him, said these words of melodious sound.[11]

"'Nārada said,—O regenerate Rishi of Vaçishtha's race, why are Vedic sounds silent now? Why art thou sitting silent and alone, engaged in meditation like one taken up with an engrossing thought?[12] Alas, shorn of Vedic echoes, this mountain hath lost its beauty, even as the Moon shorn of splendour when assailed by Rāhu or enveloped in dust.†[13]

---

* The sense is that if the Vedas are not constantly studied, they are likely to be forgotten.—T.

† 'Upaplava' is Rāhu or the ascending node. In many parts of upper India, during the hot months in particular, large quantities of dust are raised by whirlwinds in the afternoon or at evening. Called *Andi*, the clouds of dust cover the moon for hours together.—T.

Though inhabited by the celestial Rishis, yet shorn of Vedic sounds, the mountain no longer looks beautiful now but resembles a hamlet of Nishādas.*[14] The Rishis, the deities, and the Gandharvas, too, no longer shine as before in consequence of being deprived of Vedic sound![15]—Hearing these words of Nārada, the Island-born Krishna answered, saying,—O great Rishi, O thou that art conversant with the declarations of the Vedas, all that thou hast said is agreeable to me and it truly behooves thee to say it unto me! Thou art omniscient. Thou hast seen everything. Thy curiosity also embraces all things within its sphere.[16-17] All that has ever occurred in the three worlds is well known to thee. Do thou then, O regenerate Rishi, set thy commands on me. O, tell me what I am to do![18] Tell me, O regenerate Rishi, what should now be done by me. Separated from my disciples, my mind has become very cheerless now.[19]

"'Nārada said,—The stain of the Vedas is the suspension of their recitation. The stain of the Brāhmanas is their non-observance of vows. The Vāhika race is the stain of the Earth. Curiosity is the stain of women.[20] Do thou with thy intelligent son recite the Vedas, and do thou with the echoes of Vedic sounds dispel the fears arising from Rākshasas!—'[21]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of Nārada, Vyāsa, the foremost of all persons conversant with duties and firmly devoted to Vedic recitation, became filled with joy and answered Nārada, saying,—So be it.[22]—With his son Cuka, he set himself to recite the Vedas in a loud sonorous voice, observing all the rules of orthoepy and, as it were, filling the three worlds with that sound.[23] One day as sire and son, who were well conversant with all duties, were engaged in reciting the Vedas, a violent wind arose that seemed to be impelled by the gales that blow on the bosom of the ocean.[24] Understanding from this circumstance that the hour was not suited to sacred recitation, Vyāsa

---

* The lowest order of men, living by slaying animals.—T.

immediately bade his son to suspend the recitation. Cuka, thus forbidden by his sire, became filled with curiosity.[25] He asked his sire, saying,—O regenerate one, whence is this wind? It behooveth thee to tell me everything about the conduct of the Wind.[26]—Hearing this question of Cuka, Vyāsa became filled with amazement. He answered Cuka by telling him that that was an omen which indicated that the recitation of the Vedas should be suspended.[27]—Thou hast obtained spiritual vision. Thy mind too has, of itself, become cleansed of every impurity. Thou hast been freed from the attributes of Passion and Darkness. Thou stayest now in the attribute of Goodness.[28] Thou beholdest now thy Soul with thy Soul even as one beholds one's own shadow in a mirror. Staying thyself on thy own Soul, do thou reflect on the Vedas.[29] The path of the Supreme Soul is called Deva-yāna (the path of the gods). The path that is made up of the attribute of Tamas is called Pitri-yāna (the path of Pitris). These are the two paths in the world hereafter. By one, people go to heaven. By the other people go to hell.[30] The winds blow, on the Earth's surface and in the welkin. There are seven courses in which they blow. Listen to me as I recount them one after another.[31] The body is furnished with the senses. The senses are dominated over by the Sādhyas and many great beings of mighty strength. These gave birth to an invincible son named Samāna.[32] From Samāna sprang a son called Udāna. From Udāna sprang Vyāna. From Vyāna arose Apāna, and lastly from Apāna sprang the wind called Prāna.[33] That invincible scorcher of all foes, *viz.*, Prāna, became childless. I shall now recite to thee the different functions of those winds.[34] The wind is the cause of the different functions of all living creatures, and because living creatures are enabled to live by it, therefore is the wind called Prāna (or life).[35] That wind which is the first in the above enumeration and which is known by the name of Pravaha (Samāna) urges, along the first course, masses of clouds born of smoke and heat. Coursing through the welkin, and coming into contact with the water contained in the clouds, that wind displays itself in effulgence

among the darts of lightening.*[36] The second wind, called Āvaha blows with a loud noise. It is this wind that causes Soma and the other luminaries to rise and appear. Within the body (which is a microcosm of the universe) that wind is called Udāna by the wise.[37] That wind which sucks up water from the four oceans, and having sucked it up imparts it to the clouds in the welkin, and which, having imparted it to the clouds presents them to the deity of rain, is third in the enumeration and known by the name of Udvaha.[38-39] That wind which supports the clouds and divides them into diverse portions, which melts them for pouring rain and once more solidifies them, which is perceived as the sound of the roaring clouds, which exists for the preservation of the world by itself assuming the form of the clouds, which bears the cars of all celestial beings along the sky, is known by the name of Samvaha. The fourth in the enumeration, it is endued with great strength so that it is capable of rending the very mountains.[40-41] The fifth wind is fraught with great force and speed. It is dry and uproots and breaks down all trees. Existing with it, the clouds come to be called by the name of Valāhaka.[42] That wind causes calamitous phenomena of many kinds, and produces roaring sounds in the firmament. It is known by the name of Vivaha.[43-44] The sixth wind bears all celestial waters in the firmament and prevents them from falling down. Sustaining the sacred waters of the celestial Gangā, that wind blows, preventing them from having a downward course.[45] Obstructed by that wind from a distance, the Sun, which is really the source of a thousand rays, and which enlightens the world, appears as a luminous body of but one ray.[46] Through the action of that wind, the Moon, after waning, wanes again till he displays his full disc. That wind is known, O foremost of ascetics, by the name of

---

* This Verse, in the Bengal texts, is a triplet. In the Bombay edition, the third line is excluded from Verse 36. There is no inconvenience in this; only, it should be construed as referring to the wind called Samāna or *Pravaha.*—T.

Parivaha.*[47] That wind which takes away the life of all living creatures when the proper hour comes, whose track is followed by Death and Surya's son Yama,[48] which becomes the source of that immortality which is attained by Yogins of subtile sight who are always engaged in Yoga-meditation,[49] by whose aid the thousands of grandsons of Daksha, that lord of creatures, by his ten sons, succeeded in days of old in attaining to the ends of the universe, whose touch enables one to attain to Emancipation by freeing oneself from the obligation of returning to the world,—that wind is called by the name of Parāvaha. The foremost of all winds, it is incapable of being resisted by anybody.[50-51] Wonderful are these winds all of whom are the sons of Diti. Capable of going everywhere and upholding all things, they blow all around thee without being attached to thee at any time.[52] This, however, is exceedingly wonderful, *viz.*, that this foremost of mountains should thus be suddenly shaken by that wind which has begun to blow.[53] This wind is the breath of Vishnu's nostrils. When urged forth with speed, it begins to blow with great force at which the whole universe becomes agitated.[54] Hence, when the wind begins to blow with violence, persons, conversant with the Vedas do not recite the Vedas. The Vedas are a form of wind. If uttered with force, the external wind becomes tortured.'—'[55]

"Having said these words, the puissant son of Parāçara bade his son (when the wind had ceased) to go on with his Vedic recitation. He then left that spot for plunging into the waters of the celestial Gangā.' "†[56]

---

* Some texts read 'Jayatāmvarah.' If this be accepted, it would be an adjective of Parivaha, meaning the foremost of all in strength or energy.—T.

† The sacred river Gangā has, it is said, three courses or streams. One flows on the surface of the Earth; the second flows through the nether regions; and the third flows through heaven.—T.

Section CCCXXX.

"Bhishma said,—'After Vyāsa had left the spot, Nārada, traversing through the sky, came to Cuka employed in studying the scriptures. The celestial Rishi came for the object of asking Cuka the meaning of certain portions of the Vedas.[1] Beholding the celestial Rishi Nārada arrived at his retreat, Cuka worshipped him by offering him the Arghya according to the rites laid down in the Vedas.[2] Pleased with the honors bestowed upon him, Nārada addressed Cuka, saying,—Tell me, O foremost of righteous persons, by what means, O dear child, may I accomplish what is for thy highest good ![3]—Hearing these words of Nārada, Cuka said unto him, O Bhārata, these words:—It behooveth thee to instruct me in respect of that which may be beneficial to me !—[4]

"'Nārada said,—In days of yore the illutrious Sanatkumāra had said these words unto certain Rishis of cleansed souls that had repaired to him for enquiring after the truth.[5] There is no eye like that of knowledge. There is no penance like the practice of truth. There is no sorrow like attachment. There is no happiness like renunciation.[6] Abstention from sinful acts, steady practice of righteousness, good conduct, the due observance of all religious duties,—these constitute the highest good.[7] Having obtained the status of humanity which is fraught with sorrow, he that becomes attached to it, becomes stupified: such a man never succeeds in emancipating himself from sorrow. Attachment (to things of the world) is an indication of sorrow.[8] The understanding of a person that is attached to worldly things becomes more and more enmeshed in the net of stupifaction. The man who becomes enmeshed in the net of stupifaction attains to sorrow both here and hereafter.[9] One should, by every means in one's power, restrain both desire and wrath if one seeks to achieve what is for one's good. Those two, (*viz.*, desire and wrath) arise for only destroying one's good.*[10] One should always protect one's penances from wrath, and

* The first line runs into the second.—T.

one's prosperity from pride. One should always protect one's knowledge from honor and dishonor, and one's soul from error.*[11] Compassion is the highest virtue. Forgiveness is the highest might. The knowledge of self is the highest knowledge. There is nothing higher than truth.[12] It is always proper to speak the truth. It is better again to speak what is beneficial than to speak what is true. I hold that that is truth which is fraught with the greatest benefit to all creatures.†[13] That man is said to be truly learned and truly possessed of wisdom who abandons every act, who never indulges in hope, who is completely dissociated from all worldly surroundings, and who has renounced everything that appertains to the world.[14] That person who, without being attached thereto, enjoys all objects of sense with the aid of senses that are completely under his control, who is possessed of a tranquil soul, who is never moved by joy or sorrow, who is engaged in Yoga-meditation,[15] who lives in campanionship with the deities presiding over his senses and

* Penances should be protected from wrath. By penances one attains to great power. The ascetic's puissance frequently equals that of Brahman himself. If, however, the ascetic indulges in wrath and curses one from wrath, his puissance becomes diminished. For this reason, forgiveness is said to be the highest virtue a Brāhmana can practise. A Brāhmana's might lay in forgiveness. Knowledge also should be protected from honor and dishonor, *i. e.*, one should never *receive* honor for his knowledge, that is, do anything for the object of achieving honor. Similarly, one should never do anything which may have the effect of dishonoring one's knowledge. These are some of the highest duties preached in the scriptures.—T.

† The saying 'Satyādapi hitam vadet' is frequently misunderstood. The scriptures do not say that truth should be sacrified in view of what is beneficial, for such a view will militate with the saying that there is nothing higher than truth. The saying has referrence to those exceptional instances where truth becomes a source of positive harm. The story of the Rishi who spoke the truth respecting the place where certain travellers lay concealed, when questioned by certain robbers who were for killing the travellers, is an instance to the point. The goldsmith's son who died with a falsehood on his lips for allowing his lawful prince to escape from the hands of his pursuers did a meritorious act of loyalty. Then, again, the germ of the utilitarian theory may be detected in the second line of this Verse.—T.

dissociated also from them, and who, though endued with a body, never regards himself as identifiable with it, becomes emancipated and very soon attains to that which is his highest good.[16] One who never sees others, never touches others, never talks with others, soon, O ascetic, attains to what is for one's highest good.[17] One should not injure any creature. On the other hand, one should conduct oneself in perfect friendliness towards all. Having obtained the status of humanity, one should never behave inimically towards any being.[18] A complete disregard for all (worldly) things, perfect contentment, abandonment of hope of every kind, and patience,—these constitute the highest good of one that has subjugated one's senses and acquired a knowledge of self.[19] Casting off all attachments, O child, do thou subjugate all thy senses, and by that means attain to felicity both here and hereafter.[20] They that are free from cupidity have never to suffer any sorrow. One should, therefore, cast off all cupidity from one's soul. By casting off cupidity, O amiable and blessed one, thou shalt be able to free thyself from sorrow and pain.[21] One who wishes to conquer that which is unconquerable should live devoting oneself to penances, to self-restraint, to taciturnity, to a subjugation of the soul. Such a person should live in the midst of attachments without being attached to them.*[22] That Brāhmana who lives in the midst of attachments without being attached to them and who always lives in seclusion, very soon attains to the highest felicity.[23] That man who lives in happiness by himself in the midst of creatures who are seen to take delight in leading lives of sexual union, should be known to be a person whose thirst has been slaked by knowledge. It is well known that that man whose thirst has been slaked by knowledge has never to indulge in grief.[24] One attains to the status of the deities by means of good acts; to the status of humanity by means of acts that are good and bad; while by acts that are purely wicked, one helplessly falls down among the lower animals.[25] Always assailed by sorrow and

---

* 'To conquer the unconquerable' means to attain to Brahma.—T.

decrepitude and death, a living creature is being cooked in this world (in the cauldron of Time). Dost thou not know it?[26] Thou frequently regardest that to be beneficial which is really injurious; that to be certain which is really uncertain; and that to be desirable and good which is undesirable and not good. Alas, why dost thou not awake to a correct apprehension of these?[27] Like a silkworm that ensconces itself in its own cocoon, thou art continually ensconcing thyself in a cocoon made of thy own innumerable acts born of stupifaction and error. Alas, why dost thou not awake to a correct apprehension of thy situation?[28] No need of attaching thyself to things of this world. Attachment to worldly objects is productive of evil. The silk-worm that weaves a cocoon round itself is at last destroyed by its own act.[29] Those persons that become attached to sons and spouses and relatives meet with destruction at last, even as wild elephants sunk in the mire of a lake are gradually weakened till overtaken by Death.[30] Behold, all creatures that suffer themselves to be dragged by the net of affection become subject to great grief even as fishes on land, dragged thereto by means of large nets![31] Relatives, sons, spouses, the body itself, and all one's possessions stored with care, are unsubstantial and prove of no service in the next world. Only acts, good and bad, that one does, follow one to the other world.[32] When it is certain that thou shalt have to go helplessly to the other world, leaving behind thee all these things, alas, why dost thou then suffer thyself to be attached to such unsubstantial things of no value, without attending to that which constitutes thy real and durable wealth?[33] The path which thou shalt have to travel through is without resting places of any kind (in which to take rest). There is no support along that way which one may catch for upholding oneself. The country through which it passes is unknown and undiscovered. It is, again, enveloped in thick darkness. Alas, how shalt thou proceed along that way without equipping thyself with the necessary expenses?[34] When thou shalt go along that road, nobody will follow thee behind. Only thy acts, good and bad, will follow behind thee

when thou shalt depart from this world for the next.[35] One seeks one's object of objects by means of learning, acts, purity (both external and internal), and great knowledge. When that foremost of objects is attained, one becomes freed (from rebirth).[36] The desire that one feels for living in the midst of human habitations is like a binding cord. They that are of good acts succeed in tearing that bond and freeing themselves. Only men of wicked deeds do not succeed in breaking them.[37] The river of life (or the world) is terrible. Personal beauty or form constitutes its banks. The mind is the speed of its current. Touch forms its island. Taste constitutes its current. Scent is its mire. Sound is its waters. That particular part of it which leads towards heaven is attended with great difficulties. Body is the boat by which one must cross that river. Forgiveness is the oar by which it is to be propelled. Truth is the ballast that is to steady that boat. The practice of righteousness is the string that is to be attached to the mast for dragging that boat along difficult waters. Charity or gift constitutes the wind that urges the sails of that boat. Endued with swift speed, it is with that boat that one must cross the river of life.[38-39] Cast off both virtue and vice, and truth and falsehood. Having cast off truth and falsehood, do thou cast off that by which these are to be cast off.[40] By casting off all purpose, do thou cast off virtue; do thou cast off sin also by casting off all desire. With the aid of the understanding, do thou cast off truth and falsehood; and, at last, do thou cast off the understanding itself by knowledge of the highest topic (*viz.*, the Supreme Soul).[41] Do thou cast off this body having bones for its pillars; sinews for its binding strings and cords; flesh and blood for its outer plaster; the skin for its outer case; full of urine and fæces and, therefore, emitting a foul smell; exposed to the assaults of decrepitude and sorrow; forming the seat of disease and weakened by pain; possessed of the attribute of Rajas in predominance; not permanent or durable, and which serves as the (temporary) habitation of the indwelling creature.[42-43] This entire universe of matter, and that which is

called Mahat or Buddhi, are made up of the (five) great elements. That which is called Mahat is due to the action of the Supreme.[44] The five senses, the three attributes of Tamas, Sattwa, and Rajas,—these (together with those which have been mentioned before) constitute a tale of seventeen.[45] These seventeen, which are known by the name of the Unmanifest, with all those that are called Manifest, *viz.*, the five objects of the five senses, (that is to say, form, taste, sound, touch, and scent), with Consciousness and the Understanding, form the well-known tale of four and twenty.[46] When endued with those four and twenty possessions, one comes to be called by the name of Jiva (or Pumān).[47] He who knows the aggregate of three (*viz.*, Religion, Wealth, and Pleasure), as also happiness and sorrow and life and death, truly and in all their details, is said to know growth and decay. Whatever objects exist of knowledge, should be known gradually, one after another.[48] All objects that are apprehended by the senses are called Manifest. Whatever objects transcend the senses and are apprehended by means only of their indications are said to be Unmanifest.[49] By restraining the senses, one wins great gratification, even like a thirsty and parched traveller at a delicious shower of rain. Having subjugated the senses one beholds one's soul spread out for embracing all objects, and all objects in one's soul.[50] Having its root in knowledge, the puissance is never lost of the man who (thus) beholds the Supreme in his soul,—of the man, that is to say, who always beholds all creatures in all conditions (in his own soul).*[51] He who, by the aid of knowledge, transcends all kinds of pain born of error and stupefaction, never catches any evil by coming into contact with all creatures.†[52] Such a man, his understanding being

---

* In the Crutis, 'Parāvara' is an equivalent for the Supreme Soul. The correct reading is 'naçyati' at the end of the first line, and not 'paçyati' as in some of the Bengal texts. Adhering to 'paçyati' (which ives no meaning), the Burdwan translator gives a ridiculous and unmeaning version of this Verse. K. P. Singha, of course, adopts the correct reading.—T.

† This Verse is not at all difficult. The sense is that the man who

fully displayed, never finds fault with the course of conduct that prevails in the world. One conversant with Emancipation says that the Supreme Soul is without beginning and without end; that it takes birth as all creatures; that it resides (as a witness) in the Jiva-soul; that it is inactive, and without form. Only that man who meets with grief in consequence of his own misdeeds,[53-54] slays numerous creatures for the purpose of warding off that grief.* In consequence of such sacrifices, the performers have to attain to rebirths and have necessarily to perform innumerable acts on every side.[55] Such a man, blinded by error, and regarding that to be felicity which is really a source of grief, is continually rendered unhappy even like a sick person that eats food that is improper.[56] Such a man is pressed and grinded by his acts like any substance that is churned. Bound by his acts, he obtains rebirth, the order of his life being determined by the nature of his acts.[57] Suffering many kinds of torture, he travels in a repeated round of rebirths even like a wheel that turns ceaselessly. Thou, however, hast cut through all thy bonds. Thou abstainest from all acts![58] Possessed of omniscience and the master of all things, let success be thine, and do thou become freed from all existent objects. Through subjugation of their senses and the power of their penances, many persons (in days of yore), having destroyed the bonds of action, attained to high success and uninterrupted felicity.—' "[59]

---

transcends all attachments never comes to grief if brought into union with other creatures. The Burdwan translator gives a thoroughly unmeaning version of this couplet.—T.

* The object of this Verse is to show that men of knowledge do not perform sacrifices, in which, as a matter of course, a large number of creatures is slain. Men wedded to the religion of Pravritti perform sacrifices. Coming into the world in consequence of past acts, they seek happiness (by repairing to heaven) along the way of sacrifice and religious rites. A large number of creatures is slain, for besides the victims ostensibly offered, a infinite number of smaller and minuter creatures is killed in the sacrificial fires and in course of the other preparations that are made in sacrifices.—T.

Section CCCXXXI.

" 'Nārada said,—By listening to such scriptures as are blessed, as bring about tranquillity, as dispel grief, and as are productive of happiness, one attains to (a pure) understanding, and having attained to it obtains to high felicity.[1] A thousand causes of sorrow, a hundred causes of fear, from day to day, afflict one that is destitute of understanding but not one that is possessed of wisdom and learning.[2] Do thou, therefore, listen to some old narratives as I recite them to you, for the object of dispelling thy griefs. If one can subjugate one's understanding, one is sure to attain to happiness.[3] By accession of what is undesirable and dissociation from what is agreeable, only men of little intelligence become subject to mental sorrow of every kind.[4] When things have become past, one should not grieve, thinking of their merits. He that thinks of such past things with affection can never emancipate himself.[5] One should always seek to find out the faults of those things to which one begins to become attached. One should always regard such things to be fraught with much evil. By doing so, one should soon free oneself therefrom.[6] The man who grieves for what is past fails to acquire either wealth or religious merit or fame. That which exists no longer cannot be obtained. When such things pass away, they do not return (however keen the regret one may indulge in for their sake).[7] Creatures sometimes acquire and sometimes lose worldly objects. No man in this world can be grieved by all the events that fall upon him.[8] Dead or lost, he who grieves for what is past, only gets sorrow for sorrow. Instead of one sorrow, he gets two.*[9] Those men who, beholding the course of life and death in the world with the aid of their intelligence, do not shed tears, are said to behold properly. Such persons have never to shed tears (at anything that may happen).[10] When any such calamity comes, productive of either physical or mental

---

* Sorrow increases by indulgence.—T

grief, as is incapable of being warded off by even one's best efforts, one should cease to reflect on it with sorrow.[11] This is the medicine for sorrow, *viz.*, not to think of it. By thinking of it, one can never dispel it; on the other hand, by thinking upon sorrow, one only enhances it.[12] Mental griefs should be killed by wisdom; while physical grief should be dispelled by medicines. This is the power of knowledge. One should not, in such matters, behave like men of little understandings.[13] Youth, beauty, life, stored wealth, health, association with those that are loved,—these all are exceedingly transitory. One possessed of wisdom should never covet them.[14] One should not lament individually for a sorrowful occurrence that concerns an entire community. Instead of indulgence in it when grief comes, one should seek to avert it and apply a remedy as soon as one sees the opportunity for doing it.[15] There is no doubt that in this life the measure of misery is much greater than that of happiness. There is no doubt in this that all men show attachment for objects of the senses and that death is regarded as disagreeable.[16] That man who casts off both joy and sorrow, is said to attain to Brahma. When such a man departs from this world, men of wisdom never indulge in any sorrow on his account.[17] In spending wealth there is pain. In protecting it there is pain. In acquiring it there is pain. Hence, when one's wealth meets with destruction, one should not indulge in any sorrow for it.[18] Men of little understandings, attaining to different grades of wealth, fail to win contentment and at last perish in misery. Men of wisdom, however, are always contented.[19] All combinations are destined to end in dissolution. All things that are high are destined to fall down and become low. Union is sure to end in disunion, and life is certain to end in death.[20] Thirst is unquenchable. Contentment is the highest happiness. Hence, persons of wisdom regard contentment to be the most precious wealth.[21] One's allotted period of life is running continually. It stops not in its course for even a single moment. When one's body itself is not durable, what other thing is there (in this world) that one should reckon as durable?[22] Those persons

who, reflecting on the nature of all creatures and concluding that it is beyond the grasp of the mind, turn their attention to the highest path, and, setting out, achieve a fair progress in it, have not to indulge in sorrow.*[23] Like a tiger seizing and running away with its prey, Death seizes and runs away with the man that is employed in such (unprofitable) occupation and that is still unsated with objects of desire and enjoyment.[24] One should always seek to emancipate oneself from sorrow. One should seek to dispel sorrow by beginning one's operations with cheerfulness, that is, without indulging in sorrow the while, having freed oneself from a particular sorrow, one should act in such a way as to keep sorrow at a distance by abstaining from all faults of conduct.†[25] The rich and the poor alike find nothing in sound and touch and form and scent and taste, after the immediate enjoyment thereof.‡[26] Before union, creatures are never subject to sorrow. Hence, one that has not fallen off from one's original nature, never indulges in sorrow when that union comes to an end.$[27] One should restrain one's sexual appetite and the

---

* This is a very doubtful Verse. The Commentator is silent. I follow the meaning as it lies on the surface. The object of the Verse seems to be this: there are men that are employed in reflecting upon the nature of things; these should know that such occupation is useless, for truly the nature of things is beyond the grasp of the mind. The greatest philosopher is ignorant of all the virtues of a blade of grass, the purpose for which it exists, the changes that it undergoes every instant of time and from day to day. Those men, however, who leave such unprofitable occupation for walking along the highest path (the path, that is, which leads to Brahma) free themselves from grief.—T.

† I am not sure that I have understood this Verse correctly.—T.

‡ What is intended to be said is that the gratification of the senses leaves nothing behind. The pleasure lasts as long as the contact continues of the objects with the senses. The Burdwan translator, not suspecting that the word used is 'adhana,' gives a ridiculus version.—T.

$ What is said here is this: a man has spouses and children, or wealth, &c.: there was no sorrow when these were not: with his union with these his sorrow commences. Hence, when these things disappear, an intelligent man should not indulge in any sorrow. Bonds or attachments are always productive of grief. When bonds are severed or destroyed, there ought to be no grief.—T.

stomach with the aid of patience. One should protect one's hands and feet with the aid of the eye. One's eyes and ears and the other senses should be protected by the mind. One's mind and speech should be ruled with the aid of wisdom.[28] Casting off love and affection for persons that are known as well as for those that are unknown, one should conduct oneself with humility. Such a person is said to be possessed of wisdom, and such a one surely finds happiness.[29] That man who is pleased with his own Soul,* who is devoted to Yoga, who depends upon nothing out of self, who is without cupidity, and who conducts himself without the assistance of anything but his self, succeeds in attaining to felicity.—' "[30]

Section CCCXXXII.

" 'Nārada said,—When the vicissitudes of happiness and sorrow appear or disappear, the transitions are incapable of being prevented by either wisdom or policy or exertion.[1] Without allowing oneself to fall away from one's true nature, one should strive one's best for protecting one's own Self. He who betakes himself to such care and exertion, has never to languish. Regarding Self as something dear, one should always seek to rescue oneself from decrepitude, death, and disease.[2] Mental and physical diseases afflict the body, like keen-pointed shafts shot from the bow by a strong bowman.[3] The body of a person that is tortured by thirst, that is agitated by agony, that is perfectly helpless, and that is desirous of prolonging his life, is dragged towards destruction.†[4] Days and nights are ceaselessly running, bearing away in their current the periods of life of all human beings. Like currents of rivers, these flow ceaselessly without ever turning back.‡[5] The ceaseless succes-

---

* *I. e.*, whose pleasures do not depend upon external objects such as spouses and children, &c.—T.

† 'Vidhitsābhih' is 'pipāsābhih.' It comes from 'dhe' meaning 'drinking.'—T.

‡ Vyāsa lived in northern India and was evidently unacquainted with the tides that appear in the Bengal rivers.—T.

sion of the lighted and the dark fortnights is wasting all mortal creatures without stopping for even a moment in this work.[6] Rising and setting day after day, the Sun, who is himself undecaying, is continually cooking the joys and sorrows of all men.[7] The nights are ceaselessly going away, taking with them the good and bad incidents that befall man, that depend on destiny, and that are unexpected by him.[8] If the fruits of man's acts were not dependent on other circumstances, then one would obtain whatever object one would desire.[9] Even men of restrained senses, of cleverness, and of intelligence, if destitute of acts, never succeed in earning any fruits.*[10] Others, though destitute of intelligence and unendued with accomplishments of any kind, and who are really the lowest of men, are seen, even when they do not long after success, to be crowned with the fruition of all their desires.†[11] Some one else, who is always ready to do acts of injury to all creatures, and who is engaged in deceiving all the world, is seen to wallow in happiness.[12] Some one that sits idly, obtains great prosperity; while another, by exerting earnestly, is seen to miss desirable fruits almost within his reach.‡[13] Do thou ascribe it as one of the faults of man! The vital seed, originating in one's nature from sight of one person, goes to another person.[14] When imparted to the womb, it sometimes produces an embryo and sometimes fails. When sexual congress fails, it resembles a mango tree that puts forth a great many flowers without, however, producing a single fruit.$[15] As regards some men who are desirous of

---

* The object of this Verse is to show the utility and necessity of acts. Without acting, no one, however clever, can earn any fruit. Both the Vernacular translators give ridiculous versions of this plain aphorism.—T.

† 'Açi' is used in the sense of 'ākānkshā.'—T.

‡ 'Nāprāpyamadhigachchati' is 'na āprāyam &c.'—T.

$ I do not quite understand in what the fault lies that is referred to here. Perhaps the sense is this. In Hindu physiology, the vital seed is said to be generated by the sight of a desirable woman. When sexual congress takes place with one whose sight has not originated the vital seed but with another, it fails to be productive. Whoever ndulges in such intersourse is to blame.—T.

having offspring and who, for the fruition of their object, strive heartily (by worshipping diverse deities), they fail to procreate an embryo in the womb.[16] Some person again, who fears the birth of an embryo as one fears a snake of virulent poison, finds a long-lived son born unto him and who seems to be his own self come back to the stages through which he has passed.[17] Many persons with ardent longing for offspring and cheerless on that account, after sacrificing to many deities and undergoing severe austerities, at last beget children, duly borne for ten long months (in the wombs of their spouses), that prove to be veritable wretches of their race.[18] Others, who have been obtained through virtue of such blessed rites and observances, at once obtain wealth and grain and diverse other sources of enjoyment earned and stored by their sires.[19] In an act of congress, when two persons of opposite sexes come into contact with one another, the embryo takes birth in the womb, like a calamity afflicting the mother.[20] Very soon after the suspension of the vital breaths, other physical forms possess that embodied creature whose gross body has been destroyed but whose acts have all been performed with that gross body made of flesh and phlegm.*[21] Upon the dissolution of the body, another body, which is as much destructible as the one that is destroyed, is kept ready for the burnt and destroyed creature (to migrate into) even as one boat goes to another for transferring to itself the passengers of the other.†[22] In

---

* 'Paraçarirāni' has 'prāpnuvanti' understood after it. 'Cchinnavijam' means 'whose seed has been broken,' that is, the creature whose gross body has met with destruction. The gross body is called the 'vijam' or seed of (heaven and hell). The sense of the Verse is that every one, after death, attains to a new body. A creature can never exist without the bonds of body being attached to him. Of course, the case is otherwise with persons who succeed in achieving their Emancipation by the destruction of all acts. The Burdwan translator, following the Commentator faithfully, renders this Verse correctly. K. P. Singha skips over it entirely.—T.

† This is not a difficult Verse. Then, again, the Commentator explains it carefully. K. P. Singha gives a ridiculous version. The Burdwan translator is correct. 'Nirddagdham' and 'vinaçyantam'

consequence of an act of congress, a drop of the vital seed, that is inanimate, is cast into the womb. I ask thee, through whose or what care is the embryo kept alive?[23] That part of the body into which the food that is eaten goes and where it is digested, is the place where the embryo resides, but it is not digested there.[24] In the womb, amid urine and fæces, one's sojourn is regulated by Nature. In the matter of residence therein or escape therefrom, the born creature is not a free agent. In fact, in these respects, he is perfectly helpless.[25] Some embroyos fall from the womb (in an undeveloped state). Some come out alive (and continue to live). While as regards some, they meet with destruction in the womb, after being quickened with life, in consequence of some other bodies being ready for them (through the nature of their acts).*[26] That man who, in an act of sexual congress, injects the vital fluid, obtains from it a son or daughter. The offspring thus obtained, when the time comes, takes part in a similar act of congress.[27] When the allotted period of a person's life is at its close, the five primal elements of his body attain to the seventh and the ninth stages and then cease to be. The person, however, undergoes no change.†[28] Without doubt, when persons are afflicted by diseases as little animals assailed by hunters,

---

imply the dying or dead Jiva' 'Paradeham chalāchalam āhitām *bhavati*' means 'another body, as much subject to destruction, is kept ready".—T.

* I expand this Verse a little for bringing out its meaning. What is said here is that some come out of the womb alive; some die there before being quickened with life: and some die there after being quickened with life, the reason being that their acts of past lives bring for them other bodies even at that stage.—T.

† This Verse is certainly a *crux*. The Commentator, I think, displays considerable ingenuity in explaining it. The order of the words is 'Gatāyushah tasya sahajātasya pancha saptamim navamim daçām prāpnuvanti; tatah na bhavanti; sa na.' The ten stages of a person's life are (1) residence within the womb, (2) birth, (3) infancy, up to 5 years, (4) childhood, up to 12 years, (5) *Pauganda*, up to 16 years, (6) youth, up to 48 years, (7) old age, (8) decrepitude, (9) suspension of breath, (10) destruction of body.—T.

they then lose the power of rising up and moving about.[29] If when men are afflicted by diseases, they wish to spend even vast wealth, physicians with their best efforts fail to alleviate their pain.[30] Even physicians, that are well-skilled and well-up in their scriptures and well-equipt with excellent medicines, are themselves afflicted by disease like animals assailed by hunters.[31] Even if men drink many astringents and diverse kinds of medicated *ghee,* they are seen to be broken by decrepitude like trees by strong elephants.[32] When animals and birds and beasts of prey and poor men are afflicted by ailments, who treats them with medicines? Indeed, these are not seen to be ill.[33] Like larger animals assailing smaller ones, ailments are seen to afflict even terrible kings of fierce energy and invincible prowess.[34] All men, reft of the power of even uttering cries indicative of pain, and overwhelmed by error and grief, are seen to be borne away along the fierce current into which they have been thrown.[35] Embodied creatures, even when seeking to conquer nature, are unable to conquer it with the aid of wealth, of sovereign power, or of the austerest penances.*[36] If all attempts men make were crowned with success, then men would never die, would never be subject to decrepitude, would never come upon anything disagreeable, and lastly would be crowned with fruition in respect of all their wishes.[37] All men wish to attain to gradual superiority of position. To gratify this wish they strive to the best of their power. The result, however, does not agree with their wish.†[38] Even men that are perfectly heedful, that are honest, and brave and endued

---

* 'Niyuktāh' means employed. I take it to imply 'employed in the task of conquering Nature'. It may also mean, 'set to their usual, tasks by the influence of past acts'. Nature here means, of course the grand laws to which human existence is subject, *viz.*, the law of birth, of death, of disease and decrepitude, &c.—T.

† 'Uparyupari' implies gradual superiority. If one becomes wealthy, one desires to be a councillor; if a councillor, one wishes to the prime minister; and so on. The sense of the Verse is that man's desire to rise is unsatiable.—T.

with prowess, are seen to pay their adorations to men intoxicated with the pride of affluence and with even alcoholic stimulants.*[39] Some men are seen whose calamities disappear before even these are marked or noticed by them. Others there are who are seen to possess no wealth but who are free from misery of every kind.[40] A great disparity is observable in respect of the fruits that wait upon conjunctions of acts. Some are seen to bear vehicles on their shoulders, while some are seen to ride on those vehicles.[41] All men are desirous of affluence and prosperity. A few only have cars (and elephants and steeds) dragged (or walking) in their processions. Some there are that fail to have a single spouse when their first-wedded ones are dead; while others have hundreds of spouses to call their own.[42] Misery and happiness are the two things that exist side by side. Men have either misery or habpiness. Behold, this is a subject of wonder! Do not, however, suffer thyself to be stupefied by error at such a sight![43] Cast off both Righteousness and sin! Cast off also truth and falsehood! Having cast off both truth and falsehood, do thou then cast off that with whose aid thou shalt cast off the former![44] O best of Rishis, I have now told thee that which is a great mystery! With the aid of such instructions, the deities (who were all human beings) succeeded in leaving the Earth for becoming the denizens of heaven![45]—'

"'Hearing these words of Nārada, Cuka, endued with great intelligence and possessed of tranquillity of mind, reflected upon the drift of the instructions be received, but could not arrive at any certainty of conclusion.[46] He understood that one suffers great misery in consequence of the accession of children and spouses; that one has to undergo great labour for the acquisition of science and Vedic lore. He, therefore, asked himself, saying,—What is that situation which is eternal and which is free from misery of every kind but in which there is great prosperity?[47]—

* The reading I prefer is 'açathāh' and not 'çathāh'. If the latter reading be kept, it would mean, men of both descriptions are seen to pay court to the wicked.—T.

Reflecting for a moment upon the course ordained for him to run through, Cuka, who was well acquainted with the beginning and the end of all duties, resolved to attain to the highest end that is fraught with the greatest felicity.[43] He questioned himself, saying,—How shall I, tearing all attachments and becoming perfectly free, attain to that excellent end? How, indeed, shall I attain to that excellent situation whence there is no return into the ocean of diverse kinds of birth![49] I desire to obtain that condition of existence whence there is no return! Casting off all kinds of attachments, arrived at certainty by reflection with the aid of the mind, I shall attain to that end![50] I shall attain to that situation in which thy Soul will have tranquillity, and when I shall be able to dwell for eternity without being subject to decrepitude or change.[51] It is, however, certain that that high end cannot be attained without the aid of Yoga. One that has attained to the state of perfect knowledge and enlightenment never receives an accession of low attachments through acts.*[52] I shall, therefore, have recourse to Yoga, and casting off this body which is my present residence, I shall transform myself into a wind and enter that mass of effulgence which is represented by the sin.†[53] When Jiva enters that mass of effulgence, he no longer suffers like Shoma who, with the gods, upon the exhaustion of merit, falls down on the Earth and having once more acquired sufficient merit returns to heaven.‡[54] The

* 'Avavandhah' is low attachments, implying those that appertain to the body. In fact, the acquisition of the body itself is such an attachment. What is said here is that that Jiva who has become enlightened becomes freed from the obligation of rebirth or contact with body once more.—T.

† The mass of effulgence constituting the Sun is nothing else than Brahma. Brahma is pure effulgence. 'Savitri-mandala-madhyavartir-Nārāyanah' does not mean a deity with a physical form in the midst of the solar effulgence but incorporeal and universal Brahma. That effulgence is adored in the Gāyatri.—T.

‡ The Commentator takes 'Shomah' to mean 'Shomagath Jivah'. He does not explain the rest of the Verse. The grammatical construction presents no difficulty. If, 'Shomah' be taken in the sense in

Moon is always seen to wane and once more wax. Seeing this waninig and waxing that go on repeatedly, I do not wish to have a form of existence in which there are such changes.[55] The Sun warms all the worlds by means of his fierce rays. His disc never undergoes any diminution. Remaining unchanged, he drinks energy from all things. Hence, I desire to go into the Sun of blazing effulgence.*[56] There I shall live, invincible by all, and in my inner soul freed from all fear, having cast off this body of mine in the solar region.[57] With the great Rishis I shall enter the unbearable energy of the Sun. I declare unto all creatures, unto these trees, these elephants, these mountains, the Earth herself, the several points of the compass, the welkin,[58] the deities, the Dānavas, the Gandharvas, the Piçāchas, the Uragas, and the Rākshasas, that I shall, verily, enter all creatures in the world.†[59] Let all the gods with the Rishis behold the prowess of my Yoga today!—Having said these words, Cuka, informed Nārada of world-wide celebrity of his intention.[60] Obtaining Nārada's permission, Cuka then proceeded to where his sire was. Arrived at his presence, the great Muni, *viz.*, the high-souled and Island-born Krishna, Cuka walked round him and addressed him the usual enquiries.[61] Hearing of Cuka's intention, the high-souled Rishi became highly pleased. Addressing him, the great Rishi said,—O son, O dear son, do thou stay here today so that I may behold thee for some time for gratifying

---

which the Commentator explains it, the meaning would be this. He who enters the solar effulgence has not to undergo any change, unlike 'Shomah' and the deities who have to undergo changes, for they fall down upon the exhaustion of their merits and re-ascend when they once more acquire merit. Both the vernacular translators have made a mess of the Verse. The fact is, there are two paths, 'archirādi-mārgah' and 'dhumādi-mārgah'. They who go by the former reach Brahma and have never to return. While they who go by the latter way, enjoy felicity for some time and then come back.—T.

* Here, the words Sun and Moon are indicative of the two different paths mentioned in the note immediately before.—T.

† What Cuka says here is that he would attain to universal Brahma and thus identify himself with all things.—T.

my eyes![62]—Cuka, however, was indifferent to that request Freed from affection and all doubt, he began to think only of Emancipation, and set his heart on the journey.[63] Leaving his sire, that foremost of Rishis then proceeded to the spacious breast of Kailāsa which was inhabited by crowds of ascetics crowned with success.' "[64]

Section CCCXXXIII.

"Bhishma said,—'Having ascended the summit of the mountain, O Bhārata, the son of Vyāsa sat down upon a level spot free from blades of grass and retired from the haunts of other creatures.[1] Agreeably to the direction of the scriptures and to the ordinances laid down, that ascetic, conversant with the gradual order of the successive processes of Yoga, held his soul first in one place and then in another, commencing from his feet and proceeding through all the limbs.[2] Then when the Sun had not risen long, Cuka sat, with his face turned Eastwards, and hands and feet drawn in, in an humble attitude.[3] In that spot where the intelligent son of Vyāsa sat prepared to address himself to Yoga, there were no flocks of birds, no sound, and no sight that was repulsive or terror-inspiring.[4] He then beheld his own Soul freed from all attachments. Beholding that highest of all things, he laughed in joy.*[5] He once more set himself to Yoga for attaining to the path of Emancipation. Becoming the great master of Yoga, he transcended the element of space.[6] He then circumambulated the celestial Rishi Nārada, and represented unto that foremost of Rishis the fact of his having addressed himself to the highest Yoga.[7]

" 'Cuka said,—I have succeeded in beholding the path (of Emancipation). I have addrest myself to it. Blessed be thou, O thou of wealth of penances! I shall, through thy grace, O thou of great splendour, attain to an end that is highly desirable!'—[8]

---

* 'Jahāsa hāsam' is an instance in Sanskirt of the cognate government of neuter verbs.—T.

"Bhishma said,—'Having received the permission of Nārada, Cuka the son of the Island-born Vyāsa saluted the celestial Rishi and once more set himself to Yoga and entered the element of space.[9] Ascending then from the breast of the Kailāsa mountain, he soared into the sky. Capable of traversing through the welkin, the blessed Cuka of fixed conclusion, then identified himself with the element of Wind.[10] As that foremost of regenerate ones, possessed of effulgence like that of Garuda, was traversing through the skies with the speed of the wind or thought, all creatures cast their eyes upon him.[11] Endued with the splendour of fire or the Sun, Cuka then regarded the three worlds in their entirety as one homogeneous Brahma, and proceeded along that path of great length.[12] Indeed, all creatures, mobile and immobile, cast their eyes upon him as he proceeded with concentrated attention, and a tranquil and fearless soul.[13] All creatures, agreeably to the ordinance and according to their power, worshipped him with reverence. The denizens of heaven rained showers of celestial flowers upon him.[14] Beholding him, all the tribes of Apsaras and Gandharvas became filled with wonder. The Rishis also, that were crowned with success, became equally amazed.[15] And they asked themselves,—Who is this one that has attained to success by his penances? With gaze withdrawn from his own body but turned upwards, he is filling us all with pleasure by his glances![16]—Of highly righteous soul and celebrated throughout the three worlds, Cuka proceeded in silence, his face turned towards the East and gaze directed towards the Sun. As he proceeded, he seemed to fill the entire welkin with an all-pervading noise.[17] Beholding him coming in that way, all the tribes of the Apsaras, struck with awe, O king, became filled with amazement.[18] Headed by Panchachudā and others, they looked at Cuka with eyes expanded by wonder. And they asked one another, saying,—What deity is this one that has attained to such a high end? Without doubt, he comes hither, freed from all attachments and emancipated from all desire![19] —Cuka then proceeded to the Malaya mountains where

Urvaçi and Purvachitti used to always dwell.[20] Both of them, beholding the energy of the son of the great regenerate Rishi, became filled with wonder. And they said,—Wonderful is this concentration of attention (to Yoga) of a regenerate youth who was accustomed to the recitation and study of the Vedas! Soon will he traverse the entire welkin like the Moon. It was by dutiful service and humble mininstrations towards his sire that he acquired this excellent understanding.[21-22] He is firmly attached to his sire, possessed of austere penances, and is very much loved by his sire. Alas, why has he been dismissed by his inattentive father to proceed (thus) along a way whence there is no return?[23]—Hearing these words of Urvaçi, and attending to their import, Cuka, that foremost of all persons conversant with duties, cast his eyes on all sides,[24] and once more beheld the entire welkin, the whole Earth with her mountains and waters and forests, and also all the lakes and rivers.[25] All the deities also, of both sexes, joining their hands, paid reverence to the son of the Island-born Rishi and gazed at him with wonder and respect.[26] That foremost of all righteous men, Cuka, addressing all of them, said these words,—If my sire follow me and repeatedly call after me by my name,[27] do all of you together return him an answer for me. Moved by the affection all of you bear for me, do you accomplish this request of mine![28]—Hearing these words of Cuka, all the points of the compass, all the forests, all the seas, all the rivers, and all the mountains, answered him from every side, saying,[29]—We accept thy command, O regenerate one! It shall be as thou sayest! It is in this way that we answer the words spoken by the Rishi!—' "[30]

Section CCCXXXIV.

"Bhishma said,—'Having spoken in this way (unto all things), the regenerate Rishi of austere penances, *viz.*, Cuka, stayed on his success, casting off the four kinds of faults.[1] Casting off also the eight kinds of Tamas, he dis-

missed the five kinds of Rajas. Endued with great intelligence, he then cast off the attribute of Sattwa. All this seemed exceedingly wonderful.[2] He then dwelt in that eternal station that is destitute of attributes, freed from every indication, that is, in *Brahma*, blazing like a smokeless fire.[3] Meteors began to shoot. The points of the compass seemed to be ablaze. The Earth trembled. All these phenomena seemed exceedingly wonderful.[4] The trees began to cast off their branches and the mountains their summits. Loud-reports (as of thunder) were heard that seemed to rive the Himavat mountains.[5] The Sun seemed at that moment to be shorn of splendour. Fire refused to blaze forth. The lakes and rivers and seas were all agitated.[6] Vāsava poured showers of rain of excellent taste and fragrance. A pure breeze began to blow, bearing excellent perfumes.[7] Cuka, as he proceeded through the welkin, beheld two beautiful summits, one belonging to Himavat and another to Meru. These were in close contact with each other. One of them was made of gold and was, therefore, yellow; the other was white, being made of silver.[8] Each of them, O Bhārata, was a hundred Yojanas in height and of the same measure in breadth. Indeed, as Cuka journeyed towards the north, he saw those two beautiful summits.[9] With a fearless heart he dashed against those two summits that were united with each other. Unable to bear the force, the summits were suddenly rent in twain.[10] The sight they thereupon presented, O monarch, was exceedingly wonderful to behold. Cuka pierced through those summits,[11] for they were unable to stop his onward course. At this a loud noise arose in heaven, made by the denizens thereof.[12] The Gandharvas and the Rishis also and others that dwelt in that mountain uttered loud cheers at the sight of the mountain being rent in twain and Cuka passing through it. Indeed, O Bhārata, a loud noise was heard everywhere at that moment, consisting of the words—Excellent, Excellent![13]—He was adored by the Gandharvas and the Rishis, by crowds of Yakhas and Rākshasas, and by all tribes of the Vidyādharas.[14] The entire firmament be-

came strewn with celestial flowers showered from heaven at that moment when Cuka thus pierced through that impenetrable barrier, O monarch![15] The righteous-souled Cuka then beheld from a high region the celestial stream Mandākini of great beauty, running below through a region adorned by many flowering groves and woods.[16] In these waters many beautiful Apsarās were sporting. Beholding Cuka who was bodiless, those unclad aerial beings felt no shame.[17] Learning that Cuka had undertaken his great journey, his sire Vyāsa, filled with affection, followed him behind along the same aerial path.[18] Meanwhile Cuka, proceeding through that region of the firmament that is above the region of the wind, displayed his Yoga-prowess and identified himself with Brahma.*[19] Adopting the subtile path of high Yoga, Vyāsa of austere penances, reached within the twinkling of the eye that spot whence Cuka first undertook his journey.[20] Proceeding along the same way, Vyāsa beheld the mountain summit rent in twain and through which Cuka has passed. Encountering the Island-born ascetic, the Rishis began to represent to him the achievements of his son.[21] Vyāsa, however, began to indulge in lamentations, loudly calling upon his son by name and causing the three worlds to resound with the noise he made.[22] Meanwhile, the righteous-souled Cuka, who had entered all things, had become the soul of all things, and had acquired omnipresence, answered his sire by uttering the monosyllable *Bho* in the form of an echo.[23] At this, the entire universe of mobile and immobile creatures, uttering the monosyllable *Bho*, echoed the answer of Cuka.[24] From that time to this, when sounds are uttered in mountain-caves or on mountain-breasts, the latter, as if in answer to Cuka, still echo them (with the monosyllable *Bho*).[25] Having cast off all the attributes of sound, &c., and showing his Yoga-prowess in the manner of his disappearance, Cuka in this way attained to the highest station.[26] Beholding that glory and puissance of his son

* The Rishis knew that the height of the atmosphere is not interminable.—T.

of immeasurable energy, Vyāsa sat down on the breast of the mountain and began to think of his son with grief.[27] The Apsarās who were sporting on the banks of the celestial stream Mandākini, seeing the Rishi seated there, became all agitated with shame and lost heart.[28] Some of them, to hide their nudity, plunged into the stream, and some entered the groves hard by, and some quickly took up their clothes, at beholding the Rishi.[29] (None of them had betrayed any signs of agitation at sight of his son). The Rishi, beholding these movements, understood that his son had been emancipated from all attachments, but that he himself was not freed therefrom. At this he became filled with both joy and shame.[30] As Vyāsa was seated there, the auspicious god Civa, armed with Pināka, surrounded on all sides by many deities and Gandharvas and adored by all the great Rishis, came thither.[31] Consoling the Island-born Rishi who was burning with grief on accout of his son, Mahādeva said these words unto him,[32]—Thou hadst formerly solicited from me a son possessed of the energy of Fire, Earth, of Water, of Wind, and of Space![33] Procreated by thy penances, the son that was born unto thee was of that very kind. Proceeding from my grace, he was pure and full of Brahma-energy.[34] He has attained to the highest end,—an end that is, which none can win that has not completely subjugated his senses, nor by even any of the deities. Why then, O regenerate Rishi, dost thou grieve for that son?[35] As long as the hills will last, as long as the ocean will last, so long will the fame of thy son endure undiminished![36] Through my grace, O great Rishi, thou shalt behold in this world a shadowy form resembling thy son, moving by the side and never deserting thee for a single moment![37]—Thus favoured by the illustrious Rudra himself, O Bhārata, the Rishi beheld a shadow of his son by his side. He returned from that place, filled with joy at this.[38] I have now told thee, O chief of Bhārata's race, everything regarding the birth and life of Cuka about which thou hadst asked me.[39] The celestial Rishi Nārada and the great Yogin Vyāsa had repeatedly told all this to me in days of yore when the subject was suggested in course of conversation.[40] That

person devoted to tranquillity who hears this sacred history directly connected with the topic of Emancipation is certain to attain to the highest end.' "*[41]

SECTION CCCXXXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'If a man be a house-holder or Brahmachārin, a forest-recluse or a mendicant, and if he desire to achieve success, what deity should he adore?[1] Whence can he certainly acquire heaven and whence that which is of the highest benefit (*viz.*, Emancipation)? According to what ordinances should he perform the *homa* in honor of the gods and the *Pitris*?[2] What is the end to which one goes when one becomes emancipated? What is the essence of Emancipation? What should one do so that one, having attained to heaven, would not have to fall down thence?[3] Who is the deity of the deities? And who is the *Pitri* of the *Pitris*? Who is he that is superior to him who is the deity of the deities and the *Pitri* of the *Pitris*? Tell me all this, O Grandsire!'[4]

"Bhishma said,—O thou that art well acquainted with the art of questioning, this question that thou hast asked me, O sinless one, is one that touches a deep mystery. One cannot answer it with the aid of the science of argumentation even if one were to strive for a hundred years.[5] Without the grace of Nārāyana, O king, or an accession of high knowledge, this question of thine is incapable of being answered. Connected though this topic be with a deep mystery, I shall yet, O slayer of foes, expound it to thee!†[6]

---

* In this Section, Bhishma recites to Yudhishthira the fact of Cuka's departure from this world, and Vyāsa's grief at the occurrence. He speaks of the fact as one that had been related to him in bygone times by both Nārada and Vyāsa himself. It is evident from this that the Cuka who recited the Crimad-Bhāgavat to Parikshit the grandson of Yudhishthira, could not possibly be the Cuka who was Vyāsa's son. Orthoxy would be staggered at this, for the prevailing impression is that it was Vyāsa's son Cuka who recited the Bhāgavata to Parikshit.—T.

† What Bhishma says here is that without faith this subject is incapable of being understood.—T.

In this connection is cited the old history of the discourse between Nārada and the Rishi Nārāyana.[7] I heard it from my sire that in the Krita age, O monarch, during the epoch of the Self-born Manu, the eternal Nārāyana, the Soul of the universe, took birth as the son of Dharma in a quadruple form, *viz.*, as Nara, Nārāyana, Hari, and the Self-create Krishna.*[8-9] Amongst them all, Nārāyana and Nara underwent the severest austerities by repairing to the Himālyan retreat known by the name of Vadari, and riding on their golden cars.[10] Each of those cars was furnished with eight wheels, and made up of the five primal elements, and exceedingly beautiful.† Those original regents of the world who had taken birth as the sons of Dharma, became exceedingly emaciated in person in consequence of the austerities they underwent. Indeed, for those austerities and for their energy, the very deities were unable to look at them.[11] Only that deity unto whom they were kind could behold them.[12] Without doubt, with his heart devoted to them, and impelled by a longing desire to behold them, Nārada dropped down on Gandhamādana from a summit of the high mountains of Meru and wandered over all the world.[13] Possessed of great speed, he at last repaired to that spot whereon was situate the retreat of Vadari. Impelled by curiosity he entered that retreat at the hour of Nara's and Nārāyana's performing their daily rites.[14] He said unto himself,—This is truly the retreat of that Being in whom are established all the worlds including the deities, the Asuras, the Gandharvas, the Kinnaras, and the great snakes![15] There was only one form of this great Being before. That form took birth in four shapes for the expansion of the race

---

* This is a triplet. The last word of the third line, *viz.*, 'Swayambhuvah' refers to 'Krishnah,' but it has no especial meaning. It s an adjective used more for the sake of measure than for anything else.—T.

† The golden cars referred to here are the fleshy bodies of the two deities. The body is called the car because like the car, it is propelled by some force other than the Soul which owns it for a time, the Soul being inactive. It is regarded as golden because every one becomes attached to it as something very valuable. The eight wheels are Avidyā and the rest.—T.

of Dharma which have been reared by that deity.[16] How wonderful it is that Dharma has thus been honored by these four great deities, *viz.*, Nara, Nārāyana, Krishna, and Hari![17] In this spot Krishna and Hari dwelt formerly. The other two, however, *viz.*, Nara and Nārāyana, are now dwelling here engaged in penances for the object of enhancing their merit.[18] These two are the highest refuge of the universe. What can be the nature of the daily rites these two perform? They are the sires of all creatures, and the illustrious deities of all beings. Endued with high intelligence, what is that deity whom these two worship? Who are those Pitris whom these two Pitris of all beings adore?[19]—Thinking of this in his mind, and filled with devotion towards Nārāyana, Nārada suddenly appeared before those two gods.[20] After those two deities had finished their adorations to *their* deities and the *Rishis*, they looked at the celestial Rishi arrived at their retreat. The latter was honored with those eternal rites that are ordained in the scriptures.[21] Beholding that extraordinary conduct of the two original deities in themselves worshipping other deities and Pitris, the illustrious Rishi Nārada took his seat there, well pleased with the honors he had received.[22] With a cheerful soul he cast his eyes then on Nārāyana, and bowing unto Mahādeva he said these words.[23]

"'Nārada said,—In the Vedas and the Purānas, in the Angas and the subsidiary Angas, thou art sung with reverence! Thou art unborn and eternal! Thou art the Creator! Thou art the mother of the universe! Thou art the embodiment of Immortality and thou art the foremost of all things. The Past and the Future, indeed, the entire universe has been established on thee![24] The four modes of life, O lord, having the domestic for their first, ceaselessly sacrifice to thee that art of diverse forms.[25] Thou art the father and the mother and the eternal preceptor of the universe. We know not who is that deity or that Pitri unto whom thou art sacrificing today![26]—

"'The holy one said,—This topic is one about which nothing should be said. It is an ancient mystery. Thy devotion to me is very great. Hence, O regenerate one,

I shall discourse to thee on it agreeably to the truth.[27] That which is minute, which is inconceivable, unmanifest, immobile, durable, destitute of all connection with the senses and the objects of the senses, that which is dissociated from the (five) elements,[28]—that is called the in-dwelling Soul of all existent creatures. That is known by the name of Kshetrajna. Transcending the three attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas, that is regarded as Purusha in the scriptures.[29] From Him hath followed the unmanifest, O foremost of regenerate ones, possessed of the three attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas. Though really unmanifest, she is called indestructible Prakriti and dwell in all manifest forms.[30] Know that She is the source whence we two have sprung. That all-pervading Soul, which is made up of all existent and non-existent things, is adored by us. Even He is what we worship in all those rites that we perform in honor of the deities and the Pitris.[31] There is no higher deity or Pitri than He, O regenerate one! He should be known as our Soul. It is Him that we worship.[32] This course of duties followed by men has, O regenerate one, been promulgated by Him. It is His ordinance that we should duly perform all the rites laid down in respect of the deities and the Pitris.[33] Brahman, Sthānu, Manu, Daksha, Bhrigu, Dharma, Yama, Marichi, Angiras, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu,[34] Vaçishtha, Parameshthi, Vivaswat, Shoma, he that has been called Karddama, Krodha, Avāk, and Krita,[35]—these one and twenty persons, called Prajāpatis, were first born. All of them obeyed the eternal law of the Supreme God.[36] Observing all the rites, in detail, that were ordained in honor of the deities and the Pitris, all those foremost of regenerate persons acquired all those objects which they sought.[37] The incorporeal denizens of Heaven itself bow to that Supreme deity and through His grace they attain to those fruits and that end which He ordains for them.[38] This is the settled conclusion of the scriptures that those persons that are freed from these seven and ten attributes, (*viz.*, the five senses of knowledge, the five senses of action, the five vital breaths, and mind and

understanding), that have cast off all acts, and that are divested of the five and ten elements which constitute the gross body, are said to be Emancipate.[39] That which the Emancipate attain to as their ultimate end is called by the name of Kshetrajna. He is regarded (in the scriptures) as both possessed of and freed from all the attributes.[40] He can be apprehended by Knowledge alone. We two have sprung from Him. Knowing him in that way, we adore that eternal Soul of all things.[41] The Vedas and all the modes of life, though characterised by divergences of opinion, all worship Him with devotion. It is He who, speedily moved to grace, confers on them high ends fraught with felicity.[42] Those persons in this world who, filled with His spirit, become fully and conclusively devoted to Him, attain to ends that are much higher, for they succeed in entering Him and becoming merged in his Self.[43] I have now, O Nārada, discoursed to thee on what is a high mystery, moved by the love I bear to thee for thy devotion to me. Indeed, in consequence of that devotion which thou professest towards me, thou hast succeeded in listening to this my discourse !—' "[44]

SECTION CCCXXXVI.

"Bhishma said,—'Addressed by Nārāyana, that foremost of beings, in these words, Nārada, the foremost of men, then said these words unto Nārāyana for the good of the world.[1]

" 'Nārada said,—Let that object be accomplished for which thou, O Self-born Being, hast taken birth in four forms in the house of Dharma ! I shall now repair (to the White Island) for beholding thy original nature.[2] I always worship my seniors. I have never divulged the secrets of others. O lord of the universe, I have studied the Vedas with care. I have undergone astere penances. I have never spoken an untruth.[3] As ordained in the scriptures, I have always protected the four that should be protected.*

---

* *I. e.* the hands, the feet, the stomach, and the organ of pleasure. The hands are said to be protected when they are restrained from the

I always behave equally towards friends and foes. Wholly and conclusively devoted to Him, that first of deities, *viz.*, the Supreme Soul, I incessantly adore Him.[4] Having cleansed my soul by these acts of special merit, why shall I not succeed in obtaining a sight of that Infinite Lord of the universe?—Hearing these words of Parameshthi's son, Nārāyana, that protector of the scriptures, said unto him, saying,[5]—Go, O Nārada!—Before dismissing him, however, the great deity worshipped the celestial Rishi with those rites and ceremonies which have been laid down in the scriptures by himself. Nārada also gave due honors to the ancient Rishi Nārāyana. After such honors had been mutually given and received, the son of Parameshthi departed from that spot.[6] Endued with high Yoga-puissance, Nārada suddenly soared into the firmament and reached the summit of the mountains of Meru. Proceeding to a retired spot on that summit, the great ascetic took rest for a short while.[7] He then cast his eyes towards the north western direction and behold an exceedingly wonderful sight. Towards the north, in the ocean of Milk, there is a large island named the White Island.[8] The learned say that its distance from the mountains of Meru is greater than two and thirty thousand Yojanas. The denizens of that realm have no senses. They live without taking food of any kind. Their eyes are winkless. They always emit excellent perfumes.[9] Their complexions are white. They are cleansed from every sin. They blast the eyes of those sinners that look at them. Their bones and bodies are as hard as thunder. They regard honor and dishonor in the same light. They all look as if they are of celestial origin. All of them are endued, besides, with auspicious marks and great strength.[10] Their heads seem to be like umbrellas. Their voices are

---

commission of all improper acts; the feet are said to be duly protected when they are restrained from touching all improper places. The stomach is said to be protected when one never takes any kind of improper food, and when one abstains from all evil acts for appeasing one's hunger. And lastly, one is said to restrain the organ of pleasure when one abstains from all acts of improper congress.—T.

deep liko that of the clouds. Each of them have four Mushkas.* The soles of their feet were marked by hundreds of lines. They had sixty teeth all of which were white (and large), and eight smaller ones. They had many tongues. With those tongues they seemed to lick the very Sun whose face is turned towards every direction.[11] Indeed, they seemed to be capable of devouring that great deity from whom hath sprung the entire universe, the Vedas, the duties, and the Munis wedded to the attribute of tranquillity.'[12]

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, thou hast said that those beings have no senses, that they do not eat anything for supporting their lives; that their eyes are winkless; and that they always emit excellent perfumes. I ask, how were they born? What also is the superior end to which they attain?[13] O chief of Bharata's race, are the indications of those men that become emancipate the same as those by which the denizens of the White Island are distinguished?[14] Do thou dispel my doubts! The curiosity I feel is very great. Thou art the repositary of all histories and discourses. As regards ourselves, we entirely depend on thee for knowledge and instruction!'[15]

"Bhishma continued,—'This narrative, O monarch, which I have heard from my sire, is extensive. I shall now recite it to thee. Indeed, it is regarded as the essence of all narratives.[16] There was, in times past, a king on Earth of the name of Uparichara. He was known to be the friend of Indra the chief of the celestials. He was devoted to Nārāyana called also by the name of Hari.[17] He was observant of all the duties laid down in the scriptures. Ever devoted to his sire, he was always heedful and ready for action. He won the sovereignty of the world in consequence of a boon he had obtained from Nārāyana.[18] Following the *Sattwata* ritual that had been declared in days of yore by Surya himself, king Uparichara used to worship the God of

* The word 'Mushka' as ordinarily understood, implies the scrotum or testes. The Commentator Nilakantha supposes that it may stand for the shoulder-knot. He believes that the phrase implies that the people of this Island had each four arms.—T.

gods (Nārāyana), and after his worship was over, to adore (with what remained) the Grandsires of the universe.*[19] After worshipping the Grandsires (Pitris), he worshipped the Brāhmanas. He then divided the offerings among those that were dependent on him. With what remained after serving those, the king satisfied his own hunger. Devoted to truth, the monarch abstained from doing any injury to any creature.[20] With his whole soul, the king was devoted to that God of gods, *viz.*, Janārddana, who is without beginning and middle and end, who is the Creator of the universe, and who is without deterioration of any kind.[21] Beholding the devotion to Nārāyana of that slayer of foes, the divine chief of the celestials himself shared with him his own seat and bed.[22] His kingdom and wealth and spouses and animals were all regarded by him as obtained from Nārāyana. He, therefore, offered all his possessions to that great deity.†[23] Adopting the *Sattwata* ritual, king Uparichara, with concentrated soul, used to discharge all his sacrificial acts and observances, both optional and obligatory.[24] In the palace of that illustrious king, many foremost Brāhmanas, well conversant with the *Pancharātra* ritual, used to eat before all others the food offered to the god Nārāyana.[25] As long as that slayer of foes continued to rule his kingdom righteously, no untruth ever escaped his lips and no evil thought ever entered his mind.[26] With his limbs he never committed even the slightest sin. The seven celebrated Rishis, *viz.*, Marichi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vaçishtha of great energy, who came to be known by the name of Chitra-çikhandins, uniting together on the breast of that foremost of mountains, *viz.*, Meru, promulgated an excellent treatise on duties and observances that was con-

---

* The 'Sāttwata' ritual is explained by the Commentator to mean the 'Pancha-rātra' ritual. 'Tachccheshena' implies 'with what remained after Vishnu's worship was over.'—T.

† *I. e.*, dedicated his possessions to the service of Nārāyana, and held them as the great God's custodian. In other words, he never regarded his wealth as his own, but was always ready to devote it to all good and pious purposes.—T.

sistent with the four Vedas. The contents of that treatise were uttered by seven mouths, and constituted the best compendium of human duties and observances. Known, as already stated, by the name of Chitra-çikhandins, those seven Rishis constitute the seven (Prakriti-) elements (of Mahat, Ahankāra, &c.), and the Self-born Manu, who is the eighth in the enumeration, constituted original Prakriti. These eight uphold the universe, and it was these eight that promulgated the treatise adverted to.[27-30] With their senses and minds under complete control, and ever devoted to Yoga, these eight ascetics, with concentrated souls, are fully conversant with the Past, the Present, and the Future, and are devoted to the religion of Truth.[31]—This is good,—This is Brahma,—This is highly beneficial,—reflecting in their minds in this way, those Rishis created the worlds, and the science of morality and duty that governs those worlds.[32] In that treatise the authors discoursed on Religion and Wealth and Pleasure, and subsequently on Emancipation also. They also laid down in it the various restrictions and limitations intended for the Earth as also for Heaven.[33] They composed that treatise after having worshipped with penances the puissant and illustrious Nārāyana called also Hari, for a thousand celestial years, in company with many other Rishis.[34] Gratified with their penances and worship, Nārāyana commanded the goddess of speech, viz., Saraswati, to enter into the persons of those Rishis. The goddess, for the good of the worlds, did what she was ordered.[35] In consequence of the entrance of the goddess of speech into their persons, those Rishis, well conversant with penances, succeeded in composing that foremost of treatises in respect of vocables, import, and reason.*[36] Having composed that treatise sanctified with the syllable *Om*, the Rishis first of all read it to Nārāyana who heard them from kindness.[37] The illustrious and incorporeal Nārāyana became highly pleased with what he heard. That foremost

* *I. e.*, the treatise those Rishis composed was the foremost of its kind in respect of choice and harmony of vocables, of import or sense, and of reasons with which every assertion was fortified.—T.

of all Beings then addressed those Rishis in an incorporeal voice and said,[38]—Excellent is this treatise that ye have composed consisting of a hundred thousand verses. The duties and observances of all the worlds will flow from this your work![39] In complete accordance with the four Vedas, viz., the Yajushes, the Richs, the Sāmans, and the Atharvans of Angiras, this treatise of yours will be an authority in all the worlds in respect of both Pravritti and Nivritti.*[40] Agreeably to the authority of the scriptures I have created Brahman from the attribute of Grace, Rudra from my Wrath, and yourselves, ye Brāhmanas, as representing the Prakriti-elements (of Mahat, Ahankāra, &c.).[41] Surya, and Chandramas, Wind, and Earth, and Water and Fire, all the stars and planets and constellations, all else that is called by the name of creatures,[42] and utterers of Brahma (or the Vedas), all live and act in their respective spheres and are all respected as authorities. Even this treatise that ye have composed shall be regarded by all persons in the same light, viz., as a work of the highest authority. This is my command. Guided by this treatise, the Self-born Manu himself will declare to the world its course of duties and observances.[43-44] When Uçanas and Vrihaspati will arise, they also will promulgate their respective treatises on morality and religion, guided by and quoting from this your treatise![†][45] After the publication of his treatise by the Self-born Manu and of that by Uçanas, and after the publication of the treatise also by Vrihaspati,[46] this science composed by you will be acquired by king Vasu (otherwise

---

* There are two religions, *viz.*, that of Pravritti, implying acts and observances, and that of Nivritti, implying a complete abstention from all acts and observances. The last is also called the religion of Emancipation.—T.

† Whether any work on morality and religion was ever actually composed by the seven Rishis or not, no such work, it is certain, is in existence now. Besides this mention of the work in the Mahābhārata, no reference to it has been made anywhere else. As to 'Cukra-niti', it is extant. Vrihaspati's 'niti-çāstram' is defunct. It is probable, however, that before 'Cukra-niti', there was an anterior work, brief if not exhaustive, on the same subjects.—T.

known by the name of Uparichara). Indeed, ye foremost of regenerate ones, that king will acquire this knowledge of this work from Vrihaspati.[47] That King, filled with all good thoughts, will become deeply devoted to me. Guided by this treatise, he will accomplish all his religious acts and observances.[48] Verily, this treatise composed by you will be the foremost of all treatises on morality and religion. Possessed of excellence, this treatise is fraught with instructions for acquiring both Wealth and Religious merit, and is full of mysteries.[49] In consequence of the promulgation of this treatise of yours, ye will be progenitors of an extensive race! King Uparichara also will become endued with greatness and prosperity.[50] Upon the death, however, of that king, this eternal treatise will disappear from the world. I tell you all this![51]—Having said these words unto all those Rishis, the invisible Nārāyana left them and proceeded to some place that was not known to them.[52] Then those sires of the world, those Rishis that bestowed their thoughts on the ends pursued by the world, duly promulgated that treatise which is the eternal origin of all duties and observances.[53] Subsequently, when Vrihaspati was born in Angiras's race in the first or the Krita age, those seven Rishis charged him with the task of promulgating their treatise which was consistent with the Upanishads and the several branches of the Vedas.[54] They themselves who were upholders of the universe and the first promulgators of duties and religious observances, then proceeded to the place they chose, resolved to devote themselves to penances.' "[55]

Section CCCXXXVII.

"Bhishma said,—'Then, upon the expiration of the great Kalpa, when the celestial Purohita Vrihaspati was born in the race of Angiras, all the deities became very happy.[1] The words *Vrihat*, *Brahma*, and *Mahat* all bear the same sense.* The celestial Purohita, O king, came to be called

* 'Paryyāyā' literally means a list. The fact is, in all Sanskrit

Vrihaspati because he was endued with all these attributes.[2] King Uparichara, otherwise called Vasu, became a disciple of Vrihaspati and soon became the foremost of his disciples. Admitted as such, he began to study at the feet of his preceptor that science which was composed by the seven Rishis who were (otherwise) known by the name of Chitraçikhandins.[3] With soul cleansed from all evil by sacrifices and other religious rites, he ruled the Earth like Indra ruling the Heaven.[4] The illustrious king performed a great Horse-sacrifice in which his preceptor Vrihaspati became the *Hotri*.[5] The sons of Prajāpati (Brahman) themselves, viz., Ekata, Dwita, and Trita, became the *Sadasyas* in that sacrifice,*[6] There were others also who became Sadasyas in that sacrifice, viz., Dhanusha, Raivya, Arvāvasu, Parāvasu, the Rishi Medhātithi, the great Rishi Tāndya,[7] the blessed Rishi Cānti, he called Vedaçiras, the foremost of Rishis, *viz.*, Kapila, who was the father of Cālihotra,[8] the first Kalpa, Tittiri the elder brother of Vaiçampāyana, Kanwa, and Devahotra, forming in all sixteen.[9] In that great sacrifice, O monarch, all the requisite articles were collected. No animals were slain in it. The king had ordained it so.[10] He was full of compassion. Of pure and liberal mind, he had cast off all desire, and was well-conversant with all rites. The requisites of that sacrifice all consisted of the productions of the wilderness.[11] The ancient God of gods (*viz.*, Hari), became highly gratified with the king on account of that sacrifice. Incapable of being seen by any one else, the great God showed himself to his worshipper.[12] Accepting by taking its scent, the share offered to him he himself took up

---

lexicons, words expressive of the same meanings occur together. These lists are known by the name of 'Paryyāya'. A more definite idea of the meaning of this word may be had by the English reader when he remembers that in a lexicon like Rogett's *Thesaurus*, groups are given of words expresive of the same signification. Such groups are called 'Paryyāyas'.—T.

* The *Hotri* has to pour libations on the sacrificial fire, reciting *mantras* the while. 'Sadasyas' are persons that watch the sacrifice, *i. e.*, take care that the ordinances of the scriptures are duly complied with, They are, what is called, 'Vidhi-darçinas'.—T.

the *Purodāṣa.** The great God took up the offerings without being seen by any one.[13] At this, Vrihaspati became angry. Taking up the ladle he hurled it with violence at the sky, and began to shed tears in wrath.[14] Addressing king Uparichara he said,—Here, I place this as Nārāyana's share of the sacrificial offerings! Without doubt, he shall take it before my eyes![15]—'

"Yudhishthira said,—'In the great sacrifice of Uparichara, all the deities appeared in their respective forms for taking their shares of the sacrificial offerings and were seen by all. Why is it that the puissant Hari only acted otherwise by invisibly taking his share?[16]'

"Bhishma continued,—'When Vrihaspati gave way to wrath, the great king Vasu and all his Sadasyas sought to pacifiy the great Rishi.[17] With cool heads, all of them addressed Vrihaspati, saying,—It behooveth thee not to give way to anger! In this Krita age, this anger to which thou hast given way should not be the characteristic of any one![18] The great deity for whom the share of the sacrificial offerings was designed by thee, is himself free from anger! He is incapable of being seen either by ourselves or by thee, O Vrihaspati![19] Only he can see Him to whom He becomes gracious!—Then the Rishis Ekata, Dwita, and Trita, who were well conversant with the science of morality and duties compiled by the seven Rishis, addressed that conclave and began the following narration.[20]—We are the sons of Brhman, begotten by a fiat of his will (and not in the ordinary way). Once on a time we repaired to the north for obtaining what is for our highest good.[21] Having undergone penances for thousands of years and acquired great ascetic merit, we again stood on only one foot like fixed stakes of wood.[22] The country where we underwent these austerest of penances, lies to the north of the mountains of Meru and on the shores of the ocean of milk.[23] The object we had in mind was how to behold the divine Nārāyana in his own form. Upon the

* Clarified butter offered in sacrifices, with cakes of powdered barley steeped in it.—T.

completion of our penances and after we had performed the final ablutions, an incorporeal voice was heard by us, O puissant Vrihaspati, at once deep as that of the clouds and exceedingly sweet and filling the heart with joy.[24] The voice said,—Ye Brāhmanas, well have ye performed these penances with cheerful souls! Devoted unto Nārāyana, ye seek to know how ye may succeed in beholding that god of great puissance![25] On the northern shores of the ocean of milk there is an island of great splendour called by the name of White Island. The men that inhabit that island have complexions as white as the rays of the Moon and that are devoted to Nārayana.[26] Worshippers of that foremost of all Beings, they are devoted to Him with their whole souls. They all enter that eternal and illustrious deity of a thousand rays.*[27] They are divested of senses. They do not subsist on any kind of food. Their eyes are winkless. Their bodies always emit a fragrance. Indeed, the denizens of White Island believe and worship only One God. Go thither, ye ascetics, for there I have revealed myself![28]—All of us, hearing these incorporeal words, proceeded by the way indicated to the country described.[29] Eagerly desirous of beholding Him and our hearts full of Him, we arrived at last at that large island called White Island. Arrived there, we could see nothing. Indeed, our vision was blinded by the energy of the great deity and accordingly we could not see Him.†[30] At this, the idea, due to the grace of the great

* Professor Weber supposes that in this narrative of the three Rishis Ekata, Dwita, and Trita, the poet is giving a description of either Italy or some island in the Mediterranean, and of a Christian worship that certain Hindu pilgrims might have witnessed. Indeed, a writer in the *Calcutta Review* has gone so far as to say that from what follows, the conjecture would not be a bold one that the whole passage refers to the impression made on certain Hindu pilgrims upon witnessing the celebration of the Eucharist according to the ordinances of the Roman Catholic Church. The Hon'ble K. T. Telang supposes that the whole passage is based on the poet's imagination. 'Ekāntabhāvopagatāh' is taken by some to mean "worshippers of the divine Unity". I do not think that such a rendering would be correct.—T.

† The Bombay reading is 'tadāpratihato-abhavat'. This seems to

God Himself, arose in our minds that one that had not undergone sufficient penances could not speedily behold Nārāyana.[31] Under the influence of this idea we once more set ourselves to the practice of some severe austerities, suited to the time and place, for a hundred years. Upon the completion of our vows, we beheld a number of men of auspicious features.[32] All of them were white and looked like the Moon (in color) and possessed every mark of blessedness. Their hands were always joined in prayer. The faces of some were turned towards the North and of some to the East. They were engaged in silently thinking on Brahma.*[33] The Yapa performed by those high-souled persons was a *mental* yapa (and did not consist of the actual recitation of any *mantras* in words). In consequence of their hearts having been entirely set upon Him, Hari became highly pleased with them.[34] The effulgence that was emitted by each of those men resembled, O foremost of ascetics, the splendours which Surya assumes when the time comes for the dissolution of the universe.[35] Indeed, we thought that that Island was the home of all Energy. All the inhabitants were perfectly equal in energy. There was no superiority or inferiority there among them.†[36] We then suddenly beheld once more a light arise that seemed to be the concentrated effulgence of a thousand Suns, O Vrihaspati.[37] The inhabitants, assembling together, ran towards that light, with hands joined in reverential attitude, full of joy, and uttering the one word *Namas* (we bow thee!).[38] We then heard a very loud noise uttered by all of them to-

---

be better than the Bengal reading 'tato-apratihata &c.'. If the Bengal reading be adhered to, 'apratihatāh' should be taken in the sense of 'nāsti pratihato-yasmāt'. The meaning, of course, would remain the same.—T.

* 'Yapa' means the silent recitation of certain sacred *mantras* or of the name of some deity. In the case of the inhabitants of White Island, the silent recitation was no recitation of *mantras* or words, but was a meditation on incorporeal Brahma. The next Verse makes this clear.—T.

† This would seem to show that it was the Roman Republic which the pilgrims saw.—T.

gether. It seemed that those men were employed in offering a sacrifice to the great God.[39] As regards ourselves, we were suddenly deprived of our senses by his Energy. Deprived of vision and strength and all the senses, we could not see or feel anything.*[40] We only heard a loud volume of sound uttered by the assembled inhabitants. It said,—Victory to thee, O thou of eyes like lotus-petals! Salutations to thee, O Creator of the universe![41] Salutations to thee, O Hrishikeça, O foremost of Beings, O thou that art the First-born! —Even this was the sound we heard, uttered distinctly and agreeably to the rules of orthoepy.†[42] Meanwhile, a breeze, fragrant and pure, blew, bearing perfumes of celestial flowers, and of certain herbs and plants that were of use on the occasion.[43] Those men, endued with great devotion, possessed of hearts full of reverence, conversant with the ordinances laid down in the *Pancharātra*, were then worshipping the great deity with mind, word, and deed.‡[44] Without doubt, Hari appeared in that place whence the sound we heard arose. As regards ourselves, stupefied by His illusion, we could not see Him.[45] After the breeze had ceased and the sacrifice had been over, our hearts became agitated with anxiety, O foremost one of Angiras's race![46] As we stood among those thousands of men all of whom were of pure descent, no one honored us with a glance or nod.[47] Those

---

* Professor Weber thinks that this has reference to the absence of idols or images. The pilgrims saw no deities there such as they had in their own temples.—T.

† Professor Weber wrongly renders the words 'Purvaja' and 'çikshākshara-samanwitah'. The first word does not, as he renders it, imply, 'eldest son of God', but simply 'first-born'. It is seen in almost every hymn in the Mahābhārata to the Supreme Deity. It is synonymous with 'Adipurusha'. Then 'çikshā &c.' does not, as he thinks, mean 'accompanied by *teaching*', but it is the science of Orthoepy and is one of the Angas (limbs) of the Vedas. The Vedas were always chaunted melodiously; the science of Orthoepy was cultivated by the Rishis with great care.—T.

‡ The 'Pancha-kāla', or 'Pancha-rātra', or 'Sāttwata vidhi', means certain ordinances laid down by Nārada and other Rishis in respect of the worship of Nārāyana.—T.

ascetics, all of whom were cheerful and filled with devotion and, who were all practising the Brahma-frame of mind, showed no kind of feeling for us.*[48] We had been exceedingly tired. Our penances had emaciated us. At that time, an incorporeal Being addressed us from the sky and said unto us these words.[49]—These white men, who are divested of all outer senses, are competent to behold (Nārāyana). Only those foremost of regenerate persons whom these white men honored with their glances, become competent to behold the great God.†[50-51] Go hence, ye Munis, to the place whence ye have come! That great Deity is incapable of being ever seen by one that is destitute of devotion![52] Incapable of being seen in consequence of his dazzling effulgence, that illustrious Deity can be beheld by only those persons that in course of long ages succeed in devoting themselves wholly and solely to Him. Ye foremost of regenerate ones, ye have a great duty to perform![53] After the expiration of this the Krita age, when the Tretā age comes in course of the Vivaswat cycle, a great calamity will overtake the worlds. Ye Munis, ye shall then have to become the allies of the deities (for dispelling that calamity)![54]—Having heard these wonderful words that were sweet as nectar, we soon got back to the place we desired, through the grace of that great Deity.[55] When with the aid of even such austere penances and of offerings devoutly given in sacrifices, we failed to have a sight of the great Deity, how, indeed, can you expect to behold Him so easily?[56] Nārāyana is a Great Being. He is the Creator of the universe. He is adored in sacrifices with offerings of clarified butter and other food dedicated with the aid of Vedic *mantras*. He has no beginning and no end. He is Unmanifest. Both the deities and the Dānavas worship Him![57]—Induced by these words spoken by Ekata and approved by his companions, *viz.*, Dwita and Trita,

---

* The sense is this: as all of them were practising that frame of mind which resembles Brahma, they regarded us not, *i. e.*, neither honored nor dishonored us.—T.

† Both the vernacular translators have erred in rendering this simple Verse.—T.

and solicited also by the other Sadasyas, the high-minded Vrihaspati brought that sacrifice to a completion after duly offering the accustomed adorations to the deities.[58] King Uparichara also, having completed his great sacrifice, began to rule his subjects righteously. At last, casting off his body, he ascended to heaven. After sometime, through the curse of the Brāhmanas, he fell down from those regions of felicity and sank deep into the bowels of the Earth.[59] King Vasu, O tiger among monarchs, was always devoted to the true religion. Although sunk deep into the bowels of the Earth, his devotion to virtue did not abate.[60] Ever devoted to Nārāyana, and ever reciting sacred *mantras* having Nārāyana for their deity, he once more ascended to heaven through Nārāyana's grace.[61] Ascending from the bowels of the Earth, king Vasu, in consequence of the very highest end that he attained, proceeded to a spot that is even higher than the region of Brahman himself.*' "[62]

Section CCCXXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'When the great king Vasu was so wholly devoted to Nārāyana, for what reason then did he fall down from heaven and why again had he to sink beneath the surface of the Earth ?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited an old narrative, O Bhārata, of a discourse between the Rishis and the gods.[2] The gods, once on a time, addressing many foremost of Brāhmanas, said unto them that sacrifices should be performed by offering up *Ajas* as victims. By the word *Aja* should be understood the goat and no other animal.[3]

---

* The construction seems to be this: 'Parāngatimanuprāpta iti Bahmanah samanantaram naishthikam sthānam &c.,' It does not mean, as K. P. Singha puts it, that he proceeded to Brahman's region, nor, as the Burdwan translator puts it, that having gone to Brahman's region he attained to the highest end. The sense, on the other hand, is that as his was the very highest end. he, therefore, ascended to a spot that is higher than Brahman's region. The simple meaning is that king Uparichara attained to identification with Brahma.—T.

"'The *Rishis* said,—The Vedic *Çruti* declares that in sacrifices the offerings should consist of (vegetable) seeds. Seeds are called *Ajas*. It behooveth you not to slay goats.[4] Ye deities, that cannot be the religion of good and righteous people in which the slaughter of animals is laid down. This, again, is the Krita age. How can animals be slaughtered in this epoch of righteousness ?[5]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'While this discourse was going on between the Rishis and the deities, that foremost of kings, *viz.*, Vasu, was seen to come that way. Endued with great prosperity, the king was coming through the welkin, accompanied by his troops and vehicles and animals.[6] Beholding king Vasu coming to that spot through the skies, the Brāhmanas addressing the deities, said,—This one will remove our doubts ![7] He performs sacrifices. He is liberal in making gifts. He always seeks the good of all creatures. How, indeed, will the great Vasu speak otherwise ![8]—Having thus spoken unto each other, the deities and the Rishis quickly approached king Vasu and questioned him, saying,—O king, with what should one perform sacrifices ?[9] Should one sacrifice with the goat or with herbs and plants ? Do thou dispel this doubt of ours ! We constitute thee our judge in this matter.[10]—Thus addressed by them, Vasu joined his hands in humility and said unto them,—Tell me truly, ye foremost of Brāhmanas, what opinion is entertained by which of you in this matter ?[11]—

"'The *Rishis* said,—The opinion entertained by us, O king, is that sacrifices should be performed with grain ! The deities, however, maintain that sacrifices should be performed with animals. Do thou judge between us and tell us which of these opinions is correct ![12]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'Learning what the opinion was that was entertained by the deities, Vasu, moved by partiality for them, said that sacrifices should be performed with animals.[13] At this answer, all the Rishis, endued with the splendour of the Sun, became very angry. Addressing Vasu who was seated on his car and who had (wrongly) taken up the side of the deities, they said unto him,[14]—Since thou

hast (wrongly) taken up the side of the deities, do thou fall down from heaven! From this day, O monarch, thou shalt lose the power of journeying through the sky! Through our curse, thou shalt sink deep below the surface of the Earth![15] —After the Rishis had said these words, king Uparichara immediately fell down, O monarch, and went down a hole in the Earth. At the command, however, of Nārāyana, Vasu's memory did not leave him.[16] To the good fortune of Vasu, the deities, pained at the curse denounced on him by the Brāhmanas, began to think anxiously as to how that curse might be neutralised.[17] They said,—This high-souled king hath been cursed for our sake. We, denizens of heaven, should unite together for doing what is good to him in return for that which he has done to us![18]—Having quickly settled this in their minds with the aid of reflection, the deities proceeded to the spot where king Uparichara was. Arrived at his presence, they addressed him, saying,[19]—Thou art devoted to the great God of the Brāhmanas (*viz.*, Nārāyana)! That great Lord of both the deities and the Asuras, gratified with thee, will rescue thee from the curse that has been denounced upon thee![20] It is proper, however, that the high-souled Brāhmanas should be honored. Verily, O best of kings, their penances should fructify.*[21] Indeed, thou hast already fallen down from the sky on the Earth! We desire, however, O best of kings, to show thee a favor in one respect![22] As long as thou, O sinless one, shalt dwell in this hole, so long shalt thou receive (due sustenance, through our boon)![23] Those streaks of clarified butter which Brāhmanas with concentrated minds pour in sacrifices in accompaniment with sacred *mantras*, and which are called by the name of *Vasudharā*, shall be thine, through our care for thee! Indeed, weakness or distress shall not touch thee![†][24] While dwelling, O king

---

* *I. e.*, when they have cursed thee, their curse should fructify. Thou shouldst not do anything that may have the effect of nullifying that curse.—T.

† To this day, in many religious rites, these streaks of *ghee* are poured with *mantras* recited the while. They are called *Vasudhārā* and are poured along the surface of a wall. First, a waving line of red

of kings, in the hole of the Earth, neither hunger nor thirst shall afflict thee for thou shalt drink those streaks of clarified butter called *Vasudhārā*. Thy energy also shall continue unabated. In consequence also of this our boon that we grant thee, the God of gods, *viz.*, Nārāyana, will be gratified with thee, and He will bear thee hence to the region of Brahman![25]—Having granted these boons unto the king, the denizens of heaven, as also all those Rishis possessed of wealth of penances, returned each to his respective place.[26] Then Vasu, O Bhārata, began to adore the Creator of the universe and to recite in silence those sacred *mantras* that had come out of Nārāyana's mouth in days of yore.*[27] Although dwelling in a pit of the Earth, the king still worshipped Hari, the Lord of all the deities, in the well-known five sacrifices that are performed five times every day, O slayer of foes![28] In consequence of these adorations of his, Nārāyana, otherwise called Hari, became highly pleased with him who thus showed himself to be entirely devoted to Him, who wholly relied upon Him as his sole refuge, and who had completely subjugated his senses.[29] The illustrious Vishnu, that giver of boons, then addressed Garuda of great speed, that foremost of birds, who waited upon Him as his servant, and said these desirable words:[30]—O foremost of birds, O thou that art highly blessed, listen to what I say! There is a great king of the name of Vasu who is of righteous soul and rigid vows! Through the wrath of the Brāhmanas, he has fallen into a pit of the Earth.[31] The Brāhmanas have been sufficiently honored (for their curse has fructified). Do thou go to that king now![32] At my command, O Garuda, go to that foremost of kings, *viz.*, Uparichara, who is now dwelling in a hole of the Earth and incapable of any longer sailing through the sky, and bring him up

---

is drawn horizantally on the wall. Then seven spots are made under that line. Then with the sacrificial ladle, Ghee is poured from each of the spots in such a way that a thick streak is poured along the wall. The length of those streaks is generally 3 to 4 feet and their breadth about half an inch.—T.

* The *mantras* recited by Vasu were Vedic mantras.—T.

without delay into the welkin![33] Hearing these words of Vishnu, Garuda, spreading his wings and rushing with the speed of the wind, entered that hole in the Earth in which king Vasu was living.[34] Suddenly taking the king up, the son of Vinatā soared into the sky and there released the king from his beaks.[35] At that moment, king Uparichara once more acquired his celestial form and re-entered the region of Brahman.[36] It was in this way, O son of Kunti, that that great king first fell down through the curse of the Brāhmanas for a fault of speech, and once more ascended to heaven at the command of the great God (Vishnu).[37] Only the puissant Lord Hari, that foremost of all Beings, was devoutly worshipped by him. It was for this devout worship that the king succeeded very soon in escaping from the curse denounced upon him by the Brāhmanas and in regaining the felicitous regions of Brahman.'[38]

"Bhishma continued,—'I have thus told thee everything respecting the origin of the spiritual sons of Brahman. Listen to me with undivided attention, for I shall now narrate to thee how the celestial Rishi Nārada had proceeded in days of yore to White Island.' "[39]

SECTION CCCXXXIX.

"Bhishma said,—'Arrived at the spacious realm called White Island, the illustrious Rishi beheld those same white men possessed of lunar splendour (of whom I have already spoken to thee).[1] Worshipped by them, the Rishi worshipped them in return by bending his head and reverencing them in his mind.* Desirous of beholding Nārāyana, he began to reside there, attentively engaged in the silent recitation of *mantras* sacred to him, and observant the while of vows of the most difficult kind.[2] With concentrated mind, the regenerate Rishi, with arms upraised, stood in Yoga, and then

---

* The Burdwan translator, as also K. P. Singha, both err in translating the first line of this Verse. It does *not* mean that Nārada worshipped them with a bend of his head and that they in return worshipped him mentally.—T.

sang the following hymn unto the Lord of the universe, Him, *viz.*, who is at once the soul of attributes and divested of all attributes.[3]

"'Nārada said,—Salutations to thee, O God of gods, O thou that art freed from all acts! Thou art he who is divested of all attributes, who is the Witness of all the worlds, who is called Kshetrajna, who is the foremost of all Beings, who is Infinite, who is called Purusha, who is the great Purusha, who is the foremost of all Purushas, who is the soul of the three attributes, who is called the Foremost, who is Amrita (nectar), who is called Immortal, who is called Ananta (Cesha), who is Space,* who is without beginning, who is both Manifest and Unmanifest as existent and not-existent things, who is said to have his home in Truth,† who is the first of gods (Nārāyana), who is the giver of wealth (or of the fruits of acts), who is identified with Daksha and other Lords of the Creation, who is the Açwattha and other big trees, who is the four-headed Brahman, who is the Lord of all created Beings, who is the Lord of Speech,‡ who is the Lord of the universe (or Indra), who is the all-pervading Soul, who is the Sun, who is the breath called Prāna, who is the Lord of the waters (*viz.*, Varuna), who is identifiable with the Emperor or the King, who is identifiable with the Regents of the several points of the compass, who is the refuge of the universe when it is dissolved in the final destruction,§ who is Undisplayed (unrevealed), who is the giver of the Vedas unto Brahman, who is identifiable with the sacrifices and Vedic studies achieved by Brāhmanas with the aid of their bodies, who is identifiable with the four principal orders of the deities, who is every one of those four

* In the sense of His being unmodified, even as space is an entity that cannot be modified in any way.—T.

† *I. e.*, as the Commentator expands, who is displayed without any modification, all else being modifications of Thyself.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, from whom speech has flowed, or who is Vrihaspati the celestial priest, so famous for his learning and intelligence.—T.

§ *I. e.* the original home of the universe. The idea is that when the universal dissolution comes, all things take refuge in thee. I follow the Commentator in all the interpretations he gives.—T.

orders, who is possessed of effulgence, who is possessed of great effulgence, who is he unto whom the seven largest offerings in sacrifices are presented with the Gāyatri and other sacred *mantras*, who is Yama, who is Chitragupta and the other attendants of Yama, who is called the wife of Yama, who is that order of the deities called Tushita, who is that other order callen Mahā-Tushita, who is the universal grinder (Death), who is desire and all diseases that have been created for aiding the advent of Death, who is health and freedom from disease, who is subject to desire and passions, who is free from the influence of desire and passions, who is Infinite as exhibited in species and forms, who is he that is chastised, who is he that is the chastiser, who is all the lesser sacrifices (like Agnihotra and others), who is all the larger sacrifices (like those called Brahma, &c.), who is all the Ritwijas, who is the origin of all sacrifices (*viz*, the Vedas), who is fire, who is the very heart of all sacrifices (*viz.*, the *mantras* and hymns uttered in them), who is he that is hymned in sacrifices, who takes those shares of the sacrificial offerings that are presented to him, who is the embodiment of the five sacrifices, who is the maker of the five sections or divisions of time (*viz.*, day, night, month, seasons, and year), who is incapable of being understood except by those scriptures that are called *Pancharātra*, who never shrinks from anything, who is unvanquished, who is only Mind (without a physical frame), who is known only by name, who is the Lord of Brahman himself, who has completed all the vows and observances mentioned in the Vedas,* who is the swan (bearer of the triple stick), who is the great swan (bearer of the single stick), who is the foremost of swans (divested of stick), who is the foremost of all sacrifices, who is Sānkhya-yoga, who is the embodiment of the Sānkhya philosophy, who dwells in all Jivas, who lives in every heart, who resides in every sense, who floats on the ocean-water, who lives in the Vedas, who lies on the lotus (the image of the egg whence the universe has sprung), who is the Lord of the universe,

* *I. e.*, who has performed the 'avabhrita' or final bath upon the completion of all vows and observances and sacrifices.—T.

and whose troops go everywhere for protecting his worshippers! Thou takest birth as all creatures! Thou art the origin of the universe (of all creatures)! Thy mouth is fire! Thou art that fire which courses through the waters of the ocean, issuing out all the while from an Equine head! Thou art the sanctified butter that is poured into the sacrificial fire! Thou art the car-driver (fire or heat that impels the body and causes it to live and grow)! Thou art *Vashat!* Thou art the syllable Om! Thou art Penances! Thou art Mind! Thou art Chandramas! Thou sanctifiest the sacrificial butter! Thou art the Sun! Thou art the Elephants that are stationed in the four cardinal points of the compass! Thou illuminest the cardinal points of the compass. Thou illuminest the subsidiary points also! Thou art the Equine head! Thou art the first three mantras of the Rig Veda! Thou art the protector of the several orders of men (*viz.*, Brāhmanas, Kshatriyas, Vaiçyas, and Cudras)! Thou art the five fires (beginning with Gārhapatya)! Thou art He who has thrice ignited the sacrificial fire called *Nāchi!** Thou art the refuge of the six limbs (*viz.*, the Vedas).† Thou art the foremost of those Brāhmanas that are employed in singing the Sāmans in sacrifices and other religious rites. Thou art Prāgjyotish, and thou art he who sings the first Sāman!‡ Thou art the observer of those vows that depend upon the Vedas and that are observed by singers of Sāmans. Thou art the embodiment of the Upanishad called by the name of Atharvaçiras. Thou art he who is the topic of the five foremost of scriptures (*viz.*, those that appertain to the worship of Surya, of Cakti, of Ganeça, of Civa, and of Vishnu)! Thou art called the preceptor that subsists only on the froth of water. Thou art a Vālikhilya.$

---

* *I. e.*, thou hast performed sacrifices.—T.

† The Vedas have six limbs or divisions.—T.

‡ Prāgjyotish is the name of a particular Sāman. The Rich beginning with 'Murddhānam &c.', when sung, comes to be called by the name of 'jeshtha Sāman'. What is said here, therefore, is that thou art both the foremost of Sāmans and he that sings that Sāman.—T.

$ In the Bombay text, the reading for 'Vaināgarbha' is 'Vaikhānasa' which means a class or sect of ascetics.—T.

Thou art the embodiment of him who has not fallen away from Yoga. Thou art the embodiment of correctness of judgment or reasoning. Thou art the beginning of the Yugas, thou art the middle of the Yugas and thou art their end! Thou art Ākhandala (Indra). Thou art the two Rishis Prāchina-garbha and Kauçika! Thou art Purusthuta, thou art Puruhuta, thou art the artificer of the universe. Thou hast the universe for thy form. Thy motions are infinite. Thy bodies are infinite! Thou art without end and without beginning, and without middle. Thy middle is unmanifest. Thy end is unmanifest. Thou hast vows for thy abode. Thou residest in the ocean. Thy hast thy home in Fame, in Penances, in Self-restraint, in Prosperity, in Knowledge, in grand Achievements, and in Everything belonging to the universe! Thou art Vāsudeva. Thou art the grantor of every wish. Thou art the Ape that bore Rāma on his shoulders. Thou art the great Horse-sacrifice. Thou takest thy share of offerings made in great sacrifices!* Thou art the grantor of boons, of happiness, of wealth. Thou art devoted to Hari! Thou art Restraint of the senses. Thou art vows and observances. Thou art mortifications, thou art severe mortifications, thou art very severe mortifications.† Thou art he who observes vows and religious and other pious rites. Thou art freed from all errors. Thou art a Brahmachārin. Thou tookest birth in the womb of Priçni. Thou art heifrom whom have flowed all Vedic rites and acts. Thou art unborn. Thou pervadest all things. Thy eyes are on all things. Thou must not be apprehended by the senses. Thou art not subject to deterioration. Thou art possessed of great puissance. Thy body is inconceivably vast. Thou art holy, thou art very holy. Thou art golden. Thou art vast. Thou art beyond the ken of logic or argument. Thou art unknow-

---

* The Commentator explains that by 'Mahāyajna'—great sacrifice—is meant 'Yoga'. The Jiva-Soul is like the libation poured in that sacrifice, for by Yoga the Jiva-Soul is annihilated and merged into the Supreme Soul.—T.

† In treatises on the *Smriti*, the indications of these three kinds or degrees of mortifications are given.—T,

able. Thou art the foremost of Causes. Thou art the Creator of all creatures and thou art their destroyer. Thou art the possessor of vast powers of illusion. Thou art called Chittraçikhandin. Thou art the giver of boons. Thou art the taker of thy share of the sacrificial offerings. Thou hast obtained the merit of all sacrifices. Thou art he who has been freed from all doubts. Thou art omnipresent. Thou art of the form of a Brāhmana. Thou art fond of Brāhmanas. Thou hast the universe for thy form. Thy form is very vast. Thou art the greatest friend. Thou art kind to all thy worshippers. Thou art the great deity of the Brāhmanas. I am thy devoted disciple. I am desirous of beholding thee. Salutations to thee that art of the form of Emancipation !—' "[4]

SECTION CCCXL.

"Bhishma said,—'Thus hymned with names that were not known to others, the Divine Nārāyana having the universe for his form showed himself to the ascetic Nārada.[1] His form was somewhat purer than the moon and differed from the moon in some respects. He somewhat resembled a blazing fire in complexion. The puissant Lord was somewhat of the form of Vishti.*[2] He resembled in some respects the feathers of the parrot, and in some a mass of pure crystal. He resembled in some respects a hill of antimony and in some a mass of pure gold.[3] His complexion somewhat resembled the coral when first formed, and was somewhat white. In some respects that complexion resembled the hue of gold and in some that of the *lapis lazulus*.[4] In some respects it resembled the hue of the blue *lapis lazulus* and in some that of sapphire. In some respects it resembled the hue of the peacock's neck, and in some that of a string of pearls.[5] Bearing these diverse kinds of hues on his person, the eternal Deity appeared before Nārada. He had a thousand

---

* By this word is meant a particular conjunction of heavenly bodies. This conjunction is represented as having a peculiar form.—T.

eyes and was possessed of great beauty. He had a hundred heads and a hundred feet.[6] He had a thousand stomachs and a thousand arms. He seemed to be still inconceivable to the mind. With one of his mouths he uttered the syllable *Om* and then the *Gāyatri* following *Om*.[7] With mind under complete control, the great Deity, called by the names of Hari and Nārāyana, by his other mouths, multudinous in number, uttered many *mantras* from the four Vedas which are known by the name of *Aranyaka*.[8] The Lord of all the deities, the great God who is adored in sacrifices, held in his hands a sacrificial altar, a *Kamandalu*, a few white gems, a pair of shoes, a bundle of *Kuça* blades, a deer-skin, a tooth-stick, and a little blazing fire.*[9] With a cheerful soul, that foremost of regenerate persons, viz., Nārada, restraining speech, bowed unto the great God and adored Him.[10] Unto him whose head was still bent low in veneration, the first of all the deities, who is free from deterioration, said the following words.[11]

"'The Holy one said,—The great Rishis, Ekata, Dwita, and Trita, came to this realm from desire of obtaining a sight of me.[12] They, however, were unable to have the fruition of their wishes. Nor can any one have a sight of me save those persons that are devoted to me with their whole hearts. As regards thee, thou art verily the foremost of all persons devoted to me with all their souls.[13] These are my bodies, the best ones that I assume. These were born, O regenerate one, in the house of Dharma. Do thou worship them always, and do thou perform those rites that are laid down in the ordinances with respect to that worship.[14] O Brāhmana, do thou ask of me the boons thou desirest! I am gratified with thee today, and I appear unto thee now in my universal form as freed from decay and deterioration!—[15]

---

* The word 'Upānaha' used here in the dual number, has puzzled many persons. It is difficult to conceive why the great God should appear with a pair of shoes in one of his hands. Probably, the 'Upānaha', in ancient times, was a wooden sandal, and what the poet means to say is that Nārāyana appeared with all the requisites of a Brahmachārin on his person.—T.

"'Nārada said,—Since, O holy one, I have today succeeded in obtaining a sight of thee, I regard that I have won without any delay the fruits of my penances, O God, of my self-restraint, and of all the vows and observances that I have gone through![16] This, indeed, is the highest boon thou hast granted me for thou hast shown thyself to me today, O Eternal Lord! Thou, O holy one, hast the universe for thy eye! Thou art the Lion. Thy form is identifiable with everything! Possessed of puissance, thou, O Lord, art vast and infinite!—[17]'

"Bhishma continued,—'Having thus shown Himself unto Nārada the son of Parameshthi, the great God addressed that ascetic and said,—Go hence, O Nārada, and do not delay![18] These worshippers of mine, possessed of lunar complexions, are divested of all senses and do not subsist upon any kind of food. They are, again, all Emancipate! With minds wholly concentrated upon me, people should think of me. Such worshippers will never meet with any impediments.[19] These men are all crowned with ascetic success and are highly blessed. In ancient times they became entirely devoted to me. They have been freed from the attributes of Rajas and Tamas. Without doubt, they are competent to enter me and become merged into my Self.[20] He that cannot be seen with the eye, touched with the sense of touch, smelt with the sense of scent, and that is beyond the ken of the sense of taste,[21] He whom the three attributes of Swattwa, Rajas, and Tamas do not touch, who pervades all things and is the one Witness of the universe, and who is described as the Soul of the entire universe,[22] He who is not destroyed upon the destruction of the bodies of all created things, who is unborn and unchangeable and eternal, who is freed from all attributes, who is indivisible and entire,[23] He who transcends the twice twelve topics of enquiry and is regarded the Twentyfifth, who is called by the name of Purusha, who is inactive, and who is said to be apprehended by Knowledge alone,[24] He into whom the foremost of regenerate persons enter and become emancipate, He is the eternal Supreme Soul and is known by the name of Vāsudeva.[25] Behold, O Nārada, the greatness and

puissance of that God! He is never touched by acts good or bad.[26] Swattwa, Rajas, and Tamas, are said to be the three (original) attributes. These dwell and act in the bodies of all creatures.[27] The Jiva-soul, called Kshetrajna, enjoys and endures the action of these three attributes. He, however, transcends them and they cannot touch Him. Freed from these attributes, He is again their enjoyer and endurer. Having created them Himself, He is above them all.[28] O celestial Rishi, the Earth, which is the refuge of the universe, disappears* (when the hour for universal dissolution comes) into water. Water disappears into Light, and Light into Wind.[29] Wind disappears into Space, and Space into Mind. Mind is a great creature, and it disappears into Unmanifest Prakriti.[30] Unmanifest Prakriti, O Brāhmana, disappears into inactive Purusha. There is nothing higher than Purusha which is Eternal.[31] There is nothing among mobile and immobile things in the universe that is Immutable, except Vāsudeva, the eternal Purusha.[32] Endued with great puissance, Vāsudeva is the Soul of all creatures. Earth, Wind, Space, Water, and Light forming the fifth,[33] are primal elements of great puissance. Mingling together they form what is called the body. Possessed of subtile prowess and invisible to all eyes, O Brāhmana, the puissant Vāsudeva then enters that combination of the five primal elements called body. Such entrance is called his birth, and taking birth He causes the body to move about and act.[34] Without a combination of the five primal elements, no body can ever be formed.[35] Without, again, the entrance of Jiva into the body, the mind dwelling within it cannot cause it to move and act. He that enters the body is possessed of great puissance and is called Jiva. He is known also by other names, *viz.*, Cesha and Sankarshana.[36] He that takes his rise, from that Sankasarshana, by his own acts, Sanatkumāra, and in whom all creatures merge when the universal dissolution comes, is the Mind of all creatures and is called by the name of Praddyumna.[37] From Him (*i. e.*, Pradyumna), arises He

* *I. e.*, merges into.—T.

who is the Creator, and who is both Cause and Effect. From this last, everything, *viz.*, the mobile and immobile universe, takes its rise. This one is called Aniruddha. He is otherwise called Içāna, and He is manifest in all acts.*[38] That illustrious one, *viz.*, Vāsudeva, who is called Kshetrajna, and who is freed from attributes, should, O king of kings, be known as the puissant Sankarshana, when He takes birth as Jiva.†[39] From Sankarshana arises Praddyumna who is called 'He that is born as Mind'. From Praddyumna is He who is Aniruddha. He is Consciousness, He is Içwara (Supreme Lord).[40] It is from me that the entire mobile and immobile universe springs. It is from me, O Nārada, that the indestructible and the destructible, the existent and the non-existent, flow.[41] They that are devoted to me enter into me and become emancipate. I am known as Purusha. Without acts, I am the Twenty-fifth.[42] Transcending attributes, I am entire and indivisible. I am above all pairs of attributes and freed from all attachments. This, O Nārada, thou wilt fail to understand. Thou beholdest me as endued with a form. In a moment, if the wish arises, I can dissolve this form. I am the Supreme Lord and the Preceptor of the universe.[43] That which thou beholdest of me, O Nārada, is only an illusion of mine. I now seem to be endued with the attributes of all created things. Thou art not competent to know me.[44] I have disclosed to thee duly my quadruple form. I am, O Nārada, the doer, I am Cause, and I am Effect.[45] I am the sum total of all living creatures. All living creatures have their refuge in me. Let not the thought be thine that thou hast seen the Jiva-soul.[46] I pervade all

* This cosmogony is agreeable to the Vaishnava scriptures. Above all, without beginning is Vāsudeva. From Vāsudeva is Sankarshana. From Sankarshana is Praddyumna. From Praddyumna is Aniruddha. Some persons find in this quadruple creation the distinct trace of the Christian Trinity. It is very difficult, however, to say which doctrine, the Hindu or the Christian, is the original and which is derived from which.—T.

† The reader is requested to mark the address 'king of kings'. This is evidently a slip of the pen. The whole speech is that of Nārāyana and Nārada is the listener.—T.

things, O Brāhmana, and am the inner Soul of all creatures. When the bodies of all creatures, however, are destroyed, I am not destroyed.[47] Those highly blessed men who, having won ascetic success, become wholly devoted to me, become freed from the attributes of both Rajas and Tamas and succeed, on that account, in entering me, O great ascetic.[48] He called Hiranyagarbha, who is the beginning of the world, who has four faces, who cannot be understood with the aid of the *Nirukta*, who is otherwise called Brahman, who is an eternal deity, is employed in attending to many of my concerns.[49] The deity Rudra, born of my wrath, sprang from my forehead. Behold, the eleven Rudras are swelling (with might) on the right side of my body.[50] The twelve Ādityas are on the left side of my body. Behold, the eight Vasus, those foremost of deities, are in my front,[51] and see, Nāsatya and Dasra, those two celestial physicians, are in my rear. Behold also in my body all the Prajāpatis and behold the seven Rishis also.[52] Behold also the Vedas, and all the Sacrifices numbering by hundreds, the Amrita (nectar), and all the (medicinal) herbs and plants, and Penances, and vows and observances of diverse kinds.[53] Behold also in me the eight attributes indicative of puissance, *viz.*, those particularly called the attributes of Lordship, dwelling all together in my body in their united and embodied form. Behold also Cree and Lakshmi, and Kirti, and the Earth with her hump.[54] Behold the goddess Saraswati, that mother of the Vedas, dwelling in me! Behold, O Nārada, Dhruva, that foremost of luminaries ranging the firmament.[55] Behold also all the Oceans, those receptacles of water, and lakes, and rivers. Behold also, O best of men, the four foremost ones amongst the Pitris in their embodied forms. Behold also, dwelling in me, the three attributes (of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas) which are formless.[56] The acts done in honor of the Pitris are superior (in point of merit) to those done in honor of the deities. I am the *Pitri* of both the deities and the Pitris, and am existing from the beginning (that is, from a time when they were not).[57] Becoming the Equine-head I rove through the Western and the Northern ocean and drink

sacrificial libations duly poured with *mantras* and solid sacrificial food offered with reverence and devotion.[58] In days of yore I created Brahman who himself adored me in sacrifices. Gratified with him on that account I granted him many excellent boons.[59] I said unto him that in the beginning of the Kalpa he would be born unto me as my son, and the sovereignty of all the worlds would vest on him, coupled with diverse names being bestowed on diverse objects in consequence of the starting of Ahankāra into existence.*[60] I also told him that the limits and boundaries he would assign (for the observance of creatures) none would ever violate and, further, that he would be the giver of boons unto persons that would (in sacrifices and by proper acts) solicit him for them.[61] I further assured him that he would be an object of adoration with all the deities and Asuras, all the Rishis and Pitris, and the diverse creatures forming the creation.[62] I also gave him to understand that I would always manifest myself for accomplishing the business of the deities and that for that matter I would suffer myself to be commanded by him even as a son by his sire.†[63] Granting these and other highly agreeable boons unto Brahman of immeasurable energy in consequence of my being gratified with him

---

* The Commentator is silent. The sense seems to be that as Brahman is to be the son of Nārāyana in the beginning of a Kalpa when there is no other existent object mobile or immobile, the same Brahman is to be vested with dominion over all things which he would himself create through *Ahankāra*. Of course, as long as Brahman is without 'Ahankāra' so long there can be no Creation, *i. e.*, no objects mobile and immobile, to be known by different names.—T.

† 'Nityadā' is 'always.' Some persons believe that Nārāyana has to manifest himself always for achieving the business of the deities. This Earth is not the only world where such manifestations are needed. As to the object of the manifestations, considerable difference of opinion prevails. In the Gitā, the great deity himself explains that that object is to rescue the good and destroy the wicked. Others hold that this is only a secondary object, the primary one being to gladden the hearts of the devout by affording them opportunities of worshipping him and applauding his acts, and to indulge in new joys by serving his own worshippers.—T.

I (once more) adopted the course dictated by Nivritti.[64] The highest Nivritti is identical with the annihilation of all duties and acts. Hence, by adopting Nivritti one should conduct oneself in complete felicity.[65] Learned preceptors, with settled convictions deduced from the truths of the Sānkhya philosophy, have spoken of me as Kapila endued with the puissance of Knowledge, dwelling within the effulgence of Surya, and concentrated in Yoga.*[66] In the Chcchandas (Vedas) I have been repeatedly hymned as the illustrious Hiranyagarbha. In the Yoga scriptures, O Brāhmana, I have been spoken of as one who takes a delight in Yoga.[67] I am eternal. Assuming a form that is manifest, I dwell, at present, in the heavens. At the end of a thousand Yugas I shall once more withdraw the universe into myself.[68] Having withdrawn all creatures, mobile and immobile, into myself, I shall exist all alone with Knowledge only for my companion.[69] After the lapse of ages I shall again create the universe, with the aid of that knowledge. That which is my fourth form creates the indestructible Cesha.[70] That Cesha is called by the name of Sankarshana. Sankarshana creates Praddyumna. From Praddyumna I take birth myself as Aniruddha. I create (myself) repeatedly.[71] From Aniruddha springs Brahman. The latter takes birth from Aniruddha's navel. From Brahman spring all creatures mobile and immobile.[72] Know that Creation springs in this way repeatedly at the beginning of every Kalpa. Creation and destruction succeed each other even as sunrise and sunset in this world.[73] Then, again, as Time, endued with immeasurable energy, forcibly brings back the Sun after his disappearance, after the same manner I shall, assuming the form of a boar and putting forth my strength, bring back the Earth with her belt of seas to her own position for the good of all creatures when she becomes submerged in water. I shall then slay the son of Diti, named Hiranyāksha, filled with pride of

* This is a reference to the well known description of Nārāyana as 'Savitri-mandala-madtyavartih &c.,' It is not the visible Sun whose disc is meant, but that pure fountain of effulgence which is inconceivable for its dazzling brightness that is implied.—T.

strength.*[74-75] Assuming the form then of a Man-lion, I shall, for benefiting the deities, slay Hiranyakaçipu, the son of Diti, who will be a great destroyer of sacrifices.[76] Unto Virochana (the son of Prahlāda) will be born a mighty son of the name of Vali. That great Asura will be unslayable of the whole universe consisting of deities, Asuras, and Rākshasas. He will hurl Cakra from the sovereignty of the universe.[77] When after routing the Lord of Cachi, that Asura will take unto himself the sovereignty of the three worlds, I shall take birth in Aditi's womb, by Kaçyapa, as the twelfth Āditya.[78] I shall (taking the sovereignty of the three worlds from Vali) restore it to Indra of immeasurable splendour, and replace the deities, O Nārada, in their respective stations.[79] As regards Vali, that foremost of Dānavas, who is to be unslayable by all the deities, I shall cause him to dwell in the nether regions.[80] In the Tretā age I shall take birth as Rāma in the race of Bhrigu, and exterminate the Kshatriyas who will become proud of their strength and possessions.[81] Towards the close of Tretā and the beginning of Dwāpara, I shall take birth as Rāma the son of Daçaratha in Ikshāku's royal line.[82] At that time, the two Rishis, *viz.*, the two sons of Prajāpati, called by the names of Ekata and Dwita, will in consequence of the injury done by them unto their brother Trita, have to take birth as apes, losing the beauty of the human form.[83] Those apes that shall take birth in the race of Ekata and Dwita, shall become endued with great strength and mighty energy and will equal Cakra himself in prowess. All those apes, O regenerate one, will become my allies for accomplishing the business of the deities.[84] I shall then slay the terrible lord of the Rākshasas, that wretch of Pulastya's race, *viz.*, the fierce Rāvana, that thorn of all the worlds, together with all his children and followers.[85] At the close of the period joining the Dwāpara and the Kali ages, I shall again appear in the world taking birth in the

* The tense used in the original is future. What is meant, however, is that the great deity does these acts at the beginning of every Kalpa when he recreates the Earth. All cycles or Kalpas are similar in respect of the incidents that occur in them.—T.

city of Mathurā for the purpose of slaying Kansa.[86] There, after slaying innumerable Dānavas that will be as thorns in the side of the deities, I shall take up my residence in Kuçasthali at the city of Dwārakā.[87] While residing in that city I shall slay the Asura Naraka the son of the Earth,—him, that is, who will do an injury to Aditi, as also some other Dānavas of the names of Muru and Pitha.[88] Slaying also another foremost of Dānavas, *viz.*, the lord of Prāgjyotisha, I shall transplant that delightful city furnished with diverse kinds of wealth into Dwārakā.[89] I shall then subjugate the two gods worshipped of all the deities, *viz.*, Maheçwara and Mahāsena, who will become fond of the Dānava Vāna and do him diverse good offices and who will exert themselves vigorously for that worshipper of theirs.*[90] Vanquishing next the son of the Dānava Vali, *viz.*, Vāna, who will be endued with a thousand arms, I shall next destroy all the inhabitants of the Dānava city called Saubha.†[91] I shall next, O foremost of Brāhmanas, compass the death of Kāla-yavana, a Dānava who will be endued with great might in consequence of his being equipt with the energy of Gargya.‡[92] A proud Asura will appear as a king at Girivraja, of the name of Jarāsandha,

---

* Maheçwara is Mahādeva or Civa. Mahāsena is Kārtikeya, the generalissimo of the celestial forces.—T.

† Vāna, the son of Vali, was a devout worshipper of Mahādeva. Vāna's daughter Ushā fell in love with Krishna's grandson Aniruddha. Aniruddha was imprisoned by Vāna. It was to rescue Aniruddha that Krishna fought with Vāna, after having vanquished both Mahādeva and Kārtikeya. The thousand and one arms of Vāna, less two, were lopped off by Krishna. The episode of the loves of Aniruddha and Ushā is a very beautiful one.—T.

‡ Saubha was the name of a flying city of the Dānavas. Krishna felled this city into the ocean, having killed all its Dānava inhabitants. As to Kāla-yavana, his death was brought about by Krishna under the following circumstances. Pursued by the Dānava, Krishna took refuge in a mountain-cave in which a king of the Satya Yuga was lying asleep. Entering the cave, Krishna stood at the head of the sleeping king. The Dānava, entering the cave after Krishna, found the sleeping king and awaked him. As soon as the king looked at the Dānava, the latter was consumed into ashes, for the gods had given a boon to the king that he who would awake him would be consumed by a glance of his.—T.

who will quarrel with all the other kings of the world. His death will be compassed by me through some one else guided by my intelligence.[93] I shall next slay Ciçupāla in the sacrifice of king Yudhishthira the son of Dharma,[94] into which sacrifice all the kings of the world will bring tribute. In some of these feats, only Arjuna, the son of Vāsava, will become my assistant.[95] I shall establish Yudhishthira with all his brothers in his ancestral kingdom. People will call me and Arjuna as Nārāyana and Nara,[96] when, endued with puissance, we two, exerting our strength, shall consume a large number of Kshatriyas, for doing good to the world. Having lightened the burthen of the Earth according to our pleasure, I shall merge all the principal Sāttwatas, as also Dwārakā, my favourite city, into my own self, recollecting my all-embracing Knowledge.[97-98] Endued with four forms, I shall, in this way, achieve many feats of great prowess, and attain at last to those regions of felicity created by me and honored by all the Brāhmanas.[99] Appearing in the forms of a swan, a tortoise, a fish, O foremost of regenerate ones, I shall then display myself as a boar, then as a man-lion, then as a dwarf, then as Rāma of Bhrigu's race, then as Rāma the son of Daçaratha, then as Krishna the scion of the Sāttwata race, and lastly as Kalki.[100] When the auditions in the Vedas disappeared from the world, I brought them back. The Vedas with the auditions in them, were re-created by me in the Krita age.[101] They have once more disappeared or may only be partially heard here and there in the Purānas. Many of my best appearances also in the world have become facts of the past.[102] Having achieved the good of the worlds in those forms in which I appeared, they have re-entered into my own Nature. Brahman (the Creator) himself never obtained a sight of me in this form of mine[103] which thou, O Nārada, hast seen today in consequence of thy entire devotion to me. I have now said unto thee everything, O Brāhmana,—unto thee that art devoted to me wholly. I have disclosed to thee my ancient appearances and future ones also, O best of men, together with all their mysteries![104]—'

"Bishma continued,—'The holy and illustrious deity, of

universal and immutable form, having said these words unto Nārada, disappeared there and then.[105] Nārada also, endued with great energy, having obtained the high favor that he had solicited, then proceeded with great speed to the retreat called Vadari, for beholding Nara and Nārāyana.[106] This great Upanishat, perfectly consistent with the four Vedas, in harmony with Sānkhya-yoga, and called by him by the name of the Pancharātra scriptures,[107] and recited by Nārāyana himself with his own mouth, was repeated by Nārada in the presence of many hearers in the abode of Brahman (his sire) in exactly the same way in which Nārāyana (while that great god had showed himself unto him) had recited it and in which he had heard it from his own lips![108]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Was not Brahman, the Creator of all things, acquainted with this wonderful narrative of the glory of Nārāyana endued with intelligence that he heard it from the lips of Nārada?[109] Is the illustrious Grandsire of all the worlds any way different from or inferior to the great Nārāyana? How then is it that he was unacquainted with the puissance of Nārāyana of immeasurable energy?'[110]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hundreds and thousands of great-Kalpas, hundreds and thousands of Creations and Dissolutions, O king of kings, have been over and become incidents of the past.*[111] In the beginning of every Creation, Brahman, endued with great puissance and who creates all things, is remembered (by Nārāyana). Brahman knows well, O king, that Nārāyana, that foremost of all gods is very

* The idea of Eternity without any conceivable beginning and conceivable end was so thoroughly realised by the Hindu sages that the chiefdom of Heaven itself was to them the concern of a moment. Nothing less than unchangeable felicity for all time was the object they pursued. All other things and states being mutable, and only Brahma being immutable, what they sought was an identification with Brahma. Such identification with the Supreme Soul was the Emancipation they sought. No other religion has ever been able to preach such a high ideal. The Hindu's concern is with Eternity. He regards his existence here as having the duration of but the millionth part of a moment. How to present re-birth and attain to an identification with the Supreme Soul is the object of his pursuit.—T.

much superior to him.[112] He knows that Nārāyana is the Supreme Soul, that He is the Supreme Lord, that He is the Creator of Brahman himself. It was only unto that conclave of Rishis crowned with ascetic success that came to the abode of Brahman, that Nārada recited his narrative which is a very ancient one and which is perfectly consistent with the Vedas. The deity Surya, having heard that narrative from those Rishis crowned with ascetic success,* repeated it to the six and sixty thousands of Rishis, O king, of cleansed souls, that follow in his train.[113-115] And Surya, the deity that imparts heat unto all the worlds, repeated that narrative unto those Beings also, of cleansed souls, that have been created (by Brahman) for always journeying in the van of Surya.†[116] The high-souled Rishis that follow in Surya's train, O son, repeated that excellent narrative unto the deities assembled on the breast of Meru.[117] That best of ascetics, *viz.*, the regenerate Asita, then, having heard the narrative from the deities, repeated it unto the Pitris, O king of kings.[118] I heard it from my sire Cāntanu, O son, who recited it to me formerly. Myself having heard it from my sire, I have repeated it to thee, O Bhārata.[119] Deities and Munis, they who have heard this excellent old narrative which is a *Purāna*, all adore the Supreme Soul.[120] This narrative, belonging to the Rishis and thus handed down from one to another, should not, O king, be communicated by thee to any

* K. P. Singha has completely misunderstood the sense of Verse 113. Bhishma does not certainly mean that Brahman was unacquainted with the narrative. What Bhishma says is that it was not to Brahman, but to the Siddhas assembled in Brahman's abode, that Nārada recited his narrative.—T.

† K. P. Singha misunderstands Verses 115 and 116 completely. The fact is, Surya recited the narrative unto those that precede and those that follow him in his journey through the firmament. K. P. Singha confounds the two classes of persons together. The Burdwan translator, as usual, makes nonsense of Verse 116. The correct reading (as given in the Bombay text) is 'lokān', the grammatical construction being 'lokān tapatah suryasya &c', The Burdwan translator makes Surya repeat the narrative "to the worlds created and placed before Surya".—T.

one that is not a worshipper of Vāsudeva.[121] This narrative, O king, is really the essence of the hundreds of other narratives that thou hast heard from me.[122] In days of yore, O monarch, the deities and the Asuras, uniting together, churned the Ocean and raised the Amrita. After the same manner, the Brāhmanas, uniting together in days of yore, churned all the scriptures and raised this narrative which resembles nectar.[123] He who frequently reads this narrative, and he who frequently listens to it, with concentrated attention, in a retired spot, and filled with devotion,[124] succeeds in becoming a denizen, possessed of lunar complexion, of the spacious island known by the name of White Island. Without doubt, such a man succeeds in entering into Nārāyana of a thousand rays.[125] A sick person, by listening to this narrative from the beginning, becomes freed from his illness. The man that simply desires to read or listen to this narrative obtains the fruition of all his wishes. The devoted worshipper, by reading or listening to it, attains to the high end that is reserved for devoted worshippers.[126] Thou also, O monarch, shouldst alwayst adore and worship that foremost of all Beings. He is the father and the mother of all creatures, and He is an object of reverence with the entire universe.[127] Let the illustrious and Eternal God of the Brāhmanas, *viz.*, Janārddana of high intelligence, be gratified with thee, O Yudhishthira of mighty arms!' "[128]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having listened to this best of narratives, O Janamejaya, king Yudhishthira the just and all his brothers became devoted to Nārāyana.[129] And all of them, O Bhārata, betaking themselves to the practice of silently meditating upon Nārāyana (from that day), uttered these words for His glorification, *viz.*, 'Victory to that holy and illustrious Being!'[130] He, again, who is our best of preceptors, *viz.*, the Island-born Krishna, devoted to penances, sung, uttering the word *Nārāyana*, that high *mantra* which is worthy of being recited in silence.[131] Sojourning through the welkin to the Ocean of milk, which is always the abode of nectar, and worshipping the great God there, he came back to his own hermitage.[132]

"Bhishma continued,—'I have now repeated to thee the narrative that was recited by Nārada (unto the conclave of Rishis assembled in the abode of Brahman). That narrative has descended from person to person from very ancient times. I heard it from my sire who formerly repeated it to me.' "[133]

Suta continued,—I have now told you all that Vaiçampāyana recited to Janamejaya. Having listened to Vaiçampāyana's narration, king Janamejaya properly discharged all his duties according to the ordinances laid down in the scriptures.[134] Ye have all undergone very severe penances and observed many high and excellent vows. Residing in this sacred forest that is known by the name of Naimisha, ye are foremost of all persons conversant with the Vedas.[135] Ye foremost of regenerate ones, ye all have come to this great sacrifice of Caunaka. Do ye all adore and worship that Eternal and Supreme Lord of the universe in excellent sacrifices, properly pouring libations of clarified butter into the fire with the aid of *mantras* and dedicating the same unto Nārāyana. As regards myself, I heard this excellent narrative that has descended from generation to generation, from my sire who recited it to me in former times.[136]

SECTION CCCXLI.

Caunaka said,—How is that illustrious god, *viz.*, the puissant Nārāyana, who is fully conversant with the Vedas and their branches, at once the doer and the enjoyer of sacrifices?[1] Endued with forgiveness, he has adopted, again, the religion of Nivritti (abstention). Indeed, it is that holy and puissant one who has himself ordained the duties of Nivritti.[2] Why then has he made many of the deities the takers of shares in sacrifices which, of course, are all due to the religion of Pravritti? Why has he again created some with a contrary disposition, for they follow the ordinances of the religion of abstention?[3] Do thou, O Suta, dispel this doubt of ours. This doubt seems to be eternal and is connected with a great mystery. Thou hast heard all discourses

on Nārāyana, discourses that are consistent with the (other) scriptures.*[4]

Sauti said,—O excellent Caunaka, I shall recite to thee what Vaiçampāyana, the disciple of the intelligent Vyāsa, said when questioned on these very topics by king Janamejaya.[5] Having heard the discourse on the glory of Nārāyana who is the Soul of all embodied creatures, Janamejaya, endued with great intelligence and wisdom, questioned Vaiçampāyana on these very subjects.[6]

Janamejaya said,—"The whole world of Being, with Brahman, the deities, the Asuras and human beings, are seen to be deeply attached to acts which have been said to be productive of prosperity.[7] Emancipation has, O regenerate one, been said by thee to be the highest felicity and to consist of the cessation of existence. They who, being divested of both merit and demerit, become emancipate, succeed, we hear, in entering the great God of a thousand rays.[8] It seems to be O Brāhmana, that the eternal religion of Emancipation is exceedingly difficult of observance. Turning away from it, all the deities have become enjoyers of the libations of clarified butter poured with *mantras* on sacrificial fires and other offerings presented to them by the same or similar means.[9] Then, again, Brahman, and Rudra, the puissant Cakra the slayer of Vala, Surya, the Lord of the stars (*viz.*, Chandramas), the Wind-god, the deity of fire, the deity of the Waters, Infinite Space (as a living Being), the Universe too (as a conscious agent), and the rest of the denizens of heaven,—these, it seems, are ignorant of the way of securing an annihilation of conscious existenee that is brought about by one's own efforts.†[10-11] Hence, perhaps, they have not betaken themselves

* The drift of Caunaka's queries seems to be this: the religion of Pravritti is opposed to that of Nivritti. How is it that both have been created by the same Nārāyana? How is it that he has made some with dispositions to follow the one, and others with dispositions to follow the other?—T.

† 'Atmanah parinirmitam pralayam' means that destruction or cessation of existence which is brought about by one's own exertion. What the king says here is,—If the religion of Nivritti be so superior in consequence of its superior end, why is it that the deities who are

to the path that is certain, indestructible, and immutable. Hence, perhaps, turning away from that path, they have adopted the religion of Pravritti which leads to conscious existence that is measured by time.[12] This, indeed, is one great fault that attaches to those that are wedded to acts, for all their rewards are terminable. This doubt, O regenerate one, is planted in my heart like a dagger! Tear it out by reciting to me some discourses of old on this topic. Great is my curiosity to listen to thee.[13] For what reason, O regenerate one, have the deities been said to be takers of their respective shares of sacrificial offerings presented to them with the aid of *mantras* in sacrifices of diverse kinds? Why again are the denizens of heaven adored in sacrifices?[14] And, O best of regenerate persons, to whom do they, that take their shares of offerings in sacrifices performed to their honor, themselves make offerings when they perform great sacrifices?"[15]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The question thou hast asked me, O ruler of men, relates to a deep mystery. No man can speedily answer it that has not undergone penances, and that is not acquainted with the Purānas.[16] I shall, however, answer thee by reciting to thee what my preceptor the Island-born Krishna, otherwise called Vyāsa, the great Rishi who has distributed the Vedas, had said unto us on a former occasion when questioned by us.[17] Sumanta, and Jaimini, and Paila of firm vows, and myself numbering the fourth, and Cuka forming the fifth, were disciples of the illustrious Vyāsa.[18] We, numbering five in all, endued with self-restraint and purity of observances, had completely subjugated wrath and controlled our senses. Our preceptor used to teach us the Vedas having the Mahābhārata for their fifth.[19] Once on a time, on the breast of that foremost of mountains, *viz.*, the delightful Meru, inhabited by Siddhas and Chāranas while we

---

all superior to us did not pursue it? Were they ignorant of the method by which Emancipation is attainable? Are they yet ignorant of the means by which to win cessation of existence? K. P. Singha renders the Verse correctly. The Burdwan translator misunderstands it although he repeats the exact words of the second foot of the second line.—T.

were engaged in studying the Vedas, this very doubt arose in our minds[20] that has been expressed by thee today. We, therefore, questioned our preceptor about it. I heard the answer that our preceptor made. I shall now recite that answer to thee, O Bhārata![21] Hearing the words that were addressed to him by his disciples, that dispeller of all kinds of darkness represented by ignorance, *viz.*, the blessed Vyāsa the son of Parāçara, said these words:[22]—I have undergone very severe, in fact, the austerest of penances. Ye best of men, I am fully conversant with the Past, the Present, and the Future.[23] In consequence of those penances of mine and of the restraint under which I kept my senses, while I dwelt on the shores of the ocean of milk, Nārāyana became gratified with me. As the result of the great God's gratification, this omniscience with respect to the Past, the Present, and the Future, that was desired by me, arose in my mind.[24] Listen now to me as I discourse to you, in due order, on this great doubt that has disturbed your minds. I have, with the eye of knowledge, beheld all that occurred in the beginning of the Kalpa.[25] He whom both the Sānkhyas and those conversant with Yoga call by the name of the Supreme Soul, comes to be regarded as the foremost Purusha in consequence of his own acts. From Him springs forth Prakriti that is called the unmanifest or Pradhāna by the learned.[26] From the puissant Unmanifest sprang, for the creation of all the worlds, he that is called Aniruddha. That Aniruddha is known among all creatures by the name of the Great Soul.[27] It is that Aniruddha who, becoming manifest, created the Grandsire Brahman. Aniruddha is known by another name, *viz.*, consciousness, and is endued with every kind of energy.[28] Earth, Wind, Space, Water, and Light numbering the fifth,—these are the five Great Creatures that have sprung from Consciousness.[29] Having created the Great Creatures (five in number) he then created their attributes.* Combining the Great Creatures, he

*(That is, the attributes of vision to Light, taste to Water, sound to space, touch to Wind, and scent to Earth.—T.

then created diverse embodied Beings. Listen to me as I recount them to you.[30] Marichi, Angiras, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, the high-souled Vaçishtha, and the Self-born Manu,—these should be known as the eight Prakriti elements. Upon these depend all the worlds.[31] Then the Grandsire of all the worlds, *viz.*, Brahman, created, for the success of all creatures, the Vedas with all their branches as also the Sacrifices with their limbs. From these eight Prakriti-elements have sprung this vast universe.[32] Then sprang Rudra from the principle of wrath. Starting into life, he created ten others that were like him. These eleven Rudras are called by name of Vikāra-Purushas.[33] The Rudras, the (eight) Prakritis, and the several celestial Rishis, having started into life, approached Brahman with the object of upholding the universe and its operations.[34] Addressing the Grandsire, they said,—We have been created, O holy one, by thee, O thou of great puissance. Tell us, O Grandsire, which of us should be vested with what jurisdiction![35] What jurisdictions have been created by thee for supervising what particular affairs? Which of us should, endued with what kind of consciousness, shall take charge of which of these?[36] Do thou ordain also unto each of us the measure of strength that we are to have for discharging the duties of our respective jurisdictions.'—Thus addressed by them, the great god replied unto them in the following way.[37]

"'Brahman said,—You have done well, ye deities, in speaking to me of this matter. Blessed be you all! I was thinking of this very subject that has engaged your attention.[38] How should the three worlds be upheld and kept agoing? How should your strength and mine to be utilized towards that end?[39] Let all of us, leaving this place, repair to that unmanifest and foremost of Beings who is the witness of the world, for seeking his protection. He will tell us what is for our good.[40]—After this, those deities and Rishis, with Brahman, proceeded to the northern shores of the ocean of milk, desirous of doing good to the three worlds.[41] Arrived there, they began to practise those austere penances that are declared by Brahman in the Vedas. Those

austerest of penances are known by the name of Mahāniyama (the foremost of vows and observances).[42] They stood there with mind fixed, immovable as posts of wood, and with eyes upturned and arms raised upwards.[43] For a thousand celestial years they were engaged in those severe penances. At the conclusion of that period they heard these sweet words in harmony with the Vedas and their branches.[44]

" 'The blessed and holy one said,—Ye deities and Rishis possessed of wealth of asceticism, with Brahman in your company, honoring you all with welcome, I say unto you these words![45] I know what is in your hearts! Verily, the thoughts that engage you are for the good of the three worlds. I shall increase your energy and strength, investing the same with Pravritti (predilection for acts).[46] Ye gods, well have you undergone these penances from desire of adoring me! Ye foremost of Beings, enjoy now the excellent fruits of those austerities which ye have gone through![47] This Brahman is the Lord of all the worlds. Endued with puissance, he is the Grandsire of all creatures. Ye also are foremost of deities. Do ye all, with concentrated minds, perform sacrifices for my glory.[48] In those sacrifices which you will perform, do ye always give me a portion of the sacrificial offerings. I shall then, ye lords of creation, assign to each of you your respective jurisdictions and ordain what will be for your good![49]—' "

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of that God of gods, all those deities and great Rishis and Brahman became filled with such delight that the hair on their bodies stood on its end.[50] They forthwith made arrangements for a sacrifice in honor of Vishnu according to the ordinances laid down in the Vedas. In that sacrifice, Brahman himself dedicated a portion of the offerings to Vishnu.[51] The deities and the celestial Rishis also, after the manner of Brahman, dedicated similar portions each unto the great God. The portions, thus offered with great reverence unto Vishnu, were, in respect of both the measure and the quality of the articles used, according to the ordinances laid down for the Krita age.[52] The deities and the Rishis and Brahman, in

that sacrifice, adored the great God as one endued with the complexion of the Sun, as the foremost of Beings, situate beyond the reach of Tamas, vast, pervading all things, the Supreme Lord of all, the giver of boons, and possessed of puissance.[53] Thus adored by them, the boon-giving and great God, invisible and bodiless, addressed those assembled celestials from heaven and said unto them:[54]—'The offerings dedicated by you in this sacrifice have all reached me. I am gratified with all of you. I shall bestow rewards on you that will, however, be fraught with ends whence there will be return.*[55] This shall be your distinctive feature, ye gods, from this day, in consequence of my grace and kindness for you. Performing sacrifices in every Yuga, with large presents, ye will become enjoyers of fruits born of Pravritti.[56] Ye gods, those men also that will perform sacrifices according to the ordinances of the Vedas, will give into all of you shares of their sacrificial offerings.[57] In the Veda-sutras I make him the receiver (in such sacrifices) of a share similar to that which he has himself offered one in this sacrifice.[58] Created to look after those affairs that appertain to your respective jurisdictions, do ye uphold the worlds according to the measures of your strength as dependent on the shares you receive in those sacrifices.[59] Indeed, drawing strength from those rites and observances that will be current in the several worlds, taking their rise from the fruits of Pravritti, do ye continue to uphold the affairs of those worlds.†[60] Strengthened by the sacrifices that will be performed by men, ye will strengthen me. These are the thoughts that I entertain for you all.[61] It is for this purpose that I have created the Vedas and sacrifices and plants and herbs. Duly served with these by human beings on Earth, the deities will be

---

* 'Avritti lakshanam' means that the reward to be bestowed shall not be Emancipation whence there is no return, but such reward (as the felicity of heaven) whence there will be a return for each of the receivers.—T.

† 'Taking their rise from the fruits of Pravritti' implies 'having their origion in their desire for such fruits as appertain to the religion of Pravritti or acts.'—T.

gratified.[62] Ye foremost of deities, till the end of this Kalpa, I have ordained your creation, making your constitutions depend upon the consequence of the religion of Pravritti. Ye foremost of Beings, do ye then, as regards your respective urisdictions, engage yourselves in seeking the good of the three words.[63] Marichi, Angiras, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vaçishtha,—these seven Rishis have been created by a fiat of the will.[64] These will become the foremost of all persons conversant with the Vedas. In fact, they will become the preceptors of the Vedas. They will be wedded to the religion of Pravritti for they have been intended to devote themselves to the act of procreating offspring.[65] This is the eternal path that I disclose of creatures engaged in acts and observances. The puissant Lord who is charged with the creation of all the worlds is called Aniruddha.[66] Sana, Sanatsujāta, Sanaka, Sanandana, Sanatkumāra, Kapila, and Sanātana numbering the seventh,[67]—these seven Rishis are known as the spiritual sons of Brahman. Their knowledge comes to them of itself (without being dependant on study or exertion). These seven are wedded to the religion of Nivritti.[68] They are the foremost of all persons conversant with Yoga. They are possessed also of deep knowledge of the Sānkhya philosophy. They are preceptors of the scriptures on duty and it is they that introduce the duties of the religion of Nivritti and cause them to flow in the worlds.[69] From Unmanifest (Prakriti) has flowed Consciousness and the three great attributes (of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas). Transcending Prakriti is he called Kshetrajna.[70] That Kshetrajna is myself. The path of those that are wedded to acts is fraught with return. One cannot, by that path, reach the spot whence there is no return. Different creatures have been created with different ends. Some are intended for the path of Pravritti and some for that of Nivritti. According to the path that a creature follows is the reward that he enjoys. This Brahman is the master of all the worlds. Endued with puissance it is he that creates the universe.*[71-72]

---

* What is stated here is that creatures following the path of Pravritti cannot hope to reach the spot whence there is no return. It is

He is your mother and father, and he is your grandfather. At my command, he will be the giver of boons unto all creatures.[73] His son Rudra, who has sprung from his brow at his command, will, endued with puissance, uphold all created beings.[74] Go ye to your respective jurisdictions, and seek, according to the ordinances, the good of the worlds! Let all the scriptural acts flow in all the worlds. Let there be no delay in this.[75] Ye foremost of celestials, do ye ordain the acts of all creatures and the ends that they are to attain therefor. Do ye appoint also the limits of the periods for which all creatures are to live.[76] This present epoch that has been set to run is the foremost of all epochs and should be known by the name of Krita. In this Yuga living creatures should not be slain in the sacrifices that may be performed. It should be as I ordain and let it not be otherwise.[77] In this age, ye celestials, Righteousness will flourish in its entirety.* After this age will come the epoch called Tretā. The Vedas, in that Yuga, will lose one quarter. Only three of them will exist.[78] In the sacrifices that will be performed in that age, animals, after dedication with the aid of sacred *mantras*, will be slain. As regards Righteousness again, it will lose one quarter; only three quarters thereof will flourish.[79] On the expiration of the Tretā will come the mixed Yuga known by the name of Dwāpara. In that Yuga, Righteousness will lose two quarters and only two quarters thereof will flourish.[80] Upon the expiration of Dwāpara the Yuga that will set in will be called Tish, and it will come with Kali walking in the van. Righteousness will lose full three quarters. Only a quarter thereof will exist in all places!—'[81]

"'When the great God said these words, the deities and

---

by the path of Nivritti that that spot it capable of being reached. The path of Pravritti is always fraught with return. One may become, by walking along that path, the very chief of the celestials, but that status is not eternal. Since the beginning (if a beginning can be conceived), millions and millions of Indras have arisen and fallen down.—T.

* Literally, 'with their four quarters entire'.—T.

the celestial Rishis addressed him and said,—If only a fourth part of Righteousness is to exist in that age in every place, tell us, O holy one, whither shall we then go and what shall we do?—[82]

" 'The blessed and holy one said,—Ye foremost of celestials, ye should, in that age, repair to such places where the Vedas and sacrifices and Penances and Truth and self-restraint, accompanied by duties fraught with compassion for all creatures, will still continue to flourish. Sin will never be able to touch you at all!—'[83]

"Vyāsa continued,—'Thus commanded by the great God, the deities with all the Rishis bowed their heads unto him and then proceeded to the places they desired.[84] After the denizens of heaven had left that place, only Brahman remained there, desirous of beholding the great Deity then residing in the form of Aniruddha.[85] The foremost of deities then showed himself to Brahman, having assumed a form that had a vast equine head. Bearing a Kamandalu and the triple stick, he appeared before Brahman, reciting the while the Vedas with all their branches.[86] Beholding the great Deity of immeasurable energy in that form crowned with an equine head, the puissant Brahman, the Creator of all the worlds, moved by the desire of doing good to his Creation,[87] worshipped that boon-giving Lord with a bend of his head, and stood before him with hands joined in reverence. The great Deity embraced Brahman and then told him these words.[88]

" 'The holy one said,—Do thou, O Brahman, duly think of the courses of acts which creatures are to follow. Thou art the great ordainer of all created Beings. Thou art the Master and the Lord of the universe. Placing this burthen on thee I shall soon be free from anxiety.[89] At such times, however, when it will be difficult for thee to accomplish the purposes of the deities, I shall then appear in incarnate forms due to my own apprehension of the gravity of the emergencies![90]—Having said these words, that grand form with the equine head disappeared then and there. Having received his command, Brahman too proceeded quickly to his own region.[91] It is for this, O blessed one, that the

eternal Deity, with the lotus in his navel, became the acceptor of the first share offered in sacrifices and hence it is that He came to be called as the eternal upholder of all Sacrifices.[92] He himself adopted the religion of Nivritti, the end after which those creatures strive that are desirous of indestructible fruits. He ordained at the same time the religion of Pravritti for others, with the view of giving variety to the universe.[93] He is the beginning, He is the middle, and He is the end of all created Beings. He is their Creator and He is their one object of meditation. He is the actor and He is the act. Having withdrawn the universe into Himself at the end of the Yuga, He goes to sleep, and awakening at the commencement of another Yuga, He once more creates the universe.[94] Do you all bow unto that illustrious one who is possessed of high soul and who transcends the three attributes, who is Unborn, whose form is the universe, and who is the abode or refuge of all the denizens of heaven.[95] Do you bow unto Him who is the Supreme Lord of all creatures, who is the Lord of the Rudras, who is the Lord of the Ādityas, and of the Vasus as well.[96] Do you bow unto Him who is the Lord of the Açwins, and the Lord of the Maruts, who is the Lord of all the Sacrifices ordained in the Vedas, and the Lord of the Vedāngas.[97] Bow unto Him who always resides in the Ocean, and who is called Hari, and whose hair is like the blades of the Munja grass. Bow unto Him who is Peace and Tranquillity, and who imparts the religion of Moksha unto all creatures.[98] Bow unto Him who is the Lord of Penances, of all kinds of energy, and of Fame, who is ever the Lord of Speech and the Lord of all the Rivers also.[99] Bow unto Him who is called Kaparddin, who is the Great Boar, who is the Unicorn, and who is possessed of great intelligence; who is the Sun, who assumed the well-known form with the equine head; and who is always displayed in a fourfold form.[100] Bow unto Him who is unrevealed, who is capable of being apprehended by knowledge only, who is both indestructible and destructible. The supreme Deity, who is immutable, pervadeth all things.[101] He is the Supreme Lord who can be known with the aid of

the eye of Knowledge alone. It was thus that, aided by the eye of Knowledge, I beheld in days of yore that foremost of deities.[102] Asked by you, I have told you everything in detail, ye disciples, and do you act according to my words and dutifully serve the Supreme Lord called Hari. Do you hymn His praises in Vedic words and adore and worship Him also according to due rites!'"[103]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"It was thus that the arranger of the Vedas, endued with great intelligence, discoursed to us, questioned by us on that occasion. His son, the highly righteous Cuka, and all his disciples (*viz.*, ourselves) listened to him while he delivered that discourse.[104] Our preceptor, with ourselves, O king, then adored the great Deity with Richs extracted from the four Vedas.[105] I have thus told thee everything about what thou hadst asked me. It was thus, O king, that our Island-born preceptor discoursed to us.[106] He who, having uttered the words—'I bow unto the holy Lord,'—frequently listens, with concentrated attention, to this discourse or reads or recites it to others,[107] becomes endued with intelligence and health, and possessed of beauty and strength. If ill, he becomes freed from that illness; if bound, freed from his bonds. The man who cherishes desires obtains (by this) the fruition of all his desires, and easily attains to a long life also.[108] A Brāhmana, by doing this, becomes conversant with all the Vedas, and a Kshatriya becomes crowned with success. A Vaiçya, by doing it, makes considerable profits, and a Cudra attains to great felicity.[109] A sonless man obtains a son. A maiden obtains a desirable husband. A woman that has conceived brings forth a son.[110] A barren woman conceives and attains to wealth of sons and grandsons. He who recites this discourse on the way succeeds in passing happily and without impediments of any kind along his way. In fact, one attains to whatever objects one cherishes, if one reads or recites this narrative.[111] Hearing these words of the great Rishi, fraught with certainty of conclusion, and embodying a recital of the attributes of that high-souled one who is the foremost of all beings, hearing this narrative of the great conclave of Rishis and other

denizens of heaven,—men who are devoted to the Supreme Deity derive great happiness."[112]

SECTION CCCXLII.

Janamejaya said,—"O holy one, it behooveth thee to tell me the significations of those diverse names uttering which the great Rishi Vyāsa with his disciples hymned the praises of the illustrious slayer of Madhu. I am desirous of hearing those names of Hari, that Supreme Lord of all creatures. Indeed, by listening to those names, I shall be sanctified and cleansed even like the bright autumnal moon !"[1-2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Listen, O king, to what the significations are of the diverse names, due to attributes and acts, of Hari as the puissant Hari himself of cheerful soul explained them to Phālguna.[3] That slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, Phālguna, had at one time asked Keçava, enquiring after the imports of the some of the names by which the high-souled Keçava is adored.[4]

"Arjuna said,—'O holy one, O Supreme ordainer of the Past and the Future, O Creator of all Beings, O immutable one, O Refuge of all the worlds, O Lord of the universe, O dispeller of the fears of all persons,[5] I desire to hear from thee in detail, O Keçava, the significations of all those names of thine, O God, which have been mentioned by the great Rishis in the Vedas and the Purānas in consequence of diverse acts of thine ! None else than thee, O Lord, is competent to explain the significations of those names.'[6-7]

"The holy one said,—'In the Rigveda, in the Yajurveda, in the Atharvans and the Sāmans, in the Purānas and the Upanishads, as also in the treatises on astrology, O Arjuna,[8] in the Sānkhya scriptures, in the Yoga scriptures, and in the treatises also on the Science of Life, many are the names that have been mentioned by the great Rishis.[9] Some of those names are derivable from my attributes and some of them relate to my acts. Do thou hear, with concentrated attention, O sinless one, what the import is of each of those names (in particular) that have reference to my acts, [10]I se recite

them to you. It is said that in days of yore you were half my body. Salutations unto Him of great glory, Him, *viz.*, that is the Supreme Soul of all embodied creatures'*[11] Salutations unto Nārāyana, unto Him that is identifiable with the universe, unto Him that transcends the three (primal) attributes (of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas), unto Him that is, again, the Soul of those attributes. From His grace hath arisen Brahman and from His wrath hath arisen Rudra.[12] He is the source whence have sprung all mobile and immobile creatures. O foremost of all persons endued with Sattwa, the attribute of Sattwa consists of the eight and ten qualities.† That attribute is Supreme Nature having for her soul the Sky and Earth and succeeding by her creative forces in upholding the universe.[13] That Nature is identical with the fruit of all acts (in the form of the diverse regions of felicity to which creatures attain through their acts). She is also the pure Chit. She is immortal, and invincible, and is called the Soul of the universe. From her flows all the modifications of both Creation and Destruction.[14] (She is identical with my Prakriti or Nature). Divested of sex, She or He is the penances that people undergo. He is both the sacrifice that is performed and the sacrificer that performs the sacrifice. He is the ancient and the infinite Purusha. He is otherwise called Aniruddha and is the source of the Creation and the Destruction of the universe.[15] When Brahmana's night wore off, through the grace of that Being of immeasurable energy, a lotus made its appearance first, O thou of eyes like lotus petals.[16] Within that lotus was born Brahman, springing from Aniruddha's grace. Towards the evening of Brahman's day, Aniruddha became filled with wrath, and as a consequence of this, there sprang from his forehead a son called Rudra vested with the power of destroying everything (when the hour for destruc-

---

* This salutation of Krishna unto the Supreme Soul is very characteristic. He salutes himself by saluting the Supreme Soul.—T.

† Sattwa is the attribute of righteousness. It is said to consist of eight and ten qualities. The Commentator mentions them all.—T.

tion comes). These two, *viz.*, Brahman and Rudra, are the foremost of all the deities, having sprung respectively from the Cheerfulness and the Wrath (of Aniruddha).[17-18] Acting according to Aniruddha's directions, these two deities Create and Destroy. Although capable of granting boons unto all creatures, they are, however, in the matter of the concerns to which they attend, (*viz.*, Creation and Destruction), merely instruments in the hands of Aniruddha. (It is Aniruddha that does everything, making Brahman and Rudra the visible agents in respect of the universe).[19] Rudra is otherwise called Kaparddin. He has matted locks on his head, and sometimes displays a head that is bald. He loves to dwell in the midst of crematoriums which constitute his home. He is an observer of the austerest vows. He is a Yogin of mighty puissance and energy.[20] He is the destroyer of Daksha's sacrifice and the tearer of Bhaga's eyes. O son of Pāndu, Rudra should be known to have always Nārāyana for his Soul.[21] If that deity of deities, *viz.*, Maheçwara, be worshipped, then, O Pārtha, is the puissant Nārāyana also worshipped.[22] I am the Soul, O son of Pāndu, of all the worlds, of all the universe. Rudra, again, is my Soul. It is for this that I always adore him.[23] If I do not adore the auspicious and boon-giving Içāna, nobody would then adore my own self.[24] The ordinances I set are followed by all the worlds. Those ordinances should always be adored, and it is, therefore, that I adore them.[25] He who knows Rudra knows myself, and he who knows myself knows Rudra. He who follows Rudra follows me. Rudra is Nārāyana. Both are one; and one is displayed in two different forms.[26] Rudra and Nārāyana, forming one person, pervade all displayed things and cause them to act. No one else than Rudra is competent to grant me a boon, O son of Pāndu.[27] Having settled this in my mind, I adored in days of yore the ancient and puissant Rudra, for obtaining the boon of a son. In adoring Rudra thus, I adored my own self.[28] Vishnu never bows his head unto any deity except his own self. It is for this reason that I adore Rudra, (Rudra being, as I have already told thee, my own self).[29] All the deities, including Brahman

and Indra and the deities and the great Rishis, adore Nārāyana, that foremost of deities, otherwise called by the name of Hari.[30] Vishnu is the foremost of all Beings past, present, or future, and as such should always be adored and worshipped with reverence.[31] Do thou bow thy head unto Vishnu. Do thou bow thy head unto Him who gives protection to all. Do thou bow, O son of Kunti, unto that great boon-giving deity, that foremost of deities, who eats the offerings made unto him in sacrifices.[32] I have heard that there are four kinds of worshippers. Among them all, they that are devoted to me wholly and do not adore any other deity, are the foremost. I am the end they seek, and though engaged in acts, they never seek the fruits thereof.[33] The three remaining classes of my worshippers are those that are desirous of the fruits of their acts. They attain to regions of great felicity, but then they have to fall down therefrom upon the exhaustion of their merits. Those amongst my worshippers, therefore, that are fully awakened (and, as such, that know that all happiness is terminable except what is attainable by persons that become identified with me) obtain what is foremost (and invaluable).*[34] Those that are awakened and whose conduct displays such enlightenment, may be engaged in adoring Brahman or Mahādeva or the other deities that occur in heaven, but they succeed at least in attaining to myself.[35] I have thus told thee, O Pārtha, what the destinctions are between my worshippers.[36] Thyself, O son of Kunti, and myself are known as Nara and Nārāyana. Both of us have assumed human bodies only for the purpose of lightening the burthen of the Earth.[37] I know the different kinds of Yoga that rest on the Soul. I know who I am and whence I am, O Bhārata. I know the religion of Nivritti, and all that contributes to the prosperity of creatures.[38] Eternal as I am, I am the one sole Refuge of all men. The waters have been called by the name of Nāra, for they sprang from Him called Nara. And since the waters, in former times, were my

---

* *I. e.*, Emancipation or complete identification with the Supreme Soul.—T.

refuge, I am, therefore, called by the name of Nārāyana.[39] Assuming the form of the Sun I cover the universe with my rays. And because I am the home of all creatures, therefore, am I called by the name of Vāsudeva.[40] I am the end of all creatures and their sire, O Bhārata. I pervade the entire firmament and the Earth, O Pārtha, and my splendour transcends every other splendour.[41] I am He, O Bhārata, whom all creatures wish to attain to at the end. And because I overwhelm all the universe, I have come to be called by the name of Vishnu.[42] Desirous of attaining to success through restraint of their senses, people seek to attain to me who am heaven and Earth and the firmament between the two. For this am I called by the name of Dāmodara.[43] The word Priçni includes food, the Vedas, water, and nectar. These four are always in my stomach. Hence am I called by the name of Priçnigarbha.[44] The Rishis have said that once on a time when the Rishi Trita was thrown into a well by Ekata and Dwita, the distressed Trita invoked me, saying,—O Priçnigarbha, do thou rescue the fallen Trita![45]—That foremost of Rishis, *viz.*, Trita, the spiritual) son of Brahman, having called on me thus, was rescued from the pit.[46] The rays that emanate from the Sun who gives heat to the world, from the blazing fire, and from the Moon, constitute my hair. Hence do foremost of learned Brāhmanas call me by the name of Keçava.[47] The high-souled Utathya having impregnated his wife disappeared from her side through an illusion of the gods. The younger brother Vrihaspati then appeared before that high-souled one's wife.[48] Unto that foremost of Rishis that had repaired thither from desire of congress, the child in the womb of Utathya's wife, O son of Kunti, whose body had already been formed of the five primal elements, said,[49]—O giver of boons, I have already entered into this womb. It behooveth thee not to assail my mother!—Hearing these words of the unborn child, Vrihaspati became filled with wrath and denounced a curse on him, saying,[50]—Since thou obstructest me in this way when I have come hither from desire of the pleasures of congress, therefore shalt thou, through my curse, be visited by blind-

ness, without doubt![51]—Through this curse of that foremost of Rishis, the child of Utathya was born blind and blind he remained for a long time. It was for this reason that that Rishi, in days of yore, came to be known by the name of Dirghatamas.[52] He, however, acquired the four Vedas with their eternal limbs and subsidiary parts. After that he frequently invoked me by this secret name of mine. Indeed, according to the ordinance as laid down he repeatedly called upon me by the name of Keçava.[53] Through the merit he acquired by uttering this name repeatedly, he became cured of his blindness and then came to be called by the name of Gotama. This name of mine, therefore, O Arjuna, is productive of boons unto them that utter it[54] among all the deities and the high-souled Rishis. The deity of fire and Shoma, blending together, become transfused into one and the same substance. It is for this reason that the entire universe of mobile and immobile creatures is said to be pervaded by those two deities.*[55] In the Purānas, Agni and Shoma are spoken of as possessing natures that had one and the same result. The deities also are said to have Agni for their mouth. It is in consequence of these two beings endued with natures leading to the same result that they are said to be deserving of each other and upholders of the universe.' "[56]

Section CCCXLIII.

"Arjuna said,—'How did Agni and Shoma, in days of yore, attain to uniformity in respect of their original nature?

---

* The object of this Verse, the Commentator says, is to explain the meaning of the word 'Hrishikeça'. Agni is the digestive fire, and Shoma is food. Uniting together, Agni and Shoma, therefore, uphold the universe. In the form of digestive fire and food, Agni and Shoma are two gladdeners of the universe. They are called on this account 'Hrishi' (in the dual number). And since they are, as it were, the 'keça' or hair of Nārāyana, therefore is he called 'Hirishikeça' All these etymologies are very fanciful. Elsewhere the word 'Hrishikeça' is explained as the 'Içа' or lord of 'Hrishika' or the senses.—T.

This doubt has arisen in my mind. Do thou dispel it, O slayer of Madhu !'[1]

"The highly and holy one said,—'I shall recite to thee, O son of Pāndu, an ancient story of incidents arising from my own energy. Do thou listen to it with rapt attention ![2] When four thousand Yugas according to the measure of the celestials elapse, the dissolution of the universe comes. The Manifest disappear into the Unmanifest. All creatures, mobile and immobile, meet with destruction.[3] Light, Earth, Wind, all disappear. Darkness spreads over the universe which becomes one infinite expanse of water.[4] When that infinite waste of water only exists like Brahma without a second, it is neither day nor night. Neither aught nor naught exists ; neither manifest nor unmanifest.[5] When such is the condition of the universe, the foremost of Beings, *viz.*, the eternal and immutable Hari springs from Tamas, that combination of the attributes (of omnipotence and the rest) belonging to Nārāyana, that is indestructible and immortal, that is without senses, that is inconceivable and unborn, that is Truth's self fraught with compassion, that is endued with the form of existence which the rays of the gem called Chintāmani have, that causes diverse kinds of inclinations to flow in diverse directions, that is divested of the principles of hostility and deterioration and mortality and decay, that is formless and all-pervading, and that is endued with the principle of universal Creation and of Eternity without beginning, middle, or end.[6] There is authority for this assertion.[7] The Cruti declares,—Day was not. Night was not. Aught was not, Naught was not. In the beginning there was only Tamas.*[7] She was of the form of the universe, and she is the night of Nārāyana of universal form. Even this is the meaning of the word Tamas.[8] From that Purusha (called Hari) thus born of Tamas and having Brahma for his parent,

---

* 'Sat' is existent or aught. 'Asat' is naught or non-existent. Very generally, these two words are used to imply Effects and Causes, the former being gross or manifest, and the latter, subtile or unmanifest. 'Tamas' here does *not* mean one of the three primal attributes but primeval darkness. Comp. Manu, 'āsitidam tamobhutam &c.'—T.

started into existence the Being called Brahman. Brahman, desiring to create creatures, caused Agni and Shoma to spring from his own eyes. Afterwards when creatures came to be created, the created persons came out in their due order as Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas. He who started into life as Shoma was none else that Brahma; and they that were born as Brāhmanas were all Shoma in reality. He who started into Being as Agni was none else than Kshatra. The Brāhmanas became endued with greater energy than the Kshatras. If you ask the reason why, the answer is that this superiority of the Brāhmanas to the Kshatriyas is an attribute that is manifest to the whole world. It occurred as follows. The Brāhmanas represent the eldest creation as regards men. None were created before that were superior to the Brāhmanas. He who offers food into the mouth of a Brāhmana is regarded as pouring libations into a blazing fire (for gratifying the deities). I say that having ordained things in this way, the creation was accomplished of creatures by Brahman. Having established all created Beings in their respective positions, he upholds the three worlds. There occurs a declaration to the same effect in the *Mantras* of the Crutis.[9]—Thou, O Agni, art the Hotri in sacrifices, and the benefactor of the universe. Thou art the benefactor of the deities, of men, and of all the worlds![10]—There is (other) authority also for this.—Thou art, O Agni, the Hotri of the universe and of sacrifices. Thou art the source through which the deities and men do good to the universe![11]—Agni is truly the Hotri and the performer of sacrifices. Agni is again the Brahmā of the sacrifice.[12] No libations can be poured into the sacrificial fire without uttering *mantras;* there can be no penances without a person to perform them; the worship of the deities and men and the Rishis is accomplished by the libations poured with *mantras.* Hence, O Agni, thou hast been regarded as the Hotri in sacrifices.* Thou art, again, all the other *mantras* that have

* I do not know whether I have understood correctly the last part of this sentence. I think what is stated is that by honoring Hari and Mantras, one honors the deities and men and the Rishis. By men, I think, dead men or the Pitris are referred to.—T.

been declared in respect of the Homa rites of men. For the Brāhmanas the duty is ordained of officiating for others in the sacrifices they perform. The two other orders, *viz.*, Kshatras and Vaiçyas, that are included within the regenerate or twice-born class, have not the same duty prescribed for them. Hence, Brāhmanas are like Agni, who uphold sacrifices. The sacrifices (which the Brāhmanas perform) strengthen the deities. Strengthened in this way, the deities fructify the Earth (and thereby support all living creatures). But the result that may be achieved by the foremost of sacrifices may as well be accomplished through the mouth of the Brāhmanas.[13] That learned person who offers food into the mouth of a Brāhmana is said to pour libations into the sacred fire for gratifying the deities.[14] In this way the Brāhmanas have come to be regarded as Agni. They that are possessed of learning adore Agni. Agni is, again, Vishnu. Entering all creatures, he upholds their life-breaths.[15] In this connection there is a Verse sung by Sanatkumāra. Brahman, in creating the universe, first created the Brāhmanas. The Brāhmanas become immortal by studying the Vedas, and repair to heaven through the aid of such study. The intelligence, speech, acts and observances, faith, and the penances of the Brāhmanas uphold both the Earth and the heaven like slings of strings upholding bovine nectar.*[16] There is no duty higher than Truth. There is no superior more worthy of reverence than the mother. There is none more efficient than the Brāhmana for conferring felicity both here and hereafter.[17] The inhabitants of those realms where Brāhmanas have no certain means of support (from lands or other kinds property assigned to them) become very miserable. There the oxen do not carry the people or draw the plough, nor do vehicles of any kind bear them. There milk kept in jars is never churned for yielding butter. On the other hand, the residents become divested of prosperity of every kind, and betake themselves to the ways of robbers (instead of being able

* The reading 'vāgamritam' is an error. The correct reading is 'gavāmritam.'—T.

to enjoy the blessings of peace).*[18] In the Vedas, the Purānas, the histories, and other authoritative writings, it is said that the Brāhmanas, who are the souls of all creatures, who are the creators of all things, and who are identifiable with all existent objects, sprang from the mouth of Nārāyana. Indeed, it is said that the Brāhmanas first came out of that great boon-giving god's mouth when he had restrained his speech as a penance. The Brāhmanas are distinguished above the deities and Asuras, since they were created by myself in my indescribable form as Brahma as I have created the deities and the Asuras and the great Rishis and placed them in their respective situations and have to punish them occasionally. In consequence of his licentious assault on Ahalyā, Indra was cursed by Gautama, her husband, through which Indra got a green beard on his face. Through that curse of Kauçika, Indra lost also, his own testicles which loss was afterwards (through the kindness of the other deities) made up by the substitution of the testicles of a ram. When in the sacrifice of king Sarjjāti, the great Rishi Chyavana became desirous of making the twin Açwins sharers of the sacrificial offerings, Indra objected. Upon Chyavana insisting, Indra sought to hurl his thunderbolt at him. The Rishi paralysed Indra's arms. Incensed at the destruction of his sacrifice by Rudra, the great Rishi Daksha once more set himself to the practice of severe austerities and attaining to high puissance caused something like a third eye to appear on the forehead of Rudra.† When Rudra addrest himself for the destruction of the triple city belonging to the Asuras, the preceptor of the Asuras, *viz.*, Uçanas, provoked beyond endurance, tore a matted lock from his own head and hurled it

---

* In former times kings and chiefs always used to assign rent-free lands to learned Brāhmanas for their support. Those countries where Brāhmanas had not such lands assigned to them, were, as it were, under a ban. What is said in this Verse is that in such countries the blessings of peace are wanting. The inhabitants are not borne on vehicles drawn by oxen or steeds.—T.

† In consequence of this third eye on Rudra's forehead, he came to be called by the name of 'Virupāksha' or the 'ugly or fierce-eyed'.—T.

at Rudra. From that mattled lock of Uçanas sprang many serpents. Those serpents began to bite Rudra, at which his throat became blue. During a byegone period, *viz.*, that connected with the Self-born Manu,* it is said that Nārāyana had seized Rudra by the throat and hence did Rudra's throat become blue. On the occasion of churning the Ocean for raising the *amrita*, Vrihaspati of Angiras's race sat on the shores of the Ocean for performing the rite of *Puruscharana.* When he took up a little water for the purpose of the initial *āchamana*, the water seemed to him to be very muddy. At this Vrihaspati became angry and cursed the Ocean, saying, —Since thou continuest to be so dirty regardless of the fact of my having come to thee for touching thee, since thou hast not become clear and transparent, therefore from this day thou shalt be tainted with fishes and sharks and tortoises and other aquatic animals!—From that time, the waters of the ocean have become populous with diverse kinds of sea-animals and monsters. Viçwarupa, the son of Tashtri, formerly became the Purohita of the deities. He was, on his mother's side, connected with the Asuras, for his mother was the daughter of an Asura. While publicly offering unto the deities their shares of sacrificial offerings, he privately offered shares thereof unto the Asuras. The Asuras, with their chief Hiranyakaçipu at their head, then repaired to their sister, the mother of Viçwarupa, and solicited a boon from her, saying,—Thy son Viçwarupa by Tashtri, otherwise called Triçiras, is now the Purohita of the deities. While he gives unto the deities their shares of sacrificial offerings publicly, he gives us our shares of the same privately. In consequence of this, the deities are being aggrandised, and we are being weakened. It behoveth thee, therefore, to prevail upon him that he may take up our cause!—Thus addressed by them, the mother of Viçwarupa repaired to her son who was

* A Manwantarah consists of about 72 'Chaturyugas', *i. e.*, 288 yugas, according to the measurement of the celestials. The present is called the Vaivaswat Manwantarah, *i. e.*, the period connected with Manu the son of Vivaswat. At each Manwantarah a new Manu appears. The Self-born Manu was a different person.—T.

then staying in the Nandana woods (of Indra) and said unto him,—How is it, O son, that thou art engaged in aggrandising the cause of thy foes and weakening that of thy maternal uncles? It behooveth thee not to act in this way!—Viçwarupa, thus solicited by his mother, thought that he should not disobey her words, and as the consequence of that reflection he went over to the side of Hiranyakaçipu, after having paid proper respects to his mother. King Hiranyakaçipu, upon the arrival of Triçiras, dissmised his old Hotri, *viz.*, Vaçishtha the son of Brahman, and appointed Triçiras to that office. Incensed at this, Vaçishtha cursed Hiranyakaçipu, saying,—Since thou dismissest me and appointest another person as thy Hotri, this sacrifice of thine shall not be completed, and some Being the like of whom has not existed before will slay thee!—In consequence of this curse, Hiranyakaçipu was slain by Vishnu in the form of a man-lion. Viçwarupa, having adopted the side of his maternal relations, employed himself in severe austerities for aggrandising them. Impelled by the desire of causing him to swerve from his vows, Indra despatched to him many beautiful Apsarās. Beholding those celestial nymphs of transcendent beauty, the heart of Viçwarupa became agitated. Within a very short time he became exceedingly attached to them. Understanding that he had become attached to them, the celestial nymphs said unto him one day,—We shall not tarry here any longer. In fact, we shall return to that place whence we came!—Unto them that said so, the son of Tashtri replied,—Where will you go? Stay with me. I shall do you good!—Hearing him say so, the Apsarās rejoined,—We are celestial nymphs called Apsarās. We chose in days of old the illustrious and boon-giving Indra of great puissance!—Viçwarupa then said unto them, —This very day I shall so ordain that all the deities with Indra at their head shall cease to be!—Saying this, Triçiras began to recite mentally certain sacred Mantras of great efficacy. By virtue of those Mantras he began to increase in energy. With one of his mouths he began to drink all the Soma that Brāhmanas addicted to Sacrifices poured on their sacred fires with due rites. With a second mouth he began

to eat all the food (that was offered in Sacrifices). With his third mouth he began to drink up the energy of all the deities with Indra at their head. Beholding him swelling with energy in every part of his body that was strengthened by the Soma he was drinking, all the deities then, with Indra in their company, proceeded to the Grandsire Brahman. Arrived at his presence, they addressed him and said,—All the Soma that is duly offered in the sacrifices performed everywhere is being drink by Viçwarupa. We no longer obtain our shares. The Asuras are being aggrandised, while we are being weakened! It behooveth thee, therefore, to ordain what is for our good!—After the deities ceased, the Grandsire replied,—The great Rishi Dadhichi of Bhrigu's race is now engaged in performing severe austerities. Go, ye deities, unto him and solicit a boon from him. Do ye so arrange that he may cast off his body! With his bones let a new weapon be created called the Thunder-bolt!—Thus instructed by the Grandsire, the deities proceeded to that place where the holy Rishi Dadhichi was engaged in his austerities. The deities with Indra at their head addressed the sage, saying,—O holy one, your austerities, we hope, are being well performed and uninterrupted!—Unto them the sage Dadhichi said,—Welcome to all of you! Tell me what I should do for you! I shall certainly do what you will say!—They then told him,—It behoveth thee to cast off thy body for benefiting all the worlds!—Thus solicited, the sage Dadhichi, who was a great Yogin and who regarded happiness and misery in the same light, without being at all cheerless, concentrated his Soul by his Yoga power and cast off his body. When his Soul left its temporary tenement of clay, Dhātri, taking his bones, created an irresistible weapon called the Thunder-bolt. With the Thunder-bolt thus created of the bones of a Brāhmana, which was impenetrable by other weapons and irresistible and pervaded by the energy of Vishnu, Indra struck Viçwarupa the son of Tashtri. Having slain the son of Tashtri thus, Indra severed the head from the body. From the lifeless body, however, of Viçwarupa, when it was pressed, the energy that was still residing in it gave birth to a mighty

Asura of the name of Vritra. Vritra became the foe of Indra, but Indra slew him also with the Thunder-bolt. In consequence of the sin being thus doubled of Brāhmanicide, Indra became inspired with a great fear and as the consequence thereof he had to abandon the sovereignty of heaven. He entered a cool lotus-stalk that grew in the Mānasa lake. In consequence of the Yoga attribute of Animā, he became very minute and entered the fibres of that lotus stalk.* When the lord of the three worlds, the husband of Cachi, had thus disappeared from sight through fear of the sin of Brahmanicide, the universe became lordless. The attributes of Rajas and Tamas assailed the deities. The Mantras uttered by the great Rishis lost all efficacy. Rākshasas appeared everywhere. The Vedas were about to disappear. The inhabitants of all the worlds, destitute of a king, lost their strength and began to fall an easy prey to Rākshasas and other evil Beings. Then the deities and the Rishis, uniting together, made Nahusha, the son of Ayush, the king of the three worlds and duly crowned him as such. Nahusha had on his forehead full five-hundred luminaries of blazing effulgence, which had the virtue of despoiling every creature of energy. Thus equipt Nahusha continued to rule heaven. The three worlds were restored to their normal condition. The inhabitants of the universe once more became happy and cheerful. Nahusha then said,—Everything that Indra used to enjoy is before me. Only, his spouse Cachi is not by !—Having said this, Nahusha proceeded to where Cachi was and, addressing her, said,—O blessed lady, I have become the lord of the deities ! Do thou accept me !—Unto him Cachi replied, saying,—Thou art, by nature, wedded to righteousness of behaviour. Thou belongest, again, to the race of Shoma. It behooveth thee not to assail another person's wife !—Nahusha, thus addressed by her, said,—The position of Indra is now being occupied by me. I deserve to enjoy the dominions and all the precious

* By practising Yoga one acquires certain superhuman powers. These are called 'Yogaiçwaryya'. They include Animā, by which one can become very minute; Laghimā, by which one can become very gross; &c.—T.

possessions of Indra. In desiring to enjoy thee there can be no sin. Thou wert Indra's and, therefore, should be mine! —Cachi then said unto him,—I am observing a vow that has not yet been completed. After performing the final ablutions I shall come to thee within a few days!—Extracting this promise from Indra's spouse, Nahusha left her presence. Meanwhile Cachi, afflicted with pain and grief, anxious to find her lord and assailed by her fear of Nahusha, proceeded to Vrihaspati (the chief priest of the celestials). At the first sight Vrihaspati understood her to be penetrated by anxiety. He immediately had recourse to Yoga-meditation and learnt that she was intent upon doing what was necessary for restoring her husband to his true position. Vrihaspati then addressed her, saying,—Equipt with penances and the merit that will be thine in consequence of this vow that thou art observing, do thou invoke the boon-giving goddess Upaçruti! Invoked by thee, she will appear and show thee where thy husband is dwelling!—While in the observance of that very austere vow, she invoked with the aid of proper Mantras the boon-giving goddess Upaçruti. Invoked by Caçhi, the goddess presented herself before her and said,—I am here at thy bidding! Invoked by thee I have come! What cherished wish of thine shall I accomplish?—Bowing unto her with a bend of the head, Cachi said,—O blessed lady, it behooveth thee to show me where my husband is! Thou art Truth! Thou art Ritā!—Thus addressed, the goddess Upaçruti took her to the lake Mānasa. Arrived there, she pointed out to Cachi her lord Indra residing within the fibres of a lotus-stalk. Beholding his spouse pale and emaciated, Indra became exceedingly anxious. And the lord of heaven said unto himself,—Alas, great is the sorrow that has overtaken me! I have fallen off from the position that is mine! This my spouse, afflicted with grief on my account, finds out my lost self and comes to me here!—Having reflected in this strain, Indra addressed his dear spouse and said,—In what condition art thou now? —She answered him,—Nahusha invites me to make me his wife. I have obtained a respite from him, having fixed the

time when I am to go to him !—Unto her Indra then said,—Go and say unto Nahusha that he should come to thee on a vehicle never used before, *viz.*, one unto which some Rishis should be harnessed, and ariving at thine in that state he should wed thee ! Indra has many kinds of vehicles that are all beautiful and charming. All these have borne thee. Nahusha, however, should come on such a vehicle that Indra himself had not possessed ! Thus counselled by her lord, Cachi left that spot with a joyous heart. Indra also once more entered the fibres of that lotus stalk. Beholding the Queen of Indra come back to heaven, Nahusha addressed her, saying, —The time thou hadst fixed is over !—Unto him Cachi said what Indra had directed her to say. Harnessing a number of great Rishis unto the vehicle he rode, Nahusha set out from his place for coming to where Cachi was living. The foremost of Rishis, *viz.*, Agastya, born within a jar, of the vital seed of Maitrāvaruna, beheld those foremost of Rishis insulted by Nahusha in that way. Him Nahusha struck with his foot. Unto him, Agastya said,—Wretch, as thou hast betaken thyself to a highly improper act, do thou fall down on the Earth ! Be transformed into a snake and do thou continue to live in that form as long as the Earth and her hills continue !—As soon as these words were uttered by the great Rishi, Nahusha fell down from that vehicle. The three worlds once more became masterless. The deities and the Rishis then united together and proceeded to where Vishnu was and appealed to him for bringing about the restoration of Indra. Approaching him, they said,—O holy one, it behooveth thee to rescue Indra who is overwhelmed by the sin of Brāhmanicide !—The boon-giving Vishnu replied unto them, saying,—Let Cakra perform a Horse-sacrifice in honor of Vishnu. He will then be restored to his former position !—The deities and the Rishis began to search for Indra, but when they could not find him they went to Cachi and said unto her,—O blessed lady, go unto Indra and bring him here !—Requested by them, Cachi once more proceeded to the lake Mānasa. Indra, rising from the lake, came to Vrihaspati. The celestial priest Vrihaspati then made arrangements for a great Horse-sacri-

fice, substituting a black antelope for a good steed every way fit to be offered up in sacrifice. Causing Indra, the lord of the Maruts, to ride upon that very steed (which was saved from slaughter) Vrihaspati led him to his own place. The lord of heaven was then adored with hymns by all the deities and the Rishis. He continued to rule in heaven, cleansed of the sin of Brāhmanicide which was divided into four portions and ordained to reside in woman, fire, trees, and kine. It was thus that Indra, strengthened by the energy of a Brāhmana, succeeded in slaying his foe (and when, as the result of that act of his, he had been overpowered by sin, it was the energy of another Brāhmana that rescued him). It was thus that Indra once more regained his position.

"'In days of yore, while the great Rishi Bharadwāja was saying his prayers by the side of the celestial Gangā, one of the three feet of Vishnu, when he assumed his three-footed form, reached that spot.* Beholding that strange sight, Bharadwāja assailed Vishnu with a handful of water, upon which Vishnu's bosom received a mark (called Sreevatsa).† Cursed by that foremost of Rishis, *viz.*, Bhrigu, Agni was obliged to become a devourer of all things.[57] Once on a time, Aditi, the mother of the deities, cooked some food for her sons. She thought that, eating that food and strengthened by it, the deities would succeed in slaying the Asuras. After the food had been cooked, Vudha (the presiding deity of the luminary known by that name), having completed the observance of an austere vow, presented himself before Aditi and said unto her,—Give me alms!—Aditi, though thus solicited for good, gave him none, thinking that no one should

* The river Gangā has three currents. One flows through heaven; one is visible on the Earth, and a third flows through the nether regions. Persons of the regenerate classes, when saying their morning, midday, or evening prayers, have to touch water often. What is meant, therefore, by 'Bharadwāja touching the water' is that Bharadwāja was saying his prayers. Vishnu assumed his three-footed form for beguiling Vali of the sovereignty of the universe. With one foot he covered the Earth, with another he covered the firmament. There was no space left for placing his third foot upon.—T.

† The 'Sreevatsa' is a beautiful whirl on Vishnu's bosom.—T.

eat of the food she had cooked before her sons, the deities, had first taken it. Incensed at the conduct of Aditi who thus refused to give him alms, Vudha, who was Brahma's self through the austere vow he had completed, cursed her, saying that as Aditi had refused him alms she would have a pain in her womb when Vivaswat, in his second birth in the womb of Aditi, would be born in the form of an egg. Aditi reminded Vivaswat at that time of the curse of Vudha, and it is for that reason that Vivaswat, the deity who is adored in Crāddhas, coming out of the womb of Aditi, came to be called by the name of Mārtanda.[58] The Prajāpati Daksha became the father of sixty daughters. Amongst them, three and ten were bestowed by him upon Kaçyapa; ten upon Dharma; ten upon Manu; and seven and twenty upon Shoma. Although all the seven and twenty that were called Nakshatras and bestowed upon Shoma were equal in respect of beauty and accomplishments, yet Shoma became more attached to one, *viz.*, Rohini, than the rest. The rest of his spouses, filled with jealousy, leaving him, repaired to their sire and informed him of this conduct of their husband, saying,—O holy one, although all of us are equal in point of beauty, yet our husband Shoma is exclusively attached to our sister Rohini!—Incensed at this representation of his daughters, the celestial Rishi Daksha cursed Shoma, saying, that thenceforth the disease phthisis should assail his son-in-law and dwell in him. Through this curse of Daksha, phthisis assailed the puissant Shoma and entered into his body. Assailed by phthisis in this way, Shoma came to Daksha. The latter addressed him, saying,—I have cursed thee because of thy unequal behaviour towards thy wives. The Rishi then said unto Shoma,—Thou art being reduced by the disease phthisis that has assailed thee. There is a sacred water called Hiranyasarah in the Western ocean. Repairing to that sacred water, do thou bathe there!—Counselled by the Rishi, Shoma proceeded thither. Arrived at Hiranyasarah, Shoma bathed in that sacred water. Performing his oblations, he cleansed himself from his sin. And because that sacred water was illumined (ābhāsita) by Shoma, there-

fore was it from that day called by the name of *Prabhāsa*. In consequence, however, of the curse denounced upon him in days of old by Daksha, Shoma, to this day, begins to wane from the night of the full moon till his total disappearance on the night of the new moon whence he once more begins to wax till the night of full moon. The brightness also of the lunar disc from that time received a stain, for the body of Shoma, since then, has come to present certain dark spots. In fact, the splendid disc of the moon has, from that day, come to exhibit the mark of a hare.[59] Once on a time, a Rishi of the name of Sthulaçiras was engaged in practising very severe austerities on the northern breasts of the mountains of Meru. While engaged in those austerities, a pure breeze, charged with all kinds of delicious perfumes, began to blow there and fan his body. Scorched as his body was by the very severe austerities he was undergoing, and living as he did upon air alone to the exclusion of every kind of food, he became highly gratified in consequence of that delicious breeze which blew around him. While he was thus gratified with the delicious breeze that fanned him, the trees around him, (moved by jealousy), put forth their flowers for making a display and extorting his praise. Displeased at this conduct of the trees because it was dictated by jealousy, the Rishi cursed them, saying,—Henceforth, ye shall not be able to put forth your flowers at all times![60]—In days of yore, for doing good to the world, Nārāyana took birth as the great Rishi Vadavāmukha. While engaged in practising severe austerities on the breast of Meru, he summoned the Ocean to his presence. The Ocean, however, disobeyed his summons. Incensed at this, the Rishi, with the heat of his body, solidified the waters of the Ocean and caused them to become as saltish in taste as the human sweat. The Rishi further said,—Thy waters shall henceforth cease to be drinkable. Only when the Equine-head, roving within thee, will drink thy waters, they will be as sweet as honey!—It is for this curse that the waters of the Ocean to this day are saltish to the taste and are drunk by no one else than the Equine-head.*[61] The

* The Hindu scriptures mention that there is an Equine-head of

daughter, named Umā, of the Himavat mountains, was desired by Rudra in marriage. (After Himavat had promised the hand of Umā to Mahādeva, the great Rishi Bhrigu, approaching Himavat, addressed him, saying,—Give this daughter of thine unto me in marriage!—Himavat replied unto him, saying,—Rudra is the bridegroom already selected by me for my daughter!—Angry at this reply, Bhrigu said,—Since thou refusest my suit for the hand of thy daughter and insultest me thus, thou shalt no longer abound with jewels and gems!—To this day, in consequence of the Rishi's words, the mountains of Himavat have not any jewels and gems. Even such is the glory of the Brāhmanas.[62] It is through the favor of the Brāhmanas that the Kshatriyas are able to possess the eternal and undeteriorating Earth as their wife and enjoy her. The power of the Brāhmanas, again, is made up of Agni and Shoma. The universe is upheld by that power and, therefore, is upheld by Agni and Shoma united together.[63] It is said that Surya and Chandramas are the eyes of Nārāyana. The rays of Surya constitute my eyes. Each of them, *viz.*, the Sun and the Moon, invigorate and warm the universe respectively.[64] And because of the Sun and the Moon thus warming and invigorating the universe, they have come to be regarded as the *Harsha* (joy) of the universe. It is in consequence of these acts of Agni and Shoma that uphold the universe that I have come to be called by the name of Hrishikeça, O son of Pāndu!—Indeed, I am the boon-giving Icāna the Creator of the universe.*[65]

---

vast proportions which roves through the seas. Blazing fires constantly issue from its mouth and these drink up the sea-water. It always makes a roaring noise. It is called Vadavā-mukha. The fire issuing from it is called Vadavānala. The waters of the Ocean are like clarified butter. The Equine-head drinks them up as the sacrificial fire drinks the libations of clarified butter poured upon it. The origin of the Vadavā fire is sometimes ascribed to the wrath of Urva, a Rishi of the race of Jamadagni. Hence it is sometimes called Aurvya-fire.—T.

* The etymology of the word 'Hrishikeça' is thus explained. Agni and Shoma are called by the name of 'Hrishi' in the dual number. He is called 'Hrishikeça' who has those two for his keça or hair. Elsewhere, the word is explained as the 'Iça' or lord of 'Hrishika'.—T.

Through virtue of the Mantras with which libations of clarified butter are poured on the sacred fire, I take and appropriate the (principal) share of the offerings made in sacrifices. My complexion also is of that foremost of gems called Harit. It is for these reasons that I am called by the name of Hari.[66] I am the substantial abode of all creatures and am regarded by persons conversant with the scriptures to be identical with Truth or Nectar. I am, for this reason, called by learned Brāhmanas by the name of Ritadhāma (abode of Truth or Nectar).[67] When in days of yore the Earth became submerged in the waters and lost to the view, I found her out and raised her from the depths of the Ocean. For this reason the deities adored me by the name of Govinda.[68] Cipivishta is a name. The word Cipi indicates a person that has no hair on his body. He who pervades all things in the form of Cipi is known by the name of *Çipivishta.*[69] The Rishi Yāshka, with tranquil soul, in many a sacrifice invoked me by the name Cipivishta. It is for this reason that I came to bear this secret name.[70] Yāshka of great intelligence, having adored me by the name of Cipivishta, succeeded in restoring the Niruktas which had disappeared from the surface of the Earth and sunk into the nether regions.[71] I was never born. I never take birth. Nor shall I ever be born. I am the Kshetrajna of all creatures. Hence am I called by the name of Aja (unborn).*[72] I have never uttered anything base or anything that is obscene. The divine Saraswati who is Truth's self, who is the daughter of Brahman and is otherwise called by the name of Ritā, represents my speech and always dwells in my tongue.[73] The existent and the non-existent have been merged by me in my Soul. The Rishis dwelling in Pushkara which is regarded as the abode of Brahman called me by the name of Truth.[74] I have never swerved from the attribute of Sattwa, and know that the attribute of Sattwa has flowed from me. In this birth also of mine, O Dhananjaya, my ancient attribute of Sattwa has

---

* I am the Soul of all creatures, and, therefore, unborn, the Soul being Eternal, Unbeginning and Unending. Hence am I called the Unborn.—T.

not left me so that in even this life, establishing myself on Sattwa, I set myself to acts without ever wishing for their fruits. Cleansed of all sins as I am through the attribute of Sattwa which is my nature, I can be beheld by the aid of that knowledge only which arises from adoption of the attribute of Sattwa. I am reckoned also among those that are wedded to that attribute. For these reasons am I known by the name of Sāttwata.*[75-76] I till the Earth, assuming the form of a large plough-share of black iron. And because my complexion is black, therefore am I called by the name of Krishna.[77] I have united the Earth with Water, Space with Mind, and Wind with Light. Therefore am I called Vaikuntha.†[78] The cessation of separate conscious existence by identification with Supreme Brahma is the highest attribute or condition for a living agent to attain. And since I have never swerved from that attribute or condition, I am, therefore, called by the name of Achyuta.‡[79] The Earth and the Firmament are known to extend in all directions. And because I uphold them both, therefore am I called by the name of Adhokshaja.[80] Persons conversant with the Vedas and employed in interpreting the words used in those scriptures adore me in sacrifices by calling upon me by the same name.[81] In days of yore, the great Rishis, while engaged in

---

* The race in which Krishna took birth was known by the name of Sāttwata. All these etymologies are, of course, exceedingly fanciful. Not that the etymologies do not correspond with the rules of Sanskrit Grammar, but then they are not accepted by lexicographers. The fact is that each root in Sanskrit has a variety of meanings.—T.

† This Verse refers to 'Panchikarana'. The fact is, Earth, Water, Light, Wind, and Space are the five primal elements. Each of these is divided into five portions and the portions so arrived at are then united or mingled together for forming the different substances of the universe, the proportions in which they are mingled being unequal.—T.

‡ 'Achyuta' has been variously rendered into English. Its true sense is here explained. 'Unswerving' is the meaning. He who never swerves (from his highest nature or Brahma) is Achyuta. Hence, ordinarily, immutable or undeteriorating is the rendering that I have adopted.—T.

practising severe austerities, said,—No one else in the universe, than the puissant Nārāyana, is capable of being called by the name of Adhokshaja.[82] Clarified butter which sustains the lives of all creatures in the universe constitutes my effulgence. It is for this reason that Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas and possessed of concentrated souls call me by the name of Ghritārchis.*[83] There are three well-known constituent elements of the body. They have their origin in action, and are called Bile, Phlegm, and Wind. The body is called a union of these three. All living creatures are upheld by these three, and when these three become weakened, living creatures also become weakened. It is for this reason that all persons conversant with the scriptures bearing on the science of Life call me by the name of Tridhātu.†[84-85] The holy Dharma is known among all creatures by the name of Vrisha, O Bhārata! Hence it is that I am called the excellent Vrisha in the Vedic lexicon called Nighantuka.[86] The word 'Kapi' signifies the foremost of boars, and Dharma is otherwise known by the name of Vrisha. It is for this reason that that lord of all creatures, *viz.*, Kaçyapa, the common sire of the deities and the Asuras, called me by the name Vrishākapi.[87] The deities and the Asuras have never been able to ascertain my beginning, my middle, or my end. It is for this reason that I am sung as Anādi, Amadhya, Ananta. I am the Supreme Lord, endued with puissance, and I am the eternal witness of the universe (beholding as I do its successive creations and destructions).[88] I always hear words that are pure and holy, O Dhananjaya, and never catch anything that is sinful. Hence am I called by the name of Cuchiçravas.[89] Assuming, in days of old, the form

---

* Clarified butter is the great sustainer of the universe, for the libations poured on the sacrificial fire uphold the deities, and the deities, thus upheld, pour rain which causes crops and other food to grow, upon which, of course, the universe of living creatures lives.—T.

† The constituent elements, called 'Dhātu', of the body, are, of course, Bile, Phlegm, and Wind. They are due to acts because birth itself is due to acts. There can be no birth without a body and no body without these three. Hence, these three have their origin in previous acts unexhausted by enjoyment or endurance.—T.

of a boar with a single tusk, O enhancer of the joys of others, I raised the submerged Earth from the bottom of the ocean. From this reason am I called by the name of Ekaçringa.[90] While I assumed the form of a mighty boar for this purpose, I had three humps on my back. Indeed, in consequence of this peculiarity of my form at that time that I have come to be called by the name of Trikakud (three-humped).[91] Those who are conversant with the science propounded by Kapila call the Supreme Soul by the name of Virincha. That Virincha is otherwise called the great Prajāpati (or Brahman). Verily, I am identical with Him called Virincha in consequence of my imparting animation to all living creatures, for I am the Creator of the universe.[92] The preceptors of Sānkhya philosophy, possessed of certainty of conclusions (regarding all topics), call me the eternal Kapila staying in the midst of the solar disc with but Knowledge for my companion.*[93] On Earth I am known to be identical with Him who has been sung in the Vedic verses as the effulgent Hiranyagarbha and who is always worshipped by Yogins.[94] I am regarded as the embodied form of the Rich Veda consisting of one and twenty thousand verses. Persons conversant with the Vedas also call me the embodiment of the Sāmans of a thousand branches. Even thus do learned Brāhmanas that are my devoted worshippers and that are few in number sing me in the Āranyakas.†[95] In the Adhyaryus I am sung as the Yajur-Veda of six and fifty and eight and seven and thirty branches.‡[96] Learned Brāhmanas conversant with the Atharvans regard me as identical with the Atharvans consisting of five Kalpas and all the Krityas.$[97] All the subdivisions that

---

* Nārāyana is said to always dwell in the midst of 'Savitri-mandala'. The solar disc represents eternal effulgence, or Milton's 'flaming mount' at which even the highest angels cannot gaze.—T.

† 'Durlabhāh, may also mean 'not easily attainable': *i. e.*, they that are my devoted worshippers are as unattainable as I myself. People cannot readily obtain *their* grace as they cannot mine.—T.

‡ The Yajur-Veda consists, according to this calculation, of one hundred and one branches.—T.

$ The 'Krityas' are acts of incantation, performed with the aid of Atharvan Mantras. They are of great efficacy. Brāhmanas conversant

exist of the different Vedas in respect of branches, and all the verses that compose those branches, and all the vowels that occur in those verses, and all the rules in respect of pronunciation, know, O Dhananjaya, are my work![98] O Pārtha, He that rises (at the beginning of Creation from the ocean of milk at the earnest invocation of Brahman and all the deities) and who gives diverse boons unto the diverse deities, is none else than myself. I am He who is the repositary of the science of syllables and pronunciation that is treated of in the supplemental portions of the Vedas.[99] Following the path pointed out by Vāmadeva, the high-souled Rishi Pānchāla, through my grace, obtained from that eternal Being the rules in respect of the division of syllables and words (for reading the Vedas). Indeed, Gālava, born in the Vābhravya race, having attained to high ascetic success and obtained a boon from Nārāyana, compiled the rules in respect of the division of syllables and words and those about emphasis and accent in utterance, and shone as the first scholar who became conversant with those two subjects. Kundarika and king Brahmadatta of great energy,*[100-101] repeatedly thinking of the sorrow that attends birth and death, attained to that prosperity which is acquired by persons devoted to Yoga, in course of seven births, in consequence of my favour.[102] In days of yore, O Pārtha, I was, for some reason, born as the son of Dharma, O chief of Kuru's race, and in consequence of such birth of mine I was celebrated under the name of Dharmaja.[103] I took birth in two forms, *viz.*, as Nara and Nārāyana. Riding on the vehicle that helps towards the performance of scriptural and other duties, I practised, in those two forms, undying austerities on the breast

---

with the Atharvans are competent, with the aid of 'Krityas' to alter the laws of Nature and confound the very universe.—T.

* 'The path pointed out by Vāma' is the path of Dhyāna or contemplation. 'Vāma' is Mahādeva or Rudra. 'Pānchāla' is Gālava of the 'Vābhravya race'. The Burdwan translator makes a mess of these Verses. He represents Gālava as belonging to the Kundarika race. The fact is, as the Commentator explains, that 'Kundarika' is a name derived from that of the Gotra or race to which the person belonged. Pānchāla is the same person as Gālava of the Vābhravya race.—T.

of Gandhamādana.*[104] At that time the great sacrifice of Daksha took place. Daksha, however, in that sacrifice of his, refused to give a share unto Rudra, O Bhārata, of the sacrificial offerings.[105] Urged by the sage Dadhichi, Rudra destroyed that sacrifice. He hurled a dart whose flames blazed up every moment.[106] That dart, having consumed all the preparations of Daksha's sacrifice, came with great force towards us (Nara and Nārāyana) at the retreat of Vadari.[107] With great violence that dart then fell upon the chest of Nārāyana. Assailed by the energy of that dart, the hair on the head of Nārāyana became green. In fact, in consequence of this change in the hue of my hair I came to be called by the name of Munjakeça.†[108] Driven off by an exclamation of *Hun* which Nārāyana uttered, the dart, its energy being lost, returned to Cankara's hands.[109] At this, Rudra became highly angry and as the result thereof he rushed towards the Rishis Nara and Nārāyana endued with the puissance of severe austerities.[110] Nārāyana then seized the rushing Rudra with his hand by the throat. Seized by Nārāyana, the lord of the universe, Rudra's throat changed color and became dark. From that time Rudra came to be called by the name of Citikantha.[111] Meanwhile Nara, for the purpose of destroying Rudra, took up a blade of grass and inspired it with Mantras. The blade of grass, thus inspired, was converted into a mighty battle-axe.[112] Nara suddenly hurled that battle-axe at Rudra but it broke into pieces. In consequence of that weapon thus breaking into pieces, I came to be called by the name of Khandaparaçu.‡'[113]

"Arjuna said,—'In that battle capable of bringing about

---

* Elsewhere it is said that Nārāyana took birth in Dharma's house in four forms named Nara, Nārāyana, Krishna, and Hari. 'Dharmayānam samārudau' means 'riding on the Dharma-car', *i. e.*, endued with bodies with which to perform all the scriptural duties.—T.

† 'Munja' literally means green, or a grass of a particular kind.—T.

‡ Nara and Nārāyana were the same person. Hence, Nara's weapon having broken into pieces, Nārāyana came to be called by this name. Elsewhere it is explained that Mahādeva is called 'Khandaparaçu' in consequence of his having parted with his 'paraçu' unto Rāma of Bhrigu's race.—T.

the destruction of the three worlds, who obtained the victory, O Janārddana, do thou tell me this !'[114]

"The blessed and holy one said,—'When Rudra and Nārāyana became thus engaged in battle, all the universe became suddenly filled with anxiety.[115] The deity of fire ceased to accept libations of even the purest clarified butter duly poured in sacrifices with the aid of Vedic Mantras. The Vedas no longer shone by inward light in the minds of the Rishis of cleansed souls.[116] The attributes of Rajas and Tamas possessed the deities. The Earth trembled. The vault of the firmament seemed to divide in twain.[117] All the luminaries became deprived of their splendour. The Creator, Brahman, himself fell from his seat. The Ocean itself became dry. The mountains of Himavat became riven.[118] When such dire omens appeared everywhere, O son of Pāndu, Brahman, surrounded by all the deities and the high-souled Rishis,[119] soon arrived at that spot where the battle was raging. The four-faced Brahman, capable of being understood with the aid of only the Niruktas, joined his hands and addressing Rudra, said,[120]—Let good happen to the three worlds. Throw down thy weapons, O lord of the universe, from desire of benefiting the universe.[121] That which is indestructible, immutable, supreme, the origin of the universe, uniform, and the supreme actor, that which transcends all pairs of opposites, and is inactive,[122] has, chosing to be displayed, been pleased to assume this one blessed form, (for though double, the two but represent the same form). This Nara and Nārāyana (the displayed forms of Supreme Brahma) have taken birth in the race of Dharma.[123] The foremost of all deities, these two are observers of the highest vows and endued with the severest penances. Through some reason best known to Him I myself have sprung from the attribute of His Grace.[124] Eternal as thou art, for thou hast ever existed since all the past creations, thou too hast sprung from His Wrath. With myself then, these deities, and all the great Rishis,[125] do thou adore this displayed form of Brahma and let peace be unto all the worlds without any delay !—Thus addressed by Brahman, Rudra forthwith cast off the fire of his wrath,[126]

and set himself to gratify the illustrious and puissant Nārāyana. Indeed, he soon placed himself at the disposal of the adorable, boon-giving, and puissant Nārāyana.[127] That boon-giving deity, who hath his wrath and the senses under control, became soon gratified and reconciled with Rudra.[128] Well-adored by the Rishis, by Brahman, and by all the deities, the great God, the Lord of the universe, otherwise called by the name of Hari, then addressed the illustrious Içāna and said these words :[129]—He that knows thee knows me. He that follows thee follows me ! There is no difference between thee and me. Do thou never think otherwise ![130] The mark made by thy lance on my chest will from this day assume the form of a beautiful whirl, and the mark of my hand on thy throat will also assume a beautiful shape in consequence of which thou shalt, from this day, be called by the name of Creekantha ![131]

"The blessed and holy one* continued,—'Having mutually caused such marks on each other's person, the two Rishis Nara and Nārāyana thus made friends with Rudra,[132] and dismissing the deities, once more set themselves to the practice of penances with a tranquil souls. I have thus told thee, O son of Prithā, how in that battle which took place in days of yore between Rudra and Nārāyana, the latter got the victory.[133] I have also told thee the many secret names by which Nārāyana is called, and what the significations, O Bhārata, are of those names, which, as I have told thee, the Rishis have bestowed upon the great God.[134] In this way, O son of Kunti, assuming diverse forms do I rove at will through the Earth, the region of Brahman himself, and that other high and eternal region of felicity called Goloka.[135] Protected by me in the great battle, thou hast won a great victory.[136] That Being whom, at the time of all thy battles, thou beheldst stalking in thy van, know, O son of Kunti, is no other than Rudra, that god of gods, otherwise called by the name of Kaparddin.[137] He is otherwise known by the name of Kāla† and should be known as one that has

* *I. e.*, he that was speaking to Arjuna.—T.

† 'Kāla is literally Time or Eternity. It frequently means, how-

sprung from my wrath. Those foes whom thou hast slain were all, in the first instance, slain by him.*[138] Do thou bend thy head unto that god of gods, that lord of Umā, endued with immeasurable puissance. With concentrated soul, do thou bend thy head unto that illustrious Lord of the universe, that indestructible deity, otherwise called by the name of Hari![139] He is none else than that deity who, I have repeatedly said unto thee, has sprung from my wrath. Thou hast before this, heard, O Dhananjaya, of the puissance and energy that reside in him!' "[140]

Section CCCXLIV.

Caunaka said,—O Sauti, excellent is this narrative which thou hast recited. Verily, these ascetics, having heard it, have all been filled with wonder![1] It is said, O Sauti, that a discourse that has Nārāyana for its topic is more fruitful of merit than sojourns unto all the sacred retreats and ablutions performed in all the sacred waters on the Earth.[2] Having listened to this discourse of thine that has Nārāyana for its topic, that is sacred and capable of cleansing one of every sin, all of us have certainly become holy.[3] Adored of all the worlds, that illustrious and foremost of deities is incapable of being beheld by the deities with Brahman numbering among them and all the Rishis.[4] That Nārada was able to obtain a sight of Nārāyana, otherwise called Hari, was due, O son of Suta, to the especial grace of that divine and puissant Lord![5] When, however, the celestial Rishi Nārada had succeeded in obtaining a sight of the Supreme Lord of the universe as displayed or residing in the form of Aniruddha, why did he again proceed so quickly (to the retreat of Vadari on the breast of Himavat) for beholding those two foremost of deities, *viz.*, Nara and Nārāyana? Do you, O Sauti, tell us the reason of such conduct on the part of Nārada![6]

---

ever, death or destruction, or he that brings about death or destruction.—T.

* The sense is that Arjuna was only the ostensible instrument.—T.

Sauti said,—During the continuance of his (snake-) Sacrifice, Janamejaya, the royal son of Parikshit, availing himself of an interval in the sacrificial rites, and when all the learned Brāhmanas were resting, O Caunaka,[7] that king of kings, addressed the grand-father of his grand-father, *viz.*, the Island-born Rishi Krishna, otherwise called Vyāsa, that ocean of Vedic lore, that foremost of ascetics endued with puissance, and said these words.[8]

Janamejaya said,—"After the celestial Rishi Nārada had returned from White-Island, reflecting, as he came, on the words spoken to him by the holy Nārāyana, what, indeed, did that great ascetic next do?[9] Arrived at the retreat known by the name of Vadari on the breast of the Himavat mountains, and seeing the two Rishis Nara and Nārāyana who were engaged in severe austerities at that spot, how long did Nārada dwell there and what were the topics of conversation between him and the two Rishis?[10] This discourse on Nārāyana, that is really an ocean of knowledge, has been raised by thy intelligent self by churning that vast history called Bhārata which consists of a hundred thousand Verses![11] As butter is raised from curds, sandal-wood from the mountains of Malaya, the Āranyakas from the Vedas, and Amrita from all the medicinal herbs,[12] after the same manner, O ocean of austerities, hath this discourse that is like Amrita and that has Nārāyana for its object, been raised by thee, O Brāhmana, from diverse histories and Purānas existing in the world![13] Nārāyana is the Supreme Lord. Illustrious and endued with great puissance, He is the soul of all creatures. Indeed, O foremost of regenerate ones, the energy of Nārāyana is irresistible![14] Into Nārāyana, at the end of the Kalpa, enter all the deities having Brahman for their foremost, all the Rishis with the Gandharvas, and all things mobile and immobile![15] I think, therefore, that there is nothing holier on earth or in heaven and nothing higher than Nārāyana. A sojourn unto all the sacred retreats on Earth, and ablutions performed in all the sacred waters, are not productive of as much merit as a discourse that has Nārāyana for its topic. Having listened to this discourse from the

beginning,—this discourse on Hari, the lord of the universe, that destroys all sins, we feel that we have been cleansed of all our sins and sanctified entirely. Nothing wonderful was accomplished by my ancestor Dhananjaya whose was the victory in the great battle on Kurukshetra, for it should be remembered that he had Vāsudeva for his ally. I think that that person could have nothing unattainable in the three-worlds,[17-19] who had for his ally Vishnu himself, that great Lord of the universe! Exceedingly fortunate and commendable were those ancestors of mine,[20] since they had Janārddana himself for looking after their temporal and spiritual prosperity. Adored of all the worlds, the holy Nārāyana is capable of being beheld with the aid of austerities alone.[21] They, however, succeeded in beholding Nārāyana adorned with the beautiful whirl on his chest. More fortunate than my ancestors was the celestial Rishi Nārada the son of Prameshthi.[22] Indeed, I think that Nārada, who trandscends all destruction, was endued with an energy that was not little, for repairing to White-Island he had succeeded in beholding the person of Hari.[23] Indeed, it is evident that the sight he had obtained of the Supreme Lord was due to only the grace of that Being. Fortunate was Nārada inasmuch as he had succeeded in beholding Nārāyana as existing in the form of Aniruddha.[24] Having beheld Nārāyana in that form, why did Nārada hasten once more to the retreat of Vadari for the purpose of beholding Nara and Nārāyana! What was the reason, O ascetic, of this step taken by Nārada?[25] How long also did Nārada the son of Prameshthi, after his return from White Island and arrival at Vadari and meeting with the two Rishis Nara and Nārāyana, live there, and what conversation had he with them? What did those two high-souled and foremost of Rishis say unto him? It behooveth thee to say all this unto me!"[26-28]

Vaiçampāyana said,*—"Salutations unto the holy Vyāsa

---

* The questions of Janamejaya, it would seem, were addressed to Vyāsa. All the editions, however, make Vaiçampāyana answer those questions.—T.

of immeasurable energy. Through his grace I shall recite this narrative having Nārāyana for its topic.[29] Arrived at White Island, Nārada beheld the immutable Hari. Leaving that spot he quickly proceeded, O king, to the mountains of Meru,[30] bearing in his mind those weighty words that the Supreme Lord had said unto him. Arrived at Meru he became filled with wonder at the thought, O king, of what he had achieved.[31] And he said unto himself,—'How wonderful is it! The journey I have performed is a long one! Having proceeded to such a distance, I have come back safe and sound!' From the mountains of Meru he then proceeded towards Gandhamādana.[32] Traversing through the skies he quickly alighted upon that extensive retreat known by the name of Vadari. There he beheld those ancient deities, *viz.*, those two foremost of Rishis, (called Nara and Nārāyana), engaged in the practice of penances, observing high vows, and depending upon their own selves.[33] Both of those adorable persons bore on their chests the beautiful whirls called Creevatsa, and both had matted locks on their heads. And in consequence of the effulgence with which they illumined the world they seemed to transcend the very Sun in energy.[34] The palms of each bore the mark called the swan's foot. The soles of their feet bore the mark of the discus. Their chests were very broad; their arms reached down to their knees.[35] Each of them had four 'Mushkas'.* Each of them had sixty teeth and four arms.† The voice of each was as deep as the roar of the clouds. Their faces were exceedingly handsome, their foreheads broad, their brows fair, their cheeks well-formed, and their noses aquiline.[36] The heads of those two deities were large and round, resembling open umbrellas. Possessed of these marks, they were certainly very superior persons in appearance.[37] Beholding them,

---

* It is difficult to say what this word means. *Vide* note at foot of page 745. I think with the Commentator that it means shoulder-joints.—T.

† The Bengal reading is 'ashta-bhujau'. The Bombay reading 'ashta-dangshtrau' does not seem to be correct. By accepting the Bengal reading, the word 'mushka' becomes clear.—T.

Nārada became filled with joy. He saluted them with reverence and was saluted by them in return. They received the celestial Rishi, saying 'Welcome', and made the ordinary enquiries. Beholding those two foremost of Beings, Nārada began to reflect within himself,[38]—'These two foremost of Rishis that are respected by all creatures seem to be very like, in appearance, unto those persons, adored of all beings, whom I have seen in White-Island!'[39]—Thinking in this way, he circumambulated them both and then sat down on the excellent seat made of Kuça grass that had been offered unto him.[40] After this, those two Rishis that were the abode of penances, of famous achievements, and of energy, —those ascetics that were endued with tranquillity of heart and self-restraint,—went through their morning rites.[41] They then, without anxious hearts, worshipped Nārada with water to wash his feet and the usual ingredients of the Arghya. Having finished their morning rites and the observances necessary for receiving their guest, they sat down on two seats made of wooden planks.*[42] When those two Rishis took their seats, that place began to shine with peculiar beauty even as the sacrificial altar shines with beauty in consequence of the sacred fires when libations of clarified butter are poured upon them.[43] Then Nārāyana, seeing Nārada refreshed from fatigue and seated at his ease and well-pleased with the rites of hospitality he had received, addressed him, saying these words.[44]

"Nara and Nārāyana said,—'Hast thou seen in White Island the Supreme Soul, who is eternal and divine, and who is the high source whence we have sprung?'[45]

"Nārada said,—'I have seen that beautiful Being who is immutable and who has the universe for his form! In Him

---

* 'Avyagrān' means 'with tranqul souls'. It is said that with most young men what occurs is that their hearts at first leave them when they see a respected guest arrived who is to be received with due honors. A little while after, they get back their hearts. In the Nara and Nārāyana, however, nothing of this kind happened when they saw Nārada first, although Nārada was one to whom their reverence was due.—T.

dwell all the worlds, and all the deities with the Rishis![46] Even now I behold that Being in beholding you two that are eternal. Those marks and indications that characterise Hari himself of undisplayed form,[47] characterise you two that are endued with forms displayed before the senses.* Verily, I behold both of you by the side of that great God.[48] Dismissed by the Supreme Soul, I have today come hither.[49] In energy and fame and beauty, who else in the three worlds can equal Him than you two that have been born in the race of Dharma?[50] He has told me the entire course of duties having reference to Kshetrajna. He has also told me of all those incarnations which he will, in the future, have in this world.[51] The inhabitants, of White Island whom I have seen, are all divested of the five senses that are owned by ordinary persons. All of them are of awakened souls, endued as they are with true knowledge. They are, again, entirely devoted to the foremost of Beings, *viz.*, the Supreme Lord of the universe. They are always engaged in worshiping that great Deity, and the latter always sports with them.[52] The holy and Supreme Soul is always fond of those that are devoted to him. He is fond also of the regenerate ones. Always fond of those that are devoted to Him, He sports with those worshippers of His.[53] Enjoyer of the universe, pervading everything, the illustrious Mādhava is ever affectionate towards his worshippers. He is the Actor; he is the Cause; and He is the Effect. He is endued with omnipotence and immeasurable splendour.[54] He is the Cause whence all things spring. He is the embodiment of all the scriptural ordinances. He is the embodiment of all the topics. He is possessed of great fame.[55] Uniting Himself with penances, He has illumined Himself with a splendour that is said to represent an energy that is higher than (what occurs in) White Island. Of soul cleansed by penances, He has ordained Peace and Tranquillity in the three worlds.[56] With such an auspicious understanding, he is engaged in the observance of a very superior vow which is the embodiment of holiness.

* Nara and Nārāyana are the displayed forms of the undisplayed Hari.—T.

That realm where he resides, engaged in the austerest penances, the Sun warms not and Shoma does not adorn. There the wind blows not.[57] Having constructed an altar measuring eight fingers' breadth, the illustrious Creator of the universe is practising penances there, standing on one foot, with arms upraised, and with face directed towards the East.[58] Reciting the Vedas with their branches, he is engaged in practising the severest austerities. Whatever libations of clarified butter or meat are poured on the sacrificial fire according to the ordinances of Brahman, by the Rishis, by Paçupati himself, by the rest of the principal deities, by the Daityas, the Dānavas, and the Rākshasas, all reach the feet of that great deity.[59-61] Whatever rites and religious acts are performed by persons whose souls are entirely devoted to him, are all received by that great Deity on his head.[62] No one is dearer to him in the three worlds than those persons that are awakened and possessed of high souls. Dearer even than those persons is one that is entirely devoted to him.[63] Dismissed by him who is the Supreme Soul, I am coming here. This is what the illustrious and holy Hari has himself said unto me. I shall henceforth reside with you two, devoted to Nārāyana in the form of Aniruddha.' "[64]

Section CCCXLV.

"Nara and Nārāyana said,—'Deserving art thou of the highest praise, and highly favored hast thou been, since thou hast beheld the puissant Nārāyana himself (in the form of Aniruddha)! None else, not even Brahman himself who has sprung from the primal lotus, has been able to behold him.[1] That foremost of Purushas, endued with puissance and holiness, is of unmanifest origin and incapable of being seen. These words that we say unto thee are very true, O Nārada![2] There exists no one in the universe that is dearer to him than one that adores him with devotion. It is for this, O best of regenerate ones, that he showed himself unto thee![3] No one can repair to that realm where the Supreme Soul is engaged in the observance of penances, except we two, O

foremost of regenerate persons.[4] In consequence of that spot being adorned by Him, its splendour resembles the effulgence of a thousand Suns collected together.*[5] From that illustrious Being, O Brāhmana, from Him who is the origin of the Creator of the universe, O foremost of all persons endued with forgiveness, springs the attribute of forgiveness which attaches to the Earth.†[6] It is from that illustrious Being whose attributes are for the good of all beings, that *Rasa* (Taste) hath arisen. The attribute of Rasa attaches to the waters which are, again, liquid.[7] It is from Him that Heat or Light has arisen, having the attribute of Form or vision for its soul. It attaches itself to the Sun in consequence of which the Sun becomes able to shine and give heat.[8] It is from that illustrious and foremost of Beings that Touch also has arisen. It is attached to the Wind, in consequence of which the Wind moves about in the world producing the sensation of Touch.[9] It is from that puissant Lord of the entire universe that Sound has arisen. It attaches to Space, which, in consequence thereof, exists uncovered and unconfined.[10] It is from that illustrious Being that Mind, which pervades all Beings, has arisen. It attaches to Chandramas, in consequence of which Chandramas has come to be invested with the attribute of displaying all the things.[11] That spot where the divine Nārāyana, that eater of the libations and other offerings made in sacrifices resides with Knowledge alone for his companion, has, in the Vedas, been called by the name of the productive cause of all things known as *Sat*.'‡[12] The path that is theirs, O foremost

---

* Cf. Milton's description of the mount of God. The highest angels are not competent to bear its effulgence, being obliged to cover their eyes with their wings in looking at it.—T.

† 'Prithivi' or Earth is said to be 'sarvamsahā.' 'As forgiving as the Earth' is a common form of expression in almost every Indian dialect.—T.

‡ By 'Sat' is meant all existent things. The correlative word is 'Asat' or non-existent. Hence, aught and naught are the nearest approaches to these words. There are many secondary significations, however, of these two words. 'Sat,' for example, indicates effects or all gross objects; and 'asat' indicates causes, &c.—T.

of regenerate persons, that are stainless and that are freed from both virtue and sin, is fraught with auspiciousness and felicity.[13] Surya, who is the dispeller of the darkness of all the worlds, is said to be the door (through which the Emancipate must pass). Entering Surya, the bodies of such persons become consumed by his fire. They then become invisible for after that they cannot be seen by anybody at any time.[14] Reduced into invisible atoms, they then enter into Nārāyana (who resides in the centre of Suryya). Passing out from him also, they enter into the form of Aniruddha.[15] Losing all physical attributes altogether and transformed into Mind alone, they then enter into Pradyumna. Passing out of Pradyumna, those foremost of regenerate persons, including both those that are conversant with Sānkhya philosophy and those that are devoted to the Supreme deity, then enter Sankarshana who is otherwise called Jiva. After this, divested of the three primal attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas, those foremost of regenerate beings quickly enter the Supreme Soul otherwise called Kshetrajna and which itself transcends the three primal attributes. Know that Vāsudeva is He called Kshetrajna. Verily shouldst thou know that that Vāsudeva is the abode or original refuge of all things in the universe.[16-18] Only they whose minds are concentrated, who are observant of all kinds of restraint, whose senses are controlled, and who are devoted with their whole souls, succeed in entering Vāsudeva.[19] We two, O foremost of regenerate ones, have taken birth in the house of Dharma. Residing in this delightful and spacious retreat, we are undergoing the austerest penances.[20] We are thus employed, O regenerate one, moved by the desire of benefiting those manifestations of the Supreme Deity, dear to all the celestials, that will occur in the three worlds (for achieving diverse feats that are incapable of being achieved by any other Being).[21] In accordance, one after another, with such ordinances as are uncommon and as apply to us two only, O best of regenerate persons, we are duly observing all excellent and high vows fraught with the austerest penances.[22] Thou, O celestial Rishi endued with wealth of penances, wert beheld

by us in White Island when thou wert there. Having met with Nārāyana, thou hast formed a particular resolution.[23] In the three worlds consisting of mobile and immobile Beings, there is nothing that is unknown to us. Of good or evil that will occur or has occurred or is occurring, that God of gods, O great ascetic, has informed thee!'"[24]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having heard these words of Nara and Nārāyana both of whom were engaged in the practice of the austerest penances, the celestial Rishi Nārada joined his hands in reverence and became entirely devoted to Nārāyana.[25] He employed his time in mentally reciting, with due observances, innumerable sacred Mantras that are approved by Nārāyana. Worshipping the Supreme Deity Nārāyana, and adoring those two ancient Rishis also that had taken birth in the house of Dharma, the illustrious Rishi Nārada, endued with great energy, continued to reside, thus employed, in that retreat, called Vadari, on the breast of Himavat, belonging to Nara and Nārāyana, for a thousand years as measured by the standard of the celestials."[26-27]

SECTION CCCXLVI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"On one occasion, while residing in the retreat of Nara and Nārāyana, Nārada the son of Prameshthi, having duly accomplished the rites and observances in honor of the deities, set himself to perform thereafter the rites in honor of the Pitris.[1] Beholding him thus prepared, the eldest son of Dharma, *viz.*, the puissant Nārāyana, addressed him, saying.—'Whom art thou worshipping, O foremost of regenerate persons, by these rites and observances in connection with the deities and the Pitris? O foremost of all persons endued with intelligence, tell me this, agreeably to the scriptures. What is this that thou art doing? What also are the fruits desired by thee of those rites thou hast addrest thyself in performing?'[2-3]

"Nārada said,—'Thou saidst unto me on a former occasion that rites and observances in honor of the deities should be accomplished. Thou saidst that the rites in honor of the

deities constitute the highest sacrifice and are equivalent to the worship of the eternal and Supreme Soul.[4] Instructed by that teaching, I always sacrifice in honor of the eternal and immutable Vishnu through these rites that I perform in worshipping the deities. It is from that Supreme Deity that Brahman, the Grandsire of all the worlds, took his rise in days of yore.[5] That Brahman, otherwise called Prameshthi, filled with cheerfulness, caused my sire (Daksha) to start into being. I was the son of Brahman, created before all others, by a fiat of his will (although I had to take birth afterwards as the son of Daksha through a curse of that Rishi).[6] O righteous and illustrious one, I am performing these rites in honor of the Pitris for the sake of Nārāyana and agreeably to those ordinances that have been laid down by himself. The illustrious Nārāyana is the father, mother, and grandfather (of all creatures).[7] In all sacrifices performed in honor of the Pitris, it is that Lord of the universe who is adored and worshipped. On one occasion, the deities, who were sires, taught their children the Crutis.[8] Having lost their knowledge of the Crutis, the sires had to acquire it again from those sons unto whom they had communicated it. In consequence of this incident, the sons, who had thus to communicate the Mantras unto their sires, acquired the status of sires (and the sire, for having obtained the Mantras from their sons, acquired the status of sons).*[9] Without doubt, what the deities did on that occasion is well known to you two. Sons and sires (on that occasion) had thus to worship each other.[10] Having first spread some blades of Kuça grass, the deities and the Pitris (who were their children) placed

* The story is that once on a time the deities, on the eve of going out on a campaign against the Asuras, communicated the Vedas unto their children, Agnishātta and others. In consequence, however, of the length of time for which they were occupied on the field, they forgot their Vedas. Returning to heaven, they had actually to reacquire them from their own children and disciples. The Scriptures declare that the preceptor is ever the sire, and the disciple is the son. Difference of age would not disturb the relationship. A youth of sixteen might thus be the father of an octogenarian. With Brāhmanas, reverence is due to knowledge, not age.—T.

three *Pindas* thereon and in this way worshipped each other. I wish to know, however, the reason why the Pitris in days of yore acquired the name of *Pindas*.'[11]

"Nara and Nārāyana said,—'The Earth, in days of yore, with her belt of seas, disappeared from the view. Govinda, assuming the form of a gigantic boar, raised her up (with his mighty tusk).[12] Having replaced the Earth in her former position, that foremost of Purushas, his body smeared with water and mud, set himself to do what was necessary for the world and its denizens.[13] When the Sun reached the meridian, and the hour, therefore, came for saying the morning prayers, the puissant Lord, suddenly shaking off three balls of mud from his tusk,[14] placed them upon the Earth, O Nārada, having previously spread thereon certain blades of grass. The puissant Vishnu dedicated those balls of mud unto his own self, according to the rites laid down in the eternal ordinance.[15] Regarding the three balls of mud that the puissant Lord had shaken off from his tusks as Pindas, he then, with sesame seeds of oily kernel that arose from the heat of his own body,[16] himself performed the rite of dedication, sitting with face turned towards the East. That foremost of deities then, impelled by the desire of establishing rules of conduct for the denizens of the three worlds, said these words :[17]—

"'Vrishākapi said,—I am the Creator of the worlds. I am resolved to create those that are to be called Pitris.—Saying these words, he began to think of those high ordinances that should regulate the rites to be gone through in honor of the Pitris.[18] While thus engaged, he saw that the three balls of mud, shaken off his tusk, had fallen towards the South. He then said unto himself,—These balls, shaken off my tusk, have fallen on the Earth towards the southern direction of her surface ! Led by this, I declare that these should be known henceforth by the name of Pitris.[19] Let these three that are of no particular shape, and that are only round, come to be regarded as Pitris in the world ! Even thus do I create the eternal Pitris ![20] I am the father, the grandfather, and the great grandfather, and I should be

regarded as residing in these three Pindas ![21] There is no one that is superior to me. Who is there whom I myself may worship or adore with rites? Who, again, is my sire in the universe? I myself am my grand-father.[22] I am, indeed, the Grandsire and the Sire. I am the one cause (of all the universe)!—Having said these words, that God of gods, *viz.*, He called Vrishākapi,[23] offered those Pindas, O learned Brāhmana, on the breast of the Varāha mountains, with elaborate rites. By those rites He worshipped His own self, and having finished the worship, disappeared there and then.[24] Hence have the Pitris come to be called by the name of Pinda. Even this is the foundation of the designation. Agreeably to the words uttered by Vrishākapi on that occasion, the Pitris receive the worship offered by all.[25] They who perform sacrifices in honor of and adore the Pitris, the deities, the preceptor or other reverend senior, guests arrived at the house, kine, superior Brāhmanas, the goddess Earth, and their mothers,[26] in thought, word, and deed, are said to adore and sacrifice unto Vishnu himself. Pervading the bodies of all existent creatures, the illustrious Lord is the Soul of all things.[27] Unmoved by happiness or misery, His attitude towards all is equal. Endued with greatness, and of great soul, Nārāyana has been said to be the soul of all things in the universe."[28]

Section CCCXLVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—'Having heard these words of Nara and Nārāyana, the Rishi Nārada became filled with devotion towards the Supreme Being. Indeed, with his whole soul he devoted himself to Nārāyana.[1] Having resided for a full thousand years in the retreat of Nara and Nārāyana, having beheld the immutable Hari, and heard the excellent discourse having Nārāyana for its topic, the celestial Rishi repaired to his own retreat on the breast of Himavat.[2] Those foremost of ascetics, *viz.*, Nara and Nārāyana, however, continued to reside in their delightful retreat of Vadari, engaged in the practice of the severest austerities.[3] Thou

art born in the race of the Pāndavas. Thou art of immeasurable energy. O perpetuater of the race of the Pāndavas, having listened to this discourse on Nārāyana from the beginning, thou hast certainly been cleansed of all thy sins and thy soul has been sanctified![4] His is neither this world nor the world hereafter, O best of kings, who hates instead of loving and reverencing the immutable Hari![5] The ancestors of that person who hates Nārāyana, who is the foremost of deities, and is otherwise called Hari, sink into hell for eternity.[6] O tiger among men, Vishnu is the soul of all beings. How, then, can Vishnu be hated, for in hating him one would hate one's own self.[7] He who is our preceptor, *viz.*, the Rishi Vyāsa, the son of Gandhavati, has himself recited this discourse unto us on the glory of Nārāyana, that glory which is the highest and which is immutable. I heard it from him and have recited it to thee exactly as I heard it, O sinless one.[8] This cult, with its mysteries and its abstract of details, was obtained by Nārada, O king, from that Lord of the universe, *viz.*, Nārāyana himself.[9] Even such are the particulars of this great cult. I have, before this, O foremost of kings, explained it to thee in the Hari-Gitā, with a brief reference to its ordinances.*[10] Know that the Island-born Krishna, otherwise called Vyāsa, is Nārāyana on Earth. Who else than he, O tiger among kings, could compile such a treatise as the Mahābhārata? Who else than that puissant Rishi could discourse upon the diverse kinds of duties and cults for the observance and adoption of men?[11] Thou hast resolved upon performing a great sacrifice. Let that sacrifice of thine proceed as determined by thee! Having listened to the diverse kinds of duties and cults, let thy Horse-sacrifice go on!"[12]

Sauti continued,—That best of kings, having heard this great discourse, began all those rites that are laid down in the ordinance, for the completion of his great sacrifice.[13] Questioned by thee, O Caunaka, I have duly recited to thee

---

* The 'Hari-Gitā' is the 'Bhagavadgitā.' It is sometimes called also 'Nārāyanagi tā.'—T.

and all these Rishis that are denizens of the Naimisha forest, that great discourse having Nārāyana for its topic.[14] Formerly Nārada had recited it to my preceptor in the hearing of many Rishis and the sons of Pāndu and in the presence of Krishna and Bhishma also.*[15] The Supreme deity Nārāyana is the Lord of all the foremost of Rishis, and of the three worlds. He is the upholder of Earth herself of vast proportions. He is the receptacle of the Crutis and of the attribute of humility. He is the great receptacle of all those ordinances that should be practised for attaining to tranquillity of heart, as also of all those that go by the name of Yama. He is always accompanied by the foremost of regenerate persons. Let that great deity be thy refuge![16] Hari ever does what is agreeable and beneficial to the denizens of heaven. He is always the slayer of such Asuras (as become troublesome to the three worlds). He is the receptacle of penances. He is possessed of great fame. He is the slayer of the Daityas known by the name of Madhu and Kaitabha. He is the ordainer of the ends that are attained to by persons acquainted with and observant of scriptural and other duties. He dispels the fears of all persons. He takes the foremost of those offerings that are dedicated in sacrifices. He is thy refuge and protection.[17] He is endued with attributes. He is freed from attributes. He is endued with a quadruple form. He shares the merits arising from the dedication of tanks and the observance of similar religious rites. Unvanquished and possessed of great might, it is He that always ordains the end, approachable by the Soul alone, of Rishis of righteous deeds.[18] He is the witness of the worlds. He is unborn. He is the one ancient Purusha. Endued with the complexion of the Sun, He is the Supreme Lord, and He is the refuge of all. Do all of you bow your heads unto Him since He who sprang from the waters (*viz.*, Nārāyana himself) bends his head unto

* It is not clear who is the 'Guru' referred to in this Verse. The Commentator thinks that it is Vrihaspati the preceptor of the celestials. The celestial preceptor never came to the Pāndavas. It is probable that either Vyāsa or Vaiçampāyana is meant.—T.

Him.*[19] He is the origin of the universe. He is that Being who is called Amrita. He is minute. He is the refuge upon whom all things depend. He is the one Being to whom the attribute of immutability attaches. The Sānkhyas and Yogins, of restrained souls, hold Him who is eternal in their understandings.[20]

SECTION CCCXLVIII.

Janamejaya said,—"I have heard from thee the glory of the divine and Supreme Soul. I have heard also of the birth of the Supreme Deity in the house of Dharma, in the form of Nara and Nārāyana.[1] I have also heard from thee the origin of the Pinda from the mighty Boar (which form the supreme Deity had assumed for raising the submerged Earth). I have heard from thee about those deities and Rishis that were ordained for the religion of Pravritti and of those that were ordained for the religion of Nivritti.[2] Thou hast also, O regenerate one, discoursed to us on other topics. Thou hast said also unto us of that vast form, with the Equine head,[3] of Vishnu, that eater of the libations and other offerings made in sacrifices,—the form, *viz.*, that appeared in the great ocean on the North-East. That form was beheld by the illustrious Brahman otherwise known by the name of Parameshthi.[4] What, however, were the exact features, and what the energy, the like of which among all great objects had never appeared before, of that form which Hari, the upholder of the universe, displayed on that occasion?[5] What did Brahman do, O ascetic, after having seen that foremost of deities, him whose like had never been seen before, him who was of immeasurable energy, him who had the Equine head, and him who was Sacredness itself?[6] O regenerate one, this doubt hath arisen in our mind about this ancient subject of knowledge. O thou of foremost intelligence, for what reason did the supreme Deity assume that form and

---

* In these Verses, it is to Vāsudeva that the speaker is referring. 'The witness of the worlds' means that he has witnessed innumerable Creations and Destructions and will witness them through eternity.—T.

display himself in it unto Brahman ?"[7] Thou hast certainly sanctified us by discoursing unto us on these diverse sacred subjects !*[8]

Sauti said,—I shall recite to thee that ancient history, which is perfectly consistent with the Vedas, and which the illustrious Vaiçampāyana recited unto the son of Parikshit on the occasion of the great Snake-sacrifice.[9] Having heard the account of the mighty form of Vishnu, that was equipt with the horse-head, the royal son of Parikshit too had entertained the same doubt and put the same questions to Vaiçampāyana.[10]

Janamejaya said,—"Tell me, O best of men, for what reason did Hari appear in that mighty form equipt with a horse-head and which Brahman, the Creator, beheld on the shores of the great northern Ocean on the occasion referred to by yourself ?[11]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"All existent objects, O king, in this world, are the result of a combination of the five primal elements, a combination due to the intelligence of the Supreme Lord.[12] The puissant Nārāyana, endued with infinity, is the Supreme Lord and Creator of the universe. He is the inner Soul of all things, and the giver of boons. Divested of attributes, he is again possessed of them.[13] Listen now, O best of kings, to me as I narrate to thee how the Destruction is brought about of all things. At first, the element of Earth becomes merged in Water and nothing then is seen save one vast expanse of Water on all sides.[14] Water then merges into Light, and Light into Wind. Wind then merges into Space, and Space, in its turn, merges into Mind.[15] Mind merges into the Manifest (otherwise called Consciousness or Ego). The Manifest merges

* This speech is really that of Caunaka. Some incorret texts represent it as the speech of Janamejaya. The following speech is that of Sauti, though the texts alluded to above make it that of Vaiçampāyana. It is true in this speech the vocative 'Brahman' occurs, but we may easily take it as a slip of the pen. K. P. Singha makes the correction. The Burdwan translator, without perceiving the absurdity, adheres to the incorrect text.—T.

into the Unmanifest (or Prakriti). The Unmanifest (or Prakriti) merges into Purusha (Jivātman) and Purusha merges into the Supreme Soul (or Brahma).[16] Then Darkness spreads over the face of the universe, and nothing can be perceived. From that primal Darkness arises Brahma (endued with the principle of Creation). Darkness is primeval and fraught with immortality.[17] Brahma that arises from primeval Darkness develops (by its own potency) into the idea of the universe, and assumes the form of Purusha. Such Purusha is called Aniruddha. Divested of sex, it is called otherwise by the name of *Pradhāna* (Supreme or Primary).[18] That is also known by the name of Manifest, or the combination of the triple attribute, O best of kings! He exists with Knowledge alone for his companion. That illustrious and puissant Being is otherwise called by the name of Viçwaksena or Hari.[19] Yielding to Yoga-sleep, he lays himself down on the waters. He then thinks of the Creation of the Universe of diversified phenomena and fraught with immeasurable attributes.[20] While engaged in thinking of Creation, he recollects his own high attributes. From this springs the four-faced Brahman representing the Consciousness of Aniruddha.[21] The illustrious Brahman, otherwise called Hiranyagarbha, is the Grandsire of all the worlds. Endued with eyes like lotus petals, he takes birth within the Lotus that springs from (the navel of) Aniruddha.[22] Seated on that Lotus, the illustrious, puissant, and eternal Brahman of wonderful aspect saw that the waters were on all sides.[23] Adopting the attribute of Sattwa, Brahman, otherwise called Parameshthi, then commenced to create the universe. In the primeval Lotus that was endued with the effulgence of the Sun, two drops of water had been cast by Nārāyana that were fraught with great merit. The illustrious Nārāyana, without beginning and without end, and transcending destruction, cast his eyes on those two drops of water.[24-25] One of those two drops of water, of very beautiful and bright form, looked like a drop of honey. From that drop sprang, at the command of Nārāyana, a Daitya of the name of Madhu made up of the attribute of

Tamas. The other drop of water within the Lotus was very hard. From it sprang the Daitya Kaitabha made up of the attribute of Rajas.[26] Endued thus with the attributes of Tamas and Rajas, the two Daityas possessed of might and armed with maces, immediately after their birth, began to rove within that vast primeval Lotus.[27] They beheld within it Brahman of immeasurable effulgence, engaged in creating the four Vedas, each endued with the most delightful form.[28] Those two foremost of Asuras, possessed of bodies, beholding the four Vedas, suddenly seized them in the very sight of their Creator.[29] The two mighty Dānavas, having seized the eternal Vedas, quickly dived into the ocean of waters which they saw and proceeded to its bottom.[30] Seeing the Vedas forcibly taken away from him, Brahman became filled with grief. Robbed of the Vedas in this way, Brahman then addressed the Supreme Lord in these words.[31]

"Brahman said,—'The Vedas are my great eyes! The Vedas are my great strength! The Vedas are my great refuge! The Vedas are my high Brahma![32] All the Vedas, however, have been forcibly taken away from me by the two Dānavas! Deprived of the Vedas, the worlds I have created have become enveloped in darkness![33] Without the Vedas (beside me), how shall I succeed in causing my excellent Creation to start into existence? Alas, great is the grief I suffer in consequence of the loss of the Vedas (through such agency)![34] My heart is very much pained. It has become the abode of a great sorrow. Who is there that will rescue me from this ocean of grief in which I am sunk for the loss I have endured? Who is there that will bring me the Vedas I have lost? Who is there that will take compassion on me?[35]—While Brahman was uttering these words, O best of kings, the resolution suddenly arose in his mind, O foremost of intelligent persons, for hymning the praises of Hari in these words. The puissant Brahman then, with hands joined in reverence, and seizing the feet of his progenitor, sang this highest of hymns in honor of Nārāyana.[36]

"Brahman said,—'I bow to thee, O heart of Brahman! I bow to thee that hast been born before me! Thou art the

origin of the universe! Thou art the foremost of all abodes. Thou, O puissant one, art the ocean of Yoga with all its branches![37] Thou art the Creator of both what is Manifest and what is Unmanifest! Thou treadest along the path whose auspiciousness is of inconceivable extent! Thou art the consumer of the universe! Thou art the inner Soul of all creatures! Thou art without any origin![38] Thou art the refuge of the universe! Thou art self-born, for origin thou hast none that is not thyself! As regards myself, I have sprung from thy Cheerfulness. From thee have I derived my birth. My first birth from thee, which is regarded sacred by all regenerate persons, was due to a fiat of thy will. My second birth in days of yore was from thy eyes.[39-40] Through thy Grace, my third birth was from thy speech. My fourth birth, O puissant Lord, was from thy ears.[41] My fifth birth, excellent in all respects, was from thy nose, O Lord! My sixth birth was, through thee, from an egg.[42] This is my seventh birth. It has occurred, O Lord, within this Lotus. At each Creation I take birth from thee as thy son, O thou that art divested of the three attributes![43] Indeed, O lotus-eyed one, I take birth as thy eldest son, made up of Sattwa the foremost of three attributes. Thou art endued with that nature which is Supreme. Thou springest from thyself![44] I have been created by thee. The Vedas are my eyes. Hence, I transcend Time itself. Those Vedas, which constitute my eyes, have been taken away from me. I have, therefore, become blind! Do thou awake from this Yoga-sleep! Give me back my eyes! I am dear to thee and thou art dear to me![45] Thus praised by Brahman, the illustrious Purusha, with face turned towards every side, then shook off his slumber, resolved to recover the Vedas (from the Daityas that had forcibly snatched them away). Applying his Yoga-puissance, he assumed a second form.[46] His body, equipt with an excellent nose, became as bright as the Moon. He assumed an equine head of great effulgence, that head which was the abode of the Vedas.[47] The firmament, with all its luminaries and constellations, became the crown of his head. His locks of hair were long and flowing, and had the

splendour of the rays of the Sun.[48] The regions above and below became his two ears. The Earth became his forehead. The two rivers Gangā and Saraswati became his two hips. The two oceans became his two eye-brows.[49] The Sun and the Moon became his two eyes. The twilight became his nose. The syllable Om became his memory and intelligence. The lightning became his tongue.[50] The Soma-drinking Pitris became, it is said, his teeth. The two regions of felicity, *viz.*, Goloka and Brahmaloka, became his upper and lower lips. The terrible night that succeeds universal destruction, and that transcends the three attributes, became his neck.[51] Having assumed this form endued with the equine head and having diverse things for its diverse limbs, the Lord of the universe disappeared then and there, and proceeded to the nether regions.[52] Having reached those regions, he set himself to high Yoga. Adopting a voice regulated by the rules of the science called Cikshā, he began to loudly utter Vedic Mantras.[53] His pronunciation was distinct and reverberated through the air, and was sweet in every respect. The sound of his voice filled the nether region from end to end. Endued with the properties of all the elements, it was productive of great benefits.[54] The two Asuras, making an appointment with the Vedas in respect of the time when they would come back to take them up again, threw them down in the nether region, and ran towards the spot whence those sounds appeared to come.[55] Meanwhile, O king, the Supreme Lord with the equine head, otherwise called Hari, who was himself in the nether region, took up all the Vedas.[56] Returning to where Brahman was staying, he gave the Vedas unto him. Having restored the Vedas unto Brahman, the Supreme Lord once more returned to his own nature.[57] The Supreme Lord also established his form with the equine head in the Noth-Eastern region of the great ocean. Having (in this way) established him who was the abode of the Vedas, he once more became the equine-headed form that he was.*[58] The two Dānavas Madhu and

* It is difficult to settle the reading of this Verse. The Bengal

Kaitabha, not finding the person from whom those sounds proceeded, quickly came back to that spot. They cast their eyes around but beheld that the spot on which they had thrown the Vedas was empty.[59] Those two foremost of mighty Beings, adopting great speed of motion, rose from the nether region.[60] Returning to where the primeval Lotus was that had given them birth, they saw the puissant Being, the original Creator, staying in the form of Aniruddha of fair complexion and endued with a splendour resembling that of the Moon.[61] Of immeasurable prowess, he was under the influence of Yoga-sleep, his body stretched on the waters and occupying a space as vast as itself.[62] Possessed of great effulgence and endued with the attribute of stainless Sattwa, the body of the Supreme Lord lay on the excellent hood of a snake that seemed to emit flames of fire for the resplendence attaching to it.[63] Beholding the Lord thus lying, the two foremost of Dānavas roared out a loud laugh. Endued with the attributes of Rajas and Tamas, they said,[64]—'This is that Being of white complexion. He is now lying asleep. Without doubt, this one has brought the Vedas away from the nether region.[65] Whose is he? Who is he? Why is he thus asleep on the hood of a snake?'—Uttering these words, the two Dānavas awakened Hari from his Yoga-slumber.[66] The foremost of Beings, (*viz.*, Nārāyana), thus awakened, understood that the two Dānavas intended to have an encounter with him in battle. Beholding the two foremost of Asuras prepared to do battle with him, he also set his mind to gratify that desire of theirs.[67] Thereupon an encounter took place between those two on one side and Nārāyana on the other. The Asuras Madhu and Kaitabha were embodiments of the attributes of Rajas and Tamas. Nārāyana slew them both for gratifying Brahman. He thence came to be called by the name of Madhusudana (slayer of Madhu).[68] Having compassed the destruction of the two

---

texts have 'ālayah,' the Bombay edition has 'ālayam'. At any rate, Verse 58 seems to contradict the previous Verse. If after restoring the Vedas to Brahman, Narāyana returned to his own nature, where would his form be that had the horse-head?—T.

Asuras and restored the Vedas to Brahman, the Supreme Being dispelled the grief of Brahman.[69] Aided then by Hari and assisted by the Vedas, Brahman created all the worlds with their mobile and immobile creatures.[70] After this, Hari, granting unto the Grandsire intelligence of the foremost order relating to the Creation, disappeared there and then for going to the place he had come from.[71] It was thus that Nārāyana, having assumed the form equipt with the horse-head, slew the two Dānavas Madhu and Kaitabha, (and disappeared from the sight of Brahman). Once more, however, he assumed the same form for the sake of causing the religion of Pravritti to flow in the universe.[72]

"Thus did the blessed Hari assume in days of old that grand form having the equine head. This, of all his forms, endued with puissance, is celebrated as the most ancient.[73] That person who frequently listens or mentally recites this history of the assumption by Nārāyana of the form equipt with the equine head, will never forget his Vedic or other lore.[74] Having adored with the austerest penances the illustrious deity with the equine head, the Rishi Pānchāla (otherwise known as Gālava) acquired the science of *Krama* by proceeding along the path pointed out by the deity (Rudra).*[75] I have thus recited to thee, O king, the old story of Hayaçiras, consistent with the Vedas, about which thou hadst asked me.[76] Whatever forms the Supreme Deity desires to assume with a view to the ordering of the affairs of the universe, he assumes immediately by exercise of his own inherent powers.[77] The Supreme Deity, endued with every prosperity, is the receptacle of the Vedas. He is the receptacle of Penances also. The puissant Hari is Yoga. He is the embodiment of the Sānkhya

* Both the Vernacular translators give ridiculous Versions of this Verse. K. P. Singha takes Pānchāla to be a king and understands the Verse to mean that king Pānchāla got back his kingdom through the grace of Nārāyana. The Burdwan translator errs as usual, by taking *krama* to imply 'gati' or end. The fact is, this Verse repeats what has been already said in Verses 100 to 102 of Section 343 *ante*. *Krama* means the science by whose aid the words used in the Vedas are separated from each other.—T.

philosophy. He is that foremost Brahma of which we hear.[78] Truth has Nārāyana for its refuge. Rita has Nārāyana for its soul. The religion of Nivritti, in which there is no return, has Nārāyana for its high abode.[79] The other religion which has Pravritti for its basis, has equally Nārāyana for its soul. The foremost of all the attributes that belong to the element of Earth is scent. Scent has Nārāyana for its soul.[80] The attributes of Water, O king, are called the Tastes (of the various kinds). These Tastes have Nārāyana for their soul. The foremost attribute of Light is form. Form also has Nārāyana for its soul.[81] Touch, which is the attribute of Wind, is also said to have Nārāyana for its soul. Sound, which is an attribute of Wind, has like the others Nārāyana for its soul.[82] Mind also, which is the attribute of the Unmanifest (Prakriti), has Nārāyana for its soul. Time which is computed by the motion of the celestial luminaries has similarly Nārāyana for its soul.[83] The presiding deities of Fame, of Beauty, and of Prosperity, have the same Supreme Deity for their soul. Both the Sānkhya philosophy and Yoga have Nārāyana for their soul.[84] The Supreme Being is the cause of all this, as Purusha. He is, again, the cause of everything, as Pradhāna (or Prakriti).[85] He is the basis on which all things rest. He is the doer or agent, and He is the cause of that variety that is witnessed in the universe. He is the diverse kinds of energy that act in the universe. Fifthly, he is that all-controlling invisible influence of which people speak.[86] Those employed in investigating the several topics of enquiry with the aid of such reasons as are of wide application, regard Hari to be identical with the five reasons adverted to above and as the final refuge of all things.[87] Indeed, the puissant Nārāyana, endued with the highest Yoga puissance, is the one topic (of enquiry). The thoughts of the denizen of all the worlds including Brahman and the high-souled Rishis, of those that are Sānkhyas and Yogins, of those that are Yatis, and of those, generally, that are conversant with the Soul, are fully known to Keçava, but none of these can know what his thoughts are.[88-89] Whatever acts

are performed in honor of the gods or the Pitris, whatever gifts are made, whatever penances are performed,[90] have Vishnu for their refuge,—Vishnu that is established upon his owns supreme ordinances. He is named Vāsudeva because of his being the abode of all creatures.[91] He is immutable. He is Supreme. He is the foremost of Rishis. He is endued with the highest puissance. He is said to transcend the three attributes. As Time (which runs smoothly without any sign) assumes indications when it manifests itself in the form of successive seasons, even so He, though really divested of attributes, assumes attributes (for manifesting Himself).[92] Even they that are high-souled do not succeed in understanding his motions. Only those foremost of Rishis that have knowledge for their Souls, succeed in beholding in their hearts that Purusha who transcends all attributes."[93]

SECTION CCCXLIX.

Janamejaya said,—"The illustrious Hari becomes gracious unto them that are devoted to him with their whole souls. He accepts also all worship that is offered to Him agreeably to the ordinance.[1] Of those persons that have burnt off their fuel, and that are divested of both merit and demerit, thou hast spoken of the Knowledge they attain, as handed down from preceptor to preceptor, as the end they win.*[2] Such persons always attain to that end which is the fourth, *viz.*, the essence of the foremost of Purushas or Vāsudeva,†—through the three others. Those persons, however, that are devoted to Nārāyana with their whole souls at once attain to the highest end.‡[3] Without doubt, the religion of

---

* 'Those who have burnt off their fuel' means men that have freed themselves from desire. 'Pāram-paryyagati' means Knowledge as handed down from preceptor to preceptor.—T.

† Vāsudeva is called the Fourth because below Him is Sankarshana, Pradyumna, and Aniruddha.—T.

‡ What is stated in these two Verses is the difference between the ends of those that rely on Knowledge, and those that are devoted to Nārāyana with their whole souls. The former attain to Vāsudeva, is

Devotion seems to be superior (to that of Knowledge) and is very dear to Nārāyana. These, without going through the three successive stages (of Aniruddha, Pradyumna, and Sankarshana), at once attain to the immutable Hari.[4] The end that is attained by Brahmanas, who, attending to due observances, study the Vedas with the Upanishads according to the rules laid down for regulating such study, and by those that adopt the religion of Yatis,[5] is inferior, I think, to that attained by persons devoted to Hari with their whole souls. Who first promulgated this religion of Devotion? Was it some deity or some Rishi that declared it?[6] What are the practices of those that are said to be devoted with their whole souls? When did those practices begin? I have doubts on these topics. Do thou remove those doubts. Great is my curiosity to hear thee explain the several points!*"[7]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"When the diverse divisions of the Pāndava and the Kuru armies were drawn up in array for the battle and when Arjuna became cheerless, the holy one himself explained the question of what is the end and what is not the end attained by persons of different characters. I have before this recited to thee the words of the holy one. The religion preached by the holy one on that occasion is difficult of comprehension. Men of uncleansed souls cannot apprehend it at all.[8-9] Having created this religion in days of yore, *viz.*, in the Krita age, in perfect accordance with the Sāmans, it is borne, O king, by the Supreme Lord, *viz.*,

---

is true, but then they have to pass gradually through the three others one after another, *viz.*, Aniruddha, Pradyumna, and Sankarshana. The latter, however, at once attain to Vāsudeva. It is curious to note how the Burdwan translator, with the Commentary before him and from which he quotes, misunderstands the second Verse completely. K. P. Singha's Version also is not clear though not incorrect.—T.

* The word 'Ekāntin' is explained by the Commentator to mean a 'nishkāma' worshipper, *i. e.*, one who adores the Supreme Deity without the expectation of any fruit whatever. There can be no error, however, in rendering it as 'one devoted with his whole soul'. Such devotion verily implies 'nishkāma' worship.—T.

Nārāyana, himself.[10] This very subject was proposed by the highly blessed Pārtha to Nārada (for the latter's discourse) in the midst of the Rishis and in the presence of Krishna and Bhishma.[11] My preceptor, *viz.*, the Island-born Krishna heard what Nārada said. Receiving it from the celestial Rishis, O best of kings, my preceptor imparted it to me in exactly the same way in which he had obtained it from the celestial Rishi. I shall now recite it to thee, O monarch, in the same way as it has been received from Nārada. Listen, therefore, to me.[12] In that Kalpa when the Creator Brahman, O king, took his birth in the mind of Nārāyana and issued from the latter's mouth, Nārāyana himself [13] performed, O Bhārata, his Daiva and Paitra rites in accordance with this religion. Those Rishis that subsist upon the froth of water then obtained it from Nārāyana.[14] From the froth-eating Rishis, this religion was obtained by those Rishis that go by the name of Vaikhānasas. From the Vaikhānasas Shoma got it. Afterwards, it disappeared from the universe.[15] After the second birth of Brahman, *viz.*, when he sprang from the eyes of Nārāyana, O king, the Grandsire (that is, Brahman) then received this religion from Shoma.[16] Having received it thus, Brahman imparted this religion, which has Nārāyana for its soul, unto Rudra. In the Krita age of that ancient Kalpa, Rudra, devoted to Yoga, O monarch,[17] communicated it to all those Rishis that are known by the name of Vālikhilyas. Through the illusion of Nārāyana, it once more disappeared from the universe.[18] In the third birth of Brahman which was due to the speech of Nārāyana, this religion once more sprang up, O king, from Nārāyana himself.[19] Then a Rishi of the name of Suparna obtained it from that foremost of Beings.[20] The Rishi Suparna used to recite this excellent religion, this foremost of cults, three times during the day. In consequence of this, it came to be called by the name of Trisauparna in the world.[21] This religion has been referred to in the Rigveda. The duties it inculcates are exceedingly difficult of observance. From the Rishi Suparna, this eternal religion was obtained, O foremost of men, by the

god of wind, that sustainer of the lives of all creatures in the universe. The god of wind communicated it unto such Rishis as subsist upon what remains of sacrificial offerings after feeding guests and others.[22-23] From those Rishis this excellent religion was obtained by the great Ocean. It once more disappeared from the universe and became merged into Nārāyana.[24] In the next birth of the high-souled Brahman when he sprang from the ear of Nārāyana, listen, O chief of men, to what happened in that Kalpa.[25] The illustrious Nārāyana, otherwise called Hari, when he resolved upon Creation, thought of a Being who would be puissant enough to create the universe.[26] While thinking of this, a Being sprang from his ears competent to create the universe. The Lord of all called him by the name of Brahman.[27] Addressing Brahman, the Supreme Nārāyana said unto him,—'Do thou, O son, create all kinds of creatures from thy mouth and feet. O thou of excellent vows, I shall do what will be beneficial for thee, for I shall impart to thee both energy and strength sufficient to render thee competent for this task.[28] Do thou receive also from me this excellent religion known by the name of Sāttwata. Aided by that religion do thou create the Krita age and ordain it duly![29]—Thus addressed, Brahman bowed his head unto the illustrious Harimedhas and received from him that foremost of all cults with all its mysteries and its abstract of details,[30] together with the Āranyakas,—that cult, *viz.*, which sprang from the mouth of Nārāyana. Nārāyana then instructed Brahman of immeasurable energy in that cult,[31] and addressing him, said,—Thou art the creator of the duties that are to be observed in the respective Yugas!—Having said this unto Brahman, Nārāyana disappeared and proceeded to that spot which is beyond the reach of Tamas, where the unmanifest resides, and which is known by the name of acts without desire of fruits.[32] After this, the boon-giving Brahman, the Grandsire of the worlds, created the different worlds with all their mobile and immobile creatures.[33] The age that first commenced was highly auspicious and came to be called by the name of Krita. In that age, the religion of Sattwa

existed, pervading the entire universe.*[34] With the aid of that primeval religion of righteousness, Brahman, the Creator of all the worlds, worshipped the Lord of all the deities, *viz.*, the puissant Nārāyana otherwise called Hari.[35] For the spread then of that religion and desirous of benefiting the worlds, Brahman then instructed that Manu who is known by the name of Swārochish in that cult.[36] Swārochish-Manu, that Lord of all the worlds, that foremost of all persons endued with puissance, then cheerfully imparted the knowledge of that cult to his own son, O king, who was known by the name of Cankhapada.[37] The son of Manu, *viz.*, Cankhapada, communicated the knowledge of that cult to his own son Suvarnābha who was the Regent of the cardinal and subsidiary points of the compass. When, upon the expiration of the Krita Yuga, the Tretā came, that cult once more disappeared from the world.[38] In a subsequent birth of Brahman, O best of kings, *viz.*, that which was derived from the nose of Nārāyana, O Bhārata, the illustrious and puissant Nārāyana or Hari with eyes like lotus petals, himself sang this religion in the presence of Brahman. Then the son of Brahman, created by a fiat of his will, *viz.*, Sanatkumāra, studied this cult.[39-40] From Sanatkumāra, the Prajāpati Virana, in the beginning of the Krita age, O tiger among Kurus, obtained this cult.[41] Virana having studied it in this way, taught it to the ascetic Raivya. Raivya, in his turn, imparted it to his son of pure soul, good vows, and great intelligence, *viz.*, Kukshi, that righteous Regent of the cardinal and subsidiary points of the compass. After this, that cult, born of the mouth of Nārāyana, once more disappeared from the world.[42-43] In the next birth of Brahman, *viz.*, that which he derived from an egg which sprang from Hari, this cult once more issued from the mouth of Nārāyana.[44] It was received by Brahman, O king, and practised duly in all its details by him. Brahman then communicated it, O monarch, to those Rishis that are known by the name of

---

* *I. e.*, all creatures were righteous and compassionate. Of evil, there was nothing in that age.—T.

Varhishada.[45] From the Varhishadas it was obtained by a Brāhmana well-versed in the Sāma-Veda, and known by the name of Jeshthya. And because he was well-versed with the Sāmans, therefore was he known also by the name of Jeshthya-sāmavrata-Hari.*[46] From the Brāhmana known by the name of Jeshthya, this cult was obtained by a king of the name of Avikampana. After this, that cult, derived from the puissant Hari, once more disappeared fron the world.[47] During the seventh birth of Brahman due to the lotus, O king, that sprang from the navel of Nārāyana, this cult was once more declared by Nārāyana himself,[48] unto the Grandsire of pure soul, the Creator of all the worlds, in the beginning of this Kalpa. The Grandsire gave it in days of yore to Daksha (one of his sons created by a fiat of his will).[49] Daksha, in his turn, imparted it to the eldest of all the sons of his daughters, O monarch, *viz.*, Āditya, who is senior in age to Savitri. From Āditya, Vivaswat obtained it.[50] In the beginning of the Tretā Yuga, Vivaswat imparted the knowledge of this cult to Manu. Manu, for the protection and support of all the worlds, then gave it to his son Ikshāku.†[51] Promulgated by Ikshāku, that cult overspreads the whole world. When the universal destruction comes, it will once more return to Nārāyana and be merged in Him.[52] The religion which is followed and practised by the Yatis, has, O best of kings, been narrated to thee before this in the Harigitā, with all its ordinances in brief.[53] The celestial Rishi Nārada got it from that Lord of universe, *viz.*, Nārāyana himself, O king, with all its mysteries and abstract of details.[54] Thus, O monarch, this foremost of cults is primeval and eternal. Incapable of being comprehended with ease and exceedingly difficult of being practised, it is always upheld by persons wedded to the attribute of Sattwa.[55] It is by means of acts that are well-performed and accomplished with a full knowledge of duties,—acts, that is, in which there is nothing of injury to any creature,—that Hari the

---

* One of the foremost of Sāmans is called by the name of Jeshthya One conversant with the Jeshthya Saman would have this name.—T.

† Ikshāku was the progenitor of the solar race of kings—T.

Supreme Lord became gratified.[56] Some persons adore Nārāyana as possessed of only one form, *viz.*, that of Aniruddha. Some adore Him as endued with two forms, *viz.*, that of Aniruddha and Pradyumna. Some adore Him as having three forms, *viz.*, Aniruddha, Pradyumna, and Sankarshana. A fourth class adore him as consisting of four forms, *viz.*, Aniruddha, Pradyumna, Shankarshana, and Vāsudeva.[57] Hari is Himself the Kshetrajna (Soul). He is without parts (being ever full). He is the Jiva in all creatures, transcending the five primal elements.[58] He is the Mind, O monarch, that directs and controls the five senses. Endued with the highest intelligence, He is the Ordainer of the universe, and the Creator thereof.[59] He is both active and inactive. He is both Cause and Effect. He is the one immutable Purusha, who sports as He likes, O king.[60] Thus have I recited to thee the religion of Devotion, O best of kings, incapable of being comprehended by persons of uncleansed souls but which I acquired through the grace of my preceptor.[61] Persons are very rare, O king, that are devoted to Nārāyana with their whole souls. If, O son of Kuru's race, the world had been full of such persons, that are full of universal compassion, that are endued with knowledge of the soul, and that are always employed in doing good to others, then the Krita age would have set in and all men would have betaken themselves to the accomplishment of acts without desire of fruit.[62-63] It was even in this way, O monarch, that that foremost of regenerate persons, *viz.*, the illustrious Vyāsa, my preceptor, fully conversant with all duties, discoursed unto king Yudhishthira the just on this religion of Devotion,[64] in the presence of many Rishis and in the hearing of Krishna and Bhishma. He had obtained it from the celestial Rishi Nārada endued with wealth of penances.[65] Those persons that are devoted to Nārāyana with their whole souls succeed in attaining to Nārāyana in the end, that highest of deities, identical with Brahma, pure in complexion, possessed of the effulgence of the moon, and endued with immutable."[66]

Janamejaya said,—"I see that those regenerate persons whose souls have been awakened practise diverse kinds of

duties. Why is it that other Brāhmanas do not practise those duties but betake themselves to the observance of other kinds of vows and rites ?"[67]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Three kinds of disposition, O monarch, have been created in respect of all embodied creatures, *viz.*, that which relates to the attribute of Sattwa, that which relates to the attribute of Rajas, and lastly that which relates to the attribute of Tamas, O Bhārata ![68] As regards embodied creatures, O perpetuator of Kuru's race, that person is the foremost who is wedded to the attribute of Sattwa, for, O tiger among men, it is certain that he will attain to Emancipation.[69] It is with the aid of this very attribute of Sattwa that one endued therewith succeeds in understanding the person that is conversant with Brahma. As regards Emancipation, it is entirely dependent upon Nārāyana. Hence it is that Emancipation is regarded as made up of the attribute of Sattwa.[70] By thinking of the foremost of Beings, the man that is devoted with his whole soul to Nārāyana, acquires great wisdom.[71] Those persons that are endued with wisdom, that have betaken themselves to the practices of Yatis and the religion of Emancipation,—those persons of quenched thirst,—always find that Hari favors them with the fruition of their desire.*[72] That man subject to birth (and death) upon whom Hari casts a kind eye should be known as endued with the attribute of Sattwa and devoted to the acquisition of Emancipation.[73] The religion followed by a person that is devoted with his whole soul to Nārāyana is regarded as similar or equal in merit to the system of the Sānkhyas.[74] By adopting that religion one attains to the highest end by attaining to Emancipation which has Nārāyana for its soul. That person upon whom Nārāyana looks with compassion succeeds in becoming awakened.†[75] No one, O king, can

* This desire, of course, relates to the acquisition of Emancipation. 'Yoga-kshema' literally means the acquisition of what is desired and the protection of what has been aquired.—T.

† 'Buddha' or 'Pratibuddha' literally implies 'awakened'. The sense, of course, is that such a person has succeeded in casting off all

become awakened through his own wishes. That nature which partakes of both Rajas and Tamas is said to be mixed.[76] Hari never casts a kind eye upon the person subject to birth (and death) that is endued with such a mixed nature and that has, on that account, the principle of Pravritti in him.[77] Only Brahman, the Grandsire of the worlds, looks upon the person that is subject to birth and death because of his mind being overwhelmed with the two inferior attributes of Rajas and Tamas.*[78] Without doubt, the deities and the Rishis are wedded to the attributes of Sattwa, O best of kings! But then they that are divested of that attribute in its subtile form are always regarded to be of mutable nature."†[79]

Janamejaya said,—"How can one that is fraught with the principle of change succeed in attaining to that foremost of Beings? Do tell me all this, which is, no doubt, known to thee! Do thou discourse to me also of Pravritti in due order!"[80]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"That which is the twentyfifth (in the enumeration of topics as made in the Sānkhya system) *viz.*, Jiva, when it becomes able to abstain entirely from acts, succeeds in attaining to the foremost of Beings which is exceedingly subtile, which is invested with the attribute of Sattwa (in its subtile form), and which is fraught with the esssences symbolised by the three letters of the alphabet (*viz.*, A, U, and M).[81] The Sānkhya system, the Āranyaka-

---

impurities and desires. He has, as it were, been awakened from the slumber of ignorance or darkness.—T.

* Those that follow the religion of Pravritti acquire heaven, &c., through their merits. Merits, however, are exhaustible. They have, therefore, to fall down from heaven. The Creator Brahman casts his eye on men that follow Pravritti. The religion of Nivritti, however, leads to Emancipation. It is Nārāyana that looks upon men that betake to Nivritti.—T.

† What is stated here is this: the deities and Rishis are certainly endued with Sattwa. But then that Sattwa is of a gross form. Hence, they cannot attain to Emancipation. It is only that Sattwa which is of subtile form that leads to Emancipation. The deities, without being able to attain to Emancipation, remain in a state that is mutable or fraught with change.—T.

Veda, and the Pancharātra scriptures, are all one and the same and form parts of one whole. Even this is the religion of those that are devoted with their whole souls to Nārāyana,—the religion that has Nārāyana for its essence.*[82] As waves of the ocean, rising from the ocean, rush away from it only to return to it in the end, even so diverse kinds of knowledge, springing from Nārāyana, return to Nārāyana in the end.[83] I have thus explained to thee, O son of Kuru's race, what the religion of Sattwa is. If thou beest competent for it, O Bhārata, do thou practise that religion duly.[84] Even thus did the highly-blessed Nārada explain to my preceptor,—the Island-born Krishna—the eternal and immutable course, called Ekānta, followed by the Whites as also by Yatis.†[85] Vyāsa, gratified with Dharma's son Yudhishthira, imparted this religion to king Yudhishthira the just who was possessed of great intelligence. Derived from my preceptor I have also communicated it to thee![86] O best of kings, this religion is, for these reasons, exceedingly difficult of practice. Others, hearing it, become as much stupefied as thou hast suffered thyself to be.[87] It is Krishna who is the protector of the universe and its beguiler. It is He who is the destroyer and the cause, O monarch!"[88]

SECTION CCCL.

Janamejaya said,—"The Sānkhya system, the Panchrātra scriptures, and the Āranyaka-Vedas,—these different systems of knowledge or religion,—O regenerate Rishi, are current in the world.[1] Do all these systems preach the same course of duties, or are the courses of duties preached by them,

* That is, the practices which constitute the religion of the Ekāntins are not really different for those laid down in the scriptures adverted to above.—T.

† Who are the Whites referred to in this place? The Commentator explains that the word has reference to persons leading the domestic mode of life. Yatis wear robes that are colored yellow or yellowish-red. House-holders, however, use cloth that is white, The word may also mean the inhabitants of White Island.—T.

O ascetic, different from one another? Questioned by me, do thou discourse to me on Pravritti in due order!"[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"I bow unto that great Rishi who is the dispeller of darkness, and whom Satyavati bore to Parāçara in the midst of an island, who is possessed of great knowledge and who is endued with great liberality of soul.[3] The learned say that he is the origin of the Grandsire Brahman; that he is the sixth form of Nārāyana; that he is the foremost of Rishis; that he is endued with the puissance of Yoga; that as the only son of his parents he is an incarnate portion of Nārāyana; and that, born under extraordinary circumstances on an Island, he is the inexhaustible receptacle of the Vedas.[4] In the Krita age, Nārāyana of great puissance and mighty energy, created him as his son. Verily, the high-souled Vyāsa is unborn and ancient and is the inexhaustible receptacle of the Vedas!"[5]

Janamejaya said,—"O best of renergate persons, it was thou that saidst before this that the Rishi Vaçishtha had a son of the name of Caktri and that Caktri had a son of the name of Parāçara, and that Parāçara begot a son named the Island-born Krishna endued with great ascetic merit.[6] Thou tellest me again that Vyāsa is the son of Nārāyana. I ask, was it in some former birth that Vyāsa of immeasurable energy had sprung from Nārāyana? O thou of great intelligence, do tell me of that birth of Vyāsa which was due to Nārāyana!"[7]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Desirous of understanding the meaning of the Crutis, my preceptor, that ocean of penances, who is exceedingly devoted to the observance of all scriptural duties and the acquisition of knowledge, dwelt for sometime in a particular region of the Himavat mountains.[8] Endued with great intelligence, he became fatigued with his penances in consequence of the great strain on his energies occasioned by the composition of the Mahābhārata. At that time, Sumanta and Jaimini and Paila of firm vows and myself numbering the fourth, and Cuka his own son, were his disciples. All of us, O king, in view of the fatigue our preceptor felt, waited dutifully upon him, engaged in

doing all that was necessary for dispelling that fatigue of his.[9-10] Surrounded by these disciples of his, Vyāsa shone in beauty on the breast of the Himavat mountains like the Lord of all the ghostly beings, *viz.*, Mahādeva, in the midst of those ghostly attendants of his.[11] Having recapitulated the Vedas with all their branches as also the meanings of all the Verses in the Mahābhārata, one day, with rapt attention, all of us approached the presence of our preceptor who, having controlled his senses, was at time rapt up in thought.[12] Availing ourselves of an interval in the conversation, we asked that foremost of regenerate persons to expound to us the meanings of the Vedas and of the Verses in the Mahābhārata and narrate to us the incidents as well of his own birth from Nārāyana.[13] Conversant as he was with all topics of enquiry, he at first discoursed to us on the interpretations of the Crutis and the Mahābhārata, and then set himself to narrate to us the following incidents relating to his birth from Nārāyana.[14]

"Vyāsa said,—'Listen, ye disciples, to this foremost of narratives, to this best of histories that relates again to the birth of a Rishi. Appertaining to the Krita age, this narrative has become known to me through my penances, ye regenerate ones![15] On the occasion of the seventh creation, *viz.*, that which was due to the primeval Lotus, Nārāyana, endued with the austerest penances, transcending both good and ill, and possessed of unrivalled splendour, at first created Brahman from his navel. After Brahman had started into birth, Nārāyana addressed him, saying,[16-17]—Thou hast sprung from my navel. Endued with puissance in respect of creation, do thou set thyself to create diverse kinds of creatures rational and irrational![18]—Thus addressed by the author of his being, Brahman, with mind penetrated by anxiety, felt the difficulty of his task and became unwilling to do what he was commanded to do. Bowing his head unto the boon-giving and illustrious Hari, the Lord of the universe, Brahman said these words unto him,[19]—I bow to thee, O Lord of the deities, but I ask what puissance have I to create diverse creatures? I have no wisdom. Do thou

ordain what should be ordained in view of this![20]—Thus addressed by Brahman, the Lord of the universe, *viz.*, Nārāyana, disappeared there and then from Brahman's sight. The foremost of all beings endued with intelligence, *viz.*, the Supreme Lord, then thought of Intelligence.[21] Endued with form that resembled the form of Hari himself, Intelligence forthwith made her appearance before the puissant Hari. Himself transcending all Yoga, Nārāyana then, with Yoga, applied the goddess of Intelligence properly.[22] The illustrious and puissant and immutable Hari, addressing the goddess of Intelligence who was endued with activity and goodness and all the puissance of Yoga, said unto her these words:[23]—For the accomplishment of the task of creating all the worlds do thou enter into Brahman!—Commanded thus by the Supreme Lord, Intelligence forthwith entered Brahman.[24] When Hari beheld that Brahman had become united with Intelligence, He once more addressed him, saying,—Do thou now create diverse kinds of creatures![25]—Replying unto Nārāyana by uttering the word—Yes,—Brahman reverently accepted the command of his progenitor. Nārāyana then disappeared from Brahman's presence,[26] and in a moment repaired to his own place known by the name of Light or Effulgence. Returning to His own disposition (of Unmanifestness), Hari resolved Himself into His one universal nature.[27] After the task of Creation, however, had been accomplished by Brahman, another thought arose in the mind of Nārāyana. Indeed, He reflected in this strain:—Brahman, otherwise called Parameshthi, has created all these creatures,[28] consisting of Daityas and Dānavas and Gandharvas and Rākshasas. The helpless Earth has become burthened with the weight of creatures.[29] Many among the Daityas and Dānavas and Rākshas on Earth will become endued with great strength. Possessed of penances, they will at diverse times succeed in acquiring many excellent boons.[30] Swelling with pride and might in consequence of those boons that they will succeed in obtaining, they will oppress and afflict the deities and the Rishis possessed of ascetic might.[31] It is, therefore, meet that I should now

and then lighten the burthen of the Earth, by assuming diverse forms one after another as occasion would require.[32] I shall achieve this task by chastising the wicked and upholding the righteous. (Thus looked after by me), the Earth, which is the embodiment of Truth, will succeed in bearing her freight of creatures.[33] Assuming the form of a mighty snake I myself have to uphold the Earth in empty space. Upheld by me thus, she will uphold the entire universe of creatures mobile and immobile. Incarnated on the Earth, therefore, in different forms, I shall have to rescue her at such times from peril.[34]—Having reflected in this way, the illustrious slayer of Madhu created diverse forms in his mind in which to appear from time to time for accomplishing the task in view.[35] Assuming the form of a Boar, of a Man-lion, of a Dwarf, and of human beings, I shall quell or slay such enemies of the deities as will become wicked and ungovernable.[36]—After this, the original Creator of the universe once more uttered the syllable *Bho*, causing the atmosphere to resound with it. From this syllable of speech (Saraswati) arose a Rishi of the name Sāraswat.[37] The son, thus born of the Speech of Nārāyana, came to be also called by the name of Apāntara-tamas. Endued with great puissance, he was fully conversant with the past, the present, and the future. Firm in the observance of vows, he was truthful in speech.*[38] Unto that Rishi who, after birth, had bowed his head unto Nārāyana, the latter, who was the original Creator of all the deities and possessed of a nature that was immutable, said those words:—Thou shouldst devote thy attention to the distribution of the Vedas, O foremost of all persons endued with intelligence !†[39]—Do thou, therefore, O ascetic, accomplish what I command thee! —In obedience to this command of the Supreme Lord from

* The name 'Apāntara-tamas' implies one whose darkness or ignorance has been dispelled.—T.

† 'Vedākhyāne Crutih kāryyā', literally, I think, means 'thou shouldst turn thy ears to the description of the Vedas', implying that 'thou shouldst set thyself to a distribution or arrangement of the Vedic hymns and Mantras.'—T.

whose Speech the Rishi Apāntarātamas sprang into existence, the latter, in that Kalpa which is named from the Self-born Manu, distributed and arranged the Vedas.[40] For that act of the Rishi, the illustrious Hari became gratified with him, as also for his well-performed penances, his vows and observances, and his restraint of the senses or passions.[41] Addressing him, Nārāyana said,—At each Manwantara, O son, thou wilt act in this way with respect to the Vedas. Thou shalt, in consequence of this act of thine, be immutable, O regenerate one, and incapable of being transcended by any one![42] When the Kali age will set in, certain princes of Bharata's line, to be called by the name of Kauravas, will take their birth from thee. They will be celebrated over the Earth as high-souled princes ruling over powerful kingdoms.[43] Born of thee, dissensions will break out among them for their destruction at one another's hands during thy absence, O foremost of regenerate persons.*[44] In that age also, endued with austere penances, thou wilt distribute the Vedas into diverse classes. Indeed, in that dark age, thy complexion will become dark.[45] Thou shalt cause diverse kinds of duties to flow and diverse kinds of knowledge also. Although endued with austere penances, yet thou shalt never be able to free thyself from desire and attachment to the world.[46] Thy son, however, will be freed from every attachment like unto the Supreme Soul, through the grace of Mādhava. It will not be otherwise.[47] He whom learned Brāhmanas call the mind-born son of the Grandsire, *viz.*, Vaçishtha endued with great intelligence and like unto an ocean of penances, and whose splendour transcends that of the Sun himself,[48] will be the progenitor of a race in which a great Rishi of the name of Parāçara, possessed of mighty energy and prowess, will take his birth. That foremost of

---

* It is difficult to understand what is the precise meaning of the expression 'twāmrite'. Literally, it means 'without thee'. Whether, however, the speaker means that all the princes will meet with destruction except thee, or that they will be destroyed without thy being present among them, or that such destruction will overtake them without thyself being the cause of it, it is difficult to determine.—T.

persons, that ocean of Vedas, that abode of penances, will become thy sire (when thou wilt take birth in the Kali age).[49] Thou shalt take thy birth as the son of a maiden residing in the house of her sire, through an act of congress with the great Rishi Parāçara.[50] Doubts thou wilt have none with respect to the imports of things past, present, and future. Endued with penances and instructed by me, thou wilt behold the incidents of thousands and thousands of ages long past away. Thou wilt see through thousands and thousands of ages also in the future.[51-52] Thou shalt, in that birth, behold me, O ascetic,—me that am without birth and death,—incarnated on Earth (as Krishna of Yadu's race), armed with the discus. All this will happen to thee, O ascetic, through the merit that will be thine in consequence of thy ceaseless devotion to me. These words of mine will never be otherwise.[53] Thou shalt be one of the foremost of creatures. Great shall be thy fame. Surya's son Cani (Saturn) will, in a future Kalpa, take birth as the great Manu of that period.[54] During that Manwantara, O son, thou shalt, in respect of merits, be superior to even the Manus of the several periods. Without doubt, thou shalt be so through my grace.[55] Whatever exists in the world represents the result of my exertion. The thoughts of others may not correspond with their acts. As regards myself however, I always ordain what I think, without the least impediment![*56]—Having said these words unto the Rishi Apāntaratamas, otherwise called by the name of Sāraswat, the Supreme Lord dismissed him, saying unto him,—Go!—I am he that was born as Apāntaratamas through the command of Hari. Once more have I taken birth as the celebrated Krishna-Dwaipāyana, a delighter of the race of Vaçishtha.[†57-58] I have thus told

* 'Anyo hanyam chintayati' seems to mean that the thoughts of others do not correspond with their acts.—T.

† It is scarcely necessary to remark that the word 'nandana' means both son and delighter. The etymological meaning is, of course, delighter. The son or grandson is so called because of his being a source of delight to the sire or the grandsire with the other members of the family. In Verse 58, 'nandana' seems to be used in the sense of 'delighter'.—T.

you, my dear disciples, the circumstances of my own former birth which was due to the grace of Nārāyana in so much that I was a very portion of Nārāyana himself.[59] Ye foremost of intelligent persons, I underwent, in days of yore, the austerest penances, with the aid of the highest abstraction of the mind.[60] Ye sons, moved by my great affection for yourselves that are devoted to me with reverence, I have told you everything relating to what you wished to know from me, *viz.*, my first birth in days of remote antiquity and that other birth subsequent to it (*viz.*, the present one)!'"[61]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"I have thus narrated to thee, O monarch, the circumstances connected with the former birth of our revered preceptor, *viz.*, Vyāsa of unstained mind, as asked by thee! Listen to me once again![62] There are diverse kinds of cults, O royal sage, that go by diverse names such as Sānkhya, Yoga, the Pancha-rātra, Vedas, and Pāçupati.[63] The promulgator of the Sānkhya cult is said to be the great Rishi Kapila. The primeval Hiranyagarbha, and none else, is the promulgator of the Yoga system.[64] The Rishi Apāntaratamas is said to be the preceptor of the Vedas, some call that Rishi by the name of Prāchina-garbha.[65] The cult known by the name of Pāçupata was promulgated by the Lord of Umā, that master of all creatures, *viz.*, the cheerful Civa, otherwise known by the name of Creekantha, the son of Brahman.[66] The illustrious Nārāyana is himself the promulgator of the cult, in its entirety, contained in the Pancharātra scriptures. In all these cults, O foremost of kings, it is seen[67] that the puissant Nārāyana is the one sole object of exposition. According to the scriptures of these cults and the measure of knowledge they contain, Nārāyana is the one sole object of worship they inculcate. Those persons whose visions, O king, are blinded by darkness, fail to understand that Nārāyana is the Supreme Soul pervading the entire universe.[68] Those persons of wisdom who are the authors of the scriptures say that Nārāyana, who is a Rishi, is the one object of reverent worship in the universe. I say that there is no other being like

Him.[69] The Supreme Deity, called by the name of Hari, resides in the hearts of those that have succeeded (with the aid of the scriptures and of inference) in dispelling all doubts. Mādhava never resides in the hearts of those that are under the sway of doubt and that would dispute away everything with the aid of false dialectics.[70] They that are conversant with the Pancharātra scriptures, that are duly observant of the duties laid down therein, and that are devoted to Nārāyana with their whole souls, succeed in entering into Nārāyana.[71] The Sānkhya and the Yoga systems are eternal. All the Vedas, again, O monarch, are eternal. The Rishis, in all these systems of cult, have declared that this universe existing from ancient times is Nārāyana's self.[72] Thou shouldst know that whatever acts, good or bad, laid down in the Vedas and occurring in heaven and Earth, the sky between, and the waters, are all caused by and flow from that ancient Rishi Nārāyana."[73]

SECTION CCCLI.

Janamejaya said,—"O regenerate one, are there many Purushas or is there only one? Who, in the universe, is the foremost of Purushas? What, again, is said to be the source of all things?"[1]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"In the speculations of the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems many are the Purushas spoken of. O preceptor of Kuru's race, those that follow these systems do not wish to assert that there is but one Purusha in the universe.*[2] In the same manner in which the many Purushas are said to have one origin in the Supreme Purusha, it may be said that this entire universe is identical with that one Purusha of superior attributes. I shall explain this

---

* The Commentator explains this Verse in this way. 'So far as ordinary purposes are concerned, both the Sānkhyas and Yogins speak of many Purushas. In reality, however, for purposes of the highest truth, there is but *one* Purusha.' I do not see this limitation in the Verse itself. The fact is, what the Commentator says is to be seen in the next Verse.—T.

now,[3] after bowing to my preceptor Vyāsa, that foremost of Rishis, who is conversant with the soul, endued with penances, self-restrained, and worthy of reverent worship.[4] This speculation on Purusha, O king, occurs in all the Vedas. It is well known to be identical with Rita and Truth. The foremost of Rishis, *viz.*, Vyāsa, has thought upon it.[5] Having occupied themselves with reflection on what is called Adhyātma, diverse Rishis, O king, having Kapila for their first, have declared their opinions on this topic both generally and particularly.[6] Through the grace of Vyāsa of immeasurable energy, I shall expound to thee what Vyāsa has said in brief on this question of the Oneness of Purusha.[7] In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse between Brahman, O king, and the Three-eyed Mahādeva.[8] In the midst of the Ocean of milk, there is a very high mountain of great effulgence like that of gold, known, O monarch, by the name of Vaijayanta![9] Repairing thither all alone, from his own abode of great splendour and felicity, the illustrious deity Brahman used very often to pass his time, engaged in thinking on the course of Adhyātma.[10] While the four-faced Brahman of great intelligence was seated there, his son Mahādeva, who had sprung from his forehead, encountered him one day in course of his wanderings through the universe.[11] In days of yore, the Three-eyed Civa endued with puissance and high Yoga, while proceeding along the sky, beheld Brahman seated on that mountain and, therefore, dropped down quickly on its top.[12] With a cheerful heart he presented himself before his progenitor and worshipped his feet. Beholding Mahādeva prostrated at his feet, Brahman took him up with his left hand.[13] Having thus raised Mahādeva up, Brahman, that puissant and one Lord of all creatures, then addressed his son, whom he met after a long time, in these words.[14]

"The Grandsire said,—'Welcome art thou, O thou of mighty arms! By good luck I see thee after such a long time come to my presence. I hope, O son, that everything is right with thy penances and thy Vedic studies and recitations. Thou art always observant of the austerest penances.

Hence I ask thee about the progress and well-being of those penances of thine!'[15-16]

"Rudra said,—'O illustrious one, through thy grace, all is well with my penances and Vedic studies. It is all right, again, with the universe![17] I saw thy illustrious self a long while ago in thy own home of felicity and effulgence! I am coming thence to this mountain that is now the abode of thy feet.*[18] Great is the curiosity excited in my mind by this withdrawal of thyself into such a lone spot from thy usual region of felicity and splendour. Great must the reason be, O Grandsire, for such an act on thy part.[19] Thy own foremost of abodes is free from the pains of hunger and thirst, and inhabited by both deities and Asuras, by Rishis of immeasurable splendour,[20] as also by Gandharvas and Apsaras. Abandoning such a spot of felicity, thou residest alone in this foremost of mountains. The cause of this cannot but be grave!'[21]

"Brāhman said,—'This foremost of mountains, called Vaijayanta, is always my residence. Here, with concentrated mind, I meditate on the one universal Purusha of infinite proportions.'[22]

"Rudra said,—'Self-born thou art. Many are the Purushas that have been created by thee. Others again, O Brahman, are being created by thee. The Infinite Purusha, however, of whom thou speakest, is one and single.[23] Who is that foremost of Purushas, O Brahman, that is being meditated by thee? Great is the curiosity I feel on this point. Do thou kindly dispel the doubt that has taken possession of my mind!'[24]

"Brahman said,—'O son, many are those Purushas of whom thou speakest. The one Purusha, however, of whom I am thinking, transcends all Purushas and is invisible.[25] The many Purushas that exist in the universe constitute the basis upon which that one Purusha stands; and since that one Purusha is said to be the source whence all the innumer-

* 'The abode of thy feet' means *thy* abode. To this day, in mentioning persons that are entitled to reverence, the Hindu speaks of them as the "feet of so and so"—T.

able Purushas have sprung,[26] hence all the latter, if they succeed in divesting themselves of attributes, become competent to enter into that one Purusha who is identified with the universe, who is supreme, who is the foremost of the foremost, who is eternal, and who is himself divested of and is above all attributes.' "[27]

SECTION CCCLII.

"Brahman said,—'Listen, O son, as to how that Purusha is indicated. He is eternal and immutable. He is undeteriorating and immeasurable. He pervades all things.*[1] O best of all creatures, that Purusha cannot be seen by thee, or me, or others. Those that are endued with the understanding and the senses but destitute of self-restraint and tranquillity of soul cannot obtain a sight of him. The Supreme Purusha is said to be one that can be seen with the aid of knowledge alone.[2] Though divested of body, He dwells in every body. Though dwelling, again, in bodies, He is never touched by the acts accomplished by those bodies.[3] He is my inner soul. He is thy inner soul. He is the all-seeing Witness dwelling within all embodied creatures and engaged in marking their acts. No one can grasp or comprehend him at any time.[4] The universe is the crown of his head. The universe is his arms. The universe is his feet. The universe is his eyes. The universe is his nose. Alone and single, he roves through all Kshetras, unrestrained by any limitations on his will and as best it likes him.[5] Kshetra is another name for body. And because he knows all Kshetras as also all good and bad deeds, therefore he, who is the soul of Yoga, is called by the name of Kshetrajna.†[6] No one succeeds in perceiving

---

* The Commentator explains the meanings of the words used in this Verse in this way: He is called 'Purusha' because of the attribute of fulness: eternal, because he has neither beginning nor end; immutable, because there is no change in him; undeteriorating, because he has no body that may be subject to decay; immeasurable, because the mind cannot conceive of him in his fulness.—T.

† Acts are called seeds. Seeds produce trees. Acts lead to the

how he enters into embodied creatures and how he goes out of them. Agreeably to the Sānkhya mode, as also with the aid of Yoga and the due observance of the ordinances prescribed by it, I am engaged in thinking of the cause of that Purusha, but, alas, I am unable to comprehend that cause, excellent as it is. I shall, however, according to the measure of my knowledge discourse to thee upon that eternal Purusha[7-8] and his Oneness and supreme greatness. The learned speak of him as the one Purusha. That one eternal Being deserves the appellation of Mahāpurusha (the great supreme Purusha).[9] Fire is an element, but it may be seen to blaze up in a thousand places under thousand different circumstances. The Sun is one and single, but his rays extend over the wide universe. Penances are of diverse kinds, but they have one common origin whence they have flowed. The Wind is one, but it blows in diverse forms in the world. The great Ocean is the one parent of all the waters in the world seen under diverse circumstances. Divested of attributes, that one Purusha is the universe displayed in infinitude. Flowing from him, the infinite universe enters into that one Purusha again who transcends all attributes, when the season comes of its destruction.[10] By casting off the consciousness of body and the senses, by casting off all acts good and bad, by casting off both truth and falsehood, one succeeds in divesting oneself of attributes.[11] The person who realises that inconceivable Purusha and comprehends his subtile existence in the quaruple form of Aniruddha, Pradyumna, Sankarshana, and Vāsudeva, and who, in consequence of such comprehension, attains to perfect tranquillity of heart, succeeds in entering into and identifying himself with that one auspicious Purusha.[12] Some persons possessed of learning speak of him as the supreme soul. Others regarded him as the one soul. A third class of learned men describe him as the soul.*[13] The truth

---

attainment of bodies. For the production of bodies, therefore, acts operate like seeds.—T.

* The sense seems to be this: in the Yoga system He is called the Supreme Soul, for Yogins affirm the existence of two souls, the

is that he who is the Supreme Soul is always divested of attributes. He is Nārāyana. He is the universal soul, and he is the one Purusha. He is never affected by the fruits of acts even as the leaf of the lotus is never drenched by the water one may throw upon it.[14] The acting Soul is different. That Soul is sometimes engaged in acts and when it succeeds in casting off acts attains to Emancipation or identity with the Supreme Soul.[15] The acting Soul is endued with the seven and ten possessions.* Thus is it said that there are innumberable kinds of Purushas in due order.[16] In reality, however, there is but one Purusha. He is the abode of all the ordinances in respect of the universe. He is the highest object of knowledge. He is at once the knower and the object to be known. He is at once the thinker and the object of thought. He is the eater and the food that is eaten. He is the smeller and the scent that is smelled. He is at once he that touches and the object that is touched.[17] He is the agent that sees and the object that is seen. He is the hearer and the object that is heard. He is the conceiver and the object that is conceived. He is possessed of attributes and is free from them. He is that, O son, which is named Pradhāna, enduring, eternal, and immutable.[18] He it is who creates the prime ordinance in respect of Dhātri himself. Learned Brāhmanas call Him by the name of Aniruddha. Whatever acts, possessed of excellent merits and fraught with blessings, flow in the world from the Vedas, have been caused by Him.†[19] All the deities, and all the Rishis, possessed of tranquil souls, occupying their places on the altar, dedicate to Him the first share of their

---

Jivātman and the Supreme Soul, and assert the superiority of the latter over the former. The Sānkhyas regard the Jiva-soul and the Supreme Soul to be one and the same. A third class of men think everything as Soul, there being no difference between the one Soul and the universe displayed in infinitude.—T.

* The acting Soul is ensconced in the Linga-çarira, with which it becomes now a human being, now a deity, now an animal, &c.—T.

† 'Dhāturādyam Vidhānam' is supposed by the Commentator to imply what is known as 'Mahat', *i. e.*, the existence of Jiva before the consciousness of Ego arises.—T.

sacrificial offerings.*[20] I, that am Brahman, the primeval Master of all creatures, have started into birth from Him, and thou hast taken thy birth from me. From me have flowed the universe with all its mobile and immobile creatures, and all the Vedas, O son, with their mysteries.[21] Divided into four portions (*viz.*, Aniruddha, Pradyumna, Sankarshana, and Vāsudeva), He sports as He pleases. That illustrious and divine Lord is even such, awakened by His own knowledge.[22] I have thus answered thee, O son, according to thy questions, and according to the way in which the matter is expounded in the Sānkhya system and the Yoga philosophy.' "[23]

SECTION CCCLIII.

Sauti said,—After Vaiçampāyana had explained to king Janamejaya in this way the glory of Nārāyana, he began to discourse on another topic by reciting the question of Yudhishthira and the answer that Bhishma gave in the presence of all the Pāndavas and the Rishis as also of Krishna himself. Indeed, Vaiçampāyana began by saying what follows.†

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast, O grandsire, discoursed to us on the duties appertaining to the religion of Emancipation. It behooveth thee now to tell us what the foremost duties are of persons belonging to the several modes of life!'‡[1]

Bhishma said,—'The duties ordained in respect of every mode of life are capable, if well performed, of leading to

---

* 'Prāgvança' is a certain part of the altar. Both the Vernacular translators omit the word in their renderings.—T.

† This portion does not occur in all the texts. I have thought fit to add it for explaining the connection. Most texts begin abruptly by saying—"Yudhishthira said, &c., &c."—T.

‡ The object of the question is to ascertain which is the foremost of all the modes of life. Although Renunciation has been described to be the best of all modes, still the duties of that mode are exceedingly difficult of practice. Hence, Yudhishthira wishes to know if the duties of any other mode can be regarded as superior.—T.

heaven and the high fruit of Truth. Duties have many doors, and none of the practices inculcated by them are futile in respect of consequences.[2] Whoever adopts whichever duties with steady and firm faith, praises the duties adopted by him to the exclusion of the rest, O chief of Bharata's race![3] This particular topic, however, on which thou wishest me to discourse was in days of yore the subject of conversation between the celestial Rishi Nārada and the chief of the deities, *viz.*, Indra.[4] The great Rishi Nārada, O king, revered by all the world, has been crowned with success. He wanders through all the worlds unobstructed by anything, like the all-pervading wind itself.[5] Once upon a time he repaired to the abode of Indra. Duly honored by the chief of the deities, he sat close to his host.[6] Beholding him seated at his ease and free from fatigue, the lord of Cachi addressed him, saying,—O great Rishi, is there anything wonderful that has been beheld by thee, O sinless one?[7] O regenerate Rishi, crowned with ascetic success, thou rovest, moved by curiosity, through the universe of mobile and immobile objects, witnessing all things.[8] O celestial Rishi, there is nothing in the universe that is unknown to thee. Do thou tell me, therefore, of any wonderful incident which thou mayst have seen or heard of or felt.'[9] Thus questioned, Nārada, that foremost of speakers, O king, then commenced to recite unto the chief of the celestials the extensive history that follows.[10] Listen now to me as I recite that story which Nārada told before Indra. I shall narrate it in the same way in which the celestial Rishi had narrated it, and for the same purpose that he had in view!'"[11]

Section CCCLIV.

"Bhishma said,—'In an excellent town called by the name of Mahāpadma which was situate on the southern side of the river Gangā, there lived, O best of men, a Brāhmana of concentrated Soul.[1] Born in the race of Atri, he was endued with amiability. All his doubts had been dispelled (by faith and contemplation) and he was well conversant

with the path he was to follow. Ever observant of the duties of religion, he had his wrath under perfect control. Always contented, he was the complete master of his senses.[2] Devoted to penances and study of the Vedas, he was honored by all good men. He earned wealth by righteous means and his conduct in all things corresponded with the mode of life he led and the order to which he belonged.[3] The family to which he belonged was large and celebrated. He had many kinsmen and relatives, and many children and spouses. His behaviour was always respectable and faultless.[4] Observing that he had many children, the Brāhmana betook himself to the accomplishment of religious acts on a large scale. His religious observances, O king, had reference to the customs of his own family.*[5] The Brāhmana reflected that there were three kinds of duties laid down for observances. There were, first, the duties ordained in the Vedas in respect of the order in which he was born and the mode of life he was leading (*viz.*, a Brāhmana in the observance of domesticity). There were, secondly, the duties laid down in the scriptures, *viz.*, those especially called the Dharmaçāstras. And, thirdly, there were those duties that eminent and revered men of former times have followed though not occurring either in the Vedas or the scriptures.†[6]—Which of these duties should I follow? Which of them, again, followed by me, are likely to lead to my benefit? Which, indeed, should be my refuge?—Thoughts like these always troubled

---

* Family customs are always observed with great care. Even when inconsistent with the ordinances of the scriptures, such customs do not lose their binding force. Reprehensible as the sale of a daughter or sister is, the great king Calya, when he bestowed his sister Mādri on Pāndu, insisted upon taking a sum of money, alleging family custom not only as an excuse but as something that was obligatory. To this day, animals are slain in the sacrifices of many families which follow the Vaishnava faith, the justification being family custom.—T.

† The Vedas are, strictly speaking, not scriptures, for they are *heard*, the scriptures being those ordinances that are written down. Of course, the Vedas have been reduced into writing, but for all that, they continue to be called the Crutis, as the Common Law of England, though reduced into writing, is still called the Unwritten Law.—T.

him. He could not solve his doubts.[7] While troubled with such reflections, a Brāhmana of concentrated soul and observant of a very superior religion, came to his house as a guest.[8] The house-holder duly honored his guest according to those ordinances of worship that are laid down in the scriptures. Beholding his guest refreshed and seated at his ease, the host addressed him in the following words."[9]

SECTION CCCLV.

"The Brāhmana said,—'O sinless one, I have become exceedingly attached to thee in consequence of the sweetness of thy conversation. Thou hast become my friend. Listen to me, for I wish to say something unto thee.[1] O foremost of Brāhmanas, making over the duties of a householder to my son, I wish to discharge the highest duties of man. What, O regenerate one, should be my path?[2] Relying upon the soul, I wish to achieve existence in the one Soul. Alas, bound up in the bonds of attachment, I have not the heart to actually set myself to the accomplishment of that task.*[3] And since the best portion of my life has passed away in the observance of domesticity, I desire to devote the remnant of my life in earning the means of defraying the expenses of my journey in respect of the time to come.[4] The desire has arisen in my mind of crossing the ocean of the world. Alas, whence shall I get the raft of religion (with which to accomplish my purposes)?[5] Hearing that the very deities are persecuted and made to endure the fruits of their acts, and beholding the rows of Yama's standards and flags floating over the heads

---

* Some texts erroneously read 'sthitah' for 'sthitim'. 'Eka eva ātmani sthitim kartum', literally rendered, is 'to achieve existence in the one soul.' This means 'to realise the union of the Jiva-soul with the Supreme Soul.' 'Relying upon the Soul I shall try to exist in the one Soul', in brief, means, 'I shall try to unite the Jiva with the Supreme Soul.' The difference between 'Kānkhāmi' and 'Ichcchāmi' is well illustrated by the Commentator by refering to the case of the man of weak stomach who craves for food of every kind but who does not wish to actually eat from fear of increasing his illness.—T.

of all creatures,[6] my heart fails to derive pleasure from the diverse objects of pleasure with which it comes into contact. Beholding also that the Yatis depend for their sustenance upon alms obtained in course of their rounds of mendicancy, I have no respect for the religion of the Yatis as well. O my reverend guest, do thou, aided by that religion which is founded upon the basis of intelligence and reason, set me to the observance of a particular course of duties and observances !*—'[7]

"Bhishma continued,—'Endued with great wisdom, the guest, hearing this speech of his host which was consistent with righteousness, said these sweet words in a melodious voice.[8]

" 'The guest said,—I also am confounded with respect to this topic. The same thought occupies my mind. Certainty of conclusion I am unable to arrive at. Heaven has many doors.[9] There are some that applaud Emancipation. Some regenerate persons praise the fruits attainable by the performance of sacrifices. Some there are that take refuge in the forest mode of life. Some, again, betake themselves to the domestic mode of life.[10] Some rely upon the merits attainable by an observance of the duties of kings. Some rely upon the fruits of that culture which consists in the restraint of the soul. Some think that the merits resulting from a dutiful obedience to preceptors and seniors are efficacious. Some betake themselves to restraint of speech.[11] Some, by waiting dutifully upon their mothers and fathers, have gone to heaven. Some have ascended to heaven by practising the duty of compassion, and some by practising Truth.[12] Some rush to battle, and laying down their lives, have attained to heaven. Some, again, attaining to success by practising the vow called Unccha, have betaken themselves to the path of

---

* 'Sāttwikāni' implies the deities and others that are endued with the attribute of Sattwa. 'Samyujyamānāni' refers to their births and deaths as deities and men in consequence of the fruits reaped of acts done. 'Niryyātyamānāni' is 'distressed or afflicted (in consequence of such birth and deaths).' The rows of Yama's standards and flags' refer to the diverse diseases that afflict all creatures.—T.

heaven.[13] Some have devoted themselves to the study of the Vedas. Endued with auspiciousness and wedded to such study, these men, possessed of intelligence, with tranquil souls, and having their senses under complete control, attin to heaven.[14] Others, characterised by simplicity and truth, have been slain by men of wickedness. Endued with pure souls, such men of truth and simplicity, have become honored denizens of heaven.[15] In this world, it is seen, that men betake themselves to heaven through a thousand doors of duty, all standing wide open. My understanding has been troubled by thy question, like a fleecy cloud before the wind.—' "[16]

Section CCCLVI.

" 'The guest continued,—For all that, O Brāhmana, I shall endeavour to instruct thee duly. Listen to me as I recite to thee that which I have heard from my preceptor.[1] In that place whence, in course of a former creation, the wheel of righteousness was set in motion, in that forest which is known by the name of Naimisha, and which is situate on the banks of the Gomati, there is a city called after the Nagas.[2] There, in that region, all the deities, assembled together, had in days of old performed a grand sacrifice. There the foremost of earthly kings, Māndhātri, vanquished Indra the chief of the celestials.[3] A mighty Nāga, of righteous soul, dwells in the city that stands in that region. That great Nāga is known by the name of Padmanābha or Padma.[4] Walking in the triple path (of acts, knowledge, and adoration), he gratifies all creatures in thought, word, and deed.[5] Reflecting upon all things with great care, he protects the righteous and chastises the wicked by adopting the quadruple policy of conciliation, provoking dissensions, making gifts or bribes, and using force.[6] Repairing thither, thou shouldst put to him the questions thou wishest. He will show thee truly what the highest religion is.[7] That Naga is always fond of guests. Endued with great intelligence, he is well conversant with the scriptures. He

is possessed of all desirable virtues the like of which are not to be noticed in any other person.[8] By disposition he is always observant of those duties which are performed with or in water.* He is devoted to the study of the Vedas. He is endued with penances and self-restraint. He has great wealth.[9] He performs sacrifices, makes gifts, abstains from inflicting injury, and practises forgiveness. His conduct in all respects is excellent. Truthful in speech and freed from malice, his behaviour is good and his senses are under proper control.[10] He eats after feeding all his guests and attendants. He is kind of speech. He has knowledge of what is beneficial and what is simple and right and what is censurable. He takes stock of what he does and what he leaves undone. He never acts with hostility towards any one. He is always engaged in doing what is beneficial to all creatures. He belongs to a family that is as pure and stainless as the water of a lake in the midst of the Ganges.—' "[11]

SECTION CCCLVII.

" 'The host replied,—I have heard these words of thine, that are so consoling, with as much gratification as is felt by a person heavily loaded when that load is taken off his head or shoulders.[1] The gratification that a traveller who has made a long journey on foot feels when he lies down on a bed, that which a person feels when he finds a seat after having stood for a long while for want of room, or that which is felt by a thirsty person when he finds a glass of cool water, or that which is felt by a hungry man when he finds savoury food set before him,[2] or that which a guest feels when a dish of desirable food is placed before him at the proper time, or that which is felt by an old man when after long coveting he gets a son, or that which is experienced by one when meeting with a dear friend or relative about whom one had become exceedingly anxious, resembles that with which I have been filled

---

* The Commentator explains that 'nityah-salilah' means 'pure as water.' I think this is not the sense of the word here.—T.

in consequence of these words uttered by thee.*[1-4] Like a person with upturned gaze I have heard what has fallen from thy lips and am reflecting upon their import. With these wise words of thine thou hast truly instructed me![5] Yes, I shall do what thou hast commanded me to do. Thou mayst go tomorrow at dawn, passing the night happily with me and dispelling thy fatigue by such rest.[6] Behold, the rays of the divine Surya have been partially dimmed and the god of day is proceeding in his downward course!—[7]'

"Bhishma continued,—'Hospitably waited upon by that Brāhmana, the learned guest, O slayer of foes, passed that night in the company of his host.[8] Indeed, both of them passed the night happily, conversing cheerfully with each other on the subject of the duties of the fourth mode of life, *viz.*, Sannyāsa (Renunciation). So engrossing was the nature of their conversation that the night passed away as if it were day.[9] When morning came, the guest was worshipped with due rites by the Brahmana whose heart had been eagerly set upon the accomplishment of what (according to the discourse of the guest) was regarded by him to be beneficial for himself.[10] Having dismissed his guest, the righteous Brāhmana, resolved to achieve his purpose, took leave of his kinsmen and relatives, and set out in due time for the abode of that foremost of Nāgas, with heart steadily directed towards it.' "[11]

---

* It is desirable to note that the word 'atithi,' which is rendered 'guest' here and elsewhere, means a person who enters without invitation the abode of a householder. Such an individual is adorable. All the deities reside in his person. He is supposed to favor the householder by giving him an opportunity of performing the rites of hospitality. Whatever the respect, however, that is paid to a guest, he cannot expect to be served with food till the householder has done his best for serving him as sumptuously as his circumstances would permit. Hence, by the time the food is placed before him, the guest becomes very hungry.—T.

Section CCCLVIII.

"Bhishma said,—'Proceeding by many delightful forests and lakes and sacred waters, the Brāhmana at last arrived at the retreat of a certain ascetic.[1] Arrived there, he enquired of him, in proper words, about the Nāga of whom he had heard from his guest, and instructed by him he pursued his journey.[2] With a clear idea of the purpose of his journey, the Brāhmana then reached the house of the Nāga. Entering it duly, he proclaimed himself in proper words, saying,—Ho! who is there! I am a Brāhmana come hither as a guest![3]—Hearing these words, the chaste wife of the Nāga, possessed of great beauty and devoted to the observance of all duties, showed herself.[4] Always attentive to the duties of hospitality, she worshipped the guest with due rites, and welcoming him, said,—What can I do for you?—[5]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—O lady, I am sufficiently honored by thee with the sweet words thou hast said unto me. The fatigue of my journey has also been dispelled. I desire, O blessed lady, to see thy excellent lord![6] This is my high object. This is the one object of my desire. It is for this reason that I have come today to the residence of the Nāga thy husband!—[7]

" 'The wife of the Nāga said,—Reverend sir, my husband has gone to drag the car of Surya for a month. O learned Brāhmana, he will be back in fifteen days, and will, without doubt, show himself unto thee![8] I have thus told thee the reason of my husband's absence from home. Be that as it may, what else is there that I can do for thee? Tell me this![9]—

" 'The Brāhmana said,—O chaste lady, I have come hither with the object of seeing thy husband. O reverend dame, I shall dwell in the adjacent forest, waiting for his return![10] When thy husband comes back, do kindly tell him that I have arrived at this place impelled by the desire of seeing him. Thou shouldst also inform me of his return when that event occurs![11] O blessed lady, I shall, till then, reside on the

banks of the Gomati, waiting for his return and living the while upon frugal fare![12]—Having said this repeatedly unto the wife of the Nāga, that foremost of Brāhmanas proceeded to the banks of the Gomati for residing there till the time of the Nāga's return.'"[13]

SECTION CCCLIX.

"Bhishma continued,—'The Nāgas of that city became exceedingly distressed when they saw that that Brāhmana, devoted to the practice of penances, continued to reside in the forest, entirely abstaining all the while from food, in expectation of the arrival of the Nāga chief.[1] All the kinsmen and relatives of the great Nāga, including his brothers and children and wife, assembling together, repaired to the spot where the Brahmana was staying.[2] Arrived on the banks of the Gomati, they beheld that regenerate person seated in a secluded spot, abstaining from food of every kind, observant the while of excellent vows, and engaged in silently reciting certain Mantras.[3] Approaching the presence of the Brāhmana and offering him due worship, the kinsmen and relatives of the great Nāga said unto him these words fraught with candour:[4]—O Brāhmana endued with wealth of asceticism, this is the sixth day of thy arrival here, but thou sayest no word about thy food, O regenerate one thou art devoted to righteousness.[5] Thou hast come to us. We too are here in attendance upon thee. It is absolutely necessary that we should do the duties of hospitality by thee. We are all relations of the Nāga chief with whom thou hast business.[6] Roots or fruit, leaves, or water, or rice or meat, O best of Brāhmanas, it behooveth thee to take for thy food.[7] In consequence of thy dwelling in this forest under such circumstances of total abstention from food, the whole community of Nāgas young and old is being afflicted, since this thy fast implies negligence on our part to discharge the duties of hospitality.[8] We have none amongst us that has been guilty of Brāhmanicide. None of us has ever lost a son immediately after birth. No one has been born in

our race that has eaten before serving the deities or guests or relatives arrived at his residence!—[9]

"'The Brāhmana said,—In consequence of these solicitations of you all, I may be regarded to have broken my fast. Eight days are wanting for the day to come when the chief of the Nāgas will return.*[10] If, on the expiry of the eighth night hence, the chief of the Nāgas do not come back, I shall then break this fast by eating. Indeed, this vow of abstaining from all food that I am observing is in consequence of my regard for the Nāga chief.[11] You should not grieve for what I am doing. Do you all return to whence you came. This my vow is on his account. You should not do anything in consequence of which this my vow may be broken![12]—The assembled Nāgas, thus addressed by the Brāhmana, were dismissed by him, whereupon, O foremost of men, they returned to their respective residences.'"[13]

SECTION CCCLX.

"Bhishma said,—'Upon the expiry of the period of full fifteen days, the Nāga chief (Padmanābha), having finished his task of dragging the car of Surya and obtained the latter's permission, came back to his own house.[1] Beholding him come back, his spouse approached him quickly for washing his feet and dutifully discharging other tasks of a similar nature. Having gone through these tasks, she took her seat by his side. The Nāga then, refreshed from fatigue, addressed his dutiful and chaste wife, saying,[2]—I hope, my dear wife, that during my absence thou hast not been unmindful of worshipping the deities and guests agreeably to the instructions I gave thee, and according to the ordinances laid down in the scriptures.[3] I hope, without yielding to that uncleansed understanding which is natural to persons of thy sex, thou hast, during my absence from home, been firm in the observance of the duties of hospitality. I trust

---

* Some of the Bengal texts have 'dwigunam' for 'dwirunam'. 'Less than ten by two' is the meaning.—T.

that thou hast not transcended the barriers of duty and righteousness.—[4]

" 'The wife of the Nāga said,—The duty of disciples is to wait with reverence upon their preceptor for accomplishing his bidding; that of Brāhmanas is to study the Vedas and bear them in memory; that of servants is to obey the commands of their masters; that of the king is to protect his people by cherishing the good and chastising the wicked.[5] It is said that the duties of a Kshatriya embrace the protection of all creatures from wrong and oppression.[6] The duty of the Cudra is to serve with humility persons of the three regenerate orders, *viz.*, Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas. The religion of the house-holder, O chief of the Nāgas, consists in doing good to all creatures.[7] Frugality of fare and observance of vows in due order, constitute merit (for persons of all classes) in consequence of the connection that exists between the senses and the duties of religion.*[8]—Who am I? Whence have I come? What are others to me and what am I to others?—these are the thoughts to which the mind should ever be directed by him who leads that course of life which leads to Emancipation.[9] Chastity and obedience to the husband constitute the highest duty of the wife. Through thy instructions, O chief of the Nāgas, I have learnt this well.[10] I, therefore, that am well conversant with my duty, and that have thee for my husband—thee that art devoted to righteousness,—O, why shall I, swerving from the path of duty, tread along the path of disobedience and sin?[11] During thy absence from home, the adorations to the deities have not fallen off in any respect. I have also, without the slightest negligence, attended to the duties of hospitality towards persons arrived as guests in thy abode.[12] Fifteen days ago a Brāhmana has come here. He has not disclosed

---

* This Verse seems to be unintelligible. I think the sense is this. Frugality of fare and observance of vows constitute merit for persons of all classes. These imply the restraint of the senses, for if the senses be not restrained no one can observe vows or practise frugality. There is a connection, thus, between the duties of religion and the senses.—T.

his object to me. He desires to have an interview with thee.[13] Dwelling the while on the banks of the Gomati, he is anxiously expecting thy return. Of rigid vows, that Brāhmana is sitting there, engaged in the recitation of Brahma.[14] O chief of the Nāgas, I have made a promise to him to the effect that I would despatch thee to him as soon as thou wouldst come back to thy abode![15] Hearing these words of mine, O best of Nāgas, it behooveth thee to repair thither. O thou that hearest with thy eyes, it behooveth thee to grant unto that regenerate person the object that has brought him hither!*—' "[16]

SECTION CCCLXI.

" 'The Nāga said,—O thou of sweet smiles, for whom hast thou taken that Brāhmana? Is he really a human being or is he some deity that has come hither in the disguise of a Brāhmana?[1] O thou of great fame, who is there among human beings that would be desirous of seeing me or that would be competent for the purpose? Can a human being, desiring to see me, leave such a command with thee about despatching me to him for paying him a visit at the place where he is dwelling?[2] Amongst the deities and Asuras and celestial Rishis, O amiable lady, the Nāgas are endued with great energy. Possessed of great speed, they are endued again with excellent fragrance.[3] They deserve to be worshipped. They are capable of granting boons. Indeed, we too deserve to be followed by others in our train. I tell thee, O lady, that we are incapable of being seen by human beings!†—[4]

" 'The spouse of the Nāga chief said,—Judging by his

---

* 'Darçana-çravas' means one who hears with the eye. The Nāgas or snakes are believed to have no ears, but to use their eyes both for seeing and hearing. Who the Nāgas of the Mahābhārata or the Purānas were, it is difficult to determine. They seem to have been a superior order of beings, having their abode in the nether regions.—T.

† The meaning of 'anuyāyinah' is that we should be followed by others, *i. e.*, we deserve to walk at the head of others.—T.

simplicity and candour I know that that Brāhmana is not any deity who subsists on air. O thou of great wrath, I also know this, *viz.*, that he reveres thee with all his heart.[5] His heart is set upon the accomplishment of some object that depends upon thy aid. As the bird called Chātaka, which is fond of rain, waits in earnest expectation of a shower (for slaking its thirst), even so is that Brāhmana waiting in expectation of a meeting with thee.*[6] Let no calamity betake him in consequence of his inability to obtain a sight of thee. No person born like thee in a respectable family can be regarded to remain respectable by neglecting a guest arrived at his house.†[7] Casting off that wrath which is natural to thee, it behooveth thee to go and see that Brāhmana. It behooveth thee not to suffer thyself to be consumed by disappointing that Brāhmana.[8] The king or the prince, by refusing to wipe the tears of persons that come to him from hopes of relief, incurs the sin of fœticide. By abstaining from speech one attains to wisdom.[9] By practising gifts one acquires great fame. By adhering to truthfulness of speech, one acquires the gift of eloquence and comes to be honored in heaven.[10] By giving away land one attains to that high end which is ordained for Rishis leading the sacred mode of life. By earning wealth through righteous means, one succeeds in attaining to many desirable fruits.[11] By

---

* The Indian bird Chātaka has a natural hole on the upper part of its long neck in consequence of which it is seen to always sit with beaks upturned, so that the upper part of the neck keeps the hole covered. The Chātaka is incapable of slaking its thirst in a lake or river, for it cannot bend its neck down. Rain water is what it must drink. Its cry is shrill and sharp but not without sweetness. 'Phate-e-e-ek-jal'—'Phate-e-e-ek-jal' is supposed to be the cry uttered by it. When the Chātaka cries, the hearers expect rain. Eager expectation with respect to anything is always compared to the Chātaka's expectation of rain water.—T.

† The Burdwan translator erroneously renders this Verse. The Commentator explains that 'hitwā' is equivalent to 'vinā', and sums up the meaning of the first line in these words, *viz.*, 'twaddarçanam vinā asya kopi vighnomābhut'. In the second line, 'naprayupāsate' is equal to 'paritājya na āste',—T.

doing in its entirety what is beneficial for oneself, one can avoid going to hell. This is what the righteous say.[12]—

"'The Nāga said,—I had no arrogance due to pride. In consequence, however, of my birth, the measure of my arrogance was considerable. Of wrath, which is born of desire, O blessed lady, I have none. It has all been consumed by the fire of thy excellent instructions.[13] I do not behold, O blessed dame, any darkness that is thicker than wrath. In consequence, however, of the Nāgas having excess of wrath, they have become objects of reproach with all persons.*[14] By succumbing to the influence of wrath, the ten-headed Rāvana of great prowess, became the rival of Cakra and was for that reason slain by Rāma in battle.[15] Hearing that the Rishi Rāma of Bhrigu's race had entered the inner apartments of their palace for bringing away the calf of the Homa cow of his sire, the sons of Kārttāviryya, yielding to wrath, took such entry as an insult to their royal house, and as the consequence thereof, they met with destruction at the hands of Rāma.[16] Indeed, Kārttaviryya of great strength, resembling the Thousand-eyed Indra himself, in consequence of his having yielded to wrath, was slain in battle by Rāma of Jamadagni's race.[17] Verily, O amiable lady, at thy words I have restrained my wrath, that foe of penances, that destroyer of all that is beneficial for myself.[18] I praise my own self greatly since, O large-eyed one, I am fortunate enough to own thee for my wife,—thee that art possessed of every virtue and that hast inexhaustible merits.[19] I shall now proceed to that spot where the Brāhmana is staying. I shall certainly address that Brāhmana in proper words, and he shall certainly go hence, his wishes being accomplished.—' "[20]

SECTION CCCLXII.

"Bhishma said,—Having said these words unto his dear spouse, the chief of the Nāgas proceeded to that place where

---

* It is a pity that even such Verses have not been rendered correctly by the Burdwan translator. K. P. Singha gives the sense correctly, but the translation is not accurate.—T.

the Brāhmana was sitting in expectation of an interview with him. As he proceeded, he thought of the Brāhmana and wandered as to what the business could be that had brought him to the Nāga city.[1] Arrived at his presence, O chief of men, that foremost of Nāgas, devoted by his nature to righteousness, addressed his guest in sweet words, saying,[2]—O Brāhmana, do not yield to wrath. I address thee in peace! Do not be angry! After whom hast thou come hither? What is thy object?[3] Coming to thee, I ask thee in affection, O regenerate one! Whom dost thou adore in this retired spot on the banks of the Gomati?[4]—

"'The Brāhmana said,—Know that my name is Dharmāranya, and that I have come hither for obtaining a sight of the Nāga Padmanābha, O foremost of all regenerate persons! With him I have some business![5] I have heard that he is not at home and that, therefore, I am not now near his present quarters. Like a Chātaka waiting in expectation of the clouds, I am waiting for him whom I regard as dear to me![6] For dispelling all evil from him and bringing about what is beneficial to him, I am engaged in reciting the Vedas till he comes and am in Yoga and passing my time happily![7]—

"'The Nāga said,—Verily, thy conduct is exceedingly good. Pious thou art and devoted to the good of all righteous persons. O highly blessed Brāhmana, every praise is due to thee! Thou beholdest the Nāga with eyes of affection.[8] I am that Nāga, O learned Rishi, whom thou seekest! Do thou command me, as thou wishest, in respect of what is agreeable to thee and what I should do for thee![9] Having heard from my spouse that thou art here, I have approached this spot, O regenerate one, for beholding thee![10] When thou hast come hither, thou art certain to return hence with thy object fulfilled. It behooveth thee, O foremost of regenerate persons, to employ me to any task with all confidence![11] All of us have certainly been purchased by thee with thy merits,* since thou, disregarding what is for thy own good, hast employed thy time in seeking the good of ourselves!—[12]

---

* A form of expression meaning that 'we are your slaves'.—T.

"'The Brāhmana said,—O highly blessed Nāga, I have come hither, moved by the desire of obtaining a sight of thee! I have come here, ignorant as I am with all things, for asking thee about something, O snake![13] Relying on the Soul, I desire to attain to the Supreme Soul which is the end of the Jiva-Soul. I am neither attached to, nor dissociated from, the world.*[14] Thou shinest with the effulgence of thy own merits covered by pure fame,—with an effulgence that is as agreeable as that of the moon.[15] O thou that livest on air alone, do thou first answer a question that I wish to put to thee! Afterwards I shall inform thee of the object that has brought me hither!'"[16]

SECTION CCCLXIII.

"'The Brāhmana said,—Thou goest away for dragging the one-wheeled car of Vivaswat according to thy turn! It behooveth thee to describe to me anything wonderful that thou mayst have noticed in those regions through which object thou sojournest![1]—

"'The Nāgas aid,—The divine Surya is the refuge or home of innumerable wonders. All the creatures that inhabit the three worlds have flowed from Surya.[2] Innumerable Munis, crowned with ascetic success, together with all the deities, reside in the rays of Surya like birds perching on the branches of trees.[3] What, again, can be more wonderful than this that the mighty Wind, emanating from Surya, takes refuge in his rays and thence yawns over the universe?[4] What can be more wonderful than this, O regenerate Rishi, that Surya, dividing the Wind into many portions from desire of doing good to all creatures, creates rain that falls in the rainy season?[5] What can be more wonderful than this that the Supreme Soul, from within the solar disc, himself bathed in blazing effulgence, looketh upon

---

* 'Atmānam' is Brahma; 'ātmasthah' is 'relying on the Soul', *i. e.*, 'withdrawn from all worldly objects;' 'ātmanogatim' implies 'the end of the Jiva-soul', *i. e.*, the Supreme Soul; the last is an adjective of ātmānam.—T.

the universe?[6] What can be more wonderful than this that Surya has a black ray which transforms itself into clouds charged with rain and pours showers of rain when the season comes?[7] What can be more wonderful than this that drinking up for eight months the rain he pours down, he pours it down once again in the rainy season?[8] In certain rays of Surya, the Soul of the universe is said to reside. From Him is the seed of all things, and it is He that upholds the Earth with all her mobile and immobile creatures.[9] What can be more wonderful, O Brāhmana, than this, that the foremost of Purushas, eternal and mighty-armed, endued with exceeding effulgence, eternal, and without beginning and without end, resides in Surya?[10] Listen, however, to one thing I shall tell you now. It is the wonder of wonders. I have seen it in the clear sky, in consequence of my adjacence to Surya![11] In former times, one day at the hour of noon, while Surya was shining in all his glory and giving heat to everything, we beheld a Being coming towards Surya, who seemed to shine with effulgence that was equal to that of Surya himself.[12] Causing all the worlds to blaze up with his glory and filling them with his energy, he came, as I have already told thee, towards Surya, rending the firmament, as it were, for making his path through it.[13] The rays that emanated from his body seemed to resemble the blazing effulgence of libations of clarified butter poured into the sacrificial fire. In consequence of his energy and splendour he could not be looked at. His form seemed to be indescribable. Indeed, he appeared to us to be like a second Surya.[14] As soon as he came near, Surya extended his two hands (for giving him a respectful reception). For honoring Surya in return, he also extended his right-hand.[15] The latter then, piercing through the firmament, entered into Surya's disc. Mingling then with Surya's energy, he seemed to be transfromed into Surya's self.[16] When the two energies thus met together, we were so confounded that we could not any longer distinguish which was which. Indeed, we could not make out who was Surya whom we bore on his car, and who was the Being that we had seen coming through the sky.[17]

Filled with confusion, we then addressed Surya, saying,—O illustrious one, who is this Being that has mixed himself with thee and has been transformed into thy second self?—' "[18]

SECTION CCCLXIV.

"—Surya said,—This Being is not the god of fire, he is not an Asura. Nor is he a Nāga. He is a Brāhmana who has attained to heaven in consequence of his having been crowned with success in the observance of the vow called Unccha.*[1] This person had subsisted upon fruit and roots and upon the fallen leaves of trees. He had sometimes subsisted upon water, and sometimes upon air alone, passing his days with concentrated soul.[2] The deity Mahādeva had been gratified by him with constant recitation of the Samhitās. He had endeavoured to accomplish those acts that lead to heaven. Through the merits of those acts he hath now attained to heaven.[3] Without wealth and without desire of any kind, he had observed the vow calld Unccha in the matter of his sustenance. This learned Brāhmana, ye Nāgas, had been devoted to the good of all creatures.[4] Neither deities, nor Gandharvas, nor Asuras, nor Nāgas, can be regarded as superior to those creatures that attain to this excellent end of coming into the solar disc ?—Even such, O regenerate one, was the wonderful incident that I beheld on that occasion.[5] That Brāhmana, who was crowned with success by the observance of the Unccha vow and who thus obtained an end that persons crowned with ascetic success acquire, to this day, O regenerate one, goes round the Earth, staying in the disc of Suryya !—' "[6]

---

* It has been explained in the previous sections that the Unccha vow consists in subsisting on grains picked up from the fields after the corn has been reaped and taken away by the owners. It is a most difficult vow to observe. The merit attaching to it is, therefore, very great.—T.

Section CCCLXV.

"'The Brāhmana said,—Without doubt, this is very wonderful, O Nāga! I have been highly gratified by listening to thee! By these words of thine that are fraught with subtile meaning, thou hast shown me the way I am to follow.[1] Blessed be thou, I desire to depart hence, O best of Nāgas! Thou shouldst recollect me now and then and enquire after me by sending thy servants!—[2]

"'The Nāga said,—The object that brought thee hither is still in thy breast, for thou hast not as yet disclosed it to me. Where then wilt thou go? Tell me, O regenerate one, what should be done by me, and what that object is which brought thee hither![3] After the accomplishment of thy business, whatever it is, expressed or unexpressed in speech, thou mayst depart, O foremost of regenerate persons, saluting me and dismissed by me cheerfully, O thou of excellent vows.[4] Thou hast conceived a friendship for me. O regenerate Rishi, it behooveth thee not to depart from this place after having only seen me, thyself sitting under the shade of this tree![5] Thou hast become dear to me and I have become dear to thee, without doubt. All the persons in this city are thine. What objection then, O sinless one, to pass some time in my house?—[6]

"'The Nāga said,—It is even so, O thou of great wisdom, O Nāga that hast acquired a knowledge of the soul! It is very true that the deities are not superior to thee in any respect.[7] He that is thyself is verily myself, as he that is myself is truly thyself. Myself, thyself, and all other creatures, shall all have to enter into the Supreme Soul.[8] A doubt had penetrated my mind, O chief of Nāgas, in the matter of the best means for winning righteousness or merit. That doubt has been dispelled by thy discourse, for I have learnt the value of the Unccha vow.[9] I shall hence follow that vow which is so very efficacious in the matter of beneficial consequences. That, O blessed one, has become my certain

conclusion now, based on excellent reasons. I take thy leave! Blessings to thee! My object has been accomplished, O Nāga!—' "[10]

SECTION CCCLXVI.

"Bhishma said,—'Having saluted that foremost of Nāgas in this way, the Brāhmana (named Dharmāranya), firmly resolved to follow the Unccha mode of life, proceeded to the presence, O king, of Chyavana of Bhrigu's race, from desire of being formally instructed and initiated in that vow.*[1] Chyavana performed the Samskāra rites of the Brāhmana and formally initiated him into the Unccha mode of life. The son of Bhrigu, O monarch, recited this history to king Janaka in his palace. King Janaka, in his turn, narrated it to the celestial Rishi Nārada of high soul.[2-3] The celestial Rishi Nārada too, of stainless acts, repairing on one occasion to the abode of Indra the chief of the deities, gave to Indra this history upon being asked by him.[4] The chief of the celestials, having obtained it thus from Nārada, recited this blessed history to a conclave consisting of all the foremost Brāhmanas, O monarch![5] On the occasion, again, of my dreadful encounter with Rāma of Bhrigu's race (on the field of Kurukshetra), the celestial Vasus, O king, had recited this history to me.†[6] Asked by thee, O foremost of righteous

---

* The formal initiation or 'dikshā' is a ceremony of great importance. No sacrifice or vow, no religious rite, can be performed without the 'dikshā'. The rite of 'dikshā' is performed with the assistance of a preceptor or priest. In leaving the domestic mode for the life of a forest recluse, the 'dikshā' is necessary. In following the Unccha vow, this rite is needed. Any religious act performed by one without having undergone the formal 'dikshā', becomes sterile of results.—T.

† Bhishma abducted, with the might of his single arms, the three daughters of the king of Kāçi, *viz.*, Amvā, Amvikā, and Amvālikā. He wished to marry the princesses to his brother Vichitravirya. The eldest princess, having previously to her abduction selected king Cālwa for her lord, was let off. When, however, she presented herself before her lover, the latter refused to wed her. She, therefore, applied to Rāma for wreaking vengeance on Bhishma whom she

men, I have recited this history that is excellent and sacred and fraught with great merit.[7] Thou hadst asked me about that which constitutes the highest duty, O king. This history is my answer to thy quiry. A brave man he was, O monarch, that betook himself to the practice of the Unccha vow in this way, without expectation of any fruit.[8] Firmly resolved, that Brāhmana, instructed by the chief of Nāgas in this way about his duty, betook himself to the practice of Yama and Niyama, and subsisting the while upon such food as was allowed by the Unccha vow, proceeded to another forest.' "[9]

FINIS ÇANTI PARVA.

---

regarded as the author of her wrongs. Rāma took up her cause and fought with Bhishma, but was obliged to acknowledge defeat at the hands of his antagonist who was his disciple in arms. For fuller particulars, *vide Amvopākhyāna Parvan* in Udyoga Parvan.—T.

Printed by Kāli Dāss Sen, at the Bhārata Press,
No. 1, Rājā Gooroo Dāss' Street, Calcutta.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CANTI PARVA.

Mokshadharma Parva.

	PAGE.
Yudhishthira enquires after the duties of the four modes of life	1
Bhishma's answer indicating the attainment of Emancipation as the highest of all duties ...	ib
Yudhishthira asks Bhishma as to how grief should be killed	2
Bhishma recites the story of the conversation between a Brāhmana and king Senajit ...	ib
Dissociation from the world the grand method of killing grief	ib
The story of Pingalā	7
Freedom from hope and desire is felicity ...	ib
Yudhishthira enquires of Bhishma as to what constitutes the highest good that man should seek in view of the fleeting character of Time	8
Bhishma recites the discourse between son and sire on the uncertainty of life and the mutability of all things save Brahma ...	ib
Yudhishthira asks how happiness and misery come to the rich and the poor	12
Bhishma recites the story of Campāka, a poor Brāhmana who, tortured by misery, achieved Emancipation for himself	ib
The faults of prosperity	13
In Renunciation is the highest good of men ...	14
Yudhishthira asks what must a man do for finding happiness if he be poor	ib
Who is a happy man	ib

PAGE.

The observations of Manki upon the loss of his bulls 15
Desire is fraught with sorrow 18
Bhishma recites the observations of Janaka the king Mithilā 20
The discourse between Yayāti and the Rishi Vodhya ... ... ib
Vodhya's five preceptors ... ... ib
Yudhishthira wishes to know by what conduct may a person succeed in this world and how also should a man act so that he may attain to an excellent end 21
Bhishma recites the discourse between Prahlāda and the sage Ājagara ... ... ib
The indifference of Ājagara to all worldly objects in view of the inevitability of Death ... 23
Yudhishthira asks which of these, *viz.*, kinsmen, or acts, or wealth, or wisdom, should be the refuge of men 25
Bhishma answers that wisdom should be the refuge ... ... ib
Bhishma recites the discourse between Indra and Kāçyapa ... ... ib
Kāçyapa, for his indigence, wishes to cast off his life 26
Indra appears unto him in the form of a jackal and proves to Kāçyapa the superiority of his status as a human being and Brāhmana ... ib
Not to yield to the lead of the senses constitutes happiness 28
Kāçyapa gives up the desire of casting off his life 30
Yudhishthira asks whether gifts, sacrifices, penances, and dutiful services to preceptors, are productive of merit ... ... ib
Bhishma's discourse on righteousness and sin and their respective consequences on life ... ib

PAGE.

Yudhishthira enquires about him who has created the universe and unto whom it returns when dissolution comes 32
Bhishma recites the discourse between Bhrigu and Bharadwāja 33
Bhrigu explains to Bharadwāja the cosmogony ... ib
The Primeval Being called Mānasa ... ... ib
Mānasa creates Mahat ... ... ib
From Mahat flows Consciousness or Ego ... ib
From Ego flows Space ... ... ib
Space is the origin of Water ... ... ib
From Water flow Fire and Wind ... ... ib
Through the union of Fire and Wind arises Earth ... ib
The Self-born Mānasa created the Lotus pregnant with Energy ... ... ib
From the Lotus springs Brahman 34
Brahman creates all things ... ... ib
Bharadwāja enquires of Bhrigu as to the extent of the firmament ... ... ib
Bhrigu explains that the firmament or Space is infinite and is peopled with systems upon systems of self-luminous planets and other bodies ... ... ib
Bharadwāja asks as to why Brahman is called the First-born and not the Lotus whence he sprang 35
Bhrigu's answer 36
Bharadwāja enquires how Brahman created all things ... ... ib
Bhrigu's answer ... ... ib
Bharadwāja enquires after the manner and order of the creation of the several elements ... ib
Bhrigu's answer explaining the order of the creation of the elements ... ... ib
Bharadwāja enquires after the reason of the five primal elements only being called Bhutas or creatures 37

PAGE.

Bhrigu's answer explaining that all created objects consist of the five primal elements ... 37
Bharadwāja enquires why all the elements do not occur in some among the created objects ... 38
Bharadwāja's answer explaining how *all* objects consist of *all* the five primal elements (though the proportions only are different) ... ib
The respective proportions of the primal elements 39
Bharadwāja enquires how fire resides within a living body and how wind moves the body ... 41
Bhrigu explains the doubts of Bharadwāja ... ib
Bhrigu's answer referring directly to the circulation of the blood 42
Bharadwāja's observations on life being worth little if that which is called life be due to the action of fire and wind only 43
Bhrigu's observations on the indestructibility of living creatures 44
Bharadwāja's objection to the doctrine of indestructibility ... ... ib
Bhrigu's answer ... ... ib
Bharadwāja's enquiry about the true nature of Life 45
Bhrigu explains that it is the mind that inspires the body 46
There is no destruction of the living agent ... 47
It is the body that is dissolved in Death ... ib
Bhrigu explains the order of Brahman s creation ... ib
The distinction between the four orders of men consisted in their respective complexions ... 48
Bharadwāja unwilling to admit any original distinction between the four orders ... ib
Bhrigu admits that there is no original distinction between the different orders ... ib
All the world at first consisted of only Brāhmanas ... ... ib

PAGE.

How the different orders gradually rose ... 49
What acts constitute a Brāhmana 50
What acts constitute a Kshatriya ... ... ib
What acts constitute a Vaiçya ... ... ib
What acts constitute a Cudra ... ... ib
A Cudra may become a Brāhmana by adopting the characteristics of a Brāhmana 51
The duties that one should observe for becoming truly righteous ... ... ib
Bhrigu's discourse on the characteristics of Truth and Untruth 52
Happiness should always be sought 53
Upon what Happiness depends ... ... ib
Bharadwāja's doubt about Happiness being the highest object of acquisition ... ... ib
Bhrigu's discourse in explanation of Bharadwāja's doubt 54
Bharadwāja enquires about the consequences of Gifts, of Righteousness, of Conduct, of Penances, of the study of the Vedas, and of Sacrifices ... ... ib
Bhrigu's answer 55
Bharadwāja enquires about the several kinds of duty ... ... ib
Bhrigu's answer in explanation ... ... ib
Bharadwāja's enquiry about the four modes of life ... ... ib
Bhrigu's discourse on the duties of the several modes ... ... ib
Continuation of Bhrigu's discourse, on the duties of the Forest mode of life 58
The duties of Parivrājakas 59
Bharadwāja's enquiry about the existence of any region beyond that which we inhabit ... 60
Bhrigu's answer indicating the existence of a region in the north that is the abode of the righteousness 61

PAGE.

Yudhishthira asks Bhishma to discourse on the ordinances about conduct 63
Bhishma's discourse on the characteristics of the wicked and the good ... ... ib
Continuation of Bhishma's discourse indicating the duties that all men should practise ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires about the nature of Adhyātma 67
Bhishma's discourse on Adhyātma ... ... ib
The nature of the three attributes of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness 71
The distinctions between Intelligence and the Soul... 72
The highest end for acquisition is Emancipation ... 73
Bhishma's discourse on the four kinds of Yoga ... 75
Yudhishthira enquires after the fruits of the silent recitation of sacred Mantras ... 78
Bhishma recites the old narrative of the discourse between Yama, a Brāhmana, and Time ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires about the other ends of silent Reciters 81
Bhishma indicates the different ends that different kinds of Reciters attain to ... ib
The nature of the hell into which Reciters may sink 82
The highest regions of felicity in heaven are hells compared to Emancipation which consists in a merging into the Supreme Soul ... 83
The story of Time, Mrityu, Yama, Ikshāku, and a Brāhmana, ... 84
Yudhishthira enquires about the fruits of the Yoga of Knowledge, of all the Vedas, and of observances and vows 99
Bhishma recites the narrative of the discourse between Manu and Vrihaspati ... ... ib
Vrihaspati's question about how an embodied Being departs from one body and attains to another 100

PAGE.

Acts flow from the desire of obtaining happiness and avoiding misery 100
The efforts for the acquisition of Knowledge arise from the desire of avoiding both happiness and misery ... ... ib
It is by avoiding acts that one succeeds in entering into Brahma 101
The nature of Brahma 103
Continuation of Manu's discourse on the nature of Emancipation and the Soul 104
The Soul takes its character from the body ... 107
How the Soul leaving one body enters into another... ib
Though invisible, the Soul exists 109
Continuation of Manu's discourse, explaining how the Soul may be seen 112
Continuation of Manu's discourse, explaining how grief may be avoided 115
How may Brahma be attained 116
Abstention from acts is the highest religion ... 119
Yudhishthira asks Bhishma about the nature of the Supreme Deity 122
Bhishma's discourse on the nature of Nārāyana or Govinda 123
The sinful creatures of the Earth 125
Yudhishthira asks who are the first Prajāpatis and who the great Rishis and in which directions they dwell 127
Bhishma's discourse on the Prajāpatis and the great Rishis ... ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires about the reason of Krishna's assuming the form of an animal ... 129
Bhishma recites the story of Vishnu's assuming the form of a Boar for the destruction of the wicked Asuras 130
Yudhishthira enquires after the nature of that high Yoga by which Emancipation may be attained 132

PAGE.

Bhishma recites the story of the preceptor and the disciple... 132
Continuation of Bhishma's discourse explaining how the inclinations and instincts of a past life run towards the Soul in a new life ... 137
Continuation of Bhishma's discourse on abstention from acts and the nature of Knowledge ... 141
Yudhishthira's enquiry about what faults should be cast off for attaining to Emancipation ... 144
Bhishma's discourse on those faults ... ... ib
Bhishma's discourse on the means of conquering the senses 149
Bhishma's discourse on the consequences of attachment to the objects of the senses ... 154
Bhishma's discourse on the nature and causes of Dreams 158
Brahma transcends all attributes and is attainable by only withdrawing the mind and the senses from all external objects 161
Who may be said to know Brahma ... ... ib
The distinction between Pravritti and Nivritti ... 162
The respective nature of Prakriti and Purusha ... ib
The nature and consequences of Yoga... ... 164
Yudhishthira enquires of the conduct by which Janaka the king of Mithilā attained to Emancipation 167
Bhishma recites the story of the conversation between Panchaçikha and Janadeva of Mithilā ... 168
Continuation of the discourse between Panchaçikha and Janadeva on the topic of existence and non-existence after Death 177
Yudhishthira asks about what leads to happiness and what to misery and what to freedom from fear 185
Bhishma's discourse on Self-restraint ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's question about the merits of subsisting upon the remnants of sacrifices ... 187

PAGE.

Yudhishthira asks whether fasting be really a penance 188
Bhishma's answer explaining that though Fasting is generally regarded as a penance it is not so in reality, being rather an impediment to the acquisition of a knowledge of Soul ... ib
Living upon sacrificial remnants regarded as fasting of the highest merit ... ... ib
Yudhishthira asks whether man should be regarded as the real doer of acts 189
Bhishma recites the discourse between Prahlāda and Indra 190
Yudhishthira enquires about the kind of intelligence by adopting which a king deprived of kingdom and prosperity may still live on the Earth 193
Bhishma recites the narrative of the discourse between Indra and the Asura Vali after his fall ... ib
Vali explains to Indra how in reality it is Time that creates and destroys all things though living creatures brag of doing this or that ... 200
The discourse between Cree and Indra ... 203
The discourse between Indra and the Asura Namuchi 206
Yudhishthira asks as to what is good for a man sunk into dire distress 209
Bhishma's discourse on fortitude ... ... ib
The story of Vali and Vāsava again ... ... ib
Vali's grand discourse on Eternity 211
Indra's panegyric on Vali 217
Yudhishthira enquires about the indications of future greatness and future fall 219
Bhishma's discourse on those indications reciting the conversation between Indra and Cree ... ib
The evil customs in consequence of Cree was obliged to leave the Asuras 223
Cree wishes to live with Indra 227

PAGE.

Cree wishes to live with Indra 227
Indra's coronation ... ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires about the practices that lead to the attainment of Brahma 228
Bhishma recites the narrative of the discourse between Jaigishavya and Asita-Devala ... 229
Yudhishthira's question about the man that is dear to all 231
Bhishma recites the story of the discourse between Ugrasena and Krishna on the subject of Nārada's qualifications ... ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires about the origin and the end of all creatures, the nature of their thoughts and acts, of the divisions of Time, and of the allotted periods of life in the respective epochs or Yugas 233
Bhishma recites the story of the discourse between Vyāsa and his son Cuka 234
The different divisions of Time 235
The durations of the respective Yugas... ... ib
The periods of life in the different Yugas ... 236
The different duties laid down for the different Yugas ib
Vyāsa explains the order in which the Creation has sprung 237
The characteristics of the different Yugas ... 243
Vyāsa explains how the dissolution of the universe comes about 245
Vyāsa's discourse on the duties of a Brāhmana ... 247
Continuation of Vyāsa's discourse on the duties of a Brāhmana 251
Knowledge is necessary for Emancipation ... 255
The different stages of a Yogin's progress ... 257
Cuka enquires about the character of that Knowledge which leads to Emancipation ... 262
Vyāsa's answer... ... ... ib
Vyāsa's discourse on whether acts are obligatory or optional 267

PAGE.

Vyāsa's observations on the import of those duties that lead to Emancipation 270
Success cannot be attained to without knowledge, penances, subjugation of the senses, and renunciation 271
The doctrine of Knowledge as expounded in the Sānkhya system ... ... ib
The doctrine of Yoga 276
Vyāsa reconciles the Vedic declarations about acts and abstention from acts 281
Cuka enquires about how Emancipation may be acquired without violating the ordinance about the obligatory character of acts ... 285
Vyāsa's discourse on the duties of Brahmachārins... ib
Vyāsa's discourse on the duties of the householder 288
The duties of the Forest mode 292
Cuka enquires how one leading the Forest mode of life should act who wishes to achieve Emancipation 297
Vyāsa's answer about the necessity of one, who has passed through the first and the second modes, betaking to Yoga for attaining to Emancipation 298
The duties to be observed by such a man ... 299
Vyāsa's observations on the Jiva and the Supreme Soul 304
Cuka asks what is Adhyātma and whence it comes 307
Vyāsa's explanation of Adhyātma ... ... ib
Cuka asks how one may succeed in understanding the unequal distribution of the five elements in different objects and which among those elements represents which sense, &c. ... 308
Vyāsa's answer ... ... ib
Vyāsa's observations on the nature of Mind, Understanding, and the Soul 310

PAGE.

Continuation of Vyāsa's discourse on the same subject 315
Cuka enquires about what constitutes the highest duty 317
Vyāsa's discourse on duties ... ... ib
Continuation of Vyāsa's discourse on the same subject 320
The relations of the senses and their objects to the five primal elements 324
Persons conversant with the scriptures succeed in beholding the Soul 326
The tree of Desire, its seed and roots and branches and leaves and fruit 329
Bhishma recapitulates the substance of Vyāsa's discourse on the respective attributes of the elements 332
Yudhishthira's lament on the carnage caused on the field of Kurukshetra 334
Bhishma recites the story of Anukampaka ... 335
The Grandsire begins to consume all creatures ... 336
Mahādeva pacifies the wrath of the Grandsire ... ib
The Grandsire creates Mrityu 338
Mrityu refuses to do the bidding of the Grandsire ... ... ib
The Grandsire persuades her to kill living creatures 339
Mrityu betakes herself to penances ... ... ib
Mrityu agrees to do her duty 341
Yudhishthira asks what is Righteousness and whether Righteousness is for this world or for the next or for both 342
Bhishma's answer 343
Continuation of Bhishma's answer, reciting the story of Tulādhāra and Jājali 350
Continuation of Bhishma's discourse reciting the story of king Vicharakhyu's condemnation of animal slaughter 373

PAGE.

Yudhishthira asks how one should judge of acts, *i. e.*, speedily or with delay 375
Bhishma's answer reciting the story of Chirakāri, the son of Gautama, in respect of the injunction to slay his mother Ahalyā ... ib
Yudhishthira asks how should the king protect his subjects without injuring anybody ... 384
Bhishma recites the conversation between Dyumutsena and his son Satyavat ... ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires about the relative superiority of Domesticity and Yoga 389
Bhishma recites the conversation between Kapila and Syumaraçmi on animal sacrifice, the obligatory character of acts, and the merits of Yoga and Renunciation 390
Yudhishthira asks which among the three, *viz.*, Religion, Profit, and Pleasure, is superior ... 414
Bhishma recites the story of Kundadhāra and the Brāhmana who had worshipped him ... 415
Yudhishthira asks what that sacrifice is which is ordained for only the sake of virtue and not for the acquisition of heaven or wealth 420
Bhishma recites the story of the Brāhmana who lived in observance of the *Unccha* vow ... ib
The Brāhmana's unwillingness to slay an animal in sacrifice notwithstanding the persuations of Sāvitri and Dharma ... 421
Yudhishthira enquires about the method by which one becomes sinful, that by which one becomes virtuous, that by which one attains to Renunciation, and that by which one wins Emancipation 423
Bhishma's answer ... ... ib
Yudhishthira asks what the means are by which to win Emancipation 426
Bhishma's answer ... ... ib

PAGE.

Continuation of Bhishma's discourse reciting the story of Nārada and Asita-Devala ... 429
Yudhishthira enquires after the means by which to cast off thirst 435
Bhishma recites the story of the discourse between the ruler of Mithilā and Māndavya ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires about what that good is which one should pursue in view of the fleeting character of Time 436
Bhishma recites the story of the father and the son ... ... ib
Yudhishthira asks of what behaviour should a man be, of what acts, of what kind of knowledge, &c., in order to be able to attain to Brahma 441
Bhishma's answer ... ... ib
Yudhishthira asks when shall he succeed in abandoning sovereignty for adopting Renunciation 445
Bhishma's answer stating the certainty of Yudhishthira's acquisition of Emancipation ... ib
Bhishma recites the discourse between Vritra and Uçanas... 447
Uçanas explains to Vritra how Jiva succeeds in effecting Emancipation... 457
Yudhishthira asks whether Krishna is identical with the Supreme deity 462
Bhishma's answer in affirmation of the question ... ib
Yudhishthira's applause of Vritra 463
Yudhishthira asks how the battle between Vritra and Indra took place 464
Bhishma describes the battle ... ... ib
The story of Indra's affliction by the sin of Brahmanicide 469
Brahman rescues Indra from the sin of Brāhmanicide 470
Yudhishthira enquires after the origin of fever ... 473

PAGE.

Bhishma's answer explaining the origin of that disease 473
Janamejaya enquires how the Horse sacrifice of Prajāpati Daksha was destroyed 478
Vaiçampāyana's answer 479
The names by which Daksha adored Mahādeva ... 485
Yudhishthira enquires after Adhyātma again ... 502
Bhishma explains Adhyātma ... ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires how sorrow and death may be avoided 508
Bhishma recites the discourse between Nārada and Samanga ... ... ib
The discourse between Gālava and Nārada ... 511
Yudhishthira enquires how a king should behave in view of the great object of acquisition and what attributes should he have for freeing himself from attachments 519
Why Uçanas sought the welfare of the Asuras instead of siding with the deities 524
The origin of the name Cukra 527
The acts by performing which one wins the highest good both here and hereafter ... 528
The discourse between Janaka and Parāçara on the duties of life ... ... ib
Janaka asks Parāçara the reason of the difference of color in men 549
Parāçara's answer ... ... ib
Continuation of Parāçara's discourse on duties ... 558
Yudhishthira asks what opinion should be entertained about the virtues of truth, self-restraint, forgiveness, and wisdom 564
Bhishma, in answer, recites the conversation between the Sāddhyas and a swan... ... ib
The difference between the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems of philosophy 570
What the kinds of diet are by taking which and what the things are by con-

PAGE.

quering which a Yogin acquires Yoga-puissance 573
Bhishma's discourse on the principles of the Sānkhya philosophy 575
Yudhishthira enquires whether there is any consciousness in the Emancipate state ... 583
Bhishma's answer 584
Yudhishthira enquires about what is undeteriorating and what is deteriorating 588
Bhishma recites the discourse between Vaçishtha and king Karāla of Janaka's race 589
Vaçishtha's discourse on what is Vidyā and what is Avidyā 609
Ditto's discourse on Buddha and Abuddha ... 614
Bhishma recites the conversation between a king of Janaka's race and a Rishi in the forest ... 621
Bhishma's discourse on that which is freed from duty and its reverse by reciting the discourse between Yājnavalkya and Janaka 624
Yājnavalkya's discourse on the creation of the universe 626
Ditto's discourse on the destruction of the universe 628
Ditto's discourse on Adhyātma, Adhibhuta, and Adhidaivata 630
Ditto's discourse on Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas ... 632
Ditto's discourse on what is possessed of attributes and what is not possessed of them ... 633
Ditto's discourse on the Yoga philosophy ... 636
Ditto's discourse on the diverse ends that people attain to as depending on the manner in which the Jiva-soul escapes from its mortal frame 639
The story of Yājnavalkya's acquisition of the Yajurvedas 641
The conversation between Viçwāvasu and Yājnavalkya 644

PAGE.

Termination of Bhishma's discourse reciting these diverse narratives 652
Yudhishthira enquires how one may avoid death ... 654
Bhishma recites the discourse of Panchaçikha to Janaka of Mithilā ... ... ib
Bhishma recites the story of Janaka of Mithilā and the ascetic lady Sulabhā 656
Yudhishthira enquires how Cuka was won over to Renunciation 678
Bhishma recites the discourse of Vyāsa unto Cuka expounding the vanity of worldly attachments ... ... ib
Bhishma's discourse on the efficacy of gifts, sacrifices, penances, services to preceptors, &c. ... 690
Bhishma's discourse on the birth of Cuka ... 691
Cuka desires to learn the religion of Emancipation... 696
Cuka's journey to Mithilā 697
The instructions of Janaka to Cuka 701
Cuka's return to Himavat 705
Vyāsa's boon to his disciples 708
Vyāsa's discourse on the Wind 712
Discourse of Nārada to Cuka 715
Cuka sets his heart upon Emancipation ... 731
Cuka casts off his body 732
Cuka's spirit proceeds through the skies ... 734
Cuka identifies himself with Brahma 737
Vyāsa follows the track of Cuka ... ... ib
Vyāsa consoled by Mahādeva 738
Yudhishthira asks who the Supreme Deity is ... 739
Bhishma recites the story of the discourse between Nārada and the Rishi Nārāyana in the hermitage of Vadari 740
Nārada proceeds to White Island for beholding Nārāyana in his original nature 744
Yudhishthira enquires after the characteristics of the denizens of White Island 745
The story of Uparichara ... ... ib

PAGE.

Vrihaspati's wrath in the sacrifice of Uparichara ... 751
The journey of the three Rishis Ekata, Dwita, and Trita to White Island 752
Description of the denizens of White Island ... 753
The three Rishis come away without being able to behold Nārāyana 755
Vrihaspati is pacified ... ... ib
The story of Uparichara's distress and his rescue by Nārāyana 757
Nārada arrives at White Island 760
Nārada's hymn to Nārāyana 761
Nārāyana shows himself unto Nārada ... 765
Nārāyana's discourse to Nārada 767
Nārada returns to Vadari 776
The sources through which Bhishma derived the wonderful narrative about Nārāyana ... 777
Caunaka's question about Pravritti and Nivritti ... 779
Sauti answers the question by reciting the discourse of Vyāsa unto Vaiçampāyana on the same topic 780
The penances undergone by the deities ... 784
The Supreme Deity's address to the celestials ... ib
The celestials perform a sacrifice ... ... ib
The Supreme Deity's address to them... ... 785
Ditto's address, after dismissing the celestials, to Brahman... 788
The meanings of the different names of Nārāyana... 791
Discourse on the unity of nature of Agni and Shoma 796
The battle between Rudra and Nārāyana ... 817
Discourse between Nārada on the one side and Nara and Nārāyana on the other 822
Sauti's eulogium on Nārāyana 832
Janamejaya enquires why Hari had appeared, in the form of Aniruddha with the Horse-head, unto Brahman 835
Vaiçampāyana's answer ... ... ib

PAGE.

The Asuras Madhu and Kaitabha rob Brahman of the Vedas 837
Brahmana's lamentations upon the loss of the Vedas... ib
The Supreme Lord recovers the Vedas from the nether regions 839
The Asuras Madhu and Kaitabha wish to fight the Supreme Lord and are slain by Hari ... 840
The rewards reaped by the man who listens to the history of the transformation of Hari into Aniruddha with the equine head ... 841
Who first promulgated the religion of Devotion ... 844
The history of that religion as it has been handed down from primeval time 845
Why all people do not follow the religion of Devotion 850
How one may attain to Brahma 851
The history of Vyāsa's previous birth ... 853
The scriptures of different kinds all preach the same Nārāyana 859
Are there many Purushas or only one Purusha ... 860
The discourse between Brahman and Mahādeva ... 861
The indications of Purusha 863
The foremost duties of men belonging to the different modes of life 866
The story of the Brāhmana called Dharmāranya and the Nāga named Padmanābha ... 867
The Nāga meets with the Brāhmana on the banks of the Gomati 881
The wonders of which the Sun is the source ... 882
The Nāga recites to the Brāhmana the story of the end attained to by a Brāhmana that had observed the Unccha vow 884
The Brāhmana betakes himself formally to the practice of the Unccha vow 885

FINIS.

PART LXXXIII.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

PRATĀPA CHANDRA RĀY, C. I. E.

ANUÇASANA PARVA.

(SECTIONS I—XIV.)

CALCUTTA:

BHĀRATA PRESS.

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

1893.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE

LIBRARY OF PRINCETON
JUN 20 1918
THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

PRATĀPA CHANDRA RĀY, C. I. E.

ANUÇASANA PARVA.

CALCUTTA:

BHĀRATA PRESS.

No. 1, Raja Gooroo Dass' Street.

Printed by Kāli Dāss Sen.

1893.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

NOTICE.

Through the grace of Hari whose kindness enabled the Pāndavas to overcome a thousand dangers during their exile in the forests, to pass the year of incognito in the court of Virāta without being tracked by the spies of Duryodhana, to successfully encounter in fierce battle and overthrow one after another the myriads of invincible warriors that were opposed to them on the field of Kurukshetra, to escape from the cowardly but exterminating night-attack by Açwatthāman, to save themselves from the curse of the aggrieved Gāndhāri which was a source of greater danger to them than a thousand Bhishmas at the head of a thousand armies of Samsaptaka soldiers, and lastly to recover their ancestral throne,—through the signal grace of that Lord of the universe, I have at last been able to complete the Cānti Parvan, the largest and the most difficult of the 18 Parvans into which the Mahābhārata has been divided by its inspired author. I bend myself in humility to the Lord of Lakshmi for his crowning mercy. Four-fifths of my self-imposed task have been over. What remains to accomplish is only a fifth of the whole. Of the difficulties of the Cānti Parvan I have given some idea in the notice issued with the fasciculus numbered 62. The two Vernacular versions have been replete with errors of every kind. I mention this not for the purpose of depreciating the labours of those that have preceded me in interpreting the Cānti but only for illustrating the inherent difficulties of the task. The excellence, again, of the Cānti as a work of genius, must for ever remain unrivalled. The political philosophy embodied in the Rājadharma sections will lose nothing by comparison with any work written in any tongue on the same subject. Professor J. W. Reese, of Westminster, Maryland, U. S. A., after a careful perusal of those sections, wrote to me to say that "it would be "difficult, indeed, to find in all literature a more complete trea-"tise on the duties of the kingly office than the one contained "in these sections of the Cānti Parvan." This is the deliberate opinion of a competent judge and not the expression of views entertained by an enthusiast. Portions of the Rājadharma sections embody the noblest doctrines of political science. That all power

is a trust from the Most High, which should, therefore, be exercised for the benefit of others and not for gratifying individual caprice, was laid down by the Rishis in language that would truly seem to be inspired. The sections, again, on the religion of Moksha or Emancipation, are equally unrivalled by anything produced by human genius in any other country. The very sovereignty of the heavens is hell compared with the ideal cherished by the candidate for Moksha. The Rishis always sought to inculcate the awful idea of unending Eternity. Every created being in the universe is subject to change. Collection is certain to terminate in dispersion, and dispersion will once more revert to collection. The one entity, amidst all things in the universe of inconceivable vastness and variety, that is not subject to change, is Para-Brahma. Jiva (or Soul) also, though subject to change as regards its external encasements, is not subject to annihilation. An emanation from Para-Brahma, Jiva is destined to live for unending eternity, passing through infinite vicissitudes implying joy and sorrow. Existence itself, for unending Eternity, may be appalling, for ordinary happiness itself, in view of such duration, may become disagreeable monotony. In Heaven, again, there must be superiority and inferiority and, therefore, heart-burning. Supposing heart-burning to be impossible, happiness itself, from the contemplation of others' misery, may become changed into misery. Besides, in view of infinite, unending Time of inconceivable duration, will there be *no* change? All change must either be for better or for worse. If for better, it was not perfect happiness before. If for worse, it is not perfect happiness after. Perfect felicity being the goal, how to prevent those vicissitudes—that irresistible mutability? Absorption into immutable Para-Brahma is the only remedy. The noblest course of conduct is necessary for such absorption. That conduct is "Nishkāma Dharma," or acts done without desire of fruit. Even such absorption into Para-Brahma, which implies the cessation of a separate existence of the Ego, is the Emancipation or Moksha of the Rishis. These Moksha sections are, again, an inexhaustible mine of philosophical speculation. Every shade of opinion entertained by philosophers ancient or modern, on the great questions that surround humanity, may be

seen to have its germs in this portion of the Cānti. The Āpaddharma sections, again, of this great Parvan are fraught with practical significance to every Hindu. To the foreigner also they are scarcely of less moment. What the character of those exigencies are that may excuse a rigid compliance with one's course of duties as ordained in the scriptures, can never be uninteresting to learn. Altogether, as a monument of ancient Aryan genius, the Cānti Parvan is likely to be more prized than any other work dealing with the same topics.

Although a little more than two years has been taken up by the Cānti, yet I hope no subscriber or recipient of the English translation will complain of it. It is impossible to suppose that every verse has been rendered correctly. The Cānti abounds with *cruces*. The industry, patience, and ingenuity shown by Nilakantha in explaining the Cānti have been remarkable. Every reader of the Cānti knows the value of Nilakantha's gloss. Verses which in the first instance have to be given up as hopeless begin to yield a meaning as soon as the gloss is referred to. In my case the difficulties were enhanced in consequence of my inability to procure a good text of the Cānti with Nilakantha's gloss. In this 'city of palaces' there are very few libraries. I applied to one and all, to Mahārājas, Rājāhs, Rai Bāhādurs, and Pundits. But nowhere could I procure a manuscript copy of the Cānti with Nilakantha's gloss. At last, in my extremity, Mr. Swinhoe, the well-known Attorney of the Calcutta High Court, came to my rescue. His small library contains some valuable Sanskrit books, and among them happened to be a copy of the printed Bombay text with the gloss. He very kindly placed his copy at my disposal. I still needed a good Bengal manuscript of both text and gloss, for reference and comparison. With the greatest difficulty I obtained one from a young scholar of my acquaintance. It is a matter of deep regret that Bengal millionaires, who still pride themselves upon their Hinduism, show the utmost indifference in the matter of their own scriptures and, rarely, if ever, seek to collect either manuscripts or printed editions of even such works as are regarded the most sacred.

The Anuçāsana, which follows the Cānti, is scarcely less in

point of importance though it is not so difficult. It is replete with moral discourses of every kind. In extent, also, it is slightly less than the Cānti but much larger than the other Parvans with the single exception of the Vana or Exile Parvan. Considering that with the Anuçāsana about a fifth of the Mahābhārata still remains to be done, the sum still necessary would be about Rs. 20,000. His Lordship the Secretary of State, the Government of India, the different local Governments, many of the Indian Chiefs, and several Zemindars and noblemen, have aided me liberally. I regret, however, that that liberal aid even is not sufficient to bear me through to completion.

About a year ago I applied to the Government of Bengal for a further contribution. The most elaborate enquiries were made through the Director of Public Instruction regarding the way in which the funds that came into my hands had been applied and the existence or otherwise of an actual necessity for further help. Statements were called for and were scrutinised with a degree of minuteness that could not but be highly satisfactory to me, for it enabled me to prove the economy of my arrangements in every department of the Bhārata Kāryālaya. Sir A. Croft was satisfied with my economy and made his report accordingly with the result that the Government of Bengal was pleased to make a further grant of Rs. 1,000. A condition, however, was tacked that I should not draw the amount till after completion. I regret to state that the Government of Bengal showed in this more kindness to my heirs than to myself. The British Indian Association of Lucknow very kindly responded to my appeal by immediately sanctioning a grant of Rs. 1,000 from its funds and forwarding to me the amount at once. The Secretary of State for India also has been pleased very promptly to sanction an additional grant of Rs. 1,000, without waiting for reports of the colonial Government, from the funds at his Lordship's disposal. I have appealed to other quarters but I have not as yet been favored with replies.

I must take this opportunity for expressing my deep gratitude to those eminent personages through whose aid, counsel, and sympathy I have been able to prosecute so much of my task. Foremost among all, my gratitude is due to my Gracious and

August Sovereign, the Queen-Empress of India, the success of every righteous enterprise being directly due to the virtues of the Sovereign, under Providence. The Hindu scriptures inculcate the idea that it is owing to the Sovereign's protection that enterprises of every kind, having for their object the happiness and the amelioration of the condition of the people, can achieve success. In my case, I have enjoyed something more than that protection which as a subject of Her Gracious Majesty I have enjoyed and still enjoy in common with millions of others over whom, under Providence, Her Majesty has been called upon to rule. Some years ago I received permission to lay before Her Majesty, for her gracious acceptance, a copy of the English translation. I have always considered that gracious acceptance as at once a reward and an auspicious omen. Next to my Sovereign, among Oriental scholars and savants I must say that to Professor Max Muller I stand very much indebted for the preliminary arrangements I was able to make for bringing out the translation. He favored me with a specimen translation which he had copied with his own hand many years ago and had kept by him for future use. That specimen proved to be of great use to me. It served to point out the way in which a literal translation might be made without forgetting the claims of ease and elegance. Next to Professor Max Muller, my obligations are due to Dr. Rost, the learned Librarian of the India Office. His letter to me written under the direction of the then Secretary of State for India, *viz.*, the Marquis of Hartington, had first suggested to me the idea of an English translation of the Mahābhārata. From the very beginning, Dr. Rost has been my kindest of friends. His sympathy and advice have been, at important junctures during the last ten years, simply invaluable. When depressed by discouraging circumstances, a letter from Dr. Rost, breathing words of hearty encouragment and kindness, has instantly filled me with hope, dispersing the mists of doubt and the darkness of despair from before my eyes. To Monsrs. A. Barth and St. Hilaire of Paris and Professor Jacobi of Germany, my obligations have been very great. They too have supported me with their sympathy and done all in their power for bringing the work to

the notice of European scholars. I owe it to the exertions of Monsrs. Barth and St. Hilaire that the French Government went out of its way and ordered a grant to me of 900 Francs, for that Government does not make grants to foreign publications, especially to publications before completion. In America my obligations are due to a host of friends foremost among whom are Mr. William E. Coleman of San-Francisco, California, Professor Lanman, the Vice-President of the American Oriental Society, Professor J. W. Reese of Maryland, America, Professor Maurice Bloomfield of Hopkins' University, and Mr. B. Witton of Hamilton, Canada. That the work has been known in America has been entirely due to the exertions of these gentlemen. Their sympathy has been of the highest value to me. Speaking of India, my obligations are due to Sir Stuart Bayley, Sir A. Colvin, General Stewart, Lord Roberts, Sir Charles Aitichison, Sir Mortimer Durand, Dr. W. W. Hunter, Mr. C. P. Ilbert, Sir A. Scoble, Sir Lepel Griffin, Sir Charles Elliott, Sir John Ware Edgar, the Marquis of Ripon, the Marquis of Dufferin and Ava, Sir Donald Mackenzie Wallace, and Sir Alfred Croft. With the single exception of Sir Charles Elliott and Sir Alfred Croft, all the others have left India for good. Two names I should mention here in particular, names that will awaken sincere sorrow in many breasts for the loss the country has sustained by the death of those that held them. Those names are J. Gibbs, and C. P. L. Macaulay. Both Messrs. Gibbs and Macaulay used to take a personal interest in the work. Without the assistance, freely rendered, of all these eminent officials, I could never have done even a fourth of what I have been able to accomplish. The officials I have named have been the soul of the enterprise. Whatever aid the work has received from the Government, has been due to the kind efforts of Sir Steuart Bayley, Sir A. Colvin, Sir Charles Aitichison, Sir A. Scoble, and the Marquis of Dufferin and Ava.

Besides these eminent officials I have derived considerable help from many of the princes and chiefs of India. My grateful acknowledgments are due to His Highness the Nizam and His Highness the ruler of Mysore for their princely donations. The Nizam is a Mahomedan prince. Any contribution coming from

him in aid of a work like the Mahābhārata could not but indicate His Highness's enlightened sympathy for literature in general, irrespective of the nation or the creed which that literature represents. No native State possesses Ministers more enlightened than that ruled over by His Highness the Nizam. As an administrator, Sir Asman Jah promises to rival the fame of Sir Salar Jung. So long also as an officer like Nawab Sayyed Ali Bilgrami is about the person of His Highness, ready to offer advice when advice is sought, the reputation of His Highness must go on continually increasing.

To the Editors of the Indian Newspapers my thanks are due for the encouragement they have uniformly afforded me in the prosecution of the work. Amongst my own countrymen I have obtained the greatest measure of sympathy from Dr. Sambhu C. Mookerjee, the brilliant Editor of "Reis & Rayyet," Babu Narendra Nath Sen, the Editor of the "Indian Mirror," and Babu Krishna Dass Pal and, after him, Babu Rajkumar Sarvadhikari, of the "Hindoo Patriot." Babu Sishir Kumar Ghose also, of the "Amrita Bazar Patrika," has done much to encourage me. Amongst the organs of the European community in India, I have derived the greatest support from the "Englishman," the "Indian Daily News," and the "Statesman and Friend of India." The late Mr. Robert Knight (of the "Statesman") always used to take an interest in the work and favored me with numerous introductions to eminent men all over India. He spared no opportunity to bring the work to the notice of persons likely to help it pecuniarily. It is entirely owing to Mr. J. O. B. Saunders, again, of the "Englishman" that the work first succeeded in receiving the attention of the Government of Bengal, which was followed by that substantial patronage with which Sir Rivers Thompson favored it. The *Pioneer* and the *Civil & Military Gazette* also have helped greatly.

The last stages of an enterprise,—especially a literary enterprise like mine,—generally prove far more difficult than the earlier ones. While, again, every other difficulty disappears, that caused by the absence of funds begins to be felt more keenly than ever. Such has been my situation. I have crossed the greater part of the Ocean. What remains is not

much. Already, land is within sight. However exhausted I may be, I cannot think that my supporters will abandon me now. I am sure I shall be dragged ashore by helping hands.

I believe it is generally known that I have none to provide for in this world. The public may be certain that I shall spend my last pice for the completion of what I have begun and what has progressed so far. I have not, however, much to give. All my savings have been swallowed up in this enterprise. My earnings also in other directions have been devoted to the same purpose. I do not grieve for it in the least. An enterprise like the one in which I am engaged is suited, by its very nature, to an Emir or a Fakir. I am no Emir. I have, however, that within me in consequence of which I can call myself a *Fakir*, for like a *Fakir* I have renounced many of the vanities of the world, and am prepared to beg from door to door for accomplishing the purpose I have in view. I have faith in the liberality of my countrymen and the world. If I can only succeed in making my want known, I am strongly pursuaded that I shall not be abandoned. Some of my intimate friends imagine that an artificial difficulty exists in the fact of the honor with which I have been invested by the Government,—the honor, *viz.*, of a C. I. E. But I do not regard it in that light and do not make much of it, having a strong faith that the Government which has bestowed the honor upon me will not see me starve if I actually survive the completion of my enterprise. My health has been broken down in consequence of my repeated tours through the country. I have a presentiment that the Almighty Disposer of all events will spare me till the completion of my labours and that when those labours will terminate I shall be called away from this world so that it is not necessary for me to think of what I shall do for supporting the dignity of the honor with which, under the orders of my Gracious Sovereign, the Government of India have favored me.

1, Rājāh Gooroo Dass' Street,
Calcutta,
June 30th, 1893.

PRATAPA CHANDRA ROY, C. I. E.

THE MAHABHARATA.

ANUCĀSANA PARVA.

SECTION I.

(Anuçāsanika Parva.)

Having bowed down unto Nārāyana, and Nara the foremost of male beings, and unto the goddess Saraswati, must the word Jaya be uttered.

"Yudhishthira said,—O grandsire, tranquillity of mind has been said to be subtile and of diverse forms. I have heard all thy discourses, but still tranquillity of mind has not been mine.[1] In this matter, various means of quieting the mind have been related (by thee), O sire, but how can peace of mind be secured from only a knowledge of the different kinds of tranquillity, when I myself have been the means of bringing all this about ?[2] Beholding thy body covered with arrows and festering with bad sores, I fail to find, O hero, any peace of mind, at the thought of the evils I have wrought ![3] Beholding thy body, O most valiant of men, bathed in blood, like a hill overrun with water from its springs, I am languishing with grief even as the lotus in the rainy season ![4] What can be more painful than this, that thou, O grandsire, hast been brought to this plight on my account by my people fighting against their foes on the battle-field ?[5] Other princes also, with their sons and kinsmen, have met with destruction on my account. Alas, what can be more painful than this ![6] Tell us O prince, what destiny awaits, us and the sons of Dhritarāshtra, who, driven by fate and anger, have done this abhorrent act ![7] O lord of men, I think the son of Dhritarāshtra is fortunate in that he doth not behold thee in this state ![8] But I, who am the cause of thy death as well as of that of our friends, am denied all peace of mind by beholding thee on the bare earth in this sorry condition ![9] The wicked Duryodhana, the most infamous of his race,

has, with all his troops and his brothers, perished in battle, in the observance of Kshatriya duties.[10] That wicked-souled wight does not see thee lying on the ground! Verily, for this reason, I would deem death to be preferable to life.[11] O hero that never swervest from virtue, had I with my brothers met with destruction ere this at the hands of our enemies on the battle-field,[12] I would not have found thee in this pitiful plight, so pierced with arrows! Surely, O prince, the Maker had created us to become perpetrators of evil deeds![13] O king, if thou wishest to do me good, do thou then instruct me in such a way that I may be cleansed of this sin in even another world!'[14]

"Bhishma replied,—'Why, O fortunate one, dost thou consider thy soul, which is dependent (on God and Destiny and Time,) to be the cause of thy actions? The manifestation of its inaction is subtle and imperceptible to the senses.[15] In this connection is cited the ancient story of the conversation between Mrityu and Gautami with Kāla and the Fowler and the serpent. There was, O son of Kunti, an old lady of the name of Gautami, who was possessed of great patience and tranquillity of mind. One day she found her son dead in consequence of having been bitten by a serpent.[16-19] An angry fowler, by name Arjunaka, bound the serpent with a string and brought it before Gautami. He then said to her,—This wretched serpent has been the cause of thy son's death, O blessed lady! Tell me quickly how this wretch is to be destroyed! Shall I throw it into the fire, or shall I hack it into pieces? This infamous destroyer of a child does not deserve to live longer!—[20]

'Gautami replied,—Do thou, O Arjunaka of little understanding, release this serpent! It doth not deserve death at thy hands. Who is so foolish as to disregard the inevitable lot that awaits him and make himself heavy for sinking into sin?[21] Those that have made themselves light by the practice of virtuous deeds, manage to cross the sea of the world even as a ship crosses the ocean. But those that have made themselves heavy with sin sink into the bottom, even as an arrow thrown into the water.[22] By killing this serpent, this my boy will not be restored to life, and by letting it live, no harm will be caused to thee. Who would go to the interminable regions of Death by slaying this living creature?—[23]

'The fowler said,—I know, O lady that knowest the difference between right and wrong, that the great are afflicted at the afflictions of all creatures. But these words which thou hast spoken are fraught with instruction for only a self-contained person (and not one plunged in sorrow). Therefore, I must kill this serpent.[24] Those who value peace of mind, assign everything to the course of Time as the cause, but practical men soon assuage their grief (by revenge). People, through constant delusion, fear loss of beatitude (in the next world for acts like these). Therefore, O lady, assuage thy grief by having this serpent destroyed (by me) !—[25]

'Gautami replied,—People like us are never afflicted by (such misfortune.) Good men have their souls always intent on virtue. The death of the boy was predestined : therefore, I am unable to approve of the destruction of this serpent.[26] Brahmanas do not harbour resentment, because resentment leads to pain. Do thou, O good man, forgive and release this serpent out of compassion !—[27]

'The fowler replied,—Let us earn great and inexhaustible merit hereafter by killing (this creature), even as a man acquires great merit, and confers it on his victim as well, by sacrifice upon the altar ! Merit is acquired by killing an enemy : by killing this despicable creature, thou shalt acquire great and true merit hereafter !—[28]

'Gautami replied,—What good is there in tormenting and killing an enemy, and what good is won by not releasing an enemy in our power ? Therefore, O thou of benign countenance, why should we not forgive this serpent and try to earn merit by releasing it ?—[29]

'The fowler replied,—A great number (of creatures) ought to be protected from (the wickedness of) this one, instead of this single creature being protected (in preference to many). Virtuous men abandon the vicious (to their doom) : do thou, therefore, kill this wicked creature !—[30]

'Gautami replied,—By killing this serpent, my son, O fowler, will not be restored to life, nor do I see that any other end will be attained by its death : therefore, do thou, O fowler, release this living creature of a serpent !—[31]

'The fowler said,—By killing Vritra, Indra secured the best portion (of sacrificial offerings), and by destroying a sacrifice

Mahādeva secured his share of sacrificial offerings: do thou, therefore, destroy this serpent immediately without any misgivings in thy mind!—'[32]

"Bhishma continued,—The high-souled Gautami, although repeatedly incited by the fowler for the destruction of the serpent. did not bend her mind to that sinful act.[33] The serpent. painfully bound with the cord, sighing a little and maintaining its composure with great difficulty, then uttered these words slowly, in a human voice.[34]

'The serpent said,—O foolish Arjunaka, what fault is there of mine? I have no will of my own, and am not independent! Mrityu sent me on this errand![35] By his direction have I bitten this child, and not out of any anger or choice on my part. Therefore, if there be any sin in this, O fowler, the sin is his!—[36]

'The fowler said,—If thou hast done this evil, led thereto by another, the sin is thine also as thou art an instrument in the act![37] As in the making of an earthen vessel the potter's wheel and rod and other things are all regarded as causes, so art thou, O serpent, (a cause in the production of this effect)! He that is guilty deserves death at my hands! Thou, O serpent, art guilty! Indeed, thou confessest thyself so in this matter!—[38]

'The serpent said,—As all these, *viz.*, the potter's wheel, rod, and other things, are not independent causes, even so I am not an independent cause! Therefore, this is no fault of mine, as thou shouldst grant.[40] Shouldst thou think otherwise, then these are to be considered as causes working with one another. For thus working with one other, a doubt arises regarding their relation as cause and effect.[41] Such being the case, it is no fault of mine, nor do I deserve death on this account, nor am I guilty of any sin! Or, if thou thinkest that there is sin (in even such causation), the sin lies in the aggregate of causes!—[42]

'The fowler said,—If thou art neither the prime cause nor the agent in this matter, thou art still the cause of the death (of this child). Therefore, dost thou deserve death in my opinion![43] If, O serpent, thou thinkest that when an evil act is done the doer is not implicated therein, then there can be no cause in this matter: but having done this, verily thou deservest death. What more dost thou think?—[44]

'The serpent said,—Whether any cause exists or not,* no effect is produced without an (intermediate) act. Therefore, causation being of no moment in either case, my agency only as the cause (in this matter) ought to be considered in its proper bearings.[45] If, O fowler, thou thinkest me to be the cause in truth, then the guilt of this act of killing a living being rests on the shoulders of another who incited me to this end !†[46]

'The fowler said,—Not deserving of life, O foolish one, why dost thou bandy so many words, O wretch of a serpent? Thou deservest death at my hands! Thou hast done an atrocious act by killing this infant !—[47]

'The serpent said,—O fowler, as the officiating priests at a sacrifice do not acquire the merit of the act by offering oblations of clarified butter to the fire, even so should I be regarded with respect to the result in this connection.—'[48]

"Bhishma continued,—'The serpent directed by Mrityu having said this, Mrityu himself appeared there and addressing the serpent spoke thus.[49]

'Mrityu said,—Guided by Kāla, I, O serpent, sent thee on this errand, and neither art thou nor am I the cause of this child's death.[50] Even as the clouds are tossed hither and thither by the wind, I am, O serpent, directed by Kāla.[51] All influences appertaining to *Satwa*, or *Rajas*, or *Tamas*,‡ have Kāla for their soul as they operate in all creatures.[52] All creatures, mobile and immobile, in heaven, or earth, are pervaded by this same inspiration of Kāla. The whole universe, O serpent, is imbued with this same influence of Kāla.[53] All acts in this world and

---

* The Commentator explains this passage by the illustration that in the act of felling a tree the effect is produced by the intermediate act of raising the axe by some sentient agent, but that in the case of the burning of a forest, the fire is produced by the friction of the dry branches of trees without the intervention of any sentient agent.—T.

† 'Even as the wind incites the dry twigs to ignite,' adds the Commentator.—T.

‡ For explanation of these terms *vide* foot-note in page 577 of Cānti Parva, Sec. 102. *ante*.—T.

all abstentions, as also all their modifications, are said to be influenced by Kāla.[54] Surya, Soma, Vishnu, Water, Wind, the deity of a hundred sacrifices, Fire, Sky, Earth, Mitra and Parjanya, Aditi, and the Vasus. Rivers and Oceans, all existent and non-existent objects, are created and destroyed by Kāla.[55] Knowing this, why dost thou, O serpent, think me to blame? If any fault attach to me in this, thou also wouldst be to blame!—[56-57]

'The serpent said,—I do not, O Mrityu, blame thee, nor do I absolve thee from all blame. I only aver that I am directed and influenced (in my actions) by thee.[58] If any blame attaches to Kāla, or, if it be not desirable to attach any blame to him; it is not for me to scan the fault. We have no right to do so.[59] As it is incumbent on me to absolve myself from this blame, so it is my duty to see that no blame attaches to Mrityu.—'[60]

"Bhishma continued,—'Then the serpent, addressing Arjunaka, said,—'Thou hast listened to what Mrityu has said. Therefore, it is not proper for thee to torment me, who am guiltless, by tying me with this cord!—[61]

'The fowler said,—I have listened to thee, O serpent, as well as to the words of Mrityu, but these, O serpent, do not absolve thee from all blame.[62] Mrityu and thyself are the causes of this child's death. I consider both of you to be the cause and I do not call that to be the cause which is not truly so.[63] Accursed be the wicked and vengeful Mrityu that causes affliction to the good! Thee too I shall kill that art sinful and engaged in sinful acts!—[64]

'Mrityu said,—We both are not free agents, but are dependent on Kāla, and ordained to do our appointed work. Thou shouldst not find fault with us if thou dost consider this matter thoroughly.—[65]

'The fowler said,—If ye both, O serpent and Mrityu, be dependent on Kāla, I am curious to know how pleasure (arising from good) and anger (arising from evil) are caused.—[66]

'Mrityu said,—Whatever is done is done under the influence of Kāla. I have said it before, O fowler, that Kāla is the cause of all and that for this reason we both, acting under the inspiration of Kāla, do our appointed work and, therefore, O fowler, we two do not deserve censure from thee in any way!—'[67-68]

"Bhishma continued,—'Then Kāla arrived at that scene of disputatin on moral science, and spoke thus to the serpent and Mrityu and the fowler Arjunaka assembled together.—[69]

'Kāla said,—Neither Mrityu, nor this serpent, nor I, O fowler, am guilty of the death of any creature. We are merely the immediate exciting causes of the event. O Arjunaka, the *Karma* of this child formed the exciting cause of our action in this matter.[70] There was no other cause by which this child came by its death. It was killed by the result of its own Karma.[71] It has met with death as the result of its Karma in the past. Its Karma has been the cause of its destruction. We all are subject to the influence of our respective Karma.[72] Karma is an aid to salvation even as sons are, and Karma also denotes virtue and vice in man. We urge one another even as acts urge one another.[73] As men make from a lump of clay whatever they wish to make, even so do men attain to various results determined by Karma.[74] As light and shadow are related to each other, so are men related to Karma through their own actions.[75] Therefore, neither art thou, nor am I, nor Mrityu, nor the serpent, nor this old Brahmana lady, is the cause of this child's death.[76] He himself is the cause here.—Upon Kāla, O king, expounding the matter in this way, Gautami, convinced in her mind that men suffer according to their actions, spoke thus to Arjunaka.[77]

'Gautami said,—Neither Kāla, nor Mrityu, nor the serpent, is the cause in this matter. This child has met with death as the result of its own Karma.[78] I too have so acted (in the past) that my son has died (as its consequence). Let now Kāla and Mrityu retire from this place, and do thou too, O Arjunaka, release this serpent !—'[79]

"Bhishma continued,—'Then Kāla and Mrityu and the serpent went back to their respective destinations, and Gautami became consoled in mind as also the fowler.[80] Having heard all this, O king, do thou forego all grief, and attain to peace of mind ! Men attain to heaven or hell as the result of their own Karma.[81] This evil has neither been of thy own creation, nor of Duryodhana's ! Know this to have been the act of Kāla that these lords of Earth have all been slain (in this war) !' "[82]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having heard all this, the powerful and

virtuous Yudhishthira became consoled in mind, and again enquired as follows."[83]

SECTION II.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, O wisest of men, O thou that art learned in all the scriptures, I have listened to this great story, O foremost of intelligent men![1] I am desirous of again hearing the recital of some history full of religious instruction, and it behooves thee to gratify me.[2] O lord of Earth, tell me if any householder has ever succeeded in conquering Mrityu by the practice of virtue! Do thou recite this to me with all details!'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'This ancient history is recited in illustration of the subject of the conquest, by a householder, of Mrityu, by the practice of virtue.[4] The Prajāpati Manu had a son, O king, of the name of Ikshwāku. Of that king, illustrious as Surya, were born a hundred sons.[5] His tenth son, O Bhārata, was named Daçāçwa, and this virtuous prince of infallible prowess became the king of Māhismati.[6] Daçāçwa's son, O king, was a righteous prince whose mind was constantly addicted to the practice of truth and charity and devotion.[7] He was known by the name of Madirāçwa and ruled the Earth as her lord. He was constantly devoted to the study of the Vedas as also of the science of arms.[8] Madirāçwa's son was the king named Dyutimat who possessed great good fortune and power and strength and energy.[9] Dyutimat's son was the highly devout and pious king who was famous in all the worlds under the name of Suvira. His soul was intent on religion and he possessed wealth like another Indra the lord of the deities.[10] Suvira too had a son who was invincible in battle, and who was the best of all warriors and known by the name of Sudurjaya.[11] And Durjaya too, possessed of a body like that of Indra, had a son who beamed with splendour like that of fire. He was the great monarch named Duryodhana who was one of the foremost of royal sages.[12] Indra used to pour rain profusely in the kingdom of this monarch, who never fled from the battlefield and was possessed of valour like unto Indra himself.[13] The cities and the kingdom of this king were filled with riches and

gems and cattle and grain of various kinds.[14] There was no miser in his kingdom nor any person afflicted with distress or poverty. Nor was there in his kingdom any person that was weak in body or afflicted with disease.[15] This king was very clever, smooth in speech, without envy, a master of his passions, of a righteous soul, full of compassion, endued with prowess, and not given to boasting.[16] He performed sacrifices, and was self-restrained and intelligent, devoted to Brāhmanas and Truth. He never humiliated others, and was charitable, and learned in the Vedas and the Vedānta.[17] The celestial river Narmadā, auspicious and sacred and of cool waters, in her own nature, O Bhārata, courted him.[18] He begot upon that river, a lotus eyed daughter, by name Sudarçanā, who was, O king, endued with great beauty.[19] No creature, O Yudhishthira, had ever been born before among womankind, that was possessed of such beauty as that excellent damsel who was the daughter of Duryodhana.[20] The god Agni himself courted the beautiful princess Sudarçanā, and taking the shape of a Brāhmana, O monarch, sought her hand from the king.[21] The king was unwilling to give his daughter in marriage to the Brāhmana who was poor and not of the same rank with himself.[22] Thereupon Agni vanished from his great sacrifice. The king, grieved at heart, then addressed the Brāhmanas, saying,[23]—Of what sin have I, ye excellent Brāhmanas, or you, been guilty, that Agni should disappear from this sacrifice, even as good done unto wicked men disappears from their estimation.[24] Great, indeed, must that sin of ours be for which Agni has thus disappeared! Either must the sin be yours, or, must it be mine. Do you fully investigate the matter![25]—Then hearing the king's words, O foremost prince of Bharata's race, the Brāhmanas, restraining speech, sought with concentrated faculties the protection of the god of fire.[26] The divine carrier of oblations, resplendent as the autumnal Sun, appeared before them, enveloping his self in glorious refulgence.[27] The high-souled Agni then addressed those excellent Brāhmanas, saying,—I seek the daughter of Duryodhana for my own self![28]—At this, all those Brāhmanas were struck with wonder, and rising on the morrow, they related to the king what had been said by the fire-god.[29] The wise monarch, hearing the words of

those utterers of *Brahma*, was delighted at heart, and said,—Be it so!—The king craved a boon of the illutrious fire-god as the marriage dower,—Do thou, O Agni, deign to remain always with us here![30]—Be it so!—said the divine Agni to that lord of Earth. For this reason Agni has always been present in the kingdom of Māhismati to this day;[31] and was seen by Sahadeva in course of his conquering expedition to the south.[32] Then the king gave his daughter, dressed in new garments and decked with jewels,[33] to the high-souled deity, and Agni too accepted, according to Vedic rites, the princess Sudarçanā as his bride,[34] even as he accepts libations of clarified butter at sacrifices. Agni was well pleased with her appearance, her beauty, grace, character, and nobility of birth,[35] and was minded to beget offspring upon her. And a son by Agni, of the name of Sudarçana, was soon born of her.[36] Sudarçana also was, in appearance, as beautiful as the full moon; and even in his childhood he attained to a knowledge of the supreme and everlasting *Brahma*.[37] There was also a king of the name of Oghavat, who was the grandfather of Nriga. He had a daughter of the name of Oghavati, and a son too of the name of Ogharatha born unto him.[38] King Oghavat gave his daughter Oghavati, beautiful as a goddess, to the learned Sudarçana for wife.[39] Sudarçana, O king, leading the life of a householder with Oghavati, used to dwell in Kurukshetra with her.[40] This intelligent prince of blazing energy took the vow, O lord, of conquering Death by leading the life of even a householder.[41] The son of Agni, O king, said to Oghavati,—Do thou never act contrary to (the wishes of) those that seek our hospitality![42] Thou shouldst make no scruple about the means by which guests are to be welcomed, even if thou have to offer thy own person![43] O beautiful one, this vow is always present in my mind, since for house-holders, there is no higher virtue than hospitality accorded to guests![44] Do thou always bear this in mind without ever doubting it, if my words be any authority with thee![45] O sinless and blessed one, if thou hast any faith in me, do thou never disregard a guest, whether I be at thy side or at a distance from thee![46] Unto him, with hands clasped and placed on her head, Oghavati replied, saying,—'I shall leave nothing undone of what thou

commandest me.[47]—Then Mrityu, O king, desiring to over-reach Sudarçana, began to watch him for finding out his *laches*.[48] On a certain occasion, when the son of Agni went out to fetch firewood from the forest, a graceful Brāhmana sought the hospitality of Oghavati with these words:[49]—O beautiful lady, if thou hast any faith in the virtue of hospitality as prescribed for householders, then I would request thee to extend the rites of hospitality to me today![50]—The princess of great fame, thus addressed by that Brāhmana, O king, welcomed him according to the rites prescribed in the Vedas.[51] Having offered him a seat, and water to wash his feet, she enquired, saying,—What is thy business? What can I offer thee?[52]—The Brāhmana said unto her,—My business is with thy person, O blessed one! Do thou act accordingly without any hesitation in thy mind![53] If the duties prescribed for householders be acceptable to thee, do thou, O princess, gratify me by offering up thy person to me![54]—Though tempted by the princess with offers of diverse other things, the Brāhmana, however, did not ask for any other gift than the offer of her own person.[55] Seeing him resolved, that lady, remembering the directions which had before been given to her by her husband, but overcome with shame, said to that excellent Brāhmana,—Be it so![56]—Remembering the words of her husband who was desirous of acquiring the virtue of householders, she cheerfully approached the regenerate Rishi.[57] Meanwhile, the son of Agni, having collected his firewood, returned to his home. Mrityu, with his fierce and inexorable nature, was constantly by his side, even as one attends upon one's devoted friend.[58] When the son of Pāvaka returned to his own hermitage, he called Oghavati by name, and (receiving no answer) repeatedly exclaimed,—Whither art thou gone?[59]—But the chaste lady, devoted to her husband, being then locked in the arms of that Brāhmana, gave no reply to her husband.[60] Indeed, that chaste woman, considering herself contaminated, became speechless, overcome with shame.[61] Sudarçana, addressing her again, exclaimed,—Where can my chaste wife be? Whither has she gone? Nothing can be of greater moment to me than this (her disappearance)![62] Why does not that simple and truthful lady, devoted to her husband, alas, answer to my call today as she used

to do before with sweet smiles?[63]—Then that Brāhmana, who was within the hut, thus replied to Sudarçana,—Do thou learn, O son of Pāvaka, that a Brāhmana guest has arrived,[64] and though tempted by this thy wife with diverse other offers of welcome, I have, O best of Brāhmanas, desired only her person,[65] and this fair-faced lady is engaged in welcoming me with due rites! Thou art at liberty to do whatever thou thinkest to be suitable to this occasion![66]—Mrityu, armed with the iron club, pursued the Rishi at that moment, desirous of compassing the destruction of one that would, he thought deviate from his promise.[67] Sudarçana was struck with wonder, but casting off all jealousy and anger by look, word, deed, or thought, said,[68]—Do thou enjoy thyself, O Brāhmana! It is a great pleasure to me! A householder obtains the highest merit by honouring a guest.[69] It is said by the learned that, as regards the householder, there is no higher merit than what results unto him from a guest departing from his house after having been duly honoured by him.[70] My life, my wife, and whatever other worldly possessions I have, are all dedicated to the use of my guests! Even this is the vow that I have taken.[71] As I have truly made this statement, by that truth, O Brāhmana, I shall attain to the knowledge of Self.[72] O foremost of virtuous men, the five elements, *viz.*, fire, air, earth, water, and sky, and the mind, the intellect and the Soul, and time and space and the ten organs of sense,[73] are all present in the bodies of men, and always witness the good and evil deeds that men do.[74] This truth has today been uttered by me, and let the gods bless me for it or destroy me if I have spoken falsely.[75] At this, O Bhārata, there arose in all directions, in repeated echoes, a voice, crying,—This is true, this is not false![76]—Then that Brāhmana came out of the hovel, and like the wind rising and encompassing both Earth and sky,[77] and making the three worlds echo with Vedic sounds, and calling that virtuous man by name, and congratulating him, said:[78]—O sinless one, I am Dharma! All glory to thee! I came here, O truth-loving one, to try thee, and I am well pleased with thee by knowing thee to be virtuous.[78] Thou hast subdued and conquered Mrityu who always has pursued thee, seeking thy *laches*![80] O best of men, no one in the three worlds has the ability to insult, even with

looks, this chaste lady devoted to her husband, far less to touch her person ![81] She has been protected from defilement by thy virtue and by her own chastity. There can be nothing contrary to what this proud lady will say.[82] This utterer of *Brahma*, endued with austere penances, shall, for the salvation of the world, be metamorphosed into a mighty river.[83] And thou shalt attain to all the worlds in this thy body, and as truly as the science of Yoga is within her control, this highly blessed lady will follow thee with only half her corporeal self, and with the other half will she be celebrated as the river Oghavati ![84] And thou shalt attain with her to all the worlds that are acquired through penances.[85] Those eternal and everlasting worlds from which none cometh back will be attained by thee even in this gross body of thine ![86] Thou hast conquered Death, and attained to the highest of all felicities, and by thy own power (of mind), attaining to the speed of thought, thou hast risen above the power of the five elements ![87] By thus adhering to the duties of a householder, thou hast conquered thy passions, desires, and anger, and this princess, O prince of virtuous men, has, by serving thee, conquered affliction, desire, illusion, enmity and lassitude of mind !—[88]

"Bhishma continued,—'Then the glorious Vāsava (the lord of the gods), riding in a fine chariot drawn by a thousand white horses, approached that Brāhmana.[89] Death and Soul, all the worlds, all the elements, intellect, mind, time, and space, as also desire and wrath, were all conquered.[90] Therefore, O best of men, do thou bear this in mind, that to a householder there is no higher divinity than the guest.[91] It is said by the learned that the blessings of an honoured guest are more efficacious than the merit of a hundred sacrifices.[92] Whenever a deserving guest seeks the hospitality of a householder and is not honoured by him, he takes away (with him) all the virtues of the latter giving him his sins (in return).[93] I have now recited to thee, my son, this excellent story as to how Death was conquered of old by a householder.[94] The recital of this excellent story confers glory, fame, and longevity (upon those that listen to it). The man that seeks worldly prosperity should consider it as efficacious in removing all evil.[95] And, O Bhārata, the learned

man that daily recites this story of the life of Sudarçana attains to the regions of the blessed.' "[96]

SECTION III.

"Yudhishthira said,—'If, O prince, Brāhmanahood be so difficult of attainment by the three classes (Kshatriyas, Vaiçyas and Cudras), how then did the high-souled Viçwāmitra, O king,[1] though a Kshatriya (by birth), attain to the status of a Brāhmana? I desire to know this, O sire! Therefore, do thou truly relate this matter to me.[2] That powerful man, O sire, by virtue of his austerities, destroyed in a moment the hundred sons of the high-souled Vaçishtha.[3] While under the influence of anger, he created numerous evil spirits and Rākshasas of mighty vigour and resembling the great destroyer Kāla himself.[4] The great and learned race of Kuçika, numbering hundreds of regenerate sages in it and belauded by the Brāhmanas, was founded in this world of men by him.[5] Cunacepha of austere penances, the son of Richika, having been sought to be slain as an animal in the great sacrifice of Amvarisha, obtained his deliverance through Viçwāmitra.[6] Harishchandra, having pleased the gods at a sacrifice, became a son of the wise Viçwāmitra.[7] For not having honoured their eldest brother Devarāt, the other fifty brothers of his were cursed, and all of them became Chandālas.[8] Trisanku the son of Ikshwāku, when abandoned by his friends, and remaining suspended with his head downwards in the lower regions, was translated to heaven at the pleasure of Viçwāmitra.[9] Viçwāmitra had a large river, by name Kauçiki, that was frequented by celestial Rishis. This sacred and auspicious stream was frequented by the gods and regenerate Rishis.[10] For disturbing his devotions, the famous celestial nymph Rambhā of fine bracelets, was cursed and metamorphosed into a rock.[11] Through fear of Viçwāmitra the glorious Vaçishtha, in olden times, binding himself with creepers, threw himself down into a river and again rose released from his bonds.[12] In consequence of this, that large and sacred river became thenceforth celebrated by the name of Vipāça.*[13] He prayed to the glorious and puissant Indra who was

---

* Literally, the releaser from bonds.—T.

pleased with him and absolved him from a curse.* Remaining on the northern side of the firmament, he sheds his lustre from a position in the midst of the seven regenerate *Rishis*,† and Dhruva the son of Uttānpāda.‡[11-15] These are his achievements as well as many others. O descendant of Kuru, as they were performed by a Kshatriya, my curiosity has been roused in this matter.[16] Therefore, O foremost one of Bharata's race, do thou relate this matter to me truly! How without casting off his corporeal frame and taking another tenement of flesh could he become a Brāhmana ?[17] Do thou, O sire, truly relate this matter to me as thou hast related to me the story of Matanga.[18] Matanga was born as a Chandāla,$ and could not attain to Brāhmanahood (with all his austerities) but how could this man attain to the status of a Brāhmana ?' "[19]

Section IV.

"Bhishma said,—'Listen truly in detail, O son of Prithā, how in olden times Viçwāmitra attained to the status of a Brāhmana, as also of a Brāhmana Rishi ![1] There was, O foremost of Bharata's descendants, in the race of Bharata, a king of the name of Ajamida, who performed many sacrifices and was the best of all virtuous men.[2] His son was the great king named Jahnu. Gangā was the daughter of this high-minded prince.[3] The far-famed and equally virtuous Sindhudwipa was the son of this prince. From Sindhudwipa sprung the great royal sage Valākāçwa.[4] His son was named Vallabha who was like a second Dharma in embodied form. His son again was Kuçika who was

---

* Refers to the curse pronounced on Viçwāmitra by the sons of Vaçishtha, when the former acted as the priest of Trisanku. The curse was that Viçwāmitra would partake of canine flesh by officiating as the priest of one who himself was the partaker of such flesh. It is said that at a time of great scarcity, Viçwāmitra was obliged to resort to dog's flesh for food, and that as he was about to cook it, Indra pounced upon it and took it away.—T.

† The constellation of the Great Bear.—T.

‡ The Pole Star.—T.

$ Matanga was begotten upon a Brāhmana women by a Cudra father.—T.

refulgent with glory like unto the thousand-eyed Indra.[5] Kuçika's son was the illustrious king Gādhi who, being childless and desiring to have a son born unto him, repaired to the forest.[6] Whilst living there, a daughter was born unto him. She was called Satyavati by name, and in beauty of appearance she had no equal on Earth.[7] The illustrious son of Chyavana, celebrated by the name of Richika, of the race of Bhrigu, endued with austere penances, sought the hand of this lady.[8] Gādhi, the destroyer of his enemies, thinking him to be poor, did not bestow her in marriage upon the high-souled Richika.[9] But when the latter, thus dismissed, was going away, the excellent king, addressing him, said,—If thou givest me a marriage dower thou shalt have my daugher for thy wife!—[10]

"'Richika said,—What dower, O king, shall I offer thee for the hand of thy daughter? Tell me truly, without feeling any hesitation in the matter![11]—Gādhi said,—O descendant of Bhrigu, do thou give me a thousand horses fleet as the wind, and possessing the hue of moon-beams, and each having one ear black.—'[12]

"Bhishma said,—'Then that mighty son of Chyavana who was the foremost of Bhrigu's race, besought the deity Varuna, the son of Aditi, who was the lord of all the waters.[13]—O best of gods, I pray to thee to give me a thousand horses, all endued with the speed of the wind and complexion as effulgent as the moon's, but each having one ear black.[14] The god Varuna, the son of Aditi, said to that excellent scion of Bhrigu's race,—Be it so! Wheresoever thou shalt seek, the horses shall arise (in thy presence).[15]—As soon as Richika thought of them, there arose from the waters of Gangā a thousand high-mettled horses, as lustrous in complextion as the moon.[16] Not far from Kānyakuvja, the sacred bank of Gangā is still famous among men as Açwatirtha in consequence of the appearance of those horses.[17] Then Richika, that best of ascetics, pleased in mind, gave those thousand excellent horses unto Gādhi as the marriage-dower.[18] King Gādhi, filled with wonder and fearing to be cursed, gave his daughter, bedecked with jewels, unto that son of Bhrigu.[19] That foremost of regenerate Rishis accepted her hand in marriage according to the prescribed rites. The princess too was well-

pleased at finding herself the wife of that Brāhmana.[20] That foremost of regenerate Rishis, O Bhārata, was well pleased with her conduct and expressed a wish to grant her a boon.[21] The princess, O excellent king, related this to her mother. The mother addressed the daughter that stood before her with down-cast eyes, saying,[22]—It behooves thee, O my daughter, to secure a favour for me also from thy husband! That sage of austere penances is capable of granting a boon to me,—the boon, *viz.*, of the birth of a son to me![23]—Then, O king, returning quickly to her husband Richika, the princess related to him all that had been desired by her mother.[24] Richika said,—By my favour, O blessed one, she will soon give birth to a son possessed of every virtue! May thy request be fulfilled![25] Of thee too shall be born a mighty and glorious son who, endued with virtue, shall perpetuate my race! Truly do I say this unto thee![26] When you two shall bathe in your season, she shall embrace a pepul tree, and thou, O excellent lady, shalt likewise embrace a fig tree, and by so doing shall ye attain the object of your desire![27] O sweetly-smiling lady, both she and you shall have to partake of these two sacrificial offerings (*charu*)* consecrated with hymns, and then shall ye obtain sons (as desired)![28]—At this, Satyavati, delighted at heart, told her mother all that had been said by Richika as also of the two balls of *charu*.[29] Then the mother, addressing her daughter Satyavati, said :—O daughter, as I am deserving of greater consideration from thee than thy husband, do thou obey my words![30] The *charu*, duly consecrated with hymns, which thy husband has given to thee, do thou give unto me and thyself take the one that has been prescribed for me![31] O sweetly-smiling one of blameless character, if thou hast any respect for my word, let us change the trees respectively designed for us![32] Every one desires to possess an excellent and stainless being for his own son. The glorious Richika too must have acted from a similar motive in this matter as will appear in the end.[33] For

* 'Charu' is properly an oblation of rice, barley, and pulse, boiled with butter and milk, for presentation to the gods in a sacrifice or ordinary worship.—T.

this reason, O beautiful girl, my heart inclines towards thy *charu* and thy tree, and thou too shouldst consider how to secure an excellent brother for thyself![34]—The mother and the daughter Satyavati having acted in this way, they both, O Yudhishthira, became big with child.[35] And that great *Rishi*, the excellent descendant of Bhrigu, finding his wife quick with child, was pleased at heart, and addressing her, said:[36]—O excellent lady, thou hast not done well in exchanging the *charu* as will soon become apparent. It is also clear that thou hast changed the trees.[37] I had placed the entire accumulated energy of *Brahma* in thy *charu* and Kshatriya energy in the *charu* of thy mother.[38] I had so ordered that thou wouldst give birth to a Brāhmana whose virtues would be famous throughout the three worlds, and that she (thy mother) would give birth to an excellent Kshatriya.[39] But now, O excellent lady, that thou hast reversed the order (of the *charu* so), thy mother will give birth to an excellent Brāhmana and thou too,[40] O excellent lady, wilt give birth to a Kshatriya terrible in action. Thou hast not done well, O lady, by acting thus out of affection for thy mother![41]—Hearing this, O king, the excellent lady Satyavati, struck with sorrow, fell upon the ground like a beautiful creeper cut in twain.[42] Regaining her senses and bowing unto her lord with head (bent), the daughter of Gādhi said to her husband, that foremost one of Bhrigu's race,[43]—O regenerate *Rishi*, O thou that art foremost amongst those versed in *Brahma*, do thou take pity on me, thy wife, who is thus appeasing thee and so order that a Kshatriya son may not be born unto me![44] Let my grandson be such a one as will be famous for his terrible achievements if it be thy desire, but not my son, O Brāhmana! Do thou confer this favour on me.[45]—Be it so,—said that man of austere penances to his wife and then, O king, she gave birth to a blessed son named Jamadagni.[46] The celebrated wife of Gādhi too gave birth to the regenerate *Rishi* Viçwāmitra versed in the knowledge of *Brahma*, by favour of that *Rishi*.[47] The highly devout Viçwāmitra, though a Kshatriya, attained to the state of a Brāhmana and became the founder of a race of Brāhmanas.[48] His sons became high-souled progenitors of many races of Brāhmanas who

were devoted to austere penances, learned in the Vedas, and founders of many clans.[49] The adorable Madhuchcchanda and the mighty Devrāt, Akshina, Cakunta, Vabhru, Kālapatha,[50] the celebrated Yājnavalkya, Sthuna of high vows, Uluka, Mudgala, and the sage Saindhavāyana,[51] the illustrious Valgujangha and the great *Rishi* Gālava, Ruchi, the celebrated Vajra, as also Sālankāyana,[52] Lilādhya, and Nārada, the one known as Kurchāmukha, and Vāhuli, Mushala, as also Vakshogriva.[53] Ānghrika, Naikadrik, Cilāyupa, Cita, Cuchi, Chakraka, Mārutantavya, Vātaghna, Açwalāyana,[54] and Cyāmāyana, Gārgya, and Jāvāli, as also Suçruta, Kārishi, Sangçrutya, and Para Paurava, and Tantu,[55] the great sage Kapila, Tārakāyana, Upagahana, Āsurāyani, Mārgama, Hiranyāksha, Janghāri, Bhāvravāyani, and Suti, Bibhuti, Suta, Surakrit,[56] Ārāni, Nāchika, Chāmpeya, Ujjayana, Navatantu, Vakanakha, Sayana, Yati,[57] Ambhoruha, Amatsyāçin, Cirishin, Gārdhavi, Urjjayoni, Udāpekshin, and the great *Rishi* Nāradin,[58]—these *Munis* were all sons of Viçwāmitra and were versed in the knowledge of *Brahma*. O king Yudhishthira, the highly austere and devout Viçwāmitra, although a Kshatriya[59] (by descent), became a Brāhmana for Richika having placed the energy of supreme *Brahma* (in the *charu*), O foremost prince of Bharata's race! I have now related to you, with all details,[60] the story of the birth of Viçwāmitra who was possessed of the energy of the sun, the moon, and the fire-god.[61] O best of kings, if thou hast any doubt with regard to any other matter, do thou let me know it, so that I may remove it.' "[62]

Section V.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O thou that knowest the truths of religion, I wish to hear of the merits of compassion, and of the characteristics of devout men! Do thou, O sire, describe them to me.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, this ancient legend, the story of Vāsava and the high-minded Cuka, is cited as an illustration.[2] In the territories of the king of Kāçi, a fowler, having poisoned arrows with him, went out of his village on a hunting

excursion in search of antelopes.[3] Desirous of obtaining meat, when in a big forest in pursuit of the chase, he descried a drove of antelopes not far from him, and discharged his arrow at one of them.[4] The arrow of that fowler of irrestible arms, discharged for the destruction of the antelope, missing its aim, pierced a mighty forest-tree.[5] The tree, violently pierced with that arrow tipped with virulent poison, withered away, shedding its leaves and fruits.[6] The tree having thus withered, a parrot that had lived in a hollow of its trunk all his life, did not leave his nest out of affection for the lord of the forest.[7] Motionless and without food, silent and sorrowful, that grateful and virtuous parrot also withered away with the tree.[8] The conqueror of Pāka (Indra) was struck with wonder upon finding that high-souled, and generous-hearted bird thus uninfluenced by misery or happiness and possessing extraordinary resolution.[9] Then the thought arose in Sakra's mind,—How could this bird come to possess such humane and generous feelings which are impossible in one belonging to the lower animal creation?[10] Perchance, there is nothing wonderful in the matter, for all creatures are seen to evince kindly and generous feelings towards others.[11]—Assuming then the shape of a Brāhmana, Cakra descended on the Earth and addressing the bird, said:[12]—O Cuka, O best of birds, the grand-daughter (Cuki) of Daksha has become blessed (by having thee as her offspring)! I ask thee, for what reason dost thou not leave this withered tree?[13]—Thus questioned, the Cuka bowed unto him and thus replied:—Welcome to thee, O chief of the gods, I have recognised thee by the merit of my austere penances.[14]—Well-done, well-done!—exclaimed the thousand-eyed deity. Then the latter praised him in his mind, saying,—O, how wonderful is the knowledge which he possesses![15]—Although the destroyer of Vala knew that parrot to be of a highly virtuous character and meritorious in action, he still enquired of him about the reason of his affection for the tree.[16]—This tree is withered and it is without leaves and fruits, and is unfit to be the refuge of birds. Why dost thou then cling to it? This forest too is vast[17] and in this wilderness there are numerous other fine trees whose hollows are covered with leaves and which thou canst choose freely

and to thy heart's content![18] O patient one, exercising due discrimination in thy wisdom, do thou forsake this old tree that is dead and useless and shorn of all its leaves and no longer capable of any good!—'[19]

"Bhishma said,—'The virtuous Cuka, hearing these words of Cakra, heaved a deep sigh, and sorrowfully replied unto him, saying,[20]—O consort of Cachi, and chief of the gods, the ordinances of the deities are always to be obeyed! Do thou listen to the reason of the thing in regard to which thou hast questioned me.[21] Here, within this tree, was I born, and here in this tree have I acquired all the good traits of my character, and here in this tree was I protected in my infancy from the assaults of my enemies.[22] O sinless one, why art thou, in thy kindness, tampering with the principle of my conduct in life? I am compassionate, and devoutly intent on virtue, and steadfast in conduct.[23] Kindliness of feeling is the great test of virtue amongst the good, and this same compassionate and humane feeling is the source of perennial felicity to the virtuous.[24] All the gods question thee to remove their doubts in religion, and for this reason, O lord, thou hast been placed in sovereignty over them all.[25] It behooves thee not, O thousand-eyed one, to advise me now to abandon this tree for ever! When it was capable of good, it supported my life. How can I forsake it now?[26]—The virtuous destroyer of Pāka, pleased with these well-meant words of the parrot, thus said to him:—I am gratified with thy humane and compassionate disposition.[27] Do thou ask a boon of me!'—At this, the compassionate parrot craved this boon of him, saying,—Let this tree revive![28]—Knowing the great attachment of the parrot to that tree and his high character, Indra, well-pleased, caused the tree to be quickly sprinkled over with nectar.[29] Then that tree became replenished and attained to exquisite grandeur through the penances of the parrot,[30] and the latter too, O great king, at the close of his life, obtained the companionship of Cakra by virtue of that act of compassion.[31] Thus, O lord of men, by communion and companionship with the pious, people attain all the objects of their desire even as the tree did through its companionship with the parrot.'"[32]

Section VI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Of Exertion and Destiny, tell me, O learned sire that art versed in all the scriptures, which is the more powerful ?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'This ancient story of the conversation of Vaçishtha and Brahman, O Yudhishthira, is an illustration in point.[2] In olden times the adorable Vaçishtha enquired of Brahman as to which among these two, *viz.*, the *Karma* of a creature acquired in this life, or that acquired in previous lives (and called Destiny), is the more potent in shaping his life.[3] Then, O king, the great god Brahman, who had sprung from the primeval lotus, answered him in these exquisite and well-reasoned words, full of meaning.[4]

"'Brahman said,—Nothing comes into existence without seed. Without seed, fruits do not grow. From seeds spring other seeds. Hence are fruits known to be generated from seeds.[5] Good or bad as the seed is that the husbandman soweth in his field, good or bad are the fruits that he reaps.[6] As, unsown with seed, the soil, though tilled, becomes fruitless, so, without individual Exertion, Destiny is of no avail.[7] One's own acts are like the soil, and Destiny (or the sum of one's acts in previous births,) is compared to the seed. From the union of the soil and the seed doth the harvest grow.[8] It is observed every day in the world that the doer reaps the fruit of his good and evil deeds;[9] that happiness results from good deeds, and pain from evil ones; that acts, when done, always fructify; and that, if not done, no fruit arises.[10] A man of (good) acts acquires merits with good fortune, while an idler falls away from his estate, and reaps evil like the infusion of alkaline matter injected into a wound.[11] By devoted application, one acquires beauty, fortune, and riches of various kinds. Everything can be secured by Exertion: but nothing can be gained through Destiny alone, by a man that is wanting in personal Exertion.[12] Even so does one attain to heaven, and all the objects of enjoyment, as also the fulfillment of one's heart's desires, by well-directed individual Exertion[13] All the luminous bodies in the firmament, all the

deities, the *Nāgas*, and the *Rākshasas*, as also the Sun and the Moon and the Winds, have attained to their high status by evolution from man's status, through dint of their own action.[14] Riches, friends, prosperity descending from generation to generation, as also the graces of life, are difficult of attainment by those that are wanting in Exertion.[15] The Brāhmana attains to prosperity by holy living, the Kshatriya by prowess, the Vaiçya by manly exertion, and the Cudra by service.[16] Riches and other objects of enjoyment do not follow the stingy, nor the impotent, nor the idler. Nor are these ever attained by the man that is not active or manly or devoted to the exercise of religious austerities.[17] Even he, the adorable Vishnu, who created the three worlds with the *Daityas* and all the gods, even He is engaged in austere penances in the bosom of the deep.[18] If one's *Karma* bore no fruit, then all actions would become fruitless, and relying on Destiny men would become idlers.[19] He who, without pursuing the human modes of action, follows Destiny only, acts in vain, like unto the woman that has an impotent husband.[20] In this world the apprehension of good or evil is not so great if Destiny be unfavorable as one's apprehension of the same in the other world if Exertion be wanting while here.*[21] Man's powers, if properly exerted, only follow his Destiny, but Destiny alone is incapable of conferring any good where Exertion is wanting.[22] When it is seen that even in the celestial regions, the position of the deities themselves is unstable, how would the deities maintain their own position or that of others without proper *Karma*?[23] The deities do not always approve of the good deeds of others in this world, for, apprehending their own overthrow, they try to thwart the acts of others.[24] There is a constant rivalry between the deities and the Rishis, and if they all have to go through their *Karma*, still it can never be averred that there is no such thing as Destiny, for it is the latter that initiates all *Karma*.[25] How

* The meaning seems to be that if Destiny be unfavorable, there need not be much fear with respect to this world. But if one be wanting in Exertion, great must his fear be with respect to the next world, for happiness can never be obtained in the next world unless one *acts* righteously while here.—T.

does *Karma* originate, if Destiny form the prime spring of human action? (The answer is) that by this means, an accretion of many virtues is made even in the celestial regions.[26] One's own self is one's friend and one's enemy too, as also the witness of one's good and evil deeds.[27] Good and evil manifest themselves through *Karma*. Good and evil acts do not give adequate results.[28] Righteousness is the refuge of the gods, and by righteousness is everything attained. Destiny thwarts not the man that has attained to virtue and righteousness.[29]

In olden times, Yayāti, falling from his high estate in heaven, descended on the Earth but was again restored to the celestial regions by the good deeds of his virtuous grandsons.[30] The royal sage Pururavas, celebrated as the descendant of Ilā, attained to heaven through the intercession of the Brāhmanas.[31] Saudāsa, the king of Koçala, though dignified by the performance of *Açwamedha* and other sacrifices, obtained the status of a man-eating *Rākshasa*, through the curse of a great *Rishi*.[32] Açwatthāman and Rāma, though both warriors and sons of *Munis*, failed to attain to heaven by reason of their own actions in this world.[33] Vasu, though he performed a hundred sacrifices, like a second Vāsava, was sent to the nethermost regions, for making a single false statement.[34] Vali, the son of Virochana, righteously bound by his promise, was consigned to the regions under the Earth, by the prowess of Vishnu.[35] Was not Janamejaya, who followed the foot-prints of Cakra, for killing a Brāhmana woman, checked and put down by the gods?[36] Was not the regenerate *Rishi* Vaiçampāyana too, who slew a Brāhmana in ignorance, and was polluted by the slaughter of a child, put down by the gods?[37] In olden times the royal sage Nriga became transmuted into a lizard. He had made gifts of kine unto the Brāhmanas at his great sacrifice, but this availed him not.[38] The royal sage Dhundhumāra was overwhelmed with decrepitude even while engaged in performing his sacrifices, and foregoing all the merits thereof he fell asleep at Girivraja.[39] The Pāndavas too regained their lost kingdom, of which they had been deprived by the powerful sons of Dhritarāshtra, not through the intercession of the fates, but by recourse to their own valour.[40] Do the *Munis* of rigid vows, and

addicted to the practice of austere penances, denounce their curses by the aid of any supernatural power or in exercise of only their own puissance attained by individual acts?[41] All the good which is attained with difficulty in this world, if possessed by the wicked, is soon lost to them. Destiny does not help the man that is steeped in spiritual ignorance and avarice.[42] Even as a fire of small proportions, when fanned by the wind, becomes of mighty power, so does Destiny, when joined with individual Exertion, increase greatly (in potentiality).[43] As by the diminution of oil in the lamp its light is extinguished, so does the influence of Destiny, by the abatement of one's acts.[44] Having obtained vast wealth, and women, and all the enjoyments of this world, the man that is not diligent in action is unable to enjoy them long, but the high-souled man, diligent in Exertion, is able to find riches buried deep in the Earth and watched over by the fates.[45] The good man who is prodigal (in religious charities and sacrifices) is sought by the gods for his good conduct, the celestial world being better than the world of men, but the house of the miser though abounding in wealth is looked upon by the gods as the house of the dead.[46] The man that does not exert himself is never contented in this world, nor can Destiny alter the course of a man that has gone wrong. There is no power inherent in Destiny. As the pupil follows the preceptor, so does one's action, guided by Destiny, follows one's own individual exertion. Where one's own Exertion is put forth, there only Destiny shows its hand.[47] O best of *Munis,* I have thus described all the merits of individual Exertion, having always known them in their true significance.[48] By the influence of Destiny, and by putting forth individual Exertion, do men attain to heaven. The combined aid of Destiny and Exertion, becomes efficacious.' "[49]

SECTION VII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O the best of Bharata's race and the foremost of great men, I wish to know what the fruits are of good deeds! Do thou enlighten me!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall tell thee what thou hast asked! Do

thou, O Yudhishthira, listen to this which constitutes the secret knowledge of the *Rishis* ![2] Listen to me as I explain what the ends, long coveted, are which are attained by men after death. Whatever actions are performed by creatures in whatever bodies or forms of existence,[3] the fruits thereof are reaped by the doers while endued with similar bodies. In whatever states creatures perform good or evil deeds, they reap the fruits thereof in similar states of succeeding lives. No act done with the aid of the five organs of sensual perception, is ever lost.[4] The five sensual organs and the immortal soul which is the sixth, remain its witnesses. One should devote one's eye (to the service of others);[5] one should devote one's heart (to the same); one should utter words that are agreeable;[6] one should also follow and worship (one's guest). This is called the sacrifice with five gifts. He who offers good food to the unknown and weary traveller, fatigued by a long journey, attains to great merit.[7] Those that use the sacrificial platform as their only bed obtain commodious mansions and beds (in subsequent births). Unto him that wears only rags and barks of trees for dress, are good apparel and ornaments.[8] Unto one possessed of penances and having his soul on Yoga, are vehicles and riding animals (as the fruit of their renunciation in this life). The monarch that lies down by the side of the sacrificial fire, attains to vigor and valour.[9] The man who renounces the enjoyment of all delicacies, attains to prosperity, and he that abstains from animal food, obtains children and cattle.[10] He who lies down with his head downwards, or who lives in water, or who lives secluded and alone in the practice of *Brahmacharya*, attains to all the desired ends.[11] He who offers shelter to a guest and welcomes him with water to wash his feet as also with food, light and bed, attains to the merits of the sacrifice with the five gifts.[12] He who on the battle-field, in the posture of a warrior, lays himself down on a warrior's bed, goes to those eternal regions where all the objects of desire are fulfilled.[13] A man, O king, attains to riches that makes charitable gifts. One secures obedience to one's command by the vow of silence, all the enjoyments of life by practice of austerities, long life by *Brahmacharya*, and beauty, prosperity and freedom from disease by abstaining from injury to others.[14] Sovereignty

falls to the lot of those that subsist on fruits and roots only. Residence in heaven is attained by those that live on only leaves of trees.[15] A man, O king, is said to obtain happiness, by abstention from food. By confining one's diet to herbs alone, one becomes possessed of cows. By living on grass one attains to the celestial regions.[16] By foregoing all intercourse with one's wife and making ablutions three times during the day and by inhaling the air only for purposes of subsistence, one obtains the merit of a sacrifice. Heaven is attained by the practice of truth, and nobility of birth by sacrifices.[17] The Brahmana of pure practices that subsists on water only, and performs the Agnihotra ceaselessly, and recites the Gāyatri, obtains a kingdom. By abstaining from food or by regulating it, one attains to residence in heaven.[18] O king, by abstaining from all but the prescribed diet while engaged in sacrifices, and by making pilgrimage for twelve years, one attains to a place better than the abodes reserved for heroes.[19] By reading all the Vedas, one is instantly liberated from misery, and by practising virtue in thought, one attains to the heavenly regions.[20] That man who is able to renounce that intense yearning of the heart for happiness and material enjoyments,—a yearning that is difficult of conquest by the foolish and that doth not abate with the abatement of bodily vigour and that clings like a fatal disease unto him,—is able to secure happiness.[21] As the young calf is able to recognise its dam from among a thousand cows, so does the previous acts of a man pursue him (in all his different transformations).[22] As the flowers and fruits of a tree, unurged by visible influences, never miss their proper season, so does Karma done in a previous existence bring about its fruits in proper time.[23] With age, man's hair grows gray ; his teeth become loose ; his eyes and ears too become dim in action ; but the only thing that does not abate is his desire for enjoyments.[24] Prajāpati is pleased with those acts that please one's father, and the Earth is pleased with those acts that please one's mother, and Brahma is adored with those acts that please one's preceptor. Virtue is honored by him who honors these three. The acts of those that despise these three do not avail them.' "[25-26]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The princes of Kuru's race became filled with wonder upon listening to this speech of Bhishma, All of them became pleased in mind and overpowered with joy.[27] As Mantras applied with a desire to win victory, or the performance of the *Shoma* sacrifice made without proper gifts, or oblations poured on the fire without proper hymns, become useless and lead to evil consequences, even so sin and evil results flow from falsehood in speech.[28] O prince, I have thus related to thee this doctrine of the fruition of good and evil acts, as narrated by the *Rishis* of old. What else dost thou wish to hear?' "[29]

Section VIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Who are deserving of worship? Who are they unto whom one may bow? Who are they, O Bhārata, unto whom thou wouldst bend thy head? Who, again, are they whom thou likest? Tell me all this, O prince![1] What is that upon which thy mind dwells when affliction overwhelms thee? Do thou discourse to me on what is beneficial here, that is, in this region of human beings, as also hereafter!'*[2]

"Bhishma said,—I like those regenerate persons whose highest wealth is Brahma, whose heaven consists in their knowledge of the soul, and whose penances are constituted by their diligent study of the Vedas.[3] My heart yearns after those in whose race persons young and old diligently bear the ancestral burthens without languishing under them.[4] Brāhmanas well-trained in several branches of knowledge, self-controlled, mild-speeched, conversant with the scriptures, well-behaved, possessed of the knowledge of Brahma, and righteous in conduct,[5] discourse in respectable assemblies like flights of swans.† Auspicious, agree-

---

* The Commentator explains that 'hitam tad vada' are understood in the last line.—T.

† The Commentator explains that the allusion here is to the adage that swans in drinking milk mixed with water always drink the milk leaving out the water. Learned Brāhmanas are like swans for in discoursing upon even the topics of the world they select what is good and instructive but reject what is evil and sinful, or, as the Commentator puts it, they know the difference between what is soul and what is not-soul.—T.

able, excellent, and well-pronounced are the words, O Yudhishthira, which they utter with a voice as deep as that of the clouds. Fraught with happiness both temporal and spiritual, such words are uttered by them in the courts of monarchs, themselves being received with honor and attention and served with reverence by those rulers of men.[6-7] Indeed, my heart yearns after them that, endued with knowledge and all desirable attributes, and respected by others, listen to such words when uttered in assemblies or the courts of kings.[8] My heart, O monarch, always yearns after them who, for the gratification of Brāhmanas, O Yudhishthira, give unto them, with devotion, food that is well-cooked and clean and wholesome.[9] It is easy to fight in battle, but not so to make a gift without pride or vanity.[10] In this world, O Yudhishthira, there are brave men and heroes by hundreds. While counting them, he that is a hero in gifts should be regarded as superior.[11] O amiable one, if I had been even a vulgar Brāhmana I would have regarded myself as very great, not to speak of one born in a good race, endued with righteousness of conduct, and devoted to penances and learning.[12] There is no one, O son of Pāndu, in this world, that is dearer to me than thou, O chief of Bharata's race, but dearer to me than thou are the Brāhmanas![13] And since, O best of the Kurus, the Brāhmanas are very much dearer to me than thou, it is by that truth that I hope to go to all those regions of felicity which have been acquired by my sire Cāntanu.[14] Neither my sire, nor my sire's sire, nor any one else connected with me by blood, is dearer to me than the Brāhmanas![15] I do not expect any fruit, small or great, from my worship of the Brāhmanas (for I worship them as deities because they are deserving of such worship).*[16] In consequence of what I have done to the Brāhmanas in thought, word, and deed, I do not feel any pain now (even though I am lying on a bed of arrows).[17] People used to call me as one devoted to the Brāhmanas. This style of address always pleased me highly. To do good to the Brāhmanas is the most sacred of all sacred acts.[18] I behold many

---

* 'Vrijinam' is explained by the Commentator as 'Sankatam, phalāçā iti yāvat &c.'—T.

regions of beatitude waiting for me that have reverentially walked behind the Brāhmanas. Very soon shall I repair to those regions for everlasting time, O son![19] In this world, O Yudhishthira, the duties of women have reference to and depend upon their husbands. To a woman, verily, the husband is the deity and he is the highest end after which she should strive. As the husband to the wife, even so are the Brāhmanas unto Kshatriyas.[20] If there be a Kshatriya of full hundred years of age and a good Brāhmana child of only ten years, the latter should be regarded as a father and the former as a son, for among the two, verily, the Brāhmana is superior.[21] A woman, in the absence of her husband, takes his younger brother for her lord; even so the Earth, not having obtained the Brāhmana, made the Kshatriya her lord.[22] The Brāhmanas should be protected like sons and worshipped like sires or preceptors. Indeed, O best of the Kurus, they should be waited upon with reverence even as people wait with reverence upon their sacrificial or Homa fires.[23] The Brāhmanas are endued with simplicity and righteousness. They are devoted to truth. They are always engaged in the good of every creature. Yet when angry they are like snakes of virulent poison. They should, for these reasons, be always waited upon and served with reverence and humility.[24] One should, O Yudhishthira, always fear these two, *viz.*, Energy and Penances. Both these should be avoided or kept at a distance.[25] The effects of both are speedy. There is this superiority, however, of Penances, *viz.*, that Brāhmanas endued with Penances, O monarch, can, if angry, slay the object of their wrath (regardless of the measure of Energy with which that object may be endued).[26] Energy and Penances, each of the largest measure, become neutralised if applied against a Brāhmana that has conquered wrath. If the two,—that is, Energy and Penances, —be set against each other, then destruction would overtake both but not destruction without a remnant, for while Energy, applied against Penances, is sure to be destroyed without leaving a remnant, Penances applied against Energy cannot be destroyed completely.*[27] As the herdsman, stick in hand, protects the

* *I. e.*, one should keep oneself aloof from both Energy and Penances.

herd, even so should the Kshatriya always protect the Vedas and the Brāhmanas.[28] Indeed, the Kshatriya should protect all righteous Brāhmanas even as a sire protects his sons. He should always have his eye upon the houses of the Brāhmanas for seeing that the means of subsistence may not be wanting.' "[29]

SECTION IX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, O thou of great splendour, what do those men become who, through stupefaction of intellect, do not make gifts unto Brāhmanas after having promised to make those gifts?'[1] O thou that art the foremost of all righteous persons, do tell me what the duties are in this respect. Indeed, what becomes the end of those wicked wights that do not give after having promised to give!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'The person that, after having promised, does not give, be it little or much, has the mortification to see his hopes (in every direction) become fruitless like the hopes of a eunuch in respect of progeny.[3] Whatever good acts such a person does between the day of his birth and that of his death, O Bhārata,[4] whatever libations he pours on the sacrificial fire, whatever gifts he makes, O chief of Bharata's race, and whatever penances he performs, all become fruitless.[5] They that are conversant with the scriptures declare this as their opinion, arriving at it, O chief of the Bharatas, with the aid of a well-ordered understanding.[6] Persons conversant with the scriptures are also of opinion that such a man may be cleansed by giving away a thousand horses with ears of a dark hue.[7] In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse between a jackal and an ape.[8] While both were human beings, O scorcher of foes, they were intimate friends. After death one of them became a jackal and the other an ape.[9] Beholding the jackal one day eating an animal carcase in the midst of a crematorium, the ape, remembering his own and his friend's former birth as human beings, addressed him, saying,[10]—Verily, what terrible sin

---

for both these can consume if troubled or interfered with. By 'Energy' is meant both physical and mental force. It belongs to the Kshatriya as Penances belong to the Brāhmana.—T.

didst thou perpetrate in thy former birth in consequence of which thou art obliged in this birth to feed in a crematorium upon such repulsive fare as the putrid carcase of an animal ?[11]—Thus addressed, the jackal replied unto the ape, saying,—Having promised to give unto a Brāhmana I did not make him the gift ![12] It is for that sin, O ape, that I have fallen into this wretched order of existence ! It is for that reason that, when hungry, I am obliged to eat such food ![13]—'

"Bhishma continued,—'The jackal then, O best of men, addressed the ape and said,—What sin didst thou commit for which thou hast become an ape ?—[14]

" 'The ape said,—In my former life I used to appropriate the fruits belonging to Brāhmanas. Hence have I become an ape. Hence it is clear that one possessed of intelligence and learning should never appropriate what belongs to Brāhmanas. Verily, as one should abstain from this, one should avoid also all disputes with Brāhmanas. Having promised, one should certainly make the promised gift unto them !—'[15]

"Bhishma continued,—'I heard this, O king, from my preceptor while he was engaged in discoursing upon the subject of Brāhmanas. I heard this from that righteous person when he recited the old and sacred declarations on this topic.[16] I heard this from Krishna also, O king, while he was engaged in discoursing, O son of Pāndu, upon Brāhmanas.*[17] The property of a Brāhmana should never be appropriated. They should always be let alone. Poor, or miserly, or young in years, they should never be disregarded.[18] The Brāhmanas have always taught me this. Having promised to make them a gift, the gift should be made. A superior Brāhmana should never be disappointed in the matter of his expectations.[19] A Brāhmana, O king, in whom an expectations has been raised, has, O king, been said to be like a blazing fire.†[20] That man upon whom a Brāhmana with raised expectations casts his eye, is sure,

---

* The Commentator thinks that by Krishna the Island-born Krishna or Vyāsa is meant.—T.

† The sense is that such a Brāhmana, if his expectation be not gratified, is competent to consume the person that has falsely raised that expectation. - T.

O monarch, to be consumed even as a heap of straw is capable of being consumed by a blazing fire.*[21] When the Brāhmana, gratified (with honors and gifts) by the king, addresses the king in delightful and affectionate words, he becomes, O Bhārata, a source of great benefit to the king, for he continues to live in the kingdom like a physician combatting against diverse ills of the body.†[22] Such a Brāhmana is sure to maintain in the benefits of peace the sons and grandsons and animals and relatives and ministers and other officers and the city and the provinces of the king.‡[23] Even such is the energy, so great, of the Brāhmana, like unto that of the thousand-rayed Surya himself, on the Earth.[24] Therefore, O Yudhishthira, if one wishes to attain to a respectable or happy order of being in one's next birth, one should, having passed the promise to a Brāhmana, certainly keep it by actually making the gift to him.[25] By making gifts to a Brāhmana one is sure to attain to the highest heaven. Verily, the making of gifts is the highest of acts that one can achieve.[26] By the gifts one makes to a Brāhmana, the deities and the Pitris are supported. Hence one possessed of knowledge should ever make gifts unto the Brāhmanas.[27] O chief of the Bharatas, the Brāhmana is regarded as the highest object unto whom gifts should be made. At no time should a Brāhmana be received without being properly worshipped.' "[28]

Section X.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I wish to know, O royal sage, whether any fault is incurred by one who from interested or disinterested friendship imparts instructions unto a person belonging to a low order of birth ![1] O grandsire, I desire to hear this expounded

---

* 'Akshyayyam' is fire because it is fire that eats the food offered to the Pitris and makes it inexhaustible.—T.

† The sense is that as a physician cures diverse ailments of the body, after the same manner, a gratified Brāhmana cures diverse faults of the kingdom in which he continues to live honored and gratified by the king.—T.

‡ 'Cāntirishtā' is the 'rishti' or benefits caused by 'çānti.' The Commentator cites Medini for explaining that 'rishti' is 'kshema.'—T.

to me in detail. The course of duty is exceedingly subtile. Men are often seen to be stupefied in respect of that course.'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, O king, I shall recite to thee, in due order, what I heard certain Rishis say in days of yore.[3] Instruction should not be imparted unto one that belongs to a low or mean caste. It is said that the preceptor who imparts instruction to such a person incurs great fault.[4] Listen to me, O chief of Bharata's race, as I recite to thee, O Yudhishthira, this instance that occurred in days of old, O monarch, of the evil consequences of the imparting of instruction unto a low-born person fallen into distress.[5] The incident which I shall relate occurred in the asylum of certain regenerate sages that stood on the auspicious breast of Himavat. There, on the breast of that prince of mountains, was a sacred asylum adorned with trees of diverse kinds.[6] Overgrown also with diverse species of creepers and plants, it was the resort of many animals and birds. Inhabited by Siddhas and Chāranas also, it was exceedingly delightful in consequence of the woods that flowered there at every season.[7] Many were the Brahmachārins that dwelt there, and many belonging to the forest mode of life. Many also were the Brāhmanas that took up their residence there, that were highly blessed and that resembled the sun or the fire in energy and effulgence.[8] Ascetics of diverse kinds, observant of various restraints and vows, as also others, O chief of the Bharatas, that had undergone *Dikshā* and were frugal in fare and possessed of cleansed souls, took up their residence there.[9] Large numbers of Vālikhilyas and many that were observant of the vow of Sanyāsa also, used to dwell there. The asylum, in consequence of all this, resounded with the chaunting of the Vedas and the sacred Mantras uttered by its inhabitants.[10] Once upon a time a Cudra endued with compassion for all creatures, ventured to come into that asylum. Arrived at that retreat, he was duly honored by all the ascetics.[11] Beholding those ascetics of diverse classes that were endued with great energy, that resembled the deities (in purity and power), and that were observing diverse kinds of *dikshā*, O Bhārata, the Cudra became highly pleased at heart.[12] Beholding everything, O chief of Bharata's race, the Ćudra felt inclined to devote himself to the practice of

penances. Touching the feet of the Kulapati, O Bhārata, he addressed him, saying,*[13]—Through thy grace, O foremost of regenerate persons, I desire to learn (and practise) the duties of religion. It behooveth thee, O illustrious one, to discourse to me on those duties and introduce me (by performing the rites of initiation) into a life of Renunciation![14] I am certainly inferior in color, O illustrious one, for I am by caste a Cudra, O best of men! I desire to wait upon and serve you here. Be gratified with me that humbly seek thy shelter!—[15]

" 'The Kulapati said,—It is impossible that a Cudra should live here adopting the indications of a life of Renunciation. If it pleases thee, thou mayst stay here, engaged in waiting upon and serving us![16] Without doubt, by such service thou shalt attain to many regions of high felicity!—[17]'

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by the ascetic, the Cudra began to reflect in his mind, O king, saying,—How should I now act? Great is my reverence for those religious duties that lead to merit![18] Let this, however, be settled, that I shall do what would be for my benefit.'† Proceeding to a spot that was distant from that asylum, he made a hut of the twigs and leaves of trees.[19] Erecting also a sacrificial platform, and making a little space for his sleep, and some platforms for the use of the deities, he began, O chief of the Bharatas, to lead a life regulated by rigid observances and vows and to practise penances, abstaining entirely from speech the while.[20] He began to perform ablutions thrice a day, observe other vows (in respect of food and sleep), make sacrifices to the deities, pour libations on the sacrificial fire, and adore and worship the deities in this way.[21] Restraining all carnal desires, living abstemiously upon fruits and roots, controlling all his senses, he daily welcomed and entertained all that came to his retreat as

---

* 'Tapasye' is 'Tapah karishye'. There being no indirect narration in Sanskrit, such forms cannot be helped. A Kulapati is an ascetic that owns ten thousand ascetics for his disciples. Kanwa, the foster-father of Cakuntalā, was a Kulapati.—T.

† *I. e.*, renouncing service which is the duty ordained for persons of his order, he desired to betake himself to universal Renunciation or Sanyāsa, without, however, the *lingam* or marks of that vow.—T.

guests, offering them herbs and fruits that grew plentifully around. In this way he passed a very long time in that hermitage of his.*[22-23] One day an ascetic came to that Cudra's retreat for the purpose of making his acquaintance. The Cudra welcomed and worshipped the Rishi with due rites, and gratified him highly.[24] Endued with great energy, and possessed of a righteous soul, that Rishi of rigid vows conversed with his host on many agreeable subjects and informed him of the place whence he had come.[25] In this way, O chief of the Bharatas, that Rishi, O best of men, came into the asylum of the Cudra times out of number for the object of seeing him.[26] On one of these occasions, the Cudra, O king, addressing the Rishi, said,—I desire to perform the rites that are ordained for the Pitris. Do thou show me kindness in this matter![27]—Very well,—the Brāhmana said in reply unto him, O monarch.[28] The Cudra then, purifying himself by a bath, brought water for the Rishi to wash his feet, and he also brought some Kuça grass, and wild herbs and fruits, and a sacred seat, and the seat called Vrishi.[29] The Vrishi, however, was placed by the Cudra towards the south, with its head turned to the west. Beholding this and knowing that it was against the ordinance, the Rishi addressed the Cudra, saying,[30]—Place the Vrishi with its head turned towards the East, and having purified thyself, do thou sit with thy face turned towards the north.—The Cudra did everything as the Rishi directed.[31] Possessed of great intelligence, and observant of righteousness, the Cudra received every direction, about the Crāddha, as laid down in the ordinance, from that Rishi endued with penances, reflecting the manner of spreading the Kuça grass, and placing the Arghyas, and as regards the rites to be observed in the matter of the libations to be poured and the food to be offered. After the rites in honor of the Pitris had been accomplished, the Rishi, was dismissed by the Cudra, whereupon he returned to his own abode.†[32-33]

---

* 'Sankalpa-niyamopetah' means 'Sankalpasya nigrahah,' or 'chitta-vritti nirodhah'; 'tena upetah.'—T.

† No Brāhmana, the scriptures declare, should ever assist a Cudra in the performance of his religious or Pitri rites. Those Brāhmanas that violate this injunction fall away from their superior position. They are

After a long time, the whole of which he passed in the practice of such penances and vows, the Cudra ascetic met with his death in those woods. In consequence of the merit he acquired by those practices,[34] the Cudra, in his next life, took birth in the family of a great king, and in time became possessed of great splendour. The regenerate Rishi also, when the time came, paid his debt to Nature.[35] In his next life, O chief of Bharata's race, he took birth in the family of a priest. It was in this way that those two, *viz.*, that Cudra who had passed a life of penances and that regenerate Rishi who had in kindness given the former some instructions in the matter of the rites performed in honor of the Pitris, became reborn, the one as the scion of a royal race and the other as the member of a priestly family.[36] Both of them began to grow and both acquired great knowledge in the usual branches of study. The Brāhmana became well versed in the Vedas as also in the Atharvans.*[37] In the matter, again, of all sacrifices ordained in the Sutras, of that Vedānga which deals with religious rites and observances, astrology and astronomy, the reborn Rishi attained great excellence. In the Sānkhya philosophy too he began to take great delight.[38] Meanwhile, the reborn Cudra who had become a prince, when his father the king died, performed his last rites; and after he had purified himself by accomplishing all the obsequial ceremonies, he was installed by the subjects of his father as their king on his paternal throne.[39] But soon after his own installation as king, he installed the reborn Rishi as his priest. Indeed, having made the Brāhmana his priest, the king began to pass his days in great happiness.[40] He ruled his kingdom righteously and protected and cherished all his subjects. Everyday, however, the king, beholding his priest on the occasion of receiving benedictions from him as also of

---

condemned as 'Cudra-yājins.' Here, the Rishi, by only giving directions to the Cudra as to how the Pitri rites were to be performed, became a 'Cudra-yājin.' There are many families to this day whose status has been lowered in consequence of such or similar acts of indiscretion on the part of their ancestors.—T.

* 'Atharva Vede Vede cha' implies that the Atharvans were not generally included under the term 'Veda' by which the first three Vedas only were meant.—T.

the performance of religious and other sacred rites, smiled or laughed loudly. In this way, O monarch, the reborn Cudra who had become a king, laughed at sight of his priest on numberless occasions.*[41-42] The priest, marking that the king always smiled or laughed whenever he happened to cast his eyes on him, became angry.[43] On one occasion he met the king in a place where there was nobody else. He pleased the king by agreeable discourse.[44] Taking advantage of that moment, O chief of Bharata's race, the priest addressed the king, saying,—O thou of great splendour, I pray thee to grant me a single boon !—[45]

" 'The king said,—Of boons, O best of regenerate persons, I am ready to grant thee a hundred, what dost thou say then of one only ? From the affection I bear thee and the reverence in which I hold thee, there is nothing that I cannot give thee !—[46]

" 'The priest said,—I desire to have only one boon, if, O king, thou hast been pleased with me ! Swear that thou wouldst tell me the truth, instead of any untruth !—'[47]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by the priest, O Yudhishthira, the king said unto him—So be it ! If what thou wouldst ask me be known to me, I shall certainly tell thee truly. If, on the other hand, the matter be unknown to me, I shall not say anything !—[48]

" 'The priest said,—Every day, on occasions of obtaining my benedictions, when, again, I am engaged in the performance of religious rites on thy behalf, on occasions also of the *Homa* and other rites of propitiation, why is it that thou laughest upon beholding me ?[49] Seeing thee laugh at me on all occasions, my mind shrinks with shame. I have caused thee to swear, O king, that thou wouldst answer me truly. It does not behoove thee to say what is untrue ![50] There must be some grave reason for thy behaviour. Thy laughter cannot be causeless. Great is my curiosity to know the reason. Do thou speak truly unto me !—[51]

---

* 'Punyāha-vāchana' is a peculiar rite. The priest or some other Brāhmana is invited. Gifts are then made to him, and he utters benedictions in return upon the giver. Yudhishthira used to invite every day a large number of Brāhmanas and make them very valuable presents for obtaining their benedictions.—T.

" 'The king said,—When thou hast addressed me in this strain, O regenerate one, I am bound to enlighten thee even if the matter be one that should not be divulged in thy hearing! I must tell thee the truth. Do thou listen to me with close attention, O regenerate one![52] Listen, O foremost of twice-born persons, to me as I disclose to thee what happened (to us) in our former births. I remember that birth. Do thou listen to me with concentrated mind.[53] In my former life I was a Cudra employed in the practice of severe penances. Thou, O best of regenerate persons, wert a Rishi of austere penances.[54] O sinless one, gratified with me, and impelled by the desire of doing me good, thou, O Brāhmana, wert pleased to give me certain instructions in respect of the rites I performed (on one occasion) in honor of my Pitris.[55] The instructions thou gavest me were in respect of the manner of spreading the Vrishi and the Kuça blades and of offering libations and meat and other food, O foremost of ascetics! In consequence of this transgression of thine thou hast taken birth as a priest.[56] I have taken birth as a king, O foremost of Brāhmanas. Behold the vicissitudes that Time brings about! Thou hast reaped this fruit in consequence of thy having instructed me (in my former birth).[57] It is for this reason, O Brāhmana, that I smile at sight of thee, O foremost of regenerate persons! I do not certainly laugh at thee from desire of disregarding thee. Thou art my preceptor.*[58] At this change of condition I am really very sorry. My heart burns at the thought. I remember our former births, hence do I laugh at sight of thee![59] Thy austere penances were all destroyed by the instructions thou gavest me. Relinquishing thy present office of priest, do thou endeavour to regain a superior birth.[60] Do thou exert so that thou mayst not obtain in thy next life a birth meaner than thy present one! Take as much wealth as thou wishest, O learned Brāhmana, and cleanse thy soul, O best of men!—'[61]

"Bhishma continued,—'Dismissed by the king (from the office of priest), the Brāhmana made many gifts, unto persons of his

---

* Or, rather, superior. 'Guru' is used to denote any senior as well as preceptor.—T.

own order, of wealth and land and villages.[62] He observed many rigid and severe vows as laid down by the foremost of Brāhmanas. He sojourned to many sacred waters and made many gifts unto Brāhmanas in those places.[63] Making gifts of kine unto persons of the regenerate order, his soul became cleansed and he succeeded in acquiring a knowledge of it. Repairing to that very asylum whither he had lived in his former birth, he practised very severe penances.[64] As the consequence of all this, O foremost of kings, that Brāhmana succeeded in attaining to the highest success. He became an object of veneration with all the ascetics that dwelt in that asylum.[65] In this way, O best of monarchs, that regenerate Rishi fell into great distress. Unto Cudras, therefore, the Brāhmana should never give instructions.[66] Hence, O king, the Brāhmana should avoid imparting instructions (to such as are low-born), for it was by imparting instruction to a low-born person a Brāhmana came to grief.[67] O best of kings, the Brāhmana should never desire to obtain instruction from, or impart instruction to, a person that belongs to the lowest order.[68] Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas, these three orders, are regarded as twice-born. By imparting instruction unto these, a Brāhmana does not incur any fault.[69] They, therefore, that are good, should never discourse on any subject, for imparting any instruction, before persons of the inferior order. The course of morality is exceedingly subtile and incapable of being comprehended by persons of uncleansed souls.[70] It is for this reason that ascetics adopt the vow of silence, and, respected by all, pass through Dikshā without indulging in speech.* For fear of saying what is incorrect or what may offend, ascetics often forego speech itself.[71] Even men that are righteous and possessed of every accomplishment, and endued with truth and simplicity of behaviour, have been known to incur great fault in consequence of words spoken improperly.[72] Instruction should never be imparted on anything unto any person. If in consequence of the instructions imparted, the instructed commit any sin, that sin attaches to the Brāh-

---

* The 'Dikshā' is that rite which one passes through by way of preparation for those sacrifices and vows that one seeks to perform.—T.

mana who imparted the instruction.[73] The man of wisdom, therefore, that desires to earn merit, should always act with wisdom. That instruction which is imparted in barter for money always pollutes the instructor.*[74] Solicited by others, one should say only what is correct after settling it with the aid of reflection. One should impart instruction in such a way that one may, by imparting it, earn merit.[75] I have thus told thee everything respecting the subject of instructions. Very often persons become plunged into great afflictions in consequence of imparting instruction. Hence it is meet that one should abstain from giving instruction unto others.' "[76]

Section XI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, in what kind of man or woman, O chief of the Bharatas, does the goddess of Prosperity always reside ?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall, in this connection, narrate to thee what occurred and what I have heard. Once on a time, the princess Rukmini asked this question in the presence of Devaki's son.[2] Beholding the goddess of Prosperity, blazing with beauty and endued with the complexion of the lotus, the mother of Pradyumna that bore the device of the *Makara* on his banner, filled with curiosity, said these words :[3]—Who are those beings by whose side thou stayest and whom thou servest ? Who, again, are those whom thou dost not serve ? O thou that art dear unto him that is the lord of all creatures, tell me this truly, O thou that art equal to a great Rishi in penances and puissance ![4]—Thus addressed by the princess, the goddess of Prosperity, with a face as beautiful as the moon, and moved by grace, in the presence of him who has Garuda on his banner, said these words in reply that were sweet and charming.[5]

" 'Cree said,—O blessed lady, I always reside with him that is eloquent, active, attentive to business, free from wrath, given to the worship of the deities, endued with gratitude, has his passions under complete control, and is high-minded in every-

---

* 'Satyānrite' is equivalent to trade or barter.—T.

thing.[6] I never reside with one that is inattentive to business, that is an unbeliever, that causes an intermixture of races in consequence of his lustfulness, that is ungrateful, that is of impure practices, that uses harsh and cruel words, that is a thief, and that cherishes malice towards his preceptors and other seniors.[7] Those persons that are endued with little energy, strength, life, and honor, that are distressed at every trifle, and that always indulge in wrath, I never reside in. Nor do I ever reside with these that think in one strain and act in a different one.*[8] I never reside also with him who never desires any acquisition for himself, or him who is so blinded as to rest content with the lot in which he finds himself without any exertion, or with those that are contented with small acquisitions.[9] I reside with those that are observant of the duties of their own order, or those that are conversant with the duties of righteousness, or those that are devoted to the service of the aged, or those that have their passions under control, or those that are endued with cleansed souls, or those that observe the virtue of forgiveness, or those that are able and prompt in action, or with such women as are forgiving and self-restrained.[10] I reside with those women also that are devoted to truth and sincerity and that worship the deities. I do not reside with those women also that do not attend to household furniture and provisions scattered all around the house, and that always utter words contrary to the wishes of their husbands.[11] I always avoid those women that are fond of the houses of other people and that have no modesty. On the other hand, I reside with those women that are devoted to their husbands, that are blessed in behaviour, and that are always decked in ornaments and attired in good robes.[12] I always reside with those women that are truthful in speech, that are of handsome and agreeable features, that are blessed and that are endued with all accomplishments. I always avoid such women as are sinful and unclean or impure, as always

* 'Sanguptamanoratheshu' is explained by the Commentator as persons who conceal their real sentiments by acting differently from what they think. The reference is to hypocrites.—T.

lick the corners of their mouths, as have no patience or fortitude, and as are fond of dispute and quarreling;[13] as are given to much sleep, and as always lie down. I always reside in conveyances and the animals that drag them, in maidens, in ornaments and good vestments, in sacrifices, in clouds charged with rain,[14] in full-blown lotuses, and in those stars that bespangle the autumnal firmament. I reside in elephants, in the cowpen, in good seats, and in lakes adorned with full-blown lotuses.[15] I live also in such rivers as babble sweetly in their course, melodious with the music of cranes, having banks adorned with rows of diverse trees, and resorted to by Brāhmanas and ascetics and others crowned with success.[16] I always reside in those rivers also that have deep and large volumes of rolling waters rendered turbid by lions and elephants plunging into them for bathing or slaking their thirst. I reside also in infuriate elephants, in bovine bulls, in kings, on the throne, and in good men.[17] I always reside in that house in which the inmate pours libations on the sacrificial fire and worships kine, Brāhmanas, and the deities. I reside in that house where at the proper time offerings are made, unto the deities, of flowers in course of worship.*[18] I always reside in such Brāhmanas as are devoted to the study of the Vedas, in Kshatriyas devoted to the observance of righteousness, in Vaiçyas devoted to cultivation, and in Cudras devoted to the (menial) service of the three upper classes.[19] I reside, with a heart firm and unchangeable, in Nārāyana, in my embodied self. In Him is righteousness in its perfection and full measure, devotion to the Brāhmanas, and the quality of agreeableness.[20] Can I not say, O lady, that I do not reside in my embodied form, (in any of these places that I have mentioned, except Nārāyana)? That person in whom I reside in spirit increases in righteousness and fame and wealth and objects of desire.—' "[21]

---

* 'Vali' (sing. of 'Valayah') means anything offered or dedicated to the deities. The sense of the second line is that the goddess of Prosperity resides in that house in which flowers are offered to the deities instead of animal life.—T.

Section XII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'It behoveth thee, O king, to tell me truly which of the two, *viz.*, man or woman, derives the greater pleasure from an act of union with each other. Kindly resolve my doubt in this respect !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited this old narrative of the dicourse between Bhangāswana and Cakra as a precedent illustrating the question.[2] In days of yore there lived a king of the name of Bhangāswana. He was exceedingly righteous and was known as a royal sage. He was, however, childless, O chief of men, and therefore made a sacrifice from desire of obtaining issue.[3] The sacrifice which that mighty monarch performed was the *Agnishtuta*, which in consequence of the deity of fire being alone adored in it, is always disliked by Indra. Yet it is the sacrifice that is desired by men when for the purpose of obtaining issue they seek to cleanse themselves of their sins.*[4] The highly blessed chief of the celestials, *viz.*, Indra, learning that the monarch was desirous of performing the *Agnishtuta*, began from that moment to look for the *laches* of that royal sage of well-restrained soul (for if he could succeed in finding some *laches*, he could then punish his disregarder).[5] Notwithstanding all his vigilance, however, O king, Indra failed to detect any *laches* on the part of the high-souled monarch. Sometime after, one day, the king went on a hunting expedition.[6] Saying unto himself,—This, indeed, is an opportunity, —Indra stupefied the monarch. The king proceeded alone on his horse, confounded because of the chief of the celestials having stupefied his senses.[7] Afflicted by hunger and thirst, the king's confusion was so great that he could not ascertain the points of the compass. Indeed, afflicted with thirst, he began to wander hither and thither.[8] He then beheld a lake that was exceedingly beautiful and was full of transparent water. Alighting from his steed, and plunging into the lake,

---

* The belief is that a man remains childless in consequence of his sins. If these sins can be washed away, he may be sure to obtain children.—T.

he caused his animal to drink.[9] Tying his horse then, whose thirst had been slaked, to a tree, the king plunged into the lake again for performing his ablutions. To his amazement he found that he was changed, by virtue of the waters, into a woman.[10] Beholding himself thus transformed in respect of sex itself, the king became overpowered with shame. With his senses and mind completely agitated, he began to reflect with his whole heart in this strain :[11]—Alas, how shall I ride my steed ? How return to my capital ? In consequence of the Agnishtuta sacrifice I have got a hundred sons all endued with great might, and all children of my own loins ! Alas, thus transformed, what shall I say unto them ? What shall I say unto my spouses, my relatives and well-wishers, and my subjects of the city and the provinces ?[12-13] Rishis conversant with the truths of duty and religion and other matters say that mildness and softness and liability to extreme agitation are the attributes of women,[14] and that activity, hardness, and energy are the attributes of men. Alas, my manliness has disappeared ! For what reason has femininity come over me ? In consequence of this transformation of sex, how shall I succeed in mounting my horse again ?[15]—Having indulged in these sad thoughts, the monarch, with great exertion, mounted his steed and came back to his capital, transformed though he had been into a woman.[16] His sons and spouses and servants, and his subjects of the city and the provinces, beholding that extraordinary transformation, became exceedingly amazed.[17] Then that royal sage, that foremost of eloquent men, addressing them all, said, —I had gone out on a hunting expedition, accompanied by a large force. Losing all knowledge of the points of the compass, I entered a thick and terrible forest, impelled by the fates.[18] In that terrible forest, I became afflicted with thirst and lost my senses. I then beheld a beautiful lake abounding with fowl of every description.[19] Plunging into that stream for performing my ablutions, I was transformed into a woman !— Summoning then his spouses and counsellers,[20] and all his sons by their names, that best of monarchs transformed into a woman said unto them these words :—Do ye enjoy this kingdom in happiness ! As regards myself, I shall repair to the woods,

ye sons![21]—Having said so unto his children, the monarch proceeded to the forest. Arrived there, she came upon an asylum inhabited by an ascetic.[22] By that ascetic the transformed monarch gave birth to a century of sons. Taking all those children of hers, she repaired to where her former children were, and addressing the latter, said,[23]—Ye are the children of my loins while I was a man. These are my children brought forth by me in this state of transformation. Ye sons, do ye all enjoy my kingdom together, like brothers born of the same parents![24]—At this command of their parent, all the brothers, uniting together, began to enjoy the kingdom as their joint property. Beholding those children of the king all jointly enjoying the kingdom as brothers born of the same parents,[25] the chief of the celestials, filled with wrath, began to reflect,—By transforming this royal sage into a woman, I have, it seems, done him good instead of an injury![26]—Saying this, the chief of the celestials, *viz.*, Indra of a hundred sacrifices, assuming the form of a Brāhmana, repaired to the capital of the king and meeting all the children succeeded in disuniting the princes.[27] He said unto them,—Brothers never remain at peace even when they happen to be the children of the same father. The sons of the sage Kaçyapa, *viz.*, the deities and the Asuras, quarelled with each other on account of the sovereignty of the three worlds.[28] As regards ye princes, ye are the children of the royal sage Bhangāswana. These others are the children of an ascetic. The deities and the Asuras are children of even one common sire. (And yet the latter quarrelled with each other. How much more, therefore, should *you* quarrel with each other)?[29] This kingdom that is your paternal property is being enjoyed by these children of an ascetic.—with these words, Indra succeeded in causing a breach between them, so that they very soon engaged in battle and slew each other.[30] Hearing this, king Bhangāswana, who was living as an ascetic woman, burnt with grief and poured forth her lamentations. The lord of the celestials, *viz.*, Indra, assuming the guise of a Brāhmana, came to that spot where the ascetic lady was living, and meeting her, said,[31]—O thou that art possessed of a beautiful face, with what grief dost thou burn so that thou

art pouring forth thy lamentations?—Beholding the Brāhmana, the lady told him in a piteous voice,[32]—Two hundred sons of mine, O regenerate one, have been slain by Time. I was formerly a king, O learned Brāhmana and in that state had a hundred sons.[33] These were begotten by me after my own form, O best of regenerate persons! On one occasion I went on a hunting expedition. Stupified, I wandered amidst a thick forest.[34] Beholding at last a lake, I plunged into it. Rising, O foremost of Brāhmanas, I found that I had become a woman. Returning to my capital I installed my sons in the sovereignty of my dominions and then departed for the forest.[35] Transformed into a woman, I bore a hundred sons to my husband who is a high-souled ascetic. All of them were born in the ascetic's retreat. I took them to the capital.[36] My children, through the influence of Time, quarreled with each other, O twice-born one! Thus afflicted by Destiny, I am indulging in grief![37]—Indra addressed him in these harsh words,—In former days, O lady, thou gavest me great pain, for thou didst perform a sacrifice that is disliked by Indra.[38] Indeed, though I was present, thou didst not invoke me with honors. I am that Indra, O thou of wicked understanding! It is I with whom thou hast purposely sought hastilities![39]—Beholding Indra, the royal sage fell at his feet, touching them with his head, and said,—Be gratified with me, O foremost of deities! The sacrifice of which thou speakest was performed from desire of offspring (and not from any wish to hurt thee).[40] It behooveth thee, therefore, to grant me thy pardon!—Indra, seeing the transformed monarch prostrate himself thus unto him, became gratified with him and desired to give him a boon.[41]—Which of your sons, O king, dost thou wish, should revive, those that were brought forth by thee transformed into a woman, or those that were begotten by thee in thy condition as a person of the male sex?[42]—The ascetic lady, joining her hands, answered Indra, saying,—O Vāsava, let those sons of mine come to life that were borne by me as a woman![43]—Filled with wonder at this reply, Indra once more asked the lady,—Why dost thou entertain less affection for those children of thine that were begotten by thee in thy form of a person of

the male sex ?[44] Why is it that thou bearest greater affection for those children that were borne by thee in thy transformed state? I wish to hear the reason of this difference in respect of thy affection. It behooveth thee to tell me everything!—[45]

"'The lady said,—The affection that is entertained by a woman is much greater than that which is entertained by a man. Hence, it is, O Cakra, that I wish those children to come back to life that were borne by me as a woman!—'[46]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed, Indra became highly pleased and said unto her,—O lady that art so truthful, let all thy children come back into life![47] Do thou take another boon, O foremost of kings,—in fact, whatever boon thou likest, O thou of excellent vows! Do thou take from me whatever status thou choosest, that of woman or of man!—[48]

"'The lady said,—I desire to remain a woman, O Cakra! In fact, I do not wish to be restored to the status of manhood, O Vāsava!—Hearing this answer, Indra once more asked her, saying,[49]—Why is it, O puissant one, that abandoning the status of manhood thou wishest that of womanhood?—Questioned thus, that foremost of monarchs tranformed into a woman answered,[50] —In acts of congress, the pleasure that women enjoy is always much greater than what is enjoyed by men. It is for this reason, O Cakra, that I desire to continue a woman![51] O foremost of the deities, truly do I say unto thee that I derive greater pleasure in my present status of womanhood. I am quite content with this status of womanhood that I now have. Do thou leave me now, O lord of heaven![52]—Hearing these words of hers, the lord of the celestials answered,—So be it,—and bidding her farewell, proceeded to heaven. Thus, O monarch, it is known that woman derives much greater pleasure than men under the circumstances thou has asked.' "[53]

Section XIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What should a man do in order to pass pleasantly through this and the other world! How, indeed, should one conduct oneself? What practices should one adopt with this view?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'One should avoid the three acts that are done with the body, the four that are done with speech, the three that are done with the mind, and the ten paths of action.[2] The three acts that are done with the body and should be wholly avoided are the destruction of the lives of other creatures, theft or appropriation of what belongs to other persons, and the enjoyment of other people's wives.[3] The four acts that are done with speech, O king, and that should never be indulged or even thought of, are evil conversation, harsh words, publishing other people's faults, and falsehood.[4] Coveting the possessions of others, doing injury to others, and disbelief in the ordinances of the Vedas, are the three acts done with the mind which should always be avoided.*[5] Hence, one should never do any evil act in word, body, or mind. By doing good and evil acts, one is sure to enjoy or endure the just consequences thereof. Nothing can be more certain than this.' "[6]

Section XIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O son of the River Gangā, thou hast heard all the names of the Lord of the universe! Do thou tell us, O grandsire, all the names that are applied, O puissant one, unto Him who is called Iça and Cambhu![1] Do thou tell us all those names that are applied unto Him who is called Vabhru or vast, Him that has the universe for his form, Him that is the illustrious Master of all the deities and the Asuras, that is called Cankara, and that has an origin that is unmanifest. Do thou tell us also of the puissance of Mahādeva!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'I am quite incompetent to recite the virtues of Mahādeva of great intelligence. He pervades all things in the universe and yet is not seen anywhere.[3] He is the

---

* I give, in the positive form of speech, the three mental acts that are directed to be avoided. In the original, these are given in the negative form. Absence of coveting the possessions of others is the act that is directed to be followed. So compassion for all creatures is prescribed; and, lastly, the belief is directed to be entertained that acts have fruits, for the Vedas declare as much. He that does not believe that acts have fruits disbelieves the very Vedas which, of course, is a sinful act.—T.

creator of Brahman, Vishnu, and Indra, and he is their master. All the deities, from Brahman to the Piçāchas, adore and worship him.[4] He transcends both Prakriti and Purusha. It is of Him that Rishis, conversant with Yoga and possessing a knowledge of the topics of enquiry, think and reflect.[5] He is indestructible and Supreme *Brahma*. He is both existent and non-existent. Agitating both Prakriti and Purusha by means of His energy, He created therefrom the universal lord of creatures, *viz.*, Brahman.[6] Who is there that is competent to tell the virtues of that god of gods, that is endued with supreme Intelligence? Man is subject to conception (in the mother's womb), birth, decrepitude, and death.[7] Being such, what man like me is competent to understand Bhava?' Only Nārāyana, O son, that bearer of the conch, the discus, and the mace, can comprehend Mahādeva.[8] He is endued with knowledge. He is the foremost of all beings in attributes. He is Vishnu because of his pervading the universe. He is irresistible. Endued with spiritual vision, He is possessed of supreme Energy. He sees all things with the eye of Yoga.[9] It is in consequence of his devotion to the illustrious Rudra whom he gratified, O Bhārata, in the retreat of Vadari, by penances, that the high-souled Krishna has succeeded in overwhelming the entire universe.[10] O king of kings, it is through Maheçwara of celestial vision that Vāsudeva has obtained the attribute of universal agreeableness,—an agreeableness that is much greater than what is possessed by all articles included under the name of wealth.*[11] For a full thousand years this Mādhava underwent the austerest penances and at last succeeded in gratifying the illustrious and boon-giving Civa, that Master of all the mobile and the immobile universe.[12] In every new Yuga has Krishna (by such penances) gratified Mahādeva. In every Yuga has Mahādeva been gratified with the great devotion of the high-souled Krishna.[13] What

* The sense is this: wealth is always agreeable to all persons. Vāsudeva is more agreeable than wealth. This attribute of being more agreeable than wealth itself,—agreeable, that is, to all the universe,—is due to the favor of Mahādeva. The Commentator explains it in an esoteric sense, coming to the conclusion that 'arthāt priyataratwancha' means 'the attribute of becoming the Soul of all things in the universe.'—T.

the puissance is of the high-souled Mahādeva,—that original cause of the universe,—has been seen with his own eyes by Hari who himself transcends all deterioration, on the occasion of his penances in the retreat of Vadari undergone for obtaining a son.*[14] I do not, O Bhārata, behold any one that is superior to Mahādeva. To expound the names of that god of gods fully and without creating the desire of hearing more, only Krishna is competent.[15] This mighty-armed one of Yadu's race is alone competent to tell the attributes of the illustrious Civa. Verily, O king, only he is able to discourse on the puissance, in its entirety, of the Supreme deity !' "[16]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having said these words, the illustrious Bhishma, the grandsire of the Kurus, addressing Vāsudeva, said the following words dealing with the subject of the greatness of Bhava, O monarch.[17]

"Bhishma said,—'Thou art the Master of all the deities and the Asuras. Thou art illustrious. Thou art Vishnu in consequence of thy pervading the whole universe. It behooveth thee to discourse on those subjects connected with Civa of universal form about which Yudhishthira has asked me ![18] In days of yore, the Rishi Tàndin, sprung from Brahman, recited in Brahman's region and before Brahman himself the thousand names of Mahādeva.[19] Do thou recite those names before this conclave so that these Rishis endued with wealth of asceticism, observant of high vows, possessed of self-restraint, and numbering the Island-born Krishna among them, may hear thee ![20] Do thou discourse on the high blessedness of Him who is immutable, who is always cheerful and happy, who is Hotri, who is the universal Protector, who is Creator of the universe, and who is called Mundin and Kaparddin.'†[21]

"Vāsudeva said,—'The very deities with Indra, and the

---

* The allusion is to Krishna's penances for gratifying Mahādeva in order to obtain a son. The son so obtained,—that is, as a boon from Mahādeva,—was Pradyumna begotten by Krishna upon Rukmini, his favourite spouse.—T.

† It is not necessary to explain these names here. They have been fully explained in previous portions and will be explained later on in this very chapter.—T.

Grandsire Brahman numbering among them, and the great Rishis also, are incompetent to understand the course of Mahādeva's acts truly and in all their details.[22] Even He is the end which all righteous people attain. The very Ādityas, who are endued with subtile sight, are unable to behold his abode. How then can one that is merely a man succeed in comprehending Him?*[23] I shall, therefore, truly recite to you some only of the attributes of that illustrious slayer of Asuras, who is regarded as the Lord of all sacrifices and vows."[24]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having said these words, the illustrious Vāsudeva began his discourse on the attributes of the high-souled Mahādeva endued with the highest intelligence, after having purified himself by touching water.[25]

"Vāsudeva said,—'Hear, ye foremost of Brāhmanas, and thou Yudhishthira also, O sire, and hear thou too, O River's son, the names that are applied unto Kaparddin![26] Hear ye, how in former days, I obtained a sight, so difficult to obtain, (of that great god), for the sake of Cāmva. Verily, in those days was the illustrious deity seen by me in consequence of Yoga-abstraction.†[27] After twelve years had expired from the time when Pradyumna, the son of Rukmini, who is endued with great intelligence, slew the Asura Camvara in days of yore, my spouse Jāmvavati addressed me.[28] Indeed, beholding Pradyumna and Chārudeshna and other sons born of Rukmini, Jāmvavati, desirous of a son, said these words unto me, O Yudhish-

---

* Such Verses are explained by the esoteric school in a different way. 'Bhavanam' is taken as standing for 'Hārdākāçam,' *i. e.*, the firmament of the heart; 'ādityas' stand for the senses. The meaning then becomes,—'How can one that is merely a man comprehend Cambhu whom the senses cannot comprehend, for Cambhu dwells in the firmament of the heart and cannot be seen but by the internal vission that Yoga supplies.' Some texts read 'nidhanamādim' meaning 'end and beginning.'—T.

† It is said that for obtaining a worthy son, Krishna underwent the austerest of penances on the breast of Himavat, with a view to gratify the god Mahādeva. The son obtained as a boon from Mahādeva was Cāmva, as would appear from this and the succeeding Verses. Elsewhere, however, it is stated that the son so obtained was Pradyumna begotten upon Rukmini. The inconsistency would disappear if we suppose that Krishna adored Mahādeva twice for obtaining sons.—T.

thira,[29]—Grant me, O thou of unfading glory, a son endued with heroism, the foremost of mighty men, possessed of the most agreeable features, sinless in conduct, and like unto thyself. And, O, let there be no delay on thy part in granting this prayer of mine![30] There is nothing in the three worlds that is unattainable by thee! O perpetuator of Yadu's race, thou canst create other worlds if only thou wishest it! Observing a vow for twelve years and purifying thyself, thou hadst adored the Lord of all creatures (*viz.*, Mahādeva) and then begotten upon Rukmini the sons that she has obtained from thee,[31-32] *viz.*, Chārudeshna and Suchāru and Chāruveça and Yaçodhana and Chāruçravas and Chāruyaças and Pradyumna and Cambhu.[33] O slayer of Madhu, do thou grant to me a son like unto those of great prowess whom thou hast begotten upon Rukmini![34]—Thus addressed by the princess, I replied unto her of slender waist,—Let me have thy permission (to leave thee for some time), O queen! I shall certainly obey thy behest![35]—She answered me, saying,—Go, and may success and prosperity always attend thee! Let Brahman and Civa and Kāçyapa, the Rivers, those deities that preside over the mind,[36] the soil, all deciduous herbs, those Chcahandas that are regarded as bearers of the libations poured in sacrifices, the Rishis, Earth, the Oceans, the sacrificial presents, those syllables that are uttered for completing the cadences of Sāmans, the Rikshas, the Pitris,[37] the Planets, the spouses of the deities, the celestial maidens, the celestial mothers, the great cycles, kine, Chandramas, Savitri, Agni,[38] Sāvitri, the knowledge of the Vedas, the seasons, the year, the Kshanas, the Lavas, the Muhurtas, the Nimeshas, and the Yugas in succession,[39] protect thee, O Yādava, and keep thee in happiness, wherever thou mayst stay! Let no danger overtake thee on thy way, and let no heedlessness be thine, O sinless one![40]—Thus blessed by her, I took her leave, bidding farewell unto the daughter of the prince of apes. Repairing then into the presence of that foremost of men, *viz.*, my father, of my mother, of the king, and of Āhuka,[41] I informed them of what the daughter of the prince of the Vidyādharas, in great affliction, had said unto me. Bidding them farewell with a sorrowful heart, I then repaired to Gada and to Rāma of great might.[42]

These two cheerfully addressed me, saying,—Let thy penances increase without any obstruction![43]—Having obtained the permission of all of them, I thought of Garuda. He immediately came to me and bore me to Himavat (at my bidding). Arrived at Himavat, I dismissed him.[44] There on that foremost of mountains, I beheld many wonderful sights. I saw an excellent, wonderful, and agreeable retreat for the practice of penances.[45] That delightful retreat was owned by the high-souled Upamanyu who was a descendant of Vyāghrapada. That retreat is applauded and reverenced by the deities and the Gandharvas and seemed to be covered with Vedic beauty.[46] It was adorned with Dhavas and Kakubhas and Kadamvas and cocoas, with Kuruvakas and Ketakas and Jamvus and Pātalas, with banians and Varunakas and Vatsanābhas and Vilwas, with Saralas and Kapitthas and Piyālas and Cālas and palmyras,[47] with Vadaris and Ingudis and Punnāgas and Açokas and Amras and Kovidāras and Champakas and Panaças,[48] and with diverse other trees endued with fruits and flowers. And that retreat was also decked with the straight stems of the *Musa Sapienta*.*[49] Truly, that asylum was adorned with diverse other kinds of trees and with diverse kinds of fruits forming the food of diverse kinds of birds. Heaps of ashes (of sacrificial fires) were thrown in proper places all around, which added to the beauty of the scene.[50] It abounded with Rurus and apes and tigers and lions and leapards, with deer of diverse species and pea-

---

* Dhava is *Anogeissus latifolia*, Wall., syn. *Conocarpus latifolia*, *Roxb.* Kakubha is otherwise called Arjuna which is identified with *Terminalia Arjuna*, syn. *Pentaptera Arjuna*. Kadamva is *Nauclea cadamba*, *Roxb.* Kuruvaka is *Barleria cristata*, *Linn.* Ketaka is *Pandanus odoratissimus*, *Linn.* Jamvu is *Eugenia Jambolana*. Pātala is *Stereospermum suaveolens*, syn. *Bignonia suaveolens*, *Roxb.* Varunaka is *Cratæva religiosa*, syn. *Capparis trifoliata*, *Roxb.* Vatsanābha is *Aconitum ferox*, Wall. Vilwa is *Ægle Marmelos*. Sarala is *Pinus longifolia*, *Roxb.* Kapittha is *Feronia Elephantum*. Piyāla is *Buchanania latifolia*. Cāla is *Shorea robusta*. Vadara is *Zizyphus jujuba*. Ingudi is *Balanites Roxburghii*. Punnāga is *Callophyllum inophyllum*. Açoka is *Saraca Indica*, *Linn*, syn. *Jonesia Asoka*, *Roxb.* Amra is *Mangifera Indica*. Kovidāra is *Bauhinia acuminata*, *Linn.* Champaka is *Michelia Champaca*, *Linn.* Panaça is *Artocarpus integrifolia*, *Linn.*—T.

cocks, and with cats and snakes.[51] Indeed, large numbers of other animals also were seen there, as also buffalos and bears. Delicious breezes blew, constantly bearing the melodious strains of celestial nymphs.[52] The babblings of mountain rillets and springs, the sweet notes of winged chorristers, the gruntings of elephants, the delicious strains of Kinnaras, and the auspicious voice of ascetics singing the Sāmans, O hero, and diverse other kinds of music, rendered that retreat extremely charming. The very imagination cannot conceive another retreat as delightful as the one I beheld. There were also large houses in that asylum, intended for the keep of the sacred fire, and covered all over with flowering creepers.[53-54] It was adorned with the river Gangā of clear and sacred water. Indeed, the daughter of Jahnu always remained there. It was decked also with many ascetics who were the foremost of all righteous persons, who were endued with high souls, and who resembled fire itself in energy.*[55] Some of those ascetics subsisted upon air and some upon water. Some were devoted to Japa or the silent recitation of sacred Mantras. And some were engaged in cleansing their souls by practising the virtues of compassion and the rest. And some amongst them were Yogins devoted to the abstraction of Yoga-meditation. Some amongst them subsisted upon smoke only, and some subsisted upon fire, and some upon milk. Thus was that retreat adorned with many foremost of regenerate persons.[56] And some there were amongst them that had taken the vow of eating and drinking like kine,—that is, by giving up the use of the hands at once. And some used only two pieces of stone for husking their grain, and some that used their teeth only for that purpose. And some subsisted by drinking only the rays of the moon, and some by drinking only froth. And some had betaken themselves to the vow of living like deer.†[57] And some

* Gangā is represented as the daughter of the Rishi Jahnu, and hence is the known by the name of Jāhnavi. What is meant by Jāhnavi having been always present there is that the goddess always stayed there in spirit, desirous of conferring merit upon those that would reverence her.—T.

† *I. e.*, never searching for food but taking what they saw, and never using their hands also.—T.

there were that lived upon the fruits of the Ficus religiosa, and some that used to lie upon water. And some dressed themselves in rags and some in animal skins and some in barks of trees.[58] Indeed, I beheld diverse ascetics of the foremost order observing these and other painful vows. I desired then to enter that asylum.[59] Verily, that asylum was honored and adored by the deities and all high-souled beings, by Civa and others, O Bhārata, and by all creatures of righteous acts. Thus addressed, it stood in all its beauty on the breast of Himavata, like the lunar disc in the firmament.[60] The mungoose sported there with the snake, and the tiger with the deer, like friends, forgetting their natural enmity, in consequence of the energy of those ascetics of blazing penances and for their proximity to those high-souled ones.[61] In that foremost of asylums, which was delightful to all creatures, inhabited by many foremost of Brāhmanas fully conversant with the Vedas and their branches,[62] and by many high-souled Rishis celebrated for the difficult vows they observed, I saw, as soon as I entered, a puissant Rishi with matted locks on head and dressed in rags,[63] who seemed to blaze forth like fire with his penances and energy. Waited upon by his disciples and possessed of tranquil soul, that foremost of Brāhmanas was young in aspect.[64] His name was Upamanyu. Unto me who bowed unto him with a nod of my head, he said,—Welcome art thou, O thou of eyes like lotus petals! Today, by this visit of thine, we see that our penances have borne fruit. Thou art worthy of our adoration, but thou adorest us still. Thou art worthy of being seen, but thou desirest to see me![65]—Joining my hands I addressed him the usual enquiries respecting the well-being of the animals and birds that resided in his asylum, of the progress of his righteousness, and of his disciples.[66] The illustrious Upamanyu then addressed me in words that were exceedingly sweet and delightful,—Thou shalt, O Krishna, obtain without doubt a son like unto thyself![67] Betaking thyself to severe penances, do thou gratify Içāna, the Lord of all creatures. That divine Master, called also Adhokshaja, sporteth here with his spouse by his side.[68] O Janārddana, it was here that the deities with all the Rishis, in days of yore, gratified that foremost of deities

by their penances and Brahmacharyya and Truth and self-restraint, and succeeded in obtaining the fruition of many high desires. That illustrious god is verily the vast receptacle of all energies and penances.[69-70] Projecting into existence and withdrawing once more unto himself all things fraught with good and evil, that inconceivable Deity whom thou seekest, O destroyer of foes, lives here with his spouse![71] He who took his birth as the Dānava named Hiranykaçipu, whose strength was so great that he could shake the very mountains of Meru, succeeded in obtaining from Mahādeva the puissance belonging to all the deities and enjoyed it for ten millions of years.[72] He who was the foremost of all his sons, and who was celebrated by the name of Mandāra, succeeded, through the boon he had obtained from Mahādeva, in fighting Cakra for a million of years.[73] The terrible discus of Vishnu and the thunderbolt of Indra were both unable to make the slightest impression, O Keçava, in days of yore, upon the body of that great cause of universal affliction.*[74] The discus which thou bearest, O sinless one, was given unto thee by Mahādeva after he had slain a Daitya that, proud of his strength, used to live within the waters.[75] That discus, blazing with energy and like unto fire, was created by the great god having for his device the bull. Wonderful and irresistible in energy, it was given unto thee by that illustrious god.[76] In consequence of its blazing energy it was incapable of being gazed at by any person save the wielder of Pināka. It was for this reason that Bhava bestowed upon it the name of Sudarçanam.[77] From that time the name Sudarçanam came to be current in all the worlds. Even that weapon, O Keçava, failed to make the slightest impression on the body of Hiranyakaçipu's son Mandāra, that appeared like an evil planet in the three worlds.[78] Hundreds of Chakras like thine and thunderbolts like that of Cakra, could not inflict a scratch on the body of that evil planet endued with great might, who had obtained a boon from Mahādeva.[79] Afflicted by the mighty Mandāra, the deities fought hard against him

---

* 'Graha' is literally a planet; here, Mandāra who is likened to an evil planet in consequence of the mischief he did unto all.—T.

and his associates, all of whom had obtained boons from Mahādeva.[80] Gratified with another Dānava named Vidyutprabha, Mahādeva granted to him the sovereignty of the three worlds. That Dānava remained the sovereign of the three worlds for a hundred thousand years.[81] And Mahādeva said unto him,—Thou shalt become one of my attendants!—Indeed, the puissant Lord further bestowed upon him the boon of a hundred millions of children. The Unborn Master of all creatures further gave the Dānava the region known by the name of Kuçadwipa for his kingdom.[82] Another great Asura, of the name of Catamukha, was created by Brahman. For a hundred years he poured on the sacrificial fire (as offerings unto Mahādeva) the flesh of his own body.[83] Gratified with such penances, Cankara said unto him,—What can I do for thee?—Catamukha replied unto him, saying,—O thou that art most wonderful, let me have the power of creating new creatures and animals![84] Give also unto me, O foremost of all deities, eternal power!—The puissant lord, thus addressed by him, said unto him,—So be it!*[85]—The Self-born Brahman, concentrating his mind in Yoga, in days of yore, made a sacrifice for three hundred years, with the object of obtaining children.[86] Mahādeva granted him a thousand sons possessed of qualifications commensurate with the merits of the sacrifice. Without doubt, thou knowest, O Krishna, the Lord of Yoga, him that is, who is sung by the deities.[87] The Rishi known by the name of Yājnavalkya is exceedingly virtuous. By adoring Mahādeva he has acquired great fame.[88] The great ascetic who is Parāçara's son, *viz.*, Vyāsa of soul set on Yoga, has obtained great celebrity by adoring Cankara.[89] The Vālikhilyas were on a former occasion disregarded by Maghavat. Filled with wrath at this, they gratified the illustrious Rudra.[90] That lord of the universe, that foremost one of all the deities, thus gratified by the Vālikhilyas, said unto them,—Ye shall succeed by your penances in creating a bird that will rob Indra of the *Amrita*![91]

---

* 'Yoga' in Verse 84 is explained by the Commentator as meaning the power of creation. 'Chandra-Surya-parjanya-Prathivyādi-srishti-sāmarthyam'. Similarly, by 'Cāçwatam Valam' is meant that power which arises from Brahmavidyā.—T.

—Through the wrath of Mahādeva on a former occasion, all the waters disappeared. The deities gratified him by performing a sacrifice called Saptakapāla, and caused, through his grace, other waters to flow into the worlds. Verily, when the three-eyed deity became gratified, water once more appeared in the world.[92] The wife of Atri, who was conversant with the Vedas, abandoned her husband in a huff and said,—I shall no longer live in subjection to that ascetic![93]—Having said these words, she sought the protection of Mahādeva. Through fear of her lord Atri, she passed three hundred years, abstaining from all food.[94] And all this time she slept on wooden clubs for the purpose of gratifying Bhava. The great deity then appeared unto her and then smilingly addressed her, saying,—Thou shalt obtain a son.[95] And thou shalt get that son without the need of a husband, simply through the grace of Rudra. Without doubt, that son, born in the race of his father, shall become celebrated for his worth, and assume a name after thee![96] The illustrious Vikarna also, O slayer of Madhu, full of devotion to Mahādeva, gratified him with severe penances and obtained high and happy success.[97] Cākalya, too, of restrained soul, adored Bhava in a mental sacrifice that he performed for nine hundred years, O Keçava![98] Gratified with him, the illustrious deity said unto him,—Thou shalt become a great author. O son, inexhaustible shall thy fame be in the three worlds.[99] Thy race also shall never come to an end and shall be adorned by many great Rishis that shall take birth in it! Thy son will become the foremost of Brāhmanas and will make the Sutras of thy work.[100] There was a celebrated Rishi of the name of Sāvarni in the Krita age. Here, in this asylum, he underwent severe penances for six thousand years.[101] The illustrious Rudra said,—I am gratified with thee, O sinless one! Without being subject to decrepitude or death, thou shalt become an author celebrated through all the worlds![102]—In days of yore, Cakra also, in Bārānasi, filled with devotion, O Janārddana, adored Mahādeva who has empty space alone for his garments and who is smeared with ashes as an agreeable unguent.[103] Having adored Mahādeva thus, he obtained the sovereignty of the celestials. Nārada also, in days of yore, adored the great Bhava with devotion of heart. Gratified with

him, Mahādeva, that preceptor of the celestial preceptor, said these words:[104]—No one shall be thy equal in energy and penances. Thou shalt always attend upon me with thy songs and instrumental music.[105] Hear also, O Mādhava, how in former times I succeeded in obtaining a sight of that god of gods, that Master of all creatures, O lord![106] Hear also in detail for what object, O thou of great puissance, I invoked with restrained senses and mind that illustrious deity endued with supreme énergy.[107] I shall, O sinless one, tell thee with full details all that I succeeded in obtaining from that god of gods, *viz.*, Maheçwara.[108] In ancient times, *viz.*, the Krita age, O son, there was a Rishi of great fame, named Vyāghrapāda. He was celebrated for his knowledge and mastery over the Vedas and their branches.[109] I was born as the son of that Rishi and Dhaumya took birth as my younger brother. On a certain occasion, O Mādhava, accompanied by Dhaumya,[110] I came upon the asylum of certain Rishis of cleansed souls. There I beheld a cow that was being milked. And I saw the milk and it appeared to me to resemble Amrita itself in taste.[111] I then came home, and impelled by childishness, I addressed my mother and said,—Give me some food prepared with milk.[112]—There was no milk in the house, and accordingly my mother was much grieved at my asking for it. My mother took a piece of (rice) cake and boiled it in water, O Mādhava.[113] The water became whitened and my mother placed it before us, saying that it was milk and bade us drink it. I had before that drunk milk on one occasion, for my father had, at the time of a sacrifice, taken me to the residence of some of our great kinsmen.[114] A celestial cow, who delights the deities, was being milked on that occasion. Drinking her milk that resembled Amrita in taste,[115] I knew what the virtues are of milk. I, therefore, at once understood the origin of the substance that my mother offered me, telling me that it was milk. Verily, the taste of that cake, O son, did not afford me any pleasure whatever.[116] Impelled by childishness I then addressed my mother, saying,—This, O mother, that thou hast given me is not any preparation of milk![117]—Filled with grief and sorrow at this, and embracing me from parental affection and smelling my head, O Mādhava,

she said unto me,[118]—Whence, O child, can ascetics of cleansed souls obtain food prepared with milk ? Such men always reside in the forest and subsist upon bulbs and roots and fruits.[119] Whence shall we who live by the banks of rivers that are the resort of the Vālikhilyas, we who have mountains and forests for our home,—whence, indeed, O child, shall we obtain milk ?[120] We, O dear child, live (sometimes) on air and sometimes on water. We dwell in asylums in the midst of forests and woods. We habitually abstain from all kinds of food that are taken by persons living in villages and towns. We are accustomed to only such food as is supplied by the produce of the wilderness.[121] There cannot be any milk, O child, in the wilderness where there are no offspring of Surabhi.* Dwelling on the banks of rivers or in caves or on mountain-breasts, or in *tirthas* and other places of the kind,[122] we pass our time in the practice of penances and the recitation of sacred Mantras, Civa being our highest refuge. Without gratifying the boon-giving Sthānu of unfading glory,—him, that is, who has three eyes,[123] —whence, O child, can one obtain food prepared with milk and good robes and other objects of enjoyment in the world ? Do thou devote thyself, O dear son, to Cankara with thy whole soul ![124] Through his grace, O child, thou art sure to obtain all such objects as administer to the indulgence of all thy wishes !—Hearing these words of my mother, O slayer of foes, that day,[125] I joined my hands in reverence and bowing unto her, said,—O mother, who is this Mahādeva ? In what manner can one gratify him ?[126] Where does that god reside ? How may he be seen ? With what does he become pleased ? What also is the form of Carva ? How may one succeed in obtaining a knowledge of him ? If gratified, will he, O mother, show himself unto me ?[127]—After I had said these words, O Krishna, to my mother, she, filled with parental affection, smelt my head, O Govinda, her eyes covered with tears the while.[128] Gently patting my body, O slayer of Madhu, my mother, adopting a tone of great humility, addressed me in the following words, O best of the deities !—[129]

* 'Surabhi' is the celestial cow, the original progenetrix of all kine in heaven and on Earth.—T.

"'—My mother said,—Mahādeva is exceedingly difficult to be known by persons of uncleansed souls. These men are incapable of bearing him in their hearts or comprehending him at all. They cannot retain him in their minds. They cannot seize him, nor can they obtain a sight of him.[130] Men of wisdom aver that his forms are many. Many, again, are the places in which he resides. Many are the forms of his Grace.[131] Who is there that can understand in their details the acts, which are all excellent, of Iça, or of all the forms that he has assumed in days of yore ?[132] Who can relate how Carva sports and how he becomes gratified ? Maheçwara of universal form resides in the hearts of all creatures.[133] While Munis discoursed on the auspicious and excellent acts of Içāna, I have heard from them how, impelled by compassion towards his worshippers, he grants them a sight of his person.[134] For the purpose of showing a favor unto the Brāhmanas, the denizens of heaven have recited for their information the diverse forms that were assumed by Mahādeva in days of yore. Thou hast asked me about these. I shall recite them to thee, O son !—[135]

"'—My mother continued,—Bhava assumes the forms of Brahman and Vishnu and the chief of the celestials: of the Rudras, the Ādityas, and the Açwins ; and of those deities that are called Viçwedevas.[136] He assumes the forms also of men and women, of Pretas and Piçāchas, of Kirātas and Cavaras, and of all aquatic animals. That illustrious deity assumes the forms of also those Cavaras that dwell in the woods and forests.[137] He assumes the forms of tortoises and fishes and conchs. He it is that assumes the forms of those coral sprouts that are used as ornaments by men.[138] He assumes the forms of also Yakshas and Rākshasas and Snakes, of Daityas and Dānavas. Indeed, the illustrious god assumes the forms of all creatures too that live in holes.[139] He assumes the forms of tigers and lions and deer, of wolves and bears and birds, of owls and of jackals as well.[140] He it is that assumes the forms of swans and crows and peacocks, of chameleons and lizards and storks. He it is that assumes the forms of cranes and vultures and Chakravākas.[141] Verily, He it is that assumes the forms of Chāsas and of mountains also. O son, Mahādeva it is that assumes the

forms of kine and elephants and horses and camels and asses.[142] He assumes the forms of also goats and pards and diverse other varieties of animals. It is Bhava who assumes the forms of diverse kinds of birds of beautiful plumage.[143] It is Mahādeva who bears the forms of persons with sticks and those with umbrellas and those with calabashes among Brāhmanas.* He sometimes becomes six-faced and sometimes becomes multifaced. He sometimes assumes forms having three eyes and forms having many heads.[144] And he sometimes assumes forms having many millions of legs and forms having innumerable stomachs and faces, and forms endued with innumerable arms and innumerable sides. He sometimes appears surrounded by innumerable spirits and ghosts.[145] He it is that assumes the forms of Rishis and Gandharvas, and of Siddhas and Chāranas. He sometimes assumes a form that is rendered white with the ashes he smears on it and adorned with a half-moon on the forehead.[146] Adored with diverse hymns uttered with diverse kinds of voice and worshipped with diverse Mantras fraught with encomiums, he, that is sometimes called Carva, is the Destroyer of all creatures in the universe, and it is upon him, again, that all creatures rest as on their common foundation.[147] Mahādeva is the soul of all creatures. He pervades all things. He is the speaker of all discourses (on duties and rituals). He resides everywhere and should be known as dwelling in the hearts of all creatures in the universe.[148] He knows the desire cherished by every worshipper of his. He becomes acquainted with the object in which one pays him adorations. Do thou then, if it pleases thee, seek the protection of that chief of the deities.[149] He sometimes rejoices, and sometimes yields to wrath, and sometimes utters the syllable Hun with a very loud noise. He sometimes arms himself with the discus, sometimes with the trident, sometimes with the mace, sometimes the heavy mullets, sometimes the scimitar, and sometimes the battle-

* A Sanyāsin is one that bears the stick as the badge of the mode of life he has adopted. 'Cchatrin' is the king. 'Kundin' is one with the calabash. The meaning is that it is Mahādeva who becomes the Sanyāsin or the mendicant on the one hand and the monarch on the throne.—T.

axe.[150] He it is that assumes the form of Cesha who sustains the world on his head. He has snakes for his belt, and his ears are adorned with ear-rings made of snakes. Snakes form also the sacred thread he wears. An elephant skin forms his upper garment.*[151] He sometimes laughs and sometimes sings and sometimes dances most beautifully. Surrounded by innumerable spirits and ghosts, he sometimes plays on musical instruments. Diverse again are the instruments upon which he plays, and sweet the sounds they yield.[152] He sometimes wanders (over crematoria), sometimes yawns, sometimes cries, and sometimes causes others to cry. He sometimes assumes the guise of one that is mad, and sometimes of one that is intoxicated, and he sometimes utters words that are exceedingly sweet.[153] Endued with appalling fiereeness, he sometimes laughs loudly, frightening all creatures with his eyes. He sometimes sleeps and sometimes remains awake and sometimes yawns as he pleases.[154] He sometimes recites sacred Mantras and sometimes becomes the deity of those Mantras which are recited. He sometimes performs penances and sometimes becomes the deity for whose adoration those penances are undergone. He sometimes makes gifts and sometimes receives those gifts; sometimes disposes himself in Yoga and sometimes becomes the object of the Yoga contemplation of others.[155] He may be seen on the sacrificial platform or in the sacrificial stake; in the midst of the cowpen or in the fire. He may not again be seen there. He may be seen as a boy or as an old man.[156] He sports with the daughters and the spouses of the Rishis. His hair is long and stands erect. He is perfectly naked, for he has the horizon for his garments. He is endued with terrible eyes.[157] He is fair, he is darkish, he is dark, he is pale, he is of the color of smoke, and he is red. He is possessed of eyes that are large and terrible. He has empty space for his covering and he it is that covers all things.[158] Who is there that can truly understand the limits of Mahādeva who is formless, who is made

---

* Every person belonging to the three superior orders bears the *Upavita* or sacred thread as his badge. The deities also, including Mahādeva, bear the Upavita. Mahādeva's Upavita is made of living snakes.—T.

up of illusion, who is of the form of all actions and operations in the universe, who assumes the form of Hiranyagarbha, and who is without beginning and without end, and who is without birth.*[159] He lives in the heart (of every creature). He is the life-breath, he is the mind, and he is the Jiva (that is invested in the material case). He is the soul of Yoga, and it is he that is called Yoga. He is the Yoga-contemplation into which Yogins enter. He is the Supreme Soul. Indeed, Maheçwara is capable of being comprehended not by the senses but through only the Soul seizing his existence.†[160] He plays on diverse musical instruments. He is a vocalist. He has a hundred thousand eyes. He has one mouth, he has two mouths, he has three mouths, and he has many mouths.[161] Devoting thyself to him, setting thy heart upon him, depending upon him, and accepting him as thy one refuge, do thou, O son, adore Mahādeva and then mayst thou obtain the fruition of all thy wishes![162]—Hearing those words of my mother, O slayer of foes, from that day my devotion was directed to Mahādeva, having nothing else for its object.[163] I then applied myself to the practice of the austerest penances for gratifying Cankara. For one thousand years I stood on my left toe.[164] After that I passed one thousand years, subsisting only upon fruits. The next one thousand years I passed, subsisting upon the fallen leaves of trees. The next thousand years I passed, subsisting upon water only.[165] After that I passed seven hundred years, subsisting on air alone. In this way I adored Mahādeva for a full thousand years of the celestials.[166] After this, the puissant Mahādeva, the Master of

---

* 'Arupa' is formless, or as the Commentator explains, 'nishkala,' *i. e.* without parts, being indivisible. 'Ādyarupa' is full of or made up of Māyā or illusion. 'Atirupa' is 'of the form of multifarious acts or operations or effects in the universe. 'Ādyarupa' is 'Hiranyagarbha.'—T.

† The Commentator explains that by saying that Maheçwara is in the heart, &c., what is stated is that he is the several cases of which Jiva is made up while in his unemancipate state, *viz.*, the Annamaya kosha, the Prānmaya kosha, the Manomaya kosha, and the Vijnānmaya kosha. What is meant by 'Yogātman' is that he is the Soul or essence of Yoga or the 'Chidachidgranthi,' *i. e.*, the Anandamaya kosha. By 'Yogasanjnita' is meant that he is Yoga or the 'Twam padārthah.'—T.

all the universe became gratified with me. Desirous of ascertaining whether I was solely devoted to him and him alone,[167] he appeared before me in the form of Cakra surrounded by all the deities. As the celebrated Cakra, he had a thousand eyes on his person and was armed with the thunder-bolt.[168] And he rode on an elephant whose complexion was of the purest white, with eyes red, ears folded, the temporal juice trickling down his cheeks, with trunk contracted, terrible to look at, and endued with four tusks. Indeed, riding on such an elephant, the illustrious chief of the deities seemed to blaze forth with his energy. With a beautiful crown on his head and adorned with garlands round his neck and bracelets round his arms, he approached the spot where I was.[169-170] A white umbrella was held over his head. And he was waited upon by many Apsaras, and many Gandharvas sang his praise.[171] Addressing me, he said,—O foremost of regenerate persons, I have been gratified with thee. Beg of me whatever boon thou desirest.[172]—Hearing these words of Cakra I did not become glad. Verily, O Krishna, I answered the chief of the celestials in these words;[173]—I do not desire any boon at thy hands, or from the hands of any other deity! O amiable deity, I tell thee truly, that it is Mahādeva only from whom I have boons to ask![174] True, true it is, O Cakra, true are these words that I say unto thee! No other words are at all agreeable to me save those which relate to Maheçwara.[175] At the command of that Lord of all creatures, I am ready to become a worm or a tree with many branches. If not obtained through the grace represented by Mahādeva's boons, the very sovereignty of the three worlds would not be acceptable to me.[176] Let me be born among the very Cwapākas but let me still be devoted to the feet of Hara! Without, again, being devoted to that Lord of all creatures, I would not like to have birth in the palace of Indra himself![177] If a person be wanting in devotion to that Lord of the universe,—that Master of the deities and the Asuras,—his misery will not end even if from want of food he has to subsist upon only air and water.*[178] There is no need of other discourses

* The meaning seems to be this: the man that is not devoted to Mahā-

that are even fraught with other kinds of morality and righteousness, unto those persons who do not like to live even a moment without thinking of feet of Mahādeva.[179] When the unrighteous or sinful Yuga comes, one should never pass a moment without devoting his heart upon Mahādeva. One that has drunk the Amrita constituted by the devotion to Hara, one becomes freed from the fear of the world.[180] One that has not obtained the grace of Mahādeva can never succeed to devote oneself to Mahādeva for a single day or for half a day or for a Muhurta or for a Kshana or for a Lava.[181] At the command of Mahādeva I shall cheerfully become a worm or an insect, but I have no relish for even the sovereignty of the three worlds if bestowed by thee, O Cakra![182] At the word of Hara I would become even a dog. In fact, that would accord with my highest wish. If not given by Maheçwara, I would not have the sovereignty of the very deities.[183] I do not wish to have this dominion of the heavens. I do not wish to have the sovereignty of the celestials. I do not wish to have the region of Brahman. Indeed, I do not wish to have that cessation of individual existence which is called Emancipation and which involves a complete identification with Brahma. But I want to become the slave of Hara.[184] As long as that Lord of all creatures, the illustrious Maheça with crown on his head and body possessed of the pure white complexion of the lunar disc, does not become gratified with me, so long shall I cheerfully bear all those afflictions, due to a hundred repetitions of decrepitude, death and birth, that befall to the lot of embodied beings.[185] What person in the universe can obtain tranquillity without gratifying Rudra that is freed from decrepitude and death, that is endued with the effulgence of the Sun, the Moon, or the fire, that is the root or original cause of everything real and unreal in the three worlds, and that exists as one and indivisible entity?[186] If in consequence of my faults, rebirths be mine, I shall, in those new births, devote myself solely to Bhava!—[187]

---

deva is sure to be subjected to misery. His distress will know no bounds. To think that such a man has reached the lowest depth of misery only when from want of food he has to live upon water or air, as to think what would not be correct.—T.

"'—Indra said,—What reasons canst thou assign for the existence of a Supreme Being or for His being the cause of all causes?—[188]

"'—Upamanyu said,—I solicit boons from Him whom utterers of Brahma has described as existent and non-existent, manifest and unmanifest, eternal or immutable, One and many.[189] I solicit boons from Him who is without beginning and middle and end, who is Knowledge and Puissance, who is inconceivable and who is the Supreme Soul.[190] I solicit boons from Him whence is all Puissance, who has not been produced by any one, who is immutable, and who, though himself unsprung from any seed, is the seed of all things in the universe.[191] I solicit boons from Him who is beyond the attribute of Darkness, who is blazing Effulgence, who is the essence of all penances, who transcends all faculties of which we are possessed and which we may devote for the purpose of comprehending him, and by knowing whom every one becomes freed from grief or sorrow.[192] I worship him, O Purandara, who is conversant with the creation of all elements and the thoughts of all living creatures, and who is the original cause of the existence or creation of all creatures, who is omnipresent, and who has the puissance to give everything.*[193] I solicit boons from Him who cannot be comprehended by argument, who represents the object of the Sānkhya and the Yoga systems of philosophy, and who transcends all things, and whom all persons conversant with the topics of enquiry worship and adore,†[194] I solicit boons from Him, O Maghavat, who is the soul of Maghavat himself, who is said to be the God of the gods, and who is the Master of all creatures.[195] I solicit boons from Him who it was that first created Brahman, that creator of all the worlds, having filled Space (with His energy) and evoked into existence the primeval

---

* 'Bhuta-bhāvana-bhāvajnam' is one acquainted with both the 'bhāvana' and the 'bhāva' of all 'bhutas', *i. e.*, all the living creatures.—T.

† Without the Crutis, He cannot be comprehended, for he is above all dialectics or arguments. The object which the Sānkhya system has in view, flows from Him, and the object also which the Yogins have in view has its origin in Him.—T.

egg.*[196] Who else than that Supreme Lord could be the creator of Fire, Water, Wind, Earth, Space, Mind, and that which is called Mahat ?[197] Tell me, O Cakra, who else than Civa could create Mind, Understanding, Consciousness or Ego, the Tanmātras, and the senses ? Who is there higher than Civa ?†[198] The wise say that the Grandsire Brahman is the creator of this universe. Brahman, however, acquired his high puissance and prosperity by adoring and gratifying Mahādeva, that God of gods.[199] That high puissance (consisting of all the three attributes of creation, protection, and destruction), which dwells in that illustrious Being who created Brahman, Vishnu, and Rudra, was derived from Mahādeva. Tell me who is there that is superior to the Supreme Lord ?‡[200] Who else than that God of gods is competent to unite the sons of Diti with lordship and puissance judging by the sovereignty and the power of oppressing conferred upon the foremost of the Daityas and the Dānavas ?§[201] The different points of the horizon, Time, the Sun, all fiery entities, planets, wind, water, and the stars and constellations,—these, know thou, are from Mahādeva. Tell us who is higher than the Supreme Lord ?[202] Who else is there, than Mahādeva, in the matter of the creation of Sacrifice and the destruction of Tripura ? Who else than Mahādeva has acted the part of the grinder of the foes, coming into contact with the Daityas and the Dānavas ?¶[203] What need, O Purandara, of many well-sounding statements fraught with specious sophisms,

---

* Mahādeva, here spoken of as Brahma, first filled Space with his energy, Space forming, as it were, the material with which everything else was created. Having filled Space as it were with creative energy, he created the primeval egg and placed Brahman or the Grandsire of the universe within it.—T.

† 'Tanmātras' are the subtile elements, those which we perceive being gross ones.—T.

‡ Here Mahādeva is represented as Supreme Brahma. Hence, the Being that created Brahman, Vishnu, and Rudra, derived his power to create from Mahādeva. Thus Mahādeva is Unmanifest Brahma.—T.

§ 'Sampādayitum' is 'aiçaryyena samyojayitum'. The difficulty lies in the first line. The ablative is to be taken as 'yabartha or lyablope'.—T.

¶ This is an instance of a crux ; 'ādhipatya' is a verb of incomplete predication, implying 'etya' or encountering.—T.

when I behold thee of a thousand eyes, O best of the deities,[204] —thee that art worshipped by Siddhas and Gandharvas and the deities and the Rishis? O best of the Kuçikas, all this is due to the grace of that God of gods, *viz.*, Mahādeva![205] Know, O Keçava, that this all, consisting of animate and inanimate existences with heaven and other unseen entities, which occurs in these worlds, and which has the all-pervading Lord for its soul, has flowed from Maheçwara and has been created (by him) for enjoyment by Jiva*[206] In the worlds that are known by the names of Bhu, Bhuva, Swah, and Maha, in the midst of the mountains of Lokāloka, in the islands, in the mountains of Meru, in all things that yield happiness, and in the hearts of all creatures, O illustrious Maghavat, resides Mahādeva as persons conversant with all the topics of enquiry say.[207] If, O Cakra, the deities and the Asuras could see any other puissant form than Bhava's, would not both of them, especially the former when opposed and afflicted by the latter, have sought the protection of that form?[208] In all hostile encounters of the deities, the Yakshas, the Uragas, and the Rākshasas, that terminate in mutual destruction, it is Bhava that gives unto those that meet with destruction puissance commensurate with their respective conditions as dependent upon their acts.[209] Tell me, who else than Maheçwara is there for bestowing boons upon, and once more snatching them away from, Andhaka and Cukra and Dundubhi and Mahisha and many foremost of Yakshas and Vala and Rākshasas and the Nivātakavachas?[210] Was not the vital seed of Mahādeva, that Master of both the deities and the Asuras, poured as a libation upon the fire? From that seed sprung a mountain of gold. Who else is there whose seed can be said to be possessed of

---

* Here the compassion of Mahādeva is shown. The Commentator explains that 'eshu' refers to 'these worlds'; 'chetanāchetanāni' would include all animate and inanimate existences. The word 'ādi' following implies 'heaven and all unseen entities'. 'Avyaktamuktākeça' is a periphrasis for 'jiva'; 'avyaktam aspashtam yathāsyāttathā muktah bhānti tirohitam nitya-muktatwamasya' is the explanation offered. This is, no doubt, correct. The sense then is that all this has flowed from Maheçwara and exists for being enjoyed by Jiva.—T.

such virtue.*[211] Who else in this world is sung as having the horizon only for his garments? Who else can be said to be a Brahmachārin with vital seed drawn up? Who else is there that has half his body occupied by his dear spouse? Who else is there that has been able to subjugate the god of desire?†[212] Tell me, O Indra, what other Being possesses that high region of supreme felicity that is applauded by all the deities? Who else has the crematorium as his sporting ground? Who else is there that is so praised for his dancing?[213] Whose worship and puissance remains immutable? Who else is there that sports with spirits and ghosts? Tell me, O deity, who else has associates that are possessed of strength like his own and that are, therefore, proud of that strength or puissance?‡[214] Who else is there whose place is applauded as unchangeable and worshipped with reverence by the three worlds? Who else is there that pours rain, gives heat, and blazes forth in Energy?[215] From whom else do we derive our wealth of herbs? Who else upholds all kinds of wealth? Who else sports as much as he pleases in the three worlds of mobile and immobile things?[216] O Indra, know Maheçwara to be the original Cause (of everything.) He is adored by Yogins, by Rishis, by the Gandharvas, and by the Siddhas, with the aid of knowledge, of (ascetic) success, and of the rites laid down in the scriptural ordinances.§[217] He is adored by both the deities and the Asuras

---

* The allusion is thus explained by the Commentator: once upon a time the seed of Mahādeva fell upon a blazing fire. The deity of fire removed it, unable to consume it. The seed, however, thus removed, became converted into a mountain of gold. 'Haimagiri' is not Himavat or the mountains of Himālayas as the Burdwan translator wrongly renders it.—T.

† 'Ardhe sthitā kāntā' refers to the transformation of Mahādeva into a form half of which was male and half female, the male half being the half of his own usual form, and the female half being half the form of his dear shouse Umā or Pārvati. This transformation is known by the name of 'Haragauri'.—T.

‡ The associates of Mahādeva are called 'Gana'. 'Deva' is in the vocative case. The Burdwan translator wrongly takes 'deva-ganāh' as a compound word and makes a mess of the meaning.—T.

§ The Bombay reading is 'Vihitam kāranam param'. The Commen-

with the aid of sacrifices by acts and the affliction of the ritual laid down in the scriptures. The fruits of action can never touch him for he transcends them all. Being such, I call him the original cause of everything.*[218] He is both gross and subtile. He is without compare. He cannot be seized by the senses. He is endued with attributes and he is divested by them. He is the lord of attributes, for they are under his control. Even such is the place that is Maheçwara's.[219] He is the cause of the continuance and the creation (of the universe). He is the cause of the universe and the cause also of its destruction. He is the Past, the Present, and the Future. He is the parent of all things. Verily, he is the cause of every thing.[220] He is that which is mutable, he is the unmanifest, he is Knowledge; he is Ignorance; he is every act; he is every omission; he is righteousness; and he is unrighteousness. Him, O Cakra, do I call the cause of everything.[221] Behold, O Indra, in the image of Mahādeva the indications of both the sexes. That god of gods, *viz.*, Rudra, that cause of both creation and destruction, displays in his form the indications of both the sexes as the one cause of the creation of the universe.[222] My mother formerly told me that he is the cause of the universe and the one cause of everything. There is no one that is higher than Iça, O Cakra! If it pleases thee, do thou throw thyself on his kindness and protection.[223] Thou hast visible evidence, O chief of the celestials, of the fact that the universe has sprung from the union of the sexes (as represented by Mahādeva). The universe, thou knowest, is the sum of what is vested with attributes and what else is divested of attributes and has for

---

tator adopts it, and explains it as 'vihitam, ajnātam sat jnāpitam, param kāranam avyaktasyapi kāranam'. The Bengal reading, however, is not faulty.—T.

* The Bengal reading 'karmayogya' is vicious. The Bombay text reads 'karmayajna' which, of course, is correct. By 'karmayajna' is meant that sacrifice which is performed with the aid of actual offerings of flowers and herbs and animals and libation of ghee and meat, &c., These are opposed to mental sacrifices or 'mānasa-yajna'. It is curious to see that the Burdwan translator adheres to the vicious reading and misunderstands the meaning. Mahādeva transcends the fruits of action, *i. e.*, He has no body unto which happiness and misery may attach.—T.

its immediate cause the seeds of Brahman and others. Brahman and Indra and Hutāça and Vishnu and all the other deities, along with the Daityas and the Asuras, crowned with the fruition of a thousand desires, always say that there is none that is higher than Mahādeva.*[221] Impelled by desire, I solicit, with restrained mind, that god known to all the mobile and immobile universe,—him, that is, who has been spoken of as the best and highest of all the gods, and who is auspiciousness itself, —for obtaining without delay that highest of all acquisitions, *viz.*, Emancipation.[225] What necessity is there of other reasons (for establishing what I believe)? The supreme Mahādeva is the cause of all causes. We have never heard that the deities have, at any time, adored the sign of any other god than Mahādeva.[226] If Maheçwara be not accepted, tell me, if thou hast ever heard of it, who else is there whose sign has been worshipped or is being worshipped by all the deities?[227] He whose sign is always worshipped by Brahman, by Vishnu, by thee, O Indra, with all the other deities, is verily the foremost of all adorable deities.[228] Brahman has for his sign the lotus. Vishnu has for his the discus. Indra has for his the thunder-bolt. But the creatures of the world do not bear any of the signs that distinguish these deities. On the other hand, all creatures bear the signs that mark Mahādeva and his spouse. Hence, all creatures must be regarded as belonging to Maheçwara.[229] All creatures of the feminine sex, have sprung from Umā's nature as their cause, and hence it is they bear the mark of femeninity that distinguishes Umā; while all creatures that are masculine, having sprung from Civa, bear the masculine mark that distinguishes Civa. That person who says that there is, in the three worlds with their mobile and immobile creatures, any other cause than the Supreme Lord, and that which is not marked with the mark of either Mahādeva or his spouse, should be regarded as very wretched and

---

* The Bombay reading 'savikāra-nirguna-ganam' is correct. The Bengal reading having 'gunam' (and not 'ganam') as the last word of this compound, is vicious. The Burdwan translator adheres to the vicious reading and wrongly renders the compound. K. P. Singha skips over it. Of course, 'ganam' means sum or total. 'Retodbhavam' is *ārsha* for 'Retasodbhavam'.—T.

should not be counted with the creatures of the universe.[230] Every being with the mark of the masculine sex should be known to be of Içāna, while every being with the mark of the feminine sex should be known to be of Umā. This universe of mobile and immobile creatures is pervaded by two kinds of forms (*viz.*, male and female).[231] It is from Mahādeva that I wish to obtain boons. Failing in this, O Kauçika, I would rather prefer dissolution itself. Go or remain, O Cakra, as thou, O slayer of Vala, desirest![232] I wish to have boons or curses from Mahādeva. No other deity shall I ever acknowledge. Nor would I have from any other deity the fruition of all my wishes![233]—Having said these words unto the chief of the celestials, I became overwhelmed with grief at the thought of Mahādeva not having been gratified with me notwithstanding my severe austerities.[234] Within the twinkling of an eye, however, I saw the celestial elephant I had beheld before me transformed into a bull as white as a swan, or the Jasminum pubescens, or a stalk of the lotus, or silver, or the ocean of milk. Of huge body, the hair of its tail was black and the hue of its eyes was tawny like that of honey.[235-36] Its horns were hard as adamant and had the color of gold. With their very sharp ends, whose hue was a mild red, the bull seemed to tear the Earth.[237] The animal was adorned all over with ornaments made of the purest gold. Its face and hoofs and nose and ears were exceedingly beautiful and its waist too exceedingly well-formed.[238] Its flanks were possessed of great beauty, and its neck was very thick. Its whole form was exceedingly agreeable and beautiful to look at. Its hump shone with great beauty and seemed to occupy the whole of its shoulder-joint.[239] And it looked like the summit of a mountain of snow or like a cliff of white clouds in the sky. Upon the back of that animal I beheld seated the illustrious Mahādeva with his spouse Umā.[240] Verily, Mahādeva shone like the lord of stars while he is at his full. The fire born of his energy resembled in effulgence the lightning that flashes amid clouds. Verily, it seemed as if a thousand suns rose there, filling every side with a dazzling splendour. That energy of the Supreme Lord looked like the Samvartaka fire which destroys all creatures at the end of

the Yuga.[241-42] Overspread with that energy, the horizon became such that I could see nothing on any side. Filled with anxiety I once more thought what it could mean.[243] That energy, however, did not pervade every side for any length of time, for soon, through the illusion of that god of gods, the horizon became clear.[244] I then beheld the illustrious Sthānu or Maheçwara, seated on the back of his bull, of blessed and agreeable appearance and looking like a smokeless fire.[245] And the great god was accompanied by Pārvati of faultless features. Indeed, I beheld the blue-throated and high-souled Sthānu, unattached to everything, that receptacle of all kinds of energy or force, endued with eight and ten arms, and adorned with all kinds of ornaments.[246] Clad in white vestments, he wore white garlands, and had white unguents smeared upon his limbs. The color of his banner, irresistible in the universe, was white. The thread round his person was also white.[247] He was surrounded with associates, all possessed with prowess equal to his own, who were singing or dancing or playing on diverse kinds of musical instruments.[248] A crescent moon, of pale hue, formed his crown, and placed on his forehead it looked like the moon that rises in the autumnal firmament. He seemed to dazzle with splendour in consequence of his three eyes that looked like three suns.[249] The garland, of the purest white, that was on his body, shone like a wreath of lotuses, of the purest white, adorned with jewels and gems.[250] I also beheld, O Govinda, the weapons, in their embodied forms and fraught with every kind of energy, that belong to Bhava of immeasurable prowess.[251] The high-souled deity held a bow whose hues resembled those of the rainbow. That bow is celebrated under the name of Pināka and is in reality a mighty snake.[252] Indeed, that snake of seven heads and vast body, of sharp fangs and virulent poison, of large neck and the masculine sex, was twined round with the cord that served as its bowstring.[253] And there was a shaft whose splendour looked like that of the sun or of the fire that appears at the end of the Yuga. Verily, that shaft was the excellent Pāçupata, that mighty and terrible weapon,[254] which is without a second, indescribable for its power, and capable of strik-

ing every creature with fear. Of vast proportions, it seemed to constantly vomit sparks of fire.[255] Possessed of one foot, of large teeth, and a thousand heads and thousand stomachs, it had a thousand arms, a thousand tongues, and a thousand eyes. Indeed, it seemed to continually vomit fire.[256] O thou of mighty arms, that weapon is superior to the Brāhma, the Nārāyana, the Aindra, the Āgneya, and the Vāruna weapons. Verily, it is capable of neutralising every other weapon in the universe.[257] It was with that weapon that the illustrious Mahādeva had, in days of yore, burnt and consumed in a moment the triple city of the Asuras. With the greates ease, O Govinda, Mahādeva, using that single arrow, achieved that feat.[258] That weapon, shot by Mahādeva's arms, can, without doubt, consume in half the time taken up by a twinkling of the eye the entire universe with all its mobile and immobile creatures.[259] In the universe there is no being, including even Brahman and Vishnu and the deities, that is incapable of being slain by that weapon. O sire, I saw that excellent, wonderful and incomparable weapon in the hand of Mahādeva.[260] There is another mysterious and very powerful weapon which is equal or, perhaps, superior to the Pāçupata. I beheld that also. It is celebrated in all the worlds as the Cula of the Cula-armed Mahādeva.[261] Hurled by the illustrious deity, that weapon is competent to rive the entire Earth or dry up the waters of the ocean or annihilate the entire universe.[262] In days of yore, Yuvanāçwa's son, king Māndhātri, that conqueror of the three worlds, possessed of imperial sway and endued with abundant energy, was, with all his troops, destroyed by means of that weapon.[263] Endued with great might and great energy and resembling Cakra himself in prowess, that king, O Govinda, was slain by the Rākshasa Lavana with the aid of this Cula which he had got from Civa.[264] That Cula has a very keen point. Exceedingly terrible, it is capable of causing everybody's hair stand on its end. I saw it in the hand of Mahādeva, as if roaring with rage, having contracted its forehead into three wrinkles.[265] It resembled, O Krishna, a smokeless fire or the sun that rises at the end of the Yuga. The handle of that Cula was made of a mighty snake. It is really indescribable.

It looked like the universal Destroyer himself armed with his noose.[266] I saw this weapon, O Govinda, in the hand of Mahādeva. I beheld also another weapon, *viz.*, that sharp-edged battle-axe which, in days of yore, was given unto Rāma[267] by the gratified Mahādeva for enabling him to exterminate the Kshatriyas. It was with this weapon that Rāma (of Bhrigu's race) slew in dreadful battle the great Kārttaviryya who was the ruler of all the world.[268] It was with that weapon that Jamadagni's son, O Govinda, was able to exterminate the Kshatriyas for one and twenty times.[269] Of blazing edge and exceedingly terrible, that axe was hanging on the shoulder, adorned with a snake, of Mahādeva. Indeed, it shone on Mahādeva's person like the flame of a blazing fire.[270] I beheld with Mahādeva of great intelligence innumerable other celestial weapons. I have, however, named only a few, O sinless one, in consequence of their principal character.[271] On the left side of the great god stood the Grandsire Brahman seated on an excellent car unto which were attached swans endued with the speed of the mind.[272] On the same side could be seen Nārāyana also, seated on the son of Vinatā, and bearing the conch, the discus, and the mace.[273] Close to the goddess Umā was Skanda seated on his peacock, bearing his fatal dart and bells, and looking like another Agni.[274] In the front of Mahādeva I beheld Nandi standing armed with his Cula and looking like a second Cankara (for prowess and energy).[275] The Munis headed by the Self-born Manu, and the Rishis having Bhrigu for their first, and the deities with Cakra at their head, all came there.[276] All the tribes of spirits and ghosts, and the celestial Mothers, stood surrounding Mahādeva and saluting him with reverence.[277] The deities were engaged in singing the praises of Mahādeva by uttering diverse hymns. The Grandsire Brahman, uttering a Rathantara, praised Mahādeva.[278] Nārāyana also, uttering the Jyeshtha Sāman, sang the praises of Bhava. Cakra also did the same with the aid of those foremost of Vedic Mantras, *viz.*, the Cata-Rudriyam.[279] Verily, Brahman and Nārāyana and Cakra,—those three high-souled deities,—shone there like three sacrificial fires.[280] In their midst shone the illustrious god like the sun in the midst of his corona, emerged

from autumnal clouds.[281] I beheld myriads upon myriads of suns and moons also in the sky, O Keçava. I then praised the illustrious Lord of everything, the supreme Master of the universe.[282]

" 'Upamanyu continued,—I said,—Salutations to thee, O illustrious one, O thou that constitutest the refuge of all things, O thou that art called Mahādeva! Salutations to thee that assumest the form of Cakra, that art Cakra, and that disguisest thyself in the form and vestments of Cakra.[283] Salutations to thee that art armed with the thunder, to thee that art tawny, and thee that art red. Salutations to thee that art always armed with the Pināka, to thee that always bearest the conch and the Cula.[284] Salutations to thee that art clad in black, to thee that art of dark and curly hair, to thee that hast a dark deer-skin for thy upper garment, to thee that presidest over the eighth lunation of the dark fortnight.[285] Salutations to thee that art of white complexion, to thee that art called white, to thee that art clad in white robes, to thee that hast limbs smeared with white ashes, to thee that art ever engaged in white deeds.[286] Salutations to thee that art red of color, to thee that art clad in red vestments, to thee that ownest a red banner with red flags, to thee that wearest red garlands and usest red unguents.[287] Salutations to thee that art brown in complexion, to thee that art clad in brown vestments, to thee that hast a brown banner with brown flags, to thee that wearest brown garlands and usest brown unguents. Salutations to thee that hast the umbrella of royalty held over thy head, to thee that wearest the foremost of crowns.[288] Salutations unto thee that art adorned with half a garland and half an armlet, to thee that art decked with one ring for one ear, to thee that art endued with the speed of the mind, to thee that art endued with great effulgence.[289] Salutations to thee that art the foremost of deities, to thee that art the foremost of Munis, to thee that art the foremost of celestials! Salutations to thee that wearest half a wreath of lotuses, to thee that hast many lotuses on thy body.[290] Salutations to thee that hast half thy body smeared with sandal paste, to thee that hast half thy body decked with garlands of flowers and smeared with fragrant

unguents.*[291] Salutations to thee that art of the complexion of the Sun, to thee that art like the Sun, to thee whose face is like the Sun, to thee that hast eyes each of which is like the Sun.[292] Salutations to thee that art Soma, to thee that art as mild as Soma, to thee that bearest the lunar disc, to thee that art of lunar aspect, to thee that art the foremost of all creatures, to thee that art adorned with a set of the most beautiful teeth.[293] Salutations to thee that art of a dark complexion, to thee that art of a fair complexion, to thee that hast a form half of which is yellow and half white, to thee that hast a body half of which is male and half female, to thee that art both male and female.[294] Salutations to thee that ownest a bull for thy vehicle, to thee that proceedest riding on the foremost of elephants, to thee that art obtained with difficulty, to thee that art capable of going to places unapproachable by others. Salutations to thee whose praises are sung by the Ganas, to thee that art devoted to the diverse Ganas, to thee that followest the track that is trod by the Ganas, to thee that art always devoted to the Ganas as to a vow.[295-96] Salutations to thee that art of the complexion of white clouds, to thee that hast the splendour of the evening clouds, to thee that art incapable of being described by names, to thee that art of thy own form (having nothing else in the universe with which it can be compared).[297] Salutations to thee that wearest a beautiful garland of red color, to thee that art clad in robes of red.[298] Salutations to thee that hast the crown of thy head decked with gems, to thee that art adorned with a half-moon, to thee that wearest many beautiful gems in thy diadem, to thee that hast eight flowers on thy head.[299] Salutations to thee that hast a fiery mouth and fiery eyes, to thee that hast eyes possessing the effulgence of a thousand moons, to thee that art of the form of fire, to thee that art beautiful and agreeable, to thee

---

* Mahādeva's body is half male and half female. The male half has garlands of bones, the female half garlands of flowers. The male half has everything that is rejected by others; the female half has all things that are coveted by others. This particular form of Mahādeva is called "Hara-Gauri."—T.

that art inconceivable and mysterious.[300] Salutations to thee that rangest through the firmament, to thee that lovest and residest in lands affording pasture to kine, to thee that walkest on the Earth, to thee that art the Earth, to thee that art infinite, to thee that art exceedingly auspicious.[301] Salutations to thee that art unclad (or hast the horizon alone for thy vestments), to thee that makest a happy home of every place where thou mayst happen to be for the moment. Salutations to thee that hast the universe for thy home, to thee that hast both Knowledge and Felicity for thy Soul.[302] Salutations to thee that always wearest a diadem, to thee that wearest a large armlet, to thee that hast a snake for the garland round thy neck, to thee that wearest many beautiful ornaments on thy person.[303] Salutations to thee that hast the Sun, the Moon, and Agni for thy three eyes, to thee that art possessed of a thousand eyes, to thee that art both male and female, to thee that art divested of sex, to thee that art a Sānkhya, to thee that art a Yogin.[304] Salutations to thee that art the grace of those deities who are worshipped in sacrifices, to thee that art the Atharvans, to thee that art the alleviater of all kinds of disease and pain, to thee that art the dispeller of every sorrow.[305] Salutations to thee that roarest as deep as the clouds, to thee that puttest forth diverse kinds of illusions, to thee that presidest over the soil and over the seed that is sown in it, to thee that art the Creator of everything.[306] Salutations to thee that art the Lord of all the celestials, to thee that art the Master of the universe, to thee that art endued with the speed of the wind, to thee that art of the form of the wind.[307] Salutations to thee that wearest a garland of gold, to thee that sportest on hills and mountains,* to thee that art adored by all who are enemies of the gods, to thee that art possessed of fierce speed and energy.[308] Salutations to thee that torest away one of the heads of the Grandsire Brahman, to thee that hast slain the Asura named Mahisha, to thee that assumest three forms, to thee that bearest every form.[309] Salutations to thee that art the destroyer of the triple city of the Asuras, to thee that art

* 'Girimālā' is explained by the Commentator as one that sports on hills and mountains.—T.

the destroyer of (Daksha's) sacrifice, to thee that art the destroyer of the body of the deity of Desire, to thee that wieldest the rod of destruction.[310] Salutations to thee that art Skanda, to thee that art Visākha, to thee that art the rod of the Brāhmana, to thee that art Bhava, to thee that art Sarva, to thee that art of universal form.[311] Salutations to thee that art Içāna, to thee that art the destroyer of Bhaga, to thee that art the slayer of Andhaka, to thee that art the universe, to thee that art possessed of illusion, to thee that art both conceivable and inconceivable.*[312] Thou art the one end of all creatures, thou art the foremost, thou art the heart of everything. Thou art the Brahman of all the deities, thou art the Red and Blue of the Rudras.[313] Thou art the Soul of all creatures, thou art He called Purusha in the Sānkhya philosophy, thou art the Rishabha among all things sacred, thou art that which is called auspicious by Yogins and which, according to them, is without parts (being indivisible).[314] Amongst those that are observant of the different modes of life, thou art the House-holder, thou art the great Lord amongst the lords of the universe. Thou art Kuvera among all the Yakshas, and thou art Vishnu amongst all the sacrifices.†[315] Thou art Meru amongst mountains, thou art the Moon among all luminaries of the firmament, thou art Vaçishtha amongst Rishis, thou art Surya among the planets.[316] Thou art the lion among all wild animals, and among all domestic animals thou art the bull that is worshipped by all people.[317] Among the Ādityas, thou art Vishnu (Upendra), among the Vasus, thou art Pāvaka, among birds thou art the son of Vinatā (Garuda), and among snakes thou art Ananta (Cesha).[318] Among the Vedas thou art the Sāmans, among the Yajushes thou art the Cata-Rudriyam, among Yogins thou art Sanatkumāra, and among Sānkhyas thou art Kapila.[319] Among the Maruts thou art Cakra, among the Pitris thou art Devarāt, among all the regions (for the residence of created beings) thou art the region of Brahman,

* All the texts have 'Bhavaghnāya'. The correct reading, however, seems to be 'Bhagaghnāya', especially as the reference to Andhaka occurs immediately after.—T.

† 'Vishnu' means here the foremost of sacrifices.—T.

and amongst all the ends that creatures attain to, thou art Moksha or Emancipation.[320] Thou art the Ocean of milk among all oceans, among all rocky eminences thou art Himavat, among all the orders thou art the Brāhmana, and among all learned Brāhmanas thou art he that has undergone and is observant of the Dikshā.[321] Thou art the Sun among all things in the world, thou art the destroyer called Kāla. Thou art whatever else possessed of superior energy or eminence exists in the universe.[322] Thou art possessed of supreme puissance. Even this is what represents my certain conclusion. Salutations to thee, O puissant and illustrious one, O thou that art kind to all thy worshippers.[323] Salutations to thee, O lord of Yogins. I bow to thee, O original Cause of the universe. Be thou gratified with me that am thy worshipper, that am very miserable and helpless.[324] O Eternal Lord, do thou become the refuge of this adorer of thine that is very weak and miserable! O Supreme Lord, it behooveth thee to pardon all those trangressions of which I have been guilty, taking compassion upon me on the ground of my being thy devoted worshipper![325] I was stupified by thee, O Lord of all the deities, in consequence of the disguise in which thou showedst thyself to me. O Maheçwara, I did not give thee the Arghya or water to wash thy feet![*326]—Having hymned the praises of Içāna in this way, I offered him, with great devotion, water to wash his feet and the ingredients of the Arghya, and then, with joined hands, I resigned myself to him, prepared to do whatever he would bid.[327] Then, O sire, an auspicious shower of flowers fell upon my head, possessed of celestial fragrance and bedewed with cold water.[328] The celestial musicians began to play on their kettle-drums. A delicious breeze, fragrant and agreeable, began to blow and fill me with pleasure.[329] Then Mahādeva, accompanied by his spouse, and having the bull for his sign, having been gratified with me, addressed the celestials assembled there in these words, filling me with great joy,[330]—Behold, ye deities, the devotion of the high-souled Upamanyu! Verily,

* These articles must be offered to a visitor whether he stands in need of them or not.—T.

steady and great is that devotion, and entirely immutable, for it exists unalterably.[331]—Thus adressed by the great God armed with the Cula, the deities, O Krishna, having bowed down unto him and joined their hands in reverence, said these words,[332]—O illustrious one, O God of the gods, O Master of the universe, O Lord of all, let this best of regenerate persons obtain from thee the fruition of all his desires![333]—Thus addressed by all the deities with the Grandsire Brahman among them, Carva, otherwise called Iça and Cankara, said these words, as if smiling, unto me.[334]

" 'The illustrious Cankara said,—O dear Upamanyu, I am gratified with thee! Behold me, O foremost of Munis! O learned Rishi, thou art firmly devoted to me and well hast thou been tested by me.[335] I have been very highly pleased with thee in consequence of this thy devotion to Civa. I shall, therefore, give thee today the fruition of whatever desires thou mayst have in thy heart![336]—Thus addressed by Mahādeva of great wisdom, tears of joy came into my eyes and my hair stood on its end (through the same emotion).[337] Kneeling down unto him and bowing unto him repeatedly, I then, with a voice that was choked with delight, said unto him,[338]—O illustrious god, it seems to me that I was hitherto dead and that it is only today that I have taken my birth, and that my birth hath today borne fruit, since I am staying now in the presence of Him who is the Master of both the deities and the Asuras![339] Who else is more praiseworthy than I, since I am beholding with these eyes of mine Him of immeasurable prowess whom the very deities are unable to behold without first paying hearty worship?[340] That which they that are possessed of learning and wisdom say is the highest of all topics, which is Eternal, which is distinguished from all else, which is unborn, which is Knowledge, which is indestructible,[341] is identical with thee, O puissant and illustrious one, thee that art the beginning of all the topics, thee that art indestructible and changeless, thee that art conversant with the ordinances which govern all the topics, thee that art the foremost of Purushas, thee that art the highest of the high.[342] Thou art he that hadst created from thy right side the Grandsire Brahman, the Creator of all things;

Thou art he that hadst created from thy left side Vishnu for protecting the Creation.[343] Thou art that puissant Lord who didst create Rudra when the end of the Yuga came and when the Creation was once more to be dissolved away! That Rudra who sprang from thee destroyed the Creation with all its mobile and immobile beings,[344] assuming the form of Kāla of great energy, of the cloud Samvartaka (charged with water which myriads of oceans are not capacious enough to bear), and of the all-consuming fire. Verily, when the period comes for the dissolution of the universe, that Rudra stands, ready to swallow up the universe.[345] Thou art that Mahādeva who is the original Creator of the universe with all its mobile and immobile entities. Thou art he who, at the end of the Kalpa, stands, withdrawing all things into thyself![346] Thou art he that pervadest all things, that art the Soul of all things, thou art the Creator of the Creator of all entities. Incapable of being seen by even any of the deities, thou art he that exists, pervading all entities.[347] If, O lord, thou hast been gratified with me and if thou wouldst grant me boons, let this be the boon, O Lord of all the deities, that my devotion to thee may remain unchanged.[348] O best of the deities, let me, through thy grace, have knowledge of the Present, the Past, and the Future.[349] I shall also, with all my kinsmen and friends, always eat food mixed with milk. And let thy illustrious self be for ever present at our retreat![350] —Thus addressed by me, the illustrious Maheçwara, endued with supreme energy, that Master of all mobile and immobile entities, *viz.*, Civa, worshipped of all the universe, then said unto me these words:—[351]

"'—The illustrious Deity said,—Be thou free from every misery and pain, and be thou above decrepitude and death. Be thou possessed of fame, be thou endued with great energy, and be spiritual knowledge thine![352] Thou shalt, through my grace, be always sought by the Rishis. Be thy behaviour good and righteous, be every desirable attribute thine, be thou possessed of universal knowledge, and be thou of agreeable appearance![353] Let undecaying youth be thine, and let thy energy be like that of fire. Wherever, again, thou mayst desire the presence, that is so agreeable to thee, of the ocean of milk, there shall that

ocean appear before thee, (ready for being utilised by thee and thy friends for purposes of thy food)! Do thou, with thy friends, always obtain food prepared with milk, with the celestial nectar besides being mixed with it![*354-355] After the expiration of a Kalpa thou shalt then obtain my companionship. Thy family and race and kinsmen shall be exhaustless.[356] O foremost of regenerate ones, thy devotion to me shall be eternal. And, O best of Brāhmanas, I shall always accord my presence to thy asylum.[357] Live, O son, whithersoever thou likest, and let no anxiety be thine. Thought of by thee, I shall, O learned Brāhmana, grant thee a sight of myself again![358]—Having said these words, and granted me these boons, the illustrious Içāna, endued with the effulgence of millions of Suns, disappeared there and then.[359] It was even thus, O Krishna, that I beheld, with the aid of austere penances, that God of gods. I also obtained all that was said by the great Deity endued with supreme intelligence.[360] Behold, O Krishna, before thy eyes, these Siddhas residing here and these Rishis and Vidyādharas and Yakshas and Gandharvas and Apsaras.[361] Behold these trees and creepers and plants yielding all sorts of flowers and fruits. Behold them bearing the flowers of every season, with beautiful leaves, and shedding a sweet fragrance all around.[362] O thou of mighty arms, all these are endued with a celestial nature through the grace of that god of gods, that supreme Lord, that high-souled Deity!—'[363]

"Vāsudeva continued,—'Hearing these words of his and beholding, as it were, with my own eyes all that he had related to me, I became filled with wonder. I then addressed the great ascetic Upamanyu and said unto him,[364]—Deserving of great praise art thou, O foremost of learned Brāhmanas, for what righteous man is there other than thou whose retreat enjoys the distinction of being honored with the presence of that God of gods?[365] Will the puissant Civa, will the great Cankara, O chief of ascetics, grant me also a sight of his person and show me favour?—[366]

---

* All the texts read 'Kshirodasāgaraschaiva.' The correct reading is 'Kshirodasāgarasyaiva.' The nominative may be construed with the previous line, but the genetive would be better.—T.

" '—Upamanyū said,—Without doubt, O thou of eyes like lotus petals, thou wilt obtain a sight of Mahādeva very soon, even as, O sinless one, I succeeded in obtaining a sight of him.[367] O thou of immeasurable prowess, I see with my spiritual eyes that thou wilt, in the sixth month from this, succeed in obtaining a sight of Mahādeva, O best of all persons![368] Thou, O foremost of the Yadus, wilt obtain from Maheçwara and his spouse, four and twenty boons. I tell thee what is true.[369] Through the grace of that Deity endued with supreme wisdom, the Past, the Future, and the Present are known to me.[370] The great Hara has favoured these Rishis numbering by thousands and others as numerous. Why will not the puissant Deity show favoure to thee, O Mādhava! The meeting of the gods is always commendable with one like thee,[371] with one that is devoted to the Brāhmanas, with one that is full of compassion and that is full of faith. I shall give thee certain Mantras. Recite them continuously. By this thou art certain to behold Cankara!—[372]

"The blessed Vishnu continued,—'I then said unto him,—O regenerate one, through thy grace, O great ascetic, I shall behold the lord of the deities, that grinder of multitudes of Diti's sons.[373] Eight days, O Bhārata, passed there like an hour, all of us being thus occupied with talk on Mahādeva.[374] On the eighth day, I underwent the Dikshā, according to due rites, at the hands of that Brāhmana. I received the staff from his hands. I underwent the prescribed shave. I took up a quantity of Kuça blades in my hand. I wore rags for my vestments. I rubbed my person with ghee. I encircled a cord of Munja grass round my loins.[375] For one month I lived on fruits. The second month I subsisted upon water. The third, the fourth, and the fifth months I passed, living upon air alone.[376] I stood all the while, supporting myself upon one foot, and with my arms also raised upwards, and foregoing sleep the while. I then beheld, O Bhārata, in the firmament an effulgence that seemed to be as dazzling as that of a thousand Suns combined together.[377] Towards the centre of that effulgence, O son of Pāndu, I saw a cloud looking like a mass of blue hills, adorned with rows of cranes, embellished

with many a grand rainbow, with flashes of lightning and the thunder-fire looking like eyes set on it.*[378] Within that cloud was the puissant Mahādeva, himself of dazzling splendour, accompanied by his spouse Umā. Verily, the great Deity seemed to shine with his penances, energy, beauty, effulgence, and his dear spouse by his side.[379] The puissant Maheçwara, with his spouse by his side, shone in the midst of that cloud. The appearance seemed to be like that of the Sun in the midst of racking clouds with the Moon by his side.[380] The hair on my body, O son of Kunti, stood on its end, and my eyes expanded with wonder upon beholding Hara, the refuge of all the deities and the dispeller of all their griefs.[381] Mahādeva was adorned with a diadem on his head. He was armed with his Cula. He was clad in a tiger-skin, had matted locks on his head, and bore the staff (of the Sanyāsin) in one of his hands. He was armed, besides, with his Pināka and the thunder-bolt. His teeth were sharp-pointed. He was decked with an excellent bracelet for the upper arm. His sacred thread was constituted by a snake.[382] He wore an excellent garland of diversified colors on his bosom, that hung down to his toes. Verily, I beheld him like the exceedingly bright moon of an autumnal evening.[383] Surrounded by diverse clans of spirits and ghosts, he looked like the autumnal Sun difficult of being gazed it for its dazzling brightness.[384] Eleven hundred Rudras stood around that Deity of restrained soul and white deeds, then seated upon his bull. All of them were employed in hymning his praises.[385] The Ādityas, the Vasus, the Sādhyas, the Viçwedevas, and the twin Açwins praised that Lord of the universe by uttering the hymns occurring in the scriptures.[386] The puissant Indra and his brother Upendra, the two sons of Aditi, and the Grandsire Brahman, all uttered in the presence of Bhava the Rathantara Sāman.[387] Innumerable masters of Yoga, all the regenerate

* The Commentator does not explain what is meant by 'Vidyunmālagavākshakam.' The word 'go' means the Thunder-fire. Very probably, what is implied is that flashes of lightning and the Thunder-fire looked like eyes set upon that cloud. 'Go' may also mean 'Jyoti' or effulgence.—T.

Rishis with their children, all the celestial Rishis, the goddess Earth, the Sky (between Earth and Heaven), the Constellations, the Planets, the Months, the Fortnights, the Seasons, Night, the Years, the Kshanas, the Muhurtas, the Nimeshas, the Yugas one after another, all the celestial Sciences and branches of knowledge, and all beings conversant with Truth, were seen bowing down unto that Supreme Preceptor, that great Father, that giver (or origin) of Yoga.[388-90] Sanatkumāra, the Vedas, the Histories, Marichi, Angiras, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu,[391] the seven Manus, Soma, the Atharvans, and Vrihaspati, Bhrigu, Daksha, Kāçyapa, Vaçishtha, Kāçya,[392] the Cchchandas, Dikshā, the Sacrifices, Dakshinā, the Sacrificial Fires, the Havis (clarified butter) poured in sacrifices, and all the requisites of the sacrifices, were beheld by me, O Yudhishthira, standing there in their embodied forms.[393] All the guardians of the worlds, all the Rivers, all the snakes, the mountains, the celestial Mothers, all the spouses and daughters of the celestials,[394] thousands upon thousands and millions of ascetics, were seen to bow down to that puissant Lord who is the soul of tranquillity. The Mountains, the Oceans, and the Points of the compass also did the same, the Gandharvas and the Apsaras highly skilled in music,[395] in celestial strains, sang and hymned the praises of Bhava who is full of wonder. The Vidyādharas, the Dānavas, the Guhyakas, the Rākshasas,[396] and all created beings mobile and immobile, were adoring, in thought, word, and deed, that puissant Lord. Before me, that Lord of all the gods, *viz.*, Sarva, appeared, seated in all his glory.[397] Seeing that Içāna had showed himself to me by being seated in glory before my eyes, the whole universe, with the Grandsire and Cakra, looked at me.[398] I, however, had not the power to look at Mahādeva. The great Deity then addressed me, saying,—Behold, O Krishna, and speak to me![399] Thou hast adored me hundreds and thousands of times. There is no one in the three worlds that is dearer to me than thou![400]—After I had bowed unto him, his spouse, *viz.*, the goddess Umā, became gratified with me. I then addressed in these words the great God whose praises are hymned by all the deities with the Grandsire Brahman at their head.'[401]

'The blessed Vishnu said,—'I saluted Mahādeva, saying,—Salutations to thee, O thou that art the eternal origin of all things. The Rishis say that thou art the Lord of the Vedas. The righteous say that thou art Penance, thou art Sattwa, thou art Rajas, thou art Tamas, and thou art Truth.[402] Thou art Brahman, thou art Rudra, thou art Varuna, thou art Agni, thou art Manu, thou art Bhava, thou art Dhātri, thou art Tashtri, thou art Vidhātri, thou art the puissant Master of all things, and thou art everywhere.[403] All beings, mobile and immobile, have sprung from thee. This triple world with all its mobile and immobile entities, has been created by thee.[404] The Rishis say that thou art superior to the senses, the mind, the vital breaths, the seven sacrificial fires, all others that have their refuge in the all pervading Soul, and all the deities that are adored and worthy of adoration.[405] Thou, O illustrious one, art the Vedas, the Sacrifices, Soma, Dakshinā, Pāvaka, Havi, and all other requisites of sacrifice.[406] The merit obtained by sacrifices, gifts made to others, the study of the Vedas, vows, regulations in respect of restraint, Modesty, Fame, Prosperity, Splendour, Contentment, and Success, all exist for leading to thee.*[407] Desire, Wrath, Fear, Cupidity, Pride, Stupefaction, and Malice, Pains and Diseases, are, O illustrious one, thy children.[408] Thou art all acts that creatures do, thou art the joy and sorrow that flow from those acts, thou art the absence of joy and sorrow, thou art that Ignorance which is the indestructible seed of Desire, thou art the high origin of Mind, thou art Puissance, and thou art Eternity.†[409] Thou art the Unmanifest, thou art Pavana, thou art inconceivable, thou art the

---

* 'Tadarpani' is explained by the Commentator as 'Twatsarupasyaprāpikā.'—T.

† 'Kriti' is 'Kriyā,' *i. e.*, all acts that creatures do. 'Vikāra' is the fruits of 'kriyā,' *i. e.*, joy or sorrow that creatures enjoy or endure. The Bengal texts read 'pralaya.' The Bombay reading is 'pranaya.' The latter is also the reading that the Commentator notices, but when he explains it to mean 'tadabhāvah,' *i. e.*, the absence of joy and sorrow, I think, through the scribe's mistake, the 'l' has been changed into the palatal 'n.' 'Prabhāvah' is explained as 'aiçwaryya.' 'Cāçwata' is eternal *i. e.*, transcending the influence of acts.—T.

thousand-rayed Sun, thou art the effulgent Chit, thou art the first of all the topics, and thou art the refuge of life.*[410] By the words Mahat, Soul, Understanding, Brahman, Universe, Cambhu, and Self-born, by these and other words occurring in succession (in the Vedas), is thy nature judged of (by persons conversant with the Vedas) as identical with Mahat and Soul. Verily, regarding thee as all this, the learned Brāhmana subjugates that Ignorance which lies at the root of the world.[411-12] Thou art the heart of all creatures, and thou art adored by the Rishis as Kshetrajna. Thy arms and feet extend to every place, and thy eyes, head, and face are everywhere. Thou hearest everywhere in the universe, and thou stayest, pervading all things.[413] Of all acts that are performed in the Nimeshas and other divisions of time that spring in consequence of the Sun, thou art the fruit.†[414] Thou art the original effulgence (of the supreme Chit). Thou art Purusha, and thou residest in the hearts of all things. Thou art the Yoga attributes of success, *viz.*, Subtility and Grossness and Fruition and Supremacy and Effulgence and Immutability.‡[415] Understanding and Intelligence and all the worlds rest upon thee. They that are devoted to meditation, that are always occupied with Yoga, that are devoted to or firm in Truth, and that have subjugated their passions, seek thee and rest on thee.$[416] They that know thee for one that is Immutable, or one that resides in all hearts, or one that is endued with supreme puissance, or one that is the

---

* Thou art the 'ādi' of the 'ganas.' By 'ganas' is meant 'ganayante sankhyāyante iti ganāh, *i. e.*, tattwāh.'—T.

† The Commentator explains this by saying that thou art the heavenly felicity which creatures earn by means of their righteous acts. Acts, again, are performed in course of Time whose divisions are caused by the Sun.—T.

‡ It has been explained in previous Sections that by success in Yoga one may make oneself as subtile as possible or as gross as possible. One may also attain to the fruition of all desires, extending to the very creation of worlds upon worlds peopled with all kinds of creatures. That Yogins do not create is due to their respect for the Grandsire and their wish not to disturb the ordinary course of things.—T.

$ 'Satyasandhāh' is the Bengal reading. The Bombay reading is 'satyasatwāh,' meaning, as the Commentator explains, 'satya-sankalpāh.—T.

ancient Purusha, or one that is pure Knowledge, or one that is the effulgent Chit, or one that is the highest refuge of all persons endued with intelligence, are certainly persons of great intelligence. Verily, such persons stay, transcending intelligence.*[417] By understanding the seven subtile entities (*viz.*, Mahat, Ego, and the five subtile primal elements called Tanmātras), by comprehending thy six attributes (of Omniscience, Contentment or Fulness, Knowledge without beginning, Independence, Puissance that is not at fault at any time and that is infinite), and by conversance with Yoga that is freed from every false notion, the man of knowledge succeeds in entering into thy great self![418]—After I had said these words, O Pārtha, unto Bhava, that dispeller of grief and pain, the universe, both mobile and immobile, sent up a leonine shout (expressive of their approval of the correctness of my words).[419] The innumerable Brāhmanas there present, the deities and the Asuras, the Nāgas, the Piçāchas, the Pitris, the birds, diverse Rākshasas, diverse classes of ghosts and spirits, and all the great Rishis, then bowed down into that great Deity.[420] There then fell upon my head showers of celestial flowers possessed of great fragrance, and delicious winds blew on the spot.[421] The puissant Cankara then, devoted to the good of the universe, looked at the goddess Umā and the lord of the celestials and myself also, and thus spoke unto me :[422]—We know, O Krishna, that thou, O slayer of foes, art filled with the greatest devotion towards us! Do what is for thy good. My love and affection for thee is very great![423] Do thou ask for eight boons. I shall verily give them unto thee, O Krishna, O best of all persons! Tell me what they are, O chief of the Yādavas. Name what thou wishest! However difficult of attainment they be, thou shalt have them still!—' "†[424]

---

* 'Vigraham' is explained by the Commentator as 'viçishthānubhavarupam' or 'nishkalam jnaptimātram.'—T.

† In Verse 369 *ante*, Upamanyu says that Krishna is to receive from Mahādeva sixteen and eight boons. The Commentator, stretching the words has tried to explain them as signifying a total of eight and eight, *i. e.*, eight are to be obtained from Mahādeva, and eight from his divine

Section XV.

"The blessed Krishna said,—'Bowing my head with a restrained soul unto that mass of energy and effulgence, I said unto the great Deity, with a heart filled with gladness, these words,[1]—Firmness in virtue, the slaughter of foes in battle, the highest fame, the greatest might, devotion to Yoga, thy adjacence, and hundreds upon hundreds of children,—these are the boons I solicit of thee![2]—So be it—said Cankara, repeating the words I had uttered. After this, the mother of the universe, the upholdress of all things, she who cleanses all things,[3] *viz.*, the spouse of Sarva, that vast receptacle of penances, said with a restrained soul these words unto me:—The puissant Mahādeva has granted thee, O sinless one, a son who shall be named Cāmva![4] Do thou take from me also eight boons which thou choosest. I shall certainly grant them to thee!—Bowing unto her with a bend of my head, I said unto her, O son of Pāndu,[5]—I solicit from thee invariable affection for the Brāhmanas, the grace of my father, a hundred sons, the highest enjoyments, love for my family, the grace of my mother, the attainment of tranquillity and peace, and cleverness in every act!—[6]

"'Umā said,—It shall be even so, O thou that art possessed of prowess and puissance equal to that of a celestial! I never say what is untrue! Thou shalt have sixteen thousand wives. Thy love for them and theirs also for thee shall be unlimited![7] From all thy kinsmen also, thou shalt receive the highest affection. Thy body too shall be most beautiful. Seven thousand guests will daily feed at thy palace!—'[8]

"Vāsudeva continued,—'Having thus granted me boons, both the god and the goddess, O Bhārata, disappeared there and then with their Ganas, O elder brother of Bhima![9] All those wonderful facts I related fully, O best of kings, to that Brāhmana of great energy, *viz.*, Upamanyu (from whom I had obtained the Dikshā before adoring Mahādeva). Bowing down unto the great God, Upamanyu said these words to me.—'[10]

---

spouse Umā. The language, however, is such that this meaning cannot be put upon it without doing violence to it.—T.

"'Upamanyu said,—There is no deity like Sarva. There is no end or refuge like Sarva. There is none that can give so many or such high boons. There is none that equal him in battle!'"[11]

Section XVI.

"'—Upamanyu said,—There was in the Krita age, O sire, a Rishi celebrated under the name of Tandi. With great devotion of heart he adored, with the aid of Yoga-meditation, the great God for ten thousand years. Listen to me as I tell thee the fruit or reward he reaped of such extraordinary devotion. He succeeded in beholding Mahādeva and praised him by uttering some hymns.[1-2] Thinking, with the aid of his penances, of Him who is the supreme Soul and who is immutable and undeteriorating, Tandi became filled with wonder and said these words,[3]—I seek the protection of Him whom the Sānkhyas describe and the Yogins think of as the supreme, the foremost, the Purusha, the pervader of all things, and the Master of all existent objects, of him who, the learned say, is the cause of both the creation and the destruction of the universe; of him who is superior to all the celestials, the Asuras, and the Munis, of him who has nothing higher, who is unborn, who is the Lord of all things, who has neither beginning nor end, and who is endued with supreme puissance, who is possessed of the highest felicity, and who is effulgent and sinless![4-6]—After he had said these words, Tandi beheld before him that ocean of penances, that great Deity who is immutable and undeteriorating, who is without compare, who is inconceivable, who is eternal, and who is without any change, who is indivisible, who is whole, who is Brahma, who transcends all attributes, and who is endued with attributes, who is the highest delight of Yogins, who is without deterioration, who is called Emancipation, who is the refuge of the mind, of Indra, of Agni, of the god of wind, of the entire universe, and of the Grandsire Brahman; who is incapable of being conceived by the mind, who is without mutation of any kind, who is pure, who is capable of being apprehended by the understanding only, and who is immaterial as

the mind ;[7-9] who is difficult of comprehension, who is incapable of being measured, who is difficult of being attained, by persons of uncleansed souls, who is the origin of the universe, and who transcends both the universe and the attribute of darkness ; who is ancient, who is Purusha, who is possessed of effulgence, and who is higher than the highest.[10] The Rishi Tandin, desirous of beholding Him who making himself endued with life-breaths, resides in what results from it, *viz.*, Jiva, in the form of that effulgence which is called the Mind, passed many years in the practice of the severest austerities, and having succeeded in beholding Him as the reward of those penances, he praised the great God in the following terms.[11]

"'—Tandi said,—Thou art the holiest of holies* and the refuge of all, O foremost of all beings endued with intelligence ! Thou art the fiercest energy of all kinds of energy. Thou art the austerest penance of all penances.[12] Thou, O puissant one, art the liberal giver of blessings. Thou art the supreme Truth. Salutations to thee ![13] Salutations to thee, O thou of a thousand rays, and, O refuge of all felicity ! Thou art the giver of that Nirvāna after which, O puissant one, Yatis, standing in fear of birth and death, strive so hard ![14] The Grandsire Brahman, he of a hundred sacrifices, (*viz.*, Indra), Vishnu, the Viçwedevas, the great Rishis, are incapable of comprehending thee in thy real nature. How then can persons like ourselves hope to comprehend thee ?[15] From thee flows everything. Upon thee rests everything. Thou art called Kāla, thou art called Purusha, thou art called Brahma. Celestial Rishis conversant with the Purānas say that thou hast three bodies.[16] Thou art Adhi-Purusha, Adhyātma, Adhibhuta, Adhi-Daivata, Adhi-loka, Adhi-Vijnānam, and Adhi-Yajna.[17] Men of wisdom, when they succeed in knowing thee that residest in themselves and that art incapable of being known by the very gods, become freed from all bonds and pass into a state of existence that transcends all sorrow.†[18] They that do not wish to know thee,

* The Commentator explains this as 'thou art the cleanser of all cleansing entities,' *i. e.*, it is in consequence of thee, Gangā and the others have received the power of cleansing other things and creatures.—T.

† *I. e.*, they attain to Emancipation when they behold thee in the

O thou of great puissance, have to undergo innumerable births and deaths. Thou art the door of heaven and of Emancipation. Thou art he that projectest all beings into existence and withdrawest them again into thyself. Thou art the great giver.[19] Thou art heaven, thou art Emancipation, thou art desire (the seed of action). Thou art the wrath that inspires creatures. Thou art Sattwa, thou art Rajas, thou art Tamas, thou art the nether regions, and thou art the upper regions.[20] Thou art the Grandsire Brahman, thou art Bhava, thou art Vishnu, thou art Skanda, thou art Indra, thou art Savitri, thou art Yama, thou art Varuna, thou art Soma, thou art Dhātri, thou art Manu, thou art Vidhātri, and thou art Kuvera the Lord of treasures.[21] Thou art Earth, thou art Wind, thou art Water, thou art Agni, thou art Space, thou art Speech, thou art the Understanding, thou art Steadiness, thou art Intelligence, thou art the acts that creatures do, thou art Truth, thou art Falsehood, thou art existent, and thou art non-existent.[22] Thou art the senses, thou art that which transcends Prakriti, thou art immutable. Thou art superior to the universe of existent objects, thou art superior to the universe of non-existent objects, thou art capable of being conceived, thou art incapable of being conceived.[23] That which is Supreme Brahma, that which is the highest entity, that which is the end of both the Sānkhyas and the Yogins, is, without doubt, identical with thee.[24] Verily, rewarded have I been today by thee in consequence of thy granting me a sight of thy form. I have attained the end which the righteous alone attain to. I have been rewarded with that end which is solicited by persons whose understandings have been cleansed by Knowledge.[25] Alas, so long I was steeped in Ignorance ; for this long period I was a senseless fool, since I had no knowledge of thee that art the Supreme Deity, thee that art the only Eternal Entity as known by all persons endued with wisdom.[26] In course of innumerable lives have I at last succeeded in acquiring that Devotion towards thee in consequence of which thou hast shown thyself to me, O thou that art ever

---

firmament of their own hearts, or succeed in identifying their own souls with them.—T.

inclined to extend thy grace to those that are devoted to thee! He that succeeds in knowing thee is enabled to enjoy immortality.[27] Thou art that which is ever a mystery with the gods, the Asuras, and the ascetics. Brahma is concealed in a cave. The very ascetics are unable to behold or know Him.*[28] Thou art that puissant deity who is the Creator of everything and whose face is turned towards every direction. Thou art the Soul of all things, thou seest all things, thou pervadest all things, and thou knowest all things.[29] Thou makest a body for thyself. Thou bearest that body. Thou art an embodied Being. Thou enjoyest a body, and thou art the refuge of all embodied creatures. Thou art the creator of the life-breaths, thou possessest the life-breaths, thou art one that is endued with life-breaths, thou art the giver of the life-breaths, and thou art the refuge of all beings endued with the life-breaths.[30] Thou art that Adhyātma which is the refuge of all righteous persons that are devoted to Yoga-meditation and conversant with the Soul and that are solicitous of avoiding rebirth. Verily, thou art that Supreme Lord who is identical with that refuge.[31] Thou art the giver unto all creatures of whatever ends become theirs, fraught with happiness or misery. Thou art he that ordains all created beings to birth and death.[32] Thou art the puissaint Lord who grants success to Rishis crowned with success in respect of the fruition of their wishes. Having created all the worlds beginning with Bhu, together with all the denizens of heaven, thou upholdest and cherishest them all, distributing thyself into thy well known forms numbering Eight.†[33] From thee flows everything. Upon thee rests all things. All things, again, disappear in thee.

---

* The 'guhā' or cave in which Brahma is concealed is the heart of every living creature.—T.

† The worlds or regions commonly enumerated are Bhu, Bhuva, Sva, Maha, Jana, Tapa, and Satya. The eight well-known forms of Mahādeva are Water, Fire, Hotri, Sun, Moon, Space, Earth, and Wind. In his form of water he is called Bhava; in that of fire, he is called Rudra; in that of Hotri he is called Paçupati; in that of the Sun, he is called Içāna, in that of the Moon, he is called Mahādeva; in that of Space, he is called Bhima; in that of earth, he is called Sarva; and in that of wind, he is called Ugra. Compare the benediction in Kālidāsa's *Çakuntalah*.—T.

Thou art the sole object that is Eternal.[34] Thou art that region of Truth which is sought by the righteous and regarded by them as the highest. Thou art that cessation of individual existence which Yogins seek. Thou art that Emancipation which is sought by persons conversant with the Soul.[35] Beings crowned with success and numbering Brahman amongst them have concealed thee in a cave for preventing the deities and Asuras and human beings from beholding thee.*[36] Although thou residest in the heart, yet art thou concealed. Hence, stupefied by thee, the deities and Asuras and human beings are all unable to understand thee, O Bhava, truly and in all thy details.[37] Unto those persons that succeed in attaining to thee after having cleansed themselves by devotion, thou showest thyself of thy own accord, O thou that residest in all hearts.†[38] By knowing thee one can avoid both death and rebirth. Thou art the highest object of knowledge. By knowing thee no higher object remains for one to know.[39] Thou art the greatest object of acquisition. The person that is truly wise, by acquiring thee, thinks that there is no higher object to acquire. By attaining to thee that art exceedingly subtile and that art the highest object of acquisition, the man of wisdom becomes immortal and immutable.[40] The followers of the Sānkhya system, well conversant with their own philosophy and possessing a knowledge of the attributes (of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas) and of those called the topics of enquiry,—those learned men who transcend the destructible by attaining to a knowledge of the subtile or indestructible,—succeed by knowing thee in freeing themselves from all bonds.[41] Persons conversant with the Vedas regard thee as the one object of knowledge which has been expounded in the Vedāntas. These men, devoted to the regulation of the breaths, always meditate on thee and at last enter into thee as their highest end.[42] Riding on the car made of Om, those men enter into Maheçwara. Of that

* The cave in which Mahādeva has been concealed is the cave of the Scriptures; probably, difficult texts.—T.

† The sense is that these persons have not to make any extraordinary efforts for beholding thee. Their devotion is sufficient to induce thee to show thyself unto them.—T.

which is called the path of the deities, thou art the door called Aditya.[43] Thou art, again, the door, called Chandramas, of that which is called the path of the Pitris.* Thou art Kāshthā, thou art the points of the horizon, thou art the year, and thou art the Yugas.[44] Thou art the sovereignty of the heavens, thou art the sovereignty of the Earth, thou art the Northern and the Southern declensions. The Grandsire Brahman in days of yore uttered thy praises. O thou that art called blue and red, by reciting diverse hymns and urged thee to create living creatures.[45] Brāhmanas conversant with Richs praise thee by uttering Richs, regarding thee as unattached to all things and as divested of all forms. Adhyaryus, in sacrifices, pour libations, uttering Yajushes the while, in honor of thee that art the sole object of knowledge, according to the three well-known ways.†[46] Persons of cleansed understandings, that are conversant with Sāmans, sing thee with the aid of Sāmans. Those regenerate persons, again, that are conversant with the Atharvans, hymn thee as Rita, as Truth, as the Highest, and as Brahma. Thou art the highest cause whence Sacrifice has flowed. Thou art the Lord, and thou art Supreme.[47] The night and day are thy sense of hearing and sense of sight. The fortnights and months are thy head and arms. The seasons are thy energy, penances are thy patience, and the year is thy anus, and thighs, and feet.[48] Thou art Mrityu, thou art Yama, thou art Hutāça, thou art Kāla, thou art endued with speed in respect of destruction, thou art the original cause of Time, and thou art eternal Time.[49] Thou art Chandramas and Āditya, with all the stars and planets and the atmosphere that fills space. Thou art the pole-star, thou art the constellation called the seven Rishis, thou art the seven regions beginning with Bhu.[50] Thou art Pradhāna and Mahat, thou art

---

* 'Deva-yāna' and 'Pitri-yāna' are the two courses or paths by which the departed have to attain to their ends. Those going by the former reach the Sun; while those that go by the latter reach the Moon.—T.

† The first is that which is according to the rites inculcated in the Crutis; the second is according to the procedure laid down in the Smritis; and the third is the way or manner constituted by Dhyāna or meditation.—T.

Unmanifest, and thou art this world. Thou art the universe beginning with Brahma and ending with the lowest forms of vegetation. Thou art the beginning or original cause of all creatures. Thou art that which is existent and thou art that which is non-existent.[51] Thou art the eight Prakritis.* Thou art, again, above the eight Prakritis. Everything that exists, represents a portion of thy divine Self.[52] Thou art that supreme Felicity which is also Eternal. Thou art the end which is attained to by all things. Thou art that highest existence which is sought by the Righteous.[53] Thou art that state which is freed from every anxiety. Thou art eternal Brahma. Thou art that highest state which constitutes the meditation of persons learned in the scriptures and the Vedāngas.[54] Thou art the highest Kāshthā, thou art the highest Kalā. Thou art the highest Success, and thou art the highest Refuge.[55] Thou art the highest Tranquillity. Thou art the highest cessation of Existence. By attaining to thee, Yogins think that they attain to the highest success that is open to them.[56] Thou art Contentment, thou art Success, thou art the Cruti, and thou art the Smriti. Thou art that Refuge of the Soul after which Yogins strive, and thou art that indestructible Prāpti which men of Knowledge pursue.[57] Thou art, without doubt, that End which those persons have in view that are addicted to sacrifices and that pour sacrificial libations, impelled by specific desires, and that make large presents on such occasions.[58] Thou art that high End which is sought by persons that waste and scorch their bodies with severe penances, with ceaseless recitations, with those rigid vows and fasts that appertain to their tranquil lives, and with other means of self-affliction.[59] O Eternal one, thou art that End which is theirs that are unattached to all things and that have relinquished all acts.[60] Thou, O Eternal one, art that End which is theirs that are desirous of achieving Emancipation from rebirth, that live in dissociation from all enjoyments, and that desire the annihilation of the Prakriti-elements.[61] Thou art that high End, O illustrious one, which

* Vide *Sānkhya-kāriau.* With original Prakriti, the seven beginning with Mahat and Ahankāra and numbering the five *Tanmātras.*—T.

is indescribable, which is stainless, which is the immutable one, and which is theirs that are devoted to knowledge and science.[62] These are the five Ends that have been declared in the Vedas and the Scriptures and the Purānas. It is through thy grace that persons attain to those Ends, or, if they fail to attain to them, it is through thy grace being denied to them![63]—It was thus that Tandi, who was a vast heap of penances, praised Içāna. And he sang also that high Brahma which in ancient days was sung by the Creator himself (in honor of Mahādeva).[64]

"'Upamanyu continued,—Thus praised by that utterer of Brahma, *viz.*, Tandi, Mahādeva, that illustrious and puissant Deity, who was accompanied by his spouse Umā, said these words.[65] Tandi had further said,—Neither Brahman, nor Indra, nor Vishnu, nor the Viçwedevas, nor the great Rishis, know thee!—Gratified at this, Civā said the following words.[66]

"'The holy one said,—Thou shalt be indestructible and eternal. Thou shalt be freed from all sorrow. Great fame shall be thine. Thou shalt be endued with energy. Spiritual Knowledge shall be thine.[67] All the Rishis shall seek thee, and thy son, through my grace, shall become the author of *Sutras*, O foremost of regenerate persons![68] What wishes of thine shall I grant today? Tell me, O son, what those objects are which thou desirest!—At this, Tandi joined his hands and said, —O Lord, let my devotion to thee be steady!—[69]

"'Upamanyu continued,—Having given unto Tandin these boons and received the adorations of both the deities and the Rishis, the great Deity disappeared there and then.[70] When the illustrious deity, O lord of the Yādavas, thus disappeared with all his followers, the Rishi came to my asylum and said unto me all that had happened to him.[71] Do thou hear, O foremost of men, for thy success, all those celebrated names (of Mahādeva) that Tandi said unto me.[72] The Grandsire had at one time recited ten thousand names that apply to Mahādeva. In the scriptures, a thousand names occur of that illustrious deity.[73] These names are not known to all. O thou that transcendest destruction, in days of yore, the Grandsire Brahman uttered these names for adoring the high-souled Deity. Having

acquired them the grace of the Grandsire, Tandi communicated them to me !*—' "[74]

SECTION XVII.

"Vāsudeva said,—'Concentrating his mind, O Yudhishthira, the regenerate Rishi Upamanyu, with hands joined together in reverence, uttered this abstract of names (applying to Mahādeva), beginning from the beginning.[1]

"'Upamanyu said,—I shall adore that great Deity who deserves the adorations of all creatures, by uttering those names that are celebrated over all the worlds,—names some of which were uttered by the Grandsire Brahman, some by the Rishis, and some of which occur in the Vedas and the Vedāngas.[2] Those names have been applied (unto the great Deity) by persons that are eminent. They are, again, true and fraught with success, and are capable of accomplishing all the purposes which the utterer may have in view. They have been applied unto Mahādeva by Tandi whose soul was cleansed by Vedic lore and who invented those names with the aid of his devotion.[3] Indeed, with those names that have been uttered by many well-known persons of righteousness and by ascetics conversant with all the topics, I shall adore him who is the foremost, who is the first, who leads to heaven, who is ready to confer benefits upon all creatures, and who is auspicious.[4] Those names have been heard everywhere in the universe, having spread from the region of Brahman (where they were originally invented). All of them are fraught with the element of Truth. With those names I shall adore him who is Supreme Brahma, who has been declared (unto the universe) by the Vedas, and who

---

* Both the Vernacular translators render the last Verse most erroneously. K. P. Singha skips over every difficulty. In the Anuçāsana, this characteristic of his is more marked than in the Cānti. The Burdwan translators very rarely skip over a Verse; but they are very generally in the wrong. Nilakantha explains that 'Deveçah' is Brahman. The meaning, therefore, is that Tandi said unto me those secret names which Brahman had applied unto the high-souled one or Mahādeva.' The Bengal reading 'Deveça,' in the vecative, is incorrect.—T.

is Eternal.[5] I shall now tell thee, O chief of Yadu's race, those names. Do thou hear them with rapt attention. Thou art a devoted worshipper of the Supreme Lord. Do thou worship the illustrious Bhava, distinguishing him above all the deities.[6] And because thou art devoted to him, I shall, therefore, recite those names in thy hearing. Mahādeva is Eternal Brahma. No one that is even endued with Yoga is able to describe, in even a hundred years, the glory and puissance of that great Deity in their entirety. Verily, the beginning, middle, or end of Mahādeva cannot be apprehended by the very deities.[7-8] Indeed, when the case is such, who is there, O Mādhava, that can recite the attributes of Mahādeva in their entirety? For all that, I shall, through the grace of that illustrious and supreme Deity of perfect wisdom, extended to me for my devotion to him, recite his attributes as embodied in an abstract of few words and letters.[9] The Supreme Lord is incapable of being adored by any one if he does not grant his permission to the adorer. As regards myself, it is only when I become fortunate enough to receive his permission that I succeed in adoring him.[10] I shall indicate only a few names of that great Deity who is without birth and without destruction, who is the original cause of the universe, who is endued with the highest Soul, and whose origin is unmanifest.[11] Hear, O Krishna, a few names, that were uttered by Brahman himself, of that giver of boons, that adorable deity, that puissant one who has the universe for his form, and who is possessed of supreme wisdom.[12] These names that I shall recite are extracted from the ten thousand names that the great Grandsire had uttered in days of yore, as ghee is extracted from curds.[13] As gold represents the essence of rocky mountains, as honey represents the essence of flowers, as Manda represents the extract from ghee, even so have these names been extracted from and represent the essence of those ten thousand names that were uttered by the Grandsire Brahman.[14] This abstract of names is capable of cleansing every sin however heinous. It possesses the same merit that is attached to the four Vedas. It should be comprehended with effort, and engraved on the memory with concentrated soul.[15] It is fraught with auspiciousness. It leads to advancement. It is destruc-

tive of Rākshasas.* It is a great cleanser. It should be imparted to only him that is devoted to the great Lord, to him that has Faith, to him that believes. Unto him that has no faith, him that is an unbeliever, him that has not subjugated his soul, it should never be communicated.[16] That creature, O Krishna, who cherishes malice towards the illustrious Mahādeva who is the original cause of everything, who is the Supreme Soul, and who is the great Lord, has certainly to go to hell with all his ancestors before and all his children after him.[17] This abstract of names that I shall recite to thee is looked upon as Yoga-meditation. This is looked upon as Yoga.† This is looked upon as the highest object of meditation. This is that which one should constantly recite as *Japya*. This is equivalent to Knowledge. This is the highest Mystery.[18] If one, even during his last moments, recites it or hears it recited unto him, one succeeds in attaining to the highest end. This is holy. This is auspicious, this is fraught with every kind of benefit. This is the best of all things.[19] Brahman, the Grandsire of all the universe, having in days of old, composed it, assigned to it the foremost place among all excellent hymns.[20] From that time, this hymn to the greatness and glory of the high-souled Mahādeva, which is held in the highest esteem by all the deities, has come to be regarded as the king of all hymns.[21] This king of all hymns was first conveyed from the region of Brahman to heaven, the region of the celestials. Tandi then obtained it from heaven. Hence is it known as the hymn composed by Tandi.[22] From heaven Tandi brought it down on Earth. It is the most auspicious of all auspicious things, and is capable of cleansing from all sins however heinous.[23] O thou of mighty arms, I shall recite to thee that best of all hymns. This hymn relates to him who is the Veda of the Vedas, and the most ancient of all ancient objects;[24] to him who is the energy of all energies, and the penance of all penances; to him who is the most tranquil of all creatures endued with tranquillity,

---

* *I. e.*, if recited, it destroys all fear of Rākshasas, for these either fly away at its sound or are even killed.—T.

† *I. e.*, it has the merit that is attached to either Meditation or Yoga.

and who is the splendour of all splendours;[25] to him who is looked upon as the most restrained of all creatures that are restrained, and him who is the intelligence of all creatures endued with intelligence; to him who is looked upon as the deity of all deities, and the Rishi of all Rishis;[26] to him who is regarded as the sacrifice of all sacrifices and the most auspicious of all things fraught with auspiciousness; to him who is the Rudra of all the Rudras, and the effulgence of all things endued with effulgence;[27] to him who is the Yogin of all Yogins, and the cause of all causes; to him from whom all the worlds start into existence, and unto whom all the worlds return when they cease to exist;[28] to him who is the Soul of all existent creatures, and who is called Hara of immeasurable energy. Hear me recite those thousand and eight names of the great Carva.[29] Hearing those names, O foremost of all men, thou shalt be crowned with fruition in respect of all thy wishes.—Om! thou art Immobile, thou art Fixed, thou art Puissant, thou art Terrible, thou art Foremost, thou art boon-giving, and thou art Superior.*[30] Thou art the Soul of all creatures, thou art celebrated over all creatures, thou art all things, thou art the Creator of all, and thou art Bhava.† Thou art the bearer of matted locks on thy head. Thou wearest animal skins for thy vestments. Thou wearest a crest of matted hair on thy head like the peacock. Thou art he who has the whole universe for thy limbs.‡ Thou art the Creator of all things. Thou art Hara in consequence of thy being the destroyer of all things.[31] Thou art he that has eyes resembling those of the gazelle. Thou art the destroyer of all creatures. Thou art the supreme enjoyer of all things.[32] Thou art that Pravriti whence all actions flow. Thou art that Nivirtti or

---

* Both 'Sthira' and 'Sthānu' imply immutability or freedom from change.—T.

† The Commentator explains that 'Bhava' is here used in the sense of 'that from which all things flow and into which all things merge when the universal dissolution comes. Or, it may imply, mere existence, without reference, that is, to any attribute by which it is capable of being described or comprehended.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, 'Virāt' or vast or Infinite.—T.

abstention from acts, thou art observant of fasts and vows, thou art Eternal, thou art Unchangeable. Thou art he that residest in crematoria, thou art the possessor of the six well-known attributes of Lordship and the rest, thou residest in the heart of every creature, thou art he that enjoys all things with the senses, thou art the grinder of all sinful creatures.*[33] Thou art he that deserves the salutations of all, thou art of great feats, thou art he that has penances for his wealth, thou createst all the elements at thy will, thou concealest thy real nature by putting on the guise of a lunatic. Thou art the Master of all the worlds and of all living creatures.[34] Thou art of immeasurable form, thou art of vast body, thou art of the form of Righteousness, thou art of great fame, thou art of high Soul, thou art the Soul of all creatures, thou hast the universe for thy form,† thou art of vast jaws (for thou swallowest the universe when the time comes for the dissolution of all things.)[35] Thou art the protector of all the worlds, thou sufferest thy Soul to disappear behind the darkness of Ignorance.‡ Thou art gladness. Thou art he whose car is borne by mules. Thou art he that protects Jiva from the thunder of rebirth. Thou art adorable. Thou art obtained by purity and self-restraint and vows. Thou art again the refuge of all kinds of vows and observances including purity and self-restraint.$[36]

---

* The task of rendering these names is exceedingly difficult. In the original, many of these names are such that they are capable of more than one interpretation. The Commentator often suggests more than one meaning. Each name would require a separate note for explaining all its bearings. 'Niyata' is literally one who is observant of fasts and vows and who has restrained his senses. Hence it means an ascetic. Mahādeva is an ascetic. 'Cmaçāna' is either a crematorium, the place where dead creatures lie down, or, it may mean Vārānasi, the sacred city of Çiva, where creatures dying have not to take rebirth. Çiva is both a resident of crematoria and of Vārānasi.—T.

† Or, the universe is displayed in thee.—T.

‡ Probably, what is said here is that Mahādeva is the Soul invested with Ignorance, *i. e.*, *Jiva*.—T.

$ By 'Niyama' is meant purity both internal and external, contentedness with whatever is got; penances, Vedic studies, meditation on the Deity, &c.—T.

Thou art the celestial artificer that is conversant with every art. Thou art Self-create (for no one has created thee). Thou art the beginning of all creatures and things. Thou art Hiranyagarbha, the Creator of all things. Thou art inexhaustible puissance and felicity.* Thou hast a hundred eyes, thou hast eyes of vast power. Thou art Soma.† Thou art he that causest all righteous creatures to assume shapes of glory for shining in the firmament.[37] Thou art Chandramas, thou art Surya, thou art the planet Saturn, thou art the descending node (of the Moon), thou art the ascending node, thou art Mangala (Mars), and thou art Vrihaspati (Jupiter) and Cukra (Venus), thou art Vudha (Mercury), thou art the worshipper of Atri's wife, thou art he who shot his shaft at Sacrifice when Sacrifice fled from his wrath in the form of a deer. Thou art sinless.‡[38] Thou art possessed of penances that have conferred upon thee the power of creating the universe. Thou art possessed of penances that have rendered thee capable of destroying the universe. Thou art high-minded (in consequence of thy great liberality towards thy

---

* 'Nidhi' implies the largest number that can be named in Arithmatical notation. Hence, it implies, as the Commentator correctly explains, the possesser of inexhaustible felicity and gladness.—T.

† 'Sahasrāksha' is either Indra or possessor of innumerable eyes in consequence of Mahādeva's being identical with the universe. 'Viçālāksha' is one whose eyes are of vast power, because the Past and the Future are seen by them even as the Present. 'Soma' implies either the Moon or the juice of the Soma, *i. e.*, the libations poured on the sacrificial fire. All righteous persons, again, become luminaries in the firmament. It is Mahādeva that makes them so, *i. e.*, he is the giver of glorious forms to those that deserve them.—T.

‡ Many of these names require comments to be intelligible. 'Ketu' is no planet but Hindu astronomers name the descending node of the Moon by that name. 'Graha' is that which seizes; hence Rāhu or the ascending node of the Moon. 'Grahapati' is Mangala, so called for its malevolence. 'Varah' is Vrihaspati or Jupiter, who is the counterself of Cukra or Venus. In Hindu mythology, Cukra is a male person, the preceptor of the Daityas and Asuras. 'Atri' is Vudha or Mercury, represented as the son of Atri. 'Atryāh-namaskartā' is Durvāsas who was the son of Atri's wife, got by the lady through a boon of Mahādeva. Daksha's Sacrifice sought to fly away from Civa, but the latter pursued it and shot his arrow at it for destroying it downright.—T.

devotees). Thou fulfillest the wishes of all who resign themselves to thee. Thou art the maker of the year (for it is thou who settest the wheel of Time revolving, by assuming the form of the sun and the planets). Thou art Mantra (in the form of Pranava and other sacred words and syllables). Thou art the authority for all acts (in the form of the Vedas and the scriptures). Thou art the highest Penance.[39] Thou art devoted to Yoga. Thou art he who merges himself in Brahman (by his Yoga-abstraction). Thou art the great seed (being the cause of causes). Thou art the displayer of what is unmanifest as this manifest form in which the universe exists. Thou art possessed of infinite might. Thou art he whose seed is gold.* Thou art omniscient, (being as thou art all things and the great knower). Thou art the cause of all things. Thou art he that has the seed of action (*viz.*, Ignorance and Desire) for the means of sojourning from this world to the other and the other to this.†[40] Thou hast ten arms. Thou hast winkless eyes (for thou seest at all times). Thou hast a blue throat (in consequence of thy bearing in thy throat the poison that arose upon churning the ocean and which, if not so borne, was competent to destroy the universe). Thou art the lord of Umā. Thou art the origin of all the infinite forms that occur in the universe. Thou art he whose superiority is due to thyself. Thou art a hero in might (in consequence of thy having achieved such grand feats as the quick destruction of the triple city of the Asuras). Thou art inert matter (which cannot move unless co-existing with the Soul). Thou art all the topics of enquiry (as counted by the Sānkhyas).[41] Thou art the ordainer and ruler of the topics. Thou art the chief of those beings that

---

* 'Suvarna-retas' is explained by the Commentator as follows: 'At first he created water and then cast his seed into it. That seed became a golden egg.' It may also mean that Mahādeva is Agni or the deity of fire, for gold represents the seed of Agni.—T.

† The sense is this: Jiva carries the seed of acts, *i. e.*, Ignorance and Desire, with him. In consequence of this seed, Jiva travels from one world into another ceaselessly. This seed, therefore, is the conveyance or the means of locomotion of Jiva. Mahādeva is Jiva. The Soul is called the rider, and the body is the car that bears the Soul on it.—T.

wait upon thee and are called Ganas.* Thou coverest infinite space.† Thou art Kāma the god of Desire. Thou art conversant with Mantras (in the sense of knowledge being thy penance).‡ Thou art the highest Mantra (for thou art that philosophy which consists in the ascertainment of the nature and attributes of the soul and its differences from the Not-soul). Thou art the cause of the universe (since all that exists has sprung from thy Soul). Thou art the universal destroyer (for all that ceases to exist becomes merged into thyself as the unmanifest Brahma).[42] Thou bearest in one of thy hands the calabash. In another thou holdest the bow. In another thou bearest shafts. In another thou bearest a skull. Thou bearest the thunder-bolt. Thou art armed with the hundred-killer.$ Thou art armed with the sword. Thou wieldest the battle-axe. Thou art armed with the Cula (trident). Thou art adorable.[43] Thou hast the sacrificial ladle in one of thy hands. Thou art of beautiful form. Thou art endued with abundant energy. Thou givest in the most liberal measure all that tends to adorn those that are devoted to thee. Thou wearest a turban on thy head. Thou art of beautiful face. Thou art he who swells with splendour and puissance. Thou art he that is humble and modest.[44] Thou art exceedingly tall. Thou art he who has the senses for thy rays.¶ Thou art the greatest of preceptors.

---

* 'Ganapati' is Ganeça the eldest son of Mahādeva. The Ganas are mighty beings that wait upon Mahādeva. This makes up the first hundred names. The Commentator takes 'Avala' and 'Gana' together.—T.

† 'Digvāsas' means nude. The Purānas say that for stupifying the wives of certain ascetics, Mahādeva became nude on one occasion. The received meaning, however, is that he is capable of covering and does actually cover even infinite space. In the sense of nude, the word means one that has empty space for his cover or vestments.—T.

‡ The meaning is that with thee Knowledge is penance instead of actual physical austerities being so. This is only another way of saying that thou hast 'Jnānamayam Tapah.'—T.

$ 'Cataghni' a killer of hundred ; Wilson thinks it was a kind of rocket.—T.

¶ 'Harikeça' means one having the senses for one's rays, *i. e.*, one who displays all objects before the soul through the doors of the senses. The meaning is that Mahādeva is he through whose puissance the mind succeeds in acquiring knowledge through the senses.—T.

Thou art Supreme Brahma (being a state of pure felicitous existence).* Thou art he that took the shape of a jackal (for consoling the Brāhmana who, when insulted by a wealthy Vaiçya, had resolved to commit suicide). Thou art he whose objects are all crowned with fruition, of themselves and without waiting for the puissance derivable from penances). Thou art one who beares a bald head (as the sign of the mendicant order). Thou art one who does good to all creatures.[45] Thou art unborn. Thou hast innumerable forms. Thou bearest all kinds of fragrance on thy person. The matted locks on thy head had sucked up the river Gangā when it first fell from heaven (although they again gave out the waters at the earnest solicitations of king Bhagiratha). Thou art the giver of sovereignty and lordship.† Thou art a Brahmachārin without having ever fallen away from the rigid vow of continence. Thou art distinguished for thy sexual continence. Thou always liest on thy back. Thou hast thy abode in Puissance.‡[46] Thou hast three matted locks on thy head. Thou art he that is clad in rags. Thou art Rudra (in consequence of thy fierceness). Thou art the celestial generalissimo, and thou art all-pervading. Thou art he that moves about during the day. Thou art he that moves about in the night.$ Thou art of fierce wrath. Thou art possessed of dazzling effulgence (born of Vedic study and penances).[47] Thou art the slayer of the mighty Asura

---

* 'Krishna' is explained by the Commentator thus. 'Krish' is a word signifying 'Bhu' or Existence. The letter *n* (the palatal one) signifies 'nirvriti.' Hence 'Krishna' is 'ānanda-sanmātra.'—T.

† 'Kaparddin' is thus explained by the Commentator. 'Kam jalam pivati it kapah.' So called because of the incident noted in the text, for the matted locks of Mahādeva had sucked up the river Gangā when it first fell from heaven. Then 'Rit' means sovereignty or lordship. 'Riddah' is one that gives sovereignty. Combining the two, the compound 'Kaparddin' is formed.—T.

‡ 'Nabhah' means space which implies puissance. That 'Nabhah' is the 'sthala' or abode of Mahādeva. The Bengal texts which read 'Nabhastalah' are vicious.—T.

$ The deities are said to move about during the day, while the Asuras and Rākshasas during the night. What is said, therefore, here is that thou art the deities and thou art their foes the Daityas and others.—T.

who had come in the form of an infuriate elephant for destroying thy sacred city of Vārānasi. Thou art the slayer of such Daityas as become the oppressors of the universe. Thou art Kāla or Time which is the universal destroyer. Thou art the supreme ordainer of the universe. Thou art a mine of all excellent accomplishments. Thou art of the form of the lion and the tiger. Thou art he that is clad in the skin of an elephant.[48] Thou art the Yogin who decieves Time by transcending its irresistible influence. Thou art the original sound.* Thou art the fruition of all desires. Thou art he that is adored in four ways.† Thou art a night-wanderer (like Vetāla and others). Thou art he that wanders in the company of spirits. Thou art he that wanders in the company of ghostly beings. Thou art the Supreme Lord of even Indra and the other celestials.[49] Thou art he that has multiplied himself infinitely in the form of all existent and non-existent things. Thou art the upholder of both Mahat and all the innumerable combinations of the five primal elements. Thou art the primeval Ignorance or Tamas that is known by the name of Rāhu. Thou art infinite. Thou art the supreme End that is attained by the Emancipate. Thou art fond of dancing. Thou art he that is always engaged in dancing. Thou art he that causes others to dance. Thou art the friend of the universe.[50] Thou art he whose aspect is calm and mild. Thou art endued with penances puissant enough to create and destroy the universe. Thou art he who binds all creatures with the bonds of thy illusion. Thou art he that transcends destruction. Thou art he who dwells on a mountain (*viz.*, Kailāsa). Thou transcendest all bonds and art unattached in respect of all things, like Space. Thou art possessed of a thousand arms. Thou art victory. Thou art that perseverance which leads to success or victory. Thou art without idleness or procrastination that interferes with per-

---

* Sound, only when manifested, becomes perceptible. When unmanifest and lying in the womb of eternal space, it is believed to have an existence. Unmanifest Brahma is frequently represented as 'anāhatah çavdah' or unstruck sound.—T.

† These four ways are, as enumerated by Commentator, Viçwa, Taijasa, Prājna, Civadhyāna.—T.

severing activity.[51] Thou art dauntless. Thou art fear. Thou art he who put a stop to Vali's sacrifice.* Thou fulfillest the desires of all thy devotees. Thou art the destroyer of Daksha's sacrifice. Thou art amiable. Thou art slightly amiable.[52] Thou art exceedingly fierce and robbest all creatures of their energy. Thou art the slayer of the Asura Vala. Thou art always cheerful. Thou art of the form of wealth which is coveted by all. Thou hast never been vanquished.† There is none more adorable than thou. Thou art he who utters deep roars (in the form of Ocean). Thou art that which is so deep that no one can measure it (because thou art of the form of space). Thou art he whose puissance and the might of whose companions and bull have never been measured by anybody.[53] Thou art the tree of the world (whose roots extend upwards and branches hang downwards). Thou art the banian.‡ Thou art he that sleeps on a banian leaf when the universe, after dissolution, becomes one infinite expanse of waters. Thou art he that shows compassion to all worshippers, assuming, as thou listest, the form of Hari or Hara or Ganeça or Arka or Agni or Wind, &c. Thou art possessed of teeth that are exceedingly sharp (since thou art competent to chew innumerable worlds even as one munches nuts and swallows them speedily). Thou art of vast dimensions in respect of thy form. Thou art possessed of a mouth that is vast enough to swallow the universe at once.[54] Thou art he whose troops are adored everywhere.$ Thou art he who dispelled all the fears of the deities when the prince of elephants had to be captured. Thou art the seed of the universe. Thou

---

* It may also mean that thou art he called Buddha who preached against all sacrifices.—T.

† The Commentator explains that Mahādeva's defeat at the hands of Krishna in the city of Vāna was due to Mahādeva's kindness for Krishna, even as Krishna broke his own vow of never taking up arms in the battle Kurukshetra, for honoring his worshipper Bhishma who had vowed that he would compel Krishna to take up arms.—T.

‡ The sense is this: when the universal destruction comes and all becomes a mighty expanse of water, there appears a banian under whose shade the immortal Rishi Mārkandeya sees a boy who is Mahavishnu.—T.

$ It may also mean that thou art he at whose approach all the Daitya troops fled in all directions.—T.

art he who has for his vehicle the same bull that forms again the device on his banner in battle. Thou hast Agni for thy soul. Thou art Surya who has green steeds yoked unto his car. Thou art the friend of Jiva. Thou art he that is conversant with the proper time for the accomplishment of all religious acts.[55] Thou art he unto whom Vishnu had paid his adorations (for obtaining his celebrated discus). Thou art Vishnu. Thou art the ocean. Thou art the Mare's head that ranges within the ocean, ceaselessly vomiting fire and drinking the saline waters as if they were sacrificial butter. Thou art Wind, the friend of Agni. Thou art of tranquil soul like the ocean when at rest and unstirred by the mildest breeze. Thou art Agni that drinks the libations of clarified butter poured in sacrifices with the aid of Mantras.[56] Thou art he whom it is difficult to approach. Thou art he whose effulgence spreads over the infinite universe. Thou art ever skilful in battle. Thou art well conversant with the time when one should engage in battle so that victory may be achieved. Thou art that science which treats of the motions of heavenly bodies.* Thou art of the form of success or victory. Thou art he that possesses a body for all time (for thy body is never subject to destruction).[57] Thou art a house-holder for thou wearest a tuft of hair on thy head. Thou art a Sanyāsin for thy head is bald. Thou wearest matted locks on thy head (being, as thou art, a Vānaprastha).† Thou art distinguished for thy fiery rays (for the effulgent path by which the righteous proceed is identical with thee). Thou art he that appears in the firmament of the heart encased in the body of every creature.‡ Thou art he who enters into the cranium (brain) of every creature. Thou

---

* *I. e.*, thou art Time itself. This is the implication.—T.

† By these three names what is indicated is that Mahādeva is a house-holder, a Sanyāsin, and a forest-recluse. House-holders bear a tuft of hair on their heads. Sanyāsins have bald heads, while forest-recluses or Vānaprasthas have matted locks —T.

‡ The sense is that Brahma is felt by every one in the firmament of his own heart. Mahādeva, as identical with Brahma, is displayed in the heart that is within the physical case. Hence, he may be said to take birth or appear in his effulgence within every one's body.—T.

bearest the wrinkles of age. Thou bearest the bamboo flute. Thou hast also the tabour. Thou bearest the musical instrument called Tāli. Thou hast the wooden vessel used for husking grain. Thou art he who covers that illusion which covers Yama*.[58] Thou art an astrologer inasmuch as thy understanding is always directed towards the motion of the wheel of Time which is made up of the luminaries in the firmament. Thou art Jiva whose understanding is directed to things that are the result of the attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas. Thou art that in which all things merge when dissolution overtakes them. Thou art stable and fixed, there being nothing in thee that is subject to change or mutation of any kind. Thou art the Lord of all creatures. Thy arms extend all over the vast universe. Thou art displayed in inumerable forms that are but fractions of thyself. Thou pervadest all things.† Thou art he that has no mouth (for thou enjoyest not the objects of thy own creation).[59] Thou art he who frees thy creatures from the bonds of the world. Thou art easily attainable.‡ Thou art he that manifested himself with a golden mail.$ Thou art he that appears in the phallic emblem. Thou art he that wanders in the forests in quest of fowls and animals. Thou art he that wanders over the whole Earth. Thou art he that is omnipresent.[60] Thou art the blare that is produced by all the trumpets blown in the three worlds. Thou art he that has all creatures for his relatives.¶ Thou art of the form of a snake (for thou art identical with the mighty Nāga named Cesha). Thou art he that lives in mountain caves (like Jaigishavya or any other Yogin). Thou

---

* 'Kālakatankatah' is explained by the Commentator as follows:—'Kāla' is 'Yama'. He is covered over with the illusion of the Supreme Deity. That all-covering illusion, again, has the Supreme Deity for its cover. Thou art that Supreme Deity —T,

† 'Vibhāga' and 'Sarvaga', the Commentator explains, are used for indicating that thou art the universe as 'Vyashti' and 'Samashti.'—T.

‡ Some editions read 'suçaranah,' meaning thou art he who well protrects the universe.—T.

$ The golden mail being the illusion of the Supreme Deity in consequence of which the universe has become displayed.—T.

¶ Thou art Paçupati ; 'ātodyāh pratodanārhāh paçavah yasya iti.'—T.

art identical with Guha (the celestial generalissimo). Thou wearest garlands of flowers. Thou art he who enjoys the happiness that springs from the possession of worldly objects.*[61] Thou art he from whom all creatures have derived their three states of birth, existence, and destruction. Thou art he that upholds all things that exist or occur in the three stages of Time, *viz.*, the Past, the Present, and the Future. Thou art he that freeds creatures from the effects of all acts belonging to previous lives as well as those accomplished in the present life and from all the bonds due to Ignorance and Desire. Thou art he who is the binder of Asura chiefs. Thou art he who is the slayer of foes in battle.†[62] Thou art that which is attainable by knowledge alone. Thou art Durvāsas. Thou art he who is waited upon and adored by all the righteous. Thou art he who causes the fall of even Brahman and the others. Thou art he that gives unto all creatures the just share of joy and grief that each deserves according to his own acts. Thou art he that is incomparable. Thou art well conversant with the shares that are given and appropriated in sacrifices.‡[63] Thou residest in every place. Thou wanderest everywhere. Thou art he that has mean vestments.$ Thou art Vāsava. Thou art immortal. Thou art identical with the Himavat mountains. Thou art the maker of pure gold. Thou art without acts. Thou upholdest in thyself the fruits of all acts. Thou art the foremost of all creatures that are regarded as upholders.¶[64] Thou

---

* The Commentator explains that 'Tarangavit,' which is literally 'conversant with waves,' means one that is acquainted with the joys or pleasures that arise from the possession or enjoyment of worldly things, for such joys may truly be likened to waves which appear and disappear on the bosom of the sea or ocean of Eternity.—T.

† The Commentator explains that the binder of Asura chiefs refers to the Supreme Deity's form of Vishnu in which he had bound Vali the chief of the Asuras. The plural form has reference to successive Kalpas —T.

‡ The sense is that thou art he that is well conversant with the ritual of sacrifices.—T.

$ Or, it may mean that thou art he that has no vestments, for no vestments can cover thy vast limbs.—T.

¶ Those that uphold others are, for example, the elephants that stand

art he that has bloody eyes. Thou art he that has eyes whose vision extends over the infinite universe. Thou art he that has a car whose wheels are ever victorious. Thou art he that is possessed of vast learning. Thou art he that accepts thy devotees for thy servants. Thou art he that restrains and subjugates thy senses. Thou art he that acts. Thou wearest clothes whose warp and woof are made of snakes.[65] Thou art Supreme. Thou art he who is the lowest of the celestials.* Thou art he that is well-grown. Thou ownest the musical instrument called Kāhala. Thou art the giver of every wish. Thou art the embodiment of grace in all the three stages of Time, *viz.*, the Past, the Present, and the Future. Thou art possessed of might that is always well spent. Thou art he who had assumed the form of Valarāma (the elder brother of Krishna).[66] Thou art the foremost of all coveted things, being Emancipation or the highest of all ends to which creatures attain. Thou art the giver of all things. Thy face is turned towards all directions. Thou art he from whom diverse creatures have sprung even as all forms have sprung from space or are modifications of that primal element. Thou art he who falls into the pit called body.† Thou art he that is helpless (since, falling into the pit constituted by the body, thou canst not transcend the sorrow that is thy portion). Thou residest in the firmament of the heart.[67] Thou art exceedingly fierce in form. Thou art the Deity called Ançu. Thou art the companion of Ançu and art called Aditya. Thou art possessed of innumerable rays. Thou art endued with dazzling effulgence. Thou hast the speed of the Wind.‡ Thou art possessed of speed that is grater than that of the Wind. Thou art possessed of the speed of the mind. Thou enjoyest all things, being invested with Igno-

---

at the different points of the compass, the snake Cesha, &c. What is said here is that thou art the best of all these or all such beings.—T.

* The sense is that thou art Vishnu who is the foremost of the celestials and thou art Agni who is the lowest of the celestials ; *i. e.*, thou art all the celestials.—T.

† The body is as it were a pit into which the soul falls, determined by Desire and Ignorance.—T.

‡ 'Vasu,' the Commentator explains, indicates the Wind, for it means that which establishes all things into itself.—T.

rance.*[68] Thou dwellest in every body. Thou dwellest with Prosperity as thy companion. Thou art he that imparts knowledge and instruction. Thou art he who imparts instruction in utter silence. Thou art he that observes the vow of taciturnity (for thou intructest in silence). Thou art he who passes out of the body for looking at the soul.† Thou art he that is well-adored. Thou art the giver of thousands (since the Lord of all the treasures derived those treasures of his from thee).[69] Thou art the prince of birds, (being Garuda the son of Vinatā and Kaçyapa). Thou art the friend that renders aid. Thou art possessed of exceeding effulgence (for thy splendour is like that of a million suns risen together). Thou art the Master of all created beings. Thou art he who provokes the appetites. Thou art the deity of Desire. Thou art of the form of lovely women that are coveted by all. Thou art the tree of the world. Thou art the Lord of Treasures. Thou art the giver of fame.[70] Thou art the Deity that distributes unto all creatures the fruits (in the form of joys and griefs) of their acts. Thou art thyself those fruits which thou distributest. Thou art the most ancient (having existed from a time when there was no other existent thing). Thou art competent to cover with a single footstep of thine all the three worlds. Thou art the dwarf who deceived the Asura chief Vali (and depriving him of his sovereignty restored it unto Indra). Thou art the Yogin crowned with success (like Sanatkumāra and others). Thou art a great Rishi (like Vaçishtha and others). Thou art one whose objects are always crowned with success (like Rishava or Dattātreya). Thou art a Sanyāsin (like Yājnavalkya and others).[71] Thou art he that is adorned with the marks of the mendicant order. Thou art he that is without such marks.‡ Thou art he that transcends the usages of the mendicant order. Thou art he that assures all creatures from every sort of fear. Thou art without any passions thyself (so that glory and humiliation are alike to

* 'Niçācharah' is one acting through 'niçā' or 'Avidyā,' *i. e.*, one who enjoys all objects, implying Jiva invested with Ignorance.—T.

† The Soul can view the Soul or itself, if it can transcend the body with the aid of Yoga.—T.

‡ The Commentator explains that the first word means that thou art 'Hansa' and that the second word means thou art 'Paramahansa,'—T.

thee). Thou art he that is called the celestial generalissimo. Thou art that Viçākha who took his rise from the body of the celestial generalissimo when Indra hurled his thunder-bolt at him. Thou art he who enjoys the sixty topics or heads of objects in the universe. Thou art the Lord of the senses (for these achieve their respective functions, guided by thee),[72] Thou art he that is armed with the thunder-bolt (and that rives mountains). Thou art infinite. Thou art the stupefier of Daitya ranks on the field of battle. Thou art he that moves his car in circles among his own ranks and that makes similar circles among the ranks of foes and devastating them comes back safe and sound. Thou art he that is conversant with the lowest depth of the world's ocean (in consequence of thy knowledge of Brahma). Thou art he called Madhu (who has founded the race in which Krishna has taken his birth). Thou hast eyes whose color resembles that of honey.[73] Thou art he that has taken birth after Vrihaspati.* Thou art he that does the acts which Adhyaryus have to do in sacrifices. Thou art he who is always adored by persons whatever their modes of life. Thou art devoted to Brahma. Thou wanderest amongst the habitations of men in the world (in consequence of thy being a mendicant). Thou art he that pervadest all beings. Thou art he that is conversant with truth.[74] Thou knowest and guidest every heart. Thou art he that overspreads the whole universe. Thou art he that collects or stores the good and bad acts of all creatures in order to award them the fruits thereof. Thou art he that lives during even the night that follows the universal dissolution. Thou art the wielder of the bow called Pināka. Thou residest in even the Daityas that are the marks at which thou shootest thy arrows. Thou art the author of prosperity. Thou art the mighty ape that aided Vishnu in the incarnation of Rāma in his expedition against Rāvana.[75] Thou art the lord of those Ganas that are thy associates. Thou art each member of those diverse Ganas. Thou art he that gladdens all creatures. Thou art the enhancer

---

* 'Vārhaspatya' is a word that is applied to a priest. The deities first got their priest for assisting them at their sacrifices. Human beings then got theirs. Those born after Vrihaspati are Vārhaspatyas.—T.

of the joys of all.* Thou takest away the sovereignty and prosperity of even such high beings as Indra and others. Thou art the universal slayer in the form of Death. Thou art he that resides in the four and sixty *Kalas*. Thou art very great. Thou art the Grandsire (being the sire of the great sire of all).[76] Thou art the supreme phallic emblem that is adored by both deities and Asuras. Thou art of agreeable and beautiful features. Thou art he who causes all beings to comprehend the diverse kinds of proofs that exist as evidence of all ideas and notions. Thou art the lord of vision and the other proofs of all ideas derived from the senses. Thou art the Lord of Yoga (in consequence of thy aid being necessary for withdrawing all the senses into the heart and combining them together in that place. Thou art he that upholds the Krita and the other ages (by causing them to run ceaselessly).[77] Thou art the Lord of seeds (in consequence of thy being the giver of the fruits of all acts good and bad). Thou art the original cause of such seeds. Thou actest in the ways that have been pointed out in the scriptures beginning with those that treat of the Soul. Thou art he in whom reside might and the other attributes. Thou art the Mahābhārata and other histories of the kind. Thou art the treatises called Mimānsā. Thou art Gautama (the founder of the science of dialectics). Thou art the author of the great treatise on Grammar that has been named after the Moon.[78] Thou art he who chastises his foes. Thou art he whom none can chastise. Thou art he who is sincere in respect of all his religious acts and observances. Thou art he that becomes obedient to those that are devoted to thee. Thou art he that is capable of reducing others to subjection. Thou art he who foments quarrels among the deities and the Asuras. Thou art he who has created the four and ten worlds (beginning with Bhu). Thou art the protector and cherisher of all Beings commencing from Brahman and ending with the lowest forms of vegetable life (like grass and straw). Thou art the Creator of even the five original elements. Thou art he that

---

* This word 'Nandivardhanah' may also mean he that withdraws or takes away the joys previously conferred.—T.

never enjoys anything (for thou art always unattached).[79] Thou art free from deterioration. Thou art the highest form of felicity. Thou art a deity proud of his might. Thou art Cakra. Thou art the chastisement that is spoken of in treatises on morality and inflicted on offenders. Thou art of the form of that tyranny which prevails over the world. Thou art of pure Soul. Thou art stainless, (being above faults of every kind). Thou art worthy of adoration. Thou art the world that appears and disappears ceaselessly.[80] Thou art he whose grace is of the largest measure. Thou art he that has good dreams. Thou art a mirror in which the universe is reflected. Thou art he that has subjugated of all internal and external foes. Thou art the maker of the Veda. Thou art the maker of those declarations that are contained in the Tantras and the Purānas and that are embodied in language that is human.* Thou art possessed of great learning. Thou art the grinder of foes in battle.[81] Thou art he that resides in the awful clouds that appear at the time of the universal dissolution. Thou art most terrible (in consequence of the dissolution of the universe that thou bringest about). Thou art he who succeeds in bringing all persons and all things into thy subjection. Thou art the great Destroyer. Thou art he that has fire for his energy. Thou art he whose energy is mighter than fire. Thou art the Yuga-fire that consumes all things. Thou art he that is capable of being gratified by means of sacrificial libations. Thou art water and other liquids that are poured in sacrifices with the aid of Mantras.[82] Thou art, in the form of the Deity of Righteousness, the scatterer of the fruits that attach to acts good and bad. Thou art the giver of felicity. Thou art always endued with effulgence. Thou art of the form of fire. Thou art of the complexion of the emerald. Thou art always present in the phallic emblem. Thou art the source of blessedness. Thou art incapable of being baffled by anything in the prosecution of your objects.[83] Thou art the giver of blessings. Thou art of the form of blessedness. Thou art he unto whom is given a

---

* The language of the Veda is divine. That of the scriptures is human.—T.

share of sacrificial offerings. Thou art he who distributes unto each his share of what is offered in sacrifices. Thou art endued with great speed. Thou art he that is dissociated from all things. Thou art he that is possessed of the mightiest limb. Thou art he that is employed in the act of generation.[84] Thou art of a dark complexion, (being of the form of Vishnu). Thou art of a white complexion, (being of the form of Sāmva the son of Krishna). Thou art the senses of all embodied creatures. Thou art possessed of vast feet. Thou hast vast hands. Thou art of vast body. Thou art endued with wide-extending fame.[85] Thou hast a vast head.* Thou art of vast measurements. Thou art of vast vision. Thou art the home of the darkness of ignorance. Thou art the Destroyer of the Destroyer. Thou art possessed of vast ears. Thou hast vast lips. Thou art he that has vast cheeks.[86] Thou hast a vast nose. Thou art of a vast throat. Thou hast a vast neck. Thou art he that tears the bond of body.† Thou hast a vast chest. Thou hast a vast bosom. Thou art the inner soul which resides in all creatures. Thou hast a deer on thy lap.[87] Thou art he from whom innumerable worlds hang down like fruits hanging down from a tree. Thou art he who stretches his lips at the time of the universal dissolution for swallowing the universe. Thou art the ocean of milk. Thou hast vast teeth. Thou hast vast jaws. Thou hast a vast tongue. Thou hast a vast mouth.[88] Thou hast vast nails. Thou hast vast bristles.‡ Thou hast hair of infinite length. Thou hast a vast stomach. Thou hast matted locks of vast length. Thou art ever cheerful. Thou art of the form of grace. Thou art of the form of belief. Thou art he that has mountains for his bow (or weapons in battle).[89] Thou art he that is full of affection to all creatures like a parent towards his offspring. Thou art he that has no affection. Thou art unvanquished. Thou art exceedingly de-

---

* Literally, crown of the head —T.

† *I. e.*, that succeeds in effecting his Emancipation.—T.

‡ 'Mahānakha' refers to the incarnation of Narasingha or the Man-lion assumed for slaying the Daitya Hiranyakaçipu the father of Prahlāda. 'Mahāroman' has reference to the form of the mighty or vast Boar that the Supreme Deity assumed for raising the submerged Earth on his tusks.—T.

voted to (Yoga) contemplation.* Thou art of the form of the tree of the world.† Thou art he that is indicated by the tree of the world.‡ Thou art never satiated when eating (because of thy being of the form of fire, for of all elements, fire is never satiated with the quantity offered it for consumption). Thou art he that has the Wind for thy vehicle for going from place to place (in consequence of thy identity with fire).[90] Thou art he that rangest over hills and little eminences. Thou art he that has his residence on the mountains of Meru. Thou art the chief of the celestials. Thou hast the Atharvans for thy head. Thou hast the Sāmans for thy mouth. Thou hast the thousand Richs for thy immeasurable eyes.[91] Thou hast the Yajushes for thy feet and hands.§ Thou art the Upanishats. Thou art the entire body of ritual (occurring in the scriptures). Thou art all that is mobile. Thou art he whose solicitations are never unfulfilled. Thou art he who is always inclined to Grace. Thou art he that is of beautiful form.[92] Thou art of the form of the good that one does to another. Thou art that which is dear. Thou art he that always advances towards thy devotees (in proportion as these advance for meeting thee). Thou art gold and other precious metals that are held dear by all. Thy effulgence is like that of burnished gold. Thou art the navel (of the universe). Thou art he that makes the fruits of sacrifices grow (for the benefit of those that perform sacrifices to thy glory). Thou art of the form of that faith and devotion which the righteous have in respect of sacrifices. Thou art the artificer of the universe. Thou art all that is immobile (in the form of mountains and other inert objects).[93] Thou art the two and ten

* 'Mahāmuni' may mean either one that is very 'mananaçilah' or one that is exceedingly taciturn.—T.

† How the world has been likened to a tree has been explained in the Moksha sections of the Cānti Parvan.—T.

‡ This is explained in the sense of no one being able to enquire after Brahma unless he has a body, however subtile, with the necessary senses and understanding. It may also mean that the tree of the world furnishes evidence of the existence of the Supreme Deity.—T.

§ Both the Vernacular translators have rendered many of these names most carelessly. The Burdwan translator takes 'Yaju' as one name and 'Pādabhuja' as another. This is very absurd.—T.

states through which a person passes.* Thou art he that causes fright (by assuming the intermediate states between the ten enumerated). Thou art the beginning of all things. Thou art he that unites Jiva with Supreme Brahma through Yoga. Thou art identifiable with that Yoga which causes such a union between Jiva and Supreme Brahma. Thou art unmanifest (being the deepest stupefaction). Thou art the presiding deity of the fourth age (in consequence of thy identity with lust and wrath and cupidity and other evil passions that flow from that deity).†[94] Thou art eternal Time (because of thy being of the form of that ceaseless succession of birth and death that goes on in the universe). Thou art of the form of the Tortoise.‡ Thou art worshipped by the Destroyer himself.[95] Thou livest in the midst of associates. Thou admittest thy devotees as members of thy Gana. Thou hast Brahman himself for the driver of thy car. Thou sleepest on ashes.§ Thou protectest the universe with ashes.¶ Thou art he whose body is made of ashes.$ Thou art the tree that grants the fruition of all wishes.

---

* These are the ten previously enumerated, beginning with residence in the mother's womb and ending with death as the tenth, with heaven the eleventh and Emancipation the twelfth.—T.

† It should be remembered that Kali which is either the age of sinfulness or the presiding deity of that age and, therefore, a malevolent one, is highly propitious to Emancipation. The world being generally sinful, those who succeed in living righteously in this age or under the sway of this malevolent deity, very quickly attain to heaven if heaven be their object, or Emancipation if they strive for Emancipation.—T.

‡ Implying that thou assumest the form of the constellation called the Great Bear, and moving onward and onward in space causest the lapse of time. This constellation, in Hindu astronomy, is known by the name of 'Ciçumāra' because of its resemblance with the form of a tortoise.—T.

§ The word 'bhashma,' meaning ashes, literally signifies anything that dispels sins, tears off all bonds, and cures every disease. Ashes are used by Sanyāsins for rubbing their bodies as a mark of their having consumed every sin and cut off every bond and freed themselves from all diseases.—T.

¶ Mahādeva gave a quantity of ashes to his devotees for protecting them from sin.—T.

$ *Vide* the story of Mankanaka. The Rishi of that name, beholding

Thou art of the form of those that constitute thy Gana.[96] Thou art the protector of the four and ten regions. Thou transcendest all the regions. Thou art full, (there being no deficiency). Thou art adored by all creatures. Thou art white (being pure and stainless). Thou art he that has his body, speech, and mind, perfectly stainless. Thou art he who has attained to that purity of existence which is called Emancipation. Thou art he who is incapable of being stained by impurity of any kind. Thou art he who has been attained to by the great preceptors of old.[97] Thou residest in the form of Righteousness or duly in the four modes of life. Thou art that Righteousness which is of the form of rites and sacrifices. Thou art of the form of that skill which is possessed by the celestial artificer of the universe. Thou art he who is adored as the primeval form of the universe. Thou art of vast arms. Thy lips are of a coppery hue. Thou art of the form of the vast waters that are contained in the Ocean. Thou art exceedingly stable and fixed (being of the form of mountains and hills).[98] Thou art Kapila. Thou art brown. Thou art all the hues whose mixture produces white. Thou art the period of life. Thou art ancient. Thou art recent. Thou art a Gandharva. Thou art the mother of the celestials in the form of Aditi (or the mother of all things, in the form of Earth). Thou art Garuda, the prince of birds, born of Vinatā by Kaçyapa otherwise called Tārkshya. Thou art capable of being comprehended with ease. Thou art of excellent and agreeable speech.[99] Thou art he that is armed with the battle axe. Thou art he that is desirous of victory. Thou art he that assists others in the accomplishment of their designs.* Thou art an excellent friend.†

---

vegetable juice issuing from his body, began to dance in joy. The whole universe, overpowered by a sympathetic influence, began to dance with him. At this, for protecting the universe, Mahādeva showed himself to Mankanaka and, pressing his fingers, brought out a quantity of ashes, thus showing that his body was made of ashes.—T.

* 'Anukāri' literally means an accessary. In the form of Vishnu or Krishna, the supreme Deity addrest himself to aid Arjuna in slaying Bhishma.—T.

† As Krishna the friend of Arjuna.—T.

Thou art he that bears a Vinā made of two hollow gourds. Thou art of terrible wrath (which thou displayest at the time of the universal dissolution). Thou ownest for thy offspring beings higher than men and deities (*viz.*, Brahman and Vishnu). Thou art of the form of that Vishnu who floats on the waters after the universal dissolution. Thou devourest all things with great ferocity. Thou art he that procreates offspring. Thou art family and race, continuing from generation to generation. Thou art the blare that a Bambu flute gives out. Thou art faultless. Thou art he every limb of whose body is beautiful. Thou art full of illusion. Thou dost good to others without expecting any return. Thou art Wind. Thou art Fire.[100] Thou art the bonds of the world which bind Jiva. Thou art the creator of those bonds. Thou art the tearer of such bonds. Thou art he that dwells with even the Daityas (who are the foes of all sacrifices). Thou dwellest with those that are the foes of all acts (and that have abandoned all acts). Thou art of large teeth, and thou art of mighty weapons.[101] Thou art he that has been greatly censured. Thou art he that stupefied the Rishis dwelling in the Dārukā forest. Thou art he that did good unto even thy detractors, *viz.*, those Rishis residing in the Dārukā forest. Thou art he who dispels all fears and who dispelling all the fears of those Rishis; gave them Emancipation. Thou art he that has no wealth (in consequence of his inability to procure even his necessary wearing apparel. Thou art the lord of the celestials. Thou art the greatest of the gods (in consequence of thy being adored by even Indra and the others that are regarded as the highest of the celestials). Thou art an object of adoration with even Vishnu. Thou art the slayer of those that are the foes of the deities.[102] Thou art he that resides (in the form of the snake Cesha) in the nethermost region.* Thou art invisible but capable of being comprehended, even as the wind which though invisible is perceived by every body. Thou art he whose knowledge extends to the roots of

---

* In the Paurānik myth, the Earth is described as being supported in empty space by a mighty snake called Cesha. Mahādeva is that Cesha otherwise called Ananta.—T.

everything and unto whom all things, even in their inner nature, are known. Thou art the object that is enjoyed by him that enjoys it. Thou art he among the eleven Rudras who is called Ajaikapāt. Thou art the sovereign of the entire universe. Thou art of the form of all Jivas in the universe (in consequence of thy being covered by the three well-known attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas). Thou art he that is not subject to those three attributes. Thou art he that transcends all attributes and is a state of pure existence which is incapable of being described with the aid of any adjective that language can yield.[103] Thou art the prince of physicians called Dhanwantari. Thou art a commet (in consequence of the calamities that flow from thee unto the sinful). Thou art the celestial generalissimo called Skanda. Thou art the king of the Yakshas, called Kuvera, who is thy inseparable associate and who is the Lord of all treasures in the world. Thou art Dhātri. Thou art Cakra. Thou art Vishnu. Thou art Mitra. Thou art Tashtri (the celestial artificer). Thou art the Pole star. Thou art he that upholds all things. Thou art he called Prabhāva amongst the Vasus.[104] Thou art the wind which is capable of going everywhere, (being the thread-soul that connects all things in the universe). Thou art Aryaman. Thou art Savitri. Thou art Ravi. Thou art that ancient king of great celebrity known by the name of Ushangu. Thou art he who protects all creatures in diverse ways. Thou art Māndhātri (because of thy competence to gratify all creatures). Thou art he from whom all creatures start into life.[105] Thou art he who exists in diverse forms. Thou art he who causes the diverse hues to exist in the universe. Thou art he who upholds all desires and all attributes (because of these flowing from thee). Thou art he who has the lotus on thy navel.* Thou art he within his womb are innumerable mighty creatures. Thou art of face as beautiful as the moon. Thou art wind. Thou art fire.[106] Thou art possessed of exceeding might. Thou art endued with tranquillity of soul. Thou art old. Thou art he that is known with

---

* *I. e.*, Mahāvishnu, from whose navel arose the primeval lotus within which was born Brahma.—T.

the aid of Righteousness.* Thou art Lakshmi. Thou art the maker of the field of those actions (by which persons adore the supreme Deity). Thou art he who lives in the field of action. Thou art the soul of the field of action. Thou art the medicine or provoker of the attributes of sovereignty and the others.†[107] All things lie in thee (for, as the Crutis declare, all things become one in thee, thyself being of the nature of that unconciousness which exhibits itself in dreamless slumber). Thou art the lord of all creatures endued with life-breaths. Thou art the god of the gods. Thou art he who is attached to felicity. Thou art Sat (in the form of cause). Thou art Asat (in the form of effect). Thou art he who possesses the best of all things.[108] Thou art he who resides on the mountains of Kailāsa. Thou art he who repairs to the mountains of Himavat. Thou washest away all things beside thee like a mighty current washing away trees and other objects standing on its banks. Thou art the maker of Pushkara and other large lakes and pieces of natural water. Thou art possessed of knowledge of infinite kinds. Thou art the giver of infinite blessings.[109] Thou art a merchant (who conveys the goods of this country to that and brings the goods of that country to this for the convenience of human beings). Thou art a carpenter. Thou art the tree (of the world that supplies the timber for thy axe). Thou art the tree called Vakula (*Mimusops Elengi, Linn*). Thou art the sandal-wood tree (*Santalum album, Linn*). Thou art the tree called Chechada (*Alstonia Scholaris*, syn. *Echitis Scholaris, Roxb*). Thou art he whose neck is very strong. Thou art he whose shoulder-joint is vast. Thou art not restless (but endued with steadiness in all thy acts and in respect of all thy

---

* The Bombay text has a misprint. It reads 'Punya-chanchu' for 'Punya-chunchu.' In printing the Commentary also, the well-known grammatical Sutra 'vittançchunchu &c.,' is printed as 'vrittançchanchu &c.' The Burdwan translator repeats the misprint in his rendering. K. P. Singha avoids it.—T.

† The word 'Kurukshetra' or its abbreviation 'Kuru' means the field or department of action. It means also the actual field, so called, on which king Kuru performed his penances, and which is so sacred that its very dust cleanses a person of all sins.—T.

faculties). Thou art the principal herbs and plants with their produce (in the form of rice and wheat and the other varieties of grain).[110] Thou art he that grants success upon others in respect of the objects upon which they bestow their heart. Thou art all the correct conclusions in respect of both the Vedas and Grammar.* Thou art he who utters leonine roars. Thou art endued with leonine fangs. Thou ridest on the back of a lion for performing thy journeys. Thou ownest a car that is drawn by a lion.[111] Thou art he called the truth of truth.† Thou art he whose dish or plate is constituted by the Destroyer of the universe.‡ Thou art always engaged in seeking the good of the worlds. Thou art he who rescues all creatures from distress (and leads them to the felicity of Emancipation). Thou art the bird called Sāranga. Thou art a new swan. Thou art he who is displayed in beauty in consequence of the crest thou bearest on thy head (like the cock or the peacock). Thou art he who protects the place where assemblies of the wise sit for dispensing justice.[112] Thou art the abode of all creatures. Thou art the cherisher of all creatures. Thou art Day and Night (which are the constituent elements of Eternity). Thou art he that is without fault and, therefore, never censured. Thou art the upholder of all creatures. Thou art the refuge of all creatures. Thou art without birth. Thou art existent.[113] Thou art ever fruitful. Thou art endued with Dhāranā and Dhyāna and Samādhi. Thou art the steed Uchchaiçravas. Thou art the giver of food. Thou art he who upholds the life-breaths of living creatures. Thou art endued with patience. Thou art possessed of intelligence. Thou art endued with exertion and cleverness. Thou art honored by all. Thou art the giver of the fruits of Righteousness and sin. Thou art the cherisher of the senses (for the senses succeed in performing their respective

---

* The Commentator explains that 'Siddhārthah' means 'Siddhāntah,' and that the following compound is its adjective.—T.

† Literally, the Soul of real existence.—T.

‡ People eat off plates of silver or gold or of other metals. Mahādeva has for his plate Kāla or destroyer of the universe. Both the Vernacular translators have erred in rendering this word. K. P. Singha takes the compound as really consisting of two names, &c.—T.

functions in consequence of thee that presidest over them). Thou art the lord of all the luminaries. Thou art all collections of objects. Thou art he whose vestments are made of cow-hides. Thou art he who dispels the grief of his devotees.[114] Thou hast a golden arm. Thou art he who protects the bodies of Yogins who seek to enter their own selves. Thou art he who has reduced to nothingness all his foes.* Thou art he the measure of whose gladness is very great. Thou art he who achieved victory over the deity of desire that is irresistible. Thou art he who has subjugated his senses.[115] Thou art the note called Gāndhāra in the musical octave. Thou art he who has an excellent and beautiful home (in consequence of its being placed upon the delightful mountains of Kailāsa). Thou art he who is ever attached to penances. Thou art of the form of cheerfulness and contentment. Thou art he called vast or infinite.† Thou art he in whose honor the foremost of hymns has been composed. Thou art he whose dancing is characterised by vast strides and large leaps. Thou art he who is adored with reverence by the diverse tribes of Apsaras.[116] Thou art he who owns a vast standard (bearing the device of the bull). Thou art the mountain of Meru. Thou art he who roves among all the summits of that great mountain. Thou art so mobile that it is very difficult to seize thee. Thou art capable of being explained by preceptors to disciples although thou art incapable of being described in words. Thou art of the form of that instruction which preceptors impart to disciples. Thou art he that can perceive all agreeable scents simultaneously or at the same instant of time.[117] Thou art of the form of the porched gates of cities and palaces. Thou art of the form of the moats and ditches that surround fortified towns and give the victory to the besieged garrison. Thou art the Wind. Thou art of the form of fortified cities and towns encompassed by walls and moats. Thou art the prince of all winged creatures, (being, as

---

* The sense is that Mahādeva is the foremost of 'Sādhakas' or worshippers engaged in acquiring a particular object, for he has emaciated or reduced to nothingness all his foes in the form of all passions good and evil. 'Prakarshena tanukritāh arayah kāmādayo yena sah.'—T.

† 'Narah' is thus explained by the Commentator.—T.

thou art, of the form of Garuda. Thou art he who multiplies the creation by union of the opposite sexes. Thou art the first of all in respect of virtues and knowledge. Thou art superior to even him who is the first of all in virtues and knowledge. Thou transcendest all the virtues and knowledge.[118] Thou art eternal and immutable as also dependent on thyself. Thou art the master and protector of the deities and Asuras. Thou art the master and protector of all creatures. Thou art he who wears a coat of mail. Thou art he whose arms are competent to grind all foes. Thou art an object of adoration with even him who is called Suparvan in heaven.*[119] Thou art he who grants the power of bearing or upholding all things.† Thou art thyself capable of bearing all things. Thou art fixed and steady (without being at all unstable). Thou art white or pure (being, as thou art, without any stain or blot). Thou bearest the trident that is competent to destroy (all things).‡ Thou art the grantor of bodies or physical forms unto those that constantly revolve in the universe of birth and death. Thou art more valuable than wealth. Thou art the conduct or way of the righteous (in the form of goodness and courtesy).[120] Thou art he who had torn the head of Brahman after due deliberation (and not impelled by mere wrath). Thou art he who is marked with all those auspicious marks that are spoken of in the sciences of palmistry and padology and phrenology and other branches of knowledge treating of the physical frame as the indicator of mental peculiarities. Thou art that wooden bar which is called the Aksha of a car and, therefore, art thou he who is attached to the car represented by the body. Thou art attached to all things (in consequence of thy pervading all things as their soul). Thou art endued with very great might,

---

* The Commentator explains that he who is called Suparvan in heaven is otherwise called Mahān.—T.

† 'Sarva-sahana-sāmarthya pradah' as the Commentator explains. Hence, it means that Mahādeva is he who makes creatures competent to bear all things, *i. e.*, all griefs and all joys, as also the influence all physical objects that is quietly borne without life being destroyed.—T.

‡ The etymology of 'Hara' is thus explained by the Commentator: 'Hanti iti hā çulah; tam rāti or ādatte.' This is very fanciful.—T.

being as thou art a hero of heroes.[121] Thou art the Veda. Thou art the Smritis, the Itihāsas, the Purānas, and other scriptures. Thou art the illustrious deity of every sacred shrine. Thou art he who has the Earth for his car. Thou art the inert elements that enter into the composition of every creature. Thou art he who imparts life into every combination of those inert elements. Thou art the Pranava and other sacred Mantras that instil life into dead matter. Thou art he that casts tranquil glances. Thou art exceedingly harsh (in consequence of thy being the destroyer of all things).[122] Thou art he in whom are innumerable precious attributes and possessions. Thou hast a body that is red. Thou art he who has all the vast oceans for so many ponds filled for thy drinking.* Thou art the root of the tree of the world. Thou art exceedingly beautiful and shinest with surpassing grandeur. Thou art of the form of ambrosia or nectar. Thou art both cause and effect. Thou art an ocean of penances (being as thou art a great Yogin).[123] Thou art he that is desirous of ascending to the highest state of existence. Thou art he that has already attained to that state. Thou art he who is distinguished for the purity of his conduct and acts and observances. Thou art he who is possessed of great fame (in consequence of the Righteousness of his behaviour). Thou art the ornament of armies (being as thou art of the form of prowess and courage). Thou art he who is adorned with celestial ornaments. Thou art Yoga. Thou art he from whom flow eternal time measured by Yugas and Kalpas. Thou art he who conveys all creatures from place to place.†[124] Thou art of the form of Righteousness and sin and their intermixture (such as are displayed in the successive Yugas). Thou art great and formless. Thou art he who slew the mighty Asura that had approached against the sacred city of Vārānasi in the form of an infuriate elephant of vast proportions. Thou art of the

---

* The sense is this: a 'nipāna' is a shallow pond or ditch where cattle drink. The very oceans are the 'nipānas' of Mahādeva.—T.

† The Commentator thinks that this has reference to the incarnation of 'Trivikrama,' *i. e.*, the dwarf suddenly expanding his form till with two steps he covered Heaven and Earth and demanded space for his third step.—T.

form of death. Thou givest to all creatures such fruition of their wishes as accords with their merits. Thou art approachable. Thou art conversant with all things that are beyond the ken of the senses. Thou art conversant with the Tatwas (and, therefore, thoroughly fixed.[125] Thou art he who incessantly shines in beauty. Thou wearest garlands that stretch down from thy neck to the feet. Thou art that Hara who has the Moon for his beautiful eye. Thou art the salt ocean of vast expanse. Thou art the first three Yugas (*viz.*, Krita, Tretā, and Dwāpara). Thou art he whose appearance is always fraught with advantage to others.[126] Thou art he who has three eyes (in the form of the scriptures, the preceptor, and meditation). Thou art he whose forms are exceedingly subtile (being as thou art the subtile forms of the primal elements). Thou art he whose ears are bored for wearing jewelled Kundalas. Thou art the bearer of matted locks. Thou art the point (in the alphabet) which indicates the nasal sound. Thou art the two dots (in the alphabet) which indicate the sound of the aspirated *H*. Thou art possessed of an excellent face. Thou art the shaft that is shot by the warrior for compassing the destruction of his foe. Thou art all the weapons that are used by warriors. Thou art endued with patience capable of bearing all things.[127] Thou art he whose knowledge has arisen from the cessation of all physical and mental functions.* Thou art he who has become displayed as Truth in consequence of the cessation of all other faculties. Thou art that note which, arising from the region called Gāndhāra, is exceedingly sweet to the ear. Thou art he who is armed with the mighty bow (called Pināka). Thou art he who is the understanding and the desires that exist in all creatures, besides being the supreme upholder of all beings. Thou art he from whom all acts flow.[128] Thou art that wind which rises at the time of the universal dissolution and which is capable of churning the entire universe even as the staff in the hands of the dairy-maid churns the milk in the milk-pot. Thou art he that is full. Thou art he that sees all things. Thou art the sound that arises from slapping palm

---

* *I. e.*, thou art possessed of Yoga-knowledge.—T.

against palm. Thou art he the palm of whose hand serves as the dish or plate whence to take his food. Thou art he who is possessed of an adamantine body. Thou art exceedingly great.[129] Thou art of the form of an umbrella. Thou art he who has an excellent umbrella. Thou art well known to be identical with all creatures. Thou art he who having put forth three feet covered all the universe with two and wanted space for the remaining one. Thou art he whose head is bald. Thou art he whose form is exceedingly ugly and fierce. Thou art he who has undergone infinite modifications and become all things in the universe. Thou art he who bears the well-known badge of Sanyāsa, *viz.*, the stick. Thou art he who has a Kunda. Thou art he who is incapable of being attained to by means of acts.[130] Thou art he who is identical with the green-eyed king of beasts (*viz.*, the lion). Thou art of the form of all the points of the compass. Thou art he who is armed with the thunder. Thou art he who has a hundred tongues. Thou art he who has a thousand feet and thousand heads.* Thou art the lord and chief of the celestials. Thou art he that is made up of all the gods. Thou art the great Master or preceptor.[131] Thou art he who has a thousand arms. Thou art he who is competent to obtain the fruition of every wish. Thou art he whose protection is sought by every one. Thou art he who is the creator of all the worlds. Thou art he who is the great cleanser of all from every sin, in the form of shrines and sacred waters. Thou art he who has three high Mantras.† Thou art the youngest (son of Aditi and Kaçyapa, in the form of the dwarf who is otherwise known by the name of Upendra and who beguiled the Asura Vali of his lordship of the three worlds and restored it to the chief of the celestials). Thou art both black and twany (being of the form which is known as Hari-Hara).[132] Thou art the maker of the Brāhmana's rod.‡ Thou art armed

---

* The two together form one name.—T.

† These are Vija, Cakti, and Kilakāni. A 'kakud' is a hump or elevated place in the body.—T.

‡ The thin bamboo rod in the hand of the Brāhmana is mightier than the thunder-bolt of Indra. The thunder scorches all existing objects upon which it falls. The Brāhmana's rod (which symbolizes the Brāh-

with the hundred-killer, the noose, and the dart. Thou art he that took his birth within the primeval lotus. Thou art he who is endued with a vast womb. Thou art he who has the Vedas in his womb. Thou art he who takes his rise from that infinite waste of waters which succeeds the dissolution of the universe.[133] Thou art he who is endued with rays of effulgent light. Thou art the creator of the Vedas. Thou art he who studies the Vedas. Thou art he who is conversant with the meaning of the Vedas. Thou art devoted to Brahma. Thou art the refuge of all persons devoted to Brahma. Thou art of infinite forms. Thou art the bearer of innumerable bodies. Thou art endued with irresistible prowess.*[134] Thou art of soul or nature that transcends the three universal attributes (of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas). Thou art the lord of all Jivas. Thou art endued with the speed of the wind. Thou art possessed of the fleetness of the mind. Thou art always smeared with sandal-paste. Thou art the end of the stock of the primeval lotus.† Thou art he who brought the celestial cow Surabhi down from a superior station to an inferior one by denouncing a curse upon her.‡ Thou art that Brahman who was unable to see thy end.[135] Thou art adorned with a large wreath of Karnikāra flowers. Thou art adorned with a diadem of blue gems. Thou art the wielder of the bow called Pināka. Thou art the master of that knowledge which treats of Brahma.§ Thou art he who has subjugated his senses by the aid of thy knowledge of Brahma. Thou art he who bearest Gangā on thy head.¶ Thou art the husband of Umā the daughter of

---

mana's might in the form of his curse) blasts even unborn generations. The might of the rod is derived from Mahādeva.—T.

* 'Sayambhuvah Tigmatejāh' is one name. The Commentator explains that Brahman could not look at Mahādeva; hence this reference to his prowess.—T.

† Brahman, after his birth within the primeval lotus, became desirous of seeing the end of the stalk of that lotus. He went on and on, without succeeding to find what he sought. The meaning of the word, therefore, by implication is that Mahādeva is infinite.—T.

‡ K. P. Singha renders this name erroneously.—T.

§ 'Umā' is another name for 'Brahmavidyā.'—T.

¶ Falling from the celestial regions, the river Gangā was held by

Himavat.[136] Thou art mighty (in consequence of thy having assumed the form of the vast Boar for raising the submerged Earth). Thou art he who protects the universe by assuming diverse incarnations. Thou art worthy of adoration. Thou that primeval Being with the equine head who recited the Vedas with a thundering voice. Thou art he whose grace is very great. Thou art the great subjugator. Thou art he who has slain all his foes (in the form of passions). Thou art both white and tawny (being as thou art half male and half female).*[137] Thou art possessed of a body whose complexion is like that of gold.† Thou art he that is of the form of pure joy, (being, as thou art, above the five cases of which Jiva consists, *viz.*, the Anna-maya, the Prāna-maya, the Manomaya, the Vijnāna-maya, and the Ānanda-maya ones). Thou art of a restrained soul. Thou art the foundation upon which rests that Ignorance which is called Pradhāna and which, consisting of the three attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas, is the cause whence the universe has sprung. Thou art he whose faces are turned to every direction.‡ Thou art he who has three eyes (in the forms of the Sun, the Moon, and Fire). Thou art he who is superior to all creatures (in consequence of thy righteousness whose measure is the greatest).[138] Thou art the soul of all mobile and immobile beings. Thou art of the form of the subtile soul (which is incapable of being perceived). Thou art the giver of immortality in the form of Emancipation as the fruit of all acts of righteousness achieved by creatures without the

---

Mahādeva on his head, among his matted locks. At the earnest solicitations, then, of king Bhagiratha, he gave her out so that flowing along the surface of the Earth she met the ocean, first passing over the spot where the ashes of Bhagiratha's ancestors, the sixty thousand sons of king Sagara of the solar race, lay.—T.

* This form is called Hara-Gauri, as explained before.—T.

† Some texts read 'Pritātmā,' implying 'one of contented soul.' The reading noticed by the Commentator is 'Pitātmā,' meaning 'gold-complexioned.' The Burdwan translator takes 'Pritātmā' and 'Paramātmā' as one name. This is not correct.—T.

‡ Mahādeva is represented as possessed of five heads, four on four sides and one above.—T.

desire of fruits.* Thou art the preceptor of even those that are the gods of the gods. Thou art Vasu the son of Aditi. Thou art he who is endued with innumerable rays of light, who brings forth the universe, and who is of the form of that Soma which is drunk in sacrifices.[139] Thou art Vyāsa, the author of the Purānas and other sacred histories. Thou art the creations of Vyāsa's brain (because of thy being identical with the Purānas and other sacred histories) both abridged and unabridged. Thou art the sum total of Jivas. Thou art the Season. Thou art the Year. Thou art the Month. Thou art the Fortnight. Thou art those sacred Days that end or conclude these periods.[140] Thou art the Kalās. Thou art the Kāshthās. Thou art the Lavas. Thou art the Mātrās. Thou art Muhurta and Aha and Kshapā. Thou art the Kshanas.† Thou art the soil upon which the tree of the universe stands. Thou art the seed of all creatures (being of the form of that Unmanifest Chaitanya endued with Māyā or illusion whence all creatures spring). Thou art Mahattatwa. Thou art the sprout of Jiva, (being of the form of Consciousness which springs up after Mahattatwa).[141] Thou art Sat or Effect. Thou art Asat or Cause. Thou art Manifest (being seizable by the senses). Thou art Unmanifest (being unseizable by the senses). Thou art the Father. Thou art the Mother. Thou art the Grandfather. Thou art the door of Heaven (because of thy identity with Penances). Thou art the door of the generation of all creatures (because of thy identity with Desire). Thou art the door of Emancipation (because of thy identity with the absence of Desire which alone can lead to a merging into Brahma). Thou art those acts of righteousness which lead to the felicity of heaven.[142] Thou art Nirvāna (or that cessation of individual or separate existence which is Emancipation). Thou art the gladdener (who gives all kinds of joy to every creature). Thou art that region of Truth (to which they that are foremost in righteousness attain). Thou art superior to even that region of Truth which is attainable by the righteous). Thou art he who is the creator of both the

---

* 'Amritogovrisheçwarah' is one name.—T.

† These are names for different portions of Time.—T.

deities and the Asuras. Thou art he who is the refuge of both the deities and the Asuras.[143] Thou art the preceptor of both the deities and the Asuras (being as thou art of the form of both Vrihaspati and Cukra). Thou art he who is ever victorious. Thou art he who is ever worshipped by the deities and the Asuras. Thou art he who guides the deities and the Asuras even as the Mahāmātra guides the elephant. Thou art the refuge of all the deities and the Asuras.[144] Thou art he who is the chief of both the deities and the Asuras (being as thou art of the form of both Indra and Virochana). Thou art he who is the leader in battle of both the deities and the Asuras (being as thou art of the form of Kārtikeya and Keçi, the leaders of the celestial and the Daitya armies). Thou art he who transcends the senses and shines by himself. Thou art of the form of the celestial Rishis (like Nārada and others). Thou art the grantor of boons unto the deities and the Asuras (in the form of Brahman and Rudra).[145] Thou art he who rules the hearts of the deities and the Asuras. Thou art he into whom the universe enters (when it is dissolved). Thou art the refuge of even him who is the ruler of the hearts of the both the deities and the Asuras. Thou art he whose body is made up of all the deities.* Thou art he who has no Being superior to thee of whom to think. Thou art he who is the inner soul of the deities. Thou art he who has sprung from his own self.[146] Thou art of the form of immobile things. Thou art he who covers the three worlds with three steps of his. Thou art possessed of great learning. Thou art stainless. Thou art he who is freed from the quality of Rajas. Thou art he who transcends destruction. Thou art he in whose honor hymns should be sung. Thou art the master of the irresistible elephant represented by Time. Thou art of the form of that lord of Tigers who is worshipped in the country of the Kalingas.† Thou art he who is called the lion among the deities (in consequence of the preeminence of thy prowess). Thou art he who is the foremost of

* The Crutis declare that Fire is his head, the Sun and the Moon are his eyes, &c.—T.

† Mahādeva has an image in the country of the Kālingas that is called 'Vyaghreçwara.'—T.

men.[147] Thou art endued with great wisdom. Thou art he who first takes a share of the offerings in sacrifices. Thou art imperceptible. Thou art the sum total of all the deities. Thou art he in whom penances predominate. Thou art always in excellent Yoga. Thou art auspicious. Thou art armed with the thunder-bolt. Thou art the source whence the weapons called Prāsas have taken their origin. Thou art he whom thy devotees attain to in diverse ways.[148] Thou art Guha (the celestial generalissimo). Thou art the supreme limit of felicity.* Thou art identical with thy creation. Thou art he who rescues thy creatures from death (by granting them Emancipation). Thou art the cleanser of all including Brahman himself. Thou art of the form of bulls and other horned animals. Thou art he who is fond of mountain summits. Thou art the planet Saturn. Thou art Kuvera the chief of the Yakshas. Thou art complete faultlessness.[149] Thou art he who inspires gladness. Thou art all the celestials united together. Thou art the cessation of all things. Thou art all the duties that appertain to all the modes of life. Thou art he who has an eye on his forehead. Thou art he who sports with the universe as his marble ball. Thou art of the form of deer. Thou art endued with the energy that is of the form of knowledge and penance.[150] Thou art the lord of all immobile things (in the form of Himavat and Meru &c). Thou art he who has subjugated his senses by various regulations and vows. Thou art he whose objects have all been fulfilled. Thou art identical with Emancipation. Thou art different from him whom we worship. Thou hast truth for thy penances. Thou art of a pure heart.[151] Thou art he who presides over all vows and fasts (in consequence of thy being the giver of their fruits). Thou art the highest (being of the form of Turiya). Thou art Brahma. Thou art the highest refuge of thy devotees. Thou art he who transcends all bonds (being Emancipate). Thou art freed from the *linga* body. Thou art endued with every kind of prosperiry. Thou art he who enhances the prosperity of thy devotees. Thou art that which is incessantly undergoing changes !—[152]

---

* 'Kāntāh' is thus explained. 'Kasya sukhasya antah simā.'—T.

"'I have thus, O Krishna, hymned the praises of the illustrious Deity by reciting his names in the order of their importance. Who is there that can hymn the praises of the lord of the universe, that great Lord of all who deserves our adorations and worship and reverence, whom the very gods with Brahman at their head are unable to praise and whom the Rishis also fail to sing?[153] Aided, however, by my devotion to him, and having received his permission, I have praised that Lord of sacrifices, that Deity of supreme puissance, that foremost of all creatures endued with intelligence.[154] By praising with these names that enhance one's auspiciousness the great lord of blessedness, a worshipper of devoted soul and pure heart succeeds in attaining to his own self.[155] These names constitute a hymn that furnishes the best means of attaining to Brahma. With the aid of this hymn one is sure to succeed in attaining to Emancipation. The Rishis and the deities all praise the highest deity by uttering this hymn.[156] Hymned by persons of restrained soul, Mahādeva becomes gratified with those that hymn his praises so. The illustrious deity is always full of compassion towards his devotees. Endued with omnipotence, he it is that gives Emancipation to those that worship him.[157] So also, they among men that are foremost, that are possessed of faith and devotion, hear and recite for others and utter with reverence, the praises of that highest and eternal Lord, *viz.*, Içāna, in all their successive lives and adore him in thought, word, and deed, and adoring him thus at all times, *viz.*, when they are lying or seated or walking or awake or opening the eyelids or shutting them, and thinking of him repeatedly, become objects of reverence with all their fellow men and derive great gratification and exceeding joy.[158-161] When a creature becomes cleansed of all his sins in course of millions of births in diverse orders of Being, it is then that devotion springs up in his heart for Mahādeva.[162] It is through good luck alone that undivided devotion to Bhava who is the original cause (of the universe) fully springs up in the heart of one that is conversant with every mode of worshipping that great Deity.*[163] Such stainless and pure

* 'Undivided,' *i. e.*, having nothing else for its object. 'Sarva-bhā-

devotion to Rudra, that has singleness of purpose and that is simply irresistible in its course, is seldom to be found among even the deities, but never among men.[164] It is through the grace of Rudra that such devotion arises in the hearts of human beings. In consequence of such devotion, men, identifying themselves wholly with Mahādeva, succeed in attaining to the highest success.[165] The illustrious Deity who is always inclined to extend his grace towards them that seek him with humility rescues them from the world that throw themselves with their whole soul upon him.[166] Except the great Deity who frees creatures from rebirth, all other gods constantly nullify the Penances of men, for men have no other source of puissance that is as great as these.*[167] It was even thus that Tandi of tranquil soul, resembling Indra himself in splendour, praised the illustrious Lord of all existent and non-existent things, that great Deity clad in animal skins.[168] This hymn was borne by Brahman himself. Indeed, Brahman had sung it in the presence of Cankara. Thou art a Brāhmana (being conversant with Brahma and devoted to those that are conversant with Brahma). Thou shalt, therefore, comprehend it well.[169] This is cleansing, and washes away all sins. This confers Yoga and Emancipation and heaven and contentment.[170] He who recites this hymn with undivided devotion to Cankara succeeds in attaining to that high end which is theirs that are devoted to the doctrines of the Sānkhya philosophy.[171] That worshipper who recites this hymn daily for one year with singleness of devotion succeeds in obtaining the end that he desires.[172] This hymn is a great mystery. It formerly resided in the breast of Brahman the Creator. Brahman imparted it unto Cakra. Cakra imparted it unto Mrityu.[173] Mrityu imparted it unto the Rudras. From the Rudras Tandi got it. Indeed, Tandi

---

vatah' is 'bhāgyāt.' The Sense is that unless one becomes conversant with all the modes of worshipping Bhava, *i. e.*, in thought, word, and deed, and unless one has especial good luck, one cannot have such devotion to Bhava.—T.

* There are numerous instances of the gods having become alarmed at the penances of men and done their best to nullify those penances by despatching celestial nymphs for attracting them to carnal pleasures.—T.

acquired it in the region of Brahman as the reward of his severe austerities.[174] Tandi communicated it to Cukra, and Cukra of Bhrigu's race communicated it to Gautama. Gautama, in his turn, O descendant of Madhu, communicated it to Vaivaswata-Manu.[175] Manu communicated it unto Nārāyana of great intelligence, numbered among the Sādhyas and held exceedingly dear by him. The illustrious Nārāyana, numbered among the Sādhyas and possessed of glory that knows no diminution, communicated it to Yama.[176] Vaivaswat-Yama communicated it to Nāchiketa. Nāchiketa, O thou of Vrishni's race, communicated it to Mārkandeya.[177] From Mārkandeya, O Janārddana, I obtained it as the reward of my vows and fasts. To thee, O slayer of foes, I communicate that hymn unheard by others.[178] This hymn leads to heaven. It dispels disease and bestows long life. This is worthy of the highest praise, and is consistent with the Vedas!—'

"Krishna continued,—'That person, O Pārtha, who recites this hymn with a pure heart, observing the vow of Brahmacharyya, and with his senses under control, regularly for one whole year, succeeds in obtaining the fruits of a horse-sacrifice Dānavas and Yakshas and Rākshasas and Piçāchas and Yātudhānas and Guhyakas and snakes can do no injury to him.' "[179-180]

Section XVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After Vāsudeva had ceased to speak, the great Yogin, *viz.*, the Island-born Krishna, addressed Yudhishthira, saying,—'O son, do thou recite this hymn consisting of the thousand and eight names of Mahādeva, and let Maheçwara be gratified with thee![1] In former days, O son, I was engaged in the practice of severe austerities on the breast of the mountains of Meru from desire of obtaining a son. It is this very hymn that was recited by me.[2] As the reward of this, I obtained the fruition of all my wishes, O son of Pāndu! Thou wilt also, by reciting this same hymn, obtain from Carva the fruition of all thy wishes![3]—After this, Kapila, the Rishi who promulgated the doctrines that go by

the name of Sānkhya, and who is honored by the gods themselves, said,—I adored Bhava with great devotion for many lives together. The illustrious Deity at last became gratified with me and gave me knowledge that is capable of aiding the acquirer in getting over rebirth![4]—After this, the Rishi named Chāruçirsha, that dear friend of Cakra and known otherwise under the name of Alamvana's son and who is filled with compassion, said,[5]—I, in former days, repaired to the mountains of Gokarna and sat myself to practise severe penances for a hundred years. As the reward of those penances, I obtained from Carva, O son of king Pāndu, a hundred sons, all of whom were born without the intervention of woman, of well-restrained soul, conversant with righteousness, possessed of great splendour, free from disease and sorrow, and endued with lives extending for a hundred thousand years![6-7]—Then the illustrious Vālmiki, addressing Yudhishthira, said,—Once upon a time, in course of a dialectical disputation, certain ascetics that were possessors of the *homa* fire denounced me as one guilty of Brāhmanicide.[8] As soon as they had denounced me as such, the sin of Brāhmanicide, O Bhārata, possessed me. I then, for cleansing myself, sought the protection of the sinless Içāna who is irresistible in energy.[9] I became cleansed of all my sins. That dispeller of all sorrows, *viz.*, the destroyer of the triple city of the Asuras, said unto me,—Thy fame shall be great in the world![10]—Then Jamadagni's son, that foremost of all righteous persons, shining like the Sun with blazing splendour in the midst of that conclave of Rishis, said unto the son of Kunti these words:[11]—I was afflicted with the sin, O eldest son of Pāndu, of Brāhmanicide for having slain my brothers who were all learned Brāhmanas. Purifying myself, I sought the protection, O king, of Mahādeva.[12] I hymned the praises of the great Deity by reciting his names. At this, Bhava became gratified with me, and gave me a battle-axe and many other celestial weapons.[13] And he said unto me,—Thou shalt be freed from sin and thou shalt be invincible in battle. Death himself shall not succeed in overcoming thee, for thou shalt be freed from disease![14]—Even thus did the illustrious and crested Deity of auspicious form said this unto me. Through the grace of that Deity of supreme in-

telligence I obtained all that He had said![15]—Then Viçwāmitra said,—I was formerly a Kshatriya. I paid my adorations to Bhava with the desire of becoming a Brāhmana. Through the grace of that great Deity I succeeded in obtaining the high status, that is so difficult to obtain, of a Brāhmana![16] —Then the Rishi Asita-Devala, addressing the royal son of Pāndu, said,[17]—In former days, O son of Kunti, through the curse of Cakra, all my merit due to the acts of righteousness I had performed, was destroyed. The puissant Mahādeva it was who kindly gave me back that merit together with great fame and a long life![18]—The illustrious Rishi Gritsamada, the dear friend of Cakra, who resembled the celestial preceptor Vrihaspati himself in splendour, addressing Yudhishthira of Ajamidha's race, said,[19]—The inconceivable Cakra had, in days of yore, performed a sacrifice extending for a thousand years. While that sacrifice was going on, I was engaged by Cakra in reciting the Sāmans. Varishtha, the son of that Manu who sprung from the eyes of Brahman, came to that sacrifice and addressing me, said,—O foremost of regenerate persons, the Rathantara is not being recited properly by thee![20-21] O best of Brāhmanas, cease to earn demerit by reading so faultily, and with the aid of thy understanding do thou read the Sāmans correctly. O thou of wicked understanding, why dost thou perpetrate such sin that is destructive of Sacrifice![22]—Having said these words, the Rishi Varishtha, who was very wrathful, gave way to that passion and addressing me once more, said,—Be thou an animal divested of intelligence, subject to grief, ever filled with fear, and a denizen of trackless forests destitute of both wind and water and abandoned by other animals. Do thou thus pass ten thousand years with ten and eight hundred years in addition![23-24] That forest in which thou shalt have to pass this period will be destitute of all holy trees and will, besides, be the haunt of Rurus and lions. Verily, thou shalt have to become a cruel deer plunged in excess of grief![25]—As soon as he had said these words, O son of Prithā, I immediately became transformed into a deer. I then sought the protection of Maheçwara. The great Deity said unto me,[26]—Thou shalt be freed from disease of every kind, and besides immortality

shall be thine. Grief shall never afflict thee. Thy friendship with Indra shall remain unchanged, and let the sacrifices of both Indra and thyself increase.[27] The illustrious and puissant Mahādeva favors all creatures in this way. He is always the great dispenser and ordainer in the matter of the happiness and sorrow of all living creatures.[28] That illustrious Deity is incapable of being comprehended in thought, word, or deed. O son, O thou that art the best of warriors, (through the grace of Mahādeva) there is none that is equal to me in learning![29]—After this, Vāsudeva, that foremost of all intelligent men, once more said,—Mahādeva of golden eyes was gratified by me with my penances.[30] Gratified with me, O Yudhishthira, the illustrious Deity said unto me,—Thou shalt, O Krishna, through my grace, become dearer to all persons than wealth which is coveted by all![31] Thou shalt be invincible in battle. Thy energy shall be equal to that of Fire!—Thousands of other boons Mahādeva gave me on that occasion.[32] In a former incarnation I adored Mahādeva on the Manimantha mountain for millions of years.[33] Gratified with me, the illustrious Deity said unto me these words:—Blessed be thou, do thou solicit what boons thou wishest![34]—Bowing unto him with a bend of my head, I said these words,—If the puissant Mahādeva has been gratified with me,[35] then let my devotion to him be unchanged, O Içāna! Even this is the boon that I solicit.—The great God said unto me,—Be it so!—and disappeared there and then.'[36]

"Jaigishavya said,—'O Yudhishthira, formerly in the city of Vārānasi, the puissant Mahādeva, searching me out, conferred upon me the eight attributes of sovereignty!'[37]

"Garga said,—'O son of Pāndu, gratified with me in consequence of a mental sacrifice which I had performed, the great God bestowed upon me, on the banks of the sacred stream Saraswati, that wonderful science, *viz.*, the knowledge of Time, with its four and sixty branches.[38] He also bestowed upon me a thousand sons, all possessed of equal merit and fully conversant with the Vedas. Through his grace, their periods of life as also mine have become extended to ten millions of years!'[39]

"Parāçara said,—'In former times I gratified Sarva, O king. I then cherished the desire of obtaining a son that would

be possessed of great ascetic merit, endued with superior energy, and addressed to high Yoga, that would earn world-wide fame,[40] arrange the Vedas, and become the home of prosperity, that would be devoted to the Vedas and the Brāhmanas, and be distinguished for compassion. Even such a son was desired by me from Maheçwara.[41] Knowing that this was the wish of my heart, that foremost of deities said unto me,—Through the fruition of that object of thine which thou wishest to obtain from me, thou shalt have a son of the name of Krishna.[42] In that creation which shall be known after the name of Sāvarni-Manu, that son of thine shall be reckoned among the seven Rishis. He shall arrange the Vedas, and be the propagator of Kuru's race.[43] He shall, besides, be the author of the ancient histories and do good to the universe. Endued with severe penances, he shall, again, be the dear friend of Cakra.[44] Freed from diseases of every kind, that son of thine, O Parāçara, shall, besides, be immortal!—Having said these words, the great Deity disappeared there and then. Even such is the good, O Yudhishthira, that I have obtained from that indestructible and immutable, God endued with the highest penances and supreme energy.'[45]

"Māndavya said,—'In former times, though not a thief yet wrongly suspected of theft, I was impaled (under the orders of a king). I then adored the illustrious Mahādeva who said unto me,[46]—Thou shalt soon be freed from impalement and live for millions of years. The pangs due to impalement shall not be thine.[47] Thou shalt also be freed from every kind of affliction and disease. And since, O ascetic, this body of thine hath sprung from the fourth foot of Dharma, (*viz.*, Truth),[48] thou shalt be unrivalled on Earth. Do thou make thy life fruitful. Thou shalt, without any obstruction, be able to bathe in all the sacred waters of the Earth.[49] And after the dissolution of thy body, I shall, O learned Brāhmana, ordain that thou shalt enjoy the pure felicity of heaven for unending Time!—Having said these words unto me, the adorable Deity having the bull for his vehicle,[50] *viz.*, Maheçwara of unrivalled splendour and clad in animal skin, O king, disappeared there and then with all his associates.'[51]

"Gālava said,—'Formerly I studied at the feet of my preceptor Viçwāmitra. Obtaining his permission I set out for home with the object of seeing my father. My mother (having become a widow), was filled with sorrow and, weeping bitterly, said unto me,[52]—Alas, thy father will never see his son who, adorned with Vedic knowledge, has been permitted by his preceptor to come home and who, possessed of all the graces of youth, is endued with self-restraint![53]—Hearing these words of my mother, I became filled with despair in respect of again beholding my sire. I then paid my adorations with a rapt soul to Maheçwara who, gratified with me, showed himself to me and said,[54]—Thy sire, thy mother, and thyself, O son, shall all be freed from death. Go quickly and enter thy abode; thou shalt behold thy sire there![55]—Having obtained the permission of the illustrious god, I then repaired to my home, O Yudhishthira, and beheld my father, O son, coming out after having finished his daily sacrifice.[56] And he came out, bearing in his hands a quantity of Homa-fuel and Kuça grass and some fallen fruits. And he seemed to have already taken his daily food for he had washed himself properly.[57] Throwing down those things from his hand, my father, with eyes bathed in tears (of joy), raised me, for I had prostrated myself at his feet, and embracing me smelt my head O son of Pāndu, and said,—By good luck, O son, art thou seen by me. Thou hast come back, having acquired knowledge from thy preceptor!' "[58]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these marvellous and most wonderful feats of the illustrious Mahādeva recited by the ascetics, the son of Pāndu became amazed.[59] Then Krishna, that foremost of all intelligent persons, then spoke once more unto Yudhishthira, that ocean of righteousness, like Vishnu speaking unto Puruhuta.[60]

"Vāsudeva said,—'Upamanyu, who seemed to blaze with effulgence like the Sun, said unto me,—Those sinful men that are stained with unrighteous deeds.[61] do not succeed in attaining to Içāna. Their dispositions stained by the attributes of Rajas and Tamas, they can never approach the Supreme Deity. It is only those regenerate persons who are of cleansed souls that succeed in attaining to the Supreme Deity.[62] Even if a

person lives in the enjoyment of every pleasure and luxury, yet if he be devoted to the Supreme Deity he comes to be regarded as the equal of forest recluses of cleansed souls.[63] If Rudra be gratified with a person, he can confer upon him the status of either Brahma or of Keçava or of Cakra with all the deities under him, or the sovereignty of the three worlds.[64] Those men, O sire, who worship Bhava even mentally, succeed in freeing themselves from all sins and attain to a residence in heaven with all the gods.[65] A person who raises houses to their foundations and destroys tanks and lakes, indeed, who devastates the whole universe, does not become stained with sin if he adores and worships the illustrious Deity of three eyes.[66] A person that is destitute of every auspicious indication and that is stained by every sin, destroys all his sins by meditating upon Civa.[67] Even worms and insects and birds, O Keçava, that devote themselves to Mahādeva, are enabled to rove in perfect fearlessness.[68] Even this is my settled conviction that those men who devote themselves to Mahādeva become certainly emancipated from rebirth![69]—After this, Krishna again addressed Yudhishthira the son of Dharma in the following words.[70]

"Vishnu said,—'Aditya, Chandra, Wind, Fire, Heaven, Earth, the Vasus, the Viçwedevas, Dhātri, Aryyaman, Cukra, Vrihaspati, the Rudras, the Sāddhyas, Varuna, Gopa,[71] Brahman, Cakra, Maruts, the Upanishats that teach a knowledge of Brahma, Truth, the Vedas, the Sacrifices, Sacrificial Presents, Brāhmanas reciting the Vedas, Soma, Sacrificer, the shares of the deities in sacrificial offerings, clarified butter poured in sacrifices, Rakshā, Dikshā, all kinds of restraints in the form of vows and fasts and rigid observances,[72] Swāhā, Vashat, the Brāhmanas, the celestial cow, the foremost acts of righteousness, the wheel of Time, Strength, Fame, Self-restraint, the Steadiness of all persons endued with intelligence, all acts of goodness and the reverse, the seven Rishis,[73] Understanding of the foremost order, all kinds of excellent touch, the success of all (religious) acts, the diverse tribes of the deities, those beings that drink heat, those that are drinkers of Soma, Likhas, Suyāmas, Tushitā, all creatures having Mantras for their bodies,[74] Ābhāsuras, those beings that live upon scents only, those that live

upon vision only, those that restrain their speech, those that restrain their minds, they that are pure, they that are capable of assuming diverse forms through Yoga-puissance, those deities that live on touch (as their food), those deities that subsist on vision and those that subsist upon the butter poured in sacrifices,[75] those beings that are competent to create by fiats of their will the objects they require, they that are regarded as the foremost ones among the deities, and all the other deities, O Ājamida, the Suparnas, the Gandharvas, the Piçāchas, the Dānavas, the Yakshas, the Chāranas, the snakes,[76] all that is gross and all that is exceedingly subtile, all that is soft and all that is not subtile; all sorrows and all joys, all sorrow that comes after joy and all joy that comes after sorrow, the Sānkhya philosophy, Yoga, and that which transcends objects which are regarded as foremost and very superior,—all adorable things, all the deities, and all the protectors of the universe who entering into the physical forces sustain and uphold this ancient creation of that illustrious Deity,—have sprung from that Creator of all creatures![77-78] All this that I have mentioned is grosser than that which the wise think of with the aid of Penances. Indeed, that subtile Brahma is the cause of life. I bow my head in reverence to it. Let that immutable and indestructible Master, always adored by us, grant us desirable boons![79] That person who, subjugating his senses and purifying himself, recites this hymn, without interruption in respect of his vow, for one month, succeeds in obtaining the merit that is attached to a Horse-sacrifice.[80] By recitidg this hymn the Brāhmana succeeds in acquiring all the Vedas; the Kshatriya becomes crowned with victory, O son of Prithā; the Vaiçya, in obtaining wealth and cleverness; and the Cudra, in winning happiness here and a good end hereafter.[81] Persons of great fame, by reciting this prince of hymns that is competent to cleanse every sin and that is highly sacred and purifying, set their hearts on Rudra.[82] A man by reciting this prince of hymns succeeds in living in heaven for as many years as there are pores in his body.' "[83]

Section XIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I ask, O chief of Bharata's race, what is the origin of the declaration, about discharging all duties jointly, that is made on the occasion of a person's taking the hand of his spouse in marriage?[1] Is that declaration in respect of discharging all duties together, due only to what is laid down by the great Rishis in days of yore, or does it refer to the duty of begetting offspring from religious motives, or has it reference to only the carnal pleasure that is expected from such a congress of the sexes?[2] The doubt that fills my mind in respect of this is very great. I verily think that the declaration to which I refer is contrary to the natural impulses that lead to a union of the sexes. That which is called in this world the union for practising all duties together ceases with death and is not to be seen to subsist hereafter.[3] This union for practising all duties together leads to heaven. But heaven, O grandsire, is attained to by persons that are dead. Of a married couple it is seen that only one dies at a time. Where does the other then remain? Do tell me this![4] Men attain to diverse kinds of fruits by practising diverse kinds of duties. The occupations, again, to which men betake themselves are of diverse kinds. Diverse, again, are the hells to which they go in consequence of such diversity of duties and acts.[5] Women, in particular, the Rishis have said, are false in behaviour. When human beings are such, and when women in particular have been declared in the ordinances to be false, how, O sire, can there be a union between the sexes for purposes of practising all duties together?[6] In the very Vedas one may read that women are false. The word 'Duty,' as used in the Vedas, seems to have been coined in the first instance for general application (so that it is applied to practices that have no merit in them). Hence the application of that word to the rites of marriage is, instead of being correct, only a form of speech forcibly applied where application it has none.*[7] The subject

* I expand this Verse a little for bringing out the sense clearly.—T.

seems to me to be inexplicable although I reflect upon it incessantly. O grandsire, O thou of great wisdom, it behooveth thee to expound this to me in detail, clearly and according to what has been laid down in the Cruti. In fact, do thou explain to me what it is, what its characteristics are, and the way in which it has come to pass !'*[8-9]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse between Ashtāvakra and the lady known by the name of Diçā.[10] In days of yore Ashtāvakra of severe penances, desirous of marriage, begged the high-souled Rishi Vadānya of his daughter.[11] The name by which the damsel was known was Suprabhā. In beauty she was unrivalled on Earth. In virtues, dignity, conduct, and manners, she was superior to all girls.[12] By a glance alone that girl of beautiful eyes had robbed him of his heart, even as a delightful grove in spring, adorned with flowers, robs the spectator of his heart.[13] The Rishi addressed Ashtāvakra and said,—Yes, I shall bestow my daughter on thee. Listen, however, to me. Make a journey to the sacred North. Thou wilt see many things there !†—[14]

"'Ashtāvakra said,—It behooveth thee to tell me what I shall see in that region. Indeed, I am ready to execute whatever command may be laid upon me by thee !—[15]

"'Vadānya said,—Passing over the dominions of the Lord of Treasures thou wilt cross the Himavat mountains. Thou wilt then behold the plateau on which Rudra resides. It is inhabited

---

* The subject propounded by Yudhishthira is this: marriage is always spoken of as a union of the sexes for practising all religious duties together. The king asks, how can this be. Marriage, as seems to him, is a union sought for pleasure. If it be said that the two individuals married together are married for practising religious duties jointly, such practice is suspended by death. Persons act differently and attain to different ends. There is, therefore, no prospect of a reunion after death. When, again, one of them dies, the joint practice of duties can no longer take place. The other objections, urged by Yudhishthira, to the theory of marriage being a union of the sexes for only practising religious duties jointly, are plain.—T.

† The sense is that if after returning from thy journey to that region thou claimest thy bride, thou mayst obtain her from me. Thy journey will be a sort of trial or test to which I mean to put thee.—T.

by Siddhas and Chāranas.[16] It abounds with the associates of Mahādeva, frolicsome and fond of dance and possessed of faces of diverse forms. It is peopled with also many Piçāchas, O master, of diverse forms and all daubed with fragrant powders of diverse hues, and dancing with joyous hearts in accompaniment with instruments of different kinds made of brass. Surrounded by these who move with electric rapidity in the mazes of the dance or refrain at times altogether from forward or backward or transverse motion of every kind, Mahādeva dwells there.[17-18] That delightful spot on the mountains, we have heard, is the favourite abode of the great Deity. It is said that that great god as also his associates are always present there.[19] It was there that the goddess Umā had practised the severest austerities for the sake of (obtaining for her lord) the three-eyed Deity. Hence, it is said, that spot is much liked by both Mahādeva and Umā.[20] In days of yore, there, on the heights of the Mahāpārçwa mountains, which are situate to the north of the mountains sacred to Mahādeva, the Seasons, and the last Night, and many deities, and many human beings also (of the foremost order),[21] in their embodied forms, had adored Mahādeva.* Thou shalt cross that region also in thy northward journey.[22] Thou wilt then see a beautiful and charming forest blue of hue and resembling a mass of clouds. There, in that forest, thou wilt behold a beautiful female ascetic looking like Cree herself.[23] Venerable for age and highly blessed, she is in the observance of the Dikshā. Beholding her there thou shouldst duly worship her with reverence.[24] Returning to this place after having beheld her, thou wilt take the hand of my daughter in marriage. If thou canst make this agreement, proceed then on thy journey and do what I command thee!—[25]

"'Ashtāvakra said,—So be it! I shall do thy bidding. Verily, I shall proceed to that region of which thou speakest, O thou of righteous soul! On thy side, thou shouldst make thy words accord with truth!—'[26]

"Bhishma continued,—'The illustrious Ashtāvakra set out on his journey. He proceeded more and more towards the north

* 'Kāla-rātri' is the Night that precedes the universal dissolution.—T.

and at last reached the Himavat mountains peopled by Siddhas and Chāranas.*[27] Arrived at the Himavat mountains, that foremost of Brāhmanas then came upon the sacred river Vāhudā whose waters produce great merit.[28] He bathed in one of the delightful *Tirthas* of that river, which was free from mud, and gratified the deities with oblations of water. His ablutions being over, he spread a quantity of Kuça grass and laid himself down upon it for resting awhile at his ease.†[29] Passing the night in this way, the Brāhmana rose with the day. He once more performed his ablutions in the sacred waters of the Vāhudā and then ignited his *homa* fire and worshipped it with the aid of many foremost of Vedic mantras.‡[30] He then worshipped with due rites both Rudra and his spouse Umā, and rested for some more time by the side of that lake in the course of the Vāhudā whose shores he had reached. Refreshed by such rest, he set out from that region and then proceeded towards Kailāsa.[31] He then beheld a gate of gold that seemed to blaze with beauty. He saw also the Mandākini and the Nalini of the high-souled Kuvera the Lord of Treasures.$[32] Beholding the Rishi arrived there, all the Rākshasas having Manibhadra for their head, who were engaged in protecting that lake abounding with beautiful lotuses, came out in a body for welcoming and honoring the illustrious traveller.[33] The Rishi worshipped in return those Rākshasas of terrible prowess and asked them to report, without delay, his arrival unto the Lord of Treasures.[34] Requested by him to do this, those Rākshasas, O king, said unto him,—king Vaiçravana, without waiting for the intelligence, is coming of his own accord to thy presence![35] The illustrious Lord of Treasures is well acquainted with the

---

* The Commentator thinks that 'uttarām uttarām &c..' means the *sacred* north.—T.

† 'Tirtha' means here a Ghāt, *i. e.*, an easy descent from the bank for access to the water.—T.

‡ 'Pradhānatah' is explained by the Commentator to mean 'with foremost of Vedic mantras.'—T.

$ 'Mandākini' is that part of the river Gangā which flows through Kailāsa; while Nalini is a celebrated lake owned by the king of the Yakshas, so called because of the lotuses which occur there in plenty.—T.

object of this thy journey. Behold him,—that blessed Master,—who blazes with his own energy![36]—Then king Vaiçravana, approaching the faultless Ashtāvakra, duly enquired about his welfare. The usual enquiries of politeness being over, the Lord of Treasures then addressed the regenerate Rishi, saying,[37]—Welcome art thou here! Do tell me what it is thou seekest at my hands! Inform me of it, I shall, O regenerate one, accomplish whatever thou mayst bid me to accomplish![38] Do thou enter my abode as pleases thee, O foremost of Brāhmanas! Duly entertained by me, and after thy business is accomplished, thou mayst go without any obstacles being placed in thy way![39]—Having said these words, Kuvera took the hand of that foremost of Brāhmanas and led him into his palace. He offered him his own seat as also water to wash his feet and the Arghya of the usual ingredients.[40] After the two had taken their seats, the Yakshas of Kuvera headed by Manibhadra, and many Gandharvas and Kinnaras, also sat down before them.[41] After all of them had taken their seats, the Lord of Treasures said these words,—Understanding what thy pleasure is, the diverse tribes of Apsaras will commence their dance.[42] It is meet that I should entertain thee with hospitality and that thou shouldst be served with proper ministrations!—Thus addressed, the ascetic Ashtāvakra said, in a sweet voice,—Let the dance proceed![43]—Then Urvarā and Miçrakeçi, and Rambhā and Urvaçi, and Alumvushā and Ghritāchi, and Chitrā and Chitrāngadā and Ruchi,[44] and Manoharā and Sukeçi and Sumukhi and Hāsini and Prabhā, and Vidyutā and Praçami and Dāntā and Vidyotā and Rati,[45]—these and many other beautiful Apsaras began to dance. The Gandharvas played on diverse kinds of musical instruments.[46] After such excellent music and dance had commenced, the Rishi Ashtāvakra of severe penances unconsciously passed a full celestial year there in the abode of king Vaiçravana.*[47] Then king Vaiçravana said unto the Rishi,—O learned Brāhmana, behold, a little more than a year has passed away since thy arrival here.[48] This music and dance, especially known by the name of Gandharva, is a stealer of the

* 'Divye' is excellent 'Gandharve,' meaning music and dance.—T.

heart (and of time). Do thou act as thou wishest, or let this go on if that be thy pleasure![49] Thou art my guest and, therefore, worthy of adoration. This is thy house. Do thou set thy commands. We are all bound to thee![50]—The illustrious Ashtāvakra, thus addressed by king Vaiçravana, replied unto him, with a pleased heart, saying,—I have been duly honored by thee! I desire now, O Lord of Treasures, to go hence![51] Indeed, I am highly pleased. All this befits thee, O Lord of Treasures! Through thy grace, O illustrious one, and agreeably to the command of the high-souled Rishi Vadānya,[52] I shall now proceed to my journey's end. Let growth and prosperity be thine!—Having said these words, the illustrious Rishi set out of Kuvera's abode and proceeded northwards.[53] He crossed the Kailāsa and the Mandara as also the golden mountains. Beyond those high and great mountains is situate that excellent region where Mahādeva dressed as an humble ascetic has taken up his residence.[54] He circumambulated the spot, with a collected mind, bending his head in reverence the while. Descending then on the Earth, he considered himself sanctified for having obtained a sight of that holy spot which is the abode of Mahādeva.[55] Having circumambulated that mountain thrice, the Rishi, with face turned towards the north, proceeded with a joyous heart.[56] He then beheld another forest that was very delightful in aspect. It was adorned with the fruits and roots of every season, and it resounded with the music of winged warblers numbering by thousands.[57] There were many delightful groves throughout the forest. The illustrious Rishi then beheld a charming hermitage.[58] The Rishi saw also many golden hills decked with gems and possessed of diverse forms. In the begemmed soil he saw many lakes and tanks also.[59] And he saw diverse other objects that were exceedingly delightful. Beholding these things, the mind of that Rishi of cleansed soul became filled with joy.[60] He then saw a beautiful mansion made of gold and adorned with gems of many kinds. Of wonderful structure, that mansion surpassed the palace of Kuvera himself in every respect.[61] Around it there were many hills and mounts of jewels and gems. Many beautiful cars and many heaps of diverse kinds of jewels also were visible in that place.[62]

The Rishi beheld there the river Mandākini whose waters were strewn with many Mandāra flowers. Many gems also were seen there that were self-luminous, and the soil all around was decked with diamonds of diverse species.[63] The palatial mansion which the Rishi saw contained many chambers whose arches were embellished with various kinds of stones. Those chambers were adorned also with nets of pearls interspersed with jewels and gems of different species.[64] Diverse kinds of beautiful objects, capable of stealing the heart and the eye, surrounded that palace. That delightful retreat was inhabited by numerous Rishis.[65] Beholding these beautiful sights all around, the Rishi began to think of where he would take shelter. Proceeding then to the gate of the mansion, he uttered these words:[66]—Let those that live here know that a guest has come (desirous of shelter)!—Hearing the voice of the Rishi, a number of maidens came out together from that palace.[67] They were seven in number, O king. Of different styles of beauty, all of them were exceedingly charming. Every one of those maidens upon whom the Rishi cast his eyes stole his heart.[68] The sage could not, with even his best efforts, control his mind. Indeed, at the sight of those maidens of very superior beauty, his heart lost all its tranquillity. Seeing himself yielding to such influences, the Rishi made a vigorous effort and possessed as he was of great wisdom he at last succeeded in controlling himself.[69] Those damsels then addressed the Rishi, saying,—Let the illustrious one enter!—Filled with curiosity in respect of those exceedingly beautiful damsels as also of that palatial mansion, the regenerate Rishi entered as he was bidden. Entering the mansion he beheld an old lady, with indications of decrepitude, attired in white robes and adorned with every kind of ornament. The Rishi blessed her, saying,—Good be to you!—The old lady returned his good wishes in proper form. Rising up, she offered a seat to the Rishi.[70-72] Having taken his seat, Ashtāvakra said,—Let all the damsels go to their respective quarters. Only let one stay here. Let that one remain here who is possessed of wisdom and who has tranquillity of heart. Indeed, let all the others go away at their will![73]—Thus addressed, all those damsels circumambulated the Rishi,

and then left the chamber. Only that aged lady remained there.[74] The day quickly passed and night came. The Rishi, seated on a splendid bed, addressed the old lady, saying,—O blessed lady, the night is deepening. Do thou address thyself to sleep![75]—Their conversation being thus put a stop to by the Rishi, the old lady laid herself down on an excellent bed of great splendour.[76] Soon after, she rose from her bed and pretending to tremble with cold, left it for going to the bed of the Rishi.[77] The illustrious Ashtāvakra welcomed her with courtesy. The lady, however, stretching her arms, tenderly embraced the Rishi, O foremost of men![78] Beholding the Rishi quite unmoved and as inanimate as a piece of wood, she became very sorry and began to converse with him.[79] There is no pleasure, save that which waits upon desire, which women can derive from a person of the other sex! I am now under the influence of desire. I seek thee for that reason. Do thou seek me in return![80] Be cheerful, O learned Rishi, and unite thyself with me! Do thou embrace me, O learned one, for I desire thee greatly![81] O thou of righteous soul, even this union with me is the excellent and desirable reward of those severe penances which thou hast undergone! At the first sight I have become disposed to seek thee. Do thou also seek me![82] All this wealth, and everything else of value that thou seest here, are mine. Do thou verily become the lord of all this with my person and heart![83] I shall gratify every wish of thine! Do thou sport with me, therefore, in these delightful forests, O Brāhmana, that are capable of granting every wish![84] I shall yield thee complete obedience in everything, and thou shalt sport with me according to thy pleasure! All objects of desire that are human or that appertain to heaven shall be enjoyed by us.[85] There is no pleasure more agreeable to women (than that which is derivable from the companionship of a person of the other sex). Verily, congress with a person of the opposite sex is the most delicious fruit of joy that we can reap?[86] When urged by the god of desire, women become very capricious. At such times they do not feel any pain even if they walk over a desert of burning sand!—[87]

"'Ashtāvakra said,—O blessed lady, I never approach one

that is another's spouse. One's congress with another man's wife is condemned by persons conversant with the scriptures on morality.[88] I am an utter stranger to enjoyments of every kind. O blessed lady, know that I have become desirous of wedlock for obtaining offspring. I swear by truth itself![89] Through the aid of offspring righteously obtained, I shall proceed to those regions of felicity which connot be attained without such aid. O good lady, know what is consistent with morality, and knowing it, desist from thy efforts!—[90]

"'The lady said,—The very deities of wind and fire and water, or the other celestials, O regenerate one, are not so agreeable to women as the deity of desire. Verily, women are exceedingly fond of sexual congress.[91] Among a thousand women, or, perhaps, among hundreds of thousands, sometimes only one may be found that is devoted to her husband.[92] When under the influence of desire, they care not for family or father or mother or brother or husband or sons or husband's brother, (but pursue the way that desire points out).[93] Verily, in pursuit of what they consider happiness, they destroy the family (to which they belong by birth or marriage) even as many queenly rivers eat away the banks that contain them. The Creator himself had said this, quickly marking the faults of women!*—'[94]

"Bhishma continued,—'The Rishi, bent upon finding out the faults of women, then addressed that lady, saying,—Cease to speak to me in this strain! Yearning springs from liking. Tell me what (else) I am to do!†[95]—That lady then said in return, —O illustrious one, thou shalt see according to time and place (as to whether I have anything agreeable in me)! Do thou

---

* A woman is said to destroy a family by staining it with her unchastity.—T.

† Both the Vernacular translators have totally misunderstood the second line. 'Asyatām' is explained by the Commentator as 'tushnim sthiyatām.' 'Ruchitah-chcchandah' means 'chcchandah' or yearning arises from 'ruchi' or like. What the Rishi says is 'as yet I do not yearn after thy company for I do not like thee.' Of course, if, after staying with thee for sometime, I begin to like thee, I may then feel a yearning for thee!'—T.

only live here (for sometime), O highly blessed one, and I shall regard myself amply rewarded!"[96]—Thus addressed by her, the regenerate Rishi, O Yudhishthira, expressed his resolution to comply with her request, saying,—Verily, I shall dwell with thee in this place as long as I can venture to do so.[97]—The Rishi then, beholding that lady afflicted with decrepitude, began to reflect earnestly on the matter. He seemed to be even tortured by his thoughts.[98] The eyes of that foremost of Brāhmanas failed to derive any delight from those parts of that lady's person whereupon they were cast. On the other hand, his glances seemed to be dispelled by the ugliness of those particular limbs.[99]—This lady is certainly the goddess of this palace. Has she been made ugly through some curse? It is not proper that I should hastily ascertain the cause of this.[100]—Reflecting upon this in the secresy of his heart, and curious to know the reason, the Rishi passed the rest of that day in an anxious state.[101] The lady then addressed him, saying,—O illustrious one, behold the aspect of the Sun reddened by the evening clouds! What service shall I do unto thee?[102]—The Rishi addressed her, saying,—'Fetch water for my ablutions! Having bathed, I shall say my evening prayers, restraining my tongue and the senses!—'"[103]

Section XX.

"Bhishma said,—'Thus commanded, the lady said,—Be it so!—She then brought oil (for rubbing the Rishi's body therewith) and a piece of cloth for his wear during the ablutions.[1] Permitted by the ascetic, she rubbed every part of his body with the fragrant oil she had brought for him.[2] Gently was the Rishi rubbed, and when the process of rubbing was over, he proceeded to the room set apart for the performance of ablutions. There he sat upon a new and excellent seat of great splendour.*[3] After the Rishi had taken his seat upon it, the old lady began to wash his person with her own soft hands whose touch was

---

* 'Utsāditah' is explained by the Commentator to mean 'chālitah.' Here, however, I think it does not mean so.—T.

exceedingly agreeable.[4] One after another in due order, the lady rendered the most agreeable services to the Rishi in the matter of his ablutions. Between the lukewarm water with which he was washed, and the soft hands that were employed in washing him,[5] the Rishi of rigid vows failed to understand that the whole night had passed away in the process. Rising from the bath, the Rishi became highly surprised.[6] He saw the Sun risen above the horizon on the East. He was amazed at this and asked himself,—Was it really so or was it an error of the understanding ?[7]—The Rishi then duly worshipped the god of a thousand rays. This done, he asked the lady as to what he should do. The old lady prepared some food for the Rishi that was as delicious to the taste as Amrita itself.[8] In consequence of the delicious character of that food the Rishi could not take much. In taking that little, however, the day passed away and evening came.[9] The old lady then asked the Rishi to go to bed and sleep. An excellent bed was assigned to the Rishi and another was occupied by herself.[10] The Rishi and the old lady occupied different beds at first, but when it was midnight, the lady left her own bed for coming to that of the Rishi.[11]

"'Ashtāvakra said,—O blessed lady, my mind turns away from sexual congress with one who is the spouse of another. Leave my bed, O good lady. Blessed be thou, do thou desist from this of thy own accord !*—'[12]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus dissuaded by that Brāhmana with the aid of his self-restraint, the lady answered him, saying,—I am my own mistress ! In accepting me thou wilt incur no sin !—[13]

"'Ashtāvakra said,—Women can never be their own mistresses. This is the opinion of the Creator himself, *viz.*, that a woman never deserves to be independent !—[14]

"'The lady said,—O learned Brāhmana, I am tortured by desire. Mark my devotion to thee ! Thou incurrest sin by refusing to accost me lovingly.—[15]

---

* The last words may also mean—'Go to thy own bed and rest by thyself !'—T.

"'Ashtāvakra said,—Diverse faults drag away the man that acts as he likes. As regards myself, I am able to control my inclinations by self-restraint. O good lady, do thou return to thy own bed !—[16]

"'The lady said,—I bow to thee, bending my head. It behooves thee to show me thy grace ! O sinless one, I prostrate myself before thee, do thou become my refuge ![17] If, indeed, thou seest such sin in congress with one that is not thy spouse, I yield myself unto thee ! Do thou, O regenerate one, accept my hand in marriage ![18] Thou wilt incur no sin. I tell thee truly ! Know that I am my own mistress ! If there be any sin in this, let it be mine alone ! My heart is devoted to thee. I am my own mistress. Do thou accept me !—[19]

*'Ashtāvakra said,—How is it, O good lady, that thou art thy own mistress ? Tell me the reason of this. There is not a single woman in the three worlds that deserves to be regarded as the mistress of her own self.[20] The father protects her while she is a maiden. The husband protects her while she is in youth. Sons protect her when she is aged. Women can never be independent as long as they live !—[21]

"'The lady said,—I have, since my maidenhood, adopted the vow of Brahmacharyya. Do not doubt it. I am still a maid. Do thou make me thy wife. O Brāhmana, do not kill this devotion of mine to thee !—[22]

"'Ashtāvakra said,—As thou art inclined to me so am I inclined to thee ! There is this question, however, that should be settled. Is it true that by yielding to my inclinations I shall not be regarded as acting in opposition to what the Rishi (Vadānya) wishes ?[23] This is very wonderful ! Will this lead to what is beneficial ? Here is a maiden adorned with excellent ornaments and robes ![24] She is exceedingly beautiful ! Why did decrepitude cover her beauty so long ? At present she looks like a beautiful maiden. There is no knowing what form she may take hereafter ![*25] I shall never swerve from

---

* The Commentator takes the words 'kimivottaram bhavet' to imply 'what will be better for me ? Shall I adhere to Vadānya's daughter or shall I take this girl ?' I think this is rather far-fetched.—T.

that restraint which I have over desire and the other passions or from contentment with what I have already got. Such swerving does not seem to be good. I shall keep myself united with truth !*—' "[26]

SECTION XXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me why had that lady no fear of Ashtāvakra's curse although Ashtāvakra was endued with great energy ? How also did Ashtāvakra succeed in coming back from that place ?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Ashtāvakra asked her, saying,—How dost thou succeed in altering thy form so ? Thou shouldst not say anything that is untrue. I wish to know this. Do thou speak truly before a Brāhmana !—[2]

" 'The lady said,—O best of Brāhmanas, wherever thou mayst reside, in heaven or on Earth, this desire of union between the sexes is to be observed. O thou of infallible prowess, listen, with concentrated attention, to what it all is ![3] This trial was devised by me, O sinless one, for testing thee aright, O thou of infallible prowess, thou hast subjugated all the worlds by thy strength of mind.[4] Know that I am the embodiment of the Northern point of the campass. Thou hast seen the lightness of the female character. Even women that are aged are tortured by the desire of sexual union.[5] The Grandsire himself and all the deities with Indra have been pleased with thee. The object for which thy illustrious self has come here (is known to me).[6] O foremost of regenerate persons, thou hast been despatched hither by the Rishi Vadānya—the father of thy bride—in order that I may instruct thee. Agreeably to the wishes of that Rishi I have already instructed thee ![7] Thou wilt return home in safety. Thy journey back will not be toilsome. Thou wilt obtain for wife the girl thou hast chosen.

---

* By 'Cakti' is implied 'kāmādidamanasāmarthyam' and by 'dhriti' purvaprāptasya atyāgah.' The last half of the last line of Verse 25 is rendered erroneously by both the Vernacular translators. Adhering to the Commentator's explanation, they add their own interpretation which is different. This sort of jumble is very peculiar.—T.

She will bear thee a son.[8] Through desire I had solicited thee. Thou madest me the very best answer. The desire for sexual union is incapable of being transcended by the three worlds.[9] Go back to thy quarters, having achieved such merit. What else is there that thou wishest to hear (from me)? I shall discourse on it, O Ashtāvakra, in accordance with the truth.[10] I was gratified by the Rishi Vadānya in the first instance for thy sake, O regenerate ascetic! For the sake of honoring him, I have said all this to thee!—'[11]

'Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of hers, the regenerate Ashtāvakra joined his hands in a reverential attitude. He then solicited the lady for her permission to go back. Obtaining the permission he sought, he came back to his own asylum.[12] Resting himself for sometime at home and obtaining the permission of his kinsmen and friends, he then, in a proper way, proceeded, O delighter of the Kurus, to the Brāhmana Vadānya.[13] Welcomed with the usual enquiries by Vadānya, the Rishi Ashtāvakra, with a well-pleased heart, narrated all that he had seen (in course of his sojourn to the North).[14] He said,—Commanded by thee I proceeded to the mountains of Gandhamādana. In the regions lying to the north of those mountains I beheld a very superior goddess.[15] I was received by her with courtesy. She named you in my hearing, and also instructed me in various matters. Having listened to her I have come back, O lord![16]—Unto him that said so, the learned Vadānya said,—Take my daughter's hand according to due rites and under the proper constellations. Thou art the fittest bride-groom I can select for the girl!—'[17]

"Bhishma continued,—'Ashtāvakra said,—So be it!—and took the hand of the girl. Indeed, the highly righteous Rishi, having espoused the girl, became filled with joy.[18] Having taken as his wife that beautiful damsel, the Rishi continued to dwell in his own asylum, freed from (mental) fever of every kind.' "[19]

SECTION XXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Whom have the eternal Brāhmanas called a proper object of gifts? Is a Brāhmana that bears the indications of the order of life he follows to be regarded as such, or is one divested of such indications to be so regarded?*'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'O monarch, it has been said that gifts should be made unto a Brāhmana that adheres to the duties of his own order, whether he bears the indications of Brahmacharyya or not, for both are faultless, *viz.*, he that bears such indications and he that is divested of them.'[2]

"Yudhishthira said,—'What fault does an uncleansed person incur if he makes gifts of sacrificial butter or food or with great devotion, unto persons of the regenerate order?'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Even one that is most destitute of self-restraint becomes, without doubt, cleansed by devotion. Such a man, O thou of great splendour, becomes cleansed in respect of every act (and not with reference to gift alone).'[4]

"Yudhishthira said,—'It has been said that a Brāhmana that is sought to be employed in an act having reference to the deities, should never be examined. The learned, however, say that with respect to such acts as have reference to the Pitris, the Brāhmana that is sought to be employed, should be examined (in the matter of both his conduct and competence).[5]

"Bhishma said,—'As regards acts that have reference to the deities, these fructify not in consequence of the Brāhmana that is employed in doing them but through the grace of the deities themselves. Without doubt, those persons that perform sacrifices obtain the merit attached to those acts, through the grace of the deities.†[6] The Brāhmanas, O chief of the Bharatas, are

---

* 'Linga' means signs or indications. A 'Lingin' is one that bears signs and indications. 'Brāhmanam' (in both places) means one conversant with Brahma. The first, that is, 'Lingin' implies either a Brahmachārin or a Sanyāsin that always bears the marks of his order. An 'Alingin' is one that is divested of such marks. Yudhishthira's question is, who, amongst these, should be considered worthy of gifts?—T.

† The sense is that with respect to acts having reference to only the Pitris the conduct and competence of Brāhmanas should be examined.—T.

always utterers of Brahma. The Rishi Mārkandeya, endued with intelligence, said this in days of yore, in all the worlds.'[7]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Why, O grandsire, are these five, *viz*, he that is a stranger, he that is endued with learning (connected with the duties of his own order), he that is connected by marriage, he that is endued with penances, and he that is addicted to the performance of sacrifices, regarded as proper persons ?'*[8]

"Bhishma said,—'The first three, *viz.*, strangers, relatives, and ascetics, when possessed of these attributes, *viz.*, purity of birth, addiction to religious acts, learning, compassion, modesty, sincerity, and truthfulness, are regarded as proper persons. The other two, *viz.*, men of learning and those addicted to sacrifices, when endued with five of these attributes, *viz.*, purity of birth, compassion, modesty, sincerity, and truthfulness, are also regarded as proper persons.[9] Listen now to me, O son of Prithā, as I recite to thee the opinions of these four persons of mighty energy, *viz.*, the goddess Earth, the Rishi Kāçyapa, the deity of fire, and the ascetic Mārkandeya.[10]

" 'The Earth said,—As a clod of mud, when thrown into the great ocean, quickly dissolves away, even so every kind of sin disappears in the three high attributes of officiation at sacrifices, teaching, and receiving of gifts.†—[11]

" 'Kāçyapa said,—The Vedas with their six branches, the Sānkhya philosophy, the Purānas, and high birth, these fail to rescue a regenerate person if he falls away from good conduct.‡—[12]

" 'Agni said,—That Brāhmana who, engaged in study and

---

* The Commentator explains that five persons are mentioned in the question of Yudhishthira. K. P. Singha omits one. The Burdwan translator repeats the words of the original without any explanation. I take 'sammandhi' to mean relatives by marriage. To this day, in all India, people make gifts or presents unto sons-in-law, &c.—T.

† The sense is that no sin can touch a Brāhmana who observes these three acts. These three acts are efficacious in washing away all sins. The Commentator points out that by this the attributes of birth and knowledge are referred to.—T.

‡ By good conduct is implied modesty and candour.—T.

regarding himself learned, seeks with the aid of his learning to destroy the reputation of others, falls away from righteousness, and comes to be regarded as dissociated from truth. Verily regions of felicity hereafter are never attained to by such a person of destructive genius.—[13]

" 'Mārkandeya said,—If a thousand Horse-sacrifices and Truth were weighed in the balance, I do not know whether the former would weigh even half as heavy as the latter.—'[14]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having spoken these words, those four persons, each of whom is endued with immeasurable energy, *viz.*, the goddess Earth, Kāçyapa, Agni, and Bhrigu's son armed with weapons, quickly went away.'[15]

"Yudhishthira said,—'If Brāhmanas observant of the vow of Brahmacharyya in this world eat, soliciting the same, the offerings one makes (unto one's deceased ancestors in Crāddhas), I ask, can the Crāddha be regarded well-performed if the performer actually makes over those offerings unto such Brāhmanas.'[16]

"Bhishma said,—'If, having practised the vow of Brahmacharyya for the prescribed period (of twelve years) and acquired proficiency in the Vedas and their branches, a Brāhmana himself solicits the offerings made in Crāddhas and eats the same, he is regarded to fall away from his vow. The Crāddha, however, is not regarded as stained in any way.'[17]

"Yudhishthira said,—'The wise have said that duty or righteousness has many ends and numerous doors. Tell me, O grandsire, what however are the settled conclusions in this matter.'*[18]

"Bhishma said,—'Abstention from injury to others, truthfulness, the absence of wrath (forgiveness), compassion, self-restraint, and sincerity or candour, O monarch, are the indications of Righteousness.[19] There are persons who wander over the Earth, praising righteousness but without practising what they preach and engaged all the while in sin, O king.[20] He who

---

* 'Anekāntam' is explained by the Commentator as 'Anekaphalākāram,' *i. e.*, of diverse kinds of fruits. The fruits attainable by a correct discharge of duties are of diverse kinds, because the objects of those duties, called 'Pātras' are of various kinds.—T.

gives unto such persons gold or gems or kine or steeds, has to sink in hell and there subsist for ten years, eating the while the fæces[21] of such persons as live upon the flesh of dead kine and buffalos, of men called Pukkasas, of others that live in the outskirts of cities and villages, and of men that publish, under the influence of wrath and folly, the acts and omissions of others.*[22] Those foolish men who do not give unto a Brāhmana observant of the vow of Brahmacharyya the offerings made in Crāddhas (unto one's deceased ancestors), have to go, O monarch, into regions of great misery.'[23]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, what is superior to Brahmacharyya? What is the highest indication of virtue? What is the highest kind of purity?'[24]

"Bhishma said,—'I tell thee, O son, that abstention from honey and meat is even superior to Brahmacharyya. Righteousness lies within boundaries or in restraint. The best indication of Righteousness is Renunciation (which is also the highest kind of purity.'†[25]

"Yudhishthira said,—'In what time should one practise Righteousness? In what time should wealth be sought? In what time should pleasure be enjoyed? O grandsire, do tell me this.'[26]

---

* Verse 22 contains 4 substantives in the genetive plural. All these are connected with 'vishthām' in the previous Verse. The Commentator points this out clearly. 'Those living in the outskirts of towns and villages' are tanners and other low castes. 'They who publish the acts and omissions of others' are regarded as very vile persons, equivalent to such low caste men as have been mentioned above. It is difficult to differ from the Commentator, but it seems that the genetives in Verse 22 are used for datives, in which case the meaning would be that 'they who give unto such persons shall also sink into hell.' The Burdwan translator gives a ridiculous verson of Verse 22.—T.

† The Bengal reading 'Brahmacharyya' is better than the Bombay reading of that word in the accusative. Bhishma apparently gives two answers. These, however, involve three. By 'maryyādā' is meant boundaries or limits. The duties of men have known bounds. To transgress those bounds would be to transgress duty. The highest indication of Righteousness is 'çamah' or absence of desire for all worldly objects; hence Renunciation.—T.

"Bhishma said,—'One should earn wealth in the first part of one's life. Then should one earn Righteousness, and then enjoy pleasure. One should not, however, attach oneself to any of these.[27] One should regard the Brāhmanas, worship one's preceptor and seniors, show compassion for all creatures, be of mild disposition and agreeable speech.[28] To utter falsehood in a court of justice, to behave deceitfully towards the king, to act falsely towards preceptors and seniors, are regarded as equivalent (in heinousness) to Brāhmanicide.[29] One should never do an act of violence to the king's person. Nor should one ever strike a cow. Both these offences are equivalent to the sin of fœticide.[30] One should never abandon one's (*homa*) fire. One should also never cast off one's study of the Vedas. One should never assail a Brāhmana by words or acts. All these offences are equivalent to Brāhmanicide.'[31]

"Yudhishthira said,—'What kind of Brāhmanas should be regarded as good? Who are those Brāhmanas by making presents unto whom one may acquire great merit? What kind of Brāhmanas are they whom one should feed? Tell me all this, O grandsire!'[32]

"Bhishma said,—'Those Brāhmanas that are freed from wrath, that are devoted to acts of righteousness, that are firm in Truth, and that practise self-restraint, are regarded as good. By making gifts unto them one acquires great merit.[33] One wins great merit by making presents unto such Brāhmanas as are free from pride, capable of bearing everything, firm in the pursuit of their objects, endued with mastery over their senses, devoted to the good of all creatures, and disposed to be friendly towards all.[34] One earns great merit by making gifts unto such Brāhmanas as are free from cupidity, as are pure of heart and conduct, possessed of learning and modesty, truthful in speech, and observant of their own duties as laid down in the scriptures.[35] The Rishis have declared that Brāhmana to be a deserving object of gifts who studies the four Vedas with all their branches and is devoted to the six well-known duties (laid down in the scriptures). One acquires great merit by making gifts unto Brāhmanas possessed of such qualifications.[36] The man who makes gifts unto a deserving Brāhmana multiplies

his merit a thousand fold. A single righteous Brāhmana possessed of wisdom and Vedic lore, observant of the duties laid down in the scriptures, and distinguished by purity of behaviour, is competent to rescue a whole race.*[37] One should make gifts of kine and horses and wealth and food and other kinds of articles unto a Brāhmana that is possessed of such qualifications. By making such gifts unto such persons one earns great happiness in the next world.[38] As I have already told thee, even one such Brāhmana is fully competent to rescue the entire race to which the giver belongs. What need I say, therefore, O dear son, of the merit of making gifts unto many Brāhmanas of such qualifications? In making gifts, therefore, one should always select the object to whom the gift is to be made.[39] Hearing of a Brāhmana possessed of proper qualifications and regarded with respect by all good people, one should invite him even if he resides at a distance and welcoming him when he arrives, one should worship him by all means in his power.' "[40]

SECTION XXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I desire thee, O grandsire, to tell me what the ordinances are that have been laid down by the acts touching the deities and the (deceased) ancestors on occasions of Crāddhas.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Having purified oneself (by baths and other purificatory acts) and then going through the well-known auspicious rites, one should carefully do all acts relating to the deities in the forenoon, and all acts relating to the *Pitris* in the afternoon.[2] What is given to men should be given in the midday with affection and regard. That gift which is made untimely is appropriated by Rākshasas.†[3] Gifts of articles that

---

* *I. e.*, by making gifts unto even a single such Brāhmana, one rescues all the ancestors and descendants of one's race.—T.

† One makes gifts unto the deities, unto the *Pitris*, and unto human beings. There is a time for each kind of gift. If made untimely, the gift, instead of producing any merit, becomes entirely futile if not sinful. Untimely gifts are appropriated by Rākshasas. Even food that is

have been leapt over by any one, or been licked or sucked, that are not given peacefully, that have been seen by women that are impure in consequence of their season having come, do not produce any merit. Such gifts are regarded as the portions of Rākshasas.[4] Gifts of articles that have been proclaimed before many people or from which a portion has been eaten by a Cudra, or that have been seen or licked by a dog, form portions of Rākshasas.[5] Food which is mixed with hair or in which there are worms, or which has been stained with spittle or saliva or which has been gazed at by a dog or into which tear-drops have fallen or which has been trodden upon, should be known as forming the portion of Rākshasas.[6] Food that has been eaten by a person incompetent to utter the syllable Om, or that has been eaten by a person bearing arms, O Bhārata, or that has been eaten by a wicked person, should be known to form the portion of Rākshasas.*[7] The food that is eaten by a person from which a portion has already been eaten by another, or which is eaten without a part thereof having been offered to deities and guests and children, is appropriated by Rākshasas. Such stained food, if offered to the deities and *Pitris* is never accepted by them but is appropriated by Rākshasas.[8] The food that is offered by the three regenerate classes in Crāddhas in which Mantras are either not uttered or uttered incorrectly and in which the ordinances laid down in the scriptures are not complied with, if distributed to guests and other people, is appropriated by Rākshasas.[9] The food that is distributed to guests without having been previously dedicated to the deities or the Pitris with the aid of libations on the sacred fire, or which has been stained in consequence of a portion thereof having been eaten by a person that is wicked or of irreligious behaviour, should be known to form the portion of Rākshasas.[10]

---

taken untimely, does not strengthen the body but goes to nourish the Rākshas and other evil beings.—T.

* *I. e.*, any food, a portion of which has been eaten by any of these persons, is unworthy of being given away. If given, it is appropriated by Rākshasas. One incompetent to utter *Om* is, of course, a Cudra.—T.

" 'I have told thee what the portions are of the Rākshasas. Listen now to me as I lay down the rules for ascertaining who the Brāhmana is that is deserving of gifts.*[11] All Brāhmanas that have been excasted (on account of the commission of heinous sins), as also Brāhmanas that are idiots and out of mind, do not deserve to be invited to Crāddhas in which offerings are made to either the deities or the *Pitris*.[12] That Brāhmana who is afflicted with leucoderma, or he that is destitute of virility, or he that has got leprosy, or he that has got phthisis, or he that is labouring under epilepsy (with delusions of the sensorium), or he that is blind, should not, O king, be invited.†[13] Those Brāhmanas that practise the calling of physicians, those that receive regular pay for serving the images of deities established by the rich, or live upon the service of the deities, those that are observant of vows from pride or other false motives, and those that sell Soma, do not deserve to be invited.[14] Those Brāhmanas that are, by profession, vocalists, or dancers or players or instrumental musicians, or reciters of sacred books, or warriors, and athletes, do not, O king, deserve to be invited.[15] Those Brāhmanas who pour libations on the sacred fire for Cudras, or who are preceptors of Cudras, or who are servants of Cudra masters, do not deserve to be invited.[16] That Brāhmana who is paid for his services as preceptor, or who attends as a pupil upon the lectures of some preceptor because of some allowance that is granted to him, does not deserve to be invited, for both of them are regarded as sellers of Vedic lore.[17] That Brāhmana who has been once induced to accept the gift of food in a Crāddha at the very outset, as also he who has married a Cudra wife, even if possessed of every kind of knowledge, does not deserve to be invited.‡[18] Those

* The speaker, by first mentioning who are unworthy, means to point out those that are worthy.—T.

† 'Apasmāra' is a peculiar kind of epilepsy in which the victim always thinks that he is pursued by same monster who is before his eyes. When epilepsy is accompanied by same delusion of the sensorium, it comes to be called by Hindu physicians 'Apasmāra.'—T.

‡ An 'Agrani' or 'Agradāni' is that Brāhmana unto whom the food and other offerings made to the Preta in the first Crāddha are given away. Such a person is regarded as fallen.—T.

Brāhmanas that are destitute of their domestic fire, and they that attend upon corpses, they that are theives, and they that have otherwise fallen away, do not, O king, deserve to be invited.*[19] Those Brāhmanas whose antecedents are not known or are vile, and they that are Putrikā-putras, do not, O king, deserve to be invited on occasions of Crāddhas.†[20] That Brāhmana who gives loans of money, or he who subsists upon the interest of the loans given by him, or he who lives by the sale of living creatures, does not deserve, O king, to be invited.[21] Persons who have been subjugated by their wives, or they who live by becoming the paramours of unchaste women, or they who abstain from their morning and evening prayers, do not deserve, O king, to be invited to Crāddhas.[22]

"'Listen now to me as I mention who the Brāhmana is that has been ordained for acts done in honor of the deities and the Pitris. Indeed, I shall tell thee what those merits are in consequence of which one may become a giver or a recipient of gifts in Crāddhas (notwithstanding the faults mentioned above).‡[23] Those Brāhmanas that are observant of the rites and ceremonies laid down in the scriptures, or they that are possessed of merit, or they that are conversant with the Gāyatri, or they that are observant of the ordinary duties of Brāhmanas, even if they happen to betake themselves to agriculture for a living, are capable, O king, of being invited to Crāddhas.[24] If a Brāhmana happens to be well-born, he deserves to be invited to Crāddhas notwithstanding his profession of arms for fighting the battles of others.$ That Brāhmana, however, O son, who

---

* When corpses are taken to crematoria, certain rites have to be performed upon them before they can be consumed. Those Brāhmanas that assist at the performance of those rites are regarded as fallen.—T.

† Sometimes the father of a daughter bestows her upon a bridegroom under the contract that the son born of that daughter by her husband should be the son of the daughter's father. Such a son, who is dissociated from the race of his own father, is called a Putrikā-putra.—T.

‡ 'Anugraham' is that merit in consequence of which faults become neutralised and the stained per son may come to be regarded as deserving.—T.

$ As Drona, Açwatthāman, Kripa, Rāma, and others.—T.

happens to betake himself to trade for a living should be discarded (even if possessed of merit).[25] That Brāhmana who pours libations every day on the sacred fire, or who resides in a fixed habitation, who is not a theif and who does the duties of hospitality to guests arrived at his house, deserves, O king, to be invited to Crāddhas.[26] That Brāhmana, O chief of Bharata's race, who recites the Sāvitri morning, noon, and night, or who subsists upon eleemosynary charity, who is observant of the rites and ceremonies laid down in the scriptures for persons of his order, deserves, O king, to be invited to Crāddhas.[27] That Brāhmana who having earned wealth in the morning becomes poor in the afternoon, or who poor in the morning becomes wealthy in the evening, or who is destitute of malice, or is stained by a minor fault, deserves, O king, to be invited to Crāddhas.*[28] That Brāhmana who is destitute of pride or sin, who is not given to dry disputation, or who subsists upon alms obtained in his rounds of mendicancy from house to house; deserves, O king, to be invited to sacrifices.[29] One who is not observant of vows, or who is addicted to falsehood (in both speech and conduct), who is a thief, or who subsists by the sale of living creatures or by trade in general, becomes worthy of invitation to Crāddhas, O king, if he happen to subsequently drink Soma in a sacrifice.[30] That man who having acquired wealth by foul or cruel means subsequently spends it in adoring the deities and discharging the duties of hospitality, becomes worthy, O king, of being invited to Crāddhas.[31] The wealth that one has acquired by the sale of Vedic lore, or which has been earned by a woman, or which has been gained by meanness (such as giving false evidence in a court of law), should never be given to Brāhmanas or spent in making offerings to the Pitris.[32] That Brāhmana, O chief of Bharata's race, who upon the completion of a Crāddha that is performed with his aid, refuses to utter the words *yukta*, incurs the sin of swearing

---

* 'Uditāstamita' means one who having earned wealth spends it all in gifts. 'Astamitodita' is one who though poor at first succeeds in earning wealth afterwards; *i. e.*, one who having become rich, keeps that wealth for spending it on good purposes.—T.

falsely in a suit for land.*[33] The time for performing the Crāddha, O Yudhishthira, is that when one obtains a good Brāhmana and curds and ghee and the sacred day of the new moon, and the meat of wild animals such as deer and others.†[34] Upon the completion of a Crāddha performed by a Brāhmana the word Swadhā should be uttered. If performed by a Kshatriya the words that should be uttered are—*Let thy Pitris be gratified !*[35]—Upon the completion of a Crāddha performed by a Vaiçya, O Bhārata, the words that should be uttered are,—Let everything become inexhaustible !—Similarly, upon the conclusion of a Crāddha performed by a Cudra, the word that should be uttered is *Swasti.*—As regards a Brāhmana, the declaration with respect to *Punyāham* should be accompanied with the utterance of the syllable Om. In the case of a Kshatriya, such declaration should be without the utterance of the syllable Om. In the acts performed by a Vaiçya, the words that should be uttered, instead of the syllable Om, are,—Let the deities be gratified.‡—Listen now to me as I tell thee the rites that should be performed, one after another, conformably to the ordinances, (in respect of all the orders).[36-38] All the rites that go by the name of *Jātakarma*, O Bhārata, are indispensable in the case of all the three orders (that are regenerate). All these rites, O Yudhishthira, in the case of both Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas as also in that of Vaiçyas, are to be performed with the aid of Mantras.[39] The girdle of a Brāhmana should be made of Munja

---

* Upon the completion of a Crāddha, the Brāhmana who is officiating at it should utter the words *yukta* which means well-applied. Certain other words such a *Swadhā*, &c., have to be uttered. The meaning is that the Brāhmana who assists the performer of the Crāddha by reciting the Mantras should, upon completion, say unto the performer that the Crāddha *is* well-performed. As the custom is, these words are still uttered by every Brāhmana officiating at Crāddhas.—T.

† K. P. Singha wrongly renders the word 'somakshayah' as equivalent to 'somarasah.'—T.

‡ Upon the conclusion of a Crāddha or other rites, the Brāhmana who officiates at it, addresses certain other Brāhmanas that are invited on the occasion and says,—Do you say *Punyāham.*—The Brāhmanas addressed say,—Om, let it be *Punyāham !*—By 'Punyāham' is meant 'sacred day.'—T.

grass. That for one belonging to the royal order should be a bowstring. The Vaiçya's girdle should be made of the Valwaji grass. Even this is what has been laid down in the scriptures.[40] Listen now to me as I expound to thee what constitutes the merits and faults of both givers and recipients of gifts.[41] A Brāhmana becomes guilty of a dereliction of duty by uttering a falsehood. Such an act on his part is sinful. A Kshatriya incurs four times and a Vaiçya eight times the sin that a Brāhmana incurs by uttering a falsehood.[42] A Brāhmana should not eat elsewhere, having been previously invited by a Brāhmana. By eating at the house of the person whose invitation has been posterior in point of time, he becomes inferior and even incurs the sin that attaches to the slaughter of an animal on occasions other than those of sacrifices.*[43] So also, if he eats elsewhere after having been invited by a person of the royal order or a Vaiçya, he falls away from his position and incurs half the sin that attaches to the slaughter of an animal on occasions other than those of sacrifices.[44] That Brāhmana, O king, who eats on occasions of such acts as are performed in honor of the deities or the Pitris by Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas, without having performed his ablutions, incurs the sin of uttering an untruth for a cow.[45] That Brāhmana, O king, who eats on occasions of similar acts performed by persons belonging to the three higher orders, at a time when he is impure in consequence of either a birth or a death among his cognates, and knowing that he is impure or through temptation, incurs the same sin.†[46] He who lives upon wealth obtained under false pretences like that of sojourns to sacred places or who solicits the giver for wealth pretending that he would spend it in religious acts, incurs, O monarch, the sin of

---

* The fact is, the slaughter of animals in a sacrifice leads to no sin, but if slaughtered for nothing (*i. e.*. for purposes of food only), such slaughter leads to sin.—T.

† One is said to become impure when a birth or a death occurs among one's cognates of near degree. The period of impurity varies from one day to ten days in case of Brāhmanas. Other periods have been prescribed for the other orders. During the period of impurity one cannot perform one's daily acts of worship, &c.—T.

uttering a falsehood.*[47] That person, belonging to any of the three higher orders, O Yudhishthira, who at Crāddhas and on other occasions distributes food with the aid of Mantras, unto such Brāhmanas as do not study the Vedas or as are not observant of vows or as have not purified their conduct, certainly incurs sin.'[48]

"Yudhishthira said,—'I desire, O grandsire, to know who those persons are by giving unto whom the things dedicated to the deities and the Pitris, one may earn the amplest rewards.'[49]

"Bhishma said,—'Do thou, O Yudhishthira, feed those Brāhmanas whose spouses reverently wait for the remnants of the dishes of their husbands like tillers of the soil waiting in reverence for timely showers of rain.[50] By making gifts unto those Brāhmanas that are always observant of pure conduct, O king, that are emaciated through abstention from all luxuries and even full meals, that are devoted to the observance of such vows as lead to the emaciation of the body, and that approach givers with the desire of obtaining gifts, one earns great merit.[51] By making gifts unto such Brāhmanas as regard conduct in the light of food, as regard conduct in the light of spouses and children, as regard conduct in the light of strength, as regard conduct in the light of their refuge for crossing this world and attaining to felicity in the next, and as solicit wealth only when wealth is absolutely needed, one earns great merit.[52] By making gifts unto those persons, O Yudhishthira, that, having lost everything through theives or oppressors, approach the giver, one acquires great merit.†[53] By making gifts unto such Brāhmanas as solicit food from the hands of even a poor person of their order who has just got something from others, one earns great merit.[54] By making gifts unto such Brāhmanas

---

* In this country, to this day, there are many persons that go about begging, stating that they desire to go to Beneras or other places of the kind. Sometimes alms are sought on the ground of enabling the seeker to invest his son with the sacred thread or perform his father's Crāddha, &c. The Rishi declares such practices to be sinful.—T.

† Literally 'that are afraid of theives and others.' The sense, of course, is 'that have suffered at the hands of theives and others and are still trembling with fear.'—T.

as have lost their all in times of universal distress and as have been deprived of their spouses on such occasions, and as come to givers with solicitations for alms, one acquires great merit.[55] By making gifts unto such Brāhmanas as are observant of vows, and as place themselves voluntarily under painful rules and regulations, as conform in their conduct to the declarations laid down in the Vedas, and as come to solicit wealth for spending it upon the rites necessary to complete their vows and other observances, one earns great merit.[56] By making gifts unto such Brāhmanas as live at a great distance from the practices that are observed by the sinful and the wicked, as are destitute of strength for want of adequate support, and as are very poor in earthly possessions, one earns great merit.[57] By making gifts unto such Brāhmanas as have been robbed of all their possessions by powerful men but as are perfectly innocent, and as desire to fill their stomachs any how, without, that is, any scruples respecting the quality of the food they take, one earns great merit.[58] By making gifts unto such Brāhmanas as beg on behalf of others that are observant of penances and devoted to them, and as are satisfied with even small gifts, one earns great merit.[59] Thou hast now, O bull of Bharata's race, heard what the declarations are of the scriptures in respect of the acquisition of great merit by the making of gifts. Listen now to me as I expound what those acts are that lead to hell or heaven.[60] They, O Yudhishthira, that speak an untruth on occasions other than those when such untruth is needed for serving the purpose of the preceptor or for giving the assurance of safety to a person in fear of his life, sink into hell.*[61] They

---

* The two exceptions have been much animadverted upon by unthinking persons. I have shown that according to the code of morality that is in vogue among people whose Christianity and civilisation are unquestionable, a lie may sometimes be honorable. However casuists may argue, the world is agreed that a lie for saving life and even property under certain circumstances, and for screening the honor of a confiding woman, is not inexcusable. The goldsmith's son who died with a lie on his lips for saving the Prince Chevalier did a meritorious act. The owner also who hides his property from robbers, cannot be regarded as acting dishonorably.—T.

who ravish other people's spouses, or have sexual congress with them, or assist at such acts of delinquency, sink in hell.[62] They who rob others of their wealth, or destroy the wealth and possessions of other people, or proclaim the faults of other people, sink in hell.[63] They who cut the continents of such peices of water as are used by cattle for quenching thirst, as injure such buildings as are used for purposes of public meetings, as break down bridges and causeways, and as pull down houses used for purposes of habitation, have to sink in hell.[64] They who beguile and cheat helpless women, or girls, or aged dames, or such women as have been frightened, have to sink in hell.[65] They who destroy the means of other people's living, they who exterminate the habitations of other people, they who rob others of their spouses, they who sow dissensions among friends, and they who destroy the hopes of other people, sink into hell.[66] They who proclaim the faults of others, they who break down bridges or causeways, they who live by following vocations laid down for other people, and they who are ungrateful to friends for services received, have to sink in hell.[67] They who have no faith in the Vedas and show no reverence for them, they who break the vows made by themselves or oblige others to break them, and they who fall away from their status through sin, sink in hell.[68] They who betake themselves to improper conduct, they who take exorbitant rates of interest, and they who make unduly large profits on sales, have to sink in hell.[69] They who are given to gambling, they who indulge in wicked acts without any scruple, and they who are given to slaughter living creatures, have to sink in hell.[70] They who cause the dismission by masters of servants that are hoping for rewards or indulging in the expectation of definite meed or in the enjoyment of wages or salaries or waiting for returns in respect of valuable services already rendered, have to sink in hell.[71] They who themselves eat without offering portions thereof unto their spouses or their sacred fires or their servants or their guests, and they who abstain from performing the rites laid down in the scriptures for honoring the Pitris and deities, have to sink in hell.[72] They who sell the Vedas, they who find fault with the Vedas, and they who reduce the Vedas into writing, have all

to sink in hell.*[73] They who are out of the pale of the four well-known modes of life, they who betake themselves to practices interdicted by the Crutis and the scriptures, and they who live by betaking themselves to acts that are wicked or sinful or that do not belong to their order of birth, have to sink in hell.[74] They who live by selling hair, they who subsist by selling poisons, and they who live by selling milk, have to sink in hell.[75] They who place obstacles in the path of Brāhmanas and kine and maidens, O Yudhishthira, have to sink in hell.[76] They who sell weapons, they who forge weapons, they who make shafts, and they who make bows, have to sink in hell.[77] They who obstruct paths and roads with stones and thorns and holes have to sink in hell.[78] They who abandon and cast off preceptors and servants and loyal followers without any offence, O chief of Bharata's race, have to sink in hell.[79] They who set bullocks to work when the animals have not attained to sufficient age, they who bore the noses of bullocks and other animals for controlling them the better while employed in work, and they who keep animals always tethered, have to sink in hell.[80] Those kings that do not protect their subjects while forcibly taking from them a sixth share of the produce of their fields, and they who, though able and possessed of resources, abstain from making gifts, have to sink in hell.[81] They who abandon and cast off persons that are endued with forgiveness and self-restraint and wisdom, or those with whom they have associated for many years, when these are no longer of service to them, have to sink in hell.[82] Those men who themselves eat without giving portions of the food to children and aged men and servants, have to sink in hell.[83]

"'All these men enumerated above have to go to hell. Listen now to me, O bull of Bharata's race, as I tell thee who those men are that ascend to heaven.[84] The man who transgresses against a Brāhmana by impeding the performance of all

* By 'selling the Vedas' is meant the charging of fees for teaching them. As regards the Vedas, the injunction in the scriptures is to commit them to memory and impart them from mouth to mouth. Hence to reduce them into writing was regarded as a transgression.—T.

such acts in which the deities are adored, becomes afflicted with the loss of all his children and animals. (They who do not transgress against Brāhmanas by obstructing their religious acts ascend to heaven).[85] Those men, O Yudhishthira, who follow the duties laid down in the scriptures for them, practising the virtues of charity and self-restraint and truthfulness, ascend to heaven.[86] Those men who having acquired knowledge by rendering obedient services to their preceptors and observing austere penances, become reluctant to accept gifts, succeed in ascending to heaven.[87] Those men through whom other people are relieved and rescued from fear and sin and the impediments that lie in the way of what they wish to accomplish and poverty and the afflictions of disease, succeed in ascending to heaven.[88] Those men who are endued with a forgiving disposition, who are possessed of patience, who are prompt in performing all righteous acts, and who are of auspicious conduct, succeed in ascending to heaven.[89] Those men who abstain from honey and meat, who abstain from sexual congress with the spouses of other people, and who abstain from wines and spiritous liquors, succeed in ascending to heaven.[90] Those men that help in the establishment of retreats for ascetics, who become founders of families, O Bhārata, who open up new countries for purposes of habitation, and implant towns and cities, succeed in ascending to heaven.[91] Those men who give away cloths and ornaments, as also food and drink, and who help in marrying others, succeed in ascending to heaven.*[92] Those men that have abstained from all kinds of injury or harm to all creatures, who are capable of enduring everything, and who have made themselves the refuge of all creatures, succeed in ascending to heaven.[93] Those men who wait with humility upon their fathers and mothers, who have subjugated their senses, and who are affectionate towards their

* In this country, to this day, the act of marrying a helpless person with a good girl by paying all the expenses of the marriage, is regarded as an act of righteousness. Of course, the man that is so married is also given sufficient property for enabling him to maintain himself and his wife.—T.

brothers, succeed in ascending to heaven.[94] Those men that subjugate their senses notwithstanding the fact of their being rich in worldly goods and strong in might and in the enjoyment of youth, succeed in ascending to heaven.[95] Those men that are kind towards even those that offend against them, that are mild of disposition, that have an affection for all who are of mild behaviour, and that contribute to the happiness of others by rendering them every kind of service in humility, succeed in ascending to heaven.[96] Those men that protect thousands of people, that make gifts unto thousands of people, and that rescue thousands of people from distress, succeed in ascending to heaven.[97] Those men who make gifts of gold and of kine, O chief of Bharata's race, as also of conveyances and animals, succeed in ascending to heaven.[98] Those men who make gifts of such articles as are needed in marriages, as also serving-men and maids, and cloths and robes, succeed in ascending to heaven.*[99] Those men who make public pleasure-houses and gardens and wells and resting houses and buildings for public meetings and tanks for enabling cattle and men to quench their thirst, and fields for cultivation, O Bhārata, succeed in ascending to heaven.†[100] Those men who make gifts of houses and fields and populated villages unto persons that solicit them, succeed in ascending to heaven.[101] Those men who having themselves manufactured juicy drinks of sweet taste and seeds and paddy or rice, make gifts of them unto others, succeed in ascending to heaven.[102] Those men who having taken birth in families high or low beget hundreds of children and live long lives, practising compassion and keeping wrath under complete subjection, succeed in ascending to heaven.[103] I have thus expounded to thee, O Bhārata, what the rites are in honor of the deities and the Pitris which are performed by people for the sake of the other world, what the ordinances are in respect of making gifts, and what the views are of the Rishis of former

---

* Articles needed in marriages are, of course, girls and ornaments.—T.

† 'Vapra' has various meanings. I think, it means here a field. Large waste lands often require to be enclosed with ditches and causeways. Unless so reclaimed, they cannot be fit for cultivation.—T.

times in respect of both the articles of gift and the manner of giving them.' "[104]

Section XXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O royal son of Bharata's race, it behooveth thee to answer this question of mine truly and in detail. What are those circumstances under which a person may become guilty of Brāhmanicide without actually slaying a Brāhmana !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Formerly, O monarch, I had one day requested Vyāsa to explain to me this very subject. I shall now narrate to thee what Vyāsa told me on that occasion. Do thou listen to it with undivided attention.[2] Repairing to the presence of Vyāsa, I addressed him, saying,—Thou, O great ascetic, art the fourth in descent from Vaçishtha ! Do thou explain to me this. What are those circumstances under which one becomes guilty of Brāhmanicide without actually slaying a Brāhmana ?[3]—Thus addressed by me, the son of Parāçara's loins, O king, well-skilled in the science of morality, made me the following answer at once excellent and fraught with certainty.[4]—Thou shouldst know that man as guilty of Brāhmanicide who having of his own motion invited a Brāhmana of righteous conduct to his house for giving him alms then refuses to give anything on the pretence of there being nothing in the house.[5] Thou shouldst, O Bhārata, know that man as guilty of Brāhmanicide who destroys the means of living of a Brāhmana learned in the Vedas and all their branches, and who is freed from attachments to worldly creatures and goods.[6] Thou shouldst, O king, know that man to be guilty of Brāhmanicide who causes obstructions in the way of thirsty kine while employed in quenching that thirst.[7] Thou shouldst take that man as guilty of Brāhmanicide who, without studying them, finds fault with the Crutis that have flowed from preceptor to pupil for ages and ages together, or with those scriptures that have been composed by the Rishis.[8] Thou shouldst know that man as guilty of Brāhmanicide who does not bestow upon a suitable bridegroom his daughter possessed of beauty and other excellent

accomplishments.[9] Thou shouldst know that foolish and sinful person to be guilty of Brāhmanicide who inflicts such grief upon Brāhmanas as afflicts the very core of their hearts.[10] Thou shouldst know that man to be guilty of Brāhmanicide who robs of their all the blind, the lame, and idiots.[11] Thou shouldst know that man to be guilty of Brāhmanicide who sets fire to the retreats of ascetics or to woods or to a village or a town.—' "[12]

Section XXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'It has been said that sojourns to sacred waters is fraught with merit; that ablutions in such waters is meritorious; and that listening to the excellence of such waters is also meritorious. I desire to hear thee expatiate on this subject, O grandsire![1] It behooveth thee, O chief of Bharata's race, to mention to me the sacred waters that exist on this Earth. I desire, O thou of great puissance, to hear thee discourse on this topic!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'O thou of great splendour, the following enumeration of the sacred waters on the Earth was made by Angiras. Blessed be thou, it behooveth thee to listen to it, for thou shalt then earn great merit.[3] Once on a time, Gautama of rigid vows, approaching the great and learned Rishi Angiras endued with tranquillity of soul, while he was dwelling in a forest, questioned him, saying,[4]—O illustrious one, I have some doubts regarding the merits attaching to sacred waters and shrines. I desire to hear thee discourse on that topic. Do thou, therefore, O ascetic, discourse to me![5] What merits are earned by a person in respect of the next world, by bathing in the sacred waters on the Earth, O thou of great wisdom? Do thou expound to me this truly and according to the ordinance.—[6]

" 'Angiras said,—A person by bathing for seven days in succession in the Chandrabhāgā or the Vitastā whose waters are always seen to dance in waves, observing a fast the while, is sure to become cleansed of all his sins and endued with the

merit of an ascetic.*[7] There are many rivers in the country called Kāçmira. All these fall into the great river called Sindhu (Indus). By bathing in these rivers one is sure to become endued with good character and to ascend to heaven after departing from this world.[8] By bathing in Pushkara, and Prabhāsa, and Naimisha, and the ocean, and Devikā, and Indramārga, and Swarnavindu, one is sure to ascend to heaven where, seated on a celestial car, one is sure to be filled with transports of joy at the adorations of Apsaras.[9] By plunging in the waters of Hiranyavindu with a concentrated mind and reverencing that sacred stream, and bathing next at Kuçeçaya and Devanta, one becomes cleansed of all one's sins.[10] Repairing to Indratoyā in the vicinity of the mountains of Gandhamādana and next to Karatoyā in the country called Kuranga, one should observe a fast for three days and then bathe in those sacred waters with a concentrated heart and pure body. By doing this, one is sure to acquire the merit of a Horse-sacrifice.[11] Bathing in Gangādwāra and Kuçāvarta and Vilwaka in the Blue mountains, as also in Kanakhala, one is sure to become cleansed of all one's sins and then ascend to heaven.[12] If one becomes a Brahmachārin and subdues one's wrath, devotes oneself to truth and practises compassion towards all creatures, and then bathes in the Lake of Waters, one is sure to acquire the merit of a Horse-sacrifice.[13] That part where Bhāgirathi-Gangā flows in a northward direction is known as the union of heaven, Earth, and the nether regions. Observing a fast for one month and bathing in that sacred Tirtha which is known to be acceptable to Maheçwara, one becomes competent to behold the deities.[14] One who gives oblations of water unto one's Pitris at Saptagangā and Trigangā and Indramārga, obtains ambrosia for food if one has still to undergo rebirth.[15] The man who in a pure state of body and mind attends to his daily Agni-hotra and observes a fast for one month and then bathes in Mahāçrama, is sure to attain to success in one month.[16]

---

* The river Chenab in the Punjab was known in former times by the name of Chandrabhāga. So the river Jhelum was known by the name of Vitastā.—T.

By bathing, after a fast of three days and purifying the mind of all evil passions, in the large lake situate in Bhrigutunga, one becomes cleansed of even the sin of Brāhmanicide.[17] By bathing in Kanyākupa and performing one's ablutions in Valākā, one acquires great fame among even the deities and shines in glory.[18] Bathing in Devikā and the lake known by the name of Sundarikā as also in the Tirtha called Açwini, one acquires, in one's next life, great beauty of form.[19] By fasting for a fortnight and bathing in Mahāgangā and Krittikāngāraka, one becomes cleansed of all one's sins and ascends to heaven.[20] Bathing in Vaimānika and Kinkinikā, one acquires the power of repairing everywhere at will and becomes an object of great respect in the celestial region of the Apsaras.*[21] If a person, subduing his wrath and observing the vow of Brahmacharyya for three days, bathes in the river Vipāsā at the retreat called Kālikā, he is sure to succeed in transcending the obligation of rebirth.[22] Bathing in the asylum that is sacred to the Krittikās and offering oblations of water to the Pitris, and then gratifying Mahādeva, one becomes pure in body and mind and ascends to heaven.[23] If one, observing a fast for three days with a purified body and mind, bathes in Mahāpura, one becomes freed from the fear of all mobile and immobile animals as also of all animals having two feet.[24] By bathing in the Devadāru forest and offering oblations of water to the Pitris and dwelling there for seven nights with a pure body and mind, one attains to the region of the deities on departing from this world.[25] Bathing in the waterfalls at Carastamva and Kuçastamva and Dronaçarmapada, one is sure to attain to the region of the Apsaras where one is waited upon with dutiful services by those superhuman beings.[26] If one, observing a fast, bathes at Chitrakuta and Janasthāna and the waters of Mandākini, one is sure to be united with prosperity that is royal.†[27] By repairing to the retreat that is known by the name of Cyāmā and residing there for a fortnight and bathing in the sacred water that

---

* The sense is that one proceeds to the region of the Apsaras and becomes an object of respect there.—T.

† *I. e.*, one acquires sovereignty.—T.

lies there, one acquires the power of disappearing at will (and enjoying the happiness that has been ordained for the Gandharvas).[28] Repairing to the tirtha known by the name of Kauçiki and residing there with a pure heart and obtaining from all food and drink for three days, one acquires the power of dwelling (in one's next life) in the happy region of the Gandharvas.[29] Bathing in the delightful tirtha that goes by the name of Gandhatāraka and residing there for one month, abstaining all the while from food and drink, one acquires the power of disappearing at pleasure and, then in one and twenty days, of ascending to heaven.[30] He that bathes in the lake known by the name of Matanga is sure to attain to success in one night. He that bathes in Anālamva or the eternal Andhaka,[31] or in Naimisha, or the tirtha called Swarga, and offers oblations of water to the Pitris, subduing his senses the while, acquires the merit of a human sacrifice.*[32] Bathing in Gangāhrada and the tirtha known by the name of Utplāvana and daily offering oblations of water there for a full month to the Pitris, one acquires the merit of a Horse-sacrifice.[33] Bathing in the confluence of the Gangā and the Yamunā as also at the tirtha in the Kālanjara mountains and offering every day oblations of water to the Pitris for a full month, one acquires the merit that attaches to ten Horse-sacrifices.[34] Bathing in the Shashthi lake one aequires merit much greater than what is attached to the gift of food. Ten thousand tirthas and thirty millions of other tirthas come to Prayāga (the confluence of the Gangā and the Yamunā), O chief of Bharata's race, in the month of Māgha. He who bathes in Prayāga, with a restrained soul and observing rigid vows the while, in the month of Māgha, becomes cleansed of all his sins, O chief of Bharata's race, and attains to heaven.[35-36] Bathing in the tirtha that is sacred to the Maruts, as also in that which is situate in the retreat of the Pitris, and also in that which is known by the name of Vaivaswata, one becomes cleansed of all one's sins and

* It is difficult to understand the connection of the second line of Verse 31. It does not mean 'enters the eternal region called Andhaka that rests on nothing.' Human sacrifices were performed sometimes in former days.—T.

as pure and sanctified as a tirtha.[37] Repairing to Brahmasaras as to the Bhāgirathi and bathing there and offering oblations to the Pitris every day for a full month, abstaining from food all the while, one is sure to attain to the region of Soma.[38] Bathing in Utpātaka and then in Ashtāvakra and offering oblations of water to the Pitris every day for twelve days in succession, abstaining the while from food, one acquires the merits of a Horse-sacrifice.[39] Bathing in Açmaprishtha and Niravinda mountains and Kraunchapādi,—all three in Gayā—one becomes cleansed of the sin of Brāhmanicide. A bath in the first place cleanses one of a single Brāhmanicide; a bath in the second cleanses one of two offences of that character; and a bath in the third cleanses one of three such offences.[40] Bathing in Kalavinga, one acquires a large quantity of water (for use in the next world). A man, by bathing in the city of Agni, acquires such merit as entitles him to live at his next birth in the city of Agni's daughter.[41] Bathing in Viçālā in Karavirapura and offering oblations of waters unto one's Pitris, and performing one's ablutions in Devahrada too, one becomes identified with Brahma and shines in glory as such.[42] Bathing in Punarāvarta-Nandā as also Mahānandā, a man of restrained senses and universal compassion repairs to the celestial gardens called Nandana of Indra and is waited upon there by Apsarās of diverse tribes.[43] Bathing with concentrated soul in the tirtha that is called after the name of Urvaçi and that is situate in the river Lohitya, on the day of full moon of the month of Kārtika, one attains to the merits that attach to the sacrifice called Pundarika.[44] Bathing in Rāmahrada and offering oblations of water to the Pitris in the river Vipāçā (Beas), and observing a fast for twelve days, one becomes cleansed of all sins.[45] Bathing in the tirtha called Mahāhrada with a purified heart and after observing a fast for one month, one is sure to attain to that end which was the sage Jamadagni's.[46] By exposing oneself to heat in the tirtha called Vindhya, a person devoted to truth and endued with compassion for all creatures should then betake himself to austere penances, actuated by humility. By so doing, he is sure to attain to ascetic success in course of a single month.[47] Bathing in the Narmadā as also

the tirtha known by the name of Surpāraka, observing a fast for a full fortnight, one is sure to become in one's next birth a prince of the royal line.[48] If one proceeds with restrained senses and a concentrated soul to the tirtha known under the name of Jamvumārga, one is sure to attain to success in course of a single day and night.[49] By repairing to Chāndālikāçrama and bathing in the tirtha called Kokāmukha, having subsisted for sometime on potherbs alone and worn rags for vestments, one is sure to obtain ten maidens of great beauty for one's spouses.[50] One who lives by the side of the tirtha known by the name of Kanyāhrada has never to go to the regions of Yama. Such a person is sure to ascend to the regions of felicity that belong to the celestials.[51] One who bathes with restrained senses on the day of the new moon in the tirtha known by the name of Prabhāsa, is sure, O thou of mighty arms, of at once attaining to success and immortality.[52] Bathing in the tirtha known by the name of Ujjānaka which occurs in the retreat of Arshtisena's son, and next in the tirtha that is situate in the retreat of Pingā, one is sure to be cleansed of all one's sins.[53] Observing a fast for three days and bathing in the tirtha known as Kulyā and reciting the sacred Mantras that go by the name of Aghamarshana, one attains to the merit of a horse-sacrifice.[54] Observing a fast for one night and bathing in Pindāraka, one becomes purified on the down of the next day and attains to the merit of an Agnishtoma sacrifice.[55] One who repairs to Brahmasara which is adorned by the woods called Dharmāranya one becomes cleansed of all one's sins and attains to the merit of the Pundarika sacrifice.[56] Bathing in the waters of the Maināka mountain and saying one's morning and evening prayers there and living at the spot for a month restraining desire, one attains to the merit of all the sacrifices.[57] Setting out for Kālodaka and Nandikunda and Uttara-mānasa, and reaching a spot that is a hundred Yojanas remote from any of them, one becomes cleansed of the sin of fœticide[58] One who succeeds in obtaining a sight of the image of Nandiçwara, becomes cleansed of all sins. Bathing in the tirtha called Swargamārga one is sure to proceed to the regions of Brahman.[59] The celebrated Himavat is sacred. That prince of mountains is the

father-in-law of Cankara. He is a mine of all jewells and gems and is the resort of the Siddhas and Chāranas.[60] That regenerate person who is fully conversant with the Vedas and who, regarding this life to be exceedingly unstable, casts off his body on those mountains, abstaining from all food and drink in accordance with the rites laid down in the scriptures, after having adored the deities and bent his head in worship of the ascetics, is sure to attain to success and proceed to the eternal regions of Brahman.[61-62] There is nothing unattainable to him who resides in a tirtha, restraining lust and subjugating wrath, in consequence of such residence.[63] For the purpose of repairing to *all* the tirthas in the world, one should mentally think of those amongst them that are almost inaccessible or sojourns to which are attended with insurmountable difficulties.[64] Sojourns to tirthas is productive of the merits of sacrifices. They are competent to cleanse everybody of sin. Fraught with great excellence, they are capable of leading to heaven. The subject is truly a great mystery. The very deities should blathe in tirthas. To them also they are sin-cleansing.[65] This discourse on tirthas should be imparted to Brāhmanas, and to such honest or righteous persons as are bent upon achieving what is for their own good. It should also be recited in the hearing of one's well-wishers and friends and of one's obedient and devoted disciples.[66] Angiras possessed of great ascetic merit, had imparted this discourse to Gautama. Angiras himself had obtained it from Kaçyapa of great intelligence.[67] The great Rishis regard this discourse as worthy of constant repetition. It is the foremost of all cleansing things. If one recites it regularly every day, one is sure to become cleansed of every sin and departing this life to proceed to heaven.[68] One who listens to this discourse recited in his hearing,—this discourse, *viz.*, of Angiras, that is regarded as a mystery,—is sure to attain in one's next life to birth in a good family and, what is more, one would become endued with the memory of one's previous existence.' "[69]

Section XXVI.

"Vaiçampāyana said,—'Equal unto Vrihaspati in intelligence and Brahman himself in forgiveness, resembling Cakra in prowess and Surya in energy,[1] Bhishma the son of Gangā, of infinite might, had been overthrown in battle by Arjuna. Accompanied by his brothers and many other people, king Yudhishthira asked him these questions.[2] The old hero was lying on a bed that is coveted by heroes, in expectation of that auspicious time when he could take leave of his physical frame. Many great Rishis had come there for seeing that foremost one of Bharata's race.[3] Amongst them were Atri and Vaçishtha and Bhrigu and Pulastya and Pulaha and Kratu. There were also Angiras and Gotama and Agastya and Sumati of well-restrained soul,[4] and Viçwāmitra and Sthulaçiras and Samvarta and Pramati and Dama. There were also Vrihaspati and Uçanas, and Vyāsa and Chyavana and Kāçyapa and Dhruva,[5] and Durvāsas and Jāmadagni and Mārkandeya and Gālava, and Bharadwāja and Raibhya and Yavakrita and Trita.[6] There were Sthulāksha and Cavalāksha and Kanwa and Medhātithi and Kriça, and Nārada and Parvata and Sudhanwan and Ekata and Dwita.[7] There were also Nitambhu and Bhuvana and Dhaumya and Catānanda and Akritavrana, and Rāma the son of Jamadagni and Kacha.[8] All these high-souled and great Rishis came there for seeing Bhishma lying on his bed of arrows. Yudhishthira with his brothers duly worshipped those high-souled Rishis who had come there, one after another in proper order. Receiving that worship, those foremost of Rishis sat themselves down and began to converse with one another.[9-10] Their conversation related to Bhishma, and was highly sweet and agreeable to all the senses. Hearing that talk of theirs having reference to himself, Bhishma became filled with delight and regarded himself to be already in heaven.[11] Those Rishis then, having obtained the leave of Bhishma and of the Pāndava princes, made themselves invisible, vanishing in the very sight of all the beholders.[12] The Pāndavas repeatedly bowed and offered their adorations to those highly-blessed Rishis even

after they had made themselves invisible.[13] They then, with cheerful souls, waited upon the son of Gangā even as Brāhmanas versed in Mantras wait with reverence upon the rising Sun.[14] The Pāndavas beheld that the points of the compass blazed forth with splendour in consequence of the energy of their penances, and became filled with wonder at the sight.[15] Thinking of the high blessedness and pusssance of those Rishis, the Pāndava princes began to converse on the subject with their grandsire Bhishma."[16]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—" After that conversation was over, the righteous Yudhishthira, the son of Pāndu, touched Bhishma's feet with his head and then resumed his questions relating to morality and righteousness.[17]

" Yudhishthira said,—'Which countries, which provinces, which retreats, which mountains, and which rivers, O grandsire, are the foremost in point of sanctity ?'[18]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of a conversation between a Brāhmana in the observance of the Cila and the Uncha vows, O Yudhishthira, and a Rishi crowned with ascetic success.[19] Once on a time, a foremost person, having roamed over this entire Earth adorned with mountains, arrived at last in the house of a foremost person leading the domestic mode of life[20] in accordance with the Cila vow. The latter welcomed his guest with due rites. Received with such hospitality, the happy Rishi passed the night happily in the house of his host.[21] The next morning the Brāhmana in the observance of the Cila vow, having finished all his morning acts and rites and purified himself duly, very cheerfully approached his guest crowned with ascetic success.[22] Meeting with each other and seated at their ease, the two began to converse on agreeable subjects connected with the Vedas and the Upanishats.[23] Towards the conclusion of the discourse, the Brāhmana in the observance of the Cila vow respectfully addressed the Rishi crowned with success. Endued with intelligence, he put this very question which thou, O Yudhishthira, hast put to me.[24]

" 'The poor Brāhmana said,—What are those countries, what those provinces, what those retreats, what those mountains,

and what those rivers, that should be regarded as the foremost in point of sanctity? Do thou discourse to me on this!—[25]

"'The Rishi crowned with success said,—Those countries, those provinces, those retreats, and those mountains, should be regarded as the foremost in point of sanctity through which or by the side of which that foremost of all rivers, *viz.*, Bhāgirathi, flows.[26] That end which a creature is capable of attaining by penances, by Brahmacharyya, by sacrifices, or by practising Renunciation, one is sure to attain by only living by the side of the Bhāgirathi and bathing in its sacred waters.[27] Those creatures whose bodies have been sprinkled with the sacred waters of Bhāgirathi or whose bones have been laid in the channel of that sacred steam, have not to fall away from heaven at any time.*[28] Those men, O learned Brāhmana, who use the waters of Bhāgirathi in all their acts, surely ascend to heaven after departing from this world.[29] Even those men who, having committed diverse kinds of sinful deeds in the first part of their lives, betake themselves in after years to a residence by the side of Gangā, succeed in attaining to a very superior end.[30] Hundreds of sacrifices cannot produce that merit which men of restrained souls are capable of acquiring by bathing in the sacred waters of Gangā.[31] A person is treated with respect and worship in heaven for as long a period as his bones lie in the channel of Gangā.[32] Even as the Sun, when he rises at the dawn of day, blazes forth in splendour, having dispelled the gloom of night, after the same manner the person that has bathed in the waters of Gangā is seen to shine in splendour, cleansed of all his sins.[33] Those countries and those points of the compass that are destitute of the sacred waters of Gangā are like nights without the moon or trees without flowers.[34] Verily, a world without Gangā is like the different orders and modes of life when they are destitute of righteousness or like sacrifices without Soma.[35] Without doubt, countries and points of the compass that are without Gangā are like the firmament without the Sun, or the Earth without mountains, or the welkin without air.[36] The entire body of creatures in the three worlds,

* 'Nyastāni' has 'Gangāyām' understood after it.—T.

if served with the auspicious waters of Gangā, derive a pleasure the like of which they are incapable of deriving from any other source.[37] He who drinks Gangā water that has been heated by the Sun's rays derives merit much greater than that which attaches to the vow of subsisting upon the wheat or grains of other corn picked up from cowdung.[38] It cannot be said whether the two are equal or not, *viz.*, he who performs a thousand Chāndrāyana rites for purifying his body and he who drinks the water of Gangā.[39] It cannot be said whether the two are equal or not, *viz.*, one who stands for a thousand years on one foot and one who lives for only a month by the side of Gangā.[40] One who lives permanently by the side of Gangā is superior in merit to one who stays for ten thousand Yugas with head hanging downwards.[41] As cotton, when it comes into contact with fire, is burnt off without a remnant, even so the sins of the person that has bathed in Gangā become consumed without a remnant.[42] There is no end superior to Gangā for those creatures who, with hearts afflicted by sorrow, seek to attain to ends that may dispel that sorrow of theirs.[43] As snakes become deprived of their poison at the very sight of Garuda, even so one becomes cleansed of all one's sins at the very sight of the sacred stream of Gangā.[44] They that are without righteous fame and that are addicted to deeds of sinfulness, have Gangā for their fame, their protection, their means of rescue, their refuge or cover.[45] Many wretches among men who become afflicted with diverse sins of a heinous nature, when they are about to sink into hell, are rescued by Gangā in the next world (if, notwithstanding their sins, they seek the aid of Gangā in their after years).[46] They, O foremost of intelligent men, who plunge every day in the sacred waters of Gangā, become the equals of great Munis and the very deities with Vāsava at their head.[47] Those wretches among men that are destitute of humility or modesty of behaviour and that are exceedingly sinful, become righteous and good, O Brāhmana, by betaking themselves to the side of Gangā.[48] As Amrita is to the deities, as Swadhā is to the Pitris, as Sudhā is to the Nāgas, even so is Gangā-water to human beings.[49] As children afflicted with hunger solicit their mothers for food, after the

same manner do people desirous of their highest good pay court to Gangā.[50] As the region of the self-born Brahman is said to be the foremost of all places, even so is Gangā said to be foremost of all rivers for those that desire to bathe.[51] As the Earth and the cow are said to be the chief sustenance of the deities and other celestials, even so is Gangā the chief sustenance of all living creatures.*[52] As the deities support themselves upon the Amrita that occurs in the Sun and the Moon and that is offered in diverse sacrifices, even so do human beings support themselves upon Gangā-water.[53] One besmeared with the sand taken from the shores of Gangā regards oneself as a denizen of heaven, adorned with celestial unguents.[54] He who bears on his head the mud taken from the banks of Gangā presents an effulgent aspect equal to that of Surya himself bent on dispelling the surrounding darkness.[55] When that wind which is moistened with the particles of Gangā-water touches one's person, it cleanses him immediately of every sin.[56] A person afflicted by calamities and about to sink under their weight, finds all his calamities dispelled by the joy which springs up in his heart at sight of that sacred stream.[57] By the melody of the swans and Kokas and other aquatic fowl that play on her breast, Gangā challenges the very Gandharvas and by her high banks the very mountains on the Earth.[58] Beholding her surface teeming with swans and diverse other aquatic fowl, and having banks adorned with pasture lands with kine grazing on them, Heaven herself loses her pride.[59] The high happiness which one enjoys by a residence on the banks of Gangā, can never be his who is residing even in heaven.[60] I have no doubt in this that the person who is afflicted with sins perpetrated in speech and thought and overt act, becomes cleansed at the very sight of Gangā.[61] By beholding that sacred stream, touching it, and bathing in its waters, one rescues one's ancestors to the seventh degree, and one's descendants to the seventh degree, as also other

* The deities are supported by the offerings made in sacrifices. These offerings consist of the productions of the Earth and the butter produced by the cow. The deities, therefore, are said to be chiefly supported by the Earth and the cow. The Asuras, by afflicting the Earth and killing kine used to weaken the deities.—T.

ancestors and descendants.[62] By hearing of Gangā, by wishing to repair to that river, by drinking its waters, by touching those waters, and by bathing in them, a person rescues both his paternal and maternal races.[63] By seeing, touching, and drinking the waters of Gangā, or by applauding them, hundreds and thousands of sinful men become cleansed of all their sins.[64] They who wish to make their birth, life and learning fruitful, should repair to Gangā and gratify the Pitris and the deities by offering them oblations of water.[65] The merit that one earns by bathing in Gangā is such that the like of it is incapable of being earned through the acquisition of sons or wealth or the performance of meritorious acts.[66] Those who, although possessed of the physical ability, do not seek to have a sight of the auspicious Gangā of sacred current, are, without doubt, to be likened to persons afflicted with congenital blindness or those that are dead or those that are destitute of the power of locomotion through palsy or lameness.[67] What man is there that would not reverence this sacred stream that is adored by great Rishis conversant with the Present, the Past, and the Future, as also by the very deities with Indra at their head ?[68] What man is there that would not seek the protection of Gangā whose protection is sought by forest recluses and house-holders, by Yatis and Brahmachārins alike ?[69] The man of righteous conduct who, with rapt soul, thinks of Gangā at the time when his life-breaths are about to leave his body, succeeds in attaining to the highest end.[70] That man who dwells by the side of Gangā up to the time of his death, adoring her with reverence, becomes freed from the fear of every kind of calamity, of sin, and of kings.[71] When that highly sacred stream fell from the firmament, Maheçwara held it on his head. It is that very stream which is adored in heaven.*[72] The three regions, (*viz.*, Earth, Heaven, and the nether place called Pātāla) are adorned by the three courses of this sacred stream. The man who uses the waters of that stream becomes certainly crowned with success.[73]

---

* The river Gangā has three courses. On Earth it is called Bhāgirathi or Gangā ; in heaven it is called Mandākini ; and in the nether regions it is known by the name of Bhogavati.—T.

As the solar ray is to the deities in heaven, as Chandramas is to the Pitris, as the king is to human beings, even so is Gangā unto all streams.*[74] One who becomes bereaved of mother or father or sons or spouses or wealth does not feel that grief which becomes one's, when one becomes bereaved of Gangā.[75] One does not obtain that joy through acts that lead to the region of Brahman, or through such sacrifices and rites that lead to heaven, or through children or wealth, which one obtains from a sight of Gangā.†[76] The pleasure that men derive from a sight of Gangā is equal to what they derive from a sight of the full moon.[77] That man becomes dear to Gangā who adores her with deep devotion, with mind wholly fixed upon her, with a reverence that refuses to take in any other object within its sphere, with a feeling that there is nothing else in the universe worthy of similar adoration, and with a steadiness that knows no falling away.[78] Creatures that live on Earth, in the welkin, or in Heaven,—indeed, even beings that are very superior,—should always bathe in Gangā. Verily, this is the foremost of all duties with those that are righteous.[79] The fame of Gangā for sanctity has spread over the entire universe, since she bore all the sons of Sagara, who had been reduced to ashes, from here to Heaven.‡[80] Men who are washed by the bright, beautiful, high, and rapidly moving waves, raised by the wind, of Gangā, become cleansed of all their sins and resemble in splendour the Star of day with his thousand rays.[81] Those men of tranquil souls that have cast off their bodies in the waters of Gangā whose sanctity is as great as that of the butter and other liquids poured in sacrifices and which are capable of conferring merits equal to those of the greatest of sacrifices, have certainly attained to a station equal to that of the very deities.[82] Verily,

---

* 'Deveçah' is lit. the lord of the deities; but here it means the King or Emperor.—T.

† 'Aranyaih' is explained by the Commentator as implying course of conduct leading to Brahmaloka.—T.

‡ The story referred to is this: king Sagara of the Solar race had sixty thousand sons, all of whom were reduced to ashes by the curse of Kapila. Afterwards Bhagiratha, a prince of the same race, brought down Gangā from heaven for their redemption.—T.

Gangā, possessed of fame and vast extent and identical with the entire universe and reverenced by the deities with Indra at their head, the Munis, and human beings, is competent to bestow the fruition of all their wishes upon them that are blind, them that are idiots, and them that are destitute of all things.*[83] They that sought the refuge of Gangā, that protectress of all the universe, that flows in three currents, that is filled with water at once highly sacred and sweet as honey and productive of every kind of good, have succeeded in attaining to the beatitude of Heaven.†[84] That mortal who dwells by the side of Gangā and beholds her every day, becomes cleansed by her sight and touch. Unto him the deities give every kind of happiness here and a high end hereafter.[85] Gangā is regarded as competent to rescue every creature from sin and lead him to the felicity of Heaven. She is held to be identical with Priçni the mother of Vishnu. She is identical with the Word or Speech. She is very remote, being incapable of easy attainment. She is the embodiment of auspiciousness, and prosperity. She is capable of bestowing the six well-known attributes beginning with lordship or puissance. She is always inclined to extend her grace. She is the displayer of all things in the universe, and she is the high refuge of all creatures. Those who sought her protection in this life have surely attained to heaven.[86] The fame of Gangā has spread all over the welkin, and Heaven, and Earth, and all the points, cardinal and subsidiary, of the compass. Mortal creatures, by using the waters of that foremost of streams, always become crowned with high success.[87] That person who, himself beholding Gangā, points her out to others, finds that Gangā rescues him from rebirth and confers Emancipation on him. Gāngā held Guha, the generalissimo of the celestial forces, in her womb. She bears the most precious of all metals, *viz.*, gold, also in that womb of hers. They who bathe in her waters every day in the morning, succeed in obtaining the aggregate of

---

* 'Identical with the universe' because capable of conferring the fruition of every wish. 'Vrihati,'—literally, large or vast, is explained by the Commentator as implying 'foremost' or 'superior.'—T.

† 'Madhumatim' is explained as 'conferring the fruits of all good actions,'—T.

three, *viz.*, Righteousness and Wealth and Pleasure. Those waters are, again, equal in point of sanctity to the butter that is poured with Mantras on the sacrificial fire. Capable of cleansing one from every sin, she has descended from the celestial region and her current is held in high esteem by every one.[88] Gangā is the daughter of Himavat, the spouse of Hara, and the ornament of both Heaven and Earth. She is the bestower of everything auspicious, and is competent to confer the six well-known attributes beginning with lordship or puissance. Verily, O king, Gangā is the one object of great sanctity in the three worlds and confers merit upon all.[89] Truly, O monarch, Gangā is Righteousness in liquefied form. She is energy also running in a liquid form over the Earth. She is endued with the splendour or puissance that belongs to the butter that is poured with Mantras on the sacrificial fire. She is always adorned with large waves as also with Brāhmanas who may at all times be seen performing their ablutions in her waters. Falling from Heaven, she was held by Civa on his head. The very mother of the heavens, she has sprung from the highest mountain for running over the plains and conferring the most precious benefits on all creatures of the Earth.[90] She is the highest cause of all things; she is perfectly stainless. She is as subtile as Brahma. She affords the best bed for the dying. She leads creatures very quickly to heaven. She bears away a large volume of water. She bestows great fame on all. She is the protectress of the universe.* She is identical with every form. She is very much coveted by persons crowned with success. Verily, Gangā is the path to Heaven of those that have bathed in her current.†[91] The Brāhmanas hold Gangā as equalling the Earth in forgiveness, and in the protection and upholding of those that live by her; further, as equalling Fire and Surya in energy and splendour; and, lastly, as always equalling Guha himself in the matter of showing favours unto the regenerate class.‡[92] Those men who,

---

* 'Viçwam avanti iti.' The absence of 'num' is 'ārsha.'—T.

† 'Bhuvanasya' is 'swargasya.'—T.

‡ The construction of this Verse is not difficult though the order of the words is a little involved. Both the Vernacular translators have misunderstood it completely.—T.

in this life, even mentally seek with their whole souls that sacred stream which is praised by the Rishis, which has issued out of the feet of Vishnu, which is very ancient, and which is exceedingly sacred, succeed in repairing to the regions of Brahman.[93] Fully convinced that children and other possessions, as also regions possessed of every kind of felicity, are transitory or liable to destruction, men of subdued souls, who are desirous of attaining to that everlasting station which is identical with Brahma, always pay their adorations to Gangā with that reverence and love which are due from a son to a mother.[94] The man of cleansed soul who is desirous of achieving success should seek the protection of Gangā who is like a cow that yields Amrita instead of ordinary milk, who is prosperity's self, who is possessed of omniscience, who exists for the entire universe of creatures, who is the source of all kinds of food, who is the mother of all mountains, who is the refuge of all righteous persons, who is immeasurable in puissance and energy, and who charms the heart of Brahman himself.[95] Having, with austere penances, gratified all the deities with the Supreme Lord (Vishnu), Bhagiratha brought Gangā down on the Earth. Repairing unto her, men always succeed in freeing themselves from every kind of fear both here and hereafter.[96] Observing with the aid of intelligence, I have mentioned to thee only a small part of the merits of Gangā. My power, however, is inadequate to speak of all the merits of the sacred river, or, indeed, to measure her puissance and sanctity.[97] One may, putting forth one's best powers, count the stones that occur in the mountains of Meru or measure the waters that occur in the ocean. But one cannot count all the merits which belong to the waters of Gangā.[98] Hence, having listened to these particular merits of Gangā which I have uttered with great devotion, one should, in thought, word, and deed, reverence them with faith and devotion.[99] In consequence of thy having listened to those merits which I have recited, thou art sure to fill all the three regions with fame and attain to a measure of success that is very large and that is difficult of being attained to by any other person. Verily, thou shalt, soon after that, sport in joy in many a region of great felicity created by Gangā herself for

those that reverence her.[100] Gangā always extends her grace unto those that are devoted to her in humbleness of heart. She unites those that are so devoted to her with every kind of happiness. I pray that the highly-blessed Gangā may always inspire thy heart and mine with such attributes as are fraught with righteousness !—'[101]

"Bhishma continued,—'The learned ascetic endued with high soul and great splendour, and crowned with success, having in this manner discoursed unto that poor Brāhmana in the observance of the Cila vow, on the subject of the infinite merits of Gangā, then ascended the firmament.[102] The poor Brāhmana in the observance of the Cila vow, awakened by the words of that ascetic crowned with success, duly sought the protection of Gangā and attained to high success.[103] Do thou also, O son of Kunti, seek Gangā with great devotion, for thou shalt then, as the reward thereof, attain to high and excellent success !' "[104]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing this discourse from Bhishma that was fraught with the praise of Gangā, Yudhishthira with his brothers became filled with great delight.[105] That person who recites or hears recited this sacred discourse fraught with the praise of Gangā, becomes cleansed of every sin."[106]

Section XXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou, O grandsire, art endued with wisdom and knowledge of the scriptures, with conduct and behaviour, with diverse kinds of excellent attributes, and also with years.[1] Thou art distinguished above others by intelligence and wisdom and penances. I shall, therefore, O thou that art the foremost of all righteous men, desire to address enquiries to thee respecting Righteousness.[2] There is not another man, O king, in all the worlds, who is worthier of being questioned on such subjects. O best of kings, how may one, if he happens to be a Kshatriya or a Vaiçya or a Cudra,[3] succeed in acquiring the status of a Brāhmana ? It behooveth thee to tell me the means. Is it by penances the most austere, or by religious acts, or by knowledge of the scriptures, that a person belonging to any of the three inferior orders succeeds

in acquiring the status of a Brāhmana? Do tell me this, O grandsire!'[4]

"Bhishma said,—'The status of a Brāhmana, O Yudhishthira, is incapable of acquisition by a person belonging to any of the three other orders. That status is the highest with respect to all creatures.[5] Travelling through innumerable orders of existence by undergoing repeated births, one at last, in some birth, becomes born as a Brāhmana.[6] In this connection is cited an old history, O Yudhishthira, of a conversation between Matanga and a she-ass.[7] Once on a time a Brāhmana obtained a son who, though procreated by a person belonging to a different order, had, however, the rites of infancy and youth performed in pursuance of the ordinances laid down for Brāhmanas. The child was called by the name of Matanga and was possessed of every accomplishment.[8] His father, desiring to perform a sacrifice, ordered him, O scorcher of foes, to collect the articles required for the act. Having received the command of his father, he set out for the purpose, riding on a car of great speed, drawn by an ass.[9] It so happened that the ass yoked unto that car was of tender years. Instead, therefore, of obeying the reins, the animal bore away the car to the vicinity of its dam, *viz.*, the she-ass that had brought it forth. Matanga, dissatisfied with this, began to repeatedly strike the animal with his goad on its nose.[10] Beholding those marks of violence on her child's nose, the she-ass, full of affection for him, said,—Do not grieve, O child, for this treatment! A Chandāla it is that is driving thee![11] There is no severity in a Brāhmana. The Brāhmana is said to be the friend of all creatures. He is the teacher also of all creatures and their ruler. Can *he* chastise any creature so cruelly?[12] This fellow, however, is of sinful deeds. He hath no compassion to show unto even a creature of such tender years as thou! He is simply proving the order of his birth by conducting himself in this way. The nature which he hath derived from his sire forbids the rise of those sentiments of pity and kindness that are natural to the Brāhmana![13]—Hearing these harsh words of the she-ass, Matanga quickly came down from the car and addressing the she-ass, said,—Tell me, O blessed dame, by what fault is my mother stained?[14] How

dost thou know that I am a Chandāla? Do thou answer me without delay![15] How, indeed, dost thou know that I am a Chandāla? How has my status as a Brahmana been lost? O thou of great wisdom, tell me all this in detail, from beginning to end!—[16]

"'The she-ass said,—Begotten thou wert, upon a Brāhmana woman excited with desire, by a Cudra following the profession of a barber. Thou art, therefore, a Chandāla by birth. The status of Brāhmana thou hast not at all!—[17]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by the she-ass, Matanga retraced his way homewards. Seeing him return, his father said,[18]—I had employed thee in the difficult task of gathering the requisites of my intended sacrifice! Why hast thou come back without having accomplished thy charge? Is it the case that all is not right with thee?—[19]

"'Matanga said,—How can he who belongs to no definite order of birth, or to an order that is very low, be regarded as all right and happy? How, O father, can that person be happy whose mother is stained?[20] O father, this she-ass, who seems to be more than a human being, tells me that I have been begotten upon a Brāhmani woman by a Cudra. I shall, for this reason, undergo the severest penances![21]—Having said these words to his father, and firmly resolved upon what he had said, he proceeded to the great forest and began to undergo the austerest of penances.[22] Setting himself to the performance of those penances for the purpose of happily acquiring the status of a Brāhmana, Matanga began to scorch the very deities by the severity of his asceticism.[23] Unto him thus engaged in penances, the chief of the celestials, *viz.*, Indra, appeared and said,—Why, O Matanga, dost thou pass thy time in such grief, abstaining from all kinds of human enjoyments?[24] I shall give thee boons. Do thou name the boons thou desirest! Do not delay, but tell me what is in thy breast! Even if it be unattainable, I shall yet bestow it on thee!—[25]

"'Matanga said,—Desirous of attaining to the status of a Brāhmana I have begun to practise these penances. After having obtained it, I shall go home. Even this is the boon solicited by me!—'[26]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of his, Purandara said unto him,—The status of a Brāhmana, O Matanga, which thou desirest to acquire, is really unattainable by thee.[27] It is true, thou desirest to acquire it, but then it is incapable of acquisition by persons of uncleansed souls. O thou of foolish understanding, thou art sure to meet with destruction if thou persistest in this pursuit. Desist, therefore, from this vain endeavour without any delay![28] This object of thy desire, *viz.*, the status of a Brāhmana, which is the foremost of everything, is incapable of being won by penances. Therefore, by coveting that foremost status, thou wilt incur sure destruction.[29] One born as a Chandāla can never attain to that status which is regarded as the most sacred among the deities and Asuras and human beings!—' "[30]

SECTION XXVIII.

"Bhishma said,—'Thus addressed by Indra, Matanga of restrained vows and well-regulated soul, (without hearkening to the counsels of the cheif of the celestials), stood for a hundred years on one foot, O thou of unfading glory.[1] Cakra of great fame once more appeared before him and addressing him, said, —The status of a Brāhmana, O child, is unattainable. Although thou covetest it, it is impossible for thee to obtain it![2] O Matanga, by coveting that very high status thou art sure to be destroyed! Do not, O son, betray such rashness. This cannot be a righteous path for thee to follow.[3] O thou of foolish understanding, it is impossible for thee to obtain it in this world, Verily, by coveting that which is unattainable, thou art sure to meet with destruction in no time.[4] I am repeatedly forbidding thee. By striving, however, to attain that high status by the aid of thy penances, notwithstanding my repeated admonitions, thou art sure to meet with destruction.[5] From the order of brute life one attains to the status of humanity. If born as a human being, he is sure to take birth as a Pukkaça or a Chandāla.[6] Verily, one having taken birth in that sinful order of existence, *viz.*, Pukkaça, one, O Matanga, has to wander in it for a very long time.[7] Passing a period of one thousand years

in that order, one attains next to the status of a Cudra. In the Cudra order, again, one has to wander for a long time.[8] After thirty thousand years one acquires the status of a Vaiçya. There, in that order, one has to pass a very long period.[9] After a time that is sixty times longer than what has been stated as the period of Cudra existence, one becomes a person of the royal order. In the Kshatriya order one has to pass a very long time.[10] After a time that is measured by multiplying the period last referred to by sixty, one becomes born as a fallen Brāhmana. In this order one has to wander for a long period.[11] After a time measured by multiplying the period last named by two hundred, one becomes born in the race of such a Brāhmana as lives by the profession of arms. There, in that order, one has to wander for a long period.[12] After a time measured by multiplying the period last named by three hundred, one takes birth in the race of a Brāhmana that is given to the recitation of the Gāyatri and other sacred Mantras.[13] There, in that order, one has to wander for a long period. After a time measured by multiplying the period last named by four hundred, one takes birth in the race of such a Brāhmana as is conversant with the entire Vedas and the scriptures. There, in that order, one has to wander for a very long period.[14] While wandering in that status of existence, joy and grief, desire and aversion, vanity and evil speech, seek to enter into him and make a wretch of him.[15] If he succeeds in subjugating those foes, he then attains to a high end. If, on the other hand, those enemies succeed in subjugating him, he falls down from that high status like a person falling down on the ground from the high top of a palmyra tree.[16] Knowing this for certain, O Matanga, that I say into thee, do thou name some other boon, for the status of a Brāhmana is incapable of being attained by thee (that hast been born as a Chandāla) !—' "[17]

Section XXIX.

"Bhishma said,—'Thus addressed by Indra, Matanga refused to hear what he was bid. On the other hand, with regulated vows and cleansed soul, he practised austerer penances by

standing on one foot for a thousand years, his soul deeply engaged in Yoga-meditation.[1] After a thousand years had passed away, Cakra once more came to see him. Indeed, the slayer of Vala and Vritra said unto him the same words.[2]

" 'Matanga said,—I have passed these thousand years, standing on one foot, with soul rapt in meditation, and in the observance of the vow of Brahmacharyya. Why is it that I have not yet succeeded in acquiring the status of a Brāhmana ?—[3]

" 'Cakra said,—One born as a Chandāla cannot, by any means, acquire the status of a Brāhmana. Do thou, therefore, name some other boon so that all this labour of thine may not prove fruitless ![4]—Thus addressed by the chief of the celestials, Matanga became filled with grief. He repaired to Gayā, and passed there a hundred years, standing all the while on one foot.[5] In consequence of the observance of such Yoga which was extremely difficult to bear, he became very much emaciated and his arteries and veins became swollen and visible. He was reduced to only skin and bones. Indeed, it has been heard by us that that righteous souled person, while practising those austerities at Gayā, dropped down on the ground from sheer exhaustion.[6] The lord and giver of boons, engaged in the good of all creatures, *viz.*, Vāsava, beholding him falling down, quickly came to that spot and held him fast.[7]

" 'Cakra said,—It seems, O Matanga, that the status of a Brāhmana which thou seekest is ill-suited to thee. That status is incapable of being attained by thee. Verily, in thy case, it is surrounded by many dangers.[8] A person by worshipping a Brāhmana obtains happiness ; while, by abstaining from such worship, he obtains grief and misery. The Brāhmana is, with respect to all creatures, the giver of what they prize or covet and the protector of what they already have.[9] It is through the Brāhmanas that the Pitris and the deities become gratified. The Brāhmana, O Matanga, is said to be the foremost of all created Beings. The Brāhmana grants all objects that are desired and in the way they are desired.*[10] Wandering through

---

* 'Kurute' may mean also 'makes' The sense is that the Brāhmana grants to others whatever objects are desired by others. In his own case

innumerable orders of Being and undergoing repeated rebirths, one succeeds in some subsequent birth in acquiring the status of a Brāhmana.[11] That status is really incapable of being obtained by persons of uncleansed souls. Do thou, therefore, give up the idea. Do thou name some other boon. The particular boon which thou seekest is incapable of being granted to thee!—[12]

"'Matanga said,—Afflicted as I am with grief, why, O Cakra, dost thou afflict me further (with such speeches as these)? Thou art striking one that is already dead, by this behaviour. I do not pity thee who having acquired the status of a Brāhmana failest to retain it (for thou hast no compassion to show for one like me)![13] If, O thou of a hundred sacrifices, the status of a Brāhmana be really unattainable by any of the three other orders, alas, men do not adhere to it that have succeeded in acquiring (through natural means) that high status (for what sins do not even Brāhmanas commit)?[14] Those who having acquired the status of a Brāhmana that, like affluence, is so difficult to acquire, do not seek to keep it up (by practising the necessary duties), must be regarded to be the lowest of wretches in this world. Indeed, they are the most sinful of all creatures.[15] Without doubt, the status of a Brāhmana is exceedingly difficult to attain, and being attained, is difficult to maintain. It is capable of dispelling every kind of grief. Alas, having attained to it, men do not always seek to keep it up (by practising righteousness and the other duties that attach to it).[16] When even such persons are regarded as Brāhmanas, why is it that I, who am pleased with my own self, who am superior to all couples of opposites, who am dissociated from all worldly objects, who am observant of the duty of compassion towards all creatures and of self-restraint of conduct, should not be regarded as deserving of that status?*[17] How

---

also, he creates those objects that he himself desires. His puissance is great and it is through his kindness that others get what they wish or seek.—T.

* 'Ekārāmah' is one who sports with one's own self, *i. e.*, who is dot dependant on others for his joy or happiness; hence, one who has understood the soul.—T.

unfortunate I am, O Purandara, that through the fault of my mother I have been reduced to this condition, although I am not unrighteous in my behaviour?[18] Without doubt, Destiny is incapable of being warded off or conquered by individual exertion, since, O lord, I am unable to acquire, notwithstanding these persistent efforts of mine, the object upon the acquisition of which I have set my heart![19] When such is the case, O righteous one, it behooves thee to grant me some other boon if, indeed, I have become worthy of thy grace or if I have a little of merit!—'[20]

"Bhishma continued,—'The slayer of Vala and Vritra then said unto him,—Do thou name the boon!—Thus urged by the great Indra, Matanga said the following words:—[21]

"'Matanga said,—Possessed of the power of assuming any form at will, let me be able to journey through the skies and let me enjoy whatever pleasures I may set my heart upon. And let me also have the willing adorations of both Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas![22] I bow to thee by bending my head, O god! It behooveth thee to do that also by which my fame, O Purandara, may live for ever in the world!—[23]

"'Cakra said,—Thou shalt be celebrated as the deity of a particular measure of verse and thou shalt obtain the worship of all women. Thy fame, O son, shall become unrivalled in the three worlds![24]—Having granted him these boons, Vāsava disappeared there and then. Matanga also, casting off his life-breaths, attained to a high place.[25] Thou mayst thus see, O Bhārata, that the status of a Brāhmana is very high. That status is incapable of being acquired here (except in the natural way of birth) as said by the great Indra himself.'"[26]

Section XXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I have heard this great narrative, O perpetuater of Kuru's race. Thou, O foremost of eloquent men, hast said that the status of a Brāhmana is exceedingly difficult of acquisition.[1] It is heard, however, that in former times the status of a Brāhmana had been acquired by Viçwāmitra. Thou, however, O best of men, tellest us that that

status is incapable of being acquired![2] I have also heard that king Vitahavya in ancient times had succeeded in obtaining the status of a Brāhmana. O puissant one, I desire to hear, O son of Gangā, the story of king Vitahavya's promotion![3] By what acts did that best of kings succeed in acquiring the status of a Brāhmana? Was it through some boon (obtained from some one of great puissance) or was it through the virtue of penances? It behooveth thee to tell me everything!'[4]

"Bhishma said,—'Hear, O monarch, how the royal sage Vitahavya of great celebrity succeeded in ancient times in acquiring the status of a Brāhmana that is so difficult to attain and that is held in such high reverence by all the world.[5] While the high-souled Manu in days of yore was employed in righteously ruling his subjects, he obtained a son of righteous soul who become celebrated under the name of Caryāti.[6] In Caryāti's race, O monarch, two kings took their birth, *viz.*, Haihaya and Tālajangha. Both of them were sons of Vatsa, O foremost of victorious kings.[7] Haihaya, O monarch, had ten wives. Upon them he begat, O Bhārata, a century of sons all of whom were unreturning heroes.[8] All of them resembled one another in features and prowess. All of them were endued with great strength and all of them were possessed of great skill in battle. They all studied the Vedas and the science of weapons thoroughly.[9] In Kāçi also, O monarch, there was a king who was the grand-father of Divodāsa. The foremost of victorious men, he was known by the name of Haryyaçwa.[10] The sons of king Haihaya, O chief of men, (who was otherwise known by the name of Vitahavya), invaded the kingdom of Kāçi and advancing to the country that lies between the rivers Gangā and Yamunā, fought a battle with king Haryyaçwa and slew him in it.[11] Having slain king Haryyaçwa in this way, the sons of Haihaya, those great car-warriors, fearlessly went back to their own delightful city in the country of the Vatsas.[12] Meanwhile Haryyaçwa's son Sudeva, who looked like a deity in splendour and who was a second god of righteousness, was installed on the throne of Kāçi as its ruler.[13] The delighter of Kāçi, that righteous-souled prince ruled his kingdom for sometime when the hundred sons of Vitihavya once more invaded

his dominions and defeated him in battle.[14] Having vanquished king Sudeva thus, the victors returned to their own city. After this, Divodāsa, the son of Sudeva, became installed on the throne of Kāçi as its ruler.[15] Realising the prowess of those high-souled princes, *viz.*, the sons of Vitihavya, king Divodāsa, endued with great energy, rebuilt and fortified the city of Bārānasi at the command of Indra.[16] The territories of Divodāsa were full of Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas, and abounded with Vaiçyas and Cudras. And they teemed with articles and provisions of every kind, and were adorned with shops and marts swelling with prosperity. Those territories, O best of kings, stretched northwards from the banks of Gangā to the southern banks of Gomati, and resembled a second Amarāvati (the city of Indra).[17-18] The Haihayas once again, O Bhārata, attacked that tiger among kings as he ruled his kingdom.[19] The mighty king Divodāsa endued with great splendour, issuing out of his capital, gave them battle. The engagement between the two parties proved so fierce as to resemble the encounter in days of old between the deities and the Asuras.[20] King Divodāsa fought the enemy for a thousand days at the end of which, having lost a large number of followers and animals, he became exceedingly distressed.*[21] King Divodāsa, O monarch, having lost his army and seeing his treasury exhausted, left his capital and fled away.[22] Repairing to the delightful retreat of Bharadwāja endued with great wisdom, the king, O chastiser of foes, joining his hands in reverence, sought the Rishi's protection.[23] Beholding king Divodāsa before him, the eldest son of Vrihaspati, *viz.*, Bharadwāja of excellent conduct, who was the monarch's priest, said unto him,[24]—What is the reason of thy coming here? Tell me everything, O king! I shall do that which is agreeable to thee, without any scruple!—[25]

"'The king said,—O holy one, the sons of Vitahavya have slain all the children and men of my house. I only have escaped

---

* 'Daçatirdaça' is 'ten times hundred' or one thousand. 'Daçati,' like 'Saptati,' 'navati,' &c, means ten times ten. Both the Vernacular translators have erred in rendering the word.—T.

with life, totally discomfited by the foe. I seek thy protection.[26] It behooveth thee, O holy one, to protect me with such affection as thou hast for a disciple! Those princes of sinful deeds have slaughtered my whole race, leaving myself only alive!—'[27]

"Bhishma continued,—'Unto him who pleaded so piteously, Bharadwāja of great energy said,—Do not fear! Do not fear! O son of Sudeva, let thy fears be dispelled![28] I shall perform a sacrifice, O monarch, in order that thou mayst have a son through whom thou shalt be able to smite thousands upon thousands of Vitahavya's party.[29]—After this, the Rishi performed a sacrifice with the object of bestowing a son on Divodāsa. As the result thereof, unto Divodāsa was born a son named Pratarddana.[30] As soon as he took his birth, he grew into a child of full three and ten years, and quickly mastered the entire Vedas and the whole science of arms.[31] Aided by his Yoga powers, Bharadwāja of great intelligence had entered into the prince. Indeed, collecting all the energy that occurs in the objects of the universe, Bharadwāja caused it to enter the body of prince Pratarddana.[32] Casing his person in shining mail and armed with the bow, Pratarddana, his praises sung by bards and the celestial Rishis, shone resplendent like the risen star of day.[33] Mounted on his car and with the scimitar tied to his belt, he shone like a blazing fire. With scimitar and shield and whirling his shield as he went, he proceeded to the presence of his sire.[34] Beholding the prince, the son of Sudeva, *viz.*, king Divodāsa, become filled with joy. Indeed, the old king thought the sons of his enemy Vitahavya as already slain.[35] Divodāsa then installed his son Pratarddana as Yuvarāja, and regarding himself crowned with success became exceedingly happy.[36] After this, the old king commanded that chastiser of foes, *viz.*, prince Pratarddana, to march against the sons of Vitahavya and slay them in battle.[37] Endued with great prowess, Pratarddana, that subjugator of hostile cities, speedily crossed Gangā on his car and proceeded against the city of the Vitahavyas.[38] Hearing the clatter produced by the wheels of his car, the sons of Vitahavya, riding on their own cars that looked like fortified citadels and that were capable of destroying hostile vehicles,

issued out of their city.[39] Issuing out of their capital, those tigers among men, *viz.*, the sons of Vitahavya, who were all skilful warriors cased in mail, rushed with uplifted weapons towards Pratarddana, covering him with showers of arrows.[40] Encompassing him with innumerable cars, O Yudhishthira, the Vitahavyas poured upon Pratarddana showers of weapons of various kinds like the clouds pouring torrents of rain on the breast of Himavat.[41] Baffling their weapons with his own, prince Pratarddana endued with mighty energy slew them all with shafts that resembled the lightning fire of Indra.[42] Their heads struck off, O king, with hundreds and thousands of broad-headed arrows, the warriors of Vitahavya fell down with blood-dyed bodies like Kinçuka trees felled on every side by woodmen with their axes.[43] After all his warriors and sons had fallen in battle, king Vitahavya fled away from his capital to the retreat of Bhrigu.[44] Indeed, arrived there, the royal fugitive sought the protection of Bhrigu. The Rishi Bhrigu, O monarch, assured the defeated king of his protection.[45] Pratarddana followed in the footsteps of Vitahavya. Arrived at the Rishi's retreat, the son of Divodāsa said in a loud voice,[46]—Ho, listen, ye disciples of the high-souled Bhrigu that may happen to be present ! I wish to see the sage. Go and inform him of this !'[47]—Recognising that it was Pratarddana who had come, the Rishi Bhrigu himself came out of his retreat and worshipped that best of kings according to due rites.[48] Addressing him then, the Rishi said,—Tell me, O king, what is thy business !—The king, at this, informed the Rishi of the reason of his presence.[49]

" 'The king said,—King Vitahavya has come here, O Brāhmana ! Do thou give him up ! His sons, O Brāhmana, had destroyed my race ![50] They had laid waste the territories and the wealth of the Kāçis. Those hundred sons, however, of this king proud of his might, have all been slain by me.[51] By slaying that king himself I shall today pay off the debt I owe to my father !—Unto him that foremost of righteous men, *viz.*, the Rishi Bhrigu, penetrated with compassion, replied by saying,[52]—There is no Kshatriya in this retreat. They that are here are all Brāhmanas !—Hearing these words of Bhrigu, that

must, he thought, accord with truth, Pratarddana[53] touched the Rishi's feet slowly and, filled with delight, said,—By this, O holy one, I am, without doubt, crowned with success,[54] since this king becomes divested of the very order of his birth in consequence of my prowess! Give me thy permission, O Brāhmana, to leave thee, and let me solicit thee to pray for my welfare![55] This king, O founder of the race that goes by thy name, becomes divested of the very order of his birth, in consequence of my might!—Dismissed by the Rishi Bhrigu, king Pratarddana then departed from that retreat,[56] and repaired to the place he had come from, having, in the way I have described, vomited forth the poison of speech even as a snake vomits forth its real poison. Meanwhile, king Vitahavya, attained to the status of a regenerate sage by virtue of the worth only of Bhrigu.[57] And he acquired also a complete conversance with all the Vedas through the same cause. Vitahavya had a son named Gritsamada who in beauty of person was a second Indra.[58] Once on a time the Daityas afflicted him much, believing him to be none else than Indra. With regard to that high-souled Rishi, there is this foremost of Crutis in the Richs,[59] *viz.*, There where Gritsamada is, O Brāhmana, he is held in high respect by all regenerate persons!—Endued with great intelligence, Gritsamada became a regenerate Rishi in the observance of Brahmacharyya.[60] Gritsamada had a regenerate son of the name of Sutejas. Sutejas had a son of the name of Varchas, and the son of Varchas was known by the name of Vihavya.[61] Vihavya had a son of his loins who was named Vitatya, and Vitatya had a son of name Satya. Satya had a son of name Santa.[62] Santa had a son, *viz.*, the Rishi Cravas. Cravas begot a son named Tama. Tama begot a son named Prakāça who was a very superior Brāhmana.[63] Prakāça had a son named Vāgindra who was the foremost of all silent reciters of sacred Mantras. Vāgindra begot a son named Pramati who was a complete master of all the Vedas and their branches. Pramati begot upon the Apsarā Ghritāchi a son who was named Ruru.[64] Ruru begot a son upon his spouse Pramadvarā. That son was the regenerate Rishi Cunaka. Cunaka begot a son who is named Cunaka.[65] It was even thus, O foremost of

monarchs, that king Vitahavya, though a Kshatriya by the order of his birth, obtained the status of a Brāhmana, O chief of Kshatriyas, through the grace of Bhrigu.[66] I have also told thee the genealogy of the race that sprung from his son Gritsamada. What else wouldst thou ask ?' "[67]

SECTION XXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What men, O chief of Bharata's race, are worthy of reverent homage in the three worlds ? Tell me this in detail verily, I am never satiated with hearing thee discourse on these topics !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse between Nārada and Vāsudeva.[2] Beholding Nārada on one occasion worshipping many foremost of Brāhmanas with joined hands, Keçava addressed him, saying,[3]—Whom dost thou worship ? Whom amongst these Brāhmanas, O holy one, dost thou worship with so great reverence ? If it is capable of being heard by me, I wish then to hear it. Do, O foremost of righteous men, tell me this !*—[4]

" 'Nārada said,—Hear, O Govinda, as to who those are whom I am worshipping, O grinder of foes ! What other person is there in the world than thou that so much deserves to hear this ?[5] I worship them, O puissant one, that constantly worship Varuna and Vāyu and Āditya, and Parjanya and the deity of Fire, and Sthānu and Skanda and Lakshmi and Vishnu, and the Brāhmanas, and the lord of speech, and Chandramas, and the Waters and Earth and the goddess Saraswati.[6-7] O tiger of Vrishni's race, I always worship those Brāhmanas that are endued with penances, that are conversant with the Vedas, that are always devoted to Vedic study, and that are possessed of high worth.[8] O puissant one, I bow down my head unto those persons who are freed from boastfulness, who discharge, with an empty stomach, the rites in honor of the deities, who

---

* 'Teshu (Brāhmaneshu) Vahumānaparah (san) kān namasyasi'—this is the Grammar, as explained by the Commentator.—T.

are always contented with what they have, and who are endued with forgiveness.[9] I worship them, O Yādava, that are performers of sacrifices, that are forgiving in disposition, and self-restrained, that are masters of their own senses, that worship truth and righteousness, and that give away land and kine unto good Brāhmanas.*[10] I bow unto them, O Yādava, that are devoted to the observance of penances, that dwell in forests, that subsist upon fruits and roots, that never store anything for the morrow, and that are observant of all the acts and rites laid down in the scriptures.[11] I bow unto them, O Yādava, that feed and cherish their servants, that are always hospitable to guests, and that eat only the remnants of what is offered to the deities.[12] I worship them that have become irresistible by studying the Vedas, that are eloquent in discoursing on the scriptures, that are observant of the vow of Brahmacharyya, and that are always devoted to the duties of officiating at the sacrifices of others and of teaching disciples.[13] I worship them that are endued with compassion towards all creatures, and that study the Vedas till their backs are heated by the sun.[14] I bow unto them, O Yādava, that strive to obtain the grace of their preceptors, that labour in the acquisition of their Vedas, that are firm in the observance of vows, that wait, with dutiful obedience, upon their preceptors and seniors, and that are free from malice and envy.[15] I bow unto them, O Yādava, that are observant of excellent vows, that practice taciturnity, that have knowledge of Brāhma, that are firm in truth, that are givers of libations of clarified butter and oblations of meat.[16] I bow to them, O Yādava, that subsist upon eleemosynary alms, that are emaciated for want of adequate food and drink, that have lived in the abodes of their preceptors, that are averse to and destitute of all enjoyments, and that are poor in the goods of this Earth.[17] I bow unto them, O Yādava, that have no affection for things of this Earth, that have no quarrels to wage with others, that do not clothe themselves, that have no wants, that have become irresistible through the acquisition of the

* 'Yajanti' with reference to 'truth' and 'righteousness' means 'worship,' and with reference to 'land' and 'kine' means 'give away.—T.'

Vedas, eloquent in the exposition of righteousness, and that are utterers of Brahma.[18] I bow unto them that are devoted to the practice of the duty of compassion towards all creatures, that are firm in the observance of truth, that are self-restrained, and that are peaceful in their behaviour.[19] I bow unto them, O Yādava, that are devoted to the worship of deities and guests, that are observant of the domestic mode of life, and that follow the practice of pigeons in the matter of their subsistence.*[20] I always bow unto those persons whose aggregate of three exists, without being weakened, in all their acts, and who are observant of truth and righteous behaviour.†[21] I bow unto them, O Keçava, that are conversant with Brahma, that are endued with knowledge of the Vedas, that are attentive to the aggregate of three, that are free from cupidity, and that are righteous in their behaviour.[22] I bow unto them, O Mādhava, that subsist upon water only, or upon air alone, or upon the remnants of the food that is offered to deities and guests, and that are observant of diverse kinds of excellent vows.[23] I always worship them that have no spouses (in consequence of the vow of celebacy they observe), that have spouses and the domestic fire (in consequence of the domestic mode of life they lead), that are the refuge of the Vedas, and that are the refuge of all creatures in the universe (in consequence of the compassion they feel towards them).[24] I always bow unto those Rishis, O Krishna, that are the creators of the universe, that are the elders of the universe, that are the eldest members of the race or the family, that are dispellers of the darkness of ignorance, and that are the best of all persons in the universe (for righteousness of behaviour and knowledge of the scriptures).[25] For these reasons, do thou also, O scion of Vrishni's race, worship every day those regenerate persons of whom I speak. Deserv-

---

* Pigeons pick up scattered grains and never store for the morrow. In the Cila and other vows, the picking up of scattered and cast off grains from the field after the crops have been taken away by the owners, is recommended as the means of filling the stomach.—T.

† The 'aggregate of three' is Righteousness, Wealth, and Pleasure. Persons who, in all the acts they do, keep an eye upon these three, are said to have their aggregate of three existing in all their acts.—T.

ing as they are of reverent worship, they will, when worshipped, confer happiness on thee, O sinless one![26] Those persons of whom I speak are always givers of happiness in this world as well as in the next. Reverenced by all, they move about in this world, and if worshipped by thee are sure to grant thee happiness.[27] They who are hospitable to all persons that come unto them as guests, and who are always devoted to Brāhmanas and kine as also to truth (in speech and behaviour), succeed in crossing all calamities and obstacles.[28] They who are always devoted to peacefulness of behavionr, as also they who are freed from malice and envy, and they who are always attentive to the study of the Vedas, succeed in crossing all calamities and obstacles.[29] They who bow unto all the deities (without showing a preference for any and thereby proving their tolerance), they who betake themselves to one Veda as their refuge, they who are possessed of faith and are self-restrained, succeed in crossing all calamities and obstacles.[30] They who worship the foremost of Brāhmanas with reverence and are firm in the observance of excellent vows and practise the virtue of charity, succeed in crossing all calamities and obstacles.[31] They who are engaged in the practice of penances, they who are always observant of the vow of celebacy, and they whose souls have been cleansed by penances, succeed in crossing all calamities and obstacles.[32] They who are devoted to the worship of the deities and guests and dependants as also of the Pitris, and they who eat the remnant of the food that is offered to deities, Pitris, guests and dependents, succeed in crossing all calamities and obstacles.[33] They who, having ignited the domestic fire, duly keep it burning and worship it with reverence, and they who have duly poured libations (to the deities) in Soma-sacrifices, succeed in crossing all calamities and obstacles.[34] They who behave as they should towards their mothers and fathers and preceptors and other seniors even as thou, O tiger among the Vrishnis dost behave, (succeed in crossing all calamities and obstacles)!—Having said these words, the celestial Rishi ceased speaking.—'[35]

"Bhishma continued,—'For these reasons, do thou also, O son of Kunti, always worship with reverence the deities, the Pitris, the Brāhmanas, and guests arrived at thy mansion, and as the

consequence of such conduct thou art sure to attain to a desirable end !' "[36]

SECTION XXXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, O thou of great wisdom, O thou that art conversant with all branches of knowledge, I desire to hear thee discourse on topics connected with duty and Righteousness ![1] Tell me truly, O chief of Bharata's race, what the merits are of those persons that grant protection to living creatures of the four orders when these pray for protection ![*][2]

"Bhishma said,—'O Dharma's son of great wisdom and widespread fame, listen to this old history touching the great merit of granting protection to others when protection is humbly sought.[3] Once on a time, a beautiful pigeon, pursued by a hawk, dropped down from the skies and sought the protection of the highly-blessed king Vrishadarbha.[4] The pure-souled monarch, beholding the pigeon take refuge in his lap from fear, comforted him, saying,—Be comforted, O bird ! Thou hast no fear ![5] Whence hast thou taken such great fright ? What hast thou done and where hast thou done it in consequence of which thou hast lost thy senses in fear and art more dead than alive ?[6] Thy color, O beautiful bird, is such as to resemble that which adorns a fresh-blown lotus of the blue variety. Thy eyes are of the hue of the pomegranate or the Açoka flower ! Do not fear. I bid thee, be comforted ![7] When thou hast sought refuge with me, know that no one will have the courage to even think of seizing thee,—thee that hast such a protector to take care of thy person ![8] I shall, for thy sake, give up today the very kingdom of the Kāçis and, if need be, my life too ! Be comforted, therefore, and let no fear be thine, O pigeon ![9]

" 'The hawk said,—This bird has been ordained to be my food. It behooves thee not, O king, to protect him from me ! I have outcoursed this bird and have got him. Verily, with

---

* 'Asya' in the singular (in the second line) is an instance of *ārsha* use.—T.

great effort have I got at him at last.[10] His flesh and blood and marrow and fat will be of great good to me. This bird will be the means of gratifying me greatly. Do not, O king, place thyself between him and me in this way![11] Fierce is the thirst that is afflicting me, and hunger is knawing my bowels. Release the bird and cast him off. I am unable to bear the pains of hunger any longer![12] I pursued him as my prey. Behold, his body is bruised and torn by me with my wings and talons. Look, his breath has become very weak. It behooves thee not, O king, to protect him from me![13] In the exercise of that power which properly belongs to thee, thou art, indeed, competent to interfere in protecting human beings when sought to be destroyed by human beings. Thou canst not, however, be admitted to have any power over a sky-ranging bird afflicted with thirst![14] Thy power may extend over thy enemies, thy servants, thy relatives, the disputes that take place between thy subjects. Indeed, it may extend over every part of thy dominions and over also thy own senses. Thy power, however, does not extend over the welkin.[15] Displaying thy prowess over such foes as act against thy wishes, thou mayst establish thy rule over them. Thy rule, however, does not extened over the birds that range the sky. Indeed, if thou hast been desirous of earning merit (by protecting this pigeon), it is thy duty to look at me also (and do what is proper for enabling me to appease my hunger and save my life)!—'[16]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of the hawk, the royal sage became filled with wonder. Without disregarding these words of his, the king, desirous of attending to his comforts, replied unto him, saying the following words.[17]

" 'The king said,—Let a bovine bull or boar or deer or buffalo be dressed today for thy sake! Do thou appease thy hunger on such food today.[18] Never to desert one that has sought my protection is my firm vow. Behold, O bird, this bird does not leave my lap!—[19]

" 'The hawk said,—I do not, O monarch, eat the flesh of the boar or the ox or of any of the diverse kinds of fowl. What need have I of food of this or that kind? My concern is with that food which has been eternally ordained for beings of my

order? Hawks feed on pigeons,—this is the eternal ordinance.[20-21] O sinless Uçinara, if thou feelest such affection for this pigeon, do thou then give me flesh from thy own body, of weight equal to that of this pigeon.—[22]

"'The king said,—Great is the favor thou showest me today by speaking to me in this strain. Yes, I shall do what thou biddest!—Having said this, that best of monarchs[23] began to cut off his own flesh and weigh it in a balance against the pigeon. Meanwhile, in the inner apartments of the palace, the spouses of the king, adorned with jewels and gems,[24] hearing what was taking place, uttered exclamations of woe and came out, stricken with grief.[25] In consequence of those cries of the ladies as also of the ministers and servants, a noise deep as the roar of the clouds arose in the palace. The sky that had been very clear became enveloped with thick clouds on every side.[26] The Earth began to tremble, as the consequence of that act of truth which the monarch did. The king began to cut off the flesh from his flanks, from his arms, and from his thighs,[27] and quickly fill one of the scales for weighing it against the pigeon. For all that, the pigeon continued to weigh heavier.[28] When at last the king became a skeleton of bones, without any flesh, and covered with blood, he desired to give up his whole body and, therefore, ascended the scale in which he had placed the flesh that he had previously cut off.[29] At that time, the three worlds, with Indra at their head, came to that spot for beholding him. Celestial kettle-drums and diverse drums were struck and played upon by invisible beings belonging to the firmament.[30] King Vrishadarbha was bathed in a shower of nectar that was poured upon him. Garlands of celestial flowers, of delicious fragrance and touch, were also showered upon him copiously and repeatedly.[31] The deities and Gandharvas and Apsaras in large bands began to sing and dance around him even as they sing and dance around the Grandsire Brahman.[32] The king then ascended a celestial car that surpassed (in grandeur and beauty) a mansion made entirely of gold, that had arches made of gold and gems, and that was adorned with columns made of *lapis lazuli*.[33] Through the merit of his act, the royal sage Civi proceeded

to eternal Heaven. Do thou also, O Yudhishthira, act in the same way towards those that seek thy protection.[34] He who protects those that are devoted to him, those that are attached to him from love and affection, and those that depend upon him, and who has compassion for all creatures, succeeds in attaining to great felicity hereafter.[35] That king who is of righteous behaviour and who is observant of honesty and integrity, succeeds by his acts of sincerity in acquiring every valuable reward.[36] The royal sage Civi, of pure soul and endued with great wisdom and unbaffled prowess, that ruler of the Kāçis, became celebrated over the three worlds for his deeds of righteousness.[37] Anybody who would protect in the same way a seeker for protection, would certainly attain (like Civi himself) to the same happy end, O best of the Bharatas.[39] He who recites this history of the royal sage Vrishadarbha is sure to become cleansed of every sin, and the person who hears this history recited by another is sure to attain to the same result.' "[39]

Section XXXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Which act, O grandsire, is the foremost of all those that have been laid down for a king? What is that act by doing which a king succeeds in enjoying both this world and the next?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Even this, *viz.*, the worship of the Brāhmanas, is the foremost of all those acts, O Bhārata, which have been laid down for a king duly installed on the throne, if, indeed, he is desirous of obtaining great happiness.[2] Even this is what the foremost of all kings should do. Know this well, O chief of Bharata's race. The king should always worship with reverence all righteous Brāhmanas possessed of Vedic lore.*[3] The king should, with bows and comforting speeches and gifts of all articles of enjoyment, worship all Brāhmanas

---

* Some texts read 'vriddhān' for 'Ishtān.' If the former reading be adopted, the meaning would be that kings should worship all *aged* Brāhmanas possessed of Vedic lore,—T.

possessed of great learning who may dwell in his city or provinces.[4] This is the foremost of all acts laid down for the king. Indeed, the king should always keep his eyes fixed on this. He should protect and cherish these, even as he protects his own self or his own children.[5] The king should worship with greater reverence those amongst the Brāhmanas that may be worthy of it (for their superior sanctity and learning). When such men are freed from all anxiety, the whole kingdom blazes forth in beauty.[6] Such individuals are worthy of adoration. Unto such the king should bow his head. Verily, they should be honored, even as one honors one's sires and grandsires. Upon them depends the course of conduct followed by men, even as the existence of all creatures depends upon Vāsava.[7] Of prowess incapable of being baffled and endued with great energy, such men, if enraged, are capable of consuming the entire kingdom to ashes by only a fiat of their will, or by acts of incantation, or by other means (derived from the power of penance).[8] I do not see anything that can destroy them. Their power seems to be uncontrolled, being capable of reaching to the farthest end of the universe. When angry, their glances fall upon men and things like a blazing flame of fire upon a forest.[9] The most courageous men are struck with fear at their name. Their virtues and powers are extraordinary and immeasurable. Some amongst them are like wells and pits with mouths covered by grass and creepers, while others resemble the firmament cleared of clouds and darkness.[10] Some amongst them are of fierce dispositions (like Durvāsas and others of that stamp). Some are as mild and soft in disposition as cotton (like Gautama and others). Some amongst them are very cunning (like Agastya who devoured the Asura Vātāpi, and other Rishis of that class). Some amongst them are devoted to the practice of penances.[11] Some amongst them are employed in agricultural pursuits (like the preceptor of Uddālaka). Some amongst them are engaged in the keep of kine (as Upamanyu while attending his preceptor). Some amongst them live upon eleemosynary alms. Some amongst them are even theives (like Vālmiki in his early years and Viçwāmitra during a famine). Some amongst them are fond of fomenting quarrels and disputes

(like Nārada). Some, again, amongst them are actors and dancers (like Bharata).[12] Some amongst them are competent to achieve all feats, ordinary and extraordinary (like Agastya drinking up the entire ocean as if it were a palmful of water). The Brāhmanas, O chief of Bharata's race, are of diverse aspects and behaviour.[13] One should always utter the praises of the Brāhmanas who are conversant with all duties, who are righteous of behaviour, who are devoted to diverse kinds of acts, and who are seen to derive their sustenance from diverse kinds of occupations.*[14] The Brāhmanas, O ruler of men, who are highly blessed, are older in respect of their origin than the Pitris, the deities, human beings (belonging to the three other orders), the Snakes, and the Rākshasas.[15] These regenerate persons are incapable of being vanquished by the deities or the Pitris, or the Gandharvas or the Rākshasas, or the Asuras or the Piçāchas.[16] The Brāhmanas are competent to make him a deity that is not a deity. They can, again, divest one that is a deity of his status as such. He becomes a king whom they wish to make a king. He, on the other hand, goes to the wall whom they do not love or like.[17] I tell thee truly, O king, that those foolish persons, without doubt, meet with destruction who calumniate the Brāhmanas and utter their dispraise.[18] Skilled in praise and dispraise, and themselves the origin or cause of other people's fame and ignominy, the Brāhmanas, O king, always become angry with those that seek to injure others.[19] That man whom the Brāhmanas praise succeeds in growing in prosperity. That man who is censured and cast off by the Brāhmanas soon meets with discomfiture.[20] It is in consequence of the absence of Brāhmanas from among them that the Cakas, the Yavanas, the Kāmvojas, and other Kshatriya tribes have become fallen and degraded into the status of Cudras.[21] The Drāvidas, the Kalingas, the Pulindas, the Uçinaras, the Kolisarpas, the Māhishakas, and other Kshatriyas,[22] have, in consequence of the

* Though really conversant with all duties, and of righteous behaviour, the Brāhmanas, nevertheless, for concealing their real natures or for protecting the world, are seen to be employed in diverse kinds of occupations.—T.

absence of Brāhmanas from among their midst, become degraded into Cudras. Defeat at their hands is preferable to victory over them, O foremost of victorious persons!"[23] One slaying all other living creatures in this world does not incur a sin so heinous as that of slaying a single Brāhmana. The great Rishis have said that Brāhmanicide is a heinous sin.[24] One should never utter the dispraise or calumny of the Brāhmanas. Where the dispraise of Brāhmanas is uttered, one should sit with face hanging down or leave that spot (for avoiding both the utterer and his words).[25] That man has not as yet been born in this world or will not take birth here who has been or will be able to pass his life in happiness after quarreling with the Brāhmanas.[26] One cannot seize the wind with one's hands. One cannot touch the moon with one's hand. One cannot support the Earth on one's arms. After the same manner, O king, one is not able to vanquish the Brāhmanas in this world.' "[27]

Section XXXIV.

"Bhishma said,—'One should always offer the most reverent worship unto the Brāhmanas. They have Soma for their king, and they it is who confer happiness and misery upon others.[1] They, O king, should always be cherished and protected as one cherishes and protects one's own sires and grandsires, and should be adored with bows and gifts of food and ornaments and other articles of enjoyment as also with such things as they may desire. The peace and happiness of the kingdom flow from such respect shown to the Brāhmanas even as the peace and happiness of all living creatures flow from Vāsava the chief of the celestials.[2] Let Brāhmanas of pure behaviour and Brahma-effulgence be born in a kingdom. Kshatriyas also that are splendid car-warriors and that are capable of scorching all foes, should be desired (amongst those that settle in a kingdom).[3] This was said unto me by Nārada. There is nothing higher, O king, than this, *viz.*, the act of causing a Brāhmana possessed of good birth, having a knowledge of morality and righteousness, and steadfast in the observance of excellent vows, to

take up his residence in one's mansion. Such an act is productive of every kind of blessing.[4] The sacrificial offerings given unto Brāhmanas reach the very deities who accept them. Brāhmanas are the sires of all creatures. There is nothing higher than a Brāhmana.[5] Āditya, Chandramas, Wind, Water, Earth, Sky, and the points of the compass, all enter the body of the Brāhmana and take what the Brāhmana eats.*[6] In that house where Brāhmanas do not eat, the Pitris refuse to eat.[7] The deities also never eat in the house of the wretch who hates the Brāhmanas. When the Brāhmanas are gratified, the Pitris also are gratified.[8] The deities also become gratified when the Brāhmanas are gratified. There is no doubt in this. They that give away the sacrificial Havi unto the Brāhmanas become themselves gratified (in this and the other world).[9] Such men never meet with destruction. Verily, they succeed in attaining to high ends. Those particular offerings in sacrifices with which one gratifies the Brāhmanas,[10] go to gratify both the Pitris and the deities. The Brāhmana is the cause of that Sacrifice whence all created things have sprung.[11] The Brāhmana is acquainted with that from which this universe has sprung and unto which, when apparently destroyed, it returns. Indeed, the Brāhmana knows the path that leads to Heaven and the other path that leads to the opposite place.[12] The Brāhmana is conversant with that which has happened and that which will happen. The Brāhmana is the foremost of all two-legged beings. The Brāhmana, O chief of the Bharatas, is fully conversant with those duties that have been laid down for his order.[13] Those persons that follow the Brāhmanas are never vanquished. Departing from this world, they never meet with destruction. Indeed, victory is always theirs.[14] Those high-souled persons,—indeed, those persons that have subdued their souls,—who accept the words that fall from the lips of the Brāhmanas, are never vanquished. Victory always becomes theirs.†[15]

---

* The argument, therefore, is that anything given to the Brāhmana to eat and that is eaten by him apparently, is really eaten by these deities.—T.

† 'Bhutātmānah' is explained by the Commentator as 'Bhuta-prāptah-vaçikritah-ātmā yaih.'—T.

The energy and might of those Kshatriyas who scorch everything with their energy and might, when they encounter the Brāhmanas, become neutralised.[16] The Bhrigus conquered the Tālajanghas. The sons of Angiras conquered the Nipas. Bharadwāja conquered the Vitahavyas as also the Ailas, O chief of Bharata's race.[17] Although all these Kshatriyas were capable of using diverse kinds of arms, yet the Brāhmanas named, owning only black deer-skins for their emblems, succeeded in conquering them effectually. Bestowing the Earth upon the Brāhmanas and illuminating both the worlds by the splendour of such a deed, one should accomplish acts through which one may succeed in attaining to the end of all things.*[18] Like fire concealed within wood, everything that is said or heard or read in this world, lies ensconced in the Brāhmana.[19] In this connection is cited the old history of the conversation between Vāsudeva and the Earth, O chief of Bharata's race !'[20]

" 'Vāsudeva said,—O mother of all creatures, O auspicious goddess, I desire to ask thee for a solution of this doubt of mine ! By what act does a man leading the domestic mode of life succeed in cleansing all his sins ?—[21]

" 'The Earth said,—One should serve the Brāhmanas. This conduct is cleansing and excellent. All the impurities are destroyed of that man who serves the Brāhmanas with reverence.[22] From this (conduct) arises prosperity. From this arises fame. From this springs forth intelligence or knowledge of the soul. A Kshatriya, by this conduct, becomes a mighty car-warrior and a scorcher of foes and succeeds in acquiring great fame.[23] Even this is what Nārada said unto me, *viz.*, that one should always reverence a Brāhmana that is well-born, of rigid vows, and conversant with the scriptures, if one desires every kind of prosperity.[24] That man really grows in prosperity who is applauded by the Brāhmanas who are higher than those that are regarded superior to all men high or low.[25] That man who

---

* The second line of Verse 18 is a crux. The Commentator explains that 'prakshipya' means 'dattwā'; 'Kun' is the Earth. 'Vān' is 'diptim kurvan, ubhaya-loke iti çeshah.' 'Pāragāminam' is 'paralokahitam.'—T.

speaks ill of the Brāhmanas soon meets with discomfiture, even as a clod of unbaked earth meets with destruction when cast into the sea.[26] After the same manner, all acts that are hurtful to the Brāhmanas are sure to bring about discomfiture and ruin. Behold the dark spots on the Moon and the salt waters of the ocean![27] The great Indra had at one time been marked all over with a thousand sex-marks. It was through the power of the Brāhmanas that those marks became altered into as many eyes.[28] Behold, O Mādhava, how all those things took place! Desiring fame and prosperity and diverse regions of beatitude in the next world, a person of pure behaviour and soul should, O slayer of Madhu, live in obedience to the dictates of the Brāhmanas.*—'[29]

"Bhishma continued,—,Hearing these words of the goddess Earth, the slayer of Madhu, O thou of Kuru's race, exclaimed, —Excellent, Excellent!—and honored the goddess in due form.[30] Having heard this discourse between the goddess Earth and Mādhava, do thou, O son of Prithā, always, with rapt soul, worship all superior Brāhmanas. Doing this, thou shalt verily obtain what is highly beneficial for thee!' "[31]

SECTION XXXV.

"Bhishma said,—O blessed king, a Brāhmana, by birth alone, becomes an object of adoration with all creatures and entitled, as guests, to eat the first portion of all cooked food.†[1] From them flow all the great objects of life (*viz.*, Righteousness, and Wealth and Pleasure and Emancipation). They are the friends of all creatures in the universe. They are again the mouths of the deities (for food poured into their mouths is eaten by the deities). Worshipped with reverence, they wish us prosperity

---

* The dark spots on the Moon were due to the curse of Daksha. The waters of the Ocean became saltish owing to the curse of a Rishi.—T.

† The sense is that one becomes a Brāhmana by birth alone, without the aid of those purificatiory rites that have been laid down in the scriptures. When food is cooked, none else than a Brāhmana is entitled to the first portion thereof —T.

by uttering words fraught with auspiciousness.[2] Disregarded by our foes, let them be enraged with these and let them wish evil unto those detractors of theirs, uttering words fraught with severe curses.[3] In this connection, persons conversant with ancient history repeat the following verses sung of old respecting how in ancient times the Creator, after having created the Brāhmanas, ordained their duties.[4]—A Brāhmana should never do anything else than what has been ordained for him. Protected, they should protect others. By conducting themselves in this way, they are sure to attain to that which is highly advantageous for them.[5] By doing those acts that are ordained for them, they are sure to obtain Brahma-prosperity. Ye shall become the exemplars of all creatures, and reins for restraining them![6] A Brāhmana possessed of learning should never do that which is laid down for the Cudras. By doing such acts, a Brāhmana loses his merit.*[7] By Vedic study he is sure to obtain prosperity and intelligence and energy and puissance competent to scorch all things, as also glory of the most exalted kind.[8] By offering oblations of clarified butter unto the deities, the Brāhmanas attain to high blessedness, become worthy of taking the precedence of even children in the matter of all kinds of cooked food, and endued with Brahma-prosperity.†[9] Endued with faith that is fraught with compassion towards all creatures, and devoted to self-restraint and the study of the Vedas, ye shall attain to the fruition of all your wishes![10] Whatever things exist in the world of men, whatever things occur in the region of the deities, can all be achieved and acquired with the aid of penances and knowledge and the observance of vows and restraints.[11]—I have thus recited to thee,

---

* The Commentator thinks that 'çaudram karma' has especial reference to the service of others. Hence, what is interdicted for the Brāhmanas is the service of others.—T.

† In this country, to this day, when food is prepared in view of guests invited to a house, no portion of such food can be offered to any one before it is dedicated to the deities and placed before those for whom it is intended. An exception, however, is made for children. What is stated here is that a good Brāhmana can take the precedence of even children in the matter of such food.—T.

O sinless one, the verses that were sung by Brahman himself. Endued with supreme intelligence and wisdom, the Creator himself ordained this, through compassion for the Brāhmanas.[12] The puissance of those amongst them that are devoted to penances is equal to the might of kings. They are verily irresistible, fierce, possessed of the speed of lightning, and exceedingly quick in what they do.[13] There are amongst them those that are possessed of the might of lions and those that are possessed of the might of tigers. Some of them are endued with the might of boars, some of the deer, and some of crocodiles.[14] Some there are amongst them whose touch resembles that of snakes of virulent poison, and some whose bite resembles that of sharks. Some amongst them are capable of compassing by speech alone the destruction of those that are opposed to them; and some are competent to destroy by a glance only of their eyes.[15] Some, amongst them, as already said, are like snakes of virulent poison, and some that are possessed of very mild dispositions. The dispositions, O Yudhishthira, of the Brāhmanas, are of diverse kinds.[16] The Mekalas, the Drāvidas, the Lāthas, the Paundras, the Konwaçiras, the Caundikas, the Daradas, the Darvas, the Chauras, the Cavaras, the Varvaras,[17] the Kirātas, the Yavanas, and numerous other tribes of Kshatriyas, have become degraded into the status of Cudras through the wrath of the Brāhmanas.[18] In consequence of having disregarded the Brāhmanas, the Asuras have been obliged to take refuge in the depths of the ocean. Through the grace of the Brāhmanas the deities have become denizens of the happy rigions of Heaven.[19] The element of space or ether is incapable of being touched. The Himavat mountains are incapable of being moved from their site. The current of Gangā is incapable of being resisted by a dam. The Brāhmanas are incapable of being subjugated.[20] Kshatriyas are incapable of ruling the Earth without cultivating the good will of the Brāhmanas. The Brāhmanas are high-souled beings. They are the deities of the very deities.[21] Do thou always worship them with gifts and obedient services, if, indeed, thou wishest to enjoy the sovereignty of the whole Earth with her belt of seas.[22] The energy and might of Brāhmanas, O sinless one, become abated

in consequence of the acceptance of gifts. Thou shouldst protect thy race, O king, from those Brāhmanas that do not desire to accept gifts !*' "[23]

Section XXXVI.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old history of the discourse between Cakra and Camvara. Do thou listen to it, O Yudhishthira.[1] Once upon a time Cakra, assuming the guise of an ascetic with matted locks on his head and body smeared with ashes all over, rode on an ugly car and repaired to the presence of the Asura Camvara.[2]

" 'Cakra said,—Through what conduct, O Camvara, hast thou been able to get at the head of all individuals of thy race? For what reason do all people regard thee as superior? Do thou tell me this truly and in detail !—[3]

" 'Camvara said,—I never cherish any ill feelings towards the Brāhmanas. Whatever instructions they impart I accept with unquestioning reverence. When the Brāhmanas are engaged in interpreting the scriptures, I listen to them with great happiness.[4] Having heard their interpretations I never disregard them. Nor do I ever offend against the Brāhmanas in any way. I always worship those Brāhmanas that are endued with intelligence. I always seek information from them. I always worship their feet.[5] Approaching me with confidence, they always address me with affection and enquire after my welfare. If they ever happen to be heedless, I am always heedful. If they happen to sleep, I always remain wakeful.[6] Like bees drenching the cells of the comb with honey, the Brāhmanas, who are my instructors and rulers, always drench me with the nectar of knowledge—me that am always devoted to the path pointed out by the scriptures, that am devoted to the Brāhmanas, and that am perfectly free from malice or evil passion.[7]

---

* What is stated here is that those Brāhmanas that do not accept gifts are very superior. Their energy and might are great. Bhishma directs Yudhishthira to be always careful of how he would treat such superior Brāhmanas. After 'rakshyam' the words 'swakulam' are understood. The Burdwan translator misunderstands the second line of the Verse.—T.

Whatever they say with cheerful hearts I always accept. aided by memory and understanding. I am always careful of my own faith in them and I always think of my own inferiority to them.[8] I always lick the nectar that dwells at the end of their tongue, and it is for this reason that I occupy a position far above that of all others of my race like the Moon transcending all the stars.[9] The scriptural interpretations which fall from the lips of the Brāhmanas and listening to which every wise man acts in the world, constitute nectar on Earth and may also be likened to eyes of remarkable excellence.*[10] Witnessing the encounter between the deities and the Asuras in days of old, and understanding the puissance of the instructions that fell from the Brāhmanas, my father became filled with delight and wonder.†[11] Beholding the puissance of high-souled Brāhmanas, my sire asked Chandramas the question,—How do the Brāhmanas attain to success?—[12]

"'—Soma said,—The Brāhmanas become crowned with success through their penances. Their strength consists in speech. The prowess of persons belonging to the kingly order resides in their arms. The Brāhmanas, however, have speech for their weapons.[13] Undergoing the discomforts of a residence in the abode of his preceptor, the Brāhmana should study the Vedas or at least the Pranava. Divesting himself of wrath and renouncing earthly attachments, he should become a Yati, viewing all things and all creatures with equal eyes.[14] If remaining in the abode of his sire he masters all the Vedas and acquiring great knowledge attains to a position that should command respect, people still condemn him as untravelled or home-keeping.[15] Like a snake swallowing mice, the Earth swallows up these two, *viz.*, a king that is unwilling to fight and a Brāh-

---

* The construction is 'Etat Brāhmana mukhāt çāstram, yat çrutwā iha pravartate, prithivyām &c., &c.' Both the Vernacular translators have misunderstood the Verse.—T.

† 'Etat kāranam' seems to refer to 'Brāhmana-mukhāt çāstram.' The sense seems to be that in the encounter between the deities and the Asuras the power of the Brāhmanas was abundantly proved, for Cukra aided the Asuras with his Mantras and incantations, while Vrihaspati and others aided the deities by the same means.—T.

mana that is unwilling to leave home for acquiring knowledge.*[16] Pride destroys the prosperity of persons of little intelligence. A maiden, if she conceives, becomes stained. A Brāhmana incurs reproach by keeping at home.[17] Even this is what my father heard from Soma of wonderful aspect. My father, in consequence of this, began to worship and reverence the Brāhmanas. Like him, I also worship and adore all Brāhmanas of high vows!—'[18]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words that fell from the mouth of that prince of Dānavas, Cakra began to worship the Brāhmanas, and as a consequence thereof he succeeded in obtaining the chiefdom of the deities.' "[19]

Section XXXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Which amongst these three persons, O grandsire, should be regarded as the best for making gifts unto, *viz.*, one who is a thorough stranger, or one who is living with and known to the giver for a long time, or one who presents himself before the giver, coming from a long distance?'[1]

"Bhishma said.—All these are equal. The eligibility of some consists in their soliciting alms for performing sacrifices or for paying the preceptor's fee or for maintaining their spouses and children. The eligibility of some, for receiving gifts, consists in their following the vow of wandering over the Earth, never soliciting anything but receiving when given. We should also give unto one what one seeks.†[2] We should, however, make gifts without afflicting those that depend upon us. Even this is what we have heard. By afflicting one's dependants, one afflicts one's own self.[3] The stranger,—one, that is, who has

---

* In some of the Bengal texts for 'Bhumiretau' the reading 'Bhumireto' occurs. The fact is, the latter is a misprint or a mere clerical error. The 'etau' has reference to the two mentioned in the second line. The Burdwan translator actually takes 'Bhumireto' as a correct reading and makes nonsense of the Verse.—T

† I expand this Verse. After 'kriyā bhavati' 'pātratwam' is understood. 'Kriyā' includes the diverse objects for which persons solicit alms or gifts. 'Upānçuvratam' is 'maunam parivrājyam.'—T.

come for the first time,—should be regarded as a proper object of gifts. He who is familiar and well-known and has been living with the giver, should also be regarded in the same light. The learned know that he too who comes from a distant place should be regarded in an equal light.'[4]

"Yudhishthira said,—'It is true that we should make gifts unto others without afflicting any one and without doing violence to the ordinances of the scriptures. One should, however, correctly ascertain who the person is that should be regarded as a proper object for making gifts. He should be such that the gift itself, by being made over to him, may not grieve.*'[5]

"Bhishma said,—'If the Ritwij, the Purohita, the preceptor, the Āchārya, the disciple, the relative (by marriage), and kinsmen, happen to be possessed of learning and free from malice, then should they be deemed worthy of respect and worship.[6] Those persons that do not possess such qualifications cannot be regarded as worthy of gifts or hospitality. Hence, one should with deliberation examine persons with whom one comes into contact.[7] Absence of wrath, truthfulness of speech, abstention from injury, sincerity, peacefulness of conduct, the absence of pride, modesty, renunciation, self-restraint, and tranquillity or contentment of soul,[8]—he in whom these occur by nature, and in whom there are no wicked acts, should be regarded as a proper object. Such a person deserves honors.[9] Whether the person be one who is well-known and familiar, or one who has come newly, whether he has or has not been seen before, if he happens to possess these qualifications, he should be regarded as worthy of honors and hospitality.[10] He who denies the authority of the Vedas, or strives to show that the scriptures should be disregarded, or approves of all breaches of restraint in society,—simply brings about his own ruin (and should not be regarded as worthy of gifts).[11] That Brāhmana who is vain of his learning, who speaks ill of the Vedas, or who is devoted to the science of useless disputation,[12] or who is desirous of gaining victory (in disputations) in assemblies of good men by

* It is said that food or other things, when given to an underserving person, feels grief. What Yudhishthira asks is who the proper person is unto whom gifts may be made.—T.

disproving the reasons that exist for morality and religion and ascribing everything to chance, or who indulges in censuring and reproaching others or who reproves Brāhmanas,[13] or who is suspicious of all persons, or who is foolish and bereft of judgment, or who is bitter of speech, should be known to be as hateful as a dog.[14] As a dog encounters others, barking the while and seeking to bite, such a person is even so, for he spends his breath in vain and seeks to destroy the authority of all the scriptures.[15] Those practices that support society, the duties of righteousness, and all those acts which are productive of benefit to one's own self, should be attended to. A person that lives, attending to these, grows in prosperity for everlasting time.[16] By paying off the debt one owes to the deities by performing sacrifices, that to the Rishis by studying the Vedas, that to the Pitris by procreating children, that to the Brāhmanas by making presents unto them, and that to guests by feeding them, in due order, and with purity of intention, and properly attending to the ordinances of the scriptures, a householder does not fall away from righteousness.*' "[17-18]

SECTION XXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O best of the Bharatas, I wish to hear thee discourse on the disposition of women. Women are said to be the root of all evil. They are all regarded as exceedingly frail.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old history of the discourse between the celestial Rishi Nārada and the (celestial) courtezan Panchachudā.[2] Once in ancient times, the celestial Rishi Nārada, having roamed over all the world, met the Apsarā Panchachudā of faultless beauty, having her abode in the region of Brahman.[3] Beholding the Apsarā every limb

---

* All these acts should be performed with purity of intention and according to the ordinances of the scriptures. For example, sacrifices should not be performed with vanity or pride. The Vedas should not be studied without faith. Children should not be procreated from lust, &c.—T.

of whose body was endued with great beauty, the ascetic addressed her, saying,—O thou of slender waist, I have a doubt in my mind. Do thou explain it !—'[4]

"Bhishma cantinued,—'Thus addressed by the Rishi, the Apsarā said unto him,—If the subject is one which is known to me and if thou thinkest me competent to speak on it, I shall certainly say what is in my mind.—[5]

" 'Nārada said,—O amiable one, I shall not certainly appoint thee to any task that is beyond thy competence. O thou of beautiful face, I wish to hear from thee of the disposition of women.'—[6]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of the celestial Rishi, that foremost of Apsarās replied unto him, saying,—I am unable, being myself a woman, to speak ill of women.[7] Thou knowest what women are and with what nature they are endued. It behooveth thee not, O celestial Rishi, to set me to such a task.[8]—Unto her the celestial Rishi said,—It is very true, O thou of slender waist ! One incurs fault by speaking what is untrue. In saying, however, what is true, there can be no fault.[9]—Thus addressed by him, the Apsarā Panchachudā of sweet smiles consented to answer Nārada's question. She then addressed herself to mention what the true and eternal faults are of women ![10]

" 'Panchachudā said,—Even if high-born and endued with beauty and possessed of protectors, women wish to transgress the restraints assigned to them. This fault truly stains them, O Nārada ![11] There is nothing else that is more sinful than women. Verily, women are the root of all faults. That is certainly known to thee, O Nārada ![12] Women, even when possessed of husbands having fame and wealth, of handsome features and completely obedient to them, are prepared to disregard them if they get the opportunity.[13] This, O puissant one, is a sinful disposition with us women that, casting off modesty, we cultivate the companionship of men of sinful habits and intentions.[14] Women betray a liking for those men who court them, who approach their presence, and who respectfully serve them to even a slight extent.[15] Through want of solicitation by persons of the other sex, or fear of relatives, women, who are

naturally impatient of all restraints, do not transgress those that have been ordained for them, and remain by the side of their husbands.[16] There is none whom they are incapable of admitting to their favours. They never take into consideration the age of the person they are prepared to favour. Ugly or handsome, if only the person happens to belong to the opposite sex, women are ready to enjoy his companionship.[17] That women remain faithful to their lords is due not to their fear of sin, nor to compassion, nor to wealth. nor to the affection that springs up in their hearts for kinsmen and children.[18] Women living in the bosom of respectable families envy the condition of those members of their sex that are young and well-adorned with jewels and gems and that lead a free life.[19] Even those women that are loved by their husbands and treated with great respect, are seen to bestow their favours upon men that are hump-backed, that are blind, that are idiots, or that are dwarfs.[20] Women may be seen to like the companionship of even those men that are destitute of the power of locomotion or those men that are endued with great ugliness of features. O great Rishi, there is no man in this world whom women may regard as unfit for companionship.[21] Si autem hominum societatem obstinere non possint, maritum longius exspectare nolentes, inter sese alia aliam petit.[22] Through inability to obtain persons of the opposite sex, or fear of relatives, or fear of death and imprisonment, women remain, of themselves, within the restraints prescribed for them.[23] They are exceedingly restless, for they always hanker after new companions. In consequence of their nature being unintelligible, they are incapable of being kept in obedience by affectionate treatment. Their disposition is such that they are incapable of being restrained when bent upon transgression. Verily, women are like the words uttered by the wise.*[24] Fire is never satiated with fuel. Ocean can never be filled with the waters that the rivers being unto him. The Destroyer is never satiated with slaying even all living creatures. Similarly, women are never satiated with men.[25] This, O celes-

* Such words are unseizable and unintelligible for their depth of meaning. Women are equally unseizable and unintelligible.—T.

tial Rishi, is another mystery connected with women. As soon as they see a man of handsome and charming features, unfailing signs of desire appear on their persons.[26] They never show sufficient regard for even such husbands as accomplish all their wishes, as always do what is agreeable to them, and as protect them from want and danger.[27] Women never regard so highly even articles of enjoyment in abundance or ornaments or other possessions of an agreeable kind as they do the companionship of persons of the opposite sex.[28] The destroyer, the deity of wind, death, the nether regions, the equine mouth that roves through the ocean, vomiting ceaseless flames of fire, the sharpness of the razor, virulent poison, the snake, and Fire,—all these exist in a state of union in woman.[29] That eternal Brahma whence the five great elements have sprung into existence, whence the Creator Brahman hath ordained the universe, and whence, indeed, men have sprung, verily from the same eternal source have women sprung into existence. At that time, again, O Nārada, when women were created, these faults that I have enumerated were planted in them!—' "[30]

Section XXXIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'All men, O king, in this world, are seen to attach themselves to women, overcome by the illusion that is created by the divine Being.[1] Similarly, women too are seen to attach themselves to men. All this is seen taking place everywhere in the world. On this subject a doubt exists in my mind.[2] Why, O delighter of the Kurus, do men (when women are stained with so many faults) still attach themselves to women? Who, again, are those men with whom women are highly pleased, and who are they with whom they are displeased?[3] It behooveth thee, O chief of men, to explain to me how men are capable of protecting women?[4] While men take pleasure in women and sport with them, women, it seems, are engaged in deceiving men. Then, again, if a man once falls into their hands, it is difficult for him to escape from them. Like kine ever affecting pastures new, women affect new men one after another.[5] That illusion which the Asura Camvara

possessed, that illusion which the Asura Namuchi possessed, that illusion which Vali or Kumbhinasi had, the sum total thereof is possessed by women.[6] If man laughs, women laugh. If man weeps, they weep. If the opportunity requires, they receive the man that is disagreeable to them with agreeable words.[7] That science of policy which the preceptor of the Asuras knew, that science of policy which the preceptor of the celestials, *viz.*, Vrihaspati, knew, cannot be regarded to be deeper or more distinguished for subtility than what woman's intelligence naturally brings forth. Verily, how can women, therefore, be restrained by men ?[8] They make a lie appear as truth, and a truth appear as a lie. They who can do this,—I ask, O hero,—how can they be ruled by persons of the opposite sex ?[9] It seems to me that Vrihaspati and other great thinkers, O slayer of foes, evolved the science of Policy from observation of the understandings of women.[10] Whether treated by men, with respect or with disdain, women are seen, to turn the heads and agitate the hearts of men.*[11] Living creatures, O thou of mighty arms, are virtuous. Even this is what has been heard by us. (How, then, can this be consistent with fact ? For,) treated with affection and respect or otherwise, women (forming a fair portion of living creatures) are seen to deserve censure for their conduct towards men.†[12] This great doubt fills my mind, *viz.*, when their behaviour is such, what man is there that can restrain them within the bounds of righteousness ? Do thou explain this to me, O highly blessed scion of Kuru's race ![13] It behooves thee to tell me, O chief of Kuru's race, whether women are truly capable of being restrained within the bonds prescribed by the scriptures or whether any one before our time did really succeed in so restraining them !' "[14]

---

* The sense is this : women agitate the hearts of those that treat them with respect as of those that treat them with disdain. The Commentator explains that Pujitah dhikkritāvā tulyavat vikāram janayati.—T.

† All living creatures are virtuous, for they are capable of progressing towards godship by their own acts.—T.

Section XL.

"Bhishma said,—'It is even so as thou sayest, O thou of mighty arms. There is nothing untrue in all this that thou sayest, O thou of Kuru's race, on the subject of women, O monarch![1] In this connection I shall recite to thee the old history of how in days of yore the high-souled Vipula had succeeded in restraining women within the bounds laid down for them.[2] I shall also tell thee, O king, how women were created by the Grandsire Brahman and the object for which they were created by Him.[3] There is no creature more sinful, O son, than woman. Woman is a blazing fire. She is the illusion, O king, that the Daitya Maya created. She is the sharp edge of the razor. She is poison. She is a snake. She is fire. She is, verily, all these united together.[4] It has been heard by us that all persons of the human race are characterised by righteousness, and that they, in course of natural progress and improvement, attain to the status of deities. This circumstance alarmed the deities.[5] They, therefore, O chastiser of foes, assembled together and repaired to the presence of the Grandsire. Informing Him of what was in their minds, they stood silent in his presence, with downcast eyes.[6] The puissant Grandsire, having ascertained what was in the hearts of the deities, created, women, with the aid of an Atharvan rite.[7] In a former creation, O son of Kunti, women were all virtuous. Those, however, that sprang from this creation by Brahman with the aid of an illusion, became sinful. The Grandsire bestowed upon them the desire of enjoying all kinds of carnal pleasure.[8] Tempted by the desire of enjoyment, they began to pursue persons of the other sex. The puissant lord of the deities created Wrath as the companion of Lust.[9] Persons of the male sex, yielding to the power of Lust and Wrath, sought the companionship of women. Women have no especial acts prescribed for them. Even this is the ordinance that was laid down.[10] The Cruti declares that women are endued with senses the most powerful, that they have no scriptures to follow, and that they are living lies. Beds and seats and ornaments and food and drink

and the absence of all that is respectable and righteous,[11] indulgence in disagreeable words, and love of sexual companionship,—these were bestowed by Brahman upon women. Men are quite unable to restrain them within bounds.[12] The Creator himself is incapable of restraining them within the limits that are proper: what need then be said of men?[13] This, O chief of men, I heard in former days, *viz.*, how Vipula had succeeded in protecting his preceptor's spouse in ancient times.[14] There was in days of yore a highly blessed Rishi of the name of Devaçarman of great celebrity. He had a wife, of name Ruchi, who was unequalled on Earth for beauty.[15] Her loveliness intoxicated every beholder among the deities and Gandharvas and Dānavas. The chastiser of Pāka, *viz.*, Indra, the slayer of Vritra, O monarch, was in particular enamoured of her and coveted her person.[16] The great ascetic Devaçarman was fully cognisant of the disposition of women. He, therefore, to the best of his power and energy, protected her (from every kind of evil influence).[17] The Rishi knew that Indra was restrained by no scruples in the matter of seeking the companionship of other people's wives. It was for this reason that he used to protect his spouse, putting forth all his power.[18] Once on a time, O son, the Rishi became desirous of performing a sacrifice. He began to think of how (during his own absence from home) his wife could be protected.[19] Endued with high ascetic merit, he at last hit upon the course he should adopt. Summoning his favourite disciple whose name was Vipula and who was of Bhrigu's race, he said as follows.[20]

"'Devaçarman said,—I shall leave home (for a while) in order to perform a sacrifice. The chief of the celestials always covets this Ruchi of mine. Do thou, during my absence, protect her, putting forth all thy might![21] Thou shalt pass thy time heedfully in view of Purandara. O foremost one of Bhrigu's race, that Indra assumes various disguises.—'[22]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by his preceptor, the ascetic Vipula, with senses under control, always engaged in severe penances, possessed of the splendour, O king, of fire or the sun, conversant with all the duties of righteousness, and ever truthful in speech, answered him, saying,—So be it!—

Once more, however, as his preceptor was about to set out, Vipula asked him in these words.[23-24]

" 'Vipula said,—Tell me, O Muni, what forms does Cakra assume when he presents himself. Of what kind is his body and what is his energy? It behooveth thee to say all this to me.—[25]

"Bhishma continued,—'The illustrious Rishi then truly described unto the high-souled Vipula all the illusions of Cakra, O Bhārata.[26]

" 'Devaçarman said,—The puissant chastiser of Pāka, O regenerate Rishi, is full of illusion. Every moment he assumes those forms that he chooses.[27] Sometimes he wears a diadem and holds the thunder-bolt. Sometimes, armed with the thunder-bolt and wearing a crown on his head, he adorns himself with ear-rings. In a moment he transforms himself into the shape and aspect of a Chandāla.[28] Sometimes he appears with coronal locks on his head; soon again, O son, he shows himself with matted locks, his person clad the while in rags. Sometimes he assumes a goodly and gigantic frame. The next moment he transforms himself into one of emaciated limbs, and dressed in rags.[29] Sometimes he becomes fair, sometimes darkish, sometimes dark, of complexion. Sometimes he becomes ugly and sometimes as possessed of great comeliness of person. Sometimes he shows himself as young and sometimes as old.[30] Sometimes he appears as a Brāhmana, sometimes as a Kshatriya, sometimes as a Vaiçya, and sometimes as a Cudra. Verily, he of a hundred sacrifices appears at times as a person born of impure order, that is, as the son of a superior father by an inferior mother or of an inferior father by a superior mother.[31] Sometimes he appears as a parrot, sometimes as a crow, sometimes as a swan, and sometimes as a Kokila. He assumes the forms also of a lion, a tiger, or an elephant.[32] Sometimes he shows himself as a god, sometimes as a Daitya, and sometimes he assumes the guise of a king. Sometimes he appears as fat and plump, sometimes as one whose limbs have been broken by the action of disordered wind in the system, sometimes as a bird, and sometimes as one of exceedingly ugly features.[33] Sometimes he appears as a quadruped. Capable of assuming any form, he sometimes appears as an idiot destitute of all in-

telligence. He assumes also the forms of flies and gnats.[34] O Vipula, no one can make him out in consequence of these innumerable disguises that he is capable of assuming. The very Creator of the universe is not equal to that feat.[35] He makes himself invisible when he chooses. He is incapable of being seen except with the eye of knowledge. The chief of the celestials sometimes transforms himself into the wind.[36] The chastiser of Pāka always assumes these disguises. Do thou, therefore, O Vipula, protect this slender-waisted spouse of mine with great care![37] O foremost one of Bhrigu's race, do thou take every care for seeing that the chief of the celestials may not defile this spouse of mine like a wretched dog licking the Havi kept in view of a sacrifice![38]—Having said these words, the highly-blessed Muni, *viz.*, Devaçarman, intent upon performing a sacrifice, set out from his abode, O chief of the Bharatas.[39] Hearing these words of his preceptor, Vipula began to think,—I shall certainly protect this lady in every respect from the puissant chief of the celestials.[40] But what should be the means? What can I do in this matter of protecting the wife of my preceptor? The chief of the celestials is endued with large powers of illusion. Possessed of great energy, he is difficult of being resisted.[41] Indra cannot be kept out by enclosing this retreat of ours or fencing this yard, since he is capable of assuming innumerable forms.[42] Assuming the form of the wind, the chief of the celestials may assault the spouse of my preceptor. The best course, therefore, for me, would be to enter (by Yoga-power) the body of this lady and remain there.[43] By putting forth my prowess I shall not be able to protect the lady, for the puissant chastiser of Pāka, it has been heard by me, is capable of assuming any form he likes.[44] I shall, therefore, protect this one from Indra by my Yoga-power. For carrying out my object I shall with my body enter the body of this lady.[45] If my preceptor, coming back, beholds his spouse defiled, he will, without doubt, curse me through wrath, for endued with great ascetic merit, he is possessed of spiritual vision.[46] This lady is incapable of being protected in the way in which other women are protected by men, since the chief of the celestials is endued with large powers of illusion.

Alas, the situation in which I find myself is very critical![47] The behest of my preceptor should certainly be obeyed by me. If, therefore, I protect her by my Yoga-power, the feat will be regarded by all as a wonderful one.[48] By my Yoga-power, therefore, I shall enter the body of my preceptor's lady. I shall stay within her and yet not touch her person, like a drop of water on a lotus leaf which lies on it yet does not drench it at all.[49] If I be free from the taint of passion, I cannot incur any fault by doing what I wish to do. As a traveller, in course of his sojourn, takes up his residence (for a while) in any empty mansion he finds,[50] I shall, after the same manner, reside this day within the body of my preceptor's lady. Verily, with mind rapt up in Yoga, I shall dwell today in this lady's body![51]— Giving his best considerasion to these points of righteousness, thinking of all the Vedas and their branches, and with eye directed to the large measure of penances which his preceptor had and which he himself also was possessed of,[52] and having settled in his mind, with a view only to protect the lady, to enter her person by Yoga-power, Vipula of Bhrigu's race took great care (for accomplishing his purpose). Listen now to me, O monarch, as I recite to thee what he did.[53] Endued with great penances, Vipula sat himself down by the side of his preceptor's spouse as she of faultless features was sitting in her cottage. Vipula then began to discourse to her for bringing her over to the cause of righteousness and truth.[54] Directing his eyes then to hers and uniting the rays of light that emanated from her organs of vision with those that issued from his, Vipula (in his subtile form) entered the lady's body even as the element of wind enters that of ether or space.[55] Penetrating her eyes with his eyes and her face with his face, Vipula stayed, without moving, within her invisibly, like her shadow.[56] Restraining every part of the lady's body, Vipula continued to dwell within her, intent on protecting her from Indra. The lady herself knew nothing of this.[57] It was in this way, O monarch, that Vipula continued to protect the lady till the time of his high-souled precoptor's coming back after accomplishing the sacrifice which he had gone out to perform.' "[58]

SECTION XLI.

"Bhishma said,—'One day the chief of the celestials assuming a form of celestial beauty, came to the retreat of the Rishi, thinking that the opportunity he had been expecting had at last come.[1] Verily, O king, having assumed a form unrivalled for comeliness and exceedingly tempting to women and highly agreeable to look at, Indra entered the ascetic's asylum.[2] He saw the body of Vipula staying in a sitting posture, immovable as a stake, and with eyes destitute of vision, like a picture drawn on the canvas.[3] And he saw also that Ruchi was seated there, adorned with eyes whose ends were extremely beautiful, possessed of full and rotund hips, and having a deep and swelling bosom. Her eyes were large and expansive like the the petals of the lotus, and her face was as beautiful and sweet as the moon at full.[4] Seeing Indra come in that guise, the lady wished to rise up and offer him a welcome. Her wonder having been excited at the unrivalled beauty of form which the person possessed, she very much wished to ask him as to who he was.[5] Although, however, she wished to rise up and offer him a welcome, yet her limbs having been restrained by Vipula who was dwelling within her, she failed, O king, to do what she wished. In fact, she was unable to move from the place where she sat.[6] The chief of the celestials then addressed her in agreeable words uttered with a sweet voice.[7] Indeed, he said,—O thou of sweet smiles, know that I am Indra, arrived here for thy sake! Know, O sweet lady, that I am afflicted by the deity of desire provoked by thoughts of thee! O thou of beautiful brows, I have come to thy presence. Time wears off.*[8]—These words that Indra spoke were heard by the ascetic Vipula. Remaining within the body of his preceptor's wife, he saw everything that occurred.[9] The lady of faultless beauty, though she heard what Indra said, was, however, unable to rise up for welcoming or honoring

* 'Purā' has little force here, implying 'first.' In the first place, know that I have come to thee!—T.

the chief of the celestials. Her senses restrained by Vipula, she was unable to utter a word in reply.[10] That scion of Bhrigu's race, of mighty energy, judging from the indications afforded by the body of his preceptor's wife that she was not unwilling to receive Indra with kindness, restrained her limbs and senses all the more effectually, O king, by his Yoga-powers.[11] With Yoga-bonds he bound up all her senses. Beholding her seated without any indication of agitation on her person, the lord of Cachi, abashed a little, once more addressed that lady who was stupefied by the Yoga-powers of her husband's disciple, in these words,[12]—Come, come, O sweet lady !—Then the lady endeavoured to answer him. Vipula, however, restrained the words that she intended to utter.[13] The words, therefore, that actually escaped her lips (under the influence of Vipula) were,—What is the reason of thy coming hither ?—These words adorned with grammatical refinements, issued out of her mouth that was as beautiful as the moon.*[14] Subject to the influence of another, she uttered these words, but became rather ashamed for uttering them. Hearing her, Purandara became exceedingly cheerless.[15] Observing that awkward result, the chief of the celestials, O monarch, adorned with a thousand eyes, saw everything with his spiritual eye.[16] He then beheld the ascetic staying within the body of the lady. Indeed, the ascetic remained within the body of his preceptor's wife like an image or reflection on a mirror.[17] Beholding the ascetic endued with the terrible might of penances, Purandara, O monarch, fearing the Rishi's curse, trembled in fright.[18] Vipula then, possessed of high ascetic might, left the body of his preceptor's wife and returned to his own body that was lying near. He then addressed the terrified Indra in the following words.[19]

" 'Vipula said,—O wicked-souled Purandara, O thou of sinful mind, O wretch that hast no control over thy senses, neither the deities nor human beings will worship thee for any length of time ![20] Hast thou forgotten it, O Cakra,—does it not still dwell in thy remembrance,—that Gautama had cursed thee in

---

* Ladies spoke in Prākrita and not Sanskrit. The latter is refined, the former is unrefined. Hence Indra's surprise at hearing Sanskrit words from the lady's lips.—T.

consequence of which thy body became disfigured with a thousand sex-marks, which, owing to the Rishi's compassion, were afterwards changed into organs of vision?[21] I know that thou art of an exceedingly foolish understanding, that thy soul is uncleansed, and that thou art of an exceedingly unstable mind! O fool, know that this lady is being protected by me. O sinful wretch, go back to that place whence thou camest![22] O thou of foolish soul, I do not consume thee today into ashes with my energy. Verily, I am filled with compassion for thee. It is for this that I do not, O Vāsava, wish to burn thee.[23] My preceptor, endued with great intelligence, is possessed of terrible might. With eyes blazing with wrath, he would, if he saw thee, have burnt thy sinful self today.[24] Thou shouldst not, O Cakra, do its like again. The Brāhmanas should be regarded by thee. See that thou dost not, with thy sons and counsellors, meet with destruction, afflicted by the might of the Brāhmanas.[25] Thou thinkest that thou art an immortal and that, therefore, art at liberty to proceed in this way. Do not, however, disregard the Brāhmanas. Know that there is nothing unattainable by penance!—'[26]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of the high-souled Vipula, Cakra without saying anything, and overwhelmed with shame, made himself invisible.[27] A moment after he had gone away, Devaçarman of high ascetic merit, having accomplished the sacrifice he had intended to perform, came back to his own asylum.[28] When his preceptor came back, Vipula, who had done an agreeable deed, gave unto him his wife of faultless beauty whom he had successfully protected against the machinations of Indra.[29] Of tranquil soul and full of reverence for his preceptor, Vipula respectfully saluted him and stood in his presence with a fearless heart.[30] After his preceptor had rested awhile and when he was seated with his wife on the same seat, Vipula represented unto him everything that Cakra had done.[31] Hearing these words of Vipula, that foremost of Munis, endued with great prowess, became highly gratified with him for his conduct and disposition, his penances, and his observances.[32] Observing Vipula's conduct towards himself—his preceptor—and his devotion also, and noting his

steadiness in virtue, the puissant Devaçarman exclaimed,—Excellent, excellent![33]—The righteous-souled Devaçarman, receiving his virtuous disciple with a sincere welcome, honored him with a boon.[34] Indeed, Vipula, steady in virtue, obtained from his preceptor the boon that he would never swerve or fall away from righteousness. Dismissed by his preceptor he left his abode and practised the most severe austerities.[35] Devaçarman also, of severe penances, with his spouse, began from that day to live in those solitary woods, perfectly fearless of him who had slain Vala and Vritra.' "[36]

SECTION XLII.

"Bhishma said,—'Having accomplished his preceptor's behest, Vipula practiced the most severe penances. Possessed of great energy, he at last regarded himself as endued with sufficient ascetic merit.[1] Priding himself upon the feat he had achieved, he wandered fearlessly and contentedly over the Earth O monarch, regarded by all as one possessed of great fame for what he had done.[2] The puissant Bhārgava regarded that he had conquered both the worlds by that feat of his as also by his severe penances.[3] After sometime had passed away, O delighter of the Kurus, the occasion came for a ceremony of gifts to take place with respect to the sister of Ruchi. Abundant wealth and corn were to be given away in it.*[4] Meanwhile, a certain celestial damsel, endued with great beauty, was journeying through the skies.[5] From her body, as she coursed through the welkin, some flowers dropped down on the Earth. Those flowers possessed of celestial fragrance fell on a spot not far from the retreat of Ruchi's husband.[6] As the flowers lay scattered on the ground, they were picked up by Ruchi of beautiful eyes. Soon after an invitation came to Ruchi from the country of the Angas.[7] The sister, referred to above, of Ruchi, named Prabhā-

---

* The 'ādāna' ceremony was a rite in course of which friends and kinsmen had to make presents unto the person performing the ceremony. The investiture with the sacred thread, marriage, the rite performed in the sixth and the ninth month of pregnancy, are all ceremonies of this kind.—T.

vati, was the spouse of Chitraratha the ruler of the Angas.[8] Ruchi, of very superior complexion, having attached those flowers to her hair, went to the palace of the king of the Angas in answer to the invitation she had received.[9] Beholding those flowers on her hair, the queen of the Angas, possessed of beautiful eyes, urged her sister to obtain some for her.[10] Ruchi, of beautiful face, speedily informed her husband of that request of her sister. The Rishi accepted the prayer of his sister-in-law.[11] Summoning Vipula into his presence, Devaçarman of severe penances commanded his disciple to bring him some flowers of the same kind, saying,—Go, go![12]—Accepting without hesitation the behest of his preceptor, the great ascetic Vipula, O king, answered,—So be it!—and then proceeded to that spot whence the lady Ruchi had picked up the flowers that were coveted by her sister.[13] Arrived at that spot where the flowers (picked up by Ruchi) had fallen from the welkin, Vipula saw some others still lying scattered. They were all as fresh as if they had been newly plucked from the plants whereon they grew. None of them had drooped in the least.[14] He took up those celestial flowers of great beauty. Possessed of celestial fragrance, O Bhārata, Vipula got them there as the result of his severe penances.[15] The accomplisher of his preceptor's behests, having obtained them, he felt great delight and set out speedily for the city of Champā adorned with festoons of Champaka flowers.[16] As he proceeded, he saw on his way a human couple moving in a circle hand in hand.[17] One of them made a rapid step and thereby destroyed the cadence of the movement. For this reason, O king, a dispute arose between them.[18] Indeed, one of them charged the other, saying,—Thou hast made a quicker step!—The other answered,—No.—Verily, as each maintained his own opinion obstinately, each, O king, asserted what the other denied, and denied what the other asserted.[19] While thus disputing with each other with great assurance, an oath was then heard among them. Indeed, each of them suddenly named Vipula in what they uttered.[20] The oath each of them took was even this:—that one amongst us two who speaketh falsely, shall, in the next world, meet with the end which will be the regenerate Vipula's![21]—

Hearing these words of theirs, Vipula's face became very cheerless. He began to reflect, saying unto himself,—I have undergone severe penances. The dispute between this couple is hot. To me, again, it is painful. What is the sin of which I have been guilty that both these persons should refer to my end in the next world as the most painful one among those reserved for all creatures?[22-23]—Thinking in this strain, Vipula, O best of monarchs, hung down his head, and with a cheerless mind began to recollect what sin he had done.[24] Proceeding a little way he beheld six other men playing with dice made of gold and silver. Engaged in play, those individuals seemed to him to be so excited that the hair on their bodies stood on end. They also (upon a dispute having arisen among them) were heard by Vipula to take the same oath that he had already heard the first couple to take. Indeed, their words had reference in the same way to Vipula.[25-26]—He amongst us who, led by cupidity, will act in an improper way, shall meet with that end which is reserved for Vipula in the next world![27]—Hearing these words, however, Vipula, although he strove earnestly to recollect, failed to remember any transgression of his from even his earliest years, O thou of Kuru's race.[28] Verily, he began to burn like a fire placed in the midst of another fire. Hearing that curse, his mind burnt with grief.[29] In this state of anxiety a long time elapsed. At last he recollected the manner in which he had acted in protecting his preceptor's wife from the machinations of Indra.[30]—I had penetrated the body of that lady, placing limb within limb, face within face. Although I had acted in this way, I did not yet tell my preceptor the truth![31]—Even this was the transgression, O thou of Kuru's race, which Vipula recollected in himself. Indeed, O blessed monarch, without doubt, that was the transgression which he had actually committed.[32] Coming to the city of Champā, he gave the flowers to his preceptor. Devoted to superiors and seniors, he worshipped his preceptor in due form.'"[33]

Section XLIII.

"Bhishma said,—'Beholding his disciple returned from his mission, Devaçarman of great energy addressed him in words which I shall recite to thee, O king![1]

" 'Devaçarman said,—What hast thou seen, O Vipula, in course of thy progress, O disciple, through the great forest? They whom thou hast seen knew thee, O Vipula. I, as also my spouse Ruchi, know how thou hadst acted in the matter of protecting Ruchi!—[2]

" 'Vipula said,—O regenerate Rishi, who are those two whom I first saw? Who also are those other six whom I saw subsequently? All of them know me. Who, indeed, are they to whom thou alludest in thy speech to me?—[3]

" 'Devaçarman said,—The first couple, O regenerate one, whom thou sawest, are Day and Night. They are ceaselessly moving like a circle. Both of them know the transgression of which thou hast been guilty.[4] Those other men (six in number) whom, O learned Brāhmana, thou sawest playing cheerfully at dice, are the six Seasons. They also are acquainted with thy transgressions.[5] Having committed a sin in secresy, no sinful man should cherish the assuring thought that his transgression is known only to himself and not to any one else.[6] When a man perpetrates a sinful deed in secret, the Seasons as also Day and Night behold it always.[7] Those regions that are reserved for the sinful shall be thine (for what thou hast done). What thou hadst done, thou didst not tell me. That thy sin was not known to any one, was thy belief, and this conviction had filled thee with joy.[8] Thou didst not inform thy preceptor of the whole truth, choosing to hide from him a material portion. The Seasons, and Day and Night, whom thou hast heard speak in that strain, thought it proper to remind thee of thy transgression.[9] Day and Night, and the Seasons, are ever conversant of all the good and the bad deeds that are in a man.[10] They spoke to thee in that way, O regenerate one, because they have full knowledge of what thou hadst done but which thou hadst not the courage to inform me

of, fearing thou hadst done wrong.[11] For this reason those regions that are reserved for the sinful will be thine as much. Thou didst not tell me what thou hadst done.[12] Thou wert fully capable, O regenerate one, of protecting my spouse whose disposition, by nature, is sinful. In doing what thou didst, thou didst not commit any sin. I was, for this, gratified with thee![13] O best of Brāhmanas, if I had known thee to have acted wickedly, I would, without hesitation, have cursed thee entirely.[14] Women become united with men. Such union, is very desirable with men. Thou hadst, however, protected my wife in a different spirit. If thou hadst acted otherwise, a curse would have been denounced upon thee. Even this is what I think.[15] Thou hadst, O son, protected my spouse. The manner in which thou hadst done it hath now become known to me as if thou hadst thyself informed me of it. I have, O son, become gratified with thee. Relieved of all anxiety, thou shalt go to heaven![16]—Having said these words unto Vipula, the great Rishi Devaçarman, ascended to Heaven with his wife and his disciple and began to pass his time there in great happiness.[17] In course of conversation, O king, on a former occasion, the great ascetic Mārkandeya had narrated to me this history on the banks of Gangā.[18] I, therefore, recite it to thee. Women should always be protected by thee (from temptations and opportunities of every kind). Amongst them both kinds are to be seen, that is those that are virtuous and those that are not so.[19] Those women that are virtuous are highly blessed. They are the mothers of the universe (for they it is that cherish all creatures on every side). They, it is, O king, that uphold the Earth with all her waters and forests.[20] Those women that are sinful, that are of wicked behaviour, that are the destroyers of their race, and that are wedded to sinful resolves, are capable of being ascertained by indications, expressive of the evil that is in them, which appear, O king, on their bodies.[21] It is even thus that high-souled persons are capable of protecting women. They cannot, O tiger among kings, be protected in any other way.[22] Women, O chief of men, are fierce. They are endued with fierce prowess. They have none whom they love or like, so much as them that have

sexual congress with them.[23] Women are like those (Atharvan) incantations that are destructive of life. Even after they have consented to live with one, they are prepared to abandon him for entering into engagements with others. They are never satisfied with one person of the opposite sex, O son of Pāndu![24] Men should feel no affection for them. Nor should they entertain any jealousy on account of them, O king! Having a regard only for the considerations of virtue, men should enjoy their society, not with enthusiasm and attachment but with reluctance and absence of attachment.[25] By acting otherwise, a man is sure to meet with destruction, O delighter of the Kurus. O tiger among kings, reason is respected at all times and under all circumstances.[26] Only one man, *viz.*, Vipula, had succeeded in protecting woman. There is none else, O king, in the three worlds who is capable of protecting women.' "[27]

Section XLIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me of that, O grandsire, which is the root of all duties, which is the root of kinsmen, of home, of the Pitris, and of guests.[1] I think this should be regarded as the foremost of all duties, (*viz.*, the marriage of one's daughter). Tell me, however, O king, upon what sort of a person should one bestow one's daughter?'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'Having enquired into the conduct and disposition of the person, his learning and acquirements, his birth, and his acts, good people should then bestow their daughter upon accomplished bridegrooms.[3] All righteous Brāhmanas, O Yudhishthira, act in this way (in the matter of the bestowal of their daughters). This is known as the Brāhma marriage, O Yudhishthira![4] Selecting an eligible bridegroom, the father of the girl should cause him to marry his daughter, having, by presents of diverse kinds, induced the bridegroom to that act. This form of marriage, constitutes the eternal practice of all good Kshatriyas.[5] When the father of the girl, disregarding his own wishes, bestows his daughter upon a person whom the daughter likes and who reciprocates the girl's senti-

ments, the form of marriage, O Yudhishthira, is called Gāndharva by those that are conversant with the Vedas.[6] The wise have said this, O king, to be the practice of the Asuras, *viz.*, wedding a girl after purchasing her at a high cost and after gratifying the cupidity of her kinsmen.[7] Slaying and cutting off the heads of weeping kinsmen, the bridegroom sometimes forcibly takes away the girl he weds. Such wedding, O son, is called by the name of Rākshasa.[8] Of these five, (*viz.*, the Brāhma, the Kshātra, the Gāndharva, the Asura, and the Rākshasa), three are righteous, O Yudhishthira, and two are unrighteous. The Paiçācha and the Asura forms should never be resorted to.*[9] The Brāhma, Kshātra, and Gāndharva forms are righteous, O prince of men! Pure or mixed, these forms should be resorted to, without doubt.[10] The Brāhmana can take three wives. The Kshatriya can take two wives. As regards the Vaiçya, he should take a wife from only his own order. The children born of these wives should all be regarded as equal.†[11] Of the three wives of a Brāhmana, she taken from his own order should be regarded as the foremost. Similarly, of the two wives permitted to the Kshatriya, she taken from his own order should be regarded as superior. Some say that persons belonging to the three higher orders may take, only for purposes of enjoyment (and not for those of virtue), wives from the lowest or the Cudra order. Others, however, forbid the practice.[12] The righteous condemn the practice of begetting issue upon Cudra women. A Brāhmana, by beget-

---

* It would be curious to see how the Commentator Nilakantha seeks to include within these five the eight forms of marriage mentioned by Manu. The fact is, such parts of the Mahābhārata are unquestionably more ancient than Manu. The mention of Manu is either an instance of interpolation or there must have been an older Manu upon whose work *the* Manu we know has been based. The Asura and the Rākshasa forms are unequivocally condemned. Yet the Commentator seeks to make out that the Rākshasa form is open to the Kshatriyas. The fact is, the Rākshasa was sometimes called the Paiçācha. The distinction between those two forms was certainly of later origin.—T.

† Thus, there was no difference, in status, in ancient times, between children born of a Brāhmani, a Kshatriyā, or a Vaiçyā mother. The difference of status was of later origin —T.

ting children upon a Cudra women, incurs the liability of performing an expiation.[13] A person of thirty years of age should wed a girl of ten years of age called a Nagnikā.* Or, a person of one and twenty years of age should wed a girl of seven years of age.[14] That girl who has no brother nor father should not be wed, O chief of Bharata's race, for she may be intended as the Putrikā of her sire.†[15] After the appearance of puberty, the girl (if not married) should wait for three years. On the occasion of the fourth year, she should look for a husband herself (without waiting any longer for her kinsmen to select one for her).[16] The offspring of such a girl do not lose their respectability, nor does union with such a girl become disgraceful. If, instead of selecting a husband for herself, she acts otherwise, she incurs the reproach of Prajāpati herself.[17] One should wed that girl who is not a *Sapindā* of one's mother or of the same *Gotra* with one's father. Even this is the usage (consistent with the sacred law) which Manu has declared.'‡[18]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Desirous of marriage some one actually

---

* 'Nagnikā' is said to be one who wears a single piece of cloth. A girl in whom the signs of puberty have not appeared does not require more than a single piece of cloth to cover her. The mention of Nagnikā, the Commentator thinks, is due to an interdiction about wedding a girl of even ten years in whom signs of puberty have appeared.—T.

† When a father happens to have an only daughter, he frequently bestows her in marriage upon some eligible youth on the understanding that the son born of her shall be the son, for purposes of both Crāddha rites and inheritance, *not* of the husband begetting him but of the girl's father. Such a contract would be valid whether expressed or not at the time of marriage. The mere wish of the girl's father, unexpressed at the time of marriage, would convert the son into a son not of the father who begets him but of the father of the girl herself. A daughter reserved for such a purpose is said to be a 'putrikādharmini' or 'invested with the character of a son.' To wed such a girl was not honorable. It was in effect an abandonment of the fruits of marriage. Even if dead at the time of marriage, still if the father had, while living, cherished such a wish, that would convert the girl into a 'putrikādharmini' The repugnance to wed girls without father and brothers exists to this day.—T.

‡ For understanding the meanings of Sapinda and Sagotra see any work on Hindu law civil or canonical.—T.

gives a dower to the girl's kinsmen ; some one, the girl's kinsmen consenting, promises to give a dower ; some one says,—I shall abduct the girl by force ;—some one simply displays his wealth (to the girl's kinsmen, intending to offer a portion thereof as dower for her) ;[19] some one, again, actually takes the hand of the girl with rites of wedding. I ask thee, O grandsire, whose wife does the girl actually become ? Unto us that are desirous of knowing the truth, thou art the eye with which to behold !'[20]

"Bhishma said,—'Whatever acts of men have been approved or settled in consultation by the wise, are seen to be productive of good. False speech, however, is always sinful.*[21] The girl herself that becomes wife, the sons born of her, the Ritwijas and preceptors and disciples and Upādhyāyas present at the marriage all become liable to expiation if the girl bestow her hand upon a person other than he whom she had promised to wed. Some are of opinion that no expiation is necessary for such conduct.[22] Manu does not applaud the practice of a girl living with a person whom she does not like.† Living as wife with a person whom she does not like, leads to disgrace and sin. No one incurs much sin in any of these cases that follows.[23] In forcibly abducting for marriage a girl that is bestowed upon the abductor by the girl's kinsmen, with due rites, as also a girl for whom dower has been paid and accepted, there is no great sin.[24] Upon the girl's kinsmen having expressed their consent, Mantras and Homa should be resorted to. Such Mantras truly accomplish their purpose.

---

* These Verses are exceedingly terse. The Commentator explains that what is intended is that under the third and the fourth circumstances the giver of the girl incurs no sin : under the second, the bestower of the girl (upon a person other than he unto whom a promise had been made) incurs fault. The status of wife, however, cannot attach simply in consequence of the promise to bestow upon the promiser of the dower. The relationship of husband and wife arises from actual wedding. For all that, when the kinsmen meet and say, with due rites,—This girl is this one's wife, the marriage becomes complete. Only the giver incurs sin by not giving her to the promised person.—T.

† Hence, having promised to wed such a one, she is at liberty to give him over and wed another whom she likes.—T.

Mantras and Homa recited and performed in the case of a girl that has not been bestowed by her kinsmen, do not accomplish their purpose.[25] The engagement made by the kinsmen of a girl is, no doubt, binding and sacred. But the engagement that is entered into by the wedder and wedded, with the aid of Mantras, is very much more so (for it is this engagement that really creates the relationship of husband and wife).[26] According to the dictates of the scriptures, the husband should regard his wife as an acquisition due to his own acts of a previous life or to what has been ordained by God. One, therefore, incurs no reproach by accepting for wife a girl that had been promised to another by her kinsmen or for whom dower had been accepted by them from another.'[27]

"Yudhishthira said,—'When after the receipt of dower for a girl, the girl's sire sees a more eligible person present himself for her hand,—one, that is, who is endued with the aggregate of Three in judicious proportions, does the girl's sire incur reproach by rejecting the person from whom dower had been received in favor of him that is more eligible ?[28] In such a case either alternative seems to be fraught with fault, for to discard the person to whom the girl has been promised can never be honorable, while to reject the person that is more eligible can never be good (considering the solemn obligation there is of bestowing one's daughter on the most eligible person). I ask, how should the sire conduct himself so that he might be said to do that which is beneficial ? To us, of all duties this seems to demand the utmost measure of deliberation.[29] We are desirous of ascertaining the truth. Thou, indeed, art our eyes ! Do thou explain this to us. I am never satiated with listening to thee !'[30]

"Bhishma said,—'The gift of the dower does not cause the status of wife to attach to the girl. This is well known to the person paying it. He pays it simply as the price of the girl. Then again they that are good never bestow their daughters, led by the dowers that others may offer.[31] When the person desirous of wedding happens to be endued with such qualities as do not go down with the girl's kinsmen, it is then that kinsmen demand dower from him. That person, however, who won

over by another's accomplishments, addresses him, saying,—Do thou wed my girl, adorning her with proper ornaments of gold and gems,[32]—and that person who complies with this request, cannot be said to demand dower or give it, for such a transaction is not really a sale. The bestowal of a daughter upon acceptance of what may strictly be regarded as gifts (of affection or love) is the eternal practice.[33] In matters of marriage, some fathers say—I shall bestow my daughter upon such and such a person; some say—I shall not bestow my daughter upon such a one.—Some, again, say with vehemence—I must bestow my daughter upon such an individual.[34]—These declarations do not amount to actual marriage. People are seen to solicit one another for the hands of maidens (and promise and retreat). Till the hand is actually taken with due rites, marriage cannot be said to take place. It has been heard by us that even this was the boon granted to men in days of old by the Maruts in respect of maidens.*[35] The Rishis have laid the command upon all men that maidens should never be bestowed upon persons unless the latter happen to be most fit or eligible. The daughter is the root of desire and of descendants of the collateral line. Even this is what I think.†[36] The practice has been known to human beings from a long time,—the practice, that is, of sale and purchase of the daughter. In consequence of such familiarity with the practice, thou mayst be able, upon careful examination, to find innumerable faults in it. The gift or acceptance of dower alone could not be regarded as creating the status of husband and wife. Listen to what I say on this head.[37]

"Formerly, having defeated all the Māgadhas, the Kāçis, and the Koçalas, I brought away by force two maidens for Vichitraviryya.[38] One of those two maidens was wedded with due rites. The other maiden was not formally wedded on the

---

* In consequence of that boon no one incurs sin by retracting promises of bestowing daughters upon others in view of more eligible husbands.—T.

† Hence, no one should bestow his daughter upon a person that is not eligible, for the offspring of such marriage can never be good and such marriage can never make the daughter's sire or kinsmen happy.—T.

ground that she was one for whom dower had been paid in the form of valour. My uncle of Kuru's race, *viz.*, king Vālhika, said that the maiden so brought away and not wedded with due rites should be set free. That maiden, therefore, was recommended to Vichitraviryya for being married by him according to due rites.[39] Doubting my father's words I repaired to others for asking their opinion. I thought that my sire was exceedingly punctilious in matters of morality.[40] I then went to my sire himself, O king, and addressed him these words from desire of knowing something about the practices of righteous people in respect of marriage :—I desire, O sire, to know what in truth the practices are of righteous people !—I repeated the expression of my wish several times, so great was my eagerness and curiosity.[41] After I had uttered those words, that foremost of righteous men, *viz.*, my sire Vālhika, answered me, saying,[42]—If in your opinion the status of husband and wife be taken to attach on account of the gift and acceptance of dower and not from the actual taking of the maiden's hand with due rites, the father of the maiden (by permitting his daughter to go away with the giver of the dower) would show himself to be the follower of a creed other than that which is derivable from the ordinary scriptures. Even this is what the accepted scriptures declare.[43] Persons conversant with morality and duty do not allow that their words are at all authoritative who say that the status of husband and wife arises from the gift and acceptance of dower, and not from the actual taking of the hand with due rites.[44] The saying is well known that the status of husband and wife is created by actual bestowal of the daughter by the sire (and her acceptance by the husband with due rites). The status of wife cannot attach to maidens through sale and purchase. They who regard such status to be due to sale and the gift of dower are persons that are certainly unacquainted with the scriptures.[45] No one should bestow his daughter upon such persons. In fact, they are not men with whom one may marry his daughter. A wife should never be purchased. Nor should a father sell his daughter.[46] Only those persons of sinful soul who are possessed, besides, by cupidity, and who sell and purchase female slaves for making serving

women, regard the status of wife as capable of arising from the gift and acceptance of dower.[47] On this subject some people on one occasion had asked prince Satyavat the following question: —If the giver of a dower unto the kinsmen of a maiden happens to die before marriage,[48] can another person take the hand of that maiden in marriage? We have doubts on this matter. Do thou remove these doubts of ours for thou art endued with great wisdom and art honored by the wise.[49] Be thou the organ of vision unto ourselves that are desirous of learning the truth.—Unto them that said these words, prince Satyavat answered, saying,[50]—The kinsmen of the maiden should bestow her upon him whom they consider eligible. There need be no scruples in this. The righteous act in this way without taking note of the giver of the dower even if he be alive; while, as regards the giver that is dead, there is not the slightest doubt.[51] Some say that the virgin wife or widow,—one, that is, whose, marriage has not been consummated with her husband by actual sexual congress in consequence of his absence or death,—may be allowed to unite herself with her husband's younger brother or such other relation. The husband dying before such consummation, the virgin-widow may either surrender herself to her husband's younger brother or betake herself to the practice of penances.[52] In the opinion of some, the younger brother of the husband or such other relation may thus use the unused wife or widow, though others maintain that such practice, notwithstanding its prevalency, springs from desire instead of being a scriptural ordinance. They that say so are clearly of opinion that the father of a maiden has the right to bestow her upon any eligible person, disregarding the dower previously given by another and accepted by himself.[53] If after the hand of a maiden has been promised all the initial rites before marriage be performed, the maiden may still be bestowed upon a person other than the one unto whom she had been promised. Only the giver incurs the sin of falsehood; so far, however, as the status of wife is concerned, no injury can occur thereto.[54] The Mantras in respect of marriage accomplish their object of bringing about the indissoluble union of marriage at the seventh step. The maiden becomes the wife of him unto whom the gift is actually made

with water.*[55] The gift of maidens should be made in the following way. The wise know it for certain. A superior Brāhmana should wed a maiden that is not unwilling, that belongs to a family equal to his own in purity or status, and that is given away by her brother. Such a girl should be wed in the presence of fire, with due rites, causing her, amongst other things, to circumambulate himself for the usual number of times.' "[56]

SECTION XLV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'If a person, after having given dower for a maiden, goes away, how should the maiden's father or other kinsmen who are competent to bestow her, act? Do tell me this, O grandsire!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Such a maiden, if she happens to be the daughter of a sonless and rich father, should be maintained by the father (in view of the return of him who has given the dower). Indeed, if the father does not return the dower unto the kinsmen of the giver, the maiden should be regarded as belonging to the giver of the dower.[2] She may even raise offspring for the giver (during his absence) by any of those means that are laid down in the scriptures. No person, however, can be competent to wed her according to due rites.[3] Commanded by her sire, the princess Sāvitri had in days of old chosen a husband and united herself with him. This act of hers is applauded by some; but others, conversant with the scriptures, condemn it.[4] Others that are righteous have not acted in this way. Others hold that the conduct of the righteous should ever be regarded as the foremost evidence of duty or morality.†[5] Upon this subject, Sukratu, the grandson

---

* One of the most important rites of marriage is the ceremony of circumambulation. The girl is now borne around the bride-groom by her kinsmen. Formerly she used to walk herself. All gifts, again, are made with water. The fact is, when a thing is given away, the giver, uttering the formula, sprinkles a drop of water upon it with a blade of Kuça grass.—T.

† Hence, what Sāvitri did at the bidding of her sire could not be

of the high-souled Janaka, the ruler of the Videhas, has declared the following opinion:[6]—There is the well-known declaration of the scriptures that women are incompetent to enjoy freedom at any period of their life. If this were not the path trodden by the righteous, how could this scriptural declaration exist? As regards the righteous, therefore, how can there be any question or doubt in respect of this matter? How can people condemn that declaration by choosing to conduct themselves otherwise?*[7] The unrighteous dereliction of eternal usage is regarded as the practice of the Asuras. Such practice we never hear of in the conduct of the ancients.†[8] The relationship of husband and wife is very subtile (having reference to the acquisition of destiny and, therefore, capable of being understood with the aid of only the inspired declarations in the scriptures). It is different from the natural relationship of male and female which consists only in the desire for sexual pleasure. This also was said by the king alluded to of Janaka's race.'‡[9]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Upon what authority is the wealth of men inherited (by others when they happen to have daughters)? In respect of her sire the daughter should be regarded the same as the son.'[10]

"Bhishma said,—'The son is even as one's own self, and the daughter is like unto the son. How, therefore, can another

---

against the course of duty or morality. The Burdwan translator has misunderstood the second line of this Verse, while K. P. Singha has quietly dropped it.—T.

* This couplet is exceedingly terse. I have, therefore, expanded it a little for making it intelligible. Rendered literally, the Verse would stand thus: 'if the path were not one trodden by the righteous, how 'could the declaration be? How then question and doubt of the right-'eous? How could censure?' Unless expanded, such literal versions in English can yield no meaning to even Sanskrit scholars.—T.

† 'Dharmasya' refers to the true or correct or eternal Aryan usage. 'Pradānam' is 'khandanam;' from 'dā,' to cut. The sense is that the grant of liberty to women is an Asura practice.—T.

‡ Hence, no one should wed, led by desire alone. Nor should the maiden be permitted to choose for herself. She may be guided in her choice by improper considerations connected with only carnal pleasure.—T

take the wealth when one lives in one's own self in the form of one's daughter?[11] Whatever wealth is termed the Yautuka property of the mother, forms the portion of the maiden daughter. If the maternal grandfather happens to die without leaving sons, the daughter's son should inherit it.[12] The daughter's son offers pindas to his own father and the father of his mother: Hence, in accordance with considerations of justice, there is no difference between the son and the daughter's son.[13] When a person has got only a daughter and she has been invested by him with the status of a son, if he then happens to have a son, such son (instead of taking all the wealth of his sire) shares the inheritance with the daughter.* When, again, a person has got a daughter and she has been invested by him with the status of a son, if he then happens to take a son by adoption or purchase, then the daughter is held to be superior to such son (for she takes three shares of her father's wealth, the son's share being limited to only the remaining two).[14] In the following case I do not see any reason why the status of daughter's son should attach to the sons of one's daughter. The case is that of the daughter who has been sold by her sire. The sons born of a daughter that has been sold by her sire for actual price, belong exclusively to their father (even if he do not beget them himself but obtain them according to the rules laid down in the scriptures for the raising of issue through the agency of others). Such sons can never belong, even as daughter's sons, to their maternal grandfather in consequence of his having sold their mother for price and lost all his rights in or to her by that act.†[15] Such sons, again, become full of malice, unrighteous in conduct, the misappropriators of other people's wealth, and endued with deceit and cunning. Having sprung from that sinful form of marriage called Āsura, the issue becomes wicked in conduct.[16] Persons acquainted with the histories of olden times, conversant with duties, devoted to the

---

* The property is divided into five parts, two of which are taken by the daughter under such circumstances and three by the son.—T.

† I expand the Verse for making it intelligible, by setting forth the reasons urged by Hindu lawyers and noticed by the Commentator.—T.

scriptures and firm in maintaining the restraints therein laid down, recite in this connection some metrical lines sung in days of yore by Yama.[17] Even this is what Yama had sung. That man who acquires wealth by selling his own son, or who bestows his daughter after accepting a dower for his own livelihood,[18] has to sink in seven terrible hells one after another, known by the name of Kālas. There that wretch has to feed upon sweat and urine and stools during the whole time.[19] In that form of marriage which is called Ārsha, the person who weds has to give a bull and a cow and the father of the maiden accepts the gift. Some characterise this gift as a dower (or price), while some are of opinion that it should not be regarded in that light. The true opinion, however, is that a gift for such a purpose, be it of small value or large, should, O king, be regarded as dower or price, and the bestowal of the daughter under such circumstances should be viewed as a sale.[20] Notwithstanding the fact of its having been practised by a few persons (of even note), it can never be taken as the eternal usage. Other forms of marriage are seen, practised by men, such as marrying girls after abducting them by force from amidst their kinsmen.[21] Those persons who have sexual intercourse with a maiden, after reducing her to subjection by force, are regarded as perpetrators of sin. They have to sink in darkest hell.*[22] Even a human being with whom one has no relationship of blood should not form the subject of sale. What need then be said of one's own issue? With the wealth that is acquired by doing sinful deeds, no action leading to merit can be performed.' "[23]

SECTION XLVI.

"Bhishma said,—'They that are conversant with ancient history recite the following verse of Daksha the son of Prachetas, *viz.*,—That maiden, in respect of whom nothing is taken by her kinsmen in the form of dower, cannot be said to be

---

* 'Valatah vçyām' implies only those whose consent is obtained by force. Hence, such cases as those of Krishna abducting Rukmini and Arjuna abducting Subhadrā, are excluded from this denunciation.—T.

sold.*[1] Respect, kind treatment, and everything else that is agreeable, should all be given unto the maiden whose hand is taken in marriage.[2] Her sire and brothers and father in-law and husband's brothers should show her every respect and adorn her with ornaments, if they be desirous of reaping benefits, for such conduct on their part always leads to considerable happiness and advantage.[3] If the wife does not like her husband or fails to gladden him, from such dislike and absence of joy, the husband can never have issue for increasing his race.[4] Women, O king, should always be worshipped and treated with affection. There where women are treated with respect, the very deities are said to filled with joy.[5] There where women are not worshipped, all acts become fruitless. If the women of a family, in consequence of the treatment they receive, indulge in grief and tears, that family soon becomes extinct.[6] Those houses that are cursed by women meet with destruction and ruin as if scorched by some Atharvan rite. Such houses lose their splendour. Their growth and prosperity cease, O king.[7] Manu, on the eve of his departure for Heaven, made over women to the care and protection of men, saying that they are weak, that they fall an easy prey to the seductive wiles of men,† disposed to accept the love that is offered them, and devoted to truth.[8] There are others among them that are full of malice, covetous of honors, fierce in disposition, unlovable, and impervious to reason. Women, however, deserve to be honored. Do ye men show them honor![9] The righteousness of men depends upon women. All pleasures and enjoyments also completely depend upon them. Do ye serve them and worship them. Do ye bend your wills before them.[10] The begetting of offspring, the nursing of children already born, and the accomplishment of all acts necessary for the needs of society, behold, all these have women for their cause![11] By honoring women, ye are sure to attain to the fruition of all

---

* The maiden may herself accept ornaments. That would not convert the transaction into a sale.—T.

† 'Swalpa-kaupināh' literally is 'covered with a small piece of cloth;' hence, capable of being easily seduced.—T.

objects!—In this connection a princess of the house of Janaka the ruler of the Videhas, sang a verse. It is this:[12]—Women have no sacrifices ordained for them. There are no Crāddhas which they are called upon to perform. They are not required to observe any fasts. To serve their husbands with reverence and willing obedience is their only duty. Through the discharge of that duty they succeed in conquering Heaven.[13] In childhood, the sire protects her. The husband protects her in youth. When she becomes old, her sons protect her. At no period of her life does woman deserve to be free.[14] Deities of prosperity are women. The person that desires affluence and prosperity should honor them. By cherishing women, O Bhārata, one cherishes the goddess of prosperity herself, and by afflicting her, one is said to afflict the goddess of prosperity.' "[15]

SECTION XLVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou art fully conversant with the ordinances of all the scriptures. Thou art the foremost of those that are acquainted with the duties of kings. Thou art celebrated over the whole world as a great dispeller of doubts.[1] I have a doubt, do thou explain it to me, O grandsire! As regards this doubt that has arisen in my mind, I shall not ask any other person for its solution.[2] It behooveth thee, O thou of mighty arms, to expound as to how a man should conduct himself who is desirous of treading along the path of duty and righteousness.[3] It has been laid down, O grandsire, that a Brāhmana can take four wives, *viz.*, one that belongs to his own order, one that is a Kshatriyā, one that is a Vaiçyā, and one that is a Cudrā if the Brāhmana wishes to indulge the desire of sexual intercourse.[4] Tell me, O best of the Kurus, which amongst those sons deserves to inherit the father's wealth one after another?[5] Who amongst them, O grandsire, shall take what share of the paternal wealth? I desire to hear this, *viz.*, how the distribution has been ordained amongst them of the paternal property.'[6]

"Bhishma said,—'The Brāhmana, the Kshatriya, and the Vaiçya are regarded as the three regenerate orders. To wed in

these three orders has been ordained to be the duty of the Brāhmana, O Yudhishthira![7] Through erroneous judgment or cupidity or lust, O scorcher of foes, a Brāhmana takes a Cudrā wife. Such wife, however, he is not competent to take according to the scriptures.[8] A Brāhmana, by taking a Cudrā woman to his bed, attains to a low end in the next world. He should, having done such an act, undergo expiation according to the rites laid down in the scriptures.[9] That expiation must be twice heavier or severer if in consequence of such an act, O Yudhishthira, the Brāhmana gets offspring. I shall now tell thee, O Bhārata, how the (paternal) wealth is to be distributed (among the children of the different spouses).[10] The son born of the Brāhmani wife shall, in the first place, appropriate from his father's wealth a bull of good marks, and the best car or vehicle.[11] What remains of the Brāhmana's property, O Yudhishthira, after this, should be divided into ten equal portions. The son by the Brāhmani wife shall take four of such portions of the paternal wealth.[12] The son that is born of the Kshatriyā wife is, without doubt, possessed of the status of a Brāhmana. In consequence, however, of the distinction attaching to his mother, he shall take three of the ten shares into which the property has been divided.[13] The son that has been born of the wife belonging to the third order, *viz.*, the woman of the Vaiçya caste, by the Brāhmana sire, shall take, O Yudhishthira, two of the three remaining shares of the father's property.[14] It has been said that the son that has been begotten by the Brāhmana sire upon the Cudrā wife should not take any portion of the father's wealth. for he is not to be considered an heir. A little, however, of the paternal wealth should be given to the son of the Cudrā wife, hence the one remaining share should be given to him out of compassion.[15] Even this should be the order of the ten shares into which the Brāhmana's wealth is to be divided. All the sons that are born of the same mother or of mothers of the same order, shall share equally the portion that is theirs.[16] The son born of the Cudrā wife should not be regarded as invested with the status of a Brāhmana in consequence of his being unskilled (in the scriptures and the duties ordained for the Brāhmana). Only

those children that are born of wives belonging to the three higher orders should be regarded as invested with the status of Brāhmanas.[17] It has been said that there are only four orders. there is no fifth that has been enumerated. The son by the Cudrā wife shall take the tenth part of his sire's wealth (that remains after the allotment has been made to the others in the way spoken of).[18] That share, however, he is to take only when his sire has given it to him. He shall not take it if his sire does not give it unto him. Some portion of the sire's wealth should, without doubt, be given, O Bhārata, to the son of the Cudrā wife.[19] Compassion is one of the highest virtues. It is through compassion that something is given to the son of the Cudrā wife. Whatever be the object in respect of which compassion arises, as a cardinal virtue it is always productive of merit.[20] Whether the sire happens to have children (by his spouses belonging to the other orders) or to have no children (by such spouses), unto the son by the Cudrā wife, O Bhārata, nothing more than a tenth part of the sire's wealth should be given.[21] If a Brāhmana happens to have more wealth than what is necessary for maintaining himself and his family for three years, he should with that wealth perform sacrifices. A Brāhmana should never acquire wealth for nothing.*[22] The highest sum that the husband should give unto the wife is three thousand coins (of the prevailing currency). This wealth that the husband gives unto the wife, the latter may spend or dispose of as she likes.[23] Upon the death of the childless husband, the wife shall enjoy all his wealth. (She shall not, however, sell or otherwise dispose off any portion of it). The wife should never take (without her husband's knowledge) any portion of her husband's wealth.[24] Whatever wealth, O Yudhishthira, the Brāhmani wife may acquire by gift from her father, should be taken (after her death) by her daughter, for the daughter is like the son.[25] The daughter, O king, has been ordained in the scriptures to be equal to the son, O delighter of the Kurus. Even thus hath the law of inheritance been

---

* *I. e.*, he should not acquire for storing. He may acquire to spend in sacrifices and gifts or for maintaining himself and his family.—T.

ordained, O bull of Bhārata's race. Remembering these ordinances about the distribution and disposal of wealth, one should never acquire wealth uselessly.'[26]

"Yudhishthira said,—'If the son born of a Cudrā woman by a Brāhmana father has been declared in the scriptures to be disentitled to any wealth, by what exceptional rule then is a tenth part of the paternal property to be given to him?[27] A son born of a Brāhmani wife by a Brāhmana is unquestionably a Brāhmana. One born of a Kshatriyā wife or of a Vaiçyā wife, by a Brāhmana husband, is similarly invested with the status of a Brāhmana.[28] Why then, O best of kings, are such sons to share the paternal wealth unequally? All of them, thou hast said, are Brāhmanas, having been born of mothers that belong to the three higher orders equally entitled to the name of regenerate.'[29]

"Bhishma said,—'O scorcher of foes, all spouses in this world are called by the name of Dārā. Although that name is applied to all, yet there is this great distinction to be observed.[30] If, having married three wives belonging to the three other orders, a Brāhmana takes a Brāhmani wife the very last of all, yet shall she be regarded as the first in rank among all the wives, and as deserving of the greatest respect. Indeed, among all the co-wives, she shall be the foremost in consideration.[31] In her apartments should be kept all those articles that are necessary in view of the husband's baths, personal decorations, washing of teeth, and application of collyrium to the eyes. In her apartments should be kept the Havya and the Kavya and all else that the husband may require for the performance of his religious acts.[32] If the Brāhmani wife is in the house, no other wife is entitled to attend to these needs of the husband. Only the Brāhmani wife, O Yudhishthira, should assist in these acts of the husband.[33] The husband's food and drink and garlands and robes and ornaments,—all these should be given by the Brāhmani wife to the husband, for she is the foremost in rank and consideration among all the spouses of the husband.[34] These are the ordinances of the scriptures as laid down by Manu, O delighter of the Kurus! Even this, O monarch, is seen to be the course of eternal usage.[35] If a Brāhmana, O Yudhish-

thira, led by lust, acts in a different way, he shall come to be regarded as a Chandāla among Brāhmanas.*[36] The son born of the Kshatriyā wife has been said to be equal in status to the son born of the Brāhmani wife. For all that, a distinction attaches to the son of the Brāhmani wife in consequence of the superiority of the Brāhmani to the Kshatriyā in respect of the order of birth.[37] The Kshatriyā cannot be regarded as equal to the Brāhmani in point of birth. Hence, O best of kings the son born of the Brāhmani wife must be regarded as the first in rank and superior to the son born of the Kshatriyā wife.[38] Because, again, the Kshatriyā is not equal in point of birth to the Brāhmani, hence the son of the Brāhmani wife takes, one after another, all the best things, O Yudhishthira, among his father's possessions.[39] Similarly, the Vaiçyā cannot be regarded as the equal of the Kshatriyā in point of birth. Prosperity, kingdom, and treasury, O Yudhishthira, belong to the Kshatriya.[40] All these have been ordained for the Kshatriya. The whole Earth, O king, with her belt of seas, is seen to belong to him. By following the duties of his own order, the Kshatriya acquires an extensive affluence.[41] The sceptre of royalty is held by him. Without the Kshatriya, O king, there can be no protection. The Brāhmanas are highly blessed, for they are the deities of the very deities.[42] Following the ordinances laid down by the Rishis, the Kshatriyas should worship the Brāhmanas according to due rites. Even this is the eternal usage.[43] Coveted by theives and others, the possessions of all men are protected by Kshatriyas in the observance of the duties assigned to their order. Indeed, wealth and spouses and every other possession owned by people would have been forcibly taken away but for this protection that the Kshatriyas afford.[44] The Kshatriya, as the king, becomes the protector or rescuer of all the orders. Hence, the son of the Kshatriyā wife shall, without doubt, be held to be superior to him that is born of the Vaiçyā wife. The son of the Kshatriyā

---

* *I. e.*, if the Brāhmana, led by affection for any other wife, disregards the wife belonging to his own order and shows preference for those of the other orders, he then incurs the liability of being regarded as a Chandāla that has come to be numbered among Brāhmanas.—T.

wife, for this, takes a larger share of the paternal property than the son of the Vaiçyā mother.'[45]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast duly said what the rules are that apply to Brāhmanas. What, however, are the rules that apply to the others ?'[46]

"Bhishma said,—'For the Kshatriya, O delighter of the Kurus, two wives have been ordained. The Kshatriya may take a third wife from the Cudra order. Such practice prevails, it is true, but it is not sanctioned by the scriptures.[47] Even this should be the order, O Yudhishthira, of the spouses of a Kshatriya. The property of a Kshatriya should, O king, be divided into eight shares.[48] The son of the Kshatriyā wife shall take four of such shares of the paternal property. The son of the Vaiçyā wife shall take three of such shares.[49] The remaining one or the eighth share shall be taken by the son of the Cudrā wife. The son of the Cudrā wife, however, shall take only when the father gives but not otherwise.[50] For the Vaiçya only one wife has been ordained. A second wife is taken from the Cudrā order. The practice prevails, it is true, but it is not sanctioned by the scriptures.[51] If a Vaiçya has two wives one of whom is a Vaiçyā and the other a Cudrā, there is a difference between them in respect of status.[52] The wealth of a Vaiçya, O chief of Bharata's race, should be divided into five portions. I shall now speak of the sons of a Vaiçya by a wife of his own order and by one belonging to the inferior order, as also of the manner in which, O king, his wealth is to be distributed among those children.[53] The son born of the Vaiçyā wife shall take four of such shares of his father's wealth. The fifth share, O Bhārata, has been said to belong to the son born of the Cudrā wife.[54] Such son, however, shall take when the father gives. He should not take anything unless the father gives it to him. The son that is begotten on a Cudrā wife by persons of the three higher orders should always be regarded as disentitled to any share of the sire's wealth.[55] The Cudra should have only one wife taken from his own order. He can under no circumstances, take any other spouse. Even if he happens to have a century of sons by such spouse, all of them share equally the wealth that he may leave behind.[56] As

regards all the orders, the children born of the spouse taken from the husband's own order, shall, it has been laid down, share equally the father's wealth.[57] The eldest son's share shall be greater than that of every other son, for he shall take one share more than each of his brothers, consisting of the best things of this father. Even this is the law of inheritance, O son of Prithā, as declared by the Self-born himself.[58] Amongst children all born of the spouse taken from the husband's own order, there is another distinction, O king! In marrying, the elder ones should always precede the younger ones.[59] The spouses being all equal in respect of their order of birth, and the children also being all equal in respect of the status of their mothers the son that is first-born shall take one share more than each of his other brothers. The son that comes next in point of age shall take a share that is next in value, while the son that is youngest shall take the share that belongs to the youngest.*[60] Thus among spouses of all orders, they that belong to the same order with the husband are regarded as the first. Even this is what was declared by the great Rishi Kaçyapa the son of Marichi.' "[61]

Section XLVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Through inducements offered by wealth, or through mere lust, or through ignorance of the true order of birth (of both males and females), or through folly, intermixture happens of the several orders.[1] What, O grandsire, are

---

* The sense of this Verse seems to be this: if a Brāhmana takes in succession three spouses all belonging to his own order, the son born of his first wife shall take the share that is allotted to the eldest; that born of the second wife shall take a share next in value; and that born of the youngest wife shall take the share allotted to the youngest. After such especial shares are taken, the residue of the property is to be distributed into equal shares each of which shall be taken by each of the children. If this interpretation be correct, it would appear that the contention, waged some years ago in Bengal, that the scriptures do not allow a person the liberty of taking more than one spouse from his own order, falls to the ground. Upon other grounds also, that contention was absurd, for Kshatriya kings often took more than one Kshatriya spouse.—T.

the duties of persons that are born in the mixed classes and what are the acts laid down for them? Do thou discourse to me on this!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'In the beginning, the Lord of all creatures created the four orders and laid down their respective acts or duties, for the sake of sacrifice.*[3] The Brāhmana may take four wives, one from each of the four orders. In two of them (*viz.*, the wife taken from his own order and that taken from the one next below), he takes birth himself (the children begotten upon them being regarded as invested with the same status as his own). Those sons, however, that are begotten by him on the two spouses that belong to the next two orders (*viz.*, Vaiçya and Cudra), are inferior, their status being determined not by that of their father but by that of their mothers.[4] The son that is begotten by a Brāhmana upon a Cudrā wife is called Parāçava, implying one born of a corpse, for the Cudrā woman's body is as inauspicious as a corpse. He should serve the persons of his (father's) race. Indeed, it is not proper for him to give up the duty of service that has been laid down for him.[5] Adopting all means in his power, he should uphold the burthens of his family. Even if he happens to be elder in age, he should still dutifully serve the other children of his father who may be younger to him in years, and bestow upon them whatever he may succeed in earning.[6] A Kshatriya may take three wives. In two of them (*viz.*, the one taken from his own order and the other that is taken from the order immediately below), he takes birth himself (so that those children are invested with the status of his own order). His third wife being of the Cudrā order is regarded as very inferior. The son that he begets upon her comes to be called as an Ugra.[7] The Vaiçya may take two spouses. In both of them (*viz.*, the one taken from his own order, and the other from the lowest of the four pure orders), he takes birth himself (so that those children become invested with the status of his own order). The Cudra

---

* *I. e.*, each order was created for performing sacrifices. The Cudra is competent to perform sacrifice. Only his sacrifice should be by serving the three other orders.—T.

can take only one wife, *viz.*, she that is taken from his own order. The son begotten by him upon her becomes a Cudra.[8] A son that takes birth under circumstances other than those mentioned above, comes to be looked upon as a very inferior one. If a person of a lower order begets a son upon a woman of a superior order, such son is regarded as outside the pale of the four pure orders. Indeed, such son becomes an object of censure with the four principal orders.[9] If a Kshatriya begets a son upon a Brāhmani woman, such son, without being included in any of the four pure orders, comes to be regarded as a Suta. The duties of a Suta are all connected with the reciting of eulogies and encomiums of kings and other great men. The son begotten by a Vaiçya upon a woman of the Brāhmana order comes to be regarded as a Vaidehaka. The duties assigned to him are the charge of bars and bolts for protecting the privacy of women of respectable households. Such sons have no cleansing rites laid down for them.*[10] If a Cudra unites with a woman belonging to the foremost of the four orders, the son that is begotten is called a Chandāla. Endued with a fierce disposition, he must live in the outskirts of cities and towns and the duty assigned to him is that of the public executioner. Such sons are always regarded as wretches of their race. These O foremost of intelligent persons, are the offspring of intermixed orders.[11] The son begotten by a Vaiçya upon a Kshatriyā woman becomes a Vandi or Māgadha. The duties assigned to him are eloquent recitations of praise. The son begotten through transgression, by a Cudra upon a Kshatriyā woman, becomes a Nishāda and the duties assigned to him have reference to the catching of fish.[12] If a Cudra happens to have intercourse with a Vaiçyā woman, the son begotten upon her comes to be called Āyogava. The duty assigned to such a person are those of a Takshan (carpenter). They that are Brāhmanas should never accept gifts from such a person. They are not entitled to possess any kind of wealth.[13] Persons belonging to the mixed castes beget upon spouses taken from their own castes children invested with the status that is their own. When they beget children in

* For them there is no investiture with the sacred thread.—T.

women taken from castes that are inferior to theirs, such children become inferior to their fathers, for they become invested with the status that belongs to their mothers.[14] Thus as regards the four pure orders, persons beget children invested with their own status upon spouses taken from their own orders as also upon them that are taken from the orders immediately below their own. When, however, offspring is begotten upon other spouses, they come to be regarded as invested with a status that is, principally, outside the pale of the four pure orders.[15] When such children beget sons in women taken from their own classes, those sons take the status of their sires. It is only when they take spouses from castes other than their own, that the children they beget become invested with inferior status.[16] As an example of this it may be said that a Cudra begets upon a woman belonging to the most superior order a son that is outside the pale of the four orders (for such a son comes to be regarded as a Chandāla who is very inferior). The son that is outside the pale of the four orders, by uniting with women belonging to the four principal orders, begets offspring that is further degraded in point of status.[17] From those outside the pale of the four orders and those again that are further outside that pale, children multiply in consequence of the union of persons with women of classes superior to their own. In this way, from persons of inferior status classes spring up, altogether fifteen in number, that are equally low or still lower in status.[18] It is only from sexual union with women of persons who should not have such union with them that mixed classes spring up. Among the classes that are thus outside the pale of the four principal or pure orders, children are begotten upon women belonging to the class called Sairindhri by men of the class clled Māgadha.[19] The occupation of such offspring is the adornment of the bodies of kings and others. They are well acquainted with the preparation of unguents, the making of wreaths, and the manufacture of articles used for the decoration of the person. Though free by the status that attaches to them by birth, they should yet lead a life of service. From the union of Māgadhas of a certain class with women of the caste called Sairindhri, another caste springs up, called Āyogava.

Their occupation consists in the making of nets (for catching fish and fowl and animals of the chase). Vaidehas, by uniting themselves with women of the Sairindhri caste, beget children called Maireyakas whose occupation consists in the manufacture of wines and spirits.[20] From the Nishādas spring a caste called Madgura and another known by the name of Dāsas whose occupation consists in plying boats. From the Chandāla springs a race called Cwapāka whose occupation consists in keeping guard over the dead.[21] The women of the Māgadhi caste, by union with these four castes of wicked dispositions produce four others who live by practising deceit. These are Māngsa, Swādukara, Kshaudra, and Sougandha.[22] From the Vaideha springs up a cruel and sinful caste that lives by practising deception. From the Nishādas again springs up the Madranābha caste whose members are seen to ride on cars drawn by asses.[23] From the Chandālas springs up the caste called Pukkasa whose members are seen to eat the flesh of asses, horses, and elephants. These cover themselves with the garments obtained by stripping human corpses. They are again seen to eat off broken earthenware.*[24] These three castes of very low status are born of women of the Āyogava caste (by fathers taken from different castes). The caste called Kshudra springs from the Vaidehaka. The caste called Andhra which takes up its residence in the outskirts of towns and cities, also springs up (from the Vaidehakas).[25] Then again the Charmakāra, uniting himself with a woman of the Nishāda caste, begets the class called Kārāvara. From the Chandāla, again, springs up the caste known by the name of Pāndusaupāka whose occupation consists of making baskets and other things with cleft bamboos.[26] From the union of the Nishāda with a woman of the Vaidehi caste springs one who is called by the name of Āhindaka. The Chandāla begets upon a Saupāka woman a son that does not differ from the Chandāla in status or occupation.[27] A Nishādi woman, by union with a Chāndāla, brings forth a son who lives in the outskirts of villages and towns. Indeed, the members of such

* Broken earthenware is always cast off. These are sometimes utilised by persons of the lower orders.—T.

a caste live in crematoria and are regarded by the very lowest orders as incapable of being numbered among them.[28] Thus do these mixed castes spring up from improper and sinful union of fathers and mothers belonging to different castes. Whether they live in concealment or openly, they should be known by their occupations.[29] The duties have been laid down in the scriptures of only the four principal orders. As regards the others, the scriptures are entirely silent. Among all the orders, the members of those castes that have no duties assigned to them by the scriptures, need have no fears as to what they do (for earning their livelihood).[30] Persons unaccustomed to the performance of sacrifices or for whom sacrifices have not been laid down, and who are deprived of the company and the instructions of the righteous, whether numbered among the four principal orders or out of their pale, by uniting themselves with women of other castes, led not by considerations of righteousness but by uncontrolled lust, cause numerous mixed castes to come into existence whose occupations and abodes depend on the circumstances connected with the irregular unions to which they owe their origin.[31] Having recourse to such spots where four roads meet, or crematoria, or hills and mountains, or forests and trees, they build their habitations. The ornaments they wear are made of iron.[32] Living in such places, openly, betaking themselves to their own occupations for earning their livelihood. They may be seen to live in this way, adorning their persons with ornaments and employed in the task of manufacturing diverse kinds of domestic and other utensils.[33] Without doubt, by assisting kine and Brāhmanas, and practising the virtues of abstention from cruelty, campassion, truthfulness of speech, and forgiveness,[34] and, if need be, reserving others by laying down their very lives, persons of the mixed castes may achieve success. I have no doubt, O chief of men, that these virtues become the causes of their success.[35] He that is possessed of intelligence, should, taking everything into consideration, beget offspring according to the ordinances of the scriptures, upon women that have been declared as proper or fit for him. A son begotten upon a woman belonging to a degraded caste, instead of rescuing the sire, brings him to grief even as a heavy weight

brings to grief a swimmer desirous of crossing a piece of water.[36] Whether a man happens to be possessed of learning or not, lust and wrath are natural attributes of humanity in this world. Women, therefore, may always be seen to drag men into the wrong path.[37] The natural disposition of women is such that man's contact with her is productive of misery to dim. Hence, men possessed of wisdom do not suffer themselves to be excessively attached to women.'[38]

"Yudhishthira said,—'There are men who belong to the mixed castes, and who are of very impure birth. Presenting the features of respectability, they are in reality disrespectable. In consequence of these external aspects we may not be able to know the truth about their birth. Are there any signs, O grandsire, by which the truth may be known about the origin of such men ?'[39]

"Bhishma said,—'A person that is born of an irregular union presents diverse features of disposition. One's purity of birth, again, is to be ascertained from one's acts which must resemble the acts of those who are admittedly good and righteous.[40] A disrespectable behaviour, acts opposed to those laid down in the scriptures, crookedness and cruelty, and abstention from sacrifices and other scriptural acts that lead to merit, proclaim one's impurity of origin.[41] A son catches the disposition of either the sire or the mother. Sometimes he catches the dispositions of both. A person of impure birth can never succeed in concealing his true disposition.[42] As the cub of a tiger or a pard resembles its sire and dam in form and in the matter of its stripes or spots, even so a person cannot but betray the circumstances of his origin.[43] However covered may the course of one's descent be, if that descent happens to be impure, its character or disposition is sure to manifest itself, slightly or largely.[44] A person may, for purposes of his own, choose to tread in an insincere path, practising such conduct as seems to be righteous. His own disposition, however, in the matter of those acts that he does, always proclaims whether he belongs to a good order or to a different one.[45] Creatures in the world are endued with diverse kinds of disposition. They are, again, seen to be employed in diverse kinds of acts. Amongst creatures

thus employed, there is nothing that is so good or precious as pure birth and righteous conduct.[46] If a person be born in a low order, that good understanding which arises from a study of the scriptures fails to rescue his body from low acts. Absolute goodness of understanding may be of different degrees. It may be high, middling, and low. Even if it appears in a person of low extraction, it disappears like autumnal clouds without producing any consequences. On the other hand, that other goodness of understanding which, according to its measure, has ordained the status in which the person has taken birth, shows itself in his acts.*[47] If a person happens to belong to a superior order but still if he happens to be divested of good behaviour, he should receive no respect or worship. One may worship even a Cudra if he happens to be conversant with duties and to be of good conduct.[48] A person proclaims himself by his own good and bad acts and by his good or bad disposition and race of birth. If one's race of birth happens to be degraded for any reason, one soon raises it and makes it resplendent and famous by one's acts.[49] For these reasons they that are endued with wisdom should avoid those women among these diverse castes mixed, and pure, upon whom they should not beget themselves.'"[50]

Section XLIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Do thou discourse to us, O sire, upon the orders and classes separately, upon what kind of son is begotten on what women, who is entitled to have whom for sons, and what kinds of sons are there![1] It is known that disputes frequently arise in respect of sons. It behooveth thee, O king,

---

* The second line is exceedingly terse. The sense seems to be this: one that is of low birth must remain low in disposition. Absolute goodness may arise in his heart, but it disappears immediately without producing any effect whatever. The study of the scriptures, therefore, cannot raise such a person. On the other hand, *the* goodness which according to its measure has ordained for one (1) the status of humanity and (2) the rank in that status, is seen to manifest itself in his acts.—T.

to solve the doubts that have taken possession of our mind. Indeed, we are stupefied in respect of this subject.'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'The son of one's loins is regarded as one's own self. The son that is begotten upon one's wife by a person whom one has invited for the task, is called Niruktaja. The son that is begotten upon one's wife by somebody without one's permission, is Prasritaja.[3] The son begotten upon his own wife by a person fallen away from his status is called Patitaja. There are two other sons, *viz.*, the son given, and the son made. There is another called Adhyuda.*[4] The son born of a maiden in her father's house is called Kānina. Besides these, there are six kinds of sons called Apadhwansaja and six others that are called Apasadas. These are the several kinds of sons mentioned in the scriptures, know, O Bhārata!'[5]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Who are the six that are called Apadhwansaja? Who also are the Apasadas? It behooveth thee to explain all this to me in detail!'[6]

"Bhishma said,—'The sons that a Brāhmana begets upon spouses taken from the three inferior orders, those begotten by a Kshatriya upon spouses taken from the two orders inferior to his own, O Bhārata,[7] and the sons that a Vaiçya begets upon a spouse taken from the one order that is inferior to his,—are all called Apadhwansas. They are, as thus explained, of six kinds. Listen now to me as I tell thee who the Apasadas are.[8] The son that a Cudra begets upon a Brāhmani woman is called a Chāndāla. Begotten upon a Kshatriyā woman by a person of the Cudra order, the son is called a Vrātya. He who is born of a Vaiçyā woman by a Cudra father is called a Vaidya. These three kinds of sons are called Apasada.[9] The Vaiçya, by uniting himself with a woman of the Brāhmana order, begets a son that is called a Māgadha, while the son that he begets upon a Kshatriyā woman is called a Vāmaka. The Kshatriya can beget but one kind of son upon a woman of a superior order.[10] Indeed, the son begotten by a Kshatriya

---

* The son begotten upon a maiden by one who does not become her husband, and born after her marriage, is regarded as belonging not to the begetter but to the husband.—T.

upon a Brāhmana woman, is called a Suta. These three also are called Apasadas. It cannot be said, O king, that these six kinds of sons are no sons.'[11]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Some say that one's son is he that is born in one's soil. Some, on the other hand, say that one's son is he who has been begotten from one's seed. Are both these kinds of sons equal? Whose, again, is the son to be? Do thou tell me this, O grandsire!'*[12]

"Bhishma said,—'His is the son from whose seed he has sprung. If, however, the owner of the seed abandons the son born of it, such son then becomes his upon whose spouse he has been begotten. The same rule applies to the son called Adhyuda. He belongs to the person from whose seed he has taken his birth. If, however, the owner of the seed abandons him, he becomes the son of the husband of his mother. Know that even this is what the law declares!'[13]

"Yudhishthira said,—'We know that the son becomes his from whose seed he has taken birth. Whence does the husband of the woman that brings forth the son derive his right to the latter? Similarly, the son called Adhyuda should be known to be the son of him from whose seed he has sprung. How can they be the sons of others in consequence of the engagement about owning and rearing them having been broken?'[14]

"Bhishma said,—'He who, having begotten a son of his own loins, abandons him for some reason or other, cannot be regarded as the sire of such son, for vital seed only cannot create sonship. Such son must be held to belong to the person who owns the soil.[15] When a man, desiring to have a son, weds a girl quick with child, the son born of his spouse must belong to him, for it is the fruit of his own soil. The person from whose vital seed the son has sprung can have no right to such son.[16] The son that is born in one's soil but not begotten by the owner, O chief of Bharata's race, bears all the marks of the sire that has actually begotten him (and not the marks of one that is only the husband of his mother). The son thus born is incapable of

---

* The objects of Yudhishthira's question will appear clearly from the answer given to it by Bhishma.—T.

concealing the evidences that physiognomy offers. He is at once known by eyesight (to belong to another).*[17] As regards the son made, he is sometimes regarded as the child of the person that has made him a son and that brings him up. In his case, neither the vital seed of which he has been born nor the soil in which he has been born, becomes the cause of sonship.'[18]

"Yudhishthira said,—'What kind of son is that who is said to be a made son and whose sonship arises from the fact of his being taken and brought up, and in whose case neither the vital seed nor the soil of birth, O Bhārata, is regarded as the cause of sonship ?'[19]

"Bhishma said,—'When one takes up and rears a son that has been cast off on the road by his father and mother, and when the person thus taking and rearing him fails to find out his parents after search, he becomes the father of such son and the latter becomes what is called his made son.[20] Not having anybody to own him, he becomes his who brings him up. Such son, again, comes to be regarded as belonging to that order to which his owner or rearer belongs.'[21]

"Yudhishthira said,—'How should the purificatory rites of such a person be performed ? In whose case what sort of rites are to be performed ? With what girl should he be wed ? Do thou tell me all this, O grandsire !'[22]

"Bhishma said,—'The rites of purification in respect of such a son should be performed conformably to the usage of the person himself that rears him, for cast off by his parents such son obtains the order of the person that takes him and brings him up.[23] Indeed, O thou of unfading glory, the rearer should perform all the purificatory rites in respect to such son according to the practices of the rearer's own race and kinsmen. As regards the girl also, O Yudhishthira, that should be bestowed in marriage upon such a son, she should belong to the order of the rearer himself.[24] All this is to be done only when the order

* Such son becomes the property of the mother's husband and not of his begetter. If, however, the begetter expresses a wish to have him and rear nim, he should be regarded as the begetter's. The principle upon which he becomes the child of the mother's husband is that the begetter conceals himself and never wishes to have him.—T.

of the son's true mother cannot be ascertained. Among sons, he that is born of a maiden and he that is born of a mother that had conceived before her marriage but brought him forth subsequent to that act, are regarded as very disgraceful and degraded.[25] Even these two, however, should receive the same rites of purification that are laid down for the sons begotten by the father in lawful wedlock. In respect of the son that becomes his sire's in consequence of his birth in the sire's soil, and of those sons that are called Apasadas, and those conceived by the spouse in her maidenhood but brought forth after marriage,[26] Brāhmanas and others should apply the same rites of purification that hold good for their own orders. These are the conclusions that are seen in the scriptures in respect of the different orders. I have thus told thee everything appertaining to thy questions. What else dost thou wish to hear ?' "[27]

Section L.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What is the nature of the compassion or pity that is felt at the sight of another's woe ? What is the nature of that compassion or sympathy that one feels for another in consequence of one's living in the companionship of that other ? What is the nature (and degree) of the high blessedness that attaches to kine ? It behooveth thee, O grandsire, to expound all this to me !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall, in this connection, O thou of great effulgence, recite to thee an ancient narrative of a conversation between Nahusha and the Rishi Chyavana.[2] In days of yore, O chief of Bharata's race, the great Rishi Chyavana of Bhrigu's race, always observant of high vows, became desirous of leading for sometime the mode of life called *Udavāsa* and set himself to commence it.[3] Casting off pride and wrath and joy and grief, the ascetic, pledging himself to observe that vow, set himself to live for twelve years according to the rules of *Udavāsa*.[4] The Rishi inspired all creatures with a happy trust. And he inspired similar confidence in all creatures living in water. The puissant ascetic resembled the Moon himself in his behaviour to all.[5] Bowing unto all the deities and

having cleansed himself of all sins, he entered the water at the confluence of Gangā and Yamunā, and stood there like an inanimate post of wood.[6] Placing his head against it, he bore the fierce and roaring current of the two streams united together,—the current whose speed resembled that of the wind itself.[7] Gangā and Yamunā, however, and the other streams and lakes, whose waters unite together at the confluence at Preyāga, instead of afflicting the Rishi, went past him (for showing him respect).[8] Assuming the attitude of a wooden post, the great Muni sometimes laid himself down in the water and slept at ease. And sometimes, O chief of Bharata's race, the intelligent sage stood in an erect posture.[9] He became quite agreeable unto all creatures living in water. Without the least fear, all these used to smell the Rishi's lips.[10] In this way, the Rishi passed a long time, at that grand confluence of waters. One day, some fishermen came there.[11] With nets in their hands, O thou of great effulgence, those men came to that spot where the Rishi was. They were many in number and all of them were bent upon catching fish.[12] Well-formed and broad-chested, endued with great strength and courage, and never returning in fear from water, those men who lived upon the earning by their nets, came to that spot, resolved to catch fish.[13] Arrived at that water which contained many fish, those fishermen, O chief of the Bharatas, tied all their nets together.[14] Desirous of fish, those Kaivartas, many in number, united together and surrounded a portion of the waters of Gangā and Yamunā with their nets.[15] Indeed, they threw upon the water their net which was made of new strings, capable of covering a large space, and endued with sufficient length and breadth.[16] All of them, getting down into the water, then began to drag with great force that net of theirs which was very large and had been well-spread over a large space.[17] All of them were free from fear, cheerful, and fully resolved to do one another's bidding. They had succeeded in enmeshing a large number of fish and other aquatic animals.[18] And as they dragged their net, O king, they easily dragged up Chyavana the son of Bhrigu, along with a large number of fish.[19] His body was overgrown with the river-moss. His

beard and matted locks had become green. And all over his person could be seen conchs and other mollusca attached with their heads.[20] Beholding that Rishi who was well-conversant with the Vedas dragged up by them from the water, all the fishermen stood with joined hands and then prostrated themselves on the ground and repeatedly bent their heads.[21] Through fear and pain caused by the dragging of the net, and in consequence of their being brought upon the land, the fish enmeshed in the net yielded up their lives.[22] The ascetic, beholding that great slaughter of fishes, became filled with compassion and sighed repeatedly.[23]

"'The fishermen said,—We have committed this sin (of draging thy sacred self from water) through ignorance. Be gratified with us! What wish of thine shall we accomplish? Command us, O great ascetic!'—[24]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by them, Chyavana, from among that heap of fishes around him, said,—Do ye with concentrated attention hear what my most cherished wish is![25] I shall either die with these fishes or do ye sell me with them. I have lived with them for a long time within the water. I do not wish to abandon them at such a time![26]—When he said these words unto them, the fishermen became exceedingly terrified. With pale faces they repaired to king Nahusha and informed him of all that had taken place.'"[27]

SECTION LI.

"Bhishma said,—'King Nahusha hearing the pass into which Chyavana was reduced, quickly proceeded to that spot accompanied by his ministers and priest.[1] Having cleansed himself duly, the king, with joined hands and concentrated attention, introduced himself unto the high-souled Chyavana.[2] The king's priest then worshipped with due ceremonies that Rishi, O monarch, who was observant of the vow of truth and endued with a high-soul, and who resembled a god himself (in splendour and energy).[3]

"'Nahusha said,—Tell me, O best of regenerate persons, what act shall we do that may be agreeable to thee? However

difficult that act may be, there is nothing, O holy one, that I shall not be able to accomplish at thy bidding !—[4]

"'Chyavana said,—These men that live by catching fish have all been tired with labour. Do thou pay them the price that may be set upon me along with the value of these fish !—[5]

"'Nahusha said,—Let my priest give unto these Nishādas a thousand coins as price for purchasing this sacred one as he himself has commanded.—[6]

"'Chyavana said,—A thousand coins cannot represent my price. The question depends upon your discretion. Give them a fair value, settling with thy own intelligence what it should be.—[7]

"'Nahusha said,—Let, O learned Brāhmana, a hundred thousand coins be given unto these Nishādas. Shall this be thy price, O holy one, or dost think otherwise ?—[8]

"'Chyavana said,—I should not be purchased with a hundred thousand coins, O best of monarchs ! Let a proper price be given unto these ! Do thou consult with thy ministers !—[9]

"'Nahusha said,—Let my priest give unto these Nishādas a crore of coins. If even this does not represent thy price, let more be paid unto them !—[10]

"'Chyavana said,—O king, I do not deserve to be purchased for a crore of coins or even more. Let that price be given unto these men which would be fair or proper. Do thou consult with the Brāhmanas !—[11]

"'Nahusha said,—Let half my kingdom or even the whole be given away unto these Nishādas. I think that would represent thy price. What, however, dost think, O regenerate one ?—[12]

"'Chyavana said,—I do not deserve to be purchased with half thy kingdom or even the whole of it, O king ! Let that price which is proper be given unto these men. Do thou consult with the Rishis !—'[13]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of the great Rishi, Nahusha became afflicted with great grief. With his ministers and priest he began to deliberate on the matter.[14] There then came unto king Nahusha an ascetic living in the woods and subsisting upon fruit and roots and born of a cow.[15] That best of regenerate persons, addressing the monarch, O

king, said these words:—I shall soon gratify thee. The Rishi also will be gratified.[16] I shall never speak an untruth,—no, not even in jest, what then need I say of other occasions? Thou shouldst, without any scruple, do what I bid thee!—[17]

"'Nahusha said,—Do thou, O illustrious one, say what the price is of that great Rishi of Bhrigu's race. O, save me from this terrible pass, save my kingdom, and save my race![18] If the holy Chyavana became angry, he would destroy the three worlds; what need I say then of my poor self who is destitute of penances and who depends upon the might only of his arms?[19] O great Rishi, do thou become the raft unto us that have all fallen into a fathomless ocean with all our counsellers and our priest! Do thou settle what the price should be of the Rishi!'—[20]

"Bhishma said,—'Hearing these words of Nahusha, the ascetic born of a cow and endued with great energy spoke in this strain, gladdening the monarch and all his counsellers:[21]—Brāhmanas, O king, belong to the foremost of the four orders. No value, however great, can be set upon them. Kine also are invaluable. Therefore, O chief of men, do thou regard a cow as the value of the Rishi![22]—Hearing these words of the great Rishi, Nahusha became, O king, filled with joy along with all his counsellers and priest.[23] Proceeding then to the presence of Bhrigu's son Chyavana of rigid vows, he addressed him thus, O monarch, for gratifying him to the best of his ability.[24]

"'Nahusha said,—Rise, rise, O regenerate Rishi, thou hast been purchased, O son of Bhrigu, with a cow as thy price! O foremost of righteous persons, even this, I think, is thy price!—[25]

"'Chyavana said,—Yes, O king of kings, I do rise up. I have been properly purchased by thee, O sinless one! I do not O thou of unfading glory, see any wealth that is equal to kine.[26] To speak of kine, to hear others speak of them, to make gifts of kine, and to see kine, O king, are acts that are all applauded, O hero, and that are highly auspicious and sin-cleansing.[27] Kine are always the root of prosperity. There is no fault in kine. Kine always afford the best food, in the form of Havi, unto the deities.[28] The sacred Mantras, Swāhā and Vashat, are always established upon kine. Kine are the chief conductresses of Sacrifices. They constitute the mouth of Sacri-

fice.[29] They bear and yield excellent and strength-giving nectar. They receive the worship of all the worlds and are regarded as the source of nectar.[30] On Earth, kine resemble fire in energy and form. Verily, kine represent high energy, and are bestowers of great happiness upon all creatures.[31] That country where kine, established by their owners, breathe fearlessly, shines in beauty. The sins also of that country are all washed off.[32] Kine constitute the stairs that lead to Heaven. Kine are adored in Heaven itself. Kine are goddesses that are competent to give everything and grant every wish. There is nothing else in the world that is so high or so superior !*—'[33]

"Bhishma continued,—'Even this is what I say unto thee on the subject of the glory and superiority of kine, O chief of Bharata's race. I am competent to proclaim a part only of the merits that attach to kine. I have not the ability to exhaust the subject !—[34]

"'The Nishādas said,—O ascetic, thou hast seen us and hast also spoken with us. It has been said that friendship, with those that are good, depends upon only seven words. Do thou then, O lord, show us thy grace !†[35] The blazing sacrificial fire eats all the oblations of clarified butter poured upon it. Of righteous soul, and possessed of great energy, thou art, among men, a blazing fire in energy.[36] We propitiate thee, O thou of great learning ! We surrender ourselves to thee. Do thou, for showing us favor, take back from us this cow !—[37]

"'Chyavana said,—The eye of a person that is poor or that has fallen into distress, the eye of an ascetic, or the eye of a snake of virulent poison, consume a man with his very roots,

---

* 'There is no fault in kine, &c., and kine are like fire &c.' The Hindu idea is that kine are cleansing or sanctifying. The Rishis discovered that the magnetism of the cow is something that is possessed of extraordinary virtues. Give the same kind of food to a cow and a horse. The horse-dung emits an unhealthy stench, while the cowdung is an efficacious disinfectant Western science has not yet turned its attention to the subject, but there can be little doubt that the urine and dung of the cow possess untold virtues.—T.

† 'Saptapadam mitram' means that by speaking only seven words or walking only seven steps together, two persons, if they be good, become friends.—T.

even as a fire, that blazing up with the assistance of the wind and consumes a stack of dry grass or straw.[38] I shall accept the cow that ye desire to present me. Ye fishermen, freed from every sin, go ye to heaven without any delay, with these fishes also that ye have caught with your nets!—'[39]

"Bhishma continued,—'After this, in consequence of the energy of that great Rishi of cleansed soul, those fishermen along with all those fish, through virtue of those words that he had uttered, proceeded to heaven.[40] King Nahusha, beholding the fishermen ascending to heaven with those fishes in their company, became filled with wonder, O chief of Bharata's race.[41] After this, the two Rishis, *viz.*, the one born of a cow and the other who was Chyavana of Bhrigu's race, gladdened king Nahusha by granting him many boons.[42] Then king Nahusha of great energy, that lord of all the Earth, filled with joy, O best of the Bharatas, said,—Sufficient![43]—Like unto a second Indra the chief of the celestials, he accepted the boon about his own steadiness in virtue. The Rishis having granted him the boon, the delighted king worshipped them both with great reverence.[44] As regards Chyavana, his vow having been completed, he returned to his own asylum. The Rishi that had taken his birth from the cow, and who was endued with great energy, also proceeded to his own retreat.[45] The Nishādas all ascended to heaven as also the fishes they had caught, O monarch. King Nahusha too, having obtained those valuable boons, entered his own city.[46] I have thus, O son, told thee everything respecting what thou hadst asked me. The affection that is generated by the sight alone of others as also by the fact of living with them, O Yudhishthira,[47] and the high blessedness of kine too, and the ascertainment of true righteousness, are the topics upon which I have discoursed upon. Tell me, O hero what else is in thy breast.' "[48]

Section LII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O thou of great wisdom, a doubt I have that is very great and that is as vast as the ocean itself. Listen to it, O mighty-armed one, and having learnt what it

is, it behooves thee to explain it unto me.[1] I have a great curiosity with respect to Jamadagni's son, O lord, *viz.*, Rāma, that foremost of all righteous persons. It behooveth thee to gratify that curiosity.[2] How was Rāma born who was endued with prowess incapable of being baffled? He belonged by birth to a race of regenerate Rishis. How did he become a follower of Kshatriya practices?[3] Do thou then, O king, recite to me in detail the circumstances of Rāma's birth. How also did a son of the race of Kuçika who was Kshatriya become a Brāhmana?[4] Great, without doubt, was the puissance of the highsouled Rāma, O chief of men, as also of Viçwāmitra.[5] Why did the grandson of Richika instead of his son become a Kshatriya in conduct? Why also did the grandson of Kuçika and not his son become a Brāhmana? Why did such untoward incidents overtake the grandsons of both, instead of their sons? It behooveth thee to explain the truth in respect of these circumstances.'[6]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited an old history of the discourse between Chyavana and Kuçika, O Bhārata![7] Endued with great intelligence, Chyavana of Bhrigu's race, that best of ascetics, beheld (with his spiritual eye) the stain that would affect his own race (in consequence of some descendant of his becoming wedded to Kshatriya practices).[8] Reflecting upon the merits and faults of that incident, as also its strength and weakness, Chyavana endued with wealth of asceticism became desirous of consuming the race of the Kuçikas (for it was from that race that the stain of Kshatriya practices would, he knew, affect his own race).[9] Repairing then to the presence of king Kuçika, Chyavana said unto him,—O sinless one, the desire has arisen in my heart of dwelling with thee for sometime!—[10]

"'Kuçika said,—O holy one, residence together is an act which the learned ordain for girls when these are given away. They that are endued with wisdom always speak of the practice in such connection only.[11] O Rishi endued with wealth of asceticism, the residence which thou seekest with me is not sanctioned by the ordinance. Yet, however opposed to the dictates of duty and righteousness, I shall do what thou mayst be pleased to command!'—[12]

"Bhishma continued,—'Ordering a seat to be placed for the great ascetic Chyavana, king Kuçika, accompanied by his wife, stood in the presence of the ascetic.[13] Bringing a little jar of water, the king offered him water for washing his feet. He then, through his servants, caused all the rites to be duly performed in honor of his high-souled guest.[14] The high-shouled Kuçika, who was observant of restraints and vows, then cheerfully presented, according to due forms, the ingredients consisting of honey and the other things, to the great Rishi and induced him to accept the same.[15] Having welcomed and honored the learned Brāhmana in this way, the king once more addressed him and said,—We two await thy orders! Command us what we are to do for thee, O holy one![16] If it is our kingdom or wealth or kine, O thou of rigid vows, or all articles that are given away in sacrifices, which thou wantest, tell us the word and we shall bestow all upon thee![17] This palace, this kingdom, this seat of justice, await thy pleasure. Thou art the lord of all these! Do thou rule the Earth! As regards myself, I am completely dependent upon thee![18]—Addressed in these words by the king, Chyavana of Bhrigu's race, filled with great delight, said unto Kuçika these words in reply.[19]

"'Chyavana said,—I do not, O king, covet thy kingdom, nor thy wealth, nor the damsels thou hast, nor thy kine, nor thy provinces, nor articles needed for sacrifice! Do thou listen to me![20] If it pleases thee and thy wife, I shall oommence to observe a certain vow. I desire thee and thy wife to serve me during that period without any scruples![21]—Thus addressed by the Rishi, the king and the queen became filled with joy, O Bhārata, and answered him, saying,—Be it so, O Rishi![22]—Delighted with the Rishi's words, the king led him into an apartment of the palace. It was an excellent one, agreeable to see. The king showed him everything in that room.[23] And the king said,—This, O holy one, is thy bed. Do thou live here as thou pleasest! O thou that art endued with wealth of asceticism, myself and my queen shall strive our best to give thee every comfort and every pleasure![24]—While they were thus conversing with each other, the sun passed the meridian. The Rishi commanded the king to bring him food and drink.[25]

King Kuçika, bowing unto the Rishi, asked him, saying,—What kind of food is agreeable to thee? What food, indeed, shall be brought for thee?[26]—Filled with delight, the Rishi answered that ruler of men, O Bhārata, saying,—Let food that is proper be given to me![27]—Receiving these words with respect, the king said,—So be it!—and then offered unto the Rishi food of the proper kind.[28] Having finished his meals, the holy Chyavana, conversant with every duty, addressed the king and the queen, saying,—I desire to slumber. O puissant one, sleep hinders me now![29]—Proceeding thence to a chamber that had been prepared for him, that best of Rishis then laid himself down upon a bed. The king and the queen sate themselves down.[30] The Rishi told them,—Do not, while I sleep, awake me! Do ye keep yourself awake and continually press my feet as long as I sleep.[31]—Without the least scruple, Kuçika, conversant with every duty, said,—So be it!—Indeed, the king and the queen kept themselves awake all night,[32] duly engaged in tending and serving the Rishi in the manner directed. The royal couple, O monarch, accomplished the Rishi's bidding with earnestness and attention.[33] Meanwhile the holy Brāhmana, having thus laid his commands upon the king, slept soundly, without changing his posture or turning even once, for a space of one and twenty days.[34] The king, O delighter of the Kurus, foregoing all food, along with his wife, sat joyfully the whole time, engaged in tending and serving the Rishi.[35] On the expiration of one and twenty days, the son of Bhrigu rose of his own accord. The great ascetic then went out of the room, without accosting them at all.[36] Famished and toil-worn, the king and the queen followed him, but that foremost of Rishis did not deign to cast a single look upon any of them.[37] Proceeding a little way, the son of Bhrigu disappeared in the very sight of the royal couple, (making himself invisible by his Yoga-power). At this, the king, struck with grief, fell down on the Earth.[38] Comforted, he rose up soon, and accompanied by his queen, the monarch, possessed of great splendour, began to search everywhere for the Rishi.' "[39]

SECTION LIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'After the Rishi had disappeared, what did the king do and what also his highly-blessed spouse? Tell me this, O grandsire!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Having lost sight of the Rishi, the king, overwhelmed with shame, toil-worn, and losing his senses, returned to his palace, accompanied by his queen.[2] Entering his mansion in a cheerless mood, he spoke not a word with any one. He thought only of that conduct of Chyavana.[3] With a desparing heart he then proceeded to his chamber. There he saw the son of Bhrigu stretched as before on his bed.[4] Beholding the Rishi there, they wondered much. Indeed, they began to reflect upon that very strange incident. The sight of the Rishi dispelled their fatigue.[5] Taking their seats once more by his side, they again set themselves to gently press his feet as before. Meanwhile the great ascetic continued to sleep soundly as before. Only, he now lay on another side.[6] Endued with great energy, he thus passed another period measured by one and twenty days. Agitated by their fears, the royal couple showed no change in their attitude or sentiment towards the Rishi.[7] Awaking then from his slumber, the ascetic addressed the king and the queen, saying,—Do ye rub my body with oil. I wish to have a bath.[8]—Famishing and toil-worn though they were, they readily assented, and soon approached the Rishi with a costly oil that had been prepared by boiling it a hundred times.[9] While the Rishi was seated at his ease, the king and the queen, restraining speech, continued to rub him. Endued with high ascetic merit, the son of Bhrigu did not once utter the word Sufficient.[10] Bhrigu's son however saw that the royal couple were totally unmoved. Rising up suddenly, he entered the bathing chamber.[11] The diverse articles necessary for a bath and such as were fit for a king's use, were ready there. Without honoring, however, any of those articles by appropriating them to his use, the Rishi once more disappeared there and then by his Yoga-power,[12] in the very sight of king

Kuçika (and his spouse). This, however, O chief of the Bharatas, failed to disturb the equanimity of the royal couple.[13] The next time the puissant Rishi was seen seated, after a bath, on the throne. Indeed, it was from that place that he then showed himself to the king and the queen, O delighter of the Kurus.[14] With a cheerful face, king Kuçika, together with his wife, then offered the Rishi cooked food with great reverence. Endued with wisdom, and with heart totally unmoved, Kuçika made this offer.[15]—Let the food be brought—were the words that were then uttered by the ascetic. Assisted by his spouse, the king soon brought thither the food.[16] There were diverse kinds of meat and different preparations also thereof. There was a great variety of vegetables also and potherbs.[17] There were juicy cakes too among those viands, and several agreeable kinds of confectionery, and solid preparations of milk. Indeed, the viands offered presented different kinds of taste. Among them there was also some food—the produce of the wilderness—such a ascetics liked and took.[18] Diverse agreeable kinds of fruit, fit to be eaten by kings, were also there. There were Vadaras and Ingudas and Kāçmaryyas and Bhallātakas.[19] Indeed, the food that was offered contained such things as are taken by persons leading a domestic mode of life as also such things as are taken by denizens of the wilderness. Through fear of the Rishi's curse, the king had caused all kinds of food to be collected and dressed for his guest.[20] All this food, brought from the kitchen, was placed before Chyavana. A seat was also placed for him and a bed too was spread. The viands were then caused to be covered with white cloths. Soon, however, Chyavana of Bhrigu's race set fire to all the things and reduced them to ashes.[21-22] Possessed of great intelligence, the royal couple showed no wrath at this conduct of the Rishi, who once more, after this, made himself invisible before the very eyes of the king and the queen.[23] The royal sage Kuçika thereupon stood there in the same posture for the whole night, with his spouse by his side, and without speaking a word. Endued with great prosperity, he did not give way to wrath.[24] Every day, good and pure food of diverse kinds, excellent beds, abundant articles needed for bath,[25] and cloths of various kinds,

were collected and kept in readiness in the palace for the Rishi. Indeed, Chyavana failed to notice any fault in the conduct of the king.[26] Then the regenerate Rishi, addressing king Kucika, said unto him,—Do thou, with thy spouse, yoke thyself unto a car and bear me on it to whichever place I shall direct![27]—Without the least scruple, the king answered Chyavana endued with wealth of asceticism, saying,—So be it!—And he further enquired of the Rishi, asking,—Which car shall I bring? Shall it be my pleasure car for making progresses of pleasure, or, shall it be my battle-car?[28]—Thus addressed by the delighted and contented monarch, the ascetic said unto him,—Do thou promptly equip that car of thine with which thou penetratest into hostile cities! Indeed, that battle-car of thine, with every weapon, with its standard and flags, its darts and javelins and golden columns and poles,[29-30] should be made ready. Its rattle resembles the tinkling of bells. It is adorned with numerous arches made of pure gold. It is always furnished with high and excellent weapons numbering by hundreds!—The king said,—So be it,—and soon caused his great battle-car to be equipped.[31] And he yoked his wife thereto on the left and his own self on the right. And the king placed on the car, among its other equipments, the goad which had three handles and which had a point at once hard as the thunder-bolt and sharp as the needle.*[32] Having placed every requisite upon the car, the king said unto the Rishi,—O holy one, whither shall the car proceed? O, let the son of Bhrigu issue his command![33] This thy car shall proceed to the place which thou mayst be pleased to indicate!—Thus addressed, the holy man replied unto the king, saying,[34]—Let the car go hence, dragged slowly, step by step. Obedient to my will, do ye two proceed in such a way that I may not feel any fatigue.[35] I should be borne away pleasantly, and let all thy people see this progress that I make through their midst. Let no person that comes to me, as I proceed along the road, be driven away. I shall make

* 'Vajrasuchyagram' may also mean 'furnished with an end like that of the needle with which diamonds and other hard gems are bored through.—T.

gifts of wealth unto all.[36] Unto them amongst the Brāhmanas that may approach me on the way, I shall grant their wishes and bestow upon all of them gems and wealth without stint.[37] Let all this be accomplished, O king, and do not entertain any scruples!—Hearing these words of the Rishi, the king summoned his servants and told them,[38]—Ye should. without any fear, give away whatever the ascetic will order.—Then jewels and gems in abundance, and beautiful women, and pairs of sheep,[39] and coined and uncoined gold, and huge elephants resembling hills or mountain summits, and all the ministers of the king, began to follow the Rishi as he was borne away on that car.[40] Cries of Oh and Alas arose from every part of the city which was plunged in grief at that extraordinary sight. And the king and the queen were suddenly struck by the Rishi with that goad equipt with sharp point.[41] Though thus struck on the back and the cheeks, the royal couple still showed no sign of agitation. On the other hand, they continued to bear the Rishi on as before.[42] Trembling from head to foot, for no food had passed their lips for fifty nights, and exceedingly weak, the heroic couple somehow succeeded in dragging that excellent car.[43] Repeatedly and deeply cut by the goad, the royal couple became covered with blood. Indeed, O monarch, they then looked like a couple of Kinçuka trees in the flowering season.[44] The citizens, beholding the plight to which their king and queen had been reduced, became afflicted with great grief. Filled with fear at the prospect of the curse the Rishi might denounce upon them, they kept silent under their misery.[45] Gathering in knots they said unto each other,—Behold the might of penances! Although all of us are angry, we are still unable to look at the Rishi![46] Great is the energy of the holy Rishi of cleansed soul! Behold also the endurance of the king and his royal spouse![47] Though worn out with toil and hunger, they are still bearing the car!—The son of Bhrigu, notwithstanding the misery he caused to Kuçika and his queen, failed to mark any sign of dissatisfaction or agitation in them.'[48]

"Bhishma continued,—'The perpetuater of Bhrigu's race, beholding the king and the queen totally unmoved, began to

give away very largely (wealth obtained from the king's treasury) as if he were a second Lord of Treasures.[49] At this act also, king Kuçika showed no mark of dissatisfaction. He did as the Rishi commanded (in the matter of those gifts). Seeing all this, that illustrious and best of ascetics became delighted (with the royal couple).[50] Coming down from that excellent car, he unharnessed the royal couple. Having freed them, he addressed them duly.[51] Indeed, the son of Bhrigu, in a soft, deep, and delighted voice, said,—I am ready to give an excellent boon unto you both![52]—Delicate as they were, their bodies had been pierced with the goad. That best of ascetics, moved by affection, softly touched them with his hands whose healing virtues resembled those of nectar itself, O chief of the Bharatas.[53] Then the king answered,—Myself and my wife have felt no toil!—Indeed, all their fatigue had been dispelled through the puissance of the Rishi, and hence it was that the king could say so unto the Rishi.[54] Delighted with their conduct, the illustrious Chyavana said unto them,—I have never before spoken an untruth. It must, therefore, be as I have said.[55] This spot on the banks of Gangā is very delightful and auspicious. I shall, observant of a vow, dwell for a little while here, O king![56] Do thou return to thy city. Thou art fatigued! Thou shalt come again. Tomorrow, O king, thou shalt, returning with thy spouse, behold me even here![57] Thou shouldst not yield to wrath or grief. The time is come when thou shalt reap a great reward! That which is coveted by thee and which is in thy heart will verily be accomplished![58]—Thus addressed by the Rishi, king Kuçika, with a delighted heart, replied unto the Rishi in these words of grave import.[59]—I have cherished no wrath or grief, O highly blessed one! We have been cleansed and sanctified by thee, O holy one! We have once more become endued with youth. Behold, our bodies have become exceedingly beautiful and possessed of great strength.[60] I do not any longer see those wounds and cicatrices that were caused by thee on our persons with thy goad! Verily, with my spouse, I am in good health![61] I see my goddess become as beautiful in body as an Apsarā. Verily, she is endued with as much comeliness and splendour

as she had ever been before![62] All this, O great ascetic, is due to thy grace. Verily, there is nothing wonderful in all this, O holy Rishi of puissance ever unbaffled![63]—Thus addressed by the king, Chyavana said unto him,—Thou shalt, with thy spouse, return hither tomorrow, O monarch![64]—With these words, the royal sage Kuçika was dismissed. Saluting the Rishi, the monarch, endued with a handsome body, returned to his capital like unto a second chief of the celestials.[65] The counsellers then, with the priest, came out to receive him. His troops also and the dancing women and all his subjects, did the same.[66] Surrounded by them all, king Kuçika, blazing with beauty and splendour, entered his city, with a delighted heart, and his praises were hymned by bards and encomiasts.[67] Having entered his city and performed all his morning rites, he ate with his wife. Endued with great splendour, the monarch then passed the night happily.[68] Each beheld the other to be possessed anew of youth. All their afflictions and pains having ceased, they beheld each other to resemble a celestial. Endued with the splendour they had obtained as a boon from that foremost of Brāhmanas, and possessed as they were of forms that were exceedingly comely and beautiful, both of them passed a happy night in their bed.[69] Meanwhile, the spreader of the feats of Bhrigu's race, *viz.*, the Rishi possessed of wealth of penances, converted, by his Yoga-power, that delightful wood on the bank of Gangā into a retreat full of wealth of every kind and adorned with every variety of jewels and gems in consequence of which it surpassed in beauty and splendour the very abode of the chief of the celestials.' "[70]

Section LIV.

"Bhishma said,—'When that night passed away, the high-souled king Kuçika awoke and went through his morning rites. Accompanied by his wife he then proceeded towards that wood which the Rishi had selected for his residence.[1] Arrived there, the monarch saw a palatial mansion made entirely of gold. Possessed of a thousand columns each of which was made of gems and precious stones, it looked like an edifice belonging to

the Gandharvas.*[2] Kuçika beheld in every part of that structure evidences of celestial design. And he beheld hills with delightful valleys, and lakes with lotuses on their bosom ;[3] and mansions full of costly and curious articles, and gateways and arches, O Bhārata. And the king saw many open glades and open spots carpeted with grassy verdure, and resembling level fields of gold.[4] And he saw many Sahakāras adorned with blossoms, and Ketakas and Uddālakas, and Dhavas, and Açokas, and blossoming Kundas, and Atimuktas.[5] And he saw there many Champakas and Tilakas and Bhavyas and Panasas and Vyanjulas and Karnikāras adorned with flowers.[6] And the king beheld many Cyāmas and Vāranapushpas and the creepers called Astapadikā, all clipt properly and beautifully.†[7] And the king beheld trees on which lotuses of diverse varieties bloomed in all their beauty, and some of which bore flowers of every season. And he noticed also many mansions that looked like celestial cars or like beautiful mountains.[8] And at some places, O Bhārata, there were tanks and lakes full of cool

---

* The ever-changing beautiful masses of afternoon or evening clouds, presenting diverse kinds of forms almost every minute, are regarded as the abodes or mansions of the Gandharvas.—T.

† Some of these trees and creepers are identifiable. Sahakāra is Mangifera Indica, Linn. Ketaka is a variety of Pandanus Odoratissimus, Linn. Uddālaka is otherwise called Vahuvāra and sometimes Celu. It is the Cordia Myxa, Linn. It may be a misreading for Uddānaka, which is the well-known Cirisha or the Mimosa Sirissa of Roxburgh. Dhava is Conocarpus latifolia, Roxb. Açoka is Saraca Indica, Linn., *syn.* Jonesia Asoka, Roxb. Kunda is Jasminum pubescens, Linn. Atimukta is otherwise called Mādhavi. It is Gaertinera racemosa, Roxb. Champaka is Michelia Champaca, Linn. Tilaka sometimes stands for Lodhra, *i. e.*, Symplocos racemosa, Roxb. The word is sometimes used for the Açwattha or Ficus religiosa, Linn. Bhavya is Dillenia Indica, Linn. Panasa is Artocarpus integrifolia, Linn. The Indian Jack-tree. Vyanjula stands for the Açoka, also Vetasa (Indian cane), and also for Vakula, *i. e.*, Mimusops Elengi, Linn. Karnikāra is Pterospermum accrifolium, Linn. Cyāma is sometimes used for the Pilu, *i. e.*, Salvadora Persica, Linn. Vāranapushpa or Nāgapushpa or Punnāga is Colophyllum inophyllum, Linn. Ashtapadikā or pādikā is otherwise called Bhadravalli. It is the Vallaris dichotoma, Wall., Syn., Echites dichotoma, Roxb.—T.

water and at others were those that were full of warm or hot water. And there were diverse kinds of excellent seats and costly beds,[9] and bedsteads made of gold and gems and overlaid with cloths and carpets of great beauty and value. Of viands and edibles, there were enormous quantities, well-dressed and ready for use.[10] And there were talking parrots and she-parrots and Bhringarājas and Kokilas and Catapatras with Koyashtikas and Kukkubhas,[11] and peacocks and cocks and Dātyuhas and Jivajivakas and Chakoras and monkeys and swans and Sārasas and Chakravākas.*[12] Here and there he beheld bevies of rejoicing Apsarās and conclaves of happy Gandharvas, O monarch.[13] And he beheld other Gandharvas at other places rejoicing with their dear spouses. The king sometimes beheld these sights and sometimes could not see them (for they seemed to disappear from before his eyes).[14] The monarch heard also melodious strains of vocal music and the agreeable voices of preceptors engaged in lecturing their disciples on the Vedas and the scriptures. And the monarch also heard the harmonious cackle of the geese sporting in the lakes.[15] Beholding such exceedingly wonderful sights, the king began to reflect inwardly, saying,—Is this a dream? Or, is all this due to an aberration of my mind? Or, is it all real?[16] O, I have, without casting off my earthly tenement, attained to the beatitude of Heaven! This land is either the sacred country of the Uttara-Kurus, or the abode, called Amarāvati, of the chief of the celestials![17] O, what are these wonderful sights that I behold!—Reflecting in this strain, the monarch at last saw that foremost of Rishis.[18] In that palace of gold, endued with columns made of jewels and gems, the son of Bhrigu lay stretched on a costly and excellent bed.[19] With his wife by his side, the king approached, with a delighted heart, the Rishi

---

* Bhringarāja is the Lanius Malabaricus. Kokila is the well-known Indian Koel or cuckoo. Catapatra is the wood-pecker. Koyashtika is the Lapwing. Kukkubhas are wild cocks (Phasianus gallus). Dātyuhas are a variety of Chātakas or Gallinules. Their cry resembles the words 'phatik jal, phatik-jal). Jivajivaka is a species of partridges. Chakora is the Greek partridge. Sārasa is the Indian crane. Chakravāka is the Brahmini duck or goose.—T.

as he lay on that bed. Chyavana, however, quickly disappeared at this, with the bed itself upon which he lay.[20] The king then beheld the Rishi at another part of those woods, seated on a mat made of Kuça grass, and engaged in mentally reciting some high Mantras.[21] Through his Yoga-power, even thus did that Brāhmana stupefy the king. In a moment that delightful wood, those bevies of Apsarās, those bands of Gandharvas, those beautiful trees, all disappeared.[22] The bank of Gangā became as silent as usual, and presented the old aspect of its being covered with Kuça grass and anthills.[23] King Kuçika, with his wife, having beheld that highly wonderful sight and its quick disappearance also, became filled with amazement.[24] With a delighted heart, the monarch addressed his wife and said unto her,—Behold, O amiable one, the various agreeable scenes and sights, occurring nowhere else, which we two have just witnessed![25] All this is due to the grace of Bhrigu's son and the puissance of his penances. By penances all that becomes attainable which one cherishes in one's imagination.[26] Penances are superior to even the sovereignty of the three worlds. With penances well-performed, Emancipation itself may be achieved. Behold, the puissance of the high-souled and celestial Rishi Chyavana derived from his penances! He can, at his pleasure, create even other worlds (than those which exist).[27-28] Only Brāhmanas take birth in this world for attaining to speech and understanding and acts that are sacred. Who else than Chyavana could do all this?[29] Sovereignty may be acquired with ease. But the status of a Brāhmana is not attainable. It was through the puissance of a Brāhmana that we were harnessed to a car like well-broken animals![30]—These reflections that passed through the king's brain became known to Chyavana. Ascertaining the king's thoughts, the Rishi addressed him and said,—Come hither quickly![31]—Thus addressed, the king and the queen approached the great ascetic, and bending their heads they worshipped him who deserved worship.[32] Uttering a benediction upon the monarch, the Rishi, possessed of great intelligence, O chief of men, comforted the king and said,—Sit down on that seat![33]—After this, O monarch, the son of Bhrigu, without guile or

insincerity of any kind, gratified the king with many soft words, and then said,[34]—O king, thou hast completely subjugated the five organs of action and the five organs of knowledge with the mind as their sixth. Thou hast for this issued unscathed from the fiery ordeal I had prepared for thee ?[35] I have been properly honored and adored, O son, by thee, O foremost of all persons possessed of speech. Thou hast no sin, not even a minute one, in thee ![36] Give me leave, O king, for I shall now proceed to the place I came from. I have been exceedingly gratified with thee, O monarch ! Do thou accept the boon I am ready to give !'—[37]

" 'Kuçika said,—In thy presence, O holy one, I have staid like one staying in the midst of a fire. That I have not yet, O chief of Bhrigu's race, been consumed, is sufficient ![38] Even this is the highest boon that has been obtained, O delighter of Bhrigu ! That thou hast been gratified by me, O Brāhmana, and that I have succeeded in rescuing my race from destruction, O sinless one, constitute in my case the best boons.[39] This I regard, O learned Brāhmana, as a distinct evidence of thy grace. The end of my life has been accomplished. Even this is what I regard the very end of my sovereignty. Even this is the highest fruit of my penances ![*40] If, O learned Brāhmana, thou hast been pleased with me, O delighter of Bhrigu, then do thou expound some doubts which are in my mind !—' "[41]

Section LV.

" 'Chyavana said,—Do thou accept a boon from me. Do thou also, O chief of men, tell me what the doubt is that is in thy mind. I shall certainly accomplish all thy purposes.—[1]

" 'Kuçika said,—If thou hast been gratified with me, O holy one, do thou then, O son of Bhrigu, tell me thy object in residing in my palace for sometime, for I desire to hear it ! What was thy object in thy sleeping on the bed I assigned thee for

---

* In Verses 39 and 40 for 'asmi' and 'tāpaçchaitat' read 'asi' and 'tapasaçcha.'—T.

one and twenty days continuously, without changing sides.[2] O foremost of ascetics, what also was thy object, again, in going out of the room without speaking a single word?[3] Why didst thou, again, without any ostensible reason, make thyself invisible, and once more become visible? Why, O learned Brāhmana, didst thou again lay thyself down on the bed and sleep as before for one and twenty days?[4] For what reason didst thou go out after thou wert rubbed by us with oil in view of thy bath? Why also, after having caused diverse kinds of food in my palace to be collected, didst thou consume them with the aid of fire?[5] What was the cause of thy sudden journey through my city on the car? What object hadst thou in view in giving away so much wealth? What was thy motive in showing us the wonders of the forest created by thy Yoga-puissance?[6] What, indeed, was thy motive in showing, O great ascetic, so many palatial mansions made of gold and so many bed-steads supported on posts of jewels and gems?[7] Why also did all these wonders vanish from our sight? I wish to hear the cause of all this. Thinking of all these acts of thine, O perpetuater of Bhrigu's race, I became stupified repeatedly.[8] I fail to find what the certain motive was which influenced thee! O thou that art endued with wealth of penances, I wish to hear the truth about all those acts of thine, in detail!—[9]

"'Chyavana said,—Listen to me as I tell thee in detail the reasons which had impelled me in all these acts of mine. Asked by thee, O monarch, I cannot refuse to enlighten thee![10] In days past, on one occasion, when the deities had assembled together, the Grandsire Brahman said some words. I heard them, O king, and shall presently repeat them to thee.[11]—In consequence of a contention between Brāhmana and Kshatriya energy, there will occur an intermixture in my race.*—Thy grandson, O king, will become endued with great energy and puissance![12] Hearing this, I came hither, resolved to exterminate thy race. Indeed, I came, O Kuçika, seeking the utter

---

* The Grandsire spoke of somebody becoming a Kshatriya in Bhrigu's race, and referred to the incident as the result of a stain that would be communicated to that race from Kuçika's. This is the full allusion.—T.

extermination of thy race,—in fact, for consuming into ashes all thy descendants.[13] Impelled by this motive I came to thy palace, O monarch, and said unto thee,—I shall observe some vow. Do thou attend upon me and serve me dutifully![14]—While residing, however, in thy house I failed to find any laches in thee. It is for that reason, O royal sage, that thou art still alive, for otherwise thou wouldst have by this been numbered with the dead.[15] It was with this resolution that I slept for one and twenty days in the hope that somebody would awake me before I arose out of my own accord.[16] Thou, however, with thy wife, didst not awake me. Even then, O best of kings, I became delighted with thee.[17] Rising from my bed I went out of the chamber without accosting any of you. I did this, O monarch, in the hope that thou wouldst ask me and thus I would have an opportunity of cursing thee.[18] I then made myself invisible, and again showed myself in the room of thy palace, and once more betaking myself to Yoga slept for one and twenty days.[19] The motive that impelled me was this. Worn out with toil and hunger you two would be angry with me and do what would be unpleasant to me. It was from this intention that I caused thyself and thy spouse to be afflicted with hunger.[20] In thy heart, however, O king, the slightest feeling of wrath or vexation did not rise. For this, O monarch, I became highly delighted with thee.[21] When I caused diverse kinds of food to be brought and then set fire to them, I hoped that thyself with thy wife wouldst give way to wrath at the sight. Even that act, however, of mine was tolerated by thee![22] I then ascended the car, O monarch, and addressed thee, saying,—Do thou with thy wife bear me!—Thou didst what I bade,[23] without the least scruple, O king! I became filled with delight at this. The gifts of wealth I made could not provoke thy anger.[24] Pleased with thee, O king, I created with the aid of my Yoga-puissance that forest which thyself with thy wife didst behold here. Listen, O monarch, to the object I had.[25] For gratifying thee and thy queen I caused thee to have a glimpse of Heaven. All those things which thou hast seen in these woods, O monarch, are a foretaste of Heaven.[26] O best of kings, for a little while I

caused thee and thy spouse to behold, in even your earthly bodies, some sights of Heaven.[27] All this was done for showing the puissance of penances and the reward that is in store for righteousness. The desire that arose in thy heart, O monarch, at sight of those delightful objects, is known to me.[28] Thou becamest desirous of obtaining the status of a Brāhmana and the merit of penances, O lord of Earth, disregarding the sovereignty of the Earth, nay, the sovereignty of very Heaven![29] That which thou thoughtst, O king, was even this. The status of a Brāhmana is exceedingly difficult to obtain; having become a Brāhmana, it is exceedingly difficult to obtain the status of a Rishi; having become a Rishi it is difficult to become an ascetic![30]—I tell thee that thy desire will become gratified. From thee, O Kuçika, will spring a Brāhmana who shall be called after thy name. The person that will be the third in descent from thee shall attain to the status of a Brāhmana.[31] Through the energy of the Bhrigus, thy grandson, O monarch, will be an ascetic endued with the splendour of fire.[32] He shall always strike all men, indeed, the inhabitants of the three worlds, with fear. I tell thee the truth.[33] O royal sage, do thou accept the boon that is now in thy mind. I shall soon set out on a sojourn to all the sacred waters. Time is expiring!—[34]

" 'Kuçika said,—Even this, O great ascetic, is a high boon in my case, for thou hast been gratified with me! Let that take place which thou hast said! Let my grandson become a Brāhmana, O sinless one![35] Indeed, let the status of Brāhmanahood attach to my race, O holy one. This is the boon I ask for! I desire to once more ask thee in detail, O holy one![36] In what way, O delighter of Bhrigu, will the status of Brāhmanahood attach to my race? Who will be my friend? Who will have my affection and respect?*—' "[37]

---

* The sense seems to be that Kuçika wishes to know what person of Bhrigu's race will confer this high benefit upon his race.—T.

Section LVI.

"'Chyavana said,—I should certainly, O chief of men, tell you everything about the circumstance for which, O monarch, I came hither for exterminating thy race.[1] This is well-known O king, that the Kshatriyas should always have the assistance of the sons of Bhrigu in the matter of sacrifices. Through an irresistible decree of destiny, the Kshatriyas and the Bhārgavas will fall out.[2] The Kshatriyas, O king, will slay all the descendants of Bhrigu. Afflicted by an ordinance of fate, they will exterminate the race of Bhrigu, not sparing even infants in their mothers' wombs.[3] There will then spring in Bhrigu's race a Rishi of the name of Urva. Endued with great energy, he will in splendour certainly resemble fire or the sun.[4] He will cherish such wrath (upon hearing of the extermination of his race) as will be sufficient to consume the three worlds. He will be competent to reduce the whole Earth with all her mountains and forests into ashes.[5] For a little while he will quell the flames of that firy rage, throwing it into the Mare's mouth that wanders through the ocean.[6] He will have a son of the name of Richika. The whole science of arms, O sinless one, in its embodied form, will come to him,[7] for the extermination of the entire Kshatriya race, through a decree of Destiny. Receiving that science by inward light, he will, by Yoga-puissance, communicate it to his son, the highly blessed Jamadagni of cleansed soul. That tiger of Bhrigu's race will bear that science in his mind.[8-9] O thou of righteous soul, Jamadagni will wed a girl, taking her from thy race, for spreading its glory, O chief of the Bharatas.[10] Having obtained for wife the daughter of Gādhi and thy grand-daughter, O king, that great ascetic will beget a regenerate son endued with Kshatriya accomplishments.[11] In thy race will be born a son, a Kshatriya endued with the virtues of a Brāhmana. Possessed of great righteousness, he will be the son of Gādhi. Known by the name of Viçwāmitra, he will in energy come to be regarded as the equal of Vrihaspati himself, the preceptor of the celestials.[12] The illustrious Richika will grant this son to thy

race, this Kshatriya that will be endued with high penances. In the matter of this exchange of sons, (*viz.*, a Kshatriya son in the race of Bhrigu and a Brāhmana son in thy race), the cause will be two women.[13] All this will happen at the command of the Grandsire. It will never be otherwise. Unto one that is third in descent from thee, the status of Brāhmanahood will attach. Thou shalt become a relative (by marriage) of the Bhārgavas !—'[14]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of the high-souled ascetic Chyavana, king Kuçika became filled with joy, and made answer in the following words.[15] Indeed, O best of the Bharatas, he said,—So be it !—Endued with high energy, Chyavana once more addressed the king,[16] and urged him to accept a boon from himself. The king replied,—Very well. From thee, O great ascetic, I shall obtain the fruition of my wish.[17] Let my race become invested with the status of Brāhmanahood, and let it always set its heart upon righteousness !—The ascetic Chyavana, thus solicited, granted the king's prayer,[18] and bidding farewell to the monarch, set out on his intended sojourn to tho sacred waters. I have now told thee everything, O Bhārata, relating to thy questions,[19] *viz.*, how the Bhrigus and the Kuçikas became connected with each other by marriage. Indeed, O king, everything fell out as the Rishi Chyavana had said. The birth of Rāma (of Bhrigu's race) and of Viçwāmitra (of Kuçika's race) happened in the way that Chyavana had indicated.' "[20]

Section LVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Hearing thy words I become stupefied O grandsire ! Reflecting that the Earth is now destitute of a very large number of kings all of whom were possessed of great prosperity, my heart becomes filled with grief.[1] Having conquered the Earth and acquired kingdoms numbered by hundreds, O Bharata, I turn with grief, O grandsire, at the thought of the millions of men I have slaughtered.[2] Alas, what will the plight be of those foremost ladies who have been deprived by us of husbands and sons and maternal uncles and brothers ?[3]

Having slain those Kurus,—our kinsmen, that is, and our friends and well-wishers,—we shall have to sink in hell with heads hanging downwards. There is no doubt of this.[4] I desire, O Bhārata. to address my body to severe penances. With that end in view, O king, I wish to receive instructions from thee.' "[5]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"The high-souled Bhishma, hearing these words of Yudhishthira, reflected upon them acutely with the aid of his understanding, and addressed Yudhishthira in reply.[6]

"Bhishma said,—'Hear what I say unto thee. It is exceedingly wonderful and constitutes a great mystery. The subject is the ends that creatures obtain after death as the rewards of particular acts or courses of conduct they follow.[7] One attains to Heaven by penances. By penances one attains to fame. By penances, O puissant king, one attains to length of life and all articles of enjoyment.[8] By penances one attains to knowledge, to science, to health and freedom from disease, beauty of person, prosperity, and blessedness, O chief of Bharata's race.[9] By penances one attains to wealth. By observing the vow of taciturnity one succeeds in bringing the whole world under one's sway. By making gifts one acquires all kinds of enjoyable articles. By observing the rite of Dikshā one acquires birth in a good and high family.[10] Those that spend their lives subsisting upon only fruits and roots (and avoiding cooked food) succeed in obtaining kingdom and sovereignty. Those that live upon the leaves of plants and trees as their food succeed in attaining to Heaven.[11] One that subsists upon water only attains to Heaven. By making gifts one simply increases one's wealth. By serving with reverence one's preceptor, one acquires learning. By performing Crāddhas every day in honor of one's Pitris, one acquires a large number of children.[12] By observing Dikshā upon potherbs and vegetables, one acquires a large number of kine. Those that subsist upon grass and straw succeed in attaining to Heaven. By bathing thrice every day with the necessary rites, one acquires a large number of spouses. By drinking the air alone, one acquires residence in the regions of Prajāpati.[13] The Brāhmana who bathes every day and recites sacred Mantras in the two twilights, becomes possessed

of the status of Daksha himself. By worshipping the deities in a wilderness or desert, one acquires a kingdom or sovereignty, and by observing the vow of casting off the body by a long fast, one ascends to heaven.[14] One possessed of wealth of penances and always passing his days in Yoga obtains good beds and seats and vehicles. Casting off the body by entering a blazing fire, one becomes an object of reverence in the region of Brahman.[15] Those that lie on the hard and bare ground acquire houses and beds. Those that clothe themselves in rags and barks obtain good robes and ornaments.[16] By avoiding the several agreeable tastes one succeeds in acquiring great prosperity. By abstaining from meat and fish, one gets long-lived children.[17] One who passes sometime in that mode of life which is called Udavāsa, becomes the very lord of Heaven. The man who speaks the truth, O best of men, succeeds in sporting happily with the deities themselves.[18] By making gifts one acquires great fame in consequence of one's high achievements. By abstention from cruelty one acquires health and freedom from disease. By serving the Brāhmanas with reverence one attains to kingdom and sovereignty, and the high status of a Brāhmana.[19] By making gifts of water and other drinks, one acquires eternal fame in consequence of high achievements. By making gifts of food one acquires diverse articles of enjoyment.[20] One who gives peace unto all creatures, (by refraining to do them any injury), becomes freed from every region. By serving the deities one obtains a kingdom and celestial beauty.[21] By presenting lights at places which are dark and frequented by men, one acquires a good vision. By giving away good and beautiful objects one acquires a good memory and understanding.[22] By giving away scents and garlands, one acquires fame that spreads over a large area. Those who abstain from shaving off their hair and beards succeed in obtaining excellent children.[23] By observing fasts and Dikshā and baths, O Bhārata, for twelve years (according to the ordinance), one acquires a region that is superior to that attainable by unreturning heroes.[24] By bestowing one's daughter on an eligible bridegroom according to the Brahma form, one obtains, O best of men, male and female slaves and ornaments and fields

and houses.[25] By performing sacrifices and observing fasts, one ascends to Heaven, O Bhārata. The man who gives away fruits and flowers succeeds in acquiring auspicious knowledge.[26] The man who gives away a thousand kine with horns adorned with gold, succeeds in acquiring Heaven. Even this has been said by the very deities in a conclave in Heaven.[27] One who gives away a Kapilā cow with her calf, with a brazen pot for milking, with horns adorned with gold, and possessed of diverse other accomplishments, obtains the fruition of all his wishes from that cow.[28] Such a person, in consequence of that act of gift, resides in heaven for as many years as there are hairs on the body of the cow and rescues in the next world (from the misery of hell) his sons and grandsons and all his race to the seventh degree.*[29] The regions of the Vasus become attainable to that man who gives away a cow with horns beautifully decorated with gold, accompanied with a brazen jar for milking, along with a piece of cloth embroidered with gold, a measure of sesame and a sum of money as Dakshinā.[30] A gift of kine rescues the giver in the next world when he finds himself falling into the deep darkness of hell and restrained by his own acts in this world, like a boat with sails that have caught the air rescuing a person drowning in the sea.[31] He who bestows a daughter according to the Brahma form upon an eligible person, or who makes a gift of land unto a Brāhmana, or who gives food (to a Brāhmana) according to due rites, succeeds in attaining to the region of Purandara.[32] That man who makes the gift of a house, equipt with every kind of furniture, unto a Brāhmana given to Vedic studies and possessed of every accomplishment and good behaviour, acquires residence in the country of the Uttara-Kurus.[33] By making gifts of draft bullocks, a person acquires the region of the Vasus. Gift of gold leads to Heaven. Gift of pure gold leads to greater merit still.[34] By making gift of an umbrella one acquires a palatial mansion. By making gift of a pair of sandals or shoes one acquires good vehicles. The reward attached to gift of

* Ancestors to the seventh degree as also descendants to the same degree are meant —T.

cloths is personal beauty, and by making gifts of scents one becomes of a fragrant person in one's next life.[35] One who gives flowers and fruits and plants and trees unto a Brāhmana, acquires, without any labour, a palatial mansion equipt with beautiful women and full of plenty of wealth.[36] The giver of food and drink of different tastes and other articles of enjoyment succeeds in acquiring a copious supply of such articles. The giver, again, of houses and cloths gets articles of a similar kind. There is no doubt in this.[37] That person who makes gifts of garlands and incense and scents and unguents and the articles needed by men after a bath, and floral wreaths, unto Brāhmanas, becomes freed from every disease and, possessed of personal beauty, sports in joy in the region reserved for great kings.[38] That man, O king, who makes unto a Brāhmana the gift of a house that is stored with grain, furnished with beds, full of much wealth, auspicious, and delightful, acquires a palatial residence.[39] He who gives unto a Brāhmana a good bed perfumed with fragrant scents, overlaid with an excellent sheet, and equipt with pillows, wins without any effort on his part a beautiful wife, belonging to a high family and of agreeable manners.[40] The man who takes to a hero's bed on the field of battle becomes the equal of the Grandsire Brahman himself. There is no end that is higher than this. Even this is what the great Rishis have declared.' "[41]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of his grandfather, Yudhishthira, the delighter of the Kurus, became desirous of the end that is reserved for heroes and no longer expressed any disgust for leading a house-holder's mode of life.[42] Then, O foremost of men, Yudhishthira, addressing all the other sons of Pāndu, said unto them,—'Let the words which our grandfather has said command your faith![43]—At this, all the Pāndavas with the famous Draupadi amongst them, applauded the words of Yudhishthira and said 'yes.' "[44]

Section LVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I desire, O chief of the Bharatas, to hear from thee what the rewards are that are attached, O best

of the Kurus, to the planting of trees and the digging of tanks.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'A piece of land that is agreeable to the sight, fertile, situate in the midst of delightful scenes adorned with diverse kinds of metals, and inhabited by all sorts of creatures, is regarded as the foremost of spots.[2] A particular portion of such land should be selected for digging a tank. I shall tell thee, in due order, the different kinds of tanks. I shall also tell thee what the merits also are that attach to the digging of tanks (with the view of raising water for the benefit of all creatures).[3] The man who causes a tank to be dug becomes entitled to the respect and worship of the three worlds.[4] A tank full of water is as agreeable and beneficial as the house of a friend. It is gratifying to Surya himself. It also contributes to the growth of the deities. It is the foremost of all things that lead to fame (in respect of the person who causes it to be excavated).[5] The wise have said that the excavation of a tank contributes to the aggregate of three, Righteousness, Wealth and Pleasure. A tank is said to be properly excavated, if it is made on a piece of land that is inhabited by respectable persons. A tank is said to be subservient to all the four purposes of living creatures. Tanks, again, are regarded as constituting the excellent beauty of a country.[6-7] The deities and human beings and Gandharvas and Pitris and Uragas and Rākshasas and even immobile beings, all resort to a tank full of water as their refuge.[8] I shall, therefore, tell thee what the merits are that have been said by great Rishis to be attached to tanks, and what the rewards are that are attainable by persons that cause them to be excavated.[9] The wise have said that that man reaps the merit of an Agnihotra sacrifice in whose tank water is held in the season of rains.[10] The high reward in the world that is reaped by the person who makes a gift of a thousand kine is won by that man in whose tank water is held in the season of autumn.[11] That person in whose tank water occurs in the cold season acquires the merit that is his who performs a sacrifice with plentiful gifts of gold.[12] That person in whose tank water occurs in the season of dew, wins, the wise have said, the merits of an Agnishtoma sacrifice.[13]

That man in whose well-made tank water occurs in the season of spring acquires the merit of the Atirātra sacrifice.[14] That man in whose tank water occurs in the season of summer acquires, the Rishis say, the merits that attach to a horse-sacrifice.[15] That man rescues all his race in whose tank kine are seen to allay their thirst and from which righteous men draw their water.[16] That man in whose tank kine slake their thirst as also other animals and birds, and human beings, acquires the merits of a horse-sacrifice.[17] Whatever measure of water is drunk from one's tank and whatever measure is taken therefrom by others for purposes of bathing, all become stored for the benefit of the excavater of the tank and he enjoys the same for unending days in the next world.[18] Water, especially in the other world, is difficult to obtain, O son. A gift of drink produces eternal happiness.[19] Make gifts of sesame here. Make gifts of water. Do thou also give lamps (for lighting dark places)! While alive and awake, do thou sport in happiness with kinsmen. These are acts which thou shalt not be able to achieve in the other world.*[20] The gift of drink, O chief of men, is superior to every other gift. In point of merit, it is distinguished above all other gifts. Therefore, do thou make gifts of water.[21] Even thus have the Rishis declared what the high merits are of the excavation of tanks. I shall now discourse to thee on the planting of trees.[22] Of immobile objects, six classes have been spoken. They are Vrikshas, Gulmas, Latās, Vallis, Twaksāras, and Trinas of diverse kinds.†[23] These are the several kinds of vegetables. Listen now to the merit that attaches to their planting. By planting trees one acquires fame in the world of men and auspicious rewards in the world hereafter.[24] Such a man is applauded and reverenced in the

---

* Heaven and Hell are places of only enjoyment and endurance. There can be no acts there leading to merit or demerit. This world is the only place which is called the field of acts.—T.

† Vrikshas are large or small trees generally. Gulma is a shrub, or bushy plant. Latā is a creeper, which cannot grow without a support. Valli is of the same variety, with this difference, perhaps, that their stems are more tree-like than those of creepers. Twaksāra is the Bamboo, Trina includes all kinds of grass.—T.

world of the Pitris. Such a man's name does not perish even when he becomes a denizen of the world of deities.[25] The man who plants trees rescues the ancestors and descendants of both his paternal and maternal lines. Do thou, therefore, plant trees, O Yudhishthira![26] The trees that a man plants become the planter's children. There is no doubt in this. Departing from this world, such a man ascends to Heaven. Verily, many eternal regions of bliss become his.[27] Trees gratify the deities by their flowers; the Pitris by their fruits; and all guests and strangers by the shadow they afford.[28] Kinnaras and Uragas and Rākshasas and deities and Gandharvas and human beings, as also Rishis, all have recourse to trees as their refuge.[29] Trees that bear flowers and fruits gratify all men. The planter of trees is rescued in the next world by the trees he plants like children rescuing their own father.[30] Therefore, the man that is desirous of achieving his own good, should plant trees by the side of tanks and cherish them like his own children. The trees that a man plants are, according to both reason and the scriptures, the children of the planter.[31] That Brāhmana who excavates a tank, and he that plants trees, and he that performs sacrifices, are all worshipped in Heaven even as men that are devoted to truthfulness of speech.[32] Hence, one should cause tanks to be excavated and trees to be planted, worship the deities in diverse sacrifices, and speak the truth.'"[33]

Section LIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Amongst all those gifts that are mentioned in the treatises other than the Vedas, which gift, O chief of Kuru's race, is the most distinguished, in thy opinion?[1] O puissant one, great is the curiosity that I feel in respect of this matter. Do thou discourse to me of also that gift which follows the giver into the next world.'*[2]

"Bhishma said,—'An assurance unto all creatures of love

---

* The Commentator explains that the drift of Yudhishthira's question is this: the giver and the receiver do not meet in the next world. How then can an object given away return or find its way back to the giver in the next world or next life?—T.

and affection and abstention from every kind of injury, acts of kindness and favor done to a person in distress, gifts of articles made unto one that solicits with thirst and agreeable to the solicitor's wishes,[3] and whatever gifts are made without the giver's ever thinking of them as gifts made by him, constitute, O chief of Bharata's race, the highest and best of gifts.[4] Gift of gold, gift of kine, and gift of earth,—these are regarded as sin-cleansing. They rescue the giver from his evil acts.[5] O chief of men, do thou always make such gifts unto those that are righteous. Without doubt, gifts rescue the giver from all his sins.[6] That person who wishes to make his gifts eternal should always give unto persons possessed of the requisite qualifications whatever articles are desired by all and whatever things are the best in his house.[7] The man who makes gifts of agreeable things and who does to others what is agreeable to others, always succeeds in obtaining things that are agreeable to himself. Such a person certainly becomes agreeable unto all, both here and hereafter.[8] That man, O Yudhishthira, is a cruel wretch, who, through vanity, does not, to the extent of his means, attend to the wishes of one that is poor and helpless and that solicits assistance.*[9] He is verily the foremost of men who shows favour unto even an helpless enemy fallen into distress when such enemy presents himself and prays for help.[10] No man is equal to him (in merit) who gratifies the hunger of a person that is emaciated, possessed of learning, destitute of the means of support, and weakened by misery.[11] One should always, O son of Kuṇti, dispel by every means in one's power, the distress of righteous persons observant of vows and acts, who, though destitute of sons and spouses and plunged into misery, do not yet solicit others for any kind of assistance.[12] Those persons who do not utter blessings upon the deities and men (in expectation of gifts), who are deserving of reverence and always contented, and who subsist upon such alms as they get without solicitation of any kind,[13] are regarded as veritable snakes of virulent poison. Do thou, O Bhārata, always protect thyself from them by making gifts unto them.

---

* 'Abhimānāt' is understood by the Commentator differently.—T

They are competent to make the foremost of Ritwijas. Thou art to find them out by means of thy spies and agents.*[14] Thou shouldst honor those men by gifts of good houses equipt with every necessary article, with slaves and serving men, with good robes and vestments, O son of Kuru, and with all articles competent to contribute to one's pleasure and happiness.[15] Righteous men of righteous deeds should make such gifts, impelled by the motive that it is their duty to act in that way and not from desire of reaping any rewards therefrom. Verily, good men should act in this way so that the virtuous men described above might not, O Yudhishthira, feel any disinclination to accept those gifts sanctified by devotion and faith.[16] There are persons bathed in learning and bathed in vows. Without depending upon anybody they obtain their means of subsistence. These Brāhmanas of rigid vows are devoted to Vedic study and penances without proclaiming their practices to any one.[17] Whatever gifts thou mayst make unto those persons of pure behaviour, of thorough mastery over their senses, and always contented with their own wedded spouses in the matter of desire, are sure to win for thee a merit that will accompany thee in all the worlds into which thou mayst go.[18] One reaps the same merit by making gifts unto regenerate persons of restrained souls which one wins by properly pouring libations unto the sacred fire morning and evening.[19] Even this is the sacrifice spread out for thee,—a sacrifice that is sanctified by devotion and faith and that is endued with Dakshinā! It is distinguished above all other sacrifices. Let that sacrifice ceaselessly flow from thee as thou givest away![†][20] Performed in view of such men, O Yudhishtira, a sacrifice in which the water that is sprinkled for dedicating gifts constitutes the oblations in honor of the Pitris, and devotion and worship rendered unto such

---

* 'Yuktaih' is the better reading, although 'muktaih' may not be erroneous. 'Yuktaih' is 'chāraih'; while 'muktaih' is 'men charged or commissioned to do a thing.—T.

† This sacrifice is the sacrifice of gifts. 'Spreading out a sacrifice' means 'spreading out the articles and placing them in proper order in view of the sacrifice.' 'Dadatah vartatām' means 'dātustāva sarvadāstu.'—T.

superior men, serves to free one of the debts one owes to the deities.*[21] Those persons that do not yield to wrath and that never desire to take even a blade of grass belonging to others, as also they that are of agreeable speech, deserve to receive from us the most reverent worship.[22] Such persons and others (because free from desire) never pay their regards to the giver. Nor do they strive for obtaining gifts. They should, however, be cherished by givers as they cherish their own sons. I bend my head unto them. From them also both Heaven and Hell may become one's.†[23] Ritwijas and Purohitas and preceptors, when conversant with the Vedas and when behaving mildly towards disciples, become such. Without doubt, Kshatriya energy loses its force upon a Brāhmana when it encounters him.[24] Thinking that thou art a king, that thou art possessed of great power, and that thou hast affluence, do not, O Yudhishthira, enjoy thy affluence without giving anything unto the Brāhmanas.[25] Observing the duties of thy own order, do thou worship the Brāhmanas with whatever wealth thou hast, O sinless one, for purposes of adornment or sustaining thy power.[26] Let the Brāhmanas live in whatever way they like. Thou shouldst always bend thy head unto them with reverence. Let them always rejoice in thee as thy children, living happily and according to their wishes.[27] Who else than thou, O best of the Kurus, is competent to provide the means of subsistence for such Brāhmanas as are endued with eternal contentment, as are thy well-wishers, and as are gratified with only a little ?[28] As women have one eternal duty, in this world, *viz.*, dependence upon and the

---

* The sense is this : gifts made to such superior Brāhmanas serve to free a person from the debts which he owes to the deities. 'The water of gifts' means the water that the giver sprinkles, with a blade of Kuça grass, over the article given away, saying,—I give this away. In the sacrifice constituted by gifts, such water is like the dedication of offerings to the Pitris. A knowledge of the ritual of srcrifice is needed to understand and apareciate the figures employed in such Verses.—T.

† Some texts read 'tathābhayam,' meaning 'abhayam' or fearlessness is from them. 'Tathobhayam' (which I adopt) is that both Heaven and Hell become one's through them. If gratified, they bestow Heaven ; if angry, they hurl to Hell.—T.

obedient service of their husbands, and as such duty constitutes their only end, even so is the service of Brāhmanas our eternal duty and end.[29] If at sight of cruelties and other sinful acts in Kshatriyas, the Brāhmanas, O son, unhonored by us, forsake us all,[30] I say, of what use would life be to us, in the absence of all contact with the Brāhmanas, especially as we shall then have to drag on our existence without being able to study the Vedas, to perform sacrifices, to hope for worlds of bliss hereafter, and to achieve great feats?[31] I shall, in this connection, tell thee what the eternal usage is. In days of yore, O king, the Kshatriyas used to serve the Brāhmanas.[32] The Vaiçya in a similar manner used in those days to worship the royal order, and the Cudra to worship the Vaiçya. Even this is what is heard. The Brāhmana was like a blazing fire. Without being able to touch him or approach his presence, the Cudra used to serve the Brāhmana from a distance.[33] It was only the Kshatriya and the Vaiçya who could serve the Brāamana by touching his person or approaching his presence. The Brāhmanas are endued with a mild disposition. They are truthful in behaviour. They are followers of the true religion.[34] When angry, they are like snakes of virulent poison. Such being their nature, do thou, O Yudhishthira, serve and attend upon them with obedience and reverence. The Brāhmanas are superior to even those that are higher than the high and the low.[35] The energy and penances of even those Kshatriyas who blaze forth with energy and might, become powerless and neutralised when they come in contact with the Brāhmanas.[36] My sire himself is not dearer to me than the Brāhmanas. My mother is not dearer to me than they. My grandsire, O king, is not dearer, my own self is not dearer, my life itself is not dearer, O king, to me than the Brāhmanas![37] On Earth there is nothing, O Yudhisthira, that is dearer to me than thou. But, O chief of Bharata's race, the Brāhmanas are dearer to me than even thou.[38] I tell thee truly, O son of Pāndu! I swear by this truth, by which I hope to acquire all those regions of bliss that have been Cāntanu's.[39] I behold those sacred regions with Brahma shining conspicuously before them. I shall repair thither, O son, and reside in them for unending days.[40] Behold-

ing these regions, O best of the Bharatas, (with my spiritual eyes), I am filled with delight at the thought of all these acts which I have done in aid and honor of the Brāhmanas, O monarch !' "[41]

Section LX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Unto which of two Brāhmanas, when both happen to be equally pure in behaviour, equally possessed of learning and purity, of birth and blood, but differing from each other in only this, *viz.*, the one solicits and the other does not,—I ask, O grandsire, unto which of these two would a gift be more meritorious ?[1]

"Bhishma said,—'It has been said, O son of Prithā, that a gift made unto an unsoliciting person is productive of greater merit than one made to a person who solicits. One possessed of contentment is certainly more deserving than that person who is destitute of that virtue and is, therefore, helpless amidst the storms and buffets of the world.[2] The firmness of a Kshatriya consists in the protection he gives to others. The firmness of a Brāhmana consists in his refusal to solicit. The Brāhmana possessed of steadiness and learning and contentment gladdens the deities.[3] The wise have said that an act of solicitation on the part of a poor man is a great reproach. Those persons that solicit others are said to annoy the world like theives and robbers.*[4] The person who solicits is said to meet with death. The giver, however, is said not to meet with death. The giver is said to grant life unto him who solicits. By an act of gift, O Yudhishthira, the giver is said to rescue his own self also.[5] Compassion is a very high virtue. Led by compassion people make gifts unto those that solicit. Those, however, that do not

---

* 'Yāchyam' is 'yāchanārupam karma' 'Aniçasya' is 'daridrasya.' 'Abhihāram' is 'tirashkāram.' 'Yāchanti bhutāni' means those who beg or solicit. In the Cānti Parva, Bhishma in one place directs beggars to be driven away from towns and cities as annoyers of respectable people. This, however, applies to professional beggars, and not persons in real distress.—T.

beg but are plunged into poverty and distress should be respectfully invited for receiving assistance.[6] If such Brāhmanas, who must be regarded as the foremost of their order, live in thy kingdom, thou shouldst regard them as fire covered with ashes.[7] Blazing with penances, they are capable of consuming the whole Earth. Such persons, O son of Kuru's race, though not generally worshipped, should still be regarded as deserving of worship in every way.[8] Endued with knowledge and spiritual vision and penances and Yoga, such persons always deserve our worship. O scorcher of foes, do thou always offer worship unto such Brāhmanas.[9] One should repair of one's own accord unto those foremost of Brāhmanas that do not solicit anybody and make gifts unto them of diverse kinds of wealth in abundance. The merit that flows from properly pouring libations on the sacred fire every morning and evening is won by the person who makes gifts unto a Brāhmana endued with learning, with the Vedas, and with high and excellent vows.[10] Thou shouldst, O son of Kunti, invite those foremost of Brāhmanas who are cleansed by learning and the Vedas and vows, who live in independence, whose Vedic studies and penances are concealed without being proclaimed from the house top, and who are observant of excellent vows, and honor them with gifts of well-constructed and delightful houses equipt with servitors and robes and furniture, and with all other articles of pleasure and enjoyment.[11-12] Conversant with all duties and possessed of minute vision, those foremost of Brāhmanas, O Yudhishthira, may accept the gifts offered to them with devotion and respect, thinking that they should not refuse and disappoint the giver.[13] Thou shouldst invite those Brāhmanas whose wives wait for their return like tillers in expectation of rain. Having fed them well, thou shouldst make gifts of additional food unto them so that upon their return home their expectant wives might be able to distribute that food among their children that had clamoured for food but that had been pacified with promises.*[14] Brahmachārins of restrained senses, O son, by eating at one's house in the forenoon, cause the three sacrificial fires to be

* I expand this Verse to make the sense intelligible.—T.

gratified with the householder at whose house they eat.[15] Let the sacrifice of gift proceed in thy house at midday, O son, and do thou also give away kine and gold and robes (unto thy guests after feeding them well). By conducting thyself in this way), thou art sure to gratify the chief of the celestials himself.[16] That would constitute thy third sacrifice, O Yudhishthira, in which offerings are made unto the deities, the Pitris, and the Brāhmanas. By such sacrifice thou art sure to gratify the Viçwedevas.[17] Let compassion unto all creatures, giving unto all creatures what is due unto them, restraining the senses, renunciation, steadiness, and truth, constitute the final bath of that sacrifice which is constituted by gift.[18] Even this is the sacrifice that is spread out for thee,—a sacrifice that is sanctified by devotion and faith, and that has a large Dakshinā attached to it. This sacrifice which is constituted by gift is distinguished above all other sacrifices. O son, let this sacrifice be always performed by thee!' "[19]

Section LXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I wish to know in detail, O Bhārata, where one meets with the high rewards of gifts and sacrifices. Are those rewards earned here or are they to come hereafter? Which amongst these two (*viz.*, Gift and Sacrifice) is said to be productive of superior merit? Unto whom should gifts be made? In what manner are gifts and sacrifices to be made? When also are they to be made? I ask thee this, O learned sire! Do thou discourse to me on the duty of gifts![1-2] Do tell me, O grandsire, what leads to the highest reward, *viz.*, gifts made from the sacrificial platform or those made out of that place?'*[3]

"Bhishma said,—'O son, a Kshatriya is generally employed in deeds of fierceness. In his case, sacrifices and gifts are regarded as cleansing or sanctifying him.[4] They that are good and righteous, do not accept the gifts of persons of the royal

---

* 'Antarvedyam' is 'within the platform;' and 'Anriçamsyatah' is 'vahirvedyām' or outside the platform.—T.

order, who are wedded to sinful acts. For this reason, the king should perform sacrifices with abundant gifts in the form of Dakshinā.*[5] If the good and righteous would accept the gifts made unto them, the Kshatriya, O monarch, should incessantly make gifts with devotion and faith unto them. Gifts are productive of great merit, and are highly cleansing.[6] Observant of vows, one should perform sacrifices and gratify with wealth such Brāhmanas as are friends of all creatures, possessed of righteousness, conversant of the Vedas, and pre-eminent for acts, conduct, and penances.[7] If such Brāhmanas do not accept thy gifts, no merit will become thine. Do thou perform sacrifices with copious Dakshinā, and make gifts of good and agreeable food unto those that are righteous.[8] By making an act of gift thou shouldst regard thyself as performing a sacrifice. Thou shouldst, with gifts, adore those Brāhmanas who perform sacrifices. By doing this thou wilt acquire a share in the merits of those sacrifices of theirs.[9] Thou shouldst support such Brāhmanas as are possessed of children and as are capable of sending people to heaven. By conducting thyself in this way thou art sure to get a large progeny,—in fact, as large a progeny as the Prajāpati himself.[10] They that are righteous support and advance the cause of all righteous acts. One should, by giving up one's all, support such men as also those that do good unto all creatures.[11] Thyself being in the enjoyment of affluence, do thou, O Yudhishthira, make gifts unto Brāhmanas of kine and bullocks and food and umbrellas and robes and sandals or shoes.[12] Do thou give unto sacrificing Brāhmanas clarified butter as also food, and cars and vehicles with horses harnessed thereto, and dwelling houses and mansions, and beds.[13] Such gifts are fraught with prosperity and affluence to the giver, and are regarded as pure, O Bhārata. Those Brāhmanas that are not censurable for anything they do, and that have no means of support assigned to them, should be searched out.[14] Covertly or publicly, do thou cherish such Brāhmanas by assigning them the means of support. Such conduct always confers higher benefit upon Kshatriyas than the

* Sacrifices are a means of giving away unto the Brāhmanas.—T.

Rājasuya and the Horse-sacrifices.[15] Cleansing thyself of sin, thou art sure of attaining to Heaven. Filling thy treasury thou shouldst do good to thy kingdom.[16] By such conduct thou art sure to win much wealth and become a Brāhmana (in thy next life). Do thou, O Bhārata, protect thy own means (of support and of doing acts of righteousness) as also the means of other people's subsistence.[17] Do thou support thy servants as thy own children. Do thou, O Bhārata, protect the Brāhmanas in the enjoyment of what they have and make gifts unto them of such articles as they have not.[18] Let thy life be devoted to the purposes of the Brāhmanas. Let it never be said that thou dost not grant protection unto the Brāhmanas. Much wealth or affluence, when possessed by a Brāhmana ; becomes a source of evil to him.[19] Constant association with affluence and prosperity is certain to fill him with pride and cause him to be stupefied (in respect of his true duties). If the Brāhmanas become stupefied and steeped in folly, righteousness and duties are sure to suffer destruction. Without doubt, if righteousness and duty come to an end, it will lead to the destruction of all creatures.[20] That king who having amassed wealth makes it over (for safe keep) to his treasury officers and guards, and then commences to again plunder his kingdom, saying unto his officers,—Do ye bring me as much wealth as you can extort from the kingdom![21]—and who spends the wealth that is thus collected at his command under circumstances of fear and cruelty, in the performance of sacrifices, should know that those sacrifices of his are never applauded by the righteous.[22] The king should perform sacrifices with such wealth as is willingly paid into his treasury by prosperous and unpersecuted subjects. Sacrifices should never be performed with wealth earned with severity and exortion.[23] The king should then perform great sacrifices with large presents in the shape of Dakshinā, when in consequence of his being devoted to the good of his subjects the latter bathe him with copious showers of wealth brought willingly by them for the purpose.[24] The king should protect the wealth of those that are old, of those that are minors, of those that are blind, and of those that are otherwise disqualified. The king should never take any wealth from his people,

if they, in a season of drought, succeed in growing any corn with the aid of water obtained from wells. Nor should he take any wealth from weeping women.*[25] The wealth taken from the poor and the helpless is sure to destroy the kingdom and the prosperity of the king. The king should always make gifts unto the righteous of all enjoyable articles in abundance. He should certainly dispel the fear of famishing which those men may have.†[26] There are no men more sinful than those upon whose food children look with wistfulness without being able to eat them duly.[27] If within thy kingdom any learned Brāhmana languishes with hunger like any of those children, thou shalt then incur the sin of fœticide for having allowed such an act.[28] King Civi himself had said this, *viz.*,—Fie on that king in whose kingdom a Brāhmana or even any other man languishes in hunger![29]—That kingdom in which a Brāhmana of the Snātaka class languishes in hunger becomes overwhelmed with adversity. Such a kingdom with its king also incurs reproach.[30] That king is more dead than alive in whose kingdom women are easily abducted from the midst of husbands and sons uttering cries and groans of indignation and grief.[31] The subjects should arm themselves for slaying that king who does not protect them, who simply plunders their wealth, who confounds all distinctions, who is incapable of taking their lead, who is without compassion, and who is regarded as the most sinful of kings.[32] That king who tells his people that he is their protector but who does not or is unable to protect them, should be slain by his combined subjects, like a dog that is affected with the rabies and has become mad.[33] A fourth part of whatever sins are committed by the subjects becomes that king's who does not protect, O Bhārata.[34] Some authorities say that the whole of those sins is taken by such a king. Others are of opinion that a half thereof becomes his. Bearing in mind, however, the declaration of Manu, it is our opinion that a fourth part of such sins becomes the unprotecting king's.[35]

---

* 'Weeping women' means women of destitute condition and, therefore, unable to pay.—T.

† The first word in the first line is not 'kshatam' but 'kritam.'—T.

That king, O Bhārata, who grants protection to his subjects obtains a fourth part of whatever merits his subjects acquire living under his protection.[36] Do thou, O Yudhishthira, act in such a way that all thy subjects may seek thee as their refuge as long as thou art alive, even as all creatures seek the refuge of the deity of rain or even as the winged denizens of the air seek the refuge of a large tree.[37] Let all thy kinsmen and all thy friends and well-wishers, O scorcher of foes, seek thee as their refuge even as the Rākshasas seek Kuvera or the deities seek Indra as theirs.' "[38]

Section LXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'People accept with affection the declarations of the Crutis which say,—This is to be given—This other thing is to be given !—As regards kings, again, they make gifts of various things unto various men. What, however, O grandsire, is the best or foremost of all gifts ?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Of all kinds of gifts, the gift of earth has been said to be the first (in point of merit). Earth is immovable and indestructible. It is capable of yielding unto him who owns it all the best things upon which his heart may be set.[2] It yields robes and vestments, jewels and gems, animals, paddy, and barley. Amongst all creatures, the giver of earth grows in prosperity for ever and ever.[3] As long as the earth lasts, so long does the giver thereof grow in prosperity. There is no gift that is higher, O Yudhishthira, than the gift of earth.[4] It hath been heard by us that all men have given a little quantity of earth. All men have made gifts of earth, hence all men enjoy a little of earth.[5] Whether in this or in the next world, all creatures live under conditions dependent upon their own acts. Earth is Prosperity's self. She is a mighty goddess. She makes him her lord (in next life) who makes gifts of her in this life to other people.[6] That person, O best of kings, who gives away earth, which is indestructible, as Dakshinā, becomes born in next life as a man and becomes also a lord of Earth.[7] The measure of one's enjoyment in this life is commensurate with the measure of one's gifts in a previous life.

Even this is the conclusion to which the scriptures point. For a Kshatriya should either give away the Earth in gift or cast off his life in battle.[8] Even this constitutes the highest source of prosperity with regard to Kshatriyas. It has been heard by us that earth, when given away, cleanses and sanctifies the giver.[9] The man that is of sinful behaviour, that is guilty of even the slaughter of a Brāhmana and of falsehood, is cleansed by a gift of earth. Indeed, such a gift rescues even such a sinner from all his sins.[10] The righteous accept gifts of earth only and no other thing from kings that are sinful. Like one's mother, earth, when given away, cleanses the giver and the taker.[11] This is an eternal and secret name of earth, *viz.*, Priyadatta.* Given away or accepted in gift, the name that is dear to her is Priyadattā.[12] The gift of earth is disirable. That king who makes a gift of earth unto a learned Brāhmana, obtains from that gift a kingdom.[13] Upon rebirth in this world, such a man, without doubt, attains to a position that is equal to that of a king. Hence, a king, as soon as he gets earth, should make gifts of earth unto the Brāhmanas.[14] None but a lord of Earth is competent to make gifts of earth. Nor should one that is not a deserving person accept a gift of earth.[15] They who desire earth should, without doubt, conduct themselves in this way (*i. e.*, make gifts of earth). That person who takes away earth belonging to a righteous person never gets any earth.[16] By making gifts of earth unto the righteous, one gets good earth. Of virtuous soul, such a giver acquires great fame both here and hereafter.[17] That righteous king respecting whom the Brāhmanas say,—We live on earth given to us by him,—is such that his very enemies cannot utter the least reproach respecting his kingdom.†[18] Whatever sins a man commits from want of the means of support, are all washed off by gift of only so much earth as is covered by a cow-hide.[19]

---

* The Commentator explains that because given *by* one that is dear or given *to* one that is dear, therefore is she called "Priyadattā."—T.

† This is evidently a crux. 'Praçamsanti' means generally 'praise.' Here it means 'reproach' or 'censure.' The second line may also mean 'his enemies dare not attack his kingdom.'—T.

Those kings that are mean in their acts or are of fierce deeds, should be taught that gift of earth is exceedingly cleansing and is at the same time the highest gift (in respect of merit).[20] The ancients thought that there is always very little difference between the man who performs a Horse-sacrifice and him that makes a gift of earth unto one that is righteous.[21] The learned doubt the acquisition of merit by doing all other acts of righteousness. The only act with respect to which they do not entertain doubt is the gift of earth which, indeed, is the foremost of all gifts.[22] The man of wisdom who makes gifts of earth, gives away all these, *viz.*, gold, silver, cloth, gems and pearls and precious stones.[23] Penances, sacrifice, Vedic lore, good behaviour, absence of cupidity, firmness in truth, worship of seniors preceptors, and the deities, all these dwell in him who makes a gift of earth.[24] They who ascend to the region of Brahman by casting off their lives in battle after having fought without any regard for themselves for securing the benefit of their masters,—even they are unable to transcend the merit of those that make gifts of earth.[25] As the mother always nourishes her own child with milk from her breast, even so doth Earth gratify with all the tastes the person that makes a gift of earth.[26] Mrityu, Vaikinkara, Danda, Tama, Fire who is possessed of great fierceness, and all heinous and terrible sins are incapable of touching the person that makes a gift of earth.[27] That man of tranquil soul who makes a gift of earth gratifies (by that act) the Pitris dwelling in their own region and the deities also hailing from the region that is theirs.[28] The man who makes a gift of earth unto one that is emaciated and cheerless and destitute of the means of life and languishing with weakness, and who thereby supplies one with the means of sustenance, becomes entitled to the honor and merit of performing a sacrifice.[29] Even as an affectionate cow runs towards her calf, with full udders dropping milk, the highly blessed Earth, after the same manner, runs towards the person who makes a gift of earth.[30] That man who makes unto a Brāhmana a gift of earth which has been tilled, or sown with seeds, or which contains standiug crops, or a mansion well equipt with every necessary, succeeds in becoming (in next life) the

accomplisher of the wishes of everybody.[31] The man who causes a Brāhmana possessed of the means of life, owning a domestic fire and of pure vows and practices, to accept a gift of earth, never falls into any danger or distress.[32] As the moon waxes day by day, even so the merit of a gift of earth becomes enhanced every time such earth produces crops.[33] Those conversant with ancient history sing this verse in connection with the gift of earth. Hearing that verse Jamadagni's son (Rāma) gave away the whole Earth unto Kaçyapa.[34] The verse to which I refer is this.—Receive me in gift. Give me away. By giving me away, thou (O giver) shalt obtain me again! That which is given away in this life is re-acquired in the next!*[35]—That Brāhmana who recites this high declaration of the Vedas at the time of a Crāddha attains to the highest reward.[36] A gift of earth is a high expiation for the sin of those puissant men who betake themselves to Atharvan rites for doing injuries to others. Indeed, by making a gift of earth one rescues ten generations of one's paternal and maternal race.[37] That person who is even conversant with this Vedic declaration respecting the merits of a gift of earth, succeeds in rescuing ten generations of both his paternal and maternal families. Earth is the original source of all creatures (for it is from Earth that all creatures derive their sustenance). It has been said that the deity of fire is the presiding genius of earth.[38] After the coronation ceremony has been performed of a king, this Vedic declaration should be recited to him, so that he may make gifts of earth and may never take away earth from a righteous person.[39] Without doubt, the entire wealth owned by the king belongs to the Brāhmanas. A king well conversant with the science of duty and morality is the first requisite of the kingdom's prosperity.[40] Those people whose king is unrighteous and atheistic in conduct and belief, can never be happy. Such people can never sleep or wake in peace.[41] In consequence of his acts of wickedness his subjects become always filled with anxiety. Protection of what the subjects already have and new acquisitions according

* This is the utterance or declaration of the Earth herself.—T.

to lawful means are incidents that are not noticeable in the kingdom of such a ruler.[42] Those people, again, who have a wise and righteous king, sleep happily and wake up in happiness.[43] Through the blessed and righteous acts of such a king, his subjects become freed from anxiety. The subjects, restrained from wicked acts, grow in prosperity through their own conduct. Capable of retaining what they have, they go on making new acquisitions.[44] That king who makes gifts of earth is regarded as well born. He is regarded as a man. He is a friend. He is righteous in his acts. He is a giver. He is regarded as possessing prowess.[45] Those men who make gifts of ample and fertile earth unto Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas, always shine in the world, in consequence of their energy, like so many suns.[46] As seeds scattered on the soil grow and return a goodly crop, even so all one's wishes become crowned with fruition in consequence of one's making gifts of earth.[47] Āditya and Varuna and Vishnu and Brahman and Soma and Hutāçana, and the illustrious and trident-bearning Mahādeva, all applaud the man that makes a gift of earth.[48] Living creatures spring into life from Earth and it is into the Earth that they become merged when they disappear. Living creatures which are distributed into four classes (*viz.*, viviparous, oviparous, filth-born, and vegetables) have Earth for their constituent essence.[49] The Earth is both the mother and father of the universe of creatures, O monarch. There is no element, O ruler of men, that can compare with Earth.[50] In this connection is cited the old narrative of a discourse between the celestial preceptor Vrihaspati and Indra the ruler of Heaven, O Yudhishthira.[51] Having adored Vishnu in a hundred sacrifices each of which was distinguished by plentiful gifts as Dakshinā, Maghavat put this question to Vrihaspati, that foremost of all eloquent persons.[52]

"'Maghavat said,—O illustrious one, by what gift does one succeed in coming to Heaven and attaining to beatitude? O foremost of speakers, do thou tell me of that gift which is productive of high and inexhaustible merit!—'[53]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by the chief of the celestials, the preceptor of the deities, *viz.*, Vrihaspati of great

energy, said these words in reply unto him of a hundred sacrifices.[54]

"Vrihaspati said,—Gift of gold, gift of kine, and gift of earth,—by these, O slayer of Vritra, one becomes cleansed, O thou of great wisdom, of all sins.[55] There is no gift, O chief of the deities, that is higher than the gift of earth, O puissant one. I regard this gift as the most superior, according to what has been declared by the wise.[56] Those heroes who, fearless of battle, lay down their lives in encounters with foes, come to Heaven. How high soever their end, none of them can transcend the giver of earth.[57] Those men who, disregarding their bodies, cast off their lives in battle while exerting themselves for the good of their masters, ascend to the region of Brahman himself. But even they are unable to transcend the giver of earth (in respect of the merit that is his or the felicity that he wins).[58] By making a gift of earth one rescues these eleven, *viz.*, five generations of ancestors and six generations of descendants.[59] That person, O Purandara, who makes a gift of earth rich with jewels and gems (and other things of value) becomes cleansed of all his sins and is highly reverenced in Heaven.[60] If a person, O king, makes a gift of rich and fertile earth that is capable of yielding every wish (in respect of its produce) he succeeds in attaining to the position of a king of kings (in his next life). A gift of earth, therefore, is the foremost of all gifts.[61] That person, O Vāsava, who makes a gift of earth capable of crowning every wish with fruition (in respect of its produce) is regarded as making a gift of every object in the world.[62] That man who gives away a cow possessed of every accomplishment and yielding the fruition of every wish, succeeds, O thou of a thousand eyes, in attaining to Heaven.[63] The giver of earth, O chief of the celestials, is gratified, when he comes to Heaven, by hundreds of streams which run honey and ghee and milk and curds.[64] A king, by making gifts of earth, becomes cleansed of all his sins. There is no gift, therefore, that is superior to the gift of earth.[65] That king who gives away the Earth bounded by the ocean, after having conquered it with the aid of his weapons, is talked of by all men and his memory lasts as long as the mountains

last on the surface of Earth.[66] Endued as he is with the merits that attach to the gift of earth, the region of felicity reserved for the person who makes gift of such earth as is auspicious and rich with every taste, never become exhausted.*[67] That king, O Cakra, who desires to have prosperity and who wishes to win happiness for himself, should always make gifts of earth, with due rites, unto deserving persons.[68] If after comitting numerous sins a person makes gifts of earth unto members of the regenerate class, he casts off all those sins like a snake casting off its slough.[69] The person that makes a gift of earth is said to make gifts of everything, that is, of seas and rivers and mountains and forests.[70] By making a gift of earth, the person is said to give away lakes and tanks and wells and streams. In consequence of the moisture of earth, one is said to give away articles of diverse tastes by making a gift of earth.[71] The man who makes a gift of earth is regarded as giving away herbs and plants possessed of high and efficacious virtues, trees adorned with flowers and fruit, delightful woods, and hillocks.[72] The merit that a person acquires by making a gift of earth is incapable of being acquired by the performance of even such great sacrifices as the Agnishtoma and others with plentiful gifts in the shape of Dakshinā.[73] The giver of earth, it has been already said, rescues ten generations of both his paternal and maternal races. Similarly, by taking away earth that was given away, one sinks oneself into hell and casts ten generations of both one's paternal and maternal lines into the same place of misery.[74] That man who having promised to make a gift of earth does not actually make it, or who having made a gift resumes it, has to pass a long time, in great misery in consequence of being tied with the noose of Varuna at the command of Death.[75] Those men have never to go to Yama who honor and worship those foremost of Brāhmanas that pour libations every day on their domestic fire, that are always engaged in the performance

* 'Rich with every taste,'—the idea is that things have six tastes, *viz.*, sweet, sour, &c. The quality of taste is drawn by things from the soil or earth. The tastes inhere in earth, for it is the same earth that produces the sugarcane and the tamarind.—T.

of sacrifices, that have scanty means of livelihood, and that receive with hospitality every guest seeking shelter in their abodes.[76] The king, O Purandara, should free himself from the debt he owes to the Brāhmanas and protect the helpless and the weak belonging to the other orders.[77] The king should never resume, O chief of the deities, earth that has been given away by another unto a Brāhmana, O ruler of the celestials, that is destitute of the means of life.*[78] The tears that would fall from the eyes of such cheerless and destitute Brāhmanas in consequence of their lands being resumed are capable of destroying the ancestors and descendants to the third generation of the resumer.[79] That man who succeeds by his endeavours in re-establishing a king driven away from his kingdom, obtains residence in Heaven and is much honored by the denizens thereof.[80] That king who succeeds in making gifts of earth with such crops standing thereon as sugarcane or barley or wheat, or with kine and horses and other draft cattle,—earth that has been won with the might of the giver's arms,—that has mineral wealth in its bowels and that is covered with every kind of wealth on the surface, wins inexhaustible regions of felicity in the next world, and such a king it is that is said to perform the earth-sacrifice.[81-82] That king who makes a gift of earth becomes washed of every sin and, therefore, pure and approved of the righteous. In this world he is highly honored and applauded by all righteous men.[83] The merit that attaches to a gift of earth increases every time the earth given away bears crops for the benefit of the owner, even as a drop of oil, falling upon water, is seen to extend on every side, and cover the watery surface.[84] Those heroic kings and ornaments of assemblies who cast off their lives in battle with faces towards the foe, attain, O Cakra, to the region of Brahman.[85] Beautiful damsels skilled in music and dancing and adorned with garlands of celestial flowers, approach, O chief of the deities, the giver of earth as he comes to Heaven departing from the Earth.[86] That king who makes gifts of earth with due rites unto persons of the regenerate order, sports in bliss

* 'Sparçitām' is 'dattām.'—T.

in the celestial regions, adored all the while by the deities and Gandharvas.[87] A century of Apsarās, adorned with celestial garlands, approach, O chief of the deities, the giver of earth as he ascends to the region of Brahman.[88] Flowers of excellent perfumes, an excellent conch and excellent seat, an umbrella, and excellent steeds with excellent vehicles, are always ready for the person who makes gifts of earth.[89] By making gifts of earth a king can always command flowers of excellent perfumes and heaps of gold. Possessed of all kinds of wealth, the commands of such a king can never be disobeyed anywhere, and cries of victory hail him whithersoever he may approach.[90] The rewards that attach to gifts of earth consist of residence in Heaven, O Purandara, and gold, and flowers, and plants and herbs of medicinal virtue, and Kuça and mineral wealth and verdant grass. A person by making a gift of earth acquires in his next life nectar-yielding earth.[91] There is no gift that is equal to a gift of earth. There is no senior worthy of greater respect than the mother. There is no duty higher than truth. There is no wealth more precious than that which is given away.'[92]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words from the son of Angiras, Vāsava made a gift unto him of the whole Earth with all her jewels and gems and all her wealth of diverse kinds.[93] If these verses declaring the merit attaching to gifts of earth be recited on the occasion of a Crāddha, neither Rākshasas nor Asuras can succeed in appropriating any share of the offerings made in it.[94] Without doubt, the offerings one makes unto the Pitris at such a Crāddha become inexhaustible. Hence, on occasions of Crāddhas, the man of learning should recite these verses on the subject of the merits that attach to gifts of earth, in the presence and hearing of the invited Brāhmanas when engaged in eating.[95] I have thus, O chief of the Bharatas, discoursed unto thee of that gift which is the foremost of all gifts. What else dost thou wish to hear?' "[96]

Section LXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'When a king becomes desirous of making gifts in this world, what, indeed, are those gifts which he should make, O best of the Bharatas, unto such Brāhmanas as are possessed of superior accomplishments?[1] What gift is that by which the Brāhmanas become immediately gratified? What fruits do they bestow in return? O thou of mighty arms, tell me what is the high reward attainable through the merit arising from gifts.[2] What gifts, O king, are productive of rewards both here and hereafter? I desire to hear all this from thee. Do thou discourse to me on all this in detail!'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'These very questions were on a former occasion put by me on Nārada of celestial appearance. Hear me as I recite to thee what that celestial sage had told me in reply.[4]

" 'Nārada said,—The deities and all the Rishis applaud food. The course of the world and the intellectual faculties have all been established on food.[5] There has never been, nor will be, any gift that is equal to the gift of food. Hence, men always desire particularly to make gifts of food.[6] In this world, food is the cause of energy and strength. The life-breaths are established on food. It is food that upholds the wide universe, O puissant one.[7] All classes of men, house-holders and mendicants and ascetics, exist, depending upon food. The life-breaths depend upon food. There is no doubt in this.[8] Afflicting (if need be) one's relatives, one, if desirous of one's own prosperity, should make gifts of food unto a high-souled Brāhmana or a person of the mendicant order.[9] That man who makes a gift of food unto an accomplished Brāhmana who solicits the same, sucures for himself in the world to come wealth of great value.[10] The house-holder who is desirous of his own prosperity should receive with reverence a deserving old man that is spent with toil while proceeding on his way far from home, when such a man honors the house-holder's abode with his presence.[11] That man who, casting off wrath that overleaps every bound and becoming righteous in disposition and freed from malice, makes

gifts of food, is sure to attain to happiness, O king, both here and hereafter.[12] The house-holder should never disregard the man that comes to his abode, nor should he insult him by sending him away. A gift of food made unto even a Chandāla or a dog is never lost.[13] That man who makes a gift of clean food unto a person on the way who is toil-worn and unknown to the giver, is sure to acquire great merit.[14] The man who gratifies with gifts of food the Pitris, the deities, the Rishis, the Brāhmanas, and guests arrived at his abode. acquires merit whose measure is very large.[15] That person who having committed even a heinous sin makes a gift of food unto one that solicits, or unto a Brāhmana in especial, is never stupefied by that heinous sin.[16] A gift of food made unto a Brāhmana becomes inexhaustible. One made to a Cudra becomes productive of great merit. Even this is the difference between the merits that attach to gifts of food made unto Brāhmanas and Cudras.[17] Solicited by a Brāhmana, one should not enquire about his race or conduct or Vedic lore. Asked for food, one should give food to him that asks.[18] There is no doubt in this, O king, that he who makes gifts of food obtains both here and hereafter many trees yielding food and every other object of desire.[19] Like tillers expecting auspicious showers of rain, the Pitris always expect that their sons and grandsons would make offerings unto them of food (in Crāddhas).[20] The Brāhmana is a great being. When he comes into one's abode and solicits, saying,—Give me !—the owner of the abode, whether influenced or not by the desire of acquiring merit, is sure to win great merit by listening to that solicitation.[21] The Brāhmana is the guest of all creatures in the universe. He is entitled to the first portion of every food. That house increases in prosperity to which the Brāhmanas repair from desire of soliciting alms and from which they return honored in consequence of their desires being fulfilled. The owner of such a house takes birth in his next life in a family, O Bhārata, that can command all the comforts and luxuries of life.[22-23] A man, by making gifts of food in this world, is sure to attain to an excellent place hereafter. He who makes gifts of sweetmeats and all food that is sweet, attains

to a residence in heaven where he is honored by all the deities and other denizens.[24] Food constitutes the life-breaths of men. Everything is established upon food. He who makes gifts of food obtains many animals (as his wealth), many children, considerable wealth (in other shape), and a command in abundance of all articles of comfort and luxurious enjoyment.[25] The giver of food is said to be the giver of life. Indeed, he is said to be the giver of everything. Hence, O king, such a man acquires both strength and beauty of form in this world.[26] If food be given duly unto a Brāhmana arrived at the giver's house as a guest, the giver attains to great happiness, and is adored by the very deities.[27] The Brāhmana, O Yudhishthira, is a great Being. He is also a fertile field. Whatever seed is sown on that field produces an abundant crop of merit.[28] A gift of food is visibly and immediately productive of the happiness of both the giver and the receiver. All other gifts produce fruits that are unseen.[29] From food is the origin of creatures. From food is happiness and delight, O Bhārata. Know that Religion and Wealth both flow from food. The cure of disease or health also flows from food.[30] In a former Kalpa, the Lord of all creatures said that food is Amrita or the source of immortality. Food is Earth, Food is Heaven, Food is the Firmament. Everything is established on Food.[31] In the absence of food, the five elements that constitute the physical organism cease to exist in a state of union. From absence of food the strength of even the strongest man is seen to fail.[32] Invitations and marriages and sacrifices all cease in the absence of food. The very Vedas disappear when food there is none.[33] Whatever mobile and immobile creatures exist in the universe are all dependant on food. Religion and Wealth, in the three worlds, are dependant on food. Hence the wise should make gifts of food.[34] The strength, energy, fame, and achievements of the man who makes gifts of food, constantly increase in the three worlds, O king.[35] The lord of the life-breaths, *viz.*, the deity of wind, places above the clouds (the water sucked up by the Sun). The water thus borne to the clouds is caused by Cakra to be poured upon the Earth, O Bhārata.[36] The Sun, by means of his rays, sucks up the moisture of the Earth. The

deity of wind causes the moisture to fall down from the Sun.*[37] When the water falls down from the clouds upon the Earth, the goddess Earth becomes moist, O Bhārata.[38] Then do people sow diverse kinds of crops upon whose outturn the universe of creatures depends. It is from the food thus produced that the flesh, fat, bones and vital seed of all beings have their origin.[39] From the vital seed thus originated, O king, spring diverse kinds of living creatures. Agni and Soma, the two agents living within the body, create and maintain the vital seed.[40] Thus from food, the Sun and the deity of wind and the vital seed spring and act. All these are said to constitute one element or quantity, and it is from these that all creatures spring.[41] That man who gives food unto one who comes into his house and solicits it, is said, O chief of the Bharatas, to contribute both life and energy unto living creatures.—'[42]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by Nārada, O king, I have always made gifts of food. Do thou also, therefore, freed from malice and with a cheerful heart, make gifts of food.[43] By making gifts of food, O king, unto deserving Brāhmanas with due rites, thou mayst be sure, O puissant one, of attaining to Heaven.[44] Hear me, O monarch, as I tell thee what the regions are that are reserved for those that make gifts of food. The mansions of those high-souled persons shine with resplendence in the regions of Heaven.[45] Bright as the stars in the firmament, and supported upon many columns, white as the disc of the moon, and adorned with many tinkling bells, and rosy like the newly risen sun, those palatial abodes are either fixed or movable.[46] Those mansions are filled with hundreds upon hundreds of things and animals that live on land and as many things and animals living in water. Some of them are endued with the effulgence of *lapis lazuli* and some are possessed of the resplendence of the sun. Some of them are made of silver and some of gold.[47] Within those mansions are many trees capable of crowning with fruition every desire of the inmates. Many tanks and roads and halls and wells and

* The Bombay reading 'ādityatastāṅçha' is better than the Bengal reading 'ādityataptāṅçha.'—T.

lakes occur all around.[48] Thousands of conveyances with horses and other animals harnessed thereto and with wheels whose caltter is always loud, may be seen there. Mountains of food and all enjoyable articles and heaps of cloths and ornaments are also to be seen there.[49] Numerous rivers that run milk, and hills of rice and other edibles, may also be seen there. Indeed, many palatial residences looking like white clouds, with many beds of golden splendour, occur in those regions.[50] All these are obtained by those men that make gifts of food in this world. Do thou, therefore, become a giver of food. Verily, these are the regions that are reserved for those high-souled and righteous persons that make gifts of food in this world. For these reasons, men should always make gifts of food in this world.' "[51]

Section LXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I have heard thy discourse regarding the ordinances about the gift of food. Do thou discourse to me now about the conjunctions of the planets and the stars in relation to the subject of making gifts.'*[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is recited this ancient narrative of the discourse between Devaki and Nārada, that foremost of Rishis.[2] Once on a time when Nārada of godlike features and conversant with every duty arrived at Dwārakā, Devaki asked him this question.[3] Unto her that had asked him, the celestial Rishi Nārada duly answered in the following words. Do thou hear as I recite them.[4]

" 'Nārada said,—By gratifying, O blessed lady, deserving Brāhmanas with Pāyasa mixed with ghee, under the constellation Krittikā, one attains to regions of great happiness.†[5] Under the constellation Rohini, one should, for freeing oneself from the debt one owes to the Brāhmanas, make gifts unto them of many handfuls of venison along with rice and ghee and milk, and other kinds of edibles and drinks.[6] One giving

---

* What Yudhishthira wishes to know is what conjunctions should be utilized for making what particular gifts.—T.

† 'Pāyasa' is rice boiled in sugared milk. It is a sort of liquid food that is regarded as very agreeable.—T.

away a cow with a calf under the constellation called Soma-daivata (or Mrigaçiras), proceeds from this region of human beings to a region in Heaven of great felicity.[7] One undergoing a fast and giving away Kriçara mixed with sesame, transcends all difficulties in the next world, including those mountains with rocks sharp as razors.[8] By making gifts, O beautiful lady, of cakes and other food under the constellation Punarvasu, one becomes possessed of personal beauty and great fame and takes birth in one's next life in a family in which there is abundance of food.[9] Making a gift of wrought or unwrought gold, under the constellation Pushyā, one shines in effulgence like Soma himself in regions of surrounding gloom.[10] He who makes a gift, under the constellation Açleshā, of silver or a bull, becomes freed from every fear and attains to great affluence and prosperity.[11] By making a gift, under the constellation Maghā, of earthen dishes filled with sesame, one becomes possessed of children and animals in this world and attains to felicity in the next.*[12] By making gifts unto Brāhmanas, under the constellation called Purva-Phālguni, of food mixed with Phānita, the giver observing a fast the while, the reward is great prosperity both here and hereafter.†[13] By making a gift, under the constellation called Uttara-Phālguni, of ghee and milk with rice called Shashthika, one attains to great honors in Heaven.[14] Whatever gifts are made by men under the constellation of Uttara-Phālguni produce great merit, which, again, becomes inexhaustible. This is very certain.[15] Observing a fast the while, the person that makes, under the constellation Hastā, a gift of a car with four elephants, attains to regions of great felicity that are capable of granting the fruition of every wish.[16] By making a gift, under the constellation Chittrā, of a bull and of good perfumes, one sports in bliss in regions of Apsaras like the deities sporting in the woods of Nandana.[17] By making gifts of wealth under the constellation Swāti, one attains to such excellent regions as one

---

* 'Vardhamāna' is a 'çarāva' or 'çarāvikā.' It is a flat earthen cup or dish.—T.

† 'Phānita' is the inspissated juice of the sugar-cane.—T.

desires and wins, besides, great fame.[18] By making gifts, under the constellation Viçākha, of a bull, and a cow that yields a copious measure of milk, a cart full of paddy, with a Prāsanga for covering the same, and also cloths for wear,*[19] a person gratifies the Pitris and the deities and attains to inexhaustible merit in the other world. Such a person never meets with any calamity and certainly reaches Heaven.[20] By making gifts unto the Brāhmanas of whatever articles they solicit, one attains to such means of subsistence as one desires, and becomes rescued from Hell and every calamity that visits sinners after death. This is the certain conclusion of the scriptures.[21] By making gifts, under the constellation Anurādhā, of embroidered cloth and other vestments and of food, observing a fast the while, one becomes honored in Heaven for a hundred Yugas.[22] By making a gift under the constellation Jyeshthā, of the potherb called Kālaçāka with the roots, one attains to great prosperity as also to such an end as is desirable.[23] By making unto Brāhmanas a gift under the constellation Mulā, of fruits and roots, with a restrained soul, one gratifies the Pitris and attains to a desirable end.[24] By making, under the constellation Purvāshādā, a gift, unto a Brāhmana conversant with the Vedas and of good family and conduct, of cups filled with curds, while one is in the observance of a fast, one takes birth in one's next life in a family possessed of abundant kine. One obtains the fruition of every wish, by making gifts, under the constellation Uttarāshādā, of jugs full of barley-water, with ghee and inspissated juice of sugar-cane in abundance.[25-26] By making a gift, under the conjunction called Abhijit, of milk with honey and ghee unto men of wisdom, a righteous person attains to Heaven and becomes an object of attentions and honor there.[27] By making, under the conjunction Cravanā, a gift of blankets or other cloth of thick texture, one roves freely through every region of felicity, riding on a white car of pure resplendence.[28] By making with a restrained soul, under the constellation Dhanishthā, a gift of a vehicle with bulls yoked

* A 'prāsanga' is a basket of bamboo or other material for covering paddy.—T.

thereto, or heaps of cloths and wealth, one at once attains to Heaven in one's next life.[29] By making gifts, under the constellation Catabhishā, of perfumes with Aquilaria Agallocha and sandal wood, one attains in the next world to the companionship of Apsaras as also eternal perfumes of divers kinds.[30] By making gifts, under the constellation Purva-Bhādrapada, of Rājamāsha, one attains to great happiness in next life and becomes possessed of an abundant stock of every kind of edibles and fruits.*[31] One who makes, under the constellation Uttarā, a gift of mutton, gratifies the Pitris by such an act and attains to inexhaustible merit in the next world.[32] Unto one who makes a gift, under the constellation Revati, of a cow with a vessel of white copper for milking her, the cow so given away approaches in the next world, ready to grant the fruition of every wish.[33] By making a gift, under the constellation Açwini, of a car with steeds yoked thereto, one takes birth in one's next life in a family possessed of abundant elephants and steeds and cars and becomes endued with great energy.[34] By making, under the constellation Bharani, a gift unto the Brāhmanas of kine and sesame, one attains in one's next life great fame and abundant kine.'—[35]

"Bhishma continued,—'Even thus did Nārada discourse unto Devaki upon the subject of what gifts should be made under what constellations. Devaki herself, having heard this discourse, recited it in her turn unto her daughters-in-law (*viz.*, the spouses of Krishna).' "[36]

Section LXV.

"Bhishma said,—'The illustrious Atri, the son of the Grandsire Brahman, said,—They who make gifts of gold are said to make gifts of every thing in the world.[1]—King Hariçchandra said that the gift of gold is sin-cleansing, leads to long life, and becomes productive of inexhaustible merit unto the Pitris.[2] Manu has said that a gift of drink is the best of all gifts: therefore should a man cause wells and tanks and lakes to be

* 'Rājamāsha' is a kind of bean. It is the *Vigna sinensis*, syn. *Dolichos sinensis*, Linn.—T.

excavated.[3] A well full of water and from which diverse creatures draw water, is said to take off half the sinful acts of the person who has excavated it.[4] The whole race of a person is rescued from hell and sin in whose well or tank or lake kine and Brāhmanas and righteous people constantly quench their thirst.[5] That man transcends every kind of calamity from whose well or tank every one draws water without restraint during the summer season.[6] Ghee is said to gratify the illustrious Vrihaspati, Pushan, Bhaga, the twin Açwins, and the deity of fire.[7] Ghee is possessed of high medicinal virtues. It is a high requisite of Sacrifice. It is the best of all liquids. The merit a gift of ghee produces is very superior.[8] That man who is desirous of the reward of happiness in the next world, who wishes for fame and prosperity, should, with a cleansed soul and having purified himself, make gifts of ghee unto the Brāhmanas.[9] Upon that man who makes gifts of ghee unto the Brāhmanas in the month of Açwin, the twin Açwins, gratified, confer personal beauty.[10] Rākshasas never invade the abode of that man who makes gifts unto the Brāhmanas of Pāyasa mixed with ghee.[11] That man never dies of thirst who makes gifts unto the Brāhmanas of jars filled with water. Such a person obtains every necessary of life in abundance, and has never to undergo any calamity or distress.[12] That man, who with great devotion and restrained senses makes gifts unto the foremost of Brāhmanas, is said to take a sixth part of the merits won by the Brāhmanas by their penances.[13] That man who makes presents, unto Brāhmanas having the means of life, of fire-wood for purposes of cooking as also for enabling them to drive cold, finds all his purposes and all his acts crowned with success. Such a one is seen to shine with great splendour over all his enemies.[14-15] The illustrious deity of fire becomes pleased with such a man. As another reward, he never becomes divested of cattle, and he is sure to achieve victory in battle.[16] The man who makes a gift of an umbrella obtains children and great prosperity. Such a person is never affected by any eye-disease. The merits also that spring from the performance of a sacrifice become his.[17] That man who makes a gift of an umbrella in the season of summer or

rains, has never to meet with any heart-burning on any account.[18] Such a man quickly succeeds in freeing himself from every difficulty and impediment. The highly blessed and illustrious Rishi Cāndilya has said that of all gifts, the gift of a car, O king, is the best.' "[19-20]

SECTION LXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I desire to hear, O grandsire, what the merits are of that person who makes the gift of a pair of sandals unto a Brāhmana whose feet are burning or being scorched by hot sands while walking.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The man that gives unto the Brāhmanas sandals for the protection of their feet, succeeds in crushing all thorns and transcends every kind of difficulty.[2] Such a man, O Yudhishthira, stays over the heads of all his foes. Vehicles of pure splendour, with mules harnessed thereto, and made of gold and silver, O monarch, approach him. He who makes a gift of sandals is said to earn the merit of making the gift of a vehicle with well-broken steeds yoked thereto.'[3-4]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Do thou tell me in detail once more, O grandsire, of the merits that attach to gifts of sesame and land, and of kine and food !'[5]

"Bhishma said,—'Do thou hear, O son of Kunti, what the merits are that attach to the gift of sesame. Hearing me, do thou then, O best of the Kurus, make gifts of sesame according to the ordinance.[6] Sesame seeds were created by the Self-born Brahman as the best food for the Pitris. Hence, gifts of sesame seeds always gladden the Pitris greatly.[7] The man who makes gifts of sesame seeds, in the month of Māgha, unto the Brāhmanas, has never to see Hell which abounds with all frightful creatures.[8] He who adores the Pitris with offerings of sesame seeds is regarded as worshipping the deities in all the sacrifices. One should never make a Crāddha with offerings of sesame seeds without cherishing some purpose.*[9] Sesame seeds sprang

---

* There may be 'akāma' and 'sakāma' acts, *i. e.*, acts without desire of fruit and acts with desire of fruit. A Crāddha with Tila or sesame should never be made without desire of fruit.—T.

from the limbs of the great Rishi Kaçyapa. Hence, in the matter of gifts, they have come to be regarded as possessed of high efficacy.[10] Sesame seeds bestow both prosperity and personal beauty and cleanse the giver of all his sins. It is for this reason that the gift of sesame seeds is distinguished over the gift of every other article.[11] Āpastamva of great intelligence, and Cankha and Likhita, and the great Rishi Gautama, have all ascended to Heaven by having made gifts of sesame seeds.[12] Those Brāhmanas that make Homa with offerings of sesame, abstain from sexual intercourse, and are observant of the religion of Pravritti or acts, are regarded as equal (in purity and efficacy) to vaccine Havi.[13] The gift of sesame seeds is distinguished above all gifts. Amongst all gifts, the gift of sesame is regarded as productive of inexhaustible merit.[14] In ancient times when Havi (clarified butter) on one occasion had become unobtainable, the Rishi Kuçika, O scorcher of foes, made offerings of sesame seeds to his three sacrificial fires and succeeded in attaining to an excellent end.[15] I have thus said unto thee, O chief of the Kurus, what the regulations are respecting the excellent gift of sesame seeds. It is in consequence of these regulations that the gift of sesame seeds has come to be regarded as fraught with very superior merit.[16] After this, listen to what I would say. Once on a time the deities, desirous of making a Sacrifice, repaired, O monarch, to the presence of the Self-born Brahman.[17] Having met Brahman, desirous as they were of performing a sacrifice on the Earth, they begged him for a piece of auspicious earth, saying,—We want it for our sacrifice !—[18]

" 'The deities said,—O illustrious one, thou art the lord of all the Earth as also of all the deities ! With thy permission, O highly blessed one, we desire to perform a sacrifice ![19] The person who has not obtained by lawful means the earth whereon to make the sacrificial altar, earns not the merit of the sacrifice he performs.[20] Thou art the Lord of all the universe consisting of its mobile and immobile objects. Hence, it behooveth thee to grant us a piece of earth for the sacrifice we wish to make !—[21]

" 'Brahman said,—Ye foremost of deities, I shall give you a

piece of earth whereon, ye sons of Kaçyapa, you shall perform your intended sacrifice!—[22]

"'The deities said,—Our wishes, O holy one, have been crowned with fruition. We shall perform our sacrifice even here with large Dakshinā! Let, however, the Munis always adore this piece of Earth![23] Then there came to that place Agastya and Kanwa and Bhrigu and Atri and Vrishākapi, and Asita and Devala.[24] The high-souled deities then, O thou of unfading glory, performed their sacrifice. Those foremost of gods concluded it in due time.[25] Having completed that sacrifice of theirs on the breast of that foremost of mountains, *viz.*, Himavat, the deities attached to the gift of earth a sixth part of the merit arising from their sacrifice.[26] The man who makes a gift of even a span of earth (unto a Brāhmana) with reverence and faith, has never to languish under any difficulty and has never to meet with any calamity.[27] By making a gift of a house that keeps out cold, wind, and sun, and that stands upon a piece of clean land, the giver attains to the region of the deities and does not fall down even when his merit becomes exhausted.[28] By making a gift of a residential house, the giver, possessed of wisdom, lives, O king, in happiness in the company of Cakra. Such a person receives great honors in Heaven.[29] That person in whose house a Brāhmana of restrained senses, well-versed in the Vedas, and belonging by birth to a family of preceptors, resides in contentment, succeeds in attaining to and enjoying a region of high felicity.*[30] After the same manner, O best of the Bharatas, by giving away a shed for the shelter of kine that can keep out cold and rain and that is substantial in structure, the giver rescues seven generations of his race (from Hell).[31] By giving away a piece of earth worthy of tillage, the giver attains to excellent prosperity. By giving a piece of earth containing mineral wealth, the giver aggrandises his family and race.[32] One should never give away earth that is barren or that is burnt (arid); nor should one

* When a residential house is given away unto such a Brāhmana and the receiver resides in it, the giver reaps the reward indicated. It does not refer to the hospitable shelter to such a Brāhmana given by one in one's own house.—T.

give away any earth that is in close vicinity to a crematorium, or that has been owned and enjoyed by a sinful person before such gift.[33] When a man performs a Crāddha in honor of the Pitris on earth belonging to another person, the Pitris render both the gift of that earth and the Crāddha itself futile.*[34] Hence, one possessed of wisdom should buy even a small piece of earth and make a gift of it. The Pinda that is offered to one's ancestors on earth that has been duly purchased, becomes inexhaustible.†[35] Forests, and mountains, and rivers, and Tirthas, are regarded as having no owners. No earth need be purchased here for performing Crāddhas.[36] Even this has been said, O king, on the subject of the merits of making gifts of earth. After this, O sinless one, I shall discourse to thee on the subject of the gift of kine.[37] Kine are regarded as superior to all the ascetics. And since it is so, the divine Mahādeva for that reason performed penances in their company.[38] Kine, O Bhārata, dwell in the region of Brahman, in the company of Soma. Constituting as it does the highest end, regenerate Rishis crowned with success strive to attain to that very region.[39] Kine benefit human beings with milk, ghee, curds, dung, skin, bones, horns, and hair, O Bhārata.[40] Kine do not feel cold or heat. They always work. The season of rains also cannot afflict them at all.[41] And since kine attain to the highest end, (*viz.*, residence in the region of Brahman), in the company of Brāhmanas, therefore do the wise say that kine and Brāhmanas are equal.[42] In days of yore, king Rantideva performed a grand sacrifice in which an immense number of kine were offered up and slaughtered. From the juice that was secreted by the skins of the slaughtered animals, a river was formed that came to be called by the name of Charmanwati.[43] Kine no longer form animals fit for sacrifice. They now constitute animals that are fit for gift. That king who

* To this day, in Bengal at least, a tenant never performs the first Crāddha or a Poojah (worship of the deities) without obtaining in the first instance the permission of the landlord. There is in Crāddhas a Rājavarana or royal fee payable to the owner of the earth on which the Crāddha is performed.—T.

† 'Tasyām' is explained by the Commentator as 'kritāyām.'—T.

makes gifts of kine unto foremost of Brāhmanas, O monarch, is sure to cross over every calamity even if he falls into it. The man who makes a gift of a thousand kine has not to go to hell.[44-45] Such a person, O ruler of men, obtains victory everywhere. The very chief of the deities had said that the milk of kine is nectar.[46] For this reason, one who makes a gift of a cow is regarded as making a gift of nectar. Persons conversant with the Vedas have declared that the Ghee manufactured from vaccine milk is the very best of all libations poured upon the sacrificial fire.[47] For this reason, the man who makes a gift of a cow is regarded as making a gift of a libation for sacrifice. A bovine bull is the embodiment of Heaven. He who makes the gift of a bovine bull unto an accomplished Brāhmana, receives great honors in Heaven. Kine, O chief of Bharata's race, are said to be the life breaths of living creatures.[48-49] Hence, the man who makes the gift of a cow is said to make the gift of life-breaths. Persons conversant with the Vedas have said that kine constitute the great refuge of living creatures.[50] Hence, the man who makes the gift of a cow is regarded as making the gift of what is the high refuge of all creatures. The cow should never be given away for slaughter (*i. e.*, unto one who will kill her); nor should the cow be given unto a tiller of the soil; nor should the cow be given unto an atheist. The cow should not also, O chief of the Bharatas, be given unto one whose occupation is the keep of kine.*[51] The wise have said that the person who gives away the cow unto any of such sinful persons has to sink in everlasting Hell.[52] One should never give unto a Brāhmana a cow that is lean, or that produces calves that do not live, or that is barren, or that is diseased, or that is defective of limb, or that is worn out with toil.[53] The man that gives away ten thousand kine attains to Heaven and sports in bliss in the companionship of Indra. The man who makes gifts of kine by hundred thousands acquires many regions of

* 'Kināça' is either one who tills the soil with the aid of bulls or one who slays cattle. Having first mentioned 'vadhārtham,' 'kināça' should be here taken for a tiller. 'Kasāi,' meaning butcher, seems to be a corruption of the word 'kināça.'—T.

inexhaustible felicity.[54] Thus have I recited to thee the merits attaching to the gift of kine and of sesame, as also to the gift of earth. Listen now to me as I discourse to thee upon the gift of food, O Bhārata.[55] The gift of food, O son of Kunti, is regarded as a very superior gift. King Rantideva in days of yore ascended to Heaven by having made gifts of food.[56] That king who makes a gift of food unto one that is toil-worn and hungry, attains to that region of supreme felicity which is the Self-born's own.[57] Men fail to attain, by gifts of gold and robes and of other things, to that felicity which givers of food succeed in attaining to, O thou of great puissance![58] Food is, indeed, the first article. Food is regarded as the highest prosperity. It is from food that life springs, as also energy and prowess and strength.[59] He who always makes gifts of food, with attention, unto the righteous, never falls into any distress. Even this has been said by Parāçara.[60] Having worshipped the deities duly, food should be first dedicated to them. It has been said, O king, that the kind of food that is taken by particular men is taken also by the deities those men worship.*[61] That man who makes gifts of food in the lighted fortnight of the month of Kārtika, succeeds in crossing every difficulty here and attains to inexhaustible felicity hereafter.[62] That man who makes a gift of food unto a hungry guest arrived at his abode, attains to all those regions, O chief of Bharata's race, that are reserved for persons acquainted with Brahma.[63] The man who makes gifts of food is sure to cross every difficulty and distress. Such a person crosses over every sin and cleanses himself of every evil act.[64] I have thus discoursed to thee upon the merits of making gifts of food, of sesame, of earth, and of kine.' "[65]

---

* One need not dedicate unto one's deities any other food than what one takes oneself. In the 'Rāmāyana' it has been said that Rāma offered unto the Pitris astringent fruits while he was in exile, for these fruits where his own food at the time he dedicated them to his ancestors. The Piçāchas dedicate carrion unto their deities for they themselves subsist upon carrion.—T.

Section LXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I have heard, O sire, of the merits of the different kinds of gift upon which thou hast discoursed to me. I understand, O Bhārata, that the gift of food is especially laudable and superior.[1] What, however, are the great merits of making gifts of drink. I desire to hear of this in detail, O grandsire!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall, O chief of Bharata's race, discourse to thee upon this subject. Listen to me, O thou of unbaffled prowess, as I speak to thee![3] I shall, O sinless one, discourse unto thee of gifts beginning with that of drink. The merit that a man acquires by making gifts of food and of drink is such that the like of it, I think, is incapable of being acquired through any other gift. There is no gift, therefore, that is superior to that of either food or drink. It is from food that all living creatures are able to exist.[4-5] For this reason, food is regarded as a very superior object in all the worlds. From food the strength and energy of living creatures constantly increases.[6] Hence, the lord of all creatures has himself said that the gift of food is a very superior gift. Thou hast heard, O son of Kunti, what the auspicious words are of Sāvitri herself (on the subject of the gift of food).[7] Thou knowest for what reason those words were said, what those words were, and how they were said in course of the sacred Mantras, O thou of great intelligence. A man, by making a gift of food, really makes a gift of life itself.[8] There is no gift in this world that is superior to the gift of life. Thou art not unacquainted with this saying of Lomaça, O thou of mighty arms![9] The end that was attained to in former days by king Civi in consequence of his having granted life to the pigeon is acquired by him, O monarch, who makes a gift of food unto a Brāhmana.[10] Hence, it has been heard by us that they that give life attain to very superior regions of felicity in after life. Food, O best of the Kurus, may or may not be superior to drink.[11] Nothing can exist without the aid of what springs from water. The very lord of all the planets, *viz.*, the illustrious Soma, has sprung from water.[12] Amrita and Sudhā and Swadhā and milk, as

also every kind of food, the deciduous herbs, O monarch, and creepers (medicinal and of other virtues), spring from water.[13] From these, O king, the life-breaths of all living creatures flow. The deities have nectar for their food. The Nāgas have Sudhā.[14] The Pitris have Swadhā for theirs. The animals have herbs and plants for their food. The wise have said that rice, &c., constitute the food of human beings.[15] All these, O chief of men, spring from water. Hence, there is nothing superior to the gift of water or drink.[16] If a person wishes to secure prosperity for himself, he should always make gifts of drink. The gift of water is regarded as very praiseworthy. It leads to great fame and bestows long life on the giver.[17] The giver of water, O son of Kunti, always stays over the heads of his enemies. Such a person obtains the fruition of all his wishes and earns everlasting fame.[18] The giver, O chief of men, becomes cleansed of every sin and obtains unending felicity hereafter as he proceeds to Heaven, O thou of great splendour. Manu himself has said that such a person earns regions of inexhaustible bliss in the other world.' "[19]

SECTION LXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Do thou discourse to me once again, O grandsire, upon the merits attaching to gifts of sesame and of lamps for lighting darkness, as also of food and robes.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, O Yudhishthira, is recited the narrative of the discourse that took place in ancient times between a Brāhmana and Yama.[2] In the country lying between the rivers Gangā and Yamunā, at the foot of the hills called Yāmuna, there was a large town inhabited by Brāhmanas.[3] The town was celebrated under the name of Parnaçālā and was very delightful in appearance, O king. A large number of learned Brāhmanas lived in it.[4] One day, Yama, the ruler of the dead, commanded a messenger of his, who was clad in black, endued with blood-red eyes and hair standing erect, and possessed of feet, eyes, and nose all of which resembled those of a crow, saying,[5]—Go thou to the town inhabited by Brāhmanas and bring hither the person known by the name of

Carmin and belonging by birth to the race of Agastya.[6] He is intent on mental tranquillity and possessed of learning. He is a preceptor engaged in teaching the Vedas and his practices are well-known. Do not bring me another person belonging to the same race and living in the same neighbourhood.[7] This other man is equal unto him I want in virtues, study, and birth. In respect of children and conduct, this other resembles the intelligent Carmin.[8] Do thou bring the individual I have in view. He should be worshipped with respect (instead of being dragged hither with irreverence).—The messenger, proceeding to the place, did the very reverse of what he had been bidden to do.[9] Attacking that person, he brought him who had been forbidden by Yama to be brought. Possessed of great energy, Yama rose up at the sight of the Brāhmana and worshipped him duly.[10] The king of the dead then commanded his messenger, saying,—Let this one be taken back, and let the other one be brought to me!—When the great judge of the dead said these words, that Brāhmana addressed him and said,—I have completed my study of the Vedas and am no longer attached to the world. Whatever period may yet remain of my mortal existence, I wish to pass, dwelling even here, O thou of unfading glory!—[11-12]

"'Yama said,—I cannot ascertain the exact period, ordained by Time, of one's life, and hence, unurged by Time, I cannot allow one to take up one's residence here. I take note of the acts of righteousness (or otherwise) that one does in the world.[13] Do thou, O learned Brāhmana of great splendour, return immediately to thy abode. Tell me what also is in thy mind and what I can do for thee, O thou of unfading glory!*—[14]

"'The Brāhmana said,—Do thou tell me what those acts are by accomplishing which one may earn great merit. O best of all beings, thou art the foremost of authorities (on this subject) in even the three worlds!—[15]

"'Yama said,—Do thou hear, O regenerate Rishi, the ex-

* The first line of 13 and the last line of 14 are very terse. 'Kālasya vihitām,' as explained by the Commentator, is 'āyuh pramānam;' 'na prāpnomi' is 'na jānāmi.' The sense is that 'unurged by Time, I cannot allow thee to take up thy residence here.'—T.

cellent ordinances regarding gifts. The gift of sesame seeds is a very superior gift. It produces everlasting merit.[16] O foremost of regenerate ones, one should make gifts of as much sesame as one can. By making gifts of sesame every day, one is sure to attain the fruition of one's every wish.[17] The gift of sesame at Crāddhas is applauded. Verily, the gift of sesame is a very superior gift. Do thou make gifts of sesame unto the Brāhmanas according to the rites ordained in the scriptures.[18] One should, on the day of the full moon of the month of Vaiçākha, make gifts of sesame unto the Brāhmanas. They should also be made to eat and to touch sesame on every occasion that one can afford.[19] They that are desirous of achieving what is beneficial for them should, with their whole souls, do this in their houses.* Without doubt, men should similarly make gifts of water and establish resting places for the distribution of drinking water.†[20] One should cause tanks and lakes and wells to be excavated. Such acts are rare in the world, O best of regenerate persons![21] Do thou always make gifts of water. This act is fraught with great merit. O best of regenerate persons, for making such gifts thou shouldst establish resting places along the roads for the distribution of water.[22] After one has eaten, the gift unto one should especially be made of water for drink.—'[23]

"Bhishma continued,—'After Yama had said these words unto him, the messenger who had borne him from his abode conveyed him back to it. The Brāhmana, on his return, obeyed the instructions he had received.[24] Having thus conveyed him back to his abode, the messenger of Yama fetched Carmin

---

* *I. e.*, invite Brāhmanas to feasts in which sesame should predominate.—T.

† In Bengal, to this day, those who can afford, particularly pious ladies, establish shady resting places in the month of Vaiçākha (the hottest month of the year), by the side of the public roads, for travellers, where good cool drinking water, a handful of well-drenched oats, and a little of raw sugar, are freely distributed. Such institutions, on the old Beneras Road and the Grand Trunk Road, considerably refresh travellers. There are miles upon miles along these roads where good water is not at all procurable.—T.

whom had really been sought by Yama. Taking Carmin unto him, he informed his master.[25] Possessed of great energy, the judge of the dead worshipped that righteous Brāhmana, and having conversed with him awhile dismissed him for being taken back to his abode.[26] Unto him also Yama gave the same instructions. Carmin too, coming back into the world of men, did all that Yama had said.[27] Like the gift of water, Yama, from desire of doing good to the Pitris, applauds the gift of lamps to light dark places. Hence, the giver of a lamp for lighting a dark place is regarded as benefiting the Pitris.[28] Hence, O best of the Bharatas, one should always give lamps for lighting dark spots. The giving of lamps enhances the visual power of the deities, the Pitris, and one's own self.*[29] It has been said, O king, that the gift of gems is a very superior gift. The Brāhmana, who having accepted a gift of gems, sells the same for performing a sacrifice, incurs no fault.[30] The Brāhmana who having accepted a gift of gems makes a gift of them unto Brāhmanas, acquires inexhaustible merit himself and confers inexhaustible merit upon him from whom he had originally received them.[31] Conversant with every duty, Manu himself has said that he who, observant of proper restraints, makes a gift of gems unto a Brāhmana observant of proper restraints, earns inexhaustible merit himself and confers inexhaustible merit upon the recipient.[32] The man who is content with his own wedded wife and who makes a gift of robes, earns an excellent complexion and excellent vestments for himself.[33] I have told thee, O foremost of men, what the merits are that attach to gifts of kine, of gold, and of sesame, agreeably to diverse precepts of the Vedas and the scriptures.[34] One should marry and raise offspring upon one's wedded wives. Of all acquisitions, O son of Kuru's race, that of male issue is regarded as the foremost.' "[35]

---

* What is meant by the giving of lamps is the placing of lighted lamps in dark places which are the resorts of men, such as roads and *ghats*, &c.—T.

Section LXIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Do thou, O foremost one of Kuru's race, discourse unto me once again of the excellent ordinances regarding gifts, with especial reverence, O thou of great wisdom to the gift of earth.[1] A Kshatriya should make gifts of earth unto a Brāhmana of righteous deeds. Such a Brāhmana should accept the gift with due rites. None else, however, than a Kshatriya is competent to make gifts of Earth.[2] It behooves thee now to tell me what those objects are that persons of all classes are free to bestow if moved by the desire of earning merit. Thou shouldst also tell me what has been said in the Vedas on this subject.'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'There are three gifts that go by the same name and that are productive of equal merits. Indeed, these three confer the fruition of every wish. The three objects whose gifts are of such a character are kine, earth, and knowledge.*[4] That person who tells his disciple words of righteous import drawn from the Vedas acquires merit equal to that which is won by making gifts of earth and kine.[5] Similarly are kine praised (as objects of gifts). There is no object of gift higher than they. Kine are supposed to confer merit immediately. They are also, O Yudhishthira, such that a gift of them cannot but lead to great merit.[6] Kine are the mothers of all creatures. They bestow every kind of happiness. The person that desires his own prosperity should always make gifts of kine.[7] No one should kick at Kine or proceed through the midst of kine. Kine are goddesses and homes of auspiciousness. For this reason they always deserve worship.[8] Formerly, the deities, while tilling the earth whereon they performed a sacrifice, used the goad for striking the bullocks yoked to the plough. Hence, in tilling earth for such a purpose, one may, without incurring censure or sin, apply the goad to bullocks. In other acts, however, bullocks should never be struck with the goad or the whip.[9] When kine are grazing or lying down,

* 'Of equal name' because the word 'go' means cow, earth, and speech.—T.

no one should annoy them in any way. When thirsty and they do not get water (in consequence of any one obstructing their access to the pool or tank or river), kine, by merely looking at such a person, can destroy him with all his relatives and friends.[10] What creatures can be more sacred than kine when with the very dung of kine altars whereon Crāddhas are performed in honor of the Pitris, or those whereon the deities are worshipped, are cleansed and sanctified?[11] That man who, before eating himself, gives every day, for a year, only a handful of grass unto a cow belonging to another, is regarded as undergoing a vow or observance which bestows the fruition of every wishes.[12] Such a person acquires children and fame and wealth and prosperity, and dispels all evils and bad dreams.'[13]

"Yudhishthira said,—'What should be the indications of those kine that deserve to be given away? What are those kine that should be passed over in the matter of gifts? What should be the characters of those persons unto whom should kine be given? Who, again, are those unto whom kine should not be given?'[14]

"Bhishma said,—'A cow should never be given unto one that is not righteous in behaviour, or one that is sinful, or one that is covetous, or one that is untruthful in speech, or one that does not make offerings unto the Pitris and deities.[15] A person, by making a gift of ten kine unto a Brāhmana learned in the Vedas, poor in earthly wealth, possessed of many children, and owning a domestic fire, attains to numerous regions of great felicity.[16] When a man performs any act that is fraught with merit, assisted by what he has got in gift from another, a portion of the merit attaching to that act becomes always his with whose wealth the act has been accomplished.[17] He that procreates a person, he that rescues a person, and he that assigns the means of sustenance to a person, are regarded as the three sires.[18] Services dutifully rendered to the preceptor destroys sin. Pride destroys even great fame. The possession of three children destroys the reproach of childlessness, and the possession of ten kine dispels the reproach of poverty.[19] Unto one that is devoted to the Vedānta, that is endued with great learning, that has been filled with wisdom, that has a complete

control over his senses, that is observant of the restraints laid down in the scriptures, that has withdrawn himself from all warldly attachments, unto him that says agreeable words unto all creatures, unto him that would never do an evil act even when impelled by hunger, unto one that is mild or possessed of a peaceful disposition, unto one that is hospitable to all guests, —verily, unto such a Brāhmana, should a man possessed of similar conduct and owning children and wives, assign the means of sustenance.[20-21] The measure of merit that attaches to the gift of kine unto a deserving person is exactly the measure of the sin that attaches to the act of robbing a Brāhmana of what belongs to him. Under all circumstances should the spoliation of what belongs to a Brāhmana be avoided, and his spouses kept at a distance.' "[22]

SECTION LXX.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, O perpetuater of Kuru's race, is recited by the righteous the narrative of the great calamity that overtook king Nriga in consequence of his spoliation of what had belonged to a Brāhmana.[1] Sometime before, certain youths of Yadu's race, while searching for water, came upon a large well covered with grass and creepers.[2] Desirous of drawing water from it, they laboured very much for removing the creepers that covered its mouth. After the mouth had been cleaned, they beheld within the well a very large lizard residing within it. The youths made strong and repeated efforts for rescuing the lizard from that situation.[3-4] Resembling a very hill in size, the lizard was sought to be freed by means of cords and leathern tongs. Not succeeding in their intentions, the youths then went to Janārddana.[5] Addressing him they said.—Covering the entire space of a well, there is a very large lizard to be seen. Notwithstanding our best efforts we have not succeeded in rescuing it from that situation!—Even this was what they represented unto Krishna.[6] Vāsudeva then proceeded to the spot and took out the lizard and questioned it as who it was. The lizard said that it was identical with the soul of king Nriga who had flourished in days of old

and who had performed many sacrifices.[7] Unto the lizard that said those words, Mādhava spoke,—Thou hadst done many righteous acts. No sin didst thou commit. Why then, O king, hast thou attained to such a distressful end? Do thou explain what is this and why has it been brought about?[8] We have heard that thou didst repeatedly make gifts unto the Brāhmanas of hundreds upon hundreds of thousands and once again eight times hundreds upon hundreds of ten thousands of kine.* Why, therefore, has this end overtaken thee?[9]—Nriga then replied unto Krishna, saying,—On one occasion a cow belonging to a Brāhmana who regularly worshipped his domestic fire, escaping from the owner's abode while he was absent from home entered my flock.[10] The keepers of my cattle included that cow in their tale of a thousand. In time that cow was given away by me unto a Brāhmana, acting as I did from desire of happiness in heaven.[11] The true owner, returning home, sought for his lost cow and at last saw it in the house of another. Finding her, the owner said,—This cow is mine![12]—The other person contested his claim, till both, disputing and excited with wrath, came to me. Addressing me, one of them said,—Thou hast been the giver of this cow!—The other one said,—Thou hast robbed me of this cow because she is mine![13]—I then solicited the Brāhmana unto whom I had given that cow, to return the gift in exchange for hundreds upon hundreds of other kine. Without acceding to my earnest solicitations, he addressed me, saying,[14]—The cow I have got is well-suited to time and place. She yields a copious measure of milk, besides being very quiet and very fond of us. The milk she yields is very sweet. She is regarded as worthy of every praise in my house.[15] She is nourishing, besides, a weak child of mine that has just been weaned. She is incapable of being given up by me!—Having said these words, the Brāhmana went away.[16] I then solicited the other Brāhmana offering him an exchange, and saying,—Do thou take a hundred thousand kine for this one cow![17]—The Brāhmana, however, replied unto me, saying,—

* No particular number is intended. What is meant is—innumerable.—T.

I do not accept gifts from persons of the kingly order. I am able to get on without help. Do thou then, without loss of time, give me that very cow which was mine!—Even thus, O slayer of Madhu, did that Brāhmana speak unto me.[18] I offered to make gifts unto him of gold and silver and horses and cars. That foremost of Brāhmanas refused to accept any of these in gift and went away.[19] Meanwhile, urged by Time's irresistible influence, I had to depart from this world. Wending to the region of the Pitris I was taken to the presence of the king of the dead.[20] Worshipping me duly, Yama addressed me, saying,—The end cannot be ascertained, O king, of thy righteous deeds.[21] There is, however, a little sin which was unconsciously perpetrated by thee. Do thou suffer the punishment for that sin now or afterwards as it pleases thee![22] Thou hadst (upon thy accession to the throne) sworn that thou wouldst protect (all persons in the enjoyment of their own). That oath of thine was not rigidly kept by thee. That tookest also what belonged to a Brāhmana. Even this has been the twofold sin thou hast committed![23]—I answered, saying,—I shall first undergo the distress of punishment, and when that is over, I shall enjoy the happiness that is in store for me, O lord!—After I had said those words unto the king of the dead, I fell down on the Earth.[24] Though fallen down I still could hear the words that Yama said unto me very loudly. Those words were,—Janārddana the son of Vasudeva will rescue thee![25] Upon the completion of a full thousand years, when the demerit will be exhausted of thy sinful act, thou shalt then attain to many regions of inexhaustible felicity that have been acquired by thee through thy own acts of righteousness![26]—Falling down I found myself, with head downwards, within this well, transformed into a creature of the intermediate order. Memory, however, did not leave me.[27] By thee I have been rescued today. What else can it testify than the puissance of thy penances? Let me have thy permission, O Krishna! I desire to ascend to Heaven![28]—Permitted then by Krishna, king Nriga bowed his head unto him and then mounted a celestial car and proceeded to Heaven.[29] After Nriga had thus proceeded to Heaven, O best of the Bharatas,

Vāsudeva recited this Verse, O delighter of the Kurus.[30] No one should consciously appropriate anything belonging to a Brāhmana. The property of a Brāhmana, if taken, destroys the taker even as the Brāhmana's cow destroyed king Nriga![31]—I tell thee, again, O Pārtha, that a meeting with the good never proves fruitless. Behold, king Nriga was rescued from Hell through a meeting of his with one that is good.[32] As a gift is productive of merit, even so an act of spoliation leads to demerit. Hence also, O Yudhishthira, one should avoid doing any injury to kine.' "*[33]

Section LXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O sinless one, do thou discourse to me more in detail upon the merits that are attainable by making gifts of kine. O thou of mighty arms, I am never satiated with thy words!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is recited the old history of the discourse between the Rishi Uddālaki and him called Nāchiketa.[2] Once on a time the Rishi Uddālaki endued with great intelligence, approaching his son Nāchiketa, said unto him,—Do thou wait upon and serve me![3]—Upon the completion of the vow he had observed, the great Rishi once more said unto his son,—Engaged in performing my ablutions and deeply taken up with my Vedic study,[4] I have forgotten to bring with me the fire-wood, the Kuça blades, the flowers, the water-jar, and the potherbs I had gathered. Do thou bring me those things from the river-shore.[5]—The son proceeded to the spot indicated, but saw that all the articles had been washed away by the current. Coming back to his father, he said—I do not see the things![6]—Afflicted as he then was by hunger, thirst, and fatigue, the Rishi Uddālaki of high ascetic merit, in a sudden wrath, cursed his son, saying,—Do thou meet with Yama today![7]—Thus struck by his sire with the thunder of his speech, the son, with joined

---

* The 'hence' in the last line has reference to what has been said before on the subject of kine, and not to the first line of the Verse.—T.

hands, said,—Be gratified with me!—Soon, however, he fell down on the earth, deprived of life.[8] Beholding Nāchiketa prostrated upon the earth, his sire became deprived of his senses through grief. He too, exclaiming,—Alas, what have I done!—fell down on the earth.[9] Filled with grief as he indulged in lamentations for his son, the rest of that day passed away and night came.[10] Then Nāchiketa, O son of Kuru's race, drenched by the tears of his father, gave signs of returning life as he lay on a mat of Kuça grass. His restoration to life under the tears of his sire resembled the sprouting forth of seeds when drenched with auspicious showers.[11] The son just restored to consciousness was still weak. His body was smeared with fragrant unguents and he looked like one just awaking from a deep slumber. The Rishi asked him, saying,[12]—Hast thou, O son, acquired auspicious regions by thy own acts? By good luck, thou hast been restored to me! Thy body does not seem to be human![13]—Thus asked by his high-souled father, Nāchiketa who had seen every thing with his own eyes, made the following answer unto him in the midst of the Rishis.[14]—In obedience to thy command I proceeded to the extensive region of Yama which is possessed of a delightful effulgence. There I beheld a palatial mansion which extended for thousands of Yojanas and emitted a golden splendour from every part.[15] As soon as Yama beheld me approaching with face towards him, he commanded his attendants, saying,—Give him a good seat.—Verily, the king of the dead, for thy sake worshipped me with the Arghya and the other ingredients.[16] Thus worshipped by Yama and seated in the midst of his counsellers, I then asked him mildly,—I have come to thy abode, O judge of the dead! Do thou assign me those regions which I deserve for my acts![17]—Yama then answered me, saying,—Thou art not dead, O amiable one! Endued with penances, thy father said unto thee—Do thou meet with Yama!—The energy of thy sire is like that of a blazing fire. I could not possibly falsify that speech of his.[18] Thou hast seen me. Do thou go hence, O child! The author of thy body is indulging in lamentations for thee. Thou art my dear guest. What wish of thine cherished by thee in thy heart shall I grant thee? Solicit the fruition

of whatever desire thou mayst cherish![19]—Thus addressed by him, I replied unto the king of the dead, saying,—I have arrived within thy dominions from which no traveller ever returns. If I really be an object deserving of thy attentions, I desire, O king of the dead, to have a sight of those regions of high prosperity and happiness that have been reserved for doers of righteous deeds![20]—Thus addressed by me, Yama caused me to be mounted upon a vehicle of splendour as effulgent as that of the Sun and unto which were harnessed many excellent steeds. Bearing me on that vehicle, he showed me, O foremost of regenerate persons, all those delightful regions that are reserved for the righteous.[21] I beheld in those regions many mansions of great rasplendence intended for high-souled persons. Those mansions are of diverse forms and are adorned with every kind of gems.[22] Bright as the disc of the Moon, they are ornamented with rows of tinkling bells. Hundreds among them are of many stories. Within them are pleasant groves and woods, and transparent pieces of water.[23] Possessed of the effulgence of *lapis lazuli* and the Sun, and made of silver and gold, their complexion resembles that of the morning Sun. Some of them are immovable and some movable.[24] Within them are many hills of viands and enjoyable articles, and robes and beds in abundance. Within them are many trees capable of granting the fruition of every wish.[25] There are also many rivers and roads and spacious halls and lakes and large tanks. Thousands of cars with rattling wheels may be seen there, having excellent steeds harnessed unto them.[26] Many rivers that run milk, many hills of ghee, and large pieces of transparent water occur there. Verily, I beheld many such regions, never seen by me before, of happiness and joy, approved by the king of the dead.[27] Beholding all those objects, I addressed the ancient and puissant judge of the dead, saying,—For whose use and enjoyment have these rivers with eternal currents of milk and ghee been ordained?[28]—Yama answered me, saying,—These streams of vaccine milk and ghee, know thou, are for the enjoyment of those righteous persons that make gifts in the world of men. Other eternal worlds there are which are filled with such mansions free from

sorrow of every kind. These are reserved for those persons that are engaged in making gifts of kine.*[29] The mere gift of kine is not worthy of praise. There are considerations of propriety or otherwise about the person unto whom kine should be given, the time for making those gifts, the kind of kine that should form the subject of gifts, and the rites that should be observed in making the gifts. Gifts of kine should be made after ascertaining the distinctive qualifications of both Brāhmanas (who are to receive them) and the kine themselves (which are to be given away). Kine should not be given unto one in whose abode they are likely to suffer from fire or the sun.[30] That Brāhmana who is possessed of Vedic lore, who is of austere penances, and who performs sacrifices, is regarded as worthy of receiving kine in gift. Those kine that have been rescued from distressful situations, or that have been given by poor householders from want of sufficient means to feed and cherish them, are, for these reasons, reckoned as of high value.†[31] Abstaining from all food and living upon water alone for three nights and sleeping the while on the bare earth, one should, having properly fed the kine one intends to give away, give them unto Brāhmanas after having gratified them also (with other gifts).[32] The kine given away should be accompanied by their calves. They should, again, be such as to bring forth good calves at the proper seasons. They should be accompanied with other articles when so given away. Having completed the gift, the giver should live for three days on only vaccine secretions and forbearing from food of every other kind.[33] He who gives a cow that is not vicious, that brings forth good calves at proper intervals, and that does not fly away from the owner's house, and accompanies such gift with a vessel of white brass for milking her, enjoys the felicity of Heaven for as many years

---

* 'Vitaçokaih' in the instrumental plural refers to "Bhavanaih" or some such substantive understood. It may also be read as a nominative plural, refering to 'Lokāh.'—T.

† Very probably what is said here is that only such kine are worthy of being given away unto Brāhmanas, and not lean animals bought for gift.—T.

as are measured by the number of hairs on the animal's body. He who gives a bull unto a Brāhmana, that is well-broken and capable of bearing burthens, possessed of strength and young in years, disinclined to do any mischief, large-sized and endued with energy, enjoys those regions, approved of the righteous, that are reserved for givers of kine.[34] He is regarded as a proper person for receiving a cow in gift who is known to be mild towards kine, who takes kine for his refuge, who is grateful, and who has no means of subsistence assigned unto him. When an old man becomes ill, or when a famine occurs, or when a Brāhmana intends to perform a sacrifice, or when one wishes to till for agriculture, or when one gets a son through the efficacy of a Homa performed for the purpose,[35] or for the use of one's preceptor, or for the sustenance of a child (born in the usual way), one should give away a loved cow. Even these are the considerations that are applauded (in the matter of making gifts of kine) in respect of place and time. The kine that deserve to be given away are those that yield copious measures of milk, or those that are well known (for their docility and other virtues), or those that have been purchased for a price, or those that have been acquired as honoraria for learning, or those that have been obtained in exchange by offering other living creatures (such as sheep and goats, &c.,) or those that have been won by prowess of arms, or those that have been got as marriage-dower (from fathers in-law and other relations of the wife).—[36]

"'Nāchiketa continued,—Hearing these words of Vaivaswata, I once more addressed him, saying.—What are those objects by giving which, when kine are not procurable, givers may yet go to regions reserved for men making gifts of kine ![37] —Questioned by me, the wise Yama answered, explaining further what the end is that is attainable by making gifts of kine. He said,—In the absence of kine, a person by making gifts of what has been regarded as the substitute of kine, wins the merit of making gifts of kine.[38] If in the absence of kine, one makes a gift of a cow made of ghee, observant of a vow the while, one gets for one's use these rivers of ghee all of which approach one like an affectionate mother approaching her loved

child.[39] If, in the absence of even a cow made of ghee, one makes a gift of a cow made of sesame seeds, observing a vow the while, one succeeds with the assistance of that cow to transgress all calamities in this world and to enjoy great happiness hereafter from these rivers of milk that thou beholdest![40] If, in the absence of a cow made of sesame seeds, one makes a gift of a cow made of water, one succeeds in coming to these happy regions and enjoying this river of cool and transparent water that is, besides, capable of granting the fruition of every wish.[41]—The king of the dead explained to me all this while I was his guest, and, O thou of unfading glory, great was the joy that I felt at sight of all the wonders he showed me.[42] I shall now tell thee what would certainly be agreeable to thee. I have now got a great sacrifice whose performance does not require much wealth. That sacrifice (constituted by gifts of kine) may be said to flow from me, O sire! Others will obtain it also. It is not inconsistent with the ordinances of the Vedas.[43] The curse that thou hadst denounced upon me was no curse but was in reality a blessing, since it enabled me to have a sight of the great king of the dead. There I have beheld what the rewards are that attach to gifts. I shall henceforth, O thou of great soul, practise the duty of gift without any doubt lurking in my mind respecting its rewards.[44] And, O great Rishi, the righteous Yama, filled with joy, repeatedly told me,—One who, by making frequent gifts, has succeeded in acquiring purity of mind should then make gifts of kine in especial.[45] This topic (about gifts) is fraught with sanctity. Do thou never disregard the duties in respect of gifts. Gifts, again, should be made unto deserving persons, when time and place are suitable. Do thou, therefore, always make gifts of kine. Never entertain any doubt in this respect.[46] Devoted to the path of gifts, many high-souled persons in days of yore used to make gifts of kine. Fearing to practise austere penances, they made gifts according to the extent of their power.[47] In time they cast off all sentiments of pride and vanity, and purified their souls. Engaged in performing Crāddhas in honor of the Pitris and in all acts of righteousness, they used to make, according to the extent of their power, gifts of kine, and as the reward of those

acts they have attained to Heaven and are shining in effulgence for such righteousness.[48] One should, on the eighth day of the moon that is known by the name of Kāmyāshtami, make gifts of kine, properly won, unto the Brāhmanas, after ascertaining the eligibility of the recipients (by the ordinances already laid down). After making the gift, one should then subsist for ten days together upon only the milk of kine, their dung and their urine, (abstaining from all other food the while).[49] The merit that one acquires by making a gift of a bull is equal to that which attaches to the divine vow. By making a gift of a couple of kine one acquires, as the reward thereof, a mastery of the Vedas. By making a gift of cars and vehicles with kine yoked thereto, one acquires the merit of baths in sacred waters. By making a gift of a cow of the Kapilā species, one becomes cleansed of all one's sins.[50] Verily, by giving away even a single cow of the Kapilā species that has been acquired by legitimate means, one becomes cleansed of all the sins one may have committed. There is nothing higher (in point of taste) than the milk which is yielded by kine. The gift of a cow is truly regarded as a very superior gift.[51] Kine, by yielding milk, rescue all the worlds from calamity. It is kine, again, that produce the food upon which creatures subsist. One who, knowing the extent of the service that kine do, does not entertain in one's heart affection for kine, is a sinner that is certain to sink in Hell.*[52] If one gives a thousand or a hundred or ten or five kine, verily, if one gives unto a righteous Brāhmana even a single cow which brings forth good calves at proper intervals, one is sure to see that cow approach one in Heaven in the form of a river of sacred water capable of granting the fruition of every wish.[53] In respect of the prosperity and the growth that kine confer, in the matter also of the protection that kine grant unto all creatures of the Earth, kine are equal to the very rays of the Sun

* Kine produce food not only by assisting at tillage of the soil, but also by aiding in the performance of sacrifices. The ghee burnt in the sacrificial fire sustains the deities, who pour rain and cause crops to grow.—T.

that fall on the Earth.* The word that signifies the cow stands also for the rays of the Sun. The giver of a cow becomes the progenitor of a very large race that extends over a large part of the Earth. Hence, he that gives a cow shines like a second Sun in resplendence.[54] The disciple should, in the matter of making gifts of kine, select his preceptor. Such a disciple is sure to go to Heaven everytime. The selection of a preceptor (in the matter of the performance of righteous deeds) is regarded as a high duty by persons conversant with the ordinances. This is, indeed, the initial ordinance. All other ordinances (respecting the gift of kine) depend upon it.†[55] Selecting, after examination, an eligible person among the Brāhmanas, one should make unto him the gift of a cow that has been acquired by legitimate means, and having made the gift cause him to accept it. The deities and men and ourselves also, in wishing good to others, say,—Let the merits attaching to gifts be thine in consequence of thy righteousness ?[56]—Even thus did the judge of the dead speak unto me, O regenerate Rishi. I then bowed my head unto the righteous Yama. Obtaining his permission I left his dominions and have now come to the sole of thy feet.—' "[57]

Section LXXII.

Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast, O grandsire, discoursed to me on the topic of gifts of kine in speaking of the Rishi Nāchiketa. Thou hast also, impliedly discoursed, O puissant one, on the efficacy and pre-eminence of that act.[1] Thou hast also told me, O grandsire of great intelligence, of the exceed-

---

* That heat is the originating principle of the growth of many things was well understood by the Rishis.—T.

† The sense seems to be this : in doing all righteous acts, one should first take the aid of a preceptor, even if one be well conversant with the ordinances one has to follow. Without the selection of a preceptor in the first place, there can be no righteous act. In the matter, therefore, of making gifts of kine according to the ordinances laid down, one should seek the help of a preceptor as well as in the matter of every other act of righteousness.—T.

ingly afflicting character of the calamity that overtook the high-souled king Nriga in consequence of a single fault of his.[2] He had to dwell for a long time at Dwārāvati (in the form of a mighty lizard) and how Krishna became the cause of his rescue from that miserable plight.[3] I have, however, one doubt. It is on the subject of the regions of kine. I desire to hear, in detail about those regions which are reserved for the residence of persons that make gifts of kine.'[4]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is recited the old narrative of the discourse between Him who sprang from the primeval lotus and him who performed a hundred sacrifices.[5]

" 'Cakra said,—I see, O Grandsire, that those who are residents of the region of kine transcend by their resplendence the prosperity of the denizens of Heaven and pass them by (as beings of an inferior station)! This has raised a doubt in my mind.[6] Of what kind, O holy one, are the regions of kine? Tell me all about them, O sinless one! Verily, what is the nature of those regions that are inhabited by givers of kine? I wish to know this![7] Of what kind are those regions? What fruits do they bring? What is the highest object there which the denizens thereof succeed in winning? What are its virtues? How also do men, freed from every kind of anxiety, succeed in going to those regions?[8] For what period does the giver of a cow enjoy the fruits that are borne by his gift? How may persons make gifts of many kine and how may they make gifts of a few kine?[9] What are the merits attaching to gifts of many kine and what those that attach to gifts of a few only? How also do persons become givers of kine without giving any kine in reality? Do thou tell me all this![10] How does one making gifts of even many kine, O puissant lord, become the equal of one that has made gifts of only a few kine? How also does one who makes gifts of only a few kine succeed in becoming the equal of one who has made gifts of many kine?[11] What kind of Dakshinā is regarded as distinguished for pre-eminence in the matter of gifts of kine? It behooveth thee, O holy one, to discourse unto me on all this agreeably to truth!' "—[12]

Section LXXIII.

"'The Grandsire said,—The questions thou hast asked me in respect of kine, beginning with their gift, are such that there is none else in the three worlds, O thou of a hundred sacrifices, who could put them![1] There are many kinds of regions, O Cakra, which are invisible to even thee. Those regions are seen by me, O Indra, as also by those women that are chaste and that have been attached to only one husband.[2] Rishis observant of excellent vows, by means of their deeds of righteousness and piety, and Brāhmanas of righteous souls, succeed in repairing to them in even their fleshly forms.[3] Men that are observant of excellent vows behold those regions which resemble the bright creations of dreams, aided by their cleansed minds and by that (temporary) emancipation which succeeds the loss of one's consciousness of body.*[4] Listen, O thou of a thousand eyes, to me as I tell thee what the attributes are with which those regions are endued. There the very course of Time is suspended. Decrepitude is not there, nor Fire which is omnipresent in the universe. There the slightest evil does not occur, nor disease, nor weakness of any kind.[5] The kine that live there, O Vāsava, obtain the fruition of every desire which they cherish in their hearts. I have direct experience of what I say unto thee.[6] Capable of going everywhere at will and actually repairing from place to place with ease, they enjoy the fruition of wish after wish as it arises in their minds. Lakes and tanks and rivers and forests of diverse kinds, and mansions and hills and all kinds of delightful objects,—delightful, that is, to all creatures,—are to be seen there. There is no region of felicity that is superior to any of these of which I speak.[7-8] All those formost of men, O Cakra, who are forgiving unto all creatures, who endure everything, who are full of affection for all things, who render dutiful obedience unto their

* When consciousness of body is lost in Yoga or Samādhi, a temporary Moksha or Emancipation succeeds. Men with cleansed minds behold at such times those regions of supreme felicity to which the speaker refers. Such felicity, of course, is the felicity of Brahma itself.—T.

preceptors, and who are freed from pride and vanity, repair to those regions of supreme felicity.[9] He who abstains from every kind of flesh, who is possessed of a cleansed heart, who is endued with righteousness, who worships his parents with reverence, who is endued with truthfulness of speech and conduct, who attends with obedience upon the Brāhmanas, who is faultless in conduct,[10] who never behaves with anger towards kine and towards the Brāhmanas, who is devoted to the accomplishment of every duty, who serves his preceptors with reverence, who is devoted for his whole life to truth and to gifts, and who is always forgiving towards all transgressions against himself,[11] who is mild and self-restrained, who is full of reverence for the deities, who is hospitable to all guests, who is endued with compassion,—verily, he who is adorned with these attributes,—succeeds in attaining to the eternal and immutable region of kine.[12] He who is stained with adultery, sees not such a region; nor he who is a slayer of his preceptor; nor he who speaks falsely or indulges in idle boasts; nor he who always disputes with others; nor he who behaves with hostility towards the Brāhmanas. Indeed, that wicked wight who is stained with such faults fails to attain even a sight of these regions of felicity;[13] nor he that injures his friends; nor he that is full of guile; nor he that is ungrateful; nor he that is a cheat; nor he that is crooked in conduct; nor he that is a disregarder of religion; nor he that is a slayer of Brāhmanas. Such men are incapable of beholding in even imagination the region of kine that is the abode of only those who are righteous of deeds.[14] I have told thee everything about the region of kine in minute detail, O chief of the deities! Hear now, O thou of a hundred sacrifices, the merit that is theirs who are engaged in making gifts of kine.[15] He who makes gifts of kine, after purchasing them with wealth obtained by inheritance or acquired lawfully by him, attains, as the fruit of such an act, to many regions of inexhaustible felicity.[16] He who makes a gift of a cow, having acquired it with wealth won at dice, enjoys felicity, O Cakra, for ten thousand years of celestial measure.[17] He who acquires a cow as his share of ancestral wealth is said to acquire her legitimately. Such a cow may be given away. They that

make gifts of kine so acquired obtain many eternal regions of felicity that is inexhaustible.[18] That person who having acquired a cow in gift makes a gift of her with a pure heart, succeeds without doubt, O lord of Cachi, in obtaining eternal regions of beatitude.[19] That person who with restrained senses speaks the truth from his birth (to the time of his death) and who endures everything at the hands of his preceptor and of the Brāhmanas, and who practices forgiveness, succeeds in attaining to an end that is equal to that of kine.[20] That speech which is improper, O lord of Cachi, should never be addressed to a Brāhmana. One, again, should not, in even one's mind, do an injury to a cow. One should, in one's conduct, imitate the cow, and show compassion towards the cow.*[21] Hear, O Cakra, what the fruits are that become his who is devoted to the duty of truth. If such a person gives away a single cow, that one cow becomes equal to a thousand kine.[22] If a Kshatriya, possessed of such qualifications, makes a gift of a single cow, his merit becomes equal to that of a Brāhmana's. That single cow, listen, O Cakra, which such a Kshatriya gives away becomes the source of as much merit as the single cow that a Brāhmana gives away under similar circumstances. Even this is the certain conclusion of the scriptures.[23] If a Vaiçya, possessed of similar accomplishments, were to make a gift of a single cow, that cow would be equal to five hundred kine (in respect of the merit she would produce). If a Cudra endued with humility were to make a gift of a cow, such cow would be equal to a hundred and twenty five kine (in respect of the merit it would produce).[24] Devoted to penances and truth, proficient (in the scriptures and all acts) through dutiful services rendered to his preceptor, endued with forgiveness of disposition, engaged in the worship of the deities, possessed of a tranquil soul, pure (in body and mind), enlightened, observant of all duties, and freed from every kind of egotism, that man who makes a gift of a cow unto a Brāhmana, certainly attains

* 'Govritti' is imitating the cow in the matter of providing for the morrow. Hence, one who never thinks of the morrow and never stores anything for future use, is meant.—T.

to great merit through that act of his, *viz.*, the gift, according to proper rites, of a cow yielding copious milk. Hence, one, with singleness of devotion, observant of truth, and engaged in humbly serving one's preceptor, should always make gifts of kine.*[25-26] Hear, O Cakra, what the merit is of that person who, duly studying the Vedas, shows reverence for kine, who always becomes glad at sight of kine, and who, since his birth always bows his head unto kine.[27] The merit that becomes one's by performing the Rājasuya sacrifice, the merit that becomes one's by making gifts of heaps of gold, that high merit is acquired by a person who shows such reverence for kine. Righteous Rishis and high-souled persons crowned with success have said so.[28] Devoted to truth, possessed of a tranquil soul, free from cupidity, always truthful in speech, and behaving with reverence towards kine with the steadiness of a vow, the man who, for a whole year, before himself taking any food, regularly presents some food to kine, wins the merit, by such an act, of the gift of a thousand kine.[29] That man who takes only one meal a day and who gives away the entire quantity of his other meal unto kine,—verily, that man, who thus reverences kine with the steadiness of a vow and shows such compassion towards them,—enjoys for ten years unlimited felicity.[30] That man who confines himself to only one meal a day and with the other meal saved for some time purchases a cow and makes a gift of it (unto a Brāhmana), earns, through that gift, O thou of a hundred sacrifices, the eternal merit that attaches to the gift of as many kine as there are hairs on the body of that single cow so given away.[31] These are declarations in respect of the merits that Brāhmanas acquire by making gifts of kine. Listen now to the merits that Kshatriyas may win. It has been said that a Kshatriya, by purchasing a cow in this manner and making a gift of it unto a Brāhmana, acquires great felicity for five years. A Vaiçya, by such conduct, acquires only half the merit of a Kshatriya, and a Cudra, by such conduct, earns half the merit

* 'Etachcha' in 25 implies gift of a cow, and 'enam' refers to a Brāhmana. 'Dwijāya dattwā &c.,' in the first line of 26 seems to be an elaboration of 'Etachcha.'—T.

that a Vaiçya does.[32] That man who sells himself and with the proceeds thereof purchases kine and gives them away unto Brāhmanas, enjoys felicity in Heaven for as long a period as kine are seen on Earth.[33] It has been said, O highly blessed one, that in every hair of such kine as are purchased with the proceeds obtained by selling oneself, there is a region of inexhaustible felicity. That man who having acquired kine by battle makes gifts of them (unto Brāhmanas),[34] acquires as much merit as he who makes gifts of kine after having purchased the same with the proceeds of selling oneself. That man who, in the absence of kine, makes a gift of a cow made of sesame seeds, restraining his senses the while, is rescued by such a cow from every kind of calamity or distress. Such a man sports in great felicity.[35] The mere gift of kine is not fraught with merit. The considerations of deserving recipients, of time, of the kind of kine, and of the ritual to be observed, should be attended to. One should ascertain the proper time for making a gift of kine. One should also ascertain the distinctive qualifications of both Brāhmanas (who are to receive them) and of kine themselves (which are to be given away). Kine should not be given unto one in whose abode they are likely to suffer from fire or the sun.[36] One who is rich in Vedic lore, who is of pure lineage, who is endued with a tranquil soul, who is devoted to the performance of sacrifices, who fears the commission of sin, who is possessed of varied knowledge, who is compassionate towards kine, who is mild in behaviour, who accords protection unto all that seek it of him, and who has no means of sustenance assigned unto him, is regarded as a proper person for receiving a gift of kine.[37] Unto a Brāhmana who has no means of sustenance, unto him while he is exceedingly afflicted for want of food (in a time of famine, for example), for purposes of agriculture, for a child born in consequence of Homa, for the purposes of his preceptor, for the sustenance of a child born (in the ordinary course), should a cow be given. Verily, the gift should be made at a proper time and in a proper place.*[38] Those kine, O Cakra, whose dispositions are well

* 'Homyahetoh prasute' implies 'for a child born in consequence of

known, which have been acquired as honoraria for knowledge, or which have been purchased in exchange for other animals (such as goats, sheep, &c)., or which have been won by prowess of arms, or obtained as marriage-dower, or which have been acquired by being rescued from situations of danger, or which, incapable of being maintained by their poor owners, have been made over for careful keep, to one's house with the desire of remaining there, are, for such reasons, regarded as proper objects of gift.[39] Those kine which are strong of body, which have good dispositions, and which emit an agreeable fragrance, are applauded in the matter of gifts. As Gangā is the foremost of all streams, even so is a Kapilā cow the foremost of all animals of the bovine breed.[40] Abstaining from all food and living only upon water for three nights, and sleeping for the same period upon the bare earth, one should make gifts of kine unto Brāhmanas after having gratified them with other presents. Such kine, freed from every vice, should, at the same time, be accompanied by healthy calves that have not been weaned. Having made the gift, the giver should live for the next three days in succession on food consisting only of the products of the cow.*[41] By giving away a cow that is of good disposition, that quietly suffers herself to be milked, that always brings forth living and hale calves, and that does not fly away from the owner's abode, the giver enjoys felicity in the next world for as many years as there are hairs on her body.[42] Similarly, by giving unto a Brāhmana a bull that is capable of bearing heavy burthens, that is young and strong and docile, that quietly bears the yoke of the plough, and that is possessed of such energy as is

---

a Homa.' The fact is, ascetics sometimes created children without the intervention of women and by efficacy of the Homa alone. At such times should people make gifts of kine unto such sires. The mention of 'Vāla-samvriddhaye' afterwards implies the birth of children in the usual course.—T.

* 'Kshirapaih' implies calves that are yet unweaned; that is, the cow should be given at such a time when she is still yielding milk; when, in fact, her calf has not learnt to eat or drink anything besides the milk of its dam.—T.

sufficient to undergo even great labour, one attains to such regions as are his who gives away ten kine.[43] That person who rescues kine and Brāhmanas (from danger) in the wilderness, O Kauçika, becomes himself rescued from every kind of calamity. Hear what his merit is.*[44] The merit such a man acquires is equal to the eternal merit of a Horse-sacrifice. Such a person attains to whatever end he desires at the hour of death.[45] Many a region of felicity,—in fact, whatever happiness he covets in his heart,—becomes attainable to him in consequence of such act of his.[46] Verily, such a man, permitted by kine, lives honored in every region of felicity. That man who follows kine every day in the woods with this intention,[47] himself subsisting the while on grass and cowdung and leaves of trees, his heart freed from desire of fruit, his senses restrained from every improper object, and his mind purified of all dross,—that man—O thou of a hundred sacrifices, lives in joy and freed from the dominion of desire in my region or in any other region of happiness that he wishes, in the company of the deities!' "—[48]

SECTION LXXIV.

"'Indra said,—I wish to know, O Grandsire, what the end is that is attained by him who consciously steals a cow or who sells one from motives of cupidity.—[1]

"'The Grandsire said,—Hear what the consequences are that overtake those persons that steal a cow for killing her for food or selling her for wealth, or making a gift of her unto a Brāhmana.[2] He who, without being checked by the restraints of the Scriptures, sells a cow, or kills one, or eats the flesh of a cow, or they who, for the sake of wealth, suffer a person to kill kine,[3]—all these, *viz.*, he that kills, he that eats, and he that permits the slaughter,—rot in hell for as many years as

---

* The correct reading of the second line is 'kshanena vipramuchyeta' as in the Bombay text, and not 'kshemena vipramuchyeran.' The latter reading yields almost no sense. The Burdwan translator, who has committed grave blunders throughout the Anuçāsana, adheres to the incorrect reading, and makes nonsense of the Verse,—T.

there are hairs on the body of the cow so slain.*[4] O thou of great puissance, those faults and those kinds of faults that have been said to attach to one that obstructs a Brāhmana's sacrifice, are said to attach to the sale and the theft of kine.[5] That man who having stolen a cow makes a gift of her unto a Brāhmana, enjoys felicity in Heaven as the reward of the gift but suffers misery in Hell for the sin of theft for as long a period.[6] Gold has been said to constitute the Dakshinā, O thou of great splendour, in gifts of kine. Indeed, gold has been said to be the best Dakshinā in all sacrifices.[7] By making a gift of kine one is said to rescue one's ancestors to the seventh degree as also one's descendants to the seventh degree. By giving away kine with the Dakshinā of gold, one rescues one's ancestors and descendants of double the number.[8] The gift of gold is the best of gifts. Gold is, again, the best Dakshinā. Gold is a great cleanser, O Cakra, and is, indeed, the best of all cleansing objects.[9] O thou of a hundred sacrifices, gold has been said to be the sanctifier of the entire race of him who gives it away. I have thus, O thou of great splendour, told thee in brief of Dakshinā !—'[10]

"Bhishma said,—'Even this was said by the Grandsire unto Indra, O chief of Bharata's race! Indra imparted it unto Daçaratha, and Daçaratha in his turn unto his son Rāma.[11] Rāma of Raghu's race imparted it unto his dear brother Lakshmana of great fame. While dwelling in the woods, Lakshmana imparted it unto the Rishis.[12] It has then come down from generation to generation, for the Rishis of rigid vows held it amongst themselves as also the righteous kings of the Earth.[13] My preceptor, O Yudhishthira, communicated it to me. That Brāhmana who recites it every day in the assemblies of Brāhmanas, in sacrifices, or at gifts of kine, or when two persons meet together, obtains hereafter many regions of inexhaustible felicity where he always resides with the deities as

* In Verse 3, 'vikrayārtham' is followed, as the Commentator rightly explains, by 'niyunkta' or some such word. 'Vikrayārtham hinsyāt' may mean 'killing for sale.' This, however, should be pleonastic with reference to what follows.—T.

his companions.[14-15] The holy Brahman, the supreme Lord, had said so (unto Indra on the subject of kine).' "[16]

SECTION LXXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I have been greatly assured, O thou of puissance, by thee thus discoursing unto me of duties! I shall, however, give expression to the doubts I have. Do thou explain them to me, O grandsire![1] What are the fruits, declared in the scriptures, of the vows that men observe! Of what nature are the fruits, O thou of great splendour, of observances of other kinds? What, again, are the fruits of one's studying the Vedas properly?*[2] What are the fruits of gifts, and what those of holding the Vedas in memory? What are the fruits that attach to the teaching of the Vedas? I desire to know all this.[3] What, O grandsire, are the merits attaching to the non-acceptance of gifts in this world! What fruits are seen to attach to him who makes gifts of knowledge?[4] What are the merits acquired by persons that are observant of the duties of their order, as also by heroes that do not fly from battle? What are the fruits that have been declared to attach to the observance of purity and to the practice of Brahmacharya?[5] What are the merits that attach to the service of the father and of the mother? What also are the merits of serving preceptors and teachers, and what the merits of compassion and kindness?[6] I desire to know all this, O grandsire, truly and in detail, O thou that art conversant with all the scriptures! Great is the curiosity I feel!"[7]

"Bhishma said,—'Eternal regions of felicity become his who having properly commenced a Vrata (vow) completes its observance according to the scriptures, without a break.[8] The fruits of Niyamas, O king, are visible even in this world. These rewards that thou hast won are those of Niyamas and sacrifices.[9] The fruits that attach to the study of the Vedas are seen both

---

* 'Vratas' (rendered as 'vows') and 'Niyamas' (rendered as observances') differ in this respect that the former involve positive acts of worship along with the observance of or abstention from particular practices, while the latter involves only such observance or abstention.—T.

here and hereafter. The person who is devoted to the study of the Vedas is seen to sport in felicity both in this world and in the region of Brahma.[10] Listen now to me, O king, as I tell thee in detail what the fruits are of self-restraint. They that are self-restrained are happy everywhere. They that are self-restrained are always in the enjoyment of that felicity which attaches to the absence or subjugation of desire.[11] They that are self-restrained are competent to go everywhere at will. They that are self-restrained are capable of destroying every foe. Without doubt, they that are self-restrained succeed in obtaining everything they seek.[12] They that are self-restrained, O son of Pāndu, obtain the fruition of every wish. The happiness that men enjoy in Heaven through penances and prowess, (in arms), through gift, and through diverse sacrifices, becomes theirs that are self-restrained and forgiving.[13] Self-restraint is more meritorious than gift. A giver, after making a gift unto the Brāhmanas, may yield to the influence of wrath. A self-restrained man, however, never yields to wrath. Hence self-restraint is superior (in point of merit) to gift. That man who makes gifts without yielding to wrath, succeeds in attaining to eternal regions of felicity.[14-15] Wrath destroys the merit of a gift. Hence self-restraint is superior to gift.[16] There are various invisible places, O monarch, numbering by ten thousands, in Heaven. Existing in all the regions of Heaven, these places belong to the Rishis. Persons, leaving this world, attain to them and become transformed into deities.[17] O king, the great Rishis repair thither, aided only by their self-restraint, and as the end of their efforts to attain to a region of superior happiness. Hence, self-restraint is superior (in efficacy) to gift.[18] The person who becomes a preceptor (for teaching the Vedas), and who duly worships the fire, taking leave of all his afflictions in this world, enjoys inexhaustible felicity, O king, in the region of Brahma.[19] That man who, having himself studied the Vedas, imparts a knowledge thereof unto righteous disciples, and who praises the acts of his own preceptor, attains to great honors in Heaven.[20] That Kshatriya who takes to the study of the Vedas, to the performance of sacrifices, to the making of gifts, and who rescues the lives of others in battle, similar-

ly attains to great honors in Heaven.[21] The Vaiçya who, observant of the duties of his order, makes gifts, reaps as the fruit of those gifts, a crowning reward. The Cudra who duly observes the duties of his order (which consist of services rendered to the three other orders) wins Heaven as the reward of such services.[22] Diverse kinds of heroes have been spoken of (in the scriptures). Listen to me as I expound to thee what the rewards are that they attain to. The rewards are fixed of a hero belonging to a heroic race.[23] There are heroes of sacrifice, heroes of self-restraint, heroes of truth, and others equally entitled to the name of hero. There are heroes of battle, and heroes of gift or liberality among men.[24] There are many persons who may be called the heroes of the Sānkhya faith as, indeed, there are many others that are called heroes of Yoga. There are others that are regarded as heroes in the matter of forest-life, of house-holding or domesticity, and of renunciation (or Sanyāsa).[25] Similarly, there are others that are called heroes of the intellect, and also heroes of forgiveness. There are other men who live in tranquillity and who are regarded as heroes of righteousness.[26] There are diverse other kinds of heroes that practise diverse other kinds of vows and observances. There are heroes devoted to the study of the Vedas and heroes devoted to the teaching of the same.[27] There are, again, men that come to be regarded as heroes for the devotion with which they wait upon and serve their preceptors, as indeed, heroes in respect of the reverence they show for their sires. There are heroes in respect of obedience to mothers, and heroes in the matter of the life of mendicancy they lead.[28] There are heroes in the matter of hospitality to guests, whether living as forest recluses or as house-holders. All these heroes attain to very superior regions of felicity which are, of course, acquired by them as the rewards of their own acts.[29] Holding all the Vedas in memory, or ablutions performed in all the sacred waters, may or may not be equal to telling the Truth every day in one's life.[30] A thousand Horse-sacrifices and Truth were once weighed in the balance. It was seen that Truth weighed heavier than a thousand Horse-sacrifices.[31] It is by Truth that the Sun is imparting heat; it is by Truth that fire blazes up; it is

by Truth that the winds blow; verily, everything rests upon Truth.[32] It is Truth that gratifies the deities, the Pitris, and the Brāhmanas. Truth has been said to be the highest duty. Therefore, no one should ever transgress Truth.[33] The Munis are all devoted to Truth. Their prowess depends upon Truth. They also swear by Truth. Hence Truth is pre-eminent. All truthful men, O chief of Bharata's race, succeed by their truthfulness in attaining to Heaven and sporting there in felicity.[34] Self-restraint is the attainment of the reward that attaches to Truth. I have discoursed on it with my whole heart. The man of humble heart who is possessed of self-restraint, without doubt, attains to great honors in Heaven.[35] Listen now to me, O lord of Earth, as I expound to thee the merits of Brahmacharyya. That man who practises the vow of Brahmacharyya from his birth to the time of his Death,[36] know, O king, has nothing unattainable! Many millions of Rishis are residing in the region of Brahma.[37] All of them, while here, were devoted to Truth, and self-restrained, and had their vital seed drawn up. The vow of Brahmacharyya, O king, duly observed by a Brāhmana, is sure to burn all his sins. The Brāhmana is said to be a blazing fire. In those Brāhmanas that are devoted to penances, the deity of fire becomes visible.[38-39] If a Brahmchārin yields to wrath in consequence of any slight, the chief of the deities himself trembles in fear. Even this is the visible fruit of the vow of Brahmacharyya that is observed by the Rishis.[40] Listen to me, O Yudhishthira, what the merit is that attaches to the worship of the father and the mother. He who dutifully serves his father without ever crossing him in anything,[41] or similarly serves his mother or (elder) brother or other senior or preceptor, it should be known, O king, earns a residence in Heaven. The man of cleansed soul, in consequence of such service rendered to his seniors, has never to even behold Hell.' "[42]

Section LXXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I desire, O king, to hear thee discourse in detail upon those high ordinances which regulate

gifts of kine, for it is by making gifts (of kine) according to those ordinances that one attains to innumerable regions of eternal felicity !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'There is no gift, O lord of Earth, that is higher in point of merit than the gift of kine. A cow, lawfully acquired, if given away, immediately rescues the whole race of the giver.[2] That ritual which sprang for the benefit of the righteous, was subsequently declared for the sake of all creatures. That ritual has come down from primeval time. It existed even before it was declared. Verily, O king, listen to me as I recite to thee that ritual which affects the gift of kine.*[3] In days of yore, when a number of kine (intended to be given away) was brought (before him), king Māndhātri, filled with doubt in respect of the ritual he should observe (in actually giving them away), properly questioned Vrihaspati (the preceptor of the celestials) for an explanation of that doubt.[4] Vrihaspati said,—Duly observing restraints the while, the giver of kine should, on the previous day, properly honor the Brāhmanas and appoint the (actual) time of gift. As regards the kine to be given away, they should be of the class called Rohini.[5] The kine also should be addressed with the words—Samange and Vahule.—Entering the fold where the kine are kept, the following Crutis should be uttered,[6]—The cow is my mother. The bull is my sire. (Give me) Heaven and Earthly prosperity ! The cow is my refuge !—Entering the fold and acting in this way, the giver should pass the night there. He should again utter the formula when actually giving away the kine.†[7] The giver, thus residing with the kine in

* The orthodox belief is that all rituals are literally eternal. As eternal, they existed before anybody declared them or set them down in holy writ. The ritual in respect of gifts of kine sprang in this way, *i. e.*, in primeval time. It was only subsequently declared or set down in holy writ.—T.

† In Verse 5, if instead of the reading 'çwah,' 'swa' be adopted, the meaning would be 'knowing that he would have to die.' A 'Rohini' is a red cow. The words 'samangā' and 'vahulā' are Vedic terms applied to the cow. The Sandhi in 'vahuleti' is *ārsha*. The formula or Mantras that should be uttered in actually giving away the kine occur in the scriptures.—T.

the fold without doing anything to restrain their freedom, and lying down on the bare earth (without driving away the gnats and other insects that would annoy him as they annoy the kine), becomes immediately cleansed of all his sins in consequence of his reducing himself to a state of perfect similitude with the kine.[8] When the Sun rises in the morning, thou shouldst give away the cow, accompanied by her calf and a bull. As the reward of such an act, Heaven will certainly become attainable to thee. The blessings also that are indicated by the Mantras will also be thine.[9] The Mantras contain these references to kine: Kine are endued with the elements of strength and energetic exertion. Kine have in them the element of wisdom. They are the source of that immortality which sacrifice achieves. They are the refuge of all energy. They are the steps by which earthly prosperity is won. They constitute the eternal course of the universe. They lead to the extension of one's race.[10] Let the kine (I give away) destroy my sins. They have that in them which partakes the nature of both Surya and Soma. Let them be aids to my attainment of Heaven. Let them betake themselves to me as a mother takes to her offspring. Let all other blessings also be mine that have not been named in the Mantras I have uttered![11] In the alleviation or cure of phthisis and other wasting diseases, and in the matter of achieving freedom from the body, if a person takes the help of the five products of the cow, kine become inclined to confer blessings upon the person like the river Saraswati.—Ye kine, ye are always conveyers of all kinds of merit! Gratified with me, do ye appoint a desirable end for me![12] I have today become what ye are! By giving you away, I really give myself away.—(After these words have been uttered by the giver, the receiver should say,)—Ye are no longer owned by him who gives you away! Ye have now become mine. Possessed of the nature of both Surya and Soma, do ye cause both the giver and the receiver to blaze forth will all kinds of prosperity![13]—(As already indicated), the giver should duly utter the words occurring in the first part of the above Verse. The regenerate recipient, conversant with the ritual that regulates the gift of kine, should, when receiving

the kine in gift, utter (as already said) the words occuring in the latter half of the above Verse.[14] The man who, instead of a cow, gives away the usual value thereof or cloths or gold, comes to be regarded as the giver of a cow. The giver, when giving away the usual value of a cow (as the substitute of a cow), should utter the words,—This cow with face upturned is being given away. Do thou accept her!—The man who gives away cloths (as the substitute of a cow) should utter the words,—Bhavitavyā—(meaning that the gift should be regarded as representing a cow). The man who gives away gold (as the substitute of a cow) should utter the word,—Vaishnavi (meaning, this gold that I give away is of the form and nature of a cow).[15]—Even these are the words that should be uttered in the order of the kind of gift mentioned above. The reward that is reaped by making such vicarious gifts of kine is residence in Heaven for six and thirty thousand years, eight thousand years, and twenty thousand years respectively.[16] Even these are the merits, respectively, of gifts of things as substitutes of kine. While, as regards him who gives an actual cow all the merits that attach to vicarious gifts of kine become his at only the eighth step (homewards) of the recipient.*[17] He that gives an actual cow becomes endued with righteous behaviour in this world. He that gives the value of a cow becomes freed from every kind of fear. He that gives a cow (as a substitute in this way for a real cow) never meets with sorrow. All the three, as also they that regularly go through their ablutions and other acts at early dawn, and he that is well conversant with the Mahābhārata, it is well known, attain to the regions of Vishnu and Soma.[18] Having given away a cow, the giver should, for three nights, adopt the vaccine vow, and pass one night with kine. Commencing again from that lunation, num-

* The Commentator explains that 'gavādinām' in the first line refers to 'gopratinidhinām.' The second line is very terse. The sense is that at only the eighth step in the homeward journey of the recipient, all the merits attaching to vicarious gifts become his who gives an actual cow: what need, therefore, be said of that merit when the recipient reaches home and draws from the cow the means of worshipping his domestic fire, entertaining his guests, &c?—T.

bering the eighth, which is known by the name of Kāmyā, he should pass three nights, supporting himself entirely on milk and the urine and dung of the cow.*[19] By giving away a bull, one attains to the merit that attaches to the divine vow (Brahmacharyya). By giving away a couple of kine, one acquires the mastery of the Vedas. That man who performs a sacrifice and makes gifts of kine agreeably to the ritual laid down, attains to many regions of a superior character. These, however, are not attainable by the person who is unacquainted with that ritual (and who, therefore, gives away kine without observing the scriptural declarations).[20] That man who gives away even a single cow that yields a copious measure of milk, acquires the merit of giving away all desirable things on Earth collected together. What need, therefore, be said of the gift of many such kine as yield Havya and Kavya in consequence of their full udders? The merit that attaches to the gift of superior oxen is greater than that which attaches to the gift of kine.[21] One should not, by imparting a knowledge of this ritual, benefit a person that is not one's disciple or that is not observant of vows or that is bereft of faith or that is possessed of a crooked understanding. Verily, this religion is a mystery, unknown to most people. One that knows it should not speak of it at every place.[22] There are, in the world, many men that are bereft of faith. There are among men many persons that are mean and that resemble Rākshasas. This religion, if imparted unto them, would lead to evil. It would be productive of equal evil if imparted to such sinful men as have taken shelter in atheism.[23]—Listen to me, O king, as I recite to thee the names of those righteous monarchs that have attained to regions of great felicity as the reward of those gifts of kine which they made agreeably to the instructions of Vrihaspati.[24] Uçinara, Viçwagaçwa, Nriga, Bhagiratha, the celebrated Māndhātri the son of Yuvanāçwa, king Muchukunda, Bhuridyumna, Naishadha, Somaka,[25] Pururavas, Bharata of imperial sway

* 'Ashtami' is the eighth day of the lunar fortnight. There must be two Ashtamis in every lunar month. A particular Ashtami is known as the Kāmyā or the Goshtha. On that day, kine are worshipped with sandal paste, vermilion, floral wreaths, &c.—T.

to whose race belongs all the Bhāratas, the heroic Rāma the son of Daçaratha, and many other celebrated kings of great achievements,[26] and also king Dilipa of widely-known deeds, all, in consequence of their gifts of kine agreeably to the ritual, attained to Heaven. King Māndhātri was always observant of sacrifices, gifts, penances, kingly duties, and gifts of kine.[27] Therefore, O son of Prithā, do thou also bear in mind those instructions of Vrihaspati which I have recited unto thee (in respect of gifts of kine). Having obtained the kingdom of the Kurus, do thou, with a cheerful heart, make gifts of good kine unto foremost of Brāhmanas!' "[28]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by Bhishma on the subject of properly making gifts of kine, king Yudhishthira did all that Bhishma wished. Verily, king Yudhishthira bore in mind the whole of that religion which the preceptor of the deities imparted unto the royal Māndhātri.[29] Yudhishthira from that time began to always make gifts of kine and to support himself on grains of barley and on cowdung as both his food and drink. The king also began to sleep from that day on the bare earth, and possessed of restrained soul and resembling a bull in conduct, he became the foremost of monarchs.*[30] The Kuru king from that day became very attentive to kine and always worshipped them, hymning their praises. From that day, the king gave up the practice of yoking kine unto his vehicles. Whithersoever he had occasion to go, he proceeded on cars drawn by horses of good mettle."[31]

Section LXXVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"King Yudhishthira endued with humility, once again questioned the royal son of Cāntanu on the subject of gifts of kine in detail.[1]

"The king said,—'Do thou, O Bhārata, once more discourse to me in detail on the merits of giving away kine. Verily, O hero, I have not been satiated with hearing thy nectar-like words!' "[2]

---

* 'Çikhi' means a bull, so called from the hump it carries. The construction is 'çikhi Vrisha iva &c.'—T.

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by king Yudhishthira the just, Cāntanu's son began to discourse to him once again, in detail, on the merits attaching to the gift of kine.[3]

"Bhishma said,—'By giving unto a Brāhmana a cow possessed of a calf, endued with docility and other virtues, young in years, and wrapped round with a piece of cloth, one becomes cleansed of all one's sins.[4] There are many regions (in Hell) which are sunless. One who makes the gift of a cow has not to go thither.[5] That man, however, who gives unto a Brāhmana a cow that is incapable of drinking or eating, that has her milk dried up, that is endued with senses all of which have been weakened, and that is diseased and overcome with decrepitude, and that may, therefore, be likened to a tank whose water has been dried up,—indeed, the man who gives such a cow unto a Brāhmana and thereby inflicts only pain and disappointment upon him, has certainly to enter into dark Hell.[6] That cow which is wrathful and vicious, or diseased, or weak, or which has been purchased without the price agreed upon having been paid, or which would only afflict the regenerate recipient with distress and disappointment, should never be given. The regions such a man may acquire (as the rewards of other acts of righteousness performed by him) would fail to give him any happiness or impart to him any energy.[7] Only such kine as are strong, endued with good behaviour, young in years, and possessed of fragrance, are applauded by all (in the matter of gifts). Verily, as Gangā is the foremost of all rivers, even so is a Kapilā cow the foremost of all kine.'[8]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Why, O grandsire, do the righteous applaud the gift of a Kapilā cow (as more meritorious) when all good kine that are given away should be regarded as equal? O thou of great puissance, I wish to hear what the distinction is that attaches to a Kapilā cow. Thou art, verily, competent to discourse to me on this topic!'*[9]

"Bhishma said,—'I have, O son, heard old men recite this

* A Kapilā cow is one that gives a copious measure of milk whenever she is milked, and is possessed of various other accomplishments and virtues.—T.

history respecting the circumstances under which the Kapilā cow was created. I shall recite that old history to thee![10] In days of yore, the Self-born Brahman commanded the Rishi Daksha, saying,—Do thou create living creatures!—From desire of doing good to creatures, Daksha, in the first instance, created food.[11] Even as the deities exist, depending upon nectar, all living creatures, O puissant one, live depending upon the sustenance assigned by Daksha.[12] Among all objects mobile and immobile, the mobile are superior. Among mobile creatures, Brāhmanas are superior. The sacrifices are all established upon them.[13] It is by sacrifice that Soma (nectar) is got. Sacrifice has been established upon kine.* The gods become gratified through sacrifices. As regards the Creation then, the means of support came first, creatures came next.[14] As soon as creatures were born, they began to cry aloud for food. All of them then approached their creator who was to give them food, like children approaching their father or mother.[15] Knowing the intention which moved all his creatures, the holy lord of all creatures, *viz.*, Daksha, for the sake of the beings he had created, himself drank a quantity of nectar.[16] He became gratified with the nectar he quaffed and thereupon an eructation came out, diffusing an excellent perfume all around. As the result of that eructation, Daksha saw that it gave birth to a cow which he named Surabhi. This Surabhi was thus a daughter of his, that had sprung from his mouth.[17] That cow called Surabhi brought forth a number of daughters who came to be regarded as the mothers of the world. Their complexion was like that of gold, and they were all Kapilās. They were the means of sustenance for all creatures.[18] As those kine, whose complexion resembled that of Amrita, began to pour milk, the froth of that milk arose and began to spread on every side, even as when the waves of a running stream dashing aganist one another, copious froth is produced that spreads on every side.[19] Some of that froth fell, from the mouths of the calves that were sucking, upon the head of Mahādeva who was then sitting on

---

* For without ghee, which is produced from milk, there can be no sacrifice. The 'sa' may refer to 'Soma,' but Sacrifice is evidently ment.—T.

the Earth. The puissant Mahādeva thereupon, filled with wrath, cast his eyes upon those kine.[20] With that third eye of his which adorns his forehead, he seemed to burn those kine as he looked at them. Like the Sun tinging masses of clouds with diverse colors, the energy that issued from the third eye of Mahādeva produced, O monarch, diverse complexions in those kine. Those amongst them, however, which succeeded in escaping from the glance of Mahādeva by entering the region of Soma,[21-22] remained of the same color with which they were born, for no change was produced in their complexion. Seeing that Mahādeva had become exceedingly angry, Daksha, the lord of all creatures, addressed him, saying,[23]—Thou hast, O great deity, been drenched with nectar. The milk or the froth that escapes from the mouths of calves sucking their dams is never regarded as impure remnant.* Chandramas, after drinking the nectar, pours it once more. It is not, however, on that account, looked upon as impure.[24] After the same manner, the milk that these kine yield, being born of nectar, should not be regarded as impure (even though the udders have been touched by the calves with their mouths). The wind can never become impure. Fire can never become impure. Gold can never become impure. The Ocean can never become impure.[25] The Nectar, even when drunk by the deities, can never become impure. Similarly, the milk of a cow, even when her udders are sucked by her calf, can never become impure. These kine will support all these worlds with the milk they will yield and the ghee that will be manufactured therefrom.[26] All creatures wish to enjoy the auspicious wealth, identifiable with nectar, that kine possess!—Having said these words, the lord of creatures, Daksha, made a present unto Mahādeva of a bull with certain kine.[27] Daksha gratified the heart of Rudra, O Bhārata, with that present. Mahādeva, thus gratified, made that bull his vehicle. And it was after the form of that bull that

* The idea of 'uchchishta' is peculiarly Hindu and cannot be rendered into any other language. Everything that forms the remnant of a meal after one has left off eating, is 'uchchishta.' The calf sucks its dam. The udders, however, are not washed before milking the dam, for the milk coming out of them is not held to be impure remnant.—T.

Mahādeva adopted the device on the standard floating on his battle-car. For this reason it is that Rudra came to be known as the bull-bannered deity.[28] It was on that occasion also that the celestials, uniting together, made Mahādeva the lord of animals. Indeed, the great Rudra became the Master of kine and is named as the bull-signed deity.[29] Hence, O king, in the matter of giving away kine, the gift is regarded as primarily desirable of Kapilā kine which are endued with great energy and possessed of color unchanged (from white).[30] Thus are kine the fore most of all creatures in the world. It is from them that the means have flowed of the sustenance of all the worlds. They have Rudra for their master. They yield Soma (nectar) in the form of milk. They are auspicious and sacred, and grantors of every wish and givers of life. A person by making a gift of a cow comes to be regarded as making a gift of every article that is desired to be enjoyed by men.[31] That man who, desiring to attain to prosperity, reads with a pure heart and body these Verses on the origin of kine, becomes cleansed of all his sins and attains to prosperity and children and wealth and animals.[32] He who makes a gift of a cow, O king, always succeeds in acquiring the merits that attach to gifts of Havya and Kavya, to the offer of oblations of water unto the Pitris, to other religious acts whose performance brings peace and happiness, to the gift of vehicles and cloths, and to the cherishing of children and the old.' "[33]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—" Hearing these words of his grandsire, Prithā's son, *viz.*, the royal Yudhishthira of Ājamida's race, uniting with his brothers, began to make gifts of both bulls and kine of different colors unto foremost of Brāhmanas.[34] Verily, for the purpose of subduing regions of felicity in the next, and winning great fame, king Yudhishthira performed many sacrifices and, as sacrificial presents, gave away hundreds of thousands of kine unto such Brāhmanas."[34]

Section LXXVIII.

"Bhishma said,—'In days of yore, king Saudāsa born of Ikshāku's race, that foremost of eloquent men, on one occasion

approached his family priest, *viz.*, Vaçishtha, that foremost of Rishis, crowned with ascetic success, capable of wandering through every region, the receptacle of Brahma, and endued with eternal life, and put to him the following question.[1-2]

" 'Saudāsa said,—O holy one, O sinless one, what is that in the three worlds which is sacred and by reciting which at all times a man may acquire high merit?—'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Unto king Saudāsa who stood before him with head bent in reverence, the learned Vaçishtha, having first bowed unto kine and purified himself (in body and mind), discoursed upon the mystery relating to kine, a topic that is fraught with results highly beneficial to all persons.'[4]

" 'Vaçishtha said,—Kine are always fragrant. The perfume emanated by the exudation of the Amyris agallochum issues out of their bodies. Kine are the great refuge of all creatures. Kine constitute the great source of blessings unto all.*[5] Kine are the Past and the Future. Kine are the source of eternal growth. Kine are the root of Prosperity. Anything given to kine is never lost.[6] Kine constitute the highest food. They are the best Havi for the deities. The Mantras called Swāhā and Vashat are forever established in kine.[7] Kine constitute the fruit of sacrifices. Sacrifices are established in kine. Kine are the Future and the Past, and the Sacrifices rest on them.[8] Morning and evening kine yield unto the Rishis, O foremost of men, Havi for use in Homa, O thou of great effulgence.[9] They who make gifts of kine succeed in transcending all sins which they may have committed and all kinds of calamities into which they may fall, O thou of great puissance.[10] The man possessing ten kine and making a gift of one cow, he possessing a hundred kine and making a gift of ten kine, and he possessing a thousand kine and making a gift of a hundred kine, all earn the same measure of merit.[11] That man who, though possessed of hundred kine, does not establish a domestic fire for daily worship, that man who though possessed of a thousand kine does not perform sacrifices, and that man who though possessed

* 'Swastyayana' is a ceremony of propitiation, productive of blessings and destructive of misery of every kind.—T.

of wealth acts as a miser (by not making gifts and discharging the duties of hospitality), are all three regarded as not worthy of any respect.[12] Those men who make gifts of Kapilā kine with their calves and with vessels of white brass for milking them,—kine, that is, which are not vicious and which, while given away, are wrapped round with cloths,—succeed in conquering both this and the other world.[13] Such persons as succeed in making gift of a bull that is still in the prime of youth, that has all its senses strong, and that may be regarded as the foremost one among hundreds of herds, that has large horns adorned with ornaments (of gold or silver), unto a Brāhmana possessed of Vedic learning, succeed, O scorcher of foes, in attaining to great prosperity and affluence each time they take birth in the world.[14-15] One should never go to bed without reciting the names of kine. Nor should one rise from bed in the morning without a similar recitation of the names of kine. Morning and evening one should bend one's head in reverence to kine. As the consequence of such acts, one is sure to attain to great prosperity.[16] One should never feel any repugnance for the urine and the dung of the cow. One should never eat the flesh of kine. As the consequence of this, one is sure to attain to great prosperity.[17] One should always take the names of kine. One should never show any disregard for kine in any way. If evil dreams are seen, men should take the names of kine.[18] One should always bathe, using cowdung at the time. One should sit on dried cowdung. One should never cast one's urine and excreta and other secretions on cowdung. One should never obstruct kine in any way.[19] One should eat, sitting on a cowhide purified by dipping it in water, and then cast one's eyes towards the west. Sitting with restrained speech, one should eat ghee, using the bare earth as one's dish. One reaps, in consequence of such acts, that prosperity of which kine are the source.*[20] One should pour libations on the fire,

---

* The Commentator explains that by a wet cowhide is meant a piece of cowhide that has been dipped in water and thus purified. 'Upaviçya' is understood after 'Charmani.' The mention of 'bhumau' implies the avoidance of dishes or plates or cups of white brass or other allowable metals. 'Gavām pushtim,' I understand, means 'the prosperity in respect of kine,' *i. e.*, the prosperity which kine confer.—T.

using ghee for the purpose. One should cause Brāhmanas to utter blessings upon one, by presents of ghee. One should make gifts of ghee. One should also eat ghee. As the reward of such acts one is sure to attain to that prosperity which kine confer.[21] That man who inspires a vaccine form made of sesame seeds by uttering the Vedic Mantras called by the name of Gomati, and then adorns that form with every kind of gems and makes a gift of it, has never to suffer any grief on account of all his acts of omission and commission.[22]—Let kine that yield copious measures of milk and that have horns adorned with gold,—kine *viz.* that are Surabhis or the daughters of Surabhis,—approach me even as rivers approach the ocean![23] I always look at kine. Let kine always look at me. Kine are ours. We are theirs. Ourselves are there where kine are![24]—Even thus, at night or day, in happiness or woe,—verily, at times of even great fear,—should a man exclaim. By uttering such words, he is certain to become freed from every fear.' "[25]

SECTION LXXIX.

" 'Vaçishtha said,—The kine that had been created in a former age practised the austerest penances for a hundred thousand years with the desire of attaining to a position of great pre-eminence.[1] Verily, O scorcher of foes, they said unto themselves,—We shall, in this world, become the best of all kinds of Dakshinā in sacrifices, and we shall not be liable to be stained with any fault![2] By bathing in water mixed with our dung, people shall become sanctified. The deities and men shall use our dung for the purpose of purifying[3] all creatures mobile and immobile. They also that will give us away shall attain to those regions of happiness which will be ours.*[4]—The puissant Brahman, appearing unto them at the conclusion of their austerities, gave them the boons they sought, saying,—

---

* The first line of Verse 4 seems to be connected with Verse 3. The second line of 4 seems to stand by itself. By connecting the first line of 4 with the second, the meaning will be—'All mobile and immobile creatures that will give us away &c.' Immobile creatures making gifts of kine would be utter nonsense.—T.

It shall be as ye wish ! Do ye (thus) rescue all the worlds![5]— Crowned with fruition in respect of their wishes, they all rose up,—those mothers of both the Past and the Future. Every morning, people should bow with reverence unto kine. As the consequence of this, they are certain to win prosperity.[6] At the conclusion of their penances, O monarch, kine became the refuge of the world. It is for this that kine are said to be highly blessed, sacred, and the foremost of all things. It is for this that kine are said to stay at the very head of all creatures.[7] By giving away a Kapilā cow with a calf resembling herself, yielding a copious measure of milk, free from every vicious habit, and covered with a piece of cloth, the giver attains to great honors in the region of Brahma.[8] By giving away a cow of red complexion, with a calf that resembles herself, yielding milk, free from every vice, and covered with a piece of cloth, one attains to great honors in the region of Surya.[9] By giving away a cow of variegated hue, with a calf similar to herself, yielding milk, free from every vice, and covered with a piece of cloth, one attains to great honors in the region of Soma.[10] By giving away a cow of white complexion, with a calf similar to herself, yielding milk, free from every vice, and covered with a piece of cloth, one attains to great honors in the region of Indra.[11] By giving away a cow of dark complexion, with a calf similar to herself, yielding milk, free from every vice, and covered with a piece of cloth, one attains to great honors in the region of Agni.[12] By giving away a cow of the complextion of smoke, with a calf similar to herself, yielding milk, free from every vice, and covered with a piece of cloth, one attains to great honors in the region of Yama.[13] By giving away a cow of the complexion of the foam of water, with a calf and a vessel of white brass for milking her, and covered with a piece of cloth, one attains to the region of Varuna.[14] By giving away a cow whose complexion is like that of the dust blown by the wind, with a calf and a vessel of white brass for milking her, and covered with a piece of cloth, one attains to great honors in the region of the Wind-god.[15] By giving away a cow of the complexion of gold, having eyes of a tawny hue, with a calf and a vessel of white brass for milking

her, and covered with a piece of cloth, one enjoys the felicity of the region of Kuvera.[16] By giving away a cow of the complexion of the smoke of straw, with a calf and a vessel of white brass for milking her, and covered with a piece of cloth, one attains to great honors in the region of the Pitris.[17] By giving away a fat cow with the flesh of its throat hanging down and accompanied by her calf, one attains with ease to the high region of the Viçwedevas.[18] By giving away a Gouri cow, with a calf similar to her, yielding milk, free from every vice, and covered with a piece of cloth, one attains to the region of the Vasus.[19] By giving away a cow of the complexion of a white blanket, with a calf and a vessel of white brass, and covered with a piece of cloth, one attains to the region of the Sāddhyas.[20] By giving away a bull with a high hump and adorned with every jewel, the giver, O king, attains to the region of the Maruts.[21] By giving away a bull of blue complexion, that is full-grown in respect of years and adorned with every ornament, the giver attains to the regions of the Gandharvas and the Apsaras.[22] By giving away a cow with the flesh of her throat hanging down, and adorned with every ornament, the giver, freed from every grief, attains to those regions that belong to Prajāpati himself.[23] That man, O king, who habitually makes gifts of kine, proceeds, piercing through the clouds, on a car of solar effulgence to Heaven and shines there in splendour.[24] That man who habitually makes gifts of kine comes to be regarded as the foremost of his species. When thus proceeding to Heaven, he is received by a thousand celestial damsels of beautiful hips and adorned with handsome robes and ornaments. These girls wait upon him there and minister to his delight.[25] He sleeps there in peace and is awakened by the musical laughter of those gazelle-eyed damsels, the sweet notes of their Vinās, the soft strains of their Vallakis, and the melodious tinkle of their Nupuras.*[26] The man who makes gifts of kine resides in Heaven and is honored there for as many years as there are hairs on the bodies of the kine he

* 'Vallaki' is the Indian lute. The 'Nupura' is an ornament for the ankles.—T.

gives away. Falling off from Heaven (upon the exhaustion of his merit), such a man takes birth in the order of humanity and, in fact, in a superior family among men.—' "[27]

SECTION LXXX.

" 'Vaçishtha said,—Kine are yielders of ghee and milk. They are the sources of ghee and they have sprung from ghee. They are rivers of ghee, and eddies of ghee. Let kine ever be in my house![1] Ghee is always my heart. Ghee is even established in my navel. Ghee is in every limb of mine. Ghee resides in my mind.[2] Kine are always at my front. Kine are always at my rear. Kine are on every side of my person. I live in the midst of kine![3]—Having purified oneself by touching water, one should, morning and evening, recite these Mantras every day. By this, one is sure to be cleansed of all the sins one may commit in course of the day.[4] They who make gifts of a thousand kine, departing from this world, proceed to the regions of the Gandharvas and the Apsaras where there are many palatial mansions made of gold and where the celestial Gangā, called the current of Vasu, runs.[5] Givers of a thousand kine repair thither where run many rivers having milk for their water, cheese for their mire, and curds for their floating moss.[6] That man who makes gifts of hundreds of thousands of kine agreeably to the ritual laid down in the scriptures, attains to high prosperity (here) and great honors in Heaven.[7] Such a man causes both his paternal and maternal ancestors to the tenth degree to attain to regions of great felicity, and sanctifies his whole race.[8] Kine are sacred. They are the foremost of all things in the world. They are verily the refuge of the universe. They are the mothers of the very deities. They are verily incomparable. They should be dedicated in sacrifices.[9] When making journeys, one should proceed by their right (*i. e.*, keeping them to one's left). Ascertaining the proper time, they should be given away unto eligible persons.[10] By giving away a Kapilā cow having large horns, accompanied by a calf and a vessel of white brass for milking her, and covered with a piece of cloth, one succeeds in entering, freed from fear, the palace of Yama that

is so difficult to enter.[11] One should always recite this sacred Mantra, *viz.*,—Kine are of beautiful form. Kine are of diverse forms. They are of universal form. They are the mothers of the universe. O, let kine approach me![12]—There is no gift more sacred than the gift of kine. There is no gift that produces more blessed merit. There has been nothing equal to the cow, nor will there be anything that will equal her.[13] With her skin, her hair, her horns, the hair of her tail, her milk, and her fat,—with all these together,—the cow upholds sacrifice. What thing is there that is more useful than the cow?[14] Bending my head unto her with reverence, I adore the cow who is the mother of both the Past and the Future, and by whom the entire universe of mobile and immobile creatures is covered.[15] O best of men, I have thus recited to thee only a portion of the high merits of kine. There is no gift in this world that is superior to the gift of kine. There is also no refuge in this world that is higher than kine.—'[16]

"Bhishma continued,—'That high-souled giver of land (*viz.*, king Saudāsa), thinking these words of the Rishi Vaçishtha to be foremost in point of importance, then made gifts of a very large number of kine unto the Brāhmanas, restraining his senses the while, and as the consequence of those gifts, the monarch succeeded in attaining to many regions of felicity in the next world.' "*[17]

Section LXXXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, what is that which is the most sacred of all sacred things in the world, other than that which has been already mentioned, and which is the highest of all sanctifying objects.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Kine are the foremost of all objects. They are highly sacred and they rescue men (from all kinds of sin and distress). With their milk and with the Havi manufac-

---

* 'Bhumidah' is, literally, a giver of land. King Saudāsa, the Commentator explains, was known by the name of 'Bhumidah' in consequence of his liberality in the matter of giving away land unto the Brāhmanas.—T.

tured therefrom, kine uphold all creatures in the universe.[2] O best of the Bharatas, there is nothing that is more sacred than kine. The foremost of all things in the three worlds, kine are themselves sacred and capable of cleansing others.[3] Kine reside in a region that is even higher than the region of the deities. When given away, they rescue their givers. Men of wisdom succeed in attaining to Heaven by making gifts of kine.[4] Yuvanāçwa's son Māndhātri, Yayāti, and (his sire) Nahusha, used always to give away kine in thousands.[5] As the reward of those gifts, they have attained to such regions as are unattainable by the very deities. There is, in this connection, O sinless one, a discourse delivered of old. I shall recite it to thee.[6] Once on a time, the intelligent Cuka, having finished his morning rites, approached with a restrained mind his sire, that foremost of Rishis, *viz.*, the Island-born Krishna, who is acquainted with the distinction between that which is superior and that which is inferior, and saluting him, said,—What is that sacrifice which appears to thee as the foremost of all sacrifices?[7-8] What is that act by doing which men of wisdom succeed in attaining to the highest region? What is that sacred act by which the deities enjoy the felicity of Heaven?[9] What constitutes the character of sacrifice as sacrifice? What is that upon which sacrifice rests? What is that which is regarded as the best by the deities? What is that sacrifice which transcends the sacrifices of this world? Do thou also tell me, O sire, what is that which is the most sacred of all things![10]—Having heard these words of his son, O chief of Bharata's race, Vyāsa, the foremost of all persons conversant with duties, discoursed as follows unto him.[11]

"'Vyāsa said,—Kine constitute the stay of all creatures. Kine are the refuge of all creatures. Kine are the embodiment of merit. Kine are sacred, and kine are sanctifiers of all.[12] Formerly kine were hornless as it has been heard by us. For obtaining horns they adored the eternal and puissant Brahman.[13] The puissant Brahman, seeing the kine paying their adorations to him and sitting in *prāya*, granted unto each of them what each desired.[14] Thereafter their horns grew and each got what each desired. Of diverse colors, and

endued with horns, they began to shine in beauty, O son![15] Favored by Brahman himself with boons, kine are auspicious and yielders of Havya and Kavya. They are the embodiments of merit. They are sacred and highly blessed. They are possessed of excellent form and attributes.[16] Kine constitute high and excellent energy. The gift of kine is very much applauded. Those good men who, freed from pride, make gifts of kine,[17] are regarded as doers of righteous deeds and as givers of all articles. Such men, O sinless one, attain to the highly sacred region of kine.[18] The trees there produce sweet fruits. Indeed, those trees are always adorned with excellent flowers and fruits. Those flowers, O best of regenerate persons, are endued with celestial fragrance.[19] The entire soil of that region is made of gems. The sands there are all gold. The climate there is such that the excellencies of every season are felt. There is no mire, no dust. It is, indeed, highly auspicious.[20] The streams that run there shine in resplendence for the red lotuses blooming upon their bosoms, and for the jewells and gems and gold that occur in their banks and that display the effulgence of the morning Sun.[21] There are many lakes also in that region on whose breasts are many lotuses, mixed here and there with Nymphæa stellata, and having their petals made of costly gems, and their filaments adorned with a complexion like that of gold.[22] They are also adorned with flowering forests of the Nerium odorum with thousands of beautiful creepers twining round them, as also with forests of Santānakas bearing their flowery burthens.[23] There are rivers whose banks are variegated with many bright pearls and resplendent gems and shining gold.[24] Portions of those regions are covered with excellent trees that are decked with jewels and gems of every kind. Some of them are made of gold and some display the splendour of fire.[25] There stand many mountains made of gold, and many hills and eminences made of jewels and gems. These shine in beauty in consequence of their tall summits which are composed of all kinds of gems.[26] The trees that adorn those regions always put forth flowers and fruits, and are always covered with dense foliage. The flowers always emit a celestial fragrance and the fruits are exceedingly

sweet, O chief of Bharata's race.[27] Those persons that are of righteous deeds, O Yudhishthira, always sport there in joy. Freed from grief and wrath, they pass their time there, crowned with the fruition of every wish.[28] Persons of righteous deeds, possessed of fame, sport there in happiness, moving from place to place, O Bhārata, on delightful vehicles of great beauty.[29] Auspicious bands of Apsaras always amuse them there, with music and dance. Indeed, O Yudhishthira, a person goes to such regions as the reward of his making gifts of kine.[30] Those regions which have for their lords Pushan, and the Māruts of great puissance, are attained to by givers of kine. In affluence the royal Varuna is regarded as pre-eminent. The giver of kine attains to affluence like that of Varuna himself. One should, with the steadiness of a vow, daily recite these Mantras declared by Prajāpati himself (in respect of kine), *viz.*,—Yugandharāh, Surupāh, Vahurupāh, Viçwarupāh, and Mātara.*[31-32]—He who serves kine with reverence and who follows them with humility, succeeds in obtaining many invaluable boons from kine who become gratified with him.[33] One should never, in even one's heart, do an injury to kine. One should, indeed, always confer happiness on them. One should always reverence kine and worship them, with bends of one's head.[34] He who does this, restraining his senses the while and filled with cheerfulness, succeeds in attaining to that felicity which is enjoyed by kine (and which kine alone can confer). One should for three days drink the hot urine of the cow. For the next three days one should drink the hot milk of the cow.[35] Having thus drunk for three days hot milk, one should next drink hot ghee for three days. Having in this way drunk hot ghee for three days, one should subsist for the next three days on air only.[36] That sacred thing by whose aid the deities

---

* These are the several names by which kine are known. The first is probably derived from kine bearing the plough and thus assisting at tillage of the soil. The second implies beauty of form. The third is derived from the cow being regarded as the origin of all things in the universe : all things, therefore, are only so many forms of the cow. Viçwarupā implies the same thing. Mātara implies mothers, kine being regarded as the mothers of all.—T.

enjoy regions of felicity, that which is the most sacred of all sacred things, *viz.*, ghee, should then be borne on the head.*[37] With the aid of ghee one should pour libations on the sacred fire. By making gifts of ghee, one should cause the Brāhmanas to utter benedictions on oneself. One should eat ghee and make gifts of ghee. As the reward of this conduct, one may then attain to that prosperity which belongs to kine.[38] That man who, for a month, subsists upon the gruel of barley picked up every day from cow-dung, becomes cleansed of sins as grave as the slaughter of a Brāhmana.[39] After their defeat at the hands of the Daityas, the deities practised this expiation. It was in consequence of this expiation that they succeeded in regaining their position as deities. Verily, it was through this that they regained their strength and became crowned with success.[40] Kine are sacred. They are embodiments of merit. They are high and most efficacious cleansers of all. By making gifts of kine unto the Brāhmanas one attains to Heaven.[41] Living in a pure state, in the midst of kine, one should mentally recite those sacred Mantras that are known by the name of Gomati, after touching pure water. By doing this, one becomes purified and cleansed (of all sins).[42] Brāhmanas of righteous deeds, who have been cleansed by knowledge, study of the Vedas, and observance of vows, should, only in the midst of sacred fires or kine or assemblies of Brāhmanas, impart unto their disciples a knowledge of the Gomati Mantras which are every way like unto a sacrifice (for the merit they produce). One should observe a fast for three nights for receiving the boon constituted by a knowledge of the import of the Gomati Mantras.[43-44] The man who is desirous of obtaining a son may obtain it by adoring these Mantras. He who desires the possession of wealth may have his desire gratified by adoring these Mantras. The girl desirous of having a good husband may have her wish crowned with success by the same means. In fact, one may acquire the fruition of every wish one may cherish,

---

* Ghee is regarded so sacred because of its use in sacrifices. It is with the aid of ghee that the deities have become what they are. Itself sacred, it is also cleansing at the same time.—T.

by adoring these sacred Mantras.[45] When kine are gratified with the service one renders them, they are, without doubt, capable of granting the fruition of every wish. Even so, kine are highly blessed. They are the essential requisites of sacrifices. They are grantors of every wish. Know that there is nothing superior to kine !—'[46]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by his high-souled sire, Cuka, endued with great energy, began from that time to worship kine every day. Do thou also, O son, conduct thyself in the same way !' "[47]

SECTION LXXXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I have heard that the dung of the cow is endued with Cree. I desire to hear how this has been brought about. I have doubts, O grandsire, which thou shouldst dispel.'*[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old story, O monarch, of the conversation between kine and Cree, O best of the Bharatas ![2] Once on a time the goddess Cree, assuming a very beautiful form, entered a herd of kine. The kine, beholding her wealth of beauty, became filled with wonder.[3]

" 'The kine said,—Who art thou, O goddess ? Whence hast thou become unrivalled on Earth for beauty ? O highly blessed goddess, we have been filled with wonder at thy wealth of beauty ![4] We desire to know who thou art. Who, indeed, art thou ? Whither wilt thou proceed ? O thou of very superior splendour of complexion, do tell us in detail all we wish to know !—[5]

" 'Cree said,—Blessed be ye, I am dear unto all creatures. Indeed, I am known by the name of Cree. Forsaken by me, the Daityas have been lost for ever.[6] The deities, *viz.*, Indra, Vivaswat, Soma, Vishnu, Varuna, and Agni, having obtained me, are sporting in joy and will do so for ever.[7] Verily, the Rishis and the deities, only when they are endued

---

* 'Cree' is the goddess of Prosperity. The answer of Bhishma will explain the question fully.—T.

with me, become crowned with success. Ye kine, those beings meet with destruction into whom I do not enter![8] Religion, Wealth, and Pleasure, only when endued with me, become sources of happiness. Ye kine who are givers of happiness, know that I am possessed of even such energy![9] I wish to always reside in every one of you. Repairing to your presence, I solicit you. Be all of you endued with Cree!—[10]

"'The kine said,—Thou art fickle and restless. Thou suffer-est thyself to be enjoyed by many persons. We do not desire to have thee! Blessed be thou, go whithersoever thou pleas-est.[11] As regards ourselves, all of us are possessed of good forms. What need have we with thee? Go whithersoever thou likest. Thou hast already (by answering our questions) gratified us exceedingly!—[12]

"'Cree said,—Is it proper with you, ye kine, that you do not welcome me? I am difficult of being attained. Why then do you not accept me?[13] It seems, ye creatures of ex-cellent vows, that the popular proverb is true, *viz.*, that it is certain that when one comes to another of one's own accord and without being sought, one meets with disregard.[14] The gods, the Dānavas, the Gandharvas, the Piçāchas, the Uragas, the Rākshasas, and human beings succeed in obtaining me only after undergoing the severest austerities.[15] Ye who have such energy, do ye take me! Ye amiable ones, I am never dis-regarded by any one in the three worlds of mobile and immo-bile creatures!—[16]

"'The kine said,—We do not disregard thee, O goddess! We do not show thee a slight! Thou art fickle and of a very restless heart. It is for this only that we take leave of thee![17] What need of much talk? Do thou go whithersoever thou choosest. All of us are endued with excellent forms. What need have we with thee, O sinless one?—[18]

"'Cree said,—Ye givers of honors, cast off by you in this way, I shall certainly be an object of disregard with all the world! Do ye show me grace![19] Ye are all highly blessed. Ye are ever ready to grant protection unto those that seek your protection. I have come to you soliciting your protection. I have no fault. Do you rescue me (from this situation).[20]

Know that I shall always be devoted to you! I am desirous of residing in any part, however repulsive, of your bodies. Indeed, I wish to reside in even your rectum![21] Ye sinless ones, I do not see that ye have any part in your bodies that may be regarded as repulsive, for ye are sacred, and sanctifying, and highly blessed! Do ye, however, grant my prayer. Do ye tell me in which part of your bodies I shall take up my residence!—'[22]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by Cree, the kine, always auspicious and inclined to kindness unto all who are devoted to them, took counsel with one another, and then addressing Cree, said unto her, O king, these words.[23]

" 'The kine said,—O thou of great fame, it is certainly desirable that we should honor thee! Do thou live in our urine and dung. Both these are sacred, O auspicious goddess!—[24]

" 'Cree said,—By good luck, ye have shown me much grace implying your desire to favour me. Let it be even as ye say! Blessed be ye all, I have really been honored by you, ye givers of happiness!'—[25]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having, O Bhārata, made this compact with kine, Cree, there and then, in the very sight of those kine, rendered herself invisible.[26] I have thus told thee, O son, the glory of the dung of kine. I shall once again discourse to thee of the glory of kine. Do thou listen to me!' "[27]

Section LXXXIII.

"Bhishma said,—'They who make gifts of kine, and who subsist upon the remnants of things offered as libations on the sacred fire, are regarded, O Yudhishthira, as always performing sacrifices of every kind.[1] No sacrifice can be performed without the aid of curds and ghee. The very character as sacrifice which sacrifices have, depends upon ghee. Hence ghee (or, the cow from which it is produced) is regarded as the very root of sacrifice.[2] Of all kinds of gifts, the gift of kine is applauded as the highest. Kine are the foremost of all things. Themselves sacred, they are the best of cleansers and sanctifiers.[3] People should cherish kine for obtaining prosperity and even

peace. The milk, curds, and ghee that kine yield are capable of cleansing one from every kind of sin.[4] Kine are said to represent the highest energy both in this world and the world that is above. There is nothing that is more sacred or sanctifying than kine, O chief of Bharata's race.[5] In this connection is recited the ancient narrative, O Yudhishthira, of the discourse between the Grandsire and the chief of the celestials.[6] After the Daityas had been defeated and Cakra had become the lord of the three worlds, all creatures grew in prosperity and became devoted to the true religion.[7] Then, on one occasion, the Rishis, the Gandharvas, the Kinnaras, the Uragas, the Rākshasas, the Deities, the Asuras, the winged creatures, and the Prajāpatis, O thou of Kuru's race, all assembled together and adored the Grandsire. There were Nārada and Parvata and Viçwāvasu and Hāhā-Huhu,[8-9] who sang in celestial strains for adoring that puissant lord of all creatures. The deity of wind bore thither the fragrance of celestial flowers.[10] The Seasons also, in their embodied forms, bore the perfumes of flowers peculiar to each, unto that conclave of celestials, that gathering of all creatures of the universe,[11] where celestial maidens danced and sang in accompaniment with celestial music. In the midst of that assembly, Indra, saluting the Lord of all the deities and bowing his head unto him with reverence, asked him, saying,[12]—I desire, O Grandsire, to know why the region of kine is higher, O holy one, than the region of the deities themselves who are the lords of all the worlds.[13] What austerities, what Brahmacharyya, O lord, did kine perform in consequence of which they are able to reside happily in a region that is even above that of the deities ?[14]—Thus addressed by Indra, Brahman said unto the slayer of Vala,—Thou hast always, O slayer of Vala, disregarded kine.[15] Hence, thou art not acquainted with the glorious pre-eminence of kine. Listen now to me, O puissant one, as I explain to thee the high energy and glorious pre-eminence of kine, O chief of the celestials![16] Kine have been said to be the limbs of sacrifice. They represent sacrifice itself, O Vāsava! Without them there can be no sacrifice.[17] With their milk and the Havi produced therefrom, they uphold all creatures.[18] Their male children are

engaged in assisting at tillage and thereby produce diverse kinds of paddy and other seeds.[19] From them flow sacrifices and Havya and Kavya, and milk and curds and ghee. Hence, O chief of the deities, kine are sacred. Afflicted by hunger and thirst, they bear diverse burthens.[20] Kine support the Munis. They uphold all creatures by diverse acts. O Vāsava, kine are guileless in their behaviour. In consequence of such behaviour and of many well-performed acts, they are enabled to live always in regions that are even above ours.[21] I have thus explained to thee today, O thou of a hundred sacrifices, the reason, O Cakra, of kine residing in a place that is high above that of the deities.[22] Kine obtained many excellent forms, O Vāsava, and are themselves givers of boons (to others). They are called Surabhis. Of sacred deeds and endued with many auspicious indications, they are highly sanctifying.[23] Listen to me also, O slayer of Vala, as I tell thee in detail the reason why kine,—the children of Surabhi,—have descended on the Earth, O best of the deities.[24] In days of yore, O son, when in the Deva-yuga the high-souled Dānavas became lords of the three worlds, Aditi underwent the severest austerities and got Vishnu within her womb (as the reward thereof). Verily, O chief of the-celestials, she had stood upon one leg for many long years, desirous of having a son.*[25-26] Beholding the great goddess Aditi thus undergoing the severest austerities, the daughter of Daksha, *viz.*, the illustrious Surabhi,[27] herself devoted to righteousness, similarly underwent very severe austerities upon the breast of the delightful mountains of Kailāsa that are resorted to by both the deities and the Gandharvas.[28] Established on the highest Yoga, she also stood upon one leg for eleven thousand years.[29] The deities with the Rishis and the great Nāgas all became scorched with the severity of her penances. Repairing thither with me, all of them began to adore that auspicious goddess.[30] I then addressed that goddess endued with penances, and said,—O goddess, O thou of faultless conduct, for what purpose dost thou undergo such severe austerities?[31] O highly blessed one, I am

* 'Devendreshu' is evidently a misreading for 'Daitendreshu.'—T.

gratified with thy penances, O beautiful one! Do thou, O goddess, solicit what boon thou desirest. I shall grant thee whatever thou mayst ask!—Even these were my words unto her, O Purandara.[32] Thus addressed by me, Surabhi answered me, saying,—I have no need, O Grandsire, of boons. Even this, O sinless one, is a great boon to me that thou hast been gratified with me![33]—Unto the illustrious Surabhi, O chief of the celestials, who said so unto me, O lord of Cachi, I answered even in these words, O foremost of the deities, *viz.*,[34]—O goddess, with this exhibition of thy freedom from cupidity and desire, and with these penances of thine, O thou of beautiful face, I have been exceedingly gratified. I, therefore, grant thee the boon of immortality.[35] Thou shalt dwell in a region that is higher than the three worlds, through my grace. That region shall be known to all by the name of Goloka.[36] Thy offspring, ever engaged in doing good acts, will reside in the world of men. In fact, O highly blessed one, thy daughters will reside there.[37] All kinds of enjoyment, celestial and human, that thou mayst think of will immediately be thine. Whatever happiness exists in Heaven, will also be thine, O blessed one![38]—The regions, O thou of a hundred eyes, that are Surabhi's are endued with means for the gratification of every wish. Neither Death, nor Decrepitude, nor fire, can overcome its denizens.[39] No ill-luck, O Vāsava, exists there. Many delightful woods, and delightful ornaments and objects of beauty may be seen there.[40] There many beautiful cars, all excellently equipt and which move at the will of the rider, may be seen, O Vāsava. O thou of eyes like lotus petals, it is only by Brahmacharyya, by penances, by Truth, by self-restraint, by gifts, by diverse kinds of righteous deeds, by sojourns to sacred waters, in fact, by severe austerities and righteous acts well-performed, that one can attain to Goloka.[41-42] Thou hadst asked me, O Cakra, and I have answered thee in full. O slayer of Asuras, thou shouldst never disregard kine!—'[43]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having heard these words of the self-born Brahman, O Yudhishthira, Cakra of a thousand eyes began from that time to worship kine every day and to show them the greatest respect.[44] I have thus told thee everything

about the sanctifying character of kine, O thou of great splendour. The sacred and high pre-eminence and glory of kine,[45] that is capable of cleansing one from every sin, has, O chief of men, been thus explained to thee. That man who with senses withdrawn from every other object will recite this account unto Brāhmanas,[46] on occasions when Havya and Kavya are offered, or at sacrifices, or on occasions of adoring the Pitris, succeeds in conferring upon his ancestors an inexhaustible felicity fraught with the fruition of every wish.[47] That man who is devoted to kine succeeds in obtaining the fruition of every wish of his. Indeed, even those women that are devoted to kine succeed in obtaining the accomplishment of every wish of theirs.[48] He that desires sons obtains sons. He that desires daughters obtains daughters. He that desires wealth succeeds in acquiring wealth, and he that desires religious merit succeeds in winning religious merit.[49] He that desires knowledge acquires knowledge, and he that desires felicity succeeds in acquiring felicity. Indeed, O Bhārata, there is nothing that is unattainable to one that is devoted to kine.' "[50]

SECTION LXXXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast, O grandsire, discoursed to me on the gift of kine that is fraught with great merit. In the case of kings observant of their duties, that gift is most meritorious.[1] Sovereignty is always painful. It is incapable of being borne by persons of uncleansed souls. In the generality of cases, kings fail to attain to auspicious ends.[2] By always making, however, gifts of earth, they succeed in cleansing themselves (of all their sins). Thou hast, O prince of Kuru's race, discoursed to me on many duties.[3] Thou hast discoursed to me on the gifts of kine made by king Nriga in days of old. The Rishi Nāchiketa, in ancient times, had discoursed on the merits of this act.[4] The Vedas and the Upanishads also have laid down that in all sacrifices,—in fact, in all kinds of religious acts,—the Dakshinā should be earth or kine or gold.[5] The Crutis, however, declare that of all Dakshinās, gold is very superior and is, indeed, the best. I desire, O grandsire,

to hear thee discourse truly on this topic.[6] What is gold? How did it spring up? When did it come into existence? What is its essence? Who is its presiding deity? What are its fruits? Why is it regarded as the foremost of all things?[7] For what reason do men of wisdom applaud the gift of gold? For what reason is gold regarded as the best of Dakshinās in all sacrifices?[8] Why also is gold regarded as a cleanser superior to earth itself and kine? Why, indeed, is it regarded so superior as a Dakshinā? Do thou, O grandsire, discourse to me on all this!"[9]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O king, with concentrated attention to me as I recite to thee in detail the circumstances connected with the origin of gold as understood by me.[10] When my father Cāntanu of great energy departed from this world, I preceeded to Gangādwāra for performing his Crāddha.[11] Arrived there I commenced the Crāddha of my sire. My mother Jānhavi, coming there, rendered me great help.[12] Inviting many ascetics crowned with success and causing them to take their seats before me, I commenced the preliminary rites consisting of gifts of water and of other things.[13] Having with a concentrated mind performed all preliminary rites as laid down in the scriptures, I set myself to duly offer the obsequial cake.[14] I then saw, O king, that a handsome arm, adorned with Angadas and other ornaments, rose up, piercing the ground, through the blades of Kuça grass which I had spread.[15] Beholding that arm rise from the ground, I became filled with wonder. Indeed, O chief of Bharata's race, I thought that my sire had come himself for accepting the cake I was about to offer.[16] Reflecting then, by the light of the scriptures, the conviction soon came upon me that the ordinance does occur in the Vedas that the cake should not be presented into the hand of him whose Crāddha is performed. Even this was the conviction that took possession of my mind, *viz.*, that the obsequial cake should never be presented in this world by a man into the visible hand of the man whose obsequial rites are performed. The Pitris do not come in their visible forms for taking the cake. On the other hand, the ordinance provides that it should be presented on the blades

of Kuça grass spread on the earth for the purpose. I then, disregarding that hand which constituted an indication of my sire's presence,[17-19] and recollecting the true ordinance depending upon the authority of the scriptures respecting the mode of presenting the cake, offered the entire cake, O chief of the Bharatas, upon those blades of Kuça grass that were spread before me.[20] Know, O prince of men, that what I did was perfectly consistent with the scriptural ordinance. After this, the arm of my sire, O monarch. vanished in our very sight.[21] On that night as I slept, the Pitris appeared to me in a dream. Gratified with me they said, O chief of Bharata's race, even these words,—We have been pleased with thee,[22] for the indication thou hast afforded today of thy adherence to the ordinance. It has pleased us to see that thou hast not swerved from the injunctions of the scriptures. The scriptural ordinance, having been followed by thee, has become more authoritative, O king.[23] By such conduct thou hast honored and maintained the authority of thyself, the scriptures, the auditions of the Vedas, the Pitris and the Rishis, the Grandsire Brahman himself, and those seniors, *viz.*, the Prajāpatis. Adherence to the scriptures has been maintained. Thou hast today, O chief of the Bharatas, acted very properly.[24-25] Thou hast made gifts of earth and kine. Do thou make gifts of gold. The gift of gold is very cleansing. O thou that art well-conversant with duties, know that by such acts of thine, both ourselves and our fore-fathers will all be cleansed of all our sins. Such gifts rescue both ancestors and descendants to the tenth degree of the person who makes them !—Even these were the words that my ancestors, appearing unto me in a dream, said unto me. I then awoke, O king, and become filled with wonder.[26-28] Indeed, O chief of Bharata's race, I set my heart then upon making gifts of gold. Listen now, O monarch, to this old history.[29] It is highly praiseworthy and it extends the period of his life who listens to it. It was first recited to Rāma the son of Jamadagni. In former days Jamadagni's son Rāma, filled with great wrath,[30] exterminated the Kshatriyas from off the face of the Earth for thrice seven times. Having subjugated the entire Earth, the

heroic Rāma of eyes like lotus petals began to make preparations for performing a Horse-sacrifice, O king, that is praised by all Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and that is capable of granting the fruition of every wish.[31-32] That sacrifice cleanses all creatures and enhances the energy and splendour of those who succeed in performing it. Endued with great energy, Rāma, by the performance of that sacrifice, became sinless.[33] Having, however, performed that foremost of sacrifices, the high-souled Rāma failed yet to attain to perfect lightness of heart.[34] Repairing unto Rishis conversant with every branch of learning as also the deities, Rāma of Bhrigu's race questioned them. Filled with repentance and compassion, he addressed them, saying,—Ye highly blessed ones, do ye declare that which is more cleansing still for men engaged in fierce deeds?—Thus addressed by him, those great Rishis, fully acquainted with the Vedas and the scriptures, answered him, saying,[35-36]—O Rāma, guided by the authority of the Vedas, do thou honor all learned Brāhmanas. Following this conduct for sometime, do thou once more ask the regenerate Rishis as to what should be done by thee for cleansing thyself![37] Follow the advice which those persons of great wisdom would give!—Repairing then to Vaçishtha and Agastya and Kaçyapa,[38] that delighter of the Bhrigus, endued with great energy, asked them the very question.—Ye foremost of Brāhmanas, even this is the wish that has arisen in my heart. How, indeed, may I succeed in cleansing myself?[39] By what acts and rites may this be brought about? Or, if by gifts, what is that article by giving away which this wish of mine may be accomplished? Ye foremost of righteous persons, if your minds be inclined to do me a favour, then do tell me, ye that are endued with wealth of asceticism, what is that by which I may succeed in cleansing myself!—[40]

"'The Rishis said,—O delighter of the Bhrigus, the mortal that has sinned becomes cleansed by making gifts of kine, of earth, and of wealth. Even this is what we have heard.[41] There is another gift that is regarded as a great cleanser. Listen to us, O regenerate Rishi, as we discourse on it! That article is excellent and is endued with wonderful aspect and is,

besides, the offspring of Fire.[42] In days of yore, the god Agni burnt all the world. It has been heard by us that from his seed sprung gold of bright complexion. It came to be celebrated under the name of the good-complexioned. By making gifts of gold thou art sure to have thy wish crowned with fruition.[43]—Then the illustrious Vaçishtha in especial, of rigid vows, addressing him, said,—Hear, O Rāma, how gold, which has the splendour of fire, first sprang into existence.[44] That gold will confer merit on thee. In matters of gifts, gold is highly applauded. I shall also tell thee what is gold, whence it has come, and how it has come to be invested with superior attributes.[45] Listen to me, O thou of mighty arms, as I discourse upon these topics. Know this as certain that gold is of the essence of Fire and Soma.[46] The goat is Fire, (for if given, it leads to the region of the deity of fire); the sheep is is Varuna (for it leads to the region of Varuna the lord of waters); the horse is Surya (for it leads to the region of Surya); elephants are Nāgas (for they lead to the world of Nāgas); buffalos are Asuras (for they lead to the region of Asuras);[47] Cocks and boars are Rākshasas (for they lead to the regions of the Rākshasas), O delighter of the Bhrigus; earth is sacrifice, kine, water, and Soma, (for it leads to the merits of sacrifice, and to the region of kine, of the lord of waters, and of Soma.) Even these are the declarations of the Smritis.[48] Churning the entire universe, a mass of energy was found. That energy is gold. Hence, O regenerate Rishi, compared to all these objects (which I have named above) gold is certainly superior. It is a precious thing, high and excellent.*[49] It is for this reason that the deities and Gandharvas and Uragas and Rākshasas and human beings and Piçāchas hold it with care.[50] All these beings, O son of Bhrigu's race, shine in splendour, with the aid of gold, after converting it into crowns and armlets and diverse kinds of ornaments.[51] It is also for this reason that gold is regarded as the most cleansing of all cleansing things such as earth and kine and all other kinds

* The Commentator explains that hence, by making gifts of gold, one comes to be regarded as making gifts of the entire universe.—T.

of wealth, O prince of men.[52] The gift of gold, O puissant king, is the highest gift. It is distinguished above the gift of earth, of kine, and of all other things.[53] O thou that art endued with the effulgence of an immortal, gold is an eternal cleanser. Do thou make gifts of it unto the foremost of Brāhmanas as it is the foremost of cleansing things.[54] Of all kinds of Dakshinā, gold is the best. They who make gifts of gold are said to be givers of all things.[55] Indeed, they who make gifts of gold come to be regarded as givers of deities. Agni is all the deities in one, and gold has Agni for its essence.[56] Hence it is that the person who makes gifts of gold gives away all the deities. Hence, O chief of men, there is no gift higher than the gift of gold.—[57]

"'Vaçishtha continued,—Hear once more, O regenerate Rishi, as I discourse upon it, the pre-eminence of gold, O foremost of all wielders of weapons.[58] I heard this formerly in the Purāna, O son of Bhrigu's race. It represents the speech of Prajāpati himself.[59] After the wedding was over of the illustrious and high-souled Rudra armed with the trident, O son of Bhrigu's race, with the goddess who became his spouse, on the breast of that foremost of mountains, *viz.*, Himavat, the illustrious and high-souled deity wished to unite himself with the goddess. Thereupon all the deities, penetrated with anxiety, approached Rudra. Bending their heads with reverence and gratifying Mahādeva and his boon-giving spouse Umā, both of whom were seated together, they addressed Rudra, O perpetuater of Bhrigu's race, saying,—This union, O illustrious and sinless one, of thine with the goddess,[60-62] is a union of one endued with penances with another of penances as severe! Verily, it is the union, O lord, of one possessed of very great energy with another whose energy is scarcely less! Thou, O illustrious one, art of energy that is irresistible. The goddess Umā also is possessed of energy that is equally irresistible.[63] The offspring that will result from a union like this, will, without doubt, O illustrious deity, be endued with very great might. Verily, O puissant lord, that offspring will consume all things in the three worlds without leaving a remnant.[64] Do thou then, O lord of all the universe, O thou of large eyes,

grant unto these deities prostrated before thee, a boon from desire of benefiting the three worlds![65] Do thou, O puissant one, restrain this high energy of thine which may become the seed of offspring.[66] Verily, that energy is the essence of all forces in the three worlds. Ye two, by an act of congress, are sure to scorch the universe![67] The offspring that will be born of you two will certainly be able to afflict the deities! Neither the goddess Earth, nor the Firmament, nor Heaven, O puissant one,[68] nor all of them together, will be able to bear thy energy, we firmly believe. The entire universe is certain to be burnt through the force of thy energy.[69] It behooveth thee, O puissant one, to show us favor, O illustrious deity. That favor consists in thy not begetting a son, O foremost of the deities, upon the goddess Umā.[70] Do thou, with patience, restrain thy fiery and puissant energy!—Unto the deities that said so, the holy Mahādeva having the bovine bull for his sign, O regenerate Rishi, answered, saying,—So be it!—Having said so, the deity that has the bull for his vehicle, drew up his vital seed.[71-72] From that time he came to be called by the name of *Urddharetas* (one that has drawn up the vital seed). The spouse of Rudra, however, at this endeavour of the deities to stop procreation, became highly incensed.[73] In consequence of her being of the opposite sex (and, therefore, endued with little control upon her temper) she used harsh words:—Since ye have opposed my lord in the matter of procreating an offspring when he was desirous of procreating one upon me,[74] as the consequence of this act, ye deities, ye all shall become sonless. Verily, since ye have opposed the birth of an offspring from me,[75] therefore, ye shall have no offspring of your own!—At the time this curse was denounced, O perpetuater of Bhrigu's race, the deity of fire was not there.[76] It is in consequence of this curse of the goddess that the deities have become childless. Rudra, solicited by them, held in himself his energy of incomparable puissance.[77] A small quantity, however, that came out of his body fall down on the Earth. That seed, falling on the Earth, leaped into a blazing fire and there began to grow (in size and power) most wonderfully.[78] The energy of Rudra, coming in contact with another energy of great puis-

sance, became identified with it in respect of essence. Meanwhile, all the deities having Cakra at their head,[79] were scorched a good deal by the Asura named Tāraka. The Ādityas, the Vasus, the Rudras, the Māruts, the Açwins,[80] and the Sādhyas all became exceedingly afflicted in consequence of the prowess of that son of Diti. All the regions of the deities, their beautiful cars, and their palatial mansions,[81] and the retreats of the Rishis, were snatched away by the Asuras. Then the deities and the Rishis, with cheerless hearts, sought the protection of the illustrious and puissant Brahman of unfading glory.' "—[82]

Section LXXXV.

" '—The Deities said,—The Asura named Tāraka who has received boons from thee, O puissant one, is afflicting the deities and the Rishis. Let his death be ordained by thee![1] O Grandsire, great has been our fear from him. O illustrious one, do thou rescue us! We have no other refuge than thee?—[2]

" '—Brahman said,—I am equal in my behaviour towards all creatures. I cannot, however, approve of unrighteousness. Let Tāraka, that opponent of the deities and Rishis, be quickly destroyed.[3] The Vedas and the eternal duties shall not be exterminated, ye foremost of celestials! I have ordained what is proper, in this matter. Let the fever of your hearts be dispelled.—[4]

" '—The Deities said,—In consequence of thy having granted him boons, that son of Diti has been proud of his might. He is incapable of being slain by the deities. How then will his death be brought about?[5] The boon which, O Grandsire, he has obtained from thee is that he should not be slayable by deities or Asuras or Rākshasas.[6] The deities have also been cursed by the spouse of Rudra in consequence of their endeavour in former days to stop propagation. The curse denounced by her has been, O lord of the universe, even this, *viz.*, that they are not to have any offspring!'—[7]

" '—Brahman said,—Ye foremost of deities, Agni was not there at the time the curse was denounced by the goddess.

Even he will beget an offspring for the destruction of the enemies of the gods.[8] Transcending all the deities and Dānavas and Rākshasas and human beings and Gandharvas and Nāgas and feathery creatures,[9] the offspring of Agni with his dart, which in his hands will be a weapon incapable of being baffled if once hurled at the foe, will destroy Tāraka from whom your fear hath arisen. Verily, all other enemies of yours will also be slain by him.[10] Will is eternal. That Will is known by the name of Kāma and is identical with Rudra's seed a portion of which fell into the blazing form of Agni.[11] That energy, which is a mighty substence, and which resembles a second Agni, will be cast by Agni into Gangā for producing an offspring upon her in order to effect the destruction of the enemies of the gods.[12] Agni did not come within the range of Umā's curse. The eater of sacrificial libations was not present there when the curse was denounced.[13] Let the deity of fire, therefore, be searched out. Let him now be set to this task. Ye sinless ones, I have told you what the means are for the destruction of Tāraka.[14] The curses of those that are endued with energy fail to produce any effect upon those that are endued with energy. Forces, when they come into contact with something that is endued with stronger force, become weakened.[15] They that are endued with penances are competent to destroy even the boon-giving deities who are indestructible. Will, or Like, or Desire (which is identifiable with Agni) sprang in former times and is the most eternal of all creatures.[16] Agni is the Lord of the universe. He is incapable of being apprehended or described. Capable of going everywhere and existing in all things, he is the Creator of all beings. He lives in the hearts of all creatures. Endued with great puissance, He is older than Rudra himself.[17] Let that eater of sacrificial libations, who is a mass of energy, be searched out. That illustrious deity will accomplish this desire of your hearts![18]—Hearing these words of the Grandsire, the high-souled gods then proceeded to search out the god of fire with hearts cheerful in consequence of their purpose having been crowned with success.[19] The gods and the Rishis then searched every part of the three worlds, their hearts filled with the thought of Agni and eagerly

desiring to obtain a sight of him.[20] Endued with penances, possessed of prosperity, celebrated over all the worlds, those high-souled ones, all crowned with ascetic success, sojourned over every part of the universe, O foremost one of Bhrigu's race.[21] They failed, however, to find out the eater of sacrificial libations who had concealed himself by merging his self into self.* About this time, a frog, living in water, appeared on the surface thereof from the nethermost regions, with cheerless heart in consequence of having been scorched by the energy of Agni. The little creature addressed the deities who had become penetrated with fear and who were all very eager to obtain a sight of the deity of fire, saying,[22-23]—Ye gods, Agni is now residing in the nethermost regions. Scorched by the energy of that deity, and unable to bear it longer, I have come hither![24] The illustrious bearer of sacrificial libations, ye gods, is now under the waters. He has created a mass of waters within which he is staying. All of us have been scorched by his energy.[25] If, ye gods, ye desire to obtain a sight of him,—verily, if ye have any business with him,—do ye go to him thither![26] Do, indeed, repair thither. As regards ourselves, we shall fly from this place, ye deities, from fear of Agni![—Having said this much, the frog dived into the water.[27] The eater of sacrificial libations learnt the treachery of the frog. Coming to that animal, he cursed the whole race, saying,—Ye shall henceforth be deprived of the organ of taste![28]—Having denounced this curse on the frog, he left the spot speedily for taking up his abode elsewhere. Verily, the puissant deity did not show himself.[29] Seeing the plight to which the frogs were reduced for having done them a service, the deities, O best of the Bhrigus, showed favor unto those creatures. I shall tell thee everything regarding it. Do thou listen to me, O mighty-armed hero![—[30]

"'—The Deities said,—Though deprived of tongues through the curse of Agni and, therefore, reft of the sensation of taste, ye shall yet be able to utter diverse kinds of speech.[31] Living within holes, deprived of food, reft of consciousness, wasted

---

* *I. e.*, into water for water is identical with Agoi.—T.

and dried up, and more dead than alive, the Earth will yet hold you all.[32] Ye shall also be able to wander about at night-time when everything is enveloped in thick darkness!—Having said this unto the frogs, the deities once more went over every part of the Earth for finding out the deity of blazing flames. In spite of all their efforts, however, they failed to get at him.[33] Then, O perpetuater of Bhrigu's race, an elephant, as large and mighty as the elephant of Cakra, addressed the gods, saying,—Agni is now residing within this Açwattha tree![34]—Incensed with wrath, Agni cursed all the elephants, O descendant of Bhrigu, saying,—Your tongues will be bent back![35]—Having been pointed out by the elephants, the deity of fire cursed all elephants even thus and then went away and entered the heart of the Cami tree from desire of residing within it for sometime.[36] Listen now, O puissant hero, what favor was shown unto the elephants, O foremost one of Bhrigu's race, by the deities of unbaffled prowess who were all gratified with the service a representative of theirs had done to them.—[37]

" '—The Deities said,—With the aid of even your tongues bent inwards ye shall be able to eat all things, and with even those tongues ye shall be able to utter cries that will only be indistinct![38]—Having blessed the elephants in this way, the denizens of Heaven once more resumed their search after Agni. Indeed, having issued out of the Açwattha tree, the deity of fire had entered the heart of Cami.[39] This new abode of Agni was divulged by a parrot. The gods thereupon proceeded to the spot. Enraged with the conduct of the parrot, the deity of blazing flames cursed the whole parrot race, saying,—Ye shall from this day be deprived of the power of speech![40]—Indeed, the eater of sacrificial libations turned up the tongues of all the parrots. Beholding Agni at the place pointed out by the parrot, and witnessing the curse denounced upon him, the gods, feeling a compassion for the poor creature, blessed him, saying,[41]—In consequence of thy being a parrot, thou shalt not be wholly deprived of the power of speech. Though thy tongue has been turned backwards, yet speech thou shalt have, confined to the letter K.[42] Like that of a child or an

old man, thy speech shall be sweet and indistinct and wonderful !—Having said these words unto the parrot, and beholding the deity of fire within the heart of the Cami, the gods[43] made Cami wood a sacred fuel fit for producing fire in all religious rites. It was from that time that fire is seen to reside in the heart of the Cami.[44] Men came to regard the Cami as a proper means for producing fire (in sacrifices).* The waters that occur in the nethermost regions had come into contact with the deity of blazing flames.[45] Those heated waters, O thou of Bhrigu's race, are vomited forth by the mountain springs. In consequence, indeed, of Agni having resided in them for sometime, they became hot through his energy.[46] Meanwhile Agni, beholding the gods, became grieved. Addressing the deities, he asked them,—What is the reason of your presence here ?[47]—Unto him the deities and the great Rishis said,—We wish to set thee to a particular task. It behooveth thee to accomplish it ![48] When accomplished, it will redound greatly to thy credit !—[49]

" '—Agni said,—Tell me what your business is. I shall, ye gods, accomplish it ! I am always willing to be set by you to any task you wish ! Do not scruple, therefore, to command me !—[50]

" '—The Deities said,—There is an Asura of the name of Tāraka who has been filled with pride in consequence of the boon he has obtained from Brahman. Through his energy he is able to oppose and discomfit us. Do thou ordain his destruction ![51] O sire, do thou rescue these deities, these Prajāpatis, and these Rishis, O highly blessed Pāvaka ![52] O puissant one, do thou beget a heroic son possessed of thy energy, who will dispel, O bearer of sacrificial libations, our fears from that Asura ![53] We have been cursed by the great goddess Umā. There is nothing else than thy energy which can be our refuge now. Do thou, therefore, O puissant deity, rescue us all ![54]—Thus addressed, the illustrious and irresistible bearer of sacrificial

---

* This refers to the practice of making the sacrificial fire by rubbing two sticks of Cami. It is a very inflammable wood and is used hence in all sacred rites.—T.

libations answered, saying,—Be it so !—and he then proceeded towards Gangā otherwise called Bhāgirathi.[55] He united himself in (spiritual) congress with her and caused her to conceive. Verily, in the womb of Gangā the seed of Agni began to grow even as Agni himself grows (when supplied with fuel and aided by the wind).[56] With the energy of that god, Gangā became exceedingly agitated at heart. Indeed, she suffered great distress and became unable to bear it.[57] When the deity of blazing flames cast his seed endued with great energy into the womb of Gangā, a certain Asura (bent on purposes of his own) uttered a frightful roar.[58] In consequence of that frightful roar uttered by the Asura for purposes of his own (and not for terrifying her), Gangā became very much terrified and her eyes rolled in fear and betrayed her agitation.[59] Deprived of consciousness, she became unable to bear her body and the seed within her womb. The daughter of Janhu, inseminated with the energy of the illustrious deity, began to tremble.[60] Overwhelmed with the energy of the seed she held in her womb, O learned Brāhmana, she then addressed the deity of blazing fire, saying,—I am no longer capable, O illustrious one, of bearing thy seed in my womb.[61] Verily, I am overcome with weakness by this seed of thine. The health I had in days before is no longer mine. I have been exceedingly agitated, O illustrious one, and my heart is dead within me, O sinless one.[62] O foremost of all persons endued with penances, I am incapable of bearing thy seed any longer. I shall cast it off, induced by the distress that has overtaken me, and not by caprice.[63] There has been no actual contact of my person with thy seed, O illustrious deity of blazing flames! Our union, having for its cause the distress that has overtaken the deities, has been subtile and not of the flesh, O thou of great splendour.[64] Whatever merit or otherwise there may be in this act (intended to be done by me), O cater of sacrificial libations, must belong to thee. Verily, I think, the righteousness or unrighteousness of this deed must be thine![65]—Unto her the deity of fire said,—Do thou bear the seed! Do, indeed, bear the fœtus endued with my energy. It will lead to great results.[66] Thou art, verily, capable of bearing the entire

Earth. Thou wilt gain nothing by not holding this energy.[67]—That foremost of streams, though thus dissuaded by the deity of fire as also by all the other deities, cast off the seed on the breast of Meru, that foremost of all mountains.[68] Capable (somehow) of bearing that seed, yet oppressed by the energy of Rudra (for Agni is identical with Rudra), she failed to hold that seed longer in consequence of its burning energy.[69] After she had cast it off, through sheer distress, that blazing seed having the splendour of fire, O perpetuater of Bhrigu's race, Agni saw her,[70] and asked that foremost of streams,—Is it all right with the fœtus thou hast cast off? Of what complexion has it been, O goddess? Of what form does it look? With what energy does it seem to be endued? Do thou tell me all about it'—[71]

"'—Gangā said,—The fœtus is endued with the complexion of gold. In energy it is even like thee, O sinless one! Of an excellent complexion, perfectly stainless, and blazing with splendour, it has illuminated the entire mountain.[72] O foremost of all persons endued with penances, the fragrance emitted by it resembles the cool perfume that is scattered by lakes adorned with lotuses and Nyphæa stellata, mixed with that of the Nauclea Cadamba.[73] With the splendour of that fœtus everything around it seemed to be transformed into gold even as all things on mountain and low land seem to be transformed into gold by the rays of the Sun.[74] Indeed, the splendour of that fœtus, spreading far, falls upon mountains and rivers and springs.[75] Indeed, it seems that the three worlds, with all their mobile and immobile creatures, are being illuminated by it. Even of this kind is thy child, O illustrious bearer of sacrificial libations.[76] Like unto Surya or thy blazing self, in beauty it is even like a second Soma!—Having said these words, the goddess disappeared there and then.[77] Pāvaka also, of great energy, having accomplished the business of the deities proceeded to the place he liked, O delighter of the Bhrigus.[78] It was in consequence of the result of this act that the Rishis and the deities bestowed the name of Hiranyaretas upon the deity of fire.*[79] And because the Earth held that seed (after

* 'Hiranyaretas' implies 'having gold for his vital seed.—T.

the goddess Gangā had cast it upon her), she also came to be called by the name of Vasumati. Meanwhile, that fœtus, which had sprung from Pāvaka and been held for a time by Gangā,*[80] having fallen on a forest of reeds, began to grow and at last assumed a wonderful form. The presiding goddess of the constellation Krittikā beheld that form resembling the rising Sun.[81] She thenceforth began to rear that child as her son with the sustenance of her breast. For this reason that child of preeminent splendour came to be called Kārtikeya after her name.[82] And because he grew from seed that fell out of Rudra's body, he came to be called Skanda. The incident also of his birth having taken place in the solitude of a forest of reeds, concealed from everybody's view, led to his being called by the name of Guha. It was in this way that gold came into existence as the offspring of the deity of blazing flames.†[83] Hence it is that gold came to be looked upon as the foremost of all things and the ornament of the very gods. It was from this circumstance that gold came to be called by the name of Jātarupam.‡[84] It is the foremost of all costly things, and among ornaments also it is the foremost. The cleanser among all cleansing things, it is the most auspicious of all auspicious objects.[85] Gold is truly the illustrious Agni, the Lord of all things, and the foremost of all Prajāpatis. The most sacred of all sacred things is gold, O foremost of regenerate ones. Verily, gold is said to have for its essence Agni and Soma !—[86]

"Vaçishtha continued,—This history also, O Rāma, called Brahma-darçana, was heard by me in days of yore, respecting the achievement of the Grandsire Brahman who is identifiable with the Supreme Soul.[87] To a sacrifice performed in days of yore by that foremost of gods, *viz.*, the Lord Rudra, O thou of

---

* 'Vasumati' implies 'endued with wealth,' so called because the seed of Agni, identified with gold, is wealth of the highest kind and fell on the Earth who from that time began to hold it.—T.

† 'Skanda' is derived from 'Skanna' or fallen out. 'Guha' implies secret. The secresy of his birth in the wilderness led to the bestowal of this name. He has many other names.—T.

‡ 'Jātarupa' refers to the incident of its having assumed an excellent form after its birth from Agni.—T.

great might, who on that occasion had assumed the form of Varuna,[88] there came the Munis and all the deities with Agni at their head. To that sacrifice also came all the sacrificial limbs (in their embodied forms), and the Mantra called Vashat in his embodied form.[89] All the Sāmans also and all the Yajushes, numbering by thousands and in their embodied forms, came there. The Rig-Veda also came there, adorned with the rules of orthoepy.[90] The Lakshanas, the Suras, the Tomas, the Niruktas, the Notes arranged in rows, and the syllable Om, as also Nigraha and Pragraha, all came there and took their residence in the eye of Mahādeva.[91] The Vedas with the Upanishats, Vidyā and Sāvitri, as also, the Past, the Present, and the Future. all came there and were held by the illustrious Civa.[92] The puissant Lord of All then poured libations himself into his own self. Indeed, the wielder of Pināka caused that Sacrifice of multifarious form to look exceedingly beautiful.[93] He is Heaven, Firmament, Earth, and the Welkin. He is called the Lord of the Earth. He is the Lord whose sway is owned by all obstacles. He is endued with Cree and He is identical with the deity of blazing flames.[94] That illustrious deity is called by various names. Even He is Brahman and Civa and Rudra and Varuna and Agni and Prajāpati. He is the auspicious Lord of all creatures.[95] Sacrifice (in his embodied form), and Penance, and all the union rites, and the goddess Dikshā blazing with rigid observances, the several Points of the compass with the deities that respectively preside over them, the spouses of all the deities, their daughters, and the celestial mothers, all came to Paçupati, O perpetuater of Bhrigu's race, together in a body.[96-97] Verily, beholding that sacrifice of the high-souled Mahādeva who had assumed the form of Varuna, all of them became highly pleased. Seeing the celestial damsels of great beauty, the seed of Brahman came out and fell upon the Earth.[98] In consequence of the seed having fallen on the dust, Pushan (Surya) took up that dust mixed with the particles of seed from the Earth with his hands and cast it into the sacrificial fire.[99] Meanwhile, the sacrifice with the sacred fire of blazing flames was commenced and it went on. Brahman (as the Hotri) was pouring libations

on the fire. While thus employed, the Grandsire became excited with desire (and his seed came out).[100] As soon as that seed came out, he took it up with the sacrificial ladle and poured it as a libation of ghee, O delighter of the Bhrigus, with the necessary Mantras, on the blazing fire.[101] From that seed, Brahman of great energy caused the four orders of creatures to spring into existence. That seed of the Grandsire was endued with the three attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas. From that element in it which represented the principle of Rajas, sprang all mobile creatures endued with the principle of Pravritti or action.*[102] From the element of Tamas in it, sprang all immobile creatures. The principle of Sattwa, however, which dwelt in that seed, entered both kinds of existences. That attribute of Sattwa is of the nature of Tejas or Light (being identical with Buddhi or the Understanding). It is eternal and of it is unending Space.†[103] In all creatures the attribute of Sattwa is present and is identical with that light which shows what is right and what is wrong. When the seed of Brahman was thus poured as a libation on that sacrificial fire, there sprang from it, O mighty one, three beings into existence.[104] They were three male persons, endued with bodies that partook of the characters of the circumstances from which they respectively sprang. One arose first from the flames of the fire (called Bhrik) and hence he came to be called by the name of Bhrigu. A second came from the burning char-coals (called Angāra) and hence he came to be called by the name of Angiras.[105] The third sprang from a heap of extinguished char-coals and he came to be called by the name of Kavi. It has been already said that the first came out with flames emanating from his body and hence he was called Bhrigu.[106] From the rays of the sacrificial fire sprang another called Marichi. From Marichi (afterwards) sprang Kaçyapa.

---

* The Commentator explains,—'Pravrittipradhānam jangamamabhut.'—T.

† 'Sa guna' refers to Sattwa. Tejas is identical with Buddhi, because Buddhi, like Light, discovers all things. Sattwa, again, being of the nature of space, or rather being space itself, is of universal form; that is, Sattwa is all-pervading.—T.

It has been already said that from the (burning) char-coals sprang Angiras. The (diminutive) Rishis called Vālikhillyas sprang from the blades of Kuça grass spread out in that sacrifice.[107] From the same blades of Kuça grass, O thou of great puissance, sprang Atri. From the ashes of the fire sprang all those that are numbered among the regenerate Rishis,[108] *viz.*, the Vaikhānashas, endued with penances and devoted to Vedic lore and all excellent accomplishments.[109] From the eyes of Agni sprang the twin Açwins endued with great beauty of person. At last, from his ears, sprang all the Prajāpatis.[110] The Rishis sprang from the pores of Agni's body. From his sweat sprang Cchandas, and from his strength sprang Mind. For this reason Agni has been said to be all the deities in his individual self,[111] by Rishis endued with Vedic lore, guided by the authority of the Vedas. The pieces of wood that keep alive the flames of Agni are regarded as the Months. The juices the fuel yields constitute the Fortnights.[112] The liver of Agni is called the Day and Night, and his fierce light is called the Muhurtas. The blood of Agni is regarded as the source of the Rudras. From his blood sprang also the gold-complexioned deities called the Maitradevatās.[113] From his smoke sprang the Vasus. From his flames sprang the Rudras as also the (twelve) Ādityas of great effulgence.[114] The Planets and Constellations and other stars that have been set in their respective orbits in the firmament, are regarded as the (burning) char-coals of Agni. The first Creator of the universe declared Agni to be Supreme Brahma and Eternal,[115] and the giver of all wishes. This is verily a mystery.

" '—After all these births had taken place, Mahādeva who had assumed the form of Varuna (for his sacrifice) and who had Pavana for his soul,[116] said,—This excellent Sacrifice is mine. I am the Grahapati in it. The three beings that first sprang from the sacrificial fire are mine! Without doubt, they should be regarded as my offspring. Know this, ye gods who range through the skies! They are the fruits of this Sacrifice![117]

" '—Agni said,—These offspring have sprung from my limbs. They have all depended upon me as the cause of their starting into life. They should, therefore, be regarded, as my

children. Mahādeva in the form of Varuna is in error in respect of this matter.*[118]—After this, the Master of all the worlds, the Grandsire of all creatures, *viz.*, Brahman, then said,—These children are mine ! The seed was mine which I poured upon the sacrificial fire.[119] I am the accomplisher of this Sacrifice. It was I who poured on the sacrificial fire the seed that came out of myself. The fruit is always his who has planted the seed. The principal cause of these births is the seed owned by me ![120]—The deities then repaired to the presence of the Grandsire and having bowed their heads unto him and joined their hands in reverence, they said unto him,[121]—All of us, O illustrious one, and the entire universe of mobile and immobile creatures, are thy offspring. O sire, let Agni of blazing flames,[122] and the illustrious and puissant Mahādeva who has, for this sacrifice, assumed the form of Varuna, have their wish (in the matter of the offspring) !—At these words, although born of Brahman, the puissant Mahādeva in the form of Varuna, the ruler of all aquatic creatures[123] received the first-born one, *viz.*, Bhrigu endued with the effulgence of the Sun as his own child. The Grandsire then intended that Angiras should become the son of Agni.[124] Conversant with the truth in respect of everything, the Grandsire then took Kavi as his own son. Engaged in procreating creatures for peopling the Earth, Bhrigu who is regarded as a Prajāpati thence came to be called as Varuna's offspring.[125] Endued with every prosperity, Angiras came to be called as the offspring of Agni, and the celebrated Kavi came to be known as the child of Brahman himself. Bhrigu and Angiras, who had sprung from the flame and the char-coals of Agni respectively, became the procreators of extensive races and tribes in the world.[126] Verily, these three, *viz.*, Bhrigu and Angiras and Kvi, regarded as Prajāpati, are the progenitors of many races and tribes. All are the children of these three. Know this, O puissant hero.[127] Bhrigu begat seven sons all of whom became equal to him in merits and accomplishments. Their names are Chyavana, Vajraçirshan, Suchi, Urva,[128] Cukra, that giver of boons, Vibhu,

* 'Avaçātmaka' is explained by the Commentator as 'bhrāntā.'—T.

and Savana. These are the seven. They are children of Bhrigu and are hence Bhārgavas. They are also called Vārunas in consequence of their ancestor Bhrigu having been adopted by Mahādeva in the form of Varuna. Thou belongest to the race of Bhrigu.[129] Angiras begot eight sons. They also are known as Varunas. Their names are Vrihaspati, Utatthya, Payasya, Cānti,[130] Dhira, Virupa, Samvarta, and Sudhanwan the eighth. These eight are regarded also as the offspring of Agni. Freed from every evil, they are devoted to knowledge only.[131] The sons of Kavi who was appropriated by Brahman himself are also known as Vārunas. Numbering eight, all of them became progenitors of races and tribes (instead of betaking themselves to celebate lives). Auspicious by nature, they are all conversant with Brahma.[132] The names of the eight sons of Kavi are Kavi, Kāvya, Dhrishnu, Uçanas endued with great intelligence, Bhrigu, Viraja, Kāçi, and Ugra conversant with every duty.[133] These are the eight sons of Kavi. By them the whole world has been peopled. They are all Prajāpatis, and by them have been procreated many offspring.[134] Thus, O chief of Bhrigu's race, hath the whole world been peopled with the progeny of Angiras, and Kavi and Bhrigu.[135] The puissant and supreme Lord Mahādeva in the form of Varuna which he had assumed for his sacrifice had first, O learned Brāhmana, adopted both Kavi and Angiras. Hence, these two are regarded as of Varuna.[136] After that the eater of sacrificial libations, *viz.*, the deity of blazing flames, adopted Angiras. Hence, all the progeny of Angiras are known as belonging to the race of Agni.[137] The Grandsire Brahman was, in olden days, gratified by all the deities who said unto him,—Let these lords of the universe (referring to Bhrigu and Angiras and Kavi and their descendants) rescue us all.[138] Let all of them become progenitors of offspring (for peopling the Earth). Let all of them become endued with penances. Through thy grace, let all these rescue the world (from becoming an uninhabited wilderness).[139] Let them become procreators and extenders of races and tribes and let them increase thy energy Let all of them become thorough masters of the Vedas and let them be achievers of great deeds.[140] Let all of them be friends

to the cause of the deities. Indeed, let all of them become endued with auspiciousness. Let them become founders of extensive races and tribes and let them be great Rishis. Let all of them be endued with high penances and let all of them be devoted to high Brahmacharyya.[141] All of us, as also all these, are thy offspring, O thou of great puissance. Thou, O Grandsire, art the Creator of both of deities and the Brahmanas.[142] Marichi is thy first offspring. All these also that are called Bhārgavas are thy progeny. (Ourselves also are so). Looking at this fact, O Grandaire, we shall all aid and support one another.[143] All these shall, in this way, multiply their progeny and establish thyself at the commencement of each creation after the universal destruction.[144]—Thus addressed by them, Brahman, the Grandsire of all the worlds, said unto them,—So be it! I am gratified with you all!—Having said so unto the deities he proceeded to the place he had come from.[145] Even this is what happened in days of old in that sacrifice of the high-souled Mahādeva, that foremost one of all the deities, in the beginning of creation, when he for the purposes of his sacrifice had assumed the form of Varuna.[146] Agni is Brahman. He is Paçupati. He is Sarva. He is Rudra. He is Prajāpati.* It is well known that gold is the offspring of Agni.[147] When fire is not obtainable (for the purposes of a sacrifice), gold is used as a substitute. Guided by the indications afforded by the auditions of the Veda, one that is conversant with authorities and that knows the identity of gold with fire, acts in this way.[148] Placing a piece of gold on some blades of Kuça grass spread out on the ground, the sacrificer pours libations upon it. Upon also the pores of an anthill, upon the right ear of a goat,[149] upon a piece of level earth, upon the waters of a Tirtha, or on the hand of a Brāhmana, if libations are poured, the illustrious deity of fire becomes gratified and regards it as a source of his own aggrandisement as also that of the deities through his.[150] Hence, it is that we have heard that all the deities regard Agni as their refuge and are devoted to him. Agni sprang from Brahman, and from

* These are different names of Brahman and Mahādeva.—T.

Agni sprang gold.*[151] Hence, it has been heard by us, that those persons observant of righteousness that make gifts of gold are regarded as giving away all the deities.[152] The man who makes gifts of gold attains to a very high end. Regions of blazing effulgence are his. Verily, O Bhārgava, he becomes installed as the king of kings in Heaven.[153] That person who, at sun-rise, makes a gift of gold according to the ordinance and with proper Mantras, succeeds in warding off the evil consequences foreshadowed by ominous dreams.[154] The man who, as soon as the Sun has risen, makes a gift of gold becomes cleansed of all his sins. He who makes a gift of gold at midday destroys all his future sins.[155] He who, with restrained soul, makes a gift of gold at the second twilight succeeds in attaining to a residence with Brahman and the deity of wind and Agni and Soma in their respective regions.[156] Such a man attains to auspicious fame in regions of great felicity that belong to Indra himself. Attaining to great fame in this world also, and cleansed of all his sins, he sports in joy and happiness.[157] Verily, such a man attains to many other regions of happiness and becomes unequalled for glory and fame. His course perfectly unobstructed, he succeeds in going everywhere at will.[158] He has never to fall down from the regions to which he attains, and the glory he acquires becomes very great. Indeed, by making gifts of gold one attains to innumerable regions of felicity all of which he enjoys for eternity.[159] That man who, having ignited a fire at sunrise, makes gifts of gold in view of the observance of a particular vow, succeeds in attaining to the fruition of all his wishes.[160] It has been said that gold is identical with Agni. The gift of gold, therefore, is productive of great felicity. The gift of gold leads to the possession of those merits and accomplishments that are desired, and cleanses the heart.†[161] I have thus told thee, O sinless one, the origin of gold. O thou of puissance, know how Kār-

* The 'hence' here does not refer to what precedes immediately, but has reference to what has been said of the identity of Agni with Brahmana and Rudra.—T.

† 'Pravarttakam' implies 'leading to Pravritti for righteous acts' or 'Chitta-ṣuddhi.'—T.

tikeya grew up,' O delighter of Bhrigu's race.[162] After a long time Kārtikeya grew up. He was then, O perpetuater of Bhrigu's race, chosen by all the deities with Indra at their head, as the generalissimo of the celestial forces.[163] He slew the Daitya Tāraka as also many other Asuras, at the command of the chief of the celestials, O Brāhmana, and actuated also by the desire of benefiting all the worlds.[164] I have also, O thou of great might, discoursed to thee on the merits of making gifts of gold. Do thou, therefore, O foremost of all speakers, make gifts of gold.'—[165]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by Vaçishtha, Jamadagni's son of great prowess then made gifts of gold unto the Brāhmanas and became cleansed of his sins.[166] I have thus told thee, O king, everything about the merits of the gifts of gold and about its origin also, O Yudhishthira![167] Do thou also, therefore, make abundant gifts of gold unto the Brāhmanas. Verily, O king, by making such gifts of gold, thou wilt surely be cleansed of all thy sins!' "[168]

Section LXXXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast, O grandsire, discoursed to me, in detail, on the merits that attach to the gift of gold agreeably to the ordinances laid down in the scriptures and as indicated in the auditions of the Veda![1] Thou hast also narrated what the origin is of gold. Do thou tell me now how Tāraka met with destruction.[2] Thou hast said, O king, that that Asura had become unslayable by the gods. Do thou tell me in detail how his destruction was brought about.[3] O perpetuater of Kuru's race, I desire to hear this from thee, I mean the details of Tāraka's slaughter. Great is my curiosity to hear the narrative.'[4]

"Bhishma said,—'The gods and the Rishis, O monarch, reduced to great distress (by Tāraka's prowess and the conduct of Gangā in casting off Agni's seed), urged the six Krittikās to rear that child.[5] Amongst the celestial ladies there were none, save these, that could, by their energy, bear the seed of Agni in their wombs.[6] The god of fire became exceedingly

gratified with those goddesses for their readiness to sustain the conception caused by the cast off seed of Agni which was endued with his own high energy.[7] When the energy of Agnī, O king, wàs divided into six portions and placed within the channels (leading to the womb), the six Krittikās began to nourish the portion that each held in her womb.[8] As the high-souled Kumāra, however, began to grow within their wombs, their bodies being afflicted by his energy, they failed to obtain peace anywhere (in Heaven or on Earth).[9] Filled with energy as their bodies were, the time at last came for delivery. All of them, it so happend, O prince of men, delivered at the same time.[10] Though held in six defferent wombs, yet when all the portions, as they came out, united into one. The goddess Earth held the child, taking it up from a heap of gold.[11] Verily, the child, endued with excellent form, blazed with splendour even like the god of Fire. Of beautiful features, he began to grow in a delightful forest of reeds.[12] The six Krittikās beheld that child of theirs looking like the morning Sun in splendour. Filled with affection for him,—indeed, loving him very much,—they began to rear him with the sustenance of their breasts.[13] In consequence of his having been born of the Krittikās and reared by them, he came to be known throughout the three worlds as Kārtikeya. Having sprung from the seed which had fallen off from Rudra he was named Skanda, and because of his birth in the solitude of a forest of reeds he came to be called by the name of Guha (the secret-born).[14] The gods numbering three and thirty, the points of the compass (in their embodied forms) together with the deities presiding over them, and Rudra and Dhātri and Vishnu and Yama and Pushan and Aryyaman and Bhaga,[15] and Angça and Mitra and the Sādhyas and Vāsava and the Vasus and the Açwins and the Waters and the Wind and the Firmament and Chandramas and all the Constellations and the Planets and Surya,[16] and all the Richs and Sāmans and Yajushes in their embodied forms, came there to behold that wonderful child who was the son of the deity of blazing flames.[17] The Rishis uttered hymns of praise and the Gandharvas sang in honor of that child called Kumāra of six heads, twice six eyes, and

exceedingly devoted to the Brāhmanas.[18] His shoulders were broad, and he had a dozen arms, and the splendour of his person resembled that of fire and Āditya. As he lay stretched on a clump of heath, the gods with the Rishis, beholding him,[19] became filled with great delight and regarded the great Asura as already slain. The deities then began to bring him diverse kinds of toys and articles that could amuse him.[20] As he played like a child, diverse kinds of toys and birds were given unto him. Garuda of excellent feathers gave unto him a child of his, *viz.*, a peacock endued with plumes of variegated hue.[21] The Rākshas gave unto him a boar and a buffalo. Aruna himself gave him a cock of fiery splendour.[22] Chandramas gave him a sheep, and Āditya gave him some dazzling rays of his. The mother of all kine, *viz.*, Surabhi, gave him kine by hundreds and thousands.[23] Agni gave him a goat possessed of many good qualities. Ilā gave him an abundant quantity of flowers and fruits. Sudhanwan gave him a riding chariot and a car of immeasurable Kuvara.[24] Varuna gave him many auspicious and excellent products of the Ocean, with some elephants. The chief of the celestials gave him lions and tigers and pards and diverse kinds of feathery denizens of the air,[25] and many terrible beasts of prey and many umbrellas also of diverse kinds. Rākshasas and Asuras, in large bands, began to walk in the train of that puissant child.[26] Beholding the son of Agni grow up, Tāraka sought, by various means, to effect his destruction, but he failed to do anything unto that puissant deity.[27] The gods in time invested Agni's son born in the solitude (of a forest of reeds) with the command of their forces. And they also informed him of the oppressions committed upon them by the Asura Tāraka.[28] The generalissimo of the celestial forces grew up and became possessed of great energy and puissance. In time Guha slew Tāraka, with his irresistible dart.[29] Verily, Kumāra slew the Asura as easily as if in sport. Having accomplished the destruction of Tāraka he re-established the chief of the deities in his sovereignty of the three worlds.[30] Endued with mighty prowess, the celestial generalissimo blazed with beauty and splendour. The puissant Skanda became the protector of the deities and did what

was agreeable to Cankara.[31] The illustrious son of Pāvaka was endued with a golden form. Verily, Kumāra is always the leader of the celestial forces.[32] Gold is the puissant energy of the god of fire and was born with Kārtikeya (from the same seed). Hence is Gold highly auspicious and, as a valuable, is excellent and endued with inexhaustible merit.[33] Even thus, O son of Kuru's race, did Vaçishtha recite this discourse unto Rāma of Bhrigu's race in days of old. Do thou, therefore, O king of men, try to make gifts of Gold.[34] By making gifts of Gold, Rāma became cleansed of all his sins, and finally attained to a high place in Heaven that is unattainable by other men.' "[35]

Section LXXXVII.

" Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast discoursed to me, O thou of righteous soul, on the duties of the four orders. Do thou, after the same manner, O king, discourse to me now on all the ordinances respecting the Crāddha (of deceased ancestors).' "[1]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by Yudhishthira, the son of Cāntanu set himself to declare unto him the following ritual, consistent with the ordinances, of the Crāddha.[2]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O king, with close attention, to me as I discourse to you on the ritual of the Crāddha. That ritual is auspicious, worthy of praise, productive of fame and progeny, and is regarded as a sacrifice, O scorcher of foes, in honor of the Pitris.[3] Gods or Asuras or human beings, Gandharvas or Uragas or Rākshasas, Piçāchas or Kinnaras, every one should always worship the Pitris.[4] It is seen that people worship the Pitris first, and gratify the deities next by offering them their adorations. Hence, one should always worship the Pitris with every care.*[5] It is said, O king, that the

---

* The Commentator explains that the Pitris should be worshipped on the day of the New moon, the deities should then be worshipped on the first day of the lighted fortnight. Or, on any other day of the lighted fortnight, the Pitri-sacrifice or Crāddha should be performed first: the Deva sacrifice or Ishti should then be performed.—T.

Crāddha performed in honor of the Pitris is performable afterwards. But this general rule is restrained by an especial one (which directs that the Crāddha in honor of the Pitris should be performed on the afternoon of the day of the New moon).*[6] The (deceased) grandsires become gratified with the Crāddha that may be performed on any day. I shall, however, tell thee now what the merits and demerits are of the respective lunar days (in view of their adaptability to the performance of the Crāddha).[7] I shall discourse to thee, O sinless one, on what fruits are attained on what days by performing the Crāddha. Do thou listen to me with close attention.[8] By adoring the Pitris on the first day of the lighted fortnight, one obtains in one's abode beautiful spouses capable of producing many children all possessed of desirable accomplishments.[9] By performing the Crāddha on the second day of the lighted fortnight one gets many daughters. By performing it on the third day, one acquires many steeds. By performing it on the fourth day, one gets a large herd of smaller animals (such as goats and sheep) in one's house.[10] They, O king, who perform the Crāddha on the fifth day, get many sons. Those men who perform the Crāddha on the sixth day acquire great splendour.[11] By performing it on the seventh day, O monarch, one acquires great fame. By performing it on the eighth day one makes great profits in trade.[12] By performing it on the ninth day one acquires many animals of uncloven hoofs. By performing it on the tenth day one acquires much wealth in kine.[13] By performing it on the eleventh day one becomes the possessor of much wealth in cloths and utensils (of brass and other metals). Such a man also obtains many sons all of whom become endued with Brahma splendour.[14] By performing the Crāddha on the twelfth day one always beholds, if one desires, diverse

---

* 'Anwāhāryyam,' the Commentator explains, is 'paçchātkartavyam.' *i. e.*, subsequently performable (subsequent, *i. e.*, to the worship of the gods). There is an especial ordinance, however, which lays down that the Crāddha should be performed on the afternoon of the day of the new Moon. The gods should be adored on the first day of the lighted fortnight. Hence, owing to this especial ordinance, the Crāddha must precede the worship of the gods, without succeeding it.—T.

kinds of beautiful articles made of silver and gold.[15] By performing the Crāddha on the thirteenth day one attains to eminence over one's kinsmen. Without doubt, all the young men in the family of him who performs the Crāddha on the fourteenth day meet with death. Such a man becomes entangled in war. By performing the Crāddha on the day of the new moon, one obtains the fruition of every wish.[16-17] In the dark fortnight, all the days commencing with the tenth (and ending with that of the new moon), leaving only the fourteenth day out, are laudable days for the performance of the Crāddha. Other days of that fortnight are not so.[18] Then, again, as the dark fortnight is better than the lighted one, so the afternoon of the day is better than the forenoon in the matter of the Crāddha.' "[19]

SECTION LXXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O thou of great puissance, tell me what that object is which if dedicated to the Pitris, becomes inexhaustible! What Havi, again, (if offered) lasts for all time? What, indeed, is that which (if presented) becomes eternal?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen to me, O Yudhishthira, what those Havis are which persons conversant with the ritual of the Crāddha regard as suitable in view of the Crāddha and what the fruits are that attach to each.[2] With sesame seeds and rice and barley and Māsha and water and roots and fruits, if given at Crāddhas, the Pitris, O king, remain gratified for the period of a month.*[3] Manu has said that if a Crāddha is performed with a copious measure of sesame, such Crāddha becomes inexhaustible. Of all kinds of food, sesame seeds are regarded as the best.[4] With fishes offered at Crāddhas, the Pitris remain gratified for a period of two months. With mutton they remain gratified for three months and with the flesh of the hare for four.[5] With the flesh of the goat, O king, they remain gratified for five months, with becon for six

---

* 'Māsha' is the Phaseolus Roxburghii.—T.

months, and with the flesh of birds for seven.[6] With venison obtained from those deer that are called Prishata, they remain gratified for eight months, and with that obtained from the Ruru for nine months, and with the meat of the Gavaya for ten months.[7] With the meat of the buffalo their gratification lasts for eleven months. With beef presented at the Crāddha, their gratification, it is said, lasts for a full year.[8] Pāyasa mixed with ghee is as much acceptable to the Pitris as beef. With the meat of the Vādhrinasa the gratification of the Pitris lasts for twelve years.*[9] The flesh of the Rhinoceros, offered to the Pitris on the anniversaries of the lunar days on which they died, becomes inexhaustible. The potherb called Kālaçāka, the petals of the Kānchana flower, and meat of the goat also, thus offered, prove inexhaustible.†[10] In this connection, O Yudhishthira, there are some Verses, originally sung by the Pitris, that are sung (in the world). They were communicated to me in former days by Sanatkumāra.[11]—He that has taken birth in our race should give us Pāyasa mixed with ghee on the thirteenth day (of the dark fortnight), under the constellation Maghā, during the Sun's southward course.[12] One born in our race should, under the constellation Maghā, as if in the observance of a vow, offer the meat of goat or the petals of the Kānchana flower. One should also offer us, with due rites, Pāyasa mixed with ghee, dedicating it on a spot covered by the shadow of an elephant.[13]—Many sons should be coveted so that even one may go to Gayā (for performing the Crāddha of his ancestors), where stands the banian that is celebrated over all the worlds and that makes all offerings made under its branches inexhaustible.‡[14] Even a little of water, roots, fruits,

---

* It is difficult to understand what is meant by 'Vādhrinasa' here. It means either a large bull, or a kind of bird, or a variety of the goat. Probably, the bull is intended.—T.

† 'Pitrikshaye' is 'mrita-tithau.' 'Kālaçāka' is explained by Nilakantha as identical with the common potherb called 'Chuka' or the country sorrel (Rumex visicarius, Linn). Some hold that it is something like the sorrel. 'Lauham' is the petals of the Kānchana flower (Bauhinia acuminata, Linn).—T.

‡ To this day the sanctity of Gya is universally recognised by all

meat, and rice, mixed with honey, if offered on the anniversary of the day of death, becomes inexhaustible.' "[15]

SECTION LXXXIX.

"Bhishma continued,—'Listen to me, O Yudhishthira, as I tell thee what those optional Crāddhas are that should be performed under the different constellations and that were first spoken of by Yama unto king Caçavindu.*[1] That man who always performs the Crāddha under the constellation Krittikā is regarded as performing a sacrifice after establishing the sacred fire. Such a person, freed from fever, ascends to Heaven with his children.[2] He that is desirous of children should perform the Crāddha under the constellation Rohini, while he that is desirous of energy should do it under the constellation Mrigaçiras. By performing the Crāddha under the constellation Ardrā, a man becomes the doer of fierce deeds.[3] A mortal, by performing the Crāddha under Punarvasu, makes much gain by agriculture. The man that is desirous of growth and advancement should perform the Crāddha under Pushyā.[4] By doing it under the constellation Açleshā one begets heroic children. By doing it under the Maghās one attains to pre-eminence among kinsmen.[5] By doing it under the (prior) Phālgunis, the doer of it becomes endued with good fortune. By doing the Crāddha under the later Phālgunas one attains to many children ; while by performing it under Hastā, one attains to the fruition of one's wishes.[6] By performing it under the constellation Chitrā one obtains children endued with great beauty. By doing it under the constellation Swāti, one makes much profit by trade.[7] The man that desires children acquires the fruition of his wish by performing the Crāddha

---

Hindus. Crāddhas are performed there under the banian called the 'Akshaya' or inexhaustible banian.—T.

* All religious acts are either 'nitya' or 'kāmya.' The former imply acts that are obligatory and by doing which no particular merit is acquired but by not doing which sin is incurred. The latter imply those optional acts which, if done, produce merit but which if omitted leads to no sin.—T.

under the constellation Viçākhā. By doing it under Anurādhā one becomes a king of kings.*[8] By making offerings in honor of the Pitris under the constellation Jeshthyā, with devotion and humility, one attains to sovereignty, O foremost one of Kuru's race.[9] By doing the Crāddha under Mulā one attains to health, and by doing it under the prior Āshāda, one acquires excellent fame. By performing it under the later Āshāda one succeeds in roving over the whole world, freed from every sorrow.[10] By doing it under the constellation Abhijit one attains to high knowledge. By doing it under Cravanā one, departing from this world, attains to a very high end.[11] The man that performs the Crāddha under the constellation Dhanisthā becomes the ruler of a kingdom. By doing it under the constellation presided over by Varuna (*viz.*, Catavishā), one attains to success as a physician.[12] By performing the Crāddha under the constellation of the prior Bhādrapada one acquires a large property in goats and sheep: while by doing it under the later Bhādrapada one acquires thousands of kine.[13] By performing the Crāddha under the constellation Revati one acquires much wealth in utensils of white brass and copper. By doing it under Açwini one acquires many steeds, while under Bharani one attains to longevity.[14] Listening to these ordinances about the Crāddha, king Caçavindu acted accordingly, and succeeded in easily subjugating and ruling the whole Earth.' "[15]

SECTION XC.

"Yudhishthira said,—'It behooves thee, O foremost one of Kuru's race, to tell me unto what kind of Brāhmanas, O grandsire, should the offers made at Crāddhas be given away.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The Kshatriya who is conversant with the ordinances about gift should never examine Brāhmanas (when making gifts unto them). In all acts, however, that relate to the worship of the deities and the Pitris, an examination has been said to be proper.[2] The deities are worshipped on Earth

---

* Literally, 'set in motion a body of kings,' *i. e.*, become an Overlord.—T.

by men only when they are filled with devotion that comes from the deities themselves. Hence, one should, approaching them, make gifts unto all Brāhmanas (without any examination of their merits), regarding such gifts as are made to the deities themselves.[3] In Crāddhas, however, O monarch, the man of intelligence should examine the Brāhmanas (to be employed for assisting the doers of the Crāddha in getting through the ritual and making gifts unto them of the offerings made to the Pitris). Such examination should concern itself with their birth and conduct and age and appearance and learning and nobility (or otherwise) of parentage.[4] Amongst the Brāhmanas there are some that pollute the line and some that sanctify it. Listen to me, O king, as I tell thee who those Brāhmanas are that should be excluded from the line.*[5] He that is full of guile, or he that is guilty of fœticide, or he that is ill of consumption, or he that keeps animals, or is destitute of Vedic study, or is a common servant of a village, or lives upon the interest of loans, or he that is a singer, or he that sells all articles,[6] or he that is guilty of arson, or he that is a poisoner, or he that is a pimp by profession, or he that sells Soma, or he that is a professor of palmistry, or he that is in the employ of the king, or he that is a seller of oil, or he that is a cheat and false swearer,[7] or he that has a quarrel with his father, or he that tolerates a paramour of his wife in his house, or he that has been cursed, or he that is a thief, or he that lives by some mechanical art,[8] or he that puts on disguises, or he that is deceitful in his behaviour, or he that is hostile to those he calls his friends, or he that is an adulterer, or he that is a preceptor of Cudras, or he that has betaken himself to the profession of arms,[9] or he that wanders with dogs (for hunting), or he that has been bit by a dog, or he that has wedded before his elder brothers. or he that seems to have undergone circumcision,† he that violates the bed of his preceptor,[10] he that is an actor or mime, he that lives by setting up a deity, and he that

* When Brāhmanas are fed, they are made to sit in long lines. They that are stained with vices are excluded from the line. Such exclusion from the line is regarded as equal to complete outlawry.—T.

† *I. e.*, who have undergone a(natural circumcision.—T.

lives by calculating the conjunctions of stars and planets and asterisms,* are regarded as fit to be excluded from the line.[11] Persons conversant with the Vedas say that the offerings made at Crāddhas, if eaten by such Brāhmanas, go to fill the stomachs of Rākshasas (instead of filling those of the Pitris), O Yudhishthira.[12] That person who having eaten at a Crāddha does not abstain that day from study of the Vedas or who has sexual congress that day with a Cudrā woman, must know that his Pitris, in consequence of such acts of his, have to lie for a month on his on dung.[13] The offerings made at Crāddhas if presented to a Brāhmana who sells Soma, become converted into human ordure; if presented to a Brāhmana who is engaged in the practice of Medicine, they become converted into puss and blood; if presented to one who lives by setting up a deity, they fail to produce any fruit; if presented to one who lives upon the interest of loans, they lead to infamy;[14] if presented to one who is engaged in trade, they become productive of no fruits either here or hereafter. If presented to a Brāhmana who is born of a widowed mother (by a second husband), they become as fruitless as libations poured on ashes.†[15] They who present the Havya and Kavya (offered at Crāddhas) unto such Brāhmanas as are divested of the duties ordained for them and of those rules of good conduct that persons of their order should observe, find such presents productive of no merits hereafter.[16] That man of little intelligence who makes gifts of such articles unto such men knowing their dispositions, obliges, by such conduct, his Pitris to eat human ordure in the next world.[17] Thou shouldst know that these wretches among Brāhmanas deserve to be excluded from the line. Those Brāhmanas also of little energy who are engaged in instructing Cudras are of the same class.[18] A Brāhmana that is blind stains sixty individuals of the line; one that is destitute of virile powers stains a hundred; while one that is afflicted

---

* Implying soothsayers.—T.

† This is a common form of expression to imply the fruitlessness of an act. Libations should be poured on the blazing fire. If poured on the ashes, they lead to no merit, for only Agni in his blazing form can bear them to the intended places.—T.

with white leprosy stains as many as he looks upon, O king.[19] Whatever offerings made at Crāddhas are eaten by one with his head wrapped round with a cloth, whatever is eaten by one with face southwards, and whatever is eaten with shoes or sandals on, all goes to gratify the Asuras.[20] Whatever, again, is given with malice, and whatever is given without reverence, have been ordained by Brahman himself as the portion of the prince of Asuras (*viz.*, Vali).[21] Dogs, and such Brāhmanas as are polluters of lines, should not be allowed to cast their eyes upon the offerings made at Crāddhas. For this reason, Crāddhas should be performed in a spot that is properly hedged around or concealed from the view. That spot should also be strewn with sesame seeds.[22] That Crāddha which is performed without sesame seeds, or that which is done by a person in anger, has its Havi robbed by Rākshasas and Piçāchas.[23] Commensurate with the number of Brāhmanas seen by one that deserves to be excluded from the line, is the loss of merit he causes of the foolish performer of the Crāddha who invites him to the feast.[24]

"'I shall now, O chief of Bharata's race, tell thee who are sanctifiers of the line. Do thou find them out by examination.[25] All those Brāhmanas that are cleansed by knowledge, Vedic study, and vows and observances, and they that are of good and righteous behaviour, should be known as sanctifiers of everything.[26] I shall now tell thee who deserve to sit in the line. Thou shouldst know them to be such whom I shall indicate presently. He that is conversant with the three Nāchiketas, he that has set up the five sacrificial fires, he that knows the five Suparnas, he that is conversant with the six branches (called Angas) of the Veda,[27] he that is a descendant of sires who were engaged in teaching the Vedas and is himself engaged in teaching, he that is well conversant with the Cchandas, he that is acquainted with the Jeshthya Sāman, he that is obedient to the sway of his parents, he that is conversant with the Vedas, and whose ancestors have been so for ten generations,[28] he that has congress with only his wedded wives and this at their seasons, and he who has been cleansed by knowledge, by the Veda, and by vows and observances,—

even such a Brāhmana,—sanctifies the line.[29] He who reads the Atharva-çiras, who is devoted to the observance of Brahmacharyya practices, and who is steady in the observance of righteous vows, who is truthful and of righteous conduct, and who is duly observant of the duties laid down for his order,[30] they also that have undergone fatigue and labour for bathing in the waters of *tirthas*, that have undergone the final bath after performing sacrifices with proper Mantras,[31] that are freed from the sway of wrath, that are not restless, that are endued with forgiving dispositions, that are self-restrained masters of their senses, and they that are devoted to the good of all creatures,—these should be invited to Crāddhas.[32] Anything given to these becomes inexhaustible. These, indeed, are sanctifiers of lines. There are others also, highly blessed, that should be regarded as sanctifiers of the line.[33] They are Yatis and those that are conversant with the religion of Moksha, and they that are devoted to Yoga, and they that properly observe excellent vows, and they that, with collected mind, recite (sacred) histories unto foremost of Brāhmanas.[34] They that are conversant with Bhāshyas, they also that are devoted to grammatical studies, they that study the Purānas and they that study, the Dharmaçāstras[35] and having studied them (*i. e.*, the Purānas and Dharmaçāstras) act up to the standard laid down in them, he that has lived (for the stated period) in the abode of his preceptor, he that is truthful in speech, he that is a giver of thousands,[36] they that are foremost in (their knowledge of) all the Vedas and the scriptural and philosophical aphorisms,—these sanctify the line as far they look at it.[37] And because they santify all who sit in the line, therefore are they called sanctifiers of lines. Utterers of Brahma say that even a single person that happens to be the descendant of sires who were teachers of the Veda and that is himself a Vedic teacher, sanctifies full seven miles around him.[38] If he that is not a Ritwik and that is not a Vedic teacher takes the foremost seat in a Crāddha, with even the permission of the other Ritwiks there present, he is said to take (by that act of his) the sins of all who may be sitting in the line.[39] If, on the other hand, he happens to be conversant with the Vedas and

freed from all those faults that are regarded as capable of polluting the line, he shall not, O king, be regarded as fallen (by taking the foremost seat in a Crāddha). Such a man would then be really a sanctifier of the line.[40] For these reasons, O king, thou shouldst properly examine the Brāhmanas before inviting them to Crāddhas. Thou shouldst invite only such among them as are devoted to the duties laid down for their order, and as are born in good families, and as are possessed of great learning.[41] He who performs Crāddhas for feeding only his friends and whose Havi does not gratify the deities and the Pitris, fails to ascend to Heaven.[42] He who collects his friends and relatives only on the occasion of the Crāddha he performs (without keeping an eye on properly honoring deserving persons by inviting and feeding them), fails to proceed (after death) by the path of the deities (which is a lighted one and free from all afflictions and impediments). The man who makes the Crāddha he performs an occasion for only gathering his friends, never succeeds in ascending to Heaven. Verily, the man who converts the Crāddha into an occasion for treating his friends, becomes dissociated from Heaven even like a bird dissociated from the perch when the chain tying it breaks.*[43] Therefore, he that performs a Crāddha should not honor (on such occasions) his friends. He may make gifts of wealth unto them on other occasions by collecting them together. The Havi and the Kavi offered at Crāddhas should be served unto them that are neither friends nor foes but are only indifferent or neutral.[44] As seed sown on a sterile soil does not sprout forth, or as one that has not sown does not get a share of the produce, even so that Crāddha the offerings in which are eaten by an unworthy person, yields no fruit either here or hereafter.†[45] That Brāhmana

* The idea is that Heaven is the result of one's deeds. It is attached to the fruits of one's acts. The man falling off from Heaven is identical with Heaven being dissociated from the fruits of his acts. Hence such a falling off at the man or the dissociation of Heaven is likened to a bird's dissociation from its perch when the chain tying it to the perch is broken. The simile seems to be far-fetched.—T.

† It is painful to see how very careless the Vernacular versions of

who is destitute of Vedic study is like a fire made by burning grass or straw; and becomes soon extinguished even like such a fire. The offerings made at Crāddhas should not be given to him even as libations should not be poured on the ashes of the sacrificial fire.[46] When the offerings made at Crāddhas are exchanged by the performers with one another (instead of being given away unto worthy persons), they come to be regarded as Piçācha presents. Such offerings gratify neither the gods nor the Pitris. Instead of reaching the other world, they wander about even here like a cow that has lost her calf wandering about within the fold.[47] As those libations of ghee that are poured upon the extinguished ashes of a sacrificial fire never reach either the gods or the Pitris, after the same manner a gift that is made to a dancer or a singer or a Dakshinā presented to a lying or deceitful person, produces no merit.[48] The Dakshinā that is presented to a lying or deceitful person destroys both the giver and the receiver without benefiting them in any respect. Such a Dakshinā is destructive and highly censurable. The Pitris of the person making it have to fall down from the path of the deities.[49] The gods know them to be Brāhmanas who always tread, O Yudhishthira, within the bounds set up by the Rishis who are conversant with all duties, and who have a firm faith in their efficacy.[50] Those Brāhmanas that are devoted to Vedic study, to knowledge, to penances, and to acts, O Bhārata, should be known as Rishis.[51] The offerings made at Crāddhas should be given unto those that are devoted to knowledge. Verily, they are to be regarded as men who never speak ill of the Brāhmanas.[52] Those men should never be fed on occasions of Crāddhas who

---

the Anuçāsana have been. From want of space the numerous errors that have been committed have not been pointed out. At times, however, the errors appear to be so grave that one cannot pass them by in silence. In the second half of the first line, whether the reading be 'vāvaptā' as in the Bengal texts or 'chāvaptā' as in the Bombay texts, the meaning is that the 'Avaptā' or one that has not sown 'na vijabhāgam prāpnuyāt,' *i. e.*, would not get a share of the produce. The Burdwan translators make a mess of it, while K. P. Singha skips over it.—T.

speak ill of Brāhmanas in course of conversation in the midst of assemblies. If Brāhmanas, O king, be caluminated, they would destroy three generations of the caluminater.*[53] This is the declaration, O king, of the Vaikhānasa Rishis. Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas should be examined from a distance.[54] Whether one likes them or feels a dislike for them, one should give unto such Brāhmanas the offerings made at Crāddhas. That man who feeds thousands upon thousands of false Brāhmanas acquires merit that is attainable by feeding even one Brāhmana if the latter happens to be possessed of a knowledge of the Vedas, O Bhārata !' "[55]

SECTION XCI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'By whom was the Crāddha first conceived and at what time ? What also is its essence ? In the time when the world was peopled by only the descendants of Bhrigu and Angiras ; who was the Muni that established the Crāddha ?[1] What acts should not be done at Crāddha ? What are those Crāddhas in which fruits and roots are to be offered ? What species also of paddy should be avoided in Crāddhas. Do thou tell me all this, O grandsire !'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen to me, O ruler of men, as I tell thee how the Crāddha was introduced, the time of such introduction, the essence of the rite, and the Muni who conceived it ![3] From the Self-born Brahman sprang Atri, O thou of Kuru's race. In Atri's race was born a Muni of the name of Dattātreya.[4] Dattātreya got a son of the name of Nimi possessed of wealth of asceticism. Nimi got a son named Crimat who was endued with great beauty of person.[5] Upon the expiration of a full thousand years, Crimat. having undergone the severest austerities, succumbed to the influence of Time and departed from this world.[6] His sire Nimi, having performed the purificatory rites according to the ritual laid down in the ordinance, became filled with great grief, think-

---

* The sense is that the caluminater, his sire, and son meet with destruction in consequence of such an act.—T.

ing continually of the loss of his son.*[7] Thinking of that cause of sorrow. the high-souled Nimi collected together various agreeable objects (of food and drink) on the fourteenth day of the moon. The next morning he rose from bed.[8] Pained as his heart was with grief, as he rose from sleep that day he succeeded in withdrawing it from the one object upon which it had been working. His understanding succeeded in busying itself with other matters.[9] With concentrated attention he then conceived the idea of a Crāddha. All those articles of his own food, consisting of fruits and roots,[10] and all those kinds of staple grains that were agreeable to him, were carefully thought of by that sage possessed of wealth of penances.[11] On the day of the New moon he invited a number of adorable Brāhmanas (to his asylum). Possessed of great wisdom, Nimi caused them to be seated on seats (of Kuça grass) and honored them by circumambulating their persons.[12] Approacaing seven such Brāhmanas whom he had brought to his abode together, the puissant Nimi gave unto them food consisting of Cyāmāka rice, unmixed with salt.[13] Towards the feet of those Brāhmanas engaged in eating the food that was served unto them a number of Kuça blades was spread out, on the seats they occupied, with the top-ends of the blades directed towards the south.[14] With a pure body and mind and with concentrated attention, Nimi, having placed those blades of sacred grass in the way indicated, offered cakes of rice unto his dead son, uttering his name and family.[15] Having done this, that foremost of Munis became filled with regret at the idea of having achieved an act that had not (to his knowledge) been laid down in any of the scriptures. Indeed, filled with regret, he began to think of what he had done.†[16] Never done before by the Munis, alas, what have I done! How shall I (for having done an act that has not been ordained) avoid being cursed by the Brāhmanas (as an introducer of

* These purificatory rites, after the usual period of mourning, consists in shaving and bathing and wearing new clothes.—T.

† The act, as explained by the Commentator, consisted in the father's doing that with reference to the son which, as the ordinance went, was done by sons with reference to sires.—T.

strange rites) ?[17]—He then thought of the original progenitor of his race. As soon as he was thought of, Atri endued with wealth of penances came there.[18] Beholding him exceedingly afflicted with grief on account of the death of his son, the immortal Atri comforted him with agreeable counsels.[19] He said unto him,—O Nimi, this rite that thou hast conceived, is a sacrifice in honor of the Pitris. Let no fear be thine, O thou that art possessed of the wealth of asceticism! The Grandsire Brahman himself, in days of old, laid it down![20] This rite that thou hast conceived has been ordained by the Self-born himself. Who else than the Self-born could ordain this ritual in Crāddhas ?[21] I shall presently tell thee, O son, the excellent ordinance laid down in respect of Crāddhas. Ordained by the Self-born himself, O son, do thou follow it. Listen to me first![22] Having first performed the Karana on the sacred fire with the aid of Mantras, O thou that art possessed of wealth of penances, one should always pour libations next unto the deity of fire, and Soma, and Varuna.[23] Unto the Viçwedevas also, who are always the companions of the Pitris, the Self-born then ordained a portion of the offerings.[24] The Earth also, as the goddess that sustains the offerings made at Crāddhas, should then be praised under the names of Vaishnavi, Kāçyapi, and the inexhaustible.*[25] When water is being fetched for the Crāddha, the deity Varuna of great puissance should be praised. After this, both Agni and Soma should be invoked with reverence and gratified (with libations), O sinless one.[26] Those deities that are called by the name of Pitris were created by the Self-born. Others also, highly blessed, *viz.*, the Ushmapas, were created by him. For all these shares have been ordained of the offerings made at Crāddhas.[27] By adoring all these deities at Crāddhas, the ancestors of the persons performing them become freed from all sins. The Pitris referred to above as those created by the Self-born number seven.[28] The Viçwedevas, having Agni for their mouth, (for it is through Agni that they feed), have been mentioned before.

---

* In one of the Vernacular versions, the wrong reading 'Kshamā' is adopted for 'Akshayā.'—T.

I shall now mention the names of those high-souled deities who deserve shares of the offerings made at Crāddhas.[29] Those names are Vala, Dhriti, Vipāpmā, Punyakrit, Pāvana, Pārshni, Ksheman, Samuha, Divyasānu,[30] Vivaswat, Viryyavat, Hrimat, Kirtimat, Krita, Jitātman, Muniviryya, Diptroman, Bhayankara,[31] Anukarman, Pratita, Pradātri, Angçumat, Cailābha, Parama, Krodhi, Dhiroshni, Bhupati,[32] Srajas, Vajrin, and Vari,—these are the eternal Viçwedevas. There are others also whose names are Vidyutvarchas, Somavarchas, and Suryaçri by name.[33] Others also are numbered amongst them, *viz.*, Somapa, Suryasāvitra, Dattātman, Pundariyaka, Ushninābha, Nabhoda, Viçwāyu, Dipti,[34] Chāmuhara, Sureça, Vyomāri, Cankara, Bhava, Iça, Karttri, Kriti, Daksha, Bhuvana, Divyakarmakrit,[35] Ganita, Panchaviryya, Āditya, Raçmimat, Saptakrit, Somavarchas, Viçwakrit, Kavi,[36] Anugoptri, Sugoptri, Naptri, and Içwara,—These highly blessed ones are numbered as the Viçwedevas. They are eternal and conversant with all that occurs in Time.[37] The species of paddy which should not be offered at Crāddhas are those called Kodrava, and Pulaka. Assafœdita also, among articles used in cooking, should not be offered, as also onions and garlics,[38] the produce of the Moringa pterygosperma, Bauhinia Variegata, the meat of animals slain with envenomed shafts, all varieties of Cucurbita Pepo, Cucurbita lagenaria, and black salt.[39] The other articles that should not be offered at Crāddhas are the flesh of the domesticated hog, the meat of all animals not slaughtered at sacrifices, Nigella sativa, salt of the variety called Vid, the potherb that is called Citapāki,[40] all sprouts (like those of the bambu), and also the Trapa bispinosa. All kinds of salt should be excluded from the offerings made at Crāddhas, and also the fruits of the Eugenia Jambolana.[41] All articles, again, upon which any one has spat or upon which tears have fallen should not be offered at Crāddhas. Among offerings made to the Pitris or with the Havya and Kavya offered to the deities, the potherb called Sudarçana (Menispermum tomentosum, Rox). should not be included.[42] Havi mixed with this is not acceptable to the Pitris. From the place where the Crāddha is being performed, the Chandāla and the Cwapacha should be excluded.[43]

as also all who wear clothes steeped in yellow, and persons affected with leprosy, or one who has been excasted (for transgressions), or one who is guilty of Brahmanicide, or a Brāhmana of mixed descent, or one who is the relative of an excasted man. These all should be excluded by persons possessed of wisdom from the place where a Crāddha is being performed.[44]—Having said these words in days of old unto the Rishi Nimi of his own race, the illustrious Atri possessed of wealth of penances then went back to the Grandsire's assembly in Heaven.' "[45]

Section XCII.

"Bhishma said,—'After Nimi had acted in the way described above, all the great Rishis began to perform the sacrifice in honor of the Pitris (called the Crāddha) according to rites laid down in the ordinance.[1] Firmly devoted to the discharge of all duties, the Rishis, having performed Crāddhas, began to also offer oblations (unto the Pitris) of sacred waters, with attention.[2] In consequence, however, of the offerings made by persons of all classes (unto the Pitris), the Pitris began to digest that food.[3] Soon they, and the deities also with them, became afflicted with indigestion. Indeed, afflicted with the heaps of food that all persons began to give them, they repaired to the presence of Soma.[4] Approaching Soma they said,—Alas, great is our affliction in consequence of the food that is offered to us at Crāddhas. Do thou ordain what is necessary for our ease![5]—Unto them Soma answered, saying,—If, ye gods, ye are desirous of obtaining ease, do ye repair then into the abode of the Self-born. Even he will do what is for your good![6]—At these words of Soma, the deities and the Pitris then proceeded, O Bhārata, to the Grandsire where he was seated on the summit of the mountains of Meru.[7]

"'The deities said,—O illustrious one, with the food that is offered us in sacrifices and Crāddhas, we are being exceedingly afflicted. O lord, show us grace and do what would be for our good![8]—Hearing these words of theirs, the Self-born said unto

them in reply,—Here, the god of fire is sitting beside me. Even he will do what is for your benefit !—[9]

"'Agni said,—Ye sires, when a Crāddha comes, we shall together eat the offerings made to us. If ye eat those offerings with me, ye shall then, without doubt, succeed in digesting them easily ![10]—Hearing these words of the deity of fire, the Pitris became easy of heart. It is for this reason also that in making offerings at Crāddhas a share is first offered to the deity of fire, O king.[11] If a portion of the offerings be first made to the deity of fire at a Crāddha, O prince of men, Rākshasas of regenerate origin cannot then do any injury to such a Crāddha.*[12] Beholding the deity of fire at a Crāddha Rākshasas fly away from it. The ritual of the Crāddha is that the cake should first be offered to the (deceased) sire. Next, one should be offered to the grandsire.[13] Next should one be offered to the great-grandsire. Even this is the ordinance in respect of the Crāddha. Over every cake that is offered, the offerer should, with concentrated attention, utter the Sāvitri Mantras.[14] This other Mantra also should be uttered, *viz.*, unto Soma who is fond of the Pitris. A woman that has become impure in consequence of the advent of her season, or one whose ears have been cut off, should not be allowed to remain where a Crāddha is being performed. Nor should a woman (for cooking the rice to be offered in the Crāddha) be brought from a Gotra other than that of the person who is performing the Crāddha.†[15] While crossing a river, one should offer oblations of water unto one's Pitris, naming them all. Indeed, when one comes upon a river one should gratify one's Pitris with oblations of water.[16] Having offered oblations of water first unto the ancestors of one's own race, one should next offer such oblations to one's (deceased) friends and relatives.[17] When one crosses a stream on a car unto which is yoked a couple of oxen of variegated hue, or from

---

* Rāvana and other Rākshasas who sprang from Pulastya's line are known as 'Brahma-Rākshasas' or Rākshasas of regenerate origin.—T.

† To this day, none but a woman who is of the same Gotra or family with the person performing the Crāddha is allowed to cook the rice for offering.—T.

them that cross a stream on boats, the Pitris expect oblations of water.[18] Those that know this always offer oblations of water with concentrated attention unto the Pitris. Every fortnight, on the day of the New moon, one should make offerings unto one's deceased ancestors.[19] Growth, longevity, energy, and prosperity become all attainable through devotion to the Pitris. The Grandsire Brahman, Pulastya, Vaçishtha, Pulaha,[20] Angiras, Kratu, and the great Rishi Kaçyapa,—these, O prince of Kuru's race, are regarded as great masters of Yoga.[21] They are numbered among the Pitris. Even this is the high ritual in respect of the Crāddha, O monarch! Through Crāddhas performed on Earth, the deceased members of one's race become freed from a position of misery.[22] I have thus, O prince of Kuru's race, expounded to thee, agreeably to the scriptures, the ordinances in respect of Crāddhas. I shall once more discourse to thee on gifts.' "[23]

Section XCIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—If Brāhmanas that are in the observance of a vow (*viz.*, fast) eat, at the invitation of a Brāhmana, the Havi (offered at a Crāddha), can they be charged with the transgression of a violation of their vow (or should they refuse the invitation of a Brāhmana when such invitation is received by them)? Tell me this, O grandsire!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Let those Brāhmanas eat, impelled by desire, who are observant of such vows as are not indicated in the Vedas. As regards those Brāhmanas, however, that are observant of such vows as are indicated in the Vedas, they are regarded as guilty of a breach of their vow, O Yudhishthira, by eating the Havi of a Crāddha at the request of him who performs the Crāddha.'[2]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Some people say that fast is a penance. Is penance really identifiable with fast or is it not so? Tell me this, O grandsire!'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'People do regard a regular fast for a month or a half month as a penance. The truth, however, is that one who mortifies one's own body is not to be regarded either

as an ascetic or as one conversant with duty.*[4] Renunciation, however, is regarded as the best of penances. A Brāhmana should always be an abstainer from food, and observe the vow called Brahmacharyya.†[5] A Brāhmana should always practise self-denial restraining even speech, and recite the Vedas. The Brāhmana should marry and surround himself with children and relatives, from desire of achieving righteousness. He should never sleep.[6] He should abstain from meat. He should always read the Vedas and the scriptures. He should always speak the truth, and practise self-denial.[7] He should eat Vighasa, (*viz.*, what remains after serving the deities and guests). Indeed, he should be hospitable towards all that come to his abode. He should always eat Amrita, (*viz.*, the food that remains in the house after all the family, including guests and servants, have eaten.) He should duly observe all rites and perform sacrifices.'[8]

"Yudhishthira said,—'How may one come to be regarded as always observant of fasts? How may one become observant of vows? How, O king, may one come to be an eater of Vighasa? By doing what may one be said to be fond of guests!'[9]

"Bhishma said,—'He who takes food only morning and evening at the prescribed hours and abstains from all food during the interval between, is said to be an abstainer from food.[10] He who has congress with only his wedded wife and that only at her season, is said to be observant of the vow of Brahmacharyya. By always making gifts, one comes to be regarded as truthful in speech.[11] By abstaining from all meat obtained from animals slaughtered for nothing, one becomes an

---

* *I. e.*, that fast which mortifies the body is not to be regarded as equivalent to penance. True penance is something else. An observer of such a fast is not to be regarded as an ascetic. Such fasts, again, are sinful instead of being meritorious.—T.

† By 'Upavāsa' in the second line is meant abstention from food between the two prescribed hours for eating, and not that fast which mortifies the body. One may, again, eat the most luxurious food without being attached to it. One also, by repining at one's abstinence, may come to be regarded as actually enjoying the most luxurious food.—T.

abstainer from meat.* By making gifts one becomes cleansed of all sins, and by abstaining from sleep during day time one comes to be regarded as always awake.[12] He who always eats what remains after serving the needs of guests and servants, know, O Yudhishthira, is said to always eat Amrita.[13] He who abstains from eating till Brāhmanas have eaten (of that food), is regarded as conquering Heaven by such abstention.[14] He who eats what remains after serving the deities, the Pitris, and relatives and dependants, is said to eat Vighasa.[15] Such men acquire many regions of felicity in the abode of Brahman himself. There, O king, they dwell in the company of Apsaras and Gandharvas.[16] Indeed, they sport and enjoy all sorts of delight in those regions, with the deities and guests and the Pitris in their company, and surrounded by their own children and grandchildren. Even such becomes their high end.'[17]

"Yudhishthira said,—'People are seen to make diverse kinds of gifts unto the Brāhmanas. What, however, is the difference, O grandsire, between the giver and the receiver?' [18]

"Bhishma said,—'The Brāhmana accepts gifts from him that is righteous, and from him that is unrighteous. If the giver happens to be righteous, the receiver incurs little fault. If, on the other hand, the giver happens to be unrighteous, the receiver sinks in hell.[19] In this connection is cited an old history of the conversation between Vrishadarbhi and the seven Rishis, O Bhārata.[20] Kaçyapa and Atri and Vaçishtha and Bharadwāja and Gautama and Viçwāmitra and Jamadagni, and the chaste Arundhati (the wife of Vaçishtha),[21] all had a common maid-servant whose name was Gandā. A Cudra of the name of Paçusakha married Gandā and became her husband.[22] Kaçyapa and others, in days of old, observed the austerest penances and roved over the world, desirous of attaining to the eternal region of Brahman by the aid of Yoga-meditation.[23] About that time, O delighter of the Kurus, there occurred a severe drought. Afflicted by hunger, the whole world of living

* Meat of animals slaughtered in sacrifices is allowable. By taking such meat, one does not become an eater of meat. In fact, one may &c.—T.

creatures become exceedingly weak.[24] At a sacrifice which had been performed in former times by Civi's son, he had given away unto the Ritwiks a son of his as the sacrificial present.[25] About this time, unendued with longevity as the prince was, he died of starvation. The Rishis named, afflicted with hunger, approached the dead prince and sat surrounding him.[26] Indeed, those foremost of Rishis, beholding the son of him at whose sacrifice they had officiated, O Bhārata, thus dead of starvation, began to cook the body in a vessel, impelled by the pangs of hunger.[27] All food having disappeared from the world of men, those ascetics, desirous of saving their lives, had recourse, for purposes of sustenance, to such a miserable shift.[28] While they were thus employed, Vrishādarbha's son, *viz.*, king Caivya, in course of his roving, came upon those Rishis. Indeed, he met them on his way, engaged in cooking the dead body, impelled by the pangs of hunger.[29]

" 'The son of Vrishādarbha said,—The acceptance of a gift (from me) will immediately relieve you all. Do you, therefore, accept a gift for the support of your bodies! Ye ascetics endued with wealth of penances, listen to me as I declare what wealth I have![30] That Brāhmana who solicits me (for gifts) is ever dear to me. Verily, I shall give unto you a thousand mules. Unto each of you I shall give a thousand kine of white hair, foremost in speed, each accompanied by a bull, and each having a well-born calf, and, therefore, yielding milk.[31] I shall also give unto you a thousand bulls of white complexion and of the best breed and capable of bearing heavy burthens. I shall also give you a large number of kine, of good disposition, the foremost of their kind, all fat, and each of which, having brought forth her first calf, is quick with her second.*[32] Tell me what else I shall give of foremost villages, of grain, of barley, and of even the rarer and more costly jewels. Do not seek to eat this food that is inedible. Tell me what I should give unto you for the support of your bodies!—'[33]

---

* 'Prashthauhi' means a cow pregnant with her second calf. 'Grishti' means a cow that has brought forth only her first calf.—T.

"'The Rishis said,—O king, an acceptance of gifts from a monarch is very sweet at first but it is poison in the end. Knowing this well, why do you, O king, tempt us then with these offers ?[34] The body of the Brāhmana is the field of the deities. By penance, it is purified. Then again, by gratifying the Brāhmana, one gratifies the deities.[35] If a Brāhmana accepts the gifts made to him by the king, he loses, by such acceptance, the merit that he would otherwise acquire by his penances that day. Indeed, such acceptance consumes that merit even as a blazing conflagration consumes a forest.[36] Let happiness be thine, O king, as the result of the gifts thou makest to those that solicit thee !—Saying these words unto them, they left the spot, proceeding by another way.[37] The flesh those high-souled ones had intended to cook remained uncooked. Indeed, abandoning that flesh, they went away, and entered the woods in search of food.[38] After this, the ministers of the king, urged by their master, entered those woods and plucking certain figs endeavoured to give them away unto those Rishis.[39] The officers of the king filled some of those figs with gold and mixing them with others sought to induce those ascetics to accept them.[40] Atri took up some of those figs, and finding them heavy refused to take them. He said,—We are not destitute of knowledge. We are not fools ![41] We know that there is gold within these figs. We have our senses about us. Indeed, we are awake instead being asleep. If accepted in this world, those will produce bitter consequences hereafter. He who seeks happiness both here and hereafter should never accept these !—[42]

"'Vaçishtha said.—If we accept even one gold coin, it will be counted as a hundred or even a thousand (in assigning the demerit that attaches to acceptance). If, therefore, we accept many coins, we shall surely attain to an unhappy end hereafter !—[43]

"'Kaçyapa said,—All the paddy and barley on Earth, all the gold and animals and women that occur in the world, are incapable of gratifying the desire of a single person. Hence, one possessed of wisdom should, dispelling cupidity, adopt tranquillity !—[44]

"'Bharadwāja said,—The horns of a Ruru, after their first appearance, begin to grow with the growth of the animal. The cupidity of man is even like this. It has no measure !—[45]

"'Gautama said,—All the objects that exist in the world are incapable of gratifying even a single person. Man is even like the ocean, for he can never be filled (even as the ocean can never be filled by all the waters that are discharged into it by the rivers).[46]

"'Viçwāmitra said,—When one desire cherished by a person becomes gratified, there springs up immediately another whose gratification is sought and which pierces him like a shaft.—[47]

"'Jamadagni said,—Abstention from accepting gifts supports penances as their foundation. Acceptance, however, destroys that wealth (*viz.*, the merit of penances).—[48]

"'Arundhati said,—Some people are of opinion that things of the world may be stored with a view to spend them upon the acquisition of righteousness (by gifts and sacrifices). I think, however, that the acquisition of righteousness is better than that of worldly wealth !—[49]

"'Gandā said,—When these my lords, who are endued with great energy, are so very much afraid of this which seems to be a great terror, weak as I am, I fear it the more !—[50]

"'Paçusakha said,—The wealth there is in righteousness is very superior. There is nothing superior to it. That wealth is known to the Brāhmanas. I wait upon them as their servant, only for learning to value that wealth !—[51]

"'The Rishis (all together) said,—Let happiness be his, as the result of the gifts he makes, who is the king of the people of this land ! Let his gift be successful who has sent these fruits to us, enclosing gold within them !'—[52]

"Bhishma cantinued,—'Having said these words, those Rishis of steadfast vows, abandoning the figs having gold within them, left that spot and proceeded whither soever they liked.[53]

"'The ministers said,—O king, coming to know of the existence of gold within the figs, the Rishis have gone away ! Let this be known to thee !'—[54]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by his ministers,

king Vrishādarbhi became filled with wrath against all those Rishis. Indeed, to take vengeance upon them, the monarch entered his own chamber.[55] Observing the austerest of penances, he poured on his sacred fire libations of ghee, accompanying each with Mantras uttered by him.[56] From that fire there then arose, as the result of the incantation, a form capable of striking every one with fear. Vrishādarbhi named her as Yātudhāni.[57] That form which had being from the incantations of the king, looking as terrible as the Last Night, appeared with joined hands before the monarch. Addressing king Vrishādarbhi, she said,—What shall I accomplish ?—[58]

" 'Vrishādarbhi said,—Go and follow the seven Rishis, as also Arundhati, and the husband of their maid-servant, and the maid-servant herself, and comprehend what the meanings are of their names.[59] Having ascertained their names, do thou slay all of them. After slaying them thou mayst go whithersoever thou likest !'*—[60]

"Bhishma continued,—'Saying,—So be it !—The Rākshasi who had been named Yātudhāni, in her proper form, proceeded to that forest in which the great Rishis wandered in search of food.[61] Indeed, O king, those great Rishis, with Atri among them, roved within the forest, subsisting upon fruits and roots.[62] In course of their wanderings they saw a mendicant of broad shoulders, and plump arms and legs and well-nourished face and abdomen. Of limbs that were all adipose, he was wandering with a dog in his company.[63] Beholding that mendicant whose limbs were all well-developed and handsome, Arundhati exclaimed, addressing the Rishis,—None of you will ever be able to show such well-developed features !—[64]

" 'Vaçishtha said,—The sacred fire of this person is not like ours, for while he is able to pour libations on it, morning and evening, none of us are able to do the same. It is for this reason that we see both him and his dog so well-developed !—†[65]

---

* The Commentator explains that the direction about ascertaining the names of the Rishis and the meanings of those names proceeded from the king's desire of cautioning the Rākshasi lest in going to destroy them she might herself meet with destruction.—T.

† In other words, Vaçishtha attributes the leanness or emaciation

"'Atri said,—This man does not, like us, feel the pangs of hunger. His energy has not sustained, like ours, any diminution. Acquired with the greatest difficulty, his Vedas have not, like ours disappeared. Hence it is that we see both him and his dog so well-developed!—[66]

"'Viçwāmitra said,—This man is not, like us, unable to observe the eternal duties inculcated in the scriptures. I have become idle. I feel the pangs of hunger. I have lost the knowledge I had acquired. This man is not like us in this respect. Hence I see both him and his dog so well-developed![67]

"'Jamadagni said,—This man has not to think of storing his annual grain and fuel as we are compelled to do. Hence I see both him and his dog so well-developed!—[68]

"'Kaçyapa said,—This man has not, like us, four brothers of the whole blood who are begging from house to house, uttering the words,—Give—Give!—Hence it is that I see him and his dog so well-developed!—[69]

"'Bharadwāja said,—This man hath no regret like ours for having condemned and cursed his spouse. He hath not acted so wickedly and senselessly. Hence I see both him and his dog so well-developed!—[70]

"'Gautama said,—This man hath not like us only three pieces of covering made of Kuça grass, and a single Ranku skin, each of which, again, is three years old. Hence it is that I see both him and his dog so well-developed!'—[71]

"Bhishma continued,—'The wandering mendicant, beholding those great Rishis, approached them, and accosted them all by touching their hand, according to the custom.[72] Conversing then with each other about the difficulty of obtaining sustenance in that forest and the consequent necessity of bearing the pangs of hunger, all of them left that spot.[73] Indeed, they wandered through that wilderness, all bent upon a common purpose, *viz.*, the plucking of fruits and the extraction of roots for sustenance.[74] One day, as they were wandering, they beheld a beautiful lake overgrown with lotuses. Its banks

---

of himself and his companions to the failure to discharge their daily rites of religion.—T.

were covered with trees that stood thickly near one another. The waters of the lake were pure and transparent.[75] Indeed, the lotuses that adorned the lake were all of the hue of the morning sun. The leaves that floated on the water were of the complexion of *lapis lazuli*.[76] Diverse kinds of aquatic fowls were sporting on its bosom. There was but one path leading to it. The banks were not miry, and the access to the water was easy.[77] Urged by Vrishādarbhi, the Rākshasi of frightful mien who had sprung from his incantations and who had been named Yātudhāni, guarded the lake.[78] Those foremost Rishis, with Paçusakha in their company, proceeded towards the lake, which was thus guarded by Yātudhāni, for the object of gathering some lotus-stalks.*[79] Beholding Yātudhāni of frightful aspect standing on the banks of the lake, those great Rishis addressed her, saying,[80]—Who art thou that thus standest alone in these solitary woods? For whom dost thou wait here? What, indeed, is thy purpose? What dost thou do here on the banks of this lake adorned with lotuses?—[81]

"'Yātudhāni said,—It matters not who I am. I deserve not to be questioned (respecting my name and race and purposes). Ye that are possessed of ascetic wealth, know that I am the guard set to watch this lake!—[82]

"'The Rishis said,—All of us are hungry. We have nothing else to eat. With thy permission we would gather some lotus-stalks!—[83]

"'Yātudhāni said,—Agreeably to a compact, do ye take the lotus-stalks as ye please. Ye must, one by one, give me your names. Ye may then, without delay, take the stalks!—'[84]

"Bhishma continued,—'Ascertaining that her name was Yātudhāni and that she stood there for slaying them (after knowing, from the meanings of their names, what the extent was of their power), Atri, who was famishing with hunger, addressed her, and said these words.[85]

"'Atri said,—I am called Atri because I cleanse the world from sin. For, again, thrice studying the Vedas every day,

---

* Lotus-stalks are eaten in India and are mentioned by Charaka as heavy food.—T.

I have made days of my nights. That, again, is no night in which I have not studied the Vedas. For these reasons also I am called Atri, O beautiful lady !—[86]

"'Yātudhāni said,—O thou of great effulgence, the explanation thou hast given me of thy name is incapable of being comprehended by me. Do thou, therefore, go and plunge into this tank filled with lotuses !—[87]

"'Vaçishtha said,—I am endued with the wealth (that consists of the Yoga attributes of puissance, &c). I lead, again, a domestic mode of life, and am regarded as the foremost of all persons that lead such a mode of life. In consequence of being endued with (such) wealth, of my living as a householder, and of my being regarded as the foremost of all house-holders, I am called Vaçishtha !—[88]

"'Yātudhāni said,—The etymological explanation of thy name is perfectly incomprehensible to me, inasmuch as the inflections which the original roots have undergone are unintelligible. Go and plunge into this lake of lotuses !—[89]

"'Kaçyapa said,—I always protect my body, and in consequence of my penances I have become endued with effulgence. For thus protecting the body and for this effulgence that is due to my penances, I have come to be called by the name of Kāçyapa !—[90]

"'Yātudhāni said,—O thou of great effulgence, the etymological explanation thou hast given of thy name is incapable of being comprehended by me. Go and plunge into this lake filled with lotuses !—[91]

"'Bharadwāja said,—I always support my sons, my disciples, the deities, the Brāhmanas, and my wife. In consequence of thus supporting all with ease, I am called Bharadwāja !—[92]

"'Yātudhāni said,—The etymological explanation thou hast given me of thy name is perfectly incomprehensible to me, in consequence of the many inflections the root has undergone. Go and plunge into this lake filled with lotuses !—[93]

"'Gotama said,—I have conquered Heaven and Earth by the aid of self-restraint. In consequence of my looking upon all creatures and objects with an equal eye, I am like a smoke-

less fire. Hence I am incapable of being subjugated by thee. When, again, I was born, the effulgence of my body dispelled the surrounding darkness. For these reasons I am called Gotama !—[94]

"'Yātudhāni said,—The explanation thou hast given me of thy name, O great ascetic, is incapable of being understood by me. Go and plunge into this lake of lotuses !—[95]

"'Viçwāmitra said,—The deities of the universe are my friends. I am also the friend of the universe. Hence, O Yātudhāni, know that I am called Viçwāmitra !—[96]

"'Yātudhāni said,—The explanation thou hast given of thy name is incomprehensible to me in consequence of the inflections the root has undergone. Go and plunge into this lake of lotuses !—[97]

"'Jamadagni said,—I have sprung from the sacrificial fire of the deities. Hence am I called Jamadagni, O thou of beautiful features !—[98]

"'Yātudhāni said,—The etymological explanation thou hast given me, O great ascetic, of thy name, is incomprehensible to me (in consequence of the diverse inflections the root has undergone). Do thou go and plunge into this lake of lotuses !—[99]

"'Arundhati said,—I always stay by the side of my husband, and hold the Earth jointly with him. I always incline my husband's heart towards me. I am, for these reasons, called Arundhati !—[100]

"'Yātudhāni said,—The explanation thou hast given me of thy name is perfectly incomprehensible to me in consequence of the inflections the roots have undergone. Go and plunge into this lake of lotuses !—[101]

"'Gandā said,—The *Ganda* means a portion of the cheek. As I have that portion a little elevated above the others, I am, O thou that hast sprung from the sacrificial fire of Caivya, called by the name of Gandā !—[102]

"'Yātudhāni said,—The explanation which thou hast given me of thy name is perfectly incomprehensible to me in consequence of the inflections which the root has undergone. Go and plunge into this lake of lotuses !—[103]

" 'Paçusakha said,—I protect and tend all animals that I see, and I am always a friend to all animals. Hence am I called Paçusakha, O thou that hast sprung from the (sacrificial) fire (of king Vrishādarbhi) !—[104]

" 'Yātudhāni said,—The explanation thou hast given me of thy name is perfectly incomprehensible to me in consequence of the inflections which the roots have undergone. Go and plunge into this lake of lotuses !—[105]

" 'Cunasakha said,*—I am incapable of explaining the etymology of my name after the manner of these ascetics. But know, O Yātudhāni, that I am called by the name of Cunasakha-sakhā !—[106]

" 'Yātudhāni said,—Thou hast mentioned thy name only once. The explanation thou hast offered I have not been able to catch. Do thou, therefore, mention it again, O regenerate one !—[107]

" 'Cunasakha said,—Since thou hast been unable to catch my name in consequence of my having mentioned it only once, I shall strike thee with my triple stick ! Struck with it, be thou consumed into ashes without delay !—'[108]

"Bhishma continued,—'Struck then, on the head, by the Sanyāsin, with his triple stick which resembled the chastisement inflicted by a Brāhmana, the Rākshasi who had sprung from the incantations of king Vrishādarbhi fell down on the Earth and became reduced to ashes.†[109] Having thus destroyed the mighty Rākshasi, Cunasakha thrust his stick into the earth and sat himself down on a grassy plot of land.[110] The Rishis then, having, as they liked, plucked a number of lotuses and taken up a number of lotus-stalks, came up from

---

* 'Cunasakha' implies 'a friend of dogs.' The new comer who had joined the roving Rishis had a dog with him. Hence, he is called by the name of 'Cunasakha.'—T.

† 'Brahma-danda' literally means the stick in the hand of a Brāhmana. Figuratively, it implies the chastisement inflicted by a Brāhmana in the form of a curse. As such it is more effective than the thunder-bolt in the hands of Indra himself, for the thunder-bolt blasts only those objects that lie within its immediate range. The Brāhmana's curse, however, blasts even those that are unborn.—T.

the lake, filled with joy.[111] Throwing on the ground the heap of lotuses which they had gathered with great labour, they plunged once more into it for offering oblations of water to the Pitris.[112] Coming up, they proceeded to that part of the bank where they had deposited the lotus-stalks. Reaching that spot, those foremost of men found that the stalks were nowhere to be seen.[113]

"'The Rishis said,—What sinful and hard-hearted man has stolen away the lotus-stalks gathered by our hungry selves from desire of eating?—'[114]

"Bhishma continued,—'Those foremost of regenerate persons, suspecting one another, O crusher of foes, said,—We shall each have to swear to our innocence![115] All those ascetics then, famishing with hunger and worn out with exertion, agreeing to the proposal, took these oaths.[116]

"'Atri said,—Let him who has stolen the lotus-stalks touch kine with his foot, make water facing the sun, and study the Vedas on excluded days!—[117]

"'Vaçishtha said,—Let him who has stolen the lotus-stalks abstain from studying the Vedas, or leash hounds, or be a wandering mendicant unrestrained by the ordinances laid down for that mode of life, or be a slayer of persons that seek his protection, or live upon the proceeds of the sale of his daughter, or solicit wealth from those that are low and vile!—[118-119]

"'Kaçyapa said,—Let him who has stolen the lotus-stalks utter all kinds of words in all places, give false evidence in a court of law, eat the flesh of animals not slain in sacrifices, make gifts to undeserving persons or to deserving persons at unseasonable times, and have sexual congress with women during daytime!—[120-121]

"'Bharadwāja said,—Let him who has stolen the lotus-stalks be cruel and unrighteous in his conduct towards women and kinsmen and kine. Let him humiliate Brāhmanas, in disputations, by displaying his superior knowledge and skill. Let him study the Richs and the Yajushes, disregarding his preceptor! Let him pour libations upon fires made with dry grass or straw!*—[122-123]

* Libations should always be poured upon a blazing fire. Fires

"'Jamadagni said,—Let him who has stolen the lotus-stalks be guilty of throwing filth and dirt on water. Let him be inspired with animosity towards kine. Let him be guilty of having sexual congress with women at times other than their season. Let him incur the aversion of all persons. Let him derive his maintenance from the earnings of his wife! Let him have no friends and let him have many foes! Let him be another's guest for receiving in return those acts of hospitality which he has done to that other!*—[124-125]

"'Gotama said,—Let him who has stolen the lotus-stalks be guilty of throwing away the Vedas after having studied them! Let him cast off the three sacred fires! Let him be a seller of the Soma (plant or juice)! Let him live with that Brāhmana who resides in a village which has only one well from which water is drawn by all classes and who has married a Cudra woman!—[126-127]

"'Viçwāmitra said,—Let him who has stolen the lotus-stalks be fated to see his preceptors and seniors and his servants maintained by others during his own life-time. Let him not have a good end. Let him be the father of many children![128] Let him be always impure and a wretch among Brāhmanas! Let him be proud of his possessions! Let him be a tiller of the soil and let him be filled with malice![129] Let him wander in the season of rains. Let him be a paid servant! Let him be the priest of the king! Let him assist at the sacrifices of such impure persons as do not deserve to be assisted at their sacrifices!—[130]

"'Arundhati said,—Let her who has stolen the lotus-stalks always humiliate her mother-in-law! Let her be always vexed with her husband! Let her eat whatever good things come to

---

made with dry grass or straw blaze up quickly and become soon extinguished. By pouring libations, therefore, upon such fires, one practically pours them upon ashes and gains no merit.—T.

* To derive the means of sustenance from a wife was always viewed with feelings of aversion in this country. It seems, therefore, that the custom of domesticating sons-in-law was not unknown in ancient times. To receive acts of hospitality in return for those rendered was regarded as not only meanness but also destructive of merit.—T

her house without sharing them with others![131] Disregarding the kinsmen of her lord, let her live in her husband's house and eat, every evening, the flour of fried barley! Let her come to be regarded as unenjoyable (in consequence of the stains that would tarnish her)! Let her be the mother of a heroic son![*132]

"'Gandā said,—Let her who has stolen the lotus-stalks be always a speaker of falsehoods! Let her always quarrel with her kinsmen! Let her bestow her daughter in marriage for a pecuniary consideration![133] Let her eat the food which she has cooked, alone and without sharing it with anybody! Let her pass her whole life in slavery! Indeed, let her who has stolen the lotus-stalks be quick with child in consequence of sexual congress under circumstances of guilt.—[134]

"'Paçusakha said,—Let him who has stolen the lotus-stalks be born of a slave-mother. Let him have many children all of whom are worthless! And let him never bow to the deities!—[135]

"'Cunasakha said,—Let him who has removed the lotus-stalks obtain the merit of bestowing his daughter in marriage upon a Brāhmana who has studied all the Sāmans and the Yajushes and who has carefully observed the vow of Brahmacharyya. Let him perform the final ablutions after having studied all the Atharvans!—[136]

"'All the Rishis said,—The oath thou hast taken is no oath at all, for all the acts which thou hast mentioned are very desirable for the Brāhmanas! It is evident, O Cunasakha, that thou hast appropriated our lotus-stalks!—[137]

"'Cunasakha said,—Not seeing the lotus-stalks deposited by you, what you say is perfectly true, for it is I who have actually stolen them.[138] In the very sight of all of you I have caused the disappearance of those stalks! Ye sinless ones, the act was done by me from desire of testing you![139] I came hither for protecting you. That woman who lies slain

---

* 'Jnātinām' is an instance of the genetive in what is called 'Anādara.' The meaning, therefore, is 'disregarded them.' For a Brāhmani woman to bring forth a son devoted to heroic deeds is a reproach.—T.

there was called Yātudhāni. She was of fierce disposition. Sprung from the incantations of king Vrishādarbhi, she had come here from the desire of slaying all of you![140] Ye ascetics endued with wealth of penances, egged on by that king, she had come, but I have slain her. That wicked and sinful creature, sprung from the sacrificial fire, would otherwise have taken your lives.[141] It was for killing her and saving you that I came here, ye learned Brāhmanas! Know that I am Vāsava! Ye have completely freed yourselves from the influence of cupidity. In consequence of this, ye have won many eternal regions fraught with the fruition of every wish as soon as it rises in the heart! Do ye rise, without delay, from this place and repair to those regions of beatitude, ye regenerate ones, that are reserved for you!—'[142]

"Bhishma continued,—'The great Rishis, highly gratified at this, replied unto Purandara, saying,—So be it!—They then ascended to Heaven in the company of Indra himself.[143] Even thus, those high-souled persons, though famishing with hunger and though tempted at such a time with the offer of diverse kinds of enjoyable articles, refrained from yielding to temptation. As the result of such self-denial, they attained to Heaven. It seems, therefore, that one should, under all circumstances, cast off cupidity from oneself.[144-145] Even this, O king, is the highest duty. Cupidity should be cast off. The man who recites this account (of the deeds of the righteous Rishis) in assemblies of men,[146] succeeds in acquiring wealth. Such a man has never to attain to a distressful end. The Pitris, the Rishis, and the deities become all pleased with him. Hereafter, again, he becomes endued with fame and religions merit and wealth!' "[147]

SECTION XCIV.

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old history of the oaths (taken by many Rishis one after another) on the occasion of a sojourn to the sacred waters.[1] O best of the Bharatas, the act of theft had been done by Indra, and the oaths were taken by many royal and regenerate Rishis.[2] Once

on a time, the Rishis, having assembled together, proceeded to the western Prabhāsa. They held a consultation there which resulted in a resolve on their part to sojourn to all the sacred waters on Earth.[3] There were Cakra and Angiras and Kavi of great learning and Agastya and Nārada and Parvata; and Bhrigu and Vaçishtha and Kaçyapa and Gautama and Viçwāmitra and Jamadagni, O king![4] There were also the Rishi Gālava, and Ashtāka and Bharadwāja and Arundhati and the Vālikhilyas; and Civi and Dilipa and Nahusha and Amvarisha and the royal Yayāti and Dhundhumāra and Puru.[5] These foremost of men, placing the high-souled Catakratu, the slayer of Vritra at their head, sojourned to all the sacred waters one after another, and at last reached the highly sacred Kauçiki on the day of the full moon in the month of Māgha.[6] Having cleansed themselves of all sins by ablutions performed in all the sacred waters, they at last proceeded to the very sacred Brahmasara. Bathing in that lake, those Rishis endued with energy like that of fire began to gather and eat the stalks of the lotus.[7] Amongst those Brāhmanas, some had extracted the stalks of the lotus and some the stalks of the Nymphœa stellata. Soon they found that the stalks extracted by Agastya (and deposited on the bank) had been taken away by somebody.[8] The foremost of Rishis, Agastya, addressing them all, said,—Who has taken away the good stalks which I had extracted and deposited here? I suspect some one amongst you must have done the act. Let him who has taken them away give them back to me. It behooves you not to thus misappropriate my stalks![9] It is heard that Time assails the energy of Righteousness. That Time has come upon us. Hence, Righteousness is afflicted. It is meet that I should go to Heaven for good, before unrighteousness assails the world and establishes itself fully here![*10] Before the time comes when Brāhmanas, loudly uttering the Vedas, within the precincts of

* The scriptures declare that Righteousness loses its strength as Time advances. In the Krita age, it exists in entirety. In the Tretā, it loses a quarter. In the Dwāpara, another quarter is lost. In the Kali age, full three quarters are lost and only a quarter is all that remains.—T.

villages and inhabited places, cause the Cudras to hear them, before the time comes when kings offered against the rules of Righteousness from motives of policy, I shall go to Heaven for good![11] Before men cease to regard the distinctions between the lower, the middle, and the higher classes, I shall go to Heaven for good. Before Ignorance assails the world and envelops all things in darkness, I shall go to Heaven for good.*[12] Before the time comes when the strong begin to lord it over the weak and treat them as slaves, I shall go to Heaven for good. Indeed, I dare not remain on Earth for witnessing these things![13]—The Rishis, much concerned at what he said, addressed that great ascetic and said,—We have not stolen thy stalks! Thou shouldst not harbour these suspicions against us. O great Rishi, we shall take the most frightful oaths![14]—Having said these words, conscious as they were of their own innocence, and desirous of upholding the cause of righteousness, those Rishis and sages of royal descent then began to swear, one after another, the following oaths.[15]

"'Bhrigu said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks censure when censured, assail when assailed, and eat the flesh that is attached to the back-bone of animals (staughtered in sacrifices)![†]—[16]

"'Vaçishtha said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks neglect his Vedic studies, leash hounds, and having taken himself to the mendicant order live in a city or town![‡]—[17]

---

* The Rishis think that the distinctions between the lower, the middling, and the higher classes of society are eternal, and nothing can be a greater calamity than the effacement of those distinctions. Equality of men, in their eyes, is an unmitigated evil.—T.

† Forgiveness is the duty of the Brāhmana. To fall off from forgiveness is to fall off from duty. To censure when censured and assail the assailer, are grave transgressions in the case of a Brāhmana. The idea of retaliation should never enter the Brāhmana's heart; for the Brāhmana is the friend of the universe. His behaviour to friend and foe should be equal. To eat the flesh that attaches itself to the back-bone of a slaughtered animal is also a grave transgression.—T.

‡ A religious mendicant should always wander over the Earth, sleeping where night overtakes him. For such a man to reside in a city or town is sinful.—T.

"'Kaçyapa said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks sell all things in all places, misappropriate deposits, and give false evidence!—[18]

"'Gautama said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks live, displaying pride in all things, with an understanding that does not see all creatures with an equal eye, and always yielding himself to the influence of desire and wrath! Let him be a cultivator of the soil, and let him be inspired by malice!*[19]—

"'Angiras said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be always impure! Let him be a censurable Brāhmana (for his misdeeds). Let him leash hounds. Let him be guilty of Brāhmanicide. Let him be averse to expiations after having committed transgressions!—[20]

"'Dhundhumāra said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be ungrateful to his friends! Let him take birth in a Cudra woman! Let him eat alone any good food (coming to the house, without sharing it with others)!†—[21]

"'Dilipa said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks attain to those regions of misery and infamy which are reserved for that Brāhmana who resides in a village having but one well and who has sexual congress with a Cudra woman!‡—[22]

"'Puru said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks adopt the occupation of a physician! Let him be supported by the earnings of his wife! Let him draw his sustenance from his father-in-law!—[23]

"'Cukra said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks eat the flesh of animals not slain in sacrifices! Let him have sexual congress at daytime! Let him be a servant of the king!—[24]

"'Jamadagni said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks study the Vedas on forbidden days or occasions. Let him feed friends at Crāddhas performed by him! Let him eat at the Crāddha of a Cudra!—[25]

---

* To till the soil is a transgression for a Brāhmana.—T.

† Good food should never be taken alone. It should always be shared with children and servants.—T.

‡ A village having only one well should be abandoned by a Brāhmana, for he should not draw water from such a well which is used by all classes of the population.—T.

" 'Civi said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks die without having established a fire (for daily worship)! Let him be guilty of obstructing the performance of sacrifices by others! Let him quarrel with those that are observant of penances!—[26]

" 'Yayāti said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be guilty of having sexual congress with his wife when she is not in her season and when he is himself in the observance of a vow and bears matted locks on his head! Let him also disregard the Vedas!—[27]

" 'Nahusha said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks live in domesticity after having betaken himself to the vow of mendicancy! Let him act in whatever way he pleases (and without restraint of any kind), after having undergone the initiatory rites in view of a sacrifice or some solemn observance! Let him take pecuniary gratification for prelections to disciples (on any branch of knowledge that the latter come to learn)!—[28]

" 'Amvarisha said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be cruel and unrighteous in his behaviour towards women and kinsmen and kine! Let him be guilty also of Brāhmanicide!—[29]

" 'Nārada said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be one that identifies the body with the soul! Let him study the scriptures with a preceptor that is censurable! Let him chaunt the Vedas, offending at each step against the rules of orthoepy! Let him disregard all his seniors!—[30]

" 'Nābhāga said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks always speak falsehoods and quarrel with those that are righteous! Let him bestow his daughter in marriage after accepting a pecuniary gratification offered by his son-in-law!—[31]

" 'Kavi said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be guilty of striking a cow with his foot. Let him make water, facing the sun! Let him cast off the person that seeks shelter at his hands!—[32]

" 'Viçwāmitra said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks become a servant that behaves with deciet towards his master! Let him be the priest of a king! Let him the Ritwik of one that should not be assisted at his sacrifices!—[33]

"'Parvata said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be the chief of a village! Let him make journeys on asses! Let him leash hounds for a living!—[34]

"'Bharadwāja said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be guilty of all the demerits that become his who is cruel in his behaviour and untruthful in speech!—[35]

"'Ashtaka said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be a king destitute of wisdom, capricious and sinful in his behaviour, and disposed to rule the Earth unrighteously!—[36]

"'Gālava said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be more infamous than a sinful man! Let him be sinful in his acts towards his kinsmen and relatives! Let him proclaim the gifts he makes to others?—[37]

"'Arundhati said,—Let her who has stolen thy stalks speak ill of her mother-in-law! Let her feel disgust for her lord. Let her eat alone any good food that comes to her house!—[38]

"'The Vālakhilyas said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks stand on one foot at the entrance of a village (for earning his subsistence)! Let him, while knowing all duties, be guilty of every breach!*—[39]

"'Cunasakha said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be a Brāhmana that sleeps in happiness, having disregarded his daily *Homa*! Let him, after becoming a religious mendicant, behave in whatever way he pleases, without observing any restraint!—[40]

"'Surabhi said,—Let her who has stolen thy stalks be milked, with her (hind) legs bound with a rope of human hair, and with the aid of a calf not her own, and, while milked, let her milk be held in a vessel of white brass!'†[41]

---

* The penance that is involved in standing on one foot should be practised, like all other penances, in the woods. To practise a penance on the way leading to a village so that people may be induced to make gifts, is a transgression of a grave kind.—T.

† Some kine that are vicious have their hind legs tied with a rope while they are milked. If the rope be made of human hair, the pain felt is supposed to be very great. To obtain the aid of a calf belonging to another cow is regarded as sinful. To the cow also, the process

"Bhishma continued,—'After the Rishis and the royal sages had sworn these diverse oaths, O Kuru king, the thousand-eyed chief of the deities, filled with joy, cast his looks on the angered Rishi Agastya.[42] Addressing the Rishi who was very angry at the disappearance of his lotus stalks, Maghavat thus declared what was passing in his mind. Hear, O king, what the words were that Indra spoke in the midst of those regenerate and celestial Rishis and royal sages.[43]

" 'Cakra said,—Let him who has stolen thy stalks be possessed of the merit of him who bestows his daughter in marriage upon a Brāhmana that has duly observed the vow of Brahmacharyya or that has duly studied the Sāmans and the Yajushes ! Let him also have the merit of one that undergoes the final bath after completing one's study of the Atharva Veda ![44] Let him who has stolen thy stalks have the merit of having studied all the Vedas. Let him be observant of all duties and righteous in his behaviour ! Indeed, let him go to the region of Brahman !—[45]

" 'Agastya said,—Thou hast, O slayer of Vala, uttered a benediction instead of a curse ! (It is evident, thou hast taken my stalks !) Give them to me, for that is the eternal duty !—[46]

" 'Indra said,—O holy one, I did not remove thy stalks, led by cupidity ! Indeed, I removed them from desire of hearing this conclave recite what the duties are that we should observe. It behooveth thee not to give way to anger ![47] Duties are the foremost of Crutis. Duties constitute the eternal path (for crossing the sea of the world) ! I have listened to this discourse of the Rishis (on duties) that is eternal and immutable, and that transcends all change ![*48] Do thou then, O foremost of learned Brāhmanas, take back these stalks of thine ! O holy one, it behooves thee to forgive my transgression, O thou that art free from every fault !'—[49]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by the chief of the deities, the ascetic, *viz.*, Agastya, who had been very angry,

---

of sucking cannot be agreeable. If the milk is held in a vessel of white brass, it becomes unfit for gods and guests.—T.

* The discourse is called eternal and immutable because of its subject being so. Duties are eternal truths.—T.

took back his stalks. Endued with great intelligence, the Rishi became cheerful.[50] After this, those denizens of the woods proceeded to diverse other sacred waters. Indeed, repairing to those sacred waters they performed their ablutions everywhere.[51] The man who reads this narrative with close attention on every Parva day, will not have to become the progenitor of an ignorant and wicked son. He will never be destitute of learning.[52] No calamity will ever touch him. He will, besides, be free from every kind of sorrow. Decrepitude and decay will never be his. Freed from stains and evil of every kind, and endued with merit, he is sure to attain to Heaven.[53] He who studies this Cāstra observed by the Rishis, is sure, O prince of men, to attain to the eternal region of Brahman that is full of felicity!'"*[54]

Section XCV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O chief of Bharata's race, by whom was the custom of giving umbrellas and sandals at obsequial ceremonies introduced? Why was it introduced and for what purpose are those gifts made? They are given not only at obsequial ceremonies but also at other religious rites. They are given on many occasions with the view of acquiring religious merit. I wish to know, in detail, O regenerate one, the true meaning of this custom!'[1-3]

"Bhishma said,—'Do thou, O prince, attentively listen to the details I shall recite in respect of the custom of giving away umbrellas and shoes at religious rites, and as to how and by whom it was introduced.[4] I shall also tell thee in full, O prince, how it acquired the force of a permanent observance and how it came to be viewed as a meritorious act.[5] I shall, in this connection, recite the narrative of the discourse between Jamadagni and the high-souled Surya. In ancient

---

* This discourse on duties delivered by the Rishis is called a çāstra. Literally, anything that governs men, *i. e.*, regulates their behaviour, is called a çāstra. As such, the enumeration of duties occurring in this Lesson, although it has been made by a reference to their breaches, is, therefore, a çāstra.—T.

times, the illustrious Jamadagni, O puissant king, of Bhrigu's race, was engaged in practising with his bow.[6] Taking his aim, he shot arrow after arrow. His wife Renukā used to pick up the shafts when shot and repeatedly bring them back to that descendant, endued with blazing energy, of Bhrigu's race. Pleased with the whizzing noise of his arrows and the twang of his bow, he amused himself thus by repeatedly discharging his arrows which Renukā brought back unto him. One day, at noontide, O monarch, in that month when the Sun was in Jyesthāmula,[7-9] the Brāhmana, having discharged all his arrows, said to Renukā,—O large-eyed lady, go and fetch me the shafts I have shot from my bow.[10] O thou of beautiful eye-brows! I shall again shoot them with my bow!—The lady proceeded on her errand but was compelled to sit under the shade of a tree,[11] in consequence of her head and feet being scorched by the heat of the Sun. The black-eyed and graceful Renukā, having rested for only a moment, feared the curse of her husband and, therefore, addressed herself again to the task of cellecting and bringing back the arrows. Taking them with her, the celebrated lady of graceful features came back,[12-13] distresed in mind and her feet smarting with pain. Trembling with fear, she approached her husband.[14] The Rishi, filled with wrath, repeatedly addressed his fair-faced spouse, saying,—O Renukā, why hast thou been so late in returning?—[15]

" 'Renukā said,—O thou that art endued with wealth of penances, my head and feet were scorched by the rays of the Sun! Oppressed by the heat, I had betaken myself to the shade of a tree![16] Even this has been the cause of the delay! Informed of the cause, do thou, O lord, cease to be angry with me![17]

" 'Jamadagni said,—O Renukā, this very day shall I destroy, with the fiery energy of my weapons, the star of day with his blazing rays, that has afflicted thee in this way!—'[18]

"Bhishma continued,—'Drawing his celestial bow, and taking up many arrows, Jamadagni stood, turning his face towards the Sun and watching him as he moved (in his diurnal course).[19] Then, O son of Kunti, beholding him addrest for

fight, Surya approached him in the guise of a Brāhmana, and said unto him,—What has Surya done to displease thee ?[20] Cursing through the firmament, he draws up the moisture from the Earth, and in the form of rains he pours it down once more on her.[21] It is through this, O regenerate one, that the food of human beings springs up,—food that is so agreeable to them ! The Vedas say that it is food that constitutes the life-breaths.[22] O Brāhmana, hidden in the clouds and encompassed by his rays, the Sun drenches the seven islands with showers of rain.[23] O puissant one, the moisture, thus poured, diffusing itself into the leaves and fruits of vegetables and herbs, is transformed into food.[24] O son of Bhrigu, the rites of nativity, religious observances of every kind, investiture with the sacred thread, gifts of kine, weddings, all articles in view of sacrifices, the rules for the governance of men, gifts, all sorts of union (between man and man), and the acquisition of wealth, have their origin in food ! Thou knowest this well ![25-26] All the good and agreeable things in the universe, and all the efforts made by living creatures, flow from food. I duly recite what is well known to thee ! Indeed, thou fully knowest all that I have said ![27] Do thou, therefore, O regenerate Rishi, appease thy anger ! What wilt thou gain by annihilating the Sun ?—' "[28]

Section XCVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'What did that foremost of ascetics, *viz.*, Jamadagni endued with great energy, do when thus besought by the maker of day ?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'O descendant of Kuru, despite all the supplications of Surya, the sage Jamadagni, endued with the effulgence of fire, continued to cherish his anger.[2] Then, O king, Surya, in the guise of a Brāhmana, bowed his head unto him and addressed him, with folded hands, in these sweet words,[3]—O regenerate Rishi, the Sun is always in motion ! How shalt thou pierce the Lord of day who is continually moving forward ?—[4]

"'Jamadagni said,—With the eye of knowledge I know

thee to be both moving and motionless! I shall surely read thee a lesson this day.[5] At midday thou seemest to stay in the heavens for a moment. It is then, O Surya, that I shall pierce thee with my arrows! There is no swerving from this my resolution!—[6]

"'Surya said,—O regenerate Rishi, without doubt, thou knowest me, O best of archers! But, O holy one, though I have offended, behold, I am a suppliant for thy protection!—'[7]

"Bhishma continued,—'At this, the adorable Jamadagni smilingly addressed the maker of day, saying,—O Surya, when thou hast sought my protection, thou hast nothing to fear![8] He would transcend the simplicity that exists in Brāhmanas, the stability that exists in the Earth, the mildness existing in the Moon, the gravity existing in Varuna, the effulgence existing in Agni, the brightness of Meru, and the heat of the Sun, who would slay a suppliant for protection![9-10] The man that can slay a suppliant is capable of violating the bed of his preceptor, of slaying a Brāhmana, and of drinking alcohol.[11] Do thou, therefore, think of some remedy for this evil, by which people may be relieved when heated by thy rays!—'[12]

"Bhishma continued,—'So saying, that excellent descendant of Bhrigu remained silent for a while, and Surya forthwith made over to him an umbrella and a pair of sandals.[13]

"'Surya said,—Do thou, O great Rishi, take this umbrella wherewith the head may be protected and my rays warded off. This pair of sandals is made of leather for the protection of the feet.[14] From this day forth the gift of these articles in all religious rites shall be established as an inflexible usage!—'[15]

"Bhishma continued,—'This custom of giving umbrellas and shoes was introduced by Surya! O descendant of Bharata, these gifts are considered meritorious in the three worlds.[16] Do thou, therefore, give away umbrellas and shoes to Brāhmanas. I have no doubt that thou shalt then acquire great religious merit by the act.[17] O foremost one of Bharata's race, he who gives away a white umbrella with a hundred ribs to a Brāhmana, attains to eternal felicity after death and resides in the region of Indra, respected by Brāhmanas, Apsaras, and Devas.[18-19] O puissant one, he who gives shoes to Snātaka

Brāhmanas as also to Brāhmanas practising the rites of religion whose feet have become sore with the heat of the Sun, attains to regions coveted by the very deities.[20] Such a man, O Bhārata, dwells in happiness in the highest Heaven after his death.[21] O foremost one of Bharata's race, I have thus recited to thee, in full, the merits of giving away shoes and umbrellas at religious ceremonies !' "[22]

Section XCVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O foremost one of Bharata's race, do thou relate to me all the duties of the household mode and tell me all that a man should do in order to attain to prosperity in this world ![1]

"Bhishma said,—'O Bhārata, I shall, in this connection, recite to thee the old story of Vāsudeva and the goddess Earth.[2] The puissant Vāsudeva, O excellent prince of Bharata's race, after hymning the praises of the goddess Earth, questioned her about this very topic that thou hast enquired about.[3]

" 'Vāsudeva said,—Having adopted the state of a householder, what acts should I, or one like me, perform and how are such acts to fructify in good ?—[4]

" 'The goddess Earth said,—O Mādhava, the Rishis, the deities, the Pitris, and men should be worshipped, and sacrifices should be performed, by a householder.[5] Do thou also learn this from me that the deities are always pleased with sacrifices, and men are gratified with hospitality. Therefore, the householder should gratify them with such objects as they desire.[6] By such acts, O slayer of Madhu, the Rishis also are gratified. The householder, abstaining from food, should daily attend to his sacred fire and to his sacrificial offerings.[7] The deities, O slayer of Madhu, are gratified with such acts. The householder should daily offer oblations of food and water,[8] or of fruits, roots and water, for the gratification of the Pitris, and give boiled food unto the Vaiçwadevas, and oblations of clarified butter unto Agni, Soma, and Dhanwantari.[9-10] He should offer separate and distinct oblations unto Prajāpati. He should make sacri-

ficial offerings in due order; to Yama in the Southern region, to Varuna in the Western region,[11] to Soma in the Northern region, to Prajāpati within the homestead, to Dhanwantari in the North-eastern region, and to Indra in the Eastern region.[12] He should offer food to men at the entrance of his house. These, O Mādhava, are known as the Vali offerings. The Vali should be offered to the Maruts and the deities in the interior of one's house.[13] To the Viçwedevas it should be offered in open air, and to the Rākshasas and spirits the offerings should be made at night.[14] After making these offerings, the householder should make offerings unto Brāhmanas, and if no Brāhmana be present, the first portion of the food should be thrown into the fire.[15] When a man desires to offer Crāddha to his ancestors, he should, when the Crāddha ceremony is concluded, gratify his ancestors and then make the Vali offerings in due order.[16] He should then make offerings unto the Vaiçwedevas. He should next invite Brāhmanas, and then properly regale guests arrived at his house, with food.[17] By this act, O prince, are guests gratified. He who does not stay in the house long, or, having come, goes away after a short time, is called a guest.[18] To his preceptor, to his father, to his friend and to a guest, a householder should say,[19]—I have got this in my house to offer thee today!—And he should offer it accordingly everyday.[20] The householder should do whatever they would bid him do. This is the established usage. The householder, O Krishna, should take his food the last of all, after having offered food to all of them.[21] The householder should worship, with offerings of Madhuparka, his king, his priest, his preceptor, and his father-in-law, as also Snātaka Brāhmanas even if they were to stay in his house for a whole year.[22] In the morning as well as in the evening, food should be offered on the ground to dogs, Cwapachas,* and birds. This is called the Vaiçwedeva offering.[23] The householder, who performs these ceremonies with mind unclouded by passion, obtains the blessings of the Rishis in this world, and after death attains to the heavenly regions.—'[24]

---

* Literally, they who cook for dogs, *i. e.*, keep dogs as companions; meaning members of the lowest cast.—T.

"Bhishma continued,—'The puissant Vāsudeva, having listened to all this from the goddess Earth, acted accordingly. Do thou also act in the same way.[25] By performing these duties of a householder, O king, thou shalt acquire fame in this world and attain to Heaven after death!' "[26]

Section XCVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Of what kind is the gift of light, O chief of Bharata's race? How did this gift originate? What are the merits that attach to it? Do thou tell me all this!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection, O Bhārata, is recited the old narrative of the discourse between Manu, that lord of creatures, and Suvarna.[2] There was in days of yore an ascetic, O Bhārata, of the name of Suvarna. His complexion was like that of gold and hence he was called Suvarna (the gold-complexioned).[3] Endued with a pure lineage, good behaviour, and excellent accomplishments, he had mastered all the Vedas. Indeed, by the accomplishments he possessed, he succeeded in transcending many persons of high lineage.[4] One day that learned Brāhmana saw Manu, the lord of all creatures, and approached him. Meeting with each other, they made the usual enquiries of politeness.[5] Both of them were firm in the observance of truth. Having met each other, they sat down on the delightful breast of Meru, that mountain of gold.[6] Seated there they began to converse with each other on diverse subjects connected with the high-souled deities and regenerate Rishis and Daityas of ancient times.[7] Then Suvarna, addressing the Self-born Manu, said these words:—It behooveth thee to answer one question of mine for the benefit of all creatures![8] O lord of all creatures, the deities are seen to be worshipped with presents of flowers and other good scents. What is this? How has this practice been originated? What also are the merits that attach to it? Do thou discourse to me on this topic!—[9]

"'Manu said,—In this connection is recited the old history of the discourse between Cukra and the high-souled (Daitya)

Vali.[10] Once on a time, Cukra of Bhrigu's race approached the presence of Vali the son of Virochana while he was ruling the three worlds.[11] The chief of the Asuras, that giver of sacrificial presents in abundance, having worshipped the descendant of Bhrigu with the Arghya (and offered him a seat), sat down after his guest had seated himself.[12] This very topic that thou hast started relating to the merits attaching to the gift of flowers and incense and lamps, came up on the occasion. Indeed, the chief of the Daityas put this high question to Cukra that most learned of all ascetics.[13]

"'—Vali said,—O foremost of all persons conversant with Brahma, what, indeed, is the merit of giving flowers and incense and lamps? It behooveth thee, O foremost of Brāhmanas, to discourse to me on this!—[14]

"'—Cukra said,—Penance first sprang into life. Afterwards came Dharma (or compassion and other virtues). In the interval between started into life many creepers and herbs.*[15] Innumerable were the species of those. All of them have (the deity) Soma for their lord. Some of these creepers and herbs came to be regarded as Amrita and some came to be regarded as Poison. Others that were neither this nor that formed one class.[16] That is Amrita which gives immediate gratification and joy to the mind. That is Poison which tortures the mind exceedingly by its scent.[17] Know again that Amrita is highly auspicious and that Poison is highly inauspicious. All the (deciduous) herbs are Amrita. Poison is born of the energy of fire.[18] Flowers gladden the mind and confer prosperity. Hence men of righteous deeds bestowed the name *Sumanas* on them.[19] That man who in a state of purity offers flowers unto the deities finds that the deities become gratified with him, and as the consequence of such gratification bestow prosperity upon him.[20] O ruler of the Daityas, those deities unto whom worshippers offer flowers, O lord, uttering their names the while, become gratified with the offerers in consequence of

* The Commentator takes 'Tapah' or Penance as indicative of the duties of the four orders of life, and 'Dharma' as indicative of compassion and other virtues.—T.

their devotion.[21] The (deciduous) herbs are of diverse kinds and possess diverse kinds of energy. They should be classed as fierce, mild, and powerful.[22] Listen to me as I tell thee which trees are useful for purposes of sacrifice and which are not so. Hear also what garlands are acceptable to Asuras, and what are beneficial when offered to the deities.[23] I shall also set forth in their due order what garlands are agreeable to the Rākshasas, what to the Uragas, what to the Yakshasas, what to human beings, and what to the Pitris, in proper order.[24] Flowers are of diverse kinds. Some are wild, some are from trees that grow in the midst of human habitations; some belong to trees that never grow unless planted on well-tilled soil; some are from trees growing on mountains; some are from trees that are not prickly; and some from trees that are prickly. Fragrance, beauty of form, and taste also may offer grounds of classification.[25] The scent that flowers yield is of two kinds, agreeable and disagreeable. Those flowers that are endued with agreeable scent should be offered to the deities.[26] The flowers of trees that are destitute of thorns are generally white in hue. Such flowers are always acceptable to the deities, O lord![27] One possessed of wisdom should offer garlands of aquatic flowers, such as the lotus and the like, unto the Gandharvas and Nāgas and Yakshas.[28] Such plants and herbs as produce red flowers, as are possessed of keen scent, and as are prickly, have been laid down in the Atharvans as fit for all acts of incantation for injuring foes.[29] Such flowers as are possessed of keen energy, as are painful to the touch, as grow on trees and plants having thorns, and as are either bloody-red or black, should be offered to (evil) spirits and unearthly beings.[30] Such flowers as gladden the mind and heart, as are very agreeable when pressed, and as are of beautiful form, have been said, O lord, to be worthy of being offered to human beings.[31] Such flowers as grow on cemeteries and crematoria, or in places dedicated to the deities, should not be brought and used for marriage and other rites having growth and prosperity for their object, or for acts of dalliance and pleasure in secrecy.[32] Such flowers as are born on mountains and in vales, and as are agreeable in scent and aspect, should be

offered unto the deities. Sprinkling them with sandal-paste, such agreeable flowers should be duly offered according to the ordinances of the scriptures.[33] The deities become gratified with the scent of flowers; the Yakshas and Rākshasas with their sight; the Nāgas with their touch: and human beings with all three, *viz.*, scent, sight, and touch.[34] Flowers, when offered to the deities, gratify them immediately. They are capable of accomplishing every object by merely wishing its accomplishment. As such, when gratified with devotees offering them flowers, they cause all the objects cherished by their worshippers to be immediately accomplished.[35] Gratified, they gratify their worshippers. Honored, they cause their worshippers to enjoy all honors. Disregarded and insulted, they cause those vilest of men to be ruined and consumed.[36] I shall, after this, speak to thee of the merits that attach to the ordinances about the gift of incense. Know, O prince of Asuras, that incenses are of diverse kinds. Some of them are auspicious and some inauspicious.[37] Some incenses consist of exudations. Some are made of fragrant wood set on fire. And some are artificial, being made by the hand, of diverse articles mixed together. Their scent is of two kinds, *viz.*, agreeable and disagreeable. Listen to me as I discourse on the subject in detail.*[38] All exudations except that of the Boswellia serrata are agreeable to the deities. It is, however, certain that the best of all exudations is that of the Balsamodendron Mukul.[39] Of all Dhupas of the Sāri class, the Aquilaria Agallocha is the best. It is very agreeable to the Yakshas, the Rākshasas, and Nāgas. The exudation of the Boswellia serrata, and others of the same class, are much desired by the Daityas.[40] Dhupas made of the exudation of the Shorea robusta and the Pinus deodara, mixed with various spirits of strong scent, are, O king, ordained for human beings.[41] Such Dhupas are said to immediately gratify the

* 'Dhupas' are incenses offered to the deities. Being of inflammable substances, they are so made that they may burn slowly or smoulder silently. They are the inseparable accompaniments of a worship of the deities.—T.

deities, the Dānavas, and spirits. Besides these, there are many other kinds of Dhupas used by men for purposes of pleasure or enjoyment.[42] All the merits that have been spoken of as attaching to the offer of flowers should be known to equally attach to the gift of such Dhupas as are productive of gratification.[43] I shall now speak of the merits that attach to the gift of lights, and who may give them at what time and in what manner, and what should be the kind of lights that should be offered.[44] Light is said to be energy and fame and has an upward motion. Hence the gift of light, which is energy, enhances the energy of men.*[45] There is a hell of the name of Andhatamas. The period also of the Sun's southward course is regarded as dark. For escaping that hell and the darkness of this period, one should give lights during that period when the Sun is in his northward course. Such an act is applauded by the good.†[46] Since, again, light has an upward course and is regarded as a remedy for darkness, therefore, one should be a giver of light. Even this is the conclusion of the scriptures.[47] It is by giving lights that the deities have become endued with beauty, energy, and resplendence. By abstention from such an act, the Rākshasas have become endued with the opposite attributes. Hence, one should always give lights.[48] By giving lights a man becomes endued with keen vision and resplendence. One that gives lights should not be an object of jealousy with others. Lights, again, should not be stolen, nor extinguished when given by others.[49] One that steals a light becomes blind. Such a man has to grope through darkness (in the next world) and becomes destitute of resplendence. One that gives lights shines in beauty in the celestial regions like a row of lights.[50] Among lights, the best are those in which ghee is burnt. Next in order are

---

* 'Tejas' is explained by the Commentator, as used here for 'Kānti' or beauty, and 'prakāçam' for 'kirti'; there is no necessity, however, for rejecting the ordinary meaning of 'Tejas' which is energy.—T.

† The sense seems to be that if a man dies during that period when the Sun is in his southwards course, he is dragged through a thick darkness. For escaping that darkness, one should give lights at the period mentioned.—T.

those in which the juice of (the fruits yielded by) deciduous herbs is burnt. One desirous of advancement and growth should never burn (for light) fat or marrow or the juice that flows from the bones of creatures.*[51] The man who desires his own advancement and prosperity should always give lights at descents from mountains, in roads through forests and inaccessible regions, under sacred trees standing in the midst of human habitations, and in crossings of streets.[52] The man who gives lights always illumines his race, attains to purity of soul and effulgence of form. Verily, such a man, after death, attains to the companionship of the luminous bodies in the firmament.[53] I shall now discourse to thee upon the merits, with the fruits they bring about, that attach to Vali offerings made to the deities, the Yakshas, the Uragas, human beings, spirits, and Rākshasas.[54] Those unscrupulous and wicked men that eat without first serving Brāhmanas and deities and guests and children, should be known as Rākshasas.[55] Hence, one should first offer the food one has got ready unto the deities after having worshipped them duly with restrained senses and concentrated attention. One should offer the Vali unto the deities, bending his head in reverence.[56] The deities are always supported by food that householders offer. Verily, they bless such houses in which offerings are made to them. The Yakshas and Rākshasas and Pannagas, as also guests and all homeless persons, are supported by the food that offered by persons leading the domestic mode of life.[57] Indeed, the deities and the Pitris derive their sustenance from such offerings. Gratified with such offerings they gratify the offerer in return with longevity and fame and wealth.[58] Clean food, of agreeable scent and appearance, mixed with milk and curds, should, along with flowers, be offered to the deities.[59] The Valis that should be offered to Yakshas and Rākshasas should be rich with blood and meat, with wines and spirits accompanying, and adorned with coatings of fried paddy.†[60] Valis mixed

* What is meant by the juice of deciduous herbs is oil of mustard seeds and sesame and castor seeds, &c.—T.

† Well-fried paddy, reduced to powder, is sometimes used for giving a coating to dishes of meat.—T.

with lotuses and Utpalas are very agreeable to the Nāgas. Sesame seeds, boiled in raw sugar, should be offered to the spirits and other unearthly Beings.[61] He who never takes any food without first serving therefrom the Brāhmanas and deities and guests, becomes entitled to first portions of food. Such a man becomes endued with strength and energy. Hence one should never take any food without first offering a portion thereof to the deities after worshipping them with reverence.[62] One's house always blazes forth with beauty in consequence of the household deities that live in it. Hence, he that desires his own advancement and prosperity should worship the household deities by offering them the first portion of every food![63] —Even thus did the learned Kavi of Bhrigu's race discourse to Vali the chief of the Asuras. That discourse was next recited by Manu unto the Rishi Suvarna. Suvarna, in his turn, recited it to Nārada.[64] The celestial Rishi Nārada recited unto me the merits that attach to the several acts mentioned. Informed of those merits, do thou, O son, perform the several acts mentioned!'"[65]

Section XCIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I have, O chief of the Bharatas, heard what the merits are that are won by presenters of flowers and incense and lights. I have heard thee speak also of the merits that attach to a due observance of the ordinances in respect of the presentation of the Vali. It behooveth thee, O grandsire, to discourse unto me once more on this subject![1] Indeed, tell me, O sire, once more of the merits of presenting incense and lights. Why are Valis offered on the ground by persons leading the domestic mode of life?'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is recited the old narrative of the discourse between Nahusha and Agastya and Bhrigu.[3] The royal sage Nahusha, O monarch, possessed of wealth of penances, acquired the sovereignty of Heaven by his own good deeds.[4] With restrained senses, O king, he dwelt in Heaven, engaged in doing diverse acts of both human and celestial nature.[5] From that high-souled monarch flowed

diverse kinds of human acts and diverse kinds of celestial acts also, O chief of men.[6] The diverse rites with respect to the sacrificial fire, the collection of sacred fuel and of Kuça grass, as also of flowers, and the presentation of Vali consisting of food adorned with fried paddy (reduced to powder), and the offer of incense and of light,[7]—all these, O monarch, occurred daily in the abode of that high-souled king while he dwelt in Heaven. Indeed, though dwelling in Heaven, he performed the sacrifice of Yapa (or silent recitation) and the sacrifice of meditation.[8] And, O chastiser of foes, Nahusha, although he had become the chief of the deities, yet worshipped all the deities, as he used to do in days of yore, with due rites and ceremonies.[9] Sometime after, Nahusha realised his position as the chief of all the deities. This filled him with pride. From that time all his acts (of the kind spoken of) were suspended.[10] Filled with arrogance in consequence of the boon he had received from all the deities, Nahusha caused the very Rishis to bear him on their shoulders. In consequence, however, of his abstention from all religious acts, his energy began to sustain a diminution.[11] The time was very long for which Nahusha, filled with pride, continued to employ the foremost of Rishis, possessed of wealth of penances, as the bearers of his vehicles.[12] He caused the Rishis to discharge by turns this humiliating work. The day came when it was Agastya's turn to bear the vehicle, O Bhārata.[13] At that time, Bhrigu, that foremost of all persons conversant with Brahma, repaired to the presence of Agastya while the latter was seated in his asylum, and addressing him, said,[14]—O great ascetic, why should we patiently put up with such indignities inflicted on us by this wicked-souled Nahusha who has become the chief of the deities!—[15]

"'Agastya said,—How can I succeed in cursing Nahusha, O great Rishi? It is known to thee how the Boon-giving (Brahman) himself has given Nahusha the best of boons![16] Coming to Heaven, the boon that Nahusha solicited was that whoever would come within the range of his vision would, deprived of all energy, come within his sway.[17] The Self-born Brahman granted him even this boon, and it is for that reason

that neither thyself nor I have been able to consume him. Without doubt, it is for this reason that none else amongst the foremost of Rishis has been able to consume or hurl him down from his high position.[18] Formerly, O lord, nectar, was given by Brahman to Nahusha for quaffing. For that reason also we have become powerless against him.[19] The supreme deity, it seems, gave that boon to Nahusha for plunging all creatures into grief. That wretch among men behaves most unrighteously towards the Brāhmanas.[20] O foremost of all speakers, do thou tell us what should be done in view of the situation. Without doubt, I shall do what thou wilt advise !—[21]

"'Bhrigu said,—It is at the command of the Grandsire that I have come to thee with the view of counter-acting the puissance of Nahusha who is possessed of great energy but who has been stupefied by fate.[22] That exceedingly wicked-souled wight who has become the chief of the deities will today yoke thee to his car. With the aid of my energy I shall today hurl him down from his positon as Indra in consequence of his having transcended all restraints ![23] I shall today, in thy very sight, re-establish the true Indra in his position,—him, *viz.*, who has performed a hundred horse sacrifices,—having hurled the wicked-souled and sinful Nahusha from that seat ![24] That unrighteous chief of the deities will today insult thee by a kick, in consequence of his understanding being afflicted by fate and for bringing about his own downfall.[25] Incensed at such an insult I shall today curse that sinful wretch, that enemy of the Brāhmanas, that has transcended all restraints, saying,—Be thou transformed into a snake ![26]—In thy very sight, O great ascetic, I shall today hurl down on the Earth the wicked-souled Nahusha who shall be deprived of all energy in consequence of the cries of *Fie* that will be uttered from all sides.*[27] Verily, I shall hurl down Nahusha today, that wight of unrighteous deeds, who has, besides, been stupefied by lordship and power. I shall do this, if it be acceptable to thee, O ascetic ![28]—Thus addressed by Bhrigu, Mitrāvaruna's

* It will be remembered that the only chastisement that was in vogue in the Krita age was the crying of Fie on an offender.—T.

son Agastya of unfading puissance and glory, became highly gratified and freed from every anxiety.' "[29]

SECTION C.

"Yudhishthira said,—'How was Nahusha plunged into distress? How was he hurled down on the Earth? How, indeed, was he deprived of the sovereignty of the gods? It behooveth thee to recite everything to me!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Even thus did those two Rishis, *viz.*, Bhrigu and Agastya, converse with each other. I have already told thee how Nahusha, when he first become the chief of the gods, acted in a becoming way. Verily, all acts of human and celestial nature flowed from that high-souled royal sage.[2] Gifts of light, and all other rites of a similar kind, the due presentation of Valis, and all rites as are performed on especially sacred days,[3]—all these were properly observed by the high-souled Nahusha who had become the sovereign of the deities.* Pious acts are always observed by those that are possessed of wisdom, in both the world of men and that of the deities. Verily, O foremost of kings, if such acts are observed, householders always succeed in acquiring prosperity and advancement. Even such is the effect of the gift of lamps and of incense, as also of bows and prostrations, to the deities.[4-5] When food is cooked, the first portion thereof should be offered to a Brāhmana. The particular offerings called Vali should also be presented to the household deities. The deities become gratified with such gifts.†[6] It is also well known that the measure of gratification which the deities derive from such offerings is a hundred times as great as that which the householder himself derives from making them.[7] Persons endued with piety and wisdom make offerings of incense and lights, accompanying them with bows and prostrations. Such acts

---

* The Bombay text has 'vatsakah' for 'utsavāh.' If the former reading be adopted, it would mean those rites that are performed for the prosperity and longevity of children. Of course, in such rites also the deities are worshipped and propitiated.—T.

† For 'Dvijāya' some texts read 'Grahāya' meaning guests.—T.

are always fraught with advancement and prosperity to those that do them.[8] Those rites which the learned go through in course of their ablutions, and with the aid of waters, accompanied with bows unto the gods, always contribute to the gratification of the gods.[9] When worshipped with proper rites, the highly-blessed Pitris, Rishis possessed of wealth of asceticism, and the household deities, all become gratified.[10] Filled with such ideas, Nahusha, that great king, when he obtained the sovereignty of the deities, observed all these rites and duties fraught with great glory.[11] Sometime after, the good fortune of Nahusha waned, and as the consequence thereof, he disregarded all these observances and began to act in defiance of all restraints in the manner I have already adverted to.[12] The chief of the deities, in consequence of his abstention from observing the ordinances about the offers of incense and light, began to decline in energy.[13] His sacrificial rites and presents were obstructed by Rākshasas. It was at this time that Nahusha yoked that foremost of Rishis, *viz.*, Agastya, to his car.[14] Endued with great strength, Nahusha, smiling the while, set that great Rishi quickly to the task, commanding him to bear the vehicle from the banks of the Saraswati (to the place he would indicate). At this time, Bhrigu, endued with great energy, addressed the son of Mitrāvaruna, saying,[15]—Do thou close thy eyes till I enter into the matted locks on thy head !—Having said this, Bhrigu of unfading glory and mighty energy entered into the matted locks of Agastya who stood still like a wooden post, for hurling king Nahusha from the throne of Heaven. Soon after Nahusha saw Agastya approach him for bearing his vehicle.[16-17] Beholding the lord of the deities, Agastya addressed him, saying, —Do thou yoke me to thy vehicle without delay ! To what region shall I bear thee ?[18] O lord of the deities I shall bear thee to the spot which thou mayst be pleased to direct !—Thus addressed by him, Nahusha caused the ascetic to be yoked to his vehicle.[19] Bhrigu, who was staying within the matted locks of Agastya, became highly pleased at this act of Nahusha. He took care not to cast his eyes upon Nahusha.[20] Fully acquainted with the energy which the illustrious Na-

husha had acquired in consequence of the boon which Brahman had granted him, Bhrigu conducted himself in this way. Agastya also, though treated by Nahusha in this way, did not give way to wrath.[21] Then, O Bhārata, king Nahusha urged Agastya on with his goad. The righteous-souled Rishi did not still give way to anger. The lord of the deities, himself giving way to anger, then struck Agastya on the head with his left foot. When the Rishi was thus struck on the head, Bhrigu, who was staying within Agastya's matted locks,[22-23] became incensed and cursed Nahusha of sinful soul, saying,—Since thou hast struck with thy foot on the head of this great Rishi,[24] do thou, therefore, fall down on the Earth, transformed into a snake, O wretch of wicked understanding!—Thus cursed by Bhrigu who had not been seen, Nahusha immediately became transformed into a snake and fell down on the Earth, O chief of Bharata's race!—If, O monarch, Nahusha had seen Bhrigu, the latter would not then have succeeded, by his energy, in hurling the former down on the Earth. In consequence of the various gifts that Nahusha had made, as also his penances and religious observances,[25-27] though hurled down on the Earth, O king, he succeeded in retaining his memory. He then began to propitiate Bhrigu with a view to the working out of the curse.[28] Agastya also, filled with compassion, joined Nahusha in pacifying Bhrigu for bringing about an end of the curse. At last Bhrigu felt compassion for Nahusha and provided for the working out of the curse.[29]

"'Bhrigu said,—There will appear a king (on Earth) of the name of Yudhishthira, the foremost of his race. Even he will rescue thee from this curse!—Having said this, the Rishi vanished in the very sight of Nahusha.[30] Agastya also, of mighty energy, having thus accomplished the business of the true Indra, that performer of a hundred sacrifices, returned to his own asylum, worshipped by all members of the regenerate order.[31] Thou hast, O king, rescued Nahusha from Bhrigu's curse. Verily, rescued by thee, he ascended to the region of Brahman in thy sight.[32] As regards Bhrigu, having hurled Nahusha on the Earth, he went to the region of Brahman and informed the Grandsire of it.[33] The Grandsire, having called

Indra back, addressed the deities, saying,—Ye deities, through the boon I had granted him, Nahusha had obtained the sovereignty of Heaven.[34] Deprived, however, of that sovereignty by the enraged Agastya, he has been hurled on the Earth, Ye deities, ye will not succeed in living without a chief![35] Do ye, therefore, once more install Indra in the sovereignty of Heaven!—Unto the Grandsire, O son of Prithā, who said so unto them, the deities, filled with joy, replied, saying,—So be it! The divine Brahman then, O best of monarchs, installed Indra in the sovereignty of Heaven. Made once more the chief of the deities, Vāsava began to shine in beauty and resplendence. Even this is what occurred in days of yore through the transgressions of Nahusha.[36-38] In consequence, however, of the merits he had acquired through acts of the kind I have mentioned, Nahusha succeeded in once more regaining his lost position. Hence, when evening comes, persons leading the domestic mode of life should give lights.[39] The giver of lights is sure to acquire celestial sight after death. Verily, givers of light become as resplendent as the full moon.[40] The giver of lights becomes endued with beauty of form and strength for as many years as correspond with the number of twinkles for which the lights given by him burn or blaze.' "*[41]

Section CI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Where do those foolish, wretched, and sinful men go, O chief of men, that steal or misappropriate such articles as belong to Brāhmanas?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall, in this connection, O Bhārata, recite to thee the old narrative of a conversation between a Chandāla and a low Kshatriya.†[2]

" 'The person of the royal order said,—Thou seemest, O

---

* 'Jwalante' has 'dwipāh' for its nominative understood. A twinkle occupies an instant of time. What is said here is that the giver of lights becomes endued with beauty and strength for as many years as the number of instants for which the lights given by him are seen to burn.—T.

† 'Kshatrabandhu' implies a low or vile Kshatriya.—T.

Chandāla, to be old in years, but thy conduct seems to be like that of a boy! Thy body is besmeared with the dust raised by dogs and asses, but without minding that dust thou art anxious about the little drops of vaccine milk that have fallen upon thy body![3] It is plain that such acts as are censured by the righteous are ordained for the Chandāla. Why, indeed, dost thou seek to wash off the spots of milk from thy body?*[4]

"'The Chandāla said,—Formerly, O king, certain kine belonging to a Brāhmana were stolen. While they were being carried away, some milk from their udders fell upon a number of Soma plants that grew by the road-side. Those Brāhmanas that drank the juice of the plants thus bedewed with milk,[5] as also the king who performed the sacrifice in which that Soma was drunk, had to sink in hell. Indeed, for having thus appropriated something that had belonged to a Brāhmana, the king with all the Brāhmanas that had assisted him had to go to hell.[6] All those men also, Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas, that drank milk or ghee or curds, in the palace of the king who had stolen the Brāhmana's kine, had to fall into hell.[7] The stolen kine also, shaking their bodies, slew with their milk the sons and grandsons of those that had stolen them, as also the king and the queen although the latter treated the animals with great care and attention.[8] As regards myself, O king, I used to live in the observance of the vow of Brahmacharyya in that place where these kine were placed after they had been stolen away. The food I had obtained by begging became sprinkled over with the milk of those kine.[9] Having taken that food, O thou of the royal order, I have, in this life, become a Chandāla. The king who had stolen the kine belonging to a Brāhmana obtained an infamous end.[10] Hence, one should never steal or appropriate anything that belongs to a Brāhmana. Behold, to what state I am reduced in consequence of my having eaten food that had been sprinkled over with milk belonging to a Brāhmana![11] It is for this reason that Soma plants become unsaleable by a person possessed of wisdom.

---

* Literally, 'Why doest thou dip such parts of thy body into a pond of water?'—T.

They who sell the Soma plant are censured by the wise.[12] Indeed, O son, they who purchase Soma and they who sell it, both sink in the hell called Raurava when, departing from this world, they repair to the region of Yama.[13] That man who, possessing a knowledge of the Vedas, duly sells Soma, becomes in his next life a usuer and quickly meets with destruction.[14] For three-hundred times he has to sink into hell and become transformed into an animal that subsists upon human ordure. Serving a person that is vile and low, pride, and rape upon a friend's wife,[15] if weighed against one another in a balance, would show that pride, which transcends all restraints, is the heaviest. Behold this dog, so sinful and disagreeably pale and lean![16] (He was a human being in his former life). It is through pride that living creatures attain to such a miserable end. As regards myself, I was born in a large family,[17] in a former birth of mine, O lord, and I was a thorough master of all branches of knowledge and all the sciences. I knew the gravity of all these faults, but influenced by pride,[18] I became blinded and ate the meat attached to the vertebral columns of animals. In consequence of such conduct and such food,[19] I have attained to this state. Behold the reverses brought about by Time! Like a person whose cloth has taken fire at one end, or who is pursued by bees,[20] behold, I am running, penetrated with fear, and smeared with dust! They that lead the domestic mode of life are rescued from all sins by a study of the Vedas,[21] as also by gifts of other kinds, as declared by the wise.* O thou of the royal order, a Brāhmana that is sinful in conduct, becomes rescued from all his sins by study of the Vedas, if he betakes himself to the forest mode of life and abstains from attachment of every kind. O chief of Kshatriyas, I am, in this life, born in a sinful order![22-23] I fail to see clearly how I may succeed in cleansing myself from all sins. In consequence of some meritorious act of a former life, I have not lost the memory of my previous trives.[24] O king, I throw myself on thy mercy! I ask thee! Do thou resolve

* The study of the Vedas is regarded as equivalent in merit to gifts. Hence actual gifts of articles are spoken of as 'gifts of other kinds.'—T.

my doubt. By what auspicious course of conduct should I wish to achieve my emancipation? O foremost of men, by what means shall I succeed in getting rid of my status as a Chandāla?—[25]

"'The person of the royal order said,—Know, O Chāndāla, the means by which thou mayst be able to attain to emancipation. By casting off thy life-breaths for the sake of a Brāhmana, thou mayst attain a desirable end![26] By throwing thy body on the fire of battle as a libation to the beasts and birds of prey for the sake of a Brāhmana, indeed, by casting off thy life-breaths thus, thou mayst achieve emancipation! By no other means wilt thou succeed in achieving it!—'[27]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed, that Chandāla, O scorcher of foes, poured his life-breaths as a libation on the fire of battle for the sake of protecting a Brāhmana's wealth and as the consequence of that act attained to a very desirable end.[28] Hence, O son, thou shouldst always protect the property of the Brāhmanas, if, O chief of Bharata's race, thou desirest, O thou of mighty arms, an end consisting of eternal felicity!'[29]

SECTION CII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, it has been said that all righteous men attain to the same region after death. It is true, O Bhārata, that there is difference of position or status among them?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'By different deeds, O son of Prithā, men attain to different regions. They who are righteous in conduct attain to regions of felicity, while they who are sinful attain to regions that are fraught with misery.[2] In this connection is cited the old narrative of the discourse, O son, between the ascetic Gautama and Vāsava.[3] A certain Brāhmana of the name of Gautama, mild and self-restrained and with all his senses under complete control, beheld an infant elephant that had lost his mother and that was exceedingly cheerless on that account.[4] Full of compassion and steady in the observance of his vows, the ascetic nursed that infant animal. After a long time the little beast grew up into a large and mighty elephant.[5]

One day, Indra, assuming the form of king Dhritarāshtra, seized that mighty elephant which was as huge as a hill and from whose rent temples the juice was trickling down.[6] Beholding the elephant dragged away, the great ascetic Gautama of rigid vows addressed king Dhritarāshtra and said,[7]—O ungrateful Dhritarāshtra, do not rob me of this elephant. It is looked upon by me as a son and I have reared it with much pain. It is said that between the righteous, friendship springs up if only they exchange seven words.* Thou shouldst see, O king, that the sin of injuring a friend does not touch thee![8] It behooveth thee not, O king, to take away by force this elephant that brings me my fuel and water, that protects my asylum when I am away, that is exceedingly docile and obedient to his instructor, that is mindful of doing all the offices that his preceptor commands, that is mild and well-broken, and that is grateful and very dear to me! Indeed, thou shouldst not bear it away, disregarding my protestations and cries!—[9-10]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—I shall give thee a thousand kine, a hundred maid-servants, and five hundred pieces of gold. I shall also, O great Rishi, give thee diverse other kinds of wealth. What use can Brāhmanas have with elephants?—[11]

"'Gautama said,—Keep, O king, thy kine and maid-servants and coins of gold and various gems and diverse other kinds of wealth! What, O monarch, have Brāhmanas to do with wealth?—[12]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—Brāhmanas have no use for elephants. Verily, O learned Brāhmana, elephants are meant for persons of the royal order. In taking away an animal, *viz.*, this foremost of elephants, for my use as a vehicle, I cannot be regarded as committing any sin. Do thou cease obstructing me in this way, O Gautama!—[13]

"'Gautama said,—O illustrious king, repairing even to that

---

* Literally, 'friendship is seven-worded.' Sometimes the same expression is understood as meaning 'seven-paced.' The sense, of course, is that if the righteous meet and exchange seven words (or, walk with each other for only seven steps), they become friends.—T.

region of Yama where the righteous live in joy and the sinful in grief, I shall take from thee this my elephant !—[14]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—They that are destitute of (religious) acts, they that have no faith and are atheists, they that are of sinful souls and are always engaged in gratifying their senses, only they have to go to the region of Yama and endure the misery he inflicts. Dhritarāshtra shall go to a higher region, and not thither !—[15]

"'Gautama said,—The region of Yama is such that men are there controlled. No untruth can be told there. Only truth prevails in that place. There the weak persecute the strong. Repairing thither I shall force thee to yield up this elephant to me !—[16]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—Only those persons that, intoxicated with pride, conduct themselves towards their eldest sister and father and mother as towards foes, have to repair, O great ascetic, to such a region. I shall repair to a higher region. Indeed, Dhritarāshtra shall not have to go thither !—[17]

"'Gautama said,—The region, called Mandākini, of king Vaiçravana is attained by those highly blessed persons for whom are every joy and comfort. There Gandharvas and Yakshas and Apsaras live, (gladdening all the denizens with enchanting dances and music). Repairing even thither, O king, I shall force thee to yield up this elephant to me !—[18]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—Those persons who regard hospitality to guests as a vow, who are observant of good vows (having other objects), who give shelter to Brāhmanas, and who eat what remains after distribution among all those that are dependent upon them, adorn the region called Mandākini of Kuvera. (I shall not go thither, for a higher region is reserved for me !)—[19]

"'Gautama said,—If thou repairest to those delightful woods, decked with flowers, that stand on the summit of Meru, that echo with the melodious voice of Kinnaris, and that are graced with beautiful Jamvus of wide-spreading branches, I shall proceed even thither and force thee to yield up this elephant to me !—[20]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—Those Brāhmanas that are endued with mild dispositions, that are devoted to truth, that are

possessed of great learning in the scriptures, that are compassionate unto all creatures, that study the Purānas with all the histories, that pour libations on the sacred fire and make gifts of honey unto the Brāhmanas,[21] repair to such regions, O great Rishi! I shall repair to a region that is higher. Indeed, Dhritarāshtra shall not go thither. If thou art acquainted with any other well-known region of felicity, speak unto me, for I shall repair even thither!—[22]

"'Gautama said,—If thou proceedest to the woods owned by Nārada and held dear by him, that are adorned with flowers and that echo with the melodious songs of the prince of Kinnaras, and that are the eternal abode of Gandharvas and Apsaras, I shall follow thee thither and force thee to yield up this elephant to me!—[23]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—They who never solicit alms, they who cultivate music and dancing, and always rove about in joy, proceed to such regions. O great Rishi, I shall repair to a region that is higher. Indeed, Dhritarāshtra shall not have to go thither!—[24]

"'Gautama said,—If thou goest to that region where the Uttara-Kurus blaze in beauty and pass their days in gladness, O king, in the company of the very deities, where those beings that have their origin in fire, those that have their origin in water, and those having their origin in mountains, reside in happiness,[25] and where Cakra raineth down the fruition of every wish, and where women live in perfect freedom, unrestrained by rules of any kind regulating their conduct or motions, and where there is no feeling of jealousy among both the sexes,—if thou repairest thither, even thither shall I proceed and force thee to yield up this elephant to me!—[26]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—Those men that are freed from desire with respect to all articles of enjoyment, that abstain from meat, that never take up the rod of chastisement, and never inflict the least harm on mobile and immobile creatures, that have constituted themselves the souls of all creatures,[27] that never accost others by pronouncing blessings upon them, that are entirely freed from the idea of *meum*, that have cast off attachments of every kind, that regard gain and loss as also

praise and blame as equal,—only those men, O great Rishi, repair to such regions. I shall repair to a higher region. Verily, Dhritarāshtra shall not go thither !—[28]

" 'Gautama said,—Next to these blaze in beauty those eternal regions, redolent with excellent perfumes, that are free from passions of every kind and that are destitute of sorrow. These constitute the abode of the high-souled king Soma. If thou repairest thither, even thither shall I proceed and force thee to yield up this elephant to me !—[29]

" 'Dhritarāshtra said,—Those men that always make gifts without receiving any gift, who never accept any service from others, who own nothing which they cannot give to a deserving person, who are hospitable to all creatures, who are inclined to show grace to every one,[30] who are endued with forgiving dispositions, who never speak ill of others, who protect all creatures by throwing over them the shroud of compassion, and who are always righteous in their behaviour,—only those men, O great Rishi, proceed to such regions. I shall proceed to a higher region. Verily, Dhritarāshtra shall not go there !—[31]

" 'Gautama said,—Next to these blaze in beauty other regions that are eternal, free from passion and Darkness and sorrow, and that lie at the foot of the high-souled deity of the Sun. If thou repairest thither, even thither shall I go and force thee to yield up this elephant to me !—[32]

" 'Dhritarāshtra said,—Those men that are attentive to the study of the Vedas, that are devoted to the service of their preceptors, that are observant of penances and excellent vows, that are firm in truth, that never utter anything that smacks of disobedience or enmity to their preceptors, that are always alert, and ever ready in the service of seniors and preceptors,[33] —they repair, O great Rishi, to such regions, they that are pure (of mind and body), that are endued with cleansed souls, that are of restrained speech, that are firm in truth, and that are well versed in the Vedas. I shall proceed to a higher region ! Verily, Dhritarāshtra shall not go thither !—[34]

" 'Gautama said,—Next to those are the eternal regions that blaze in beauty, that are redolent with excellent perfumes, that are free from passion, and that are destitute of

every sorrow. They constitute the abode of the high-souled king Varuna. If thou proceedest thither, even thither shall I go and force thee to yield up this elephant to me !—[35]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—Those men who worship the deities by observing the vow called Chāturmāsya, that perform a hundred and ten sacrifices, that pour libations every day on their sacred fire with devotion and faith for three years agreeably to the ordinances declared in the Vedas,[36] that bear without flinching the burthen of all duties, that walk steadily along the way trod by the righteous, that steadily sustain the course of conduct followed by the righteous-souled,—only they repair to such regions. I shall repair to a higher region. Verily, Dhritarāshtra shall not go thither !—[37]

"'Gautama said,—Above them are the regions of Indra, free from passion and sorrow, that are difficult of access and coveted by all men. Proceeding even to the abode of Indra himself of mighty energy, I shall, O king, force thee to yield up this elephant to me !—[38]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—He who lives for a hundred years, who is endued with heroism, who studies the Vedas, and who performs sacrifices with devotion, verily, such men proceed to the region of Cakra. I shall repair to a higher region. Verily, Dhritarāshtra shall not go there !—[39]

"'Gautama said,—Above the Heavens are the regions of the Prajāpatis, of superior felicity, abounding in every happiness, and divested of sorrow. Belonging to those puissant ones from whom the creation has sprung, they are coveted by all persons. If thou repairest thither, even thither shall I go and force thee to yield up this elephant to me !—[40]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—Those kings that have bathed upon the completion of the Rājasuya sacrifice, that are endued with righteous souls, that have protected their subjects properly, and that have washed their limbs with sanctified water upon the completion of the Horse-sacrifice, repair to such regions. Verily, Dhritarāshtra shall not go there !—[41]

"'Gautama said,—Next to those, blaze in beauty those eternal regions, redolent with declicious perfumes, freed from passion, and transcending all sorrow. Those are the regions of

kine, difficult of attainment, where oppression can never be. If thou repairest thither, I shall proceed even thither and force thee to yield up this elephant to me !—[42]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—He who, owning a thousand kine, gives away a hundred kine every year, or owning a hundred kine gives away ten every year to the best of his might, or owning only ten or even five kine gives away therefrom one cow,[43] and they who attain to a mature old age practising the vows of Brahmacharyya all their days, who obey the declarations of the Vedas, and who, endued with energy of mind, betake themselves to sojourns to sacred waters and shrines, dwell in felicity in the region of kine.[44] They who repair to Prabhāsa and Mānasa, the lakes of Pushkara, the large lake called Mahatsara, the sacred woods of Naimisha, Vāhudā, Karatoyā,[45] Gangā, Gayaçiras, Vipāçā, Sthulavālukā, Krishnā, the five rivers (of the Punjab), the extensive lake called Mahāhrada,[46] Gomati, Kauçiki, Champā, Saraswati, Driçadwati, and Yamunā,—indeed those illustrious Brāhmanas, steady in the observance of vows, who sojourn to these sacred waters,—repair to the regions of which thou speakest. Endued with celestial bodies and adorned with celestial garlands, those blessed individuals, always emitting the most delightful perfumes, repair to those regions of joy and gladness. Verily, Dhritarāshtra shall not go there !—[47-48]

"'Gautama said,—Next to these are regions where there is no fear of the least cold or heat, no hunger, no thirst, no pain, no sorrow, no joy,[49] no one that is agreeable or disagreeable, no friend, and no enemy; where decrepitude and death are not, and where there is neither righteousness nor sin. Proceeding even to that region which is freed from passion, which abounds with equable happiness, and where there is wisdom and the attribute of Sattwa,—verily, proceeding to even that sacred abode of the self-born Brahman,—I shall force thee to yield up this elephant to me !—[50-51]

"'Dhritarāshtra said,—They who are freed from all attachments, who are possessed of cleansed souls, who are steady in the observance of the foremost vows, who are devoted to the Yoga that depends on tranquilising the mind, and who have-

(in this life) attained to the happiness of Heaven,—those persons wedded to the attribute of Sattwa—attain to the sacred region of Brahman. O great ascetic, thou shalt not be able to discover Dhritarāshtra there !—[52-53]

"'Gautama said,—There where the foremost of Rathantaras is sung, where altars are strewn with the sacred Kuça, blades, for the performance of Pundarika sacrifices, there where Soma-drinking Brāhmanas sojourn on vehicles drawn by excellent steeds,* proceeding even thither I shall force thee to yield up this elephant.[54] I think thou art the slayer of Vritra, *viz.*, the deity that has performed a hundred sacrifices, engaged in roving through all the regions of the universe ! I hope I have not, through mental weakness (in not recognising thee before) committed any fault by the words I have addressed thee !—[55]

"'The deity of a hundred sacrifices said,—Yes, I am Maghavat. I came to the world of human beings, for seizing this elephant. I bow to thee. Do thou command me ! I shall readily accomplish all that thou mayst be pleased to say !—[56]

"'Gautama said,—Do thou give me, O chief of the deities, this elephant that is of white complexion and that is so young, for it is only ten years of age. I have brought it up as a child of my own. Dwelling in these woods, it has grown under my eye and has been to me a dear companion. Do thou set free this my child that thou hast seized and wishest to drag away !—[57]

"'The deity of a hundred sacrifices said,—This elephant that has been a son to thee, O foremost of Brāhmanas, cometh to thee, looking wistfully at thee ! Behold, it scents thy feet with its nostrils ! My salutations to thee ! Do thou pray for my welfare !—[58]

"'Gautama said,—O chief of the deities, I do always think of thy good ! I always offer thee worship ! Do thou also,

* The Bombay text has 'Somapithi' and 'upayāti' instead of 'upayānti.' The Bengal texts read 'Somavithi' which seems to be inaccurate. The sense seems to be that of 'Somapithi' or drinker of (sacrificial) Soma.—T.

O Cakra, bestow thy blessings on me! Given by thee, I accept this elephant!—[59]

"'The deity of a hundred sacrifices said,—Amongst all those high-souled and foremost of Rishis that firmly adhere to truth and that have the Vedas planted in their heart, thou alone hast been able to recognise me. For this reason I am exceedingly gratified with thee![60] Do thou, therefore, O Brāhmana, come with me quickly, accompanied by this thy son! Thou deservest to attain to diverse regions of great felicity without the delay of even a single day!—'[61]

"Bhishma continued,—'Having said these words, the wielder of the thunderbolt, taking Gautama with him and placing him before, along with his son, *viz.*, that elephant, proceeded to Heaven, that is difficult of attainment by even the righteous.[62] He who would listen to this history every day or would recite it, restraining his senses the while, proceeded (after death) to the region of Brahman even as Gautama himself.' "[63]

SECTION CIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast discoursed to us on diverse kinds of gift, on tranquillity of soul, on Truth, on compassion, on contentment with one's wedded wife, and the merits of gift.[1] It is known to thee, O grandsire, that there is nothing whose puissance is superior to that of Penances. It behooveth thee to expound to us what constitutes the highest penance!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'I tell thee, O Yudhishthira, that one attains to a region of felicity that corresponds with the kind of penances that one observes. This is what I hold, O son of Kunti, that there is no Penance that is superior to abstention from food![3] In this connection is recited the ancient narrative of the discourse between Bhagiratha and the illustrious Brahman (the Grandsire of the Creation).[4] It has been heard by us, O Bhārata, that Bhagiratha attained to that region which transcends that of the deities, of kine, and of the Rishis.[5] Beholding this, O monarch, the Grandsire Brahman, addressing Bhagiratha, said,—How, O Bhagiratha, hast thou attained to this region that is so difficult of attainment?[6]

Neither the deities, nor Gandharvas, nor human beings, O Bhagiratha, succeed in coming here without having practised the severest austerities. How, indeed, hast thou attained to this region?—[7]

"'Bhagiratha said,—I used to make gifts of hundred thousands of gold coins unto the Brāhmanas, observing the Brahmacharyya vow all the while. It is not through the merit of those gifts, O learned one, that I have attained to this region.[8] I performed the Ekarātri sacrifice for ten times, and the Pancharātri sacrifice for as many times. The Ekādaçarātri sacrifice was performed by me eleven times. The great sacrifice of Jyotishtoma was performed by me a hundred times. It is not, however, through the merits of those sacrifices that I have attained to this region of felicity.*[9] For a hundred years I lived continuously by the side of the holy Jāhnavi, all the while practising the severest austerities. There I made gifts unto the Brāhmanas of thousands of males and innumerable female slaves.[10] By the side of the Pushkara lakes I made gifts unto the Brāhmanas, for a hundred thousand times, a hundred thousand steeds, and two hundred thousand kine.[11] I also gave away a thousand damsels of great beauty, each adorned with golden moons, and sixty thousand more, decked with ornaments of pure gold. It is not, however, through the merits of those acts that I have succeeded in attaining to these regions.†[12] O lord of the universe, performing those sacrifices known by the name of Gosava, I gave away ten Arvudas of

* The 'Ekarātri,' 'Pancharātri,' and 'Ekādaçarātri' sacrifices consist of fasts and gifts for the periods indicated by the names, *viz.*, one night, five nights, and eleven nights.—T.

† 'Golden moons' imply those well-carved and beautifully fringed discs of gold that are worn by Hindu ladies on the forehead and that hang by thin chains of gold attached to the hair. In Bengal, ladies of respectable houses wear a kind of ornament called 'Chandrahāra' or the moon-wreath. This ornament is worn round the waist, on the hip. Several chains of gold, from half a dozen to a dozen, having a large disc of well-carved gold to which they are attached, constitute this really very beautiful ornament. The disc is divided into two halves, attached to each other by hinges, so that in sitting down, the ornament produces no inconvenience.—T.

kine, presenting each Brāhmana with ten kine, each of whom was accompanied with her calf, each of whom yielded milk at the time, and with each of whom were given a vessel of gold and one of white brass for milking her.[13] Performing many Soma sacrifices, I gave away unto each Brāhmana ten kine each of whom yielded milk, and each of whom had brought forth only her first calf, besides making presents unto them of hundreds of kine belonging to that species which is known by the name of Rohini.[14] I also gave away unto the Brāhmanas twice ten Prayutas of other kine, all yielding milk. It is not through the merit of those gifts, O Brahman, that I have succeeded in attaining to this region of felicity.[15] I also gave away a hundred thousand horses of the Vālhika breed, all white of complexion, and adorned with garlands of gold. It is not, however, through the merits of those acts that I have attained to this region.[16] I gave away eight crores of golden coins unto the Brāhmanas, O Brahman, and then another ten crores also, in each sacrifice that I performed. It is not, however, through the merits of those acts that I have attained to this region of felicity.[17] I also gave away ten and then seven crores of steeds, O Grandsire, each of green complexion, each having ears that were dark, and each adorned with garlands of gold.[18] I also gave away ten and seven thousand elephants of huge size, of teeth as large as plough-shares, each having those whirls on its body which are called Padmas, and each adorned with garlands of gold.[19] I gave away ten thousand cars, O Grandsire, whose limbs were made of gold, and which were adorned with diverse ornaments of gold.[20] I also gave away seven thousand other cars with steeds yoked unto each. All the steeds that were yoked unto them were adorned with ornaments of gold. Those cars represented the Dakshinas of a sacrifice and were of exactly that kind which is indicated in the Vedas.[21] In the ten great Vājapeya sacrifices that I performed, I gave away a thousand heroes each endued with the puissance of Indra himself, judged by their prowess and the sacrifices they had performed.[22] Spending a vast sum of money, O Grandsire, and performing eight Rājasuya sacrifices, I gave away (unto the Brāhmanas that officiated in them)[23] a

thousand kings whose necks were adorned with garlands of gold, after having vanquished them in battle. It is not, however, through the merits of those acts that I have attained to this region.[24] In those sacrifices, O Lord of the universe, the presents that flowed from me were as copious as the stream of Gangā herself. Unto each Brāhmana I gave two thousand elephants decked with gold, as many steeds adorned with golden ornaments, and a hundred villages of the best kind.[25] Verily, I gave these unto each Brāhmana for three times in succession. observant of penances, subsisting on regulated diet, adopting tranquillity of soul, and restraining speech,[26] I dwelt for a long time on the breast of Himavat by the side of that Gangā whose irresistible current (as it fell from Heaven) was borne by Mahādeva on his head. It is not through the merit of these acts, O Grandsire, that I have attained to this region.[27] Throwing the Cami, I adored the gods in myriads of such sacrifices as are completed in course of a single day, and such others as take twelve days for completing, and others still as can be completed in three and ten days, besides many Pundarikas. I have not attained to this region through the merits of any of those sacrifices.*[28] I gave unto the Brāhmanas eight thousands of white-complexioned bulls, each graced with a beautiful hump, and each having one of its horns covered with gold. Unto them I also gave beautiful wives whose necks were adorned with chains of gold.[29] I also gave away large heaps of gold and wealth of other kinds. Verily, I gave away hills of gems and precious stones. Villages, numbering by thousands and teeming with wealth and corn, were also given away by me.[30] With all my senses about me, I gave away unto the Brāhmanas a hundred thousand kine each of whom had brought forth only her first calf, at many great sacrifices which I performed. It is not, however, through the merits of those acts that I have attained to this region.[31] I adored

* In the Cānti Parvan it has been explained that in ancient times kings sometimes performed sacrifices causing altars to be raised at small distances from one another. These distances were measured by hurling a heavy piece of wood called Cami, so that throwing the Cami from one altar, the next altar would be created upon the spot where it fell.—T.

the deities in a sacrifice that is completed in eleven days. Twice I adored them in sacrifices that are completed in twelve days. I adored them also many a time in the Horse-sacrifices. Six and ten times I performed the Arkāyana sacrifice. It is not through the merits of those acts that I have attained to this region.[32] I also gave unto each Brāhmana a forest of Kānchana trees extending for a Yojana on every side, and with each tree adorned with jewels and gems. It is not through the merits of that act that I have attained to this region.[33] For thirty years, with heart perfectly freed from wrath, I observed the Turāyana vow that is possessed of very superior merit, and gave away unto the Brāhmanas every day nine hundred kine.[34] Indeed, O Lord of the universe, every one of those kine belonged to the Rohini species and yielded milk at the time I gave them away. It is not through the merits of those acts, O chief of the deities, that I have attained to this region.[35] I worshipped thirty fires, O Brahman, every day. I adored the deities in eight sacrifices in which the fat of all animals was poured on the fire. I adored them in seven sacrifices in which the fat of human beings was poured on the fire.[36] I adored them in a thousand and twenty-eight Viçwajit sacrifices. It is not through the merits of those sacrifices, O lord of all the deities, that I have attained to this region.[37] On the banks of Sarayu and Vāhudā and Gangā, as also in the woods of Naimisha, I gave away millions of kine unto the Brāhmanas. It is not through the merits of those acts that I have attained to this region.[38] The vow of fast had been known to Indra. He had, however, kept it a secret. Cukra, the descendent of Bhrigu, obtained a knowledge of it by means of spiritual sight acquired through penances. Blazing with energy as he does, it is Uçanas who first made it known to the universe. I observed that vow, O boon-giving Deity![39] When I accomplished that very superior vow, the Brāhmanas became all gratified with me. A thousand Rishis came thither.[40] All those Brāhmanas and Rishis, O puissant lord, gratified with me, said,—Do thou repair to the region of Brahman!—It is in consequence of the merits of that vow that I have succeeded in attaining to this region of very

superior felicity. There is no doubt in this.[41] Asked by the supreme Ordainer of all things, I have duly expounded the merits of the vow of fast. In my opinion, there is no penance higher than fast. I bow to thee, O foremost of all the deities! Be thou gratified with me!—'[42]

"Bhishma continued,—'King Bhagiratha, who had said so and who deserved every honor, was, on the conclusion of his speech, honored by Brahman according to the rites ordained for that purpose.[43] Do thou, therefore, O Yudhishthira, observe the vow of fast and worship the Brāhmanas every day. The words uttered by Brāhmanas can accomplish everything both here and hereafter.[44] Indeed, the Brāhmanas should ever be gratified with gifts of robes and food and white-complexioned kine and good dwelling houses and mansions. The very deities should gratify the Brāhmanas. Freeing thyself from cupidity, do thou practise this vow of very superior merit that is not known to all!' "[45]

Section CIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Man, it is said, is endued with a period of life extending for a hundred years, and with energy and might that are considerable. Why then, O grandsire, do human beings die even when they are very young?[1] By what does a man become endued with longevity, and by what is his life shortened? Through what does a man acquire the fame that rests upon great achievements? Through what does one attain to wealth and prosperity?[2] Is it by penances, or Brahmacharyya, or silent recitation of sacred Mantras, or drugs? Is it by his acts, or mind, or speech? Do thou explain to me this, O grandsire!—[3]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall, tell thee what thou askest me. In fact, I shall tell thee what the reason is for which one becomes short-lived, and what the reason is for which one becomes endued with longevity.[4] I shall also explain to thee the reason for which one succeeds in acquiring the fame that rests on great achievements, and the reason for which one succeeds in acquiring wealth and prosperity. Indeed, I shall

enlighten thee as to the manner in which one must live in order to be endued with all that is beneficial for him.[5] It is by conduct that one acquires longevity, and it is by conduct that one acquires wealth and prosperity. Indeed, it is by conduct that one acquires the fame that rests upon great achievements both here and hereafter.[6] The man whose conduct is improper or wicked never acquires a long life. All creatures become afraid of such a man and are oppressed by him.[7] If, therefore, one wishes one's own advancement and prosperity, one should, in this world, betake to conduct that is proper and good. Good conduct succeeds in dispelling the inauspiciousness and misery of even one that is sinful.*[8] Righteousness has conduct for its indication. They that are good and righteous are so in consequence of the conduct they follow. The indications, again, of good conduct are afforded by the acts of those that are good or righteous.[9] People esteem that man who acts righteously and who does good acts even if they only hear of him without actually seeing him.[10] They that are atheists, they that are destitute of all acts, they that are disobedient to preceptors and transgress the injunctions of the scriptures, they that are unacquainted with and, therefore, unobservant of duties, and they that are wicked of conduct, become short-lived.[11] They that are of improper behaviour, they that transgress all restraints, they that are unscrupulous in respect of sexual congress, become shortlived here and have to go to Hell hereafter.[12] Even those men live for a hundred years who, though destitute of all accomplishments, betake themselves to propriety and righteousness of conduct and become endued with faith and freed from malice.[13] He that is free from wrath, that is truthful in speech, that never does any injury to any creature in the universe, that is divested of malice and crookedness and insincerity, succeeds in living for a hundred years.[14] He who always breaks little clods of earth, or tears up the grass that grows under his feet, or cuts off his nails with his teeth, or is always impure, or very

---

* *I. e.*, if a sinful man mends his conduct, he succeeds in warding off the misery and evils to which he would otherwise be subject in consequence of his sins.—T.

restless, never succeeds in acquiring a long life.*[15] One should wake up from sleep at the hour known as the Brāhma Muhurta and then think of both religion and profit. Getting up from bed, one should then wash one's face and mouth, and joining one's hands in an attitude of reverence, then say the morning prayers.†[16] In this way, one should, when evening comes, say one's evening prayers also, restraining speech (with other people) the while. One should never look at the rising sun, nor at the setting sun.‡[17] Nor should one look at the sun when he is in eclipse; nor at his image in the water; nor at midday when he is at the meridian. The Rishis, in consequence of their adoring the two twilights with great regularity succeeded in attaining to longevity.[18] Hence one should, restraining speech, say one's prayers regularly at the two twilights. As regards those Brāhmanas that do not say their prayers at the two twilights, a righteous king should set them to accomplish such acts as are ordained for the Cudras. Persons of every order should never have sexual congress with other people's wives.[19-20] There is nothing that shortens life so effectually as sexual congress with other people's wives.[21] For as many thousand years shall the adulterer have to live in Hell as the number of pores on the bodies of the women with whom he may commit the offence.[22] One should dress one's hair, apply collyrium to one's eyes, and wash one's teeth, as also worship the deities, in the forenoon.[23] One should not gaze at urine or fæces, or tread on it or touch it with one's feet. One should not set out on a journey at early dawn, or at midday, or in the evening twilight,[24] or with a companion

---

* What is said here is this: certain persons have the ugly habit of picking up little clods of earth and pound them into dust, while sitting on the ground and engaged in talking. The habit also of tearing the grass while sitting on the ground may be marked. It should be remembered that the people of India in ancient times used aften to sit on the bare ground. As to cutting off the nails with the teeth, it is an ugly habit with many young men.—T.

† The 'Brāhma Muhurta' is that when the Sun is just below the horizon.—T.

‡ The prayers said in the morning and the evening are also spoken of as adoring the two twilights.—T.

that is unknown, or with a Cudra, or alone. While going along a road, one should, standing aside, always give way to a Brāhmana, to kine, to kings,[25] to an old man, to one that is weighted with a burthen, to a woman quick with child, or to one that is weak. When one meets a large tree that is known, one should walk round it. One should also, when coming upon a spot where four roads meet, walk round it before pursuing one's journey. At midday, or at midnight, or at night in general,[26] or at the two twilights, one should not proceed to spots where four roads meet. One should never wear sandals or clothes that have been worn by another.[27] One should always observe the vow of Brahmacharyya, and should never cross one's legs. One should observe the vow of Brahmacharyya on the day of the new moon, as also on that of the full moon, as also on the eighth lunar day of both fortnights. One should never eat the flesh of animals not slain in sacrifices. One should never eat the flesh of the back of an animal. One should avoid censuring and caluminating others, as also all kinds of deceitful behaviour.*[28-30] One should never pierce others with wordy shafts. Indeed, one should never utter any cruel speech. One should never accept anything in gift from a person that is low and vulgar. One should never utter such words as trouble other people or as are inauspicious or as are sinful.[31] Wordy shafts fall from the mouth. Pierced therewith, the victim grieves day and night. The man of wisdom should never shoot them for piercing the vitals of other people.[32] A forest, pierced with shafts or cut down with the axe, grows again. The man, however, that is pierced with words unwisely spoken, becomes the victim of wounds that fester and lead to death.†[33] Barbed arrows and *Nālikas* and broad-headed shafts are capable of being extracted from the body. Wordy shafts, however, are incapable of being extracted, for

---

* 'One should always observe the vow of Brahmacharyya' means that one should abstain from sexual congress except with one's wedded wives and in the proper season.—T.

† The Bombay text reads the second line differently. What is meant, the man not growing, is that the wounds inflicted by wordy shafts rankle and fester and lead to death.—T.

they lie embedded in the very heart.[34] One should not taunt a person that is defective of a limb or that has a limb in excess, or one that is destitute of learning, or one that is miserable, or one that is ugly or poor, or one that is destitute of strength.[35] One should avoid atheism, calumniating the Vedas, censuring the deities, malice, pride, arrogance, and harshness.[36] One should not, in wrath, take up the rod of chastisement for laying it upon another. Only the son or the pupil, it has been said, can be mildly chastised for purposes of instruction.[37] One should not speak ill of Brāhmanas; nor should point at the stars with one's fingers. If asked, one should not say what the lunation is on a particular day. By telling it, one's life becomes shortened.[38] Having answered calls of nature or having walked over a road, one should wash one's feet. One should also wash one's feet before sitting to recite the Vedas or to eat any food.[39] These are the three things which are regarded as pure and sacred by the deities and as such fit for the Brāhmana's use, *viz.*, that whose impurity is unknown, that which has been washed in water, and that which has been well spoken of.[40] Samyāva, Kriçara, meat, Cashakuli, and Pāyasa should never be cooked for one's ownself. Whenever cooked, these should be offered to the deities.*[41] One should attend every day to one's fire. One should every day give alms. One should, restraining speech the while, clean one's teeth with the tooth-stick.[42] One should never be in bed when the sun is up. If one fails any day to be up with the Sun, one should then purform an expiation. Rising from bed, one should first salute one's parents,[43] and preceptors, or other seniors deserving of respect. By so doing one attains to long life. The tooth-stick should be cast off when done with, and a new one should be used every day.[44] One should eat only such food as is not forbidden in the scriptures, abstaining from food of every kind on days of the new moon and the

* 'Samyāva' is a thin cake of unleavened bread, fried with ghee, pounded and again made up into an oblong form with fresh bread, sugar and spices, and again fried with ghee. Kriçara is a kind of liquid food made of milk, sesame, rice, sugar, and spices. Cashkuli is a kind of pie. Pāyasa is rice boiled in sugar and milk.—T.

full moon. One should, with senses restrained, answer calls of nature, facing the north.[45] One should not worship the deities without having first washed one's teeth. Without also worshipping the deities first,[46] one should never repair to any person save one's preceptor or one that is old in years or one that is righteous or one that is possessed of wisdom. They that are wise should never see themselves in an unpolished or dirty mirror.[47] One should never have sexual congress with a woman that is unknown or with one that is quick with child.[48] One should never sleep with head turned towards the north or the west. One should not lie down upon a bed-stead that is broken or ricketty.[49] One should not sleep on a bed without having examined it first with the aid of a light. Nor should one sleep on a bed with another (such as wife) by one's side. One should never sleep in a transverse direction. One should never make a compact with atheists or do anything in conjunction with them.*[50] One should never drag a seat with the foot and sit on it. One should never bathe in a state of nudity, nor at night.[51] One possessed of intelligence should never suffer one's limbs to be rubbed or pressed after bathing. One should never smear unguents upon one's body without having first undergone a bath. Having bathed, one should never wave one's cloth in the air (for drying it).[52] One should not wear wet clothes every day. One should never take off one's body the garlands of flowers one may wear. Nor should one wear such garlands over one's outer garments.[53] One should never even talk with a woman during the period of her functional change. One should not answer a call of nature on a field (where crops are grown) or at a place too near an inhabited village.[54] One should never answer a call of nature on a piece water. One should first wash one's mouth thrice with water before eating any food.[55] Having finished one's meals, one should wash one's mouth thrice with water and twice again. One should eat, with face turned castwards, one's food, restraining speech the while and without censuring the food that is eaten.[56] One

* 'Antarddhāne' implies 'in darkness;' hence, one should always examine the bed with a light before one lies down on it.—T.

should always leave a remnant of the food that is placed before one for eating. Having finished one's meals, one should mentally touch fire. If one eats with face turned eastwards, one becomes endued with longevity. By eating with face turned southwards, one acquires great fame.[57] By eating with face turned westwards, one acquires great wealth. By eating with face turned northwards, one becomes truthful in speech. Having finished one's meals, one should wash all the upper holes of one's body with water.*[58] Similarly, all the limbs, the navel, and the palms of the hands should be washed with water. One should never seat oneself upon husk of corn, or upon hair, or upon ashes, or upon bones.[59] One should, on no account, use the water that has been used by another for bathing. One should always perform the Homa for propitiating the deities, and recite the Sāvitri Mantras.[60] One should always eat in a seated posture. One should never eat while walking. One should never answer a call of nature in a standing posture. One should never answer a call of nature on ashes or in a cowpen.[61] One should wash one's feet before sitting to one's meals. One should never sit or lie down for sleep with wet feet. One who sits to one's meals after having washed one's feet, lives for a hundred years.[62] One should never touch these three things of great energy, while one is in an impure state, *viz.*, fire, a cow, and a Brāhmana. By observing this rule, one acquires longevity.[63] One should not, while one is in an impure state, cast one's eyes on these three things of great energy, *viz.*, the sun, the moon, and the stars.[64] The life-breaths of a young man go upwards when an old and venerable person comes to his abode. He gets them back by standing up and properly saluting the guest.[65] Old men should always be saluted. One should, upon seeing them, offer seats with one's own hand. After the old man has taken his seat, the one should seat oneself and remain with hands joined in reverence. When an old man goes along the road, one should always follow him instead of walking ahead.[66] One should never

* 'Prānān,' the Commentator explains, implies the upper holes of the body, such as the nostrils, the ear-holes, and the eyes.—T.

sit on a torn or broken seat. One should, without using it any longer, cast away a broken vessel of white brass. One should never eat without a piece of upper garment wrapping one's body. One should never bathe in a state of nudity.[67] One should never sleep in a state of nudity. One should never even touch the remnants of other people's dishes and plates. One should never, while one is in an impure state, touch another's head, for it is said in the scriptures that the life-breaths are all concentrated in the head.[68] One should never strike another on the head or seize another by the hair. One should not join one's hands together for scratching one's head.[69] One should not, while bathing, repeatedly dip one's head in water. By so doing one shortens one's life. One who has bathed by dipping the head in water should not, afterwards, apply oil to any part of one's body.[70] One should never make a meal without eating some sesame. One should never teach (the Vedas or any scriptures) at a time when one is impure. Nor should one study while one is impure.[71] When a storm rises or a bad odor permeates itself in the atmosphere, one should never think of the Vedas. Persons conversant with ancient history recite a Gāthā sung by Yama in days of old. He that runs while impure or studies the Veda under similar circumstances, indeed, that regenerate Brāhman who studies the Veda at forbidden times, loses his Veda and shortens his life.[72-74] Hence, one should never study the Veda with concentrated attention at forbidden times. They who answer a call of nature, with face towards the sun, or towards a blazing fire, or towards a cow, or towards a regenerate person, or on the road, become short-lived. At day time both calls of nature should be answered with face turned towards the north.[75-76] At night, those calls should be answered facing the south. By so doing one does not shorten one's life. One that wishes to live long should never disregard or insult any of these three, however weak or emaciated they may appear to be, *viz.*, the Brāhmana, the Kshatriya, and the snake. All three are endued with virulent poison. The snake, if angry, burns the victim with only a glance of its eye.[77-78] The Kshatriya also, if angry, burns the object of his wrath, as soon as he sees him,

with his energy. The Brāhmana, stronger than any of these two, destroys not only the object of his wrath but his whole race as well, not by vision alone but by thought also.*[79] The man of wisdom should, therefore, tend these three with care. One should never engage in any disputation with one's preceptor.[80] O Yudhishthira, if the preceptor becomes angry, he should always be pacified by due honors being paid to him. Even if the preceptor happens to be entirely wrong, one should still follow and honor him.[81] Without doubt, calumnious sayings against the preceptor always consume the lives of those that utter them. One should always answer a call of nature at a spot far removed from one's habitation. One should wash one's feet at a distance from one's habitation.[82] One should always throw the remnants of one's dishes and plates at a spot far removed from one's habitation. Verily, he who desires his own good should do all this. One should not wear garlands of red flowers. Indeed, they who are possessed of wisdom should wear garlands of flowers that are white in hue.[83] Rejecting the lotus and the lily, O thou of great might, one may bear on one's head, however, a flower that is red, even if it be an aquatic one.†[84] A garland of gold can under no circumstances become impure. After one has bathed, O king, one should use perfumes mixed with water.‡[85] One should never wear one's upper garment for covering the lower limbs or the lower garments for covering the upper ones. Nor should one wear clothes worn by another. One should not, again, wear a piece of cloth that has not its lateral fringes.$[86] When one goes to bed, O king, one should wear a different piece of cloth. When

* The Brāhmana is more powerful than the other two, for while the other two cannot injure except when they have their foe within sight, the Brāhman can do so even by not seeing his enemy.—T.

† The custom in India, with especially all orthodux Brāhmanas, is to wear a single flower on the head, inserted into the coronal lock. This flower may be a red one, it is said, after the prohibition in the previous Verse about the wearing of garlands made of red flowers.—T.

‡ What is stated here is that dry perfumes should not be used, but those which are pounded with water and made into a paste.—T.

$ The cloth worn by a Hindu has two lateral fringes which contain a lesser number of threads than the body of the cloth.—T.

making a journey along a road, one should wear a different piece of cloth. So also, when worshipping the deities, one should wear a different piece of cloth.*[87] The man of intelligence should smear his limbs with unguents made of Priyangu, sandal wood, Vilwa, Tagara, and Keçara.†[88] In observing a fast, one should purify oneself by a bath, and adorn one's person with ornaments and unguents. One should always abstain from sexual congress on days of the full moon and the new moon.[89] One should never, O monarch, eat off the same plate with another even if that other happens to be of one's own or equal rank. Nor should one ever eat any food that has been prepared by a woman in her functional period.[90] One should never eat any food or drink any liquid whose essence has been taken off. Nor should one eat anything without giving a portion thereof to persons that wishfully gaze at the food that one happens to take. The man of intelligence should never sit close to one that is impure. Nor should one sit close to persons that are foremost in righteousness.‡[91] All food that is forbidden in religious acts should never be taken even on other occasions. The fruits of the Ficus religiosa and the Ficus Bengalensis as also the leaves of the Crotolaria Juncea,[92] and the fruits of the Ficus glomerata, should never be eaten by one who is desirous of his own good. The flesh of goats, of kine, and the peacock, should never be eaten.[93] One should also abstain from dried flesh and all flesh that is stale. The man of intelligence should never eat any salt, taking it up with his hand. Nor should be eat curds and flour of fried barley at night. One should abstain also from flesh of animals not slain in sacrifices. One should, with concentrated attention, eat once on the morning and once in the evening, abs-

---

* It has been said that Hinduism is a vast system of personal hygiene. These directions about change of attire are scruperlously observed by every rigid Hindu to this day. No change seems to have taken place in the daily habits of the people.—T.

† 'Priyangu' is the Aglaia Roxburghiana. 'Vilwa' is the Ægle marmelos. 'Tagara' is the Tabernæmontana coronaria, Linn. 'Keçara' is probably the Eclipta alba, Hassk.—T.'

‡ 'Nā' is the nom, sing, of 'Nri,' implying 'man.'—T.

taining entirely from all food during the interval.[94-95] One should never eat any food in which one may detect a hair. Nor should one eat at the Crāddha of an enemy. One should eat silently ; one should never eat without covering one's person with an upper garment, and without sitting down.*[96] One should never eat any food placing it on the bare ground. One should never eat except in a sitting posture. One should never make any noise while eating.† The man of intelligence should first offer water and then food to one that has become his guest, and after having served the guest thus, should then sit to his meals himself. He who sits down to dinner in a line with friends and himself eats any food without giving thereof to his friends, is said to eat virulent poison. As regards water and Pāyasa and flour of fried barley and curds and ghee and honey,[97-99] one should never, after drinking or eating these, offer the remnants thereof to others. One should never, O chief of men, eat any food doubtingly.‡[100] One desirous of good should never drink curds at the conclusion of a meal. After the meal is finished, one should wash one's mouth and face with the (right) hand only, and taking a little water should then dip the toe of the right foot in it.[101] After washing, one should touch the crown of one's head with the (right) hand. With concentrated attention, one should next touch fire.[102] The man who knows how to observe all these ordinances with care, succeeds in attaining to the foremost place among his kinsmen. One should, after finishing one's meals, wash one's nose and eyes and ears and navel and both hands with water.[103] One should not, however, keep one's hands wet. Between the tip and the root of the thumb is situate the sacred Tirtha known by the name of Brahma.[104] On the back of the little finger, it is said, is situate the Deva-tirtha.

---

* One of the Vernacular translators takes 'vālena' as signifying 'child' and 'para-çrāddha' as meaning the first or 'ādya çrāddha'.—T.

† This noise refers to that of chewing or sucking or licking, &c. It is an ugly habit with some people.—T.

‡ Doubting, for example, as to whether he would be able to digest it or not, or whether what he is taking is clean or not, or whether it would be too much for him.—T.

The intervening space between the thumb and the forefinger, O Bhārata,[105] should be used for discharging the Pitri rites, after touching water according to the ordinance.* One should never indulge in other people's calumny. Nor should one ever utter anything that is disagreeable.[106] The man that desires his own good should never seek to provoke against himself the wrath of others. One should never seek to converse with a person that has fallen away from his order. The very sight of such a person should be avoided.[107] One should never come in contact with a fallen person. By avoiding such contact one succeeds in attaining to long life. One should never indulge in sexual congress at day time. Nor should one have congress with a maiden, nor with a harlot nor with a barren woman.[108] One should never have congress with a woman that has not bathed after the expiry of her functional period. By avoiding such acts one succeeds in attaining to a long life. After washing the several limbs directed, in view of religious acts,[109] one should wash one's lips thrice, and once more twice. By doing this, one becomes purified and fit for religious acts. The several organs of sense should each be washed once, and water should also be sprinkled over the whole body.[110] Having done this, one should go through the worship of the Pitris and the deities, agreeably to the ordinances of the Vedas. Listen to me, O thou of Kuru's race, as I tell thee what purification[111] is cleansing and beneficial for a Brāhmana. Before beginning to eat and after finishing the meal, and in all acts requiring purification, the Brāhmana should perform the *āchamana* with water placed on the limb called the Brahma-tirtha.†[112] After ejecting any matter from the throat or spitting, one should wash one's mouth before one can become pure.

---

* In offering certain articles at the Crāddha, the articles are first placed on this part of the right hand and then offered with due Mantras to the Pitris.—T.

† The āchamana is not exactly washing. When one is directed to perform the āchamana after having eaten, there it, of course, implies an act of washing. At the commencement, however, of religious acts, the rite of āchamana consists in merely touching the lips and some other parts with water.—T.

A kinsman who happens to be old, or a friend who happens to be poor,[113] should be established in one's house and his comforts looked after as if he were a member of the family. By doing this, one succeeds in acquiring both fame and long life. The establishment of pigeons in one's house is fraught with blessedness, as also of parrots both male and female.[114] If these take to one's abode, they succeed in dispelling calamity. The same is the case with cockroaches. If fire-flies and vultures and wood-pigeons and bees[115] enter a house or seek residence in it, acts of propriating the deities should be performed. These are creatures of evil omen, as also ospreys.[116] One should never divulge the secrets of high-souled men ; one should never have sexual congress with a forbidden woman. Nor should one ever have such congress with the spouse of a king or with women that are the friends of queens.[117] One should never cultivate intimacy with physicians, or with children, or with persons that are old, or with one's servants, O Yudhishthira. One should always provide for friends, for Brāhmanas, and for such as seek one's protection. By doing this, O king, one acquires a long life. The man of wisdom should reside in such a house as has been constructed with the aid of a Brāhmana and an engineer skilled in his profession, if, indeed, O king, he desires his own good.* One should not, O king, sleep at the evening twilight. Nor should one study at such an hour for acquiring any branch of knowledge.[118-120] The man of intelligence should never eat also at such an hour. By acting in this way one acquires a long life. One should never perform any act in honor of the Pitris at night time. One should not deck one's person after finishing one's meals.[121] One should not bathe at night, if one desires one's own advancement. One should also, O Bhārata, always abstain from the flour of fried barley at night.[122] The remnants of food and drink, as also the flowers with which one has worshipped the deities, should never be used. Inviting a guest at night, one should never, with exces-

* The Brāhmana's aid is necessary in selecting the ground, and settling the longitudinal and other directions of the housa, as also in fixing the day of commencing the work of bnilding.—T.

sive courtesy, force him to eat to the point of gratification. Nor should one eat oneself to the point of gratification, at night.[123] One should not slay a bird (for eating it), especially after having fed it.* One possessed of wisdom should wed a maiden born in a high family, endued with auspicious indications, and of full age. Begetting children upon her and thus perpetuating one's race by that means,[124-125] one should make over one's sons to a good preceptor for acquiring general knowledge, O Bhārata, as also a knowledge of the especial customs of the family, O monarch. The daughters that one may beget should be bestowed upon youths of respectable families, that are again possessed of intelligence.[126] Sons should also be established and a portion of the family inheritance given to them, O Bhārata, as their provision. One should bathe by dipping one's head in water before one sits down to perform any act in honor of the Pitris or the deities.[127] One should never perform a Crāddha under the constellation of one's nativity. No Crāddha should be performed under any of the Bhādrapadas (prior or later), nor under the constellation Krittikā, O Bhārata.[128] The Crāddha should never be performed under any of those constellations that are regarded as fierce (such as Açleshā, &c.) and any of those that, upon calculation, seem to be hostile. Indeed, in this respect, all these constellations should be avoided which are forbidden in treatises on astrology.[129] One should sit oneself facing either the east or the north while undergoing a shave at the hands of the barber. By so doing, O great king, one succeeds in acquiring a long life.[130] One should never indulge in other people's calumny or self-reproach, for, O chief of the Bharatas, it is said that calumny is sinful,

---

* I adopt the meaning which Nilakantha points out. According to him, this Verse forbids the killing of birds at night time and their killing after having fed and adopted them. Indeed, one may buy such birds killed by others for food. The word 'Dwija,' however, may mean both hair and nails. The first part of the line, therefore, may be taken as a prohibition against the cutting of hair and nails after eating. The words 'na samāchareta,' in that case, would be difficult to interpret. Probably, it is this that has led the Commentator to take 'Dwija' here for a bird. Some texts read 'pānam' for 'na cha.'—T.

whether of others or of oneself.[131] In wedding, one should avoid a woman that is deficient of any limb. A maiden too, if such, should also be avoided. A woman of the same Pravaras should also be avoided ; as also one that has any malformation ; as also one that has been born in the race to which one's mother belongs.*[132] One possessed of wisdom should never have sexual congress with a woman that is old, or one that has abandoned the domestic mode of life for entering the forest mode, or one that is true to her lord, or one whose organs of generation are not healthy or well-formed.†[133] It behooveth thee not to wed a woman that is of a yellow complexion, or one that is afflicted with leprosy, or one born in a family in which there has been epilepsy, or one that is low in birth and habits,[134] or one that is born in a family in which the disease called Cwitri (leprosy) has appeared, or one belonging by birth to a race in which there are early deaths. Only that maiden who is endued with auspicious indications, and who is accomplished for qualifications of diverse kinds,[135] who is agreeable and handsome, should be wedded. One should wed, O Yudhishthira, in a family that is higher or at least equal to one's own.[136] One who is desirous of one's own prosperity, should never wed a woman that is of an inferior order or that has fallen away from the order of her birth. Carefully igniting the fire, one should accomplish all those acts which have been ordained and declared in the Vedas or by the Brāhmanas.‡ One should never seek to injure women. Spouses should always be protected.[137-138] Malice always shortens life. Hence, one should always abstain from cherishing malice. Sleep at day time shortens life. To sleep after the sun has risen shortens life.[139] They who sleep at any of the twilights, or at nightfall or who go to sleep in a state of impurity, have their lives shortened. Adultery always shortens life. One should not

---

* Pravaras indicate the race in which one is born. They are named from the names of the Vedic Rishis.—T.

† The Commentator explains that 'ayonim' implies 'of unknown birth,' and 'viyonim' 'of mean birth.'—T.

‡ 'Brāhmanih' here refers to the rituals in the Vedas and not persons of the first order.—T.

remain in a state of impurity after shaving.*[140] One should, O Bhārata, carefully abstain from studying or reciting the Vedas, and eating, and bathing, at eventide.[141] When the evening twilight comes, one should collect one's senses for meditation, without doing any act. One should, O king, bathe and then worship the Brāhmanas.[142] Indeed, one should bathe before worshipping the deities and reverentially saluting the preceptor. One should never go to a sacrifice unless invited. Indeed, one may go there without an invitation if one wishes to only see how the sacrifice is conducted. If one goes to a sacrifice (for any other purpose) without an invitation and if one does not, on that account, receive proper worship from the sacrificer, one's life becomes shortened. One should never go alone on a journey to foreign parts. Nor should one ever proceed alone to any place at night.[143-144] Before evening comes, one should come back to one's house and remain within it. One should always obey the commands of one's mother and father and preceptor,[145] without at all judging whether those commands are beneficial or otherwise. One should, O king, attend with great care to the Vedas and the science of arms.[146] Do then, O king, carefully attend to the practice of riding an elephant, a steed, and a war-chariot. The man who attends to these with care succeeds in attaining to happiness.[147] Such a king succeeds in becoming unconquerable by foes, and sway his servants and kinsmen without any of them being able to get the better of him. The king that attains to such a position and that carefully attends to the duty of protecting his subjects, has never to incur any loss.[148] Thou shouldst acquire, O king, the science of reasoning, as also the science of words, the science of the Gandharvas, and the four and sixty branches of knowledge known by the name of Kalā.[149] One should every day bear the Purānas and the Itihāsas and all the other narratives that exist, as also the life-stories of all high-souled personages.[150] When one's spouse passes through her functional period, one should never have congress with her, nor

* The fact is, one is directed to bathe after a shave. One is considered impure after a shave until one bathes.—T.

even summon her for conversation. The man endued with wisdom may accept her companionship on the fourth day after the bath of purification.[151] If one indulges in congress on the fifth day from the first appearance of the functional operation, one gets a daughter. By indulging in congress on the sixth day, one happens to have a son. The man of wisdom should, in the matter of congress, attend to this rule (about odd and even days).[152] Kinsmen and relatives by marriage and friends should all be treated with respect. One should, according to the best of one's power, adore the deities in sacrifices, giving away diverse kinds of articles as sacrificial Dakshinā.[153] After the period ordained for the domestic mode of life has been passed, one should, O king, enter the life of a forest-recluse. I have thus told thee all the indications, in brief of persons who succeed in living long.*[154] What remains untold by me should be heard by thee from the mouths of persons well-versed in the three Vedas, O Yudhishthira. Thou shouldst know that conduct is the root of prosperity. Conduct is the enhancer of fame.[155] It is conduct that prolongs life. It is conduct that destroys all calamities and evils. Conduct has been said to be superior to all the branches of knowledge.[156] It is conduct that begets righteousness, and it is righteousness that prolongs life. Conduct is productive of fame, of long life, and of Heaven. Conduct is the most efficacious rite of propiating the deities (for bringing about auspiciousness of every kind). The Self-born Brahman himself has said that one should show compassion unto all orders of men.†' "[157]

Section CV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O chief of Bharata's race, how the eldest brother should behave towards his younger

---

* 'Uddeça' means, as the Commentator, explains, 'in brief.'—T.

† The word rendered 'conduct' in the concluding Verses of this lesson is 'āchārāh.' It implies not only one's behaviour to one's own self and others, *i. e.*, to beings inferior, equal, and superior. The word 'āchārah,' therefore, includes the entire body of acts that one does in this life, including the very sentiments that one cherishes.—T.

brothers, and how the younger brother should behave towards their eldest brother !'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Do thou, O son, always behave towards thy younger brothers as their eldest brother should. Thou art always the eldest of all these thy brothers. That high conduct which the preceptor should always adopt towards his disciples should be adopted by thee towards thy younger brothers ![2] If the preceptor happens to be unendued with wisdom, the disciple cannot possibly behave towards him in a respectful or proper way. If the preceptor happens to be possessed of purity and highness of conduct, the disciple also succeeds to attaining to conduct of the same kind, O Bhārata.[3] The eldest brother should at times be blind to the acts of his younger brothers, and though possessed of wisdom should at times act as if he does not understand their acts. If the younger brothers be guilty of any transgression, the eldest brother should correct them by indirect ways and means.[4] If there be good understanding among brothers and if the eldest brother seeks to correct his younger brothers by direct or ostensible means, persons that are enemies, O son of Kunti, that are afflicted with sorrow at the sight of such good understanding and who, therefore, always seek to bring about a disunion, set themselves to disunite the brothers and cause dissension among them.[5] It is the eldest brother that enhances the prosperity of the family or destroys it entirely. If the eldest brother happens to be unendued with sense and wicked in behaviour, he brings about the destruction of the whole family.[6] That eldest brother who injures his younger brothers ceases to be regarded as the eldest and forfeits his share in the family property and deserves to be checked by the king.[7] That man who acts deceitfully, has, without doubt, to go to regions of grief and every kind of evil. The birth of such a person serves no useful purpose even as the flowers of the cane.*[8] That family in which a sinful person takes birth becomes subject to every evil. Such a person bring about infamy, and all the good acts of the

* The flowers of the cane cannot be plucked for being offered to the deities.—T.

family disappear.[9] Such among the brothers as are wedded to evil acts forfeit their shares of the family property. In such a case, the eldest brother may appropriate the whole Yautuka property without giving any portion thereof to his younger brothers.[10] If the eldest brother makes any acquisition, without using the paternal property and by going to a distant place he may appropriate for his own use, such acquisitions, without giving any share thereof to his younger brothers.[11] If unseparated brothers desire (during the lifetime of their father) to partition the family property, the father should give equal shares unto all his sons.[12] If the eldest brother happens to be of sinful acts and undistinguished by accomplishments of any kind, he may be desregarded by his young brothers. If the wife or the younger brother happens to be sinful, her or his good must still be looked after.[13] Persons conversant with the efficacy of righteousness say that righteousness is the highest good. The Upādhyāya is superior to even ten Āchāryyas. The sire is equal to ten Upādhyāyas.[14] The mother is equal to ten sires or even the whole Earth. There is no senior equal to the mother. Verily, she transcends all in respect of the reverence due to her.*[15] It is for this reason that people regard the mother to deserve so much reverence. After the father has ceased to breathe, O Bhārata, the eldest brother should be regarded as the father.[16] It is the eldest brother who should assign unto them their means of support and protect and cherish them. All the younger brothers should bow to him and obey his authority.[17] Indeed, they should live in dependence upon him, even as they did upon their father while was alive. So far as the body is concerned, O Bhārata, it is the father and the mother that creates it.[18] That birth, however, which the Āchāryya ordains, is regarded as the true birth that is, besides, really unfading and immortal. The eldest sister, O chief of

* An 'Achāryya' is an ordinary instructor. He is called an 'Upādhyāya' who teaches the Vedas. The Upādhyāya is greater than even ten Achāryyas or ordinary teachers. The father, again, deserves ten times as much respect as is paid to the Upādhyaya. As regards the mother, again, the reverence due to her is greater than what is due to the father. The mother is equal to the whole Earth.—T.

Bharata's race, is like unto the mother. The wife of the eldest brother also is like the mother, for the younger brother, in infancy, receives sack from her.*' "[19]

SECTION CVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'The disposition is seen, O grandsire, in all the orders of men, including the very Mlechcchas, of observing fasts. The reason, however, of this not known to us.[1] It has been heard by us that only Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas should observe the vow of fasts. How, O grandsire, are the other orders to be taken as earning any merit by the observance of fasts?[2] How have vows and fasts come to be observed by persons of all orders, O king? What is that end to which one devoted to the observance of fasts attains?[3] It has been said that fasts are highly meritorious and that fasts are a great refuge. O prince of men, what is the fruit that is earned in this world by the man that observes fasts?[4] By what means is one cleansed of one's sins? By what means doth one acquire righteousness? By what means, O best of the Bharatas, doth one succeed in acquiring Heaven and merit?[5] After having observed a fast, what should one give away, O king? O tell me, what those duties are by which one may succeed in obtaining such objects as lead to happiness?' "[6]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—'Unto Kunti's son by the deity of Dharma, who was conversant with every duty and who

---

* Many of the Verses of this Lesson are from Manu. The relative positions of the Achāryya, the Upādhyāya, the father, and the mother, as given in Verse 15, is not consistent with Manu. Verse 15 would show that the Upādhyāya was regarded as very much superior to the Achāryya. In Manu, II—140-41, he is called an Achāryya who taught all the Vedas, without any remuneration. He, on the other hand, who taught a particular Veda for a living, was called an Upādhāya. The first line of Verse 19 corresponds with Manu II—148. The sense is that that birth which one derives from one's parents is subject to death; while the birth derived from the preceptor is true regeneration, unfading and immortal. It is a question whether any other nation paid such respect to persons employed in teaching.—T.

said so unto him, Cāntanu's son, Bhishma, who was acquainted with every duty answered in the following words.[7]

"Bhishma said,—'In former days, O king, I heard of these high merits, O chief of Bharata's race, as attaching to the observance of fasts according to the ordinance![8] I had, O Bhārata, asked the Rishi Angiras of high ascetic merit, the very same questions which thou hast asked me today.[9] Questioned by me thus, the illustrious Rishi, who sprang from the sacrificial fire, answered me even thus in respect of the observance of fasts according to the ordinance.[10]

"'Angiras said,—As regards Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas, fasts for three nights at a stretch are ordained for them, O delighter of the Kurus. Indeed, O chief of men, a fast for one night, for two nights, and for three nights, may be observed by them. (They should never go beyond three nights).[11] As regards Vaiçyas and Cudras, the duration of fasts prescribed for them is a single night. If, from folly, they observe fasts for two or three nights, such fasts never lead to their advancement.[12] Indeed, for Vaiçyas and Cudras, fasts for two nights have been ordained (on certain special occasions). Fasts for three nights, however, have not been laid down for them by persons conversant with and observant of duties.[13] That man of wisdom who, with his senses and soul under control, O Bhārata, fasts, by abstaining from one of the two meals, on the fifth and the sixth days of the moon as also on the day of the full moon, becomes endued with forgiveness and beauty of person and conversance with the scriptures. Such a person never becomes childless and poor.[14-15] He who performs sacrifices for adoring the deities on the fifth and the sixth days of the moon, transcends all the members of his family and succeeds in feeding a large number of Brāhmanas. He who observes fasts on the eighth and the fourteenth days of the dark fortnight, becomes freed from maladies of every kind and possessed of great energy. The man who abstains from one meal every day throughout the month called Mārgaçirsha,[16-17] should, with reverence and devotion, feed a number of Brāhmanas. By so doing he becomes freed from all his sins. Such a man becomes endued with prosperity, and all kinds

of grain become his.[18] He becomes endued with energy. In fact, such a person reaps an abundance of harvest from his fields, acquires great wealth and much corn.[19] That man, O son of Kunti, who passes the whole month of Pausha, abstaining every day from one of two meals, becomes endued with good fortune and agreeable features and great fame.[20] He who passes the whole month of Māgha, abstaining every day from one of the two meals, takes birth in a high family and attains to a position of eminence among his kinsmen.[21] He who passes the whole month of Bhagadaivata, confining himself every day to only one meal, becomes a favourite with women who, indeed, readily own his sway.[22] He who passes the whole of the month of Chaitra, confining himself every day to one meal, takes birth in a high family and becomes rich in gold, gems, and pearls.[23] The person, whether male or female, who passes the month of Vaiçākha, confining himself or herself every day to one meal, and keeping his or her senses under control, succeeds in attaining to a position of eminence among kinsmen.[24] The person who passes the month of Jaishthya confining himself every day to one meal a day, succeeds in attaining to a position of eminence and great wealth. If a woman, she reaps the same reward.[25] He who passes the month of Ashāda, confining himself to one meal a day and with senses steadily concentrated upon his duties, becomes possessed of much corn, great wealth, and a large progeny.[26] He who passes the month of Crāvana, confining himself to one meal a day, receives the honors of Abhisheka wherever he may happen to reside, and attains to a position of eminence among kinsmen whom he supports.[27] That man who confines himself to only one meal a day for the whole month of Proshthapada, becomes endued with great wealth and attains to swelling and durable affluence.[28] The man who passes the month of Āçwin, confining himself to one meal a day, becomes pure in soul and body, possessed of animals and vehicles in abundance, and a large progeny.[29] He who passes the month of Kārtika, confining himself to one meal every day, becomes possessed of heroism, many spouses, and great fame.[30] I have now told thee, O chief of men, what the fruits are that are obtained

by men by observing fasts for the two and ten months in detail. Listen now, O king, to me as I tell thee what the rules are in respect of each of the lunar days.[31] The man who, abstaining from it every day, takes rice at the expiration of every fortnight, becomes possessed of a great many kine, a large progeny, and a long life.[32] He who observes a fast for three nights every month and conducts himself thus for two and ten years, attains to a position of supremacy among his kinsmen and associates, without a rival to contest his claim and without any anxiety caused by any one endeavouring to rise to the same height.[33] These rules that I speak of, O chief of Bharata's race should be observed for two and ten years. Let thy inclination be manifested towards it.[34] That man who eats once in the forenoon and once after evening and abstains from drinking (or eating anything) at the interval, and who observes compassion towards all creatures and pours libations of clarified butter on his sacred fire every day,[35] attains to success, O king, in six years. There is no doubt in this. Such a man earns the merit that attaches to the performance of the Agnishtoma sacrifice.[36] Endued with merit and freed from every kind of stain, he attains to the region of the Apsaras that echo with the sound of songs and dance, and passes his days in the company of a thousand damsels of great beauty.[37] He rides on a car of the complexion of melted gold and receives high honors in the region of Brahma.[38] After the exhaustion of that merit such a person comes back to Earth and attains to pre eminence of position. That man who passes one whole year, confining himself every day to only one meal,[39] attains to the merit of the Atirātra sacrifice. He ascends to Heaven after death and receives great honors there.[40] Upon the exhaustion of that merit he returns to the Earth and attains to a position of eminence. He who passes one whole year observing fasts for three days in succession and taking food on every fourth day,[41] and abstaining from injury from every kind adheres to truthfulness of speech and keeps his senses under control, attains to the merit of the Vājapeya sacrifice.[42] Such a person ascends to Heaven after death and receives high honors there. That man, O son of Kunti, who

passes a whole year observing fasts for five days and taking food on only the sixth day,[43] acquires the merit of the Horse-sacrifice. The chariot he rides is drawn by Chakravākas.[44] Such a man enjoys every kind of happiness in Heaven for full forty thousand years. He who passes a whole year observing fasts for seven days and taking food on only every eighth day,[45] acquires the merit of the Gavāmaya sacrifice. The chariot he rides is drawn by swans and cranes.[46] Such a person enjoys all kinds of happiness in Heaven for fifty thousand years. He who passes a whole year, O king, eating only at intervals of a fortnight,[47] acquires the merit of a continuous fast for six months. This has been said by the illustrious Angiras himself. Such a man dwells in Heaven for sixty thousand years.[48] He is roused every morning from his bed by the sweet notes of Vinās and Vallakis and flutes, O king.[49] He who passes a whole year, drinking only a little water at the expiration of every month, acquires, O monarch, the merit of the Viçwajit sacrifice.[50] Such a man rides a chariot drawn by lions and tigers. He dwells in Heaven for seventy thousand years in the enjoyment of every kind of happiness.[51] No fast for more than a month, O chief of men, has been ordained. Even this, O son of Prithā, is the ordinance in respect of fasts that has been declared by sages conversant with duties.[52] That man who, unafflicted by disease and free from every malady, observes a fast, verily acquires, at every step the merits that attach to Sacrifices.[53] Such a man ascends to Heaven on a car drawn by swans. Endued with puissance, he enjoys every kind of happiness in Heaven for a hundred years.[54] A hundred Apsaras of the most beautiful features wait upon and sport with him.[55] He is roused from his bed every morning by the sound of the Kānchis and the Nupuras of those damsels.*[56] Such a person rides on a car drawn by a thousand swans. Dwelling, again, in a region teeming with hundreds of the

* 'Kānchi' is an ornament worn by ladies round the waist or hips. There is a shining disc, of gold or silver, which dangles on the hip. It is commonly called 'Chandra-hāra.' The 'Nupura' is an anklet of silver, with moving bullets placed within, so that when the wearer moves, these make an agreeable noise.—T.

most beautiful damsels, he passes his time in great joy.[57] The person who is desirous of Heaven does not like the accession of strength when he becomes weak, or the cure of wounds when he is wounded, or the administration of healing drugs when he is ill, or soothings by others when he is angry, or the mitigation, by the expenditure of wealth, of sorrows caused by poverty.[58-59] Leaving this world where he suffers only privations of every kind, he proceeds to Heaven and rides on cars adorned with gold, his person embellished with ornaments of every kind. There, in the midst of hundreds of beautiful damsels, he enjoys all kinds of pleasures and happiness, cleansed of every sin.[60] Indeed, abstaining from food and enjoyments in this world, he takes leave of this body and ascends to Heaven as the fruit of his penances. There, freed from all his sins, health and happiness becomes his, and whatever wishes arise in his mind become crowned with fruition.[61] Such a person rides on a celestial car of golden complexion, of the effulgence of the morning sun, set with pearls and *lapis lazuli*, resounding with the music of Vinās and Murajas, adorned with banners and lamps, and echoing with the tinkle of celestial bells.[62-63] Such a person enjoys all kinds of happiness in Heaven for as many years as there are pores in his body.[64] There is no Cāstra superior to the Veda. There is no person more worthy of reverence than the mother. There is no acquisition superior to that of Righteousness, and no penance superior to fast.[65] There is nothing, more sacred, in Heaven or Earth, than Brāhmanas. After the same manner there is no penance that is superior to the observance of fasts.[66] It was by fasts that the deities have succeeded in becoming denizens of Heaven. It is by fasts that the Rishis have attained to high success.[67] Viçwāmitra passed a thousand celestial years, confining himself every day to only one meal, and as the consequence thereof attained to the status of a Brāhmana.[68] Chyavana and Jamadagni and Vaçishtha and Gautama and Bhrigu,—all these great Rishis endued with the virtue of forgiveness—have attained to Heaven through observance of fasts.[69] In former days Angiras declared so unto the great Rishis. The man who teaches another the merit of fasts has never to suffer any kind

of misery.[70] The ordinances about fasts, in their due order, O son of Kunti, have flowed from the great Rishi Angiras. The man who daily reads these ordinances or hears them read, becomes freed from sins of every kind.[71] Not only is such a person freed from every calamity, but his mind becomes incapable of being touched by any kind of fault. Such a person succeeds in understanding the sounds of all creatures other than human, and acquiring eternal fame, becomes the foremost of his species.'"[72]

SECTION CVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O high-souled grandsire, thou hast duly discoursed to us on the subject of Sacrifices, including the merits in detail that attach to them both here and hereafter.[1] It should be remembered, however, O grandsire, that Sacrifices are incapable of being performed by people that are poor, for these require a large store of diverse kinds of articles.[2] Indeed, O grandsire, the merit attaching to Sacrifices can be acquired by only kings and princes. That merit is incapable of being acquired by those that are destitute of wealth and divested of ability and that live alone and are helpless.[3] Do thou tell us, O grandsire, what the ordinances are in respect of those acts that are fraught with merit equal to what attaches to Sacrifices and which, therefore, are capable of being performed by persons destitute of means!'*[4]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O Yudhishthira! Those ordinances that I have told thee of,—those, *viz.*, that were first promulgated by the great Rishi Angirasa, and that have reference to meritorious fasts for their soul,—are regarded as equal to Sacrifices (in respect of the fruits they bring about both here and hereafter).[5] That man who takes one meal in the forenoon and one at night, without taking any food or drink during the interval, and who observes this regulation for a period of six years in succession, abstaining all the while from

---

* In Verse 3, 'Avagrna' means 'Nirguna'; 'Ekātma' means alone; and 'asamhata' implies without associates, *i. e.*, helpless.—T.

injuring any creature and regularly pouring libations on his sacred fire every day, attains, without doubt, to success. Such a man acquires hereafter a car of the complexion of heated gold,[6-7] and attains to a residence, for millions of years, in the region of Prajāpati, in the company of celestial damsels, that ever echoes with the sound of music and dance, and blazes with the effulgence of fire.[8] He who passes three years, confining himself every day to one meal and abstaining all the while from congress with any other woman save his own wedded wife, attains to the merit of the Agnishtoma sacrifice.[9] Such a man is regarded as having performed a Sacrifice, with plenty of gifts in gold, that is dear to Vāsava himself. By practising truthfulness of speech, making gifts, reverencing the Brāhmanas, avoiding malice,[10] becoming forgiving and self-restrained, and conquering wrath, a man attains to the highest end. Riding on a car of the complexion of white clouds that is drawn by swans, he lives, for millions and millions of years, in the company of Apsaras. Fasting for a whole day and eating only one meal on the second day,[11-12] he who pours libations upon his sacred fire for the period of a whole year,—verily, he who observes such a fast and attends every day to his fire and rises every day from bed before sunrise,[13] attains to the merit of the Agnishtoma sacrifice. Such a man acquires a car drawn by swans and cranes.[14] Surrounded by the most beautiful damsels, he resides in the region of Indra. That man who eats only one meal every third day,[15] and pours libations every day on his sacred fire for a period of a whole year,—indeed, he who thus attends to his fire every day and wakes up from sleep every morning before the sun is up,[16] attains to the high merit of the Atirātra sacrifice. He acquires a car drawn by peacocks and swans and cranes.[17] Proceeding to the region of the seven (celestial) Rishis, he takes up his residence there, surrounded by Apsarās of great beauty. It is well known that such residence lasts for full three Padmas of years.*[18] Fasting

* A 'Padma' is a very large number. Instead of rendering such words exactly, I have, in some of the preceding Verses, following the sense, put down 'millions upon millions of years.'—T.

for three days in succession, he who takes only one meal every fourth day, and pours libations every day on his sacred fire,[19] acquires the high merit of the Vājapeya sacrifice. The car he acquires is graced by celestial damsels of great beauty that have Indra for their father.[20] He resides in the region of Indra for millions and millions of years, and experiences great happiness by witnessing the sports of the chief of the deities.[21] Fasting for four days in succession, he who eats only one meal every fifth day, and pours libations on the sacred fire every day for the period of a whole year,[22] and who lives without cupidity, telling the truth. reverencing the Brāhmanas, abstaining from every kind of injury, and avoiding malice and sin, acquires the merit of the Vājapeya sacrifice.[23] The car he rides is made of gold and drawn by swans and endued with the effulgence of many suns rising together. He acquires, besides, a palatial mansion of pure white.[24] He lives there in great happiness for full one and fifty Padmas of years.*[25] Fasting for five days, he who takes food on only the sixth day, and pours libations on his sacred fire every day for a whole year,[26] and who performs three ablutions in course of the day for purifying himself and saying his prayers and doing his worship, and who leads a life of Brahmacharyya, divested of malice in his conduct, acquires the merit of the Gomedha sacrifice.[27] He acquires an excellent car adorned with pure gold, possessed of the effulgence of a blazing fire and drawn by swans and peacocks.[28] He sleeps on the lap of Apsarās and is awakened every morning by the melodious tinkle of Nupuras and Kānchis.[29] He leads such a life of happiness for ten thousand millions of years and three thousand millions besides and eight and ten Padmas and two Patākas.†[30] Such a man resides also, honored by all, in the region of Brahma for as many years as there are hairs on the bodies of five thousand

---

* 'Avartanāni' means years. Four and twelve make sixteen. 'Cara' is arrow. The arrows are five in number as possessed by Kāma, the deity of love. The number of fires also is seven. The compound 'çarāgniparimana,' therefore, implies five and thirty. Adding this to sixteen, the total comes up to one and fifty.—T.

† A countless number almost.—T.

bears.[31] Fasting for six days, he who eats only one meal every seventh day and pours libations on the sacred fire every day, for a full year,[32] restraining speech all the while and observing the vow of Brahmacharyya, and abstaining from the use of flowers and unguents and honey and meat,[33] attains to the region of the Maruts and of Indra. Crowned with the fruition of every desire as it springs up in the mind, he is waited upon and adored by celestial damsels.[34] He acquires the merits of a sacrifice in which abundance of gold is given away. Proceeding to the regions named, he lives there for countless years in the greatest happiness.*[35] He who shows forgiveness to all and fasting for seven days eats on every eighth day for a whole year, and, pouring libations every day on the sacred fire, adores the deities regularly,[36] acquires the high merits of the Paundarika sacrifice. The car he rides is of complexion like that of the lotus.[37] Without doubt, such a man acquires also a large number of damsels, possessed of youth and beauty, some having complexions that are dark, some with complexions like that of gold, and some that are Cyāmās, whose looks and attitudes are of the most agreeable kind.†[38] He who fasts for eight days and takes only one meal on every ninth day for a whole year, and pours libations on the sacred fire every day,[39] acquires the high merits of a thousand Horse-sacrifices. The car he rides in Heaven is as beautiful as a lotus.[40] He always makes his journeys on that car, accompanied by the daughters of Rudra adorned with celestial garlands and endued with the effulgence of the midday sun or of fires of blazing flames.[41] Attaining to the regions of Rudra, he lives there in great happiness for countless years.[42] He who fasts for nine days and takes only one meal every tenth day for a whole year, and pours libations on his sacred fire

* Here the exact number of years is not stated.—T.

† Some of the most beautiful ladies in Indian mythology and history have been of dark complexions. Draupadi, the queen of the Pāndavas, was dark in color and was called Krishnā. As to women called Cyāmās, the description given is that their bodies are warm in winter and cold in summer, and their complexion is like that of heated gold.—T.

every day,[43] acquires the high merit of a thousand Horse-sacrifices and attains to the companionship of Brāhmana's daughters endued with beauty capable of charming the hearts of all creatures.[44] These damsels, possessed of such beauty, and some of them possessed of complexion like that of the lotus and some like that of the same flower of the blue variety, always keep him in joy.[45] He acquires a beautiful vehicle, that moves in beautiful circles and that looks like the dense cloud called Āvarta, verily, it may be said to resemble also an ocean wave.[46] That vehicle resounds with the constant tinkle of rows of pearls and gems, and the melodious blare of conchs, and is adorned with columns made of crystals and diamonds, as also with an altar constructed of the same minerals.[47] He makes his journeys on such a car, drawn by swans and cranes and lives for millions and millions of years in great happiness in Heaven.[48] He who fasts for ten days and eats only ghee on every eleventh day for a whole year and pours libations on his sacred fire every day,[49] who never, in word or thought, covets the companionship of other people's wives, and who never utters an untruth even for the sake of his mother and father,[50] succeeds in beholding Mahādeva of great puissance seated on his car. Such a person acquires the high merit of a thousand Horse-sacrifices.[51] He beholds the car of the Self-born Brahman himself approach for taking him on it. He rides on it, accompanied by celestial damsels possessed of great beauty, and complexions as effulgent as that of pure gold.[52] Endued with the blazing splendour of the Yuga-fire, he lives for countless years in a celestial mansion in Heaven, full of every happiness.[53] For those countless years he experiences the joy of bending his head in reverence unto Rudra adored by deities and Dānavas.[54] Such a person obtains every day the sight of the great deity. That man who having fasted for eleven days eats only a little ghee on the twelfth,[55] and observes this conduct for a whole year, succeeds in obtaining the merits attaching to all the sacrifices. The car he rides is possessed of the effulgence of a dozen suns.[56] Adorned with gems and pearls and corals of great value, embellished with rows of swans and snakes and of peacocks and Chakravākas uttering their melo-

dious notes, and beautified with large domes, is the residence to which he attains in the region of Brahman.[57-58] That abode O king, is always filled with men and women (who wait upon him for service). Even this is what the highly blessed Rishi Angiras, conversant with every duty, said (regarding the fruits of such a fast).[59] That man who having fasted for twelve days eats a little ghee on the thirteenth, and bears himself in this way for a whole year, succeeds in attaining to the merits of the divine sacrifice.[60] Such a man obtains a car of the complexion of the newly-blown lotus, adorned with pure gold and heaps of jewels and gems.[61] He proceeds to the regions of the Maruts that teem with celestial damsels, that are adorned with every kind of celestial ornament, that are redolent with celestial perfumes, and that contain every element of felicity.[62] The number of years he resides in those happy regions is countless.*[63] Soothed with the sound of music and the melodious voice of Gandharvas and the sounds and blare of drums and Panavas, he is constantly gladdened by celestial damsels of great beauty.[64] That man who having fasted for thirteen days eats a little ghee on the fourteenth day, and bears himself in this way for a full year, obtains the merits of the Mahā-medha sacrifice.†[65] Celestial damsels of indescribable beauty, and whose age cannot be guessed for they are for ever young in appearance, adorned with every ornament and with armlets of blazing effulgence, wait upon him with many cars and follow him in his journeys.[66] He is waked every morning from his bed by the melodious voice of swans, the tinkle of Nupuras, and the highly agreeable jingle of Kānchis. Verily, he resides in a superior abode, waited upon by such celestial damsels, for years as countless as the sands on the shores of Gangā.[67] That man who, keeping his senses under control, fasts for a fortnight and takes only a one meal on the sixteenth day, and bears himself in this way for a whole year, pouring libations every day on his sacred fire,[68-69] acquires the high merits that attach to a thousand Rājasuya sacrifices. The car he rides is

* A very large figure is given.—T.

† This sacrifice consisted of the slaughter of a human being.—T.

possessed of great beauty and is drawn by swans and peacocks.[70] Riding on such a vehicle, that is, besides, adorned with garlands of pearls and the purest gold and graced with bevies of celestial damsels decked with ornaments of every kind,[71] having one column and four arches and seven altars exceedingly auspicious, endued with thousands of banners and echoing with the sound of music,[72] celestial and of celestial attributes, embellished with gems and pearls and corals, and possessed of the effulgence of lightning, such a man lives in Heaven for a thousand Yugas, having elephants and rhinoceroses for dragging that vehicle of his.[73] That man who having fasted for fifteen days takes one meal on the sixteenth day and bears himself in this way for one whole year, acquires the merits attaching to the Soma sacrifice.[74] Proceeding to Heaven he lives in the company of Soma's daughters. His body fragrant with unguents whose perfumes are as sweet as those of Soma himself, he acquires the power of transporting himself immediately to any place he likes.[75] Seated on his car he is waited upon by damsels of the most beautiful features and agreeable manners, and commands all articles of enjoyment.[76] The period for which he enjoys such happiness consists of countless years.*[77] That man who having fasted for sixteen days eats a little ghee on the seventeenth day and bears himself in this way for a whole year, pouring libations every day on his sacred fire,[78] proceeds to the regions of Varuna and Indra and Rudra and the Maruts and Uçanas and Brahman himself.[79] There he is waited upon by celestial damsels and obtains a sight of the celestial Rishi called Bhurbhuva and grasps the whole universe in his ken.[80] The daughters of the deity of the deities gladden him there. Those damsels, of agreeable manners and adorned with every ornament, are capable of assuming two and thirty forms.[81] As long as the Sun and the Moon move in the firmament, so long does that man of wisdom reside in those regions of felicity, subsisting upon the succulence of ambrosia and nectar.[82] That man who having fasted for seventeen

* The exact number of years is given, consisting of a fabulous figure.—T.

days eats only one meal on the eighteenth day, and bears himself in this way for a whole year, succeeds in grasping the seven regions, of which the universe consists, in his ken.[83] While performing his journeys on his car, he is always followed by a large train of cars producing the most agreeable rattle and ridden by celestial damsels blazing with ornaments and beauty.[84] Enjoying the greatest happiness, the vehicle he rides is celestial and endued with the greatest beauty. It is drawn by lions and tigers, and produces a rattle as deep as the sound of the clouds.[85] He lives in such felicity for a thousand Kalpas, subsisting upon the succulence of ambrosia that is as sweet as nectar itself.[86] That man who having fasted for eighteen days eats only one meal on the nineteenth day and bears himself in this way for a full year, succeeds in grasping within his ken all the seven regions of which the universe consists.[87] The region to which he attains is inhabited by diverse tribes of Apsaras and resounds with the melodious voice of Gandharvas. The car he rides is possessed of the effulgence of the sun.[88] His heart freed from every anxiety, he is waited upon by the foremost of celestial damsels. Decked with celestial garlands, and possessed of beauty of form, he lives in such happiness for millions and millions of years.[89] That man who having fasted for nineteen days eats only one meal on every twentieth day and bears himself in this way for a full year, adhering all the while to truthfulness of speech and to the observance of other (excellent) rightuals,[90] abstaining also from meat, leading the life of a Brahmachārin, and devoted to the good of all creatures, attains to the extensive regions, of great happiness, belonging to the Adityas.[91] While performing his journeys on his own car, he is followed by a large train of cars ridden by Gandharvas and Apsaras decked with celestial garlands and unguents.[92] That man who having fasted for twenty days takes a single meal on the twentyfirst day and bears himself in this way for a full year, pouring libations every day on his sacred fire,[93] attains to the regions of Uçanas and Cakra, of the Açwins and the Maruts, and resides there in uninterrupted happiness of great measure.[94] Unacquainted with sorrow of every kind,

he rides the foremost of cars for making his journeys, and waited upon by foremost of celestial damsels, and possessed of puissance, he sports in joy like a celestial himself.[95] That man who having fasted for one and twenty days takes a single meal on the twentysecond day and bears himself in this way for a full year, pouring libations on his sacred fire every day,[96] abstaining from injuring any creature, adhering to truthfulness of speech, and freed from malice, attains to the regions of the Vasus and becomes endued with the effulgence of the Sun.[97] Possessed of the power of going everywhere at will, subsisting upon nectar, and riding on the foremost of cars, his person decked with celestial ornaments, he sports in joy in the company of celestial damsels.[98] That man who having fasted for two and twenty days takes a single meal on the twentythird day and bears himself in this way for a full year, thus regulating his diet and keeping his senses under control,[99] attains to the regions of the deity of Wind, of Uçanas, and of Rudra. Capable of going everywhere at will and always roving at will, he is worshipped by diverse tribes of Apsaras.[100] Riding on the foremost of cars and his person decked with celestial ornaments, he sports for countless years in great felicity in the company of celestial damsels.[101] That man who having fasted for three and twenty days eats a little ghee on the twentyfourth day, and bears himself in this way for a full year, pouring libations on his sacred fire,[102] resides for countless years in great happiness in the regions of the Ādityas, his person decked with celestial robes and garlands and celestial perfumes and unguents.[103] Riding on an excellent car made of gold and possessed of great beauty and drawn by swans, he sports in joy in the company of thousands and thousands of celestial damsels.[104] That man who having fasted for four and twenty days eats a single meal on the twentyfifth day, and bears himself thus for a full year, succeeds in obtaining a car of the foremost kind, full of every article of enjoyment.[105] He is followed in his journeys by a large train of cars drawn by lions and tigers, and producing a rattle as deep as the roar of the clouds,[106] ridden by celestial damsels, and all made of pure gold and possessed of great beauty. Himself riding

on an excellent celestial car possessed of great beauty,[107] he resides in those regions for a thousand Kalpas, in the company of hundreds of celestial damsels, and subsisting upon the succulence of ambrosia that is sweet as nectar itself.[108] That man who having fasted for five and twenty days eats only one meal on the twentysixth day, and bears himself thus for a full year in the observance of such a regulation in respect of diet,[109] keeping his senses under control, freed from attachment (to worldly objects), and pouring libations every day on his sacred fire,—that blessed man,—worshipped by the Apsaras, attains to the regions[110] of the seven Maruts and of the Vasus. When performing his journeys he is followed by a large train of cars made of excellent crystal and adorned with all kinds of gems, and ridden by Gandharvas and Apsaras who show him every honor. He resides in those regions, in enjoyment of such felicity, and endued with celestial energy, for two thousand Yugas.[111-112] That man who having fasted for six and twenty days eats a single meal on the twentyseventh day and bears himself in this way for a full year, pouring libations every day on his sacred fire,[113] acquires great merit and proceeding to Heaven receives honors from the deities. Residing there, he subsists on nectar, freed from thirst of every kind, and enjoying every felicity.[114] His soul purified of every dross and performing his journeys on a celestial car of great beauty, he lives there, O king, bearing himself after the manner of the celestial Rishis and the royal sages.[115] Possessed of great energy, he dwells there in great happiness in the company of celestial damsels of highly agreeable manners, for three thousand Yugas and Kalpas.[116] That man who having fasted for seven and twenty days eats a single meal on the twentyeighth day and bears himself in this way for a full year, with soul and senses under perfect control,[117] acquires very great merit, which, in fact, is equal to what is acquired by the celestial Rishis. Possessed of every article of enjoyment, and endued with great energy, he blazes with the effulgence of the midday sun.[118] Sportive damsels of the most delicate features and endued with splendour of complexion, having deep bosoms, tapering thighs and full and round hips, decked with celestial orna-

ments,[119] gladden him with their company while he rides on a delightful and excellent car possessed of the effulgence of the sun and equipt with every article of enjoyment, for thousands and thousands of Kalpas.[120] That man who having fasted for eight and twenty days eats a single meal on the twentyninth day, and bears himself in this way for a full year, adhering all the while to truthfulness of speech,[121] attains to auspicious regions of great happiness that are worshipped by celestial Rishis and royal sages. The car he obtains is endued with the effulgence of the sun and the moon;[122] made of pure gold and adorned with every kind of gem, ridden by Apsaras and Gandharvas singing melodiously.[123] Thereon he is attended by auspicious damsels adorned with celestial ornaments of every kind. Possessed of sweet dispositions and agreeable features, and endued with great energy, these gladden him with their company.[124] Endued with every article of enjoyment and with great energy, and possessed of the splendour of a blazing fire, he shines like a celestial, with a celestial form having every excellence.[125] The regions he attains are those of the Vasus and the Maruts, of the Sāddhyas and the Açwins, of the Rudras and of Brahman himself.[126] That man who having fasted for a full month takes a single meal on the first day of the following month and bears himself in this way for a full year, looking on all things with an equal eye, attains to the regions of Brahman himself.[127] There he subsists upon the succulence of ambrosia. Endued with a form of great beauty and highly agreeable to all, he shines with energy and prosperity like the sun himself of a thousand rays.[128] Devoted to Yoga and adorned with celestial robes and garlands and smeared with celestial perfumes and unguents, he passes his time in great happiness, unacquainted with the least sorrow. He shines on his car attended by damsels that blaze forth with effulgence emitted by themselves.[129] Those damsels, the daughters of the celestial Rishis and the Rudras, adore him with veneration.[130] Capable of assuming diverse forms that are highly delightful and highly agreeable, their speech is characterised by diverse kinds of sweetness, and they are able to gladden the person they wait upon in diverse kinds

of ways.[131] While performing his journeys, he rides on a car that looks like the firmament itself in complexion (for subtlety of the materials that compose it). In his rear are cars that look like the Moon; before him are those that resemble the clouds; on his right are vehicles that are red; below him are those that are blue; and above him are those that are of variegated hue. He is always adored by those that wait upon him.[132-133] Endued with great wisdom, he lives in the region of Brahman for as many years as are measured by the drops of rain that fall in course of a thousand years on that division of the Earth which is called Jamvudwipa.[134] Verily, possessed of the effulgence of a deity, he lives in that region of unalloyed felicity for as many years as the drops of rain that fall upon the Earth in the season of showers.[135] The man who, having fasted for a whole month, eats on the first day of the following month, and bears himself in this way for ten years, attains to the status of a great Rishi. He has not to undergo any change of form while proceeding to Heaven for enjoying the rewards of his acts in this life.[136] Verily, even this is the status to which one attains by restraining speech, practising self-denial, subjugating wrath, sexual appetite, and the desire to eat, pouring libations on the sacred fire, and regularly adoring the two twilights.[137] That man who purifies himself by the observance of these and similar vows and practices, and who eats in this way, becomes as stainless as ether and endued with effulgence like that of the Sun himself.*[138] Such a man, O king, proceeding to Heaven in even his own carnal form, enjoys all the felicity that is there like a deity at his will.[139]

"'I have thus told thee, O chief of the Bharatas, what the excellent ordinances are in respect of sacrifices, one after another, as dependent upon the fruits of fasts.†[140] Poor men,

---

* 'Abhrāvakāçaçilā' is explained by Nilakantha as 'having the attribute of the 'Avakāça' or place of 'Abhra' or the clouds. Hence, as stainless as the ether, which, of course, is the purest of all the elements.—T.

† Sacrifices have for their soul either the actual rites laid down in the scriptures or fasts of several kinds. The observance of fasts is equal to the performance of sacrifices, for the merits of both are equal.—T.

O son of Prithā, (who are unable to perform sacrifices) may, nevertheless, acquire the fruits thereof (by the observance of fasts). Verily, by observing these fasts, even a poor man may attain to the highest end,[141] O foremost one of Bharata's race, attending all the while, besides, to the worship of the deities and the Brāhmanas. I have thus recited to thee in detail the ordinances in respect of fasts.[142] Do not harbour any doubt in respect of those men that are so observant of vows, that are so heedful and pure and high-souled, that are so freed from pride and contentions of every kind, that are endued with such devoted understandings, and that pursue their end with such steadiness and fixity of purpose without ever deviating from their path.' "[143]

SECTION CVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Do thou tell me, O grandsire, of that which is regarded as the foremost of all Tirthas. Indeed, it behooveth thee to expound to me what that Tirtha is which conduces to the greatest purity!'*[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Without doubt, all Tirthas are possessed of merit. Listen, however, with attention to me as I tell thee what the Tirtha, the cleanser, is of men endued with wisdom.[2] Adhering to eternal Truth, one should bathe in the Tirtha called Mānasa, which is unfathomable (for its depth), stainless, and pure, and which has Truth for its waters and the understanding for its lake.†[3] The fruits, in the form of

---

* The ward 'Tirtha' as already explained (in the Cānti Parvan) means a sacred water. There can be no Tirtha without a piece of water, be it a river, a lake, or even a well. Bhishma, however, chooses to take the word in a different sense.—T.

† The language is figurative. By 'Mānasa' is not meant the trans-Himalayan lake of that name, which to this day is regarded as highly sacred and draws numerous pilgrims from all parts of India. The word is used to signify the Soul. It is fathomless in consequence of nobody being able to discover its origin. It is pure and stainless by nature. It is represented here as having Truth for its waters and the Understanding for its lake. Probably, what is meant by this is that the Understanding, containing the waters of Truth, forms a part of

cleansing, that one acquires by bathing in that Tirtha, are freedom from cupidity, sincerity, truthfulness, mildness (of behaviour), compassion, abstention from injuring any creature, self-restraint, and tranquillity.[4] Those men that are freed from attachments, that are divested of pride, that transcend all pairs of opposites (such as pleasure and pain, praise and blame, heat and cold, &c.), that have no spouses and children and houses and gardens, &c., that are endued with purity, and that subsist upon the alms given to them by others, are regarded as Tirthas.[5] He who is acquainted with the truths of all things and who is freed from the idea of *meum*, is said to be the highest Tirtha.* In searching the indications of purity, thy gaze should ever be directed towards these attributes (so that where these are present, thou mayst take purity to be present, and where these are not, purity also should be concluded to be not).[6] Those persons from whose souls the attributes of Sattwa and Rajas and Tamas have been washed off, they who, regardless of (external) purity and impurity pursue the ends they have proposed to themselves,[7] they who have renounced everything, they who are possessed of omniscience and endued with universal sight, and they who are of pure conduct, are regarded as Tirthas possessing the power of cleansing.[8] That man whose limbs only are wet with water is not regarded as one that is washed. He, on the other hand, is regarded as washed who has washed himself by self-denial. Even such a person is said to be pure both inwardly and outwardly.[9] They who never concern themselves with what is past, they who feel no attachment to acquisitions that are present, indeed, they who are free from desire, are said to be possessed of the highest purity.[10] Knowledge is said to constitute the especial purity of the body. So also freedom from desire, and cheerfulness of mind.[11] Purity of conduct constitutes the purity of the mind. The purity that one attains

---

this Tirtha as the lakes of Pushkara form a part of the Tirtha called by that name.—T.

* 'One freed from the idea of meum' implies him who identifies himself with all creatures; him, that is, in whom the idea of self has been extinguished.—T.

by ablutions in sacred waters is regarded as inferior. Verily, that purity which arises from knowledge, is regarded as the best.[12] Those ablutions which one performs with a blazing mind in the waters of the knowledge of Brahma in the Tirtha called Mānasa, are the true ablutions of those that are conversant with Truth.[13] That man who is possessed of true purity of conduct and who is always devoted to the preservation of a proper attitude towards all, indeed, he who is possessed of (pure) attributes and merit, is regarded as truly pure.[14] These that I have mentioned have been said to be the Tirthas that inhere to the body. Do thou listen to me as I tell thee what those sacred Tirthas are that are situate on the Earth also.[15] Even as especial attributes that inhere to the body have been said to be sacred, there are particular spots on Earth as well, and particular waters, that are regarded sacred.[16] By reciting the names of the Tirthas, by performing ablutions there, and by offering oblations to the Pitris in those places, one's sins are washed off. Verily, those men whose sins are thus washed off succeed in attaining to Heaven when they leave this world.[17] In consequence of their association with persons that are righteous, through the special efficacy of the earth itself of those spots and of particular waters, there are certain portions of the Earth that have come to be regarded as sacred.[18] The Tirthas of the mind are separate and distinct from those of the Earth. That person who bathes in both attains to success without any delay.[19] As strength without exertion, or exertion without strength can never accomplish anything, singly, and as these, when combined, can accomplish all things,[20] even so one that becomes endued with the purity that is contributed by the Tirthas in the body as also by that which is contributed by the Tirthas on the Earth, becomes truly pure and attains to success. That purity which is derived from both sources is the best.' "[21]

Section CIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'It behooveth thee, O grandsire, to tell me what is the highest, the most beneficial, and the most certain fruit of all kinds of fasts in this world!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O king, to what was sung by the Self-born himself and by accomplishing which a person, without doubt, attains to the highest happiness.[2] That man who fasts on the twelfth day of the moon in the month called Mārgaçirsha and worships Krishna as Keçava for the whole day and night, attains to the merit of the Horse-sacrifice and becomes cleansed of all his sins.[3] He who, after the same manner, fasts on the twelfth day of the moon in the month of Pausha and worships Krishna as Nārāyana, for the whole day and night, attains to the merits of the Vājapeya sacrifice and the highest success.[4] He who fasts on the twelfth day of the moon in the month of Māgha and worships Krishna, as Mādhava, for the whole day and night, attains to the merits of the Rājasuya sacrifice, and rescues his own race (from misery).*[5] He who fasts on the twelfth day of the moon in the month of Phālguna and worships Krishna as Govinda, for the whole day and night, attains to the merit of the Atirātra sacrifice and goes to the region of Soma.[6] He who fasts on the twelfth day of the moon in the month of Chaitra and worships Krishna as Vishnu, for the whole day and night, attains to the merit of the Pundarika sacrifice and proceeds to the region of the deities.[7] By observing a similar fast on the twelfth day of the month of Vaiçākha and worshipping Krishna as the slayer of Madhu for the whole day and night, one attains to the merits of the Agnishtoma sacrifice and proceeds to the region of Soma.[8] By observing a fast on the twelfth lunar day in the month of Jaishtha and worshipping Krishna as him who had (in Vali's sacrifice) covered the universe with three steps of his, one attains to the merits of the

* Such a man, through the merit he acquires, causes his deceased ancestors and descendants to be freed from every kind of misery in the next world.—T.

Gomedha sacrifice and sports with the Apsaras in great happiness.[9] By observing a fast on the twelfth day of the moon in the month of Āshāda and worshipping Krishna as the dwarf (who beguiled the Asura king Vali), one attains to the merits of the Naramedha* sacrifice and sports in happiness with the Apsaras.[10] By observing a fast for the twelfth lunar day of the month of Crāvana and worshipping Krishna for day and night as Creedhara, one attains to the merits of the sacrifice called Panchayajna and acquires a beautiful car in Heaven whereon he sports in joy.[11] By observing a fast on the twelfth day of the moon in the month of Bhādrapada and worshipping Krishna as Hrishikeça for the whole day and night, one attains to the merits of the Sautrāmani sacrifice and becomes cleansed of all sins.[12] By observing a fast for the twelfth day of the moon in the month of Āçwin and worshipping Krishna as Padmanābha, one attains, without doubt, to the merits of that sacrifice in which a thousand kine are given away.[13] By observing a fast for the twelfth day of the moon in the month of Kārtika and worshipping Krishna as Dāmodara, one attains, without doubt, to the combined merits of all the sacrifices.[14] He who, in this way, adores Krishna for a whole year as Pundarikāksha, acquires the power of recollecting the incidents of his past births and wins much wealth in gold.[15] Similarly, he who worships Krishna every day as Upendra attains to identity with him. After Krishna has been worshipped in this way, one should, at the conclusion of one's vow, feed a number of Brāhmanas or make gifts unto them of ghee.[16] The illustrious Vishnu, that ancient Being, has himself said that there is no fast that possesses merits superior to what attach to fast of this kind.' "[17]

Section CX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Approaching the Kuru grandsire, venerable in years, *viz.*, Bhishma, who was then lying on his

---

* In the Naramedha, a human being was offered up as the sacrifice.—T.

bed of arrows, Yudhishthira possessed of great wisdom put the following question.[1]

"Yudhishthira said,—'How, O grandsire, does one acquire beauty of form and prosperity and agreeableness of disposition? How, indeed, does one become possessed of religious merit and wealth and pleasure? How does one become endued with happiness?'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'In the month of Mārgaçirsha, when the moon comes in conjunction with the asterism called Mulā, when his two feet are united with that very asterism, O king, when Rohini is in his calf,[3] when his knee-joints are in Açwini, and his thighs are in the two Āshādas, when Phālguni makes his anus, and Krittikā his waist,[4] when his navel is in Bhādrapada, his ocular region in Revati, and his back on the Dhanishthās, when Anurādhā makes his belly,[5] when with his two arms he reaches the Viçākhas, when his two hands are indicated by Hastā, when Punarvasu, O king, makes his fingers, Açleshā his nails,[6] when Jyeshthā is known for his neck, when by Cravanā is pointed out his ears, and his mouth by Pushyā, when Swāti is said to constitute his teeth and lips,[7] when Catabhishā is his smile and Maghā his nose, when Mrigaçiras is known to be in his eye, and Chitrā in his forehead,[8] when his head is in Bharani, when Ārdrā constitutes his hair, O king, the vow called Chandravrata should be commenced. Upon the completion of that vow, gifts of ghee should be made unto Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas.[9] As the fruit of that vow, one becomes possessed of prosperity, beauty of person, and that good luck which brings about knowledge. Indeed, one becomes, in consequence of such a vow, as full (of every blessed attribute) as the Moon himself when he is at full.' "[10]

Section CXI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, O thou that art possessed of great wisdom and conversant with all the scriptures, I desire to know those excellent ordinances in consequence of which mortal creatures have to travel through their rounds of

rebirth.[1] What is that conduct by following which, O king, men succeed in attaining to high heaven, and what is that conduct by which one sinks in Hell?[2] When, abandoning the dead body that is as inert as a piece of wood or clod of earth, people proceed to the other world, what are those that follow them thither?'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Yonder comes the illustrious Vrihaspati of great intelligence! Do thou ask his blessed self. The subject is an eternal mystery.[4] None else is capable of explaining the matter. There is no speaker like Vrihaspati!'[5]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"While the son of Prithā and the son of Gangā were thus speaking with each other, there came to that spot from the firmament the illustrious Vrihaspati of cleansed soul.[6] King Yudhishthira, and all others, with Dhritarāshtra at their head, stood up and received Vrihaspati with proper honors. Verily, the worship they offered to the preceptor of the celestials was excellent.[7] Then Dharma's royal son, Yudhishthira, approaching the illustrious Vrihaspati, asked him the question in proper form, desirous of knowing the truth.[8]

"Yudhishthira said,—'O illustrious one, thou art conversant with all duties and all the scriptures. Do thou tell me what is truly the friend of mortal creatures?[9] Is the father, or mother or son, or preceptor, or kinsmen or relatives, or those called friends, that may be said to truly constitute the friend of a mortal creature? One goes to the next world, leaving one's dead body that is like a piece of wood or a clod of earth. Who is it that follows him thither?'[10]

"Vrihaspati said,—'One is born alone, O king, and one dies alone; one crosses alone the difficulties one meets with, and one alone encounters whatever misery falls to one's lot.[11] One has really no companion in these acts. The father, the mother, the brother, the son, the preceptor, kinsmen, relatives, and friends,[12] leaving the dead body as if it were a piece of wood or a clod of earth, after having mourned for only a moment, all turn away from it and proceed to their own concerns.[13] Only Righteousness followes the body that is thus abandoned by them all. Hence, it is plain, that Righteousness, is the only friend and that Righteousness only should be

sought by all.[14] One endued with righteousness would attain to that high end which is constituted by Heaven. If endued with unrighteousness he attains to Hell.[15] Hence, the man of intelligence should always seek to acquire righteousness through wealth won by lawful means. Righteousness is the one only friend which creatures have in the world hereafter.[16] Led by cupidity, or stupefaction, or compassion, or fear, one destitute of much knowledge is seen to do improper acts, for the sake of even another, his judgment thus stupefied by cupidity.*[17] Righteousness, wealth, and pleasure,—these three constitute the fruit of life. One should acquire these three by means of being free from impropriety and sin.'[18]

"Yudhishthira said,—'I have carefully heard the words spoken by thy illustrious self,—these words that are fraught with righteousness, and that are highly beneficial. I wish now to know of the existence of the body (after death).†[19] The dead body of man becomes subtile and unmanifest. It becomes invisible. How is it possible for Righteousness to follow it ?'[20]

"Vrihaspati said,—'Earth, Wind, Ether, Water, Light, Mind, Yama (the king of the dead), Understanding, the Soul, as also Day and Night, all together behold as witnesses the merits (and demerits) of all living creatures. With these, Righteousness follows the creature (when dead).‡[21-22] When the body becomes bereft of life, skin, bones, flesh, the vital seed, and blood, O thou of great intelligence, leave it at the same time.[23] Endued with merit (and demerit) Jiva, (after the destruction of this body) attains to another. After the attainment by Jiva of that body, the presiding deties of the five elements once more behold as witnesses all his acts good and bad.[24] What else dost thou wish to hear? If endued

* The sense seems to be this : One that is not possessed of much learning is run to do improper acts. These acts are all done for another, *viz.*, one's body and the senses and not oneself. The *para* here is the Notself.—T.

† 'Nichayam' is, as explained by the Commentator, 'Avasthitim.'—T.

‡ The sense is that when these leave the body, they are accompanied by Righteousness.—T.

with righteousness, Jiva enjoys happiness. What other topic, belonging to this or the other world, shall I discourse upon ?'[25]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thy illustrious self has explained how Righteousness follows Jiva. I desire to know how the vital seed is originated.'[26]

"Vrihaspati said,—'The food that these deities, O king, who dwell in the body, *viz.*, Earth, Wind, Ether, Water, Light, and Mind, eat[27] gratifies them. When those five elements become gratified, O monarch, with Mind numbering as their sixth, their vital seed then becomes generated, O thou of cleansed soul ![28] When an act of union takes place between male and female, the vital seed flows out and causes conception. I have thus explained to thee what thou hadst asked. What else dost thou wish to hear !'[29]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast, O illustrious one, said how conception takes place. Do thou explain how the Jiva that takes birth grows (by becoming possessed of body).'[30]

"Vrihaspati said,—'As soon as Jiva enters the vital seed, he becomes overwhelmed by the elements already mentioned. When Jiva becomes disunited therewith, he is said to attain to the other end (*viz.*, death).[31] Endued as Jiva becomes with all those elements, he attains, in consequence thereof, a body. The deities that preside over those elements behold as witnesses all his acts good and bad. What else dost thou wish to hear ?'[32]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Leaving off skin and bone and flesh, and becoming destitute of all those elements, in what does Jiva reside, O illustrious one, for enjoying and enduring happiness and misery ?'[33]

"Vrihaspati said,—'Endued with all his acts, Jiva quickly enters the vital seed, and availing of the functional flow of women, takes birth in time, O Bhārata.[34] After birth, Jiva receives woe and death from the messengers of Yama. Indeed, misery and a painful round of rebirth are his inheritence.[35] Endued with life, O king, Jiva in this world, from the moment of his birth, enjoys and endures his own (previous) acts, depending upon righteousness (and its reverse).[36] If Jiva, according to the best of his power, follows righteousness from

the day of his birth, he then succeeds in enjoying, when reborn, happiness without interruption.[37] If, on the other hand, without following righteousness without interruption, he acts sinfully, he reaps happiness at first as the reward of his righteousness and endures misery after that.[38] Endued with unrighteousness, Jiva has to go to the dominions of Yama and suffering great misery there, he has to take birth in an intermediate order of being.*[39] Listen to me as I tell thee what the different acts are by doing which Jiva, stupefied by folly, has to take birth in different orders of being,[40] as declared in the Vedas, the scriptures, and the (sacred) histories. Mortals have to go to the frightful regions of Yama. In those regions, O king, there are places that are fraught with every merit and that are worthy on that account of being the abodes of the very deities.[41] There are, again, places in those regions that are worse than those which are inhabited by animals and birds. Indeed, there are spots of these kinds in the abode of Yama which (so far as its happier regions are concerned) is equal to the region of Brahman himself in merits.[42] Creatures, bound by their acts, endure diverse kinds of misery. I shall, after this, tell thee what those acts and dispositions are in consequence of which a person obtains to an end that is fraught with great misery and terror.[43-44] If a regenerate person, having studied the four Vedas, becomes stupefied by folly and accepts a gift from a fallen man, he has then to take birth in the assinine order.[45] He has to live as an ass for five and ten years. Casting off his assinine form, he has next to take birth as an ox and which state he has to live for seven years.[46] Casting off his bovine form, he has next to take birth as a Rākshasa of the regenerate order. Living as a Rākshasa of the regenerate order for three months, he then regains his status (in his next birth) of a Brāhmana.†[47] A Brāhmana, by officiating at the sacrifice of a fallen person, has to take birth as a vile worm. In this form he has to live for five and

* Intermediate, *i. e.*, between deities and human beings; hence, animals and birds.—T.

† 'Brahma-Rākshasa' is a Rākshasa that belongs, like Rāvana and others, by birth to the regenerate order.—T.

ten years, O Bhārata.[48] Freed from the status of a worm, he next takes birth as an ass. As an ass he has to live for five years, and then as a hog, in which state also he has to remain for as many years.[49] After that, he takes birth as a cock, and living for five years in that form, he takes birth as a jackal and lives for as many years in that state. He has next to take birth as a dog, and living thus for a year he regains his status of humanity.[50] That foolish disciple who offends his preceptor by doing any injury to him, has certainly to undergo three transformations in this world.[51] Such a person, O monarch, has in the first instance to become a dog. He has then to become a beast of prey, and then an ass. Living his assinine form, he has to wander for sometime in great affliction as a spirit. After the expiration of that period, he has to take birth as a Brāhmana.[52] That sinful disciple who even in thought commits adultery with the wife of his preceptor, has in consequence of such a sinful heart, to undergo many fierce shapes in this world.[53] First taking birth in the canine order he has to live for three years. Casting off the canine form when death comes, he takes birth as a worm or vile vermin.[54] In this form he has to live for a year. Leaving that form he succeeds in regaining his status as a human being of the regenerate order.[55] If the preceptor kills, without reason, his disciple who is even as a son to him, he has, in consequence of such a wilful act of sin on his part, to take birth as a beast of prey.[56] That son who disregards his father and mother, O king, has to take birth, after leaving off his human form as an animal of the assinine order.[57] Assuming the assinine form he has to live for ten years. After that he has to take birth as a crocodile, in which form he has to live for a year. After that he regains the human form.[58] That son with whom his parents become angry, has, in consequence of his evil thoughts towards them, to take birth as an ass.[59] As an ass he has to live for ten months. He has then to take birth as a dog and to remain as such for four and ten months. After that he has to take birth as a cat and living in that form for seven months he regains his status of humanity.[60] Having spoken ill of parents, one has to take birth as a Sārika. Striking them

one has to take birth, O king, as a tortoise.[61] Living as a tortoise for ten years, he has next to take birth as a porcupine. After that he has to take birth as a snake, and living for six months in that form he regains the status of humanity.[62] That man who, while subsisting upon the food that his royal master supplies, commits acts that are injurious to the interests of his master,—that man, thus stupefied by folly, has after death to take birth as an ape.[63] For ten years he has to live as an ape, and after that for five years as a mouse. After that he has to become a dog, and living in that form for a period of six months he succeeds in regaining his status of humanity.[64] That man who misappropriates what is deposited with him in trustfulness, has to undergo a hundred transformations. He at last takes birth as a vile worm.[65] In that order he has to live for a period of ten and five years, O Bhārata. Upon the exhaustion of his great demerit in this way, he succeeds in regaining his status of humanity.[66] That man who harbours malice towards ethers has, after death, to take birth as a Cārngaka. That man of wicked understanding who becomes guilty of breach of trust has to take birth as a fish.[67] Living as a fish for eight years, he takes birth, O Bhārata, as a deer. Living as a deer for four months, he has next to take birth as a goat.[68] After the expiration of a full year he casts off his goatish body, he takes birth then as a worm. After that he succeeds in regaining his status of humanity.[69] That shameless insensate man who, through stupefaction, steals paddy, barley, sesame, Masha, Kulattha, oil-seeds, oats, Kalāya, Mudga, wheat, Atasi, and other kinds of corn, has to take birth as a mouse.*[70-71] After leading the life for sometime he has to take birth as a hog. As soon as he takes birth as a hog he has to die of disease.[72] In consequence of his sin, that foolish man has next to take birth as a dog, O king. Living as a dog for five years, he then regains his status of humanity.[73] Having committed an act of adultery with the spouse of

---

* 'Māsha' is *Phaseolus Roxbarghii.* 'Kulattha' is *Dolichos biflosus, Roxb.* 'Kalāya' is *Pisum Sativum, Linn.* 'Mudga' is *Phaseolus Mungo, Linn.* 'Atasi' is *Linum usitattisimum, Linn.*—T.

another man, one has to take birth as a wolf. After that he has to assume the forms of a dog and jackel and vulture. He has next to take birth as a snake and then as a Kanka and then as a crane.*[74] That man of sinful soul who, stupefied by folly, commits an act of sexual congress with the spouse of a brother, has to take birth as a male Kokila and to live in that form for a whole year, O king.[75] He who, through lust, commits an act of sexual congress with the wife of a friend, or the wife of preceptor, or the wife of his king, has after death to take the form of a hog.[76] He has to live in his porcine form for five years and then to assume that of a wolf for ten years. For the next five years he has to live as a cat and then for the next ten years as a cock.[77] He has next to live for three months as an ant, and then as a worm for a month. Having undergone these transformations he has next to live as a vile worm for four and ten years.[78] When his sin becomes exhausted by such chastisement, he at last regains the status of humanity.[79] When a wedding is about to take place, or a sacrifice, or an act of gifts is about to be made, O thou of great puissance, the man who offers any obstruction, has to take birth in his next life as a vile worm.[80] Assuming such a form he has to live, O Bhārata, for five and ten years. When his demerit is exhausted by such suffering, he regains the status of humanity.[81] Having once bestowed his daughter in marriage upon a person, he who seeks to bestow her again upon a second husband, has, O king, to take birth among vile worms.[82] Assuming such a form, O Yudhishthira, he has to live for a period of three and ten years. Upon the exhaustion of his demerit by such sufferance, he regains the status of humanity.[83] He who eats without having performed the rites in honor of the deities or those in honor of the Pitris or without having offered (even) oblations of water to both the Rishis and the Pitris, has to take birth as a crow.[84] Living as a crow for a hundred years, he next assumes the form of a cock. His next transformation is that of a snake for a month. After this, he regains the status of humanity.[85] He who disregards

* A Kanka is a bird of prey.—T.

eldest brother who is even like a sire, has, after death, to take birth in the order of cranes.[86] Having assumed that form he has to live in it for two years. Casting off that form at the conclusion of that period, he regains the status of humanity.[87] That Cudra who has sexual intercourse with a Brāhmani woman, has, after death, to take birth as a hog.[88] As soon as he takes birth in the porcine order he dies of disease, O king. The wretch has next to take birth as a dog, O king, in consequence of his dire act of sin.[89] Casting off his canine form he regains, upon the exhaustion of his demerit, the status of humanity. The Cudra who begets offspring upon a Brāhmani woman, leaving off his human form, becomes reborn as a mouse.[90] The man who becomes guilty of ingratitude, O king, has to go to the regions of Yama and there to undergo very painful and severe treatment at the hands of the messengers, provoked to fury, of the grim king of the dead.[91] Clubs with heavy hammers and mallets, sharp-pointed lances, heated jars, all fraught with severe pain, frightful forests of sword-blades, heated sands, thorny Cālmalis,[92]—these and many other instruments of the most painful torture such a man has to endure in the regions of Yama, O Bhārata![93] The ungrateful person, O chief of Bharata's race, having endued such terrible treatment in the regions of the grim king of the dead, has to come back to this world and take birth among vile vermin.*[94] He has to live as a vile vermin for a period of five and ten years, O Bhārata. He has then to enter the womb and die prematurely before birth.[95] After this, that person has to enter the womb a hundred times in succession. Indeed, having undergone a hundred rebirths, he at last becomes born as a creature in same intermediate order between man and inanimate nature.[96] Having endured misery for a great many years, he has to take birth as a hairless tortoise.[97] A person that steals curds has to take birth as a crane. One becomes a

* He is repeatedly struck with the clubs and hammers and mallets. He is frequently impaled. He is confined with fiery vessels. He is dragged with forests of sword-blades. He is made to walk over heated sand. He is rubbed against thorny Cālmalis. The Cālmali is the *Bombox Malabaricum*.—T.

monkey by stealing raw fish. That man of intelligence who steals honey has to take birth as a gadfly.[98] By stealing fruits or roots or cakes one becomes an ant. By stealing Nishpāva one becomes a Halagolaka.*[99] By stealing Pāyasa one becomes in one's next birth a Tittiri bird. By stealing cakes one becomes a screech-owl.[100] That man of little of intelligence who steals iron has to take birth as a cow. That man of little understanding who steals white brass has to take birth as a bird of the Hārita species.[101] By stealing a vessel of silver one becomes a pigeon. By stealing a vessel of gold one has to take birth as a vile vermin.[102] By stealing a piece of silken cloth, one becomes a Krikara. By stealing a piece of cloth made of red silk, one becomes a Vartaka.†[103] By stealing a piece of muslin one becomes a parrot. By stealing a piece of cloth that is of fine texture, one becomes a duck after casting off one's human body.[104] By stealing a piece of cloth made of cotton, one becomes a crane. By stealing a piece of cloth made of jute, one becomes a sheep in one's next life.[105] By stealing a piece of linen, one has to take birth as a hare. By stealing different kinds of colouring matter one has to take birth as a peacock.[106] By stealing a piece of red cloth one has to take birth as a bird of the Jivajivaka spicies. By stealing unguents (such as sandalpaste) and perfumes in this world,[107] the man possessed of cupidity, O king, has to take birth as a mole. Assuming the form of a mole one has to live in it for a period of five and ten years.[108] After the exhaustion of his demerit by such sufferance he regains the status of humanity. By stealing milk, one becomes a crane.[109] That man, O king, who, through stupefaction of the understanding, steals oil, has to take birth, after casting off this body, as an animal that subsists upon oil as his form.‡[110] That wretch who, himself

---

* The Commentator explains that 'Nishpāva' means 'Rājamāsha' which is a kind of beans. It is the Dolichas catjung. 'Halagolaka' is a long-tailed worm.—T.

† A 'Krikara' is a kind of partridge. It is spelt also as 'Krikala' or 'Krikana.' A 'Vartaka' is a sort of quail.—T.

‡ 'Tailapāyin' is, literally, one that drinks oil. The name is applied to a cockroach.—T.

well-armed, slays another while that other is unarmed, from motives of obtaining his victim's wealth or from feelings of hostility, has, after casting off his human body, to take birth as an ass.[111] Assuming that assinine form he has to live for a period of two years and then he meets with death at the edge of a weapon. Casting off in this way his assine body he has to take birth in his next life as a deer always filled with anxiety (at the thought of foes that may kill him).[112] Upon the expiration of a year from the time of his birth as a deer, he has to yield up his life at the point of a weapon. Thus casting off his form of a deer, he next takes birth as a fish and dies in consequence of being dragged up in a net,[113] on the expiration of the fourth month. He has next to take birth as a beast of prey. For ten years he has to live in that form, and then he takes birth as a pard in which form he has to live for a period of five years.[114] Impelled by the change that is brought about by time, he then casts off that form, and, his demerit having been exhausted, he regains the status of humanity.[115] That man of little understanding who kills a woman has to go to the regions of Yama and to endure diverse kinds of pain and misery. He then has to pass through full one and twenty transformations.[116] After that, O monarch, he has to take birih as a vile vermin. Living as a vermin for twenty years, he regains the status of humanity.[117] By stealing food, one has to take birth as a bee. Living for many months in the company of other bees,[118] his demerit becomes exhausted and he regains the status of humanity. By stealing paddy, one becomes a cat.[119] That man who steals food mixed with sesame cakes has in his next birth to assume the form of a mouse large or small according to the largeness or smallness of the quantity stolen.[120] He bites human beings every day and as the consequence thereof becomes sinful and travels through a varied round of rebirths. That man of foolish understanding who steals ghee has to take birth as a gallinule.[121] That wicked wight who steals fish has to take birth as a crow. By stealing salt one has to take birth as an imitating parrot.[122] That man who misappropriates what is deposited with him through confidence, has to sustain a dimi-

nution in the period of his life, and dying has to take birth among fishes.[123] Having lived for sometime as a fish he dies and regains the human form. Regaining, however, the status of the humanity, he becomes short-lived.[124] Indeed, having committed sins, O Bhārata, one has to take birth in an order intermediate between that of humanity and vegetables. Those people are entirely unacquainted with righteousness which has their own hearts for its authority.[125] Those men that commit diverse acts of sin and then seek to expiate them by continuous vows and observances of piety, become endued with both happiness and misery and live in great anxiety of heart.*[126] Those men that are of sinful conduct and that yield to the influence of cupidity and stupefaction, without doubt, take birth as Mlechcchas that do not deserve to be associated with.[127] Those men, on the other hand, who abstain from sin all their lives, become free from disease of every kind, endued with beauty of form, and possessed of wealth.[128] Women also, when they act in the way indicated, attain to births of the same kind. Indeed, they have to take births as the spouses of the animals I have indicated.[129] I have told thee all the faults that relate to the appropriation of what belongs to others. I have discoursed to thee very briefly on the subject, O sinless one.[130] In connection with some other subject, O Bhārata, thou shalt again hear of those faults. I heard all this, O king, in days of old, from Brahman himself,[131] and I asked all about it in a becoming way, when he discoursed on it in the midst of the celestial Rishis. I have told thee truly and in detail all that thou hadst asked me.[132] Having listened to all this, O monarch, do thou always set thy heart on righteousness.' "[133]

Section CXII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast told me, O regenerate one, what the end is of unrighteousness or sin. I desire now to hear, O foremost of speakers, of what the end is of Righteousness![1] Having committed diverse acts of sin, by what acts

---

* 'Vyathitāh' and 'vyadhitāh' is the correct reading.—T.

do people succeed in attaining to an auspicious end in this world? By what acts also do people attain to auspicious end in Heaven?'[2]

"Vrihaspati said,—'By committing sinful acts with perverted mind, one yields to the sway of unrighteousness and as a consequence goeth to hell.[3] That man who, having perpetrated sinful acts through stupefaction of mind, feels the pangs of repentance and sets his heart on contemplation (of the deity), has not to endure the consequences of his sins.[4] One becomes freed from one's sins in proportion as one repents for them.[5] If one, having committed a sin, O king, proclaims it in the presence of Brāhmanas conversant with duties, one becomes quickly cleansed from the obloquy arising from one's sin.[6] Accordingly as one proclaims one's sins, fully or otherwise, with concentrated mind, one becomes cleansed therefrom fully or otherwise, like a snake freed from his diseased slough.[7] By making, with a concentrated mind, gifts of diverse kinds unto a Brāhmana, and concentrating the mind (on the deity), one attains to an auspicious end.[8] I shall now tell thee what those gifts are, O Yudhishthira, by making which a person, even if guilty of having committed sinful acts, may become endued with merit.[9] Of all kinds of gifts, that of food is regarded as the best. One desirous of attaining to merit should, with a sincere heart, make gifts of food.[10] Food is the life-breaths of men. From it all creatures are born. All the worlds of living creatures are established upon food. Hence food is applauded.[11] The deities, Rishis, Pitris, and men, all praise food. King Rantideva, in days of old, proceeded to Heaven by making gifts of food.[12] Food that is good and that has been acquired lawfully, should be given, with a cheerful heart, unto such Brāhmanas as are possessed of Vedic lore.[13] That man has never to take birth in an intermediate order, whose food, given with a cheerful heart, is taken by a thousand Brāhmanas.[14] A person, O chief of men, by feeding ten thousand Brāhmanas, becomes cleansed of unrighteousness and devoted to Yoga practices.[15] A Brāhmana conversant with the Vedas, by giving away food acquired by him as alms, unto a Brāhmana devoted to the study of the Vedas, succeeds in attaining to happiness

here.[16] That Kshatriya who, without taking anything that belongs to a Brāhmana, protects his subjects lawfully, and makes gifts of food, obtained by the exercise of his strength, unto Brāhmanas foremost in Vedic knowledge, with concentrated heart, succeeds by such conduct, O thou of righteous soul, in cleansing himself, O son of Pāndu, of all his sinful acts.[17-18] That Vaiçya who divides the produce of his fields into six equal shares and makes a gift of one of those shares unto Brāhmanas, succeeds by such conduct in cleansing himself from every sin.[19] That Cudra who, earning food by hard labour and at the risk of life itself, makes a gift of it to Brāhmanas, becomes cleansed from every sin.[20] That man who, by putting forth his physical strength, earns food without doing any act of injury to any creature, and makes gift of it unto Brāhmanas succeeds in avoiding all calamities.[21] A person by cheerfully making gifts of food acquired by lawful means unto Brāhmanas pre-eminent for Vedic lore, becomes cleansed of all his sins.[22] By treading in the path of the righteous one becomes freed from all sins. A person by making gifts of such food as is productive of great energy, becomes himself possessed of great energy.[23] The path made by charitable persons is always trod by those that are endued with wisdom. They that make gifts of food are regarded as givers of life. The merit they acquire by such gifts is eternal.[24] Hence, a person should, under all circumstances, seek to earn food by lawful means, and having earned to make always gifts of it unto deserving men. Food is the great refuge of the world of living creatures.[25] By making gifts of food, one has never to go to hell. Hence, one should always make gifts of food, having earned it by lawful means.[26] The house-holder should always seek to eat after having made a gift of food unto a Brāhmana. Every man should make the day fruitful by making gifts of food.*[27] A person by feeding, O king, a thousand Brāhmanas all of whom are conversant with duties and the scriptures and the sacred histories,[28] has not to go to Hell and to return to this world for undergoing rebirths. Endued with the fruition of

* That day is sterile or lost in which no gift is made of food. —T.

every wish, he enjoys great felicity hereafter.[29] Possessed of such merit, he sports in happiness, freed from every anxiety, possessed of beauty of form and great fame and endued with wealth.[30] I have thus told thee all about the high merit of gifts of food. Even this is the root of all righteousness and merit, as also of all gifts, O Bhārata !' "[31]

Section CXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Abstaintion from injury, the observance of the Vedic ritual, meditation, subjugation of the senses, penances, and obedient services rendered to the preceptors,—which amongst these is fraught with the greatest merit with respect of a person ?'[1]

"Vrihaspati said,—'All these six are fraught with merit. They are different doors of Righteousness. I shall discourse upon them presently. Do thou listen to them, O chief of the Bharatas ![2] I shall tell thee what constitutes the highest good of a human being. That man who practices the religion of universal compassion achieves his highest good.[3] That man who keeps under control the three faults, *viz.*, lust, wrath, and cupidity, by throwing them upon all creatures, (and practises the virtue of compassion), attains to success.*[4] He who, from motives of his own happiness, slays other harmless creatures with the rod of chastisement, never attains to happiness in the next world.[5] That man who regards all creatures as his own self, and behaves towards them as towards his own self, laying aside the rod of chastisement and completely subjugating his wrath, succeeds in attaining to happiness.[6] The very deities, who are desirous of a fixed abode, become stupefied in ascertaining the track of that person who constitutes himself the soul of all creatures and looks upon them all as his own self, for such a

---

* 'Kāma' and 'krodha' are mentioned; but the use of 'cha' gives by implication cupidity. What is meant by 'nidhāya-sarvabhuteshu' is, dividing them into infinite small parts, to cast them off from oneself to others. It is painful to see how the Burdwan translators misunderstand Verses 2 and 3. They read 'Hanti' for 'Hanta,' and write ridiculous nonsense.—T.

person leaves no track behind.*[7] One should never do that to another which one regards as injurious to one's own self. This, in brief, is the rule of Righteousness. One by acting in a different way by yielding to desire, becomes guilty of unrighteousness.[8] In refusals and gifts, in happiness and misery, in the agreeable and the disagreeable, one should judge of their effects by a reference to one's own self.†[9] When one injures another, the injured turns round and injures the injurer. Similarly, when one cherishes another, that other cherishes the cherisher. One should frame one's rule of conduct according to this. I have told thee what Righteousness is even by this subtile way.' "[10]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"The preceptor of the deities, possessed of great intelligence, having said this unto king Yudhishthira the just, ascended upwards for proceeding to Heaven, before our eyes."[11]

Section CXIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After this, king Yudhishthira, endued with great energy, and the foremost of eloquent men, addressed his grandsire lying on his bed of arrows, in the following words.[1]

"Yudhishthira said,—'O thou of great intelligence, the Rishis and Brāhmanas and the deities, led by the authority of the Vedas, all applaud that religion which has compassion for its indication.[2] But, O king, what I ask thee is this: how does a man, who has perpetrated acts of injury to others in word, thought and deed, succeed in cleansing himself from misery?'[3]

---

* In the first line, after 'Sarvabhutāni' 'ātmatwena' is understood. The sense of this Verse seems to be this: such a man leaves no trace behind him, for he becomes identified with Brahma. He is, therefore, said to be 'apada.' The deities, on the other hand, are 'padaishinah', for they desire a fixed abode such a Heaven or a spot fraught with felicity.—T.

† The sense is that when one refuses a solicitation one should think how one would feel if another were to refuse the solicitations one addressed to that other. So with regard to the rest.—T.

"Bhishma said,—'Utterers of Brahma have said that there are four kinds of compassion or abstention from injury. If even one of those four kinds be not observed, the religion of compassion, it is said, is not observed.[4] As all four-footed animals are incapable of standing on three legs, even so the religion of compassion cannot stand if any of those four divisions or parts be wanting.[5] As the foot-prints of all other animals are engulphed in those of the elephant, even so all other religions are said to be comprehended in that of compassion. A person becomes guilty of injury through acts, words and thoughts.*[6-7] Discarding it mentally at the outset, one should next discard it in word and thought. He who, according to this rule, abstains from eating meat is said to be cleansed in a threefold way.[8] It is heard that utterers of Brahma ascribe to three causes (the sin of eating meat). That sin may attach to the mind, to words, and to acts.[9] It is for this reason that men of wisdom who are endued with penances refrain from eating meat. Listen to me, O king, as I tell thee what the faults are that attach to the eating of meat.[10] The meat of other animals is like the flesh of one's son. That foolish person, stupified by folly, who eats meat is regarded as the vilest of human beings.[11] The union of father and mother produces an offspring. After the same manner, the cruelty that a helpless and sinful wretch commits, produces its progeny of repeated rebirths fraught with great misery.[12] As the tongue is the cause of the knowledge or sensation of taste, so, the scriptures declare, attachment proceeds from taste.†[13] Well-dressed, cooked with salt or without salt, meat, in whatever form one may take it, gradually attracts the mind and enslaves it.[14] How will those foolish men that subsist upon meat succeed in listening to the sweet music of (celestial) drums and cymbals and lyres and harps?[15] They who eat meat

---

* By committing a slaughter, one becomes guilty of it. By inciting others to it, one becomes guilty. By mentally committing an act of slaughter, one becomes guilty of it.—T.

† *I. e.*, by eating meat, one feels the desire for meat increasing. A taste or predilection for meat is thus created. Hence, the best course is total abstinence.—T.

applaud it highly, suffering themselves to be stupified by its taste which they pronounce to be something inconceivable, undescriable, and unimaginable.[16] Such praise even of meat is fraught with demerit. In former days, many righteous men, by giving the flesh of their own bodies, protected the flesh of other creatures and as a consequence of such acts of merit, have proceeded to Heaven.[17] In this way, O monarch, the religion of compassion is surrounded by four considerations. I have thus declared to thee that religion which comprises all other religions within it.' "[18]

Section CXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast told it many times that obstention from injury is the highest religion. In Crāddhas, however, that are performed in honor of the Pitris, persons for their own good should make offerings of diverse kinds of meat.[1] Thou hast said so while discoursing formerly upon the ordinances in respect of Crāddhas. How can meat, however, be procured without slaying a living creature? Thy declarations, therefore, seem to me to be contradictory.[2] A doubt has, therefore, arisen in our mind respecting the duty of abstaining from meat. What are the faults that one incurs by eating meat, and what are the merits that one wins?[3] What are the demerits of him who eats meat by himself killing a living creature? What are the merits of him who eats the meat of animals killed by others? What the merits or demerits of him who kills a living creature for another? Or of him who eats meat buying it of others?[4] I desire, O sinless one, that thou shouldst discourse to me on this topic in detail. I desire to ascertain this eternal religion with certainty.[5] How does one attain to longevity? How does one acquire strength? How does one attain to faultlessness of limbs? Indeed, how does one become endued with excellent indications?'[6]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen to me, O scion of Kuru's race, what the merit is that attaches to abstention from meat. Listen to me as I declare to thee what the excellent ordinances, in truth, are on this head.[7] Those high-souled persons who

desire beauty, faultlessness of limbs, long life, understanding, mental and physical strength, and memory, should abstain from acts of injury.[8] On this topic, O scion of Kuru's race, innumerable discourses took place between the Rishis. Listen, O Yudhishthira, what their opinion was.[9] The merit acquired by that person, O Yudhishthira, who, with the steadiness of a vow, adores the deities every month in horse-sacrifices, is equal to his who discards honey and meat.[10] The seven celestial Rishis, the Vālakhillyas, and those Rishis who drink the rays of the sun, endued as all of them are with great wisdom, applaud abstention from meat.[11] The Self-born Manu has said that man who does not eat meat, or who does not slay living creatures, or who does not cause them to be slain, is a friend of all creatures.[12] Such a man is incapable of being oppressed by any creature. He enjoys the confidence of all living beings. He always enjoys, besides, the approbation and commendation of the righteous.[13] The righteous-souled Nārada has said that that man who wishes to increase his own flesh by eating the flesh of other creatures, meet with calamity.[14] Vrihaspati has said that that man who abstains from honey and meat acquires the merit of gifts and sacrifices and penances.[15] In my estimation, these two persons are equal, *viz.*, he who adores the deities every month in a horse-sacrifice for a space of hundred years and he who abstains from honey and meat.[16] In consequence of abstention from meat one comes to be regarded as one who always adores the deities in sacrifices, or as one who always makes gifts to others, or as one who always undergoes the severest austerities.[17] That man who having eaten meat gives it up afterwards, acquires merit by such an act that is so great that a study of all the Vedas or a performance, O Bhārata, of all the sacrifices, cannot bestow its like.[18] It is exceedingly difficult to give up meat after one has become acquainted with its taste. Indeed, it is exceedingly difficult for such a person to observe the high vow of abstention from meat, a vow that assures every creature by dispelling all fear.[19] That learned person who giveth to all living creatures the Dakshinā of complete assurance comes to be regarded, without doubt, as the giver of life-breaths in this

world.*[20] Even this is the high religion which men of wisdom applaud. The life-breaths of other creatures are as dear to them as those of one's to one's own self.[21] Men endued with intelligence and cleansed souls should always behave towards other creatures after the manner of that behaviour which they like others to observe towards themselves. It is seen that even those men who are possessed of learning and who seek to achieve the highest good in the form of Emancipation, are not free from the fear of death.[22] What need there be said of those innocent and healthy creatures endued with love of life, when they are sought to be slain by sinful wretches subsisting by slaughter?[23] For this reason, O monarch, know that the discarding of meat is the highest refuge of religion, of Heaven, and of happiness.[24] Abstention from injury is the highest religion. It is, again, the highest penance. It is also the highest truths from which all duty proceeds.[25] Flesh cannot be had from grass or wood or stone. Unless a living creature is slain, it cannot be had. Hence is the fault in eating flesh.[26] The deities, who subsist upon Swāhā, Swadhā, and nectar, are devoted to truth and sincerity. Those persons, however, who are for gratifying the sensation of taste, should be known as Rākshasas wedded to the attribute of Passion.[27] That man who abstains from meat, is never put in fear, O king, by any creature, wherever he may be, *viz.*, in terrible wildernesses or inaccessible fastnesses, by day or by night, or at the two twilights, in the open squares of towns or in assemblies of men, from upraised weapons or in places where there is great fright from wild animals or snakes.[28-29] All creatures seek his protection. He is an object of confidence with all creatures. He never causes any anxiety in others, and himself has never to become anxious.[30] If there were nobody who ate flesh there would then be nobody to kill living creatures. The man who kills living creatures kills them for the sake of the

* The sense is this: he who observes the vow of abstention from injury comes to be regarded as the giver of life-breaths in this world. The assurance given to all creatures of never injuring them on any occassion is the Dakshinā or Sacrificial present of the great sacrifice that is constituted by universal compassion or abstention from injury.—

person who eats flesh.[31] If flesh were regarded as inedible, there would then be no slaughter of living creatures. It is for the sake of the eater that the slaughter of living creatures goes on in the world.[32] Since, O thou of great splendour, the period of life is shortened of persons who slaughter living creatures or cause them to be slaughtered, it is clear that the person who wishes his own good should give up meat entirely.[33] Those fierce persons who are engaged in the slaughter of living creatures, never find protectors when they are in need. Such persons should always be molested and persecuted even as beasts of prey.[34] Through cupidity or stupefaction of the understanding, for the sake of strength and energy, or through association with the sinful, the disposition manifests itself in men for sinning.[35] That man who seeks to increase his own flesh by (eating) the flesh of others, has to live in this world in great anxiety and after death has to take birth in indifferent races and families.[36] High Rishis devoted to the observance of vows and self-restraint have said that abstention from meat is worthy of every praise, productive of fame and Heaven, and a great propitiation by itself.[37] This I heard in days of old, O son of Kunti, from Mārkandeya when that Rishi discoursed on the demerits of eating flesh.[38] He who eats the flesh of animals that are desirous of living but that have been killed by either himself or others, incurs the sin that attaches to the slaughter for his this act of cruelty.[39] He who purchases flesh slays living creatures through his wealth. He who eats flesh slays living creatures through such act of eating. He who binds or seizes and actually kills living creatures is the slaughterer. These are the three kinds of slaugther, each of these three acts being so.[40] He who does not himself eat flesh but approves of an act of slaughter becomes stained with the sin of slaughter.[41] By abstaining from meat and showing compassion to all creatures one becomes incapable of being molested by any creature, and acquires a long life, perfect health, and happiness.[42] The merit that is acquired by a person by abstaining from meat, we have heard, is superior to that of one who makes presents of gold, of kine, and of land.[43] One should never eat meat of animals not dedicated in sacri-

fices and that are, therefore, slain for nothing, and that has not been offered to the gods and Pitris with the aid of the ordinances. There is not the slightest doubt that a person by eating such meat goes to Hell.[44] If one eats the meat that has been sanctified in consequence of its having been procured from animals dedicated in sacrifices and that have been slain for the purpose of feeding Brāhmanas, one incurs a little fault. By behaving otherwise, one becomes stained with sin.[45] That wretch among men who slays living creatures for the sake of those who would eat them, incurs great demerit. The eater's demerit is not so great.[46] That wretch among men who, following the path of religious rites and sacrifices laid down in the Vedas, would kill a living creature from desire of eating its flesh, would certainly become a resident of Hell.[47] That man who having eaten flesh abstains from it afterwards, attains to great merit in consequence of such abstention from sin.[48] He who arranges for obtaining flesh, he who approves of those arrangements, he who slays, he who buys or sells, he who cooks, and he who eats, are all regarded as eaters of flesh.[49] I shall now cite another authority, depending upon what was declared by the ordainer himself, that is ancient, adored by the Rishis, and established in the Vedas.[50] It has been said that that religion which has acts for its indications has been ordained for house-holders, O chief of kings, and not for those men who are desirous of emancipation.[51] Manu himself has said that meat which is sanctified with mantras and properly dedicated, according to the ordinances of the Vedas, in rites performed in honor of the Pitris, is pure.[52] All other meat falls under the class of what is obtained by useless slaughter, and is, therefore, inedible, and leads to Hell and infamy. One should never eat, O chief of Bharata's race, like a Rākshasa, any meat that has been obtained by means not sanctioned by the ordinance. Indeed, one should never eat flesh obtained from useless slaughter and that has not been sanctified by the ordinance.[53-54] That man who wishes to avoid calamity of every kind should abstain from the meat of every living creature.[55] It is heard that in the ancient Kalpa, persons, desirous of attaining to regions of merit here-

after, performed sacrifices with seeds, regarding such animals as dedicated by them.[56] Filled with doubts respecting the propriety of eating flesh, the Rishis asked Vasu the ruler of the Chedis for solving them. King Vasu, knowing that flesh is inedible, answered that it was edible, O monarch.[57] From that moment Vasu fell down from the firmament on the Earth. After this he once more repeated his opinion, with the result that he had to sink below the Earth for it.[58] Desirous of benefiting all men, the high-souled Agastya, by the aid of his penances, dedicated, once for all, all wild animals of the deer species to the deities.[59] Hence there is no longer any necessity of sanctifying those animals for offering them to the deities and the Pitris. Served with flesh according to the ordinance, the Pitris become gratified.[60] Listen to me, O king of kings, as I tell thee this, O sinless one. There is complete happiness in abstaining from meat, O monarch.[61] He that undergoes severe austerities for a hundred years, and he that abstains from meat, are both equal in point of merit. Even this is my opinion.[62] In the lighted fortnight of the month of Kārtika in especial, one should abstain from honey and meat. In this, it has been ordained, there is great merit.[63] He who abstains from meat for the four months of the rainy season acquires the four valued blessings of achievements, longevity, fame, and might.[64] He who abstains for the whole month of Kārtika from meat of every kind, transcends all kinds of woe and lives in complete happiness.[65] They who abstain from flesh by either months or fortnights at a stretch have the region of Brahma ordained for them in consequence of their abstention from cruelty.[66] Many kings in ancient days, O son of Prithā, who had constituted themselves the souls of all creatures and who were conversant with the truths of all things *viz.*, Soul and Not-soul, had abstained from flesh either for the whole of the month of Kārtika or for the whole of the lighted fortnight in that month.[67] They were Nābhāga and Amvarisha and the high-souled Gaya and Āyu and Anaranya and Dwilipa and Raghu and Puru,[68] and Kārtavirya and Aniruddha and Nahusha and Yayāti and Nriga, and Vishwaksena and Cacavindu,[69] and Yuvanāçwa and Civi the

son of Uçinara, and Muchukunda and Māndhātri, and Hariçchandra.[70] Do thou always say the truth. Never say an untruth. Truth is an eternal duty. It is by truth that Hariçchandra roves through Heaven like a second Chandramas.[71] These other kings also, *viz.*, Cyenachitra, O monarch, and Somaka and Vrika and Raivata and Rantideva and Vasu and Srinjaya,[72] and Dushmanta and Karushma, and Rāma and Alarka and Nala, and Virupāçwa and Nimi and Janaka of great intelligence,[73] and Aila and Prithu and Virasena, and Ikshāku, and Cambhu, and Cweta, and Sagara,[74] and Aja and Dhundhu and Suvāhu, and Haryyaçwa and Kshupa and Bharata,[75] O monarch, did not eat flesh for the month of Kārtika and as the consequence thereof attained to Heaven,[76] and endued with prosperity, blaze forth with effulgence in the region of Brahman, adored by Gandharvas and Surrounded by a thousand damsels of great beauty.[77] Those high-souled men who practice this excellent Religion which is characterised by abstention from injury succeed in attaining to a residence in Heaven.[78] These righteous men who, from the time of birth, abstain from honey and meat and wine, are regarded as Munis.[79] That man who practises this religion consisting of abstention from meat or who recites it for causing others to hear it, will never have to go to Hell even if he be exceedingly wicked in conduct in other respects.[80] He, O king, who (often times) reads these ordinances about abstention from meat, that are sacred and adored by the Rishis, or hears it read,[81] becomes cleansed of every sin and attains to great felicity in consequence of the fruition of every wish. Without doubt, he attains also to a position of eminence among kinsmen.[82] When afflicted with calamity, he readily transcends it. When obstructed with impediments, he succeeds in freeing himself from them with the utmost ease. When ill with disease, he becomes cured speedily, and afflicted with sorrow he becomes liberated from it with greatest ease.[83] Such a man has never to take birth in the intermediate order of animals or birds. Born in the order of humanity, he attains to great beauty of person. Endued with great prosperity, O chief of Kuru's race, he acquires great fame as well.[84] I

have thus told thee, O king, all that should be said on the subject of abstention from meat, together with the ordinances respecting both the religion of Pravritti and Nivritti as framed by the Rishis.' "[85]

SECTION CXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Alas, those cruel men, who, discarding diverse kinds of food, covet only flesh, are really like great Rākshasas![1] Alas, they do not relish diverse kinds of cakes and diverse sorts of potherbs and various species of Khanda with juicy flavour so much as they do flesh![2] My understanding, for this reason, becomes stupified in this matter. I think, when such is the case, that, there is nothing which can compare with flesh in the matter of taste.[3] I desire, therefore, O puissant one, to hear what the merits are of abstention from flesh, and the demerits that attach to the eating of flesh, O chief of Bharata's race![4] Thou art conversant with every duty. Do thou discourse to me, in full, agreeably to the ordinances on duty, on this subject! Do tell me what, indeed, is edible and what inedible![5] Tell me, O grandsire, what is flesh, of what substances it is, the merits that attach to abstention from it, and what the demerits are that attach to the eating of flesh!'[6]

"Bhishma said,—'It is even so, O mighty-armed one, as thou sayest! There is nothing on Earth that is superior to flesh in point of taste.[7] There is nothing that is more beneficial than flesh to persons that are lean, or weak, or afflicted with disease, or addicted to sexual congress, or exhausted with travel.[8] Flesh speedily increases strength. It ordains great development. There is no food, O scorcher of foes, that is superior to flesh.[9] But, O delighter of the Kurus, the merits are great that attach to men that abstain from it. Listen to me as I discourse to thee on it.[10] That man who wishes to increase his own flesh by the flesh of another living creature is such that there is none meaner and more cruel than him.[11] In this world there is nothing that is dearer to a creature than his life. Hence (without taking that valuable possession)

one should show compassion to the lives of others as one does to one's own life.[12] Without doubt, O son, flesh has its origin in the vital seed. There is great demerit attaching to its eating, as, indeed, there is merit in abstaining from it.[13] One does not, however, incur any fault by eating flesh sanctified according to the ordinances of the Vedas. The audition is heard that animals were created for sacrifice. They who eat flesh in any other way are said to follow the Rākshasa practice.[14] Listen to me as I tell thee what the ordinance is that has been laid down for the Kshatriyas. They do not incur any fault by eating flesh that has been acquired by expenditure of prowess.[15] All deer of the wilderness have been dedicated to tne deities and the Pitris in days of old, O king, by Agastya. Hence, the hunting of deer is not censured.[16] There can be no hunting without risk of one's own life. There is equality of risk between the slayer and the slain. Either the animal is killed or it kills the hunter.[17] Hence, O Bhārata, even royal sages betake themselves to the practice of hunting. By such conduct they do not become stained with sin. Indeed the practice is not regarded sinful.[18] There is nothing, O delighter of the Kurus, that is equal in point of merit, either here or hereafter, to the practice of compassion to all living creatures.[19] The man of compassion has no fear. Those harmless men that are endued with compassion have both this world and next.[20] Persons conversant with duty say that that Religion is worthy of being called Religion which has abstention from cruelty for its indication. The man of cleansed soul should do only such acts as have compassion for their soul.[21] That flesh which is dedicated in sacrifices performed in honor of the deities and the Pitris is called Havi (and, as such, is worthy of being eaten). That man who is devoted to compassion and who behaves with compassion towards others, has no fear to entertain from any creature.[22] It is heard that all creatures abstain from causing any fear unto such a creature. Whether he is wounded or fallen down or prostrated or weakened or bruised,[23] in whatever state he may be, all creatures protect him. Indeed, they do so, under all circumstances, whether he is on even or uneven grou nd. Neither snakes nor

wild animals, neither Piçāchas nor Rākshasas, ever slay him.[24] When circumstances of fear arise, he becomes freed from fear who frees others from situations of fear. There has never been, nor will there ever be, a gift that is superior to the gift of life.[25] It is certain that there is nothing dearer to oneself than one's life. Death, O Bhārata, is a calamity or evil unto all creatures.[26] When the time comes for Death, a trembling of the whole frame is seen in all creatures. Enduring birth in the uterus, decrepitude, and afflictions of diverse kinds, in this ocean of the world,[27] living creatures may be seen to be continually going forward and coming back. Every creature is afflicted by death. While dwelling in the uterus, all creatures are cooked in the fluid juices, that are alkaline and sour and bitter,[28] of urine and phlegm and fæces,—juices that produce painful sensations and are difficult to bear. There in the uterus, they have to dwell in a state of helplessness and are even repeatedly torn and pierced.[29] They that are covetuous of meat are seen to be repeatedly cooked in the uterus in such a state of helplessness. Attaining to diverse kinds of birth, they are cooked in the hell called Kumbhipāka.[30] They are assailed and slain, and in this way have to travel repeatedly. There is nothing so dear to one as one's life when one comes to this world.[31] Hence a person of cleansed soul should be compassionate to all living creatures. That man, O king, who abstains from every kind of meat from his birth,[32] without doubt, acquires a large space in Heaven. They who eat the flesh of animals who are desirous of life,[33] are themselves eaten by the animals they eat, without doubt. Even this is my opinion. Since he hath eaten me, I shall eat him in return,[34]—even this, O Bhārata, constitutes the character as *Mānsa* of Mānsa.* The slayer is always slain. After him the eater meets with the same fate.[35] He who acts with hostility towards another (in this life) becomes

---

* 'Mānsa' is flesh. This Verse explains the etymology of the word. 'Mām' (me) 'sa' (he): '*Me he* eateth, therefore, I shall eat him.' The words following 'Me he' should be supplied in order to get at the meaning.—T.

the victim of similar acts done by that other. Whatever acts one does in whatever bodies,[36] one has to suffer the consequences thereof in those bodies.* Abstention from cruelty is the highest Religion. Abstention from cruelty is the highest self-control.[37] Abstention from cruelty is the highest gift. Abstention from cruelty is the highest penance. Abstention from cruelty is the highest sacrifice. Abstention from cruelty is the highest puissance.[38] Abstention from cruelty is the highest friend. Abstention from cruelty is the highest happiness. Abstention from cruelty is the highest truth. Abstention from cruelty is the highest Cruti.[39] Gifts made in all sacrifices, ablutions performed in all sacred waters, and the merit that one acquires from making all kinds of gifts mentioned in the scriptures,—all these do not come up to abstention from cruelty (in point of the merit that attaches to it).[40] The penances of a man that abstains from cruelty are inexhaustible. The man that abstains from cruelty is regarded as always performing sacrifices. The man that abstains from cruelty is the father and mother of all creatures.[41] Even these, O chief of Kuru's race, are some of the merits of abstention from cruelty. Altogether, the merits that attach to it are so many that they are incapable of being exhausted even if one were to speak for a hundred years.' "[42]

Section CXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Desiring to die or desiring to live, many persons give up their lives in the great sacrifice (of battle). Tell me, O grandsire, what is the end that these attain to![1] To throw away life in battle is fraught with sorrow for men. O thou of great wisdom, thou knowest that to give up life is difficult for men whether they are in prosperity or adversity, in felicity or calamity. In my opinion, thou art possessed of omniscience. Do thou tell me the reason of this![2-3]

---

* The sense is this; one, while endued with a human body injures another, the consequences of that injury the door will suffer in his human body. One becomes a tiger and slays a deer. The consequences of that act one will have to endure while one becomes reborn as a tiger.—T.

"Bhishma said,—'In prosperity or adversity, in happiness or woe, living creatures, O lord of Earth, coming into this world, live according to a particular tenour.[4] Listen to me as I explain the reason to thee! The question thou hast asked me is excellent, O Yudhishthira![5] In this connection, O king, I shall explain to thee the old narrative of the discourse that took place in former times between the Island-born Rishi and a crawling worm.[6] In days of old, when that learned Brāhmana, *viz.*, the Island-born Krishna, having identified himself with Brahma, roamed over the world, he beheld, on a road over which cars used to pass, a worm moving speedily.[7] The Rishi was conversant with the course of every creature and the language of every animal. Possessed of omniscience, he addressed the worm he saw in these words.[8]

"'Vyāsa said,—O worm, thou seemst to be exceedingly alarmed, and to be in great haste! Tell me, whither dost thou run, and whence hast thou been afraid!—[9]

"'The worm said,—Hearing the rattle of yonder large car I am filled with fear! O thou of great intelligence, fierce is the roar it makes. It is almost come![10] The sound is heard. Will it not kill me? It is for this that I am flying away. The sound, as it is heard from a near point, I catch, of the bulls I hear.[11] They are breathing hard under the whip of the driver, as they are drawing the heavy burthen. I hear also the diverse sounds made by the men who are driving the bulls.[12] Such sounds are incapable of being heard by a creature that like us has taken his birth in the order of worms. It is for this reason that I am flying from this situation of great fright.[13] Death is felt by all creatures to be fraught with pain. Life is an acquisition difficult to make. Hence, I fly away in fear, I do not wish to pass from a state of happiness to one of woe!'—[14]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed, the Island-born Vyāsa said,—O worm, whence can be thy happiness? Thou belongest to the intermediate order of being. I think death would be fraught with happiness to thee![15] Sound, touch, taste, scent, and diverse kinds of excellent enjoyments are unknown to thee, O worm! I think death will prove a benefit to thee!—[16]

"'The worm said,—A living creature, in whatever situation he may be placed, becomes attached to it. In even this order of being I am happy, I think, O thou of great wisdom! It is for this that I wish to live.[17] In even this condition, every object of enjoyment exists for me according to the needs of my body. Human beings and those creatures that spring from immobile objects have different enjoyments.[18] In my former life I was a human being. O puissant one, I was a Cudra possessed of great wealth. I was not devoted to the Brāhmanas. I was cruel, vile in conduct, and a usurer.[19] I was harsh in speech. I regarded conning as wisdom. I hated all creatures. Taking advantage of pretexts in compacts made between myself and others, I was always given to take away what belonged to others.[20] Without feeding servants and guests arrived at my house, I used to fill, when hungry, my own stomach, under the impulse of pride, covetous of good food, cruel as I was.[21] Greedy as I was of wealth, I never dedicated, with faith and reverence, any food to the deities and the Pitris, although duty required me to dedicate food unto them.[22] Those men that came to me, moved by fear, for seeking my protection, I sent adrift without giving them any protection. I did not extend my protection to those that came to me with prayers for dispelling their fear.[23] I used to feel unreasonable envy at seeing other people's wealth, and corn, and spouses held dear by them, and articles of drink, and good mansions.[24] Beholding the happiness of others I was filled with envy and I always wished them poverty. Following that course of conduct which promised to crown my own wishes with fruition, I sought to destroy the virtue, wealth, and pleasures of other people.[25] In that past life of mine, I committed diverse deeds largely fraught with cruelty and such other passions. Recollecting those acts I am filled with repentance and grief even as one is filled with grief at the loss of one's dear son.[26] In consequence of these acts of mine I do not know what the fruits are of good deeds. I, however, worshipped my old mother and on one occation worshipped a Brāhmana.[27] Endued with birth and accomplishments, that Brāhmana, in course of his wanderings, came to my house once as a guest.

I received him with reverent hospitality. In consequence of the merit attaching to that act, my memory has not forsaken me.[28] I think that in consequence of that act I shall once more succeed in regaining happiness. O thou of ascetic wealth, thou knowest everything. Do thou in kindness tell me what is for my good !—' "[29]

SECTION CXVIII.

"'Vyāsa said,—It is in consequence of a meritorious act, O worm, that thou, though born in the intermediate order of being, art not stupified. That act is mine, O worm, in consequence of which thou art not stupified.*[1] In consequence of the puissance of my penances, I am able to rescue a being of demerit by granting him a sight only of my person. There is no stronger might than the might that attaches to penances.[2] I know, O worm, that thou hast taken birth in the order of worms through the evil acts of thy past life. If, however, thou thinkest of attaining to righteousness and merit, thou mayst again attain to it.[3] Deities as well as beings crowned with ascetic success, enjoy or endure the consequence of acts done by them in this field of action. Amongst men also, when acts of merit are performed, they are performed from desire of fruit (and not with disregard for fruit). The very accomplishments that one seeks to acquire are sought from desire of the happiness they will bring.†[4] Learned or ignorant (in a former life), the creature that is, in this life, destitute of speech and understanding and hands and feet, is really destitute of everything.‡[5] He that becomes a superior Brāhmana adores,

---

* What the sage says is that the fact of the worm's being able to recollect the incidents of his past life is due to some meritorious act. That meritorious act is the very sight of the sage which the worm has been fortunate to obtain.—T.

† The sense is that among human beings also, acts are done with the intention of securing happiness. In other words, human beings also enjoy the fruits of their good acts and endure those of their evil ones.—T.

‡ Literally, the Verse runs,—'what is that which would forsake a creature that is destitute of &c.,' meaning that such a creature has been

while alive, the deities of the Sun and the Moon, uttering diverse sacred Mantras. O worm, thou shalt attain to that state of existence.[6] Attaining to that status, thou wilt enjoy all the elements converted into articles of enjoyment. When thou hast attained to that state, I shall impart to thee Brahma. Or, if thou wishest, I may place thee in any other status![7]—The worm, agreeing to the words of Vyāsa, did not leave the road, but remained on it. Meanwhile, the large vehicle which was coming in that direction came to that spot.[8] Torn to pieces by the assault of the wheels, the worm gave up his life-breaths. Born at last in the Kshatriya order through the grace of Vyāsa of immeasurable puissance,[9] he proceeded to see the great Rishi. He had, before becoming a Kshatriya, to pass through diverse orders of being, such as hedge-hog and Ignana and boar and deer and bird,[10] and Chandāla and Cudra and Vaiçya. Having given an account of his various transformations unto the truth-telling Rishi, and remembering the Rishi's kindness for him, the worm (now transformed into a Kshatriya) with joined hands fell at the Rishis feet and touched them with his head.[11]

"'The worm said,—My present status is that high one which is coveted by all and which is attainable by the possession of the ten well known attributes. Indeed, I who was formerly a worm have thus attained to the status of a prince.[12] Elephants of great strength, decked with golden chains, bear me on their backs. Unto my cars are yoked Kāmvoja steeds of high mettle.[13] Numerous vehicles, unto which are attached camels and mules, bear me. With all my relatives and friends I now eat food rich with meat.[14] Worshipped by all, I sleep, O highly blessed one, on costly beds in delightful rooms into which disagreeable winds cannot blow.[15] Towards the small hours of every night, Sutas and Māgadhas and encomiasts utter my praises even as the deities utter the agreeable praises of Indra their chief.[16] Through the grace of thyself that art

---

already forsaken by everything. Hence, the worm that is destitute of speech, &c., is destitute of everything. Its condition is really fraught with great misery.—T.

firm in truth and endued with immeasurable energy, I who was before a worm have now become a person of the royal order.[17] I bow my head to thee, O thou of great wisdom. Do thou command me as to what I should now do! Ordained by the puissance of thy penances, even this happy status hath now become mine!—[18]

"'Vyāsa said,—I have today been worshipped by thee, O king, with diverse words expressive of reverence. Transformed into a worm, thy memory had become clouded. That memory has again appeared.*[19] The sin thou hast earned in a former life has not yet been destroyed,—that sin, *viz.*, which was earned by thee while thou wert a Cudra covetous of wealth and cruel in behaviour and hostile to the Brāhmanas.[20] Thou wert able to obtain a sight of my person. That was an act of merit to thee while thou wert a worm. In consequence of thy having saluted and worshipped me thou shalt rise higher, for, from the Kshatriya order thou shalt rise to the status of a Brāhmana, if only thou castest off thy life-breaths on the field of battle for the sake of kine or Brāhmanas.[21-22] O prince, enjoying much felicity and performing many sacrifices with copious presents, thou shalt attain to Heaven and transformed into eternal Brahma perfect beatitude will be thine.[23] Those that take birth in the intermediate order (of animals) become (when they rise) Cudras. The Cudra rises to the status of the Vaiçya; and the Vaiçya to that of the Kshatriya. The Kshatriya who takes a pride in the discharge of the duties of his order, succeeds in attaining to the status of a Brāhmana. The Brāhmana, by following a righteous conduct, attains to Heaven that is fraught with great felicity.—'"[24]

Section CXIX.

"Bhishma said,—'Having cast off the status of a worm and taken birth as a Kshatriya of great energy, the person (of whom I am speaking), remembering his previous transformations, O monarch, began to undergo severe austerities.[1] Beholding those severe austerities of the Kshatriya who was well

* 'Jugupsitā smritih jātā' is the paraphrase.—T.

conversant with religion and wealth, the Island-born Krishna, that foremost of Brāhmanas, went to him.[2]

"'Vyāsa said,—The penances that appertain, O worm, to Kshatriya order consist of the protection of all creatures. Do thou regard these duties of the Kshatriya order to be the penances laid down for thee. Thou shalt then attain to the status of a Brāhmana.[3] Ascertaining what is right and what is wrong, and cleansing thy soul, do thou duly cherish and protect all creatures, judiciously gratifying all good desires and correcting all that is unholy.[4] Be thou of cleansed soul, be thou contented and be thou devoted to the practice of righteousness. Conducting thyself in this way, thou wilt then, when thou castest off thy life-breaths, become a Brāhmana !—'[5]

"Bhishma continued,—'Although he had retired into the woods, yet, O Yudhishthira, having heard the words of the great Rishi he began to cherish and protect his subjects righteously.[6] Soon, O best of kings, that worm, in consequence of the duty of protecting his subjects, become a Brāhmana after casting off his Kshatriya body.[7] Beholding him transformed into a Brāhmana, the celebrated Rishi, *viz.*, the Island-born Krishna of great wisdom, came to him.[8]

"'Vyāsa said,—O chief of Brāhmanas, O blessed one, be not troubled (through fear of death) ! He who acts righteously attains to respectable birth. He, on the other hand, who acts unrighteously attains to a low and vile birth. O thou that art conversant with righteousness, one attains to misery agreeably to the measure of one's sin.[9] Therefore, O worm, do not be troubled through fear of death. The only fear thou shouldst entertain is about the loss of righteousness. Do thou, therefore, go on practicing righteousness !—[10]

"'The worm said,—Through thy grace, O holy one, I have attained from happy to happier positions ! Having obtained such prosperity as has its roots in righteousness, I think my demerits have been lost.[11]

"Bhishma said,—'The worm having, at the command of the holy Rishi, attained to the status of a Brāhmana that is so difficult to attain, caused the Earth to be marked with a thousand sacrificial stakes.[12] That foremost of all persons con-

versant with Brahma then obtained a residence in the region of Brahman himself. Indeed, O son of Prithā, the worm attained to the highest status, *viz.*, that of eternal Brahma, as the result of his own acts done in obedience to the counsels of Vyāsa.[13] Those bulls among Kshatriyas, also, who have cast off their life-breaths (on the field of Kurukshetra) exerting their energy the while, have all attained to a meritorious end. Therefore, O king, do not mourn on their account.' "[14]

Section CXX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Which amongst these three is superior, *viz.*, knowledge, penances, and gifts? I ask thee, O foremost of righteous persons! Do tell me this, O grandsire!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited the old narrative of the conversation between Maitreya and the Island-born Krishna.[2] Once on a time, the Island-born Krishna, O king, while wandering over the world in disguise, proceeded to Bārānasi and waited upon Maitreya who belonged by birth to a race of Munis.*[3] Seeing Vyāsa arrive, that foremost of Rishis, *viz.*, Maitreya, gave him a seat and after worshipping him with due rites, fed him with excellent food.[4] Having eaten that good food which was very wholesome and which produced every kind of gratification, the high-souled Krishna become exceedingly delighted and as he sat there, he even laughed aloud.[5] Seeing Krishna laugh, Maitreya addressed him, saying,—Tell me, O righteous-souled one, what the reason is of thy laughter! Thou art an ascetic, endued with capacity to control thy emotions. Great joy, it seems, has come over you![6] Saluting thee, and worshipping thee with bent head, I ask thee this, *viz.*, what the puissance is of my penances and what the high blessedness is that is thine![7] The acts I do are different from those which thou doest. Thou art already emancipated though still owning life-breaths. I, however, am not

---

* 'Swairini-kule' implies, as the Commentator explains, the race of Munis. 'Swam (Dharmāya) irayati' is the etymology. 'Ajnāta-charitām-charan' applied to Krishna-Dwaipāya. If it be read 'charam' it would refer to 'Maitreya.'—T.

yet freed. For all that, I think that there is not much difference between thee and me. I am, again, distinguished by birth.*—'[8]

"'Vyāsa said,—This wonder that has filled me hath arisen from an ordinance that looks like a hyperbole, and from its paradoxical statement for the comprehension of the people. The declaration of the Vedas seems to be untrue. But why should the Vedas say an untruth ?†[9] It has been said that there are three tracks which constitute the best vows of a man. One should never injure; one should always tell the truth; and one should make gifts.[10] The Rishis of old announced this, following the declarations of the Vedas. Heard as these injunctions were in days of old, they should certainly be followed by us even in our times.[11] Even a small gift, made under the circumstances laid down, produces great fruits. Unto a thirsty man thou hast given a little water with a sincere heart.[12] Thyself thirsty and hungry, thou hast, by giving me such food, conquered many high regions of felicity, O puissant one, as one does by many sacrifices.[13] I am exceedingly delighted with thy very sacred gift, as also with thy penances. Thy puissance is that of Righteousness. Thy appearance is that of Righteousness.[14] The fragrance of Righteousness is about thee. I think that all thy acts are performed agreeably to the ordinance. O son, superior to ablutions in sacred waters superior to the accomplishment of all Vedic vows,[15] is gift. Indeed, O Brāhmana, gift is more auspicious than all sacred acts. If it be not more meritorious than all sacred acts, there

---

* 'Prithagātman' implies one whose soul is still invested with 'upādhis;' 'Sukhātman' is one whose soul has transcended all 'upādhis.'—T.

† This literal version of the Verse yields no sense. The meaning, however, is this: 'Atichccheda' or 'Atichcchanda' implies a hyperbolic statement. 'Ativāda' means a paradox. It is said that by the gift of even a palmful of water one may attain to a place which is attainable by a hundred sacrifices. This ordinance, which looks like a hyperbole, and its statement by Vedic teachers that looks like a paradox, fill me with wonder. The Vedas say that no one attains to such a place without a hundred sacrifices. This seems to be untrue, for people do reach it by making even slight gifts to deserving persons at proper times.—T.

can be no question about its superiority.[16] All those rites laid down in the Vedas which thou applaudest do not come up to gift, for gift, without doubt, is as I hold fraught with very superior merit.[17] The track that has been made by those men who make gifts is the track that is trodden by the wise. They who make gifts are regarded as givers of even the life-breaths. The duties that constitute Righteousness are established in them.[18] As the Vedas when well-studied, as the restraining of the senses, as a life of universal Renunciation, even so is gift which is fraught with very superior merit.[19] Thou, O son, wilt rise from joy to greater joy (in consequence of thy having betaken thyself to the duty of making gifts. The man of intelligence (who practises this duty) certainly rises from joy to greater joy.[20] We have without doubt, met with many direct instances of this. Men endued with prosperity succeed in acquiring wealth, making gifts, performing sacrifices, and earning happiness as the result thereof.[21] It is always observed, O thou of great wisdom, to happen naturally that happiness is followed by misery, and misery is followed by happiness.*[22] Men of wisdom have said that human beings in this world have three kinds of conduct. Some are righteous; some are sinful; and some are neither righteous nor sinful.[23] The conduct of the person who is devoted to Brahma is not regarded either way. His sins are never regarded as sins. So also the man who is devoted to the duties laid down for him is regarded as neither righteous nor sinful (for the observance of those duties).[24] Those men that are devoted to sacrifices, gifts, and penances, are regarded as righteous. These, however, that injure other creatures and are unfriendly to them, are regarded sinful.[25] There are some men who appropriate what belongs to others. These certainly fall into Hell and meet with misery. All other acts that men do are indifferent, being regarded as neither righteous nor sinful.[26] Do thou sport and grow and rejoice and make gifts and perform sacrifices. Neither men

* The sense is that those who pursue carnal pleasures meet with misery as the end, and those who practise austerities meet with felicity as their reward.—T.

of knowledge nor those endued with penances will then be able to get the better of thee !—' "[27]

SECTION CXXI.

"Bhishma said,—'Thus addressed by Vyāsa, Maitreya, who was a worshipper of acts, who had been born in a race endued with great prosperity, who was wise and possessed of great learning, said unto him these words.[1]

" 'Maitreya said,—O thou of great wisdom, without doubt it is as thou hast said. O puissant one, with thy permission I desire to say something.[2]

" 'Vyāsa said,—Whatever thou wishest to say, O Maitreya, in what way so even, do thou say, O man of great wisdom, for I wish to hear thee !—[3]

" 'Maitreya said,—Thy words on the subject of Gift are faultless and pure. Without doubt, thy soul has been cleansed by knowledge and penances.[4] In consequence of thy soul being cleansed, even this is the great advantage I reap from it. With the aid of my understanding I see that thou art endued with high penances.[5] As regards ourselves we succeed in acquiring prosperity through only a sight of personages like thee ! I think, that is due to thy grace and flows from the nature of my own acts.*[6] Penances, knowledge of the Vedas, and birth in a pure race,—these are the causes of the status which one acquires of a Brāhmana. When one becomes displayed in these three attributes, then does he come to be called a regenerate person.[7] If the Brāhmana be gratified, the Pitris and the deities also are gratified. There is nothing superior to a Brāhmana possessed of Vedic lore.[8] Without the Brāhmana, all would be darkness. Nothing would be known. The four orders would not exist. The distinction between Righteousness and unrighteousness, Truth and Falsehood, would cease.[9] Men, when they saw on a well-tilled field, reap an abundant harvest. Even so, one reaps great merit by making

---

* To obtain a sight of thee is the reward or result of my own acts. A sight of thy person leads to prosperity, through the kindness thou cherishest for us.—T.

gifts unto a Brāhmana possessed of great learning.[10] If there were no Brāhmana endued with Vedic lore and good conduct for accepting gifts, the wealth possessed by wealthy men would be useless.[11] The ignorant Brāhmana, by eating the food that is offered to him, destroys what he eats (for it produces no merit to him who gives it). The food also that is eaten destroys the eater (for the eater incurs sin by eating what is offered to him). That aught to be properly termed an eatable which is given away to a deserving man, in all other cases he that takes it makes the donor's gift thrown away and the receiver is likewise ruined for his improperly taking it.[12] The Brāhmana possessed of learning becomes the subjugator of the food that he eats. Having eaten it, he begets other food. The ignorant who eats the food offered to him loses his right to the children he begets, for the latter become his whose food has enabled the progenitor to beget them. Even this is the subtle fault that attaches to persons eating other people's food when they have not the puissance to conquer that food.[13] The merit which the giver acquires by making the gift, is equal to what the taker acquires by accepting the food. Both the giver and the accepter depend equally upon each other. Even this is what the Rishis have said.[14] There where Brāhmanas exist, possessed of Vedic lore and conduct, people are enabled to earn the sacred fruits of gifts and to enjoy them both here and hereafter.[15] Those men who are of pure lineage, who are exceedingly devoted to penances, and who make gifts, and study the Vedas, are regarded as worthy of the most reverent worship.[16] It is those good men that have chalked out the path by treading on which one does not become stupefied. It is those men that are the leaders of others to Heaven. They are the men that bear on their shoulders the burthen of Sacrifices and live for eternity.—' "[17]

SECTION CXII.

"Bhishma said,—'Thus addressed, the holy one replied unto Maitreya, saying,—By good luck, thou art endued with knowledge. By good luck, thy understanding is of this kind.'[1]

They that are good highly applaud all righteous attributes. That personal beauty and youth and prosperity do not succeed in overwhelming thee is due to good luck.[2] This favor done to thee is due to the kindness of the deities. Listen to me as I discourse to thee upon what is even superior (in efficacy) to gift.[3] Whatever scriptures and religious treatises there are, whatever (righteous) inclinations are observable in the world, have flowed in their due order, agreeably to the lead of the Vedas, according to their due order.[4] Following them I applaud gift. Thou praisest penances and Vedic lore. Penances are sacred. Penances are the means by which one may acquire the Vedas and Heaven also.[5] With the aid of penances and of knowledge, one attains to the highest fruits, we have heard. It is by penances that one destroys one's sins and all else that is evil.[6] It has been heard by us that with whatever purpose in view one undergoes penances, one attains the fruition thereof in consequence of those penances. The same may be said of knowledge.[7] Whatever is difficult to accomplish, whatever is difficult to conquer, what is difficult to attain, and whatever is difficult to cross, can all be achieved with the aid of penances. Of all things, penances are possessed of very superior might.[8] The man that drinks alcohol, or he that takes by force what belongs to others, or he that is guilty of fœticide, or he that violates the bed at his preceptor, succeeds in crossing with the aid of penances. Indeed, one becomes cleansed of all these sins through penances.[9] One possessed of all knowledge and, therefore, having true vision, and an ascetic of whatever kind, are equal. One should always bow unto these two.*[10] All men who have the Vedas for their wealth should be worshipped. Similarly all men endued with penances deserve to be worshipped. They that make gifts obtain happiness hereafter and much prosperity here.[11] Righteous men of this world, by making gifts of food obtain both this world and that of Brahman himself with many other regions of superior felicity.[12] Those men that are

* The sense is that an ascetic observant of penances, in whatever stage, and a man possessed of omniscience, are regarded as equal.—T.

adored by all themselves adore him who makes gifts. Those men that are honored every where themselves honor him who makes gifts. Wherever the giver goes, he bears himself praised.[13] He that does acts and he that omits to do them gets each what is proportionate to his acts and omissions. Whether one dwells in the upper regions or in the nether, one always attains to those places to which one becomes entitled by one's acts.[14] As regards thyself, thou wilt certainly obtain whatever food and drink thou mayst covet, for thou art endued with intelligence, good birth, Vedic lore, and compassion![15] Thou are possessed of youth, O Maitraya! Thou art observant of vows. Be thou devoted to Righteousness. Do thou take instructions from me regarding those duties which thou shouldst first follow,—the duties, *viz.*, of house-holders.[16] That house in which the husband is gratified with his wedded wife, and the wife gratified with her husband, all auspicious results ensue.[17] As filth is washed away from the body with water, as darkness is dispelled by the splendour of fire, even so is sin washed off by gifts and penances.[18] Bless thee, O Maitreya, let mansions be thine! I depart hence in peace. Do thou keep in mind what I have said. Thou shalt then be able to reap many advantages![19]—Maitreya then walked round his illustrious guest and bowed his head unto him, and joining his hands in reverence said,—Let blessing be to thee also, O holy one!—' "[20]

Section CXXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O thou that art conversant with all duties, I desire to hear, in detail, what the excellent behaviour is of good and chaste women. Do thou, O grandsire, discourse to me on this!'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Once on a time, in the celestial regions, a lady named Sumanā of Kekaya's race, addressing Cāndili possessed of great energy and conversant with the truth relating to everything and endued with omniscience, said,[2]—By what conduct, O auspicious lady, by what course of acts, hast thou succeeded in attaining to Heaven, purged of every sin?[3]

Thou blazest forth with thy own energy like a flame of fire. Thou seemst to be a daughter of the Lord of stars, come to Heaven in thy own effulgence.[4] Thou wearest vestments of pure white, and art quite cheerful and at thy ease. Seated on that celestial chariot, thou shinest, O auspicious dame, with energy multiplied a thousand fold.[5] Thou hast not, I ween, attained to this region of happiness by inconsiderable penances and gifts and vows. Do thou tell me the truth![6]—Thus questioned sweetly by Sumanā, Cāndili of sweet smiles, addressing her fair interrogatrix, thus answered her out of the hearing of others.[7]—I did not wear yellow robes; nor barks of trees. I did not shave my head; nor did I keep matted locks on my head. It is not in consequence of these acts that I have attained to the status of a celestial.[8] I never, in heedlessness, addressed any disagreeable or evil speech to my husband.[9] I was always devoted to the worship of the deities, the Pitris, and the Brāhmanas. Always heedful I waited upon and served my mother in-law and father-in-law.[10] Even this was my resolution that I should never behave with deceit. I never used to stay at the door of our house nor did I speak long with any body.[11] I never did any evil act; I never laughed aloud; I never did any injury. I never disclosed any secret. Even thus did I bear myself always.[12] When husband, having left home upon any business, used to come back, I always served him by giving him a seat, and worshipped him with reverence.[13] I never ate food of any kind which was unknown to my husband and with which my husband was not pleased.[14] Rising at early dawn I did and caused to be done whatever was brought about and required to be accomplished for the sake of relatives and kinsmen.[15] When my husband leaves home for going to a distant place on any business, I remain at home engaged in diverse kinds of auspicious acts for blessing his enterprise.[16] Verily, during the abscence of my husband I never use collyrium, or ornaments; I never wash myself properly or use garlands and unguents, or deck my feet with lacdye or person with ornaments.[17] When my husband sleeps in peace I never awake him even if important business required his attention. I was happy to

sit by him lying asleep.[18] I never urged my husband to exert more energetically for earning wealth to support his family and relatives. I always kept secrets without disclosing them to others. I used to always keep our premises clean.[19] That woman who, with concentrated attention, adheres to this path of duty, becomes the recipient of considerable honors in Heaven like a second Arundhati.—'[20]

"Bhishma continued,—'The illustrious and highly blessed Cāndili, of righteous conduct, having said these words unto Sumanā on the subject of woman's duties towards her husband, disappeared there and then.[21] That man, O son of Pāndu, who reads this narrative at every full moon and new moon, succeeds in attaining to Heaven and enjoying great felicity in the woods of Nandana.' "[22]

Section CXXIV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'In which is superior efficacy, Conciliation or Gifts? Tell me, O chief of Bharata's race, which of these two is superior in point of efficacy.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Some become gratified by conciliation, while others are gratified by gifts. Every man, according to his own nature, affects the one or the other.[2] Listen to me, O king, as I explain to thee the merits of conciliation, O chief of Bharata's race, so that the most furious creatures may be appeased by it.[3] In this connection is cited the ancient narrative of how a Brāhmana, who had been seized in the forest by a Rākshasa, was freed (with the aid of conciliation).[4] A certain Brāhmana, endued with eloquence and intelligence, fell into distress, for he was seized in a lone forest by a Rākshasa who wished to feed on him.[5] The Brāhmana, possessed as he was of understanding and learning, was not at all agitated. Without suffering himself to be stupefied at the sight of that terrible cannibal, he resolved to apply conciliation and see its effect on the Rākshasa.[6] The Rākshasa, respectfully saluting the Brāhmana so far as words went, asked him this question: Thou shalt escape, but tell me for what reason I am pale of hue and so lean?'—Reflecting for a brief space of time, the

Brāhmana accepted the question of the Rākshasa and replied in the following well-spoken words.[8]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—Dwelling in a place that is distant from thy abode, moving in a sphere that is not thy own, and deprived of the companionship of thy friends and kinsmen, thou art enjoying vast affluence. It is for this that thou art so pale and lean.[9] Verily, O Rākshasa, thy friends, though well-treated by thee, are still not well-disposed towards thee in consequence of their own vicious nature. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[10] Thou art endued with merit and wisdom and a well-regulated soul. Yet it is thy lot to see others that are destitute of merit and wisdom honored in preference to thyself. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[11] Persons possessed of wealth and affluence much greater than thine but inferior to thee in point of accomplishments are, verily, disregarding thee. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[12] Though distressed through want of the means of support, thou art led by the highness of thy soul to disregard such means as are open to thee for drawing thy sustenance. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[13] In consequence of thy righteousness thou hadst stinted thyself for doing good to another. This other, O righteous Rākshasa, thinks thee deceived and subjugated (by his superior intelligence). It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[14] I think thou art grieving for those persons who with souls overwhelmed by lust and wrath are suffering misery in this world. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[15] Though graced with the possession of wisdom, thou art ridiculed by others who are entirely destitute of it. Verily, persons of wicked conduct are contemning thee. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[16] Verily, some enemy of thine, with a friendly tongue, coming to thee behaved at first like a righteous person and then has left thee, beguiling thee like a knave. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[17] Thou art well conversant with the course of world's affairs. Thou art well skilled in all mysteries. Thou art endued with capacity. Those who know thee to be such do not yet respect and praise thee. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[18] Staying in the midst of

bad men engaged together in some enterprise, thou hadst discoursed to them, dispelling their doubts. For all that they did not admit thy superior merits. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[19] Verily, though destitute of wealth and intelligence and Vedic lore, thou desirest yet, with the aid of thy energy alone, to accomplish something great. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[20] It seems that although thou art resolved to undergo severe austerities by retiring into the forest, yet thy kinsmen are not favorably inclined towards this project of thine. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[21] Some neighbour of thine, possessed of great wealth and endued with youth and handsome features, verily, covets thy dear spouse. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[22] The words spoken by thee, even when excellent, in the midst of wealthy men, are not regarded by them as wise or well-timed. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[23] Some dear kinsman of thine, destitute of intelligence though repeatedly instructed in the scriptures, has become angry. Thou hast not succeeded in pacifying him. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[24] Verily, somebody, having first set thee to the accomplishment of some object desirable to thee is now seeking to snatch the fruit thereof from thy grasp. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[25] Verily, though possessed of excellent accomplishments and worshipped by all on that account, thou art yet regarded by thy kinsmen as worshipped for their sake and not for thy own. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[26] Verily, through shame thou art unable to give out some purpose in thy heart, moved also by the inevitable delay that will occur in its accomplishment. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[27] Verily, thou desirest, with the aid of thy intelligence, to bring under thy influence, diverse persons with diverse kinds of understandings and inclinations. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.*[28] Destitute of learning, without courage, and without much wealth, thou seekest such famo as is won by knowledge and prowess and gifts. Verily, it is

* Such an object can never be accomplished. Hence, thy paleness and leanness.—T.

for this that thou hast been pale and lean.[29] Thou hast not been able to acquire something upon which thou hast set thy heart since a long time. Or, that which thou seekest to do is sought to be undone by somebody else. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[30] Verily, without being able to see any fault on thy part, thou hast been cursed by somebody. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.*[31] Destitute of both wealth and accomplishments thou seekest in vain to dispel the grief of thy friends and the sorrows of sorrowing men. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[32] Beholding righteous persons leading the domestic mode of life, unrighteous persons living according to the forest mode, and emancipated persons attached to domesticity and fixed abodes, thou hast become pale and lean.[33] Verily, thy acts connected with Righteousness, with Wealth, and with Pleasure, as also the well-timed words spoken by thee, do not bear fruit. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[34] Though endued with wisdom, yet desirous of living, thou livest with wealth obtained by thee in gift from somebody of evil conduct. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[35] Beholding unrighteousness increasing on every side and righteousness languishing, thou art filled with grief. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[36] Urged by them thou seekest to please all thy friends even when they are disputing and ranged on sides opposite to one another. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[37] Beholding persons possessed of Vedic lore engaged in improper acts, and persons of learning unable to keep their senses under control, thou art filled with grief. It is for this that thou art pale and lean.[38]—Thus praised, the Rākshasa worshipped that learned Brāhmana in return, and making him his friend and bestowing sufficient wealth upon him in gift, let him off (without devouring him).' "[39]

Section CXXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, how should a poor man, desirous of achieving his own good, bear himself

* Though completely innocent, thou hast yet been cursed. The anxiety due to this has made thee so.—T.

after having acquired the status of humanity and come into this region of acts that is so difficult to attain ![1] Tell me also what is the best of all gifts, and what should be given under what circumstances? Tell me, O son of Gangā, who are truly deserving of honor and worship. It behooveth thee to discourse to us on these mysteries!' "[2]

Vaçampāyana continued,—"Thus questioned by that famous monarch, *viz.*, the son of Pāndu, Bhishma explained (in these words) unto that king these high mysteries appertaining to duty.[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen to me with concentrated attention, O king, as I explain to thee, O Bhārata, these mysteries appertaining to duties, after the same manner in which the holy Vyāsa had explained them to me in days of yore.[4] This subject is a mystery to the very deities, O monarch. Yama of stainless deeds, with the aid of vows well-observed and Yoga meditation, had acquired the knowledge of these mysteries as the high fruits of his penances.*[5] What pleases what deity, what pleases the Pitris, the Rishis, the Pramathas (associates of Mahādeva), the goddess Cri, Chitragupta (the recording assistant of Yama), and the mighty Elephants that rule the cardinal points of the compass,[6] what constitutes the religion of the Rishis,—the religion, *viz.*, which has many mysteries and which is productive of high fruits,—the merits of what are called great gifts, and the merits that attach to all the sacrifices,[7] he who knows these, O sinless one, and knowing acts according to his knowledge, becomes freed from stains if he has stains and acquires the merits indicated.[8] Equal to ten butchers is one oilman. Equal to ten oilmen is one drinker of alcohol. Equal to ten drinkers of alcohol is one courtezan. Equal to ten courtezans is a single (territorial) cheif.†[9] A

* 'Yamena prāptam' is the sense, as explained by the Commentator.—

† The sense is this: one should not accept gifts made by a butcher or slayer of animals. Ten butchers are equal to a single oilman. By accepting a gift from an oilman, therefore, one incurs ten times as much sin as by accepting a gift from a butcher. In this way, the measure of sin goes on increasing according to the ratio given. A 'Nripa,' as explained by the Commentator, means here a small chief. A small king is equal to ten thousand butchers. A great king, however,

great king is said to be equal to half of these all. Hence, one should not accept gifts from these. On the other hand, one should attend to the science, that is sacred and that has righteousness for its indications, of the aggregate of three (*viz.*, Religion, Wealth, and Pleasure). Amongst these, Wealth and Pleasure are naturally attractive. Hence, one should, with concentrated attention, listen to the sacred expositions of Religion (in particular), for the fruits are very great of listening to the mysteries of Religion. One should certainly hear every topic connected with Religion as ordained by the deities themselves.[10-11] In it is contained the ritual in respect of the Crāddha in which have been declared the mysteries connected with the Pitris. The mysteries connected with all the deities have also been explained there.[12] It comprehends the duties and practices, productive of great merit, of the Rishis also, together with the mysteries attaching to them. It contains an exposition of the merits of great sacrifices and those that attach to all kinds of gifts.[13] Those men who always read the scriptures bearing on these topics, those who bear them properly in their mind, and he who, having listened to them, follows them in practice, are all regarded to be as holy and sinless as the puissant Nārāyana himself.[14] The merits that attach to the gift of kine, those that belong to the performance of ablutions in sacred waters, those that are won by the performance of sacrifices,—all these are acquired by that man who treats guests with reverence.[15] They who listen to these scriptures, they who are endued with faith, and they who have a pure heart, it is well known, conquer many regions of happiness. Those righteous men who are endued with faith,[16] become cleansed of all stains and no sin can touch them. Such men always increase in righteousness and succeed in attaining to Heaven.[17] Once on a time, a celestial messenger, coming to the court of Indra of his own accord, but remaining invisible, addressed the chief of the deities in these words:[18]—At the

is equal to half of that *i. e.*, five thousand butchers. In other words, by accepting a gift from a great king, a man incurs as much sin as is a full five thousand times of the sin which is incurred by accepting a gift from a butcher.—T.

command of those two deities who are the foremost of all physicians, and who are endued with every desirable attribute, I have come to this place where I behold human beings and Pitris and the deities assembled together.[19] Why, indeed, is sexual congress interdicted for the man who performs a Crāddha and for him also who eats at a Crāddha (for the particular day)? Why are three rice-balls offered separately at a Crāddha?[20] Unto whom should the first of those balls be offered? Unto whom should the second one be offered? And whose has it been said is the third or remaining one? I desire to know all this!'[21]—After the celestial messenger had said these words connected with righteousness and duty, the deities who were seated towards the east and the Pitris also, applauding that ranger of the sky, began as follows.[22]

"'The Pitris said,—Welcome art thou, and blessings upon thee! Do thou listen, O best of all rangers of the sky! The question thou hast asked is a high one and fraught with deep meaning.[23] The Pitris of that man who indulges in sexual congress on the day he performs a Crāddha or eats at a Crāddha, have to lie for the period of a whole month on his vital seed.[24] As regards the classification of the rice-balls offered at a Crāddha, we shall explain what should be done with them one after another. The first rice-ball should be conceived as thrown into the waters.[25] The second ball should be given to one of the wives to eat. The third ball should be cast into the blazing fire.[26] Even this is the ordinance that has been declared in respect of the Crāddha. Even this is the ordinance that is followed in practice according to the rites of religion. The Pitris of that man who acts according to this ordinance become gratified with him and remain always cheerful.[27] The progeny of such a man increases and inexhaustible wealth always remains at his command.[28]

"'The celestial messenger said,—Thou hast explained the division of the rice-balls and their consignment one after another to the three (*viz.*, water, the spouse, and the blazing fire), together with the reasons thereof.*[29] Whom does that

* The reason is the declarations in the scriptures to that effect.—P.

rice-ball which is consigned to the waters reach? How does it, by being so consigned, gratify the deities and how does it rescue the Pitris?[30] The second ball is eaten by the spouse. That has been laid down in the ordinance. How do the Pitris of that man (whose spouse eats the ball) become the eaters thereof?[31] The last ball goes into the blazing fire. How does that ball succeed in finding its way to thee, or who is he unto whom it goes?[32] I desire to hear this,—that is, what are the ends attained by the rice-balls offered at Crāddhas when thus disposed of by being cast into the water, given to the spouse, and thrown into the blazing fire!—[33]

"'The Pitris said,—Great is this question which thou hast asked. It involves a mystery and is fraught with wonder. We have been exceedingly gratified with thee, O ranger of the sky![34] The very deities and the Munis applaud acts done in honor of the Pitris. Even they do not know what the certain conclusions are of the ordinances in respect of the acts done in honor of the Pitris.[35] Excepting the high-souled, immortal, and excellent Mārkandeya, that learned Brāhmana of great fame, who is ever devoted to the Pitris, none amongst them is conversant with the mysteries of the ordinances in respect of the Pitris.[36] Having heard from the holy Vyāsa what the end is of the three rice-balls offered at the Crāddha, as explained by the Pitris themselves in reply to the question of the celestial messenger, I shall explain the same to thee. Do thou hear, O monarch, what the certain conclusions are with respect to the ordinances about the Crāddha.[37] Listen with rapt attention, O Bhārata, to me as I explain what the end is of the three rice-balls. That rice-ball which goes into water is regarded as gratifying the deity of the Moon.[38] That deity being gratified, O thou of great intelligence, gratifies in return the other deities and the Pitris also with them. It has been laid down that the second rice-ball should be eaten by the spouse (of the man that performs the Crāddha).[39] The Pitris, who are ever desirous of progeny, confer children on the woman of the house. Listen now to me as I tell thee what becomes of the rice-ball that is cast into the blazing fire.[40] With that ball the Pitris are gratified and as the result thereof grant the

fruition of all wishes unto the person offering it. I have thus told thee everything about the end of the three rice balls offered at the Crāddha and consigned to the three (*viz.*, water, the spouse, and the fire).[41] That Brāhmana who becomes the Ritwik at a Crāddha constitutes himself, by that act, the Pitri of the person performing the Crāddha. Hence, he should abstain that day from sexual intercourse with even his own spouse.*[42] O best of all rangers of the sky, the man who eats at a Crāddha should bear himself with purity for that day. By acting otherwise, one surely incurs the faults I have indicated. It cannot be otherwise.[43] Hence, the Brāhmana who is invited to a Crāddha for eating the offerings should eat them after purifying himself by a bath and bear himself righteously for that day by abstaining from every kind of injury or evil. The progeny of such a person multiplies and he also who feeds him reaps the same reward.'[44]

"'Bhishma continued,—'After the Pitris had said so, a Rishi of austere penances, named Vidyutprabha, whose form shone with splendour like that of the Sun, spoke.[45] Having heard those mysteries of religion as propounded by the Pitris, he addressed Cakra, saying,—Stupefied by folly, men slay numerous creatures born in the intermediate orders,[46] such as worms and ants and snakes and sheep and deer and birds. Heavy is the measure of sin they incur by these acts. What, however, is the remedy ?[47]—When this question was asked, all the gods and Rishis endued with wealth of penances and the highly blessed Pitris, applauded that ascetic.[48]

"'Cakra said,—Thinking in one's mind of Kurukshetra and Gayā and Gangā and Prabhāsa and the lakes of Pushkara, one should dip one's head in a piece of water.[49] By so doing one becomes cleansed of all one's sins like Chandramas freed from Rāhu. One should bathe in this way for three days

* The sense, as explained by the Commentator, is this: the Brāhmana who becomes the Ritwik and eats at a Crāddha becomes a Pitri of the person performing the Crāddha. Hence, when his identity has been changed, he should, on that day, abstain from sexual congress with even his own spouse. By indulging in such congress, he incurs the sin of adultery.—T.

in succession and then fast for every day.[50] Besides this, one should touch (after bathing) the back of a cow and bow one's head to her tail !—Vidyutprabha, after this, once more addressing Vāsava, said,—I shall declare a rite that is more subtle. Listen to me, O thou of a hundred sacrifices.[51] Rubbed with the astringent powder of the hanging roots of the banian and annointed with the oil of Priyangu, one should eat the Shashtika paddy mixed with milk. By so doing one becomes cleansed of all one's sins.*[52] Listen now to another mystery unknown to many but which was discovered by the Rishis with the aid of meditation. I heard it from Vrihaspati while he recited it in the presence of Mahādeva.[53] O chief of the deities, do thou hear it with Rudra in thy company, O lord of Cachi ! If a person, ascending a mountain, stands there on one foot, with arms upraised and joined together, and abstaining from food looks at a blazing fire, he acquires the merits of severe penances and obtains the rewards that attach to fasts.[54-55] Heated by the rays of the Sun, he becomes cleansed of all his sins. One who acts in this way in both the summer and the winter seasons, becomes freed from every sin.[56] Cleansed of every sin, one acquires a splendour of complexion for all time. Such a man blazes with energy like the Sun or shines in beauty like the Moon ![57]—After this, the chief of the deities, *viz.*, he of a hundred sacrifices, seated in the midst of the gods, then sweetly addressed Vrihaspati, saying these excellent words :[58]—O holy one, do thou duly discourse on what those mysteries of religion are that are fraught with happiness to human beings, and what the faults are which they commit, together with the mysteries that attach to them !—[59]

" 'Vrihaspati said,—They who pass urine, facing the Sun, they who do not show reverence for the wind, they who do not pour libations on the blazing fire,[60] they who milk a cow whose calf is very young, moved by the desire of obtaining

---

* 'Batakashāya' is explained by the Commentator as the substance that is made by pounding the hanging roots of the banian. The Priyangu here mentioned is not the *Aglaia Roxburghiana* but the seed called Rājasarsapa, *i. e.*, *Brassica juncea* ; syn. *Sinapis ramosa*, *Roxb.* The Shashtika paddy is that which ripens in sixty days.—T.

from her as much milk as possible, incur many faults. I shall declare what those faults are, O lord of Cachi! Do thou listen to me.[61] The Sun, Wind, the bearer of sacrificial oblations, O Vāsava, and kine who are the mothers of all creatures, were created by the Self-born himself, for rescuing all the worlds,[62] O Cakra! These are the deities of human beings. Listen all of ye to the conclusions of religion.[63] Those wicked men and wicked women who pass urine facing the Sun, live in great infamy for six and eighty years.[64] That man, O Cakra, who cherishes no reverence for the Wind, gets children that fall away prematurely from the womb of his spouse. Those men who do not pour libations on the blazing fire find that the fire, when they do ignite it for such rites as they wish to perform, refuses to eat their libations.*[65] Those men who drink the milk of kine whose calves are very young, never get children for perpetuating their races.†[66] Such men see their children die and their races shrink. Even these are the consequences of the acts referred to, as observed by regenerate persons venerable for age in their respective races.[67] Hence, one should always avoid that which has been interdicted, and do only that which has been directed to be done, if one is desirous of achieving one's prosperity. This that I say unto thee is very true![68]—After the celestial preceptor had said this, the highly blessed deities, with the Maruts, and the highly blessed Rishis questioned the Pitris, saying,[69]—Ye Pitris, with what acts of human beings, who are generally endued with little understandings, do ye become gratified? What gifts, made in course of such rites as are gone through for improving the position of deceased persons in the other world, become inexhaustible in respect of their efficacy?‡[70] By performing

---

* The sense seems to be that the libations, few and far between, of men who do not daily worship their fire, are not borne by the fire to the destined places.—T.

† 'Kshirapāh' means 'those that depend on the lacteal sustenance;' hence, little children.—T.

‡ 'Aurddhadehikam dānam' means 'gifts made in course of Crāddhas and other rites that are observed for improving the position of a deceased person.—T.

what acts can men become freed from the debt they owe to the Pitris? We desire to hear this. Great is the curiosity we feel!—[71]

"'The Pitris said,—Ye highly blessed ones, the doubt existing in your minds has been properly propounded. Listen as we declare what those acts are of righteous men with which we become gratified![72] Bulls endued with blue complexion should be set free. Gifts should be made to us, on the day of the new moon, of sesame seeds and water. In the season of rains, lamps should be lighted. By these acts of men, they can free themselves from the debt they owe to the Pitris.*[73] Such gifts never become vain. On the other hand, they become inexhaustible and productive of high fruits. The gratification we derive from them is regarded to be inexhaustible.[74] Those men who, endued with faith, beget offspring, rescue their deceased ancestors from miserable Hell![75]—Hearing these words of the Pitris, Vriddha-Gārgya, possessed of wealth of penances and high energy, became filled with wonder so that the hair on his body stood erect. Addressing them he said,[76]—Ye that are all possessed of wealth of penances, tell us what the merits are that attach to the setting free of bulls endued with blue complexions. What merits, again, attach to the gift of lamps in the season of rains and the gift of water with sesame seeds?—[77]

"'The Pitris said,—If a bull of blue complexion, upon being set free, raises a (small) quantity of water with its tail, the Pitris (of the person that has set that bull free) become gratified with that water for full sixty thousand years.[78] The mud such a bull raises with its horns from the banks (of a river or lake), succeeds, without doubt, in sending the Pitris (of the person that sets the animal free) to the region of Soma.[79] By giving lamps in the season of rains, one shines with effulgence like Soma himself. The man who gives lamps is never subject to the attribute of Darkness.[80] Those men who make gifts, on the

* What is meant by the gift of lamps is the lighting of lamps in the sky. These are placed on long poles which are fastened to the tallest trees.—T.

day of the new moon, of sesame seeds and water, mixed with honey and using a vessel of copper,[81] O thou that art possessed of wealth of penances, are regarded as duly performing a Crāddha with all its mysteries. These men get children of sound health and cheerful minds.[82] The merit acquired by the giver of the Pinda (to the Pitris) takes the form of the growth of his race. Verily, he who performs these acts with faith, becomes freed from the debt he owes to the Pitris.[83] Even thus have been laid down the proper time for the performance of the Crāddha, the ordinances in respect of the rites to be observed. the proper person that should be fed at the Crāddha, and the merits that attach to it. I have declared everything to thee in due order !—' "[84]

Section CXXVI.

"Bhishma said,—'The chief of the deities, *viz.*, Indra after the Pitris had ceased to speak, addressed the puissant Hari, saying,—O Lord, what are those acts by which thou becomest gratified ? How, indeed, do men succeed in gratifying thee ?—[1]

" 'Vishnu said —That which I greatly hate is the detraction of Brāhmanas. Without doubt, if the Brāhmanas are worshipped, I regard myself worshipped.[2] All superior Brāhmanas should always be saluted with reverence, after feeding them with hospitality. One should reverence one's own feet also (in the evening). I am gratified with men who act in this way. as also with those who worship and make offerings to the whirl that is noticeable on cowdung (when it first drops from the cow).*[3] They who behold a Brāhmana that is a dwarf in stature, or a boar that has just risen from water and that bears on his head a quantity of mud taken up from the bank,[4] have never to meet with any evil. They become freed from every sin. That man who worships every day the Açwat-

---

* The Commentator explains that when evening comes, one should respectfully salute one's own feet. This custom has certainly died out in Bengal. A whirl is certainly observable on cowdung when it first drops from the cow : but the practice of making offerings to it has also died out.—T.

tha (*Ficus religiosa*) and the substance called Gorochanā and the cow,[5] is regarded as worshipping the whole universe with the deities and Asuras and human beings. Verily, staying within these, I accept, in my own form, the worship that is offered to them.[6] The worship that is offered to these is the worship offered to me. This has been so as long as the worlds have been created. Those men of little understandings that worship me in a different way worship me in vain, for the worship of that kind I never accept. Verily, the worship of other kind is not at all gratifying to me.—[7]

" 'Indra said,—Why dost thou applaud the circular marks on cowdung, the feet, the boar, the Brāhmana that is a dwarf in stature, and mud raised up from the soil ?[8] It is thou who createst all creatures and it is thou who destroyest them. Thou art the eternal nature of all mortal or transitory things !—'[9]

"Bhishma continued,—'Hearing these words of Indra, Vishnu smiled a little and then said,—It was with my circular disc that the Daityas were slain. It was with my two feet that the world was covered.[10] Assuming the form of a boar I slew Hiranyāksha. Assuming the form of a dwarf I conquered (the Asura) king Vali.[11] Those high-souled men who worship these gratify me. Verily, they who worship me in these forms never meet with discomfiture.[12] If one, beholding a Brāhmana leading the Brahmacharyya mode of life arrived at one's house, offers unto him the first portion of one's food that belongs as of right to a Brāhmana, and eats what remains thereafter, one is regarded as eating *Amrita*.[13] If one, after adoring the morning twilight, stands with face directed towards the Sun, one reaps the merit that attaches to the performance of ablutions in all *tirthas* and becomes cleansed of all sins.[14] Ye Rishis possessed of wealth of penances, I have told you in detail what constitutes a great mystery. On what else shall I discourse unto you ? Tell me your doubts !—[15]

" 'Valadeva said,—Listen now to another great mystery that is fraught with happiness to men. Ignorant persons, unacquainted with it, meet with much distress at the hands of other creatures.[16] That man who, rising at early dawn, touches a cow, Ghee, and curds, as also mustard seeds and the larger

variety thereof called Priyangu, becomes cleansed of all sins.[17] As regards Rishis possessed of wealth of penances, they always avoid all creatures both before and behind, as also all that is impure, while performing Crāddhas.*—[18]

" 'The deities said,—If a person, taking a vessel of copper, filling it with water, and facing the East, resolves upon a fast or the observance of a particular vow,[19] the deities become gratified with him and all his wishes become crowned with success. By observing fasts or vows in any other way, men of little understandings gain nothing.†[20] In uttering the resolution about the observance of fasts and in making offerings to the deities, the use of a vessel of copper is preferable. In presenting the offerings to the deities, in (giving and accepting) alms, in presenting the ingredients of the Argha, and in offering oblations of water mixed with sesame seeds to the Pitris,[21] a vessel of copper should be used. By doing these acts in any other way, one acquires little merit. Even these mysteries have been laid down relating to how the deities are gratified !—[22]

" 'Dharma said,—The offerings made in all rites in honor of the deities and in those in honor of the Pitris should never be given away to a Brāhmana that has accepted service under the king, or that rings the bell or attends to subsidiary duties in acts of worship or at Crāddhas, or that keeps kine, or that is engaged in trade, or that follows some art as a profession, or that is an actor, or that quarrels with friends, or that is destitute of Vedic studies, or that marries a Cudra woman.‡[23-24] The performer of the Crāddha who gives away such offerings

---

* The second line seems to be unintelligible. The reading I take is 'Crāddheshu' and not 'Cchidreshu.'—T.

† Vows and fasts, &c, should be observed after the *Sankalpa* or Resolution to that effect has been formally enunciated. Even a plunge in a piece of sacred water cannot be productive of merit unless the 'Sankalpa' has been formally enunciated. The 'Sankalpa' is the enunciation of the purpose for which the act is performed as also of the act that is intended to be performed.—T.

‡ 'Vrishalipati' literally means 'the husband of a Cudra woman.' By actually marrying a woman of the lowest order, by marrying before the elder drother, by marrying a girl that has attained to puberty, and by certain other acts, a Brāhmana comes to be regarded as a 'Vrishalipati.'—T.

unto such a Brāhmana falls away from prosperity and multiplies not his race. He fails, again, to gratify his Pitris by doing such an act.[25] From the house of that person whence a guest returns unsatisfied, the Pitris, the deities, and the sacred fires, all return disappointed in consequence of such treatment of the guest.[26] That man who does not discharge the duties of hospitality towards the guest arrived at his abode, comes to be regarded as equally sinful with those that are slayers of women or of kine, that are ungrateful towards benefactors, that are slayers of Brāhmanas, or that are violators of the beds of their preceptors.—[27]

"'Agni said,—Listen ye with concentrated attention. I shall recite the demerits of that man of wicked understanding who lifts up his feet for striking therewith a cow or a highly-blessed Brāhmana or a blazing fire. The infamy of such a man spreads throughout the world and touches the confines of Heaven itself. His Pitris become filled with fear. The deities also become highly dissatisfied on his account. Endued with great energy, Fire refuses to accept the libations poured by him.[28-30] For a hundred lives he has to rot in Hell. He is never rescued at any time.[31] One should, therefore, never touch a cow with one's feet, or a Brāhmana of high energy, or a blazing fire,[32] if one is endued with faith and desires one's own good. These are the demerits declared by me of one who lifts up one's feet towards these three.—[33]

"'Viçwāmittra said,—Listen to a high mystery that is unknown to the generality of men and that is connected with religion. He who offers to the Pitris rice boiled in sugared milk,[34] sitting with face directed to the south at noontide, in the shade caused by an elephant's body, in the month of Bhādrapada, under the constellation Maghā,[35] acquires great merits. Listen to what those merits are. The man who makes such an offering to the Pitris under such circumstances, is regarded as performing a great Crāddha each year for thirteen years in succession.*—[36]

---

* 'Kutapa' is the hour about noontide. 'The shade of the elephant's body' implies a particular instant of time that is regarded as very favorable for the Crāddha. The man that performs such a Crāddha is regarded

"'The kine said,—That man becomes cleansed of all his sins who adores a cow with these Mantras, *viz.*,—O Vahulā, O Samangā, O thou that art fearless everywhere. O thou that art forgiving and full of auspiciousness, O friend, O source of all plenty, in the region of Brahman, in days of yore, thou wert present with thy calf in the sacrifice of Indra the wielder of the thunderbolt! Thou tookest thy station in the firmament and in the path of Agni! The deities with Nārada among them adored thee on that occasion by calling thee Sarvamsahā!—Such a man attains to the region of Purandara. He acquires, besides, the merits that attach to kine, and the splendour of Chandramas also.[37-39] Such a man becomes freed from every sin, every fear, every grief. At the end. he obtains residence in the happy region of the Thousand-eyed Indra!'[40]

"Bhishma continued,—'After this, the highly blessed and celebrated seven Rishis, with Vaçishtha at their head, rose and circumambulating the Lotus-born Brahman, stood around him with hands joined in reverence.[41] Vaçishtha, that foremost of all persons conversant with Brahma, became their spokesman and asked this question that is beneficial to every creature, but especially so to Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas.[42]—By doing what acts may men of righteous conduct who are, however, destitute of the goods of this world, succeed in acquiring the merits attaching to sacrifices?[43]—Hearing this question of theirs, the Grandsire Brahman began to say what follows.[44]

"'Brahman said,—Excellent is this question, ye highly blessed ones! It is at once auspicious and high and fraught with a mystery. This question that ye have put is subtile and is fraught with high benefit to mankind.[45] Ye Rishis possessed of wealth of penances, I shall recite everything to you in detail. Do ye listen with attention to what I say as to how men acquire the merits attaching to sacrifices (even when they are unable to perform them through poverty).[46] In the lighted fortnight of the month of Pousa, when the constellation Rohini is in conjunction, if one, purifying oneself by a

as acquiring the merits attaching to Crāddhas regularly performed for thirteen years.—T.

bath, lies under the cope of heaven, clad in a single piece of raiment,[47] with faith and concentrated attention, and drinks the rays of the Moon, one acquires the merits that attach to the performance of great sacrifices.[48] Ye foremost of regenerate persons, this is a high mystery that I declare it unto you in reply to your question, ye that are possessed of insight into the subtile truths of all topics of enquiries !—' "[49] .

SECTION CXXVII.

" 'Vibhāvasu (otherwise called Surya) said,—There are two offerings. One of these consists of a palmful of water and the other called Akshatā consists of rice-grains with ghee. One should, on the day of the full moon, stand facing that bright orb and make unto him the two offerings mentioned, *viz.*, a palmful of water and the rice-grains with ghee called Akshatā. The man who presents these offerings is said to adore his sacred fire. Verily, he is regarded as one that has poured libations on the three (principal) fires.[1-2] That man of little understanding who cutteth down a large tree on the day of the new moon, becomes stained with the sin of Brāhmanicide. By killing even a single leaf one incurs that sin.[3] That foolish man who chews a tooth-brush on the day of the new moon is regarded as injuring the deity of the moon by such an act. The Pitris of such a person become annoyed with him.*[4] The deities do not accept the libations poured by such a man on days of the full moon and the new moon. His Pitris become enraged with him, and his race and family become extinct.—[5]

" 'Cree said,—That sinful house, in which eating and drinking vessels and seats and beds lie scattered, and in which women are beaten,[6] the deities and Pitris leave in disgust. Verily, without accepting the offerings made unto them by the owners of such houses, the deities and the Pitris fly away from such a sinful habitation.—[7]

---

* In India the tooth-brush consists of a twig or little branch. One end of it is chewed and softened. The softened fibres serve the purpose of a brush. Such a brush can be used only once. It must be thrown away after the brushing of the teeth is over.—T.

"'Angiras said,—The offspring of that man increases who stands every night for a full year under a Karanjaka tree with a lamp for lighting it, and holds besides in his hand the roots of the Suvarchala plant.*—[8]

"'Gārgya said,—One should always do the duties of hospitality to one's guests. One should give lamps in the hall or shed where sacrifices are performed. One should avoid sleep during the day, and abstain from all kinds of flesh or food.[9] One should never injure kine and Brāhmanas. One should always recite the names of the Pushkara lakes and the other sacred waters. Such a course of duty is the foremost. Even this constitutes a high religion with its mysteries. If observed in practice, it is sure to produce great consequences.[10]—If a person performs even a hundred sacrifices, he is doomed to see the exhaustion of the merits attaching to the libations poured therein. The duties, however, which I have mentioned are such that when observed by persons endued with faith, their merit becomes inexhaustible.[11] Listen now to another high mystery concealed from the view of many. The deities do not eat the libations (poured upon the fire) on occasions of Crāddhas and rites in their honor or on occasions of those rites that are performable on ordinary lunar days or on the especially sacred days of the full moon and the new moon, if they behold a woman in her season of impurity or one that is the daughter of a mother afflicted with leprosy.[12-13] The Pitris of the man who allows such a woman to come near the place where the Crāddha is being performed by him, do not become gratified with him for thirteen years.[14] Robed in raiments of white, and becoming pure in body and mind, one should invite Brāhmanas and cause them to utter their benedictions (when one performs the Crāddha). On such occasions one should also recite the Bhārata. It is by observing all these that the offerings made at Crāddhas become inexhaustible.—[15]

"'Dhaumya said,—Broken utensils, broken bedsteads, cocks and dogs, as also such trees as have grown within dwelling

---

* It is difficult to identify what plants are meant by 'Karanjaka' and 'Suvarchala.'—T.

houses, are all inauspicious objects.[16] In a broken utensil is Kali himself, while in a broken bedstead is loss of wealth. When a cock or a dog is in sight, the deities do not eat the offerings made to them. Under the roots of a tree scorpions and snakes undoubtedly find shelter. Hence, one should never plant a tree within one's abode.*[17]

"'Jamadagni said,—That man whose heart is not pure is sure to go to Hell even if he adores the deities in a Horse-sacrifice or in a hundred Vājapeya sacrifices, or if he undergoes the severest austerities with head down most. Purity of heart is regarded as equal to sacrifices and Truth.[18-19] A very poor Brāhmana, by giving only a *Prastha* of powdered barley with a pure heart unto a Brāhmana, attained to the region of Brahman himself. This is a sufficient proof (of the importance of purity of heart).—' "[20]

SECTION CXXVIII.

"'Vāyu said,—I shall recite some duties the observance of which is fraught with happiness to mankind. Do ye listen also with concentrated attention to certain transgressions with the secret causes upon which they depend.[1] That man who offers for the four months of the rainy season sesame and water (unto the Pitris), and food, according to the best of his power, unto a Brāhmana well-conversant with the duties,[2] who duly pours libations on the sacred fire, and makes offerings of rice boiled in sugured milk, who gives lamps in honor of the Pitris, with sesame and water,[3]—verily he who does all this with faith and concentrated attention acquires all the merits that attach to a hundred sacrifices in which animals are offered up to the

---

* 'Bhānda' includes utensils of copper and brass such as plates and cups and jars and jugs. Broken utensils, to this day, are regarded inauspicious. They are rejected, as a rule, by every family. Kali has his abode in them, meaning that such utensils cause quarrels and disputes. Broken bed-steads also are regarded as capable of causing loss of wealth. Cocks and dogs should never be kept or reared in a house. The roots of trees afford shelter to scorpions and snakes and venomous insects and worms. One should not, therefore, plant trees or allow them to grow up within one's abode.—T.

deities.[4] Listen to this other high mystery that is unknown to all. That man who thinks it all right when a Cudra ignites the fire upon which he is to pour libations or who does not see any fault when women who are incompetent to assist at Crāddhas and other rites are allowed to assist at them, really becomes stained with sin.*[5] The three sacrificial fires become enraged with such a person. In his next life he has to take birth as a Cudra. His Pitris, together with the deities, are never gratified with him.[6] I shall now recite what the expiations are which one must go through for cleansing oneself from such sins. Listen to me with attention. By performing those expiatory acts, one becomes happy and free from fever.[7] Fasting all the while, one should, for three days, with concentrated attention, pour libations, on the sacred fire, of the urine of the cow mixed with cowdung and milk and ghee.[8] The deities accept the offerings of such a man on the expiration of a full year. His Pitris also, when the time comes for him for performing the Crāddha, become gratified with him.[9] I have thus recited what is righteous and what unrighteous, with all their unknown details, in respect of human beings desirous of attaining to Heaven. Verily, men who abstain from these transgresions or who having committed them undergo the expiatory rites indicated, succeed in attaining to Heaven when they leave this world.—' "[10]

Section CXXIX.

" 'Lomaça said,—The Pitris of those men who, without having wedded wives of their own, betake themselves to the wives of other people, become filled with disappointment when the time for the Crāddha comes.[1] He who betakes himself to the wives of other people, he who indulges in sexual union with a woman that is barren, and he who appropriates what belongs to a Brāhmana, are equally sinful.[2] Without doubt, the Pitris of such people cut them off without desiring to have

---

* A Brāhmana's fire should never be ignited by a Cudra. Wowen also should never be allowed to assist at Crāddhas for arranging the offerings.—T.

any intercourse with them. The offerings they make fail to gratify the deities and the Pitris.[3] Hence, one should always abstain from sexual congress with women that are the wedded wives of others, as also with women that are barren. The man who desires his own good should not appropriate what belongs to a Brāhmana.[4] Listen now to another mystery, unknown to all, with regard to religion. One should, endued with faith, always do the bidding of one's preceptor and other seniors.[5] On the twelfth lunar day, as also on the day of the full moon, every month, one should make gifts unto Brāhmanas of ghee and the offerings that constitute Akshata. Listen to me as I say what the measure is of the merit that such a person acquires.[6] By such an act one is said to increase Soma and the Ocean. Vāsava, the chief of the celestials, confers upon him a fourth part of the merits that attach to a Horse-sacrifice.[7] By making such gifts, a person becomes endued with great energy and prowess. The divine Soma, well pleased with him, grants him the fruition of his wishes.[8] Listen now to another duty, together with the foundation on which it rests, that is productive of great merit. In this age of Kali, that duty, if performed, brings about much happiness to men.[9] That man who, rising at early dawn and purifying himself by a bath, attires himself in white robes and with concentrated attention makes gifts unto Brāhmanas of vessels full of sesame seeds,[10] who makes offerings unto the Pitris of water with sesame seeds and honey, and who gives lamps as also the food called Kriçara acquires substantial merits. Listen to me as I say what those merits are.[11] The divine chastiser of Pāka has ascribed these merits to the gift of vessels of copper and brass filled with sesame seeds. He who makes gifts of kine, he who makes gifts of land that are productive of eternal merit,[12] he who performs the Agnishtoma sacrifice with copious presents in the form of Dakshinā to the Brāhmanas, are all regarded by the deities as acquiring merits equal to those which one acquires by making gifts of vessels filled with sesame seeds.[13] Gifts of water with sesame seeds are regarded by the Pitris as productive of eternal gratification to them. The grandsires all become highly pleased with gifts of lamps and Kriçara.[14] I

have thus recited the ancient ordinance, laid down by the Rishis, that is highly applauded by both the Pitris and the deities in their respective regions.—' "[15]

Section CXXX.

"Bhishma said,—'The diverse Rishis there assembled, together with the Pitris and the deities, then, with concentrated attention, asked Arundhati (the spouse of Vaçishtha) who was endued with great ascetic merit.[1] Possessed of abandant wealth of penances, Arundhati was equal to her lord the high-souled Vaçishtha in energy for in both vows and conduct she was her lord's equal.[2] Addressing her they said,—We desire to hear from thee the mysteries of duty and religion. It behooveth thee, O amiable lady, to tell us what thou regardest as a high mystery !—[3]

" 'Arundhati said,—The great progress I have been able to achieve in penances is due to your consideration for me in thus remembering my poor self. With your gracious permission I shall now discourse on duties that are eternal,[4] on duties that are high mysteries. I shall discourse thereon with the causes on which they depend. Listen to me as I discourse to you elaborately. A knowledge of these should be imparted unto him only that is possessed of faith or that has a pure heart.[5] These four, *viz.*, he that is bereft of faith, he that is full of pride, he that is guilty of Brāhmanicide, and he that violates the bed of his preceptor, should never be talked to. Religion and duty should never be communicated unto them.[6] The merits acquired by a person who gives away a Kapilā cow every day for a period of two and ten years, or by a person who adores the deities every month in a sacrifice, or by him who gives away hundreds of thousands of kine in the great Pushkara, do not come up to those that are his with whom a guest is gratified.[7-8] Listen now to another duty whose observance is fraught with happiness to mankind. It should be observed with its secret ritual by a person endued with faith. Its merits are certainly high.[9] Listen to what they are. If a person, rising at early dawn and taking with him a quantity

of water and a few blades of Kuça grass proceeds into a cow-pen and arrived there washes a cow's horns by sprinkling thereon that water with those blades of Kuça grass and then causes the water to drip down on his own head, he is regarded, in consequence of such a bath, as one that has performed his ablutions in all the sacred waters that the wise have heard to exist in the three worlds and that are honored and resorted to by Siddhas and Chāranas.[10-12]—After Arundhati had said these words, all the deities and Pitris applauded her, saying,—Excellent. Excellent.—Indeed, all the beings there were highly gratified and all of them worshipped Arundhati.[13]

"'Brahman said.—O highly blessed one, excellent is the duty that thou hast enunciated, together with its secret ritual. Praise be to thee? I grant thee this boon, *viz.*, that thy penances will continually increase!—[14]

"'Yama said,—I have heard from thee an excellent and agreeable discourse. Listen now to what Chitragupta has said and what is agreeable to me.[15] Those words relate to duty with its secret ritual, and are worthy of being heard by the great Rishis, as also by men endued with faith and desirous of achieving their own good.[16] Nothing is lost of either righteousness or sin that is committed by creatures. On days of the full moon and the new moon, those acts are conveyed to the Sun where they rest.[17] When a mortal goes into the regions of the dead, the deity of the Sun bears witness to all his acts. He that is righteous acquires the fruits of his righteousness there.[18] I shall now tell you of some auspicious duties that are approved of by Chitragupta. Water for drink, and lamps for lighting darkness, should always be given,[19] as also sandals and umbrellas and Kapilā kine with due rites. In Pushkara especially should one make the gift of a Kapilā cow unto a Brāhmana conversant with the Vedas.[20] One should also always maintain one's Agnihotra with great care. Here is another duty which was proclaimed by Chitragupta.[21] It behooveth them that are the best of creatures to listen to what the merits are of that duty separately. In course of time, every creature is destined to undergo dissolution.[22] They that are of little understandings meet with great distress in the regions

of the dead, for they become afflicted by hunger and thirst. Indeed, they have to rot there, burning in pain. There is no escape for them from such calamity.[23] They have to enter into a thick darkness. I shall now tell you of those duties by performing which one may succeed in crossing such calamity.[24] The performance of those duties costs very little but is fraught with great merit. Indeed, such performance is productive of great happiness in the other world. The merits that attach to the gift of water for drink are excellent. In the next world in especial, those merits are very high.[25] For them that make gifts of water for drink there is ordained in the other world a large river full of excellent water. Indeed, the water contained in that river is inexhaustible and cool and sweet as nectar.[26] He who makes gifts of water in this world drinks from that stream in the world hereafter when he goes thither. Listen now to the abundant merits that attach to the giving of lamps.[27] The man who gives lamps in this world has never to even behold the thick darkness (of Hell). Soma and Surya and the deity of fire always give him their light when he repairs to the other world.[28] The deities ordain that on every side of such a person there should be blazing light. Verily, when the giver of lights repairs to the world of the dead, he himself blazes forth in pure effulgence like a second Surya.[29] Hence, one should give lights while here and water for drink in especial. Listen now to what the merits are of the person who makes the gift of a Kapilā cow to a Brāhmana conversant with the Vedas, especially if the gift he made in Pushkara.[30] Such a man is regarded as having made a gift of a hundred kine with a bull—a gift that is productive of eternal merit.[31] The gift of a single Kapilā cow is capable of cleansing whatever sins the giver may be guilty of even if those sins be as grave as Brāhmanicide, for the gift of a single Kapilā cow is regarded as equal in point of merit to that of a hundred kine.[32] Hence, one should give away a Kapilā cow at that Pushkara which is regarded as the senior (of the two Tirthas known by that name) on the day of the full moon in the month of Kārtika. Men that succeed in making such a gift have never to encounter distress of any kind, or sorrow, or

thorns giving pain.[33] That man who gives away a pair of sandals unto a superior Brāhmana that is deserving of the gift, attains to similar merits. By giving away an umbrella a person obtains comfortable shade in the next world. (He will not have to be exposed to the Sun).[34] A gift made to a deserving person is never lost. It is certain to produce agreeable consequences to the giver !—Hearing these opinions of Chitragupta, Surya's hair stood on its end.[35] Endued with great splendour, he addressed all the deities and the Pitris, saying,—Ye have heard the mysteries relating to duty, as propounded by the high-souled Chitragupta.[36] Those human beings who, endued with faith, make these gifts unto high-souled Brāhmanas, become freed from fear of every kind.[37] These five kinds of men, stained with vicious deeds, have no escape. Verily, of sinful behaviour and regarded as the worst of men, they should never be talked to. Indeed, they should always be avoided.[38] Those five are he who is the slayer of a Brāhmana, he who is the slayer of a cow, he who is addicted to sexual congress with other people's wives, he who is bereft of faith (in the Vedas), and he who derives his sustenance by selling the virtue of his wife.[39] These men of sinful conduct, when they repair to the region of the dead, rot in hell like worms that live upon puss and blood.[40] These five are avoided by the Pitris, the deities, the Snātaka Brāhmanas, and other regenerate persons that are devoted to the practice of penances.—' "[41]

Section CXXXI.

"Bhishma said,—'Then all the highly blessed deities and the Pitris, and the highly-blessed Rishis also, addressing the Pramathas, said,*[1]—Ye are all highly blessed beings. Ye are invisible wanderers of the night. Why do you afflict those men that are vile and impure and that are unclean ?[2] What acts are regarded as impediments to your power ? What, indeed, are those acts in consequence of which ye become incompetent to afflict men ? What are those acts that are des-

* 'Pramathas' are the ghostly companions of Mahādeva. Literally, the name implies 'smiters.'—T.

tructive of Rākshasas and that prevent you from asserting your power over the habitations of men?[3] Ye wanderers of the night, we desire to hear all this from you!—[4]

"'The Pramathas said,—Men are rendered unclean by acts of sexual congress. They who do not purify themselves after such acts, they who insult their superiors, they who from stupefaction eat different kinds of meat, the man also who sleeps at the foot of a tree,[5] he who keeps any animal matter under his pillow while lying down for sleep, and he who lies down or sleeps placing the head where his feet should be placed or his feet where the head should be placed,—these men are regarded by us as unclean. Verily, these men have many holes.[6] Those also are numbered in the same class who throw their phlegm and other unclean secretions into the water. Without doubt, these men deserve to be slain and eaten up by us.[7] Verily, we afflict those human beings who are endued with such conduct. Listen now to what those acts are which are regarded as antidotes and in consequence of which we fail to do any injury on men.[8] Those men upon whose persons occur streaks of Gorochanā, or who hold Vachas in their hands, or who make gifts of ghee with those ingredients that go by the name of Akshata, or who place ghee and Akshata on their heads,[9] or those who abstain from meat, are incapable of being afflicted by us. That man in whose house the sacred fire burns day and night without being ever put out,[10] or who keeps the skin or teeth of a wolf in his abode or a hill-tortoise, or from whose habitation the sacrificial smoke is seen to curl upwards, or who keeps a cat or a goat that is either tawny or black in hue, is free from our power.[11] Verily, those house-holders who keep these things in their houses always find them free from the inroads of even the fiercest spirits that live on carrion.[12] Those beings also, that like us range through different worlds in pursuit of pleasure, are unable to do any injury to such houses. Hence, ye deities, should men keep such articles in their houses, —articles that are destructive of Rākshasas (and other beings of the kind). We have thus told you everything about that respecting which ye had great doubts!—' "[13]

Section CXXXII.

"Bhishma said,—'After this, the Grandsire Brahman, sprung from the primeval lotus and resembling the lotus (in agreeableness and fragrance), addressed the deities with Vāsava, the lord of Cachi, at their head,[1]—Yonder sits the mighty Nāga who is a resident of the nether regions. Endued with great strength and energy, and with great prowess also, his name is Renuka. He is certainly a great being.[2] Those mighty elephants endued with great energy and power, who hold the entire Earth with her hills, waters, and lakes,[3] should be interviewed by this Renuka at your request. Let Renuka go to them and ask them about the mysteries of religion or duty![4]—Hearing these words of the Grandsire, the deities, with well-pleased minds, commissioned (the elephant) Renuka to where those upholders of the world are.[5]

"'Renuka, proceeding to where those elephants are, addressed them, saying,—Ye mighty creatures, I have been commanded by the deities and the Pitris to question you about the mysteries of religion and duty! I desire to hear you discourse on that subject in detail. Ye highly-blessed ones, do ye discourse on the subject as your wisdom may dictate!—[6]

"'The (eight) elephants standing in the eight quarters said, —On the auspicious eighth day of the dark fortnight in the month of Kārtika, when the constellation Açleshā is in the ascendant, one should make gifts of treacle and rice.[7] Casting aside wrath, and living on regulated diet, one should make these offerings at a Crāddha, uttering these *mantras* the while, —Let Valadeva and other Nāgas possessed of great strength,[8] let other mighty snakes of huge bodies that are indestructible and eternal, and let all the other great snakes that have taken their birth in their race,[9] make Vali offerings to me for the enhancement of my strength and energy! Verily, let my strength be as great as that of the blessed Nārāyana when he raised the submerged Earth![10]—Uttering these Mantras, one should make Vali offerings upon an anthill. When the maker of day retires to his chambers in the west, upon the anthill selected should offerings be made of raw sugar and rice.[11] The

anthill should previously be scattered with Gajendra flowers. Offerings should also be made of blue cloths and fragrant unguents.[12] If offerings are made in this way, those beings that live in the nether regions, bearing the weight of the upper regions upon their heads or shoulders, become well-pleased and gratified. As regards ourselves, we also do not feel the labour of upholding the Earth, in consequence of such offerings being made to us.[13] Afflicted with the burthen we bear, even this is what we think (beneficial for men), without the slightest regard for selfish concerns. Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Cudras, by observing this rule for a full year, fasting on each occasion, acquire great merits from such gifts.[14] We think that the making of such Vali offerings on the anthill is really fraught with very superior merits.[15] By making such offerings, one is regarded as doing the duties of hospitality for a hundred years to all the mighty elephants that exist in the three worlds.[16]—Hearing these words of the mighty elephants, the deities and the Pitris and the highly-blessed Rishis, all applauded Renuka.' "[17]

Section CXXXIII.

" 'Maheçwara said,—Searching your memories, excellent are the duties ye all have recited. Listen all of you now to me as I declare some mysteries relating to religion and duty.[1] Only those persons whose understandings have been set on religion and who are possessed of faith, should be instructed in respect of those mysteries of duty and religion that are fraught with high merits.[2] Hear what the merits are that become his who, with heart free from anxiety, gives food every day, for a month, to kine and contents himself with one meal a day throughout such period.[3] The kine are highly blessed. They are regarded as the most sacred of all sacred things. Verily, it is they that are upholding the three worlds with the deities, Asuras, and human beings.[4] Respectful services rendered to them are fraught with high merit and grave consequences. That man who every day gives food to kine advances every day is religions merit.[5] Formerly in the Krita age I had expressed

my approval of these creatures. Afterwards Brahman, born of the primeval lotus, solicited me (to show kindness towards kine).*[6] It is for this reason that a bull to this day stands as the device on my standard overhead. I always sport with kine. Hence should kine be worshipped by all.[7] Kine are possessed of great power. They are givers of boons. If worshipped, they would grant boons. That person who gives food to kine even for a single day receives from those beneficent creatures for that act a fourth part of the merits he may win by all his good acts in life.—' "[8]

SECTION CXXXIV.

" 'Skanda said,—I shall now declare a duty that is approved of by me. Do ye listen to it with concentrated attention. That person who takes a little earth from the horns of a bull of blue complexion,[1] smears his body therewith for three days, and then performs his ablutions, acquires great merits. Hear what those merits are. By such an act he would wash away every stain and evil, and attain to sovereign sway hereafter.[2] As many times he takes his birth in this world, so many times does he become celebrated for his heroism. Listen now to another mystery unknown to all.[3] Taking a vessel of copper and placing therein some cooked food after having mixed it with honey, one should offer it as Vali unto the rising Moon on the evening of the day when that luminary is at full.[4] Do ye learn, with faith, what the merits are of the person that acts in this way. The Sāddhyas, the Rudras, the Ādityas, the Viçwedevas, the twin Açwins,[5] the Maruts, and the Vasus, all accept that offering. By such an offering, Soma increases as also ocean, that vast receptacle of waters. This duty that is declared by me and that is unknown to all, if performed, is certainly fraught with great happiness.—[6]

---

* 'Anujnātāh' literally implies 'permitted.' 'These creatures,' *i. e.*, kine, 'were permitted by me,' means, perhaps, that they became my favourites. Brahman, it is said, solicited Maheçwara to accept some kine in gift. The latter did accept some, and adopt from that time the device of the bull on his flag.—T.

"'Vishnu said,—That person who, endued with faith and freed from malice, listens every day with concentrated attension to the mysteries in respect of religion and duty that are preserved by the high-souled deities and those mysteries also of the same kind that are preserved by the Rishis, has never to succumb to any evil. Such a person becomes also freed from every fear.[7-8] That man who, with his senses under thorough control, reads these sections which treat of these auspicious and meritorious duties, together with their mysteries,—duties that have been declared (by the previous speakers),—acquires all the merits that attach to their actual performance.[9] Sin can never overmaster him. Verily, such a man can never be stained with faults of any kind. Indeed, one wins abundant merits by reading these mysteries (as declared), or by reciting them to others, or by hearing them recited.[10] The deities and the Pitris eat for ever the Havi and the Kavi offered by such a creature. Both these, in consequence of the virtues of the offerer become inexhaustible. Even such is the merit that attaches to the person who, with concentrated attention, recites these mysteries to foremost of Brāhmanas on days of the full moon or the new moon.[11] Such a person, in consequence of such an act, becomes steady in the observance of all duties. Beauty of form and prosperity also become his. He succeeds, besides this, in becoming the favourite, for all time, of the Rishis and the deities and the Pitris.[12] If a person becomes guilty of all sins save those which are classed as grave or heinous, he becomes cleansed of them all by only listening to the recitation of these mysteries about religion and duty.—'[13]

"Bhishma continued,—'Even these, O king of men, are the mysteries in respect of religion and duty dwelling in the breasts of the deities. Held in high respect by all the gods and promulgated by Vyāsa, they have now been declared by me for thy benefit. One who is conversant with religion and duty thinks that this excellent knowledge is even superior (in value) to the whole Earth full of riches and wealth.[15] This knowledge should not be imparted to one that is bereft of faith, or to one that is an athiest, or to one that has fallen away from

the duties of his order, or to one that is destitute of compassion, or to one that is devoted to the science of empty disputations, or to one that is hostile to one's preceptors, or to one that thinks all creatures to be different from oneself.' "[16]

SECTION CXXXV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Who are those persons, O Bhārata, from whom a Brahmana in this world may accept his food? From whom may a Kshatriya, a Vaiçya, and a Çudra take their food respectively?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'A Brāhmana may take his food from another Brāhmana or from a Kshatriya or a Vaiçya, but he must never accept food from a Çudra.[2] A Kshatriya may take his food from a Brāhmana, a Kshatriya, or a Vaiçya. He must, however, eschew food given by Çudras who are addicted to evil ways and who partake of all manner of food without any scruple.[3] Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas can partake of food given by such Vaiçyas as tend the sacred fire every day, as are faultless in character, and as perform the vow of Chāturmāsya.[4] But the man who takes food from a Çudra, swallows the very abonimation of the Earth, and drinks the excretions of the human body, and partakes of the filth of all the world.[5] He partakes of the very filth of the Earth who takes his food thus from a Çudra. Verily, those Brāhmanas that take their food from Çudras, take the dirt of the Earth.[6] If one engages in the service of a Çudra, one is doomed to perdition though one may duly perform all the rites of one's order. A Brāhmana, a Kshatriya, or a Vaiçya, so engaging, is doomed, although devoted to the due performance of religious rites.[7] It is said that a Brāhmana's duty consists in studying the Vedas and seeking the welfare of the human race; that a Kshatriya's duty consists in protecting men, and that a Vaiçya's in promoting their material prosperity.[8] A Vaiçya lives by distributing the fruits of his own acts and agriculture. The breeding of kine and trade are the legitimate work in which a Vaiçya may engage without fear of censure.[9] The man who abandons his own proper occupation and betakes himself to that of a Çudra,

should be considered as a Cudra and on no account should any food be accepted from him.[10] Professors of the healing art, mercenary soldiers, the priest who acts as warder of the house, and persons who devote a whole year to study without any profit, are all to be considered as Cudras.[11] And those who impudently partake of food offered at ceremonials in a Cudra's house, are afflicted with a terrible calamity. In consequence of partaking such forbidden food they lose their family, strength, and energy, and attain to the status of lower animals, descending to the position of dogs, fallen in virtue and devoid of all religious observances.[12-13] He who takes food from a physician takes that which is no better than excrement ; the food of a harlot is like urine ; that of a skilled mechanic is like blood.[14] If a Brāhmana approved by the good, takes the food of one who lives by his learning, he is regarded as taking the food of a Cudra. All good men should forego such food.[15] The food of a person who is censured by all is said to be like a draught from a pool of blood. The acceptance of food from a wicked person is considered as reprehensible as the slaying of a Brāhmana.[16] One should not accept food if one is slighted and not received with due honors by the giver. A Brāhmana, who does so, is soon overtaken by disease, and his race soon becomes extinct.[17] By accepting food from the warder of a city, one descends to the status of the lowest outcaste.[18] If a Brāhmana accepts food from one who is guilty of killing either a cow or a Brāhmana or from one who has committed adultery with his preceptor's wife or from a drunkard, he helps to promote the race of Rākshasas.[19] By accepting food from a eunuch, or from an ungrateful person, or from one who has misappropriated wealth entrusted to his charge, one taken birth in the country of the Savaras situated beyond the precincts of the middle country.[20] I have thus duly recited to thee the persons from whom food may be accepted and from whom it may not. Now tell me, O son of Kunti, what else dost thou wish to hear from me today."[21]

Section CXXXVI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou hast told me in full of those from whom food may be accepted, and of those from whom it should not be taken ?[1] But I have grave doubts on one point. Do thou, O sire, enlighten me; do thou tell me what expiation a Brāhmana should make (for the sin he incurs) upon accepting the different kinds of food, those especially offered in honor of the gods and the oblations made to deceased ancestors.'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall tell thee, O prince, how high-souled Brāhmanas may be absolved from all sin incurred by accepting food from others.[3] In accepting clarified butter, the expiation is made by pouring oblations on the fire, reciting the Sāvitri hymn. In accepting sesamum, O Yudhishthira, the same expiation has to be made.[4] In accepting meat, or honey, or salt, a Brāhmana becomes purified by standing till the rising of the Sun.[5] If a Brāhmana accepts gold from any one, he becomes cleansed of all sins by silently reciting the great Vedic prayer (Gāyatri) and by holding a piece of iron in his hand in the presence of the public. In accepting money or clothes or women or gold, the purification is the same as before.[6-7] In accepting food, or rice boiled in milk and sugar, or sugarcane juice, or sugar cane, or oil, or any sacred thing, one becomes purified by bathing thrice in the course of the day, *viz.*, at morn, noon and eve.[8] If one accepts paddy, flowers, fruits, water, half-ripe barley, milk, or curdled milk, or anything made of meal or flour, the expiation is made by reciting the Gāyatri prayer a hundred times.[9] In accepting shoes or clothes at obsequial ceremonies, the sin is destroyed by reciting devoutly the same hymn a hundred times.[10] The acceptance of the gift of land at the time of an eclipse or during the period of impurity, is expiated by observing a fast during three successive nights.[11] The Brāhmana who partakes of oblations offered to deceased ancestors, in course of the dark fortnight, is purified by fasting for a whole day and night.[12] Without performing his ablutions a Brāhmana should not say his evening prayers, nor betake himself to religious meditation, nor take

his food a second time. By so doing he is purified.[13] For this reason the Crāddha of deceased ancestors has been ordained to be performed in the afternoon and then the Brāhmana who has been invited beforehand should be feasted.[14] The Brāh mana who partakes of food at the house of a dead person on the third day after the death, is purified by bathing three times daily for twelve days.[15] After the expiration of twelve days, and going through the purification ceremonies duly, the sin is destroyed by giving clarified butter to Brāhmanas.[16] If a man takes any food in the house of a dead person, within ten days after the death, he should go through all the expiations before mentioned, and should recite the Sāvitri hymn and do the sin-destroying Ishti and Kushmānda penances.[17] The Brāhmana who takes his food in the house of a dead person for three nights, becomes purified by performing his ablutions thrice daily for seven days, and thus attains all the objects of his desire, and is never troubled by misfortunes.[18-19] The Brāhmana who takes his food in the company of Cudras, is purged from all impurity by duly observing the ceremonies of purification.[20] The Brāhmana who takes his food in the company of Vaiçyas is absolved from sin, by living on alms for three successive nights.[21] If a Brāhmana takes his food with Kshatriyas, he should make expiation by bathing with his clothes on.[22] By eating with a Cudra from off the same plate the Cudra loses his family respectability; the Vaiçya by eating from off the same plate with a Vaiçya, loses his cattle and friends. The Kshatriya loses his prosperity, and the Brāhmana his splendour and energy.[23] In such cases, expiations should be made, and propitiatory rites should be observed, and oblations offered to the gods. The Sāvitri hymn should be recited and the Revati rites and Kushmānda penances should be observed with the view of destroying the sin.[24] If any of the above four classes partake of food partly eaten by a person of any other class, the expiation is undoubtedly made by smearing the body with auspicious substances like Rochana, Durbā grass, and turmeric.' "[25]

Section CXXXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O Bhārata, of the two things charity and devotion, do thou condescend to tell me, O sire, which is the better in this world? Do thou, by this, remove a great doubt from my mind.'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'Do thou listen to me as I recite the names of the princes who having been devoted to virtue, and having cleansed their hearts by penances and practised gifts and other acts of righteousness, undoubtedly attained to the different celestial regions.[2] The Rishi Atreya revered by all, attained, O monarch, to the excellent celestial regions, by imparting the knowledge of the unconditional Supreme Being to his pupils.[3] King Civi the son of Uçinara, by offering the life of his dear son, for the benefit of a Brāhmana, was translated from this world to heaven.[4] And Pratardana the king of Kāçi, by giving his son to a Brāhmana, secured to himself unique and undying fame in this as well as in the other world.[5] Rantideva, the son of Sangkriti, attained to the highest heaven by duly making gifts to the high-souled Vaçishtha.[6] Devavriddha too went to heaven by giving a hundred-ribbed and excellent golden umbrella to a Brāhmana for a sacrifice.[7] The worshipful Amvarisha too has attained to the region of the gods, by making a gift of all his kingdom to a Brāhmana of great power.[8] King Janamejaya of the solar race, went to the highest heaven by making a gift of earrings, fine vehicles, and cows to Brāhmanas.[9] The Royal sage Vrishādarvi went to heaven by making gifts of various jewels and beautiful houses to Brāhmanas.[10] King Nimi of Vidarva, attained to heaven with his sons, friends and cattle, by giving his daughter and kingdom to the high-souled Agastya.[11] The far-famed Rāma the son of Jamadagni attained to the eternal regions, far beyond his expectation, by giving lands to Brāhmanas.[12] Vaçishtha, the prince of Brāhmanas, preserved all the creatures at a time of great drought when the god Parjanya did not bestow his grateful showers upon the Earth, and for this act he has secured eternal bliss for himself.[13] Rāma the son of

Daçaratha, whose fame is very high in this world, attained to the eternal regions by making gifts of wealth at sacrifices.[14] The far-famed royal sage Kakshasena went to heaven by duly making over to the high-souled Vaçishtha the wealth which he had deposited with him.[15] Marutta the son of Abikshita and the grandson of Karandhama, by giving his daughter in marriage to Angiras, immediately went to heaven.[16] The highly devout king of Panchāla, Brahmadatta, attained the blessed way by giving away a precious conch-shell.[17] King Mitrasaha, by giving his favourite wife Madayanti to the high-souled Vaçishtha, ascended to Heaven.[18] Sudyumna, the son of Manu, by causing the proper punishment to be inflicted upon the high-souled Likhita, attained to the most blessed regions.[19] The celebrated royal sage Sahasrachitta went to the blessed regions, by sacrificing his dear life for the sake of a Brāhmana.[20] The king Catadyumna went to heaven by giving to Maudgala a golden mansion replete with all the objects of desire.[21] In ancient times, king Sumanyu by giving to Cāndilya heaps of food looking like a hill, proceeded to Heaven.[22] The Cālwa prince Dyutimat of great splendour attained to the highest regions by giving his kingdom to Richika.[23] The royal sage Madirāçwa by giving his slender-waisted daughter to Hiranyahasta went to the region of the gods.[24] The lordly Lomapāda attained all the vast objects of his desire by giving his daughter Cāntā in marriage to Rishyaçringa.[25] The royal sage Bhagiratha, by giving his famous daughter Hansi in marriage to Kautsa, went to the eternal regions.[26] King Bhagiratha by giving hundreds and thousands of kine with their young ones to Kohala attained to the most blessed regions.[27] These and many other men, O Yudhishthira, have attained to heaven, by the merit of their charities and penances and they have also returned from thence again and again.[28] Their fame will endure as long as the world will last. I have related to thee, O Yudhishthira, this story of those good householders who have attained to eternal regions by dint of their charities and penances.[29] By their charities and by performing sacrifices and by procreating offspring, these people have attained to the heavenly regions.[30] O foremost scion of Kuru's race, by always performing acts of charity,

these men applied their virtuous intellects to the performance of sacrifices and charities.[31] O mighty prince, as night has approached I shall explain to thee in the morning whatever doubts may arise in thy mind.' "[32]

SECTION CXXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I have heard from thee, O sire, the names of those kings that have ascended to Heaven, O thou whose power is great in the observance of the vow of truth by following the religion of gift.[1] How many kinds of gift are there that should be given? What are the fruits of the several kinds of gifts respectively?[2] For what reasons what kinds of gifts made to what persons are productive of merits? Indeed, unto what persons should what gifts be made? For what reasons are how many kinds of gifts to be made? I desire to hear all this in detail.'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Listen, O son of Kunti, in detail to me, O sinless one as I discourse on the subject of gifts. Indeed, I shall tell you, O Bhārata, how gifts should be made unto all the orders of men.[4] From desire of merit, from desire of profit, from fear, from free choice, and from pity, gifts are made, O Bhārata! Gifts, therefore, should be known to be of five kinds. Listen now to the reasons for which gifts are thus distributed into five classes.[5] With mind freed from malice one should make gifts unto Brāhmanas, for by making gifts unto them one acquires fame here and great felicity hereafter. (Such gifts are regarded as made from desire of merit).[6] He is in the habit of making gifts; or he will make gifts; or he has already made gifts to me. Hearing such words from solicitors one gives away all kinds of wealth unto a particular solicitor. (Such gifts are regarded as made from desire of profit).[7] I am not his, nor is he mine. If disregarded, he may injure me. From such motives of fear even a man of learning and wisdom may make gifts unto an ignorant wretch. (Such gifts are regarded as made from fear).[8] This one is dear to me. I also am dear to him. Influenced by considerations like these, a person of intelligence, freely and with alacrity, makes

gifts unto a friend.[9] (Such gifts are regarded as made from free choice). The person that solicits me is poor. He is, again, gratified with a little. From considerations such as these, one should always make gifts unto the poor, moved by pity. (Gifts made from such considerations are regarded as made from pity).[10] These are the five kinds of gift. They enhance the giver's merits and fame. The Lord of all creatures (Brahman himself) has said that one should always make gifts according to one's power.' "[11]

SECTION CXXXIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, thou art possessed of great wisdom. Indeed, thou art fully conversant with every branch of learning. In our great race thou art the only individual that swellest with all the sciences.[1] I desire to hear from thee discourses that are interwoven with Religion and Profit, that lead to felicity hereafter, and that are fraught with wonder unto all creatures![2] The time that has come is fraught with great distress. The like of it does not generally come to kinsmen and friends. Indeed, save thee, O foremost of men, we have now none else that can take the place of an instructor![3] If, O sinless one, I with my brothers deserve thy favour, it behooveth thee to answer the questions I desire to ask thee![4] This one is Nārāyana who is endued with every prosperity and is honored by all the kings. Even he wait upon thee, showing thee every indulgence and honoring thee greatly.[5] It behooveth thee to discourse unto me, through affection, for my benefit as also for that of my brothers, in the presence of Vāsudeva himself and of all these kings.' "[6]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words of king Yudhishthira, Bhishma, the son of the river called after Bhagiratha, filled with joy in consequence of his affection for the monarch and his brothers, said what follows.*[7]

"Bhishma said,—'I shall certainly recite to thee discourses,

---

* 'Sambhrama' here means, probably, joy, or that gratification which shows itself in horripilation. It may also mean alacrity.—T.

that are delightful, on the subject, O king, of the puissance of this Vishnu as displayed in days of yore and as I have heard (from my preceptors).[8] Listen to me also as I describe the puissance of that great god who has a bovine bull for his device. Listen to me as I narrate also the doubt that filled the mind of the spouse of Rudra and that of Rudra himself.[9] Once on a time the righteus-souled Krishna observed a vow extending for two and ten years. For beholding him who had gone through the rite of initiation for the observance of his great vow, there came to that place Nārada and Parvata, and the Island-born Krishna, and Dhaumya, that foremost of silent reciters, and Devala, and Kāçyapa, and Hastikāçyapa.[10-11] Other Rishis also, endued with Dikshā and self-restraint, followed by their disciples and accompanied by many Siddhas and many ascetics of great merit, came there.[12] The son of Devaki offered them such honors of hospitality as are deserving of the highest praise and as are offered unto the gods alone.[13] Those great Rishis sat themselves down upon seats some of which were green and some endued with the complexion of gold and some that were fraught with the plumes of the poacock and some that were perfectly new and fresh.[14] Thus seated, they began to converse sweetly with one another on subjects connected with Religion and duty as also with many royal sages and deities.[15] At that time the energy, in the form of fire, of Nārāyana, rising from the fuel that consisted of the rigid observance of his vow, issued out of the mouth of Krishna of wonderful feats.[16] That fire began to consume those mountains with their trees and creepers and little plants, as also with their birds and deer and beasts of prey and reptiles.[17] Soon the summit of that mountain presented a distressing and pitiful appearance. Inhabited by animals of diverse kinds which began to utter cries of woe and pain, the summit soon became bereft of every living creature.[18] That fire of mighty flames, having consumed everything without living a remnant, at last came back to Vishnu and touched his feet like a docile disciple.[19] That crusher of foes, *viz.*, Krishna, beholding that mountain burnt, cast a benignant look upon it and thereby brought it back to its former condi-

tion.[20] That mountain thereupon once more became adorned with flowering trees and creepers, and once more echoed with the notes and cries of birds and deer and animals of prey and reptiles.[21] Seeing that wonderful and inconceivable sight, all the ascetics become amazed. Their hair stood on its ends and their vision was disturbed with tears.[22] That foremost of speakers, Nārāyana, beholding those Rishis thus filled with wonder, addressed them in these sweet and refreshing words :[23] —Why, indeed, has wonder filled the hearts of this assemblage of Rishis, these ascetics that are always free from attachment of every kind, that are divested of the idea of *meum*, and that are fully conversant with every sacred science ?[24] It behooveth these Rishis possessed of wealth of penances and freed from every stain to explain to me truly this doubt that has arisen in my mind !—[25]

" 'The Rishis said,—It is thou that createst all the worlds, and it is thou that destroyest them again. It is thou that art Winter, it is thou that art Summer, and it is thou that art the season of rains.[26] Of all the creatures, mobile and immobile, that occur on Earth, thou art the father, thou art the mother, thou art the master, and thou art the origin ![27] Even this, O slayer of Madhu, is a matter of wonder and doubt with us. O source of all auspiciousness, it behooveth thee to expound to us that doubt, *viz.*, the issue of fire from thy mouth.[28] Our fears being dispelled, we shall then, O Hari, recite to thee what we have heard and seen !—[29]

" 'Vāsudeva said,—The fire that issued from my mouth and that resembles the all-consuming Yuga-fire in splendour, and by which this mountain has been crushed and scorched, is nothing else than the energy of Vishnu.[30] Ye Rishis, ye are persons that have subjugated wrath, that have brought your senses under complete control, that are endued with wealth of penances, and that are very gods in puissance. Yet ye have suffered yourselves to be agitated and distressed ![31] I am now engaged wholly with the observances relating to a rigid vow. Verily, in consequence of my observing the vows of an ascetic, a fire issued from my mouth. It behooves you not to suffer yourselves to be agitated.[32] It is for observing a rigid vow

that I came to this delightful and auspicious mountain. The object that has brought me here is to acquire by the aid of penances a son that would be my equal in energy.[33] In consequence of my penances, the Soul existing in my body became transformed into fire and issued out of my mouth. That fire had repaired to behold the boon-giving Grandsire of all the universe.[34] The Grandsire, ye foremost of ascetics, told my soul that half the energy of the great god having the bull for his device would take birth as my son.[35] That fire, returning from its mission, has come back to me and approached my feet like a disciple desirous of serving me dutifully. Indeed, casting off its fury it has come back to its own proper nature.[36] I have thus told ye, in brief, a mystery appertaining to Him who has the lotus for his origin and who is endued with great intelligence. Ye Rishis possessed of wealth of penances, ye should not give way to fear![37] Ye are endued with far-reaching vision. Ye can proceed to every place without any impediment. Blazing with vows observed by ascetics, ye are adorned with knowledge and science.[38] I now ask you to tell me something that is highly wonderful which you have heard of or seen on Earth or in Heaven.[39] I feel an eager desire to taste the honey of that speech which will drop from your lips, the honey that will, I am sure, be as sweet as a jet of nectar itself.[40] If I behold anything on Earth or in Heaven, which is highly delightful and of wonderful aspect but which is unknown to all of you, ye Rishis that look like so many gods,[41] I say that that is in consequence of my own supreme Nature which is incapable of being obstructed by anything. Anything wonderful whose knowledge dwelleth in me or is acquired by my own inspiration ceases to appear wonderful to me.[42] Anything, however, that is recited by pious persons and that is heard from those that are good, deserves to be accepted with respect and faith. Such discourses exist on Earth for a long time and are as durable as characters engraved on rocks.[43] I desire, therefore, to hear, at this meeting of ourselves, something dropping from the lips of persons that are good and that cannot fail to be productive of good to men![44]—Hearing these words of Krishna, all those ascetics became filled with sur-

prise. They began to gaze at Janārddana with those eyes of theirs that were as beautiful and large as the petals of the lotus.[45] Some of them began to glorify him and some began to worship him with reverence. Indeed, all of them then hymned the praises of the slayer of Madhu with words whose meanings were adorned with the eternal Richs.[46] All those ascetics then appointed Nārada, that foremost of all persons conversant with speech, to gratify the request of Vāsudeva.[47]

"'The ascetics said,—It behooveth thee, O Nārada, to describe in full, from the beginning, unto Hrishikeça, that wonderful and inconceivable incident which occurred, O puissant one, on the mountains of Himavat and which, O ascetic, was witnessed by those of us that had proceeded thither in course of our sojourn to the sacred waters. Verily, for the benefit of all the Rishis here assembled, it behooveth thee to recite that incident![48-49]—Thus addressed by those ascetics, the celestial Rishi, *viz.*, the divine Nārada, then recited the following story whose incidents had occurred sometime before.'"[50]

Section CXL.

"Bhishma said,—'Then Nārada, that holy Rishi, that friend of Nārāyana, recited the following narrative of the discourse between Cankara and his spouse Umā.[1]

"'Nārada said,—Once on a time the righteous-souled lord of all the deities, *viz.*, Mahādeva with the bull for his device, practised severe penances on the sacred mountains of Himavat that are the resort of Siddhas and Chāranas.[2] Those delightful mountains are overgrown with diverse kinds of herbs and adorned with various species of flowers. At that time they were peopled by the different tribes of Apsaras and crowds of ghostly beings.[3] There the great god sat, filled with joy, and surrounded by hundreds of ghostly beings who presented diverse aspects to the eye of the beholder. Some of them were ugly and awkward, some were of very handsome features, and some presented the most wonderful appearances.[4] Some had faces like the lion's, some like the tiger's, and some like the elephant's. In fact, the faces of those ghostly creatures

presented every variety of animal faces. Some had faces resembling that of the jackall, some whose faces resembled the pard's; some like the ape's: some like the bull's.[5] Some of them had faces like the owl's; some like the hawk's; some had faces like those of deer of diverse varieties.[6] The great god was also surrounded by Kinnaras and Yakshas and Gandharvas and Rākshasas and diverse other created beings. The retreat to which Mahādeva had betaken himself also abounded with celestial flowers and blazed with celestial rays of light.[7] It was perfumed with celestial sandal, and celestial incense was burnt on every side. And it echoed with the sounds of celestial instruments.[8] Indeed, it resounded with the beat of Mridangas and Panavas, the blare of conchs, and the sound of drums. It teemed with ghostly beings of diverse tribes that danced in joy and with peacocks also that danced with plumes outspread.[9] Forming as it did the resort of the celestial Rishis, the Apsaras danced there in joy. The place was exceedingly agreeable to the sight. It was exceedingly beautiful, resembling Heaven itself. Its entire aspect was wonderful and, indeed, it is indescribable in respect of its beauty and sweetness.[10] Verily, with the penances of that great deity who sleeps on mountain-breasts, that prince of mountains shone with great beauty. It resounded with the chaunt of Vedas uttered by learned Brāhmanas devoted to Vedic recitation. Echoing with the hum of bees, O Mādhava, the mountain became incomparable in beauty.[11] The ascetics, beholding the great deity who is endued with a fierce form and who looks like a great festival, became filled, O Janārddana, with great joy.[12] All the highly blessed ascetics, the Siddhas who have drawn in their vital seed, the Maruts, the Vasus, the Sāddhyas, the Viçwedevas, Vāsava himself,[13] the Yakshas, the Nāgas, the Piçāchas, the Regents of the world, the several sacred Fires, the Winds, and all the great creatures dwelt on that mountain with minds concentrated in Yoga.[14] All the Seasons were present there and scattered those regions with all kinds of wonderful flowers. Diverse kinds of blazing herbs illuminated the woods and forests on that mountain.[15] Various species of birds, filled with joy, hopped about and sang merrily

on the delightful breast of that mountain. Those birds were exceedingly loveable in consequence of the notes they uttered.[16] The high-souled Mahādeva sat, displayed in beauty, on one of the peaks that was adorned with excellent minerals, as if it served the purposes of a fine bedstead.[17] Round his loins was a tiger-skin, and a lion-skin formed his upper garment. His sacred thread consisted of a snake. His arms were decked with a pair of red Angadas.[18] His beard was green. He had matted locks on his head. Of terrible features, he it is that inspires with fear the hearts of all the enemies of the gods. It is he, again, that assures all creatures by dispelling their fears. He is adored by his worshippers as the deity having the bovine bull for his device.[19] The great Rishis, beholding Mahādeva, bowed to him by touching the ground with their heads. Endued with forgiving souls, they all became (in consequence of the sight they had obtained of the great deity) freed from every sin and thoroughly cleansed.[20] The retreat of that lord of all creatures, teeming with many terrible forms, shone with a peculiar beauty. Abounding with many large snakes, it became unapproachable and unbearable (by ordinary beings).[21] Within the twinkling of the eye, O slayer of Madhu, everything there became exceedingly wonderful. Indeed, the abode of that great deity having the bovine bull for his device began to blaze with a terrible beauty.[22] Unto Mahādeva seated there, came his spouse, the daughter of Himavat, surrounded by the wives of the ghostly beings who are the companions of the great deity. Her attire was like that of her lord and the vows she observed were like those of his.[23] She held a jar on her loins that was filled with the waters of every Tirtha, and was accompanied by the presiding deities (of her own sex) of all the mountain streams. Those auspicious ladies walked in her train.[24] The goddess approached, raining flowers on every side and diverse kinds of sweet perfumes. She who loved to reside on the breast of Himavat advanced in this guise towards her great lord.[25] The beautiful Umā, with smiling lips and desirous of playing a jest, covered from behind, with her two beautiful hands, the eyes of Mahādeva.[26] As soon as Mahādeva's eyes were thus covered, all the regions became

dark and life seemed to be extinct everywhere in the universe. The *Homa* rites ceased. The universe became suddenly deprived of the sacred Vashat also.[27] All living creatures became cheerless and filled with fear. Indeed, when the eyes of the lord of all creatures were thus closed, the universe seemed to become sunless.[28] Soon, however, that over-spreading darkness disappeared. A mighty and blazing flame of fire emanated from Mahādeva's forehead.[29] A third eye, resembling another sun, appeared (on it). That eye began to blaze forth like the Yuga-fire and began to consume that mountain.[30] The large-eyed daughter of Himavat, beholding what occurred, bowed her head unto Mahādeva endued with that third eye which resembled a blazing fire. She stood there with gaze fixed on her lord.[31] When the mountain forests burned on every side, with their Sālas and other trees of straight stems, and their delightful sandals and diverse excellent medicinal herbs,[32] herds of deer and other animals, filled with fright, came with great speed to the place where Hara sat and sought his protection. With those creatures almost filling it, the retreat of the great deity blazed forth with a kind of peculiar beauty.[33] Meanwhile that fire, swelling wildly, soared up to the very heavens and endued with the splendour and unsteadiness of lightning and looking like a dozen suns in might and effulgence, covered every side like the all-destroying Yuga-fire.[34] In a moment, the Himavat mountains were consumed, with their minerals and summits and blazing herbs.[35] Beholding Himavat crushed and consumed, the daughter of that prince of mountains sought the protection of the great deity and stood before him with her hands joined in reverence.[36] Then Carva, seeing Umā overcome by an accession of womanly mildness and finding that she was unwilling to behold her father Himavat reduced to that pitiable plight, cast benignant looks upon the mountain.[37] In a moment the whole of Himavat was restored to his former condition and became as beautiful to look at as ever. Indeed, the mountain put forth a cheerful aspect. All its trees became adorned with flowers.[38] Beholding Himavat restored to his natural condition, the goddess Umā, divested of every fault, addressed her lord, that

master of all creatures, *viz.*, the divine Maheçwara, in these words :—[39]

" '—Umā said,—O holy one, O lord of all creatures, O deity that art armed with the trident, O thou of high vows, a great doubt has filled my mind ! It behooveth thee to resolve that doubt of mine.[40] For what reasons has this third eye appeared in thy forehead ? Why also was the mountain consumed with the woods and all that belonged to it ?[41] Why also, O illustrious deity, hast thou restored the mountain to its former condition ? Indeed, having burnt it once, why hast thou again caused it to be covered with trees ?—[42]

" '—Maheçwara said,—O goddess without any fault, in consequence of thy having covered my eyes through an act of indiscretion, the universe became in a moment devoid of light.[43] When the universe became sunless and, therefore, all became dark, O daughter of the prince of mountains, I created a third eye desirous of protecting all creatures.[44] The high energy of that eye crushed and consumed this mountain. For pleasing thee, however, O goddess, I once more made Himavat what he was by repairing the injury !—[45]

" '—Umā said,—O holy one, why are those faces of thine which are on the east, the north, and the west, so handsome and so agreeable to look at like the very moon ?[46] And why is that face of thine which is on the south so terrible ? Why are thy matted locks tawny in hue and so erect ? Why is thy throat blue after the manner of the peacock's plumes ?[47] Why, O illustrious deity, is the Pināka always in thy hand ? Why art thou always a Brahmachārin with matted locks ?[48] O lord, it behooves thee to explain all these to me. I am thy spouse who seeks to follow the same duties with thee ! Further, I am thy devoted worshipper, O deity having the bull for thy mark !—[49]

" 'Nārada continued,—Thus addressed by the daughter of the prince of mountains, the illustrious wielder of Pināka, the puissant Mahādeva, became highly gratified with her.[50] The great god then addressed her, saying,—O blessed lady, listen to me as I explain, with the reasons thereof, why my forms are so !—' "[51]

Section CXLI.

" '—The blessed and holy one said,—In days of yore, a blessed and foremost of women was created by Brahman, called Tilottamā, by culling grains of beauty from every beautiful object in the universe.[1] One day, that lady of beautiful face, unrivalled in the universe for beauty of form, came to me, O goddess, for circumambulating me but really impelled by the desire of tempting me.[2] In whatever direction that lady of beautiful teeth turned, a new face of mine instantly appeared, (so eager did I become to see her). All those faces of mine became agreeable to look at.[3] Thus, in consequence of the desire of beholding her, I became four-faced, through Yoga-puissance. Thus, I showed my high Yoga-power in becoming four-faced.[4] With that face of mine which is turned towards the east, I exercise the sovereignty of the universe. With that face of mine which is turned towards the north, I sport with thee, O thou of faultless features![5] That face of mine which is turned towards the west is agreeable and auspicious. With it I ordain the happiness of all creatures. That face of mine which is turned towards the south is terrible. With it I destroy all creatures.[6] I live as a Brahmachārin with matted locks on my head, impelled by the desire of doing good to all creatures. The bow Pināka is always in my hand for accomplishing the purposes of the deities.[7] In days of yore, Indra, desirous of acquiring my prosperity, had hurled his thunder-bolt at me. With that weapon my throat was scorched. For this reason I have become blue-throated.—[8]

" '—Umā said,—When, O foremost of all creatures, there are so many excellent vehicles endued with great beauty, why is it that thou hast selected a bovine bull for thy vehicle?—[9]

" '—Maheçwara said,—In days of yore, the Grandsire Brahman created the celestial cow Surabhi yielding abundant milk. After her creation there sprang from her a large number of kine all of which yielded copious quantities of milk sweet as nectar.[10] Once on a time a quantity of froth fall from the mouth of one of her calves on my body. I was enraged at this and

my wrath scorched all the kine which thereupon became diversified in hue.[11] I was then pacified by the Master of all the worlds, *viz.*, Brahman, conversant with all topics. It was he who gave me this bull both as a vehicle for bearing me and as a device on my banner.—[12]

" '—Umā said,—Thou hast many abodes in Heaven, of diverse forms and possessed of every comfort and luxury. Why, O holy one, dost thou reside in the crematorium, abandoning all those delightful mansions ?[13] The crematorium is full of the hair and bones (of the dead), abounds with vultures and jackals, and is strewn with hundreds of funeral pyres.[14] Full of carrion and muddy with fat and blood, with entrails and bones strewn all over it, and always echoing with the howls of jackals, it is certainly an unclean place.—[15]

" '—Maheçwara said,—I always wander over the whole Earth in search after a sacred spot. I do not, however, see any spot that is more sacred than the crematorium.[16] Hence, of all abodes, the crematorium pleases my heart most, shaded as it generally is by branches of the banian and adorned with torn garlands of flowers.[17] O thou of sweet smiles, the multitudes of ghostly beings that are my companions love to reside in such spots. I do not like, O goddess, to reside anywhere, without those ghostly creatures being by my side.[18] Hence, the crematorium is a sacred abode to me. Indeed, O auspicious lady, it seems to me to be very Heaven. Highly sacred and possessed of great merit, the crematorium is much applauded by persons desirous of having holy abodes.—[19]

" '—Umā said,—O holy one, O lord of all creatures, O foremost of all observers of duties and religious rites, I have a great doubt, O wielder of Pināka, O giver of boons.[20] These ascetics, O puissant lord, have undergone diverse kinds of austerities. In the world are seen ascetics wandering everywhere under diverse forms and clad in diverse kinds of attire.[21] For benefiting this large assemblage of Rishis, as also myself, do thou kindly resolve, O chastiser of all foes, this doubt of mine ![22] What indications has Religion or Duty been said to possess ? How, indeed, do men become unacquainted with the details of Religion or Duty to succeed in observing them ?

O puissant lord, O thou that art conversant with Religion, do thou tell me this !—[23]

" 'Nārada continued,—When the daughter of Himavat put this question, the conclave of Rishis there present worshipped the goddess and adored her with words adorned with Richs and with hymns fraught with deep import.—[24]

" '—Maheçwara said,—Abstention from injury, truthfulness of speech, compassion towards all beings, tranquillity of soul, and the making of gifts to the best of one's power, are the foremost duties of the house-holder.[25] Abstention from sexual congress with the spouses of other men, protection of the wealth and the woman committed to one's charge, unwillingness to appropriate what is not given to one, and avoidance of honey and meat,[26]—these are the five chief duties. Indeed, Religion or Duty has many branches all of which are fraught with happiness. Even these are the duties which those embodied creatures who regard duty as superior should observe and practise. Even these are the sources of merit.—[27]

" '—Umā said,—O holy one, I wish to ask thee another question about which I have great doubts. It behooveth thee to answer it and dispel my doubts. What are the meritorious duties of the four several orders ?[28] What duties appertain to the Brāhmana ? What to the Kshatriya ? What are the indications of those duties that appertain to the Vaiçya ? And what kind of duties appertain to the Cudra ?—[29]

" '—The holy one said,—O highly-blessed lady, the question thou hast asked is a very proper one. Those persons that belong to the regenerate order are regarded as highly blessed, and are, indeed, gods on Earth.[30] Without doubt, the observance of fasts (*i. e.*, subjugation of the senses) is always the duty of the Brāhmana. When the Brāhmana succeeds in properly observing all his duties, he attains to identity with Brahma.*[31] The proper observance of the duties of Brahmacharyya, O goddess, are his ritual. The observance of vows and the investiture with the sacred thread are his other duties.

---

* 'Upavāsa' here, as explained by the Commentator, is used for 'Indriya-jaya' or subjugation of the senses.—T.

It is by these that he becomes truly regenerate.[32] He becomes a Brāhmana for worshipping his preceptors and other seniors as also the deities. Verily, that religion which has for its soul the study of the Vedas is the source of all righteousness. Even that is the religion which those embodied creatures who are devoted to righteousness and duty should observe and practise.—[33]

"'—Umā said,—O holy one, my doubts have not been dispelled. It behooveth thee to explain in detail what the duties are of the four respective orders of men !—[34]

"'—Maheçwara said,—Listening to the mysteries of religion and duty, observance of the vows indicated in the Vedas, attention to the sacred fire, and accomplishment of the business of the preceptor,[35] leading a mendicant life, always bearing the sacred thread, constant recitation of the Vedas, and rigid observance of the duties of Brahmacharyya, are the duties of the Brāhmana.[36] After the period of study is over, the Brāhmana, receiving the command of his preceptor, should leave his preceptor's abode for returning to his father's house. Upon his return he should duly wed a wife that is fit for him.[37] Another duty of the Brāhmana consists of avoiding the food prepared by the Cudra. Walking along the path of righteousness, always observing fasts and the practices of Brahmacharyya, are his other duties.*[38] The house-holder should keep up his domestic fire for daily worship. He should study the Vedas. He should pour libations in honor of the Pitris and the deities. He should keep his senses under proper control. He should eat what remains after serving gods and guests and all his dependants. He should be abstemious in food, truthful in speech, and pure both externally and internally.[39] Attending to guests is another duty of the householder, as also the keeping up of the three sacrificial fires. The householder should also attend to the ordinary sacrifices that go by the name of Ishti and should also dedicate animals to the deities according to the ordinan-

* He who takes his meals at the proper hours is said to observe fasts. He who avoids sexual congress with other women and associates with only his wedded s pouse and that at her season, is said to observe Brahmacharyya.—T.

ces.[40] Indeed, the performance of sacrifices is his highest duty as also a complete abstention from injury to all creatures. Never to eat before serving the deities and guests and dependants is another duty of the householder. The food that remains after serving gods and guests and dependants is called Vighasa. The householder should eat Vighasa.[41] Indeed, to eat after the members of one's family including servants and other dependants, is regarded as one of the especial duties of the regenerate householder, who should, besides, be conversant with the Vedas.[42] The conduct of husband and wife, in the case of the householder, should be equal. He should every day make offerings of flowers and other articles unto those deities that preside over domesticity.[43] The householder should take care that his house is every day properly rubbed (with cow-dung and water). He should also observe fasts every day. Well-cleaned and well-rubbed, his house should also be every day fumigated with the smoke of clarified butter poured on his sacred fire in honor of the deities and the Pitris.[44] Even these are the duties appertaining to the house-holder's mode of life as observable by a regenerate person. Those duties really uphold the world. Verily, those duties always and eternally flow from those righteous persons among the Brāhmanas that lead a life of domesticity.[45] Do thou listen to me with concentrated attention, O goddess, for I shall now tell thee what the duties are which appertain to the Kshatriya and about which thou hast asked me.[46] From the beginning it has been said that the duty of the Kshatriya is to protect all creatures. The king is the acquirer of a fixed share of the merits earned by his subjects. By that means the king becomes indued with righteousness.[47] That ruler of men who rules and protects his subjects righteously, acquires, by virtue of the protection he offers to others, many regions of felicity in the world to come.[48] The other duties of a person of the kingly order consist of self-restraint and Vedic study, the pouring of libations on the sacred fire, the making of gifts, study,[49] the bearing of the sacred thread, sacrifices, the performance of religious rites, the support of servants and dependants, and perseverence in acts that have been begun.[50] Another duty of his is to award punishments agree-

ably to the offences committed. It is also his duty to perform sacrifices and other religious rites according to the ordinances laid down in the Vedas. Adherence to the practice of properly judging the disputes of litigants before him, and a devotion to truthfulness of speech,[51] and interference for aiding the distressed, are the other duties by discharging which the king acquires great glory both here and hereafter. He should also lay down his life on the field of battle, having displayed great prowess on behalf of kine and Brāhmanas.[52] Such a king acquires in Heaven such regions of felicity as are capable of being won by the performance of Horse-sacrifices.[53] The duties of the Vaiçya always consist of the keep of cattle and agriculture, the pouring of libations on the sacred fire, the making of gifts, and study.[54] Trade, walking in the path of righteousness, hospitality, peacefulness, self-restraint, welcoming of Brāhmanas, and renouncing things (in favor of Brāhmanas), are the other eternal duties of the Vaiçya.[55] The Vaiçya, engaged in trade and walking in the path of righteousness, should never sell sesame and perfumery and juices or liquid substances. He should discharge the duties of hospitality towards all.[56] He is at liberty to pursue Religion and Wealth and Pleasure according to his means and as much as is judicious for him. The service of the three regenerate classes constitute the high duty of the Cudra.[57] That Cudra who is truthful in speech and who has subdued his senses is regarded as having acquired meritorious penances. Verily, the Cudra, who having got a guest, discharges the duties of hospitality towards him, is regarded as acquiring the merit of high penances.[58] That intelligent Cudra whose conduct is righteous and who worships the deities and Brahmanas, becomes indued with the desirable rewards of righteousness.[59] O beautiful lady, I have thus recited to thee what the duties are of the four orders. Indeed, O blessed lady, I have told thee what their respective duties are. What else dost thou wish to hear ?—[60]

"—Umā said.—Thou hast recited to me what the respective duties are of the four orders, auspicious and beneficial for them. Do thou now tell me, O holy one, what the common duties are of all the orders !—[61]

"'—Maheçwara said,—The foremost of all beings in the universe, *viz.*, the Creator Brahman, ever desirous of righteous accomplishments, created the Brāhmanas for rescuing all the worlds. Among all created beings, they are, verily, gods on Earth.[62] I shall at the outset tell thee what the religious acts are which they should do and what the rewards are which they win through them. That religion which has been ordained for the Brāhmanas is the foremost of all religions.[63] For the sake of the righteousness of the world, three Religions were created by the Self-born. Whenever the world is created (or re-created), those Religions are created by the Grandsire. Do thou listen.[64] These are the three eternal Religions. The Religion that is propounded in the Vedas is the highest; that which is propounded in the Smritis is the next in the order of importance; the third in importonce is that which is based upon the practices of those who are regarded righteous.[65] The Brāhmana possessed of learning should have the three Vedas. He should never make the study of the Vedas (or recitation of the scriptures) the means of his living.* He should devote himself to the three well-known acts (of making gifts, studying the Vedas, and performing sacrifices). He should transcend the three (*viz.*, lust, wrath, and covetousness). He should be the friend of all creatures. A person that possesses these attributes is called a Brāhmana.[66] The Lord of the universe declared these six acts for the observance of Brāhmanas. Listen to those eternal duties.[67] The performance of sacrifices, officiating at the sacrifices of others, the making of gifts, the acceptance of gifts, teaching, and study, are the six acts by accomplishing which a Brāhmana wins religious merit.[68] Verily, the daily study of the Vedas is a duty. Sacrifice is (another) eternal duty. The making of gifts according to the measure of his power and agreeably to the ordinance, is, in his case, much applauded.[69] Tranquillity of mind is a high duty that has always been current among them that are righteous. House-holders of pure mind are capable of earning very great merit.[70] Indeed, he who cleanses his soul by the performance

* To sell the Vedas or any kind of knowledge is a great sin.—T.

of the five sacrifices, who is truthful in speech, who is free from malice, who makes gifts, who treats with hospitality and honor all regenerate guests, who lives in well-cleaned abodes,[71] who is destitute of pride, who is always sincere in his dealings, who uses sweet and assuring words towards others, who takes a pleasure in serving guests and others arrived at his abode, and who eats the food that remains after the requirements have been gratified of all the members of his family and dependants, wins great merit.[72] That man who offers water to his guests for washing their feet and hands, who presents the Arghya for honoring the recipient, who duly gives seats, and beds, and lamps for lighting the darkness, and shelter to those that come to his abode, is regarded as highly righteous.[73] That house-holder who rises at dawn and washes his mouth and face and serves food to his guests, and having honored them duly dismisses them from his abode and follows them (as a mark of honor) for a little distance, acquires eternal merit.[74] Hospitality towards all, and the pursuit of the aggregate of three, are the duties of the house-holder. The duties of the Cudra consist in the pursuit of the aggregate of three.[75] The Religion ordained for the householder is said to have Pravritti for its chief indication. Auspicious, and beneficial to all creatures, I shall expound it to thee.[76] The house-holder should always make gifts according to the measure of his power. He should also perform sacrifices frequently after the same manner. Indeed, he who wishes to achieve his own good should always achieve meritorious acts.[77] The house-holder should acquire wealth by righteous means. The wealth thus acquired should be carefully divided into three portions, keeping the requirements of righteousness in view.[78] With one of those portions he should accomplish all acts of righteousness. With another he should seek to gratify his cravings for pleasure. The third portion he should lay out for increasing.[79] The Religion of Nivritti is different. It exists for Emancipation (from re-birth by absorption into Brahma). I shall tell thee the conduct that constitutes it. Listen to me in detail, O goddess![80] One of the duties inculcated by that religion is compassion towards all creatures. The man that follows it should not reside in one

place for more than one day. Desirous of achieving Emancipation, the followers of this Religion free themselves from the bonds of hope (or desire).[81] They have no attachment to habitation, to the Kamandalu they bear for the keep of water, to the robes that cover their loins, or the seat whereupon they rest, or the triple stick they bear in their hands, or the bed they sleep on, or the fire they want, or the chamber that houses them.[82] A follower of this Religion sets his heart upon the workings of his soul. His mind is devoted to Supreme Brahma. He is filled with the idea of attaining to Brahma. He is always devoted to Yoga and the Sānkhya philosophy.[83] He desires no other shelter than the foot of a tree. He houses himself in empty abodes of men. He sleeps on the banks of rivers. He takes a pleasure in staying by such banks.[84] He is freed from every attachment, and from every tie of affection. He merges the existence of his own soul into the Supreme Soul.[85] Standing like a stake of wood, and abstaining from all food, he does only such acts as point to Emancipation. Or, he may wander about, devoted to Yoga. Even these are the eternal duties of a follower of the Religion of Nivritti.[86] He lives aloof from his species. He is freed from all attachments. He never resides in the same place for more than a day. Freed from all bonds he roves over the world. Emancipated from all ties, he never sleeps on even the same river-bank for more than a day.[87] Even this is the religion of persons conversant with Emancipation, as declared in the Vedas. Even this is the righteous path that is trodden by the righteous. He who follows in this track leaves no vestige behind.[88] Vikshus (or followers of the religion of Emancipation) are of four kinds. They are Kutichakas, Vahudakas, Hansas, and Paramahansas. The second is superior to the first, the third to the second, and the fourth to the third.[89] There is nothing superior to the Paramahansa; nor is there anything inferior to it or beside it or before it. It is a condition that is divested of sorrow and happiness; that is auspicious and freed from decrepitude and death and that knows no change.—*[90]

---

* The correct reading of the latter half of the first line is *nābaram*

"'—Umā said,—Thou hast recited the religion of the householders, that of Emancipation, and that which is based upon the observances of the righteous. These paths are high and exceedingly beneficial to the world of living creatures.[91] O thou that art conversant with every religion, I desire now to hear what the high religion is of the Rishis. I always have a liking for those that dwell in ascetic retreats.[92] The perfume that emanates from the smoke of the libations of clarified butter poured on the sacred fire seems to pervade the entire retreats and make them delightful. Marking this, O great god, my heart becomes always filled with delight.[93] O puissant deity, I have doubts respecting the religion of the ascetics. Thou art conversant with the details of all religions. Do thou enlighten me, O god of gods,[94] in detail respecting this topic truly about which I have asked thee, O great deity !—[95]

"'—The blessed and holy one said,—Yes, I shall recite to thee the high and excellent religion of the ascetics. By following the dictates of that religion, O auspicious lady, the ascetics attain to success through the severe penances they practise.[96] O highly blessed one, do thou hear, from the beginning, what the duties are of those righteous Rishis that are conversant with every duty and that are known by the name of Phenapas.[97] The Grandsire Brahman (during the days he employed in the observance of penances) drank some nectar (in the form of water). That water had flowed in Heaven from a great sacrifice.[98] The froth of that water is highly auspicious and (in consequence of Brahman having drunk it) it partook of His own nature. Those Rishis that subsist upon the measure of froth that thus issued (from the water indicated) are called Phenapas (Froth-eaters). Even this is the conduct of those pure-souled Rishis, O lady possessed of wealth of penances! Listen now to me as I explain to thee who the Vālikhillyas are.[99] The Vālikhillyas are ascetics that have won success by their penances. They reside in the solar disc. Adopting the means of

---

natirogratah. The Commentator explains that this means that 'there is nothing inferior to it or beside it or before it.' In the first part of the first line it has been said that there is nothing superior to it. The sense is that it includes all, being as comprehensive as Brahma.—T.

subsistence that is followed by the birds, those Rishis, conversant with every duty of righteousness, live according to the Unccha mode.[100] Their attire consists of deer-skins or barks of trees. Freed from every couple of opposites, the Vālikhillyas, possessed of wealth of penances, walk in this track of righteousness.[101] They are as big as a digit of the thumb. Distributed into classes, each class lives in the practice of the duties assigned to it. They desire to only practise penances. The merits they win by their righteous conduct are very high.[102] They are regarded as having attained to an equality with the gods and exist for the accomplishment of the purposes of the gods. Having burnt off all their sins by severe penances, they blaze forth in effulgence, illuminating all the points of the compass.[103] Others, called Chakracharas, are indued with cleansed souls and devoted to the practice of compassion. Righteous in their conduct and possessed of great sanctity, they live in the region of Soma.[104] Thus residing near enough to the region of the Pitris, they duly subsist by drinking the rays of Soma. There are others called Samprakshālas and Açmakuttas and Dantolukhalas.*[105] These live near the Soma-drinking deities and others that drink flames of fire. With their wedded spouses, and with passions under complete control, they too subsist upon the rays of Soma.[106] They pour libations of clarified butter on the sacred fire, and adore the Pitris under proper forms. They also perform the well-known sacrifices. Even this is said to constitute their religion.[107] This religion of the Rishis, O goddess, is always observed by these who are houseless and who are free to rove through every region including that of the gods. There are, again, other classes about whom I shall speak presently. Do thou listen.[108] It is necessary that they who observe the different religions of the Rishis, should subjugate their passions and know the Soul. Indeed, in my opinion, lust and wrath should

* 'Samprakshālas' are those Rishis who wash all their utensils daily so that nothing is stored for them for the next day. 'Açmakuttas' are those that use only two pieces of stone for husking their grain. 'Dantolukhalas' are those that use their teeth for purposes of husking the grain they eat.—T.

be completely conquered.[109] With corn (wealth) acquired by the Unccha mode, they should discharge the following duties, *viz.*, the pouring of libations on the sacred fire, occupying a fixed seat employing oneself the while in the sacrifice called Dharmarātri, performance of the Soma-sacrifice, acquisition of especial knowledge, the giving of sacrificial presents, which forms the fifth, the daily performance of sacrifices, devotion to the worship of the Pitris and the deities, hospitality towards all.[110-111] Abstention from all luxurious viands prepared from cow's milk, taking a pleasure in tranquillity of heart, lying on bare rocks or the earth, devotion to Yoga, eating potherbs and leaves of trees,[112] and subsisting upon fruits and roots and wind and water and moss, are some of the practices of the Rishis by which they attain to the end that belongs to persons unsubjugated (by the world).[113] When the smoke has ceased to curl upwards from a house, when the husking machine has ceased to ply, when the hearth-fire has been extinguished, when all the inmates have taken their food, when dishes are no longer carried from room to room, when mendicants have ceased to walk the streets,[114] it is then that the man who is devoted to the religion of truth and tranquillity of soul, desiring to have a guest (but finding his desire ungratified), should eat what remnant of food may still occur in the house. By acting in this way, one becomes a practiser of the religion of the Munis.[115] One should not be arrogant; nor proud; nor cheerless and discontented; nor wonder at anything. Indeed, one should behave equally towards friends and foes. Verily, one who is the foremost of all persons conversant with duties should also be friendly towards all creatures.—' "[116]

Section CXLII.

" '—Umā said,—Forest recluses reside in delightful regions, among the springs and fountains of rivers, in bowers by the sides of streams and rills, on hills and mountains, in woods and forests, and in sacred spots full of fruits and roots.[1] With concentrated attention and observant of vows and rules, they dwell in even such places.[2] I desire, O Cankara, to hear the

sacred ordinances which they follow. These recluses, O god of all gods, are persons that depend, for the protection of their bodies, upon themselves alone !*—[3]

" '—Maheçwara said,—Do thou hear with concentrated attention what the duties are of forest recluses. Having listened to them with one mind, O goddess, do thou set thy heart upon righteousness ![4] Listen then to what the acts are that should be practised by righteous recluses crowned with success, observant of rigid vows and rules, and residing in woods and forests.[5] Performing ablutions thrice a day, worshipping the Pitris and the deities, pouring libations on the sacred fire, performing of those sacrifices and rites that go by the name of Ishti-homa,[6] picking up the grains of Nivāra-paddy, eating fruits and roots, and using oil that is pressed out from Inguda and castor seeds, are their duties.[7] Having gone through the practices of Yoga and become crowned with (ascetic) success and freed from lust and wrath, they should seat themselves in the attitude called *Virāsana*. Indeed, they should reside in those places which are inaccessible to cowards.†[8] Observant of the excellent ordinances relating to Yoga, sitting in summer in the midst of four fires on four sides with the sun overhead, duly practising what is called *Manduka* Yoga,[9] and always seated in the attitude called Virāsana, and lying on bare rocks or the earth, these men, with hearts set upon righteousness, must expose themselves to cold and water and fire.[10] They subsist upon water or air or moss. They use two pieces of stone only for husking their corn. Some of them use their teeth only for such a purpose. They do not keep utensils of any kind (for storing anything for the day to come).[11] Some of them clothe themselves with rags and barks of trees or deer-skins. Even thus do they pass their lives for the measure of time allotted to them, according to the ordinances (set forth in the scriptures).[12] Remaining in woods and forests, they

* 'Swaçarirapa-jivishu' implies persons that do not stand in need of the services of others for the support of their bodies.—T.

† The great forests are called 'Virasthāna' for cowards cannot enter or reside in them.—T.

wander within woods and forests, live within them, and are always to be found within them. Indeed, these forest-recluses entering into woods and forests live within them as disciples, obtaining a preceptor, live with him.[13] The performance of the rites of Homa is their duty, as also the observance of the five sacrifices. A due observance of the rules about distribution (in respect of time) of the fivefold sacrifices as laid down in the Vedas,[14] devotion to (other) sacrifices, forming the eighth, observance of the Chaturmāshya, performance of the Paurnamāshya and other sacrifices, and performance of the daily sacrifices,[15] are the duties of these men dissociated from wives, freed from every attachment, and cleansed from every sin. Indeed, they should live even thus in the forest.[16] The sacrificial ladle and the water-vessel are their chief wealth. They are always devoted to the three fires. Righteous in their conduct and adhering to the path of virtue, they attain to the highest end.[17] These Munis, crowned with (ascetic) success and ever devoted to the religion of Truth, attain to the highly sacred region of Brahman or the eternal region of Soma.[18] O auspicious goddess, I have thus recited to thee, in brief, the outlines of the religion that is followed by forest recluses and that has many practices in detail.—[19]

"'—Umā said,—O holy one, O lord of all creatures, O thou that art worshipped by all beings, I desire to hear what the religion is of those conclaves of Munis that are followers of the scriptures treating of ascetic success. Do thou recite it to me.[20] Residing in woods and forests and well-accomplished in the scriptures of success, some amongst them live and act as they like, without being restrained by particular practices; others have wives. How, indeed, have their practices been laid down?—[21]

"'—Mahādeva said,—O goddess, the shaving of the head and the wearing of the brown robes are the indications of those recluses that rove about in freedom; while the indications of those that sport with wedded wives consist in passing their nights at home.[22] Performing ablutions three times a day is the duty of both the classes, while the Homa, with water and fruits from the wilderness, belongs to the wedded recluses as per-

formed by the Rishis in general. Absorption in Yoga-meditation, and adherence to those duties that constitute righteousness and that have been laid down as such (in the scriptures and the Vedas) are some of the other duties prescribed for them.[23] All those duties also of which I have spoken to thee before as appertaining to recluses residing in forests, are the duties of these also. Indeed, if those duties are observed, they that observe them attain to the rewards that attach to severe penances.[24] Those forest recluses that lead wedded lives should confine the gratification of their senses to these wedded wives of theirs. By indulging in sexual congress with their wives at only those times when their seasons come, they conform to the duties that have been laid down for them.[25] The religion which these virtuous men are to follow is the Religion that has been laid down and followed by the Rishis. With their eyes set upon the acquisition of righteousness, they should never pursue any other object of desire from a sense of unrestrained caprice.[26] That man who makes the gift unto all creatures of an assurance of perfect harmlessness or innocence, freed as his soul becomes from the stain of malice or harmfulness, becomes indued with righteousness.[27] Verily, that person who shows compassion to all creatures, who adopts as a vow a behaviour of perfect sincerity towards all creatures, and who constitutes himself the soul of all creatures, becomes indued with righteousness.[28] A bath in all the Vedas, and a behaviour of sincerity towards all creatures, are looked upon as equal in point of merit; or, perhaps, the latter is a little distinguished above the other in point of merit.[29] Sincerity, it has been said, is Righteousness; while insincerity or crookedness is the reverse. That man who conducts himself with sincerity becomes indued with Righteousness.[30] The man who is always devoted to sincerity of behaviour, succeeds in attaining to a residence among the deities. Hence, he who wishes to achieve the merit of righteousness should become indued with sincerity.[31] Possessed of a forgiving disposition and of self-restraint, and with wrath under complete subjection, one should transform oneself into an embodiment of Righteousness and become freed from malice. Such a man, who becomes

devoted, besides, to the discharge of all the duties of Religion, becomes indued with the merit of Righteousness.[32] Freed from drowsiness and procrastination, the righteous souled person, who adheres to the path of Righteousness to the best of his power, and becomes possessed of pure conduct, and who is venerable in years, comes to be regarded as equal to Brahma itself.—[33]

"'—Umā said,—By what course of duties, O god, do those ascetics who are attached to their respective retreats and possessed of wealth of penances, succeed in becoming indued with great splendour?[34] By what acts, again, do kings and princes who are possessed of great wealth, and others who are destitute of wealth, succeed in obtaining high rewards?[35] By what acts, O god, do denizens of the forest succeed in attaining to that place which is eternal and in adorning their persons with celestial sandal-paste?[36] O illustrious god of three eyes, O destroyer of the triple city, do thou dispel this doubt of mine connected with the auspicious subject of the observance of penances by telling everything in detail.—[37]

"'—The illustrious deity said,—Those who observe the vows relating to fasts and restrain their senses, who abstain from injury of any kind to any creature, and who practise truthfulness of speech, attain to success and ascending to Heaven sport in felicity with the Gandharvas as their companions, freed from every kind of evil.[38] That righteous-souled man who lies down in the attitude which appertains to Manduka-Yoga, and who properly and according to the ordinance performs meritorious acts after having taken the Dikshā, sports in felicity in the next world in the company of the Nāgas.[39] That man who lives in the company of deer and subsists upon such grass and vegetables as fall off from their mouths, and who has undergone the Dikshā and attends to the duties attached to it, succeeds in attaining to Amarāvati (the mansions of Indra).[40] That man who subsists upon the moss he gathers and the fallen leaves of trees that he picks up, and endures all the severities of cold, attains to a very high place.[41] That man who subsists upon either air or water, or fruits and roots, attains in after life to the affluence that belongs to the Yakshas and sports in felicity in the company of the diverse tribes

of Apsaras.[42] Having practised for two and ten years, according to the rites laid down in the ordinances, the vow relating to the endurance of the five fires in the summer season, one becomes in one's next life a king.[43] That man who, having observed vows with respect to food, practises penances for two and twelve years, carefully abstaining from all interdicted food, and forbidden hours as well, during the period, becomes in his next life a ruler of Earth.*[44] That man who sits and lies on the bare ground with the cope of the firmament alone for his shelter, observes the course of duties that attach to Dikshā, and then casts off his body by abstaining from all food, attains to great felicity in Heaven.[45] The rewards of one who sits and lies down upon the bare ground (with the welkin alone for his shelter) are said to be excellent vehicles and beds,[46] and costly mansions possessed of the resplendence of the moon, O lady! That man who having subsisted upon abstemious dict and observed diverse excellent vows, lives depending upon his own self and then casts off his body by abstaining from all food, succeeds in ascending to Heaven and enjoying all its felicity. That man who having lived in entire dependence upon his own self, observes for two and ten years the duties that appertain to Dikshā, and at last casts off his body on the great ocean, succeeds in attaining to the regions of Varuna after death. That man who living in entire dependance upon his own self observes the duties that attach to Dikshā for two and ten years,[47-49] and pierces his own feet with a sharp stone, attains to the felicity of the region that belongs to the Guhyakas. He who cultivates self with the aid of self, who frees himself from the influence of all pairs of opposites (such as heat and cold, joy and sorrow, &c.,) who is freed from every kind of attachment,[50] and who mentally observes for two and ten years such a course of conduct after Dikshā, attains to Heaven and enjoys every happiness with the deities as his companions.[51] He who lives in entire dependence upon his own self and observes for two and ten

* 'Marum samsādhya' implies abstention from even air and water as food or means of subsistence.—T.

years the duties that attach to Dikshā and finally casts off his body on the fire as an oblation to the deities, attains to the region of Brahman and is held in high respect there.[52] That regenerate man, O goddess, who having properly gone through the Dikshā keeps his senses under subjugation, and placing his Self on Self frees himself from the sense of *meum*, desirous of achieving righteousness,[53] and sets out, without a covering for his body, after the due observance of the duties of Dikshā for two and ten years and after having placed his sacred fire on a tree,[54] and walks along the path that belongs to heroes and lies down (when need for lying down comes) in the attitude of heroes, and conducts himself always after the manner of heroes, certainly attains to the end that is reserved for heroes.*[55] Such a man repairs to the eternal region of Cakra where he becomes crowned with the fruition of all his wishes and where he sports in joy, his person decked with garlands of celestial flowers and celestial perfumes.[56] Indeed, that righteous-souled person lives happily in Heaven, with the deities as his companions. The hero, observant of the practices of heroes and devoted to that Yoga which belongs to heroes,[57] living in the practice of Goodness, having renounced everything, undergone the Dikshā, subjugated his senses, and observing purity of both body and mind, is sure to attain to that path which is reserved for heroes. Eternal regions of happiness are his.[58] Riding on a car that moves at the will of the rider, he roves through all those happy regions as he likes. Indeed, dwelling in the regions of Cakra, that blessed person always sports in joy, freed from every calamity.' "[59]

Section CXLIII.

" '—Umā said,—O holy one, O thou that hadst torn off the eyes of Bhaga and the teeth of Pushan, O destroyer of the

---

* It should be noted that the word 'Vira' in the various compounds in which it occurs here, does not mean heroes of war. On the other hand, it signifies heroes of righteousness and penances The path of heroes is the forest, for cowards cannot go there. The attitude of heroes is a kind of attitude for Yogins to sit in.—T.

sacrifice of Daksha, O three-eyed deity, I have a great doubt.[1] In days of yore, the illustrious Self-born created the four orders. Through the evil consequence of what acts doth a Vaiçya become a Cudra?[2] Through what acts doth a Kshatriya become a Vaiçya and a regenerate person (Brāhmana) becomes a Kshatriya? By what means may such degradation of castes be prevented?[3] Through what acts does a Brāhmana take birth in his next life, in the Cudra order? Through what acts, O puissant deity, does a Kshatriya also descend to the status of a Cudra?[4] O sinless one, O lord of all created beings, do thou, O illustrious one, dispel this doubt of mine. How, again, can the three other orders naturally succeed in attaining to the status of Brāhmanhood?—[5]

"'—The illustrious one said,—The status of a Brāhmana, O goddess, is exceedingly difficult to attain. O auspicious lady, one becomes a Brāhmana through original creation or birth. After the same manner, the Kshatriya, the Vaiçya, and the Cudra, all become so through original creation. Even this is my opinion.*[6] He, however, that is born a Brāhmana falls away from his status through his own evil acts. Hence, the Brāhmana, after having attained to the status of the first order, should always protect it (by his acts).[7] If one who is a Kshatriya or Vaiçya lives in the practice of those duties that are assigned to the Brāhmana, after the manner of a Brāhmana, he becomes (in his next life) a Brāhmana.[8] That Brāhmana who casts off the duties of his order for following those assigned for the Kshatriya, is regarded as one that has fallen away from the status of a Brāhmana and that has become a Kshatriya.[9] That Brāhmana of little understanding, who, impelled by cupidity and folly, follows the practices assigned to Vaiçyas, forgetful of his status as a Brāhmana that is exceedingly difficult to attain,[10] comes to be regarded as one that has become a Vaiçya. Similarly, one that is a Vaiçya by birth may, by

---

* 'Nisargāt' is literally 'through creation' or 'original nature,' or 'birth.' Of course, what is implied is that one becomes a Brāhmana, or Kshatriya, or Vaiçya, or Cudra, through original creation as such, by the Self born, that is, birth.—T.

following the practices of a Cudra, become a Cudra. Indeed, a Brāhmana, falling away from the duties of his own order, may descend to the status of even a Cudra.[11] Such a Brāhmana, falling away from the order of his birth and turned out of it, without attaining to the region of Brahman (which is his goal if he duly observes his own duties), sinks into Hell and in his next birth becomes born as a Cudra.[12] A highly blessed Kshatriya or a Vaiçya, that abandons those practices of his that are consistent with the duties laid down for his order, and follows the practices laid down for the Cudra,[13] falls away from his own order and becomes a person of mixed caste. It is in this way that a Brāhmana, or a Kshatriya, or a Vaiçya, sinks into the status of a Cudra.[14] That man who has attained to clearness of vision through practice of the duties of his own order, who is endued with knowledge and science, who is pure (in body and mind), who is conversant with every duty and devoted to the practice of all his duties, is sure to enjoy the rewards of righteousness.[15] I shall now recite to thee, O goddess, a saying uttered by Brahman (the Self-born) on this subject. These that are righteous and desirous of acquiring merit always pursue with firmness the culture of the soul.[16] The food that comes from cruel and fierce persons is censurable. So also is the food that has been cooked for serving a large number of persons. The same is said of the food that is cooked in view of the first Crāddha of a deceased person. So also is the food that is stained in consequence of the usual faults and the food that is supplied by a Cudra. These should never be taken by a Brāhmana at any time.*[17] The food of a Cudra, O goddess, is always disapproved of by the high-souled deities. Even this, I think, is the authority enunciated by the Grandsire with his own mouth.[18] If a Brāhmana, who has set up the sacred fire and who performs sacrifices, were to die with

* 'Ugra' means a fierce or cruel person. It is also applied to signify a person of a mixed caste whose occupation is the slaughter of animals in the chase. The Commentator is silent. I think, the food supplied by a fierce or cruel person is meant here. What is said in this Verse is that the several kinds of food spoken of here should be renounced by a good Brāhmana.—T.

any portion of a Cudra's food remaining undigested in his stomach, he is sure to take birth in his next life as a Cudra.[19] In consequence of those remains of a Cudra's food in his stomach, he falls away from the status of a Brāhmana. Such a Brāhmana becomes invested with the status of a Cudra. There is no doubt in this.[20] The Brāhmana in his next life becomes invested with the status of that order upon whose food he subsists through life or with the undigested portion of whose food in his stomach he breathes his last.*[21] That man who having attained to the auspicious status of a Brāhmana which is so difficult to acquire, disregards it and eats interdicted food, falls away from his high status.[22] That Brāhmana who drinks alcohol, who becomes guilty of Brāhmanicide or mean in his behaviour, or a thief, or who breaks his vows, or becomes impure, or unmindful of his Vedic studies, or sinful, or characterised by cupidity, or guilty of cunning, or a cheat,[23] or who does not observe vows, or who weds a Cudrā woman, or who derives his sustenance by pandering to the lusts of other people, or who sells the Soma plant, or who serves a person of an order below his, falls away from his status of Brāhmanhood.†[24] That Brāhmana who violates the bed of his preceptor, or who cherishes malice towards him, or who takes a pleasure in speaking ill of him, falls away from the status of Brāhmanhood even if he be conversant with Brahma.[25] By these good acts, again, O goddess, when performed, a Cudra becomes a Brāhmana, and a Vaiçya becomes a Kshatriya.[26] The Cudra should perform all the duties laid down for him, properly and according to the ordinance. He should always wait, with obedience and humility, upon persons of the three

---

* The sense is this : if a Brāhmana dies with any portion of the food of a Cudra, a Vaiçya, or a Kshatriya in his stomach, in his next life he has to take birth as a Cudra, a Vaiçya, or a Kshatriya. If, again, during life he subsists upon food supplied to him by a Cudra, a Vaiçya, or a Kshatriya, he has to take birth in his next life as a Cudra, a Vaiçya or a Kshatriya.—T.

† 'Kundāçin' means a pander. It may also imply one who eats from off the vessel in which the food eaten has been cooked, without, that is using plates or leaves.—T.

other oders and serve them with care.[27] Always adhering to the path of righteousness, the Cudra should cheerfully do all this. He should honor the deities and persons of the regenerate orders. He should observe the vow of hospitality to all persons.[28] With senses kept under subjection and becoming abstemious in food, he should never approach his wife except in her season. He should ever search after persons that are holy and pure. As regards food, he should eat that which remains after the needs of all persons have been satisfied.[29] If, indeed, the Cudra desires to be a Vaiçya (in his next life), he should also abstain from meat of animals not slain in sacrifices. If a Vaiçya wishes to be a Brāhmana (in his next life), he should observe even these duties. He should be truthful in speech, and free from pride or arrogance. He should rise superior to all pairs of opposites (such as heat and cold, joy and sorrow, &c.) He should be observant of the duties of peace and tranquillity.[30] He should adore the deities in sacrifices, attend with devotion to the study and recitation of the Vedas, and become pure in body and mind. He should keep his senses under subjection, honor the Brāhmanas, and seek the welfare of all the orders. Leading the domestic mode of life and eating only twice a day at the prescribed hours, he should gratify his hunger with only such food as remains after the needs have been satisfied of all the members of his family with dependants and guests. He should be abstemious in food, and act without being impelled by the desire of reward. He should be free from egotism. He should adore the deities in the *Agnihotra* and pour libations according to the ordinance. Observing the duties of hospitality towards all persons, he should, as already said, eat the food that remains after serving all others for whom it has been cooked. He should, according to the ordinances laid down, worship the three fires. Such a Vaiçya of pure conduct takes birth in his next life in a high Kshatriya family.*[31-34] If a Vaiçya, after having taken birth as a

* The sense seems to be this: a Vaiçya ultimately becomes a Brāhmana by observing the duties indicated in Verses 30 to 33. As the immediate reward, however, of his observance of these duties, he be-

Kshatriya, goes through the usual purificatory rites, becomes invested with the sacred thread, and betakes himself to the observance of vows, he becomes, in his next life, an honored Brāhmana.[35] Indeed, after his birth as a Kshatriya, he should make presents, adore the deities in great sacrifices with plentiful Dakshinās, study the Vedas, and desirous of attaining to Heaven should worship the three fires.[36] He should interfere for dispelling the sorrows of the distressed, and should always righteously cherish and protect those subjects that own his sway. He should be truthful, and do all acts that have truth in them, and seek happiness in conduct like this.[37] He should award punishments that are righteous, without laying aside the rod of chastisement for good. He should induce men to do righteous deeds. Guided by considerations of policy (in the matter of swaying his people), he should take a sixth of the produce of the fields.*[38] He should never indulge in sexual pleasure, but live cheerfully and in independence, well conversant with the science of Wealth or Profit. Of righteous soul, he should seek his wedded spouse only in her season.[39] He should always observe fasts, keep his soul under control, devote himself to the study of the Vedas, and be pure in body and mind. He should sleep on blades of Kuça grass spread out in his fire-chamber.[40] He should pursue the aggregate of Three (*viz.*, Righteousness, Wealth, and Pleasure), and be always cheerful. Unto Cudras desirous of food, he should always answer that it is ready.[41] He should never desire anything from motives of gain or pleasure. He should worship the Pitris and gods and guests.[42] In his own house he should live the life of a mendicant. He should duly adore the deities in his Agnihotra, morning, noon, and evening every day, by pouring libations agreeably to the ordinance.[43] With his face turned towards the foe, he should cast off his life-breaths in battle fought for the benefit of kine

---

comes a great Kshatriya. What he should next do in order to become a Brāhmana is said in the Verses that follow.—T.

* This may, besides, imply the taking of a sixth portion of the merits acquired by his subjects through the righteous deeds they perform —T.

and Brāhmanas. Or, he may enter the triple fires sanctified with Mantras and cast off his body. By pursuing this line of conduct he takes birth in his next life as a Brāhmana.[44] Endued with knowledge and science, purified from all dross, and fully conversant with the Vedas, a righteous-souled Kshatriya, by his own acts, becomes a Brāhmana.[45] It is with the aid of these acts, O goddess, that a person who has sprung from a degraded order, *viz.*, a Cudra, may become a Brāhmana refined of all stains and possessed of Vedic lore.[46] One that is a Brāhmana, when he becomes wicked in conduct and observes no distinction in respect of food, falls away from the status of Brāhmanhood and becomes a Cudra.[47] Even a Cudra, O goddess, that has purified his soul by pure deeds and that has subjugated all his senses, deserves to be waited upon and served with reverence as a Brāhmana. This has been said by the Self-born Brahman himself.[48] When a pious nature and pious deeds are noticeable in even a Cudra, he should, according to my opinion, be held superior to a person of the three regenerate classes.[49] Neither birth, nor the purificatory rites, nor learning, nor offspring, can be regarded as grounds for confering upon one the status of regeneracy. Verily, conduct is the only ground.[50] All Brāhmanas in this world are Brāhmanas in consequence of conduct. A Cudra, if he is established on good conduct, is regarded as possessed of the status of a Brāhmana.[51] The status of Brahma, O auspicious lady, is equal wherever it exists. Even this is my opinion. He, indeed, is a Brāhmana in whom the status of Brahma exists,—that condition which is bereft of attributes and which has no stain attached to it.[52] The boon-giving Brahman, while he created all creatures, himself said that the distribution of human beings into the four orders as dependent on birth is only for purposes of classification.[53] The Brāhmana is a great field in this world,—a field equipt with feet for it moves from place to place. He who plants seeds in that field, O beautiful lady, reaps the crop in the next world.[54] That Brāhmana who wishes to achieve his own good should always live upon the remains of the food that may occur in his house after gratifying the needs of all others. He should always adhere to the path of righteousness. Indeed, he should tread

along the path that belongs to Brahma.[55] He should live, engaged in the study of the Samhitās, and remaining at home he should discharge all the duties of a house-holder. He should always be devoted to the study of the Vedas, but he should never derive the means of subsistence from such study.[56] That Brāhmana who always conducts himself thus, adhering to the path of righteousness, worshipping his sacred fire, and engaged in the study of the Vedas, comes to be regarded as Brahma.[57] Having attained to the status of a Brāhmana, it should always be protected with care, O thou of sweet smiles, by avoiding the stain of contact with persons born in inferior orders, by abstaining from the acceptance of gifts, and by other acts laid down in the scriptures.[58] I have thus told thee a mystery, *viz.*, the manner in which a Cudra may become a Brāhmana, or that by which a Brāhmana falls away from his own pure status and becomes a Cudra.—' "[59]

Section CXLIV.

" '—Umā said,—O holy one, O Lord of all beings, O thou that art worshipped by deities and Asuras equally, tell me what the duties and derilections are of men. Indeed, O puissant one, resolve me my doubts![1] It is by these three, *viz.*, thought, word, and deed, that men become bound with bonds. It is by the same three that they become freed from those bonds.[2] By pursuing what conduct, O god,—indeed, by what kind of acts,—by what behaviour and attributes and words, do men succeed in ascending to Heaven ?—[3]

" '—The god of gods said,—O goddess, thou art well conversant with the true import of duties. Thou art ever devoted to Righteousness and Self-restraint. The question thou hast asked me is fraught with the benefit of all creatures. It enhances the intelligence of all persons. Do thou, therefore, listen to the answer.[4] Those persons that are devoted to the religion of Truth, that are righteous and destitute of the indications of the several modes of life, and that enjoy the wealth earned by righteous means, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[5] Those men that are freed from all doubts, that are possessed of omniscience,

and that have eyes beholding all things, are never enchained by either virtue or sin. Those men that are freed from all attachments can never be bound by the chains of action.[6] They who never injure others in thought, word, or deed, and who never attach themselves to anything, can never he bound by acts.[7] They who abstain from taking the lives of any creature, who are endued with righteous conduct, who have compassion, who regard friends and foes in an equal light, and who are self-restrained, can never be bound by acts.[8] Those men that are endued with compassion towards all beings, that succeed in inspiring the confidence of all living creatures, and that have cast off malice in their behaviour, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[9] Those men that have no desire to appropriate what belongs to others, that keep themselves aloof from the wedded wives of others, and that enjoy only such wealth as has been earned by righteous means, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[10] Those men who behave towards the wives of other people as towards their own mothers and sisters and daughters, succeed in attaining to Heaven.[11] Those men that abstain from appropriating what belongs to others, that are perfectly contented with what they themselves possess, and that live depending upon their own destiny, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[12] Those men that, in their conduct, always shut their eyes against association with other peoples spouses, that are masters of their senses, and that are devoted to righteous conduct, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[13] Even this is the path, created by the gods, that the righteous should follow. This is the path, freed from passion and aversion, laid down for the righteous to follow.[14] Those men who are devoted to their own spouses and who seek them in only their seasons, and who turn themselves away from indulgence in sexual pleasure, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[15] Conduct marked by charity and penances, and characterised by righteousness of deeds and purity of both body and heart, should be followed by those that are wise for the sake of adding to their merit or for earning their means of subsistence.[16] Those who wish to ascend to Heaven should follow in this track and not any other.—[17]

"'—Umā said,—Tell me, O illustrious deity, O sinless lord

of all creatures, what are those words by which one becomes enchained and what those words by speaking which one may be freed from one's bonds.—[18]

"'—Maheçwara said,—Those men who never tell lies for either themselves or for others, or in jest or for exciting laughter, succeed in ascending Heaven.[19] They who never tell lies for earning their subsistence or for earning merit or through mere caprice, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[20] They who utter words that are smooth and sweet and faultless, and who welcome all whom they meet with sincerity, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[21] They who never utter words that are harsh and bitter and cruel, and who are free from deceitfulness and evil of every kind, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[22] Those men who never utter words that are fraught with deceit or that cause breaches of understanding between friends, and who always speak what is true and what promotes good feelings, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[23] Those men who avoid harsh speeches and abstain from quarrels with others, who are equal in their behaviour to all creatures, and who have subjugated their souls, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[24] They who abstain from evil speach or sinful conversation, who avoid such speeches as are disagreeable, and who utter only such words as are auspicious and agreeable, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[25] They who never utter, under anger, such words as tear the hearts of other people, and who, even when under the influence of wrath, speak words that are peaceful and agreeable, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[26] This religion, O goddess, appertaining to speech, should always be followed by men. It is auspicious and characterised by truth. They that are possessed of wisdom should always avoid untruth.—[27]

"'—Umā said,—Do thou tell me, O god of gods. O wielder of Pināka, O thou that art highly blessed, what those mental acts or thoughts are by which a person may be enchained!—[28]

"'—Maheçwara said,—Endued with merit that arises from mental acts, O goddess, one ascends to Heaven. Listen to me, O auspicious one, as I recite to thee what those acts are.[29] Listen to me, O thou of sweet face, how also a mind of ill-regulated features becomes enchained by ill-regulated or evil

thoughts.[30] Those men who do not seek, even mentally, to take what belongs to others even when they see it lying in a lone forest, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[31] Those men who care not to appropriate what belongs to others even when they see it lying in a house or a village that has been deserted, ascend to Heaven.[32] Those men that do not seek, even mentally, to associate with the wedded spouses of others even when they behold them in deserted places and under the influence of desire, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[33] Those men who, meeting with friends or foes, behave in the same friendly way towards all, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[34] Those men that are possessed of learning and compassion, that are pure in body and mind, that are firm in their adherence to truth, and that are contented with what belongs to them, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[35] Those men that do not bear ill-will to any creature, that do not stand in need of labour for their subsistence, that bear friendly hearts towards all beings, and that entertain compassion towards all, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[36] Those men that are endued with faith, that have compassion, that are holy, that seek the company of holy men, and that are conversant with the distinctions between right and wrong, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[37] Those men, O goddess, that are conversant with what the consequences are of good and bad deeds, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[38] Those men that are just in all their dealings, that are endued with all desirable accomplishments, that are devoted to the deities and the Brāhmanas, and that are endued with perseverance in the doing of all good acts, succeed in ascending to Heaven.[39] All these men, O goddess, succeed in ascending to Heaven through the meritorious consequences of their deeds. What else dost thou wish to hear?—[40]

"'—Umā said,—I have a great doubt, O Maheçwara, on a subject connected with human beings. It behooveth thee to explain it to me carefully.[41] By what acts does a man succeed, O puissant deity, in acquiring a long life? By what penances also does one acquire a long life?[42] By what acts does one become short-lived on Earth? O thou that art perfectly stainless, it behooveth thee to tell me what the conse-

quences are of acts (in the matter of bestowing a long or a short life on the doer).[43] Some are seen to be possessed of great good fortune and some weighted with misfortune. Some are possessed of noble birth and some are of ignoble birth.[44] Some of such repulsive features as if they are made of wood, while others are of very agreeable features at even the first sight.[45] Some appear to be destitute of wisdom while others are possessed of it. Some, again, are seen endued with high intelligence and wisdom, enlightened by knowledge and science.[46] Some have to endure little pain, while others there are that are weighted with heavy calamities. Even such diverse sights are seen with respect to men. It behooveth thee, O illustrious one, to tell me the reason of all this!—[47]

"'—The god of gods said,—Verily, O goddess, I shall discourse to thee on the manifestation of the fruits of acts. It is by the rules of that manifestation that all human beings in this world enjoy or endure the consequences of their acts.[48] That man who assumes a fierce aspect for the purpose of taking the lives of other creatures, who arms himself with stout sticks for injuring other creatures, who is seen with uplifted weapons, who slays living creatures,[49] who is destitute of compassion, who always causes agitation to living beings, who refuses to grant protection to even worms and ants, who is endued with cruelty,[50]—one who is such, O goddess, sinks in Hell. One who is endued with an opposite disposition and who is righteous in acts, becomes born as a handsome man.[51] The man who is endued with cruelty, goes to Hell, while he that is endued with compassion ascends to Heaven. The man who goes to Hell has to endure fierce and exceeding misery.[52] One who, having sunk in Hell, rises therefrom, takes birth as a man endued with short life.[53] That man who is addicted to slaughter and injury, O goddess, becomes, through his sinful deeds, liable to destruction. Such a person becomes disagreeable to all creatures and endued with a short life.[54] That man who belongs to what is called the White class, who abstains from the slaughter of living creatures, who has thrown away all weapons, who never inflicts any chastisement on anybody, who never injures any creature,[55] who never causes anybody

to slay creatures for him, who never slays or strikes even when struck or attempted to be slain, who never sanctions or approves an act of slaughter, who is endued with compassion towards all creatures, who behaves towards others as towards his own self,[56]—such a superior man, O goddess, succeeds in attaining to the status of a deity. Filled with joy, such a man enjoys diverse kinds of luxurious articles.[57] If such a person ever takes birth in the world of men, he becomes endued with longevity and enjoys great happiness.[58] Even this is the way of those that are of righteous conduct and righteous deeds and that are blessed with longevity, the way that was indicated by the Self-born Brahman himself and that is characterised by abstention from the slaughter of living creatures.—' "[59]

Section CXLV.

" '—Umā said,—By what disposition, what conduct, what acts, and what gifts, does a man succeed in attaining to Heaven ?—[1]

" '—Maheçwara said,—He who is endued with a liberal disposition, who honors Brāhmanas and treats them with hospitality, who makes gifts of food and drink and robes and other articles of enjoyment unto the destitute, the blind, and the distressed,[2] who makes gifts of houses, erects halls (for use of the public), digs wells, constructs shelters whence pure and cool water is distributed (during the hot months unto thirsty travellers), excavets tanks, makes arrangements for the free distribution of gifts every day, gives to all comers what each solicits,[3] who makes gifts of seats and beds and conveyances, wealth, jewels and gems, houses, all kinds of corn, kine, fields, and women,[4]—verily, he who always makes these gifts with a cheerful heart, becomes a denizen, O goddess, of Heaven.[5] He resides there for a long period, enjoying diverse kinds of superior articles. Passing his time happily in the company of the Apsaras, he sports in the woods of Nandana and other delightful regions.[6] After the exhaustion of his merits he falls down from Heaven and takes birth in the order of humanity, in a family, O goddess, that is possessed of

wealth and cover in abundance and that has a large command of every article of enjoyment.[7] In that life he becomes endued with all articles for gratifying his dishes and appetites. Indeed, blessed with the possession of such articles, he becomes endued with affluence and a well-filled treasury.[8] The Self-born Brahman himself declared it in days of old that it is even such persons, O goddess, that become highly blessed and possessed of liberal dispositions and agreeable features.[9] There are others, O goddess, that are incapable of making gifts. Endued with small understandings, they cannot make gifts even when solicited by Brāhmanas and possessed of abundant wealth.[10] Beholding the destitute, the blind, the distressed, and mendicants, and even guests arrived at their abodes, those persons, always filled with the desire of gratifying the organ of taste, turn away, even when expressly solicited by them.[11] They never make gifts of wealth or robes, or viands, or gold, or kine, or any kind of food.[12] Those men who are disinclined to relieve the distress of others, who are full of cupidity, who have no faith in the scriptures, and who are destitute of making gifts,—verily, these men of little understanding, O goddess, have to sink in Hell.[13] In course of time, when their sufferings in Hell come to an end, they take birth in the order of humanity, in families that are entirely destitute of wealth.[14] Always suffering from hunger and thirst, excluded from all decent society, hopeless of ever enjoying all goodly things, they lead lives of great wretchedness.[15] Born in families that are destitute of all articles of enjoyment, these men never succeed in enjoying the goodly things of Earth. Indeed, O goddess, it is through acts that persons become wretched and poor.[16] There are others who are full of arrogance and pride caused by the possession of riches. Those senseless wretches never offer seats to those that deserve such an offer.[17] Endued with little understandings they do not give way to them that deserve such an honor.* Nor do they give water for washing

* I India an inferior should always stand aside for letting his superior pass. The Kshatriya should give way to the Brāhmana, the Vaiçya to the Kshatriya, and the Cudra to the Vaiçya.—T.

the feet to persons unto whom it should be given.[18] Indeed, they do not honor, agreeably to the ordinance, with gifts of the Arghya, such persons as deserve to be honored therewith. They do not offer water for washing the mouth unto such as deserve to have that honor.[19] They do not treat their very preceptors, when the latter arrive at their houses, in the manner in which preceptors should be treated. Living in cupidity and arrogance, they refuse to treat their seniors and aged men with love and affection, even insulting those that deserve to be honored and asserting their superiority over them without displaying reverence and humility. Such men, O goddess, sink in Hell.[20-21] When their sufferings come to an end after a long course of years, they rise from Hell, and take brith in the order of humanity, in low and wretched families.[22] Indeed, they who humiliate their preceptors and seniors, have to take birth in such castes as those of Swapākas and Pukkasas who are exceedingly vile and bereft of intelligence.[23] He who is not arrogant or filled with pride, who is a worshipper of the deities and Brāhmanas, who enjoys the respect of the world, who bows to every one that deserves his reverence, who utters smooth and sweet words,[24] who benefits persons of all orders, who is always devoted to the good of all beings, who does not feel aversion for anybody, who is sweet tongued, who is an utterer of agreeable and cooling words,[25] who gives way to one that deserves to have way, who adores his preceptors in the manner in which preceptors deserve to be adored, who welcomes all creatures with proper courtesy, who does not bear ill will towards any creature, who lives, worshipping seniors and guests with such honors as they deserve,[26] who is ever bent upon securing as many guests as possible, and who worships all who honor his house with their presence,[27] succeeds, O goddess, in ascending to Heaven. Upon the exhaustion of his merit, he takes birth in the order of humanity in a high and respectable family.[28] In that life he becomes possessed of all articles of enjoyment in abundance and jewels and gems and every kind of wealth in profusion. He gives unto deserving persons what they deserve. He becomes devoted to the observance of every duty and every act

of righteousness.[29] Honored by all creatures and receiving their reverence, he obtains the fruits of his own acts.[30] Even such a person acquires a high lineage and birth in this world. This that I have recited to thee was said by the Ordainer (Brahman) himself in days of old.[31] That man who is fierce in conduct, who inspires terror in all creatures, who injures other beings with hands or feet or cords or sticks, or brick-bats or clods of hard clay, or other means of wounding and paining, O beautiful lady, who practises diverse kinds of deceit for slaying living creatures or vexing them, who pursues animals in the chase and causes them to be tremble in fear,—verily, that man, who conducts himself in this way, is certain to sink in Hell.[32-34] If in course of time he takes birth in the order of humanity, he is obliged to be born in a low and wretched race or family that is afflicted with impediments of every kind on every side.[35] He becomes an object of aversion to all the world. A wretch among men, he becomes so through the consequence of his own acts.[36] Another, who is possessed of compassion, casts his eye on all creatures. Endued with a friendly vision, behaving towards all creatures as if he were their father, divested of every hostile feeling, with all his passions under complete control,[37] he never vexes any creature and never inspires them with fear by means of his hands or feet which are always under his control. He inspires the confidence of all beings.[38] He never afflicts any creature with either cords or clubs or brick-bats or clods of hard earth or weapons of any kind. His deeds are never fierce or cruel, and he is full of kindness.[39] One who is endued with such practices and conduct certainly ascends to Heaven. There he lives like a god in a celestial mansion abounding with every comfort.[40] If, upon the exhaustion of his merit, he has to take birth in the order of humanity, he becomes born as a man that has not to fight with difficulties of any kind or to encounter any fear. Indeed, he enjoys great happiness.[41] Possessed of felicity, without the obligation of undergoing distressing labour for his subsistence, he lives freed from every kind of anxiety. Even this, O goddess, is the path of the righteous. In it there are no impediments or afflictions.—[42]

"'—Umā said,—In the world some men are seen well versed in inferences and the premises leading to them. Indeed, they are possessed of science and knowledge, have large progeny, and are endued with learning and wisdom.[43] Others, O god, are destitute of wisdom, science, and knowledge, and are characterised by folly. By what particular acts does a person become possessed of wisdom?[44] By what acts, again, does one become possessed of little wisdom and distorted vision? Do thou dispel this doubt of mine, O thou that art the foremost of all beings conversant with duties![45] Others there are, O god, that are blind from the moment of their birth. Others there are that are diseased and afflicted and impotent. Do thou, O god, tell me the reason of this!—[46]

"'—Maheçwara said,—Those men that always enquire, about what is for their benefit and what is to their detriment, of Brāhmanas learned in the Vedas, crowned with success, and conversant with all duties,[47] that avoid all kinds of evil deeds and achieve only such deeds as are good, succeed in ascending to Heaven after departing from this world and enjoy great happiness as long as they live here.[48] Indeed, upon the exhaustion of their merit, when they take birth in the order of humanity, they become born as men possessed of great intelligence. Every kind of felicity and auspiciousness becomes theirs in consequence of that intelligence with which they are born.[49] Those men of foolish understandings who cast wicked eyes upon the wedded spouses of other men, become cursed with congenital blindness in consequence of that sinfulness of theirs.[50] Those men who, impelled by desire in their hearts, cast their eyes on naked women, those men of wicked deeds take birth in this world to pass their whole lives in one continuous disease.[51] Those men of foolish and wicked deeds who indulge in sexual congress with women of orders different from their own,—those men of little wisdom,—have to take birth in their next lives as persons destitute of the virility.[52] Those men who cause animals to be slain, and those who violate the beds of their preceptors, and those who indulge promiscously in sexual congress, have to take birth in their next lives as persons destitute of the virile power.—[53]

"'—Umā said,—What acts, O foremost of the deities, are faulty, and what acts are faultless? What, indeed, are those acts by doing which a man succeeds in attaining to what is for your highest good?—[54]

"'—Maheçwara said,—That man who is desirous of ascertaining what is righteousness, and who wishes to acquire prominent virtues and accomplishments, and who always puts questions to the Brāhmanas with a view to find out the path that leads to his highest good, succeeds in ascending to Heaven.[55] If (after exhaustion of his merit) he takes birth in the order of humanity, he becomes endued with intelligence and memory and great wisdom.[56] This, O goddess, is the line of conduct that the righteous are to follow and that is fraught with great benefit. I have told thee of it for the good of human beings.—[57]

"'—Umā said,—There are men who hate righteousness and who are possessed of little understandings. They never wish to approach Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas.[58] There are others who are observant of vows and who are devoted to the duty of performing Crāddhas. Others, again, are destitute of all vows. They are unmindful of observances and are like Rākshasas in conduct.[59] Some there are who are devoted to the performance of sacrifices and some who are unmindful of the Homa. Through the consequences of what acts do men become possessed of these different natures?—[60]

"'—Maheçwara said,—Through the Vedas, the limits have been assigned of all the acts of human beings. Those men that conduct themselves according to the authority of the Vedas, are seen (in their next lives) to become devoted to the observance of vows.[61] Those men, however, who having become subject to the sway of folly accept unrighteousness for its reverse, become destitute of vows, trangress all restraints, and come to be regarded as Brahmarākshasas. Indeed, it is these men that become unmindful of the Homa, that never utter the Vashat and other sacred Mantras, and that come to be regarded as the lowest and vilest of men.[62-63] Thus, O goddess, have I explained to thee the entire ocean of duties in respect of human beings for the sake of removing

thy doubts, not omitting the sins of which they become guilty.—' "[64]

SECTION CXLVI.

" 'Nārada said,—Having said these words, the puissant Mahādeva became desirous of himself hearing (instead of talking), and with that view he questioned his dear spouse who was seated by his side and thoroughly inclined to do his will.[1]

" '—Mahādeva said,—Thou, O goddess, art conversant with what is Supreme and with what is not so.* Thou art acquainted with all duties, O thou that lovest to reside in the retreats of ascetics. Thou art endued with every virtue, possessed of beautiful eyebrows and hair ending in the fairest curls, O daughter of Himavat, the king of mountains![2] Thou art skilled in every work. Thou art endued with self-restraint and perfect equality of sight with respect to all creatures. Divested of the sense of *meum*, thou art devoted to the practice of all the duties. O thou of beautiful features, I desire to ask thee (about something). I wish that, asked by me, thou wilt discourse to me on that topic.[3] Sāvittri is the chaste wife of Brahman. The chaste Cachi is the wife of Indra. Dhumornā is the spouse of Mārkandeya, and Riddhi of (king) Vaiçravana.[4] Varuna has Gauri for his spouse, and Surya has Suvarchalā. Rohini is the chaste wife of Caçin, and Swāhā of Vibhāvasu.[5] Kaçyapa has Aditi. All these regard their husbands as their gods. Thou hast, O goddess, conversed and associated with all of them every day.[6] It is for this reason, O thou that art conversant with every duty, that I desire to question thee about the duties of women, O thou whose words are always consistent with righteousness. I desire to hear thee discourse on that subject from the beginning.[7] Thou practicest all the duties of righteousness with me. Thy conduct is exactly like mine, and the vows thou observest are the same that are observed by me. Thy puissance and energy are equal to mine, and thou hast undergone the austerest penances.[8] The subject, when discoursed upon by thee, will become en-

---

* *I. e.*, Soul (including the supreme Soul) and Not-soul.—T.

dued with great merit. Indeed, that discourse will then become authoritative in the world.[9] Women, in especial, are the highest refuge of women. O thou of beautiful hips, among human beings that course of conduct which thou wilt lay down will be followed from generation to generation.*[10] Half of my body is made up of half thy body. Thou art always engaged in doing the work of the deities, and it is thou that art the cause of the peopling of the Earth.[11] O auspicious lady, all the eternal duties of women are well known to thee. Do thou, therefore, tell me in detail what the duties are of thy sex !—[12]

" '—Umā said,—O holy one, O lord of all created things, O source of all that is past, present, and future, it is through thy grace that the words I am uttering are taking their rise in my mind.[13] All these Rivers (that are of my sex), O god of gods, endued with the waters of all the Tirthas, are approaching thy presence for enabling thee to perform thy ablutions in them.†[14] After consulting them I shall discourse on the topic named, in due order. That person who, though competent, is still free from egotism, is rightly called a Purusha.‡[15] As regards woman, O lord of all beings, she follows persons of her sex. By consulting these foremost of Rivers, they will be honored by me.[16] The sacred Saraswati is the foremost river of all rivers. She courses towards the ocean and is truly the first of all streams.[17] Vipāçā also is here, and Vitastā, and Chandrabhāgā and Irāvati, and Catadru, and the river Devikā, and Kauçiki, and Gomati,¶[18] and this celestial

---

* 'Gauri' is anothor name for Earth.—T.

† The 'Nadis' or Rivers are feminine. Of course, among Rivers, there are some that are masculine, notably, the Sindhu or Indus. 'Tirthas' are places with sacred waters.—T.

‡ One who is free from vanity or arrogance deserves to be called Purusha. The absence of vanity is implied by soliciting the help of others even when one is competent oneself. Females follow females, such being their nature. It is a compliment that Pārvati pays to Çiva for Çiva's questioning her when he himself is well acquainted with the topic upon which she is asked to discourse.—T.

¶ The word 'Sindhu' in this Verse does not imply the river Indus, but stands for a river in general. Grammatically, it qualifies 'Devikā' before it. Devikā is another name of Sarayu.—T.

River who has in her all the sacred Tirthas, *viz.*, the goddess Gangā, who having her rise in Heaven hath descended on the Earth and is regarded as the foremost of all streams![19]—Having said this, the spouse of that god of gods, that foremost of all righteous of persons, smilingly addressed all those Rivers of her sex.[20] Indeed, the spouse of the great god, devoted to the performance of all duties, questioned those individuals of her sex about the duties of women. Verily, those foremost of rivers having Gangā for their first are all conversant with the duties of women.—[21]

" '—Umā said.—The illustrious god has asked a question relating to the duties of women. I desire to answer Cankara after having consulted with you.[22] I do not see any branch of knowledge on Earth or Heaven that is capable of being mastered by any unaided individual. Ye rivers that run towards the ocean, it is for this that I seek your opinions![23]—It was in this way that those foremost of Rivers, all of whom were auspicious and highly sacred, were questioned by Civa's spouse. Then the celestial River Gangā, who worshipped the daughter of the prince of mountains in return, was selected for answering the question.[24] Verily, she of sweet smiles is held as swelling with diverse kinds of understanding and well conversant with the duties of women. The sacred goddess, capable of dispelling all fear of sin,[25] possessed of humility in consequence of her intelligence, well acquainted with all duties, and enriched with an intelligence exceedingly comprehensive sweetly smiling, uttered these words.[26]—O goddess, thou art always devoted to the due performance of all duties. Thou hast favored me highly by thus questioning me! O sinless one, thou art honored by the entire universe, yet thou askest me that am but a River![27] That person who, though himself competent (to discourse on a topic) yet asks another, or who pays a graceful tribute to another, certainly deserves, I think, to be regarded as righteous-souled. Verily, such a person deserves to be called learned and wise.[28] That person never falls into disgrace who asks such speakers as are endued with knowledge and science and as are well conversant with premises and inferences.[29] A proud man, even when enriched

with intelligence, by speaking in the midst of an assembly otherwise, (that is, by relying upon his own powers done and without reference to or consultation with others), finds himself uttering only words of weak import.[30] Thou art possessed of spiritual insight. Thou art the foremost of all denizens in Heaven. Thou hast taken thy rise accompanied by diverse kinds of excellent merit. Thou, O goddess, art fully competent to discourse on the duties of women![31]—In this way, the goddess Umā was worshipped by Gangā and honored with the ascription of many high merits. The beautiful goddess, thus praised, then began to discourse upon all the duties of women in full.—[32]

"'—Umā said,—I shall, according to the ordinance, discourse on the subject of women's duties as far as they are known to me. Do ye all listen with concentrated attention![33] The duties of women arise as created at the outset by kinsmen in the rites of wedding. Indeed, woman becomes, in the presence of the nuptial fire, the associate of her lord in the performance of all righteous deeds.*[34] Possessed of a good disposition, endued with sweet speech, sweet conduct, and sweet features, and always looking at the face of her husband and deriving as much joy from it as she does from looking at the face of her child,[35] that chaste woman who regulates her acts by observing the prescribed restraints, comes to be regarded as truly righteous in her conduct. Listening (with reverence) to the duties of wedded life (as expounded in the scriptures), and accomplishing all those auspicious duties,[36] that woman who regards righteousness as the foremost of all objects of pursuit, who observes the same vows as those that are observed by her husband, who, adorned with chastity, looks upon her spouse as a god,[37] who waits upon and serves him as if he is a god, who surrenders her own will completely to that of her lord's, who is cheerful, who observes excellent vows, who is endued with good features,[38] and whose heart is completely devoted to her husband insomuch that she never thinks even of any

* According to the Hindu scriptures, marriage is not a contract. It is the union of two individuals of opposite sexes into one person for the better performance of all righteous deeds.—T.

other man, is regarded as truly righteous in conduct. That wife who, even when addressed harshly and looked upon with angry eyes by her lord.[39] presents a cheerful aspect to him, is said to be truly devoted to her husband. She who does not cast her eyes upon the Moon or the Sun or a tree that has a masculine name,[40] who is adored by her husband and who is possessed of beautiful features, is regarded as truly righteous. That woman who, treats her husband with the affection, which one shows towards her child, even when he happens to be poor or diseased or weak or worn out with the toil of travelling, is regarded as truly righteous in her conduct.[41] That woman who is endued with self-control, who has given birth to children,[42] who serves her husband with devotion, and whose whole heart is devoted to him, is regarded as truly righteous in her conduct. That woman who waits upon and serves her lord with a cheerful heart,[43] who is always cheerful of heart, and who is possessed of humility, is regarded as truly righteous in her conduct. That woman who always supports her kinsmen and relatives by giving them food,[44] and whose relish in gratifying her desires or for articles of enjoyment, or for the affluence of which she is possessed, or for the happiness with which she is surrounded, falls short of her relish for her husband, is regarded as truly righteous in her conduct.[45] That woman who always takes a pleasure in rising at early dawn, who is devoted to the discharge of all household duties, who always keeps her house clean, who rubs her house daily with cowdung,[46] who always attends to the domestic fire (for pouring libations upon it), who never neglects to make offerings of flowers and other articles to the deities, who with her husband gratifies the deities and guests and all servants and dependants of the family with that share of food which is theirs by the ordinance,[47] and who always takes, according to the ordinance, for herself, what food remains in the house after the needs have been met of gods and guests and servants, and who gratifies all people who come in contact with her family and feed them to their fill, succeeds in acquiring great merit.[48] That woman who is endued with accomplishments, who gratifies the feet of her

father-in-law and mother-in-law, and who is always devoted to her father and mother, is regarded as possessed of ascetic wealth.[49] That woman who supports with food Brāhmanas that are weak and helpless, that are distressed or blind or destitute, comes to be regarded as entitled to share the merits of her husband.[50] That woman who always observes, with a light heart, vows that are difficult of observance, whose heart is devoted to her lord, and who always seeks the good of her lord, is regarded as entitled to share the merits of her husband.[51] Devotion to her lord is woman's merit; it is her penance; it is her eternal Heaven. Merit, penances, and Heaven become hers who looks upon her husband as her all in all, and who, endued with chastity, seeks to devote herself to her lord in all things.[52] The husband is the god which women have. The husband is their friend. The husband is their high refuge. Women have no refuge that can compare with their husband, and no god that can compare with him.[53] The husband's grace and Heaven, are equal in the estimation of a woman; or, if unequal, the inequality is very trivial. O Maheçwara, I do not desire Heaven itself if thou art not satisfied with me.[54] If the husband that is poor, or diseased, or distressed, or fallen among foes, or afflicted by a Brāhmana's curse, were to command the wife to accomplish anything that is improper or unrighteous or that may lead to destrnction of life itself, the wife should, without any hesitation, accomplish it, guided by the code whose propriety is sanctioned by the Law of Distress.[55-56] I have thus, O god, expounded, at thy command, what the duties of women are. Verily, that woman who conducts herself in this way becomes entitled to a share of the merits won by her husband.—[57]

" 'Nārada continued,—Thus addressed, the great god applauded the daughter of the prince of mountains and then dismissed all persons that had assembled there, together with all his own attendants.[58] The diverse tribes of ghostly beings, as also all the embodied Rivers, and the Gandharvas and Apsaras, all bowed their heads unto Mahādeva and departed for returning to the places whence they had come.—' "[59]

SECTION CXLVII.

" '—The Rishis said,—O wielder of Pināka, O tearer of the eyes of Bhaga, O thou that art worshipped by all the universe, we desire to hear the glory of Vāsudeva !—[1]

" '—Maheçwara said,—Hari is superior to the Grandsire himself. He is the Eternal Purusha. Otherwise called Krishna, he is endued with the splendour of gold, and shines with effulgence like a second Sun.[2] Possessed of ten arms, he is endued with great energy, and is the slayer of the foes of the gods. Having a whirl on his breast, he has curly locks of hair on his head. He is worshipped by all the deities.[3] Brahman has risen from his abdomen. I have sprung from his head. All the luminaries in the firmament have sprung from his hair. From the bristles on his body have sprung all the gods and Asuras.[4] From his body have sprung the Rishis as also all the eternal worlds. He is the veritable abode of the Grandsire and the abode of all the gods besides.[5] He is the Creator of this whole Earth, and He is the Lord of the three worlds. He is also the Destroyer of all creatures mobile and immobile.[6] He is verily the foremost of all the deities. He is their master. He is the chastiser of all foes. He is possessed of omniscience. He exists in everything. He is capable of going everywhere. He is of universal extent, (pervading as he does everything).[7] He is the Supreme Soul. He is the urger of all the senses. He covers the universe. He is the Supreme Lord. There is nothing in the three worlds that is superior to Him.[8] He is Eternal. He is the slayer of Madhu, and is otherwise called Govinda. The giver of honors, He will cause all the kings of Earth to be slain in battle,[9] for achieving the purposes of the deities, taking birth in a human form. The deities, abandoned by Him, are unable to accomplish their purposes on Earth. Without obtaining Him as their leader they cannot do anything. He is the leader of all creatures and is adored by all the gods.*[10-11] Within the abdomen of this Master of the

* 'Trivikrama' is one who covered the three worlds with three steps of his. It implies Vishnu who assumed the form of a dwarf for beguiling the Asura king Vali.—T.

gods who is ever devoted to the accomplishment of their purposes, of this one who is identical with Brahma and who is always the refuge of the regenerate Rishis, resides Brahman (the Grandsire). Indeed, the latter dwells happily in Hari's body which is his abode. I myself, that am called Carva, also reside happily in that happy abode of mine.[12-13] All the deities too reside in happiness in His body. Endued with great effulgence, he has eyes that resemble the petals of the lotus. Cree dwells within Him and He dwells always associated with her.[14] The bow called Cāranga and the discus (called Sudarçana) are his weapons, together with a sword. He has the enemy of all the snakes (*viz.*, Garuda) sitting on his standard. He is distinguished by excellent conduct, by purity (of both body and mind), by self-restraint, by prowess, by energy, by the handsomest form, by tallness and well-proportioned limbs, by patience, by sincerity, by affluence, by compassion, by excellence of form, and by might. He shines, endued with all celestial weapons of wonderful form and make.[15-17] He has Yoga for his illusion. He is possessed of a thousand eyes. He is free from every stain or fault. He is high-minded. He is endued with heroism. He is an object of pride with all his friends. He is dear to all his kinsmen and relatives and they are dear to him.[18] He is endued with forgiveness. He is free from pride or egotism. He is devoted to the Brāhmanas and is their leader. He dispels the fears of all persons afflicted with fear. He enhances the joys of all his friends.[19] He is the refuge of all creatures. He is ever engaged in protecting and cherishing the distressed. Possessed of thorough acquaintance with all the scriptures, and every kind of affluence, He is worshipped by all beings.[20] Conversant with all duties, He is a great benefactor of even enemies when they seek His protection. Conversant with policy and endued with policy, He is an utterer of Brahma and has all His senses under perfect control.[21] For doing good to the deities, Govinda will take birth in the race of the high-souled Manu. Verily, endued with high intelligence, He will take birth in the auspicious and righteous race of that Prajāpati. Manu will have a son of the name of Anga. After Anga will come Antardhāman.[22-23] From Antar-

dhāman will spring Havirdhāman, that lord of all creatures, free from every stain. Havirdhāman will have an illustrious son of the name of Old-Varhi.[24] He will have ten sons having Prachetas for their first. Prachetas will have a son named Daksha who will be regarded as a Prajāpati. Daksha will beget a daughter who will be named Dākshāyani.[25] From Dākshāyani will spring Āditya, and from Āditya will spring Manu. From Manu will spring a daughter named Ilā and a son to be named Sudyumna.[26] Ilā will have Vudha for her husband, and from Vudha will spring Pururavas. From Pururavas will spring Āyu. From Āyu will spring Nahusha, and Nahusha will beget a son named Yayāti.[27] From Yayāti will spring a mighty son of the name of Yadu. Yadu will beget Kroshtri. Kroshtri will beget a mighty son to be named Vrijinivat.[28] From Vrijinivat will spring Ushadgu the unvanquished. Ushadgu will beget a son of the name of Chitraratha.[29] Chitraratha will have a younger son of the name of Cura. Indeed, in the race of these mighty men, of energy celebrated over all the world, possessed of excellent conduct and diverse accomplishments,[30] devoted to the performance of sacrifices and pure in behaviour,—in the pure race honored by the Brāhmanas, Cura will take his birth. He will be a foremost Kshatriya, endued with great energy, and possessed of great fame.[31] Cura, that giver of honors, will beget a son, the spreader of his race, of the name of Vasudeva, otherwise called Ānakadundhuvi.[32] Vasudeva will have a son of name Vāsudeva. He will have four hands. He will be exceedingly liberal, and will honor the Brāhmanas greatly. Identical with Brahma, he will love and like the Brāhmanas, and the Brāhmanas will love and like him.[33] That scion of Yadu's race will liberate many kings immured in the prison of the ruler of the Magadhas, after vanquishing that ruler named Jarāsandha in his capital buried among mountains.[34] Endued with great energy, he will be rich with the jewels and gems of all rulers of the Earth. Indeed, in energy he will be unrivalled on Earth.[35] Possessed of great prowess, he will be the king of all kings of the Earth. Foremost among all the Surasenas, the puissant one, residing at Dwārakā,[36] will rule

and protect the whole Earth after vanquishing all her lords, conversant as he will be with the science of polity. Assembling together, do ye all adore Him, as ye adore the Eternal Brahman, with speech, floral wealths, and excellent incense and perfumes. He who wishes to see me or the Grandsire Brahman[37-38] should first see the illustrious Vāsudeva of great puissance. If He is seen I am seen, as also the Grandsire Brahman, that foremost of all the gods.[39] In this I do not deem there is any difference. Know this, ye Rishis of ascetic wealth! That person with whom the lotus-eyed Vāsudeva becomes gratified,[40] all the deities with Brahman amongst them will also become gratified with. That man who will seek the protection of Keçava[41] will succeed in earning great achievements and victory and Heaven. He will be an instructor in religion and duties, and will earn great religious merit.[42] All persons conversant with religion and duties should, with great alacrity, bow down unto that Lord of all the gods. By adoring that puissant one, one will acquire great merit.[43] Endued with great energy, that god, with the desire of benefiting all creatures, created millions of Rishis for the sake of righteousness.[44] Those millions of Rishis, thus created by that great Ordainer, are now residing on the mountains of Gandhamādana, headed by Sanatkumāra and engaged in the observance of penances.[45] Hence, ye foremost of regenerate ones, that foremost of all eloquent persons, *viz.*, the righteous Vāsudeva, should be adored by all. The illustrious Hari, the puissant Nārāyana, is, verily, the foremost of all beings in Heaven.[46] Adored, he adores, and honored, he honors; unto them that make offerings to him, he makes offerings in return. Worshipped, he worships in return.[47] If seen always, he sees the seers always. If one seeks His refuge and protection, He seeks the seeker as His refuge in return. Ye foremost of all righteous ones, if adored and worshipped, He adores and worships in return.[48] Even this is the high practice of the faultless Vishnu. Even this is the vow that is practiced by all righteous people, of that first of all deities, that puissant Lord of all creatures.[49] He is always worshipped in the world. Verily, that Eternal Being is worshipped by even the deities.

Those persons that are devoted to Him with the steadiness of a vow become liberated from calamity and fear in proportion to his devotion.[50] The regenerate ones should always worship Him in thought, word, and deed. The son of Devaki should be seen by them with reverence and in order to see Him with reverence they should address themselves to the performance of penances.[51] Ye foremost of ascetics, even this is the path that I show unto you. By beholding Him, ye will have beheld all the foremost of deities.[52] I too bow my head in reverence unto that Lord of the universe, that Grandsire of all the worlds, that mighty and vast boar![53] By beholding Him one beholds the Trinity. Ourselves, *viz.*, all the deities, reside in Him.[54] He will have an elder brother who will become known over all the world as Vala. Having a plough for his weapon, in form he will look like a white hill. In fact, he will be endued with might capable of uplifting the whole Earth.[55] Upon the car of that divine person a tall palmyra, three-headed and made of gold, will form his proud standard.[56] The head of that mighty-armed hero, that Lord of all the worlds, will be shaded by many high-souled snakes of vast bodies. All weapons of attack and defence will also come to him as soon as he will think of them.[57] He is called Ananta (Infinite). Verily, that illustrious one is identical with the immutable Hari. Once on a time, the mighty Garuda, the son of Kaçyapa, was addressed by the deities in these words:—Do thou, O puissant one, see if this one has any end!—Though possessed of great energy and might, Garuda, however, failed to find out the end of this illustrious one who is identical with the Supreme Soul.[58-59] Supporting the whole Earth on his head, he resides in the nether regions. He roves through the universe as Cesha, filled with great joy.[60] He is Vishnu, He is the illustrious Ananta, He is the supporter of the Earth. He that is Rāma is Hrishikeça. He that is Achyuta is Ananta the bearer of the Earth.[61] Both of those foremost of all creatures are celestial and endued with celestial prowess. One of them is armed with the discus and the other with the plough. They deserve every honor and should be seen.[61] I have, through my kindness for you, have thus declared to you the nature of Vāsudeva. Even this,

ye ascetics possessed of wealth of penances, is Righteousness.[62] I have declared all this to you so that ye may, with reverence and care, worship Krishna, that foremost one of Yadu's race !—' "[63]

SECTION CXLVIII.

"'Nārada said,—At the conclusion of Mahādeva's speech, loud roars were heard in the firmament. Thunders bellowed, with flashes of lightning. The welkin was enveloped with blue and thick clouds.[1] The deity of the clouds then poured pure water like to what he does in the season of rains. A thick darkness set in. The points of the compass could no longer he distinguished.[2] Then on that delightful, sacred, and eternal breast of that celestial mountain, the assembled Rishis no longer saw the multitude of ghostly beings that associate with Mahādeva.[3] Soon, however, the welkin cleared. Some of the Rishis set out for the sacred waters. Other returned whence they came.[4] Verily, beholding that wonderful and inconcievable sight, they became filled with amazement. The discourse too between Cankara and Umā had been heard by them with the same feelings.[5] That foremost of all Beings, of whom the high-souled Cankara spoke to us on that mountain, art Thou. Verily, thou art identical with Eternal Brahma.[6] Sometime before, Mahādeva burnt Himavat with his energy. Thou too hast shown us a similar sight of wonder. Indeed, we have been put in remembrance of that fact by what we have witnessed today.[7] O mighty-armed Janārddana, I have thus, O puissant one, recited to thee the glory of that god of gods, *viz.*, him that is called Kaparddin or Giriça !—'[8]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed by those denizens of ascetic retreats, Krishna, the delighter of Devaki, paid due honors unto all those Rishis.[9] Filled with delight, those Rishis once more addressed Krishna, saying,—O slayer of Madhu, do thou repeatedly show thyself to us at all times ![10] O puissant one, Heaven itself cannot rejoice us so much as a sight of thyself ! Everything that was said by the illustrious Bhava (regarding thyself) is true.[11] O crusher of foes, we have told

thee all about that mystery. Thou art thyself conversant with the truth of every topic. Since, however, asked by us, it pleased thee to ask us in return, we have, for that reason, recited everything (about the discourse of Bhava with Umā) to thee for only pleasing thee. There is nothing in the three worlds that is unknown to thee.[12-13] Thou art fully conversant with the birth and origin of all things, indeed, with everything that operates as a cause (for the production of other objects). In consequence of the lightness of our character, we are unable to bear (within ourselves the knowledge of) any mystery (without disclosing it).*[14] Indeed, in thy presence, O puissant one, we indulge in incoherencies from the lightness of our hearts. There is no wonderful thing that is unknown to thee![15] Whatever is on Earth, and whatever is in Heaven, all is known to thee! We take our leave of thee, O Krishna, for returning to our respective abodes. Mayst thou increase in intelligence and prosperity![16] O sire, thou wilt soon get a son like unto thee or even more distinguished than thyself. He will be endued with great energy and splendour. He will achieve great feats, and become possessed of puissance as great as thine!†—'[17]

"Bhishma continued,—'After this, the great Rishis bowed unto that god of gods, that scion of Yadu's race, that foremost of all Beings. They then circumambulated him and taking his leave, departed.[18] As regards Nārāyana, who is endued with prosperity and blazing effulgence, he returned to Dwārakā after having duly observed that vow of his.[19] His spouse

---

* The sense seems to be this: Thou knowest all things, all mysteries, yet thou canst bear all this knowledge within thyself. We, however, are so light-minded, *i. e.*, destitute of gravity, that we are unable to bear within ourselves the knowledge of a mystery. As soon as we got that knowledge from Mahādeva, we felt the desire of letting it out; and, indeed, we have let it out at thy request, and let it out unto whom?—unto one that must be secretly laughing at us for our seeming pride.—T.

† It is said that no person wishes to be vanquished by another in respect of anything. The only one whose victory or superiority, however, is bearable or, rather, prayed for, is the son. Hence, the Rishis wish unto Krishna a son even superior to him.—T.

Rukmini conceived, and on the expiration of the tenth month a son was born of her, possessed of heroism and honored by all for his highly wonderful accomplishments.[20] He is identical with that Kāma (Desire) which exists in every creature and which pervades every existent condition. Indeed, he moves within the hearts of both gods and Asuras.[21] This Krishna is that foremost of all persons. Even he, endued with the complexion of the clouds is that four-handed Vāsudeva. Through affection he has attached himself to the Pāndavas, and you also, ye sons of Pāndu, have attached yourselves to him.[22] Achievements, Prosperity, Intelligence, and the path that leads to Heaven, are all there where this one, *viz.*, the illustrious Vishnu of three steps, is.[23] He is the three and thirty gods with Indra at their head. There is no doubt in this. He is the one Ancient God. He is the foremost of all gods. He is the refuge of all creatures.[24] He is without beginning and without destruction. He is unmanifest. He is the high-souled slayer of Madhu. Endued with mighty energy, he has taken birth (among men) for accomplishing the purposes of the gods.[25] Verily, this Mādhava is the expounder of the most difficult truths relating to Profit or Wealth, and he is also their achiever. O son of Prithā, the victory thou hast obtained over thy enemies, thy unrivalled achievements,[26] the dominion thou hast acquired over the whole Earth, are all due to thy side having been taken up by Nārāyana.[27] The fact of thy having got the inconcievable Nārāyana for thy protector and refuge, enabled thee to become an Adharyyu (chief sacrificer) for pouring multitudes of kings as libations on the blazing fire of battle. This Krishna was thy great sacrificial ladle resembling the all-destroying fire that appears at the end of the Yuga.[28] Duryodhana, with his sons, brothers, and kinsmen, was much to be pitied inasmuch as, moved by wrath, he made war with Hari and the wielder of Gāndiva.[29] Many sons of Diti, many foremost of Dānavas, of huge bodies and vast strength, have perished in the fire of Krishna's discus like insects in a forest conflagration.[30] How incapable then must human beings be of battling against that Krishna,—human beings who, O tiger among men, are destitute of strength and might![31] As regards Jaya,

he is a mighty Yogin resembling the all-destroying Yuga-fire in energy. Capable of drawing the bow equally with both hands, he is always in the van of fight. With his energy, O king, he has slain all the troops of Suyodhana.[32] Listen to me as I tell thee what Mahādeva having the bovine bull for the device on his standard had recited unto the ascetics on the breast of Himavat. His utterances constitute a Purāna.[33] The advancement or greatness, energy, strength, prowess, puissance, humility, and lineage that are in Arjuna can come up to only a third part of the measure in which those attributes reside in Krishna.[34] Who is there that can transcend Krishna in these attributes? Whether that is possible or not, listen (and judge). There where the illustrious Krishna is, there is unrivalled Excellence.*[35] As regards ourselves, we are persons of little understanding. Dependent upon the will of others, we are exceedingly unfortunate. Knowingly we betook ourselves to the eternal path of death.[36] Thou, however, art devoted to sincerity of conduct. Having formerly pledged thyself against taking thy kingdom, thou didst not take it, desirous of maintaining thy pledge.†[37] O king, thou makest too much of the slaughter of thy kinsmen and friends in battle (brought about, as thou believest, by thyself). Thou shouldst remember, however, O chastiser of foes, that it is not right to violate a pledge.‡[38] All those who have fallen on the field of battle have really been slain by Time. Verily, all of us have been slain by Time. Time is, indeed, all powerful.[39] Thou art fully conversant with the puissance of Time. Afflicted by Time, it does not behoove thee to grieve. Know that Krishna himself, otherwise called Hari, is that Time with blood-red eyes and with club in hand.[40] For these reasons, O son of Kunti, it does not behoove thee to grieve for thy (slain) kinsfolk. Be thou always free, O delighter of the Kurus, from

---

* The word 'Pushti' literally signifies growth or advancement. Hence, it stands generally for excellence or greatness.—T.

† The correct reading is not 'pratiçrayam' but 'pratiçravam' which means promise or pledge.—T.

‡ The pledge, probably, refers to the oaths taken by Bhima and others about the slaughter of the Pāndavas.—T.

grief.[41] Thou hast heard the glory and greatness of Mādhava as recited by me. That is sufficient for enabling a good man to understand him.[42] Having heard the words of Vyāsa as also of Nārada endued with great intelligence, I have discoursed to thee on the adorableness of Krishna. I have myself added, from my own knowledge, something to that discourse.[43] Verily, I have discoursed also on the surpassing puissance of Krishna as recited by Mahādeva unto that conclave of Rishis (on the breast of Himavat). The discourse too between Maheçwara and the daughter of Himavat, O Bhārata, has been recited by me to thee.[44] He who will bear in mind that discourse when emanating from a foremost person, he who will listen to it, and he who will recite it (for other people's hearing), is sure to win what is highly beneficial.[45] That man will find all his wishes gratified. Departing from this world he will ascend to Heaven. There is no doubt in this.[46] That man who desires to obtain what is beneficial for himself, should devote himself to Janārddana.[47] O king of the Kurus, it behooves thee also to always bear in mind those incidents of duty and righteousness which were declared by Maheçwara.[48] If thou conduct thyself according to those precepts, if thou bear the rod of chastisement rightly, if thou protect thy subjects properly, thou mayst be sure of attaining to Heaven.[49] It behooves thee, O king, to protect thy subjects always according to the dictates of righteousness. The stout rod of chastisement which the king bears has been said to be the embodiment of his righteousness or merit.*[50] Hearing this discourse, fraught with righteousness, between Cankara and Umā, that I have recited in the presence of this righteous conclave, one should worship with reverence that god having the bovine bull for the device on his banner.[51] One that becomes even desirous of listening to that discourse should worship Mahādeva with

* The sense is this: the king acquires great merit by wielding the rod of chastisment properly, *i. e.*, by punishing those that deserve punishment. The infliction of punishment is what keeps the subjects within the restraints of duty. The rod of chastisement, therefore, is the very embodiment of the righteousness or merit of the king.—T.

reverence. Verily, the person that wishes to obtain what is beneficial for him, should adore Mahādeva with a pure heart.[52] Even this is the command of the faultless and high-souled Nārada. Even he has commanded such worship of the great god. O son of Pāndu, do thou obey that command of Nārada.[53] O puissant king, even these are the wonderful incidents that occurred on the sacred breast of Himavat respecting Vāsudeva and Sthānu, O son of Kunti. Those occurrences flowed from the very nature of those high-souled deities.[54] Vāsudeva, accompanied by the wielder of Gāndiva, practised eternal penances in the retreat of Vadari for ten thousand years.*[55] Verily, Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya, both of eyes like lotus petals, underwent severe austerities for the duration of three whole Yugas. I have learnt this from Nārada and Vyāsa, O king.[56] The lotus-eyed and mighty-armed Vāsudeva, while yet a child (in human form) achieved the great feat of slaying Kansa for the relief of his kinsmen.[57] I do not venture, O son of Kunti, to enumerate the feats of this Ancient and Eternal Being, O Yudhishthira.[58] Without doubt, O son, high and great benefits will be reaped by thee who ownest that foremost of all persons, *viz.*, Vāsudeva, for thy friend.[59] I grieve for the wicked Duryodhana in respect of even the next world to which he has gone. It was for him that the whole Earth has been depopulated with her steeds and elephants.[60] Indeed, through the fault of Duryodhana, of Karna, of Cakuni, and of Dusçāsana numbering the fourth, that the Kurus have perished.' "[61]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"While that foremost of men, *viz.*, the son of Gangā, addressed him in this strain, the Kuru king (Yudhishthira) remained entirely silent in the midst of those high-souled persons (who had assembled together for listening to the discourses of Bhishma).[62] All the kings with Dhritarāshtra amongst them became filled with wonder upon hearing the words of the Kuru grandsire. In their minds they worshipped Krishna and then turned towards him with hands joined in reverence.[63] The Rishis also with Nārada at their head, accepted and applauded the words of Bhishma and approved of them joyfully.[64] These were the wonderful dis-

courses recited by Bhishma which Pāndu's son (Yudhishthira) with all his brothers heard with joy.[65] Sometime after, when king Yudhishthira saw that Gangā's son who had given away abundant wealth as presents unto the Brāhmanas in the sacrifices performed by him, had rested and become refreshed, the intelligent king once more asked him as follows."[66]

SECTION CXLIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having heard all the duties in their entirety and all those sacred acts and objects that cleanse human beings of their sins, Yudhishthira once more addressed the son of Cāntanu in the following words.[1]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Who may be said to be the one god in the world? Who may be said to be the one object which is our sole refuge? Who is he by worshipping whom or hymning whose praises human beings would get what is beneficial?[2] What religion is that which, according to thy judgment, is the foremost of all religions? What are those Mantras by reciting which a living creature becomes freed from the bonds of birth and life?—'[3]

"Bhishma said,—One should always, with alacrity and throwing away all langour, hymn the praises of that Lord of the universe, that god of gods, (*viz.*, Vāsudeva), who is Infinite and the foremost of all Beings, by uttering his thousand names.[4] By always worshipping with reverence and devotion that immutable Being, by meditating on him, by hymning his praises, and bowing the head unto him, and by performing sacrifices unto him,[5] indeed, by always praising Vishnu, who is without beginning and without end or destruction, who is the supreme Lord of all the worlds, and who is the Master and Controller of the universe, one can succeed in transcending all sorrow.[6] Verily, He is devoted to the Brāhmanas, conversant with all duties and practices, the enhancer of the fame and achievements of all persons, the master of all the worlds,

---

* Vāsudeva is Nārāyana, and Arjuna is Nara. Nara and Nārāyana had practised severe penances at Vadari on the breast of Himavat for many thousand years. Vyāsa afterwards adopted Vadari as his retreat.—T.

exceedingly wonderful, and the prime cause of the origin of all creatures.[7] Even this, in my judgment, is the foremost religion of all religions, *viz.*, one should always worship and hymn the praises of the lotus-eyed Vāsudeva with devotion.[8] He is the highest Energy. He is the highest Penance. He is the highest Brahma. He is the highest refuge.[9] He is the most holy of all holies, the most auspicious of all auspicious objects. He is the god of all the gods, and He is the immutable father of all creatures.[10] On the advent of the primitive Yuga, all creatures spring from him. On the expiration, again of the Yuga, all things disappear in him.*[11] Hear, O king, the thousand names, possessed of great efficacy in destroying sins, of that foremost one in all the worlds, that Master of the universe, *viz.*, Vishnu.[12] All those names, derived from His attributes, secret and well-known, of the high-souled Vāsudeva, which were sung by the Rishis, I shall recite to thee for the good of all.[13] They are, Om! He that enters all things besides Himself, He that covers all things, He unto whom sacrificial libations are poured, the Lord of the Past, the Present, and the Future, the Creator (or Destroyer) of all existent things, the upholder of all existent things, the Existent, the Soul of all things, the Originator of all things (I—IX);[14] of cleansed Soul, the Supreme Soul, the highest Refuge of all emancipated persons, the Immutable, He that lies enclosed in a case, the Witness, He that knows the material case in which He resides, the Indestructible (X—XVII);†[15] He upon whom the mind rests during Yoga-

* The Hindu sages never attempt to speculate on the original creation of the universe. Their speculations, however, are concerned with what is called 'Avāntarā srishti' or that creation which springs forth with the awakening of Brahman. Creation and Destruction have occurred ceaselessly and will occur ceaselessly. The original creation is impossible to conceive, as Eternity cannot have a beginning.—T.

† 'Putātman' means, of cleansed Soul. This implies that though He is the Lord or ruler of all existent objects, yet He is dissociated from them. 'The Refuge of the Emancipated,'—Comp. *Gitā*, 'Māmupetya tu Kaunteya punarjanma na vidyate, &c.' 'Purusha' is He that lies in a 'pura' or the nine-doored mansion, *i. e.*, the body. 'Sākshi' or Witness implies that He sees all things directly, without any medium obstructing His vision. 'Kshetrajna' implies the Chit lying within the body and

abstraction, the Guide or leader of all persons conversant with Yoga, the Lord of both Pradhāna (or Prakriti) and Purusha, He that assumed a human form with a leonine head, He of handsome features and equipments, He of beautiful hair, the foremost of Purushas (XVIII—XXIV);*[16] the embodiment of all things, the Destroyer of all things, He that transcends the three attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas, the Motionless, the Beginning of all things, the Receptacle into which all things sink at the universal Dissolution, the Immutable, He who takes birth at his own will, He who causes the acts of all living creatures to fructify (in the form of weal or woe), the Upholder of all things, the Source from which the primal elements have sprung, the Puissant one, He in whom is the unbounded Lordship over all things (XXV—XXXVII);†[17] the Self-born, He that gives happiness to His worshippers, the presiding Genius (of golden form) in the midst of the Solar disc, the Lotus-eyed, the Loud-voiced, He that is without beginning and without end, He that upholds the universe (in the from of Ananta and others), He that ordains all acts and their fruits, He that is superior to the Grandsire Brahman (XXXVIII—XLVI);‡[18] the

---

who knows the body; the body, however, being inert, is not cognisant of the Chit it holds.—T.

* He is called 'Yoga' because of the mind resting upon Him while it is in Yoga abstraction. 'Pradhāna,' in Sānkhya philosophy, is another name of 'Prakriti' or original Nature. All things have sprung from the union of Prākriti and Purusha. Vāsudeva, however, transcends Prakriti and Purusha and is their Lord. 'Nārasinghavapu,'—He assumed the human form with a lion's head for slaying the Asura Hiranyakaçipu the father of Prahlāda.—T.

† 'Sarva' implies the source of all existent and non-existent things and that in which all existent and non-existent things become merged at the universal dissolution. 'Sambhava' signifies Him who takes birth at His own will. Acts cannot touch him. The birth of all other beings is determined by their acts in previous lives. Comp. *Gitā*, 'Paritrānāya Sādhunām &c. Sambhavāmi Yuge Yuge.' 'Bhāvana' means one who attaches to acts their respective fruits, *i. e.*, he in consequence of whom the weal and woe of all creatures flow as due to acts.—T.

‡ 'Sambhu' implies one whose birth has not been determined by extraneous circumstances, or other influences than his own wish, the birth of all other creatures being determined by forces extraneous to them.

Immeasurable, the Lord of the senses (or He that has curled locks), He from whose navel the primeval lotus sprang, the Lord of all the deities, the Artificer of the universe, the Mantra, He that weakens or emaciates all things. He that is vast, the Ancient one, He that is enduring (XLVII—LVI);*[19] He that is incapable of being seized (by either the senses or the mind), the Eternal one, Krishna, the Red-eyed, He that kills all creatures at the time of the universal dissolution, He that is vast for knowledge and puissance and other attributes of the kind, He that resides in three parts (above, middle, and below) of every creature, That which cleanses, is auspicious, and high (LVII—LXIV);†[20]

---

selves. 'Aditya' may also mean the foremost one among the deities especially called the Adityas. They are twelve in number. 'Dhātri' may also imply one who upholds everything in the universe by multiplying Himself infinitely. 'Dhāturuttama' may, besides, signify one who as Chit is superior to all elements like Earth, Water, &c., which constitute all that is Not Chit.—T.

* 'Aprameya' is, literally, immeasurable. Cankara thus explains it: He has no such attributes as sound, &c.; in consequence of this He is not an object of direct perception by the senses; nor can He be an object of inference, in consequence of there being nothing to which belong the same attributes as His; &c. His inconceivability is the foundation of His immeasurableness. 'Hrishikeça' is regarded by European scholars as a doubtful word. The Hindu Commentators do not regard it so. It implies the lord of the senses, *i. e.*, one who has his senses under complete control. Or, it may mean one who sways the senses of others, *i. e.* causes them to exercise their functions. Cankara proposes another meaning, *viz.*, He that is of the form of the Sun or the Moon, and as such, the rays of light emanating from those luminaries and gladdening all creatures, are the hair on his head. 'Manu' is another name for Mantra or sacred words having great efficacy.—T.

† 'Krishna' is one of the foremost names of the supreme Godhead. It means 'one who is always in transports of joy.' It is derived from *krish* which implies to be, and *na* meaning final Emancipation or cessation of existence; the compound probably means one in whom every attribute has been extinguished; hence, absence of change, of sorrow, of grief, &c., or, eternal and highest joy. 'Lohitāksha' is Red-eyed, from His eyes being of the hue of polished copper. 'Pratarddana,' according to Cankara, means the killer of all creatures Others take it as implying one who destroys the cheerlessness of his worshippers. 'Prabhuta' is one hw Great or Vast in consequence of knowledge, Puissance, Energy,

He that urges all creatures in respect of all their acts, He that causes the life-breaths to act, He that causes all living creatures to live, the Eldest, the Foremost of all those that are regarded as the Lords of all creatures, He that has gold in his abdomen, He that has the Earth for his abdomen, the Lord of Cree or Lakshmi, the Slayer of Madhu (LXV—LXXIII);*[21] the Omnipotent, He that is endued with great prowess, He that is armed with the bow, He that is possessed of a mind capable of bearing the contents of all treatises, He that roves through the universe, riding on Garuda, He that is well suited to the offerrings made unto him and that has the power to enjoy them properly, the Unrivalled, He that is incapable of being discomfited, He that knows all acts that are done, He that is identical with all acts, He that rests on His own true self (LXXIV—LXXXIV);†[22] the Lord of all the deities, He that is the Refuge of all, the embodiment of the highest felicity, He whose seed is the universe, He that is the source of all things, the Day (in consequence of His awakening Jiva who is steeped in the sleep of Ne-science), the Year, the Snake (owing to His being incapable of being seized), the embodiment of Conviction, He that sees all things (LXXXV—XCIV);‡[23] the Unborn, the Lord of all creatures, He that has

---

and Renunciation, &c.; 'Pavitram, Mangalam, Param' should be taken as one name, although each of them has a separate meaning.—T.

* 'Prānada' is interpreted variously. It may mean He that causes the life breaths to act or operate; He that, as Time, suspends the life-breaths (*i. e.*, kills all creatures); He that connects the life-breaths (*i. e.*, sets them agoing when threatened with extinction; hence, healer of diseases). 'Prāna' implies 'He who is the cause of the life of every living creature, being Himself, as it were, the life-breath that inspires them. 'Hiranygarbha' signifies He that is identical with the Grandsire. 'Bhugarbha' is one who has the Earth for his abdomen, implying that all things on Earth are in His abdomen.—T.

† 'Atmavān,' other Beings are said to be 'Cariravān,' 'Indriyavān,' &c, in consequence of the possession of such attributes as 'Carira,' 'Indriya,' &c. But the Supreme Godhead is nothing but Soul. He rests on his own true nature or essence without requiring anything extraneous like the deities or human beings whereon to live or exist.—T.

‡ 'Aha' is the day; He is so called because of Jiva being, as it were, awakened when he goes to Him. As long as Jiva is at a distance from

achieved success, He that is Success itself, He that is the beginning of all things (in consequence of His being the cause of all things), He that is above deterioration, He that is Righteousness in the form of the bovine bull and the great boar that raised the submerged Earth, He that is of immeasurable soul, He that stands aloof from all kinds of union (XCV—CIII);*[24] He that is Pāvaka among the deities called Vasus (or, He that dwells in His worshippers), He that is of liberal soul, being freed from wrath and hatred and pride and other evil passions, Truth He is whose soul is equable in consequence of His thorough impartiality, He that has been measured by His worshippers, He that is always equal, being above all change or modification, He that never refuses to grant the wishes of His worshippers, He whose eyes are like the petals of the lotus, He whose acts are always characterised by Righteousness, (or He who is always engaged in granting the wishes of those that are devoted to Him, He that is of the form of Righteousness (CIV—CXIII);[25] He that destroys all creatures (or their pains), the Many-headed, He that upholds the universe, He that is the source of the universe, He who is of pure or spotless fame, the Immortal one, He that is Eternal and Fixed, He that is possessed of beautiful limbs, (or, He the ascension unto whom is the best of all acts), He who has such knowledge having penance for its indication that He is able to agitate Prakriti for evolving the universe out of her (CXIV—CXXII);[26] He that goes everywhere (in the sense of pervading all things as their cause), the Omniscient one, He that blazes forth in unmodified effulgence, He whose troops are everywhere (in the form of devoted associates), (or He at whose very sight the Dānava troops are scattered in all directions), He that is coveted (or sought) by all (or, He that grinds all His foes), He that is the Veda, He

---

Him, he is steeped in the sleep of 'Avidyā' or Ne-science (a happy word which Professor Max Muller has coined). 'Samvatsara' or the year. He is so called because Time is His essence. 'Vyāla,'—He is a huge and fierce snake that inspires dread.—T.

† 'Vrishākapi' is otherwise explained by Vala deva Vidyābhusan, as He that showers blessings upon His worshippers and causes all His foes to tremble with fear.—T.

that is conversant with the Veda, He that is conversant with all the limbs (or branches) of the Veda, He that represents the limbs (or branches) of the Veda (*i. e.*, all the subsidiary sciences), He that settles the interpretations of the Vedas, He that has no superior in wisdom (CXXIII—CXXXIII);[27] He that is the master of all the worlds, He that is the master of the deities, He that is the Supervisor of both Righteousness and Unrighteousness (for giving the fruits thereof to those that seek the one or the other), He that is both Effect and Cause (or, He whose life has not been determined by acts achieved on any previous occasion in consequence of His transcending Prakriti), He that is four-souled (in consequence of His four forms of Aniruddha, Pradyumna, Sankarshana, and Vāsudeva), He that is known by four forms (as above), He that has four horns (which appeared on Him when he had assumed a human form with a lion's head for slaying the Asura chief Hiranya-Kaçipu), He that has four arms (for holding the conch, discus, mace, and lotus) (CXXXIV—CXLI);[28] He that blazes forth in effulgence, He that is the giver of food and cherishes those that are good; He that does not bear or put up with those that are wicked (or, He that puts up with the occasional transgressions of his devotees; He that existed before the universe started into life; He that is stainless; He that is ever victorious; He that vanquishes the very deities; He that is the material cause of the universe; He that repeatedly resides in material causes (CXLII—CL);[29] He that is the younger brother of Indra (or, He that transcends Indra in accomplishments and attributes), He that took birth as a dwarf (from Aditi by her husband Kaçyapa in order to beguile the Asura king Vali of the sovereignty of the three worlds and bestow the same upon Indra who had been dispossessed of it), He that is tall (in allusion to the vast universal form of His which He assumed at the sacrifice of Vali for covering Heaven, Earth, and the Nether regions with three steps of His), He whose acts are never futile, He that cleanses (those that worship Him, those that hear of Him, and those that think of Him), He that is endued with pre-eminent energy and strength, He that transcends Indra in all attributes, He that accepts all His worshippers, He that is the

Creation itself in consequence of His being the Causes thereof, He that upholds His self in the same form without being ever subject to birth, growth, or death, He that sustains all creatures in their respective functions in the universe, He that controls the hearts of all creatures (CLI—CLXII);[30] He that deserves to be known by those who wish to achieve what is for their highest good; He that the celestial physician in the form of Dhanwantari (or, He who cures that foremost of all diseases, *viz.*, the bonds that bind one to the world); He that is always engaged in Yoga; He that slays great Asuras for establishing Righteousness; He that is the Lord of that Laksmi who sprang from the ocean when it was churned by the deities and the Asuras, (or, He that cherishes both the goddesses of prosperity and learning); He that is honey (in consequence of the pleasure He gives to those that succeed in having a taste of Him); He that transcends the senses (or is invisible to those that turn away from Him); He that is possessed of great powers of illusion (in consequence of His having beguiled Mahādeva and the deities on many occasions); He that puts forth great energy (in achieving mighty feats); He that transcends all in might (CLXIII—CLXXII);[31] He that transcends all in intelligence; He that transcends all in puissance; He that transcends all in ability; He that discovers the universe by the effulgence emanating from His body; He whose body is incapable of being ascertained by the eye (or any other sense or organ of knowledge); He that is possessed of every beauty; He whose soul is incapable of being comprehended by either deities or men; He that held on His back, in the form of the vast tortoise, the huge mountain, Mandara, which was made the churning staff by the deities and the Asuras when they set themselves to churn the great ocean for obtaining therefrom all the valuables hid in his bosom (or, He who held up the mountains of Govardhana in the woods of Brinda for protecting the denizens of that delightful place, who were especial objects of His kindness, from the wrath of Indra who poured incessant showers for days together with a view to drown everything) (CLXXIII—CLXXX);[32] He that can shoot His shafts to a great distance, piercing through obstructions of

every kind; He that raised the submerged Earth, having assumed the form of the mighty Boar; He on whose bosom dwells the goddess of Prosperity (or, He that is identical with Kāma the lord of Rati); He that is the Refuge of those that are righteous; He that is incapable of being won without thorough devotion (or, He that is incapable of being immured or restrained by any one putting forth his powers); He that is the delight of the deities (or, He that is the embodiment of fullness of joy); He that rescued the submerged Earth (or, He that understands the hymns addressed to Him by His devotees); He that is the Master of all eloquent persons (or, He that dispels the calamities of all those who know Him) (CLXXXI—CLXXXVIII);[33] He that is full of blazing effulgence; He that suppressed the afflictions of His adorers (or, He that assumes the form of Yama, the universal Destroyer, for chastissing all persons that fall away from their duties); He that assumed the form of a Swan for communicating the Vedas to the Grandsire Brahman (or, He that enters into the bodies of all persons); He that has Garuda, the prince of the feathery denizens of the welkin, for his vehicle; He that is the foremost of snakes in consequence of His identy with Cesha or Ananta who upholds on his head the vast Earth, (or, He that has the hood of the prince of snakes for His bed while he lies down to sleep on the vast expansion of water after the dissolution of the universe); He whose navel is as beautiful as gold; He that underwent the severest austerities in the form of Nārāyana at Vadari on the breast of Himavat; He whose navel resembles a lotus (or, He from whose navel sprang the primeval lotus in which the Grandsire Brahman was born); He that is the Lord of all creatures (CLXXXIX—CXCVII);[34] He that transcends death (or, He that wards off Death from those that are devoted to Him); He that always casts a kind eye on His worshippers (or, He that sees all things in the universe); He that destroys all things (or, He that drenches with nectar all those that worship Him with single-minded devotion); He that is the Ordainer of all ordainers (or, He that unites all persons with the consequences of their acts); He that Himself enjoys and endures the fruits of all acts, (or,

He that assumed the form of Rāma the son of Daçaratha and going into exile at the command of his sire made a treaty with Sugriva the chief of the Apes for aiding him in the recovery of his kingdom from the grasp of his elder brother Vāli in return for the assistance which Sugriva promised Him for recovering from Rāvana His wife Sitā who had been ravished by that Rākshasa and borne away to his island home in Lankā); He that is always of the same form (or, He that is exceedingly affectionate unto His worshippers); He that is always moving (or, He that is of the form of Kāma who springs up in the heart of every creature); He that is incapable of being endured by Dānavas and Asuras (or, He that rescued His wife Sitā after slaying Rāvana, or, He that shows compassion towards even Chandālas and members of other low castes when they approach Him with devotion, in allusion to His friendship, in the form of Rāma, for Guhaka the chief of the Chandālas inhabiting the country known by the name of Cringaverapura); He that chastises the wicked (or, He that regulates the conduct of all persons by the dictates of the Crutis and the Smritis); He whose soul has true knowledge for its indication (or, He that destroyed Rāvana the foe of the gods, having assumed the form of Rāma that was full of compassion and other amiable virtues); He that destroys the foes of the deities (or, He that slays those who obstruct or forbid the giving of presents unto deserving persons) (CXCVIII—CCVIII);[35] He that is the instructor in all sciences and the father of all; He that is the instructor of even the Grandsire Brahman; He that is the abode or resting place of all creatures; He that is the benefactor of those that are good and is free from the stain of falsehood; He whose prowess is incapable of being baffled; He that never casts his eye on such acts as are not sanctioned or approved by the scriptures; He that casts his eye on such acts as are sanctioned or approved by the scriptures (or, He whose eye never winks or sleeps); He that wears the unfading garland of victory called by the name of Vaijayanti; He that is the Lord of speech and that is possessed of great liberality insomuch that He rescued the lowest of the low and the vilest of the vile by granting them His grace

(CCIX—CCXVIII);[36] He that leads persons desirous of Emancipation to the foremost of all conditions, *viz.*, Emancipation itself (or, He that assumes the form of a mighty Fish and scuddling through the vast expanse of waters that cover the Earth when the universal dissolution comes, and dragging the boat tied to His horns, leads Manu and others to safety); He that is the leader of all creatures; (or, He that sports in the vast expanse of waters which overwhelm all things at the universal dissolution); He whose words are the Veda and who rescued the Vedas when they were submerged in the waters at the universal dissolution; He that is the accomplisher of all functions in the universe; He that assumes the form of the wind for making all living creatures act or exert, (or, He whose motions are always beautiful, or, who wishes His creatures to glorify Him); He that is endued with a thousand heads; He that is the Soul of the universe and as such pervades all things; He that has a thousand eyes and a thousand legs; (CCXIX—CCXXVI);[37] He that causes the wheel of the universe to revolve at His will; He whose soul is freed from desire and who transcends those conditions that invest Jiva and to which Jiva is liable; He that is concealed from the view of all persons that are attached to the world, (or, He that has covered the eyes of all persons with the bandage of Nescience); He that grinds those that turn away from Him; He that sets the days agoing, in consequence of His being identical with the Sun; He that is the destroyer of all-destroying Time itself; He that convcys the libations poured on the sacred fire unto those for whom they are intended, (or, He that bears the universe, placing it on only a minute fraction of his body); He that has no beginning (or, He that has no fixed habitation); He that upholds the Earth in space (in the form of Cesha, or, rescues her in the form of the mighty boar or suports her as a subtile pervader) (CCXXVII—CCXXXV);[38] He that is exceedingly inclined to grace, insomuch that He grants happiness to even foes like Ciçupāla; He that has been freed from the attributes of Rajas (passion) and Tamas (darkness) so that He is pure or stainless Sattwa by itself, (or, He that has obtained the fruition of all His wishes);

He that supports the universe; He that feeds (or enjoys) the universe; He that is displayed in infinite puissance); He that honors the deities, the Pitris, and His own worshippers; He that is honored or adored by those that are themselves honored or adored by others (or, He whose acts are all beautiful and enduring); He that accomplishes the purposes of others (or, He that is the benefactor of others); He that withdraws all things unto Himself at the universal dissolution (or, He that destroys the foes of the deities or of His worshippers); He that has the waters for his home (or, He that is the sole Refuge of all creatures, or He that destroys the ignorance of all creatures) (CCXXXVI—CCXLVI);[39] He that is distinguished above all, He that cherishes the righteous, He that cleanses all the worlds, He that crowns with fruition the desires of all creatures, He whose wishes are always crowned with fuition, He that gives success to all, He that bestows success upon those that solicit Him for it (CCXLVII—CCLVI);[40] He that presides over all sacred days (or, He that overwhelms Indra himself with His own excellent attributes), He that showers all objects of desire upon His worshippers, He that walks over all the universe, He that offers the excellent flight of steps constituted by Righteousness (unto those that desire to ascend to the highest place), He that has Righteousness in His abdomen (or, He that protects Indra even as a mother protects the child in her womb), He that aggrandises (His worshippers), He that spreads Himself out for becoming the vast universe, He that is aloof from all things (though pervading them), He that is the receptacle of the ocean of Crutis (CCLVII—CCLXIV);[41] He that is possessed of excellent arms (*i. e.*, arms capable of upholding the universe), He that is incapable of being borne by any creature, He from whom flowed the sounds called Brahma (or Veda), He that is the Lord of all Lords of the universe, He that is the giver of wealth, He that dwells in His own puissance, He that is multiform, He that is of vast form, He that resides in the form of Sacrifice in all animals, He that causes all things to be displayed (CCLXV—CCLXXIV);[42] He that is endued with great might, energy, and splendour; He that displays Himself in visible forms to His worshippers, He that

scorches the unrighteous with his burning energy, He that is enriched with the sixfold attributes (of affluence, &c.), He that imparted the Veda to the Grandsire Brahman, He that is of the form of the Sāmans, Richs, and Yajushes (of the Veda); He that soothes His worshippers burning with the afflictions of the world like the rays of the moon cooling all living creatures of the world, He that is endued with blazing effulgence like the Sun (CCLXXV—CCLXXXII);[43] He from whose mind has sprung the Moon, He that blazes forth in His own effulgence, He that nourishes all creatures even like the luminary marked by the hare, He that is the Master of the deities, He that is the great medicine for the disease of worldly attachment, He that is the great causeway of the universe, He that is endued with knowledge and other attributes that are never futile and with prowess that is incapable of being baffled (CCLXXXIII—CCLXXXIX);[44] He that is solicited by all creatuaes at all times, *viz.*, the Past, the Present, and the Future; He that rescues his worshippers by casting kind glances upon them, He that sanctifies even them that are sacred; He that merges the life-breath in the Soul (or, He that assumes diverse forms for protecting both the Emancipate and the Unemancipate); He that kills the desires of those that are Emancipated (or, He that prevents evil desires from arising in the minds of His worshippers), He that is the sire of Kāma (the principle of desire or lust), He that is most agreeable, He that is desired by all creatures, He that grants the fruition of all desires, He that has the ability to accomplish all acts (CCXC—CCXCIX);[45] He that sets the four Yugas to begin their course; He that causes the Yugas to continually revolve as on a wheel, He that is endued with diverse kinds of illusion (and, therefore, the cause from which spring the different kinds of acts that distinguish the different Yugas); He that is the greatest of eaters (in consequence of His swallowing all things at the end of every Kalpa); He that is incapable of being seized (by those that are not His worshippers); He that is manifest (being exceedingly vast); He that subjugates thousands of foes (of the deities); He that subjugates innumerable foes (CCC—CCCVIII);[46] He that is desired (by even the Grandsire and Rudra; or He

that is adored in sacrifices); He that is distinguished above all; He that is desired by those that are endued with wisdom and Righteousness; He that has an ornament of (peacock's) feathers on his head-gear; He that stupefies all creatures with His illusion; He that showers His grace on all His worshippers; He that kills the wrath of the Righteous; He that fills the Unrighteous with wrath; He that is the accomplisher of all acts; He who holds the universe on his arms; He that upholds the Earth (CCCIX—CCCXVIII);[47] He that transcends the six well known modifications (of inception, birth or appearance, growth, maturity, decline, and dissolution); He that is endued with great celebrity (in consequence of His feats); He that causes all living creatures to live (in consequence of His being the all-pervading soul); He that gives life; the younger brother of Vāsava (in the form of Upendra or the dwarf); He that is the receptacle of all the waters in the universe; He that covers all creatures (in consequence of His being the material cause of everything); He that is never heedless (being always above error); He that is established on His own glory (CCCXIX—CCCXXVII);[48] He that flows in the form of nectar (or, He that dries up all things); He that upholds the path of Righteousness; He that bears the burthen of the universe; He that gives desirable boons unto those that solicit them; He that causes the winds to blow; He that is the son of Vasudeva (or, He that covers the universe with His illusions and sports in the midst of it); He that is endued with extraordinary lustre; He that is the originating cause of the deities; He that pierces all hostile towns (CCCXXVIII—CCCXXXVI);[49] He that transcends all sorrow and grief; He that leads us safely across the ocean of life or the world; He that dispels from the hearts of all His worshippers the fear of rebirth; He that is possessed of infinite courage and prowess; He that is an offspring of Cura's race; He that is the master of all living creatures; He that is inclined to show His grace unto all; He that has come on Earth for a hundred times (for rescuing the good, destroying the wicked, and establishing Righteousness); He that holds a lotus in one of his hands; He whose eyes resemble the petals of the lotus (CCCXXXVII—

CCCXLVI);[50] He from whose navel sprang the primeval lotus (or, He that is seated upon a lotus); He that is endued with eyes resembling the petals of the lotus; He that is adored by even worshippers as one seated within the lotus of his hearts; He that assumes the form of embodied Jiva (through His own illusion); He that is endued with puissance of every kind; He that grows in the form of the five primal elements; the Ancient Soul; He that is endued with vast eyes; He that has Garuda sitting on the standard of His car (CCCXLVII—CCCLV);[51] He that is incomparable; the Carabha (the lion-killing animal); He that strikes the wicked with terror; He that knows everything that has occurred in Time; He that accepts, in the forms of the deities, the butter poured on the sacrificial fire; He that is known by all kinds of evidence or proof; He upon whose breast sits Prosperity always; He that is victorious in every battle (CCCLVI—CCCLXIV);[52] He that is above destruction; He that assumes a red form (or, becomes wrathful unto the enemies of His worshippers); He that is an object of search with the Righteous; He that is at the root of all things; He that has the mark of the string around his abdomen (for Yasodā had bound Him with a cord while He was Krishna); He that bears or forgives all injuries; He that upholds the Earth in the form of her mountains; He that is the foremost of all objects of worship; He that is endued with great speed; He that swallows vast quantities of food (CCCLXV—CCCLXXIV);[53] He that caused the creation to start into life; He that always agitates both Prakriti and Purusha; He that shines with resplendence (or, sports in joy); He that has puissance in his stomach; He that is the Supreme Master of all; He that is the material out of which the universe has been made; He that is the cause or Agent who has made the universe; He that is independent of all things; He that ordains variety in the universe; He that is incapable of being comprehended; He that renders Himself invisible by the screen of illusion (CCCLXXV—CCCLXXXV);[54] He that is Chit divested of all attributes; He on whom all things rest; He in whom all things reside when the universal dissolution comes; He that assigns the foremost place to those that worship Him; He that is durable;

He that is endued with the highest puissance; He that has been glorified in the Vedānta; He that is contented; He that is always full; He whose glance is auspicious (CCCLXXXVI—CCCXCV);[55] He that fills all Yogins with delight; He that is the end of all creatures (for it is in Him that all things merge at the universal dissolution); He that is the faultless Path; He that is, in the form of Jiva, lead to Emancipation; He that leads (Jiva to Emancipation); He that has none to lead Him; He that is endued with great might; He that is the foremost of all Beings possessed of might; He that upholds; He that is the foremost of all Beings conversant with duty and religion (CCCXCVI—CDIV);[56] He that joins, at the time of creation, the disunited elements for forming all objects; He that resides in all bodies; He that causes all creatures to act in the form of Kshetrajna; He that creates all creatures after destroying them at the universal dissolution; He unto whom every one bows with reverence; He that is extended over the entire universe; He that owns the primeval golden egg as His abdomen (whence, as from the female uterus,) everything proceeds; He that destroys the foes of the deities; He that over-spreads all things (being the material cause whence they spring); He that spreads sweet perfumes; He that disregards the pleasures of the senses (CDV—CDXV);[57] He that is identifiable with the seasons; He at whose sight alone all worshippers succeed in obtaining the great object of their wish; He that weakens all creatures; He that dwells in the firmament of the heart, depending upon His own glory and puissance; He that is capable of being known everywhere (in consequence of His omnipresence); He that inspires everyone with dread; He in whom all creatures dwell; He that is clever in accomplishing all acts; He that constitutes the Rest of all creatures (being, as He is, the embodiment of Emancipation); He that is endued with competence greater than that of other Beings (CDXVI—CDXXV);[58] He in whom the whole universe is spread out; He that is himself immobile and in whom all things rest for ever; He that is an object of proof; He that is the indestructible and unchanging seed; He that is sought by all (in consequence of His being happiness); He that has no

desire (in consequence of all His desires having been gratified); He that is the great case (which covers the universe); He that has all sorts of things to enjoy; He that has great wealth wherewith to secure all objects of desire) (CDXXVI—CDXXXIV);[59] He that is above despair; He that exists in the form of Renunciation; He that is without birth; He that is the stake unto which Righteousness is tethered; He that is the great embodiment of sacrifice; He is the nave of the starry wheel that revolves in the firmament;* He that is the Moon among the constellations; He that is competent to achieve every feat; He that stays in His own soul when all things disappear; He that cherishes the desire for Creation (CDXXXV—CDXLIV);[60] He that is the embodiment of all sacrifices; He that is adored in all sacrifices and religious rites; He that is the most adorable of all the deities present in the sacrifices that men perform; He that is the embodiment of all such sacrifices in which animals are offered up according to the ordinance; He that is adored by persons before they take any food;† He that is the Refuge of those that seek Emancipation; He that beholds the acts and omissions of all creatures; He whose soul transcends all attributes; He that is possessed of omniscience; He that is identical with knowledge that is unacquired, unlimited, and capable of accomplishing everything (CDXLV—CDLIV);[61] He that is observant of excellent vows (chief amongst which is the grant of favour unto one that solicits it with a pure heart); He that has a face always full of delight; He that is exceedingly subtile; He that utters the most agreeable sounds (in the form of the Veda or as Krishna playing on the lute); He that gives happiness (to all His worshippers); He that does good to others without expecting any return; He that fills all creatures with delight; He that has subdued wrath; He that has mighty arms, (so mighty that He has slain as if in sport the mightiest

---

* Vishnu is supposed to be within the constellation called Ciçumāra or the Northern Bear. The stars, without changing their places *per se*, seem to revolve round this point within the constellation named.—T.

† In India, no man can worship the deities, with a full stomach. Indeed, one must abstain from every kind of food and drink if one has to worship the deities formally.—T.

of Asuras) ; He that tears those that are unrighteous (CDLV—CDLXIV);[62] He that causes those persons who are destitute of knowledge of the soul to be steeped in the deep sleep of His illusion ; He that relies on Himself, (being entirely independent of all persons and things) ; He that overspreads the entire universe ; He that exists in infinite forms ; He that is engaged in vocations infinite in number ; He that lives in everything ; He that is full of affection towards all His worshippers ; He that is the universal father, (all living creatures of the universe being as calves sprung from Him) ; He that holds, in the form of the vast Ocean, all jewels and gems in His abdomen ; He that is the Lord of all treasures (CDLXV—CDLXXIV);[63] He that is the protector of Righteousness ; He that accomplishes all the duties of Righteousness ; He that is the substratum of Righteousness ; He that is existent for all time ; He that is non-existent (in the form of the universe, for the displayed universe is the result of illusion) ; He that is destructible (in the form of the displayed universe) ; He that is indestructible as Chit ; He that is, in the form of Jiva, destitute of true knowledge ; He that is, in the form of the Sun, endued with a thousand rays ; He that ordains (even all such great and mighty creatures as Cesha and Garuda, &c.) ; He that has created all the Cāstras (CDLXXV—CDLXXXV);[64] He that exists, in the form of the Sun, as the centre of innumerable rays of light ; He that dwells in all creatures ; He that is possessed of great prowess ; He that is the Master of even Yama and others of similar puissance ; He that is the oldest of the deities, (existing as He does from the beginning) ; He that exists in His own glory, casting off all conditions ; He that is the Lord of even all the deities ; He that is the ruler of even him that upholds the deities (*viz.*, Indra) (CDLXXXVI—CDXCIII);[65] He that transcends birth and destruction ; He that tended and protected kine (in the form of Krishna) ; He that nourishes all creatures, He that is approachable by knowledge alone ; He that is Ancient ; He that upholds the elements which constitute the body ; He that enjoys and endures (weal and woe, in the form of Jiva) ; He that assumed the form of a vast Boar (or, He that in the form of Rāma was the Lord of a large monkey

host); He that gave plentiful presents unto all in a grand sacrifice performed by Him (CDXCIV—DII);[66] He that drinks Soma in every sacrifice; He that drinks nectar; He that, in the form of Soma (Chandramas), nourishes all the herbs and plants; He that conquers foes in a trice when even they are infinite in number; He that is of universal form and is the foremost of all existent entities; He that is the chastiser; He that is victorious over all; He whose purposes are incapable of being baffled; He that deserves gifts; He that gives what His creatures have not and who protects what they have (DIII—DXII);[67] He that holds the life-breaths; He that beholds all His creatures as objects of direct vision; He that never beholds anything besides His own Self; He that gives Emancipation; He whose footsteps (three in number) covered Heaven, Earth, and the Nether regions; He who is the receptacle of all the waters; He that overwhelms all Space, all Time, and all things; He that lies on the vast expanse of waters after the universal dissolution; He that causes the destruction of all things (DXIII—DXXI);[68] He that is without birth; He that is exceedingly adorable; He that appears in His own nature; He that has conquered all foes (in the form of wrath and other evil passions); He that delights those that meditate on Him; He that is joy; He that fills others with delight; He that swells with all causes of delight; He that has Truth and other virtues for His indications; He whose footsteps are in the three worlds (DXXII—DXXX);[69] He that is the first of Rishis (being conversant with the entire Vedas); He that is identical with the preceptor Kapila; He that is knower of the universe; He that is Master of the Earth; He that has three feet; He that is the guardian of the deities; He that has large horns (in allusion to the piscatory form in which He saved Manu on the occasion of the universal deluge by scudding through the waters with Manu's boat tied to His horns); He that exhausts all acts by causing their doers to enjoy or endure their fruits (or, He that grinds the Destroyer himself) (DXXXI—DXXXVIII);[70] the great Boar; He that is understood or apprehended by the aid of the Vedânta; He that has beautiful troops (in the form of His worshippers); He that is adorned with

golden armlets; He that is concealed (being knowable with the aid of the Upanishads only); He that is deep (in knowledge and puissance); He that is difficult of access; He that transcends both word and thought; He that is armed with the discus and the mace (DXXXIX—DXLVII);[71] the Ordainer; He that is the cause (in the form of helper) of the universe; He that has never been vanquished; He that is the Island-born Krishna; He that is enduring (in consequence of His transcending decay); He that mows all things and is Himself above deterioration; the Varuna (the deity of the waters); the son of Varuna (in the form of Vaçishtha or Agastya); He that is immovable as a tree; He that is displayed in His own true form in the lotus of the heart; He that creates, preserves, and destroys by only a fiat of the mind (DXLVIII—DLVIII);[72] He that is possessed of the sixfold attributes (of sovereignty &c.); He that destroys the sixfold attributes (at the universal dissolution); He that is felicity (in consequence of His swelling with all kinds of prosperity); He that is adorned with the triumphal garland (called Vaijayanta); He that is armed with the plough (in allusion to His incarnation as Valadeva); He that took birth from the womb of Aditi (in the form of the dwarf that beguiled Vali); He that is endued with effulgence like unto the Sun's; He that endures all pairs of opposites (such as heat and cold, pleasure and pain, &c.); He that is the foremost Refuge of all things (DLIX—DLXVII);[73] He that is armed with the best of bows (called Cārnga); He that was divested of His battle-axe (by Rāma of Bhrigu's race);* He that is fierce; He that is the giver of all objects of desire; He that is so tall as to touch the very Heavens with his head (in allusion to the form He assumed at Vali's sacrifice); He whose vision extends over the entire universe; He that is Vyāsa (who distributed the Vedas); He that is the Master of

* Rāma of Bhrigu's race went to Mahādeva for acquiring the science of arms. While dwelling in Çiva's retreat, he had a quarrel with Kārtikeya or Kumāra, the son of Çiva's loins. Rāma worsted his preceptor's son in battle, at which his preceptor, gratified with him, made him a present of his own battle-axe, wherewith the regenerate hero exterminated the Kshatriyas for full one and twenty times.—T.

speech or all learning; He that has started into existence without the intervention of genital organs (DLXVIII—DLXXVI);[74] He that is hymned with the three (foremost) Sāmans; He that the singer of the Sāmans; He that is the Sāmans; He that is the Extinction of all worldly attachments (in consequence of His being the embodiment of Renunciation); He that is the Medicine (applied for amelioration of disease); He that is the Physician (who applies the medicine); He that has ordained the fourth or last mode of life called Renunciation (for enabling His creatures to attain to Emancipation); He that causes the passions of His worshippers to be quieted (with a view to give them tranquillity of soul); He that is contented (in consequence of His utter dissociation with all worldly objects); He that is the Refuge of devotion and tranquillity of Soul (DLXXVII—DLXXXV);[75] He that is possessed of beautiful limbs; He that is the giver of tranquillity of soul; He that is Creator; He that sports in joy on the bosom of the Earth; He that sleeps (in Yoga) lying on the body of the prince of snakes, Cesha, after the universal dissolution; the Benefactor of kine (or, He that took a human form for relieving the Earth of the weight of her population); the Master of the universe; the Protector of the universe; He that is endued with eyes like those of the bull; He that cherishes Righteousness with love (DLXXXVI—DXCV);[76] He that is the unreturning hero; He whose soul has been withdrawn from all attachments; He that reduces to a subtile form the universe at the time of the universal dissolution; He that does good to His afflicted worshippers; He whose name, as soon as heard, cleanses the hearer of all his sins; He who has the auspicious whirl on His breast; He in whom dwells the goddess of Prosperity for ever; He who was chosen by Lakshmi (the goddess of Prosperity) as her Lord; He that is the foremost one of all Beings endued with prosperity (DXCVI—DCIV);[77] He that gives prosperity unto His worshippers; the Master of prosperity; He that always lives with those that are endued with prosperity; He that is the receptacle of all kinds of prosperity; He that gives prosperity unto all persons of righteous acts according to the measure of their righteousness; He that

holds the goddess of Prosperity on his bosom; He that bestows prosperity upon those that hear of, praise, and meditate on Him; He that is the embodiment of that condition which represents the attainment of unattainable happiness; He that is possessed of every kind of beauty; He that is the Refuge of the three worlds (DCV—DCXIV);[78] He that is possessed of beautiful eyes; He that is possessed of beautiful limbs; He that is poesessed of a hundred sources of delight; He that represents the highest delight; He that is the Master of all the luminaries in the firmament (for it is He that maintains them in their places and orbits); He that has subjugated His soul; He whose soul is not swayed by any superior Being; He that is always of beautiful acts; He whose doubts have all been dispelled (for He is said to behold the whole universe as an Amlaka in His palm (DCXV—DCXXIII);[79] He that transcends all creatures; He whose vision extends in all directions; He that has no Master; He that at all times transcends all changes; He that (in the form of Rāma) had to lie down on the bare ground; He that adorns the Earth (by His incarnations); He that is puissance's self; He that transcends all grief; He that dispels the griefs of all His worshippers as soon as they remember Him (DCXXIV—DCXXXII);[80] He that is possessed of effulgence; He that is worshipped by all; He that is the water-pot (as all things reside within Him); He that is of pure soul; He that cleanses all as soon as they hear of Him; He that is free and unrestrained; He whose car never turns away from battles; He that is possessed of great wealth; He whose prowess is incapable of being measured (DCXXXIII—DCXLI);[81] He that is the slayer of the Asura named Kālanemi; He that is the Hero; He that has taken birth in the race of Cura; He that is the Lord of all the deities; the Soul of the three worlds; the Master of the three worlds; He that has the solar and lunar rays for His hair; the slayer of Keçi; He that destroys all things (at the universal dissolution) (DCXLII—DCL);[82] the deity from whom the fruition of all desires is sought; He that grants the wishes of all; He that has desires; He that has a handsome form; He that is endued with thorough knowledge of Crutis and Smritis; He that is possessed of a form that is indescribable

by attributes; He whose brightest rays overwhelm Heaven; He that has no end; He that (in the form of Arjuna or Nara) acquired vast wealth on the occasion of his campaign of conquest (DCLI—DCLX);[83] He who is the foremost object of silent recitations, of sacrifices, of the Vedas, and of all religious acts; He that is the creator of penances and the like; He that is of the form of (the Grandsire) Brahman; He that is the augmentor of penances; He that is conversant with Brahma; He that is of the form of Brāhmana; He that has for His limbs Him that is called Brahma; He that knows all the Vedas and everything in the universe; He that is always fond of Brāhmanas and of whom the Brāhmans also are fond (DCLXI—DCLXX);[84] He whose footsteps cover vast areas; He whose feats are mighty; He who is possessed of vast energy; He that is identical with Vāsuki the king of the snakes; He that is the foremost of all sacrifices; He that is the foremost of all sacrificers; He that is Yapa, that first of sacrifices; He that is the foremost of all offerings made in sacrifices (DCLXXI—DCLXXVIII);*[85] He that is hymned by all; He that loves to be hymned (by his worshippers); He that is Himself the hymns uttered by His worshippers; He that is the very act of hymning; He that is the person that hymns; He that is fond of battling (with everything that is evil); He that is full in every respect; He that fills others with every kind of affluence; He that destroys all sins as soon as He is remembered; He whose acts are all righteous; He that transcends all kinds of disease (DCLXXIX—DCLXXXIX);[86] He that is endued with the speed of the mind; He that is the creator and promulgator of all kinds of learning; He whose vital seed is gold; He that is giver of wealth (being identical with Kuvera the Lord of treasures); He that takes away all the wealth of the Asuras; the son of Vasudeva; He in whom all creatures dwell; He whose mind dwells in all things in thorough identity with them; He that takes away the sins of all who seek refuge in Him (DCXC—

* Many of these words beginning with 'Mahat' represent Krishna's own words as spoken to Arjuna in the Gitā. 'I am the foremost of sacrifices; I am the foremost of sacrificers, &c.—T.

DCXCVIII);[87] He that is attainable by the Righteous; He whose acts are always good; He that is the one entity in the universe; He that displays Himself in diverse forms; He that is the refuge of all those that are conversant with truth; He who has the greatest of heroes for his troops;* He that is the foremost of the Yādavas; He that is the abode of the righteous; He that sports in joy (in the woods of Brinda) in the banks of Yamunā (DCXCIX—DCCVII);[88] He in whom all created things dwell; the deity that overwhelms the universe with His Māyā (illusion); He in whom all foremost of Beings become merged (when they achieve their Emancipation); He whose hunger is never gratified; He that humbles the pride of all; He that fills the Righteous with just pride; He that swells with joy; He that is incapable of being seized; He that has never been vanquished (DCCVIII—DCCXVI);[89] He that is of universal form; He that is of vast form; He whose form blazes forth with energy and effulgence; He that is without form (as determined by acts); He that is of diverse forms; He that is unmanifest; He that is of a hundred forms; He that is of a hundred faces (DCCXVII—DCCXXIV);[90] He that is one; He that is many (through illusion); He that is full of felicity; He that forms the one grand topic of investigation; He from whom is this all; He that is called THAT; He that is the highest Refuge; He that confines Jiva within material causes; He that is coveted by all; He that took birth in the race of Madhu; He that is exceedingly affectionate towards His worshippers (DCCXXV—DCCXXXV);[91] He that is of golden complexion; He whose limbs are like gold (in hue); He that is possessed of beautiful limbs; He whose person is decked with Angadas made with sandal paste; He that is the slayer of heroes; He that has no equal; He that is like cipher (in consequence of no attributes being affirmable of Him); He that stands in need of no blessings (in consequence of His fulness); He that never swerves from His own nature and puissance and knowledge; He that is mobile in the form of wind (DCCXXXVI—DCCXLV);[92] He that

---

* Referring to Hanumat and others among the apes that Rāma led against Rāvana.—T.

never identifies Himself with anything that is Not-soul ;* He that confers honors on His worshippers ; He that is honored by all ; He that is the Lord of the three worlds ; He that upholds the three worlds ; He that is possessed of intelligence and memory capable of holding in His mind the contents of all treatises ; He that took birth in a sacrifice ; He that is worthy of the highest praise ; He whose intelligence and memory are never futile ; He that upholds the Earth (DCCXLVI—DCCLV) ;[93] He that pours forth heat in the form of the Sun ; He that is the bearer of great beauty of limbs ; He that is the foremost of all bearers of weapons ; He that accepts the flowery and leafy offerings made to Him by His worshippers ; He that has subdued all his passions and grinds all His foes ; He that has none to walk before Him ; He that has four horns ; He that is the elder brother of Gada (DCCLVI—DCCLXIV) ;[94] He that has four forms ; He that has four arms ; He from whom the four Purushas have sprung ; He that is the refuge of the four modes of life and the four orders of men ; He that is of four Souls (Mind, Understanding, Consciousness, and Memory) ; He from whom springs the four objects of life, *viz.*, Righteousness, Wealth, Pleasure, and Emancipation ; He that is conversant with the four Vedas ; He that has displayed only a fraction of His puissance (DCCLXV—DCCLXXII) ;[95] He that sets the wheel of the world to revolve round and round ; He whose soul is dissociated from all worldly attachments ; He that is incapable of being vanquished ; He that cannot be transcended ; He that is exceedingly difficult of being attained ; He that is difficult of being approached ; He that is difficult of access ; He that is difficult of being brought within the heart (by even Yogins) ; He that slays even the most powerful foes (among the Dānavas) (DCCLXXIII—DCCLXXXI) ;[96] He that has beautiful limbs ; He that takes the essence of all things in the universe ; He that owns the most beautiful warp and woof (for weaving this texture or fabric of the universe) ; He that weaves with

* The universe consists of Soul and Not-soul. Jiva, when cased in matter or Not soul, takesNot-soul for himself, in his ignorance In fact, until true knowledge is attained, the body is taken for self.—T.

ever-extending warp and woof; He whose acts are done by Indra; He whose acts are great; He who has no act undone; He who has composed all the Vedas and scriptures (DCCLXXXII—DCCLXXXIX);[97] He whose birth is high; He that is exceedingly handsome; He whose heart is full of commisseration; He that has precious gems in his navel; He that has excellent knowledge for his eye; He that is worthy of worship by Brahman himself and other foremost ones in the universe; He that is giver of food; He that assumed horns at the time of the universal dissolution; He that has always subjugated His foes most wonderfully; He that knows all things; He that is ever victorious over those that are of irresistible prowess (DCCXC—DCCXCIX);[98] He whose limbs are like gold; He that is incapable of being agitated (by wrath or aversion or other passions); He that is Master of all those who are masters of all speech; He that is the deepest lake; He that is the deepest pit; He that transcends the influence of Time; He in whom the primal elements are established (DCCC—DCCCVI);[99] He that gladdens the Earth; He that grants fruits which are as agreeable as the Kunda flowers (*Jasmimm pubescens, Linn*); He that gave away the Earth unto Kaçyapa (in his incarnation as Rāma); He that extinguishes the three kinds of misery (mentioned in the Sānkhya philosophy) like a rain-charged cloud cooling the heat of the Earth by its down-pour; He that cleanses all creatures; He that has none to urge Him; He that drank nectar; He that has an undying body; He that is possessed of omniscience; He that has face and eyes turned towards every direction (DCCCVII—DCCCXVI);[100] He that is easily won (with, that is, such gifts as consist of flowers and leaves), He that has performed excellent vows; He that is crowned with success by Himself; He that is victorious over all foes; He that scorches all foes; He that is tho ever-growing and tall Banian that overtops all other trees; He that is the sacred fig tree (*Ficus glomerata, Willd*); He that is the *Ficus religiosa* (or, He that is not durable, in consequence of His being all perishable forms in the universe even as He is all the inperishable forms that exsist); He that is the slayer of Chānura of the Andhra country (DCCCXVII—DCCCXXV);[101] He that is endued

with a thousand rays; He that has seven tongues (in the forms of Kāli, Karāli, &c.); He that has seven flames (in consequence of His being identical with the deity of fire); He that has seven horses for bearing His vehicle (or, He that owns the steed called Sapta); He that is formless; He that is sinless; He that is inconceivable; He that dispels all fears; He that destroys all fears (DCCCXXVI—DCCCXXXIV);[102] He that is minute; He that is gross; He that is emaciated; He that is adipose; He that is endued with attributes; He that transcends all attributes; He that is unseizable; He that suffers Himself to be easily seized (by His worshippers); He that has an excellent face; He that has for His descendents the people of the accidental regions; He that extends the creation consisting of the fivefold primal elements (DCCCXXXV—DCCCXLVI);[103] He that bears heavy weights (in the form of Ananta); He that has been declared by the Vedas; He that is devoted to Yoga; He that is the lord of all Yogins; He that is the giver of all wishes; He that affords an asylum to those that seek it; He that sets Yogins to practise Yoga anew after their return to life upon the conclusion of their life of felicity in Heaven; He that invests Yogins with puissance even after the exhaustion of their merits; He that has goodly leaves (in the form of the Cchandas of the Vedas, Himself being the Tree of the world); He that causes the winds to blow (DCCCXLVII—DCCCLVI);[104] He that is armed with the bow (in the form of Rāma); He that is conversant with the science of arms; He that is the rod of chastisement; He that is chastiser; He that executes all sentences of chastisement; He that has never been vanquished; He that is competeut in all acts; He that sets all persons to their respective duties; He that has none to set Him to any work; He that has no Yama to slay Him (DCCCLVII—DCCCLXVI);[105] He that is endued with heroism and prowess; He that has the attribute of Sattwa (Goodness); He that is identical with Truth; He that is devoted to Truth and Righteousness; He that is coveted by those who are resolved to achieve Emancipation (or, He towards whom the universe proceeds when the dissolution comes); He that deserves to have all objects which His worshippers present unto Him; He that is

worthy of being adored (with hymns and flowers and other offerings of reverence); He that does good to all; He that enhances the delights of all (DCCCLXVII—DCCCLXXV);[106] He whose track is through the firmament; He that blazes forth in His own effulgence; He that is endued with great beauty; He that eats the offerings made on the sacrificial fire; He that dwells everywhere and is endued with supreme puissance; He that sucks the moisture of the Earth in the form of the Sun; He that has diverse desires; He that brings forth all things; He that is the parent of the universe; He that has the Sun for His eye (DCCCLXXVI—DCCCLXXXV);[107] He that is Infinite; He that accepts all sacrificial offerings; He that enjoys Prakriti in the form of Mind; He that is giver of felicity; He that has taken repeated births (for the protection of Righteousness and the Righteous); He that is the First-born of all existent things; He that transcends despair (in consequence of the fruition of all His wishes); He that forgives the Righteous when they trip; He that is the foundation upon which the universe exists; He that is most wonderful (DCCCLXXXVI—DCCCXCV);[108] He that is existent from the beginning of Time; He that is existing from before the birth of the Grandsire and others; He that is of a tawny hue (or, He that discovers or illumines all existent things by His rays); He that assumed the form of the great Boar; He that exists even when all things are dissolved; He that is giver of all blessings; He that creates blessings; He that is identifiable with all blessings; He that enjoys blessings; He that is able to scatter blessings (DCCCXCVI—CMV);[109] He that is without wrath; He that lies ensconced in folds (in the form of the snake Cesha, (or, He that is adorned with ear-rings); He that is armed with the discus; He that is endued with great prowess; He whose sway is regulated by the high precepts of the Crutis and the Smritis; He that is incapable of being described by the aid of speech: He whom the Vedāntas have striven to express with the aid of speech; He that is the dew which cools those who are afflicted with the three kinds of grief; He that lives in all bodies, endued with the capacity of dispelling darkness (CMVI—CMXIV);[110] He that is divested of wrath; He that is well-skilled in accomplishing all

acts by thought, word, and deed; He that can accomplish all acts within the shortest period of time; He that destroys the wicked; He that is the foremost of all forgiving persons; He that is foremost of all persons endued with knowledge; He that transcends all fear; He whose names and feats, heard and recited, lead to Righteousness (CMXV—CMXXII);[111] He that rescues the Righteous from the tempestuous ocean of the world; He that destroys the wicked; He that is Righteousness; He that dispels all evil dreams; He that destroys all bad paths for leading His worshippers to the good path of Emancipation; He that protects the universe by staying in the attribute of Sattwa; He that walks along the good path; He that is Life; He that exists overspreading the universe (CMXXIII—CMXXXI);[112] He that is of infinite forms; He that is endued with infinite prosperity; He that has subdued wrath; He that destroys the fears of the Righteous; He that gives just fruits, on every side, to sentient beings according to their thoughts and acts; He that is of immeasurable Soul; He that bestows diverse kinds of fruits on deserving persons for their diverse acts; He that sets diverse commands (on deities and men); He that attaches to every act its proper fruit (CMXXXII—CMXL);[113] He that has no beginning; He that is the receptacle of all causes as well as of the Earth; He that has the goddess of Prosperity ever by his side; He that is the foremost of all heroes; He that is adorned with beautiful armlets; He that produces all creatures; He that is the original cause of the birth of all creatures; He that is the terror of all the wicked Asuras; He that is endued with terrible prowess (CMXLI—CMXLIX);[114] He that is the receptacle and abode of the five primal elements; He that gulps down His throat all creatures at the time of the universal dissolution; He whose smile is as agreeable as the sight of flowers (or, He who laughs in the form of flowers); He that is always wakeful; He that stays at the head of all creatures; He whose conduct consists of those acts which the Righteous do; He that revives the dead (as in the case of Parikshit and others); He that is the initial syllable Om; He that has ordained all righteous acts (CML—CMLVIII);[115] He that displays the truth about the Supreme Soul; He that is the abode of the five life-

breaths and the senses; He that is the food which supports the life of living creatures; He that causes all living creatures to live with the aid of the life-breath called Prāna; He that is the great topic of every system of philosophy; He that is the One Soul in the universe; He that transcends birth, decrepitude, and death (CMLIX—CMLXV);[116] He that rescues the universe in consequence of the sacred syllables *Bhuh*, *Bhuvah*, *Swah*, and the others with which Homa-offerings are made; He that is the great rescuer; He that is the sire of all; He that is the sire of even the Grandsire (Brahman); He that is of the form of Sacrifice; He that is the Lord of all sacrifices (being the great deity that is adored in them); He that is the sacrificer; He that has sacrifices for His limbs; He that upholds all sacrifices (CMLXVI—CMLXXV);[117] He that protects sacrifices; He that has created sacrifices; He that is the foremost of all performers of sacrifices; He that enjoys the rewards of all sacrifices; He that causes the accomplishment of all sacrifices; He that completes all sacrifices by accepting the full libation at the end; He that is identical with such sacrifices as are performed without desire of fruit; He that is the food which sustains all living creatures; He that is also the eater of that food (CMLXXVI—CMLXXXIV);[118] He that is Himself the cause of His existence; He that is self-born; He that penetrated through the solid Earth (and repairing to the nether regions slew Hiranyāksha and others); He that sings the Sāmans; He that is the delighter of Devaki; He that is the creator of all; He that is the Lord of Earth; He that is the destroyer of the sins of His worshippers (CMLXXXV—CMXCII);[119] He that bears the conch (Pānchajanya) in His hand; He that bears the sword of knowledge and illusion; He that sets the cycle of the Yugas to revolve ceaselessly; He that invests Himself with consciousness and the senses; He that is endued with the mace of the most solid understanding; He that is armed with a car-wheel; He that is incapable of being agitated; He that is armed with all kinds of weapons (CMXCIII—M).[120] Om, salutations to Him!

"'Even thus have I recited to thee, without any exception, the thousand excellent names of the high-souled Keçava whose

glory should always be sung![121] That man who hears these names every day or who recites them every day, never meets with any evil either here or hereafter.[122] If a Brāhmana does this, he succeeds in mastering the Vedānta; if a Kshatriya does it, he becomes always successful in battle. A Vaiçya, by doing it, becomes possessed of affluence, while a Cudra earns great happiness.[123] If one becomes desirous of earning the merit of righteousness, one succeeds in earning it (by hearing or reciting these names). If it is wealth that one desires, one succeeds in earning wealth (by acting in this way). So also the man who wishes for enjoyments of the senses succeeds in enjoying all kinds of pleasures, and the man desirous of offspring acquires offspring (by pursuing this course of conduct).[124] That man who with devotion and perseverance and heart wholly turned towards him, recites these thousand names of Vāsudeva every day, after having purified himself,[125] succeeds in acquiring great fame, a position of eminence among his kinsmen, enduriug prosperity, and lastly, that which is of the highest benefit to him (*viz.*, Emancipation itself).[126] Such a man never meets with fear at any time, and acquires great prowess and energy. Disease never afflicts him; splendour of complexion, strength, beauty, and accomplishments, become his.[127] The sick become hale; the afflicted become freed from their afflictions; the affrighted become freed from fear, and he that is plunged in calamity becomes freed from calamity.[128] The man who hymns the praises of that foremost of Beings by reciting His thousand names with devotion succeeds in quickly crossing all difficulties.[129] That mortal who takes refuge in Vāsudeva and who becomes devoted to Him, becomes freed of all sins and attains to eternal Brahma.[130] They who are devoted to Vāsudeva have never to encounter any evil. They become freed from the fear of birth, death, decrepitude, and disease.[131] That man who with devotion and faith recites this hymn (consisting of the thousand names of Vāsudeva) succeeds in acquiring felicity of soul, forgiveness of disposition, prosperity, intelligence, memory, and fame.[132] Neither wrath, nor jealousy, nor cupidity, nor evil understanding, ever appears in those men of righteousness who are devoted to that fore-

most of Beings.[133] The firmament with the sun, moon, and stars, the welkin, the points of the compass, the Earth, and the Ocean, are all held and supported by the prowess of the high-souled Vāsudeva.[134] The whole mobile and immobile universe with the deities, Asuras, and Gandharvas, Yakshas, Uragas and Rākshasas, is under the sway of Krishna.[135] The senses, mind, understanding, life, energy, strength, and memory, it has been said, have Vāsudeva for their soul. Indeed, this body that is called Kshetra, and the intelligent soul within, that is called the knower of Kshetra, also have Vāsudeva for their soul.[136] Conduct (consisting of practices) is said to be the foremost of all topics treated of in the scriptures. Righteousness has conduct for its basis. The unfading Vāsudeva is said to be the lord of Righteousness.[137] The Rishis, the Pitris, the deities, the great (primal) elements, the metals, indeed, the entire mobile and immobile universe, has sprung from Nārāyana.[138] Yoga, the Sānkhya philosophy, knowledge, all mechanical arts, the Vedas, the diverse scriptures, and all learning, have sprung from Janārddana.[139] Vishnu is one great element or substance which has spread itself out into multifarious forms. Covering the three worlds, He, the soul of all things, enjoys them all. His glory knows no diminution, and He it is that is the Enjoyer of the universe (as its supreme Lord).[140] This hymn in praise of the illustrious Vishnu, composed by Vyāsa, should be recited by that person who wishes to acquire happiness and that which is the highest benefit (*viz.*, Emancipation).[141] Those persons that worship and adore the Lord of the universe, that deity who is unborn and possessed of blazing effulgence, who is the origin or cause of the universe, who knows no deterioration, and who is endued with eyes that are as large and beautiful as the petals of the lotus, have never to meet with any discomfiture.' "[142]

SECTION CL.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, O thou of great wisdom, O thou that are conversant with all branches of knowledge, what is that subject of silent recitation by reciting which

every day one may acquire the merit of righteousness in a large measure?[1] What is that Mantra for recitation which bestows success if recited on the occasion of setting out on a journey or in entering a new building, or at the commencement of any undertaking, or on the occasion of sacrifices in honor of the deities or of the Pitris?[2] It behooveth thee to tell me what, indeed, what Mantra it is, which propitiates all malevolent influences, or leads to prosperity or growth, or protection from evil, or the destruction of foes, or the despelling of fears, and which, at the same time, is consistent with the Vedas!'[3]

"Bhishma said,—'Hear, O king, with concentrated attention, what that Mantra is which was declared by Vyāsa. It was ordained by Sāvitri and is possessed of great excellence. It is capable of cleansing a person immediately of all his sins.[4] Hear, O sinless one, as I recite to thee the ordinances in respect of that Mantra. Indeed, O chief of the sons of Pāndu, by listening to those ordinances, one becomes cleansed of all one's sins.[5] One who recites this Mantra day and night becomes never stained by sin. I shall now declare it to thee what that Mantra is. Do thou listen with concentrated attention.[6] Indeed, the man that hears it becomes endued with long life, O prince, and attaining to the fruition of all his wishes, sports in felicity both here and hereafter.[7] This Mantra, O king, was daily recited by the foremost of royal sages devoted to the practice of Kshatriya duties and steadily observant of the vow of truth.[8] Indeed, O tiger among kings, those monarchs who, with restrained senses and tranquil soul, recite this Mantra every day, succeed in acquiring unrivalled prosperity.[9]—Salutations to Vaçishtha of high vows, after having bowed with reverence unto Parāçara, that Ocean of the Vedas! Salutations to the great snake Ananta, and salutations to all those who are crowned with success, and who are of unfading glory![10] Salutations to the Rishis, and unto Him that is the Highest of the High, the god of gods, and the giver of boons unto all those that are foremost. Salutations unto Him of a thousand heads, Him that is most auspicious, Him that has a thousand names, *viz.*, Janārddana![11]

Aja, Ekapāda, Ahivradhna, the unvanquished Pinākin, Ritā, Pitrirupa, the three-eyed Maheçwara,[12] Vrishākapi, Cambhu, Havana, and Içwara,—these are the celebrated Rudras, eleven in number, who are the lords of all the worlds.[13] Even these eleven high-souled ones have been mentioned as a hundred in the Catarudra (of the Vedas). Angça, Bhaga, Mitra, Varuna the lord of waters, Dhātri, Aryaman, Jayanta, Bhāskara,[14] Tashtri, Pushan, Indra, and Vishnu, are said to comprise a tale of twelve. These twelve are called Ādityas and they are the sons of Kaçyapa as the Cruti declares.[15] Dhara, Dhruva, Soma, Sāvittra, Anila, Anala, Pratyusha, and Prabhāva, are the eight Vasus named in the scriptures.[16] Nāsatya and Dasra are said to be the two Açwins. They are the sons of Mārtanda born of his spouse Samjnā, from whose nostrils they came out.[17] After this I shall recite the names of those who are the witnesses of all acts in the worlds. They take note of all sacrifices, of all gifts, of all good acts.[18] Those lords among the deities behold everything although they are invisible. Indeed, they behold all the good and bad acts of all beings. They are Mrityu, Kāla,[19] the Viçwedevas, the Pitris endued with forms, the great Rishis possessed of wealth of penances, the Munis, and others crowned with success and devoted to penances and Emancipation.[20] These of sweet smiles, bestow diverse benefits upon those men that recite their names. Verily, endued as they are with celestial energy, they bestow diverse regions of felicity created by the Grandsire upon such men.[21] They reside in all the worlds and attentively note all acts. By reciting the names of those lords of all living creatures, one always becomes endued with righteousness and wealth and enjoyments in copious measure.[22] One acquires hereafter diverse regions of auspiciousness and felicity created by the Lord of the universe.[23] These three and thirty deities, who are the lords of all beings, as also Nandiçwara of huge body, and that pre-eminent one who has the bull for the device on his banner, and those masters of all the worlds, *viz.*, the followers and associates of him called Ganeçwara, and those called Saumyas, and those called the Raudras, and those called the Yogas, and those that are known as the Bhutas,[24-25] and

the luminaries in the firmament, the Rivers, the sky, the prince of birds (*viz.*, Garuda), all those persons on Earth who have become crowned with success in consequence of their penances and who are existing in an immobile or mobile form,[26] Himavat, all the mountains, the four Oceans, the followers and associates of Bhava who are possessed of prowess equal to that of Bhava himself,[27] the illustrious and ever-victorious Vishnu, and Skanda, and Amvikā,—these are the great souls by reciting whose names with restrained senses, one becomes cleansed of all sins.[28] After this I shall recite the names of those foremost Rishis who are known as Mānavas. They are Yavakrita, and Raibhya, and Arvāvasu, and Parāvasu ;[29] and Aushija, and Kākshivat, and Vala the son of Angiras. Then comes Kanwa the son of the Rishi Madhātithi, and Varishada.[30] All these are endued with the energy of Brahma and have been spoken of (in the scriptures) as creators of the universe. They have sprung from Rudra and Anala and the Vasus. By reciting their names people obtain great benefits.[31] Indeed, by doing good deeds on Earth, people sport in joy in Heaven, with the deities. These Rishis are the priests of Indra. They live in the East.[32] That man who, with rapt attention, recites the names of these Rishis, succeeds in ascending to the regions of Indra and obtaining great honors there.[33] Unmuchu, Pramuchu, Swastwyātreya of great energy, Dridhavya, Urdhavāhu, Trinasoma Angiras,[34] and Agastya of great energy, the son of Mitravaruna,—these seven are the Ritwijas of the Yama the king of the dead, and dwell in the southern quarter.[35] Dridheyu and Riteyu, and Parivyādha of great fame, and Ekata, and Dwita, and Trita,—the last three endued with splendour like that of the sun,[36]—and Atri's son of righteous soul, *viz.*, the Rishi Sāraswata,—these seven who had acted as Ritwijas in the great sacrifice of Varuna—have taken up their abodes in the Western quarter.[37] Atri, the illustrious Vaçishtha, the great Rishi Kaçyapa, Gotama, Bharadwāja, Viçwāmitra the son of Kuçika,[38] and Richika's fierce son Jamadagni of great energy,—these seven are the Ritwijas of the Lord of treasures and dwell in the Northern quarter.[39] There are seven other Rishis that live in all directions without being confined to

any particular one. They, it is, who are the inducers of fame and of all that is beneficial to men, and they have been sung as the creators of the worlds.[40] Dharma, Kāma, Kāla, Vasu, Vāsuki, Ananta, and Kapila,—these seven are the upholders of the world.[41] Rāma, Vyāsa, Drona's son Açwatthāman, are the other Rishis (that are regarded as the foremost). These are the great Rishis as distributed into seven groups, each group consisting of seven.[42] They are the creators of that peace and good that men enjoy. They are said to be the Regents of the several points of the compass. One should turn one's face to that direction in which one of these Rishis live if one wishes to worship him.[43] Those Rishis are the creators of all creatures and have been regarded as the cleansifiers of all. Samvarta, Merusāvarna, the righteous Mārkandeya,[44] and Sānkhya and Yoga, and Nārada and the great Rishi Durvāsas,—these are endued with severe penances and great self-restraint, and are celebrated over the three worlds.[45] There are others who are equal to Rudra himself. They live in the region of Brahman. By naming them with reverence a sonless man obtains a son, and a poor man obtains wealth.[46] Indeed, by naming them, one acquires success in religion, and wealth and pleasure. One should also take the name of that celebrated king who was Emperor of all the Earth and equal to a Prajāpati, *viz.*, that foremost of monarchs, Prithu, the son of Vena. The Earth became his daughter (from love and affection). One should also name Pururavas, of the Solar race and equal unto Mahendra himself in prowess.[47-48] He was the son of Ilā and celebrated over the three worlds. One should, indeed, take the name of that dear son of Vudha.[49] One should also take the name of Bharata, that hero celebrated over the three worlds. He also who in the Krita age adored the gods in a grand Gomedha sacrifice,[50] *viz.*, Rantideva of great splendour, who was equal unto Mahādeva himself, should be named. Endued with penances, possessed of every auspicious mark, the source of every kind of benefit to the world, he was the conqueror of the universe.[51] One should also take the name of the royal sage Cweta of illustrious fame. He had gratified the great Mahādeva and it was for his sake

that Andhaka was slain.[52] One should also take the name of the royal sage Bhagiratha of great fame, who, through the grace of Mahādeva, succeeded in bringing down the sacred river from Heaven (for flowing over the Earth and cleansing all human beings of their sins).[53] It was Bhagiratha who caused the ashes of the sixty thousand sons of Sagara to be overflowed with the sacred waters of Gangā and thereby rescued them from their sin. Indeed, one should take the names of all these that were endued with the blazing effulgence of fire, great beauty of person, and high energy.[54] Some of them were of awe-inspiring forms and great might. Verily, one should take the names of these deities and Rishis and kings, those lords of the universe,—who are enhancers of fame.[55] Sānkhya, and Yoga which is highest of the high, and Havya and Kavya and that refuge of all the Crutis, *viz.*, Supreme Brahma,[56] have been declared to be the sources of great benefit to all creatures. These are sacred and sin-cleansing, and have been spoken of very highly. These are the foremost of medicines for allaying all diseases, and are the inducers of success in respect of all deeds.[57] Restraining one's senses, one should, O Bhārata, take the names of these, morning and evening. It is these that protect. It is these that shower rain. It is these that shine and give light and heat. It is these that blow. It is these that create all things.[58] These are regarded as the foremost of all, as the leaders of the universe, as highly clever in the accomplishment of all things, as endued with forgiveness, as complete masters of the senses. Indeed, it has been said that they dispel all the evils to which human beings are subject.[59] These high-souled ones are the witness of all good and bad deeds. Rising up in the morning one should take their names, for by this one is sure to acquire all that is good.[60] He who takes the names of these becomes freed from the fear of fires and of theives. Such a man never finds his way obstructed by any impediment. By taking the names of these high-souled ones, one becomes free from bad dreams of every kind.[61] Cleared from every sin, such men take birth in auspicious families. That regenerate person who, with restrained senses, recites these names on occasions of performing

the initiatory rites of sacrifices and other religious observances,[62] becomes, as the consequence thereof, endued with righteousness, devoted to the study of the soul, possessed of forgiveness and self-restraint, and free from malice. If a man that is afflicted with disease recites them, he becomes freed from his sin in the form of disease.[63] By reciting them within a house, all evils are dispelled from the inmates. By reciting them within a field, the growth is helped of all kinds of crops.[64] Reciting them at the time of setting out on a journey, or while one is away from one's home, one meets with good fortune. These names lead to the protection of one's ownself, of one's children and spouses, of one's wealth,[65] and of one's seeds, and plants. The Kshatriya who recites these names at the time of joining a battle sees destruction overtake his foes and good fortune crown him and his party. The man who recites these names on occasions of performing the rites in honor of the deities or the Pitris, helps the Pitris and the deities eat to the sacrificial Havya and Kavya. The man that recites them becomes freed from fear of diseases and beasts of prey, of elephants and theives.[66-68] His load of anxiety becomes lightened, and he becomes freed from every sin. By reciting these excellent Sāvitri Mantras on board a vessel, or in a vehicle, or in the courts of kings, one attains to high success. There where these Mantras are recited, fire does not burn wood.[69-70] There children do not die, nor snakes dwell. Indeed, at such places, there can be no fear of the king, nor of Piçāchas and Rākshasas.*[71] Verily, the man who recites these Mantras ceases to have any fear of fire or water or wind, or beasts of prey.[72] These Sāvitri Mantras, recited duly, contribute to the peace and wellbeing of all the four orders. Those men who recite them with reverence become freed from every sorrow and at last attain to a high end.[73] Even these are the results achieved by them that recite these Sāvitri Mantras which are of the form of Brahma. That man who recites these Mantras in the midst of kine sees his kine become fruitful.[74] Whether when setting out on a journey, or

* The sense is that untimely deaths do not occur in such places; nor fear of oppression or unlawful chastisement by the king; &c.—T.

entering a house on coming back, one should recite these Mantras on every occasion. These Mantras constitute a great mystery of the Rishis and are the very highest of those which they silently recite. Even such are these Mantras unto them who practise the duty of recitation and pour libations on the sacrificial fire.[75-76] This that I have said unto thee is the excellent opinion of Parāçara. It was recited in former days unto Cakra himself. Representing as it does Truth or Eternal Brahma, I have declared it in full to thee.[77] It constitutes the heart of all creatures, and is the highest Cruti. All the princes of the race of Soma and of Surya, *viz.*, the Rāghavas and the Kuravas,[78] recite these Mantras every day after having purified themselves. These constitute the highest end of human creatures. There is rescue from every trouble and calamity in the daily recitation of the names of the deities, of the seven Rishis, and of Dhruva. Indeed, such recitation speedily frees one from distress.[79] The sages of olden times, *viz.*, Kāçyapa, Gotama, and others, and Bhrigu, Angiras and Atri and others, and Cukra, Agastya, and Vrihaspati, and others, all of whom are regenerate Rishis, have adored these Mantras. Approved of by the son of Bharadwāja, these Mantras were attained by the sons of Richika. Verily, having acquired them again from Vaçishtha, Cakra and the Vasus went forth to battle and succeeded in subjugating the Dānavas.[80] That man who makes a present of a hundred kine with their horns covered with plate of gold unto a Brāhmana possessed of much learning and well conversant with the Vedas, and he who causes the excellent Bhārata story to be recited in his house every day, are said to acquire equal merits.[81] By reciting the name of Bhrigu one's righteousness becomes enhanced. By bowing to Vaçishtha one's energy becomes enhanced. By bowing unto Raghu, one becomes victorious in battle. By reciting the praises of the Açwins, one becomes freed from diseases.[82] I have thus, O king, told thee of the Sāvitri Mantras which are identical with eternal Brahma. If thou wishest to question me on any other topic, thou mayst do so. I shall, O Bhārata, answer thee!'"[83]

Section CLI.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Who deserve to be worshipped? Who are they unto whom we should bow? How, indeed, should we behave towards whom? What course of conduct, O grandsire, towards what classes of persons is regarded faultless?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'The humiliation of Brāhmanas would humiliate the very deities. By bowing unto Brāhmanas one does not, O Yudhishthira, incur any fault.[2] They, indeed, deserve to be worshipped. They deserve to have our bows. Thou shouldst behave towards them as if they are thy sons. Indeed, it is those men endued with great wisdom that uphold all the worlds.[3] The Brāhmanas are the great cause-ways of Righteousness in respect of all the worlds. Their happiness consists in renouncing all kinds of wealth. They are devoted to the vow of restraining speech.[4] They are agreeable to all creatures, and observant of diverse excellent vows. They are the refuge of all creatures in the universe. They are the authors of all the regulations which govern the worlds. They are possessed of great fame.[5] Penances are always their great wealth. Their power consists in speech. Their energy flows from the duties they observe. Conversant will all duties, they are possessed of minute vision, so that they are cognizant of the subtlest considerations.[6] They are of righteous desires. They live in the observance of well-performed duties. They are the cause-ways of Righteousness. The four kinds of living creatures exist, depending upon them as their refuge.[7] They are the path or road along which all should go. They are the guides of all. They are the eternal upholders of all the sacrifices. They always uphold the heavy burthens of sires and grandsires.[8] They never droop under heavy weights even when passing along difficult roads, like strong cattle. They are attentive to the requirements of Pitris and deities and guests. They are entitled to eat the first portions of Havya and Kavya.[9] By the very food they eat, they rescue the three worlds from great fear. They are, as it were, the Island (of refuge) for all worlds. They are the eyes of all persons endued with sight.[10] The wealth they possess consists

of all the branches of knowledge known by the name of Cikshā, and all the Crutis. Endued with great skill, they are conversant with the most subtile relations of things. They are well acquainted with the ends of all things, and their thoughts are always employed upon the science of the soul.[11] They are endued with the knowledge of the beginning, the middle, and the end of all things, and they are persons in whom doubts no longer exist inconsequence of the certitude of their knowledge. They are fully aware of the distinctions between what is superior and what is inferior. They it is who attain to the highest end.[12] Freed from all attachments, cleansed of all sins, transcending all pairs of opposites (such as heat and cold, happiness and misery, &c.), they are unconnected with all wordly things. Deserving of every honor, they are always held in great esteem by persons endued with knowledge and high souls.[13] They cast equal eyes on sandal paste and filth or dirt, on what is food and what is not food. They see with an equal eye their brown vestments of coarse cloth and fabrics of silk and animal skins.[14] They would live for many days together without eating any food, and dry up their limbs by such abstention from all sustenance. They devote themselves earnestly to the study of the Vedas, restraining their senses.[15] They would make gods of those that are not gods, and not gods of those that are gods. Enraged, they can create other worlds and other Regents of the worlds than those that exist.[16] Through the curse of those high-souled ones, the ocean became so saline as to be undrinkable. The fire of their wrath yet burns in the forest of Dandaka, unquenched by time.[17] They are the gods of the gods, and the cause of all causes. They are the authority of all authorities. What man of intelligenee and wisdom is there that would seek to humiliate them?[18] Amongst them the young and the old all deserve honors. They honor one another (not in consequence of distinctions of age but) in consequence of distinctions in respect of penances and knowledge.[19] Even the Brāhmana that is destitute of knowledge is a god and is a high instrument for cleansing others. He amongst them, then, that is possessed of knowledge is a much higher god and like unto the ocean

when full (to the brim).[20] Learned or unlearned, the Brāhmana is always a high deity. Sanctified or unsanctified (with the aid of Mantras), Fire is ever a great deity.[21] A blazing fire, even when it burns on a crematorium, is not regarded as tainted in consequence of the character of the spot whereon it burns. Clarified butter looks beautiful whether kept on the sacrificial altar or in a chamber.[22] So if the Brāhmana be always engaged in evil acts, he is still to be regarded as deserving of honors. Indeed, know that the Brāhmana is always a high deity !'"[23]

SECTION CLII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell us, O king, what is that reward attached to the worship of Brāhmanas, seeing which thou worshippest them, O thou of superior intelligence ! Indeed, what is that success, flowing from their worship, guided by which thou worshippest them ?'[1]

"Bhishma said,—'In this connection is cited this old narrative of a conversation between Pavana and Arjuna, O Bhārata ![2] Endued with a thousand arms and great beauty the mighty Kārtavirya, in days of yore, became the lord of all the world. He had his capital in the city of Māhishmati.[3] Of unbaffled prowess, that chief of the Haihaya race of Kshatriyas swayed the whole Earth with her belt of seas, together with all her islands and all her precious mines of gold and gems.[4] Keeping before him the duties of the Kshatriya order, as also humility and Vedic knowledge, the king made large gifts of wealth unto the Rishi Dattātreya.[5] Indeed, the son of Kritavirya thus adored that great ascetic who, becoming gratified with him, asked him to solicit three boons.[6] Thus requested by the Rishi in respect of boons, the king addressed him, saying,—Let me become endued with a thousand arms when I am in the midst of my troops. While, however, I remain at home let me have, as usual, only two arms.[7] Indeed, let combatants, when engaged in battle, behold me possessed of a thousand arms. Observant also of high vows, let me succeed in subjugating the whole Earth aided by my

prowess.[8] Having acquired the Earth righteously, let me sway her with vigilance. There is a fourth boon which, O foremost of regenerate persons, I solicit thee to grant![9] O faultless one, in consequence of thy disposition to favor me, it behooveth thee to grant it to me! Dependent as I am on thee, whenever I may happen to go wrong, let the righteous come forth to instruct and set me right![10] Thus addressed, that Brāhman replied unto the king, saying,—So let it be!—Even thus were those boons acquired by that king of blazing effulgence.[11] Riding then on his car whose splendour resembled that of fire or the Sun, the monarch, blinded by his great prowess, said,—Who, indeed, is there that can be regarded as my equal[12] in patience and energy, in fame and heroism, in prowess and strength?—After he had uttered these words, an invisible voice in the welkin said,[13]—O ignorant wretch, dost thou not know that the Brāhmana is superior to the Kshatriya? The Kshatriya, assisted by the Brāhmana, rules all creatures!—[14]

"'Arjuna said,—When gratified, I am able to create many creatures. When angry, I am able to destroy all. In thought, word, and deed, I am the foremost. The Brāhmana is certainly not above me![15] The first proposition here is that the Brāhmana is superior to the Kshatriya. The counter-proposition is that the Kshatriya is superior. Thou hast said, (O invisible being,) that the two are united together (in the act upon which the Kshatriya's superiority is sought to be based). A distinction, however, is observable in this.[16] It is seen that Brāhmanas take refuge with Kshatriyas. The Kshatriyas never seek the refuge of Brāhmanas. Indeed, throughout the Earth, the Brāhmanas, accepting such refuge under the pretence of teaching the Vedas, draw their sustenance from the Kshatriyas.[17] The duty of protecting all creatures is vested in Kshatriyas. It is from the Kshatriyas that the Brāhmanas derive their sustenance. How then can the Brāhmana be superior to the Kshatriyas?[18] Well, I shall, from today, bring under my subjection, your Brāhmanas who are superior to all creatures but who have mendicancy for their occupation and who are so self-conceited![19] What the virgin

Gāyatri has said from the welkin is not true. Robed in skins, the Brāhmanas move about in independence. I shall bring those independent wights under my subjection.[20] Deity or man, there is none in the three worlds who can hurl me from the sovereignty I enjoy. Hence, I am certainly superior to the Brāhmanas.[21] This world that is now regarded as having Brāhmanas for its foremost denizens shall soon be made such as to have Kshatriyas for its foremost denizens. There is none that is capable of bearing my might in battle![22] Hearing these words of Arjuna, the welkin-ranging goddess became agitated.[23] Then the god of wind, addressing the king from the sky, said,—Cast off this sinful attitude. Bow unto the Brāhmanas. By injuring them thou wilt bring about troubles on thy kingdom.[24] The Brāhmanas will either slay thee, king though thou art, or, endued with great might as they are, they will drive thee away from thy kingdom, despoiling thee of thy energy![25]—The king, hearing this speech, addressed the speaker, saying,—Who, indeed, art thou?—The god of wind answered,—I am the god of wind and the messenger of the deities! I say unto thee what is for thy benefit!—[26]

"'Arjuna said,—Oh, I see that thou hast today shown thy devotion and attachment to the Brāhmanas. Tell me now what kind of earthly creature is the Brāhmana![27] Tell me, does a superior Brāhmana resemble the Wind in any respect? Or, is he like Water, or Fire, or the Sun, or the Firmament?—'"[28]

SECTION CLIII.

"'The god of wind said,—Hear, O deluded man, what the attributes are that belong to Brāhmanas all of whom are endued with high souls. The Brāhmana is superior to all those which, O king, thou hast named![1] In days of yore, the Earth, indulging in a spirit of rivalry with the king of the Angas, forsook her character as Earth. The regenerate Kaçyapa caused destruction to overtake her by actually paralysing her.[2] The Brāhmanas are always unconquerable, O king, in Heaven as also on Earth. In days of yore, the great Rishi

Angiras, through his energy, drank off all the waters.[3] The high-souled Rishi, having drank off all the waters as if they were milk, did not feel yet his thirst to be slaked. He, therefore, once more caused the Earth to be filled with water by raising a mighty wave.[4] On another occasion, when Angiras became enraged with me, I fled away, leaving the world, and dwelt for a long time concealed in the Agnihotra of the Brāhmanas, through fear of that Rishi.[5] The illustrious Purandara, in consequence of his having coveted the body of Ahalyā, was cursed by Gautama, yet, for the sake of Righteousness and wealth, the Rishi did not destroy outright the chief of the deities.[6] The Ocean, O king, that was full in former days of crystal water, cursed by the Brāhmanas, became saline in taste.*[7] Even Agni who is of the complexion of gold, and who blazes with effulgence when destitute of smoke, and whose flames uniting together burn upwards, when cursed by the angry Angiras, became divested of all these attributes.†[8] Behold, the sixty thousand sons of Sagara, who came here to adore the Ocean, have all been pulverised by the Brāhmana Kapila of golden complexion.[9] Thou art not equal to the Brāhmanas. Do thou, O king, seek thy own good. The Kshatriya of even great puissance bows to Brāhmana children that are still in their mothers' wombs.[10] The large kingdom of the Dandakas was destroyed by a Brāhmana. The mighty Kshatriya Tālajangha was destroyed by a single Brāhmana, *viz.*, Aurva.[11] Thou, too, hast acquired a large kingdom, great might, religious merit, and learning, which are all difficult of attainment, through the grace of Dattātreya.[12] Why dost thou, O Arjuna, worship Agni everyday who is a Brāhmana? He is the bearer of sacrificial libations from every part of the universe. Art thou ignorant of this fact?[13] Why, indeed, dost thou suffer thyself to be stupified by folly when thou art

---

* The Bengal reading 'mrishtāçcha vārinā' is incorrect. The Bombay reading 'mrishtāsya vārinah' is correct.—T.

† The word 'kavi,' used in this verse, means Agni or fire, as explained by the Commentator. One of the Vernacular translators wrongly takes it as implying the preceptor Cukra.—T.

not ignorant of the fact that a superior Brāhmana is the protector of all creatures in the world and is, indeed, the creator of the living world ?[14] The Lord of all creatures, Brahman, unmanifest, endued with puissance, and of unfading glory, who created this boundless universe with its mobile and immobile creatures, (is a Brāhmana).[15] Some persons there are, destitute of wisdom, who say that Brahman was born of an Egg. From the original Egg, when it burst forth, mountains and the points of the compass and the waters and the Earth and the Heavens all sprang forth into existence.[16] This birth of the creation was not seen by any one. How then can Brahman be said to have taken his birth from the original egg, when especially he is declared as Unborn ? It is said that vast increate Space is the original Egg. It was from this increate Space (or Supreme Brahma) that the Grandsire was born.[17] If thou askest—Whereon would the Grandsire, after his birth from increate Space, rest, for there was then nothing else ?—the answer may be given in the following words. There is an existent Being of the name of Consciousness. That mighty Being is endued with great energy.[18] There is no Egg. Brahman, however, is existent. He is the Creator of the universe and is its King !—Thus addressed by the god of wind, king Arjuna remained silent.' "*[19]

Section CLIV.

" 'The god of wind said,—Once on a time, O king, a ruler of the name of Anga desired to give away the whole Earth as sacrificial present unto the Brāhmanas. At this, the Earth became filled with anxiety.[1]—I am the daughter of Brahman. I hold all creatures. Having obtained me, alas, why does this foremost of kings wish to give me away unto the Brāhmanas ?[2] Abandoning my character as the soil, I shall now repair to the presence of my sire. Let this king with all his kingdom meet with destruction !—Arrived at this conclusion, she departed

---

* The last Verse, as read in the Bengal texts, is vicious. 'Nāstyandam astitu Brahmā &c.,' is the correct reading.—T.

for the region of Brahman.[3] The Rishi Kaçyapa, beholding the goddess Earth on the point of departing, himself immediately entered the visible embodiment of the goddess, casting off his own body, by the aid of Yoga.[4] The earth, thus penetrated by the spirit of Kaçyapa, grew in prosperity and became full of all kinds of vegetable produce. Indeed, O king, for the time that Kaçyapa pervaded the earth, Righteousness became foremost everywhere and all fears ceased.[5] In this way, O king, the earth remained penetrated by the spirit of Kaçyapa for thirty thousand celestial years, fully alive to all those functions which it used to discharge while it was penetrated by the spirit of Brahman's daughter.[6] Upon the expiration of this period, the goddess returned from the region of Brahman and arrived here bowed unto Kaçyapa and from that time became the daughter of that Rishi.[7] Kaçyapa is a Brāhmana. Even this was the feat, O king, that a Brāhmana did. Tell me the name of the Kshatriya who can be held to be superior to Kaçyapa![8]—Hearing these words, king Arjuna remained silent. Unto him the god of wind once more said,—Hear now, O king, the story of Utathya who was born in the race of Angiras.[9] The daughter of Soma, named Bhadrā, came to be regarded as unrivalled in beauty. Her sire Soma regarded Utathya to be the fittest of husbands for her.[10] The famous and highly blessed maiden of faultless limbs, observing diverse vows, underwent the severest austerities from the desire of obtaining Utathya for her lord.[11] After a while, Soma's father Atri, inviting Utathya to his house, bestowed upon him the famous maiden. Utathya, who used to give away sacrificial presents in copious measure, duly received the girl for his wife.[12] It so happened, however, that the handsome Varuna had, from a long time before, coveted the girl. Coming to the woods where Utathya dwelt, Varuna stole away the girl when she had plunged into the Yamunā for a bath.[13] Abducting her thus, the Lord of the waters took her to his own abode. That mansion was of wonderful aspect. It was adorned with six hundred thousand lakes.[14] There is no mansion that can be regarded more beautiful than that palace of Varuna. It was adorned with many palaces and by

the presence of diverse tribes of Apsaras and of diverse excellent articles of enjoyment.[15] There, within that palace, the Lord of waters, O king, sported with the damsel. A little while after, the fact of the ravishment of his wife was reported to Utathya. Indeed, having heard all the facts from Nārada, Utathya addressed the celestial Rishi, saying,[16]—Go, O Nārada, unto Varuna and speak with due severity unto him. Ask him as to why he has abducted my wife, and, indeed, tell him in my name that he should yield her up![17] Thou mayst tell him further,—Thou art a protector of the worlds, O Varuna, and not a destroyer! Why then hast thou abducted my wife bestowed upon me by Soma?[18]—Thus requested by Utathya, the celestial Rishi Nārada repaired to where Varuna was and addressing him, said,—Do thou set free the wife of Utathya! Indeed, why hast thou abducted her?[19]—Hearing these words of Nārada, Varuna replied unto him, saying,—This timid girl is exceedingly dear to me. I dare not let her go![20]—Receiving this reply, Nārada repaired to Utathya and cheerlessly told him,[21]—O great ascetic, Varuna has driven me from his house, seizing me by the throat. He is unwilling to restore to thee thy spouse. Do thou act as thou pleasest![22]—Hearing these words of Nārada, Angiras became inflamed with wrath. Endued with wealth of penances, he solidified the waters and drank them off, aided by his energy.[23] When all the waters were thus drunk off, the Lord of that element became very cheerless with all his friends and kinsfolk. For all that, he did not still give up Utathya's wife.[24] Then Utathya, that foremost of regenerate persons, filled with wrath, commanded Earth, saying,—O amiable one, do thou show land where there are at present the six hundred thousand lakes![25]—At these words of the Rishi, the Ocean receded from the spot indicated, and land appeared which was exceedingly sterile. Unto the rivers that flowed through that region, Utathya said,[26]—O Saraswati, do thou become invisible here. Indeed, O timid lady, leaving this region, go thou to the desert! O auspicious goddess, let this region, destitute of thee, cease to become sacred.[27] When that region (in which the lord of waters dwelt) became dry, he repaired

to Angirasa, taking with him Utathya's spouse, and made her over to him.[28] Getting back his wife, Utathya became cheerful. Then, O chief of the Haihaya race, that great Brāhmana rescued both the universe and the Lord of waters from the situation of distress into which he had brought them.[29] Conversant with every duty, the Rishi Utathya of great energy, after getting back his spouse, O king, said unto Varuna,[30]—I have recovered my wife, O Lord of waters, with the aid of my penances and after inflicting such distress on thee as made thee cry aloud in anguish !—Having said this, he went home, with that wife of his.[31] Even such, O king, was Utathya, that foremost of Brāhmanas. Shall I go on ? Or, will you yet persist in thy opinion ? What, is there a Kshatriya that is superior to Utathya ?—' "[32]

SECTION CLV.

"Bhishma said,—'Thus addressed, king Arjuna remained silent. The god of wind once more spoke to him.—Listen now, O king, to the greatness of the Brāhmana Agastya.[1] Once on a time, the gods were subjugated by the Asuras upon which they became very cheerless. The sacrifices of the deities were all robbed, and the Swadhā of the Pitris was also misappropriated.[2] Indeed, O chief of the Haihayas, all the religious acts and observances of human beings also were suspended by the Dānavas. Divested of their prosperity, the deities wandered over the Earth as we have heard.[3] One day, in course of their wanderings, they met Agastya of high vows, that Brāhmana, O king, who was endued with great energy and splendour which was as blazing as that of the Sun.[4] Saluting him duly, the deities made the usual enquiries of politeness. They then, O king, said these words unto that high-souled one,[5]—We have been defeated by the Dānavas in battle, and have, therefore, fallen off from affluence and prosperity. Do thou, therefore, O foremost of ascetics, rescue us from this situation of great fear![6]—Thus informed of the plight to which the deities had been reduced, Agastya became highly incensed (with the Dānavas). Possessed of great

energy, he at once blazed forth like the all-consuming fire at the time of the universal dissolution.[7] With the blazing rays that then emanated from the Rishi, the Dānavas began to be burnt. Indeed, O king, thousands of them began to drop down from the welkin.[8] Burning with the energy of Agastya, the Dānavas, abandoning both Heaven and Earth, fled towards the southern direction.[9] At that time the Dānava king Vali was performing a Horse-sacrifice in the nether regions. Those great Asuras who were with him in those regions or who were dwelling in the bowels of the Earth, were not burnt.[10] The deities, upon the destruction of their foes, then regained their own regions, their fears entirely dispelled. Encouraged by what he accomplished for them, they then solicited the Rishi to destroy those Asuras who had taken refuge within the bowels of the Earth or in the nether regions.[11] Thus solicited by the gods, Agastya replied unto them, saying,—Yes, I am fully competent to consume those Asuras that are dwelling underneath the Earth; but if I achieve such a feat, my penances will suffer a diminution. Hence, I shall not exert my power![12]—Even thus, O king, were the Dānavas consumed by the illustrious Rishi with his own energy. Even thus did Agastya of cleansed soul, O monarch, accomplish that feat with the aid of his penances.[13] O sinless one, even so was Agastya as described by me! Shall I continue? Or, will you say anything in reply? Is there any Kshatriya who is greater than Agastya?—'[14]

"Bhishma continued,—'Thus addressed, king Arjuna remained silent. The god of wind once more said,—Hear, O king, one of the great feats of the illustrious Vaçishtha.[15] Once on a time the deities were engaged in performing a sacrifice on the shores of the lake Vaikhānasa. Knowing his puissance, the sacrificing gods thought of Vaçishtha and made him their priest in imagination.[16] Meanwhile, seeing the gods reduced and emaciated in consequence of the Dikshā they were undergoing, a race of Dānavas, of the name of Khalins, of statures as gigantic as mountains, desired to slay them.[17] Those amongst the Dānavas that were either disabled or slain in the fight were plunged into the waters of the Mānasa lake

and in consequence of the boon of the Grandsire they instantly came back to vigor and life.[18] Taking up huge and terrible mountain summits and maces and trees, they agitated the waters of the lake, causing them to swell up to the height of a hundred Yojanas.[19] They then ran against the deities numbering ten thousand. Afflicted by the Dānavas, the gods then sought the protection of their chief, Vāsava.[20] Cakra, however, was soon afflicted by them. In his distress he sought the protection of Vaçishtha. At this, the holy Rishi Vaçishtha assured the deities, dispelling their fears.[21] Understanding that the gods had become exceedingly cheerless, the ascetic did this through compassion. He put forth his energy and burnt, without any exertion, those Dānavas called Khalins.[22] Possessed of wealth of penances, the Rishi brought the River Gangā, who had gone to Kailāsa, to that spot. Indeed, Gangā appeared, piercing through the waters of the lake.[23] The lake was penetrated by that river. And as that celestial stream, piercing through the waters of the lake, appeared, it flowed on, under the name of Sarayu. The place whereon those Dānavas fell came to be called after them.[24] Even thus were the denizens of Heaven, with Indra at their head, rescued from great distress by Vaçishtha. It was thus that those Dānavas, who had received boons from Brahman, were slain by that high-souled Rishi.[25] O sinless one, I have narrated to thee the feat which Vaçishtha accomplished. Shall I go on? Or, will you say anything? Was there a Kshatriya who could be said to surpass the Brāhmana Vaçishtha?—' "[26]

Section CLVI.

"Bhishma said,—'Thus addressed, Arjuna remained silent. The god of wind once more addressed him, saying,—Hear me, O foremost one of the Haihayas, as I narrate to thee the achievement of the high-souled Atri![1] Once on a time as the gods and Dānavas were fighting each other in the dark, Rāhu pierced both Surya and Soma with his arrows.[2] The gods, overwhelmed by darkness, began to fall before the mighty Dānavas, O foremost of kings![3] Repeatedly struck by the

Asuras, the denizens of Heaven began to lose their strength. They then beheld the learned Brāhmana Atri, endued with wealth of penances, engaged in the observance of austerities.[4] Addressing that Rishi who had conquered all his senses and in whom wrath had been extinguished, they said,—Behold, O Rishi, these two, *viz.*, Soma and Surya, who have both been pierced by the Asuras with their arrows![5] In consequence of this, darkness has overtaken us, and we are being struck down by the foe. We do not see the end of our troubles! Do thou, O lord of great puissance, rescue us from this great fear!—[6]

"'—The Rishi said,—How, indeed, shall I protect you?—They answered, saying,—Do thou thyself become Chandramas! Do thou also become the Sun, and do thou begin to slay these robbers![7]—Thus solicited by them, Atri assumed the form of the darkness-destroying Soma. Indeed, in consequence of his agreeable disposition, he began to look as handsome and delightful as Soma himself.[8] Beholding that the real Soma and the real Surya had become darkened by the shafts of the foe, Atri, assuming the forms of those luminaries, began to shine forth in splendour over the field of battle, aided by the puissance of his penances.[9] Verily, Atri made the universe blaze forth in light, dispelling all its darkness. By putting forth his puissance, he also subjugated the vast multitudes of those enemies of the deities.[10] Beholding those great Asuras burnt by Atri, the gods also, protected by Atri's energy, began to despatch them quickly.[11] Putting forth his prowess and mustering all his energy, it was even in this way that Atri illumined the god of day, rescued the deities, and slew the Asuras![12] Even this was the feat that that regenerate one, aided by his sacred fire,—that silent reciter of Mantras, that one clad in deer-skins,—accomplished! Behold, O royal sage, the act achieved by that Rishi who subsisted upon fruits only![13] I have thus narrated to thee, in detail, the feat of the high-souled Atri. Shall I go on? Or, will you say anything? Is there a Kshatriya that is superior to this regenerate Rishi?'[14]

"'Thus addressed, Arjuna remained silent. The god of wind once more spoke unto him.—Hear, O king, the feat achieved by the high-souled Chyavana (in days of old).[15]

Having passed his promise to the twin Açwins, Chyavana addressed the chastiser of Pāka, saying,—Do thou make the Açwins drinkers of Soma with all the other deities !—[16]

" '—Indra said,—The Açwins have been cast away by us. How, then, can these be admitted into the sacrificial circle for drinking Soma with the others? They are not numbered with the deities. Do not, therefore, tell us so ![17] O thou of great vows, we do not wish to drink Soma in the company of the Açwins ! Whatever other behest thou mayst be pleased to utter, O learned Brāhmana, we are ready to accomplish !—[18]

" '—Chyavana said,—The twin Açwins shall drink Soma with all of you ! Both of them are gods, O chief of the deities, for they are the sons of Surya ![19] Let the gods do what I have said. By acting according to those words, the gods will reap great advantage. By acting otherwise, evil will overtake them !—[20]

" '—Indra said,—I shall not, O foremost of regenerate persons, drink Soma with the Açwins ! Let others drink with them as they please ! As regards myself, I dare not do it !—[21]

" '—Chyavana said,—If, O slayer of Vala, thou wilt not obey my words, thou shalt, this very day, drink Soma with them in sacrifice, compelled by me !—[22]

" 'The god of wind said,—Then Chyavana, taking the Açiwns with him, commenced a great religious rite for their benefit. The gods all became stupified by Chyavana with the aid of his Mantras.[23] Beholding that feat commenced by Chyavana, Indra became incensed with wrath. Taking up a huge mountain he ran against that Rishi.[24] The chief of the deities was also armed with the Thunder-bolt. Then the illustrious Chyavana, endued with penances, cast an angry glance upon Indra as he advanced.[25] Throwing a little water at him, he paralysed the chief of the deities with his Thunder-bolt and mountain. As the result of the religious rite he had commenced, he created a terrible Asura hostile to Indra.[26] Made of the libations he had poured on the sacred fire, that Asura was called Mada, of mouth gaping wide. Even such was the Asura that the great ascetic created with the aid of Mantras. There were a thousand teeth in his mouth, extending

for a hundred Yojanas.[27] Of terrible mien, his fangs were two hundred Yojanas in length. One of his cheeks rested on the Earth and the other touched the Heavens.[28] Indeed, all the gods with Vāsava seemed to stand at the root of that great Asura's tongue, even as fishes when they enter into the wide open mouth of a leviathan.[29] While standing within the mouth of Mada, the gods held a quick consultation and then addressing Indra, said,—Do thou soon bend thy head in reverence unto this regenerate personage![30] Freed from every scruple, we shall drink Soma with the Açwins in our company!—Then Cakra, bowing down his head unto Chyavana, obeyed his behest.[31] Even thus did Chyavana make the Açwins drinkers of Soma with the other gods. Calling back Mada, the Rishi then assigned him the acts he was to do.[32] That Soma was commanded to take up his residence in dice, in hunting, in drinking, and in women. Hence, O king, those men that betake themselves to these, meet with destruction, without doubt.[33] Hence, one should always cast off these faults to a great distance. Thus, O king, I have narrated to thee the feat achieved by Chyavana. Shall I go on? Or, will you say anything in reply? Is there a Kshatriya that is higher than the Brāhmana Chyavana?—' "[34-35]

SECTION CLVII.

"Bhishma said,—'Hearing these words of the god of wind, Arjuna remained silent. At this, the god of wind once more addressed him, saying,—When the denizens of Heaven, with Indra at their head, found themselves within the mouth of the Asura Mada, at that time, Chyavana took away from them the Earth.[1-2] Deprived previously of Heaven and now shone of the Earth also, the gods became very cheerless. Indeed, those high-souled ones, afflicted with grief, then threw themselves unreservedly upon the Grandsire's protection.[3]

" 'The gods said,—O thou that art adored by all creatures of the universe, the Earth has been taken away from us by Chyavana, while we have been deprived of Heaven by the Kapas, O puissant one!—[4]

"'—Brahman said,—Ye denizens of Heaven, do you, with Indra at your head, repair quickly and seek the protection of the Brāhmanas. By gratifying them you will succeed in regaining both the regions as before![5]—Thus instructed by the Grandsire, the deities repaired to the Brāhmanas and became suppliants for their protection. The Brāhmanas replied, enquiring,—Whom shall we subjugate?—Thus asked, the deities said unto them,—Do ye subjugate the Kapas![6]—The Brāhmanas then said,—Bringing them down on the Earth first, we shall speedily subjugate them!—After this, the Brāhmanas commenced a rite having for its object the destruction of the Kapas. As soon as this was heard of by the Kapas, they immediately despatched a messenger of theirs, named Dhani, unto those Brāhmanas.[7] Dhani, coming to them as they sat on the Earth, thus delivered to them the message of the Kapas,—The Kapas are even like you all! (They are not inferior to any of you). Hence, what will be the effect of these rites which you seem to be bent upon achieving?[8] All of them are well conversant with the Vedas and possessed of wisdom. All of them are mindful of sacrifices. All of them have Truth for their vow, and for these reasons all of them are regarded as equal to great Rishis.[9] The goddess of Prosperity sports among them, and they, in their turn, support her with reverence. They never indulge in acts of fruitless congress with their wives, and they never eat the flesh of such animals as have not been killed in sacrifices.[10] They pour libations on the blazing sacrificial fire (every day) and are obedient to the behests of their preceptors and seniors. All of them are of souls under perfect control, and never take any food without dividing it duly among their children.[11] They always proceed on cars and other vehicles together (without any of them riding his own vehicle while others journey on foot). They never indulge in acts of congress with their spouses when the latter are in the midst of their functional period. They all act in such a way as to attain to regions of felicity hereafter. Indeed, they are always righteous in their deeds.[12] When women quick with child, or old men have not eaten, they never eat anything themselves. They never indulge in

play or sports of any kind in the forenoon. They never sleep during the day.[13] When the Kapas have these and many other virtues and accomplishments, why, indeed, would you seek to subjugate them? You should abstain from the endeavour! Verily, by such abstention ye would achieve what is for your good!—[14]

"'The Brāhmanas said,—Oh, we shall subjugate the Kapas! In this matter, we are at one with the deities. Hence, the Kapas deserve slaughter at our hands. As regards Dhanin, he should return whence he came![15]—After this, Dhanin, returning to the Kapas, said unto them,—The Brāhmanas are not disposed to do you any good!—Hearing this, all the Kapas took up their weapons and proceeded towards the Brāhmanas.[16] The Brāhmanas, beholding the Kapas advancing against them with the standards of their cars upraised, forth with created certain blazing fires for the destruction of the life-breaths of the Kapas.[17] Those eternal fires, created with the aid of Vedic Mantras, having effected the destruction of the Kapas, began to shine in the firmament like so many (golden) clouds.[18] The gods, having assembled together in battle, slew many of the Dānavas. They did not know at that time that it was the Brāhmanas who had effected their destruction.[19] Then Nārada of great energy, coming there, O king, informed the deities how their foes, the Kapas, had been really slain by the Brāhmanas of mighty energy (and not by the deities themselves).[20] Hearing these words of Nārada, the denizens of Heaven became highly gratified. They also applauded those regenerate allies of theirs that were possessed of great fame.[21] The energy and prowess of the deities then began to increase, and worshipped in all the worlds, they acquired also the boon of immortality![22]—After the god of wind had said these words, king Arjuna worshipped him duly and addressing him answered in these words. Hear, O mighty armed monarch, what Arjuna said!'—[23]

"'Arjuna said,—O puissant god, always and by all means do I live for the Brāhmanas! Devoted to them, I worship them always![24] Through the grace of Dattātreya I have obtained this might of mine! Through his grace I have been able to

accomplish great feats in the world and achieve high merit![25] Oh, I have, with attention, heard the achievements, O god of wind, of the Brāhmanas with all their interesting details as recited by thee truly!—[26]

"'The god of wind said,—Do thou protect and cherish the Brāhmanas, in the exercise of those Kshatriya duties which are thine by birth. Do thou protect them even as thou protectest thy own senses! There is danger to thee from the race of Bhrigu! All that, however, will take place on a distant day!—'"[27]

SECTION CLVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Thou always worshippest, O king, Brāhmanas of praiseworthy vows. What, however, is that fruit seeing which thou worshippest them, O king?[1] O thou of high vows, beholding what prosperity attaching to the worship of the Brāhmanas dost thou worship them? Tell me all this, O thou of mighty arms!'[2]

"Bhishma said,—Here is Keçava endued with great intelligence. He will tell thee everything. Of high vows and endued with prosperity, even he will tell you what the prosperity is that attaches to the worship of Brāhmanas.[3] My strength, ears, speech, mind, eyes, and that clear understanding of mine, (are all clouded today). I think the time is not distant when I shall have to cast off my body. The Sun seems to me to go very slowly.*[4] Those high duties, O king, that are mentioned in the Purānas as observed by Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Çudras, have all been recited by me. Do thou, O son of Prithā, learn from Krishna what little remains to be learnt on that head![5] I know Krishna truly. I know who he is and what his ancient might is. O chief of the Kauravas, Keçava is of immeasurable soul. Whenever doubts arise, it is he who upholds Righteousness then.†[6]

---

* To an afflicted person the day seem long.—T.

† The sense is that it is this Keçava who upholds the cause of Righteousness when dangers overtake it. Comp. 'Yadā yadā hi Dharmasya

It is Krishna who created the Earth welkin, and Heaven. Indeed, the Earth has sprung from Krishna's body. Of terrible prowess and existing from the beginning of time, it is Krishna who became the mighty Boar and raised the submerged Earth. It is He who created all the points of the compass, together with all the mountains.[7] Below Him are the welkin, Heaven, the four cardinal points, and the four subsidiary poits. It is from Him that the entire creation has flowed. It is He who has created this ancient universe.[8] In His navel appeared a Lotus. Within that Lotus sprang Brahman himself of immeasurable energy. It was Brahman, O son of Prithā, who rent that darkness which existed surpassing the very ocean (in depth and extent).[9] In the Krita age, O Pārtha, Krishna existed (on the Earth) in the form of Righteousness. In the Tretā age, he existed in the form of Knowledge. In the Dwāpara age, he existed in the form of might. In the Kali age he came to the Earth in the form of unrighteousness.[10] It is He who in days of yore slew the Daityas. It is He who is the Ancient God. It is He who ruled the Asuras in the form of their Emperor (Valin). It is He who is the Creator of all beings. It is He who is also the future of all created Beings. It is He who is also the protector of this universe fraught with the seed of destruction.[11] When the cause of Righteousness languishes, this Krishna takes birth in the race of either the gods or among men. Staying on Righteousness, this Krishna of cleansed soul (on such occasions) protects both the higher and the lower worlds.[12] Sparing those that deserve to be spared, Krishna sets himself to the slaughter of the Asuras, O Pārtha! It is he who is all acts proper and improper and it is he who is the cause. It is Krishna who is the act done, the act to be done, and the act that is being done. Know that that illustrious one is Rāhu and Soma and Cakra.[13] It is he that is Viçwakarman. It is he that is of universal form. He is the destroyer and he is the Creator of the universe. He is the wielder of the Cula (lance);

&c.' in the Gitā. It does not mean that when doubts are entertained by persons on questions of morality, it is Keçava who dispels them.—T.

He is of human form ; and He is of terrible form. All creatures sing his praises, for he is known by his acts.[14] Hundreds of Gandharvas and Apsaras and deities always accompany him. The very Rākshasas hymn his praises. He is the Enhancer of Wealth ; He is the one victorion Being in the universe.[15] In Sacrifices, eloquent men hymn His praises. The singers of Sāmans praise him by reciting the Rathantaras. The Brāhmanas praise him with Vedic Mantras. It is unto him that the sacrificial priests pour their libations.[16] The deities with Indra at their head hymned his praises when he lifted up the Gobardhana mountains for protecting the cowherds of Brindāvan against the incessant showers that Indra poured in rage. He is, O Bhārata, the one Blessing unto all creatures. He, O Bhārata, having entered the old Brahma-cave, beheld from that place the original cover of the world in the beginning of Time.*[17] Agitating all the Dānavas and the Asuras, this Krishna of foremost feats rescued the Earth. It is unto Him that people dedicate diverse kinds of food. It is unto Him that the warriors dedicate all kinds of their vehicles at the time of war.[18] He is eternal, and it is under that illustrious one that the welkin, Earth, Heaven, all things exist and stay. He it was who caused the vital seed of the gods Mitra and Varuna to fall within a jar, whence sprang the Rishi known by the name of Vaçishtha.[19] It is Krishna who is the god of wind ; it is he who is the puissant Açwins ; it is he who is that first of gods, *viz.*, the Sun possessed of a thousand rays. It is he by whom the Asuras have been subjugated. It is he who covered the three worlds with three steps of his.[20] He is the soul of the deities and human beings, and Pitris. It is he who is the Sacrifice performed by those persons that are conversant with the rituals of sacrifices. It is he who rises every day in the firmament (in the form of the Sun) and divides Time into day and night, and courses for half the year northwards and for half the year southwards.[21] Innumerable rays of light emanate from him upwards and downwards and transversely and illumine the Earth. Brāhmanas conversant with the

* Refers to the existence of Brahma when all else is nought.—T.

Vedas adore him. Taking a portion of his rays the Sun shines in the firmament.[22] Month after month, the sacrificer ordains him as a sacrifice. Regenerate persons conversant with the Vedas sing his praises in sacrifices of all kinds. He it is that constitutes the wheel of the year, having three naves and seven horses to drag it. It is in this way that he supports the triple mansion (of the seasons).[23] Endued with great energy, pervading all things, the foremost of all creatures, it is Krishna who alone upholds all the worlds. He is the Sun, the dispeller of all darkness. He is the Creator of all. Do thou, O hero, approach that Krishna![24] Once on a time, the high-souled and puissant Krishna dwelt, for a while, in the form of Agni in the forest of Khāndava among some straw or dry grass. Soon was he gratified (for he consumed all the medicinal herbs in that forest). Capable of going everywhere at will, it was Krishna who, having subjugated the Rākshasas and Uragas, poured them as libations upon the blazing fire.[25] It is Krishna who gave unto Arjuna a number of white steeds. It is he who is the creator of all steeds. This world (or, human life) represents his car. He it is that yokes that car for setting it in motion. That car has three wheels (*viz.*, the three attributes of Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas).[26] It has three kinds of motion (for it goes upwards or downwards or transversely, implying superior, inferior, and intermediate birth as brought about by acts). It has four steeds yoked to it, (*viz.*, Time, Predestiny, the will of the deities, and one's own will). It has three naves, (white, black, and mixed, implying good acts, evil acts, and acts that are of a mixed character).[27] It is this Krishna who is the refuge of the five original elements with the sky among them. It is he who created the Earth and Heaven and the space between. Indeed, it is this Krishna of immeasurable and blazing energy who has created the forests and the mountains. It is this Krishna who, desirous of chastising Cakra who was about to hurl his thunder at him, crossed the rivers and at once paralysed him. He is the one great Indra that is adored by the Brāhmanas in great sacrifices with the aid of a thousand old Richs.[28] It was this Krishna, O king, who alone was able to

keep the Rishi Durvāsas of great energy as a guest for sometime in his house. He is said to be the one ancient Rishi. He is the Creator of the universe. Indeed, he creates everything from his own nature.[29] Superior to all the deities, it is he who teaches all the deities. He scrupulously observes all ancient ordinances. Know, O king, that this Krishna, who is called Viçwaksena, is the fruit of all acts that relate to pleasure, of all acts that are founded on the Vedas, and of all acts that appertain to the world.[30] He is the white rays of light that are seen in all the worlds. He is the three worlds. He is the three Regents of all the worlds. He is the three sacrificial fires. He is the three Vyāhritis; indeed, this son of Devaki is all the gods together.[31] He is the Year; He is the Seasons; He is the Fortnights; He is the Day and the Night; He is those divisions of time which are called Kalās, and Kāshthās, and Mātras, and Muhurtas, and Lavas, and Kshanas. Know that this Vishwaksena is all these.[32] The Moon and the Sun, the Planets, the Constellations, and the Stars, all the Parva days, including the day of the full moon, the conjunctions of the constellations, and the seasons, have, O son of Prithā, flowed from this Krishna who is Vishwaksena.[33] The Rudras, the Ādityas, the Vasus, the Açwins, the Sādhyas the Viçwedevas, the diverse Maruts, Prajāpati himself, the mother of the deities, *viz.*, Aditi, and the seven Rishis, have all sprung from Krishna.[34] Transforming himself into the Wind, he scatters the universe. Of universal form, he becomes Fire that burns all things. Changing himself into Water, he drenches and submerges all, and assuming the form of Brahman, he creates all the diverse tribes of animate and inanimate creatures.[35] He is himself the Veda, yet he learns all the Vedas. He is himself all the ordinances, yet he observes all the ordinances that have been laid down in matters connected with Righteousness and the Vedas and that force or might which rules the world. Indeed, know, O Yudhishthira, that this Keçava is all the mobile and immobile universe.[36] He is of the form of the most resplendent light. Of universal form, this Krishna is displayed in that blazing effulgence. The original cause of the soul of all existent creatures, he at first

created the waters. Afterwards he created this universe.[37] Know that this Krishna is Vishnu. Know that he is the soul of all the universe. Know that he is all the seasons; he is these diverse wonderful visitations of Nature which we see; he is the clouds that pour rain and the lightning that flashes in the sky. He is the elephant Airāvata. In fact, he is all the immobile and mobile universe.[38] The abode of the universe and transcending all attributes, this Krishna is Vāsudeva. When he becomes Jiva he comes to be called Sankarshana. Next, he transforms himself into Pradyumna and then into Aniruddha. In this way, the high-souled Krishna, who has himself for his origin, divides (or displays) himself in fourfold form.[39] Desirous of creating this universe which consists of the fivefold primal elements, he sets himself to his task, and causes it to go on in the fivefold form of animate existence consisting of deities and Asuras and human beings and beasts and birds. He it is that then creates the Earth and the Wind, the Sky, Light, and also Water, O son of Prithā![40] Having created this universe of immobile and mobile objects distributed into four orders of being (*viz.*, viviparous, oviparous, vegetable, and filth-born), he then created the Earth with her fivefold seed. He then created the firmament for pouring copious showers of water on the Earth.*[41] Without doubt, O king, it is this Krishna who has created this universe. His origin in his own self; it is he who causes all things to exist through his own puissance. He it is that has created the deities, the Asuras, the human beings, the worlds, the Rishis, the Pitris, and all creatures. Desirous of creating, that Lord of all creatures duly created the whole universe of life. Know that good and evil, mobile and immobile, have all flowed from this one who is Vishwaksena. Whatever exists, and whatever will spring into existence, all is Keçava. This Krishna is also the death that overtakes all creatures when their end comes. He is eternal and it is he who upholds the cause of Righteousness. Whatever existed

* The fivefold seed consists of the four orders of creatures and acts which determine the conditions of all Beings.—T. .

in the past, and whatever we do not know, verily, all that also is this Vishwaksena.[42-44] Whatever is noble and meritorious in the universe, indeed, whatever of good and of evil exists, all that is Keçava who is inconceivable. Hence, it is absurd to think of anything that is superior to Keçava.[45] Keçava is even such. More than this. He is Nārāyana, the highest of the high, immutable and unfading. He is the eternal and immutable cause of the entire mobile and immobile universe with its beginning, middle, and end, as also of all creatures whose birth follows their wish!' "[46]

SECTION CLIX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Do thou tell us, O slayer of Madhu, what the prosperity is that attaches to the worship of the Brāhmanas! Thou art well conversant with this topic. Verily, our grandsire knows thee!'[1]

"Vāsudeva said,—'Hear, O king, with rapt attention, to me, O chief of Bharata's race, as I recite to thee what the merits of the Brāhmanas are, in accordance with truth, O foremost one of Kuru's race![2] Once on a time while I was seated at Dwārāvati, O delighter of the Kurus, my son Pradyumna, enraged by certain Brāhmanas, came to me and said,[3]—O slayer of Madhu, what merit attaches to the worship of the Brāhmanas? Whence is their lordship derived both here and hereafter?[4] O giver of honors, what rewards are won by constantly worshipping the Brāhmanas? Do thou kindly explain this clearly to me, for my mind is disturbed by doubts in respect of this![5]—When these words were addressed to me by Pradyumna, I answered him as follows. Do thou hear, O king, with close attention, what those words were![6]—O child of Rukmini, listen to me as I tell thee what the prosperity is that one may win by worshipping the Brāhmanas! When one sets oneself to the acquisition of the well-known aggregate of three (*viz.*, Righteousness, Wealth, and Pleasure), or to the acquisition of Emancipation, or to that of fame and prosperity, or to the treatment and cure of disease, or to the worship of the deities and the Pitris, one should take care

to gratify the regenerate ones. They are each a king Soma (that sheds such agreable light in the firmament). They are the dispensers of happiness and misery.[7-8] O child of Rukmini, whether in this or in the next world, O son, everything agreeable has its origin in the Brāhmanas. I have no doubt in this![9] From the worship of the Brāhmanas flow mighty achievements and fame and strength. The denizens of all the worlds, and the Regents of the universe, are all worshippers of Brāhmanas.[10] How then, O son, can we disregard them, filled with the idea that we are lords of the Earth? O mighty-armed one, do not suffer thy wrath to embrace the Brāhmanas as its object.[11] In this as also the next world, Brāhmanas are regarded as great Beings. They have direct knowledge of everything in the universe. Verily, they are capable of reducing everything into ashes, if angry.[12] They are capable of creating other worlds and other Regents of worlds (than those that exist). Why then should not persons who are possessed of energy and correct knowledge behave with obedience and respect towards them?[13] Formerly in my house, O son, dwelt the Brāhmana Durvāsas whose complexion was green and tawny. Clad in rags, he had a stick made of the Vilwa tree.* His beard was long and he was exceedingly emaciated.[14] He was taller in stature than the tallest man on Earth. Wandering over all the worlds, *viz.*, that which belongs to human beings and those that are for the deities and other superior beings,[15] even this was the verse which he sang constantly among assemblies and in public squares.—Who is there that would cause the Brāhmana Durvāsas to dwell in his house, doing the duties of hospitality towards him?[16] He becomes enraged with every one if he finds even the slightest transgression! Hearing this regarding my disposition, who is there that will give me refuge?[17] Indeed, he that would give me shelter as a guest should not do anything to anger me!—When I saw that no one ventured to give him shelter in his house, I invited him and caused him to take up his residence in my abode.[18] On certain days he would eat the food suffi-

---

* *Ægle marmelos, Linn.*—T.

cient for the needs of thousands of persons. On certain other days he would eat very little. On some days he would go out of my house and would not return.[19] He would sometimes laugh without any ostensible reason and sometimes cry as causelessly. At that time there was nobody on Earth that was equal to him in years.[20] One day, entering the quarters that were assigned to him, he burnt all the beds and coverlets and all the well-adorned damsels that were there for serving him. Doing this, he went out.[21] Of highly praiseworthy vows, he met me shortly after this and addressing me, said,—O Krishna, I wish to eat frumenty without delay![22]—Having understood his mind previously, I had set my servants to prepare every kind of food and drink.[23] Indeed, many excellent viands had been kept ready. As soon as I was asked, I caused hot frumenty to be brought and offered to the ascetic.[24] Having eaten some, he quickly said unto me,—Do thou, O Krishna, take some of this frumenty and smear all thy limbs with it![25] —Without any scruple I did as directed. Indeed, with the remnant of that frumenty I smeared my body and head.[26] The ascetic at that time saw thy mother of sweet face standing near. Laughing the while, he smeared her body also with that frumenty.[27] The ascetic then caused thy mother, whose body was smeared over with frumenty, to be yoked unto a car without any delay. Ascending that car he set out of my house.[28] Endued with great intelligence, that Brāhmana blazed with effulgence like fire, and struck, in my presence, my Rukmini endued with youth, as if she were an animal destined to drag the cars of human beings.[29] Beholding this, I did not feel the slightest grief born of malice or the desire to injure the Rishi. Indeed, having yoked Rukmini to the car, he went out, desirous of proceeding along the high road of the city.[30] Seeing that extraordinary sight, some Dāçārhas, filled with wrath, addressed one another and began to converse in this way;[31]—Who else is there on Earth that would draw breath after having yoked Rukmini to a car! Verily, let the world be filled with Brāhmanas only! Let no other orders take birth here![32] The poison of a virulent snake is exceedingly keen. Keener than poison is a Brāhmana. There is no

physician for a person that has been bit or burnt by the virulent snake of a Brāhmana.[33]—As the irresistible Durvāsas proceeded on the car, Rukmini totered on the road and frequently fell down. At this the regenerate Rishi became angry and began to urge Rukmini on by striking her with the whip.[34] At last, filled with a towering passion, the Brāhmana leapt down from the car, and fled towards the south, running on foot, over a pathless ground.[35] Beholding that foremost of Brāhmanas flying along the pathless ground, we followed him, although we were smeared with frumenty, exclaiming behind him,—Be gratified with us, O holy one![36]—Endued with great energy, the Brāhmana, seeing me, said,—O mighty-armed Krishna, thou hast subdued wrath by the strength of thy nature![37] O thou of excellent vows, I have not found the slightest fault in thee! O Govinda, I have been highly gratified with thee. Do thou solicit the fruition of such wishes as thou pleasest![38] Behold duly, O son, what the puissance is of myself when I become gratified with any one. As long as deities and human beings will continue to entertain a liking for food, so long will every one among them cherish the same liking for thee that they cherish for their food! As long, again, as there will be Righteousness in the several worlds, so long will the fame of thy achievements last![39-40] Indeed, thy distinction will last so long in the three worlds! O Janārddana, agreeable thou shalt be to all persons![41] Whatever articles of thine have been broken or burnt or otherwise destroyed (by me), thou shalt see restored, O Janārddana, to their former state or they will reappear even in a better form![42]—As long again, O thou of unfading glory, as thou wilt wish to live, so long wilt thou have no fear of death assailing thee through such parts of thy body as have been smeared with the frumenty I gave thee![43] O son, why didst thou not smear that frumenty on the soles of thy feet as well? By not doing it, then has acted in a way that is not approved by me!—Even these were the words that he said, well pleased with me on that occasion. After he had ceased speaking, I saw that my body became endued with great beauty and splendour.[44] Unto Rukmini also, the Rishi, well pleased with

her, said,—O beautiful lady, thou shalt be the foremost one of thy sex in fame, and great glory and achievements will be thine. Decrepitude or disease or loss of complexion will never be thine![45] Every one will see thee engaged in waiting upon Krishna, possessed as thou already art with a fragrant odor which is always present in thee.[46] Thou shalt become the foremost of all spouses, numbering sixteen thousand, of Keçava. At last, when the time comes for thy departure from the world, thou shalt attain to the inseparable companionship of Krishna hereafter![47]—Having said these words unto thy mother, the Rishi once more addressed me and uttering the following words, left the spot. Indeed, the Rishi Durvāsas, blazing like a fire, said,[48]—O Keçava, let thy understanding be always disposed even thus towards the Brāhmanas!—Verily after uttering these words, that Brāhmana disappeared there and then before my eyes.[49] After his disappearance, I took to the observance of the vow of uttering certain Mantras silently without being heard by anybody. Verily, from that day I resolved to accomplish whatever behests I should receive from the Brāhmanas.[50] Having adopted this vow, O son, along with thy mother, both of us, with hearts filled with joy re-entered our palace.[51] Entering our house I saw that everything which the Rishi had broken or burnt had reappeared and become new.[52] Beholding those new articles, which had besides become more durable, I became filled with wonder. Verily, O son of Rukmini, from that day forth I have always worshipped the Brāhmanas in my mind![53]—Even this, O chief of Bharata's race, is what I said on that occasion regarding the greatness of those Brāhmanas who are the foremost of their order.[54] Do thou also, O son of Kunti, worship the highly blessed Brāhmanas every day with gifts of wealth and kine, O puissan one![55] It was in this way that I acquired the prosperity I enjoy—the prosperity that is born of the grace of Brāhmanas. Whatever, again, Bhishma has said of me, O chief of the Bharatas, is all true!"[56]

Section CLX.

"Yudhishthira said,—'It behooveth thee, O slayer of Madhu, to expound to me that knowledge which thou hast acquired through the grace of Durvāsas![1] O foremost of all persons endued with intelligence, I desire to know everything about the high blessedness and all the names of that high-souled one truly and in detail!'*[2]

"Vāsudeva said,—I shall recite to thee the good that I have acquired and the fame that I have won through the grace of that high-souled one. Verily, I shall discourse to thee on the topic, after having bowed unto Kaparddin.[3] O king, listen to me as I recite to thee that Cata-Rudriya which I repeat, with restrained senses, every morning after rising from bed.[4] The great lord of all creatures, *viz.*, the Grandsire Brahman himself, endued with wealth of penances, composed those Mantras, after having observed especial penances for some time. O sire, it is Cankara who created all the creatures in the universe, mobile and immobile.[5] There is no being that is higher, O monarch, than Mahādeva. Verily, he is the highest of all beings in the three worlds.[6] There is no one who is capable of standing before that high-souled Being. Indeed, there is no Being in the three worlds that can be regarded as his equal.[7] When he stands, filled with rage, on the field of battle, the very scent of his person deprives all foes of consciousness and they that are not slain tremble and fall down.[8] His roars are terrible, resembling those of the clouds. Hearing those roars in battle, the very hearts of the deities break in twain.[9] When the wielder of Pināka becomes angry and assuming a terrible form merely casts his eye upon deity, Asura, Gandharva, or snake, that individual fails to obtain peace of mind by taking shelter in the recesses of even a mountain cave. When that lord of all creatures, *viz.*, Daksha, desirous of performing a sacrifice, spread his sacrifice out,[10-11] the dauntless Bhava, giving way to wrath (at Daksha's

---

* Durvāsas is regarded as a portion of Mahādeva. The question of Yudhishthira, therefore, really relates to Mahādeva although the name that occurs is of Durvāsas.—T.

slight of him), pierced (the embodied) sacrifice. Shooting his shaft from his terrible bow, he roared aloud.[12] Indeed, when Maheçwara became angry and suddenly pierced with his shaft the embodied form of sacrifice, the deities become filled with grief, losing happiness and tranquility of heart.[13] In consequence of the twang of his bowstring the whole universe became agitated. The deities and the Asuras, O son of Prithā, all became cheerless and stupefied.[14] The Ocean rolled in agitation and the Earth trembled to her centre. The hills and mountains began to move from their bases and ran on every side. The vault of the welkin became cracked.[15] All the worlds became enveloped in gloom. Nothing could be seen. The light of all the luminaries became darkened, along with that of the Sun himself, O Bhārata![16] The great Rishis, penetrated with fear and desirous of doing good to themselves and the universe, performed the usual rites of propitiation and peace.[17] Meanwhile, Rudra of terrible prowess rushed against the deities. Filled with rage, he tore out the eyes of Bhaga.[18] Incensed with wrath, he assailed Pushan with his foot. He tore out the teeth of that god as he sat employed in eating the large sacrificial ball (called Purodāça).[19] Trembling with fear, the deities bent their heads to Cankara. Without being appeased, Rudra once more placed on his bowstring a sharp and blazing arrow.[20] Beholding his prowess, the deities and the Rishis became all alarmed. Those foremost of gods began to pacify him.[21] Joining their hands in reverence, they began to recite the Cata-Rudriya Mantras. At last Maheçwara, thus praised by the deities, became gratified.[22] The deities then assigned a large share (of the sacrificial offerings) to him. Trembling with fear, O king, they sought his protection.[23] When Rudra became gratified, the embodiment of sacrifice, which had been pierced in twain, became once more united. Whatever limbs of his had been destroyed by the shafts of Mahādeva, became once more whole and sound.[24] The Asuras possessed of great energy had in days of yore three cities in the firmament. One of these had been made of iron; one of silver; and the third of gold.[25] With all his weapons, Maghavat, the chief of the deities, was unable to pierce those cities. Afflicted

by the Asuras, all the deities then sought the protection of the great Rudra.[26] Assembled together the high-souled deities addressed him, saying,—O Rudra, the Asuras threaten to exert their destructive influence in all acts![27] Do thou slay the Daityas and destroy their city for the protection of the three worlds, O giver of honors!—Thus addressed by them, he replied, saying,—So be it!—and then made Vishnu his excellent shaft-head.[28] He made the deity of fire his shaft-reed, and Surya's son Yama the wings of that shaft. He made the Vedas his bow and the goddess Sāvittri his excellent bow-string.[29] And he made the Grandsire Brahman his charioteer. Applying all these, he pierced the triple city of the Asuras with that shaft of his, consisting of three Parvans and three Calyas.*[30] Indeed, O Bhārata, the Asuras with their cities, were all burnt by Rudra with that shaft of his whose complexion was like that of the Sun and whose energy resembled that of the fire which appears at the end of the Yuga for consuming all things.[31] Beholding that Mahādeva transformed into a child with five locks of hair lying on the lap of Pārvati, the latter asked the deities as to who he was.[32] Seeing the child, Cakra became suddenly filled with jealousy and wrath and resolved to kill him with his thunder. The child, however, paralysed the arm, looking like a mace of iron, of Indra with the thunderbolt in it.[33] The deities all became stupefied, and they could not understand that that child was the Lord of the universe. Verily, all of them, along with the very Regents of the world, found their intellects stupefied in the matter of that child who was none else than the Supreme Being.[34] Then the illustrious Grandsire Brahman, reflecting with the aid of his penances, found out that that child was the foremost of all Beings, the lord of Umā, Mahādeva of immeasurable prowess. He then praised the Lord.[35] The deities also began to hymn the praises of both Umā and Rudra. The arm (which had been paralysed) of the slayer of Vala then became restored to its former state.[36] That Mahā-

* A Parvam is a knot. Reeds and bamboos consist of a series of knots. The space between two knots is called a Calya.—T.

deva, taking birth as the Brāhmana Durvāsas of great energy, resided for a long time at Dwārāvati in my house.[37] While residing in my abode he did diverse acts of mischief. Though difficult of being borne, I bore them yet from magnanimity of heart.[38] He is Rudra; he is Civa; he is Agni; he is Sarva; he is the vanquisher of all; he is Indra, and Vāyu, and the Açwins and the god of lightning.[39] He is Chandramas; he is Içāna; he is Surya; he is Varuna; he is Time; he is the Destroyer; he is Death; he is the Day and the Night;[40] he is the fortnight; he is the seasons; he is the two twilights; he is the year. He is Dhātri; and he is Vidhātri; and he is Viçwakarman; and he is conversant with all things.[41] He is the cardinal points of the compass and the subsidiary points also. Of universal form, he is of immeasurable soul. The holy and illustrious Durvāsas is of the complexion of the celestials.[42] He sometimes manifests himself singly; sometimes divides himself into two portions; and sometimes exhilits himself in many, a hundred, a thousand, a hundred thousand forms.[43] Even such is Mahādeva. He is, again, that god who is unborn. In even a hundred years one cannot exhaust his merits by recitating them.'"[44]

Section CLXI.

"Vāsudeva said,—'O mighty-armed Yudhishthira, listen to me as I recite to thee the many names of Rudra as also the high blessedness of that high-souled one.[1] The Rishis describe Mahādeva as Agni, and Sthānu, and Maheçwara; as one-eyed, and three-eyed, of universal form, and Civa or highly auspicious.[2] Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas say that that god has two forms. One of these is terrible, and the other mild and auspicious. Those two forms, again, are subdivided into many forms.[3] That form which is fierce and terrible is regarded as identical with Agni and Lightning and Surya. That other form which is mild and auspicious is identical with Righteousness and Water and Chandramas.[4] Then, again, it is said that half his body is fire and half is Soma (or the moon). That form of his which is mild and auspicious

is said to be engaged in the practice of the Brahmacharya vow.[5] That other form of his which is supremely terrible is engaged in all operations of destruction in the universe. Because he is great (Mahat) and the Supreme Lord of all (Içwara), therefore he is called Maheçwara.[6] And since he burns and oppresses, is keen and fierce, and endued with great energy, and is engaged in eating flesh and blood and marrow, he is said to be Rudra.[7] Since he is the foremost of all the deities, and since his dominion and acquisitions are very extensive, and since he protects the extensive universe, therefore he is called Mahādeva.[8] Since he is of the form or color of smoke, therefore he is called Dhurjjati. Since by all his acts he performs sacrifices for all[9] and seeks the good of every creature, therefore he is called Civa or the auspicious one. Staying above (in the welkin) he burns the lives of all creatures and is, besides, fixed in a particular route from which he does not deviate.[10] His emblem, again, is fixed and immovable for all time. He is, for these reasons, called Sthānu. He is also of multiform aspect. He is present, past, and future.[11] He is mobile and immobile. For this he is called Vahurupa (of multiform aspect). The deities called Viçwedevas reside in his body. He is, for this, called Viçwarupa (of universal form).[12] He is thousand-eyed; or, he is myriad-eyed; or, he has eyes on all sides and on every part of his body. His energy issues through his eyes. There is no end of his eyes.[13] Since he always nourishes all creatures and sports also with them, and since he is their lord or master, therefore is he called Paçupati (the lord of all creatures).[14] Since his emblem is always observant of the vow of Brahmacharya, all the worlds worship it accordingly. This act of worship is said to gratify him highly.[15] If there is one who worships him by creating his image, and another who worships his emblem, the latter it is that attains to great prosperity for ever.[16] The Rishis, the deities, the Gandharvas, and the Apsaras, worship that emblem of his which is ever erect and upraised.[17] If his emblem is worshipped, Maheçwara becomes highly gratified with the worshipper. Affectionate towards his devotees, he bestows happiness upon them with a cheerful soul.[18] This great god

loves to reside in crematoria and there he burns and consumes all corpses. Those persons that perform sacrifices on such grounds attain at the end to those regions which have been set apart for heroes.[19] Employed in his legitimate function, he it is that is regarded as the Death that resides in the bodies of all creatures. He is, again, those breaths called Prāna and Apāna in the bodies of all embodied beings.[20] He has many blazing and terrible forms. All those forms are worshipped in the world and are known to Brāhmanas possessed of knowledge.[21] Amongst the gods he has many names all of which are fraught with grave import. Verily, the meanings of those names are derived from either his greatness or vastness, or his feats, or his conduct.[22] The Brāhmanas always recite the excellent Cata-Rudriya in his honor, that occurs in the Vedas as also that which has been composed by Vyāsa.[23] Verily, the Brāhmanas and Rishis call him the eldest of all beings.[24] He is the first of all the deities, and it was from his mouth that he created Agni. That righteous-souled deity, ever willing to grant protection to all, never gives us his suppliants.[25] He would much rather abandon his own life-breaths and incur all possible afflictions himself. Long life, health and freedom from disease, affluence, wealth, diverse kinds of pleasures and enjoyments,[26] are conferred by him, and it is he also who snatches them away. The lordship and affluence that one sees in Cakra and the other deities are, verily, his.[27] It is he who is always engaged in all that is good and evil in the three worlds. In consequence of his fullest control over all objects of enjoyment he is called Içwara (the supreme Lord or Mater).[28] Since, again, he is the master of the vast universe, he is called Maheçwara. The whole universe is pervaded by him in diverse forms. It is that deity whose mouth roars and burns the waters of the sea in the form of the huge mare's head.' "*[29]

---

* The allusion is to the fiery mare's head which is supposed to wander through the ocean.—T.

Section CLXII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After Krishna, the son of Devaki, had said these words, Yudhishthira once more asked Bhishma the son of Cāntanu, saying,[1]—O thou of great intelligence, O foremost of all persons conversant with duties, which, indeed, of the two, direct perception and the scriptures, is to be regarded as authority for arriving at a conclusion ?'[2]

"Bhishma said,—'I think there is no doubt in this. Listen to me, O thou of great wisdom ! I shall answer thee ! The question thou hast asked is certainly proper. It is easy to cherish doubt. But the solution of that doubt is difficult.[3] Innumerable are the instances, in respect of both direct perception and audition (or the scriptures), in which doubts may arise. Certain persons, who delight in the name of logicians, verily imagining themselves to be possessed of superior wisdom, affirm that direct perception is the only authority.[4] They assert that nothing, however true, is existent which is not directly perceivable ; or, at least, they doubt the existence of those objects. Indeed, such assertions involve an absendity and they who make them are of foolish understanding, whatever their pride of learning.[5] If, on the other hand, thou doubt est as to how the one (indivisible Brahma) could be the cause, I answer that one would understand it only after a long course of years and with the assistance of Yoga practised without idleness.[6] Indeed, O Bhārata, one that lives according to such means as present themselves (without, *i. e.*, one's being wedded to this or that settled mode of life), and one that is devoted (to the solution of the question), would be capable of understanding it. None else, truly, is competent for comprehending it.[7] When one attains to the very end of reasons (or reasoning processes), one then attains to that excellent and all-comprehending knowledge—that vast mass of effulgence which illumines all the universe (called Brahma).[8] That knowledge, O king, which is derived from reason (or inferences) can scarcely be said to be knowledge. Such knowledge should be

rejected. It should be noted that it is not defined or comprehended by the Word. It should, therefore, be rejected.'*[9]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, which among these (four) is most authoritative, *viz.*, direct perception, Inference from observation, the science of Ágama or scriptures, and diverse kinds of practices that distinguish the good !'[10]

"Bhishma said,—'While Righteouesness is sought to be destroyed by wicked persons possessed of great might, it is capable of being protected for the time being by those that are good exerting themselves with care and earnestness. Such protection, however, avails not in the long run, for destruction does overtake Righteousness at the end.[11] Then, again, Righteousness often proves a mask for covering Unrighteousness, like grass and straw covering the mouth of a deep pit and concealing it from the view. Hear, again, O Yudhishthira ! In consequence of this, the practices of the good are interfered with and destroyed by the wicked.[12] Those persons who are of evil conduct, who discard the Crutis,—indeed, those wicked

---

* Verses 4 to 9 are extremely difficult. They represent so many cruces. Nilakantha, however, has shown great ingenuity in expounding them. In the first line of 4, 'drishtam' refers to 'pratyaksham,' and 'çrutam' to 'çruti' or 'āgama.' Hence, what is meant by the first line is,—'Innumerable are the cases of both direct perception and scriptural assertion in which doubts arise ;' or, as the Commentator puts it, 'there are instances in which the scriptures are regarded as more authoritative, and those in which direct perception is regarded as more authoritative.' In 5, the speaker refers to the atomic and other theories of the creation derived from Reason. Bhishma declares it as his opinion that all such theories are untenable or groundless. In the first line of 6, the word 'Ekam' implies 'Brahma.' The sense is, 'if thou thinkest that Brahma alone is the cause of the universe and in thinking so becomest landed on doubt.' The answer to this is that Yoga for a long course of years will enable thee to comprehend the sufficiency of unassisted Brahma to evolve the universe. In 7, 'anekām prānayātrām kalpamānena' refers to one who without leading any particular or settled mode of life lives just it suits him to live, that is, who leads the life of a religious mendicant never thinking of the morrow. In 9, 'anibaddham vāchā' implies what is not defined or indicated by the words of the Vedas or scriptures. The Burdwan Pundits have made a mess of the whole passage, or, rather, of nearly the whole of this section.—T.

wights who are haters of Righteousness,—destroy that good course of conduct (which could otherwise be set up as a standard). Hence, doubts attach to direct perception, Inference, and good conduct.*[13] Those, therefore, among the good that are possessed of understandings born of (or cleansed by) the scriptures and that are ever contented, are to be regarded as the foremost. Let those that are anxious and deprived of tranquility of soul, approach these. Indeed, O Yudhishthira, do thou pay court to them and seek of them the solutions of thy doubts!'†[14] Disregarding both Pleasure and Wealth which always follow cupidity and awakened into the belief that only Righteousness should be sought, do thou, O Yudhishthira, wait upon and ask those persons (for enlightening thyself).[15] The conduct of those persons never goes wrong or meets with destruction, as also their sacrifices and Vedic study and rites. Indeed, these three, *viz.*, conduct as consisting of overt acts, behaviour in respect of (mental) purity, and the Vedas together constitute Righteousness.'[16]

"Yudhishthira said,—'O grandsire, my understanding is once more stupefied by doubt. I am on this side the ocean, employed in searching after the means of crossing it. I do not, however, behold the other shore of the ocean![17] If these three, *viz.*, the Vedas, direct perception (or acts that are seen), and behaviour (or, mental purity) together constitute what is to be regarded as authority, it can be alleged that there is difference between each. Righteousness then, becomes really of three kinds, although it is one and indivisible.'[18]

"Bhishma said,—'Righteousness is sometimes seen to be destroyed by wicked wights of great power. If thou thinkest, O king, that Righteousness should really be of three kinds, I answer that thy conclusion is warranted by reason.[19] The

---

* 'Teshu' is equivalent to 'pratyakshānumānāchāreshu.' The sense, therefore, is that the three, *viz.*, direct perception, Inference, and good conduct being, for these reasons, fallible, the only infallible standard that remains, is audition or the scriptures, or, as Verse 14 puts it, men with understandings born of the scriptures.—T.

† 'Atripyantah' are men who like Yudhishthira are filled with anxiety as to what they should do. Seekers after the right are so called.—T.

truth is that Righteousness is one and indivisible, although it is capable of being viewed from three different points.[20] The paths (indications) of those three that constitute the foundation of Righteousness have each been laid down. Do thou act according to the instructions laid down. Thou shouldst never wrangle about Righteousness and then seek to have those doubts solved into which thou mayst arrive.[21] O chief of the Bharatas, let no doubts like these ever take possession of thy mind! Do thou obey what I say, without scruple of any kind. Follow me like a blind man or like one who, without being possessed of sense himself, has to depend upon that of another.[22] Abstention from injury, truth, absence of wrath (or forgiveness), and liberality or gifts,—these four, O king that hast no foe, do thou practise, for these four constitute eternal Righteousness![23] Do thou also, O mighty-armed prince, pursue that conduct towards the Brāhmanas which is consistant with what has been observed towards them by thy sires and grandsires! These are the principal indications of Righteousness.[24] That man of little intelligence who would destroy the weight of authority by denying that to be a standard which has always been accepted as such, would himself fail to become an authority among men. Such a man becomes the cause of much grief in the world.[25] Do thou reverence the Brāhmanas and treat them with hospitality. Do thou always serve them in this way. The universe rests on them. Do thou understand them to be such!"[26]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Tell me, O grandsire, what the respective ends are of those that hate Righteousness and of those that adore and observe it!'[27]

"Bhishma said,—'Those men that hate Righteousness are said to have their hearts overwhelmed by the attributes of passion and darkness. Such men have always to go to Hell.[28] Those men, on the other hand, O monarch, who always adore and observe Righteousness, those men who are devoted to truth and sincerity, are called good. They always enjoy the pleasures or felicity of Heaven.[29] In consequence of their waiting upon their preceptors with reverence, their hearts always turn towards Righteousness. Verily, they who adore Righteousness

attain to the regions of the deities.[30] Those individuals, whether human beings or deities, who divest themselves of cupidity and malice and who emaciate or afflict their bodies by the observance of austerities, succeed, in consequence of the Righteousness which then becomes theirs, to attain to great felicity.[31] Those that are gifted with wisdom have said that the Brāhmanas, who are the eldest sons of Brahman, represent Righteousness. They that are righteous always worship them, their hearts regarding them with as much love and affection as a hungry man's stomach entertains for ripe and delicious fruits.[32]

"Yudhishthira said,—'What is the appearance presented by those that are wicked, and what are those acts which they that are called good do? Explain to me this, O holy one! Indeed, tell me what the indications are of the good and the wicked.'[33]

"Bhishma said,—'They that are wicked, are evil in their practices, ungovernable or incapable of being kept within the restrainsts of rules, and foul-mouthed. They, on the other hand, that are good, are always good in their acts. Verily, the acts these men do are regarded as the indications of that course of conduct which is called good.[34] They that are good or righteous, O monarch, never answer the two calls of nature on the public road, or in the midst of a cowpen, or on a field of paddy.[35] After feeding the five they take their own food.* They never talk while eating, and never go to sleep with wet hands (*i. e.*, without rubbing them dry with towels or napkins).[36] Whenever they see any of the following, they circumambulate them for showing them reverence, *viz.*, a blazing fire, a bull, the image of a deity, a cowpen, a place where four roads meet, and an old and virtuous Brāhmana.[37] They give the way, themselves standing aside, unto those that are old, those that are afflicted with burdens, ladies, those that hold high appointments in the village or town administration, Brāhmanas, kine, and kings.[38] The righteous or good man

* The five who must be first fed are the deities, the Pitris, the guests, diverse creatures included under the word Bhutas, and lastly relatives.—T.

is he that protects his guests, servants and other dependants, his own relatives, and all those that seek his protection. Such a man always welcomes these with the usual enquiries of politeness.[39] Two times have been appointed by the deities for human beings to take their food, *viz.*, morning and evening. During the interval one should not eat anything. By following this rule about eating, one is said to observe a fast.[40] As the sacred fire waits for libations to be poured upon it when the hour for *Homa* arrives, even so a woman, when her functional period is over, expects an act of congress with her husband.[41] One that never approaches one's spouse at any other time save after the functional period, is said to observe the vow of Brahmacharyya. Amrita (nectar), Brāhmanas, and kine,—these three are regarded as equal.[42] Hence, one should always worship, with due rites, Brāhmanas and kine. One does not incur any fault or stain by eating the meat of animals slain in sacrifices with the aid of Mantras from the Yajur Veda.[43] The flesh of the back-bone, or that of animals not slain in sacrifices, should be avoided even as one avoids the flesh of one's own son. One should never cause one's guest to go without food whether when one resides in one's own country or in a foreign land.[44] After completing one's study one should present the Dakshinā unto one's preceptor. When one sees one's preceptor, one should congratulate him with reverence and worshipping him present him a seat.[45] By worshipping one's preceptor, one increases the period of one's life as also one's fame and prosperity. One should never censure the old, nor send them on any business.*[46] One should never be seated when any one that is old is standing. By acting in this way one protects the duration of one's life. One should never cast one's eyes on a naked woman, nor a naked man.[47] One should never indulge in sexual congress except in privacy. One should eat also without being seen by others. preceptors are the foremost of Tirthas; the heart is the foremost of all sacred objects;[48] knowledge is the foremost of all

* Some texts read 'nābhibhavet,' meaning, 'one should never vanquish an old man (*i. e.*, assert one's superiority over him.—T.

objects of search; and contentment is the foremost of all happiness. Morning and evening one should listen to the grave counsels of those that are aged.[49] One attains to wisdom by constant waiting upon those that are venerable for years. While reading the Vedas or employed in eating, one should use one's right hand.[50] One should always keep one's speech and mind under thorough control, as also one's senses. With well-cooked frumenty, Yāvaka, Kriçara, and Havi (clarified butter),[51] one should worship the Pitris and the deities in the Crāddha called Ashtakā. The same should be used in worshipping the Planets. One should not undergo a shave without calling down a blessing upon oneself. If one sneezes, one should be blessed by those present. All that are ill or afflicted with desease, should be blessed. The extention of their lives should be prayed for.*[52] One should never address an eminent person familiarly (by using the word *Twam*). Under even the greatest difficultis one should never do this. To address such a person as *Twam* and to slay him are equal. Persons of learning are degraded by such a style of address.[53] Unto those that are inferior, or equal, or unto disciples, such a word can be used. The heart of the sinful man always proclaims the sins he has committed.[54] Those men who have deliberately committed sins meet with destruction by seeking to conceal them from the good. Indeed, they that are confirmed sinners seek to conceal their sinful acts from others.†[55] Such persons think that their sins are witnessed by neither men nor the deities. The sinful man, overwhelmed by his sins, takes birth in a miserable order of being.[56] The sins of such a man continually grow, even as the interest the usurer charges (on the loans he grants) increase from day to day. If having committed a sin, one seeks to have it covered by righteousness,

---

* In his excellent work on the "Curiosities of Literature" Mr. D'Israeli attempts to trace the origin of the custom of uttering a blessing on people who sneeze. The custom seems, however, to be very ancient and wide-spread. It exists to this day in India, among the Hindus at any rate, as it existed in the days of the Mahābhārata.—T.

† It seems that the author is of opinion that one lightens one's sins by admissions before the wise. To conceal a sin after having committed it proves the confirmed sinner.—T.

that sin becomes destroyed and leads to righteousness instead of other sins.*[57] If a quantity of water be poured upon salt, the latter immediately dissolves away. Even so when expiation is performed, sin dissolves away.[58] For these reasons one should never conceal a sin. Concealed, it is certain to increase. Having committed a sin, one should confess it in the presence of those that are good. They would then destroy it immediately.[59] If one does not enjoy in good time what one has stored with hope, the consequence is that the stored wealth finds another owner after the death of him who has stored it.[60] The wise have said that the mind of every creature is the true test of Righteousness. Hence, all creatures in the world have an innate tendency to achieve Righteousness.[61] One should achieve righteousness alone or single-handed. Verily, one should not proclaim oneself Righteous and walk with the standard of Righteousness borne aloft for purposes of exhibition. They are said to be traders in Righteousness who practise it for enjoying the fruits it brings about.[62] One should adore the deities without giving way to sentiments of pride. Similarly, one should serve one's preceptor without deceit. One should make arrangements for securing to oneself invaluable wealth in the hereafter which consists in gifts made here to deserving persons.' "[63]

Section CLXIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'It is seen that if a person happens to be unfortunate, he fails to acquire wealth, how great soever his strength. On the other hand, if one happens to be fortunate, he comes to the possession of wealth, even if he be a weakling or a fool.[1] When, again, the time does not come for acquisition, one cannot make an acquisition with even one's best exertions. When, however, the time comes for acquisition, one wins great wealth without any exertion.[2] Hundreds of men may be seen who achieve no result even when they exert their best. Many persons, again, are seen to make acquisitions

---

* 'Covered by righteousness' implies 'if having once tripped, the sinner restrains himself and engages to do acts of righteousness'.—T.

without any exertion.[3] If wealth were the result of exertion, then one could, with exertion, acquire it immediately. Verily, if the case were so, no man of learning could then be seen to take the protection for the sake of his livelihood, of one destitute of learning.[4] Among men, that which is not (destined) to be attained, O chief of the Bharatas, is never attained. Men are seen to fail in achieving results even with the aid of their best exertions.[5] One may be seen to seek wealth by hundreds of means (and yet failing to acquire it); while another, without at all seeking it, becomes happy in its possession. Men may be seen doing evil acts continually (for wealth) and yet failing to acquire it.[6] Others are in the enjoyment of wealth without doing any evil act whatever. Others, again, who are observant of the duties assigned to them by the scriptures, are without wealth. One may be seen to be without any knowledge of the science of morals and policy even after one has studied all the treatises on that science.[7] One, again, may be seen appointed as the prime minister of a king without having at all studied the science of morals and policy. A learned man may be seen that is possessed of wealth. One destitute of learning may be seen owning wealth. Both kinds of men, again, may be seen to be entirely destitute of wealth.[8] If by the acquisition of learning one could acquire the happiness of wealth, then no man of learning could be found living, for the very means of his subsistence, under the protection of one destitute of learning.[9] Indeed, if one could obtain by the acquisition of learning, all desireable objects like a thirsty individual having his thirst slaked upon obtaining water, then none in this world would have shown idleness in acquiring learning.[10] If one's time has not come, one does not die even if one be pierced with hundreds of shafts. On the other hand, one lays down one's life, if one's hour has come, even if it be a blade of grass with which one is struck.'[11]

"Bhishma said,—'If one, setting oneself to undertakings involving even great exertions, fails to earn wealth, one should then practise severe austerities. Unless seeds be sown, no crops appear.[12] It is by making gifts (to deserving persons in this life) that one acquires (in one's next life) numerous

objects of enjoyment, even as one becomes possessed of intelligence and wisdom by waiting upon those that are venerable for years. The wise have said that one becomes possessed of longevity by practising the duty of abstention from cruelty to all creatures.[13] Hence, one should make gifts and not solicit (or accept them when made by others). One should worship those individuals that are righteous. Verily, one should be sweet-speeched towards all, and always do what is agreeable to others. One should seek to attain to purity (both mental and external). Indeed, one should always abstain from doing injury to any creature.[14] When in the matter of the happiness and woe of even insects and ants, their acts (of this and past lives) and Nature constitute the cause, it is meet, O Yudhishthira, that thou shouldst be tranquil !' "*[15]

SECTION CLXIV.

"Bhishma said,—'If one does acts oneself that are good or causes others to accomplish them, one should then expect to attain to the merits of righteousness. Similarly, if one does acts oneself that are evil, and causes others to accomplish them, one should never expect to attain to the merits of righteousness.†[1] At all times, it is Time that, entering the understandings of all creatures, sets them to acts of righteousness or unrighteousness, and then confer felicity or misery upon them.[2] When a person, beholding the fruits of Righteous-

---

* What is stated here is this: the condition of all living creatures is determined by their acts of this and past lives. Nature, again, is the cause of acts. What of felicity and misery, therefore, one sees in this world, must be ascribed to these two causes. As regards thyself also, O Yudhishthira, thou art not freed from that universal law. Do thou, therefore, cease to cherish doubts of any kind. If thou seest a learned man that is poor, or an ignorant man that is wealthy, if thou seest exertion failing and the absence of exertion leading to success, thou must always ascribe the result to acts and Nature.—T.

† What is stated here is this: one may become righteous by accomplishing oneself righteous deeds or inducing or helping others to do them. Similarly, one becomes unrighteous by doing oneself acts that are evil or by inducing or helping others to do them.—T.

ness, understands Righteousness to be superior, it is then that he inclines towards Righteousness and puts faith in it. One, however, whose understanding is not firm, fails to put faith in it.[3] As regards faith in Righteousness, it is this (and nothing else). To put faith in Righteousness is the indication of the wisdom of all persons. One that is acquainted with both (*i. e.*, what should be done and what should not be done), with a view to opportuneness, should, with care and devotion, achieve what is right.[4] Those Righteous men who have in this life been blessed with affluence, acting of their own motion, take particular care of their souls so that they may not, in their next lives, have to take birth as persons with the attribute of Passion predominating in them.[5] Time (which is the supreme disposer of all things) can never make Righteousness the cause of misery. One should, therefore, know that the soul which is righteous is certainly pure (*i. e.*, freed from the element of evil and misery).[6] As regards Unrighteousness, it may be said that, even when of large proportions, it is incapable of even touching Righteousness which is always protected by Time and which shines like a blazing fire.[7] These are the two results achieved by Righteousness, *viz.*, the stainlessness of the soul and unsusceptibility of being touched by Unrighteousness. Verily, Righteousness is fraught with victory. Its effulgence is so great that it illumines the three worlds.[8] A man of wisdom cannot catch hold of a sinful person and forcibly cause him to become righteous. When seriously urged to act righteously, the sinful only act with hypocrisy, impelled by fear.[9] They that are righteous among the Cudras never betake themselves to such hypocrisy under the plea that persons of the Cudra order are not permitted to live according to any of the four prescribed modes.[10] I shall tell thee particularly what the duties truly are of the four orders. So far as their bodies are concerned, the individuals belonging to all the four orders have the five primal elements for their constituent ingredients. Indeed, in this respect, they are all of the same substance.[11] For all that, distinctions exist between them in respect of both practices relating to life or the world and the duties of righteousness. Notwithstanding these distinctions,

sufficient liberty of action is left to them in consequence of which all individuals may attain to an equality of condition.[12] The regions of felicity which represent the consequences or rewards of Righteousness are not eternal, for they are destined to come to an end. Righteousness, however, is eternal. When the cause is eternal, why is the effect not so ?* The answer to this is as follows. Only that Righteousness is eternal which is not prompted by the desire of fruit or reward. (That Righteous, however, which is prompted by the desire of reward, is not eternal. Hence, the reward though undesired, that attaches to the first kind of Righteousness, *viz.*, attainment of identity with Brahma, is eternal. The reward, however, that attaches to that Righteousness prompted by desire of fruit, *viz.*, Heaven, is not eternal).†[13] All men are equal in respect of their physical organism. All of them, again, are possessed of souls that are equal in respect of their nature. When dissolution comes, all else dissolves away. What remains is the inceptive will to achieve Righteousness. That, indeed, re-appears (in next life) of itself.‡[14] When such is the result, (that is, when the enjoyments and endurances of this life are due to the acts of a past life), the inequality of lot discernible among human beings cannot be regarded as any way anomalous. So also, it is seen that those creatures that belong to the intermediate orders of existence are equally subject, in the matter of their acts, to the influence of example.'"[15]

---

* Righteousness leads to regions of felicity. The former is said to be eternal, while the latter are not so. The question asked (or doubt raised) is why is the effect not eternal when the cause is eternal? It is explained below.—T.

† There are two kinds of Righteousness, *viz.*, 'nishkāma' and 'sakāma.' The former leads to attainment of Brahma, the latter to Heaven and felicity. Brahma is eternal; the latter not so. 'Nishkāma' Righteousness, being eternal, leads to an eternal reward. 'Sakāma' Righteousness not being so, does not lead to an eternal reward. The word 'Kāla' here means 'Sankalpa'; hence, 'dhruvahkālah,' means 'nishkāma Dharma.'—T.

‡ Here 'Kālah' means 'Sankalpah.'—T.

SECTION CLXV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"That perpetuater of Kuru's race, *viz.*, Yudhishthira the son of Pāndu, desirous of obtaining such good as is destructive of sins, questioned Bhishma who was lying on a bed of arrows, (in the following words).[1]

"Yudhishthira said,—'What, indeed, is beneficial for a person in this world? What is that by doing which one may earn happiness? By what may one be cleansed of all one's sins? Indeed, what is that which is destructive of sins?' "[2]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"In this connection, the royal son of Cāntanu, O foremost of men, duly recited the names of the deities unto Yudhishthira who was desirous of hearing.[3]

"Bhishma said,—'O son, the following names of the deities with those of the Rishis, if duly recited morning, noon, and evening, become efficacious cleansers of all sins.[4] Acting with the aid of one's senses (of knowledge and action), whatever sins one may commit by day or by night or by the two twilights, consciously or unconsciously, one is sure to be cleansed therefrom and become thoroughly pure by reciting these names. One that takes those names has never to become blind or deaf; indeed, by taking those names, one always succeeds in attaining to what is beneficial.[5-6] Such a man never takes birth in the intermediate order of being, never goes to hell, and never becomes a human being of any of the mixed castes. He has never to fear the accession of any calamity. When death comes, he never becomes stupefied.[7] The master of all the deities and Asuras, resplendent with effulgence, worshipped by all creatures, inconceivable, indescribable, the life of all living beings, and unborn,[8] is the Grandsire Brahman, that Lord of the universe. His chaste spouse is Sāvittri. Then comes that origin of the Vedas, the creator Vishnu, otherwise called Nārāyana of immeasurable puissance.[9] Then comes the three-eyed Lord of Umā: then Skanda the generalissimo of the celestial forces; then Viçākha; then Agni the eater of sacrificial libations; then Vāyu the god of wind; then Chandramas; then Āditya the god of the sun, endued with effulgence,[10]

then the illustrious Cakra the lord of Cachi, and Yama with his spouse Dhumornā; and Varuna with Gauri; Kuvera the lord of treasures, with his spouse Riddhi;[11] the amiable and illustrious cow Surabhi; the great Rishi Viçravas; Sankalpa, Ocean, Gangā; the other sacred Rivers; the diverse Maruts;[12] the Vālakhillyas crowned with success of penances; the island-born Krishna; Nārada; Parvata; Viçwāvasu; the Hāhās; the Huhus;[13] Tumvuru; Chitrasena; the celestial messenger of wide celebrity; the highly-blessed celestial maidens; the celestial Apsaras:[14] Urvaçi, Menakā, Ramvā, Miçrakeçi, Alamvushā, Viçwāchi, Ghritāchi, Panchachudā, Tilottamā,[15] the Ādityas, the Vasus, the Açwins, the Pitris; Dharma (Righteousness); Vedic lore, Penances, Dikshā, Perseverance (in religious acts), the Grandsire,[16] Day and Night, Kaçyapa the son of Marichi, Cukra, Vrihaspati, Mangala the son of Earth, Vudha, Rāhu, Canaiçchara,[17] the Constellations, the Seasons, the Months, the Fortnights, the Year, Garuda the son of Vinatā, the several Oceans, the sons of Kadru, *viz.*, the Snakes,[18] Catadru, Vipāçā, Chandrabhāgā, Saraswati, Sindhu, Devikā, Prabhāsa, the lakes of Pushkara,[19] Gangā, Mahānadi, Venā, Kāveri, Narmadā, Kulampunā, Viçalyā, Karatoyā, Amvuvāhini,[20] Sarayu, Gandaki, the great river Lohita, Tāmrā, Arunā, Vetravati, Parnāsā, Gautami,[21] Godāvari, Venā, Krishnavenā, Dwijā, Drishadvati, Kāveri, Vankhu, Mandākini,[22] Prayāga, Prabhāsa, the sacred Naimisha, the spot sacred to Viçweswara or Mahādeva, *viz.*, Kāçi, that lake of crystal water,[23] Kurukshetra full of many sacred waters, the foremost of oceans (*viz.*, the ocean of milk), Penances, Gifts, Jamvumārga,[24] Hiranwati, Vitastā, the river Plakshavati, Vedasmriti, Vedavati, Mālavā, Açwavati,[25] all sacred spots on Earth, Gangādwāra, the sacred Rishikulyā, the river Chitravahā,[26] the Charmanwati, the sacred river Kauçiki, the Yamunā, the river Bhimarathi, the great river Vāhudā,[27] Mahendravāni, Tridivā, Nilikā, Saraswati, Nandā, the other Nandā, the large sacred lake,[28] Gayā, Phalgutirtha, Dharmāranya (the sacred forest) that is peopled with the deities, the sacred celestial river, the lake created by the Grandsire Brahman,[29] which is sacred and celebrated over the three worlds,

and auspicious and capable of cleansing all sins, the Himavat mountain endued with excellent herbs,[30] the Vindhya mountain variegated with diverse kinds of metals, containing many Tirthas and overgrown with medicinal herbs, Meru, Mahendra, Malaya, Cweta endued with silver,[31] Cringavat, Mandara, Nila, Nishadha, Dardura, Chitrakuta, Anjanābha, the Gandhamādana mountains,[32] the sacred Somagiri, the various other mountains, the cardinal points of the compass, the subsidiary points, the Earth, all the trees,[33] the Viçwedevas, the Firmament, the Constellations, the Planets, and the Deities,—let these all, named and unnamed, rescue and cleanse us![34] The man who takes the names of these becomes cleansed of all his sins. By hymning their praises and gratifying them, one becomes freed from every fear.[35] Verily, the man who delights in uttering the hymns in praise of the deities becomes cleansed of all such sins as lead to birth in impure orders.[36] After this recital of the deities, I shall name those learned Brāhmanas crowned with ascetic merit and success and capable of cleansing one of every sin. They are Yavakrita and Raibhya and Kākshivat and Aushija,[37] and Bhrigu and Angiras and Kanwa, and the puissant Medhātithi, and Varhi possessed of every accomplishment. These all belong to the Eastern region.[38] Others, *viz.*, Unmuchu, Pramuchu, Mumuchu, all highly blessed, Swastyātreya of great energy;[39] Agastya of great prowess, the son of Mitra and Varuna; Dridhāyu and Urdhavāhu, those two foremost and celebrated of Rishis,—these live in the Southern region.[40] Listen now to me as I name those Rishis that dwell in the Western region. They are Ushangu with his uterine brothers, Parivyādha of great energy,[41] Dirghatamas, Gautama, Kāçyapa, Ekata, Dwita, Trita,[42] the righteous-souled son of Atri (*viz.*, Durvāsas), and the puissant Sāraswat. Listen now to me as I name those Rishis that worship the deities in sacrifices, dwelling in the Northern region.[43] They are Atri, Vaçishtha, Caktri, Parāçara's son Vyāsa of great energy; Viçwāmitra, Bharadwāja, Jamadagni,[44] the son of Richika, Rāma, Auddālaka, Cwetaketu, Kohala, Vipula, Devala,[45] Devaçarman, Dhaumya, Hastikāçyapa, Lomaça, Nāchiketa, Lomaharshana,[46] Ugraçravas, and Bhrigu's son Chya-

vana. This is the tale of Rishis possessed of Vedic lore.[47] They are primeval Rishis, O king, whose names, if taken, are capable of cleansing one of every sin. After this I shall recite the names of the principal kings.[48] They are Nriga, Yayāti, Nahusha, Yadu, Puru of great energy, Sagara, Dhundhumāra, Dilipa of great prowess, Kriçāçwa, Yauvanāçwa, Chitrāçwa, Satyavat,[49] Dushmanta, Bharata who became an illustrious Emperor over many kings, Yavana, Janaka, Dhrishtaratha,[50] Raghu, that foremost of kings, Daçaratha, the heroic Rāma, that slayer of Rākshas, Caçavindu, Bhagiratha,[51] Hariçchandra, Marutta, Dridharatha, the highly fortunate Alarka, Aila,[52] Karandhama, that foremost of men, Kāçmira, Daksha, Amvarisha, Kukura, Raivata of great fame, Kuru, Samvarana, Māndhātri of unbaffled prowess,[53] the royal sage Muchukunda, Jahnu who was much favoured by Jānhavi (Gangā), the first (in point of time) of all kings, *viz.*, Prithu the son of Vena, Mitrabhānu, Priyankara,[54] Trasadasyu, Cweta that foremost of royal sages, the celebrated Mahābhisha, Nimi, Ashtaka,[55] Ayu, the royal sage Kshupa, Kaksheyu, Pratarddana, Divodāsa, Sudāsa, Koçaleçwara,[56] Aila, Nala, the royal sage Manu, that lord of all creatures, Havidhra, Prishadhra, Pratipa, Cāntanu,[57] Aja, the senior Varhi, Ikshāku of great fame, Anaranya, Jānujangha, the royal sage Kakshasena, and many others not named (in history).[58] That man who rising at early dawn takes the names of these kings at the two twilights, *viz.*, at sunset and sunrise, with a pure body and mind and without distracted attention, acquires great religious merit.[59] One should hymn the praises of the deities, the celestial Rishis, and the royal sages and say,—These lords of the creation will ordain my growth and long life and fame![60] Let no calamity be mine, let no sin defile me, and let there be no opponents or enemies of mine! Without doubt, victory will always be mine and an auspicious end hereafter!—' "[61]

Section CLXVI.

Janamejaya said,—"When that foremost person among the Kauravas, *viz.*, Bhishma, was lying on a bed of arrows,—a

bed that is always coveted by heroes,—and when the Pāndavas were sitting around him,[1] my great-grandsire Yudhishthira of much wisdom, heard these expositions of mysteries with respect to the subject of duty and had all his doubts solved.[2] He heard also what the ordinances are that apply to the subject of gifts, and thus had all his doubts removed with respect to the topics of righteousness and wealth. It behooveth thee, O learned Brāhmana, to tell me now what else did the great Pāndava king do."[3]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"When Bhishma became silent, the entire circle of kings (who were seated around him) became perfectly silent. Indeed, they all sat motionless there, like figures painted on canvass.[4] Then Vyāsa the son of Satyavati, having reflected for a moment, addressed the royal son of Gangā, saying,[5]—O king, the Kuru chief Yudhishthira has been restored to his own nature, along with all his brothers and followers.[6] With Krishna of great intelligence by his side, he bends his head in reverence unto thee. It behooveth thee to give him leave for returning to the city."[7]—Thus addressed by the holy Vyāsa, the royal son of Cāntanu and Gangā dismissed Yudhishthira and his counsellors.[8] The royal son of Cāntanu, addressing his grandson in a sweet voice, also said,—Do thou return to thy city, O king! Let the fever of thy heart be dispelled.'[9] Do thou adore the deities in diverse sacrifices distinguished by large gifts of food and wealth, like Yayāti himself, O foremost of kings, endued with devotion and self-restraint.[10] Devoted to the practices of the Kshatriya order, do thou, O son of Prithā, gratify the Pitris and the deities. Thou shalt then earn great benefits. Indeed, let the fever of thy heart be dispelled.[11] Do thou gladden all thy subjects. Do thou assure them and establish peace among all. Do thou also honor all thy well-wishers with such rewards as they deserve![12] Let all thy friends and well-wishers live, depending on thee for their means, even as birds live, depending for their means upon a full grown tree charged with fruit and standing on a sacred spot.[13] When the hour comes for my departure from this world, do thou come here, O king. The time when I shall take leave of my body is that period when

the Sun, stopping in his southward course, will begin to return northwards !'[14]—The son of Kunti answered,—'So be it !' and saluted his grandsire with reverence and then set out, with all his relatives and followers, for the city called after the elephant.[15] Placing Dhritarāshtra at the head and also Gāndhāri who was exceedingly devoted to her lord, and accompanied by the Rishis and Keçava,[16] as also by the citizens and the inhabitants of the country and by his counsellers, O monarch, that foremost one of Kuru's race entered the city named after the elephant."[17]

Section CLXVII.

(Swargārohanika Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Then the royal son of Kunti, having duly honored the citizens and the inhabitants of the province, dismissed them to their respective homes.[1] The Pāndava king then consoled these women, who had lost their heroic husbands and sons in the battle, with abundant gifts of wealth.[2] Having recovered his kingdom, Yudhishthira of great wisdom caused himself to be duly installed on the throne. That foremost of men then assured all his subjects by diverse acts of good will.[3] That foremost of righteous men then set himself to earn the substantial blessings of the Brāhmanas, of the foremost military officers, and the leading citizens.[4] The blessed monarch having passed fifty nights in the capital recollected the time indicated by his grandsire as the hour of his departure from this world.[5] Accompanied by a number of priests he then set out of the city named after the elephant, having seen that the sun ceasing to go southwards had begun to proceed in his northward course.[6] Yudhishthira the son of Kunti took with him a large quantity of clarified butter and floral garlands and scents and silken cloths and excellent sandal wood and Aquilaria Agallocha and dark cloe wood, for cremating the body of Bhishma. Diverse kinds of costly garlands and gems also were among those stores.[7-8] Placing Dhritarāshtra ahead and queen Gāndhāri celebrated for her virtues, and his own mother Kunti and all his brothers also, Yudhish-

thira of great intelligence,[9] accompanied by Krishna and Vidura of great wisdom, as also by Yuyutsu and Yuyudhāna,[10] and by his other relatives and followers forming a large train, proceeded, his praises hymned the while by eulogists and bards. The sacrificial fires of Bhishma were also borne in the procession.[11] Thus accompanied, the king set out from his city like a second chief of the deities. Soon he came upon the spot where the son of Cāntanu was still lying on his bed of arrows.[12] He beheld his grandsire waited upon with reverence by Parāçara's son Vyāsa of great intelligence, by Nārada, O royal sage, by Devala and Asita,[13] and also by the remnant of unslain kings assembled from various parts of the country. Indeed, the king saw that his high-souled grandsire, as he lay on his heroic bed, was guarded on all sides by the warriors appointed for that duty. Alighting from his car, king Yudhishthira with his brothers saluted his grandsire, that chastiser of all foes. They also saluted the Rishis with the Island-born Vyāsa at their head. They were saluted in return by them.[14-16] Accompanied by his priests each of whom resembled the grandsire Brahman himself, as also by his brothers, Yudhishthira of unfading glory then approached that spot whereon Bhishma lay on his bed of arrows surrounded by these reverend Rishis.[17] Then king Yudhishthira the just, at the head of his brothers, addressed that foremost one of Kuru's race, *viz.*, the son of the River Gangā, as he lay on that bed of his, saying,[18]—I am Yudhishthira, O king! Salutations to thee, O son of the River Jānhavi! If thou hearest me still, O, tell me what I am to do for thee![19] Bearing with me thy sacrificial fires, I have come here, O king, and wait upon thee at the hour indicated! Preceptors of all branches of learning, Brāhmanas, Ritwijas, all my brothers,[20] thy son, *viz.*, king Dhritarāshtra of great energy, are all here with my counsellers as also Vāsudeva of great prowess.[21] The remnant of unslain warriors, and all the denizens of Kurujāngala, are also here. Opening thy eyes, O chief of Kuru's race, do thou behold them![22] Whatever should be done on this occasion has all been arranged and provided for by me. Indeed, at this hour which thou hadst indicated, all things have been kept ready!"[23]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by Kunti's son of great intelligence, the son of Gangā opened his eyes and saw all the Bharatas assembled there and standing arround him.[24] The mighty Bhishma then, taking the strong hand of Yudhishthira, addressed him, in a voice deep as that of the clouds.[25] That thorough master of words said,—'By good luck, O son of Kunti, thou hast come here with all thy counsellers, O Yudhishthira! The thousand-rayed maker of day, the holy Surya, has begun his northward course.[26] I have been lying on my bed here for eight and fifty nights. Stretched on these sharp-pointed arrows I have felt this period to be as long as if it was a century.[27] O Yudhishthira, the lunar month of Māgha has come. This is, again, the lighted fortnight and a fourth part of it ought by this (according to my calculations) be over!'[28] Having said so unto Yudhishthira the son of Dharma, Gangā's son Bhishma then saluted Dhritarāshtra and said unto him as follows.[29]

"Bhishma said,—'O king, thou art well conversant with duties. All thy doubts, again, relating to the science of wealth have been well solved. Thou hast waited upon many Brāhmanas of great learning.[30] The subtle sciences connected with the Vedas, all the duties of religion, O king, and the whole of the four Vedas, are well known to thee![31] Thou shouldst not grieve, therefore, O son of Kuru! That which was pre-ordained has happened. It could not be otherwise. Thou hast heard the mysteries relating to the deities from the lips of the Island-born Rishi himself.[32] Yudhishthira and his brothers are morally as much thy sons as they are the sons of Pāndu. Observant of the duties of religion, do thou cherish and protect them. In their turn, they are always devoted to the service of their seniors.[33] King Yudhishthira the just is pure-souled. He will always prove obedient to thee! I know that he is devoted to the virtue of compassion or abstention from injury. He is devoted to his seniors and preceptors.[34] Thy sons were all wicked-souled. They were wedded to wrath and cupidity. Overwhelmed by envy, they were all of wicked behaviour. It behooveth thee not to grieve for them!'"[35]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having said this much unto

Dhritarāshtra of great wisdom, the Kuru hero then addressed Vāsudeva of mighty arms.[36]

"Bhishma said,—'O holy one, O god of all gods, O thou that art worshipped by all the deities and Asuras, O thou that didst cover the three worlds with three steps of thine, salutations to thee, O wielder of the conch, the discus, and the mace![37] Thou art Vāsudeva, thou art of golden body, thou art the one Purusha (or active agent), thou art the creator (of the universe), thou art of vast proportions. Thou art Jiva. Thou art subtle. Thou art the Supreme and eternal Soul.[38] Do thou, O lotus-eyed one, rescue me, O foremost of all beings![39] Do thou give me permision, O Krishna, to depart from this world, O thou that art Supreme felicity, O foremost of all beings! The sons of Pāndu should ever be protected by thee. Thou art, indeed, already their sole refuge.[40] Formerly I spoke to the foolish Duryodhana of wicked understanding that thither is Righteousness where Krishna is, and that there is victory where Righteousness is.[41] I further counselled him that relying on Vāsudeva as his refuge, he should make peace with the Pāndavas. Indeed, I repeatedly told him,—This is the fittest time for thee to make peace![42] The foolish Duryodhana of wicked understanding. however, did not do my bidding. Having caused a great havoc on Earth, at last, he himself laid down his life.[43] Thee, O illustrious one, I know to be that ancient and best of Rishis who dwelt for many years in the company of Nara, in the retreat of Vadari.[44] The celestial Rishi Nārada told me this, as also Vyāsa of austere penances. Even they have said unto me that. Thyself and Arjuna are the old Rishis Nārāyana and Nara born among men.[45] Do thou, O Krishna, grant me leave, I shall cast off my body. Permitted by thee, I shall attain to the highest end!—[46]

"Vāsudeva said,—'I give thee leave, O Bhishma! Do thou, O king, attain to the status of the Vasus. O thou of great splendour, thou hast not been guilty of a single transgression in this world.[47] O royal sage, thou art devoted to thy sire. Thou art, therefore, like a second Mārkandeya! It is for that reason that death depends upon thy pleasure even as thy slave expectant of reading thy pleasure!'"[48]

Vaiçampāyana continued —"Having said these words, the son of Gangā once more addressed the Pāndavas headed by Dhritarāshtra, and other friends and well-wishers of his.[49]— I desire to cast off my life-breaths. It behooveth you to give me leave. Ye should strive for attaining to truth. Truth constitutes the highest power.[50] Ye should always live with Brāhmanas of righteous conduct, devoted to penances, ever abstaining from cruel behaviour, and who have their souls under control !'[51]—Having said these words unto his friends and embraced them all, the intelligent Bhishma once more addressed Yudhishthira, saying,[52]—'O king, let all Brāhmanas, especially those that are endued with wisdom, let them who are preceptors, let those who are priests capable of asisting at sacrifices, be adorable in thy estimation.' "[53]

SECTION CLXVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having said so unto all the Kurus, Bhishma, the son of Cāntanu, remained silent for sometime, O chastiser of foes.[1] He then held forth his life-breaths successively in those parts of his body which are indicated in Yoga. The life-breaths of that high-souled one, restrained duly, then rose up.[2] Those parts of the body of Cāntanu's son, in consequence of the adoption of Yoga, from which the life-breaths went up, became soreless one after another.[3] In the midst of those high-souled persons, including those great Rishis with Vyāsa at their head, the sight seemed to be a strange one, O king.[4] Within a short time, the entire body of Bhishma became shaftless and soreless. Beholding it, all those distinguished personages with Vāsudeva at their head, and all the ascetics with Vyāsa, became filled with wonder.[5] The life-breaths, restrained and unable to escape through any of the outlets, at last pierced through the crown of the head and proceeded upwards to Heaven.[6] The celestial kettle-drums began to play and floral showers were rained down. The Siddhas and regenerate Rishis, filled with delight, exclaimed,— Excellent, Excellent !'[7]—The life-breaths of Bhishma, piercing through the crown of his head, shot up through the welkin

like a large meteor and soon became invisible.[8] Even thus, O great king, did Cāntanu's son, that pillar of Bharata's race, united himself with eternity.[9] Then the high-souled Pāndavas and Vidura, taking a large quantity of wood and diverse kinds of fragrant scents, made a funeral pyre.[10] Yuyutsu and others stood as spectators of the preparations. Then Yudhishthira and the high-souled Vidura[11] wrapped Bhishma's body with silken cloth and floral garlands. Yuyutsu held an excellent umbrella over it.[12] Bhimasena and Arjuna both held in their hands a couple of yak-tails of pure white. The two sons of Mādri held two head-gears in their hands.[13] Yudhishthira and Dhritarāshtra stood at the feet of the body. The spouses of the lord of the Kurus, taking up palmyra fans, stood around the body and began to fan it softly.[14] The Pitri sacrifice of the high souled Bhishma was then duly performed. Many libations were poured upon the sacred fire. The singers of Sāmans sang many Sāmans.[15] Then covering the body of Gangā's son with sandal wood and black aloe and the dark wood and other fragrant fuel, and setting fire to the same, the Kurus with Dhritarāshtra and others, stood on the right side of the funeral pyre.[16-17] Those foremost ones of Kuru's race, having thus cremated the body of the son of Gangā, proceeded to the sacred Bhāgirathi, accompanied by the Rishis.[18] They were followed by Vyāsa, by Nārada, by Asita, by Krishna, by the ladies of the Bharata race, as also by such of the citizens of Hastināpore as had come to the place.[19] All of them, arrived at the sacred river, duly offered oblations of water unto the high-souled son of Gangā.[20] The goddess Bhāgirathi, after those oblations of water had been offered by them unto her son, rose up from the steam, weeping and distracted by sorrow.[21] In the midst of her lamentations, she addressed the Kurus, saying,—Ye sinless ones, listen to me as I say unto you all that occurred (with respect to my son).[22] Possessed of royal conduct and disposition, and endued with wisdom and high birth, my son was the benefactor of all the seniors of his race. He was devoted to his sire and was of high vows.[23] He could not be vanquished by even Rāma of Jamadagni's race with his celestial weapons of great energy. Alas, that hero has been

slain by Cikhandin![24] Ye kings, without doubt, my heart is made of adamant, for it does not break even at the disappearance of that son from my sight![25] At the Self-choice at Kāçi, he vanquished on a single car the assembled Kshatriyas and ravished the three princesses (for his step-brother Vichitravirya)![26] There was no one on Earth that equalled him in might. Alas, my heart does not break upon hearing the slaughter of that son of mine by Cikhandin![27] The puissant Krishna, hearing the goddess of the great river indulging in these lamentations, consoled her with many soothing words, Krishna said,—'O amiable one, be comforted. Do not yield to grief, O thou of beautiful features! Without doubt, thy son has gone to the highest region of felicity![28-30] He was one of the Vàsus of great energy. Through a curse, O thou of beautiful features, he had to take birth among men. It behooveth thee not to grieve for him.[31] Agreeably to Kshatriya duties, he was slain by Dhananjaya on the field of battle while engaged in battle. He has not been slain, O goddess, by Cikhandin.[32] The very chief of the celestials himself could not slay Bhishma in battle when he stood with stretched bow in hand.[33] O thou of beautiful face, thy son has, in felicity, gone to Heaven. All the gods assembled together could not slay him in battle.[34] Do not, therefore, O goddess Gangā, grieve for that son of Kuru's race. He was one of the Vasus, O goddess! Thy son has gone to Heaven. Let the fever of thy heart be dispelled.' "[35]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"That foremost of all rivers, thus addressed by Krishna and Vyāsa, cast off her grief, O great king, and became restored to equanimity.[36] All the kings there present, headed by Krishna, O monarch, having honored that goddess duly, received her permission to depart from her banks."[37]

FINIS ANUÇASANA PARVA.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ANUÇASANA PARVA.

Anuçāsanika Parva.

	PAGE.
Yudhishthira's despondency at the slaughter of his kinsmen on the field of Kurukshetra ...	1
Yudhishthira enquires how he may be cleansed of his sins	2
Bhishma comforts Yudhishthira by telling him that the soul is not the cause of our acts ...	ib
The story of Mrityu, Gautami, Kāla, the fowler, and the serpent	ib
Bhishma recites the story of Sudarçana and Oghavati	8
Dharma disguised as a Brāhmana guest, in the absence of Sudarçana, demands of his spouse her person	11
Dharma reveals himself to Sudarçana as the latter comes to his house	12
Mrityu is baffled and retires without striking Sudarçana and Oghavati both of whom attain to the felicity of Heaven	ib
Bhishma recites the story of the promotion of Viçwāmitra from the status of a Kshatriya to that of Brāhmana	15
The descendants of Viçwāmitra who became founders of great Brāhmana houses	19
Yudhishthira wishes to know the merits of compassion and the characteristics of devout men ...	ib
Bhishma recites the story of Vāsava and the high-minded Cuka who did not desert the blasted tree wherein it had been born ...	ib
Yudhishthira enquires which of the two, Exertion and Destiny, which is more powerful ...	22

PAGE.

Bhishma recites the conversation between the Grandsire Brahman and Vaçishtha in which the necessity of Exertion is shown, notwithstanding the force of Destiny 22
Yudhishthira enquires after the fruits of good deeds 25
Bhishma recites the diverse fruits of diverse good acts 26
Yudhishthira enquires who should be worshipped and who liked, &c. 28
Bhishma's answer about the duty of worshipping good Brāhmanas ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's enquiry about the misery that awaits those who refuse to make gifts to Brāhmanas after having promised to give them ... 31
Bhishma's answer setting forth the diverse kinds of misery that await these men ... ib
The story of the jackal and the ape 32
The story of the head of a college of ascetics and a Cudra desirous of instruction 34
Yudhishthira enquires after the nature of the man or the woman in whom the goddess of Prosperity always dwells 41
The story of the conversation between Rukmini and the goddess Cree ... ... ib
The persons with whom Cree does not reside ... 42
Yudhishthira enquires which of the two, man or woman, derives the greater pleasure from an act of union 44
Bhishma recites the story of king Bhangāswana, who had been metamorphosed into a woman, and Cakra the chief of the celestials ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires how one should act in order to live happily both here and hereafter ... 48
Bhishma's answer indicating the chief duties of commission and omission 49
The different names of Mahādeva and his puissance ... ib

PAGE.

Yudhishthira enquires after the meaning of the scriptural injunction to husband and wife about the performance of all religious duties together 148
Bhishma recites the story of Ashtāvakra and the lady Diçā 149
Who is a proper object of gift 162
The ordinances in respect of the acts directed to be observed towards the deities and the Pitris on occasions of the Crāddha 167
The circumstances under which a person may become guilty of Brāhmanicide without actually slaying a Brāhmana 180
Enumeration of the sacred waters on the Earth ... 181
The different merits upon bathing in different *Tirthas* 182
Which countries, which retreats, which mountains, and which rivers are foremost in point of sanctity... 189
The story of Matanga, who was begotten upon a Brāhmani by a Cudra, striving to become a Brāhmana by penances 199
The status of a Brāhmana cannot be acquired except by birth 204
The story of Vitahavya's promotion to the status of a Brāhmana 206
What men are worthy of reverent homage ... 211
The discourse between Nārada and Vāsudeva ... ib
The merits of persons that grant protection to living creatures 215
The story of the king of the Kāçis, the pigeon, and the hawk ... ... ib
The worship of Brāhmanas the foremost act laid down for a king 218
Bhishma's characterisation of Brāhmanas ... 224
The discourse between Cakra and Camvara ... 227
The comparative eligibility of Brāhmanas for receiving presents 229

PAGE.

The discourse between Pānchachudā and Nārada on the character of women 231
Women are incapable of being restrained within bounds 236
The story of Vipula protecting his preceptor's wife against the schemes of Indra 237
Vipula's pride and the dice-players he saw on his way 244
Vipula hurt by their observations regarding himself 246
Devaçarman explains to Vipula his transgression ... 247
Vipula absolved by his preceptor 248
Upon what sort of a person should one bestow one's daughter in marriage 249
What constitutes or completes the union of marriage 252
The passing and acceptance of dower do not constitute marriage 253
Bhishma refers to the opinion of Cāntanū and his own conduct in liberating Amvā the princess of Kāçi whom he had abducted for his brother Vichitravirya 254
How a girl's kinsmen should act after receipt of a dower if the giver, without marrying, goes away and does not return for sometime ... 257
Upon what authority is the wealth of men inherited by others when they happen to have daughters 258
The different rules of succession 259
How should women be treated 261
The comparative eligibility of different kinds of sons to the sire's inheritance 262
The duties of persons born in the mixed orders ... 269
The different kinds of sons... 276
The blessedness that attaches to kine 279
The story of Chyavana and king Nahusha ... ib
Equality of the cow and the Brāhmana ... 283

PAGE.

The story of Rāma's birth 286
Chyavana foretells the intermixture between his own race 302
The different rewards of different kinds of acts ... 304
The rewards attached to the planting of trees and the digging of wells and tanks 308
What gift is distinguished over all gifts ... 310
Bhishma adjures Yudhishthira to always revere the Brāhmanas 313
Which gift is more meritorious, *viz.*, that to one who solicits or that to an unsoliciting person ... 315
Where one meets with the rewards attached to gifts and sacrifices 317
The gift of earth is the foremost of all gifts ... 321
The discourse between Cakra and Vrihaspati upon the same topic 325
What gifts should kings make—what gifts immediately gratify the Brāhmanas—what fruits attach to them—what gifts are productive of rewards both here and hereafter ... 330
The conjunctions of the planets and stars in relation to gifts 334
Diverse merits of diverse kinds of gifts ... 337
The merits that attach to gifts of sandals and shoes ... 339
Bhishma, at the request of Yudhishthira, reverts to the subject of the merits attaching to gifts of sesame and land and kine and food ... ib
The cow should never be given away for slaughter ... 343
What kine should not be given to Brāhmanas ... ib
The seasons when gifts of food produce particular merits 344
The merits that attach to gifts of drink ... 345
The merits that attach to gifts of lamps or light for illumining dark places 346
Bhishma reverts to the topic, at Yudhishthira's solicitation, of the merits of gifts, with especial reference to the gift of Earth ... 350

PAGE.

A cow should never be given to a person that is not righteous 351
The calamities that befel Nriga who had unwittingly taken a cow belonging to a Brāhmana and given it away unto another Brāhmana 352
Nriga metamorphosed into a gigantic lizard till rescued by Krishna 354
Bhishma reverts to the merits, in detail, that attach to gifts of kine 355
The story of Uddālaki and his son Nāchiketa ... ib
Nāchiketa cursed by his father falls dead at his feet ... 356
Nāchiketa revived by his sire ... ... ib
Nāchiketa's narrative of his experiences of the kingdom of Yama 357
The articles that may serve as substitutes for kine when kine are not procurable for gift ... 359
The protection of kine confers great merits on the protector 361
The discourse of the Grandsire to Indra on the subject of kine 363
The descent of the Grandsire's discourse from Indra to Bhishma through several Rishis and royal sages 371
Yudhishthira enquires after the rewards that attach to the observance of different kinds of vows ... 372
Bhishma's exposition of those rewards ... ... ib
The ordinances that regulate the gift of kine ... 376
The merits attaching to gifts of kine continued ... 380
Why the gift of a Kapilā cow is more meritorious than that of any other 381
Bhishma's recital of the circumstances under which the Kapilā cow was created 382
Vaçishtha's discourse to king Saudāsa on what is most sacred and productive of most merit ... 385
Continuation of Vaçishtha's discourse on the pre-eminent sanctity of kine 387

PAGE.

The diverse merits attaching to gifts of diverse kinds of kine 388
The purificatory Mantras having reference to kine ... 390
Vyāsa's description of the region of kine which the blessed only attain 393
The dung of the cow is endued with Cree ... 396
The Grandsire's discourse to Indra on the superiority of kine 400
The origin of gold 403
The pre-eminence of gold as an object of gift ... 407
The opressions committed by Tāraka on the deities ... 409
Umā's curse on the deities ... ... ib
The curse did not touch Agni ... ... ib
The deities pursue Agni who seeks to elude them ... 410
The deities at last catch Agni 413
Agni solicited by the deities to beget a heroic son ... ib
Agni inseminates Gangā with his energy ... 414
Unable to hold Agni's energy any longer, Gangā casts it off on the breast of Meru 415
The goddess Krittikā adopts the child born of Agni's energy 416
The birth of Bhrigu and others from the Grandsire's sacrifice 418
Bhrigu becomes the child of Mahādeva ... 420
Angiras becomes the child of Agni ... ... ib
Kavi (otherwise called Cukra) becomes the child of the Grandsire ... ... ib
The offspring of Bhrigu and Angiras and Kavi ... 421
The felicity of those that make gifts of gold ... 423
The destruction of Tāraka... 424
The ordinances respecting the Crāddha ... 427
The different merits of performing the Crāddha on different days 428
Yudhishthira enquires about those offerings in Crāddhas which become eternal 429
The periods for which different offerings presented at Crāddhas last 430

PAGE.

The different merits acquired by persons by performing the Crāddha on different dates ... 431
The Brāhmanas unto whom offerings made at Crāddhas should be given away 432
The circumstances under which the Crāddha was first conceived 439
Those Brāhmanas that are observant of vows not mentioned in the Vedas may eat at Crāddhas without incurring sin 445
Those Brāhmanas that are observant of vows mentioned in the Vedas incur sin by eating at Crāddhas in violation of their vows ... ib
Is penance really identifiable with fast ... ... ib
How may one come to be regarded as always observant of fasts—how of vows—how may one become an eater of Vighasa—how may one come to be regarded as fond of guests ... 446
The difference between the giver and the receiver of gifts 447
The story of Vrishādarbhi's son and the hungry Rishis with Arundhati and Gandā and Paçusakha ... ... ib
The Rishis explain the etymologies of their names to the Rākshasi who guards the path leading to a tank of lotuses 453
The Rākshasi slain by Indra in the form of Cunasakha 456
The lotus-stalks gathered by the Rishis stolen ... 457
The oaths of the several Rishis ... ... ib
Cunasakha's oath 459
Cunasakha's explanations ... ... ib
The history of another assemblage of Rishis taking oaths for clearing themselves from the charge of theft 461
The circumstances under which the gift of umbrellas and sandals at Crāddhas was first introduced 467

PAGE.

The story of Jamadagni and his wife 468
Jamadagni's wrath with Surya 469
Surya pardoned by Jamadagni 470
Surya makes over an umbrella and a pair of sandals to Jamadagni and pronounces the gift of those articles to be meritorious ... ib
Bhishma recites the discourse between Vāsudeva and the goddess Earth on the duties of a householder 471
The circumstances under which the gift of lights and lamps originated 473
The discourse between Manu and Suvarna, containing a narrative of what Cukra had said unto the Daitya king Vali regarding the offer of flowers, incense, and lights ... ... ib
Agastya curses Nahusha and changes him into a huge serpent 481
The place where they go after death who steal what belongs to a Brāhmana 485
The story of Indra disguised as king Dhritarāshtra seizing the white elephant named by the Rishi Gautama 489
Indra's disguise penetrated by Gautama ... 496
What constitutes the highest Penance ... ... ib
The foremost of penances is fast 500
The reasons for which one becomes short-lived or long-lived 501
The acts that one is to do and to avoid 502
How should the eldest brother behave towards his younger brothers and how should the younger ones behave tawards their eldest brother... 517
Angirasa's discourse on the ordinance relating to fasts and the merits that attach to them ... 521
The particulars of those fasts that bestow merits equal to those of sacrifices 526
The foremost of all *Tirthas* 538
The Soul is the highest Tirtha ... ... ib

PAGE.

The rewards for different kinds of fasts 541
How one becomes endued with the sources of happiness 543
What follows the man that dies 544
How is it possible for Righteousness (and its reverse) to follow the doer 545
How is the vital seed originated 546
How Jiva, after birth, grows ... ... ib
When the body is cast off, in what form does Jiva enjoy and endure felicity and misery .... ib
The different forms in which Jiva has to take birth in consequence of different acts ... 547
The ends attained to with the aid of Righteousness ... 556
The six doors of Righteousness 557
How does one who injures another in thought, word, or deed, succeed in cleansing oneself ... 558
The demerits of eating meat and the merits of abstaining from it 561
The discourse on meat continued 567
The merits of those that throw away their bodies in the sacrifice of battle 570
The story of the successive transformations of the worm noticed by Vyāsa 571
The relative superiority of knowledge, penances, and gifts 577
The behaviour of good and chaste women ... 583
The relative efficacy of Conciliation and Gift ... 585
The story of the Brāhmana and the Rākshasa ... ib
The different reasons for which one may become pale of hue 586
How should a man, coming into this world, and destitute of goods, conduct himself in order to attain to a high end 589
Certain explanations regarding Crāddhas ... 591
The slaughter of living creatures is sinful ... 593
The means by which he who slays living creatures at a Crāddha may cleanse himself ... ib

PAGE.

The acts by which Hari becomes gratified ... 597
The acts by which poor men may acquire the merits of sacrifices 601
The acts that are regarded as efficacious by Chitragupta... 608
Those acts by doing which the Pramathas may be kept out of one's way 611
Skanda's discourse on duties 614
The persons from whom Brāhmanas, Kshatriyas, Vaiçyas, and Cudras may accept food ... 616
The expiations which cleanse a Brāhmana of the sin he incurs by accepting forbidden food ... 618
Which is better, charity or devotion 620
Bhishma's exposition of the five kinds of gifts ... 622
The puissance of Vishnu 624
The energy of Mahādeva 628
The discourse on diverse topics between Umā and Mahādeva 631
The circumstances under which one may be promoted or degraded to a higher or lower order than that of one's birth 650
Mahādeva's discourse on the manifestation of the fruits of acts 660
By what conduct men may ascend to Heaven ... 661
What the duties are of women 668
Mahādeva discourses on the glory of Vāsudeva ... 672
Bhishma's consolations to Yudhishthira... ... 681
What Religion is the foremost of all Religions ... 684
The worship of Vāsudeva is recommended by Bhishma ... ... ib
The thousand names of Vāsudeva 685
The merits of those who recite those names or hear them recited 714
The Mantras that are most sacred 716
The merits of those that recite these Mantras ... 721
What course of conduct towards what classes of persons is regarded faultless 723

PAGE.

The story of Pavana (the god of wind) and Arjuna the Haihaya king 725
The story of Utathya and Varuna 730
The greatness of Agastya 732
The energy of Atri 734
The story of Chyavana's success over Indra in the matter of the Açwins 735
Krishna's discourse to his son Pradyumna on the puissance and glory of the Brāhmanas ... 740
The story of Durvāsas entertained by Krishna ... 747
The glory of Rudra 751
Discourse on the authority of the scriptures ... 757
The indications of those that are wicked and of those that are good 761
On wealth and its acquisition 764
Yudhishthira's discourse on Righteousness ... 766
The sacred names that cleanse one of all sins ... 769
The parting advice of Bhishma to Yudhishthira ... 773

Swargārohanika Parva.

Yudhishthira's return to the city 774
Yudhishthira's return to Bhishma when the sun had commenced his north-ward course ... 775
Bhishma takes leave of all his relatives by a few words to each 776
Bhishma's last address to Vāsudeva 777
Vāsudeva gives Bhishma leave to cast off his body ... ib
Bhishma casts off his body 778
Bhishma's body cremated 779
The Kurus repair to the sacred river Gangā for offering oblations of water ... ... ib
Gangā's lament for the death of her son ... ib
Krishna consoles Gangā 780

FINIS.

APPEAL.

The undersigned appeals to the friends and patrons of her deceased husband, Babu Pratapa Chandra Roy, C. I. E., and to the public in general, for assistance in enabling her to issue the 6 or 7 more fascicules of the English translation of the Mahabharata for bringing that work to completion. The deceased has left no property with the exception of a few copies of the Mahabharata and the house in which he resided and where the office of the Datavya Bharata Karyalaya is located.

That work having progressed so far, the undersigned confidently hopes that the liberal portion of the public will not allow it to be suspended at this stage.

As the widow of the deceased, undersigned is prepared to to devote all her energies to the completion of the task in which the deceased was engaged. To her the obligation is sacred, and she is prepared to devote the whole of her *Stridhan* to obey the last injunction of her husband. Unfortunately for her, that is very little, and would not help her much to carry on the enterprise to a successful end. Rs. 8 to 10 thousand are yet necessary for the purpose. This sum cannot be much where so many persons and personages are concerned. The Sanskrit poet has said,—

तृणैर्गुणत्वमापन्नैर्बध्यन्ते मत्तदन्तिनः ।

"The thinnest fibres, joined together,
may bind an elephant in rut."

The number of charitable persons in the world is very large. A little, contributed by each, may support undertakings bigger than a second edition of the entire Mahabharata.

1, Rājāh Gooroo Dass' Street,
Calcutta,
January 21st, 1895.

SUNDARI BALA DASSI (ROY.)

ADVERTISEMENT.

100 copies of the Sanskrit Mahābhārata (complete) and 100 of the English translation of the same, published by P. C. Roy, C. I. E., will be given away at reduced prices, *i. e.*, Rs. 7 and Rs. 20 respectively (inclusive of all charges) to meet the immediate expenses of the D. B. Karyalaya, and Babu Pratapa Chandra Roy's *Çrāddha*.

Those recipients of the Mahābhārata who may miss particular fascicules in their sets are urgently requested to apply for them without delay, for, a few months hence it will not be possible to supply them at even double or treble the sum hitherto charged for a missing fascicule.

All balances of subscriptions, again, due on account of the publication, should be remitted without delay. Those balances, if speedily paid up, will go a great way to enable the undersigned to complete the work with such assistance as she may get from other quarters.

All remittances should be made payable to the undersigned. All business communications, however, should be addressed, as hitherto, to the Manager, Dātavya Bhārata Kāryālaya, 1, Rājāh Gooroo Dass' Street, Calcutta.

SUNDARI BALA ROY.

NOTICE.

It is with deep regret that the undersigned announces the death of Babu Pratapa Chandra Roy, C. I. E. He expired at his residence, 1 Rajah Gooroo Dass' Street, Calcutta, at 1 A. M. of Friday the 11th of January. The deceased was 53 years of age, having been born in 1842. His native village is Sanko in the District of Burdwan. He received his rudimentary education in the indegenous Patshala of his village under the village Guru. He came to Calcutta while he was about 16 years of age and chance led him to Babu Kali Prasanna Singha, the millionaire, who issued for gratuitous distribution the first Bengali translation of the Mahābhārata. Pratapa Chandra's amiability and intelligence soon attracted the attention of his young master who used to employ him in collecting the rents of his Calcutta houses. He was his master's private casheer for sometime. Seeing Babu Singha's unbounded confidence in him, many older servants were jealous of him and tried to ruin him. Their attempts only ended in confirming Babu Singha's good opinion of him. Not having much to do, Pratapa Chandra watched the progress of his master's translation of the Mahābhārata. Soon after the completion of that work, his master died. With the small sum he had succeeded in saving, Pratapa Chandra then opened a small book-shop. His prices were always cheaper than those of others, and within a very short time, his shop became extensively known. He was by nature a charitable man. Many poor boys used in those days to visit his shop for the permission he always gave them to read the books on his shelves. After school hours till candle-light his shop looked like a little reading room. He was very economical in his expenses and understood his business. Within less than 8 years he succeeded in securing a competence. He then resolved to issue a new Bengali translation of the Mahābhārata. It was a serial publication. He completed it in a remarkably short period of time and made a good profit. About this time he was visited by a domestic calamity. It affected him deeply and rendered him incapable of business. He wished to try the effect of new scenes. While roving without a purpose through northern

Bengal, he made many acquaintances. He learnt from them that though his own edition of the Mahābhārata was cheap in all conscience, yet it was beyond the reach of many of his countrymen. As he had nobody to provide for except a daughter whom he had married to a good family, he resolved to return to Calcutta and forget his sorrow in some kind of active work of a charitable kind. Coming to Calcutta he took stock of his shop. He found that he had still about a thousand copies of his Mahābhārata. These he resolved to give away to deserving men. His indiscriminate charity produced a result he did not anticipate. Some of the recipients of his charity sold the volumes they had got and these found their way to the booksellers who set a larger price on them than what he had charged in the first instance. He consulted with some friends competent to give him advice. The result was the establishment of the Dātavya Bhārata Kāryālaya. A new edition of the Bengali Mahābhārata was commenced. A considerable number of copies were given away *gratis* to persons incapable of selling them. As regards the remaining copies the small sum of Rs. 6/6 was charged for copy, to cover the expenses of postal transit and establishment. The rule he made was to send every copy through the post. This enabled him to dispose of each fascicule in a day or two after issue. If anybody went to his office, he was told to communicate what he had to say through the post. He worked with a very small establishment. He could not afford to lose time by speaking with hundreds of men who, if such a rule had not been made, would have called on him at all hours of the day. As a man of business, he always strove to save time and money.

The result of the operations of the Dātavya Bhārata Kāryālaya is well known. In the introduction to the first fasciculus of the English translation of the Mahābhārata, that result was summed up in these words :—

"The Dātavya Bhārata Kāryālaya has, within the course of the last seven years, printed and gratuitously distributed two editions of the Mahābhārata in Bengalee translation, each edition comprising nearly 3,000 copies. The fourth edition of the Mahābhārata (the third of the series for

gratuitous distribution) has been commenced and will take some time before it is completed. One edition of the Harivansa comprising 3,000 copies has been exhausted. The Rāmāyana also has been taken in hand and is nearly completed, the text of Vālmiki publishing along with the translation. Roughly estimated, the Bhārata Kāryālaya has distributed up to date nearly Nine thousand copies of the Mahābhārata and the Harivansa taken together, and that number would swell to Eighteen thousand, when the fourth edition of the Mahābhārata and the first edition of the Rāmāyana (both diglot) will be complete. A single copy of the Mahābhārata consists of about 1,033 forms, octavo, demy ; a single copy of the Harivansa, 112 forms ; and the single copy of the Rāmāyana, 578 forms. The Arithmetical result, therefore, of the operations of the Bhārata Kāryalaya has been that 1,37,83,500 separate printed forms have been already gratuitously distributed and in course of distribution."

To the above must be added the result of the operations of the last 12 years. During this period four successive editions of the Mahābhārata in Sanskrit, each comprising not less than 3,000 copies, have been completed. Of the English translation also of the Mahābhārata, 92 fascicules have been issued. Two more are ready. Six or seven more fascicules are needed for completing the work. These represent an amount of work that is more than double of what was announced twelve years ago.

The character of Babu Pratapa Chandra Roy may be summed up in a very few words. He was exceedingly charitable. Himself content with the most frugal fare and simple dress, he always strove to save what he could in order to be able to relieve the distress of others. Within his small means, he endeavoured to live according to the ideal set forth in the following verse of the *Panchatantra*,—

अयं निजः परो वेति गणना लघुचेतसां ।
उदारचरितानां तु वसुधैव कुटुम्बकं ।।

The only luxury in which he indulged was the Indian mango. When the season came, the best varieties of this

fruit were to be found on his table. It should be noted, however, that he seldom himself ate what he bought. The best portion of his daily supply was for his friends. Those who visited him at this season could never leave him without tasting some of his mangoes. The country about his native village, Sanko, produces good varieties of other fruits, such as the Indian jack, the plantain, and the pine apple. These he always brought to Calcutta for his friends. Throughout his life, he was particularly kind and hospitable to school-boys. If a schoolboy applied for a copy of the Mahābhārata in Bengali, Sanskrit, or English, he knew not how to refuse. Even the small sum of Rs. 6/6 charged for the expenses of postal transit and establishment, he would rather take in 6 instalments than refuse the application. The modesty and humility of his character made him exceedingly loveable. When injured by anybody, he never retaliated. Firmly convinced that his opponent had been misled by inaccurate information, he always tried to see him and explain matters at a personal interview. If he talked with anybody for five minutes, he would surely make him a friend ever afterwards. He was a rigid Hindu in religion. His regard for the Brāhmanas was unbounded. In them he saw the descendants of those Rishis whom he worshipped. His respect also for the officials was very great. He took them for the representatives of his Sovereign. The study of the Rājadharma sections of the Cānti Parvan had filled him with the belief that for the happiness of mankind, the institution of Kings was the principal means. The author of the Mahābhārata has represented the King to be a portion of the Divinity. He frequently complained of the tone of some of the Indian newspapers both vernacular and English. Officials are men. The difficulties of administration are always great. If they committed mistakes, these should be pointed out to them. In this view he was not singular. The late Babu Bhudeb Mookerjee was his teacher in this respect. Those English papers that take a delight in villifying the natives of India always gave him much pain. Bruke's saying that a nation cannot be villified was what he believed.

His services to the cause of literature were recognised by the Government by the bestowal of a C. I. E. on him. He accepted the honor meekly, but he always thought that he had not sufficient means for keeping up the dignity. He had been ailing for nearly a year. The disease was diabetes, that malady which takes away so many of our countrymen every year that are engaged in intellectual pursuits. For about the last six months he had been confined to his chamber. No treatment did him any good. He saw that his end was fast approaching. His friends gave him hope, but he knew better. His great regret was that he could not live to complete his work. It was his Maker's will, he said, that he should not have that gratification. He resigned himself meekly to that All-powerful Will. On the evening of Thursday, the 10th instant, his breath became hard. He gave notice to his attendants that he would not survive the night. They tried to console him, saying it was nothing. He told them that his experience by the death-bed of many of his relatives should be relied upon. He gave directions calmly and without any agitation, as to how his body should be disposed of. He took leave of many of his relatives and friends one by one. He expressed his obligations to Babu Aghore Nath Banerjee, the manager of the Kāryālaya, for the loving zeal with which the latter had tended him during his illness and for the devoted fidelity with which he had served him since his first appointment. He then spoke of some of his friends, and of some of his patrons among the officials, particularly mentioning Sir Alfred Croft, the Director of Public Instruction, Bengal ; Sir Charles Elliott, the Lieutenant-Governor of Bengal; Sir Steuart Bayley, of the India Office; Sir Auckland Colvin, the retired Lieutenant-Governor of the N. W. Provinces ; Lord Roberts, the late Commander-in-Chief of India ; Professor Max Muller ; Professor Lanman ; Mr. H. B. Witton of Hamilton, Canada ; and Dr. Rost, the retired Librarian of the India Office. He was extremely touched while mentioning the latter's name. His conviction was firm that his friends and countrymen would never permit his work to be suspended at the stage at which it had arrived.

He retained the full possession of his senses till about a quarter of an hour of his last breath. About an hour before his death he enquired about the time. Upon being informed that it had struck 12, he asked those about him to chaunt the name of Hari, telling them that they should not cease till he gave the last gasp, and when they commenced, himself joined them with his feeble voice. He then seemed to quietly fall asleep. The clock struck 1 A. M. when he expired.

He has left behind him his widow named Dharmamati Sundaribālā Dāssi, a widowed daughter Haridāssi Dāssi by his first wife who had predeceased him, and a grand-daughter named Chandi Dāssi Dāssi. Protapa Chandra Roy has left nothing behind him in the form of property save his house, No. 1 Rājāh Gooroodass' Street, and some copies of the Mahābhārata in Sanskrit and English. No cash is available for even his *Çrāddha*. His widow, however, is resolved to devote all she has for the completion of her husband's work. Rs. 8 to 10 thousand are still needed for issuing the 6 or 7 remaining fascicules. It is hoped that her appeal to her countrymen, the different local Governments, and Europe and America, will not go in vain.

1, Rājāh Gooroo Dāss' Street,
Calcutta,
January 25th, 1895.

KISORI MOHAN GANGULI, B. L.
Translator.

Mahābhārata. English

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE

LIBRARY OF PRINCETON
JUN 28 1918
THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

PRATĀPA CHANDRA RĀY, C. I. E.

AÇWAMEDHA PARVA.

CALCUTTA:

BHĀRATA PRESS.

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

1894.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

NOTICE.

Through the grace of Hari who never abandons those that humbly invoke his aid, I have at last completed the Anuçāsana Parvan. Of the eighteen Parvans of the Mahābhārata, the Anuçāsana forms the thirteenth, and is the third in extent, being slightly less than the Vana. From beginning to end, the Anuçāsana is didactic in its character. The duties of men in various stations of life have been declared by Bhishma in answer to the successive questions of Yudhishthira. Of those duties, gift has been declared to be one of the foremost. Accordingly, the merits, as understood in ancient India, of the diverse kinds of gift have been laid down most elaborately. Many things occurring in this Parvan may appear as quaint to Western readers. But it should always be remembered that those ideas, however quaint, are still cherished by a very large section of the people of India. The very gifts are regarded by them to be meritorious, and are, accordingly, made under nearly the very same formalities.

The literary difficulties which the Anuçāsana presents, though slightly less than those presented by the Cānti, are still very great. Both the Bengali versions have been executed carelessly. The gloss of Nilakantha, as usual, is clear. There are verses in the Anuçāsana which, if not exactly *cruces*, are at least very nearly so, considerable labour and reflection being necessary to get at their meaning. The aid offorded by Nilakantha in such places is simply invaluable. The English version of the Anuçāsana has been, for the most part based upon Nilakantha's gloss. In only a few instances has the translator differed from that Commentator.

The completion of the Anuçāsana has brought my task to a point such that six or seven more fascicules are necessary for bringing my labours to their termination. Those seven fascicules will cost, including all contingent charges, about Rs. 10,000 in all. How to provide for this amount has made me exceedingly anxious. If I had health and strength as before, I would not have been at all anxious. Unfortunately for myself, for about two years I have been ill, very ill. For more than six months I have been entirely prostrated. I am so reduced

that my nearest friends are unable to readily recognise me. I have tried every sort of treatment without any benefit. The presentiment that I would be spared till at least the completion of my task has disappeared. I cannot expect to see the end, although that end is so near. For all that, I resign myself to the will of Hari most cheerfully, fully convinced that whatever He does is always for the best. Others may call it superstition, but there is a belief in this country that amongst those who labour on the Mahābhārata very few succeed in attaining to the termination of their labours. This belief has sometimes forced itself upon me. The consolation, however, that is attached to it is, that the ceaseless contemplation of Hari's glory dispels the effect of all transgressions and calls away the person from a world of woe to one of uninterrupted bliss.

The difficulties of the Açwamedha Parvan are very great. They are scarcely less than those of the Cānti. The Açwamedha contains the Anugitā. Arjuna, unto whom on the eve of battle, Krishna had in kindness communicated the soul-ennobling instructions contained in the Gitā, had, in course of the battle, forgotten those truths. He asked Krishna to repeat them in his hearing. Krishna, however, without repeating the words he had used on that occasion, for he had uttered them under Yoga or inspiration, communicated to him the same truths in different language. He recited to Arjuna the discourse of a Brāhmana he had heard while at Dwārikā. These sections of the Açwamedha, therefore, are called Anugitā or Brāhmanagitā. That able scholar whose death we all lament, *viz.*, Kāçināth Tryambak Telang, translated these sections of the Açwamedha for Professor Max Muller's *Sacred Books of the East.* That version occurs in the eighth volume of the series. Like the other works of that eminent scholar, the English version of the Anugitā is characterised by many excellencies. Besides being closely literal, the notes with which it has been enriched, has enhanced its value. The text from which Telang's version has been made is that of Arjuna Misra. He has generally discarded the authority of Nilakantha. To this one objection can be

taken. Arjuna Misra, in many instances, has corrected the text at his own will. It is in this way that many difficulties have been got rid of by him. The readings of Arjuna Misra are unsupported by extant manuscripts. Without at all pretending to pronounce an opinion on the relative superiority of the two commentators in point of learning and penetration, it may be fairly observed that Nilakantha always prefers to take the text as it is, without seeking to correct it.

As this is, in all probability, my last word to the public, for I have no hope of appearing again after the completion of the Açwamedha, I beg, in this place, to express my gratitude to my numerous friends and patrons who have, from the beginning, favoured me with their support. I have named them in the notice which was issued with the Eighty-third fascicule. As I have very little to add to what I said on that occasion, I wish to reproduce these words of mine with slight verbal alterations.

'I must take this opportunity for expressing my deep gratitude to those eminent personages through whose aid, counsel, and sympathy I have been able to prosecute so much of my task. Foremost among all, my gratitude is due to my Gracious and August Sovereign, the Queen-Empress of India, the success of every righteous enterprise being directly due to the virtues of the Sovereign, under Providence. * * *
Some years ago I received permission to lay before Her Majesty, for her gracious acceptance, a copy of the English translation. I have always considered that acceptance as at once a reward and an auspicious omen. Next to my Sovereign, among Oriental scholars and savants I must say that to Professor Max Muller I stand very much indebted for the preliminary arrangements I was able to make for bringing out the translation. He favored me with a specimen translation which he had copied with his own hand many years ago and had kept by him for future use. That specimen proved to be of great use to me. It served to point out the way in which a literal translation might be made without forgetting the claims of ease and elegance. Next to Professor Max Muller, my obligations are due to Dr. Rost, the learned

Librarian of the India Office. His letter to me written under the direction of the then Secretary of State for India, *viz.*, the Marquis of Hartington, had first suggested to me the idea of an English translation of the Mahābhārata. From the very beginning, Dr. Rost has been my kindest of friends. His sympathy and advice have been, at important junctures during the last ten years, simply invaluable. When depressed by discouraging circumstances, a letter from Dr. Rost, breathing words of hearty encouragement and kindness, has instantly filled me with hope, dispersing the mists of doubt and the darkness of despair from before my eyes. To Monsrs. A. Barth and St. Hilaire of Paris and Professor Jacobi of Germany, my obligations have been very great. They too have supported me with their sympathy and done all in their power for bringing the work to the notice of European scholars. I owe it to the exertions of Monsrs. Barth and St. Hilaire that the French Government went out of its way and ordered a grant to me of 900 Francs, for that Government does not make grants to foreign publications, especially to publications before completion. In America my obligations are due to a host of friends foremost among whom are Mr. William E. Coleman of San-Francisco. California, Professor Lanman, the Vice-President of the American Oriental Society, Professor J. W. Reese of Maryland, America, Professor Maurice Bloomfield of Hopkins' University, and Mr. B. Witton of Hamilton, Canada. That the work has been known in America has been entirely due to the exertions of these gentlemen. Their sympathy has been of the highest value to me. Speaking of India, my obligations are due to Sir Stuart Bayley, Sir A. Colvin, General Stewart, Lord Roberts, Sir Charles Aitichison, Sir Mortimer Durand, Dr. W. W. Hunter, Mr. C. P. Ilbert, Sir A. Scoble, Sir Lepel Griffin, Sir Charles Elliott, Sir John Ware Edgar, the Marquis of Ripon, the Marquis of Dufferin and Ava, Sir Donald Mackenzie Wallace, and Sir Alfred Croft. With the single exception of Sir Charles Elliott and Sir Alfred Croft, all the others have left India for good. * * Without the assistance, freely rendered, of all these eminent officials, I could never have done even a fourth of what I have been able to accomplish.

The officials I have named have been the soul of the enterprise. Whatever aid the work has received from the Government, has been due to the kind efforts of Sir Steuart Bayley, Sir A. Colvin, Sir Charles Aitichison, Sir A. Scoble, and the Marquis of Dufferin and Ava.

Besides these eminent officials I have derived considerable help from many of the princes and chiefs of India. My greatful acknowledgments are due to His Highness the Nizam and His Highness the ruler of Mysore for their princely donations. The Nizam is a Mahomedan prince. Any contribution coming from him in aid of a work like the Mahābhārata could not but indicate His Highness's enlightened sympathy for literature in general, irrespective of the nation or the creed which that literature represents. No native State possesses Ministers more enlightened than that ruled over by His Highness the Nizam. So long also as an officer like Nawab Sayyed Ali Bilgrami is about the person of His Highness, ready to offer advice when advice is sought, the reputation of His Highness must go on continually increasing.

To the Editors of the Indian Newspapers my thanks are due for the encouragement they have uniformly afforded me in the prosecution of the work. Amongst my own countrymen I have obtained the greatest measure of sympathy from Dr. Sambhu C. Mookerjee, the brilliant Editor of "Reis & Rayyet," Babu Narendra Nath Sen, the Editor of the "Indian Mirror," and Babu Krishtodass Pal and, after him, Babu Rajkumar Sarvadhikari, of the "Hindoo Patriot." Babu Sishir Kumar Ghose also, of the "Amrita Bazar Patrika," has done much to encourage me. Amongst the organs of the European community in India, I have derived the greatest support from the "Englishman," the "Indian Daily News," and the "Satesman and Friend of India." The late Mr. Robert Knight (of the "Statesman") always used to take an interest in the work and favored me with numerous introductions to eminent men all over India. He spared no opportunity to bring the work to the notice of persons likely to help it pecuniarily. It is entirely owing to Mr. J. O. B. Saunders, again, of the "Englishman" that the work first succeeded in receiving the attention

of the Government of Bengal, which was followed by that substantial patronage with which Sir Rivers Thompson favored it. The *Pioneer* and the *Civil & Military Gazette* also have helped greatly.'

Since uttering the above words, death has taken away Dr. Sambhu C. Mookerjee. The loss has been a public calamity. The sterling merits of the great Brāhmana publicist require no words of mine to bring them out. I wish, on the present occasion, to add that, during the last year, my obligations to Sir Charles Elliott have been very much enhanced by his graceful act of allowing me to draw the additional grant of Rs. 1,000 which had been made by the Bengal Government sometime ago but which, at the time it was sanctioned, was directed to be drawn upon completion of my enterprise. Seeing my difficulties, Sir Charles Elliott was pleased to place that amount under my immediate disposal.

With these words I make my respectful bow to the public, convinced that if it pleases my Maker to take me away before the 6 or 7 fascicules that would complete the work are out, my countrymen, among whom I count many sincere friends and patrons, will not permit the publication to be suspended at a stage so near termination. In my will I have directed that whatever I may leave behind shall be devoted to the work. That, however, is very little. Would it were sufficient for the purpose !

At the request of my friends and patrons and of many readers of the Mahābhārata in foreign countries, I append to this fascicule a likeness of mine. I would not have complied with the request, prompted though it has been by kindness alone, but for the belief that this is my last appearance before them.

1, Rājāh Gooroo Dass' Street,
Calcutta,
December 31st, 1894.

PRATAP CHANDRA ROY, C. I. E.

BABU PROTAP CHANDRA RAI, C.I.E.

THE MAHÁBHARATA.

ACWAMEDHA PARVA.

SECTION I.

(Açwamedhika Parva.)

Having bowed down unto Nārāyana, and Nara the foremost of male beings, and unto the goddess Saraswati, must the word Jaya be uttered.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After the king Dhritarāshtra had offered libations of water (unto the manes of Bhishma), the mighty-armed* Yudhishthira, with his senses bewildered, placing the former in his front, ascended the banks (of the river), his eyes suffused with tears, and dropt down on the bank of the Gangā like an elephant pierced by the hunter.[1-2] Then, incited by Krishna, Bhima took him up sinking. 'This must not be so,' said Krishna, the grinder of hostile hosts.[3] The Pāndavas, O king, saw Yudhishthira, the son of Dharma, troubled and lying on the ground, and also sighing again and again.[4] And seeing the king despondent and feeble, the Pāndavas, overwhelmed with grief, sat down, surrounding him.[5] And endowed with high intelligence, and having the sight of wisdom, king Dhritarāshtra, exceedingly afflicted with grief for his sons, addressed the monarch, saying,—'Rise up, O thou tiger among the Kurus.[6] Do thou now attend to thy duties. O Kunti's son, thou hast conquered this Earth according to the usage of the Kshatriyas.[7] Do thou now, O lord of men, enjoy her with thy brothers and friends. O foremost of the righteous, I do not see why thou shouldst grieve. O lord of the Earth, having lost a hundred sons like unto riches obtained in a dream, it is Gāndhāri and

* 'Mahāvāhu' occurs twice in this passage. One of the epithets is left out on the score of redundancy.—T.

I, who should mourn.[8] Not having listened to the pregnant words of the high-souled Vidura, who sought our welfare, I, of perverse senses, (now) repent.[9] The virtuous Vidura, endowed with divine insight, had told me,—'Thy race will meet with annihilation owing to the transgressions of Duryodhana.[10] O king, if thou wish for the weal of thy line, act up to my advice. Cast off this wicked-minded monarch, Suyodhana,[11] and let not either Karna or Cakuni by any means see him. Their gambling too do thou, without making any fuss, suppress,[12] and anoint the righteous king Yudhishthira. That one of subdued senses will righteously govern the Earth.[13] If thou wouldst not have king Yudhishthira, son of Kunti, then, O monarch, do thou, performing a sacrifice, thyself take charge of the kingdom,[14] and regarding all creatures with an even eye, O lord of men, do thou let thy kinsmen, O thou advancer of thy kindred, subsist on thy bounty'.[15]—When, O Kunti's son, the far-sighted Vidura said this, fool that I was, I followed the wicked Duryodhana.[16] Having turned a deaf ear to the sweet speech of that sedate one, I have obtained this mighty sorrow as a consequence, and have been plunged in an ocean of woe.[17] Behold thy old father and mother, O king, plunged in misery. But, O master of men, I find no occasion for thy grief.' "[18]

Section II.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thus addressed by the intelligent king Dhritarāshtra, Yudhishthira, possessed of understanding, became calm. And then Keçava (Krishna) accosted him :[1]—'If a person indulges excessively in sorrow for his departed fore-fathers, he grieves them.[2] (Therefore, banishing grief), do thou (now) celebrate many a sacrifice with suitable presents to the priests ; and do thou gratify the gods with Soma liquor, and the manes of thy fore-fathers, with their due food and drink.[3] Do thou also gratify thy guests with meat and drink and the destitute with gifts commensurate with their desires. A person of thy high intelligence should not bear himself thus.[4] What ought to be known, hath been known by thee ; what ought to be done, hath also been performed. And thou hast heard the

duties of the Kshatriyas, recited by Bhishma, the son of Bhāgirathi, by Krishna Dwaipāyana, Nārada and Vidura.[5] Therefore thou shouldst not walk the way of the stupid; but pursuing the course of thy forefathers, sustain the burthen (of the empire).[6] It is meet that a Kshatriya should attain heaven for certain by his (own) renown. Of heroes, those that came to be slain never shall have to turn away (from the celestial regions).[7] Renounce thy grief, O mighty sovereign. Verily, what hath happened was destined to happen so. Thou canst in no wise see those that have been slain in this war.[8]—Having said this unto Yudhishthira, prince of the pious, the high-spirited Govinda paused; and Yudhishthira answered him thus.[9] 'O Govinda, full well do I know thy fondness for me. Thou hast ever favoured me with thy love and thy friendship.[10] And, O holder of the mace and the discus, O scion of Yādu's race, O glorious one, if (now) with a pleased mind thou dost permit me to go to the ascetic's retreat in the woods, then thou wouldst compass what is highly desired by me.[11] Peace find I none after having slain my grand-father, and that foremost of men, Karna, who never fled from the field of battle.[12] Do thou, O Janārddana, so order that I may be freed from this heinous sin and that my mind may be purified.[13] As Prithā's son was speaking thus, the highly-energetic Vyāsa, cognisant of the duties of life, soothing him, spoke these excellent words.[14] My child, thy mind is not yet calmed; and therefore thou art again stupefied by a childish sentiment. And wherefore, O child, do we over and over again scatter our speech to the winds?[15] Thou knowest the duties of the Kshatriyas, who live by warfare. A king that hath performed his proper part should not suffer himself to be overwhelmed by sorrow.[16] Thou hast faithfully listened to the entire doctrine of salvation; and I have repeatedly removed thy misgivings arising out of desire.[17] But not paying due heed to what I have unfolded, thou of perverse understanding hast doubtless forgotten it clean. Be it not so. Such ignorance is not worthy of thee.[18] O sinless one, thou knowest all kinds of expiation; and thou hast also heard of the virtues of kings, as well as the merits of gifts.[19] Wherefore then, O Bhārata, acquainted with every morality and versed

in all the Āgamas, art thou overwhelmed (with grief) as if from ignorance?' "[20]

SECTION III.

"Vyāsa said,—'O Yudhishthira, thy wisdom, I conceive, is not adequate. None doth any act by virtue of his own power.[1] It is God who engageth him in acts good or bad, O bestower of honor. Where then is the room for repentance?[2] Thou deemest thyself as having perpetrated impious acts. Do thou, therefore, O Bhārata, hearken as to the way in which sin may be removed.[3] O Yudhishthira, those that commit sins, can always free themselves from them through penance, sacrifice and gifts.[4] O king, O foremost of men, sinful people are purified by sacrifice, austerities and charity.[5] The high-souled celestials and Asuras perform sacrifices for securing religious merit; and therefore sacrifices are of supreme importance.[6] It is through sacrifices that the high-souled celestials had waxed so wondrously powerful; and having celebrated rites did they vanquish the Dānavas.[7] Do thou, O Yudhishthira, prepare for the Rājasuya, and the horse-sacrifice, as well as, O Bhārata, for the Sarvamedha and the Naramedha.*[8] And even as Daçaratha's son, Rāma, or as Dushmanta's and Cakuntalā's son, thy ancestor, the lord of the Earth, the exceedingly puissant king Bharata, had done, do thou agreeably to the ordinance celebrate the Horse-sacrifice with Dakshinās.[9-10] Yudhishthira replied:—'Beyond a doubt, the Horse-sacrifice purifieth princes. But I have a purpose of which it behooveth thee to hear.[11] Having caused this huge carnage of kindred, I cannot, O best of the regenerate ones, dispense gifts even on a small scale; I have no wealth to give.[12] Nor can I for wealth solicit these juvenile sons of kings, staying in sorry plight, with their wounds yet green, and undergoing suffering.[13] How, O foremost of twice-born ones, having myself destroyed the Earth, can I, overcome by sorrow, levy dues for celebrating a

---

* *I. e.*, human sacrifice. From this it appears that the sacrifice of human beings was in vogue at the time.—T.

sacrifice ?[14] Through Duryodhana's fault, O best of ascetics, the kings of the Earth have met with destruction, and we have reaped ignominy.[15] For wealth Duryodhana hath wasted the Earth ; and the treasury of that wicked-minded son of Dhritarāshtra is empty.[16] (In this sacrifice), the Earth is the Dakshinā ; this is the rule that is prescribed in the first instance. The usual reversal of this rule, though sanctioned, is observed by the learned as such.[17] Nor, O ascetic, do I like to have a substitute (for this process). In this matter, O reverend sir, it behooveth thee to favor me with thy counsel'.[18] Thus addressed by Prithā's son, Krishna Dwaipāyana, reflecting for a while, spoke unto the righteous king,[19] 'This treasury, (now) exhausted, shall be full. O son of Prithā, in the mountain Himavān (Himālaya) there is gold which had been left behind by Brāhmanas at the sacrifice of the high-souled Marutta'.*[20-21] Yudhishthira asked : 'How in that sacrifice celebrated by Marutta was so much gold amassed ? And, O foremost of speakers, when did he reign ?[22] Vyāsa said :—'If, O Prithā's son, thou art anxious to hear concerning that king sprung from the Karandhama race, then listen to me as I tell thee when that highly powerful monarch possessed of immense wealth reigned.' "[23]

Section IV.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O righteous one, I am desirous of hearing the history of that royal sage Marutta. Do thou, O Dwaipāyana, relate this unto me, O sinless one'"[1]

"Vyāsa said,—'O child, in the Krita age Manu was lord (of the Earth) wielding the sceptre. His son was known under the name of Prasandhi.[2] Prasandhi had a son named Kshupa. Kshupa's son was that lord (of men), king Ikshwāku.[3] He, O king, had a hundred sons endowed with pre-eminent piety. And all of them were made monarchs by king Ikshwāku.[4] The eldest of them, Vinça, became the model of bowmen. Vinça's son, O Bhārata, was the auspicious Vivinça.[5] Vivinça,

---

* King Marutta celebrated a sacrifice in the Himālaya, bestowing gold on Brāhmanas. Not being able to carry the entire quantity, they had carried as much as they could, throwing away the remainder.—T.

O king, had five and ten sons; all of them powerful archers, revering Brāhmanas and speaking the truth,[6] gentle and ever speaking fair. The eldest brother, Khaninetra, oppressed all his brothers.[7] And having conquered the entire kingdom rid of all troubles, Khaninetra could not retain his supremacy; nor were the people pleased with him.[8] And dethroning him, they, O foremost of monarchs, invested his son Suvarchā with the rights of sovereignty, and (having effected this) experienced joy (in their hearts).[9] Seeing the reverses sustained by his sire as well as his expulsion from the empire, he was ever intent on bringing about the welfare of the people, being devoted to Brahman, speaking the truth, practising purity and restraining his senses and thoughts. And the subjects were well pleased with that high-minded one constant in virtue.[10-11] But he being constantly engaged in virtuous deeds, his treasures and vehicles became greatly reduced. And on his treasury having become depleted, the feudatory princes swarming round began to give him trouble.[12] Being thus oppressed by many foes while his treasury, horses and vehicles were impoverished, the king underwent great tribulation along with his retainers and the denizens of his capital.[13] Although his power waned greatly, yet the foes could not slay the king, for his power, O Yudhishthira, was established in righteousness.[14] And when he had reached the extreme of misery along with the citizens, he blew his hand (with his mouth), and from that there appeared a supply of forces.[15] And then he vanquished all the kings living along the borders of his dominions. And from this circumstance, O king, he hath been celebrated as Karandhama.[16] His son, (the first) Kārandhama saw the light at the beginning of the Tretā age, equalling Indra himself, endowed with grace, and invincible even by the immortals.[17] At that time all the kings were under his control; and alike by virtue of his wealth and of his prowess, he became their emperor.[18] In short, the righteous king Avikshit by name, became like unto Indra himself in heroism; and he was given to sacrifices, delighted in virtue and held his senses under restraint.[19] And in energy he resembled the sun and in forbearance, Earth herself; in intelligence, he was like Vrihaspati,

and in calmness the mountain Himavān himself.[29] And that king delighted the hearts of his subjects by act, thought, speech, self-restraint, and forbearance.[21]—the lord who performed hundreds of horse-sacrifices ; and whom the potent and learned Angirā himself served as priest.[22] His son surpassed his sire in the possession of good qualities; named Marutta, that lord of kings was righteous and of great renown ; having the might of ten thousand elephants, and like unto Vishnu's second self.[23] Desirous of celebrating a sacrifice, that virtuous monarch, coming to Mount Meru on the northern side of Himavat, caused thousands of shining golden vessels to be forged. There on a huge golden hill he performed the rites.[24-25] And goldsmiths made basins and vessels and pans and seats without number.[26] And the sacrificial ground was near this place. And that righteous lord of Earth, king Marutta, along with other princes, performed a sacrifice there.' "[27]

Section V.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O best of speakers, how that king became so powerful ? And how, O twice-born one, did he obtain so much gold ?[1] And where now, O reverend sire, is all his wealth ? And, O ascetic, how can we secure the same ?'[2]

"Vyāsa thereupon said,—As the numerous offspring of the Prajāpati Daksha, the Asuras and the Celestials challenged each other (to encounter),[3] so in the same way Angirā's sons, the exceedingly energetic Vrihaspati and the ascetic, Samvartta, of equal vows, challenged each other, O king. Vrihaspati began to worry Samvartta again and again.[4-5] And constantly troubled by his elder brother, he, O Bhārata, renouncing his riches, went to the woods, with nothing to cover his body save the open sky.*[6] (At that time), Vāsava, having vanquished and destroyed the Asuras, and obtained the sovereignty of the celestial regions, had appointed as his priest[7] Angirā's eldest son, that best of Brāhmanas, Vrihaspati. Formerly Angirā was the family-priest of king Karandhama ;[8] matchless among

---

* Digamvara, *i. e.*, in a naked state.—T.

men in might, prowess and character; powerful like unto Catakratu, righteous-souled and of rigid vows.[9] O king, he had vehicles, and warriors, and many adherents, and superb and costly bedsteads,[10] produced through dint of meditation by the breath of his mouth. And by his native virtues, the monarch had brought all the princes under his sway.[11] And having lived as long as he desired, he ascended heaven in his corporeal embodiment. And his son named Avikshit—conqueror of foes—righteous like unto Yayāti,[12] brought all the Earth under his dominion. And both in merit and might the king resembled his sire.[13] He had a son named Marutta, endowed with energy, and resembling Vāsava himself. This earth clad in oceans felt herself drawn towards him.[14] He always* used to defy the lord of the celestials; and, O son of Pāndu, Vāsava also defied Marutta.[15] And Marutta—master of Earth—was pure and possessed of perfections. And in spite of his striving, Cakra could not prevail over him.[16] And incapable of controlling him, he riding on the horse, along with the celestials summoning Vrihaspati, spoke to him thus.[17] 'O Vrihaspati, if thou wishst to do what is agreeable to me, do not perform priestly offices for Marutta[18] on behalf of the deities or the ancestral Manes. I have, O Vrihaspati, obtained the sovereignty of the three worlds, while Marutta is merely the lord of the Earth.[19] How, O Brāhmana, having acted as priest unto the immortal king of the celestials, wilt thou unhasitatingly perform priestly function unto Marutta subject to death ?[20] Good betide thee! Either espouse my side or that of the monarch, Marutta, or forsaking Marutta, gladly come over to me.[21]—Thus accosted by the sovereign of the celestials, Vrihaspati, reflecting for a moment, replied unto the king of the immortals.[22] "Thou art the Lord of creatures, and in thee are the worlds established. And thou hast destroyed Namuchi, Viçwarupa and Vala.[23] Thou, O hero, alone encompassest the highest prosperity of the celestials, and, O slayer of Vala, thou sustainest the earth as well as heaven.[24] How, O foremost of the celestials, having officiated as thy priest, shall I, O chastiser of Pāka, serve a

* Nityada always, left out on the ground of redundancy.—T.

mortal prince and do thou listen to what I say.[25] Even if the god of fire cease to cause heat and warmth, or the earth change its nature, or the sun cease to give light, I shall never deviate from the truth (that I have spoken).[26]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"On hearing this speech from Vrihaspati, Indra became cured of his envious feelings, and then praising him he repaired to his own mansion."[27]

SECTION VI.

Vyāsa said,—"The ancient legend of Vrihaspati and the wise Marutta is cited in this connection.[1] On hearing of the compact made by Angira's son Vrihaspati with the lord of the gods (Indra), king Marutta made the necessary preparations for a great sacrifice.[2] The eloquent grandson of Karandhama (Marutta) having conceived the idea of a sacrifice in his mind, went to Vrihaspati and addressed him thus.[3] "O worshipful ascetic, I have intended to perform the sacrifice which thou didst propose to me once on a previous occasion, in accordance with thy instructions, and I now desire to appoint thee,[4] as officiating priest at this sacrifice, the materials whereof have also been collected by me. O excellent one, thou art our family priest, therefore do thou take those sacrificial things and perform the sacrifice thyself."[5]

Vrihaspati said,—"O lord of the earth, I do not desire to perform thy sacrifice, I have been appointed as priest by the Lord of the gods (Indra) and I have promised to him to act as such."[6]

Marutta said,—"Thou art our heriditary family priest, and for this reason I entertain great regard for thee, and I have acquired the right of being assisted at sacrifices by thee, and therefore it is meet that thou shouldst officiate as priest at my sacrifice."[7]

Vrihaspati said,—"Having, O Marutta, acted as priest to the Immortals, how can I act as such to mortal men, and whether thou dost depart hence or stay, I tell thee, I have ceased to act as priest to any but the Immortals.[8] O thou of mighty arms, I am unable to act as thy priest now. And according to

thy own desire, thou canst appoint any one as thy priest who will perform thy sacrifice."[9]

Vyāsa said,—"Thus told, king Marutta became confused with shame, and while returning home with his mind oppressed by anxiety, he met Nārada on his way.[10] And that monarch on seeing the divine Rishi Nārada, stood before him with due salutation, and with his hands clasped together, and then Nārada addressing him thus said,—O royal sage, thou seemest to be not well-pleased in thy mind,[11] is all well with thee, where hast thou been, O sinless one, and whence the cause of this thy mental disquietude?[12] And, O king, if there be no objection to thy telling it to me, do thou, O best of kings, disclose (the cause of thy anxiety) to me, so that, O prince, I may allay the disquietude of thy mind with all my efforts.[13]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by the great Rishi Nārada, king Marutta informed him of the rebuff he had received from his religious preceptor."[14]

Marutta said,—"Seeking for a priest to officiate at my sacrifice, I went to that priest of the Immortals, Vrihaspati, the son of Angiras, but he did not choose to accept my offer.[15] Having met with this rebuff from him, I have no desire to live any longer now, for by his abandoning me thus, I have, O Nārada, become contaminated with sin."[16]

Vyāsa said,—"Thus told by that king, Nārada, O mighty prince, made this reply to him with words which seemed to revive that son of Avikshit."[17]

Nārada said,—"The virtuous son of Angiras, Samvarta by name is wandering over all the quarters of the earth in a naked state to the wonder of all creatures;[18] do thou, O prince, go to him, if Vrihaspati does not desire to officiate at thy sacrifice, the powerful Samvarta, if pleased with thee, will perform thy sacrifice.[19]

Marutta said,—"I feel as if instilled with new life, by these thy words, O Nārada, but O the best of speakers, do thou tell me where I can find Samvarta,[20] and how I can remain by his side, and how I am to act so that he may not abandon me, for I do not desire to live if I meet with a rebuff from him also.[21]

Nārada said,—"Desirous of seeing Maheçwara, O prince,

he wanders about at his pleasure in the city of Vārānasi, in the garb of a mad man.[22] And having reached the gate of that city, thou must place a dead body somewhere near it, and the man who shall turn away on seeing the corpse, do thou O prince, know that man to be Samvarta,[23] and knowing him, do thou follow his footsteps wheresoever that powerful man chooses to go, and finding him (at length) in a lonely place thou must seek his protection with thy hands clasped together in supplication to him.[24] And if he enquire of thee as to the person who has given thee the information about his own self, do thou tell him that Nārada has informed thee about Samvarta.[25] And if he should ask thee to follow me, thou must tell him without any hesitation, that I have entered into the fire."[26]

Vyāsa said,—"Having signified his assent to the proposal of Nārada, that royal sage after duly worshipping him, and taking his permission, repaired to the city of Vārānasi,[27] and having reached there, that famous prince did as he had been told, and remembering the words of Nārada, he placed a corpse at the gate of the city.[28] And by coincidence, that Brāhmana also entered the gate of the city at the same time. Then on beholding the corpse, he suddenly turned away.[29] And on seeing him turn back, that prince, the son of Avikshit followed his footsteps with his hands clasped together, and with the object of receiving instruction from him.[30] And then finding him in a lonely place, Samvarta covered the king with mud and ashes and phlegm and spittle.[31] And though thus worried and oppressed by Samvarta, the king followed that sage with his hands clasped together in supplication and trying to appease him.[32] At length overcome with fatigue, and reaching the cool shade of a sacred fig tree with many branches, Samvarta desisted from his course and sat himself to rest."[33]

Section VII.

Samvarta said,—"How hast thou come to know me, and who has referred thee to me, do thou tell this to me truly, if thou wishest me to do what is good to thee.[1] And if thou

speak truly, thou shalt attain all the objects of thy desire, and shouldst thou tell a lie, thy head shall be riven in a hundred pieces."[2]

Marutta said,—"I have been told by Nārada, wandering on his way, that thou art the son of our family-priest, and this (information) has inclined my mind (towards thee), with exquisite satisfaction."[3]

Samvarta said,—"Thou hast told this to me truly. he (Nārada) knows me to be a performer of sacrifices, now tell me where is Nārada living at present."[4]

Marutta said,—"That prince of celestial saints (Nārada) having given me this information about thee, and commended me to thy care, has entered into the fire."[5]

Vyāsa said,—"Hearing these words from the king (Marutta) Samvarta was highly gratified, and he said (addressing Marutta). 'I too am quite able to do all that.'[6] Then, O prince, that Brāhmana, raving like a lunatic, and repeatedly scolding Marutta with rude words, again accosted him thus,[7] 'I am afflicted with a cerebral disorder, and, I always act according to the random caprices of my own mind, why art thou bent upon having this sacrifice performed by a priest of such a singular disposition,[8] my brother is able to officiate at sacrifices, and he has gone over to Vāsava (Indra), and is engaged in performing his sacrifices, do thou therefore have thy sacrifice performed by him.[9] My elder brother has forcibly taken away from me all my household goods and mystical gods, and sacrificing clients, and has now left to me only this physical body of mine,[10] and, O son of Avikshit, as he is worthy of all respect from me, I cannot by any means officiate at thy sacrifice, unless with his permission.[11] Thou must therefore go to Vrihaspati first, and taking his permission thou canst come back to me, if thou hast any desire to perform a sacrifice, and then only shall I officiate at thy sacrifice."[12]

Marutta said,—"Do thou listen to me, O Samvarta, I did go to Vrihaspati first, but desiring the patronage of Vāsava, he did not wish to have me as his sacrificer.[13] He said, 'Having secured the priesthood of the Immortals, I do not desire to act for mortals, and, I have been forbidden by Cakra (Indra) to

officiate at Marutta's sacrifice,[14] as he told me that Marutta having become lord of the earth, was always filled with a desire to rival him. And to this thy brother assented by saying to the Slayer of Vala (Indra), Be it so.[15] Know thou, O best of ascetics, that as he had succeeded in securing the protection of the Lord of the Celestials, I repaired to him with gratified heart, but he did not agree to act as my priest.[16] And thus repulsed; I now desire to spend all I possess, to have this sacrifice performed by thee, and to outstrip Vāsava by the merit of thy good offices.[17] As I have been repulsed by Vrihaspati for no fault of mine, I have now no desire, O Brahman, to go to him to seek his aid in this sacrifice."[18]

Samvarta said,—"I can certainly, O king, accomplish all that thou desirest, if only thou agree to do all that I shall ask thee to do,[19] but I apprehend that Vrihaspati and Purandara (Indra) when they will learn that I am engaged in performing thy sacrifice, will be filled with wrath, and do all they can to injure thee.[20] Therefore, do thou assure me of thy stedfastness, so as to ensure my coolness and constancy, as otherwise, if I am filled with wrath against thee, I shall reduce (destroy) thee and thy kindred to ashes."[21]

Marutta said,—"If ever I forsake thee, may I never attain the blessed regions as long as the mountains shall exist, and the thousand-rayed sun continue to emit heat,[22] if I forsake thee, may I never attain true wisdom, and remain for ever addicted to worldly (material) pursuits."[23]

Samvarta said,—"Listen, O son of Avikshit, excellent as is the bent of thy mind to perform this act, so too, O king, have I in my mind the ability to perform the sacrifice,[24] I tell thee, O king, that thy good things will become imperishable, and that thou shalt lord it over Cakra and the Celestials with Gandharvas."[25] For myself, I have no desire to amass wealth or sacrificial presents, I shall only do what is disagreeable to both Indra and my brother.[26] I shall certainly make thee attain equality with Cakra, and I tell thee truly that I shall do what is agreeable to thee."[27]

Section VIII.

Samvarta said,—"There is a peak named Munjabān on the summits of the Himālaya mountains, where the adorable Lord of Umā (Mahādeva) is constantly engaged in austere devotional exercises.[1] There the mighty and worshipful god of great puissance, accompanied by his consort Umā, and armed with his trident, and surrounded by wild goblins of many sorts, pursuing his random wish or fancy, constantly resides in the shade of giant forest trees, or in the caves, or on the rugged peaks of the great mountain.[2-3] And there the Rudras, the Sāddhyas, the Viçwedevas, the Vasus, Yama, Varuna, and Kuvera with all his attendants,[4] and the spirits and goblins, and the two Açwins, the Gandharvas, the Apsarasas, the Yakshas, as also the celestial sages,[5] the Sun-gods, as well as the gods presiding over the winds, and evil spirits of all sorts, worship the high-souled lord of Umā, possessed of diverse characteristics.[6] And there, O king, the adorable god, sports with the wild and playful followers of Kuvera, possessed of weird and ghastly appearances.[7] Glowing with its own splendour, that mountain looks resplendent as the morning sun.[8] And no creature with his natural eyes made of flesh, can ever ascertain its shape or configuration, and neither heat nor cold prevails there, nor doth the sun shine or the winds blow.[9] And, O king neither doth senility, nor hunger, nor thirst, nor death nor fear afflict any one at that place.[10] And O foremost of conquerors, on all sides of that mountain, there exist mines of gold, resplendent as the rays of the sun. And, O king, the attendants of Kuvera, desirous of doing good to him, protect these mines of gold from intruders, with uplifted arms.[11] Hie thee thither, and appease that adorable god who is known by the names of Sarva, Bedhā,[12] Rudra, Citikantha, Surupa, Suvarcha, Kapardi, Karāla, Haryyaksha, Varada,[13] Tryaksha, Pushnodantabhid, Vāmana, Civa, Yamya, Avyaktarupa, Sadvritta, Cankara,[14] Kkshemya, Harikeça, Sthānu, Purusha, Harinetra, Munda, Krisha, Uttarana,[15] Bhāskara, Sutirtha, Devadeva, Ranha, Ushnishi, Suvaktra, Sahasrāksha, Midhvan,[16] Giriça, Praçānta, Yata, Chiravāsa, Vilwadanda, Siddha

Sarvadandadhara,[17] Mriga, Vyādha, Mahān, Dhaneça, Bhava, Vara, Somavaktra, Siddhamantra, Chakshu,[18] Hiranyavāhu, Ugra, Dikpati, Lelihāna, Goshtha, Shiddhamantra, Vrishnu, Paçupati, Bhutapati,[19] Vrisha, Mātribhakta, Senāni, Madhyama,[20] Sruvahasta, Yati, Dhanwi, Bhārgava, Aja,[20] Krishnanetra, Virupāksha, Tikshnadanshtra, Tikshna, Vaiçwānaramukha,[21] Mahadyuti, Ananga, Sarva, Dikpati, Bilohita, Dipta Diptāksha, Mahaujā,[22] Vasuretas, Suvapu, Prithu, Krittivāsa,[23] Kapālmāli, Suvarnamukuta, Mahādeva, Krishna, Tryamvaka Anagha,[24] Krodhana, Nriçansa, Mridu, Vahusali, Dandi, Taptatapa, Akrurakarmā, Sahasraçirā, Sahasra-charana, Swadhaswarupa, Vahu-rupa, Danshtri,[25] Pināki, Mahādeva, Mahāyogi, Avyaya, Triçulahasta, Varada, Tryamvaka, Bhuvaneçwara,[26] Tripuraghna, Trinayana, Trilokeça, Mahanja, Sarvabhuta-prabhava, Sarvabhuta-dhārana, Dharanidhara,[27] Içāna, Cankara, Sarva, Civa, Viçweçwara, Bhava, Umāpati, Paçupati, Viçwarupa, Maheçwara,[28] Virupāksha, Daçabhuja, Vrishavadhwaja, Ugra, Sthānu, Civa, Raudra, Sarva, Giriça, Içwara,[29] Sitikantha, Aja, Cukra, Prithu, Prithuhara, Vara, Viçwarupa, Virupāksha, Vahurupa, Umāpati,[30] Anangangahara, Hara, Caranya, Mahādeva, Chaturmukha.[31] There bowing unto that deity, must thou crave his protection. And thus, O prince, making thy submission to that high-souled Mahādeva of great energy, shalt thou acquire that gold.[32] And the men who go there thus, succeed in obtaining the gold. Thus instructed, Marutta, the son of Karandhama, did as he was advised.[33] And made superhuman arrangements for the performance of his sacrifice. And artisans manufactured vessels of gold for that sacrifice.[34] And Vrihaspati too, hearing of the prosperity of Marutta, eclipsing that of the gods, became greatly grieved at heart,[35] and distressed at the thought that his rival Samvarta should become prosperous, became sick at heart, and the glow of his complexion left him, and his frame became emaciated.[36] And when the Lord of the gods came to know that Vrihaspati was much aggrieved, he went to him attended by the Immortals and addressed him thus."[37]

Section IX.

Indra said,—"Dost thou, O Vrihaspati, sleep in peace, and are thy servants agreeable to thee, dost thou seek the welfare of the gods, and do the gods O Brāhmana, protect thee ?"[1]

Vrihaspati said,—"I do sleep in peace, in my bed, O Lord of the gods, and my servants are to my liking, and I always seek the welfare of the gods, and they cherish me well."[2]

Indra said,—"Whence then is this pain, mental or physical, and why art thou pale and altered in appearance (complexion) at present, tell me, O Brāhmana, who those people are, who have caused thee pain, so that I may kill them all."[3]

Vrihaspati said,—"O Indra, I have heard that Marutta will perform a great sacrifice at which exquisite presents will be given by him (to Brāhmanas) and that at his sacrifice Samvarta will act as the officiating priest, and therefore do I desire that he may not officiate as priest at that sacrifice."[4]

Indra said,—"Thou, O Brāhmana, hast attained all the objects of thy desire when thou hast become the excellent priest of the gods, versed in all the sacred hymns, and hast over reached the influence of death and dotage, what can Samvarta do to thee now ?"[5]

Vrihaspati said,—"Prosperity of a rival is always painful to one's feelings, and for this reason too, thou dost with thy attendant gods persecute the Asuras with their kith and kin, and kill the most prosperous among them ;[6] hence, O Lord of the gods, am I changed in appearance at the thought that my rival is prospering, therefore, O Indra, do thou, by all means, restrain Samvarta and king Marutta."[7]

Indra turning to Agni said,—"Do thou, O Jātaveda, following my direction, go to king Marutta to present Vrihaspati to him, and say unto him that this Vrihaspati will officiate at his sacrifice and make him immortal."[8]

Agni said,—"I shall presently, O adorable one, repair thither as thy messenger, to present Vrihaspati to king Marutta ; and to make Indra's words true, and to shew respect to Vrihaspati, Agni departed."[9]

Vyāsa said,—"Then the high-souled fire-god went on his

errand, devastating all the forests and trees, like unto the mighty wind, roaring and revolving at random at the end of the winter season."[10]

Marutta said,—"Behold ! I find the fire-god come in his own embodiment, this day, therefore do thou, O Muni, offer him a seat and water, and a cow, and water for washing the feet.[11]

Agni said,—"I accept thy offerings of water, seat, and water for washing the feet, O sinless one, do thou know me as the messenger of Indra, come to thee, in accordance with his directions."[12]

Marutta said,—"O Fire-god, is the glorious Lord of the Celestials happy, and is he pleased with us, and are the other gods loyal to him? Do thou enlighten me duly on all these points.[13]

Agni said,—"O lord of the earth, Cakra is perfectly happy, he is pleased with thee, and wishes to make thee free from senility, and all the other gods are loyal to him, do thou, O king, listen to the message of the Lord of the Celestials.[14] And the object for which he has sent me to thee is to present Vrihaspati to Marutta, O prince, let this priest (of the Celestials) perform thy sacrifice, and make thee, who art only a mortal, attain immortality."[15]

Marutta said,—"This twice-born Brāhmana Samvartta will perform my sacrifice, and I pray to Vrihaspati, that he having acted as priest to Mahendra (Indra) it does not look well for him now to act as priest to mortal men."[16]

Agni said,—"If this Vrihaspati officiate as thy priest, then shalt thou by the blessings of Devarāja (Indra) attain the highest region in the celestial mansion and attaining fame shalt thou certāinly conquer the heavenly region.[17] And, O lord of men, if Vrihaspati act as thy priest, thou shalt be able to conquer all the regions inhabited by men, and the heavenly regions, and all the highest regions created by Prajāpati and even the entire kingdom of the gods."[18]

Samvarta said.—"Thou must never come again thus to present Vrihāspaai to Marutta ; for know, O Pāvaka, (Agni) if thou dost, I losing my temper, will burn thee with my fierce evil eyes.[19]

Vyāsa said,—"Then Agni apprehending destruction by fire, and trembling like the leaves of the Açwattha tree (*Ficus religiosa*), returned to the gods, and the high-souled Cakra seeing that carrier of oblations (Agni) in the company of Vrihaspati said as follows :"[20]

Indra said,—"Thou O Jātaveda (Agni) didst go to present Vrihaspati to Marutta according to my direction, now what did that sacrificing king say unto thee and did he accept my message ?[21]

Agni said,—"Thy message was not acceptable by Marutta and when urged by me, he clasping the hands of Vrihaspati, repeatedly said, that Samvarta would act as his priest.[22] And he also observed that he did not desire to attain the worldly and the heavenly regions, and all the highest regions of Prajāpati, and that if he were so minded, he would accept the terms of Indra."[23]

Indra said,—"Do thou go back to that king and meeting him, tell him these words of mine, full of significance, and if he obey them not, I shall strike him with my thunderbolt.[24]

Agni said,—"Let this king of the Gandharvas, repair thither as thy messenger, O Vāsava, for, I am afraid to go thither myself. Know, O Cakra, that highly incensed Samvarta addicted to ascetic practices, told me these words in a rage.[25] 'I shall burn thee with my fierce evil eyes if thou on any account come again here to present Vrihaspati to king Marutta.' "[26]

Cakra said,—"O Jātaveda, it is thou who dost burn all other things and there is none else who can reduce thee to ashes, all the world is afraid to come in contact with thee, O carrier of oblations, these words of thine are worthy of no credence."[27]

Agni said,—"Thou, O Cakra, hast encompassed the dominion of the heaven and the earth and the firmament by the might of thine own arms, but even thus how could Vritra (of old) wrest from thee the sovereignty of the celestial regions ?"[28]

Indra said,—"I can reduce my foes to submisson and can even reduce the size of a mountain to an atom, if I will it. But, O Vahni, as I do not accept the libation of Soma drink if offered by a foe, and as I do not strike the weak with my

thunderbolt (Vritra seemed to triumph over me for a time.) But who among mortals can live in peace by creating feud with me.[29] I have banished the Kālakeyas to the earth, and removed the Dānavas from heaven, and have terminated the existence of Prahlāda in heaven, can there be any man who can live in peace by provoking my enmity."[30]

Agni said,—"Dost thou, O Mahendra, remember that in olden times when the sage Chyavana officiated at the sacrifice of Caryāti with the twin gods Açwins, and himself appropriated the Soma offering alone, thou wert filled with wrath, and when bent upon preventing Caryāti's sacrifice,[31] thou didst violently strike Chyavana with thy thunderbolt, that Brāhmana, O Purandara, giving way to passion, was able by the power of his devotions to seize and hold fast thy hand with thy thunderbolt in it.[32] And in a rage, he again created a terrible looking enemy of thine, the Asura named Mada assuming all shapes, on beholding whom thou didst shut thine eyes with fear,[33] whose one huge jaw was placed on earth, and the other extended to the celestial regions, and who looked terrible with his thousand sharp teeth extending over a hundred Yojanas,[34] and had four prominent ones thick a set, and shining like a pillar of silver, and extending over two hundred Yojanas. And when grinding his teeth he pursued thee with his terrible and uplifted pike with the object of killing thee,[35] thou on beholding that terrible monster, presented a (pitiful) spectacle to all the bystanders. Then, O slayer of Dānavas, overcome with fear of the monster, with thy hands clasped in supplication, thou didst seek the protection of the great sage.[36] The might of Brāhmanas, O Cakra, is greater than that of the Kshatriyas, none are more powerful than Brāhmanas and knowing duly, as I do, the power of Brāhmanas, I do not, O Cakra, desire to come in conflict with Samvarta."[37]

Section X.

Indra said,—"Even so it is, the might of Brāhmanas is great and there are none more powerful than Brāhmanas, but I can never bear with equanimity the insolent pride of Avi-

kshita's son, and so shall I smite him with my thunderbolt.[1] Therefore, O Dhritarāshtra, do thou according to my direction repair to king Marutta attended by Samvarta, and deliver this message to him—'do thou O prince accept Vrihaspati as thy spiritual preceptor, as otherwise, I shall strike thee with my terrific thunderbolt.' "[2]

Vyāsa said,—"Then Dhritarāshtra betook himself to that monarch's court and delivered this message to him from Vāsava."[3]

Dhritarāshtra said,—"O lord of men know that I am Dhritarāshtra the Gandharva, come here with the object of delivering to thee the message of Indra, do thou, O lion among kings listen to the words which the high-souled lord of all the worlds meant for thee,[4]—that one of incomprehensible achievements (Indra) only said this much,—'do thou accept Vrihaspati as thy officiating priest for the sacrifice, or if thou do not comply with my request, I shall strike thee with my terrific thunderbolt.' "[5]

Marutta said,—"Thou, O Purandara, the Viçwadevas, the Vasus and the Açwins ye all know, that in this world there is no escape from the consequences of playing false to a friend, it is a great sin like unto that of murdering a Brāhmana.[6] Let Vrihaspati (therefore) officiate as priest to that Mahendra the supreme Deva (god), the highest one wielding the thunderbolt, and O prince, Samvarta will act as my priest, as neither his (Indra's) words, nor thine commend themselves to me."[7]

The Gandharva said,—"Do thou O lion among princes, listen to the terrible war-cry, of Vāsava roaring in the heavens, assuredly and openly will Mahendra hurl his thunderbolt at thee, do thou therefore be-think thyself of thy good, for this is the time to do it."[8]

Vyāsa said,—"Thus accosted by Dhritarāshtra, and hearing the roar of howling Vāsava, the king communicated this intelligence to Samvarta stedfast in devotion and the highest of all virtuous men."[9]

Marutta said,—"Verily this rain-cloud floating in the air indicates that Indra must be near at present, therefore, O prince of Brāhmanas, I seek shelter from thee, do thou O best

of Brāhmanas remove this fear of Indra from my mind.[10] The Wielder of the thunderbolt is coming encompassing the ten directions of space with his terrible and superhuman refulgence and my assistants at this sacrificial assembly have been overcome with fright.[11]

Samvarta said,—"O lion among kings, thy fear of Cakra will soon be dispelled, and I shall soon remove this terrible pain by means of my magic lore (incantation), be calm and have no fear of being overpowered by Indra.[12] Thou hast nothing to fear from the god of a hundred sacrifices, I shall use my staying charms, O king, and the weapons of all the gods will avail them not.[13] Let the lightning flash in all the directions of space, and the winds entering into the clouds pour down the showers amid the forests, and the waters deluge the heavens and the flashes of lightning that are seen will avail not, thou hast nothing to fear,[14] let Vāsava pour down the rains and plat his terrific thunderbolt where he will, floating among the watery masses (clouds) for thy destruction, for the god Vahni (Agni) will protect thee in every way, and make thee attain all the objects of thy desire."[15]

Marutta stid,—"This appalling crash of the thunderbolt together with the howling of the winds, seem terrible to my ears and my heart is afflicted again and again, O Brāhmana, and my peace of mind is gone at present.[16]

Samvarta said,—"O king, the fear in thy mind from this terrible thunderbolt will leave thee presently. I shall dispel the thunder by the aid of the winds, and seting aside all fear from thy mind, do thou accept a boon from me according to thy heart's desire, and I shall accomplish it for thee."[17]

Marutta said,—"I desire, O Brāhmana, that Indra all of a sudden should come in person at this sacrifice, and accept the oblation offered to him, and that all the other gods also come and take their appointed shares of the offerings and accept the libations of Soma offered to them."[18]

Samvarta said,—"I have, by the power of my incantations attracted Indra in person to this sacrifice. Behold, O monarch Indra coming with his horses, and worshipped by the other gods hastening to this sacrifice."[19]

Then the Lord of the Devas attended by the other gods and riding in his chariot drawn by the most excellent steeds, approached the sacrificial altar of that son of Avikshit and drank the Soma libations of that unrivalled monarch.[20] And king Marutta with his priest rose to receive Indra coming with the host of gods and well-pleased in mind, he welcomed the lord of the Devas with due and foremost honors according to the Cāstras.[21]

Samvarta said,—"Welcome to thee, O Indra, by thy presence here, O learned one, this sacrifice has been made grand, O slayer of Vala and Vritra, do thou again quaff this Soma juice produced by me today."[22]

Marutta said,—"Do thou look with kindness upon me, I bow unto thee, O Indra, by thy presence, my sacrifice has been perfected, and my life too blessed with good results. O Surendra, this excellent Brāhmana, the younger brother of Vrihaspati is engaged in performing my sacrifices."[23]

Indra said,—"I know thy priest, this highly energetic ascetic, the younger brother of Vrihaspati, at whose invitation I have come to this sacrifice, I am, O monarch, well-pleased with thee and my resentment against thee hath been destroyed."[24]

Samvarta said,—"If, O prince of the Devas, thou art pleased with us, do thou thyself give all the directions for this sacrifice, and O Surendra, thyself ordain the sacrificial portions (for the gods), so that O god, all the world may know that it hath been done by thee."[25]

Vyāsa said,—"Thus accosted by the son of Angira, Cakra himself gave directions to all the gods to erect the hall of assembly, and a thousand well-furnished excellent rooms looking grand as in a picture,[26] and speedily to complete the staircase massive and durable, for the ascent of the Gandharvas and Apsarasas and to furnish that portion of the sacrificial ground reserved for the dance of the Apsarasas, like unto the palace of Indra in the heaven.[27] O king, thus directed, the renowned dwellers of heaven speedily fulfilled the directions of Cakra. And then, O king, Indra well-pleased and adored, thus said to king Marutta,[28]—O prince, by associating with

thee at this sacrifice, thine ancestors who have gone before thee, as well as the other gods have been highly gratified and accepted the oblations offered by thee.[29] And now, O king, let the foremost of regenerate beings offer on the sacrificial altar a red bull appertaining to the Fire-god and a secred and duly consecrated blue bull with a variegated skin, appertaining to the Viçwedevas.[30] Then, O king, the sacrificial ceremony grew in splendour, wherein the gods themselves collected the food, and Cakra the lord of the gods, possessed of horses, and worshipped by the Brāhmanas, became an assistant at the sacrifice.[31] And then the high-souled Samvarta ascending the altar, and looking radiant as the second embodiment of the blazing fire, loudly addressing the gods with complaisance, offered oblations of clarified butter to the fire with incantation of the sacred hymns.[32] And then the slayer of Vala first drank the Soma juice, and then the assembly of other gods who drank Soma, and then in happiness and with the king's permission they returned home well-pleased and delighted.[33] Then that monarch, the slayer of his enemies, with a delighted heart, placed heaps of gold on diverse spots, and distributing the immense wealth to the Brāhmanas, he looked glorious like Kuvera the god of wealth.[34] And with a buoyant heart, the king filled his treasury with different kinds of wealth, and with the permission of his spiritual preceptor, he returned (to his kingdom) and continued to rule the entire realm extending to the borders of the sea.[35] So virtuous in this world was that king, at whose sacrifice such an enormous quantity of gold was collected, and now, O prince, thou must collect that gold and worshipping the gods with due rites, do thou perform this sacrifice."[36]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Then the Pāndava prince Yudhishthira was delighted on hearing this speech of the son of Satyavati (Vyāsa), and desirous of performing his sacrifice with those riches, he held repeated consultations with his ministers."[37]

Section XI.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"When Vyāsa of wonderful achievements had concluded his speech to the king, the highly-puissant son of Vasudeva (Krishna) also addressed him. Knowing the king, the son of Prithā, afflicted in mind, and bereft of his relatives and kinsmen slain in battle, and appearing crest fallen like the sun darkened by eclipse, or fire smothered by smoke, that prop of the Vrishni race (Krishna), comforting the son of Dharma, essayed to address him thus."[1-3]

Vāsudeva said,—"All crookedness of heart leads to destruction (perdition ?) and all rectitude leads to Brahma, (spiritual excellence). This and this only is the aim and object of all true wisdom, what can mental distraction do (to one who understands this) ![4] Thy Karma has not yet been annihilated nor have thy enemies been subjugated, for thou dost not yet know the enemies that are still lurking within thine own flesh.[5] I shall (therefore) relate to thee truly as I have heard it, the story of the war of Indra with Vritra as it took place.[6] In ancient times the Prithivi (earth), O king, was encompossed by Vritra, and by this abstraction of earthly matter the seat of all odor, there arose bad odors on all sides, and the Performer of a hundred sacrifices (Indra), being much enraged by this act, hurled his thunberbolt at Vritra.[7-8] And being deeply wounded by the thunderbolt of mighty Indra, Vritra entered into the (waters), and by doing so, he destroyed their property.[9] The waters being seized by Vritra, their liquid property left them. At this Indra became highly enraged and again smote him with his thunderbolt.[10] And he (Vritra) smitten by the thunderbolt by the most powerful Indra betook himself to the Jyoti (luminous matter) and abstracted its inherent property.[11] The luminous matter being overwhelmed by Vritra and its property, color and form being thereby lost,[12] the wrathful Indra again hurled his thunderbolt at him. And thus wounded again by Indra of immeasurable power,[13] Vritra entered all on a sudden into the Vāyu (gaseous matter, and thereafter made away with its inherent property.[14] And this matter being overpowered by Vritra and its property, touch

being lost. Indra became again filled with wrath and flung his thunderbolt at him. And wounded therein by the mighty (Indra), he overwhelmed the Ākāça (ether), and took away its inherent property. and the Ākāça being overwhelmed by Vritra, and its property, sound, being destroyed, the god of a hundred sacrifices highly incensaed, again smote him with his thunderbolt.[15-16] And thus smitten by the mighty Indra, he suddenly entered into his (Cakra's) body, and took away its essential attributes.[17] And overtaken by Vritra, he was filled with great illusion. And, O venerable sir, the mightiest of Bharata's race,[18] we have heard that Vaçishtha comforted Indra (when he was thus afflicted) and that the god of a hundred sacrifices slew Vritra in his body by means of his invisible thunderbolt, and know, O prince, that this religious mystery was recited by Cakra to the great sages, and they in turn told it to me.[20]

Section XII.

Vāsudeva said,—"There are two kinds of ailments, physical and mental. They are produced by the mutual action of the body and mind on each other, and they never arise without the interaction of the two.[1] The ailment that is produced in the body, is called the physical ailment, and that which has its seat in the mind, is known as the mental ailment.[2] The cold, the warm (phlegm and bile) as well as the windy humours, O king, are the essential transformations generated in the physical body, and when these humours are evenly distributed, and are present in due proportions, they are said to be symptomatic of good health.[3] The warm humour is acted upon (allayed) by the cold, and the cold by the warm. And Sattwa, Rajas, and Tamas are the attributes of the soul,[4] and it is said by the learned, that their presence in due proportions, indicates health (of the mind). But if any of the three preponderate, some remedy is enjoined (to restore the equilibrium.)[5] Happiness is overcome by sorrow, and sorrow by pleasure. Some people while afflicted by sorrow, desire to recall (past) happiness, while others, while in the enjoyment of happiness, desire

to recall past sorrow.[6] But thou, O son of Kunti, dost neither desire to recall thy sorrows nor thy happiness, what else dost thou desire to recall barring this delusion of sorrow. Or, perchance, O son of Prithā, it is thy innate nature,[7] by which thou art at present overpowered. Thou dost not desire to recall to thy mind the painful sight of Krishnā standing in the hall of assembly with only one piece of cloth to cover her body, and while she was in her menses and in the presence of all the Pāndavas. And it is not meet that thou shouldst brood over thy departure from the city, and thy exile with the hide of the antelope for thy robe, and thy wanderings in the great forest, nor shouldst thou recall to thy mind the affliction from Jatāsura, the fight with Chitrasena, and thy troubles from the Saindhavas.[8-11] Nor it is proper, O son of Prithā, and conqueror of thy foes, that thou shouldst recall the incident of Kichaka's kicking Draupadi, during the period of thy exile passed in absolute concealment,[12] nor the incidents of the fight which took place between thyself and Drona and Bhishma. The time has now arrived, when thou must fight the battle which each must fight single handed with his mind.[13] Therefore, O chief of Bharata's race, thou must now prepare to carry the struggle against thy mind, and by dint of abstraction and the merit of thine own Karma, thou must reach the other side (overcome) of the mysterious and unintelligible (mind).[14] In this war there will be no need for any missiles nor for friends nor attendants. The battle which is to be fought alone and single handed has now arrived for thee.[15] And if vanquished in this struggle, thou shalt find thyself in the most wretched plight, and O son of Kunti, knowing this, and acting accordingly, shalt thou attain success.[16] And knowing this wisdom and the destiny of all creatures, and following the conduct of thy ancestors, do thou duly administer thy kingdom.[17]

SECTION XIII.

Vāsudeva said,—"O scion of Bharata's race, salvation is not attained by foregoing the external things (like kingdom &c), it is only attained by giving up things which pander to

the flesh (body).[1] The virtue and happiness which are attainable by the person who has renounced only the external objects, but who is at the sametime engrossed by passions and weakness of the flesh, let these be the portion of our enemies.[2] The word with two letters is Mrityu (death of the soul or perdition), and the word with three letters is Cāçwata Brahman, or the eternal spirit. The consciousness that this or that thing is mine, or the state of being addicted to worldly objects is Mrityu and the absence of that feeling is Cāçwatam.[3] And these two, Brahman and Mrityu, O king, have their seats in the souls of all creatures, and remaining unseen, they, without doubt, rage war with each other.[4] And if, O Bharata, it be true that no creature is ever destroyed, then one doth not make oneself guilty of the death of a creature by piercing (destroying) its body.[5] What matters the world to a man, if having acquired the sovereignty of the whole earth with its mobile and immobile creation, he does not become attached to it, or engrossed in its enjoyment.[6] But the man who having renounced the world, has taken to the life of the recluse in the forest, living on wild roots and edibles, if such a man, O son of Prithā, has a craving for the good things of the world, and is addicted to them, he may be said to bear Mrityu (death) in his mouth.[7] Do thou, O Bharata, watch and observe the character of thy external and internal enemies, (by means of thy spiritual vision). And the man who is able to perceive the nature of the eternal reality is able to overreach the influence of the great fear (perdition).[8] Men do not look with approbation upon the conduct of those who are engrossed in worldly desires, and there is no act without having a desire (at its root) and all (Kama) desires are, as it were, the limbs (offshoots) of the mind. Therefore, wise men knowing this, subjugate their desires. The Yogi who holds communion with the Supreme Spirit, knows Yoga to be the perfect way (to salvation) by reason of the practices of his many former births. And remembering that, what the soul desires, is not conducive of piety and virtue, but that the repression of the desires is at the root of all true virtue, such men do not engage in the practice of charity, Vedic learning, asceticism, Vedic rites whose object is attain-

ment of worldly prosperity, ceremonies, sacrifices, religious rules and meditation, with the motive of securing any advantage thereby.[9-11] In illustration of this truth, the sages versed in ancient lore, recite these Gathas called by the name of Kāmagitā, do thou O Yudhishthira, listen to the recital of them in detail.[12] (Kāma says) No creature is able to destroy me without resorting to the proper methods (*viz.*, subjugation of all desires and practice of Yoga &c.)[13] If a man knowing my power, strive to destroy me by muttering prayers &c., I prevail over him by deluding him with the belief that I am the subjective ego within him. If he wish to destroy me by means of sacrifices with many presents,[14] I deceive him by appearing in his mind as a most virtuous creature amongst the mobile creation, and if he wish to annihilate me by mastering the Vedas and Vedāngas, I overreach him by seeming to his mind to be the soul of virtue amongst the immobile creation.[15] And if the man whose strength lies in truth, desire to overcome me by patience,[16] I appear to him as his mind, and thus he does not perceive my existence, and if the man of austere religious practices, desire to destroy me by means of asceticism,[17] I appear in the guise of asceticism in his mind, and thus he is prevented from knowing me, and the man of learning,[18] who with the object of attaining salvation desires to destroy me, I frolic and laugh in the face of such a man intent on salvation. I am the everlasting one without a compeer, whom no creature can kill or destroy.[19] For this reason thou too, O prince, divert thy desires (Kāma) to virtue, so that, by this means, thou mayst attain what is well for thee.[20] Do thou therefore make preparations for the due performance of the horse-sacrifice with presents, and various other sacrifices of great splendour, and accompanied with presents.[21] Let not therefore grief overpower thee again, on beholding thy friends lying slain on the battle-field. Thou canst not see the men slain in this battle alive again.[22] Therefore shouldst thou perform magnificent sacrifices with presents, so that thou mayst attain fame in this world, and reach the perfect way (hereafter).[23]

Section XIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"With such speeches as these, was the royal saint Yudhishthira, bereft of his friends, consoled by those sages of great ascetic merits.[1] And O monarch, that lord of men exhorted by the worshipful Vishtaraçraba himself, and by Dwaipāyana (Vyāsa), Krishna, Devasthāna, Nārada, Bhima, Nakula, Krishnā (Draupadi), Sahadeva, and the sharp-witted Vijaya, as well as by other great men, and Brāhmanas versed in the Cāstras, became relieved of all mental affliction and sorrow arising from the death of his dear relations.[2-4] And that monarch Yudhishthira after performing the obsequial ceremonies of his departed friends, and honoring the Brāhmanas and Devas (gods), brought the kingdom of the earth with its girdle of oceans, under his sway.[5] And that prince of Kuru's race having regained his kingdom, with a tranquil mind, thus addressed Vyāsa, Nārada and the other sages who were present.[6]—I have been comforted by the words of so great, ancient and aged saints as yourselves, and I have now no cause left for the least affliction.[7] And likewise, I have attained great wealth, with which I may worship the gods, therefore, with your assistance, I shall now perform the sacrifice.[8] O the best of regenerate beings, we have heard that those (Himālayān) regions are full of wonders, therefore, O Brāhmana, saint and grandsire do thou so ordain that under thy protection we may safely reach the Himālaya mountains,[9] the performance of my sacrifice being entirely within thy control, and then the adorable celestial saint Nārada and Devasthāna have also addressed exquisite and well-meaning words for our well being.[10] No unlucky man in times of great tribulation and distress, has ever the good fortune to secure the services of such preceptors and friends approved of all virtuous men.[11] Thus addressed by the king, those great saints, bidding the king and Krishna and Arjuna to repair to the Himālayan regions,[12] then and there vanished in the presence of the assembled multitude, and the king, the lordly son of Dharma, then seated himself there for a while.[13] And the Pāndavas then in consequence of the death of Bhishma, were engaged in performing his funeral cere-

monies. And their time, while thus engaged, seemed too long in passing,[14] and performing the last rites to the mortal remains of Bhishma, Karna and other foremost Kauravas, they gave away large presents to Brāhmanas. And then the foremost descendant of Kuru,[15] again performed with Dhritarāshtra the funeral rites (of the heroes slain in battle), and having given away immense wealth to the Brāhmanas, the Pāndava chief[16] with Dhritarāshtra in advance, made his entry into the city of Hastinā Nagar, and consoling his lordly uncle, possessed of eyes of wisdom,[17] that virtuous prince continued to administer the earth with his brothers.[18]

Section XV.

Janamejaya said,—'O the best of regenerate beings, when the Pāndavas had reconquered and pacified their kingdom, what did the two warriors, Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya do?[1]

Vaiçampāyana said,—'O lord of the earth, Vāsudeva and Dhananjaya were highly pleased when the Pāndavas had succeeded in regaining and pacifying their dominions,[2] and they deported themselves with great satisfaction, like unto Indra and his consort in the celestial regions, and amidst picturesque woodland sceneries, and tablelands of mountains, and sacred places of pilgrimage, and lakes and rivers, they travelled with great pleasure like the two Açwins in the Nandana garden of Indra.[3-4] And, O Bhārata, the high-souled Krishna and the son of Pāndu (Dhananjaya) entering the beautiful hall of assembly at Indraprastha, whiled away their time in great merriment.[5] And there, O prince, they passed their time in recounting the stirring incidents of the war, and the sufferings of their past lives.[6] And those two high-souled ancient sages, glad at heart, recited the genealogy of the races of saints and gods.[7] Then Keçava, knowing the full import of all matters, addressed Pārtha in a sweet and beautiful speech of excellent style and import.[8] And then Janārddana comforted the son of Prithā afflicted by the death of his sons, and thousands of other relatives.[9] And he of great ascetic merit and knowing the science of all things duly consoling him, rested for a while,

as if a great burden had been removed from his own person.[10] Then Govinda (Krishna) consoling Arjuna with sweet speech addressed these well-reasoned words to him.[11]

Vāsudeva said,—'O Arjuna, the terror of thine enemies, this whole earth has been conquered by the king, the son of Dharma, relying on the power of thy arms.[12] And O the best of men, the virtuous king Yudhishthira now enjoys the sovereignty of the earth without a rival, by the might of Bhimasena and the twin brothers.[13] O thou who knowest what virtue is, it was by righteousness alone, that the king has been able to regain his kingdom free from all enemies (thorns), and it was by the action of righteousness, that king Suyodhana has been killed in battle,[14] and, O son of Prithā and pillar of the Kuru race, the wicked sons of Dhritarāshtra, avaricious, always rude in speech, and bent upon an unrighteous course of conduct,[15] having been exterminated with their followers, the king, the son of Dharma and lord of the earth, now peaceably enjoys the entire kingdom of the earth with thy aid,[16] and I too O son of Pāndu, have been pleasantly whiling away my time in thy company, amidst woodland scenes.[17] O terror of thine enemies, what more need I tell thee, but that where thou and Prithā, and the king, the son of Dharma, and the mighty Bhimasena and the two sons of Mādri are, there am I attracted with exquisite delight.[18] O descendant of Kuru, in these delightful and sacred and heaven-like halls of assembly, a long time hath fleetted away in thy company without my seeing Vasudeva, Valadeva and other leaders of the Vrishni race.[19-20] And now I am desirous of repairing to the city of Dwārāvati. Do thou therefore, O most valorous of men, assent to my departure.[21] When king Yudhishthira was smitten heavily with affliction, I with Bhishma, have recited to him many appropriate legends suited to the occasion with a vew of assuaging his grief, and the pliant and high-minded Yudhishthira, though our sovereign, and versed in all lore, paid due heed to our words.[22] That son of Dharma honors truth, and is grateful and righteous, therefore will his virtue, and good sense and the stability of his power always endure.[23-24] And now, O Arjuna, if it pleases thee, do thou go to that high minded

prince and tell him of my intention to depart from this place.[25] For, O thou of mighty arms even if death cometh to me, I am unwilling to do anything that may displease him, leaveing alone my going to the city of Dwārāvati.[26] O son of Prithā, and descendant of Kuru, I now tell thee truly desiring to do only what is good and agreeable to thee, and there can be nothing equivocal in it in any way, that the necessity for my staying here no longer exists, when O Arjuna that monarch, the son of Dhritarāshtra hath been slain with his armies and attendants,[27-28] and the earth, my friend, with its girdle of seas, and its mountains and woods and forests, and the kingdom of the Kuru king filled with various gems, have passed under the sway of that wise son of Dharma. And O foremost prince of Bharata's race, may that virtuous prince administer the entire kingdom of the earth in righteousness,[29-30] and with the respect and approbation of numerous high-souled Siddhas, and having his praises always extolled by the court heralds.[31] Do thou, O chieftain of Kuru's race, accompany me to-day to the presence of the king, the great aggrandiser of the Kuru race, and sound him of my intended return to Dwārakā.[32] As Yudhishthira the high-souled king of the Kurus always commands my love and respect, I have, O son of Prithā, placed this my body and all the wealth that I have in my house, at his disposal.[33] And O prince Pārtha (son of Prithā) when this earth has come under thy sway and that of the worshipful Yudhishthira of excellent character, there no longer remains any necessity for my staying here except for my affection for thee.[34] And O monarch, when the re-doubtable Arjuna had been thus accosted by the noble-hearted Janārddana, he, shewing all the honors due to him, sorrowfully replied by merely saying 'be it so.'[35]

Section XVI.

Janamejaya said,—'When the high-souled Keçava and Arjuna after slaying their enemies repaired to the assembly rooms what conversation, O regenerate one, took place between them ?'[1]

(Anugitā Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The son of Prithā (Arjuna), having recovered his own kingdom, joyously spent his time, without doing anything else, in the company of Krishna, his heart filled with delight, in that palace of celestial beauty.[2] One day, those two listlessly proceeded to a particular part of the palace that looked, O king, like a veritable portion of Heaven. Themselves filled with delight, they were then surrounded by their relatives and attendants.[3] Pāndu's son Arjuna, filled with joy in the company of Krishna, surveyed that delightful mansion, and then addressed his companion, saying,—'O mighty armed one, thy greatness became known to me upon the approach of the battle.[4] O son of Devaki, thy form also, as the Lord of the universe, then became known to me![5] What thy holy self said unto me at that time, O Keçava, through affection, has all been forgotten by me, O chief of men, in consequence of the fickleness of my mind![6] Repeatedly, however, have I been curious on the subject of those truths. Thou, again, O Mādhava, wilt repair to Dwārakā soon!' "[7]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by him, Krishna of mighty energy, that foremost of speakers, embraced Phālguna and replied unto him as follows.[8]

"Vāsudeva said,—'I made thee listen to truths that are regarded as mysteries. I imparted to thee truths that are eternal. Verily, I discoursed to thee on Religion in its true form and on all the eternal regions.[9] It is exceedingly disagreeable to me to learn that thou didst not, from folly, receive what I imparted. The recollection of all that I told thee on that occasion will not come to me now.[10] Without doubt, O son of Pāndu, thou art destitute of faith and thy understanding is not good. It is impossible for me, O Dhananjaya, to repeat, in detail, all that I said on that occasion.[11] That religion (about which I discoursed to thee then) is more than sufficient for understanding Brahma. I cannot discourse on it again in detail.[12] I discoursed to thee on Supreme Brahma, having concentrated myself in Yoga. I shall now, however, recite to thee an old history upon the same topic.[13] O foremost of all persons observant of duty, listen to every-

thing I now say, so that, with an understanding adapted to my teaching, thou mayst succeed in attaining to the highest end![14] O chastiser of foes, on one occasion, a Brāhmana came to us from the regions of Heaven. Of irresistible energy, he came from the regions of the Grandsire. He was duly reverenced by us.[15] Listen, O son of Prithā, without yielding to scruples of any kind, to what he, O chief of Bharata's race, said, in answer to our enquiries, agreeably to heavenly forms![16]

'The Brāhmana said,—That which thou askest me, O Krishna, connected with the religion of Moksha (Emancipation), led by thy compassion for all creatures (and not for thy own good),—that, indeed, which destroys all delusion,—O thou that art possessed of supreme puissance,*[17] I shall now tell thee duly, O slayer of Madhu! Do thou listen with concentrated attention as I discourse to thee, O Mādhava![18] A Brāhmana of the name of Kaçyapa, possessed of penances and the foremost of all persons conversant with duties, came to a certain other Brāhmana who had become conversant with all the mysteries of religion.†[19] Indeed, the latter had mastered all the knowledge which the scriptures teach respecting the departure and reappearance of beings and possessed that direct knowledge of all things which Yoga gives. He was well skilled in the truths of all topics relating to the world. He had mastered the truth about pleasure and pain.[20] He knew the truth about birth and death, and understood the distinctions between merit and demerit. He was a beholder of the ends attained to by embodied creatures high and low in consequence of their acts.[21] He lived like one emancipated from the world. Crowned with ascetic success and possessed of perfect tranquillity of soul, he had all his senses under complete control. He seemed to blaze with the resplendence of Brahma and capable of going everywhere at will. He knew the science of disappearing at will from before the eyes of all.

---

* 'Bhutānām &c.,' is explained by Nilakantha as 'no swasya,' and the vocative 'vibho' is taken as 'Paramātman.'—T.

† 'Agatāgamam' implies, as explained by the Commentator, 'prāptaçāstarahasya m,'—T.

He used to rove in the company of invisible Siddhas and celestial musicians. He used to sit and converse with them on some spot retired from the bustle of humanity. He was as unattached to all things as the wind. Kaçyapa having heard of him truly, desired to see him. Possessed of intelligence, that foremost of all Brāhmanas approached the sage.[22-24] Himself possessed of penances, Kāçyapa, moved by the desire of acquiring merit, fell, with a rapt heart, at the feet of the sage when he had seen all those wonderful attributes.[25] Filled with wonder at the sight of those extraordinary accomplishments, Kāçyapa began to wait upon that foremost of all Brāhmanas, with the dutiful reverence of a disciple waiting upon his preceptor and succeeded in propitiating him.[26] By his devotion, O scorcher of foes, rendering to him the obedience due from a disciple to a preceptor, Kāçyapa gratified that Brāhmana who possessed all these accomplishments and was endued, besides, with scriptural learning and excellent conduct.[27] Gratified with Kāçyapa, the Brāhmana one day addressed him cheerfully and spoke as follows, with an eye to the highest success. Listen to those words, O Janārddana, as I repeat them![28]

" '—The ascetic crowned with success said,—By diverse acts, O son, as also by the aid of merit, mortal creatures attain to diverse ends here and residence in Heaven.[29] Nowhere is the highest happiness; nowhere can residence be eternal. There are repeated falls from the highest regions acquired with such sorrow.[30] In consequence of my indulgence in sin, I had to attain to diverse miserable and inauspicious ends, filled as I was with lust and wrath, and deluded by cupidity.[31] I have repeatedly undergone death and rebirth. I have eaten diverse kinds of food, I have sucked at diverse breasts.[32] I have seen diverse kinds of mothers, and diverse fathers dissimilar to one another. Diverse kinds of happiness have been mine and diverse kinds of misery, O sinless one![33] On diverse occasions have I been separated from what was agreeable and united with what was disagreeable. Having earned wealth with great toil I have had to put up with its loss.[34] Insults and excessive misery I have received from king and relatives. Mental and physical pain, of great severity, have been mine.[35] Humilia-

tions I have undergone, and death and immurement under circumstances of great severity. Falls into Hell have been mine, and great tortures in the domains of Yama.[36] Decrepitude and diseases have repeatedly assailed me, and calamities, as frequent, in copious measure. In this world I have repeatedly undergone all those afflictions that flow from a perception of all pairs of opposites.[37] After all this, one day, overwhelmed with sorrow, blank despair came upon me. I took refuge in the Formless. Afflicted as I was with great distress, I gave up the world with all its joys and sorrows.*[38] Understanding then this path, I exercised myself in it in this world. Afterwards, through tranquillity of soul, I attained to this success that thou seest.[39] I shall not have to come to this world again (after my departure hence). Verily, till I attain to absorption into eternal Brahma, till, in fact, the final dissolution of the universe, I shall look on those happy ends that will be mine and on those beings that constitute this universe.†[40] Having acquired this excellent success, I shall, after departing from this world, proceed to what is above it (*i. e.*, Satyaloka) and thence to what is higher (*i. e.*, obsorption into Brahma).[41] Verily, I shall attain to the condition, which is unmanifest, of Brahma. Let no doubt be thine as regards this. O scorcher of foes, I shall not return to this world of mortal creatures.[42] O thou of great wisdom, I have become gratified with thee. Tell me what I shall do for thee! The time has come for the accomplishment of that purpose for which thou hast come hither.[43] Verily, I know that object for which thou hast sought me. I shall soon depart from this world. Hence it is that I have given thee this hint.[44] O thou of great wisdom and experience,

---

* 'Nirākārāçritena' is explained by Nilakantha as 'Asamprajnātā-samādhi-samadhigamya Brahmabhāvāçritena,' implying reliance on Brahma by having recourse to Samādhi or a suspension of all functions of both body and mind (through Yoga) and arrival at that state which is one of perfect unconsciousness.'—T.

† The dissolution here spoken of is the Mahāpralaya and not the Khanda or Avāntara Pralayas. Till then, the sage will look upon all beings, *i. e.*, their repeated migrations.—T.

I have been highly gratified with thee for thy behaviour. Do thou question me! I shall discourse on what is beneficial to thee, agreeably to thy desire.[45] I think thy intelligence is great. Indeed, I applaud it much, for it was with the aid of that intelligence that thou wert able to recognise me. Surely, O Kāçyapa, thou art possessed of great intelligence.—' "[46]

SECTION XVII.

"Vāsudeva said,—'Touching the feet of that sage, the Brāhmana asked him some questions that were exceedingly difficult to answer. That foremost of all righteous persons then discoursed on those duties that were referred to.[1]

" 'Kāçyapa said,—How does the body dissolve away, and how is another acquired? How does one become emancipated, after passing through a repeated round of painful rebirths?[2] Enjoying Prakriti for sometime, how does Jiva cast off the particular body (which Prakriti gives)? How does Jiva, freed from the body, attain to what is different from it (*viz.*, Brahma?[3] How does a human being enjoy (and endure the fruits of) the good and bad acts done by him? Where do the acts exist of one that is devoid of body?*—[4]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—Thus urged by Kāçyapa, the emancipated sage answered those questions one after another. Do thou listen to me, O scion of the Vrishni race, as I recite to thee the answers he made.[5]

" '—The Emancipated sage said,—Upon the exhaustion of those acts capable of prolonging life and bringing on fame

---

* The Commentator explains that altogether seven questions are asked. The first is about the dissolution of the body. The second relates to the manner of re-acquiring a body. The third has reference to the manner in which rebirth may be avoided. The fourth relates to the causes that operate for giving a body to Jiva. By 'Prakriti' is meant Nature or that Ne-science which is the cause of body. The fifth relates to the *Anyat* or *Param*, *viz.*, how final Emancipation or absorption into Brahma takes place. The sixth pertains to the manner in which the fruits of acts are enjoyed or endured. The seventh enquires after the way in which acts attach to Jiva even when devoid of a body.—T.

which are done in a particular body that Jiva assumes,[6] the embodied Jiva, with the span of his life shortened, begins to do acts hostile to life and health. On the approach of destruction, his understanding turns away from the proper course.[7] The man of uncleansed soul, after even a correct apprehension of his constitution and strength and of the season of both his own life and of the year, begins to eat at irregular intervals and to eat such food as is hostile to him.*[8] At such a time he indulges in practices that are exceedingly harmful. He sometimes eats excessively and sometimes abstains altogether from food.[9] He eats bad food or bad meat or takes bad drinks, or food that has been made up of ingredients incompatable with one another. He eats food that is heavy in excess of the measure that is beneficial, or before the food previously taken has been digested.[10] He indulges in physical excercise and sexual pleasure in excess of the due measure, or through evidity for work, suppresses the urgings of his corporeal organism even when they become pronounced.[11] Or, he takes food that is very juicy, or indulges in sleep during daytime. Food that is not properly digested, of itself excites the faults, when the time comes.†[12] From such excitement of the faults in his body, he gets disease ending in death itself. Sometimes the person engages in perverse or unnatural acts like hanging (for bringing about his death).[13] Through these causes the living

---

* 'Kāla' here means both the season of the year and the age of the person. Food that is beneficial in summer is not so in winter, or that which is beneficial in youth is otherwise at old age. All the texts that I have seen have 'viditwā' and not 'aviditwā' which Telang takes in his version for the "sacred Books of the East." 'Kāla' is always interpreted by the Commentators of Charaka as refering to either period of life or period of the year. This, as well as the following verses, relate to the laws of health as expounded by Charaka —T.

† The faults are three, *viz.*, Wind, Bile, and Phlegm. When existing in a state of harmony, they produce health. When one is excited or two, or all, indisposition sets in. They are called 'dosha' or faults, because of their liability to be excited and produce disease. Telang, not suspecting that the whole passage is a reproduction of a passage in the ancient work edited by Charaka, misunderstands some expressions and wrongly renders 'doshān' into 'disorders.' It is a reclineal term.—T.

body of the creature dissolves away. Understand correctly the manner as I declare it to thee !*[14] Urged on by the Wind which becomes violent, the heat in the body, becoming excited, and reaching every part of the body one after another, restrains all the (movements of the) vital breaths.[15] Know truly that excited all over the body, the heat becomes very strong, and pierces every vital part where life may be said to reside.[16] In consequence of this, Jiva, feeling great pain, quickly takes leave of its mortal casement. Know, O foremost of regenerate persons, that when the vital parts of the physical organism become thus afflicted, Jiva slips away from the body, overwhelmed with great pain. All living creatures are repeatedly afflicted with birth and death.[17-18] It is seen, O chief of Brāhmanas, that the pain which is felt by a person when casting off his bodies is like to what is felt by him when first entering the womb or when issuing out of it. His joints become almost dislocated and he derives much distress from the waters (of the womb).†[19-20] Urged on by (another) violent wind, the wind that is in the body becomes excited through cold, and dissolves away the union of matter (called the body) into its respective elements numbering five.‡[21] That wind which resides in the vital breaths called Prāna and Apāna occurring within this compound of the five primal elements, rushes upwards, from a situation of distress, leaving the embodied creature.[22] It is even thus that the wind leaves the body. Then is seen breathlessness. The man then becomes destitute of heat, of breath, of beauty, and of consciousness.[23] Deserted by Brahma (for Jiva is Brahma), the person is said to be dead.

---

* 'Jivitam' in the second line seems to be an objective of 'çariram' in the first.—T.

† 'Garbha-sankramane' is explained by Nilakantha as 'entering this fœtus in the womb after casting off the body appertaing to the other world. I think Telang is not correct in his version of 19 and 20. 'Atisarpana' can never imply 'exhaustion ;' hence, 'karmanām' can never be the reading he adopts. Besides 'tādriçam' seems to settle the question. The tortures felt at death are similor to those at birth.—T.

‡ 'Sambhutātwam' is 'sanhatātwam.' 'Niyachachati' is 'nāçyyati' 'Vāyu' is understood in the second line, or that in the first line of the next verse may be taken as the nom. of 'niyachcchati.'—T.

By those ducts through which he perceives all sensuous objects, the bearer of the body no longer perceives them.[24] The life-breaths that are generated by food, it is the eternal Jiva who creates in the body in those very ducts.[25] The elements gathered together become in certain parts firmly united. Know that those parts are called the vitals of the body. It is said so in the Cāstras.[26] When those vital parts are pierced, Jiva, rising up, enters the heart of the living creature and restrains the principle of animation without any delay.[27] The creature then, though still endued with the principle of conciousness, fails to know anything. The vital parts being all overwhelmed, the knowledge of the living creature becomes overwhelmed by darkness.[28] Jiva then, who has been deprived of everything upon which to stay, is then agitated by the wind. He then, deeply breathing a long and painful breath,[29] goes out quickly, causing the inanimate body to tremble. Dissociated from the body, Jiva, however, is surrounded by his acts.[30] He becomes equiped on every side with all his auspicious acts of merit and with all his sins. Brāhmanas endued with knowledge and equiped with the certain conclusions of the scriptures,[31] know him, from indications, as to whether he is possessed of merit or with its reverse. Even as men possessed of eyes behold the fire-fly appearing and disappearing amid darkness, men possessed of the eye of knowledge and crowned with success of penances, behold, with spiritual vision, Jiva as he leaves the body, as he is reborn, and as he enters the womb. It is seen that Jiva has three regions assigned to him eternally.[32-34] This world where creatures dwell is called the field of action. Accomplishing acts good or bad, all embodied creatures attain to the fruits thereof.[35] In consequence of their own acts, creatures acquire even here superior or inferior enjoyments. Doers of evil deeds here, in consequence of those acts of theirs, attain to Hell.[36] This condition of sinking with head downwards, in which creatures are cooked, is one of great misery. It is such that a rescue therefrom is exceedingly difficult. Indeed, one should strive hard for saving oneself from this misery.[37] Those regions where creatures dwell when they ascend from this world I shall now declare

truly. Do thou listen to me with attention.[38] By listening to what I say, thou shalt attain to firmness of understanding and a clear apprehension of (good and bad) acts. Know that even those are the regions of all creatures of righteous deeds, *viz.*, the stellar worlds that shine in the firmament, the lunar disc, and the solar disc as well that shines in the universe in its own light.[39-40] Upon the exhaustion, again, of their merits, they fall away from those regions repeatedly. There, in Heaven itself, is distinction of inferior, superior, and middling felicity.[41] There in Heaven itself, is discontent at sight of prosperity more blazing than one's own. Even these are the goals which I have mentioned in detail.[42] I shall, after this, discourse to you on the attainment by Jiva of the condition of residence in the womb.[42] Do thou hear me, with concentrated attention, O regenerate one, as I speak to thee !—' "[43]

SECTION XVIII.

"'—The Brāhmana said,—The acts, good and bad, that Jiva does are not subject to destruction. Upon attainment of body after body, those acts produce fruits corresponding with them.*[1] As a fruit-bearing tree, when the season comes of productivity, yields a large quantity of fruit, merit, achieved with a pure heart, similarly yields a large crop (of felicity).[2] After the same fashion, sin, done with a sinful heart, produces a large crop of misery. The Soul (or Jiva), placing the mind ahead, addresses himself to action.[3] Hear then how Jiva, equipt with all his acts and overwhelmed with lust and wrath, enters the womb.[4] The vital seed, mixed with blood, enters the womb of females and becomes the field (of Jiva), good or bad, born of (his) acts.[5] In consequence of his subtlety and the condition of being unmanifest, Jiva does not become attached to anything even after attaining to a body. Therefore, he is called Eternal Brahma.†[6] That (*viz.*, Jiva or Brahma) is

---

* 'Pachante' is 'phalam prayachcchanti.'—T.

† Nilakantha explains this verse in a different way. According to him it means, 'In consequence of his subtlety and imperceptibility, Jiva does not become attached to anything. For this reason, one possessed

the seed of all creatures. It is in consequence of Him that living creatures live. That Jiva, entering all the limbs of the fœtus part by part, accepting the attribute of mind, and residing within all the regions that belong to Prāna, supports (life). In consequence of this, the fœtus, becoming endued with mind, begins to move its limbs.*[7-8] As liquified iron, poured (into a mould), takes the form of the mould, know that the entrance of Jiva into the fœtus is even such.[9] As fire, entering a mass of iron, heats it greatly, do thou know that the manifestation of Jiva in the fœtus is such.[10] As a lamp, burning in a room, discovers (all things within it), after the same manner mind discovers the different limbs of the body.†[11] Whatever acts, good or bad, Jiva does in a former body, have certainly to be enjoyed or endured by him.[12] By such enjoyment and endurance former acts are exhausted, and other acts, again, accumulate, till Jiva succeed in acquiring a knowledge of the duties included in that contemplation which leads to Emancipation.[13] Regarding this, I shall tell thee those acts by which Jiva, O best of men, while coursing through a repeated round of re-births, becomes happy.[14] Gifts, observances of austerity, Brahmacharyya, bearing Brahma according to the ordinances laid down, self-restraint, tranquillity, compassion for all creatures,[15] restraint of passions, abstention from cruelty as also from appropriating what belongs to others, refraining from doing even mentally, all acts that are false and injurious to living creatures on the Earth,[16] reverently serving mother and father, honouring deities and guests, worship of preceptors, pity, purity, constant restraint of all organs,[17] and causing of all good acts, are said to constitute

---

of a knowledge of Brahma, having become cognisant of Brahma, and attained the great object of his desire, succeeds in becoming so (*i. e.*, dissociated from all things). This interpretation seems to be a little far-fetched.—T.

* 'Chetasa' indicates 'upādhibhutena,' for previously, Jiva was without 'upādhi.' 'Prānasthāneshu' implies 'Indriyagolokeshu' or those vital parts which constitute the seats of the senses. 'Chetanā' does not, I think, mean 'consciousness'. It implies mind.—T.

† Causes them to grow. I do not follow Nilakantha here.—T.

the conduct of the good. From observance of such conduct, arises Righteousness which protects all creatures eternally.[18] Such conduct one would always behold among persons that are good. Verily, such conduct resides there eternally. That course of practices to which persons of tranquil souls adhere indicates Righteousness.[19] Among them is thrown that course of practices which constitutes eternal Righteousness. He who would betake himself to that Righteousness would never have to attain to a miserable end.[20] It is by the conduct of the good that the world is restrained in the paths of Righteousness when it falls away. He that is a Yogin is Emancipated, and is, therefore, distinguished above these (*viz.*, the good).*[21] Deliverance from the world takes place, after a long time, of one who acts righteously and well on every occasion as he should.[22] A living creature thus always meets with the acts done by him in a former life. All these acts constitute the cause in consequence of which he comes into this world in a state different from his true form.†[23] There is a doubt in the world as regards the question. By what was the acceptance (by Jiva) of a body first determined.[24] The Grandsire of all the worlds, *viz.*, Brahman, having first formed a body of his own, then created the three worlds, in their entirety, of mobile and immobile creatures.[25] Having first himself assumed a body, he then created Pradhāna. That Pradhāna is the material cause of all embodied creatures, by whom is all this covered, and whom all came to know as the highest.[26] This that is seen is said to be destructible; while the other is immortal and indestructible. This that (is seen) is said to be Kshara (the destructible); that, however, which is the other is the Immortal (as also) Akshara (the Indestructible). Of each Purusha taken distributively, the whole is duality among these three.‡[27] Seen first (to appear in an embodied

* Nilakantha points out that one of the *cha's* indicates the reason or cause. Hence, the use of 'therefore' in the text.—T.

† 'Vikritā' does not necessarily mean degraded. It implies 'changed or altered.' Jiva, who is pure and immaculate, takes birth in this world, falling away from his true status of Brahma owing to his acts. Acts, again, are eternal, no begining being conceivable.—T.

‡ 'Parantwamritamaksharam' indicates *two* things, *viz.*, Amritam and

form), Prajāpati (then) created all the primal elements and all immobile creatures. Even this is the ancient audition.[28] Of that (acceptance of body), the Grandsire ordained a limit in respect of time, and migrations among diverse creatures and return or rebirth.[29] All that I say is proper and correct, like to what a person who is endued with intelligence and who has seen his soul, would say on this topic of previous births.*[30] That person who looks upon pleasure and pain as inconstant, which, indeed, is the correct view, who regards the body as an unholy conglomeration, and destruction as ordained in action,[31] and who remembers that what little of pleasure there is, is really all pain, will succeed in crossing this terrible ocean of worldly migration that is so difficult to cross.[32] Though assailed by decrepitude and death and disease, he that understands Pradhāna beholds with an equal eye that Consciousness which dwells in all beings endued with Consciousness.[33] Seeking the supreme seat, he then becomes utterly indifferent to all (other) things. O best of men, I shall now impart instruction to thee, agreeably to truth, concerning this.[34] Do thou, O learned Brāhmana, understand in completeness that which constitutes the excellent knowledge, as I declare it, of that imdestructible seat !—' "[35]

Aksharam. The first line speaks of Kshara, or the material case, or body; then of that which is 'para' or other. This other is of two kinds, *viz.*, 'Amritām' or 'çudiha-chaitanyam,' implying 'Brahma' in its condition of purity ; and 'Aksharam' or Jiva as existing in the material case. In the second line, 'trayānām' refers to Kshara, Amrita, and Akshara. 'Mithunam' is duality, referring to that which is composed of Kshara and Akshara. What is stated in this Verse is that every Purusha is a duality, made up of Kshara and Akshara. Telang gives a different version of the verse. He ignores the word 'trayānām' totally, and takes 'Mithunam' as implying a couple (male and female). All the texts I have seen contain 'trayānām.'—T.

* 'Atra purvajanmani (vishaye) yathā kaçchit medhāvi &c., (vadet),' seems to be the correct order of the words. Telang translates the first line differently.—T.

SECTION XIX.

"'—The Brāhmana said,—He who becomes absorbed in the one receptacle (of all things), freeing himself from even the thought of his own identity with all things,—indeed, ceasing to think of even his own existence,—gradually casting off one after another, will succeed in crossing his bonds.*[1] That man who is the friend of all, who endures all, who is attached to tranquillity, who has conquered all his senses, who is divested of fear and wrath, and who is of restrained soul, succeeds in emancipating himself.[2] He who behaves towards all creatures as towards himself, who is restrained, pure, free from vanity, and divested of egoism, is regarded as emancipated from everything.[3] He also is emancipated who looks with an equal eye upon life and death, pleasure and pain, gain and loss, agreeable and disagreeable.[4] He is in every way emancipate who does not covet what belongs to others, who never disregards any body, who transcends all pairs of opposites, and whose soul is free from attachment.[5] He is emancipated who has no enemy, no kinsman, and no child, who has cast off religion, wealth, and pleasure, and who is freed from desire or cupidity.[6] He becomes emancipated who acquires neither merit nor demerit, who casts off the merits and demerits accumulated in previous births, who wastes the elements of his body for attaining to a tranquillised soul, and who transcends all pairs of opposites.[7] He who abstains from all acts, who is free from desire or cupidity, who looks upon the universe as unenduring or as like an Açwattha tree, ever endued with birth, death, and decrepitude,[8] whose understanding is fixed on renunciation, and whose eyes are always directed towards his own faults, soon succeeds in emancipating himself from the bonds that

---

* 'Ekāyana' is the one receptacle of all things, *viz.*, Brahma. 'Tushni' implies 'ahamevedam sarvamasmityabhimānamapyakurvan,' *i. e.*, 'without even retaining the consciousness of his own identity with everything.' 'Kinchikachintayan'—*i. e.*, not even thinking that he is existing. 'Purvam purvam parityajya' implies the gradual merging of the grosser in the subtler, *i. e.*, the successive stages of Yoga before absorption into Brahma. I follow Nilakantha.—T.

bind him.*[9] He that sees his soul void of smell, of taste and touch, of sound, of belongings, of vision, and unknowable, becomes emancipated.†[10] He who sees his soul devoid of the attributes of the five elements, to be without form and cause, to be really destitute of attributes though enjoying them, becomes emancipated.‡[11] Abandoning, with the aid of the understanding, all purposes relating to body and mind, one gradually attains to cessation of separate existence, like a fire unfed with fuel.§[12] One who is freed from all impressions, who transcends all pairs of opposites, who is destitute of all belongings, and who uses all his senses under the guidance of penances, becomes emancipated.¶[13] Having become freed from all impressions, one then attains to Brahma which is Eternal and supreme, and tranquil, and stable, and enduring, and indestructible.[14] After this I shall declare the science of Yoga than which there is nothing superior, and how Yogins, by concentration, behold the perfect soul.$[15] I shall declare the instructions regarding it duly. Do thou learn from me those doors by which directing the soul within the body one beholds that which is without beginning and end.||[16] Withdrawing the senses from their objects, one should fix the mind

---

* The first half of the second line of 8 is read differently in the Bengal texts. 'Açwasthamavaçam mudham' implies 'without ease or happiness, endued with slavery and ignorance.'—T.

† The Soul being destitute of these becomes 'Chinmātra,' *i. e.*, a pure Chit without the attributes superinduced upon it by Ne-science or ignorance.—T.

‡ Formlessness implies subtlety. 'Without cause' implies increate or as identical with eternal Brahma. Dissociation from attributes while enjoying them implies an emancipate condition.—T.

§ 'Nirvāna,' according to orthodox Commentators, implies the annihilation or cessation of separate or individual existence by absorption into universal and eternal Brahma.—T.

¶ The impressions caused by objects outside self are destroyed by those belonging to contemplation. The latter, again, should be destroyed before absorption into Brahma can occur.—T.

$ 'Siddham' is explained as 'destitute of the errors, due to Ne-science.—T.

|| 'Atmānam' is 'Chittam;' 'ātmani' is 'dehe;' 'chārayan' is 'antarmukham kritwā;' 'nityam' is 'ādyantaçunyam.' So Nilakantha.—T.

upon the soul; having previously undergone the severest austerities, one should practise that concentration of mind which leads to Emancipation.*[17] Observant of penances and always practising concentration of mind, the learned Brāhmana, endued with intelligence, should observe the precepts of the science of Yoga, beholding the soul in the body.[18] If the good man succeeds in concentrating the mind on the soul, he then, habituated to exclusive meditation, beholds the Supreme soul in his own soul.[19] Self-restrained, and always concentrated, and with all his senses completely conquered, the man of cleansed soul, in consequence of such complete concentration of mind, succeeds in beholding the soul by the soul.[20] As a person beholding some unseen individual in a dream recognises him, saying,—This is he,—when he sees him after waking, after the same manner the good man having seen the Supreme Soul in the deep contemplation of Samādhi recognises it upon waking from Samādhi.†[21] As one beholds the fibrous pith after extracting it from a blade of the *Saccharum Munja*, even so the Yogin beholds the soul, extracting it from the body.[22] The body has been called the *Saccharum Munja*, and the fibrous pith is said to stand for the soul. This is the excellent illustration propounded by persons conversant with Yoga.[23] When the bearer of a body adequately beholds the Soul in Yoga, he then has no one that is master over him, for he then becomes the lord of the three worlds.‡[24] He succeeds in assuming diverse bodies according as he wishes. Turning away decrepitude and death, he neither grieves nor exults.[25] The self-restrained man, concentrated in Yoga, can create (for himself) the godship of the very gods. Casting off his

---

* 'Fixing the mind upon the soul' is that concentration which leads to Emancipation. This becomes possible in consequence of severe austerities undergone previously.—T.

† I expand the verse a little to make it intelligible. The sense is this: having seen the Supreme Soul in Samādhi, upon awaking from it, he recognises it in the universe, *i. e.*, regards the universe to be nothing else than the Supreme Soul.—T.

‡ This may also mean 'he has none superior to him; not even he that is the Lord of the universe.'—T.

transient body he attains to immutable Brahma.*[26] No fear springs up in him at even the sight of all creatures falling victims to destruction (before his eyes). When all creatures are afflicted,—he can never be afflicted by any one.[27] Devoid of desire and possessed of a tranquil mind, the person in Yoga is never shaken by pain and sorrow and fear, the terrible effects that flow from attachment and affection.[28] Weapons never pierce him; death does not exist for him. Nowhere in the world can be seen any one that is happier than he.[29] Having adequately concentrated his soul, he lives steadily on himself. Turning off decrepitude and pain and pleasure, he sleeps in comfort.[30] Casting off this human body he attains to (other) forms according to his pleasure. While one is enjoying the sovereignty that Yoga bestows, one should never fall away from devotion to Yoga.†[31] When one, after adequate devotion to Yoga, beholds the Soul in oneself, one then ceases to have any regard for even him of a hundred sacrifices (Indra).‡[32] Hear now how one, habituating oneself to exclusive meditation, succeeds in attaining to Yoga. Thinking of that point of the compass which has the Sun behind it, the mind should be fixed, not outside, but in the interior of that mansion in which one may happen to live. Residing within that mansion, the mind should then, with all its outward and inward (operations), behold in that particular room in which one may stay. At that time when, having deeply meditated, one beholds the All (*viz.*, Brahma, the Soul of the

---

* The first line seems to be doubtful. The sense, as I understand it, is,—such a person becomes the god of the very gods. The causul verb 'kārayate' may be taken as equivalent to 'karoti.'—T.

† I follow Nilakantha in rendering the second line. The sense is clear, *viz*, that one should not fall away from the practice of Yoga, tempted by the puissance that Yoga brings. Telang renders the line 'one practising concentration should never become despondent.' I think, Nilakantha is right.—T.

‡ Nilakantha notes that this indicates that only that Yogin who has not advanced much may be tempted by the desire of enjoyment. He, however, who has adequately devoted himself to Yoga, feels no regard for Indra himself but can turn him away like Diogenes dismissing Alexander the Great.—T.

universe), there is then nothing external to Brahma where the mind may dwell. Restraining all the senses in a forest that is free from noise and that is uninhabited,[33-36] with mind fixed thereon, one should meditate on the All (or universal Brahma) both outside and inside one's body. One should meditate on the teeth, the palate, the tongue, the throat, the neck likewise; one should also meditate on the heart and the ligatures of the heart![*37]

"'The Brāhmana continued,—Thus addressed by me, that intelligent disciple, O slayer of Madhu, once more asked me about this religion of Emancipation that is so difficult to explain.[38]—How doos this food that is eaten from time to time become digested in the stomach? How does it become transformed into juice? How, again, into blood?[39] How does it nourish the flesh, the marrow, the sinews, the bones? How do all these limbs of embodied creatures grow?[40] How does the strength grow of the growing man? How occurs the escape of all such elements as are not nutritive, and of all impurities separately?[41] How does this one inhale and again, exhale? Staying upon what particular part does the Soul dwell in the body?[42] How does Jiva, exerting himself, bear

* I have encleavoured to render verses 33 to 37 as literally as possible, under the guide of Nilakantha, omitting his inferences. The passage relates to the mysteries of Yoga. In the second line of 33, 'drishtapurvām diçam,' which has been rendered 'that point of the compass which has the Sun behind it,' means the instructions laid down in the Vedānta as based upon the Crutis. 'Drishtam' implies 'Cruti,' for it is as authoritative as anything *seen*. 'Pura' implies a city, a citadel, or a mansion. Here it refers to the body. The 'āvasatha' within the 'pura' refers to the 'chakra' or nervous centre beginning with what is called the 'mulādhāra.' At the time when Brahma is realised, the whole universe appears as Brahma and so nothing exists, besides Brahma, upon which the mind can then dwell. Telang, I think, is not correct in rendering 'manaçchāsya.....vāhyatah' as 'his mind should not any way wander outside.' The correct version would be 'the mind is then nowhere,' implying that at that time the mind has nothing else to dwell upon. 'Kāyamabhyantaram' is 'kāyamabhi' and 'antaram,' *i. e.*, both within and without the body. The several parts of the body named, beginning with teeth, &c., refer to eating and other operations, all of which influence the mind and dispose it for purity and otherwise.—T.

the body? Of what color and of what kind is the body in which he dwells again (leaving a particular body?)[43] O holy one, it behooveth thee to tell me all this accurately, O sinless one!—Even thus was I interrogated by that learned Brāhmana, O Mādhava![44] I replied unto him, O thou of mighty arms, after the manner I myself had heard, O chastiser of all foes! As one placing some precious object in one's store-room should keep one's mind on it,[45] so, placing the mind within one's own body, one should then, restraining all the senses, seek after the Soul, avoiding all heedlessness.[46] One would, becoming always assiduous in this way and gratified with one's own self, within a very short time attain to that Brahma by beholding which one would become conversant with Pradhāna.*[47] He is not capable of being seized by the eye; nor even by all the senses.† It is only with the lamp of the mind that the great Soul can be seen.[48] He has hands and feet on all sides; he has ears on all sides; he dwells, pervading all things in the world.‡[49] Jiva beholds the Soul as extracted from the body (like the stalk from a blade of Saccharum Munja, when knowledge comes). Then casting off Brahma as invested with form, by holding the mind in the body, he beholds Brahma as freed from all attributes.§[50] He sees the Soul with his mind, smiling as it were at the time. Depending upon that Brahma, he then attains to Emancipation in me.¶[51]

---

* *I. e.*, that from which the entire universe has been created.—T.

† Probably, 'by any of the senses.' The plural form occurs in the original.—T.

‡ This answers the question respecting the form of the Soul, says Nilakantha.—T.

§ I render this verse, following Nilakantha's gloss. The second line of 50, according to that Commentator, refers to the ascension of the Yogin from Brahma vested with attributes to Brahma divested of all attributes. The 'tam' does not refer to 'body' as Telang takes it, but to Brahma as endued with hands and feet on all sides, &c. 'Dehe swam dhārayan' means 'restraining the mind within the body.' 'Kevalam Brahma' is Brahma without attributes.—T.

¶ The speaker here is the regenerate visitor of Krishna. The latter is repeating the words of that visitor. In this verse, Krishna, forgetting that he is merely reciting the words of another, refers to himself as

O foremost of regenerate ones, all this mystery has now been declared by me. I ask thy permission, for I shall leave this spot. Do thou (also) go whithersoever thou pleasest![52] Thus addressed by me, O Krishna, on that occasion, that disciple of mine, endued with austere penances, that Brāhmana of rigid vows, went away according to his pleasure!—'[53]

"Vāsudeva continued,—'That best of Brāhmanas, O son of Prithā, having said these words unto me, on that occasion, properly relating to the religion of Emancipation, disappeared then and there.[54] Has this discourse been heard by thee, O son of Prithā, with mind directed solely towards it? Even this was what thou didst hear on that occasion while thou wert on thy car.[55] It is my opinion, O son of Prithā, that this is difficult of being comprehended by one whose understanding is confused, or who has acquired no wisdom by study, or who eats food incompatiable with his body, or whose Soul is not purified.*[56] O chief of Bharata's race, this is a great mystery among the deities that has been declared (to thee). At no time or place, O son of Prithā, has this been heard by man in this world.[57] O sinless one, than thyself, no other man is deserving of hearing it. It is not, at this time, capable of being easily understood by one whose inner soul is confused.[58] The world of the deities is filled, O son of Kunti, with those who follow the religion of actions. The cessation of the mortal form (by practising the religion of inaction) is not agreeable to the deities.†[59] That goal, O son of Prithā, is the highest which is constituted by eternal Brahman where one, casting off the body, attains to immortality and becomes

---

the Supreme Brahma in whom one must merge for attaining to Emancipation.—T.

* The second line of 56 is read variously.—T.

† Heaven is the reward of those who follow the religion of Pravirtti or acts, such as sacrifices, religious observances, &c. The followers, however, of the religion of Nivritti or inaction, *i. e.*, they who betake themselves to the path of knowledge, become emancipated. The deities derive their sustenance from the former and become even jealous of the latter, for the emancipate state is higher than that of the deities themselves.—T.

always happy.[60] By adhering to this religion, even they who are of sinful birth, such as women and Vaiçyas and Cudras, attain to the highest goal.[61] What need be said then, O son of Prithā, of Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas possessed of great learning, always devoted to the duties of their own orders, and who are intent on (the acquisition of) the region of Brahma?[62] This has been laid down with the reasons (on which its rests); and also the means for its acquisition; and its complete attainment and fruit, *viz.*, Emancipation and the ascertainment of the truth regarding pain.[63] O chief of Bharata's race, there is nothing else that is fraught with happiness greater than this. That mortal, O son of Pāndu, who, endued with intelligence, and faith, and prowess, renounces as unsubstantial what is regarded as substantial by the world, succeeds within a short time in obtaining the Supreme by these means.[64-65] This is all that is to be said,—there is nothing else that is higher than this. Yoga takes place in his case, O son of Prithā, who devotes himself to its constant practice for a period of six months.' "[66]

Section XX.

Vāsudeva said,—'In this connection is cited the ancient narrative, O son of Prithā, of the discourse that took place between a married couple.[1] A certain Brāhmana's spouse, beholding the Brāhmana, her husband, who was a complete master of every kind of knowledge and wisdom, seated in seclusion, said unto him,[2]—Into what region shall I go, depending on thee as my husband,—thee that art seated, having cast off all (religious) acts, that art harsh in thy conduct towards me, and that art so undiscerning?*[3] It has been heard by us that a wife attains to those regions which are acquired by her husband. What, indeed, is the goal that I shall attain, having obtained thee for my husband?[4]—Thus

---

* 'Avichakshanam' is undiscerning, in the sense of the husband's not knowing that the interrogatrix, as wife, has no other refuge than her lord with all his defects.—T.

questioned, that Brāhmana of tranquil soul then said unto her, smilingly,—O blessed dame, I am not offended with these words of thine, O sinless one![5] Whatever acts exist that are adopted with the aid of others, that are seen (in consequence of their grossness), and that are true, are done, as acts, by men devoted to acts.*[6] Those persons that are destitute of knowledge, only store delusion by acts. Freedom from acts, again, is incapable of being attained in this world for even a moment.[7] From birth to the attainment of a different form, action good or bad, and accomplished by acts, mind, or speech, exists in all beings.[8] Those paths (of action) which are characterised by visible objects (such as Soma-juice and ghee for libations) being destroyed by Rākshasas, turning away from them I have perceived the seat (of the soul) that is in the body, with the aid of the soul.†[9] There dwells Brahma transcending all pairs of opposites; there Soma with Agni; and there the urger of the understanding, (*viz.*, Vāyu) always moves, upholding all creatures.‡[10] It is for that seat that the Grandsire Brahman and others, concentrated in Yoga, worship the Indestructible. It is for that seat that men of learning and excellent vows, of tranquil souls, and of senses completely vanquished, strive.¶[11] That is not capable of being smelt by the sense of smell; nor tasted by the tongue; or touched by the organs of touch. It is by the mind that that

---

* I follow Nilakantha. Telang adopts the views of Arjuna Misra and renders the first line as 'whatever acts are seized (by the touch,, or seen, or heard, &c.' 'Grāhyam,' according to Nilakantha, implies those acts, like Dikshā, &c., which are adopted with the aid of others.—T.

† This seat, says Nilakantha, is called Avimukta and lies between the eyebrows and the nose —T.

‡ Nilakantha interprets this mystically. By 'Soma' he understands the artery or duct called Idā, and by 'Agni' the duct called Pingalā. 'Dhira' is 'Budhipreraka;' 'vyavāyam' is 'sanchāram.' 'Dhirobhutāni dhārayan nityam vyavāyam kurute' is the order of the words. The sense is this: in this spot is seated Brahma; there Idā and Pingalā meet; and there also is Vāyu which urges the understanding and upholds all living creatures.—T.

¶ 'Yatra' is not to be taken as a locative here. It is equivalent to 'yatah' or for which.—T.

is attained.[12] It is incapable of being conquered by the eye. It transcends the sense of hearing. It is destitute of scent, taste, touch, and form as attributes.[13] It is that from which proceeds the well-ordained universe, and it is that upon which it rests. The life-breaths called Prāna and Apāna and Samāna and Vyāna and Udāna,[14] flow from it, and it is that into which they again enter. The breaths Prāna and Apāna move between Samāna and Vyāna.[15] When the soul sleeps, both Samāna and Vyāna are absorbed.* Between Apāna and Prāna, Udāna dwells, pervading all.[16] Hence, Prāna and Apāna do not desert a sleeping person. In consequence of its controlling all the life-winds, the controlling breath is so called Udāna.[17] Hence, utterers of Brahma undergo penances which have myself for their goal.† In the midst of all those life breaths that swallow up one another and move within the body, blazes forth the fire called Vaiçwānara made up of seven flames. The nose, the tongue, the eye, the skin, the ear which numbers the fifth,[18-19] the mind, and the understanding,—these are the seven tongues of that Vaiçwānara's flame. That which is smelt, that which is seen, that which is drunk, that which is touched, as also that which is heard,[20] that which is thought of, and that which is understood,—these are the seven sorts of fuel for me. That which smells, that which eats, that which sees, that which touches, that which hears, numbering the fifth;[21] that which thinks, and that which understands,—these are the seven great officiating priests.[22] Behold, O blessed one, learned sacrificers duly casting seven libations in seven ways in the seven fires,[23] *viz.*, that which is smelt, that which is drunk, that which is seen, that which is touched, as also that which is heard, that which is thought of, and that which is understood, create them in their

---

* 'Tasmin' is taken, by Nilakantha as 'Apāna sahite Prāne.'—T.

† 'Utkarshena ānayati,' hence 'Udāna,' says Nilakantha. The sense of the whole passage seems to be this. Worldly life is regulated by the life-breaths. These are attached to the Soul and lead to its individual manifestations. Udāna controls all the breaths. Udāna is controlled by penance. It is penance, then, that destroys the round of rebirths and leads to absorption into Brahma.—T.

own wombs.* Earth, Wind, Ether, Water, and Light numbering as the fifth,[24] Mind, and Understanding,—these seven are called wombs (of all things). All the attributes which constitute the sacrificial offerings, enter into the attribute that is born of the fire;[25] and having dwelt within that dwelling become reborn in their respective wombs. Thither also, *viz.*, in that which generates all beings, they remain absorbed during the period for which dissolution lasts.[26] From that is produced smell, from that is produced taste, from that is produced color, and from that is produced touch;[27] from that is produced sound; from that arises doubt; and from that is produced resolution. Thus is what is known as the sevenfold creation.[28] It is in this very way that all this was comprehended by the ancients. By the three full and final libations, the full become full with light.—' "[29]

Section XXI.

"'The Brāhmana said,—In this cannection is cited the following ancient story. Do thou understand, of what kind the institution is of the ten *Hotris* (sacrificing priests).[1] The ear, the skin, the two eyes, the tongue, the nose, the two feet, the two hands, the genital organ, the lower duct, and speech,—these, O beautiful one, are the ten sacrificing priests.[2] Sound and touch, color and taste, scent, speech, action, motion, and the discharge of vital seed, of urine, and of excreta, are the ten libations.[3] The points of the compass, wind, Sun, Moon, earth, fire, Vishnu, Indra, Prajāpati, and Mitra,—these, O beautiful one, are the ten (sacrificial) fires.[4] The ten organs (of knowledge and action) are the sacrificing priests. The libations, O beautiful one, are ten. The objects of the senses are the fuel that are cast into these ten fires,†[5] as also the

---

* The meaning seems to be this: they who renounce sensuous objects can create them when they like. One casting off smell that has earth for its object can create earth when he likes.—T.

† What is stated in this passage is, shortly, this: the ear, &c., are the *Hotris* or sacrificing priests who are to pour libations on the sacrificial fire. The perceptions and functions of those organs constitute the

mind, which is the ladle, and the wealth (*viz.*, the good and bad acts of the sacrificer). What remains is the pure, highest knowledge. We have heard that all this universe was well differentiated (from Knowledge).[6] All objects of knowledge are Mind. Knowledge only perceives (*i. e.*, discovers the Mind without being attached to it). The Knower (or Jiva), encased in subtle form, lives within the gross body that is produced by the vital seed.[7] The bearer of the body is the Gārhapatya fire. From that is produced another. Mind is the Āhavaniya fire. Into it is poured the oblation.[8] From that was produced the Veda (or Word); (then was born Mind); Mind (desirous of creation) sets itself on the Veda (or the Word). Then arises form (or color) undistinguished by particular colors. It runs towards the Mind.*—[9]

" 'The Brāhmana's wife said,—Why did Word first arise and why did Mind arise afterwards, seeing that Word starts into existence after having been thought upon by Mind?[10] Upon what authority can it be said that Mati (Prāna) takes refuge in Mind. Why, again, in dreamless slumber, though separated from Mind, does not Prāna apprehend (all objects)? What is that which restrains it then?†—[11]

Havi or libations that are to be poured. The points, wind, &c., are the Agni or sacred fires on which they are to be poured. These statements are recapitulated in Verse 5. The objects of the senses, the same as those in Verse 3, are the fuel, before described as Havi or libations, which are to be burnt off by being cast into the fires.—T.

* The 'Hridaya' or heart is the 'Gārhapatya' fire. From it is produced another fire, the 'Ahavaniya,' *viz.*, the mind. 'The heart was pierced. From the heart arose mind, for the mind arose Chandramas,' is the declaration of the Cruti cited by Nilakantha. The Ahavaniya fire or mind is the mouth. 'Asyamāhavaniya' is the Cruti. 'Annamayam hi Somyamanas, āpomayahprānah, tejomayivāk' is the Cruti that bears upon this. Food or fire, poured into the mouth, develops into speech or word. 'Vāchaspati' implies the Veda or word. First arises the word, the mind sets itself upon it, desirous of creation. This corresponds with the Mosaic Genesis. 'God said let there be light, and there was light.' The Word was first.—T.

† The last question seems to be this: in dreamless slumber, the mind disappears totally. If it is the mind upon which Prāna rests, why does not Prāna also disappear? It is seen to separate itself from mind,

"'The Brāhmana said,—The Apāna breath, becoming the lord (*i. e.*, bringing the Prāna under its control), in consequence of such lordship over it, makes it identical with itself. That restrained motion of the Prāna breath (which for the time becomes identical with that of the Apāna) has been said to be the motion of the mind. Hence the mind is dependent upon Prāna, (not Prāna upon the mind. Therefore, in dreamless slumber, upon the disappearance of mind, Prāna does not disappear).[12] But since thou askest me a question about word and mind, I shall, therefore, relate to thee a discourse between them.[13] Both Word and Mind, repairing to the Soul of matter,* asked him,—Do thou say who amongst us is superior. Do thou, O puissant one, despel our doubt![14]—On that occasion, the holy one made this answer,—The mind undoubtedly (is superior)!—Unto him Word said,—I yield to thee the fruition of all thy desires!†—[15]

"'The Brāhmana said,—Know that I have two minds, immovable and movable. That which is immovable is, verily, with me; the movable is in your dominion.‡[16] That mind is

---

for it continues to exist while mind does not exist. If so, *i. e.*, if existing, as it must be admitted to do, why does it not apprehend objects? What is it that restrains its powers of apprehension?—T.

* 'Bhutātmānam' is ordinarily Prajāpati. Nilakantha takes it to mean here individual Jiva or self.—T.

† It is, through words that desirable fruits, visible and invisible, are acquired. Of course, word means both ordinary speech and Vedic Mantras.—T.

‡ The speaker is the Brāhmana, which Nilakantha explains to mean 'the Brāhmana named Manas or Mind.' Instead of such a learned interpretation, we may take it as implying that the Brāhmana is repeating the answer which Bhutātman, *i. e.*, Prajāpati or Jiva, made to Word. The Brāhmana is the real speaker. He recites the words of Jiva. 'Immovable,' according to Nilakantha, means 'that which is seizable by the external senses;' and 'movable,' that which is beyond the ken of the senses, such as heaven, &c. The external world being only a manifestation of the mind, it is spoken of here as identical with it. So, the ideas in the mind which are not due to the senses, are only the mind. This is the movable mind. That mind depends on word or the scripture.—T.

verily called movable which, in the form of Mantra, letter, or voice, is referrible to your dominion. Hence, thou art superior (to the other mind which concerns itself with only the external world).[17] But since, coming of thy own accord, O beautiful one, thou enterest into the engagement (about the fruition of all wishes), therefore, filling myself with breath, I utter thee !*[18] The goddess Word used always to dwell between Prāna and Apāna. But, O blessed one, sinking into Apāna, though urged upwards, in consequence of becoming dissociated from Prāna, she ran to Prajāpati and said,—Be gratified with me, O holy one ![19]—Then Prāna appeared, once more fostering Word. Hence, Word, encountering deep exhalation, never utters anything.[20] Word always flows as endued with utterance or unendued with it.† Amongst those two, Word without utterance is seperior to Word with utterance.[21] Like a cow endued with excellent milk, she (Word without utterance) yields diverse kinds of meaning. This one always yields the Eternal (*viz.*, Emancipation), speaking of Brahma.[22] O thou of beautiful smiles, Word is a cow, in consequence of her puissance which is both divine and not divine. Behold the distinction of these two subtle forms of Word that flow !‡—[23]

" 'The Brāhmana's wife said,—What did the goddess of Word then say, in days of old, when, though impelled by the wish to speak, speech could not come out ?—[24]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—The Word that is generated in the body by Prāna, then attains to Apāna from Prāna. Then transformed into Udāna and issuing out of the body, envelops all the quarters, with Vyāna.[25] After that, she dwells in

---

* Telang gives a different version of this Verse. I offer a verbal rendering, without attempting to explain it.—T.

† *I. e.*, as noisy or noiseless —T.

‡ I have given as close a verbal rendering of the passage as possible. The sense, however, is not very intelligible to me. The gloss of Nilakantha is as unintelligible as the text. Telang also has given a verbal rendering which differs from the above slightly. His foot-notes do not, I think, bring out the meaning at all As regards the two vernacular versions, both are useless.—T.

Samāna. Even in this way did Word formerly speak. Hence Mind, in consequence of being immovable, is distinguished, and the goddess Word, in consequence of being movable, is also distinguished.—' "[28]

Section XXII.

" 'The Brāhmana said,—In this connection is cited the ancient story, O blessed one, of what the institution is of the seven sacrificing priests.[1] The nose, the eye, the tongue, the skin, and the ear numbering the fifth, the mind, and the understanding,—these are the seven sacrificing priests standing distinctly from one another.[2] Dwelling in subtle space, they do not perceive one another. Do thou, O beautiful one, know these sacrificing priests that are seven by their nature![3]

" 'The Brāhmana's wife said,—How is it that dwelling in subtle space, these do not perceive one another? What are their (respective) natures, O holy one? Do thou tell me this, O lord!—[4]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—Not knowing the qualities (of any object) is ignorance (of that object); while knowledge of the qualities is (called) knowledge (of the object which possesses those qualities). These seven never succeed in apprehending or knowing the qualities of one another.[5] The tongue, the eye, the ear too, the skin, the mind, and the understanding, do not succeed in apprehending smells. It is the nose alone that apprehends them.[6] The nose, the eye, the ear too, the skin, the mind, and the understanding, never succeed in apprehending tastes. The tongue alone apprehends them.[7] The nose, the tongue, the ear also, the skin, the mind, and the understanding, never succeed in apprehending colors. It is the eye alone that apprehends them.[8] The nose, the tongue, the eye too, the ear, the understanding, and the mind, never succeed in apprehending sensations of touch. It is the skin alone that apprehends them.[9] The nose, the tongue, the eye, the skin, the mind, and the understanding, never succeed in apprehending sounds. It is the ear alone that apprehends them.[10] The nose, the tongue, the eye, the skin, the ear, and the

understanding, never succeed in apprehending doubt. It is the mind that apprehends it.[11] The nose, the tongue, the eye, the skin, the ear, and the mind, never succeed in apprehending determination (certainty in respect of knowledge). It is the understanding alone that apprehends it.[12] In this connection, is cited, O beautiful lady, this ancient narrative of a discourse between the senses and the mind.[13]

The mind said,—The nose does not smell without me. (Without me) the tongue does not apprehend taste. The eye does not seize color, the skin does not feel touch,[14] the ear does not apprehend sound, when deprived of me. I am the eternal and foremost one among all the elements.[15] It always happens that destitute of myself, the senses never shine, like habitations empty of inmates or fires whose flames have been quenched.[16] Without me, all creatures fail to apprehend qualities and objects, with even the senses exerting themselves, even as fuel that is wet and dry (failing to ignite a fire) !—[17]

Hearing these words, the Senses said,—Even this would be true as thou thinkest in this matter, if, indeed, thou couldst enjoy pleasures without either ourselves or our objects.*[18] If, when we are extinct, there be gratification and support of life, and a continuation of thy enjoyments,| then what thou thinkest would be true ;[19] or, if, when we are absorbed and objects are existing, thou canst have thy enjoyments by thy desire alone, as truly as thou hast them with our aid.[20] If, again, thou deemest thy power over our objects to be always complete, do thou then seize color by the nose, and taste by the eye.[21] Do thou also take smells by the ear, and sensations of touch by the tongue. Do thou also take sounds by the skin, and likewise touch by the understanding.[22] They that are powerful do not own the dominion of any rules. Rules exist for those only that are weak. Do thou seize enjoyments unenjoyed before; it behoves thee not to enjoy what has been tasted before (by others).[23] As a disciple repairs to a

* The correct reading is 'cha' after 'arthān' and not 'twam' after it. Hence, the Senses say that 'without ourselves and without those which are our objects, thou canst not have thy enjoyments.'—T.

preceptor for the sake of (acquiring) the Crutis, and then, having acquired the Crutis, dwells on their import (by obeying their injunctions),[24] even so dost thou regard as thine those objects which are shown by us, past or future, in sleep or in wakefulness.[25] Of creatures, again, that are of little intelligence, when their mind becomes distracted and cheerless, life is seen to be upheld upon our objects discharging their functions.*[26] It is seen also that a creature, after having formed even innumerable purposes and indulged in dreams, when afflicted by the desire to enjoy, runs to objects of sense alone.†[27] One entering upon enjoyments depending on mental purposes alone and unconnected with actual objects of sense, always meets with death upon the exhaustion of the life-breaths, like an enkindled fire upon the exhaustion of fuel.[28] True it is that we have connections with our respective attributes; true it is, we have no knowledge of one another's attributes. But without us thou canst have no perception. Without us no happiness can come to thee!—' "[29]

Section XXIII.

" 'The Brāhmana said,—In this connection, O blessed lady is cited the ancient story of what kind the institution is of the five sacrificing priests.[1] The learned know this to be a great principle that Prāna and Apāna and Udāna and Samāna and Vyāna are the five sacrificing priests.—[2]

" 'The Brāhmana's wife said,—That naturally there are seven sacrificing priests is what was my former conviction. Let the great principle be declared to me as to how, verily, the number is five of the sacrificing priests.—[3]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—The wind nursed by Prāna afterwards takes birth in Apāna. The wind nursed in Apāna then becomes developed into Vyāna.[4] Nursed by Vyāna, the wind is then developed into Udāna. Nursed in Udāna, the wind

---

* Thus creatures may exist through us, even though mind may be out of order.—T.

† Both mental purposes and dreams having failed to gratify him.—T.

is then generated as Samāna.[5] Those good beings in days of yore asked the first-born Grandsire, saying,—Do thou say who amongst us is the foremost! He (whom thou wilt indicate) will be our chief!—[6]

" '—Brahman said,—He upon whose extinction all the life-breaths become extinct in the bodies of living creatures, he upon whose moving they move, is verily the foremost (among you). Do ye go where ye like!—[7]

" '—Prāna said,—Upon my extinction all the life-breaths become extinct in the bodies of living creatures. Upon my moving they once more move. I am (therefore) the foremost. Behold, I go into extinction!—[8]

" 'The Brāhmana continued,—Prāna then became extinct and once more moved about. Then Samāna and Udāna also, O blessed one, said these words,[9]—Thou dost not dwell here, pervading all this, as we do. Thou art not the foremost amongst us, O Prāna! (Only) Apāna is under thy dominion! —Prāna then moved about, and unto him Apāna spoke.—[10]

" '—Apāna said,—When I become extinct, all the life-winds become extinct in the bodies of living creatures. When I move about, they again move about. I am, therefore, the foremost. Behold, I go into extinction!—[11]

" 'The Brāhmana continued,—Unto Apāna who said so, both Vyāna and Udāna said,—O Apāna, thou art not the foremost. (Only) Prāna is under thy dominion.[12]—Then Apāna began to move about. Vyāna once more addressed him, saying,—I am the foremost of all (the life-winds). Listen, for what reason.[13] When I become extinct, all the life-winds become extinct in the bodies of living creatures. When I move about, they once more move about. I am (therefore) the foremost. Behold, I go into extinction!—[14]

" 'The Brāhmana continued,—Then Vyāna went into extinction and once more began to move about. At this, Prāna and Apāna and Udāna and Samāna addressed him, saying,[15]—Thou art not the foremost among us, O Vyāna! (Only) Samāna is under thy dominion.—Vyāna then began to move about and Samāna said unto him,[16]—I am the foremost of you all! Listen, for what reason. When I become extinct, all

the life-winds become extinct in the bodies of living creatures When I begin to move about, they once more move about, Hence, I am the foremost. Behold, I go into extinction![17]—Then Samāna began to move about. Unto him Udāna said,—I am the foremost of all the life-winds. Listen, for what reason.[18] When I become extinct, all the life-winds become extinct in the bodies of living creatures. When I move about they once more move about. Hence, I am the foremost. Behold, I go into extinction![19]—Then Udāna, after having gone into extinction, began to once more move about. Prāna and Apāna and Samāna and Vyāna said unto him,—O Udāna, thou art not the foremost one among us. (Only) Vyāna is under thy dominion!—[20]

"'The Brāhmana continued,—Unto them assembled together, the Lord of creatures, Brahman, said,—Ye are all foremost and not foremost. Ye are all endued with the attributes of one another.[21] All are foremost in their own spheres, and all possess the attributes of one another!—Thus said unto them, that were assembled together, the Lord of all creatures.[22]—There is one that is unmoving, and one that is moving. In consequence of special attributes, there are five life-winds. My own self is one. That one accumulates into many forms.[23] Becoming friendly unto one another, and gratifying one another, depart in peace. Blessings to ye, do ye uphold one another!—'"[24]

Section XXIV.

"'The Brāhmana said,—In this connection is cited the ancient story of the discourse between Nārada and the Rishi Devamata.[1]

"'—Devamata said,—What verily, comes first into existence, of a creature that takes birth? Is it Prāna, or Apāna, or Samāna, or Vyāna, or Udāna?—[2]

"'—Nārada said,—By whatever the creature is created, that first comes unto him which is other (or separate from him). The life-winds are to be known as existing in pairs, *viz.*, those that move transversely, upwards, and downwards.—[3]

" '—Devamata said,—By whom (among the life-winds) is a creature produced? Who (amongst) them comes first? Do thou tell me what the pairs are of the life-winds, that move transversely, upwards, and downwards.—[4]

" '—Nārada said,—From Sankalpa (wish) arises Pleasure. It also arises from sound. It arises also from taste; it arises too from color.[5] From the semen, united with blood, first flows Prāna. Upon the semen being modified by Prāna, flows Apāna.[6] Pleasure arises from the semen as well. It arises from taste also. This is the form (effect) of Udāna. Pleasure is produced from union.[7] Semen is generated by desire. From desire is produced the menstrual flow. In the union of semen and blood, generated by Samāna and Vyāna,[8] the pair that consists of Prāna and Apāna, enters, moving transversely and upwards. Vyāna and Samāna both form a pair that moves transversely.[9] Agni (fire) is all the deities. Even this is the teaching of the Veda. The knowledge of Agni arises in a Brāhmana, with intelligence.[10] The smoke of that fire is of the form of (the attribute called) Darkness. The attribute that is known by the name of Passion is in its ashes. The quality of goodness arises from that portion of the fire into which the oblation is poured.*[10] They that are conversant with sacrifices know that Samāna and Vyāna are from the attribute of Goodness. Prāna and Apāna are portions of the oblation (of clarified butter). Between them is the Fire.[11] That is the excellent form (or seat) of Udāna, as the Brāhmanas know. Listen as I say which is distinct from the pairs.[12] Day and Night constitute a pair. Between them is the Fire. That is the excellent seat of Udāna as the Brāhmanas know.[13] The existent and the non-existent form a pair. Between them is the Fire. That is the excellent seat of Udāna as the Brāhmanas know.[14] First is Samāna. Then Vyāna. The latter's function is managed through it (*viz.*,

* The reading 'sarvam' in the second line is incorrect, though Nilakantha adopts it. The different portions of the fire are indicated as the different attributes. The smoke is of the form of Darkness (Tamas); the ashes are the attribute of Passion; while the blazing flame, that nto which the oblation is thrown, is the attribute of Goodness.—T.

Samāna). Then, secondly, Samāna once more comes into operation.[15] Only Vyāna exists for tranquillity. Tranquillity is eternal Brahma. This is the excellent seat of Udāna as the Brāhmanas know.*—' "[16]

Section XXV.

" 'The Brāhmana said,—In this connection is recited the ancient story of what the institution is of the Chaturhotra (sacrifice).[1] The ordinances are now being duly declared of that in its entirety. Listen to me, O amiable lady, as I declare this wonderful mystery.[2] The instrument, the action, the agent, and Emancipation,—these, O beautiful lady, are the four sacrificing priests by whom the universe is enveloped.[3] Hear in its entirety the assignment of causes (relating to this topic).[4] The nose, the tongue, the eye, the skin, the ear numbering the fifth, the mind, and the understanding,—these seven should be understood as the causes of (the knowledge of) qualities. Smell, taste, color, sound, touch, numbering the fifth,[5] the objects of the mind, and the objects of the understanding, —these are the seven causes of action. He who smells, he who eats, he who sees, he who speaks, he who hears, numbering the fifth,[6] he who thinks, and he who understands,—these seven should be known as the causes of action. Possessed of qualities, these enjoy their own qualities, agreeable or disagreeable.†[7] As regards the Soul, that is destitute of qualities. These seven are the causes of Emancipation. With them that are learned and possessed of sufficient understanding, the qualities, which are in the position of deities, eat the oblations, each in its proper place, and agreeally to what has been ordained. The person who is destitute of learning, eating diverse kinds of food, becomes seized with the sense of

* I give a close rendering of these Verses, without endeavouring to bring out the sense as explained by the Commentators. The printed texts are not correct. The text adopted by Nilakantha differs from that of Arjuna Misra. The very order of the verses is not uniform in all the texts.—T.

† 'These' refers to action, agent, and instrument. The qualities of which they are possessed are goodness, passion, and darkness.—T.

mineness.*[8-9] Digesting food for himself, he becomes ruined through the sense of mineness. The eating of food that should not be eaten, and the drinking of wine, ruin him.[10] He destroys the food (he takes), and having destroyed that food, he becomes destroyed himself. The man of learning, however, being possessed of puissance, destroys his food for reproducing it.[11] The minutest transgression does not arise in him from the food he takes. Whatever is thought of by the mind, whatever is uttered by speech,[12] whatever is heard by the ear, whatever is seen by the eye, whatever is touched by the (sense of) touch, whatever is smelt by the nose,[13] constitute oblations of clarified butter which should all, after restraining the senses with the mind numbering the sixth, be poured into that fire of high merits which burns within the body, *viz.*, the Soul.†[14] The sacrifice constituted by Yoga is going on as regards myself. The spring whence that sacrifice proceeds is that which yields the fire of knowledge. The upward life-wind Prāna is the Stotra of that sacrifice. The downward life-wind Apāna is its Sastra. The renunciation of everything is the excellent Dakshinā of that sacrifice.[15] Consciousness, Mind, and Understanding, which are all Brahma, are its Hotri, Adhwaryyu, and Udgātri. The Praçāstri, his Cāstra, is truth.‡ Cessation of separate existence (or Emancipation) is the Dakshinā.[16] In this connection, people conversant with Nārāyana recite some Richs. Unto the divine Nārāyana were animals offered in days of yore.$[17] Then are sung some

---

* What is stated in these two Verses is this: it is the Senses that enjoy; and not the Soul. This is well known to those that are learned. On the other hand, those that are not learned, regard this or that to be theirs, when in reality they are different from them. They are their selves, and not their senses, although they take themselves for the latter, ignorantly identifying themselves with things which they are not.—T.

† What is stated here is this: Restraining the senses and the mind, the objects of those senses and the mind should be poured as libations on the sacred fire of the Soul that is within the body.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, truth is the Castra of the Praçāstri.—T.

$ 'Nārāyana' is taken by Nilakantha to stand here for either the Veda or the Soul. The animals offerred up to Nārāyana in days of old were the senses offered up as sacrifices.—T.

Sāmans. On that topic occurs an authority. O timid one, know that the divine Nārāyana is the soul of all !—' "[18]

Section XXVI.

" 'The Brāhmana said,—There is one Ruler. There is no second beside him. He that is Ruler resides in the heart. I shall speak now of him. Impelled by Him, I move as directed, like water along an inclined plane.[1] There is one Preceptor. There is no second beside him. He resides in the heart, and of him I shall now speak. Instructed by that preceptor, all snakes in the world are always endued with feelings of animosity.[2] There is one kinsman. There is no second beside him. He resides in the heart of him I shall now speak. Instructed by him, kinsmen become possessed of kinsmen, and the seven Rishis, O son of Prithā, shine in the firmament.[3] There is one dispeller. There is no second beside him. He resides in the heart. Of him I shall now speak. Having lived with that instructor under the proper mode of living with an instructor, Cakra attained to the sovereignty of all the worlds.*[4] There is one enemy. There is no second beside him. He resides in the heart. Of him I shall now speak. Instructed by that preceptor all snakes in the world are always endued with feelings of animosity.[5] In this connection is cited the ancient story of the instruction of the snakes, the deities, and the Rishis by the Lord of all creatures.[6] The deities and the Rishis, the snakes, and the Asuras, seated around the Lord of all creatures, asked him, saying,—Let that which is highly beneficial for us be declared![7]—Unto them that enquired about what is highly beneficial, the holy one uttered only the word Om, which is Brahma in one syllable. Hearing this, they ran away in various directions.[8] Amongst them that thus ran in all directions from desire of self-instruction, the disposition first arose in snakes of biting.[9] Of the Asuras, the disposition, born of their nature, for ostentations pride, arose. The deities betook themselves to

---

* 'Crotā' here means preceptor or dispeller of doubts. 'Amaratwam' is the status of the immortal head of all.—T.

gifts, and the great Rishis to self-restraint.[10] Having repaired to one teacher, and having been instructed (refined) by one word, the snakes, the deities, the Rishis, and the Dānavas, all betook themselves to diverse different dispositions.[11] It is that one who hears himself when speaking, and apprehends it duly. Once, again, is that heard from him when he speaks. There is no second preceptor.*[12] It is in obedience to his counsels that action afterwards flows. The instructor, the apprehender, the hearer, and the enemy, are placed within the heart.[13] By acting sinfully in the world, it is he that becomes a person of sinful deeds. By acting auspiciously in the world, it is he who becomes a person of auspicious deeds.[14] It is he who becomes a person of unrestrained conduct by becoming addicted to the pleasures of sense, impelled by desire. It is he who becomes a Brahmachārin by always devoting himself to the subjugation of his senses.[15] It is he, again, that casts off vows and actions and takes refuge on Brahma alone. By moving in the world, identifying himself the while with Brahma, he becomes a Brahmachārin.[16] Brahma is his fuel; Brahma is his fire; Brahma is his origin; Brahma is his water; Brahma is his preceptor; he is rapt in Brahma.[17] Brahmacharyya is even so subtle, as understood by the wise. Having understood it, they betook themselves to it, instructed by the Kshetrajna !†—' "[18]

Section XXVII.

" 'The Brāhmana said,—Having crossed that impassible fastness (the world) which has purposes for its gadflies and mosquitoes, grief and joy for its cold and heat, heedlessness for its blinding darkness, cupidity and diseases for its reptiles,[1] wealth for its one danger on the road, and lust and wrath its robbers, I have entered the extensive forest (of Brahma) !—[2]

---

* I think Telang is not correct in his rendering of this verse. What is stated here is plain, *viz.*, that it is He who is the preceptor and the disciple. 'Ayam çrinoti,'—'prochyamānam grihnāti,'—'tat prichchatah ato bhuyas anye çrinanti,' is the grammar of the construction. The conclusion then comes—'gururanyo na vidyate'.—T.

† One who understands the truth.—T.

" 'The wife of the Brāhmana said,—Where is that foremost, O thou of great wisdom? What are its trees? What its rivers? What its mountains and hills? How far is that forest?—[3]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—There exists nothing that is separate from it. There is nothing more delightful than it. There is nothing that is unseparated from it. There is nothing more afflicting than it.[4] There is nothing smaller than that. There is nothing vaster than that. There is nothing minuter than that. There is no happiness that can resemble it.[5] Regenerate persons, entering into it, at once transcend both joy and sorrow. They (then) never stand in fear of any creature, nor does any creature stand in fear of them.[6] In that forest are seven large trees, seven fruits, and seven guests. There are seven hermitages, seven (forms of) Yoga concentration, and seven (forms) of initiation. Even this is a description of that forest.*[7] The trees which stand filling that forest, produce excellent flowers and fruits of five colors.[8] The trees which stand there filling that forest, produce flowers and fruits that are of excellent colors and that are, besides, of two kinds.[9] The trees which stand there filling that forest, produce flowers and fruits that are endued with fragrance and that are, besides, of two colors.[10] The trees which stand there filling that forest, produce flowers and fruits that are possessed of fragrance and that are, besides, of one color.[11] The two trees which stand filling that forest, produce many flowers and fruits that are of unmanifest colors.[12] There is one fire here, possessed of a good mind. That is connected with Brahman. The five senses are the fuel here. The seven forms of Emancipation flowing from them are the seven forms of Initiation. The

---

* The seven large trees are the five senses, the mind, and the under standing. The fruits are the pleasures and pains derived from or through them. The guests are the powers of each sense, for it is they that recieve those pleasures and pains. The hermitages are those very trees under which the guests take shelter. The seven forms of Yoga are the extinctions of the seven senses. The seven forms of initiation are the repudiation, one after another, of the actions of the seven senses.—T.

qualities are the fruits, and the guests eat those fruits.[13] There, in diverse places, the great Rishis accept hospitality. When they, having been worshipped, become annihilated, then another forest shines forth.[14] In that forest, Intelligence is the tree ; Emancipation is the fruit ; Tranquillity is the shade of which it is possessed. It has knowledge for its resting house, contentment for its water, and the Kshetrajna for its sun.[15] Its end cannot be ascertained upwards, downwards, or horizontally.[16] Seven females always dwell there, with faces downwards, possessed of effulgence, and endued with the cause of generation. They take up all the different tastes from all creatures, even as insconstancy sucks up truth.[17] In that itself dwell, and from that emerge, the seven Rishis who are crowned with ascetic success, with those seven having Vaçishtha for their foremost.[18] Glory, effulgence, greatness, enlightenment, victory, perfection, and energy,—these seven always follow this same like rays following the sun.[19] Hills and mountains also exist there, collected together ; and rivers and streams bearing waters in their course,—waters that are born of Brahma.[20] And there happens a confluence also of streams in the secluded spot for sacrifice. Thence those that are contented with their own souls proceed to the Grandsire.[21] They whose wishes have been reduced, whose wishes have been directed to excellent vows, and whose sins have been burnt off by penances, merging themselves in their souls, succeed in attaining to Brahma.[22] Tranquillity is praised by those who are conversant with the forest of knowledge. Keeping that forest in view, they take birth so as not to lose courage.[23] Even such is that sacred forest that is understood by Brāhmanas, and understanding it, they live (in accordance with the ordinance), directed by the Kshetrajna.—' "[24]

Section XXVIII.

" 'The Brāhmana said,—I do not smell scents. I do not perceive tastes. I do not see colors. I do not touch. I do not likewise hear the diverse sounds (that arise). Nor do I entertain purposes of any kind.[1] It is Nature that desires

such objects as are liked; it is Nature that hates such objects as are disliked. Desire and aversion spring from Nature, after the manner of the upward and the downward life-winds when souls have entered animate bodies.[2] Separated from them are others; in them are eternal dispositions; (these as also) the soul of all creatures, Yogins would behold in the body. Dwelling in that, I am never attached to anything throguh desire and wrath, and decrepitude and death.[3] Not having any desire for any object of desire, and not having any aversion for any evil, there is no taint on my natures, as there is no taint of a drop of water on (the leaves of) the lotus.[4] Of this constant (principle) which looks upon diverse natures, they are inconstant possessions.* Though actions are performed, yet the assemblage of enjoyments does not attach itself to them, even as the assemblage of rays of the sun does not attach to the sky. In this connection is recited an ancient story of a discourse between an Adhwaryu and a Yati. Do thou hear it, O glorious lady![5-6] Beholding an animal sprinkled with water at a sacrificial ceremony, a Yati said unto the Adhwaryu seated there these words in censure,—This is destruction of life![7]—Unto him the Adhwaryu said in reply,—This goat will not be destroyed. The animal (sacrificed) meets with great good, if the Vedic declaration on this subject be true.[8] That part of this animal which is of earth will go to earth. That part of this one which is born of water, will enter into water.[9] His eye will enter the sun; his ear will enter the different points of the horizon; his life-winds will enter the sky. I who adhere to the scriptures incur no fault (by assisting at the killing of this animal).—[10]

" '—The Yati said,—If thou beholdest such good to the goat in this dissociation with (his) life-winds, then this sacrifice is for the goat. What need hast thou for it?[11] Let the brother, father, mother, and friend (of this goat) give thee their approval in this. Taking him (to them) do thou consult them. This goat is especially dependent.[12] It behooveth thee to see them who can give their consent in this. After hearing

* The correct reading is 'bhavantyanityāh' and 'vahuswabhāvān'.—T.

their consent, the matter will become fit for consideration.[13] The life-winds of this goat have been made to return to their respective sources. Only the inanimate body remains behind. This is what I think.[14] Of those who wish to enjoy felicity by means of the inanimate body (of an animal) which is comparable with fuel, the fuel (of sacrifice) is after all the animal himself.[15] Abstention from cruelty is the foremost of all duties. Even this is the teaching of the elders. We know that that action should be done which is not fraught with cruelty.[16] Even this is the proposition, *viz.*,—No slaughter (of living creatures.—If I say anything further, (it will then appear that) diverse kinds of faulty actions are capable of being done by thee.[17] Always abstaining from cruelty to all creatures is what meets with our approbation. We establish this from what is directly perceptible. We do not rely on what is beyond direct perception.—[18]

" '—The Adhwaryu said,—Thou enjoyest the properties of smell which belong to the earth. Thou drinkest the tastes which appertain to water. Thou seest colors which belong to lighted bodies. Thou touchest the properties which have their origin in wind,[19] Thou hearest the sounds which have their origin in space (or ether). Thou thinkest thoughts with the mind. All these entities, thou art of opinion, have life.[20] Thou dost not then abstain from taking life. Really, thou art engaged in slaughter There can be no movement without slaughter. Or, what dost thou think, O regenerate one !—[21]

" '—The Yati said,—The Indestructible and the Destructible constitute the double manifestation of the soul. Of these the Indestructible is existent. The Destructible is said to be exceedingly non-existent.*[22] The life-wind, the tongue, the mind, the quality of goodness, along with the quality of passion, are all existent. Of him that is freed from these existent objects, that transcends all pairs of opposites, that does not cherish any expectation,[23] that is alike to all creatures, that is liberated from the idea of *meum*, that has subjugated his self,

* 'Swabhāva' is explained by Nilakantha as 'sutarām abhāva'.—T.

and that is released from all his surroundings, no fear exists from any source !*—[24]

"'—The Adhwaryu said,—O foremost of intelligent men, one should reside with those that are good. Hearing thy opinion my understanding shines with light.[25] O illustrious one, I come to thee, believing thee to be a god ; and I say I have no fault, O regenerate one, by performing these rites with the aid of Mantras !†—[26]

"'The Brāhmana continued,—With this conclusion, the Yati remained silent after this. The Adhwaryu also proceeded with the great sacrifice, freed from delusion.[27] The Brāhmanas understand Emancipation, which is exceedingly subtle, to be of this kind ; and having understood it, they live accordingly, directed by the Kshetrajna, that beholder of all topics.—'"[28]

SECTION XXIX.

"'The Brāhmana said,—In this connection is cited the ancient story, O lady, of the discourse between Kārttaviryya and the Ocean.[1] There was a king of the name of Kārttaviryya-Arjuna who was endued with a thousand arms. He conquered, with his bow, the Earth extending to the shores of the ocean.[2] It has been heard by us that, once on a time, as he was walking on the shores of the sea, proud of his might, he showered hundreds of shafts on that vast receptacle of waters.[3] The Ocean, bowing down unto him, said, with joined

---

* The sense seems to be this ; the life-winds indicate the operations of the several organs of action : the tongue, which stands here for all the organs of perception, of the sensual perceptions ; the mind, of all the internal operations ; the quality of goodness, of all pleasure ; and the quality of passion, of all kinds of pain. These, therefore, include the whole external and the internal worlds. He that is free from these, transcends sin, for sin is destroyed by freedom from these, knowledge being the means of attaining to that freedom.—T.

† 'I have no fault &c.'—The sense seems to be that by doing these rites with the aid of Mantras I have done that which has been approved from ages past by those who have always been regarded wise. My eyes, however, have now been opened by thee. I should not be held responsible for what I did while I was ignorant,—T.

hands,—Do not, O hero, shoot thy shafts, (at me)! Say, what shall I do to thee![4] With these mighty arrows shot by thee, those creatures which have taken shelter in me are being killed, O tiger among kings! Do thou, O lord, grant them security!—[5]

"'—Arjuna said,—If any wielder of the bow exists that is equal to me in battle, and that would stand against me in the field, do thou name him to me!—[6]

"'—The Ocean said,—If thou hast heard, O king, of the great Rishi Jamadagni, his son is competent to duly receive thee as a guest.[7]—Then that king proceeded, filled with great wrath. Arrived at that retreat, he found Rāma himself.[8] With his kinsmen he began to do many acts that were hostile to Rāma, and caused much trouble to that high-souled hero.[9] Then the energy, which was immeasurable, of Rāma blazed forth, burning the troops of the foe, O lotus-eyed one![10] Taking up his battle-axe, Rāma suddenly put forth his power, and hacked that thousand-armed hero, like a tree of many branches.[11] Beholding him slain and prostrated on the earth, all his kinsmen, uniting together, and taking up their darts, rushed at Rāma, who was then seated, from all sides.[12] Rāma also, taking up his bow and quickly ascending on his car, shot showers of arrows and chastised the army of the king.[13] Then, some of the Kshatriyas, afflicted with the terror of Jamadagni's son, entered mountain-fastnesses, like deer afflicted by the lion.[14] Of them that were unable, through fear of Rāma, to discharge the duties ordained for their order, the progeny became Vrishalas owing to their inability to find Brāhmanas.*[15] In this way the Dravidas and Ābhiras and Pundras, together with the Cavaras, became Vrishalas through those men who had Kshatriya duties assigned to them (in consequence of their birth), falling away (from those duties).[16] Then the Kshatriyas that were begotten by the Brāhmanas upon Kshatriyā

* Kshatriyas always require Brāhmanas for assisting them in their acts. These particular Kshatriyas, through fear of Rāma, fled to the forests and mountains. They could not, accordingly, find Brāhmanas for assisting them. Their children, therefore, fell away from the status of Kshatriyas and became Vrishalas or Cudras.—T.

women that had lost their heroic children, were repeatedly destroyed by Jamadagni's son.[17] The slaughter proceeded one and twenty times. At its conclusion, a bodiless voice, sweet and proceeding from heaven, and which was heard by all people, spoke to Rāma,[18]—O Rāma, O Rāma, desist! What merit dost thou see, O son, in thus destroying repeatedly these inferior Kshatriyas?*[19]—In this way, O blessed dame, his grandsires, headed by Richika, addressed that high-souled one, saying,—Do thou desist![20]—Rāma, however, unable to forgive the slaughter of his sire, replied unto those Rishis, saying,—It behooves you not to forbid me![21]—The Pitris then said,—O foremost of all victorious men, it behooves thee not to slay these inferior Kshatriyas! It is not proper that thyself, being a Brāhmana, should slay these kings!—' "[22]

Section XXX.

" '—The Pitris said,—In this connection is cited this old history. Having heard it, thou shouldst act according to it, O foremost of all regenerate persons![1] There was a royal sage of the name of Alarka endued with the austerest of penances. He was conversant with all duties, truthful in speech, of high soul, and exceedingly firm in his vows.[2] Having, with his bow, conquered the whole Earth extending to the seas, and thereby achieved an exceedingly difficult feat, he set his mind on that which is subtle.[3] While sitting at the root of a tree, his thoughts, O thou of great intelligence, abandoning all those great feats, turned towards that which is subtle![4]

" '—Alarka said,—My mind has become strong. Having conquered the mind, one's conquest becomes permanent. Though surrounded by foes, I shall (henceforth) shoot my arrows at other objects.[5] Since in consequence of its unsteadiness, it sets all mortals to accomplish acts, I shall shoot very sharp-pointed shafts at the mind![6]

---

* 'Kshatriyas-bandhu' always implies low or inferior Kshatriyas, as 'Brahma-bandhu' implies low or inferior Brāhamanas. The expression, very probably, is similar to Brāhman-sangāt' in current Bengali. It does not, surely, mean 'kinsmen of Kshatriyas'.—T.

" '—The mind said,—These arrows, O Alarka, will never pierce me through. They will pierce only thy own vital parts. Thy vital parts being pierced, thou shalt die ![7] Do thou look out for other arrows with which to destroy me !—Hearing these words and reflecting upon them, he said as follows.[8]

" '—Alarka said,—Smelling very many perfumes, (the nose) hankers after them only. Hence I shall shoot whetted arrows at the nose !—[9]

" '—The nose said,—These arrows will never cross through me, O Alarka ! They will pierce only thy own vital parts, and thy vital parts being pierced, thou shalt die.[10] Do thou look for other arrows with which to destroy me !—Hearing these words and reflecting upon them, he said as follows.[11]

" '—Alarka said,—This one (*viz.*, the tongue), enjoying savoury tastes, hankers after them only. Hence I shall shoot whetted shafts at the tongue !—[12]

" '—The tongue said,—These arrows, O Alarka, will not cross through me. They will only pierce thy own vital parts and thy vital parts being pierced, thou shalt die.[13] Do thou look for other arrows with which to destroy me !—Hearing these words and reflecting upon them, he said as follows.[14]

" '—Alarka said,—The skin, touching diverse objects of touch, hankers after them only. Hence, I shall tear off the skin with diverse arrows equipt with the feathers of the Kanka !—[15]

" '—The skin said,—These arrows will not, O Alarka, cross through me. They will pierce thy own vital parts only, and thy vital parts being pierced, thou shalt die.[16] Do thou look for other arrows with which to destroy me !—Hearing these words and reflecting on them, he said as follows.[17]

" '—Alarka said,—Hearing diverse sounds, (the ear) hankers after them only. Hence, I shall shoot whetted shafts at the ear.—[18]

" '—The ear said,—These arrows will not, O Alarka, cross through me. They will pierce thy own vital parts only, and thy vital parts being pierced, thou shalt die.[19] Do thou then look for other arrows with which to destroy me !—Hearing these words and reflecting upon them, he said as follows.[20]

"'—Alarka said,—Seeing many colors, the eye hankers after them only. Hence, I shall destroy the eye with sharp-pointed arrows !—[21]

"'—The eye said,—These arrows will not, O Alarka, cross through me at all. They will pierce thy own vital parts only, and thy vital parts being pierced, thou shalt die.[22] Do thou then look for other arrows with which to destroy me !—Hearing these words and reflecting upon them, he said as follows.[23]

"'—Alarka said,—This (*viz.*, the understanding) forms many determinations with the aid of ratiocination. Hence, I shall shoot whetted arrows at the understanding !—[24]

"'—The understanding said,—These arrows will not, O Alarka, cross through me at all. They will pierce thy vital parts only, and thy vital parts being pierced, thou shalt die. Do thou then look for other arrows with which to destroy me !—[25]

"'The Brāhmana continued,—Then Alarka, employing himself, even there, on penances difficult to perform and exceedingly austere, failed to obtain, by the high power (of his penances) arrows for casting at these seven.[26] Endued with puissance, he then, with mind well concentrated, began to reflect. Then, O best of regenerate ones, Alarka, that foremost of intelligent men, having reflected for a long time, failed to obtain anything better than Yoga. Setting his mind on one object, he remained perfectly still, engaged in Yoga.*[27-28] Endued with energy, he quickly slew all the senses with one arrow, having entered by Yoga into his soul and thereby attained to the highest success.[29] Filled with wonder, that royal sage then sang this verse: Alas, it is a pity that we should have accomplished all acts that are external ![30] Alas, that we should have, endued with the thirst

---

* The vocative, 'O foremost of regenerate ones' applies to Jamadagani's son. The narration is that of the Pitris. All the copies, however, represent this as the Brāhmana's speech to his wife. Indeed, the Brāhmana is only reciting to his wife the speech of the Pitris to Rāma. The Yoga here spoken of is, as Nilakantha explains, the Rāja-Yoga. Previously, Alarka had been bent upon Hatha-Yoga which frequently ends in the destruction of the person practising it.—T.

for enjoyment, courted (the pleasures of) sovereignty before now! I have learnt this afterwards! There is no happiness that is higher than Yoga![31]—Do thou know this, O Rāma! Cease to slay the Kshatriyas! Do thou practise the austerest of penances! Thou wilt then attain to what is good.[32]—Thus addressed by his grandsires, Jamadagni's son practised the austerest penances, and having practised them, that highly blessed one attained to that success which is difficult to reach.—' "[33]

Section XXXI.

" 'The Brāhmana said,—There are three foes in the world. They are said to be ninefold, agreeably to their qualities. Exultation, satisfaction, and joy,—these three qualities appertain to Goodness.*[1] Cupidity, wrath, and hatred, these three qualities are said to appertain to Passion. Lassitude, procrastination, and delusion, these three qualities appertain to Darkness.[2] Cutting these with showers of arrows, the man of intelligence, free from procrastination, possessed of a tranquil soul, and with his senses under subjection, ventures to vanquish others.†[3] In this connection, persons conversant with (the occurrences of) ancient cycles recite some verses which were sung in days of old by king Amvarisha who had acquired a tranquil soul.[4] When diverse kinds of faults were in the ascendant and when the righteous were afflicted, Amvarisha of great fame put forth his strength for assuming sovereignty.‡[5] Subduing his own faults and worshipping the righteous, he attained to great success and sang these verses.[6]

---

* 'Praharsha,' rendered 'exultation,' is explained by Nilakantha as the joy that is felt at the certainty of attaining what is desired. 'Priti' is that satisfaction which is felt when the object desired is attained. 'Ananda' is what arises while enjoying the attained object.—T.

† The sense seems to be this. Having first conquered the internal foes mentioned, the man of intelligence, bent on effecting his deliverance, should then seek to vanquish all external foes standing in his way.—T.

‡ Nilakantha explains that 'dosha' here refers to attachment, cupidity and the rest; while 'Sādhu' implies not men but the virtues of tranquillity and the rest.—T.

—I have subdued many faults. I have killed all foes. But there is one, the greatest, vice which deserves to be destroyed but which has not been destroyed by me![7] Urged by that fault, this Jiva fails to attain to freedom from desire. Afflicted by desire, one runs into ditches without knowing it.[8] Urged by that fault, one indulges in acts that are forbidden. Do thou cut off, cut off, that cupidity with sharp-edged swords![9] From cupidity arises desire. From desire flows anxiety. The man who yields to desire acquires many qualities that appertain to Passion.[10] When these have been acquired, he gets many qualities that appertain to Darkness.[11] In consequence of those qualities, he repeatedly takes birth, with the bonds of body united, and is impelled to action. Upon the expiration of life, with body becoming dismembered and scattered, he once meets with death which is due to birth itself.*[12] Hence, duly understanding this, and subduing cupidity by intelligence, one should desire for sovereignty in one's soul. This is (true) sovereignty. There is no other sovereignty here. The soul, properly understood, is the king.[13] Even these were the verses sung by king Ambarisha of great celebrity, on the subject of sovereignty which he kept before him,—that king who had cut off the one foremost fault, *viz.*, cupidity.' "[14]

Section XXXII.

" 'The Brāhmana said,—In this connection is cited the old narrative, O lady, of the discourse between a Brāhmana and (king) Janaka.[1] King Janaka (on a certain occasion), desirous of punishing him, said unto a Brāhmana who had become guilty of some offence,—Thou shalt not dwell within my dominions![2]—Thus addressed, the Brāhmana replied unto

---

* I think Telang renders this verse wrongly. 'Samhatadehabandhanah' does not mean 'with bodily frame destroyed' but 'with bodily frame united.' If 'samhata' be taken as destroyed, the compound 'bhinna-vikirna-dehah' in the second line would be a useless repetition. The meaning is that with bodily frame or the bonds of body united, he takes birth. When he dies, that frame becomes dismembered and scattered.—T.

that best of kings, saying,—Tell me, O king, what the limits are of the territories subject to thee![3] I desire, O lord, to dwell within the dominions of another king. Verily, I wish to obey thy behest, O lord of Earth, agreeably to the scriptures![4]—Thus addressed by that celebrated Brāhmana, the king, hearing repeated and hot sighs, said not a word in reply.[5] Like the planet (Rāhu) overwhelming the Sun, a cloudedness of understanding suddenly overwhelmed that king of immeasurable energy as he sat plunged in thought.[6] When that cloudedness of understanding passed away and the king became comforted, he spoke after a short while these words unto that Brāhmana.[7]

"'—Janaka said,—Although a (large) inhabited tract is subject to me within this ancestral kingdom of mine, yet I fail to find my dominion, searching through the whole Earth.[8] When I failed to find it on the Earth, I then searched Mithilā (for it). When I failed to find it in Mithilā, I then searched for it among my own children.[9] When I failed to find it even there, a cloudedness of understanding came over me. After that cloudedness of understanding passed away, intelligence came back to me.[10] Then I thought that I have no dominion, or that everything is my dominion. Even this body is not mine, or the whole Earth is mine.[11] At the same time, O best of regenerate persons, I think that that is as much mine as it is of others. Do thou, therefore, dwell (here) as long as thy choice leads thee, and do thou enjoy as long as thou pleasest!—[12]

"'—The Brāhmana said,—When there is a large inhabited tract in thy ancestral kingdom, tell me, depending upon what understanding, has the idea of *meum* been got rid of by thee![13] What also is that understanding depending upon which thou hast come to the conclusion that everything constitutes thy dominion? What, indeed, is the notion through which thou hast no dominion, or everything is thy dominion?[14]

"'—Janaka said,—All conditions here, in all affairs, have been understood by me to be terminable. Hence, I could not find that which should be called mine.*[15] (Considering)

* The conditions referred to are affluence and indigence, as explained by Nilakantha.—T.

whose is this, I thought of the Vedic text about anybody's property. I could not, therefore, find, by my understanding, what should be (called) mine.*[16] Depending upon this notion, I got rid of idea of mineness. Hear now what that notion is depending upon which I came to the conclusion that I have dominion everywhere.[17] I do not desire for my own self those smells that are even in my nose. Therefore, the earth, subjugated by me, is always subject to me.†[18] I do not desire for my own self those tastes that exist in contact with even my tongue. Therefore, water, subjugated by me, is always subject to me.[19] I do not desire for my own self the, color or light that appertains to my eye. Therefore, light subjugated by me, is always subject to me.[20] I do not desire for my own self those sensations of touch which are in contact with even my skin. Therefore, the wind, subjugated by me, is always subject to me.[21] I do not desire for my own self those sounds which are in contact with even my ear. Therefore, sounds, subjugated by me, are always subject to me.[22] I do not desire for my own self the mind that is always in my mind. Therefore, the mind, subjugated by me, is subject to me.[23] All these acts of mine are for the sake of the deities, the Pitris, the Bhutas, together with guests.‡[24]—The Brāhmana then, smiling, once more said unto Janaka,—Know that I am Dharma, who come here today for examinig thee![25] Thou art verily the one person for setting this wheel in motion,—this wheel that has the quality of Goodness for its

---

* This is, rather, obscure. Nilakantha observes that the Vedic text referred to is 'Do not covet anybody's property.' What Janaka says seems to be this: Thinking of this prohibition about coveting other people's property, I thought how could it be ascertained what belongs to others.—T.

† The sense seems to be this: the property of smell attaches to earth. I do not desire smell for my own enjoyment. If it is perceived, it is perceived by the organ of smell. The earth, therefore, is subject to me, not I to the earth. I have transcended my sensations, and, therefore, the objects to which they inhere. The whole world represents only the objects of the sensations. The latter being mastered, the whole world has been mastered by me.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, I live and act for these and not my own self.—T.

circumference, Brahma for its nave, and the understanding for its spokes, and which never turns back !*—' "[26]

SECTION XXXIII.

" 'The Brāhmana said,—I do not, O timid one, move in this world in that manner which thou, according to thy own understanding, censurest. I am a Brāhmana possessed of Vedic knowledge. I am emancipated. I am a forest recluse. I am an observer of the duties of a house-holder. I observe vows.[1] I am not what thou seest me in good and bad acts. By me is pervaded everything that exists in this universe.[2] Whatever creatures exist in the world, mobile or immobile, know that I am the destroyer of them all even as fire is (the destroyer) of all kinds of wood.[3] Sovereignty over the whole Earth or over Heaven (on the one hand), or this knowledge (of my identity with the universe). This knowledge is my wealth.†[4] This is the one path for Brāhmanas, by which they who understand it proceed to house-holds, or abodes in the forest, or residence with preceptors, or among mendicants.‡[5] With numerous unconfused symbols, only one knowledge is worshipped. Those who, whatever the symbols and modes of life to which they adhere, have acquired an understanding having tranquillity for its essence, attain to that one entity even as numerous rivers all meeting the Ocean.$[6] This path

---

* Nilakantha's reading is erroneous. 'Brahma-lābhasya' should be 'Brahmanābhasya.' So also 'durvārasya' is incorrect. 'Nemi' may also mean the line or track that is made by a wheel as it moves. If taken in this sense, it would mean 'that is confined to, or that cannot deviate from, the track constituted by goodness. The nave, Brahma, is, of course, the Vedas.—T.

† The sense seems to be this. The sovereignty of the whole Earth or of Heaven, and this knowledge of my identity with the universe. Of these two alternatives, I would freely choose the latter. Hence, he says,—'This knowledge is my wealth '—T.

‡ These are different modes of life.—T.

$ The sense is this: the knowledge to be acquired is that all is one. Diverse ways there are for acquiring it. Those, again, that have attained to tranquillity have acquired it.—T.

is traversable with the aid of the understanding and not of the body. Actions have both beginning and end, and the body has actions for its bonds.*[7] Hence, O blessed lady, thou needst have no apprehension in respect of the world hereafter With thy heart intent upon the real entity, it is my soul into which thou wilt come !—' "[8]

SECTION XXXIV.

" 'The Brāhmana's wife said,—This is incapable of being. understood by a person of little intelligence as also by one whose soul has not been cleansed. My intelligence is very little, and contracted, and confused.[1] Do thou tell me the means by which the knowledge (of which thou speakest) may be acquired. I wish to learn from thee the source from which this knowledge flows.—[2]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—Know that intelligence devoted to Brahma is the lower Arani ; the preceptor is the upper Arani ; penances and conversance with the scriptures are to cause the attrition. From this is produced the fire of knowledge.—[3]

" 'The Brāhmana's wife said,—As regards this symbol of Brahma, which is designated Kshetrajna, where, indeed, occurs a description of it by which it is capable of being seized ?—[4]

" 'The Brāhmana said,—He is without symbols, and without qualities. Nothing exists that may be regarded as his cause. I shall, however, tell thee the means by which he can be seized or not.[5] A good means may be found; which is perceived as (flowers are perceived) by bees. That means consists of an understanding cleansed by action. Those whose understandings have not been so cleansed, regard that entity, through their own ignorance, as invested with the properties of knowledge and others.†[6] It is not laid down that this

---

* Actions are perishable and can lead to no lasting result. It is by the understanding that that knowledge, leading to what is permanent, is to be attained.—T.

† I expand this Verse a little for making it intelligible. A literal version would run as follows :—'Good means may be seen, perceived as by bees. Action (-cleansed) understanding ; through folly it is invested

should be done, or that this should not be done, in the rules for achieving Emancipation,—those, that is, in which a knowledge of the soul arises only in him who sees and hears.*[7] One should comprehend as many parts, unmanifest and manifest, by hundreds and thousands, as one is capable of comprehending here.[8] Indeed,. one should comprehend diverse objects of diverse import, and all objects of direct perception. Then will come, from practice (of contemplation and self-restraint, &c.), that above which nothing exists.†—'[9]

"The holy one continued,—'Then the mind of that Brāhmana's wife, upon the destruction of the Kshetrajna, became that which is beyond Kshetrajna, in consequence of the knowledge of Kshetra.'‡[10]

"Arjuna said,—'Where, indeed, is that Brāhmana's wife, O Krishna, and where is that foremost of Brāhmanas, by both of whom was such success attained. Do thou‡ tell me about them, O thou of unfading glory!'[11]

---

with the symbols of knowledge.' 'Karmabudhih' never means 'action and knowledge' as rendered by Telang. 'Abudhitwāt' means 'through ignorance.' This ignorance is of those persons whose understandings have not been cleansed by action.—T.

* What is stated here is this. In the matter of achieving Emancipation, no ordinances have been laid down, positive or negative, like those in respect of other things. If one wishes to attain to Heaven, he should do this and abstain from that other. For achieving Emancipation, however, only seeing and hearing are prescribed. Seeing implies contemplation, and hearing, the receiving of instructions from the preceptor. Nilakantha explains hearing as 'Vedāntādiçravanam' (*vide* his comment on the word 'çrutam' in Verse 3 above).—T.

† The speaker wishes to inculcate that one should first contemplate an object of direct perception, such as earth, &c.; then on such 'unpercieved' objects as operations of the mind. Such contemplation will gradually lead to that which is Supreme. The 'abhyāsa' or practice referred to in the second line is the practice of 'çama,' 'dama,' &c. I do not think that Telang's version of 8 and 9 brings out the meaning clearly.—T.

‡ The sense is that when her individual soul became merged into the Supreme soul, she became identified with Brahma. This was, of course, due to the knowledge of Kshetra as something separate from Kshetrajna.—T.

"The blessed and holy one said,—'Know that my mind is the Brāhmana, and that my understanding is the Brāhmana's wife. He who has been spoken of as Kshetrajna is I myself, O Dhananjaya !' "[12]

Section XXXV.

"Arjuna said,—'It behooveth thee to expound Brahma to me,—that which is the highest object of knowledge. Through thy favour, my mind is delighted with these subtle disquisitions.'[1]

"Vāsudeva said,—'In this connection is recited the old history of the discourse between a preceptor and his disciple on the subject of Brahma.[2] Once on a time, O scorcher of foes, an intelligent disciple questioned a certain Brāhmana of rigid vows who was preceptor, as he was seated (at his ease), saying,—What, indeed, is the highest good ?[3] Desirous of attaining to that which constitutes the highest good, I throw myself at thy feet, O holy one ! O learned Brāhmana, I solicit thee, bending my head, to explain to me what I ask ![4] —Unto that disciple, O son of Prithā, who said so, the preceptor said,—O regenerate one, I shall explain to thee everything about which thou mayst have any doubts ![5]—Thus addressed, O foremost one of Kuru's race, by his preceptor, that disciple who was exceedingly devoted to his preceptor, spoke as follows, with joined hands. Do thou hear what he said, O thou of great intelligence !'[6]

" 'The Disciple said,—Whence am I ? Whence art thou ? Explain that which is the highest truth. From what source have sprung all creatures mobile and immobile ?[7] By what do creatures live ? What is the limit of their life ? What is truth ? What is penance, O learned Brāhmana ? What are called attributes by the good ?[8] What paths are to be called auspicious ? What is happiness ? What is sin ? O holy one, O thou of excellent vows, it behooves thee to answer these questions of mine, O learned Rishi, correctly, truly, and accurately ! Who else is there in this world than thee that is capable of answering these questions ?[9-10] Do thou answer

them, O foremost of all persons conversant with duties! My curiosity is great. Thou art celebrated in all the worlds as one well skilled in the duties relating to Emancipation.[11] There is none else than thou that is competent to remove all kinds of doubts. Afraid of worldly life, we have become desirous of achieving Emancipation !—'[12]

"Vāsudeva said,—'Unto that disciple who had humbly sought his instruction and put the questions duly, who was devoted to his preceptor and possessed of tranquillity, and who always behaved in a manner that was agreeable (to his instructor), who lived so constantly by the side of his instructor as to have almost become his shadow, who was self-restrained, and who had the life of a Yati and a Brahmachārin, O son of Prithā, that preceptor possessed of intelligence and observant of vows, duly explained all the questions, O foremost one of Kuru's race, O chastiser of all foes !'[13-14]

" 'The preceptor said,—All this was declared (in days of old) by Brahman himself (the Grandsire of all the worlds). Applauded and practised by the foremost of Rishis, and depending on a knowledge of the Vedas, it involves a consideration of what constitutes the real entity.[15] We regard knowledge to be the highest object, and renunciation as the best penance. He who, with certainty, knows the true object of knowledge which is incapable of being modified by circumstances, *viz.*, the soul abiding in all creatures, succeeds in going whithersoever he wishes and comes to be regarded as the highest. That learned man who beholds the residence of all things in one place and their severance as well,[16-17] and who sees unity in diversity, succeeds in freeing himself from misery. He who does not covet anything and does not cherish the idea of mineness with regard to anything,[18] comes to be regarded, although residing in this world, as identifiable with Brahma. He who is conversant with the truth about the qualities of Pradhāna (or Nature), acquainted with the creation of all existent objects,[19] divested of the idea of mineness, and without pride, succeeds, without doubt, in emancipating himself. Understanding properly that great tree which has the unmanifest for its seed-sprout, and the

understanding for its trunk, and high conciousness of self for its branches, and the senses for the cells whence its twigs issue, and the (five) great elements for its flower-buds, and the gross elements for its smaller boughs, which is always endued with leaves, which always puts forth flowers, and upon which all existent objects depend, whose seed is Brahma, and which is eternal,—and cutting all topics with the sharp sword of knowledge, one attains to immortality and casts off birth and death.[20-23] The conclusions with regard to the past, present, and future, &c., and religion, pleasure, and wealth, which are all well known to conclaves of Siddhas, which appertain to remote cycles, and which are, indeed, eternal,[24] I shall declare to thee, O thou of great wisdom! These constitute what is called Good. Men of wisdom, understanding them in this world, attain to success.[25] In days of old, the Rishis Vrihaspati and Bharadwāja, and Gautama and Bhārgava, and Vaçishtha and Kaçyapa, and Viçwāmitra and Atri, assembled together for the purpose of asking one another. They thus assembled together after having travelled over all paths and after they had got tired with the acts each of them had done.[26-27] Those regenerate persons, placing the sage son of Angiras at their head, proceeded to the region of the Grandsire. There they beheld Brahman perfectly cleansed of all sin.[28] Bowing their heads unto that high-souled one who was seated at their ease, the great Rishis, endued with humility, asked him this grave question regarding the highest good.[29]—How should a good man act? How would one be released from sin? What paths are auspicious for us? What is truth, and what is sin?[30] By what action are the two paths, northern and southern, obtained? What is destruction? What, Emancipation? What is birth and what death of all existent objects?[31]—I shall tell thee, O disciple, what the Grandsire, thus addressed, said unto them, conformably to the scriptures. Do thou listen!—[32]

"'—Brahman said,—It is from Truth that all creatures, mobile and immobile, have been born. They live by penance (or action). Understand this, O ye of excellent vows! In consequence of their own actions they live, transcending their

own origin.*[33] For Truth, when united with qualities, becomes always possessed of five indications. Brahman is Truth. Penance is truth. Prajāpati is truth.[34] It is from Truth that all creatures have sprung. Truth is the universe of being. It is for this that Brāhmanas who are always devoted to Yoga, who have transcended wrath and sorrow, and who always regard Religion as the causeway (along which every one must pass for avoiding the morass below), take refuge in Truth. I shall now speak of those Brāhmanas who are restrained by one another and possessed of knowledge, of the orders, and of those who belong to the four modes of life.[35-37] The wise say that Religion or duty is one, (though) having four quarters. Ye regenerate ones, I shall speak to ye now of that path which is auspicious and productive of good.[38] That path has constantly been trod over by men possessed of wisdom in order to achieve an identity with Brahma. I shall speak now of that path which is the highest and which is exceedingly difficult of being understood.[39] Do you understand, in all its details, ye highly blessed ones, what is the highest seat. The first step has been said to be the mode of life that appertains to Brahmachārins.[40] The second step is domesticity. After this is the residence in the woods. After that it should be known is the highest step, *viz.*, that relating to Adhyātma.†[41] Light, ether (or space), sun, wind, Indra, and Prajāpati,—one sees these as long as one does not attain to Adhyātma.[42] I shall declare the means (by which that Adhyātma may be attained.) Do ye first understand them. The forest mode of life that is followed by ascetics residing in the woods and subsisting upon fruits and roots and air is laid down for the three regenerate classes. The domestic mode of life is ordained for all the orders.[43-44] They that are possessed of wisdom say that Reli-

---

* Their origin is Brahma or Truth. They live, dissociated from their origin, in consequence of their acts. When their acts cease, they return to and become merged in Brahma.—T.

† *I. e.*, that course of life which has for its object the acquisition of knowledge relating to the soul. This, of course, includes the knowledge that is needed for achieving identification with the Supreme Soul or Brahma.—T.

gion or duty has Faith for its (chief) indication. Thus have I declared to you the paths leading to the deities. They are adopted by those that are good and wise by their acts. Those paths are the causeways of piety.[45] That person of rigid vows who adopts any one of these modes separately, always succeeds in time to understand the production and destruction of all creatures.[46] I shall now declare, accurately and with reasons, the elements which reside in parts in all objects.[47] The great soul, the unmanifest, egoism (consciousness of identity), the ten and one organs (of knowledge and action), the five great elements,[48] the specific characteristics of the five elements,—these constitute the eternal creation. The number of elements has been said to be four and twenty, and one (more).[49] That person of wisdom who understands the production and destruction of all these elements, that man among all creatures, never meets with delusion.[50] He who understands the elements accurately, all the qualities, all the deities, succeeds in cleansing himself of all sin. Freed from all bonds, such a man succeeds in enjoying all regions of spotless purity.—*' "[51]

Section XXXVI.

" '—Brahman said,—That which is unmanifest, which is indistinct, all-pervading, everlasting, immutable, should be known to become the city (or mansion) of nine portals, possessed of three qualities, and consisting of five ingredients.[1] Encompassed by eleven including Mind which distinguishes (objects), and having Understanding for the ruler, this is an aggregate of eleven.†[2] The three ducts that are in it support it constantly. These are the three Nādis. They run continually, and have the three qualities for their essence.[3] Darkness, Passion, and Goodness, these are called the (three)

* The specific characteristics of the five elements are, as frequently referrd before, smell attaching to earth, sound to ether, taste to water, &c. The deities referred to in the last Verse are probably the senses.—T.

† The total eleven is made up of the three qualities, the five elements, the group of organs and senses as one, egoism, and the understanding.—T.

qualities. These are coupled with one another. They exist, depending on one another.[4] They take refuge in one another, and follow one another. They are also joined with one another. The five (principal) elements are characterised by (these) three qualities.[5] Goodness is the match of Darkness. Of Goodness the match is Passion. Goodness is also the match of Passion, and of Goodness the match is Darkness.[6] There where Darkness is restrained, Passion is seen to flow. There where Passion is restrained, Goodness is seen to flow.[7] Darkness should be known to have the night (or obscurity) for its essence. It has three characteristics, and is (otherwise) called Delusion. It has unrighteousness (or sin) also for its indication, and it is always present in all sinful acts. This is the nature of Darkness and it appears also as confined with others.[8] Passion is said to have activity for its essence. It is the cause of successive acts. When it prevails, its indication, among all beings, is production.[9] Splendour, lightness, and faith,—these are the form, that is light, of Goodness among all creatures, as regarded by all good men.[10] The true nature of their characteristics will now be declared by me, with reasons. These shall be stated in aggregation and separation. Do ye understand them.[11] Complete delusion, Ignorance, illiberality, indecision in respect of action, sleep, haughtiness, fear, cupidity, grief, censure of good acts,[12] loss of memory, unripeness of judgment, absence of faith, violation of all rules of conduct, want of discrimination, blindness, vileness of behaviour,[13] boastful assertions of performance when there has been no performance, presumption of knowledge in ignorance, unfriendliness (or hostility), evilness of disposition, absence of faith, stupid reasoning,[14] crookedness, incapacity for association, sinful action, senselessness, stolidity, lassitude, absence of self-control, degradation,[15]—all these qualities are known as belonging to Darkness. Whatever other states of mind, connected with delusion, exist in the world, all appertain to Darkness. Frequent ill-speaking of other people, censuring the deities and the Brāhmanas,[16-17] illiberality, vanity, delusion, wrath, unforgiveness, hostility towards all creatures, are regarded as the characteristics of Darkness.[18] Whatever un-

dertakings exist that are unmeritorious (in consequence of their being vain or useless), what gifts there are that are unmeritorious (in consequence of the unworthiness of the donees, the unseasonableness of the time, the impropriety of the object, &c.), vain eating,—these also appertain to Darkness.[19] Indulgence in calumny, unforgiveness, animosity, vanity, and absence of faith are also said to be characteristics of Darkness.[20] Whatever men there are in this world, who are characterised by these and other faults of a similar kind, and who break through the restraints (provided by the scriptures), are all regarded as belonging to the quality of Darkness.[21] I shall now declare the wombs where these men, who are always of sinful deeds, have to take their birth. Ordained to go to hell, they sink in the order of being. Indeed, they sink into the hell of (birth in) the brute creation.[22] They become immobile entities, or animals, or beasts of burden; or carnivorous creatures, or snakes, or worms, insects, and birds;[23] or creatures of the oviparous order, or quadrupeds of diverse species, or lunatics, or deaf or dumb human beings, or men that are afflicted by dreadful maladies and regarded as unclean.[24] These men of evil conduct, always exhibit the indications of their acts, sink in Darkness. Their course (of migrations) is always downwards. Appertaining to the quality of Darkness, they sink in Darkness.[25] I shall, after this, declare what the means are of their improvement and ascent; indeed, by what means they succeed in attaining to the regions that exist for men of pious deeds.[26] Those men who take birth in orders other than humanity, by growing up in view of the religious ceremonies of Brāhmanas devoted to the duties of their own order and desirous of doing good to all creatures,[27] succeed, through the aid of such purificatory rites, in ascending upwards. Indeed, struggling (to improve themselves), they at last attain to the same regions with these pious Brāhmanas. Verily, they go to Heaven. Even this is the Vedic audition.*[28] Born in orders other than humanity and growing old

---

* 'Anyathā pratipannāh' is explained by Nilakantha as 'born in other orders.' Telang takes it as 'Behaving in a contrary way.' How

in their respective acts, even thus they become human beings that are, of course, ordained to return.[29] Coming to sinful births and becoming Chandālas or human beings that are deaf or that lisp indistinctly, they attain to higher and higher castes, one after another in proper turn,[30] transcending the Cudra order, and other (consequences of) qualities that appertain to Darkness and that abide in it in course of migrations in this world.*[31] Attachment to objects of desire is regarded as great delusion. Here Rishis and Munis and deities become deluded, desirous of pleasure.[32] Darkness, delusion, the great delusion, the great obscurity called wrath, and death, that blinding obscurity, (these are the five great afflictions). As regards wrath, that is the great obscurity (and not aversion or hatred as is sometimes included in the list).[33] With respect then to its color (nature), its characteristics, and its source, I have, ye learned Brāhmanas, declared to you, accurately and in due order, everything about (the quality of) Darkness.[34] Who is there that truly understands it? Who is there that truly sees it? That, indeed, is the characteristic of Darkness, *viz.*, the beholding of reality in what is not real.[35] The qualities of Darkness have been declared to you in various ways. Duly has Darkness, in its higher and lower forms, been described to you. That man who always bears in mind the qualities mentioned here, will surely succeed in becoming freed from all characteristics that appertain to Darkness.—' "[36]

Section XXXVII.

" 'Brahman said,—Ye best of beings, I shall now declare to you accurately what (the quality of) Passion is. Ye highly blessed ones, do you understand what those qualities are that

---

can goats and sheep behave otherwise?' The sense seems to be that those born as goats, succeed in ascending upwards through the efficacy of the religious acts of the Brāhmanas. By becoming sacrificial victims they regain their true position.—T.

* Qualities abiding in Darkness &c., imply those qualities that are permanently attached to Darkness.—T.

appertain to Passion.[1] Injuring (others), beauty, toil, pleasure and pain, cold and heat, lordship (or power), war, peace, argument, dissatisfaction, endurance,*[2] might, valour, pride, wrath, exertion, quarrel (or collision), jealousy, desire, malice, battle, the sense of *meum* or mineness, protection (of others),[3] slaughter, bonds, and affliction, buying and selling, lopping off, cutting, piercing, and cutting off the coat of mail that another has worn,†[4] fierceness, cruelty, villifying, pointing out the faults of others, thoughts entirely devoted to worldly affairs, anxiety, animosity, reviling of others, false speech, false or vain gifts, hesitancy and doubt, boastfulness of speech, dispraise and praise, laudation, prowess, defiance,[5-6] attendance (as on the sick and the weak), obedience (to the commands of preceptors and parents), service or ministrations, harbouring of thirst or desire, cleverness or dexterity of conduct, policy, heedlessness, contumely, possessions,[7] and diverse decorations that prevail in the world among men, women, animals, inanimate things, houses,[8] grief, incredulousness, vows and regulations, actions with expectation (of good results), diverse acts of public charity,[9] the rites in respect of Swāhā, salutations, rites of Swadhā and Vashat, officiating at the sacrifices of others, imparting of instruction, performance of sacrifices, study,[10] making of gifts, acceptance of gifts, rites of expiation, auspicious acts, the wish to have this and that, affection generated by the merits of the object for which or whom it is felt,[11] treachery, deception, disrespect and respect, theft, killing, desire of concealment, vexation, wakefulness,[12] ostentation, haughtiness, attachment, devotion, contentment, exultation, gambling, indulgence in scandal, all relations arising out of women, attachment to dancing, instrumental music, and songs,—all these qualities, ye learned Brāhmanas, have been said to belong to Passion.[13-14] Those men on Earth who meditate on the past, present, and the future, who are devoted to the aggreegate of three, *viz.*, Religion, Wealth, and

* Some texts read 'Santāpah' and not 'Sanghātah.' The meaning then will be grief or sorrow.—T.

† This may refer to the exposure of other people's weaknesses by tearing open their veils or covers.—T.

Pleasure,[15] who, acting from the impulse of desire, exult on attaining to affluence in respect of every desire, are said to be enveloped by Passion. These men have downward courses.[16] Repeatedly reborn in this world, they give themselves up to pleasure. They covet what belongs to this world as also all those fruits that belong to the world hereafter. They make gifts, accept gifts, offer oblations to the Pitris, and pour libations on the sacrificial fire.[17] The qualities of Passion have (thus) been declared to you in their variety. The course of conduct also to which it leads has been properly described to you. The man who always understands these qualities, succeeds in always freeing himself from all of them which appertain to Passion.—' "[18]

Section XXXVIII.

" '—Brahman said,—I shall, after this, discourse to you on that excellent quality which is the third (in the order of our enumeration). It is beneficial to all creatures in the world, and unblamable, and constitutes the conduct of those that are good.[1] Joy, satisfaction, nobility, enlightenment, and happiness, absence of stinginess (or liberality), absence of fear, contentment, disposition for faith,[2] forgiveness, courage, abstention from injuring any creature, equability, truth, straightforwardness, absence of wrath, absence of malice, purity, cleverness, prowess, (these appertain to the quality of Goodness).[3] He who is devoted to the duty of Yoga, regarding knowledge to be vain, conduct to be vain, service to be vain, and mode of life to be vain, attains to what is highest in the world hereafter.[4] Freedom from the idea of *meum*, freedom from egoism, freedom from expectations, looking on all with an equal eye, and freedom from desire,—these constitute the eternal religion of the good.[5] Confidence, modesty, forgiveness, renunciation, purity, absence of laziness, absence of cruelty, absence of delusion, compassion to all creatures, absence of the disposition to calumniate,[6] exultation, satisfaction, rapture, humility, good behaviour, purity in all acts having for their object the attainment of tranquillity, right-

eous understanding, emancipation (from attachments),[7] indifference, Brahmacharyya, complete renunciation, freedom from the idea of *meum*, freedom from expectations, unbroken observance of righteousness,[8] belief that gifts are vain, sacrifices are vain, study is vain, vows are vain, acceptance of gifts is vain, observance of duties is vain, and penances are vain.[9] Those Brāhmanas in this world, whose conduct is marked by these virtues, who adhere to righteousness, who abide in the Vedas, are said to be wise and possessed of correctness of vision.[10] Casting off all sins and freed from grief, those men possessed of wisdom attain to Heaven and create diverse bodies (for themselves).[11] The power of governing everything, self-restraint, minuteness, these high-souled ones make by operations of their own mind, like the gods themselves dwelling in Heaven.[12] Such men are said to have their courses directed upwards. They are veritable gods capable of modifying all things. Attaining to Heaven, they modify all things by their very nature.[13] They get whatever objects they desire and enjoy them.* Thus have I, ye foremost of regenerate ones, described to you what that conduct is which appertains to the quality of goodness. Understanding these duly, one acquires whatever objects one desires.[14] The qualities that appertain to goodness have been declared particularly. The conduct which those qualities constitute has also been properly set forth. That man who always understands these qualities, succeeds in enjoying the qualities without being attached to them !—' "[15]

Section XXXIX.

"'—Brahman said,—'The qualities are incapable of being declared as completely separate from one another. Passion and Goodness and Darkness are seen existing in a state of union.[1] They are attached to one another. They depend on one another. They have one another for their refuge. They

* 'Vibhajanti implies enjoyments in this connection. Telang starts a needless objection to this word.—T.

likewise follow one another.[2] As long as goodness exists, so long does Passion exist. There is no doubt in this. As long as Darkness and Goodness exist, so long does Passion exist.[3] They make their journey together, in union, and moving collectively. They, verily, move in a body, when they act with cause or without cause.[4] Of all these which act with one another however much they may differ in their developement, the manner in which their increase and diminution take place will now be declared.[5] There where Darkness exists in an increased measure, in the lower creatures (for example), Passion exists in a smaller measure and Goodness in a measure that is still less.[6] There where Passion exists in a copious measure, in creatures of middle course, Darkness exists in a smaller measure and Goodness in a measure that is still less.[7] There where Goodness exists in a copious measure, in creatures of upward courses, Darkness should be known to exist in a small measure and Passion in a measure that is still less.[8] Goodness is the spring that causes the modifications of the senses. It is, again, the great enlightener. No duty has been laid down that is higher than Goodness.[9] They who abide in Goodness proceed upwards. They who abide in Passion remain in the middle. They who abide in Darkness, being characterised by qualities that are low, sink downwards.[10] Darkness occurs in the Cudra; Passion in the Kshatriya; and Goodness, which is the highest, in the Brāhmana. The three qualities exist even thus in the three orders.[11] Even from a distance, the three qualities of Darkness and Goodness and Passion, are seen to exist in a state of union and more collectively. They are never seen in a state of separation.*[12] Beholding the sun rising, men of evil deeds become inspired with fear. Travellers on their way become afflicted with heat, and suffer distress.[13] The Sun is Goodness developed; men of evil deeds represent Darkness; the heat which travellers on their way feel is said to be a quality of Passion.[14] The sun representing light is Goodness; the heat is the quality of

---

* 'From even a distance' implies that upon even a cursory view; without even being examined minutely.—T.

Passion; the shading (or eclipse) of the sun on Parvan days should be known to represent Darkness.[15] Even thus, the three qualities exist in all luminous bodies. They act by turns in diverse places in diverse ways.[16] Among immobile objects, the quality of Darkness exists in a very large measure. The qualities appertaining to Passion are those properties of theirs which undergo constant changes. Their oleaginous attributes appertain to Goodness.*[17] The Day should be understood as threefold. The Night has been ordained to be threefold. So also are fortnights, months, years, seasons, and conjunctions.†[18] The gifts that are made are threefold. Threefold is sacrifice that flows. Threefold are the worlds; threefold the deities; threefold is knowledge; and threefold the path or end.[19] The Past, the Present, and the Future, Religion, Wealth, and Pleasure, Prāna, Apāna, and Udāna, these also are fraught with the three qualities.[20] Whatever object exists in this world, everything in it, is fraught with the three qualities. The three qualities act by turns in all things and in all circumstances.[21] Verily, the three qualities always act in an unmanifest form. The creation of those three, *viz.*, Goodness, Passion, and Darkness, is eternal.[22] The unmanifest, consisting of the three qualities, is said to be darkness, unperceived, holy, constant, unborn, womb, eternal, Nature, change or modification, destruction, Pradhāna, production. and absorption, undeveloped, not small (*i. e.*, vast), unshaking,

---

* What is said here is this: the three qualities exist in even the immobile objects of the universe. As regards Darkness, it predominates in them. As regards Passion, it dwells in such properties of theirs as pungency, sourness, sweetness, &c., which change with time or in consequence of cooking or through admixture. Their oily properties are said to appertain to Goodness. 'Tiryagbhāvagatam' is explained by Nilakantha as 'ādhikyam gatam.' Telang thinks this is unwarrantable. His own version, however, of the first line is untenable. What can be the 'tiryagbhāva' or 'form of lower species' of immobile objects? Telang frequently forgets that Nilakantha represents a school of interpretation not founded by him but which existed from a time long anterior to him.—T.

† 'Conjunctions' are evidently the periods joining the seasons; *i. e*, the close of one season and the beginning of another.—T.

immovable, fixed, existent, and non-existent.[23-24] All these names should be known by those who meditate on matters connected with the soul.[25] That person who accurately knows all the names of the unmanifest, and the qualities, as also the pure operations (of the qualities), well conversant with the truth about all distinctions and freed from the body, becomes liberated from all the qualities and enjoys absolute happiness.' "[26]

SECTION XL.

" '—Brahman said,—From the unmanifest first sprang the Great Soul, endued with great intelligence, the source of all the qualities. That is said to be the first creation.[1] The Great Soul is signified by these synonymous words,—the Great Soul, Intelligence, Vishnu, Jishnu, Cambhu of great valour, the Understanding, the means of acquiring knowledge, the means of perception, as also fame, courage, and memory. Knowing this, a learned Brāhmana has never to encounter delusion.[2-3] It has hands and feet on every side. It has ears on every side. It stands, pervading everything in the universe.[4] Of great power, that Being is stationed in the heart of all. Minuteness, Lightness, and Affluence, are his. He is the lord of all, and identical with effulgence, and knows not decay.[5] In Him are all those who comprehend the nature of the understanding, all those who are devoted to goodness of disposition, all those who practise meditation, who are always devoted to Yoga, who are firm in truth, who have subdued their senses,[6] who are possessed of knowledge, who are freed from cupidity, who have conquered wrath, who are of cheerful hearts, who are endued with wisdom, who are liberated from ideas of *meum* (and *teum*), and who are devoid of egoism.[7] All these, freed from every kind of attachment, attain to the status of Greatness. That person who understands that holy and high goal, *viz.*, the Great Soul, becomes freed from delusion.[8] The self-born Vishnu becomes the Lord in the primary creations. He who thus knows the Lord lying in the cave, the Supreme, Ancient Being, of universal form,

the golden one, the highest goal of all persons endued with understanding,—that intelligent man lives, transcending the understanding.—' "[9]

Section XLI.

" '—Brahman said,—That Mahat who was first produced is called Egoism. When it sprang up as I, it came to be called as the second creation.[1] That Egoism is said to be the source of all creatures, for these have sprung from its modifications. It is pure effulgence and is the supporter of consciousness. It is Prajāpati.[2] It is a diety, the creator of deities, and of mind. It is that which creates the three worlds. It is said to be that which feels—*I am all this.*[3]—That is the eternal world existing for those sages who are contented with knowledge relating to the soul, who have meditated on the soul, and who have won success by Vedic study and sacrifices.[4] By consciousness of soul one enjoys the qualities. That source of all creatures, that creator of all creatures, creates (all creatures) even in this way. It is that which causes all changes. It is that which causes all beings to move. By its own light it illuminates the universe likewise.—' "[5]

Section XLII.

" '—Brahman said,—From Egoism were verily born the five great elements. They are earth, air, ether, water, and light numbering the fifth.[1] In these five great elements, in the matter of the operations of sound, touch, color, taste, and smell, all creatures become deluded.[2] When at the close of the destruction of the great elements, the dissolution of the universe approaches, ye that are possessed of wisdom, a great fear comes upon all living creatures.[3] Every existent object is dissolved into that from which it is produced. The dissolution takes place in an order that is the reverse of that in which creation takes place. Indeed, as regards birth, they are born from one another.[4] Then, when all existent objects, mobile and immobile, become dissolved, wise men

endued with powerful memory never dissolve.[5] Sound, touch, colour, taste, and smell numbering the fifth, are effects. They are, however, inconstant, and called by the name of delusion.[6] Caused by the production of cupidity, not different from one another, without reality, connected with flesh and blood, and depending upon one another,[7] existing outside the soul, these are all helpless and powerless. Prāna and Apāna, and Udāna and Samāna and Vyāna,[8]—these five winds are always closely attached to the soul. Together with speech, mind, and understanding, they constitute the universe of eight ingredients.[9] He whose skin, nose, ear, eyes, tongue, and speech are restrained, whose mind is pure, and whose understanding deviates not (from the right path),[10] and whose mind is never burnt by those eight fires, succeeds in attaining to that auspicious Brahma than which nothing superior exists.[11] Those which have been called the eleven organs and which have sprung from Egoism, I shall now, ye regenerate ones, mention particularly.[12] They are the ear, the skin, the two eyes, the tongue, the nose numbering the fifth, the two feet, the lower duct, the organ of generation, the two hands, and speech forming the tenth.[13] These constitute the group of organs, with mind numbering as the eleventh. One should first subdue this group. Then will Brahma shine forth (in him).[14] Five amongst these are called organs of knowledge, and five, organs of action. The five beginning with the ear are truly said to be connected with knowledge.[15] The rest, however, that are connected with action, are without distinction. The mind should be regarded as belonging to both. The understanding is the twelfth in the top.[16] Thus have been enumerated the eleven organs in due order. Learned men, having understood these, think they have accomplished everything.[17] I shall, after this, enumerate all the various organs. Space (or Ether) is the first entity. As connected with the soul, it is called the ear.[18] As connected with objects, that is sound. The presiding deity (of this) is the quarters. The Wind is the second entity. As connected with the soul, it is known as the skin.[19] As connected with objects, it is known as objects of touch; and the presiding deity there is touch. The third

is said to be Light. As connected with the soul, it is known as the eye.[20] As connected with objects, it is color; and the sun is its deity. The fourth (entity) should be known as Water. As connected with the soul, it is said to be the tongue.[21] As connected with objects, it is taste, and the presiding deity there is Soma. The fifth entity is Earth. As connected with the soul, it is said to be the nose.[22] As connected with objects, it is scent; and the presiding deity there is the wind. Thus has the manner been declared of how the five entities are divided into sets of three.[23] After this I shall declare everything about the diverse (other) organs. Brāhmanas conversant with the truth say that the two feet are mentioned as connected with the soul.[24] As connected with objects, it is motion; and Vishnu is there the presiding deity. The Apāna wind, whose motion is downward, as connected with the soul, is called the lower duct.[25] As connected with objects, it is the excreta that is ejected; and the presiding deity there is Mitra. As connected with the soul, the organ of generation is mentioned, the producer of all beings.[26] As connected with objects, it is the vital seed; and the presiding deity is Prajāpati. The two hands are mentioned as connected with the soul by persons conversant with the relations of the soul.[27] As connected with objects, it is actions; and the presiding deity there is Indra. Next, connected with the soul is speech which relates to all the gods.[28] As connected with objects, it is what is spoken. The presiding deity there is Agni. As connected with the soul, the mind is mentioned, which moves within the soul of the five elements.*[29] As connected with objects, it is the mental operation; and the presiding deity is Chandramas (moon). As connected with the soul is Egoism, which is the cause of the whole course of worldly life.[30] As connected with objects, it is consciousness of self; and the presiding deity there is Rudra. As connected with the soul is the understanding, which impels the six senses.[31] As connected with objects, it is that which is to be

* This probably implies that the mind, through the aid of the senses, enters into all things or succeeds in knowing them.—T.

understood, and the presiding deity there is Brahman. Three are the seats of all existent objects. A fourth is not possible.[32] These are land, water, and ether. The mode of birth is fourfold. Some are born of eggs ; some are born of germs which spring upwards, penetrating through the earth ; some are born of filth ; and some are born of fleshy balls in wombs.[33] Thus is the mode of birth seen to be of four kinds, of all living creatures. Now, there are other inferior beings and likewise those that range the sky.[34] These should be known to be born of eggs as also those which crawl on their breasts. Insects are said to be born of filth, as also other creatures of a like description.[35] This is said to be the second mode of birth and is inferior. Those living creatures that take birth after the lapse of sometime, bursting through the earth,[36] are said to be germ-born beings, ye foremost of regenerate persons! Creatures of two feet or of many feet, and those which move crookedly,[37] are the beings born of wombs. Among them are some that are deformed, ye best of men! The eternal womb of Brahma should be known to be of two kinds,[38] *viz.*, penance and meritorious acts. Such is the doctrine of the learned.* Action should be understood to be of various kinds, such as sacrifice, gifts made at sacrifices,[39] and the meritorious duty of study for every one that is born ; such is the teaching of the ancients. He who duly understands this, comes to be regarded as possessed of Yoga, ye chief of regenerate persons![40] Know also that such a man becomes freed too from all his sins. I have thus declared to you duly the doctrine of Adhyātma.†[41] Ye Rishis conversant with all duties, a knowledge of this is acquired by those who are regarded as persons of knowledge. Uniting all these together, *viz.*, the senses, the objects of the senses, and the five great entities, one should hold them in the mind.‡[42] When everything is attenuated (by absorption) in

* The sense seems to be that through these one succeeds in taking birth as a Brāhmana.—T.

† A repetition occurs here of about 5 Verses. The passage is evidently an interpolation originally caused by carelessness.—T.

‡ Nilakantha explains that this implies that one should regard these as really undistinguished from the mind. Indeed, created by the mind

the mind, one no longer esteems the pleasures of life. Learned men, whose understandings are furnished with knowledge, regard that as true happiness.*[43] I shall, after this, tell thee of renunciation with respect to all entities by means gentle and hard, which produces attachment to subtle topics and which is fraught with auspiciousness.[44] That conduct which consists in treating the qualities as not qualities, which is free from attachment, which is living alone, which does not recognise distinctions, and which is full of Brahma, is the source of all happiness.†[45] The learned man who absorbs all desires into himself from all sides like the tortoise withdrawing all its limbs, who is devoid of passion, and who is released from everything, becomes always happy.[46] Restraining all desires within the soul, destroying his thirst, concentrated in meditation, and becoming the friend of good heart towards all creatures, he succeeds in becoming fit for assimilation with Brahma.[47] Through repression of all the senses which always hanker after their objects, and abandonment of inhabited places, the Adhyātma-fire blazes forth in the man of contemplation.[48] As a fire, fed with fuel, becomes bright in consequence of the blazing flames it puts forth, even so, in consequence of the repression of the senses, the great soul puts forth its effulgence.[49] When one with a tranquil soul beholds all entities in one's own heart, then, lighted by one's own effulgence, one attains to that which is subtler than the subtle and which is unrivalled in excellence.[50] It is settled that the body has fire for color, water for blood and other liquids, wind for sense of touch, earth for the hideous holder of mind (*viz.*,

---

itself, these should always be taken as having no real existence beyond the mind.—T.

* 'That' here refers to the attenuation of all things by absorption into the mind.—T.

† 'Gunāgunam' is treating the qualities as not-qualities; *i. e.*, regarding bravery, magnanimity, &c., as really not merits, for these lead to pride. 'Ekacharyyam' is 'ekāntavāsam,' *i. e.*, life in seclusion. or living without depending upon others. 'Anantaram' is 'nirastasamastabheda' or non-recognition of all distinctions. Some texts read 'Brāhmanatah' meaning 'existing among Brāhmanas.' 'Ekapadam sukham' is 'samastasukhagarbham,' *i. e.*, the source or fountain of all happiness.—T.

flesh and bones &c.), space (or ether) for sound ; that it is pervaded by disease and sorrow ; that it is overwhelmed by five currents ; that it is made up of the five elements ; that it has nine doors and two deities ;* that it is full of passion ; that it is unfit to be seen (owing to its unholy character) ; that it is made up of three qualities ; that it has three constituent elements, (*viz.*, wind, bile, and phlegm) ; that it is delighted with attachments of every kind ; that it is full of delusion.†[51-53] It is difficult of being moved in this mortal world, and it rests on the understanding as its support. That body is, in this world, the wheel of Time that is continually revolving.‡[54] That (body), indeed, is a terrible and unfathomable ocean and is called delusion. It is this body which stretches forth, contracts, and awakens the (whole) universe with the (very) immortals.$[55] By restraining the senses, one casts off lust, wrath, fear, cupidity, enmity, and falsehood, which are eternal and, therefore, exceedingly, difficult to cast off.¶[56] He who has subjugated these in this world, *viz.*, the three qualities and the five constituent elements of the body, has the Highest for his seat in Heaven. By him is Infinity attained.[57] Crossing the river that has the five senses for its steep banks, the mental inclinations for its mighty waters, and delusion for its lake, one should subjugate both lust and wrath.[58] Such a

---

* The two deities are Jiva and Içwara.—T.

† The correct reading, in 53 seems to be 'samsargābhiratām' and not 'samçayābhiratām.'—T.

‡ In the second line, the correct words are 'martya' and 'sarva.' The sense of the second line seems to be that this body is ceaselessly revolving, for Emancipation is difficult to achieve. Hence this body is, as it were, the wheel of Time. Nilakantha's explanation does not seem to be satisfactory.—T.

$ I do not think that Telang is correct in his version of this Verse. What is said here seems to be this. The body is, as it were, the wheel of Time ; the body is the ocean of delusion ; the body is the creator, destroyer, and re-awakener of the universe. Through the body creatures act, and hence creation, destruction, and re-creation are due to the body. This accords with what is said elsewhere regarding the body.—T.

¶ It would be wrong to take 'satah' as implying 'the good,' the final verb in every text being singular.—T.

man, freed from all faults, then beholds the Highest, concentrating the mind within the mind and seeing self in self.[59] Understanding all things, he sees his self, with self, in all creatures, sometimes as one and sometimes as diverse, changing form from time to time.*[60] Without doubt, he can perceive numerous bodies like a hundred lights from one light. Verily, he is Vishnu, and Mitra, and Varuna, and Agni, and Prajāpati.[61] He is the Creator and the ordainer; he is the Lord possessed of puissance, with faces turned in all directions. In him, the heart of all creatures, the great soul, becomes resplendent.[62] Him all conclaves of learned Brāhmanas, deities and Asuras, and Yakshas, and Piçāchas, the Pitris, and birds, and bands of Rākshasas, and bands of ghostly beings, and all the great Rishis, praise.—' "[63]

Section XLIII.

"'—Brahman said,—Among men, the royal Kshatriya is (endued with) the middle quality. Among vehicles, the elephant (is so); and among denizens of the forest the lion;[1] among all (sacrificial) animals, the sheep; among all those that live in holes, is the snake; among cattle, the bovine bull; among females, the male.†[2] There is no doubt in this that in this world, the Nyagrodha, the Jamvu, the Pippala, the Cālmali, the Cinçapā, the Meshaçringa, and the Kichaka, are the foremost ones among trees.‡[3] Himavat, Pāripātra, Sahya, Vindhya, Trikutavat, Cweta, Nila, Bhāsa, Koshthavat,[4] Guruskandha, Mahendra, and Mālyavat,—these are

---

* The correct reading seems to be 'ātmanā' as the last word of the first line, and not 'ātmam.'—T.

† What is said here is that the quality of passion predominates in these.—T.

‡ Nyagrodha is the *Ficus Bengalensis, Linn.* Jamvu is *Eugenia Jambolana, Lamk.* Pippala is *Ficus religiosa, Linn.* Cālmali is *Bombax Malabaricum.* Cinçapā is *Dalbergia Sissoo, Roxb.* Meshaçringa is *Asclepia geminata, Roxb.* Kichaka is a variety of mountain bamboo. Here, however, it evidently implies the Nimba or *Melia Azadirachta, Linn.*—T.

the foremost of mountains. Likewise the Maruts are the foremost of the Ganas.[5] Surya is the lord of all the planets, and Chandramas of all the constellations. Yama is the lord of the Pitris; Ocean is the lord of all rivers.[6] Varuna is the king of the waters. Indra is said to be the king of the Maruts. Arka is the king of all hot bodies, and Indra of all luminous bodies.[7] Agni is the eternal lord of the elements, and Vrihaspati of the Brāhmanas. Soma is the lord of (deciduous) herbs, and Vishnu is the foremost of all that are endued with might.[8] Tashtri is the king of Rudras, and Civa of all creatures. Sacrifice is the foremost of all initiatory rites, and Maghavat of the deities.[9] The North is the lord of all the points of the compass; Soma of great energy is the lord of all learned Brāhmanas. Kuvera is the lord of all precious gems, and Purandara of all the deities.[10] Such is the highest creation among all entities. Prajāpati is the lord of all creatures. Of all entities whatever, I, who am full of Brahma, am the foremost.[11] There is no entity that is higher than myself or Vishnu. The great Vishnu, who is full of Brahma, is the king of kings over all. Know him to be the ruler, the creator, the uncreated Hari.[12] He is the ruler of men and Kinnaras and Yakshas and Gandharvas, and snakes and Rākshasas, and deities and Dānavas and Nāgas.[13] Among those that are followed by persons full of desire is the great goddess Māheswari of beautiful eyes.[14] She is otherwise called by the name of Pārvati. Know that the goddess Umā is the foremost and the most auspicious of women. Among women that are a source of pleasure, the foremost are the Apsarās who are possessed of great splendour.*[15] Kings are desirous of acquiring piety, and Brāhmanas are causeways of piety. Therefore, the king should always strive to protect the twice-born ones.[16] Those kings in whose dominions good men languish are regarded as bereft of the virtues of their order. Hereafter they have to go into wrong paths.[17] Those

* Nilakantha is for taking the second line as consisting of two propositions. It would be better to take 'satinām' as refering to 'strinām,' and 'vasumatyah' as an adjective of 'Apsarasah.'—T.

kings in whose dominious good men are protected, rejoice in this world and enjoy happiness hereafter.[18] Verily, those high-souled ones attain to the highest seat. Understand this, ye foremost of regenerate ones ! I shall after this state the everlasting indications of duties.[19] Abstention from injury is the highest duty. Injury is an indication of unrighteousness. Splendour is the indication of the deities. Men have acts for their indications.[20] Ether (or space) has sound for its characteristic. Wind has touch for its characteristic. The characteristic of lighted bodies is color, and water has taste for its characteristic.[21] Earth, which holds all entities, has smell for its characteristic. Speech has words for its characteristic, refined into vowels and consonants.[22] Mind has thought for its characteristic. Thought has, again, been said to be the characteristic of the understanding. The things thought of by the mind are ascertained with accuracy by the understanding.[23] There is no doubt in this, *viz.*, that the understanding, by perseverance, perceives all things. The characteristic of mind is meditation. The characteristic of the good man is (living) unperceived.*[24] Devotion has acts for its characteristic. Knowledge is the characteristic of renunciation. Therefore, keeping knowledge before his view, the man of understanding should practise renunciation.[25] The man who has betaken himself to renunciation and who is possessed of knowledge, who transcends all pairs of opposites, as also darkness, death, and decrepitude, attains to the highest goat.[26] I have thus declared to you duly what the indications are of duty. I shall, after this, tell you of the seizuse (comprehension) of qualities.[27] Smell, which appertains to earth, is seized by the nose. The wind, that dwells in the nose is likewise appointed (as an agent) in the perception of smell.[28] Taste is the essence of water. That is seized by the tongue. Soma, who resides in the tongue, is appointed likewise in the perception of taste.[29] The quality of a lighted body is color. That is seized by the eye. Āditya who always

* The sense seems to be that good men never allow others to know what their acts are. They are strangers to ostentation.—T.

resides in the eye has been appointed in the perception of color.[30] Touch always appertains to the wind (as its quality). That is perceived by the skin. The wind that always resides in the skin has been appointed in apprehending touch.[31] The quality of a ether is sound. That is seized by the ear. All the quarters, which reside in the ear, have been appointed in apprehending sound.[32] The quality of the mind is thought. That is seized by the understanding. The upholder of consciousness, residing in the heart, has been appointed in apprehending the mind.[33] The understanding is apprehended in the form of determination or certitude, and Mahat in the form of knowledge. The unperceived (Prakriti) has been, it is evident, appointed for the seizure of all things after certitude. There is no doubt in this.*[34] The Kshetrajna which is eternal and is destitute of qualities as regards its essence, is incapable of being seized by symbols. Hence, the characteristic of the Kshetrajna, which is without symbols, is purely knowledge.[35] The unmanifest resides in the symbol called Kshetra, and is that in which the qualities are produced and absorbed. I always see, know, and hear it (though) it is hidden.[36] Purusha knows it; therefore is he called Kshetrajna. The Kshetrajna perceives also the operations of the qualities and absence of their operations.[37] The qualities, which are created repeatedly, do not know themselves, being unintelligent, as entities to be created and endued with a beginning, middle, and end.[38] No one else attains, only the Kshetrajna attains, to that which is the highest and great and which transcends the qualities and those entities which are born of the qualities.[39] Hence, one who understands duties, casting off qualities and the understanding, and having his sins destroyed, and transcending the qualities, enters the Kshetrajna.[40] One that is free from all pairs of opposites, that never bends

* The sense seems to be that the knowledge of one's own identity and of things as discriminated from one another is presided over by Prakriti. If the question is asked whence is the knowledge—'I am so,' and that 'this is so,' the answer is that it comes from Prakriti or Nature.—T.

his head to any one, that is divested of Swāhā, that is immovable, and homeless, is the Kshetrajna. He is the Supreme Lord.—' "[41]

Section XLIV.

"'—Brahman said,—I shall now tell you truly about all that which has a beginning, middle, and end, and which is endued with name and characteristics, together, with the means of apprehension.[1] It has been said that the Day was first. Then arose Night. The Months are said to have the lighted fortnights first. The constellations have Cravanā for their first; the Seasons have that of dews (*viz.*, Winter) for their first.[2] Earth is the source of all smells; and Water of all tastes. The solar light is the source of all colours; the Wind of all sensations of touch.[3] Likewise of sound the source is space (or Ether). These are the qualities of elements. I shall, after this, declare that which is the first and the highest of all entities.[4] The sun is the first of all lighted bodies. Fire is said to be the first of all the elements. Sāvitri is the first of all branches of learning. Prajāpati is the first of all the deities.[5] The syllable Om is the first of all the Vedas, and the life-wind Prāna is the first of all winds. All that is called Sāvitri which is prescribed in this world.*[6] The Gāyatri is the first of all metres; of all (sacrificial) animals, the first is the goat. Kine are the first of all quadrupeds. The twice-born ones are the first of all human beings.[7] The hawk is the first of all birds. Of sacrifices the first is the pouring of clarified butter on the fire. Of all reptiles the first, O foremost of regenerate ones, is the snake.[8] The Krita is the first of all the Yugas; there is no doubt in this. Gold is the first of all precious things.[9] Barley is the first of all plants. Food is the first of all things to be eaten or swallowed. Of

---

* As explained by Nilakantha, the word 'Sāvitri' is used here to imply all forms of worship observed by Brāhmanas &c., and the Mlecchas as well. This turning back to explain a word used before is said to be an instance of "looking back like the lion."—T.

all liquid substances to be drunk, water is the foremost.[10] Of all immobile entities without distinction, Plaksha is said to be the first, that ever holy field of Brahman.[11] Of all the Prajāpatis I am the first. There is no doubt in this. Of inconceivable soul, the self-existent Vishnu is said to be my superior.*[12] Of all the mountains the great Meru is said to be the first-born. Of all the cardinal and subsidiary points of the horizon, the eastern is said to be the foremost and first-born.[13] Gangā of three courses is said to be the first-born of all rivers. Likewise, of all wells and reservoirs of waters, the ocean is said to be the first-born.[14] Içwara is the supreme Lord of all the deities and Dānavas and ghostly beings and Piçāchas, and snakes and Rākshasas, and human beings and Kinnaras and Yakshas.[15] The great Vishnu, who is full of Brahma, than whom there is no higher being in the three worlds, is the first of all the universe.[16] Of all the modes of life, that of the householder is the first. Of this there is no doubt. The Unmanifest is the source of all the worlds as, indeed, that is the end of every thing.[17] Days end with the sun's setting and Nights with the sun's rising. The end of pleasure is always sorrow, and the end of sorrow is always pleasure.[18] All accumolations have exhaustion for their end, and all ascents have falls for their end. All associations have dissociations for their end, and life has death for its end.[19] All action ends in destruction, and all that is born is certain to meet with death. Every mobile and immobile thing in this world is transient.[20] Sacrifice, gift, penances, study, vows, observances,—all these have destruction for their end. Of Knowledge, there is no end.[21] Hence, one that is possessed of a tranquil soul, that has subjugated his senses, that is freed from the sense of *meum*, that is devoid of egoism, is released from all sins by pure knowledge.—'"[22]

---

* Telang, I think, renders this Verse wrongly. In the first line it is said that Brahman is superior to the Prajāpatis. In the second it is pointed out that Vishnu is superior to Brahman.—T.

Section XLV.

" 'Brahman said,—The wheel of life moves on. It has the understanding for its strength; the mind for the pole (on which it rests); the group of senses for its bonds, the (five) great elements for its nave, and home for its circumference.*[1] It is overwhelmed by decrepitude and grief, and it has diseases and calamities for its progeny. That wheel relates in time and place. It has toil and exercise for its noise.[2] Day and Night are the rotations of that wheel. It is encircled by heat and cold. Pleasure and pain are its joints, and hunger and thirst are the nails fixed into it.[3] Sun-shine and shade are the ruts (it causes). It is capable of being agitated during even such a short space of time as is taken up by the opening and the closing of the eyelid. It is enveloped in the terrible waters of delusion. It is ever revolving and void of consciousness.[4] It is measured by months and half-months. It is not uniform (being everchanging), and moves through all the worlds. Penance and vows are its mud. Passion's force is its mover.[5] It is illuminated by the great egoism, and is sustained by the qualities. Vexations (caused by the non-acquisition of what is desired) are the fastenings that bind it around. It revolves in the midst of grief and destruction.[6] It is endued with actions and the instruments of action. It is large and is extended by attachments. It is rendered unsteady by cupidity and desire. It is produced by variegated Ignorance.[7] It is attended upon by fear and delusion, and is the cause of the delusion of all beings. It moves towards joy and pleasure, and has desire and wrath for its possession.[8] It is made up of entities beginning with Mahat and ending with the gross elements. It is characterised by production

---

* It is difficult to understand which part of the wheel is intended to be expressedly 'bandhanam' or the bond; I take it for the spokes. 'Pariskandha' is 'samuha' or the materials that together compose an object. Here it may be taken for the nave or centre. Home is called the circumference, because, as the circumference limits the wheel, even so home (wife and children) limits the affections and acts of life.—T.

and destruction going on ceaselessly. Its speed is like that of the mind, and it has the mind for its boundary.*[9] This wheel of life that is associated with pairs of opposites and devoid of consciousness, the universe with the very immortals should cast away, abridge, and check.[10] That man who always understands accurately the motion and stoppage of this wheel of life, is never seen to be deluded, among all creatures.[11] Freed from all impressions, divested of all pairs of opposites, released from all sins, he attains to the highest goal.[12] The householder, the Brahmachārin, the forest recluse and the mendicant,—these four modes of life have all been said to have the householder's mode for their foundation.[13] Whatever system of rules is prescribed in this world, their observance is beneficial. Such observance has always been highly spoken of.[14] He who has been first cleansed by ceremonies, who has duly observed vows, who belongs in respect of birth to a race possessed of high qualifications, and who understands the Vedas, should return (from his preceptor's house).†[15] Always devoted to his wedded spouse, conducting himself after the manner of the good, with his senses under subjugation, and full of faith, one should in this world perform the five sacrifices.[16] He who eats what remains after feeding deities and guests, who is devoted to the observance of Vedic rites, who duly performs according to his means sacrifices and gifts,[17] who is unduly active with his hands and feet, who is unduly active with his eye, who is devoted to penances, who is not unduly active with his speech and limits, comes under the category of Cishta or the good.[18] One should always bear the sacred thread, wear white (clean) clothes, observe pure vows, and should always associate with good

---

* The words 'Kālachakram pravartate' have been rendered in the first verse of this lesson. In verse 9, the words 'asaktaprabhavapāvyam' are explained by Nilakantha differently. 'Manas-krāntam,' I take, is equivalent to 'bounded by the mind.' I do not know whence Telang gets 'never fatigued' as the substitute of this word.—T.

† Implying that he should go to the house of his preceptor, study and serve there, and after completing his course, return for leading a life of domesticity.—T.

men, making gifts and practising self-restraint.[19] One should subjugate one's lust and stomach, practise universal compassion, and be characterised by behaviour that befits the good. One should bear a bamboo-stick, and a water-pot filled with water.[20] Having studied, one should teach; likewise should make sacrifices himself and officiate at the sacrifices of others. One should also make gifts made to oneself. Verily, one's conduct should be characterised by these six acts.[21] Know that three of these acts should constitute the livelihood of the Brāhmanas, *viz.*, teaching (pupils), officiating at the sacrifices of others, and the acceptance of gifts from a person that is pure.[22] As to the other duties that remain, numbering three, *viz.*, making of gifts, study, and sacrifice, these are accompanied by merit.*[23] Observant of penances, self-restrained, practising universal compassion and forgiveness, and looking upon all creatures with an equal eye, the man that is conversant with duties should never be heedless with regard to those three acts.[24] The learned Brāhmana of pure heart, who observes the domestic mode of life and practises rigid vows, thus devoted and thus discharging all duties to the best of his power, succeeds in conquering Heaven.—' "[25]

Section XLVI.

" 'Brahman said,—Duly studying thus to the best of his power, in the way described above, and likewise living as a Brahmachārin, one that is devoted to the duties of one's own order, possessed of learning, observant of penances, and with all the senses under restraint, devoted to what is agreeable and beneficial to the preceptor, steady in practising the duty of truth, and always pure,[1-2] should, with the permission of the preceptor, eat one's food without decrying it. He should eat *Havishya* made from what is obtained in alms, and should stand, sit, and take exercise (as directed).†[3] He should pour

* The sense seems to be that these last three duties are productive of merit and should, therefore, be performed. The first three, however, are sources of living.—T.

† 'Havishya' is food cooked in a particular way and offered to the

libations on the fire twice a day, having purified himself and with concentrated mind. He should always bear a staff made of Vilwa or Palāça.*[4] The robes of the regenerate man should be linen, or of cotton, or deer-skin, or a cloth that is entirely brown-red.[5] There should also be a girdle made of Munja-grass. He should bear matted locks on head, and should perform his ablutions every day. He should bear the sacred thread, study the scriptures, divest himself of cupidity, and be steady in the observance of vows.[6] He should also gratify the deities with oblations of pure water, his mind being restrained the while. Such a Brahmachārin is worthy of applause.[7] With vital seed drawn up and mind concentrated, one that is thus devoted succeeds in conquering Heaven. Having attained to the highest seat, he has not to return to birth.[8] Cleansed by all purificatory rites and having lived as a Brahmachārin, one should next go out of one's village and next live as an ascetic in the woods, having renounced (all attachments).[9] Clad in animal skins or barks of trees, he should perform his ablutions morning and evening. Always living within the forest, he should never return to an inhabited place.[10] Honoring guests when they come, he should give them shelter, and himself subsist upon fruits and leaves and common roots, and Cyāmāka.[11] He should, without being slothful, subsist on such water as he gets, and air, and all forest products. He should live upon these, in due order, according to the regulations of his initiation.†[12] He should honor the guest that comes to him with alms of fruits and roots. He should then, without sloth, always give whatever other food he may have.[13] Restraining speech the while, he should eat after gratifying deities and guests. His mind

---

deities. It must be free from meat. There may be milk or ghee in it, but the cooking must be done in a single pot or vessel continuously; no change of vessels is allowed.—T.

* Vilwa is the *Ægle marmelos*, and Palāça is the *Butea frondosā* of Roxburgh.—T.

† At first he should live on fruits and roots and leaves, &c. Next on water, and then on air. There are different sects of forest recluses. The course of life is settled at the time of the initiatory rites.—T.

should be free from envy. He should eat little, and depend always on the deities.[14] Self-restrained, practising universal compassion, and possessed of forgiveness, he should wear both beard and hair (without submitting to the operations of the barber). Performing sacrifices and devoting himself to the study of the scriptures, he should be steady in the observance of the duty of truth.[15] With body always in a state of purity, endued with cleverness, ever dwelling in the forest, with concentrated mind, and senses in subjection, a forest-recluse, thus devoting himself, would conquer Heaven.[16] A householder, or Brahmachārin, or forest-recluse, who would wish to achieve Emancipation, should have recourse to that which has been called the best course of conduct.[17] Having granted unto all creatures the pledge of utter abstention from harm, he should thoroughly renounce all action. He should contribute to the happiness of all creatures, practise universal friendliness, subjugate all his senses, and be an ascetic.[18] Subsisting upon food obtained without asking and without trouble, and that has come to him spontaneously, he should make a fire. He should make his round of mendicancy in a place whence smoke has ceased to curl up and where all the inhabitants have already eaten.*[19] The person who is conversant with the conduct that leads to Emancipation should seek for alms after the vessels (used in cooking) have been washed. He should never rejoice when if he obtains anything, and never be depressed if he obtains nothing.[20] Seeking just what is needed for supporting life, he should, with concentrated mind, go about his round of mendicancy, waiting for the proper time. He should not wish for earnings in common with others, nor eat when honoured.[21] The man who leads the life of mendicancy should conceal himself for avoiding gifts with honour. While eating, he should not eat such food as forms the remains of another's dish, nor such as is bitter, or as-

* What is stated here is this. The Sannyāsin should not ask for alms: or, if he ever seeks for alms, he should seek them in a village or house where the cooking has been already done and where every one has already eaten. This limitation is provided as otherwise the Sannyāsin may be fed to his fill by the householder who sees him.—T.

tringent, or pungent.[22] He should not also eat such kinds of food as have a sweet taste. He should eat only so much as is needed to keep him alive.[23] The person converstant with Emancipation should obtain his subsistence without obstructing any creature. In his rounds of mendicancy he should never follow another (bent on the same purpose).[24] He should never parade his piety; he should move about in a secluded place, freed from passion. Either an empty house, or a forest, or the foot of some tree, or a river,[25] or a mountain-cave, he should have recourse to for shelter. In summer he should pass only one night in an inhabited place; in the season of rains he may live in one place.[26] He should move about the world like a worm, his path pointed out by the Sun. From compassion for creatures, he should walk on the Earth with his eyes directed towards it.[27] He should never make any accumulations and should avoid residence with friends. The man conversant with Emancipation should every day do all his acts with pure water.[28] Such a man should always perform his ablutions with water that has been fetched up (from the river or the tank).* Abstention from harm, Brahmacharyya, truth, simplicity,[29] freedom from wrath, freedom from decrying others, self-restraint, and habitual freedom from backbiting: with senses restrained, he should steadily pursue these eight vows.[30] He should always practise a sinless mode of conduct, that is not deceptive and not crooked. Freed from attachment, he should always make one who comes as a guest eat (at least) a morsel of food.[31] He should eat just enough for livelihood, for the support of life. He should eat only such food as has been obtained by righteous means, and should not pursue the dictates of desire.[32] He should never accept any other thing than food and clothing only. He should, again, accept only as much as he can eat and nothing more.[33] He should not be induced to accept gifts from others, nor should he make gifts to others. Owing to the heplessness of creatures, the man of wisdom should always share with

---

* He should never plunge into a stream or lake or tank for bathing.—T.

others.[34] He should not appropriate what belongs to others, nor should he take anything without being asked. He should not, having enjoyed anything, become so attached to it as to desire to have it once more.[35] One should take only earth and water and pebbles and leaves and flowers and fruits, that are not owned by any body, as they come, when one desires to do any act.[36] One should not live by the occupation of an artisan, nor should one covet gold. One should not hate, nor teach (one that does not seek to be taught); nor should one have any belongings.[37] One should eat only what is consecrated by faith. One should abstain from controversies. One should follow that course of conduct which has been said to be nectarine. One should never be attached to anything, and should never enter into relations of intimacy with any creature.[38] One should not perform, nor cause to perform, any such action as involves expectation of fruit or destruction of life or the hoarding of wealth or articles.[39] Rejecting all objects, content with a very little, one should wander about (homeless), pursuing an equal behaviour towards all creatures mobile and immobile.[40] One should never annoy another being; nor should one be annoyed with another. He who is trusted by all creatures is regarded as the foremost of those persons that understand Emancipation.[41] One should not think of the past nor feel anxious about the future. One should disregard the present, biding time, with concentrated mind.*[42] One should never defile anything by eye, mind, or speech. Nor should one do anything that is wrong, openly or in secret.[43] Withdrawing one's senses like the tortoise withdrawing its limbs, one should attenuate one's senses and mind, cultivate a thoroughly peaceful understanding, and seek to master every topic.[44] Freed from all pairs of opposites, never bending one's head in reverence, abstaining from the rites requiring the utterance of Swāhā, one should be free from mineness, and egoism. With cleansed soul, one should never seek to acquire what one has not and protect what one

* 'Kālākānkhi' implies, probably, 'simply biding time,' *i. e.*, allowing time to pass indifferently over him.—T.

has.[45] Free from expectations, divested of qualities, wedded to tranquillity, one should be free from all attachments and should depend on none. Attached to one's own self and comprehending all topics, one becomes emancipated without doubt.[46] Those who perceive the self, which is without hands and feet and back, which is without head and without stomach, which is free from the operation of all qualities, which is absolute, untainted, and stable,[47] which is without smell, without taste and touch, without color, and without sound, which is to be comprehended (by close study), which is unattached, which is without flesh,[48] which is free from anxiety, unfading, and divine, and, lastly, which though dwelling in a house resides in all creatures, succeed in escaping death.[49] There the understanding reaches not, nor the senses, nor the deities, nor the Vedas, nor sacrifices, nor the regions (of superior bliss), nor penance, nor vows.[50] The attainment to it by those who are possessed of knowledge is said to be without comprehension of symbols. Hence, the man who knows the properties of that which is destitute of symbols, should practise the truths of piety.*[51] The learned man, betaking himself to a life of domesticity, should adopt that conduct which is conformable to true knowledge. Though undeluded, he should practise piety after the manner of one that is deluded, without finding fault without it.[52] Without finding fault with the practices of the good, he should himself adopt such a conduct for practising piety as may induce others to always disrespect him.[53] That man who is endued with such a conduct is said to be the foremost of ascetics. The senses, the objects of the senses, the (five) great elements,[54] mind, understanding, egoism, the unmanifest, Purusha also, after comprehending these duly with the aid of correct inferences,[55] one attains to Heaven, released from all bonds. One conversant with the truth, understanding these at the time of the

---

* The sense seems to be this: the self or soul is without qualities. He who knows the self, or rather he who pursues the self with the desire of knowing it, should practise the truths of piety laid down above They constitute the path that leads to the self.—T.

termination of his life,[56] should meditate, exclusively resting on one point. Then, depending on none, one attains to Emancipation. Freed from all attachments, like the wind in space, with his accumulations exhausted, without distress of any kind, he attains to the highest goal.—' "[57]

SECTION XLVII.

" '—Brahman said,—The ancients who were utterers of certain truth, say that Renunciation is penance. Brāhmanas, dwelling in that which has Brahma for its origin, understand Knowledge to be high Brahma.*[1] Brahma is very far off, and its attainment depends upon a knowledge of the Vedas. It is free from all pairs of opposites, it is divested of all qualities; it is eternal; it is endued with unthinkable qualities; it is supreme.[2] It is by knowledge and penance that those endued with wisdom behold that which is the highest. Verily, they that are of untained minds, that are cleansed of every sin, and that have transcended all passion and darkness (succeed in beholding it.)[3] They who are always devoted to renunciation, and who are conversant with the Vedas, succeed in attaining to the supreme Lord who is identical with the path of happiness and peace, by the aid of penance.[4] Penance, it has been said, is light. Conduct leads to peity. Knowledge is said to be the highest. Renunciation is the best penance.[5] He who understands self through accurate determination of all topics, which is unperturbed, which is identical with Knowledge, and which resides in all entities, succeeds in going everywhere.[6] That learned man who beholds association and dissociation, and unity in diversity, is released from misery.[7] He who never desires for anything, who despises nothing, becomes eligible, even when dwelling in this world, for assimilation with Brahma.[8] He who is conversant with the truths about qualities of Pradhāna, and understands the Pradhāna as existing in all entities, who is free from mineness and egoism, without doubt becomes emancipated.[9] He who is

---

* 'That which has Brahma for its origin' implies the Vedas.—T.

freed from all pairs of opposites, who does not bend his head to any body, who has transcended the rites of Swadhā, succeeds by the aid of tranquillity alone in attaining to that which is free from pairs of opposites, which is eternal, and which is divested of qualities.[10] Abandoning all action, good or bad, developed from qualities, and casting off both truth and falsehood, a creature, without doubt, becomes emancipated.[11] Having the unmanifest for the seed of its origin, with the understanding for its trunk, with the great principle of egoism for its assemblage of boughs, with the senses for the cavities of its little sprouts,[12] with the (five) great elements for its large branches, the objects of the senses for its smaller branches, with leaves that are ever present, with flowers that always adorn it, and with fruits both agreeable and disagreeable always produced,[13] is the eternal tree of Brahma which forms the support of all creatures. Cutting and piercing that tree with knowledge of truth as the sword, the man of wisdom,[14] abandoning the bonds which are made of attachment and which cause birth, decrepitude and death, and freeing himself from mineness and egoism, without doubt, becomes emancipated.[15] These are the two birds, which are immutable, which are friends, and which should be known as unintelligent. That other who is different from these two is called the Intelligent.[16] When the inner self, which is destitute of knowledge of nature, which is (as it were) unintelligent, becomes conversant with that which is above nature, then, understanding the Kshetra, and endued with an intelligence that transcends all qualities and apprehends everything, becomes released from all sins.—' "[17]

Section XLVIII.

"'—Brahman said,—Some regard Brahma as a tree. Some regard Brahma as a great forest. Some regard Brahma as unmanifest. Some regard it as transcendant and freed from every distress.[1] They think that all this is produced from and absorbed into the unmanifest. He who, even for the short space of time that is taken by a single breath, when his

end comes, becomes equable,[2] attaining to the self, fits himself for immortality. Restraining the self in the self, even for the space of a wink,[3] one goes, through the tranquillity of the self, to that which constitutes the inexhaustible acquisition of those that are endued with knowledge. Restraining the life-breaths again and again by controlling them according to the method called Prānāyāma,[4] by the ten or the twelve, he attains to that which is beyond the four and twenty. Thus having first acquired a tranquil soul, one attains to the fruition of all one's wishes.*[5] When the quality of Goodness predominates in that which arises from the Unmanifest, it becomes fit for immortality. They who are conversant with Goodness applaud it highly, saying that there is nothing higher than Goodness.[6] By inference we know that Purusha is dependent on Goodness. Ye best of regenerate ones, it is impossible to attain to Purusha by any other means.[7] Forgiveness, courage, abstention from harm, eqability, truth, sincerity, knowledge, gift, and renunciation, are said to be the characteristics of that course of conduct which arises out of Goodness.[8] It is by this inference that the wise believe in the identity of Purusha and Goodness. There is no doubt in this.[9] Some learned men that are devoted to knowledge assert the unity of Kshetrajna and Nature. This, however, is not correct.[10] If it is said that Nature is different from Purusha, that also will imply a want of consideration.[11] Truly, distinction and association should be known (as applying to Purusha and Nature). Unity and diversity are likewise laid down. That is the doctrine of the learned. In the gnat and Udumvara both unity and diversity are seen.[12]

---

* Commentators differ about what is implied by the ten or the twelve. Nilakantha thinks that the ten mean the eight characteristics of Yoga, *viz.*, Yama, Niyama, Asana, Prānāyāma, Pratyāhāra, Dhāranā, Dhyāna, Samādhi, and Tarka and Vairāgya. The twelve would imply the first eight, and these four, *viz.*, Maitri, Karunā, Mudita, and Upekshā. If ten *plus* twelve or two and twenty be taken, then that number would be made up by the five modes of Yama, the five of Niyama, the remaining six of Yoga (beginning with Asana and ending with Samādhi), the four beginning with Maitri, and the two, *viz.*, Tarka and Vairāgya.—T.

As a fish in water is different from it, such is the relation of the two (*viz.*, Purusha and Nature). Verily, their relation is like that of water drops on the leaf of the lotus.—'[13]

" 'The preceptor continued,—Thus addressed, those learned Brāhmanas, who were the foremost of men, felt some doubts and (therefore) they once more questioned the Grandsire (of all creatures).*' "[14]

Section XLIX.

" 'The Rishis said,—Which among the duties is deemed to be the most worthy of being performed ? The diverse modes of duty, we see, are contradictory.[1] Some say that (it remains) after the body (is destroyed). Others say that it does not exist. Some say that everything is doubtful. Others have no doubts.†[2] Some say that the eternal (principle) is not eternal. Some say that it exists, and some that it exists not. Some say it is of one form, or twofold, and others that it is mixed.[3] Some Brāhmanas who are conversant with Brahma and utterers of truth regard it to be one. Others, that it is distinct; and others again that it is manifold.[4] Some say that both time and space exist; others, that it is not so. Some bear matted locks on their heads and are clad in deer-skins. Others have shaven crowns and go entirely naked.[5] Some are for entire abstention from bathing, and some for bathing. Such differences of views may be seen among deities and Brāhmanas conversant with Brahma and endued

---

* What is said in this Lesson seems to be this: the Unmanifest or Prakriti is that condition in which all the three qualities of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness exist in a state of combination. The unmanifest is the condition existing before creation. When one particular quality, *viz.*, Goodness prevails over the others, there arises Purusha, that, *viz.*, from whom everything flows. The relation of Purusha and Nature is both unity and diversity. The three illustrations of the Gnat and the Udumbara, the fish and water, and water drops and the lotus leaf, explain the relation between Purusha and Nature. He is in Nature, yet different from it. There is both association and dissociation.—T.

† The doubts appertain to duties, that is, whether they should be done or not, and whether they have any effects here and hereafter.—T.

with perceptions of truth.[6] Some are for taking food; while some are devoted to fasts. Some applaud action. Others applaud perfect tranquillity.[7] Some applaud Emancipation. Some, various kinds of enjoyments.[8] Some desire diverse kinds of wealth. Some, poverty. Some say that means should be resorted to. Others, that this is not so.[9] Some are devoted to a life of abstention from harm. Others are addicted to destruction. Some are for merit and glory. Others say that this is not so.[10] Some are devoted to goodness. Others are established on doubt. Some are for pleasure. Some are for pain. Other people say that it is meditation.[11] Other learned Brāhmanas say that it is Sacrifice. Others, again, say that it is gift. Others applaud penances. Others, the study of the scriptures.[12] Some say that knowledge and renunciation (should be followed). Others who ponder on the elements say that it is Nature. Some extol everything. Others, nothing.[13] O foremost one of the deities, duty being thus confused and full of contradictions of various kinds, we are deluded and unable to come to any conclusion.[14] People stand up for acting, saying,—This is good,—This is good.—He that is attached to a certain duty applauds that duty as the best.[15] For this reason our understanding breaks down and our mind is distracted. We, therefore, wish, O best of all beings, to know what is good.[16] It behooves thee to declare to us, after this, what is (so) mysterious, and what is the cause of the connection between the Kshetrajna and Nature.[17] Thus addressed by those learned Brāhmanas, the illustrious creator of the worlds, endued with great intelligence and possessed of a righteous soul, declared to them accurately what they asked.—' "[18]

Section L.

" '—Brahman said,—Well then, I shall declare to you what you ask. Learn what was told by a preceptor to a disciple that came unto him.[1] Hearing it all, do you settle properly (what it should be). Abstention from harming any creature is regarded as the foremost of all duties.[2] That is the

highest seat, free from anxiety and constituting an indication of holiness. The ancients who were beholders of the certain truth, have said that knowledge is the highest happiness.[3] Hence, one becomes released of all sins by pure knowledge. They that are engaged in destruction and harm, they that are infidels in conduct,[4] have to go to Hell in consequence of their being endued with cupidity and delusion. Those who, without procrastination, perform acts, impelled thereto by expectation,[5] become repeatedly born in this world and sport in joy. Those men who, endued with learning and wisdom, perform acts with faith, free from expectations, and possessed of concentration of mind, are said to percieve clearly.[6] I shall, after this, declare how the association and the dissociation takes place of Kshetrajna and Nature. Ye best of men, listen. The relation here is said to be that between the object and the subject.*[7-8] Purusha is always the subject; and nature has been said to be the object. It has been explained, by what has been said in a previous portion of the discourse where it has been pointed out, that they exist after the manner of the gnat and the Udumvara.[9] An object of enjoyment as it is, Nature is unintelligent and knows nothing. He, however, who enjoys it, is said to know it. Kshetrajna being enjoyer, Nature is enjoyed.[10] The wise have said that Nature is always made up of pairs of opposites (and consists of qualities). Kshetrajna is, on the other hand, destitute of pairs of opposites, devoid of parts, eternal, and free, as regards its essence, from qualities.[11] He resides in everything alike, and walks, with knowledge. He always enjoys Nature as a lotus leaf (enjoys) water.[12] Possessed of knowledge, he is never tainted even if brought into contact with all the qualities.[13] Without doubt, Purusha is unattached like the unsteady drop of water on the lotus-leaf. This is the certain conclusion (of the scriptures) that Nature is the property of Purusha.[14] The relation between these two (*viz.*, Purusha and Nature) is

---

* The thinking or enjoying agent is subject, and that which is thought or enjoyed is object. Subject and object are two well known words in Sir W Hamilton's philosophy. I follow Telang in adopting them.—T.

like that existing between matter and its maker. As one goes into a dark place taking a light with him,[15] even so those who wish for the Supreme proceed with the light of Nature.* As long as matter and quality (which are like oil and wick) exist, so long the light shines.[16] The flame, however, becomes extinguished when matter and quality (or oil and wick) are exhausted. Thus Nature is manifest; while Purusha is said to be unmanifest.[17] Understand this, ye learned Brāhmanas! Well, I shall now tell you something more. With even a thousand (explanations), one that has a bad understanding succeeds not in acquiring knowledge.[18] One, however, that is endued with intelligence succeeds in attaining happiness. through only a fourth share (of explanations). Thus should the accomplishment of duty be understood as dependent on means.[19] For the man of intelligence, having knowledge of means, succeeds in attaining to supreme felicity.[20] As some man travelling along a road without provisions for his journey, proceeds with great discomfort and may even meet with destruction before he reaches the end of his journey, even so should it be known that in acts there may or may not be fruits.†[21] The examination of what is agreeable and what disagreeable in one's own self is productive of benefit.‡ The progress in life of a man that is devoid of the perception of truth is like that of a man who rashly journeys on a long road unseen before. The progress, however, of those that are endued with intelligence is like that of men who journey along the same road, riding on a car unto which are yoked

---

* 'Sattwa pradipa,' rendered 'light of Nature,' implies, as Nilakantha explains, knowledge, which is a manifestation of Nature. Arjuna Misra's interpretation seems to be better. He says that knowledge,—that is, knowledge of truth,—is acpuired by the self through Nature.—T.

† The sense seems to be this: one who proceeds on a journey must provide oneself with the necessary means, otherwise one is sure to feel discomfort or meet with even destruction. So, in the journey of life, one must provide oneself with knowledge as the means. One may then avoid all discomfort and danger. Action does not constitute the proper means. It may or may not produce fruits.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, one should not care for the external.—T.

(fleet) steeds and which moves with swiftness. Having ascended to the top of a mountain, one should not cast one's eyes on the surface of the earth.*[22-24] Seeing a man, even though travelling on a car, afflicted and rendered insensible by pain, the man of intelligence journeys on a car as long as there is a car-path.†[25] The man of learning, when he sees the car-path end, abandons his car for going on. Even thus proceeds the man of intelligence who is conversant with the ordinances respecting truth and Yoga (or Knowledge and Devotion).[26] Conversant with the qualities, such a man proceeds, comprehending what is next and next.‡[27] As one that plunges, without a boat, into the terrible ocean, with only one's two arms, through delusion, undoubtedly wishes for destruction;[28] while the man of wisdom, conversant with distinctions, goes into the water, with a boat equipt with oars, and soon crosses the lake without fatigue, and having crossed it attains to the other shore and casts off the boat, freed from the thought of *meum*.[29] This has been already explained by the illustration of the car and the pedestrian. One who has been overwhelmed by delusion in consequence of attachment, adheres to it like a fisherman to his boat.[30] Overcome by the idea of *meum*, one wanders within its narrow range. After embarking on a boat it is not possible in moving about on land.[31] Similarly, it is not possible in moving about on water after one has mounted on a car. There are thus various actions with regard to various objects.[32] And as action is performed in this world, so does it result to those that perform them. That which is void of smell, void of taste, and void of touch and sound,[33] that which is meditated upon by the sages

---

* *I. e.*, one need not do acts enjoined by the scriptures after one has attained to knowledge which is the highest seat.—T.

† The sense is this: riding on a car may not always be comfortable. As long as there is a car-path, one should travel on one's car. If, however, the road be such as not to be fit for a car to proceed along it, one should avoid a car in going over it, for the car, instead of conducing to comfort, would, on such a path, be productive of only discomfort.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, first action with desire; then action without desire; then knowledge, according to Arjuna Misra. Nilakantha explains that action is first, then Yoga; then the state of Hansa or Paramahansa.—T.

with the aid of their understanding, is said to be Pradhāna. Now, Pradhāna is unmanifest. A development of the unmanifest is Mahat.[34] A development of Pradhāna when it has become Mahat is Egoism. From egoism is produced the development called the great elements.[35] And of the great elements respectively, the objects of sense are said to be the developments. The unmanifest is of the nature of seed. It is productive in its essence.[36] It has been heard by us that the great soul has the virtues of a seed, and that is a product. Egoism is of the nature of seed and is a product again and again.[37] And the five great elements are of the nature of seed and products. The objects of the five great elements are endued with the nature of seed, and yield products. These have Chitta for their property. Among them, space has one equality; wind is said to have two.[38-39] Light, it is said, is endued with three qualities; and water as possessed of four qualities. Earth, teeming with mobiles and immobiles, should be known as possessed of five qualities.[40] She is a goddess that is the source of all entities and abounds with examples of the agreeable and the disagreeable. Sound, likewise touch, color, taste, and smell numbering the fifth,[41]—these are the five qualities of earth, ye foremost of regenerate persons! Smell always belongs to earth, and smell is said to be of various kinds.[42] I shall state at length the numerous qualities of smell. Smell is agreeable or disagreeable, sweet, sour, pungent, diffusive and compact, oily and dry, and clear.[43] Thus smell, which belongs to the earth, should be known as of ten kinds.*[44] Sound, touch, likewise color, and taste have been said to be the qualities of water. I shall now speak of the qualities of Taste. Taste has been said to be of various kinds.[45] Sweet, sour, pungent, bitter, astingent, and saline likewise. Taste, which has been said to appertain to water, is thus of six varieties.[46] Sound, touch, and likewise color,—these are the three qualities which light is said to be possessed of. Color is the quality of light, and color is said to be of

---

* 'Katu' is not bitter but pungent or sharp, as that which is attached to chillies.—T.

various kinds.[47] White, dark, likewise red, blue, yellow, and grey also, and short, long, minute, gross, square and circular,[48] of these twelve varieties is color which belongs to light. These should be understood by Brāhmanas venerable for years, conversant with duties, and truthful in speech.[49] Sound and touch should be known as the two qualities of wind. Touch has been said to be of various kinds.[50] Rough, cold and likewise hot, tender and clear, hard, oily, smooth, slippery, painful and soft,[51] of twelve kinds is touch, which is the quality of wind, as said by Brāhmanas crowned with success, conversant with duties, and possessed of a sight of truth.[52] Now, space has only one quality, and that is said to be sound. I shall speak at length of the numerous qualities of sound.[53] Shadaja, Rishabha, together with Gāndhāra, Madhyama, and likewise Panchama; after this should be known Nishāda, and then Dhaivata,* besides these, there are agreeable sounds and disagreeable sounds, compact, and of many ingredients.[54] Sound which is born of space should thus be known to be of ten kinds. Space is the highest of the (five) elements. Egoism is above it.[55] Above egoism is understanding. Above understanding is the soul. Above the soul is the Unmanifest. Above the Unmanifest is Purusha.[56] One who knows which is superior and inferior among existent creatures, who is conversant with the ordinances in respect of all acts, and who constitutes himself the soul of all creatures, attains to the Unfading Soul.—' "[57]

Section LI.

" '—Brahman said,—Since the mind is the ruler of these five elements, in the matter of controlling and bringing them forth, the mind, therefore, is the soul of the elements.[1] The mind always presides over the great elements. The understanding proclaims power, and is called the Kshetrajna.†[2] The

---

* These are the notes of the Hindu Gamut.—T.

† The understanding operates on what is placed before it by the mind. The understanding, therefore, is, as it were, the lord exercising power or sovereignty, being served by the mind.—T.

mind yokes the senses as a charioteer yokes good steeds. The senses, the mind; and the understanding are always joined to the Kshetrajna.[3] The individual soul, mounting the chariot to which big steeds are yoked and which has the understanding for the reins, drives about on all sides.[4] With all the senses attached to it (for steeds), with the mind for the charioteer, and the understanding for the eternal reins, exists the great Brahma-car.[5] Verily, that man endued with learning and wisdom who always understands the Brahma-car in this way, is never overwhelmed by delusion in the midst of all entities.[6] This forest of Brahma begins with the unmanifest and ends with gross objects. It includes mobile and immobile entities, and receives light from the radiance of the sun and the moon, and is adorned with planets and constellations. It is decked, again, on all sides with nets of rivers and mountains. It is always embellished likewise by diverse kinds of waters. It is the means of subsistence for all creatures. It is, again, the goal of all living creatures. In that forest the Kshetrajna always moves about.[7-9] Whatever entities exist in this world, mobile and immobile, are the very first to be dissolved away. After this (are dissolved) those qualities which compose all entities.[10] After the qualities (are dissolved) the five elements. Such is the gradation of entities. Gods, men, Gandharvas, Piçāchas, Asuras, (and) Rākshasas,[11] have all sprung from Nature, and not from actions, nor from a cause. The Brāhmanas, who are creators of the universe, are born here again and again.[12] All that springs from them dissolves, when the time comes, in those very five great elements like billows in the ocean.[13] All the great elements are beyond those elements that compose the universe. He that is released from those five elements goes to the highest goal.[14] The puissant Prajāpati created all this by the mind only. After the same manner Rishis attained to the status of deities by the aid of penance.[15] After the same manner, those who have achieved perfection, who were capable of the concentration of Yoga, and who subsist on fruits and roots, likewise perceive the triple world by penance.[16] Medicines and herbs and all the diverse sciences are acquired by means of penance alone, for all acquisition has

penance for its root.[17] Whatever is difficult of acquisition, difficult to learn, difficult to vanquish, difficult to pass through, are all achievable by penance, for penance is irresistible.[18] One that drinks alcoholic liquors, one that slays a Brāhmana, one that steals, one that destroys a fœtus, one that violates one's preceptor's bed, becomes cleansed of such sin by penance well performed.[19] Human beings, Pitris, deities, (sacrificial) animals, beasts and birds, and all other creatures mobile and immobile,[20] by always devoting themselves to penances, become crowned with success by penance alone. In like manner, the dieties, endued with great powers of illusion, have attained to Heaven.[21] Those who without idleness perform acts with expectations, being full of egoism, approach the presence of Prajāpati.[22] Those high-souled ones, however, who are devoid of mineness and freed from egoism through the pure contemplation of Yoga, attain to the great and highest regions.[23] Those who best understand the self, having attained to Yoga contemplation and having their minds always cheerful, enter into the unmanifest accumulation of happiness.[24] Those persons who are freed from the idea of mineness as also from egoism and who are reborn after having attained to the fulness of Yoga contemplation, enter (when they depart from such life) into the highest region reserved for the great, *viz.*, the Unmanifest.[25] Born from that same unmanifest (principle) and attaining to the same once more, freed from the qualities of Darkness and Passion, and adhering to only the quality of Goodness,[26] one becomes released from every sin and creates all things.* Such a one should be known to be Kshetrajna in perfection. He that knows him knows the Veda.†[27] Attaining to pure knowledge from (restraining) the mind, the ascetic should sit self restrained. One necessarily becomes

---

* 'Sarvān srijati,' *i. e.*, creates all things by attaining to the condition of the universal cause, for the unmanifest is the universal cause. Between such a one and the Supreme Soul there is no difference. Even this is said in the last sentence.—T.

† The man who reads the book called Veda is not truly conversant with the Veda. He, however, who knows Kshetrajna, is regarded as truly knowing the Veda.—T.

that on which one's mind is set. This is an eternal mystery.[28] That which has the unmanifest for its beginning and gross qualities for its end, has been said to have Ne-science for its indication. But do you understand that whose nature is destitute of qualities.[29] Of two syllables is Mrityu (death); of three syllable is the eternal Brahma. Mineness is death, and the reverse of mineness is the eternal.*[30] Some men who are led by bad understanding applaud action. Those, however, that are numbered among the high-souled ancients never applaud action.[31] By action is a creature born with body which is made up of the sixteen.† (True) Knowledge swallows up Purusha (Self with consciousness of body). Even this is what is highly acceptable to eaters of Amrita.‡[32] Therefore, those whose vision extends to the other end (of the ocean of life) have no attachment to actions. This Purusha, however, is full of knowledge and not full of action.$[33] He dies not who understands Him that is immortal, immutable, incomprehensible, eternal and indestructible—Him that is the restrained Soul and that transcends all attachments.[34] He who thus understands the Soul to which there is nothing prior, which is uncreated, immutable, unconquered, and incomprehensible even to those that are eaters of nectar, certainly becomes himself incomprehensible and immortal through these means.[35]

---

* The argument is that 'Mrityu' or death being of two syllables, the correspondence is justifiable between it and 'Mama' or mineness which also is of two syllables. So in the case of Brahma and 'na mama.' Of course, what is meant by mineness being death and not-mineness being Brahman or emancipation, cannot be unintelligible to one who has carefully read the preceding sections.—T.

† *I. e.*, the five great elements, four organs of knowledge with mind, and the four organs of action.—T.

‡ The word 'Purusha' here is used in the sense of 'dehābhimāni Jiva' or individual self with consciousness of body. True knowledge destroys this condition of Jiva, for the man of knowledge identifies himself with the universe and thereby assimilates himself to Brahma. By eaters of Amrita are meant they who never take any food without offering portions thereof to the deities, Pitris, and guests. Of course, Yogins of piety are implied by it.—T.

$ 'Purusha' here implies Jiva divested of consciousness of body.—T.

Expelling all impressions and restraining the soul in the soul, he understands that auspicious Brahma than which nothing greater exists.[36] Upon the understanding becoming clear, he succeeds in attaining to tranquillity. The indication of tranquillity is like what takes place in a dream.*[37] This is the goal of these emancipated ones who are intent on knowlenge. They behold all those movements which are born of succeessive developments.†[38] This is the goal of those who are unattached to the world. This is the eternal usage. This is the acquisition of men of knowledge. This is the uncensured mode of conduct.[39] This goal is capable of being attained by one that is alike to all creatures, that is without attachment, that is without expectations, and that looks equally on all things.[40] I have now declared everything to you, ye foremost of regenerate Rishis! Do you act in this way forthwith; you will then acquire success!—[41]

"'The preceptor continued,—Thus addressed by the preceptor Brahman, those high-souled sages acted accordingly and then attained to many regions (of great felicity).[42] Do thou also, O blessed one, duly act according to the words of Brahman as declared by me, O thou of pure soul! Thou wilt then attain to success!—'"[43]

"Vāsudeva said,—'Thus instructed in the principles of high religion by the preceptor, the pupil, O son of Kunti, did everything accordingly, and then attained to Emancipation.[44] Having done all that he should have done, the pupil, O perpetuater of Kuru's race, attained to that seat repairing whither one has not to grieve.'[45]

"Arjuna said,—'Who, indeed, was that Brāhmana, O Krishna, and who the pupil, O Janārddana! Truly, if it is fit to be heard by me, do thou then tell me, O lord!'[46]

---

* The meaning is this: in a dream what is seen is all unreal. So, when tranquillity has been attained, all the surroundings become unreal. Nilakantha gives a slightly different interpretation; it is this: when tranquillity has been attained, the Soul lives without attachment to the body and all external objects. Indeed, the Soul then lives completely in itself even as it works in course of a dream.—T.

† The sense is that they behold all worldly objects, present, past and future, which are, of course, due to development of previous causes.—T.

"Vāsudeva said,—'I am the preceptor, O mighty-armed one, and know that the mind is my pupil. Through my affection for thee, O Dhananjaya, I have related this mystery to thee![47] If thou hast any love for me, O perpetuator of Kuru's race, do thou then, after having heard these instructions relating to the Soul, always act duly (according to them), O thou of excellent vows![48] Then when this religion has been duly practised, O mower of foes, thou wilt become freed from all thy sins and attain to absolute emancipation.[49] Formerly, when the hour of battle came, this very religion, O thou of mighty-arms, was declared by me (to thee)! Do thou, therefore, set thy mind on it![50] And now, O chief of Bharata's race, it is long since that I saw the lord my sire. I wish to see him again, with thy leave, O Phālguna!'"[51]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Unto Krishna who had said so, Dhananjaya said in reply,—'We shall go today from this town to the city called after the elephant.[52] Meeting king Yudhishthira of virtuous soul there, and informing him (of thy intention) thou shalt then repair to thy own city!'"[53]

Section LII.

"Vaiçampāyana said,—'After this, Krishna ordered Dāruka, saying,—'Let my car be yoked.' Within a very short space of time Dāruka informed (his master), saying,—'It has been yoked.'[1] The son of Pāndu then commanded all his attendants, saying,—'Prepare yourselves and be ready. We shall repair today to the city named after the elephant.'[2] Thus addressed, O king, those troops accoutred themselves, and informed Prithā's son of immeasurable energy, saying,—'Everything is equipt.'[3] Then those two, *viz.*, Krishna and the son of Pāndu, ascended their car and proceeded on the journey, the loving friends engaged the while in delightful conversation.[4] Unto Vāsudeva seated on the car, Dhananjaya of great energy once more said these words, O chief of Bharata's race![5]—'O perpetuater of the Vrishni race, the king has obtained victory through thy grace. All his foes have been slain, and he has

recovered his kingdom without a thorn in it (to make it disagreeable).[6] O slayer of Madhu, through thee the Pāndavas are endued with a powerful protector. Having obtained thee for our raft we have crossed the Kuru ocean.[7] O thou that hast this universe for thy handiwork, salutations to thee, O Soul of the universe, O best of all beings in the universe! I know thee in that measure in which I am approved by thee.*[8] O slayer of Madhu, the soul of every creature is always born of thy energy. Playful sport (in the form of creation, preservation, and destruction) is thine. Earth and sky, O lord, are thy illusion.[9] This whole universe, consisting of mobile and immobile objects, is established on thee. Thou createst, by modification, the four orders of Being (*viz.*, viviparous, oviparous, filth-born, and vegetables).[10] Thou createst the Earth, the Welkin, and Heaven, O slayer of Madhu. The stainless lunar light is thy smile. The seasons are thy senses.[11] The ever-moving wind is thy breath, and death, existing eternally, is thy wrath. In thy grace is the goddess of prosperity. Verily, Cree is always established in thee, O thou of the highest intelligence![12] Thou art the sport (in which creatures engage); thou art their contentment; thou their intelligence, thou their forgiveness, thou their inclinations, thou their beauty. Thou art the universe with its mobile and immobile objects. At the end of the cycle, it is thou, O sinless one, that art called destruction.[13] I am incapable of reciting all thy qualities in course of even a long period. Thou art the Soul and the Supreme Soul. I bow to thee, O thou of eyes like the (petals of the) lotus.[14] O thou that art irresistible, I have learnt it from Nārada and Devala and the Island-born (Vyāsa), and the Kuru grandsire also,[15] that all this (universe) rests on thee. Thou art the one Lord of all creatures. This, O sinless one, that thou hast declared unto me in consequence of thy favour for myself,[16] I shall duly

---

* This line is rather obscure. The sense seems to be this: no one can know the Supreme Deity if it is not the latter's pleasure to be known. One, therefore, understands Him in exactly that measure in which it is His pleasure to be known.—T.

accomplish in its entirety, O Janārddana! Exceedingly wonderful is this which thou hast done from desire of doing what is agreeable to us,[17] *viz.*, the destruction in battle of the Kaurava (prince), the son of Dhritarāshtra. That host had been burnt by thee which I (subsequently) vanquished in battle.[18] That feat was achieved by thee in consequence of which victory became mine! By the power of thy intelligence was shown the means by which was duly effected the destruction of Duryodhana in battle, as also of Karna, as of the sinful king of the Sindhus, and Bhuriçravas.[19-20] I shall accomplish all that which, O son of Devaki, pleased with me thou hast declared to myself. I do not entertain any scruple in this.[21] Repairing to king Yudhishthira of righteous soul, I shall, O sinless one, urge him to dismiss thee, O thou that art conversant with every duty![22] O lord, thy departure for Dwārakā meets with my approbation. Thou shalt soon see my maternal uncle, O Janārddana![23] Thou shalt also see the irresistible Valadeva and other chiefs of the Vrishni race!'—Thus conversing with each other, the two reached the city named after the elephant.[24] They then, with cheerful hearts, and without any anxiety, entered the palace of Dhritarāshtra which resembled the mansion of Cakra.[25] They then saw, O monarch, king Dhritarāshtra, and Vidura of great intelligence, and king Yudhishthira;[26] and the irresistible Bhimasena, and the two sons of Mādri by Pāndu; and king Dhritarāshtra seated; and the unvanquished Yuyutsu;[27] and Gāndhāri of great wisdom, and Prithā, and the beautiful Krishnā, and the other ladies of Bharata's race with Subhadrā counting first.[28] They also saw all those ladies that used to wait upon Gāndhāri. Then approaching king Dhritarāshtra, those two chastisers of foes[29] announced their names and touched his feet. Indeed, those high-souled ones also touched the feet of Gāndhāri and Prithā[30] and king Yudhishthira the just, and Bhima. Embracing Vidura also, they enquired after his welfare.[31] In the company of all those persons, Arjuna and Krishna then approached king Dhritarāshtra (again). Night came and then king Dhritarāshtra of great intelligence dismissed all those perpetuaters of Kuru's race as also Janārddana for retiring to

their respective chambers. Permitted by the king, all of them entered their respective apartments.[32-33] Krishna of great energy proceeded to the apartments of Dhananjaya. Worshipped duly and furnished with every object of comfort and enjoyment,[34] Krishna of great intelligence passed the night in happy sleep with Dhananjaya as his companion. When the night passed away and morning came, the two heroes,[35] finishing their morning rites and decking their persons properly, proceeded to the mansion of king Yudhishthira the just. There Yudhishthira the just, of great might, sate with his ministers.[36] The two high-souled ones, entering that well-adorned chamber, beheld king Yudhishthira the just like the two Açwins beholding the chief of the celestials.[37] Meeting the king, he of Vrishni's race, as also that foremost hero of Kuru's race, obtaining the permission of Yudhishthira who was highly pleased with them, sat themselves down.[38] Then the king, gifted with great intelligence, seeing those two friends, became desirous of addressing them. Soon that best of monarchs, that foremost of speakers, addressed them in the following words.[39]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Ye heroes, ye foremost ones of Yadu's and Kuru's race, it seems that ye two are desirous of saying something to me. Do ye say what is in your mind. I shall soon accomplish it. Do not hesitate!'[40]

"Thus addressed, Phālguna, well conversant with speech, humbly approached king Yudhishthira the just and then said these words.[41]—'Vāsudeva here, of great prowess, O king, is long absent from home. He desires, with thy permission, to see his sire.[42] Let him go, if thou thinkest it meet, to the city of the Ānarttas! It behooveth thee, O hero, to grant him permission!'[43]

"Yudhishthira said,—'O lotus-eyed one, blessed be thou! O slayer of Madhu, do thou go this very day to the city of Dwārāvati for seeing, O puissant one, that foremost one of Sura's race![44] O mighty-armed Keçava, thy departure is approved by me! Thou hast not seen my maternal uncle as also the goddess Devaki, for a long time![45] Meeting my maternal uncle and repairing to Valadeva also, O giver of

honors, thou wilt, O thou of great wisdom, worship both of them at my word as they deserve.*[46] Do thou also think of me daily as also of Bhima, that foremost of mighty men, and of Phālguna and Nakula and Sahadeva, O giver of honours![47] Having seen the Ānarttas, and thy sire, O mighty-armed one, and the Vrishnis, thou wilt come back to my horse-sacrifice, O sinless one![48] Do thou then depart, taking with thee diverse kinds of gems and various sorts of wealth. Do thou, O hero of the Sātwata race, also take with thee whatever else thou likest![49] It is through thy grace, O Keçava, that the whole Earth, O hero, has come under our dominion and all our foes have been slain!'[50]

"When king Yudhishthira the just of Kuru's race said so, Vāsudeva, that foremost of men, said these words (in reply).[51]

"Vāsudeva said,—'O mighty-armed one, all jewels and gems, all wealth, and the entire Earth, are thine and thine alone. Whatever wealth exists in my abode, thou, O lord, art always the owner thereof!'[52] Unto him Yudhishthira, the son of Dharma, said,—'Be it so'—and then duly worshipped (Krishna) the eldest brother, endued with great energy, of Gada. Vāsudeva then proceeded to his paternal aunt (Kunti). Duly honouring her, he circumambulated her person.[53] He was properly accosted by her in return, and then by all the others having Vidura for their first. The four-armed eldest brother of Gada then set out from Nāgapura on his excellent car.†[54] Placing his sister, the lady Subhadrā, on the car, the mighty-armed Janārddana then, with the permission of both Yudhishthira and (Kunti) his paternal aunt, set out, accompanied by a large train of citizens.[55] The hero who had the foremost of apes on his banner, as also Sātyaki, and the two sons of Mādravati, and Vidura of immeasurable intelligence,

---

* Krishna's father Vasudeva is Yudhishthira's maternal uncle. Yudhishthira asks Krishna to worship Vasudeva and Valadeva on his behalf, *i. e.*, he charges Krishna to bear to them a mesage of respect and love from him.—T.

† The city of Hastināpura is sometimes called Nāgapura, both 'Hasti' and 'Nāga' being words expressive of the elephant. 'The city called after the elephant' is the usual description of the Kuru capital.—T.

and Bhima himself whose tread resembled that of a prince of elephants, all followed Mādhava.[56] Janārddana of mighty energy, causing all those extenders of the Kuru kingdom and Vidura also to return, addressed Dāruka, and Sātyaki, saying,—'Urge the steeds to speed.'[57] Then that grinder of hostile masses, *viz.*, Janārddana of great prowess, accompanied by Sātyaki, the foremost one of Cini's race, proceeded to the city of the Ānarttas, after having slain all his foes, like He of a hundred sacrifices proceeding to Heaven (after slaughtering all his foes)."[58]

Section LIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—'As he of Vrishni's race was proceeding to Dwārakā, those foremost princes of Bharata's race, those chastisers of foes, embraced him and fell back with their attendants.[1] Phālguna repeatedly embraced the Vrishni hero, and as long as he was within the range of vision, he repeatedly turned his eyes towards him.[2] With great difficulty, the son of Prithā withdrew his gaze that had fallen on Govinda. The unvanquished Krishna also (did the same).[3] The indications that were manifested on the occasion of that high-souled one's departure, I shall now detail. Do thou listen to me.[4] The wind blew with great speed before the car, clearing the path of sand-grains and dust and thorns.[5] Vāsava rained pure and fragrant showers and celestial flowers before the wielder of Cāranga.[6] As the mighty-armed hero proceeded, he came upon the desert ill-supplied with water. There he beheld that foremost of ascetics, named Utanka, of immeasurable energy.[7] The hero of large eyes and great energy worshipped that ascetic. He was then worshipped by the ascetic in return. Vāsudeva then enquired after his welfare.[8] That foremost of Brāhmanas, *viz.*, Utanka, politely accosted by Mādhava, honoured him duly and then addressed him in these words.[9]—'O Caurin, having repaired to the mansions of the Kurus and the Pāndavas, hast thou succeeded in establishing a durable understanding between them such as should exist between brothers? It behooves thee to tell me every-

thing.[10] Dost thou come, O Keçava, after having united them in peace,—them that are thy relatives and that are ever dear to thee, O foremost one of Vrishni's race?[11] Will the five sons of Pāndu, and the children of Dhritarāshtra, O scorcher of foes, sport in the world in joy with thee?[12] Will all the kings enjoy happiness in their respective kingdoms, in consequence of the pacification of the Kauravas brought about by thee?[13] Has that trust, O son, which I had always reposed on thee, borne fruit with regard to the Kauravas?'[14]

"The blessed and holy one said,—'I strove my best at first, for bringing about a good understanding, in regard to the Kauravas. When I could not by any means succeed in establishing them on peace,[15] it happened that all of them, with their relatives and kinsmen, met with death. It is impossible to transgress destiny by either intelligence or might.[16] O great Rishi, O sinless one, this also cannot be unknown to thee. They (the Kauravas) transgressed the counsels which Bhishma and Vidura gave them referring to me.*[17] Encountering one another they then became guests of Yama's abode. Only the five Pāndavas constitute the remnant of the unslain, all their friends and all their children having been slaughtered. All the sons of Dhritarāshtra also, with their children and kinsmen, have been slain.'[18] When Krishna had said these words, Utanka, filled with wrath, and with eyes expanded in rage, addressed him in these words.[19]

"Utanka said,—'Since, though able, O Krishna, thou didst not rescue those foremost ones of Kuru's race, who were thy relatives and, therefore, dear to thee, I shall, without doubt, curse thee![20] Since thou didst not forcibly compel them to forbear, therefore, O slayer of Madhu, I shall, filled with wrath, denounce a curse on thee![21] It seems, O Mādhava, that, though fully able (to save them), thou wert indifferent to these foremost of Kurus who, overwhelmed by insincerity and hypocrisy, have all met with destruction!'[22]

"Vāsudeva said,—'O scion of Bhrigu's race, listen to what

---

* 'Mahyam' is equal to 'mām uddiçya,' *i. e.*, referring to my divine nature.—T.

I say in detail. Do thou accept my apologies also. O thou of Bhrigu's race, thou art an ascetic![23] After having heard my words relating to the soul, thou mayst then utter thy curse. No man is able, by a little ascetic merit, to put me down.[24] O foremost of ascetics, I do not wish to see the destruction of all thy penances! Thou hast a large measure of blazing penances. Thou hast gratified thy preceptors and seniors.*[25] O foremost of regenerate ones, I know that thou hast observed the rules of Brahmacharyya from the days of thy infancy. I do not, therefore, desire the loss or diminution of thy penances achieved with so much pain!'"[26]

SECTION LIV.

"Utanka said,—'Do thou, O Keçava, tell me that faultless Adhyātma. Having heard thy discourse I shall ordain what is for thy good or denounce a curse to thee, O Janārddana!'[1]

"Vāsudeva said,—'Know that the three qualities of Darkness and Passion and Goodness exist, depending on me as their refuge. So also, O regenerate one, know that the Rudras and the Vasus have sprung from me.[2] In me are all creatures, and in all creatures do I exist; know this. Let no doubt arise in thy mind respecting this.[3] So also, O regenerate one, know that all the tribes of the Daityas, all the Yakshas, Gandharvas, Rākshasas, Nāgas, Apsaras, have sprung from me.[4] Whatever has been called existent and non-existent, whatever is manifest and not-manifest, whatever is destructible and indestructible, all have me for their soul.[5] Those fourfold courses of duty which, O ascetic, are known to attach to the (four) modes of life, and all the Vedic duties, have me for their soul.[6] Whatever is non-existent, whatever is existent and non-existent, and whatever transcends that which is existent and non-existent,—all these which constitute the universe—are from me. There is nothing higher (or beyond) me

---

* An ascetic loses his penances by cursing another rightly or wrongly. Hence, forgiveness was always practised by the Brāhmanas who were ascetics. A Brāhmana's strength consisted in forgiveness. The more forgiving he was, the more powerful he became.—T.

who am the eternal god of gods.*[7] O perpetuater of Bhrigu's race, know that all the Vedas beginning with (the original syllable) Om are identical with me. Know, O son of Bhrigu's race, that I am the sacrificial stake; I am the Soma (drunk in sacrifices); I am the Charu (cooked in sacrifices for being offered to the deities); I am the Homa (that is performed); I am those acts which sacrificers perform for gratifying the deities; I am even the pourer of the sacrificial libation; and I am the Havi or libation that is poured. I am the Adhyaryu. I am the Kalpaka; and I am the highly sanctified sacrificial Havi. It is me whom the Udgātri, in the great sacrifice, hymns by the sound of his songs. In all rites of expiation, O Brāhmana, the utterers of auspicious Mantras and benedictions fraught with peace hymn my praises who am the artificer, O foremost of regenerate ones, of the universe.[8-10] Know, O best of regenerate persons, that Dharma is my eldest-born offspring, sprung from my mind, O learned Brāhmana, whose essence is compassion for all creatures.[11] Constantly transforming myself, I take birth in diverse wombs, O best of men, for upholding that son of mine, with the aid of men now existing in or departed from the world. Indeed, I do this for protecting Righteousness and for establishing it.[12] In those forms that I assume for the purpose, I am known, O son of Bhrigu's race, in the three worlds as Vishnu and Brahman and Cakra. I am the origin and I am the destruction of all things.[13] I am the creator of all existent objects and I am their destroyer. Knowing no change myself, I am the destroyer of all those creatures that live in sinfulness.[14] In every Yuga I have to repair the causeway of Righteousness, entering into diverse kinds of wombs from desire of doing good to my creatures.[15] When, O son of Bhrigu's race, I live in the order of the deities, I then verily

* The first 'asat' or non-existent refers to such objects as the horns of the hare. The second, *viz.*, 'sadasat,' or existent and non existent, refers to such objects as exist and meet with destruction. 'Sadasat param' or that which transcends the existent and non-existent, refers to the unmanifest. The universe consists of these three. All this is from Vāsudeva.—T.

act in every respect as a deity.[16] When I live in the order of the Gandharvas, I then, O son of Bhrigu's race, act in every respect as a Gandharva.[17] When I live in the order of the Nāgas I then act as a Nāga, and when I live in the order of Yakshas or that of Rākshasas, I act after the manner of that order.[18] Born now in the order of humanity I must act as a human being. I appealed to them (the Kauravas) most piteously. But stupefied as they were and deprived of their senses, they refused to accept my words.[19] I frightened them, filled with wrath, referring to some great fear (as the consequence of their slighting my message). But once more I showed themselves my usual (human) form.[20] Possessed as they were of unrighteousness, and assailed by the virtue of Time, all of them have been righteously slain in battle, and have, without doubt, gone to Heaven.[21] The Pāndavas also, O best of Brāhmanas, have acquired great fame. I have thus told thee all that thou hadst asked me.' "[22]

SECTION LV.

"Utanka said,—'I know thee, O Janārddana, to be the creator of the universe. Without doubt, this knowledge that I have is the result of thy grace towards me.[1] O thou of unfading glory, my heart is possessed of cheerful tranquillity in consequence of its being devoted to thee. Know, O chastiser of foes, that my heart is no longer inclined to curse thee![2] If, O Janārddana, I deserve the least grace from thee, do thou then show me once thy sovereign form!' "[3]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Gratified with him, the holy one then showed Utanka that eternal Vaishnava form which Dhananjaya of great intelligence had seen.[4] Utanka beheld the high-souled Vāsudeva of universal form, endued with mighty-arms. The effulgence of that form was like that of a blazing fire or a thousond suns. It stood before him filling all space. It had faces on every side.[5] Beholding that high and wonderful Vaishnava form of Vishnu, in fact, seeing the Supreme Lord (in that guise), the Brāhmana Utanka became filled with wonder.[6]

"Utanka said,—'O thou whose handiwork is the universe, I bow to thee, O soul of the universe, O parent of all things! With thy feet thou hast covered the whole Earth, and with thy head thou fillest the firmament![7] That which lies between the Earth and the firmament has been filled by thy stomach. All the points of the compass are covered by thy arms. O thou of unfading glory, thou art all this![8] Do thou withdraw this excellent and indestructible form of thine. I wish to behold thee now in thy own (human) form which, too, is eternal!'"[9]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Unto him, O Janamejaya, Govinda of gratified soul said these words,—'Do thou ask for some boon!—Unto him Utanka, however, said,[10]—'Even this is a sufficient boon from thee for the present, O thou of great splendour, in that, O Krishna, I have beheld this form of thine, O foremost of all beings![11] Krishna, however, once more said unto him,—'Do not scruple in this matter! This must be done! A sight of my form cannot be fruitless![12]

"Utanka said,—'I must accomplish that, O lord, which thou thinkest should be done! I desire to have water wherever my wish for it may arise. Water is scarce in such deserts![13] Withdrawing that energy, the Supreme Lord then said unto Utanka,—'Whenever thou wilt require water, think of me!' Having said so, he proceeded towards Dwārakā.[14] Subsequently, one day, the illustrious Utanka, solicitous of water and exceedingly thirsty, wandered over the desert. In course of his wanderings he thought of Krishna of unfading glory.[15] The intelligent Rishi then beheld in that desert a naked hunter (of the Chandāla class), all besmeared with dirt, surrounded by a pack of dogs.[16] Extremely fierce-looking, he carried a sword and was armed with bow and arrows. That foremost of regenerate ones beheld copious streams of water issuing from the urinary organs of that hunter.[17] As soon as Utanka had thought of Krishna, that hunter smilingly addressed him, saying,—'O Utanka, O thou of Bhrigu's race, do thou accept this water from me.[18] Beholding thee afflicted by thirst I have felt great compassion for thee!' Thus addressed by the hunter, the ascetic showed no inclination to

accept that water.[19] The intelligent Utanka even began to censure Krishna of unfading glory. The hunter, however, repeatedly addressed the Rishi, saying,—'Drink!'[20] The ascetic refused to drink the water thus offered. On the other hand, with heart afflicted by hunger and thirst, he even gave way to wrath. Disregarded by the high-souled Rishi through that conviction,[21] the hunter, O king, with his pack of dogs, disappeared there and then. Beholding that (wonderful) disappearance, Utanka became filled with shame.[22] He even thought that Krishna, that slayer of foes, had beguiled him (in the mater of the boon he had granted). Soon after, the holder of the conch and discus and mace, endued with great intelligence, came to Utanka by the way (along which the hunter had come). Addressing Krishna, the Brāhmana said,—'O foremost of beings, it was scarcely proper for thee to offer water unto foremost of Brāhmanas in the form of a hunter's urine, O lord!' Unto Utanka who said these words, Janārddana of great intelligence replied, comforting him with many soft words,—'That form which it was proper to assume for offering thee water, in that form was water offered to thee! But, alas, thou couldst not understand it! The wielder of the thunderbolt, Purandara, was requested by me for thy sake.[23-27] My words to that puissant deity were,—Do thou give nectar in the form of water unto Utanka.—The chief of the celestials replied to me, saying,—It is not proper that a mortal should become immortal![28] Let some other boon be granted to Utanka!—O son of Bhrigu's race, these words were repeatedly addressed to me. The lord of Cachi, however, was once more requested by me in these words, *viz.*, even nectar should be given to Utanka![29]—The chief of the celestials then, comforting me, said,—If, O thou of great intelligence, nectar is to be given to him,[30] I shall then assume the form of a hunter and give it to that high-souled descendant of Bhrigu's race. If that son of Bhrigu accepts it thus,[31] I then go to him, O lord, for giving it unto him! If, however, he sends me away from disregard, I shall not then give it to him on any account![32]—Having made this compact with me, Vāsava appeared before thee, in that disguise, for giving thee nectar.

Thou, however, didst disregard him and send him away, seeing that the illustrious one had put on the guise of a Chandāla. Thy fault has been great. Once more, with regard to thy desire, I am prepared to do what is in my power. Indeed, this painful thirst of thine, I shall arrange, shall be slaked. On those days, O regenerate one, in which thou wilt feel a desire for water,[33-35] clouds well-charged with water will rise over this desert. Those clouds, O son of Bhrigu's race, will give thee savoury water to drink. Verily, those clouds will become known in the world as Utanka-clouds.'[36] Thus addressed by Krishna, Utanka became filled with gladness, and to this day, O Bhārata, Utanka-clouds (appear and) shower rain on arid deserts."[37]

SECTION LVI.

Janamejaya said,—"With what penances was the high-souled Utanka endued so that he entertained the wish to denounce a curse on Vishnu himself, who is the source of all puissance ?"[1]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"O Janamejaya, Utanka was endued with austere penances. He was devoted to his preceptor. Endued with great energy, he abstained from worshipping anybody else.[2] All the children of the Rishis, O Bhārata, entertained even this wish, *viz.*, that their devotion to preceptors should be as great as that of Utanka.[3] Gautama's gratification with and affection for Utanka, among his numerous disciples, were very great, O Janamejaya.[4] Indeed, Gautama was highly pleased with the self-restraint and purity of behaviour that characterised Utanka, and with his acts of prowess and the services he rendered to him.[5] One after another, thousands of disciples received the preceptor's permission to return home (after the completion of their pupilage). In consequence, however, of his great affection for Utanka, Gautama could not permit him to leave his retreat.[6] Gradually, in course of time, O son, decrepitude overtook Utanka, that great ascetic. The ascetic, however, in consequence of his devotion to his preceptor, was not conscious of it.[7] One day, he set out,

O monarch, for fetching fuel for his preceptor. Soon after Utanka brought a heavy load of fuel.[8] Toil-worn and hungry and afflicted by the load he bore on his head, O chastiser of foes, he threw the load down on the Earth, O king.[9] One of his matted locks, white as silver, had become entangled with the load. Accordingly, when the load was thrown down, with it fell on the earth that matted lock of hair.[10] Oppressed as he had been by that load and overcome by hunger, O Bhārata, Utanka, beholding that sign of old age, began to indulge in loud lamentations from excess of sorrow.[11] Conversant with every duty, the daughter of his preceptor then, who was possessed of eyes that resembled the petals of the lotus, and of hips that were full and round, at the command of her sire, sought, with downcast face, to hold Utanka's tears in her hands. Her hands seemed to burn with those tear drops that she held. Unable, accordingly, to hold them longer, she was obliged to throw them down on the Earth.[12-13] The Earth herself was unable to hold those tear-drops of Utanka. With a gratified heart, Gautama then said unto the regenerate Utanka,[14]—'Why, O son, is thy mind so afflicted with grief today? Tell me calmly and quietly, O learned Rishi, for I wish to hear it in detail!'[15]

"Utanka said,—'With mind entirely devoted to thee, and wholly bent upon doing what is agreeable to thee, with my heart's devotion turned to thee, and with thoughts entirely dwelling on thee,[16] (I have resided here till) decrepitude has come upon me without my knowing it at all. I have not, again, known any happiness. Though I have dwelt with thee for a hundred years yet thou hast not granted me permission to depart.[17] Many disciples of thine, that were my juniors, have, however, been permitted by thee to return. Indeed, hundreds and thousands of foremost Brāhmanas have, equipt with knowledge, been permitted by thee (to depart from thy retreat and set themselves up as teachers)!'[18]

"Gautama said,—'Through my love and affection for thee, and in consequence of thy dutiful services to me, a long time has elapsed without my knowing it, O foremost of Brāhmanas![19] If, however, O thou of Bhrigu's race, the desire is

entertained by thee of leaving this place, do thou go without delay, receiving my permission !'[20]

"Utanka said,—'What shall I present to my preceptor? Tell me this, O best of regenerate persons! Having brought it, I shall go hence, O lord, with thy permission !'[21]

"Gautama said—'The good say that the gratification of the preceptor is the final fee.* Without doubt, O regenerate one, I have been highly gratified with thy conduct.[22] Know, O perpetuater of Bhrigu's race, that I have been exceedingly gratified with thee for this. If thou becomest a young man today of sixteen years,[23] I shall bestow on thee, O regenerate one, this my own daughter for becoming thy wife. No other woman save this one is capable of waiting upon thy energy!'[24] At these words of Gautama, Utanka once again became a youth and accepted that famous maiden for his wife. Receiving the permission of his preceptor, he then addressed his preceptor's wife, saying,[25]—'What shall I give thee as final fee for my preceptor? Do thou command me! I desire to accomplish, with wealth or even my life, what is agreeable and beneficial to thee![26] Whatever gem, exceedingly wonderful and of great value, exists in this world, I shall bring for thee with the aid of my penances. I have no doubt in this!'[27]

"Ahalyā said,—'I am highly gratified with thee, O learned Brāhmana, with thy unintermitting devotion, O sinless one! This is enough. Blessed be thou, go whithersoever thou likest!' "[28]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Utanka, however, O monarch, once more said these words,—'Do thou command me, O mother! It is meet that I should do something that is agreeable to thee!'[29]

---

* To this day, preceptors in India have to feed and teach their disciples without any pecuniary compensation. In fact, the sale of knowledge has been strictly forbidden. Pupils, however, after completing their studies, had to give the final *Dakzhinā* which varied according to their means. The kings and princes of India thought themselves honored if solicited by pupils in search of the final Dakshinā. What Gautama says here is that the object of the final present is to gratify the preceptor. He (Gautama), however, had already been gratified with the dutiful conduct of Utanka. There was no need, therefore, of any present.—T.

"Ahalyā said,—'Blessed be thou, bring for me those celestial ear-rings that are worn by the wife of Saudāsa. That which is due to thy preceptor will then be well-discharged.'[30] Replying unto her—'So be it,'—Utanka departed, O Janamejaya, resolved to bring those ear-rings for doing what was agreeable to his preceptor's wife.[31] That foremost of Brāhmanas, Utanka, proceeded without any loss of time to Saudāsa who had (through the curse of Vaçishtha) become a cannibal, in order to solicit the ear-rings from him.[32] Gautama meanwhile said unto his wife—'Utanka is not to be seen today.' Thus addressed, she informed him how he had departed for fetching the jewelled ear-rings (of Saudāsa's queen).[33] At this, Gautama said,—'Thou hast not acted wisely. Cursed (by Vaçishtha), that king (who has been transformed into a man-eater) will verily slay Utanka!'[34]

"Ahalyā said,—'Without knowing this, O holy one. I have set Utanka to this task. He shall not, however, incur any danger through thy grace!'[35] Thus addressed by her, Gautama said,—'Let it be so!' Meanwhile, Utanka met king Saudāsa in a deserted forest."[36]

Section LVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Beholding the king, who had become so, of frightful mien, wearing a long beard smeared with the blood of human beings, the Brāhmana Utanka, O king, did not become agitated.[1] That monarch of great energy, inspiring terror in every breast and looking like a second Yama, rising up, addressed Utanka, saying,[2]—'By good luck, O best of Brāhmanas, thou hast come to me at the sixth hour of the day when I am in search of food!'[3]

"Utanka said,—'O king, know that I have come hither in course of my wanderings for the sake of my preceptor. The wise have said that while one is employed for the sake of one's preceptor, one should not be injured.'[4]

"The king said,—'O best of Brāhmanas, food has been ordained for me at the sixth hour of the day. I am hungry. I cannot, therefore, allow thee escape today![5]

"Utanka said,—'Let it be so, O king! Let this compact be made with me! After I have ceased to wander for my preceptor I shall once more come and place myself within thy power![6] It has been heard by me, O best of kings, that the object I seek for my preceptor is under thy control, O monarch! Therefore, O ruler of men, I solicit thee for it![7] Thou daily givest many foremost of gems unto superior Brāhmanas. Thou art a giver, O chief of men, from whom gifts may be accepted. Know that I too am a worthy object of charity present before thee, O best of kings![8] Having accepted from thee in gift that object for my preceptor which is under thy control,[9] I shall, O king, in consequence of my compact, once more come back to thee and place myself under thy power. I assure thee truly of this. There is no falsehood in this. Never before have I spoken anything untrue, no, not even in jest! What shall I say then of other occasions?'[10]

"Saudāsa said,—'If the object thou seekest for thy preceptor is capable of being placed in thy hands by me, if I be regarded as one from whom a gift may be accepted, do thou then say what that object is!'[11]

"Utanka said,—'O foremost of men, O Saudāsa, in my estimation thou art a worthy person from whom gifts may be accepted. I have, therefore, come to thee for begging of thee the jewelled ear-rings (worn by thy queen).'[12]

"Saudāsa said,—'Those jewlled ear-rings, O learned and regenerate Rishi, belong to my wife. They should be asked from her. Do thou, therefore, solicit some other thing from me. I shall give it to thee, O thou of excellent vows!'[13]

"Utanka said,—'If we be regarded as any authority, do thou cease then to urge this pretext. Do thou give those jewelled ear-rings to me. Be thou truthful in speech, O king.' "[14]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed, the king once more addressed Utanka and said unto him,—'Do thou, at my word, go to my venerable queen, O best of men, and ask her, saying,[15]—Give!—She of pure vows, thus solicited by thee, will certainly, at my command, give thee, O foremost of regenerate persons, those jewelled ear-rings of hers without doubt!'[16]

"Utanka said,—'Whither, O ruler of men, shall I be able to meet thy queen? Why dost thou not thyself go to her?'[17]

"Saudāsa said,—'Thou wilt find her today in the vicinity of a forest fountain. I cannot see her today as the sixth hour of the day has come.' "[18]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed, Utanka, O chief of Bharata's race, then left that spot. Beholding Madayanti, he informed her of his object.[19] Hearing the command of Saudāsa, that lady of large eyes replied unto the highly intelligent Utanka, O Janamejaya, in these words:[20]—'It is even so, O regenerate one. Thou shouldst, however, O sinless one, assure me that thou dost not say what is untrue! It behooves thee to bring me some sign from my husband.[21] These celestial ear-rings of mine, made of costly gems, are such that the deities and Yakshas and great Rishis always watch for opportunities for bearing them away.[22] If placed at any time on the Earth, this costly article would then be stolen by the Nāgas. If worn by one who is impure in consequence of eating, it would then be taken away by the Yakshas. If the wearer falls asleep (without taking care of these precious ear-rings) the deities would then take them away.[23] O best of Brāhmanas, these ear-rings are capable of being taken away, when such opportunities present themselves, by deities and Rākshasas and Nāgas, if worn by a heedless person.[24] O best of regenerate ones, these ear-rings, day and night, always produce gold. At night, they shine brightly, attracting the rays of stars and constellations.[25] O holy one, if worn by any one, he would be freed from hunger and thirst and fear of every kind. The wearer of these ear-rings is freed also from the fear of poison and fire and every kind of danger.[26] If worn by one of short stature, these become short. If worn by one of tall stature, these grow in size.[27] Even of such virtues are these ear-rings of mine. They are praised and honoured everywhere. Indeed, they are known over the three worlds. Do thou, therefore, bring me some sign (from my husband)!' "[28]

SECTION LVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—'Utanka, coming back to king Saudāsa who was always well-disposed towards all his friends, solicited him for some sign (to convince Madayanti of the fact of his being really commissioned by the king). That foremost one of Ikshāku's race then gave him a sign.[1]

"Saudāsa said,—'This my present condition is intolerable. I do not behold any refuge. Knowing this to be my wish, do thou give away the jewelled ear-rings.*'[2] Thus addressed by the king, Utanka went back to the queen and reported to her the words of her lord. Hearing those words, the queen gave unto Utanka her jewelled ear-rings.[3] Having obtained the ear-rings, Utanka came back to the king and said unto him,—'I desire to hear, O monarch, what the import is of those mysterious words which thou saidst as a sign to thy queen !'—[4]

"Saudāsa said,—'Kshatriyas are seen to honour the Brāhmanas from the very beginning of the creation. Towards the Brāhmanas, however, many offences arise (on the part of Kshatriyas).[5] As regards myself, I am always bent in humility before them. I am overtaken by a calamity through a Brāhmana. Possessed of Madayanti, I do not see any other refuge.[6] Indeed, O foremost of all persons having of a high goal, I do not behold any other refuge for myself in the matter of approaching the gates of Heaven or in continuing here, O best of regenerate ones !'[7] It is impossible for a king that is hostile to Brāhmanas to continue living in this world or in attaining to happiness in the next.[8] Hence have I given thee these my jewelled ear-rings which were coveted by thee !† Do thou now keep the compact which thou hast made with me today !'[9]

---

* These words of the king are intended to be reported to his queen who would understand the allusion. The sense is this: cursed by Vaçishtha, I have become a cannibal. My condition is intalerable. By this gift of the ear-rings to a deserving Brāhmana, much merit may arise. That merit may relieve me.—T.

† This also is an allusion to the dreadful curse of Vaçishtha. The king refers to Madayanti as his only refuge. She may save him by doing an act of special merit, *viz.*, giving away her costly ear-rings to a truly deserving Brāhmana.—T.

"Utanka said,—'O king, I shall certainly act according to my promise. I shall truly come back and place myself under thy power. There is, however, a question, O scorcher of foes, which I wish to ask thee.' "[10]

"Saudāsa said,—'Say, O learned Brāhmana, what is in thy mind. I shall certainly reply unto thy words. I shall dispel whatever doubt may be in thy mind. I have no hesitation in this!'[11]

"Utanka said,—'Those who are skilled in the rules of duty say that Brāhmanas are of restrained speech. One who behaves wrongly towards friends is regarded as vile as a thief.*[12] Thou, again, O king, hast become my friend today. Do thou then, O foremost of men, give me such counsel as is approved by the wise.[13] As regards myself, I have now obtained the fruition of my wishes. Thou, again, art a cannibal. Is it proper for me to come back to thee or not?'[14]

"Saudāsa said,—'If it is proper (for me), O foremost of superior Brāhmanas, to say what thou askest, I should then, O best of regenerate ones, tell thee that thou shouldst never come back to me![15] O perpetuater of Bhrigu's race, by acting even thus, thou wilt attain to what is beneficial to thee. If thou comest back, O learned Brāhmana, thou wilt surely meet with death!' "[16]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by the intelligent king in respect of what was beneficial for him, Utanka took leave of the monarch and set out for the presence of Ahalyā.[17] Desirous of doing what was agreeable to the wife of his preceptor, he took the ear-rings with him and set out with great speed for reaching the retreat of Gautama.[18] Protecting them even in the manner directed by Madayanti,—that is, binding then within the folds of his black deer-skin,—he proceeded on his way.[19] After he had proceeded for some

---

* The sense is this: a Brāhmana is never loose of tongue. He is truthful. Hence, having passed my word to thee about my return, thou mayst be sure that I would keep my word. One, again, that acts improperly towards a friend, comes to be regarded as a thief. By this, Utanka reminds the king that he should not inflict any wrong on him by carrying out his intention of eating him up.—T.

distance, he became afflicted by hunger. He there beheld a Vilwa tree bent down with the weight of (ripe) fruits.* He climbed that tree.[20] Causing his deer-skin, O chastiser of foes, to hang on a branch, that foremost of regenerate persons then began to pluck some fruits.[21] While he was employed in plucking those fruits with eyes directed towards them, some of them fell, O king, on that deer-skin[22] in which those ear-rings had been carefully tied by that foremost of Brāhmanas. With the strokes of the fruits, the knot became untied.[23] Suddenly that deer-skin, with the ear-rings in it, fell down. When the knot being unfastened, the deer-skin fell down on the ground, a snake who was there beheld those jewelled ear-rings.[24] That snake belonged to the race of Airāvata. With great promptness he took up the ear-rings in his mouth and then entered an anthill. Beholding the ear-rings taken away by that snake,[25-26] Utanka, filled with wrath and in great anxiety of mind, came down from the tree. Taking his staff he began to pierce that anthill.[27] That best of Brāhmanas, burning with wrath and the desire for revenge, ceaselessly employed himself for five and thirty days in that task.[28] The goddess Earth, unable to bear the force of Utanka's walking staff and with body torn therewith, became exceedingly anxious.[29] Unto that regenerate Rishi then, who continued to dig the Earth from desire of making a path to the nether regions inhabited by the Nāgas,[30] the chief of the celestials, armed with the thunder, came there, on his car drawn by green horses. Endued with great energy, he beheld that foremost of Brāhmanas, as he sat there engaged in his task.' "[31]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Assuming the garb of a Brāhmana afflicted with the sorrow of Utanka, the chief of the celestials addressed him, saying,—'This (purpose of thine) is incapable of being achieved.[32] The regions of the Nāgas are thousands of Yojanas removed from this place. I think that thy purpose is not capable of being achieved with thy walking staff.'[33]

"Utanka said,—'If, O Brāhmana, the ear-rings be not re-

* Vilwa is the *Ægle marmalos*.—T.

covered by me from the regions of the Nāgas, I shall cast off my life-breaths before thy eyes, O foremost of regenerate persons!"[34]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"When the thunder-armed Indra failed to divert Utanka from his purpose, he united the latter's walking staff with the force of thunder.[35] Then, O Janamejaya, the Earth, opening with those strokes having the force of thunder, yielded a way to the (nether) regions inhabited by the Nāgas.[36] By that path Utanka entered the world of Nāgas. He saw that that region lay extended thousands of Yojanas on all sides.[37] Indeed, O blessed one, it was equipt with many walls made of pure gold and decked with jewels and gems.[38] There were many fine tanks of water furnished with flights of stair-cases made of pure crystal, and many rivers of clear and transparent water. He saw also many trees with diverse species of birds perching on them.[39] That perpetuater of Bhrigu's race beheld the gate of that region which was full five Yojanas high and a hundred Yojanas in width.[40] Beholding the region of the Nāgas, Utanka became very cheerless. Indeed, he despaired of getting back the ear-rings.[41] Then there appeared unto him a black steed with a white tail. His face and eyes were of a coppery hue, O thou of Kuru's race, and he seemed to blaze forth with energy.[42] Addressing Utanka, he said,—'Do thou blow into the Apāna duct of my body. Thou wilt then, O learned Brāhmana, get back thy ear-rings which have been taken away by a descendant of Airāvata's race![43] Do not loathe to do my bidding, O son! Thou didst it often at the retreat of Gautama in former days![44]

"Utanka said,—'How did I know thee in the retreat of my preceptor? Indeed, I wish to hear how I did in those days what thou biddest me do now![45]

"The steed said,—'Know, O learned Brāhmana, that I am the preceptor of thy preceptor, for I am the blazing *Jātavedas* (deity of fire)! By thee I was often worshipped for the sake of thy preceptor,[46] O child of Bhrigu's race, duly and with a pure heart and body. For that reason I shall accomplish what is for thy good. Do my bidding without delay.'[47] Thus addressed by the deity of fire, Utanka did as he was directed.

The deity then, gratified with him, blazed up for consuming everything.[48] From the pores of his body, O Bhārata, in consequence of his very nature, a thick smoke issued threatening terrors to the world of Nāgas.[49] With that mighty and wide-spreading smoke, O Bhārata, everything became enveloped in gloom, so that nothing, O king, could any longer be seen in the world of the Nāgas.[50] Cries of woe were heard throughout the mansions of the Airāvatas, uttered by the Nāgas headed by Vāsuki, O Janamejaya![51] Enveloped by that smoke, the palaces could no longer be seen, O Bhārata. These resembled woods and hills overwhelmed by a thick frost.[52] With eyes that were red in consequence of that smoke, and afflicted by the energy of the deity of fire, the Nāgas came out of their mansions to the high-souled son of Bhrigu's race for ascertaining what was the matter.[53] Having heard what the matter was from that ascetic of immeasurable energy, all the Nāgas, with fear depicted on their eyes, offered him their worship according to due forms.[54] Indeed, all the Nāgas placing the old and the young ones before them, bowed unto him with their heads and joining their hands addressed him, saying,—'Be gratified with us, O holy one!'[55] Having gratified that Brāhmana and offered him water to wash his feet and the ingredients of the Arghya (for honouring him), the Nāgas gave him those celestial and highly-adored ear-rings.[56] Thus honored by them, Utanka of great prowess, circumambulating the deity of fire, started for the retreat of his preceptor.[57] Indeed, repairing quickly to Gautama's asylum, O king, he presented those ear-rings unto the wife of his preceptor, O sinless one.[58] That best of Brāhmanas also told his preceptor everything about Vāsuki and the other Nāgas that had occurred.[59] It was even thus, O Janamejaya, that the high-souled Utanka, having wandered through the three worlds, fetched those jewelled ear-rings (for his preceptor's wife).[60] Of such prowess, O chief of Bharata's race, was the ascetic Utanka. So austere were the penances with which he was endued. I have thus told thee what thou hadst asked me."[61]

SECTION LIX.

Janamejaya said,—"After having conferred that boon on Utanka, O foremost of regenerate persons, what did the mighty-armed Govinda of great celebrity next do?"[1]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having granted that boon to Utanka Govinda, accompanied by Sātyaki, proceeded to Dwārakā on his car drawn by his large steeds endued with great speed.[2] Passing many lakes and rivers and forests and hills, he at last came upon the delightful city of Dwārāvati.[3] It was at the time, O king, when the festival of Raivataka had begun, that he of eyes like lotus-petals arrived with Sātyaki as his companion.[4] Adorned with many beautiful things and covered with diverse Koshas made of jewels and gems, the Raivataka hill shone, O king, with great splendour.[5] That high mountain, decked with excellent garlands of gold and gay festoons of flowers, with many large trees that looked like the Kalpa trees of Indra's garden,[6] and with many golden poles on which were lighted lamps, shone in beauty through day and night. By the caves and fountains the light was so great that it seemed to be broad day.[7] On all sides beautiful flags waved on the air with little bells that jingled continuously. The entire hill resounded with the melodious songs of men and women.[8] Raivataka presented a most charming prospect like Meru with all his jewels and gems. Men and women. excited and filled with delight, O Bhārata,[9] sang aloud. The swell of music that thus rose from that foremost of mountains seemed to touch the very heavens. Everywhere were heard spouts and loud whoops of men who were in all stages of excitement.[10] The cackle of thousands of voices made that mountain delightful and charming. It was adorned with many shops and stalls filled with diverse viands and enjoyable articles.[11] There were heaps of cloths and garlands, and the music of *Vinās* and flutes and *Mridangas* was heard everywhere. Food mixed with wines of diverse kinds was stored here and there.[12] Gifts were being ceaselessly made to those that were distressed, or blind, or helpless. In consequence of all this, the festival of that mountain became highly auspicious.[13] There were many

sacred abodes built on the breast of that mountain, O hero; within which resided many men of righteous deeds. Even thus did the heroes of Vrishni's race sport in that festival of Raivataka.[14] Equipt with those mansions, that mountain shone like a second Heaven. At the arrival of Krishna, O chief of Bharata's race,[15] that prince of mountains resembled the blessed abode of Indra himself. Worshipped (by his relatives), Krishna then entered a beautiful mansion. Sātyaki also went to his own quarters with a delighted soul. Govinda entered his residence after a long absence,[16-17] having accomplished feats of great difficulty like Vāsava amid the Dānava host. The heroes of the Bhoja, Vrishni, and Andhaka races, all came forward to receive that high-souled one like the deities advancing to receive him of a hundred sacrifices.[18] Endued with great intelligence, he honored them in return and enquired after their welfare. With a gratified heart he then saluted his father and mother.[19] The mighty-armed hero was embraced by both of them and comforted too (by numerous evidences of affection). He then took his seat with all the Vrishnis sitting around him.[20] Having washed his feet and dispelled his fatigue, Krishna of mighty energy, as he sat there, then recounted the chief incidents of the great battle in answer to the questions put to him by his sire."[21]

Section LX.

"Vāsudeva said,—'O thou of Vrishni's race, I have repeatedly heard men speaking of the wonderful battle (between the Kurus and the Pāndavas).[1] Thou, however, O mighty-armed one, hast witnessed it with thy own eyes. Do thou, therefore, O sinless one, describe the battle in detail.[2] Indeed, tell me how that battle took place between the high-souled Pāndavas (on the one side) and Bhishma and Karna and Kripa and Drona and Calya and others (on the other side),[3] between, in fact, numerous other Kshatriyas well-skilled in arms, differing from one another in mien and attire, and hailing from diverse realms.'"[4]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by his sire, he

of eyes like lotus-petals narrated, in the presence of his mother also, how the Kaurava heroes had been slain in battle.[5]

"Vāsudeva said,—'The feats were highly wonderful that were achieved by those high-souled Kshatriyas. In consequence of their large number, they are incapable of being enumerated in even hundreds of years.[6] I shall, however, mention only the foremost of them. Do thou listen, therefore, to me as I mention in brief those feats achieved by the kings of Earth, O thou of godlike splendour![7] Bhishma of Kuru's race became the generalissimo, having eleven divisions of the Kaurava princes under his command, like Vāsava of the celestial forces.*[8] Cikhandin of great intelligence, protected by the blessed Arjuna, became the leader of the seven divisions of the sons of Pāndu.[9] The battle between the Kurus and the Pāndavas (under these leaders) raged for ten days. It was so fierce as to make one's hair stand on its end.[10] Then Cikhandin, in great battle, aided by the wielder of Gāndiva, slew, with innumerable arrows, the son of Gangā fighting bravely.[11] Lying on a bed of arrows, Bhishma waited like an ascetic till the sun leaving his southward path entered on his northerly course when that hero gave up his life-breaths.[12] Then Drona, that foremost of all persons conversant with arms, that greatest of men under Duryodhana, like Kāvya himself of the lord of the Daityas, became generalissimo.†[13] That foremost of regenerate persons, ever boasting of his prowess in battle, was supported by the remnant of the Kaurava force consisting then of nine Akshauhinis, and protected by Kripa and Vrisha and others.[14] Dhrishtadyumna conversant with many mighty weapons, and possessed of great intelligence, became the leader of the Pāndavas. He was protected by Bhima like Varuna protected by Mitra.[15] That high-souled hero, always desirous of measuring his strength with Drona, supported by the (remnant of the) Pāndavas army, and recollecting the wrongs inflicted (by Drona) on hi

* 'Chamu' here is used in a general sense, *viz.*, a division. Of course, it stands for an *Akshauhini*.—T.

† 'Kavi' or 'Kāvya' is another name of Cukra, the preceptor of the Daityas.—T.

sire (Drupada, the king of the Pānchālas), achieved great feats in battle.[16] In that encounter between Drona and the son of Prishata, the kings assembled from diverse realms were nearly exterminated.[17] That furious battle lasted for five days. At the conclusion of that period, Drona, exhausted, succumbed to Dhrishtadyumna.[18] After that, Karna became the generalissimo of Duryodhana's forces. He was supported in battle by the remnant of the Kaurava host which numbered five Akshauhinis.[19] Of the sons of Pāndu there were then three Akshauhinis. After the slaughter of innumerable heroes, protected by Arjuna, they came to battle.[20] The Suta's son Karna, though a fierce warrior, encountering Pārtha, came to his end on the second day, like an insect encountering a blazing fire.[21] After the fall of Karna, the Kauravas became dispirited and lost all energy. Numbering three Akshauhinis, they gathered round the ruler of the Madras.[22] Having lost many car-warriors and elephants and horsemen, the remnant of the Pāndava army, numbering one Akshauhini and penetrated with cheerlessness, supported Yudhishthira (as their leader).[23] The Kuru king Yudhishthira, in the battle that ensued, achieved the most difficult feats and slew, before half the day was over, the king of the Madras.[24] After the fall of Calya, the high-souled Sahadeva of immeasurable prowess slew Cakuni the man who had brought about the quarrel (between the Pāndavas and the Kurus).[25] After the fall of Cakuni, the royal son of Dhritarāshtra, whose army had suffered an extensive carnage and who on that account had become exceedingly cheerless, fled from the field, armed with his mace.[26] Then Bhimasena of great prowess, filled with wrath, pursued him and discovered him within the waters of the Dwaipāyana lake.[27] With the remnant of their army, the Pāndavas surrounded the lake and, filled with joy, encountered Duryodhana concealed within the waters.[28] Their wordy shafts, penetrating through the waters, pierced Duryodhana. Rising up from the lake, the latter approached the Pāndavas, armed with his mace, desirous of battle.[29] Then, in the great battle that ensued, the royal son of Dhritarāshtra was slain by Bhimasena who put forth his great prowess, in the presence of many

kings.[30] After this the remnant of the Pāndava army, as it slept in the camp, was slaughtered at night time by Drona's son who was unable to put up with the slaughter of his father (at the hands of Dhrishtadyumna).[31] Their sons slain, their forces slain, their friends slain, only the five sons of Pāndu are alive with myself and Yuyudhāna.[32] With Kripa and the Bhoja prince Kritavarman, the son of Drona represents the unslain remnant of the Kaurava army. Dhritarāshtra's son Yuyutsu also has escaped slaughter in consequence of his having adopted the side of the Pāndavas.[33] Upon the slaughter of the Kaurava king (Suyodhana) with all his followers and allies, Vidura and Sanjaya have come to the presence of king Yudhishthira the just.[34] Even thus did that battle occur, O lord, for eight and ten days. Many kings of Earth, slain therein, have ascended to Heaven.' "[35]

Vaiçampāyana continud,—"The Vrishnis, as they heard, O king, that dreadful account, became filled with grief and sorrow and pain."[36]

Section LXI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After the high-souled Vāsudeva of great prowess had finished his narration of the great battle of the Bhāratas before his sire, it was plain that that hero had passed over the slaughter of Abhimanyu. The motive of the high-souled one was that his sire might not hear what was highly unpleasant to him.[1-2] Indeed, the intelligent Krishna did not wish that his sire Vāsudeva should, on hearing the dreadful intelligence of the death of his daughter's son, be afflicted with sorrow and grief.[3] (His sister) Subhadrā, noticing that the slaughter of her son had not been mentioned, addressed her brother, saying,—Do thou narrate the death of my son, O Krishna!—and fell down on the earth (in a swoon).[4] Vasudeva beheld his daughter fallen on the ground. As soon as he saw this, he also fell down, deprived of his senses by grief.[5] (Regaining his senses) Vasudeva, afflicted with grief at the death of his daughter's son, O king, addressed Krishna, saying,[6]—O lotus eyed one, thou art famed on Earth for being

truthful in speech. Why, however, O slayer of foes, dost thou not tell me today of the death of my daughter's son ?[7] O puissant one, tell me in detail of the slaughter of thy sister's son ! Possessed of eyes resembling thine, alas, how was he slain in battle by foes ?[8] Since my heart does not from grief break into a hundred pieces, it seems, O thou of the Vrishni race, that it does not die with men when its hour does not come ![9] Oh, at the time of his fall, what words did he utter, apostrophising his mother ? O lotus-eyed one, what did that darling of mine, possessed of restless eyes, say unto me ?[10] I hope he has not been slain by foes while retreating from battle with his back towards them ? I hope, O Govinda, that his face did not become cheerless while fighting ?[11] He was possessed, O Krishna, of mighty energy. From a spirit of boyishness, that puissant hero, boasting (of his prowess) in my presence, used to speak of his skill (in battle).[12] I hope that boy does not lie on the field, slain deceitfully by Drona and Karṇa and Kripa and others ? Do thou tell me this ![13] That son of my daughter always used to challenge Bhishma and that foremost of all mighty warriors, *viz.*, Karna, in battle !'[14] Unto his sire who, from excess of grief, indulged in such lamentations, Govinda, more afflicted than he, answered in these words,[15]— 'His face did not become cheerless as he fought in the van of battle. Fierce though that battle was, he did not turn his back upon it.[16] Having slain hundreds and thousands of kings of Earth, he was brought to grief by Drona and Karna and at last succumbed to the son of Dusçāsana.[17] If, O lord, he had been encountered, one to one, without intermission, he was incapable of being slain in battle by even the wielder of the thunder-bolt.[18] When his sire Arjuna was withdrawn from the main body by the Samsaptakas (who challenged to fight him separately), Abhimanyu was surrounded by the enraged Kaurava heroes headed by Drona in battle.[19] Then, O sire, after he had slaughtered a very large number of foes in battle, thy daughter's son at last succumbed to the son of Dusçāsana.[20] Without doubt, he has gone to Heaven ! Kill this grief of thine, O thou of great intelligence ! They that are of cleansed understandings never languish when they meet

with any calamity.[21] He by whom Drona and Karna and others were checked in battle,—heroes that were equal to Indra himself in might—why would not he ascend to Heaven ?[22] O irresistible one, do thou kill this grief of thine ! Do not suffer thyself to be swayed by wrath. That conqueror of hostile cities has attained to that sanctified goal which depends upon death at the edge of weapons.[23] After the fall of that hero, this my sister Subhadrā, stricken with grief, indulged in loud lamentations, when she saw Kunti, like a female as prey.[24] When she met Draupadi, she asked her in grief,—O reverend lady, where are all our sons ? I desire to behold them ![25]—Hearing her lamentations, all the Kaurava ladies embraced her and wept sitting around her.[26] Beholding (her daughter-in-law) Uttarā, she said,—O blessed girl, where has thy husband gone ? When he comes back, do thou, without losing a moment, apprise me of it ![27] Alas, O daughter of Virāta, as soon he heard my voice, he used to come out of his chamber without the loss of a moment. Why does not thy husband come out today ?[28] Alas, O Abhimanyu, thy maternal uncles—mighty car-warriors—are all hale ! They used to bless thee when they saw thee come here prepared to go out for battle ![29] Do thou tell me the incidents of battle today as before, O chastiser of foes ! Oh, why dost thou not answer me today—me who am weeping so bitterly ?[30]—Hearing these lamentations of this daughter of the Vrishni race, Prithā, deeply afflicted with grief, addressed her and slowly said,[31]—O Subhadrā, though protected by Vāsudeva and Sātyaki and by his own sire, thy youthful son has yet been slain. That slaughter is due to the influence of Time ![32] O daughter of Yadu's race, mortal thy son was ! Do not grieve ! Irresistible in battle, thy son has, without doubt, attained to the highest goal ![33] Thou art born in a high race of high-souled Kshatriyas ! Do not grieve, O thou of restless glances, O girl of eyes like lotus-petals ![34] Do thou cast thy eyes on Uttarā who is quick with child ! O blessed lady, do not yield to sorrow ! This auspicious girl will soon bring forth a son to that hero ![35]—Having comforted her in this way, Kunti, conversant with every duty, O perpetuater of Yadu's race, casting off her grief,

O irresistible one, made arrangements for Abhimanyu's obsequial rites, with the acquiescence of king Yudhishthira and Bhima, and the twins (*viz.*, Nakula and Sahadeva) who in prowess resembled Yama himself. She also made many presents unto the Brāhmanas,[36-37] and bestowed upon them many kine, O perpetuater of Yadu's race. Then the Vrishni dame (Kunti), comforted a little, addressed the daughter of Virāta, saying,[38]—O faultless daughter of Virāta, thou shouldst not indulge in grief! For the sake of thy husband, O thou of rotund hips, protect the child in thy womb![39]—Having said these words, O thou of great splendour, Kunti ceased. With her permission I have brought Subhadrā here.[40] It was even thus, O giver of honours, that thy daughter's son met with his death. Cast off thy burning grief, O irresistible one! Indeed, do not set thy heart on sorrow!'"[41]

Section LXII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having heard these words of his son Vāsudeva, that descendant of Cura, of righteous soul, casting off his grief, made excellent obsequial offerings (unto Abhimanyu).[1] Vāsudeva also performed those rites for the accension (to Heaven) of his high-souled nephew, that hero who was ever the darling of his sire (Vāsudeva).[2] He duly fed six millions of Brāhmanas, endued with great energy, with edibles possessed of every recommendation.[3] Presenting many clothes unto them, Krishna gratified the thirst for wealth of those Brāhmanas. Wonderful were the heaps of gold, the number of kine and of beds and cloths, that were then given away. The Brāhmanas loudly declared,—'Let (Krishna's wealth) increase!'[4-5] Then Vāsudeva of Daçārha's race, and Valadeva, and Sātyaki, and Satyaka, each performed the obsequial rites of Abhimanyu.[6] Exceedingly afflicted with grief, they failed to attain comfort. The same was the case with the sons of Pāndu in the city called after the elephant.[7] Deprived of Abhimanyu, they failed to obtain peace of mind. The daughter of Virāta, O monarch, for many days,[8] totally abstained from all food, exceedingly afflicted by grief on account of the death

of her husband. At this all her relatives became plunged into excess of grief. They all feared that the embroy in her womb might be destroyed.[9] Then Vyāsa, ascertaining the state of things by his spiritual vision, came there. The highly intelligent Rishi, endued with great energy, arrived (at the palace), addressed Prithā of large eyes,[10] as also Uttarā herself, saying,—'Let this grief be abandoned! O famous lady, a son endued with mighty energy will be born to thee,[11] through the puissance of Vāsudeva and at my word. That son will rule the Earth after the Pāndavas (have departed from it).'[12] Beholding Dhananjaya, he said unto him, in the hearing of king Yudhishthira the just, and gladdening him with his words, O Bhārata,[13]—'Thy grandson, O highly blessed one, will become a high-souled prince! He will righteously rule the whole Earth to the verge of the sea.[14] Therefore, O foremost one of Kuru's race, cast off this grief, O mower of foes! Do not doubt this! This will truly happen![15] That which was uttered by the Vrishni hero on a former occasion, will, without doubt, happen! Do not think otherwise![16] As regards Abhimanyu, he has gone to the regions of the deities, conquered by him with his own acts. That hero should not be grieved for by thee or, indeed, by the other Kurus!'[17]—Thus addressed by his grandsire, Dhananjaya of righteous soul, O king, cast off his grief and even became cheerful.[18] Thy sire, O prince, that art conversant with all duties, began to grow in that womb, O thou of great intelligence, like the Moon in the lighted fortnight.[19] Then Vyāsa urged the royal son of Dharma for performing the horse-sacrifice. Having said so, he made himself invisible there and then.[20] The intelligent king Yudhishthira the just, hearing the words of Vyāsa, set his mind on the journey for bringing wealth (for the sacrifice).' "[21]

Section LXIII.

Janamejaya said,—"Having heard these words, O regenerate one, that were spoken by the high-souled Vyāsa in respect of the horse-sacrifice, what steps were taken by Yudhish-

thira ?[1] Do thou tell me, O foremost of regenerate ones, how the king succeeded in obtaining the wealth which Marutta had buried in the Earth !"[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having heard the words of the Island-born ascetic, king Yudhishthira the just summoned all his brothers, *viz.*, Arjuna and Bhimasena and the twin sons of Mādri, in proper time and then said unto them (the following words),[3]—'Ye heroes, you have heard the words which the highly intelligent and high-souled Krishna has said from his friendship for and the desire of doing good to the Kurus !* Verily, you have heard those words that have been uttered by that ascetic of abundant penances, that great sage desirous of bestowing prosperity on his friends,[4-5] that preceptor of righteous behaviour, *viz.*, Vyāsa of wonderful feats ! You have heard what Bhishma also said, and what Govinda too of great intelligence has uttered.[6] Remembering those words, ye sons of Pāndu, I desire to obey them duly ! By obeying those words of theirs great blessedness will attach to all of you ![7] Those words spoken by those utterers of Brahma are certain (if obeyed) to bring in their train considerable benefit. Ye perpetuaters of Kuru's race, the Earth has become divested of her wealth.[8] Ye kings, Vyāsa, therefore, informed us of the wealth (that lies buried in the Earth) of Marutta. If you think that wealth abundant or sufficient,[9] how shall we bring it (to our capital) ? What, O Bhima, dost thou think as regards this ?' When the king, O perpetuater of Kuru's race, said these words,[10] Bhimasena, joining his hands, said these words in reply,—'The words thou hast said, O thou of mighty-arms,[11] on the subject of bringing the wealth indicated by Vyāsa, are approved by me ! If, O puissant one, we succeed in getting the wealth kept there by the son of Avikshita,[12] then this sacrifice, O king, purposed by us will be easily accomplished ! Even this is what I think. We shall, therefore, bowing our heads unto the high-souled Giriça,[13] and offering due worship unto that deity, bring that wealth.

---

* 'Krishna' implies Vyāsa here. The great Rishi was called 'the Island-born Krishna.'—T.

Blessed be thou. Gratifying that god of gods, as also his companions and followers, in words, thought, and deed, we shall, without doubt, obtain that wealth. Those Kinnaras of fierce mien who are protecting that treasure[14-15] will certainly yield to us if the great deity having the bull for his sign becomes gratified with us!'—Hearing these words uttered by Bhima, O Bhārata,[16] king Yudhishthira the son of Dharma became highly pleased. The others, headed by Arjuna, at the same time, said,—'So be it.'[17] The Pāndavas then, having resolved to bring that wealth, ordered their forces to march under the constellation Dhruba and on the day called by the same name.*[18] Causing the Brāhmanas to utter benedictions on them, and having duly worshipped the great god Maheçwara, the sons of Pāndu set out (on their enterprise).[19] Gratifying that high-souled deity with Modakas and frumenty and with cakes made of meat, the sons of Pāndu set out with cheerful hearts.[20] While they thus set out, the citizens, and many foremost of Brāhmanas, with cheerful hearts, uttered auspicious blessings (on their heads).[21] The Pāndavas, circumambulating many Brāhmanas that daily worshipped their fires, and bending their heads unto them, proceeded on their journey.[22] Taking the permission of king Dhritarāshtra who was afflicted with grief on account of the death of his sons, his queen (Gāndhāri), and Prithā also of large eyes,[23] and keeping the Kaurava prince Yuyutsu, the son of Dhritarāshtra, in the capital, they set out, worshipped by the citizens and by many Brāhmanas possessed of great wisdom."[24]

Section LXIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"They then set out, with cheerful hearts, and accompanied by men and animals all of whom and which were equally cheerful. They filled the whole Earth with the loud clatter of their wheels.[1] Their praises hymned

---

* The Commentator explains that by the constellation Dhruba is implied Rohini and the Uttarās numbering three. Sunday, again, is called the Dhruba-day.—T.

by eulogists and Sutas and Māgadhas and bards, and supported by their own army, they looked like so many Ādityas adorned with their own rays.[2] With the white umbrella held over his head, king Yudhishthira shone with beauty like the lord of the stars on the night when he is at full.[3] That foremost of men, the eldest son of Pāndu, accepted, with due forms, the blessings and cheers of his gladdened subjects as he proceeded on his way.[4] As regards the soldiers that followed the king, their confused murmurs seemed to fill the entire welkin.[5] That host crossed many lakes and rivers and forests and pleasure gardens. They at last came upon the mountains.[6] Arrived at that region where that wealth was buried, O king, the royal Yudhishthira fixed his camp with all his brothers and troops.[7] The region selected for the purpose, O chief of Bharata's race, was perfectly level and auspicious. There the king pitched his camp, placing in his van such Brāhmanas as were endued with penances and learning and self-restraint,[8] as also his priest Agniveçya, O thou of Kuru's race, who was well-conversant with the Vedas and all their branches.* Then the royal sons of Pāndu, and the other kings (who accompanied that expedition), and the Brāhmanas and priests well-skilled in sacrificial rites, having duly performed same propitiatory ceremonies, spread themselves all over that spot. Having duly placed the king and his ministers in the middle,[9-10] the Brāhmanas caused the camp to be pitched by laying out six roads and nine divisions.† King Yudhishthira caused a separate encampment to be duly made for the infuriate elephants that accompanied his force. When everything was complete, he addressed the Brāhmanas, saying,—'Ye foremost of Brāhmanas, let that be done which you think should be done in view of the matter at hand. Indeed, let an auspicious day and constellation be fixed for it. Let not a long time pass away over our heads as we wait in suspense here. Ye foremost of learned

---

* 'Agniveçya' was another name of Dhaumya.—T.

† Three roads running north to south, and three running east to west and intersecting the former, are the six roads that are directed to be laid out in pitching encampments. These give nine squares with two boundary lines at right angles with each other.—T.

Brāhmanas, having formed this resolution, let that be done which should be done after this!'[11-13] Hearing these words of the king, the Brāhmanas with those amongst them that were well-skilled in the performance of religious rites, became filled with gladness and desirous of doing what was agreeable to king Yudhishthira the just, said these words in reply,[14]—'This very day is an auspicious one with an auspicious constellation. We shall, therefore, strive to accomplish those high rites we propose. We shall today, O king, live upon water alone. Do you all fast also today.'[15] Hearing those words of those foremost Brāhmanas, the royal sons of Pāndu passed that night, abstaining from all food, and lying confidently on beds of Kuça grass, like blazing fires in a sacrifice.[16] And the night wore away as they listened to the discourses of the learned Brāhmanas (on diverse subjects). When the cloudless morning came, those foremost of Brāhmanas addressed the royal son of Dharma, (saying as follows)."[17]

SECTION LXV.

"The Brāhmanas said,—'Let offerings be made unto the high-souled Mahādeva of three eyes. Having duly dedicated those offerings, O king, we shall then strive to gain our object.'[1] Hearing these words of those Brāhmanas, Yudhishthira caused offerings to be duly made unto that deity who loved to lie down on mountain-breasts.[2] Gratifying the (sacrificial) fire with (libations of) sanctified butter according to the ordinance, the priest (Dhaumya) cooked Charu with the aid of *Mantras* and performed the necessary rites.'[3] He took up many flowers and sanctified them with Mantras, O king. With Modakas and frumenty and meat, he made offerings to the deity.[4] With diverse kinds of flowers and with fried paddy, of very superior kind, Dhaumya, well-versed in the Vedas, performed the remaining rites.[5] He next presented offerings according to the ordinance unto those ghostly beings who formed Mahādeva's train. And offerings were next made to Kuvera the chief of the Yakshas, and unto Manibhadra also.[6] Unto the other Yakshas also, and unto them that were the foremost

ones among the ghostly companions of Mahādeva, the priest offered due worship, having filled many jugs with food, with Kriçaras and meat and Nivāpas mixed with sesame seeds. The king gave away unto the Brāhmanas thousands of kine.[7-8] He then directed the presentation, according to due rites, of offerings unto those night-wandering beings (who live with Mahādeva). Surcharged, as it were, with the scent of Dhupas, and filled with the fragrance of flowers,[9] that region, sacred to the deity of deities, O king, became exceedingly delightful. Having performed the worship of Rudra and of all the Ganas,[10] the king, placing Vyāsa ahead, proceeded towards the place where the treasure was buried. Once more worshipping the Lord of treasures, and bowing unto him with reverence and saluting him properly,[11] with diverse kinds of flowers and cakes and Kriçara, having worshipped those foremost of gems, *viz.*, Cankha and Nidhi, and those Yakshas who are the lords of gems,[12] and having worshipped many foremost of Brāhmanas and caused them to utter blessings, the king endued with great puissance, strengthened by the energy and the auspicious benedictions of those Brāhmanas,[13] caused that spot to be excavated. Then numerous vessels of diverse and delightful forms,[14] and Bhringāras and Katāhas and Kalasas and Bardhamānakas, and innumerable Bhājanas of beautiful forms,[15] were dug out by king Yudhishthira the just. The wealth thus dug out was placed in large 'Karaputas' for protection.*[16] A portion of the wealth was caused to be borne upon the shoulders of men in stout balances of wood with buskets slung like scales at both ends. Indeed, O king, there were other methods of conveyance there for bearing away that wealth of the son of Pāndu.†[17] There were sixty thousands of camels, and a hundred and twentythousand horses, and of elephants, O monarch, there were one hundred thousand.[18] Of cars there were

* 'Karaputa' is made up of two wooden chests united with each other by chains or cords and intended to be borne by camels and bullocks.—T.

† The first line of 17 is exceedingly terse. Literally rendered, it runs,—'Each vessel was united with another, and became half the (total) weight slung on balance.'—T.

as many, and of carts too as many, and of she-elephants as many. Of mules and men the number was untold.[19] That wealth which Yudhishthira caused to be dug out was even so much. Sixteen thousand coins were placed on the back of each camel; eight thousand on each car; four and twenty thousand on each elephant; (while proportionate loads were placed on horses and mules and on the backs, shoulders, and heads of men).[20] Having loaded these vehicles with that wealth and once more worshipping the great deity Civa, the son of Pāndu set out for the city called after the elephant,[21] with the permission of the Island-born Rishi, and placing his priest Dhaumya in the van. That foremost of men, *viz.*, the royal son of Pāndu, made short marches every day, measured by a Goyuta (4 miles).[22] That mighty host, O king, afflicted with the weight they bore, returned, bearing that wealth, towards the capital, gladdening the hearts of all those perpetuaters of the Kuru race."[23]

SECTION LXVI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Meanwhile, Vāsudeva of great energy accompanied by the Vrishnis, came to the city called after the elephant.[1] While leaving that city for returning to his own Dwārakā, he had been requested by the son of Dharma to come back. Hence, knowing that the time fixed for the horse-sacrifice had come, that foremost of men came back (to the Kuru capital).[2] Accompanied by the son of Rukmini, by Yuyudhāna, by Chārudeshna, by Cāmva, by Gada, by Kritavarman,[3] by the heroic Sārana, by Niçatha, and by Unmukha, Vāsudeva came, with Valadeva at the head of the train, and with Subhadrā also accompanying him.[4] Indeed, that hero came for seeing Draupadi and Uttarā and Prithā and for comforting those Kshatriya ladies of distinction who had been bereft of many of their protectors.[5] Beholding those heroes come, king Dhritarāshtra, as also the high-souled Vidura, received them with due honours.[6] That foremost of men, *viz.*, Krishna of great energy, well adored by Vidura and Yuyutsu, continued to reside in the Kuru capital.[7] It was while the Vrishni heroes

O Janamejaya, were residing in the Kuru city, O king, that thy sire, that slayer of hostile heroes, was born.[8] The royal Parikshit, O monarch, afflicted by the Brahma-weapon (of Açwatthāman), upon coming out of the womb, lay still and motionless, for life he had not. By his birth he had gladdened the citizens but soon plunged them into grief.[9] The citizens, learning of the birth of the prince, uttered a leonine shout. That noise proceeded to the utmost verge of every point of the compass. Soon, however, (when it was known that the prince was bereft of life), that noise ceased.[10] With great haste Krishna, his senses and mind considerably affected, with Yuyudhāna in his company, entered the inner apartments of the palace.[11] He beheld his own paternal aunt (Kunti) coming, loudly weeping and calling upon him repeatedly.[12] Behind her were Draupadi and the famous Subhadrā, and the wives of the relatives of the Pāndavas, all weeping piteously.[13] Meeting Krishna, Kunti, that daughter of the Bhoja race, said unto him, O foremost of monarchs, these words in a voice choked with tears.[14]—O Vāsudeva, O mighty-armed hero, Devaki, by having borne thee, has come to be regarded as an excellent genetrix! Thou art our refuge, and our glory! This race (of Pāndu) depends upon thee for its protector![15] O Yādava hero, O puissant one, this child of thy sister's son, has come out of the womb, slain by Açwatthāman! O Keçava, do thou revive him![16] O delighter of the Yādavas, even this was vowed by thee, O puissant one, when Açwatthāman had inspired the blade of grass into a Brahma-weapon of mighty energy! Indeed, O Keçava, thy words were even these:—I shall revive that child if he comes out of the womb dead![17]—That child, O son, has been born dead! Behold him, O foremost of men. It behooveth thee, O Mādhava, to rescue Uttarā and Subhadrā and Draupadi and myself, and Dharma's son (Yudhishthira), and Bhima and Phālguna, and Nakula, and the irresistible Sahadeva![18-19] In this child are bound the life-breaths of the Pāndavas and myself! O thou of the Dāçārha race, on him depends the obsequial cake of Pāndu, as also of my father-in-law,[20] and of Abhimanyu too, blessed be thou, that darling nephew of

thine who was so very like unto thee ! Do thou accomplish today what will be beneficial to all these ! I urge thee earnestly, O Janārddana ![21] Uttarā, O slayer of foes, always repeats the words said unto her by Abhimanyu. Without doubt, O Krishna, those words were highly agreeable to her.[22] O thou of the Dāçārha race, Arjuna's son said unto this daughter of Virāta,—Thy son, O blessed girl, will go to my maternal uncles.[23] Taking up his residence with the Vrishnis and Andhakas, he will obtain from them the science of arms, indeed, diverse wonderful weapons and the whole of the science of polities and morality ![24]—Even these were the words, O son, that that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the son of Subhadrā, that irresistible hero, said unto Uttarā from his affection for her.[25] O slayer of Madhu, bowing our heads unto thee, we pray thee for making those words of Abhimanyu true ! In view also of the time that has come, do thou accomplish what is highly beneficial !'[26] Having said these words unto that hero of the Vrishni's race, Prithā of large eyes, raised her arms upwards and with the other ladies in her company, fell down on the Earth.[27] All of them, with eyes rendered muddy by tears, repeatedly explained, saying,—'Alas, the son of Vāsudeva's nephew has been born dead !'[28]—After Kunti had said so, Janārddana took hold of her, O Bhārata, and gently raising her from the Earth, comforted her as follows."[29]

SECTION LXVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After Kunti had sat up, Subhadrā, beholding her brother, began to weep aloud, and afflicted with excessive grief, said,[1]—'O thou of eyes like lotus petals, behold the grandson of Arjuna of great intelligence ! Alas, the Kuru race having been thinned, a child has been born that is feeble and dead ![2] The blade of grass (inspired into a weapon of great efficacy), uplifted by Drona's son for compassing the destruction of Bhimasena, fell upon Uttarā and Vijaya and myself ![*3] Alas, that blade, O Keçava, is still existing (un-

---

* 'Vijaya' is Arjuna.—T.

extracted) in me, after having pierced my heart, since I do not, O irresistible hero, behold this child with (his sire who was) my son![4] What will the righteous souled king Yudhishthira the just say? What will Bhimasena and Arjuna, and the two sons of Madravati also say?[5] Hearing that Abhimanyu's son was born and dead, the Pāndavas, O thou of Vrishni's race, will regard themselves as cheated by Açwatthāman.[6] Abhimanyu, O Krishna, was the favourite of all the Pāndava brothers, without doubt. Hearing this intelligence, what will those heroes, vanquished by the weapon of Drona's son, say?[7] What grief, O Janarddana, can be greater than this, *viz.*, that Abhimanyu's son should be born and dead?[8] Bowing unto thee with my head, O Krishna, I seek to gratify thee today! Behold, O foremost of men, these two standing here, *viz.*, Prithā and Draupadi![9] When, O Mādhava, the son of Drona sought to destroy the embryos even in the wombs of the ladies of the Pāndavas, at that time, O grinder of foes, thou saidst in wrath unto Drona's son (even these words),[10]—O wretch of a Brāhmana, O vilest of men, I shall disappoint thy wish! I shall revive the son of Kiritin's son![11]—Hearing these words of thine and well-knowing thy puissance, I seek to gratify thee, O irresistible hero! Let the son of Abhimanyu be revived![12] If having pledged thyself previously thou dost not accomplish thy auspicous vow, do thou then know for certain, O chief of the Vrishni race, that I shall cast off my life![13] If, O hero, this son of Abhimanyu doth not revive when thou, O irresistible one, art alive and near, of what other use wilt thou be to me?[14] Do thou, therefore, O irresistible one, revive this son of Abhimanyu,—this child that is possessed of eyes similar to his,—even as a rain-charged cloud revives the lifeless crops (on a field)![15] Thou, O Keçava, art righteous-souled, truthful, and of prowess incapable of being baffled. It behooveth thee, O chastiser of foes, to make thy words truthful![16] If only thou wishest it, thou canst revive the three worlds (of being) if dead! What need I say, therefore, of this darling child, born but dead, of thy sister's son?[17] I know thy puissance, O Krishna! Therefore, do I solicit thee! Do thou show this great favour

to the sons of Pāndu ![18] It behooveth thee, O mighty-armed one, to show compassion to this Uttarā or to me, thinking that I am thy sister or even a mother that hath lost her son, and one that hath thrown herself upon thy protection !' "[19]

SECTION LXVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thus addressed, O king, (by his sister and others), the slayer of Keçin, exceedingly afflicted by grief, answered,—'So be it !'—These words were uttered with sufficient loudness and they gladdened all the inmates of the inner apartments of the palace.[1] The puissant Krishna, that foremost of men, by uttering these words, gladdened all the people assembled there, like one pouring cold water on a person afflicted with sweat.[2] He then quickly entered the lying-in room in which thy sire was born. It was duly sanctified, O chief of men, with many garlands of white flowers;[3] with many well-filled water pots arranged on every side; with char-coal, soaked in ghee, of Tinduka wood, and mustard seeds, O thou of mighty-arms;[4] with shining weapons properly arrayed, and several fires on every side. And it was peopled by many agreeable and aged dames summoned for waiting (upon thy grand-mother).[5] It was also surrounded by many well-skilled and clever physicians, O thou of great intelligence ! Endued with great energy, he also saw there all articles that are destructive of Rākshasas, duly placed by persons conversant with the subject. Beholding the lying-in room in which thy sire was born thus equipt, Hrishikeça became very glad and said,—'Excellent, Excellent !'[6-7] When he of Vrishni's race said so and presented such a cheerful countenance, Draupadi, repairing thither with great speed, addressed the daughter of Virāta, saying,[8]—'O blessed lady, here comes to thee thy father-in-law, the slayer of Madhu, that ancient Rishi of inconceivable soul, that unvanquished one !'[9]—Virāta's daughter, checking her tears, said these words in a voice suffocated with grief. Covering herself properly, the princess waited for Krishna like the deities reverentially waiting for him.[10] The helpless lady, with heart agitated by grief, beholding Govinda coming, in-

dulged in these lamentations:[11]—O lotus-eyed one, behold us two deprived of our child! O Janārddana, both Abhimanyu and myself have been equally slain![12] O thou of Vrishni's race, O slayer of Madhu, I seek to gratify thee by bending my head, O hero, unto thee! Do thou revive this child of mine that has been consumed by the weapon of Drona's son![13] If king Yudhishthira the just, or Bhimasena, or thyself, O lotus-eyed one, had, on that occasion, said,[14]—Let the blade of grass (inspired by Açwathāman into a Brahma-weapon) destroy the unconscious mother,—O puissant one, then I would have been destroyed and this (sad occurrence) would not have happened.[15] Alas, what benefit has been reaped by Drona's son by accomplishing this cruel deed, *viz.*, the destruction of the child in the womb by his Brahma-weapon![16] That self-same mother now seeks to gratify thee, O slayer of foes, by bending her head! Surely, O Govinda, I shall cast off my life-breaths if this child does not revive![17] In him, O righteous one, were placed many expectations by me! Alas, when these have been frustrated by Drona's son, what need have I, O Keçava, to bear the burden of life?[18] The hope, O Krishna, was cherished by me that with my child on my lap, O Janārddana, I would salute thee with reverence. Alas, O Keçava, that hope has been destroyed![19] O foremost of all beings, at the death of this heir of Abhimanyu of restless eyes, all the hopes in my breast have been destroyed![20] Abhimanyu of restless eyes, O slayer of Madhu, was exceedingly dear to thee! Behold this child of his slain by the Brahma-weapon![21] This child is very ungrateful and very heartless, like his sire, for, behold, disregarding the prosperity and affluence of the Pāndavas, he has gone to Yama's abode![22] I had, before this, vowed, O Keçava, that if Abhimanyu fell on the field of battle, O hero, I would follow him without any loss of time.[23] I did not, however, keep my vow, cruel that I am and fond of life! If I repair to him now, what, indeed, will Phālguna's son say?'"[24]

Section LXIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The helpless Uttarā, desirous of getting back her child, having indulged in these piteous lamentations, fell down in affliction on the earth like a demented creature.[1] Beholding the princess fallen on the earth deprived of her son and with her body uncovered, Kunti as also all the (other) Bharata ladies, deeply afflicted, began to weep aloud.[2] Resounding with the voice of lamentation, the palace of the Pāndavas, O king, was soon converted into a mansion of sorrow where nobody could remain.[3] Exceedingly afflicted by grief on account of her son, Virāta's daughter, O king, seemed to be struck down for sometime by sorrow and cheerlessness.[4] Regaining consciousness, O chief of Bharata's race, Uttarā took up her child on her lap and said these words :[5]—Thou art the child of one who was conversant with every duty. Art thou not conscious then of the sin thou committest, since thou dost not salute this foremost one of the Vrishni's race ?[6] O son, repairing to thy sire tell him these words of mine, *viz.*,—It is difficult for living creatures to die before their time comes,[7] since though reft of thee, my husband, and now deprived of my child also, I am yet alive when I should die, unendued as I am with everything auspicious and everything possessed of value ![8] —O mighty-armed one, with the permission of king Yudhishthira the just I shall swallow some virulent poison or cast myself on the blazing fire ![9] O sire, difficult of destruction is my heart since, though I am deprived of husband and child, that heart of mine does not yet break into a thousand pieces ![10] Rise, O son, and behold this thy afflicted great-grand-mother ! She is deeply afflicted with grief, bathed in tears, exceedingly cheerless, and plunged in an ocean of sorrow ![11] Behold the reverend princess of Pānchāla, and the helpless princess of the Sāttata race ! Behold myself, exceedingly afflicted with grief, and resembling a deer pierced by a hunter.[12] Rise, O child, and behold the face of this lord of the worlds, that is endued with great wisdom, and possessed of eyes like lotus-petals and resembling thy sire of restless glances."[13]

Beholding Uttarā, who indulged in these lamentations, fallen on the earth, all those ladies, raising her, caused her to sit up.[14] Having sat up, the daughter of the king of the Matsyas, summoning her patience, joined her hands in reverence and touched the earth with her head for saluting Keçava of eyes like the petals of the lotus.[15] That foremost of beings, hearing those heart-rending lamentations of hers, touched water and withdrew the (force of the) Brahma-weapon.*[16] That hero of unfading glory, belonging to the race of the Daçārhas, promised to give the child his life. Then he of pure soul, said these words in the hearing of the whole universe,[17]—'O Uttarā, I never utter an untruth! My words will prove true. I shall revive this child in the presence of all creatures![18] Never before have I uttered an untruth even in jest. Never have I turned back from battle. (By the merit of those acts) let this child revive![19] As righteousness is dear to me, as Brāhmanas are especially dear to me, (by the merit of that disposition of mine) let Abhimanyu's son, who is born dead, revive![20] Never hath a misunderstanding arisen between me and my friend Vijaya. Let this dead child revive by that truth![21] As truth and righteousness are always established in me, let this dead child of Abhimanyu revive (by the merit of these)![22] As Kansa and Keçi have been righteously slain by me, let this child revive today by that truth!'[23] After these words were uttered by Vāsudeva, that child, O foremost one of Bharata's race, became animate and began gradually to move, O monarch!"[24]

Section LXX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—" When the Brahma-weapon was withdrawn by Krishna, at that time, the lying-in room was illumined by thy father with his energy.[1] All the Rākshasas (that had come there) were forced to leave the room and many

---

* Before performing any rite or act of a grave nature, Hindus are required to touch water or perform what is called the 'āchamana. A little quantity of water is taken on the palm of the right hand, and with it are touched the lips, the nostrils, the ears, and the eyes.—T.

of them met with destruction. In the welkin a voice was heard, saying,—Excellent, O Keçava, Excellent![2]—The blazing Brahma-weapon then returned to the Grandsire (of all the worlds). Thy sire got back his life-breaths, O king![3] The child began to move according to his energy and might. The Bharata ladies became all filled with joy.[4] At the command of Govinda, the Brāhmanas were made to utter benedictions. All the ladies, filled with joy, praised Janārddana.[5] Indeed, the wives of those Bharata lions, *viz.*, Kunti and Drupada's daughter and Subhadrā and Uttarā, and the wives of other lions among men, like (ship-wrecked) persons who have reached the shore after having obtained a boat, became exceedingly glad.[6] Then wrestlers and actors and astrologers and those who enquire after the slumbers (of princes),[7] and bands of bards and eulogists all uttered the praises of Janārddana, while uttering benedictions fraught with the praises of the Kuru race, O chief of the Bharatas![8] Uttarā, rising up at the proper time, with a delighted heart and bearing her child in her arms, reverentially saluted the delighter of the Yadus.[9] Rejoicing greatly, Krishna made gifts unto the child of many valuable gems. The other chiefs of the Vrishni race, did the same. Then the puissant Janārddana, firmly adhering to truth, bestowed a name on the infant who was thy sire, O monarch.—'Since this child of Abhimanyu has been born at a time when this race has become nearly extinct,[10-11] let his name be Parikshit!' Even this is what he said. Then thy father, O king, began to grow,[12] and gladden all the people, O Bhārata! When thy father was a month old, O hero,[13] the Pāndavas came back to their capital, bringing with them a profusion of wealth. Hearing that the Pāndavas were near, those foremost ones of the Vrishni race went out.[14] The citizens decked the city called after the elephant with garlands of flowers in profusion, with beautiful pennons and standards of diverse kinds.[15] The citizens also, O king, adorned their respective mansions. Desirous of doing what was beneficial to the sons of Pāndu, Vidura ordered diverse kinds of worship to be offered to the deities established in their respective temples. The principal streets of the city were adorned with

flowers.[16-17] Indeed, the city was filled with the hum of thousands of voices which resembled the softened roar of distant ocean waves. With dancers all engaged in their vocation, and with the voice of singers,[18] the (Kuru) city then resembled the mansion of Vaiçravana himself.* Bards and eulogists, O king, accompanied by beautiful women,[19] were seen to adorn diverse retired spots in the city. The pennons were caused by the wind to float gaily on every part of the city,[20] as if bent upon showing the Kurus the southern and the northern points of the compass. All the officers also of the government loudly proclaimed that that was to be a day of rejoicing for the entire kingdom as an indication of the success of the enterprise for bringing a profusion of gems and other valuables."†[21]

Section LXXI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing that the Pāndavas were near, that crusher of foes, *viz.*, Vāsudeva, accompanied by his ministers, went out for seeing them.[1] The Pāndavas then, uniting with the Vrishnis according to the usual formalities, together entered, O king, the city named after the elephant.[2] With the hum of voices and the clatter of cars of that mighty host, the Earth and the welkin, and the firmament itself, became as it were entirely filled.[3] The Pāndavas, with rejoicing hearts, accompanied by their officers and friends, entered the capital, placing that treasure in their van.[4] Repairing, agreeably to custom, to king Dhritarāshtra first, they worshipped his feet, announcing their respective names.[5] Those foremost ones of Bharata's race, O chief of kings, then paid their respectful salutations to Gāndhāri the daughter of Suvala, and to Kunti.[6] They next worshipped (their uncle) Vidura and met Yuyutsu, the son of Dhritarāshtra by his Vaiçyā wife. Those heroes were then worshipped by others and they blazed forth in

---

* The abode of Vaiçravana is called Alakā. Vaiçravana is, of course, Kuvera, the lord of treasures, friend of Mahādeva, and chief of the Yakshas —T.

† The last line is slightly expanded.—T.

beauty, O king![7] After this, O Bhārata, those heroes heard the tidings of that highly wonderful and marvellous and gladsome birth of thy father.[8] Hearing of that feat of Vāsudeva of great intelligence, they all worshipped Krishna, the delighter of Devaki, who was every way worthy of worship.[9] Then, after a few days, Vyāsa, the son of Satyavati, endued with great energy, came to the city named after the elephant.[10] The perpetuaters of Kuru's race worshipped the great Rishi according to the usual custom. Indeed, those heroes, with those foremost princes of the Vrishni and the Andhaka races, paid the sage their adorations.[11] After having conversed on various subjects, Dharma's son Yudhishthira addressed Vyāsa and said,[12]—This treasure, O holy one, which has been brought through thy grace I wish to devote to that great sacrifice known by the name of the horse-sacrifice.[13] O best of ascetics, I desire to have thy permission. We are all, O Rishi, at thy disposal, and at that of the high-souled Krishna!"[14]

"Vyāsa said,—'I give thee permission, O king! Do what should be done after this! Do thou worship the deities duly by performing the horse sacrifice with profuse gifts.[15] The Horse-sacrifice, O king, is a cleanser of all sins. Without doubt, having worshipped the deities by that sacrifice thou wilt surely be cleansed of all sins!' "[16]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—" Thus addressed, the Kuru king Yudhishthira of righteous soul then set his heart, O monarch, on making the necessary preparations for the Horse-sacrifice.[17] Having represented all this unto the Island-born Krishna, the king endued with great eloquence, approached Vāsudeva and said,[18]—O foremost of all beings, the goddess Devaki has, through thee, come to be regarded as the most fortunate of mothers! O thou of unfading glory, do thou accomplish that which I shall now tell thee, O mighty-armed one![19] O delighter of the Kurus, the diverse enjoyments we enjoy have all been acquired through thy puissance. The whole Earth has been subjugated by thee with the aid of thy prowess and intelligence.[20] Do thou, therefore, cause thyself to undergo the rites of initiation. Thou art our highest preceptor and master. If thou performest the sacrifice, O thou

of the Daçārha race, I shall be cleansed from every sin.[21] Thou art Sacrifice! Thou art the Indestructible! Thou art this All! Thou art Righteousness! Thou art Prajāpati! Thou art the goal of all creatures! Even this is my certain conclusion!'[22]

"Vāsudeva said,—'O mighty-armed one, it becomes thee to say so, O chastiser of foes! Thou art the goal of all creatures. Even this is my certain conclusion![23] Amongst the heroes of the Kuru race, in consequence of thy righteousness thou shinest today in great glory! They have all been cast into the shade, O king, by thee! Thou art our king, and thou art our senior![24] With my approval freely granted, do thou adore the deities in the sacrifice suggested! Do thou, O Bhārata, appoint us to whatever tasks thou likest! Truly, do I pledge myself that I shall accomplish all, O sinless one, that thou mayst bid me accomplish.[25] Bhimasena and Arjuna and the two sons of Madravati will be sacrificing when thou, O king, sacrificest![*]' "[26]

Section LXXII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thus addressed by Krishna, Yudhishthira, the son of Dharma, endued with great intelligence, saluted Vyāsa and said these words:[1]—'Do thou cause me to be initiated when the proper hour, as thou truly knowest, comes for that rite. This my sacrifice is entirely dependent on thee!'[2]

"Vyāsa said,—'Myself, O son of Kunti, and Paila and Yājnavalkya, shall, without doubt, achieve every rite at the proper time.[3] The rite of initiating thee will be performed on the day of full moon belonging to the month of Chaitra. Let all the necessaries of the sacrifice, O foremost of men, be got ready.[4] Let Sutas well-versed in the science of horses, and let Brāhmanas also possessed of the same lore, select, after examination, a worthy horse in order that thy sacrifice may

---

* The sense is this: thou art the eldest brother of the Pāndavas; if thou sacrificest, thy brothers also will come to be regarded as sacrificing with thee.—T.

be completed.[5] Loosening the animal according to the injunctions of the scriptures, let him wander over the whole Earth with her belt of seas, displaying thy blazing glory, O king!'"[6]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed (by the Rishi), Yudhishthira, the son of Pāndu, that lord of Earth, answered,—'So be it!'—and then, O monarch, he accomplished all that that utterer of Brahma had directed.[7] All the articles necessary for the sacrifice, O king, were duly procured.[8] The royal son of Dharma, possessed of immeasurable soul, having procured all the necessaries, informed the Island-born Krishna of it.[9] Then Vyāsa of great energy said unto the royal son of Dharma,—'As regards ourselves, we are all prepared to initiate thee in view of the sacrifice![10] Let the *Sphya* and the *Kurcha* and all the other articles that, O thou of Kuru's race, may be needed for thy sacrifice, be made of gold!*[11] Let the horse also be loosened today, for roaming on the Earth, agreeably to the ordinances of the scriptures. Let the animal, duly protected, wander over the Earth!'[12]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Let arrangements be made by thee, O regenerate one, about loosening this horse for enabling it to wander over the Earth at its will![13] It behooveth thee, O ascetic, to say who will protect this steed while roaming over the Earth freely according to its will.'"[14]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed (by king Yudhishthira), O monarch, the Island-born Krishna said,—He who is born after Bhimasena, who is the foremost of all bowmen,[15] who is called Jishnu, who is endued with great patience and capable of overcoming all resistance,—he will protect the horse! That destroyer of the Nivātakavachas is competent to conquer the whole Earth.[16] In him are all celestial weapons. His body is like that of a celestial in its powers of endurance. His bow and quivers are celestial. Even he will follow this horse.[17] He is well versed in both Religion and Wealth. He is a master of all the sciences. O foremost of kings, he will agreeably to the scriptures, cause the steed to roam and graze

* 'Sphya' was a wooden sword or scimitar, used for slaying the sacrificial animal. 'Kurcha' is a handful of Kuça grass. All these things are directed by Vyāsa to be made of pure gold.—T.

at its will.[18] This mighty-armed prince, of dark complexion, is endued with eyes resembling the petals of the lotus. That hero, the father of Abhimanyu, will protect the steed.[19] Bhimasena also is endued with great energy. That son of Kunti is possessed of immeasurable might. He is competent to protect the kingdom, aided by Nakula, O monarch![20] Possessed of great intelligence and fame, Sahadeva will, O thou of Kuru's race, duly attend to all the relatives that have been invited to thy capital.'[21] Thus addressed by the Rishi, that perpetuater of Kuru's race, *viz.*, Yudhishthira, accomplished every injunction duly and appointed Phālguna to attend to the horse.[22]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Come, O Arjuna, let the horse, O hero, be protected by thee! Thou alone art competent to protect it, and none else![23] Those kings, O mighty-armed hero, who will come forward to encounter thee, try, O sinless one, to avoid battles with them to the best of thy power![24] Thou shouldst also invite them all to this sacrifice of mine. Indeed, O mighty-armed one, go forth but try to establish friendly relations with them!'"[25]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"The righteous-souled king Yudhishthira, having said so unto his brother Savyasāchin, commanded Bhima and Nakula to protect the city.[26] With the permission of king Dhritarāshtra, Yudhishthira then set Sahadeva, that foremost of warriors, to wait upon all the invited guests."[27]

Section LXXIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"When the hour for initiation came, all those great Ritwijas duly initiated the king in view of the horse sacrifice.[1] Having finished the rites of binding the sacrificial animals, the son of Pāndu, *viz.*, king Yudhishthira the just, endued with great energy, the initiation being over, shone with great splendour along with those Ritwijas.[2] The horse that was brought for the horse-sacrifice was let loose, agreeably to the injunctions of the scriptures, by that utterer of Brahma, *viz.*, Vyāsa himself of immeasurable energy.[3] Then king Yudhishthira the just, O monarch, after his initiation, adorned

with a garland of gold around his neck, shone in beauty like a blazing fire.[4] Having a black deer skin for his upper garment, bearing a staff in hand, and wearing a cloth of red silk, the son of Dharma, possessed of great splendour, shone like a second Prajāpati seated on the sacrificial altar.[5] All his Ritwijas also, O king, were clad in similar robes. Arjuna also shone like a blazing fire.[6] Dhananjaya, unto whose car were yoked white steeds, then duly prepar d, O king, to follow that horse of the comp'exion of a black deer, at the command of Yudhishthira.[7] Repeatedly drawing his bow, named Gāndiva, O king, and casing his hand in a fence made of iguana skin, Arjuna, O monarch, prepared to follow that horse, O ruler of men, with a cheerful heart.[8] All Hastināpore, O king, with the very children, came out at that spot from desire of beholding Dhananjaya, that foremost of the Kurus, on the eve of his journey.[9] So thick was the crowd of spectators that came to behold the horse and the prince who was to follow it, that in consequence of the pressure of bodies, it seemed a fire was created.[10] Loud was the noise that arose from that crowd of men who assembled together for beholding Dhananjaya the son of Kunti, and it seemed to fill all the points of the compass and the entire welkin.[11] And they said,—'There goes the son of Kunti, and there that horse of blazing beauty! Indeed, the mighty-armed hero follows the horse, having armed himself with his excellent bow!'[12]—Even these were the words which Jishnu of noble intelligence heard. The citizens also blessed him, saying,—'Let blessings be thine! Go thou safely and come back, O Bhārata!'[13] Others, O chief of men, uttered these words:—So great is the press that we do not see Arjuna. His bow, however, is visible to us.[14] Even that is the celebrated bow Gāndiva of terrible twang! Blessed be thou. Let all dangers fly from thy path! Let fear nowhere inspire thee!'[15] When he returns we shall behold him, for it is certain that he will come back!' The high-souled Arjuna repeatedly heard these and similar other sweet words of men and women, O chief of the Bharatas. A disciple of Yājnavalkya, who was well-versed in all sacrificial rites, and who was a complete master of the Vedas, proceeded with Pārtha for performing auspicious rites in favour

of the hero. Many Brāhmanas also, O king, all well-conversant with the Vedas,[16-18] and many Kshatriyas too, followed the high-souled hero, at the command, O monarch, of Yudhishthira the just.[19] The horse then roamed, O foremost of men, wherever he liked over the Earth already conquered by Pāndavas with the energy of their weapons.[20] In course of the horse's wanderings, O king, many great and wonderful battles were fought between Arjuna and many kings. These I shall describe to thee.[21] The horse, O king, roamed over the whole Earth. Know, O monarch, that from the north it turned towards the East.[22] Grinding the kingdoms of many monarchs that excellent horse wandered. And it was followed slowly by the great car-warrior Arjuna of white steeds.[23] Countless, O monarch, was the fate of Kshatriyas,—of kings in myriads —who faught with Arjuna on that occasion, for having lost their kinsmen on the field of Kurukshetra.[24] Innumerable Kirātas also, O king, and Yavanas, all excellent bowmen, and diverse tribes of Mlechcchas too, who had been discomfited before (by the Pāndavas on the field of Kurukshetra),[25] and many Aryan kings, possessed of soldiers and animals endued with great alacrity, and all irresistible in fight, encountered the son of Pāndu in battle.[26] Thus occurred innumerable battles in diverse countries, O monarch, between Arjuna and the rulers of diverse realms who came to encounter him.[27] I shall, O sinless king, narrate to thee those battles only which raged with great fury and which were the principal ones among all he fought."[28]

Section LXXIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"A battle took place between the diadem-decked (Arjuna) and the sons and grandsons of the Trigartas whose hostility the Pāndavas had incurred before and all of whom were well-known as mighty car-warriors.[1] Having learnt that that foremost of steeds, which was intended for the sacrifice, had come to their realm, those heroes, casing themselves in mail, surrounded Arjuna.[2] Mounted on

their cars, drawn by excellent and well-decked horses, and with quivers on their backs, they surrounded that horse, O king, and endeavoured to capture it.[3] The diadem-decked Arjuna, reflecting on that endeavour of theirs, forhade those heroes, with conciliatory speeches, O chastiser of foes.[4] Disregarding Arjuna's message, they assailed him with their shafts. The diadem-decked Arjuna resisted those warriors who were under the sway of darkness and passion.[5] Jishnu, addressed them smilingly and said,—'Desist, ye unrighteous ones! Life is a benefit (that should not be thrown away)!'[6] At the time of his setting out, he had been earnestly ordered by king Yudhishthira the just not to slay those Kshatriyas whose kinsmen had been slain before on the field of Kurukshetra.[7] Recollecting these commands of king Yudhishthira the just who was endued with great intelligence, Arjuna asked the Trigartas to forbear. But they disregarded Arjuna's injunction.[8] Then Arjuna vanquished Suryavarman, the king of the Trigartas, in battle, by shooting countless shafts at him and laughed in scorn.[9] The Trigarta warriors, however, filling the ten points with the clatter of their cars and car-wheels, rushed towards Dhananjaya.[10] Then Suryavarman, displaying his great lightness of hand, pierced Dhananjaya with hundreds of straight arrows, O monarch![11] The other great bowmen who followed the king and who were all desirous of compassing the destruction of Dhananjaya, shot showers of arrows on him.[12] With countless shafts shot from his own bowstring, the son of Pāndu, O king, cut off those clouds of arrows upon which they fell down.[13] Endued with great energy, Ketuvarman, the younger brother of Suryavarman, and possessed of youthful vigour, fought, for the sake of his brother, against Pāndu's son possessed of great fame.[14] Beholding Ketuvarman approaching towards him for battle, Vibhatsu, that slayer of hostile heroes, slew him with many sharp-pointed arrows.[15] Upon Ketuvarmana's fall, the mighty car-warrior Dhritavarman, rushing on his car towards Arjuna, showered a perfect downpour of arrows on him.[16] Beholding that lightness of hand displayed by the youth Dhritavarman, Gudākeça of mighty energy and great prowess became highly gratified with

him.[17] The son of Indra could not see when the young warrior took out his arrows and when he placed them on his bowstring aiming at him. He only saw showers of arrows in the air.[18] For a brief space of time, Arjuna gladdened his enemy and mentally admired his heroism and skill.[19] The Kuru hero, smiling the while, fought with that youth who resembled an angry snake. The mighty-armed Dhananjaya, glad as he was in beholding the valour of Dhritavarman, did not take his life.[20] While, however, Pārtha of immeasurable energy fought mildly with him without wishing to take his life, Dhritavarman shot a blazing arrow at him.[21] Deeply pierced in the hand by that arrow, Vijaya became stupefied and his bow Gāndiva fell down on the Earth from his relaxed grasp.[22] The form of that bow, O king, when it fell from the grasp of Arjuna, resembled, O Bhārata, that of the bow of Indra (that is seen in the welkin after a shower).[23] When that great and celestial bow fell down, O monarch, Dhritavarman laughed loudly in battle.[24] At this, Jishnu, excited with rage, wiped the blood from his hand and once more taking up his bow, showered a perfect downpour of arrows.[25] Then a loud and confused noise arose, filling the welkin and touching the very heavens as it were, from diverse creatures who applauded that feat of Dhananjaya.[26] Beholding Jishnu inflamed with rage and looking like Yama himself as he appears at the end of the Yuga, the Trigarta warriors hastily surrounded him,[27] rushing from their posts and desirous of rescuing Dhritavarman. Seeing himself surrounded by his foes, Arjuna became more angry than before.[28] He then quickly despatched eight and ten of their foremost warriors with many shafts of hard iron that resembled the arrows of the great Indra himself.[29] The Trigarta warriors then began to fly. Seeing them retreat, Dhananjaya, with great speed, shot many shafts at them that resembled wrathful snakes of virulent poison, and laughed aloud.[30] The mighty car-warriors of the Trigartas, with dispirited hearts, fled in all directions, exceedingly afflicted by Dhananjaya with his arrows.[31] They then addressed that tiger among men, that slayer of the Samsaptaka host (on the field of Kurukshetra), saying,—'We are your slaves! We yield to

thee!*[32] Do thou command us, O Pārtha! Lo, we wait here as the most docile of thy servants!—O delighter of the Kurus, we shall execute all thy commands!'[33] Hearing these words expressive of their submission, Dhananjaya said unto them,—'Do ye, O kings, save your lives, and accept my dominion'"[34]

SECTION LXXV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"That foremost of steeds then proceeded to the realm of Prāgjyotisha and began to wander there. At this, Bhagadatta's son, who was exceedingly valourous in battle, came out (for encountering Arjuna).[1] King Vajradatta, O chief of the Bharatas, finding the (sacrificial) steed arrived within his realm, fought (for detaining it).[2] The royal son of Bhagadatta, issuing out of his city, afflicted the steed that was coming (and seizing it), marched back towards his own place.[3] Marking this, the mighty-armed chief of the Kuru race, speedily stretched his Gāndiva, and suddenly rushed towards his foe.[4] Stupefied by the shafts sped from Gāndiva, the heroic son of Bhagadatta, letting off loose the steed, fled from Pārtha.†[5] Once more entering his capital, that foremost of kings, irresistible in battle, cased himself in mail, and mounting on his prince of elephants, came out.[6] That mighty car-warrior had a white umbrella held over his head, and was fanned with a milk-white yak-tails.[7] Impelled by childishness and folly, he challenged Pārtha, the mighty car-warrior of the Pāndavas, famed for terrible deeds in battle, to an encounter with him.[8] The enraged prince then urged towards Arjuna that elephant of his, which resembled a veritable mountain, and from whose temples and mouth issued streams of juice indicative of excitement.[9] Indeed, that

---

* It will be remembered that the Samsaptaka host which had engaged Arjuna for several days on the field of Kurukshetra, all consisted of Trigarta warriors led by their king Suçarman. 'Samsaptaka' means 'sworn.' Those soldiers who took the oath that they would either conquer or die, were called by that name.—T.

† The reading in every edition seems to be vicious. For obvious reasons, I read 'Pārthādupadravat' instead of 'Pārthamupadravat.'—T.

elephant showered its secretions like a mighty mass of clouds pouring rain. Capable of resisting hostile feats of its own species, it had been equipped agreeably to the ordinances of the treatises (on war-elephants). Irresistible in battle, it had become so infuriate as to be beyond control.[10] Urged on by the prince with the iron-hook, that mighty elephant then seemed (as it advanced) as if it would cut through the welkin (like a flying hill).[11] Beholding it advance towards him, O king, Dhananjaya, filled with rage and standing on the earth, O Bhārata, encountered the prince on its back.[12] Filled with wrath, Vajradatta quickly shed at Arjuna a number of broad-headed shafts endued with the energy of fire and resembling (as they coursed through the air) a cloud of speedily-moving locusts.[13] Arjuna, however, with shafts sped from Gāndiva, cut off those arrows, some into two and some into three pieces. He cut them off in the welkin itself with those shafts of his coursing through the welkin.[14] The son of Bhagadatta, beholding his broad-headed shafts thus cut off, quickly sped at Arjuna a number of other arrows in a continuous line.[15] Filled with rage at this, Arjuna, more quickly than before, shot at Bhagadatta's son a number of straightly coursing arrows equipt with golden wings.[16] Vajradatta of mighty energy, struck with great force and pierced with those arrows in that fierce encounter, fell down on the Earth. Consciousness, however, did not desert him.[17] Mounting on his prince of elephants again in the midst of that battle, the son of Bhagadatta, desirous of victory, very coolly sped a number of shafts at Arjuna.[18] Filled with wrath, Jishnu then sped at the prince a number of arrows that looked like blazing flames of fire and that seemed to be so many snakes of virulent poison.[19] Pierced therewith, the mighty elephant, emitting a large quantity of blood, looked like a mountain of many springs discharging rillets of water coloured with red chalk."[20]

Section LXXVI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thus waged that battle, O chief of the Bharatas, for three days between Arjuna and that prince

like the encounter between him of a hundred sacrifices and Vritra.[1] On the fourth day, Vajradatta of great might laughed loudly and, addressing Arjuna, said these words:[2]—'Wait, wait, O Arjuna! Thou shalt not escape me with life! Slaying thee I shall duly discharge the water-rite of my sire![3] My aged sire, Bhagadatta, who was the friend of thy sire, was slain by thee in consequence of his weight of years. Do thou, however, fight me that am but a boy!'*[4] Having said these words, O thou of Kuru's race, king Vajradatta, filled with rage, urged his elephant towards the son of Pāndu.[5] Urged on by Vajradatta of great intelligence, that prince of elephants, as if desirous of cutting through the welkin, rushed towards Dhananjaya.[6] That prince of elephants drenched Arjuna with a shower of juice emitted from the end of his trunk, like a mass of blue clouds drenching a hill with its downpour.[7] Indeed, urged on by the king, the elephant, repeatedly roaring like a cloud, rushed towards Phālguna, with that deep noise emitted from its mouth.[8] Verily, urged on by Vajradatta, that prince of elephants quickly moved towards the mighty car-warrior of the Kurus, with the tread of one that seemed to dance in excitement.[9] Beholding that beast of Vajradatta advance towards him, that slayer of foes, *viz.*, the mighty Dhananjaya, relying on Gāndiva, stood his ground without shaking with fear.[10] Recollecting what an obstacle Vajradatta was proving to the accomplishment of his task, and remembering the old enmity of the house (of Prāgjyotisha towards the Pāndavas), the son of Pāndu became exceedingly inflamed with wrath against the king.[11] Filled with rage, Dhananjaya impeded the course of that beast with a shower of arrows like the shore resisting the surging sea.[12] That prince of elephants possessed of beauty (of form), thus impeded by Arjuna, stopped in its course, with body pierced with many an arrow, like a porcupine with its quills erect.[13] Seeing his elephant impeded in its course, the royal son of Bhagadatta, deprived of sense by rage, shot many whetted arrows at Arjuna.[14] The mighty-armed Arjuna baffled all

* Bhagadatta was the friend of Indra, the father of Arjuna.—T.

those arrows with many foe-slaying shafts of his. The feat seemed to be exceedingly wonderful.[15] Once more the king of the Prāgjyotishas, inflamed with ire, forcibly urged his elephant, which resembled a mountain, at Arjuna.[16] Beholding the beast once more advancing towards him, Arjuna shot with great strength a shaft at it that resembled a veritable flame of fire.[17] Struck deeply in the very vitals, O king, by the son of Pāndu, the beast suddenly fell down on the Earth like a mountain summit loosened by a thunder-bolt.[18] Struck with Dhananjaya's shaft, the elephant, as it lay on the Earth, looked like a huge mountain cliff lying on the ground, loosened by the bolt of Indra.[19] When the elephant of Vajradatta was prostrated on the ground, the son of Pāndu, addressing the king who had fallen down with his beast, said,—'Do not fear![20] Indeed, Yudhishthira of mighty energy said unto me while commissioning me for this task even these words, *viz.*, Thou shouldst not, O Dhananjaya, slay those kings (who may encounter thee in battle)![21] O tiger among men, thou shouldst regard thy task as accomplished if only thou disablest those hostile kings! Thou shouldst not also, O Dhananjaya, slay the warriors of those kings who may come forth to fight thee![22] With all their kinsmen and friends. They should be requested to come to the horse-sacrifice of Yudhishthira![23]—Having heard these commands of my brother, I shall not slay thee, O king! Rise up; let no fear be thine; return to thy city safe and sound, O lord of Earth![24] When the day of full moon in the month of Chaitra comes, thou shalt, O great king, repair to that sacrifice of king Yudhishthira the just, for it takes place on that day!'[25] Thus addressed by Arjuna, the royal son of Bhagadatta, defeated by the son of Pāndu, said,—'So be it!'"[26]

Section LXXVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"There occurred a great battle between the diadem-decked Arjuna and the hundreds of Saindhavas who still lived after the slaughter of their clan (on the field of Kurukshetra).[1] Hearing that he of white steeds had entered their territories, those Kshetriyas came out against

him, unable to bear that foremost one of Pāndu's race.[2] Those warriors who were as terrible as virulent poison, finding the horse within their dominion, seized it without being inspired with any fear of Pārtha who was the younger brother of Bhimasena.[3] Advancing against Vibhatsu who waited on foot, armed with his bow, upon the sacrificial steed, they assailed him from a near point.[4] Defeated in battle before, those Kshatriyas of mighty energy, impelled by the desire of victory, surrounded that foremost of men.[5] Proclaiming their names and families and their diverse feats, they showered their arrows on Pārtha.[6] Pouring showers of arrows of such fierce energy as were capable of impeding the course of hostile elephants, those heroes surrounded the son of Kunti, desirous of vanquishing him in battle.[7] Themselves seated on cars, they fought Arjuna of fierce feats who was on foot.[8] From every side they began to strike that hero, that slayer of the Nivātakavachas, that destroyer of the Samsaptakas, that killer of the king of the Sindhus[9] Surrounding him on everyside as within a cage by means of a thousand cars and ten thousand hor e, those brave warriors expressed their exultation.[10] Recollecting the slaughter by Dhananjaya of Jayadratha in battle O thou of Kuru's race,[11] they poured heavy showers of arrows on that hero like a mass of clouds showering a heavy downpour. Overwhelmed with that arrowy shower, Arjuna looked like the sun covered by a cloud.[12] That foremost son of Pāndu, in the midst of that cloud of arrows, resembled a bird in the midst of an iron cage, O Bhārata![13] Seeing the son of Kunti thus afflicted with shafts, cries of oh and alas were uttered by the three worlds and the Sun himself became shorn of his splendour.[14] Then, O king, a terrible wind began to blow, and Rāhu swallowed up both the Sun and the Moon at the same time.[15] Many meteors struck the solar disc and then shot in different directions. The prince of mountains, *viz.*, Kailāsa, began to tremble.[16] The seven (celestial) Rishis, as also the other Rishis of Heaven, penetrated with fear, and afflicted with grief and sorrow, breathed hot sighs.[17] Piercing through the welkin, those meteors fell on the lunar disc as well. All the points of the compass became filled with smoke

and assumed a strange aspect.[18] Reddish clouds, with flashes of lightning playing in their midst and the bow of Indra measuring them from side to side, suddenly covered the welkin and poured flesh and bloods on the Earth.[19] Even such was the aspect which all nature assumed when that hero was overwhelmed with showers of shafts. Indeed, when Phālguna, that foremost one among the Bharatas, was thus afflicted, those marvels were seen.[20] Overwhelmed by that dense cloud of arrows, Arjuna became stupefied. His bow, Gāndiva, fell down from his relaxed grip and his leathern fence also slipped down.[21] When Dhananjaya became stupefied, the Saindhava warriors once more shot at that senseless warrior, without loss of time, innumerable other shafts.[22] Understanding that the son of Prithā was deprived of consciousness, the deities, with hearts penetrated by fear, began to seek his welfare by uttering diverse benedictions.[23] Then the celestial Rishis, the seven Rishis, and the regenerate Rishis, became engaged in silent recitations from desire of giving victory to Prithā's son of great intelligence.[24] When at last the energy of Pārtha blazed forth through those acts of the denizens of Heaven, that hero, who was conversant with celestial weapons of high efficacy, stood immovable like a hill.[25] The delighter of the Kurus then drew his celestial bow. And as he repeatedly stretched the bowstring, the twang that followed resembled the loud sound of some mighty machine.[26] Like Purandara pouring rain, the puissant Arjuna then, with that bow of his, poured incessant showers of shafts on his foes.[27] Pierced by those shafts the Saindhava warriors with their chiefs became invisible like trees when covered with locusts.[28] They were frightened at the very sound of Gāndiva, and afflicted by fear they fled away. In grief of heart they shed tears and uttered loud lamentations.[29] The mighty warrior moved amidst that host of foes with the celerity of a fiery wheel, all the time piercing those warriors with his arrows.[30] Like the great Indra, the wielder of the thunder-bolt, that slayer of foes, *viz.*, Arjuna, shot from his bow in every direction that shower of arrows which resembled a sight produced by magic (instead of any human agency).[31] The Kaurava hero, piercing the hostile

host with showers of arrows looked resplendent like the autumnal Sun when he disperses the clouds with his powerful rays."[32]

SECTION LXXVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The irresistible wielder of Gāndiva, addrest for battle, stood immovable on the field like Himavat himself.[1] The Saindhava warriors, once more rallying, showered in great wrath repeated down-pours of shafts on him.[2] The mighty-armed hero, laughing at his foes, who had once more rallied but who were on the point of death, addressed them in these soft words,[3]—'Do ye fight to the best of your power and do ye endeavour to vanquish me. Do ye, however, accomplish all necessary acts, for a great danger awaits you all![4] See, I fight all of you, baffling your clouds of arrows! Bent as you are on battle, tarry a little. I shall soon quell your pride!'[5] The wielder of Gāndiva, having said these words in wrath, recollected, however, the words, O Bhārata, of his eldest brother.[6] Those words were,—'Thou shouldst not, O child, slay those Kshatriyas who will come against thee for battle! They shou'd, however, be vanquished by thee!' That foremost of men, Phālguna, had been thus addressed by king Yudhishthira the just, of great soul. He, therefore, began to reflect in this strain. 'Even thus was I commissioned by my brother. Warriors advancing against me should not be slain.[7-8] I must act in such a way as not to falsify the words of king Yudhishthira the just!'[9] Having arrived at this conclusion, Phālguna, that foremost of men, then said unto those Saindhavas who were all fierce in battle, these words:[10]—'I say what is for your benefit. Though staying before me, I do not wish to slay you. He amongst you who will say unto me that he has been vanquished by me and that he is mine, will be spared by me.[11] Having heard these words of mine, act towards me in that way which may best conduce to your benefit! By acting in a different way you will place yourselves in a situation of great fear and danger.'[12] Having said these words unto those heroic warriors, the chief of the Kurus began to fight them. Arjuna was inflamed with wrath. His foes, de-

sirous of victory, were equally enraged.[13] The Saindhavas then, O king, shot hundreds and thousands of straight arrows at the wielder of Gāndiva.[14] Dhananjaya, with his own whetted shafts, cut off those arrows of sharp and terrible points, resembling snakes of virulent poision, before they could come up to him.[15] Having cut off those sharp arrows equipt with Kanka-feathers, Arjuna pierced each of the warriors opposed to him with a whetted shaft.[16] The Saindhava Kshatriyas, recollecting that it was Dhananjaya who had slain their king Jayadratha, then hurled at him darts and javelins with great force.[17] The diadem-decked Dhananjaya of great might baffled their intent by cutting off all those weapons before any of them could reach him. At length the son of Pāndu became highly angry.[18] With many straight and broad-headed arrows, he felled the heads of many of those warriors who were rushing at him from desire of victory.[19] Many fled, many rushed at Arjuna; many moved not; all of them, however, uttered such a loud noise (of wrath and grief) that it resembled the roar of the ocean.[20] As they were slain by Pārtha of immeasurable might, they fought him, each according to his strength and prowess.[21] Their animals being all exhausted, Pārtha succeeded in depriving a large number of those warriors of their senses by means of his sharpest shafts in that battle.[22] Then Dusçalā, their queen, the daughter of Dhritarāshtra, knowing that they were rendered cheerless by Arjuna, took her grandson in her arms and repaired to Arjuna.[23] The child was the son of Suratha (the son of Jayadratha). The brave prince proceeded to his maternal uncle on his car for the safety of all the Saindhava warriors.[24] The queen, arrived at the presence of Dhananjaya, began to weep in sorrow. The puissant Dhananjaya, seeing her, cast off his bow.[25] Abandoning his bow, Pārtha duly received his sister and enquired of her as to what he could do for her. The queen replied unto him, saying,[26]—O chief of the Bharatas, this child is the son of thy sister's son! He salutes thee, O Pārtha! Look at him, O foremost of men!'[27] Thus addressed by her, Pārtha enquired after his son (Suratha), saying.—'Where is he?'[28] Dusçalā then answered him, saying,—'Burn-

ing with grief on account of the slaughter of his sire, the heroic father of this child died in great affliction of heart. Listen to me as to how he met with his death.[29] 'O Dhananjaya, he had heard before that his sire Jayadratha had been slain by thee, O sinless one! Exceedingly afflicted with grief at this, and hearing of thy arrival here as the follower and protector of the sacrificial horse, he at once fell down and gave up his life-breaths. Verily, deeply afflicted with grief as he was, as soon as he heard of thy arrival, he gave up his life. Seeing him prostrate on the Earth, O lord, I took his infant son with me and have come to thee, desirous of thy protection.' Having said these words, the daughter of Dhritarāshtra began to lament in deep affliction.[30-33] Arjuna stood before her in great cheerlessness of heart. His face was turned towards the Earth. The cheerless sister then said unto her brother, who was equally cheerless, these words: 'Behold thy sister! Behold the child of thy sister's son![34] O perpetuater of Kuru's race, O thou that art fully conversant with every duty, it behooveth thee to show mercy to this child, forgetting the Kuru prince (Duryodhana) and the wicked Jayadratha![35] Even as that slayer of hostile heroes, Parikshit, has been born of Abhimanyu, so has this mighty-armed child, my grandson, sprung from Suratha![36] Taking him with me, O chief of men, I have come to thee, desirous of the safety of all the warriors! Do thou listen to these words of mine![37] This child of that wicked foe of thine hath now come to thee, O mighty-armed hero. It behooveth thee, therefore, to show mercy to this infant![38] O chastiser of foes, this infant seeks to gratify thee by bending his head. He solicits thee for peace! O mighty-armed hero, be inclined to make peace![39] O thou that art conversant with every duty, be thou gratified with the child whose friends and kinsmen have all been slain and who himself knows nothing of what has happened! Do not yield to wrath![40] Forgetting his disreputable and cruel grandfather, who offended against thee so highly, it behooveth thee to show thy grace towards this child!'[41] Recollecting queen Gāndhāri and king Dhritarāshtra, Dhananjaya, afflicted with grief, addressed Dusçalā who had said so unto him, and

answered her, censuring Kshatriya practices the while.[43] 'Fie on Duryodhana, that mean wight, covetous of kingdom and full of vanity! Alas, it was for him that all my kinsmen have been despatched by me to the abode of Yama!'[43] Having said so, Dhananjaya comforted his sister and became inclined to make peace. Cheerfully he embraced her and then dismissed her, telling her to return to her palace.[44] Dusçalā bade all her warriors disist from that great battle, and worshiping Pārtha, she of beautiful face retraced her steps towards her abode.[45] Having vanquished those heroes, *viz.*, the Saindhavas, thus, Dhananjaya began to follow that steed which roved at its will.[46] The heroic Arjuna duly followed that sacrificial horse even as the divine wielder of Pināka had in days of yore followed the deer through the firmament.*[47] The steed, at its will, wandered through various realms one after another, enhancing the feats of Arjuna.[48] In course of time, O chief of men, the horse, wandering at its pleasure, at last arrived within the dominions of the ruler of Manipura, followed by the son of Pāndu."[49]

Section LXXIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The ruler of Manipura, Vabhruvāhana, hearing that his sire Arjuna had arrived within his dominions, went out with humility, with a number of Brāhmanas and some treasure in his van.†[1] Remembering, however, the duties of Kshatriyas, Dhananjaya of great intelligence, seeing the ruler of Manipura arrive in that guise, did not approve of it.[2] The righteous souled Phālguna angrily said,—This conduct of thine is not becoming. Thou hast certainly fallen away from Kshatriya duties.[3] I have come here as the protector of Yudhishthira's sacrificial horse. Why, O son, wilt thou not fight me, seeing that I have come within thy dominions?[4] Fie on thee, O thou of foolish understanding,

---

* The allusion is to Mahādeva's pursuing sacrifice when the latter fled from him in the form of a deer.—T.

† The Brāhmanas were to receive Arjuna duly and the treasure was intended as a present or offering of respect.—T.

fie on thee that hast fallen away from Kshatriya duties! Fie on thee that would receive me peacefully even though I have come here for battling with thee![5] In thus receiving me peacefully thou actest like a woman. O thou of wretched understanding, if I had come to thee, leaving aside my arms,[6] then would this behaviour of thine have been fit, O worst of men!' Learning that these words were addressed by her husband, the daughter of the Snake-king, *viz.*, Ulupi, unable to talerate it, pierced through the Earth and came up to that spot.* She beheld her son standing there perfectly cheerless and with face hanging down.[7-8] Indeed, the prince was repeatedly rebuked by his sire who was desirous of battle with him, O monarch! The daughter of the snake, with every limb possessed of beauty,[9] *viz.*, Ulupi, said these words consistent with righteousness and duty unto the prince who was conversant with righteousness and duty.—'Know that I am thy mother Ulupi that am the daughter of a snake![10] Do thou accomplish my behest, O son, for thou wouldst then attain to great merit. Fight thy father, this foremost one of Kuru's race, this hero that is irresistible in battle![11] Without doubt, he will then be gratified with thee!' In this way was king Vabhruvāhana incited against his sire by his (step) mother.[12] At last, endued as he was with great energy, he made up his mind, O chief of the Bharatas, to fight Dhananjaya. Putting on his armour of bright gold and his effulgent head-gear,[13] he ascended an excellent car which had hundreds of quivers ready on it. That car was equipt with necessaries for battle and had steeds yoked to it that were endued with the speed of the mind.[14] It had excellent wheels and a strong Upashkara, and was adorned with golden ornaments of every kind. Raising his standard which was decorated most beautifully and which bore the device of a lion in gold, the handsome prince Vabhruvāhana proceeded against his sire for battle.[15] Coming upon the sacrificial steed which was protected by Pārtha, the heroic prince caused it to be seized by persons well-versed in horse-lore.[16] Beholding the steed seized,

* Ulupi was one of the wives of Arjuna. She was, therefore, the step-mother of Vabhruvāhana.—T.

Dhananjaya became filled with joy. Standing on the Earth, that hero began to resist the advance of his son who was on his car.[17] The king afflicted the hero with repeated showers of shafts endued with whetted points and resembling snakes of virulent poison.[18] The battle that took place between sire and son was incomparable. It resembled the encounter between the deities and the Asuras of old. Each was gratified with obtaining the other for an antagonist.[19] Then Vabhruvāhana, laughing, pierced the diadem-decked Arjuna, that foremost of men, in the shoulder with a straight shaft.[20] Equipt with feathers, that shaft penetrated Arjuna's body like a snake penetrating on an anthill. Piercing the son of Kunti through, the shaft, went deep into the Earth.[21] Feeling acute pain, the intelligent Dhananjaya rested awhile, supporting himself on his excellent bow. He stood, having recourse to his celestial energy and seemed to outward appearance like one deprived of life.[22] That foremost of men, then regaining consciousness, praised his son highly. Possessed of great splendour, the son of Cakra said,[23]—Excellent, Excellent, O mighty-armed one, O son of Chitrāngadā! O son, beholding this feat, so worthy of thee, I am highly gratified with thee![24] I shall now shoot these arrows at thee, O son! Stand for fight (without running away)!' Having said these words, that slayer of foos shot a shower of arrows on the prince.[25] King Vabhruvāhana, however, with his own broad-headed shafts, cut all those arrows which were shot from Gāndiva and which resembled the thunder bolt of Indra in splendour, some in twain and some into three parts.[26] Then the standard, decked with gold and resembling a golden palmyra, on the king's car was cut off by Pārtha with some excellent shafts of his.[27] The son of Pāndu, laughing, next slew the king's steeds endued with large size and great speed.[28] Descending from his car, the king, inflamed with rage, fought his sire on foot.[29] Gratified with the prowess of his son, that foremost one of the sons of Prithā, *viz.*, the son of the wielder of the thunder-bolt, began to afflict him greatly.[30] The mighty Vabhruvāhana, thinking that his father was no longer able to face him, again afflicted him with many shafts resembling snakes of virulent poison.[31]

From a spirit of boyishness he then vigorously pierced his father in the breast with a whetted shoft equipt with excellent wings.[32] That shaft, O king, penetrated the body of Pāndu's son and reaching his very vitals caused him great pain. The delighter of the Kurus, Dhananjaya, deeply pierced therewith by his son,[33] then fell down in a swoon on the Earth, O king! When that hero, that bearer of the burthens of the Kurus, fell down, the son of Chitrāngadā also became deprived of his senses. The latter's swoon was due to his exertions in battle as also to his grief at seeing his sire slain.[34-35] He had been pierced deeply by Arjuna with clouds of arrows. He, therefore, fell down at the van of battle embracing the Earth.[36] Hearing that her husband had been slain and that her son had fallen down on the Earth, Chitrāngadā, in great agitation of mind, repaired to the field of battle.[37] Her heart burning with sorrow, weeping piteously the while, and trembling all over, the mother of the ruler of Manipura saw her slain husband."[38]

Section LXXX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"That lady of eyes like lotus petals, having indulged in copious lamentations, and burning with grief, at last lost her senses and fell down on the Earth.[1] Regaining consciousness and seeing Ulupi, the daughter of the snake chief, queen Chitrāngadā endued with celestial beauty, said unto her these words:[2]—'Behold, O Ulupi, our ever-victorious husband slain in battle, through thee, by my son of tender years![3] Art thou conversant with the practices of the respectable? Art thou a wife devoted to thy lord? It is through thy deed that thy husband is laid low, slain in battle![4] If Dhananjaya hath offended against thee in every respect, do thou forgive him! I solicit thee, do thou revive that hero![5] O righteous lady, thou art conversant with piety. Thou art, O blessed one, known (for thy virtues) over the three worlds! How is it that having caused thy husband to be slain by thy son thou dost not indulge in grief?[6] O daughter of the snake chief, I do not grieve for my slain son! I grieve for only my

husband who has received this hospitality from his son!'[7] Having said these words unto the queenly Ulupi the daughter of the snake chief, the illustrious Chitrāngadā proceeded to where her husband lay on the Earth and addressing him, said,[8]—'Rise, O dear lord, thou occupiest the foremost place in the affections of the Kuru king (Yudhishthira)! Here is that steed of thine! It has been set free by me![9] Verily, O puissant one, this sacrificial steed of king Yudhishthira the just should be followed by thee! Why then dost thou lies still on the Earth?[10] My life-breaths depend on thee, O delighter of the Kurus! How is it that he who is the giver of other people's life-breaths casts off his own life-breaths today?[11] Behold, O Ulupi, this goodly sight of thy husband lying prostrate on the ground! How is it that thou dost not grieve, having caused him to be slain through thy son whom thou didst excite with thy words?[12] It is fit that this boy should succumb to the power of death and lie thus on the ground beside his own sire! Oh, let Vijaya, let him that is called Gudākeça, let this hero with reddish eyes, come back to life![13] O blessed lady, palygamy is no fault with men. Women only incur fault by taking more than one husband. Do not, therefore, harbour such thoughts (of vengeance)![*14] This relationship was ordained by the Supreme ordainer himself. It is, besides, an eternal and unchangeable one. Do thou attend to that relationship. Let thy union (with Dhananjaya) be made true![15] If, having slain thy husband through thy son, thou dost not revive him today before my eyes, I shall then cast off my life-breaths![16] Without doubt, O reverend lady, afflicted as I am with grief and deprived as I am of both husband and son, I shall sit here today in *Prāya* in thy very sight!'[17] Having said so unto the daughter of the snake chief, who was a co-wife with her to Arjuna, the princess Chaitravāhini sat in *Prāya*, O king, restraining speech."†[18]

---

* 'Vahubhāryyatā,' meaning polygamy in the first line, should, as the noun of reference for 'Fshah' be taken as 'vahunām bhāryyatā,' *i., e.*, palyandry, in the second line.—T.

† To sit in *Prāya* is to remain seated in a particular spot, abstaining from food and drink, with a view to cast off one's life-breaths.—T.

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Ceasing to lament, the cheerless queen, taking upon her lap the feet of her husband, sat there, sighing heavily and wishing also the restoration of her son to life.[19] King Vabhruvāhana then, regaining consciousness, saw his mother seated in that guise on the field of battle. Addressing her he said,[20]—'What can be more painful than the sight of my mother, who has been brought up in luxury, lying on the bare ground beside her heroic husband stretched thereon ?[21] Alas, this slayer of all foes, this foremost of all wielders of weapons, hath been slain by me in battle ! It is evident that men do not die till their hour comes !*[22] Oh, the heart of this princess seems to be very hard since it does not break even at the sight of her mighty-armed and broad-chested husband lying dead on the ground ![23] It is evident that one does not die till one's hour comes, since neither myself, nor my mother is deprived of life (at even such a sight) ![24] Alas, alas, the golden coat of mail of this foremost hero of Kuru's race, slain by me, his son, knowingly, is lying on the ground, cut off from his body ![25] Alas, ye Brāhmanas, behold my heroic sire lying prostrate on the Earth, on a hero's bed, slain by his son ![26] What benefit is done to this hero, slain by me in battle, by those Brāhmanas who were commissioned to attend upon this foremost one of Kuru's race engaged in following the steed ?[27] Let the Brāhmanas direct what expiation should now be undergone by me, a cruel and sinful wretch, that has slain his own sire in battle ![28] Having slain my own sire, I should, suffering every kind of misery, wander over the Earth, cruel that I am, covering myself with his skin ![29] Give me the two halves of my sire's head today, (so that I may wander over the Earth with them for that period), for there is no other expiation for me that have slain my own sire ![30] Behold, O daughter of the foremost of snakes, thy husband slain by me ! Verily, by slaing Arjuna in battle I have accomplished what is agreeable to thee ![31] I shall today follow in the track by which my sire has gone ! O blessed

---

* The sense is, 'grief does not kill ; that one does not die till one's hour comes. If it were otherwise, I would have died, so heavy is the load of my affliction !'—T.

one, I am unable to comfort myself![32] Be happy today, O mother, seeing myself and the wielder of Gāndiva both embrace death today. I swear to thee by truth itself (that I shall cast off my life-breaths)![33] Having said these words, the king, deeply afflicted with grief, O monarch, touched water, and exclaimed in sorrow,[34]—'Let all creatures, mobile and immobile, listen to me! Do thou also listen to me, O mother! I say the truth, O best of all daughters of the snakes![35] If this best of men, Jaya, my sire, does not rise up, I shall emaciate my own body, sitting on the field of battle![36] Having slain my sire, there is no rescue for me (from that dire sin). Afflicted as I am with the sin of slaying my sire, I shall without doubt have to sink in Hell.[37] By slaying a heroic Kshatriya one becomes cleansed by making a gift of a hundred kine. By slaying my sire, however, so dire has been my sin that my rescue is impossible.[38] This Dhananjaya, the son of Pāndu, was the one hero endued with mighty energy. Possessed of righteous soul, he was the author of my being. How can I be rescued after having slain him?'[39] Having uttered these lamentations, the high-souled son of Dhananjaya, king Vabhruvāhana, touched water and became silent, vowing to starve himself to death."[40]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"When the king of Manipura, that chastiser of foes, afflicted with grief, along with his mother, sat down to starve himself to death,[41] Ulupi then thought of the gem that has the virtue of reviving a dead man. The gem, the great refuge of the snakes, thus thought of, came there.[42] The daughter of the prince of snakes, taking it up, uttered these words that highly gladdened the combatants standing on the field.[43] Rise up, O son! Do not grieve! Jishnu has not been vanquished by thee! This hero is incapable of being vanquished by men as also by the deties with Vāsava himself at their head.[44] I have exhibited this illusion, deceiving your senses, for the benefit of this foremost of men, *viz.*, thy illustrious sire![45] O thou of Kuru's race, desirous of ascertaining the prowess of thyself, his son, this slayer of hostile heroes, O king, came here for battling with thee![46] It was for that reason, O son, that thou wert urged

by me to do battle. O puissant king, O son, do not suspect that thou hast committed any, even the least, fault, by accepting his challenge.[47] He is a Rishi, of a mighty soul, eternal and indestructible. O dear son, Cakra himself is incapable of vanquishing him in battle.[48] This celestial gem has been brought by me, O king. It always revives the snakes as often as they die.[49] O puissant king, do thou place this gem on the breast of thy sire. Thou shalt then see the son of Pāndu revived!'[50] Thus addressed, the prince who had committed no sin, moved by affection for his sire, then placed that gem on the breast of Prithā's son of immeasurable energy.[51] After the gem had been placed on his breast, the heroic and puissant Jishnu became revived. Opening his red eyes he rose up like one who had slept long.[52] Beholding his sire, the high-souled hero of great energy, restored to consciousness and quite at his ease, Vabhruvāhana worshipped him with reverence.[53] When that tiger among men, O puissant one, awoke from the slumber of death with every auspicious sign of life, the chastiser of Pāka rained down celestial flowers.[54] Kettle-drums, struck by nobody, produced their music deep as the roar of the clouds. A loud uproar was heard in the welkin consisting of the words—Excellent, Excellent![55] The mighty-armed Dhananjaya, rising up and well-comforted, embraced Vabhruvāhana and smelled his head.[56] He saw sitting at a distance from his son, this latter's mother afflicted with grief, in the company of Ulupi. Dhananjaya asked,[57]—'Why is it that every thing in the field of battle seems to bear the indications of grief, wonder, and joy? If, O slayer of foes, the cause is known to thee, do thou then tell me![58] Why has thy mother come to the field of battle? Why also has Ulupi, the daughter of the prince of snakes, come here?[59] I know that thou hadst fought this battle with me at my own command. I desire to know what the cause is that has brought out the ladies.'[60] The intelligent ruler of Manipura, thus questioned by Dhananjaya, gratified him by bending his head in reverence, and then said,—'Let Ulupi be questioned!'"[61]

Section LXXXI.

"Arjuna said,—'What business brought thee here, O daughter (-in-law) of Kuru's race, and what also is the cause of the arrival on the field of battle of her who is the mother of the ruler of Manipura ?[1] Dost thou entertain friendly motives towards this king, O daughter of a snake ? O thou of restless glances, dost thou wish good to me too ?[2] I hope, O thou of ample hips, that neither I, nor this Vabhruvāhana here, have, O beautiful lady, done any injury to thee unconsciously ?[3] Has Chitrāngadā of faultless limbs, descended from the race of Chitravāhana, done thee any wrong ?'[4] Unto him, the daughter of the prince of snakes answered smilingly,—'Thou hast not offended me, nor has Vabhruvāhana done me any wrong.[5] Nor this prince's mother who is always obedient to me as a hand-maid. Listen, how all this has been brought about by me.[6] Thou shouldst not be angry with me. Indeed, I seek to gratify thee by bending my head in reverence. O thou of Kuru's race, all this has been done by me for thy good, O puissant one ![7] O mighty-armed Dhananjaya, hear all that I have done. In the great battle of the Bharata princes, thou hadst slain the royal son of Cāntanu by unrighteous ways. What I have done has expiated thy sin. Thou didst not overthrow Bhishma while battling with thee ![8-10] He was engaged with Cikhandin. Relying on him as thy help, thou didst compass the overthrow of Cāntanu's son ! If thou hadst died without having expiated thy sin,[11] thou wouldst then have fallen without doubt into Hell in consequence of that sinful act of thine. Even this which thou hast got from thy son is the expiation of that sin ![12] Formerly, O ruler of Earth, I heard this said by the Vasus while they were in the company of Gangā, O thou of great intelligence ![13] After the fall of Cāntanu's son, those deities, *viz.*, the Vasus, coming to the banks of Gangā, bathed in her waters, and calling the goddess of that stream, they uttered these terrible words having the sanction of Bhāgirathi herself, *viz.*,—Cāntanu's son Bhishma has been slain by Dhananjaya.[14-15] Verily, O goddess, Bhishma then was engaged with another, and had ceased

to fight. For this fault we shall today denounce a curse on Dhananjaya![16]—To this, the goddess Gangā readily assented, saying.—Be it so!—Hearing these words I became very much afflicted and penetrating into the nether regions represented everything to my sire.[17] Informed of what had happened, my sire became plunged in grief. Repairing to the Vasus, he solicited them for thy sake,[18] repeatedly gratifying them by every means in his power. They then said unto him,—Dhananjaya has a highly blessed son who, endued with youth, is the ruler of Manipura.[19] He will, standing on the field of battle, cast Dhananjaya down on the Earth. When this will happen, O prince of snakes, Arjuna will be freed from our curse![20] Do thou go back!—Thus addressed by the Vasus, he came back and informed me of what had happened. Having learnt all this, O hero, I have freed thee from the curse of the Vasus even in this way.[21] The chief of the deities himself is incapable of vanquishing thee in battle. The son is one's own self. It is for this that thou hast been vanquished by him.[22] I cannot be held, O puissant one, to have committed any fault. How, indeed, wouldst thou hold me censurable?'[23]—Thus addressed (by Ulupi), Vijaya became cheerful of heart and said unto her,—'All this that thou hast done, O goddess, is highly agreeable to me.'[24] After this, Jaya addressed his son, the ruler of Manipura, and said unto him in the hearing of Chitrāngadā, the daughter (-in-law) of Kuru's house,[25] 'the Horse-sacrifice of Yudhishthira will take place on the day of full moon in the coming month of Chaitra. Come there, O king, with thy mother and thy counsellers and officers!'[26] Thus addressed by Pārtha, king Vabhruvāhana of great intelligence, with tearful eyes, said these words to his sire,[27]—'O thou that art conversant with every duty, I shall certainly repair, at thy command, to the great Horse-sacrifice, and take upon myself the task of distributing food among the regenerate ones![28] For, however, showing thy grace towards me, do thou enter thy own city with thy two wives. Let no scruple be thine as regards this, O thou that art fully acquainted with every duty![29] O lord, having lived for one night in thy own mansion in happiness, thou mayst then

follow the steed, O foremost of victorious warriors!"[30] The ape bannered son of Kunti, thus addressed by his son, answered the child of Chitrāngadā, saying,[31]—'Thou knowest, O mighty-armed one, what vow I am observing! O thou of large eyes, till the termination of this my vow, I cannot enter thy city.[32] O foremost of men, this sacrificial horse wanders at will. (I have to follow it always). Blessings on thee! I must go away. Place I have none wherein to rest for even a short while!"[33] The son of the chastiser of Pāka then, duly worshipped by his son and obtaining the permission of his two wives, left the spot and proceeded on his way."[34]

Section LXXXII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The (sacrificial) steed, having wandered over the whole Earth bounded by the ocean, then ceased and turned his face towards the city called after the elephant.[1] Following as he did that horse, the diadem-decked Arjuna also turned his face towards the Kuru capital. Wandering at his will, the steed then came to the city of Rājagriha.[2] Beholding him arrived within his dominion, O monarch, the heroic son of Sahadeva, observant of Kshatriya duties, challenged him to battle.[3] Coming out of his city, Meghasandhi, mounted on his car and equipt with bow and arrows and leathern fence, rushed towards Dhananjaya who was on foot.[4] Possessed of great energy, Meghasandhi, approaching Dhananjaya, O king, said these words from a spirit of childishness and without any skill.[5]—'This steed of thine, O Bhārata, seems to move about, protected by women only! I shall take away the horse. Do thou strive to free him![6] Although my sires did not teach thee in battle, I, however, shall do the duties of hospitality to you. Do thou strike me, for I shall strike thee!"[7] Thus addressed, the son of Pāndu, smiling the while, answered him, saying,—'To resist him who obstructs me is the vow cast on me[8] by my eldest brother. Without doubt, O king, this is known to thee! Do thou strike me to the best of thy power. I have no anger!"[9] Thus addressed, the ruler of Magadha first struck the son of Pāndu, showering his arrows

on him like the thousand-eyed Indra showering a heavy downpour of rain.[10] Then, O chief of Bharata's race, the heroic wielder of Gāndiva, with shafts sped from that excellent bow, baffled all the arrows shot carefully at him by his antagonist.[11] Having thus baffled that cloud of arrows, the ape-bannered hero sped a number of blazing arrows at his foe that resembled snakes with fiery mouths.[12] These arrows he shot at his flag and flag-staff and car and poles and yoke and the horses, sparing the body of his foe and his car driver.[13] Though Pārtha who was capable of shooting the bow with the left hand (as well as with the right) spared the body of the prince of Magadha, yet the latter, thinking that his body was protected by his own prowess, shot many arrows at Pārtha.[14] The wielder of Gāndiva, deeply struck by the prince of Magadha, shone like a flowering Palāça (*Butea frondosa*) in the season of spring.[15] Arjuna had no desire of slaying the prince of Magadha. It was for this that, having struck the son of Pāndu, he succeeded in remaining before that foremost of heroes.[16] Then Dhananjaya, becoming angry, drew his bow with great force, and slew his antagonist's steeds and then struck off the head of his car-driver.[17] With a razor-headed shaft he then cut off Meghasandhi's large and beautiful bow, and then his leathern fence. Then cutting off his flag and flag-staff, he caused it to fall down.[18] The prince of Magadha, exceedingly afflicted, and deprived of his steeds and bow and driver, took up a mace and rushed with great speed at the son of Kunti.[19] Arjuna then, with many shafts of his equipt with vulturine feathers, cut off into fragments, that mace of his advancing foe which was adorned with bright gold.[20] Thus cut off into fragments, that mace, with its begemmed bonds and knots all severed, fell on the Earth like a she-snake helplessly hurled down by somebody.[21] When his foe became deprived of his car, his bow, and his mace, that foremost of warriors, *viz.*, the intelligent Arjuna, did not wish to strike him.[22] The ape-bannered hero then, comforting his cheerless foe who had been observant of Kshatriya duties, said unto him these words:[23]—O son, thou hast sufficiently displayed thy adherence to Kshatriya duties. Go now. Great have been the

feats, O king, which thou hast accomplished in battle although thou art very young in years![24] The command I received from Yudhishthira was that kings who oppose me should not be slain. It is for this thou livest yet, O monarch, although thou hast offended me in battle.'[25] Thus addressed, the ruler of Magadha considered himself vanquished and spared. Thinking then that it was his duty to do so, he approached Arjuna and joining his hands in reverence worshipped him.[26] And he said,—'Vanquished have I been by thee! Blessed be thou, I do not venture to continue the battle. Tell me what I am to do now for thee! Regard thy behest as already accomplished!'[27] Comforting him again, Arjuna once more said unto him,—'Thou shouldst repair to the Horse-sacrifice of our king which takes place at the coming full moon of Chaitra.'[28] Thus addressed by him, the son of Sahadeva said,—'So be it,' —and then duly worshipped that horse as also Phālguna, that foremost of warriors.[29] The sacrificial horse then, equipt with beautiful manes, proceeded at his will along the sea-coast, repairing to the countries of the Bangas, the Pundras, and the Koçalas.[30] In those realms Dhananjaya, with his bow Gāndiva, O king, vanquished innumerable Mlechccha armies one after another."[31]

Section LXXXIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Worshipped by the ruler of Magadha, Pāndu's son having white steeds yoked unto his car, proceeded along the south, following the (sacrificial) steed.[1] Turning round in course of his wanderings at will, the mighty steed came upon the beautiful city of the Chedis called after the oyster.*[2] Carabha, the son of Ciçupāla, endued with great strength, first encountered Arjuna in battle and then worshipped him with due honours.[3] Worshipped by him, O king, that best of steeds then proceeded to the realms of the Kāçis, the Angas, the Koçalas, the Kirātas, and the Tanganas.[4] Receiving due honours in all those realms, Dhananjaya turned his course. Indeed, the son of Kunti then proceeded to the

---

* The name of the city was Cuktimati.—T.

country of the Daçārnas.[5] The ruler of that people was Chitrāngada who was endued with great strength and was a crusher of foes. Between him and Vijaya occurred a battle exceedingly terrible.[6] Bringing him under his sway the diadem-decked Arjuna, that foremost of men, proceeded to the dominions of the Nishāda king, *viz.*, the son of Ekalavya.[7] The son of Ekalavya received Arjuna in battle! The encounter that took place between the Kuru hero and the Nishādas was so furious as to make the hair stand on end.[8] Unvanquished in battle, the valiant son of Kunti defeated the Nishāda king who proved an obstacle to the sacrifice.[9] Having subjugated the son of Ekalavya, O king, the son of Indra, duly worshipped by the Nishādas, then proceeded towards the southern ocean.[10] In those regions battles took place between the diadem-decked hero and the Dravidas and Andhras and the fierce Māhishakas and the hillmen of Kolwa.[11] Subjugating those tribes without having to accomplish any fierce feats, Arjuna proceeded to the country of the Surāshtras, his footsteps guided by the horse.[12] Arrived at Gokarna, he repaired thence to Prabhāsa. Next he proceeded to the beautiful city of Dwārāvati protected by the heroes of the Vrishni race.[13] When the beautiful sacrificial horse of the Kuru king reached Dwārāvati, the Yādava youths, used force against that foremost of steeds.[14] King Ugrasena, however, soon went out and forbade those youths from doing what they meditated. Then the ruler of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, issuing out of his palace,[15] with Vasudeva, the maternal uncle of Arjuna, in his company, cheerfully met the Kuru hero and received him with due rites.[16] The two elderly chiefs honoured Arjuna duly. Obtaining their permission, the Kuru prince then proceeded to where the horse he followed led him.[17] The sacrificial steed then proceeded along the coast of the western ocean and at last reached the country of the five waters which swelled with population and prosperity.[18] Thence, O king, the steed proceeded to the country of the Gāndhāras. Arrived there, it wandered at will, followed by the son of Kunti.[19] Then occurred a fierce battle between the diadem-decked hero and the ruler of the Gāndhāras, *viz.*, the son of Çakuni, who

had a bitter remembrance of the grudge his sire bore to the Pāndavas."[20]

Section LXXXIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The heroic son of Cakuni, who was a mighty car-warrior among the Gāndhāras, accompanied by a large force, proceeded against the Kuru hero of curly hair.* That force was properly equipt with elephants and horses and cars, and was adorned with many flags and banners.[1] Unable to bear and, therefore, burning to avenge, the slaughter of their king Cakuni, those warriors, armed with bows, rushed together at Pārtha.[2] The unvanquished Vibhatsu of righteous soul addressed them peacefully, but they were unwilling to accept the beneficial words of Yudhishthira (through Arjuna).[3] Though forbidden by Pārtha with sweet words, they still gave themselves up to wrath and surrounded the sacrificial steed. At this, the son of Pāndu became filled with wrath.[4] Then Arjuna, carelessly shooting from Gāndiva many shafts with razor-like heads that blazed with splendour, cut off the heads of many Gāndhāra warriors.[5] While thus slaughtered by Pārtha, the Gāndhāras, O king, exceedingly afflicted, set free the horse, moved by fear and desisted from battle.[6] Resisted, however, by those Gāndhāra combatants who still surrounded him on every side, the son of Pāndu, possessed of great energy, felled the heads of many, previously naming those whom he thus despatched.[7] When the Gāndhāra warriors were thus being slain all around him in battle, the royal son of Cakuni came forward to resist the son of Pāndu.[8] Unto the Gāndhāra king who was fighting with him, impelled by Kshatriya duty, Arjuna said,—'I do not intend to slay the kings who fight with me, in consequence of the commands of Yudhishthira.[9] Cease, O hero, to fight with me. Do not court defeat !'[10] Thus addressed, the son of Cakuni, stupified by folly, disregarded that advice and covered with many swift arrows the Kuru hero who resembled

---

* The etymology of 'Gudākeça' as the lord of 'Gudākā' or sleep, is fanciful.—T.

Cakra himself in the feats he accomplished in battle.[11] Then Pārtha, with a crescent-shaped arrow, cut off the head-gear of his foe. Of immeasurable soul, he also caused that head-gear to be borne along a great distance like the head of Jayadratha (after he had cut it off in the battle of Kurukshetra).[12] Beholding this feat, all the Gāndhāra warriors became filled with wonder. That Arjuna valuntarily spared their king was well understood by them.[13] The prince of the Gāndhāras then began to fly away from the field, accompanied by all his warriors who resembled a flock of frightened deer.[14] The Gāndhāras, through fear, lost their senses and wandered over the field, unable to escape. Arjuna, with his broad-headed shafts, cut off the heads of many.[15] Many there were who lost their arms in consequence of Arjuna's arrows, but so stupified were they with fear that they were not aware of the loss of that limb. Verily, the Gāndhāra army was exceedingly afflicted with those large shafts which Pārtha sped from Gāndiva.[16] That army, which then consisted of frightened men and elephants and horse, which lost many warriors and animals, and which had been reduced to a rabble and put to rout, began to wander and wheel about the field repeatedly.[17] Among those foes who were thus being slaughtered, none could be seen standing in front of the Kuru hero famed for foremost of feats. No one could be seen who was able to bear the prowess of Dhananjaya.[18] Then the mother of the ruler, of the Gāndhāras, filled with fear, and with all the aged ministers of state, came out of her city, bearing an excellent *Arghya* for Arjuna.[19] She forbade her brave son of steady heart from fighting any longer, and gratified Jishnu who was never fatigued with toil.[20] The puissant Vibhatsu worshipped her and became inclined to show kindness towards the Gāndhāras. Comforting the son of Cakuni, he said,[21]—'Thou hast not, O mighty-armed hero, done what is agreeable to me by setting thy heart upon these measures of hostility! O slayer of heroes, thou art my brother, O sinless one!*[22] Recollecting

* Cakuni was the maternal uncle of Duryodhana and, therefore, of Arjuna also. Cakuni's son and Arjuna, hence, were cousins.—T.

my mother Gāndhāri, and for the sake of Dhritarāshtra also, I have not taken thy life ! It is for this, O king, that thou livest still. Many of thy followers, however, have been slain by me ![23] Let not such a thing happen again ! Let hostilities cease. Let not thy understanding again go astray. Thou shouldst go to the Horse-sacrifice of our king which comes off on the day of full moon of the month of Chaitra !'"[24]

SECTION LXXXV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having said these words, Pārtha set out, following the horse which wandered at its will. The sacrificial steed then turned towards the road that led to the city called after the elephant.[1] Yudhishthira heard from his intelligence-bearers that the steed had turned back. And hearing also that Arjuna was hale and hearty, he became filled with joy.*[2] Hearing also the feats, accomplished by Vijaya in the country of the Gāndhāras as also in other realms, the king became exceedingly glad.[3] Meanwhile, king Yudhishthira the just, seeing that the twelfth day of the lighted fortnight in the month of Māgha had come, and noticing also that the constellation was favourable,[4] summoned all his brothers, *viz.*, Bhima and Nakula and Sahadeva. Endued with great energy, the king, O thou of Kuru's race,[5] that foremost of all persons conversant with duties, said these words in proper time. Indeed, that foremost of all speakers, addressing Bhima, the first of all smiters, said,[6]—'Thy younger brother (Arjuna), O Bhimasena, is coming back with the horse. I have learnt this from those men who had followed Arjuna.[7] The time (for the sacrifice) is come. The sacrificial horse is near. The day of full moon of the month of Māgha is at hand. The month is

---

* The word 'chāra' does not mean always a spy. The ancient kings of India had their spies, it is true, but they had a regular intelligence department. It was the business of these men to send correct reports to the king of every important occurrence. The newsletter-writers of the Mussalman times, or *Harkaras*, were the successors of the 'chāras' of Hindu times.—T.

about to expire, O Vrikodara![8] Let, therefore, learned Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas look for a sacrificial spot for the successful accomplishment of the Horse-sacrifice!"[9] Thus addressed, Bhima obeyed the royal behest. He became very glad upon hearing that Arjuna of curly hair was about to come back.[10] Then Bhima went out with a number of men well conversant with the rules of laying out sacrificial grounds and constructing buildings. And he took with him many Brāhmanas well-versed in all the rites of sacrifices.[11] Bhima selected a beautiful spot and caused it to be duly measured out for laying the sacrificial compound. Numerous houses and mansions were constructed on it and high and broad roads also were laid out.[12] Soon enough the Kaurava hero caused that ground to teem with hundreds of excellent mansions. The surface was levelled and made smoth with jewels and gems, and adorned with diverse structures made of gold.[13] Columns were raised, ornamented with bright gold, and high and wide triumphal arches also were constructed on that sacrificial compound. All these were made of pure gold.[14] The righteous-souled prince also caused apartments to be duly constructed for the accomodation of ladies and of the numerous kings who, hailing from many realms, were expected to grace the sacrifice with their presence.[15] The son of Kunti also caused many mansions to be duly erected for Brāhmanas who were expected to come from diverse realms.[16] Then the mighty-armed Bhimasena, at the command of the king, sent out messengers to the great kings of the Earth.[17] Those best of kings, come to the Horse-sacrifice of the Kuru monarch for doing what was agreeable to him. And they brought many gems with them and many female slaves and horses and weapons.[18] The sounds that arose from those high-souled kings who resided within those pavilions touched the very heavens and resembled the noise made by the roaring ocean.[19] King Yudhishthira, the delighter of the Kurus, assigned unto the monarchs who thus came to his sacrifice diverse kinds of food and drink, and beds also of celestial beauty.[20] The chief of the Bharatas, *viz.*, king Yudhishthira the just, assigned several stables well filled with different kinds of corn and sugar-cane

and milk to the animals (that came with the guests).[21] To that great sacrifice of king Yudhishthira the just who was possessed of high intelligence, there also came a large number of Munis all of whom were utterers of Brahma.[22] Indeed, O lord of Earth, all the foremost ones among the regenerate class that were then alive, came to that sacrifice, accompanied by their disciples. The Kuru king received them all.[23] King Yudhishthira of mighty energy, casting off all pride, himself followed all his guests to the pavilions that had been assigned for their residence.[24] Then all the mechanics and engineers, having completed the arrangements of the sacrifice, informed king Yudhishthira of it.[25] Hearing that everything was ready, king Yudhishthira the just, full of alertness and attention, became highly glad along with his brothers all of whom honoured him duly."[26]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"When the great sacrifice of Yudhishthira commenced, many eloquent dialecticians started diverse propositions and disputed thereon, desirous of vanquishing one another.*[27] The (invited) kings beheld the excellent preparations of that sacrifice, resembling those of the chief himself of the deities, made, O Bhārata, by Bhimasena.[28] They beheld many triumphal arches made of gold, and many beds and seats and other articles of enjoyment and luxury, and crowds of men collected at different spots.[29] There were also many jars and vessels and cauldrons and jugs and lids and covers. The invited kings saw nothing there that was not made of gold.[30] Many sacrificial stakes also were set up, made, according to the directions of the scriptures, of wood, and adorned with gold. Endued with great effulgence, these were duly planted and dedicated (with scriptural Mantras.)[31] The kings saw all animals, again, which belong to land and all those which belong to water, collected there on the occasion.[32] And they also beheld many kine and many buffaloes and many old women, and many aquatic animals, many beasts of prey, and many species of birds, and many specimens of

---

* 'Hetuvādins' are dialectitians or philosophers who dispute on the reasons of things.—T.

viviparous and oviparous creatures, and many that are filth-born, and many belonging to the vegetable kingdom, and many animals and plants that live or grow on mountains.[33-34] Beholding the sacrificial compound thus adorned with animals and kine and corn, the invited kings became filled with wonder.[35] Large heaps of costly sweetmeats were kept ready for both the Brāhmanas and the Vaiçyas. And when the feeding was over of a hundred thousand Brāhmanas, drums and cymbals were beat.[36] And so large was the number fed that the sounds of drums and cymbals were repeatedly heard. Indeed, from day to day those sounds continued.[37] Thus was performed that sacrifice of king Yudhishthira of great intelligence. Many hills of food, O king, were dedicated on the occasion. Many large tanks were seen of curds and many lakes of ghee.[38] In that great sacrifice, O monarch, was seen the entire population of Jamvudwipa, with all its realms and provinces, collected together.[39] Thousands of nations and races were there. A large number of men, O chief of Bharata's race, adorned with garlands and wearing bright ear-rings made of gold, taking innumerable vessels in their hands, distributed the food unto the regenerate classes by hundreds and thousands.[40-41] The attendants of the Pāndavas gave away unto the Brāhmanas diverse kinds of food and drink which were, besides, so costly as to be worthy of being eaten and drunk by kings themselves."[42]

Section LXXXVI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Beholding those kings—lords of Earth—all conversant with the Vedas, arrive, king Yudhishthira, addressing Bhimasena, said,[1]—'O chief of men, let proper honors be paid to these kings who have come (to my sacrifice), for these foremost of men are all warthy of the highest honors!'[2] Thus addressed by king Yudhishthira of great fame Pāndu's son Bhimasena of mighty energy did as he was enjoined, assisted by the twins.[3] The foremost of all men, *viz.*, Govinda, came there, accompanied by the Vrishnis, and with Valadeva in the van.[4] He was accompanied by Yuyudhāna

and Pradyumna and Gada, and Niçatha and Cāmva and Kritavarman.[5] The mighty car-warrior Bhima offered them the most reverential worship. Those princes then entered the palaces, adorned with gems, that were assigned to them.[6] At the end of a conversation he had with Yudhishthira, the slayer of Madhu referred to Arjuna who had been emaciated in consequence of many fights.[7] The son of Kunti repeatedly asked Krishna, that chastiser of foes, about Arjuna. Unto Dharma's son, the lord of all the universe began to speak about Jishnu, the son of Cakra.[8] 'O king, a confidential agent of mine residing in Dwārakā came to me. He had seen Arjuna, that foremost of Pāndu's sons. Indeed, the latter has been very much emaciated with the fatigue of many battles.[9] O puissant monarch, that agent of mine informed me that the mighty-armed hero is very near to us. Do thou set thyself to accomplish thy Horse-sacrifice.'[10] Thus addressed, king Yudhishthira the just said unto him,—'By good luck, O Mādhava, Arjuna comes back safely![11] I desire to ascertain from thee, O delighter of the Yādavas, what has been said in this matter by that mightiest of heroes among the sons of Pāndu![12] Thus addressed by king Yudhishthira the just, the lord of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, that foremost of eloquent men, said these words unto that monarch of righteous soul,[13]—'My agent, recollecting the words of Pārtha, reported them thus to me, O great king,—Yudhishthira, O Krishna, should be told these words of mine when the time comes![14] O chief of the Kauravas, many kings will come (to thy sacrifice)! When they arrive, high honours should be paid unto them. This would, indeed, be worthy for us![15] O giver of honors, the king should further be informed at my request that he should do what is necessary for preventing a carnage similar to what took place at the time of presenting the Arghya (on the occasion of the Rājasuya-sacrifice). Let Krishna also approve of this. Let not, O king, through the ill-feeling of kings, the people be slaughtered![16-17]—My man further reported, O king, these words of Dhananjaya. Listen as I repeat them![18]—O monarch, the ruler of Manipura, my dear son Vabhruvāhana, will

come at the sacrifice.[19] Do thou honour him duly for my sake! O puissant one, he is always attached and deeply devoted to me!'[20]—Hearing these words, king Yudhishthira the just approved of them and said as follows."[21]

Section LXXXVII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'I have heard, O Krishna, thy agreeable words. They are such as deserve to be spoken by thee! Gladsome and sweet as nectar are they. Indeed, they fill my heart with great pleasure, O puissant one![1] O Hrishikeça, I have heard that innumerable have been the battles which Vijaya has fought with the kings of the Earth.[2] For what reason is Pārtha always dissociated from ease and comfort? Vijaya is exceedingly intelligent. This, therefore, pains my heart very much.[3] I always, O Janārddana, think, when I am withdrawn from business, of Kunti's son Jishnu! The lot of that delighter of the Pāndus is exceedingly miserable.[4] His body has every auspicious mark. What, however, O Krishna, is that sign in his excellent body in consequence of which he has always to endure misery and discomfort?[5] That son of Kunti has to bear an exceedingly large share of unhappiness! I do not see any censurable indication in his body. It behoves thee to explain the cause to me if I deserve to hear it.'[6] Thus addressed, Hrishikeça, that enhancer of the glory of the Bhoja princes, having reflected for a long time, answered as follows:[7] —'I do not see any censurable feature in this prince, except that the cheek-bones of this lion among men are a little too high.[8] It is in consequence of this that that foremost of men has always to be on the road. I really do not see anything else in consequence of which he could be made so unhappy.'[9] Thus answered by Krishna of great intelligence, that foremost of men, *viz.*, king Yudhishthira, said unto the chief of the Vrishnis that it was even so.[10] The princess Draupadi, however, looked angrily and askance at Krishna, (for she could not bear the ascription of any fault to Arjuna). The slayer of Keçi, *viz.*, Hrishikeça, approved of that indication of love (for his friend) which the princess of Pānchāla, who also was

his friend, displayed.*[11] Bhimasena and the other Kurus, including the sacrificial priests, who heard of the agreeable triumphs of Arjuna in course of his following the horse, became highly gratified.[12] While they were still engaged in discoursing on Arjuna, an envoy came from that high-souled hero bearing a message from him.[13] Repairing to the presence of the Kuru king, the intelligent envoy bowed his head in reverence and informed him of the arrival of that foremost of men, *viz.*, Phālguna.[14] On receipt of this intelligence, tears of joy covered the king's eyes. Large gifts were made to the messenger for the very agreeable tidings he had brought.[15] On the second day from that date, a loud din was heard when that foremost of men, that chief of the Kurus, came.[16] The dust raised by the hoofs of that horse as it walked in close adjacence to Arjuna, looked as beautiful as that raised by the celestial steed Uchchaiçravas.[17] And as Arjuna advanced, he heard many gladdening words uttered by the citizens. 'By good luck, O Pārtha, thou art out of danger. Praise to king Yudhishthira![18] Who else than Arjuna could come back after having caused the horse to wander over the whole Earth and after having vanquished all the kings in battle?[19] We have not heard of such a feat having been achieved by even Sagara and other high-souled kings of antiquity![20] Future kings also will never be able to accomplish so difficult a feat, O foremost one of Kuru's race, as this which thou hast achieved!'[21] Listening to such words, agreeable to the ear, of the citizens, the righteous-souled Phālguna entered the sacrificial compound.[22] Then king Yudhishthira with all his ministers, and Krishna, the delighter of the Yadus, placing Dhritarāshtra in their van, went out for receiving Dhananjaya.[23] Saluting the feet of his sire (Dhritarāshtra), and then of king Yudhishthira the just of great wisdom, and then worshipping Bhima and others, he embraced Keçava.[24] Worshipped by them all and worshipping them in return according to due rites, the mighty-armed hero,

* It is worthy of note that Draupadi was always styled by Krishna as his 'sakhi' or 'friend.' Krishna was highly chivalrous to the other sex at an age when women were universally regarded as the inferiors of men.—T.

accompanied by those princes, took rest like a ship-wrecked man tossed on the waves resting on reaching the shore.[25] Meanwhile king Vabhruvāhana of great wisdom, accompanied by his mothers (Chitrāngadā and Ulupi), came to the Kuru capital.[26] The mighty-armed prince duly saluted all his seniors of Kuru's race and the other kings present there, and was honored by them all in return. He then entered the excellent abode of his grand-mother Kunti."[27]

SECTION LXXXVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Entering the palace of the Pāndavas the mighty-armed prince saluted his grand-mother in soothing and sweet accents.[1] Then queen Chitrāngadā, and (Ulupi) the daughter of (the snake) Kauravya, together approached Prithā and Krishnā with humility. They then met Subhadrā and the other ladies of the Kuru race with due formalities.[2] Kunti gave them many gems and costly things. Draupadi and Subhadrā and the other ladies of Kuru's race all made presents to them.[3] The two ladies took up their residence there, using costly beds and seats, treated with affection and respect by Kunti herself from desire of doing what was agreeable to Pārtha.[4] King Vabhruvāhana of great energy, duly honoured (by Kunti), then met Dhritarāshtra according to due rites.[5] Repairing then to king Yudhishthira and Bhima and the other Pāndavas, the mighty prince of Manipura saluted them all with humility.[6] They all embraced him with great affection and honoured him duly. And those mighty car-warriors, highly gratified with him, made large gifts of wealth unto him.[7] The king of Manipura then humbly approached Krishna, that hero armed with the discus and the mace, like a second Pradyumna approaching his sire.[8] Krishna gave unto the king a very costly and excellent car adorned with gold and unto which were yoked excellent steeds.[9] Then king Yudhishthira the just, and Bhima, and Phālguna, and the twins, each separately honoured him and made costly presents unto him.[10] On the third day, the sage Vyāsa, the son of Satyavati, that foremost of eloquent men, approaching Yudhishthira, said,[11]—

'From this day, O son of Kunti, do thou begin thy sacrifice. The time for it has come! The moment for commencing the rite is at hand. The priests are urging thee.[12] Let the sacrifice be performed in such a way that no limb may become defective. In consequence of the very large quantity of gold that is required for this sacrifice, it has come to be called the sacrifice of profuse gold.[13] Do thou also, O great king, make the *Dakshinā* of this sacrifice three times of what is enjoined. Let the merit of thy sacrifice increase threefold. The Brāhmanas are competent for the purpose.*[14] Attaining to the merits then of three Horse-sacrifices, each with profuse presents, thou shalt be freed, O king, from the sin of having slain thy kinsmen.[15] The bath that one performs upon completion of the Horse-sacrifice, O monarch, is highly cleansing and productive of the highest merit. That merit will be thine, O king of Kuru's race.'[16] Thus addressed by Vyāsa of immeasurable intelligence, the righteous-souled Yudhishthira of great energy underwent the *Dikshā* for performance of the Horse-sacrifice.†[17] The mighty-armed monarch then performed the great Horse-sacrifice characterised by gifts of food and presents in profusion and capable of fructifying every wish and producing every merit.[18] The priests, well conversant with the Vedas, did every rite, duly, moving about in all directions. They were all well-trained, and possessed of omniscience.[19] In nothing was there a swerving from the ordinances, and nothing was done improperly. Those foremost of regenerate persons followed the procedure as laid down (in the scriptures) and as it should be followed in those points about which no directions are given.‡[20] Those best of regenerate ones, having first per-

---

* The sense is this: for a horse-sacrifice, the Dakshinā or sacrificial present, payable to the principal Ritwija or to be distributed among all the Ritwijas including the other Brāhmanas, is enjoined to be of a certain measure. Vyāsa advises Yudhishthira to make that Dakshinā triple of what the enjoined measure is. By thus increasing the Dakshinā, the merit of the sacrificer with increase correspondingly.—T.

† The 'Dikshā' is the ceremoney of initiation. Certain *mantras* are uttered in which the intention is declared of performing what is desired to be performed.—T.

‡ The 'Karma' of a sacrifice or religious rite is the procedure. It is,

formed the rite called *Pravargya* otherwise called *Dharma*, then duly went through the rite of *Abhishava*, O king.*[21] Those foremost of Soma-drinkers, O monarch, extracting the juice of the Soma, then performed the Savana rite, following the injunctions of the scriptures.[22] Among those that came to that sacrifice none could be seen who was cheerless, none who was poor, none who was hungry, none who was plunged into grief, and none that seemed to be vulgar.[23] Bhimasena of mighty energy, at the command of the king, caused food to be ceaselessly distributed among those that desired to eat.[24] Following the injunctions of the scriptures, priests, well versed in sacrificial rites of every kind, performed every day all the acts necessary to complete the great sacrifice.[25] Amongst the Sadasyas of king Yudhishthira of great intelligence there was none who was not well conversant with the six branches of (Vedic) learning. There was none among them that was not an observer of vows, none that was not an Upādhyāya; none that was not well versed in dialectical disputations.[26] When the time came for erecting the sacrificial stake, O chief of Bharata's race, six stakes were set up that were made of Vilwa, six that were made of Khadira, and six that were made of Sarvavarnin.[27] Two stakes were set up by the priests that were made of Devadāru in that sacrifice of the Kuru king, and one that was made of Cleshmātaka.†[28] At the command of the king, Bhima caused some other stakes to be set up, for

---

of course, laid down in the scriptures on the ritual. There are certain acts, however, which, though not laid down, should be done agreeably to reasonable inferences. What is said, therefore, in the second line of 20 is that the procedure was fully followed, both as laid down and as consistent with inferences.—T.

* 'Pravargya' is a special preliminary rite performed in a sacrifice. 'Abhishava' is the extraction of the juice of the Soma plant after its consecretation with *Mantras*.—T.

† Vilwa is the *Ægle marmelos*, Linn. Khadira is *Acacia catechu*, Linn, or *Mimosa catechu*; Saravarnin is otherwise called, as explained by Nilakantha, Palāça. It is the *Butea frondosa* of Roxburgh. Devadāru is *Pinus Deodara* of Roxburgh, or *Cedrus Deodara*. Cleshmātaka is a small tree indentified with the *Cordia latifolia*. Here probably, some other tree is intended.—T.

the sake of beauty only, that were made of gold.[29] Adorned with fine cloths supplied by the royal sage, those stakes shone there like Indra and the deities with the seven celestial Rishis standing around them in Heaven.[30] A number of golden bricks were made for constructing therewith a *Chayana.* The Chayana made resembled in beauty that which had been made for Daksha, the lord of creatures, (on the occasion of his great sacrifice).[31] The Chayana measured eight and ten cubits and had four stories or lairs. A golden bird, of the shape of Garuda, was then made, having three angles.*[32] Following the injunctions of the scriptures, the priests possessed of great learning then duly tied to the stakes both animals and birds, assigning each to its particular deity.†[33] Bulls, possessed of such qualifications as are mentioned in the scriptures, and aquatic animals were properly tied to the stakes after the rites relating to the sacrificial fire had been performed.[34] In that sacrifice of the high-souled son of Kunti, three hundred animals were tied to the stakes set up, including that foremost of steeds.[35] That sacrifice looked exceedingly beautiful as if adorned with the celestial Rishis, with the Gandharvas singing in chorus and the diverse tribes of Apsaras dancing in merriment.[36] It teemed, besides, with Kimpurushas and was adorned with Kinnaras. All around it were abodes of Brāhmanas crowned with ascetic success.[37] There were daily seen the disciples of Vyāsa, those foremost of regenerate ones, who are compilers of all branches of learning, and well conversant with sacrificial rites.[38] There was Nārada, and there was Tumvuru of great splendour. There were Viçwāvasu and Chitrasena and others, all of whom were proficient in music.[39] At intervals of the sacrificial rites, those Gandharvas, skilled in music and well versed in dancing, used to gladden the Brāhmanas who were engaged in the sacrifice."[40]

---

* It is difficult to understand what these constructions or figures were. They were probably figures drawn on the sacrificial altar, with gold-dust. At the present day, powdered rice, coloured red, yellow, blue, &c., is used.—T.

† Each animal is supposed to be agreeable to a particular deity.—T.

Section LXXXIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having cooked, according to due rites, the other excellent animals that were sacrificed, the priests then sacrificed, agreeably to the injunctions of the scriptures, that steed (which had wandered ever the whole world).[1] After cutting that horse into pieces, conformably to scriptural directions, they caused Draupadi of great intelligence, who was possessed of the three requisites of *mantras*, things, and devotion, to sit near the divided animal.[2] The Brāhmanas then, with cool minds, taking up the marrow of that steed, cooked it duly, O chief of Bharata's race.[3] King Yudhishthira the just, with all his younger brothers, then smelled, agreeably to the scriptures, the smoke, capable of cleansing one from every sin, of the marrow that was thus cooked.[4] The remaining limbs, O king, of that horse, were poured into the fire by the sixteen sacrificial priests possessed of great wisdom.[5] Having thus completed the sacrifice of that monarch who was endued with the energy of Cakra himself, the illustrious Vyāsa with his disciples eulogised the king greatly.[6] Then Yudhishthira gave away unto the Brāhmanas a thousand crores of golden *nishkas*, and unto Vyāsa he gave away the whole Earth.[7] Satyavati's son Vyāsa, having accepted the Earth, addressed that foremost one of Bharata's race, *viz.*, king Yudhishthira the just, and said,[8]—O best of kings, the Earth which thou hast given me I return unto thee! Do thou give me the purchasing value, for Brāhmanas are desirous of wealth (and have no use with the Earth).'[9] The high-souled Yudhishthira of great intelligence, staying with his brothers in the midst of the kings invited to his sacrifice, said unto those Brāhmanas,[10]—'The Dakshinā ordained in the scriptures for the great Horse-sacrifice is the Earth. Hence, I have given away unto the sacrificial priests the Earth conquered by Arjuna.[11] Ye foremost of Brāhmanas, I shall enter the woods. Do ye divide the Earth among yourselves! Indeed, do you divide the Earth into four parts according to what is done in the Chaturhotra sacrifice.[12] Ye best of regenerate ones, I do not desire to appropriate what now belongs

to the Brāhmanas.[13] Even this, ye learned Brāhmanas, has been the intention always cherished by myself and my brothers. When the king said these words, his brothers and Draupadi also said,—'Yes, it is even so.' Great was the sensation created by this announcement.[14] Then, O Bhārata, an invisible voice was heard in the welkin, saying,—'Excellent, Excellent!' The murmurs also of crowds of Brāhmanas as they spoke arose.[15] The Island-born Krishna, highly applauding him, once more addressed Yudhishthira, in the presence of the Brāhmanas, saying,[16]—'The Earth has been given by thee to me! I, however, give her back to thee! Do thou give unto these Brāhmanas gold. Let the Earth be thine!'[17] Then Vāsudeva, addressing king Yudhishthira the just, said,—'It behooveth thee to do as thou art bid by the illustrious Vyāsa!'[18] Thus addressed, that foremost one of Kuru's race, along with all his brothers, became glad of soul, and gave away millions of golden coins, in fact, trebling the Dakshinā ordained for the Horse-sacrifice.[19] No other king will be able to accomplish what the Kuru king accomplished on that occasion after the manner of Marutta.[20] Accepting that wealth, the Island-born sage, Krishna, of great learning, gave it unto the sacrificial priests, dividing it into four parts.[21] Having paid that wealth as the price of the Earth, Yudhishthira, cleansed of his sins and assured of Heaven, rejoiced with his brothers.[22] The sacrificial priests, having got that unlimited quantity of wealth, distributed it among the Brāhmanas gladly and according to the desire of each recipient.[23] The Brāhmanas also divided amongst themselves, agreeably to Yudhishthira's permision, the diverse ornaments of gold that were in the sacrificial compound, including the triumphal arches, the stakes, the jars, and diverse kinds of vessels.[24] After the Brāhmanas had taken as much as they desired, the wealth that remained was taken away by Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Cudras and diverse tribes of Mlechcchas.[25] Thus gratified with presents by king Yudhishthira of great intelligence, the Brāhmanas, filled with joy, returned to their respective abodes.[26] The holy and illustrious Vyāsa respectfully presented his own share, which was very large, of that gold unto Kunti.[27]

Receiving that gift of affection from her father in-law, Prithā became glad of heart and devoted it to the accomplishment of diverse acts of merit.[28] King Yudhishthira, having bathed at the conclusion of his sacrifice and become cleansed of all his sins, shone in the midst of his brothers, honoured by all, like the chief of the celestials in the midst of the denizens of Heaven.[29] The sons of Pāndu, surrounded by the assembled kings, looked as beautiful, O king, as the planets in the midst of the stars.[30] Unto those kings they made presents of various jewels and gems, and elephants and horses and ornaments of gold, and female slaves and cloths and large measures of gold.[31] Indeed, Prithā's son, by distributing that untold wealth among the invited monarchs, shone, O king, like Vaiçravana, the lord of treasures.[32] Summoning next the heroic king Vabhruvāhana, Yudhishthira gave unto him diverse kinds of wealth in profusion and gave him permission to return home.[33] The son of Pāndu, for gratifying his sister Dusçalā, established her infant grand-son in his paternal kingdom.[34] The Kuru king Yudhishthira, having a full control over his senses, then dismissed the assembled kings all of whom had been properly classed and honoured by him.*[35] The illustrious son of Pāndu, that chastiser of foes, then duly worshipped the high-souled Govinda and Valadeva of great might, and the thousands of other Vrishni heroes having Pradyumna for their first. Assisted by his brothers, he then dismissed them for returning to Dwārakā.[36-37] Even thus was celebrated that sacrifice of king Yudhishthira the just, which was distinguished by a profuse abundance of food and wealth and jewels and gems, and oceans of wines of different kinds.[38] There were lakes whose mire consisted of ghee, and mountains of food. There were also, O chief of Bharata's race, miry rivers made of drinks having the six kinds of taste.[39] Of men employed in making and eating the sweetmeats called Khāndavarāgas, and of animals slain for food, there was no

---

* 'Suvibhaktān' implies that they were properly classed or grouped so that there was no dispute or dissatisfaction among them regarding questions of precedence.—T.

end.*[40] The vast space abounded with men inebriated with wine, and with young ladies filled with joy. The extensive grounds constantly echoed with the sounds of drums and the blare of conchs. With all these, the sacrifice became exceedingly delightful.[41] 'Let agreeable things be given away,'—'Let agreeable food be eaten,'—These were the sounds that were repeatedly heard day and night in that sacrifice. It was like a great festival, full of rejoicing and contented men. People of diverse realms speak of that sacrifice to this day.[42] Having showered wealth in torrents, and diverse objects of desire, and jewels and gems, and drinks of various kinds, the foremost one of Bharata's race, cleansed of all his sins, and his purpose fulfilled, entered his capital."[43]

Section XC.

Janamejaya said,—"It behooveth thee to tell me of any wonderful incident that occurred in the sacrifice of my grandsires."[1]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hear, O chief of kings, of a most wonderful incident that occurred, O puissant monarch, at the conclusion of that great Horse-sacrifice.[2] After all the foremost of Brāhmanas and all the kinsmen and relatives and friends, and all the poor, the blind, and the helpless ones had been gratified, O chief of Bharata's race,[3] when the gifts made in profusion were being spoken of on all sides, indeed, when flowers were rained down on the head of king Yudhishthira the just,[4] a blue-eyed mungoose, O sinless one, with one side of his body changed into gold, came there and spoke in a voice that was as loud and deep as thunder.[5] Repeatedly uttering such deep sounds and thereby frightening all animals and birds, that proud denizen of a hole, with large body, spoke in a human voice and said,[6]—'Ye kings, this great sacrifice is not equal to a *prastha* of powdered barley given

---

* Nilakantha explains that 'Khāndavarāga' was made of *Piper longum* and dried ginger (powdered), and the juice of *Phaseolus Mungo*, with sugar. Probably, it is identical with what is now called *Mungkā laddu* in the bazars of Indian towns.—T.

away by a liberal Brāhmana of Kurukshetra who was observing the *Unccha* vow !'[7] Hearing these words of the mungoose, O king, all those foremost of Brāhmanas became filled with wonder.[8] Approaching the mungoose, they then asked him, saying,—'Whence hast thou come to this sacrifice, this resort of the good and the pious?[9] What is the extent of thy might? What thy learning? And what thy refuge? How should we know thee that thus censurest this our sacrifice?[10] Without having disregarded any portion of the scriptures, everything that should be done has been accomplished here according to the scriptures and agreeably to reason, with the aid of diverse sacrificial rites.[11] Those who are deserving of worship have been duly worshipped here according to the way pointed out by the scriptures. Libations have been poured on the sacred fire with the aid of proper *mantras*. That which should be given has been given away without pride.[12] The regenerate class have been gratified with gifts of diverse kinds. The Kshatriyas have been gratified with battles fought according to just methods. The grandsires have been gratified with Crāddhas.[13] The Vaiçyas have been gratified by the protection offered to them, and many foremost of women have been gratified by accomplishing their desires. The Cudras have been gratified by kind speeches, and others with the remnants of the profuse wealth collected on the spot.[14] Kinsmen and relatives have been gratified by the purity of behaviour displayed by our king. The deities have been gratified by libations of clarified butter and acts of merit, and dependants and followers by protection.[15] That, therefore, which is true, do thou truly declare unto these Brāhmanas. Indeed, do thou declare what is agreeable to the scriptures and to actual experience, asked by the Brāhmanas who are eager to know.[16] Thy words seem to demand credit. Thou art wise. Thou bearest also a celestial form. Thou hast come into the midst of learned Brāhmanas. It behooveth thee to explain thyself.'[17] Thus addressed by those regenerate persons, the mungoose, smiling, answered them as follows. 'Ye regenerate ones, the words I have uttered are not false. Neither have I spoken them from pride.'[18] That which I have said may have been heard by you all. Ye

foremost of regenerate persons, this sacrifice is not equal in merit to the gift of a *prastha* of powdered barley.[19] Without doubt, I should say this, ye foremost of Brāhmanas. Listen to me with undivided attention as I narrate what happened to thee truly.[20] Wonderful and excellent was the occurrence that fell out. It was witnessed by me and its consequences were felt by me. The incident relates to a liberal Brāhmana dwelling in Kurukshetra in the observance of the *Unccha* vow.[21] In consequence of that incident he attained to Heaven, ye regenerate ones, along with his wife and son and daughter-in-law. And in consequence of what then happened half my body became transformed into gold.'[22]

"The Mungoose continued,—'Ye regenerate ones, I shall presently tell you what the excellent fruit was of the gift, made by a Brāhmana, of a very little measure (of powdered barley) obtained by lawful means.[23] On that righteous spot of ground known by the name of Kurukshetra, which is the abode of many righteous persons, there lived a Brāhmana in the observance of what is called the *Unccha* vow. That mode of living is like unto that of the pigeon.*[24] He lived there with his wife and son and daughter-in-law and practised penances. Of righteous soul, and with senses under complete control, he adopted the mode of living that is followed by a pariot.[25] Of excellent vows, he used to eat every day at the sixth division.† If there was nothing to eat at the sixth division of the day, that excellent Brāhmana would fast for that day and eat the next day at the sixth division. On one occasion, ye Brāhmanas, there occurred a dreadful famine in the land. During that time there was nothing stored in the abode of that righteous Brāhmana. The herbs and plants were all dried up and the whole realm became void of food-stores.[26-28] When the accustomed hours came for eating, the Brāhmana had nothing to eat. This occurred day after day. All the members of his family were afflicted with hunger but were obliged to pass

* The *unccha* vow consists of subsisting upon grains of corn picked up after the manner of the pigeon from the field after the crops have been cut and removed by the owners.—T.

† The day of 12 hours is divided into 8 divisions.—T.

the days as best they could.[29] One day, in the month of Jaishtha, while the Sun was in the meridiam, the Brāhmana was engaged in picking up grains of corn. Afflicted by heat and hunger, he was practising even this penance.[30] Unable to obtain grains of corn, the Brāhmana soon became worn out with hunger and toil. Indeed, with all the members of his family, he had no food to eat.[31] That best of Brāhmanas passed the days in great suffering. One day, after the sixth division came, he succeeded in obtaining a *prastha* of barley.[32] That barley was then reduced by those ascetics to powder for making what is called *Saktu* of it. Having finished their silent recitations and other daily rites, and having duly poured libations on the sacred fire,[33] those ascetics divided that little measure of powdered barley amongst themselves so that the share of each came up to the measure of a *Kudava.** As they were about to sit down for eating, there came unto their abode a guest.[34] Beholding the person who came as a guest, all of them became exceedingly glad. Indeed, seeing him, they saluted him and made the usual enquiries of welfare.[35] They were of pure minds, self-restrained, and endued with faith and control over the passions. Freed from malice, they had conquered wrath. Possessed of piety, they were never pained at the sight of other people's happiness.[36] They had cast off pride and haughtiness and anger. Indeed, they were conversant with every duty, ye foremost of regenerate ones! Informing their guest of their own penances and of the race or family to which they belonged, and ascertaining from him in return those particulars, they caused that hungry guest of theirs to enter their cottage. Addressing him they said,—'This is the *Arghya* for thee. This water is for washing thy feet. There are scattered some Kuça grass for thy seat, O sinless one.[37-38] Here is some clean *Saktu* acquired by lawful means, O puissant one! Given by us, O foremost of regenerate persons, do thou accept it!'[39] Thus addressed by them, that Brāhmana accepted the Kudava of powdered barley that was offered to him and ate it all. But his hunger,

* A 'prastha' is made up of four 'Kudavas.' A 'Kudava' is equal to about twelve double handfuls.—T.

O king, was not appeased by what he ate.[40] The Brāhmana in the observance of the *Unccha* vow, seeing that his guest's hunger was still unappeased, began to think of what other food he could place before him for gratifying him.[41] Then his wife said unto him,—'Let my share be given unto him! Let this foremost of regenerate persons be gratified and let him then go whithersoever he will!'[42] Knowing that his chaste wife who said so was herself afflicted by hunger, that best of Brāhmanas could not approve of her share of the powdered barley being given to the guest.[43] Indeed, that best of Brāhmanas possessed of learning, knowing from his own state that his aged, toil-worn, cheerless,[44] and helpless wife was herself afflicted by hunger and seeing that lady who had been emaciated into mere skin and bones was quivering with weakness, addressed her and said,—'O beautiful one, with even animals, with even worms and insects,[45] wives are fed and protected. It behooveth thee not, therefore, to say so. The wife treats her lord with kindness and feeds and protects him.[46] Everything appertaining to religion, pleasure, and wealth, careful nursing, offspring for perpetuating the race, are all dependent on the wife. Indeed, the merits of a person himself as also of his deceased ancestors depend also on her.[47] The wife should know her lord by his acts. Verily, that man who fails to protect his wife earns great infamy here and goes into Hell hereafter. Such a man falls down from even a position of great fame and never succeeds in acquiring regions of happiness hereafter.'[48] Thus addressed, she answered him, saying,—'O regenerate one, our religious acts and wealth are united. Do thou take a fourth of this barley! Indeed, be gratified with me![49] Truth, pleasure, religious merit, and Heaven as acquirable by good qualities, of women, as also all the objects of their desire, O foremost of regenerate ones, are dependent on the husband.[50] In the production of offspring the mother contributes her blood. The father contributes his seed. The husband is the highest deity of the wife. Through the grace of the husband, women obtain both pleasure and offspring as the reward.[51] Thou art my *Pati* (lord) for the protection thou givest me. Thou art my *Bhartri* for the

means of sustenance thou givest me. Thou art, again, boon-giver to me in consequence of thy having presented me a son. Do thou, therefore, (in return for so many favours), take my share of the barley and give it unto the guest.[52] Overcome by decrepitude, thou art of advanced years. Afflicted by hunger thou art exceedingly weakened. Worn out with fasts, thou art very much emaciated. (If thou couldst part with thy share, why should not I part with mine)?'[53] Thus addressed by her, he took her share of the powdered barley and addressing his guest, said,—'O regenerate one, O best of men, do thou accept this measure of powdered barley as well!'[54] The Brāhmana, having accepted that quantity, immediately ate it up, but his hunger was not yet appeased. Beholding him ungratified, the Brāhmana in the observance of the *Uncha* vow became thoughtful.[55] His son then said unto him,—'O best of men, taking my share of the barley do thou give it to the guest! I regard this act of mine as one of great merit. Therefore, I do it![56] Thou shouldst be always maintained by me with great care. Maintenance of the father is a duty which the good always covet.[57] The maintenance of the father in his old age is the duty ordained for the son. Even this is the eternal *çruti* (audition) current in the three worlds, O learned Rishi![58] By barely living thou art capable of practising penances. The life-breath is the great deity that resides in the bodies of all embodied creatures!'*[59]

"The father, at this, said,—'If thou attainest to the age of even a thousand years, thou wilt still seem to me to be only a little child. Having begotten a son, the sire achieves success through him.[60] O puissant one, I know that the hunger of children is very strong. I am old. I shall somehow succeed in holding my life breaths. Do thou, O son, become strong

---

* This Verse is rather obscure. I am not sure that I have understood it correctly. The sense seems to be this: thou art capable of enduring much. Indeed, by barely living, thou art capable of earning religious merit, for life-breath is a great deity. He should not be cast off. Thy life is at stake, for if this guest be not gratified, the thought of it will kill thee. Do thou, therefore, protect thy life by gratifying this guest with my share of the barley.—T.

(by eating the food that has fallen to thy share).[61] Old and decrepit as I am, O son, hunger scarcely afflicts me. I have, again, for many years, practised penances. I have no fear of death.—[62]

'The son said,—I am thy offspring. The Cruti declares that one's offspring is called *putra* because one is rescued by him. One's own self, again, takes birth as one's son. Do thou, therefore, rescue thyself by thy own self (in the form of thy son)!—[63]

'The father said,—In form thou art like me. In conduct and in self-restraint also thou art my like! Thou hast been examined on various occasions by me. I shall, therefore, accept thy share of the barley, O son![64]—Having said this, that foremost of regenerate persons cheerfully took his son's share of the barley and smilingly presented it to his regenerate guest.[65] Having eaten that barley also, the guest's hunger was not appeased. The righteous-souled host in the observance of the *unccha* vow became ashamed (at the thought that he had nothing more to give).[66] Desirous of doing what was agreeable to him, his chaste daughter in-law then, bearing her share of the barley, approached him and said,[67]—Through thy son, O learned Brāhmana, I shall obtain a son. Do thou, therefore, take my share of the barley and give it unto this guest![68] Through thy grace, numerous regions of beatitude will be mine for eternity. Through a grandson one obtains those regions repairing whither one has not to endure any kind of misery.[69] Like the triple aggregate beginning with Religion, or the triple aggregate of sacred fires, there is a triple aggregate of everlasting Heavens, depending upon the son, the grandson, and the great-grandson.[70] The son is called *Putra* because he frees his sires from debt. Through sons and grandsons one always enjoys the happiness of those regions which are reserved for the pious and the good.—[71]

'The father-in-law said,—O thou of excellent vows and conduct, beholding thee wasted by wind and sun, deprived of thy very complexion, emaciated, and almost destitute of consciousness through hunger, how can I be such a transgressor against the rules of righteousness as to take thy share of the

barley? O auspicious damsel, it behooves thee not to say so, for the sake of those auspicious results for which every family must strive.*[72-73] O auspicious damsel, how can I behold thee at even this, the sixth division of the day, abstaining from food and observing vows? Thou art endued with purity and good conduct and penances. Alas, even thou hast to pass thy days in so much misery![74] Thou art a child, afflicted by hunger, and belongest to the softer sex. Thou shouldst be always protected by me! Alas, I have to see thee worn out with fasts, O thou that art the delighter of all thy kinsmen!—[75]

'The daughter-in-law said,—Thou art the senior of my senior, since thou art the deity of my deity! Thou art verily the god of my god. Do thou, therefore, O puissant one, take my share of the barley.[76] My body, life-breaths, and religious rites have all one purpose, *viz.*, the service of my senior. Through thy grace, O learned Brāhmana, I shall obtain many regions of happiness hereafter![77] I deserve to be looked after by thee. Know, O regenerate one, that I am wholly devoted to thee! Cherishing also this thought, *viz.*, that my happiness is thy concern, it behooveth thee to take this my share of the barley!—[78]

'The father-in law said,—O chaste lady, in consequence of such conduct of thine thou wilt for ever shine in glory, for endued with vows and steadiness in religious rites, thy eyes are directed to that conduct which should be observed towards seniors.[79] Therefore, O daughter-in-law, I shall take thy share of the barley. Thou deservest not to be deceived by me, reckoning all thy virtues. Thou art truly, O blessed damsel, the foremost of all persons observing the duties of righteousness![80]—Having said so unto her, the Brāhmana took her share of the barley and gave it unto his guest. At this the guest became gratified with that high-souled Brāhmana endued with great piety.[81] With gratified soul, that first of regenerate persons, possessed of great eloquence, who was none else than the deity of Righteousness in a human form, then

* The sense is this: for the sake of those auspicious results after which every family should strive, the daughter-in-law should be well treated. How then can I deprive thee of food?—T.

addressed that foremost of Brāhmanas and said,[82]—O best of regenerate ones, I am exceedingly gratified with this pure gift of thine, this gift of what was acquired by lawful means by thee, and which thou didst freely part with, aggreably to the rules of righteousness![83] Verily, this gift of thine is being bruited about in Heaven by the denizens of that happy region. Behold, flowers have been rained down from the firmament on the Earth![84] The celestial Rishis, the deities, the Gandharvas, those who walk before the deities, and the celestial messengers, are all praising thee, struck with wonder at thy gift.[85] The regenerate Rishis who dwell in the regions of Brahma, seated on their cars, are solicitous of obtaining thy sight. O foremost of regenerate persons, go to Heaven![86] The Pitris residing in their own region have all been rescued by them. Others also who have not attained to the position of Pitris have equally been rescued by thee for countless Yugas.[87] For thy Brahmacharyya, thy gifts, thy sacrifices, thy penances, and thy acts of piety done with a pure heart, go thou to Heaven![88] O thou of excellent vows, thou practisest penances with great devotion. Thy gifts have, therefore, gratified the deities highly, O best of regenerate ones![89] Since thou hast made this gift, in a season of great difficulty, with a pure heart, thou hast, by this act of thine, conquered Heaven![90] Hunger destroys one's wisdom and drives off one's righteous understanding. One whose intelligence is overwhelmed by hunger casts off all fortitude.[91] He, therefore, that conquers hunger conquers Heaven without doubt. One's righteousness is never destroyed as long as one cherishes the inclination of making gifts.[92] Disregarding filial affection, disregarding the affection one feels for one's wife, and reckoning righteousness as the foremost, thou hast paid no heed to the cravings of nature.[93] The acquisition of wealth is an act of slight merit. Its gift to a deserving person is fraught with greater merit. Of still greater merit is the (proper) time. Lastly, devotion (in the matter of gift) is fraught with the highest merit.[94] The door of Heaven is very difficult to see. Through heedlessness men fail to obtain a sight of it. The bar of Heaven's door has cupidity for its seed. That bar is kept fastened by desire and

affection. Verily, Heaven's door is unapproachable.[95] Those men who have subdued wrath and conquered their passions, those Brāhmanas who are endued with penances and who make gifts according to the measnre of their ability, succeed in beholding it.[96] It has been said that he that gives away a hundred, having a thousand, he that gives away ten, having a hundred, and he that gives a handful of water, having no wealth, are all equal in respect of the merit they earn.[97] King Rantideva, when divested of all his wealth, gave a small quantity of water with a pure heart. Through this gift, O learned Brāhmana, he went to Heaven.[98] The deity of righteousness is never gratified so much with large gifts of costly things as with gifts of even things of no value, if acquired lawfully and given away with devotion and faith.[99] King Nriga had made gifts of thousands of kine unto the regenerate class. By giving away only one cow that did not belong to him, he fell into Hell.[100] Uçinara's son Civi of excellent vows, by giving away the flesh of his own body, is rejoicing in Heaven, having attained to the regions of the righteous.[101] Mere wealth is not merit. Good men acquire merit by exerting to the best of their powder and with the aid of pious means. One does not acquire such merit by means of even diverse sacrifices as with even a little wealth that has been earned lawfully.[102] Through wrath, the fruits of gifts are destroyed. Through cupidity one fails to go to Heaven. One conversant with the merits of gift, and leading a just course of conduct succeeds, through penances, in enjoying Heaven.[103] The fruit, O Brāhmana, of this gift made by thee (of a *prastha* of powdered barley) is much greater than what one acquires by many Rājasuya sacrifices with profuse gifts or many Horse-sacrifices.[104] With this *prastha* of powdered barley thou hast conquered the eternal region of Brahman. Go thou in happiness, O learned Brāhmana, to the abode of Brahman that is without the stain of darkness.[105] O foremost of regenerate persons, a celestial car is here for all of you. Do thou ascend it as pleasest thee! O Brāhmana, I am the deity of Righteousness. Behold me![106] Thou hast rescued thy body. The fame of thy achievement will last in the world. With thy

wife, thy son, and thy daughter-in-law, go now to Heaven.[107] —After the deity of Righteousness had said these words, that Brāhmana, with his wife, son and daughter-in-law, proceeded to Heaven.[108] After that learned Brāamana, conversant with all duties, had thus ascended to Heaven with his son, daughter-in-law, and wife numbering the fourth, I came out of my hole.[109] There with the scent of that powdered barley, with the mire caused by the water (which the Brāhmana had given to his guest), with the contact (of my body) with the celestial flowers that had been rained down, with the particles of the barley-powder which that good man had given away,[110] and the penances of that Brāhmana, my head became gold. Behold, in consequence of the gift of that Brāhmana who was firm in truth, and his penances, half of this my ample body has became golden![111-112] Ye regenerate ones, for converting the rest of my body into gold I repeatedly repair, with a cheerful heart, to the retreats of ascetics and the sacrifices performed by kings.[113] Hearing of this sacrifice of the Kuru king endued with great wisdom, I came hither with high hopes. I have not, however, been made gold.[114] Ye foremost of Brāhmanas, it was for this that I uttered those words, *viz.*, that this sacrifice can by no means compare with (the gift of) that *prastha* of powdered barley![115] With the grains of that *praitha* of powdered barley, I was made gold on that occasion. This great sacrifice, however, is not equal to those grains. Even this is my opinion.'[116] Having said those words unto all those foremost of Brāhmanas, the mungoose disappeared from their sight. Those Brāhmanas then returned to their respective homes."[117]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"O conquerer of hostile towns, I have now told thee all relating to that wonderful incident which occurred in that great Horse-sacrifice.[118] Thou shouldst not, O king, think highly of sacrifice. Millions of Rishis have ascended to Heaven with the aid of only their penances.[119] Abstention from injury as regards all creatures, contentment, conduct, sincerity, penances, self-restraint, truthfulness, and gifts are each equal in point of merit to sacrifice."[120]

Section XCI.

Janamejaya said,—"O puissant Rishi, kings are attached to sacrifices. The great Rishis are attached to penances. Learned Brāhmanas are observant of tranquillity of mind, peacefulness of behaviour, and self-restraint.[1] Hence it seems that nothing can be seen in this world which can compare with the fruits of sacrifices. Even this is my conviction. That conviction, again, seems to be undoubtedly correct.[2] Inumerable kings, O best of regenerate persons, having worshipped the deities in sacrifices, earned high fame here and obtained Heaven hereafter.[3] Endued with great energy, the puissant chief of the deities, *viz.*, Indra of a thousand eyes, obtained the sovereignty over the deities through the many sacrifices he performed with gifts in profusion and attained to the fruition of all his wishes.[4] When king Yudhishthira, with Bhima and Arjuna by him, resembled the chief of the deities himself in prosperity and prowess,[5] why then did that mungoose depreciate that great Horse-sacrifice of the high-souled monarch?"[6]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Do thou listen to me, O king, as I discourse to thee duly, O Bhārata, on the excellent ordinances relating to Sacrifice and the fruits also, O ruler of men, that sacrifice yields![7] Formerly, on one occasion Cakra performed a particular sacrifice. While the limbs of the sacrifice were spread out, the Ritwijas became busy in accomplishing the diverse rites ordained in the scriptures.[8] The pourer of libations, possessed of every qualification, became engaged in pouring libations of clarified butter. The great Rishis were seated around. The deities were summoned one by one by contented Brāhmanas of great learning uttering scriptural Mantras in sweet voices. Those foremost of Adhwaryyus, not fatigued with what they did, recited the Mantras of the Yajurveda in soft accents.[9-10] The time came for slaughtering the animals. When the animals selected for sacrifice were seized, the great Rishis, O king, felt compassion for them.[11] Beholding that the animals had all become cheerless, those Rishis, endued with wealth of penances, approached Cakra

and said unto him,—'This method of sacrifice is not auspicious![12] Desirous of acquiring great merit as thou art, this is verily an indication of thy unacquaintance with sacrifice. O Purandara, animals have not been ordained to be slaughtered in sacrifices.[13] O puissant one, these preparations of thine are destructive of merit! This sacrifice is not consistent with righteousness. The destruction of creatures can never be said to be an act of righteousness![14] If thou wishest it, let thy priests perform thy sacrifice according to the Āgama. By performing a sacrifice according to the (true import of the) scriptural ordinances, great will be the merit achieved by thee.[15] O thou of a hundred eyes, do thou perform the sacrifice with seeds of grain that have been kept for three years. Even this, O Cakra, would be fraught with great righteousness and productive of fruits of high efficacy!'[16] The deity of a hundred sacrifices, however, influenced by pride and overwhelmed by stupefaction, did not accept these words uttered by the Rishis.[17] Then, O Bhārata, a great dispute arose in that sacrifice of Cakra between the ascetics as to how sacrifices should be performed, that is, should they be performed with mobile creatures or with immobile objects.[18] All of them were worn out with disputation. The Rishis then, those beholders of truth, having made an understanding with Cakra (about referring the matter to arbitration) asked king Vasu.[19]—'O highly blessed one, what is the Vedic declaration about sacrifices? Is it preferable to perform sacrifices with animals or with seeds and juices?'[20] Hearing the question, king Vasu, without at all judging of the strength or weakness of the arguments on the two sides, at once answered, saying.—'Sacrifices may be performed with whichever of the two kinds of objects is ready.'[21] Having answered the question thus, he had to enter the nether regions. Indeed, the puissant ruler of the Chedis had to undergo that misery for having answered falsely.[22] Therefore, when a doubt arises, no person, however wise, should singly decide the matter, unless he be the puissant and self-born Lord himself of creatures.[23] Gifts made by a sinner with an impure understanding, for this, even when very large, become lost. Such gifts go for nothing.[24] By the gifts made by a person

of unrighteous conduct,—one, that is, who is of sinful soul and who is a destroyer, just fame is never acquired either here or hereafter.[25] That person of little intelligence who, from desire of acquiring merit, performs sacrifices with wealth acquired by unrighteous means, never succeeds in earning merit.[26] That low wretch of sinful soul, who hypocritically assuming a garb of righteousness makes gifts unto Brāhmanas, only creates the conviction in men about his own righteousness, (without earning true merit).[27] That Brāhmana of uncontrolled conduct, who acquires wealth by sinful acts, overwhelmed by passion and stupefaction, attains at last to the goal of the sinful.[28] Some one, overwhelmed by cupidity and stupefaction, becomes bent on storing wealth. He is seen to persecute all creatures, urged by a sinful and impure understanding.[29] He who, having acquired wealth by such means, makes gifts or performs sacrifices therewith, never enjoys the fruits of those gifts or sacrifices in the other world in consequence of the wealth having been earned by unrighteous means.[30] Men endued with wealth of penances, by giving away, to the best of their power, grains of corn picked up from the fields or roots or fruits or petherbs or water or leaves, acquired great merit and proceeded to Heaven.[31] Even such gifts are fraught with righteousness and equl to high austerities. Such gifts, as also compassion to all creatures, and Brahmacharyya, truthfulness of speech, and kindness, and fortitude, and forgiveness,[32] constitute the eternal foundations of Righteousness which itself is eternal. We hear of Viçvāmitra and other kings of ancient times.[33] Indeed, Viçvāmitra, and Asita, and king Janaka, aud Kakshasena and Ārshtisena, and king Sindhudwipa,[34]—these and many other kings, endued with wealth of penances, having made gifts of articles acquired lawfully, have attained to high success.[35] Those amongst Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Cudras who betake themselves to penances O Bhārata, and who purify themselves by gifts and other acts of rightcousness, proceed to Heaven."[36]

Section XCII.

Janamejaya said,—"If, O illustrious one, Heaven is the fruit of wealth acquired by lawful means, do thou discourse to me fully on it. Thou art well-conversant with the subject and, therefore, it behooveth thee to explain it.[1] O regenerate one, thou hast said unto me what the high fruit was that accrued unto that Brāhmana, who lived according to the *Unccha* mode, through his gift of powdered barley. Without doubt, all thou hast said is true.[2] In what way, however, was the attainment held certain of the highest end in all sacrifices? O foremost of regenerate persons, it behooveth thee to expound this to me in all its details!"[3]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"In this connection is cited this old narrative, O chastiser of focs, of what occurred in former days in the great sacrifice of Agastya.[4] In olden days, O king, Agastya of great energy, devoted to the good of all creatures, entered into a Dikshā extending for twelve years.*[5] In that sacrifice of the high-souled Rishi many Hotris were engaged that resembled blazing fires in the splendour of their bodies. Among them were men that subsisted upon roots or fruits, or that used two pieces of stone only for husking their corn, or that were supported by only the rays (of the moon).[6] Among them were also men who never took any food unless it was placed before them by others solicitious of feeding them, and those who never ate anything without having first served the deities, the Pitris, and guests, and those who never washed the food which they took. There were also Yatis and Vikshus among them, O king.[7] All of them were men who had obtained a sight of the deity of Righteousness in his embodied form. They had subjugated wrath and acquired a

---

* The 'Dikshā' consists of the initiatory rites undergone by one desirous of performing a particular sacrifice or completing a particular vow. Some auspicious day is selected. Mantras are uttered and the purpose is expressed in words. There were many long-extending sacrifices which were partly of the nature of vows. Till their completion the performer or observer is said to undergo the period of 'Dikshā.'—T.

complete mastery over all their senses. Living in the observance of self-restraint, they were freed from pride and the desire of injuring others.[8] They were always observant of a pure conduct and were never obstructed (in the prosecution of their purposes) by their senses. Those great Rishis attended that sacrifice and accomplished its various rites.[9] The illustrious Rishi (Agastya) acquired the food that was collected in that sacrifice and that came up to the required measure, by lawful means according to the best of his power.[10] Numerous other ascetics at that time performed large sacrifices. As Agastya, however, was engaged in that sacrifice of his,[11] the thousand-eyed Indra, O best of the Bharatas, ceased to pour rain (on the Earth). At the intervals, O king, of the sacrificial rites, this talk occurred among those Rishis of cleansed souls about the high-souled Agastya, *viz.*,—'This Agastya, engaged in sacrifice, is making gifts of food with heart purged of pride and vanity.[12-13] The deity of the clouds, however, has ceased to pour rain. How, indeed, will food grow? This sacrifice of the Rishi, ye Brāhmanas, is great and extends for twelve years.[14] The deity will not pour rain for these twelve years. Reflecting on this, it behooveth you to do some favour unto this Rishi of great intelligence, *viz.*, Agastya of severe penances.' When these words were said, Agastya of great prowess,[15-16] gratifying all those ascetics by bending his head, said, —'If Vāsava does not pour rain for those twelve years,[17] I shall then perform the mental sacrifice. Even this is the eternal ordinance. If Vāsava does not pour rain for these twelve years,[18] I shall then perform the Touch-sacrifice. Even this is the eternal sacrifice. If Vāsava does not pour rain for these twelve years,[19] I shall then, putting forth all my exertion, make arrangements for other sacrifices characterised by the observance of the most difficult and severe vows. This present sacrifice of mine, with seeds, has been arranged for by me with labour extending for many years.*[20] I shall, with seeds,

* The first line of 20 is differently read in the Bombay text. It runs,—'steadfastly observing my vow, I shall make arrangements for many sacrifices, creating the articles I want by thought alone 'or fiats of my will).'—T.

accomplish much good. No impediment will arise. This my sacrifice is incapable of being baffled.[21] It matters little whether the deity pours rain or no downpours happen. Indeed, if Indra does not, of his own will, show any regard for me,[22] I shall, in that case, transform myself into Indra and keep all creatures alive. Every creature, on whatever food he has been nourished, will continue to be nourished on it as before.[23] I can even repeatedly create a different order of things. Let gold and whatever else of wealth there is, come to this place today![24] Let all the wealth that occurs in the three worlds come here today of its own accord! Let all the tribes of celestial Apsaras, all the Gandharvas along with the Kinnaras,[25] and Viçwāvasu, and others there are (of that order), approach this sacrifice of mine! Let all the wealth that exists among the Northern Kurus,[26] come of their own accord to these sacrifices. Let Heaven, and all those who have Heaven for their home, and Dharma himself, come hither!'[27]—After the ascetic had uttered these words, everything happened as he wished, in consequence of his penances, for Agastya was endued with a mind that resembled a blazing fire and was possessed of extraordinary energy.[28] The Rishis who were there beheld the power of penances with rejoicing hearts. Filled with wonder they then said these words of grave import.[29]

"The Rishis said,—'We have been highly gratified with the words thou hast uttered. We do not, however, wish that thy penances should suffer any diminution. Those sacrifices are approved by us which are performed by lawful means. Indeed, we desire duly those sacrifices which rest on lawful means.*[30] Earning our food by lawful means and observant of our respective duties, we shall seek to go through sacrificial initiations and the pouring of libations on the sacred fire and the other religious rites.[31] We should adore the deities, practising Brahmacharyya by lawful means. Completing the period of Brahmacharyya we have come out of our abode, observing

* Probably, the sense is this: if a Brāhmana produced extraordinary results by his penances, a portion of his penances was supposed to be destroyed. The Rishis did not like that any portion of Agastya's penances should be spent for completing his sacrifice.—T.

lawful methods. That understanding, which is freed from the desire of inflicting any kind of injury on others, is approved by us.[32-33] Thou shouldst always, O puissant one, commend such abstention from injury in all sacrifices. We shall then be highly gratified, O foremost of regenerate ones. After the completion of thy sacrifice, when dismissed by thee, we shall then, leaving this place, go away.'[34] As they were saying these words, Purandara, the chief of the deities, endued with great energy, beholding the power of Agastya's penances, poured rain.[35] Indeed, O Janamejaya, till the completion of the sacrifice of that Rishi of immeasurable prowess, the deity of rain poured rain that met the wishes of men in respect of both quantity and time.[36] Placing Vrihaspati before him, the chief of the deities came there, O royal sage, and gratified the Rishi Agastya.[37] On the completion of that sacrifice, Agastya, filled with joy, worshipped all those great Rishis duly and then dismissed them all."[38]

Janamejaya said,—"Who was that mungoose with a golden head, that said all those words in a human voice? Asked by me, do thou tell me this!"[39]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thou didst not ask me before and, therefore, I did not tell thee. Hear as I tell thee who that mungoose was and why he could assume a human voice.[40] In former times, the Rishi Jamadagni purposed to perform a Crāddha. His Homa-cow came to him and the Rishi milked her himself.[41] He then placed the milk in a vessel that was new, durable, and pure. The deity Dharma, assuming the form of anger, entered that vessel of milk.[42] Indeed, Dharma was desirous of ascertaining what that foremost of Rishis would do when seeing some injury done to him. Having reflected thus, Dharma spoiled that milk.[43] Knowing that the spoiler of his milk was Anger, the ascetic was not at all enraged with him. Anger, then, assuming the form of a Brāhmana lady, showed himself to the Rishi.[44] Indeed, Anger, finding that he had been conquered by that foremost one of Bhrigu's race, addressed him, saying,—'O chief of Bhrigu's race, I have been conquered by thee. There is a saying among men that the Bhrigus are very wrathful. I now find that that saying

is false, since I have been subdued by thee![45] Thou art possessed of a mighty soul. Thou art endued with forgiveness. I stand here today, owning thy sway. I fear thy penances, O righteous one! Do thou, O puissant Rishi, show me favour!'[46]

"Jamadagni said,—'I have seen thee, O Anger, in thy embodied form. Go thou whithersoever thou likest, without any anxiety. Thou hast not done me any injury today. I have no grudge against thee![47] Those for whom I had kept this milk are the highly blessed Pitris. Present thyself before them and ascertain their intentions.'[48] Thus addressed, penetrated with fear, Anger vanished from the sight of the Rishi. Through the curse of the Pitris he became a mungoose.[49] He then began to gratify the Pitris in order to bring about an end of his curse. By them he was told these words:—'By speaking disrespectfully of Dharma thou shalt attain to the end of thy curse!'[50] Thus addressed by them, he wandered over places where sacrifices were performed and over other sacred places, employed in censuring great sacrifices. It was he that came to the great sacrifice of king Yudhishthira.[51] Dispraising the son of Dharma by a reference to the *prastha* of powdered barley, Anger became freed from his curse, for Yudhishthira (as Dharma's son) was Dharma's self.[52] Even this is what occurred in the sacrifice of that high-souled king. The mungoose disappeared there in our very sight.*"[53]

FINIS AÇWAMEDHA PARVA.

---

* It is difficult to resist the conviction that as much of this section as relates to the mungoose is an interpolation. The Brāhmanas could not bear the idea of a sacrifice with such profusion of gifts, as that of Yudhishthira, being censurable. Hence the invention about the transformation of the mungoose. Truly speaking, the doctrine is noble of the gift of a small quantity of barley made under the circumstances being superior in point of merit to even a Horse-sacrifice performed by a king with gifts in profusion made to the Brāhmanas.—T.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

SUNDARI BĀLĀ ROY,

WIDOW OF

PRATĀPA CHANDRA ROY, C. I. E.

AÇRAMAVASIKA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHĀRATA PRESS.

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

Printed by Kāli Dāss Sen.

1895.

(*The right of translation is reserved.*)

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ACWAMEDHA PARVA.

Açwamedhika Parva.

	PAGE.
After offer of libations of water to his slain kinsmen, Yudhishthira falls down in grief ...	1
Dhritarāshtra comforts him	ib
Dhritarāshtra refers to Vidura's advice about the abandonment of Duryodhana	2
Keçava's consolatory address to Yudhishthira ...	ib
Vyāsa comforts Yudhishthira	3
Vyāsa advises Yudhishthira to perform the Horse-sacrifice	4
Yudhishthira enquires of Vyāsa as to whence the necessary wealth would come	ib
Vyāsa indicates a region in the Himālayas where there is abundance of gold	5
The story of Marutta	ib
Vrihaspati and Samvarta	7
Indra urges Vrihaspati not to act as priest for Marutta	8
Vrihaspati accedes to Indra's request	9
Nārada directs Marutta to seek Samvarta for appointing him his priest	10
Conversation between Marutta and Samvarta ...	12
Marutta pledges his word that he would on no account cast off Samvarta after appointing him his priest	13
Samvarta directs Marutta to repair to Munjavat, one of the peaks of Himavat, for gold ...	14
The diverse names of Mahādeva	ib
Indra's endeavour to induce Marutta to cast off Samvarta	16
Indra's failure and anger with Marutta ...	17
Conversation between Agni and Indra on the puissance of a Brāhmana	19

PAGE.

Indra seeks to injure Marutta 20
Indra forced by Samvarta's power to present himself at the sacrifice of Marutta 21
Indra himself superintends the great sacrifice of Marutta 22
Marutta completes his sacrifice with copious presents of gold 23
Vāsudeva recites to Yudhishthira the history of the enmity between Indra and Vritra ... 24
Continuation of Vāsudeva's discourse for comforting Yudhishthira 25
Yudhishthira tranquillised 29
The Rishis disappear from the sight of the Kuru princes ... ... ib
Vāsudeva consoles Arjuna 30
Vāsudeva asks Arjuna to go to Yudhishthira for obtaining his permission about his departure for Dwārakā 31

Anugitā Parva.

Arjuna requests Krishna to repeat to him the truths that he had discoursed on before the great battle 33
Krishna consents to repeat them in a different shape... ib
Krishna recites the conversation that he had with a Brāhmana on a former occasion at Dwārakā 34
The discourse of a meritorious Brāhmana to Kaçyapa 35
The Brāhmana refers to his own previous births of misery ... ... ib
His tranquillity... 36
Questioned by Kaçyapa, the Brāhmana begins his discourse on how Jiva casts off and then attains to a body, how Emancipation is achieved, and where do acts live when Jiva becomes divested of body, &c. 37

PAGE.

How death is brought about 38
The happiness or misery of Jiva determined by acts... 40
How Jiva enters the womb 41
How the Grandsire creates the Universe of Beings ... 43
Indifference to Pleasure and Pain leads to the Supreme Seat 44
Who is said to be Emancipated 45
The Brāhmana declares the science of Yoga ... 46
How Jiva attains to Emancipation 50
Vāsudeva explains to Arjuna what the highest goal is of Jiva 51
Vāsudeva recites the discourse between a Brāhmana and his wedded wife 52
The institution of the Ten Hotris 55
The institution of the Seven Hotris 59
The institution of the Five Hotris 61
The discourse between Nārada and Devamata on the Life-breaths 63
The institution of the Chatur-Hotra sacrifice ... 65
The story of the instruction of the snakes, the deities, and the Rishis by the Lord of all creatures 67
The Brāhmana's description of the Brahma forest ... 68
The conversation between a Yati and an Adhwaryu on a goat intended to be slain in a sacrifice ... 71
The story of the discourse between Kārtaviryya and Ocean 73
The slaughter of the Kshatriyas by Rāma the son of Jamadagni 74
The Pitris recite to Rāma the history of Alarka ... 75
Alarka attains to the highest success by Yoga ... 77
The respective indications of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness 78
The story of Amvarisha's attainment to success ... ib
The Soul is the true king 79
The story of Janaka and the Brāhmana he desired to punish with exile ... ... ib

PAGE.

Utanka refuses the offer 144
The identity of the hunter with Indra ... ... ib
Krishna re-appears unto Utanka and assures him that when thirsty he would have rain-water from the clouds ... ... ib
The story of Utanka's penances 145
Utanka serves Gautama with reverence and obedience ... ... ib
Gautama forgets to dismiss Utanka 146
Utanka solicits his dismissal ... ... ib
Utanka commanded by Gautama's wife to bring her the ear-rings of Saudāsa's queen ... 148
Utanka seeks Saudāsa who is transformed into a Rākshasa ... ... ib
Saudāsa wishes to eat up Utanka 149
Utanka offers to present himself again before Saudāsa after accomplishing his mission in respect of the ear-rings ... ... ib
At the king's request, Utanka goes to the queen and obtains from her the ear-rings 150
Utanka dexterously obtains Saudāsa's permission not to present himself before that king according to promise 152
The ear-rings stolen from Utanka by a snake of of the race of Airāvata 153
Utanka helped by Indra to reach the nether regions 154
Agni appears before Utanka and afflicts the Nāgas... 155
The Nāgas make over the ear-rings to Utanka ... ib
Utanka makes over the ear-rings to his preceptor's wife... ... ... ib
Vāsudeva arrives at Dwārakā at the time of festival of the Raivataka 156
Vasudeva enquires of Krishna about the battle of Kurukshetra 157
Krishna gives his sire a brief description of the battle 158

PAGE.

Vasudeva learns the death of Abhimanyu ... 160
Vasudeva's lament for Abhimanyu 161
The Yādavas perform the Crāddhas of Abhimanyu and others 163
Yudhishthira and his brothers prepare for bringing the treasure from the Himālayan regions ... 164
The Pāndavas set out for the purpose 166
They offer worship unto Mahādeva 168
They obtain the wealth left by Marutta ... 169
The removal of the wealth to the Kuru capital ... ib
The Yādava heroes arrive at the Kuru capital in the absence of the Pāndavas 170
The birth of Parikshit 171
Kunti's lament at seeing Uttarā's son born dead ... ib
The lament of Subhadrā 172
Vāsudeva promises to revive the dead child ... 174
He enters the lying-in-chamber ... ... ib
The lament of Uttarā 175
Continuation of Uttarā's lament 176
Krishna repeats his promise to Uttarā about reviving her dead child 177
Krishna withdraws the Brahma weapon of Açwatthāman by which the child has been overwhelmed ... ... ib
The child shows signs of life ... ... ib
The Rākshasas fly away from the lying-in-room ... ib
The Brahma-weapon returns to the Grandsire of all the worlds 178
The joy of the Bharata ladies at seeing Abhimanyu's son revive ... ... ib
Abhimanyu's son is named Parikshit ... ... ib
The Pāndavas return to their capital ... ... ib
The splendour of the arrangements made for receiving the Pāndavas 179
The Vrishnis go out to receive them ... ... ib
The Pāndavas rejoice upon hearing how Vāsudeva had revived their grandson born dead ... 180

PAGE.

Yudhishthira informs Vyāsa of the success of his expedition 180
Vyāsa urges Yudhishthira to perform the Horse-sacrifice ... ... ib
Yudhishthira urges Krishna to perform the sacrifice on behalf of the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Krishna asks Yudhishthira to perform the sacrifice... 181
Preparations for the sacrifice ... ... ib
Vyāsa directs that Arjuna should follow the sacrificial horse 182
Yudhishthira requests Arjuna to accompany the sacrificial horse but to spare all hostile kings as much as possible 183
Yudhishthira undergoes the rite of initiation ... ib
Arjuna sets out with the sacrificial horse ... 184
The citizens of Hastināpore bless him loudly ... ib
The horse goes into the country of the Trigartas and a battle takes place between Arjuna and the sons and grandsons of those Trigarta warriors who were slain on the field of Kurukshetra 185
The Trigartas after a brave fight yield to Arjuna ... 187
The sacrificial horse goes into the country of the Prāgyotishas and a great battle takes place between Arjuna and Bhagadatta's son Vajradatta 188
Vajradatta, after a hard-fought battle, discomfited by Arjuna 191
Arjuna spares his youthful antagonist and invites him to the Horse-sacrifice ... ... ib
The horse next proceeds to the country of the Sindhus where a great battle takes place between Arjuna and the Saindhava warriors ... ib
The Saindhava queen Dusçalā approaches Arjuna with her infant grandson and sons for peace ... 195
Arjuna grants peace 197
The sacrificial horse proceeds to Manipura ... ib

PAGE.

Arjuna's son Vabhruvāhana by Chitrāngadā approaches Arjuna with such reverence as is due from a son to a sire... 197
Arjuna rebukes Vabhruvāhana for such conduct which is unworthy of a Kshatriya ... ... ib
Vabhruvāhana fights Arjuna 199
Arjuna slain by Vabhruvāhana 200
Vabhruvāhana falls down in a swoon ... ... ib
Queen Chitrāngadā comes to the field of battle and indulges in heart-rending lamentations ... ib
Queen Chitrāngadā resolves to die if her husband is not revived 201
Vabhruvāhana's lament 202
Vabhruvāhana resolves to die if Arjuna is not revived 203
Arjuna's wife Ulupi brings from the nether regions a gem having the virtue of restoring the dead ... ... ib
Ulupi comforts both Chitrāngadā and Vabhruvāhana ... ... ib
Arjuna, revived by the gem, rises like one from a peaceful slumber 204
Ulupi recites to Arjuna the curse of the Vasus for Arjuna's having slain Bhishma in unfair fight ... 205
Arjuna's defeat at the hands of his son Vabhruvāhana brought about by Ulupi for the mitigation of the curse of the Vasus ... 206
Arjuna blesses Ulupi for her trouble ... ... ib
Arjuna invited by his son to enter the capital of Manipura and pass the night there 207
Arjuna politely refuses the invitation as inconsistent with the vow he is then observing ... ib
Arjuna leaves Manipura ... ... ib
The sacrificial horse enters the country of the Magadhas ... ... ib
A great battle fought between Arjuna and Meghasandhi the grandson of Jarāsandha ... ib

PAGE.

Meghasandhi worsted in the fight 208
Arjuna spares Meghasandhi's life and invites him to the Horse-sacrifice 209
The sacrificial horse enters the territories of the Chedis ... ... ib
Carabha, the son of Ciçupāla, first encounters Arjuna and then submits to him ... ... ib
The horse proceeds to diverse other realms ... ib
Arjuna's encounters with diverse races and tribes of men 210
Arjuna arrives at Dwārāvati and is received with proper honours by Ugrasena and Vasudeva ... ib
The sacrificial steed enters the country of the Gāndhāras ... ... ib
Fierce encounter between Arjuna and the Gāndhāras 211
The wife of Cakuni comes out for pacifying Arjuna 212
Arjuna spares the son of Cakuni and invites him to the sacrifice ... ... ib
Tidings reach the Kuru court of Arjuna's having turned his face towards Hastināpore ... 213
The joy of Yudhishthira and others ... ... ib
Bhima erects pavilions and splendid mansions and resting-houses, &c., on the sacrificial plain ... 214
The preparations for the sacrifice in detail ... 215
Yudhishthira commands Bhima to pay proper honours to the invited kings and their attendants 216
Arjuna's messages to Yudhishthira 217
Yudhishthira enquires of Krishna as to why Arjuna is fated to bear such hardships in life ... 218
Krishna attributes Arjuna's hardships to the elevation of Arjuna's cheek-bones ... ... ib
The inability of Draupadi to bear this imputation against Arjuna's perfect symmetry of shape and form ... ... ib

PAGE.

Arjuna enters the Kuru capital 219
The citizens receive him with great joy... ... ib
The arrival of Vabhruvāhana with Chitrāngadā and Ulupi, at the Kuru capital 220
Vabhruvāhana received by all the Pāndava princes and ladies, as also by Krishna, with affection ... ib
Vyāsa urges Yudhishthira to begin the sacrifice ... 221
The priests take up their several duties ... ib
The horse being cut, its marrow is cooked by the priests 223
Yudhishthira and his brothers smell the sin-cleansing smoke of that marrow ... ... ib
Yudhishthira gives away the whole Earth, as Dakshinā of his sacrifice, to Vyāsa ... ... ib
Yudhishthira offers to retire into the woods ... ib
Vyāsa refuses to take the Earth 225
Vyāsa asks for wealth which may be looked upon as the equivalent of the Earth ... ... ib
The wealth given to Vyāsa is distributed among the priests and other Brāhmanas ... ... ib
Vyāsa gives away his own share to Kunti ... ib
Yudhishthira performs the final sacrificial bath ... 226
Yudhishthira dismisses the kings and other guests with proper honours and gifts ... ... ib
The appearance of a mungoose at Yudhishthira's sacrifice 227
The mungoose disparages the great sacrifice of Yudhishthira 228
The story of the Brāhmana, who while observing the *Uञcha* vow, made a gift of barley to a guest and thereby attained to Heaven with his wife, son, and daughter-in-law 229
Sacrifices should be performed with seeds instead of living animals 238
The story of Agastya's sacrifice 241
Indra conquered by the puissance of Agastya's penances 244

PAGE.

Janamejaya enquires as to who the mungoose was that had disparaged Yudhishthira's sacrifice ... 244
The story of Dharma's endeavour to provoke Jamadagni ... ... ib
The Pitris curse Dharma to take the shape of a mungoose 245
The curse to terminate on the mungoose's disparaging Dharma ... ... ib
Yudhishthira being Dharma's self, the disparagement of his sacrifice proved the termination of the curse under which the mungoose suffered ... ib

FINIS.

NOTICE.

यच्चिन्तितं तदिह दूरतरं प्रयाति
यच्चेतसा न गणितं तदिहाभ्युपैति ।

* * * *

That which I had never thought of in even my dreams has come to pass! That hope which I had always nursed in my heart of hearts has gone away. The poet has sung—

The best laid schemes o'men and mice aft gang agley.

Disappointment, therefore, is the rule of the universe. Who am I to complain of my hopes not being fulfilled when incarnated Vishnu himself had to lament for the frustration of his hopes? On the eve of his coronation prince Rāma had to contemplate the prospect of an exile into the woods for full fourteen years at the command of a sire who would have poured his best blood than utter that command! The incarnated deity knew what was in store for him; yet he had to lament as a human being. Quick is the change from pleasure to pain; quick the change from health to disease; quick the disappearance of hopes seemingly founded on rocks. Such change is the common lot of humanity. It is the universal condition of existence. To murmur at it would be vain. Yet consolation is difficult of attainment. Tears are as much a law of Nature as the frustration of hopes that forces them out.

My husband had worked day and night to bring the English translation of the Mahābhārata to a close. Anxieties of diverse kinds filled his mind. These were principally connected with money,—money needed to carry on the enterprise to its termination. Those anxieties produced their natural effect. They preyed on his body. His health had been robust. Sojourns to many parts of the country, in seasons again that were unfavourable, told on his health. He caught a fever that proved obstinate. He placed himself under the best physicians, but no treatment was productive of good. His fever soon brought on an attack of diabetes—that certain effect of mental anxiety. The physicians recommended a cessation of all labour. This, in his case, was simply impossible. For twelve long years he

had been employed on a task that has cost a mint of money. He was a poor man himself. The competence that he had secured after years of economy and toil as a book-seller he had devoted to the Bhārata Kāryālaya. He had brought out several editions of the Mahābhārata in Sanskrit as also the Rāmāyana and the Harivança. When he undertook the English translation of the Mahābhārata his resources had dwindled away. He relied entirely on public support. Fortunately for him, the measure of that support came up to his expectations. But the labour he had to undergo for bringing about this result was enormous. How to make the two ends meet was with him always a difficulty. His thoughts were constantly employed on it. Even during his illness, when he was no longer able to stir out of his chamber and had taken to his bed, he had only one thought, *viz.*, the completion of the Mahābhārata. It is my firm belief that this anxiety stood in the way of his recovery.

If my poor husband had been spared a few months more, the satisfaction would have his of seeing the completion of his enterprise. The XCIV th fasciculus was out when he breathed his last. Upwards of a year ago, the presentiment had possessed him that he would not live to complete his task. He was not superstitious, but I heard him say this several times. Alas, that presentiment of his has been verified !

Through the grace of Vāsudeva-Krishna, my husband lived to see a portion of the Açwamedha Parva completed. Before, however, that Parva could be completed and the next, *viz.*, the Āçramavāsika Parva, could be taken up, he left this scene of his labour and forced me to take leave of the Āçrama (mode of life) in which I was. If I can, by any means, get through the unfinished portion of my husband's work, which is not much, I shall consider my life as really spent for the benefit of myself, my husband, and the world.

Since my husband's demise I have been able to issue three fascicules, *viz.*, the XCV th, the XCVI th, and the XCVII th. My husband left no property except his house and some copies of the Mahābhārata in Sanskrit and English. The house I am unable to dispose of at present, for if I do it, where shall I live and where will the office with the press and the books

be located? Very little has accrued from the sale of the books. Besides the publication of these three parts, I had to perform the Crāddha of my husband. The matter was managed, however, with the greatest economy.

Under the circumstances, I have been obliged, in issuing these three fascicules, to dispose of my little *Stridhan* in the form of the few gold and silver ornaments I had. I have nothing more to devote to the work. Three or four more fascicules have to be issued. At the lowest estimate these will cost about Rs. 6,000. My husband was prepared to beg from door to door for completing his task. As a *Purdanashin* Hindu widow, it is not given to me to do the same. Those who know the customs of my country are aware of the restrictions imposed on a Hindu lady's intercourse with the world. Difficulties, therefore, stare me on every side. I know not what to do. Whatever, however, those difficulties, I cannot abandon the enterprise at this stage. I cannot disobey the last injunction of my husband. On even his death-bed, when his voice almost failed him, he had one thought. He repeatedly reminded me, more by signs than by words, that omitting his very Crāddha if need be, stinting myself to the bearest necessaries for the support of life by following the rigid discipline of *Brahmacharyya* prescribed for a Hindu widow, I should complete the work. He named his patrons and friends and expressed his desire that I should appeal to them and to others for the required funds. Even at his death bed he was full of hope that if his patrons and friends on one hand, and the Government and the chiefs of the land, on the other, be appealed to the funds necessary for the completion of his work will not be wanting. More than a lac of Rupees has been found for the enterprise. Will not this small fraction of Rs. 6,000 be found for reaching the end? Will those who have done so much for my husband, who enabled him to reach a point so near completion, abandon me now? I am like a ship-wrecked person that is not only within sight of land but that is very near to a populous shore. A short rope thrown down by a generous individual may rescue me. Is there none to throw that rope down? I cannot believe that in this wide world teeming with so many generous men, even this

measure of aid will be refused to me. No, Religion is still a living force. Charity still occupies a niche of the human heart.

The British Government has done much for the work. If my husband lived, he could not apply to Government again after its signal kindness to him. My husband. however, is no more. I am a helpless Hindu widow. I am obliged to look to Government, therefore, in the first instance, for some help.

The same must be said of the Indian chiefs and princes. Many of them have shown considerable kindness to my husband. If he had lived, he could scarcely have approached the same personages with a prayer for further help. In his absence, I have no other means than to approach them also with my humble prayer.

I address my prayer to the Zamindars and the landed aristocracy of my country. Any one of them may render me effectual aid. And lastly, I humbly appeal to the subscribers and other recipients of the publication.

I cannot conclude this appeal without expressing my sincere thanks to Babu Kisori Mohan Ganguli, the translator, and Babu Aghore Nath Banerjee, the Manager of the Bhārata Kāryālaya. Without their active help I could have done nothing, utterly helpless as I found myself on the death of my poor husband. Seeing how anxious my husband was about the completion of the work, Babu Kisori Mohan, for relieving him of that anxiety as much as possible, gave him the solemn promise that so for as the literary execution of the project was concerned, he (Babu Kisori Mohon) would any how accomplish it, postponing, if need be, every other work in which he is engaged. The kindness of Babu Aghore Nath also can never be forgotten by me. Since my husband's death, Babu Aghore Nath has worked with greater diligence than ever, and has been the soul of the Kāryālaya in every direction. May God reward them both for their singular kindness to a helpless widow! No amount of money, even if I had money to give, would be a fit return for their valuable services.

SUNDARI BĀLĀ RĀY.

THE MAHABHARATA.

ACRAMAVASIKA PARVA.

SECTION I.

(*Açramavāsa Parva.*)

Bowing down unto Nārāyana, and Nara, the foremost of men, and unto the goddess Sarasvati also, should the word Jaya be then uttered.

Janamejaya said,—"After having acquired their kingdom, how did my grandsires, the high-souled Pāndavas, conduct themselves towards the high-souled king Dhritarāshtra ?[1] How, indeed, did that king who had all his counsellors and sons slain, who was without a refuge, and whose affluence had disappeared, behave ? How also did Gāndhāri of great fame conduct herself ?[2] For how many years did my high-souled grandsires rule the kingdom ? It behooveth thee to tell me all this !"[3]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having got back their kingdom, the high-souled Pāndavas, their foes all slain, ruled the Earth, placing Dhritarāshtra at their head.[4] Vidura, and Sanjaya, and Yuyutsu of great intelligence, who was Dhritarāshtra's son by his Vaiçyā wife, used to wait upon Dhritarāshtra.[5] The Pāndavas used to take the opinion of that king in all matters. Indeed, for ten and five years, they did all things under the advice of the old king.[6] Those heroes used very often to go to that monarch and sit beside him, after having worshipped his feet, agreeably to the wishes of king Yudhishthira the just.[7] They did all things under the command of Dhritarāshtra who smelt their heads in affection. The daughter of king Kuntibhoja also obeyed Gāndhāri in everything.[8] Draupadi and Subhadrā and the other ladies of the Pāndavas behaved towards the old king and the queen as if they were

their own father-in-law and mother in-law.[9] Costly beds and robes and ornaments, and food and drink and other enjoyable articles, in profusion and of such superior kinds as were worthy of royal use,[10] were presented by king Yudhishthira unto Dhritarāshtra. Similarly, Kunti behaved towards Gāndhāri as towards a senior.[11] Vidura, and Sanjaya, and Yuyutsu, O thou of Kuru's race, used to always wait upon the old k whose sons had all been slain.[12] The dear brother-in-la Drona, *viz.*, the very superior Brāhmana, Kripa, that mie bowman, also attended upon the king.[13] The holy Vyāsa also used to often meet with the old monarch and recite to him the histories of old Rishis and celestial ascetics and Pitris and Rākshasas.[14] Vidura, under the orders of Dhritarāshtra, superintended the discharge of all acts of religious merit and all that related to the administration of the law.[15] Through the excellent policy of Vidura, by the expenditure of even a small wealth, the Pāndavas obtained numerous agreeable services from their feudatories and followers.[16] King Dhritarāshtra liberated prisoners and pardoned those that were condemned to death. King Yudhishthira the just never said anything to this.[17] On those occasions when the son of Ambikā went on pleasure excursions, the Kuru king Yudhishthira of great energy used to give him every article of enjoyment.[18] Arālikas, and juice-makers, and makers of Rāgakhāndavas waited on king Dhritarāshtra as before.*[19] Pāndu's son collected costly robes and garlands of diverse kinds and duly offered them to Dhritarāshtra.[20] Maireya wines, fish of various kinds, and sherlets and honey, and many delightful kinds of food prepared by modifications (of diverse articles), were caused to be made for the old king as in his days of prosperity.[21] Those kings of Earth who came there one after another, all used to wait upon the old Kuru monarch as before.[22] Kunti, and Draupadi, and

---

* The derivation of 'Arālikas' is explained by Nilakantha thus: 'Potherbs cut off with a kind of weapon called 'Arā' are called 'Arālu.' They who were expert in cooking those potherbs were called 'Arālikas.' 'Rāgakhāndava' was manufactured from *Piper longum*, dry ginger, sugar, and the juice of *Phaseolus Mango*.—T.

she of the Sāttwata race, possessed of great fame, and Ulupi, the daughter of the snake chief, and queen Chitrāngadā,[23] and the sister of Dhrishtaketu, and the daughter of Jarāsandba,—these and many other ladies, O chief of men,[24] used to wait upon the daughter of Suvala like maids of all work. That Dhritarāshtra, who was deprived of all his children, might not feel unhappy in any matter,[25] was what Yudhishthira often said unto his brothers to see. They also, on their part, listening to these commands of grave import from king Yudhishthira, showed particular obedience to the old king.[26] There was one exception, however. It embraced Bhimasena. All that had followed from that match at dice which had been brought about by the wicked understanding of Dhritarāshtra, did not disappear from the heart of that hero. (He remembered those incidents still)."[27]

Section II.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thus worshipped by the Pāndavas, the royal son of Amvikā passed his time happily as before, waited upon and honoured by the Rishis.[1] That perpetuater of Kuru's race used to make those foremost of offerings which should be given to the Brāhmanas. The royal son of Kunti always placed those articles under Dhritarāshtra's control.[2] Destitute of malice as king Yudhishthira was, he was always affectionate towards his uncle. Addressing his brothers and councillors, the king said,[3]—'King Dhritarāshtra should be honoured both by myself and you all! He, indeed, is a well-wisher of mine who is obedient to the commands of Dhritarāshtra.[4] He, on the other hand, who behaves otherwise towards him, is my enemy. Such a man should certainly be punished by me!' On days of performing the rites ordained for the Pitris, as also in the Crāddhas performed for his sons and all well-wishers, the high-souled Kuru king. Dhritarāshtra, gave away unto Brāhmanas, as each deserved, as profuse measures of wealth as he liked.[5-6] King Yudhishthira the just, and Bhima, and Arjuna, and the twins, desirous of doing what was agreeable to the old king, used to execute all his orders.[7] They

always took care that the old king who was afflicted with the slaughter of his sons and grandsons,—with, that is, grief caused by the Pāndavas themselves,—might not die of his grief.[8] Indeed, the Pāndavas bore themselves towards him in such a way that that Kuru hero might not be deprived of that happiness and all those articles of enjoyment which had been his while his sons lived.[9] The five brothers, *viz.*, the sons of Pāndu, behaved themselves even thus towards Dhritarāshtra, living under his command.[10] Dhritarāshtra also, seeing them so humble and obedient to his commands and acting towards him as disciples towards preceptors, adopted the affectionate behaviour of a preceptor towards them in return.[11] Gāndhāri, by performing the diverse rites of the Crāddha and making gifts unto Brāhmanas of diverse objects of enjoyment, became freed from the debt she owed to her slain children.[12] Thus did that foremost of righteous men, *viz.*, king Yudhishthira the just, possessed of great intelligence, along with his brothers, worship king Dhritarāshtra."[13]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Possessed of great energy, that perpetuater of Kuru's race, *viz.*, the old king Dhritarāshtra, could not notice any ill-will in Yudhishthira.[14] Seeing that the high-souled Pāndavas were in the observance of a wise and righteous conduct, king Dhritarāshtra, the son of Amvikā, became gratified with them.[15] Suvala's daughter, Gāndhāri, casting off all sorrow for her (slain) children, began to show great affection for the Pāndavas as if they were her own children.[16] Endued with great energy, the Kuru king Yudhishthira never did anything that was disagreeable to the royal son of Vichitraviryya. On the other hand, he always behaved towards him in a highly agreeable way.[17] Whatever acts, grave or light, were directed by king Dhritarāshtra or the helpless Gāndhāri to be done,[18] were all accomplished with reverence, O monarch, by that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the Pāndava king.[19] The old king became highly gratified with such conduct of Yudhishthira. Indeed, he was grieved at the remembrance of his own wicked son.[20] Rising every day at early dawn, he purified himself and went through his recitations, and then blessed the Pāndavas by wishing them victory in

battle.[21] Making the usual gifts unto the Brāhmanas and causing them to utter benedictions, and pouring libations on the sacred fire, the old king prayed for long life to the Pāndavas.[22] Indeed, the king had never derived that great happiness from his own sons which he always derived from the sons of Pāndu.[23] King Yudhishthira at that time became as agreeable to the Brāhmanas as to the Kshatriyas, and the diverse bands of Vaiçyas and Cudras of his realm.[24] Whatever wrongs were done to him by the sons of Dhritarāshtra, king Yudhishthira forgot them all, and reverenced his uncle.[25] If any man did any thing that was not agreeable to the son of Amvikā, he became thereby an object of hatred to the intelligent son of Kunti,[26] Indeed, through fear of Yudhishthira nobody could talk of the evil deeds of either Duryodhana or Dhritarāshtra.[27] Both Gāndhāri and Vidura also were well pleased with the capacity king Ajātçatru showed for bearing wrongs. They were, however, no so pleased, O slayer of foes, with Bhima.[28] Dharma's son, Yudhishthira, was truly obedient to his uncle. Bhima, however, at the sight of Dhritarāshtra, became very cheerless.[29] That slayer of foes, seeing Dharma's son reverencing the old king, reverenced him outwardly with a very unwilling heart."[30]

Section III.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The people who lived in the Kuru kingdom failed to notice any variance in the cordiality that subsisted between king Yudhishthira and the father of Duryodhana.[1] When the Kuru king recellected his wicked son, he then could not but feel unfriendly, in his heart, towards Bhima.[2] Bhimasena also, O king, impelled by a heart that seemed to be wicked, was unable to put up with king Dhritarāshtra.[3] Vrikodara secretly did many acts that were disagreeable to the old king. Through deceitful servitors he caused the commands of his uncle to be disobeyed.[4] Recollecting the evil counsels of the old king and some acts of his, Bhima, one day, in the midst of his friends, slapped his armpits,[5] in the hearing of Dhritarāshtra and of Gāndhāri. The

wrathful Vrikodara, recollecting his foes Duryodhana and Karna and Dusçāsana,[6] gave way to a transport of passion, and said these harsh words:—'The sons of the blind king, capable of fighting with diverse kinds of weapons, have all been despatched by me to the other world with these arms of mine that resemble a pair of iron clubs.[7] Verily, these are those two arms of mine, looking like maces of iron, and invincible by foes, coming within whose clasp the sons of Dhritarāshtra have all met with destruction.'[8] These are those two well-developed and round arms of mine, resembling a pair of elephantine trunks. Coming within their clasp, the foolish sons of Dhritarāshtra have all met with destruction.[9] Smeared with sandal-paste and deserving of that adornment are those two arms of mine by which Duryodhana has been despatched to the other world along with all his sons and kinsmen!'[10] Hearing these and many other words, O king, of Vrikodara, that were veritable darts, king Dhritarāshtra gave way to cheerlessness and sorrow.[11] Queen Gāndhāri, however, who was conversant with every duty and possessed of great intelligence, and who knew what Time brings on its course, regarded them as untrue.[12] Then, after five and ten years had passed away, O monarch, king Dhritarāshtra, afflicted (constantly) by the wordy darts of Bhima, became penetrated with despair and grief.[13] King Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, however, knew it not; nor Arjuna of white steeds; nor Kunti; nor Draupadi possessed of great fame; nor the twin sons of Mādri, conversant with every duty and who were always engaged in acting after the wishes of Dhritarāshtra.[14] Employed in doing the behests of the king, the twins never said anything that was disagreeable to the old king. Then Dhritarāshtra one day honoured his friends by his confidence. Addressing them with tearful eyes, he said these words.[15]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'How the destruction of the Kurus has happened is well known to you. All that was brought about by my fault, though the Kauravas approved of all my counsels.[16] Fool that I was, I installed the wicked-minded Duryodhana, that enhancer of the terrors of kinsmen, to rule over the Kurus.[17] Vāsudeva had said unto me—Let this sinful

wretch of wicked understanding be killed along with all his friends and counsellers.—I did not listen to those words of grave import. All wise men gave me the same beneficial advice. Vidura, and Bhishma, and Drona, and Kripa, said the samething. The holy and high-souled Vyāsa repeatedly said the same, as also Sanjaya and Gāndhāri. Overwhelmed, however, by filial affection, I could not follow that advice. Bitter repentance is now my lot for my neglect.[18-20] I also repent for not having bestowed that blazing prosperity, derived from sires and grandsires, on the high-souled Pāndavas possessed of every accomplishment.[21] The eldest brother of Gada foresaw the destruction of all the kings; Janārddana, however, regarded that destruction as highly beneficial.*[22] So many *Anikas* of troops, belonging to me, have been destroyed! Alas, my heart is pierced with thousands of darts in consequence of all these results.[23] Of wicked understanding as I am, now, after the lapse of five and ten years, I am seeking to expiate my sins.[24] Now at the fourth division of the day or sometimes at the eighth division, with the regularity of a vow, I eat a little food for simply conquering my thirst. Gāndhāri knows this.[25] All my attendants are under the impression that I eat as usual. Through fear of Yudhishthira alone I concealed my acts, for if the eldest son of Pāndu came to know of my vow, he would feel great pain.[26] Clad in deer-skin, I lie down on the Earth, spreading a small quantity of Kuça grass, and pass the time in silent recitations. Gāndhāai of great fame passes her time in the observance of similar vows.[27] Even thus do we both behave, we that have lost a century of sons none of whom ever retreated from battle. I do not, however, grieve for those children of mine. They have all died in the observance of Kshatriya duties.'[28] Having said these words, the old king then addressed Yudhishthira in particular and said,—'Blessed be thou, O son of the princess of Yadu's race! Listen now to what I say![29] Cherished by thee, O son, I have lived

* It will be remembered, Earth, unable to bear her load of population, prayed to the Grandsire for lightening that load. The Grandsire urged Vishnu to do the needful. Hence Vishnu incarnated himself as Krishna and brought about a lightening of Earth's load.—T.

these years very happily. I have (with thy help) made large gifts and performed Crāddhas repeatedly.*[30] I have, O son, to the best of my power, achieved merit largely. This Gāndhāri, though destitute of sons, has lived with great fortitude, looking all the while at me.[31] They who inflicted great wrongs on Draupadi and robbed thee of thy affluence,—those cruel wights —have all left the world, slain in battle agreeably to the practice of their order.[32] I have nothing to do for them, O delighter of the Kurus! Slain with their faces towards battle, they have attained to those regions which are for wielders of weapons.†[33] I should now accomplish what is beneficial and meritorious for me as also for Gāndhāri. It behooveth thee, O great king, to grant me permission.[34] Thou art the foremost of all righteous persons. Thou art always devoted to righteousness. The king is the preceptor of all creatures. It is for this that I say so.[35] With thy permission, O hero, I shall retire into the woods, clad in rags and barks, O king, along with this Gāndhāri.[36] I shall live in the woods, always blessing thee. It is meet, O son, for the members of our race,[37] to make over sovereignty, when old age comes, to children and lead the forest mode of life. Subsisting there on air alone, or abstaining from all food, I shall, with this wife of mine, O hero, practise severe austerities.[38] Thou shalt be a sharer of those penances, O son, for thou art the king. Kings are sharers of both auspicious and inauspicious acts done in their kingdom!'‡[39]

"Yudhishthira said,—'When thou, O king, art thus subject to grief, sovereignty does not please me at all! Fie on me that am of wicked understanding, devoted to the pleasures of

---

* 'Mahādāna' implies such gifts as elephants, boats, cars, horses, &c. Everybody does not accept these gifts, for their acceptance causes a Brāhmana to fall away from his status.—T.

† Some of the Bengal texts read 'avimukham hatāh' for 'abhimukham hatāh.' The sense is the same.—T.

‡ The king gets a sixth share of the penances performed by the Rishis living under his protection. The demerit, again, of all evil deeds done within his realm is shared by the king, for such deeds become possible through absence of supervision by the king.—T.

rule, and utterly heedless of my true concerns'![40] Alas, I, with all my brothers, was ignorant of thyself having so long been afflicted with grief, emaciated with fasts, abstaining from food, and lying on the bare ground![41] Alas, foolish that I am, I have been deceived by thee that hast deep intelligence, inasmuch as, having inspired me with confidence at first thou hast latterly undergone such grief![42] What need have I of kingdom or of articles of enjoyment, what need of sacrifices or of happiness, when thou, O king, hast undergone so much affliction?[43] I regard my kingdom as a disease, and myself also as afflicted. Plunged though I am in sorrow, what, however, is the use of these words that I am addressing thee?[44] Thou art our father, thou art our mother; thou art our foremost of superiors. Deprived of thy presence, how shall we live?[45] O best of kings, let Yuyutsu, the son of thy loins, be made king, or, indeed, anybody else whom thou mayst wish.[46] I shall go into the woods. Do thou rule the kingdom. It behooveth thee not to burn me that am already burned by infamy.[47] I am not the king. Thou art the king. I am dependent on thy will. How can I dare grant permission to thee that art my preceptor?[48] O sinless one, I harbour no resentment in my heart on account of the wrongs done to us by Suyodhana. It was ordained that it should be so. Both ourselves and others were stupified (by fate).[49] We are thy children as Duryodhana and others were. My conviction is that Gāndhāri is as much my mother as Kunti.[50] If thou, O king of kings, goest to the woods leaving me, I shall then follow thee. I swear by my soul.[51] This Earth, with her belt of seas, so full of wealth, will not be a source of joy to me when I am deprived of thy presence.[52] All this belongs to thee. I gratify thee, bending my head. We are all dependent on thee, O king of kings. Let the fever of thy heart be dispelled![53] I think, O lord of Earth, that all this that has come upon thee is due to destiny. By good luck, I had thought, that waiting upon thee and executing thy commands obediently, I would rescue thee from the fever of thy heart!'[54]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O delighter of the Kurus, my mind is fixed, O son, on penances. O puissant one, it is meet for

our race that I should retire into the woods.[55] I have lived long under thy protection, O son! I have for many years been served by thee with reverence. I am now old. It behooveth thee, O king, to grant me permission (to take up my abode in the woods).' "[56]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having said these words unto king Yudhishthira the just, king Dhritarāshtra, the son of Ambikā, trembling the while and with hands joined together, further said unto the high-souled Sanjaya and the great car-warrior Kripa, these words :—'I wish to solicit the king through you.[57-58] My mind has become cheerless, my mouth has become dry, through the weakness of age and the exertion of speaking.'[59] Having said so, that perpetuater of Kuru's race, *viz.*, the righteous-souled old king, blessed with prosperity, leaned on Gāndhāri and suddenly looked like one deprived of life.[60] Beholding him thus seated like one deprived of consciousness, that slayer of hostile heroes, *viz.*, the royal son of Kunti, became penetrated by a poignant grief.[61]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Alas, he whose strength was equal to that of a hundred thousand elephants, alas, that king sitteth today, leaning on a woman![62] Alas, he by whom the iron image of Bhima on a former occasion was reduced to fragments, leaneth today on a weak woman![63] Fie on me that am exceedingly unrighteous! Fie on my understanding! Fie on my knowledge of the scriptures! Fie on me for whom this lord of Earth lieth today in a manner that is not becoming of him![64] I also shall fast even as my preceptor. Verily, I shall fast if this king and Gāndhāri of great fame abstain from food!' "[65]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"The Pāndava king, conversant with every duty, using his own hand, then softly rubbed with cold water the breast and the face of the old monarch.[66] At the touch of the king's hand which was auspicious and fragrant, and on which were jewels and medicinal herbs, Dhritarāshtra regained his senses.*[67]

---

* Formerly kings and noblemen wore jewels and medicinal herbs on their arms. The last were enclosed in drum-like capsules of gold, her-

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Do thou again touch me, O son of Pāndu, with thy hand, and do thou embrace me. O thou of eyes like lotus petals, I am restored to my senses through the auspicious touch of thy hand.[68] O ruler of men, I desire to smell thy head. The clasp of thy arms is highly gratifying to me.[69] This is the eighth division of the day and, therefore, the hour for taking my food. For not having taken my food, O child of Kuru's race, I am so weak as to be unable to move.[70] In addressing my solicitations to thee, great has been my exertion. Rendered cheerless by it, O son, I had fainted.[71] O perpetuater of Kuru's race, I think that receiving the touch of thy hand, which resembles nectar in its vivifying effects I have been restored to my senses.' "[72]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thus addressed, O Bhārata, by the eldest brother of his father, the son of Kunti, from affection, gently touched every part of his body.[73] Regaining his life-breaths, king Dhritarāshtra embraced the son of Pāndu with his arms and smelled his head.[74] Vidura and others wept aloud in great grief. In consequence, however, of the poignancy of their sorrow, they said nothing to either the old king or the son of Pāndu.[75] Gāndhāri, conversant with every duty, bore her sorrow with fortitude, and loaded as her heart was, O king, said nothing.[76] The other ladies, Kunti among them, became greatly afflicted. They wept, shedding copious tears, and sat surrounding the old king.[77] Then Dhritarāshtra, once more addressing Yudhishthira, said these words:—'Do thou, O king, grant me permission to practise penances.[78] By speaking repeatedly, O son, my mind becomes weakened. It behooveth thee not, O son, to afflict me after this.'[79] When that foremost one of Kuru's race was saying so unto Yudhishthira, a loud sound of wailing arose from all the warriors there present.[80] Beholding his royal father of great splendour, emaciated and pale, reduced to a state unbecoming of him, worn out with fasts, and looking like a skeleton covered with skin, Dharma's son Yudhishthira shed tears of grief and once more

---

metically closed on both sides. It was believed that jewels and medicinal herbs are a great protection against many evils.—T.

said these words.[81-82]—'O foremost of men, I do not desire life and the Earth! O scorcher of foes, I shall employ myself in doing what is agreeable to thee.[83] If I deserve thy favour, if I am dear to thee, do thou eat something. I shall then know what to do.'[84] Endued with great energy, Dhritarāshtra then said to Yudhishthira,—'I wish, O son, to take some food, with thy permission.'[85] When Dhritarāshtra said these words to Yudhishthira, Satyavati's son Vyāsa came there and said as follows.''[86]

Section IV.

"Vyāsa said,—'O mighty-armed Yudhishthira, do without any scruple what Dhritarāshtra of Kuru's race has said.[1] This king is old. He has, again, been made sonless. I think he will not be able to bear his grief long.[2] The highly blessed Gāndhāri, possessed of great wisdom and endued with kindly speech, bears with fortitude her excessive grief owing to the loss of her sons.[3] I also tell thee (what the old king says). Do thou obey my words. Let the old king have thy permission. Let him not die an inglorious death at home.'[4] Let this king follow the path of all royal sages of old. Verily, for all royal sages, retirement into the woods comes at last!' "[5]

Vaiçampāyana said,—" Thus addressed at that time by Vyāsa of wonderful deeds, king Yudhishthira the just, possessed of mighty energy, said unto the great ascetic these words,[6]—Thy holy self is held by us in great reverence. Thou alone art our preceptor. Thou alone art the refuge of this our kingdom as also of our race.[7] I am thy son. Thou, O holy one, art my father! Thou art our king, and thou art our preceptor! The son should, agreeably to every duty, be obedient to the commands of his sire.' "[8]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by the king, Vyāsa, that foremost of all persons conversant with the Vedas, that foremost of poets, endued with great energy once more said unto Yudhishthira these words,[9]—'It is even so, O mighty armed one! It is even as thou sayst, O Bhārata! This king has reached old age. He is now in the last stage of life.[10]

Permitted both by me and thee, let this lord of Earth do what he purposes. Do not stand as an impediment in his way![11] Even this is the highest duty, O Yudhishthira, of royal sages. They should die either in battle or in the woods agreeably to the scriptures.[12] Thy royal sire, Pāndu, O king of kings, reverenced this old king as a disciple reverences his preceptor.[13] (At that time) he adored the gods in many great sacrifices with profuse gifts consisting of hills of wealth and jewels, and ruled the Earth and protected his subjects wisely and well.[14] Having obtained a large progeny and a swelling kingdom, he enjoyed great affluence for thirteen years while you were in exile, and gave away much wealth.[15] Thyself also, O chief of men, with thy servants, O sinless one, hast adored this king and the famous Gāndhāri with that ready obedience which a disciple pays to his preceptor.[16] Do thou grant permission to thy father. The time has come for him to attend to the practice of penances. He does not harbour, O Yudhishthira, even the slightest anger against any of you!' "[17]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—" Having said these words, Vyāsa soothed the old king. Yudhishthira then answered him, saying,—'So be it.' The great ascetic then left the palace for proceeding to the woods.[18] After the holy Vyāsa had gone away, the royal son of Pāndu softly said these words unto his old father, bending himself in humility,[19]—'What the holy Vyāsa has said, what is thy own purpose, what the great bowman Kripa has said, what Vidura has expressed,[20] and what has been asked for by Yuyutsu and Sanjaya, I shall accomplish with speed. All these are worthy of my respect, for all of them are well-wishers of our race.[21] This, however, O king, I beg of thee by bending my head! Do thou first eat and afterwards go to thy forest retreat!' "[22]

Section V.

Vaiçampāyana said,—" Having received the king's permission, king Dhritarāshtra of great energy then proceeded to his own palace, followed by Gāndhāri.[1] With weakened strength and slow motion, that king of great intelligence

walked with difficulty, like the leader, worn out with age, of an elephantine herd.[2] He was followed by Vidura of great learning, and his charioteer Sanjaya, as also that mighty bowman Kripa the son of Caradwata.[3] Entering his mansion, O king, he went through the morning rites and after gratifying many foremost of Brāhmanas he took some food.[4] Gāndhāri conversant with every duty, as also Kunti of great intelligence, worshipped with offers of various articles by their daughters-in-law, then took some food, O Bhārata.[5] After Dhritarāshtra had eaten, and Vidura also and others had done the same, the Pāndavas, having finished their meals, approached and sat around the old king.[6] Then the son of Ambikā, O monarch, addressing Kunti's son who was seated near him and touching his back with his hand, said,[7]—'Thou shouldst always, O delighter of the Kurus, act without heedlessness as regards everything connected with thy kingdom consisting of eight limbs, O foremost of rulers, and in which the claims of righteousness should ever be kept foremost.*[8] Thou art possessed, O son of Kunti, of intelligence and learning. Listen to me, O king, as I tell thee what the means are by which, O son of Pāndu, the kingdom is capable of being righteously protected.[9] Thou shouldst always, O Yudhishthira, honour those persons that are old in learning. Thou shouldst listen to what they would say, and act accordingly without any scruple.[10] Rising at dawn, O king, worship them with due rites, and when the time comes for action, thou shouldst consult them about thy (intended) acts.[11] When, led by the desire of knowing what would be beneficial to thee in respect of thy measures, thou honourest them, they will, O son, always declare what is for thy good, O Bhārata.[12] Thou shouldst always keep thy senses as thou keepest thy horses. They will then prove beneficial to thee, like wealth that is not wasted.[13] Thou shouldst employ only such ministers as have passed the tests of honesty, (*i. e.*, as are possessed of loyalty, disinterestedness, continence, and courage), as are

* The eight limbs of a kingdom are the law, the judge, the assessors, the scribe, the astrologer, gold, fire, and water.—T.

hereditary officers of state, possessed of pure conduct, self-restrained, clever in the discharge of business, and endued with righteous conduct.[14] Thou shouldst always collect information through spies in diverse diguises, whose faithfulness have been tasted, who are natives of thy kingdom, and who should not be known to thy foes.[15] Thy citadel should be properly protected with strong walls and arched gates. On every side the walls, with watch-towers on them standing close to one another, should be such as to admit of six persons walking side by side on their top.*[16] The gates should all be large and sufficiently strong. Kept in proper places, those gates should be carefully guarded.[17] Let thy purposes be accomplished through men whose families and conduct are well known. Thou shouldst always protect thy person also with care, in matters connected with thy food, O Bhārata,[18] as also in the hours of sport and eating and in matters connected with the garlands thou wearest and the beds thou liest upon. The ladies of thy household should be properly protected, looked over by aged and trusted servitors, of good behaviour, well-born, and possessed of learning, O Yudhishthira.[19] Thou shouldst make ministers of Brāhmanas possessed of learning, endued with humility, well-born, conversant with religion and wealth, and adorned with simplicity of behaviour.[20] Thou shouldst hold consultations with them. Thou shouldst not, however, admit many persons into thy consultations. On particular occasions thou mayst consult with the whole of thy council or with a portion of it.[21] Entering a chamber or spot that is well protected (from intruders) thou shouldst hold thy consultations. Thou mayst hold thy consultation in a forest that is divested of grass. Thou shouldst never consult at night time.†[22] Apes and birds and other animals that can imitate human beings should all be excluded from the council chamber, as also idiots and lame and palsied individuals.[23] I think that

---

* 'Attā' is explained by Nilakantha as the space kept for the soldiers to tread upon.—T.

† Grass may conceal the spies of foes. The darkness of night also may do the same.—T.

the evils that flow from the divulgence of the counsels of kings are such that they cannot be remedied.[24] Thou shouldst repeatedly refer, in the midst of thy counsellors, to the evils that arise from the divulgence of counsels, O chastiser of foes, and to the merits that flow from counsels properly kept.[25] Thou shouldst, O Yudhishthira, act in such a manner as to ascertain the merits and faults of the inhabitants of thy city and the provinces.[26] Let thy laws, O king, be always administered by trusted judges placed in charge thereof, who should also be contented and of good behaviour. Their acts should also be ascertained by thee through spies.[27] Let thy judicial officers, O Yudhishthira, inflict punishments, according to the law, on offenders after careful ascertainment of the gravity of the offences.[28] They that are disposed to take bribes, they that are the violaters of the chastity of other people's wives, they that inflict heavy punishments, they that are utterers of false speeches, they that are revilers, they that are stained by cupidity, they that are murderers, they that are doers of rash deeds,[29] they that are disturbers of assemblies and the sports of others, and they that bring about a confusion of castes, should, agreeably to considerations of time and place, be punished with either fines or death.*[30] In the morning thou shouldst see those that are employed in making thy disbursements. After that thou shouldst look to thy toilet and then to thy food.[31] Thou shouldst next supervise thy forces, gladdening them on every occasion. Thy evenings should be set apart for envoys and spies.[32] The latter end of the night should be devoted by thee to settle what acts should be done by thee in the day. Midnights and mid days should be devoted to thy amusements and sports. At all times, however, thou shouldst think of the means for accomplishing thy purposes.[33] At the proper time, adorning thy person, thou shouldst sit. prepared to make gifts

---

* 'Adānaruchi' is a very civil way of indicating currupt officials and thieves. Inflictors of severe punishments were looked upon as tyrants deserving of being put down. Heavy fines were at one time interdicted in England. 'Sāhasapriya' is a dooer of rash deeds, such as culpable homicide not amounting to murder, to adopt the terminology of the Indian Penal Code.—T.

in profusion. The turns for different acts, O son, ceaselessly revolve like wheels.[34] Thou shouldst always exert thyself to fill thy treasuries of various kinds by lawful means. Thou shouldst avoid all unlawful means towards that end.[35] Ascertaining through thy spies who thy foes are that are bent on finding out thy *laches*, thou shouldst, through trusted agents, cause them to be destroyed from a distance.[36] Examining their conduct, thou shouldst, O perpetuater of Kuru's race, appoint thy servants. Thou shouldst cause all thy acts to be accomplished through thy servitors whether they are appointed for those acts or not.[37] The commandant of thy forces should be of firm conduct, courageous, capable of bearing hardships, loyal, and devoted to thy good.[38] Artizans and mechanics, O son of Pāndu, dwelling in thy provinces, should always do thy acts like kine and assess.*[39] Thou shouldst always, O Yudhishthira, be careful to ascertain thy own *laches* as also those of thy foes. The *laches* also of thy own men as also of the men of thy foes should equally be ascertained.[40] Those men of thy kingdom, that are well skilled in their respective vocations, and are devoted to thy good, should be favoured by thee with adequate means of support.[41] A wise king, O ruler of men, should always see that the accomplishments of his accomplished subjects might be kept up. They would then be firmly devoted to thee, seeing that they did not fall away from their skill.' "[42]

SECTION VI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'Thou shouldst always ascertain the *Mandalas* that belong to thee, to thy foes, to neutrals, and to those that are disposed equally towards thee and thy foes, O Bhārata.†[1] The *Mandalas* also of the four kinds of foes, of

---

* *I. e.*, content to work on receiving their food only. Their wages should not be higher than what is needed to feed them.—T.

† The word *Mandala* has been explained below in Verse 5. The distinction between 'Udāsinas' and 'Madhyasthas,' as explained by Nilakantha, is that the former are neutrals, while the latter are those who cherish equal sentiments towards both the parties.—T.

those called *Atatayins*, and of allies, and the allies of foes, should be distinguished by thee, O crusher of foes.*[2] The ministers of state, the people of the provinces, the garrisons of forts, and the forces, O foremost one of Kuru's race, may or may not be tampered with. (Thou shouldst, therefore, behave in such a manner that these may not be tampered with by thy foes).[3] The twelve (ennumerated above), O son of Kunti, constitute the principal concerns of kings. These twelve, as also the sixty, having Ministers for their foremost, should be looked after by the king.†[4] Professors conversant with the science of politics call these by the name of *Mandala*. Understand, O Yudhishthira, that the six incidents (of peace, war, march, halt, sowing dissensions, and conciliation) depend upon these.[5] Growth and diminution should also be understood, as also the condition of being stationary. The attributes of the sixfold incidents, O thou of mighty arms, as resting on the two and seventy (already enumerated), should also be carefully understood.[6] When one's own side has become strong and the side of the foe has become weak, it is then, O son of Kunti, that the king should war against the foe and strive to win victory.[7] When the enemy is strong and one's own side is weak, then the weak king, if possessed of intelligence, should seek to make peace with the enemy.[8] The king should collect a large store of articles (for his commissariat). When able to march out, he should on no account make a delay, O Bhārata.[9] Besides, he should on that occasion set his men to offices for which they are fit, without being moved by any other consideration. (When obliged to yield a portion

* The four kinds of foes, as explained by the Commentator, are 1. foes proper, 2. allies of foes, 3. those that wish victory to both sides, and 4. those that wish defeat to both sides. As regards 'Atatāyins,' they are six, *viz.*, 1. he that sets fire to one's house, 2. he that mixes poison with one's food, 3. he that advances, weapon in hand, with hostile intent, 4. he that robs one of one's wealth, 5. he that invades one's fields, and 6. he that steals one's wife.—T.

† The sixty are thus made up. Eight consisting of agriculture and the rest; twenty-eight consisting of forces and the rest; fourteen consisting of athiests and the rest; and eighteen consiting of counsels and the rest.—T.

of his territories) he should give his foe only such land as does not produce crops in abundance.[10] (When obliged to give wealth), he should give gold containing much base metal. (When obliged to give a portion of his forces), he should give such men as are not noted for strength. One that is skilled in treaties should, when taking land or gold or men from the foe, take what is possessed of attributes the reverse of this.*[11] In making treaties of peace, the son of the (defeated) king should be demanded as a hostage, O chief of the Bharatas. A contrary course of conduct would not be beneficial, O son. If a calamity comes over the king,[12] he should, with knowledge of means and counsels, strive to emancipate himself from it.† The king, O foremost of monarchs, should maintain the cheerless and the destitute (such as the blind, the deaf and dumb, and the diseased) among his people.[13] Himself protecting his own kingdom, the king, possessed of great might, should direct all his efforts, either one after another or simultaneously, against his foes. He should afflict and obstruct them and seek to drain their treasury.[14] The king that desires his own growth should never injure the subordinate chieftains that are under his sway. O son of Kunti, thou shouldst never seek to war with that king who desires to conquer the whole Earth.[15] Thou shouldst seek to gain advantages by producing, with the aid of thy ministers, dissensions among his aristocracy and subordinate chieftains. A powerful king should never seek to exterminate weak kings, for these do good to the world by cherishing the good and punishing the wicked. O foremost of kings, thou shouldst live, adopting the behaviour of the cane.‡[16-17] If a strong king advances against a weak one, the latter should make him desist, by adopting concilia-

---

* *I. e.*, land that is fertile, gold that is pure, and men that are strong.—T.

† The words 'Kasyānchidāpadi' should be construed with what follows.—T.

‡ The cane yields when presure is directed towards it In the Cānti Parvan occurs the detailed conversation between the Ocean and the Rivers. The former enquired why, when the Rivers washed down the largest trees, they could not wash into the Ocean a single cane. The answer was that the cane was yielding ; the trees were not so.—T.

tion and other modes.[18] If unable to stop the invader in this way, then he, as also those that are disposed to do him good, should fall upon the foe for battling with him. Indeed, with his ministers and treasury and citizens, he should thus adopt force against the invader.[19] If battling with the foe becomes hopeless, then he should fall, sacrificing his resources one after another. Casting off his life in this way, he will attain to liberation from all sorrow.' "[20]

Section VII.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—"O best of kings, thou shouldst also reflect properly on war and peace. Each is of two kinds. The means are various, and the circumstances also, under which war or peace may be made, are various, O Yudhishthira.*[1] O thou of Kuru's race, thou shouldst, with coolness, reflect on the two (*viz.*, thy strength and weakness) with regard to thyself. Thou shouldst not suddenly march against a foe that is possessed of contented and healthy soldiers, and that is endued with intelligence. On the other hand, thou shouldst think carefully of the means of vanquishing him.†[2] Thou shouldst march against a foe that is not provided with contented and healthy combatants. When everything is favourable, the foe may be beaten. After that, however, the victor should retire (and stay in a strong position).[3] He should next cause the foe to be plunged into various calamities, and sow dissensions among his allies. He should afflict the foe and inspire terror in his heart, and attacking him weaken his forces.[4] The king, conversant with the scriptures, that marches against a foe, should think of the three kinds of strength, and, indeed, reflect on his own strength and the strength of his foe.‡[5] Only that king, O Bhārata, who is endued with alacrity, discipline,

---

* War and peace are each of two kinds, *i. e.*, war with a strong foe and that with a weak foe: peace with a strong foe and that with a weak foe. The Bengal texts wrongly read 'dvividhopāyam' or 'vividhopāyam.'—T.

† I expand this Verse a little, following the Commentator.—T.

‡ Strength is of three kinds, as explained in the next Verse.—T.

and strength of counsels, should march against a foe. When his position is otherwise, he should avoid offensive operations.*[6] The king should provide himself with power of wealth, power of allies, power of foresters, power of paid soldiery, and power of the mechanical and trading classes, O puissant one.†[7] Among all these, power of allies and power of wealth are superior to the rest. The power of classes and that of the standing army are equal.[8] The power of spies is regarded by the king as equal in efficacy to either of the above, on many occasions, when the time comes for applying each.[9] Calamity, O king, as it overtakes rulers, should be regarded as of many forms. Listen, O thou of Kuru's race, as to what those diverse forms are.[10] Verily, of various kinds are calamities, O son of Pāndu. Thou shouldst always count them, distinguishing their forms, O king, and strive to meet them by applying the well-known ways of conciliation and the rest (without concealing them through idleness).[11] The king should, when equipt with a good force, march (out against a foe), O scorcher of enemies. He should attend also to the considerations of time and place, while preparing to march, as also to the forces he has collected and his own merits (in other respects).[12] That king who is attentive to his own growth and advancement should march unless equipt with cheerful and healthy warriors. When strong, O son of Pāndu, he may march in even an unfavourable season.[13] The king should make a river having quivers for its stones, steeds and cars for its current, and

---

* 'Utsāha' is readiness or alacrity, of the forces to attack the foe: 'prabhuçakti' is the complete mastery of the king over his forces, *i. e.*, thorough discipline. By strength of counsels, in this connection, is meant well-formed plans of attack and defence.—T.

† 'Maulam' is explained as the strength of money. In modern warfare also, money is called 'the sinews of war.' 'Atavivala' or the force consisting of foresters, was, perhaps, the body of Irregulars that supported a regular army of combatants. 'Bhritavala' implies the regular army, drawing pay from the state at all times. In India, standing armies have existed from remote times. 'Creni-vala' is, perhaps, the force of artizans, mechanics, and engineers, who looked after the roads and the transport, as also of traders who supplied the army with provision.—T.

standards for the trees that cover its banks, and which is miry with foot-soldiers and elephants. Even such a river should the king apply for the destruction of his foe.[14] Agreeably to the science known to Uçanas, arrays called *Çakata*, *Padma*, and *Vajra*, should be formed, O Bhārata, for fighting the enemy.*[15] Knowing everything about the enemy's strength through spies, and examining his own strength himself, the king should commence war either within his own territories or within those of his foe.†[16] The king should always gratify his army, and hurl all his strongest warriors (against the enemy). First ascertaining the state of his kingdom, he should apply conciliation or the other well-known means.[17] By all means, O king, should the body be protected. One should do that which is highly beneficial for one both here and hereafter.[18] The king, O monarch, by behaving duly according to these ways, attains to Heaven hereafter, after ruling his subjects righteously in this world.[19] O foremost one of Kuru's race, it is even thus that thou shouldst always seek the good of thy subjects for attaining to both the worlds.‡[20] Thou hast been instructed in all duties by Bhishma, by Krishna, and by Vidura, I should also, O best of kings, from the affection I bear thee, give thee these instructions.[21] O giver of profuse presents in sacrifices, thou shouldst do all this duly. Thou shalt, by conducting thyself in this way, become dear to thy subjects and attain to felicity in Heaven.[22] That king who adores the deities in a hundred horse-sacrifices, and he who rules his subjects righteously, acquire merit that is equal.' "[23]

---

* A 'çakata' array was an array after the form of a car. It is described in Cukraniti fully, and occurs in the *Drona Parvan*, *ante*. The 'Padma' is a circular array with angular projections. It is the same with what is now called the starry array; many modern forts being constructed on this plan. The 'Vajra' is a wedge-like array. It penetrates into the enemy's divisions like a wedge and goes out, routing the foe. It is otherwise called 'suchivyuha.'—T.

† *I. e.*, meet the foe whether within his own kingdom or invade the foe's realm and thus oblige the foe to fall back for resisting him there.—T.

‡ *I. e.*, for obtaining fame here and felicity hereafter.—T.

SECTION VIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'O lord of Earth, I shall do as thou biddest me. O foremost of kings, I should be further instructed by thee.[1] Bhishma has ascended to Heaven. The slayer of Madhu has departed (for Dwārakā). Vidura and Sanjaya also (will accompany thee to the forest). Who else, therefore, than thee will teach me?[2] Those instructions which thou imparted today, desirous of doing good to me, I shall certainly follow, O lord of Earth! Be thou assured of this, O king!'"[3]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by king Yudhishthira the just, of great intelligence, the royal sage, Dhritarāshtra, O chief of the Bharatas, wished to obtain the king's permission (about his retirement to the forest).[4] And he said, —'Cease, O son! Great has been my toil!' Having said these words, the old king entered the apartments of Gāndhāri.[5] Unto that husband of hers who resembled a second Lord of all creatures, while resting on a seat, Gāndhāri of righteous conduct, conversant with the opportuneness of everything, said these words, the hour being suited to them,[6]—'Thou hast obtained the permission of that great Rishi, *viz.*, Vyāsa himself. When, however, wilt thou go to the forest, with the permission of Yudhishthira?'[7]

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O Gāndhāri, I have received the permission of my high-souled sire. With the permission of Yudhishthira (next obtained), I shall soon retire into the woods![8] I desire, however, to give away some wealth capable of following the status of *Preta*, in respect of all those sons of mine who were addicted to calamitous dice. Verily, I desire to make those gifts, inviting all the people to my mansion!*'"[9]

---

* Those who die become at first what is called *Preta*. They remain so for one year, till the *Sapindikarana Crāddha* is performed. They then become united with the *Pitris*. The gifts made in the first Crāddha as also in the monthly ones, have the virtue of rescuing the *Preta* or bringing him an accession of merit. The gifts in annual Crāddhas also have the same efficacy.—T.

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having said so (to Gāndhāri), Dhritarāshtra sent for Yudhishthira. The latter, at his uncle's command, brought all the articles necessary.[10] Many Brāhmanas residing in Kurujangala, and many Kshatriyas, many Vaiçyas, and many Cudras also, came to Dhritarāshtra's mansion, with gratified hearts.[11] The old king, coming out of the inner apartments, beheld them all as also his subjects assembled together.[12] Beholding all those assembled citizens and inhabitants of the provinces, and his well-wishers also thus gathered together, and the large number of Brāhmanas arrived from diverse realms, king Dhritarāshtra of great intelligence, O monarch, said these words,[13-14]—Ye all and the Kurus have lived together for many long years, well-wishers of each other, and each employed in doing good to the other![15] What I shall now say in view of the opportunity that has come, should be accomplished by you all even as disciples accomplish the biddings of their preceptors![16] I have set my heart upon retiring into the woods, along with Gāndhāri as my companion. Vyāsa has approved of this, as also the son of Kunti![17] Let me have your permission too. Do not hesitate in this. That good will, which has always existed between you and us,[18] is not to be seen, I believe, in other realms between the rulers and the ruled. I am worn out with this load of years on my head. I am destitute of children.[19] Ye sinless ones, I am emaciated with fasts, along with Gāndhāri. The kingdom having passed to Yudhishthira, I have enjoyed great happiness.[20] Ye foremost of men, I think that happiness has been greater than what I could expect from Duryodhana's sovereignty. What other refuge can I have, old as I am and destitute of children, save the woods? Ye highly blessed ones, it behoves you to grant me the permission I seek![21] Hearing these words of his, all these residents of Kurujangala, uttered loud lamentations, O best of the Bharatas, with voices choked by tears.[22] Desirous of telling those grief-stricken people something more, Dhritarāshtra of great energy once more addressed them and said as follows.' "[23]

Section IX.

"Dhrstarāshtra said,—'Cāntanu duly ruled this Earth. Similarly, Vichitraviryya also, protected by Bhishma, ruled you. Without doubt, all this is known to you.[1] It is also known to you how Pāndu, my brother, was dear to me as also to you. He also ruled you duly.[2] Ye sinless ones, I have also served you. Whether those services have come up to the mark or fallen short of it, it behooveth you to forgive me, for I have attended to my duties without heedlessness.[3] Duryodhana also enjoyed this kingdom without a thorn in his side. Foolish as he was and endued with wicked understanding, he did not, however, do any wrong to you.[4] Through the fault, however, of that prince of wicked understanding, and through his pride, as also through my own impolicy, a great carnage has taken place of persons of the royal order.[5] Whether I have, in that matter, acted rightly or wrongly, I pray you with joined hands to dispel all remembrance of it from your hearts![6]—This one is old; this one has lost all his children; this one is afflicted with grief; this one was our king; this one is a descendant of former kings;—considerations like these should induce you to forgive me.[7] This Gāndhāri also is cheerless and old. She too has lost her children and is helpless. Afflicted with grief for the loss of her sons, she solicits you with me.[8] Knowing that both of us are old and afflicted and destitute of children, grant us the permission we seek. Blessed be you, we seek your protection![9] This Kuru king, Yudhishthira the son of Kunti, should be looked after by you all, in prosperity as well as in adversity.[10] He will never fall into distress, he that has for his counsellers four such brothers of abundant prowess. All of them are conversant with both righteousness and wealth, and resemble the very guardians of the world.[11] Like the illustrious Brahman himself, the Lord of the universe of creatures, this Yudhishthira of mighty-energy will rule you.[12] That which should certainly be said is now said by me. I make over to you this Yudhishthira here as a deposit. I make you also a deposit in the hands of this hero.[13] It behooves you all

to forget and forgive whatever injury has been done to you by those sons of mine that are no longer alive, or, indeed, by any one else belonging to me.[14] Ye never harboured any wrath against me on any previous occasion. I join my hands before you who are distinguished for loyalty. Here, I bow to you all.[15] Ye sinless one, I, with Gāndhāri by my side, solicit your pardon now for anything done to you by those sons of mine, of restless understandings, stained by cupidity, and ever acting as their desires prompted !'[16] Thus addressed by the old monarch, all those citizens and inhabitants of the provinces, filled with tears, said nothing but only looked at one another."[17]

Section X.

Vaiçampāyana said.—"Thus addressed, O thou of Kuru's race, by the old king, the citizens and the inhabitants of the provinces stood sometime like men deprived of consciousness.[1] King Dhritarāshtra, finding them silent, with their throats choked by grief, once more addressed them, saying,[2]—'Ye best of men, old as I am, and sonless, and indulging, through cheerlessness of heart, in diverse lamentations along with this my wedded wife,[3] I have obtained the permission, in the matter of my retirement into the forest, of my sire, the Island-born Krishna himself, as also of king Yudhishthira, who is conversant with every duty, ye righteous denizens of this kingdom ![4] Ye sinless ones, I, with Gāndhāri, repeatedly solicit you with bent heads. It behooves you all to grant us permission !' "[5]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these pitiable words of the Kuru king, O monarch, the assembled denizens of Kurujangala all began to weep.[6] Covering their faces with their hands and upper garments, all those men, burning with grief, wept for a while as fathers and mothers would weep (at the prospect of a dear son about to leave them for ever).[7] Bearing in their hearts, from which every other thought had been dispelled, the sorrow born of Dhritarāshtra's desire to leave the world, they looked like men deprived of all consciousness.[8] Checking that agitation of heart due to the announcement of Dhritarāshtra's desire of going to the forest, they

gradually were able to address one another, expressing their wishes.[9] Settling their words in brief, O king, they charged a certain Brāhmana therewith and thus replied unto the old monarch.[10] That learned Brāhmana, of good behaviour, chosen by unanimous consent, conversant with all topics, master of all the Richs, and named Sāmba, endeavoured to speak.[11] Taking the permission of the whole assembly and with its full approbation, that learned Brāhmana of great intelligence, conscious of his own abilities, said these words unto the king:[12] —'O monarch, the answer of this assembly has been committed to my care. I shall voice it, O hero! Do thou receive it, O king![13] What thou sayest, O king of kings, is all true, O puissant one! There is nothing in it that is even slightly untrue. Thou art our well-wisher, as, indeed, we are thine![14] Verily, in this race of kings, there never was a king who coming to rule his subjects became unpopular with them.[15] Ye have ruled us like fathers or brothers. King Duryodhana never did us any wrong.[16] Do that, O king, which that righteous-souled ascetic, the son of Satyavati, has said. He is, verily, our foremost of instructors.[17] Left by thee, O monarch, we shall have to pass our days in grief and sorrow, filled with remembrance of thy hundreds of virtues.[18] We were well protected and ruled by king Duryodhana even as we had been ruled by king Cāntanu, or by Chitrāngada, or by thy father, O monarch, who was protected by the prowess of Bhishma, or by Pāndu, that ruler of Earth, who was overlooked by thee in all his acts.[19-20] Thy son, O monarch, never did us the slightest wrong. We lived, relying on that king as trustfully as on our own father.[21] It is known to thee how we lived (under that ruler). After the same manner, we have enjoyed great happiness, O monarch, for thousands of years, under the rule of Kunti's son of great intelligence and wisdom.*[22] This righteous-souled king who performs sacrifices with gifts in profusion, follows the conduct of the royal sages of old, belonging to thy race, of meritorious deeds, having Kuru and

* The text. in Verse 22, where mention is made of thousands of years as embracing the rule of Yudhishthira, is evidently vitiated.—T.

Samvara and others and Bharata of great intelligence among them.[23-24] There is nothing, O monarch, that is even slightly censurable in the matter of this Yudhishthira's rule. Protected and ruled by thee, we have all lived in great happiness.[25] The slightest demerit is incapable of being alleged against thee and thy son. Regarding what thou hast said about Duryodhana in the matter of this carnage of kinsmen, I beg thee, O delighter of the Kurus, (to listen to me).'[26-27]

"The Brāhmana continued,—'The destruction that has overtaken the Kurus was not brought about by Duryodhana. It was not brought about by thee. Nor was it brought about by Karna and Suvala's son![28] We know that it was brought about by destiny, and that it was incapable of being counteracted. Verily, destiny is not capable of being resisted by human exertion.[29] Eight and ten Akshauhinis of troops, O monarch, were brought together. In eight and ten days that host was destroyed by the foremost of Kuru warriors,[30] *viz.*, Bhishma and Drona and Kripa and others, and the high-souled Karna, and the heroic Yuyudhāna, and Dhrishtadyumna,[31] and by the four sons of Pāndu, that is, Bhima and Arjuna and the twins. This (tremendous) carnage, O king, could not happen without the influence of destiny.[32] Without doubt, by Kshatriyas in particular, should foes be slain and death encountered in battle.[33] By those foremost of men, endued with science and might of arms, the Earth has been exterminated with her steeds and cars and elephants.[34] Thy son was not the cause of that carnage of high-souled kings. Thou wert not the cause, nor thy servants, nor Karna, nor Suvala's son.[35] The destruction of those foremost ones of Kuru's race and of kings by thousands, know, was brought about by destiny. Who can say anything else in this?[36] Thou art regarded as the Guru and the master of the whole world. We, therefore, in thy presence, absolve thy righteous-souled son.[37] Let that king, with all his associates, obtain the regions reserved for heroes. Permitted by foremost of Brāhmanas, let him sport blissfully in Heaven![38] Thou also shalt attain to great merit, and unswerving steadiness in virtue. O thou of excellent vows, follow thou fully the duties

indicated in the Vedas.[39] It is not necessary for either thee or ourselves to look after the Pāndavas. They are capable of ruling the very Heavens, what need then be said of the Earth?[40] O thou of great intelligence, in prosperity as in adversity, the subjects of this kingdom, O foremost one of Kuru's race, will be obedient to the Pāndavas who have conduct for their ornament.[41] The son of Pāndu makes those valuable gifts which are always to be made to foremost of regenerate persons in sacrifices and in obsequial rites, after the manner of all the great kings of antiquity.[42] The high-minded son of Kunti is mild, and self-restrained, and is always disposed to spend as if he were a second Vaiçravana. He has great ministers that attend on him.[43] He is compassionate to even his foes. Indeed, that foremost one of Bharata's race is of pure conduct. Endued with great intelligence, he is perfectly straight forward in his dealings and rules and protects us like a father his children.[44] From association with him who is the son of Dharma, O royal sage, Bhima and Arjuna and others will never do us the least wrong.[45] They are mild, O thou of Kuru's race, unto them that are mild, and fierce like snakes of virulent poison unto them that are fierce. Possessed of great energy, those high-souled ones are always devoted to the good of the people.[46] Neither Kunti, nor thy (daughter-in-law) Pānchāli, nor Ulupi, nor the princess of the Sāttwata race, will do the least wrong to these people.*[47] The affection which thou hast shown towards us and which in Yudhishthira is seen to exist in a still larger measure is incapable of being forgotten by the people of the city and the provinces.[48] Those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the sons of Kunti, themselves devoted to the duties of righteousness, will protect and cherish the people even if these happen to be unrighteous.[49] Do thou, therefore, O king, dispelling all anxiety of heart on account of Yudhishthira, set thyself to the accomplishment of all meritorious acts, O foremost of men!'"[50]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these words, fraught with righteousness and merit, of that Brāhmana and approving

---

* The correct reading is 'jane' and not 'ks hane.'—T.

of them, every person in that assembly said,—'Excellent, Excellent' and accepted them as his own.[51] Dhritarāshtra also, repeatedly applauding those words, slowly dismissed that assembly of his subjects.[52] Thus honoured by them and looked upon with auspicious glances, the old king, O chief of Bharata's race, joined his hands and honoured them all in return.[53] He then entered his own mansion with Gāndhāri. Listen now to what he did after that night had passed away."[54]

Section XI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After that night had passed away, Dhritarāshtra, the son of Amvikā, despatched Vidura to Yudhishthira's mansion.[1] Endued with great energy and the foremost of all persons possessed of intelligence, Vidura, having arrived at Yudhishthira's mansion, addressed that foremost of men, that king of unfading glory, in these words:[2]—'King Dhritarāshtra has undergone the preliminary rites for accomplishing his purpose of retiring into the woods. He will set out for the woods, O king, on the coming day of full moon of the month of Kārtika.[3] He now solicits from thee, O foremost one of Kuru's race, some wealth. He wishes to perform the Crāddha of the high-souled son of Gangā,[4] as also of Drona and Somadatta and Vālhika of great intelligence, and of all his sons as also of all other wishers of his that have been slain, and, if thou permittest it, of that wicked-souled wight, *viz.*, the ruler of the Sindhus.'*[5] Hearing these words of Vidura, both Yudhishthira, and Pāndu's son Arjuna of curly hair, became very glad and applauded them highly.[6] Bhima, however, of great energy and unappeasable wrath, did not

---

* It is difficult to imagine why the ruler of the Sindhus, Jayadratha, only should be regarded as a wrong-doer to the Pāndavas. In the matter of the slaying of Abhimanyu he played a very minor part, by only guarding the entrance of the array against the Pāndava warriors. It is true he had attempted to abduct Draupadi from the forest retreat of the Pāndavas, but even in this, the wrong was not so great as that which Duryodhana and others inflicted on the Pāndavas by dragging Draupadi to the court of the Kurus.—T.

accept those words of Vidura in good spirits, recollecting the acts of Duryodhana. The diadem-decked Phālguna, understanding the thoughts of Bhimasena, slightly bending his face downwards, addressed that foremost of men in these words:— 'O Bhima, our royal father who is advanced in years, has resolved to retire into the woods.[7-9] He wishes to make gifts for advancing the happiness of his slain kinsmen and well-wishers now in the other world. O thou of Kuru's race, he wishes to give away wealth that belongs to thee by conquest.[10] Indeed, O mighty-armed one, it is for Bhishma and others that the old king is desirous of making those gifts. It behooves thee to grant thy permission. By good luck it is, O thou of mighty arms, that Dhritarāshtra today begs wealth of us,[11] he who was formerly begged by us. Behold the reverses brought about by Time. That king who was before the lord and protector of the whole Earth,[12] now desires to go into the woods, his kinsmen and associates all slain by foes. O chief of men, let not thy views deviate from granting the permission asked![13] O mighty-armed one, refusal, besides bringing infamy, will be productive of demerit. Do thou learn your duty in this matter from the king, thy eldest brother, who is lord of all![14] It becometh thee to give instead of refusing, O chief of Bharata's race!' Vibhatsu who was saying so was applauded by king Yudhishthira the just.[15] Yielding to wrath, Bhimasena said these words:—O Phālguna, it is we that shall make gifts in the matter of Bhishma's obsequies,[16] as also of king Somadatta and of Bhuriçravas, of the royal sage Vālhika, and of the high-souled Drona,[17] and of all others. Our mother Kunti shall make such obsequial offerings for Karna. O foremost of men, let not Dhritarāshtra perform those Crāddhas.[18] Even this is what I think. Let not our foes be gladdened. Let Duryodhana and others sink from a miserable to a more miserable position.[19] Alas, it was those wretches of their race that caused the whole Earth to be exterminated! How hast thou been able to forget that anxiety of twelve long years,[20] and our residence in deep *incognito* that was so painful to Draupadi? Where was Dhritarāshtra's affection for us then?[21] Clad in a black deer-skin and divested of all thy ornaments,

with the princess of Pānchāla in thy company, didst thou not follow this king?[22] Where were Bhishma and Drona then, and where was Somadatta? Thou hadst to live for thirteen years in the woods, supporting thyself on the products of the wilderness.[23] Thy eldest father did not then look at thee with eyes of parental affection. Hast thou forgotten, O Pārtha, that it was this wretch of our race,[24] of wicked understanding, that enquired of Vidura, when the match at dice was going one,—What has been won?' Hearing thus far, king Yudhishthira, the son of Kunti, endued with great intelligence, rebuked him and told him to be silent."[25]

Section XII.

"Arjuna said,—'O Bhima, thou art my elder brother and, therefore, my senior and preceptor. I dare not say anything more than what I have already said. The royal sage Dhritarāshtra deserves to be honoured by us in every respect.[1] They that are good, they that are distinguished above the common level, they that break not the distinctions which characterise the good, remember not the wrongs done to them but only the benefits they have received.'[2] Hearing these words of the high-souled Phālguna, the righteous-souled Yudhishthira, the son of Kunti, addressed Vidura and said these words,[3]—'Instructed by me, O Kshattri, do thou say unto the Kuru king that I shall give him as much wealth from my treasury as he wishes to give away for the obsequies of his sons, and of Bhishma and others among his well-wishers and benefactors. Let not Bhima be cheerless at this!'"[4-5]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having said these words, king Yudhishthira the just highly applauded Arjuna. Meanwhile Bhimasena began to cast angry glances at Dhananjaya.[6] Then Yudhishthira, endued with great intelligence, once more addressed Vidura and said,—'It behoves not king Dhritarāshtra to be angry with Bhimasena.[7] This Bhima of great intelligence was greatly afflicted by cold and rain and heat and by a thousand other griefs while residing in the woods. All this is not unknown to thee.[8] Do thou, however, instructed by me,

say unto the king, O foremost one of Bharata's race, that he may take from my house whatever articles he wishes and in whatever measure also he likes.[9] Thou shalt also tell the king that he should not allow his heart to dwell on this exhibition of pride in which Bhima, deeply afflicted, has indulged.[10] Whatever wealth I have and whatever Arjuna has in his house, the owner thereof is king Dhritarāshtra. Even this thou shouldst tell him.[11] Let the king make gifts unto the Brāhmanas! Let him spend as largely as he likes. Let him free himself from the debt he owes to his sons and well-wishers.[12] Let him be told besides,—*O monarch, this very body of mine is at thy disposal, and all the wealth I have! Know this, and let there be no doubt in this.*—' "[13]

SECTION XIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Thus addressed by king Yudhishthira, Vidura, that foremost of all intelligent persons, returned to Dhritarāshtra and said unto him these words of grave import.[1]—'I at first reported thy message to king Yudhishthira. Reflecting on thy words, Yudhishthira of great splendour applauded them highly.[2] Vibhatsu also, of great energy, places all his mansions, with all the wealth therein, as also his very life-breaths, at thy disposal.[3] Thy son, king Yudhishthira, too, offers thee, O royal sage, his kingdom and life-breaths and wealth and all else that belongs to him.[4] Bhima, however, of mighty-arms, recollecting all his innumerable sorrows, has with difficulty given his consent, breathing many heavy sighs.[5] That mighty-armed hero, O monarch, was solicited by the righteous king as also by Vibhatsu, and induced to assume relations of cordiality towards thee.[6] King Yudhishthira the just has prayed thee not to give way to dissatisfaction for the improper conduct which Bhima has displayed at the recollection of former hostilities.[7]—This is generally the behaviour of Kshatriyas in battle, O king, and this Vrikodara is devoted to battle and the practices of Kshatriyas.[8] Both myself and Arjuna, O king, repeatedly beg thee for pardoning Vrikodara. Be gracious unto us. Thou art our lord.

Whatever wealth we have thou mayst give away as thou likest, O ruler of Earth ! Thou, O Bhārata, art the master of this kingdom and of all lives in it ![9-10] Let the foremost one of Kuru's race give away, for the obsequial rites of his sons, all those foremost of gifts which should be given to the Brāhmanas. Indeed, let him make those gifts unto persons of the regenerate order, taking away from our mansions jewels and gems, and kine, and slaves both male and female, and goats and sheep. Let gifts be made unto also those that are poor or sightless or in great distress, selecting the objects of his charity as he likes.[11-12] Let, O Vidura, large pavilions be constructed, rich with food and drink of diverse tastes collected in profusion. Let reservoirs of water be constructed for enabling kine to drink, and let other works of merit be accomplished ![13]— Even these were the words said unto me by the king as also by Prithā's son Dhananjaya. It behooveth thee to say what should be done next.'[14] After Vidura had said these words, O Janamejaya, Dhritarāshtra expressed his satisfaction at them and set his heart upon making large presents on the day of full moon in the month of Kārtika."[15]

Section XIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—" Thus addressed by Vidura, king Dhritarāshtra became highly pleased, O monarch, with the act of Yudhishthira and Jishnu.[1] Inviting then, after proper examination, thousands of deserving Brāhmanas and superior Rishis, for the sake of Bhishma, as also of his sons and friends,[2] and causing a large quantity of food and drink to be prepared, and cars and other vehicles and clothes, and gold and jewels and gems, and slaves both male and female, and goats and sheep, and blankets and costly articles to be collected,[3] and villages and fields, and other kinds of wealth to be kept ready, as also elephants and steeds decked with ornaments, and many beautiful maidens who were the best of their sex,[4] that foremost of kings gave them away for the advancement of the dead, naming each of them in due order as the gifts were made. Naming Drona, and Bhishma, and Somadatta, and

Vālhika,[5] and king Duryodhana, and each one of his other sons, and all his well-wishers with Jayadratha numbering first, those gifts were made in due order.[6] With the approval of Yudhishthira, that Crāddha-sacrifice became characterised by large gifts of wealth and profuse presents of jewels and gems and other kinds of treasure.[7] Tellers and scribes on that occasion, under the orders of Yudhishthira, ceaselessly asked the old king,[8]—Do thou command, O monarch, what gifts should be made to these. All things are ready here !—As soon as the king spoke, they gave away what he directed.*[9] Unto him that was to receive a hundred, a thousand was given, and unto him that was to receive a thousand was given ten thousand, at the command of the royal son of Kunti.†[10] Like the clouds vivifying the crops with their downpours, that royal cloud gratified the Brāhmanas by downpours of wealth.[11] After all those gifts had been distributed, the king, O thou of great intelligence, then deluged the assembled guests of all the four orders with repeated surges of food and drink of diverse tastes.[12] Verily, the Dhritarāshtra-ocean, swelling high, with jewels and gems for its waters, rich with the villages and fields and other foremost of gifts constituting its verdant islands, heaps of diverse kinds of precious articles for its rich caves, elephants and steeds for its alligators and whirlpools, the sound of Mridangas for its deep roars, and clothes and wealth and precious stones for its waves, deluged the Earth.[13-14] It was even in this way, O king, that that monarch made gifts for the advancement in the other world of his sons and grandsons and Pitris as also of himself and Gāndhāri.[15] At last

* The usual way in which gifts are made at the present day on occasions of Crāddhas and marriages or other auspicious rites very nearly resembles what is described here. Instead of dedicating each gift with *mantras* and water and making it over to the receiver, all the articles in a heap are dedicated with the aid of *mantras*. The guests are then assembled, and are called up individually. The Adhyaksha or superintendent, according to a list prepared, names the gifts to be made to the guest called up. The tellers actually make them over, the scribes noting them down.—T.

† Each gift that was indicated by Dhritarāshtra was multiplied ten times at the command of Yudhishthira.—T.

when he became tired with the task of making gifts in such profusion, that great Gift-sacrifice came to an end.[16] Even thus did that king of Kuru's race perform his Gift-sacrifice. Actors and mimes continually danced and sang on the occasion and contributed to the merriment of all the guests. Food and drink of diverse tastes were given away in large quantities.[17] Making gifts in this way for ten days, the royal son of Amvikā, O chief of Bharata's race, became freed from the debts he owed to his sons and grandsons."[18]

Section XV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—" The royal son of Amvikā, *viz.*, Dhritarāshtra, having settled the hour of his departure for the woods, summoned those heroes, the Pāndavas.[1] Possessed of great intelligence, the old monarch, with Gāndhāri, duly accosted those princes. Having caused the minor rites to be performed, by Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas, on that day which was the day of full moon in the month of Kārtika,[2] he caused the fire which he worshipped daily to be taken up. Leaving his usual robes he wore deer-skins and barks, and accompanied by his daughters-in-law, he set out of his mansion.[3] When the royal son of Vichitraviryya thus set out, a loud wail was uttered by the Pāndava and the Kaurava ladies as also by other women belonging to the Kaurava race.[4] The king worshipped the mansion in which he had lived with fried paddy and excellent flowers of diverse kinds. He also honoured all his servants with gifts of wealth, and then leaving that abode set out on his journey.[5] Then, O son, king Yudhishthira, trembling all over, with utterance choked by tears, said these words in a loud voice, *viz.*,—'O righteous monarch, where dost thou go?'—and fell down in a swoon.[6] Arjuna, burning with great grief, sighed repeatedly. That foremost of Bharata princes, telling Yudhishthira that he should not behave in that manner, stood cheerlessly and with heart plunged into distress.[7] Vrikodara, the heroic Phālguna, the two sons of Mādri, Vidura, Sanjaya, Dhritarāshtra's son by his Vaiçyā wife, and Kripa, and Dhaumya, and other Brāh-

manas, all followed the old monarch, with voices choked in grief.[8] Kunti walked ahead, bearing on her shoulders the hand of Gāndhāri who walked with her bandaged eyes. King Dhritarāshtra walked confidently behind Gāndhāri, placing his hand on her shoulder.*[9] Drupada's daughter Krishnā, she of the Sāttwata race, Uttarā the daughter-in-law of the Kauravas, who had recently become a mother, Chitrāngadā, and other ladies of the royal household, all proceeded with the old monarch.[10] The wail they uttered on that occasion, O king, from grief, resembled the loud lamentations of a swarm of she-ospreys. Then the wives of the citizens,—Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Cudras,—also came out into the streets from every side.[11] At Dhritarāshtra's departure, O king, all the citizens of Hastināpore became as distressed as they had been, O monarch, when they had witnessed the departure of the Pāndavas in former days after their defeat at the match at dice.[12] Ladies that had never seen the sun or the moon, came out into the streets on that occasion, in great grief, when king Dhritarāshtra proceeded towards the great forest."[13]

Section XVI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Great was the uproar, at that time, O king, of both men and women standing on the terraces of mansions or on the Earth.[1] Possessed of great intelligence, the old king, with joined hands, and trembling with weakness, preceeded with difficulty along the principal street which was crowded with persons of both sexes.[2] He left the city called after the elephant by the principal gate, and then repeatedly bade that crowd of people to return to their homes.[3] Vidura had set his heart on going to the forest along with the king. The Suta Sanjaya also, the son of Gavalgani, the chief minister of Dhritarāshtra, was of the same heart.[4] King Dhrita-

---

* As Dhritarāshtra was blind, his queen Gāndhāri, whose devotion to her lord was very great, had, from the days of her marriage, kept her eyes bandaged, refusing to look on the world which her lord could not see.—T.

rāshtra, however, caused Kripa and the mighty car-warrior Yuyutsu to refrain from following him. He made them over into Yudhishthira's hands.[5] After the citizens had ceased following the monarch, king Yudhishthira, with the ladies of his household, prepared to stop, at the command of Dhritarāshtra.[6] Seeing that his mother Kunti was desirous of retiring into the woods, the king said unto her,—'I shall follow the old monarch. Do thou desist![7] It behooveth thee, O queen, to return to the city, accompanied by these thy daughters-in-law! This monarch proceeds to the woods, firmly resolved to practice penances!'[8] Though king Yudhishthira said these words unto her, with his eyes bathed in tears, Kunti, however, without answering him, continued to proceed, catching hold of Gāndhāri.[9]

"Kunti said,—'O king, never show any disregard for Sahadeva. He is very much attached to me, O monarch, and to thee also always![10] Thou shouldst always bear in mind Karna who never retreated from battle. Through my folly that hero has been slain in the field of battle.[11] Surely, my son, this heart of mine is made of steel, since it does not break into a hundred pieces at not seeing that child born of Surya.[12] When such has been the case, O chastiser of foes, what can I now do? I am very much to blame for not having proclaimed the truth about the birth of Surya's child.[13] O crusher of foes, I hope thou wilt, with all thy brothers, make excellent gifts for the sake of that son of Surya.[14] O mower of foes, thou shouldst always do what is agreeable to Draupadi. Thou shouldst look after Bhimasena and Arjnna and Nakula and Sahadeva. The burthens of the Kuru race have now fallen on thee, O king![15] I shall live in the woods with Gāndhāri, besmearing my body with filth, engaged in the performance of penances, and devoted to the service of my father-in-law and mother-in-law!'"*[16]

---

* Nilakantha explains that as Dhritarāshtra is Pāndu's elder brother, therefore, Kunti regards him as Pāndu's father. Queen Gāndhāri therefore, is Kunti's mother-in-law. The eldest brother is looked upon as a father.—T.

Vaiçampāyana continued,—" Thus addressed by her, the righteous-souled Yudhishthira, with passions under complete control, became, with all his brothers, plunged into great distress. Endued with great intelligence, the king said not a word.[17] Having reflected for a little while, king Yudhishthira the just, cheerless and plunged in anxiety and sorrow, addressed his mother, saying,[18]—'What, indeed, is this purpose of thine ? It behooves thee not to accomplish it. I can never grant thee permission ! It behoves thee to show us compassion ![19] Formerly, when we were about to set out of Hastināpore for the woods, O thou of agreeable features, it was thou who, reciting to us the story of Vidulā's instructions to her son, excited us to exertion. It behoves thee not to abandon us now ![20] Having slain the kings of Earth, I have won sovereignty, guided by thy words of wisdom communicated through Vāsudeva.[21] Where now is that understanding of thine about which I had heard from Vāsudeva ? Dost thou wish now to fall away from those Kshatriya practices about which thou hadst instructed us ?[22] Abandoning ourselves, this kingdom, and this daughter-in-law of thine who is possessed of great fame, how wilt thou live in the inaccessible woods ? Do thou relent !'[23] Kunti, with tears in her eyes, heard these words of her son, but continued to proceed on her way. Then Bhima addressed her, saying,[24]—'When, O Kunti, sovereignty has been won, and when the time has come for thee to enjoy that sovereignty thus acquired by thy children, when the duties of royalty await discharge by thee, whence has this desire got hold of thy mind ?[25] Why then didst thou cause us to exterminate the Earth ? For what reason wouldst thou leave all and wish to take up thy abode in the woods ?[26] We were born in the woods. Why then didst thou bring us from the woods while we were children ? Behold, the two sons of Mādri are overwhelmed with sorrow and grief ![27] Relent, O mother ! O thou of great fame, do not go into the woods now ! Do thou enjoy that prosperity which, acquired by might, has become Yudhishthira's today !'[28] Firmly resolved to retire into the woods, Kunti disregarded these lamentations of her sons.[29] Then Draupadi with a cheerless face, accompanied by

Subhadrā, followed her weeping mother-in-law who was journeying on from desire of going into the woods.[30] Possessed of great wisdom and firmly resolved on retirement from the world, the blessed dame walked on, frequently looking at her weeping children.[31] The Pāndavas, with all their wives and servitors, continued to follow her. Restraining then her tears, she addressed her children in these words.' "[32]

Section XVII.

"Kunti said,—'It is even so, O mighty-armed son of Pāndu, as thou sayest! Ye kings, formerly when ye were cheerless, it was even in this way that I excited you all.[1] Yes, seeing that your kingdom was wrested from you by a match at dice, seeing that you all fell from happiness, seeing that you were domineered over by kinsmen, I instilled courage and high thoughts into your minds![2] Ye foremost of men, I encouraged you in order that they that were the sons of Pāndu might not be lost, in order that their fame might not be lost![3] You are all equal to Indra! Your prowess resembles that of the very gods. In order that you might not live, watching the faces of others, I acted in that way![*4] I instilled courage into thy heart in order that thou who art the foremost of all righteous persons, who art equal to Vāsava, might not again go into the woods and live in misery![5] I instilled courage into your hearts in order that this Bhima who is possessed of the strength of ten thousand elephants and whose prowess and manliness are widely known, might not sink into insignificance and ruin.[6] I instilled courage into your hearts in order that this Vijaya, who was born after Bhimasena, and who is equal unto Vāsava himself, might not be cheerless.[7] I instilled courage into your hearts in order that Nakula and Sahadeva, who are always devoted to their seniors, may not be weakened and rendered cheerless by hunger.[8] I acted in that way in order that this lady of well-developed proportions and of large expensive eyes might not endure the wrongs inflicted on her in

---

* To live watching the faces of others is to live in dependance on others.—T.

the public hall without being avenged.[9] In the very sight of you all, O Bhima, trembling all over like a plantain plant, during the period of her functional illness, and after she had been won at dice,[10] Dusçāsana, through folly, dragged her as if she were a slave! All this was known to me. Indeed, the race of Pāndu had been subjugated (by foes)![11] The Kurus, *viz.*, my father-in-law and others, were cheerless when she, desirous of a protector, uttered loud lamentations like a she-osprey.[12] When she was dragged by her fair locks by the sinful Dusçāsana without little intelligence, I was deprived of my senses, O king.[13] Know, that for enhancing your energy, I instilled that courage into your hearts by reciting the words of Vidulā, O my sons![14] I instilled courage into your hearts, O my sons, in order that the race of Pāndu, represented by my children, might not be lost![15] The sons and grandsons of that person who brings a race to infamy never suceeed in attaining to the regions of the righteous. Verily, the ancestors of the Kaurava race were in danger of losing those regions of felicity which had become theirs![16] As regards myself, O my sons, I have, before this, enjoyed the great fruits of that sovereignty which my husband had acquired. I have made large gifts. I have duly drunk the Soma juice in sacrifice.*[17] It was not for my own sake that I had urged Vāsudeva with the stirring words of Vidulā. It was for your sake that I had called upon you to follow that advice.[18] O my sons, I do not desire the fruits of that sovereignty which has been won by my children. O thou of great puissance, I wish to attain, by my penances, to those regions of felicity which have been acquired by my husband.[19] By rendering obedient service to my father-in-law and mother-in-law both of whom wish to take up their abode in the woods, and by penances, I desire, O Yudhishthira, to waste my body.[20] Do thou cease to follow me, O foremost one of Kuru's race, along with Bhima and others.

---

* It has been pointed out before that 'mahādāna' means gifts of such things as elephants, horses, cars and other vehicles, boats, &c. The giver wins great merit by making them, but the receiver incurs demerit by acceptance, unless he happens to be a person of exceptional energy. To this day, acceptors of such gifts are looked upon as fallen men.—T.

Let thy understanding be always devoted to righteousness! Let thy mind be always great!' "[21]

SECTION XVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hearing these words of Kunti, the sinless Pāndavas, O best of kings, became ashamed. They, therefore, desisted, along with the princess of Pānchāla, from following her.*[1] Beholding Kunti resolved to go into the woods, the ladies of the Pāndava household uttered loud lamentations.[2] The Pāndavas then circumambulated the king and saluted him duly. They ceased to follow further, having failed to persuade Prithā to return.[3] Then Amvikā's son of great energy, *viz.*, Dhritarāshtra, addressing Gāndhāri and Vidura and supporting himself on them, said,[4]—'Let the royal mother of Yudhishthira cease to go with us! What Yudhishthira has said is all very true.[5] Abandoning this high prosperity of her sons, abandoning those high fruits that may be hers, why should she go into the inaccessible woods, leaving her children like a person of little intelligence?[6] Living in the enjoyment of sovereignty, she is capable of practising penances and observing the high vow of gifts. Let her, therefore, listen to my words.[7] O Gāndhāri, I have been much gratified with the services rendered to me by this daughter-in-law of mine. Conversant as thou art with all duties, it behooveth thee to command her return.'[8] Thus addressed by her lord, the daughter of Suvala repeated unto Kunti all those words of the old king and added her own words of grave import.[9] She, however, failed to cause Kunti to desist inasmuch as that chaste lady, devoted to righteousness, had firmly set her heart upon a residence in the woods.[10] The Kuru ladies, understanding how firm her resolution was regarding her retirement into the woods, and seeing that those foremost ones of Kuru's race (*viz.*, their own lords), had ceased to follow her, set up a loud wail of lamentation.[11] After all the sons of Prithā and

---

* The words that Kunti spoke were just. The opposition her sons offered was unreasonable. Hence, their shame.—T.

all the ladies had retraced their steps, king Yudhishthira of great wisdom continued his journey to the woods.[12] The Pāndavas, exceedingly cheerless and afflicted with grief and sorrow accompanied by their wives, returned to the city, on their cars.[13] At that time the city of Hastināpura, with its entire population of men, both old and young, and women, became cheerless and plunged into sorrow. No festivals of rejoicing were observed.[14] Afflicted with grif, the Pāndavas were without any energy. Deserted by Kunti, they were deeply afflicted with grief, like calves destitute of their dams.[15] Dhritarāshtra reached that day a place far removed from the city. The puissant monarch arrived at last on the banks of the Bhāgirathi and took rest there for the night.[16] Brāhmanas conversant with the Vedas duly ignited their sacred fires in that retreat of ascetics. Surrounded by those foremost of Brāhmanas, those sacred fires blazed forth in beauty. The sacred fire of the old king was also ignited.[17] Sitting near his own fire, he poured libations on it according to due rites, and then worshipped the thousand-rayed sun as he was on the point of setting.[18] Then Vidura and Sanjaya made a bed for the king by spreading some blades of Kuça grass. Near the bed of that Kuru hero they made another for Gāndhāri.[19] In close proximity to Gāndhāri, Yudhishthira's mother Kunti, observant of excellent vows, happily laid herself down.[20] Within hearing distance of those three, slept Vidura and others. The Yājaka Brahmanas and other followers of the king laid themselves down on their respective beds.[21] The foremost of Brāhmanas that were there chaunted aloud many sacred hymns. The sacrificial fires blazed forth all around. That night, therefore, seemed as delightful to them as a Brāhmi night.*[22] When the night passed away, they all arose from their beds and went through their morning acts. Pouring libations then on the sacred fire, they continued their journey.[23] Their first day's experience of the forest proved very painful to them of grieving hearts,—them who were grieved by the

* 'Brāhmi night' implies a night in course of which sacred hymns are sung.—T.

inhabitants of both the city and the provinces of the Kuru kingdom."[24]

SECTION XIX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Following the advice of Vidura, the king took up his abode on the banks of the Bhāgirathi which were sacred and deserved to be peopled with the righteous.[1] There many Brāhmanas who had taken up their abode in the woods, as also many Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Cudras, came to see the old monarch.[2] Sitting in their midst, he gladdened them all by his words. Having duly worshipped the Brāhmanas with their disciples, he dismissed them all.[3] As evening came, the king, and Gāndhāri of great fame, both descended into the stream of the Bhāgirathi and duly performed their ablutions for purifying themselves.[4] The king and the queen, and Vidura and others, O Bhārata, having bathed in the sacred stream, performed the usual rites of religion.[5] After the king had purified himself by a bath, the daughter of Kuntibhoja led him, who was to her as her father-in-law, gently led both him and Gāndhāri from the water into the dry bank.[6] The Yājakas had made a sacrificial altar there for the king. Devoted to truth, the latter poured libations then on the fire.[7] From the banks of the Bhāgirathi the old king, with his followers, observant of vows and with senses restrained, then proceeded to Kurukshetra.[8] Possessed of great intelligence, the king arrived at the retreat of the royal sage Catayupa of great wisdom and had an interview with him.[9] Catayupa, O scorcher of foes, had been the great king of the Kekayas. Having made over the sovereignty of his kingdom to his son he had come into the woods.[10] Catayupa, received king Dhritarāshtra with due rites. Accompanied by him, the latter proceeded to the retreat of Vyāsa.[11] Arrived at Vyāsa's retreat, the delighter of the Kurus received his initiation into the forest mode of life. Returning he took up his abode in the retreat of Catayupa.[12] The high-souled Catayupa instructed Dhritarāshtra in all the rites of the forest mode, at the command of Vyāsa.[13] In this way the high-souled Dhrita-

rāshtra set himself to the practice of penances, and all his followers also to the same course of conduct.[14] Queen Gāndhāri also, O monarch, along with Kunti, assumed barks of trees and deer-skins for her robe, and set herself to the observance of the same vows as her lord.[15] Restraining their senses in thought, words, and deeds, as well as by eye, they began to practise severe austerities.[16] Divested of all stupefaction of mind, king Dhritarāshtra began to practise vows and penances like a great Rishi, reducing his body to skin and bones, for his flesh was all dried up, bearing matted locks on head, and his person clad in barks and skins.[17] Vidura, conversant with the true interpretations of righteousness, and endued with great intelligence, as also Sanjaya, waited upon the old king with his wife. Both of them with souls under subjection, Vidura and Sanjaya also reduced themselves, and wore barks and rags."[18]

Section XX.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Those foremost of ascetics, *viz.* Nārada and Parvata and Devala of austere penances, came there to see king Dhrisarāshtra.[1] The Island-born Vyāsa with all his disciples, and other persons endued with great wisdom and crowned with ascetic success, and the royal sage Catayupa of advanced years and possessed of great merit, also came.[2] Kunti worshipped them with due rites, O king! All those ascetics were highly gratified with the worship offered to them.[3] Those great Rishis gladdened the high-souled king Dhritarāshtra with discourses on religion and righteousness.[4] At the conclusion of their converse, the celestial Rishi Nārada, beholding all things as objects of direct perception, said the following words.[5]

"Nārada said,—'There was a ruler of the Kekayas, possessed of great prosperity and perfectly fearless. His name was Sahasrachitya and he was the grandfather of this Catayupa.[6] Resining his kingdom to his eldest son endued with a large measure of righteousness, the virtuous king Sahasrachitya retired into the woods.[7] Reaching the other end of blazing penances, that lord of Earth, endued with great splendour,

attained to the region of Purandara where he continued to live in his company.[8] On many occasions, while visiting the region of Indra, O king, I saw that monarch, whose sins had all been burnt off by penances, residing in Indra's abode.[9] After the same manner, king Cailālaya, the grandfather of Bhagadatta, attained to the region of Indra by the power alone of his penances.[10] There was another king, O monarch, of the name of Prishadhra who resembled the wielder of the thunder-bolt himself. That king also, by his penances proceeded from the Earth to Heaven.[11] In this very forest, O king, that lord of Earth, *viz.*, Purukutsa, the son of Māndhātri, attained to high success.[12] That foremost of rivers, *viz.*, Narmadā, became the consort of that king. Having undergone penances in this very forest, that ruler of Earth proceeded to Heaven.[13] There was another king, highly righteous, of the name of Caçaloman. He too underwent severe austerities in this forest and then ascended to Heaven.[14] Thou also, O monarch, having arrived at this forest, shalt, through the grace of the Island-born, attain to a goal that is very high and that is difficult of attainment.[15] Thou also, O foremost of kings, at the end of thy penances, become endued with great prosperity and, accompanied by Gāndhāri, attain to the goal reached by those high-souled ones.[16] Dwelling in the presence of the slayer of Vala, Pāndu thinks of thee always. He will, O monarch, certainly assist thee in the attainment of prosperity.[17] Through serving thee and Gāndhāri, this daughter-in-law of thine, possessed of great fame, will attain to residence with her husband in the other world.[18] She is the mother of Yudhishthira who is the eternal Dharma. We behold all this, O king, with our spiritual vision.[19] Vidura will enter into the high souled Yudhisthira. Sanjaya also, through meditation, will ascend from this world into Heaven.' "[20]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—" That high-souled chief of Kuru's race, possessed of learning, having, with his wife, heard these words of Nārada, praised them and worshipped Nārada with unprecedented honours.[21] The conclave of Brāhmanas there present became filled with great joy, and desirous of gladdening king Dhritarāstra, O monarch, themselves wor-

shipped Nārada with profound regards.[22] Those foremost of regenerate persons also praised the words of Nārada. Then the royal sage Catayupa, addressing Nārada, said,[23]—'Thy holy self hath enhanced the devotion of the Kuru king, of all those people here, and of myself also, O thou of great splendour![24] I have, however, the wish to ask thee something. Listen to me as I say it. It has reference to king Dhritarāshtra, O celestial Rishi, that art worshipped by all the worlds![25] Thou art acquainted with the truth of every affair. Endued with celestial sight, thou beholdest, O regenerate Rishi, what the diverse goals are of human beings.[26] Thou hast said what the goal has been of the kings mentioned by thee, *viz.*, association with the chief of the celestials. Thou hast not, however, O great Rishi, declared what those regions are that will be acquired by this king![27] O puissant one, I wish to hear from thee what region will be acquired by the royal Dhritarāshtra. It behooveth thee to tell me truly the kind of region that will be his and the time when he will attain to it!'[28] Thus addressed by him, Nārada of celestial sight and endued with austere penances, said in the midst of the assembly these words highly agreeable to the minds of all.[29]

"Nārada said,—'Repairing at my will to the mansion of Cakra, I have seen Cakra the lord of Cachi; and there, O royal sage, I have beheld king Pāndu.[30] There a talk arose, O monarch, regarding this Dhritarāshtra and those highly austere penances which he is performing.[31] There I heard from the lips of Cakra himself that there are three years yet of the period of life allotted to this king.[32] After that, king Dhritarāshtra, accompanied by his wife Gāndhāri, will go to the regions of Kuvera and be highly honoured by that king of kings. He will go there on a car moving at his will, his person adorned with celestial ornaments.[33] He is the son of a Rishi; he is highly blessed; he has burnt all his sins by his penances. Endued with a righteous soul, he will rove at will through the regions of the deities, the Gandharvas, and the Rākshasas. That about which thou hast enquired is a mystery of the gods. Through my affection for you, I have declared this high truth.[34-35] Ye all are possessed of the

wealth of Crutis and have consumed all your sins by your penances!' "[36]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing these sweet words of the celestial Rishi, all the persons there assembled, as also king Dhritarāshtra, became greatly cheered and highly pleased.[37] Having cheered Dhritarāshtra of great wisdom with such talk, they left the spot, wending away by the path that belongs to those who are crowned with success."[38]

Section XXI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Upon the retirement of the chief of the Kurus into the forest, the Pāndavas, O king, afflicted besides by grief on account of their mother, became very cheerless.[1] The citizens also of Hastināpura were possessed by deep sorrow. The Brāhmanas always talked of the old king.[2] 'How, indeed, will the king, who has become old, live in the solitary woods? How will the highly blessed Gāndhāri, and Prithā, the daughter of Kuntibhoja, live there?[3] The royal sage has always lived in the enjoyment of every comfort. He will certainly be very miserable. Arrived in the deep woods, what is now the condition of that personage of royal descent, who is, again, bereft of vision?[4] Difficult is the feat that Kunti has achieved by separating herself from her sons. Alas, casting off kingly prosperity, she chose a life in the woods![5] What, again, is the condition of Vidura who is always devoted to the service of his elder brother? How also is the intelligent son of Gavalgani who is so faithful to the food given him by his master?'[6] Verily, the citizens, including those of even nonage, meeting together, asked one another these questions.[7] The Pāndavas also, exceedingly afflicted with grief, sorrowed for their old mother, and could not live in their city long.[8] Thinking also of their old sire, the king, who had lost all his children, and the highly blessed Gāndhāri, and Vidura of great intelligence, they failed to enjoy peace of mind.[9] They had no pleasure in sovereignty, nor in women, nor in the study of the Vedas.[10] Despair penetrated their souls as they thought of the old king and as they repeatedly

reflected on that terrible slaughter of kinsmen.[11] Indeed, thinking of the slaughter of the youthful Abhimanyu on the field of battle, of the mighty-armed Karna who never retreated from the fray, of the sons of Draupadi, and of other friends of theirs, those heroes became exceedingly cheerless.[12-13] They failed to obtain peace of mind upon repeatedly reflecting that the Earth had become divested of both her heroes and her wealth.[14] Draupadi had lost all her children, and the beautiful Subhadrā also had become childless. They too were of cheerless hearts and grieved exceedingly.[15] Beholding, however, the son of Virāta's daughter, *viz.*, thy sire Parikshit, thy grandsires somehow held their life-breaths."[16]

Section XXII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Those foremost of men, the heroic Pāndavas,—those delighters of their mother—became exceedingly afflicted with grief.[1] They who had formerly been always engaged in kingly offices, did not at that time attend to those acts at all in their capital.[2] Afflicted with deep grief, they failed to derive pleasure from anything. If any body accosted them, they never honoured him with an answer.[3] Although those irresistible heroes were in gravity like the ocean, yet they were now deprived of their knowledge and their very senses by the grief they felt.[4] Thinking of their mother, the sons of Pāndu were filled with anxiety as to how their emaciated mother was serving the old couple.[5] 'How, indeed, is that king, whose sons have all been slain and who is without refuge, living alone, with only his wife, in the woods that are the haunt of beasts of prey?[6] Alas, how does that highly blessed queen, Gāndhāri, whose dear ones have all been slain, follow her blind lord in the solitary woods?'[7] Even such was the anxiety manifested by the Pāndavas when they talked with one another. They then set their hearts upon seeing the king in his forest retreat.[8] Then Sahadeva, bowing down to the king, said,—'I have understood thy heart to be set upon seeing our sire![9] From my respect for thee, however, I could not speedily open my mouth on the subject of our journey to

the woods. The time for that sojourn is now come.[10] By good luck I shall see Kunti living in the observance of penances, with matted locks on her head, practising severe austerities, and emaciated with sleeping on blades of Kuça and Kāça![11] She was brought up in palaces and mansions, and nursed in every comfort and luxury. Alas, when shall I see my mother who is now toil-worn and plunged into exceeding misery?[12] Without doubt, O chief of Bharata's race, the ends of mortals are exceedingly uncertain, since Kunti, who is a princess by birth, is now living in misery in the woods!'[13] Hearing these words of Sahadeva, queen Draupadi, that foremost of all women, duly honouring the king said, with proper salutations,[14]—'Alas, when shall I see queen Prithā, if, indeed, she be yet alive! I shall consider my life as not passed in vain if I succeed in beholding her once more, O king![15] Let this sort of understanding be ever stable in thee! Let thy mind always take a pleasure in such righteousness as is involved, O king of kings, in thy desire of bestowing such a high boon on us![16] Know, O king, that all these ladies of thy house are staying with their feet raised for the journey, from desire of beholding Kunti, and Gāndhāri, and my father-in-law.'[17] Thus addressed by queen Draupadi, the king, O chief of Bharata's race, summoned all the leaders of his forces to his presence and told them,[18]—'Cause my army, teeming with cars and elephants, to march out. I shall behold king Dhritarāshtra who is now living in the woods!'[19] Unto those that supervised the concerns of the ladies, the king gave the order,—'Let diverse kinds of conveyances be properly equipt, and all my closed litters that count by thousands![20] Let carriages and granaries, and wardrobes, and treasuries, be equipt and ordered out, and let mechanics have the command to march out. Let men in charge of treasuries go out on the way leading to the ascetic retreats on Kurukshetra.[21] Whoever amongst the citizens wishes to see the king is allowed to do so without any restriction. Let him proceed, properly protected.[22] Let cooks and superintendents of kitchens, and the whole culinary establishment, and diverse kinds of edibles and viands, be ordered to be borne out on carts and conveyances.[23] Let it be proclaimed

that we march out tomorrow. Indeed, let no delay occur (in carrying out the arrangements). Let pavilions and resting houses of diverse kinds be erected on the way!'[24] Even these were the commands which the eldest son of Pāndu gave, with his brothers. When morning came, O monarch, the king set out, with a large train of women and old men.[25] Going out of his city, king Yudhishthira waited five days for such citizens as might accompany him, and then proceeded towards the forest."[26]

Section XXIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"That foremost one of Bharata's race, then ordered his troops, which were protected by heroes that were headed by Arjuna and that resembled the very guardians of the universe, to march out.[1] Instantly, a loud clamour arose consisting of the words—Equip, Equip!—of horse-men, O Bhārata, engaged in equiping and arraying their steeds.[2] Some proceeded on carriages and vehicles, some on horses of great speed, and some on cars made of gold and endued with the splendour of blazing fires.[3] Some proceeded on mighty elephants, and some on camels, O king. Some proceeded on foot, that belonged to that class of combatants which is armed with tiger-like claws.*[4] The citizens and inhabitants of the provinces, desirous of seeing Dhritarāshtra, followed the king on diverse kinds of conveyances.[5] The preceptor Kripa also, of Gotama's race, that great leader of forces, taking all the forces with him, proceeded, at the command of the king, towards the old monarch's retreat.[6] The Kuru king Yudhishthira, that perpetuater of Kuru's race, surrounded by a large number of Brāhmanas, his praises sung by a large band of Sutas and Māgadhas and bards, and with a white umbrella held over his head, and encompassed around by a large number of cars, set out on his journey.[7-8] Vrikodara, the son of the Wind-god, proceeded on an elephant as gigantic as a hill, equipt

---

* 'Nakharaprāsa-yodhinah,' Nilakantha explains, are those combatants who are armed with tiger-like claws made of iron and tied to their waists.—T.

with strung bow and machines and weapons of attack and defence.[9] The twin sons of Mādri proceeded on two fleet steeds, well cased in mail, well protected, and equipt with banners.[10] Arjuna of mighty energy, with senses under control, proceeded on an excellent car endued with solar effulgence and unto which were equipt excellent steeds of white hue.[11] The ladies of the royal household, headed by Draupadi, proceeded in closed litters protected by the superintendents of women. They scattered copious showers of wealth as they proceeded.[12] Teeming with cars and elephants and steeds, and echoing with the blare of trumpets and the music of *Vinās*, the Pāndava host, O monarch, blazed with great beauty.[13] Those chiefs of Kuru's race proceeded slowly, resting by delightful banks of rivers and lakes, O monarch.[14] Yuyutsu of mighty energy, and Dhaumya, the priest, at the command of Yudhishthira, were engaged in protecting the city.[15] By slow marches, king Yudhishthira reached Kurukshetra, and then, crossing the Yamunā, that highly sacred river,[16] he beheld from a distance the retreat, O thou of Kuru's race, of the royal sage of great wisdom and of Dhritarāshtra.[17] Then all the men became filled with joy and quickly entered the forest, filling it with loud sounds of glee, O chief of Bharata's race!"[18]

Section XXIV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The Pāndavas alighted, at a distance, from their cars and proceeded on foot to the retreat of the king, bending themselves in humility.[1] All the combatants also, and all the denizens of the kingdom, and the spouses of the Kuru chiefs, followed them on foot.[2] The Pāndavas then reached the sacred retreat of Dhritarāshtra which abounded with herds of deer and which was adorned with plantain plants.[3] Many ascetics of rigid vows, filled with curiosity, came there for beholding the Pāndavas who had arrived at the retreat.[4] The king, with tears in his eyes, asked them, saying,—'Where has my eldest sire, the perpetuater of Kuru's race, gone?'[5] They answered, O monarch, telling him that he had gone to the Yamunā for his ablutions, as also for fetch-

ing flowers and waters.[6] Proceeding quickly on foot along the path pointed out by them, the Pāndavas beheld all of them from a distance.[7] Desirous of meeting with their sire they walked with a rapid pace. Then Sahadeva ran with speed towards the spot where Prithā was.[8] Touching the feet of his mother, he began to weep aloud. With tears gushing down her cheeks, she saw her darling child.[9] Raising her son up and embracing him with her arms, she informed Gāndhāri of Sahadeva's arrival.[10] Then seeing the king and Bhimasena and Arjuna, and Nakula, Prithā endeavoured to advance quickly towards them.[11] She was walking in advance of the childless old couple, and was dragging them forward. The Pāndavas, beholding her, fell down on the earth.[12] The puissant and high-souled monarch, endued with great intelligence, recognising them by their voices and also by touch, comforted them one after another.[13] Shedding tears, those high-souled princes, with due formalities, approached the old king and Gāndhāri, as also their own mother.[14] Indeed, regaining their senses, and once more comforted by their mother, the Pāndavas took away from the king and their aunt and mother the jars full of water which they had been carrying, for bearing them themselves.[15] The ladies of those lions among men, and all the women of the royal household, as also all the inhabitants of the city and the provinces, then beheld the old king.[16] King Yudhishthira presented all those individuals one after another to the old king, repeating their names and races, and then himself worshipped his eldest sire with reverence.[17] Surrounded by them all, the old monarch, with eyes bathed in tears of joy, regarded himself as once more staying in the midst of the city called after the elephant.[18] Saluted with reverence by all his daughters-in-law headed by Krishnā, king Dhritarāshtra, endued with great intelligence, with Gāndhāri and Kunti, became filled with joy.[19] He then reached his forest-retreat that was applauded by Siddhas and Chāranas, and that then teemed with vast crowds of men all desirous of beholding him, like the firmament teeming with innumerable stars."[20]

Section XXV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The king, O chief of Bharata's race, with those foremost of men, *viz.*, his brothers, who were all possessed of eyes that resembled lotus-petals, took his seat in the retreat of his eldest sire.[1] There sat around him many highly-blessed ascetics, hailing from diverse regions, from desire of beholding the sons of that lord of Kuru's race, *viz.*, the Pāndavas of wide chests.[2] They said,—'We wish to know who amongst these is Yudhishthira, who are Bhima and Arjuna, who the twins, and who is Draupadi of great fame.'[3] Then the Suta, Sanjaya, in answer to their queries, pointed out to them the Pāndavas, naming each, and Draupadi too as also the other ladies of the Kuru household.[4]

"Sanjaya said,—'This one that is as fair of complexion as pure gold, that is endued with a body which looks like that of a full-grown lion, that is possessed of a large aquiline nose, and wide and expansive eyes that are, again, of a coppery hue, is the Kuru king.[5] This one, whose tread resembles that of an infuriate elephant, whose complexion is as fair as that of heated gold, whose frame is of large and expansive proportions, and whose arms are long and stout, is Vrikodara. Behold him well![6] The mighty bowman who sits besides him, of darkish complexion and youthful frame, who resembles the leader of an elephantine herd, whose shoulders are as high as those of a lion, who walks like a sporting elephant, and whose eyes are as expansive as the petals of a lotus, is the hero called Arjuna.[7] Those two foremost of men, that are sitting beside Kunti, are the twins, resembling Vishnu and Mahendra. In this whole world of men, they have not their equals in beauty and strength and excellence of conduct.[8] This lady, of eyes as expansive as lotus petals, who seems to have touched the middle age of life, whose complexion resembles that of the blue lotus, and who looks like a goddess of Heaven, is Krishnā, the embodied form of the goddess of prosperity.*[9] She who sits besides her, possessed of the complexion of pure gold, who

---

* 'Suradevatā' is like 'karivringhati' or 'govalivardda.'—T.

looks like the embodied rays of the moon, in the midst of the other ladies, is, ye foremost of regenerate ones, the sister of that unrivalled hero who wields the discus.[10] This other, as fair as pure gold, is the daughter of the snake-chief and wife of Arjuna.* This other whose complexion is like that of pure gold or like that of Madhuka flowers, is the princes Chitrāngadā.[11] This one, that is possessed of the complexion of an assemblage of blue lotuses, is the sister of that monarch, that lord of hosts, who used to always challenge Krishna. She is the foremost wife of Vrikodara.[12] This is the daughter of the king of Magadha who was known by the name of Jarāsandha. Possessed of the complexion of an assemblage of *Champakas.* She is the wife of the youngest son of Mādravati.[13] Possessed of a complexion darkish as that of the blue lotus, she who sits there on the earth, and whose eyes are as expansive as lotus-petals, is the wife of the eldest son of Mādravati.[14] This lady whose complexion is as fair as that of heated gold and who sits with her child on her lap, is the daughter of king Virāta. She is the wife of that Abhimanyu who, while divested of his car, was slain by Drona and others fighting from their cars.†[15] These ladies, the hair on whose heads shows not the parted line, and who are clad in white, are the widows of the slain sons of Dhritarāshtra. They are the daughters-in-law of this old king, the wives of his hundred sons, now deprived of both their husbands and children who have been slain by heroic foes.[16] I have now pointed them out in the order of precedence. In consequence of their devotion to Brāhmanas, their understandings and hearts are divested of every kind of crookedness. Possessed of pure souls, they have all been pointed out by men,—these princesses of the Kaurava household,—in answer to your queries !' "[17]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus that king of Kuru's race, of very advanced years, having met with those sons of him that was a deity among men, enquired about their welfare

---

* Ulupi is implied.—T.

† Implying the unfair character of the fight, for one on the earth should never be assailed by one on his car.—T.

after all the ascetics had gone away.[18] The warriors who had accompanied the Pāndavas, leaving the retreat, sat themselves down at a little distance, alighting from their cars and the animals they rode. Indeed, after all the crowd, *viz.*, the ladies, the old men, and the children, had been seated, the old king duly addressed them, making the usual enquires of politeness."[19]

SECTION XXVI.

"Dhritarāshtra said,—'O Yudhishthira, art thou in peace and happiness, with all thy brothers and the inhabitants of the city and the provinces?[1] Are they that live in dependance on thee also happy? Are thy ministers, and servitors, and all thy seniors and preceptors also, happy?[2] Are those also that live in thy dominions free from fear? Dost thou follow the old and traditional conduct of rulers of men?[3] Is thy treasury filled without disregarding the restraints imposed by justice and equity? Dost thou behave as thou shouldst towards foes, neutrals, and allies?[4] Dost thou duly look after the Brāhmanas, always making them the first gifts (ordained in sacrifices and religious rites)? What need I say of the citizens, and thy servants, and kinsmen, are thy foes, O chief of Bharata's race, gratified with thy behaviour? Dost thou, O king of kings, adore with devotion the Pitris and the deities?[5-6] Dost thou worship guests with food and drink, O Bhārata? Do the Brāhmanas in thy dominions, devoted to the duties of their order, walk along the path of righteousness?[7] Do the Kshatriyas and Vaiçyas and Çudras also within thy kingdom, and all thy relatives, observe their respective duties? I hope the women, the children, and the old, among thy subjects, do not grieve (under distress) and do not beg (the necessaries of life).[8] Are the ladies of thy household duly honoured in thy house, O best of men? I hope, O monarch, that this race of royal sages, having obtained thee for their king, have not fallen away from fame and glory!'"[9]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Unto the old king who said so, Yudhishthira, conversant with morality and justice, and well-

skilled in acts and speech, spoke as follows, putting some questions about his welfare."[10]

"Yudhisthira said,—'Doth thy peace, O king, thy self-restraint, thy tranquillity of heart, grow? Is this my mother able to serve thee without fatigue and trouble?[11] Will, O king, her residence in the woods be productive of fruit? I hope this queen, who is my eldest mother, who is emaciated with (exposure to) cold and wind and the toil of walking,[12] and who is now devoted to the practice of severe austerities, no longer gives way to grief for her children of mighty energy, all of whom, devoted to the duties of the Kshatriya order, have been slain on the field of battle?[13] Does she accuse us, sinful wretches, that are responsible for their slaughter? Where is Vidura, O king? We do not see him here. I hope this Sanjaya, observant of penances, is in peace and happiness.' "[14]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed, Dhritarāshtra answered king Yudhishthira, saying,—'O son, Vidura is well. He is performing austere penances,[15] subsisting on air alone, for he abstains from all other food. He is emaciated and his arteries and nerves have become visible. Sometimes he is seen in this empty forest by Brāhmanas.'[16] While Dhritarāshtra was saying this, Vidura was seen at a distance. He had matted locks on his head, and gravels in his mouth, and was exceedingly emaciated. He was perfectly naked. His body was besmeared all over with filth, and with the dust of various wild flowers.[17] When Kshattri was beheld from a distance, the fact was reported to Yudhishthiro. Vidura suddenly stopped, O king, casting his eyes towards the retreat (and seeing it peopled by so many individuals).[18] King Yudhishthira pursued him alone, as he ran and entered the deep forest, sometimes seen and sometimes not seen by the pursuer.[19] He said aloud,—'O Vidura, O Vidura, I am king Yudhishthira, thy favorite!'—Exclaiming thus, Yudhishthira, with great exertion, followed Vidura.[20] That foremost of intelligent men, *viz.*, Vidura, having reached a solitary spot in the forest, stood still, leaning against a tree.[21] He was exceedingly emaciated. He retained only the shape of a human being, (all his characteristic features having totally disappeared). Yudhishthira of

great intelligence recognised him, however, (in spite of such change).[22] Standing before him, Yudhishthira addressed him, saying,—'I am Yudhishthira!' Indeed, worshipping Vidura properly, Yudhishthira said these words in the hearing of Vidura.[23] Meanwhile Vidura eyed the king with a steadfast gaze. Casting his gaze thus on the king, he stood motionless in Yoga.[24] Possessed of great intelligence, he then (by his Yoga-power) entered the body of Yudhishthira, limb by limb. He united his life-breaths with the king's life-breaths, and his senses with the king's senses.[25] Verily, with the aid of Yoga-power, Vidura, blazing with energy, thus entered the body of king Yudhishthira the just.[26] Meanwhile, the body of Vidura continued to lean against the tree, with eyes fixed in a steadfast gaze. The king soon saw that life had fled out of it.[27] At the same time, he felt that he himself had become stronger than before and that he had acquired many additional virtues and accomplishments. Possessed of great learning and energy, O monarch, Pāndu's son, king Yudhishthira the just, then recollected[28] his own state before his birth among men.* Endued with mighty energy, he had heard of Yoga practice from Vyāsa.[29] King Yudhishthira the just, possessed of great learning, became desirous of doing the last rites to the body of Vidura, and wished to cremate it duly. An invisible voice was then heard, saying,[30]—'O king, this body that belonged to him called Vidura should not be cremated! In him is thy body also. He is the eternal deity of Righteousness![31] Those regions of felicity which are known by the name of *Santānika* will be his, O Bhārata! He was an observer of the duties of Yatis. Thou shouldst not, O scorcher of foes, grieve for him at all!'[32] Thus addressed, king Yudhishthira the just returned from that spot, and represented everything unto the royal son of Vichitraviryya.[33] At this, that king of great splendour, all those men, and Bhimasena and others, became filled

* Yudhishthira was Dharma's self Vidura also was Dharma born as a Cudra through the curse of the Rishi Animāndavya. Both, therefore, were of the same essence. When Vidura left his human body, he entered the body of Yudhishthira and thus the latter felt himself strengthened greatly by the accession.—T.

with wander.[34] Hearing what had happened, king Dhritarāshtra became pleased and then, addressing the son of Dharma, said,—'Do thou accept from me these gifts of water and roots and fruits! It has been said, O king, that one's guest should take that which one takes oneself!'[35] Thus addressed, Dharma's son answered the king, saying,—'So be it!' The mighty-armed king ate the fruits and roots which the monarch gave him.[36] Then they all spread their beds under a tree and passed that night thus, having eaten fruits and roots and drunk the water that the old king had given them."[37]

Section XXVII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"They passed that night which was characterised by auspicious constellations even thus, O king, in that retreat of righteous ascetics.[1] The conversation that occurred was characterised by many reflections on morality and wealth. Consisting of delightful and sweet words, it was graced with diverse citations from the Crutis.[2] The Pāndavas, O king, leaving costly beds, laid themselves down, near their mother, on the bare ground.[3] Indeed, those heroes passed that night, having eaten the food which was the food of the high-souled king Dhritarāshtra.[4] After the night had passed away, king Yudhishthira, having gone through his morning acts, proceeded to survey that retreat in the company of his brothers.[5] With the ladies of his household, the servants, and his priest, the king roved about the retreat in all directions, as he pleased, at the command of Dhritarāshtra.[6] He beheld many sacrificial altars with sacred fires blazing on them and with many ascetics seated on them, that had performed their oblations and poured libations in honour of the deities.[7] Those altars were overspread with fruits and roots of the forest, and with heaps of flowers. The smoke of clarified butter curled upwards from them. They were graced, besides, with many ascetics possessed of bodies that looked like the embodied Vedas and with many that belonged to the lay brotherhood.[8] Herds of deer were grazing or resting here and there, freed from every fear. Innumerable birds also were there,

engaged in uttering their melodious notes, O king![9] The whole forest seemed to resound with the notes of peacocks and Dātyuhas and Kokilas and the sweet songs of other warblers.*[10] Some spots echoed with the chaunt of Vedic hymns recited by learned Brāhmanas. Some were adorned with large heaps of fruits and roots gathered from the wilderness.[11] King Yudhishthira then gave those ascetics jars made of gold or copper which he had brought for them,[12] and many deer-skins and blankets and sacrificial ladles made of wood, and Kamandalus and wooden platters, and pots and pans, O Bhārata.†[13] Diverse kinds of vessels, made of iron, and smaller vessels and cups of various sizes, were also given away by the king, the ascetics taking them away, each as many as he liked.[14] King Yudhishthira of righteous soul, having thus roved through the woods and beheld the diverse retreats of ascetics and made many gifts, returned to the place where his uncle was.[15] He saw king Dhritarāshtra, that lord of Earth, seated at his ease, with Gāndhāri beside him, after having finished his morning rites.[16] The, righteous-souled monarch saw also his mother, Kunti, seated not much remote from that place, like a disciple with bent head, endued with humility.[17] He saluted the old king, proclaiming his name. 'Sit down' were the words the old king said. Receiving Dhritarāshtra's permission, Yudhishthira sat himself down on a mat of Kuça grass.[18] Then the other sons of Pāndu with Bhima among them, O thou of Bharata's race, saluted the king and touched his feet and sat themselves down, receiving his permission.[19] The old Kuru king, surrounded by them, looked exceedingly beautiful. Indeed, he blazed with a Vedic splendour like

---

* 'Nilakantha' here implies the peacock and not the blue jay, for the word 'kekā' is applied to the notes of the peacock alone. 'Dātyuhas' are gallinules or a species of Chātakas whose cry resembles '*Patikjal—phatikjal—phatikjal,*' repeated very distinctly, the second syllable being lengthened greatly.—T.

† 'Audumvarān' is an adjective of 'kalaçān.' It means 'made of copper.' 'Praveni' is a 'kutha' or blanket. 'Sruk' is a ladle having the cup like cavity at one extremity only. 'Sruv' is a ladle having cup-like cavities at both extremities.—T.

Vrihaspati in the midst of the celestials.[20] After they had sat themselves down, many great Rishis, *viz.*, Catayupa and others, who were denizens of Kurukshetra, came there.[21] The illustrious and learned Vyāsa, possessed of great energy and reverenced by even the celestial Rishis, showed himself, at the head of his numerous disciples, unto Yudhishthira.[22] The Kuru king Dhritarāshtra, Kunti's son Yudhishthira of great energy, and Bhimasena and others, stood up and advancing a few steps, saluted those guests.[23] Approaching near, Vyāsa, surrounded by Catayupa and others, addressed king Dhritarāshtra, saying,—'Be thou seated.'[24] The illustrious Vyāsa then took an excellent seat made of Kuça grass placed upon a black deer-skin and covered with a piece of silken cloth. They had reserved that seat for him.[25] After Vyāsa had been seated, all those foremost of regenerate persons, endued with abundant energy, sat themselves down, having received the permission of the Island-born sage."[26]

Section XXVIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After the high-souled Pāndavas had all been seated, Satyavati's son Vyāsa said,[1]—O Dhritarāshtra of mighty arms, hast thou been able to achieve penances? Is thy mind, O king, pleased with thy residence in the woods?[2] Has the grief that was thine born of the slaughter of thy sons in battle, disappeared from thy heart? Are all thy perceptions, O sinless one, now clear?[3] Dost thou practise the ordinances of forest life after having made thy heart firm? Does my daughter-in-law, Gāndhāri, allow herself to be overwhelmed by grief?[4] She is possessed of great wisdom. Endued with intelligence, that queen understands both Religion and Wealth. She is well conversant with the truths that relate to both prosperity and adversity. Do she still grieve?[5] Does Kunti, O king, who in consequence of her devotion to the service of her seniors, left her children, attend to thy wants and serve thee with all humility?[6] Have the high-minded and high-souled king Yudhishthira, the son of Dharma, and Bhima and Arjuna and the twins been sufficiently comforted?[7] Dost thou feel

delight at seeing them? Has thy mind become freed from every stain? Has thy disposition, O king, become pure in consequence of the increase of thy knowledge?[8] This aggregate of three, O king, is the foremost of all concerns, O Bhārata, *viz.*, abstension from injury to any creature, truth, and freedom from anger.[9] Does thy forest life any longer prove painful to thee? Art thou able to earn with thy own exertions the products of the wilderness for thy food? Do fasts give thee any pain now?[10] Hast thou learnt, O king, how the high-souled Vidura, who was Dharma's self, left this world?[11] Through the curse of Māndavya, the deity of Righteousness became born as Vidura. He was possessed of great intelligence. Endued with high penances, he was high-souled and high-minded.[12] Even Vrihaspati among the celestials, and Cukra among the Asuras, was not possessed of such intelligence as that foremost of persons.[13] The eternal deity of Righteousness was stupefied by the Rishi Māndavya with an expenditure of his penances earned for a long time with great care.*[14] At the command of the Grandsire, and through my own energy, Vidura of great intelligence was procreated by me upon a soil owned by Vichitraviryya.[15] A deity of deities, and eternal, he was, O king, thy brother! The learned know him to be Dharma in consequence of his practices of Dhāranā and Dhyāna.†[16] He grows with (the growth of) truth, self-restraint, tranquillity of heart, compassion, and gifts. He is always engaged in penances, and is eternal.[17] From that deity of Righteousness, through Yoga-puissance, the Kuru king Yudhishthira also took his birth. Yudhishthira, therefore, O king, is Dharma of great wisdom and immeasurable in-

* Whenever a Brāhmana cursed another, his penances underwent a diminution. Forgiveness was the highest virtue of the Brāhmana. His power lay in forgiveness. Hence, when Māndavya cursed Dharma, he had to spend a portion of his hard-earned penances. Previously, the plea of minority or non-age could not be urged in the court of Dharma. Māndavya forced Dharma to admit that plea in the matter of punishment for offences.—T.

† Both 'Dhāranā' and 'Dhyāna' are processes or, rather, stages of Yoga. The former implies the fixing of the mind on one thing; the latter is the abstration of the mind from surrounding objects.—T.

telligence.[18] Dharma exists both here and hereafter, and is like fire or wind or water or earth or space.[19] He is, O king of kings, capable of going everywhere and exists, pervading the whole universe. He is capable of being beheld by only those that are the foremost of the deities and those that are cleansed of every sin and crowned with ascetic success.[20] He that is Dharma is Vidura; and he that is Vidura is the (eldest) son of Pāndu. That son of Pāndu, O king, is capable of being perceived by thee. He stays before thee as thy servitor.[21] Endued with great Yoga-puissance, thy high-souled brother, that foremost of intelligent men, seeing the high-souled Yudhishthira, the son of Kunti, has entered into his person.[22] Thee also, O chief of Bharata's race, I shall unite with great benefit. Know, O son, that I am come here for dispelling thy doubts.[23] Some feat that has never been accomplished before by any of the great Rishis,—some wonderful effect of my penances,—I shall show thee.[24] What object is that, O king, whose accomplishment thou desirest from me? Tell me what is that which thou wishest to see or ask or hear? O sinless one, I shall accomhlish it!"[25]

SECTION XXIX.

(Putradarçana Parva.)

Janamejaya said,—"Tell me, O learned Brāhmana, what that wonderful feat was which the great Rishi Vyāsa of high energy accomplished after his promise to the old king, made when Dhritarāshtra, that lord of Earth, that foremost one of Kuru's race, had taken up his abode in the forest, with his wife and with his daughter-in-law Kunti; and after, indeed, Vidura had left his own body and entered into Yudhishthira, and at the time when all the sons of Pāndu were staying in the ascetic retreat![1-3] For how many days did the Kuru king Yudhishthira of unfading glory stay, with his men, in the woods?[4] On what food, O puissant one, did the high-souled Pāndavas support themselves, with their men, and wives, while they lived in the woods? O sinless one, do thou tell me this!"[5]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"With the permission of the Kuru king, the Pāndavas, O monarch, with their troops and the ladies of their household, supported themselves on diverse kinds of food and drink and passed about a month in great happiness in that forest. Towards the close of that period, O sinless one, Vyāsa came there.[6-7] While all those princes sat around Vyāsa, engaged in conversation on diverse subjects, other Rishis came to that spot.[8] They were Nārada, and Parvata and Devala of austere penances, and Viçwāvasu and Tumvuru, and Chitrasena, O Bhārata.[9] Endued with severe penances, the Kuru king Yudhishthira, with the permission of Dhritarāshtra, worshipped them according to due rites.[10] Having obtained that worship from Yudhishthira, all of them sat down on sacred seats (made of Kuça grass) as also on excellent seats made of peacock feathers.[11] After they had all taken their seats, the Kuru king of high intelligence took his seat there, surrounded by the sons of Pāndu.[12] Gāndhāri and Kunti and Draupadi, and she of the Sāttwata race, and other ladies of the royal household also sat down.[13] The conversation that then arose was excellent and had reference to topics connected with piety, and the Rishis of old, and the deities and the Asuras.[14] At the close of that conversation Vyāsa of great energy, that foremost of eloquent men, that first of all persons conversant with the Vedas, highly gratified, addressed the blind monarch and once more said,—'Burning as thou art with grief on account of thy children, I know, O king of kings, what object is cherished by thee in thy heart.' The sorrow that always exists in the heart of Gāndhāri,[15-17] that which exists in the heart of Kunti, and that also which is cherished by Draupadi in her heart, and that burning grief, on account of the death of her son, which Krishna's sister Subhadrā also cherishes, are all known to me. Hearing of this meeting, O king, of thine with all these princes and pincesses of thy house,[18-19] I have come here, O delighter of the Kauravas, for dispelling thy doubts! Let the deities and Gandharvas, and all these great Rishis,[20] behold today the energy of those penances which I have acquired for these long years! Therefore, O king, tell me what wish of thine I shall grant today![21]

I am puissant enough to grant thee a boon. Behold the fruit of my penances !' Thus addressed by Vyāsa of immeasurable understanding, king Dhritarāshtra[22] reflected for a moment and then prepared to speak. He said,—'I am exceedingly fortunate. Lucky am I in obtaining thy favour. My life is crowned with success today,[23]—since this meeting has happened between me and ye all of great piety ! Today I shall attain to that highly happy goal which is reserved for me,[24] since, ye ascetics endued with wealth of penances, ye who are equal to Brahma himself, I have succeeded in obtaining this meeting with you all ! There is not the least doubt that this sight that I have obtained of you all has cleansed me of every sin ![25] Ye sinless ones, I have no longer any fear in respect of my end in the next world. Full as I am of love for my children, I always cherish their remembrance. My mind, however, is always tortured by the recollection of the diverse acts of wrong which my wicked son of exceedingly evil understanding perpetrated. Possessed of a sinful understanding, he always persecuted the innocent Pāndavas.[26-27] Alas, the whole Earth has been devastated by him, with her steeds, elephants and men. Many high-souled kings, rulers of diverse realms,[28] came for siding my son and succumbed to death. Alas, leaving their beloved sires and wives and their very life-breaths,[29] all those heroes have become guests of the king of the dead ! What end, O regenerate one, has been attained by those men who have been slain, for the sake of their friend, in battle ?[30] What end also has been attained by my sons and grandsons who have fallen in the fray ? My heart is always pained at the thought of my having brought about the slaughter of the mighty Bhishma, the son of Cāntanu, and of Drona, that foremost of Brāhmanas, through my foolish and sinful son who was an injurer of his friends.[31-32] Desirous of obtaining the severeignty of the Earth, he caused the Kuru race, blazing with prosperity, to be annihilated ! Reflecting on all this, I burn day and night with grief.[33] Deeply afflicted with pain and grief, I am unable to obtain peace of mind. Indeed, O father, thinking of all this, I have no peace of mind !' "[34]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—" Hearing these lamentations, expressed in diverse ways, of that royal sage, the grief, O Janamejaya, of Gāndhāri, became fresh.[35] The grief also of Kunti, of the daughter of Drupada, of Subhadrā, and of the other members, male and female, and the daughters in-law, of the Kuru race, became equally green.[36] Queen Gāndhāri, with bandaged eyes, joining her hands, addressed her father-in-law. Deeply afflicted with grief on account of the slaughter of her sons, she said,[37]—'O foremost of ascetics, sixteen years have passed over the head of this king grieving for the death of his sons and divested of peace of mind![38] Afflicted with grief on account of the slaghter of his children, this king Dhritarāshtra, always breathes heavily, and never sleeps at night, O great Rishi![39] Through the power of thy penances thou art competent to creat new worlds. What need I say then about showing this king his children who are now in the other world?[40] This Krishnā, the daughter of Drupada, hath lost all her kinsmen and children. For this, she who is the dearest of my daughters-in-law grieves exceedingly.[41] The sister of Krishna, *viz.*, Subhadrā of sweet speech, burning with the loss of her son, grieves as deeply.[42] This lady that is respected by all, that is the wife of Bhuriçravas, afflicted with grief on account of the fate that has overtaken her husband, always indulges in heart-rending lamentations.[43] Her father-in-law was the intelligent Vālhika of Kuru's race. Alas, Somadatta also was slain, along with his sire, in the great battle![*44] Alas, a century of sons, heroes that never retreated from battle, belonging to this son of thine, this king of great intelligence and great prosperity, has been slain in battle![45] The hundred wives of those sons are all grieving and repeatedly enhancing the grief of both the king and myself. O great ascetic, stricken by that great slaughter, they have gathered round me![46] Alas, those high-souled heroes, those great car-warriors, my fathers-in-law, Somadatta and others,—alas, what end has been theirs, O puissant one?[47] Through thy

* Vālhika was the sire of Somadatta and the grandsire of Bhuriçravas. Vālhika, therefore, was the grand-father-in-law of the lady mentioned by Gāndhāri.—T.

grace, O holy one, that will happen in consequence of which this lord of Earth, myself, and this daughter-in-law of thine, *viz.*, Kunti, shall all become freed from our grief!'[48] After Gāndhāri had said so, Kunti, whose face had become wasted through observance of many hard vows, began to think of her secret-born son endued with solar effulgence.[49] The boon-giving Rishi Vyāsa, capable of both beholding and hearing what happened at a remote distance, saw that the royal mother of Arjuna was afflicted with grief.[50] Unto her Vyāsa said,—'Tell me, O blessed one, what is in thy mind! Tell me what thou wishest to say!'[51] At this, Kunti, bending her head unto her father-in-law, and overcome with bashfulness, said these words unto him, relating to the occurences of the past."[52]

SECTION XXX.

"Kunti said,—'O holy one, thou art my father-in-law and, therefore, my deity of deities! Verily, thou art my god of gods. Hear my words of truth![1] An ascetic named Durvāsas, who is of the regenerate order and who is full of wrath, came to my father's house for eleemosynary charity. I succeeded in gratifying him[2] by the purity of my external behaviour and of my mind, as also by refusing to notice the many wrongs he did. I did not give way to wrath although there was much in his behaviour quite capable of exciting that passion.[3] Served with care, the great ascetic became highly pleased with me and disposed to grant me a boon. 'Thou must accept the boon I shall give,' were his words to me.[4] Fearing his curse, I answered him, saying,—'So be it.' The regenerate Rishi once more said unto me,[5]—'O blessed damsel, O thou of beautiful face, thou wilt become the mother of Dharma. Those deities whom thou wilt summon will be obedient to thee!'[6] Having said those words, the regenerate one vanished away from my sight. I became filled with wonder. The *mantra*, however, which the Rishi gave has dwelt in my memory at all times.[7] One day, sitting within my chamber

I beheld the sun rising. Desiring to bring the maker of day before me, I recollected the words of the Rishi.[8] Without any consciousness of the fault I committed, I summoned the deity from mere girlishness. The deity, however, of a thousand rays, (summoned by me) came to my presence.[9] He divided himself in twain. With one portion he was in the firmament, and with the other he stood on the Earth before me. With one he heated the worlds and with another he came to me.[10] He told me, while I was trembling at his sight, these words:—'Do thou ask a boon of me!' Bowing unto him with my head, I asked him to leave me.[11] He replied unto me, saying,—'I cannot bear the idea of coming to thee fruitlessly. I shall consume thee as also that Brāhmana who gave thee the Mantra as a boon!'[12] The Brāhmana who had done no evil I wished to protect from Surya's curse. I, therefore, said,—'Let me a have a son like thee, O god!'[13] The deity of thousand rays then penetrated me with his energy and stupefied me completely. He then said unto me,—'Thou wilt have a son,' and then went back to the firmament.[14] I continued to live in the inner apartments and desirous of saving the honour of my sire, I cast into the waters my infant son named Karna who thus came into the world secretly.[15] Without doubt, through the grace of that god, I once more became a virgin, O regenerate one, even as the Rishi Durvāsas had said unto me.[16] Foolish that I am, although he knew me for his mother when he grew up, I yet made no effort to acknowledge him. This burns me, O regenerate Rishi, as is well-known to thee![17] Whether it is sinful or not so, I have told thee the truth. It behooveth thee, O holy one, to gratify the craving I feel for beholding that son of mine![18] O foremost of ascetics, let this king also, O sinless one, obtain the fruition today of that wish of his which he cherishes in his bosom and which has become known to thee!'[19] Thus addressed by Kunti, Vyāsa, that foremost of all persons, said unto her in reply,—'Blessed be thou, all that thou hast said unto me will happen.[20] (As regards the birth of Karna) no fault is ascribable to thee. Thou wert restored to virginity. The deities are possessed of (Yoga) puissance. They are able to

penetrate human bodies.*[21] There are many deities. They beget (offspring) by thought alone. By word, by sight, by touch, and by sexual union, also, they beget children. These are the five methods.[22] Thou belongest to the order of humanity. Thou hast no fault (in what happened). Know this, O Kunti! Let the fever of thy heart be dispelled.[23] For those that are mighty, everything is becoming. For those that are mighty, everything is pure. For those are mighty, everything is meritorious. For those that are mighty, everything is their own.' "[24]

Section XXXI.

"Vyāsa said,—'Blessed be thou, O Gāndhāri, thou shalt behold thy sons and brothers and friends and kinsmen along with thy sires this night like men risen from sleep.[1] Kunti also shall behold Karna, and she of Yadu's race shall behold her son Abhimanyu. Draupadi shall behold her five sons, her sires, and her brothers also.[2] Even before ye had asked me, this was the thought in my mind. I entertained this purpose when I was urged to that effect by the king, by thee, O Gāndhāri, and by Kunti![3] Thou shouldst not grieve for those foremost of men. They met with death in consequence of their devotion to the established practices of Kshatriyas.[4] O faultless one, the work of the gods could not but be accomplished. It was for accomplishing that object that those heroes came down on Earth. They were all portions of the deities.[5] Gandharvas and Apsaras, and Piçāchas and Guhyakas and Rākshasas, many persons of great sanctity, many individuals crowned with success (of penances), celestial Rishis,[6] deities and Dānavas, and heavenly Rishis of spotless character, met with death on the battle-field of Kurukshetra.†[7] It is heard that he that was the intelligent king of the Gandharvas, and

---

* The puissance here referred to is that of Animā, Laghimā, &c., *i. e.*, the capacity of becoming minute and subtile, &c.—T.

† The sense is that those had been incarnated as human beings and fighting with one another met with death as regards their human existence.—T.

named Dhritarāshtra, took birth in the world of men as thy lord Dhritarāshtra.[8] Know that Pāndu of unfading glory and distinguished above all others, sprung from the Maruts. Kshattri and Yudhishthira are both portions of the deity of Righteousness.[9] Know that Duryodhana was Kali, and Cakuni was Dwāpara. O thou of good features, know that Dusçāsana and others were all Rākshasas.[10] Bhimasena of great might, that chastiser of foes, is from the Maruts. Know that this Dhananjaya, the son of Prithā, is the ancient Rishi Nara.[11] Hrishikeça is Nārāyana, and the twins are the Açwins. That foremost of heat-giving ones, *viz.*, Surya, having divided his body in twain, continued with one portion to give heat to the worlds and with another to live (on Earth) as Karna. He that took his birth as the son of Arjuna, that gladdener of all, that heir of the possessions of the Pāndavas, who was slain by six great car-warriors (fighting together), was Soma. He was born of Subhadrā. Through Yoga-puissance he had divided himself in twain.[12-14] Dhrishtadyumna who sprung with Draupadi from the sacrificial fire, was an auspicious portion of the deity of fire. Cikhandin was a Rākshasa.[15] Know that Drona was a portion of Vrihaspati, and that Drona's son is born of a portion of Rudra. Know that Gangā's son Bhishma was one of the Vasus that became born as a human being.[16] Thus, O thou of great wisdom, the deities had taken birth as human beings, and after having accomplished their purposes have gone back to Heaven.[17] That sorrow which is in the hearts of you all, relating to the return of these to the other world, I shall today dispel.[18] Do you all go towards the Bhāgirathi. You will then behold all those that have been slain on the field of battle.' "[19]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"All the persons there present, having heard the words of Vyāsa, raised a loud leonine shout and then proceeded towards the Bhāgirathi.[20] Dhritarāshtra with all his ministers and the Pāndavas, as also with all those foremost of Rishis and Gandharvas that had come there, set out as directed.[21] Arrived at the banks of Gangā, that sea of men took up their abode as pleased them.[22] The king, possessed of great intelligence, with the Pāndavas, took up his

abode in a desirable spot, along with the ladies and the aged ones of his household.[23] They passed that day as if it were a whole year, waiting for the advent of the night when they would behold the deceased princes.[24] The Sun then reached the sacred mountain in the west and all those persons, having bathed in the sacred stream, finished their evening rites."[25]

SECTION XXXII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"When night came, all those persons, having finished their evening rites, approached Vyāsa.[1] Dhritarāshtra of righteous-soul, with purified body and with mind solely directed towards it, sat there with the Pāndavas and the Rishis in his company.[2] The ladies of the royal household sat with Gāndhāri in a secluded spot. All the citizens and the inhabitants of the provinces ranged themselves according to their years.[3] Then the great ascetic, Vyāsa, of mighty energy, bathing in the sacred waters of the Bhāgirathi, summoned all the deceased warriors,[4] *viz.*, those that had fought on the side of the Pāndavas, those that had fought for the Kauravas, including highly blessed kings belonging to diverse realms.[5] At this, O Janamejaya, a deafening uproar was heard to arise from within the waters, resembling that which had formerly been heard of the forces of the Kurus and the Pāndavas.[6] Then those kings, headed by Bhishma and Drona, with all their troops, arose by thousands from the waters of the Bhāgirathi.[7] There were Virāta and Drupada, with their sons and forces. There were the sons of Draupadi and the son of Subhadrā, and the Rākshasa Ghatotkacha.[8] There were Karna and Duryodhana, and the mighty car-warrior Cakuni, and the other children, endued with great strength, of Dhritarāshtra, headed by Dusçāsana.[9] There were the son of Jarāsandha, and Bhagadatta, and Jalasandha of great energy, and Bhuriçravas, and Cala, and Calya, and Vrishasena with his younger brother.[10] There were prince Lakshmana (the son of Duryodhana), and the son of Dhrishtadyumna, and all the children of Cikhandin, and Dhrishtaketu with his younger brother.[11] There were Achala and Vrishaka,

and the Rākshasa Alāyudha, and Vālhika, and Somadatta, and king Chekitāna.[12] These and many others, who for their number cannot be conveniently named, appeared on that occasion. All of them rose from the waters of the Bhāgirathi, with resplendent bodies.[13] Those kings appeared, each clad in that dress and equipt with that standard and that vehicle which he had while fighting on the field.[14] All of them were now robed in celestial vestments and all had brilliant earrings. They were free from all animosity and pride, and divested of wrath and jealousy.[15] Gandharvas sang their praises, and bards waited on them, chaunting their deeds. Robed in celestial vestments and wearing celestial garlands, each of them was waited upon by bands of Apsaras.[16] At that time, through the puissance of his penances, the great ascetic, the son of Satyavati, gratified with Dhritarāshtra, gave him celestial vision.[17] Endued with celestial knowledge and strength, Gāndhāri of great fame saw all her children as also all those that had been slain in battle.[18] All persons assembled there beheld with steadfast gaze and hearts filled with wonder that amazing and inconcievable phenomenon which made the hair on their bodies stand on its end.[19] It looked like a high carnival of gladdened men and women. That wondrous scene looked like a picture painted on the canvass.[20] Dhritarāshtra, beholding all those heroes, with his celestial vision obtained through the grace of that sage, became full of joy, O chief of Bharata's race."[21]

Section XXXIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Then those foremost of men, divested of wrath and jealousy, and cleansed of every sin, met with one another,[1] agreeably to those high and auspicious ordinances that have been laid down by regenerate Rishis. All of them were happy of hearts and looked like gods moving in Heaven.[2] Son met with sire or mother, wives with husbands, brother with brother, and friend with friend, O king.[3] The Pāndavas, full of joy, met with the mighty bowman Karna as also with the son of Subhadrā, and the children of Drau-

padi.[4] With happy hearts the sons of Pāndu approached Karna, O monarch, and became reconciled with him.[5] All those warriors, O chief of Bharata's race, meeting with one another through the grace of the great ascetic, became reconciled with one another.[6] Casting off all unfriendliness, they became established on amity and peace. It was even thus that all those foremost of men, *viz.*, the Kauravas and other kings, became united with the Kurus and other kinsmen of theirs as also with their children. The whole of that night they passed in great happiness.[7-8] Indeed, the Kshatriya warriors, in consequence of the happiness they felt, regarded that place as Heaven itself. There was no grief, no fear, no suspicion, no discontent, no reproach in that region,[9] as those warriors, O monarch, met with one another on that night. Meeting with their sires and brothers and husbands and sons,[10] the ladies cast off all grief and felt great raptures of delight. Having sported with one another thus for one night, those heroes and those ladies,[11] embracing one another and taking one another's leave, returned to the places they had come from. Indeed, that foremost of ascetics dismissed that concourse of warriors.[12] Within the twinkling of an eye that large crowd disappeared in the very sight of all those (living) persons. Those high-souled persons, plunging into the sacred river Bhāgirathi,[13] proceeded, with their cars and standards, to their respective abodes. Some went to the regions of the gods, some to the region of Brahman,[14] some to the region of Varuna, and some to the region of Kuvera. Some among those kings proceeded to the region of Surya.[15] Amongst the Rākshasas and Piçāchas some proceeded to the country of the Uttara-Kurus. Others, moving in delightful attitudes, went in the company of the deities.[16] Even thus did all those high-souled persons disappear with their vehicles and animals and with all their followers. After all of them had gone away, the great sage, who was standing in the waters of the sacred stream,[17] *viz.*, Vyāsa of great righteousness and energy, that benefactor of the Kurus, then addressed those Kshatriyā ladies who had become widows, and said these words,[18]—'Let those amongst these formost of women that are desirous of

attaining to the regions acquired by their husbands cast away all sloth and quickly plunge into the sacred Bhāgirathi!"[19]— Hearing these words of his, those foremost ladies, placing faith in them, took the permission of their father-in law, and then plunged into the waters of the Bhāgirathi.[20] Freed from human bodies, those chaste ladies then proceeded, O king, with their husbands to the regions acquired by the latter.[21] Even thus, those ladies of virtuous conduct, devoted to their husbands, entering, the waters of the Bhāgirathi, became freed from their mortal tenements and attained to the companionship of their husbands in the regions acquired by them.[22] Endued with celestial forms, and adorned with celestial ornaments, and wearing celestial vestments and garlands, they proceeded to those regions where their husbands had found their abodes.[23] Possessed of excellent behaviour and many virtues, their anxieties all dispelled, they were seen to ride on excellent cars, and endued with every accomplishment they found those regions of happiness which were theirs by right.[24] Devoted to the duties of piety, Vyāsa, at that time, becoming a giver of boons, granted unto all the men there assembled the fruition of the wishes they respectively cherished.[25] People of diverse realms, hearing of this meeting between the hallowed dead and living human beings, became highly delighted.[26] That man who duly listens to this narrative meets with everything that is dear to him. Indeed, he obtains all agreeable objects both here and hereafter.[27] That man of learning and science, that foremost of righteous persons, who recites this narrative for the hearing of others acquires great fame here and an auspicious end hereafter, as also a union with kinsmen and all desirable objects. Such a man has not to undergo painful labour for his sustenance, and meets with all sorts of auspicious objects in life. Even these are the rewards reaped by a person who, endued with devotion to Vedic studies and with penances, recites this narrative in the hearing of others.[28-29] Those persons who, possessed of good conduct, devoted to self-restraint, cleansed of all sins by the gifts they make, endued with sincerity, having tranquil souls, freed from falsehood and the desire of injuring others, edorned

with faith, belief in the scriptures, and intelligence, listen to this wonderful *parvan*, surely attain to the highest goal hereafter."[30-31]

SECTION XXXIV.

Sauti said,—Hearing this story of the reappearance and departure of his forefathers, king Janamejaya of great intelligence became highly pleased.[1] Filled with joy, he once more questioned Vaiçampāyana on the subject of the reappearance of dead men, saying,—"How is it possible for persons whose bodies have been destroyed to reappear in those very forms?"[2] Thus asked, that foremost of regenerate persons, *viz.*, the disciple of Vyāsa, that first of speakers, possessed of great energy, thus answered Janamejaya.[3]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"This is certain, *viz.*, that acts are never destroyed (without their consequences being enjoyed or endured). Bodies, O king, are born of acts; so also are features.[4] The great primal elements are eternal (indestructible) in consequence of the union with them of the Lord of all beings. They exist with what is eternal. Accordingly, they have no destruction when the non-eternal are destroyed.[5] Acts done without exertion are true, and foremost, and bear real fruit. The soul, united however with such acts as require exertion for their accomplishment, enjoys pleasure and pain.*[6] Though united so (that is, with pleasure and pain), yet it is a certain inference that the soul is never modified by them, like the reflection of creatures in a mirror. It is never destroyed.†[7]

---

* Nilakantha explains that 'anāyāsakritam karma' implies the religion of Nivritti, for the religion of Pravritti consists of acts that require 'āyāsa' or exertion for their accomplishment. The religion of Nivritti or abstention from acts is said here to be true and superior, and productive of real fruit, in the form, that is, of Emancipation. The soul, however, in the generality of cases, united with 'ebhih,' by which is meant 'āyāsakritam karma,' that is, the acts done in pursuance of the religion of Prāvritti, becomes embodied and, therefore, enjoys happiness or endures misery as the case may be.—T.

† The sense seems to be this: when a creature stands before a mirror

As long as one's acts are not exhausted (by enjoyment or endurance of their fruits good and bad), so long does one regard the body to be oneself The man, however, whose acts have been exhausted, without regarding the body to be self, takes the self to be something otherwise.*[8] Diverse existent objects (such as the primal elements and the senses &c.,) attaining to a body, become united as one. To men of knowledge who understand the difference (between the body and self,) those very objects become eternal.†[9] In the Horse-sacrifice, this Cruti is heard in the matter of the slaying of the horse. Those which are the certain possessions of embodied creatures, *viz.*, their life-breaths (and the senses, &c.), exist eternally even when they are borne to the other world.[10] I shall tell thee what is beneficial, if it be agreeable to thee, O king. Thou hast, while employed in thy sacrifices, heard of the paths of the deities.[11] When preparations were made for any sacrifice of thine, the deities became beneficially inclined to thee. When, indeed, the deities were thus disposed and came to thy sacrifice, they were lords in the matter of the passage (from this to the next world) of the animals slain.‡[12] For this reason, the eternal ones (*viz.*, Jivas), by adoring the deities in sacrifices, succeed in attaining to excellent goals. When the five primal elements are eternal, when the soul also is eternal, he called *Purusha* (*viz.*, the soul invested with case)

---

its image is formed in the mirror; such reflection, however, never affects the mirror in the least, for when the object leaves the vicinity of the mirror, the image or reflection vanishes away. The soul is like the mirror. Pleasure and pain are like reflections in it. They come and go away without the soul being at all modified by them in any way. Pleasure and pain are destructible, but not so the soul.—T.

* The ordinary man thinks this conglomeration of diverse objects to be his self. The man of wisdom who has exhausted his acts does not think so. He is freed from the obligation of taking a body.—T.

† The sense probably is this. In the case of ordinary men, the component parts of the body dissolve away, while Yogins can keep such parts from dissolution as long as they like.—T.

‡ The sense is, the deities bear away to the next world the animals slain in sacrifices. Though the bodies of such animals are apparently destroyed, yet their life-breaths and senses continue to exist.—T.

is equally so.[13] When such is the case, he who beholds a creature as disposed to take diverse forms, is regarded as having an erroneous understanding. He who indulges in too much grief at separation is, I think, a foolish person.[14] He who sees evil in separation should abandon union. By standing aloof, no unions are formed, and sorrow is cast off, for sorrow in the world is born of separation.*[15] Only he who understands the distinction between body and self, and not another, becomes freed from the erroneous conviction. He that knows the other (*viz.*, self) attains to the highest understanding and becomes freed from error.†[16] As regards creatures, they appear from an invisible state, and once more disappear into invisibleness. I do not know him. He also does not know me. As regards myself, renunciation is not yet mine.‡[17] He that is not possessed of puissance enjoys or endures the fruits of all his acts in those bodies in which he does them.[18] If the act be a mental one, its consequences are enjoyed or endured mentally; if it be done with the body, its consequences are to be enjoyed or endured in the body.$[19]

---

* The sense is that as wives &c., when lost, are sources of sorrow, wise men should abstain from contracting such relations. They might then be free from sorrow.—T.

† 'Parāparajnah' is one that understands the distinction between body and self. 'Apara' is, therefore, one that is not possessed of such knowledge; hence, as Nilakantha explains, it implies one who has not attained to 'Jnāna-nishthā.' What is said in the second line is that he that adores 'saguna Brahma,' succeeds afterwards, through such adoration, in reaching to 'nirguna Brahma.'—T.

‡ The sense seems to be this: we spring from the unmanifest and disappear once more in the unmanifest. The Bengal texts read the first line incorrectly. It is 'adarçanātāpatitah.' The second line is unintelligible. 'Nāham tam vedmi' is taken by Nilakantha as implying 'I do not know him,' *i. e.*, him that is Emancipate. 'Asau cha no vetti mām' is explained as due to 'karanābhāt.' But who is 'asau?' 'I have no renunciation,' or 'renunciation is not yet mine,' implies that Emancipation, which directly flows from renunciation, is not mine.—T.

$ What is stated here is that if a man does an act that is bad, its consequences he will have to endure in a human body. The same with regard to rewards. By doing a meritorious act in one's human form,

Section XXXV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"King Dhritarāshtra had never beheld his own sons. Obtaining eye-sight through the grace of the Rishi, he beheld, for the first time, O perpetuater of Kuru's race, those children of his that were very like his own self.[1] That foremost of men, *viz.*, the Kuru monarch, had learnt all the duties of kings, as also the Vedas and the Upanishadas, and had acquired certitude of understanding (from the same source).[2] Vidura of great wisdom attained to high success through the power of his penances. Dhritarāshtra also attained to great success in consequence of having met the ascetic Vyāsa."[3]

Janamejaya said,—"If Vyāsa, disposed to grant me a boon, kindly shows me my sire in that form which he had, clad as he used to be clad, and as old as he was when he departed from this world, I may then believe all that thou hast told me.[4] Such a sight will be most agreeable to me. Indeed, I shall regard myself crowned with success. I shall have gained a certainty of conclusion. O, let my wish be crowned with fruition through the grace of that foremost of Rishis!"[5]

Sauti said,—After king Janamejaya had said these words, Vyāsa of great energy and intelligence showed his grace and brought Parikshit (from the other world).[6] King Janamejaya beheld his royal father, possessed of great beauty, brought down from Heaven, in the same form that he had and of the same age as he was (at the time of leaving this world).[7] The high-souled Camika also, and his son Cringin, were similarly brought there. All the counsellers and ministers of the king beheld them.[8] King Janamejaya, performing the final bath

---

one will enjoy its good consequences in one's human body. So acts done mentally affect the mind and those done with the body affect the body.

It should be noted that the whole of the above translation is offered tentatively. A verbal rendering has been attempted. The chain of reasoning is not at all clear. The Commentator has done much to elucidate the sense, but the original obscurities have scarcely been removed.—T.

in his sacrifice, became highly glad. He poured the sacred water on his father even as he caused it to be poured on himself.[9] Having undergone the final bath, the king addressed the regenerate Āstika who had sprung from the race of the Yāyāvaras and who was the son of Jaratkāru, and said these words:[10]—"O Āstika, this sacrifice of mine is fraught with many wonderful incidents, since this my sire has been seen by me, he who has dispelled all my sorrows!"[11]

Āstika said,—"The performer of that sacrifice in which the ancient Rishi, the Island-born Vyāsa, that vast receptacle of penances, is present, is sure, O foremost one of Kuru's race, to conquer both the worlds![12] O son of the Pāndavas, thou hast heard a wonderful history. The snakes have been consumed into ashes and have followed the footsteps of thy sire.[13] Through thy truthfulness, O monarch, Takshaka has with difficulty escaped a painful fate. The Rishis have all been worshipped. Thou hast seen also the end that has been attained by thy high-souled sire.[14] Having heard this sin-cleansing history thou hast achieved abundant merit. The knots of thy heart have been untied through sight of this foremost of persons.[15] They that are the supporters of the wings of Righteousness, they that are of good conduct and excellent disposition, they at sight of whom sins become attenuated, we should all bow to them!"[16]

Sauti continued,—Having heard this from that foremost of regenerate ones, king Janamejaya worshipped that Rishi, repeatedly honouring him in every way.[17] Conversant with all duties, he then asked the Rishi Vaiçampāyana of unfading glory about the sequel, O best of ascetics, of king Dhritarāshtra's residence in the woods.[18]

Section XXXVI.

Janamejaya said,—"Having seen his sons and grandsons with all their friends and followers, what, indeed, did that ruler of men, *viz.*, Dhritarāshtra, and king Yudhishthira also, do?"[1]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Beholding that exceedingly wonderful sight, *viz.*, the reappearance of his children, the royal sage,

Dhritarāshtra, became divested of his grief and returned (from the banks of the Bhāgirathi) to his retreat.[2] The common people and all the great Rishis, dismissed by Dhritarāshtra, returned to the places they respectively wished.[3] The high-souled Pāndavas, accompanied by their wives, and with a small retinue, went to the retreat of the high-souled monarch.[4] Then Satyavati's son, who was honoured by regenerate Rishis and all other persons, arrived at the retreat, addressed Dhritarāshtra, saying,[5]—'O mighty-armed Dhritarāshtra, O son of Kuru's race, listen to what I say! Thou hast heard diverse discourses from Rishis of great knowledge and sacred deeds,[6] of wealth of penances and excellence of blood, of conversance with the Vedas and their branches, of piety and years, and of great eloquence![7] Do not set thy mind again on sorrow. He that is possessed of wisdom is never agitated at ill luck. Thou hast also heard the mysteries of the deities from Nārada of celestial form![8] Thy children have all attained, through observance of Kshatriya practices, to that auspicious goal which is sanctified by weapons. Thou hast seen how they move about at will in great happiness.[9] This Yudhishthira of great intelligence is awaiting thy permission, with all his brothers and wives and kinsmen.[10] Do thou dismiss him. Let him go back to his kingdom and rule it! They have passed more than a month in thus residing in the woods.[11] The station of sovereignty should always be well guarded, O king! O thou of Kuru's race, kingdom has many foes!'[12] Thus addressed by Vyāsa of incomparable energy, the Kuru king, well-versed in words, summoned Yudhishthira and said unto him,[13]—O Ajātaçatru, blessings on thee! Do thou listen to me, with all thy brothers! Through thy grace, O king, grief no longer stands in my way.[14] I am living as happily, O son, with thee here as if I were in the city called after the elephant. With thee as my protector, O learned one, I am enjoying all agreeable objects.[15] I have obtained from thee all those services which a son renders to his sire. I am highly gratified with thee. I have not the least dissatisfaction with thee, O mighty-armed one. Go now, O son, without tarrying here any longer![16] Meeting with thee, my penances are being

rlackened. This my body, endued with penances, I have been able to sustain only in consequence of my meeting with thee !*[17] These two mothers of thine, subsisting now upon fallen leaves of trees, and observing vows similar to mine, will not live long.[18] Duryodhana and others, who have become denizens of the other world, have been seen by us, through the puissance of Vyāsa's penances and through (the merit of) this my meeting with thee.[19] O sinless one, the purpose of my life has been attained. I now wish to set myself to the practice of the austerest of penances. It behooveth thee to grant me permission.[20] On thee now the obsequial cake, the fame and achievements, and the race of our ancestors, rest. O mighty-armed one, do thou then depart either tomorrow or this very day. Do not tarry, O son ![21] O chief of Bharata's race, thou hast repeatedly heard what the duties are of kings. I do not see what more I can say unto thee. I have no longer any need with thee, O thou of great puissance !'"[22]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Unto the (old) monarch who said so, king Yudhishthira replied,—'O thou that art conversant with every rule of righteousness, it behooveth thee not to cast me off in this way. I am guilty of no fault ![23] Let all my brothers and followers depart as they like. With steadfast vows I shall wait upon thee and upon these two mothers of mine !'[24] Unto him Gāndhāri then said,—'O son, let it not be so. Listen, the race of Kuru is now dependant on thee ! The obsequial cake also of my father-in-law depends on thee ! Depart then, O son ![25] We have been sufficiently honoured and served by thee ! Thou shouldst do what the king says. Indeed, O son, thou shouldst obey the behests of thy sire !'"[26]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Thus addressed by Gāndhāri, king Yudhishthira, rubbing his eyes which were bathed in tears of affection, said these words of lament.[27] 'The king casts me off, as also Gāndhāri of great fame. My heart, however, is bound to thee. How shall I, filled as I am with grief, leave thee ?[28] I do not, however, at the same time, venture to obstruct thy penances, O righteous lady ! There is nothing

* The Bengal reading 'manah' is incorrect. It should be 'punah.'—T.

higher than penances. It is by penances that one attains to the Supreme.[29] O queen, my heart no longer turns as of old towards kingdom. My mind is wholly set upon penances now.[30] The whole Earth is empty now. O auspicious lady, she does not please me anylonger! Our kinsmen have been reduced in number. Our strength is no longer what it was before.[31] The Pānchālas have been wholly exterminated. They exist in name only. O auspicious lady, I do not behold any one that may assist at their re-establishment and growth.[32] All of them have been consumed to ashes by Drona on the field of battle. Those that remained were slain by Drona's son at night.[33] The Chedis and the Matsyas, who were our friends, no longer exist. Only the tribes of the Vrishnis are all that remain, Vāsudeva having upheld them.[34] Beholding only the Vrishnis I wish to live. My desire of life, however, is due to my wish of acquiring merit and not wealth or enjoyment. Do thou cast auspicious looks upon us all. To obtain thy sight will be difficult for us.[35] The king will commence to practice the most austere and unbearable of penances!' Hearing these words, that lord of battle, the mighty-armed Sahadeva,[36] with eyes bathed in tears, addressed Yudhishthira, saying,—'O chief of Bharata's race, I dare not leave my mother![37] Do thou return to the capital soon. I shall practice penances, O puissant one! Even here I shall emaciate my body by penances,[38] engaged in serving the feet of the king and of these my mothers!' Unto that mighty-armed hero, Kunti, after an embrace, said,—'Depart, O son! Do not say so![39] Do my bidding! Do all of you go hence. Let peace be yours! Ye sons, let happiness be yours![40] By your stay here, our penances will be obstructed. Bound by the ties of my affection for thee, I shall fall off from my high penances![41] Therefore, O son, leave us. Short is the period that we have of life, O thou of great puissance![42] By these and diverse other speeches of Kunti, the minds of Sahadeva and king Yudhishthira were composed. Those foremost ones of Kuru's race, having received the permission of their mother as also of the (old) monarch, saluted the latter and began to take his leave.[43]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Gladdened by auspicious blessings, we shall return to the capital. Indeed, O king, having received thy permission, we shall leave this retreat, freed from every sin!'[44] Thus addressed by the high-souled king Yudhishthira the just, that royal sage, *viz.*, Dhritarāshtra, blessed Yudhishthira and gave him permission.[45] The king comforted Bhima, that foremost of all persons endued with great strength. Endued with great energy and great intelligence, Bhima showed his submissiveness to the king.[46] Embracing Arjuna and clasping those foremost of men, *viz.*, the twins also, and blessing them repeatedly, the Kuru king gave them permission to depart.[47] They worshipped the feet of Gāndhāri and received her blessings also. Their mother Kunti then smelt their heads, and dismissed them. They then circumambulated the king like calves, when prevented from sucking, their dams. Indeed, they repeatedly walked round him, looking steadfastly at him.*[48-49] Then all the ladies of the Kaurava household, headed by Draupadi, worshipped their father-in-law according to the rites laid down in the scriptures, and took his leave.[50] Gāndhāri and Kunti embraced each of them, and blessing them bade them go. Their mothers-in-law instructed them as to how they should conduct themselves. Obtaining leave, they then departed, with their husbands.[51] Then loud sounds were heard, uttered by the charioteers that said,—'Yoke, yoke,'—as also of camels that grunted aloud and of steeds that neighed briskly.[52] King Yudhishthira, with his wives and troops and all his kinsmen, set out for Hastināpura."[53]

Section XXXVII.

(Nāradāgamana Parva.)

Vaiçampāyana said,—"After two years had elapsed from the date of the return of the Pāndavas (from the retreat of their sire), the celestial Rishi, Nārada, O king, came to Yudhishthira.[1] The mighty-armed Kuru king, that foremost of

---

* 'Nripam pradakshinam chakru' is the construction. 'Nivārana' has 'snānapānāt' understood after it.—T.

speakers, *viz.*, Yudhishthira, having duly worshipped him, caused him to take a seat. After the Rishi had rested awhile, the king asked him, saying,[2]—'It is after a long time that I behold thy holy self arrived at my court. Art thou in peace and happiness, O learned Brāhmana?[3] What are those countries which thou hast passed through? What shall I do to thee? Do thou tell me! Thou art the foremost of regenerate ones, and thou art our highest refuge!'[4]

"Nārada said,—'I have not seen thee for a long while. Hence it is that I have come to thee from my ascetic retreat. I have seen many sacred waters, and the sacred stream Gangā also, O king!'[5]

"Yudhishthira said,—'People dwelling on the banks of Gangā report that the high-souled Dhritarāshtra is practising the austerest of penances.[6] Hast thou seen him there? Is that perpetuater of Kuru's race in peace? Are Gāndhāri and Prithā, and the Suta's son Sanjaya also, in peace?[7] How, indeed, is it faring with that royal sire of mine? I desire to hear this, O holy one, if thou hast seen the king (and knowest of his condition)!'[8]

"Nārada said,—'Listen, O king, with calmness to me as I tell thee what I have heard and seen in that ascetic retreat.[9] After thy return from Kurukshetra, O delighter of the Kurus, thy sire, O king, proceeded towards Gangādwāra.[10] That intelligent monarch took with him his (sacred) fire, Gāndhāri and his daughter in-law Kunti, as also Sanjaya of the Suta caste, and all the Yājakas.[11] Possessed of wealth of penances, thy sire set himself to the practice of severe austerities. He held pebbles of stone in his mouth and had air alone for his subsistence, and abstained altogether from speech.[12] Engaged in severe penances, he was worshipped by all the ascetics in the woods. In six months the king was reduced to only a skeleton.[13] Gāndhāri subsisted on water alone, while Kunti took a little food at intervals of a month. Sanjaya, O Bhārata, lived, eating a little every sixth day.[14] The sacred fire, O monarch, (belonging to the Kuru king) was duly worshipped by the sacrificing assistants that were with him, with libations of clarified butter poured on it. They

did this whether the king saw the rite or not.[15] The king had no fixed habitation. He became a wanderer through those woods. The two queens, as also Sanjaya, followed him.[16] Sanjaya acted as the guide on even and uneven land. The faultless Prithā, O king, became the eye of Gāndhāri.[17] One day, that best of kings proceeded to a spot on the margin of Gangā. He then bathed in the sacred stream and finishing his ablutions turned his face towards his retreat.[18] The wind rose high. A fierce forest-conflagration set in. It began to burn that forest all around.[19] When the herds of animals were being burnt all around, as also the snakes that inhabited that region, herds of wild boars began to take themselves to the nearest marshes and waters.[20] When that forest was thus afflicted on all sides and such distress came upon all the living creatures residing there, the king, who had taken no food, was incapable of moving or exerting himself at all.[21] Thy two mothers also, exceedingly emaciated, were unable to move. The king, seeing the conflagration approach him from all sides,[22] addressed the Suta Sanjaya, that foremost of skillful charioteers, saying,—'Go, O Sanjaya, to such a place where the fire may not burn thee![23] As regards ourselves, we shall suffer our bodies to be destroyed by this fire and attain to the highest goal.' Unto him, Sanjaya, that foremost of speakers, said,[24]—'O king, this death, brought on by a fire that is not sacred, will prove calamitous to thee! I do not, however, see any means by which thou canst escape from this conflagration.[25] That which should next be done should be indicated by thee!' Thus addressed by Sanjaya the king once more said,[26]—'This death cannot be calamitous to us, for we have left our home of our own accord. Water, fire, wind, and abstention from food,*[27] (as means of death), are laudable for ascetics. Do thou, therefore, leave us, O Sanjaya, without any delay.' Having said these words to Sanjaya, the king concentrated his mind.[28] Facing the east, he sat down, with Gāndhāri and Kunti. Beholding him in that attitude, San-

* 'Vikarshanam' is emaciation of the body by abstention from all food.—T.

jaya walked round him.[29] Endued with intelligence, Sanjaya said,—'Do thou concentrate thy soul, O puissant one!' The son of a Rishi, and himself possessed of great wisdom, the king acted as he was told.[30] Restraining all the senses, he remained like a post of wood. The highly blessed Gāndhāri, and thy mother Prithā too, remained in the same attitude.[31] Then thy royal sire was overtaken by the forest-conflagration. Sanjaya, his minister, succeeded in escaping from that conflagration.[32] I saw him on the banks of Gangā in the midst of ascetics. Endued with great energy and great intelligence, he bade them farewell and then started for the mountains of Himavat.[33] Even thus the high-souled Kuru king met with his death, and it was even thus that Gāndhāri and Kunti, thy two mothers, also met with death, O monarch.[34] In course of my wanderings at will, I saw the bodies of that king and those two queens, O Bhārata.[35] Many ascetics came to that retreat, having heard of the end of king Dhritarāshtra. They did not at all grieve for that end of theirs.[36] There, O best of men, I heard all the details of how the king and the two queens, O son of Pāndu, had been burnt.[37] O king of kings, thou shouldst not grieve for him. The monarch, of his own will, as also Gāndhāri and thy mother, obtained that contact with fire.'[38]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Hearing of the exit of Dhritarāshtra from this world, the high-souled Pāndavas all gave way to great grief.[39] Loud sounds of wailing were heard within the inner apartments of the palace. The citizens also, hearing of the end of the old king, uttered loud lamentations.[40] 'O fie' cried king Yudhishthira in great agony, raising his arms aloft. Thinking of his mother, he wept like a child. All his brothers too, headed by Bhimasena, did the same.[41] Hearing that Prithā had met with such a fate, the ladies of the royal household uttered loud lamentations of grief.[42] All the people grieved upon hearing that the old king, who had become childless, had been burnt to death and that the helpless Gāndhāri too had shared his fate.[43] When those sounds of wailing ceased for a while, king Yudhishthira the just, stopping his tears by summoning all his patience, said these words."[44]

Section XXXVIII.

"Yudhishthira said,—'When such a fate overtook that high-souled monarch who was engaged in austere penances, notwithstanding the fact of his having such kinsmen as ourselves all alive,[1] it seems to me, O regenerate one, that the end of human beings is difficult to guess. Alas, who would have thought that the son of Vichitraviryya would thus be burnt to death![2] He had a hundred sons each endued with mighty-arms and possessed of great prosperity! The king himself had the strength of ten thousand elephants. Alas, even he has been burnt to death in a forest-conflagration![3] Alas, he who had formerly been fanned with palm leaves by the fair hands of beautiful women was fanned by vultures with their wings after he had been burnt to death in a forest-conflagration![4] He who was formerly roused from sleep every morning by bands of Sutas and Māgadhas had to sleep on the bare ground through the acts of my sinful self![5] I do not grieve for the famous Gāndhāri who had been deprived of all her children. Observing the same vows as her husband, she has attained to those very regions which have become his.[6] I grieve, however, for Prithā who, abandoning the blazing prosperity of her sons, became desirous of residing in the woods![7] Fie on this sovereignty of ours, fie on our prowess, fie on the practices of Kshatriyas! Though alive, we are really dead![8] O foremost of superior Brāhmanas, the course of Time is very subtle and difficult to understand, inasmuch as Kunti, abandoning sovereignty, became desirous of taking up her abode in the forest![9] How is it that she who was the mother of Yudhishthira, of Bhima, of Vijaya, was burnt to death like a helpless creature! Thinking of this I become stupified.[10] In vain was the deity of fire gratified at Khāndava by Arjuna! Ingrate that he is, forgetting that service he, has burnt to death the mother of his benefactor![11] Alas, how could that deity burn the mother of Arjuna! Putting on the guise of a Brāhmana, he had formerly come to Arjuna for soliciting a favour! Fie on the deity of fire! Fie on the celebrated success of Pārtha's shafts![12] This is another incident, O holy one, that appears

to me to be productive of greater misery, for that lord of Earth met with death by union with a fire that was not sacred! How could such a death overtake that royal sage of Kuru's race who, after having ruled the whole Earth, was engaged in the practice of penances! In that great forest there were fires that had been sanctified with *mantras*. Alas, my father has made his exit from this world, coming in contact with an unsanctified fire![13-14] I suppose that Prithā, emaciated and reduced to a form in which all her nerves became visible, must have trembled in fear and cried aloud, saying,—O son Yudhishthira!—and awaited the terrible approach of the conflagration![15] She must have also said,—O Bhima, rescue me from this danger!—when she, my mother, was surrounded on all sides by that terrible conflagration![16] Among all her sons, Sahadeva was her darling. Alas, that heroic son of Mādravati did not rescue her![17] Hearing these lamentations of the king, all those persons that were present there began to weep, embracing each other. In fact, the five sons of Pāndu were so stricken with grief that they resembled living creatures at the time of the dissolution of the universe.[18] The sound of lamentations uttered by those weeping heroes, filling the spacious chambers of the palace, escaped therefrom and penetrated the very welkin."[19]

Section XXXIX.

"Nārada said,—'The king has not been burnt to death by an unsanctified fire. I have heard this there. I tell thee, O Bhārata, such has not been the fate of Vaichitraviryya.[1] It has been heard by us that when the old king endued with great intelligence and subsisting an air alone entered the woods (after his return from Gangādwāra), he caused his sacrificial fires to be duly ignited. Having performed his sacred rites therewith, he abandoned them all.[2] Then the Yājaka Brāhmanas he had with him cast off those fires in a solitary part of the woods and went away as they liked on other erands, O foremost one of Bharata's race.[3] The fire thus cast off grew in the woods. It then produced a general conflagration

in the forest. Even this is what I have heard from the ascetics dwelling on the banks of Gangā.[4] United with that (sacred) fire of his own, O chief of the Bharatas, the king, as I have already said unto thee, met with death on the banks of Gangā.[5] O sinless one, this is what the ascetics have told me, those, *viz.*, whom I saw on the banks of the sacred Bhāgirathi, O Yudhishthira.[6] Thus, O lord of Earth, king Dhritarāshtra, coming into contact with his own sacred fire, departed from this world and attained to that high goal that has been his.[7] Through service rendered by her to her seniors, thy mother, O lord of men, has attained to very great success. There is not the slightest doubt of this.[8] It behooveth thee, O king of kings, to now discharge the rites of water to their honour, with all thy brothers. Let, therefore, the necessary steps be taken towards that end.' "[9]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Then that lord of Earth, that foremost of men, that upholder of the burthens of the Pāndavas, went out, accompanied by all his brothers as well as the ladies of his household.[10] The inhabitants of the city as also those of the provinces, impelled by their loyalty, also went out. They all proceeded towards the banks of Gangā, every one clad in only a single piece of raiment.[11] Then all those foremost of men, having plunged into the stream, placed Yuyutsu at their head, and began to offer oblations of water unto the high-souled king. And they also gave similar oblations unto Gāndhāri and Prithā, naming each separately and mentioning their families.[12] Having finished those rites that cleanse the living, they came back but without entering their capital took up their residence outside of it. They also despatched a number of trusted people well conversant with the ordinances relating to the cremation of the dead, to Gangādwāra where the old king had been burnt to death.[13] The king, having rewarded those men beforehand, commanded them to accomplish those rites of cremation which the bodies of Dhritarāshtra and Gāndhāri and Kunti still awaited.*[14]

---

* The verb 'anvacāt' from root 'ças' can govern two objectives. Here the two objectives are 'purushān' and 'krityāni.'—T.

On the twelfth day, the king, properly purified, duly performed the *Çrāddhas* of his deceased relations, which were characterised by gifts in abundance.[15] Referring to Dhritarāshtra, Yudhishthira made many gifts of gold and silver, of kine and costly beds.[16] Uttering the names of Gāndhāri and Prithā, the king, endued with great energy, made many excellent gifts.[17] Every man received what thing he wished and as much of it as he wished. Beds and food, and cars and conveyances, and jewels and gems, and other wealth were given away in profusion.[18] Indeed, the king, referring to his two mothers, gave away cars and conveyances, robes and coverlets, various kinds of food, and female slaves adorned with diverse ornaments.[19] Having thus made many kinds of gift in profusion, that lord of Earth then entered his capital called after the elephant.[20] Those men who had gone to the banks of Gangā at the command of the king, having disposed of (by cremation) the remains of the king and the two queens, returned to the city.[21] Having duly honoured those remains with garlands and scents of diverse kinds and disposed of them, they informed Yudhishthira of the accomplishment of their task.[22] The great Rishi Nārada, having comforted king Yudhishthira of righteous soul, went away to where he liked.[23] Even thus did king Dhritarāshtra make his exit from this world after having passed three years in the forest and ten and five years in the city.[24] Having lost all his children in battle, he had made many gifts in honour of his kinsmen, relatives, and friends, his brethren and own people.[25] King Yudhishthira, after the death of his uncle, became very cheerless. Deprived of his kinsmen and relatives, he somehow bore the burthen of sovereignty.[26]

One should listen with rapt attention to this Āçramavāsika Parvan, and having heard it recited, one should feed Brāhmanas with *Habishya*, honouring them with scents and garlands."[27]

FINIS AÇRAMAVASIKA PARVA.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ACRAMAVASIKA PARVA.

Açramavāsa Parva.

PAGE.

Janamejaya enquires about the conduct of his grandsires, the Pāndavas, towards their uncle Dhritarāshtra, after they had acquired their kingdom 1

Ditto enquires about the conduct of Gāndhāri ... ib.

Ditto enquires about the period for which his grandsires ruled at Hastināpura ... ... ib.

The Pāndavas rule the Earth, with Yudhishthira on the throne ... ... ib.

Vidura, Sanjaya, and Yuyutsu wait on Dhritarāshtra ... ... ib.

The Pāndavas consult Dhritarāshtra in everything ... ... ib.

Kunti waits dutifully on Gāndhāri ... ... ib

The ladies of the Pāndavas show the utmost respect for the old king and his queen ... ... ib.

The Pāndavas surround the old king with every luxury 2

Kripa waits upon the old king ... ... ib.

Vyāsa visits the old king frequently and delights him by reciting many histories of old Rishis and celestial ascetics and Pitris and Rākshasas ... ib.

The Pāndavas acquire great popularity and obtain substantial services from feudatories and allies, through the excellent policy of Vidura ... ib

Dhritarāshtra pardons prisoners and those condemned to death ... ... ib.

The old king, on his pleasure excursions, is supplied with everything by the Pāndavas ... ib.

PAGE.

The kings coming to the Kuru capital wait as before on the old king 2
The ladies of the Pāndavas serve Gāndhāri with obedience and great regard 3
Bhima is unable to forget the wickedness of Duryodhana and has a vivid recollection of the wrongs inflicted on himself and his brothers and Draupadi by their cousins ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra makes gifts in profusion on every auspicious occasion ... ... ib
The Pāndavas obey him in all things ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's affection for the Pāndavas ... 4
Gāndhāri frees herself from the debts she owes to her slain children by the gifts she makes at their Crāddhas ... ... ib
Gāndhāri behaves towards the Pāndavas as if they are her own children ... ... ib
Comparing the obedience and affection of Yudhishthira, Dhritarāshtra pained at the recollection of Duryodhana's behaviour towards the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Yudhishthira becomes completely forgetful of the conduct of Duryodhana towards him and his brothers 5
People, from fear of Yudhishthira's displeasure, refrain from alluding to Duryodhana's persecution of the Pāndavas ... ... ib
The cordiality of Dhritarāshtra's affection for the Pāndavas sometimes disturbed at the thought of Bhima ... ... ib
Bhima unable to put up with Dhritarāshtra at the thought of Dhritarāshtra's having all along supported Duryodhana in his behaviour towards the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Bhima indulges in boastful language at the expense of Duryodhana and his brothers whom he has slain 6

PAGE.

Dhritarāshtra's grief upon hearing Bhima's language 6
Gāndhāri, whose wisdom was greater, unmoved by Bhima's boast ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra opens his heart to his friends ... ib
The disclosure by Dhritarāshtra of the vow he has taken regarding and bed and other luxuries 7
Dhritarāshtra addresses Yudhishthira and tells him all ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra wishes to retire into the woods for passing the remainder of his days in the practice of penances 8
Yudhishthira's grief at Dhritarāshtra's resolve ... ib
Dhritarāshtra's resolution to retire unaltered by Yudhishthira's persuasions 9
Unable to talk longer, Dhritarāshtra faints ... 10
Yudhishthira's lamentations at seeing his uncle faint ... ... ib
Yudhishthira gently rubs his uncle's body and revives him ... ... ib
Regaining his senses, Dhritarāshtra embraces Yudhishthira and smells his head 11
Vidura and others filled with grief at the sight of Dhritarāshtra's weakness ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra renews his request for Yudhishthira's permission to retire into the woods ... ib
Vyāsa persuades Yudhishthira to grant Dhritarāshtra's request 12
Yudhishthira yields to Vyāsa's intercession ... ib
Vyāsa sums up the reasons for Dhritarāshtra's retirement 13
Yudhishthira accords his sanction to his uncle's desire of retirement ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra and Gāndhāri, as also Vidura and others, eat a little after the exertions of the day 14

PAGE.

Dhritarāshtra's advice to Yudhishthira about how the latter should rule his kingdom 14
The king should every day honour men of learning ... ... ib
Men of learning are the best advisers of the king ... ib
Men of tried honesty should be made ministers ... ib
Ministers should be hereditary 15
The necessity of collecting information through faithful spies in different disguises ... ... ib
The citadel should be properly protected by walls and arched gates and watch towers ... ... ib
The gates should be guarded ... ... ib
The king should always protect his own person carefully ... ... ib
The kings food, sports, clothes, ornaments, &c., should be carefully examined before use ... ib
The ladies of the king's harem should be properly protected through aged and faithful servitors ... ... ib
Brāhmanas of learning and humility and high lineage should be appointed as counsellers ... ib
Many persons should never be admitted into the king's consultations ... ... ib
Consultations should be held in places which are not open to intruders ... ... ib
Consultations should never be held at night time ... ib
Apes and imitative birds and other animals should be excluded from the place of consultation ... ib
The beneful results of divulging counsels should be repeatedly refered to by the king and all ministers properly cautioned 16
The laws should always be administered by qualified and trusted judges ... ... ib
The conduct of the judges should be ascertained through trusted spies ... ... ib
The judicial officers should always inflict punishments according to the law ... ... ib

PAGE.

Corrupt judges and others should be punished with either heavy fines or death 16
The king should in the morning see those that are charged with disbursements ... ... ib
Next he should look to his own toilet ... ... ib
Next he should attend to his food ... ... ib
The forces of the kingdom should frequently be reviwed ... ... ib
The evenings of the king should be set apart for envoys and spies ... ... ib
Midnights and middays should be devoted to amusements ... ... ib
All the waking hours should be devoted to the good of his kingdom ... ... ib
Treasuries of diverse kinds should be filled by lawful means 17
All unlawful means for accomplishing the king's ends should be avoided ... ... ib
Ascertaining who his enemies are, the king should destroy them from a distance ... ib
All officers should be appointed after a proper examination of their conduct ... ... ib
All servitors of the king should be made to do his acts whatever their especial or fixed duties ... ... ib
Artizans and mechanics should do the king's work like kine and asses (that is, labour for food alone without asking for higher wages) ... ... ib
The king should always ascertain his own *laches* as also those of his foes ... ... ib
Skilful men in the kingdom should be rewarded with gratuities ... ... ib
The king should see that the accomplishments of accomplished subjects are kept up by a proper system of encouragement and rewards ... ib
The king should look to *Mandalas* ... ... ib

PAGE.

The king should see that the fidelity is not tampered with of his ministers, subjects, garrisons within forts, and forces 18
The times of declaring war and making peace ... ib
The son of the defeated king should be demanded as a hostage 19
The king should always treat his subordinate chiefs kindly and with justice ... ... ib
A king should never seek to war with that monarch who desires to conquer the whole Earth ... ib
A powerful king should never seek to exterminate inferior kings for these do a great deal of good to the world ... ... ib
If a strong king advances against a weak one, the latter should adopt conciliation ... ... ib
If conciliation fails, he should adopt force ... 20
By falling in battle he may escape disgrace and attain to Heaven ... ... ib
Further reflections on war and peace ... ... ib
Power of wealth, power of allies, power of forresters, power of paid soldiery, and power of the mechanical and the trading classes ... 21
The calamities of kings ... ... ib
The means the king should apply for effecting the destruction of his foes 22
The king should never engage in war before examining his own strength ... ... ib
A hundred horse-sacrifices and righteous rule productive of equal merit ... ... ib
Before retirement Dhritarāshtra wishes to make gifts for the advancement in the other world of his dead sons and other kinsmen... ... 23
The subjects of the kingdom assembled at the request of Dhritarāshtra 24
Dhritarāshtra's touching address to that large concourse of men of all orders ... ... ib
The continuation of Dhritarāshtra's address ... 26

PAGE.

The citizens exceedingly agitated upon hearing Dhritarāshtra's address 26
They elect one among themselves,—a learned Brāhmana,—for giving the old king their answer 27
The Brāhmana thus elected exculpates Duryodhana of all faults ... ... ib
The Brāhmana attributes the carnage on the field of Kurukshetra to the action of Destiny ... 28
The Brāhmana praises Yudhishthira and his brothers 29
The citizens sorrowfully acquiesce in the old king's resolve to retire into the woods ... ib
Dhritarāshtra sends Vidura to Yudhishthira for some wealth to be spent for the advancement of his sons and other kinsmen in the other world 30
Yudhishthira and Arjuna readily assent to their uncle's request ... ... ib
Bhima's unwillingness to grant the request ... 31
Arjuna seeks to pacify Bhimasena ... ... ib
Bhima reminds his brothers of the woes and disgrace inflicted upon them by Duryodhana and others for whose benefit the old king asks for wealth ... ... ib
Arjuna urges Bhima to forget the wrongs inflicted by Duryodhana and others as that conduct becomes them better 32
Yudhishthira's final address to Vidura in which he expresses his desire of giving the old king as much wealth as he needs 33
Vidura reports the speeches of Yudhishthira, Arjuna, and Bhima to Dhritarāshtra ... ib
Dhritarāshtra invites thousands of deserving Brāhmanas and makes large gifts to them ... 34
Tellers and scribes appointed by Yudhishthira ceaselessly ask the old king as to what should

PAGE.

be given to each recipient that presented himself 35
Unto him that was to get a hundred, a thousand was given, and unto him that was to receive a thousand, ten thousand was given, ... ib
Dhritarāshtra is compared to an ocean in the matter of that sacrifice of gifts ... ... ib
The gifts come to a close 36
Dhritarāshtra puts on the guise of a forest-recluse and sets out for the forest ... ... ib
The loud wail of the Bharata ladies ... ... ib
Yudhishthira and others pierced with great grief ... ib
They all follow the monarch 37
Draupadi and the other ladies also of the Pāndavas follow the king ... ... ib
The citizens of Hastināpura all distressed at the sight of old king leaving them ... ... ib
The uproar of men and women standing on the terraces of houses for seeing the departure of the king ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra leaves the city by the principal gate ... ... ib
Ditto repeatedly asks those that followed him to desist ... ... ib
Vidura resolved to retire into the woods with the old king ... ... ib
Sanjaya filled with the same desire ... ... ib
Kripa and Yuyutsu desist at Dhritarāshtra's request 38
Dhritarāshtra makes over Kripa and Yuyutsu to Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Kunti resolves to retire with the old king ... ib
Yudhishthira seeks to dissuade his mother ... ib
Kunti's speech to the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Yudhishthira repeats his dissuasions 39
Bhima seeks to dissuade his mother ... ... ib
Kunti disregards the words of her sons ... ib

PAGE.

The speech of Kunti to her sons, in which she assigns her reasons for the conduct upon which she is bent 40
The Pāndavas circumambulate the old king and his party for taking their leave to return ... 42
Dhritarāshtra makes a final effort for dissuading Kunti from retiring into the forest with him ... ib
Kunti's firmness ... ... ib
The loud wail of grief set up by the Bharata ladies at understanding that Kunti would not return... ib
The cheerless aspect of the Kuru city 43
The cheerlessness of the Pāndavas ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra reaches the banks of the Bhāgirathi and takes rest there for the night ... ib
Going through their morning acts and rites, Dhritarāshtra and his followers continue the journey ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra takes up his abode on the banks of the Bhāgirathi 44
Brāhmanas and others come to see the monarch ... ib
The king gladdens them all by the sweetness of his discourse ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra proceeds to the retreat of Catayupa, the retired king of the Koçalas ... ib
Catayupa receives him with great respect ... ib
Accompanied by Catayupa, Dhritarāshtra proceeds to the retreat of Vyāsa ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra duly initiated into the forest mode of life by Vyāsa ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra returns to the retreat of Catayupa for residing there in the practice of penances ... ib
At the command of Vyāsa, Catayupa instructs Dhritarāshtra in all the rites of the forest mode of life... ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra, Gāndhāri, Kunti, Vidura, and Sanjaya, all begin to practise the severest austerities 45

PAGE.

Nārada and Parvata and Vyāsa and others of high penances, with Catayupa, come to see Dhritarāshtra 45
Dhritarāshtra receives them with due honours ... ib
Nārada mentions the kings that attained to Heaven after practice of penances in the very retreat chosen by Dhritarāshtra ... ... ib
Catayupa enquires of Nārada as to what the end is that is attainable by Dhritarāshtra ... 47
Nārada declares the end attainable by Dhritarāshtra on expiration of three years from that date ... ... ib
The Rishis all go away, satisfied with Dhritarāshtra's reception 48
The anxiety of the Pāndavas, as also of others, about the fate of Dhritarāshtra and others living in retirement ... ... ib
The cheerlessness of the Pāndavas at the thought of the old king and of their kinsmen slaughtered in the field of Kurukshetra 49
Sahadeva proposes a visit to the woods for seeing the old king and Gāndhāri and Kunti and Vidura and Sanjaya 50
Draupadi prefers the same request ... ... ib
King Yudhishthira orders preparations to be made for the proposed visit ... ... ib
Troops ordered out for escorting the king and his party 51
The citizens of Hastināpura and the inhabitants of the provinces, desirous of seeing Dhritarāshtra, follow Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Kripa appointed the commander of the forces accompanying the party ... ... ib
Yudhishthira and his brothers set out ... ... ib
Draupadi and other ladies proceed in close litters ... 52
The ladies scatter wealth as they proceed in their covered conveyances ... ... ib

PAGE.

The whole cavalcade blazes with beauty and splendour 52
Yuyutsu and Dhaumya left at Hastināpura for conducting the government and guarding the city ... ... ib
The Pāndavas cross the Yamunā and behold their uncle's retreat from a distance ... ib
The Pāndavas, as also all their followers, alighting from their cars, walk on foot ... ... ib
The Pāndavas have a sight of Dhritarāshtra, Gāndhāri, and Kunti 53
Sahadeva runs to meet Kunti ... ... ib
The Pāndavas fall down at the feet of their uncle, aunt, and Kunti ... ... ib
The Pāndavas take from the hands of their uncle and aunt and mother the jars of water they were carrying ... ... ib
The citizens &c., and the Bharata ladies also, behold the old king, Gāndhāri and Kunti ... ib
King Yudhishthira presents the citizens to Dhritarāshtra ... ... ib
The joy of Dhritarāshtra and others at the sight of their relatives ... ... ib
Many highly blessed Rishis come to Dhritarāshtra's retreat for seeing the Pāndavas ... 54
Sanjaya points out to the assembled Rishis the Pāndavas one after another and their wives ... ib
Dhritarāshtra enquires of Yudhishthira about the welfare of the Pāndavas 56
Yudhishthira enquires after Vidura 57
Yudhishthira beholds Vidura at a distance ... ib
The condition of Vidura ... ... ib
The death of Vidura 58
Vidura, being Dharma's self, casting off his human body, enters the body of Yudhishthira by Yoga ... ib
Yudhishthira desirous of cremating the body of Vidura ... ... ib

PAGE.

Yudhishthira warned against it by an invisible voice 58
Dhritarāshtra offers fruits and roots to Yudhishthira and his brothers 59
The Pāndavas pass the night in their uncle's retreat ... ... ib
The next day Yudhishthira and his brothers visit the other retreats in that forest ... ib
Yudhishthira makes presents to the ascetics residing in that forest 60
Many Rishis headed by Vyāsa come to Dhritarāshtra's retreat 61
Vyāsa enquires after Dhritarāshtra's welfare ... ib
Ditto enquires after the welfare of Gāndhāri and Kunti ... ... ib
Vyāsa tells Dhritarāshtra and others who Vidura was 62
Vyāsa explains the identity of Dharma with Yudhishthira 63
Vyāsa asks Dhritarāshtra as to what he wishes to see or hear ... ... ib

Putradarçana Parva.

Janamejaya questions Vaiçampāyana about the particulars of Yudhishthira's stay at the retreat ... ... ib
Vyāsa declares his intention of accomplishing the wish of Dhritarāshtra by his Yoga-puissance ... 64
Dhritarāshtra wishes to see his dead children and kinsmen 65
Vyāsa asks Kunti as to what her wish is ... 67
Kunti tells the story of Karna's birth ... ... ib
Ditto wishes to have a sight of the slain Karna ... 68
Vyāsa exculpates Kunti from all faults ... ib
Vyāsa promises to show every one the persons whom they wished to see and who were in the other world 69

PAGE.

Vyāsa explains to the party who among the dead was what 69
When night came, Vyāsa plunges into the Bhāgirathi for a bath 71
The warriors slain in Kurukshetra all rise up from the waters of the Bhāgirathi with a loud uproar ... ... ib
Every one presented the same aspect that he did while clad for battle ... ... ib
Dhritarāshtra receives from Vyāsa the power of vision 72
The scene is exceedingly wonderful and looks like a huge painting on an extended canvas ... ib
Dhritarāshtra filled with joy at the sight ... ib
Divested of wrath and malice, the spirits of the dead mingle with the living in happy converse... ib
Towards dawn Vyāsa dismisses the whole concourse of spirits 73
They return to their respective places in the other world ... ... ib
With Vyāsa's permission many widows of Bharata's race plunge into the waters of the Bhāgirathi for accompanying their deceased lords 74
The rewards of those that recite these sections or hear them recited ... ... ib
Janamejaya enquires about the possibility of men whose bodies have been destroyed to reappear in those very forms 75
Vaiçampāyana's explanation ... ... ib
The joy of Dhritarāshtra at seeing his sons whom he had never seen in consequence of his blindness 78
Janamejaya expresses the wish of beholding his dead father through Vyāsa's grace ... ... ib
The re-appearance of Parikshit, of Camika, and of Cringin ... ... ib

PAGE.

Janamejaya, delighted at seeing his sire, and addresses Astika on the wonderful character of his sacrifice 79
Astika's praise of the Island-born Vyāsa ... ib
Janamejaya honours Astika ... ... ib
Ditto asks Vaiçampāyana about the sequel of Dhritarāshtra's residence in the woods ... ib
Vyāsa comforts Dhritarāshtra and asks him to dismiss the Pāndavas 80
Dhritarāshtra addresses Yudhishthira affectionately and dismisses him and his brothers ... ib
Yudhishthira offers to wait upon his uncle and his two mothers 81
Gāndhāri dissuades Yudhishthira from that step ... ib
Yudhishthira asks for Kunti's permission to wait upon her ... ... ib
Sahadeva makes the same offer 82
Kunti affectionately dissuades her sons from remaining with her and thereby obstructing her penances ... ... ib
The Pāndavas obtain the leave of the old king and their mothers to return home ... ... ib
The old king embraces all the Pāndavas one after another 83
Gāndhāri and Kunti embrace Draupadi and the other Bharata ladies and instruct them as to how they should conduct themselves towards their husbands ... ... ib
The Pāndavas and their men all set out for their capital ... ... ib

Nāradāgamana Parva.

Two years after their return from the retreat, the Pāndavas visited by Nārada ... ... ib
Yudhishthira enquires of Nārada after his uncle ... 84
Nārada's report of the penances of Dhritarāshtra and Gāndhāri and Kunti and Sanjaya ... ib.

PAGE.

Dhritarāshtra and Gāndhāri and Kunti burnt in a forest-conflagration 85
Sanjaya's escape 86
The ascetics of the forest glad at the fate of Dhritarāshtra and Gāndhāri and Kunti ... ib
The grief of the Pāndavas and the citizens of Hastināpura ... ... ib
Yudhishthira's lamentations at the fate of his uncle, aunt, and mother 87
Nārada consoles Yudhishthira by informing him of the sacred character of the fire that had burnt the royal party 88
The Pāndavas and the citizens all proceed to the Bhāgirathi for offering oblations of water to the deceased king and queens 89
Yudhishthira sends a number of men to the retreat for duly cremating the remains of his uncle, aunt, and mother ... ... ib
Yudhishthira performs the *Çrāddas* of the deceased king and queens 90
Yudhishthira makes large gifts ... ... ib
Yudhishthira returns to the capital ... ... ib
The return of the men despatched to the forest retreat for performing the last rites to the remains of the deceased ... ... ib
The cheerlessness of Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Having heard this *Parvan* recited, one should feed Brāhmanas with *Hubishya* ... ... ib

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

SUNDARI BALA ROY,

WIDOW OF

PRATAPA CHANDRA ROY, C. I. E.

MAUSALA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHARATA PRESS.

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

Printed by Kali Dass Sen.

1896.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

NOTICE.

The Açramavāsika Parva is completed. The Mausala is taken up. Of the eighteen Parvas, the Mausala is the sixteenth. Besides the Mausala, therefore, there are two Parvas still, *viz.*, the Mahāprasthānika and the Swargārohanika. If I succeed in ascending one rung more, there will still remain the top-most one. Whether I shall succeed in reaching the topmost rung is known only to the Omniscient Lord who befriended the Pāndavas in their sorest trials and whose compassion for the distressed, if they rely on Him, is unbounded. I have set my whole heart on the accomplishment of the task. If notwithstanding all my exertions, failure instead of success be mine, the reproach, I am pursuaded, will not be mine, for I am but a *purdanashin* Hindu widow whose utmost resources can achieve very little. Assisted by his friends and patrons my husband was able to issue 94 fascicules. Since his demise I have been able to issue 4 fascicules within a period of eight months. I have unhesitatingly devoted my little *stridhan* to the purpose. Not only has that little been swallowed up, but I have been obliged to supplement it by debts. I have addressed applications to almost all the patrons of my husband, including the several local Governments and the princes and chiefs of India. A Hindu widow can do no more. The results of those applications is still unknown. I have not, however, abandoned hope. Hope that sustains all men in distress is sustaining me. I am adding to my debts and the debts left me by my husband, for the completion of the enterprise is my chief *Vrata* or vow of life. For my part, I shall spare no pains to perform the *Avabhrata* or final bath with which that *Vrata* is to end. At times, however, hope fails to cheer me. The issue is in the hands of the All-powerful and All-merciful Father of the universe. May His will be done!

Next to the Lord Hari who never abandoned my husband, my reliance is on those friends and patrons who always responded to my husband's appeals. It is impossible to think

that they who have done so much to aid the enterprise will turn away from it now that it is so near completion. Professor E. B. Cowell and Mr. C. H. Tawney, with that love which have always distinguished them of Oriental literature and with that kindness which is theirs for struggling distress, have both written to Mahāmahopādhyāya Mahesh Chandra Nyāyaratna, urging him to befriend me to the best of his power. Mahāmahopādhyāya Nyāyaratna is a tower of strength. The exertion of his influence cannot go for nothing. My obligations to Mons. A. Barth and other continental scholars, as also to Professor Lanman and other American scholars, as also to Dr. R. Rost and Professor Max Muller, it would be impossible to exaggerate. Every one of these emenent men is trying his best to help me. May the Almighty, if not for my sake, at least for theirs, crown those exertions with success!

SUNDARI BALA ROY.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

MAUSALA PARVA.

	PAGE.
Yudhishthira notices unusual portents... ...	1
The Pāndavas receive intelligence of the destruction of the Vrishnis at one another's hands and of the departure of Rāma and Krishna from the world	2
Janamejaya enquires about the particulars of the destruction of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas	ib
Vaiçampāyana ascribes the destruction to the influence of Time	ib
Janamejaya enquires about the details ...	ib
The story of the Yādava youths dressing Vabhru up as a woman quick with child and enquiring of Nārada, Viçwāmitra, and Kanwa as to what the sex will be of the offspring she would bring forth	ib
The Rishis, enraged at the deception sought to be practised on them, denounce the curse that Vabhru will bring forth a terrible iron bolt that will cause the destruction of the Vrishnis and Andhakas with the exception of Rāma and Krishna	ib
Krishna does not seek to nullify the curse ...	3
The fact of the curse reported to king Ugrasena ...	ib
Vabhru brings forth an iron bolt	ib
King Ugrasena orders the bolt to be reduced to fine powder and cast into the sea	ib
The manufacture of wines and spirits forbidden at the Vrishni city	ib

PAGE.

The dreadful portents of calamity daily seen by the Vrishnis throughout the city 3
The Vrishnis and the Andhakas become disrespectful towards the Brāhmanas 4
Portents in the sky ... ... ib
Krishna understands that the curse of Gāndhāri is about to be fulfilled 5
Krishna proclaims the necessity of a pilgrimage of the Vrishnis to the sea-coast ... ... ib
The dream dreamt by the Vrishni ladies ... ib
The ascension into the sky and disappearance of Krishna's celebrated discus 6
The sudden flight over the surface of the sea and disappearance of Krishna's steeds with the celebrated car unto which they were yoked ... ib
The Vrishnis with their forces set out of Dwārakā for Prabhāsa ... ... ib
Uddhava takes leave of the Vrishnis and of Krishna for departing from the world ... ib
The Vrishnis behold Uddhava ascend the sky, filling it with his effulgence 7
The Vrishnis, mixing wine with the food intended for Brāhmanas, give it away unto monkeys and apes ... ... ib
The foremost ones among the Vrishnis begin to indulge in wine in the very presence of Krishna ... ... ib
Yuyudhāna derides Kritavarman for his having slain the warriors of Pāndavas while they were asleep ... ... ib
Kritavarman replies by referring to Yuyudhāna's cowardly act of slaying Bhuriçravas while the latter, casting off his weapons, sat in Yoga ... ... ib
Yuyudhāna refers to the conduct of Kritavarman towards Satrājit in the matter of the celebrated gem *Syamantaka* ... ... ib

THE MAHABHARATA.

MAUSALA PARVA.

SECTION I.

Bowing down unto Nārāyana, and to Nara, the foremast of men, as also to the goddess Saraswati, should the word Jaya be uttered.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"When the thirty-sixth year (after the battle) was reached, the delighter of the Kurus, *viz.*, Yudhishthira, beheld many unusual portents.[1] Winds, dry and strong, and showering gravels, blew from every side. Birds began to wheel, making circles from right to left.[2] The great rivers ran in opposite directions. The horizon on every side seemed to be always covered with fog. Meteors, showering (blazing) coals, fell on the Earth from the sky.[3] The Sun's disc, O king, seemed to be always covered with dust. At its rise, the great luminary of day was shorn of splendour and seemed to be crossed by headless trunks (of human beings).[4] Fierce circles of light were seen every day around both the Sun and the Moon.* These circles showed three hues. Their edges seemed to be black and rough and ashy-red in colour.[5] These and many other omens, foreshadowing fear and danger, were seen, O king, and filled the hearts of men with anxiety.[6] A little while after, the Kuru king Yudhishthira heard of the wholesale carnage of the Vrishnis in consequence of the iron bolt.[7] The son of Pāndu, hearing that only Vāsudeva and Rāma had escaped with life, summoned his brothers and took counsel with them as to what they should do.[8] Meeting with one another, they became

* This refers to the well-known phenomenon called *Corona* of the two great luminaries.—T.

greatly distressed upon hearing that the Vrishnis had met with destruction through the Brāhmana's rod of chastisement.[9] The death of Vāsudeva, like the drying up of the ocean, those heroes could not believe. In fact, the destruction of the wielder of *Çārnga* was incredible to them.[10] Informed of the incident about the iron bolt, the Pāndavas became filled with grief and sorrow. In fact, they sat down, utterly cheerless and penetrated with blank despair."[11]

Janamejaya said,—"Indeed, O holy one, how was it that the Andhakas along with the Vrishnis, and those great car-warriors, *viz.*, the Bhojas, met with destruction in the very sight of Vāsudeva?"[12]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"When the thirty-sixth year was reached (after the great battle) a great calamity overtook the Vrishnis. Impelled by Time, they all met with destruction in consequence of the iron bolt."[13]

Janamejaya said,—"Cursed by whom did those heroes, *viz.*, the Vrishnis, the Andhakas, and the Bhojas, met with destruction? O foremost of regenerate persons, do thou tell me this in detail!"[14]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"One day, the Vrishni heroes numbering Sārana amongst them, saw Viçwāmitra and Kanwa and Nārada arrived at Dwārakā.[15] Afflicted by the rod of chastisement wielded by the deities, those heroes, causing Cāmva to be disguised like a woman, approached those ascetics and said,[16]—'This one is the wife of Vabhru of immeasurable energy who is desirous of having a son. Ye Rishis, do you know for certain what this one will bring forth?'[17] Hear now, O king, what those ascetics, attempted to be thus deceived, said,[18]—'This heir of Vāsudeva, by name Cāmva, will bring forth a fierce iron bolt for the destruction of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas![19] Ye wicked and cruel ones, intoxicated with pride, through that iron bolt ye will become the exterminators of your race with the exception of Rāma and Janārddana![20] The blessed hero armed with the plough will enter the ocean, casting off his body, while a hunter of the name of Jarā will pierce the high-souled Krishna while lying on the ground!'[21]—Endeavoured to be deceived by those

wicked ones, those ascetics, with eyes red in wrath, looked at each other and uttered those words. Having said so they then proceeded to see Keçava.[22] The slayer of Madhu, informed of what had taken place, summoned all the Vrishnis and told them of it. Possessed of great intelligence and fully acquainted with what the end of his race would be, he simply said that that which was destined would surely happen.[23] Hrishikeça having said so, entered his mansion. The Lord of the universe did not wish to ordain otherwise.[24] When the next day came, Cāmva actually brought forth an iron bolt through which all the individuals in the race of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas became consumed into ashes.[25] Indeed, for the destruction of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, Cāmva brought forth, through that curse, a fierce iron bolt that looked like a gigantic messenger of death. The fact was duly reported to the king.[26] In great distress of mind, the king (Ugrasena) caused that iron bolt to be reduced into fine powder. Men were employed, O king, to cast that powder into the sea.[27] At the command of Ahuka, of Janārddana, of Rāma, and of the high-souled Vabhru, it was, again, proclaimed throughout the city,[28] that from that day, among all the Vrishnis and the Andhakas no one should manufacture wines and intoxicating spirits of any kind,[29] and that whoever would secretly manufacture wines and spirits should be impaled alive with all his kinsmen.[30] Through fear of the king, and knowing that it was the command of Rāma also of unimpeachable deeds, all the citizens bound themselves by a rule and abstained from manufacturing wines and spirits."[31]

Section II.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"While the Vrishnis and the Andhakas were thus endeavouring (to avoid the impending calamity), the embodied form of Time (Death) every day wandered about their houses.[1] He looked like a man of terrible and fierce aspect. Of bald head, he was black and tawny of complexion. Sometimes he was seen by the Vrishnis as he peered into their houses.[2] The mighty bowmen among the Vrishnis shot hun-

dreds and thousands of shafts at him, but none of these succeeded in piercing him, for he was none else than the Destroyer of all creatures.[3] Day by day strong winds blew, and many were the evil omens that arose, awful and foreboding the destruction of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas.[4] The streets swarmed with rats and mice. Earthen pots showed cracks or broken from no apparent cause. At night, the rats and mice ate away the hair and nails of slumbering men.[5] Sārikās chirped, sitting within the houses of the Vrishnis. The noise made by those birds ceased not for even a short while by day or by night.[6] The *Sārashas* were heard to imitate the hooting of the owl, and goats imitated the cries, O Bhārata, of jackals.[7] Many birds appeared, impelled by Death, that were pale of complexion but that had legs red of hue. Pigeons were seen to always disport in the houses of the Vrishnis.[8] Asses were born of kine, and elephants of mules. Cats were born of bitches, and mouse of the mungoose.[9] The Vrishnis, committing sinful acts, were not seen to feel any shame. They showed disregard for Brāhmanas and the Pitris and the deities.[10] They insulted and humiliated their preceptors and seniors. Only Rāma and Janārddana acted differently. Wives deceived their husbands, and husbands deceived wives.[11] Fires, when ignited, cast their flames towards the left. Sometimes they threw out flames whose splendour was blue and red.[12] The Sun, whether when rising or setting over that city, seemed to be surrounded by headless trunks of human form.[13] In cook-rooms, upon food that was clean and well-boiled, were seen, when it was served out for eating, innumerable worms of diverse kinds.[14] When Brāhmanas, receiving gifts, blessed the day or the hour (fixed for this or that undertaking) or when high-souled men were engaged in silent recitations, the heavy trend was heard of innumerable men running about but no one could be seen to whom the sound of such tread could be ascribed.[15] The constellations were repeatedly seen to be struck by the planets. None amongst the Yādavas could, however, obtain a sight of the constellation of his birth.[16] When the Pānchajanya was blown in their houses, asses of dissonant and awful voice, brayed aloud from every

direction.*[17] Beholding these signs that indicated the perverse course of Time, and seeing that the day of the new moon concided with the thirteenth (and the fourteenth) lunation, Hrishikeça, summoning the Yādavas, said unto them these words:[18]—'The fourteenth lunation has been made the fifteenth by Rāhu once more. Such a day had appeared at the time of the great battle of the Bharatas. It has once more appeared, it seems, for our destruction.'†[19]—The slayer of Keçi, *viz.*, Janārddana, thinking upon the omens that Time showed, understood that the thirtysixth year had come, and that what Gāndhāri, burning with grief on account of the death of her sons, and deprived of all her kinsmen, had said was about to transpire.[20-21] 'The present is exactly similar to that time which Yudhishthira had noted at sight of those awful omens which appeared when the two armies were arrayed in order of battle.'[22] Vāsudeva, having said so, endeavoured to bring about those occurrences which would make Gāndhāri's words true. That chastiser of foes commanded the Vrishnis to make a pilgrimage to some sacred water.[23] The messengers forthwith proclaimed at the command of Keçava that the Vrishnis should make a journey to the sea-coast for bathing in the sacred waters of the ocean."[24]

Section III.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"At that time the Vrishni ladies dreamt every night that a woman of black complexion and white teeth, entering their abodes, laughed aloud and ran through Dwārakā, snatching from them the auspicious threads in their wrists.[1] The men dreamt that terrible vultures,

---

* The blare of the conch is regarded as a good omen. In the houses of the Yādavas, however, as soon as a conch was blown, it was followed by the bray of asses all around. That was an evil omen.—T.

† The moon has altogether fifteen lunations. Sometime two and even three lunations coincide in course of a single solar day. The last phenomenon is called 'Tryahasparça.' Rāhu is, in really, the descending node of the moon. A Tryahasparça, brought about by the action of Rāhu, is looked upon as a very fatal day.—T.

entering their houses and fire-chambers, gorged themselves on their bodies.[2] Their ornaments and umbrellas and standards and armour were seen to be taken away by terrible Rākshas.[3] In the very sight of the Vrishnis, the discus of Krishna, given by Agni, made of iron and having its nave composed of hardest adamant, ascended into the firmament.[4] In the very sight of Dāruka, the excellent car of Vāsudeva, of solar effulgence, and properly equipt, was taken away by the horses yoked unto it. Those foremost of steeds, numbering four, (*viz.*, Caivya, Sugriva, Meghapushpa and Valāhaka), and endued with the speed of thought, fled away, dragging the car after them along the surface of the ocean.[5] The two great standards of Krishna's car and Valadeva's car, *viz.*, that with the device of Garuda and that bearing the device of the palmyra, which were reverently worshipped by those two heroes, were taken away by Apsaras who, day and night, called upon the Vrishnis and the Andhakas to set out on a pilgrimage to some sacred water.[6] When these omens were seen and heard, those foremost of men, *viz.*, the mighty car-warriors of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, became desirous of setting out, with their whole families, on a pilgrimage to some sacred water.[7] They prepared diverse kinds of viands and edibles and diverse kinds of wines and meat.[8] The troops of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, blazing with beauty and endued with fierce energy, then set out from the city on cars and steeds and elephants.[9] The Yādavas then, with their wives, proceeded to Prabhāsa and took up their residence there, each in the (temporary) habitation that was assigned to him, and all having an abundance of provisions consisting of edibles and drink.[10] Hearing that they had taken up their abode on the sea-coast, Uddhava, the wisest of men, who was, besides, well-versed in Yoga, proceeded there and took their leave (for departing).[11] Krishna, with joined hands, saluted Uddhava, and seeing him bent on departing (from the world) and knowing that the destruction of the Vrishnis was at hand, did not feel any disposition to prevent him.[12] The mighty car-warriors among the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, whose hour had come, then saw Uddhava proceed on his great journey, filling the whole welkin

with his splendour.[13] The Vrishnis, mixing with wine the food that had been cooked for high-souled Brāhmanas, gave it away unto monkeys and apes.[14] Those heroes of fierce energy then began their high rivels, of which drinking formed the chief feature, at Prabhāsa. The entire field echoed with the blare of hundreds of trumpets and abounded with actors and dancers plying their vocations.[15] In the very sight of Krishna, Rāma began to drink, with Kritavarman, Yuyudhāna and Gada and Vabhru also did the same.[16] Then Yuyudhāna, inebriated with wine, derisively laughing at and insulting Kritavarman in the midst of that assembly, said,[17]—'What Kshatriya is there who, armed with weapons, will slay men locked in the embraces of sleep and, therefore, already dead? Hence, O son of Hridikā, the Yādavas will never tolerate what thou hast done!'[18] When Yuyudhāna had said these words, Pradyumna, that foremost of car-warriors, applauded them, expressing his disregard for the son of Hridikā.[19] Highly incensed at this, Kritavarman, emphasising his disregard for Sātyaki by pointing to him with his left hand, said these words:[20]—'Professing thyself to be a hero, how couldst thou so cruelly slay the armless Bhuriçravas who, on the field of battle, (gave up all hostile intentions and) sat in *prāya*?'[21] Hearing these words of his, Keçava, that slayer of hostile heroes, giving way to wrath, cast an angry glance at Kritavarman.[22] Then Sātyaki informed the slayer of Madhu as to how Kritavarman had behaved towards Satrājit for taking away from him the celebrated gem *Syamantaka*.[23] Hearing the narrative, Satyabhāmā, giving way to wrath and tears, approached Keçava and sitting on his lap enhanced his anger (for Kritavarman).[24] Then rising up in a rage, Sātyaki said, —'I swear to thee by Truth that I shall soon cause this one to follow in the wake of the five sons of Draupadi, and of Dhrishtadyumna and Cikhandin,—they, *viz.*, that were slain by this sinful wretch, while they were asleep, with the assistance of Drona's son. O thou of slender waist, Kritavarman's period of life and fame have come to their end.'[25-27] Having said these words, Sātyaki rushed at Kritavarman and severed his head with a sword in the very sight of Keçava.[28] Yuyu-

dhāna, having achieved this feat, began to strike down others there present. Hrishikeça ran to prevent him from doing further mischief.[29] At that time, however, O monarch, the Bhojas and Andhakas, impelled by the perverseness of the hour that had come upon them, all became as one man and surrounded the son of Cini.[30] Janārddana of mighty energy, knowing the character of the hour, stood unmoved without giving way to anger at the sight of those heroes rushing in wrath at Sātyaki from every side.[31] Urged by fate and inebriated with drink, they began to strike Yuyudhāna with the pots from which they had been eating.[32] When the son of Cini was being thus assaulted, Rukmini's son became highly enraged. He rushed forward for rescuing Sātyaki who was engaged with the Bhojas and the Andhakas.[33] Endued with might of arms and wealth of energy, those two heroes exerted themselves with great courage. But as the odds were overwhelming, both of them were slain in the very sight of Krishna.[34] The delighter of the Yadus, beholding his own son, and the son of Cini too, slain, took up, in wrath, a handful of the *Erakā* grass that grew there.[35] That handful of grass became a terrible bolt of iron endued with the energy of the thunder-bolt. With it Krishna slew all those that came before him.[36] Then the Andhakas and the Bhojas, the Caineyas and the Vrishnis, urged by Time, struck one another in that fearful melee.[37] Indeed, O king, whoever amongst them took up in wrath a few blades of the *Erakā* grass, these, in his hands, became soon converted into a thunder-bolt, O puissant one![38] Every blade of grass there was seen to be converted into a terrible iron bolt. All this, know, O king, was due to the curse denounced by Brāhmanas.[39] He who hurled a blade of grass saw that it pierced through even such things as were utterly impenetrable. In fact, every blade was seen to become a terrible bolt having the force of thunder.[40] Son killed sire, and sire killed son, O Bhārata! Inebriated with wine, they rushed and fell upon one another.[41] The Kukuras and the Andhakas met with destruction like insects rushing at a blazing fire. As they were thus being slaughtered, no one among them thought of escaping by

flight.[42] Knowing that the hour of destruction had come, the mighty-armed Keçava stood there, eyeing everything. Indeed, the slayer of Madhu stood, raising a bolt of Iron formed of a blade of grass.[43] Beholding that Cāmva was slain, as also Chārudeshna and Pradyumna and Aniruddha, Mādhava became filled with rage.[44] Beholding Gada lying dead on the ground, his wrath became enhanced. The wielder of Cārnga and the discus and the mace then exterminated the Vrishnis and the Andhakas.[45] Hear, O king, what that conquerer of hostile towns, *viz.*, Vabhru of mighty energy, and Dāruka, then said to Krishna.[46]—'O holy one, a very large number of men has been slain by thee! Turn now to where Rāma has gone! We wish to go there where he has proceeded.'"[47]

SECTION IV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Then Dāruka, and Keçava and Vabhru left that spot, following in the wake of Rāma (for discovering his retreat). They beheld that hero of infinite energy sitting thoughtfully, reclining his back against a tree, in a solitary spot of earth.[1] Finding Rāma of great soul, Krishna commanded Dāruka, saying,—'Going to the Kurus, inform Pārtha of this great slaughter of the Yadus.[2] Let Arjuna come here quickly, hearing of the destruction of the Yādavas through the Brāhmanas' curse.' Thus addressed, Dāruka, deprived of his senses by grief, proceeded on a car to the (capital of the) Kurus.[3] After Dāruka had gone away, Keçava, seeing Vabhru waiting on him, told him these words:—'Do thou go quickly for protecting the ladies. Let not robbers do them any injury, tempted by the wealth (that is with them).'[4] Thus commanded by Keçava, Vabhru, still helpless with wine but cheerless at the slaughter of his kinsmen, departed. He had rested for a while by the side of Keçava, but as soon as he had proceeded to a distance, the iron-bolt, attaching itself to a mallet in the hands of a hunter, suddenly sprang of itself upon that solitary survivor of the Yādava race and slew him who also had been included in the

curse of the Brāhmanas.*[5] Beholding Vabhru slain, Keçava of great energy addressed his elder brother and said,—'Do thou, O Rāma, wait for me here till I place the ladies under the care of kinsmen.'[6] Entering the city of Dwārāvati, Janārddana said these words unto his father,—'Do thou protect all the ladies of our house, till Dhananjaya comes![7] At the skirts of the forest Rāma is waiting for me. I shall meet him today. This great carnage of the Yadus has been beheld by me even as I beheld before the carnage of those Kshatriyas who were the foremost ones of Kuru's race.[8] It is impossible for me to see this city of the Yādavas without the Yadus beside me.† Know that proceeding to the woods I shall practise penances with Rāma in my company.'[9] Having said these words, Krishna touched the feet of his father with his head, and quickly left his presence. Then a loud wail of sorrow arose from the ladies and children of his house.[10] Hearing that loud sound of wailing uttered by the weeping ladies, Keçava retraced his foot-steps and said unto them,—'Arjuna will come here. That foremost of men will relieve you of your grief!'[11] Proceeding then to the forest, Keçava beheld Rāma sitting in a solitary spot thereof. He also saw that Rāma had set himself to Yoga and that from out his mouth was issuing a mighty snake.[12] The colour of that snake was white. Leaving the human body (in which he had dwelt so long), that high-souled Nāga, of a thousand heads and having a form as large as that of a mountain, endued besides with red eyes, proceeded along that way which led to the ocean.[13] Ocean himself, and many celestial snakes, and many sacred Rivers were there, for receiving him with honour. There were Karkotaka and Vāsuki and Takshaka and Prithuçravas and Varuna and Kunjara,[14] and Miçri and Cankha and Kumuda

---

* The grammatical connection of this Verse, as explained by Nilakantha, is, 'kute (lauha mudgare) yuktam (vaddham) mausalam Brahmānuçaptam Vabhrum (swayameva nipatya) avadhit.' The sense then is that the iron bolt, inspiring a mallet in the hands of a hunter, ran of itself at Vabhru who was under the curse and killed him.—T.

† The sense is that I cannot bear to see this city of the Yadus divested as it is of those heroes.—T.

and Pundarika, and the high-souled Dhritarāshtra, and Hrāda and Krātha and Citikantha of fierce energy, and Chakramanda and Atishanda,[15] and that foremost of Nāgas called Durmukha, and Amvarisha, and king Varuna himself, O monarch. Advancing forward and offering him the *Arghya* and water to wash his feet, and with diverse other rites, they all worshipped the mighty Nāga and saluted him by making the usual enquiries.[16] After his brother had thus departed from the (human) world, Vāsudeva of celestial vision, who was fully acquainted with the end of all things, wandered for sometime in that lonely forest thoughtfully. Endued with great energy he then sat down on the bare earth.[17] He had thought before this of everything that had been foreshadowed by the words uttered by Gāndhāri in former days. He also recollected the words that Durvāsas had spoken at the time his body was smeared by that Rishi with the remnant of the *Pāyasa* he had eaten (while a guest at Krishna's house).[18] The high-souled one, thinking of the destruction of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, as also of the previous slaughter of the Kurus, concluded that the hour (for his own departure from the world) had come. He then restrained his senses (in Yoga).[19] Conversant with the truth of every topic, Vāsudeva, though he was the Supreme Deity, wished to die for dispelling all doubts and establishing a certainty of results (in the matter of human existence), simply for upholding the three worlds and for making the words of Atri's son true.*[20] Having restrained all his senses, speech, and mind, Krishna laid himself down in high Yoga. A fierce hunter of the name of Jarā then came there, desirous of deer.[21] The hunter, mistaking Keçava, who was stratched on the earth in high Yoga, for a deer, pierced him at the heel with a shaft and quickly came to that spot for capturing his prey.[22] Coming up, Jarā beheld a man dressed in yellow robes, rapt in Yoga, and endued with

---

* The allusion is to the impenetrability of every part of Krishna's body save his feet. Atri's son, Durvāsas, had made Krishna invulnerable except the soles of the feet. Krishna wished to die in such a manner as would make the Rishi's words true.—T.

many arms. Regarding himself an offender, and filled with fear, he touched the feet of Keçava.[23] The high-souled one comforted him and then ascended upwards, filling the entire welkin with splendour.[24] When he reached Heaven, Vāsava and the twin Açwins and Rudra and the Adityas and the Vasus and the Viçwedevas, and Munis and Siddhas and many foremost ones among the Gandharvas, with the Apsaras, advanced to receive him.[25] Then, O king, the illustrious Nārāyana of fierce energy, the Creator and Destroyer of all,—that preceptor of Yoga—filling Heaven with his splendour, reached his own inconceivable region.[26] Krishna then met the deities and (celestial) Rishis and Chāranas, O king, and the foremost ones among the Gandharvas and many beautiful Apsarās and Siddhas and Sāddhyas. All of them, bending in humility, worshipped him.[27] The deities all saluted him, O monarch, and many foremost of Munis and Rishis worshipped him who was the Lord of all. The Gandharvas waited on him, hymning his praises, and Indra also joyfully praised him."[28]

Section V.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Meanwhile Dāruka, going to the Kurus and seeing those mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, the sons of Prithā, informed them of how the Vrishnis had slain one another with iron bolts.[1] Hearing that the Vrishnis along with the Bhojas and Andhakas and Kukuras had all been slain, the Pāndavas, burning with grief, became highly agitated.[2] Then Arjuna, the dear friend of Keçava, bidding them farewell, set out for seeing his maternal uncle. He said that destruction would soon overtake everything.[3] Proceeding to the city of the Vrishnis with Dāruka in his company, O puissant king, that hero beheld that the city of Dwārakā looked like a woman reft of her husband.[4] Those ladies who had, before this, the very Lord of the universe for their protector, were now lordless. Seeing that Pārtha had come for protecting them, they all set up a loud wail.[5] Sixteen thousand ladies had been wedded to Vāsudeva. Indeed, as soon as they saw Arjuna arrive, they uttered a loud cry of sorrow.[6] As soon as the Kuru

prince met those beauteous ones deprived of the protection of Krishna and of their sons as well, he was unable to look at them, his vision being obstructed by tears.[7] The Dwārakā-river had the Vrishnis and the Andhakas for its water, steeds for its fishes, cars for its rafts, the sound of musical instruments and the rattle of cars for its waves, houses and mansions and public squares for its lakes. Gems and precious stones were its abundant moss. The walls of adamant were the garlands of flowers that floated on it. The streets and roads were the strong currents running in eddies along its surface. The great open squares were the still large lakes in its course. Rāma and Krishna were its two mighty alligators. That agreeable river now seemed to Arjuna to be the fierce Vaitarani bound up with Time's net.[8-10] Indeed, the son of Vāsava, endued with great intelligence, beheld the city to look even thus, reft as it was of the Vrishni heroes.[11] Shorn of beauty, and perfectly cheerless, it presented the aspect of a lotus flower in the season of winter. Beholding the sight that Dwārakā presented, and seeing the numerous wives of Krishna, Arjuna wailed aloud with eyes bathed in tears and fell down on the earth.[12] Then Satyā the daughter of Satrājit, and Rukmini too, O king, fell down beside Dhananjaya and uttered loud wails of grief.[13] Raising him then they caused him to be seated on a golden seat. The ladies sat around that high-souled one, giving expression to their feelings.[14] Praising Govinda and talking with the ladies, the son of Pāndu comforted them and then proceeded to see his maternal uncle."[15]

Section VI.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"The Kuru prince beheld the heroic and high-souled Anakadundubhi lying on the ground, and burning with grief on account of his sons.[1] The broad-chested and mighty-armed son of Prithā, more afflicted than his uncle, with eyes bathed in tears, touched his uncle's feet, O Bhārata.[2] The mighty-armed Anakadundubhi wished to smell the head of his sister's son but failed to do it, O slayer of foes![3] The old man of mighty-arms, deeply afflicted, embraced

Pārtha with his arms and wept aloud, remembering his sons, brothers, grandsons, daughter's sons, and friends.[4]

"Vasudeva said,—'Without beholding those heroes, O Arjuna, who had subjugated all the kings of the Earth and the Daityas a hundred times, I am still alive! I see, that I am difficult to die![5] Those two heroes who were the dear disciples of Arjuna, and who were much regarded by him, alas, O Pārtha, through their fault, the Vrishnis have been destroyed![6] Those two who were regarded as Atirathas amongst the foremost of the Vrishnis, and referring to whom in course of conversation thou wert wont to indulge in pride,[7] and who, O chief of Kuru's race, were ever dear to Krishna himself,—alas, those two, O Dhananjaya, have been the chief causes of the destruction of the Vrishnis![8] I do not censure the son of Cini or the son of Hridikā, O Arjuna! I do not censure Akrura or the son of Rukmini. No doubt, the curse (of the Rishis) is the sole cause![9] How is it that that lord of the universe, *viz.*, the slayer of Madhu, who had put forth his prowess for achieving the destruction of Keçin and Kansa, and Chaidya swelling with pride, and Ekalavya the son of the ruler of the Nishādas, and the Kalingas and the Māgadhas, and the Gāndhāras and the king of Kāçi, and many rulers assembled together in the midst of the desert, many heroes belonging to the East and the South, and many kings of the mountainous regions,—alas, how could he remain indifferent to such a calamity as the curse denounced by the Rishis?[10-12] Thyself, Nārada, and the Munis, knew him to be the eternal and sinless Govinda, the Deity of unfading glory![13] Alas, being puissant Vishnu himself, he witnessed, without interfering, the destruction of his kinsmen! My son must have himself allowed all this to happen.[14] He was the Lord of the universe. He did not, however, wish to falsify the words of Gāndhāri and the Rishis, O scorcher of foes![15] In thy very sight, O hero, thy grandson, who had been slain by Açwatthāman, was revived through his energy.[16] That friend, however, of yours did not wish to protect his kinsmen. Beholding his sons and grandsons and brothers and friends lying dead, he said unto me these words, O chief of Bharata's race,—The

destruction of this our race has at last come![17-18] Vibhatsu will come to this city, *viz.*, Dwārāvati. Tell him what has occurred, *viz.*, this great carnage of the Vrishnis.[19] I have no doubt that as soon as he will hear of the destruction of the Yadus, that hero of mighty energy will come here without any loss of time.[20] Know, O father, that I am Arjuna and Arjuna is myself. That should be done by thee which he would say.[21] The son of Pāndu will do what is best for the women and the children. Even he will perform thy funeral rites.[22] This city of Dwārāvati, after Arjuna's departure, will, with its walls and edifices, be swallowed up by the ocean without any delay.[23] As regards myself, retiring to some sacred place, I shall bide my hour, with the intelligent Rāma in my company, observing strict vows all the while![24]—Having said these words unto me, Hrishikeça of inconceivable prowess, leaving me with the children, has gone away to some spot which I do not know.[25] Thinking of those two high-souled brothers of thine, as also of the terrible carnage of my kinsmen, I have abstained from all food, and am emaciated with grief![26] I shall neither eat, nor live. By good luck thou meetest me, O son of Pāndu. Do thou accomplish all, O Pārtha, that Krishna has said![27] This kingdom, with all these women, and all the wealth here, is thine now, O son of Prithā! As regards myself, O slayer of foes, I shall cast off my life-breaths dear though they be!' "[28]

Section VII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"That scorcher of foes, *viz.*, Vibhatsu, thus addressed by his maternal uncle, replied, with great cheerlessness of heart, unto Vasudeva who was equally cheerless, saying,[1]—'O uncle, I am unable to look at this Earth when she is reft of that hero of Vrishni's race and those my other kinsmen![2] The king and Bhimasena and Sahadeva and Nakula and Yājnaseni, numbering the sixth, are of the same mind with myself, in this matter.[3] The time has come for the departure of the king also. Know this that the hour of

our departure too is at hand. Thou art the foremost of those that are well conversant with the course of time.[4] I shall, however, O chastiser of foes, first remove to Indraprastha the women of the Vrishni race as also the children and the aged.'[5] Having said so unto his uncle, Arjuna next addressed Dāruka, saying,—'I wish to see without any delay the chief officers of the Vrishni heroes.'[6] Having uttered these words, the heroic Arjuna, grieving for those great car-warriors (who had been slain), entered the great hall of the Yādavas (where they used to hold their court), called Sudharmā.[7] When he had taken his seat there, all the citizens. including the Brāhmanas, and all the ministers of state, came and stood surrounding him.[8] Then Pārtha, more grieved than they, addressed those grieving and cheerless citizens and officers who were more dead than alive, and said these words that were well suited to the occasion :[9]—'I shall take away with me the remnants of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas! The sea will soon engulf this city.[10] Equip all your cars and place on them all your wealth. This Vajra (the grandson of Krishna) will be your king at Cakraprastha![11] On the seventh day from this, at sunrise, we shall set out. Make your preparations without delay!'[12] Thus addressed by Prithā's son of pure deeds, all of them hastened their preparations with eagerness for achieving their safety.[13] Arjuna passed that night in the mansion of Keçava. He was suddenly overwhelmed with great grief and stupefaction.[14] When morning dawned, Vasudeva of great energy and prowess attained, through the aid of Yoga, to the highest goal.[15] A loud and heart-rending sound of wailing was heard in Vasudeva's mansion, uttered by the weeping ladies.[16] They were seen with dishevelled hair and divested of ornaments and floral wreaths. Beating their breasts with their hands, they indulged in heart-rending lamentations.[17] Those foremost of women, *viz.*, Devaki and Bhadrā and Rohini and Madirā threw themselves on the bodies of their lord.[18] Then Pārtha caused the body of his uncle to be carried out on a costly vehicle borne on the shoulders of men.[19] It was followed by all the citizens of Dwārakā and the people of the provinces, all of whom, deeply afflicted by grief, had

been well-affected towards the deceased hero.[20] Before that vehicle were borne the umbrella which had been held over his head at the conclusion of the horse-sacrifice he had achieved while living, and also the blazing fires he had daily worshipped, with the priests that had used to attend to them.[21] The body of the hero was followed by his wives decked in ornaments and surrounded by thousands of women and thousands of their daughters-in-law.[22] The last rites were then performed at that spot which had been agreeable to him while he was alive.[23] The four wives of that heroic son of Cura ascended the funeral pyre and were consumed with the body of their lord. All of them attained to those regions of felicity which were his[24] The son of Pāndu burnt the body of his uncle together with those four wives of his, using diverse kinds of scents and perfumed wood.[25] As the funeral pyre blazed up, a loud sound was heard of the burning wood and other combustible materials, along with the clear chaunt of Sāmans and the wailing of the citizens and others who witnessed the rite.[26] After it was all over, the boys of the Vrishni and Andhaka races, headed by Vajra, as also the ladies, offered oblations of water to the high-souled hero.[27] Phālguna, who was careful in observing every duty, having caused this duty to be performed, proceeded, O chief of Bharata's race, next to the place where the Vrishnis were slaughtered.[28] The Kuru prince, beholding them lying slaughtered all around, became exceedingly cheerless. He, however, did what required to be done in view of that which had happened.[29] The last rites were performed, according to the order of seniority, unto the bodies of those heroes slain by the iron bolts born, by virtue of the curse denounced by the Brāhmanas, of the blades of *Erakā* grass.[30] Searching out the bodies then of Rāma and Vāsudeva, Arjuna caused them to be burnt by persons skilled in that act.[31] The son of Pāndu, having next performed duly those rites that are done to the manes of the dead, quickly set out on the seventh day, mounting on his car.[32] The widows of the Vrishni heroes, wailing aloud, followed the high-souled son of Pāndu, *viz.*, Dhananjaya, on cars drawn by bullocks and mules and camels.[33] All

were in deep affliction. The servants of the Vrishnis, their horsemen, and their car-warriors too, followed the procession.[34] The citizens and the inhabitants of the country, at the command of Prithā's son, set out at the same time and proceeded, surrounding that cavalcade destitute of heroes and numbering only women and the aged and the children.[35] The warriors who fought from the backs of elephants proceeded on elephants as huge as hills. The foot-soldiers also set out, together with the reserves.[36] The children of the Andhaka and the Vrishni races, all followed Arjuna. The Brāhmanas and Kshatriyas, and Vaiçyas, and wealthy Cudras,[37] set out, keeping before them the sixteen thousand women that had formed Vāsudeva's harem, and Vajra, the grandson of the intelligent Krishna.[38] The widows of the other heroes of the Bhoja, the Vrishni, and the Andhaka races, lordless now, that set out with Arjuna, numbered many millions.[39] That foremost of car-warriors, that conqueror of hostile towns, *viz.*, the son of Prithā, escorted this vast procession of Vrishnis, which still abounded with wealth, and which looked like a veritable ocean.[40] After all the people had set out, the ocean, that home of sharks and alligators, flooded Dwārakā, which still teemed with wealth of every kind, with its waters.[41] Whatever portion of the ground was passed over, ocean immediately flooded over with his waters.[42] Beholding this wonderful sight, the inhabitants of Dwārakā walked faster and faster, saying,—'Wonderful is the course of fate!'[43] Dhanajaya, after abandoning Dwārakā, proceeded by slow marches, causing the Vrishni women to rest in pleasant forests and mountains and by the sides of delightful streams.[44] Arrived at the country of the five waters, the puissant Dhananjaya planted a rich encampment in the midst of a land that abounded with corn and kine and other animals.[45] Beholding those lordless widows escorted by Prithā's son alone, O Bhārata, the robbers felt a great temptation (for plunder).[46] Then those sinful wretches, with hearts overwhelmed by cupidity, *viz.*, those Abhiras of ill omen, assembled together and held a consultation.[47] They said,—'Here there is only one bowman, *viz.*, Arjuna. The cavalcade consists of children and the old. He

escorts them, transgressing us. The warriors (of the Vrishnis) are without energy.'[48] Then those robbers, numbering by thousands, and armed with clubs, rushed towards the processsion of the Vrishnis, desirous of plunder.[49] Urged by the perverse course of time, they fell upon that vast concourse, frightening it with loud leonine shouts and desirous of slaughter.[50] The son of Kunti, suddenly ceasing to advance along the path, turned, with his followers, towards the place where the robbers had attacked the procession. Smiling the while, that mighty-armed warrior addressed the assailants, saying,[51] —'Ye sinful wretches, forbear, if ye love your lives! Ye will rue this when I pierce your bodies with my shafts and take your lives!'[52] Though thus addressed by that hero, they disregarded his words, and though repeatedly dissuaded, they fell upon Arjuna.[53] Then Arjuna endeavoured to string his large, indestructible, celestial bow with some effort.[54] He succeeded with great difficulty in stringing it, when the battle had become furious. He then began to think of his celestial weapons but they would not come to his mind.[55] Beholding that furious battle, the loss of the might of his arm, and the non-appearance of his celestial weapons, Arjuna became greatly ashamed.[56] The Vrishni warriors including the foot-soldiers, the elephant-warriors, and the car-men, failed to rescue those Vrishni women that were being snatched away by the robbers.[57] The concourse was very large. The robbers assailed it at different points. Arjuna tried his best to protect it, but could not succeed.[58] In the very sight of all the warriors, many foremost of ladies were dragged away, while others went away with the robbers of their own accord.[59] The puissant Arjuna, supported by the servants of the Vrishnis, struck the robbers with shafts sped from Gāndiva.[60] Soon, however, O king, his shafts were exhausted. In former days his shafts had been inexhaustible. Now, however, they proved otherwise.[61] Finding his shafts exhausted, he became deeply afflicted with grief. The son of Indra then began to strike the robbers with the horns of his bow.[62] Those Mlechchas, however, O Janamejaya, in the very sight of Pārtha, retreated, taking away with them many foremost ladies of the Vrishnis and Andha-

kas.[63] The puissant Dhananjaya regarded it all as the work of destiny. Filled with sorrow he breathed heavy sighs,[64] at the thought of the non-appearance of his (celestial) weapons, the loss of the might of his arms, the refusal of his bow to obey him; and the exhaustion of his shafts.[65] Regarding it all as the work of destiny, he became exceedingly cheerless. He then ceased, O king, to make further efforts, saying, he had not the power which he had before.[66] The high-souled one, taking with him the remnant of the Vrishni women, and the wealth that was still with them, reached Kurukshetra.[67] Thus bringing with him the remnant of the Vrishnis, he established them at different places.[68] He established the son of Kritavarman at the city called Mārttikāvat, with the remnant of the women of the Bhoja king.[69] Escorting the remainder, with children and old men, and woman, the son of Pāndu established them, who were reft of heroes, in the city of Indraprastha.[70] The dear son of Yuyudhāna, with a company of old men and children and women, the righteous-souled Arjuna established on the banks of the Saraswati.[71] The rule of Indraprastha was given to Vajra. The widows of Akrura then desired to retire into the woods. Vajra asked them repeatedly to desist, but they did not listen to him.[72] Rukmini, the princess of Gāndhāra, Caivyā, Haimavati, and queen Jāmvavati, ascended the funeral pyre.[73] Satyabhāmā and the other dear wives of Krishna entered the woods, O king, resolved to set themselves to the practice of penances.[74] They began to live on fruits and roots and pass their time in the contemplation of Hari. Going beyond the Himavat, they took up their abode in a place called Kalāpa.[75] Those men who had followed Arjuna from Dwārāvati, were distributed into groups, and bestowed upon Vajra.[76] Having done all these acts suited to the occasion, Arjuna, with eyes bathed in tears, then entered the retreat of Vyāsa. There he beheld the Island-born Rishi seated at his ease."[77]

Section VIII.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"As Arjuna entered the asylum of the truthful Rishi, he beheld the son of Satyavati seated in a secluded spot.[1] Approaching that Rishi of high vows and endued with a knowledge of all duties, he said,—'I am Arjuna'—and then awaited his pleasure.[2] Satyavati's son, endued with high penances, answered, saying,—'Welcome!' Of tranquil soul, the great Muni further said,—'Take thy seat.'[3] Seeing that the son of Prithā was exceedingly cheerless and breathing heavy sighs repeatedly and filled with despair, Vyāsa addressed him, saying,[4]—'Hast thou been sprinkled with water from anybody's nails or hair, or the end of anybody's cloth, or from the mouth of a jar? Hast thou had sexual congress with any woman before the cessation of her functional flow? Hast thou slain a Brāhmana?[5] Hast thou been vanquished in battle? Thou lookest like one shorn of prosperity! I do not know that thou hast been defeated by any one. Why then, O chief of Bharata's race, this exceedingly dejected aspect? It behooveth thee, O son of Prithā, to tell me all, if, indeed, there be no harm in telling it!'[6]

"Arjuna said,—'He whose complexion was like that of a (newly-risen) cloud, he whose eyes were like a pair of large lotus petals, *viz.*, Krishna, has, with Rāma, cast off his body and ascended to Heaven.[7] At Prabhāsa, through iron bolts generated by the curse denounced by Brāhmanas, the destruction has taken place of the Vrishni heroes. Awful has that carnage been, and not even a single hero has escaped.[8] The heroes of the Bhoja, the Andhaka, and the Vrishni races, O Brāhmana, who were all endued with high souls, great might, and leonine pride, have slaughtered one another in battle.[9] Possessed of arms that looked like maces of iron, and capable of bearing the strokes of heavy clubs and darts, alas, they have all been slain with blades of *Erakā* grass! Behold the perverse course of Time![10] Five hundred thousand mighty-armed warriors have thus been laid low. Encountering one another, they have met with destruction.[11] Thinking repeatedly of this carnage of the Yādava warriors of im-

measurable energy and of the illustrious Krishna, I fail to derive peace of mind.[12] The death of the wielder of Cārnga is as incredible as the drying up of the ocean, the displacement of a mountain, the falling down of the vault of heaven, or the cooling property of fire.[13] Deprived of the company of the Vrishni heroes, I desire not to live in this world.[14] Another incident has happened that is more painful than this, O thou that art possessed of wealth of penances! Repeatedly thinking of it, my heart is breaking![15] In my very sight, O Brāhmana, thousands of Vrishni ladies were carried away by the Ābhiras of the country of the five waters, who assailed us.[16] Taking up my bow I found myself unequal to even string it. The might that had existed in my arms seemed to have disappeared on that occasion.[17] O great ascetic, my weapons of diverse kinds failed to make their appearance. Soon, again, my shafts became exhausted.[18] That person of immeasurable soul, of four arms, wielding the conch, the discus, and the mace, clad in yollow robes, dark of complexion, and possessing eyes resembling lotus-petals, is no longer seen by me! Alas, reft of Govinda, what have I to live for, dragging my life in sorrow?[19] He who used to stalk in advance of my car, that divine form endued with great splendour and unfading puissance, consuming as he proceeded all hostile warriors, can no longer be seen by me.[20] No longer beholding him who by his energy first burnt all hostile troops whom I afterwards despatched with shafts sped from Gāndiva, I am filled with grief and my head swims, O best of men! Penetrated with cheerlessness and despair, I fail to obtain peace of mind![21-22] I dare not live, reft of the heroic Janārddana. As soon as I heard that Vishnu had left the Earth, my eyes became dim and all things disappeared from my vision.[23] O best of men, it behooveth thee to tell me what is good for me now, for I am now a wanderer with an empty heart, despoiled of my kinsmen and of my prowess![24]

"Vyāsa said,—'The mighty car-warriors of the Vrishni and the Andhaka races have all been consumed by the Brāhmana's curse. O chief of Kuru's race, it behooveth thee not to grieve for their destruction![25] That which has happened had been

ordained. It was the destiny of those high-souled warriors. Krishna suffered it to take place although he was fully competent to baffle it.[26] Govinda was able to alter the very course of the universe with all its mobile and immobile creatures. What need then be said of the curse of even high-souled Brāhmanas?[27] He who used to proceed in front of thy car, armed with discus and mace, through affection for thee, was the four-armed Vāsudeva, that ancient Rishi![28] That high-souled one of expansive eyes, *viz.*, Krishna, having lightened the burthen of the Earth and cast off his (human) body, has attained to his own high seat.[29] By thee also, O foremost of men, with Bhima for thy helpmate and the twins, O mighty-armed hero, has the great work of the gods been accomplished![30] O foremost one of Kuru's race, I regard thee and thy brothers as crowned with success for ye have accomplished the great purpose of your lives! The time has come for your departure from the world. Even this, O puissant one, is what is beneficial for you now.[31] Even thus, understanding and prowess and foresight, O Bhārata, arise when days of prosperity have not outrun. These very acquisitions disappear when the hour of adversity comes.*[32] All this has Time for its root. Time is, indeed, the seed of the universe, O Dhananjaya! It is Time, again, that withdraws everything at its pleasure.†[33] One becomes mighty, and, again, losing that might, becomes weak. One becomes a master and rules others, and, again, losing that position, becomes a servant for obeying the behests of others.[34] Thy weapons, having achieved success, have gone away to the place they came from. They will, again, come into thy hands when the Time for their coming approaches.[35] The time has come, O Bharata, for you all to attain to the highest goal. Even this is what

---

* Nilakantha explains that, 'Buddhi' here means the faculty of discovering what should be done in view of the situation at hand, and 'pratipatti' means the faculty of applying precautionary measures, that is, foresight, for avoiding disagreeable consequences.—T.

† Time, in such connection, is regarded as the *alter ego* of the Lord of the universe, or the Supreme Deity.—T.

I regard to be highly beneficial for you all, O chief of Bharata's race !' "*[36]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having heard these words of Vyāsa of immeasurable energy, the son of Prithā, receiving his permission, returned to the city named after the elephant.[37] Entering it, the hero approached Yudhishthira and informed him of all that had taken place with reference to the Vrishnis."[38]

FINIS MAUSALA PARVA.

---

* The word 'punar' in verse 35, implies another cycle of years, *i.*, *e.*, 'Yugāntare.' In 36, 'gatim mukhyām' is 'Swargam.'—T.

PAGE.

Yuyudhāna strikes off the head of Kritavarman ... 7
Krishna rushes forward for preventing Sātyaki from doing further mischief 8
Others rush towards Sātyaki for punishing him for his rashness ... ... ib
Krishna does not interfere ... ... ib
Sātyaki assailed on all sides ... ... ib
Pradyumna rushes towards Sātyaki for his rescue ... ... ib
Overwhelmed by odds, both Sātyaki and Pradyumna are slain ... ... ib
Krishna in wrath takes up a handful of *Eraka* grass ... ... ib
Every blade of grass becomes changed into a fatal bolt of iron ... ... ib
With those bolts Krishna begins to slay all who come in his way ... ... ib
Others take up blades of grass which in their hands become changed into bolts of iron ... ib
The slaughter becomes general ... ... ib
Inebriated with wine, none think of escape or flight ... ... ib
Krishna beholds the sight unmoved 9
The destruction becomes complete of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, &c. ... ... ib
Dāruka, Keçava, and Babhru leave the spot ... ib
They discover the place where Rāma sat in silence... ib
Krishna directs Dāruka to go to the Kurus and inform them of what had happened ... ib
Krishna directs Vabhru to go to Dwārakā for protecting the ladies ... ... ib
Vabhru slain by an iron bolt that ran of its own accord at him ... ... ib
Krishna asks Rāma to stay for his return ... 10
Entering the city of Dwārāvati Krishna meets with his father ... ... ib
Krishna apprises him of Arjuna's coming ... ib

PAGE.

Ditto announces to his father his intention of retiring into the woods for practice of penances 10
The wives of Krishna set up a loud wail ... ib
Krishna returns for assuring his wives and informs them of Arjuna's coming ... ... ib
Rāma casts off his body ... ... ib
He assumes his true shape, *viz.*, that of the mighty snake Ananta ... ... ib
Ananta received with honour by Vāsuki and other snakes ... ... ib
Krishna recollects the words of Durvāsas and Gāndhāri 11
Ditto lays himself down in Yoga ... ... ib
A hunter, named Jarā, mistaking Krishna for a deer, pierces the sole of his foot with a shaft... ib
Jarā discovers his mistake ... ... ib
Krishna comforts him 12
Krishna ascends to Heaven ... ... ib
Ditto received with honours by the deities, celestial Rishis, and the Gandharvas ... ib
Dāruka reaches the Kuru city ... ... ib
Arjuna sets out for Dwārakā ... ... ib
The wives of Krishna set up a loud wail upon seeing Arjuna ... ... ib
Arjuna's grief at the appearance of the Yādava city 13
Arjuna sees his maternal uncle Vasudeva ... ib
The grief of Vasudeva 14
Vasudeva's lamentations ... ... ib
Arjuna's reply 15
Arjuna summons the chief officers of the Vrishnis 16
Arjuna proposes to take away the ladies and the children of the Vrishnis away from Dwārāvati ... ib
Arjuna enters Vāsudeva's mansion ... ... ib
The ladies utter a loud wail of grief ... ... ib

PAGE.

Arjuna asks the ladies to prepare for leaving the city 16
Vasudeva casts off his body ... ... ib
The wail of grief uttered by his widows ... ib
Vasudeva's body carried to the crematorium ... ib
The body duly disposed off 17
The four wives of Vasudeva burn themselves on his funeral pyre ... ... ib
The children of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas offer oblations of water to Vasudeva ... ib
Arjuna visits the slaughter-ground of the Vrishnis ... ... ib
Arjuna causes the bodies of Krishna and Rāma to be duly cremated ... ... ib
Arjuna sets out of the Yādava city with the ladies and children, the Yādava troops, and other inhabitants ... ... ib
Description of the procession 18
The Yādava city swallowed up by the ocean ... ib
The Abhiras of Panchanada conspire to rob the cavalcade ... ... ib
Arjuna opposes the robbers unsuccessfully ... 19
Ditto strings Gāndiva with difficulty ... ... ib
The celestial weapons do not make their appearrance at the call of Arjuna ... ... ib
The Vrishni-warriors fail to rescue the ladies ... ib
The robbers retreat with their booty of wealth and women ... ... ib
Arjuna's grief at his inability to resist the robbers 20
Arjuna escorts the remnant of the cavalcade to Kurukshetra ... ... ib
Yuyudhāna's son established on the banks of the Saraswati ... ... ib
Krishna's great grandson, Vajra, established at Indraprastha ... ... ib
The widows of Akrura retire into the woods ... ib

PAGE.

Rukmini and other wives of Krishna ascend the funeral pyre ... ... ib
Satyabhāmā and other wives of Krishna retire to Kalāpa beyond the Himavata ... ... ib
The citizens of Dwārāvati, distributed into groups, bestowed upon Vajra ... ... ib
Arjuna, with eyes bathed in tears, enters the retreat of Vyāsa ... ... ib
Arjuna beholds Vyāsa and announces himself to him 21
Vyāsa enquires after the cause of Arjuna's grief and change of aspect ... ... ib
Arjuna informs Vyāsa of the carnage of the Vrishnis, the ascension to Heaven of Krishna, &c., and his own discomfiture at the hands of the robbers ... ... ib
Vyāsa comforts Arjuna 22
Vyāsa's discourse on the changes brought about by time 23
Vyāsa tells Arjuna that the time has come for the departure of the Pāndavas from the world ... ib
Arjuna leaves Vyāsa's retreat and enters Hastināpura 24
Arjuna informs Yudhishthira of all that has happened ... ... ib

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

SUNDARI BĀLA ROY,

WIDOW OF

PRATĀPA CHANDRA ROY, C. I. E.

MAHAPRASTHANIKA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHĀRATA PRESS.

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

Printed by Kāli Dāss Sen.

1896.

(*The right of translation is reserved.*)

NOTICE.

Slowly but steadily I have ascended another rung. The Mausala Parva has been finished, and the Mahāprasthānika is reached. The applications I have addressed to the patrons of my husband still remain unanswered. Only one has been disposed of, *viz.*, that which I had ventured to lay before Maharajah Sir Lachmeswar Sing Bahadur of Durbhanga. To my singular misfortune, the Maharajah has rejected my humble appeal. From the beginning of the enterprise, my husband had made several attempts to interest in it the "primier nobleman of Bengal" as Dr. Sambhu C. Mukerjee, with his usual felicity of expression, first styled the Maharajah on his entrance into public life. To his great grief, however, my husband found the Maharajah entirely inaccessible. My husband was favoured with interviews by Viceroys and Provincial Governors and Lieutenant-Governors, and ruling chiefs and princes. The "primier nobleman of Bengal," however, rejected every prayer of my husband to grant him an interview and every appeal for aid. The French Government went out of its way for helping the enterprise even liberally, disregarding its serial character and the fact of its being an incomplete foreign publication. Every local Government, the Government of India, and the Secretary of State have helped it. That such an enterprise should fail to interest the primier nobleman of Bengal and enlist his active sympathy, is inexplicable. There is one other nobleman, *viz.*, the Maharajah Sir Gajapati Rao of Vizianagram, who also has not as yet done anything for the publication. The house of Vizianagram has been noted for its liberality. The present Maharajah is distinguished for his culture. On the occasion of the visit of the Archduke of Austria, he was the only Indian nobleman who was able to converse with the Archduke without the aid of an interpreter. He was pleased to favour my husband with several interviews and to even promise him substantial aid. One of my husband's patrons, an eminent official, having recommanded the enterprise to the notice of the Maharajah, received ample

assurances in reply. Since my husband's death, I have addressed several letters to the Maharajah to none of which I have been favoured with an answer. I have very little doubt that the recollection of his promise, though repeated to Sir Andrew Scoble, has faded from the Maharajah's recollection, and that none of my letters have actually reached him, in consequence, as I have heard, of the clumsy arrangement of the Vizianagram sherista. To whatever causes due, the only two noblemen from whom no aid has been received for this national enterprise are Durbhanga and Vizianagram. It is scarcely necessary to state that between them they can easily suport ten such publishing enterprises as the English translation of the Mahābhārata. No discredit can possibly attach to names so distinguished for liberality as Durbhanga and Vizianagram for such omission to help my husband or his poor widow. That omission must be ascribed to *our* misfortune.

In finishing the Mahāprasthānika, my debts have increased. There remains only one more fascicule to issue for completing the great task. I have no means for repaying my debts unless I receive help. Hope has been extinguished in my heart. My appeals addressed to different quarters are still unanswered. It is for the patrons of the enterprise to judge whether the Mahābhārata is to remain incomplete by one fascicule and whether a poor Hindu widow who has devoted her all for its completion should bear the burthen of her debts without the means of repaying them till her very house is sold and shared between her creditors.

SUNDARI BĀLĀ RĀY.

THE MAHABHARATA.

MAHĀPRASTHĀNIKA PARVA.

SECTION I.

Bowing down unto Nārāyana, and to Nara, the foremost of men, as also to the goddess Saraswati, should the word Jaya be uttered.

Janamejaya said,—"Having heard of that encounter with iron bolts between the heroes of the Vrishni and the Andhaka races, and having been informed also of Krishna's ascension to Heaven, what did the Pāndavas do?"[1]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Having heard the particulars of the great slaughter of the Vrishnis, the Kaurava king set his heart on leaving the world. He addressed Arjuna, saying,[2]—'O thou of great intelligence, it is Time that cooks every creature (in his cauldron). I think that what has happened is due to the cords of Time (with which he binds us all). It behooveth thee also to see it.'[3] Thus addressed by his brother, the son of Kunti only repeated the word—'Time, Time!'—and fully endorsed the view of his eldest brother gifted with great intelligence.[4] Ascertaining the resolution of Arjuna, Bhimasena and the twins fully endorsed the words that Arjuna had said.[5] Resolved to retire from the world for earning merit, they brought Yuyutsu before them. Yudhishthira made over the kingdom to the son of his uncle by his Vaiçyā wife.[6] Installing Parikshit also on their throne, as king, the eldest brother of the Pāndavas, filled with sorrow, addressed Subhadrā, saying,[7]—'This son of thy son will be the king of the Kurus. The survivor of the Yadus, *viz.*, Vajra, has been made a king.[8] Parikshit will rule in Hastināpura, while the Yādava prince, Vajra, will rule in Çakraprastha.

He should be protected by thee. Never set thy heart on unrighteousness !'[9] Having said these words, king Yudhishthira the just, along with his brothers, promptly offered oblations of water unto Vāsudeva of great intelligence, as also his old maternal uncle, and Rāma and others. He then duly performed the *Crāddhas* of all those deceased kinsmen of his.[10-11] The king, in honor of Hari and naming him repeatedly, fed the Island-born Vyāsa, and Nārada, and Mārkandeya possessed of wealth of penances, and Yājnavalkya of Bharadwāja's race, with many delicious viands.[12] In honor of Krishna, he also gave away many jewels and gems, and robes and clothes, and villages, and horses and cars,[13] and female slaves by hundreds and thousands unto foremost of Brāhmanas. Summoning the citizens, Kripa was installed as the preceptor and Parikshit was made over to him as his disciple, O chief of Bharata's race ! Then Yudhishthira once more summoned all his subjects.[14-15] The royal sage informed them of his intentions. The citizens and the inhabitants of the provinces, hearing the king's words,[16] became filled with anxiety and disapproved of them. 'This should never be done'—said they unto the king.[17] The monarch, well versed with the changes brought about by time, did not listen to their counsels. Possessed of righteous soul, he persuaded the people to sanction his views.[18] He then set his heart on leaving the world. His brothers also formed the same resolution. Then Dharma's son, Yudhishthira, the king of the Kurus,[19] casting off his ornaments, wore barks of trees. Bhima and Arjuna and the twins, and Draupadi also of great fame,[20] similarly clad themselves in barks of trees, O king. Having caused the preliminary rites of religior, O chief of Bharata's race, which were to bless them in the accomplishment of their design,[21] those foremost of men cast off their sacred fires into the water. The ladies, beholding the princes in that guise, wept aloud.[22] They seemed to look as they had looked in days before when with Draupadi forming the sixth in number they had set out of the capital after their defeat at dice. The brothers, however, were all very cheerful at the prospect of retirement.[23] Ascertaining the intentions of Yudhishthira and seeing the

destruction of the Vrishnis, no other course of action could please them then. The five brothers, with Draupadi forming the sixth, and a dog forming the seventh,[24] set out on their journey. Indeed, even thus did king Yudhishthira depart, himself the head of a party of seven, from the city named after the elephant. The citizens and the ladies of the royal household followed them for some distance.[25] None of them, however, could venture to address the king for persuading him to give up his intention. The denizens of the city then returned.[26] Kripa and others stood around Yuyutsu as their centre. Ulupi, the daughter of the Nāga chief, O thou of Kuru's race, entered the waters of Gangā.*[27] The princess Chitrāngadā set out for the capital of Manipura. The other ladies who were the grandmothers of Parikshit centered around him.[28] Meanwhile the high-souled Pāndavas, O thou of Kuru's race, and Draupadi of great fame, having observed the preliminary fast, set out with their faces towards the east.[29] Setting themselves on Yoga, those high-souled ones, resolved to observe the religion of Renunciation, traversed through various countries and reached diverse rivers and seas.[30] Yudhishthira proceeded first. Behind him was Bhima; next walked Arjuna; after him were the twins in the order of their birth;[31] behind them all, O foremost one of Bharata's race, proceeded Draupadi, that first of women, possessed of great beauty, of dark complexion, and endued with eyes resembling lotus petals.[32] While the Pāndavas set out for the forest, a dog followed them. Proceeding on, those heroes reached the sea of red waters.[33] Dhananjaya had not cast off his celestial bow Gān-

---

* It is not to be supposed that Ulupi drowned herself. What is said here is that she retired into the world of Nāgās. In the Adi Parvan it is said that while Arjuna, on one occasion, had been bathing in the waters of Gangā, Ulupi carried him off to her palace within the waters and there married him. Nāgas are semi-divine and can move through air and water, ascend to Heaven itself when they like, and have their home at Pātāla. To take them for some non-Aryan race, as has become the fashion with some recent poets of Bengal, is the very height of absurdity or poetic license. None of these writers, however, is acquainted with Sanskrit; and that is their best excuse.—T.

diva nor his couple of inexhaustible quivers, actuated, O king, by the cupidity that attaches one to things of great value.[34] The Pāndavas there beheld the deity of fire standing before them like a hill. Closing their way, the god stood there in his embodied form.[35] The deity of seven flames then addressed the Pāndavas, saying,—'Ye heroic sons of Pāndu, know me for the deity of fire.[36] O mighty-armed Yudhishthira, O Bhimasena that art a scorcher of foes, O Arjuna, and ye twins of great courage, listen to what I say![37] Ye foremost ones of Kuru's race, I am the god of fire. The forest of Khāndava was burnt by me, through the puissance of Arjuna and of Nārāyana himself.[38] Let your brother Phālguna proceed to the woods after casting off Gāndiva, that high weapon. He has no longer any need of it.[39] That precious discus, which was with the high-souled Krishna, has disappeared (from the world). When the time again comes, it will come back into his hands.[40] This foremost of bows, *viz.*, Gāndiva, was procured by me from Varuna for the use of Pārtha. Let it be made over to Varuna himself.'[41] At this, all the brothers urged Dhananjaya to do what the deity said. He then threw into the waters (of the sea) both the bow and the couple of inexhaustible quivers.[42] After this, O chief of Bharata's race, the god of fire disappeared then and there. The heroic sons of Pāndu next proceeded with their faces turned towards the south.[43] Then, by the northern coast of the salt sea, those princes of Bharata's race proceeded to the south-west.[44] Turning next towards the west, they beheld the city of Dwārakā covered by the ocean.[45] Turning next to the north, those foremost ones proceeded on. Observant of Yoga, they were desirous of making a round of the whole Earth."[46]

Section II.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Those princes of restrained souls and devoted to Yoga, proceeding to the north, beheld Himavat, that very large mountain.[1] Crossing the Himavat, they beheld a vast desert of sand. They then saw the mighty

mountain Meru, the foremost of all high-peaked mountains.[2] As those mighty ones were proceeding quickly, all rapt in Yoga, Yājnaseni, falling off from Yoga, dropped down on the Earth.[3] Beholding her fallen down, Bhimasena of great strength addressed king Yudhishthira the just, saying,[4]—'O scorcher of foes, this princess never did any sinful act. Tell us what the cause is for which Krishnā has fallen down on the Earth!'[5]

"Yudhishthira said,—'She had great partiality for Dhananjaya in especial. She obtains the fruit of that conduct today, O best of men!'"[6]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having said this, that foremost one of Bharata's race proceeded on. Of righteous soul, that foremost of men, endued with great intelligence, went on, with mind intent on itself.[7] Then Sahadeva of great learning fell down on the Earth. Beholding him drop down, Bhima addressed the king, saying,[8]—'He who with great humility used to serve us all, alas, why is that son of Mādravati fallen down on the Earth?'[9]

"Yudhishthira said,—'He never thought anybody his equal in wisdom. It is for that fault that this prince has fallen down.'"[10]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having said this, the king proceeded, leaving Sahadeva there. Indeed, Kunti's son Yudhishthira went on, with his brothers and with the dog.[11] Beholding both Krishnā and the Pāndava Sahadeva fallen down, the brave Nakula, whose love for kinsmen was very great, fell down himself.[12] Upon the falling down of the heroic Nakula of great personal beauty, Bhima once more addressed the king, saying,[13]—'This brother of ours who was endued with righteousness without incompleteness, and who always obeyed our behests, this Nakula who was unrivalled for beauty, has fallen down!'[14] Thus addressed by Bhimasena, Yudhishthira said, with respect to Nakula, these words:—'He was of righteous soul and the foremost of all persons endued with intelligence.[15] He, however, thought that there was nobody that equalled him in beauty of person. Indeed, he regarded himself as superior to all in that respect.[16] It is for this that

Nakula has fallen down. Know this, O Vrikodara! That, O hero, which has been ordained for a person, must have to be endured by him.'[17] Beholding Nakula and the others fall down, Pāndu's son Arjuna of white steeds, that slayer of hostile heroes, fell down in great grief of heart.[18] When that foremost of men, who was endued with the energy of Cakra, had fallen down, indeed, when that invincible hero was on the point of death, Bhima said unto the king,[19]—'I do not recollect any untruth uttered by this high-souled one. Indeed, not even in jest did he say anything false. What then is that for whose evil consequence this one has fallen down on the Earth?'[20]

"Yudhishthira said,—'Arjuna had said that he would consume all our foes in a single day. Proud of his heroism, he did not, however, accomplish what he had said. Hence has he fallen down.[21] This Phālguna disregarded all wielders of bows. One desirous of prosperity should never indulge such sentiments.' "[22]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—"Having said so, the king proceeded on. Then Bhima fell down. Having fallen down, Bhima addressed king Yudhishthira the just, saying,[23]—O king, behold! I who am thy darling have fallen down! For what reason have I dropped down? Tell me if thou knowest it!'[24]

"Yudhisthira said,—'Thou wert a great eater, and thou didst use to boast of thy strength. Thou never didst attend, O Pārtha, to the wants of others while eating. It is for that, O Bhima, that thou hast fallen down!'[25] Having said these words, the mighty-armed Yudhishthira proceeded on, without looking back. He had only one companion, *viz.*, the dog of which I have repeatedly spoken to thee, that followed him now."[26]

Section III.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Then Cakra, causing the firmament and the Earth to be filled by a loud sound, came to the son of Prithā on a car and asked him to ascend it.[1] Beholding his

brothers fallen on the Earth, king Yudhishthira the just said unto that deity of a thousand eyes these words:[2]—'My brothers have all dropped down here! They must go with me. Without them by me I do not wish to go to Heaven, O lord of all the deities![3] The delicate princess (Draupadi) deserving of every comfort, O Purandara, should go with us! It behooveth thee to permit this!'[4]

"Cakra said,—'Thou shalt behold thy brothers in Heaven. They have reached it before thee! Indeed, thou shalt see all of them there, with Krishnā. Do not yield to grief, O chief of the Bharatas![5] Having cast off their human bodies they have gone there, O chief of Bharata's race! As regards thee, it is ordained that thou shalt go thither in this very body of thine!'[6]

"Yudhishthira said,—'This dog, O lord of the Past and the Present, is exceedingly devoted to me. He should go with me. My heart is full of compassion for him!'[7]

"Cakra said,—'Immortality and a condition equal to mine, O king, prosperity extending in all directions, and high success, and all the felicities of Heaven, thou hast won to-day! Do thou cast off this dog. In this there will be no cruelty.'[8]

"Yudhishthira said,—'O thou of a thousand eyes, O thou that art of righteous behaviour, it is exceedingly difficult for one that is of righteous behaviour to perpetrate an act that is unrighteous. I do not desire that union with prosperity for which I shall have to cast off one that is devoted to me!'*[9]

"Indra said,—'There is no place in Heaven for persons with dogs. Besides, the (deities called) Krodhavaças take away all the merits of such persons. Reflecting on this, act, O king Yudhishthira the just! Do thou abandon this dog. There is no cruelty in this!'[10]

"Yudhishthira said,—'It has been said that the abandonment of one that is devoted is infinitely sinful. It is equal

* The first line, rendered literally, would run, 'An Arya feels great difficulty in doing an act that is not worthy of an Arya.' Of course, 'Arya' here implies a person of respectable birth and righteous conduct.—T.

to the sin that one incurs by slaying a Brāhmana. Hence, O great Indra, I shall not abandon this dog today from desire of my happiness![11] Even this is my vow steadily pursued, *viz.*, that I never give up a person that is terrified, nor one that is devoted to me, nor one that seeks my protection, saying, that he is destitute, nor one that is afflicted, nor one that has come to me, nor one that is weak in protecting oneself, nor one that is solicitous of life. I shall never give up such a one till my own life is at an end![12]

"Indra said,—'Whatever gifts, or sacrifices spread out, or libations poured on the sacred fire, are seen by a dog, are taken away by the Krodhavaças. Do thou, therefore, abandon this dog. By abandoning this dog thou wilt attain to the region of the deities.[13] Having abandoned thy brothers and Krishnā, thou hast, O hero, acquired a region of felicity by thy own deeds. Why art thou so stupefied? Thou hast renounced everything. Why then dost thou not renounce this dog?'[14]

"Yudhishthira said,—'This is well known in all the worlds that there is neither friendship nor enmity with those that are dead. When my brothers and Krishnā died, I was unable to revive them. Hence it was that I abandoned them. I did not, however, abandon them as long as they were alive.[15] To frighten one that has sought protection, the slaying of a woman, the theft of what belongs to a Brāhmana, and injuring a friend, each of these four, O Cakra, is I think equal to the abandonment of one that is devoted![16]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—'Hearing these words of king Yudhishthira the just, (the dog became transformed into) the deity of Righteousness, who, well pleased, said these words unto him in a sweet voice fraught with praise.[17]

"Dharma said,—'Thou art well born, O king of kings, and possessed of the intelligence and the good conduct of Pāndu! Thou hast compassion for all creatures, O Bhārata, of which this is a bright example![18] Formerly, O son, thou wert once examined by me in the woods of Dwaita, where thy brothers of great prowess met with (an appearance of) death.[19] Disregarding both thy brothers Bhima and Arjuna, thou didst wish for the revival of Nakula from thy desire of doing good

to thy (step) mother !*[20] On the present occasion, thinking the dog to be devoted to thee, thou hast renounced the very car of the celestials instead of renouncing him. Hence, O king, there is no one in Heaven that is equal to thee ![21] Hence, O Bhārata, regions of inexhaustible felicity are thine ! Thou hast won them, O chief of the Bharatas, and thine is a celestial and high goal !' "[22]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—" Then Dharma, and Cakra, and the Maruts, and the Açwins, and other deities, and the celestial Rishis, causing Yudhishthira to ascend on a car, proceeded to Heaven. Those beings crowned with success and capable of going everywhere at will, rode their respective cars.[23-24] King Yudhishthira, that perpetuater of Kuru's race, riding on that car, ascended quickly, causing the entire welkin to blaze with his effulgence.[25] Then Nārada, that foremost of all speakers, endued with penances, and conversant with all the worlds, from amidst that concourse of deities, said these words :[26]—'All those royal sages that are here have their achievements transcended by those of Yudhishthira ![27] Covering all the worlds by his fame and splendour and by his wealth of conduct, he has attained to Heaven in his own (human) body ! None else than the son of Pāndu has been heard to achieve this !'[28] Hearing these words of Nārada, the righteous-souled king, saluting the deities and all the royal sages there present, said,[29]—'Happy or miserable, whatever the region be that is now my brothers', I desire to proceed to. I do not wish to go anywhere else !'[30] Hearing this speech of the king, the chief of the deities, Purandara, said these words fraught with noble sense ;[31]—'Do thou live in this place, O king of kings, which thou hast won by thy meritorious deeds ! Why dost thou still cherish human affections ?[32] Thou hast attained to great success, the like of which no other man has ever been able to attain. Thy brothers, O delighter of the Kurus, have succeeded in winning regions of felicity.[33]

* Yudhishthira had sought for Nakula's life because Nakula would be able to offer oblations unto Mādri and her ancestors. Neither Arjuna, nor Bhima, would be of use in that direction.—T.

Human affections still touch thee. This is Heaven. Behold these celestial Rishis and Siddhas who have attained to the region of the gods!'[34] Gifted with great intelligence, Yudhishthira answered the chief of the deities once more, saying,[35]—'O conqueror of Daityas, I venture not to dwell anywhere, separated from them! I desire to go there where my brothers have gone![36] I wish to go there where that foremost of women, Draupadi, of ample proportions and darkish complexion and endued with great intelligence and righteousness of conduct, has gone!' "[37]

FINIS MAHAPRASTHANIKA PARVA.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

MAHAPRASTHANIKA PARVA.

	PAGE.
Janamejaya's question about the doings of his ancestors after Krishna's ascension to Heaven ...	1
After the slaughter of the Vrishnis, Yudhishthira and his brothers set their hearts upon retirement from the world	ib
The kingdom made over to Yuyutsu, and Parikshit installed	ib
Yudhishthira charges Subhadrā to watch over her grandson	ib
Yudhishthira feeds Vyāsa and Nārada and Mārkandeya for the advancement of Krishna and Rāma in the other world	2
Ditto summons his subjects and announces his intention of retirement	ib
The citizens try to dissuade him	ib
Yudhishthira's firmness	ib
Ditto and his brothers cast off their ornaments ...	ib
They cast off their sacred fires	ib
Yudhishthira and his brothers, with Draupadi, leave the city	3
The citizens follow them	ib
The citizens return	ib
Kripa and others stand round Yuyutsu ...	ib
Ulupi enters the waters (for returning to the Nāga world)	ib
Chitrāngadā returns to Manipura	ib
The Pāndavas proceed towards the east ...	ib
Ditto followed by a dog	ib
Ditto met by Agni	4
Agni induces Arjuna to cast into the sea *Gāndiva* and his couple of inexhaustible quivers	ib

PAGE.

The Pāndavas then proceed towards the south ... 4
Proceeding westwards they come to the sea of red waters ... ... ib
Proceeding next towards the north, the Pāndavas behold the Himavat ... ... ib
Crossing the Himavat they see a large desert ... ib
They next behold Meru 5
Draupadi drops down ... ... ib
The Pāndavas move on without minding her ... ib
Draupadi's fault consisted of her partiality for Arjuna ... . ib
Sahadeva falls down for having been vain of his own wisdom ... ... ib
Nakula falls down for having been vain of his personal beauty ... ... ib
Arjuna falls down for his pride of bowmanship ... 6
Bhima falls down for his having been exceedingly voracious ... ... ib
Cakra meets Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Ditto seeks to induce Yudhishthira to abandon the dog 7
Yudhishthira's refusal to desert the dog ... ib
The dog transformed into the deity of Righteousness ... ... ib
Dharma's encomiums on Yudhishthira 8
Yudhishthira proceeds to Heaven on a celestial car, filling the welkin with his splendour ... 9
Nārada's encomiums on Yudhishthira ... ... ib
Yudhishthira wishes to go there where his brothers and Draupadi are ... ... ib
Cakra charges Yudhishthira to cast off his human affections ... ... ib
Yudhishthira repeats his wish 10

FINIS.

THE MAHABHARATA

OF

KRISHNA-DWAIPAYANA VYASA

TRANSLATED

INTO

ENGLISH PROSE

Published and distributed *chiefly gratis*

BY

SUNDARI BĀLA ROY,

WIDOW OF

PRATĀPA CHANDRA ROY, C. I. E.

SWARGAROHANIKA PARVA.

CALCUTTA :

BHĀRATA PRESS

No. 1, RAJA GOOROO DASS' STREET.

Printed by Kāli Dāss Sen.

1896.

(The right of translation is reserved.)

NOTICE.

The Mahāprasthānika Parva is completed. The Swargārohanika is taken up. Of the eighteen Parvas this is the last. With its completion the English translation of the Mahābhārata will be complete; the sacred vow of my lamented husband will be duly fulfilled; his debt to subscribers and contributors will be paid off; and the promise I made to him, at his death bed, will also be redeemed. It is true, with the completion of the Mahābhārata the solemn promise I gave my husband will become discharged; but then the debts which he has left me and which I have already incurred and shall have to incur for discharging that promise are sure to press heavily on me. I have already parted with what little I had in the form of my separate property. I am not at all sorry for it. The wants of a Hindu widow, for the support of her life, are few and easily met. No anxiety can be mine on that account. To repay, however, the debts left me by my husband, and those incurred and to be incurred by me, is not so easy. My chief anxiety is about that. I have done all in my power to appeal to the friends and patrons of the enterprise. I have received letters of sympathy from many quarters near and distant. As yet the only kind of assistance that is much needed by me has not come from any source. I do not know how is it, but the belief I cannot shake off that I shall not be left to struggle with my debts. There are many liberal men who have not as yet contributed anything towards the accomplishment of this national enterprise. Even if these distinguished persons do not come forward to help me, even half the number of those who are interested in the work, by contributing each a trifle, may enable me to pay off all the debts I shall have to pay. In rendering this assistance, for which I have already appealed to them, no one, I am sure, will feel any inconvenience or pressure.

The last Parva of the Mahābhārata, which has been taken up, is of small extent. It cannot cost much, nor would the

time needed for completing it be long. I shall any how reach the end. Having begun it,—having, in fact, touched the last rung,—it cannot be the pleasure of Hari that I should not be able to ascend it. He who has so long befriended the enterprise will not abandon me in its very last stage. I have much to say regarding the conduct of this enterprise from its beginning, to express obligations to various eminent personages without whose aid nothing could be done, and, lastly, to give an idea of the difficulties which have been surmounted. These I reserve for the concluding appeal with which I wish to bid my final adieu to the public in order to enter that life of privacy and retirement which is ordained by the Scriptures I believe in for one of my sex and condition.

SUNDARI BĀLĀ RĀY.

THE MAHABHARATA.

SWARGĀROHANIKA PARVA.

SECTION I.

Bowing down unto Nārāyana, and Nara, the foremost of men, as also unto the goddess Saraswati, should the word Jaya be uttered.

Janamejaya said,—"Having attained to Heaven, what regions were respectively attained by my grandsires of old, *viz.*, the Pāndavas and the sons of Dhritarāshtra?[1] I desire to hear this. I think that thou art conversant with everything, having been taught by the great Rishi Vyāsa of wonderful feats!"[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Listen now to what thy grandsires, Yudhishthira and others, did after having attained to Heaven, that place of the deities.[3] Arrived at Heaven, king Yudhishthira the just, behold Duryodhana endued with prosperity and seated on an excellent seat.[4] He blazed with effulgence like the sun and wore all those signs of glory which belong to heroes. And he was in the company of many deities of blazing effulgence and of Sādhyas of righteous deeds.[5] Yudhishthira, beholding Duryodhana and his prosperity, became suddenly filled with rage and turned back from the sight.[6] He loudly addressed his companions, saying,—'I do not desire to share regions of felicity with Duryodhana who was stained by cupidity and possessed of little foresight![7] It was for him that friends, kinsmen, over the whole Earth, were slaughtered by us whom he had afflicted greatly in the deep forest![8] It was for him that the virtuous princess of Panchāla, Draupadi of faultless features, our wife, was dragged into the midst of the assembly before

all our seniors![9] Ye gods, I have no desire to even behold Suyodhana! I wish to go there where my brothers are!'[10] Nārada, smiling, told him,—'It should not be so! O king of kings! While residing in Heaven, all enmities cease![11] O mighty-armed Yudhishthira, do not say so about king Duryodhana. Hear my words.[12] Here is king Duryodhana. He is worshipped with the gods by those righteous men and those foremost of kings who are now denizens of Heaven.[13] By causing his body to be poured as a libation on the fire of battle, he has obtained the end that consists in attainment of the region for heroes. You and your brothers, who were veritable gods on Earth, were always persecuted by this one.[14] Yet through his observance of Kshatriya practices he has attained to this region. This lord of Earth was not terrified in a situation fraught with terror.[15] O son, thou shouldst not bear in mind the woes inflicted on thee on account of the match at dice. It behooveth thee not to remember the afflictions of Draupadi.[16] It behooveth thee not to remember the other woes which were yours in consequence of the acts of your kinsmen,—the woes, *viz.*, that were due to battle or to other situations.[17] Do thou meet Duryodhana now according to the ordinances of polite intercourse. This is Heaven, O lord of men! There can be no enmities here!'[18]—Though thus addressed by Nārada, the Kuru king Yudhishthira, endued with great intelligence, enquired about his brothers and said,[19]—'If these eternal regions reserved for heroes be Duryodhana's, that unrighteous and sinful wight, that man who was the destroyer of friends and of the whole world,[20] that man for whose sake the entire Earth was devastated with all her horses and elephants and human beings, that wight for whose sake we were burnt with wrath in thinking of how best we might remedy our wrongs,[21] I desire to see what regions have been attained by those high-souled heroes, my brothers of high vows, steady achievers of promises, truthful in speech, and distinguished for courage. The high-souled Karna, the son of Kunti, incapable of being baffled in battle,[22-23] Dhrishtadyumna, Sātyaki, the sons of Dhrishtadyumna, and those other Kshatriyas who met with death in the observance

of Kshatriya practices,[24] where are those lords of Earth, O Brāhmana? I do not see them here, O Nārada! I desire to see, O Nārada, Virāta and Drupada and the other great Kshatriyas headed by Dhrishtaketu,[25] as also Cikhandin, the Pānchāla prince, the sons of Draupadi, and Abhimanyu, irresistible in battle!'"[26]

SECTION II.

"Yudhishthira said,—'Ye deities, I do not see here Rādhā's son of immeasurable prowess, as also my high-souled brothers, and Yudhāmanyu and Uttamaujas,[1] those great car-warriors that poured their bodies (as libations) on the fire of battle, those kings and princes that met with death for my sake in battle![2] Where are those great car-warriors that possessed the prowess of tigers? Have those foremost of men acquired this region?[3] If those great car-warriors have obtained these regions, then only do you know, ye gods, that I shall reside here with those high-souled ones![4] If this auspicious and eternal region has not been acquired by those kings, then know, ye gods, that without those brothers and kinsmen of mine, I shall not live here![5] At the time of performing the water rites (after the battle), I heard my mother say,—Do thou offer oblations of water unto Karna!—Since hearing those words of my mother, I am burning with grief.[6] I grieve also incessantly at this, ye gods, that when I marked the resemblance between the feet of my mother and those of Karna of immeasurable soul, I did not immediately place myself under the orders of that afflicter of hostile ranks! Ourselves joined with Karna, Cakra himself would have been unable to vanquish in battle![*7-8] Wherever may that child

---

* The allusion is to the fact of Yudhishthira's having marked a close resemblance between the feet of Kunti and those of Karna, and his yearning after Karna which he could not explain. Such was Yudhishthira's abstraction of mind while thinking of that resemblance that he did not hear the cruel speeches of Duryodhana at the Kuru court addressed to him and his brothers after their defeat at dice. It was not till after the battle was over that Yudhishthira learnt who Karna really was.—T.

of Surya be, I desire to see him. Alas, his relationship with us unknown, I caused him to be slain by Arjuna![9] Bhima also of terrible prowess and dearer to me than my life-breaths, Arjuna too, resembling Indra himself, the twins also that resembled the Destroyer himself in prowess,[10] I desire to behold! I wish to see the princess of Pānchāla, whose conduct was always righteous. I wish not to stay here. I tell you the truth.[11] Ye foremost ones among the deities, what is Heaven to me if I am dissociated from my brothers? That is Heaven where those brothers of mine are. This, in my opinion, is not Heaven![12]

"The gods said,—'If thou longest to be there, go then, O son, without delay! At the command of the chief of the deities, we are ready to do what is agreeable to thee!'"[13]

Vaiçampāyana continued,—" Having said so, the gods then orderd the celestial messenger, O scorcher of foes, saying,—'Do thou show unto Yudhishthira his friends and kinsmen!'[14]—Then the royal son of Kunti and the celestial messenger proceeded together, O foremost of kings, to that place where those chiefs of men (whom Yudhishthira had wished to see) were.[15] The celestial messenger proceeded first, the king followed him behind. The path was inauspicious and difficult and trodden by men of sinful deeds.[16] It was enveloped in thick darkness, and covered with hair and moss forming its grassy vesture. Polluted with the stench of sinners, and miry with flesh and blood,[17] it abounded with gad-flies and stinging bees and gnats and was endangened by the inroads of grisly bears. Rotting corpses lay here and there.[18] Overspread with bones and hair, it was noisome with worms and insects. It was skirted all along with a blazing fire.[19] It was infested by crows and other birds and vultures, all having beaks of iron, as also by evil spirits with long mouths pointed like needles. And it abounded with inaccessible fastnesses like the Vindhya mountains.[20] Human corpses were scattered over it, smeared with fat and blood, with arms and thighs cut off, or with entrails torn out and legs severed.[21] Along that path so disagreeable with the stench of corpses and awful with other incidents, the right-

eous-souled king proceeded, filled with diverse thoughts.[22] He beheld a river full of boiling water and, therefore, difficult to cross, as also a forest of trees whose leaves were sharp swords and razors.[23] There were plains full of fine white sand exceedingly heated, and rocks and stones made of iron. There were many jars of iron all around, with boiling oil in them.[24] Many a Kuta-çālmalika was there, with sharp thorns and, therefore, exceedingly painful to the touch.* The son of Kunti beheld also the tortures inflicted upon sinful men.[25] Beholding that inauspicious region abounding with every sort of foulness, Yudhishthira asked the celestial messenger, saying,—'How far shall we proceed along a path like this?[26] It behooveth thee to tell me where those brothers of mine are. I desire also to know what region is this of the gods!'[27] Hearing these words of king Yudhishthira the just, the celestial messenger stopped in his course and replied, saying,—'Thus far is your way.[28] The denizens of Heaven commanded me that having come thus far, I am to stop! If thou art tired, O king of kings, thou mayst return with me!'[29] Yudhishthira, however, was exceedingly disconsolate and stupified by the foul odor. Resolved to return, O Bhārata, he retraced his steps.[30] Afflicted by sorrow and grief, the righteous-souled monarch turned back. Just at that moment he heard piteous lamentations all around.[31]—'O son of Dharma, O royal sage, O thou of sacred origin, O son of Pāndu, do thou stay a moment for favouring us![32] At thy approach, O invincible one, a delightful breeze hath begun to blow, bearing the sweet scent of thy person! Great hath been our relief at this![33] O foremost of kings, beholding thee, O first of men, great hath been our happiness! O son of Prithā, let that happiness last longer through thy stay here for a few moments more![34] Do thou remain here, O Bhārata, for even a short while! As long as thou art here, O thou of Kuru's race, torments cease to afflict us!'[35] These and many

---

* Kuta-çālmalika is a species of Cālmali or the *Bombax Malabaricum* of Roxburgh. It is covered with sharp thorns and not even monkeys can climb it.—T.

similar words, uttered in piteous voices by persons in pain, the king heard in that region, wafted to his ears from every side.[36] Hearing those words of beings in woe, Yudhishthira of compassionate heart exclaimed aloud,—'Alas, how painful!' and the king stood still.[37] The speeches of those woe-begone and afflicted persons seemed to the son of Pāndu to be uttered in voices that he had heard before although he could not recognise them on that occasion.[38] Unable to recognise the voices, Dharma's son, Yudhishthira, enquired, saying,—'Who are you? Why also do you stay here?'[39] Thus addressed, they answered him from all sides, saying,—'I am Karna!'—'I am Bhimasena!'—'I am Arjuna!'[40]—'I am Nakula!'—'I am Sahadeva!'—'I am Dhrishtadyumna!'—'I am Draupadi!'—'We are the sons of Draupadi!'—Even thus, O king, did those voices speak.[41] Hearing those exclamations, O king, uttered in voices of pain suitable to that place, the royal Yudhishthira asked himself—'What perverse destiny is this?[42] What are those sinful acts which were committed by those high-souled beings *viz.*, Karna and the sons of Draupadi, and the slender-waisted princess of Panchāla,[43] so that their residence has been assigned in this region of fœtid smell and great woe? I am not aware of any transgression that can be attributed to these persons of righteous deeds![44] What is that act by doing which Dhritarāshtra's son, king Suyodhana, with all his sinful followers, has become invested with such prosperity?[45] Endued with prosperity like that of the great Indra himself, he is highly adored. What is that act through the consequence of which these (high-souled ones) have fallen into Hell?[46] All of them were conversant with every duty, were heroes, were devoted to truth and the Vedas; were observant of Kshatriya practices; were righteous in their acts; were performers of sacrifices; and givers of large presents unto Brāhmanas![47] Am I asleep or awake? Am I conscious or unconscious? Or, is all this a mental delusion due to disorders of the brain?'[48] Overwhelmed by sorrow and grief, and with his senses agitated by anxiety, king Yudhishthira indulged in such reflections for a long time.[49] The royal son of Dharma then gave way to great wrath. Indeed, Yudhish-

thira then censured the gods as also Dharma himself.[50] Afflicted by the very foul odor, he addressed the celestial messenger, saying,—'Return to the presence of those whose messenger thou art![51] Tell them that I shall not go back to where they are, but shall stay even here, since, in consequence of my companionship, these afflicted brothers of mine have become comforted!'[52] Thus addressed by the intelligent son of Pāndu, the celestial messenger returned to the place where the chief of the deities was, *viz.*, he of a hundred sacrifices.[53] He represented unto him the acts of Yudhishthira. Indeed, O ruler of men, he informed Indra of all that Dharma's son had said."[54]

Section III.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"King Yudhishthira the just, the son of Prithā, had not stayed there for more than a moment when, O thou of Kuru's race, all the gods with Indra at their head came to that spot.[1] The deity of Righteousness, in his embodied form, also came to that place where the Kuru king was, for seeing that monarch.[2] Upon the advent of those deities of resplendent bodies and sanctified and noble deeds, the darkness that had overwhelmed that region immediately disappeared.[3] The torments undergone by beings of sinful deeds were no longer seen. The river Vaitarani, the thorny Cālmali,[4] the iron jars, and the boulders of rock, so terrible to behold, also vanished from sight. The diverse repulsive corpses also, which the Kuru king had seen, disappeared at the same time.[5] Then a breeze, delicious and fraught with pleasant perfumes, perfectly pure, and delightfully cool, O Bhārata, began to blow on that spot in consequence of the presence of the gods.[6] The Maruts, with Indra, the Vasus with the twin Açwins, the Sādhyas, the Rudras, the Ādityas, and the other denizens of Heaven,[7] as also the Siddhas and the great Rishis, all came there where Dharma's royal son of great energy was.[8] Then Cakra, the lord of the deities, endued with blazing prosperity, addressed Yudhishthira and comforting him, said,[9]—'O Yudhishthira of

mighty arms, come, come, O chief of men! These illusions have ended, O puissant one![10] Success has been attained by thee, O mighty-armed one, and eternal regions (of felicity) have become thine! Thou shouldst not yield to wrath. Listen to these words of mine![11] Hell, O son, should, without doubt, be beheld by every king. Of both good and bad there is abundance, O chief of men![12] He who enjoys first the fruits of his good acts must afterwards endure Hell. He, on the other hand, who first endures Hell, must afterwards enjoy Heaven.[13] He whose sinful acts are many, enjoys Heaven first. It is for this, O king, that desirous of doing thee good, I caused thee to be sent for having a view of Hell.*[14] Thou hadst, by a pretence, deceived Drona in the matter of his son. Thou hast, in consequence thereof, been shown Hell by an act of deception.[15] After the manner of thyself, Bhima and Arjuna, and Draupadi, have all been shown the place of sinners by an act of deception.[16] Come, O chief of men, all of them have been cleansed of their sins![17] All those kings who had sided thee and who have been slain in battle, have all attained to Heaven. Come and behold them, O foremost one of Bharata's race![18] Karna, the mighty bowman, that foremost of all wielders of weapons, for whom thou art grieving, has also attained to high success.[19] Behold, O puissant one, that foremost of men, *viz.*, the son of Surya! He is in that place which is his own, O mighty-armed one! Kill this grief of thine, O chief of men![20] Behold thy brothers and others, those kings, that is, who had espoused thy side. They have all attained to their respective places (of felicity). Let the fever of thy heart be dispelled![21] Having endured a little misery first, from this time, O son of Kuru's race, do thou sport with me in happiness, divested of grief and all thy ailments dispelled![22] O mighty-armed one, do thou now enjoy, O king, the rewards of all thy deeds of righteousness, of those regions which thou hast acquired thyself by thy penances,

* Those whose evil acts outnumber the good, first enjoy Heaven. The reverse is the case with those whose good acts outnumber the evil. The latter endure Hell first.—T.

and of all thy gifts.[23] Let deities and Gandharvas, and celestial Apsaras, decked in pure robes and excellent ornaments, wait upon and serve thee for thy happiness![24] Do thou, O mighty-armed one, enjoy now those regions (of felicity) which have become thine through the Rājasuya sacrifice performed by thee and whose felicities have been enhanced by the sacrificial scimitar employed by thee. Let the high fruits of thy penances be enjoyed by thee![*25] Thy regions, O Yudhishthira, are above, far above, those of kings. They are equal to those of Hariçchandra, O son of Prithā! Come, and sport there in bliss![26] There where the royal sage Māndhātri is, there where king Bhagiratha is, there where Dushmanta's son Bharata is, there wilt thou sport in bliss![27] Here is the celestial river, sacred and sanctifying the three worlds. It is called Heavenly Gangā. Plunging into it, thou wilt go to thy own regions![†28] Having bathed in this stream, thou wilt be divested of thy human nature. Indeed, thy grief dispelled, thy ailments conquered, thou wilt be freed from all enmities.'[29] While, O Kuru king, the chief of the gods was saying so unto Yudhishthira, the deity of Righteousness, in his embodied form, then addressed his own son and said,[30]—O king, I am greatly pleased, O thou of great wisdom, with thee, O son, by thy devotion to me, by thy truthfulness of speech, and forgiveness, and self-restraint![31] This, indeed, is the third test, O king, to which I put thee! Thou art incapable, O son of Prithā, of being swerved from thy nature or reason![32] Before this, I had examined thee in the Dwaita woods by my questions, when thou hadst come to that lake for recovering a couple of fire-sticks. Thou stoodst it well.[33] Assuming the shape of a dog, I examined thee once more, O son, when thy brothers with Draupadi had fallen down.[34] This has been thy third test; thou hast expressed thy wish to stay at Hell for the sake of thy brothers. Thou hast become cleansed, O

---

* 'Asi-riddhitān' means, as explained by Nilakantha, 'enhanced by the (sacrificial) sword.'—T.

† Gangā has three courses. That in Heaven is called Suradhuni or Mandākini; that in Earth is called Gangā; and that in the nether regions or Pātāla is called Bhogavati.—T.

highly blessed one. Purified of sin, be thou happy![35] O son of Prithā, thy brothers, O king, were not such as to deserve Hell. All this has been an illusion created by the chief of the gods.[36] Without doubt, all kings, O son, must once behold Hell. Hence hast thou for a little while been subjected to this great affliction.[37] O king, neither Arjuna, nor Bhima, nor any of those foremost of men, *viz.*, the twins, nor Karna, ever truthful in speech and possessed of great courage, could be deserving of Hell for a long time.[38] The princess Krishnā too, O Yudhishthira, could not be deserving of that place of sinners. Come, come, O foremost one of the Bharatas, behold Gangā who spreads her current over the three worlds!"[39] Thus addressed, that royal sage, *viz.*, thy grandsire, proceeded with Dharma and all the other gods.[40] Having bathed in celestial river Gangā, sacred and sanctifying and ever adored by the Rishis, he cast off his human body.[41] Assuming then a celestial form, king Yudhishthira the just, in consequence of that bath, became divested of all his enmities and grief.[42] Surrounded by the deities, the Kuru king Yudhishthira then proceeded from that spot. He was accompanied by Dharma, and the great Rishis uttered his praises.[43] Indeed, he reached that place where those foremost of men, those heroes, *viz.*, the Pāndavas and the Dhārtarāshtras, freed from (human) wrath, were enjoying each his respective status."[44]

Section IV.

Vaiçampāyana said,—"King Yudhishthira, thus praised by the gods, the Maruts and the Rishis, proceeded to that place where those foremost ones of Kuru's race were.[1] He beheld Govinda endued with his Brahma-form. It resembled that form of his which had been seen before and which, therefore, helped the recognition.[2] Blazing forth in that form of his, he was adorned with celestial weapons, such as the terrible discus and others in their respective embodied forms.*[3]

---

* The celestial weapons are all animate beings and have embodied forms of their own.—T.

He was being adored by the heroic Phālguna, who also was endued with a blazing effulgence. The son of Kunti beheld the slayer of Madhu in also his own form.[4] Those two foremost of Beings, adored by all the gods, beholding Yudhishthira, received him with proper honours.[5] In another place, the delighter of the Kurus beheld Karna, that foremost one among all wielders of weapons, resembling a dozen Suryas in splendour.[6] In another part he beheld Bhimasena of great puissance, sitting in the midst of the Maruts, and endued with a blazing form.*[7] Ho was sitting by the side of the god of wind in his embodied form. Indeed, he was then in a celestial form endued with great beauty, and had attained to the highest success.[8] In the place belonging to the Açwins, the delighter of the Kurus beheld Nakula and Sahadeva, each blazing with his own effulgence.[9] He also beheld the princess of Panchāla, decked in garlands of lotuses. Having attained to Heaven, she was sitting there, endued with a form possessed of solar splendour.[10] King Yudhishthira suddenly wished to question her. Then the illustrious Indra, the chief of the gods, spoke to him.[11]—'This one is Sree herself. It was for your sake that she took birth, as the daughter of Drupada, among human beings, issuing not from any mother's womb, O Yudhishthira, endued with agreeable perfume and capable of delighting the whole world.[12] For your pleasure, she was created by the wielder of the trident. She was born in the race of Drupada and was enjoyed by you all.†[13] These five highly blessed Gandharvas endued with the effulgence of fire, and possessed of great energy, were, O king, the sons of Draupadi and yourself.[14] Behold Dhritarāshtra, the king of the Gandharvas, possessed of great wisdom. Know that this one was the eldest brother of thy sire![15] This one is thy

---

* 'Tenaiva &c.,' may mean that Bhima was seen in the same form that he had while on Earth. Perhaps, what is meant is that all these, *viz.*, Govinda, Phālguna, Bhima, though now endued with blazing forms, yet had strong resemblances to their respective forms on Earth.—T.

† 'Cula' is a lance. Mahādeva's weapon is a 'tri-çula' or trident. Instead of every time calling it 'triçula,' it is sometimes named simply as 'çula,'—T.

eldest brother, the son of Kunti, endued with the effulgence of fire. The son of Surya, thy eldest brother, the foremost of men, even this one was known as the son of Rādhā.[16] He moves in the campany of Surya. Behold this foremost of Beings! Among the tribes of the Sāddhyas, the gods, the Viçwedevas, and the Maruts,[17] behold, O king of kings, the mighty car-warriors of the Vrishnis and the Andhakas, *viz.*, those heroes having Sātyaki for their first, and those mighty ones among the Bhojas.[18] Behold the son of Subhadrā, invincible in battle, now staying with Soma. Even he is the mighty bowman Abhimanyu, now endued with the gentle effulgence of the great luminary of the night.[19] Here is the mighty bow-man Pāndu, now united with Kunti and Mādri. Thy sire frequently comes to me on his excellent car.[20] Behold the royal Bhishma, the son of Cāntanu, now in the midst of the Vasus. Know that this one by the side of Vrihaspati is thy preceptor Drona.[21] These and other kings, O son of Pāndu, who had warred on thy side now walk with the Gandharvas or Yakshas or other sacred beings.[22] Some have attained to the status of Guhyakas, O king. Having cast off their bodies, they have conquered Heaven by the merit they had acquired through word, thought, and deed!'"[23]

Section V.

Janamejaya said,—"Bhishma and Drona, those two high-souled persons, king Dhritarāshtra, and Virāta and Drupada, and Cankha and Uttara,[1] Dhrishtaketu and Jayatsena, and king Satyajit, the sons of Duryodhana, and Cakuni the son of Suvala,[2] Karna's sons of great prowess, king Jayadratha, Ghatotkacha and others whom thou hast not mentioned,[3] the other heroic kings of blazing forms,—tell me for what period they remained in Heaven.[4] O foremost of regenerate persons, was theirs an eternal place in Heaven? What was the end attained to by those foremost of men when their acts came to an end?*[5] I desire to hear this, O foremost of regene-

---

* Acts end when the rewards or punishments attached to them come

rate persons, and, therefore, have I asked thee. Through thy blazing penances thou seest all things!"[6]

Sauti said,—Thus questioned, that regenerate Rishi, receiving the permission of the high-souled Vyāsa, set himself to answer the question of the king.[7]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Every one, O king of men, is not capable of returning to his own nature at the end of his deeds. Whether this is so or not, is, indeed, a good question asked by thee!*[8] Hear, O king, this which is a mystery of the gods, O chief of Bharata's race! It was explained (to us) by Vyāsa of mighty energy, celestial vision, and great prowess,[9] that ancient ascetic, O Kauravya, who is the son of Parāçara and who always observes high vows, who is of immeasurable understanding, who is omniscient, and who, therefore, knows the end attached to all acts.[10] Bhishma of mighty energy and great effulgence attained to the status of the Vasus. Eight Vasus, O chief of Bharata's race, are now seen.†[11] Drona entered into Vrihaspati, that fore-

---

to an end. Generally, a portion of one's acts remains unexhausted. It is in consequence of this unexhausted balance that rebirth takes place and the happiness and misery one enjoys and endures after such rebirth is the effect of that balance.—T.

* 'Na çakyam &c., prakritim *patigantum*' is the construction, as pointed out by Nilakantha. The question, therefore, that is asked is this; is every one capable of returning to his own nature at the end of his deeds? By return to one's own nature is meant the attainment of Emancipation from re-birth. As said in the previous note, one's acts are *not* all exhausted. A certain measure of happiness and misery is enjoyed and endured in the other world in consequence of one's acts in this. A portion of one's acts must remain; otherwise there can be no re-birth. The unexhausted remnant of one's acts leads to re-birth and the happiness and the misery one enjoys and endures upon such re-birth. What the king wishes to know, therefore, is this: what is the period for which Bhishma and others are to enjoy Heaven? Upon the exhaustion of that portion of their acts for which they are to enjoy Heaven, is re-birth ordained for them in consequence, as usual, of the unexhausted balance? Or, are all their acts to be exhausted and upon such exhaustion they are to return to their own nature? It is this question that is asked and that is answered by the Rishi.—T.

† Bhishma was the Vasu named Dau. Through Vaçishtha's curse

most one of Angirasa's descendants. Hridikā's son Kritavarman entered the Maruts.[12] Pradyumna entered Sanatkumāra whence he had issued.* Dhritarāshtra obtained the regions, so difficult of acquisition, that belong to the Lord of treasures.[13] The famous Gāndhāri obtained the same regions with her husband Dhritarāshtra. With his two wives, Pāndu proceeded to the abode of the great Indra.[14] Both Virāta and Drupada, and king Dhrishtaketu, as also Nishatha, Akrura, Cāmva, Bhānukampa, and Viduratha,[15] and Bhuriçravas and Cana and king Bhuri, and Kansa, and Ugrasena, and Vasudeva,[16] and Uttara, that foremost of men, with his brother Cankha,—all these foremost of persons entered the deities.[17] Soma's son of great prowess, named Varchas of mighty energy, became Abhimanyu, the son of Phālguna, that lion among men.[18] Having fought, agreeably to Kshatriya practices, with bravery such as none else had ever been able to show,—that mighty-armed and righteous-souled being entered Soma.[19] Slain on the field of battle, O foremost of men, Karna entered Surya. Cakuni obtained absorption into Dwāpara, and Dhrishtadyumna into the deity of fire.[20] The sons of Dhritarāshtra were all Rākshasas of fierce might. Sanctified by death caused by weapons, those high-souled beings of great prosperity all succeeded in attaining to Heaven.[21] Both Kshattri and king Yudhishthira entered into the god of Righteousness. The holy and illustrious Ananta (who had taken birth as Valarāma) proceeded to the region below the Earth.[22] Through the command of the Grandsire, he, aided by his Yoga power, supported the Earth.† Vāsudeva

---

he had to take birth as a man. Upon his death, he returned to his own status; that is, became a Vasu, and brought up their tale to eight. Instead of existing in Heaven as a separate individual in the midst of the Vasus, he became obsorbed into them and began to exist as a Vasu, the eighth of their number. It was no case of *Swālokya* but *Swāyujya*.—T.

* All these, instead of existing as separate individuals, became absorbed in those from whom they had issued or whose portions they were.—T.

† The Earth is supposed to be supported in space by Ananta, the

was a portion of that eternal god of gods, called Nārāyana. Accordingly, he entered into Nārāyana.[23] Sixteen thousand women had been married to Vāsudeva as his wives. When the time came, O Janamejaya, they plunged into the Saraswati.[24] Casting off their (human) bodies there, they re-ascended to Heaven. Transformed into Apsarās, they approached the presence of Vāsudeva.[25] Those heroic and mighty car-warriors, *viz.*, Ghatotkacha and others, who were slain in the great battle, attained to the status, some of gods and some of Yakshas.[26] Those that had fought on the side of Duryodhana are said to have been Rākshasas. Gradually, O king, they have all attained to excellent regions of felicity.[27] Those foremost of men have proceeded, some to the abode of Indra, some to that of Kuvera of great intelligence, and some to that of Varuna.[28] I have now told thee, O thou of great splendour, everything about the acts, O Bhārata, of both the Kurus and the Pāndavas."[29]

Sauti said,—Hearing this, ye foremost of regenerate ones, at the intervals of sacrificial rites, king Janamejaya became filled with wonder.[30] The sacrificial priests then finished the rites that remained to go through. Astika, having rescued the snakes (from a fiery death), became filled with joy.[31] King Janamejaya then gratified all the Brāhmanas with copious presents. Thus worshipped by the king, they returned to their respective abodes.[32] Having dismissed those learned Brāhmanas, king Janamejaya came back from Takshaçilā to the city named after the elephant.[33] I have now told thee everything that Vaiçampāyana narrated, at the command of Vyāsa, unto the king at his snake sacrifice.[34] Called a history, it is sacred, sanctifying and excellent. It has been composed by the ascetic Krishna, O Brāhmana, of truthful speech.[35] He is omniscient, conversant with all ordinances, possessed of a knowledge of all duties, endued with piety, capable of perceiving what is beyond the ken of the senses, pure, having a soul cleansed by penances,[36] possessed of the six high attri-

---

mighty snake of interminable body. It was at the command of the Grandsire that Ananta placed the Earth on his head.—T.

butes, and devoted to Sānkhya Yoga. He has composed this, beholding everything with a celestial eye that has been cleansed (strengthened) by varied lore.[37] He has done this, desiring to spread the fame, throughout the world, of the high-souled Pāndavas as also of other Kshatriyas possessed of abundant wealth of energy.[38] That learned man who recites this history on sacred days in the midst of a listening auditory, becomes cleansed of every sin, conquers Heaven, and attains to the status of Brahma.[39] Of that man who listens with rapt attention to the recitation of the whole of this Veda composed by (the Island-born) Krishna, a million sins, numbering such grave ones as Brahmanicide and the rest, are washed off.[40] The Pitris of that man who recites even a small portion of this history at a *Çrāddha*, obtain inexhaustible food and drink.*[41] The sins that one commits during the day by one's senses or the mind are all washed off before evening by reciting a portion of the Mahābhārata.[42] Whatever sins a Brāhmana may commit at night in the midst of women, are all washed off before dawn by reciting a portion of the Mahābhārata.[43] The high race of the Bharatas is its topic. Hence it is called Bhārata. And because of its grave import as also of the Bharatas being its topic, it is called *Mahābhārata*.†[44] He who is versed in interpretations of this great treatise, becomes cleansed of every sin. Such a man lives in righteousness, wealth, and pleasure, and attains to Emancipation also, O chief of Bharata's race !‡[45] That which occurs here occurs elsewhere. That which does not occur here occurs nowhere else. This history is known by the name of *Jaya*. It should be heard by every one desirous of Emancipation.[46] It should be read by Brāhmanas, by kings, and by women quick with

---

* 'Pāda' may also mean a single foot of a verse. In a *çloka* there are four pādas. He, therefore, who recites even a foot of a single verse of this history, confers upon his Pitris an inexhaustible stock of food and drink —T.

† 'Mahat' is high or great. 'Mahābhārata,' therefore, means, a great or high history of the Bharatas.—T.

‡ 'Nirukta' literally means an explanation of the especial terms of the Vedas.—T.

children. He that desires Heaven attains to Heaven ; and he that desires victory attains to victory.[47] The woman quick with child gets either a son or a daughter highly blessed. The puissant Island-born Krishna, who will not have to come back, and who is Emancipation incarnate, made an abstract of the Bhārata, moved by the desire of aiding the cause of righteousness.*[48] He made another compilation consisting of sixty lakhs of verses.[49] Thirty lakhs of these were placed in the region of the deities. In the region of the Pitris, fifteen lakhs, it should be known, are current ; while in that of the Yakshas fourteen lakhs are in vogue.[50] One lakh is current among human beings. Nārada recited the Mahābhārata to the gods ; Asita-Devala to the Pitris ;[51] Cuka to the Rākshasas and the Yakshas ; and Vaiçampāyana to human beings. This history is sacred, and of high import, and regarded as equal to the Vedas.[52] That man, O Caunaka, who hears this history, placing a Brāhmana before him, acquires both fame and the fruition of all his wishes.[53] He who, with fervid devotion, listens to a recitation of the Mahābhārata, attains (hereafter) to high success in consequence of the merit that becomes his through understanding even a very small portion thereof. All the sins of that man who recites or listens to this history with devotion are washed off.[54-55] In former times, the great Rishi Vyāsa, having composed this treatise, caused his son Cuka to read it with him, along with these four Verses.†[56]—Thousands of mothers and fathers, and hundreds of sons and wives arise in the world and depart from it. Others will (arise and) similarly depart.[57] There are thousands of occasions for joy and hundreds of occasions for fear. These affect only him that is ignorant but never him that is wise.[58] With uplifted arms I am crying aloud but nobody hears me. From Right-

* 'Anāgata' and 'Moksha' are thus explained by Nilakantha.—T.

† The four verses referred to are the 57th, 58th, 59th, and 60th of this lesson. The printed Bombay text differs in some respects from the Bengal text of this lesson. But carefully considering the differences, I have no doubt that the Bengal text is genuine, and that the Bombay text is vitiated.—T.

eousness as Wealth as also Pleasure. Why should not Righteousness, therefore, be courted?[59] For the sake neither of pleasure, nor of fear, nor of cupidity should any one cast off Righteousness. Indeed, for the sake of even life one should not cast off Righteousness. Righteousness is eternal. Pleasure and Pain are not eternal. Jiva is eternal. The cause, however, of Jiva's being invested with a body is not so.[60]—That man who, waking up at dawn, reads this Sāvittri of the Bhārata, acquires all the rewards attached to a recitation of this history and ultimately attains to the highest Brahma.*[61] As the sacred Ocean, as the Himavat mountain, are both regarded as mines of precious gems, even so is this Bhārata (regarded as a mine of precious gems).[62] The man of learning, by reciting to others this Veda or Agama composed by (the Island-born) Krishna, earns wealth. There is no doubt in this that he who, with rapt attention, recites this history called Bhārata, attains to high success.[63] What need has that man of a sprinkling of the waters of Pushkara who attentively listens to this Bhārata, while it is recited to him? It represents the nectar that fell from the lips of the Island-born. It is immeasurable, sacred, sanctifying, sin-cleansing, and auspicious."[64]

Section VI.

Janamejaya said,—"O holy one, according to what rites should the learned listen to the Bhārata? What are the fruits (acquirable by hearing it)? What deities are to be worshipped during the several *Pāranas*?†[1] What should be the gifts that one should make, O holy one, at every Parva or sacred day (during the continuance of the recitation)?

---

* By 'Sāvittri' is meant anything as sacred as the 'Gāyattri.' The latter is, of course, the most sacred verse of the Vedas. The four verses here set forth constitute the 'Sāvittri' or 'Gāyattri' of the Bhārata. Their recitation is regarded as equivalent to a recitation of the whole compilation.—T.

† A *Pārana* is so much of the text as is generally recited or read at one sitting.—T.

What should be the qualifications of the reciter to be engaged? Tell me all this!"*[2]

Vaiçampāyana said,—"Hear, O king, what that procedure is, and what the fruits, O Bhārata, are that will spring from one's listening (to a recitation of the Bhārata). Even this, O king of kings, is what thou askest me.[3] The deities of Heaven, O ruler of Earth, came to this world for sport. Having achieved their task, they ascended once more to Heaven.[4] Listen to what I shall tell thee in brief. In the Mahābhārata is to be found the births of Rishis and deities on the Earth.[5] In this treatise, called Bhārata, O foremost one of Bharata's race, are to be seen in one place the eternal Rudras, the Sāddhyas, and the Viçwedevas; the Ādityas, the two deities named the Açwins, the regents of the World, the great Rishis, the Guhyakas, the Gandharvas, the Nāgas, the Vidyādharas, the Siddhas, the diverse deities, the Self-born visible in a body, with many ascetics; the Hills and Mountains, Oceans and Seas and Rivers; the diverse tribes of Apsaras; the Planets, the Years, the Half-years, and the Seasons; and the whole universe of mobile and immobile entities, with all the gods and Asuras.†[6-9] Hearing their celebrity, and in consequence of a recitation of their names and achievements, a man, that has committed even terrible sins, will be cleansed.[10] Having, with a concentrated soul and cleansed body, heard this history duly, from the beginning, and having reached its end, one should make *Çrāddha*-offerings, O Bhārata, unto those (foremost of persons who have been mentioned in it). Unto the Brāhmanas also, O chief of Bharata's race, should, with due devotion and according to one's power, be made[11-12] large gifts and diverse kinds of gems, and kine, and vessels of white brass for milking kine, and maidens decked with every ornament,[13] and possessed of every acomplishment suited to

---

* A 'Parva' is a sacred day; generally the day of the full moon and the new moon are so called.—T.

† The second line of 7 is read differently in the Bombay text, *viz.*, "Swayambhuçcha Munih Kātyāyano varah," meaning, "the Self-born, and the ascetic Kātyāyana, that foremost of persons." Neither the Bengal, nor the Bombay, reading, however, seems to be correct.—T.

enjoyment, as also diverse kinds of conveyances, beautiful mansions, plots of land, and cloths.[14] Animals also should be given, such as horses and elephants in rut, and beds, and covered conveyances borne on the shoulders of men, and well-decked cars.[15] Whatever objects occur in the house, of the foremost kind, whatever wealth of great value occurs in it, should be given away unto Brāhmanas. Indeed, one should give away one's ownself, wives, and children.[16] One desirous of hearing the Bhārata, should hear it without a doubting heart, with cheerfulness and joy; and as he proceeds listening to its recitation, he should, according to the extent of his power, make gifts with great devotion.*[17] Hear how a person that is devoted to truth and sincerity, that is self-restrained, pure (in mind), and observant of those acts which lead to purity of body, that is endued with faith, and that has subjugated wrath, attains to success (in the matter of a recitation of the Bhārata).[18] He should appoint as reciter one that is pure (of body), that is endued with good and pious conduct, that should be robed in white, that should have a complete mastery over his passions, that is cleansed of all offences, that is conversant with every branch of learning, that is endued with faith, that is free from malice,[19] that is possessed of handsome features, that is blessed, self-restrained, truthful, and with passions under control, and that is beloved of all for the gifts he makes and the honors of which he is the possessor.[20] The reciter, seated at his ease, free from all bodily complaints, and with rapt attention, should recite the text without too much slowness, without a labouring voice,

---

* I am not sure that I have correctly understood this Verse. I take the construction to be this: Tasya (Bhāratasya) çuçrusuh, avikalpakah sumanā, hrishtah (san), kramaçah pāragaçcha (san), çaktitah parayā çraddhayā (cha), dātum (yogyo bhavati). To this day, the person, in whose house the Bhārata is recited, goes on making gifts either every day or at important stages of the recitation. To quote a few instances: when the self-choice of Draupadi comes, costly gifts are made of every sort of article, as if the person causing the recitation is Drupada himself; then, when Durvāsas's "pārana" comes, food of every sort has to be given away, as if the householder is king Yudhishthira making preparations for feeding that wrathful sage and his army of disciples.—T.

without being fast or quick, quietly, with sufficient energy, without confusing the letters and words together, in a sweet intonation and with such accent and emphasis as would indicate the sense, giving full utterance to the three and sixty letters of the alphabet from the eight places of their formation.*[21-22] Bowing unto Nārāyana, and to Nara, that foremost of men, as also to the goddess Saraswati, should the word *Jaya* be uttered.[23] Listening to the Bhārata, O king, when recited, O thou of Bharata's race, by a reader of this kind, the listener, observant of vows the while and cleansed by purificatory rites, acquires valuable fruits.[24] When the first *Pārana* is reached, the hearer should gratify Brāhmanas with presents of all desirable objects. By doing this, one obtains the fruits of the Agnishtoma sacrifice.[25] He acquires a large (celestial) car teeming with diverse orders of Apsaras (that wait upon him). With a glad heart, and with the deities in his company, he proceeds to Heaven, his heart rapt (in felicity).[26] When the second *Pārana* is reached, the hearer acquires the fruits of the *Atirātra* vow. Indeed, he ascends a celestial car made entirely of precious gems.[27] Wearing celestial garlands and robes, and decked with celestial unguents and always shedding a celestial fragrance around, he receives high honours in Heaven.[28] When the third *Pārana* is reached, he acquires the fruits of the *Dwādaçāha* vow. Indeed, he resides in Heaven for myriads of years, like a god.[29] At the fourth *Pārana* he acquires the fruits of the Vājapeya sacrifice. At the fifth, twice those fruits are his. Ascending a celestial car that resembles the rising sun or a blazing fire, and with the deties for his companions, he goes

---

* 'Asamsaktāksharapadam' means that one should not read the text like a tangled chain. In no language is it so difficult to avoid confusing the letters and words together as in Sanskrit. Take up the printed Bombay text. Each line is a series of letters, without the words being marked off by spaces. The three and sixty letters are mentioned in Pānini's çikshā. "Trishashtiçchatuhshashtirvā varnāh çambhu-mate matāh, Prākrite Sanskrite chāpi swayam proktāh Swayambhuvā, &c." The eight places of utterance are the Chest, the Throat, the Head, the Tongue-root, the Teeth, the Nose, the Lip, and the Palate.—T.

to Heaven and sports in felicity for myriads of years in the abode of Indra.[30-31] At the sixth *Pārana*, twice, and at the seventh, thrice those fruits become his. Ascending a celestial car that resembles the summit of the Kailāsa mountains (in beauty), that is equipt with an altar made of stones of *lapis lazuli* and other precious gems, that is surrounded by beautiful objects of diverse kinds, that is decked with gems and corals, that moves at the will of the rider, and that teems with waiting Apsaras, he roves through all the regions of felicity, like a second deity of the Sun. At the eighth *Pārana* he acquires the fruits of the Rājasuya sacrifice.[32-34] He ascends a car as beautiful as the rising moon, and unto which are yoked steeds white as the rays of the moon and endued with the speed of thought.[35] He is served by women of the foremost beauty and whose faces are more charming than the moon. He hears the music of the garlands that encircle their waists and the *Nupuras* encircling their ankles.[36] Sleeping with his head resting on the laps of women of transcendent beauty, he awakes greatly refreshed. At the ninth *Pārana*, he acquires, O Bhārata, the fruits of that foremost of sacrifices, *viz.*, the Horse-sacrifice.[37] Ascending on a car equipt with a chamber consisting of a top supported by columns of gold, furnished with a seat made of stones of *lapis lazuli*, with windows on all sides made of pure gold, and teeming with waiting Apsaras and Gandharvas and other celestials, he blazes forth in splendour.[38] Wearing celestial garlands and robes, and decked with celestial unguents, he sports in bliss, with deities for his companions, in Heaven, like a second deity himself.[39-40] Reaching the tenth *Pārana* and gratifying Brāhmanas, he acquires a car which tinkles with innumerable bells, which is decked with flags and banners, which is equipt with a seat made of precious gems, which has many arches made of *lapis lazuli*, which has a net-work of gold all round, which has turrets made of corals, which is adorned with Gandharvas and Apsaras well-skilled in singing, and which is fit for the residence of the Righteous.[41-43] Crowned with a diadem of the complexion of fire, decked with ornaments of gold, his person smeared with celestial sandal-

paste, garnished with celestial wreaths, he roves through all celestial regions, enjoying all celestial objects of enjoyment, and endued with great splendour, through the grace of the deities.[44-45] Thus accoutred, he receives high honours in Heaven for many long years. With Gandharvas in his company, for full one and twenty thousand years, he sports in bliss with Indra himself in the abode of Indra. He roves at pleasure every day through the diverse regions of the gods, riding on celestial cars and conveyances, and surrounded by celestial damsels of transcendent beauty. He is able to go to the abode of the solar deity, of the lunar deity,[46-48] and of Civa, O king! Indeed, he succeeds in living in the same region with Vishnu himself. It is even so, O monarch! There is no doubt in this.[49] A person listening with faith, becomes even so. My preceptor has said this. Unto the reciter should be given all such objects as he may wish.[50] Elephants and steeds and cars and conveyances, especially animals and the vehicles they draw, a bracelet of gold, a pair of earrings, sacred threads,[51] beautiful robes, and perfumes in especial (should be given). By worshipping him as a deity one attains to the regions of Vishnu.[52] After this I shall declare what should be given away, as each Parvan is reached of the Bhārata in course of its recitation,*[53] unto Brāhmanas, after ascertaining their birth, country, truthfulness, and greatness, O chief of Bharata's race, as also their inclination for piety, and unto Kshatriyas too, O king, after ascertainment of similar particulars.†[54] Causing the Brāhmanas to utter benedictions, the business of recitation should be begun. When a Parvan is finished, the Brāhmanas should be worshipped to the best of one's power.[55] At first, the reciter,

---

* The Bombay text reads "Viprebhyah" for "Viprendre."—T.

† All the printed texts read "Kshatriyānām" in the second line of this verse. Gifts, however, are directed to be made unto Brāhmanas and not unto Kshatriyas. For the latter, acceptance of gifts is not prescribed. Besides, in the following verses, the gifts are specially declared to be made to Brāhmanas. No mention occurs in them of any obligation to make gifts unto Kshatriyas. I think, the true reading is lost.—T.

clad in good robes and smeared with perfumed paste, should, O king, be duly fed with honey and frumenty of the best kind.[56] When the Astika Parva is being recited, Brāhmanas should be entertained with fruits and roots, and frumenty, and honey and clarified butter, and rice boiled with raw sugar.[57] When the Sabhā Parva is being recited, Brāhmanas should be fed with *Habishya* along with *Apupas* and *Pupas* and *Modakas*, O king.*[58] When the Aranyaka Parva is being recited, superior Brāhmanas should be fed with fruits and roots. When the Arani Parva is reached, water-pots full of water should be given away.[59] Many superior kinds of delicious food, also rice and fruits and roots, and food possessed of every agreeable attribute, should be presented unto the Brāhmanas.†[60] During the recitation of the Virāta Parva, diverse kinds of robes should be given away; and during that of the Udyoga Parva, O chief of the Bharatas, the twice-born ones, after being decked with perfumes and garlands, should be entertained with food possessed of every agreeable quality. During the recitation of the Bhishma Parva, O king of kings, after giving them excellent cars and conveyances,[61-62] food should be given that is pure and well-cooked and possessed of every desirable attribute. During the Drona Parva food of very superior kind should be given to learned Brāhmanas,[63] as also beds, O monarch, and bows and good swords. During the recitation of the Karna Parva, food of the foremost kind,[64] that is, besides, pure and well cooked, should be presented unto the Brāhmanas by the house-holder with rapt mind. During the recitation of the Calya Parva, O king of kings, food with confectionery and rice boiled with raw sugar, as also cakes of wheat and soothing and nutritive viands and drinks should be presented. During the recitation of the Gadā Parva, Brāhmanas should be entertained with food

---

* 'Habishya' is food consisting of rice and milk and sugar. It should be without meat of any kind. 'Apupas' are cakes of flour of wheat 'Pupas' are cakes of rice reduced to powder; they are less rich than those made of wheat-flour. 'Modakas' are confectionery.—T.

† By 'tarpana' is meant such food or drink as is soothing and nutritive. It is a technical word used in Charaka.—T.

mixed with Mudga.*[65-66] During the recitation of the Stree Parva, foremost of Brāhmanas should be entertained with gems and precious stones: and during the recitation of the Aishika Parva, rice boiled in ghee should first be given,[67] and then food pure and well-cooked, and possessed of every desirable quality, should be presented. During the recitation of the Cānti Parva, the Brāhmanas should be fed with *Habishya.*[68] When the Açwamedhika Parva is reached, food possessed of every agreeable quality should be given; and when the Açramavāsika, is reached Brāhmanas should be entertained with *Habishya.*[69] When the Mausala is reached, scents and garlands possessed of agreeable qualitiess hould be given away. During the Mahāprasthānika, similar presents should be made, possessed of every quality of an agreeable kind.[70] When the Swarga Parva is reached, the Brāhmanas should be fed with *Habishya.* Upon the conclusion of the Harivança, a thousand Brāhmanas should be fed.[71] Unto each of them should be presented a cow accompanied with a piece of gold. Half of this should be presented to each poor man, O king.[72] Upon the conclusion of all the Parvas, the house-holder of wisdom should give unto the reciter a copy of the Mahābhārata with a piece of gold.[73] When the Harivança Parva is being recited, Brāhmanas should be fed with frumenty at each successive *Pārana*, O king![74] Having finished all the Parvas, one versed in the scriptures, robing himself in white, wearing garlands, decked with ornaments, and properly purified, should place a copy of the Mahābhārata on an auspicious spot and cover it with a piece of silken cloth and worship it, according to due rites, with scents and garlands, offering each at a time.[75-76] Indeed, O king, the several volumes of this treatise should be worshipped by one with devotion and concentrated mind. Offerings should be made unto them of diverse kinds of food and garlands and drinks and diverse auspicious articles of enjoyment.[77] Gold and other precious metals should be given as Dakshinā. The names should then be taken of all the deities as also of Nara

* 'Mudga' is the Phaseolus Mungo of Roxburgh.—T.

and Nārāyana.[78] Then, adorning the persons of some foremost of Brāhmanas with scents and garlands, they should be gratified with diverse kinds of gifts of enjoyable and very superior or costly articles.[79] By doing this, one attains to the merits of the Atirātra sacrifice. Indeed, at each successive Parva, he acquires the merits that attach to the performance of a sacrifice.[80] The reciter, O chief of the Bharatas, should be possessed of learning and endued with a good voice and a clear utterance respecting both letters and words. Even such a man should, O chief of the Bharatas, recite the Bhārata.[81] After entertaining a number of foremost Brāhmanas, presents should be made unto them according to the ordinances. The reciter also, O chief of the Bharatas, should be decked with ornaments and fed sumptuously.[82] The reciter being gratified, the house-holder attains to an excellent and auspicious contentment. If the Brāhmanas are gratified, all the deities are gratified.[83] After this, O chief of the Bharatas, Brāhmanas should be duly entertained with diverse kinds of enjoyable articles and superior things.[84]

"I have thus indicated the ordinances, O foremost of men, (about the manner of reciting these scriptures) in answer to thy enquiries. Thou shouldst observe them with faith.[85] In listening to a recitation of the Bhārata and at each Pārana, O best of kings, one that desires to attain to the highest good should listen with the greatest care and attention.[86] One should listen to the Bhārata every day. One should proclaim the merits of the Bhārata every day. One in whose house the Bhārata occurs, has in his hands all those scriptures which are known by the name of *Jaya*.*[87] The Bhārata is cleansing and sacred. In the Bhārata are diverse topics. The Bhārata is worshipped by the very gods. The Bhārata is the highest goal.[88] The Bhārata, O chief of the Bharatas, is the foremost of all scriptures. One attains to Emancipation

* 'Jaya' is the name given to certain scriptures. The Bhārata is equivalent to those scriptures. One, therefore, that has a copy of the Bhārata in one's house, is regarded as having all those scriptures which are named Jaya. The word 'Jaya' does not mean here victory or success —T.

through the Bhārata. This that I tell thee is certain truth.[89] One that proclaims the merits of this history called the Mahābhārata, of the Earth, of the cow, of Saraswati (the goddess of speech), of Brāhmanas, and of Keçava, has never to languish.[90] In the Veda, in the Rāmāyana, and in the sacred Bhārata, O chief of Bharata's race, Hari is sung in the beginning, the middle, and the end.[91] That in which occurs excellent statements relating to Vishnu, and the eternal Crutis, should be listened to by men desirous of attaining to the highest goal.[92] This treatise is sanctifying; This is the highest indicator as regards duties; this is endued with every merit. One desirous of prosperity should listen to it.[93] Sins committed by means of the body, by means of words, and by means of the mind, are all destroyed (through listening to the Bhārata) as Darkness at sunrise.[94] One devoted to Vishnu acquires (through this) that merit which is acquired by listening to the eighteen Purānas. There is no doubt in this.[95] Men and women (by listening to this) would certainly attain to the status of Vishnu. Women desirous of children should certainly listen to this which proclaims the fame of Vishnu.[96] One desirous of attaining to the fruits that attach to a recitation of the Bhārata should, according to one's power, give unto the reciter Dakshinā as also an honorarium in gold.[97] One desirous of one's own good should give unto the reciter a Kapilā cow with horns cased in gold and accompanied by her calf, covered with a cloth.[98] Ornaments, O chief of Bharata's race, for the arms, as also those for the ears, should be given. Besides these, other kinds of wealth should be presented.*[99] Unto the reciter, O king of men, gift of land should be made. No gift like that of land could ever be or will be.[100] The man that listens (to the Bhārata) or that recites it to other people, becomes cleansed of all his sins and attains at last to the status of Vishnu.[101] Such a man rescues his ancestors to the eleventh degree, as also himself with his wives and sons, O chief of Bharata's

* The Bengal texts read 'punyoh' for 'pānyoh.' Then, again, in the second line, the true reading is 'dhanam' and not 'dānam.'—T.

race.[102] After concluding a recitation of the Bhārata, one should, O king, perform a *Homa* with all its ten parts.

"I have thus, O chief of men, told everything in thy presence.[103] He that listens with devotion to this Bhārata from the beginning becomes cleansed of every sin even if he be guilty of Brāhmanicide or the violation of his preceptor's bed, or even if he be a drinker of alcohol or a robber of other people's wares, or even if he be born in the Chandāla order.[104] Destroying all his sins like the maker of day destroying darkness, such a man, without doubt, sports in felicity in the region of Vishnu like Vishnu himself."[105]

FINIS SWARGAROHANIKA PARVA.

The EIGHTEEN PARVAS of the MAHABHARATA

are thus completed.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

SWARGAROHANIKA PARVA.

	PAGE.
Janamejaya enquires about the regions in the other world attained by his deceased grandsires	1
Arrived at Heaven, Yudhishthira beholds Duryodhana blazing with effulgence and seated in the midst of Sāddhas	ib
Yudhishthira's indignation at the sight of Duryodhana's prosperity	ib
Yudhishthira loudly expresses his indignation ...	ib
Ditto expresses the wish of going thither where his brothers are	2
Nārada solicits him to cast off his wrath ...	ib
Yudhishthira's reply to Nārada in which he re-iterates his desire of seeing his brothers ...	ib
Yudhishthira's appeal to the gods for sending him there where his brothers are	3
The gods order a celestial messenger to lead Yudhishthira to the region attained by his brothers	4
The painful sights seen by Yudhishthira on his way	ib
Yudhishthira hears voices of pain which he recognises to be those of his brothers and relatives	5
Those voices request him to stay there ...	ib
Yudhishthira's lament at finding his brothers and relatives in Hell	6
Dharma comes to Yudhishthira and the illusion of Hell disappears	7
The deities surround and honour Yudhishthira ...	ib
Indra explains to Yudhishthira the cause of the illusion	8

PAGE.

Indra informs Yudhishthira of the regions reserved for him 9
Yudhishthira plunges into the celestial Gangā and rises with a celestial body ... ... ib
Yudhishthira addressed by the deity of Right-courses ... ... ib
Dharma refers to Yudhishthira's sight of Hell as his third test ... ... ib
Yudhishthira, accompanied by Dharma, the Maruts, the celestial Rishis, and the deities, proceeds to the place where his brothers and relatives really are 10
Yudhishthira beholds Govinda in his blazing Brahma-form ... ... ib
Ditto beholds Arjuna endued with blazing effulgence 11
Ditto beholds Karna ... ... ib
Ditto beholds Bhima and Nakula and Sahadeva and Draupadi in their blazing forms ... ib
Ditto beholds the five Gandharvas that took birth as the sons of Draupadi ... ... ib
Ditto beholds Dhritarāshtra ... ... ib
Ditto beholds the Vrishni and the Andhaka heroes among the Sādhyas, the Viçwedevas and the Maruts... 12
Ditto beholds Abhimanyu, Pāndu, Kunti and Mādri ... ... ib
Ditto beholds the other heroes who had warred on either side ... ... ib
Janamejaya enquires of Vaiçampāyana as to the durations for which the heroes of Kurukshetra would remain in the regions attained by them ... ... ib
Vaiçampāyana explains who among them became merged in the original essence from which he had sprung 13
The conclusion of Janamejaya's Snake-sacrifice ... 15

PAGE.

Astika filled with joy at having rescued the Snakes 15
The sacrificial priests dismissed with large presents ... ... ib
Janamejaya returns to his capital from Takshaçilā, the place of Sacrifice ... ... ib
The merits of the Mahābhārata ... ... ib
The Sāvittri of the Mahābhārata 17
The ordinances with respect to the manner in which a recitation of the Mahābhārata should be listened 18
Crāddha offerings should be made after hearing the Mahābhārata 19
The gifts in general that should be made after hearing a recitation of the Mahābhārata ... ib
The qualifications of the person to be engaged as reciter 20
The manner in which the recitation should be made ... ... ib
The fruits won at the conclusion of each *Pārana*... 21
The gifts that should be made at the conclusion of each Parvan 23
The merits of the Mahābhārata 26
By listening to the Mahābhārata one becomes cleansed of even the gravest sins 28

FINIS.

POST-SCRIPT.

Through the grace of Vāsudeva, the English translation of the Mahābhārata, consisting of eighteen Parvas or books, is brought to a close. Large or small, the eighteen Parvas may be compared to as many seas. Practically, therefore, the other end has been reached of what had at first appeared as an interminable ocean of eighteen divisions. The joy, however, that I feel at the completion is very largely mixed with sorrow. The one object upon which my husband had set his heart is today accomplished. For twelve long years he had incessantly laboured for bringing it about. Those who watched him know that for twelve long years he had scarcely any relish for food and sleep. The difficulties with which he had to struggle were simply formidable. At times he despaired of success, but though despairing he did not cease to work. His self-imposed task has at last reached completion. That which he had hoped for, that which he had often wished, has now come to pass. The last verse of the Mahābhārata has been translated and published, and the translator has written the word *Finis* at the conclusion of the eighteenth Parva. Joy penetrates and illumines my heart. But, alas, that illumination is transient, very transient, indeed! It is—

> Brief as the lightning in the collied night,
> That, in a spleen, unfolds both heaven and earth,
> And ere a man hath power to say,—behold!
> The jaws of darkness do devour it up.

Yes, the darkness of sorrow comes and extinguishes the ray of joy as it darts through my heart. Where is he today that would have centemplated this completion with feelings of ineffable bliss? The tree has today borne fruit. But where is he who had planted it with diffidence and nurtured it with so much care? He saw the tree about to flower, but he was not spared to see the actual flowers, far less the fruit into which they have developed. My sorrow knows no bounds. Life seems to ebb away from the body when I think of my misfortune. If he were alive,—alive on even his last bed of

sickness,—I venture to think that shattered as his health was, the effect of joy would have revived and renovated him. I dare say, the feelings of his numerous friends and patrons today are like mine. Theirs also is a melancholy joy. Sympathy lessens sorrow. It is such sympathy that sustains me amid the weight of my grief.

The Mahābhārata is completed. That which at one time had seemed impossible has today become a *fait accompli.* When the idea first arose in his mind, upon the receipt of the letter written to him by the late lamented Dr. Rost in behalf of the Duke of Devonshire (then Marquis of Hartington, Secretary of State for India), my husband consulted many persons of note and experience. Almost all of them dissuaded him, suggesting the enormous difficulties that lay in the way of accomplishing the project. Some said that it was impossible; some said it was offensive to the Hindu religion. Pandit Iswara Chandra Vidyāsāgara, for whom my husband had the greatest respect, laughed outright when he heard of it, and doubted my husband's sanity. Whence was the money to come? Where could a translator be had, having such patience, if uniformity of style was to be secured? My husband had one answer. "The work," he said, "was either an Emir's or a Faqueer's. He was no Emir, but then who could prevent him from becoming a Faqueer?" Now that the work has been completed, nobody would maintain that my husband was actually insane. Alas, where are both my husband and Vidyāsāgara today? If both of them were alive, how much would they have to say to each other?

Those who said that the task was impossible were not wanting in intelligence. Who will not admit that enormous difficulties lay in the way of success? It is very much to be doubted whether anybody else, that was not so poor as my husband and that was not so free from false pride, could have achieved this gigantic task. His own estimate of the capacity of one who can act the *Faqueer*, seems, after all, to have been correct. He believed that he laboured for a high cause, —the cause, *viz.*, of the diffusion of the ancient intellectual wealth of India over the whole civilised world. He believed

that as he had effaced self as completely as is possible in this world, he would succeed in utilising the charity of the princes and the people of India for that great cause. He believed also that the enlightened Government of the country would not allow him to drudge on without substantial help. He had courage, patience, and perseverance. It is for these reasons that a task which had seemed impossible to so many sensible men has today been completed.

He was poor. It was well known that he had no mercenary motives in undertaking the publication. It was for this reason that Reis and Rayyet, great and small, prince and peasant, rich and poor, all came forward to assist him. Assistance, thus derived from all quarters, enabled him to accomplish so much. Assistance obtained from the same sources has enabled me to complete the portion left unfinished by my husband. Those who had discouraged my husband, saying that the task was opposed to the dictates of the Hindu religion, were not certainly insincere. To them I say that reflection would convince them that, in reality, the translation of the Mahābhārata into a foreign tongue cannot be fraught with any demerit. The Mahābhārata is the Hindu's great store-house of Religion, Profit, and Pleasure. It is his Dharma-çāstra ; it is his history and biography ; it is his astronomy ; it is his arithmetic ; it is the means of his self-knowledge ; it is the means of his acquisition of Emancipation. It is regarded as the supplement of the Vedas in the matter of understanding Brahma. In brief, the Mahābhārata is the one book that is held to be of very great value in India. In consequence of the gradual decadence of Sanskrit in this country, this treatise had become unintelligible to the main body of the people. Speaking of Bengal, the people had to be content with the versified translation of Kāçidāsa. Kāçidāsa's is not a faithful rendering, whatever other excellencies (and they are many) it may possess. Then came the late Babu Kāli Prasanna Singha who gave the public, at an enormous cost, a translation in prose, and after him Maharajah Mahtab Chand Bahadur of Burdwan gave his version. A third Bengali version, in simpler style, was

presented to Bengali readers by my husband. It is not for me to speak of the excellencies or deficiencies of those versions. These showed the people of Bengal what the true contents are of Vyāsa's great work. Successive editions of all these versions were exhausted as soon as they came out of the press, thus showing that the respect the people of Bengal cherish for the Mahābhārata is deep. It may be truly said that the English translation of the Mahābhārata has done for the entire people of India what the three Bengali versions have done for the people of Bengal. The number of those who in India can read the Mahābhārata in original is few. The number is very great who can read it in English translation. There cannot be the slightest doubt, therefore, that the work which has just been completed will prove a source of joy and solid instruction to a large number of my countrymen. Then, again, as English is understood in other countries of the globe, the Mahābhārata in an English garb will be read by a still larger number of people. The diffusion of the immortal truths, contained in this immortal work, over so large a portion of the world, cannot be viewed with indifference by any Indian patriot. With the loss of their independence the Hindus have lost many things. They have lost the esteem of foreign nations. It is believed that they will regain that esteem as a consequence of this literary undertaking. Those foreign nations who now think the Hindus as a worthless race, will, from a perusal of the Mahābhārata, find how elevated the character was of the progenitors of the present Hindus, and what the progress was which they made in philosophy both mental and moral. A perusal of the Mahābhārata will show that the Rishis of ancient India, clad in deer-skins and barks of trees, subsisting on fruits and roots of the wilderness, protected against the inclemencies of the weather by mountain caves and huts made of branches and leaves of trees, and lying on the bare ground, had made great discoveries in many departments of knowledge. Many of those discoveries have visibly added to the happiness of mankind. Many sciences were carried by them to a point whence succeeding ages have not been able to advance them by even one

step. Their conceptions regarding many things were singularly accurate. If one reads the exposition, of Bhrigu to Bharadwāja, of the extent of the universe, one cannot fail to be struck with the singularly correct notions which the Rishi entertained of the heavenly bodies. The science of computing Time by the motions of the heavenly bodies, had been brought to perfection by Gargya and others. Many truths of deep import lie scattered here and there in rich profusion. Politics was understood by them in that remote period as well as in this decade of the nineteenth century. An eminent scholar of the United States of America wrote to my husband, on the completion of the Cānti Parva, that he had never read any other book in any language, in which the science of kingly duties had been better expounded than in the Rājadharma sections of that Parva. Kanika had laid down all those doctrines which Macchiavelli first enunciated many centuries afterwards in Europe. Bhishma unfolds the duties of kings so copiously and so minutely that the Chancellors and Prime-ministers of modern European states may listen with reverance to the exposition with advantage to their reputations.

Now, however, that the whole book is before the public, it is scarcely necessary for me, a woman, to pass an opinion on its merits. Others infinitely more competent than myself will judge of them. In saying what I have said on the question, I have only repeated the opinions commonly expressed by well-informed judges. Of the indirect effects of an English translation of the Mahābhārata I shall not speak here. I would refer the reader, for an adequate understanding of these, to the preface with which my husband put forth the first fasciculus of the translation. Western scholars have compared the Mahābhārata to a national bank of unlimited resources upon which succeeding poets and prose-writers of India have freely drawn without being able to bring about a sensible diminution. A knowledge of the Mahābhārata helps one to understand without any difficulty the plots of nearly all the dramas and poems written either in Sanskrit or in the Indian vernaculars in later times. References to the Mahāhhārata occur in nearly all the ballads and songs that are current in India.

Then, again, as India is a highly conservative country where changes in habits of thought as also in manners and customs are seldom brought about by even the most powerful causes, it may be truly said that an acquaintance with the Mahābhārata helps one to understand the Hindus of even the present day. If a knowledge of the mind of the people is of value to the administration of the country, who will deny the utility of an English translation of the Mahābhārata to the British Government of India ?

These considerations will show that the money and the labour bestowed upon this work have not been thrown away. Indeed, few people will be disposed to say that my husband wasted his life and energies on the accomplishment of an undertaking that is not fraught with beneficial consequences to the people of India as also to the world at large.

The Mahābhārata has been completed. The last injunction of my husband I have somehow carried out. In carrying it out I have incurred some debts. These, added to those which my husband left, come up to about Rs. 10,000. The thought that disturbs me now is how shall I succeed in freeing my husband from his debts and how pay my own ? The Secretary of State for India, the Supreme Government, and the various local Governments have aided the work materially. Almost all the princes and chiefs also of India have assisted it more or less. It pains me to think that only two noblemen, upon whose help both my husband and myself had relied, have not cast a kind eye on the work. No harm can arise to them if I name them here. They are Maharaja Sir Luchmeswar Sing Bahadur, K. C. S. I., of Durbhanga, and Maharaja Sir Gajapati Rao, K. C. S. I., of Vizianagram. Both of them are enlightened. Both are liberal and far-seeing. Indeed, their refusal to render any help to an undertaking that has been helped by so many persons and personages, is difficult of being reconciled with their known character. Maharaja Sir Gajapati Rao had promised a good sum to my husband. That promise was repeated through an eminent official of the Government of India. To my misfortune, when recently reminded by another high official of his former promise, the Maharaja

recollected nothing, and the result, accordingly, has been a continuation of neglect. Maharaja Sir Luchmeswar was approached several times both by my husband and myself. All our applications, however, failed to move him. To me, in especial, the courtesy of even a reply has never been vouchsafed. I look upon this as my own misfortune, for why should one who was dubbed by the late Dr. Sambhu C. Mookerjee in *Reis* and *Rayyet* as "the Premier nobleman of Bengal" be unwilling, notwithstanding his well-known liberality, to aid a work that has been aided by so many of his equals in India and other lands as also by so many who are his superiors in respectability ? The fault must be in my husband and myself. It may also be due to the unique arrangements of the Durbhanga Sherista in consequence of which persons of far higher consequence than ourselves fail to obtain replies from the Maharaja to even their most urgent communications.

I am sory to state that another eminent Zemindar of Bengal, recently ennobled, *viz.*, Maharaja Govinda Lal Roy of Tajhat in Rungpore, having promised to aid the work with a contribution of Rs. 5,000, forgot all about it after paying only Rs. 500. More than a decade ago when the offer of this distinguished person was noticed in the *Saturday Review* (of England), that journal spoke of him as "a Mæcenas hailing from Rungpore." My husband waited several times on him, but the balance somehow remains unpaid to this day. Indeed, if Durbhanga and Vizianagram had contributed their quota and if Maharaja Govind Lal Roy of Tajhat kindly remits the balance, all the debts incurred in completing the Mahābhārata may be paid off. Seeing, however, an indifference in these quarters I was obliged to appeal to the general body of subscribers and recipients of the publication for a trifle from each. Many of them have nobly responded to my appeal. Some have already remitted their quota. Indeed, relying upon this generosity of the subscribers and recipients of the work I became emboldened to incur debts for completing it. It is the simple truth that I could not make a further advance if I had not been thus favoured by those to whom I appealed. I am particularly thankful to them for their exceptional kindness,

although the amounts, when collected, will not enable me to clear off even a portion of my debts.

The work of publication occupied more than twelve years. During this long period, many persons and personages have helped the enterprise. It is my duty to express my gratitude towards all of them for services rendered with willing hearts. It is not possible, however, for me to name all the friends and patrons of the enterprise, or state the measure of assistance received from each. If, therefore, I fail to name any one, I hope he will kindly forgive me. Every one that has rendered any measure of help to the work deserves my reverent worship. Indeed, I offer them all a sincere tribute of devotion and respect. Some, however, I am bound to name. My naming them will not add to their honour or fame. But my obligations to them are so great that I cannot rest content by including them in my general worship. I hope both they and the world will excuse me for my endeavour to specialise my worship on the present occasion. I should be wanting in gratitude if I acted otherwise. Foremost amongst those to whom my heart-felt gratitude is due, is the present Duke of Devonshire. While Marquis of Hartington and Secretary of State for India, it was he who first suggested to my husband, through the late lamented Dr. Reinhold Rost, the idea of an English translation of the Mahābhārata. His Grace's sentiments, as expressed in Dr. Rost's letter, are given in the introductory preface with which the first fasciculus of the translation was published. Upon receipt of that letter my husband thought much upon it and consulted many eminent persons both here and in foreign countries. Some expressed doubts regarding the practicability of the scheme. Some offered every encouragement in their power. Among the latter, it was Professor Max Muller who rendered the greatest measure of help. Not content with giving advice, he sent to my husband an English translation of a portion of the *Anukramanikā* (Introductory chapter) of the Mahābhārata, which had been executed many years before by a friend of his and which he had himself transcribed in a neat hand and kept with him for future use. This served as a specimen.

Indeed, it was of great help to the translator employed by my husband. My husband repeatedly spoke of his obligations to Professor Max Muller. Besides so helping the enterprise, the Professor, during the last twelve years, several times brought the publication to the notice of the reading public through the columns of the (London) *Times* and other influential journals. These notices were of great value to my husband. They served to awaken the interest of not only foreign scholars, but of many eminent persons in India, in the work. To Professor Max Muller, therefore, the English translation of the Mahābhārata owes truly a debt immense of endless gratitude.

Speaking of India, much help has been rendered to the work by Lord Ripon and Lord Dufferin. The former encouraged my husband by a handsome contribution. It was owing to the latter that a grant of about Rs. 11,000 was obtained from the Government of India. Lord Northbrook also, though he had retired at the time when the first fasciculus of the translation was out, very kindly patronised the work by a respectable contribution. Among Lieutenant-Governors of Bengal, the greatest measure of assistance was received from Sir Rivers Thompson and Sir Steuart Bayley. The former was the first official who came forward to take the enterprise by the hand. He was pleased to sanction a grant of Rs. 5,000 in its aid. Indeed, the aid received from the other Provincial Governments in India was not a little due to the example set by Sir Rivers Thompson. My husband often spoke with tears in his eyes of the kindness shown to him by Sir Rivers Thompson. Of Sir Steuart Bayley, again, it is difficult to speak in adequate terms. When the first fasciculus of the translation came out, my husband waited upon him. He was then a member of the Governor-General's Council. He manifested the keenest interest in the work and it was through his influence that the first State contribution, *viz.*, the grant of the Bengal Government, was obtained. From the beginning to the conclusion of the undertaking, Sir Steuart Bayley has befriended it most actively. During his hours of depression my husband used to receive from Sir Steuart words of encouragement that instantly dispersed all his clouds and filled

him with renewed energy. Of all the Lieutenant-Governors of Bengal, therefore, the measure of help obtained from the noble-minded Sir Steuart Bayley has been very large. His kindness for my husband was simply unbounded and his interest in the work did not cease with his departure from these shores. When lying on his death-bed, my husband repeatedly spoke of Sir Steuart Bayley (and of another I shall presently name) as the kindest of his patrons. To my repeated enquiry, prompted by my anxieties, as to how I could succeed in bringing the work to completion, his one answer was—"Sir Steuart Bayley will not desert you, although he is far away. He will not only take care of the work but also of those who have laboured with me in its prosecution." The last letter that my husband wrote was addressed to Sir Steuart Bayley.

Next to Sir Steuart Bayley I must name Sir Auckland Colvin. When the first fasciculus of the translation reached him, he made exhaustive enquiries regarding both my husband and the translator. Satisfied on all points, he gave the project his sympathy and befriended it actively, always manifesting a keen and lively interest in it. When he became the Lieutenant-Governor of the North West Provinces, when, as the late Dr. Sambhu C. Mookerjee said, "a Colvin, after thirty years, was again on the gubernatorial *guddee*," ready "to realize his sire's enlightened programme and advance the well-being of the millions of British subjects committed to his charge," he very kindly sanctioned a second grant of Rs. 2,000 in aid of the work, bringing up the total of the contribution by the Government of the N. W. Provinces to Rs. 5,000. Besides this, Sir Auckland Colvin did his best to push the interests of the publication by bringing it to the notice of many eminent officials in India. My husband cherished sentiments of deep gratefulness towards Sir Auckland Colvin.

Amongst other eminent officials I must next name Sir Charles Aitchison. He, too, was particularly kind to my husband and did much for forwarding the interests of the publication. His untimely death affected my husband greatly. To

Sir Charles Elliott also my husband was much obliged. Seeing the difficulties of my husband, Sir Charles very readily sanctioned a second grant in behalf of the work. Of the present Lieutenant-Governor of Bengal, Sir Alexander Mackenzie, it is difficult for me to speak in adequate terms. He knew not my husband, except by name. When, however, I brought my difficulties to his notice, he very kindly granted me a patient hearing and did his best to render me effectual help by recommending the work in terms of high praise to one whose liberality in the cause of the diffusion of Rishi-literature is well known. That Sir Alexander Mackenzie should do so much on the appeal of a poor, friendless widow, is the best evidence of his essentially kind nature. May God grant him and his length of days and uninterrupted prosperity, and may his name descend to distant posterity as that of a beneficent ruler fully alive to the grave interests committed to his charge !

I come now to Sir Alfred Croft. Tears fill my eyes when I recall all the acts of particular kindness which my husband received from him, and the delicate consideration with which he has been pleased to treat me since my husband's death. It was through his kind recommendation that the first grant of Rs. 5,000, which, as I have already said, paved the way for the successive grants of the other local Governments, was sanctioned by Sir Rivers Thompson. The second grant also that Sir Charlos Elliott made, was due, after the same manner, to the kind offices of Sir Alfred Croft. In him my husband had a warm friend and patron. Amongst those whose advice and sympathy enabled my husband to persevere in his work, those of Sir Alfred Croft were undoubtedly of the highest value. When intelligence of my husband's death reached him, the letter he wrote to me expressive of his feelings, was highly consolatory. I received numerous letters of condolence, but the few lines of Sir Alfred Croft were distinguished above them all. It is no exaggeration to say that the successful issue of this herculean task is, in no small measure, due to the lively interest which Sir Alfred Croft has taken in it at every stage of its progress. The unremitting efforts of the translator also

have very largely been due to the encouraging words spoken to him from time to time by Sir Alfred Croft. It is scarcely necessary to say that as long as I live, I shall, as I have hitherto done, take the names of Sir Alfred Croft and Sir Steuart Bayley in my daily prayers and invoke the choicest blessings of Vāsudeva on them and theirs.

Among high military officials, my sincerest thanks are due to General Stewart and his successor Lord Roberts. Both of them, while in India, freely assisted my husband in every way. It is not, perhaps, generally known that General Stewart has read the Mahābhārata in original. His attainments in Sanskrit are of a respectable kind. When the first few fasciculi of the translation reached him, he made enquiries regarding my husband. Accordingly, when the latter waited upon him, His Excellency received him with the greatest kindness and promised to help him to the best of his power. This promise the General kept by bringing the work to the notice of many persons capable of helping it with pecuniary contributions. Lord Roberts also was equally kind to my husband and helped him as freely. Amongst the few names that my husband used to frequently mention as those of his kindest of patrons, was that of Lord Roberts. The photographic likeness which my husband received from his Lordship at the time of his departure from India and which my husband handed over to me on his death-bed, is cherished by me as a precious possession. I shall continue to cherish it as long as I live, as the likeness of the tutelary deity I worship every day.

There are some other eminent officials whose kindness was experienced by my husband in a very large measure and who did much for ensuring the completion of the enterprise. My husband always used to name them with reverence. They are Mr. C. P. Ilbert, Sir William Hunter, Sir Andrew Scoble, Sir Donald Mackenzie Wallace, Mr. J. Gibbs, Mr. Quinton, General Sir George Chesney, Sir John Ware Edgar, Mr. C. P. L. Macaulay, Mr. C. W. Bolton, Dr. G. A. Grierson, Mr. F. S. Growse, and Sir Anthony Macdonnell. The latter, while Secretary to the Government of Bengal, powerfully supported my husband's appeal to Sir Rivers Thompson.

Among non-official Englishmen who have rendered the greatest measure of help should be mentioned Archbishop Gœthals, Sir W. Rattigan, Mr. W. Swinhoe, Mr. J. O. B. Saunders of the *Englishman*, and Mr. Robert Knight of the *Statesman and Friend of India.* Of native editors the work is most indebted to the late Dr. Sambhu C. Mookerjee, Rai Kristo Das Paul Bahadur, Babu Narendra Nath Sen, and the brothers, Babus Shishir Kumar Ghose and Matilal Ghose.

Next to the contributions received from the Secretary of State, the Government of India, and the various local Governments and administrations, amounting, in all, to about Rs. 45,000, the greatest measure of pecuniary assistance was obtained from the native Indian chiefs. Foremost among them was H. H. the late Maharajah of Mysore. Then comes H. H. the Nizam. Though a Mahomedan prince, His Highness's culture is so catholic that he freely listened to the appeal of my husband on behalf of a Hindu religious work. The other chiefs who have aided the publication substantially are Scindia, and Travancore, and Baroda and Cochin, and Indore and Jeypore, and Cooch-Behar and Jodhpore, and Pattiala and Cutch, and Udaypore and Bhownaggar, and Kapurthala and Jummoo, and Ulwar and Faridcote, and Dhar and Dhrangdhra, and Rewa and Junagarh. Amongst the representatives of the great landed houses, I should mention the Maharajah of Hatwa, Maharani Sarnamoye, the Maharajah of Gidhour, and the Maharajah of Bettiah. The British Indian Association of Lucknow and the Punjab University also should be mentioned among public bodies that have helped the work with substantial contributions. Amongst Bengal Zemindars, my obligations are due in the greatest measure to Babu Joykissen Mookerjee of Uttarparah and his enlightened and noble-minded son, Rajah Peary Mohan Mookerjee, C. S. I. Both father and son gave their sympathy to my husband and aided him materially in many ways.

I should, after this, speak of those Oriental scholars of world-wide reputation who have aided the work with sympathy and words of encouragement and, in some instances, even money. I have already spoken of Professor Max-Muller. The

English translation of the Mahābhārata may be said to be very much indebted to him. My husband used to regard Professor Max Muller with feelings of the deepest veneration. Of Dr. Reinhold Rost, again, it is impossible to speak without an agitated heart. He manifested the keenest interest in the work. Almost every month letters of sympathy, full of heart-stirring words of encouragement, came from Dr. Rost. My husband used to say that these letters were to him much more than money. They always succeeded in dispelling his gloom and filling him with additional energy. It was through the efforts of Dr. Rost that my husband was enabled to present a copy of the English Mahābhārata to Her Gracious Majesty the Qeen-Empress of India. The suggestion to present a copy to Her Majesty came from Mr. Gibbs. So many difficulties, all due to the usual ways of red-tapeism, had to be got over that my husband could not possibly succeed without the powerful support of Lord Dufferin in India and Dr. Rost in England. The friendship between my husband and Dr. Rost was, with both, a life-long one. Dr. Rost never lost an opportunity of serving my husband. The latter was deeply grateful to the learned Doctor for these services. Among the Oriental scholars of England, I should also name the late lamented Frederic Pincott, Mr. C. H. Tawney and Professor E. B. Cowell. Mr. Pincott was one of the warmest friends of the enterprise. As regards the two last, after my husband's death, both of them did their best to help me in raising the requisite funds. Both of them very kindly wrote to Mahamahopadhyaya Mahesh Chandra Nyayaratna, asking him to exert his influence on my behalf. Pundit Nyayaratna did his best to help me. Although his efforts as yet have not been crowned with success, yet my obligations to both Mr. Tawney and Professor Cowell, as also to Pundit Nyayaratna, cannot but be deep.

Coming next to the European continent, I must speak first of Mons. A. Barth and the late Mons. Barthelemy St. Hilaire. The services which both of them rendered to the work were of no common kind. It was through their kind efforts that the French Government proceeded out of its way for sanctioning a substantial contribution in aid of a foreign work that was

again, a serial publication. Both these eminent Orientalists of world-wide reputation never lost an opportunity of bringing the work to the notice of the learned world through the pages of the *Journal des Savants* and the *Revue Critique d'Histoire et de Litterature.* Throughout the progress of the work, Mons. Barth, in particular, encouraged my husband as warmly and as sincerely as Dr. Rost himself.

Next to these scholars I should name Professor Hermann Jacobi of the University of Keil, Herr. S. Sorensen of Copenhagen, and Dr. Andrew N. Kephallinos of Greece. All these eminent Orientalists befriended the enterprise from the very beginning and encouraged by husband to the best of their power.

I shall now speak of those American scholars to whom my husband was indebted. Though I come to them last, the measure of assistance received from them has not been the least. To Mr. William Emmette Coleman, Presidio, San-Francisco, California, my husband's obligations were of the deepest kind. Taking a keen interest in the work from the very beginning, it was Mr. W. E. Coleman who strove energetically to bring the work to the notice of his fellow scholars in America. Mr. Coleman on several occasions spent his own money for the purpose. That the work has become more known in America than in any other foreign country, is due to the single-handed and disinterested exertions of this eminent American. The friendship of Mr. Coleman with my husband was of no common kind. My husband used to speak of him in terms of the most lively gratitude. Mr. Coleman was deeply affected when intelligence reached him of his friend's demise. Next to Mr. Coleman I should speak of Professor Lanman, Professor Maurice Bloomfield of Hopkin's university, Professor J. W. Reese of Maryland, Mr. James Charleton of Chicago, and Mr. B. Witton of Hamilton, Canada. So sincere was the interest which Professor Lanman took in the work and such was his attachment to my husband that when he came to India, accompanied by his angel of a wife, he honoured our poor home in Beadon Street with a visit. Mrs. Lanman is a lady of charming manners. She

questioned me on various points of Hindu Zenana life and learnt with visible satisfaction that the seclusion of Hindu women is by no means an enforced one; that within one's own proper sphere we are as much free as our sisters of other lands. I can never forget the impression which her intelligence and kindliness of disposition made upon me. In every letter my husband received from Mr. Lanman, there were references to the kindly enquiries his good wife made for herself into our affairs. My husband received even pecuniary help from Mr. Lanman. Not content with the contribution he so kindly made, he induced many other people to prove their interest in the work in the same way. The friendship of Professor Reese also for my husband was very sincere. Throughout the progress of the work, he encouraged my husband to persevere and gave him much valuable advice. In referring to Mr. B. Witton I must say that the grant which Lord Dufferin sanctioned in aid of the work was, in no small measure, due to the lively interest he took in my husband's labours. Lord Dufferin had been at Canada before his Lordship came to India. Mr. Witton had come in contact with him. This circumstance enabled Mr. Witton to recommend the work very strongly to his Lordship's attention. Not satisfied with this, Mr. Witton strenuously endeavoured to bring the publication to the notice of many American scholars almost all of whom rendered pecuniary help to my husband. Mr. Witton, therefore, laid my husband under the deepest obligations to him. To me also, after his demise, Mr. Witton continued his kindness. May God shower the choicest blessings upon him for such large-heartedness and compassion towards people living far, far away from him, with thousands of miles of water rolling between!

This is the fittest place for summing up the operations of the Bhārata Kāryālaya. Altogether, four editions of the Bengali version of the Mahābhārata, one edition of the Bengali Rāmāyana, one of Harivança, and one of Sreemad-Bhāgavata, one of the Sanskrit Rāmāyana, and three complete editions of the Sanskrit Mahābhārata, besides the English translation of the Mahābhārata, represent the work of the

Bhārata Kāryālaya during the last twenty years. A single set of the Bengali Mahābhārata consists of 7 goodly volumes; the Bengali Rāmāyana of 2 vols; the Harivança of 1 vol. Sreemad-Bhāgavata of 2 vols; the Sanskrit Mahābhārata of 7 vols; and the English Mahābhārata of 10 vols. Altogether, therefore, 2,59,000 volumes, have been issued by the institution.

Many persons have, from time to time, been connected with the Bhārata Kāryālaya, and have given it their services. I should, on this occasion, name those to whom the institution is most obliged for the especial character of their services and the zeal which characterised them. In the first place I should name Babu Durga Charan Banerjee, deceased. His connection with the Kāryālaya began from the date of its establishment. He it was who translated the Mahābhārata, the Rāmāyana, the Harivança, and Sreemad-Bhāgavata into Bengali. Few native scholars can boast of a better Bengali style. Besides such translation, Babu Durga Charan supervised the editing of the Sanskrit Mahābhārata also. In addition to such literary services of a substantial kind, Babu Durga Charan was Manager of the Bhārata Kāryālaya and, as such, had to assist my husband in supervising the finances of the institution as also its printing establishment. A ripe Sanskrit scholar, wielding a ready pen and a fluent tongue, and with considerable proficiency in accounts, he was an invaluable assistant. Death cut him off prematurely. My husband was deeply affected by the event.

Next to Babu Durga Charan, I should mention Babu Kisari Mohan Ganguli, B. L. The English version of the Mahābhārata is the result of his ripe scholarship and indefatigable labour. His oonnection with the Bhārata Kāryālaya began from the date when this *magnum opus* of the institution was taken in hand. It is impossible for me to express in words the extent of the obligations to him of both my husband and myself. It is not for me to express an opinion on the merits of the translation. Competent judges have pronounced on the value of the work. Those pronouncements occur on the wrappers of the successive fascicules and are, therefore, before, the world. It is not, however, in the department of transla-

tion alone that I have to acknowledge the labours of Babu Kisari Mohan Ganguli. In every other department also, his services, freely given, have been simply invaluable. The success of the Kāryālaya in completing its *magnum opus* has very largely been due to his untiring zeal. My husband used very often to say that with all the assistance received by him from every other quarter, he could never have accomplished his task if he had not been fortunate in securing a scholar and collaborateur of Babu Kisari Mohan's calibre and zeal. My husband scarcely exaggerated the truth when he used to say that, as regards the English department of the Kāryālaya, he was only the hand that did the work while Babu Kisori Mohan was the head that directed it. While lying on his death-bed, he earnestly appealed to Babu Kisari Mohan to complete the undertaking. With tears in his eyes at the sight of his weak and helpless friend thus speaking to him, Babu Kisari Mohan readily gave the assurance that was solicited, saying that he would not, on any account, give up the work. This assurance enabled my husband to leave the world in peace. His anxiety was dispelled. He even became cheerful. The thought of dying in debt to those few who had paid in full for the work had made him miserable. Babu Ganguli's assurance removed that cause of my husband's misery. Indeed, Babu Kisari Mohan worked with redoubled zeal after my husband's death. That the work has been completed so soon after the departure of my husband, is due, in no small measure, to the faithfulness with which Babu Ganguli kept the promise which he had made to his dying friend.

Among the Agents employed by my husband for collecting subscriptions and contributions in aid of the work, mention should be made of Babus Manoranjan Bose, Surya Coomar Shome, and Siddheswar Mitter. All of them worked with zeal. Siddheswar Mitter, in particular, was loved by my husband as a son. As long as he was connected with the Kāryālaya, Mitter also revered my husband as a father. His services as an Agent were simply invaluable.

I come next to Babu Kali Dass Sen, the head of the printing establishment of the Bhārata Kāryālaya. My husband

used to respect and love Babu Sen. As a typesetter, he has few equals whether as regards rapidity or accuracy of work. As regards, again, capacity for organisation, he is a valuable hand. He can overlook without friction a large establishment. He has supervised all the editions of the Mahābhārata, the Rāmāyana, the Harivança, and the Bhāgavata, in original and translation, that have come out of the Bhārata Press. His acquaintance with Sanskrit is respectable. His knowledge of English also is much greater than what is met with in printers belonging to more pretentious establishments.

Last, though not least, my thanks are particularly due to Babu Aghore Nath Banerjee. He succeeded Babu Durga Charan Banerjee as Manager of the Bhārata Kāryālaya. Endued with great intelligence, within a very short period he became fully competent for his manifold duties. His sound knowledge of both Sanskrit and English enabled him to materially assist Babu Kisari Mohan Ganguli in the exposition of many difficult passages in course of his work as also by correcting the press. Babu Durga Charan's work, suspended by his death, of supervising the editing of the original Mahābhārata, was also taken up by him. This duty of his he discharged with great ability and zeal. In consequence, again, of the able supervision he exercised over all the details of every department of the Kāryālaya, considerable economy could be enforced without at all impairing efficiency. For the last two years of his life my husband was unable to actively superintend the Kāryālaya. With difficulty he could leave the sick chamber. He was absolutely unable to stir out of the house. During the whole of this period, Babu Aghore Nath not only supervised the Institution almost single-handed, but looked after the medical treatment of my husband with the tenderness and affection of a brother. My husband had no near relatives in the world to stand by his bedside. The care and attention, however, which Babu Aghore Nath Banerjee showed for him prevented his feeling the absence of relatives. When he died, we had not in the house money sufficient to defray his funeral expenses. Babu Banerjee's forethought prevented inconvenience of every kind. With the solemn injunction of my hus-

band still ringing in my ears about completing the Mahābhārata any how, without any money to my credit in the bank or in the family chest, pierced with the intolerable grief of recent widowhood, it was impossible for me to exert myself in any direction. The kindness and care of Babu Banerjee, coupled with the words of encouragement that he spoke, filled me with hope. He was to me a father, or a brother. The completion of the Mahābhārata is due very largely to the redoubled zeal with which he set himself to work after my husband's death. In his last days my husband often said that it was not possible for him to repay his obligations to Babu Aghore Nath Banerjee. If such was the nature of Babu Banerjee's services at the time my husband lived, the reader will readily understand what the value of his services have been to *me* at a time when I became overwhelmed with grief and when the entire burthen of the Bhārata Kāryālaya fell upon my shoulders. Unable to repay his lasting obligations to Babu Aghore Nath Banerjee and Babu Kisari Mohan Ganguli, all that my husband did was to address, the day before his death, a letter to one of his foremost of patrons, imploring him earnestly to do what he legitimately can for them. As regards myself, all that I can do for them is to invoke the choicest blessings of Vāsudeva on them and theirs in course of my daily prayers. May God listen to those feeble prayers of mine !

With these words I make my humble bow to the public in general and the friends and patrons in particular of the Dātavya Bhārata Kāryālaya.

The Bhārata Kāryālaya,
1, Raja Guru Dass' St.,
Calcutta, July 15th, 96.

SUNDARI BĀLĀ ROY.

TRANSLATOR'S POST-SCRIPT.

More than twelve years ago when Babu Pratāpa Chandra Roy, with Babu Durga Charan Banerjee, went to my retreat at Seebpore, for engaging me to translate the Mahābhārata into English, I was amazed with the grandeur of the scheme. My first question to him was,—whence was the money to come, supposing my competence for the task. Pratāpa then unfolded to me the details of his plan, the hopes he could legitimately cherish of assistance from different quarters. He was full of enthusiasm. He showed me Dr. Rost's letter, which, he said, had suggested to him the undertaking. I had known Babu Durga Charan for many years and I had the highest opinion of his scholarship and practical good sense. When he warmly took Pratāpa's side for convincing me of the practicability of the scheme, I listened to him patiently. The two were for completing all arrangements with me the very day. To this I did not agree. I took a week's time to consider. I consulted some of my literary friends, foremost among whom was the late lamented Dr. Sambhu C. Mookerjee. The latter, I found, had been waited upon by Pratapa. Dr. Mookerjee spoke to me of Pratapa as a man of indomitable energy and perseverance. The result of my conference with Dr. Mookerjee was that I wrote to Pratapa, asking him to see me again. In this second interview estimates were drawn up, and everything was arranged as far as my portion of the work was concerned. My friend left with me a specimen of translation which he had received from Professor Max Muller. This I began to study, carefully comparing it sentence by sentence with the original. About its literal character there could be no doubt, but it had no flow and, therefore, could not be perused with pleasure by the general reader. The translation had been executed thirty years ago by a young German friend of the great Pundit. I had to touch up every sentence. This I did without at all impairing faithfulness to the original. My first "copy" was set up in type and a dozen sheets were struck off. These were submitted to the judgment of a number of eminent writers European and native. All of them, I was glad to see,

approved of the specimen, and then the task of translating the Mahābhārata into English seriously began.

Before, however, the first fasciculus could be issued, the question as to whether the authorship of the translation should be publicly owned, arose. Babu Pratāpa Chandra Roy was against anonymity. I was for it. The reasons I adduced were chiefly founded upon the impossibility of one person translating the whole of the gigantic work. Notwithstanding my resolve to discharge to the fullest exent the duty that I took up, I might not live to carry it out. It would take many years before the end could be reached. Other circumstances than death might arise in consequence of which my connection with the work might cease. It could not be desirable to issue successive fascicules with the names of a succession of translators appearing on the title-pages. These and other considerations convinced my friend that, after all, my view was correct. It was, accordingly, resolved to withhold the name of the translator. As a compromise, however, between the two views, it was resolved to issue the first fasciculus with two prefaces, one over the signature of the publisher and the other headed "Translator's Preface." This, it was supposed, would effectually guard against misconceptions of every kind. No careful reader would then confound the publisher with the author.

Although this plan was adopted, yet before a fourth of the task had been accomplished, an influential Indian journal came down upon poor Pratāpa Chandra Roy and accused him openly of being a party to a great literary imposture, *viz.*, of posing before the world as the translator of Vyāsa's work when, in fact, he was only the publisher. The charge came upon my friend as a surprise, especially as he had never made a secret of the authorship in his correspondence with Oriental scholars in every part of the world. He promptly wrote to the journal in question, explaining the reasons there were for anonymity, and pointing to the two prefaces with which the first fasciculus had been given to the world. The editor readily admitted his mistake and made a satisfactory apology.

Now that the translation has been completed, there can no longer be any reason for withholding the name of the trans-

lator. The entire translation is practically the work of one hand. In portions of the Ādi and the Sabhā Parvas, I was assisted by Babu Charu Chandra Mookerjee. About four forms of the Sabhā Parva were done by Professor Krishna Kamal Bhattacharya, and about half a fasciculus, during my illness, was done by another hand. I should, however, state that before passing to the printer the 'copy' received from these gentlemen I carefully compared every sentence with the original, making such alterations as were needed for securing a uniformity of style with the rest of the work.

I should here observe that in rendering the Mahābhārata into English I have derived very little aid from the three Bengali versions that are supposed to have been executed with care. Every one of these is full of inaccuracies and blunders of every description. The Cānti, in particular, which is by far the most difficult of the eighteen Parvas, has been made a mess of by the Pundits that attacked it. Hundreds of ridiculous blunders can be pointed out in both the Rājadharma and the Mokshadharma sections. Some of these I have pointed out in foot-notes.

I cannot lay claim to infallibility. There are verses in the Mahābhārata that are exceedingly difficult to construe. I have derived much aid from the great commentator Nilakantha. I know that Nilakantha's authority is not incapable of being challenged. But when it is remembered that the interpretations given by Nilakantha came down to him from preceptors of olden days, one should think twice before rejecting Nilakantha as a guide.

About the readings I have adopted, I should say that as regards the first half of the work, I have generally adhered to the Bengal texts; as regards the latter half, to the printed Bombay edition. Sometimes individual sections, as occuring in the Bengal editions, differ widely, in respect of the order of the verses, from the corresponding ones in the Bombay edition. In such cases I have adhered to the Bengal texts, convinced that the sequence of ideas has been better preserved in the Bengal editions than the Bombay one.

I should express my particular obligations to Pundit Ram

Nath Tarkaratna, the author of "Vāsudeva-Vijayam" and other poems, Pundit Shyama Charan Kaviratna, the learned editor of *Kavyaprakasha* with the commentary of Professor Mahesh Chandra Nayaratna, and Babu Aghore Nath Banerjee, the manager of the Bhārata Kāryālaya. All these scholars were my referees on all points of difficulty. Pundit Ram Nath's solid scholarship is known to them that have come in contact with him. I never referred to him a difficulty that he could not clear up. Unfortunately, he was not always at hand to consult. Pundit Shyama Charan Kaviratna, during my residence at Seebpore, assisted me in going over the Mokshadharma sections of the Cānti Parva. Unostentatious in the extreme, Kaviratna is truly the type of a learned Brāhman of ancient India. Babu Aghore Nath Banerjee also has, from time to time, rendered me valuable assistance in clearing my difficulties.

Gigantic as the work is, it would have been exceedingly difficult for me to go on with it if I had not been encouraged by Sir Steuart Bayley, Sir Auckland Colvin, Sir Alfred Croft, and, among Oriental scholars, by the late lamented Dr. Reinhold Rost, and Mons. A. Barth of Paris. All these eminent men knew from the beginning that the translation was proceeding from my pen. Notwithstanding the enthusiasm with which my poor friend, Pratāpa Chandra Roy, always endeavoured to fill me, I am sure my energies would have flagged and patience exhausted but for the encouraging words which I always received from these patrons and friends of the enterprise.

Lastly, I should name my literary chief and friend, Dr. Sambhu C. Mookerjee. The kind interest he took in my labours, the repeated exhortations he addressed to me inculcating patience, the care with which he read every fasciculus as it came out, marking all those passages which threw light upon topics of antiquarian interest, and the words of praise he uttered when any expression particularly happy met his eye, served to stimulate me more than anything else in going on with a task that sometimes seemed to me endless.

Calcutta,
July 15th, 1896.

KISARI MOHAN GANGULI.